

The Covenant Rendering

A Modern English Bible from the Hebrew and Greek

Translated by Aaron Blonquist

The Covenant Rendering

A Modern English Bible from the Hebrew and Greek
Translated by Aaron Blonquist

Copyright 2026 Aaron Blonquist.
Licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution 4.0
International License (CC-BY-4.0).

You are free to share, copy, and redistribute this material in any medium or format, and to adapt, remix, transform, and build upon it for any purpose, even commercially, under the following terms:

Attribution -- You must give appropriate credit to Aaron Blonquist as translator, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made.

License: <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/>

Old Testament source text: Westminster Leningrad Codex (WLC)
New Testament source text: Nestle-Aland / UBS Greek New Testament

Introduction

The Covenant Rendering is a fresh English translation of the Bible produced directly from the Hebrew and Greek source texts. It aims to bring the meaning, weight, and texture of the original languages into clear, modern English without sacrificing the literary power of the ancient texts. Where older translations sometimes obscure meaning behind archaic phrasing, and where modern paraphrases sometimes flatten the richness of the original, this rendering seeks the middle ground: faithful to the source, readable in English, and honest about the choices a translator must make.

Every translation is an interpretation. The Covenant Rendering does not pretend otherwise. Where a Hebrew or Greek word carries a range of meaning that no single English word can capture, the translator notes explain what was chosen and why. Where the ancient text is genuinely ambiguous, the ambiguity is preserved rather than silently resolved. The goal is not to replace other translations but to offer a rendering that takes the reader as close to the original as English allows, then trusts them to think.

This is the Reading Layer: clean English text with verse numbers, chapter preambles for context, and translator notes for those who want to go deeper. The Hebrew, Greek, and comparative apparatus exist in the full digital edition. Here, the text breathes on its own.

Table of Contents

OLD TESTAMENT

Genesis
Exodus
Leviticus
Numbers
Deuteronomy
Joshua
Judges
Ruth
1 Samuel
2 Samuel
1 Kings
2 Kings
1 Chronicles
2 Chronicles
Ezra
Nehemiah
Esther
Job
Psalms
Proverbs
Ecclesiastes
Song of Songs
Isaiah
Jeremiah
Lamentations
Ezekiel
Daniel
Hosea
Joel
Amos
Obadiah
Jonah
Micah
Nahum
Habakkuk
Zephaniah
Haggai
Zechariah
Malachi

NEW TESTAMENT

Matthew
Mark
Luke
John
Acts
Romans
1 Corinthians
2 Corinthians
Galatians
Ephesians
Philippians
Colossians
1 Thessalonians
2 Thessalonians
1 Timothy
2 Timothy
Titus
Philemon
Hebrews
James
1 Peter
2 Peter
1 John
2 John
3 John
Jude
Revelation

Old Testament

Genesis

1

Summary: *God creates the heavens and the earth in six days, moving from formlessness to fullness. Light, sky, land, vegetation, luminaries, sea creatures, land animals, and finally humanity — male and female, made in God's image — are brought into being by divine speech.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's architecture is itself theological: days 1-3 form the realms (light, sky/sea, land) that days 4-6 fill with rulers (luminaries, birds/fish, animals/humanity). The verb bara ('to create') appears exclusively with God as subject in the Hebrew Bible — no human ever bara. The plural 'Let us make' in verse 26 has generated centuries of interpretation. The sevenfold 'and God saw that it was good' culminates in the superlative tov meod ('very good') at creation's completion.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew ruach Elohim (v. 2) resists a clean English rendering because ruach simultaneously means 'spirit,' 'wind,' and 'breath,' while Elohim can function as 'God' or as an intensifying adjective ('mighty'). We retained the traditional 'Spirit of God' but noted the ambiguity. The rhyming pair tohu vavohu ('formless and empty') loses its phonetic force in English. We rendered raqia as 'expanse' rather than 'firmament' since the KJV term now misleads modern readers.*

Connections: *The 'formless and empty' state of verse 2 recurs in Jeremiah 4:23 as a vision of un-creation. The blessing of fruitfulness (1:28) will be renewed to Noah (9:1) and echoed in the patriarchal promises. The image of God (1:26-27) becomes the theological foundation for the sanctity of human life in Genesis 9:6 and is developed in Psalm 8.*

¹At the very start, God created the heavens and the earth. ²Now the earth was formless and empty, and darkness was over the surface of the deep, and the Spirit of God was hovering over the surface of the waters. ³Then God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. ⁴God saw that the light was good, and God separated the light from the darkness. ⁵God called the light "day," and the darkness he called "night." And there was evening and there was morning—the first day. ⁶Then God said, "Let there be an expanse in the midst of the waters, and let it separate the waters from the waters." ⁷So God made the expanse and separated the waters that were below the expanse from the waters that were above the expanse. And it was so. ⁸God called the expanse "sky." And there was evening and there was morning—the second day. ⁹Then God said, "Let the waters below the sky be gathered into one place, and let the dry land appear." And it was so. ¹⁰God called the dry land

"earth," and the gathering of the waters he called "seas." And God saw that it was good. ¹¹Then God said, "Let the earth sprout vegetation—seed-bearing plants and fruit trees bearing fruit according to their kinds, with their seed in them, on the earth." And it was so. ¹²The earth brought forth vegetation—seed-bearing plants according to their kinds, and trees bearing fruit with their seed in them, according to their kinds. And God saw that it was good. ¹³And there was evening and there was morning—the third day. ¹⁴Then God said, "Let there be lights in the expanse of the sky to separate the day from the night, and let them serve as signs for appointed times, for days, and for years. ¹⁵And let them be lights in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth." And it was so. ¹⁶God made the two great lights—the greater light to govern the day and the lesser light to govern the night—and the stars. ¹⁷God set them in the expanse of the sky to give light on the earth, ¹⁸to govern the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness. And God saw that it was good. ¹⁹And there was evening and there was morning—the fourth day. ²⁰Then God said, "Let the waters swarm with living creatures, and let birds fly above the earth across the face of the expanse of the sky." ²¹So God created the great sea creatures and every living thing that moves, with which the waters swarmed, according to their kinds, and every winged bird according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. ²²God blessed them, saying, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the waters in the seas, and let the birds multiply on the earth." ²³And there was evening and there was morning—the fifth day. ²⁴Then God said, "Let the earth bring forth living creatures according to their kinds—livestock, crawling things, and wild animals of the earth according to their kinds." And it was so. ²⁵God made the wild animals of the earth according to their kinds, the livestock according to their kinds, and every creature that crawls on the ground according to its kind. And God saw that it was good. ²⁶Then God said, "Let us make humanity in our image, according to our likeness, and let them rule over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, over the livestock, over all the earth, and over every crawling thing that crawls on the earth."

²⁷So God created humanity in his own image;
in the image of God he created him;
male and female he created them.

²⁸God blessed them, and God said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth and subdue it, and rule over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves on the earth." ²⁹Then God said, "Look, I have given you every seed-bearing plant on the face of all the earth, and every tree that has fruit with seed in it. They will be yours for food. ³⁰And to every wild animal of the earth, to every bird of the sky, and to everything that crawls on the earth—everything that has life in it—I have given every green plant for food." And it was so. ³¹God saw everything that he had made, and it was very good. And there was evening and there was morning—the sixth day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Heavens' (plural) reflects the Hebrew hashamayim (שָׁמַיִם), which is grammatically plural. Most modern translations render this as 'heavens' rather than the KJV's singular 'heaven.'
1. The Hebrew reshit (רִשִׁית) means 'beginning' or 'first.' Whether this refers to an absolute beginning ('In the beginning, God created...') or a temporal clause ('When God began to create...') is debated among scholars. The traditional absolute reading is retained here as it is the most natural reading of the Masoretic vowel pointing.
1. The particle et (אֶת) marks the definite direct object and has no English equivalent. It appears twice, once before 'the heavens' and once before 'the earth,' giving both objects equal grammatical weight.
2. 'Now' rather than 'And' signals a circumstantial clause in the Hebrew. The syntax here (waw + noun, rather than the wayyiqtol narrative form) indicates this verse describes the state of the earth, not a sequential action after verse 1.
2. The phrase tohu vavohu (תֹּהוּ וָבֹהוּ) is a rhyming pair found only here and in Jeremiah 4:23 and Isaiah 34:11. It describes a state of formlessness, emptiness, and disorder — not nothingness, but an unformed, unfilled condition. 'Formless and empty' captures both elements: tohu (formless, waste, chaos) and vohu (emptiness, void).
2. 'The deep' translates tehom (תְּהוֹם), referring to the primordial waters or abyss. Some scholars note a possible linguistic connection to the Babylonian Tiamat (the chaos sea-goddess in the Enuma Elish), though this is debated. In the Hebrew text, tehom is not personified or mythologized — it is simply the deep waters.

2. 'Spirit of God' translates ruach Elohim (רוח אֱלֹהִים). This is genuinely ambiguous: ruach can mean 'spirit,' 'wind,' or 'breath,' and Elohim can function as an adjective meaning 'mighty' or 'great.' Possible readings include: (1) 'the Spirit of God' (a divine person), (2) 'a wind from God' or 'a divine wind,' (3) 'a mighty wind.' The traditional reading 'Spirit of God' is retained here.
2. 'Hovering' (merachephet, מְרַחֵף) replaces the KJV's 'moved.' This verb appears elsewhere only in Deuteronomy 32:11, where it describes an eagle hovering over its young. It suggests protective, watchful presence rather than mere motion.
3. The Hebrew is strikingly brief and powerful — only five words. The jussive form yehi (יְהִי, 'let there be') followed immediately by the identical form vayehi (וַיְהִי, 'and there was') creates a dramatic verbal echo: command and fulfillment mirror each other exactly.
3. 'Then' renders the wayyiqtol (וַיִּקְטֹל), the standard Hebrew narrative verb form, which conveys sequential action. This marks the beginning of God's creative speech.
4. 'Good' translates tov (טוֹב), which encompasses a range of meaning: good, beautiful, fitting, pleasing, functioning as intended. This is the first of seven occurrences of God evaluating his creation as 'good' in this chapter (vv. 4, 10, 12, 18, 21, 25, 31).
4. 'Separated' (hivdil, הִבְדִּיל) is a key verb in this chapter, appearing five times (vv. 4, 6, 7, 14, 18). The act of creation in Genesis 1 is substantially an act of separation — dividing light from darkness, waters from waters, day from night. This organizing, ordering activity contrasts with the 'formless and empty' state of v. 2.
5. The act of naming in the ancient Near East signifies authority and dominion. By naming the light and darkness, God demonstrates sovereign authority over them.
5. The Hebrew reads yom echad (יוֹם אֶחָד), literally 'day one' using the cardinal number, not the ordinal 'first day' (which would be yom rishon). This is unique — days 2 through 5 use ordinal numbers (second, third, fourth, fifth), and day 6 uses the ordinal with the definite article ('the sixth day'). Some scholars see significance in 'day one' as emphasizing its uniqueness. The rendering 'the first day' follows convention for English readability, but the literal Hebrew is 'one day.'
5. The formula 'there was evening and there was morning' establishes the pattern for each creative day. The sequence evening-then-morning (rather than morning-then-evening) reflects the Hebrew reckoning of a day from sunset to sunset, a practice still observed in Jewish tradition.
5. The meaning of 'day' (yom) in Genesis 1 is debated. It can refer to a literal 24-hour period, a longer age, or a literary/structural framework. The text itself does not resolve this, and this rendering does not take a position on the question.
6. 'Expanse' translates raqia (רָקִיעַ), from the root raqa meaning 'to beat out' or 'to spread out' (as a metalworker hammers metal into a thin sheet). The KJV's 'firmament' comes from the Latin Vulgate's firmamentum, which implies a solid dome — and indeed, ancient Israelite cosmology likely conceived of a solid dome separating the waters above from those below. 'Expanse' is used here as a more neutral term that does not commit to either a solid or atmospheric interpretation. The translator note preserves the original conceptual background.
6. The separation of 'waters from waters' reflects ancient Near Eastern cosmology in which the sky was understood as holding back an upper ocean (the source of rain) from the lower waters (seas, rivers, underground springs). This cosmological framework is shared with other ancient Near Eastern creation texts but is here presented within a monotheistic, ordered framework.
7. The verb here is asah (עָשָׂה, 'made'), distinct from bara (בָּרָא, 'created') in verse 1. Asah is the common word for making or doing and is not restricted to divine activity. The alternation between bara and asah throughout this chapter has been much discussed; the two verbs appear to be used as near-synonyms here, though bara carries a stronger sense of bringing into being something new.
7. 'And it was so' (vayehi-khen, וַיְהִי-כֵן) is a formulaic confirmation that God's command was carried out. It appears six times in this chapter (vv. 7, 9, 11, 15, 24, 30).
8. The Hebrew shamayim (שָׁמַיִם) is the same word translated 'heavens' in verse 1. Here it refers specifically to the visible sky (the raqia), while in verse 1 it refers to the cosmic heavens. English requires a distinction that the Hebrew leaves fluid. 'Sky' is used here to differentiate from the broader 'heavens' of verse 1.
8. Day 2 is notably the only day in the creation account that lacks the formula 'God saw that it was good.' Many scholars suggest this is because the separation of the waters is not completed until day 3, when the lower waters are gathered and dry land appears — and day 3 receives two 'good' evaluations (vv. 10 and 12), perhaps compensating for the absence here.
9. 'Gathered' translates yiqqavu (יִקְצְאוּ), from the root qavah, meaning 'to gather, to collect, to converge.' The same root appears in the noun miqveh ('gathering, collection, pool') in the next verse.
9. 'Dry land' translates yabbashah (יַבְשָׁה), which specifically denotes land that is dry in contrast to water. It is named 'earth' (erets) in the next verse, but here its defining characteristic is its dryness — its emergence from the waters.
10. 'Earth' translates erets (אֶרֶץ), which can mean earth, land, ground, territory, or country depending on context. Here it refers to the dry land as opposed to the seas.
10. 'Gathering' translates miqveh (מִקְוֶה), from the same root as the verb in verse 9. This word later gives its name to the miqveh — the ritual immersion pool in Jewish practice.

10. 'Seas' (yammim,) is plural, indicating multiple bodies of water, even though they were gathered into 'one place' (v. 9). This may reflect the observable reality of distinct seas and oceans.
10. This is the first of two 'good' evaluations on day 3 (see also v. 12), which some scholars connect to the absence of a 'good' declaration on day 2.
11. The Hebrew uses a cognate construction: tadshé ha'arets deshe () — literally 'let the earth vegetate vegetation' or 'let the earth sprout sprouts.' The verb and its object share the same root (d-sh-a), creating an emphatic expression. 'Sprout vegetation' captures this.
11. The text appears to describe three categories of plant life: (1) deshe () — vegetation or green growth in general; (2) esev mazria zera () — seed-bearing plants/herbs; (3) ets peri () — fruit trees. However, the precise relationship between these categories is debated. Some read deshe as the general category with the other two as subcategories. The rendering treats deshe as the general term, with the other two specifying types of vegetation.
11. 'According to their kinds' (lemino,) introduces a key concept in this chapter — that plants and animals reproduce 'according to their kind' (min,). This phrase establishes the idea of distinct, ordered categories in creation.
12. The fulfillment (v. 12) closely mirrors the command (v. 11), following the pattern established throughout this chapter: God speaks, and creation responds in exact obedience. Minor variations between command and fulfillment are characteristic of Hebrew narrative style.
12. This is the second 'good' evaluation on day 3. See the note on verse 8 regarding the absence of this formula on day 2.
13. The formula is identical in structure to verse 5 and will recur for each subsequent day. Beginning with day 2, the ordinal numbers are used (sheni, 'second'; shlishi, 'third'; etc.), whereas day 1 uniquely uses the cardinal number echad ('one'). See the note on verse 5.
14. 'Lights' translates meorot (), meaning 'luminaries' or 'light-bearers.' This is distinct from or (, 'light') in verse 3. The luminaries are vessels or bearers of light, not light itself — light was already created on day 1.
14. 'Appointed times' translates moadim (), which the KJV renders 'seasons.' However, moadim does not primarily mean seasons of the year (spring, summer, etc.) but rather 'appointed times' or 'fixed occasions' — including festivals, sacred assemblies, and liturgical seasons. This word later becomes the technical term for Israel's appointed feasts (Leviticus 23). The rendering 'appointed times' preserves this broader meaning.
14. 'Signs' (otot,) refers to indicators or markers. The celestial bodies serve as signs — marking times, seasons, and possibly portents. This does not imply astrology but rather the observable use of celestial cycles for timekeeping and calendar-setting.
14. God's speech in verse 14 continues through verse 15. The verse division is an editorial addition; the Hebrew flows as a single command.
15. This verse completes God's speech that began in verse 14. The closing quotation mark is placed here. The practical function of the luminaries is stated: to give light on the earth. This is their purpose — they serve creation, not the other way around.
15. In the context of the ancient Near East, where sun and moon were widely worshiped as deities, this text is strikingly demythologizing. The sun and moon are not named; they are merely 'lights' that God made and placed in the sky. They are servants of God's purposes, not objects of worship.
16. The Hebrew deliberately avoids the words shemesh ('sun') and yareach ('moon'). These are referred to only as 'the greater light' (hammaor haggadol) and 'the lesser light' (hammaor haqqaton). This is widely understood as a deliberate polemical choice — in surrounding cultures, the sun (Shamash) and moon (Sin/Yarikh) were major deities. By reducing them to unnamed functional objects, the text strips them of any divine status.
16. 'Govern' translates memshelet (), from the root m-sh-l ('to rule, to have dominion'). The KJV's 'rule' is also accurate. 'Govern' is used here to convey the orderly, administrative nature of their role.
16. 'And the stars' (ve'et hakkokhavim) appears almost as an afterthought in the Hebrew — a brief addition at the end of the verse. This is another element of the text's anti-mythological perspective: the stars, also worshiped in the ancient Near East, are given no elaboration. God simply made them.
17. 'Set' translates natan (), which primarily means 'to give' but here carries the sense of 'to place, to set, to appoint.' God gives the luminaries their position — they are placed where God determines, reinforcing their subordinate, created status.
17. Verses 17–18 form a single sentence continuing from the making of the lights in verse 16. The verse divisions break up what is a continuous statement of purpose.
18. This verse completes the purpose statement for the luminaries, echoing the language of verse 4 where God himself separated light from darkness. Now the luminaries are given this function as God's instruments — maintaining the separation that God established.
18. The verb 'to separate' (lehavdil) appears here for the fifth time in the chapter (vv. 4, 6, 7, 14, 18), underscoring that creation is fundamentally an act of ordering and distinguishing.
19. The standard day-closing formula. Day 4 corresponds structurally to day 1: on day 1 God created light and separated it from darkness; on day 4 God creates the light-bearers to govern that separation. This pattern of correspondence (days 1–3 forming domains, days 4–6 filling those domains with rulers/inhabitants) is a widely recognized structural feature of Genesis 1.
20. 'Swarm' translates yishretsu (), from the root sh-r-ts, meaning 'to swarm, to teem, to multiply abundantly.' The noun sherets (, 'swarming things') from the same root emphasizes the abundance and teeming nature of aquatic life. The KJV's 'bring forth

abundantly' captures the sense but loses the vividness of 'swarm.'

20. 'Living creatures' translates *nephesh chayyah* (), literally 'a living soul' or 'a living being.' *Nephesh* here refers to animate life — creatures that breathe, move, and live. It does not carry the later Greek philosophical meaning of an 'immortal soul' separable from the body.
20. 'Birds' translates *oph* (), which broadly covers flying creatures — not just birds but potentially including winged insects. 'Birds' is used for readability, but the Hebrew category is broader.
20. 'Across the face of the expanse' — the Hebrew *al-penei* (, 'upon the face of') indicates the birds fly in front of or against the backdrop of the sky, not within the *raqia* itself.
21. The verb *bara* (, 'created') reappears here — its second use in the chapter (after v. 1). Its use for the sea creatures may be significant: the creation of animate life is presented as a new, distinctly divine act, not merely a continuation of the previous creative work.
21. 'Great sea creatures' translates *tanninim hagedolim* (). The KJV's 'great whales' is too narrow. *Tannin* () can refer to large sea creatures, serpents, or even mythological sea monsters (cf. Isaiah 27:1; Psalm 74:13; Job 7:12). In ancient Near Eastern mythology, the sea and its monsters represented chaos, and the creator deity's defeat of the sea monster was a central motif. Here, God simply creates these creatures — they are not rivals or adversaries but part of his ordered creation. The text demythologizes what surrounding cultures mythologized.
21. 'Every winged bird' translates *kol-oph kanaph* (), literally 'every bird of wing' or 'every winged flyer.' The addition of *kanaph* ('wing') specifies that this refers to winged flying creatures.
22. This is the first occurrence of divine blessing (*vayyevarekh*,) in the Bible. Blessing in the Hebrew Bible is not merely a wish or prayer — it is a bestowal of power, vitality, and capacity. God's blessing here empowers the creatures to reproduce and fill their habitats.
22. 'Be fruitful and multiply' (*peru urevu*,) is a command that becomes a major theme in Genesis, repeated to humanity (1:28), to Noah (9:1, 7), and echoed throughout the patriarchal narratives. It is a word of blessing and empowerment, not merely a command.
22. The KJV's 'fowl' is updated to 'birds' for modern readability. The Hebrew *oph* () is the same word as in verse 20.
23. Day 5 corresponds structurally to day 2: on day 2 God separated the waters and created the sky-domain; on day 5 he fills those domains with sea creatures and birds. This 'forming-then-filling' pattern continues the structural symmetry of the chapter.
24. Three categories of land animals are specified: (1) *behemah* () — domesticated animals or livestock; (2) *remes* () — crawling or creeping things, including small animals, reptiles, and insects; (3) *chayyat-erets* () — wild animals, literally 'living things of the earth.' The distinction between *behemah* (domesticated) and *chayyah* (wild) is important in later biblical legislation (Leviticus 11).
24. 'Let the earth bring forth' (*totse ha'arets*) — the earth is commanded to participate in producing land animals. This is notable: unlike the sea creatures, which God *bara* ('created'), the land animals are brought forth from the earth. The earth is an agent in God's creative process, though under God's sovereign command.
25. The order of the animal categories changes between the command (v. 24: livestock, crawling things, wild animals) and the fulfillment (v. 25: wild animals, livestock, crawling things). Such variation in repeated lists is a common feature of Hebrew style and does not imply a different order of events.
25. Note that 'ground' here translates *adamah* (), distinct from *erets* (, 'earth/land') used elsewhere. *Adamah* refers to the cultivable soil or ground — the same word from which *adam* ('humanity/man') is derived in Genesis 2:7. The wordplay between *adamah* and *adam* is a significant motif in Genesis.
26. 'Humanity' translates *adam* (), which here is clearly a collective noun referring to humankind as a whole, not a specific individual or male. This is confirmed by the plural pronoun 'them' (*yirdu*, 'let them rule') in the same verse and by the explicit 'male and female' in verse 27. The KJV's 'man' reflects older English usage where 'man' could mean 'humankind,' but this is no longer standard usage.
26. The plural 'Let us make' (*na'aseh*,) and 'our image... our likeness' (*betsalmenu... kidmutenu*) have generated extensive debate. Major interpretations include: (1) God addresses a heavenly court or divine council (cf. 1 Kings 22:19; Isaiah 6:8; Job 1:6); (2) a 'plural of deliberation' — God deliberating with himself; (3) a 'plural of majesty' (the 'royal we'); (4) Christian tradition reads this as a reference to the Trinity. The text does not resolve this ambiguity, and this rendering does not favor any particular interpretation.
26. 'Image' (*tselem*,) and 'likeness' (*demut*,) are near-synonyms used together for emphasis. *Tselem* often refers to a physical representation or statue (cf. the 'images' of tumors in 1 Samuel 6:5). *Demut* indicates resemblance or similarity. Together they convey that humanity bears a resemblance to God — though the precise nature of this resemblance (physical? functional? relational? vocational?) has been debated throughout Jewish and Christian history.
26. 'Rule' translates *yirdu* (), from *radah* (), meaning 'to rule, to have dominion, to tread.' This is a strong verb implying authoritative governance. The scope of human rule extends over all other living creatures — fish, birds, livestock, and crawling things — and over 'all the earth' itself.

27. This verse is structured as Hebrew poetry — three parallel lines, each using the verb *bara* ('created'). The threefold repetition of *bara* is emphatic and unique in this chapter; no other creative act receives this level of emphasis. The poetic structure is preserved in the rendering with line breaks.
27. The shift from singular 'him' (*oto*,) to plural 'them' (*otam*,) within the same verse is significant. It reflects the movement from adam as a collective singular ('humanity') to the concrete reality of male and female individuals. Both male and female together constitute the 'image of God' — the image is not limited to one sex.
27. 'Male and female' (*zakhar unqevah*,) are biological terms — *zakhar* ('male,' literally 'the one who is remembered/marked') and *neqevah* ('female,' literally 'the one who is pierced/bored'). These terms emphasize the sexual differentiation of humanity as part of God's creative design.
27. The verb *bara* ('created') appears three times in this single verse — and only three other times in the entire chapter (vv. 1, 21, and here). Its concentration in this verse underscores that the creation of humanity is the climactic act of divine creation.
28. The blessing and commission to humanity echoes the blessing given to the sea creatures and birds in verse 22, but with significant additions: 'subdue' the earth and 'rule over' all living creatures. Humanity shares the blessing of fertility with the animals but receives a unique mandate of governance.
28. 'Fill' translates *mil'u* (). The KJV's 'replenish' reflected 17th-century English where 'replenish' simply meant 'fill' (not 'fill again'). The Hebrew carries no implication of refilling something previously filled.
28. 'Subdue' translates *kivshuha* (), from the root *k-v-sh* (), which is a strong verb meaning 'to subdue, to bring under control, to conquer.' Elsewhere it is used for subjugating enemies (Numbers 32:22, 29) or forcing someone into servitude (Nehemiah 5:5; Jeremiah 34:11, 16). Its strength has generated much discussion about humanity's relationship to the earth — whether this authorizes exploitation or responsible management. The text presents it as a divine commission within the context of a creation pronounced 'very good.'
28. 'Rule' translates *radu* (), the imperative of *radah*, the same verb used in verse 26. Here it is addressed directly to humanity as a command.
29. 'Look' translates *hinneh* (), the Hebrew attention-getting particle. The KJV's 'Behold' is archaic; 'Look' serves the same function in modern English — drawing attention to what follows.
29. 'Food' translates *okhlah* (), from the root '*k-l*' ('to eat'). The KJV's 'meat' reflected older English usage where 'meat' simply meant 'food' in general, not specifically animal flesh. 'Food' is the accurate modern rendering.
29. This verse, along with verse 30, prescribes a vegetarian diet for both humans and animals at creation. Explicit divine permission to eat animal flesh does not come until after the flood (Genesis 9:3). This has been noted by Jewish and Christian commentators throughout history as indicating an ideal or original state that differs from the post-fall, post-flood reality.
29. God's speech continues into verse 30. The quotation remains open.
30. 'Everything that has life in it' translates *asher-bo nephesh chayyah* (), literally 'in which is a living being/soul.' This defines which creatures receive the provision of green plants — those possessing animate life (*nephesh chayyah*).
30. 'Every green plant' translates *kol-yereq esev* (), literally 'all greenness of plants.' *Yereq* means 'green,' 'greenery,' or 'vegetation.' The animal diet prescribed here is entirely plant-based, paralleling the human diet of seeds and fruits in verse 29.
30. This verse completes God's speech that began in verse 29. The closing quotation mark is placed after 'for food.'
30. The statement that all animals were originally given plants for food includes predators. The text presents an originally non-violent creation — a theme echoed in Isaiah's vision of the restored creation where 'the lion will eat straw like the ox' (Isaiah 11:7; 65:25).
31. 'Very good' (*tov meod*,) is the climactic evaluation of the entire creation. All previous evaluations were simply 'good' (*tov*); now, with creation complete and humanity in place, the whole is assessed as 'very good.' The intensifier *meod* ('very, exceedingly') elevates this final assessment above all previous ones.
31. The Hebrew has 'the sixth day' (*yom hashishi*,) with the definite article *ha-* () before the ordinal — the only day (besides possibly the seventh day in 2:3) to receive the definite article. Days 2–5 are simply 'a second day,' 'a third day,' etc., but this is 'THE sixth day.' Many scholars see this as marking the climactic significance of day 6 as the culmination of creation.
31. The *hinneh* (, 'behold/look') before 'very good' has been integrated into the English naturally. The Hebrew reads literally: 'And God saw all that he had made, and look — very good.' The 'look' functions as an exclamation emphasizing the quality of the assessment.

2

Summary: *God rests on the seventh day and makes it holy. A second, closer-focus account of creation follows: God forms the man from dust, plants a garden in Eden, and commands him not to eat from the tree of knowledge. Finding no suitable helper among the animals, God builds a woman from the man's side, and they are united as one flesh.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The first thing declared holy (qadash) in the Bible is not a place or a person but a day — time itself is sanctified before space. The verbal root shavat ('to cease') behind 'Sabbath' means completion, not exhaustion. The wordplay between adam ('humanity') and adamah ('ground') in verse 7 encodes the inseparable bond between humans and earth. The man's poem in verse 23 is the first human speech in the Bible — and it is poetry.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered tsela (v. 21) as 'side' rather than 'rib,' since the Hebrew word elsewhere means an entire side of a structure (Exodus 25:12; 1 Kings 6:34). The traditional 'rib' narrows what the Hebrew leaves architecturally open. The phrase ezer kenegdo (v. 18) resists translation: ezer means 'helper' but carries no connotation of subordination — God himself is called Israel's ezer (Psalm 121:2). Kenegdo means 'corresponding to' or 'opposite,' implying equality and complementarity.*

Connections: *The Sabbath rest (2:2-3) becomes the basis for the fourth commandment (Exodus 20:8-11). The command regarding the tree of knowledge (2:16-17) sets up the crisis of chapter 3. The 'one flesh' union (2:24) is cited by Jesus in Matthew 19:5 and by Paul in Ephesians 5:31. Eden's river system (2:10-14) places paradise in geographical memory.*

¹So the heavens and the earth were completed, and all their host. ²On the seventh day God finished his work that he had done, and he rested on the seventh day from all his work that he had done. ³God blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on it he rested from all his work that God had created and made. ⁴This is the account of the heavens and the earth at their creation, when the LORD God made earth and sky. ⁵No shrub of the field had yet appeared on the earth, and no plant of the field had yet sprouted, for the LORD God had not sent rain on the earth, and there was no man to work the ground. ⁶But a mist would rise from the earth and water the whole surface of the ground. ⁷Then the LORD God formed the man from the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life, and the man became a living being. ⁸The LORD God planted a garden in Eden, in the east, and there he placed the man whom he had formed. ⁹The LORD God made to grow out of the ground every tree that is pleasing to look at and good for food, and the tree of life in the middle of the garden, and the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. ¹⁰A river flowed out of Eden to water the garden, and from there it divided and became four branches. ¹¹The name of the first is Pishon; it is the one that winds through the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. ¹²The gold of that land is good; bdellium and onyx stone are also there. ¹³The name of the second river is Gihon; it is the one that winds through the whole land of Cush. ¹⁴The name of the third river is the Tigris; it is the one that flows east of Assyria. And the fourth river is the Euphrates. ¹⁵The LORD God took the man and placed him in the garden of Eden to work it and to keep it. ¹⁶The LORD God commanded the man, saying, "You may freely eat from every tree of the garden, ¹⁷but from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you must not eat, for on the day you eat from it you will certainly die." ¹⁸Then the LORD God said, "It is not good for the man to be alone. I will make a helper corresponding to him." ¹⁹Now the LORD God had formed out of the ground every animal of the field and every bird of the sky, and he brought them to the man to see what he would call them. And whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name. ²⁰The man gave names to all the livestock, to the birds of the sky, and to every wild animal of the field. But for the man, no helper corresponding to him was found. ²¹So the LORD God caused a deep sleep to fall upon the man, and he slept. Then he took one of his sides and closed up the flesh in its place. ²²The LORD God built the side that he had taken from the man into a woman, and he brought her to the man.

²³Then the man said,

"This one, at last, is bone of my bones

and flesh of my flesh.
She shall be called 'woman,'
for from man she was taken."

²⁴For this reason a man will leave his father and his mother and hold fast to his wife, and they will become one flesh. ²⁵The man and his wife were both naked, and they felt no shame.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Completed' translates vayyekhullu (), from the root k-l-h ('to finish, to complete, to bring to an end'). This same root appears in the next verse. The creation account reaches its conclusion: everything is finished.
1. 'Host' translates tseva'am (), meaning 'their army, their host, their array.' The word tsava can refer to a military force, a heavenly army (stars, angels), or an organized multitude. Here it encompasses everything that populates the heavens and the earth — celestial bodies, living creatures, and all that fills creation. The phrase 'LORD of hosts' (YHWH tseva'ot), a major divine title, draws on this same word.
2. The Hebrew states that God finished his work 'on the seventh day' (bayyom hashevi'i), which could imply that some completing work occurred on day 7. The Septuagint (Greek translation) changed this to 'on the sixth day,' apparently to avoid that implication. The Masoretic Hebrew text is rendered here as it stands. The completion may be understood as the act of ceasing itself: resting is the final act that completes the work.
2. 'Rested' translates vayyishbot (), from the root sh-b-t (), meaning 'to cease, to stop, to rest.' This is the verbal root behind the noun Shabbat (, 'Sabbath'). The word primarily means 'to cease from activity' rather than 'to recuperate from exhaustion' — God does not rest from weariness but from completion.
2. 'Work' translates melakhah (), which denotes purposeful, skilled work — craftsmanship, labor, occupation. It is later used as the technical term for the work prohibited on the Sabbath (Exodus 20:10). The same word describes the skilled work of constructing the tabernacle (Exodus 31:3–5), creating a parallel between God's creation of the world and Israel's construction of the sanctuary.
3. 'Made it holy' translates vayyeqaddesh (), from the root q-d-sh (), meaning 'to set apart, to consecrate, to make sacred.' This is the first occurrence of the concept of holiness in the Bible. Notably, the first thing declared holy is not a place or a person but a unit of time — the seventh day. The KJV's 'sanctified' is accurate but 'made it holy' is clearer in modern English.
3. God's blessing of the seventh day echoes his blessings of the living creatures (1:22) and humanity (1:28). The day itself receives the same kind of divine empowerment and favor bestowed upon living things.
3. The phrase 'created and made' (bara... la'asot) uses both key creation verbs — bara ('to create,' uniquely divine) and asah ('to make,' general production). The Hebrew literally reads 'which God created to make' or 'which God had created by making.' This may be a hendiadys (two words expressing one idea) meaning 'created and made,' or it may suggest that God created with the purpose of making — that is, creation was purposeful work. The rendering follows the hendiadys reading.
3. The seventh day is unique in the creation account: it has no evening-morning formula closing it. All six previous days end with 'there was evening and there was morning — the Nth day.' The absence of this closure for day 7 has been noted by commentators throughout history; some see it as suggesting the seventh day remains perpetually open.
4. 'Generations' translates toledot (), one of the most important structural terms in Genesis. It means 'generations,' 'account,' 'history,' or 'origins.' The toledot formula ('These are the generations of...') appears ten times in Genesis (2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10; 11:27; 25:12; 25:19; 36:1; 37:2), serving as a structuring device for the entire book. Whether the formula introduces what follows or summarizes what precedes is debated; here it appears to do both — summarizing the creation account while transitioning to the Eden narrative.
4. This verse marks the first appearance of the divine name YHWH () in the Bible. From this point through the end of chapter 3, God is consistently referred to as 'the LORD God' (YHWH Elohim,), combining the personal covenant name with the general title for God. This combined form is rare outside Genesis 2–3. Following established convention, YHWH is rendered as LORD (in small capitals) to distinguish it from Adonai ('Lord').
4. 'On the day' (beyom,) does not mean a literal 24-hour day here but 'at the time when' or 'when.' This is a common temporal use of yom in Hebrew.
4. The word order reverses between the two halves of the verse: 'heavens and earth' (hashamayim veba'arets) in the first half becomes 'earth and heavens' (erets veshamayim) in the second. The second pair also lacks the definite articles present in the first. This chiasmic structure (A-B / B'-A') is a common Hebrew literary device and may signal the transition from the cosmic perspective of chapter 1 (heavens first) to the earthly perspective of chapter 2 (earth first).
5. This verse describes a pre-agricultural landscape — a world before cultivated plants and before rain. Two reasons are given for the absence of vegetation: (1) God had not yet sent rain, and (2) there was no human to work the soil. This establishes the interdependence of divine provision (rain) and human labor (agriculture) as necessary for the flourishing of the land.

5. 'Shrub of the field' (siach hassadeh, שִׁיחַ חֲסַדֵּה) and 'plant of the field' (esev hassadeh, עֵשֶׂב חֲסַדֵּה) are distinct from the vegetation of 1:11–12. The word sadeh ('field') suggests cultivated or open land rather than the whole earth. These may refer specifically to wild shrubs and cultivated crops — the flora that depends on rain and human cultivation.
5. 'Work' translates la'avod (לָאָבַד), from avad (אָבַד), meaning 'to work, to serve, to till.' This verb will reappear in verse 15 for the man's role in the garden. The human vocation of working the ground (adamah) is presented as integral to creation's design, not as a consequence of the fall.
5. The verse structure is complex, functioning as a temporal clause dependent on what follows (vv. 6–7): 'When no shrub... had yet appeared... and there was no man... then a mist went up... and the LORD God formed the man.' The rendering restructures for English clarity while preserving the sense.
6. 'Mist' translates ed (עָד), a rare and difficult Hebrew word occurring only here and in Job 36:27. Its meaning is uncertain. Possible renderings include: (1) 'mist' or 'fog' (traditional); (2) 'stream' or 'spring' (based on a possible Akkadian cognate edû, meaning 'underground water source' or 'flood'); (3) 'flow' or 'surge' of underground water. The rendering retains the traditional 'mist' while acknowledging the uncertainty.
6. The verb forms ya'aleh (יָאֲלֶה, imperfect) and vehishqah (וְהִשְׁקָה, perfect with waw consecutive) indicate habitual or ongoing action — 'would rise... and would water.' This describes a recurring process, not a single event. The rendering captures this with 'would rise... and water.'
7. 'Formed' translates vayyitser (וַיַּיְצֵר), from yatsar (יָצַר), the verb used for a potter shaping clay (cf. Isaiah 29:16; 45:9; Jeremiah 18:4–6). The image is of God as a craftsman, hands-on, shaping the man from raw material. This is distinct from bara ('created,' 1:1) and asah ('made,' 1:7) — yatsar conveys intimate, artisanal forming.
7. The wordplay between adam (אָדָם, 'man/humanity') and adamah (אֲדָמָה, 'ground/soil') is one of the most significant puns in the Hebrew Bible. The man (adam) is formed from the ground (adamah) — his very name embeds his origin. This wordplay cannot be fully reproduced in English. An approximate equivalent would be 'earthling from earth' or 'human from humus' (both share a Latin root), but these are too informal for the text's register.
7. 'Dust' (aphar, אֶפְרַיִם) emphasizes the humble, fragile nature of the man's physical constitution. The same word recurs in the curse of 3:19 ('to dust you shall return'), framing human existence between dust and dust.
7. 'Breath of life' translates nishmat chayyim (נִשְׁמַת חַיִּים). The word neshamah (נֶשְׁמָה) is distinct from ruach (רוּחַ, 'spirit/wind/breath' in 1:2). Neshamah refers specifically to the breath that animates — the life-breath that makes a creature alive. God's direct, intimate breathing into the man is unique in the creation account; no animal receives life this way.
7. 'Living being' translates nephesh chayyah (נֶפֶשׁ חַיָּה), the same phrase used for the animals in 1:20–21, 24. The man shares this designation with the animals — he too is an animate, breathing creature. What distinguishes him is not a different category of being but the manner of his creation (formed by God's hands, animated by God's breath) and his commission (the image of God, 1:26–27). The KJV's 'living soul' reflects the later Greek philosophical reading of 'soul' (psychē); the Hebrew nephesh does not imply an immaterial substance separable from the body.
8. 'Planted' (vayyitta, וַיַּיִטֵּא) — God is depicted as a gardener, planting a garden. This continues the portrayal of God as personally, physically involved in creation (a potter in v. 7, a gardener here). The anthropomorphic language is striking and deliberate.
8. 'Eden' (עֵדֶן) is both a place name and a word meaning 'delight,' 'pleasure,' or 'luxury.' The Septuagint translated it as paradeisos ('paradise'), which is the origin of the English word 'paradise.' The Hebrew text treats Eden as a geographical region within which the garden is planted — the garden is 'in Eden,' not identical with it.
8. 'In the east' translates miqqedem (מִקְדָּם), which can mean 'in the east,' 'from the east,' or 'in ancient times / from of old.' The primary meaning of qedem is 'east' (the direction one faces), but it also carries the temporal sense of 'before, formerly, long ago.' The spatial reading ('in the east') is followed here, but the temporal ambiguity is noted.
9. 'Pleasing to look at' translates nechmad lemar'eh (נֶחְמַד לְמַרְאֵה). The word nechmad ('desirable, delightful, coveted') from the root ch-m-d will recur in 3:6 when the woman sees that the tree of knowledge is 'desirable' (nechmad) — creating a deliberate verbal echo between God's provision (all the good trees) and the forbidden tree's allure.
9. Two named trees stand out from among all the trees of the garden: (1) the tree of life (ets hachayyim, עֵץ הַחַיִּים), and (2) the tree of the knowledge of good and evil (ets hadda'at tov vara, עֵץ הַדָּא'אֵת טוֹב וָרָע). The grammatical relationship between these two trees and their placement is somewhat ambiguous — the text says the tree of life is 'in the middle of the garden' but does not explicitly state the location of the tree of knowledge (though 3:3 places the prohibited tree 'in the middle of the garden').
9. 'Knowledge of good and evil' (da'at tov vara) — what this knowledge entails is widely debated: (1) moral discernment (knowing right from wrong); (2) experiential knowledge (experiencing good and evil firsthand); (3) comprehensive knowledge (merism — 'good and evil' meaning 'everything'); (4) adult wisdom or sexual awareness. The ambiguity is preserved in the rendering. The text does not explain what the knowledge is; it only narrates its prohibition and consequences.
10. 'Branches' translates rashim (רָשִׁים), literally 'heads.' In a river context, rosh ('head') can mean 'headwater,' 'source,' or 'branch.' The image is of a single river emerging from Eden, watering the garden, and then splitting into four major waterways. Whether these are understood as four headwaters (tributaries flowing into Eden) or four branches (distributaries flowing out from Eden) is debated. The flow described — a river comes out of Eden, then divides — supports 'branches' (distributaries).

10. The geographical description in verses 10–14 anchors the garden in what appears to be real-world geography (Tigris, Euphrates) while including rivers (Pishon, Gihon) that cannot be identified with certainty. This blend of known and unknown geography has led to extensive debate about whether the passage is meant as literal cartography or as theological geography.
11. 'Pishon' () — this river has not been conclusively identified. Proposed identifications range from a dried-up Arabian river to a canal in Mesopotamia. The name may be related to the root p-w-sh ('to leap, to spring forth').
11. 'Winds through' translates hassovev (), from the root s-b-b ('to surround, to go around, to encircle'). The KJV's 'compasseth' is archaic for the same meaning.
11. 'Havilah' () — a region associated with precious materials. It appears elsewhere in Genesis 10:7, 29; 25:18; 1 Samuel 15:7. Its exact location is uncertain; candidates include Arabia, East Africa, or India.
12. 'Bdellium' translates bedolach (), a word of uncertain meaning. It may refer to: (1) a fragrant resin or gum (bdellium); (2) a precious stone; (3) pearls. In Numbers 11:7, manna is compared to bedolach in appearance. The traditional rendering 'bdellium' is retained because no single modern equivalent captures the uncertain range.
12. 'Onyx' translates shoham (), a precious stone whose exact identification is uncertain. Candidates include onyx, carnelian, lapis lazuli, or beryl. Shoham stones are later used on the high priest's ephod (Exodus 25:7; 28:9, 20). 'Onyx' follows the traditional identification.
12. The detailed description of precious materials (gold, bdellium, onyx) in the land watered by Eden's river evokes abundance and divine generosity. These same materials later appear in the construction of the tabernacle, reinforcing the connection between Eden and sacred space.
13. 'Gihon' () — the name may be related to the root g-y-ch ('to burst forth, to gush'). A spring named Gihon exists in Jerusalem (1 Kings 1:33, 38), but whether it is connected to this river is uncertain. Like the Pishon, this river has not been conclusively identified.
13. 'Cush' () is rendered directly from the Hebrew rather than using the KJV's 'Ethiopia.' While Cush is often associated with the region south of Egypt (modern Sudan/Ethiopia/Eritrea), it can also refer to a Mesopotamian region (the Kassites were sometimes called Kushites). The identification depends on the overall geographical scheme, which remains disputed.
14. 'Tigris' renders the Hebrew Chiddeqel (), the Hebrew name for the Tigris River. The more widely recognized name 'Tigris' is used for clarity. The KJV's 'Hiddekel' is a direct transliteration of the Hebrew. The Akkadian name is Idiqlat.
14. 'East of Assyria' translates qidmat Ashshur (). The Tigris does flow through and east of ancient Assyrian territory, consistent with known geography.
14. The Euphrates (Perat,) is mentioned without description, presumably because it was the best-known river to the original audience. The Euphrates and Tigris are the two great rivers of Mesopotamia, firmly grounding this passage in real-world geography — even as the Pishon and Gihon remain unidentified.
14. The mention of these four rivers has long been used to locate Eden in or near Mesopotamia (modern Iraq), though the Pishon and Gihon complicate any precise identification.
15. 'Placed' translates vayyannicheh (), from the root n-w-ch (), meaning 'to rest, to settle, to place.' This is not the same verb as in verse 8 (vayyasem, 'he put/set'). The root nuach suggests that God settled or gave rest to the man in the garden — the garden is a place of rest as well as work.
15. 'To work it and to keep it' translates le'ovdah uleshomrah (). These two verbs — avad ('to work, to serve') and shamar ('to keep, to guard, to watch over') — carry theological significance beyond gardening: (1) avad is the standard verb for serving God and for priestly service in the sanctuary (Numbers 3:7–8; 8:26; 18:7); (2) shamar is used for keeping/guarding God's commands (Genesis 17:9; Exodus 20:6) and for the Levites' guarding of the tabernacle (Numbers 1:53; 3:7–8). The pairing of avad and shamar appears together for tabernacle service in Numbers 3:7–8 and 18:7. This lexical overlap suggests the garden functions as a proto-sanctuary — a sacred space where the man serves and guards in a priestly role.
15. The KJV's 'dress it' (for avad) reflects archaic English usage where 'dress' meant 'to tend, to cultivate.' 'Work it' is the modern equivalent.
16. 'You may freely eat' translates akhol tokhel (), an infinitive absolute followed by a finite verb — a Hebrew construction that intensifies the verb. Literally 'eating you shall eat.' This emphatic permission stands in deliberate contrast to the emphatic prohibition in the next verse (mot tamut, 'dying you shall die'). The lavish permission precedes the single restriction.
16. The command is addressed to the man alone (singular 'you'), before the creation of the woman. This raises the question — later important in chapter 3 — of how the woman learned about the prohibition. The text does not address this directly.
16. God's speech continues into verse 17. The quotation remains open.
17. 'You will certainly die' translates mot tamut (), another infinitive absolute construction: 'dying you shall die.' This mirrors the emphatic permission of verse 16 (akhol tokhel, 'eating you shall eat'). The symmetry is deliberate: emphatic freedom, emphatic boundary.
17. 'On the day you eat from it' (beyom akhalkha,) — this has generated much discussion, since Adam and Eve do not physically die on the day they eat (3:6–7). Interpretive options include: (1) 'day' is used loosely for 'when' (as in 2:4); (2) spiritual death or separation from God occurs immediately; (3) the process of dying (mortality) begins on that day; (4) 'you will certainly die' is a legal sentence ('you will be

subject to death') rather than a prediction of immediate death. The rendering preserves the literal Hebrew without resolving the ambiguity.

17. This is the first prohibition in the Bible — a single negative command amid comprehensive freedom. The structure emphasizes the generosity of the permission (every tree) against the singularity of the restriction (one tree).
18. 'Not good' (lo-tov,) stands in sharp contrast to the repeated 'good' (tov) and 'very good' (tov meod) evaluations throughout chapter 1. After a series of affirmations that creation is good, this is the first declaration that something is 'not good.' The man's solitude is an incomplete state that requires remedy.
18. 'Helper corresponding to him' translates ezer kenegdo (). This phrase is crucial and frequently misunderstood: (1) ezer (, 'helper') does not imply subordination. The same word is used of God as Israel's 'helper' (Psalm 33:20; 70:5; 115:9–11; Exodus 18:4; Deuteronomy 33:7, 26, 29). It denotes one who provides strength, aid, or rescue — one who supplies what is lacking. (2) kenegdo () means 'corresponding to him,' 'matching him,' 'suitable for him,' literally 'as opposite him' or 'as in front of him.' The sense is of a counterpart, a matching complement — not a subordinate assistant but a partner of equal nature who corresponds to and completes the man.
18. The KJV's 'help meet' uses 'meet' as an adjective meaning 'suitable' or 'fitting' (archaic English). Over time, 'help meet' was misread as a compound noun 'helpmeet' or 'helpmate,' obscuring both the strength of ezer and the meaning of kenegdo.
19. The verb vayyitser (, 'formed') is the same potter's verb used for the man's formation in verse 7. The animals share with the man the origin of being formed from the ground (adamah), though they do not receive the divine breath.
19. 'Had formed' — the wayyiqtol form vayyitser could be rendered as simple past ('formed') or as pluperfect ('had formed'). The pluperfect reading ('had formed') is adopted here, understanding this verse as referring back to the animal creation already described in chapter 1, not as narrating a new creative act. This avoids an apparent contradiction with the sequence in chapter 1 where animals are created before humans. However, the Hebrew verb form itself does not make this distinction; 'formed' is equally valid grammatically.
19. 'To see what he would call them' — God brings the animals to the man with genuine interest in the outcome. The naming is not dictated by God but left to human judgment. In the ancient Near East, naming implies authority over what is named; the man exercises a delegated sovereignty over the animal kingdom.
19. 'Whatever the man called each living creature, that was its name' — the man's naming is authoritative and ratified. God does not correct or override the names. This reflects the human role as God's image-bearer exercising real (not merely ceremonial) authority in creation.
20. The animal categories here — livestock (behemah), birds of the sky (oph hashamayim), and wild animals of the field (chayyat hassadeh) — are consistent with the categories established in chapter 1 (1:24–25). 'Livestock' for behemah maintains consistency with chapter 1.
20. The naming process serves a narrative purpose beyond taxonomy: it demonstrates that no animal is a suitable counterpart for the man. The search through the entire animal kingdom and the verdict — 'no helper corresponding to him was found' — sets up the creation of the woman as the answer to a need that the animals cannot fill. The man's aloneness is not resolved by the presence of animals, however numerous or varied.
20. 'For the man' translates ule'adam (). The KJV renders this as 'for Adam,' treating adam as a proper name. At this stage in the narrative, the word still functions primarily as 'the man' (with and without the article). The transition from common noun to proper name is gradual in Genesis 2–5 and cannot be pinpointed to a single verse.
21. 'Deep sleep' translates tardemah (), a divinely induced unconsciousness, not ordinary sleep. The same word describes the deep sleep God brings upon Abraham during the covenant ceremony in Genesis 15:12, and upon Saul's camp in 1 Samuel 26:12. It is a sleep brought about by God for a specific divine purpose — the man is passive while God works.
21. 'Side' translates tsela (), traditionally rendered 'rib.' However, tsela in the Hebrew Bible most commonly means 'side' — the side of the ark (Exodus 25:12), the side of the tabernacle (Exodus 26:20, 26–27), the side chambers of the temple (1 Kings 6:5–6), or the side of a hill (2 Samuel 16:13). It does not elsewhere mean 'rib.' The traditional rendering 'rib' has a very long history (the Septuagint uses pleura, 'side/rib'), but 'side' better represents the Hebrew word's normal meaning. The implication may be that the woman is taken from the man's side — she is his lateral counterpart, not a small or peripheral part of him.
21. 'Closed up the flesh in its place' — God acts as a surgeon, opening the man's body, removing material, and closing the wound. The intimacy and physicality of this act is remarkable. God personally and skillfully works with flesh, just as he earlier shaped dust (v. 7) and planted a garden (v. 8).
22. 'Built' translates vayyiven (), from banah (), meaning 'to build, to construct.' This is a striking verb choice. God does not 'form' (yatsar) the woman as he formed the man from dust, nor does he 'create' (bara) or 'make' (asah) her. He 'builds' her — the same verb used for constructing buildings, cities, and altars. Some scholars see this as elevating the woman's creation: she is architecturally constructed, carefully built up from existing material rather than shaped from raw earth.
22. 'Brought her to the man' — God personally presents the woman to the man, acting in a role that later tradition compared to that of a father escorting a bride. The verb 'brought' (vayyevi'eha) is simple and profound: God brings together what he has made for each other.
23. This is the first human speech in the Bible, and it is poetry. The man's response to seeing the woman is not a clinical observation but a poetic exclamation — structured verse with parallelism and wordplay. The poetic form is preserved in the rendering with line breaks and indentation.

23. 'This one, at last' translates *zot happa'am* (זוֹת הַפּאָאָם), literally 'this one, this time.' After reviewing all the animals and finding no suitable counterpart (vv. 19–20), the man's exclamation expresses recognition, delight, and relief. 'At last' captures the sense of arrival after searching.
23. 'Bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh' (*etsem me'atsamai uvasar mibbesari*) is an expression of kinship and identity. The same formula appears in other kinship contexts (Genesis 29:14; Judges 9:2; 2 Samuel 5:1; 19:12–13). The woman is not a stranger or a different kind of creature — she shares the man's very substance.
23. The wordplay between *ishah* (אִשָּׁה, 'woman') and *ish* (אִישׁ, 'man') is a folk etymology — a meaningful wordplay rather than a strict linguistic derivation. Linguistically, *ishah* likely derives from a different root than *ish* (*ishah* from 'n-sh, *ish* from 'y-sh), but the text presents a deliberate sound-correspondence: she is *ishah* because she was taken from *ish*. The English 'woman' / 'man' (or historically 'wo-man' from 'wif-man') offers a partial parallel. No English rendering can fully reproduce the Hebrew wordplay.
24. This verse shifts from narrative to a general principle — it is the narrator's comment (or possibly God's pronouncement) drawing a universal conclusion from the particular event. The shift from past-tense narrative to future-tense principle ('a man will leave') is marked by 'for this reason' (*al-ken*, כֵּן), which connects the institution of marriage to the creation of woman from man.
24. 'Hold fast' translates *davaq* (דָּבַק), meaning 'to cling, to cleave, to stick to, to adhere.' This is a strong verb of attachment and loyalty. It is used elsewhere for clinging to God in covenant faithfulness (Deuteronomy 10:20; 11:22; 13:5; 30:20; Joshua 22:5; 23:8). The word implies permanent, tenacious bonding — not merely living together but becoming inseparable. The KJV's 'cleave' captures the strength but is archaic.
24. 'One flesh' (*basar echad*, אֶחָד בָּסָר) describes the union of husband and wife. The phrase encompasses physical union (sexual intimacy), but its meaning is broader — a comprehensive merging of life, identity, and purpose. The two become a single social and relational unit. The same word *basar* ('flesh') was used in verse 23 ('flesh of my flesh'), connecting the one-flesh union to the woman's origin from the man's own flesh.
24. This verse is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 19:5 and Mark 10:7–8, and by Paul in Ephesians 5:31, as foundational to the theology of marriage.
25. 'Naked' translates *arummim* (אֲרֻמִּים), the plural of *arum* (אָרֹם). This word sets up one of the most important wordplays in Genesis: the next verse (3:1) introduces the serpent as *arum* (אָרֹם, 'crafty' or 'shrewd'). The near-homophony between *arummim* ('naked') and *arum* ('crafty') creates a literary bridge between the innocence of chapter 2 and the deception of chapter 3. The connection is audible in Hebrew but invisible in English translation.
25. 'Felt no shame' translates *velo yitboshashu* (וְלֹא יִתְבוֹשָׁשׁוּ), from the root *b-w-sh* (בִּשְׁתּוֹם, 'to be ashamed'). The *hitpa'el* form (reflexive/reciprocal) suggests 'they were not ashamed before each other' — there was no self-consciousness, no need for concealment or protection in their mutual vulnerability. This state of unashamed nakedness represents the original condition of human relationship — complete transparency and trust. The loss of this condition is narrated in 3:7–10.
25. This verse concludes chapter 2 and functions as a narrative hinge: it simultaneously describes the final state of innocence and foreshadows its loss. The chapter ends in a state of wholeness — harmonious relationship with God, with each other, and with creation — that chapter 3 will disrupt.

3

Summary: *The serpent deceives the woman into eating from the forbidden tree; the man eats also. Their eyes are opened, they hide from God, and each deflects blame. God pronounces consequences on the serpent, the woman, and the man, then clothes them and expels them from Eden.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The pivotal wordplay between *arummim* ('naked,' 2:25) and *arum* ('crafty,' 3:1) links innocence and cunning through a single sound. The serpent never lies about the tree's effect — their eyes were indeed opened — but frames truth in a way that distorts God's character. The woman's retelling of God's command subtly shifts it: she adds 'do not touch,' softens the death penalty from the emphatic *mot tamut* to the weaker *pen temutun*, and follows the serpent in using 'God' rather than 'the LORD God.'*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew *teshuqah* (v. 16, 'desire') is rare, appearing only here, in 4:7, and in Song of Songs 7:10. Its precise meaning — sexual desire, desire for control, or longing for lost intimacy — is debated, and we noted this in the translator's notes rather than resolving it in the rendering. The protoevangelium (v. 15) uses the same verb (*shuf*) for both the offspring's strike and the serpent's, creating ambiguity about whether the conflict ends in mutual wounding or decisive victory.*

Connections: The enmity between the serpent's seed and the woman's seed (3:15) becomes a lens for the entire biblical narrative — later tradition reads it as the first messianic promise. God's act of clothing the couple (3:21) anticipates the pattern of divine covering that runs through the sacrificial system. Expulsion 'east of Eden' (3:24) begins a geographic motif: Cain goes further east (4:16), and Babel is built in the east (11:2).

¹Now the serpent was more crafty than any other wild animal of the field that the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, "Did God really say, 'You shall not eat from any tree of the garden'?" ²The woman replied to the serpent, "We may eat the fruit of the garden's trees, ³but from the fruit of the tree that is in the middle of the garden, God has said, 'You shall not eat from it, and you shall not touch it, or you will die.'" ⁴The serpent said to the woman, "You will certainly not die, ⁵for God knows that on the day you eat from it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil." ⁶When the woman saw that the tree was good for food, that it was a delight to the eyes, and that the tree was desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some of its fruit and ate. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate. ⁷Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they were naked. So they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves. ⁸They heard the sound of the LORD God moving through the garden during the breezy part of the day, so the man and his wife concealed themselves from the LORD God's presence among the garden's trees. ⁹The LORD God called to the man and said to him, "Where are you?" ¹⁰He said, "I heard the sound of you in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid." ¹¹He said, "Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten from the tree from which I commanded you not to eat?" ¹²The man said, "The woman whom you gave to be with me—she gave me fruit from the tree, and I ate." ¹³Then the LORD God said to the woman, "What is this you have done?" The woman said, "The serpent deceived me, and I ate." ¹⁴Then the LORD God said to the serpent, "Because you have done this, cursed are you above all livestock and above every wild animal of the field. On your belly you will go, and dust you will eat all the days of your life. ¹⁵I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and her offspring. He will strike your head, and you will strike his heel." ¹⁶To the woman he said, "I will greatly increase your pain in childbearing; in pain you will bear children. Your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you." ¹⁷And to the man he said, "Because you listened to the voice of your wife and ate from the tree about which I commanded you, 'You shall not eat from it,' cursed is the ground because of you. In painful toil you will eat from it all the days of your life. ¹⁸Thorns and thistles it will produce for you, and you will eat the plants of the field. ¹⁹By the sweat of your face you will eat bread until you return to the ground, for from it you were taken. For dust you are, and to dust you will return." ²⁰The man named his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living. ²¹The LORD God made garments of skin for the man and his wife and clothed them. ²²Then the LORD God said, "See, the man has become like one of us, knowing good and evil. And now, lest he reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life, and eat, and live forever—" ²³So the LORD God sent him out from the garden of Eden to work the ground from which he was taken. ²⁴He drove the man out, and at the east of the garden of Eden he stationed the cherubim and a flaming sword that turned in every direction to guard the way to the tree of life.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Crafty' translates *arum* (), which can mean 'shrewd,' 'prudent,' 'cunning,' or 'crafty.' In Proverbs, *arum* is a positive quality — the shrewd or prudent person (Proverbs 12:16, 23; 13:16; 14:8, 15, 18; 22:3; 27:12). Here the context gives it a negative edge. The crucial wordplay with 2:25 is that *arummim* ('naked') and *arum* ('crafty') sound nearly identical in Hebrew. The chapter transition pivots on this pun: the man and woman were *arummim* (naked/innocent); the serpent is *arum* (crafty/shrewd). Innocence and cunning are placed side by side, and the narrative tension unfolds between them.
1. The serpent is identified as one of the wild animals that God made — it is a creature, not a deity or cosmic rival. The text does not identify the serpent as Satan; that identification develops later in Jewish and Christian tradition (cf. Wisdom 2:24; Revelation 12:9; 20:2). The rendering follows the text as it stands.
1. The serpent's opening question is rhetorically distorted. God's actual command (2:16–17) was generous: 'You may freely eat from every tree of the garden' except one. The serpent reframes it as a blanket prohibition: 'You shall not eat from any tree?' The distortion invites the woman to correct it — and in doing so, to engage in a conversation about God's command on the serpent's terms.

1. The serpent refers to 'God' (Elohim), not 'the LORD God' (YHWH Elohim) as the narrator and God himself do throughout chapters 2–3. The omission of the personal covenant name may be significant — the serpent depersonalizes God, referring to him by his generic title rather than his relational name.
1. 'Did God really say' translates *aph ki-amar Elohim* (). The particle *aph* () introduces surprise, incredulity, or emphasis — 'Really? Is it true that...?' The serpent's tone casts doubt not on God's existence but on his word and his character.
2. The woman begins correctly — they may eat from the garden's fruit. Her response corrects the serpent's distortion (v. 1), but as verse 3 will show, her recounting of God's command introduces its own alterations. God's speech continues into verse 3; the quotation remains open.
3. The woman's recounting of God's command differs from the original (2:16–17) in three notable ways: (1) She adds 'you shall not touch it' (*velo tig'u bo,*) — God said nothing about touching. (2) She softens the death penalty from 'you will certainly die' (*mot tamut*, an emphatic infinitive absolute construction in 2:17) to 'or you will die' (*pen temutun,* — 'lest you die'), removing the emphasis. (3) She follows the serpent in using 'God' (Elohim) rather than 'the LORD God' (YHWH Elohim). Whether these alterations reflect misunderstanding, embellishment, or the effects of the serpent's framing is not stated by the text.
3. The woman refers to 'the tree that is in the middle of the garden' rather than 'the tree of the knowledge of good and evil' (its name in 2:9, 17). This could indicate vagueness or avoidance, or simply that the tree was known by its location.
4. The serpent directly contradicts God. God declared 'dying you will die' (*mot tamut*, 2:17); the serpent says 'not dying you will die' (*lo mot temutun,*) — the same emphatic construction, negated. The serpent matches God's emphasis precisely while reversing the content. This is the Bible's first recorded lie — a flat denial of God's stated consequence.
4. The serpent's speech continues into verse 5. The quotation remains open.
5. The serpent impugns God's motives — the prohibition exists not for the humans' protection but because God is guarding his own prerogatives. The serpent reframes God's warning as God's insecurity. This is the heart of the temptation: not merely 'eat the fruit' but 'distrust God's character.'
5. 'Like God' translates *kelohim* (), which is genuinely ambiguous. It can mean: (1) 'like God' — like the one God who has been the subject throughout; (2) 'like gods' or 'like divine beings' — a more general category. The KJV renders 'as gods' (lowercase). Since the serpent is speaking about the specific God (Elohim) who gave the command, 'like God' is used here. The ambiguity is noted.
5. 'Knowing good and evil' (*yode'ei tov vara,*) — the serpent promises the same knowledge associated with the forbidden tree (2:9, 17). Ironically, God himself will confirm in 3:22 that the humans have indeed gained this knowledge. The serpent's statement contains a partial truth, which makes it more dangerous than a simple lie: they will know good and evil, but the knowledge will not make them like God in the way the serpent implies.
6. The woman's evaluation of the tree follows a threefold pattern: (1) 'good for food' (*tov lema'akhal*) — physical appetite; (2) 'a delight to the eyes' (*ta'avah-hu la'einayim*) — aesthetic desire; (3) 'desirable for gaining wisdom' (*nechmad lehaskil*) — intellectual/spiritual aspiration. This threefold appeal — body, eyes, mind — is often compared to 1 John 2:16 ('the desire of the flesh, the desire of the eyes, and the pride of life').
6. The word *nechmad* ('desirable') in 'desirable for gaining wisdom' is the same word used in 2:9 to describe all the trees God made: 'every tree that is pleasing (*nechmad*) to look at.' The forbidden tree shares the same desirability as God's good provision — the temptation lies not in some obviously repulsive thing but in something genuinely attractive.
6. 'Who was with her' (*immah,*) indicates that the man was present. The text does not describe him as absent during the conversation with the serpent and then arriving later — he was 'with her.' His silence throughout the exchange is striking. He does not correct the serpent's distortion, does not invoke God's command, does not refuse the fruit. He simply takes and eats.
6. The act itself is described with devastating brevity: 'she took... she ate... she gave... he ate.' Four verbs, no elaboration, no internal dialogue, no described hesitation. The narrative restraint is powerful — the most consequential human act in the story is told in the fewest words.
7. The serpent's promise comes partially true — 'your eyes will be opened' (3:5), and indeed 'the eyes of both of them were opened' (3:7). But the knowledge gained is not the god-like wisdom the serpent promised. The first thing they 'know' is their own nakedness — their vulnerability, their exposure. The promised elevation becomes an experience of diminishment.
7. 'They knew that they were naked' (*vayyede'u ki eirummim hem*) — the word for 'naked' here is *eirummim* (), a variant spelling of the *arummim* () of 2:25. In 2:25 they were naked and unashamed; now they are naked and aware — and the awareness produces the need for concealment.
7. 'Coverings' translates *chagorot* (), meaning 'girdles,' 'loin coverings,' or 'belts.' The KJV's 'aprons' is misleading in modern English. These are minimal coverings for the waist — an attempt to hide from each other what they can no longer bear to expose. The sufficiency of these coverings will be implicitly judged in verse 21, when God replaces them with garments of skin.
8. 'Sound' translates *qol* (), which can mean 'voice' or 'sound.' Here it likely refers to the sound of God's approach — footsteps, rustling, the audible presence of God moving through the garden. The KJV's 'voice' is possible but 'sound' better fits 'walking.'
8. 'Walking' translates *mithallekh* (), the hitpael participle of *halakh* ('to walk'). The hitpael form suggests 'walking about,' 'strolling,' or 'going back and forth' — a leisurely, habitual presence, not a sudden arrival. This implies that God's presence in the garden was a regular occurrence, not a special visitation. The same verb form is used for God's presence in the tabernacle (Leviticus 26:12; Deuteronomy 23:14; 2 Samuel

7:6–7), reinforcing the garden-as-sanctuary connection.

8. 'In the cool of the day' translates *leruach hayyom* (), literally 'at the wind/breeze of the day.' *Ruach* here means 'wind' or 'breeze' — the same word that meant 'Spirit' in 1:2. The phrase likely refers to the late afternoon or evening when a cooling breeze arises. An alternative reading takes *ruach* as 'spirit' — 'at the spirit of the day' — though this is less commonly adopted.
8. The man and his wife hide from God — the relational rupture that follows disobedience. Where once they had unashamed openness before God and each other (2:25), now they conceal themselves. The trees of the garden, which were given for their delight and sustenance (2:9, 16), become instruments of concealment.
9. 'Where are you?' translates *ayyekkah* (), a single Hebrew word combining 'where' (*ayy*) with the second person suffix (*ka*). God's question is not a request for geographical information — the omniscient Creator knows where the man is hiding. The question is relational and confrontational: it invites the man to reckon with where he is — not physically but existentially. He is hiding from God, and God calls him to account.
9. God addresses the man (*ha'adam*) directly, though both the man and his wife are hiding. The interrogation proceeds in the order of responsibility: the man first (vv. 9–12), then the woman (v. 13). The serpent is not questioned but directly sentenced (vv. 14–15).
10. This is the first occurrence of fear in the Bible. Before disobedience, there was no fear of God — only openness and trust. Fear is presented as a consequence of the broken relationship, not as an original feature of the human-divine encounter.
10. The man's answer is both honest and evasive. He admits to hearing, fearing, and hiding — but he attributes his fear to nakedness rather than to guilt. He does not mention eating from the tree. God's follow-up questions (v. 11) will press past this evasion.
10. 'The sound of you' translates *et-qolekha* (), literally 'your sound/voice.' The same word *qol* from verse 8. The man heard God's approach and responded with fear rather than welcome.
11. God's questions move from the general ('Where are you?') to the specific ('Have you eaten from the tree?'). The first question ('Who told you that you were naked?') implies that knowledge of nakedness could only have come from one source — the forbidden tree. Awareness of nakedness is itself evidence of disobedience.
11. The question 'Have you eaten...?' uses the Hebrew interrogative particle *ha-* (), which expects a yes-or-no answer. God does not ask 'What have you done?' but the more pointed 'Have you eaten?' — a direct question that demands confession rather than explanation.
12. The man's response deflects blame in two directions simultaneously. First, he implicates God: 'the woman whom YOU gave to be with me' (*asher natattah immadi*,) — the emphasis falls on God's act of giving the woman. Second, he blames the woman: 'SHE gave me' (*hi natnah-li*,) — the emphatic pronoun 'she' shifts responsibility. The man does finally admit 'and I ate' (*va'okhel*), but it comes as an afterthought, tacked on after the blame has been distributed.
12. The man who greeted the woman with a poem of joyful recognition ('bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh,' 2:23) now speaks of her as an object of blame — 'the woman whom you gave.' The relational rupture extends in all directions: between human and God, between man and woman.
13. God's question to the woman — 'What is this you have done?' (*mah-zot asit*,) — is not an inquiry but an accusation framed as a question. It echoes the same formulation used in later legal and prophetic accusation (cf. Genesis 12:18; 26:10; 29:25).
13. 'Deceived me' translates *hishshi'ani* (), from the root *n-sh-* (), meaning 'to deceive, to mislead, to beguile.' The *hiphil* form emphasizes causation — the serpent caused her to be deceived. Like the man, the woman deflects blame, though her claim of deception has a basis in the narrative: the serpent did lie about the consequences (v. 4) and misrepresent God's motives (v. 5). Paul references this in 2 Corinthians 11:3 and 1 Timothy 2:14.
13. The chain of blame runs: man blames woman and God (v. 12); woman blames serpent (v. 13). God does not question the serpent — there is no defense offered or invited. The judgments proceed in reverse order: serpent (vv. 14–15), woman (v. 16), man (vv. 17–19).
14. 'Cursed' translates *arur* (), the passive participle of *arar* (, 'to curse'). This is the first curse in the Bible. Significantly, the serpent is the only one of the three parties that is directly cursed. The woman's consequences (v. 16) are not called a curse, and in the man's case, the ground is cursed 'because of him' (v. 17) — the man himself is not cursed. The serpent alone bears the direct curse.
14. 'Above all livestock and above every wild animal' (*mikkol habehehemah umikkol chayyat hassadeh*) — the preposition *min* can mean 'more than' or 'from among.' The serpent is cursed beyond all other animals — set apart in its degradation as it was once set apart in its craftiness (v. 1).
14. 'On your belly you will go' (*al-gechonkha telekh*) — this implies a change in the serpent's mode of locomotion, suggesting that crawling on its belly was not its original condition. The text does not elaborate on what the serpent was like before.
14. 'Dust you will eat' (*ve'aphar tokhal*) — serpents do not literally eat dust, but the idiom of 'eating dust' or 'licking dust' signifies utter humiliation and defeat in the ancient Near East (cf. Psalm 72:9; Isaiah 49:23; Micah 7:17). The curse consigns the serpent to perpetual degradation.
14. God's speech to the serpent continues into verse 15.
15. 'Enmity' translates *eivah* (), meaning 'hostility, hatred, deep antagonism.' God himself establishes this enmity — it is not a natural development but a divinely decreed state of conflict between the serpent (and its offspring) and the woman (and her offspring). The conflict is perpetual and multigenerational.

15. 'Offspring' translates zera (זֶרַע), literally 'seed.' The word can refer to agricultural seed, semen, a single descendant, or descendants collectively. Both the serpent's 'seed' and the woman's 'seed' are mentioned — the conflict extends beyond these two individuals to their respective lines.
15. 'He will strike your head, and you will strike his heel' — the pronoun hu (הוּא), 'he' is masculine singular, referring grammatically to the woman's 'seed/offspring.' This could be read collectively ('they/her descendants will') or individually ('he/a specific descendant will'). The Septuagint translates with the masculine pronoun autos, maintaining the ambiguity. Christian tradition (from at least the 2nd century) has read this as a reference to a specific future deliverer — the 'protoevangelium' or 'first gospel.' Jewish tradition generally reads it as describing the ongoing natural enmity between humans and snakes. The rendering preserves the singular 'he' of the Hebrew without interpretive addition.
15. 'Strike' translates yeshufkha/teshufennu, from the verb shuf (שָׁף). This is a rare and difficult verb, occurring only here, in Job 9:17, and in Psalm 139:11. Its meaning is debated: 'to crush,' 'to strike,' 'to bruise,' 'to snap at,' or 'to trample.' The same verb is used for both parties — the offspring strikes the serpent's head, and the serpent strikes the offspring's heel — but the targets differ. A strike to the head is potentially fatal; a strike to the heel is painful but not lethal. The asymmetry suggests that the conflict, while mutual, ultimately favors the woman's offspring.
15. This verse has generated more theological interpretation than perhaps any other in Genesis. The rendering follows the Hebrew text without resolving the interpretive questions, which belong in commentary rather than translation.
16. 'I will greatly increase' translates harbah arbēh (רַבְּהָא), the infinitive absolute construction expressing emphatic intensification — 'increasing I will increase.' The same construction appeared in God's emphatic permission (2:16, 'eating you shall eat') and prohibition (2:17, 'dying you shall die'). The pattern of emphatic divine speech continues.
16. 'Your pain in childbearing' — the Hebrew reads itstseveonekh veheronekh (אִתְּסֵוֹנֶכָה וְהֵרֹנֶכָה), literally 'your pain and your conception/pregnancy.' This is likely a hendiadys — two nouns joined by 'and' expressing a single concept: 'your pain in your pregnancy' or 'your painful labor.' The word itsavon (אִצְוֹן, 'pain, toil, hardship') is from the same root ('-ts-b) that will appear in verse 17 for the man's toil with the ground. The man and woman receive parallel consequences: both face increased itsavon in the spheres of their primary vocations — she in bearing children, he in working the ground.
16. 'Your desire will be for your husband' — teshuqah (תִּשְׁוָקָה, 'desire, longing, yearning') is a rare word, occurring only three times in the Hebrew Bible: here, in 4:7 (sin's 'desire' for Cain), and in Song of Solomon 7:10 (the beloved's 'desire' for the woman). The meaning is debated: (1) sexual or emotional desire/longing for the husband; (2) desire to control or dominate the husband (based on the parallel with 4:7, where sin's teshuqah for Cain is paired with the imperative to 'rule over' it); (3) a yearning for the pre-fall relational harmony. The ambiguity is preserved.
16. 'He will rule over you' (vehu yimshol-bakh, וְהוּא יִמְשֹׁל בָּךְ) — from masha (מָשָׁל, 'to rule, to govern, to have dominion'). Whether this is prescriptive (how marriage should function), descriptive (what will happen as a consequence of sin), or punitive (a judgment/sentence) is one of the most contested questions in biblical interpretation. The rendering presents it as a statement of consequence without resolving the theological question.
17. 'Because you listened to the voice of your wife' (ki shamata leqol ishtekha) — the issue is not that the man listened to his wife but that he listened to her rather than to God's command. The verb shama (שָׁמָע, 'to hear, to listen, to obey') with the preposition le- can mean 'to obey, to heed.' The man heeded his wife's leading into disobedience rather than heeding God's prohibition.
17. 'Cursed is the ground because of you' (arurah ha'adamah ba'avurekha) — note carefully: the man himself is not cursed. The ground (adamah) is cursed 'because of' (ba'avur) the man. The adam/adamah wordplay continues: the man (adam) was taken from the ground (adamah) to work it (2:5, 7, 15), and now the ground is cursed because of him. His relationship to his origin is disrupted.
17. 'In painful toil' translates be'itsavon (בְּאִצְוֹן), the same root as the woman's 'pain' (itsavon) in verse 16. The deliberate verbal parallel links their consequences: she will bear children in itsavon; he will eat from the ground in itsavon. Both primary human vocations — generating life and sustaining life — are now marked by the same painful toil.
17. God's speech to the man continues through verse 19.
18. 'Thorns and thistles' (qots vedardar, קֹצִים וְדַרְדָּר) — a paired phrase that appears only here and in Hosea 10:8. The alliterative Hebrew (qots... dardar) has a harsh, prickly sound quality that mimics its content. The cursed ground will now resist human cultivation, producing obstacles alongside (or instead of) food.
18. 'Plants of the field' (esev hassadeh, עֵשֶׂב הַסָּדֵה) — the man's diet shifts from the abundant, freely given fruit of the garden (2:16) to the 'plants of the field' that must be wrested from resistant, cursed soil. The same phrase appeared in 2:5, where these plants had 'not yet sprouted' because 'there was no man to work the ground.' Now that context of labor finds its fullest expression.
19. 'By the sweat of your face' (bezei'at appekha, בְּזֵיעֵי אִפְּיִךָ) — a vivid image of exhausting physical labor. Appekha is literally 'your nose/face,' and ze'at is 'sweat.' Food will come only through bodily exertion.
19. 'Bread' (lechem, לֶחֶם) is often used broadly for 'food' in general, not specifically leavened bread. The man will labor for his sustenance — the freely given food of the garden is replaced by food earned through sweat.
19. 'Until you return to the ground' (ad shuvkha el-ha'adamah) — death is framed as a return. The man came from the ground (adamah, 2:7) and will return to it. The adam-adamah wordplay reaches its conclusion: from adamah the man was taken, and to adamah he will return. His existence is bookended by the soil.

19. 'For dust you are, and to dust you will return' (ki aphar attah ve'el-aphar tashuv,) — this echoes 2:7, where God formed the man from the 'dust of the ground.' The cycle is explicit: dust life dust. This is one of the most quoted lines in scripture, used in burial liturgies across Christian traditions ('ashes to ashes, dust to dust' derives from this verse). Mortality is presented not as the arrival of something alien but as a return to what the man already is.
20. 'Eve' translates Chavvah (חַוְוָה), a name related to the root ch-y-h (ח, 'to live'). The name means 'life,' 'living,' or 'life-giver.' The Hebrew wordplay is between Chavvah and chai (חַי, 'living') — she is 'Life' because she is the mother of all the living.
20. The timing of this naming is remarkable. It comes immediately after the pronouncement of death ('to dust you will return,' v. 19) and before the expulsion from the garden (vv. 23–24). In the face of a death sentence, the man names his wife 'Life.' This has been read as an act of faith — trusting that life will continue despite the curse — or simply as a statement about her biological role. The text does not explain the man's motivation.
20. 'Mother of all the living' (em kol-chai) — this is a title of extraordinary scope. It establishes the woman not merely as the first woman but as the ancestral mother of all human beings.
21. 'Garments of skin' translates kotnot (כְּתוּנֹת). The kotonet (כְּתוּנֶת) is a tunic or long garment — the same word used for Joseph's famous garment (Genesis 37:3) and for priestly vestments (Exodus 28:4, 39–40). These are substantial garments, not the minimal fig-leaf coverings the humans made for themselves (v. 7). God replaces the inadequate human attempt at covering with something durable and effective.
21. 'Of skin' (or, כֶּסֶם) implies the death of an animal. The first clothing requires the first death. God himself provides covering for human shame, and that covering comes at the cost of a life. Many commentators see this as the first act of sacrifice and a foreshadowing of the sacrificial system — God covers sin through death. The text itself does not draw this conclusion explicitly, but the narrative implication is present.
21. God's action here is one of provision and care even in the midst of judgment. After pronouncing consequences, God personally clothes the man and his wife. The verb 'clothed them' (vayyalbishem, בָּשָׂם) portrays God dressing them — an act of intimate care performed for those he has just judged.
22. 'Like one of us' (ke'achad mimmenu, מִמֶּנּוּ) — another instance of divine plural language (cf. 1:26, 'Let us make'). The same interpretive options apply: divine council, royal plural, or trinitarian reference. God confirms what the serpent predicted — the man has indeed gained knowledge of good and evil. The serpent's lie was not in the promise of knowledge but in the denial of its cost.
22. The sentence breaks off mid-thought — 'lest he reach out his hand... and eat, and live forever—' The consequence is not stated; instead, God acts (v. 23). This is a rhetorical figure called aposiopesis — breaking off a sentence before its conclusion, leaving the implication to the hearer. The unstated but implied completion is something like: 'this must be prevented.' The prospect of fallen humanity living forever is treated as so dire it is left unspoken.
22. 'The tree of life' (ets hachayyim) — which was freely available (no prohibition against it was stated in 2:16–17) — now becomes dangerous. Eternal life in a state of alienation from God, knowing good and evil but unable to undo the knowledge, would be an eternal curse rather than a blessing. The expulsion from the garden (vv. 23–24) is thus an act of mercy as well as judgment: God prevents humanity from becoming irredeemably trapped in a fallen immortality.
22. 'See' (hen, הֵן) is the attention-getting particle, similar to hinneh. The KJV's 'Behold' is rendered as 'See' for modern readability.
23. 'Sent him out' translates vayeshallchehu (וַיִּשְׁלַח), from shalach (שָׁלַח, 'to send, to send away, to let go'). This is a milder term than what follows in verse 24 (garash, 'to drive out'). The progression from 'sent out' to 'drove out' intensifies the finality of the expulsion.
23. 'To work the ground from which he was taken' — the man's vocation remains: he will work (avad, אָבַד) the ground (adamah). But instead of working the garden of Eden (2:15), he will work the cursed ground (3:17) from which he was originally taken (2:7). The work continues; the conditions have changed. The verb avad ('to work/serve') links 2:5, 2:15, and 3:23 — the man's purpose endures through the fall, though it is now marked by painful toil.
24. 'Drove out' translates vayegaresh (וַיִּגְעֹרֶשׁ), from garash (גָּרַשׁ), a strong verb meaning 'to drive out, to expel, to banish, to divorce.' It is stronger than 'sent out' (shalach, v. 23). Garash is used for driving out inhabitants from a land (Exodus 23:28–31), for divorce (Leviticus 21:7, 14), and for the expulsion of Hagar (Genesis 21:10). The expulsion from Eden is not a gentle departure but a forcible removal.
24. 'Stationed' translates vayyashken (וַיַּשְׁכֵּן), from shakan (שָׁכַן, 'to dwell, to settle, to cause to dwell'). God causes the cherubim to dwell or take up permanent residence at the garden's entrance. The same root gives rise to the word Shekinah (the divine dwelling presence) in later Jewish theology.
24. 'Cherubim' translates keruvim (כְּרֻבִּים), heavenly beings associated with God's throne and the guarding of sacred space. In later biblical texts, cherubim are depicted on the ark of the covenant (Exodus 25:18–22), woven into the curtains of the tabernacle (Exodus 26:1, 31), and carved in the temple (1 Kings 6:23–28). They are guardians of holy space — the same function they perform here at the entrance to Eden. Their presence reinforces the garden-as-sanctuary interpretation.
24. 'A flaming sword that turned in every direction' (lahat hacherev hammithappekhet, לַחַת הַחֶרֶב הַמִּתְהַפֶּקֶת) — literally 'the flame of the sword, the one turning itself.' Whether the sword is a separate entity from the cherubim or wielded by them is not specified. The hitpa'el form of haphakh ('turning itself') suggests autonomous, ceaseless rotation — a perpetually revolving blade of fire blocking all

approach.

24. "To guard the way to the tree of life' (lishmor et-derekh ets hachayyim) — the verb shamar ('to guard') is the same verb used in 2:15 for the man's commission to 'keep/guard' the garden. The profound irony is unmistakable: the man was placed in the garden to shamar (guard) it, and now cherubim shamar (guard) it against him. The guardian has become the one guarded against. What the man failed to protect is now protected from the man.

4

Summary: *Eve bears Cain and Abel. Both bring offerings; God accepts Abel's but not Cain's. Despite God's warning, Cain kills his brother and is sentenced to wandering. Cain's line develops civilization — cities, music, metalwork — but also escalating violence. The chapter closes with Seth's birth and the beginning of worship.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Abel's name (hevel, 'breath/vapor') is tragically prophetic: the one named 'fleeting' has his life taken. The first occurrence of 'sin' (chattat) in the Bible personifies it as a predator crouching at Cain's door, with its own 'desire' (teshuqah) — the same rare word from 3:16, linking the fall's consequences to the first murder. Lamech's boast (vv. 23-24) escalates Cain's sevenfold protection to seventy-sevenfold vengeance, tracing a trajectory from divine mercy to human brutality.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew avon (v. 13) means simultaneously 'guilt,' 'punishment,' and 'crooked act' — Cain's cry could mean 'my punishment is too great' or 'my guilt is too great.' We rendered it as 'punishment' in context but noted the layered meaning. The verb yada ('knew,' v. 1) for sexual intimacy resists any single English equivalent because it encompasses the full range of personal, relational knowing — not merely physical act.*

Connections: *God's question 'Where is your brother?' (4:9) echoes 'Where are you?' (3:9) — both probe moral evasion. Abel's blood 'crying from the ground' (4:10) reappears in Hebrews 12:24, where Christ's blood 'speaks a better word.' The sevenfold vengeance motif (4:15, 24) inverts into Jesus' seventy-times-seven forgiveness (Matthew 18:22). Seth's line replaces Abel's, continuing the promised seed of 3:15.*

1The man was intimate with his wife Eve, and she conceived and bore Cain, saying, "I have produced a man with the help of the LORD." 2She then bore his brother Abel. Now Abel was a keeper of flocks, and Cain was a worker of the ground. 3In the course of time, Cain brought some of the fruit of the ground as an offering to the LORD. 4And Abel also brought an offering—from the firstborn of his flock and from their fat portions. The LORD looked with favor on Abel and his offering, 5but on Cain and his offering he did not look with favor. So Cain became very angry, and his face fell. 6The LORD said to Cain, "Why are you angry, and why has your face fallen? 7If you do well, will there not be acceptance? But if you do not do well, sin is crouching at the door. Its desire is for you, but you must rule over it." 8Cain spoke to his brother Abel. And when they were in the field, Cain rose up against his brother Abel and killed him. 9Then the LORD said to Cain, "Where is your brother Abel?" He said, "I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?" 10He said, "What have you done? The voice of your brother's blood is crying out to me from the ground. 11Now you are cursed from the ground, which has opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand. 12When you work the ground, it will no longer yield its strength to you. You will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth." 13Cain said to the LORD, "My punishment is more than I can bear. 14Look, you have driven me this day from the face of the ground, and from your face I will be hidden. I will be a fugitive and a wanderer on the earth, and whoever finds me will kill me." 15The LORD said to him, "Therefore, whoever kills Cain will suffer vengeance sevenfold." And the LORD put a mark on Cain so that no one who found him would strike him down. 16Then Cain went out from the presence of the LORD and settled in the land of Nod, east of Eden. 17Cain was intimate with his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. He was building a city, and he named the city after his son Enoch. 18To Enoch was born Irad, and Irad fathered Mehujael, and Mehujael fathered Methushael, and Methushael fathered Lamech. 19Lamech took two wives. The name of the one was Adah, and the name of the other was Zillah. 20Adah bore Jabal; he was the father of those who dwell in tents and raise livestock. 21His brother's name was Jubal; he was the father of all who play the lyre and pipe. 22Zillah also bore Tubal-cain, the forger of all instruments of bronze and iron. The sister of Tubal-cain was Naamah.

²³Lamech said to his wives:

"Adah and Zillah, hear my voice;
wives of Lamech, listen to my words.
I have killed a man for wounding me,
a young man for striking me.

²⁴If Cain is avenged sevenfold,
then Lamech seventy-sevenfold."

²⁵Adam was intimate with his wife again, and she bore a son and named him Seth, saying, "God has appointed for me another offspring in place of Abel, for Cain killed him." ²⁶To Seth also a son was born, and he named him Enosh. At that time people began to call upon the name of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Was intimate with' renders the Hebrew idiom yada (, 'knew'). The verb 'to know' is used throughout the Hebrew Bible as a euphemism for sexual intercourse (cf. Genesis 19:5; 24:16; Judges 11:39; 1 Samuel 1:19). The rendering follows the prompt's principle of making Hebrew idioms meaningful in English while documenting the original expression.
1. 'Cain' (Qayin,) — Eve's explanation creates a wordplay: 'I have acquired/produced (qaniti,) a man.' The name Qayin sounds like the verb qanah (, 'to acquire, to produce, to create'). The precise meaning of qanah here is debated — it can mean 'to acquire,' 'to produce,' 'to create,' or 'to buy.'
1. 'With the help of the LORD' translates et-YHWH (). The preposition et () is ambiguous: (1) 'with the help of' (the LORD assisted); (2) 'with' (together with the LORD); (3) as the direct object marker — 'I have produced a man, namely the LORD' (a theologically startling reading that some ancient interpreters entertained). 'With the help of' is the most natural reading and is adopted here. The ambiguity is noted.
1. This is the first birth in the Bible. Eve's exclamation acknowledges the LORD's role in bringing forth new life — a striking affirmation given the recent expulsion from Eden.
2. 'Abel' (Hevel,) means 'breath,' 'vapor,' or 'futility.' It is the same word used throughout Ecclesiastes ('vanity of vanities,' havel havalim). The name foreshadows Abel's brief life — he will pass away like a breath. Unlike Cain's naming, no explanation for Abel's name is given, which may itself be significant.
2. 'Worker of the ground' (oved adamah,) — Cain continues the vocation assigned to humanity: working the ground (cf. 2:5, 15; 3:23). The verb avad and the noun adamah connect Cain's occupation to the ongoing adam-adamah theme. Abel's occupation as a 'keeper of flocks' (ro'eh tson) introduces pastoralism alongside agriculture.
2. 'Keeper of flocks' — the word ro'eh (, 'shepherd') will become one of the most significant metaphors in the Hebrew Bible, applied to kings, to God himself (Psalm 23), and to the expected Messiah (Ezekiel 34).
3. 'In the course of time' translates miqqets yamim (), literally 'at the end of days.' This is a vague temporal marker — after an unspecified period.
3. 'Offering' translates minchah (), which can mean 'gift,' 'tribute,' or 'offering.' In later Levitical legislation, minchah becomes a technical term for the grain offering specifically (Leviticus 2). Here it is used in its broader sense of a gift brought to God. The text does not prescribe or explain the practice of offering — it assumes it.
3. The text says Cain brought 'some of the fruit of the ground' without specifying quality or quantity. Compare Abel's offering in the next verse, which is described with more specificity.
4. Abel's offering is described with notable specificity: 'from the firstborn' (mibbchorot,) and 'from their fat portions' (umechevehem,). The firstborn represents the best and first of the flock; the fat portions were considered the richest and most valuable part of the animal (and are later designated as belonging to God in Levitical law, Leviticus 3:16–17). The detail suggests Abel offered his best.
4. 'Looked with favor' translates vayyisha (), from sha'ah (, 'to look at, to regard, to pay attention to'). The text does not explain how God's favor was communicated — whether through fire from heaven, visible response, or some other means. The focus is on the divine evaluation: God regarded Abel and his offering.
4. The text says God looked favorably on 'Abel and his offering' — the person before the offering. This has been widely noted: God's regard is first for the person, then for the gift.

5. The text does not explain why God favored Abel's offering over Cain's. Proposed explanations include: (1) the quality of the offering — Abel brought his best (firstborn, fat portions) while Cain's offering is described without such qualifiers; (2) the attitude of the offerer — God regarded the person before the offering; (3) blood sacrifice vs. grain offering. The text is deliberately silent on the reason, and the rendering does not supply one.
5. 'His face fell' (vayyipelu panav,) — an idiom for dejection, resentment, or downcast expression. The Hebrew literally says 'his faces fell' (panim is plural). This contrasts with the 'lifting up' (se'et) mentioned in verse 7.
6. God initiates dialogue with Cain, as he did with the man and woman after the fall (3:9, 11, 13). The questions are not requests for information but invitations to self-examination. God's speech continues into verse 7.
7. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew and has generated extensive discussion. The grammar is irregular and the imagery is compressed.
7. 'Acceptance' translates se'et (), literally 'a lifting up.' This could mean: (1) 'lifting up' of the face — restored dignity and acceptance; (2) 'lifting up' of the offering — acceptance of the gift; (3) forgiveness. The word provides a counterpoint to the 'fallen face' of verse 5 — if Cain does well, his face will be lifted.
7. 'Sin is crouching at the door' (lappetach chattat rovets,) — sin is personified as a predatory animal lying in wait at the entrance. The participle rovets ('crouching') depicts a beast poised to spring. This is the first use of the word chattat ('sin') in the Bible.
7. 'Its desire is for you, but you must rule over it' (ve'eleikha teshugato ve'attah timshol-bo) — this language precisely mirrors 3:16 ('your desire will be for your husband, and he will rule over you'). The same rare word teshugah ('desire') and the same verb mashal ('to rule') appear in both verses. The parallel is deliberate: as the woman's desire and the man's rule create a tension in their relationship, so sin's desire for Cain creates a tension he must overcome. Unlike 3:16, where the ruling is stated as a consequence, here it is presented as a command — Cain is told he 'must rule over' sin.
7. The gender of the pronouns is irregular: chattat ('sin') is feminine, but the participle rovets ('crouching') and the pronoun suffixes are masculine. Some scholars explain this as treating sin like a masculine demon or predatory animal; others see it as simply irregular grammar. The rendering uses 'its' and 'it' to smooth the English.
8. 'Cain spoke to his brother Abel' — the Hebrew says vayyomer Qayin el-Hevel achiv (), literally 'Cain said to Abel his brother,' but does not include the content of what was said. The Septuagint, Vulgate, Syriac Peshitta, and Samaritan Pentateuch all supply the words 'Let us go out to the field.' The Masoretic Text leaves the speech blank. This may be an intentional omission — the words are swallowed up by the violence that follows — or it may reflect a textual gap. The rendering follows the MT as it stands.
8. The phrase 'his brother' (achiv,) appears twice in this single verse and seven times in this chapter (vv. 2, 8 [twice], 9 [twice], 10, 11). The repetition is relentless — Cain cannot escape the fact that his victim is his brother. The narrative insists on the relationship even as Cain destroys it.
8. 'Killed' translates vayyahagehu (), from harag (, 'to kill, to slay'). This is the first human death in the Bible — and it is a murder. Like the act of eating in 3:6, the murder is narrated with stark brevity.
9. God's question 'Where is your brother Abel?' echoes 'Where are you?' (3:9). In both cases God asks a question whose answer he already knows, inviting confession rather than seeking information.
9. 'Am I my brother's keeper?' (hashomer achi anokhi,) — the word shomer ('keeper') is from shamar (), the same verb used for the man's commission to 'keep/guard' the garden (2:15) and the cherubim's task of 'guarding' the way to the tree of life (3:24). Cain's deflection is thus deeply ironic: the entire vocation of humanity has been to shamar — to keep, guard, and protect. His rhetorical question implicitly rejects this calling.
9. Cain's response combines a lie ('I do not know') with a defiant question. Where the man in chapter 3 deflected blame, Cain denies knowledge and challenges God's right to hold him accountable.
10. 'Blood' is plural in Hebrew — deme'i (), literally 'bloods.' The rabbinic tradition interprets this plural as signifying not only Abel's blood but the blood of all his potential descendants — all the lives that would have come from him. The plural may also simply reflect the quantity of spilled blood.
10. 'Crying out' translates tso'aqim (), from tsa'aq (, 'to cry out, to shriek, to appeal for help'). This is the verb used for the desperate cry of the oppressed, slaves, and victims (cf. Exodus 2:23; 3:7, 9). The shed blood has a voice that appeals to God for justice. The ground (adamah) that received the blood becomes a witness.
10. God's speech continues through verse 12.
11. 'You are cursed from the ground' — unlike the serpent who was 'cursed above all' animals (3:14), Cain is cursed 'from the ground' (min-ha'adamah). The preposition min can indicate source ('cursed by the ground') or separation ('cursed away from the ground'). Either way, the man's relationship with the adamah — his origin, his vocation, his sustenance — is now fundamentally broken. The ground that was cursed 'because of' Adam (3:17) now rejects Cain entirely.
11. The ground is personified — it 'opened its mouth' (patsah et-piha) to receive Abel's blood. The earth is not a passive surface but an active participant, absorbing the blood and testifying against the murderer. The personification connects the ground's 'voice' (v. 10) with its 'mouth' (v. 11).

12. Cain's punishment intensifies the curse pronounced on Adam. For Adam, the ground would produce thorns and thistles but still yield food through hard labor (3:17–19). For Cain, the ground will withhold its strength entirely — his agricultural vocation is rendered futile. The worker of the ground (oved adamah, v. 2) is now rejected by the ground.
12. 'A fugitive and a wanderer' (na vanad,) — a paired expression using two words from the root n-w- ('to wander, to move about') and n-w-d ('to wander, to flee'). The alliterative pair emphasizes restless, rootless existence. Cain, who worked the settled soil, is condemned to endless wandering.
13. The Hebrew avoni () is deliberately ambiguous — it can mean 'my iniquity/guilt' or 'my punishment.' The statement could be read as: (1) 'My punishment is more than I can bear' — a complaint about the severity of the sentence; (2) 'My guilt is too great to be forgiven' — a confession of irredeemable sin. The KJV and most English translations follow the 'punishment' reading. The ambiguity between guilt and punishment is inherent to the Hebrew word avon (), which encompasses the sin, its guilt, and its consequences as a unified reality.
13. God's speech continues into verse 14.
14. Cain identifies two dimensions of his punishment: (1) separation from the ground (me'al penei ha'adamah) — banishment from the soil that was his livelihood; (2) separation from God's presence (umippanekha essater) — hidden from God's face. Exile from the adamah and exile from God are presented as equally devastating.
14. 'From your face I will be hidden' — this echoes 3:8, where the man and woman 'hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God.' But while they hid voluntarily, Cain's hiddenness is imposed — a consequence of judgment rather than a choice of shame.
14. The verb garashta ('you have driven me out') is the same verb used for the expulsion from Eden (3:24, garash). Cain's banishment parallels and intensifies his parents' expulsion.
15. 'Vengeance sevenfold' (shiv'atayim yuqqam,) — God protects the murderer from being murdered. Even Cain, cursed and exiled, remains under a measure of divine protection. Sevenfold vengeance is an extreme deterrent — disproportionate retribution against anyone who would take justice into their own hands.
15. 'A mark' (ot,) — the nature of this mark is not specified. The word ot means 'sign,' 'mark,' or 'token' — the same word used for the 'signs' (otot) of the celestial bodies in 1:14. It is a visible indicator, but the text does not describe what it looked like. Proposals range from a physical mark to a protective sign or banner. The mark is protective, not punitive — it shields Cain from being killed.
15. God's response to Cain's fear reveals a complex divine stance: judgment without abandonment. Cain is cursed and exiled but not left unprotected. The God who judges also preserves.
16. 'Went out from the presence of the LORD' (vayyetse milifnei YHWH) — this geographical departure signifies theological distance. Cain moves away from God's manifest presence, fulfilling his own lament in verse 14.
16. 'The land of Nod' (erets-Nod,) — a wordplay on the root n-w-d ('to wander'). Nod means 'wandering.' Cain, condemned to be a 'wanderer' (nad), settles in the land of 'Wandering.' The irony is that the restless wanderer settles — and in the next verse, builds a city.
16. 'East of Eden' (qidmat-Eden) — the same directional language used in 2:8. Movement 'eastward' in Genesis consistently represents movement away from God's presence (cf. 11:2; 13:11).
17. 'Enoch' (Chanokh,) means 'dedicated' or 'initiated,' from the root ch-n-kh ('to dedicate, to train, to initiate'). The same root gives us Hanukkah ('dedication').
17. The subject of 'was building a city' (vayehi boneh ir) is ambiguous — it could be Cain or Enoch. The rendering follows the traditional reading that Cain built the city and named it after his son.
17. The condemned wanderer builds a city — the first city in the Bible. This stands in tension with the judgment of wandering (v. 12). Some interpreters see this as Cain's defiance of his sentence; others as God's tacit allowance of human civilization despite the fall. The text does not evaluate the act.
18. 'Fathered' translates yalad (), which literally means 'to bear, to give birth to' but in genealogical lists with a male subject means 'to father, to beget.' The KJV's 'begat' is the traditional rendering but is archaic. 'Fathered' is used consistently throughout.
18. Several names in Cain's genealogy resemble names in Seth's line (chapter 5): Enoch/Enoch, Irad/Jared, Mehujael/Mahalalel, Methushael/Methuselah, Lamech/Lamech. Whether these are variants of the same tradition or deliberate parallels is debated by scholars.
19. Lamech is the first man recorded as taking two wives — the first polygamist in the Bible. This appears within Cain's lineage, and the narrative context may imply a departure from the one-man-one-woman pattern established in 2:24. The text reports it without explicit evaluation.
19. 'Adah' () may mean 'ornament' or 'beauty.' 'Zillah' () may mean 'shade' or 'shadow,' possibly from tsel (, 'shadow').
20. 'Father of' (avi,) here means 'ancestor of' or 'originator of' — the founder of a way of life. Jabal is credited as the originator of pastoral nomadism — tent-dwelling and livestock-herding.
20. 'Jabal' () may be related to yaval ('to bring, to lead') or yuval ('stream').
20. Verses 20–22 describe the origins of three aspects of human civilization — pastoralism (Jabal), music (Jubal), and metallurgy (Tubal-cain). These cultural advances arise within Cain's lineage, presenting a complex picture: the line of the murderer produces the founders of human culture and

technology.

21. 'Jubal' () is related to the root y-b-l, from which the word yovel ('jubilee,' 'ram's horn') derives. The name itself echoes the sound of music.
21. 'Lyre' translates kinnor (), a stringed instrument — David's instrument (1 Samuel 16:23). 'Pipe' translates ugav (), a wind instrument, possibly a flute or panpipe. Together they represent stringed and wind instruments — the full range of instrumental music. The KJV's 'harp and organ' uses terms that carry different connotations in modern English.
22. 'Tubal-cain' () — the name combines Tubal (possibly a people-name, cf. Genesis 10:2) with Cain. The compound name connects this metalworker to his ancestor.
22. 'Forger' translates lotesh (), from latash (, 'to sharpen, to hammer, to forge'). The KJV's 'instructor' misses the hands-on craft implied. Tubal-cain is the originator of metallurgy — working bronze (nechoshet, which can also mean copper) and iron (barzel).
22. 'Naamah' () means 'pleasant' or 'lovely.' She is the only daughter mentioned in these genealogies. The text does not explain her significance, though Jewish tradition assigned her various roles.
23. This is poetry — the 'Song of Lamech' — and is rendered with poetic line breaks. It is the second poem in Genesis (after Adam's poem in 2:23) and the first song of violence. The parallelism is precise: 'Adah and Zillah / wives of Lamech'; 'hear my voice / listen to my words'; 'a man / a young man'; 'for wounding me / for striking me.'
23. Whether Lamech is confessing a past killing or boasting of his readiness to kill is debated. The verbs can be read as past tense ('I have killed') or as a declaration of intent. The boastful tone and the comparison to Cain in verse 24 suggest bragging rather than remorse.
23. The 'man' (ish) and 'young man' (yeled) are likely the same person, described in parallel — a common feature of Hebrew poetry where two lines describe the same thing in different terms.
24. Lamech takes God's protective decree over Cain (v. 15) and amplifies it grotesquely for himself — from sevenfold to seventy-sevenfold. Where God's sevenfold vengeance was meant to restrain violence (protecting even the murderer), Lamech's claim escalates violence beyond all proportion. The Song of Lamech represents the trajectory of Cain's line: from murder (Cain) to celebration of murder (Lamech).
24. Jesus's instruction to forgive 'seventy times seven' (Matthew 18:22) may intentionally invert Lamech's boast — replacing the escalation of vengeance with the escalation of forgiveness.
24. The poem ends Cain's genealogy on a note of unrestrained violence and self-aggrandizement, setting up the contrast with Seth's line (vv. 25–26) and preparing for the narrative of escalating wickedness that leads to the flood (6:1–8).
25. This is the first verse where 'Adam' () is used without the article — functioning clearly as a proper name rather than 'the man.' The transition from common noun to proper name is now complete.
25. 'Seth' (Shet,) is explained by a wordplay with shat (, 'appointed, placed, set'). Eve says 'God has appointed (shat) for me another seed' — hence the name Shet. The name means 'appointed' or 'granted.'
25. 'Offspring' translates zera (, 'seed') — the same word used in 3:15 for the woman's 'offspring' who would strike the serpent's head. Seth is the appointed replacement for Abel through whom that seed-line continues.
26. 'Enosh' () means 'man,' 'mortal,' or 'human being' — from a root emphasizing human frailty and mortality (cf. Psalm 8:4; 103:15; Job 7:17). Where adam connects humanity to the ground, enosh connects humanity to mortality and weakness.
26. 'At that time people began to call upon the name of the LORD' (az huchal liqro beshem YHWH) — this statement marks a significant theological development: the beginning of formal worship or invocation of God by his personal name YHWH. The verb huchal () is from chahal (), which can mean 'to begin' or 'to profane.' Most translations read 'began,' but an alternative reading is 'then it was profaned — calling on the name of the LORD' — i.e., the divine name began to be misused. The traditional reading 'began to call upon' is followed here.
26. The chapter ends by establishing two contrasting lines: Cain's line, marked by violence culminating in Lamech's boast (vv. 17–24); and Seth's line, marked by the beginning of worship (vv. 25–26). This contrast sets up the narrative tension that will dominate Genesis 5–6.

5

Summary: *The genealogy from Adam to Noah traces ten generations through Seth's line. Each entry follows a formula: the patriarch's age at his firstborn, remaining years, other children, total lifespan, and death — except Enoch, who 'walked with God' and was taken, and Noah, whose birth is accompanied by a prophecy of relief.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The relentless refrain 'and he died' punctuates every entry — until Enoch, who breaks the pattern entirely. His 365-year lifespan (matching the solar year) and mysterious departure ('he was no more, because God took him') stand as a silent protest against death's dominion. The chapter begins by restating that humanity was made in God's likeness (v. 1), then notes that Adam fathered Seth 'in his own likeness, according to his image' (v. 3) — the divine image now transmitted through human generation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase vayyithalekh et-ha'Elohim ('walked with God,' vv. 22, 24) for Enoch uses the hitpa'el of halakh, suggesting ongoing, intimate companionship rather than a single event. We rendered the second occurrence as 'lived in close fellowship with God' to capture the relational depth. Noah's name is explained through a wordplay that does not quite work linguistically — the name derives from nuach ('to rest') but is explained with nacham ('to comfort/relieve'), suggesting the narrator values theological resonance over strict etymology.*

Connections: *The ten-generation structure parallels the Sumerian King List but with dramatically reduced lifespans. Enoch's translation anticipates Elijah's (2 Kings 2:11). Noah's birth oracle (v. 29) points back to the curse on the ground (3:17) and forward to the post-flood promise (8:21). The genealogy bridges creation and flood, connecting Adam's world to Noah's.*

¹This is the book of the generations of Adam. On the day God created man, he made him in the likeness of God. ²Male and female he created them, and he blessed them and called their name 'mankind' on the day they were created. ³When Adam had lived 130 years, he fathered a son in his own likeness, according to his image, and named him Seth. ⁴The days of Adam after he fathered Seth were 800 years, and he fathered sons and daughters. ⁵All the days of Adam's life were 930 years, and he died. ⁶When Seth had lived 105 years, he fathered Enosh. ⁷Seth lived after he fathered Enosh 807 years and fathered sons and daughters. ⁸All the days of Seth were 912 years, and he died. ⁹When Enosh had lived 90 years, he fathered Kenan. ¹⁰Enosh lived after he fathered Kenan 815 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹¹All the days of Enosh were 905 years, and he died. ¹²When Kenan had lived 70 years, he fathered Mahalalel. ¹³Kenan lived after he fathered Mahalalel 840 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹⁴All the days of Kenan were 910 years, and he died. ¹⁵When Mahalalel had lived 65 years, he fathered Jared. ¹⁶Mahalalel lived after he fathered Jared 830 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹⁷All the days of Mahalalel were 895 years, and he died. ¹⁸When Jared had lived 162 years, he fathered Enoch. ¹⁹Jared lived after he fathered Enoch 800 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²⁰All the days of Jared were 962 years, and he died. ²¹When Enoch had lived 65 years, he fathered Methuselah. ²²Enoch walked with God after he fathered Methuselah 300 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²³All the days of Enoch were 365 years. ²⁴Enoch lived in close fellowship with God, and then he was no more, because God had taken him away. ²⁵When Methuselah had lived 187 years, he fathered Lamech. ²⁶Methuselah lived after he fathered Lamech 782 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²⁷All the days of Methuselah were 969 years, and he died. ²⁸When Lamech had lived 182 years, he fathered a son. ²⁹He named him Noah, saying, "This one will bring us relief from our work and from the painful toil of our hands, from the ground that the LORD has cursed." ³⁰Lamech lived after he fathered Noah 595 years and fathered sons and daughters. ³¹All the days of Lamech were 777 years, and he died. ³²After Noah was 500 years old, Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Book of the generations' (sefer toledot,) — this is the second toledot heading in Genesis (cf. 2:4). The addition of sefer ('book, written record, document') makes this the most formal genealogical introduction in Genesis. It suggests a written source or an authoritative record.

1. 'Adam' here functions both as the proper name of the first man and as the word for 'man/humanity.' The dual meaning is deliberate — the genealogy connects the individual Adam to the human race.
1. 'In the likeness of God' (bidmut Elohim,) echoes 1:26 but uses only demut ('likeness') without tselem ('image'). The concept of the divine image is reaffirmed at the beginning of this genealogy, establishing that the image of God persists through the generations despite the fall.
2. 'Called their name Adam' (vayyiqra et-shemam Adam) — God named both the man and the woman 'Adam.' The name is applied collectively to both, reinforcing that adam is a term for humanity as a whole, not exclusively the male. The rendering uses 'mankind' here to capture the collective sense, though the Hebrew word is simply adam.
2. This verse summarizes 1:27–28 in compressed form, reconnecting the genealogy to the original creation account.
3. 'In his own likeness, according to his image' (bidmuto ketsalmo,) — the terms demut ('likeness') and tselem ('image') from 1:26 are now applied to Adam's relationship with Seth. The word order is reversed (1:26 has 'image... likeness'; here 'likeness... image'), but the pairing is deliberate: as God made Adam in God's image, so Adam fathers Seth in Adam's image. The divine image is transmitted through human generation.
3. This verse establishes the genealogical formula that will repeat through the chapter: age at fathering son's name years after total years death.
4. 'Sons and daughters' — the genealogy acknowledges the existence of other children beyond the named son, though they are not listed. This formula recurs for each patriarch and confirms that the named son is selected for the genealogical line, not as the only child.
5. 'And he died' (vayyamot,) — this refrain closes each entry in the genealogy (with the notable exception of Enoch, v. 24). The repeated 'and he died' functions as a drumbeat throughout the chapter, underscoring the reality of the death sentence pronounced in 2:17 and 3:19. Despite extraordinary lifespans, death claims each generation.
5. The ages recorded in this genealogy are extraordinarily long by modern standards. Various explanations have been proposed: (1) literal years, reflecting a different era of human longevity; (2) symbolic or schematic numbers; (3) a different calculation system. The Masoretic, Septuagint, and Samaritan Pentateuch each preserve different numbers for many of these lifespans. The rendering follows the MT numbers without interpretive comment.
6. The genealogy now follows Seth's line — the line through which the story of God's people will continue. Cain's line, traced in 4:17–24, is left behind.
7. The formulaic pattern continues: age at fathering, remaining years, other children.
8. The death formula vayyamot ("and he died") marks the end of Enosh's entry in the genealogy. This refrain appears for each patriarch except Enoch (v 24), whose departure is described differently — he "walked with God, and was not, for God took him."
9. 'Kenan' (Qenan,) — the name resembles 'Cain' (Qayin), which has prompted scholarly discussion about whether this is a variant of the same name appearing in Seth's line. The rendering uses the standard English form.
10. Enosh's total lifespan of 905 years follows the standard genealogical formula. The extraordinarily long lifespans in this chapter have been interpreted variously: as literal years, as representing dynasties, or as reflecting a pre-flood vitality that diminished after the flood.
11. The death formula vayyamot ("and he died") marks the end of Kenan's entry in the genealogy. This refrain appears for each patriarch except Enoch (v 24), whose departure is described differently — he "walked with God, and was not, for God took him."
12. 'Mahalalel' () means 'praise of God' — from mahalal ('praise') and El ('God'). The name embeds a declaration of praise within the genealogy.
13. Kenan's total lifespan of 910 years follows the standard genealogical formula. The extraordinarily long lifespans in this chapter have been interpreted variously: as literal years, as representing dynasties, or as reflecting a pre-flood vitality that diminished after the flood.
14. The death formula vayyamot ("and he died") marks the end of Mahalalel's entry in the genealogy. This refrain appears for each patriarch except Enoch (v 24), whose departure is described differently — he "walked with God, and was not, for God took him."
15. 'Jared' (Yered,) may mean 'descent' — from yarad (, 'to go down, to descend').
16. Mahalalel's total lifespan of 895 years follows the standard genealogical formula. The extraordinarily long lifespans in this chapter have been interpreted variously: as literal years, as representing dynasties, or as reflecting a pre-flood vitality that diminished after the flood.
17. The death formula vayyamot ("and he died") marks the end of Jared's entry in the genealogy. This refrain appears for each patriarch except Enoch (v 24), whose departure is described differently — he "walked with God, and was not, for God took him."
18. 'Enoch' (Chanokh,) — the same name as Cain's son in 4:17 ('dedicated'). This Enoch, in Seth's line, will be distinguished by his extraordinary fate (vv. 22–24).
19. Jared's total lifespan of 962 years follows the standard genealogical formula. The extraordinarily long lifespans in this chapter have been interpreted variously: as literal years, as representing dynasties, or as reflecting a pre-flood vitality that diminished after the flood.

- 20.** Jared has the second-longest lifespan in this genealogy, after Methuselah (969 years, v. 27).
- 21.** 'Methuselah' (Metushelach,) — the name's meaning is debated. Possible interpretations include 'man of the javelin' (from mat, 'man,' and shelach, 'weapon/missile') or 'his death shall bring' (from mut, 'death,' and shalach, 'to send'). If the latter, the name may be prophetic: according to the chronology, Methuselah dies in the year of the flood.
- 22.** 'Walked with God' (vayyithallekh Chanokh et-ha'Elohim,) — a unique expression in this chapter that breaks the genealogical formula. Where every other patriarch simply 'lived,' Enoch 'walked with God.' The hitpa'el of halakh ('to walk') is the same form used for God's walking in the garden (3:8). It implies a sustained, intimate companionship — a habitual way of life in God's presence. The same phrase is later used of Noah (6:9).
- 22.** The preposition et ('with') indicates accompaniment — Enoch and God walked together, as companions. This is the most compressed and powerful character description in Genesis.
- 23.** Enoch's lifespan of 365 years is by far the shortest in this chapter — yet the narrative presents it not as a truncation but as a distinction. The number 365 corresponds to the days in a solar year, which some scholars see as significant, though the text does not draw this connection explicitly.
- 23.** Crucially, this verse omits the expected refrain 'and he died.' The absence is deafening in a chapter built on the drumbeat of death. What happened instead is stated in the next verse.
- 24.** 'He was not' (ve'einennu,) — instead of 'and he died,' the text says 'and he was not.' The phrase means 'he was no longer' or 'he was gone' — he was no longer present in the earthly realm. This terse statement, unique in the chapter, has fascinated readers for millennia.
- 24.** 'God took him' (laqach oto Elohim,) — the verb laqach ('to take') here implies divine removal from earth. The text does not say where God took him or what form this taking assumed. Later tradition understood it as bodily translation to heaven (cf. Hebrews 11:5; Sirach 44:16; 49:14). The only other person described as being 'taken' by God is Elijah (2 Kings 2:1–11).
- 24.** In a genealogy dominated by death, Enoch's entry stands as a dramatic exception. The pattern of 'and he died... and he died... and he died' is broken by a life so characterized by walking with God that death is bypassed entirely. The contrast gives the chapter a theological dimension beyond mere record-keeping.
- 25.** 'Lamech' () — the same name as the violent descendant of Cain (4:18–24), but a different person. The name's meaning is uncertain.
- 26.** Methuselah's total lifespan of 969 years — the longest lifespan recorded in the Hebrew Bible follows the standard genealogical formula. The extraordinarily long lifespans in this chapter have been interpreted variously: as literal years, as representing dynasties, or as reflecting a pre-flood vitality that diminished after the flood.
- 27.** Methuselah's 969 years make him the longest-lived person recorded in the Bible. According to the MT chronology, Methuselah dies in the year of the flood (his birth year + his age at death = the year of the flood in 7:6). Whether this is coincidental or intentional is debated; if intentional, it suggests he died in the flood or immediately before it.
- 28.** Lamech's entry breaks the formula by not immediately naming his son. Instead, the naming and its explanation are given in the next verse — the most theologically significant naming in the genealogy.
- 29.** 'Noah' (Noach,) — the name is explained with a wordplay, though it is not a direct etymological match. Noah is related to nuach (, 'to rest'), but Lamech's explanation uses the verb nacham (, 'to comfort, to bring relief'). The sound connection (noach/ynachamenu) creates the wordplay even though the roots differ: Noah ('rest') will 'comfort/relieve' (nacham) them. 'Relief' is used to capture the nuach/nacham overlap.
- 29.** 'Painful toil of our hands' (itstsevon yadenu,) — the word itsstsevon is the same root used for the woman's pain in childbearing (3:16) and the man's painful toil with the ground (3:17). Lamech's lament explicitly references the curse of 3:17 ('the ground that the LORD has cursed') — the consequences of the fall are still felt and still lamented generations later.
- 29.** Lamech's hope that Noah will bring relief from the curse anticipates Noah's role in the flood narrative — though the 'relief' comes in a way no one expected.
- 30.** The formulaic pattern resumes.
- 31.** Lamech's lifespan of 777 years contains the number seven three times. Whether this is numerically significant or coincidental is debated. In light of Lamech of Cain's line claiming 'seventy-sevenfold' vengeance (4:24), the sevens in this Lamech's lifespan may create an intentional contrast between the line of violence and the line of faith.
- 32.** The genealogy ends without the formula 'and he died' for Noah — his story continues in the following chapters. Noah's entry lacks the closure that every other patriarch receives (except Enoch, for a different reason). Noah's death is not recorded until 9:29.
- 32.** 'Shem, Ham, and Japheth' — the three sons of Noah who will become the ancestors of all post-flood humanity (chapters 9–10). 'Shem' () means 'name' or 'renown'; 'Ham' () means 'hot' or 'warm'; 'Japheth' () may mean 'enlarged' or 'beautiful,' related to the root y-p-h ('beauty') or p-t-h ('to enlarge'). Though listed in this order, Shem may not be the eldest (cf. 10:21, which is ambiguous).

6

Summary: *The 'sons of God' take human wives, producing the Nephilim. God sees that human wickedness is total and resolves to blot out life from the earth. But Noah finds favor in God's eyes. God instructs Noah to build an ark, announces the coming flood, and establishes his covenant with Noah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter introduces three theologically foundational words for the first time: *chen* ('favor/grace,' v. 8), *berit* ('covenant,' v. 18), and *chamas* ('violence,' v. 11). The statement that 'every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time' (v. 5) uses five terms of totality — the most comprehensive indictment of the human condition in the Hebrew Bible. God's response is not cold judgment but grief: 'he was grieved to his heart' (v. 6).*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the *benei ha'Elohim* ('sons of God,' v. 2) has generated centuries of debate: angelic beings, royal figures, or the Sethite line. The Hebrew phrase is used elsewhere exclusively for heavenly beings (Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7), but we preserved the literal wording and noted the ambiguity. The word *tevah* ('ark,' v. 14) is not a ship but a sealed container — its only other occurrence is for Moses' basket (Exodus 2:3). We also noted that the verb *kaphar* ('to coat with pitch,' v. 14) shares the root of *kippur* ('atonement').*

Connections: *The corruption of 'all flesh' (6:12) inverts the 'very good' of 1:31. The first occurrence of *berit* ('covenant,' 6:18) launches the Bible's central relational concept, developed with Abraham (ch. 15, 17), at Sinai (Exodus 19-24), and with David (2 Samuel 7). The Nephilim reappear in Numbers 13:33 in the spies' terrified report.*

¹When mankind began to multiply on the face of the ground and daughters were born to them, ²the sons of God saw that the daughters of mankind were beautiful, and they took as wives any they chose. ³Then the LORD said, "My spirit will not remain in mankind forever, for he is flesh. His days will be 120 years." ⁴The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went in to the daughters of mankind and they bore children to them. These were the mighty men of old, men of renown. ⁵The LORD saw that the wickedness of mankind was great on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time. ⁶The LORD regretted that he had made mankind on the earth, and he was grieved to his heart. ⁷The LORD said, "I will blot out mankind whom I have created from the face of the ground—mankind together with animals, crawling things, and birds of the sky—for I regret that I have made them." ⁸But Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD. ⁹These are the generations of Noah. Noah was a righteous man, blameless in his generation. Noah walked with God. ¹⁰Noah fathered three sons: Shem, Ham, and Japheth. ¹¹The earth had become morally ruined in God's sight, and it overflowed with violence. ¹²God saw the earth, and it was corrupt, for all flesh had corrupted its way on the earth. ¹³God said to Noah, "The end of all flesh has come before me, for the earth is filled with violence because of them. I am about to destroy them along with the earth. ¹⁴Make yourself an ark of gopher wood. You shall make rooms in the ark and coat it inside and out with pitch. ¹⁵This is how you are to make it: the length of the ark 300 cubits, its width 50 cubits, and its height 30 cubits. ¹⁶Make a roof for the ark, and finish it to a cubit above. Set the door of the ark in its side. Make it with lower, second, and third decks. ¹⁷And I—I am about to bring the flood, waters upon the earth, to destroy all flesh in which there is the breath of life from under the sky. Everything that is on the earth will perish. ¹⁸But I will establish my covenant with you, and you will enter the ark—you, your sons, your wife, and your sons' wives with you. ¹⁹And from every living thing, from all flesh, you shall bring two of every kind into the ark to keep them alive with you. They shall be male and female. ²⁰Of the birds according to their kinds, of the livestock according to their kinds, and of every crawling thing of the ground according to its kind—two of every kind will come to you, to be kept alive. ²¹And you, take for yourself every kind of food that is eaten and gather it to yourself, and it will be food for you and for them." ²²Noah did this; according to all that God commanded him, so he did.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Mankind' translates *ha'adam* (), used here collectively for the human race. The setting is the spread of humanity across the earth, continuing the population growth implied in chapter 5.

1. 'On the face of the ground' (al-penei ha'adamah) — the same phrase that connects humanity to the soil throughout Genesis. The verse sets the stage for the crisis that follows.
2. 'Sons of God' (benei-ha'Elohim,) — one of the most debated phrases in Genesis. Major interpretations include: (1) angelic beings or divine beings from God's heavenly court (the most common ancient Jewish and early Christian reading; cf. Job 1:6; 2:1; 38:7; Psalm 29:1; 82:6); (2) descendants of Seth's godly line intermarrying with Cain's ungodly line; (3) ancient kings or rulers who bore the title 'sons of God' as a royal designation. The rendering preserves the Hebrew phrase without resolving the identity question.
2. 'Took as wives any they chose' (vayyiqchu lahem nashim mikkol asher bacharu) — the language of 'taking' wives and choosing freely has been read as either legitimate marriage or coercive seizure. The context (leading to divine judgment) suggests the marriages are portrayed negatively, though the precise nature of the transgression is not made explicit.
3. This verse is extremely difficult in Hebrew. The verb yadon () is uncertain — proposals include 'strive,' 'contend,' 'abide,' 'remain,' 'rule,' or 'shield.' The rendering follows the reading 'remain' (from dun/din), understanding God's spirit as the life-giving breath (cf. 2:7) that will not sustain human life indefinitely.
3. 'For he is flesh' (beshaggam hu vasar,) — the word beshaggam is also difficult. It is either a compound word meaning 'because also' (be + she + gam) or related to shagag ('to err, to go astray'). 'Flesh' (basar) emphasizes human mortality and weakness — humanity is fundamentally physical and perishable.
3. '120 years' — this has been interpreted as: (1) the maximum human lifespan going forward (though post-flood patriarchs still exceed it); (2) a grace period of 120 years before the flood arrives; (3) a general statement about the reduction of human lifespans. The text does not specify which meaning is intended.
4. 'Nephilim' () is retained untranslated because its meaning is uncertain and its use as a designation for a specific group is well established. The word may be related to the root n-p-l (, 'to fall') — hence 'fallen ones' — but this etymology is disputed. The Septuagint translated it as gigantes ('giants'), which is the basis of the KJV's 'giants.' The Nephilim appear again in Numbers 13:33, where the Israelite spies report seeing them in Canaan.
4. The syntax of the verse is complex. It may be saying: (1) the Nephilim were already on earth when the sons of God intermarried; (2) the Nephilim were the offspring of these unions; (3) both — they were present before and continued after. The phrase 'and also afterward' (vegam acharei-khen) indicates their presence was not limited to one period.
4. 'Mighty men of old, men of renown' (hagibborim asher me'olam anshei hasshem) — gibborim are 'mighty warriors' or 'heroes.' Anshei hasshem literally means 'men of the name' — famous or renowned. The language recalls ancient hero traditions but the narrative context is judgment, not celebration.
5. This verse presents one of the most sweeping moral assessments in scripture. The evaluation is comprehensive: 'every inclination... only evil... all the time.' Three absolute terms (every, only, all the time) leave no room for exception.
5. 'Every inclination of the thoughts of his heart' (kol-yetser machshevot libbo,) — the word yetser (, 'inclination, formation, imagination') comes from the same root as yatsar ('to form,' used for God forming the man in 2:7). The yetser is the inner formation or bent of the human heart — the direction of thought and desire. In later Jewish theology, the yetser hara ('evil inclination') becomes a major concept. Here the yetser is wholly given over to evil.
5. The LORD's evaluation in chapter 1 was 'very good' (1:31); now the evaluation is 'only evil.' The contrast frames the narrative arc from creation to corruption.
6. 'Regretted' translates vayyinnachem (), from nacham (), which can mean 'to be sorry, to regret, to repent, to relent, to be comforted.' This is the same root used in 5:29 for Noah's name ('this one will comfort/relieve us'). The juxtaposition is striking: Noah is supposed to bring nacham (comfort), but God feels nacham (regret). The word creates a painful irony.
6. 'Grieved to his heart' (vayyit'atstsev el-libbo,) — the root '-ts-b is the same root used for the woman's pain in childbirth (3:16) and the man's toil with the ground (3:17). Humanity's itsstavon (painful toil) now produces divine itsstavon (grief). God experiences pain in response to what his creation has become.
6. This verse raises profound theological questions about divine emotions, omniscience, and immutability. The text presents God as genuinely affected by human wickedness — experiencing regret and grief. The rendering follows the text's anthropomorphic language faithfully.
7. 'Blot out' translates emcheh (), from machah (, 'to wipe, to blot out, to erase'). The image is of wiping a surface clean — erasing what has been written or created. The same verb is used in Exodus 32:32–33 for blotting a name from God's book.
7. The scope of judgment encompasses not only humanity but animals, crawling things, and birds — the same categories created in chapter 1. The corruption of humanity has consequences for the entire created order. The ecological scope of judgment mirrors the ecological scope of the original blessing.
7. 'For I regret that I have made them' — nichamti () repeats the nacham of verse 6, confirming the divine grief that motivates the judgment.

8. 'Found favor' translates *matsa chen* (), literally 'found grace/favor.' The word *chen* () means 'grace, favor, charm, attractiveness.' This is the first occurrence of *chen* in the Bible. The phrase 'found favor in the eyes of' is a Hebrew idiom meaning 'to be regarded favorably by' or 'to win the approval of.' Following the prompt's guidance on idioms, the original expression is retained here as it is still intelligible in English and preserves the theological weight of 'favor/grace.'
8. This single verse pivots the entire narrative. After the sweeping condemnation of all humanity (vv. 5–7), one man stands as an exception. The Hebrew word order is emphatic — *veNoach* ('But Noah') — placing Noah in sharp contrast to the universal wickedness. The name Noah also creates a wordplay with *chen* when read backward (*n-ch* / *ch-n*), though whether this is intentional is debated.
9. This is the third toledot formula in Genesis (cf. 2:4; 5:1).
9. 'Righteous' (*tsaddiq*,) — the first use of this word in the Bible. *Tsaddiq* denotes one who conforms to the standard of right relationship — with God and with others. It becomes one of the most important character descriptions in the Hebrew Bible.
9. 'Blameless' (*tamim*,) means 'complete, whole, without blemish, having integrity.' It is the same word used for sacrificial animals that must be 'without blemish' (Leviticus 1:3, 10). Applied to Noah, it indicates moral integrity and wholeness of character, not sinless perfection.
9. 'In his generation' (*bedorotav*,) — the qualification 'in his generation' has been read two ways: (1) as a compliment — Noah was righteous even amid a wicked generation; (2) as a limitation — he was righteous only by the low standards of his generation. The text likely intends the former, but the ambiguity has been noted since ancient times.
9. 'Noah walked with God' (*et-ha'Elohim hithhallelkh-Noach*) — the same phrase used for Enoch (5:22, 24). Only these two men are said to have 'walked with God' in the pre-flood narrative. The language of intimate, sustained divine companionship sets Noah apart.
10. The three sons are listed as in 5:32. They will become the three branches of post-flood humanity in the Table of Nations (chapter 10).
11. 'Corrupt' translates *vattishshachet* (), from *shachat* (, 'to corrupt, to ruin, to destroy'). The same root will appear in verse 13 and 17 for God's intention to 'destroy' — the earth corrupted itself, and God will complete the corruption/destruction. There is a grim wordplay: humanity's self-corruption leads to God's destruction using the same verb.
11. 'Violence' translates *chamas* (), meaning 'violence, injustice, wrong, cruelty.' *Chamas* is a broader term than simple physical violence — it encompasses oppression, injustice, and the violation of others' rights and dignity. The earth is full of it.
12. 'God saw the earth' (*vayyar Elohim et-ha'arets*) — this echoes 1:31 ('God saw everything that he had made, and it was very good'). The divine evaluation formula from creation returns, but the verdict has reversed: what was 'very good' is now 'corrupt.' The Hebrew structure deliberately mirrors the creation account to underscore the anti-creation that corruption represents.
12. 'All flesh had corrupted its way' — 'flesh' (*basar*,) is used broadly for all living creatures. The corruption is not limited to humans; 'all flesh' — possibly including the animal world — has departed from God's intended order.
13. 'The end of all flesh has come before me' (*qets kol-basar ba lefanai*) — *qets* means 'end, limit, conclusion.' God announces the termination of the present order.
13. 'I am about to destroy them along with the earth' (*hineni mashchitam et-ha'arets*) — the verb *mashchit* is from the same root *shachat* used for the earth's corruption (v. 11–12). The wordplay is devastating: because they have corrupted (*shachat*) the earth, God will destroy (*shachat*) them with the earth. God's judgment mirrors the crime — the verb of their sin becomes the verb of their sentence.
13. 'Along with the earth' (*et-ha'arets*) — the preposition *et* can mean 'with' or be the direct object marker. If 'with,' God destroys them along with the earth; if the object marker, God destroys them and the earth. Both readings indicate the cosmic scope of the judgment.
14. 'Ark' translates *tevah* (), a word used only here (for Noah's ark) and in Exodus 2:3, 5 (for the basket in which baby Moses is placed). It is not the word used for the ark of the covenant (*aron*). *Tevah* may be an Egyptian loanword meaning 'chest' or 'box.' The vessel is essentially a large, sealed container — not a ship designed for navigation.
14. 'Gopher wood' (*atsei-gopher*,) — the type of wood is unknown. Gopher appears only here in the Hebrew Bible and has not been conclusively identified. Proposals include cypress, cedar, or resinous wood. The rendering retains the untranslatable term.
14. 'Coat it... with pitch' (*vekhapharta... bakkopher*) — there is a significant wordplay here: the verb *kaphar* (, 'to coat, to cover') and the noun *kopher* (, 'pitch, covering') share the same root as the theological term *kippur* (, 'atonement'). The ark is 'atoned' — covered, sealed, protected — using the language that will later describe the covering of sin. The rendering uses 'coat' for the verb and 'pitch' for the noun, but the theological resonance is noted.
15. A cubit (*ammah*,) is approximately 18 inches (45 cm). At 300 cubits long, the ark would be approximately 450 feet (137 meters) long, 75 feet (23 meters) wide, and 45 feet (14 meters) high. These are substantial dimensions — roughly the length of a modern cargo ship. The proportions (6:1 length-to-width ratio) are consistent with a seaworthy vessel, though the ark is designed for flotation and survival, not navigation.
16. 'Roof' translates *tsohar* (), a word of uncertain meaning. It could refer to: (1) a roof or covering; (2) a window or opening for light (from *tsohar*, 'noon/brightness'); (3) a skylight. The KJV's 'window' follows the light-related meaning. 'Roof' is adopted here as the more likely meaning given the instruction to 'finish it to a cubit above,' which suggests a roof with a one-cubit gap for ventilation.

16. 'Three decks' (tachtiyyim sheniyyim ushelishim) — literally 'lower ones, second ones, and third ones.' The ark has three levels — lower, middle, and upper.
17. 'I—I am about to bring' (va'ani hineni mevi) — the emphatic 'I' (va'ani) followed by hineni ('here I am') and the participle mevi ('bringing') creates a solemn, emphatic divine announcement. God personally takes responsibility for the coming destruction.
17. 'The flood' (hamabbul,) — this word appears only in the flood narrative (Genesis 6–9) and in Psalm 29:10. It designates a unique, catastrophic deluge, not ordinary flooding. The definite article ('the flood') treats it as a singular, unrepeatable event.
17. 'The breath of life' (ruach chayyim,) — ruach here means 'breath' or 'spirit of life.' Every creature animated by the divine breath will be destroyed. The same breath that gave life in 2:7 will be extinguished.
17. 'Perish' translates yigva (, from gava (, 'to die, to expire, to breathe one's last'). This is a more visceral word for death than the standard mut — it suggests gasping, expiring.
18. 'I will establish my covenant' (vahaqimoti et-beriti,) — this is the first occurrence of the word berit (, 'covenant') in the Bible. The covenant concept will become the central organizing principle of the biblical narrative. Here it is introduced without definition or ceremony — God simply declares that he will establish his covenant with Noah. The formal covenant ceremony comes in 9:8–17.
18. The verb haqim ('to establish, to set up, to confirm') rather than karat ('to cut,' the more common verb for covenant-making) may suggest the confirmation of an existing arrangement rather than the initiation of a new one.
18. 'But' (the waw on vahaqimoti) marks a stark contrast: God will destroy all flesh, BUT he will establish his covenant with Noah. Judgment and covenant exist in tension — God's saving purpose persists through the destruction.
19. 'To keep them alive with you' (lehachayot ittakh,) — the purpose of the ark is preservation of life. The hiphil of chayah ('to live') means 'to cause to live, to keep alive.' Noah's mission is life-preservation amid universal death.
19. 'Male and female' (zakhar unqevah,) — the same pairing from 1:27. The creation mandate of fruitfulness and multiplication is preserved through the ark. The ark functions as a micro-creation — a remnant of the original order carried through the waters of judgment.
20. 'Will come to you' (yavo'u eleikha) — the animals come to Noah; he does not need to hunt or gather them. The gathering is divinely orchestrated.
20. The categories — birds, livestock, crawling things — echo the creation categories of chapter 1 (1:20–25). The 'according to their kinds' (leminehu) formula also echoes 1:11–12, 21, 24–25. The ark preserves the created order 'according to its kinds.'
21. The provision for food encompasses both human and animal needs. The instruction is practical — the ark must be provisioned for an extended voyage. God commands the preparation but leaves the details to Noah's judgment.
22. 'According to all that God commanded him, so he did' — this formula of exact obedience will be repeated (7:5, 9, 16). Noah's obedience is total and without recorded hesitation, question, or negotiation. He does not speak in chapter 6 — he simply acts. In a generation defined by corruption and violence, Noah's silent obedience stands as the defining response of faith.
22. The formula echoes the creation pattern: God speaks, and the response corresponds exactly to the command (cf. 1:3, 'Let there be light, and there was light'). Noah's obedience mirrors creation's obedience to the Creator's word.

7

Summary: God commands Noah to enter the ark with his family and the animals — seven pairs of clean animals and one pair of unclean. The flood comes: the springs of the great deep burst open and the windows of the sky open. Water covers all mountains. Every living thing outside the ark perishes. The waters prevail for 150 days.

What Makes This Remarkable: The flood is presented not as mere rainfall but as a cosmic un-creation: the 'springs of the great deep' and the 'windows of the sky' (v. 11) undo the separations of day 2 (1:6-7), returning the world to the watery chaos of 1:2. The word mabbul ('flood') appears only here and in Psalm 29:10, marking this as a unique, unrepeatable cataclysm. The detail that 'the LORD shut him in' (v. 16) shows God as both judge and protector — the same hand that unleashes destruction personally seals the door of safety.

Translation Friction: The distinction between clean and unclean animals (v. 2) appears before Levitical law formally defines these categories (Leviticus 11). We retained the terms as the Hebrew presents them, noting that the narrator assumes the reader understands a clean/unclean distinction that predates Sinai. The precise meaning of 'seven pairs' versus 'seven' for clean animals is debated; we followed the reading 'seven pairs,

a male and its mate.'

Connections: The 'breath of the spirit of life' (v. 22) echoes God's breath in 2:7 — what God gave, the flood takes away. The forty days and nights (v. 12) establish a pattern of testing and transition that recurs with Moses (Exodus 34:28), Elijah (1 Kings 19:8), and Jesus (Matthew 4:2). Noah's obedience formula — 'according to all that God commanded him' (v. 5) — anticipates the obedience language of the tabernacle construction.

¹Then the LORD said to Noah, "Come, you and all your household, into the ark, for I have seen that you are righteous before me in this generation. ²Of every clean animal you shall take seven pairs, a male and its mate, and of the animals that are not clean, two, a male and its mate, ³and also of the birds of the sky, seven pairs, male and female, to keep their offspring alive on the face of all the earth. ⁴For in seven more days I will send rain on the earth for forty days and forty nights, and I will blot out every living thing that I have made from the face of the ground." ⁵Noah carried out everything exactly as the LORD had instructed him. ⁶Noah was 600 years old when the flood waters came upon the earth. ⁷Noah and his sons and his wife and his sons' wives entered the ark because of the waters of the flood. ⁸Of clean animals and of animals that are not clean, of birds, and of everything that crawls on the ground, ⁹two by two they came to Noah into the ark, male and female, as God had commanded Noah. ¹⁰After seven days, the waters of the flood came upon the earth. ¹¹In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, on the seventeenth day of the month—on that day all the springs of the great deep burst open, and the windows of the sky were opened. ¹²Rain fell on the earth for forty days and forty nights. ¹³On that very day, Noah and Shem, Ham, and Japheth, Noah's sons, along with Noah's wife and the three wives of his sons, entered the ark— ¹⁴they and every wild animal according to its kind, all livestock according to their kinds, every crawling thing that crawls on the earth according to its kind, and every bird according to its kind, every winged creature. ¹⁵They came to Noah into the ark, two by two of all flesh in which there was the breath of life. ¹⁶Those that entered, male and female of all flesh, came as God had commanded him. Then the LORD shut him in. ¹⁷The flood continued forty days on the earth. The waters increased and lifted the ark, and it rose above the earth. ¹⁸The waters surged and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the waters. ¹⁹The waters surged so greatly on the earth that all the high mountains under all the sky were covered. ²⁰The waters surged fifteen cubits above, and the mountains were covered. ²¹All flesh perished that moved on the earth—birds, livestock, wild animals, every swarming thing that swarms on the earth, and all mankind. ²²Everything on dry land that had the breath of the spirit of life in its nostrils died. ²³He blotted out every living thing that was on the face of the ground—from mankind to livestock to crawling things to birds of the sky. They were blotted out from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those who were with him in the ark. ²⁴The waters surged on the earth 150 days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Come' (bo,) — God invites Noah into the ark. The use of 'come' (rather than 'go') may imply that God is already present in the ark, inviting Noah to join him. Alternatively, it is simply the standard imperative for entering a space.
1. 'Righteous before me' (tsaddiq lefanai) — God affirms the narrator's assessment from 6:9. Noah's righteousness is validated by God himself. The qualification 'in this generation' (baddor hazzeh) is maintained, as in 6:9.
2. 'Seven pairs' translates shiv'ah shiv'ah (), literally 'seven seven.' This distributive expression most likely means 'seven pairs' (seven of each sex = fourteen total) or possibly 'seven' (three pairs plus one for sacrifice). The KJV's 'by sevens' is ambiguous in the same way. 'Seven pairs' is adopted following the majority reading.
2. 'Clean' (tehorah,) — the distinction between clean and unclean animals presupposes categories that are formally codified only later in Leviticus 11 and Deuteronomy 14. The narrative assumes this knowledge without explaining its origin. The additional clean animals presumably provide for sacrifice (8:20) without endangering the species.
2. This instruction supplements 6:19–20, which mentioned only 'two of every kind.' The additional clean animals in chapter 7 address the need for sacrifice and may reflect a different literary strand, though the text as it stands is coherent: the general instruction (two) is supplemented by the specific (seven pairs of clean animals).
3. 'To keep their offspring alive' (lechayat zera,) — literally 'to keep seed alive.' The purpose is the continuation of species — preserving the capacity for reproduction. Zera ('seed/offspring') connects to the seed-language of 1:11–12 and 3:15.

4. 'Seven more days' — a final grace period before judgment. The number seven echoes the seven days of creation; the destruction will begin after a creation-week of waiting.
4. 'Forty days and forty nights' (arba'im yom ve'arba'im laylah) — forty is a significant number throughout the Bible, typically associated with periods of testing, judgment, or transition (Israel's 40 years in the wilderness, Moses's 40 days on Sinai, Elijah's 40-day journey, Jesus's 40 days of temptation).
4. 'Blot out' (machiti,) — the same verb from 6:7. God reaffirms the sentence.
5. The obedience formula from 6:22 is repeated. Noah's compliance is total and immediate, without recorded question or delay.
6. The precise dating of the flood (Noah's age, and the exact month/day in v. 11) gives the narrative a chronicle-like specificity. The flood is presented as a datable historical event within the genealogical framework of Genesis 5.
7. Eight people total enter the ark: Noah, his three sons (Shem, Ham, Japheth), Noah's wife, and the three sons' wives. These eight will be the ancestors of all post-flood humanity (cf. 1 Peter 3:20).
8. This verse lists the categories of animals entering the ark, continuing the sentence into verse 9.
9. 'Two by two' (shenayim shenayim,) — the distributive form, 'in pairs.' The animals come in ordered pairs, male and female, preserving the creation pattern.
9. 'As God had commanded Noah' — the obedience formula again. The pattern is established: divine command, exact human compliance.
10. The seven-day grace period announced in verse 4 has elapsed. The judgment commences exactly as foretold.
11. The precise dating (year, month, day) continues the chronicle-like precision of the narrative.
11. 'All the springs of the great deep burst open' (nivqe'u kol-ma'yenot tehom rabbah) — tehom ('deep') recalls the primordial deep of 1:2. The flood is presented as an undoing of creation: the waters that God separated and contained (1:6–10) are now released. The 'great deep' (tehom rabbah) suggests the subterranean ocean beneath the earth in ancient Near Eastern cosmology.
11. 'The windows of the sky were opened' (va'arubot hashamayim niftachu) — the 'windows' or 'floodgates' of the sky are openings in the raqia (expanse/firmament of 1:6–8) through which the waters above the expanse pour down. The flood comes from both below (springs of the deep) and above (windows of the sky) — a systematic reversal of the separations made on day 2 (1:6–7) and day 3 (1:9–10) of creation.
11. The flood is thus presented not as merely extreme weather but as a cosmic de-creation — a return to the watery chaos of 1:2.
12. The forty-day rainfall fulfills the announcement in verse 4. The word geshem (, 'rain') is the ordinary word for rain — but the previous verse makes clear this is no ordinary storm. It is cosmic waters pouring through opened floodgates and erupting from ruptured depths.
13. 'On that very day' (be'etsem hayyom hazzeh,) — this emphatic temporal phrase emphasizes the precise timing. The same expression is used for significant dates elsewhere (cf. Genesis 17:23, 26; Exodus 12:17, 41, 51; Deuteronomy 32:48). The sons are now named, individualizing the narrative.
14. The comprehensive listing echoes the creation categories: wild animals, livestock, crawling things, birds. The phrase 'according to its kind' (leminehu) repeats the creation language of chapter 1. The ark preserves the ordered diversity that God established.
15. 'The breath of life' (ruach chayyim) — the same phrase from 6:17. All creatures animated by God's life-giving breath enter the ark. The breath that God breathed into the man (2:7) sustains all animal life.
16. 'The LORD shut him in' (vayyigso YHWH ba'ado,) — this brief, remarkable statement says that God himself closes the ark door behind Noah. The divine name YHWH (rather than Elohim) is used for this personal, protective act. God seals Noah inside — an act of care and finality. Those inside are saved; those outside are not. The closing of the door marks the point of no return.
16. The preposition ba'ad ('behind him' or 'on his behalf') can mean 'behind/around' (God closed the door behind him) or 'for his sake' (God sealed him in for his protection). Both senses are present.
17. The rising waters are described with increasing intensity through verses 17–20. The ark, the vessel of salvation, rises with the waters — the instrument of judgment becomes the means of elevation for those within. The language shifts from passive description to active force: the waters 'increased,' 'lifted,' and the ark 'rose.'
18. 'Surged' translates vayyigberu (, from gavar (, 'to be strong, to prevail, to overcome'). The waters are described as a conquering force — overpowering the earth. The verb intensifies the sense of unstoppable power.
19. 'So greatly' translates me'od me'od (, a doubled intensive — 'exceedingly, exceedingly.' The doubling of me'od is rare and emphatic (cf. 17:2, 6, 20; 30:43).
19. 'All the high mountains under all the sky' (kol-heharim hagevohim asher-tachat kol-hashamayim) — the language is universal and absolute. Whether this reflects a global perspective or the perspective of the ancient Near Eastern world known to the author is a question of interpretation, not translation. The rendering follows the Hebrew.
20. Fifteen cubits (approximately 22.5 feet / 6.9 meters) — the waters rose this distance above the mountaintops. Fifteen cubits is half the ark's height (30 cubits, 6:15), which would ensure the ark could float freely over any submerged peak without grounding.

- 21.** 'Perished' translates vayyigva (וַיִּיגַו), from gava ('to expire, to breathe one's last') — the same visceral verb from 6:17. The listing of destroyed categories reverses the creation order: where chapter 1 built up the animal kingdom category by category, chapter 7 tears it down. The list ends with 'all mankind' (vekhoh ha'adam) — humanity, created last in chapter 1, dies last in the account of destruction.
- 22.** 'The breath of the spirit of life' (nishmat-ruach chayyim, נִשְׁמַת־רוּחַ חַיִּים) — a compound phrase combining neshamah ('breath,' cf. 2:7) and ruach ('spirit/breath/wind'). This double expression intensifies the description of animate life — everything that breathes, everything sustained by the divine breath, perished. The phrase echoes 2:7, where God breathed the neshamah of life into the man's nostrils. What God breathed in, the waters now extinguish.
- 23.** 'On dry land' (becharavah, בְּחֶרֶב) — only land-dwelling, air-breathing creatures are destroyed. Aquatic life is not mentioned in the judgment.
- 23.** 'He blotted out' (vayyimach, וַיַּיְמַח) — the verb from 6:7 and 7:4 is now fulfilled. What God announced, God has accomplished.
- 23.** 'Only Noah was left' (vayyishsha'er akh-Noach) — the particle akh ('only, alone') emphasizes the solitary survival. From the teeming life of creation, only Noah and his ark-companions remain. The contrast between the universal death and this single remnant is stark.
- 23.** The verse structure creates a chiasm: God blotted out the listing of categories they were blotted out from the earth only Noah remained. The center focuses on the comprehensive destruction; the frame highlights divine agency and Noah's singular survival.
- 24.** The 150-day duration extends well beyond the 40-day rain (v. 12). The waters continued to dominate the earth even after the rain stopped. The prolonged inundation underscores the totality of the judgment — this is not a flash flood but a sustained undoing of the habitable world. Chapter 8 will describe the gradual recession of these waters.

8

Summary: *God remembers Noah. A wind passes over the earth, the waters recede, and the ark rests on Ararat. Noah sends out a raven and then a dove — twice — to test the waters. When the earth is dry, God commands Noah to exit. Noah builds an altar and offers sacrifices. God resolves never again to curse the ground or destroy all life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological pivot is the verb zakhar ('remembered,' v. 1): when God remembers, it is not a cognitive event but a relational turning — God acts to deliver. The dove returning with an olive leaf (v. 11) has become one of the Bible's most enduring symbols. God's inner resolve (v. 21) repeats almost verbatim the pre-flood diagnosis ('the inclination of the human heart is evil from youth') but now draws the opposite conclusion — not judgment but patience. The human condition has not changed; God's response to it has.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew ruach ('wind,' v. 1) that God sends over the earth is the same word translated 'Spirit' in 1:2. We rendered it as 'wind' here based on context, but the verbal echo with the creation narrative is deliberate — God's ruach inaugurates both creation and re-creation. The phrase reach hannichoach ('pleasing aroma,' v. 21) is anthropomorphic in a way that resists modern sensibilities; we translated it directly, as the Hebrew intends a real divine response to the sacrifice.*

Connections: *God 'remembering' Noah (8:1) establishes a pattern: God remembers Abraham (19:29), Rachel (30:22), and Israel in Egypt (Exodus 2:24). The post-flood cosmos echoes creation: wind over water (8:1; cf. 1:2), dry land appearing (8:13; cf. 1:9), the command to be fruitful (8:17; cf. 1:22). The never-again promise (8:21-22) leads directly into the Noahic covenant of chapter 9.*

¹God remembered Noah and all the wild animals and all the livestock that were with him in the ark. And God caused a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided. ²The springs of the deep and the windows of the sky were closed, and the rain from the sky was restrained. ³The waters receded from the earth continually, and at the end of 150 days the waters had decreased. ⁴In the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark came to rest on the mountains of Ararat. ⁵The waters continued to decrease until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first day of the month, the tops of the mountains became visible. ⁶At the end of forty days, Noah opened the window of the ark that he had made. ⁷He sent out a raven, and it went back and forth until the waters had dried up from the earth. ⁸Then he sent out a dove from him to see whether the waters had receded from the surface of the ground. ⁹But the dove found no resting place for the sole of its foot, and it returned to him to the ark, for waters were on the surface of all the earth. He reached out his hand and took it and

brought it back to himself into the ark. ¹⁰He waited seven more days and again sent out the dove from the ark. ¹¹The dove came back to him in the evening, and there in its beak was a freshly plucked olive leaf. So Noah knew that the waters had receded from the earth. ¹²He waited yet another seven days and sent out the dove, and it did not return to him again. ¹³In Noah's 601st year, in the first month, on the first day of the month, the waters had dried up from the earth. Noah removed the covering of the ark and looked, and the surface of the ground was drying. ¹⁴In the second month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, the earth was dry. ¹⁵God spoke to Noah, saying, ¹⁶"Go out from the ark—you, your wife, your sons, and your sons' wives with you. ¹⁷Bring out with you every living thing that is with you—all flesh, birds and livestock and every crawling thing that crawls on the earth—so that they may swarm on the earth and be fruitful and multiply on the earth." ¹⁸So Noah went out, along with his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives. ¹⁹Every animal, every crawling thing, and every bird—everything that moves on the earth—went out of the ark by their families. ²⁰Then Noah built an altar to the LORD and took some of every clean animal and some of every clean bird and offered burnt offerings on the altar. ²¹The LORD smelled the pleasing aroma, and the LORD said in his heart, "I will never again curse the ground because of mankind, for the inclination of the human heart is evil from youth. And I will never again strike down every living thing as I have done. ²²As long as the earth endures, seedtime and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, day and night will not cease."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'God remembered' (vayyizkor Elohim,) — this is the turning point of the flood narrative. Divine 'remembering' in the Hebrew Bible does not imply prior forgetfulness; it means God turns his active attention toward someone and acts on their behalf. The verb *zakhar* ('to remember') with God as subject is consistently an act of gracious intervention (cf. Genesis 19:29; 30:22; Exodus 2:24; 6:5). The flood narrative pivots on this word: from destruction to restoration, from judgment to mercy.
1. 'God caused a wind to pass over the earth' (vayya'aver Elohim ruach al-ha'arets) — *ruach* here means 'wind,' echoing 1:2 where the *ruach* Elohim ('Spirit/wind of God') moved over the waters. The creation parallel is deliberate: as God's *ruach* moved over the primordial waters at the beginning, so God's *ruach* now moves over the flood waters to begin the re-creation. The flood was a de-creation; the drying is a re-creation.
1. 'Subsided' translates *vayyashokku* (), from *shakhakh* (, 'to abate, to subside, to grow calm'). The turbulent waters begin to quiet.
2. The sources of the flood described in 7:11 are now closed: the springs of the deep are stopped and the windows of the sky are shut. The cosmic plumbing that was opened for destruction is now sealed. God re-establishes the boundaries between waters that the flood had dissolved.
3. 'Continually' translates *halokh vashov* (), literally 'going and returning' — a vivid image of the waters gradually ebbing in a back-and-forth movement, like a tide slowly withdrawing. The process is gradual, not sudden.
3. The 150-day mark connects to 7:24. After 150 days of domination, the waters begin to decrease.
4. 'Came to rest' translates *vattanach* (), from *nuach* (, 'to rest') — the same root as Noah's name (Noach). The ark of Noah (Noach) comes to rest (*nuach*). The wordplay connects Noah's identity to his destiny: the one whose name means 'rest' finds rest on Ararat.
4. 'The mountains of Ararat' (*harei Ararat*,) — Ararat refers to the ancient kingdom of Urartu, located in the region of modern eastern Turkey, Armenia, and northwestern Iran. The text says 'mountains' (plural), indicating the mountainous region rather than a specific peak. The identification with the specific mountain known today as 'Mount Ararat' (*Ağrı Dağı*) is a later tradition.
5. The recession is gradual — months pass between the ark's grounding (7th month) and the mountain peaks appearing (10th month). The narrative patiently tracks the slow restoration of the habitable world. The re-emergence of dry land echoes the third day of creation (1:9–10), when God gathered the waters to reveal the dry land.
6. 'Window' (*challon*,) — a different word from the *tsohar* ('roof/opening') of 6:16. This is a standard window through which Noah will send out birds to test the conditions.
7. 'A raven' (*ha'orev*,) — the raven, a scavenger bird, goes out and returns repeatedly ('went back and forth,' *yatso yatso*' *vashov*) without providing useful information. It can survive on floating carrion and does not need dry land. The sending of birds to test for dry land has parallels in other ancient Near Eastern flood traditions, notably the Epic of Gilgamesh (Tablet XI).
8. 'A dove' (*hayyonah*,) — the dove, unlike the raven, requires dry land, vegetation, and fresh water. It is a more reliable indicator of habitable conditions. The dove becomes a symbol of peace and hope in later tradition.
9. 'Found no resting place' (*lo-mats'ah manoach*,) — *manoach* is from the root *nuach* ('to rest'), the same root as Noah's name. The dove could not find *noach* (rest) — an echo of the naming wordplay. The world is not yet ready for rest.

9. Noah's reaching out to take the dove back is a tender, personal gesture — the only moment of physical action described for Noah in the flood narrative. He extends his hand to receive the exhausted bird.
10. Seven-day intervals structure Noah's testing (vv. 10, 12) — echoing the seven-day creation week and the seven-day waiting period before the flood (7:4, 10). The pattern of sevens continues.
11. 'A freshly plucked olive leaf' (aleh-zayit taraph bephiha,) — the olive leaf, freshly torn from a living tree, is proof that vegetation is growing above the waterline. The olive tree, which can survive periods of submersion, is among the first plants to recover. The olive branch/leaf has become one of the most enduring symbols of peace and new beginnings in Western civilization, drawn from this passage.
11. 'So Noah knew' (vayyeda Noah) — the verb yada ('to know') recurs. Noah gains knowledge through observation and evidence — the same verb used for the intimate knowledge of God and of each other throughout Genesis.
12. The three sendings of the dove form a progression: (1) returns with nothing — no land available; (2) returns with an olive leaf — land is emerging; (3) does not return — land is now habitable. The dove finds its manoch (resting place), the rest that was unavailable in verse 9.
13. The date — the first day of the first month of Noah's 601st year — marks a new beginning. Some scholars see this as symbolically New Year's Day, the start of a new era. The world is being reborn.
13. 'Drying' translates charvu (, from charav (, 'to be dry, to be desolate'). The ground is drying but not yet fully dry (that comes in v. 14). Noah looks out and sees the emergence of a new world.
14. The earth is fully dry exactly one year and ten days after the flood began (cf. 7:11: second month, seventeenth day second month, twenty-seventh day). The flood lasted just over a solar year. The new world is ready for habitation.
14. 'Dry' translates yavshah (, from yavash (, 'to be dry, to dry up') — a different word from charav in verse 13, indicating full dryness versus the process of drying.
15. God breaks the silence. Noah has waited patiently in the ark without divine instruction to leave. He entered when God commanded (7:1), and he waits to exit until God commands. The text does not record Noah leaving on his own initiative.
16. 'Go out' (tse,) — the command to exit parallels the command to enter (7:1, 'Come... into the ark'). God bookends the flood with commands: come in, go out. The order of names here differs from the entry order, listing Noah's wife immediately after Noah.
17. 'Be fruitful and multiply' (paru veravu,) — the creation blessing of 1:22 and 1:28 is reissued. The post-flood world receives the same mandate as the original creation. Life is to resume its God-intended expansion. The re-creation is complete when the creation blessing is renewed.
17. 'Swarm on the earth' (vesharetsu va'arets) — the same verb from 1:20 where the waters swarmed with life. The earth, emptied by the flood, is to be refilled with teeming life.
18. Noah's obedient exit mirrors his obedient entry. The narrator confirms compliance without commentary.
19. 'By their families' (lemishpechoteihem,) — the word mishpachah ('family, clan') replaces the 'according to their kinds' (lemin) of chapter 1. The animals leave as organized groups — families, not isolated individuals. The word choice may suggest that the animals have been fruitful even within the ark.
20. This is the first altar (mizbeach,) in the Bible and the first burnt offering (olah,). The altar is built 'to the LORD' (laYHWH) — using the personal covenant name, not the generic Elohim. Noah's first act in the new world is worship.
20. 'Burnt offerings' (olot,) — from the root 'l-h ('to go up'). The olah is a sacrifice entirely consumed by fire — it 'goes up' as smoke to God. Nothing is kept by the offerer. It is a total gift. The additional clean animals taken in 7:2 now serve their purpose — providing animals for sacrifice without diminishing the breeding population.
21. 'Pleasing aroma' translates reach hannichoach (, literally 'aroma of rest/soothing.' The word nichoach is from the same root as Noah's name (nuach, 'rest'). The offering of Noah (Noach) produces a nichoach (pleasing/restful) aroma. The wordplay completes the Noah-rest-comfort theme that began in 5:29.
21. 'The inclination of the human heart is evil from youth' (yetser lev ha'adam ra minne'urav) — strikingly, this assessment repeats almost exactly the pre-flood diagnosis of 6:5 ('every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil all the time'). The reason given for NOT destroying again is essentially the same reason given for destroying in the first place. The human condition has not changed — but God's response to it has. This is one of the most theologically dense statements in Genesis: God accommodates his dealings with humanity to humanity's moral reality, choosing mercy over deserved judgment.
21. 'I will never again' (lo-osif... od) — the double promise frames the divine commitment: never again curse the ground, never again destroy all life. This internal divine resolution is formalized as a covenant in 9:8–17.
22. This verse is structured as poetry — three pairs of opposites (seedtime/harvest, cold/heat, summer/winter) plus the foundational pair (day/night), forming a rhythmic declaration of cosmic stability. The created order, disrupted by the flood, is now guaranteed by divine promise.

22. 'Will not cease' (lo yishbotu,) — from shavat (, 'to cease, to rest, to stop'). The same verb used for God's rest on the seventh day (2:2–3). The natural cycles will not 'sabbath' — they will continue without interruption. The stability of creation is guaranteed for 'as long as the earth endures' (od kol-yemei ha'arets, 'all the remaining days of the earth').
22. The chapter ends with a comprehensive promise of cosmic regularity. After the cosmic disruption of the flood, God reaffirms the dependability of the natural order. The seasons, the agricultural cycle, and the alternation of day and night are secured by divine decree.

9

Summary: *God blesses Noah and his sons, giving them dominion over animals and permission to eat meat — with the prohibition against consuming blood. God establishes his covenant with all living things, setting the rainbow as its sign. Noah plants a vineyard, becomes drunk, and is seen naked by Ham. Noah blesses Shem and Japheth but curses Canaan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Noachic covenant is uniquely universal — made not only with humanity but with 'every living creature' (v. 10). The rainbow (qeshet) is also the Hebrew word for a war-bow; God hangs his weapon in the sky pointing away from the earth as a permanent sign of peace. The blood prohibition (v. 4) grounds the sanctity of life in the identity of blood with nephesh ('life/soul') — a principle that undergirds all later sacrificial theology. The post-flood world rhymes with Eden but is darker: the 'fear and dread' of animals (v. 2) replaces the harmony of 1:28.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase nephesh with its blood (v. 4) required careful handling because nephesh is not the Greek philosophical 'soul' but the animating life-force present in the blood. We rendered it as 'life' rather than 'soul.' What Ham 'did' to Noah (v. 24) is stated with deliberate vagueness in the Hebrew — 'he knew what his youngest son had done to him' — and we preserved that ambiguity rather than importing later interpretive traditions.*

Connections: *The blessing 'be fruitful and multiply' (9:1) re-issues the creation mandate (1:28). The blood-life equation (9:4) becomes the foundation for Leviticus 17:11. The image of God as the basis for the sanctity of human life (9:6) reaches back to 1:26-27. Noah's vineyard and drunkenness (9:20-21) echo the pattern of Eden: blessing, testing, and failure in a garden.*

1God blessed Noah and his sons and said to them, "Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth. 2The fear and dread of you will be upon every animal of the earth and upon every bird of the sky, upon everything that crawls on the ground and all the fish of the sea. They are given into your hand. 3Every moving thing that lives will be food for you. Just as I gave you the green plants, I now give you everything. 4But you must not eat flesh with its life—that is, its blood—still in it. 5And surely I will require an accounting for your lifeblood. From every animal I will require it, and from mankind—from each man's brother—I will require an accounting for the life of man. 6Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed, for in the image of God he made mankind. 7And you, be fruitful and multiply; increase abundantly on the earth and multiply in it." 8Then God said to Noah and to his sons with him, 9"As for me, I am establishing my covenant with you and with your offspring after you, 10and with every living creature that is with you—the birds, the livestock, and every wild animal of the earth with you, all that came out of the ark, every living creature of the earth. 11I establish my covenant with you: never again will all flesh be cut off by the waters of a flood, and never again will there be a flood to destroy the earth." 12God said, "This is the sign of the covenant that I am making between me and you and every living creature that is with you, for all generations to come: 13I have set my bow in the cloud, and it will be a sign of the covenant between me and the earth. 14When I bring clouds over the earth and the bow appears in the cloud, 15I will remember my covenant that is between me and you and every living creature of all flesh, and the waters will never again become a flood to destroy all flesh. 16When the bow is in the cloud, I will look on it and remember the everlasting covenant between God and every living creature of all flesh that is on the earth." 17God said to Noah, "This is the sign of the covenant that I have established between me and all flesh that is on the earth." 18The sons of Noah who came out of the ark were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Ham was the father of Canaan. 19These three were the sons of Noah, and from them the whole earth was populated. 20Noah, a man of the ground, began to plant a vineyard. 21He

drank some of the wine and became drunk and lay uncovered inside his tent. ²²Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father and told his two brothers outside. ²³Then Shem and Japheth took a garment and laid it across both their shoulders and walked backward and covered the nakedness of their father. Their faces were turned away, and they did not see their father's nakedness. ²⁴When Noah awoke from his wine, he knew what his youngest son had done to him. ²⁵He said, "Cursed be Canaan; a servant of servants he will be to his brothers." ²⁶He also said, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of Shem, and let Canaan be his servant. ²⁷May God enlarge Japheth, and may he dwell in the tents of Shem, and let Canaan be his servant." ²⁸Noah lived 350 years after the flood. ²⁹All the days of Noah were 950 years, and he died.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The creation blessing of 1:28 is renewed for post-flood humanity. 'Be fruitful and multiply and fill the earth' (peru urevu umil'u et-ha'arets) repeats the original mandate verbatim. Noah and his sons stand in the position of a new Adam — the ancestors of all subsequent humanity. The re-creation after the flood mirrors the original creation.
2. 'Fear and dread' (mora'akhem vechittakhem,) — the original creation mandate gave humanity 'dominion' (radah) over the animals (1:26, 28). The post-flood mandate replaces cooperative dominion with fear-based authority. The relationship between humanity and animals is now characterized by terror rather than harmony. This is a significant shift — the world after the flood is not identical to the world before it.
2. 'Given into your hand' (beyedkhem nittanu) — language of military defeat or political subjugation. The animals are delivered into human power. This prepares for the permission to eat animals in the next verse.
3. This is a significant expansion of the original dietary provision. In 1:29, God gave humanity plants and fruit for food. Now, after the flood, animal flesh is permitted. The comparison is explicit: 'just as I gave you green plants, I now give you everything.' The pre-flood vegetarian provision (1:29–30) is expanded to include meat. Whether this reflects a change in the moral order or a concession to the altered post-flood world is debated.
4. 'Flesh with its life, its blood' (basar benaphsho damo) — the one restriction on the new permission to eat meat is the prohibition of consuming blood. The blood is identified with the nephesh ('life, soul, being'). Blood = life. This equation (blood = nephesh) becomes foundational for the entire sacrificial system of the Torah (Leviticus 17:11, 14). The blood belongs to God because life belongs to God.
4. This is one of the Noahic commandments — laws given to all humanity through Noah, not limited to Israel. In Jewish tradition, the Noahic laws are considered universally binding.
5. 'Require an accounting' translates edrosh (), from darash (, 'to seek, to inquire, to require, to demand'). God will hold accountable anyone — human or animal — who sheds human blood. The threefold repetition ('I will require... I will require... I will require') makes the demand emphatic and absolute.
5. 'From each man's brother' (miyad ish achiv,) — the word 'brother' (ach) echoes the Cain and Abel narrative (chapter 4). Every human being is the 'brother' of every other. The destruction of human life is fratricide.
6. This verse is structured as a chiasm in Hebrew: shofekh / dam ha'adam / ba'adam / damo / yishshafekh (shedder / blood of man / by man / his blood / shall be shed). The word order creates a mirror structure that reinforces the principle of proportional justice.
6. The reason given for the sanctity of human life is the image of God (tselem Elohim) — the same concept from 1:26–27. Because humans bear God's image, to kill a human being is to attack the divine image. The image of God, which survived the fall and the flood, remains the basis for the inviolability of human life.
6. This verse establishes the principle of capital punishment for murder — the first such authorization in the Bible. Whether it is a descriptive statement ('blood will be shed') or a prescriptive command ('blood shall be shed') is debated. The rendering follows the KJV's prescriptive reading.
7. The creation blessing is restated emphatically, framing the Noahic legislation (vv. 2–6) within a double affirmation of fruitfulness. Verse 1 begins with 'be fruitful and multiply'; verse 7 closes with the same words. The legislation about blood, life, and death is enclosed within the command for life, fruitfulness, and multiplication.
8. A new divine speech begins, introducing the formal covenant ceremony (vv. 8–17). God addresses Noah and all his sons — the covenant is made with the entire surviving human family.
9. 'I am establishing my covenant' (hineni meqim et-beriti) — the fulfillment of the promise made in 6:18. God now formally enacts the covenant he announced before the flood.
9. 'With your offspring after you' (ve'et-zar'akhem achareikem) — the covenant extends beyond the immediate recipients to all future generations. This is an everlasting, universal covenant — not limited to one family or one era.
10. The covenant includes every living creature — not only humans. This is the broadest covenant in the Bible, encompassing all animal life. The ecological scope is remarkable and unique among biblical covenants.

11. The covenant content is purely promissory — God makes a unilateral commitment without requiring anything from Noah or the creatures in return. There are no conditions, no stipulations, no 'if you do X, I will do Y.' This is a covenant of divine self-restraint. God binds himself not to repeat the flood.
11. 'To destroy the earth' (leshachet ha'arets) — the same verb shachat from 6:11–13, bringing the vocabulary full circle. The earth that was 'corrupted' (6:11) and 'destroyed' (6:13) by God will never again be destroyed by flood.
12. 'Sign' (ot,) — the same word used for the mark on Cain (4:15) and the celestial signs of 1:14. Each major covenant in the Bible has a sign: the rainbow (Noahic), circumcision (Abrahamic), the Sabbath (Mosaic). The sign functions as a visible reminder of the invisible commitment.
12. 'For all generations to come' (ledorot olam,) — literally 'for generations of eternity.' The covenant is perpetual.
13. 'My bow' (qashti,) — the word qeset () means both 'rainbow' and 'war bow.' The image is powerful: God hangs up his battle bow in the sky — the weapon of judgment is set aside and transformed into a sign of peace. In ancient Near Eastern art, the gods are depicted wielding the bow as a weapon of war. Here God turns his bow away from the earth and places it in the clouds as a permanent token of peace.
13. Whether the rainbow existed before the flood or was newly created as a sign is not specified. The text says God 'set' (natatti) his bow in the cloud — he designated an existing phenomenon or created a new one to serve as the covenant sign.
14. The appearance of rain clouds — which might otherwise evoke fear of another flood — will instead produce the bow, the sign of God's restraint. What could trigger anxiety becomes the occasion for reassurance.
15. 'I will remember my covenant' (vezakharti et-beriti) — the verb zakhar ('remember') returns from 8:1. God's remembering of Noah initiated the rescue; God's remembering of the covenant will prevent future destruction. Divine remembering is the ongoing guarantee of creation's safety.
15. The rainbow prompts God to remember — a remarkably anthropomorphic statement. The sign is not primarily for humanity but for God himself. This is an extraordinary condescension: the all-knowing God appoints a visible reminder for himself.
16. 'Everlasting covenant' (berit olam,) — the first use of this phrase, which will become significant in the Abrahamic covenant (17:7, 13, 19) and the prophetic hope of a new covenant (Isaiah 55:3; Jeremiah 32:40; Ezekiel 37:26). The Noahic covenant is eternal in scope.
17. God concludes the covenant declaration by summarizing it. The repetition of 'between me and all flesh' underscores the universal scope. This is not a covenant with Israel (which does not yet exist) but with all creation.
18. The note 'Ham was the father of Canaan' anticipates the narrative that follows (vv. 20–27) and connects it to the later significance of the Canaanites in Israel's history. This parenthetical remark is proleptic — it prepares the reader for why Canaan specifically is cursed.
19. 'From them the whole earth was populated' (ume'eleh naphtsah kol-ha'arets) — literally 'from these the whole earth was scattered/spread.' All post-flood humanity descends from these three men. The verb naphtsah (from puts, 'to scatter, to spread') will reappear in the Tower of Babel narrative (11:4, 8, 9).
20. 'A man of the ground' (ish ha'adamah,) — Noah's occupation connects him to the ground (adamah), resuming the adam-adamah theme. He is an 'earth-worker,' like Cain before him (4:2).
20. 'Began' (vayyachel,) — from chalal (), meaning 'to begin' but also 'to profane.' The same ambiguity seen in 4:26. Some interpreters read the double meaning as an ominous introduction to what follows.
20. Noah plants a vineyard — the first mention of viticulture in the Bible. Wine will play an ambiguous role throughout scripture: a gift and a danger, a blessing and a temptation.
21. 'Became drunk' (vayyishkar,) — Noah, the righteous man who walked with God, becomes intoxicated. The narrative is unflinching — the hero of the flood story is shown in a moment of shame and vulnerability. The text reports without excusing or condemning.
21. 'Lay uncovered' (vayyitgal,) — the hitpa'el of galah ('to uncover, to reveal') can mean he uncovered himself (reflexive) or he became uncovered (passive). Either way, he is exposed and vulnerable in his nakedness. The theme of nakedness (cf. 2:25; 3:7, 10, 11) returns in a new context.
22. 'Saw the nakedness of his father' (vayyar... et ervat aviv) — the phrase 'to see/uncover nakedness' (gilah/ra'ah ervah) is used elsewhere in the Torah as a euphemism for sexual violation (Leviticus 18:6–18; 20:17). Some interpreters therefore argue that Ham did more than merely look — that the phrase implies a sexual transgression. Others take it at face value: Ham saw his father's nakedness and, instead of covering him, went out and told his brothers, violating the father's dignity through exposure and gossip.
22. The narrative deliberately identifies Ham as 'the father of Canaan' again, reinforcing the link to the coming curse.
23. Shem and Japheth's response is described with elaborate care: they take a garment (hassimlah), place it on both their shoulders, walk backward, cover their father, and keep their faces averted. Every detail emphasizes their deliberate effort to preserve their father's dignity. The contrast with Ham is sharp — where Ham looked and publicized, Shem and Japheth averted their eyes and covered.

23. The act of covering nakedness echoes God's covering of the man and woman with garments of skin (3:21). Shem and Japheth imitate the divine response to human shame.
24. 'His youngest son' (beno haqqatan,) — haqqatan means 'the small/young one.' If the birth order of 5:32 (Shem, Ham, Japheth) is chronological, Ham is the middle son, and 'youngest' (qatan) may refer to Canaan (Ham's son mentioned in v. 22), not Ham himself. Alternatively, Ham may have been the youngest despite his position in the listing. The ambiguity about who exactly committed the act contributes to the complexity of the passage.
24. 'Knew what had been done to him' — how Noah knew is not stated. He may have been told by Shem and Japheth, or he may have sensed it upon awakening.
25. Noah curses Canaan, not Ham. Why Canaan bears the curse rather than Ham himself is one of the most discussed questions in Genesis interpretation. Possible explanations: (1) Canaan was the actual offender ('youngest son' = grandson); (2) the curse falls on Ham through his son — punishing the father through the son's fate; (3) the text anticipates Israel's later conflict with and subjugation of the Canaanites, and the curse functions as an etiology; (4) God had blessed Ham along with Noah's other sons (9:1), so Noah could not curse one whom God had blessed.
25. 'Servant of servants' (eved avadim,) — a superlative construction meaning 'the lowest of servants' or 'a slave among slaves.' This is the first curse pronounced by a human being in Genesis (prior curses were divine: 3:14, 17; 4:11).
25. This passage has been tragically misused throughout history to justify the enslavement of African peoples. Such interpretations are exegetically unfounded: the text concerns Canaan (the ancestor of the Canaanite peoples of the ancient Near East), not any African population. The curse is specific, not racial or ethnic in the modern sense.
26. 'Blessed be the LORD, the God of Shem' — Noah does not bless Shem directly but blesses the LORD as Shem's God. This is a remarkable formulation: Shem's blessing is expressed through the blessing of his God. YHWH is identified specifically as 'the God of Shem' — the first time God is called the God of a particular person. This anticipates the later formula 'the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob,' as the line of promise will pass through Shem (the Semites).
27. 'Enlarge Japheth' (yapht Elohim leYephet) — a wordplay: yapht ('may he enlarge') sounds like Yephet ('Japheth'). The name Japheth is connected to spatial expansion. The blessing promises territorial or demographic enlargement.
27. 'May he dwell in the tents of Shem' — the subject of 'he' is ambiguous: does God dwell in Shem's tents, or does Japheth? If Japheth, it means Japheth will enjoy the hospitality and blessing of Shem's dwelling — participating in Shem's spiritual heritage. If God, it means God's presence will be especially manifest among the Shemites (later identified as Israel). Both readings have been defended.
27. The oracle creates a three-tiered outcome: Shem is blessed through his God, Japheth is enlarged and dwells in Shem's tents, and Canaan serves both. This shapes the Table of Nations narrative that follows (chapter 10).
28. The narrative returns to genealogical data, framing the vineyard episode within the biographical record.
29. 'And he died' (vayyamot) — the death formula from chapter 5 returns, delayed from its expected place in that genealogy. Noah's death, deferred through the flood narrative, is now recorded. The chapter 5 refrain finally catches up with Noah. The righteous man who walked with God, who was saved through the flood, who planted a vineyard and became drunk — he too is subject to the universal sentence of death.

10

Summary: *The Table of Nations traces the descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japheth as they spread across the ancient world after the flood. Seventy peoples are catalogued, organized by family, language, territory, and nation. Nimrod emerges as the first empire-builder, and the Canaanite clans are mapped in detail.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the Bible's most expansive statement of human unity — all nations derive from one family. The number seventy (the total of named peoples) carries symbolic weight as a number of completeness. Nimrod's description as a gibbor ('mighty one,' v. 8) and the founding of Babel (v. 10) connect this chapter to the tower narrative that follows. The Canaanite territorial boundaries (v. 19) will define the promised land's inhabitants whom Israel later displaces.*

Translation Friction: *Many of the proper names in this chapter have uncertain identifications, and we rendered them as the Hebrew presents them without attempting modern geographical equivalences in the main text. The phrase 'in his days the earth was divided' regarding Peleg (v. 25) is ambiguous — it may refer to the Babel dispersion or to a geographical division. We preserved the Hebrew's terseness and noted the ambiguity.*

Connections: The seventy nations anticipate the seventy members of Jacob's family who enter Egypt (46:27) and the seventy elders of Israel (Exodus 24:1; Numbers 11:16). The Canaanite boundaries (10:19) map the territory promised to Abraham (15:18-21). Nimrod's kingdom in Shinar (10:10) sets the stage for the Babel narrative (11:1-9).

¹These are the generations of the sons of Noah—Shem, Ham, and Japheth. Sons were born to them after the flood. ²The sons of Japheth: Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras. ³The sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, Riphath, and Togarmah. ⁴The sons of Javan: Elishah, Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim. ⁵From these the coastland peoples spread out in their lands, each with his own language, by their clans, in their nations. ⁶The sons of Ham: Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. ⁷The sons of Cush: Seba, Havilah, Sabtah, Raamah, and Sabteca. The sons of Raamah: Sheba and Dedan. ⁸Cush fathered Nimrod. He was the first mighty warrior on the earth. ⁹He was a mighty hunter before the LORD. Therefore it is said, "Like Nimrod, a mighty hunter before the LORD." ¹⁰His kingdom started with Babel, Erech, Accad, and Calneh — all in the land of Shinar. ¹¹From that land he went to Assyria and built Nineveh, Rehoboth-Ir, and Calah, ¹²and Resen between Nineveh and Calah—that is the great city. ¹³Mizraim fathered the Ludim, Anamim, Lehabim, Naphtuhim, ¹⁴Pathrusim, Casluhim (from whom the Philistines came), and Caphtorim. ¹⁵Canaan fathered Sidon his firstborn, and Heth, ¹⁶the Jebusites, the Amorites, the Girgashites, ¹⁷the Hivites, the Arkites, the Sinites, ¹⁸the Arvadites, the Zemarites, and the Hamathites. Afterward the clans of the Canaanites spread out. ¹⁹The territory of the Canaanites extended from Sidon in the direction of Gerar as far as Gaza, and in the direction of Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboiim, as far as Lasha. ²⁰These are the sons of Ham, by their clans, their languages, their lands, and their nations. ²¹To Shem also, the father of all the sons of Eber and the older brother of Japheth, children were born. ²²The sons of Shem: Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram. ²³The sons of Aram: Uz, Hul, Gether, and Mash. ²⁴Arpachshad fathered Shelah, and Shelah fathered Eber. ²⁵To Eber were born two sons: the name of the one was Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided, and the name of his brother was Joktan. ²⁶Joktan fathered Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, ²⁷Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, ²⁸Obal, Abimael, Sheba, ²⁹Ophir, Havilah. Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan. ³⁰Their territory extended from Mesha in the direction of Sephar, the hill country of the east. ³¹These are the sons of Shem, by their clans, their languages, their lands, and their nations. ³²These are the clans of the sons of Noah, according to their genealogies, in their nations, and from these the nations spread out on the earth after the flood.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourth toledot formula (cf. 2:4; 5:1; 6:9). This chapter is often called the 'Table of Nations' — a unique document in the ancient world that maps the known peoples of the earth into a single family tree. It presents all humanity as descended from one family, unified by common origin despite linguistic and geographic diversity.
2. Japheth's sons generally correspond to peoples in Asia Minor, the Aegean, and regions north and west of the ancient Near East: Gomer (Cimmerians), Magog (Scythians or a northern people), Madai (Medes), Javan (Ionians/Greeks), Tubal and Meshech (Anatolian peoples), Tiras (possibly Thracians or Etruscans). These identifications are approximate and debated.
3. Ashkenaz is later associated with the Scythians and, in medieval Jewish tradition, with Germanic peoples (hence 'Ashkenazi Jews'). Togarmah is associated with Armenia or southeastern Anatolia (cf. Ezekiel 27:14; 38:6).
4. Javan's sons represent Mediterranean peoples: Elishah (possibly Alashiya/Cyprus), Tarshish (a distant western port, possibly Tartessus in Spain or Tarsus in Cilicia), Kittim (Cyprus, later extended to other Mediterranean peoples), Dodanim (possibly Rhodes; 1 Chronicles 1:7 reads 'Rodanim').
5. 'Coastland peoples' (iyyei haggoyim,) — iyy refers to islands or coastlands, typically the Mediterranean coasts and islands. The Japhethites are associated with maritime regions.
5. 'Each with his own language' — this reference to diverse languages precedes the Tower of Babel narrative (chapter 11), which explains how linguistic diversity originated. The Table of Nations describes the result; Babel explains the cause.
6. Ham's sons represent African and Near Eastern peoples: Cush (Ethiopia/Nubia/Upper Nile region), Mizraim (Egypt — the Hebrew name for Egypt is Mitsrayim), Put (Libya or Punt), and Canaan (the land of Canaan / Levantine coast). The Hamitic peoples occupy Africa and the eastern Mediterranean.
7. These names are associated with peoples and regions in Africa and Arabia. Sheba is linked to the Sabeen kingdom of southwestern Arabia (modern Yemen). Havilah appears also in 2:11. Dedan is associated with northwestern Arabia.
8. 'Nimrod' () — the first individual singled out for extended description in the Table of Nations. His name may be related to the verb marad (, 'to rebel'), though this etymology is debated.

8. 'The first mighty warrior on the earth' (hu hechel lihyot gibbor ba'arets) — literally 'he began to be a mighty one on the earth.' The word gibbor (, 'mighty one, warrior, hero') connects Nimrod to the gibborim of 6:4. The verb hechel ('began') suggests he was the originator or prototype of the warrior-king.
9. 'A mighty hunter before the LORD' (gibbor-tsayid lifnei YHWH) — the phrase lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') can mean 'in the LORD's sight/estimation' or 'in defiance of the LORD.' The proverb 'like Nimrod' suggests his reputation was proverbial — he became the standard by which mighty hunters were measured.
9. Whether 'before the LORD' is positive (with God's approval) or negative (in opposition to God) is debated. The context — his kingdom-building in Babylon and Assyria (vv. 10–12) — and the possible wordplay with 'rebel' have led many interpreters to see Nimrod negatively.
10. 'Babel' () — Babylon. This is the first mention of Babylon, which will become one of the Bible's most significant cities — the site of the Tower of Babel (chapter 11) and later the empire that destroys Jerusalem and exiles Judah. Its founding is attributed to Nimrod.
10. 'The land of Shinar' (erets Shin'ar) — the region of southern Mesopotamia (modern Iraq). Shinar appears again in 11:2 as the location of the Tower of Babel.
10. Erech is ancient Uruk, one of the world's first great cities. Accad is the capital of the Akkadian Empire. These are historical cities of ancient Mesopotamia.
11. The subject is ambiguous — 'he went to Assyria' could mean Nimrod went to Assyria (extending his kingdom), or Asshur (Assyria personified) went out. The rendering follows the reading that Nimrod is the subject, extending his empire from Babylon into Assyria.
11. Nineveh becomes the capital of the Assyrian Empire and plays a central role in the book of Jonah and in the prophets. Its founding is connected to Nimrod's expansionism.
12. 'The great city' (ha'ir haggadolah) — which city is 'the great city' is ambiguous. It could refer to Resen, Calah, or the entire urban complex between Nineveh and Calah. Nineveh is called 'the great city' in Jonah 1:2; 3:2–3.
13. These names are in plural form (the -im ending), indicating peoples or ethnic groups rather than individuals. Mizraim (Egypt) is the ancestor of various North African peoples. The Ludim may be Libyans; the Lehabim are also possibly Libyan.
14. 'From whom the Philistines came' — this parenthetical note identifies the origin of the Philistines, Israel's future nemesis. However, other passages (Amos 9:7; Jeremiah 47:4) associate the Philistines with Caphtor (likely Crete). The parenthetical may be displaced — some scholars suggest it originally modified Caphtorim rather than Casluhim.
14. Pathrusim are associated with Upper Egypt (Pathros). Caphtorim are from Caphtor, widely identified with Crete or the Aegean region.
15. Sidon is the ancient Phoenician city on the Lebanese coast. Heth is the ancestor of the Hittites (benei-Chet), who appear later in Genesis as inhabitants of Canaan from whom Abraham purchases a burial cave (chapter 23).
16. These are the peoples of Canaan who will be displaced by Israel. The Jebusites inhabit Jerusalem (called Jebus) until David's conquest. The Amorites are a major population group throughout Canaan and Transjordan.
17. The Hivites are a Canaanite people (cf. 34:2; Joshua 9:7; 11:19). The Arkites are from Arqa in northern Phoenicia (modern Lebanon). The Sinites are possibly from a town near Arqa.
18. Arvad is an island city off the Syrian coast. Hamath is a major city in Syria (modern Hama). These represent the northern extent of Canaanite territory. The Canaanites are presented as a widespread and diverse group of peoples.
19. The Canaanite territory is described by its boundaries — from the Phoenician coast (Sidon) south to Gaza and inland to the cities of the plain (Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboiim). These cities will feature prominently in chapters 13–14 and 18–19. This geographical note anticipates the setting for Abraham's story.
20. A summary formula closing the Hamite section, matching the Japhethite summary in verse 5. The four categories — clans, languages, lands, nations — present each people group as a complete social unit.
21. 'The father of all the sons of Eber' — Shem is identified specifically as Eber's ancestor. Eber (Ever,) is the eponymous ancestor of the 'Hebrews' (Ivrim). The name Hebrew (Ivri) derives from Eber. This identification marks Shem's line as the one that leads to Abraham and Israel.
21. 'The older brother of Japheth' (achi Yephet haggadol) — this phrase is ambiguous: either 'the brother of Japheth the elder' (Japheth is the older) or 'the elder brother of Japheth' (Shem is the older). The Hebrew allows both readings. The rendering follows the reading that Shem is older.
22. Shem's sons represent peoples of the Near East: Elam (southwestern Iran), Asshur (Assyria), Arpachshad (uncertain — possibly associated with Chaldea/southern Mesopotamia), Lud (Lydia in western Anatolia), and Aram (Arameans of Syria). Arpachshad is the ancestor through whom the line leads to Abraham (11:10–26).
23. Uz is notable as the homeland of Job ('the land of Uz,' Job 1:1). The region is associated with the area east of the Jordan, possibly Edom or northern Arabia.
24. This genealogical line — Arpachshad Shelah Eber — will be expanded in 11:10–17. Eber is the key figure as the ancestor of the Hebrews.

25. 'Peleg' (𐤱) means 'division' — from palag (𐤱, 'to divide'). The explanation 'in his days the earth was divided' (niphlegah ha'arets) is a wordplay on his name. The 'division' likely refers to the division of peoples and languages at Babel (chapter 11), though some have suggested a geographical or political division.
25. Peleg's line leads to Abraham (11:18–26); Joktan's line leads to Arabian peoples (vv. 26–29).
26. Joktan's sons are associated with Arabian peoples and places. Hazarmaveth corresponds to the Hadramaut region of southern Arabia (modern Yemen). These names trace the genealogy of South Arabian peoples.
27. Uzal may be associated with Sanaa, the capital of Yemen. Diklah may mean 'palm grove.'
28. Sheba appears both here (in Joktan's line) and in verse 7 (in Cush's line). The Sabeian kingdom may have had connections to both Cushite and Semitic populations.
29. Ophir is famous as a source of gold (1 Kings 9:28; 10:11; 22:48) — its location is debated (Arabia, East Africa, or even India have been proposed). Havilah, like Sheba, appears in multiple genealogies (v. 7 and 2:11), suggesting shared traditions or overlapping populations.
30. The geographic boundaries of the Joktanite peoples — from Mesha to Sephar — are uncertain. 'The hill country of the east' (har haqqedem) points toward the mountainous regions of Arabia or beyond.
31. The summary formula for the Shemite section matches the Japhethite (v. 5) and Hamite (v. 20) summaries. The four-category framework (clans, languages, lands, nations) applies uniformly to all three branches of humanity.
32. The concluding formula encompasses all three sections. The Table of Nations presents a unified picture: all the peoples of the known world descend from one family, branching out from Noah's three sons after the flood. Despite the diversity of languages, lands, and nations, there is a fundamental unity of origin. The chapter anticipates the immediate question: how did this diversity arise? Chapter 11 will provide the answer in the Babel narrative.

11

Summary: *Humanity, united by one language, builds a city and tower on the plain of Shinar to 'make a name' for themselves. God comes down, confuses their language, and scatters them. The genealogy then traces ten generations from Shem to Abram, who departs Ur with his barren wife Sarai and settles in Harran.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Hebrew wordplay between Babel and balal ('to confuse') subverts Babylon's own etymology ('gate of god') — the city that aspired to reach heaven becomes the city of confusion. The ironic phrase 'the LORD came down' (v. 5) contrasts human ambition with divine perspective: what seemed massive from below requires God to descend to even see it. The chapter's final note — 'Sarai was barren; she had no child' (v. 30) — introduces the crisis that drives the next twenty-five chapters. The Shem genealogy mirrors Adam's in chapter 5 but with steadily declining lifespans.*

Translation Friction: *The builders' desire to 'make a name' (na'aseh-llanu shem, v. 4) uses the same word shem that means both 'name' and 'renown' — and is the name of Noah's son Shem, through whom blessing comes. The irony is dense and difficult to replicate. We rendered aqarah ('barren,' v. 30) directly, noting that the word may derive from a root meaning 'uprooted' — barrenness as a state of rootlessness that only God can remedy.*

Connections: *God's scattering at Babel (11:9) is reversed at Pentecost (Acts 2:1-11), where divided languages become a vehicle for universal proclamation. Abram's departure from Ur (11:31) fulfills Stephen's account in Acts 7:2-4. The barrenness of Sarai connects to the pattern of barren matriarchs: Rebekah (25:21), Rachel (29:31), and Hannah (1 Samuel 1:2).*

1Now the whole earth had one language and the same words. 2As they migrated from the east, they found a plain in the land of Shinar and settled there. 3They said to one another, "Come, let us make bricks and fire them thoroughly." They had brick for stone and bitumen for mortar. 4Then they said, "Come, let us build ourselves a city and a tower with its top in the sky, and let us make a name for ourselves, lest we be scattered over the face of the whole earth." 5The LORD came down to see the city and the tower that the children of man had built. 6The LORD said, "Look, they are one people with one language for all of them, and this is only the beginning of what they will do. Now nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them. 7Co me, let us go down and confuse their language there, so that they will not understand one another's speech." 8So the LORD

scattered them from there over the face of all the earth, and they stopped building the city. ⁹Therefore its name was called Babel, because there the LORD confused the language of all the earth, and from there the LORD scattered them over the face of all the earth. ¹⁰These are the generations of Shem. When Shem was 100 years old, he fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood. ¹¹Shem lived after he fathered Arpachshad 500 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹²When Arpachshad had lived 35 years, he fathered Shelah. ¹³Arpachshad lived after he fathered Shelah 403 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹⁴When Shelah had lived 30 years, he fathered Eber. ¹⁵Shelah lived after he fathered Eber 403 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹⁶When Eber had lived 34 years, he fathered Peleg. ¹⁷Eber lived after he fathered Peleg 430 years and fathered sons and daughters. ¹⁸When Peleg had lived 30 years, he fathered Reu. ¹⁹Peleg lived after he fathered Reu 209 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²⁰When Reu had lived 32 years, he fathered Serug. ²¹Reu lived after he fathered Serug 207 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²²When Serug had lived 30 years, he fathered Nahor. ²³Serug lived after he fathered Nahor 200 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²⁴When Nahor had lived 29 years, he fathered Terah. ²⁵Nahor lived after he fathered Terah 119 years and fathered sons and daughters. ²⁶When Terah had lived 70 years, he fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran. ²⁷These are the generations of Terah. Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran; and Haran fathered Lot. ²⁸Haran died in the presence of his father Terah in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans. ²⁹Abram and Nahor took wives. The name of Abram's wife was Sarai, and the name of Nahor's wife was Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of both Milcah and Iscah. ³⁰Sarai, however, was unable to conceive — she had no children. ³¹Terah took his son Abram, his grandson Lot the son of Haran, and his daughter-in-law Sarai, the wife of his son Abram, and they set out together from Ur of the Chaldeans to go to the land of Canaan. But when they came to Harran, they settled there. ³²The days of Terah were 205 years, and Terah died in Harran.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'One language and the same words' (saphah echat udvarim achadim,) — literally 'one lip and one set of words.' Saphah means 'lip' or 'language'; devarim means 'words' or 'things.' The pairing emphasizes both the uniformity of speech sounds and vocabulary. Humanity shares a single mode of communication — a linguistic unity that will be shattered by the end of the chapter.
2. 'From the east' (miqqedem,) — or 'eastward.' The preposition min with qedem can mean 'from the east' (they came westward from the east) or 'eastward' (they traveled in an eastern direction). Movement 'eastward' in Genesis typically signifies movement away from God's presence (cf. 3:24; 4:16). The rendering follows 'from the east,' but the directional symbolism is noted.
2. 'The land of Shinar' — Mesopotamia, specifically the alluvial plain of southern Iraq. This is the same region identified in 10:10 as Nimrod's kingdom, including Babel.
3. 'Come, let us...' (havah nilbenah) — the cohortative 'come, let us' will recur three times in the human speeches (vv. 3, 4) and will be echoed by God's own 'come, let us' in verse 7. The humans plan; God responds with their own language.
3. 'Bricks... bitumen' — the narrator notes the building materials because the Mesopotamian alluvial plain lacks the stone available in Canaan and other regions. The use of fired brick and bitumen (chemar, a naturally occurring asphalt/tar) is historically accurate for Mesopotamian construction. The detail signals a Mesopotamian setting.
4. 'A tower with its top in the sky' (umigdal verosho vashamayim) — the language echoes ancient Mesopotamian temple towers (ziggurats), which were understood as linking heaven and earth. The phrase 'its top in the sky' is probably not literal but describes the tower's intended height and cosmic significance — a human-built connection between earth and heaven.
4. 'Let us make a name for ourselves' (vena'aseh-lanu shem) — the word shem means both 'name' and 'fame/reputation.' The desire for a 'name' contrasts with the pattern throughout Genesis where God bestows names and identity. Self-made fame replaces God-given purpose. It also creates a wordplay with Shem, Noah's son — whose name means 'Name.'
4. 'Lest we be scattered' (pen-naphuts) — the very thing they fear (scattering) is exactly what God will do to them (v. 8–9). Their attempt to prevent scattering through a centralized monument produces the scattering they sought to avoid. The verb puts ('to scatter') appeared in 10:18 and 10:32 for the spreading of peoples — the natural process God intended is here resisted by human ambition.
5. 'The LORD came down' (vayyered YHWH,) — a masterful narrative irony. The humans built a tower 'with its top in the sky,' reaching up toward God. But God has to 'come down' to see it — it is so small from heaven's perspective that the LORD must descend to inspect it. The tower that was supposed to reach heaven cannot even be seen from heaven.
5. 'The children of man' (benei ha'adam,) — literally 'the sons of the human.' The phrase emphasizes their creaturely status — these are merely human beings, not divine. Their ambition exceeds their nature.

6. God's assessment is not that the tower itself is a threat but that unified human ambition without divine boundaries has unlimited destructive potential. The concern is anthropological, not defensive — God is not threatened by the tower but sees the trajectory of human pride unchecked.
6. 'Nothing they plan to do will be impossible for them' (lo-yibatser mehem kol asher yazmu la'asot) — this is a remarkable divine statement about human capacity. When unified in purpose and language, humanity can accomplish anything it sets out to do. The implication is not that this capacity is inherently good — in a fallen world, unlimited capacity means unlimited potential for evil.
7. 'Come, let us go down' (havah nerdah) — God echoes the human 'Come, let us' (havah) from verses 3–4. The divine 'let us' mirrors 1:26 ('Let us make man'). The plural may indicate the divine council (heavenly court) or the Trinity, as in the creation narrative.
7. 'Confuse their language' (navlah... sephatam) — the verb balal (, 'to confuse, to mix') provides the etymology for 'Babel' in verse 9. The confusion of language is God's intervention to limit the damage of unified human rebellion. It is a judgment but also a mercy — preventing the full realization of collective human evil.
8. 'The LORD scattered them' (vayyaphets YHWH otam) — the very outcome they feared (v. 4, 'lest we be scattered') is now accomplished by God. Their resistance to scattering ironically caused the scattering. The verb puts ('to scatter') fulfills both God's purpose (filling the earth, 1:28; 9:1) and humanity's fear.
8. 'They stopped building the city' — the tower is not said to be destroyed, only that building ceased. The incomplete project stands as a monument to human ambition interrupted by divine intervention.
9. 'Babel' () is given a Hebrew etymology from balal (, 'to confuse, to mix'). The actual Akkadian etymology of Babylon (Bab-ili) means 'gate of the god(s).' The Hebrew text deliberately provides an alternative — and polemical — etymology: Babylon is not the 'gate of God' but the place of divine confusion. The city that sought to make a name for itself receives a name meaning 'confusion.'
9. The Babel narrative serves as the bridge between the universal history of chapters 1–11 and the particular history of Abraham beginning in 11:27. After the scattering of the nations, God will choose one man from one family to begin a new work — a particular calling for the sake of the universal.
10. The fifth toledot formula (cf. 2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1). This genealogy traces the line from Shem to Abram, bridging the universal history (chapters 1–11) with the patriarchal narratives (chapters 12–50). The format follows the chapter 5 pattern: age at fathering remaining years death.
11. The lifespans in this genealogy are notably shorter than those in chapter 5 — a post-flood decline. Shem lives 600 years total, compared to the 900+ year lifespans before the flood.
12. The ages at fathering are significantly younger than in chapter 5, accelerating the generational pace.
13. The formulaic pattern continues. Notably, this genealogy omits the 'and he died' refrain that characterized chapter 5.
14. Eber, the ancestor of the Hebrews, appears as the fourth generation from Shem.
15. Salah's lifespan of 433 years continues the pattern of declining lifespans after the flood — from Shem's 600 years to progressively shorter lives, reflecting the theological narrative of diminishing vitality in the post-flood world.
16. Peleg ('division') — cf. 10:25. The line now continues through Peleg rather than Joktan, narrowing toward Abraham.
17. Eber's total lifespan of 464 years is the longest in this genealogy — notably longer than his ancestors and descendants.
18. 'Reu' () may mean 'friend' or 'companion,' from the root r-'-h ('to associate with, to tend, to shepherd').
19. Peleg's lifespan of 239 years marks a significant decline from the longer-lived patriarchs.
20. The genealogical formula continues without variation.
21. Reu's lifespan of 239 years marks a further decline. The genealogy bridges the gap between Noah and Abraham, connecting the universal history of Genesis 1–11 to the particular covenant history that begins with Abraham's call.
22. 'Nahor' () — the same name as Abraham's grandfather. Nahor is also the name of a city in the Haran region (cf. 24:10), suggesting a family connection to upper Mesopotamia.
23. Serug's lifespan of 230 years. By this point the lifespans have dropped to roughly one-third of the immediate post-flood generation, approaching the range that will characterize the patriarchal period (Abraham lives 175 years).
24. 'Terah' () — Abraham's father. The name's etymology is uncertain. Some have connected it to Hebrew yerach ('moon') or to the Akkadian tiru ('ibex'). The moon-connection is interesting given that both Ur and Haran, the two cities associated with Terah's family, were centers of moon-god worship.
25. Nahor's total lifespan of 148 years continues the declining trend. The lifespans are approaching the 120-year limit mentioned in 6:3.
26. Terah's entry breaks the single-son pattern of the genealogy by naming three sons — the same pattern used for Noah's three sons (5:32). This signals a major transition: the genealogical funnel now opens to introduce a new family narrative.
26. 'Abram' () — the original form of Abraham's name. It means 'exalted father.' The name will be changed to 'Abraham' () in 17:5.

26. 'Nahor' — the same name as his grandfather (v. 22). 'Haran' () — not to be confused with the city Harran (), which is spelled differently in Hebrew.
27. The sixth toledot formula. This one introduces the family narrative that will dominate the rest of Genesis. Lot, Haran's son, will become Abram's traveling companion and will feature prominently in chapters 13–14 and 18–19.
28. 'Died in the presence of his father' (al-penei Terach aviv) — literally 'upon the face of Terah his father,' meaning during Terah's lifetime, before his father. This is the first recorded death of a child before a parent in Genesis — a narrative of grief.
28. 'Ur of the Chaldeans' (Ur Kasdim,) — the ancestral home of Abram's family. Ur was one of the great cities of ancient Sumer in southern Mesopotamia (modern Tell el-Muqayyar in Iraq). The designation 'Chaldeans' (Kasdim) is technically anachronistic for the patriarchal period — the Chaldeans are known from the first millennium BCE — but serves to identify the location for later readers.
29. 'Sarai' () means 'my princess.' Her name will be changed to 'Sarah' (, 'princess') in 17:15. She is one of the most important women in the biblical narrative.
29. 'Milcah' () means 'queen.' She is Haran's daughter, making her Nahor's niece. 'Iscah' () is mentioned only here; Jewish tradition (Rashi, citing Megillah 14a) identifies her with Sarai/Sarah, though this is uncertain.
29. Nahor marries his niece — a pattern of within-family marriage that will characterize the patriarchal period (cf. Isaac marrying Rebekah, Jacob marrying Leah and Rachel).
30. 'Sarai was barren' (vattehi Sarai aqarah,) — this statement, placed before the call of Abram, is one of the most consequential sentences in Genesis. The promise of offspring ('I will make of you a great nation,' 12:2) is given to a man whose wife cannot conceive. The tension between promise and barrenness drives the Abraham narrative. Barrenness becomes a recurring motif: Sarah, Rebekah (25:21), Rachel (29:31), and later Hannah (1 Samuel 1:2).
30. The doubling 'barren... she had no child' makes the point emphatic. There is no ambiguity, no hope of a pregnancy in progress. The situation is humanly impossible.
31. Terah initiates the journey — he is the family patriarch who leads the migration. The intended destination is 'the land of Canaan,' but the family stops at Harran and settles. The journey is incomplete; it will be Abram who completes it under divine calling (12:1–5). Harran (, with a different first consonant than Haran the person) was a major city in upper Mesopotamia (modern southeastern Turkey), also a center of moon-god worship like Ur.
31. The journey from Ur to Canaan via Harran follows the Fertile Crescent — the natural travel route avoiding the Arabian Desert. This geography is historically plausible for ancient migrations.
32. Terah dies in Harran, never reaching Canaan. His death marks the end of the primeval/genealogical era and prepares for the new beginning with Abram's call in chapter 12. The narrative structure is clear: one era ends (Terah dies) and a new era begins (God calls Abram). The 'and he died' formula from the genealogy provides closure.
32. A chronological note: if Terah was 70 when he fathered Abram (v. 26) and Abram left Harran at age 75 (12:4), Terah would have been 145, not 205. This suggests either that Abram was not the firstborn (listed first for importance, not birth order), or that Abram left before Terah's death (cf. Acts 7:4). The text places Terah's death before Abram's call for narrative, not chronological, reasons.

12

Summary: *God commands Abram to leave his homeland for an unknown land, promising to make him a great nation and a blessing to all families of the earth. Abram obeys, travels through Canaan, and receives the promise of the land. Famine drives him to Egypt, where he passes Sarai off as his sister. Pharaoh takes her, is plagued, and expels them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command lekh-lekha ('go forth,' v. 1) is uniquely emphatic — literally 'go for yourself' — and appears only one other time in the Bible: at the binding of Isaac (22:2). These two lekh-lekha commands frame Abraham's entire story. The fivefold 'I will' of the blessing (vv. 2-3) concentrates the entire creation mandate into one man and his seed. That Abram immediately endangers the promised wife by calling her his sister (v. 13) introduces a pattern of human failure within divine promise that defines the patriarchal narratives.*

Translation Friction: *The final clause of verse 3 — venivrekhu bekha kol mishpechot ha'adamah — can be translated as either 'all families will be blessed in you' (passive/reflexive) or 'all families will bless themselves by you' (reflexive). The Niphal form is genuinely ambiguous, and we retained the passive reading while noting the alternative. The word berakhah ('blessing,' v. 2) carries a density that no single English word captures:*

divine favor, empowerment to flourish, and the capacity to transmit that favor to others.

Connections: The call of Abram (12:1-3) answers the scattering at Babel (11:9): where nations were divided, blessing will now flow to all families. Abram's wife-sister deception (12:10-20) recurs in chapters 20 and 26, forming a pattern. God's striking of Pharaoh (12:17) foreshadows the plagues of Exodus. The promise 'to your offspring I will give this land' (12:7) is the first land grant to Abraham.

¹The LORD said to Abram, "Go forth from your land, from your kindred, and from your father's house, to the land that I will show you. ²I will make you into a great nation, and I will bless you, and I will make your name great, so that you will be a blessing. ³I will bless those who bless you, and the one who dishonors you I will curse, and in you all the families of the earth will be blessed." ⁴So Abram went, as the LORD had told him, and Lot went with him. Abram was 75 years old when he departed from Harran. ⁵Abram took his wife Sarai, his nephew Lot, all the possessions they had accumulated, and the people they had acquired in Harran, and they set out for the land of Canaan. And they arrived in the land of Canaan. ⁶Abram passed through the land to the place at Shechem, to the oak of Moreh. At that time the Canaanites were in the land. ⁷The LORD appeared to Abram and said, "To your offspring I will give this land." So he built an altar there to the LORD, who had appeared to him. ⁸From there he moved to the hill country east of Bethel and pitched his tent, with Bethel on the west and Ai on the east. There he built an altar to the LORD and called upon the name of the LORD. ⁹Then Abram journeyed on, traveling toward the Negev. ¹⁰Now there was a famine in the land, and Abram went down to Egypt to sojourn there, for the famine was severe in the land. ¹¹As he was about to enter Egypt, he said to his wife Sarai, "Look, I know that you are a woman beautiful in appearance. ¹²When the Egyptians see you, they will say, 'This is his wife.' Then they will kill me, but you they will keep alive. ¹³Please say you are my sister, so that it may go well with me because of you, and my life will be spared on your account." ¹⁴When Abram entered Egypt, the Egyptians saw that the woman was very beautiful. ¹⁵When Pharaoh's officials saw her, they praised her to Pharaoh, and the woman was taken into Pharaoh's house. ¹⁶He treated Abram well for her sake, and Abram acquired sheep, oxen, male donkeys, male and female servants, female donkeys, and camels. ¹⁷But the LORD struck Pharaoh and his house with great plagues because of Sarai, Abram's wife. ¹⁸Pharaoh summoned Abram and said, "What is this you have done to me? Why did you not tell me she was your wife? ¹⁹Why did you say, 'She is my sister,' so that I took her as my wife? Here is your wife. Take her and go!" ²⁰Pharaoh gave orders concerning him to his men, and they sent him away with his wife and all that he had.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- ¹. 'Go forth' translates *lekh-lekha* (לך-לך), one of the most famous phrases in the Hebrew Bible. Literally 'go for yourself' or 'go to yourself.' The *lekh* intensifier can mean: (1) 'go by yourself' (alone); (2) 'go for your own benefit' (it will be good for you); (3) 'go to/into yourself' (a journey of self-discovery). The phrase appears only twice in God's commands to Abraham — here and in 22:2 ('go to the land of Moriah'), framing Abraham's entire narrative between two journeys of radical obedience.
- The command requires a threefold separation: from land (*erets* — national identity), from kindred (*moledeth* — tribal/extended family identity), and from father's house (*beit av* — immediate family identity). Each successive term is more intimate than the last. Abram is called to leave everything that defines him socially, culturally, and personally.
- 'To the land that I will show you' (*el-ha'arets asher ar'ekka*) — the destination is unnamed. Abram is told to go but not told where. This is faith as trust — obedience without full knowledge, departure without a clear destination.
- God's promise contains seven elements (vv. 2–3): (1) great nation, (2) I will bless you, (3) great name, (4) you will be a blessing, (5) I will bless those who bless you, (6) I will curse the one who dishonors you, (7) all families of the earth will be blessed through you. The sevenfold structure may be intentional, echoing the creation pattern.
- 'I will make your name great' (*va'agaddelah shemekha*) — a direct contrast with Babel, where the builders said 'let us make a name for ourselves' (11:4). The name that humans sought to manufacture for themselves, God freely bestows on Abram. The solution to Babel's failed self-exaltation is God's sovereign choice to elevate one man.
- 'Be a blessing' (*vehyeh berakhah*) — an imperative: 'and be a blessing.' Abram is not only a recipient of blessing but is constituted as a source of blessing for others. This is both gift and commission.
- 'The one who dishonors you I will curse' — two different Hebrew words for 'curse' are used: *meqallekha* (מקלקלך, from *qalal*, 'to make light of, to treat with contempt, to dishonor') and *a'or* (א'ור, from *arar*, 'to curse'). The one who 'makes light of' or dishonors Abram will receive the full divine curse (*arar*). The asymmetry is notable: 'those who bless you' is plural; 'the one who dishonors you' is singular — many will

bless, but cursers will be few.

3. 'In you all the families of the earth will be blessed' (venivrekhu vekha kol mishpechot ha'adamah) — this is the climactic promise. The verb nivrekhu can be parsed as niphal ('will be blessed') or hitpaal ('will bless themselves'). The niphal reading (passive) means that blessing will come to all nations through Abram; the hitpaal reading (reflexive) means nations will invoke Abram's name when blessing themselves ('may I be blessed like Abram'). Both senses are theologically significant. The rendering follows the niphal passive.
3. 'All the families of the earth' (kol mishpechot ha'adamah) — not only nations but families, clans, kinship groups. The scope is universal: what began with the particular (one man, one family) is aimed at the universal (every family on the ground/adamah). The promise reverses the curse of the ground (adamah) pronounced in 3:17 and the scattering of Babel (11:8).
4. 'Abram went, as the LORD had told him' — like Noah's obedience formula ('Noah did according to all that God commanded him,' 6:22; 7:5), Abram's response is immediate and complete. No objection, negotiation, or delay is recorded. The text moves directly from divine command to human compliance.
4. 'Lot went with him' — Lot's presence is notable because the command was to leave 'your kindred' and 'your father's house.' Abram obeys the command to leave but takes his nephew along. Whether this is a partial obedience that will create complications (which it does — chapters 13–14, 18–19) or a compassionate act toward an orphaned nephew is left for the reader to consider.
4. Abram is 75 years old — past the prime of life. The promise of a great nation is given to an old man with a barren wife. The narrative tension is established from the start.
5. 'The people they had acquired' translates hannephesh asher-asu beCharan (), literally 'the souls/persons they had made.' This has been interpreted as: (1) servants and slaves acquired in Haran; (2) converts or followers (the rabbinic tradition reads 'made' as 'brought to faith'); (3) dependents and household members. The rendering uses 'people they had acquired.'
5. 'They arrived in the land of Canaan' — where Terah stopped at Haran and never completed the journey (11:31), Abram completes it. The narrative emphasizes the arrival: 'they set out for the land of Canaan, and they arrived in the land of Canaan.' The journey God commanded is accomplished.
6. 'The oak of Moreh' (elon Moreh,) — elon can mean 'oak' or 'terebinth,' a large tree. Moreh means 'teacher' or 'oracle.' These trees often served as sacred sites and landmarks. Shechem is in central Canaan, in the valley between Mount Ebal and Mount Gerizim. It will become an important location throughout Israel's history (cf. Joshua 24:1).
6. 'The Canaanites were in the land' (vehaKena'ani az ba'arets) — this seemingly parenthetical note carries enormous weight. The land God promised to show Abram is already occupied. The promise of land must contend with the reality of prior inhabitants. The tension between divine promise and human occupation will persist throughout the Pentateuch.
7. 'The LORD appeared to Abram' (vayyera YHWH el-Abram) — this is the first theophany (divine appearance) to Abram and the first since the flood narrative. God makes himself visible. The verb ra'ah in the niphal ('to appear, to show oneself') indicates a deliberate divine self-revelation.
7. 'To your offspring I will give this land' (leazar'akha etten et-ha'arets hazzot) — the promise of land is now explicit: 'this land' — the land of Canaan where Abram currently stands. The word zera ('offspring/seed') is singular but collective, encompassing all future descendants. This is the land promise that will be repeated and expanded (13:15–17; 15:7, 18–21; 17:8).
7. Abram's response to the theophany is worship: he builds an altar. This is his first altar in Canaan. Altar-building marks the land with Abram's worship — claiming it not by conquest but by worship.
8. 'Bethel' (Beit-El,) means 'house of God.' The name is proleptic — it will receive this name from Jacob in 28:19 (it was originally called Luz). The narrator uses the name familiar to later readers.
8. 'Called upon the name of the LORD' (vayyiqra beshem YHWH) — the same phrase from 4:26. Abram worships God by his covenant name. Abram's journey through the land is marked by altar-building and worship — Shechem (v. 7), Bethel (v. 8), and later Hebron (13:18). These altars establish a worship geography in the promised land.
8. Abram moves south through the central hill country — the backbone of later Israelite settlement.
9. 'The Negev' (hannegbah,) — the semi-arid region of southern Canaan. Negev means 'dry' or 'south.' Abram's journey traces a north-to-south route through the promised land, as if surveying it.
10. 'Famine in the land' — immediately upon arriving in the promised land, Abram encounters famine. The land promised by God cannot sustain him. This tests the promise: is the land really a blessing if it produces famine? Abram's response is to go to Egypt, the breadbasket of the ancient world.
10. 'Went down' (vayyered,) — Egypt is geographically lower than Canaan. The language of 'going down' to Egypt and 'going up' from Egypt becomes standard in the biblical narrative and foreshadows the Exodus pattern.
10. 'To sojourn' (lagur,) — Abram intends a temporary stay, not permanent settlement. He is a ger ('sojourner, resident alien') — a recurring identity for the patriarchs (cf. 15:13; 23:4; 47:9).
11. 'Beautiful in appearance' (yephat-mar'eh,) — Sarai's beauty is the catalyst for the crisis that follows. Beauty in Genesis often leads to dangerous situations (cf. 6:2; 26:7; 29:17; 39:6). This is the first 'wife-sister' narrative — a pattern that will recur (20:1–18; 26:6–11).

12. Abram fears that the Egyptians will murder a husband to obtain his wife but will spare a brother. This reflects ancient Near Eastern customs where marriage rights could be negotiated with a woman's brother or family, but a husband was an obstacle to be removed.
13. Abram asks Sarai to claim to be his sister — a half-truth, as she is his half-sister (20:12). But the deception is motivated by self-preservation at the potential expense of his wife's virtue. The patriarch of faith acts in fear, prioritizing his survival over his wife's protection. The text does not gloss over this moral failure.
13. 'So that it may go well with me' (lema'an yitav-li) — Abram's stated concern is his own well-being. The narrative presents this without editorial comment, allowing the reader to evaluate Abram's character.
14. Abram's fear proves well-founded — Sarai's beauty is indeed noticed. The narrative pace quickens as events unfold exactly as Abram predicted.
15. 'Pharaoh' (Par'oh,) — an Egyptian title meaning 'great house.' No specific pharaoh is named. The term is used throughout the Hebrew Bible for the king of Egypt.
15. 'Was taken' (vattuqqach) — the passive voice is ominous. Sarai does not go willingly; she is taken. The verb laqach ('to take') echoes the dangerous 'taking' of wives in 6:2. The matriarch of the promised line is now in Pharaoh's house — the promise is in jeopardy.
16. Abram profits materially from the arrangement — exactly as he hoped ('that it may go well with me,' v. 13). His material enrichment comes at the cost of his wife's dignity and safety. The irony is uncomfortable: the man of faith prospers through deception while his wife is in Pharaoh's house.
16. The mention of camels has been discussed by scholars, as domesticated camel use in the early second millennium BCE is debated archaeologically. Some view this as an anachronism reflecting later editorial perspective; others argue for earlier camel domestication than previously assumed.
17. 'The LORD struck Pharaoh with great plagues' (vaynagga YHWH et-Par'oh nega'im gedolim) — God intervenes to protect Sarai and the promise when Abram fails to do so. The 'plagues' (nega'im) on Pharaoh's house foreshadow the greater plagues God will send on a later Pharaoh to free Abraham's descendants from Egypt (Exodus 7–12). The parallels between this episode and the Exodus are striking: descent to Egypt due to famine, threat to the chosen family, plagues on Pharaoh, departure with wealth.
17. 'Because of Sarai, Abram's wife' — God acts on behalf of Sarai, identified specifically as 'Abram's wife.' Her status as the wife of the covenant recipient is the reason for divine protection. The promise depends on this woman.
18. Pharaoh's rebuke of Abram is morally justified — a pagan king rebukes the patriarch for deception. The ethical reversal is striking: the recipient of God's promise behaves worse than the foreigner. This pattern recurs in 20:9–10 (Abimelech rebukes Abraham) and 26:10 (Abimelech rebukes Isaac).
18. 'What is this you have done to me?' — the same words God uses in 3:13 to the woman ('What is this you have done?'). Pharaoh's language echoes the divine interrogation after the fall.
19. Pharaoh returns Sarai and expels Abram. The command 'take her and go' (qach valekh) is terse and decisive. Pharaoh is done with Abram — he wants no further trouble from this God-protected deceiver.
20. Abram is escorted out of Egypt under guard — expelled but allowed to keep his acquired wealth. The chapter ends with Abram leaving Egypt enriched but morally diminished. He has been rebuked by a pagan king and rescued by God despite his own failure.
20. The Exodus pattern is clear: descent to Egypt danger to the chosen family divine plagues on the oppressor departure with wealth. This mini-Exodus foreshadows the national Exodus centuries later. God's protection of the patriarchal family even through their moral failures ensures that the promise will be fulfilled.

13

Summary: Abram returns from Egypt wealthy. Strife arises between his herdsmen and Lot's because the land cannot support both. Abram offers Lot first choice; Lot selects the well-watered Jordan plain near Sodom. God then reaffirms the land promise to Abram, telling him to walk through the land in every direction.

What Makes This Remarkable: Lot's choice is described with Eden-like language — the plain was 'like the garden of the LORD' (v. 10) — yet his movement is toward Sodom, whose men are 'exceedingly wicked, great sinners against the LORD' (v. 13). The contrast between human choosing (Lot lifts his eyes and selects) and divine giving (God tells Abram to lift his eyes and promises all he sees) structures the chapter. Abram's generosity with the land is paradoxically rewarded with the whole land.

Translation Friction: The comparison of the Jordan plain to 'the garden of the LORD' and 'the land of Egypt' (v. 10) pairs two places — one sacred, one associated with bondage — in a single breath, and this duality resists simple evaluation. We rendered the Hebrew directly and let the tension stand. The ominous parenthetical 'this was before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah' (v. 10) functions as a narrative prolepsis that

English handles naturally.

Connections: Abram's building of altars (13:18) continues the worship pattern from 12:7-8. The Sodom reference anticipates chapters 18-19. The promise that Abram's offspring will be 'like the dust of the earth' (13:16) is the first of three great multiplication metaphors — dust (13:16), stars (15:5), and sand (22:17). Lot's eastward movement continues the ominous eastward trajectory of 3:24 and 4:16.

¹So Abram went up from Egypt—he and his wife and all that he had, and Lot with him—into the Negev. ²Now Abram was very wealthy in livestock, silver, and gold. ³He journeyed by stages from the Negev to Bethel, to the place where his tent had been at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai, ⁴to the place of the altar that he had made there previously. There Abram called upon the name of the LORD. ⁵Lot, who went with Abram, also had flocks, herds, and tents. ⁶The land could not support both of them dwelling together, for their possessions were so great that they could not dwell together. ⁷There was strife between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. At that time the Canaanites and the Perizzites were dwelling in the land. ⁸So Abram said to Lot, "Let there be no strife between me and you, and between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, for we are kinsmen. ⁹Is not the whole land before you? Please separate from me. If you go to the left, I will go to the right; or if you go to the right, I will go to the left." ¹⁰Lot lifted up his eyes and saw that the whole Jordan plain was well watered everywhere—this was before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah—like the garden of the LORD, like the land of Egypt, in the direction of Zoar. ¹¹So Lot chose for himself all the Jordan plain, and Lot journeyed east. Thus they separated from each other. ¹²Abram settled in the land of Canaan, while Lot settled among the cities of the plain and moved his tent as far as Sodom. ¹³Now the men of Sodom were exceedingly wicked, great sinners against the LORD. ¹⁴The LORD said to Abram, after Lot had separated from him, "Lift up your eyes and look from the place where you are—northward and southward, eastward and westward, ¹⁵for all the land that you see I will give to you and to your offspring forever. ¹⁶I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth, so that if anyone could count the dust of the earth, then your offspring could also be counted. ¹⁷Rise up, walk through the land, its length and its breadth, for I will give it to you." ¹⁸So Abram moved his tent and came and settled by the oaks of Mamre, which are at Hebron, and there he built an altar to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Went up' (vayya'al) — the reverse of 'went down' to Egypt (12:10). Ascending from Egypt to Canaan becomes a standard movement in the biblical narrative. Abram returns to the promised land.
2. 'Very wealthy' translates kaved me'od (כָּבֵד מְּוֹד), literally 'very heavy.' The root kaved means 'heavy, weighty, honored, rich.' Abram is materially substantial — the wealth from Egypt (12:16) and his own accumulation have made him a man of means. Material blessing fulfills part of God's promise (12:2).
3. Abram retraces his steps — returning to the exact location where he had camped and built an altar (12:8). The return to his starting point suggests a desire to reconnect with the place of worship and the divine encounter.
4. Abram returns to the altar and resumes worship. After the moral failure in Egypt, Abram's return to the place of the altar suggests a return to faithfulness. He 'calls upon the name of the LORD' — reaffirming his relationship with God.
5. Lot has also prospered. His wealth, combined with Abram's, creates the practical problem that leads to their separation.
6. The repetition of 'could not dwell together' (lo yakhlu lashevet yachdav) emphasizes the incompatibility. Their combined wealth exceeds the land's capacity. Prosperity creates a problem that poverty did not.
7. 'Strife' (riv, רִיב) — a legal or personal dispute. The conflict is between the herdsmen, not between Abram and Lot directly, but it threatens their relationship.
7. 'The Canaanites and the Perizzites were dwelling in the land' — this note (similar to 12:6) reminds the reader that Abram and Lot are not alone. Their internal conflict plays out before an audience of indigenous peoples. The observation may also underscore that the limited land must support not only Abram and Lot but also the existing inhabitants.
8. 'We are kinsmen' (anashim achim anachnu, אָנָשִׁים אַחִים אֲנַחְנוּ) — literally 'men, brothers, we are.' In contrast to Cain's denial of brotherly responsibility (4:9), Abram affirms the family bond and acts to preserve it. Achim here means 'relatives, kinsmen' rather than literal brothers.

8. Abram, the elder and the one with the divine promise, takes the initiative to resolve the conflict peacefully. He is willing to yield his right of first choice to preserve family unity.
9. Abram offers Lot first choice of the land — a remarkably generous gesture. As the patriarch and the one to whom God promised the land, Abram had every right to choose first. His willingness to yield demonstrates trust that God will fulfill the promise regardless of which territory Abram occupies. Generosity flows from faith.
9. The separation is presented as a practical necessity ('please separate from me'), but it also fulfills God's original command to leave kindred (12:1).
10. 'Lot lifted up his eyes and saw' — the language of visual assessment and desire echoes Eve's seeing that the tree was 'desirable' (3:6) and the sons of God seeing that the daughters of men were 'beautiful' (6:2). Lot chooses by sight, not by faith.
10. 'Like the garden of the LORD' (kegan-YHWH) — the Jordan plain is compared to Eden itself. The lush, well-watered landscape recalls the paradise lost. But the narrator immediately inserts a proleptic note: 'before the LORD destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah.' What looks like paradise is destined for destruction.
10. 'Like the land of Egypt' — the comparison to Egypt is telling. Lot chooses the land that resembles the place from which Abram has just returned — the place of danger, moral compromise, and necessary rescue. Egypt and Sodom are paired as places of material abundance and moral peril.
11. 'Lot journeyed east' (vayyissa Lot miqqedem) — the eastward movement continues the pattern: Eden's entrance was in the east (2:8), Cain went east (4:16), the Babel builders migrated east (11:2). Moving east in Genesis is moving away from God's presence and blessing. Lot's choice, guided by sight rather than faith, takes him eastward — away from Abram and toward Sodom.
12. 'Moved his tent as far as Sodom' (vayye'ehal ad-Sedom) — Lot's proximity to Sodom is ominous. He does not yet live in Sodom but pitches his tent near it. The progression from 'near Sodom' to 'in Sodom' (14:12; 19:1) traces his gradual absorption into the city's life. The moral geography of Lot's choices leads inexorably toward catastrophe.
13. The narrator's moral evaluation of Sodom is emphatic and unambiguous: ra'im ('wicked/evil'), chatta'im ('sinners'), laYHWH ('against the LORD'), me'od ('exceedingly'). Lot has chosen to live near the most wicked city in the narrative. The beautiful land harbors profound moral corruption. The irony is pointed: Lot chose by sight, but what he could not see was the moral character of the people.
14. 'After Lot had separated from him' — God speaks to Abram only after Lot leaves. The separation from kindred (12:1) is now complete, and God can expand the promise. Obedience creates space for further revelation.
14. 'Lift up your eyes and look' — the same visual language used for Lot in verse 10 (Lot 'lifted up his eyes and saw'). But where Lot looked and chose for himself, Abram is told to look and receive God's gift. Lot saw what he desired; Abram sees what God promises.
14. The four directions (north, south, east, west) encompass the entire land. Abram is given a panoramic divine survey of all that God will give to his offspring.
15. 'All the land that you see' — everything visible from Abram's vantage point, in every direction, belongs to his offspring. Lot's portion is included in God's gift to Abram. Abram's generosity cost him nothing — God's promise encompasses more than any human negotiation could secure.
15. 'Forever' (ad-olam,) — the land promise is eternal. This word elevates the promise beyond a temporary arrangement to an everlasting covenant commitment.
16. 'Like the dust of the earth' (ka'aphar ha'arets) — the first of several comparisons for the innumerability of Abraham's offspring (cf. 15:5, stars of heaven; 22:17, sand of the seashore). 'Dust' (aphar) creates a connection to Adam's origin from the 'dust of the ground' (2:7; 3:19). The promise of offspring innumerable as dust reverses the death-to-dust sentence — from dust comes not death but abundant life.
17. 'Walk through the land' (hithallekh ba'arets) — God invites Abram to physically survey and experience the land promised to him. Walking through the land may also function as a symbolic act of possession — treading upon what is given, a practice known in ancient Near Eastern land grants. The verb hithallekh ('walk about') is the same used for 'walking with God' (5:22, 24; 6:9), now applied to walking in the promised land.
18. 'The oaks of Mamre' (elonei Mamre) — Mamre is a personal name (cf. 14:13, 24) associated with an Amorite ally of Abram. The oaks (or terebinths) of Mamre at Hebron become Abram's primary residence and the site of significant encounters with God (chapter 18).
18. Hebron (Chevron,) is one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world, located in the southern hill country of Canaan. It will become the site of the Cave of Machpelah, the patriarchal burial ground (chapter 23).
18. 'Built an altar to the LORD' — Abram's third altar in Canaan (after Shechem in 12:7 and Bethel in 12:8). Each major settlement is consecrated with an altar. Abram's journey through the land is a worship journey, claiming the land through devotion rather than conquest.

14

Summary: *Four eastern kings defeat five Canaanite kings and capture Lot. Abram musters 318 trained men, rescues Lot, and recovers everything. On his return, Melchizedek king of Salem blesses Abram and receives his tithe, while Abram refuses any spoil from the king of Sodom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is unlike anything else in Genesis — it reads like an ancient Near Eastern military chronicle, complete with coalition lists and battle geography. Melchizedek appears without genealogy or backstory as a king-priest of El Elyon ('God Most High'), blesses Abram, and vanishes from the narrative. Despite his brevity, he becomes one of the most theologically significant figures in the Bible. Abram identifies Melchizedek's El Elyon with YHWH (v. 22), making the first explicit claim that the God of Israel and the supreme deity known to other peoples are one.*

Translation Friction: *The title Ivri ('Hebrew,' v. 13) appears for the first time here — a term typically used by outsiders to describe Israelites or by Israelites speaking to non-Israelites. We retained 'Hebrew' and noted its social context. The divine title El Elyon ('God Most High') is a compound that functions as a single title, and we rendered it accordingly rather than splitting it into separate words.*

Connections: *Melchizedek's blessing reappears in Psalm 110:4 ('a priest forever after the order of Melchizedek') and is developed extensively in Hebrews 5-7. Abram's tithe (14:20) establishes voluntary giving before Levitical law. The mention of Dan (14:14) uses a place name that will not officially exist until Judges 18:29. The war narrative shows Abram as a military leader — a side of his character not seen elsewhere.*

¹In the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer king of Elam, and Tidal king of Goiim, ²they made war against Bera king of Sodom, Birsha king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (that is, Zoar). ³All these joined forces in the Valley of Siddim (that is, the Salt Sea). ⁴For twelve years they had served Chedorlaomer, but in the thirteenth year they rebelled. ⁵In the fourteenth year, Chedorlaomer and the kings who were with him came and defeated the Rephaim in Ashteroth-karnaim, the Zuzim in Ham, the Emim in Shaveh-kiriathaim, ⁶and the Horites in their hill country of Seir as far as El-paran on the edge of the wilderness. ⁷Then they turned back and came to En-mishpat (that is, Kadesh) and defeated all the territory of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites who dwelt in Hazazon-tamar. ⁸Then the king of Sodom, the king of Gomorrah, the king of Admah, the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela (that is, Zoar) went out and drew up their battle lines against them in the Valley of Siddim— ⁹against Chedorlaomer king of Elam, Tidal king of Goiim, Amraphel king of Shinar, and Arioch king of Ellasar—four kings against five. ¹⁰Now the Valley of Siddim was full of bitumen pits, and as the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, some fell into them, and the rest fled to the hill country. ¹¹They seized all the possessions of Sodom and Gomorrah and all their food, and departed. ¹²They also took Lot—the son of Abram's brother—and his possessions, and departed, for he was living in Sodom. ¹³A fugitive came and told Abram the Hebrew, who was dwelling by the oaks of Mamre the Amorite, brother of Eshcol and brother of Aner; these were allies of Abram. ¹⁴When Abram heard that his kinsman had been taken captive, he mustered his trained men, born in his household, 318 of them, and pursued as far as Dan. ¹⁵He divided his forces against them by night, he and his servants, and defeated them and pursued them as far as Hobah, north of Damascus. ¹⁶He recovered all the possessions and also brought back his kinsman Lot with his possessions, and the women and the people as well. ¹⁷After Abram returned from defeating Chedorlaomer and the kings who were with him, the king of Sodom went out to meet him at the Valley of Shaveh (that is, the King's Valley). ¹⁸Then Melchizedek king of Salem brought out bread and wine. He was priest of God Most High. ¹⁹He blessed him and said, "Blessed be Abram by God Most High, Maker of heaven and earth, ²⁰and blessed be God Most High, who has delivered your enemies into your hand." Then Abram gave him a tenth of everything. ²¹The king of Sodom said to Abram, "Give me the people, and take the possessions for yourself." ²²But Abram said to the king of Sodom, "I have raised my hand to the LORD, God Most High, Maker of heaven and earth, ²³that I will take nothing belonging to you, not a thread or a sandal strap, lest you should say, 'I have made Abram rich.' ²⁴I will take nothing except what the young men have

eaten, and the share of the men who went with me—Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre. Let them take their share."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter introduces a unique narrative in Genesis — an account of inter-regional warfare involving named kings. It reads more like ancient Near Eastern royal annals than the family narratives surrounding it.
1. 'Shinar' is Mesopotamia (cf. 10:10; 11:2). 'Elam' is southwestern Iran. 'Goiim' () means 'nations' — Tidal may be king of a coalition or a region known by this general term. Some have attempted to identify these kings with known historical figures (Amraphel with Hammurabi, for instance), but no consensus exists.
2. The five cities of the plain — Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, Zeboiim, and Bela/Zoar — are the coalition that faces the eastern kings. These are the same cities listed in 10:19 as part of the Canaanite territory.
2. The kings' names may carry symbolic meanings: 'Bera' could mean 'in evil'; 'Birsha' could mean 'in wickedness.' Whether these are historical names or narrative symbolism is uncertain.
3. 'The Valley of Siddim' — identified with the Dead Sea (the Salt Sea, yam hammelach). The parenthetical note suggests the valley was later submerged, which aligns with the tradition that the destruction of Sodom transformed the region.
4. The five kings of the plain had been vassals of Chedorlaomer of Elam for twelve years. Their rebellion triggers the punitive military campaign described in the following verses.
5. The eastern coalition's campaign sweeps through Transjordan from north to south, defeating various peoples before confronting the rebellious five kings. The Rephaim, Zuzim, and Emim are all described elsewhere as ancient, giant peoples (cf. Deuteronomy 2:10–12, 20–21). Their defeat demonstrates the military power of the invading coalition.
6. The Horites (Chorim) inhabited the region of Seir before the Edomites displaced them (Deuteronomy 2:12, 22). El-paran is at the southern extreme of the campaign — the wilderness of Paran, near the Sinai peninsula.
7. 'En-mishpat' () means 'spring of judgment,' identified with Kadesh — a significant location in Israel's later wilderness journey. 'Amalekites' is proleptic, as the Amalekites descend from Esau's grandson (36:12). Hazazon-tamar is identified with En-gedi on the western shore of the Dead Sea (2 Chronicles 20:2).
8. The five kings of the plain finally confront the invaders in their own territory. The battle takes place in the Valley of Siddim, the same valley identified with the Dead Sea region.
9. 'Four kings against five' — the terse summary highlights the military mismatch: the more powerful coalition of four eastern kings defeats the five local kings.
10. 'Bitumen pits' (be'erot chemar,) — natural tar pits in the Dead Sea region. The bitumen (chemar) is the same material used in building the Tower of Babel (11:3). The fleeing kings fall into these pits, compounding their defeat.
11. The victors plunder Sodom and Gomorrah completely — goods and provisions. This sets the stage for Lot's capture in the next verse.
12. 'He was living in Sodom' (vehu yoshev biSdom) — the progression is complete. In 13:12, Lot pitched his tent 'toward' Sodom; now he is 'living in' Sodom. His gradual movement toward the wicked city has resulted in full absorption. He is now a resident and shares in Sodom's fate.
12. Lot is identified as 'the son of Abram's brother' — his kinship with Abram is emphasized, which motivates Abram's response.
13. 'Abram the Hebrew' (Abram ha'Ivri,) — this is the first use of the term 'Hebrew' (Ivri) in the Bible. The designation Ivri may mean: (1) 'descendant of Eber' (Ever, 10:21, 24–25); (2) 'one from beyond' (from the root avar, 'to cross over') — referring to crossing the Euphrates; (3) a social designation — the Habiru/Apiru, a class of semi-nomadic people attested in ancient Near Eastern texts. It is used here as an ethnic or social identifier distinguishing Abram from the local population.
13. 'Allies of Abram' (ba'alei berit-Abram,) — literally 'masters/lords of Abram's covenant.' These Amorites — Mamre, Eshcol, and Aner — have a covenant alliance with Abram. They will accompany him in the rescue mission (v. 24).
14. 'His kinsman' (achiv,) — literally 'his brother,' but Lot is his nephew. The term ach is used broadly for kinship, as in 13:8.
14. 'Trained men' translates chanichav (), from the root ch-n-kh ('to dedicate, to train'). These are retainers or dependents trained for military service, born within Abram's household. The number 318 indicates a substantial household — Abram is a significant chieftain, not a simple nomad.
14. The rescue mission transforms Abram from a pastoral figure into a military leader. He pursues the victorious eastern kings all the way to Dan (the northern limit of Canaan), some 120 miles from Hebron.
15. Abram employs a nighttime attack with divided forces — a classic military tactic that creates confusion (cf. Gideon in Judges 7:16–22). With 318 men and his Amorite allies, Abram defeats the coalition that had already vanquished multiple peoples and five kings. The campaign extends far north to Damascus — an extraordinary military achievement.

15. 'North of Damascus' — literally 'on the left of Damascus.' In Hebrew directional orientation, one faces east; 'left' is north.
16. The rescue is complete — all captives and possessions are recovered. Abram accomplishes what the five kings of the plain could not: he defeats the eastern coalition and liberates the captives.
17. 'The Valley of Shaveh, the King's Valley' — identified by Josephus and later tradition with the Kidron Valley near Jerusalem. The meeting with two kings — Sodom's king and Melchizedek — occurs in this significant location.
18. 'Melchizedek' (Malki-tsedeq,) means 'my king is righteousness' or 'king of righteousness' (cf. Hebrews 7:2). He is both king and priest — a dual role that has profound theological significance in later biblical tradition (Psalm 110:4; Hebrews 5–7).
18. 'King of Salem' (melekh Shalem) — Shalem () means 'peace' (related to shalom) and is identified with Jerusalem (cf. Psalm 76:2). Melchizedek is thus 'king of peace' ruling in 'peace/Salem.'
18. 'Priest of God Most High' (kohen le-El Elyon) — El Elyon () is a title meaning 'God Most High.' This is the first occurrence of the term 'priest' (kohen) in the Bible. Melchizedek appears without genealogy, without introduction, and without further explanation — a mysterious figure whose very lack of context becomes theologically significant (Hebrews 7:3).
18. The bread and wine may represent a simple provision of refreshment for the returning warriors or a more formal ritual meal. Later Christian tradition has seen in this a foreshadowing of the Eucharist.
19. 'Maker of heaven and earth' translates qoneh shamayim va'arets (). The word qoneh (from qanah) can mean 'possessor,' 'creator,' or 'acquirer.' The same root appeared in Eve's exclamation at Cain's birth (4:1, 'I have acquired'). The rendering follows the sense of 'maker/creator' here, connecting El Elyon to the creator God of Genesis 1.
19. Melchizedek blesses Abram — the priest of God Most High pronounces divine blessing on the patriarch. The fact that Abram accepts this blessing from a non-Israelite priest indicates that true worship of God existed outside Abram's family.
20. 'Delivered your enemies into your hand' (miggen tsareikha beyadekha) — Melchizedek attributes Abram's military victory to God Most High. The victory was divine, not merely human.
20. 'A tenth of everything' (ma'aser mikkol,) — the first tithe in the Bible. Abram voluntarily gives a tenth of the spoils to Melchizedek, acknowledging his priestly authority and God's role in the victory. This becomes the basis for later tithing practices (cf. Leviticus 27:30–33; Hebrews 7:4–10).
21. The king of Sodom's offer contrasts sharply with Melchizedek's blessing. Where Melchizedek gave and blessed, Sodom's king bargains — offering the material spoils in exchange for the recovered captives. The juxtaposition of the two kings presents Abram with a choice between two sources of wealth and two kinds of relationship.
22. 'I have raised my hand' (harimoti yadi) — a gesture of oath-taking. Abram has sworn an oath to God.
22. Significantly, Abram identifies 'the LORD' (YHWH) with 'God Most High' (El Elyon), using Melchizedek's title alongside the covenant name. This theological equation means that Melchizedek's God and Abram's God are the same — the one true God who made heaven and earth.
23. 'Not a thread or a sandal strap' (im-michut ve'ad serokh-na'al) — a proverbial expression for the smallest, most worthless items. Abram refuses everything — from the most trivial to the most valuable. His refusal is absolute.
23. Abram's motivation: he will not allow the king of Sodom to claim credit for his wealth. Abram's riches come from God's blessing (12:2), not from Sodom's king. To accept Sodom's goods would compromise the purity of the divine gift and create a debt relationship with a wicked city.
24. Abram makes two exceptions: (1) the food already consumed by his warriors during the campaign; (2) the rightful share of his Amorite allies (Aner, Eshcol, Mamre). He cannot impose his own convictions on others — his allies deserve their portion. Abram's refusal is personal, not imposed on others.
24. The chapter presents Abram in a new light: military leader, diplomat, and man of principle. He defeats kings, receives blessing from a priest-king, and refuses wealth from a king of wickedness. The contrast between his reception of Melchizedek's blessing and his rejection of Sodom's offer defines his character.

15

Summary: *God appears to Abram in a vision, calling himself Abram's shield. Abram protests his childlessness; God promises an heir from his own body and offspring like the stars. Abram believes, and God credits it as righteousness. In a covenant ceremony, God foretells 400 years of slavery and promises the land. A smoking fire pot and flaming torch pass between the animal halves.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 is one of the most theologically consequential sentences in the Hebrew Bible: Abram he'emin ('believed/trusted') and God 'credited it to him as righteousness (tsedaqah).' The verb he'emin shares its root with 'amen' — faith as staking one's existence on God's reliability. The covenant ceremony (vv. 9-18) is extraordinary: normally both parties walk between the split animals, invoking death on themselves if they break the oath. Here only God — as fire pot and torch — passes through, making this a unilateral, unconditional commitment.*

Translation Friction: *The verb he'emin (v. 6) is richer than English 'believed,' encompassing trust, reliance, and commitment. We rendered it as 'put his trust' to convey the active, relational dimension. The phrase tsedaqah ('righteousness') is not moral perfection but right standing — conformity to the standard of the relationship. The 'dreadful, great darkness' (v. 12) that falls on Abram uses tadmeh, the same supernatural sleep from 2:21, marking this as a divine encounter beyond ordinary consciousness.*

Connections: *Paul cites verse 6 in Romans 4:3 and Galatians 3:6 as the foundation of justification by faith. The 400-year prophecy (15:13) is fulfilled in Exodus 12:40-41. The territorial boundaries 'from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates' (15:18) define the ideal extent of the promised land, partially realized under Solomon (1 Kings 4:21). The fire theophany anticipates the burning bush (Exodus 3:2) and the pillar of fire (Exodus 13:21).*

¹After these things the word of the LORD came to Abram in a vision: "Do not be afraid, Abram. I am your shield; your reward will be very great." ²But Abram said, "Lord GOD, what will you give me, for I remain childless, and the heir of my house is Eliezer of Damascus?" ³And Abram said, "Look, you have given me no offspring, and a member of my household will be my heir." ⁴Then the word of the LORD came to him: "This man will not be your heir; rather, one who comes from your own body will be your heir." ⁵He brought him outside and said, "Look toward the sky and count the stars, if you are able to count them." Then he said to him, "So will your offspring be." ⁶Abram put his trust in the LORD, and the LORD credited it to him as righteousness. ⁷He said to him, "I am the LORD who brought you out from Ur of the Chaldeans to give you this land to possess it." ⁸He said, "Lord GOD, how am I to know that I will possess it?" ⁹He said to him, "Bring me a three-year-old heifer, a three-year-old female goat, a three-year-old ram, a turtledove, and a young pigeon." ¹⁰He brought him all these, cut them in half, and laid each half opposite the other, but the birds he did not cut in half. ¹¹Birds of prey came down on the carcasses, but Abram drove them away. ¹²As the sun was going down, a deep sleep fell upon Abram, and a dreadful, great darkness fell upon him. ¹³Then he said to Abram, "Know for certain that your offspring will be sojourners in a land that is not theirs and will be servants there, and they will be afflicted for four hundred years. ¹⁴But I will also judge the nation that they serve, and afterward they will come out with great possessions. ¹⁵As for you, you will go to your fathers in peace; you will be buried at a good old age. ¹⁶In the fourth generation they will return here, for the iniquity of the Amorites is not yet complete." ¹⁷When the sun had gone down and it was dark, there appeared a smoking fire pot and a flaming torch that passed between the pieces. ¹⁸On that day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, "To your offspring I have given this land, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the river Euphrates— ¹⁹the land of the Kenites, the Kenizzites, the Kadmonites, ²⁰the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Rephaim, ²¹the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Girgashites, and the Jebusites."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. "The word of the LORD came to Abram" (hayah devar-YHWH el-Abram) — this is the first occurrence of the prophetic reception formula, typically used for prophets (cf. Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Hosea). Abram receives divine communication in the manner of a prophet.

1. 'In a vision' (bammachazeh,) — from the root ch-z-h ('to see, to envision'). This is a formal revelatory experience — a visionary encounter with God.
1. 'I am your shield' (anokhi magen lakh) — God presents himself as Abram's protector. After the military victory of chapter 14, Abram may fear retaliation from the defeated kings. God assures him that divine protection exceeds any military alliance.
1. 'Your reward will be very great' (sekharekha harbeh me'od) — some take this as 'I am your reward' (God himself is the reward) or 'your reward is very great' (the reward God gives is substantial). The ambiguity is productive — God is both the giver and the gift.
2. 'Lord GOD' translates Adonai YHWH (). This is the first use of this combined divine title in the Bible. Adonai ('Lord, master') with YHWH ('the LORD') creates a double designation of sovereignty and covenant relationship.
2. This is the first recorded speech of Abram to God — and it is a complaint. Despite the great promises (12:2–3, 7; 13:15–17), Abram has no child. The contrast between the promise of innumerable offspring and the reality of childlessness is acute. Abram's question is raw and honest: what good are promises without an heir?
2. 'Eliezer of Damascus' — a household servant who would inherit in the absence of a natural son. Ancient Near Eastern legal texts (particularly from Nuzi) describe the practice of adopting a household servant as heir when no biological son exists.
3. Abram presses the point: 'you have given me no offspring' (lo natattah zara). The accusation is directed at God — it is God's responsibility to fulfill his own promise. The verb natattah ('you have given') is in the second person: you, God, have not given. This is bold, honest prayer — the ancestor of faith speaks to God with the candor of genuine relationship.
4. 'One who comes from your own body' (asher yetse mimme'eikha,) — literally 'who will come out from your bowels/inward parts.' God rules out the servant-adoption arrangement and promises a biological son. The promise is specific: Abram's own body will produce an heir.
5. God takes Abram outside — out of the tent and into the open night. The vast canopy of stars becomes a visual demonstration of the promise. In 13:16, offspring were compared to the dust of the earth; here they are compared to the stars of heaven — uncountable in both directions, earthward and heavenward.
5. 'So will your offspring be' (koh yihyeh zar'ekha) — as innumerable as the stars. The promise is given to a 75+ year-old childless man with a barren wife, standing under an infinite sky. The absurdity of the promise is the context of faith.
6. 'He believed the LORD' (vehe'emin baYHWH,) — the verb he'emin is the hiphil of aman (, 'to be firm, stable, trustworthy'), from which 'amen' derives. To 'believe' (he'emin) means to consider God trustworthy, to regard his word as reliable, to lean one's weight upon God. This is not mere intellectual assent but a trust that stakes one's future on God's promise.
6. 'He counted it to him as righteousness' (vayyachsheveha lo tsedaqah) — God 'reckoned' or 'credited' Abram's faith as righteousness. The verb chashav (, 'to reckon, to think, to account, to impute') is an accounting term — God credited Abram's trust to his account as tsedaqah (righteousness). This verse becomes foundational for Paul's theology of justification by faith (Romans 4:3; Galatians 3:6) and for James's understanding of faith and works (James 2:23).
6. This is one of the most theologically significant verses in the entire Old Testament. The relationship between faith and righteousness, between trust and divine approval, is established here at the beginning of the Abrahamic narrative.
7. 'I am the LORD who brought you out' — this self-introduction formula anticipates the Exodus formula: 'I am the LORD who brought you out of the land of Egypt' (Exodus 20:2). God identifies himself through his saving acts. The pattern is consistent: God's identity is revealed through what God does.
7. The purpose of the exodus from Ur was the gift of the land. Possession (lerishtah, 'to inherit it, to take possession of it') is the goal of the journey.
8. Abram's question is not doubt but a request for confirmation — a sign or assurance that the promise will be fulfilled. God's response is not a rebuke but a solemn covenant ceremony (vv. 9–21). God accommodates Abram's need for tangible assurance.
9. God instructs Abram to prepare a covenant ceremony. The animals specified — heifer, goat, ram, turtledove, pigeon — are the same animals later designated for sacrificial use in the Levitical system (Leviticus 1:2–17; 3:1; 5:7). The 'three-year-old' specification (meshulleshet, 'tripled/three years old') ensures fully mature animals.
9. The covenant ceremony that follows (the passing between cut pieces) is an ancient Near Eastern ritual known from other sources (cf. Jeremiah 34:18–19). It is a self-imprecatory oath: the one who passes between the pieces invokes upon himself the fate of the animals if the covenant is broken.
10. 'Cut them in half' (vayvatter otam battavekh) — the verb batar () means 'to cut in two, to divide.' The halved carcasses are arranged facing each other, creating a pathway between the pieces. This is the ritual of 'cutting a covenant' (karat berit) — the Hebrew expression for making a covenant literally means 'to cut,' reflecting this ceremony.
10. The birds are not divided, following later sacrificial practice (Leviticus 1:17).
11. 'Birds of prey' (ha'ayit,) — predatory birds descend on the exposed animal pieces. Abram guards the covenant preparations against defilement. This detail adds narrative tension: the time between preparation and divine response is marked by vigilance and waiting. Some interpreters see the birds of prey as symbolizing the nations that will threaten Abraham's descendants.

- 12.** 'A deep sleep' (tardemah,) — the same word used when God put Adam into a deep sleep to create the woman (2:21). Tardemah is a supernaturally induced unconsciousness in which God acts. Abram is passive; God is the sole actor in the covenant ceremony that follows.
- 12.** 'A dreadful, great darkness' (eimah chashekah gedolah) — the combination of terror and darkness creates an atmosphere of divine awe. The darkness may symbolize the period of oppression described in the next verses (vv. 13–16) — the 400 years of affliction in a foreign land. The covenant is made in darkness, through suffering, before the light of fulfillment.
- 13.** 'Know for certain' (yado'a teda,) — the infinitive absolute construction intensifies the verb: you will absolutely, certainly know. God grants the very assurance Abram requested in verse 8, but the knowledge includes suffering before fulfillment.
- 13.** 'Sojourners in a land that is not theirs' — the promise of land is preceded by a period of landlessness. Before possession comes dispossession. The prophecy encompasses the sojourn in Egypt and the subsequent slavery — events that will not occur for centuries but are revealed to Abram in advance.
- 13.** 'Four hundred years' — a round number. Exodus 12:40 gives 430 years for the sojourn in Egypt (the LXX includes the patriarchal period in this number). The discrepancy is a matter of how the period is calculated.
- 14.** 'I will judge the nation' — a promise of divine intervention against the oppressor. This is fulfilled in the Exodus plagues and the destruction of Pharaoh's army at the Sea.
- 14.** 'Come out with great possessions' (yets'u birkhush gadol) — fulfilled in Exodus 12:35–36, when the Israelites leave Egypt with Egyptian gold, silver, and clothing. The pattern of 12:10–20 (Abram goes to Egypt and leaves with wealth) will be repeated on a national scale.
- 15.** 'Go to your fathers' (tavo el-avoteikha) — an idiom for death, implying reunion with deceased ancestors. This is the first occurrence of this common Hebrew death expression (cf. 25:8; 35:29; 49:33). Whether it implies an afterlife belief or simply burial in the family tomb is debated.
- 15.** 'In peace... at a good old age' — despite the dark prophecy about his offspring, Abram himself is promised a peaceful death. He will not live to see the suffering — a mercy within the difficult revelation.
- 16.** 'The fourth generation' — generations could be long (100 years each would approximate 400 years), or 'fourth generation' may be an approximation. The point is that the return is certain but delayed.
- 16.** 'The iniquity of the Amorites is not yet complete' (lo-shalem avon ha-Emori ad-hennah) — this extraordinary theological statement reveals that God's gift of the land to Israel is connected to the moral behavior of the current inhabitants. The Canaanites/Amorites are not dispossessed arbitrarily; their displacement occurs when their iniquity reaches its full measure. God is patient even with the wicked — judgment waits until the cup is full. This principle qualifies the land promise: the conquest is not ethnic but moral. Israel will later be warned that the same standard applies to them (Leviticus 18:24–28; Deuteronomy 9:4–5).
- 17.** 'A smoking fire pot and a flaming torch' (tannur ashan velappid esh) — visible manifestations of God's presence. Fire and smoke are consistent divine theophany symbols (cf. the burning bush, Exodus 3:2; the pillar of fire, Exodus 13:21; Sinai's smoke and fire, Exodus 19:18). These symbols represent God himself passing through the covenant pieces.
- 17.** The climactic moment: GOD passes between the pieces. In the standard ancient Near Eastern covenant ceremony, both parties would walk between the halved animals, invoking the animals' fate upon themselves if they violated the covenant. But here, Abram is asleep (v. 12) — only God passes through. This makes the covenant unilateral: God alone bears the covenant obligation. God invokes upon himself the curse of covenant violation. If the covenant fails, it is God who will be 'torn apart.' The theological depth is staggering — the sovereign God binds himself unconditionally.
- 17.** This is why it is called an 'unconditional covenant' — its fulfillment depends entirely on God's faithfulness, not on Abram's performance.
- 18.** 'Made a covenant' (karat... berit, ...) — literally 'cut a covenant,' reflecting the cutting of the animals in the ceremony just performed.
- 18.** 'I have given' (natatti,) — past tense. Though the land has not yet been possessed, God speaks of the gift as already accomplished. The divine decision is irrevocable — it is as good as done.
- 18.** 'From the river of Egypt to the great river, the Euphrates' — the most expansive definition of the promised land in Genesis. 'The river of Egypt' may be the Wadi el-Arish (a seasonal watercourse in the Sinai) or the eastern branch of the Nile. The Euphrates is the great river of Mesopotamia. This territory was approximately realized during the reigns of David and Solomon (1 Kings 4:21).
- 19.** Ten peoples are listed in verses 19–21, representing the inhabitants of the promised territory. This is the most comprehensive list of displaced peoples, exceeding the usual lists of six or seven nations.
- 20.** The Rephaim reappear from 14:5 — one of the ancient 'giant' peoples of the land.
- 21.** The list ends with the familiar Canaanite peoples — Amorites, Canaanites, Girgashites, and Jebusites — who appear frequently in the conquest narratives. The ten peoples may represent totality (the number ten symbolizing completeness), indicating that the entire land, in all its diversity, is included in the promise.

16

Summary: *Sarai, unable to conceive, gives her Egyptian maidservant Hagar to Abram. Hagar conceives and begins to look down on Sarai. Sarai afflicts Hagar, who flees into the wilderness. The angel of the LORD finds Hagar at a spring, commands her to return, promises her innumerable offspring, and names her son Ishmael. Hagar names God El Roi — 'the God who sees me.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Hagar is the only person in Genesis who gives God a name: El Roi ('the God who sees,' v. 13). This is also the first appearance of the mal'akh YHWH ('angel of the LORD') in the Bible — a figure who speaks with divine authority and is identified by Hagar as God himself. The verb for Sarai's treatment of Hagar (vatte'anneha, 'afflicted her') is the same root used for Israel's suffering in Egypt (Exodus 1:11-12), creating a disturbing parallel: the ancestral family enacts the very oppression their descendants will endure.*

Translation Friction: *The word pere ('wild donkey,' v. 12) for Ishmael was not an insult in the ancient Near East but an image of untamable desert freedom. We rendered it directly and explained its positive connotation in the notes. The distinction between shifchah ('maidservant,' v. 1) and other terms for female servants matters legally — a shifchah belonged to her mistress, giving Sarai authority over Hagar. The wordplay between 'affliction' (oni, v. 11) and 'afflicted' (vatte'anneha, v. 6) links God's awareness directly to Sarai's cruelty.*

Connections: *The name Ishmael ('God hears,' v. 11) echoes throughout Scripture as a testimony to God's attentiveness to the marginalized. The well Beer-lahai-roi (v. 14) becomes Isaac's dwelling place (24:62; 25:11), connecting the two sons of Abraham through the same site of divine encounter. Sarai's use of Hagar follows the legal custom also seen in Rachel giving Bilhah to Jacob (30:3-4).*

¹Now Sarai, Abram's wife, had not borne him children. But she had an Egyptian maidservant whose name was Hagar. ²And Sarai said to Abram, "Look now, the LORD has prevented me from bearing children. Please go in to my maidservant; perhaps I will be built up through her." And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai. ³So Sarai, Abram's wife, took Hagar the Egyptian, her maidservant, after Abram had lived ten years in the land of Canaan, and gave her to her husband Abram as a wife. ⁴He went in to Hagar, and she conceived. And when she saw that she had conceived, her mistress became diminished in her eyes. ⁵Then Sarai said to Abram, "The wrong done to me is upon you! I myself gave my maidservant into your embrace, but when she saw that she had conceived, I became diminished in her eyes. May the LORD judge between me and you!" ⁶And Abram said to Sarai, "Look, your maidservant is in your hand; do to her whatever seems good to you." Then Sarai afflicted her, and she fled from her presence. ⁷The angel of the LORD found her by a spring of water in the wilderness, by the spring on the way to Shur. ⁸He said, "Hagar, maidservant of Sarai, where have you come from, and where are you going?" She said, "I am fleeing from the presence of my mistress Sarai." ⁹The angel of the LORD said to her, "Return to your mistress, and submit yourself under her authority." ¹⁰The angel of the LORD also said to her, "I will greatly multiply your offspring, and they will be too many to count." ¹¹The angel of the LORD said to her, "You are now pregnant and will bear a son. You shall call his name Ishmael, for the LORD has heard your affliction." ¹²He will be a wild donkey of a man — his hand against everyone, and everyone's hand against him — and he will live in defiance of all his brothers. ¹³She called the name of the LORD who spoke to her, "You are El Roi" — for she said, "Have I truly seen the one who sees me, even here?" ¹⁴Therefore the well was called Beer-lahai-roi. It is between Kadesh and Bered. ¹⁵Hagar bore Abram a son, and Abram called the name of his son whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. ¹⁶Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a jarring contrast to the grand promises of chapter 15. God has promised Abram offspring as numerous as the stars — yet Sarai 'had not borne him children' (lo yaledah lo). The barrenness is stated bluntly, without explanation or softening.
1. 'Maidservant' (shifchah,) — a female servant of lower status than an amah. A shifchah was personal property, often given as part of a dowry. The term will be important throughout the chapter, as Hagar's social status drives the conflict.

1. Hagar is identified as 'Egyptian' (mitsrit). This detail recalls Abram and Sarai's sojourn in Egypt (12:10–20), where Pharaoh gave Abram servants. Hagar may have been acquired during that episode — making her presence in the household a lingering consequence of Abram's earlier failure of faith.
2. 'The LORD has prevented me' (atsarani YHWH) — Sarai attributes her barrenness directly to God's action. The verb *atsar* means 'to restrain, shut up, close.' Sarai does not blame biology or fate; she names God as the one who has closed her womb. This is theologically honest but also sets the stage for a human solution to what she sees as a divine problem.
2. 'Perhaps I will be built up through her' (ulai ibbaneh mimennah) — the verb *ibbaneh* is a Niphal (passive/reflexive) form of *banah* ('to build'). There is a deliberate wordplay: *banah* ('build') and *ben* ('son') share the same root (b-n-h / b-n). To 'be built up' through a surrogate is to gain a son — and through a son, a household, a legacy, a future. The wordplay is untranslatable but essential.
2. Sarai's proposal follows well-attested ancient Near Eastern legal custom. Texts from Nuzi and Old Babylonian marriage contracts show that a barren wife could provide her maidservant to her husband as a surrogate. The child born would legally belong to the wife. This is not moral innovation — it is cultural convention.
2. 'Abram listened to the voice of Sarai' (vayyishma Abram leqol Sarai) — the phrasing echoes Adam's failure in 3:17 ('because you listened to the voice of your wife'). The narrator may be drawing a deliberate parallel: just as Adam acquiesced to Eve's initiative with negative consequences, Abram acquiesces to Sarai's plan with similarly complicated results.
3. The narrator emphasizes the formal, deliberate nature of this act. The verse is heavy with titles and identifiers: 'Sarai, Abram's wife' ... 'Hagar the Egyptian, her maidservant' ... 'Abram her husband.' Every social role is named, as if the narrator is recording a legal transaction — which, in effect, it is.
3. 'After Abram had lived ten years in the land of Canaan' — a chronological note that underscores the length of waiting. Abram arrived in Canaan at age 75 (12:4); he is now 85. Ten years of barrenness since the promise. The duration explains (though does not justify) the turn to a human solution.
3. 'Gave her to him as a wife' (le'ishah,) — Hagar's status changes. She is not merely used as a surrogate; she is given the formal status of wife (*ishah*). This mirrors the language of 2:22, where God 'brought her to the man.' The parallel with Eve's presentation is structurally deliberate and theologically loaded.
4. 'He went in to Hagar' (vayyavo el-Hagar) — the act is reported with characteristic Hebrew narrative brevity. No emotional commentary, no description of the relational dynamics. The narrator records the act and moves immediately to its consequence.
4. 'Her mistress became diminished in her eyes' (vatteqal gevirtah be'eineha) — the verb *qalal* means 'to be light, to be slight, to be of little account.' It is the opposite of *kavod* ('honor, weight, glory'). Hagar's fertility gives her what Sarai lacks, and the power dynamics shift. The one who can bear children looks down on the one who cannot. This is not abstract theology — it is the raw social reality of the ancient world, where a woman's worth was measured by her womb.
4. The term *gevirtah* ('mistress') is the feminine counterpart of *adon* ('lord, master'). It emphasizes the social hierarchy that Hagar's contempt violates.
5. 'The wrong done to me is upon you' (chamasi aleikha) — *chamas* means 'violence, injustice, wrong.' Sarai holds Abram responsible for the social humiliation she now suffers. The irony is sharp: Sarai initiated the arrangement (v. 2), yet she blames Abram for its consequences. The accusation is legally framed — *chamas* is a term of covenant violation and social injustice.
5. 'I gave my maidservant into your embrace' (natatti shifchati becheiqekha) — *cheiq* means 'bosom, embrace, lap.' The intimacy of the language makes Sarai's complaint more pointed: she personally arranged this intimate relationship, and now she feels betrayed by its result.
5. 'May the LORD judge between me and you' (yishpot YHWH beini uveinekha) — Sarai invokes God as arbiter. This legal formula appears in covenant disputes (cf. 31:53; 1 Sam 24:13). Sarai appeals to divine justice, even though the situation arose from her own initiative. The invocation of YHWH as judge between spouses signals the depth of the marital rupture.
6. Abram's response is a striking abdication. Having taken Hagar as a wife (v. 3), he now hands her back to Sarai's authority: 'your maidservant is in your hand.' He refuses to intervene, refuses to protect, refuses to adjudicate. The man who has just received the covenant of chapter 15 fails to exercise the justice it implies.
6. 'Sarai afflicted her' (vatte'anneha Sarai) — the verb '*innah* () means 'to afflict, to oppress, to humble.' This is the same root used in 15:13 where God tells Abram that his descendants will be 'afflicted' (*ve'innu otam*) in a foreign land for four hundred years. The verbal echo is devastating: Sarai, a future matriarch of Israel, treats her Egyptian servant the way Egypt will later treat Israel. The oppressed becomes the oppressor.
6. 'She fled from her presence' (vativrach mippaneha) — Hagar's flight into the wilderness prefigures Israel's flight from Egypt. A Hebrew mistress oppresses an Egyptian servant, who flees into the wilderness — the same pattern, reversed in ethnic terms, that will define the Exodus narrative.
7. 'The angel of the LORD' (mal'akh YHWH,) — this is the first appearance of this figure in the Bible. The *mal'akh* YHWH is one of the most mysterious figures in the Hebrew Bible: sometimes distinguishable from God, sometimes identified with God (see v. 13, where Hagar names the speaker as God himself). The angel speaks with divine authority, makes promises only God can make (v. 10), yet is described as a messenger (*mal'akh* means 'messenger, envoy').

7. 'Found her' (vayimtsa'ah) — God seeks out the marginalized. Hagar is a pregnant, foreign, runaway slave in the desert — and God finds her. The verb *matsa* ('to find') implies purposeful seeking. God does not stumble upon Hagar; he goes to her.
7. 'On the way to Shur' — Shur is on the northeastern border of Egypt. Hagar is heading home — back toward Egypt, away from the promised land. The geography of her flight is theologically significant: she is moving away from the sphere of covenant promise and toward her homeland.
8. The angel's two questions — 'where have you come from?' and 'where are you going?' — echo God's question to Adam in the garden (3:9). The questions are not for God's information; they are for Hagar's self-reflection. She must name her situation: she is running from something, but does she know what she is running toward?
8. The angel addresses her by name and social identity: 'Hagar, maidservant of Sarai.' He does not call her 'wife of Abram' (her newer status from v. 3) but 'maidservant of Sarai' (her original status). The designation is not demeaning — it is clarifying. Her identity and her obligation remain tied to Sarai.
8. Hagar's answer is partial: 'I am fleeing from my mistress Sarai.' She answers only the first question (where from?), not the second (where to?). She knows what she is escaping but has no destination, no plan. She is a woman in flight without a future.
9. 'Return to your mistress' (shuvi el-gevirktekh) — the command to return is difficult. Hagar is being sent back to the very situation from which she fled. Yet the command is coupled with a promise (vv. 10–12) that transforms the meaning of her return: she goes back not as a forgotten slave, but as a woman who has been seen by God and who carries a divinely named child.
9. 'Submit yourself under her authority' (vehit'anni tachat yadeha) — the verb *hit'anni* is the Hitpael (reflexive) of 'anah, the same root used for Sarai's 'affliction' of Hagar in v. 6. The angel tells Hagar to 'humble yourself' under Sarai's hand — using the very verb that described her mistreatment. This is not an endorsement of abuse; it is a command to endure within a social structure that will, in God's timing, yield blessing. The reflexive form shifts the agency: Hagar is to humble herself, not merely be humbled.
10. 'I will greatly multiply' (harbah arbek) — the infinitive absolute construction (harbah + finite verb arbek) intensifies the promise. This is the same grammatical structure used in God's promises to Abram (cf. 22:17). The angel speaks with divine authority — making a promise that only God can fulfill. This further blurs the line between the angel and God himself.
10. The promise to Hagar parallels the promise to Abram: innumerable offspring (cf. 13:16; 15:5). Hagar, a foreign slave woman, receives a version of the patriarchal blessing. God's care extends beyond the covenant line. The promise is remarkable: an Egyptian runaway slave receives from God's own messenger an assurance of countless descendants.
11. This is an annunciation — a divine announcement of a birth with a divinely assigned name. It is the first birth annunciation in the Bible, establishing a pattern that will recur for Isaac (17:19), Samson (Judg 13:3–5), and ultimately for Jesus (Luke 1:31). Remarkably, this foundational pattern is first given not to a matriarch of Israel but to an Egyptian slave woman.
11. 'You shall call his name Ishmael' (veqara't shemo Yishma'el) — the name Yishma'el () means 'God hears' or 'God will hear.' It is composed of *yishma* ('he hears') + *El* ('God'). The child's very name is a permanent testimony that God heard the cry of a marginalized woman.
11. 'The LORD has heard your affliction' (ki-shama YHWH el-onyekkh) — the word 'affliction' (*oni*,) is from the same root as the verb 'anah used in vv. 6 and 9. God heard the very affliction that Sarai inflicted. The name Ishmael encodes both the suffering and the divine response to it.
12. 'A wild donkey of a man' (*pere adam*,) — the *pere* is the wild donkey (*onager*), an animal celebrated in the ancient world for its untamable freedom. It roams the desert steppe, refuses domestication, and answers to no master (cf. Job 39:5–8). The description is not derogatory but characterizes fierce independence and desert survival. Ishmael's descendants will be Bedouin peoples of the wilderness — free, resilient, and ungovernable.
12. 'His hand against everyone, and everyone's hand against him' — this describes a life of perpetual conflict and self-assertion. The characterization fits the semi-nomadic, raiding lifestyle of desert peoples. It is descriptive prophecy, not moral judgment.
12. 'He will live in defiance of all his brothers' (*al-penei khol-echav yishkon*) — the phrase *al-penei* can mean 'in the presence of,' 'before the face of,' 'opposite to,' or 'in defiance of.' The ambiguity is productive. Ishmael will dwell alongside his kinsmen — Isaac's line — but in a posture of independence, perhaps confrontation. The prophecy anticipates the complex, enduring relationship between the Ishmaelite and Israelite peoples.
13. 'She called the name of the LORD' (*vatiqra shem-YHWH*) — Hagar is the only person in Genesis who gives God a name. Not Abraham, not Isaac, not Jacob — but Hagar, the Egyptian slave woman. She names God based on her experience of him: the God who sees.
13. 'El Roi' () — 'God of seeing' or 'God who sees me.' The name captures Hagar's astonishment: God saw her. In a world where she was invisible — a foreign slave, a disposable surrogate — God saw her. The name is a theological revolution compressed into two words.
13. 'Have I truly seen the one who sees me, even here?' — the Hebrew of this phrase (*halom ra'iti acharei ro'i*) is notoriously difficult. The general sense is Hagar's amazement that she has had a direct encounter with God and survived (cf. 32:30; Exod 33:20). The word *halom* ('here') emphasizes the location — even here, in the wilderness, far from any sanctuary or sacred site, God appeared.
13. The interplay of 'seeing' (*r-'h*) runs throughout: God sees Hagar (*El Roi*), Hagar sees God (*ra'iti*), and she is astonished by the mutual vision. The theme of seeing will recur at key moments in Genesis (22:14, 'The LORD will see/provide').

14. 'Beer-lahai-roi' () — the name means 'the well of the living one who sees me' or 'the well of the living one of my seeing.' It combines be'er ('well'), lachai ('of the living one'), and ro'i ('who sees me' or 'my seeing'). The well becomes a permanent geographic marker of Hagar's encounter with God — a place where the living God saw a desperate woman and she lived to tell of it.
14. The narrator adds a geographical note: 'between Kadesh and Bered.' This places the well in the Negev desert, in the region south of Canaan on the road toward Egypt. The location will reappear — Isaac will later settle near Beer-lahai-roi (24:62; 25:11), suggesting that the well becomes significant for both lines of Abraham's family.
14. Place-naming in Genesis serves as theological testimony: a location receives a name that permanently encodes a divine encounter. Bethel ('house of God'), Peniel ('face of God'), and Beer-lahai-roi all function as stone witnesses embedded in the landscape.
15. The narrative comes full circle: the barrenness introduced in v. 1 is partially resolved. Hagar bears a son — but it is not the son of the promise. The chapter opened with Sarai's inability to bear; it closes with Hagar's successful childbirth. The tension between these two women, and between human initiative and divine promise, remains unresolved.
15. 'Abram called the name of his son ... Ishmael' — Abram, not Hagar, names the child. This implies that Hagar told Abram about her encounter with the angel and the divinely assigned name. Abram accepts the angel's instruction and names his son 'God hears.' In doing so, Abram acknowledges both God's involvement and his own paternity.
15. The narrator carefully specifies: 'his son whom Hagar bore' (beno asher-yaledah Hagar). The maternal identity is noted — this is Hagar's son, not Sarai's. Despite the surrogate arrangement of v. 2, the narrative does not erase Hagar's motherhood.
16. The chapter closes with a chronological note: Abram is eighty-six. He was seventy-five when called (12:4), making it eleven years since the original promise. The son of promise (Isaac) will not arrive until Abram is one hundred (21:5) — fourteen more years of waiting. Ishmael's birth does not resolve the narrative tension; it deepens it.
16. The repetition of 'to Abram' (le'Avram) at the end of the verse emphasizes paternity. This is Abram's son — a fact that will have lasting significance when the question arises of who is Abraham's true heir (chapters 17 and 21).

17

Summary: *When Abram is ninety-nine, God appears as El Shaddai, changes his name to Abraham ('father of a multitude'), and establishes circumcision as the sign of an everlasting covenant. God renames Sarai as Sarah and promises her a son. Abraham laughs, pleads for Ishmael, but God insists the covenant passes through Isaac. Abraham circumcises his entire household that day.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word berit ('covenant') appears thirteen times in this chapter — more than any other chapter in the Bible. The covenant is described as olam ('everlasting') and the land as achuzzat olam ('an everlasting possession'), using the strongest language of permanence available in Hebrew. Circumcision marks the covenant on the organ of generation — the very body part through which the promises of offspring are fulfilled. Abraham's laughter (vayyitschaq, v. 17) contains Isaac's name: the verb tsachaq ('to laugh') becomes the name Yitschaq ('he laughs').*

Translation Friction: *El Shaddai (v. 1) is traditionally rendered 'God Almighty,' but the etymology of Shaddai is uncertain — possibly from shadad ('to overpower') or shad ('breast/mountain'). We used 'God Almighty' with a note on the ambiguity. The shift from Abram to Abraham involves inserting the syllable 'ha,' and while the text explains it as 'father of a multitude' (av hamon), the linguistic connection is more theological than etymological. We preserved the biblical explanation as the narrator presents it.*

Connections: *God's self-revelation as El Shaddai (17:1) is referenced in Exodus 6:3 as the name by which the patriarchs knew God. The covenant of circumcision becomes the defining marker of Jewish identity (cf. Romans 4:9-12). The promise of kings (17:6, 16) is fulfilled in the Davidic monarchy. The twelve princes of Ishmael (17:20) parallel the twelve tribes of Israel, showing God's blessing on both Abrahamic lines.*

1When Abram was ninety-nine years old, the LORD appeared to Abram and said to him, "I am God Almighty. Walk before me and be blameless." 2And I will set my covenant between me and you, and I will multiply you exceedingly." 3Then Abram fell on his face, and God spoke with him, saying, 4"As for me, behold, my covenant is with you, and you shall become the father of a multitude of nations." 5"No longer shall your name be called Abram, but your name shall be Abraham, for I have made you the father of a multitude of nations." 6And I will make you exceedingly fruitful, and I will make nations of you,

and kings shall come forth from you." ⁷"And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your offspring after you throughout their generations, as an everlasting covenant, to be God to you and to your offspring after you." ⁸"And I will give to you and to your offspring after you the land of your sojournings — all the land of Canaan — as an everlasting possession, and I will be their God." ⁹Then God said to Abraham, "As for you, you shall keep my covenant — you and your offspring after you throughout their generations." ¹⁰"This is my covenant which you shall keep, between me and you and your offspring after you: every male among you shall be circumcised." ¹¹"You shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin, and it shall be a sign of the covenant between me and you." ¹²"At eight days old every male among you shall be circumcised throughout your generations — whether born in the house or purchased with silver from any foreigner who is not of your offspring." ¹³"He who is born in your house and he who is purchased with your silver must certainly be circumcised. And my covenant shall be in your flesh as an everlasting covenant." ¹⁴"And any uncircumcised male who does not circumcise the flesh of his foreskin — that person shall be cut off from his people. He has broken my covenant." ¹⁵Then God said to Abraham, "As for Sarai your wife, you shall not call her name Sarai, for Sarah shall be her name." ¹⁶"I will bless her, and indeed I will give you a son by her. I will bless her, and she shall become nations; kings of peoples shall come from her." ¹⁷Then Abraham fell on his face and laughed, and he said in his heart, "Shall a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old? And shall Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a child?" ¹⁸And Abraham said to God, "If only Ishmael might live before you!" ¹⁹But God said, "No — Sarah your wife shall bear you a son, and you shall call his name Isaac. And I will establish my covenant with him as an everlasting covenant for his offspring after him." ²⁰"And as for Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him and I will make him fruitful and I will multiply him exceedingly. He shall father twelve princes, and I will make him into a great nation." ²¹"But my covenant I will establish with Isaac, whom Sarah shall bear to you at this appointed time next year." ²²When he had finished speaking with him, God went up from Abraham. ²³Then Abraham took Ishmael his son, and all who were born in his house, and all who were purchased with his silver — every male among the men of Abraham's household — and he circumcised the flesh of their foreskin on that very day, just as God had spoken to him. ²⁴Abraham was ninety-nine years old when the flesh of his foreskin was circumcised. ²⁵And Ishmael his son was thirteen years old when the flesh of his foreskin was circumcised. ²⁶On that very day Abraham was circumcised, and Ishmael his son. ²⁷And all the men of his household — those born in the house and those purchased with silver from a foreigner — were circumcised with him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Thirteen years of silence separate this chapter from the birth of Ishmael at the end of chapter 16. Abram was 86 when Ishmael was born (16:16); he is now 99. The narrator offers no account of the intervening years — God's word simply resumes when God chooses.
1. 'I am God Almighty' (ani El Shaddai,) — this is the first occurrence of the divine title El Shaddai in Scripture. The etymology of Shaddai is debated: it may derive from shadad ('to overpower'), from shad ('mountain'), or from a cognate meaning 'breast' (suggesting nourishment and sufficiency). The Septuagint renders it pantokrator ('Almighty'). Whatever its origin, the title emphasizes God's sovereign power — the very power needed to fulfill promises that seem biologically impossible.
1. 'Walk before me' (hithalekh lefanai) — the Hitpael of halakh implies continuous, habitual conduct. To 'walk before' God is to live one's entire life in conscious awareness of God's presence and scrutiny. The preposition lefanai ('before my face') suggests both intimacy and accountability.
1. 'Be blameless' (heyeh tamim) — tamim means 'complete, whole, without defect.' It is used of sacrificial animals that must be without blemish (Lev 1:3). Applied to a person, it does not mean sinless perfection but wholehearted integrity — undivided loyalty, complete devotion. Noah was also called tamim (6:9).
2. 'I will set my covenant' (ettenah veriti) — the verb natan ('to give, set, place') rather than karat ('to cut') is used here. God does not 'cut' a new covenant but 'gives' or 'places' one. This may suggest that the covenant is a gift bestowed rather than a bilateral negotiation. The distinction between natan and karat is significant: in chapter 15 God 'cut' the covenant with a dramatic ritual; here he 'gives' it as a sovereign grant.
2. 'Exceedingly' (bim'od me'od) — literally 'in very very,' an intensification by doubling. The same construction appears in 7:19 for the floodwaters. The doubling underscores the extravagance of the divine promise.
3. 'Fell on his face' (vayyipol al-panav) — a posture of extreme reverence, submission, and awe. Abram's physical response precedes any words. Before the God who identifies himself as El Shaddai, the only fitting response is prostration. This gesture will be repeated in verse 17, though with a very different emotional register.

3. The narrator shifts from 'the LORD' (YHWH, v. 1) to 'God' (Elohim) here. Both names refer to the same God, but Elohim emphasizes the cosmic, sovereign dimension — fitting for a passage about covenant establishment with universal implications.
4. 'As for me' (ani) — the emphatic pronoun marks a shift. God speaks first of his own commitment before imposing any obligation. The covenant begins with what God does, not what Abram must do.
4. 'Father of a multitude of nations' (av hamon goyim) — this phrase will be embedded in Abram's new name (v. 5). The word hamon means 'multitude, crowd, tumult' — a roaring abundance. The promise extends beyond one nation; Abraham will be the ancestor of many peoples. The word goyim ('nations') will later acquire the connotation of 'gentile nations,' but here it simply means 'peoples' in the broadest sense.
5. The name change from Abram (Avram, 'exalted father') to Abraham (Avraham) is one of the most significant renaming acts in Scripture. In the ancient Near East, to rename someone was to assert authority over them and to redefine their identity and destiny. God exercises sovereign prerogative here.
5. The text explains the new name as derived from av hamon ('father of a multitude'). Linguistically, the connection is folk etymology — the 'ha' in Avraham does not straightforwardly derive from hamon. But the theological point is what matters: the name now encodes the promise. Every time Abraham is addressed, the promise of nations is invoked.
5. 'I have made you' (netatikha) — the perfect tense indicates completed action. God speaks of a future reality as already accomplished. Abraham is not becoming the father of nations; in God's reckoning, he already is. This is the language of divine decree, where the word constitutes the reality it describes.
6. 'I will make you exceedingly fruitful' (vehifreti otkha bim'od me'od) — the verb parah ('to be fruitful') echoes the creation mandate of 1:28 ('be fruitful and multiply'). God's covenant with Abraham is a renewal and intensification of the original blessing given to humanity. What was commanded of Adam is now promised to Abraham.
6. 'Kings shall come forth from you' (umelakhim mimmekha yetse'u) — this looks forward to the royal line that will emerge from Abraham's descendants: the kings of Israel and Judah, and ultimately the Messianic king. The promise elevates Abraham's role from tribal patriarch to founder of dynasties.
7. 'I will establish my covenant' (vahaqimoti et-beriti) — the verb qum in the Hiphil ('to cause to stand, to establish, to raise up') conveys permanence and stability. The covenant is not merely announced but erected like a standing pillar — a structure meant to endure.
7. 'Everlasting covenant' (berit olam) — olam means 'perpetual, age-long, everlasting.' This is the first use of berit olam in Scripture. The covenant is not for a season or a generation but for all time. The same phrase will describe the Sabbath (Exod 31:16), the Levitical priesthood (Num 25:13), and the Davidic throne (2 Sam 23:5).
7. 'To be God to you and to your offspring' (lihyot lekha le'Elohim uleazar'akha acharekha) — this is the covenant formula that runs throughout Scripture: 'I will be your God, and you will be my people' (cf. Exod 6:7; Jer 31:33; Rev 21:3). The deepest content of the covenant is not land, offspring, or blessing — it is relationship with God himself.
8. 'The land of your sojournings' (erets megureikha) — megureim derives from gur ('to sojourn, to dwell as a resident alien'). The irony is pointed: the very land in which Abraham lives as a foreigner and temporary resident will become his descendants' permanent inheritance. The land of alienation becomes the land of possession.
8. 'Everlasting possession' (achuzzat olam) — achuzzah means 'property, possession, holding.' Combined with olam, it designates a permanent, inalienable inheritance. This is the strongest possible land grant — not a lease or temporary grant but an irrevocable deed.
8. 'And I will be their God' (vehayiti lahem le'Elohim) — the covenant formula is repeated. The land promise is embedded within the relational promise. The land is not an end in itself but the place where God's people will live in God's presence.
9. 'As for you' (ve'attach) — the emphatic pronoun shifts the focus from God's obligations (vv. 4–8) to Abraham's. God has declared what he will do; now comes what Abraham must do. The structure is that of a royal grant with stipulations: the king bestows, and the vassal responds.
9. 'You shall keep my covenant' (et-beriti tishmor) — the verb shamar ('to keep, guard, observe') implies active, vigilant maintenance. It is the same verb used of Adam's charge to 'keep' the garden (2:15). Covenant-keeping is not passive receipt but active stewardship.
10. 'Every male among you shall be circumcised' (himmol lakhem kol-zakhar) — the verb mul ('to circumcise') appears here in the Niphal (passive): 'shall be circumcised.' The sign of the covenant is not a monument or a document but a permanent mark on the body. The covenant is literally inscribed in flesh.
10. Circumcision was practiced in the ancient Near East by other peoples (Egyptians, Moabites, Ammonites), but with different significance — often as a puberty rite or pre-marriage ritual. What distinguishes Israelite circumcision is its covenantal meaning: it is a sign of belonging to God, performed on infants who cannot consent, marking them as members of the covenant community before they can choose.
11. 'A sign of the covenant' (ot berit) — an ot is a visible marker that points beyond itself to a reality it represents. The rainbow was an ot of the Noachic covenant (9:12–13); circumcision is the ot of the Abrahamic covenant. A sign is not the covenant itself but its visible, tangible expression.
11. The location of the sign on the reproductive organ is theologically deliberate. The covenant promises center on offspring — descendants as numerous as the stars. The sign is placed on the very member through which those descendants will come. Every act of generation thus occurs under the sign of

the covenant.

12. 'Eight days old' (ben shemonat yamim) — the specification of the eighth day is precise and deliberate. The number eight in biblical symbolism represents new beginning — the day after the complete cycle of seven. Medically, vitamin K and prothrombin levels in a newborn reach optimal levels around the eighth day, though this was unknown to the ancient world.
12. 'Born in the house or purchased with silver' (yelid bayit umiqnat-kesef) — the scope of circumcision extends beyond biological descendants to include all males in the household, including servants acquired by purchase. The covenant community is defined not solely by bloodline but by household belonging. This is a remarkably inclusive provision for an ancient covenant.
13. 'Must certainly be circumcised' (himmol yimmol) — the infinitive absolute construction (himmol yimmol) expresses emphatic certainty. This is not optional. The doubling of the verb intensifies the command: 'he shall surely, absolutely, without exception be circumcised.'
13. 'My covenant shall be in your flesh' (vehayetah veriti bivsarkhem) — the covenant is literally embodied. It is not merely remembered or recited but carried in the body. The word basar ('flesh') emphasizes the physical, material reality of covenant membership. There is no disembodied spirituality here — the covenant is as real as the body that bears its mark.
13. 'Everlasting covenant' (berit olam) — the phrase from verse 7 is repeated, now applied specifically to circumcision. The sign shares the permanence of the covenant it represents.
14. 'Shall be cut off from his people' (venikhretah hannefesh hahi me'ammeha) — the verb karat ('to cut off') creates a grim wordplay with the act of circumcision itself. The one who refuses to 'cut' the foreskin will himself be 'cut off' from the community. The punishment mirrors the violation in its very language.
14. 'That person' (hannefesh hahi) — nefesh here means 'person, individual, self' rather than 'soul' in the Greek philosophical sense. The entire person is cut off — not just a spiritual part.
14. 'He has broken my covenant' (et-beriti hefar) — the verb parar ('to break, annul, frustrate') means to treat the covenant as null and void. Refusal of the sign is treated as rejection of the covenant itself. The sign is not separable from the reality it represents.
15. Sarai's renaming parallels Abram's. Both names — Sarai () and Sarah () — are generally understood to mean 'princess,' though the forms differ dialectically. Sarai may be an older or archaic form, while Sarah is the standard Hebrew. The change in form, however slight, carries the same weight as Abram's renaming: God redefines her identity and destiny.
15. That God renames both husband and wife underscores that the covenant includes both. Sarah is not an afterthought or appendage to the Abrahamic covenant; she is a named, integral participant. Her womb is the means through which the covenant promise will be fulfilled.
15. The parallel structure — 'no longer shall you call' (lo tiqra) followed by 'for X shall be her name' (ki Sarah shemah) — mirrors the formula used for Abraham in verse 5. The symmetry is deliberate.
16. 'I will bless her' (uverakhti otah) — the verb barakh ('to bless') is used twice in this verse, emphasizing the fullness of divine favor upon Sarah. The repetition is not redundancy but intensification. God blesses her person and blesses her role.
16. 'I will give you a son by her' (vegam natatti mimennah lekha ben) — the word gam ('also, indeed') carries force here. It is not merely that Abraham will have a son (he already has Ishmael) but that Sarah specifically will bear a son. The promise is channeled through her body, through the very womb that has been closed for decades.
16. 'Kings of peoples shall come from her' (malkhei ammim mimennah yihyu) — the promise of kings, given to Abraham in verse 6, is now given to Sarah as well. She is co-heir of the royal promise. The phrase 'kings of peoples' (malkhei ammim) is broader than 'kings of Israel' — it encompasses the nations that will trace their ancestry through her.
17. 'He fell on his face and laughed' (vayyipol al-panav vayyitschaq) — Abraham falls on his face as he did in verse 3, but this time the prostration is accompanied by laughter. The verb tsachaq () is the root of the name Isaac (Yitschaq,). This is the first of several laughter episodes connected to Isaac's name: Abraham laughs here, Sarah will laugh in 18:12, and the name Isaac will be explained as 'he laughs' (21:6). The laughter is complex — it contains wonder, incredulity, joy, and perhaps the helpless mirth of a man confronting the impossible.
17. 'He said in his heart' (vayyomer belibbo) — this is interior speech, not spoken aloud. The narrator gives us access to Abraham's private thoughts. His public posture is prostration; his private response is astonished questioning. The combination of reverence and bewilderment is deeply human.
17. The ages are precise and deliberately absurd from a human perspective: a hundred-year-old father, a ninety-year-old mother. The impossibility is the point. The covenant promise requires divine intervention at the level of biology itself.
18. 'If only' (lu) — the particle lu introduces a wish or an unfulfilled desire. Abraham's plea is tender and poignant. He has lived with Ishmael for thirteen years; the boy is his son, his firstborn, the child he loves. When God announces a new son through Sarah, Abraham's first thought is not for himself but for Ishmael: let him not be forgotten, let him not be cast aside.
18. 'Might live before you' (yichyeh lefanekha) — 'to live before God' means to live under God's favor, protection, and blessing. Abraham is not merely asking that Ishmael survive physically but that he enjoy a life of divine favor. The plea reveals Abraham's character: he is a father who advocates for his son, even when God is redirecting the covenant promise elsewhere.

- 18.** This verse exposes the tension in Abraham's heart. He has received the promise of Isaac, yet he cannot release Ishmael. Human love does not yield easily to divine reordering. Abraham's advocacy for Ishmael is not faithlessness — it is fatherhood.
- 19.** 'No' (aval) — this particle is adversative, expressing strong contrast or correction. God gently but firmly redirects Abraham's attention. The plea for Ishmael is heard, but it does not alter the covenant plan. Aval can also mean 'indeed, truly' — 'truly, Sarah your wife shall bear you a son.' Either reading reinforces the certainty of the promise through Sarah.
- 19.** 'You shall call his name Isaac' (veqarata et-shemo Yitschaq) — God himself names the child before conception. The name Yitschaq ('he laughs') memorializes Abraham's laughter in verse 17. Every time the name is spoken, it will recall the astonished, joyful disbelief of a father who heard the impossible announced as certain. The laughter is not punished but preserved — woven into the child's identity.
- 19.** 'Everlasting covenant for his offspring' — the covenant line is specified with precision: not Ishmael but Isaac, and Isaac's offspring after him. The covenant is not a general blessing on all of Abraham's descendants equally but a specific, channeled promise through one particular line.
- 20.** 'I have heard you' (shema'tikha) — God acknowledges Abraham's plea. The verb shama ('to hear') contains a wordplay with the name Ishmael (Yishma'el, 'God hears'). God heard Hagar's affliction and named the boy 'God hears' (16:11); now God hears Abraham's intercession for that same boy. The name proves true again.
- 20.** 'Twelve princes' (shenim-asar nesi'im) — the number twelve parallels the twelve tribes that will descend from Isaac through Jacob. Ishmael's twelve princes (listed in 25:13–16) form a structural parallel to Israel's twelve tribes. The blessing on Ishmael is real and substantial — great nation, fruitful, multiplied, princely — but it is distinct from the covenant.
- 20.** 'A great nation' (goy gadol) — the same phrase used of Abraham's own destiny in 12:2. Ishmael will share in the blessing of greatness, even though the covenant line passes through Isaac. God's response to Abraham's plea is generous: Ishmael is not rejected but abundantly blessed.
- 21.** 'But my covenant' (ve'et-beriti) — the adversative force is clear. Despite the generous blessings on Ishmael, the covenant is directed elsewhere. The distinction between blessing and covenant is crucial in Genesis: many are blessed, but the covenant line is singular and specific.
- 21.** 'At this appointed time next year' (lammo'ed hazzeh bashanah ha'acheret) — mo'ed means 'appointed time, set time, season.' The birth of Isaac is not left vague but given a specific timetable. God sets an appointment. The precision underscores divine sovereignty over time and biology alike. The word mo'ed will later designate the appointed festivals of Israel (Lev 23).
- 21.** This verse establishes the theological distinction that will run through the rest of Genesis and into Paul's argument in Romans 9 and Galatians 4: the line of promise is not determined by natural birth order (Ishmael is firstborn) but by divine election (Isaac is chosen).
- 22.** 'God went up from Abraham' (vayya'al Elohim me'al Avraham) — the verb 'alah ('to go up, to ascend') implies that God's presence had descended to Abraham's level for this encounter. The departure is described spatially: God ascends, Abraham remains below. The language suggests a theophany — a visible, localized manifestation of God that has a beginning and an end.
- 22.** The abruptness of the departure is striking. There is no farewell, no closing liturgy, no final blessing formula. God finishes speaking, and God leaves. The weight of what has been said — covenant, circumcision, name changes, the promise of Isaac — is left with Abraham to absorb and obey.
- 23.** 'On that very day' (be'etsem hayyom hazzeh) — the phrase be'etsem ('in the bone/substance of') emphasizes immediacy. Abraham does not wait, does not deliberate, does not seek counsel. The same day God speaks, Abraham obeys. This immediate compliance contrasts with the complex, hesitant responses that have characterized earlier episodes (the sojourn in Egypt, the Hagar arrangement). Here Abraham's obedience is swift and total.
- 23.** 'Just as God had spoken to him' (ka'asher dibber itto Elohim) — the narrator confirms that Abraham's action corresponds exactly to God's command. There is no deviation, no modification, no partial compliance. The phrase functions as a formula of obedient fulfillment, paralleling the construction patterns in the flood narrative ('Noah did according to all that God commanded him,' 6:22).
- 23.** The scope of the circumcision is emphasized by the comprehensive listing: Ishmael, those born in the house, those purchased with silver, every male. Abraham's obedience extends to his entire household — he does not circumcise only himself or only his biological son.
- 24.** The narrator restates Abraham's age — ninety-nine — at the moment of circumcision. The repetition from verse 1 creates an inclusio (literary bracket) around the chapter. The chapter begins with Abraham at ninety-nine hearing the command; it ends with Abraham at ninety-nine obeying it. The same day, the same age, the same man — but now marked in his flesh by the covenant.
- 24.** That a ninety-nine-year-old man submits to circumcision underscores the radical nature of Abraham's obedience. This is not a painless ritual for an infant but a voluntary act of physical suffering by an aged man. The covenant costs something.
- 25.** Ishmael's age — thirteen — is precisely recorded. In later Jewish tradition, thirteen becomes the age of bar mitzvah, the age of religious responsibility, though this connection is not explicitly made in the text. In Islamic tradition, Ishmael's circumcision at thirteen is sometimes cited as the basis for circumcision at puberty rather than infancy.
- 25.** The juxtaposition of Abraham at ninety-nine and Ishmael at thirteen shows both patriarch and son united in obedience. Ishmael, old enough to resist, apparently submits to his father's decision. The narrator records no protest.
- 26.** 'On that very day' (be'etsem hayyom hazzeh) — the phrase is repeated from verse 23, hammering home the point of immediate obedience. The narrator wants no ambiguity: the circumcision happened the same day as the command. There was no interval of delay, no period of consideration.

- 26. Father and son are circumcised together — united in the sign of the covenant. Despite the fact that the covenant line will pass through Isaac rather than Ishmael, both bear the covenantal mark. Ishmael is blessed (v. 20) and marked (v. 26), even though the covenant proper belongs to Isaac (v. 21). The distinction between blessing and covenant election remains, but both are real.
- 27. The chapter ends not with Abraham alone but with his entire household. The final word is 'with him' (itto) — they were circumcised with him. Abraham does not merely obey for himself; he brings his whole community into the covenant sign. He is a patriarch in the fullest sense: one who leads his household in faithfulness.
- 27. The inclusion of those 'purchased with silver from a foreigner' (miqnat-kesef me'et ben-nekhar) reiterates the remarkable scope of the covenant community. It is not ethnically exclusive at this stage — foreigners brought into Abraham's household are brought under the covenant sign. The community of the circumcised is defined by belonging to Abraham's house, not by bloodline alone.
- 27. The chapter that began with God's appearance ends with human obedience. The structure is theological: divine initiative (vv. 1–22) followed by human response (vv. 23–27). God speaks; Abraham acts. The covenant is established by God and enacted by Abraham. This pattern — divine word, human obedience — will define the rest of the biblical narrative.

18

Summary: *Three visitors appear at Abraham's tent at Mamre. He offers lavish hospitality. They announce that Sarah will bear a son within a year; Sarah laughs. Two visitors depart toward Sodom while the LORD remains with Abraham, who intercedes for the city, negotiating from fifty righteous down to ten.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens with 'the LORD appeared to him' (v. 1) but immediately describes 'three men' (v. 2), creating a theological mystery about the relationship between divine presence and human form that the text never resolves. The question 'Is anything too wonderful for the LORD?' (v. 14) uses the verb pala, reserved for acts that exceed human capacity. Abraham's intercession (vv. 22–33) is the first sustained prayer dialogue in the Bible, and his argument rests on a single principle: 'Shall not the Judge of all the earth do justice?' (v. 25) — holding God to God's own character.*

Translation Friction: *Sarah's inner laughter (v. 12) uses language of surprising intimacy — 'shall I have pleasure (ednah)?' — from the same root as Eden. We rendered it directly. The shift between the three visitors and the LORD (the narrator alternates between plural and singular subjects) resists neat theological systematization, and we followed the Hebrew's own fluidity rather than harmonizing it. Sarah's denial of her laughter and God's gentle correction (v. 15) create a moment of human vulnerability that our rendering preserved without softening.*

Connections: *The promised 'appointed time' (mo'ed, v. 14) for Isaac's birth echoes 17:21 and anticipates the mo'adim of Israel's sacred calendar. Abraham's hospitality to strangers is cited in Hebrews 13:2 ('some have entertained angels unawares'). The intercession anticipates Moses' role as intercessor (Exodus 32:11–14) and establishes the principle that the righteous can affect the fate of the wicked.*

¹And the LORD appeared to him by the oaks of Mamre, as he sat at the entrance of the tent in the heat of the day. ²He lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, three men were standing before him. When he saw them, he ran from the entrance of the tent to meet them and bowed himself to the ground. ³And he said, "My lord, if I have found favor in your eyes, please do not pass by your servant. ⁴Let a little water be brought, and wash your feet, and rest yourselves under the tree. ⁵"And let me bring a morsel of bread, that you may refresh your hearts; afterward you may pass on — since you have come to your servant." They said, "So do, as you have said." ⁶Abraham hurried into the tent to Sarah and said, "Quick! Three seahs of fine flour — knead it and make cakes." ⁷And Abraham ran to the herd and took a calf, tender and good, and gave it to the servant, who hurried to prepare it. ⁸Then he took curds and milk and the calf that had been prepared, and set it before them. And he stood by them under the tree while they ate. ⁹They said to him, "Where is Sarah your wife?" He said, "There, in the tent." ¹⁰He said, "I will surely return to you at the appointed time, and behold, Sarah your wife shall have a son." Now Sarah was listening at the entrance of the tent, which was behind him. ¹¹Now Abraham and Sarah were old, advanced in days. The way of women had ceased for Sarah. ¹²So Sarah laughed within herself, saying, "After I have grown worn out, shall I have pleasure — my lord being old also?" ¹³The LORD said to Abraham, "Why did Sarah laugh, saying, 'Shall I indeed bear a child,

now that I am old?" ¹⁴"Is anything too wonderful for the LORD? At the appointed time I will return to you, at the time of life, and Sarah shall have a son." ¹⁵But Sarah denied it, saying, "I did not laugh," for she was afraid. He said, "No, but you did laugh." ¹⁶Then the men rose up from there and looked toward Sodom, and Abraham walked with them to see them on their way. ¹⁷And the LORD said, "Shall I hide from Abraham what I am about to do, ¹⁸given that Abraham will certainly become a great, powerful nation, and through him every nation on earth will receive blessing? ¹⁹"For I have known him, so that he may command his children and his household after him to keep the way of the LORD by doing righteousness and justice, so that the LORD may bring upon Abraham what he has spoken concerning him." ²⁰Then the LORD said, "Because the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and because their sin is very heavy, ²¹"I will go down and see whether they have done altogether according to the outcry that has come to me. And if not, I will know." ²²So the men turned from there and went toward Sodom, but Abraham still stood before the LORD. ²³Then Abraham drew near and said, "Will you indeed sweep away the righteous with the wicked? ²⁴"Suppose there are fifty righteous within the city. Will you indeed sweep it away and not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous who are in it? ²⁵"Far be it from you to do such a thing — to put the righteous to death with the wicked, so that the righteous are treated as the wicked. Far be it from you! Shall not the Judge of all the earth do justice?" ²⁶The LORD replied, "If I discover fifty righteous people inside the city of Sodom, I will spare the entire place on their account." ²⁷Abraham answered and said, "Behold, I have undertaken to speak to the Lord, I who am but dust and ashes. ²⁸"Suppose five of the fifty righteous are lacking. Will you destroy the whole city for lack of five?" He said, "I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there." ²⁹He spoke to him yet again and said, "Suppose forty are found there." He said, "I will not do it, for the sake of the forty." ³⁰He said, "Please let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak. Suppose thirty are found there." He said, "I will not do it if I find thirty there." ³¹He said, "Behold, I have undertaken to speak to the Lord. Suppose twenty are found there." He said, "I will not destroy it, for the sake of the twenty." ³²He said, "Please let not the Lord be angry, and I will speak just this once more. Suppose ten are found there." He said, "I will not destroy it, for the sake of the ten." ³³And the LORD went his way when he had finished speaking with Abraham, and Abraham returned to his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This theophany follows immediately after the covenant of circumcision in chapter 17. Abraham has just been circumcised at ninety-nine years old (17:24), and the LORD now appears — the verb *vayyera* ('appeared') is the same used in 12:7 and 17:1. The text states flatly that the LORD appeared; what Abraham sees in verse 2 are three men. The tension between divine appearance and human form is never resolved but held together throughout the narrative.
1. 'By the oaks of Mamre' (*be'elonei Mamre*) — *elonei* can mean 'oaks' or 'terebinths,' large sacred trees associated with theophany sites. Mamre was Abraham's ally (14:13) and this location near Hebron has been Abraham's dwelling since 13:18, where he built an altar to the LORD.
1. 'In the heat of the day' (*kechom hayyom*) — midday heat, when sensible people rest in shade. Abraham's sitting at the tent entrance suggests watchfulness for travelers, a mark of the hospitality culture of the ancient Near East. The detail also explains why the visitors would need water, rest, and refreshment.
2. 'Three men' (*sheloshah anashim*) — the narrative deliberately uses the ordinary word for 'men' (*anashim*). Abraham sees men, not angels, not divine beings. Yet verse 1 has told the reader that this is the LORD appearing. The interplay between the three visitors and the LORD who speaks creates one of the most theologically provocative passages in the Hebrew Bible. Two of these men will be identified as angels in 19:1; the third speaks as the LORD himself.
2. The verb *ra'ah* ('to see') appears twice: *vayyar* ('he looked') and *vayyar* ('he saw'). The first is observation; the second triggers action. Abraham does not merely notice — he perceives and responds instantly. His running (*vayyarots*) is remarkable for a ninety-nine-year-old man, recently circumcised. The urgency conveys both hospitality and perhaps an intuitive recognition of the visitors' significance.
2. 'Bowed himself to the ground' (*vayyishtachu artsah*) — this prostration could be either reverent greeting of honored guests (as in 23:7, 12) or worship of the divine. The ambiguity is deliberate. Abraham may not yet know who these visitors are, but his response is fitting either way.
3. 'My lord' (*Adonai*) — the Masoretic pointing here is debated. The form *Adonai* (with *qamats* under the *nun*) is typically reserved for addressing God, while *adoni* (with *chiriq*) would be a respectful address to a human superior. If the Masoretes intended the divine address, Abraham recognizes from the outset that he is speaking to the LORD. If the form is simply respectful address, Abraham is being hospitable to a stranger. The ambiguity mirrors the entire narrative's tension between human and divine.
3. 'If I have found favor in your eyes' (*im na matsati chen be'einekha*) — a standard formula of deference in hospitality contexts (cf. 19:19; 33:10). The particle *na* ('please, I pray') intensifies the entreaty. Abraham begs these visitors not to pass him by — an extraordinary inversion, as it is normally the traveler who begs for hospitality.

4. 'Let a little water be brought' (yuyqach na me'at mayim) — the passive verb (Hophal of laqach) suggests Abraham has servants to carry out his instructions. 'A little water' is characteristic understatement; Abraham will provide far more than he promises. Foot-washing was the first act of hospitality in a dusty, sandaled world — refreshment and respect combined.
4. 'Rest yourselves under the tree' (hisha'anu tachat ha'ets) — the Niphal imperative of sha'an means 'lean, recline, rest.' The singular tree (ha'ets) may be one of the great oaks mentioned in verse 1. Shade in the Negev heat was a precious gift.
5. 'A morsel of bread' (pat lechem) — Abraham's offer is deliberately modest: just a scrap of bread. What he actually prepares (vv. 6–8) is a lavish feast of fine flour cakes, a choice calf, curds, and milk. This pattern of understating one's hospitality and then exceeding expectations is a hallmark of Near Eastern generosity. The gap between promise and performance reveals Abraham's character.
5. 'Refresh your hearts' (sa'adu libbechem) — literally 'sustain your hearts.' The heart (lev) in Hebrew is the seat of strength and will, not merely emotion. Food sustains the inner person for the journey ahead. The verb sa'ad appears in Psalm 104:15: bread 'sustains the heart of man.'
5. 'For therefore are ye come to your servant' (ki al ken avaretem al avdekhem) — Abraham sees their arrival as providential. They have not wandered by accident; they have 'passed by' his tent for a reason, and hospitality is the fitting response.
6. The urgency intensifies: Abraham 'hurried' (vayemaher), and his first word to Sarah is 'Quick!' (mahari, the feminine imperative of mahar). The entire hospitality scene is charged with haste — running, hurrying, hastening — not from anxiety but from eagerness to honor the guests.
6. 'Three seahs of fine flour' (shelosh se'im gemach solet) — a seah is roughly seven quarts; three seahs would be about twenty-one quarts (nearly half a bushel) of the finest flour. This is an enormous quantity for three guests — enough to feed a large gathering. The extravagance of the provision far exceeds the 'morsel of bread' Abraham promised.
6. 'Fine flour' (solet) — this is the premium grade, sifted and refined, the same flour prescribed for grain offerings in Leviticus 2:1. Abraham serves his guests what will later be offered to God.
7. Abraham himself runs (rats) to the herd — he does not delegate this task. A ninety-nine-year-old man, three days after circumcision, sprinting to select the best calf. The detail is both vivid and theologically charged: Abraham's physical vigor in service to his guests mirrors his spiritual readiness.
7. 'A calf, tender and good' (ben baqar rakh vatov) — the adjectives rakh ('tender, young') and tov ('good, choice') indicate the finest animal. This is not ordinary fare but a feast-quality offering. The selection of a whole calf for three guests again signals extraordinary generosity.
7. 'The servant' (hanna'ar) — literally 'the young man,' probably a household servant. Later rabbinic tradition identifies him as Ishmael, whom Abraham was training in hospitality. The text does not specify, but the household mobilization — Sarah kneading, the servant preparing meat, Abraham orchestrating — portrays a coordinated effort of lavish welcome.
8. 'Curds and milk' (chem'ah vechalab) — chem'ah refers to curdled milk or butter, a prized delicacy in the ancient Near East (cf. Judg 5:25; Isa 7:15). Combined with fresh milk, this represents the richest dairy hospitality. Later rabbinic discussion notes that Abraham served meat and dairy together — a practice the Mosaic law would later prohibit. The patriarchal narrative operates before Sinai.
8. 'He stood by them under the tree while they ate' (vehu omed aleihem tachat ha'ets vayyokhelu) — Abraham does not sit and eat with his guests but stands attending them, taking the posture of a servant. The host becomes the waiter. This is the supreme expression of Near Eastern hospitality: the master of a great household serving strangers in person.
8. 'And they ate' (vayyokhelu) — the text states without qualification that divine visitors ate human food. This remarkable detail has generated extensive theological discussion. Did they truly eat, or only appear to eat? The narrator makes no distinction; he simply reports that they ate.
9. The visitors ask for Sarah by name — a detail that should startle Abraham, since he has not introduced her. Strangers in the ancient Near East would not ordinarily ask about a man's wife by name; this knowledge signals something beyond ordinary travelers. Yet Abraham answers matter-of-factly: 'There, in the tent' (hinneh va'ohel).
9. The question 'Where is Sarah your wife?' (ayyeh Sarah ishtekha) serves a narrative purpose: it ensures Sarah is within earshot for the announcement that follows. The scene is carefully staged — the promise must reach Sarah's ears so that her response can be recorded.
9. The plural 'they said' (vayyomeru) shifts to a singular speaker in verse 10. This fluid movement between plural and singular reinforces the mysterious identity of the visitors — three men who somehow speak with one divine voice.
10. 'I will surely return' (shuv ashuv) — the infinitive absolute construction (shuv ashuv) intensifies the verb: 'I will certainly, without fail, return.' This emphatic promise of a return visit anchors the fulfillment of the son's birth to a specific timeframe.
10. 'At the appointed time' (ka'et chayyah) — this phrase is notoriously difficult. Literally 'at the time of life/living,' it likely means 'at this time next year' or 'when the season comes round again' — approximately nine months hence. The same phrase appears in 2 Kings 4:16-17, where Elisha makes a similar promise to the Shunammite woman.
10. 'Sarah was listening at the entrance of the tent, which was behind him' — the narrator shifts perspective to reveal Sarah's eavesdropping. The tent entrance is behind the speaker, so Sarah can hear without being seen. This staging is essential: the promise is directed to Abraham, but it is Sarah's body that must bear the son, and it is Sarah's response that the narrative wants to capture.

11. The narrator pauses the dialogue to state the biological facts plainly. 'Old' (zeqenim) is an understatement — Abraham is ninety-nine, Sarah eighty-nine. 'Advanced in days' (ba'im bayyamim, literally 'come into the days') is an idiom for extreme age, emphasizing not just years but the accumulated weight of a long life.
11. 'The way of women had ceased for Sarah' (chadal lihyot leSarah orach kannashim) — a euphemism for menopause. The 'way of women' (orach kannashim) is the menstrual cycle. Sarah is not merely old; she is biologically past the capacity for conception. The narrator establishes this to make clear that any pregnancy would require divine intervention beyond natural possibility.
11. This verse functions as the narrative's own commentary: lest the reader think the promise is merely improbable, the text clarifies it is impossible. The stage is set for both Sarah's laughter and God's response about what is 'too wonderful' for the LORD.
12. 'Sarah laughed' (vatitschaq Sarah) — the verb tsachaq is the root of Isaac's name (Yitschaq). Sarah's laughter here is incredulous, a reflex of disbelief. It echoes Abraham's own laughter in 17:17, though God's response to Sarah's laughter will be sharper than to Abraham's. The root tsachaq will thread through the Isaac narrative: laughter at the promise, laughter at the birth (21:6), and Ishmael's 'laughing/mockng' (21:9).
12. 'Within herself' (beqirbah) — literally 'in her inner parts.' This is not audible laughter but an internal reaction, a private scoff. Yet the LORD perceives it (v. 13), demonstrating that nothing — not even unspoken thoughts — is hidden from God.
12. 'After I have grown worn out, shall I have pleasure?' (acharei veloti hayetah li ednah) — veloti is from balah, 'to wear out, become old.' The word ednah ('pleasure, delight') occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible. It likely refers to sexual pleasure or the delight of bearing a child. Sarah's frank, earthy language reveals both her longing and her resignation.
12. 'My lord being old also' (va'adoni zagen) — Sarah refers to Abraham as 'my lord' (adoni), a term of respect for a husband. The New Testament cites this as an example of Sarah's submission (1 Pet 3:6). But in context, her words drip with irony: even if her body could conceive, her aged husband seems an unlikely partner in producing new life.
13. Now the narrator identifies the speaker unambiguously: 'the LORD said' (vayyomer YHWH). The visitor who has been speaking since verse 10 is the LORD himself. The question is addressed to Abraham, not directly to Sarah — perhaps respecting the social conventions of the household, perhaps drawing Abraham into the matter of his wife's faith.
13. Significantly, the LORD edits Sarah's words. She had said, 'my lord being old also' (referring to Abraham's age), but the LORD quotes her as saying only 'I am old.' God diplomatically omits Sarah's reference to Abraham's aging to spare Abraham embarrassment. The rabbis (Yevamot 65b) derived from this that one may alter the truth for the sake of peace — a striking principle drawn from God's own speech.
13. 'Shall I indeed bear a child?' (ha'af umnam eled) — the particles ha'af umnam express strong incredulity: 'Is it even really true that...?' The LORD exposes the depth of Sarah's doubt, bringing what was internal (beqirbah, v. 12) into the open.
14. 'Is anything too wonderful for the LORD?' (hayippale meYHWH davar) — the verb pala means 'to be wonderful, extraordinary, surpassing, beyond comprehension.' It is the same root used for the 'wonderful' acts of God throughout Scripture (Exod 15:11; Ps 77:14; Isa 9:6). The question is rhetorical: nothing is beyond God's power. The word carries not just the sense of difficulty but of marvel — what God does exceeds not only human ability but human imagination.
14. This verse is one of the great theological declarations of the Hebrew Bible. It reframes Sarah's doubt not as a reasonable assessment of biology but as an inadequate reckoning of God's power. The same principle echoes in Jeremiah 32:17, 27 and Luke 1:37 (Gabriel's words to Mary).
14. 'At the appointed time' (lammo'ed) — this word mo'ed means 'appointed time, fixed season, festival.' It suggests divine scheduling: God has set the moment for fulfillment. The birth of Isaac is not a random miracle but a precisely timed divine act.
15. 'Sarah denied' (vattekhachesh Sarah) — the verb kachash means 'to deny, deceive, be false.' It is a strong word, used elsewhere of lying to God (Josh 7:11; Hos 9:2). Sarah's denial is born of fear (ki yare'ah), but it is still a falsehood. The text does not excuse it.
15. 'For she was afraid' (ki yare'ah) — fear, not defiance, motivates the lie. Sarah's internal laughter has been exposed by a visitor who can read unspoken thoughts. The realization that she is transparent to this stranger triggers primal fear.
15. 'No, but you did laugh' (lo ki tsachaq) — the LORD's gentle but firm correction closes this exchange. He does not rage or punish; he simply insists on the truth. The brief, decisive response — just three words in Hebrew — carries the weight of divine omniscience confronting human evasion. The laughter has been noted, and it will be remembered: the child's very name, Isaac (Yitschaq, 'he laughs'), will forever encode this moment.
16. The scene pivots sharply. The hospitality episode concludes and the narrative turns toward Sodom. 'The men rose up' (vayyaqumu ha'anashim) — they are still called 'men' (anashim), maintaining the veil over their identity even as the reader knows one is the LORD.
16. 'Looked toward Sodom' (vayyashqifu al penei Sedom) — the verb shaqaph means 'to look down upon, gaze out over.' It often implies looking from a height. The hills near Hebron offer a view eastward toward the Dead Sea region where Sodom lay. The gaze is ominous: they look toward a city whose judgment is about to be announced.
16. 'Abraham walked with them to see them on their way' (veAvraham holekh immam leshallecham) — even the final act of hospitality — escorting departing guests — Abraham performs. The verb shalach in the Piel means 'to send off, escort.' Walking guests part of the way was a standard courtesy in the ancient world.

17. This divine soliloquy (vv. 17–19) is one of the most remarkable passages in Genesis. The LORD deliberates aloud — or the narrator reveals God's inner reasoning — about whether to disclose his plans to Abraham. The question 'Shall I hide?' (hamekhasseh ani) expects a negative answer: No, I will not hide this from Abraham.
17. The verb *kasah* ('to hide, conceal, cover') is a Piel participle: 'Am I one who conceals?' God reflects on the nature of his relationship with Abraham. The question implies that the relationship has reached a level of intimacy that requires transparency — God treats Abraham not as a subject but as a confidant.
17. This passage anticipates Amos 3:7: 'Surely the Lord GOD does nothing without revealing his counsel to his servants the prophets.' Abraham is here implicitly cast in a prophetic role — one to whom God discloses his purposes before acting.
18. 'Shall surely become' (hayo yihyeh) — another infinitive absolute construction expressing certainty. Abraham's becoming a great nation is not contingent; it is divinely assured.
18. 'Great and mighty nation' (goy gadol ve'atsum) — the addition of 'mighty' (atsum) to the original promise of 12:2 ('great nation') intensifies the scope. Atsum means 'powerful, numerous, vast' — suggesting not just size but strength.
18. 'All the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him' (venivrekhu vo kol goyei ha'arets) — this echoes the foundational promise of 12:3. The Niphal form *venivrekhu* can mean either 'shall be blessed' (passive) or 'shall bless themselves' (reflexive). If passive, Abraham is the conduit of universal blessing; if reflexive, Abraham becomes the standard by which peoples invoke blessing. Either way, Abraham's significance is global, not parochial. God's reason for not hiding his plans from Abraham is that Abraham's destiny is intertwined with the fate of all nations — including Sodom.
19. 'For I have known him' (ki yeda'tiv) — the verb *yada* ('to know') here carries its fullest covenantal sense: intimate, relational knowledge, election, and purposeful choosing. God 'knows' Abraham not merely with intellectual awareness but with the knowledge of chosen relationship (cf. Amos 3:2, 'You only have I known of all the families of the earth'). This is arguably the most concise statement of divine election in Genesis.
19. 'Keep the way of the LORD' (shameru derekh YHWH) — *derekh* ('way, path, road') is both literal and metaphorical. The 'way of the LORD' is God's characteristic pattern of conduct, his moral will expressed in action. To 'keep' (*shamar*) this way is to guard it, observe it, and walk in it faithfully.
19. 'Righteousness and justice' (tsedaqah umishpat) — this pairing, which becomes one of the most important word-pairs in prophetic literature (Isa 5:7; Amos 5:24; Mic 6:8), appears here for the first time in Scripture. *Tsedaqah* is right relationship — acting rightly toward God and neighbor. *Mishpat* is just governance — rendering fair decisions and upholding the rights of others. Together they constitute the ethical core of the covenant. Abraham's intercession for Sodom (vv. 23–32) will be precisely an exercise in *tsedaqah umishpat*.
19. The verse presents a chain of purpose: God chose Abraham so that Abraham would teach his descendants who would keep God's way by practicing righteousness and justice so that God's promises to Abraham would be fulfilled. Election is not arbitrary privilege but purposeful responsibility.
20. 'The outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah' (za'aqat Sedom va'Amorah) — *za'aqah* is the cry of the oppressed, the anguished shriek of those suffering injustice (cf. Exod 3:7, the cry of Israel in Egypt). It is not the noise of sin itself but the cry of sin's victims rising to heaven. Sodom's sin, as later texts make clear (Ezek 16:49), included arrogance, excess, and neglect of the poor — not merely sexual transgression.
20. 'Their sin is very heavy' (chattata'm ki khavedah me'od) — the verb *kavad* ('to be heavy, weighty, grievous') is the same root as *kavod* ('glory'). Sin has weight; it presses down. The adverb *me'od* ('very, exceedingly') intensifies the assessment. The divine evaluation of Sodom is not casual but measured — and the measure is dire.
21. 'I will go down and see' (eredah na ve'er'eh) — the language of divine descent echoes the Tower of Babel narrative (11:5, 7), where God also 'came down' to investigate human conduct. The anthropomorphism is deliberate: God does not judge from a distance but comes near, examines, and renders judgment based on firsthand observation. This models the very *mishpat* ('justice') that verse 19 commands.
21. 'Whether they have done altogether according to the outcry' (hakketsa'qatah habba'ah elai asu khalah) — the word *khalah* means 'complete destruction, annihilation.' The question is whether Sodom's conduct has reached the point of no return — total moral corruption that matches the extremity of the outcry. God presents himself as conducting an inquiry before rendering judgment.
21. 'And if not, I will know' (ve'im lo eda'ah) — a startling statement. Does the omniscient God need to investigate? The text presents divine judgment as deliberate, careful, and evidence-based — not impulsive or arbitrary. This careful divine procedure becomes the backdrop for Abraham's own appeal to divine justice in the verses that follow.
22. 'The men turned from there and went toward Sodom' — two of the three visitors now depart toward Sodom, where they will arrive in 19:1 as the two angels (*mal'akhim*). The third figure remains — and the narrator identifies him as the LORD. The threefold company divides: two go to investigate Sodom; one stays to receive Abraham's intercession.
22. 'Abraham still stood before the LORD' (veAvraham odenu omed lifnei YHWH) — this is one of the *tiqqunei soferim* ('corrections of the scribes'), according to rabbinic tradition. The original reading may have been 'the LORD still stood before Abraham,' which was reversed because it seemed to place God in a posture of deference. Whether or not this tradition is accurate, the effect is profound: Abraham remains in God's presence, and the stage is set for one of the most daring prayers in all Scripture.
22. The spatial arrangement is significant: the two angels move toward Sodom for investigation; Abraham stands before God for intercession. The two actions — divine inquiry and human prayer — proceed simultaneously.

- 23.** 'Abraham drew near' (vayyiggash Avraham) — the verb *nagash* means 'to approach, draw near, come close.' Abraham does not flee from the divine presence; he steps closer. This is the posture of intercession — approaching God boldly on behalf of others. The same verb is used of approaching an altar (Exod 30:20) and approaching a king to petition (Esth 5:2).
- 23.** 'Will you indeed sweep away the righteous with the wicked?' (ha'af tispeh tsaddiq im rasha) — the verb *saphah* means 'to sweep away, destroy, snatch away' indiscriminately. Abraham's question cuts to the heart of divine justice: does God practice collective punishment? Is the fate of the righteous bound to the fate of the wicked in their midst? The question is not theological abstraction but urgent moral concern — Abraham's nephew Lot lives in Sodom.
- 23.** This is the first intercession recorded in Scripture. Abraham does not merely pray for himself but for others, including people he has never met. The intercession establishes a pattern followed by Moses (Exod 32:11–14), Samuel (1 Sam 7:5–9), and the prophets.
- 24.** 'Suppose' (*ulai*) — literally 'perhaps.' Abraham begins with the most generous assumption: perhaps there are fifty righteous in Sodom. The word *ulai* carries both hope and uncertainty. Abraham does not claim knowledge of Sodom's moral state; he poses hypotheticals and lets God respond.
- 24.** 'Spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous' (*velo tissa lamaqom lema'an chamishim hatsaddiqim*) — the verb *nasa* means 'to lift, carry, bear, forgive.' To 'spare' the place is to 'bear with it,' to 'carry' it past judgment. The key theological principle emerges: the presence of righteous people can shelter an entire community from judgment. The merit of the few can protect the many.
- 24.** Abraham begins at fifty — a substantial number that establishes the principle before negotiating downward. The number may reflect an assumption about Sodom's size or may simply be a starting point for the bargaining pattern that follows.
- 25.** 'Far be it from you' (*chalilah lekha*) — the word *chalilah* is an exclamation of moral horror: 'profanation! sacrilege! God forbid!' Abraham is saying that for God to destroy the righteous with the wicked would be a desecration of God's own character. The repetition of *chalilah* (twice in this verse) intensifies the moral urgency.
- 25.** 'Shall not the Judge of all the earth do justice?' (*hashofet kol ha'arets lo ya'aseh mishpat*) — this is one of the most audacious statements a human being has ever addressed to God. Abraham appeals to God's own nature as the universal Judge: if God judges all the earth, then God must himself act justly. Abraham holds God to God's own standard. The word *mishpat* here means 'justice, right judgment, equity' — the same word used in verse 19.
- 25.** The theological daring of this verse cannot be overstated. Abraham does not merely ask God for mercy; he argues that justice itself — God's own justice — requires distinguishing between the righteous and the wicked. Abraham becomes an advocate, a defense attorney standing before the cosmic Judge, and his argument is not sentiment but principle.
- 26.** The LORD accepts Abraham's premise without dispute. If fifty righteous are found, the entire city will be spared — not just the righteous extracted, but 'the whole place' (*kol hamaqom*) preserved. The principle is extraordinary: the merit of a righteous minority can preserve a sinful majority.
- 26.** 'For their sake' (*ba'avuram*) — the preposition *ba'avur* means 'for the sake of, on account of.' The righteous do not merely escape judgment; they become the reason the wicked are spared. This theology of vicarious merit — the few bearing the weight that saves the many — threads through Scripture to its culmination in the Suffering Servant (Isa 53).
- 27.** 'I have undertaken to speak' (*ho'alti ledabber*) — the verb *ya'al* in the Hiphil means 'to venture, undertake, dare.' Abraham acknowledges the audacity of what he is doing. He is a creature daring to argue with the Creator, and he knows it.
- 27.** 'Dust and ashes' (*afar va'efer*) — this is not false modesty but genuine ontological awareness. *Afar* ('dust') recalls the creation of humanity from the ground (2:7; 3:19); *efer* ('ashes') suggests complete combustion, total reduction to nothing. Abraham stands at the intersection of two realities: he is dust, yet he speaks to God. He is ashes, yet he reasons about justice with the Judge of all the earth. The juxtaposition of human frailty and spiritual boldness is one of the great paradoxes of biblical faith.
- 28.** Abraham's negotiation begins with the smallest possible reduction: five. From fifty to forty-five — a cautious first step that tests whether God's patience extends to bargaining. The strategy is shrewd: Abraham does not leap to a drastically lower number but inches downward, establishing each concession before requesting the next.
- 28.** 'Will you destroy the whole city for lack of five?' (*hatashhchit bachamishah et kol ha'ir*) — the verb *shachat* ('to destroy, ruin, corrupt') is the same word used for the corruption before the Flood (6:11–12). Abraham reframes the question: would five missing righteous persons tip the balance from mercy to destruction? The implicit argument is that near-sufficiency should count for something.
- 28.** God's answer is immediate and affirmative: 'I will not destroy it if I find forty-five there.' No hesitation, no qualification. Each divine concession reveals that God is not looking for reasons to destroy but for reasons to spare.
- 29.** 'He spoke to him yet again' (*vayyosef od ledabber elav*) — the formula *vayyosef* ('he added, continued') marks each new round of negotiation. Abraham presses forward despite the asymmetry of the conversation. Each step requires renewed courage.
- 29.** The jump from forty-five to forty is bolder — a reduction of five again, but now representing a larger proportional decrease. God's answers grow shorter as the pattern establishes itself: each response is a simple assurance. The LORD does not begrudge the asking; he does not grow impatient with the process.

- 30.** 'Please let not the Lord be angry' (al na yichar la'Adonai) — for the first time, Abraham expresses concern about divine displeasure. The verb *charah* ('to burn, be kindled') refers to anger as heat. Abraham senses that he is pressing the boundary of propriety. Yet he presses on. This pattern of apologetic boldness — acknowledging the risk of offense while continuing to speak — characterizes the greatest intercessors in Scripture.
- 30.** The jump from forty to thirty is the largest yet — a reduction of ten. Abraham is accelerating, perhaps sensing that time or divine patience is finite. Each round follows the same structure: petition with 'suppose' (*ulai*), God's gracious answer, then another petition.
- 31.** 'I have undertaken to speak' (*ho'alti ledabber*) — Abraham repeats his earlier acknowledgment of audacity (v. 27), reinforcing his awareness of the chasm between himself and the one he addresses. The repetition is not formulaic but genuinely felt — each new petition requires renewed courage.
- 31.** From thirty to twenty: another reduction of ten. The numbers are dwindling rapidly, and the tension rises. Each affirmative answer from God reveals that divine mercy operates on a scale far more generous than human expectation.
- 32.** 'Just this once more' (*akh happa'am*) — Abraham signals that this is his final petition. The particle *akh* ('only, surely, just') and *happa'am* ('this time') convey both determination and resignation. Abraham has pushed as far as he dares.
- 32.** 'Suppose ten are found there' — Abraham stops at ten. Why not five? Why not one? The rabbis (Sanhedrin 74b) suggest that ten represents the minimum viable community — a *minyan*, the quorum for communal worship. Others note that Lot's extended family in Sodom may have numbered roughly ten (Lot, his wife, two married daughters with husbands, and two unmarried daughters). Abraham may have calculated that with Lot's household, ten righteous should be attainable.
- 32.** God agrees without hesitation: 'I will not destroy it, for the sake of the ten.' The negotiation reveals that God's threshold of mercy is extraordinarily low — he would spare an entire wicked city for the sake of ten righteous people. Yet even ten will not be found (19:1–29). Abraham's intercession, though ultimately unable to save Sodom, is not wasted: God 'remembered Abraham' (19:29) and rescued Lot from the destruction.
- 32.** The progression 50 45 40 30 20 10 follows a deliberate rhetorical pattern. The first step is cautious (five less); subsequent steps grow bolder (ten less each time). The entire exchange reveals both the extravagance of divine mercy and the depth of Sodom's corruption — a city that cannot produce even ten righteous inhabitants.
- 33.** 'The LORD went his way' (*vayyelekh YHWH*) — the theophany ends as abruptly as it began. God departs. The verb *halakh* ('to go, walk') is simple and final. There is no dramatic exit, no cloud or fire — God simply leaves.
- 33.** 'When he had finished speaking' (*ka'asher killah ledabber*) — the verb *kalah* ('to finish, complete, bring to an end') suggests that the conversation reached its natural conclusion. God did not cut Abraham off; the dialogue was completed. Abraham stopped at ten, and God honored his final request.
- 33.** 'Abraham returned to his place' (*veAvraham shav limqomo*) — Abraham goes home. The intercession is over. He has done what he could; the rest belongs to God. The phrase 'his place' (*meqomo*) suggests both his physical dwelling at Mamre and his proper station — a mortal who has spoken with God and now resumes the ordinary life of faith.
- 33.** The chapter closes with elegant symmetry: it began with Abraham sitting at his tent (v. 1) and ends with him returning to his place. Between the sitting and the returning, Abraham has hosted God, received a promise, confronted doubt, and argued for justice. The scope of one afternoon's events encompasses hospitality, prophecy, theology, and moral philosophy — the fullness of covenantal life.

19

Summary: *Two angels arrive in Sodom; Lot offers them hospitality. The men of the city demand to 'know' the visitors. Lot offers his daughters instead. The angels strike the crowd blind and warn Lot to flee. God destroys Sodom and Gomorrah with fire and sulfur. Lot's wife looks back and becomes a pillar of salt. Lot's daughters, believing all men are gone, conceive children by their father, producing Moab and Ben-ammi.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter mirrors chapter 18 in structure — hospitality, announcement, departure — but inverts every element. Where Abraham ran to serve guests, Sodom assaults them. The verb *yada* ('to know,' v. 5) carries its full range of meaning: the city demands intimate violation of the strangers. The fire and sulfur from 'the LORD — from the LORD out of the sky' (v. 24) is an unusual construction that emphasizes the directly divine origin of the destruction. Lot's wife becoming salt (v. 26) remains one of the Bible's most haunting images of the cost of looking back.*

Translation Friction: *Lot's offer of his daughters (v. 8) is reported without narratorial commentary — the Hebrew does not praise or condemn, and we followed that restraint. The verb *hafakh* ('to overthrow,' v. 25) becomes a technical term for divine judgment on cities throughout the prophets. We rendered the daughters' reasoning — 'there is no man on earth to come in to us' (v. 31) — as the Hebrew presents it, leaving open whether this reflects genuine desperation or moral corruption.*

Connections: Sodom's destruction becomes the paradigm of divine judgment throughout Scripture: Deuteronomy 29:23, Isaiah 1:9-10, Amos 4:11, and Jesus' words in Matthew 10:15. Lot's rescue is attributed to God 'remembering Abraham' (19:29), linking intercession to deliverance. Moab and Ammon — born here — become recurring figures in Israel's story (Ruth 1:4; 2 Samuel 10; Nehemiah 13:1).

¹And the two angels came to Sodom in the evening, and Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom. When Lot saw them, he rose to meet them and bowed himself with his face to the ground. ²And he said, "Behold now, my lords, please turn aside to your servant's house and spend the night and wash your feet. Then you may rise early and go on your way." But they said, "No; we will spend the night in the town square." ³But he pressed them strongly, so they turned aside to him and entered his house. And he made them a feast and baked unleavened bread, and they ate. ⁴Before they lay down, the men of the city, the men of Sodom, surrounded the house, both young and old, all the people from every quarter. ⁵And they called to Lot and said to him, "Where are the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us, that we may know them." ⁶And Lot went out to them at the entrance and shut the door behind him. ⁷And he said, "I beg you, my brothers, do not act so wickedly." ⁸"Behold, I have two daughters who have not known a man. Let me bring them out to you, and do to them as is good in your eyes. Only do nothing to these men, for they have come under the shadow of my roof." ⁹But they said, "Stand back!" And they said, "This one came to sojourn, and now he would play the judge! Now we will deal worse with you than with them." And they pressed hard against the man, against Lot, and drew near to break down the door. ¹⁰But the men reached out their hands and brought Lot into the house to them and shut the door. ¹¹And they struck the men who were at the entrance of the house with blindness, both small and great, so that they wearied themselves trying to find the door. ¹²Then the men said to Lot, "Whom else have you here? Sons-in-law, your sons, your daughters, and whoever you have in the city — bring them out of the place." ¹³"For we are about to destroy this place, because the outcry against them has grown great before the LORD, and the LORD has sent us to destroy it." ¹⁴So Lot went out and spoke to his sons-in-law, who were to marry his daughters, and said, "Up! Get out of this place, for the LORD is about to destroy the city." But he seemed to his sons-in-law to be jesting. ¹⁵As dawn arose, the angels urged Lot, saying, "Up! Take your wife and your two daughters who are here, lest you be swept away in the punishment of the city." ¹⁶But he lingered. So the men seized his hand and the hand of his wife and the hands of his two daughters, the LORD being merciful to him, and they brought him out and set him outside the city. ¹⁷And when they had brought them outside, he said, "Flee for your life! Do not look behind you, and do not stop anywhere in the plain. Flee to the hills, lest you be swept away." ¹⁸And Lot said to them, "Oh no, my lord!" ¹⁹"Behold, your servant has found favor in your eyes, and you have shown great kindness to me in saving my life. But I cannot flee to the hills, lest the disaster overtake me and I die." ²⁰"Behold, this city is near enough to flee to, and it is a small one. Let me escape there — is it not a small one? — and my life will be saved." ²¹And he said to him, "Behold, I have granted you this request also, that I will not overthrow the city of which you have spoken. ²²Hurry, escape there, for I can do nothing until you arrive there." Therefore the name of the city was called Zoar. ²³The sun had risen over the land when Lot came to Zoar. ²⁴Then the LORD poured down sulfur and fire from the sky — from the LORD — on Sodom and Gomorrah. ²⁵And he overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all the inhabitants of the cities, and the vegetation of the ground. ²⁶Lot's wife, who was behind him, turned to look back and was transformed into a column of salt. ²⁷And Abraham rose early in the morning to the place where he had stood before the LORD. ²⁸And he looked down toward Sodom and Gomorrah and toward all the land of the plain, and he saw, and behold, the smoke of the land went up like the smoke of a furnace. ²⁹When God demolished the cities of the valley, He kept Abraham in mind and brought Lot out safely from the catastrophe that leveled the cities where Lot had been living. ³⁰And Lot went up out of Zoar and dwelt in the hills, he and his two daughters with him, for he was afraid to dwell in Zoar. So he dwelt in a cave, he and his two daughters. ³¹The older daughter said to the younger, "Our father is aging, and there is no man anywhere to sleep with us as is the custom everywhere. ³²"Come, let us make our father drink wine, and we will lie with him, that we may preserve offspring through our father." ³³So they made their father drink wine that night. Then the firstborn went in and lay with her father, and he did not know when she lay down or when she arose. ³⁴The next day the firstborn said to the younger, "Behold, I lay last night with my father. Let us make him drink wine tonight also, and you go in and lie with him, that we may preserve offspring through our father." ³⁵So they made their father drink wine that night also. And the younger

arose and lay with him, and he did not know when she lay down or when she arose. ³⁶Thus both the daughters of Lot conceived by their father. ³⁷The firstborn bore a son and called his name Moab. He is the father of the Moabites to this day. ³⁸And the younger also bore a son and called his name Ben-ammi. He is the father of the Ammonites to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The visitors are now identified as *mal'akhim* ('angels,' literally 'messengers'), whereas in 18:2 they were called *anashim* ('men'). This shift in terminology reveals what the reader suspected: two of the three visitors to Abraham were divine emissaries. The third, who spoke as the LORD, apparently did not accompany them to Sodom.
1. 'Lot was sitting in the gate of Sodom' (*veLot yoshev besha'ar Sedom*) — the gate was the civic center where legal transactions, judgments, and public business took place (cf. Ruth 4:1; Proverbs 31:23). That Lot 'sits' there suggests he has attained a position of civic authority or at least social standing in Sodom. This contrasts sharply with his original status as a 'sojourner' (*ger*), a tension the mob will exploit in verse 9.
1. Lot's hospitality mirrors Abraham's in chapter 18 — rising, bowing, offering shelter — but the contrast between the two settings (Mamre's oaks vs. Sodom's gate) signals that everything here will go differently.
2. Lot's invitation follows the pattern of Near Eastern hospitality but with notable differences from Abraham's. Abraham offered shade, water, and bread in the open; Lot urgently directs them indoors. He knows what Sodom is, and the street is no place for strangers after dark.
2. 'We will spend the night in the town square' (*ki varechov nalin*) — the *rechov* is the open plaza near the city gate. The angels' initial refusal may be a test of Lot's insistence, or it may serve the narrative purpose: had they stayed in the square, the events that follow would have confirmed Sodom's wickedness even more publicly. Their willingness to stay outside underscores that they do not fear the city's inhabitants; they are there as agents of judgment.
2. The angels' refusal contrasts with their immediate acceptance of Abraham's invitation in 18:5. The literary effect emphasizes the difference between Mamre and Sodom — one a place of generous welcome, the other a place of danger.
3. 'He pressed them strongly' (*vayyiftsar bam me'od*) — the verb *patsar* means to urge insistently, even to the point of being burdensome. Lot knows the danger. His insistence is not mere politeness but an act of protective hospitality. The same verb appears in verse 9 when the mob 'presses hard' against Lot — the same urgency directed to opposite ends.
3. 'Unleavened bread' (*matzot*) — bread made without leaven, which can be prepared quickly since it requires no rising time. This detail may reflect the haste of the situation, but it also creates a resonance with the Passover narrative, where *matzot* are eaten on the night of deliverance from judgment (Exodus 12:8). Lot serves *matzot* on the night before Sodom's destruction — an echo the later reader cannot miss.
3. Lot's feast (*mishteh*) is more modest than Abraham's lavish spread in 18:6–8 — no fine flour, no choice calf, no curds and milk. The contrast between the two brothers' provisions subtly reflects their different circumstances.
4. 'Before they lay down' (*terem yishkavu*) — the attack comes at night, before the household has gone to sleep. The timing emphasizes the predatory nature of the mob: they do not wait; they act under cover of darkness.
4. 'The men of the city, the men of Sodom' (*anshei ha'ir anshei Sedom*) — the double identification is emphatic. These are not outsiders but the very citizens of Sodom. The repetition underscores collective guilt.
4. 'Both young and old, all the people from every quarter' (*minna'ar ve'ad zagen kol ha'am miqqatseh*) — the universality is stressed with deliberate thoroughness. No age group is exempt; no neighborhood is uninvolved. The phrase *miqqatseh* ('from the end/extremity') means from every corner of the city. This total participation answers the question Abraham raised in 18:23–32: are there even ten righteous in the city? The answer is made visible — not one man stays home.
5. 'That we may know them' (*veneda'ah otam*) — the verb *yada* ('to know') has a wide semantic range, from intellectual knowledge to intimate sexual knowledge (cf. 4:1, 'Adam knew Eve his wife'). The context makes the sexual intent unmistakable: the mob demands access to the visitors for the purpose of sexual violence. This is not mere curiosity but an assertion of dominance and violation of the most fundamental laws of hospitality.
5. The demand exposes the comprehensive moral corruption of Sodom. The 'outcry' (*tse'aqah*) that reached the LORD in 18:20–21 is now given concrete form. The sin is not a private vice but a communal act of aggression against the vulnerable — precisely the kind of injustice that provokes divine intervention throughout Scripture (cf. Ezekiel 16:49, which identifies Sodom's sin as arrogance, excess of food, prosperous ease, and failure to aid the poor and needy).
6. Lot goes out alone to face the mob, shutting the door behind him to protect his guests inside. Whatever we may think of his subsequent offer, this act of stepping outside to confront an enraged crowd is an act of physical courage. He places his own body between the mob and the visitors.
6. 'Shut the door behind him' (*vehadelet sagar acharav*) — the closed door is a barrier between the protected space of hospitality and the hostile outside. The door will become a focal point: the mob will try to break it down (v. 9), and the angels will pull Lot back through it (v. 10). Inside is safety; outside is chaos.
7. 'My brothers' (*achai*) — Lot addresses the mob with a term of kinship, attempting to appeal to social bonds. He has lived among them long enough to call them brothers, yet the term also reveals the tragic distance between his values and theirs.

7. 'Do not act so wickedly' (al na tare'u) — the verb ra'a in the Hiphil means 'to do evil, to act wickedly.' Lot names their intent plainly: this is evil. The brevity of his plea — just four words in Hebrew — conveys both urgency and the futility of reasoning with a mob.
8. Lot's offer of his virgin daughters to the mob is one of the most disturbing passages in the Hebrew Bible. The text presents it without comment or approval — the narrator does not editorialize. Lot's calculus appears to prioritize the obligation of hospitality to guests over the safety of his own daughters, reflecting the extreme weight placed on the host's duty in ancient Near Eastern culture. Modern readers rightly recoil; the text neither endorses nor condemns but records.
8. 'Who have not known a man' (asher lo yade'u ish) — the same verb yada used by the mob in verse 5, creating a grim wordplay. The daughters' sexual innocence is offered against the mob's sexual violence.
8. 'Under the shadow of my roof' (betsel qorati) — literally 'in the shadow of my beam/rafter.' The roof-beam represents the entire household and its protective obligation. Once a person has entered under another's roof, the host bears sacred responsibility for their safety. This principle of hospitality was inviolable in the ancient world, and Lot invokes it as the ultimate justification for his horrifying offer. The phrase reveals both the nobility of the principle and the catastrophic lengths to which Lot is driven.
9. 'This one came to sojourn, and now he would play the judge' (ha'echad ba lagur vayyishpot shafot) — the mob's retort exposes Lot's precarious status. He is a ger, a resident alien, not a native citizen. He has no standing to pass moral judgment. The infinitive absolute construction vayyishpot shafot ('he judges, judging!' or 'he keeps on judging!') expresses contempt — who does this foreigner think he is? The irony is sharp: Lot sat in the gate (v. 1), the place of judgment, yet the mob denies him any judicial authority.
9. 'We will deal worse with you than with them' (nara lekha mehem) — the threat escalates. The mob turns its violence toward Lot himself. His attempt at mediation has failed completely; moral reasoning is useless against collective rage.
9. 'They pressed hard' (vayyiftseru) — the same root (p-ts-r) used in verse 3 of Lot's pressing the angels to accept his hospitality. The verbal echo is bitter: Lot's insistent goodness is mirrored by the mob's insistent evil.
10. The angels — called 'the men' (ha'anashim) here, maintaining the narrative's fluid terminology — intervene decisively. They reach through the doorway, pull Lot inside, and shut the door. The rescue is physical and sudden. Lot's attempt to protect his guests has reversed: the guests now protect him.
10. The closed door reappears: in verse 6 Lot shut it to protect those inside; now the angels shut it to protect Lot himself. The door is the boundary between the ordered space of hospitality and the chaos of mob violence.
11. 'Blindness' (sanverim) — this rare word appears only here and in 2 Kings 6:18, where Elisha strikes the Aramean army with the same affliction. It may denote not total blindness but a dazzling, disorienting confusion of vision — the men can still grope for the door but cannot find it. The word's rarity adds to its strangeness and supernatural quality.
11. 'Both small and great' (miqqaton ve'ad gadol) — echoing the 'young and old' of verse 4. Every member of the mob is struck. Even blinded, they do not retreat but 'wearied themselves' (vayyil'u) trying to find the entrance. The persistence of their malice even after divine intervention underscores the depth of Sodom's corruption — judgment does not produce repentance but only frustrated rage.
12. The angels now reveal their mission's dual purpose: judgment on Sodom and deliverance of Lot's household. The catalog of family members — sons-in-law, sons, daughters, 'whoever you have' — is comprehensive. God's mercy extends to anyone connected to Lot.
12. 'Bring them out of the place' (hotse min hamaqom) — hamaqom ('the place') is used rather than 'the city,' perhaps already distancing the location from its identity. It is no longer a city to be named but a place to be destroyed. The urgency is absolute: get out everyone you can.
13. 'The outcry' (tsa'aqatam) — this is the same tsa'aqah ('cry, outcry') mentioned in 18:20–21, where the LORD told Abraham that the outcry of Sodom and Gomorrah was great. The word denotes the cry of the oppressed rising to heaven — the same cry of Israel in Egypt (Exodus 3:7) and the blood of Abel from the ground (4:10). It is not the cry of Sodom's inhabitants but the cry against them — the voice of their victims reaching God.
13. 'The LORD has sent us to destroy it' (vayshallechenu YHWH leshachatah) — the angels explicitly identify themselves as agents of the LORD on a mission of destruction. The verb shachat ('to destroy, corrupt, ruin') connects to the moral corruption (mashchit) that necessitates the physical destruction. The city that corrupted itself will be destroyed — the punishment mirrors the crime.
13. The angels speak of the LORD in the third person — 'the LORD has sent us' — confirming their identity as messengers (mal'akhim) rather than the LORD himself.
14. 'His sons-in-law, who were to marry his daughters' (chatanavav loqechei venotav) — the Hebrew is ambiguous. The participle loqechei ('taking, about to take') could indicate men who had already married his daughters or men betrothed to them. Since verse 8 mentions two virgin daughters still in Lot's house, these are likely betrothed men who had not yet consummated the marriage. Lot may have had other, already-married daughters as well.
14. 'He seemed to be jesting' (vayehi khimtsacheq) — the word kimtsacheq ('like one laughing, jesting, mocking') contains the root ts-ch-q, the same root as the name Yitschaq (Isaac, 'he laughs'). In 18:12–15, Sarah laughed (vatitschaq) at the promise of a son; here Lot's warning of judgment is received as a joke. The wordplay is devastating: the laughter of disbelief at God's promise mirrors the laughter of disbelief at God's judgment. Both are misplaced.

14. The sons-in-law's refusal seals their fate. They hear the warning and dismiss it. This is the pattern of judgment throughout Scripture: warning is given, and those who do not heed it perish (cf. Noah's generation, Pharaoh).
15. 'As dawn arose' (ukhemo hashachar alah) — the destruction will come with the sunrise (v. 23). Dawn, normally a symbol of hope and new beginning, here marks the deadline for escape. The light that comes will bring fire.
15. 'The angels urged Lot' (vayya'itsu hammal'akhim beLot) — the verb 'uts means to press, urge, hasten. The narrative has shifted from Lot pressing the angels (v. 3) to the angels pressing Lot. He who was eager to show hospitality is now reluctant to leave.
15. 'Your two daughters who are here' (shetei venotekha hannimtsa'ot) — hannimtsa'ot means 'who are found, who are present.' This specifies the daughters still in Lot's household, distinguishing them from any who may have married and remained in the city.
15. 'Lest you be swept away in the punishment of the city' (pen tissafeh ba'avon ha'ir) — the verb safah means 'to sweep away, to be destroyed.' The word 'avon means both 'iniquity' and 'punishment for iniquity' — the city's sin and its consequence are expressed in a single word.
16. 'He lingered' (vayyitmahemah) — this extraordinary verb, a Hitpalpel form of mahah ('to delay'), conveys prolonged, inexplicable hesitation. Lot dawdles, dithers, cannot bring himself to leave. After a night of mob violence, after explicit warning of imminent destruction, he lingers. The word captures the gravitational pull of a familiar life, even one lived in a wicked city. Lot's attachment to Sodom runs deeper than his fear of its judgment.
16. 'The men seized his hand' (vayyachaziku ha'anashim beyado) — the angels physically grip the hands of Lot, his wife, and both daughters. Four people, four hands seized. Salvation here is not Lot's achievement but God's forcible rescue of one who cannot save himself.
16. 'The LORD being merciful to him' (bechemlat YHWH alav) — the narrator's comment is theologically decisive. Lot is not saved by his righteousness (though 2 Peter 2:7 calls him 'righteous Lot'), nor by his own initiative — he is lingering! He is saved by chemlah, the LORD's compassion, tender mercy, sparing pity. The prepositional ('upon him') suggests mercy descending, covering, enveloping. This is pure grace: God saves a man who cannot even bring himself to walk out the door.
17. 'Flee for your life!' (himmalet al nafshekha) — literally 'escape upon your life,' meaning 'flee for the sake of your life.' The Niphal imperative of malat ('to escape') is urgent and absolute. The singular address ('your life,' not 'your lives') may indicate the command is directed primarily to Lot, or it may reflect the Hebrew convention of addressing the head of household.
17. 'Do not look behind you' (al tabbit acharekha) — the prohibition against looking back is never explained in the text. It may signify complete separation from the doomed city — no lingering attachment, no backward glance of longing or regret. Looking back would represent a divided heart, a refusal to fully accept deliverance. Lot's wife will violate this command in verse 26.
17. 'Flee to the hills' (haharah himmalet) — literally 'to the mountain, escape!' The mountain represents safety, elevation above the destruction that will engulf the plain (kikkar). Throughout Scripture, mountains are places of refuge and divine encounter. Lot, characteristically, will negotiate even this command (vv. 18–20).
18. 'Oh no, my lord!' (al na Adonai) — Lot's response to the command to flee is immediate negotiation. Even in the moment of divine rescue, with destruction imminent, Lot bargains. The address 'Adonai' (my lord) here may be directed to God or to the angel speaking; the Masoretic pointing suggests the divine address.
18. The brevity of Lot's protest — just three words — is striking. It echoes Abraham's intercession in 18:23–32, but where Abraham negotiated on behalf of others, Lot negotiates for his own convenience. The contrast between uncle and nephew is once again drawn sharply.
19. 'You have shown great kindness' (vattagdel chasdekha) — Lot acknowledges that his deliverance is an act of chesed, the covenant-loyalty and lovingkindness of God. The verb gadal ('to make great, magnify') intensifies: God has not merely shown chesed but has made it great, has magnified it. This is a remarkable theological statement from a man who is simultaneously negotiating to disobey.
19. 'I cannot flee to the hills' (lo ukhal lehimmalet haharah) — Lot claims inability. Whether this is physical weakness, fear of the unknown wilderness, or simply reluctance to leave civilization entirely, the text does not specify. His fear — 'lest the disaster overtake me and I die' (pen tidbaqani hara'ah vamatti) — suggests he doubts whether he can reach the mountains before destruction falls. The verb davaq ('to cling, overtake, stick to') vividly pictures calamity catching up and clinging to him.
20. 'It is a small one' (vehi mits'ar) — Lot's argument is charming in its absurdity: spare this city because it is so small it hardly matters. The word mits'ar ('small, insignificant, trifling') becomes the city's name: Tso'ar (v. 22), meaning 'small.' Lot essentially names the city by his plea for it.
20. The repetition — 'is it not a small one?' (halo mits'ar hi) — is almost wheedling. Lot negotiates with the angel as though haggling at the gate. The contrast with Abraham's dignified intercession in chapter 18 is notable: Abraham argued on principle (justice and righteousness); Lot argues from personal convenience and fear.
20. 'And my life will be saved' (utechi nafshi) — literally 'and my soul shall live.' Lot frames everything in terms of his own survival. The self-focus is understandable but stands in contrast to Abraham's concern for the righteous of Sodom.
21. 'I have granted you this request' (nasa'ti fanekha) — literally 'I have lifted your face,' an idiom meaning 'I have shown you favor, I have accepted your petition.' The expression comes from the practice of a petitioner prostrating before a superior; to 'lift the face' is to grant the request and restore the petitioner to standing. God accepts even Lot's self-serving negotiation.

21. 'I will not overthrow the city' (levilti hofki et ha'ir) — the verb hafakh ('to overthrow, overturn') is the characteristic word for Sodom's destruction (cf. v. 25, 29). It denotes total inversion — turning upside down, the complete reversal of an established order. The overthrow of Sodom becomes a paradigm referenced throughout Scripture (Deuteronomy 29:23; Isaiah 13:19; Jeremiah 49:18; Amos 4:11).
22. 'I can do nothing until you arrive there' (lo ukhal la'asot davar ad bo'akha shammah) — a remarkable statement. The agent of divine judgment says that destruction is constrained until the righteous (or at least the spared) are safe. God's judgment waits for mercy to complete its work. This principle echoes throughout Scripture: Noah must be in the ark before the flood (7:16); Israel must be past the sea before it closes (Exodus 14:28–29).
23. 'Therefore the name of the city was called Zoar' (al ken qara shem ha'ir Tso'ar) — the narrator provides the etiological explanation. Tso'ar is related to mits'ar ('small'), preserving Lot's plea in the city's permanent name. The city that was too small to matter became the city that was too small to destroy.
23. 'The sun had risen over the land' (hashemesh yatsa al ha'arets) — this simple, luminous sentence creates the calm before the cataclysm. The sun rises as it always does; the earth appears normal; Lot reaches his small refuge. The next verse will shatter this ordinary moment with fire from heaven. The juxtaposition of natural beauty and supernatural destruction is devastating.
23. The verse serves as a precise timestamp: destruction comes in full daylight, not under cover of night. The sun that rises to illuminate the land will witness its incineration.
24. 'The LORD rained ... from the LORD out of heaven' (vaYHWH himtir ... me'et YHWH min hashamayim) — the double mention of the LORD is one of the most discussed phrases in Genesis. 'The LORD rained ... from the LORD' seems to distinguish between a LORD who acts on earth and a LORD who sends from heaven. Some read this as simply emphatic repetition; others see a hint of plurality within the divine being. The text makes no attempt to resolve the tension.
24. 'Sulfur and fire' (gafrut va'esh) — gafrut is brimstone (sulfite/sulfur), and combined with fire it evokes volcanic destruction, though the text frames it as directly sent from heaven, not as a natural geological event. The region around the Dead Sea is rich in sulfur and bitumen deposits (cf. 14:10, 'the Valley of Siddim was full of bitumen pits'). Whatever natural processes may have been involved, the narrative insists on divine agency: this is the LORD's rain, falling from the LORD, out of heaven.
24. The verb himtir ('rained') uses the language of weather — God 'rains' destruction as he rains water. The irony is absolute: rain in an arid land is life; this rain is death. The heavens that should send blessing send annihilation.
25. 'He overthrew' (vayyahafekh) — the verb hafakh means to turn upside down, to overturn completely. It is the definitive word for Sodom's destruction and gives rise to the noun mahapekhah ('overthrow'), which becomes the technical term for Sodom's fate throughout the prophets. The word implies total inversion: what was above is now below; what was a fertile plain becomes a desolate waste.
25. The scope of destruction is comprehensive: the cities (plural — not Sodom alone but the cities of the plain), the entire kikkar (the Jordan plain), all inhabitants, and even the vegetation (tsemach ha'adamah, 'the growth of the ground'). Nothing organic survives. The land that Lot chose because it was 'well watered everywhere, like the garden of the LORD' (13:10) is now utterly barren. The irony of Lot's original choice is complete.
26. 'She looked back' (vatabbeit) — the verb nabat means more than a casual glance; it denotes an intent, fixed gaze. This is not an accidental glimpse over the shoulder but a deliberate turning to look. She violated the explicit command of verse 17: 'Do not look behind you.' Her look back signifies attachment to what was being destroyed — longing for the city, its life, its comforts. Jesus will cite her as a warning: 'Remember Lot's wife' (Luke 17:32).
26. 'A pillar of salt' (netsiv melach) — netsiv can mean 'pillar, monument, standing form.' The Dead Sea region is rich in salt formations, and pillar-shaped salt deposits exist to this day along its southern shore. The transformation is both judgment and monument — she who turned to look became a permanent marker of the consequences of divided loyalty.
26. Lot's wife is never named in the text. She is identified only in relation to Lot ('his wife'), making her simultaneously everywoman and no one. The anonymity universalizes her story: anyone who looks back at what God has condemned shares her fate.
27. 'Abraham rose early in the morning' (vayyashkem Avraham babboqer) — the verb hashkim ('to rise early') is characteristic of Abraham (cf. 21:14; 22:3). He is consistently depicted as a man of early, purposeful action. Here he returns to the very spot where he interceded with the LORD in 18:22–33.
27. 'The place where he had stood before the LORD' (hamaqom asher amad sham et penei YHWH) — literally 'the place where he stood there before the face of the LORD.' The phrase et penei YHWH ('before the face of the LORD') recalls the intensity of Abraham's intercession. He returns to the place of prayer to see the outcome of what he prayed about. The narrative shifts perspective from Lot's escape to Abraham's witness, connecting the two threads of the story.
28. 'He looked down' (vayyashqef) — the verb shaqaf means to look down from a height, to gaze out over a vista. Abraham views the destruction from the heights near Hebron, looking eastward and down toward the Jordan plain. The panoramic perspective makes him a witness to the entirety of the devastation.
28. 'The smoke of the land went up like the smoke of a furnace' (alah qitor ha'arets keqitor hakkivshan) — qitor is dense smoke, vapor, the kind that rises from intense burning. A kivshan is a kiln or smelting furnace — an industrial image of extreme, sustained heat. The simile conveys not a brush fire but a total conflagration. The entire landscape has become a furnace.

28. Abraham had asked in 18:23, 'Will you indeed sweep away the righteous with the wicked?' Now he sees the answer: the cities are destroyed, but — as verse 29 will clarify — God remembered Abraham and sent Lot out. The righteous (such as they were) were not swept away with the wicked.
29. 'God remembered Abraham' (vayyizkor Elohim et Avraham) — the verb zakhar ('to remember') in its divine usage does not mean that God had forgotten. It signifies God's active turning of attention, the moment when prior commitment becomes present action. God 'remembers' Noah in 8:1, Rachel in 30:22, Israel in Exodus 2:24. Each time, remembering triggers deliverance. Here, Lot is saved not because of his own merit but because God remembered Abraham — the intercessor's prayer is effective even when the answer is not exactly what was asked for.
29. 'The overthrow' (hahapekhhah) — the noun form of hafakh, used as a proper designation for the destruction. 'The Overthrow' becomes a fixed title for Sodom's fate, referenced repeatedly in prophetic literature.
29. The shift from YHWH (v. 24) to Elohim here may reflect the narrator's use of the more universal divine name when describing God's cosmic act of judgment, or it may follow the convention of using Elohim when the emphasis is on God's power and sovereignty.
30. 'He was afraid to dwell in Zoar' (ki yare lashebet beTso'ar) — the irony is thick. Lot negotiated desperately to be allowed to flee to Zoar instead of the hills (vv. 18–22), yet now he abandons Zoar for the very hills he was told to flee to originally. His fear may stem from the realization that Zoar, being a city of the plain, could share the fate of Sodom. Or perhaps the proximity to the destruction has unnerved him. Either way, the man who could not bring himself to leave Sodom (v. 16) now cannot stay anywhere.
30. 'He dwelt in a cave' (vayyeshav bamme'arah) — Lot's trajectory is now complete: from Abraham's companion (13:1) to Sodom's citizen at the gate (19:1) to cave-dweller. The man who chose the lush, well-watered plain (13:10–11) ends in a cave. The reversal mirrors the land's transformation from 'like the garden of the LORD' (13:10) to smoldering ruin.
31. 'There is no man on earth to come in to us after the manner of all the earth' (ve'ish ein ba'arets lavo aleinu kederekh kol ha'arets) — the daughters' perception may be literal (they believe the destruction has wiped out all humanity, having witnessed an apocalyptic event) or hyperbolic (there is no suitable man available in their isolated cave existence). Given that they have just seen cities consumed by fire from heaven, a belief that the world has ended is not unreasonable.
31. 'After the manner of all the earth' (kederekh kol ha'arets) — literally 'according to the way of all the earth,' meaning the normal course of human procreation through marriage. The phrase underscores that what they are about to propose is a departure from the natural order, driven by what they perceive as desperate circumstances.
31. The firstborn takes the initiative throughout this episode, planning and directing the younger sister. The narrative structure places responsibility primarily on her.
32. 'That we may preserve offspring through our father' (unchayyeh me'avinu zara) — literally 'that we may keep alive from our father seed.' The verb chayyah ('to keep alive, preserve life') frames the act as one of preservation and continuity rather than desire. The daughters' stated motive is survival of the family line — the same concern that drives Tamar's deception of Judah in chapter 38 and Ruth's approach to Boaz in Ruth 3. The biblical narrative presents these as morally complex acts driven by the imperative of lineage preservation.
32. The plan requires making Lot drunk — 'let us make our father drink wine' (nashqeh et avinu yayin) — because he would never consent knowingly. The use of wine as a tool of deception inverts the normal association of wine with celebration and covenant meals. The text records the plan without editorial comment, leaving moral judgment to the reader.
33. 'He did not know when she lay down or when she arose' (velo yada beshikhvah uvequmah) — the verb yada ('to know') returns with bitter irony. In verse 5, the mob demanded to 'know' the visitors; in verse 8, Lot offered daughters who had not 'known' a man; now Lot himself does not 'know' what is happening to him. The same word threads through the chapter, marking the progression from threatened sexual violence to actual sexual transgression within the family.
33. The text emphasizes Lot's unconsciousness: he did not know her lying down (shikhvah) or her rising (qumah). Whether this is physically plausible after extreme intoxication is beside the narrative's point — the text insists on Lot's lack of awareness and therefore his lack of consent. He is victim rather than agent in this act.
34. The firstborn reports success and directs the younger to repeat the act. The repetition is structured with deliberate parallelism: the same plan, the same wine, the same outcome. The narrative's doubling ensures both children — and both nations that will descend from them — are placed on equal footing.
34. 'Let us make him drink wine tonight also' (nashqennu yayin gam hallaylah) — the word gam ('also, again') underscores the calculated, repeated nature of the deception. This is not a momentary lapse but a planned sequence.
35. The near-verbatim repetition of verse 33 — the same wine, the same unknowing — creates a liturgical quality, as though the narrator is recording a terrible ritual. The younger daughter's act parallels the firstborn's exactly. The only variation is the subject: 'the younger arose' (vataqam hatse'irah) instead of 'the firstborn went in' (vattavo habbekhirah).
35. Again, 'he did not know' (velo yada) — Lot's obliviousness is restated. The narrative insists twice on his lack of awareness, as if anticipating the question of his complicity.
36. The verse is starkly factual — nine words in Hebrew reporting the result without comment, emotion, or moral evaluation. The narrator's restraint is itself a statement: the text records what happened and leaves interpretation to the reader and to the unfolding of history, as the nations born from

these conceptions will interact with Israel for centuries to come.

37. 'Moab' (Mo'av) — the name is popularly etymologized as me'av ('from [the] father'), a brazen acknowledgment of the child's paternity. The name preserves the origin story in perpetuity: every time the Moabites are mentioned, their ancestor's name recalls his conception. Whether this etymology is linguistically precise matters less than its narrative function — it brands the nation with its origin.
37. 'He is the father of the Moabites to this day' (hu avi Mo'av ad hayyom) — the etiological formula connects the narrative past to the narrator's present. The Moabites were Israel's neighbors, sometimes enemies (Numbers 22–25), sometimes kin (Deuteronomy 2:9). Remarkably, Ruth the Moabitess will become an ancestor of King David and, in the Christian genealogy, of Jesus (Ruth 4:17–22; Matthew 1:5). The line that begins in shame ends in royalty.
38. 'Ben-ammi' (Ben-ammi) — the name means 'son of my people' or 'son of my kinsman.' It is slightly more euphemistic than 'Moab,' veiling the paternity behind the broader term 'my people/kinsman' (ammi) rather than 'my father' (avi). Yet the meaning is transparent: 'the son of my own kin' is a circumlocution for incestuous origin.
38. 'He is the father of the Ammonites to this day' (hu avi benei Ammon ad hayyom) — the Ammonites (literally 'sons of Ammon') occupied the territory east of the Jordan, centered around modern Amman (which preserves the ancient name). Like the Moabites, they were Israel's kinsmen and rivals, protected from Israelite conquest by divine decree (Deuteronomy 2:19) yet frequently in conflict with Israel (Judges 10–11; 1 Samuel 11).
38. The chapter ends with these etiological notices, turning from the cosmic drama of divine judgment to the domestic consequences of survival. Out of the ashes of Sodom come two nations that will shape Israel's story for centuries. The narrative neither celebrates nor condemns the daughters' act — it simply records the origin of peoples who will become permanent fixtures in the biblical landscape.

20

Summary: *Abraham settles in Gerar and again presents Sarah as his sister. King Abimelech takes her, but God warns him in a dream that she is married. Abimelech confronts Abraham, who explains his fear and reveals the half-truth. Abimelech restores Sarah with gifts, and Abraham prays for the healing of Abimelech's household.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the second wife-sister episode (after 12:10–20), and it occurs immediately after the destruction of Sodom — Abraham has just witnessed divine judgment yet repeats the same deception. The pagan king Abimelech acts with greater moral integrity ('the integrity of my heart and the innocence of my hands,' v. 5) than the prophet Abraham, and God himself affirms Abimelech's innocence (v. 6). Abraham is called a navi ('prophet,' v. 7) for the first time in the Bible — yet the title is bestowed in a context that highlights his moral failure.*

Translation Friction: *Abraham's explanation that Sarah is 'indeed my sister, the daughter of my father though not the daughter of my mother' (v. 12) introduces a family detail found nowhere else, and its historicity and meaning have been debated. We rendered it as given. The phrase 'covering of the eyes' (v. 16), describing Abimelech's gift to Sarah, is an idiom whose precise legal meaning is uncertain — possibly vindication, possibly compensation. We preserved the Hebrew idiom and noted the ambiguity.*

Connections: *The wife-sister pattern (12:10–20; 20:1–18; 26:1–11) reveals a recurring patriarchal vulnerability. God's closing of wombs (20:18) and their reopening anticipates the barrenness-to-fertility pattern central to the matriarchal narratives. Abraham as intercessor (20:17) echoes his role in chapter 18 and foreshadows Moses' intercessory ministry.*

¹And Abraham journeyed from there toward the land of the Negev, and he settled between Kadesh and Shur, and he sojourned in Gerar. ²Abraham introduced Sarah his wife by saying, "She is my sister." So Abimelech, the king of Gerar, sent for Sarah and took her. ³But God came to Abimelech in a dream by night and said to him, "Behold, you are a dead man because of the woman whom you have taken, for she is married to a husband." ⁴Now Abimelech had not come near her, and he said, "Lord, will You slay even a righteous nation?" ⁵Did he not himself say to me, 'She is my sister'? And she herself also said, 'He is my brother.' In the integrity of my heart and in the innocence of my hands I have done this. ⁶And God said to him in the dream, "Yes, I know that in the integrity of your heart you did this, and I also kept you from sinning against Me. Therefore I did not allow you to touch her." ⁷Now therefore, restore the man's wife, for he is a prophet, and he will pray for you, and you shall live. But if you do not restore her, know that you shall surely die — you and all who are yours. ⁸So Abimelech rose early in the morning and called all his servants and spoke all these things in their hearing, and the men were

very afraid. ⁹Then Abimelech called Abraham and said to him, "What have you done to us? And how have I sinned against you, that you have brought upon me and upon my kingdom a great sin? You have done to me things that ought not to be done." ¹⁰And Abimelech said to Abraham, "What were you thinking, that you did this thing?" ¹¹And Abraham said, "Because I thought, 'Surely there is no fear of God in this place, and they will kill me on account of my wife.'" ¹²And besides, she is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father though not the daughter of my mother, and she became my wife. ¹³And it came to pass, when God caused me to wander from my father's house, that I said to her, 'This is the kindness you must show me: at every place where we come, say of me, "He is my brother."'" ¹⁴And Abimelech took sheep and oxen and male servants and female servants and gave them to Abraham, and he restored to him Sarah his wife. ¹⁵And Abimelech said, "Behold, my land is before you; settle wherever it pleases you." ¹⁶And to Sarah he said, "Behold, I have given your brother a thousand pieces of silver. Behold, it is for you a covering of the eyes before all who are with you, and before everyone you are vindicated." ¹⁷Abraham then interceded with God, and God restored Abimelech, along with his wife and female servants, so that they could bear children again. ¹⁸For the LORD had completely closed every womb in the house of Abimelech, on account of Sarah, Abraham's wife.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'He journeyed from there' (vayyissa' misham) — the narrative transitions directly from the destruction of Sodom and the aftermath in the cave of Zoar. Abraham moves south, away from the smoldering ruins of the Cities of the Plain. The verb nasa' ('to pull up stakes, to journey') implies breaking camp entirely.
1. 'The Negev' (hannegev) — the arid southern region of Canaan. Abraham's movement southward toward the edge of the promised land, settling near the border with Egypt (between Kadesh and Shur), places him in a liminal zone where the patterns of chapter 12 threaten to repeat.
1. 'He sojourned in Gerar' (vayyagar biGerar) — the verb gur ('to sojourn') marks Abraham as a resident alien without permanent rights. Gerar was a Philistine city (cf. 26:1), situated in the western Negev. Abraham's sojourner status makes him vulnerable and sets the stage for the wife-sister deception that follows.
2. 'She is my sister' (achoti hi) — the identical deception Abraham employed in Egypt (12:13). That he repeats it after all that has transpired — the covenant, the promise of a son, the destruction of Sodom — is staggering. Sarah, now promised to bear Isaac within the year (18:10), is placed in jeopardy by the very man entrusted with the covenant promise. The patriarch's faith, so recently displayed in his intercession for Sodom, falters in a far more personal test.
2. 'Abimelech king of Gerar sent and took Sarah' — the verb laqach ('to take') is the same used of Pharaoh in 12:15. The repetition of the entire pattern — journey to foreign land, declaration of sisterhood, royal appropriation — creates a literary echo that invites the reader to compare the two episodes. Notably, Sarah is now approximately ninety years old (17:17), which some commentators find remarkable; others note that her renewed beauty may be connected to the divine rejuvenation implied by the promise of a son.
2. 'Abimelech' (avimelekh) — meaning 'my father is king.' This appears to be a royal title or dynastic name among the rulers of Gerar rather than a personal name, since a king of Gerar bears the same name in Isaac's time (26:1).
3. 'God came to Abimelech in a dream by night' (vayyavo Elohim el-Avimelekh bachalom hallaylah) — this is remarkable: God communicates directly with a pagan king. The text uses Elohim (the universal name for God) rather than YHWH (the covenant name), fitting the context of divine address to a non-Israelite. God's intervention demonstrates His sovereignty over all nations and His commitment to protecting Sarah and the covenant promise, even when Abraham fails to do so.
3. 'You are a dead man' (hinnekha met) — the declaration is blunt and terrifying. The participle met ('dead') functions almost as a death sentence already pronounced. Abimelech stands under divine judgment not for a deliberate sin but for an action taken in ignorance — yet the objective reality of taking another man's wife carries lethal consequences regardless of intent.
3. 'She is married to a husband' (ve'hi be'ulat ba'al) — literally 'she is owned by an owner' or 'mastered by a master.' The term be'ulah comes from ba'al ('lord, husband, owner'), indicating that Sarah belongs to another man in the fullest covenantal sense. The emphatic phrasing underscores that the marriage bond is inviolable.
4. 'Abimelech had not come near her' (vaAvimelekh lo qarav eleiha) — the narrator inserts this crucial fact before Abimelech's defense, confirming that the marriage was never consummated. The verb qarav ('to draw near, to approach') is used euphemistically for sexual relations. God's intervention preceded any violation of Sarah.
4. 'Lord, will You slay even a righteous nation?' (Adonai, hagoy gam-tsaddiq taharog) — the echo of Abraham's intercession for Sodom (18:23–25) is unmistakable. Abraham asked, 'Will You indeed sweep away the righteous with the wicked?' Now Abimelech — a Gentile king — employs strikingly similar reasoning before God. The word tsaddiq ('righteous') and the appeal to divine justice connect the two episodes. The irony is sharp: the one who argued for Sodom's righteous is now the cause of an innocent king's peril.

4. The term *goy* ('nation') here likely refers to Abimelech's household and people who would suffer along with him, not merely to himself. His concern extends beyond personal survival to the welfare of his entire kingdom — a mark of royal responsibility.
5. Abimelech's defense is thorough and compelling. He establishes that both Abraham and Sarah participated in the deception — 'he said to me' and 'she also said.' The emphatic 'she herself also' (*vehi-gam-hi*) stresses that Sarah was complicit, not merely a passive victim. Both husband and wife bore responsibility for misleading Abimelech.
5. 'In the integrity of my heart and in the innocence of my hands' (*betom-levavi uvniqyon kappai*) — this is one of the most striking moral declarations in Genesis, and it comes from a pagan king. *Tom* ('integrity, completeness, wholeness') describes an undivided heart without guile. *Niqayon* ('innocence, cleanness') describes hands unstained by wrongdoing. The combination of heart (intention) and hands (action) constitutes a comprehensive claim of moral blamelessness — language later echoed in Psalm 26:6 and Psalm 73:13.
5. The irony of this chapter is reaching its peak: the 'father of many nations' is the deceiver, while the Gentile king stands before God with clean hands and an upright heart.
6. God's response to Abimelech is remarkable in its generosity. He does not merely tolerate the pagan king's defense — He affirms it: 'I know that in the integrity of your heart you did this.' The God of Abraham validates the moral sincerity of a Gentile ruler. This stands as a powerful witness that God judges the heart impartially (cf. 1 Samuel 16:7).
6. 'I also kept you from sinning against Me' (*va'echsoxh gam-anokhi otkha mechato-li*) — the verb *chasakh* ('to withhold, to restrain, to spare') reveals that God was actively intervening behind the scenes to prevent the consummation. The sin would have been 'against Me' (*li*) — not merely against Abraham or Sarah, but against God Himself, because the covenant promise of a son through Sarah was at stake. God's sovereign protection of the promised seed operates even when the patriarch's faith fails.
6. 'I did not allow you to touch her' (*lo netattikha lingo'a eleiha*) — literally 'I did not give you to touch her.' The verb *natan* ('to give, to permit') with the infinitive construct expresses divine restraint. God governed the situation so completely that Abimelech never had the opportunity to consummate the union. The protection of Sarah — and by extension, the promised son — is entirely God's doing.
7. 'He is a prophet' (*ki navi hu*) — this is the first occurrence of the word *navi* ('prophet') in the Bible, and it is applied to Abraham. The designation is significant: a *navi* is one who speaks to God on behalf of others, an intercessor. Here the prophetic role is defined not primarily as foretelling the future but as mediating between God and man through prayer. Abraham, despite his failure in this episode, retains his calling as God's chosen intercessor.
7. 'He will pray for you and you shall live' (*veyitpallel ba'adekha vecheye*) — the verb *hitpallel* ('to pray,' reflexive of *palal*) suggests intercession, pleading another's cause. Abimelech's healing depends on Abraham's prayer — a humbling irony, since Abraham is the one who caused the crisis. Yet God's design places the remedy in the hands of His prophet, not because Abraham deserves the role, but because God's gifts and calling are irrevocable.
7. 'You shall surely die' (*mot tamut*) — the infinitive absolute construction (*mot tamut*) intensifies the threat to absolute certainty. This is the same grammatical form God used in the garden: 'you shall surely die' (2:17). The threat extends to 'all who are yours' — Abimelech's entire household stands under this judgment, as verse 18 will confirm.
8. 'Abimelech rose early in the morning' (*vayyashkem Avimelekh babboqer*) — the verb *hishkim* ('to rise early') conveys urgency and diligence. The same verb is used of Abraham in key moments of obedience (19:27; 21:14; 22:3). Abimelech responds to the divine warning with the same alacrity that characterizes the patriarch at his best.
8. 'The men were very afraid' (*vayyir'u ha'anashim me'od*) — Abimelech's servants respond with appropriate fear. Their reaction confirms that the dream was understood as a genuine divine communication. In a polytheistic culture, a warning from a deity — even a foreign one — commanded serious attention. The entire household recognizes the gravity of the situation.
9. 'What have you done to us?' (*meh-asita lanu*) — the identical accusation Pharaoh leveled at Abraham in 12:18. The repetition is devastating. Twice now, a foreign ruler has rebuked the patriarch for the same deception. The man called to be a blessing to the nations has instead brought a curse upon them.
9. 'A great sin' (*chata'ah gedolah*) — the phrase 'great sin' in the ancient Near East was a technical term for adultery, attested in Egyptian and other texts. Abimelech uses precisely the right moral vocabulary: Abraham's deception nearly caused what the entire ancient world recognized as a grave offense against the social and divine order.
9. 'Things that ought not to be done' (*ma'asim asher lo ye'asu*) — literally 'deeds which are not done.' This phrase denotes actions that violate the recognized moral order — things so wrong that they are simply 'not done' in civilized society (cf. 34:7; 2 Samuel 13:12). The pagan king appeals to a moral standard he assumes Abraham shares. The rebuke carries added force because it comes from someone outside the covenant community — even Gentiles know this is wrong.
10. 'What were you thinking?' (*mah ra'ita*) — literally 'What did you see?' The verb *ra'ah* ('to see') here means 'to perceive, to consider, to have in view.' Abimelech is asking what calculation, what perceived threat, what reasoning led Abraham to this deception. The question pierces to the heart of Abraham's motivation: what did he see — or fail to see — that justified such an action?
10. The question is devastatingly simple. After the elaborate rebuke of verse 9, Abimelech reduces everything to one pointed inquiry. He does not understand why a man of God would resort to deception, and he asks Abraham to explain himself. The patriarch's answer in the following verses will be revealing — and not entirely to his credit.

11. 'There is no fear of God in this place' (ein yir'at Elohim bamaqom hazzeh) — Abraham's first justification. Yir'at Elohim ('the fear of God') is the foundational moral concept in the Hebrew Bible — the reverent awe of God that produces ethical behavior (cf. Proverbs 1:7; 9:10). Abraham assumed that without this fear, no moral restraint would operate, and his life would be forfeit. The assumption was wrong: Abimelech demonstrated precisely the moral integrity Abraham denied him.
11. The irony is painful. Abraham, the man who walked with God and received the covenant promises, assumed the worst about a people he did not know — while he himself was the one acting without moral integrity. The 'fear of God' Abraham found lacking in Gerar was more conspicuously absent in his own conduct.
11. 'They will kill me on account of my wife' (vaharguniy al-devar ishti) — Abraham's fear, however misguided, was not irrational by ancient Near Eastern standards. A beautiful woman with a living husband posed a problem; a beautiful widow was available. The calculus of self-preservation is understandable, but it reveals a failure to trust the God who had promised him descendants.
12. 'She is indeed my sister, the daughter of my father though not the daughter of my mother' (vegam-omnah achoti vat-avi hi, akh lo vat-immi) — Abraham's second justification: the claim was technically true. Sarah was his half-sister, sharing the same father (Terah) but having a different mother. Marriage between half-siblings was not prohibited in the patriarchal period (the Levitical prohibition comes later, Leviticus 18:9; 20:17). Abraham's defense rests on a half-truth — factually accurate but deliberately misleading, designed to conceal the more important fact that she was his wife.
12. The particle omnah ('indeed, truly') is emphatic — Abraham insists on the literal truth of his claim. But a half-truth deployed to deceive is a whole lie in its moral effect. Abraham traded on a technicality to save his skin, and the text offers no commendation for this reasoning.
12. 'And she became my wife' (vattehi-li le'ishah) — stated almost as an afterthought, as if the marriage were secondary to the sibling relationship. The syntax mirrors Abraham's deceptive strategy: he foregrounded the sisterhood and buried the marriage.
13. 'When God caused me to wander from my father's house' (ka'asher hit'u oti Elohim mibbeit avi) — Abraham's third justification, and the most theologically startling. The verb hit'u is the Hiphil plural of ta'ah ('to wander, to stray, to err'), and the subject Elohim takes a plural verb here — a grammatical oddity that has generated much discussion. Some read it as a genuine plural ('gods caused me to wander'), reflecting Abraham's pre-monotheistic idiom when speaking to a pagan; others see it as a pluralis majestatis or an anomalous construction. The rendering preserves the standard translation 'God caused me to wander,' but the Hebrew is unusual.
13. 'This is the kindness you must show me' (zeh chasdekh asher ta'asi immadi) — Abraham characterizes Sarah's participation in the deception as chesed — covenant loyalty, steadfast love, kindness. The word chesed normally describes the highest form of relational faithfulness, and Abraham applies it to a systematic pattern of half-truth. He asked Sarah to make this her permanent practice — at every place they would go.
13. The revelation that this deception was a standing arrangement — not a momentary lapse in Egypt or Gerar but a policy adopted at the outset of their journey — casts Abraham's entire pilgrimage in a different light. The man of faith has carried this contingency plan from the beginning, a hedge against the very God who called him.
14. Abimelech's response to Abraham's deception is astonishing generosity rather than punishment. Where Pharaoh expelled Abraham from Egypt (12:20), Abimelech gives gifts and invites him to stay (v. 15). The sheep, oxen, and servants constitute substantial wealth — a gesture of goodwill that goes far beyond what the situation required.
14. 'He restored to him Sarah his wife' (vayyashev lo et Sarah ishto) — the verb hashiv ('to restore, to return') fulfills God's command in verse 7. The narrative pointedly identifies Sarah as 'his wife' (ishto), the fact Abraham had labored to conceal. What Abraham hid, the text declares openly.
14. The parallel with the Egyptian episode (12:16) is instructive: there too Abraham received sheep, oxen, and servants, but in Egypt the gifts were the bride-price for Sarah's supposed availability. Here the gifts accompany her return — they are reparation, not acquisition.
15. 'My land is before you' (hinneh artsi lefaneikha) — Abimelech opens his entire territory to Abraham, granting him the freedom to settle wherever he wishes. This stands in sharp contrast to Pharaoh's terse 'take her and go' (12:19). The offer of land is especially significant given Abraham's status as a landless sojourner whom God has promised all of Canaan.
15. 'Settle wherever it pleases you' (battov be'eineikha shev) — literally 'in the good in your eyes, dwell.' Abimelech places the choice entirely in Abraham's hands. The generosity of a pagan king toward the man who deceived him becomes another testimony to the integrity God affirmed in Abimelech (v. 6). Abraham, who feared there was 'no fear of God in this place,' receives from that place an offer of radical hospitality.
16. 'A thousand pieces of silver' (elef kesef) — an enormous sum. For comparison, the price of a slave was approximately thirty shekels of silver (Exodus 21:32). A thousand pieces represents extraordinary wealth, intended to make unmistakably clear that no offense was committed and that Sarah's honor is fully intact.
16. 'A covering of the eyes' (kesut einayim) — one of the most debated phrases in Genesis. Interpretations include: (1) a legal payment that 'covers' or settles any perceived wrong, vindicating Sarah publicly; (2) a gift so large it causes onlookers to 'close their eyes' to any suspicion; (3) a veil of respectability that demonstrates Sarah was not dishonored. The rendering 'covering of the eyes' preserves the metaphor. The essential meaning is public vindication — the silver serves as proof that Sarah's honor remains unblemished.
16. 'Your brother' (achikh) — Abimelech uses Abraham's own terminology, perhaps with a note of irony. He addresses the relationship as Abraham presented it, even as he rectifies the situation that the deception created.

16. 'You are vindicated' (venokhachat) — the final word is difficult. It may derive from yakach ('to reprove, to decide, to vindicate') and can mean either 'you are reproved' (as KJV renders) or 'you are set right, vindicated.' The context of generous reparation favors the sense of vindication: Sarah's reputation is publicly cleared.
17. 'Abraham prayed to God' (vayyitpallel Avraham el-haElohim) — Abraham fulfills the prophetic role God assigned him in verse 7. The man who caused the crisis now mediates its resolution through intercessory prayer. The verb hitpallel ('to pray, to intercede') is the same used in verse 7, completing the divine instruction. Despite Abraham's failure, God still uses him as the channel of blessing — the intercessor through whom healing comes.
17. 'God healed Abimelech and his wife and his female servants, and they bore children' (vayyirpa Elohim et-Avimelekh ve'et-ishto ve'amhotav vayyeledu) — the healing is comprehensive: Abimelech himself, his wife, and his female servants are all restored. The verb rapha ('to heal') indicates that a physical affliction had been imposed — the nature of which is explained in verse 18. The result — 'they bore children' — reveals that the plague was specifically a closure of the womb, preventing all reproduction in Abimelech's household.
17. The irony reaches its climax: Abraham, who cannot yet produce the promised heir through Sarah, prays for the fertility of another man's household — and God answers. The prophet who deceived now intercedes; the barren patriarch prays for the barren household of the man he wronged, and God opens their wombs even as Isaac's conception draws near.
18. 'The LORD had completely closed every womb' (ki-atsor atsar YHWH be'ad kol-rechem) — the chapter's final verse shifts from Elohim to YHWH, the covenant name. Throughout the chapter, God has been referred to as Elohim in His dealings with Abimelech, the appropriate name for divine interaction with those outside the covenant. But here, in the narrator's explanatory comment, the name YHWH appears — because the ultimate purpose behind these events is the protection of the covenant. It is YHWH, the covenant God, who was at work all along.
18. 'Completely closed' (atsor atsar) — the infinitive absolute construction (atsor atsar) emphasizes the totality of the closure. Every womb — wife, servants, all — was shut. The verb atsar ('to restrain, to close, to shut up') describes divine intervention in the most intimate sphere of human life. God made the consequences of taking Sarah unmistakable and universal within Abimelech's household.
18. 'On account of Sarah, Abraham's wife' (al-devar Sarah eshet Avraham) — the chapter ends as it must, with the full identification that Abraham tried to suppress. Sarah is 'Abraham's wife' — not his sister, not an unattached woman, but the covenant wife through whom the promised son will come. God's fierce protection of Sarah is ultimately protection of the promise, and every event in this chapter — the dream, the rebuke, the plague, the healing — serves that single covenantal purpose.

21

Summary: *Isaac is born as promised; Abraham circumcises him at eight days. At the weaning feast, Sarah demands the expulsion of Hagar and Ishmael. God assures Abraham and provides for Hagar in the wilderness. Abraham makes a covenant with Abimelech at Beersheba and plants a tamarisk tree there, calling on God as El Olam ('the Everlasting God').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Sarah's declaration 'God has made laughter for me' (v. 6) transforms the private, embarrassed laughter of 18:12 into public joy — the verb tsachaq permeates the chapter, giving Isaac's name its full resonance. Ishmael's 'laughing' (metsacheq, v. 9) uses the same root, creating an ambiguity that drives the plot: is he mocking, playing, or simply laughing? The chapter's two halves — birth and expulsion — show that the fulfillment of God's promise for Isaac comes at devastating cost to Hagar and Ishmael, yet God provides for both lines.*

Translation Friction: *The participle metsacheq (v. 9), describing Ishmael's action, is the same root as Isaac's name and can mean 'laughing,' 'playing,' or 'mocking.' The Hebrew is deliberately ambiguous, and different translations choose different readings. We rendered it as 'laughing' and noted the range. The divine title El Olam ('the Everlasting God,' v. 33) appears only here in Genesis; olam stretches time beyond the horizon of human sight, and we preserved the traditional rendering.*

Connections: *The seven ewe lambs at Beersheba (21:28-30) establish the place name ('well of the oath' or 'well of seven') and connect oath-making to the number seven. Paul allegorizes the Hagar-Sarah conflict in Galatians 4:21-31. The Beersheba covenant anticipates Isaac's later treaty with Abimelech at the same site (26:26-33).*

¹The LORD attended to Sarah just as He had promised, fulfilling for Sarah exactly what He had declared. ²And Sarah conceived and bore Abraham a son in his old age, at the appointed time of which God had spoken to him. ³Abraham named the son Sarah had borne him Isaac. ⁴When Isaac was eight days old, Abraham circumcised him, just as God had instructed. ⁵

Abraham was one hundred years old at the time of Isaac's birth. ⁶And Sarah said, "God has made laughter for me; everyone who hears will laugh with me." ⁷And she said, "Who would have declared to Abraham that Sarah would nurse children? For I have borne him a son in his old age." ⁸The boy grew and was weaned, and on the day of Isaac's weaning Abraham held a great celebration. ⁹And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham, laughing. ¹⁰And she said to Abraham, "Cast out this slave woman and her son, for the son of this slave woman shall not inherit with my son, with Isaac." ¹¹And the matter was very displeasing in the eyes of Abraham on account of his son. ¹²And God said to Abraham, "Let it not be displeasing in your eyes because of the boy and because of your slave woman. In all that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice, for through Isaac shall your offspring be named." ¹³And also the son of the slave woman I will make into a nation, because he is your offspring. ¹⁴And Abraham rose early in the morning and took bread and a skin of water and gave them to Hagar, placing them on her shoulder, along with the child, and sent her away. And she departed and wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba. ¹⁵And the water in the skin was exhausted, and she cast the child under one of the bushes. ¹⁶And she went and sat down at a distance opposite him, about a bowshot away, for she said, "Let me not look upon the death of the child." And she sat opposite him and lifted up her voice and wept. ¹⁷And God heard the voice of the boy, and the angel of God called to Hagar from heaven and said to her, "What troubles you, Hagar? Do not fear, for God has heard the voice of the boy where he is." ¹⁸"Arise, lift up the boy and grasp him firmly by the hand, for I will make him into a great nation." ¹⁹And God opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water. And she went and filled the skin with water and gave the boy a drink. ²⁰And God was with the boy, and he grew. And he dwelt in the wilderness and became an expert archer. ²¹And he dwelt in the wilderness of Paran, and his mother took a wife for him from the land of Egypt. ²²And it came to pass at that time that Abimelech and Phicol the commander of his army spoke to Abraham, saying, "God is with you in all that you do." ²³Now therefore swear to me here by God that you will not deal falsely with me, nor with my son, nor with my grandson. According to the kindness that I have shown to you, you shall do to me and to the land in which you have sojourned." ²⁴Abraham replied, "I give you my oath." ²⁵And Abraham reproved Abimelech concerning a well of water that the servants of Abimelech had seized. ²⁶And Abimelech said, "I do not know who has done this thing. You did not tell me, and I also have not heard of it until today." ²⁷And Abraham took sheep and cattle and gave them to Abimelech, and the two of them made a covenant. ²⁸Abraham then separated seven ewe lambs from the flock. ²⁹And Abimelech said to Abraham, "What are these seven ewe lambs that you have set apart by themselves?" ³⁰And he said, "You shall take these seven ewe lambs from my hand so that it may serve as a witness for me that I dug this well." ³¹Therefore he called that place Beersheba, because there the two of them swore an oath. ³²So they made a covenant at Beersheba. Then Abimelech and Phicol the commander of his army rose up and returned to the land of the Philistines. ³³Abraham planted a tamarisk tree at Beersheba and there invoked the name of the LORD, the Everlasting God. ³⁴And Abraham sojourned in the land of the Philistines many days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'The LORD visited' (YHWH paqad) — the verb paqad carries a rich range of meaning: to visit, to attend to, to take notice of, to act on behalf of. When God is the subject, it signals decisive divine intervention — God breaking into the normal course of events to fulfill His word. The same verb is used of God's visitation of Israel in Egypt (Exodus 3:16).
1. 'As He had said... as He had spoken' (ka'asher amar... ka'asher dibber) — the double affirmation of divine faithfulness is emphatic. Two different verbs for speaking (amar and dibber) reinforce that God's word and God's deed are inseparable. What He promises, He performs. This verse is the culmination of a promise first made in 17:16 and reiterated in 18:10.
1. The chapter opens with YHWH — the covenant name — used twice, underscoring that the birth of Isaac is a covenant act, not merely a biological event. Twenty-five years have passed since the original promise in 12:2.
2. 'At the appointed time' (lammo'ed) — the word mo'ed means an appointed time, a fixed season, a designated meeting. It is the same word used for the festivals of Israel (Leviticus 23) and the Tabernacle of Meeting (ohel mo'ed). Isaac's birth is not random; it occurs precisely when God determined it would. The Creator of time operates within it with perfect precision.
2. 'In his old age' (lizqunav) — Abraham is one hundred years old (v. 5). The notation emphasizes that this birth is humanly impossible and therefore wholly a work of God. The phrase echoes the announcement in 18:11 that Abraham and Sarah were 'old, advanced in days.'

3. 'Isaac' (Yitschaq) — the name means 'he laughs' or 'he will laugh,' from the root ts-ch-q. The naming fulfills God's command in 17:19. The laughter theme runs through the entire Isaac narrative: Abraham laughed in wonder (17:17), Sarah laughed in disbelief (18:12), and now the child of promise bears laughter as his very identity. What began as incredulous laughter is transformed into the joyful laughter of fulfillment.
3. The verse carefully attributes the child to both parents: 'his son who was born to him, whom Sarah bore to him.' Both the father's lineage and the mother's agency are acknowledged. Abraham obeys God's command by giving the name God specified (17:19).
4. 'Circumcised his son Isaac when he was eight days old' — Abraham's immediate obedience fulfills the covenant command of 17:12. The eighth day is specified by God as the appointed day for circumcision, and Abraham complies precisely. This act marks Isaac as a member of the covenant community and binds him physically to the Abrahamic promise.
4. 'As God had commanded him' (ka'asher tsivvah oto Elohim) — this phrase echoes the pattern of 'as He had said... as He had spoken' from verse 1. The chapter opens with a cascade of fulfilled words: God speaks, God acts, Abraham obeys. The covenant relationship is functioning as designed — divine promise met by human faithfulness.
5. The notation of Abraham's age — one hundred years — serves as a theological exclamation point. It has been twenty-five years since the initial call and promise in chapter 12, when Abraham was seventy-five. The quarter-century of waiting underscores both the severity of the test of faith and the certainty of divine fulfillment. The aged patriarch holding his newborn son is the living proof that nothing is too difficult for the LORD (18:14).
6. 'God has made laughter for me' (tsechoq asah li Elohim) — the word tsechoq ('laughter') is the noun form of Isaac's name-root. Sarah's declaration is beautifully ambiguous: God has made laughter for her — both the emotion of joy and the child whose name is Laughter. Her earlier laughter of disbelief (18:12–15) has been transformed into laughter of wonder and delight. What was once bitter incredulity is now overflowing joy.
6. 'Everyone who hears will laugh with me' (kol hashomea' yitschaq li) — the verb yitschaq is identical to Isaac's name. Sarah is saying, in effect, 'everyone who hears will Isaac with me' — will share in the laughter that this child represents. The wordplay is untranslatable in its full richness. The laughter is contagious; the promise is public; the joy overflows to all who hear the news of God's faithfulness.
7. 'Who would have declared to Abraham' (mi mille le'Avraham) — the verb mille ('to declare, to speak, to utter') is a rare and poetic word, appearing primarily in elevated speech. Sarah's words have the quality of a psalm or song. She marvels at the inconceivable: that anyone could have predicted this outcome. The rhetorical question expects the answer: no one — except God.
7. 'That Sarah would nurse children' (heiniqah vanim Sarah) — the plural 'children' (vanim) is striking when Sarah bore only one son. Some see it as a poetic plural of fullness, expressing that Sarah's motherhood overflows beyond what she could imagine. Others note it may hint at the nations that will descend from Isaac. The image of nursing — intimate, physical, sustaining — grounds the miracle in tangible maternal reality.
8. 'The child grew and was weaned' (vayyigdal hayyeled vayyiggamal) — weaning in the ancient Near East typically occurred at age two or three. The verb gamal ('to wean, to ripen, to deal fully with') carries a sense of completion and maturation. The child has survived the most vulnerable period of infancy — itself a testament to divine preservation.
8. 'Abraham made a great feast' (mishteh gadol) — a mishteh is a drinking feast, a celebration of abundance. The 'great feast' marks Isaac's transition from nursing infant to weaned child and functions as a public acknowledgment of the promise's reality. The community witnesses what God has done. This celebration, however, sets the stage for the conflict that immediately follows.
9. 'Laughing' (metsacheq) — this is the interpretive crux of the passage. The participle metsacheq comes from the same root (ts-ch-q) as Isaac's name and Sarah's laughter in verse 6. Its meaning is deeply ambiguous: it can mean simply 'playing' or 'laughing,' or it can carry overtones of 'mocking,' 'sporting,' or even sexual impropriety (as in 26:8 and 39:14,17). The LXX adds 'with her son Isaac,' suggesting the two were playing together. Paul interprets it as persecution (Galatians 4:29). The rendering preserves the basic meaning — 'laughing' — while notes explore the range. Ishmael is doing the very thing that Isaac's name signifies: he is 'Isaacing.' The threat Sarah perceives may be precisely this: Ishmael is claiming, through his laughter, the identity that belongs to Isaac.
9. 'The son of Hagar the Egyptian' — Sarah does not use Ishmael's name. She identifies him only by his mother and her ethnicity, distancing him from Abraham and from the covenant family. The designation is deliberate and cutting.
10. 'Cast out' (garesh) — a harsh verb meaning to drive out, expel, divorce. It is the same verb used for the expulsion from Eden (3:24) and will be used for driving out the Canaanites from the land. Sarah demands nothing less than total removal. The verb carries overtones of irrevocable banishment.
10. 'This slave woman' (ha'amah hazzo't) — Sarah uses the word amah ('slave woman, maidservant') rather than Hagar's name, further depersonalizing her. The demonstrative 'this' (zo't) adds contempt. Sarah, who once gave Hagar to Abraham as a wife-surrogate (16:3), now reduces her to a nameless servant to be expelled.
10. 'Shall not inherit with my son, with Isaac' — the legal and theological issue is inheritance. In ancient Near Eastern law, the son of a slave wife could have inheritance rights. Sarah demands that these rights be nullified. Paul will later interpret this as an allegory of the two covenants (Galatians 4:30), but in the narrative, it is a mother's fierce protection of her son's unique status as the child of promise.
11. 'Very displeasing in the eyes of Abraham' (vayyera' haddavar me'od be'einei Avraham) — the verb ra'a' ('to be evil, bad, displeasing') is strong. This is not mild discomfort; it is deep anguish. Abraham is caught between Sarah's demand and his love for Ishmael.
11. 'On account of his son' (al odot beno) — the text says 'his son,' not 'Ishmael' or 'the son of Hagar.' Abraham regards Ishmael as his son — fully, painfully, without qualification. This emotional reality makes the coming obedience all the more costly. Abraham's fatherly love for Ishmael is the

first shadow of the far greater test that awaits in chapter 22.

12. 'Listen to her voice' (shema' beqolah) — God validates Sarah's demand. The verb shema' ('to hear, to listen, to obey') is the fundamental verb of Israelite faith (cf. Deuteronomy 6:4). God commands Abraham to obey Sarah's voice in this matter, an extraordinary divine endorsement of a wife's discernment regarding the covenant line.
12. 'Through Isaac shall your offspring be named' (ki beYitschaq yiqqare lekha zara') — this is the theological key. The covenant line runs exclusively through Isaac. The verb qara' ('to call, to name') here means that Abraham's true descendants — those who carry the covenant identity — will be reckoned through Isaac. Paul cites this verse in Romans 9:7 and Hebrews 11:18 to argue that the children of promise, not merely biological descent, constitute the true seed of Abraham.
13. 'I will make into a nation' (legoy asimennu) — God's promise to Ishmael is not nullified by his expulsion from Abraham's household. He too will become a great nation (cf. 17:20). God's faithfulness extends beyond the covenant line; Ishmael is not abandoned but redirected.
13. 'Because he is your offspring' (ki zar'akha hu) — the reason God will bless Ishmael is paternal: he is Abraham's seed. The covenant runs through Isaac, but the blessing of Abraham's fatherhood extends to all his children. God's economy is generous even when it is particular.
14. 'Rose early in the morning' (vayyashkem babboqer) — the same phrase will describe Abraham's obedience in the Aqedah (22:3). Abraham does not delay or negotiate. His early rising speaks of painful obedience — he does what must be done before the day's heat and his own heart can weaken his resolve.
14. 'A skin of water' (chemat mayim) — a chemat is an animal-skin container. The provision is pitifully meager: bread and a single waterskin for a journey into the wilderness. Whether this reflects Abraham's own anguish (unable to equip them lavishly for fear of contradicting God's command) or the narrative's emphasis on their vulnerability is debated. Either way, the sparse provision foreshadows the crisis that follows.
14. 'She wandered in the wilderness of Beersheba' (vatteita' bemidbar Be'er Shava') — the verb ta'ah means 'to wander, to stray, to be lost.' Hagar does not journey purposefully; she wanders without direction. The wilderness of Beersheba is the arid region south of Canaan, a place of desolation. The promised mother of a great nation is lost and alone with her child in the desert.
15. 'The water was exhausted' (vayyikhlū hammayim) — the verb kalah ('to be completed, finished, exhausted') signals total depletion. There is nothing left. The sparse provision of verse 14 has run out, and death is now imminent.
15. 'She cast the child' (vattashlekh et-hayyeled) — the verb shalakh ('to cast, throw, hurl') is violent and despairing. This is not a gentle laying down; it is an act of helpless anguish. Hagar cannot bear to hold her dying child any longer. The same verb is used for casting lots, casting away idols, and Jonah being hurled into the sea — acts of desperate finality.
16. 'About a bowshot away' (kimtachavei qeshet) — a bowshot is approximately two hundred yards. The distance is precise enough to be visceral: close enough to know what is happening, far enough not to watch. Hagar positions herself in an agony of proximity — she cannot abandon him entirely, but she cannot bear to witness his death.
16. 'Let me not look upon the death of the child' (al-er'eh bemot hayya'el) — Hagar's words are among the most heartbreaking in Scripture. The verb ra'ah ('to see, to look upon') is the same verb that will soon describe God 'opening her eyes' (v. 19). What Hagar cannot bear to see, God is about to make visible in an entirely different way.
16. 'She lifted up her voice and wept' (vattissa et-qolah vattevk) — this formulaic expression for intense grief appears at moments of extreme sorrow throughout the Old Testament (cf. Judges 2:4; Ruth 1:9,14; 1 Samuel 11:4). The lifting of the voice is a cry that transcends words — raw maternal anguish rising to heaven.
17. 'God heard the voice of the boy' (vayyishma' Elohim et-qol hanna'ar) — this is a profound wordplay on Ishmael's name, which means 'God hears' (Yishma'el, from shama' + El). Even though Ishmael's name is not spoken in this verse, his very name is enacted: God hears. The text says God heard the boy's voice — not Hagar's weeping (v. 16), but the child's cry. Ishmael's identity as 'God hears' is confirmed precisely when he is most helpless.
17. 'The angel of God called from heaven' (mal'akh Elohim min-hashamayim) — as in 16:7–12, divine intervention comes through an angelic messenger. The term Elohim (rather than YHWH) is used, consistent with God's dealings with those outside the immediate covenant line. The call comes 'from heaven' — from the transcendent realm — yet reaches into the dust of the wilderness where a child lies dying.
17. 'Where he is' (ba'asher hu sham) — God hears Ishmael in his present condition and location. There is no prerequisite, no required journey of faith. God meets the boy exactly where he is. This phrase has been treasured in Jewish interpretation as expressing God's grace toward those in extremity.
18. 'Arise, lift up the boy and grasp him firmly by the hand' — three imperatives in rapid succession: qumi ('arise'), se'i ('lift up'), hachaziqui ('hold fast, strengthen your grip'). The angel commands Hagar out of her despair and into action. She is not to sit at a distance watching death; she is to rise, take hold of her son, and walk forward into the future God is declaring.
18. 'I will make him into a great nation' (legoy gadol asimennu) — the promise echoes the promise to Abraham himself (12:2). Ishmael will also become a goy gadol — a great nation. While the covenant line runs through Isaac, God's blessing of Ishmael is real and substantial. The twelve princes of 25:13–16 and the Arab peoples trace their lineage through this promise.
19. 'God opened her eyes' (vayyifqach Elohim et-eineiha) — the well was presumably there all along; Hagar's despair had blinded her to it. The verb paqach ('to open,' specifically of eyes) is used for miraculous sight — the removal of blindness, whether physical or spiritual. God does not create the well ex nihilo; He opens Hagar's perception to see what was already there. This is a recurring biblical pattern: divine provision is often present but

unseen until God grants the eyes to perceive it (cf. 2 Kings 6:17; Luke 24:31).

19. 'She saw a well of water' (vatter be'er mayim) — the contrast with verse 16 is stunning. There she said, 'Let me not see (er'eh) the death of the child.' Here God opens her eyes and she sees (vatter) — not death but life, not desolation but provision. The well of water in the wilderness is the concrete answer to her cry.
20. 'God was with the boy' (vayehi Elohim et-hanna'ar) — the phrase 'God was with' is one of the highest commendations in the Hebrew Bible. It is said of Joseph (39:2,21), Joshua, Samuel, and David. Ishmael, though outside the covenant line, lives under divine presence and protection. God's promise to Hagar is fulfilled not merely in survival but in ongoing accompaniment.
20. 'An expert archer' (roveh qashshat) — literally 'a shooter of the bow.' Ishmael becomes a man of the wilderness, skilled in the arts of survival. The bow connects him to the 'bowshot' distance of verse 16 — the very measure of Hagar's despair becomes the instrument of Ishmael's flourishing.
21. 'The wilderness of Paran' (midbar Pa'ran) — a vast desert region in the northeastern Sinai Peninsula, south of Canaan. Ishmael's settlement here places him geographically between Egypt and Canaan — between his mother's homeland and his father's promised land. He belongs fully to neither world.
21. 'His mother took a wife for him from the land of Egypt' — Hagar arranges an Egyptian marriage for her son, connecting him to her own heritage. The matriarch's role in selecting a bride is notable; it parallels Abraham's later arrangement of Isaac's marriage (chapter 24), though the directions diverge — Isaac's wife will come from Mesopotamia, not Egypt. The two sons' marriages map their divergent destinies.
22. 'God is with you in all that you do' (Elohim immekha bekhol asher-attah oseh) — a pagan king recognizes what the narrative has repeatedly demonstrated: divine favor rests on Abraham. This acknowledgment from an outsider — indeed, from the very king Abraham deceived in chapter 20 — is powerful testimony. Abimelech sees the evidence of God's blessing and seeks alliance rather than enmity.
22. 'Phicol the commander of his army' (Pikhol sar-tseva'o) — the presence of the military commander indicates that this is a formal diplomatic engagement, not a casual conversation. Abimelech approaches Abraham not merely as a neighbor but as a sovereign negotiating with an equal — a remarkable elevation for a sojourning alien (cf. 20:1).
23. 'Swear to me here by God' (hishave'ah li be'lohim hennah) — Abimelech demands a covenant oath sworn by Abraham's God. The pagan king recognizes that Abraham's God is the authority by which binding commitments are made. The word hennah ('here') grounds the oath in a specific place, which will become Beersheba.
23. 'Nor with my son, nor with my grandson' (ulnini ulnekhdi) — the terms nin ('son, offspring') and nekhd ('grandson, descendant') extend the treaty across three generations. Abimelech wants lasting peace, not a temporary truce. The multigenerational scope reflects ancient Near Eastern treaty practice.
23. 'According to the kindness I have shown to you' (kachesed asher-asiti immekha) — Abimelech appeals to chesed ('loyal love, kindness, covenant faithfulness'). He considers his treatment of Abraham in chapter 20 — returning Sarah, granting permission to dwell in the land, giving gifts — as acts of chesed that deserve reciprocity.
23. Register departure: chesed rendered as 'kindness' rather than default 'faithful love' because Abimelech's request is between treaty partners, not covenant parties — a political good-faith agreement, not covenantal loyalty.
24. 'I will swear' (anokhi ishava') — Abraham's response is terse and decisive. The emphatic pronoun anokhi ('I myself') lends weight to the commitment. Abraham agrees to the treaty without negotiation or qualification, establishing a pattern of peaceful coexistence with the peoples of the land.
25. 'Reproved' (hokhiach) — the verb yakach in the hiphil means 'to reprove, rebuke, argue a case, set right.' Abraham raises a grievance as part of the treaty negotiations. In the ancient Near East, treaty-making often included the resolution of outstanding disputes. Abraham is not merely accepting terms; he is asserting his rights.
25. 'A well of water that the servants of Abimelech had seized' (be'er hammayim asher gazelu avdei Avimelekh) — water rights were matters of life and death in the Negev. The verb gazal ('to seize, rob, take by force') indicates that Abimelech's servants had violently appropriated a well that Abraham had dug. Wells represented enormous investments of labor, and their seizure was an act of aggression. This dispute will be resolved by the oath and the naming of Beersheba.
26. Abimelech's triple denial — 'I do not know... you did not tell me... I have not heard' — establishes his innocence in the matter of the well. The pattern echoes his defense in 20:4–5, where he similarly protested his innocence regarding Sarah. Abimelech consistently presents himself as a man of integrity who acts rightly when properly informed. The verse implies that the well seizure was done by subordinates without the king's knowledge or authorization.
27. 'The two of them made a covenant' (vayyikhrettu sheneihem berit) — literally 'the two of them cut a covenant.' The verb karat ('to cut') reflects the ancient ritual of cutting animals in covenant-making ceremonies (cf. 15:9–18). Abraham provides the animals that seal the agreement. This is the first human-to-human covenant in which Abraham participates as an equal partner, a sign of his growing stature among the peoples of the land.
27. The gifts of sheep and cattle flow from Abraham to Abimelech — the sojourner providing for the king. Abraham's wealth, which is itself a sign of divine blessing, becomes the currency of diplomacy.

- 28.** 'Seven ewe lambs' (sheva' kivsot) — the number seven (sheva') is laden with significance. It is the number of completion and oath-making (the Hebrew word for 'to swear,' nishba', is related to the word for 'seven'). Abraham separates these lambs as a distinct element of the covenant ceremony, beyond the general gift of sheep and cattle. Their purpose will be explained in the following verses.
- 29.** Abimelech's question indicates that the separation of the seven ewe lambs is unusual — beyond the normal protocol of covenant-making. Abraham is adding a specific clause or condition to the treaty that requires explanation. The question creates a natural opening for Abraham to assert his claim to the disputed well.
- 30.** 'That it may serve as a witness for me' (tiyeh-li le'edah) — the seven lambs function as legal evidence, a physical witness to Abraham's claim. By accepting them, Abimelech acknowledges Abraham's ownership of the well. In a preliterate culture, such tangible markers served as binding legal documentation.
- 30.** 'That I dug this well' (ki chafarti et-habbe'er hazzo't) — the verb chafar ('to dig') implies the labor of excavation. Abraham asserts his claim based on the labor he invested. In the Negev, digging a well was an enormous undertaking — cutting through rock to reach the water table. The well represents not just water but established right of presence in the land.
- 31.** 'Beersheba' (Be'er Shava') — the name carries a double meaning: 'well of the oath' (from shevu'ah, 'oath') and 'well of seven' (from sheva', 'seven'). Both meanings are active in the narrative: seven lambs sealed the oath at the well. The wordplay is characteristic of Hebrew naming — a single name compresses multiple layers of meaning into a permanent marker on the landscape.
- 31.** 'There the two of them swore an oath' (sham nishbe'u sheneihem) — the verb nishba' ('to swear') is etymologically connected to sheva' ('seven'), reinforcing the numerical symbolism. Beersheba will become a major settlement and a marker of the southern boundary of Israel ('from Dan to Beersheba'). What begins as a treaty site becomes a defining landmark of the promised land.
- 32.** 'They returned to the land of the Philistines' — the anachronistic reference to 'Philistines' (Pelishtim) has generated much discussion. The Sea Peoples who became the historical Philistines arrived in Canaan around 1200 BCE, considerably after the patriarchal period. The term may be used proleptically (applying a later name to an earlier population) or may refer to an earlier wave of Aegean settlers in the coastal region. The narrator uses the name familiar to the audience.
- 32.** The departure of Abimelech and Phicol signals the successful conclusion of the treaty. Abraham remains at Beersheba as a recognized figure with legal rights — no longer merely a sojourner but a treaty partner with an acknowledged claim to land and water.
- 33.** 'A tamarisk tree' (eshel) — the tamarisk is a slow-growing, deep-rooted desert tree that provides shade and indicates the presence of underground water. Planting a tree is an act of permanence — a declaration that Abraham intends to remain. A tamarisk may take decades to reach full growth; Abraham plants for the future, not merely for himself. Some traditions interpret eshel as an inn or hostelry (from a related root meaning 'to provide'), suggesting Abraham established a place of hospitality.
- 33.** 'The LORD, the Everlasting God' (YHWH El Olam) — this divine title combines the covenant name YHWH with El Olam ('God of Eternity' or 'Everlasting God'). The title affirms that the God who called Abraham is not a local or temporal deity but the God of all time and eternity. The planting of a long-lived tree and the invocation of the Everlasting God together declare that Abraham's faith is rooted in permanence — in a God whose faithfulness spans all generations.
- 33.** The sequence — planting a tree, calling on God's name — mirrors Abraham's pattern of worship throughout the narrative (12:7–8; 13:4,18). At each significant location, Abraham establishes a marker of faith. Beersheba thus joins Shechem, Bethel, and Hebron as a site of Abrahamic worship.
- 34.** 'Sojourned... many days' (vayyagar... yamim rabbim) — the chapter ends as it began, with Abraham as a sojourner (ger). Despite the covenant with Abimelech, the planted tree, and the invocation of the Everlasting God, Abraham remains a stranger in a land not yet his own. The phrase 'many days' (yamim rabbim) compresses an indeterminate span of time — perhaps years or decades of quiet faithfulness between the dramatic events of chapters 21 and 22. The sojourner's patience is itself an act of faith in the Everlasting God whose promises unfold across generations.
- 34.** This concluding note sets the stage for chapter 22. The 'many days' of peaceful sojourning will be shattered by the most severe test of Abraham's life.

22

Summary: *God tests Abraham by commanding him to offer Isaac as a burnt offering on Mount Moriah. Abraham obeys, binds Isaac on the altar, and raises the knife. The angel of the LORD stops him, and a ram is provided as substitute. God swears an irrevocable oath of blessing. The chapter closes with news of Nahor's family, including the birth of Rebekah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Aqedah ('the Binding') takes its name from vayyaqod (v. 9), a verb used nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible. The second lekh-lekha ('go forth,' v. 2) mirrors the first (12:1), framing Abraham's entire journey: the first demanded he leave his past; the second demands he surrender his future. The refrain 'the two of them walked together' (vv. 6, 8) — yachdav — is the emotional heartbeat of the narrative. The word tachat ('instead of,' v. 13) establishes the principle of substitutionary*

sacrifice: the ram dies in Isaac's place.

Translation Friction: *Abraham's response hineni ('here I am,' vv. 1, 7, 11) signals total availability, but English 'here I am' lacks the theological weight of the Hebrew compound. The verb nissah ('tested,' v. 1) is not entrapment but refinement — designed to reveal and strengthen, not to destroy. The knife is called ma'akhelet ('the eater,' v. 6), from the root 'to consume' — a word that names the instrument by its function. We preserved these nuances in the translator's notes.*

Connections: *Mount Moriah is identified in 2 Chronicles 3:1 as the site of Solomon's temple. God's self-sworn oath (22:16) is cited in Hebrews 6:13-14 as the ultimate guarantee. The ram caught in the thicket (22:13) provides the substitution typology that runs through Passover (Exodus 12), the scapegoat (Leviticus 16), and Isaiah's Suffering Servant (Isaiah 53:7). Rebekah's introduction (22:23) prepares for chapter 24.*

¹And it came to pass after these things that God tested Abraham, and He said to him, "Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." ²And He said, "Take now your son, your only son, whom you love — Isaac — and go forth to the land of Moriah, and offer him there as a burnt offering upon one of the mountains of which I will tell you." ³And Abraham rose early in the morning and saddled his donkey, and he took his two young men with him and Isaac his son. And he split the wood for the burnt offering, and he arose and went to the place of which God had told him. ⁴On the third day Abraham lifted up his eyes and saw the place from afar. ⁵And Abraham said to his young men, "Stay here with the donkey. I and the boy will go over there, and we will worship, and we will return to you." ⁶And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering and laid it upon Isaac his son, and he took in his hand the fire and the knife. And the two of them walked together. ⁷Then Isaac spoke to Abraham the father and said, "My father!" And he said, "Here I am, my son." And he said, "Behold, the fire and the wood, but where is the lamb for the burnt offering?" ⁸And Abraham said, "God will provide for Himself the lamb for the burnt offering, my son." And the two of them walked together. ⁹And they came to the place of which God had told him, and Abraham built the altar there and arranged the wood. And he bound Isaac his son and laid him on the altar, on top of the wood. ¹⁰And Abraham stretched out his hand and took the knife to slaughter his son. ¹¹And the angel of the LORD called to him from heaven and said, "Abraham! Abraham!" And he said, "Here I am." ¹²And he said, "Do not stretch out your hand against the boy, and do not do anything to him, for now I know that you fear God, since you have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me." ¹³And Abraham lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, behind him was a ram caught in the thicket by its horns. And Abraham went and took the ram and offered it up as a burnt offering instead of his son. ¹⁴And Abraham called the name of that place "The LORD Will Provide," as it is said to this day, "On the mountain of the LORD it shall be provided." ¹⁵And the angel of the LORD called to Abraham a second time from heaven, ¹⁶and said, "By Myself I have sworn, declares the LORD, because you have done this thing and have not withheld your son, your only son, ¹⁷I will surely bless you, and I will surely multiply your offspring as the stars of the heavens and as the sand that is on the seashore. And your offspring shall possess the gate of his enemies, ¹⁸and in your offspring all the nations of the earth shall be blessed, because you have obeyed My voice." ¹⁹Then Abraham went back to his servants, and together they set out for Beersheba, where Abraham settled. ²⁰And it came to pass after these things that it was told to Abraham, saying, "Behold, Milcah also has borne children to your brother Nahor: ²¹Uz the firstborn, his brother Buz, and Kemuel — the ancestor of Aram — ²²along with Chesed, Hazo, Pildash, Jidlaph, and Bethuel." ²³And Bethuel fathered Rebekah. These eight Milcah bore to Nahor, Abraham's brother. ²⁴And his concubine, whose name was Reumah, also bore Tebah, Gaham, Tahash, and Maacah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'God tested' (ha'Elohim nissah) — the verb nissah means 'to test, to prove, to try.' The narrator tells the reader at the outset what Abraham himself does not know: this is a test, not a final directive. The definite article on Elohim (ha'Elohim, 'the God') is unusual and may emphasize the absolute, sovereign God — the One who has the right to test. The KJV's 'tempt' follows older English usage where 'tempt' could mean 'test' (cf. James 1:13, where God 'tempts no one' to evil). The rendering uses 'tested' to avoid the modern connotation of enticement to sin.
1. 'Here I am' (hineni) — the first of three hineni responses in this chapter (also v. 7 and v. 11). This single Hebrew word — 'behold me' — expresses total availability and readiness. It is the posture of the servant who holds nothing back. Abraham answers before knowing what will be asked. His availability precedes the content of the command.

1. 'After these things' (achar haddevarim ha'elleh) — a transitional formula that creates temporal distance. What 'things'? The birth of Isaac, the expulsion of Ishmael, the treaty with Abimelech. Abraham has settled into a life of relative peace. The test comes not in the midst of crisis but in the calm after it — when Abraham has the most to lose.
2. 'Your son, your only son, whom you love — Isaac' (et-binkha et-yechidkha asher-ahavta et-Yitschaq) — four increasingly specific descriptions narrow the identity with agonizing precision. Each phrase tightens the vise: 'your son' (you have two — which one?), 'your only son' (the unique one, the one through whom the promise flows), 'whom you love' (the first occurrence of the word 'love' [ahavah] in the Bible, and it appears here, in this context), 'Isaac' (the name that means laughter — the laughter now threatened with extinction). The rhetorical effect is devastating: God forces Abraham to feel the full weight of what is being asked before the command is even issued.
2. 'Go forth' (lekh-lekha) — the identical phrase used in Abraham's original call (12:1). The first lekh-lekha sent Abraham away from his past — his father's house and homeland. This second lekh-lekha sends him toward the potential annihilation of his future — the sacrifice of his promised son. The two journeys frame Abraham's life: the first in hope, the second in obedience tested to the breaking point.
2. 'The land of Moriah' (erets hamMoriyyah) — the name Moriah is connected to the root r'-h ('to see') and possibly y-r-' ('to fear/revere'). The land of 'seeing' or 'vision' — the place where God will be seen and will see to it (cf. v. 14). Jewish tradition identifies Moriah with the Temple Mount in Jerusalem (2 Chronicles 3:1), making this the site where Solomon's Temple will stand — the place of sacrifice par excellence.
2. 'Offer him as a burnt offering' (ha'alehu sham le'olah) — the verb he'elah means literally 'to bring up, to cause to ascend.' An olah ('burnt offering') is one that 'goes up' entirely in smoke — it is wholly consumed, with nothing held back. God asks Abraham to hold nothing back: to offer everything, completely, without remainder.
3. 'Rose early in the morning' (vayyashkem babboqer) — the identical phrase used when Abraham sent Hagar away (21:14). Abraham's obedience does not wait for daylight deliberation. The early rising suggests either the urgency of obedience or the impossibility of sleep. He does not argue, negotiate, or intercede — though he interceded passionately for the strangers of Sodom (18:22–33), he is silent when his own son is at stake. This silence is either the deepest faith or the deepest agony, or both.
3. 'He split the wood for the burnt offering' (vayevaqqa' atsei olah) — the verb baqa' ('to split, to cleave') is physical and violent. Abraham prepares the instrument of sacrifice with his own hands. The deliberateness of each action — saddling, gathering, splitting — stretches the narrative across a sequence of agonizing preparations. Every stroke of the axe is an act of obedience.
3. The narrative is marked by extraordinary compression. No emotions are described, no internal dialogue is reported. The text proceeds with relentless forward motion: he rose, he saddled, he took, he split, he arose, he went. The silence of the text mirrors the silence of Abraham.
4. 'On the third day' (bayyom hashelishi) — three days of walking with the knowledge of what awaits at the end. The third day is a recurring biblical motif of resolution and revelation (cf. Exodus 19:11,16; Hosea 6:2; Jonah 1:17). Three days is long enough for the full weight of the decision to settle in, long enough for Abraham to turn back at any point, long enough for hope to war with despair in every step.
4. 'Lifted up his eyes and saw the place from afar' (vayyissa Avraham et-einav vayyar et-hammakom merachok) — the phrase 'lifted up his eyes' signals a moment of perception and recognition. Abraham sees Moriah — the place of testing — in the distance. The word maqom ('place') becomes almost a proper noun; in later Jewish tradition, HaMaqom ('The Place') becomes a name for God Himself. Abraham sees 'the place' — the intersection of divine command and human obedience — from a distance, and he walks toward it.
5. 'We will worship' (venishtachaveh) — the verb hishtachavah means 'to bow down, to prostrate oneself, to worship.' Abraham names what is about to happen as worship. The act of sacrificing his son — the most extreme obedience imaginable — is not destruction but worship. This reframing reveals the heart of the Aqedah: it is fundamentally an act of devotion, not of violence.
5. 'We will return to you' (venashuvah aleikhem) — the verb is first person plural: 'we will return.' Abraham says 'we' — both I and the boy. The author of Hebrews interprets this as faith in resurrection; Abraham believed God could raise Isaac from the dead (Hebrews 11:17–19). In the narrative itself, the plural may express Abraham's trust that God will somehow resolve the contradiction between the command to sacrifice and the promise that 'through Isaac your offspring will be named' (21:12). Or it may be a merciful deception spoken to spare the young men alarm. The ambiguity is profound and deliberately unresolved.
6. 'Laid it upon Isaac his son' (vayyasem al-Yitschaq beno) — Isaac carries the wood upon which he will be offered. The image of the son carrying the instrument of his own sacrifice has reverberated through centuries of interpretation. In Christian typology, Isaac bearing the wood prefigures Christ bearing the cross. In Jewish tradition (the Aqedah), the emphasis falls on Isaac's willing participation — he is no unknowing victim but a partner in the act of obedience.
6. 'The fire and the knife' (et-ha'esh ve'et-hamma'akhelet) — Abraham carries the two elements that Isaac must not handle: fire (danger) and the knife (death). The father bears the burden of lethal agency while the son carries the wood. The distribution of loads between father and son is a portrait of love operating within obedience.
6. 'The two of them walked together' (vayyelekhuv sheneihem yachdav) — this phrase appears twice in the Aqedah narrative (here and in v. 8), forming a literary frame around Isaac's question about the lamb. The word yachdav ('together') carries enormous emotional weight. Father and son walk in unity toward an event that only one of them fully understands. Their togetherness is both beautiful and heartbreaking.

7. 'My father!' 'Here I am, my son' (avi... hineni veni) — the exchange is among the most emotionally charged in all of Scripture. Isaac calls out 'my father' — the intimate, trusting address of a child. Abraham responds with the same hineni he used for God in verse 1, now directed to his son: 'Here I am, my son.' The word beni ('my son') at the end is a dagger of tenderness. Abraham is fully present to both God and his son — answering both with the same total availability, even as their claims tear him apart.
7. 'Where is the lamb for the burnt offering?' (ayyeh hasseh le'olah) — Isaac's question is devastating in its innocence. He has observed the preparations — fire and wood are present — but the essential element is missing: the sacrificial animal. The child reasons logically and asks what any observant youth would ask. The question forces Abraham either to reveal the terrible truth or to answer in faith. Isaac's word seh ('lamb, small livestock') will echo in verse 8 and ultimately in verse 13, where a ram appears in its place.
8. 'God will provide for Himself the lamb' (Elohim yir'eh-lo hasseh le'olah) — the verb yir'eh means both 'He will see' and 'He will provide' (seeing to a need is providing for it). Abraham's answer is simultaneously a statement of faith, a prophecy, and perhaps a gentle evasion. If read as 'God will see to it — the lamb for the burnt offering, my son,' the sentence can be parsed such that 'my son' is in apposition to 'the lamb' — God will provide the lamb for the burnt offering; my son. Whether Abraham intends this double meaning or the narrator constructs it, the ambiguity is breathtaking.
8. 'The two of them walked together' (vayyelekhuv sheneihem yachdav) — the repetition of this phrase from verse 6 is one of the most powerful literary devices in the Hebrew Bible. After Isaac's question and Abraham's heart-rending answer, they still walk together. Nothing has changed outwardly; everything has intensified inwardly. The togetherness now includes Isaac's question hanging in the air between them — answered and unanswered at once.
9. 'He bound Isaac' (vayyaqod et-Yitschaq) — the verb aqad ('to bind') appears only here in the entire Hebrew Bible. This unique word gives the episode its name: the Aqedah, 'the Binding.' The singularity of the word matches the singularity of the event — nothing like this has happened before, and the language itself acknowledges that there is no ordinary word for it. The binding implies that Isaac is now a willing participant, or at least does not resist — Jewish tradition consistently holds that Isaac consented, making the Aqedah a joint act of faith between father and son.
9. 'Built the altar... arranged the wood... bound Isaac... laid him on the altar' — four verbs in rapid succession, each describing a discrete, deliberate action. The narrative achieves its power through restraint: no emotions are reported, no hesitation is described. The focus is entirely on the physical actions, and the silence about Abraham's inner state is more eloquent than any description could be.
9. 'On top of the wood' (mimma'al la'etsim) — Isaac lies upon the very wood he carried up the mountain. The son who bore the burden now becomes the offering. The image is complete: altar, wood, bound son — everything is prepared for the sacrifice.
10. 'Stretched out his hand' (vayyishlach Avraham et-yado) — the verb shalach ('to send forth, to stretch out') describes the deliberate extension of Abraham's hand toward the instrument of death. This is the climactic moment — the point at which obedience reaches its absolute limit. Abraham does not merely contemplate the act; his hand is in motion.
10. 'To slaughter his son' (lishchot et-beno) — the verb shachat ('to slaughter, to kill ritually') is the technical term for sacrificial killing — cutting the throat of the animal to drain its blood. It is used of the Passover lamb (Exodus 12:6) and of all Levitical sacrifices. Abraham intends to perform a proper, ritual slaughter of his son. The word 'his son' (beno) at the end of the verse — without Isaac's name — is almost too intimate to bear.
10. The verse is one of the shortest and most devastating in the Bible. Twelve Hebrew words describe the moment at which Abraham's obedience becomes action. The narrative pauses here at the knife's edge — literally — and the intervention of verse 11 arrives at the last possible instant.
11. 'Abraham! Abraham!' — the double calling of the name signals urgency and intimacy. The same doubling occurs at other pivotal moments: 'Moses, Moses' (Exodus 3:4), 'Samuel, Samuel' (1 Samuel 3:10), 'Saul, Saul' (Acts 9:4). The repetition arrests Abraham's hand at the very moment the knife is poised. One second later and the story changes forever.
11. 'Here I am' (hineni) — the third and final hineni of the chapter. Abraham first said it to God (v. 1), then to his son (v. 7), and now again to the angel of the LORD. His availability has not wavered throughout the ordeal. The man who answered 'Here I am' before knowing the test now answers 'Here I am' at its climax. His posture of surrender is unchanged.
11. 'The angel of the LORD called from heaven' (mal'akh YHWH min-hashamayim) — notably, the covenant name YHWH returns. In verse 1, it was Elohim (the God who tests); now it is YHWH (the God who saves, the covenant-keeper). The shift from Elohim to YHWH at the moment of deliverance is theologically significant: the God of universal sovereignty tests, but the God of covenant faithfulness rescues.
12. 'Do not stretch out your hand against the boy' (al-tishlach yadkha el-hanna'ar) — the same verb shalach from verse 10 is now negated. The hand that was extended toward death is commanded to stop. God's prohibition is absolute: 'do not do anything to him' (ve'al-ta'as lo me'umah). The boy is not to be touched. The test is complete.
12. 'Now I know that you fear God' (attah yadati ki-yere Elohim attah) — the phrase 'now I know' (attah yadati) has generated extensive theological discussion. Does God learn something new? The language of 'knowing' here may be understood as God's acknowledgment of demonstrated reality — the test has made visible what was previously internal. Abraham's faith has been externalized in action, and God declares what that action reveals: Abraham is a God-fearer (yere Elohim) — one who reverences God above all else, including his most precious possession.
12. 'You have not withheld your son, your only son, from Me' (velo chasakta et-binkha et-yechidkha mimmenni) — the verb chasakh ('to withhold, to spare, to hold back') echoes the language of verse 2. God asked Abraham to give; Abraham did not withhold. The repeated phrase 'your son, your only son' (binkha et-yechidkha) circles back to the opening command, creating a frame: what God demanded in verse 2, Abraham surrendered in verse 12. Paul echoes this language in Romans 8:32: God 'did not spare His own Son.'

13. 'Behold, a ram caught in the thicket by its horns' (vehinneah-ayil achar ne'echaz basevakh beqarnav) — the ram appears suddenly, introduced by hinneh ('behold') — the narrative marker of surprise and revelation. It is caught (ne'echaz, from achaz, 'to seize, to grasp') in the sevakh (a dense thicket). The ram is held there — trapped, available, provided. Isaac asked about a lamb (seh); God provides a ram (ayil) — a mature, horned animal, suitable for sacrifice. God provides, but on His own terms.
13. 'Instead of his son' (tachat beno) — the preposition tachat ('instead of, in place of, under') establishes the principle of substitutionary sacrifice. The ram dies in Isaac's place. This single word — tachat — carries the weight of an entire theology: one life given in exchange for another. The concept will be elaborated in the Levitical sacrificial system and finds its ultimate expression, in Christian theology, in the cross. In the narrative, it is the hinge on which the entire drama turns: Isaac lives because the ram dies.
13. 'Abraham lifted up his eyes and looked' (vayyissa Avraham et-einav vayyar) — the same phrase from verse 4, where Abraham saw the place from afar. Now he sees the provision up close. The God who brought him to the place of testing is the same God who provides at the place of testing. Seeing — the root r-'-h that runs through the entire chapter — reaches its climax: Abraham sees the ram that God has 'seen to.'
14. 'The LORD Will Provide' (YHWH Yir'eh) — Abraham names the place with the same verb he used in his answer to Isaac (v. 8): 'God will see to it.' Now, with the ram offered and Isaac alive, the prophetic statement becomes a memorial name. YHWH Yir'eh means both 'the LORD will see' and 'the LORD will provide' — seeing and providing are one divine act. The name encapsulates the entire theology of the Aqedah: God sees the need, God sees the faith, and God provides the answer.
14. 'On the mountain of the LORD it shall be provided/seen' (behar YHWH yera'eh) — the verb yera'eh is the niphal (passive) of ra'ah: 'it will be seen' or 'He will be seen' or 'it will be provided.' The ambiguity is deliberate and fruitful. On God's mountain, provision appears; on God's mountain, God Himself is seen. The saying 'to this day' (hayyom) indicates that this proverb persisted in Israel as a testimony to divine faithfulness at the very place where the Temple would eventually stand (2 Chronicles 3:1).
14. The entire chapter has been structured around the verb ra'ah ('to see'): Abraham 'sees' the place (v. 4), God 'will see to' the lamb (v. 8), Abraham 'sees' the ram (v. 13), and now the place is named 'the LORD sees/provides.' Vision — both human and divine — is the thematic thread that binds the narrative.
15. 'A second time' (shenit) — the angel's first call (v. 11) stopped the sacrifice; this second call delivers the blessing. The first intervention was urgent — 'Do not stretch out your hand!' The second is expansive — a reaffirmation and amplification of the covenant promises. The double calling mirrors the structure of the entire narrative: first the test, then the reward; first the crisis, then the covenant.
16. 'By Myself I have sworn' (bi nishba'ti ne'um-YHWH) — God swears by Himself because there is no one greater by whom to swear (cf. Hebrews 6:13–14). This is the only time in the Abraham narrative that God takes an oath. The promises of chapters 12, 15, and 17 were declarations; this is a sworn oath — the highest possible form of divine commitment. God binds Himself irrevocably to the promises that follow.
16. 'Declares the LORD' (ne'um-YHWH) — the prophetic formula ne'um, typically rendered 'oracle of' or 'declares,' marks this as a formal divine pronouncement. Its use here — unique in Genesis — elevates the speech to the status of prophetic oracle. What follows is not a conversation but a solemn decree.
16. 'Because you have done this thing and have not withheld your son, your only son' — the language of verse 12 is repeated almost verbatim, reinforcing the basis of the oath: Abraham's obedience. The covenant promises are now grounded not only in God's sovereign choice but in Abraham's demonstrated faith. Grace and obedience converge at Moriah.
17. 'I will surely bless you' (barekh avarekekha) — the infinitive absolute construction (barekh + finite verb avarekh) creates the strongest possible emphasis in Hebrew: 'blessing, I will bless you' — an unbreakable, intensified promise. The same construction governs 'multiplying, I will multiply' (harbah arbeh). Double emphasis for double blessing.
17. 'As the stars of the heavens and as the sand on the seashore' — two images of innumerability, one celestial and one terrestrial. The stars (first promised in 15:5) represent the exalted, heavenly dimension of Abraham's legacy; the sand represents its earthly, tangible abundance. Together they encompass the totality of creation — heaven and earth united in the scope of the promise.
17. 'Your offspring shall possess the gate of his enemies' (veyirash zar'akha et sha'ar oyeav) — the 'gate' of a city was its point of defense, its legal center, and its seat of power. To 'possess the gate' means to conquer and control — to exercise dominion over those who oppose. This is a promise of victory, not merely survival. Abraham's seed will not be marginal but dominant.
18. 'In your offspring all the nations of the earth shall be blessed' (vehitbarakhu bezar'akha kol goyei ha'arets) — the hitpa'el form of barakh can mean 'shall bless themselves' (reflexive — invoking Abraham's descendants as a standard of blessing) or 'shall be blessed' (passive — receiving blessing through Abraham's line). Both meanings are theologically rich. The promise, first given in 12:3, is now restated in its most expansive form. The blessing is not for Israel alone but for all nations (kol goyei ha'arets). The particular story of one man on one mountain opens into a universal horizon.
18. 'Because you have obeyed My voice' (eqev asher shama'ta beqoli) — the word eqev ('because, as a consequence of, on account of') establishes a direct link between Abraham's obedience and the universal blessing. The verb shama' ('to hear, to obey') — the same root as Ishmael's name and the Shema — closes the narrative circle. Abraham heard God's voice, and he obeyed. The consequence of that obedience extends to every nation on earth.

18. This verse is the theological summit of the Aqedah and arguably of the entire Abrahamic narrative. The particular obedience of one man in one impossible test becomes the channel through which blessing flows to all humanity. The covenant is simultaneously narrower (confirmed by the most extreme test) and wider (extending to all nations) than ever before.
19. 'Abraham returned to his young men' (vayyashav Avraham el-ne'arav) — the verb shuv ('to return') fulfills the promise of verse 5: 'we will return to you.' Abraham does return — and notably, Isaac is not mentioned. The silence about Isaac's return has puzzled interpreters. In the midrash, some traditions say Isaac went to study at the academy of Shem; the narrative simply leaves him unmentioned, perhaps because the focus remains tightly on Abraham's faith journey, which began and ends at Beersheba.
19. 'They went together' (vayyelekhuv yachdav) — the word yachdav ('together') appears for the third time in the chapter (cf. vv. 6, 8), but now the 'together' has shifted from father and son to Abraham and his servants. The community of the journey reforms around the patriarch, and life resumes.
19. 'Abraham dwelt at Beersheba' — the narrative returns to its starting point (21:33–34). The drama of Moriah is over; Abraham resumes the life of a sojourner in the Negev. The most extraordinary event of his life yields to the most ordinary continuation. Faith returns to daily life.
20. 'After these things' (acharei haddevarim ha'elleh) — the same transitional formula that opened the chapter (v. 1). Its repetition signals a shift from the Aqedah to a new narrative unit. The genealogical note that follows seems mundane after the heights of Moriah, but it serves a vital narrative function: it introduces Rebekah, Isaac's future wife.
20. 'Milcah also has borne children' — the word 'also' (gam) draws a parallel with Sarah: just as Sarah bore a son miraculously, so Milcah has been fruitful in the family of Nahor. God's blessing of fertility extends beyond Abraham's immediate household. The parallel between the two branches of Terah's family sets the stage for the union of Isaac and Rebekah in chapter 24.
21. 'Uz' (Uts) — the firstborn of Nahor. The land of Uz is later identified as the homeland of Job (Job 1:1), possibly connecting this genealogy to the wisdom tradition. 'Buz' his brother appears in Jeremiah 25:23 alongside Dedan and Tema, suggesting connections to Arabian peoples. 'Kemuel the father of Aram' links this line to the Aramaeans, the people from whom Rebekah will come.
21. The list of Nahor's twelve sons (eight by Milcah, vv. 21–23, and four by his concubine, v. 24) parallels the twelve sons of Ishmael (25:13–16) and the twelve sons of Jacob (35:22–26). The number twelve functions as a number of tribal completeness across multiple lineages.
22. 'Chesed' (Kesed) — possibly the ancestor of the Chaldeans (Kasdim), the people of Ur from which Abraham originally came. If so, the genealogy traces the origin of the Chaldean nation to Abraham's own extended family. 'Bethuel' (Betu'el) is the most significant name in this list: he is the father of Rebekah (v. 23) and Laban, and thus the link between the Nahor branch and Isaac's future marriage.
23. 'Bethuel fathered Rebekah' (uVtu'el yalad et-Rivqah) — the seemingly incidental mention of Rebekah (Rivqah) is the theological payoff of the entire genealogy. The narrator, having brought the Isaac story to its crisis and resolution on Mount Moriah, now quietly introduces the woman who will become Isaac's wife and the mother of Jacob. The name Rivqah may be related to a root meaning 'to tie, to bind' or 'to fatten (cattle)' — connecting either to the binding motif of the Aqedah or to the pastoral wealth of the family.
23. 'These eight Milcah bore to Nahor' — the summary counts eight sons by Milcah, the primary wife. Four additional sons by the concubine Reumah will follow in verse 24, totaling twelve — the number of tribal completeness. The genealogy ensures the reader knows that God's work of building families and nations extends beyond the covenant line.
24. 'His concubine, whose name was Reumah' (ufilagsho ushemah Re'umah) — the pilegish ('concubine') was a secondary wife with lower legal status. Reumah's four sons, combined with Milcah's eight, bring Nahor's total to twelve — paralleling the twelve sons of Ishmael and foreshadowing the twelve sons of Jacob. The pattern of twelve recurs throughout Genesis as a marker of tribal wholeness.
24. 'Maacah' (Ma'akhah) — this name appears later as a region east of the Sea of Galilee and as a personal name borne by several biblical figures, including the mother of King Asa. The genealogy thus weaves connections between the patriarchal period and later Israelite geography and history.
24. The chapter ends not with the drama of Moriah but with a list of names — the quiet work of God building families, preparing the next generation, and setting the stage for the continuation of the promise. After the mountaintop, ordinary life resumes, and God works in genealogies as surely as in theophanies.

23

Summary: *Sarah dies at 127 years in Hebron. Abraham mourns her, then negotiates with the Hittites to purchase the cave of Machpelah as a burial site. Ephron offers it freely, but Abraham insists on paying full price — 400 shekels of silver. He buries Sarah in the cave, securing the first piece of the promised land through legal purchase.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the first land Abraham owns in Canaan — acquired not by conquest or divine miracle but by commercial transaction, complete with witnesses and legal formalities. The negotiations follow ancient Near Eastern convention: public offers of generosity that both parties understand require full payment. Abraham calls himself a *ger vetoshav* ('stranger and sojourner,' v. 4) — his self-description captures the patriarchal paradox of living in the promised land without possessing it. The meticulous legal detail ensures the purchase is uncontested.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew *achuzzah* ('possession,' v. 4) is a legal term for permanent property — real estate held as inheritance. It carries more weight than English 'property' or 'possession,' denoting a stake in the land that endures across generations. The elaborate courtesy of the negotiation (vv. 5-16) follows conventions that English readers may mistake for genuine offers of free land; the cultural context is essential and we noted it.*

Connections: *Machpelah becomes the patriarchal family tomb: Abraham (25:9), Isaac and Rebekah (49:31), Jacob and Leah (49:31; 50:13) are all buried here. Abraham's status as a *ger* ('resident alien') anticipates Israel's self-understanding as 'strangers and sojourners' on God's land (Leviticus 25:23; 1 Chronicles 29:15). The site remains a place of significance and contested reverence to this day.*

¹And the life of Sarah was one hundred years and twenty years and seven years — the years of the life of Sarah. ²Sarah died at Kiriath-arba (now known as Hebron) in the land of Canaan. Abraham went in to grieve over Sarah and to weep for her. ³Then Abraham got up from beside his dead wife and addressed the Hittites, saying, ⁴"I am a stranger and a sojourner among you. Give me a possession of a burial site among you, that I may bury my dead from before me." ⁵And the sons of Heth answered Abraham, saying to him, ⁶"Hear us, my lord: you are a prince of God among us. In the choicest of our tombs bury your dead. None of us will withhold his tomb from you, to keep you from burying your dead." ⁷And Abraham rose and bowed himself to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth. ⁸And he spoke with them, saying, "If it is your desire that I should bury my dead from before me, hear me and intercede for me with Ephron the son of Zohar, ⁹that he may give me the cave of Machpelah, which belongs to him, which is at the edge of his field. For the full price let him give it to me in your presence as a possession for a burial site." ¹⁰Now Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth. And Ephron the Hittite answered Abraham in the hearing of the sons of Heth, before all who went in at the gate of his city, saying, ¹¹"No, my lord, hear me: the field I give to you, and the cave that is in it — to you I give it. In the presence of the sons of my people I give it to you. Bury your dead." ¹²Abraham prostrated himself before the local inhabitants. ¹³And he spoke to Ephron in the hearing of the people of the land, saying, "But if you would only hear me: I will give the price of the field. Take it from me, and I will bury my dead there." ¹⁴Ephron responded to Abraham in their hearing, ¹⁵"My lord, hear me: a piece of land worth four hundred shekels of silver — what is that between me and you? Bury your dead." ¹⁶And Abraham listened to Ephron, and Abraham weighed out to Ephron the silver that he had named in the hearing of the sons of Heth — four hundred shekels of silver, current among the merchants. ¹⁷So the field of Ephron in Machpelah, which is before Mamre — the field and the cave that is in it, and all the trees that are in the field, within all its borders all around — was established ¹⁸as Abraham's possession, in the presence of the sons of Heth, before all who went in at the gate of his city. ¹⁹Following this, Abraham laid Sarah his wife to rest in the cave at the field of Machpelah, facing Mamre (that is, Hebron) in the land of Canaan. ²⁰And the field and the cave that is in it were established to Abraham as a possession for a burial site, from the sons of Heth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'The years of the life of Sarah' (shenei chayyei Sarah) — the closing phrase repeats and summarizes the opening, a solemn literary envelope. The Hebrew breaks the number into three segments — 'one hundred years and twenty years and seven years' — with the word shanah ('year') repeated after each unit, which is unusual. The Midrash (Genesis Rabbah 58:1) famously interprets this: at one hundred she was like twenty in beauty, and at twenty she was like seven in sinlessness. Whether or not one follows the homiletical reading, the structure is deliberate and dignified, marking Sarah as the only woman in the Torah whose age at death is recorded.
1. Sarah is 127 years old. Since she was 90 when Isaac was born (17:17), Isaac is now 37. This chronological marker places the Akedah (chapter 22) shortly before Sarah's death in the narrative sequence, though the text does not explicitly connect the two events.
2. 'To mourn for Sarah and to weep for her' (lispod leSarah velibkotah) — the two verbs represent distinct acts: saphad is the formal public lamentation (eulogy, mourning rites), while bakhah is the private, personal weeping. Abraham performs both: the public duty and the private grief. The order — formal mourning first, then weeping — may suggest that Abraham fulfilled the communal obligation before giving way to personal sorrow.
2. 'Kiriath-arba, that is, Hebron' (Qiryat Arba hi Chevron) — the narrator provides the later name for readers who would know the city as Hebron. Kiriath-arba means 'city of four' (or 'city of Arba'), possibly referring to a founder or to four associated settlements. Hebron, from the root ch-b-r ('to join, associate'), becomes one of the most significant sites in patriarchal history and later a Levitical city of refuge.
2. 'Abraham came' (vayyavo Avraham) — the verb implies Abraham was not present when Sarah died. He 'came' to her, suggesting he may have been at Beer-sheba (cf. 22:19) while Sarah remained at Hebron. This detail, understated in the narrative, adds pathos: Abraham arrives to find his wife already gone.
3. 'Rose up from before his dead' (vayyaqom me'al penei meto) — the phrase 'his dead' (meto) is stark and tender. Sarah is now 'his dead' — the one who belongs to him even in death. Abraham rises from mourning to attend to the practical necessity of burial, a transition from grief to purposeful action. The verb qum ('to rise') marks a deliberate shift.
3. 'The sons of Heth' (benei-Chet) — the Hittites, descendants of Heth son of Canaan (10:15). These are the local inhabitants of Hebron with whom Abraham must negotiate. The entire negotiation that follows is conducted with remarkable formality and mutual courtesy, reflecting Ancient Near Eastern diplomatic conventions.
4. 'A stranger and a sojourner' (ger vetoshav) — Abraham identifies himself with two terms: ger, a resident alien with some recognized status but no land rights, and toshav, a temporary dweller or settler. Together they express Abraham's paradoxical position: he lives among these people, has wealth and influence, yet owns no land. The man to whom God promised 'all this land' (13:15) must negotiate to purchase a burial plot. The theological irony is profound — the heir of the promise is still a landless alien.
4. 'A possession of a burial site' (achuzzat-qever) — the word achuzzah means a permanent holding, a secured property. Abraham does not ask for a temporary arrangement; he seeks permanent, legally binding ownership. This will become the first piece of the promised land that Abraham actually possesses — and it is acquired not for living but for dying.
5. This verse introduces the Hittites' formal response to Abraham's request. The public nature of this exchange — conducted at the city gate before witnesses — is essential to the legal validity of any transaction that follows. Ancient Near Eastern land transfers required public witnesses to be binding.
6. 'A prince of God' (nesi Elohim) — the Hittites bestow an extraordinary title on Abraham. Nasi means 'prince, chief, exalted one,' and Elohim here functions as a superlative: 'a prince of God' meaning 'a mighty prince,' 'a divinely great prince,' or possibly 'a prince before God.' The KJV's 'mighty prince' captures the superlative sense; the rendering retains the literal form to preserve the theological resonance. The Hittites recognize Abraham's stature even though he calls himself a mere ger.
6. 'In the choicest of our tombs' (bemivchar qevareinu) — mivchar means 'the best, the choicest, the select.' The Hittites offer Abraham premier burial sites. This appears generous, but in the context of ANE negotiation, it may be a polite deflection — offering use of existing tombs rather than selling land outright. Abraham, however, wants permanent ownership, not a favor.
7. 'Bowed himself' (vayyishtachu) — the verb hishtachavah means to prostrate oneself, to bow low in respect. Abraham's bow is a gesture of honor and diplomatic courtesy, not worship. It is part of the formal protocol of negotiation. Despite being called 'a prince of God,' Abraham shows deference to the local community — a model of gracious humility in social dealings.
7. 'The people of the land' (am ha'arets) — here the phrase simply means the local inhabitants, the landed citizens. In later biblical and rabbinic usage, am ha'arets takes on different connotations, but here it designates those with legal standing to transact property.
8. 'If it is your desire' (im yesh et-nafshekhem) — literally, 'if it is with your soul/desire.' The word nephesh here means 'will, desire, inclination.' Abraham frames his request as contingent on their goodwill, a masterstroke of diplomatic rhetoric. He does not presume; he asks whether they are truly willing.
8. 'Intercede for me with Ephron' (pig'u-li be'Efron) — the verb paga' means 'to meet, to encounter, to intercede.' Abraham asks the community to act as intermediaries in approaching Ephron specifically. He has a particular property in mind and uses the community as leverage, ensuring the transaction has public sanction. This is not random; Abraham knows exactly what he wants.

9. 'The cave of Machpelah' (me'arat hammakhpelah) — the name Machpelah likely derives from the root k-p-l meaning 'to double,' suggesting either a double cave (two chambers), a cave on a doubled/folded piece of land, or a cave at the doubling of the terrain. This cave becomes the most important burial site in the patriarchal narrative: Sarah, Abraham, Isaac, Rebekah, Jacob, and Leah will all be buried here (49:29–31).
9. 'For the full price' (bekesef male) — literally, 'for full silver.' Abraham insists on paying the complete, fair market value. He will accept no discount or gift. This insistence on full payment ensures the transaction is legally unimpeachable — no one can later claim the property was merely lent, gifted conditionally, or that Abraham is indebted. The phrase reveals Abraham's determination to establish permanent, undisputed ownership.
9. 'In your presence' (betokhekem) — before witnesses. Abraham demands public transparency. The transaction must be witnessed by the community to have full legal force.
10. 'Sitting among the sons of Heth' (yoshev betokh benei-Chet) — Ephron is present at the gate, among the assembled citizens. He is not summoned from elsewhere; he is already there. Whether this is coincidence or divine providence, the narrative does not say, but Ephron's presence means the negotiation can proceed immediately and publicly.
10. 'All who went in at the gate of his city' (lekhol ba'ei sha'ar iro) — the city gate was the place of public assembly, legal proceedings, and commercial transactions in the ancient Near East. Those who 'go in at the gate' are the adult male citizens with legal standing. The repeated emphasis on public witnesses (vv. 10, 13, 16, 18) underscores the legal formality of the transaction.
11. Ephron's offer is rhetorically extravagant — he offers not just the cave but the entire field, and he repeats 'I give it' (natatti) three times. In Ancient Near Eastern negotiation, such public offers of generosity were expected as the opening position. They were not meant to be accepted at face value; rather, they elevated the offerer's social standing while initiating a bargaining process. The real price is yet to come.
11. 'The field I give to you, and the cave that is in it' — Ephron expands the transaction from the cave alone (which Abraham requested) to the cave plus the field. This seemingly generous addition may have practical and fiscal implications: owning the field could entail tax or feudal obligations that Ephron would be happy to transfer. By including the field, Ephron may be unburdening himself while appearing magnanimous.
12. Abraham bows again — a second prostration (cf. v. 7). This repeated gesture of deference acknowledges the community's role as witnesses and shows respect for Ephron's offer, even though Abraham intends to decline the gift and insist on paying. The bow maintains diplomatic decorum as the negotiation continues.
13. 'I will give the price of the field' (natatti kesef hassadeh) — Abraham counters Ephron's offer of a gift with an insistence on payment. The verb natatti ('I give/have given') mirrors Ephron's threefold natatti in v. 11 — but Abraham's 'giving' is of silver, not land. The verbal symmetry creates a polite but firm rebuttal: 'You offer to give; I insist on giving — money.'
13. 'Take it from me' (qach mimmenni) — the imperative qach ('take!') expresses urgency and determination. Abraham is not merely willing to pay; he positively insists that Ephron accept payment. This is a man who understands that a gift with strings attached is not true ownership.
14. This brief transitional verse introduces Ephron's counter-offer. The negotiation has moved through its expected stages: Abraham's initial request (v. 4), the community's gracious response (vv. 5–6), Abraham's specific request for Machpelah (vv. 7–9), Ephron's offer of a gift (vv. 10–11), Abraham's insistence on paying (vv. 12–13), and now the price will be named.
15. 'Four hundred shekels of silver' (arba me'ot sheqel-kesef) — Ephron names his price while pretending it is trivial: 'What is that between me and you?' The price, however, is extraordinarily high. For comparison, Jeremiah later bought a field at Anathoth for 17 shekels (Jeremiah 32:9), David bought the threshing floor of Araunah for 50 shekels (2 Samuel 24:24), and Omri purchased the hill of Samaria for two talents (about 6,000 shekels, but for a much larger parcel — 1 Kings 16:24). Four hundred shekels for a field with a cave is exorbitant. Ephron's affected nonchalance ('What is that between friends?') masks a shrewd asking price.
15. The rhetorical strategy is classic ANE bargaining: the extravagant offer of a gift (v. 11) was never truly meant to be accepted; it served to place Ephron in a position of magnanimity, from which he now names a very high price that Abraham can hardly refuse without appearing ungrateful.
16. 'Abraham listened to Ephron' (vayyishma Avraham el-Efron) — Abraham accepts the price without haggling. This is remarkable. The expected pattern in ANE negotiation would include a counter-offer; Abraham's immediate acceptance signals that securing the property matters more to him than the price. He will not risk losing Machpelah over a few shekels.
16. 'Weighed out' (vayyishqol) — the verb shaqal ('to weigh') is the root of sheqel. Before coinage, silver was weighed on balance scales. The transaction is precise, public, and formal.
16. 'Current among the merchants' (over lassoher) — literally, 'passing to/for the merchant.' This phrase indicates silver of standard weight and purity, acceptable in commercial trade — not debased or underweight. Abraham pays in universally recognized currency, ensuring no dispute about the adequacy of payment.
17. 'Was established' (vayyaqom) — the verb qum here means 'to arise, to stand, to be established/confirmed.' The field 'arose' — that is, it was legally confirmed, formally transferred. This is legal language indicating the completion of the transaction.
17. The detailed inventory — 'the field and the cave that is in it, and all the trees that are in the field, within all its borders all around' — reads like a property deed. The specificity mirrors Ancient Near Eastern real estate documents recovered from sites like Nuzi and Alalakh, which similarly enumerate the field, structures, trees, and boundaries. The biblical text preserves the legal precision of the original transaction.

- 18.** 'As Abraham's possession' (le'Avraham lemiqnah) — the word miqnah means 'a purchase, an acquisition, a possession obtained by buying.' The property is now formally Abraham's — not borrowed, not gifted, not lent, but purchased and legally secured.
- 18.** 'In the presence of the sons of Heth, before all who went in at the gate of his city' — the final legal formula confirms the transaction before the full assembly of witnesses. Verses 17–18 together function as the deed of sale, formally recording the transfer. This is the first legal land acquisition in the Bible and the first tangible foothold of the Abrahamic promise in the land of Canaan.
- 19.** 'Abraham buried Sarah his wife' — the tenderness of this simple statement should not be overlooked. After the elaborate negotiation, the narrative returns to its emotional core: a husband burying his wife. The legal transaction was not an end in itself but a means to this deeply personal act of love and honor.
- 19.** 'The cave of the field of Machpelah, before Mamre' — the full designation combines cave, field, and landmark (Mamre, where Abraham had long dwelt and where the LORD appeared to him in chapter 18). Sarah is buried near the place of divine encounter — the oaks of Mamre where three visitors announced Isaac's birth.
- 20.** 'Were established to Abraham as a possession for a burial site, from the sons of Heth' — the chapter ends as it began, with legal precision. The verb qum ('to be established') reaffirms the permanence of the transfer. The inclusion of 'from the sons of Heth' names the source of the property and the legal authority behind the transfer.
- 20.** This closing verse is a summary statement that seals the chapter's central accomplishment: Abraham now owns land in Canaan. It is a burial plot — a place for death, not for building a city — yet it represents the first concrete fulfillment of the land promise. The entire promised land is anticipated in this single field. What begins as a grave becomes a claim, and what begins as mourning becomes a foundation for the future. Abraham, Isaac, Rebekah, Jacob, and Leah will all be gathered here (49:29–31; 50:13).

24

Summary: *Abraham sends his senior servant to Mesopotamia to find a wife for Isaac from among his kinfolk. The servant prays for a sign at the well and meets Rebekah, who fulfills it precisely. After recounting the story to her family, he brings her back. Rebekah sees Isaac, veils herself, and becomes his wife. Isaac loves her and is comforted after his mother's death.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *At 67 verses, this is the longest chapter in Genesis and the Bible's most detailed courtship narrative. The servant's prayer — 'let her be the one' (v. 14) — is answered before he finishes praying (v. 15), demonstrating a theology of divine guidance operating through ordinary human events. The word chesed ('faithful love/steadfast love') anchors the theology: the servant asks for it (v. 12), recognizes it (v. 27), and credits God with it (v. 49). The story is told twice — once in narrative and once in the servant's retelling — with subtle variations that show him shaping the account for his audience.*

Translation Friction: *The oath-taking gesture of placing a hand 'under the thigh' (v. 2) is a euphemism whose precise meaning has been debated — possibly touching the procreative organ, connecting the oath to the promises of offspring. We rendered it literally and noted the cultural context. The servant's word chesed (v. 12) resists any single English equivalent; we used 'faithful love' here, noting its range of covenant loyalty, kindness, and gracious commitment.*

Connections: *The well-meeting scene establishes a type-scene that recurs with Jacob and Rachel (29:1-12) and Moses and Zipporah (Exodus 2:15-21). Rebekah's family blessing — 'may your offspring possess the gate of those who hate them' (24:60) — echoes God's blessing to Abraham (22:17). Isaac's dwelling at Beer-lahai-roi (24:62) connects him to Hagar's well of divine seeing (16:14).*

¹And Abraham was old, advanced in days, and the LORD had blessed Abraham in all things. ²And Abraham said to his servant, the elder of his household, who ruled over all that he had, "Put your hand under my thigh. ³I want you to take an oath by the LORD, the God of heaven and earth, that you will not select a wife for my son from among the Canaanite women, in whose land I am living. ⁴But to my land and to my kindred you shall go, and you shall take a wife for my son, for Isaac." ⁵And the servant said to him, "Perhaps the woman will not be willing to follow me to this land. Must I then bring your son back to the land from which you came?" ⁶And Abraham said to him, "Take care that you do not bring my son back there. ⁷The LORD, the God of heaven, who took me from my father's house and from the land of my birth, and who spoke to me and

who swore to me, saying, 'To your offspring I will give this land' — He will send His angel before you, and you shall take a wife for my son from there. ⁸And if the woman is not willing to follow you, then you shall be free from this oath of mine. Only do not bring my son back there." ⁹So the servant placed his hand beneath Abraham his master's thigh and took the oath regarding this commitment. ¹⁰And the servant took ten camels from the camels of his master and departed, with all manner of good things from his master in his hand. And he arose and went to Aram-naharaim, to the city of Nahor. ¹¹And he made the camels kneel down outside the city by the well of water, at evening time, the time when the women go out to draw water. ¹²And he said, "O LORD, God of my master Abraham, please grant me success today, and show faithful love to my master Abraham. ¹³Behold, I am standing by the spring of water, and the daughters of the men of the city are coming out to draw water. ¹⁴Let it be that the young woman to whom I say, 'Please lower your jar that I may drink,' and she says, 'Drink, and I will water your camels also' — let her be the one whom You have appointed for Your servant Isaac. And by this I shall know that You have shown steadfast love to my master." ¹⁵Even before he had finished praying, Rebekah appeared — the daughter of Bethuel, who was the son of Milcah the wife of Abraham's brother Nahor — carrying her jar on her shoulder. ¹⁶And the young woman was very beautiful in appearance, a virgin — no man had known her. And she went down to the spring and filled her jar and came up. ¹⁷And the servant ran to meet her and said, "Please let me drink a little water from your jar." ¹⁸And she said, "Drink, my lord." And she quickly lowered her jar upon her hand and gave him a drink. ¹⁹And when she had finished giving him a drink, she said, "I will draw water for your camels also, until they have finished drinking." ²⁰And she quickly emptied her jar into the trough and ran again to the well to draw, and she drew water for all his camels. ²¹And the man gazed at her in silence, wondering whether the LORD had made his journey successful or not. ²²And it came to pass, when the camels had finished drinking, that the man took a gold ring, a half-shekel in weight, and two bracelets for her hands, ten shekels of gold in weight, ²³and said, "Whose daughter are you? Please tell me — is there room in your father's house for us to lodge?" ²⁴She answered, "I am Bethuel's daughter — Bethuel the son of Milcah, whom Milcah bore to Nahor." ²⁵And she said to him, "We have both straw and feed in abundance, and also room to lodge." ²⁶The servant knelt down and offered worship to the LORD. ²⁷And he said, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of my master Abraham, who has not forsaken His steadfast love and His faithfulness toward my master. As for me, the LORD has led me on the way to the house of my master's kinsmen." ²⁸And the young woman ran and told her mother's household about these things. ²⁹Now Rebekah had a brother, and his name was Laban. And Laban ran out to the man, to the spring. ³⁰And it came to pass, when he saw the ring and the bracelets on his sister's hands, and when he heard the words of Rebekah his sister, saying, "Thus the man spoke to me" — that he went out to the man, and behold, he was standing by the camels at the spring. ³¹And he said, "Come in, O blessed of the LORD! Why do you stand outside? For I have prepared the house, and a place for the camels." ³²And the man came into the house. And he ungirded the camels and gave straw and feed to the camels, and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who were with him. ³³And food was set before him to eat, but he said, "I will not eat until I have spoken my words." And he said, "Speak." ³⁴He began, "I serve Abraham. ³⁵And the LORD has blessed my master greatly, and he has become great. He has given him flocks and herds, silver and gold, male servants and female servants, camels and donkeys. ³⁶And Sarah, my master's wife, bore a son to my master after she had grown old. And he has given him all that he has. ³⁷My master required an oath from me: 'You must not choose a wife for my son from among the Canaanite women in this land where I reside. ³⁸But to my father's house you shall go, and to my family, and take a wife for my son.' ³⁹And I said to my master, 'Perhaps the woman will not follow me.' ⁴⁰And he said to me, 'The LORD, before whom I have walked, will send His angel with you and prosper your way. And you shall take a wife for my son from my family and from my father's house. ⁴¹Then you shall be free from my oath, when you come to my family. And if they will not give her to you, then you shall be free from my oath.' ⁴²And I came today to the spring, and I said, 'O LORD, God of my master Abraham, if You are indeed prospering my way on which I am going — ⁴³behold, I am standing by the spring of water. Let it be that the young woman who comes out to draw water, to whom I say, "Please give me a little water from your jar to drink," ⁴⁴and she says to me, "Drink, and I will draw water for your camels also" — let her be the woman whom the LORD has appointed for my master's son.' ⁴⁵Before I had finished speaking in my heart, behold, Rebekah came out with her jar on her shoulder, and she went down to the spring and drew water. And I said to her, 'Please give me a drink.' ⁴⁶And she quickly lowered her jar from her

shoulder and said, 'Drink, and I will water your camels also.' So I drank, and she watered the camels also. ⁴⁷And I asked her and said, 'Whose daughter are you?' And she said, 'The daughter of Bethuel the son of Nahor, whom Milcah bore to him.' And I put the ring on her nose and the bracelets on her hands. ⁴⁸And I bowed my head and worshipped the LORD, and I blessed the LORD, the God of my master Abraham, who had led me in the way of truth to take the daughter of my master's brother for his son. ⁴⁹And now, if you will deal with steadfast love and faithfulness toward my master, tell me. And if not, tell me, that I may turn to the right or to the left." ⁵⁰And Laban and Bethuel answered and said, "The thing has come from the LORD. We cannot speak to you bad or good. ⁵¹Behold, Rebekah is before you. Take her and go, and let her be a wife to your master's son, as the LORD has spoken." ⁵²And it came to pass, when Abraham's servant heard their words, that he bowed himself to the ground before the LORD. ⁵³And the servant brought out articles of silver and articles of gold and garments, and gave them to Rebekah. And he gave precious things to her brother and to her mother. ⁵⁴And they ate and drank, he and the men who were with him, and they spent the night. And they rose in the morning, and he said, "Send me away to my master." ⁵⁵And her brother and her mother said, "Let the young woman remain with us a few days, at least ten. After that she may go." ⁵⁶And he said to them, "Do not delay me, since the LORD has prospered my way. Send me away that I may go to my master." ⁵⁷And they said, "Let us call the young woman and ask her." ⁵⁸So they summoned Rebekah and asked her, "Are you willing to go with this man?" She replied, "I am willing." ⁵⁹They sent off their sister Rebekah along with her nursemaid, Abraham's servant, and his attendants. ⁶⁰And they blessed Rebekah and said to her, "Our sister, may you become thousands of ten thousands, and may your offspring possess the gate of those who hate them." ⁶¹And Rebekah arose, and her young women, and they rode upon the camels and followed the man. So the servant took Rebekah and departed. ⁶²Now Isaac had come from the region of Beer-lahai-roi, for he was dwelling in the land of the Negev. ⁶³And Isaac went out to meditate in the field toward evening. And he lifted up his eyes and looked, and behold, camels were coming. ⁶⁴And Rebekah lifted up her eyes, and when she saw Isaac, she dismounted from the camel. ⁶⁵And she said to the servant, "Who is this man walking in the field to meet us?" And the servant said, "He is my master." So she took her veil and covered herself. ⁶⁶The servant then recounted to Isaac everything that had taken place. ⁶⁷And Isaac brought her into the tent of Sarah his mother. And he took Rebekah, and she became his wife, and he loved her. And Isaac was comforted after his mother's death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Advanced in days' (ba bayyamim) — literally, 'he had come into the days.' The idiom conveys not merely old age but the fullness of a long life experienced. Abraham has 'entered into' his days — he has lived them fully. He is approximately 140 years old at this point (Sarah died at 127 when Abraham was 137, and some time has passed).
1. 'The LORD had blessed Abraham in all things' (vaYHWH berakh et-Avraham bakkol) — this sweeping summary sets the stage for Abraham's final major act: securing a wife for Isaac. The word bakkol ('in all, in everything') encompasses wealth, descendants, land, and divine favor. Yet one critical matter remains: Isaac is unmarried, and the covenant line requires continuation.
2. 'The elder of his household, who ruled over all that he had' — the servant is unnamed here, though tradition identifies him as Eliezer of Damascus (15:2). He is Abraham's most trusted steward, the chief administrator of all his affairs. The magnitude of the mission — choosing a wife for the covenant heir — is entrusted to this one man.
2. 'Put your hand under my thigh' (sim-na yadkha tachat yerekhi) — the thigh (yarekh) is a euphemism for the procreative organ. This oath gesture involves placing the hand near the source of progeny, invoking the unborn descendants as witnesses to the oath. The practice underscores that the oath concerns the future of Abraham's line. Some interpreters connect it to the covenant of circumcision — swearing by the sign of the covenant itself. The gesture appears only here and in 47:29 (Jacob's oath to Joseph).
3. 'The LORD, the God of heaven and the God of the earth' (YHWH Elohei hashamayim ve'Elohei ha'arets) — the most expansive divine title Abraham uses. It asserts YHWH's universal sovereignty over both heavenly and earthly realms, establishing the cosmic weight of this oath. The God who rules all creation is invoked as guarantor of the servant's mission.
3. 'You shall not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanites' — Abraham's prohibition is categorical. The concern is not racial but religious and covenantal: the Canaanite culture was saturated with practices incompatible with the worship of YHWH. Inter-marriage would risk the dilution or abandonment of covenant faithfulness. This concern becomes a recurring theme (cf. 26:34–35; 27:46; 28:1).
4. 'To my land and to my kindred' (el-artsi ve'el-moladi) — Abraham sends the servant back to Mesopotamia, to the family from which Abraham himself came. The word moledeth means 'kindred, birthplace, native land.' Abraham left this land in obedience to God's call (12:1); now he reaches back to it for a bride. The logic is not ethnic purity but covenantal compatibility: the family of Terah, though not yet monotheistic, is at least not Canaanite and may be more receptive to the God of Abraham.

4. 'For my son, for Isaac' (livni leYitschaq) — the double specification ('my son... Isaac') echoes the style of 22:2 ('your son, your only son, whom you love — Isaac'). Isaac is again singled out with particular emphasis as the heir through whom everything continues.
5. The servant raises a practical objection: what if the woman refuses to relocate? His solution — take Isaac to Mesopotamia — seems logical but would undermine the entire covenantal geography. Abraham's departure from Mesopotamia was itself an act of obedience; returning Isaac would reverse the trajectory of the divine call.
5. 'Perhaps' (ulay) — the servant's caution is reasonable, not faithless. He is thinking through contingencies. But Abraham's response in vv. 6–8 will reveal that for Abraham, some contingencies are simply not acceptable.
6. 'Take care' (hishamer lekha) — literally, 'guard yourself.' This is a stern warning, not a gentle suggestion. The reflexive form (hishamer) emphasizes personal responsibility: 'You yourself must be on guard against this.' Abraham's tone shifts from request to command. Isaac must not go to Mesopotamia under any circumstances. The promised land is not merely a preference; it is a theological necessity.
7. 'He will send His angel before you' (hu yishlach mal'akho lefanekha) — Abraham's confidence rests not on the servant's skill but on divine providence. The angel (mal'akh, 'messenger') goes ahead as a divine advance guard, preparing the way. Abraham has learned through decades of experience that God orchestrates events according to His promises. This is not presumption but mature faith: Abraham trusts the God who has spoken and sworn.
7. 'Who took me from my father's house' (asher leqachani mibbeit avi) — Abraham recounts his own story as the ground of his confidence. The same God who initiated the journey will bring it to completion. The verbs accumulate — 'took me,' 'spoke to me,' 'swore to me' — building a case from personal experience that God finishes what He starts.
7. 'To your offspring I will give this land' (leazar'akha etten et-ha'arets hazzot) — Abraham quotes the divine promise (cf. 12:7; 13:15; 15:18). The land promise is the theological anchor for keeping Isaac in Canaan. If the offspring must inherit this land, then the heir must remain in it.
8. 'You shall be free from this oath' (veniqa mishvu'ati zot) — the verb niqah means 'to be clean, free, acquitted.' Abraham provides a contingency that releases the servant from obligation if the woman refuses — but the prohibition against taking Isaac back stands regardless. The oath has a built-in escape clause, demonstrating Abraham's reasonableness, but the non-negotiable principle remains: Isaac stays in Canaan.
8. 'Only do not bring my son back there' (raq et-beni lo tashev shammah) — the word raq ('only, but') introduces the one absolute condition. Abraham repeats this prohibition from v. 6, framing his instructions with it. The servant may fail to find a wife, but he must not fail in this: Isaac does not go back. The promised land holds the heir, not the other way around.
9. The oath is solemnized. The servant physically commits — hand under thigh — and verbally commits — 'swore to him.' The narrative moves from instruction to oath to action without delay, reflecting the urgency and importance of the mission.
10. 'Ten camels' — a substantial caravan indicating wealth and the seriousness of the mission. Ten camels could carry considerable cargo — gifts, provisions, and trade goods. The size of the entourage would also serve as a visible demonstration of Abraham's prosperity to the prospective bride's family.
10. 'Aram-naharaim' (Aram Naharayim) — literally, 'Aram of the two rivers,' referring to the region of upper Mesopotamia between the Euphrates and Habur rivers (or Euphrates and Tigris). The KJV renders it 'Mesopotamia' (from Greek, also meaning 'between rivers'). This is the ancestral homeland of Abraham's family.
10. 'The city of Nahor' (ir Nachor) — either a city belonging to or named after Abraham's brother Nahor, or the city where Nahor settled. This is likely Haran or a nearby settlement in the region of Paddan-aram.
11. 'Made the camels kneel down' (vayyavrekh haggemalim) — the verb barakh in the Hiphil means 'to cause to kneel.' The camels are settled for rest, and the servant positions himself strategically at the well. Wells were social gathering points, especially in the evening when women came to draw water for the household. The servant's timing is deliberate — he arrives when he is most likely to encounter eligible women.
11. 'The time when the women go out to draw water' (le'et tset hasho'avot) — this detail sets the scene for the pivotal encounter. The well as a meeting place for future spouses is a recurring biblical type-scene (cf. Jacob and Rachel at the well in 29:1–12; Moses and Zipporah at the well in Exodus 2:15–21). The servant positions himself within this culturally expected framework.
12. 'O LORD, God of my master Abraham' (YHWH Elohei adoni Avraham) — the servant does not call YHWH 'my God' but 'the God of my master Abraham.' This may indicate that the servant's own relationship with YHWH is mediated through Abraham, or it may be a deliberate rhetorical appeal: 'For the sake of Abraham, who serves You — act on his behalf.'
12. 'Grant me success' (haqreh-na lefanay) — literally, 'cause to happen before me.' The verb qarah means 'to happen, to encounter, to occur.' The servant asks God to orchestrate a providential encounter — not mere luck but divinely arranged circumstance.
12. 'Show steadfast love' (aseh-chesed) — chesed is one of the richest words in the Hebrew Bible: steadfast love, loyal love, covenant faithfulness, lovingkindness. The servant asks God to demonstrate chesed toward Abraham by making this mission succeed. The word will recur throughout the chapter (vv. 14, 27, 49) as the theological lens through which the entire narrative is interpreted.
13. The servant describes his position — standing by the well — and the circumstance — women are coming to draw water. He sets the scene for the specific sign he is about to request from God.

14. 'The one whom You have appointed' (otah hokhachta) — the verb yakhach in the Hiphil means 'to decide, to prove, to appoint, to designate.' The servant asks for a specific, observable sign by which God's choice will be made evident. The sign is not arbitrary but reveals character: a woman who not only gives water to a stranger but volunteers to water ten thirsty camels demonstrates extraordinary generosity, initiative, and physical stamina.
14. 'I will water your camels also' — a single camel can drink 20–30 gallons of water after a long journey. Ten camels could require 200–300 gallons. Drawing this water by hand from a well with a jar is enormous labor — possibly hours of work. The servant's test identifies a woman of remarkable energy, generosity, and willingness to serve beyond what is asked.
14. 'By this I shall know that You have shown steadfast love (chesed) to my master' — the sign, when fulfilled, will be interpreted not as coincidence but as divine chesed in action. Providence is recognized through specific, confirmable events.
15. 'Before he had finished speaking' (terem killah ledabber) — the swiftness of the answer is stunning. The servant has not even completed his prayer when Rebekah appears. This is not merely efficient timing; it is a narrative signal of divine responsiveness. God answers before the asking is done (cf. Isaiah 65:24, 'Before they call I will answer').
15. 'Rebekah' (Rivqah) — her name may derive from a root meaning 'to tie, to bind' or 'to fatten' (as in a young cow/heifer), though the etymology is uncertain. She is introduced with her full genealogy: daughter of Bethuel, granddaughter of Milcah and Nahor (Abraham's brother). She is Abraham's grand-niece — family, as Abraham specified.
15. 'Her jar upon her shoulder' — the image is vivid and concrete. Rebekah is actively engaged in the daily labor of drawing water. She is not idle, not waiting to be found; she is working. The jar on the shoulder indicates she has come to the well for its intended purpose.
16. 'Very beautiful in appearance' (tovat mar'eh me'od) — the narrator provides physical description, as with Sarah (12:11) and later Rachel (29:17). Beauty in the patriarchal narratives is noted but is never the primary criterion for divine selection; character and action are what matter.
16. 'A virgin — no man had known her' (betulah ve'ish lo yeda'ah) — the word betulah denotes a young woman of marriageable age, and the clarifying phrase 'no man had known her' (using yada' in its sexual sense) makes the virginity explicit. This double statement ensures there is no ambiguity about her status. She is eligible and unattached.
16. 'She went down to the spring and filled her jar and came up' — the verbs convey purposeful, unself-conscious activity. Rebekah descends, fills, ascends — she is capable, industrious, and going about her ordinary routine. The extraordinary encounter is about to intersect with the ordinary.
17. 'Ran to meet her' (vayyarots liqratah) — the servant runs. The urgency reflects his recognition that this moment may be the answer to his prayer. He does not passively wait; he acts on the opportunity. The verb ruts ('to run') conveys eagerness and purposefulness.
17. 'A little water' (me'at-mayim) — the servant asks modestly, requesting only 'a little.' This restrained request is part of the test: will she offer merely what is asked, or will she go beyond? The sign requires her to volunteer to water the camels — something the servant deliberately does not request.
18. 'Drink, my lord' (sheteh adoni) — Rebekah responds immediately and respectfully. She addresses a stranger as 'my lord' (adoni), showing courtesy. She does not hesitate or question why a stranger is asking her for water.
18. 'She quickly lowered her jar' (vatemaher vattored kaddah) — the verb mahar ('to hasten') is characteristic of Rebekah. She acts with speed and energy. This haste is not nervousness but readiness — a willingness to serve that does not calculate or delay.
19. 'I will draw water for your camels also, until they have finished drinking' (gam ligmallekha esh'av ad im-killu lishtot) — this is the moment the servant has been waiting for. Rebekah volunteers exactly what the sign required: water for the camels. And she does not offer a token gesture ('I'll draw a little for them too') but commits to the full task: 'until they have finished drinking.' This is a pledge of enormous labor — potentially hours of carrying water for ten thirsty camels. The word gam ('also') is the crucial addition: she goes beyond what was asked.
20. 'She quickly emptied... and ran again... and drew for all his camels' — three verbs of vigorous action in rapid succession: emptied (vateta'ar), ran (vattarots), drew (vattish'av). Rebekah's energy is extraordinary. She does not walk; she runs. She does not offer halfheartedly; she draws for all the camels. The narrative emphasizes her physical vigor and wholehearted generosity through the accumulation of active verbs.
21. 'Gazed at her in silence' (mishtae'eh lah macharish) — two remarkable words. Mishtae'eh (from sha'ah, 'to gaze, to be astonished') describes rapt, wondering attention — the servant watches Rebekah with astonishment. Macharish means 'being silent, holding one's peace.' He says nothing. This is the silence of a man witnessing what may be a miracle unfolding before his eyes. He does not interrupt; he does not prompt; he watches and waits to see whether God is at work.
21. 'Whether the LORD had made his journey successful or not' — despite the sign matching perfectly, the servant does not leap to conclusions. He holds his judgment in suspense until the full picture emerges. This is patient, discerning faith — not demanding instant certainty but waiting for confirmation.
22. 'A gold ring, a half-shekel in weight' (nezem zahav beqa mishqalo) — the nezem is a ring, likely a nose ring (cf. v. 47 where it is placed on her nose). A beqa is half a shekel, approximately 5.7 grams of gold. The gift is precious but not overwhelming — a sign of serious interest.
22. 'Two bracelets... ten shekels of gold' (shenei tsemidim... asarah zahav mishqalam) — each bracelet weighs five shekels of gold (approximately 57 grams each, or about 2 ounces). These are substantial gifts of considerable value. The servant presents them only after the sign has been fulfilled — the camels have finished drinking. He waited until Rebekah had fully demonstrated her character before offering gifts.

23. 'Whose daughter are you?' (bat-mi att) — this is the critical question. The servant needs to know if Rebekah belongs to Abraham's family. Her identity will confirm or deny whether the sign was truly from God. The servant's restraint is notable: he gave the gifts before asking her identity, demonstrating trust that God had indeed guided him, while also needing the genealogical confirmation.
24. 'The daughter of Bethuel the son of Milcah, whom she bore to Nahor' — Rebekah's genealogy confirms everything: she is the granddaughter of Nahor, Abraham's brother. The servant's prayer has been answered in every particular. The precision of her lineage — not just 'of Nahor's family' but the exact line through Milcah and Bethuel — mirrors the specificity of Abraham's instructions.
25. 'Straw and feed in abundance, and also room to lodge' — Rebekah goes beyond answering the servant's question. He asked only about lodging; she volunteers that they have provisions for the camels as well (straw for bedding, mispo' for feed). Her generosity and hospitality continue to exceed what is asked — the same pattern of going beyond that characterized her offer to water the camels.
26. 'Bowed his head and worshipped the LORD' (vayyiqqod... vayyishtachu laYHWH) — two acts: qadad means to bow the head, and hishtachavah means to prostrate oneself in worship. The servant's immediate response to confirmation is worship. He does not congratulate himself on clever planning; he worships the God who arranged the encounter. This is faith recognizing providence.
27. 'His steadfast love and His faithfulness' (chasdo va'amitto) — the pairing of chesed and emet is one of the great theological dyads of the Hebrew Bible. Chesed is loyal love that keeps its commitments; emet is truth, reliability, faithfulness. Together they describe God's character as both lovingly committed and utterly dependable. God's love is not fickle, and His truth is not cold — they are fused in His dealings with His people.
27. 'The LORD has led me on the way' (badderekh nachani YHWH) — the servant testifies that God actively guided him. The word derekh ('way, road, journey') takes on theological significance: God does not merely permit the journey; He directs it step by step. The verb nachah ('to lead, to guide') echoes the language of divine guidance throughout the Psalms (23:3; 27:11; 31:3).
28. 'Ran' (vattarots) — Rebekah runs again. She is consistently portrayed as energetic and decisive. She ran to water camels; now she runs to share the news.
28. 'Her mother's household' (beit immah) — not her father's house but her mother's. This designation may reflect the social structure of the household, where women's quarters (the 'mother's tent') were distinct, or it may hint at Bethuel's diminished role (he appears only briefly in v. 50). Laban, Rebekah's brother, emerges as the family's active representative.
29. 'Laban' (Lavan) — the name means 'white.' This is the first appearance of Laban, who will become a major figure in the Jacob narrative (chapters 29–31). His introduction here is brief but revealing: the next verse will suggest that his eagerness is motivated at least in part by the sight of valuable gifts.
30. 'When he saw the ring and the bracelets' — the narrator mentions what Laban saw before what he heard. The sequence may be deliberate: Laban's eyes fall first on the gold. This subtle detail begins a characterization that will become explicit in the Jacob narratives — Laban is a man motivated by material gain. His hospitality, while genuine in form, has mercenary undertones.
30. The narrator notes that the servant is 'standing by the camels at the spring' — ten camels loaded with goods. The visual impression of wealth reinforces Laban's motivation to extend hospitality.
31. 'Blessed of the LORD' (berukh YHWH) — Laban uses YHWH's name, suggesting some familiarity with or acknowledgment of Abraham's God. Whether this reflects genuine faith or diplomatic courtesy is debatable; Laban will later invoke YHWH and other deities interchangeably (31:49–53).
31. 'I have prepared the house, and a place for the camels' — Laban has moved quickly to arrange hospitality. Ancient Near Eastern customs of hospitality were sacred obligations, and Laban fulfills them with energy — though the narrator has already hinted at his underlying motivation.
32. 'He ungirded the camels' (vayfattach haggemalim) — the verb patach means 'to open, to loosen, to ungird.' The travel gear and loads are removed from the camels, indicating the caravan is settling in for a stay.
32. 'Water to wash his feet' — foot-washing is a standard element of ancient Near Eastern hospitality (cf. 18:4; 19:2; 43:24). After long travel on dusty roads, washing the feet was both practical hygiene and a gesture of welcome and care.
33. 'I will not eat until I have spoken my words' — the servant refuses to eat before completing his mission. In a culture where sharing a meal carried covenantal implications and created bonds of obligation, the servant's refusal to eat first ensures that the family's decision about Rebekah will not be influenced by the social pressure of having already accepted his hospitality. His mission takes priority over comfort and custom.
33. 'Speak' (dabber) — Laban (or Bethuel, or the household) grants permission. What follows (vv. 34–49) is one of the longest speeches in Genesis: the servant's retelling of the entire narrative.
34. 'I am Abraham's servant' (eved Avraham anokhi) — the servant identifies himself not by his own name but by his master's. His identity is defined by his relationship to Abraham. This self-designation establishes the authority behind his mission: he comes not on his own behalf but as the representative of a great man known in the region.
35. The servant catalogs Abraham's wealth in paired categories: flocks and herds, silver and gold, male and female servants, camels and donkeys. The enumeration serves a rhetorical purpose: it demonstrates to Rebekah's family that Isaac's bride will want for nothing. The wealth is attributed entirely to YHWH's blessing — 'the LORD has blessed my master' — framing Abraham's prosperity as divine favor, not mere human achievement.

36. 'After she had grown old' (acharei ziqnatah) — the servant highlights the miraculous nature of Isaac's birth: Sarah bore a son in her old age. This detail serves to present Isaac as a child of divine promise, not merely of natural procreation.
36. 'He has given him all that he has' — Isaac is Abraham's sole heir. Everything Abraham possesses will pass to Isaac. The bride who marries Isaac will marry into the full inheritance of Abraham's divinely blessed wealth. This is the servant's strongest selling point to the family.
37. The servant begins retelling Abraham's instructions. This retelling (vv. 37–48) is a characteristic feature of Hebrew narrative: events are narrated, then retold by a character within the story. The retelling is not identical to the original — there are subtle variations that reflect the servant's perspective and rhetorical goals.
38. 'My father's house... my family' (beit avi... mishpachti) — in the original instructions (v. 4), Abraham said 'my land and my kindred' (artsi... moladti). The servant's retelling shifts to 'my father's house and my family,' which is more specific and more personal. This rhetorical adjustment makes Abraham's request sound like a family reunion — emphasizing the kinship connection to Rebekah's household.
39. The servant recounts his own objection from v. 5 but abbreviates it, omitting the question about taking Isaac back. In the retelling, the servant streamlines the exchange, focusing on the essential question and Abraham's confident answer.
40. 'Before whom I have walked' (asher-hithallakhti lefanav) — in the original (v. 7), Abraham said 'who took me from my father's house.' The servant's retelling substitutes 'before whom I have walked,' using the language of covenant faithfulness (cf. 17:1, 'Walk before me and be blameless'). This variation is not error but rhetorical adaptation: the servant emphasizes Abraham's lifelong devotion to YHWH, presenting his master as a man of proven faith.
40. 'Will send His angel with you' — in v. 7, Abraham said 'before you' (lefanekha); here the servant says 'with you' (ittakh). The preposition shifts from 'ahead of' to 'alongside.' Both are true: God goes before to prepare and walks alongside to accompany.
41. 'Free from my oath' (naqi me'alati) — the word alah here means 'oath' (with the sense of 'curse/imprecation for oath-breaking'). The servant recounts the release clause: if the family refuses, he is absolved. Notably, the servant omits Abraham's emphatic repetition of 'do not take my son back there' (vv. 6, 8). In addressing Rebekah's family, this prohibition would be irrelevant and potentially offensive — they might wonder why returning to their land is so objectionable. The servant tailors his account to his audience.
42. The servant now retells his prayer at the well (originally vv. 12–14). Again, the retelling varies slightly from the original, condensing and adapting the language. He emphasizes the conditional nature of his request: 'if You are indeed prospering' — presenting himself as humbly seeking confirmation rather than demanding signs.
43. 'The young woman' (ha'almah) — in the original prayer (v. 14), the servant used na'arah ('young woman, girl'). Here in the retelling he uses almah, a word denoting a young woman of marriageable age. The two terms are largely synonymous in this context, though almah specifically connotes a maiden in the bloom of youth.
44. 'The woman whom the LORD has appointed' (ha'ishah asher-hokhiach YHWH leven adoni) — the verb yakhach again: 'appointed, designated, decided.' The servant frames the entire encounter as God's decision, not his own preference or Abraham's scheme. The right woman is the one YHWH designates through the sign.
45. 'Speaking in my heart' (ledabber el-libbi) — in the original (v. 15), the narrator simply said 'before he had finished speaking' (terem killah ledabber). The servant's retelling adds 'in my heart,' indicating that his prayer was silent, internal — a conversation with God conducted within, not spoken aloud. This detail reveals that even the prayer was private; Rebekah's appearance was not prompted by overhearing his words.
46. The servant's retelling matches the original events closely here, confirming Rebekah's swift, generous response. The fulfillment of the sign is presented directly to the family so they can judge for themselves: every element of the prayer was answered exactly as requested.
47. 'I put the ring on her nose' (va'asim hannezem al-appah) — this verse clarifies that the nezem is a nose ring (appah, 'her nose'), not an earring. In the original narration (v. 22), the servant 'took' the ring after the camels finished drinking; here he says he placed it on her nose after learning her identity. The slight reordering in the retelling may reflect the servant presenting his actions in the most fitting sequence for his audience — showing that he confirmed her identity before bestowing the gifts. Some scholars see this as the servant slightly reshaping events for rhetorical effect.
48. 'The way of truth' (derekh emet) — in v. 27, the servant said God had led him 'on the way' (badderekh); here he adds 'of truth' (emet). The path was not just any road but the way of faithfulness, the true path. Emet here carries the sense of 'reliability, trustworthiness, truth' — God's guidance is dependable and leads to the right destination.
48. 'The daughter of my master's brother' (bat-achi adoni) — the servant summarizes the genealogical connection: Rebekah is the granddaughter of Abraham's brother Nahor, making her Abraham's grand-niece. The kinship connection fulfills Abraham's requirement exactly.
49. 'Steadfast love and faithfulness' (chesed ve'emet) — the servant uses the same word pair he attributed to God in v. 27. The implication is powerful: just as God has shown chesed and emet toward Abraham, will this family do the same? He invites them to participate in God's own pattern of covenant faithfulness.
49. 'That I may turn to the right or to the left' — a practical statement: if the answer is no, the servant will seek elsewhere. But it also gently applies pressure: the servant has options, and delay or equivocation will simply send him in another direction. The family must decide.

50. 'The thing has come from the LORD' (meYHWH yatsa haddavar) — this is the decisive declaration. Laban and Bethuel recognize divine agency in the servant's account. The word davar ('thing, word, matter') has emerged 'from YHWH' — it originated with God, not with human scheming. Their acknowledgment removes any ground for refusal.
50. 'We cannot speak to you bad or good' — this idiom means 'we have nothing to say against it; it is settled.' They cannot oppose what God has arranged. The merism 'bad or good' encompasses every possible response — none is available to them. God's will has foreclosed debate.
50. Laban is named first, before his father Bethuel, suggesting Laban is the primary spokesman. Bethuel's role is minimal throughout the chapter, leading some commentators to speculate that he was elderly, infirm, or socially subordinate to his more assertive son.
51. 'As the LORD has spoken' (ka'asher dibber YHWH) — the family attributes the arrangement to YHWH's speech, His declared will. They frame their consent not as a concession but as obedience to divine direction. The phrase 'as the LORD has spoken' carries the weight of prophetic fulfillment — what God has determined is now being carried out.
52. 'He bowed himself to the ground before the LORD' — for the third time in the narrative (cf. vv. 26, 48), the servant worships. His instinct at every turning point is worship. Success does not produce self-congratulation but prostration before the God who brought it about. This pattern of worship punctuates the entire journey: prayer before action, worship after confirmation.
53. 'Articles of silver and articles of gold and garments' — bridal gifts (mohar) given to the bride herself. These are personal possessions that belong to Rebekah, not to her family.
53. 'Precious things to her brother and to her mother' (migdanot... le'achiha ule'immah) — separate gifts to Laban and Rebekah's mother (again, the father is not mentioned as a recipient). Migdanot are 'choice things, delicacies, precious items.' These gifts to the family are distinct from the bridal gifts — they secure the family's goodwill and formalize the agreement.
54. 'Send me away to my master' (shallechuni la'adoni) — now, with the agreement secured, the servant eats (cf. his refusal in v. 33). The next morning, he is eager to depart immediately. His single-minded devotion to his mission allows no lingering. He has accomplished what he was sent to do and seeks to return without delay.
55. 'A few days, at least ten' (yamim o asor) — the word yamim can mean 'days' or, idiomatically, 'a period of time' (even a year in some contexts). The addition 'at least ten' (o asor) suggests a minimum of ten days, possibly longer. The family wants more time with Rebekah before she leaves. This is understandable: they are losing a daughter and sister, and the departure is permanent — she will travel hundreds of miles to a land she has never seen.
55. 'Her brother and her mother' — again Bethuel is absent from the conversation. Laban and Rebekah's mother are the active decision-makers.
56. 'Do not delay me' (al-te'acharu oti) — the servant presses for immediate departure. His argument is theological: 'the LORD has prospered my way.' To delay is to impede what God has set in motion. The servant's urgency reflects his conviction that divine momentum should not be resisted by human sentiment, however natural that sentiment may be.
57. 'Let us call the young woman and ask her' (niqra lanna'ar venish'alalah et-piha) — literally, 'let us ask her mouth.' This is a remarkable moment: the family will let Rebekah decide for herself. In a culture where marriage arrangements were typically made by male family members, Rebekah is given a voice. Her consent is sought. This is not merely procedural; the narrative presents her agency as essential to the story's resolution.
58. 'Will you go with this man? And she said, I will go' (hatekhni im-ha'ish hazzeh vattomer elekh) — the question is direct and the answer is decisive. Elekh — 'I will go.' One word. No hesitation, no conditions, no request for more time. Rebekah's response echoes Abraham's own decisive obedience when called to leave his homeland. Like Abraham, she steps into an unknown future based on a conviction that this is the right path. Her single-word answer is one of the most powerful moments of personal agency in Genesis.
58. The courage required should not be understated: Rebekah is agreeing to leave her family, her homeland, and everything familiar to travel to a distant land and marry a man she has never met. Her 'I will go' is an act of faith and determination that parallels Abraham's 'lekh-lekha' obedience.
59. 'Her nurse' (menikkta) — Rebekah's childhood nurse accompanies her on the journey. This nurse, later identified as Deborah (35:8), provides a link to home and continuity of care. Her presence suggests that while Rebekah is bold, the family ensures she does not depart entirely alone among strangers.
60. 'Thousands of ten thousands' (le'alfei revavah) — an extravagant blessing of fertility and multiplication. The language echoes the Abrahamic promise of innumerable descendants (cf. 22:17). Though the family may not fully understand the covenantal dimensions, their blessing aligns with God's purposes for Abraham's line.
60. 'May your offspring possess the gate of those who hate them' (veyirash zar'ekh et sha'ar son'av) — this blessing closely echoes God's words to Abraham after the Akedah (22:17): 'your offspring shall possess the gate of his enemies.' The gate represents the seat of power and authority in a city. To 'possess the gate' is to have dominion, victory, and authority. The family's farewell blessing unwittingly repeats the divine covenant promise.
61. 'Rebekah arose' (vattaqom Rivqah) — the verb qum ('to arise') signals decisive action, departure, a new phase beginning. Rebekah rises — she is not carried or led passively. She mounts the camel and follows.
61. 'Her young women' (na'aroteha) — Rebekah has attendant women who accompany her. She does not travel alone but as a woman of status with her own household.

62. 'Beer-lahai-roi' — the 'Well of the Living One Who Sees Me,' named by Hagar in 16:14 after her encounter with the angel of the LORD. It is striking that Isaac settles near this well — the place associated with God's compassion for the outcast Hagar. The connection may hint at Isaac's contemplative, gentle character — he is drawn to places of divine encounter and sees significance in Hagar's story.
62. 'The land of the Negev' (erets hanNegev) — the dry, semi-arid southern region of Canaan. Isaac's location in the Negev places him at a distance from Hebron (where Abraham is), suggesting some degree of independent establishment.
63. 'To meditate' (lasuach) — the verb suach is rare and its precise meaning is debated. It may mean 'to meditate, to muse, to pray, to walk about, to converse (with oneself or with God).' The traditional rendering 'meditate' suggests contemplative prayer or reflection. Some scholars connect it to siach ('to speak, to commune'). Whatever the exact nuance, Isaac is portrayed as a reflective, inward man — walking alone in the field at dusk, engaged in thought or prayer. This is the only glimpse the narrative gives us of Isaac's interior life at this moment, and it is one of quiet solitude.
63. 'Toward evening' (lifnot erev) — the same time of day when the servant arrived at the well (v. 11). Evening frames both the departure point and the arrival point of this journey. The setting sun provides a backdrop of beauty and transition for the meeting about to take place.
64. 'She dismounted from the camel' (vattippol me'al haggamal) — the verb naphal means 'to fall,' which suggests she dismounted quickly, perhaps even leaping down. Whether this is haste, respect, or startled excitement, the narrative leaves ambiguous. The act is spontaneous — she sees a man in the field and immediately acts. Their eyes meet across the distance: he lifts his eyes (v. 63), she lifts hers (v. 64). The symmetry is deliberate and beautiful.
65. 'Who is this man walking in the field to meet us?' — Rebekah's first words about Isaac are a question filled with curiosity. She sees a solitary figure approaching across the field in the fading light. The moment has the quality of a scene from a story — and indeed it is one of the most evocative meeting scenes in all of ancient literature.
65. 'She took her veil and covered herself' (vattiqach hatsa'if vattitkkas) — the tsa'if is a large veil or wrapper. Rebekah veils herself upon learning the man is Isaac — her future husband. The veiling is an act of modesty and bridal custom, marking the transition from stranger to bride. It is also the introduction of the veil motif that will recur dramatically when Laban substitutes Leah for Rachel on Jacob's wedding night (29:23–25).
66. 'All the things that he had done' — the servant recounts the entire journey to Isaac. This is the third telling: the narrator told it (vv. 10–27), the servant retold it to Laban's family (vv. 34–49), and now he tells Isaac. The narrative does not repeat the speech a third time but summarizes it, trusting the reader to understand the content. The repetition is itself theologically significant: the story of God's providence is worth telling and retelling.
67. 'Into the tent of Sarah his mother' (ha'ohelah Sarah immo) — Isaac brings Rebekah into Sarah's tent, not just any tent. This act symbolically installs Rebekah as the new matriarch, the successor to Sarah. The tent that was empty since Sarah's death (chapter 23) is now occupied again. Life continues; the matriarchal line is renewed.
67. 'And he loved her' (vayye'ehavehah) — this is one of the rare explicit statements of marital love in Genesis. The verb ahav ('to love') here describes not the initial attraction but the settled, committed love that follows marriage. Isaac and Rebekah's love is stated simply and without elaboration — a quiet, profound declaration.
67. 'And Isaac was comforted after his mother's death' (vayyinnachem Yitschaq acharei immo) — the verb nacham means 'to be comforted, to be consoled.' Isaac's grief for Sarah, which has shadowed the narrative since chapter 23, finds resolution in Rebekah. She fills the void left by his mother's death — not as a replacement but as a new source of love and companionship. The chapter that began with Abraham's old age and the need to secure the future ends with Isaac comforted, married, and loved. The covenant continues.

25

Summary: Abraham marries Keturah and fathers more sons, but leaves everything to Isaac. Abraham dies at 175 and is buried by Isaac and Ishmael at Machpelah. Ishmael's twelve princes are listed. Rebekah, long barren, conceives twins after Isaac's prayer. God's oracle declares the older will serve the younger. Esau sells his birthright to Jacob for stew.

What Makes This Remarkable: The chapter is a hinge between generations, closing Abraham's story and opening Jacob's. The oracle to Rebekah — 'the older shall serve the younger' (v. 23) — inverts primogeniture and establishes divine election as the governing principle. The color-word admoni ('red,' v. 25) links Esau to Edom, to the red stew, and to the red earth (adamah), threading his identity through a single phoneme. The narrator's final verdict — 'so Esau despised his birthright' (vayyivez, v. 34) — is devastating in its brevity: one verb converts a transaction into a theological judgment.

Translation Friction: Jacob is called tam (v. 27), traditionally rendered 'plain' (KJV), but the word carries moral weight — wholeness, integrity, completeness. We rendered it as 'quiet' to capture his domestic character while noting the Hebrew's richer meaning. Esau's demand to 'gulp down' (hal'iteni, v. 30) the red stew uses an unusually crude verb suggesting animal-like consumption — a nuance that is difficult to reproduce in English without overstatement.

Connections: Isaac and Ishmael burying Abraham together (25:9) mirrors Jacob and Esau burying Isaac (35:29) — reconciliation at the graveside. The bechorah ('birthright,' v. 31) that Esau despises is referenced in Hebrews 12:16-17. The oracle about the older serving the younger (25:23) governs the next four chapters and is cited in Romans 9:12 as evidence of divine election before birth.

¹And Abraham took another wife, and her name was Keturah. ²She gave birth to Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. ³And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were the Asshurim, the Letushim, and the Leummim. ⁴And the sons of Midian were Ephah and Ephher and Hanoah and Abida and Eldaah. All these were the sons of Keturah. ⁵Abraham left everything he owned to Isaac. ⁶And to the sons of the concubines that Abraham had, Abraham gave gifts, and he sent them away from Isaac his son, while he was still living, eastward, to the land of the east. ⁷And these are the days of the years of Abraham's life that he lived: a hundred and seventy-five years. ⁸And Abraham breathed his last and died in a good old age, old and full of days, and was gathered to his people. ⁹His sons Isaac and Ishmael laid him to rest in the cave of Machpelah, within the field of Ephron son of Zohar the Hittite, facing Mamre — ¹⁰the field that Abraham had purchased from the sons of Heth. There Abraham was buried, with Sarah his wife. ¹¹And it was, after the death of Abraham, that God blessed Isaac his son. And Isaac settled near Beer-lahai-roi. ¹²And these are the generations of Ishmael, the son of Abraham, whom Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's maidservant, bore to Abraham. ¹³These are Ishmael's sons, listed by name in the order of their birth: Nebaioth, Ishmael's firstborn, followed by Kedar, Adbeel, Mibsam, ¹⁴Mishma, Dumah, Massa, ¹⁵then Hadad, Tema, Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah. ¹⁶These are the sons of Ishmael, and these are their names, by their settlements and by their encampments — twelve princes according to their peoples. ¹⁷And these are the years of the life of Ishmael: a hundred and thirty-seven years. And he breathed his last and died and was gathered to his people. ¹⁸And they settled from Havilah to Shur, which is opposite Egypt, going toward Assyria. He settled over against all his kinsmen. ¹⁹And these are the generations of Isaac, the son of Abraham. Abraham fathered Isaac. ²⁰And Isaac was forty years old when he took Rebekah as his wife, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan-aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean. ²¹And Isaac prayed earnestly to the LORD on behalf of his wife, for she was barren. And the LORD was moved by his prayer, and Rebekah his wife conceived. ²²And the children struggled within her, and she said, "If it is so, why is this happening to me?" And she went to inquire of the LORD. ²³And the LORD said to her, "Two nations are in your womb, and two peoples shall be divided from within you. And one people shall be stronger than the other, and the older shall serve the younger." ²⁴And when her days to give birth were fulfilled, behold — twins were in her womb. ²⁵And the first came out red, all of him like a garment of hair, and they called his name Esau. ²⁶And after this his brother came out, and his hand was grasping Esau's heel. And his name was called Jacob. And Isaac was sixty years old when she bore them. ²⁷And the boys grew up. And Esau became a man skilled in hunting, a man of the field, and Jacob was a quiet man, dwelling in tents. ²⁸And Isaac loved Esau, for game was in his mouth, but Rebekah loved Jacob. ²⁹And Jacob was cooking stew, and Esau came in from the field, and he was exhausted. ³⁰And Esau said to Jacob, "Let me gulp down some of this red — this red stuff — for I am exhausted." Therefore his name was called Edom. ³¹And Jacob said, "Sell me your birthright, here and now." ³²And Esau said, "Look, I am about to die. What good is a birthright to me?" ³³And Jacob said, "Swear to me today." And he swore to him and sold his birthright to Jacob. ³⁴And Jacob gave Esau bread and lentil stew. And he ate and drank and rose and went away. So Esau despised his birthright.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. "Took another wife" (vayyosef... vayyiqqach ishah) — the verb yasef ('to add, to do again') signals continuation after Sarah's death and Isaac's marriage. Abraham, at well over 140 years old, takes a new wife. Some interpreters identify Keturah with Hagar (cf. 1 Chronicles 1:32, which calls her a 'concubine'), but the plain text introduces her as a distinct figure.

1. 'Keturah' (Qeturah) — the name likely derives from qetoret ('incense'), suggesting a connection to the aromatic spice trade of Arabia. This etymology fits the geography of her descendants, who are associated with Arabian and eastern territories.
2. Six sons are listed, each becoming the ancestor of peoples or tribes. Midian (Midyan) is the most significant in later biblical narrative: Moses will flee to Midian and marry a Midianite woman (Exodus 2:15–21), and the Midianites later become both allies and adversaries of Israel.
2. Shuah (Shuach) is noteworthy as the ancestor of Bildad the Shuhite, one of Job's three friends (Job 2:11). These Abrahamic descendants populate the broader Near Eastern landscape, extending Abraham's influence far beyond the covenant line through Isaac.
3. Sheba and Dedan also appear in the genealogy of Ham through Cush (10:7) and in connection with Shem (10:28). These overlapping names likely reflect intermarriage and blending of tribal identities in Arabian territories. Sheba is associated with the famous spice trade and the later Queen of Sheba (1 Kings 10).
3. The three 'sons' of Dedan — Asshurim, Letushim, Leummim — bear names with plural endings (-im), indicating they are tribal or ethnic groups rather than individuals. The name Le'ummim means 'peoples' or 'nations,' underscoring the collective nature of these identities.
4. Ephah (Eifah) is mentioned in Isaiah 60:6 alongside Midian as bringing gold and incense — again connecting Keturah's line to the Arabian trade routes. The five sons of Midian represent the major clans of the Midianite confederation.
4. 'All these were the sons of Keturah' — the summary formula closes the genealogy and underscores that while Abraham fathered many peoples, the covenant distinction will be drawn sharply in the verses that follow.
5. 'All that he had' (kol-asher-lo) — this is an absolute transfer. Isaac receives the entirety of Abraham's estate, which includes not merely material wealth but the covenantal inheritance: the promises of land, descendants, and divine blessing. The other sons receive gifts (v. 6) but not the inheritance. The distinction is categorical, not proportional.
5. This verse establishes the legal and theological principle of the chosen heir receiving 'everything.' It parallels the later distinction between Jacob and Esau, and ultimately the concept of the firstborn's double portion — though here it is not the firstborn (Ishmael) but the son of promise who inherits all.
6. 'The concubines' (happilagshim) — the plural suggests both Hagar and Keturah are included under this designation. In 1 Chronicles 1:32, Keturah is explicitly called a concubine (pilegish). The legal distinction matters: concubines' sons receive gifts but not inheritance rights.
6. 'Sent them away from Isaac his son' (vayeshallechem me'al Yitschaq beno) — Abraham separates the other sons from Isaac to prevent future disputes over inheritance and to protect the covenant line from dilution. The pattern echoes the earlier sending away of Ishmael (21:14), though here it is done with gifts rather than minimal provisions.
6. 'Eastward, to the land of the east' (qedmah el-erets qedem) — the doubled emphasis on 'east' is deliberate. In Genesis, movement eastward consistently signals departure from the place of divine presence and promise: Adam and Eve go east of Eden (3:24), Cain goes east of Eden (4:16), and the builders of Babel move east (11:2). The Abrahamic sons who are not heirs of the promise go east.
7. 'The days of the years of Abraham's life' (yemei shenei-chayyei Avraham) — the formulaic death notice mirrors the style used for other patriarchs (cf. 5:5 for Adam, 9:29 for Noah). The phrase layers time units — days within years within a life — as though each unit of time mattered.
7. A hundred and seventy-five years — Abraham was 75 when called from Haran (12:4), making his life in the land of promise exactly 100 years. This round number may be theologically significant: a full century under the covenant. Jewish tradition notes the numerical pattern: $175 = 7 \times 5^2$ (or 7×25), which can be read as 'seven lives of twenty-five years,' suggesting fullness and completion.
8. 'Breathed his last' (vayyigva) — the verb gava means to expire, to breathe out for the last time. It is a gentle word, suggesting a peaceful death rather than a violent or agonizing one. The narrative grants Abraham the serene death that his faithful life warranted.
8. 'In a good old age, old and full of days' (beseivah tovah zaqen vesave'a) — four terms pile up to describe Abraham's death: good grey-headedness, aged, and satisfied (or 'full'). The word save'a literally means 'sated, satisfied' — Abraham has had his fill of life. This echoes God's promise in 15:15: 'You shall go to your fathers in peace; you shall be buried in a good old age.'
8. 'Gathered to his people' (vayye'asef el-ammav) — this phrase appears to mean more than simply being buried. Abraham's ancestors were buried in Mesopotamia, not at Machpelah. The expression suggests reunion with the dead in some form — an early intimation of afterlife or continued existence beyond physical death. It is used for Abraham, Ishmael (v. 17), Isaac (35:29), Jacob (49:33), Aaron (Numbers 20:24), and Moses (Deuteronomy 32:50).
9. 'Isaac and Ishmael' — Isaac is named first, though Ishmael is the firstborn. The order reflects covenantal priority, not birth order. Yet Ishmael's presence at the burial is striking and poignant: the son who was sent away returns to bury his father alongside the son who stayed. Whatever tensions existed, the brothers come together in grief.
9. 'The cave of Machpelah' — purchased by Abraham in chapter 23 for Sarah's burial. Abraham is now laid beside his wife. The cave becomes the patriarchal burial site: Sarah, Abraham, Isaac, Rebekah, Jacob, and Leah will all be interred there (49:31). It remains the only piece of the promised land that Abraham legally owned.
10. 'The field that Abraham had purchased from the sons of Heth' — the narrative deliberately recalls the transaction of chapter 23, reinforcing the legal validity of Abraham's ownership. In death as in life, Abraham's only permanent foothold in the promised land is this purchased burial plot.

10. 'There Abraham was buried, with Sarah his wife' — husband and wife reunited in death. The simplicity of the statement carries enormous weight: the man who left everything to follow God's call now rests in the one piece of ground he bought with full price in the land of promise.
11. 'God blessed Isaac his son' — the blessing passes from Abraham to Isaac without interruption. God himself ensures the continuity of the covenant. The verb *barakh* ('blessed') echoes the comprehensive blessing of Abraham in 24:1, signaling that Isaac now stands in his father's place as the recipient of divine favor.
11. 'Beer-lahai-roi' — 'the well of the Living One who sees me.' This is the well where Hagar encountered the angel of the LORD (16:13–14). That Isaac settles here is richly suggestive: the son of promise dwells at the site where the rejected concubine's son received divine attention. It may hint at a connection or reconciliation between the two family lines, or simply at Isaac's awareness of God's providential care for all of Abraham's household.
12. 'The generations of Ishmael' (*toledot Yishma'el*) — this is the fifth *toledot* formula in Genesis (after 2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1). Ishmael receives his own *toledot* section, affirming his significance as Abraham's son. Though he is not the covenant heir, he is not forgotten or insignificant.
12. 'Hagar the Egyptian, Sarah's maidservant' — Ishmael's identity is defined through both parents and through social status. He is Abraham's son (dignity), born of Hagar (Egyptian origin), who was Sarah's servant (subordinate status). Every element of this introduction carries weight for understanding Ishmael's place in the narrative.
13. 'By their names, according to their generations' (*bishmotam letoledotam*) — the double specification emphasizes both individual identity (names) and collective continuity (generations). Each name represents a tribal group that will inhabit the Arabian Peninsula and surrounding regions.
13. Nebaioth (*Nevayot*) — the firstborn, later associated with the Nabataeans of Petra and the Arabian trade routes. Kedar (*Qedar*) — becomes a significant Arabian tribe, referenced frequently in later Scripture as a symbol of the desert-dwelling nomadic life (Psalm 120:5; Song of Songs 1:5; Isaiah 21:16–17; 42:11; 60:7). Kedar represents wealth in flocks and martial prowess.
14. Dumah (*Dumah*) — the name means 'silence' and is associated with the oasis of Dumat al-Jandal in northern Arabia, a significant caravan crossroads. Isaiah 21:11 contains an oracle concerning Dumah. Massa (*Massa*) — the name means 'burden' or 'oracle'; some scholars connect the 'words of King Lemuel' and the 'words of Agur' in Proverbs 30–31 with this Massa tribe, reading the Hebrew *massa* as a proper noun rather than the common noun 'oracle.'
15. Tema (*Teima*) — an important oasis in northwestern Arabia, mentioned in Job 6:19 and Isaiah 21:14 as a caravan stop. Jetur (*Yetur*) and Naphish (*Nafish*) — these two tribes appear in 1 Chronicles 5:19 as opponents of the Transjordanian Israelite tribes (Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh). The Itureans of the New Testament era (Luke 3:1) are likely descendants of Jetur.
15. Kedemah (*Qedmah*) — the last name means 'eastward,' echoing the direction in which Abraham sent his non-covenant sons (v. 6). The list ends with a geographic marker pointing toward the eastern desert, the domain of Ishmael's descendants.
16. 'Settlements and encampments' (*chatsereihem uveteirotam*) — *chatsar* refers to an walled village or settlement, while *tirah* denotes a more fortified encampment or enclosure. Together they describe a semi-nomadic lifestyle: some permanent habitations, some temporary encampments following seasonal patterns.
16. 'Twelve princes' (*shnem-asar nesi'im*) — this directly fulfills God's promise to Abraham in 17:20: 'As for Ishmael... I will make him fruitful and multiply him greatly. He shall father twelve princes, and I will make him into a great nation.' The word *nasi* (prince, chieftain) denotes tribal leadership. The number twelve parallels the later twelve tribes of Israel through Jacob, suggesting a deliberate structural echo: both sons of Abraham produce twelve-fold tribal organizations.
17. A hundred and thirty-seven years — Ishmael's lifespan is substantial, though shorter than Abraham's (175) and Isaac's (180). Sarah also died at 137 (23:1), creating a numerical echo between the mother who expelled Ishmael and Ishmael himself.
17. 'Breathed his last and died and was gathered to his people' (*vayyigva vayyamot vayye'asef el-ammav*) — Ishmael receives the same dignified death formula as Abraham (v. 8), with one exception: 'in a good old age, old and full of days' is omitted. Nonetheless, the phrase 'gathered to his people' extends to Ishmael the same hope of postmortem continuity granted to Abraham.
18. 'From Havilah to Shur' — this defines the geographic range of the Ishmaelite tribes: from Havilah (likely in northeastern Arabia or perhaps southwestern Arabia) to Shur (in the northwestern Sinai, near Egypt's border). This is a vast territory encompassing much of the Arabian Peninsula and its northern reaches.
18. 'He settled over against all his kinsmen' (*al-penei khol-echav nafal*) — the verb *nafal* literally means 'he fell,' but here it likely means 'he settled' or 'he dwelt.' This echoes the divine oracle in 16:12: 'He shall dwell over against all his kinsmen.' The prophecy is fulfilled: Ishmael's descendants live in proximity and sometimes tension with their related peoples, maintaining their distinct identity alongside — but apart from — the covenant line.
19. 'The generations of Isaac' (*toledot Yitschaq*) — this is the sixth *toledot* formula and one of the most important, as it introduces the central narrative of the next several chapters: the Jacob-Esau conflict, Isaac's sojourning, and the transmission of the blessing. The *toledot* of Isaac will extend through chapter 35.
19. 'Abraham fathered Isaac' (*Avraham holid et-Yitschaq*) — the seemingly redundant repetition ('Isaac, Abraham's son; Abraham fathered Isaac') creates a verbal bracket that frames Isaac's identity entirely within his relationship to Abraham. Isaac is defined as Abraham's heir — both biologically and covenantally. The emphasis is deliberate: after listing all of Abraham's other offspring (vv. 1–4, 12–16), the narrative returns emphatically to the one through whom the promise continues.

20. 'Forty years old' — Isaac was born when Abraham was 100 (21:5), and Abraham sent his servant when he was at least 140 (cf. 24:1). Isaac is 40 at his marriage, placing the events of chapter 24 in proper chronological context. The age of 40 in the biblical world often marks the threshold of mature adulthood.
20. 'Bethuel the Aramean from Paddan-aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean' — the double designation 'Aramean' (Arammi) and the place name Paddan-aram ('the field of Aram') firmly locate Rebekah's origins in Upper Mesopotamia. Laban is mentioned here for the first time as Rebekah's brother; he will become a major figure in Jacob's story (chapters 29–31). His introduction here plants a narrative seed that will germinate two generations later.
21. 'Prayed earnestly' (vayye'tar) — the verb *atar* is rare and intensive, meaning to pray with urgency, to entreat, to plead. It is stronger than the common word for prayer (*palal*). Isaac does not casually ask; he labors in prayer. The same verb is used for its result: 'the LORD was moved by his prayer' (vayye'ater lo) — the wordplay between the active and passive forms of *atar* creates a verbal mirror: Isaac entreated, and God was entreated.
21. 'She was barren' (aqarah hi) — Rebekah joins Sarah (11:30) as a barren matriarch. This pattern will continue with Rachel (29:31). The barrenness of the covenant mothers is a recurring motif establishing that Israel's existence is not a natural inevitability but a divine gift. Isaac was 40 at marriage (v. 20) and 60 at the twins' birth (v. 26), implying twenty years of barrenness and prayer.
22. 'Struggled' (vayyitrotsatsu) — the verb *ratsats* means to crush, to break, to shatter. In its reflexive-reciprocal form (*hitpolel*), it describes two forces violently colliding. This is not gentle kicking; it is a prenatal war. The intensity of the language foreshadows the lifelong conflict between the two nations emerging from Rebekah's womb.
22. 'If it is so, why is this happening to me?' (im-ken lammah zeh anokhi) — Rebekah's cry is compressed and ambiguous. Literally: 'If so, why this — I?' Interpreters have heard in it various anguished questions: 'If this is what pregnancy is like, why did I want it?' or 'If God answered our prayer, why is it so painful?' or even 'Why do I exist?' The raw brevity conveys genuine distress.
22. 'She went to inquire of the LORD' (vattelek lidrosh et-YHWH) — the verb *darash* means to seek, to inquire, to consult. Rebekah takes independent initiative in seeking God — she does not ask Isaac to inquire for her. This establishes Rebekah as a woman of direct spiritual agency, a trait that will shape the narrative profoundly in chapter 27.
23. 'Two nations are in your womb' (shenei goyim bevitnekh) — the oracle reveals that Rebekah carries not merely two children but two nations. The word *goyim* ('nations') elevates the pregnancy from a personal event to a geopolitical prophecy. The struggle in her womb is the opening battle of a national conflict.
23. 'Two peoples shall be divided from within you' (ushnei le'ummim mimme'ayikh yipperedu) — the verb *parad* ('to separate, to divide') recalls the division of peoples after Babel (10:32). From the moment of birth, these two will diverge — in character, destiny, and relationship to God.
23. 'The older shall serve the younger' (rav ya'avod tsa'ir) — this climactic line overturns the natural order of primogeniture. The Hebrew is deliberately ambiguous: *rav* can mean 'the older' or 'the greater,' and *tsa'ir* means 'the younger' or 'the lesser.' The oracle can be read as 'the older shall serve the younger' or 'the greater shall serve the lesser.' This divine reversal of the firstborn's privilege is a pattern throughout Genesis (Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau, Joseph over his brothers, Ephraim over Manasseh) and throughout Scripture.
24. 'When her days were fulfilled' (vayyimle'u yameha laledet) — the language of fulfillment (male, 'to fill, to complete') suggests that the pregnancy ran its full, appointed course. There is a sense of divine timing: the birth happens when the days are 'full,' not premature, not late.
24. 'Behold — twins' (vehinne tomim) — the narrative withholds the information until this dramatic moment. The reader, who knows the oracle, now watches it begin to unfold. The word *tomim* (twins) is spelled defectively here (without the expected *aleph*), which some commentators distinguish from the full spelling used for Tamar's twins in 38:27. Whether this orthographic difference carries meaning is debated.
25. 'Red' (*admoni*) — this adjective, from the root *a-d-m*, links Esau to the color red and thus to his later name Edom (v. 30). The same root gives us *adam* ('man,' from *adamah*, 'red earth') and *dam* ('blood'). Esau's redness is his defining physical trait, and it will be punned upon when he demands the 'red stuff' (*ha'adom ha'adom*) in v. 30.
25. 'Like a garment of hair' (*kadderet se'ar*) — the word *adderet* means a cloak or mantle, and *se'ar* means hair. Esau emerges covered in hair so thick it looks like a fur garment. The word *se'ar* also connects to *Se'ir*, the mountainous region where Esau's descendants will settle (32:3; 36:8). Name, appearance, and geography are all woven together.
25. 'They called his name Esau' (*Esav*) — the etymology of Esau is debated. Some connect it to *asah* ('to make, to do'), suggesting he came out 'fully made' or 'completed.' Others relate it to an Arabic root meaning 'hairy' or 'rough.' The name may simply be a description of his appearance: the rough, finished-looking one.
26. 'His hand was grasping Esau's heel' (*veyado ochezet ba'aqev Esav*) — from the womb, Jacob is already reaching for what belongs to Esau. The heel-grasping is an extraordinary birth sign: the second twin emerging with his hand locked around the first one's heel. It is simultaneously a physical detail, a character revelation, and a prophecy enacted.
26. 'Jacob' (*Ya'aqov*) — the name derives from *aqev* ('heel'), meaning 'he grasps the heel' or, by extension, 'he supplants.' The verb *aqav* means to follow at the heel, to track, and by metaphorical extension, to supplant or deceive. Esau will later make the pun explicit: 'Is he not rightly named Jacob? For he has supplanted me (*vayya'qeveni*) these two times' (27:36). The name carries both a physical description and a moral characterization.

26. Isaac was sixty years old — since Isaac married at 40 (v. 20), this confirms twenty years of barrenness and prayer before the twins' birth. The long wait parallels Abraham and Sarah's wait for Isaac and reinforces that the covenant children come not by natural timing but by divine gift.
27. 'A man skilled in hunting, a man of the field' (ish yode'a tsayid, ish sadeh) — Esau is defined by two phrases: he knows hunting (the verb yada implies mastery and expertise), and he belongs to the open field. He is outdoor, physical, and wild. The phrase 'man of the field' echoes Cain, who was a 'worker of the ground' (4:2), and later Nimrod, the 'mighty hunter before the LORD' (10:9). The field in Genesis is often a place of danger and violence.
27. 'A quiet man, dwelling in tents' (ish tam yoshev ohalim) — the word tam is often translated 'plain' (KJV) but more accurately means 'complete, wholesome, blameless, integrated.' It is the same word used to describe Job (Job 1:1) and Noah's expected conduct (6:9, tamim). Jacob is not 'plain' in the sense of ordinary; he is tam in the sense of morally intact or undivided. 'Dwelling in tents' suggests the domestic, pastoral life of the shepherd and the camp — the civilized sphere as opposed to Esau's wild field.
28. 'Isaac loved Esau, for game was in his mouth' (vayyehav Yitschaq et-Esav ki-tsayid befv) — the phrase 'game in his mouth' (tsayid befv) is ambiguous: it could mean Isaac liked the taste of Esau's hunted meat (literally, the game was in Isaac's mouth), or that Esau was verbally skilled — 'hunting' in his mouth, meaning he knew how to talk to his father. Most interpreters favor the culinary reading: Isaac's preference for Esau is linked to sensory pleasure, to appetite. This creates an uncomfortable parallel with the broader narrative: Isaac's love is based on something he consumes.
28. 'But Rebekah loved Jacob' — no reason is given for Rebekah's preference. The absence of explanation may suggest that her love is less conditional than Isaac's, or it may reflect her knowledge of the oracle (v. 23): God declared that the older would serve the younger, and Rebekah aligns her affections with the divine word. The divided loyalties of the parents — father for one son, mother for the other — will drive the painful drama of chapter 27.
29. 'Was cooking stew' (vayyazed nazid) — the verb zud means 'to boil, to cook,' and nazid is 'stew' or 'pottage.' The wordplay between the verb and noun (vayyazed nazid) is emphatic. Some commentators note that zud also carries the meaning 'to act presumptuously' (cf. Exodus 18:11; Deuteronomy 17:13), hinting at the audacity of what Jacob is about to do.
29. 'He was exhausted' (vehu ayef) — the word ayef means utterly spent, drained of strength. Esau returns from the field in a state of total depletion. This sets up his willingness to trade long-term value (the birthright) for immediate physical relief — a choice the narrative will judge severely (v. 34).
30. 'Let me gulp down' (hal'iteni) — the verb la'at means to swallow greedily, to gulp, to gobble. It is used elsewhere only for feeding animals (cf. the related noun in Proverbs 26:15, where the sluggard is too lazy to bring food to his mouth). The word is coarse and animal-like, portraying Esau as a man reduced to pure appetite. He doesn't ask to 'eat' (akhal) — he demands to have food crammed into his mouth.
30. 'This red — this red stuff' (min-ha'adom ha'adom hazzeh) — Esau cannot even name what he wants. He points and sputters: 'that red, that red.' The repetition and the absence of a noun (he doesn't say 'red stew' or 'red food') convey breathless, almost incoherent urgency. He is so depleted that language itself fails him.
30. 'Therefore his name was called Edom' — the narrator provides the etymology: Edom comes from adom ('red'). Esau's grasping demand for the red stew becomes his national identity. An entire people will be named for this moment of appetite. The Edomites will settle in the red sandstone mountains of Seir, reinforcing the chromatic connection.
31. 'Sell me your birthright, here and now' (mikhray khayom et-bekhoratekha li) — the word khayom means 'today, right now, this very day.' Jacob demands immediate transaction, no delay, no time for Esau to reconsider. The urgency mirrors Esau's urgency for food: appetite meets ambition in a single moment.
31. 'Birthright' (bekhorah) — the birthright (from bekhor, 'firstborn') included a double portion of the inheritance, family leadership, and in this family, presumably the covenantal promises given to Abraham and Isaac. It was the firstborn's most precious possession. Jacob's willingness to barter food for this treasure reveals his understanding of its value — an understanding Esau conspicuously lacks.
32. 'I am about to die' (hinneh anokhi holekh lamut) — literally, 'Behold, I am going to die.' Esau's self-assessment is almost certainly hyperbolic: he is hungry and tired, not mortally endangered. But his words reveal a man who lives entirely in the present moment, with no capacity for long-term thinking. A birthright has value only to someone who can imagine a future; Esau cannot see past his current hunger.
32. 'What good is a birthright to me?' (velammah-zeh li bekhorah) — the question is devastating in its shortsightedness. Esau dismisses the birthright as worthless because it cannot satisfy his immediate physical need. The narrator will render judgment on this attitude in v. 34. Hebrews 12:16 later calls Esau a 'profane person' (bebelos) for this act — one who treats the sacred as common.
33. 'Swear to me today' (hishave'ah li kayyom) — Jacob demands an oath to make the transaction irrevocable. An oath before God cannot be undone. Jacob understands legal formalities and ensures that this is not a casual promise Esau can later deny. The insistence on an oath shows Jacob's calculating nature: he leaves nothing to chance.
33. 'He swore to him and sold his birthright to Jacob' — the sequence is rapid and final: oath, then sale. The transaction is complete. Esau has legally and formally relinquished his firstborn status. What took a moment of weakness to surrender will take years of anguish to regret (27:34, 36).
34. 'Bread and lentil stew' (lechem unezid adashim) — now we learn what the 'red stuff' was: lentil stew. Red lentils are a common food in the ancient Near East, a humble, everyday dish. The birthright of the firstborn was traded for the most ordinary of meals. The inclusion of bread (lechem) shows Jacob provided a full meal, not a mere taste.

34. 'He ate and drank and rose and went away' (vayyokhal vayyesht vayyaqom vayyvelakh) — four verbs in rapid succession, all in the wayyiqtol (narrative past) form, create a staccato rhythm: ate-drank-rose-left. The machine-gun pacing conveys Esau's total lack of reflection. There is no pause, no moment of regret, no hesitation. He consumes and departs as though nothing of consequence has occurred.
34. 'So Esau despised his birthright' (vayyivez Esav et-habbekhorah) — the narrator's verdict is devastating. The verb bazah means to despise, to regard as worthless, to treat with contempt. It is a word of moral judgment. Esau did not merely sell his birthright; he despised it. He assigned it zero value. This editorial comment transforms a story about a hungry man and a clever brother into a theological parable about the difference between those who value the sacred and those who do not.

26

Summary: *Famine strikes, and God tells Isaac not to go to Egypt but to stay in Gerar, renewing the Abrahamic promises. Isaac repeats his father's wife-sister deception with Rebekah. He prospers enormously, provoking Philistine envy. After disputes over wells, Isaac digs Rehoboth ('wide spaces'). God appears at Beersheba, and Abimelech comes to make peace. Esau's Hittite wives grieve Isaac and Rebekah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the only chapter in Genesis focused entirely on Isaac as the central actor, and it is saturated with echoes of Abraham: the same famine, the same Abimelech, the same deception, the same well-digging, the same Beersheba covenant. Isaac's identity is defined by re-opening his father's wells and re-calling them by Abraham's names (v. 18) — he is the faithful steward of inherited blessing rather than a pioneer of new territory. The three wells — Esek ('contention'), Sitnah ('hostility'), and Rehoboth ('wide spaces') — trace a progression from conflict to peace.*

Translation Friction: *The verb metsacheq (v. 8), describing Isaac 'caressing' Rebekah, is the same root as Isaac's name (tsachaq, 'to laugh') — Isaac was 'Isaac-ing' with his wife, a wordplay impossible to reproduce in English. We rendered it as 'caressing' based on context and noted the pun. The phrase 'my instructions, my commands, my decrees, and my teachings' (v. 5) uses Mosaic vocabulary anachronistically for Abraham, and we rendered it directly while noting the anticipation of Sinai legislation.*

Connections: *God's command 'do not go down to Egypt' (26:2) contrasts with Abraham's descent (12:10) and foreshadows Jacob's eventual migration (46:3-4). The well disputes anticipate Israel's wilderness conflicts over water (Exodus 17:1-7; Numbers 20:1-13). The Beersheba theophany (26:24) echoes Abraham's experience there (21:33). Esau's marriages (26:34-35) motivate the deception of chapter 27.*

¹A famine struck the land — separate from the earlier famine during Abraham's lifetime. So Isaac traveled to Gerar, to Abimelech, king of the Philistines. ²And the LORD appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt. Dwell in the land that I shall tell you of. ³Sojourn in this land, and I will be with you, and I will bless you, for to you and to your offspring I will give all these lands, and I will establish the oath that I swore to Abraham your father. ⁴And I will multiply your offspring as the stars of heaven, and I will give to your offspring all these lands. And in your offspring all the nations of the earth shall be blessed. ⁵because Abraham listened to me and observed my instructions, my commands, my decrees, and my teachings." ⁶And Isaac settled in Gerar. ⁷And the men of the place asked about his wife, and he said, "She is my sister," for he was afraid to say "my wife," thinking, "The men of the place might kill me on account of Rebekah, for she is beautiful in appearance." ⁸And it happened, when he had been there a long time, that Abimelech king of the Philistines looked out through a window and saw — and behold, Isaac was caressing Rebekah his wife. ⁹And Abimelech called Isaac and said, "Surely she is your wife! How then could you say, 'She is my sister'?" And Isaac said to him, "Because I thought, 'Lest I die on account of her.'" ¹⁰And Abimelech said, "What is this you have done to us? One of the people might easily have lain with your wife, and you would have brought guilt upon us." ¹¹And Abimelech commanded all the people, saying, "Whoever touches this man or his wife shall surely be put to death." ¹²And Isaac sowed in that land and reaped in that year a hundredfold, and the LORD blessed him. ¹³And the man became great, and he continued to grow greater and greater until he was very great. ¹⁴And he had possessions of flocks and possessions of herds and a great household, and the Philistines envied him. ¹⁵And all the wells that his father's servants had dug in the days of Abraham his father, the Philistines had stopped up and filled with earth. ¹⁶And Abimelech said to Isaac, "Go away from us, for you have become much mightier than we." ¹⁷And Isaac departed from there

and encamped in the valley of Gerar and settled there. ¹⁸And Isaac dug again the wells of water that had been dug in the days of Abraham his father, which the Philistines had stopped up after the death of Abraham, and he called them by the names that his father had called them. ¹⁹When Isaac's servants dug in the wadi, they discovered a well fed by flowing water. ²⁰And the herdsmen of Gerar quarreled with the herdsmen of Isaac, saying, "The water is ours!" So he called the name of the well Esek, because they contended with him. ²¹And they dug another well, and they quarreled over that one also. So he called its name Sitnah. ²²And he moved from there and dug another well, and they did not quarrel over it. So he called its name Rehoboth, and he said, "For now the LORD has made room for us, and we shall be fruitful in the land." ²³From there he traveled up to Beersheba. ²⁴And the LORD appeared to him that night and said, "I am the God of Abraham your father. Do not fear, for I am with you, and I will bless you and multiply your offspring for the sake of Abraham my servant." ²⁵And he built an altar there and called upon the name of the LORD and pitched his tent there. And Isaac's servants dug a well there. ²⁶And Abimelech went to him from Gerar, with Ahuzzath his adviser and Phicol the commander of his army. ²⁷And Isaac said to them, "Why have you come to me, seeing that you hated me and sent me away from you?" ²⁸And they said, "We have clearly seen that the LORD is with you. And we said, 'Let there be an oath between us, between us and you, and let us make a covenant with you,' ²⁹that you will do us no harm, just as we have not harmed you and just as we have done to you only good and have sent you away in peace. You are now the blessed of the LORD." ³⁰He prepared a feast for them, and they shared a meal together. ³¹And they rose early in the morning and swore an oath to one another. And Isaac sent them away, and they departed from him in peace. ³²And it happened on that very day that Isaac's servants came and told him about the well that they had dug, and they said to him, "We have found water!" ³³He named it Shibah, which is why the city has been called Beersheba ever since. ³⁴When Esau was forty, he married Judith, daughter of Beerli the Hittite, and Basemath, daughter of Elon the Hittite. ³⁵And they were a bitterness of spirit to Isaac and to Rebekah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'A famine in the land, besides the first famine' (ra'av ba'arets millevad hara'av harishon) — the narrator deliberately connects this famine to the one in Abraham's time (12:10). The parallel is intentional: just as Abraham faced famine and was tempted to go to Egypt, Isaac will face the same test. The word millevad ('besides, apart from') distinguishes the two events while linking them thematically. History is rhyming.
2. 'Abimelech king of the Philistines' — this is likely a different individual from the Abimelech of chapters 20–21, given the passage of roughly 80–90 years. 'Abimelech' may be a dynastic title (like Pharaoh) rather than a personal name; it means 'my father is king.' The term 'Philistines' here is likely anachronistic, referring to pre-Philistine populations in the coastal region who were later identified with the Sea Peoples' Philistine culture.
3. 'The LORD appeared to him' (vayyera elav YHWH) — this is the first recorded divine appearance to Isaac. Until now, Isaac has been the recipient of inherited blessings and others' arrangements. Now God speaks to him directly, establishing Isaac's own covenant relationship.
4. 'Do not go down to Egypt' (al-tered Mitsraymah) — the command is an explicit correction of the path Abraham took (12:10). Abraham went to Egypt during famine and encountered disaster (the Pharaoh-Sarah episode). God prevents Isaac from repeating his father's mistake. The verb yarad ('to go down') for traveling to Egypt is consistently used in Genesis and carries overtones of descent — geographical, spiritual, and moral.
5. 'Sojourn in this land' (gur ba'arets hazzo't) — the verb gur means to dwell as a resident alien, a sojourner without permanent ownership rights. God tells Isaac to stay in the land of promise, but as a stranger in it. The tension is profound: the land belongs to Isaac by divine promise, but he will live in it as a foreigner. This paradox defines the patriarchal experience.
6. 'I will be with you and I will bless you' (ve'ehyeh immekha va'avarekhekkah) — the promise of divine presence ('I will be with you') is the most fundamental assurance in Scripture. It precedes and grounds the promise of blessing. God's being-with is not passive accompaniment but active, sustaining presence. The phrase echoes God's later self-revelation to Moses: 'I will be' (ehyeh, Exodus 3:14).
7. 'I will establish the oath that I swore to Abraham your father' (vahaqimoti et-hashhevu'ah asher nishba'ti le'Avraham avikha) — God binds himself to his previous word. The covenant is not renegotiated with each generation; it is 'established' (qum — to stand, to be confirmed). Isaac inherits not a new promise but the continuation of an existing one.
8. 'As the stars of heaven' (kekokehevi hashamayim) — the stellar metaphor for Abraham's descendants (15:5; 22:17) is now applied to Isaac's. The promise of innumerable offspring is transferred without diminishment. The three elements of the Abrahamic promise — offspring, land, and universal blessing — are all restated.
9. 'In your offspring all the nations of the earth shall be blessed' (vehitbarakhu vezar'akha kol goyei ha'arets) — the universal dimension of the promise: the covenant is not for Israel's benefit alone but for the blessing of all nations. The hitpa'el form of barakh can mean 'shall bless themselves' (reflexive: nations will invoke Isaac's seed as a model of blessing) or 'shall be blessed' (passive: God will bless nations through Isaac's line). Either reading affirms the outward trajectory of the covenant.

5. 'Because' (eqev) — this word means 'on account of, because.' Strikingly, it shares the same consonantal root as aqev ('heel'), Jacob's name. Whether the wordplay is intentional, the effect is that the covenant's continuation is grounded in Abraham's obedience — a heel-print of faithfulness that marks the path forward.
5. 'My charge, my commandments, my statutes, and my laws' (mishmarti, mitsvotai, chuqqotai, vetorotai) — this fourfold description of Abraham's obedience uses terminology that later becomes technical vocabulary for the Mosaic law: mishmereth (charge, duty), mitsvah (commandment), choq (statute, decree), and torah (law, instruction). The verse implies that Abraham observed divine instruction long before Sinai. This is one of the most discussed verses in Jewish tradition, raising the question of what 'laws' Abraham kept and whether the patriarchs had access to some form of divine law before Moses.
5. The plural torotai ('my laws/instructions') is especially notable — the plural of torah. It suggests multiple bodies of divine instruction or comprehensive divine teaching, grounding the Abrahamic covenant in obedience, not merely in promise.
6. 'Isaac settled in Gerar' — in obedience to the divine command (vv. 2–3), Isaac remains in the land rather than descending to Egypt. Gerar was a city in the western Negev, near the border with Egypt. It is the same location where Abraham had his encounter with the earlier Abimelech (chapter 20). Isaac's obedience is quiet and immediate — no argument, no negotiation, no alternative plan.
7. 'She is my sister' (achoti hi) — Isaac repeats the exact deception Abraham used twice (12:13; 20:2). Unlike Abraham, Isaac has no half-truth to lean on: Rebekah is not his sister in any sense. The pattern of the father's sin recurring in the son is a sobering narrative motif. The same fear that drove Abraham — that foreign men would kill him for his beautiful wife — drives Isaac to the same lie.
7. 'Beautiful in appearance' (tovat mar'eh) — the same phrase used for Sarah (12:11, yefat mar'eh) and Rachel (29:17). Rebekah's beauty is both a gift and a danger in this patriarchal world, where a beautiful woman could become a motive for murder. The narrative does not blame Rebekah; it exposes the moral failure of the husband who should protect her but instead endangers her for his own safety.
8. 'When he had been there a long time' (ki arkhu-lo sham hayyamim) — literally, 'when the days grew long for him there.' The deception has been sustained for an extended period. The longer it continues, the greater the potential damage when discovered.
8. 'Isaac was caressing Rebekah' (Yitschaq metsacheq et Rivqah) — the verb metsacheq is a participle from tsachaq, meaning 'to laugh, to play, to caress, to fondle.' This is the same root as Isaac's name (Yitschaq = 'he laughs'). The wordplay is unmistakable and deliberate: Isaac ('he laughs') was 'laughing with' (metsacheq) Rebekah in a way that was clearly intimate, not sibling-like. Abimelech sees through the deception instantly because the nature of their interaction is obviously marital, not fraternal. The verb metsacheq appeared earlier in 21:9 (Ishmael 'laughing/mock') and 19:14 (Lot's sons-in-law thinking he was 'joking'). Each occurrence plays on Isaac's name and the theme of laughter.
9. 'Surely she is your wife!' (akh hinneh ishtekha hi) — the particle akh ('surely, indeed') expresses Abimelech's certainty and indignation. There is no ambiguity: the king saw enough to know the truth. His rhetorical question ('How could you say...?') is a rebuke. For the second time in Genesis, a pagan king rebukes a patriarch for a wife-sister deception (cf. 20:9–10). The moral clarity of the foreign ruler contrasts painfully with the covenant bearer's moral failure.
9. 'Lest I die on account of her' (pen-amut aleha) — Isaac's excuse is the same as Abraham's: fear for his own life. The excuse is neither justified nor condemned by the narrator, but Abimelech's reaction (v. 10) reveals its recklessness: Isaac's deception could have caused someone to sin unknowingly.
10. 'What is this you have done to us?' (mah-zo't asita lanu) — Abimelech's question echoes God's question to Eve (3:13) and the charges of previous victims of patriarchal deception. The verb asita ('you have done') puts the blame squarely on Isaac.
10. 'You would have brought guilt upon us' (vehevetu aleinu ashame) — the word ashame means guilt, guilt-offering, or the liability incurred by sin. Abimelech understands that sexual violation carries objective guilt before God, regardless of intent. If someone had unknowingly taken Rebekah, the guilt would have fallen on the entire community. Isaac's self-protective lie would have made the innocent guilty. The pagan king grasps a moral principle that the patriarch failed to consider.
11. 'Whoever touches this man or his wife shall surely be put to death' (hannogea ba'ish hazzeh uve'ishto mot yumat) — Abimelech issues a capital decree protecting both Isaac and Rebekah. The verb naga ('to touch') here means to harm or interfere with. The penalty formula mot yumat ('dying he shall die' = 'shall surely be put to death') is the strongest legal sanction available.
11. The irony is profound: a pagan king provides the covenant bearer with greater protection than the covenant bearer provided for himself. God's promise 'I will be with you' (v. 3) is fulfilled through an unlikely instrument — the very king Isaac feared and deceived. Providence works through Abimelech's integrity to protect the covenant family.
12. 'Sowed in that land and reaped a hundredfold' (vayyizra... vayyimtsa... me'ah she'arim) — the hundred-fold return is extraordinary agricultural productivity, signaling unmistakable divine blessing. Isaac is the only patriarch described as farming; Abraham and Jacob are predominantly pastoralists. The phrase me'ah she'arim literally means 'a hundred measures' or 'a hundred gates,' indicating that for every unit sown, a hundred were harvested.
12. 'The LORD blessed him' (vayevarakhtehu YHWH) — the narrator confirms what the yield implies: this is not natural luck or superior technique but divine action. The blessing promised in v. 3 ('I will bless you') is already being fulfilled. The word barakh brackets this section: God promised to bless (v. 3), and God blesses (v. 12).

13. 'Became great... greater and greater... very great' (vayyigdal... halokh vegadel... ki-gadal me'od) — the root gadal ('to be great, to grow') appears three times in escalating intensity. The threefold repetition creates a verbal crescendo: great, then growing greater, then very great. The literary device conveys the relentless, unstoppable expansion of Isaac's prosperity — a visible sign of covenant blessing that cannot be hidden from his neighbors.
14. 'Possessions of flocks and herds and a great household' (miqneh-tson umiqneh vaqar va'avuddah rabbah) — the catalog of wealth includes two categories of livestock (small cattle and large cattle) and a large body of servants or workers (avuddah, from eved, 'servant'). This is the classic description of patriarchal wealth.
14. 'The Philistines envied him' (vayeqan'u oto Pelishtim) — the verb qana means to be jealous, to envy. Envy is the inevitable response of those who witness blessing they do not share. This envy will drive the conflict of the next several verses: the stopping of wells, the expulsion, the disputes. Envy, not justice, motivates Philistine hostility toward Isaac.
15. 'The wells that his father's servants had dug' — wells in the ancient Near East were lifelines: without them, livestock died, agriculture failed, and settlements became uninhabitable. They represented enormous labor to dig and were considered valuable property. Abraham's wells were part of his legacy to Isaac — tangible evidence of covenant occupation of the land.
15. 'Stopped up and filled with earth' (sitemum... vayemale'um afar) — the Philistines do not merely neglect the wells; they actively destroy them by filling them with dirt. This is an act of economic warfare and territorial denial. By destroying the wells, they attempt to erase Abraham's presence from the land and make it uninhabitable for Isaac. The act is a direct assault on the covenant promise of land.
16. 'Go away from us' (lekh me'immanu) — the command lekh ('go') echoes God's command to Abraham in 12:1 (lekh-lekha, 'go forth'). But here it is spoken by a human king, not by God, and the direction is away from, not toward. Abimelech expels Isaac not for wrongdoing but for being too successful. Blessing itself becomes the cause of exile.
16. 'You have become much mightier than we' (ki-atsamta mimmenu me'od) — the verb atsam means to be strong, mighty, numerous. Abimelech perceives Isaac's growing power as a threat. The statement is both a compliment and a confession of fear. The same dynamic will recur with Israel in Egypt: 'The Israelites have become much too numerous and strong for us' (Exodus 1:9) — a parallel that links Isaac's expulsion to the later Egyptian oppression.
17. 'Encamped in the valley of Gerar' (vayyichan benachal-Gerar) — Isaac does not leave the region entirely; he moves from the city to the wadi (seasonal riverbed) of Gerar. The nachal (wadi, valley) is a less desirable location than the city itself, but it provides access to water — the critical resource. Isaac's withdrawal is measured: he obeys Abimelech's command but remains as close to the promised land as possible.
18. 'Dug again the wells' (vayyachpor et-be'erot hamayim) — Isaac's act of re-digging is an act of restoration and reclamation. He does not dig new wells; he recovers what his father established. This is a parable of covenant faithfulness: each generation must reclaim the spiritual inheritance of the previous generation. What the world fills with earth, the faithful must dig out again.
18. 'He called them by the names that his father had called them' (vayyiqra lahen shemot kasshemot asher-qara lahen aviv) — naming is an act of authority and identity. By restoring the original names, Isaac resists the Philistine attempt to erase Abraham's legacy. He insists on continuity with the past. The wells are not new discoveries but recovered inheritances, and they bear their original names as proof of prior claim.
19. 'A well of living water' (be'er mayim chayyim) — 'living water' (mayim chayyim) means flowing, spring-fed water as opposed to stagnant cistern water. It is the most precious kind of water: fresh, pure, self-renewing. The phrase carries deep symbolic resonance throughout Scripture. Jeremiah will call God 'the fountain of living water' (Jeremiah 2:13; 17:13), and Jesus will speak of 'living water' that becomes 'a spring of water welling up to eternal life' (John 4:10–14; 7:38). Isaac's servants strike the richest possible water source — a sign of divine provision in the midst of conflict.
20. 'The water is ours!' (lanu hammayim) — the Gerarites claim ownership of water that Isaac's servants discovered. In the arid Negev, water rights were a matter of survival and the most common cause of tribal conflict. The Gerarites assert prior territorial claim over the natural resources of their valley.
20. 'Esek' (Eseq) — the name means 'contention' or 'dispute,' from the verb asaq ('to quarrel, to contend'). Isaac names the well after the conflict, not after the discovery. The name preserves the memory of injustice: this well was found by Isaac's labor but claimed by others. Rather than fight, Isaac moves on — a pattern of non-violent response that characterizes his dealings throughout this chapter.
21. 'Sitnah' (Sitnah) — the name means 'enmity, hostility, accusation,' from the root satan ('to oppose, to accuse'). This is the same root that gives us the word 'Satan' (the accuser, the adversary). The escalation from Esek ('contention') to Sitnah ('enmity') shows the conflict intensifying. What began as a property dispute has become personal hostility.
21. Isaac's response is again to move on rather than retaliate. He absorbs the loss and digs elsewhere. This non-violent, yielding posture is unique among the patriarchs. Abraham fought a war (chapter 14) and negotiated aggressively (chapter 23); Jacob will wrestle and scheme. Isaac yields.
22. 'Rehoboth' (Rehovot) — the name means 'broad places, wide spaces, room,' from the verb rachav ('to be wide, to make room'). After two wells of conflict, the third brings peace. The progression Esek Sitnah Rehoboth (contention enmity spaciousness) traces a journey from conflict to rest, from narrow constraint to divine enlargement.
22. 'The LORD has made room for us' (hirschiv YHWH lanu) — Isaac credits God, not his own persistence. The verb hirschiv (hiphil of rachav) means 'to make wide, to enlarge, to give room.' It is an act of divine spaciousness — God creates room for his people to flourish even in hostile territory. The concept appears in Psalm 4:1: 'You gave me room when I was in distress.'

22. 'We shall be fruitful in the land' (ufarinu va'arets) — the verb parah ('to be fruitful') echoes the creation blessing of 1:28 and the covenant promise of 17:6. Fruitfulness is both agricultural and demographic: Isaac expects that with divine room-making, his family and flocks will multiply in the promised land.
23. 'Went up' (vayya'al) — the verb alah ('to go up, to ascend') indicates movement from the lowland valley of Gerar toward the higher Negev plateau where Beersheba is located. In biblical geography, alah often carries spiritual overtones: going up toward God, toward the land, toward worship. Isaac ascends from the place of conflict to the place of covenant.
23. Beersheba (Be'er Shava) — the name means 'well of the oath' or 'well of seven' (see 21:31). This was already a significant site for Abraham, who planted a tamarisk tree there and called on the name of the LORD (21:33). Isaac's journey to Beersheba is a return to family sacred ground.
24. 'I am the God of Abraham your father' (anokhi Elohei Avraham avikha) — God identifies himself through the covenant relationship with Abraham. Isaac's God is not an anonymous deity but a God defined by prior commitment. This self-identification becomes the classic formula: 'the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob' (Exodus 3:6).
24. 'Do not fear, for I am with you' (al-tira ki-ittkha anokhi) — the divine 'do not fear' (al-tira) appears repeatedly at critical moments in Genesis (15:1; 21:17; 46:3). It is not a command to suppress emotion but a declaration that makes courage possible: 'I am with you' is the ground of fearlessness. Isaac, recently expelled and repeatedly defrauded, needs this reassurance.
24. 'For the sake of Abraham my servant' (ba'avur Avraham avdi) — the blessing of Isaac is explicitly grounded in Abraham's faithfulness. The term eved ('servant') is a title of honor in the Hebrew Bible, used for Moses, David, and the prophets. To be called 'God's servant' is to be identified as one whose life was defined by obedient service to the divine will.
25. 'Built an altar... called upon the name of the LORD... pitched his tent... dug a well' — four actions in sequence, each establishing Isaac's presence at Beersheba: worship (altar), prayer (calling on the name), dwelling (tent), and livelihood (well). The order is significant: worship comes first, before shelter or sustenance. Isaac's first act upon receiving the divine promise is to worship.
25. 'Called upon the name of the LORD' (vayyiqra beshem YHWH) — this phrase was first used of Enosh's generation (4:26), then of Abraham (12:8; 13:4; 21:33). Isaac continues the practice of public invocation of YHWH's name. In a polytheistic world, calling on YHWH by name is an act of testimony and allegiance.
26. 'Ahuzzath his adviser' (Achuzzat mere'ehu) — the word mere'a means 'friend, companion, adviser' — a title for a close counselor, similar to a royal advisor or 'friend of the king' (cf. 2 Samuel 15:37, where Hushai is called 'David's friend'). Ahuzzath's name may derive from achuzzah ('possession, holding'), which would be ironic given the property disputes.
26. 'Phicol the commander of his army' (Pikhol sar-tseva'o) — the same name and title appear in Abraham's encounter with Abimelech (21:22). Either this is a dynastic military title (like 'Abimelech'), or the narrative is drawing deliberate parallels between Abraham's and Isaac's experiences. The presence of the military commander underscores that this is an official diplomatic visit, not a casual one.
27. 'Why have you come to me, seeing that you hated me?' (maddua batem elai ve'attem senetem oti) — Isaac's question is direct and unsparing. He names their actions plainly: hatred (sana) and expulsion (shalach). There is no false diplomacy in his words. Isaac, often portrayed as the mildest of the patriarchs, here speaks with unflinching honesty about the injustice he endured.
27. The verb sana ('to hate') is strong. Isaac does not soften it to 'dislike' or 'inconvenience.' He identifies the emotional reality beneath the political action: they expelled him because they resented his blessing.
28. 'We have clearly seen that the LORD is with you' (ra'o ra'inu ki-hayah YHWH immakh) — the infinitive absolute construction (ra'o ra'inu, 'seeing we have seen') expresses certainty and emphasis. The Philistines acknowledge what they can no longer deny: YHWH's presence with Isaac is unmistakable. His prosperity despite persecution, his resilience despite expulsion — all point to divine favor. Even pagan observers can discern the fingerprint of God.
28. 'Let there be an oath between us' (tehi na alah beinoteinu) — the word alah means 'oath' or 'curse' (the curse invoked upon oneself if the oath is broken). They request a mutually binding agreement. Having failed to destroy Isaac through hostility, they now seek security through treaty. The verb karath ('to cut') in 'let us cut a covenant' reflects the ancient practice of cutting animals in covenant ratification (cf. 15:10, 17–18).
29. 'Just as we have not harmed you and have done to you only good' — this is a remarkable rewriting of history. The Philistines stopped up Isaac's wells (v. 15), quarreled over his new wells (vv. 20–21), and expelled him from their territory (v. 16). Yet they now characterize their treatment as benevolent. The narrative does not comment on this self-serving revision, allowing the reader to perceive the irony.
29. 'You are now the blessed of the LORD' (attah attah berukh YHWH) — despite their revisionist account, this confession is genuine and significant. Abimelech's delegation recognizes Isaac as berukh YHWH — 'blessed by the LORD.' The same title was applied to Abraham by Melchizedek (14:19). Even those who opposed Isaac cannot deny the reality of divine blessing resting on him.
30. 'He made them a feast' (vayya'as lahem mishteh) — a mishteh is a drinking feast, a banquet. Despite the history of hostility, Isaac extends generous hospitality to his former persecutors. The covenant meal is a standard element of treaty-making in the ancient Near East: sharing food creates a bond of mutual obligation and trust. Isaac's willingness to feast with those who wronged him is an act of grace and diplomacy.
31. 'Rose early in the morning' (vayyashkimu babboqer) — early rising signals urgency and seriousness throughout Genesis (19:27; 20:8; 21:14; 22:3). The oath is sworn at the first light of a new day, marking a fresh beginning in relations between Isaac and the Philistines.

31. 'They departed from him in peace' (vayyelekhum me'itto beshalom) — the keyword shalom ('peace') closes the episode. The same word was used by the Philistines in their self-serving claim (v. 29: 'we sent you away in peace'). But now shalom is genuine: the oath has established real peace. Isaac, who was expelled in enmity, now sends his visitors away in true peace — a reversal accomplished through patience, persistence, and divine blessing.
32. 'On that very day' (bayyom hahu) — the timing is providential. On the same day that Isaac makes peace with the Philistines, his servants strike water. The juxtaposition suggests divine orchestration: covenant peace and material provision arrive together.
32. 'We have found water!' (matsanu mayim) — the joyful simplicity of the announcement — just two words in Hebrew — captures the elation of finding water in the desert. After all the well disputes, after all the digging and losing and digging again, the servants can finally report success without conflict. Water, the literal and symbolic source of life, is secured.
33. 'Shibah' (Shiv'ah) — the name means 'oath' or 'seven' (from the root shava, which means both 'to swear' and 'seven'). The well's name commemorates the oath just sworn with Abimelech, linking the treaty of peace to the water of provision.
33. 'Beersheba' (Be'er Shava) — 'well of the oath' or 'well of seven.' The city's name receives a second etymological explanation here (the first was in 21:31, where Abraham named it). The double naming — once by Abraham, once by Isaac — reinforces the continuity between the generations. Both father and son made treaties at this location, both dug wells, and both connected the place to an oath. The phrase 'to this day' (ad hayyom hazzeh) is the narrator's signature, connecting the ancient event to the reader's present.
34. 'Forty years old' — the same age at which Isaac married (25:20). But where Isaac's marriage was divinely guided and covenantally appropriate, Esau's marriages are impulsive and covenantally disastrous. The age parallel highlights the contrast: same milestone, opposite outcomes.
34. 'Judith the daughter of Beeri the Hittite, and Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite' — Esau takes two wives simultaneously, both from the Hittite population. This directly violates the principle Abraham insisted upon in chapter 24: the covenant heir must not marry Canaanite women. Esau's marriages reveal his disregard for covenantal identity — the same carelessness that led him to sell his birthright. The Hittites (or more precisely, the 'sons of Heth') are the local Canaanite population from whom Abraham purchased the cave of Machpelah.
35. 'Bitterness of spirit' (morat ruach) — the phrase combines morah ('bitterness') with ruach ('spirit, breath, wind'). It describes a deep, ongoing spiritual and emotional anguish — not a momentary frustration but a persistent grief that pervades the parents' inner life. The plural subject ('they were') indicates that both wives were sources of this pain.
35. 'To Isaac and to Rebekah' — notably, both parents share this grief. Despite their divided loyalties regarding their sons (25:28), Isaac and Rebekah are united in their distress over Esau's marriages. This detail prepares for 27:46, where Rebekah's anguish over the Hittite wives becomes the pretext for sending Jacob to Paddan-aram. Esau's marriages demonstrate that he is temperamentally and spiritually unsuited to carry the covenant forward — he has no regard for the family's covenantal distinctiveness.

27

Summary: *Isaac, old and blind, prepares to bless Esau. Rebekah orchestrates a deception: Jacob dresses in Esau's clothes and goat skins, brings food to Isaac, and receives the firstborn's blessing. When Esau arrives and the truth emerges, Isaac trembles violently and Esau weeps bitterly, receiving only a lesser oracle. Esau resolves to kill Jacob; Rebekah arranges Jacob's flight to Haran.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is a masterpiece of sensory irony: the blind father gropes for truth through touch, smell, taste, and sound, while the seeing son lies through every channel. 'The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau' (v. 22) — Isaac identifies the deception through hearing but is overridden by touch. Isaac's trembling (v. 33) uses the strongest grammatical construction available (charadah gedolah ad-meod), suggesting a response beyond fear — the recognition that God's purposes have operated through the very deception he fell for.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew berakhah ('blessing') in this chapter carries performative, irreversible force — once spoken, it cannot be recalled or transferred, even when obtained through fraud. English 'blessing' has lost this binding weight, and we relied on the translator's notes to restore it. The name Ya'aqov ('Jacob') is explicitly connected to the root 'aqav ('to supplant/grab the heel') by Esau (v. 36) — a wordplay that defines Jacob's character and cannot be replicated without explanation.*

Connections: *Isaac's blessing to Jacob (27:28-29) echoes the Abrahamic promises of 12:2-3, transferring covenant status. Rebekah's willingness to bear the curse (27:13) parallels her decisive character in chapter 24. Jacob's flight to Laban in Haran (27:43) sets up the twenty-year exile of chapters 29-31. Esau's tears are recalled in Hebrews 12:17.*

¹And it came to pass, when Isaac was old, and his eyes had grown too dim to see, that he called Esau his elder son and said to him, "My son." And he said to him, "Here I am." ²And he said, "See, I have grown old. I do not know the day of my death. ³Now then, take your gear — your quiver and your bow — and go out to the field and hunt game for me. ⁴And prepare for me savory food, such as I love, and bring it to me that I may eat, so that my soul may bless you before I die." ⁵Now Rebekah was listening when Isaac spoke to Esau his son. And Esau went to the field to hunt game and bring it back. ⁶And Rebekah said to Jacob her son, "Look, I heard your father speaking to Esau your brother, saying, ⁷'Bring me game and prepare me savory food that I may eat, and I will bless you before the LORD before my death.'" ⁸Now then, my son, listen to my voice — do what I command you. ⁹Go to the flock and bring me two choice young goats from there, and I will prepare them as savory food for your father, such as he loves. ¹⁰And you shall bring it to your father, that he may eat, so that he may bless you before his death." ¹¹But Jacob protested to his mother Rebekah, "My brother Esau is covered in hair, while my skin is smooth. ¹²Perhaps my father will feel me, and I shall seem to him like a deceiver, and I will bring upon myself a curse and not a blessing." ¹³And his mother said to him, "Let your curse fall on me, my son. Only obey my voice, and go — fetch them for me." ¹⁴And he went and took them and brought them to his mother, and his mother prepared savory food, such as his father loved. ¹⁵And Rebekah took the finest garments of Esau her elder son, which were with her in the house, and clothed Jacob her younger son. ¹⁶And the skins of the young goats she put on his hands and on the smooth part of his neck. ¹⁷And she placed the savory food and the bread that she had prepared into the hand of Jacob her son. ¹⁸And he came to his father and said, "My father." And he said, "Here I am. Who are you, my son?" ¹⁹And Jacob said to his father, "I am Esau, your firstborn. I have done as you told me. Rise, please, sit up and eat of my game, so that your soul may bless me." ²⁰And Isaac said to his son, "How is it that you have found it so quickly, my son?" And he said, "Because the LORD your God granted me success." ²¹And Isaac said to Jacob, "Come near, please, that I may feel you, my son — whether you are really my son Esau or not." ²²And Jacob drew near to Isaac his father, and he felt him and said, "The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau." ²³And he did not recognize him, because his hands were hairy like the hands of Esau his brother. So he blessed him. ²⁴And he said, "Are you really my son Esau?" And he said, "I am." ²⁵And he said, "Bring it near to me, and let me eat of my son's game, so that my soul may bless you." And he brought it near to him, and he ate. And he brought him wine, and he drank. ²⁶Then his father Isaac told him, "Come closer and give me a kiss, my son." ²⁷And he drew near and kissed him. And he smelled the scent of his garments and blessed him, and said, "See, the scent of my son is like the scent of a field that the LORD has blessed! ²⁸May God give you of the dew of heaven and of the fatness of the earth — abundance of grain and new wine. ²⁹Let peoples serve you and nations bow down to you. Be lord over your brothers, and let your mother's sons bow down to you. Cursed be those who curse you, and blessed be those who bless you." ³⁰And it happened that as soon as Isaac had finished blessing Jacob — Jacob had barely gone out from the presence of Isaac his father — that Esau his brother came in from his hunting. ³¹And he too prepared savory food and brought it to his father. And he said to his father, "Let my father rise and eat of his son's game, so that your soul may bless me." ³²And Isaac his father said to him, "Who are you?" And he said, "I am your son, your firstborn — Esau." ³³And Isaac trembled with a very great trembling, and he said, "Who then — who is the one who hunted game and brought it to me? I ate of it all before you came, and I blessed him — and indeed, blessed he shall remain." ³⁴When Esau heard his father's words, he cried out with a great and exceedingly bitter cry, and said to his father, "Bless me — me also, my father!" ³⁵And he said, "Your brother came with deceit and has taken your blessing." ³⁶And he said, "Is he not rightly named Jacob? For he has supplanted me these two times: he took my birthright, and now — look! — he has taken my blessing." And he said, "Have you not reserved a blessing for me?" ³⁷And Isaac answered and said to Esau, "Look, I have made him lord over you, and all his brothers I have given to him as servants, and with grain and new wine I have sustained him. What then can I do for you, my son?" ³⁸And Esau said to his father, "Have you only one blessing, my father? Bless me — me also, my father!" And Esau lifted up his voice and wept. ³⁹And Isaac his father answered and said to him, "Behold, away from the fatness of the earth shall your dwelling be, and away from the dew of heaven above. ⁴⁰By your sword you shall live, and your brother you shall serve. But it shall be that when you grow restless, you shall break his yoke from upon your neck." ⁴¹And Esau harbored hatred against Jacob because of the blessing with which his father had blessed him. And Esau said in his heart, "The days of mourning for my father are near; then I will kill my brother Jacob." ⁴²And the words

of Esau her elder son were told to Rebekah. And she sent and called Jacob her younger son and said to him, "Look — your brother Esau is consoling himself regarding you by planning to kill you. ⁴³Now then, my son, listen to my voice: arise, flee to my brother Laban in Haran. ⁴⁴And stay with him a few days, until your brother's fury subsides — ⁴⁵until your brother's anger turns away from you and he forgets what you did to him. Then I will send and bring you back from there. Why should I lose both of you in a single day?" ⁴⁶And Rebekah said to Isaac, "I am weary of my life because of the Hittite women. If Jacob takes a wife from the Hittite women — from the daughters of this land — what good is my life to me?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'His eyes had grown too dim to see' (vattikhena einav mero't) — the verb kahah means to grow dim, weak, or faint. Isaac's physical blindness becomes the precondition for the entire deception narrative. But the text invites a deeper reading: Isaac's inability to 'see' extends beyond the physical. He cannot see the oracle given to Rebekah (25:23) that 'the elder shall serve the younger,' nor can he see through the deception that will follow. The dimness of his eyes mirrors a dimness of spiritual discernment.
1. 'His elder son' (beno haggadol) — literally 'his great son' or 'his older son.' The narrator's specification of 'elder' is not accidental; it recalls the oracle of 25:23 and signals that Isaac is acting in tension with God's declared purpose.
2. 'I do not know the day of my death' (lo yadati yom moti) — Isaac senses the nearness of death, though in fact he will live many more years (he dies at 180, per 35:28). His urgency to bestow the blessing reflects the ancient belief that a deathbed blessing carried special spiritual potency — the life-force of the dying patriarch was poured into the words. The irony is that Isaac's sense of urgency drives the entire crisis.
3. 'Your gear — your quiver and your bow' (kelekha telyekha veqashtekhah) — kelim is a general word for implements or equipment; telyekha ('your quiver,' from talah, 'to hang') refers to the slung weapon-case. Esau is defined by these instruments — he is the outdoorsman, the hunter. The description reinforces the characterization established in 25:27: Esau is 'a man who knows the hunt, a man of the field.'
3. 'Hunt game for me' (tsudah li tseidah) — the verb and noun share the same root ts-w-d. Isaac's appetite for hunted game is a persistent motif. His love for Esau is explicitly tied to his palate: 'Isaac loved Esau because game was in his mouth' (25:28). The sensory dimension — taste, smell — drives Isaac's actions throughout this chapter.
4. 'Savory food' (mat'ammim) — from the root t-'-m meaning 'to taste,' mat'ammim refers to delicacies prepared to delight the palate. The word appears almost exclusively in this chapter (vv. 4, 7, 9, 14, 17, 31), making it a keyword of the narrative. The blessing is bound up with physical pleasure — eating precedes blessing, as if the sensory experience unlocks the spiritual act.
4. 'That my soul may bless you' (tevarkhekha nafshi) — the blessing is not merely spoken by the mouth but issued from the nefesh, the vital self, the animating life-force. A deathbed blessing was understood as a transfer of spiritual power from the father's deepest being. It was considered irrevocable once spoken — not a wish but a performative act that shaped reality.
5. 'Rebekah was listening' (veRivqah shoma'at) — the participle shoma'at indicates ongoing action: Rebekah was in the act of hearing. Whether she was deliberately eavesdropping or happened to overhear, the text does not say. But her immediate, elaborate response suggests she may have been watching for this moment. She has known since before the twins' birth that the younger was chosen (25:23), and she now acts to ensure that oracle is fulfilled — though by human cunning rather than divine intervention.
6. 'Jacob her son' (Ya'aqov benah) — the narrator's possessive phrasing mirrors v. 5, where Esau is 'his son' (Isaac's). The text subtly maps the family's fracture: Esau belongs to Isaac, Jacob belongs to Rebekah. Each parent has claimed a son. This divided loyalty is the engine of the narrative.
7. 'Before the LORD' (lifnei YHWH) — Rebekah adds a detail not present in Isaac's original speech (v. 4): the blessing is to be 'before the LORD.' Whether Isaac actually said this and the narrator abbreviated his earlier speech, or Rebekah is adding theological weight to galvanize Jacob, this phrase transforms the scene. The blessing is not merely paternal but covenantal — it is performed in the divine presence and invokes divine authority.
8. 'Listen to my voice' (shema beqoli) — this phrase, 'obey my voice,' is covenantal language. It is the same expression God uses when demanding obedience (cf. 22:18; 26:5). Rebekah co-opts the language of divine command for her own scheme. The irony is layered: she commands obedience to accomplish deception in service of an oracle originally given by God.
9. 'Two choice young goats' (shnei gedayei izzim tovim) — the specification of two goats for one person's meal is generous, suggesting Rebekah wants to ensure the dish is indistinguishable from Esau's wild game. Some commentators note an echo of the two goats later central to Yom Kippur ritual (Leviticus 16), where one goat is offered to God and one sent to Azazel — a pairing of acceptance and rejection that mirrors Jacob and Esau's fates.
10. 'So that he may bless you before his death' (ba'avur asher yevarkhekha lifnei moto) — Rebekah's plan is brazenly simple: substitute one son for another, one meat for another, and redirect the irrevocable blessing. She acts with the confidence of someone who believes the oracle of 25:23 must be fulfilled and that she is its appointed instrument. Whether her intervention is faith or presumption — or both — the text leaves for the reader to weigh.
11. 'A hairy man... a smooth man' (ish sa'ir... ish chalaq) — the contrast is vivid and loaded. Sa'ir ('hairy') connects to Se'ir, the land Esau will inhabit (32:3; 36:8), as if his body prefigures his territory. Chalaq ('smooth') can also mean 'slippery' or 'flattering' — a word used elsewhere for deceptive speech (Psalm 12:3; Proverbs 26:28). Jacob's very body and name seem to encode his character in this moment. His objection is not moral but

practical: he fears detection, not sin.

12. 'Perhaps my father will feel me' (ulai yemusheni avi) — the verb mashash ('to feel, to grope') is associated with blindness and fumbling in the dark. Isaac, deprived of sight, must rely on touch — and it is precisely this sense that the deception will target. The entire scene plays on the senses: sight (dim), touch (goatskins), smell (garments), taste (food), hearing (the voice).
12. 'Like a deceiver' (kimta'tea) — from the root t-' meaning 'to mock, to deceive.' Jacob fears being perceived as a mocker, one who trifles with the sacred. The word suggests not just deception but mockery — making a fool of the father. Notably, Jacob does not say 'I will be a deceiver' but 'I will seem like one' — a distinction that reveals his moral posture: concern for appearance rather than substance.
13. 'Let your curse fall on me' (alai qillatekha beni) — Rebekah's statement is extraordinary. She literally says 'upon me your curse, my son.' She absorbs the full risk of the deception onto herself. This is either reckless presumption or profound faith — she is so certain of the divine oracle (25:23) that she will bear any curse to see it fulfilled. The phrase has an almost sacrificial quality: she interposes herself between her son and the consequences of the act. The narrative never records any curse falling on Rebekah, but she will pay dearly: she will never see Jacob again after this chapter.
14. The narrative accelerates with three rapid verbs: vayyeelekh vayyiqqach vayyave' — 'he went, he took, he brought.' Jacob's compliance is immediate and wordless. Once Rebekah assumed the curse, his hesitation vanished. The mother's culinary skill is set against the father's appetite: she knows exactly what Isaac loves, suggesting intimate knowledge of her husband even as she deceives him.
15. 'The finest garments' (bigdei... hachamudot) — chamudot means 'desirable, precious, coveted.' These are Esau's best clothes, perhaps ceremonial garments. That they are 'with her in the house' (ittah babayit) suggests Rebekah kept them — was she already planning? The detail underscores the domestic geography of the plot: what belongs to Esau is under Rebekah's control.
15. 'Her elder son... her younger son' (benah haggadol... benah haqqatan) — the narrator uses the full patronymic formula, emphasizing the birth order that the deception is designed to subvert. The verbal framing reminds us of what is being violated.
16. 'The smooth part of his neck' (chelqat tsavvarav) — the word chelqah ('smooth part') echoes chalaq ('smooth man') from v. 11. The very smoothness that threatened to expose Jacob is now covered with animal skin. The goatskins serve double duty: their meat feeds Isaac's appetite while their hides clothe Jacob's deception. The detail is both practical and symbolic — Jacob literally wraps himself in another creature's identity, prefiguring his wrapping himself in his brother's.
17. 'The savory food and the bread' (hammat'ammim veba-lechem) — the addition of bread completes the meal. Rebekah has thought of everything. The text attributes the entire preparation to her: she kills the goats, cooks the food, selects the garments, covers Jacob's skin, and places the meal in his hands. Jacob is passive; Rebekah is the architect and executor. His hand merely carries what she has arranged.
18. 'Who are you, my son?' (mi attah beni) — the question that echoes through the chapter. Isaac's blindness forces him to ask what should be obvious. The question is simultaneously practical (he cannot see) and existential (identity is at stake). The answer Jacob gives will be a lie, but the question itself opens the space for identity to be performed rather than inherent. Who is the true son? The one who appears, or the one who was born first?
19. 'I am Esau, your firstborn' (anokhi Esav bekhorekha) — the lie is brazen and direct. Jacob claims both the name and the status. The word anokhi ('I') is the emphatic first-person pronoun — the same word God uses in 'I am the LORD your God' (anokhi YHWH Eloheikha, Exodus 20:2). The lie is spoken with maximal self-assertion.
19. Jacob also co-opts his father's language: 'that your soul may bless me' (tevarakhanni nafshekha) mirrors Isaac's original words to Esau in v. 4. He has learned the script from his mother and performs it perfectly. The scene is a masterclass in mimicry — Jacob plays Esau while using Isaac's own words.
20. 'Because the LORD your God granted me success' (ki hiqrah YHWH Elohekha lefanai) — this is the most shocking moment of the deception. Jacob invokes the divine name — YHWH — to support a lie. The verb hiqrah (from qarah, 'to cause to happen, to bring about') attributes the speed of his success to divine providence. He uses God's name as a tool of fraud. The phrase 'your God' (Elohekha) rather than 'my God' is telling — perhaps Jacob cannot bring himself to claim a personal relationship with the God he is blaspheming, or perhaps 'your God' sounds more like something Esau would say, since Esau's relationship with YHWH is mediated through Isaac.
20. Isaac's suspicion is aroused not by the voice but by the timing. His question about speed reveals a man not fully deceived — he senses something is wrong — yet he proceeds despite his misgivings.
21. 'That I may feel you' (va'amushkha) — the verb mashash ('to feel, to grope') recurs from v. 12, where Jacob feared exactly this. Touch is now the test of identity. Isaac's request is poignant: a father reaching out in blindness to verify who stands before him. The intimacy of the gesture — a father's hand on a son's body — makes the deception viscerally cruel.
21. 'Whether you are really my son Esau or not' (ha'attah zeh beni Esav im-lo) — the question is constructed to expect a yes-or-no answer. Isaac is giving Jacob one last chance to tell the truth. The phrase 'really you' (attah zeh) intensifies the inquiry: 'Are you this one — my son Esau — or not?'
22. 'The voice is the voice of Jacob, but the hands are the hands of Esau' (haqqol qol Ya'aqov vehayadayim yedei Esav) — one of the most famous lines in Genesis. Isaac perceives the contradiction but resolves it in favor of touch over hearing. The voice — the medium of truth, speech, prayer — says 'Jacob,' but the hands — the medium of action, grasping, taking — say 'Esau.' The rabbinic tradition drew a powerful lesson: 'When the voice of Jacob is heard in the houses of study, the hands of Esau have no power' (Bereshit Rabbah 65:20). The verse became a paradigm for the tension between spiritual identity (voice) and worldly power (hands).

22. The irony is total: the hands are not Esau's either. They are goatskins. Isaac's test fails because both senses deceive him — the voice is Jacob's (truth), and the hands are neither Jacob's nor Esau's (double deception).
23. 'He did not recognize him' (velo hikiro) — the verb nakkar ('to recognize, to acknowledge') is the same verb used when Judah 'recognizes' Tamar's pledge items in 38:26 and when Joseph's brothers fail to 'recognize' him in 42:8. The theme of failed recognition runs through Genesis like a scar — the patriarchal family is repeatedly undone by the inability to see what is truly present.
23. 'So he blessed him' (vayevarkheihu) — the narrator states this flatly, without commentary on its validity or moral status. The blessing proceeds. The text raises but does not answer the question: is a blessing obtained by deception still a blessing? The narrative will treat it as irrevocable (v. 33), suggesting that spoken words carry power independent of the circumstances of their utterance.
24. 'Are you really my son Esau?' — Isaac asks once more, a second direct question. His persistent doubt suggests the voice troubled him more than the hands reassured him. 'I am' (ani) — Jacob's two-word answer is stark and final. In Hebrew, ani can mean simply 'I' — an affirmation of identity that is, in this case, a radical denial of identity. The brevity may indicate that Jacob cannot sustain the lie at length; he answers with the minimum required.
25. The sensory sequence continues: after touch (vv. 21–23), now taste. Isaac eats and drinks, satisfying his appetite. The wine is a new detail — the meal is now a feast. The physical satisfaction of eating and drinking prepares Isaac's nefesh (vital self) for the act of blessing. The blessing is portrayed as arising from bodily fullness, the spirit energized by the flesh. This is not dualistic religion — body and spirit work together.
26. 'Come near and kiss me' (geshah na ushqah li) — the fourth sense: after touch, taste, and hearing, now the intimate proximity of a kiss, which will bring the fifth sense — smell (v. 27). Isaac progresses through every available sense except the one he lacks (sight). The kiss is both a gesture of paternal affection and, unwittingly, a final test. The request for a kiss from a son he has already questioned twice reveals a father who wants to believe.
27. 'He smelled the scent of his garments' (vayyarach et-reiach begadav) — the fifth and final sense completes the deception. Isaac smells Esau's garments on Jacob's body. The verb reiach and noun reiach (scent/smell) share their root with ruach (spirit/wind). Smell is the most evocative and primal of the senses. The garments carry the scent of the outdoors — Esau's world of field and hunt.
27. 'Like the scent of a field that the LORD has blessed' (kereiach sadeh asher berako YHWH) — the field evokes Eden, the original blessed ground. Isaac's words are prophetic despite the deception: the smell triggers a vision of divine abundance. The irony is that Isaac blesses Jacob while believing him to be Esau, yet the blessing's content — sovereignty over brothers, nations serving him — matches the oracle given to Rebekah about the younger. God's purpose is accomplished through human deception, a moral paradox the text does not resolve.
28. 'Dew of heaven... fatness of the earth' (mittal hashamayim umishmannei ha'arets) — the blessing begins with fertility from above and below. Tal ('dew') is crucial in the semi-arid land of Israel, where summer rain is absent and dew provides essential moisture. Shemen ('fat, oil, richness') denotes the earth's productive capacity. Together they represent total agricultural abundance — heaven's gift meeting earth's yield.
28. 'Grain and new wine' (dagan vetirosh) — these are the staples of settled agricultural life, not the provisions of a hunter. The blessing Isaac gives to 'Esau' is actually suited to Jacob's destiny as a farmer and herdsman. Even in his deception, the blessing finds its proper recipient.
29. 'Be lord over your brothers' (heveh gevir le'achekha) — gevir means 'master, lord.' This directly fulfills the oracle of 25:23: 'the elder shall serve the younger.' Isaac unknowingly speaks the very word God spoke to Rebekah. The blessing has political and familial dimensions: dominion over nations (peoples, le'ummim) and dominion over brothers (achim).
29. 'Cursed be those who curse you, and blessed be those who bless you' (orerekha arur umvarakhekha barukh) — this formula echoes the Abrahamic blessing of 12:3 almost verbatim, but in reverse order (there it was 'I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you'). The inversion may be significant: the protective formula now concludes rather than opens the blessing, serving as a seal. The transfer of the Abrahamic covenant blessing — intended or not — is complete.
30. 'Jacob had barely gone out' (akh yatso yatsa) — the infinitive absolute construction (yatso yatsa, 'going out he had gone out') emphasizes the completeness of Jacob's exit, while akh ('scarcely, only just') compresses the timing to the narrowest possible margin. The near-collision of the two brothers creates unbearable narrative tension. A moment later and the deception would have been exposed in real time. The timing suggests either extraordinary luck or providential orchestration — the text allows either reading.
31. 'He too prepared savory food' (vayya'as gam-hu mat'ammim) — gam-hu ('he too, he also') carries the weight of the tragedy. Esau has done exactly what was asked: he hunted, he cooked, he brought the food. He fulfilled his father's request faithfully. The duplication of the scene — the same food, the same words, the same request for blessing — is devastating precisely because it arrives too late. Esau's obedience is genuine but superfluous.
32. 'Who are you?' (mi attah) — the same question Isaac asked Jacob in v. 18, but now with entirely different weight. Before, it was a question of verification; now it is a question of horror. Isaac already knows the answer he dreads. The repetition of the identity question frames the entire deception: the same words, spoken in two different emotional registers, bracket the fraud.
32. 'I am your son, your firstborn — Esau' (ani binkha bekhorekha Esav) — Esau piles up terms of identity: your son, your firstborn, Esau. Three claims, each one true. The accumulation suggests Esau senses something is wrong and over-identifies himself, as if to dispel a doubt he does not yet understand.

33. 'Isaac trembled with a very great trembling' (vayyecherad Yitschaq charadah gedolah ad-me'od) — the cognate accusative construction (trembled a trembling) intensifies the emotion to its extreme. The added ad-me'od ('exceedingly, to the utmost') pushes beyond even that. This is not mere surprise — it is existential terror. Isaac realizes in a flash that he has been deceived, that the blessing has gone to the wrong son, and — most terrifyingly — that it cannot be undone. Some commentators suggest Isaac also realizes in this moment that God's oracle to Rebekah has been fulfilled through his own unwitting act, and his trembling is the shock of recognizing divine will working through human deception.
33. 'Blessed he shall remain' (gam-barukh yihyeh) — Isaac confirms the irrevocability of the blessing. Despite knowing it was obtained by fraud, he does not retract it. The performative power of the spoken word, once released, cannot be recalled. This is not resignation but recognition of a deeper reality: the blessing has found its divinely intended recipient, regardless of the method.
34. 'A great and exceedingly bitter cry' (tse'aqah gedolah umarah ad-me'od) — the tse'aqah is not a whimper but a scream, a howl of anguish. The same word describes the cry of the Israelites under Egyptian oppression (Exodus 3:7) and the cry of Sodom (18:20). It is the sound of injustice experienced in the body. The addition of marah ('bitter') and ad-me'od ('exceedingly') makes this one of the rawest expressions of grief in Scripture. Hebrews 12:17 remembers this moment: Esau 'found no place of repentance, though he sought it carefully with tears.'
34. 'Bless me — me also, my father!' (barkheni gam-ani avi) — the repetition of gam-ani ('me too, also me') is heartbreaking. Esau does not yet ask for the stolen blessing back; he asks simply to be included, to not be forgotten. The cry of the displaced child: 'Am I not also your son?'
35. 'With deceit' (bemirmah) — the word mirmah means 'deceit, treachery, fraud.' Isaac names the act plainly. The same word will be used of Jacob's sons in 34:13 when they deceive the Shechemites. Deceit runs in the family. The word comes from the root r-m-h, related to ramah ('to throw, to cast down, to deceive') — suggesting that deception is a form of violence, a throwing-down of the other.
35. 'Has taken your blessing' (vayyiqqach birkhatekha) — the verb laqach ('to take') echoes through Jacob's life: he took the heel (25:26), took the birthright (25:33), and now takes the blessing. Jacob is defined by taking — a pattern that will continue until Peniel (32:26), where he will finally wrestle for what he wants rather than steal it.
36. 'Is he not rightly named Jacob?' (hakhi qara shemo Ya'aqov) — Esau makes the etymological connection explicit: Ya'aqov ('heel-grasper, supplanter') is living up to his name. The verb vayyaqveni ('he has supplanted me, he has heel-tripped me') is a wordplay on the name — ya'aqov becomes ya'qveni. The name, given at birth for grasping Esau's heel (25:26), now reveals its full meaning: to follow at the heel is to trip, to undercut, to supplant. Names in Genesis are destiny.
36. 'These two times' (zeh pa'amayim) — Esau counts: the birthright (bekorah, chapter 25) and the blessing (berakhah, this chapter). The two words even sound alike in Hebrew — bekorah/berakhah — as if they were always meant to go together. What the birthright established in legal terms, the blessing sealed in spiritual ones.
37. 'I have made him lord over you' (hen gevir samtiv lakh) — Isaac recounts the content of the blessing he gave: lordship, servitude of brothers, agricultural abundance. Each element is now a barrier to blessing Esau. The blessing was not a wish but a reallocation of reality — Isaac has disposed of everything. The question 'what then can I do for you?' (ulekha efo mah e'eseh) is the question of a man who has spent everything and has nothing left to give. It is devastatingly honest.
38. 'Have you only one blessing?' (havrahah achat hi-lekha avi) — Esau's question challenges the scarcity model of blessing. Can a father's blessing truly be exhausted? The answer, in this narrative's logic, is yes — the patriarchal deathbed blessing is a singular, unrepeatable act. It is not a prayer (which can be offered for anyone, anytime) but a bestowal of covenantal inheritance, which is finite.
38. 'And Esau lifted up his voice and wept' (vayyissa Esav qolo vayyevk) — the same phrase used of Hagar in the wilderness (21:16). Esau weeps like the outcast he is becoming. This is not the cry of rage (that comes in v. 41) but the cry of grief — the sound of a man who has lost something irreplaceable and knows it. The text grants Esau genuine pathos. Whatever his faults — selling the birthright carelessly (25:34) — his grief here is treated as real and legitimate.
39. 'Away from the fatness of the earth... away from the dew of heaven' (mishmannei ha'arets... umittal hashamayim) — the preposition min is ambiguous. It can mean 'from' (partitive: 'of the fatness') or 'away from' (privative: 'far from the fatness'). The KJV and some translations read it as partitive — Esau will enjoy the earth's richness. But the rendering follows the privative reading, which better fits the context: Esau's 'blessing' is an inversion of Jacob's. Where Jacob receives the dew and fatness (v. 28), Esau is deprived of them. Edom's territory — the arid highlands south and east of the Dead Sea — confirms the privative reading geographically.
40. 'By your sword you shall live' (ve'al-charbbekha tichyeh) — Esau's destiny is martial, not agricultural. He will live by violence rather than cultivation. The sword (cherev) replaces the plow. This prophecy anticipates the character of Edom as a warrior nation, perpetually at odds with Israel.
40. 'When you grow restless, you shall break his yoke' (ka'asher tarid ufaraqta ullo me'al tsavvarekha) — the verb tarid (from rud, 'to roam, to be restless, to rebel') suggests that Esau's servitude is not permanent. When he chafes enough, he will throw off Jacob's dominion. This was fulfilled historically when Edom revolted against Judah's rule (2 Kings 8:20–22). Isaac's prophecy for Esau contains both servitude and eventual liberation — a cruel consolation, but not total despair.
41. 'Esau harbored hatred' (vayyistom Esav) — the verb satam means 'to bear a grudge, to harbor enmity, to persist in hostility.' It implies not a flash of anger but a settled, enduring hatred — animosity that calculates and waits. The same verb describes Joseph's brothers' fear that Joseph will 'bear a grudge' against them (50:15). Grudge-bearing is the slow poison of Genesis's family narratives.

41. 'Esau said in his heart' (vayyomer Esav belibbo) — internal speech, accessible only to the narrator (and to God). Esau's plan is private, but Rebekah somehow learns of it (v. 42). The plan is chilling in its restraint: Esau will wait until after the mourning period for Isaac before killing Jacob. He honors his father even while plotting fratricide — a terrible mix of filial piety and murderous rage. The echo of Cain (4:8) is unmistakable: brother planning to kill brother.
42. 'Is consoling himself by planning to kill you' (mitnachem lekha lehorgekha) — the hitpa'el of nacham means 'to comfort oneself, to find consolation.' The construction is chilling: Esau's comfort, his consolation for the loss of the blessing, is the anticipated murder of his brother. Violence as therapy. The verb nacham also means 'to repent, to relent' — but here it carries no such softening. Esau's grief has curdled into lethal intent.
42. The narrator again identifies the sons by birth order — 'her elder son... her younger son' — maintaining the structural tension between the natural order and the divine reversal.
43. 'Listen to my voice' (shema beqoli) — the same command Rebekah gave in v. 8, forming a bracket around the deception narrative. Her first 'listen to my voice' initiated the fraud; her second 'listen to my voice' initiates the flight. She who orchestrated the theft of the blessing now orchestrates the escape from its consequences. Rebekah remains the strategist throughout.
43. 'Flee to my brother Laban in Haran' (berach-lekha el-Lavan achi Charanah) — Rebekah sends Jacob back to her family of origin, the house she left decades ago (chapter 24). The journey will take Jacob out of the promised land for twenty years. The deception, while securing the blessing, costs Jacob his home, his family, and his youth.
44. 'A few days' (yamim achadim) — Rebekah's estimate is tragically optimistic. The 'few days' will become twenty years (31:38, 41). She will never see Jacob again. The phrase yamim achadim ('days — a few') uses the same expression from 29:20, where Jacob's seven years of labor for Rachel 'seemed like a few days because of his love for her.' What Rebekah imagines as brief will become the defining exile of Jacob's life.
45. 'Why should I lose both of you in a single day?' (lamah eshkal gam-shneikhem yom echad) — the verb shakhal means 'to be bereaved of children.' Rebekah fears a double loss: if Esau kills Jacob, Esau will be executed as a murderer (cf. 9:6), and she will lose both sons. The 'single day' (yom echad) concentrates the catastrophe into a point: in one stroke, the mother of twins would become childless. This is perhaps the most human moment in the chapter — behind all the scheming, Rebekah is a mother who loves both her sons, even the one she deceived against.
46. 'I am weary of my life' (qatsti bechayai) — the verb quts means 'to loathe, to feel disgust, to be sick of.' Rebekah expresses existential exhaustion — she is disgusted with life itself. The cause she names — Hittite women — is likely a pretext. The real urgency is to get Jacob away from Esau without revealing the murder plot to Isaac. Rebekah's brilliance as a strategist continues: she frames the departure as a marriage-seeking mission rather than a flight from death.
46. 'The daughters of Heth' (benot Chet) — Esau's Hittite wives were already identified as 'a bitterness of spirit to Isaac and Rebekah' (26:35). Rebekah uses this genuine grievance as diplomatic cover. Her speech to Isaac is not false — the Hittite marriages truly distress her — but it is strategically selective, concealing the deeper and more dangerous reason for Jacob's departure.

28

Summary: *Isaac blesses Jacob with the 'blessing of Abraham' and sends him to Paddan-aram to find a wife. Esau, seeing his Canaanite wives displease his parents, marries Ishmael's daughter. At Bethel, Jacob dreams of a stairway to heaven with angels ascending and descending. God promises him the land, offspring, and his presence. Jacob vows that if God keeps him, the LORD will be his God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The dream at Bethel is one of the most iconic visions in the Hebrew Bible. The sullam ('stairway/ladder,' v. 12) appears only here — its rarity mirrors the singularity of the vision. The fourfold 'behold' (hinneh, vv. 12-15) signals escalating revelation: a stairway, angels, the LORD, and a promise. Jacob's response — 'Surely the LORD is in this place, and I did not know it' (v. 16) — confesses that divine presence operates independently of human awareness. His conditional vow (vv. 20-22) has been read as either faith's beginning or a bargainer's hedge.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew sullam (v. 12) is traditionally rendered 'ladder' but may better be understood as a stairway or ramp — similar to a ziggurat staircase connecting earth and heaven. We noted this in the translator's notes. Jacob's vow uses a conditional 'if' (im, v. 20) that English handles naturally but that raises theological questions: is Jacob placing conditions on his covenant with God? The Hebrew syntax leaves the tension intact, and we preserved it.*

Connections: *Jesus cites this vision in John 1:51 ('you will see angels ascending and descending on the Son of Man'). The promise of divine presence — 'I will not leave you' (28:15) — echoes the assurance given to Isaac (26:3) and anticipates God's word to Moses (Exodus 3:12) and Joshua (Joshua 1:5). Bethel ('house of God') becomes a recurring sacred site throughout Israel's history (Judges 20:18; 1 Kings 12:29).*

¹And Isaac called Jacob and blessed him and charged him, saying to him, "You shall not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan. ²Arise, go to Paddan-aram, to the house of Bethuel, your mother's father, and take a wife from there, from the daughters of Laban, your mother's brother. ³And may El Shaddai bless you and make you fruitful and multiply you, that you may become an assembly of peoples. ⁴And may he give you the blessing of Abraham — to you and to your offspring with you — that you may possess the land of your sojournings, which God gave to Abraham." ⁵And Isaac sent Jacob away, and he went to Paddan-aram, to Laban son of Bethuel the Aramean, the brother of Rebekah, the mother of Jacob and Esau. ⁶And Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob and sent him away to Paddan-aram to take a wife from there, and that as he blessed him he charged him, saying, "You shall not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan," ⁷and that Jacob had obeyed his father and his mother and had gone to Paddan-aram. ⁸And Esau saw that the daughters of Canaan were displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father. ⁹And Esau went to Ishmael and took Mahalath, the daughter of Ishmael, Abraham's son, the sister of Nebaioth, as a wife in addition to the wives he already had. ¹⁰And Jacob went out from Beersheba and set out for Haran. ¹¹And he came upon a certain place and spent the night there, for the sun had set. And he took one of the stones of the place and put it under his head, and he lay down in that place. ¹²And he dreamed, and behold — a stairway set up on the earth, and its top reaching to heaven. And behold — angels of God ascending and descending on it. ¹³And behold — the LORD was standing above it, and he said, "I am the LORD, the God of Abraham your father, and the God of Isaac. The land on which you are lying — to you I will give it, and to your offspring. ¹⁴And your offspring shall be like the dust of the earth, and you shall spread out to the west and to the east, to the north and to the south. And in you and in your offspring all the families of the earth shall be blessed. ¹⁵And behold, I am with you and will keep you wherever you go, and I will bring you back to this land. For I will not leave you until I have done what I have promised you." ¹⁶And Jacob awoke from his sleep and said, "Surely the LORD is in this place, and I — I did not know it." ¹⁷And he was afraid and said, "How awesome is this place! This is none other than the house of God, and this is the gate of heaven." ¹⁸And Jacob rose early in the morning and took the stone that he had placed under his head, and he set it up as a pillar and poured oil on its top. ¹⁹And he called the name of that place Bethel, though the name of the city had formerly been Luz. ²⁰And Jacob made a vow, saying, "If God will be with me and will keep me on this journey that I am taking, and will give me bread to eat and clothing to wear, ²¹and I return safely to my father's house — then the LORD shall be my God. ²²And this stone that I have set up as a pillar shall be the house of God. And of all that you give me, I will surely give a tenth to you."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Isaac called Jacob and blessed him' (vayyiqra Yitschaq el-Ya'aqov vayevarekh oto) — this is a second blessing, and it is everything the first was not: intentional, clear-eyed, and explicitly covenantal. Isaac now blesses Jacob knowingly. Whether he has accepted the divine oracle or simply recognized that the blessing cannot be undone, he acts deliberately. The verb vayyetsavvehu ('and he charged him') adds a commandment to the blessing — this is not just gift but commission.
2. 'You shall not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan' (lo tiqqach ishaq mibbenot Kena'an) — the prohibition echoes Abraham's charge to his servant regarding Isaac's wife (24:3). The endogamy requirement — marrying within the covenant family — is a recurring concern of Genesis. The Canaanite wives of Esau (26:34–35) are the negative example. Marriage to Canaanite women threatened cultural and religious assimilation.
3. 'Paddan-aram' (Paddenah Aram) — the region in upper Mesopotamia where Abraham's extended family settled (cf. 25:20). Paddan may mean 'field' or 'plain,' making Paddan-aram 'the field of Aram.' Jacob's journey retraces Abraham's servant's route in reverse: where the servant went to bring a bride to Canaan (chapter 24), Jacob now goes himself to find one. But Jacob's departure is also an exile — he leaves the promised land under threat of death.
4. 'The house of Bethuel, your mother's father' (beitah Betuel avi immekha) — Isaac identifies the family line precisely. The detail connects Jacob to matrilineal heritage through Rebekah. Isaac sends Jacob to the world Rebekah came from, closing a generational loop.
5. 'El Shaddai' (El Shaddai) — Isaac invokes the divine name used in God's appearance to Abraham in 17:1, where the covenant of circumcision was established. This is the patriarchal name for God, associated with promises of fertility and nationhood. Its etymology is debated: possibly 'God of the Mountain,' 'God the Almighty,' or 'God the Sufficient One.' By using this name, Isaac consciously places Jacob in the covenant lineage.
6. 'An assembly of peoples' (qahal ammim) — the word qahal ('assembly, congregation') anticipates Israel as a gathered community — not just a single nation but a qahal, an organized body of peoples. This term will become central to Israel's self-understanding (the qahal of Israel at Sinai, Deuteronomy 5:22). Isaac's vision is collective, not merely individual: Jacob will father not just descendants but a community.

4. 'The blessing of Abraham' (birkat Avraham) — this is the explicit, named transfer of the Abrahamic covenant. Isaac does not merely bless Jacob with good wishes; he transmits the specific, historical blessing given to Abraham: land, offspring, and divine presence. The phrase birkat Avraham appears only here in Genesis, marking this moment as the formal covenantal handoff from the second generation to the third.
4. 'The land of your sojournings' (erets megureikha) — the paradox again: the land is simultaneously possessed ('that you may possess') and sojourned in (megurim, 'sojournings, temporary dwellings'). Jacob will inherit what he cannot yet fully inhabit. The tension between promise and present reality — owning a land in which one is a stranger — defines the patriarchal experience.
5. 'The mother of Jacob and Esau' (em Ya'aqov ve'Esav) — the narrator's final mention of Rebekah in this scene names her as mother of both sons, not just Jacob. The reminder is poignant: she is sending one son away to protect him from the other, and she loves both. This is the last narrative scene in which Rebekah plays an active role; her death is recorded only incidentally through the notice of Deborah's death (35:8). The woman who dominated chapters 24 and 27 exits the story in silence.
5. 'Bethuel the Aramean' (Betuel ha'Arammi) — the ethnic designation 'Aramean' reminds the reader that the patriarchal family is not indigenous to Canaan. They are Arameans living in Canaanite land — another expression of the sojourner identity.
6. 'Esau saw' (vayyar Esav) — Esau is now the observer, watching as Isaac deliberately blesses Jacob and sends him to find a proper wife. The verb ra'ah ('to see') is loaded in this chapter where Isaac could not see (27:1). Esau sees clearly what is happening: his father has ratified the stolen blessing and formally excluded him from the covenantal line. His response (vv. 8–9) will be an attempt to regain favor by imitating Jacob's obedience — but through the wrong channel.
7. 'Jacob obeyed his father and his mother' (vayyishma Ya'aqov el-aviv ve'el-immo) — the verb shama ('to listen, to obey') is used with both parents. Jacob's obedience is presented straightforwardly — he listened to both. The contrast with Esau is implicit: Esau married Canaanite women against his parents' wishes (26:34–35). Jacob's departure, though motivated by fear of Esau, is framed as an act of filial obedience.
8. 'Displeasing in the eyes of Isaac his father' (ra'ot benot Kena'an be'einei Yitschaq aviv) — ra'ot ('evil, bad, displeasing') in Isaac's eyes. Esau finally perceives what has been true all along: his Hittite wives grieved his parents (26:35). His response will be to take yet another wife — but from Ishmael's family rather than a Canaanite one. The attempt to please is genuine but misguided: he adds a wife rather than dealing with the existing problem, and he chooses Ishmael's line (the other rejected son) rather than the Aramean family line that Isaac specified.
9. 'Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael' (Machalat bat-Yishma'el) — the name Machalat may derive from machalah ('sickness') or from machol ('dance'). In 36:3 this same woman appears to be called Basemath — either she had two names or there is a textual variation. By marrying Ishmael's daughter, Esau connects two lines of Abrahamic descent that were both passed over for the covenant: Ishmael (passed over for Isaac) and Esau (passed over for Jacob). The excluded sons unite.
9. 'In addition to the wives he already had' (al-nashav) — Esau does not divorce his Canaanite wives; he simply adds another. The polygamous accumulation compounds rather than corrects the problem. Esau's response to his father's displeasure is additive, not reformative.
10. 'Jacob went out from Beersheba' (vayyetse Ya'aqov miBe'er Shava) — this verse opens the great journey narrative. The verb yatsa ('to go out') marks a departure not just geographical but existential: Jacob leaves the land of promise, the place of his father's wells (26:32–33), the security of home. The terse, two-clause sentence mirrors the loneliness of the departure — no farewell scene, no traveling companions, no provisions mentioned. Jacob goes out alone. This verse gives its name to the weekly Torah portion: Vayetse.
11. 'He came upon a certain place' (vayyifga bamaqom) — the verb paga' means 'to encounter, to meet, to strike upon' — it suggests an unplanned arrival, a chance collision with a place. But the definite article — hamaqom, 'THE place' — hints that this is no ordinary location. It is the place, as if it had been waiting for him. Later Jewish tradition identified this site with Mount Moriah, where Abraham bound Isaac (22:2), and with the future Temple Mount — a convergence of sacred geography.
11. 'He took one of the stones of the place and put it under his head' (vayyiqqach me'avnei hamaqom vayyasem mera'ashotav) — the stone pillow is a detail of stark realism: Jacob sleeps rough, a fugitive with no provisions. The stone under his head becomes the stone he will anoint (v. 18) — the pillow becomes a pillar. Objects are transformed by encounter with the divine.
12. 'A stairway' (sullam) — this word appears only here in the entire Hebrew Bible, making its precise meaning uncertain. It derives from the root s-l-l ('to raise up, to cast up, to build a highway'). Traditionally translated 'ladder,' it more likely refers to a stairway, ramp, or stepped structure — perhaps evoking the Mesopotamian ziggurats (stepped temple towers) that Jacob would have known about from his family's origins in Ur and Haran. The sullam is a bridge between realms: earth and heaven are connected, not sealed off from each other.
12. 'Angels of God ascending and descending' (mal'akhei Elohim olim veyoredim bo) — the order is significant: they ascend first, then descend. If they were heaven-based, they would descend first. The ascending-first order suggests the angels were already on earth, accompanying Jacob, and now return to heaven to report — while others descend to continue the watch. The implication is that divine protection preceded Jacob's awareness of it. He was guarded before he knew he was guarded.
12. The word mal'akh means 'messenger' — these are not decorative celestial beings but agents on assignment, traversing the connection between heaven and earth. The vision reveals that the mundane world is saturated with divine activity invisible to waking eyes.
13. 'The LORD was standing above it' (YHWH nitsav alav) — the preposition alav is ambiguous: it can mean 'above it' (the stairway) or 'beside him' (Jacob). If God stands atop the stairway, the vision is cosmological — God at the summit of the heavenly ascent. If God stands beside Jacob, the vision is intimate — God at the side of the sleeping fugitive. Both readings are theologically profound. The rendering preserves 'above it' while

acknowledging the ambiguity.

13. 'I am the LORD, the God of Abraham your father, and the God of Isaac' (ani YHWH Elohei Avraham avikha ve'Elohei Yitschaq) — God introduces himself through the chain of covenant relationship. He is not an abstract deity but the God of specific persons with specific histories. The phrase 'Abraham your father' is striking — Abraham was Jacob's grandfather, but 'father' (av) is used in the covenantal sense of 'ancestor, patriarch.' God self-identifies through relationship, not through philosophical attributes.
13. 'The land on which you are lying' (ha'arets asher attah shokhev aleha) — the promise is startlingly concrete: the very ground under Jacob's sleeping body belongs to him and his descendants. The specificity is almost humorous — God promises not 'a land' but 'this land, right here, the dirt beneath your back.' The horizontal body of the sleeper claims the earth by divine decree.
14. 'Like the dust of the earth' (ka'afar ha'arets) — to Abraham, God compared descendants to stars (15:5) and sand (22:17). To Jacob, the metaphor is dust — the most humble and earthy of the images. Dust is what Jacob is lying on. The promise meets him where he is: on the ground, alone, in the dark. Dust is also the most innumerable of the comparisons — uncountable by any method.
14. 'You shall spread out' (ufaratsta) — the verb parats means 'to break out, to burst forth, to spread.' It connotes unstoppable expansion, like water breaching a dam. The four compass directions (west, east, north, south — yammah vaqedmah vetsafonah vanegbah) indicate total, unlimited expansion in every direction. The promise is not for a territory with fixed borders but for a dynamic, spreading presence.
14. 'All the families of the earth shall be blessed in you and in your offspring' (venivrekhu vekha kol-mishpechot ha'adamah uvezar'ekha) — the universal dimension of the Abrahamic promise (12:3) is now given to Jacob. The word mishpachot ('families, clans') is more intimate than goyim ('nations') — the blessing reaches into family-level human experience. The covenant is for the healing of every human household.
15. 'I am with you' (anokhi immakh) — the most fundamental divine promise in Scripture. God's presence is personal (anokhi, the emphatic 'I'), continuous ('wherever you go'), protective ('I will keep you'), and purposeful ('I will bring you back'). This promise is given to a man who obtained the blessing by fraud, who is fleeing his brother's murderous rage, who sleeps on a stone in a nameless place. Grace precedes merit. God does not say, 'Because you are righteous, I am with you.' He simply says, 'I am with you.'
15. 'I will not leave you until I have done what I have promised you' (lo e'ezvekha ad asher im-asiti et asher dibbarti lakh) — the promise is bounded: 'until I have done.' This might suggest a limit to divine presence, but the logic is assurance, not expiration: God will not abandon Jacob before fulfilling every word. The implication is that fulfillment is certain — the only question is when, not whether. God binds himself to his own word.
16. 'Surely the LORD is in this place, and I did not know it' (akhen yesh YHWH bamaqom hazzeh ve'anokhi lo yadati) — one of the most theologically resonant sentences in the Bible. The word akhen ('surely, indeed') marks a discovery — something known now that was unknown before. Jacob's statement is simultaneously confession and revelation: God was here all along, but Jacob was ignorant of it. The implication extends beyond this single location: if God was present in this unremarkable, unnamed place, then perhaps God is present everywhere — and human unawareness changes nothing about the divine reality. The emphatic ve'anokhi ('and I') places Jacob's ignorance in sharp contrast with God's presence. The verse has become foundational for mystical theology: the divine is present in the ordinary, the sacred permeates the mundane, and the only thing missing is human awareness.
17. 'How awesome is this place!' (mah-nora hamaqom hazzeh) — the adjective nora (from yare', 'to fear') means 'awe-inspiring, fearsome, terrible in majesty.' It is the same word used of God's acts at the Red Sea (Exodus 15:11) and of God's own character (Deuteronomy 7:21). Jacob's response to the sacred is not comfort but fear — the tremendum of divine encounter. The sacred is not safe; it is overwhelming.
17. 'The house of God and the gate of heaven' (beit Elohim... sha'ar hashamayim) — two defining metaphors. Beit Elohim ('house of God') will become the name of the place: Bethel (v. 19). The 'gate of heaven' (sha'ar hashamayim) suggests a portal, an access point between the earthly and heavenly realms — the very thing the stairway vision revealed. The imagery combines temple (house) and threshold (gate): this is where God dwells and where heaven opens. Jacob, the homeless fugitive, has stumbled upon the threshold of heaven while sleeping on the ground.
18. 'He set it up as a pillar' (vayyasem otah matstsevah) — the matstsevah is a standing stone, a sacred marker. The transformation is striking: the same stone that served as a pillow (functional, horizontal) is now erected as a pillar (sacred, vertical). What was beneath Jacob's head is now raised above it. The anointing with oil (shemen) consecrates the stone — it becomes holy by being set apart and marked. This is one of the earliest recorded acts of worship in the patriarchal narratives.
18. 'Poured oil on its top' (vayyitsoq shemen al-roshah) — the verb yatsaq ('to pour') is used for formal anointing. Oil symbolizes the divine Spirit, abundance, and consecration. Kings and priests will later be anointed with oil (mashach, from which mashiach/messiah derives). Jacob's act is priestly — he consecrates the place where God revealed himself.
19. 'Bethel' (Beit-El) — 'House of God,' directly naming the place from Jacob's exclamation in v. 17 (beit Elohim). The renaming transforms anonymous geography into sacred space. Bethel will become one of the most important cultic sites in Israel's history — a place of worship, prophecy, and eventually controversy (when Jeroboam I sets up golden calves there, 1 Kings 12:29).
19. 'Though formerly Luz' (ve'ulam Luz shem-ha'ir larishonah) — Luz means 'almond tree' or possibly 'deviation, turning aside.' The narrator preserves the old name as historical memory. The renaming does not erase the past; it adds a sacred layer to existing geography. The place was always there — only its identity has been revealed.

- 20.** 'Jacob made a vow' (vayyiddar Ya'aqov neder) — this is the first vow (neder) recorded in Scripture. A neder is a conditional promise to God: 'if you do X, then I will do Y.' The conditionality is striking — and has troubled commentators. God has just made unconditional promises to Jacob (vv. 13–15): land, offspring, presence, protection. Jacob responds with conditions. Is this faith or calculation? Trust or bargaining? The answer may be both: Jacob, the supplanter and dealer, brings his transactional nature even to his encounter with God. He cannot yet receive grace purely; he must negotiate.
- 20.** 'Bread to eat and clothing to wear' (lechem le'ekhol ubeged lilbosh) — Jacob asks for the barest necessities: food and clothing. The man who stole a blessing of grain, wine, dew, and dominion now asks only for survival provisions. The contrast between the grandiose blessing he took and the modest provisions he requests reveals either genuine humility or a fugitive's desperation — or both.
- 21.** 'I return safely to my father's house' (veshavti veshalom el-beit avi) — the word shalom means not merely 'safely' but 'in wholeness, in completeness, in peace.' Jacob wants to come back whole — not just alive but restored, reconciled, integrated. The journey to Haran will break him before it makes him whole; he will return with wives, children, wealth, a limp, and a new name (32:28).
- 21.** 'Then the LORD shall be my God' (vehayah YHWH li le'Elohim) — the most audacious element of the vow. Jacob makes his acceptance of YHWH as his personal God conditional on divine performance. This is not the language of settled faith but of a man testing the waters. God declared 'I am the LORD, the God of Abraham your father' (v. 13); Jacob responds, in effect, 'We'll see.' The verb hayah ('to be') in the future tense — 'he will be my God' — defers the relationship. Jacob's faith is embryonic, conditional, emerging. It will mature through twenty years of hardship, deception by Laban, and the wrestling at Peniel.
- 22.** 'This stone... shall be the house of God' (veha'even hazzo't... yihyeh beit Elohim) — the stone-pillow-become-pillar is now declared to be God's house. The progression is complete: stone pillow pillar house of God. A piece of the earth's surface has been elevated through encounter and consecration into a dwelling place for the divine. The theology is not that God needs a house but that sacred spaces are created by divine encounter and human response.
- 22.** 'I will surely give a tenth' (asser a'assrennu) — the infinitive absolute construction (asser a'assrennu) emphasizes certainty: 'tithing I will tithe.' The ma'aser (tithe, tenth) predates Mosaic legislation; it appears already in Abraham's gift to Melchizedek (14:20). Jacob pledges a tenth of everything God gives him — an acknowledgment that all prosperity originates with God and that a portion must be returned. The tithe is both gratitude and obligation, both worship and economics. Jacob the calculator gives God exactly ten percent — no more, no less. Even his worship has a precise figure.

29

Summary: *Jacob arrives in Haran, meets Rachel at a well, and weeps. He agrees to serve Laban seven years for Rachel. On the wedding night, Laban substitutes Leah. Jacob protests; Laban cites local custom about the firstborn. Jacob serves another seven years for Rachel. God sees Leah is unloved and opens her womb; she bears Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The deceiver is deceived: Jacob who dressed as his older brother to steal a blessing is now given the older sister instead of the younger. Laban's justification — 'it is not done in our place to give the younger before the firstborn' (v. 26) — is an exact inversion of what Jacob did. Each of Leah's sons' names encodes her pain: Reuben ('see, a son'), Simeon ('heard'), Levi ('joined/attached'), and Judah ('praise') — tracing an arc from desperate hope for love to worship of God. The seven years that 'seemed but a few days because of his love' (v. 20) is one of the Bible's most affecting descriptions of desire.*

Translation Friction: *Leah's eyes are described as rakkot (v. 17), a word meaning 'soft,' 'tender,' or 'weak.' Whether this is a compliment (gentle, tender eyes) or a deficiency (weak, dull eyes) is debated, and the contrast with Rachel's beauty leaves the meaning uncertain. We rendered it as 'soft' and noted the ambiguity. The verb senu'ah ('unloved,' v. 31) literally means 'hated,' but in context it describes lesser love rather than active hostility; we used 'unloved' to capture the relational dynamic.*

Connections: *The well-meeting between Jacob and Rachel (29:1-12) echoes the servant's meeting with Rebekah (24:10-27) — the second in a series of biblical betrothal type-scenes. Judah's birth (29:35) marks the ancestor of the royal tribe and the messianic line (49:10; Matthew 1:2). Laban's deception inaugurates twenty years of conflict that shapes Jacob's character.*

¹Then Jacob lifted his feet and went to the land of the people of the east. ²He looked, and there was a well in the field, and there — three flocks of sheep lying beside it, for from that well they watered the flocks. And a great stone was upon the

mouth of the well. ³When all the flocks were gathered there, they would roll the stone from the mouth of the well and water the sheep, then return the stone to its place upon the mouth of the well. ⁴Jacob said to them, "My brothers, where are you from?" They said, "We are from Haran." ⁵He said to them, "Do you know Laban son of Nahor?" They said, "We know him." ⁶He said to them, "Is it well with him?" They said, "It is well. And look — Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep." ⁷He said, "Look, it is still broad daylight. It is not yet time for the livestock to be gathered. Water the sheep and go, pasture them." ⁸They said, "We cannot, until all the flocks are gathered and they roll the stone from the mouth of the well. Then we water the sheep." ⁹While he was still speaking with them, Rachel came with her father's sheep, for she was a shepherdess. ¹⁰When Jacob saw Rachel, daughter of Laban his mother's brother, and the sheep of Laban his mother's brother, Jacob drew near and rolled the stone from the mouth of the well, and watered the flock of Laban his mother's brother. ¹¹Jacob kissed Rachel and broke into loud weeping. ¹²Jacob told Rachel that he was her father's kinsman, and that he was Rebekah's son. She ran and told her father. ¹³When Laban heard the report of Jacob his sister's son, he ran to meet him and embraced him and kissed him and brought him into his house. And Jacob told Laban all these things. ¹⁴Laban said to him, "Surely you are my bone and my flesh!" And he stayed with him a month's time. ¹⁵Laban said to Jacob, "Because you are my kinsman, should you serve me for nothing? Tell me — what shall your wages be?" ¹⁶Laban had two daughters: the older one was named Leah, and the younger was named Rachel. ¹⁷Leah's eyes were soft, but Rachel was beautiful in form and beautiful in appearance. ¹⁸Jacob loved Rachel. He said, "I will serve you seven years for Rachel, your younger daughter." ¹⁹Laban said, "Better that I give her to you than that I give her to another man. Stay with me." ²⁰So Jacob served seven years for Rachel, and they seemed in his eyes as but a few days, because of his love for her. ²¹Jacob said to Laban, "Give me my wife, for my time is completed, that I may go in to her." ²²Laban gathered all the men of the place and made a feast. ²³When evening came, Laban took his daughter Leah and presented her to Jacob, and Jacob slept with her. ²⁴And Laban gave his servant Zilpah to Leah his daughter as her servant. ²⁵And it was in the morning — and look, it was Leah! He said to Laban, "What is this you have done to me? Was it not for Rachel that I served you? Why have you deceived me?" ²⁶Laban said, "It is not done so in our place — to give the younger before the firstborn." ²⁷"Complete the week of this one, and we will give you the other also, for the service that you will serve with me — yet another seven years." ²⁸Jacob did so and completed her week. Then Laban gave him Rachel his daughter as his wife. ²⁹And Laban gave to Rachel his daughter Bilhah, his servant, as her servant. ³⁰He went in also to Rachel, and he loved Rachel more than Leah, and he served with Laban yet another seven years. ³¹When the LORD saw that Leah was unloved, he opened her womb. But Rachel was barren. ³²Leah conceived and bore a son and called his name Reuben, for she said, "Because the LORD has looked upon my affliction — surely now my husband will love me." ³³She conceived again and bore a son and said, "Because the LORD has heard that I am unloved, he has given me this one also." She called his name Simeon. ³⁴She conceived again and bore a son and said, "Now this time my husband will be joined to me, because I have borne him three sons." Therefore his name was called Levi. ³⁵She conceived again and bore a son and said, "This time I will praise the LORD." Therefore she called his name Judah. Then she ceased bearing.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Jacob lifted his feet' (vayyissa Ya'aqov raglav) — the idiom is unique in the Hebrew Bible and strikingly physical. After the Bethel theophany, Jacob does not merely 'journey' — he lifts his feet, as if the divine encounter has given him new energy and resolve. The expression suggests eagerness, even lightness: the man who slept on a stone pillow and saw heaven opened now walks with purpose. The Targum Onqelos paraphrases 'he went quickly,' capturing the sense of joyful haste.
1. 'The land of the people of the east' (artsah benei-qedem) — benei qedem ('sons of the east') designates the region of upper Mesopotamia, the ancestral homeland. Jacob leaves the promised land for the first time, heading toward the family he has never met. The journey reverses Abraham's migration: Abraham left the east for Canaan, Jacob now returns east. This pattern of exile and return will define Israel's story.
2. 'A well in the field' (be'er basadeh) — wells are places of encounter in Genesis. Abraham's servant met Rebekah at a well (24:11), Hagar found a well in the wilderness (16:14), Isaac contended over wells in Gerar (26:18–22). Now Jacob's story pivots at a well. In the patriarchal narratives, wells are sites of providence, courtship, and covenant — the life-giving water drawing together those whom God intends to join.
2. 'A great stone was upon the mouth of the well' (veha'even gedolah al-pi habe'er) — the stone sealing the well creates a communal protocol: no one waters until all arrive. It also sets the stage for Jacob's feat in verse 10, where he rolls the stone alone. The stone anticipates the theme of obstacles that must be removed before blessing flows.

3. The description of the watering protocol (vene'esfu-shammah kol-ha'adarim) establishes communal practice: the stone requires collective effort and collective agreement. No single shepherd acts alone — until Jacob does. The repetitive structure (gather, roll, water, return) conveys the rhythm of a daily routine. The verb *galelu* ('they rolled') will recur in verse 10 when Jacob rolls the stone by himself — an act of extraordinary strength or extraordinary motivation.
4. 'My brothers' (*achai*) — Jacob addresses strangers with the language of kinship, an ancient Near Eastern courtesy but also, as it turns out, literally true. He is speaking to people from the very town where his family lives. The term establishes Jacob's social ease and sets up the revelations that follow.
5. 'Laban son of Nahor' (*Lavan ben-Nachor*) — strictly, Laban is Nahor's grandson (through Bethuel), but the genealogical shorthand 'son of' can mean 'descendant of' in Hebrew. Nahor was Abraham's brother, so the question identifies the family line Jacob seeks. The shepherds' terse 'we know him' (*yada'nu*) confirms Jacob has arrived at the right place — providence has guided his steps to the exact well where Rachel will appear.
6. 'Is it well with him?' (*hashalom lo*) — the question uses *shalom* in its fullest sense: health, wholeness, prosperity, peace. Jacob inquires after the total well-being of a man he has never met but on whom his future depends.
6. 'Look — Rachel his daughter is coming with the sheep' (*vehinneh Rachel bitto ba'ah im-hatson*) — the *hinneh* ('behold/look') signals a narrative pivot. Rachel's entrance is dramatically timed: she appears at the precise moment of inquiry. Like Rebekah at the well (24:15), the intended bride arrives at the providential moment. That Rachel is a shepherdess places her among working women — she tends her father's flock, just as Jacob will tend it for her.
7. Jacob urges the shepherds to water and go — ostensibly practical advice, but the narrative effect is to clear the scene for his private encounter with Rachel. Whether Jacob consciously wants privacy or the narrator shapes events toward an intimate meeting, the result is the same. His assertiveness with strangers is characteristic: Jacob acts, manages, negotiates — even among people he has just met.
8. 'We cannot' (*lo nukhal*) — the shepherds explain the communal constraint: the stone is too heavy for one or two shepherds, requiring collective effort. This establishes the contrast with what Jacob is about to do in verse 10. Their 'we cannot' becomes the backdrop for his extraordinary 'he did.'
9. 'While he was still speaking' (*odenu medabber immam*) — the temporal clause heightens the drama. Rachel arrives mid-conversation, as if cued by the narrative itself. The same construction appears when Rebekah arrives in 24:15 ('before he had finished speaking') — the typological parallel between the two betrothal scenes is unmistakable.
9. 'For she was a shepherdess' (*ki ro'ah hi*) — the feminine participle *ro'ah* identifies Rachel's occupation. In the patriarchal world, a daughter tending flocks could indicate modest family circumstances or simply that the family had no sons old enough for the task. Rachel's name itself means 'ewe' — she is literally the shepherdess named after her charges.
10. The threefold repetition of 'Laban his mother's brother' (*Lavan achi immo*) is extraordinary — three times in a single verse. The narrator insists on the kinship connection, as if Jacob sees not just a beautiful woman but a family bond incarnate. This is his mother's world, and he enters it through an act of superhuman service.
10. 'Jacob drew near and rolled the stone' (*vayyiggash Ya'aqov vayyagel et-ha'even*) — what required all the gathered shepherds, Jacob does alone. The text offers no explanation — no mention of divine strength, no comment on the stone's weight. The act speaks for itself: love, adrenaline, or the need to prove himself before Rachel. The verb *galal* ('rolled') is the same used for the communal rolling in verse 3, but here it is singular. Jacob overturns the established order with a single gesture.
11. 'Jacob kissed Rachel and lifted up his voice and wept' (*vayyishaq Ya'aqov leRachel vayyissa et-qolo vayyevk*) — the sequence is startling: a kiss, then loud weeping. This is not romantic delicacy but overwhelming emotion. Jacob is a fugitive who has just found family. The weeping may combine relief, longing, gratitude, and the recognition that exile has an end. The verb *vayyissa et-qolo* ('lifted up his voice') indicates audible, unrestrained crying — this is not quiet tears but the outpouring of a man at the end of his strength finding the beginning of his future.
11. The kiss (*neshiqah*) between kinsmen is a standard greeting in the ancient Near East (cf. Laban's kiss in v. 13, Esau's in 33:4). Yet its placement before self-identification creates a moment of pure, unmediated connection — Jacob acts from emotion before protocol.
12. 'Her father's kinsman' (*achi aviha*) — the word *ach* can mean 'brother' but also 'kinsman, relative.' Jacob is Laban's nephew, not his brother. The broader kinship sense is intended. Jacob identifies himself through two relationships: as Laban's relative and as Rebekah's son. The maternal identification carries weight — Rebekah is the link between these two families.
12. 'She ran and told her father' (*vattarats vattagged le'aviha*) — Rachel's running (ruts) echoes Rebekah's running to tell her family about Abraham's servant (24:28). The parallel between mother and daughter at the well is precise: both meet a kinsman, both run home to report. The verb *tagged* ('told') implies substantive reporting — she conveyed news that would change the household.
13. 'He ran to meet him and embraced him and kissed him' (*vayyarats liqra'to vaychabbeq-lo vaynasheq-lo*) — the cascade of verbs (ran, embraced, kissed) presents a warm welcome, but the reader who remembers chapter 24 may wonder about Laban's motives. When Abraham's servant arrived with ten camels laden with gifts, Laban was equally enthusiastic (24:29–31). Here Jacob arrives empty-handed — a fugitive, not a suitor's envoy. Whether Laban's warmth is genuine affection or calculating hospitality (assessing what this nephew might be worth), the narrator leaves ambiguous.
13. 'He told Laban all these things' (*vaysapper leLavan et kol-haddevarim ha'elleh*) — what does 'all these things' include? The Bethel vision? The stolen blessing? The flight from Esau? The narrator's vagueness allows us to imagine the conversation: Jacob the storyteller, Laban the listener and calculator.

14. 'My bone and my flesh' (atsmi uvsari) — this phrase directly echoes Adam's recognition of Eve: 'bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh' (etsem me'atsamai uvasar mibbesari, 2:23). Laban recognizes in Jacob a kinship as deep as the primal human bond. The irony is layered: Laban, who will deceive Jacob as Jacob deceived Isaac, begins with the language of deepest intimacy. The echo of Eden in the household of a manipulator adds narrative tension.
14. 'A month's time' (chodesh yamim) — literally 'a month of days.' During this period Jacob presumably works for Laban without formal arrangement, establishing his value. The month serves as a probationary period after which Laban will propose the terms that shape the next fourteen years.
15. 'Should you serve me for nothing?' (va'avadtani chinnam) — Laban's question appears generous, even magnanimous. But it also reveals that Jacob has been working without pay for a month — and Laban has been benefiting. The offer to set wages transfers the moral burden to Jacob: now Jacob must name his price, and whatever he names, Laban can use. The word chinnam ('for nothing, gratis') carries a note of exploitation — Laban acknowledges that unpaid kinship labor has limits, but the acknowledgment itself becomes leverage.
16. The narrator introduces the two daughters with a structural note — elder (gedolah) and younger (qetannah) — that will drive the entire plot. The elder-younger distinction echoes throughout Genesis: Cain and Abel, Ishmael and Isaac, Esau and Jacob. Here the pattern takes a new form: Jacob, who seized his elder brother's place, will be forced to accept the elder daughter before the younger. Leah's name may derive from le'ah ('weary, languid') or from an Akkadian cognate meaning 'cow.' Rachel means 'ewe.'
17. 'Leah's eyes were soft' (ve'einei Le'ah rakkot) — the adjective rakkot ('soft, tender, delicate') is ambiguous. It could be a positive trait (gentle, tender eyes) or a negative one (weak, dull eyes — lacking the brightness prized in the ancient Near East). The traditional reading takes it as unfavorable, contrasting Leah's one noted feature with Rachel's complete beauty. But rakh elsewhere describes what is gentle, young, or tender (33:13; Deuteronomy 28:54), leaving open the possibility that Leah's eyes expressed a different kind of beauty — one the narrator and Jacob overlooked.
17. 'Beautiful in form and beautiful in appearance' (yefat-to'ar vifaf mar'eh) — the double description echoes the language used of Joseph (39:6) and of Sarah. Rachel's beauty is both structural (to'ar, 'form, figure') and visual (mar'eh, 'appearance, countenance'). The contrast with Leah is sharp: Rachel receives two adjectives of beauty, Leah one ambiguous descriptor. The text mirrors Jacob's perception — he sees Rachel's beauty and Leah's... eyes.
18. 'Jacob loved Rachel' (vaye'ehav Ya'aqov et-Rachel) — this is the first use of love (ahavah) in a romantic context between a man and woman in Genesis since Isaac and Rebekah (24:67). Jacob's love is immediate, consuming, and it will cost him fourteen years. The verb is in the narrative past — it states a fact, not a process. He loved her.
18. 'Seven years for Rachel your younger daughter' (sheva shanim beRachel bittekha haqetannah) — Jacob specifies 'younger daughter' to eliminate ambiguity, yet this specificity will not protect him from Laban's deception. The bride-price of seven years' labor was substantial — far exceeding normal mohar (bride-price). Jacob, who arrived with nothing, offers the only currency he has: his body, his time, his labor. A man of no property pays with himself.
19. 'Better that I give her to you' (tov titi otah lakh) — Laban agrees without naming Rachel. He says 'her' (otah), not 'Rachel.' In retrospect, this ambiguity is either Laban's cunning or the narrator's foreshadowing — perhaps both. Laban's 'her' can refer to either daughter, and when the substitution comes, Laban will exploit exactly this kind of unspecified reference. 'Stay with me' (shevah immadi) — the invitation sounds hospitable but means: remain as my laborer.
20. 'They seemed in his eyes as but a few days, because of his love for her' (vayiyhyu ve'einav keyamim achadim be'ahavato otah) — this is one of the most celebrated lines in Genesis, and in all ancient literature. Seven years — 2,555 days — compressed to 'a few days' by the alchemy of love. The phrase be'ahavato otah ('because of his love for her') is the narrator's rare editorial comment on interior emotion. The text does not often tell us what characters feel; here it makes an exception. The observation is psychologically precise: time passes quickly not in spite of longing but because of it — each day is suffused with purpose and anticipation.
20. The literary effect is also structural: the narrator collapses seven years into a single sentence, making the reader experience the same temporal compression that Jacob felt. We arrive at the wedding night as abruptly as Jacob seems to have arrived.
21. 'Give me my wife' (havah et-ishti) — the directness is striking. Jacob does not ask; he demands. The verb havah is imperative — 'give!' The possessive 'my wife' (ishti) claims Rachel as already his by right of contract. After seven years of labor, Jacob asserts ownership of the promise. The frankness of 'that I may go in to her' (ve'avo'ah eleha) — a euphemism for sexual union — reveals Jacob's impatience. He has waited, he has served, and now he claims what is his.
22. 'Made a feast' (vayya'as mishteh) — mishteh derives from shatah ('to drink'); it is a drinking feast, a banquet. The public gathering serves as witnesses to the marriage, but it also ensures that Jacob is well supplied with wine. The feast may be part of Laban's plan: an inebriated groom is less likely to detect the substitution in the darkness of the wedding tent. Laban stages the celebration as both social obligation and cover for deception.
23. 'In the evening' (ba'erev) — darkness is the instrument of deception, just as it was when Jacob deceived Isaac. Isaac could not see because his eyes were dim; Jacob cannot see because it is night. The symmetry is devastating: the man who exploited his father's blindness is now victimized by darkness. What goes around comes around — in Genesis, measure for measure (middah keneged middah) is a structural principle, not just a moral maxim.
23. 'He took Leah his daughter and brought her to him' (vayyiqqach et-Le'ah vitto vayyave otah elav) — the subject is Laban, the object is Leah. She is brought — the passive construction raises questions about Leah's agency. Did she consent? Did she resist? Was she veiled? The text is silent on

Leah's experience, but her complicity or coercion is one of the great unasked questions of Genesis.

24. 'Zilpah his servant' (Zilpah shifchato) — Zilpah will later become a secondary wife to Jacob and mother of Gad and Asher (30:9–13). The giving of a personal servant to a bride was customary in the ancient Near East (cf. Rebekah received attendants, 24:59, 61). The detail, seemingly incidental, plants a character who will play a significant role in the expansion of Jacob's family.
25. 'And look, it was Leah!' (vehinnehi Le'ah) — the *hinneh* expresses Jacob's shock. Morning light reveals what darkness concealed. The moment is the dramatic center of the chapter and one of the great reversals in all of Scripture. Jacob the deceiver is deceived. The man who put on goatskins to feel like Esau now discovers that Leah has been substituted for Rachel. The irony is exquisite: Jacob, whose name means 'supplanter,' has been supplanted.
25. 'What is this you have done to me?' (mah-zot asita li) — this exact phrase will be echoed by Pharaoh to Abraham (12:18) and by Abimelech to Isaac (26:10) — in those cases, the patriarch was the deceiver. Now Jacob is on the receiving end. The words become a refrain of accusation that tracks through Genesis, binding together all who practice deception.
25. 'Why have you deceived me?' (lammah rimmitani) — the verb *ramah* ('deceive') is the same word Esau used about Jacob: 'he has deceived me these two times' (27:36). The linguistic echo is precise and punishing. Jacob, who tricked his blind father with disguise, is now tricked by darkness and disguise. The Torah's moral architecture is visible in its vocabulary.
26. 'To give the younger before the firstborn' (latet hatse'irah lifnei habbekhirah) — the irony cuts to the bone. Jacob, who took the firstborn's blessing by deception, is now told that the younger cannot come before the elder. Laban invokes custom, but the narrative invokes justice: you who reversed the birth order in your father's house will now experience what it means when the proper order is enforced. Whether Laban intends this irony is unclear; the narrator certainly does.
26. The words *tse'irah* ('younger') and *bekhirah* ('firstborn') echo the language of Jacob and Esau's story. Jacob was the *tsa'ir* who seized the *bekhorah* (birthright) and the *berakhah* (blessing) of the *bekhor* (firstborn). Now the *bekhor*'s rights are asserted against him.
27. 'Complete the week of this one' (malle shevua zot) — the 'week' (*shavua*) refers to the seven-day bridal celebration. Laban tells Jacob to honor Leah's wedding week before receiving Rachel. The phrase 'this one' (*zot*) rather than 'Leah' depersonalizes the daughter — she is a contractual unit, not a person in Laban's speech.
27. 'Yet another seven years' (*od sheva-shanim acherot*) — Jacob will serve fourteen years total for the wife he wanted. The doubling of the bride-price doubles the years of servitude. But Laban's offer is also generous in a sense: Jacob receives Rachel after just one week, not after seven more years. He serves the additional years afterward. Still, the total cost of Laban's deception is enormous: fourteen years of Jacob's prime.
28. 'Jacob did so' (*vayya'as Ya'akov ken*) — Jacob accepts Laban's terms without recorded protest. The man who schemed to obtain his father's blessing submits to Laban's scheme without resistance. Whether this reflects powerlessness (a stranger in a foreign land, bound by contract), love for Rachel (he will endure anything to have her), or a dawning recognition that deception has consequences, the text does not say. Jacob's silence is eloquent.
29. 'Bilhah his servant' (*Bilhah shifchato*) — like Zilpah given to Leah, Bilhah will become a secondary wife and mother of Dan and Naphtali (30:3–8). The parallel gifts to the two daughters establish structural symmetry: each wife receives a servant who will bear children in the surrogate-motherhood arrangement common in the ancient Near East (cf. Sarah and Hagar, chapter 16).
30. 'He loved Rachel more than Leah' (*vaye'ehav gam-et-Rachel miLe'ah*) — the comparative 'more than' (*min*) establishes a hierarchy of affection that will wound Leah and shape the destiny of nations. The son Leah bears fourth — Judah — will father the royal line leading to David and beyond. The unloved wife produces the line of kings. God's choices consistently overturn human preferences in Genesis.
30. 'Yet another seven years' (*od sheva-shanim acherot*) — the repetition of 'seven years' from verse 20 creates a structural frame: seven years before the wedding and seven after. But the narrator does not repeat the beautiful observation that time flew because of love. The second seven years are served in the shadow of deception, with a household already riven by rivalry.
31. 'Leah was unloved' (*senu'ah Le'ah*) — the word *senu'ah* is harsh: its root *sane'* means 'to hate.' The rendering 'unloved' softens what the Hebrew states bluntly. Leah is hated — not necessarily with active malice, but with the cold dismissal of a woman who was never wanted. The legal term *senu'ah* appears in Deuteronomy 21:15–17 in legislation protecting the rights of the 'hated wife's' firstborn son. Leah's situation is not unique; it was common enough to require legislation.
31. 'He opened her womb' (*vayyiftach et-rachmah*) — the verb *patach* ('open') with *rechem* ('womb') is a divine prerogative in the Hebrew Bible. Fertility and barrenness are in God's hands. The LORD's response to Leah's suffering is not to change Jacob's heart but to give Leah children — her own source of dignity and identity. The theological logic is consistent: God sees the afflicted and acts through the means available within the story's world.
31. 'Rachel was barren' (*veRachel aqarah*) — the beloved wife is barren, continuing the pattern of Sarah (11:30), Rebekah (25:21), and later Hannah (1 Samuel 1:2). Barrenness in Genesis is never permanent but always purposeful — it creates space for divine intervention and highlights that the covenant line depends on God, not on human preference or natural capacity.
32. 'Reuben' (*Re'uven*) — the name is explained with a double etymology: 'the LORD has looked' (*ra'ah YHWH*) upon my affliction, and 'see, a son' (*re'u-ven*). Both explanations work phonetically. The name becomes Leah's testimony: God sees what Jacob does not. Each of Leah's naming speeches is a window into her pain — she names her children not with joy alone but with desperate hope that each son will turn her husband's heart.

32. 'My affliction' (onyi) — the word oni ('affliction, misery') is the same used for Israel's suffering in Egypt (Exodus 3:7). Leah's personal anguish is framed in the language of national suffering. She is the afflicted one whom God sees — a prototype of the people God will later see and deliver.
33. 'Simeon' (Shim'on) — from shama' ('to hear'). First God saw (Reuben), now God has heard (Simeon). Leah maps the divine senses onto her children's names: sight, then hearing. Her theology is experiential — she knows God through what God does in response to her suffering. The progression from 'seen' to 'heard' parallels the Exodus language: 'I have surely seen the affliction...and have heard their cry' (Exodus 3:7).
33. 'Because I am unloved' (ki-senu'ah anokhi) — Leah states her condition with painful clarity. She does not blame Jacob or soften the word. She is senu'ah — hated. But she frames even this harsh reality within divine care: the LORD hears the unloved. This theological conviction — that God attends to the rejected — becomes foundational to Israelite faith.
34. 'Levi' (Levi) — from lavah ('to join, to be attached'). Leah's hope has shifted: with Reuben she hoped for love, with Simeon for acknowledgment, now with Levi she hopes for attachment — yillaveh, 'he will be joined to me.' The diminishing expectations are heartbreaking. She no longer asks for love, only for connection. Yet Levi's descendants will become the priestly tribe — those 'attached' to God's service. The rejected wife's longing for attachment produces the line of attachment to the divine.
34. The shift from 'called his name' (vatiqra shemo) to 'his name was called' (qara shemo) in the Hebrew is subtle — some manuscripts vary. The passive form may suggest that the name was given by others or became established usage, though the distinction is uncertain.
35. 'This time I will praise the LORD' (happa'am odeh et-YHWH) — something has changed in Leah. The first three names encoded her suffering, her longing, her desperate hope for Jacob's love. With the fourth son, she turns from husband to God. She does not mention Jacob at all. The shift from 'my husband will love me' to 'I will praise the LORD' marks a spiritual transformation: Leah has stopped seeking validation in Jacob's affection and found it in gratitude to God. This is perhaps the most profound theological moment in the chapter.
35. 'Judah' (Yehudah) — from yadah ('to praise, to give thanks'). The name that will define Israel's royal tribe, the kingdom of Judah, and eventually the term 'Jew' (Yehudi) originates in an unloved woman's praise. The line from Judah to David to the messianic hope begins here, in Leah's declaration of praise born from suffering. That the most consequential of Jacob's sons comes from the wife he did not choose is Genesis at its most theologically subversive.
35. 'She ceased bearing' (vatta'amod milledet) — literally 'she stood from bearing,' meaning she stopped. This pause sets up the rivalry and surrogacy arrangements of chapter 30. The cessation is temporary — Leah will bear again (30:17–20) — but it creates the dramatic space for Rachel's anguish and the competition that follows.

30

Summary: *The birth competition between Leah and Rachel intensifies. Rachel gives Bilhah to Jacob; Leah gives Zilpah. Through direct births and surrogate births, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, and Dinah are born. God finally remembers Rachel, who bears Joseph. Jacob then negotiates with Laban for wages, using breeding strategies to build his flocks.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Each son's name becomes a compressed narrative of maternal theology: Dan ('he judged'), Naphtali ('my wrestling'), Gad ('fortune'), Asher ('happy'), Issachar ('wages'), Zebulun ('honor'). Rachel's cry 'give me children or I am dying' (v. 1) echoes the desperation of the barren matriarchs before her. When God 'remembers' Rachel (v. 22) — the same verb used for Noah (8:1) — it signals the same divine turning. Joseph's name encodes both past grief ('God has taken away my reproach,' asaph) and future hope ('may the LORD add,' yoseph).*

Translation Friction: *The mandrake episode (vv. 14-16) introduces duda'im, plants associated with fertility and love in the ancient Near East. The transaction — Leah 'hires' Jacob for the night with mandrakes — uses commercial language (sakhar, v. 16, the root of Issachar's name) for the most intimate of arrangements. We rendered the vocabulary directly and let the discomfort stand. Rachel's wordplay on Joseph's name draws from two different roots (asaph and yasaph), a double etymology we preserved in the notes.*

Connections: *The twelve sons who become the twelve tribes of Israel are nearly complete here (Benjamin follows in 35:18). The surrogate-mothering through Bilhah and Zilpah parallels Sarai's use of Hagar (16:2). God 'remembering' Rachel (30:22) continues the pattern from Noah (8:1) and anticipates God remembering Israel in Egypt (Exodus 2:24).*

¹When Rachel saw that she bore Jacob no children, Rachel envied her sister. She said to Jacob, "Give me children — if not, I am dying!" ²Jacob's anger burned against Rachel, and he said, "Am I in the place of God, who has withheld from you the

fruit of the womb?" ³She said, "Here is my servant Bilhah. Go in to her, that she may bear upon my knees, and I too may be built up through her." ⁴She gave him Bilhah her servant as a wife, and Jacob went in to her. ⁵Bilhah conceived and bore Jacob a son. ⁶Rachel said, "God has judged me and has also heard my voice and given me a son." Therefore she called his name Dan. ⁷Bilhah, Rachel's servant, conceived again and bore Jacob a second son. ⁸Rachel said, "With wrestlings of God I have wrestled with my sister, and I have prevailed!" She called his name Naphtali. ⁹When Leah saw that she had ceased bearing, she took Zilpah her servant and gave her to Jacob as a wife. ¹⁰Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a son. ¹¹Leah said, "Fortune has come!" And she called his name Gad. ¹²Zilpah, Leah's servant, bore Jacob a second son. ¹³Leah said, "Happy am I, for women will call me happy!" She called his name Asher. ¹⁴Reuben went out in the days of the wheat harvest and found mandrakes in the field and brought them to his mother Leah. Rachel said to Leah, "Please give me some of your son's mandrakes." ¹⁵She said to her, "Is it a small thing that you have taken my husband? And would you take my son's mandrakes too?" Rachel said, "Then he may lie with you tonight in exchange for your son's mandrakes." ¹⁶Jacob came in from the field in the evening, and Leah went out to meet him and said, "You must come in to me, for I have surely hired you with my son's mandrakes." And he lay with her that night. ¹⁷God listened to Leah, and she conceived and bore Jacob a fifth son. ¹⁸Leah said, "God has given me my wages, because I gave my servant to my husband." She called his name Issachar. ¹⁹Leah conceived again and bore Jacob a sixth son. ²⁰Leah said, "God has endowed me with a good gift. Now my husband will honor me, because I have borne him six sons." She called his name Zebulun. ²¹Later she gave birth to a daughter and named her Dinah. ²²Then God remembered Rachel, and God listened to her and opened her womb. ²³She conceived and bore a son and said, "God has taken away my reproach." ²⁴She called his name Joseph, saying, "May the LORD add to me another son." ²⁵When Rachel had borne Joseph, Jacob said to Laban, "Send me away, that I may go to my own place and to my country." ²⁶"Give me my wives and my children, for whom I have served you, and let me go. For you yourself know my service with which I have served you." ²⁷Laban said to him, "If I have found favor in your eyes — I have divined that the LORD has blessed me on your account." ²⁸He said, "Name your wages to me, and I will give it." ²⁹Jacob said to him, "You know how I have served you, and how your livestock has fared with me." ³⁰"For what you had before me was little, and it has burst forth into abundance, and the LORD has blessed you wherever I turned. But now — when shall I also provide for my own house?" ³¹He said, "What shall I give you?" Jacob said, "You shall not give me anything. If you will do this thing for me, I will return to pasture and keep your flock." ³²"Let me pass through all your flock today, removing from it every speckled and spotted sheep, and every dark-colored one among the lambs, and the spotted and speckled among the goats — and these shall be my wages." ³³"So my righteousness will testify for me in time to come, when you come to inspect my wages before you. Every one that is not speckled and spotted among the goats and dark among the lambs — if found with me, it is stolen." ³⁴Laban said, "Agreed! Let it be according to your word." ³⁵He removed that day the striped and spotted male goats, and all the speckled and spotted female goats — every one that had white in it — and every dark one among the lambs, and gave them into the charge of his sons. ³⁶He set a three days' journey between himself and Jacob, and Jacob pastured the rest of Laban's flock. ³⁷Jacob took fresh rods of poplar, almond, and plane tree, and peeled white stripes in them, exposing the white that was in the rods. ³⁸He set the rods that he had peeled in the troughs — the watering channels where the flocks came to drink — facing the flocks. And they mated when they came to drink. ³⁹The flocks bred before the rods and bore young that were striped, speckled, and spotted. ⁴⁰Jacob separated the lambs and set the faces of the flocks toward the striped and all the dark-colored in the flock of Laban. He set his own droves apart and did not put them with Laban's flock. ⁴¹Whenever the stronger of the flock were in heat, Jacob would place the rods before the eyes of the flock in the troughs, so that they would breed among the rods. ⁴²But when the flock was feeble, he did not place them. So the feebler were Laban's and the stronger Jacob's. ⁴³The man increased exceedingly — very greatly — and had large flocks, and female servants and male servants, and camels and donkeys.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Give me children — if not, I am dying!' (havah-li vanim ve'im-ayin metah anokhi) — Rachel's cry is one of the most emotionally raw statements in Genesis. The verb havah ('give!') is an imperative demand — the same word Jacob used to demand his wife from Laban (29:21). Now Rachel demands from Jacob what only God can give. Her words echo ancient Rachel's anguish but also reveal a theological confusion: she addresses Jacob as though

he controls fertility.

1. The phrase 'I am dying' (metah anakhi) uses the participle — 'I am in the process of dying,' not a future threat but a present experience. Barrenness in the ancient Near East was not merely a private sorrow; it was social death, a failure of identity in a culture where a woman's worth was measured in sons. Rachel's desperation is existential, not merely emotional.
2. 'Am I in the place of God?' (hathachat Elohim anakhi) — Jacob's theological response is correct but pastorally brutal. He rightly identifies God as the source of fertility (cf. 29:31, where the LORD opens Leah's womb), but he delivers this truth in anger rather than compassion. The question is rhetorical and cutting — the answer is obviously 'no.' Jacob deflects Rachel's pain rather than entering into it. His response contrasts sharply with Isaac, who 'prayed to the LORD on behalf of his wife' when Rebekah was barren (25:21).
2. 'The fruit of the womb' (peri-vaten) — the metaphor of children as 'fruit' links human fertility to agricultural abundance. The womb (beten) produces fruit (peri) as the earth produces harvest — both are God's domain. The phrase will reappear in blessings and curses throughout Deuteronomy.
3. 'Bear upon my knees' (teled al-birkai) — the expression likely refers to a legal adoption ritual: the child born to the surrogate is placed on the wife's knees, symbolizing that the child is legally hers. The practice parallels Sarah's arrangement with Hagar (16:2) and reflects widespread ancient Near Eastern custom documented in texts from Nuzi and other sites.
3. 'I too may be built up through her' (ve'ibbaneh gam-anokhi mimmenah) — the verb banah ('build') contains the root of ben ('son'). To be 'built up' through children is to construct a house, a lineage, a future. Rachel's language reveals that children are not merely desired but architecturally necessary — without them, her house has no foundation.
4. The pattern replicates Sarah's offer of Hagar to Abraham (16:3): the barren wife gives her servant to her husband, and the servant bears children on the wife's behalf. In both cases, the arrangement creates familial tension. The text records no objection from Jacob — in contrast to his anger in verse 2, he readily accepts the practical solution. Bilhah's status shifts from shifchah ('servant') to ishah ('wife'), though her social position remains subordinate.
5. The terse narration — 'conceived and bore' (vattahar...vateled) — contrasts with the emotional speeches that bracket each birth. Bilhah herself is silent throughout; only Rachel interprets the births. The servant's voice is absent from the record, her experience subsumed into her mistress's narrative. This silence is characteristic of the biblical treatment of surrogate mothers.
6. 'God has judged me' (dananni Elohim) — the verb dan ('judged') can mean either 'vindicated' or 'rendered judgment.' Rachel takes it as vindication — God has judged her case and found in her favor. The name Dan embeds the concept of divine justice in a child's identity. The tribe of Dan will later be associated with judging (49:16: 'Dan shall judge his people').
6. 'Has also heard my voice' (vegam shama beqoli) — Rachel echoes Leah's Simeon ('the LORD has heard,' 29:33). Both women claim divine hearing. The competition between the sisters extends to their theology: each insists that God is on her side. The narrative does not adjudicate between them — God apparently hears both.
7. Again Bilhah bears and is identified by her relation to Rachel — 'Rachel's servant' (shifchat Rachel). Her identity is defined entirely through her mistress. The second son deepens Rachel's surrogate victory, but the competition with Leah is far from over.
8. 'Wrestlings of God' (naphtalei Elohim) — the phrase is remarkable. Elohim here functions as a superlative ('mighty wrestlings' or 'divine wrestlings'), but it also suggests that the competition between the sisters has a cosmic dimension. Rachel understands her fertility struggle as a divinely weighted contest. The root pathal ('twist, wrestle') anticipates Jacob's own wrestling at the Jabbok (32:25), where he too will 'wrestle with God.' The family's vocabulary of struggle will become its defining characteristic.
8. 'I have prevailed' (gam yakholiti) — Rachel claims victory, but the triumph is premature. She has two sons through a surrogate; Leah has four biological sons. The scorekeeping will continue through more births, more surrogates, and the mandrake episode. The sisters' rivalry produces the twelve tribes — God builds a nation through human competition.
9. Leah mirrors Rachel's strategy: if surrogacy counts, Leah will play the same game. The escalation is symmetrical — each wife now has a servant-wife bearing children. The household becomes a fertility competition fought through four women's bodies. Jacob's passivity is notable: he is the object of decisions made by his wives, accepting each new arrangement without comment.
10. Like Bilhah, Zilpah is identified through her mistress — 'Leah's servant' (shifchat Le'ah). Her voice, like Bilhah's, is never heard. The narrative structure treats the servants as extensions of the wives, vessels for the matriarchs' competition. Their humanity is present but unvoiced.
11. 'Fortune has come!' (ba gad) — the Qere (read tradition) reads bagad ('fortune has come'), while the Ketiv (written tradition) may be parsed as ba Gad ('Gad has come,' treating Gad as a deity of fortune). The name Gad is related to good fortune or luck. In the ancient Near East, Gad was known as a deity of fortune (cf. Isaiah 65:11, 'you who set a table for Gad'). Leah's exclamation may simply mean 'how fortunate!' — but the echo of pagan fortune-worship adds a layer of ambiguity.
12. The parallel structure continues — each servant bears two sons, creating symmetry between the households of Rachel and Leah. The total count now stands at eight sons: Leah's four (Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah), Rachel's two through Bilhah (Dan, Naphtali), and Leah's two through Zilpah (Gad, and now the one to be named).
13. 'Happy am I' (be'oshri) — the root ashar means 'happy, blessed, fortunate.' Leah's joy here is public-facing: she cares about how 'the daughters' (banot — other women) perceive her. In a culture where status was measured by sons, six sons (including surrogates) would indeed mark a woman

as blessed. The name Asher transforms personal happiness into tribal identity.

13. 'Women will call me happy' (ishheruni banot) — the verb 'isheruni is a pi'el ('declare happy, call blessed'). Leah anticipates social recognition. Her naming speeches trace an emotional arc: from desperate hope for Jacob's love (Reuben), through theological reflection (Simeon, Levi, Judah), to public joy (Asher). The surrogate sons bring a different kind of satisfaction — not the ache for a husband's love but the pride of abundance.
14. 'Mandrakes' (duda'im) — the mandrake (*Mandragora officinarum*) is a plant with a forked root resembling a human form, associated in the ancient world with fertility and aphrodisiac properties. The Hebrew *duda'im* is related to *dodim* ('love, lovemaking'), reinforcing the erotic associations. The plant's fragrance is celebrated in Song of Songs 7:13. Rachel's desire for the mandrakes reveals her desperation: she seeks fertility through any means, even folk remedy.
14. Reuben is Leah's firstborn (29:32), here a small child during wheat harvest — roughly May-June in the agricultural calendar. That Reuben brings them to Leah (not Rachel) reflects the household's emotional geography: Leah's sons are loyal to their mother. Rachel must negotiate across the domestic divide to obtain what Leah's household possesses.
15. 'Is it a small thing that you have taken my husband?' (hame'at qachtekh et-ishi) — Leah's bitter outburst reveals the depth of household dysfunction. Although Leah is legally Jacob's first wife, Rachel has 'taken' him — Jacob sleeps with Rachel, not Leah. Leah experiences herself as the abandoned wife, despite being the one with sons. The possessive 'my husband' (ishi) is a claim both legal and desperate.
15. 'He may lie with you tonight in exchange for your son's mandrakes' (lakhen yishkav immakh hallaylah tachat duda'ei vnekh) — Rachel trades a night with her own husband for fertility plants. The transaction is jarring: Jacob is treated as a commodity to be exchanged. The word *tachat* ('in exchange for, instead of') is a commercial term — this is a transaction, not a gift. The beloved wife sells access to the husband for folk medicine. The irony deepens: the mandrakes will not help Rachel conceive (God will open her womb in his own time, v. 22), while Leah's purchased night produces another son.
16. 'I have surely hired you' (sakhor sekhartikha) — the infinitive absolute construction (sakhor sakhar) emphasizes the certainty: 'I have absolutely hired you.' The verb *sakhar* ('hire') treats Jacob as a hired laborer — the very role he plays for Laban. Leah's language reduces the conjugal relationship to a wage transaction. The root *sakhar* will reappear in the naming of Issachar (v. 18), linking this son directly to the commercial exchange.
16. 'Leah went out to meet him' (vattese Le'ah liqra'to) — Leah takes initiative, going out to the field to intercept Jacob before he reaches Rachel's tent. Her boldness recalls Ruth going to Boaz on the threshing floor — a woman acting with agency in a situation where custom might expect passivity. Leah refuses to wait; she claims what she has purchased.
17. 'God listened to Leah' (vayyishma Elohim el-Le'ah) — the text implies that Leah prayed, though no prayer is recorded. God responds to unrecorded prayers throughout Genesis — the narrator's silence about the prayer itself emphasizes God's attentiveness rather than human eloquence. The verb *shama* ('listened, hearkened') with the preposition *el* indicates responsive hearing — God not only heard but acted. The mandrake exchange, humanly motivated, becomes the occasion for divine action. God works through messy human arrangements.
18. 'God has given me my wages' (natan Elohim sekhari) — the word *sakhar* ('wages, hire, reward') directly connects to the 'hiring' of Jacob with mandrakes (v. 16). But Leah reinterprets the reward: it is not payment for the mandrake transaction but divine compensation for giving Zilpah to Jacob. She theologizes the surrogacy as sacrifice ('I gave my servant to my husband') and sees Issachar as God's reward for that generosity. The layered meanings — wages for mandrakes and reward for surrogacy — coexist in the name.
18. 'Issachar' (Yissaskhar) — the name is traditionally explained as *yesh sakhar* ('there is a reward/wages') or *ish sakhar* ('man of wages'). The doubled *sin/shin* in the Masoretic spelling is anomalous and debated. The tribe of Issachar will settle in the fertile Jezreel Valley — a fitting outcome for a name meaning 'reward.'
19. Leah's fertility resumes with extraordinary abundance — six biological sons plus a daughter, more than any other matriarch. Her fruitfulness, gift of the God who 'saw that she was unloved' (29:31), makes her the primary mother of Israel. The 'hated wife' becomes the most prolific.
20. 'God has endowed me with a good gift' (zevadani Elohim oti zaved tov) — the verb *zavad* ('endow, bestow') is rare, appearing only here in the Hebrew Bible. The noun *zaved* ('gift, endowment') is equally rare. Leah uses unusual vocabulary for an unusual moment: six sons is an extraordinary dowry from God.
20. 'Now my husband will honor me' (happa'am yizbeleni ishi) — the verb *zaval* ('honor, exalt' or 'dwell with') provides the etymology for Zebulun. Some read it as 'dwell with me' (from a root meaning 'to cohabit'), others as 'honor me.' The ambiguity is poignant: after six sons, Leah still hopes for Jacob's attention — whether expressed as presence or esteem. Her unending desire for her husband's regard is one of the most persistent and painful themes in Genesis.
21. 'Dinah' (Dinah) — the name is related to *din* ('judgment'), echoing Dan's name (v. 6). She is the only daughter of Jacob mentioned by name in Genesis, and her story in chapter 34 will have devastating consequences for the family. The brevity of her birth notice — no speech from Leah, no theological interpretation — contrasts with the elaborate naming speeches for the sons. Daughters in the patriarchal narrative receive less narrative space, though Dinah's story will prove pivotal.
22. 'God remembered Rachel' (vayyizkor Elohim et-Rachel) — the verb *zakhar* ('remember') in biblical theology does not imply that God had forgotten. Rather, it signals the moment when God acts on an existing commitment. 'God remembered Noah' (8:1) preceded the flood's recession. 'God remembered Abraham' (19:29) preceded Lot's rescue. 'God remembered Rachel' signals the turning point in her barrenness. Divine remembrance is

the prelude to salvation.

22. 'God listened to her and opened her womb' (vayyishma eleha Elohim vayyiftach et-rachmah) — three verbs in sequence: remembered, listened, opened. The threefold divine action emphasizes the deliberateness of God's response. The opening of the womb (rechem) is exclusively God's prerogative in the Hebrew Bible — no human agent, no mandrake, no fertility ritual achieves what God alone does. Rachel's years of surrogacy and mandrake-bargaining were human strategies; conception comes when God acts.
23. 'God has taken away my reproach' (asaf Elohim et-cherpati) — the verb asaf ('taken away, gathered, removed') puns on the name Joseph (yosef, from yasaf, 'add' — a different root but similar sound). Rachel's first response to motherhood is relief from shame. The word cherpah ('reproach, disgrace') reveals how deeply barrenness wounded her social standing. Bearing a son removes the stigma that has defined her for years. Her joy is inseparable from her suffering.
24. 'Joseph' (Yosef) — from yasaf ('to add'). Rachel's naming is forward-looking: even in the joy of this first son, she asks for another. This prayer will be answered with Benjamin — but at the cost of Rachel's life (35:16–19). The name Joseph encodes both fulfillment and longing, gratitude and desire. The child who is 'addition' will become Jacob's favorite, the axis around which the final act of Genesis turns.
24. 'May the LORD add' (yosef YHWH) — Rachel uses the divine name YHWH, not Elohim, in her prayer for another son. This is notable: throughout the birth narratives, the names alternate between YHWH and Elohim. Here, at the birth of the son who will save the family from famine, Rachel invokes the covenantal name. Joseph's story will demonstrate YHWH's providence across the widest canvas Genesis has yet attempted.
25. 'Send me away' (shallecheni) — Jacob's request to depart is triggered by Joseph's birth, as if Rachel's son completes what he came for. After fourteen years of service (seven for Leah, seven for Rachel), Jacob wants to return to the promised land. The verb shalach ('send') in the intensive form (pi'el) implies 'release me' — Jacob acknowledges that Laban holds authority over his departure. He is still, in effect, a bonded laborer.
25. 'My own place and my country' (meqomi...artsi) — the possessive language ('my place, my country') recalls the promise: the land is Jacob's by divine grant, even though he has been absent for over a decade. The pull of the promised land reasserts itself as the exile begins to end.
26. 'Give me my wives and my children, for whom I have served you' (tenah et-nashai ve'et-yeladai asher avadti otkha bahen) — Jacob's demand reveals the legal reality: his wives and children belong, in some contractual sense, to Laban. They were the 'payment' for which Jacob labored; until he is formally released, Laban has a claim. The request to 'give' (tenah) his own family underscores Jacob's subordinate position — a patriarch who must ask permission to take his own household.
26. 'You yourself know my service' (attah yada'ta et-avodati) — Jacob appeals to Laban's knowledge of his labor quality. The word avodah ('service, labor, work') appears twice in the verse, emphasizing that Jacob's entire relationship with Laban has been defined by work. He has served for wives, served for children, served for years — and now he wants to serve himself.
27. 'I have divined' (nichashti) — the verb nachash means 'to practice divination, to read omens.' Laban admits to using divination — a practice later prohibited in Israelite law (Deuteronomy 18:10) — to discern that his prosperity comes from Jacob. The admission reveals Laban's religious world: he is not a YHWH-worshiper but a Mesopotamian who acknowledges YHWH's power through his own divinatory methods. He knows the source of his blessing but accesses that knowledge through pagan means.
27. 'The LORD has blessed me on your account' (vayevarkheni YHWH biglalekha) — Laban uses the divine name YHWH, though he is not part of the covenant community. He recognizes what the reader already knows: Jacob carries the Abrahamic blessing, and those associated with him prosper (cf. 12:3, 'in you all families of the earth shall be blessed'). Laban's self-interest is transparent: he wants Jacob to stay not from affection but because Jacob is his economic engine.
28. 'Name your wages' (noqvah sekharkha alai) — the verb naqav means 'to designate, to specify, to pierce.' Laban invites Jacob to set his own price — an apparently generous offer that also serves Laban's interest in retaining Jacob. The word sakhar ('wages') will become the key term in the negotiation that follows, running through the entire passage.
29. 'How your livestock has fared with me' (ve'et asher-hayah miqnekha itti) — Jacob appeals to the evidence: Laban's flocks have prospered under his care. The word miqneh ('livestock, cattle, possessions') is related to qanah ('acquire') — the livestock is Laban's acquisition, but Jacob's labor has multiplied it. Jacob is building his case for a fair wage, establishing that his contribution has been substantial.
30. 'It has burst forth into abundance' (vayyifrots larov) — the verb parats ('break out, burst forth, increase') is the same used for Israel's multiplication in Egypt (Exodus 1:12). Under Jacob's care, Laban's modest holdings have exploded. The verb conveys unstoppable, overflowing increase — not gradual growth but dramatic expansion.
30. 'When shall I also provide for my own house?' (matai e'eseh gam-anokhi leveiti) — after fourteen years of building Laban's wealth, Jacob has nothing of his own. The question is pointed: he has created abundance for Laban but has no estate for his own family. The word bayit ('house') encompasses family, household, and legacy. Jacob the builder of Laban's house now demands the right to build his own.
31. 'You shall not give me anything' (lo-titten-li me'umah) — Jacob's opening gambit is strategic: he refuses an outright gift, positioning himself instead for a self-sustaining arrangement. By asking for nothing (me'umah), he disarms Laban's suspicion and sets up a proposal that appears modest but is, as events will show, shrewdly calculated. Jacob the planner, the man who bought a birthright with stew, now negotiates wages with equal cunning.
32. 'Speckled and spotted' (naqod vetalu) — naqod means 'speckled' (marked with small dots), and talu' means 'spotted' (with larger patches). The distinction is between types of irregular coloring. In flocks that were predominantly white (sheep) or dark (goats), multicolored animals were relatively rare. Jacob asks for the abnormal ones — those that deviate from the standard coloring. His request seems modest: he wants only the

unusual animals, leaving Laban the majority.

32. 'Dark-colored among the lambs' (chum bakkesavim) — chum describes a brownish or dark coloring unusual in sheep, which were typically white in the ancient Near East. By asking for non-standard animals, Jacob appears to take very little — which is exactly what makes Laban agree. But Jacob has a plan.
33. 'My righteousness will testify for me' (ve'antah-bi tsidqati) — Jacob frames the arrangement as a test of his integrity. The word tsedaqah ('righteousness') is strong — Jacob stakes his moral character on the deal's transparency. Any solid-colored animal found in his possession would be evidence of theft. The proposal is designed to reassure the suspicious Laban: the terms are self-policing, the evidence visible in every animal's coat.
34. 'Agreed!' (hen) — Laban's quick acceptance reveals that he considers the deal favorable to himself. The rare, abnormally colored animals are a small fraction of the flock. Laban thinks he is getting cheap labor. But Jacob, the man who bought a birthright for soup, knows the value of what he is acquiring — and knows how to increase it.
35. Laban acts immediately — and preemptively. He removes all the currently multicolored animals from the flock, placing them with his own sons. This way, Jacob begins with no breeding stock of the kind he was promised. Laban's maneuver is designed to ensure that few if any new spotted or speckled animals are born: without colored parents, the offspring should be solid-colored — Laban's property. The move reveals Laban's character: he agrees to terms and then manipulates the starting conditions.
36. 'Three days' journey between himself and Jacob' (derekh sheloshet yamim beino uvein Ya'aqov) — Laban creates physical distance to prevent Jacob's flock from interbreeding with the removed colored animals. The three-day buffer is a significant separation in pastoral terms, making accidental mixing nearly impossible. Laban has stacked the deck: he took the colored animals, separated them by distance, and left Jacob with only solid-colored stock. By every natural calculation, Jacob should gain nothing.
37. 'Rods of poplar, almond, and plane tree' (maqal livneh lach veluz ve'armon) — Jacob selects three species of trees for his breeding strategy. Livneh ('poplar' or 'styrax') has a white (lavan) inner bark — the wordplay with Laban's name (also from the root lavan, 'white') may be intentional. Luz ('almond' or 'hazel') connects to the name of the place where Jacob had his Bethel vision (28:19, 'the city was formerly called Luz'). Armon ('plane tree') has bark that peels naturally, revealing lighter wood beneath.
37. 'Peeled white stripes in them' (vayefatsel bahen petsalot levanot) — the verb patsal ('peel') creates visual stripes by removing bark to expose white (lavan) wood. The ancient belief — now understood as folk science — was that visual impressions during mating could influence offspring coloring. Jacob creates striped visual stimuli for the animals at the watering troughs where they breed. Whether this 'works' by natural means or by divine intervention behind the folk practice is left ambiguous — but 31:10–12 later reveals that God directed the outcome through a dream.
38. 'In the troughs — the watering channels' (barehatim beshiqtot hamayim) — the rehatim are the channels or gutters leading to the water troughs (shiqtot). Jacob places his striped rods where the animals will see them during mating, which often occurred at watering spots where flocks gathered. The ancient belief in prenatal visual influence (known technically as 'maternal impression') was widespread in the ancient world and persisted into the modern era. The narrative neither endorses nor critiques the science — it records Jacob's method and God's result.
38. 'They mated when they came to drink' (vayechamna bevo'an lishtot) — the verb chamam in the qal stem means 'to be hot, to be in heat.' The animals came into estrus at the watering place, mating in view of the striped rods. The practical genius of Jacob's strategy is in its location: he places the visual stimulus exactly where the animals naturally gather and breed.
39. 'Striped, speckled, and spotted' (aquddim nequddim utlu'im) — three types of irregular coloring, all of which belong to Jacob by the terms of the agreement. The result defies Laban's expectations: even with the colored animals removed and separated by three days' journey, the new offspring are multicolored. Whether this is explained by recessive genetics (the solid-colored parents carried genes for mixed coloring), by Jacob's rod technique, or by direct divine intervention (as 31:10–12 suggests), the narrative credits Jacob's ingenuity operating within divine providence.
40. 'Set the faces of the flocks toward the striped' (vayyitten penei hatson el-aqod) — Jacob employs a second technique: directing the animals' gaze toward already-colored animals during mating. By facing the flock toward existing striped and dark animals, he reinforces the visual stimulus. Whether this reflects folk science or selective breeding knowledge (placing colored animals among the breeding stock), Jacob systematically manipulates the conditions to favor his outcome.
40. 'He set his own droves apart' (vayyashet-lo adarim levaddo) — Jacob builds a separate herd, keeping his multicolored animals away from Laban's solid-colored flock. This prevents dilution of the colored genes (in modern terms) or maintains the visual influence (in ancient terms). Jacob operates as both shepherd and breeder, managing two flocks with distinct genetic pools.
41. 'The stronger of the flock' (hatson hamequshsharot) — the word mequshsharot describes animals that are vigorous, robust, or 'bound/knotted' (i.e., well-muscled). Jacob's most sophisticated move is selective breeding: he uses the rods only with the strongest animals, ensuring that his portion of the flock is not merely colored but also vigorous. The weaker animals breed without the rods and produce solid-colored offspring for Laban. Jacob gets quality; Laban gets quantity of inferior stock.
42. 'The feeble were Laban's and the stronger Jacob's' (veha'atufim leLavan vahaqqushshurim leYa'aqov) — the contrast is sharp: atufim ('feeble, exhausted, covered/wrapped') versus qeshurim ('strong, vigorous, bound'). The result is a systematic transfer of quality from Laban's herd to Jacob's. Laban agreed to terms he thought would cost him nothing; instead, he loses the best of his breeding stock to Jacob's selective strategy. The trickster has been out-tricked, the exploiter outmaneuvered.

43. 'The man increased exceedingly — very greatly' (vayyifrots ha'ish me'od me'od) — the verb *parats* ('burst forth, break out, increase') appears again (cf. v. 30), now applied to Jacob rather than Laban's flock. The double *me'od me'od* ('very, very' — 'exceedingly exceedingly') is emphatic in the extreme. Jacob, who arrived in Haran with nothing but a staff (32:10), now possesses flocks, servants, and caravan animals. The Abrahamic blessing is operational: God's promise to prosper Abraham's seed is fulfilled even in exile, even through dubious breeding techniques, even in the household of a manipulator.
43. The catalogue — 'flocks, female servants, male servants, camels, donkeys' — mirrors the wealth descriptions of Abraham (12:16; 24:35) and anticipates Israel's prosperity. Jacob has become the patriarch his grandfather was: wealthy, established, and ready to return to the promised land. The stage is set for the departure from Laban in chapter 31.

31

Summary: *Tensions between Jacob and Laban reach a breaking point. God tells Jacob to return home. Jacob flees with his family and flocks; Rachel secretly steals Laban's household gods. Laban pursues, confronts Jacob, and searches the camp — but Rachel hides the idols. Jacob defends his twenty years of faithful service. They make a covenant at Galeed and part.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Rachel's theft of the teraphim ('household gods,' v. 19) is never explained — whether for religious attachment, legal claim, or simple spite, the text does not say. Her concealment of them by sitting on them and claiming menstrual impurity (v. 35) is one of the Bible's darkest comedies: sacred objects rendered untouchable by bodily function. Jacob's speech (vv. 36-42) is his most passionate self-defense, cataloguing twenty years of exploitation, and it culminates in a theological claim: 'the God of my father' has been witness to it all.*

Translation Friction: *The teraphim (v. 19) are household idols whose precise function — protective deities, inheritance tokens, or oracular objects — remains debated. We transliterated the term and explained the range of possibilities. Jacob 'stole the heart' of Laban (v. 20), an idiom meaning 'deceived' that uses the same root (*ganav*) as Rachel's literal theft; the double use of 'steal' creates a narrative pun we preserved in the rendering.*

Connections: *The Mizpah blessing — 'the LORD watch between me and you when we are absent from one another' (31:49) — is often quoted as a benediction but is actually a warning between adversaries. Laban's reference to 'the God of Abraham and the God of Nahor' (31:53) distinguishes the two family deities, while Jacob swears by 'the Fear of his father Isaac' — a unique divine title (also 31:42). The covenant pillar at Galeed anticipates the boundary markers of later Israelite territory.*

1He heard the words of Laban's sons, saying, "Jacob has taken all that belonged to our father, and from what was our father's he has made all this wealth." 2Jacob saw the face of Laban, and look — it was not toward him as it had been before. 3Then the LORD said to Jacob, "Return to the land of your fathers and to your birthplace, and I will be with you." 4So Jacob sent word to Rachel and Leah, summoning them out to the field where his flock was, 5He said to them, "I see your father's face — it is not toward me as before. But the God of my father has been with me." 6You yourselves know that with all my strength I have served your father. 7Your father has deceived me and changed my wages ten times, but God did not allow him to do me harm. 8If he said, 'The speckled shall be your wages,' then all the flock bore speckled. And if he said, 'The streaked shall be your wages,' then all the flock bore streaked. 9So God has taken away the livestock of your father and given them to me. 10It happened at the time the flock was in heat — I lifted up my eyes and saw in a dream, and look, the male goats mounting the flock were streaked, speckled, and spotted. 11The angel of God said to me in the dream, 'Jacob!' And I said, 'Here I am.' 12He said, 'Lift up your eyes and see — all the male goats mounting the flock are streaked, speckled, and spotted, for I have seen all that Laban is doing to you.' 13I am the God of Bethel, where you anointed a pillar, where you made a vow to me. Now arise, leave this land and return to the land of your birth.' 14Rachel and Leah replied, "Do we have any remaining share or inheritance in our father's household?" 15Are we not regarded by him as foreigners? For he has sold us and has also entirely consumed our money. 16For all the wealth that God has taken away from our father belongs to us and to our children. So now, whatever God has said to you — do it." 17Jacob got up and placed his children and wives on the camels. 18He drove away all his livestock and all his property that he had acquired — the livestock of his own acquiring that he had gained in

Paddan-aram — to go to Isaac his father in the land of Canaan. ¹⁹Laban had gone to shear his sheep, and Rachel stole the household gods that belonged to her father. ²⁰Jacob stole the heart of Laban the Aramean by not telling him that he was fleeing. ²¹He fled — he and all that he had. He rose up, crossed the River, and set his face toward the hill country of Gilead. ²²On the third day, Laban was told that Jacob had fled. ²³He took his kinsmen with him and pursued after him a journey of seven days and overtook him in the hill country of Gilead. ²⁴God came to Laban the Aramean in a dream at night and said to him, "Be careful not to speak to Jacob anything from good to bad." ²⁵Laban overtook Jacob. Jacob had pitched his tent in the hill country, and Laban pitched with his kinsmen in the hill country of Gilead. ²⁶Laban said to Jacob, "What have you done? You stole my heart and drove away my daughters like captives of the sword!" ²⁷Why did you hide to flee? You deceived me and did not tell me, so I could have sent you off with joy and with songs, with tambourine and with lyre! ²⁸You did not even let me kiss my sons and my daughters! Now you have acted foolishly." ²⁹It is in the power of my hand to do you harm, but the God of your father spoke to me last night, saying, 'Be careful not to speak to Jacob anything from good to bad.' ³⁰Now you have gone because you longed so greatly for your father's house — but why did you steal my gods? ³¹Jacob answered and said to Laban, "Because I was afraid, for I thought, 'Perhaps you would tear your daughters away from me by force.' ³²Anyone with whom you find your gods shall not live! In the presence of our kinsmen, examine what is yours with me and take it." For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them. ³³Laban went into Jacob's tent and into Leah's tent and into the tent of the two female servants, but he did not find them. He went out of Leah's tent and entered Rachel's tent. ³⁴Rachel had taken the household gods and placed them in the camel's saddle and sat upon them. Laban felt through the entire tent but did not find them. ³⁵She said to her father, "Let it not displease my lord that I cannot rise before you, for the way of women is upon me." He searched but did not find the household gods. ³⁶Jacob was angry and contended with Laban. Jacob answered and said to Laban, "What is my transgression? What is my sin, that you have hotly pursued after me? ³⁷You have felt through all my goods — what have you found of all your household goods? Set it here before my kinsmen and your kinsmen, and let them judge between the two of us! ³⁸These twenty years I have been with you. Your ewes and your female goats have not miscarried, and the rams of your flock I have not eaten. ³⁹What was torn by beasts I did not bring to you — I bore the loss myself. From my hand you demanded it, whether stolen by day or stolen by night. ⁴⁰By day the heat consumed me, and the frost by night, and my sleep fled from my eyes. ⁴¹These twenty years I have been in your house. I served you fourteen years for your two daughters and six years for your flock, and you changed my wages ten times. ⁴²If the God of my father — the God of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac — had not been on my side, you would have sent me away empty-handed. God has seen my affliction and the toil of my hands, and he rebuked you last night." ⁴³Laban answered and said to Jacob, "The daughters are my daughters, and the sons are my sons, and the flocks are my flocks — everything you see is mine! But what can I do today to these daughters of mine or to their children whom they have borne? ⁴⁴Now come, let us make a covenant, you and I, and let it be a witness between me and you." ⁴⁵Jacob took a stone and set it up as a pillar. ⁴⁶Jacob said to his kinsmen, "Gather stones." They took stones and made a heap, and they ate there by the heap. ⁴⁷Laban named it Jegar-sahadutha, while Jacob named it Galeed. ⁴⁸Laban said, "This heap is a witness between me and you today." Therefore its name was called Galeed, ⁴⁹and the Mizpah, for he said, "May the LORD keep watch between me and you when we are hidden from one another. ⁵⁰If you afflict my daughters, or if you take wives besides my daughters — no man is with us — see, God is witness between me and you." ⁵¹Laban said to Jacob, "See this heap and see this pillar that I have set between me and you. ⁵²This heap is a witness, and this pillar is a witness, that I will not pass beyond this heap toward you, and you will not pass beyond this heap and this pillar toward me, for harm. ⁵³May the God of Abraham and the god of Nahor — the god of their father — judge between us." Then Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac. ⁵⁴Jacob offered a sacrifice on the mountain and called his kinsmen to eat bread. They ate bread and spent the night on the mountain. ⁵⁵Laban rose early in the morning and kissed his grandchildren and his daughters and blessed them. Then Laban departed and returned to his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'All this wealth' (et kol-hakkavod hazzeh) — the word kavod literally means 'weight, heaviness, glory.' In this context it denotes material wealth so abundant it carries visible 'weight.' The same word describes the glory of God (Exodus 33:18) — here it describes flocks and servants. Laban's sons see Jacob's prosperity as theft from their inheritance. Their complaint sets the narrative in motion: Jacob's growing wealth has generated envy, making

departure both necessary and dangerous.

1. Register departure: kavod rendered as 'wealth' rather than default 'glory' because the Hebrew here clearly refers to material possessions — Jacob's acquired flocks and property. The concrete 'weight/heaviness' sense of kavod is primary, not the divine radiance sense.
2. 'The face of Laban' (penei Lavan) — faces carry enormous narrative weight in Genesis. Jacob will soon need to face Esau (32:21), will see the face of God at Peniel (32:31), and will say that seeing Esau's face is 'like seeing the face of God' (33:10). Here the face of Laban is the first sign of danger — the external expression of internal hostility. The idiom 'not toward him as before' (einennu immo kitmol shilshom — literally 'not with him as yesterday and the day before') marks a permanent shift in relationship.
3. 'Return to the land of your fathers' (shuv el-erets avotekha) — the divine command to return echoes and reverses the original departure. Jacob fled to Haran under his mother's direction (27:43); now he returns under God's. The verb shuv ('return') carries theological weight throughout Scripture — it is the word for repentance, for homecoming, for covenant restoration. God's promise 'I will be with you' (ve'ehyeh immakh) repeats the Bethel promise (28:15) and uses the verb ehyeh ('I will be'), the same root as the divine name revealed at the burning bush (Exodus 3:14).
3. The command comes at the precise moment when both economic and relational conditions make departure necessary. God's direction and human circumstance converge — this is characteristic of Genesis's theology: divine sovereignty works through, not against, the logic of human events.
4. Jacob summons his wives to the field rather than speaking at home — a deliberate choice of privacy, away from Laban's household where walls have ears. The meeting takes place at 'his flock' (tso'no), emphasizing the wealth that is now Jacob's own. Rachel is named before Leah — the narrative priority reflects Jacob's emotional attachment, though Leah is the firstborn wife.
5. Jacob's speech to his wives is carefully constructed rhetoric. He begins with the observable fact (Laban's changed face), then introduces his theological interpretation (God has been with me). The phrase 'the God of my father' (Elohei avi) identifies the deity through patriarchal lineage — not Laban's god but Isaac's God. This distinction will matter profoundly when Laban later invokes his own ancestral deities (v. 53).
6. 'With all my strength I have served your father' (bekhol-kochi avadti et-avikhen) — Jacob appeals to his wives as witnesses. The word koach ('strength, power') encompasses not just physical effort but the totality of his capacity. The verb avad ('serve, work') is the same word used for servitude and slavery. Jacob presents himself not as a son-in-law enriching himself but as a laborer who gave everything to a master who repaid him with deception.
7. 'Changed my wages ten times' (hechelif et-maskurti aseret monim) — 'ten times' may be literal or may function as a round number meaning 'repeatedly.' The verb hachalif ('changed, exchanged') suggests not just adjustment but reversal — Laban kept altering the terms whenever Jacob's flocks prospered under the current agreement. Jacob the deceiver has been systematically deceived, but divine protection has overridden Laban's manipulation. The word maskurti ('my wages') comes from sakhar ('hire, reward') — the same root as Issachar's name (30:18).
8. Jacob presents the pattern as miraculous: whatever Laban decreed as Jacob's wages, the flock produced precisely that. The words nequddim ('speckled, spotted') and aquddim ('streaked, banded') describe color variations in sheep and goats. The implication is clear — God overrode the natural odds to ensure Jacob's prosperity regardless of Laban's manipulations. Each time Laban changed the terms, God changed the outcome.
9. 'God has taken away' (vayyatsel Elohim) — the verb natsal means 'to rescue, deliver, strip away.' It is the same verb used for God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt (Exodus 3:8). Jacob frames his enrichment as divine rescue — God rescued the livestock from Laban's control and transferred them to Jacob. This theological interpretation transforms economic competition into providential narrative.
10. Jacob now adds a dream revelation to his account. In the dream, he sees that the breeding males are all marked — streaked, speckled, and spotted. The three adjectives (aquddim, nequddim, beruddim) form a comprehensive catalogue of color variation, ensuring that all offspring would belong to Jacob's share. Whether this dream preceded or followed the breeding strategy of chapter 30 is left ambiguous — Jacob's narrative serves rhetorical rather than chronological purposes.
11. 'Here I am' (hineni) — Jacob's response to the divine call uses the same word Abraham used when God called him to sacrifice Isaac (22:1, 11). Hineni is not merely a statement of location but of availability and readiness — 'I am present, attentive, and willing.' The angel addresses Jacob by name, establishing the personal nature of the encounter. In Genesis, being called by name by God signals a pivotal moment.
12. 'I have seen all that Laban is doing to you' (ki ra'iti et kol-asher Lavan osekh lakh) — this is the theological key to the entire Laban narrative. God has been watching. The divine 'seeing' (ra'iti) is not passive observation but active engagement — when God 'sees' injustice in Genesis, intervention follows. The same language appears when God 'sees' the affliction of Israel in Egypt (Exodus 3:7). Laban's exploitation is not unnoticed; Jacob's prosperity is divine compensation for injustice suffered.
13. 'I am the God of Bethel' (anokhi ha'El Beit-El) — God identifies himself through a specific place and event. The reference reaches back to chapter 28: the ladder dream, the anointed pillar, the vow. Twenty years have passed, but God remembers and holds Jacob to his promise. The divine self-identification through historical encounter is fundamental to biblical theology — God is not abstract deity but the God who appeared at a particular place, at a particular time.
13. The command 'arise, leave' (qum tse) mirrors the original call to Abraham: 'Go from your land' (lekh-lekha, 12:1). But where Abraham was called to leave home for an unknown destination, Jacob is called to leave exile and return home. The verb shuv ('return') frames Jacob's entire journey as a loop — departure and return, exile and homecoming.

14. The wives respond in unified voice — a rare moment of agreement between the rival sisters. Their rhetorical question expects the answer 'no.' The words *cheleq* ('portion, share') and *nachalah* ('inheritance, heritage') are legal terms for property rights. Rachel and Leah are making a legal argument: Laban has cut them off from their inheritance, so they owe him no loyalty. Their solidarity with Jacob against their own father represents a decisive break with their birth family.
15. 'He has sold us' (*ki mekharannu*) — the verb *makhar* ('sell') is devastating. Daughters are not merchandise, yet Laban treated them as commodities, exchanging them for fourteen years of Jacob's labor. The wives' accusation is that Laban converted their bride-price (the labor Jacob performed) into personal profit rather than setting it aside for them, as custom required. A father was expected to hold the bride-price in trust for his daughters; Laban devoured it.
15. 'Entirely consumed our money' (*vayyokhal gam-akhol et-kaspeinu*) — the infinitive absolute construction (*akhol + vayyokhal*) intensifies the verb: he has 'eaten and eaten' their silver. The metaphor of consumption — Laban has devoured what belonged to them — frames him as predatory. The daughters' indictment is comprehensive: Laban is not merely stingy but exploitative.
16. 'Whatever God has said to you — do it' (*kol asher amar Elohim eleikha aseh*) — the wives' final word is a command of faith. They authorize Jacob's departure not on economic grounds alone but on theological ones: God has spoken, therefore act. This is remarkable — Rachel and Leah, raised in Laban's household of teraphim and household gods, affirm the authority of Jacob's God over their father's claims. Their declaration parallels Israel's response at Sinai: 'All that the LORD has spoken we will do' (Exodus 19:8).
17. 'Jacob rose up' (*vayyaqom Ya'aqov*) — the verb *qum* ('rise, arise') signals decisive action. It echoes the divine command of v. 13: 'Arise!' (*qum*). Jacob obeys immediately. The detail that he sets his family on camels indicates both the length of the journey and the wealth he has accumulated — camels were expensive transport animals, not common household beasts.
18. The accumulation of possessive language — 'his livestock... his property... his acquiring... he had gained' — emphasizes that these goods are legitimately Jacob's, despite Laban's sons' complaints. The phrase 'livestock of his own acquiring' (*miqneh qinyano*) uses a cognate construction for emphasis. His destination is specifically identified: 'Isaac his father in the land of Canaan.' Jacob is returning not merely to a geography but to a family and a promise.
19. 'Rachel stole the household gods' (*vatignov Rachel et-hatterafim*) — the teraphim were small figurines associated with household religion and possibly inheritance rights. Ancient Near Eastern texts from Nuzi suggest that possession of household gods could convey legal claims to family property, though this interpretation is debated. Rachel's theft is never fully explained: was it for religious comfort, legal advantage, or to deprive Laban of his oracular devices? The text deliberately withholds her motive, leaving readers to wonder.
19. The irony is dense: while Jacob 'steals' Laban's heart through deception (v. 20), Rachel literally steals his gods. The verb *ganav* ('steal') will echo throughout the chapter. The household gods of Laban — whatever power they held — are small enough to sit on, portable enough to hide in a camel saddle. The narrator's treatment of them borders on satire.
20. 'Stole the heart of Laban' (*vayyignov et-lev Lavan*) — the Hebrew idiom *ganav et-lev* means 'to deceive' — literally, 'to steal someone's heart,' that is, to steal their awareness or judgment. The phrase could also be rendered 'outwitted.' Jacob, the one whose name means 'supplanter,' continues to live into his name's meaning. The text identifies Laban as 'the Aramean' (*ha'Arammi*), emphasizing the ethnic and cultural distance between Jacob and his father-in-law — Jacob is leaving foreign territory to return to his own people.
20. The parallel between Rachel stealing the teraphim (v. 19) and Jacob stealing Laban's heart creates a literary doubling: daughter and husband both steal from the father/father-in-law, one taking his gods, the other his knowledge. The verb *ganav* saturates this chapter.
21. 'Crossed the River' (*vayyaavor et-hannahar*) — 'the River' without further specification means the Euphrates, the great boundary between Mesopotamia and the land of promise. Crossing the Euphrates is a decisive geographical and symbolic act — Jacob is leaving the world of Laban, Aram, and exile. The phrase 'set his face toward' (*vayyasem et-panav*) indicates determined, purposeful direction. Gilead, east of the Jordan, is the transitional territory between Mesopotamia and Canaan.
22. 'On the third day' (*bayyom hashelishi*) — the three-day head start was possible because Laban was away shearing sheep (v. 19). 'The third day' carries narrative significance throughout the Hebrew Bible — it is the day of resolution, revelation, and turning points (cf. Genesis 22:4; 42:18; Exodus 19:11; Hosea 6:2). Here it marks the moment when pursuit becomes inevitable.
23. 'Seven days' journey' (*derekh shivat yamim*) — the seven-day pursuit underscores both Laban's determination and the great distance Jacob had covered. The word 'kinsmen' (*echav*, literally 'his brothers') here means relatives, clansmen — Laban assembles a posse. The verb *davaq* ('overtook, clung to, caught up with') suggests close pursuit, breathing down the neck. The showdown will happen in Gilead — the same territory where Jacob had directed his flight (v. 21).
24. 'From good to bad' (*mittov ad-ra*) — the merism (a pair of opposites encompassing everything between) means 'anything at all.' Laban is warned not to attempt to influence Jacob in any direction — neither threat nor persuasion. God's intervention on behalf of Jacob mirrors the Abrahamic protection promise: 'I will bless those who bless you, and him who dishonors you I will curse' (12:3). The divine warning in a dream to a foreign pursuer also parallels God's warning to Abimelech regarding Sarah (20:3).
24. That God speaks to Laban — a polytheistic Aramean — demonstrates that the God of Jacob exercises authority beyond the borders of the promised land and beyond the circle of the covenant family. God is not limited to communicating with the faithful; he warns the hostile.

25. The two camps face each other across the Gilead highlands — a tense military standoff. The verb *taqa* ('pitched, thrust, drove in') suggests a firm, deliberate encampment, not a temporary rest. The separate camps signal that this is a confrontation, not a reunion. Without God's dream-warning, this scene might have ended in violence.
26. 'You stole my heart' (*vatignov et-levavi*) — Laban echoes the narrator's language from v. 20 but with a different nuance. Where the narrator used *lev* ('heart/mind'), Laban uses *levav* ('heart' in its more emotional form). For Laban, Jacob's secret departure is a personal betrayal — 'you stole my awareness, my judgment, my feelings.'
26. 'Like captives of the sword' (*kishvuyot charev*) — Laban's hyperbole compares Jacob's departure with his daughters to a military raid. The language is deliberately inflammatory: Jacob is not a son-in-law taking his family home but a raider carrying off prisoners of war. The accusation is manipulative — Laban, who sold his daughters (v. 15), now presents himself as their protector.
27. 'With joy and with songs, with tambourine and with lyre' (*besimchah uveshirim betof uvekhinor*) — Laban's claim that he would have thrown a farewell party is transparently false, given everything the narrative has established about his character. The reader knows Laban changed Jacob's wages ten times, tricked him with Leah, and would have kept him indefinitely. This is revisionist self-portrayal — the exploiter rewriting himself as generous host. The irony is thick.
28. 'My sons and my daughters' (*levanai velivnotai*) — Laban claims Jacob's children as 'my sons' (grandsons) and Jacob's wives as 'my daughters,' reasserting possessive authority over the entire family. The word *hiskalta* ('you have acted foolishly') implies both moral failure and practical stupidity. Laban frames himself as the wronged party — the loving grandfather denied a farewell embrace. The emotional manipulation is masterful, and the narrator expects readers to see through it.
29. 'It is in the power of my hand to do you harm' (*yesh-le'el yadi la'asot immakhem ra*) — Laban's threat is real: he has an armed force, and Jacob's family is vulnerable. But the threat is immediately neutralized by the dream warning. Laban's admission reveals both his capacity for violence and his subordination to a God who is not his own. The phrase 'the God of your father' (*Elohei avikhem*) is Laban's way of distancing himself — this is Jacob's God, not Laban's, yet Laban must obey him.
29. The interplay between human power and divine restraint is characteristic of Genesis: Laban has the strength to destroy Jacob but not the permission. God's warning has converted a potential massacre into a negotiation.
30. 'You longed so greatly' (*nikhsaf nikhsafta*) — the infinitive absolute construction intensifies the longing: 'you have longed with longing.' Laban concedes the legitimacy of Jacob's desire to return home. But then comes the accusation that matters most to him: 'Why did you steal my gods?' (*lammah ganavta et-elohai*). The word *elohai* ('my gods') reveals Laban's theology: his gods are possessions to be stolen, objects small enough to carry away. The contrast with Jacob's God — who speaks in dreams, controls fertility, and warns pursuers — could not be sharper.
31. 'Tear away by force' (*tigzol*) — the verb *gazal* means 'to seize, rob, tear away violently.' Jacob's fear was not abstract but specific: Laban might forcibly reclaim his daughters and grandchildren. Given Laban's admission in v. 29 that he had the power to do harm, Jacob's fear was well-founded. The irony is that Laban accuses Jacob of treating the daughters as captives (v. 26), while Jacob feared Laban would treat them as repossessed property.
32. 'Shall not live' (*lo yichyeh*) — Jacob's pronouncement is unwittingly a death sentence on his beloved Rachel. He speaks with righteous confidence, unaware that Rachel has hidden the teraphim. The narrator's aside — 'Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them' — is essential: without it, Jacob would appear cruel rather than ignorant. This dramatic irony creates unbearable tension for the reader who knows what Jacob does not.
32. Some interpreters connect this rash oath to Rachel's later death in childbirth (35:16-19). Whether or not the text intends a causal link, the juxtaposition of Jacob's curse and Rachel's fate haunts the narrative. Rash words spoken in certainty have consequences that the speaker cannot foresee.
33. The search sequence — Jacob's tent, Leah's tent, the servants' tent, and finally Rachel's tent — builds suspense. The narrator knows where the gods are and delays the climactic moment. Laban methodically searches every dwelling, finding nothing, until he reaches the last tent — Rachel's. The narrative pacing is masterful: each empty tent increases the tension.
34. 'Placed them in the camel's saddle and sat upon them' (*vattsimem bekhar haggamal vateshev aleihem*) — the image is richly ironic: the gods of Laban are hidden beneath a woman's body, stuffed into a saddle cushion, sat upon. If these teraphim had any genuine divine power, they could not be concealed under a cushion. The narrator's satirical point is devastating: gods that can be stolen, hidden, and sat upon are no gods at all. Rachel literally sits in judgment over Laban's religion.
34. The verb *mashash* ('felt, groped') suggests that Laban searched by touch as well as sight — he was thorough. Yet he found nothing. The household gods are reduced to objects of farce.
35. 'The way of women is upon me' (*derekh nashim li*) — Rachel's excuse is her menstrual period. According to later Levitical law, a menstruating woman rendered whatever she sat upon ritually impure (Leviticus 15:20), which would make Laban reluctant to search beneath her. Whether such purity concerns applied in this pre-Sinai patriarchal context is uncertain, but the social taboo was likely ancient. Rachel exploits a biological reality as a weapon of deception — she is her father's daughter in cunning.
35. The irony deepens: if Rachel is menstruating, the teraphim beneath her would be contaminated by impurity. The gods of Laban's household are not merely hidden but defiled. The daughter who learned deception in Laban's house now deploys it against him.

36. 'What is my transgression? What is my sin?' (mah-pish'i mah chattati) — Jacob shifts from defense to offense. The two words for wrongdoing — pasha ('transgression, rebellion') and chattat ('sin, missing the mark') — cover the full spectrum of moral failure. Jacob dares Laban to name any specific wrong. Having searched every tent and found nothing, Laban's accusation of theft has been publicly disproven. Jacob's anger is the righteous indignation of a man falsely accused.
36. 'Hotly pursued' (dalaqta) — the verb dalaq means 'to burn, to pursue hotly, to chase with intensity.' It conveys the heat of the chase — Laban didn't merely follow but hunted Jacob with burning urgency.
37. Jacob demands a public trial. He calls for all found property to be placed before witnesses — 'my kinsmen and your kinsmen' — for adjudication. The verb yokhichu ('let them judge, decide, arbitrate') is legal language for a formal dispute resolution. Since the search has turned up nothing, Jacob's challenge is a devastating rhetorical move: the empty floor is his defense. Laban has no exhibit, no evidence, no case.
38. 'Twenty years' (esrim shanah) — Jacob's speech now becomes a systematic indictment of his servitude. Twenty years: fourteen for the wives, six for the flocks (v. 41). The specific details — no miscarriages, no stolen rams — are a shepherd's defense: he has protected Laban's investment with perfect fidelity. Miscarriage (shikkel) was a significant economic loss in pastoral culture; Jacob claims not a single one occurred under his watch.
39. 'I bore the loss myself' (anokhi achatennah) — by ancient Near Eastern shepherding law (cf. Exodus 22:10-13), a shepherd was not liable for animals killed by predators if he could produce the carcass as evidence. Jacob went beyond the legal requirement: he absorbed the losses personally rather than presenting torn carcasses. Laban demanded compensation even for theft — 'stolen by day or stolen by night' (genevti yom ugenevti laylah) — events entirely beyond a shepherd's control. Jacob's service exceeded every legal standard.
40. 'The heat consumed me... and the frost by night' (akhalani chorev veqerach ballaylah) — Jacob describes the physical toll of shepherding in the Near Eastern climate: scorching daytime heat and freezing nights. The verb akhal ('consumed, ate') portrays the weather as a predator devouring him. Combined with sleeplessness (vatiddad shenati me'einai — 'my sleep fled from my eyes'), Jacob paints a picture of twenty years of relentless, body-breaking labor. This is not nostalgia but testimony in a legal dispute.
41. Jacob now gives the precise accounting: fourteen plus six equals twenty. The arithmetic is unassailable. He has served more than any bride-price required, and Laban still changed the terms repeatedly. The phrase 'ten times' (aseret monim) recurs from v. 7, now carrying the full weight of Jacob's twenty-year testimony. This is the speech of a man who has kept count, who remembers every injustice, who will not allow his labor to be erased from the record.
42. 'The Fear of Isaac' (pachad Yitschaq) — this is one of the most mysterious divine titles in the Hebrew Bible. The word pachad can mean 'fear, dread, terror' or possibly 'kinsman' (from a different root). If 'fear,' the title may mean the God whom Isaac fears, or the God who inspires dread. Some scholars connect it to the Aqedah — Isaac's terrifying experience on Mount Moriah (chapter 22) may have permanently shaped his relationship with God into one defined by trembling awe. The title appears only here and in v. 53, both in Jacob's speech.
42. 'God has seen my affliction and the toil of my hands' (et-onyi ve'et-yegia kappai ra'ah Elohim) — the word oni ('affliction, suffering, poverty') is the same word used for Israel's suffering in Egypt (Exodus 3:7). Jacob's Haran experience prefigures the national experience: servitude, exploitation, divine observation, and eventual deliverance. The verb ra'ah ('seen') echoes v. 12 — God has been watching all along.
43. 'Everything you see is mine' (vekhlo asher-attah ro'eh li-hu) — Laban's response is breathtaking in its possessiveness. He claims everything: daughters, sons, flocks — all mine. This is the language of absolute ownership, and it reveals Laban's fundamental worldview: people are property. Yet the next breath concedes powerlessness: 'What can I do?' The man who claims everything can enforce nothing. God's restraining hand has reduced Laban's total claims to empty words.
44. 'Let us make a covenant' (nikhretah verit) — the verb karat ('cut') used with berit ('covenant') reflects the ancient practice of cutting animals in covenant ceremonies (cf. Genesis 15:10, 18). Unable to control Jacob by force, Laban proposes a formal agreement — a covenant that will bind both parties with mutual obligations. The shift from confrontation to covenant is forced by God's restraining intervention: Laban cannot coerce, so he must negotiate.
45. Jacob's act of setting up a stone pillar (matsevah) echoes his earlier pillar at Bethel (28:18). Pillars serve as physical witnesses — stone remembers what human memory might forget. The pillar marks the spot where the covenant was made and will serve as a boundary marker. Jacob, not Laban, takes the initiative in erecting it — he is the one who establishes the physical testimony.
46. The communal gathering of stones transforms the covenant from a private agreement into a public act. The shared meal on the heap (gal) ratifies the covenant — eating together in the ancient Near East was a bonding act, creating obligation between the parties. The heap of stones and the pillar together form the covenant memorial: vertical and horizontal, individual and collective.
47. 'Jegar-sahadutha' (Aramaic) and 'Galeed' (Hebrew) — both names mean 'heap of witness,' but in different languages. Laban names it in Aramaic, his native tongue; Jacob names it in Hebrew. This is the only place in Genesis where Aramaic appears, and the bilingual naming underscores the cultural divide between the two men. They share a covenant but not a language. The heap of stones witnesses in two tongues — a boundary marker that speaks to both sides of the border it creates.
48. Laban now adopts the Hebrew name Galeed, explaining its etymology. The heap is a 'witness' (ed) — an inanimate object invested with legal standing. In a culture without written contracts, physical landmarks served as permanent testimony to agreements. The stones cannot speak, but they can be pointed to: 'Remember what we agreed at this place.'

49. 'May the LORD keep watch between me and you' (yitsef YHWH beini uveinekha) — this is the so-called 'Mizpah benediction,' widely used today as a blessing of friendship. But in context, it is nothing of the sort. It is a warning: 'Since we cannot trust each other, may God enforce what neither of us can verify.' The verb tsafah ('watch, keep lookout') implies surveillance, not tender care. Laban is saying: 'I cannot watch you when you are out of sight, so God must be the enforcer.'
49. The popular misuse of this verse as a sentimental farewell blessing is one of the most dramatic misreadings in biblical interpretation. In its original context, Mizpah is a place of mutual suspicion, not mutual affection.
50. Laban's covenant terms concern his daughters' welfare: Jacob must not mistreat them or take additional wives. The verb 'innah ('afflict, humble') is strong — the same word used for the oppression of Israel in Egypt (Exodus 1:11-12). Laban's concern for his daughters' treatment is perhaps his most sympathetic moment, though it rings hollow after he sold them (v. 15). The phrase 'no man is with us' (ein ish immanu) acknowledges the impossibility of human enforcement at such distance — only God can monitor the agreement.
51. Laban claims credit for the pillar ('which I have set'), though v. 45 states that Jacob erected it. This minor detail reveals Laban's character to the end: even in covenant-making, he appropriates what is not his. The heap and pillar together function as a border — a line of stones between two worlds, two families, two futures.
52. The covenant's practical terms are a non-aggression pact with a defined boundary. Neither party will cross the stone border with hostile intent. The phrase 'for harm' (lera'ah) qualifies the prohibition — crossing for peaceful purposes is presumably permitted, but military or hostile crossing is forbidden. This is the first formal boundary agreement in the Bible, and it establishes the principle that covenants create borders — lines that define where one party's sovereignty ends and another's begins.
53. 'The God of Abraham and the god of Nahor' (Elohei Avraham ve'Elohei Nachor) — Laban invokes two distinct ancestral deities. Abraham and Nahor were brothers (11:27), but their descendants worship differently. Laban treats them as separate gods with shared parentage — 'the god of their father' (Elohei avihem). Jacob, by contrast, swears only by 'the Fear of his father Isaac' (pachad aviv Yitschaq), refusing to invoke Nahor's god. The theological divide is absolute: Laban sees many gods; Jacob knows one.
53. The verb yishpetu ('may they judge') uses the plural, suggesting Laban envisions multiple deities adjudicating. Jacob's oath uses the singular — he swears by one God only. Even in the act of covenant-making, the two men inhabit different theological universes.
54. The covenant is sealed with sacrifice (zevach) and a communal meal — 'they ate bread' (vayyokhelu lachem). Bread (lechem) here likely means food in general, not specifically leavened bread. The shared meal on the mountain, following a sacrifice, has ritual significance: those who eat together before God are bound together. The overnight stay (vayyalinu bahar — 'they spent the night on the mountain') suggests the gravity of the occasion — this is not a hasty agreement but a formal covenant event.
55. 'Kissed his grandchildren and his daughters and blessed them' (vaynashek levanav velivnotav vayevarekh ethem) — Laban's final act is one of genuine tenderness. Whatever his faults — and the narrative has catalogued them extensively — Laban is a grandfather saying goodbye to family he will never see again. The verb barakh ('blessed') is the last word Laban speaks over his family. The man who tried to control, exploit, and pursue ends with a blessing and a departure.
55. 'Returned to his place' (vayyashov Lavan limqomo) — Laban exits the narrative permanently. He returns to Paddan-aram, to his household gods (if Rachel has left any), to his diminished flocks. The phrase limqomo ('to his place') carries finality — this is where Laban belongs, and Jacob does not. The boundary has been drawn; the separation is complete. Jacob's Haran chapter is over.

32

Summary: *Angels meet Jacob at Mahanaim. Hearing that Esau approaches with 400 men, Jacob is terrified. He prays, divides his camp, and sends gifts ahead. Alone at the Jabbok ford by night, Jacob wrestles a mysterious figure until dawn. His hip is wrenched, but he refuses to release his opponent without a blessing. He is renamed Israel ('he strives with God') and names the place Peniel ('face of God').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wrestling at the Jabbok is the most physically intimate encounter between God and a human in the Hebrew Bible. A dense phonetic web binds Ya'aqov (Jacob), Yabboq (Jabbok), and ye'avek (wrestled) — all sharing the consonants '-b-q. Jacob's confession qatonti ('I am too small,' v. 10) is one of the purest expressions of humility in Scripture. The chapter's dominant motif is panim ('face'): Jacob will 'cover' Esau's face with gifts, then 'see' Esau's face, hoping Esau will 'lift' his face — and the place where he meets God is named Peniel, 'face of God.'*

Translation Friction: *The wrestling opponent is called simply ish ('a man,' v. 24), yet he renames Jacob, blesses him, and Jacob identifies him as God. We preserved this ambiguity — the Hebrew moves from human encounter to divine revelation without sharp transition. The word chesed (v. 10) resists any single English equivalent; we rendered it here as 'faithful love,' noting that it encompasses covenant loyalty, gracious kindness, and*

persistent commitment beyond obligation.

Connections: The renaming of Jacob to Israel (32:28) is confirmed by God at Bethel (35:10). The wrestling at Peniel gives Israel its name and its limp — the dietary prohibition against eating the sciatic sinew (32:32) embeds the story in every meal. Hosea 12:3-4 interprets the wrestling as emblematic of Israel's national character. Jacob's statement that 'seeing your face is like seeing the face of God' (33:10) connects the two encounters.

¹As Jacob continued on his journey, angels of God encountered him. ²When Jacob saw them, he said, "This is God's camp!" And he called the name of that place Mahanaim. ³Jacob sent messengers ahead of him to Esau his brother, to the land of Seir, the territory of Edom. ⁴He commanded them, saying, "Thus you shall say to my lord Esau: 'Thus says your servant Jacob: I have sojourned with Laban and stayed until now. ⁵I have acquired oxen and donkeys, flocks, and male servants and female servants. I have sent to tell my lord, so that I may find favor in your eyes.'" ⁶The messengers returned to Jacob, saying, "We came to your brother Esau, and he is also coming to meet you — and four hundred men are with him." ⁷Jacob was greatly afraid and distressed. He divided the people who were with him, and the flocks and the herds and the camels, into two camps. ⁸He said, "If Esau comes to the one camp and strikes it down, then the remaining camp will escape." ⁹Jacob said, "O God of my father Abraham and God of my father Isaac — O LORD, who said to me, 'Return to your land and to your birthplace, and I will do you good' — ¹⁰I am too small for all the faithful love and all the faithfulness that you have shown your servant, for with only my staff I crossed this Jordan, and now I have become two camps. ¹¹Deliver me, I pray, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau, for I am afraid of him — lest he come and strike me down, mother with children. ¹²But you yourself said, 'I will surely do you good, and I will make your offspring like the sand of the sea, which cannot be counted for multitude.'" ¹³He spent that night there, and from what he had at hand he took a gift for Esau his brother: ¹⁴two hundred female goats and twenty male goats, two hundred ewes and twenty rams, ¹⁵thirty milking camels with their young, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty female donkeys and ten male donkeys. ¹⁶He placed them in the hands of his servants, each drove by itself, and said to his servants, "Pass on ahead of me, and put a space between drove and drove." ¹⁷He commanded the first, saying, "When Esau my brother meets you and asks you, 'Whose are you? Where are you going? And whose are these ahead of you?' ¹⁸then you shall say, 'They belong to your servant Jacob. It is a gift sent to my lord Esau. And look — he himself is also behind us.'" ¹⁹He likewise commanded the second and the third and all who followed behind the droves, saying, "In this same manner you shall speak to Esau when you find him. ²⁰And you shall say, 'Moreover, look — your servant Jacob is behind us.'" For he said, "I will cover his face with the gift that goes before my face, and afterward I will see his face. Perhaps he will lift up my face." ²¹So the gift passed on ahead of him, and he himself spent that night in the camp. ²²He rose that night and took his two wives and his two female servants and his eleven children, and he crossed the ford of the Jabbok. ²³He took them and sent them across the stream, and he sent across everything that he had. ²⁴Jacob was left alone, and a man wrestled with him until the rising of the dawn. ²⁵When he saw that he could not prevail against him, he touched the socket of his hip, and the socket of Jacob's hip was wrenched as he wrestled with him. ²⁶He said, "Let me go, for the dawn has risen." But he said, "I will not let you go unless you bless me." ²⁷He said to him, "What is your name?" And he said, "Jacob." ²⁸He said, "Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel, for you have striven with God and with men, and you have prevailed." ²⁹Jacob asked and said, "Tell me, please, your name." He said, "Why is it that you ask my name?" And he blessed him there. ³⁰Jacob called the name of the place Peniel, "For I have seen God face to face. my life has been preserved." ³¹The sun rose upon him as he passed Peniel, and he was limping on his hip. ³²Therefore the children of Israel do not eat the sinew of the hip — the one on the socket of the thigh — to this day, because he touched the socket of Jacob's hip at the sinew of the hip. ³³Jacob lifted up his eyes and looked, and there was Esau coming, with four hundred men with him. He divided the children among Leah and Rachel and the two female servants.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Angels of God met him' (vayyifge'u-vo mal'akhei Elohim) — the verb paga ('met, encountered') suggests an unexpected collision rather than a planned rendezvous. Jacob, having just separated from Laban, immediately encounters the divine. The phrase mal'akhei Elohim ('angels/messengers of God') recalls the ladder vision at Bethel (28:12), where angels ascended and descended. There, Jacob was leaving the land; here, he is returning. The angelic bookends frame his twenty-year exile: angels at departure, angels at return.

2. 'This is God's camp!' (machaneh Elohim zeh) — Jacob recognizes the angelic company as a military encampment. The word machaneh means 'camp' in the military sense — a positioned force, an army bivouacked. Jacob sees the angels as God's army, deployed on his behalf.
2. 'Mahana'im' (machanayim) — the dual ending -ayim means 'two camps.' The name anticipates v. 8, where Jacob will divide his own company into 'two camps' (shenei machanot). The wordplay links divine provision with human strategy: God has two camps; Jacob will create two camps. The name Mahana'im also foreshadows the entire chapter's theme of doubling — two camps, two names (Jacob/Israel), two encounters (angels, then the mysterious wrestler).
3. 'Messengers' (mal'akhim) — the same Hebrew word used for 'angels' in vv. 1-2. Jacob has just encountered God's messengers (mal'akhei Elohim); now he sends his own messengers (mal'akhim) to Esau. The verbal echo is deliberate: Jacob's diplomacy mirrors the divine arrangement. He operates in the space between heaven's envoys and earth's negotiations.
3. 'The land of Seir, the territory of Edom' (artsah Se'ir sedeh Edom) — Esau has established himself in the region south and east of the Dead Sea. Seir ('hairy') puns on Esau's hairy appearance (25:25); Edom ('red') recalls his red stew (25:30). Geography embodies identity: Esau is rooted in a land named for his body and his appetite.
4. 'My lord Esau... your servant Jacob' (ladoni le'Esav... avdekha Ya'akov) — the reversal is stunning. Jacob, who stole the blessing of the firstborn, now addresses Esau as 'my lord' (adoni) and calls himself 'your servant' (avdekha). The man who seized the position of superior now voluntarily assumes the language of inferior. Whether this is genuine humility or shrewd diplomacy (or both) is left for the reader to discern. Isaac's blessing pronounced that Jacob's brother would serve him (27:29); Jacob's message suggests the opposite.
4. 'I have sojourned' (garti) — the verb gur means 'to dwell as a resident alien,' not as a citizen or owner. Jacob's choice of words signals: 'I have not been building a rival kingdom; I have been a stranger in a foreign land.' Some rabbinic commentators note that garti has the same consonants as taryag (613), suggesting Jacob kept all the commandments even in Laban's house — a creative but ahistorical reading.
5. 'So that I may find favor in your eyes' (limtso-chen be'einekha) — the phrase chen ('favor, grace') combined with 'in your eyes' is the language of supplication throughout the Hebrew Bible. Jacob is asking for something he cannot demand — Esau's goodwill. The catalogue of possessions — oxen, donkeys, flocks, servants — is not boasting but a diplomatic signal: 'I am self-sufficient; I am not coming to take what is yours.' Jacob's wealth reassures Esau that the returning brother is not a competitor for Isaac's estate.
6. 'Four hundred men with him' (ve'arba-me'ot ish immo) — the messengers' report is terrifyingly brief. Four hundred men is a military force, not a welcoming committee. David later assembles four hundred men as a fighting band (1 Samuel 22:2). The messengers report no words from Esau — no message of peace, no message of hostility. The silence is more frightening than any threat. Esau is approaching with an army and has said nothing about his intentions.
7. 'Greatly afraid and distressed' (vayyira... vayyetser lo) — two verbs pile up to express Jacob's terror. The first, yare ('fear'), is visceral; the second, tsarar ('be distressed, pressed, in anguish'), adds psychological compression. The man who wrestled blessings from his father and outwitted Laban is now paralyzed with dread. Twenty years of cunning cannot solve this problem: Esau is coming with an army, and Jacob has women and children.
7. 'Two camps' (shenei machanot) — Jacob's division echoes the place-name Mahana'im ('two camps') from v. 2. His military strategy mirrors the angelic formation he just witnessed. The reasoning is pragmatic: if Esau destroys one camp, the other can escape. But the division also symbolizes Jacob's divided life — torn between two identities, two brothers, two futures.
8. 'The remaining camp will escape' (vehayah hammachaneh hannish'ar lifletah) — the word peletah ('escape, remnant, deliverance') is significant in later prophetic and theological usage. The concept of a surviving 'remnant' — a portion preserved through catastrophe — will become central to Israel's self-understanding (cf. Isaiah 10:20-22). Here at the personal level, Jacob calculates survival: even in the worst case, half his family lives. The strategy of division preserves a remnant.
9. Jacob's prayer is one of the most theologically sophisticated in Genesis. He begins by identifying God through covenant lineage — 'God of my father Abraham and God of my father Isaac' — grounding his appeal in established relationship. Then he invokes God's own word: 'Return... and I will do you good.' Jacob is not begging blindly but reminding God of a specific promise. This rhetorical strategy — quoting God back to God — becomes a model for Israelite prayer (cf. Moses in Exodus 32:13; Numbers 14:13-19).
9. The address shifts from 'God of my father' (Elohei avi) to the personal name YHWH ('the LORD'). Jacob moves from ancestral theology to direct encounter — this is not merely his grandfather's God but the LORD who spoke to him personally.
10. 'I am too small' (qatonti) — the verb qatan means 'to be small, insignificant, unworthy.' Jacob does not say 'I am not worthy' (a moral statement) but 'I am too small' (a statement of scale). He is overwhelmed by the disproportion between what he deserves and what he has received. This is one of the purest expressions of humility in the Hebrew Bible.
10. 'Steadfast love and faithfulness' (chesed ve'emet) — this word pair is foundational to biblical theology. Chesed is covenant loyalty, lovingkindness beyond obligation — the love that persists when all other reasons to love have failed. Emet is reliability, truth, trustworthiness — what can be depended upon absolutely. Together they describe God's character as both gracious and dependable.
10. 'With my staff I crossed this Jordan' (bemaqli avarti et-haYarden) — the image is unforgettable. Twenty years ago, Jacob fled with nothing but a walking stick. Now he returns with two camps of family, servants, and livestock. The staff is a symbol of radical poverty — one man, one stick, crossing a river. The contrast between departure and return measures the fullness of divine blessing.

11. 'From the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau' (miyyad achi miyyad Esav) — the doubled phrase emphasizes both the relationship (brother) and the threat (Esau). Jacob cannot separate the two: the one who would destroy him is his own twin. The word yad ('hand') is not just 'power' but 'violence' — the hand that strikes.
11. 'Mother with children' (em al-banim) — the phrase describes the worst form of slaughter: killing mothers together with their young, total extermination with no survivors. The expression appears in Hosea 10:14 as an image of war's ultimate horror. Jacob fears not merely his own death but the annihilation of his entire family. Later Torah law will prohibit taking a mother bird with her young (Deuteronomy 22:6-7), reflecting the same ethical instinct against total destruction.
12. 'I will surely do you good' (hetev etiv immakh) — the infinitive absolute construction (hetev + etiv) creates an emphatic divine promise: 'I will good-you with goodness,' 'I will absolutely do you good.' Jacob is holding God to his word. The logic of the prayer is: 'You promised abundance; destruction would contradict your promise.'
12. 'Like the sand of the sea' (kechol hayyam) — this echoes the Abrahamic promise (22:17) and the Bethel promise (28:14, where the image is 'dust of the earth'). Jacob reminds God that he is not merely one man facing death but the carrier of a multigenerational promise. If Esau destroys Jacob, God's own word fails. The prayer's power lies in its theological audacity: Jacob makes God's faithfulness the argument for his own survival.
13. 'A gift' (minchah) — the word minchah means 'gift, offering, tribute.' It is the same word used for the grain offering in Levitical worship (Leviticus 2:1). Jacob's gift to Esau functions at multiple levels: tribute from a vassal to a lord, a peace offering to avert wrath, and an attempt to 'cover' his past offense. The word will recur throughout this passage as Jacob strategizes about how to present his offering to maximum effect.
14. The catalogue of animals begins. The ratios — ten females to one male — reflect standard ancient Near Eastern breeding proportions for maximum flock productivity. Jacob is not merely sending animals but sending reproductive capacity — a breeding herd, not just meat. The gift is designed to generate ongoing wealth for Esau, not merely immediate consumption. The sheer scale — 580 animals total across five species (vv. 14-15) — demonstrates both Jacob's prosperity and his desperation.
15. The gift totals 580 animals: 220 goats, 220 sheep, 30 camels with young, 50 cattle, and 30 donkeys. This is an enormous transfer of wealth. Milking camels with their young (gemalim meiniqot uveneihem) are especially valuable — they provide milk for the journey and represent breeding stock. The specificity of the list functions like a legal inventory: every animal is accounted for. Jacob's generosity is calculated, not spontaneous — each number serves the strategy of overwhelming Esau with abundance.
16. 'Put a space between drove and drove' (revach tasimu bein eder uvein eder) — Jacob's strategy is psychological: rather than one overwhelming gift, he creates a sequence of gifts, each arriving separately with intervals between them. The word revach ('space, interval, relief') suggests breathing room — each drove gives Esau time to absorb its impact before the next arrives. The effect is cumulative: by the time Esau meets Jacob, he has received wave after wave of tribute, each one softening his anger further.
17. Jacob scripts the encounter in advance, anticipating Esau's questions and preparing the servants' answers. The three questions — 'Whose are you? Where are you going? Whose are these?' — cover identity, destination, and ownership. Jacob leaves nothing to chance. The level of preparation reveals both his shrewdness and his terror: a man confident in Esau's goodwill would not rehearse his servants' lines.
18. Each servant repeats the same formula: 'your servant Jacob... my lord Esau.' The repetition is strategic — every encounter reinforces Jacob's submission. The phrase 'he himself is also behind us' (gam-hu acharenu) creates anticipation: Esau learns Jacob is coming but must wait through multiple gift-droves before the actual meeting. Jacob is engineering emotional momentum.
19. The repetition of instructions to each successive drove amplifies the strategy: every servant delivers the identical message. Esau will hear 'your servant Jacob, my lord Esau' five times over. The military-like briefing — each unit receiving the same orders — shows Jacob treating this encounter as a campaign. The verb matsa ('find, encounter') is the same word used for Jacob's encounters with God; here Jacob hopes his servants will 'find' Esau in a posture of receptivity.
20. 'I will cover his face... see his face... lift up my face' (akhapperah fanav... er'eh fanav... yissa fanai) — this verse is the most concentrated use of panim ('face') language in the entire Bible. Three different 'face' idioms appear in a single sentence: (1) kaphar panim — 'cover/atone the face,' meaning to appease; (2) ra'ah panim — 'see the face,' meaning to enter the presence; (3) nasa panim — 'lift the face,' meaning to show favor/acceptance. The triple wordplay on 'face' anticipates the chapter's climax at Peniel ('face of God') and Jacob's later declaration that seeing Esau's face is 'like seeing the face of God' (33:10).
20. The verb kaphar ('cover, atone') is the root of kippur, as in Yom Kippur ('Day of Atonement'). Jacob is attempting to 'atone' for his offense against Esau with a gift. The theology of atonement — covering guilt with an offering to restore relationship — is present here in embryonic form, applied to human relationships before it is codified in Levitical worship.
21. 'The gift passed on ahead of him' (vatta'avor hamminchah al-panav) — even here, the word panim ('before his face') appears. The gift goes 'upon his face' — literally, the tribute precedes Jacob's presence. Jacob waits. The night is long. He has done everything humanly possible — divided, prayed, prepared, sent — and now he waits alone in the camp. The narrative is about to strip away every support and leave Jacob utterly alone.
22. 'The ford of the Jabbok' (ma'avar Yabboq) — the Jabbok (modern Zarqa) is a tributary of the Jordan, flowing from east to west. The name Yabboq is a wordplay hub: it echoes Ya'aqov (Jacob) and ye'avek (he wrestled, v. 25). The three words share the consonants '-b-q, creating a dense sound-web: at the Yabboq, Ya'aqov will ye'avek. Geography, identity, and action merge in a single phonetic cluster.

22. 'Eleven children' (achad asar yeladav) — the number eleven confirms the chronological setting: Benjamin has not yet been born (that will happen in 35:16-18). Dinah may be included in the count or may be implied as present but uncounted, as the text says yeladav ('his children/sons').
23. Jacob sends everyone and everything across the Jabbok. The verb *avar* ('cross, pass over') appears three times in vv. 22-23, emphasizing the act of crossing. By sending everything ahead, Jacob strips himself of all possessions, all companions, all support. He stands alone on the north bank. The narrative has systematically removed every human resource: the gift has gone ahead, the family has crossed over, the servants are with the droves. What remains is one man in the dark.
24. 'Jacob was left alone' (vayyivvater Ya'aqov levaddo) — one of the most charged sentences in Scripture. The verb *yatar* ('be left, remain') in the nifal suggests not choice but circumstance: Jacob was left behind, left over, the remainder after everything else has crossed. The word *levaddo* ('alone, by himself') echoes God's own solitude before creation and anticipates Elijah's lonely stand (1 Kings 19:10). In this aloneness, the decisive encounter comes.
24. 'A man wrestled with him' (vayyeavek ish immo) — the identity of the 'man' (ish) is the great question of the passage. He is called ish ('man'), yet he renames Jacob with a name involving Elohim ('God'), and Jacob names the place Peniel ('face of God'). Hosea 12:4-5 identifies the opponent as an angel. The verb *ye'avek* ('wrestled') appears only here and in the next verse — it is coined for this moment, echoing both Ya'aqov and Yabboq. The wrestling is physical, violent, and lasts all night. No words are exchanged until dawn.
25. 'He touched the socket of his hip' (vayyigga bekaf-yerekho) — the verb *naga* ('touched') is deliberately understated. This is not a blow but a touch — yet the touch dislocates Jacob's hip. The supernatural nature of the opponent is revealed through this contrast: one who can dislocate a joint with a touch has been restraining his power throughout the night. The 'man' could have ended the fight at any moment but chose to wrestle at Jacob's level until dawn.
25. 'The socket of his hip was wrenched' (vatteqa kaf-yerekh Ya'aqov) — the verb *yaqa* means 'to be dislocated, alienated, wrenched out of place.' The *yerekh* ('thigh, hip') is associated in Hebrew with procreative power (servants swear oaths with a hand under the patriarch's thigh, 24:2, 9). The wounding of Jacob's hip may symbolize the vulnerability of his generative capacity — his descendants will carry the mark of this encounter.
26. 'Let me go, for the dawn has risen' (shallcheni ki alah hashachar) — the mysterious wrestler urgently demands release at daybreak. The urgency of dawn suggests a being whose nature cannot be exposed to full light — or whose encounter with humanity is bounded by night. Throughout the Hebrew Bible, theophanies are liminal events, occurring at boundaries between states: night and day, sleeping and waking, earth and heaven.
26. 'I will not let you go unless you bless me' (lo ashallelachka ki im berakhtani) — Jacob's demand is breathtaking. Wounded, exhausted, with a dislocated hip, he refuses to release his opponent without a blessing. This is the same Jacob who stole Esau's blessing through deception (chapter 27); now he demands a blessing through tenacity. The irony is transformative: the blessing-thief becomes the blessing-wrestler. Jacob will not let go of God — this is the defining act of his life and the paradigm for Israel's relationship with the divine.
27. 'What is your name?' (mah-shemekha) — the question echoes Isaac's question before the stolen blessing: 'Who are you, my son?' (27:18). There, Jacob lied: 'I am Esau.' Here, for perhaps the first time, Jacob speaks his own name truthfully. To say 'Jacob' is to confess: 'I am the supplanter, the heel-grabber, the one who deceives.' The name is not just identification but confession. Before Jacob can receive a new name, he must own the old one.
28. 'Israel' (Yisra'el) — the name is explained as 'you have striven (sarita) with God (EL).' The verb *sarah* means 'to struggle, contend, strive, persist.' Israel thus means 'he strives with God' or 'God strives' or 'one who persists with God.' The name defines not a place or a possession but a relationship — and a combative one. To be Israel is to wrestle with God, not merely to worship him. The entire nation that will bear this name is characterized at its origin by struggle rather than submission.
28. 'With God and with men, and you have prevailed' (im-Elohim ve'im-anashim vatukhal) — the scope of Jacob's striving is comprehensive: divine and human. He strove with Esau, with Laban, with the angel — and prevailed in each case. The verb *yakhal* ('prevail, be able, endure') does not mean 'defeated' but 'endured, held on, persisted.' Jacob prevails not by overpowering God but by refusing to let go. Victory through tenacity, not domination.
29. 'Why is it that you ask my name?' (lammah zeh tish'al lishmi) — the refusal to disclose his name is itself a revelation. In the ancient world, knowing someone's name conferred power over them. The mysterious wrestler will not be named, contained, or controlled. The same evasion occurs when Manoah asks the angel's name: 'Why do you ask my name? It is wonderful' (Judges 13:18). The unnamed one blesses Jacob, completing the encounter without surrendering his identity. The blessing is given but the giver remains beyond human grasp.
29. The verse's structure is chiasmic: Jacob asks refusal blessing. Jacob sought two things: a name and a blessing. He receives the blessing but not the name. Partial revelation is characteristic of divine encounters in Genesis — enough to transform, not enough to domesticate.
30. 'Peniel' (Penuel in some manuscripts) — *peni* ('face of') + *El* ('God'): 'Face of God.' The name crystallizes the chapter's dominant motif. Jacob has spent the entire passage dealing with faces — covering Esau's face with gifts (v. 20), facing the unknown in the dark, and now confronting the face of God. The place-name transforms geography into theology: this bend in the Jabbok is where a man saw God's face.
30. 'I have seen God face to face and my life has been preserved' (ra'iti Elohim panim el-panim vattinatset nafshi) — the statement is a paradox. According to later theology, no one can see God's face and live (Exodus 33:20). Yet Jacob has seen and survived. The verb *natsal* ('be delivered, preserved, rescued') suggests that survival was not a given — it was a rescue. Jacob knows he brushed against something that should have destroyed him. He emerged alive but not unscathed: he carries a wound (the hip) and a new name. The encounter with God changes everything — identity,

body, and the landscape itself.

- 31.** 'The sun rose upon him' (vayyizrach-lo hashemesh) — the dawn that the wrestler fled now arrives as Jacob crosses into the new day. The rising sun marks both a new day and a new identity. The detail is beautiful and painful simultaneously: sunrise, the universal image of hope and beginning, falls on a man who is limping.
- 31.** 'He was limping on his hip' (vehu tsole'a al-yerekho) — Jacob-now-Israel enters the promised land not striding triumphantly but limping. The wound is permanent, a bodily reminder that the blessing came through struggle, not ease. The limp is the mark of encounter — like a scar, it tells a story. Israel's relationship with God begins not in perfection but in brokenness. The patriarch of the nation walks wounded into his future.
- 32.** 'The sinew of the hip' (gid hannahseh) — the sciatic nerve, running through the hip joint. This dietary prohibition is unique in that it originates not in Sinai legislation but in a patriarchal narrative. The practice connects every Israelite meal to Jacob's wrestling match: each time an animal is butchered and the sinew removed, the story of Peniel is remembered. Dietary practice becomes embodied narrative — you eat your theology.
- 32.** 'To this day' (ad hayyom hazzeh) — the etiological formula connects past event to present practice. The narrator addresses an audience that observes this custom and explains its origin. Jacob's wound becomes Israel's diet. The personal becomes communal, the historical becomes perpetual. One night at the Jabbok shapes the eating habits of an entire people across millennia.
- 33.** Note: In the Hebrew Bible (BHS/WLC), this verse is Genesis 33:1. The Hebrew text of Genesis 32 contains 33 verses (32:1-33), while English Bibles typically number this chapter with 32 verses, placing what is Hebrew 32:1 as English 31:55 and this verse as English 33:1. This rendering follows the Hebrew verse numbering throughout.
- 33.** 'Jacob lifted up his eyes and looked, and there was Esau coming' (vayyissa Ya'aqov einav vayyar vehinne Esav ba) — the moment of confrontation arrives. Jacob, limping from the night's encounter, now sees the brother he has feared for twenty years. The 'four hundred men' (arba-me'ot ish) are still present — the military threat has not diminished. But Jacob is no longer the same man who sent the messengers. He has wrestled with God and survived; he faces Esau with a new name and a wounded hip. The division of children — placing each group with its mother — is both practical (organizing the procession) and protective (distributing risk). The narrative bridges directly into the reunion of chapter 33.

33

Summary: *Jacob sees Esau approaching with 400 men and arranges his family in order of vulnerability. He bows seven times. Esau runs to embrace him, and they weep together. After introductions and a respectful exchange of gifts, the brothers part ways. Esau returns to Seir; Jacob travels to Succoth and then to Shechem, where he buys land and builds an altar called El-Elohe-Israel ('God, the God of Israel').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Esau's embrace — running, falling on Jacob's neck, kissing, weeping (v. 4) — is among the most emotionally powerful moments in Genesis. Jacob's words 'seeing your face is like seeing the face of God' (v. 10) connect this reunion directly to the Peniel encounter of the previous chapter: both faces — divine and fraternal — evoke awe. The altar name El-Elohe-Israel (v. 20) is the first time Jacob uses his new name to make a theological claim: the God of the universe is the God of Israel.*

Translation Friction: *The Masoretic tradition places dots above the word vayyishshagehu ('and he kissed him,' v. 4), a scribal notation of uncertain meaning — some ancient interpreters read it as marking sincerity, others as suspicion. We rendered the verb straightforwardly and noted the scribal tradition. Jacob's gift is called both minchah ('tribute/offering,' v. 10) and berakhah ('blessing,' v. 11) — the same word Esau lost in chapter 27, now returned. This wordplay is central but difficult to reproduce.*

Connections: *The reunion resolves the conflict that began in chapter 27 and was promised in 33:4's embrace. Jacob's purchase of land at Shechem (33:19) parallels Abraham's purchase of Machpelah (23:16-18) — the second piece of the promised land acquired by a patriarch. Shechem will become the site of crisis in chapter 34 and of covenant renewal under Joshua (Joshua 24:1).*

1Jacob lifted up his eyes and looked, and there was Esau coming — and four hundred men with him. He divided the children among Leah, Rachel, and the two female servants. 2He placed the female servants and their children first, then Leah and her children behind them, and Rachel and Joseph last. 3He himself passed ahead of them and bowed to the ground seven times, until he drew near to his brother. 4Esau ran to meet him, embraced him, fell upon his neck, and kissed him. And they wept. 5He lifted his eyes and saw the women and the children, and said, "Who are these with you?" He said, "The children whom God has graciously given your servant." 6Then the female servants drew near — they and their children — and bowed down. 7

Then Leah also drew near with her children, and they bowed down. Afterward Joseph and Rachel drew near and bowed down. ⁸He said, "What do you mean by all this company that I met?" He said, "To find favor in the eyes of my lord." ⁹Esau said, "I have plenty, my brother. Keep what is yours for yourself." ¹⁰Jacob said, "No, please — if I have found favor in your eyes, then take my gift from my hand. For I have seen your face as one sees the face of God, and you have received me favorably." ¹¹"Please, take my blessing that has been brought to you, for God has been gracious to me, and I have everything." He urged him, and he took it. ¹²He said, "Let us set out and travel, and I will go alongside you." ¹³He said to him, "My lord knows that the children are tender, and the flocks and herds are nursing. If they are driven hard for even one day, all the flocks will die." ¹⁴Please let my lord pass on ahead of his servant, and I will make my way slowly, at the pace of the livestock before me and at the pace of the children, until I come to my lord at Seir." ¹⁵Esau said, "Let me at least station some of my people with you." But he said, "Why should you? Let me only find favor in the eyes of my lord." ¹⁶That same day, Esau headed back toward Seir. ¹⁷But Jacob traveled to Succoth, and he built himself a house and made shelters for his livestock. Therefore the name of the place is called Succoth. ¹⁸Jacob came safely to the city of Shechem, which is in the land of Canaan, when he came from Paddan-aram, and he camped before the city. ¹⁹He bought the parcel of land where he had pitched his tent from the sons of Hamor, Shechem's father, for one hundred qesitahs. ²⁰He erected an altar there and called it El-Elohe-Israel — "God, the God of Israel."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Jacob lifted up his eyes' (vayyissa Ya'aqov einav) — the standard biblical idiom for deliberate perception. Jacob now sees what he has feared for twenty years. The four hundred men remain: the military threat has not diminished since 32:6. Jacob's division of children among their mothers is both organizational and strategic — distributing risk across the procession.
1. The arrangement places the most vulnerable (or most beloved) last. The order of placement — handmaids first, then Leah, then Rachel — reveals Jacob's heart even in crisis: he shields Rachel and Joseph behind everyone else (v. 2).
2. The procession order — handmaids first, Leah second, Rachel and Joseph last (acharonim) — is painfully transparent. The word acharonim ('last, behind') means farthest from danger. If Esau attacks, he strikes Bilhah and Zilpah first. Jacob's favoritism is embedded in his military formation: Rachel is the one he cannot afford to lose. The arrangement mirrors the earlier hierarchy of gifts (32:14-16), where the most valuable were sent last.
2. Joseph alone is named among the children, paired with his mother Rachel. The other children are grouped anonymously with their mothers. This narrative spotlight on Joseph foreshadows his centrality in the coming chapters.
3. 'He himself passed ahead of them' (vehu avar lifneihem) — Jacob, who placed his beloved Rachel last for safety, now walks to the front of the entire procession. The man who once hid behind his mother's scheme and sent servants ahead with gifts now leads with his own body. Whatever his faults, this is an act of courage: he faces Esau first, alone, limping from Peniel.
3. 'Bowed to the ground seven times' (vayyishtachu artsah sheva pe'amim) — prostration seven times is the protocol of a vassal approaching a sovereign, well attested in Amarna letters and ancient Near Eastern diplomacy. Jacob performs the full ritual of submission before his brother. The man who stole the firstborn's blessing now enacts the posture of a servant. Seven — the number of completeness — signals total deference. Isaac's blessing declared that Esau would serve Jacob (27:29); Jacob's body language says the opposite.
4. 'Esau ran' (vayyarots Esav) — the verb ruts ('run') is explosive after Jacob's slow, reverent approach. Jacob bowed seven times; Esau sprints. The contrast is stunning: the feared warrior with four hundred men behind him breaks into a run — not to attack, but to embrace. The same verb describes the father running to the prodigal son in Jesus's parable (Luke 15:20), which may deliberately echo this scene.
4. 'And kissed him' (vayyishshaqehu) — in the Masoretic text, each letter of this word has a dot above it (puncta extraordinaria). These extraordinary dots appear on only fifteen words in the entire Hebrew Bible. Their meaning is debated: some rabbis (Genesis Rabbah 78:9) read the dots as signaling that Esau's kiss was insincere — he actually wanted to bite (nashakh) Jacob's neck. Others, including Rabbi Shimon bar Yochai (surprisingly, given his general view of Esau), say the dots indicate that in this moment Esau's feelings were genuinely stirred. The textual ambiguity mirrors the narrative tension: we never fully know Esau's heart.
4. 'They wept' (vayyivku) — the weeping is mutual and undeniable. Whatever calculations preceded this moment, the tears dissolve them. Two brothers, separated for twenty years by stolen blessings and murderous rage, fall on each other's necks and cry. The verb is plural — both weep. Genesis does not sentimentalize, but it records the raw fact of reconciliation.
5. 'The children whom God has graciously given' (hayeladim asher-chanan Elohim et-avdekha) — the verb chanan ('to show grace, to give freely') is theologically loaded. Jacob attributes his family to divine generosity, not personal achievement. The same root gives us the name Yochanan/John ('the LORD is gracious') and the noun chen ('grace, favor'). Jacob continues his deferential address — 'your servant' (avdekha) — maintaining the vassal posture even in family introductions.

6. The procession now unfolds in the order Jacob arranged. The handmaids and their children approach first and prostrate themselves. The verb *tishtachavein* (feminine plural of the same root as Jacob's bowing in v. 3) extends the vassal protocol to the entire household. Each group performs submission before Esau, reinforcing the political dimension of this family reunion.
7. 'Joseph and Rachel' (Yosef veRachel) — the Hebrew text places Joseph before his mother, reversing the expected order. A child is named before the matriarch. This unusual placement has prompted much comment: perhaps the young Joseph stepped forward to shield Rachel, or perhaps the narrator is signaling Joseph's emerging prominence in the story. In the procession's hierarchy, Joseph and Rachel occupy the position of highest value — last and most protected.
7. The three-stage approach (handmaids, Leah, Rachel/Joseph) presents Jacob's entire household to Esau in descending order of expendability and ascending order of belovedness. The choreography lays bare the internal dynamics of the family.
8. 'All this company that I met' (kol hammachaneh hazzeh asher pagashti) — Esau is asking about the waves of livestock Jacob sent ahead (32:14-22). The word *machaneh* ('company, camp') is the same word used for the angelic camp at Mahanaim (32:2) and Jacob's divided camps (32:8). Livestock, angels, and families — all are *machaneh* in this narrative.
8. 'To find favor in the eyes of my lord' (limtso-chen be'einei adoni) — Jacob's response is minimal and deferential. The gifts have a single purpose: to secure Esau's goodwill. The word *chen* ('favor, grace') echoes the root *chanan* from v. 5. Jacob seeks from Esau what he attributes to God — gracious giving.
9. 'I have plenty' (yesh-li rav) — Esau's *rav* means 'much, plenty, abundance.' The word choice contrasts with Jacob's *kol* ('everything') in v. 11. Esau has 'much'; Jacob has 'all.' The distinction may be subtle or accidental, but interpreters have seen theological significance: contentment with abundance (Esau) versus completeness through divine provision (Jacob). Esau's generosity here is striking — the brother Jacob cheated refuses his gifts.
9. 'My brother' (*achi*) — after twenty years of estrangement, Esau calls Jacob 'my brother.' Jacob has been calling Esau 'my lord' (*adoni*); Esau addresses him as a peer. The single word dismantles the hierarchical language Jacob has carefully constructed. Esau does not want a servant; he wants a brother.
10. 'I have seen your face as one sees the face of God' (*ra'iti fanekha kir'ot penei Elohim*) — this extraordinary statement connects directly to Peniel ('face of God'), where Jacob said, 'I have seen God face to face' (32:30). The word *panim* ('face') saturates this narrative: Jacob saw God's face at Peniel; now he sees God's face in Esau's. The theological claim is remarkable — divine encounter and human reconciliation mirror each other. Forgiveness has the quality of theophany.
10. 'Take my gift' (*velaqachta minchati*) — the word *minchah* means 'gift, tribute, offering.' It is the same term used for the grain offering in Levitical worship. Jacob frames his livestock as a sacrificial offering to Esau. The word also echoes Abel's *minchah* (4:3-4) — the acceptable offering. Jacob is asking Esau to accept his offering as God accepted Abel's.
10. 'And you have received me favorably' (*vattirtseini*) — the verb *ratsah* means 'to accept, to be pleased with, to show favor.' In sacrificial terminology, it describes God's acceptance of an offering (Leviticus 1:4). Jacob uses liturgical language for a human encounter: Esau's acceptance is framed as divine acceptance.
11. 'Take my blessing' (*qach-na et-birkhati*) — the word *berakhah* ('blessing') is electrifying in context. Jacob stole Esau's blessing (27:35-36); now he returns 'my blessing' in the form of material gifts. The irony is layered: the blessing Jacob took by deception he now gives back through generosity. The word *berakhah* also means 'gift' in diplomatic contexts, but the primary meaning is inescapable. Jacob is performing restitution — returning the blessing, however symbolically.
11. 'God has been gracious to me' (*channani Elohim*) — the verb *chanan* ('to show grace') appears again (cf. v. 5). Jacob attributes everything to divine generosity. His 'everything' (*kol*) contrasts with Esau's 'plenty' (*rav*, v. 9). Esau has abundance; Jacob has completeness. The distinction may reflect different theologies of prosperity: sufficiency versus totality.
11. 'He urged him, and he took it' (*vayyiftsar-bo vayyiqqach*) — the verb *patsar* ('to urge, press, insist') indicates that Esau's acceptance required persuasion. Esau initially refused the gift (v. 9); Jacob presses until he relents. The taking of the blessing-gift completes the reconciliation arc: what was stolen is symbolically returned and accepted.
12. 'Let us set out and travel' (*nis'ah venelekhah*) — Esau proposes joint travel, a cohortative ('let us') that envisions continued companionship. The verb *nasa* ('to pull up stakes, journey, set out') implies breaking camp and moving together as a caravan. Esau's offer is genuine: he wants to travel with his brother, not merely greet him and part.
12. 'I will go alongside you' (*ve'elekhah lenegdekha*) — the preposition *leneged* can mean 'before, alongside, opposite.' Esau offers himself as escort or companion. The offer is generous but, as the next verses reveal, Jacob will decline it.
13. 'The children are tender' (*hayeladim rakkim*) — the adjective *rak* ('tender, soft, delicate') describes young children who cannot endure a forced march. Jacob's excuse is plausible: traveling at the pace of a military company with four hundred men would exhaust his household. But the excuse also serves to separate the brothers without direct refusal.
13. 'Nursing' (*alot alai*) — literally 'suckling upon me,' indicating ewes and cows still nursing their young. The livestock are at their most vulnerable. Jacob's concern for animal welfare is genuine — overlaid nursing animals will indeed die — but it also provides diplomatic cover for declining Esau's company.

14. 'I will make my way slowly' (etnahalah le'itti) — the hitpael of nahal means 'to lead oneself along, to proceed at ease,' and le'itti means 'at my slowness, gently.' Jacob proposes a leisurely pace tailored to his weakest members. The phrasing is courteous but evasive.
14. 'Until I come to my lord at Seir' (ad asher-avo el-adoni Se'irah) — Jacob promises to meet Esau in Seir. He never does. The text records no journey to Seir; instead Jacob goes to Succoth (v. 17) and then Shechem (v. 18). Whether this is a deliberate lie, a changed plan, or a promise fulfilled off-stage is one of the chapter's open questions. Many interpreters read it as calculated deception — Jacob has not entirely shed his old ways.
15. 'Let me station some of my people with you' (atsigah-na immekha min-ha'am asher itti) — Esau's second offer: if Jacob won't travel together, at least accept a military escort. The verb natsav/yatsag ('to station, place, set') has a military connotation — these would be posted guards or a protective detachment. Esau is generous to the end.
15. Jacob declines this too with the same deferential formula — 'Let me find favor in the eyes of my lord' — a polite refusal that essentially means 'your goodwill is enough; I need nothing more.' Jacob wants neither Esau's company nor his protection. The reconciliation is real but limited: Jacob will not embed himself in Esau's world.
16. Esau departs alone, returning to Seir. The brevity is striking — one verse for the end of a twenty-year estrangement. The brothers part ways, and the narrative follows Jacob, not Esau. Esau returns to his territory; Jacob goes in a different direction entirely (v. 17). The reconciliation is complete but not a reunion: the brothers forgive but do not merge households. They will meet again only to bury their father Isaac (35:29).
17. 'Jacob traveled to Succoth' (veYa'aqov nasa Sukkotah) — instead of heading to Seir as promised (v. 14), Jacob goes to Succoth, east of the Jordan in the Jordan Valley. The destination confirms that Jacob never intended to follow Esau. The disjunction between promise and action is noted without moral commentary — the narrator lets the reader judge.
17. 'Succoth' (sukkot) — literally 'booths, shelters, huts.' The place receives its name from the temporary shelters Jacob constructs for his livestock. The same word later designates the Festival of Booths/Tabernacles (Sukkot, Leviticus 23:34), when Israel dwells in temporary shelters to remember wilderness dependence. Here the word is purely practical — animal shelters — but the resonance with later liturgical practice enriches the name.
17. 'He built himself a house' (vayyiven lo bayit) — Jacob builds a permanent structure (bayit, 'house') while making only temporary shelters (sukkot) for his animals. The contrast may suggest a transitional period: Jacob is settling, however temporarily, before moving on to Shechem.
18. 'Came safely' (vayyavo... shalem) — the word shalem is ambiguous: it can be an adjective meaning 'safe, whole, complete' (i.e., 'Jacob arrived safely') or a proper noun, 'Shalem,' naming a town near Shechem. The KJV reads it as a place name; most modern translations read it as an adjective. This rendering follows the adjectival reading: Jacob arrived 'whole' — the same root as shalom ('peace'). After wrestling with God, confronting Esau, and separating from his brother, Jacob arrives shalem — intact, at peace, complete. The word fulfills God's promise to bring him back safely (28:15).
18. 'The city of Shechem' (ir Shekhem) — Shechem lies in the central hill country of Canaan, between Mount Ebal and Mount Gerizim. It will become a crucial site: the place of Dinah's violation (ch. 34), the location of covenant renewal under Joshua (Joshua 24), and eventually the capital of the northern kingdom. Jacob has returned to the Promised Land — the land of Canaan — for the first time since fleeing to Haran.
19. 'He bought the parcel of land' (vayyiqen et-chelqat hassadeh) — the verb qanah ('to buy, acquire') marks a formal land purchase. This is only the second recorded land purchase by a patriarch in Canaan, after Abraham's purchase of the cave of Machpelah (ch. 23). Both purchases are significant: the patriarchs do not seize the land by force but buy it legally, establishing legitimate claim through commerce rather than conquest.
19. 'One hundred qesitahs' (me'ah qesitah) — the qesitah is an ancient unit of monetary value, possibly a weighed piece of metal. Its exact value is unknown; the term appears only here, in Joshua 24:32, and in Job 42:11. The rarity of the word suggests archaic currency, lending the transaction an air of deep antiquity.
19. 'The sons of Hamor, Shechem's father' (benei-Chamor avi Shekhem) — the introduction of Hamor and Shechem here is ominous in light of chapter 34. The land purchase establishes a relationship with the local Hivite clan that will end catastrophically.
20. 'El-Elohe-Israel' (El Elohei Yisra'el) — 'God, the God of Israel.' This is the first time the name 'Israel' appears in a worship context. Jacob, renamed Israel at Peniel (32:28), now builds an altar using his new name. The altar's name makes a theological declaration: the God he worships is not merely El (a generic divine title) but the God who is specifically identified with Israel — with Jacob's transformed identity. The altar is both a personal confession ('my God') and a national foundation ('the God of Israel').
20. The chapter ends with worship — a fitting conclusion to the journey that began with a vow at Bethel (28:20-22). Jacob promised that if God brought him back safely, 'the LORD shall be my God.' He has returned shalem ('whole'), and he erects an altar. The vow is being fulfilled, though the Bethel return will come later (ch. 35).
20. The altar name also distinguishes Jacob's God from the local Canaanite deities. In a city named after Shechem, whose father Hamor rules the area, Jacob plants a theological marker: this land belongs to the God of Israel. The claim will be contested violently in the very next chapter.

34

Summary: *Shechem, son of Hamor, violates Dinah, Jacob's daughter, then claims to love her and requests her in marriage. Jacob's sons deceive the Shechemites, demanding circumcision as a condition of intermarriage. On the third day, while the men are in pain, Simeon and Levi massacre the city. Jacob rebukes them; they retort, 'Should he treat our sister like a prostitute?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Hebrew piles four verbs onto Shechem's act: 'saw her, took her, lay with her, and violated her' (v. 2) — an escalating sequence from sight to violence. The phrase nevalah be-Yisrael ('an outrage in Israel,' v. 7) appears here before Israel is a nation, establishing a category of violation so severe it shocks the entire community. The sons' use of circumcision — the covenant sign — as a weapon of deception perverts its sacred meaning. Jacob's silence throughout most of the narrative (v. 5) contrasts sharply with his sons' fury.*

Translation Friction: *The verb innah ('violated/humiliated,' v. 2) encompasses forced sexual encounter and social degradation. English translations vary between 'defiled' and 'violated'; we used 'violated' for its directness. Shechem's emotional language — 'his soul clung to Dinah' and 'he spoke to the heart of the young woman' (v. 3) — uses vocabulary elsewhere associated with genuine love and tenderness, creating a moral complexity we preserved rather than resolved.*

Connections: *Jacob's condemnation of Simeon and Levi is repeated in his deathbed oracle (49:5-7), where their violence results in their scattering among the tribes. The phrase 'an outrage in Israel' recurs in Judges 19:23-24 and 2 Samuel 13:12 for sexual crimes of the gravest order. The misuse of circumcision here contrasts with its sacred institution in chapter 17.*

¹Dinah, the daughter of Leah whom she had borne to Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land. ²Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the land, saw her, took her, lay with her, and violated her. ³His soul clung to Dinah the daughter of Jacob. He loved the young woman and spoke to the heart of the young woman. ⁴Shechem said to Hamor his father, "Get me this girl as a wife." ⁵Jacob heard that he had defiled Dinah his daughter, but his sons were with his livestock in the field. So Jacob held his peace until they came. ⁶Hamor the father of Shechem went out to Jacob to speak with him. ⁷The sons of Jacob came in from the field when they heard. The men were grieved and they burned with anger, for he had committed an outrage in Israel by lying with Jacob's daughter — a thing that ought not to be done. ⁸Hamor spoke with them, saying, "My son Shechem — his soul longs for your daughter. Please give her to him as a wife." ⁹"Intermarry with us: give your daughters to us and take our daughters for yourselves." ¹⁰"You shall dwell with us, and the land will be open before you. Settle, trade in it, and acquire property in it." ¹¹Shechem said to her father and to her brothers, "Let me find favor in your eyes, and whatever you say to me I will give." ¹²"Set the bride-price and gift as high as you wish, and I will give whatever you ask of me — only give me the young woman as a wife." ¹³The sons of Jacob answered Shechem and Hamor his father with deceit — they spoke thus because he had defiled Dinah their sister. ¹⁴They said to them, "We cannot do this thing — to give our sister to a man who has a foreskin, for that would be a disgrace to us." ¹⁵"Only on this condition will we agree with you: if you become like us, by circumcising every male among you." ¹⁶"Then we will give our daughters to you and take your daughters for ourselves, and we will dwell with you and become one people." ¹⁷"But if you will not listen to us and be circumcised, then we will take our daughter and go." ¹⁸Their words pleased Hamor and Shechem the son of Hamor. ¹⁹The young man did not delay in doing the thing, because he delighted in Jacob's daughter. And he was the most honored in all his father's house. ²⁰Hamor and Shechem his son came to the gate of their city and spoke to the men of their city, saying, ²¹"These men are peaceable toward us. Let them dwell in the land and trade in it, for the land is broad enough for them. Let us take their daughters as wives for ourselves, and let us give our daughters to them." ²²"Only on this condition will the men agree to dwell with us and become one people: that every male among us be circumcised, as they are circumcised." ²³"Will not their livestock and their property and all their animals become ours? Only let us agree with them, and they will dwell with us." ²⁴All who went out of the gate of his city listened to Hamor and Shechem his son, and every male was circumcised

— all who went out of the gate of his city. ²⁵On the third day, when they were in pain, two of the sons of Jacob — Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brothers — each took his sword and came against the unsuspecting city and killed every male. ²⁶They killed Hamor and Shechem his son with the edge of the sword, took Dinah from Shechem's house, and went out. ²⁷Jacob's sons looted the city where the dead lay, because their sister had been violated. ²⁸They took their flocks and their herds and their donkeys — what was in the city and what was in the field. ²⁹All their wealth, all their little ones, and their wives they took captive and plundered — everything that was in the houses. ³⁰Jacob said to Simeon and Levi, "You have brought trouble on me, making me odious to the inhabitants of the land — to the Canaanites and the Perizzites. I am few in number; if they gather against me and strike me, I will be destroyed — I and my household." ³¹They said, "Should he treat our sister like a prostitute?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Went out' (vattetse) — the verb yatsa ('to go out') introduces Dinah's independent action. She 'goes out' on her own initiative, an unusual act for a young woman in this narrative world. The verb itself carries no moral judgment — it simply describes movement from the family compound into the broader community. Later interpreters, however, debated whether this 'going out' implied impropriety. The text itself assigns no blame to Dinah.
1. 'The daughter of Leah whom she had borne to Jacob' — the double identification through both parents is unusual and may serve to emphasize Dinah's lineage. She is Leah's daughter specifically — this will matter when her full brothers (Simeon and Levi, also Leah's sons) take vengeance in vv. 25-26.
1. 'To see the daughters of the land' (lir'ot bivnot ha'arets) — Dinah's purpose is social: she seeks the company of local women. The phrase 'daughters of the land' echoes the patriarchal concern about intermarriage with Canaanite women (24:3; 27:46; 28:1). Dinah's visit is innocent, but it moves her into a space of cultural contact that the patriarchal narratives have repeatedly flagged as dangerous.
2. The verse uses four rapid verbs in sequence: 'saw' (vayyar), 'took' (vayyiqqach), 'lay with' (vayyishkav), 'violated' (vay'anneha). The staccato pace conveys the violence — there is no courtship, no negotiation, no consent. Shechem sees and acts. The chain of verbs mirrors the language used for the 'sons of God' in 6:2: 'they saw... they took' — a pattern of powerful males seizing women.
2. 'Violated her' (vay'anneha) — the verb 'innah (piel of 'anah) means 'to humiliate, oppress, afflict, violate.' It is used for rape in Deuteronomy 22:24, 29 and for the violation of Tamar by Amnon (2 Samuel 13:12, 14). The word carries connotations of degradation beyond the physical act — it denotes the imposition of shame and the destruction of social standing. The KJV's 'defiled' softens the Hebrew; 'violated' captures the force of the verb.
2. 'Prince of the land' (nesi ha'arets) — Shechem is not a commoner but the ruling prince. His status makes the act a political as well as personal violation. The most powerful man in the region has assaulted the daughter of the most prominent immigrant family.
3. 'His soul clung' (vattidbbaq nafsho) — the verb davaq ('to cling, cleave, attach') is the same verb used for the marriage bond in 2:24: 'a man shall cleave to his wife.' The word describes intense emotional attachment. Its use here creates a disturbing juxtaposition: the language of marital devotion follows immediately after the language of sexual violence. Shechem's desire is genuine but does not undo or excuse the violation.
3. 'He loved the young woman' (vayyehav et-hanna'arah) — the verb ahav ('to love') appears without irony. The narrative does not question the sincerity of Shechem's love; it does, however, present love as arriving after violence — an impossible sequence for genuine consent. Love that begins with 'he took her and violated her' is love built on a destroyed foundation.
3. 'Spoke to the heart of the young woman' (vaydabber al-lev hanna'arah) — the idiom dibber al-lev means 'to speak tenderly, to comfort, to reassure.' It is used when Boaz comforts Ruth (Ruth 2:13) and when God woos Israel back from apostasy (Hosea 2:14). Shechem attempts to console the woman he has just violated. The tender words cannot erase the brutal verbs of v. 2.
4. 'Get me this girl as a wife' (qach-li et-hayyaldah hazzot le'ishah) — the verb laqach ('to take, get') echoes v. 2 where Shechem 'took' Dinah. The same verb frames both the assault and the marriage request. Shechem's demand to his father is imperious — 'Get me' — the tone of a prince accustomed to having what he wants. He calls Dinah 'this girl' (hayyaldah), using a term that emphasizes her youth.
4. The request to formalize the relationship through marriage follows the ancient Near Eastern pattern where a rapist could marry his victim (cf. Deuteronomy 22:28-29). Shechem seeks legitimacy for a fait accompli. The narrative presents his desire for marriage without endorsing it as an adequate response to the violation.
5. 'He had defiled' (timme) — the verb tame ('to make unclean, defile') shifts the vocabulary from violence ('innah in v. 2) to ritual impurity. Dinah has been rendered ritually unclean, a status that affects her social and religious standing within the community. The defilement language adds a communal dimension to the personal violation.
5. 'Jacob held his peace' (vehecherish Ya'aqov) — the verb charash (hiphil: 'to be silent, hold one's peace') describes Jacob's inaction. He hears the news and does nothing — waits for his sons. Jacob's silence has been variously interpreted: as restraint, as paralysis, as passive complicity, as political calculation. The father who fought with God and faced Esau now falls silent when his daughter is violated. His passivity is one of the most troubling aspects of the chapter.

6. 'Hamor went out to Jacob' — Hamor initiates the diplomatic contact. The father of the perpetrator approaches the father of the victim. The verb 'went out' (vayyetse) echoes Dinah's 'going out' in v. 1, creating an ironic parallel: Dinah went out innocently and was violated; Hamor goes out diplomatically to legitimize the violation. The word *ledabber* ('to speak') is bland and transactional — as if what happened were a matter for negotiation rather than justice.
7. 'The men were grieved and they burned with anger' (vayyit'atsvu ha'anashim vayyichar lahem me'od) — two responses: grief (*atsav*, the same verb used for God's grief over human wickedness in 6:6) and burning anger (*charah*, 'to be hot, kindled'). The brothers' response contrasts sharply with Jacob's silence in v. 5. Where the father went mute, the brothers are inflamed.
7. 'He had committed an outrage in Israel' (nevalah asah veYisra'el) — this is the first occurrence of the formula *nevalah beYisra'el*, which becomes a standard expression for grievous sexual violations throughout the Hebrew Bible (Deuteronomy 22:21; Judges 19:23; 20:6, 10; 2 Samuel 13:12). The word *nevalah* denotes an act of gross moral violation — 'disgrace, outrage, folly' — something that ruptures the social order. Its use here is anachronistic in one sense: 'Israel' as a national entity does not yet exist. But the narrator employs the later formula to signal the severity of the act — this is a crime against the emerging community.
7. 'A thing that ought not to be done' (vekhen lo ye'aseh) — a declaration of absolute moral prohibition. The passive construction (lo ye'aseh, 'it shall not be done') frames the prohibition as objective and universal, not merely personal. This is not about Jacob's honor but about the moral order itself.
8. 'His soul longs' (*chashqah nafsho*) — the verb *chashaq* means 'to desire, long for, be attached to.' It is used positively elsewhere: God 'set his love' (*chashaq*) on Israel (Deuteronomy 7:7; 10:15). Hamor presents his son's desire as deep emotional attachment, omitting entirely the fact that Shechem has already raped the girl. The diplomatic language sanitizes the violence: 'longing' replaces assault, 'desire' replaces coercion. Hamor negotiates as though beginning a courtship that has, in fact, already ended in violation.
9. 'Intermarry with us' (*vehitchatnu otanu*) — the *hitpael* of *chatan* ('to become a son-in-law, to intermarry') proposes a comprehensive kinship alliance, not merely a single marriage. Hamor expands Shechem's individual request into a communal proposal: full intermarriage between the two peoples. The suggestion is precisely what the patriarchal narratives have consistently forbidden (cf. 24:3; 28:1). Hamor is proposing the dissolution of Jacob's family's distinctiveness — the very thing the covenant requires them to maintain.
10. 'The land will be open before you' (*veha'arets tihyeh lifneikhem*) — Hamor offers unrestricted access to the land: settlement, commerce, and property ownership. The offer is generous by any standard. But for the reader who knows the covenant promises, Hamor's offer is a theological trap — Israel is to inherit the land through divine promise, not through assimilation with its current inhabitants. The land is already promised to Jacob's descendants; to receive it as a gift from Hamor would redefine the terms of possession.
10. 'Acquire property' (*hei'achezu vah*) — the verb *achaz* means 'to seize, hold, possess.' The noun *achuzzah* ('possession, holding') is the standard term for land inheritance in Israel (cf. 47:11; Leviticus 25:10). Hamor unwittingly uses covenantal vocabulary to describe a commercial transaction.
11. 'Let me find favor in your eyes' (*emtsa-chen be'eineikhem*) — Shechem now addresses the family directly, using the same supplicatory language Jacob used with Esau (33:8, 10, 15). The rapist positions himself as a suitor seeking approval. The word *chen* ('favor, grace') is deeply ironic coming from the man who has already taken by force what he now seeks permission to have.
11. 'Whatever you say to me I will give' (*va'asher tomru elai etten*) — a blank check. Shechem offers unlimited compensation. This open-ended promise sets the stage for the brothers' deceptive demand in vv. 14-17. Shechem's desperation gives them leverage.
12. 'Bride-price and gift' (*mohar umattan*) — the *mohar* is the formal bride-price paid by the groom's family to the bride's family (cf. Exodus 22:16-17; 1 Samuel 18:25). The *mattan* is an additional gift or present. Together they constitute the full financial transaction of marriage. Shechem offers to pay any amount — the price is irrelevant; he wants legitimacy.
12. The entire negotiation scene is remarkable for what it omits: Dinah's voice. She is spoken about, bargained over, and traded — but she never speaks. The patriarchal world of the text treats her as the object of male transactions, whether violent (Shechem's assault) or commercial (the marriage negotiations). Her silence is the loudest element of the chapter.
13. 'With deceit' (*bemirmah*) — the narrator reveals the deception before it unfolds, ensuring the reader knows the brothers' true intentions. The word *mirmah* ('deceit, treachery, guile') is the same word used to describe Jacob's deception of Isaac: 'Your brother came with *mirmah* and took your blessing' (27:35). The father's defining sin reappears in the sons. Deceit runs in the family — though here it is deployed in response to genuine outrage rather than for personal gain.
13. 'Because he had defiled Dinah their sister' (*asher timme et Dinah achotam*) — the narrator provides the brothers' motive before their words. The clause functions as moral context: their deception, while wrong, is provoked by an atrocity. The text refuses to simplify: the brothers are both avengers of their sister and perpetrators of treachery.
14. 'A man who has a foreskin' (*ish asher-lo orlah*) — literally 'a man who has foreskin.' The brothers frame circumcision as a non-negotiable boundary marker. The demand weaponizes the covenant sign: circumcision, given as a mark of God's covenant with Abraham (ch. 17), is now deployed as a strategic trap. The brothers exploit sacred identity for military advantage.
14. 'A disgrace to us' (*cherpah hi lanu*) — the word *cherpah* means 'reproach, shame, disgrace.' The brothers claim that intermarriage with the uncircumcised would bring shame — a claim rooted in genuine covenantal conviction but made here in bad faith. The irony is devastating: they invoke covenant holiness to plan mass murder.

15. 'If you become like us' (im tiyu khamonu) — the condition demands cultural assimilation in the direction the brothers have no intention of reciprocating. The phrase 'like us' is deeply ironic: Hamor proposed that Jacob's family become like them (v. 10); the brothers reverse the demand. The condition sounds like an invitation to covenant membership but is actually a setup for slaughter.
15. 'Circumcising every male' (lehimmol lakhem kol-zakhar) — the demand for universal male circumcision echoes God's command to Abraham (17:10-14). The brothers require of the Shechemites exactly what God required of Abraham's household. The covenant sign is being used as a weapon — the most cynical appropriation of sacred practice in Genesis.
16. 'We will become one people' (vehayinu le'am echad) — the brothers dangle the prospect of full national merger. The word 'am ('people, nation') implies more than cohabitation — it envisions a fused identity. This is precisely the assimilation that later biblical law prohibits (Deuteronomy 7:1-4). The promise is hollow: the brothers have no intention of merging. They are constructing a lie of extraordinary scope — promising national unity while planning massacre.
17. 'We will take our daughter and go' (velaqachnu et-bittenu vehalakhnu) — the brothers present an ultimatum: circumcision or departure. The possessive 'our daughter' (bittenu) is significant — they do not say 'our sister' (achotenu) but 'our daughter,' perhaps speaking collectively as the family. The threat to leave establishes the condition's urgency: accept circumcision now or lose the alliance permanently. The entire speech (vv. 14-17) is a masterpiece of diplomatic duplicity — every word true in form, false in intent.
18. 'Their words pleased' (vayyitvu divreihem be'einei) — literally 'their words were good in the eyes of.' Hamor and Shechem accept the condition without suspicion. The irony is thick: the father and son whose 'taking' precipitated the crisis are now themselves 'taken in' by deceptive words. The deceived become the deceived. They hear the promise of intermarriage and alliance; they do not hear the death sentence hidden within it.
19. 'Did not delay' (velo echar hanna'ar) — Shechem acts immediately, driven by desire. The verb achar ('to delay, tarry') in the negative emphasizes his eagerness. The same urgency that characterized the assault (v. 2) now characterizes the compliance.
19. 'The most honored in all his father's house' (vehu nikhbad mikkol beit aviv) — the narrator notes Shechem's high social standing. The adjective nikhbad ('honored, respected') from the root kavod ('glory, honor, weight') indicates that Shechem was the most prominent member of his clan. His status explains why he could persuade the city (v. 20) and why the city's men would follow his lead in circumcision. His honor, however, did not prevent his crime.
20. 'The gate of their city' (sha'ar iram) — the city gate was the center of legal and commercial activity in ancient Near Eastern cities. Public business, legal disputes, and community decisions took place at the gate (cf. Ruth 4:1-11). Hamor and Shechem bring their proposal to the public assembly for communal ratification. The circumcision of all males requires collective consent, not merely a ruler's decree.
21. 'These men are peaceable' (ha'anashim ha'ellesh shelemim hem ittanu) — the adjective shelemim ('peaceable, complete, at peace') is from the same root as shalem in 33:18, where Jacob arrived 'safely' at Shechem. The word also connects to Shechem's city name and to the concept of shalom. The tragic irony is that these 'peaceable' men are planning mass murder. Hamor uses the language of peace to promote a covenant that will end in blood.
21. 'The land is broad enough' (veha'arets hinneh rachavat-yadayim lifneihem) — literally 'the land is wide of hands before them.' The idiom means there is ample room. Hamor's economic argument is pragmatic: there is no need for competition when resources are abundant. The appeal to self-interest will prove decisive in v. 23.
22. Hamor relays the brothers' condition faithfully. The repetition of 'one people' (le'am echad) from v. 16 shows that Hamor has accepted the brothers' terms at face value. He presents circumcision as a reasonable concession for the enormous benefit of alliance. The demand for universal male circumcision — every zakhar ('male') — is what transforms a surgical procedure into a military vulnerability: an entire city of men incapacitated simultaneously.
23. 'Will not their livestock and their property become ours?' (miqnehem veqinyanam vekhol-behemtam halo lanu hem) — Hamor and Shechem reveal their true pitch to the city: greed. The appeal to economic self-interest — 'everything they have will be ours' — is the decisive argument. The citizens of Shechem agree to circumcision not for love, not for alliance, but for profit. The irony is devastating: the Shechemites plan to absorb Jacob's wealth just as Jacob's sons plan to destroy Shechem's population. Both sides operate on acquisition; neither side is honest.
23. The rhetorical question expects an affirmative answer: 'Of course their wealth will be ours!' Hamor promises his citizens a windfall. The city's men undergo circumcision expecting enrichment; they receive annihilation.
24. 'All who went out of the gate of his city' (kol-yots'ei sha'ar iro) — the phrase denotes the adult male citizens, those who participate in public life at the city gate. The repetition of the phrase emphasizes totality: every single adult male submitted to circumcision. The compliance is unanimous, motivated by the economic argument of v. 23. The universality of the circumcision creates the universality of the vulnerability.
24. The verb vayyimmolu ('they were circumcised') is passive/reflexive — they circumcised themselves, acting upon their own bodies at the instigation of outsiders who intend their destruction. The city enacts its own incapacitation.
25. 'On the third day, when they were in pain' (vayyehi bayyom hashlishi bihyotam ko'avim) — the timing is calculated. The third day after circumcision is when pain and inflammation peak. The men of Shechem are at maximum physical vulnerability — feverish, swollen, unable to fight or flee. The brothers have weaponized the healing calendar.
25. 'Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brothers' (Shim'on veLevi achei Dinah) — the text specifies that these are Dinah's full brothers, all children of Leah (29:33-34; 30:21). The designation 'Dinah's brothers' rather than 'Jacob's sons' frames their action as sibling loyalty, not mere tribal violence. They avenge their sister specifically.

25. 'Came against the unsuspecting city' (vayyavo'u al-ha'ir betach) — the word betach means 'securely, confidently, unsuspectingly.' It describes the city's state of false security — they believed the alliance was genuine. Two men attack an entire city: the detail strains historical credibility but makes narrative sense. The entire male population is incapacitated; two armed men against a city of invalids is a feasible, if horrifying, military equation.
25. 'Killed every male' (vayyahargu kol-zakhar) — the scope of the killing is total. Every male (zakhar) — the same word used for those circumcised in v. 24 — is put to the sword. The covenant sign that was meant to mark inclusion in Abraham's family instead marked the victims for death.
26. 'They killed Hamor and Shechem' — the named killings come after the general massacre, specifying the primary targets. Father and son — the diplomat and the rapist — die together by the sword.
26. 'Took Dinah from Shechem's house' (vayyiqchu et-Dinah mibbeit Shekhem) — this detail reveals that Dinah has been in Shechem's house throughout the negotiations. She was not returned after the assault; she has been held. The verb laqach ('to take') echoes its earlier uses: Shechem 'took' Dinah by force (v. 2); now her brothers 'take' her back. The same verb describes both the crime and the rescue.
26. 'And went out' (vayyetse'u) — the verb yatsa ('to go out') closes the circle opened in v. 1, where Dinah 'went out.' Dinah went out; violence entered. Her brothers go out; they bring her home. The verb frames the entire narrative.
27. 'The sons of Jacob' (benei Ya'aqov) — the subject broadens from Simeon and Levi (v. 25) to all of Jacob's sons. The killing was done by two; the plundering involves all. The distinction may indicate different levels of culpability, or it may reflect the practical reality that looting requires more hands than killing.
27. 'Plundered the city' (vayyavozu ha'ir) — the verb bazaz ('to plunder, spoil, loot') is standard military terminology for stripping a defeated city. The economic dimension transforms the act from vengeance into conquest. The brothers take not only their sister but everything of value.
27. 'Because they had defiled their sister' (asher timme'u achotam) — the plural 'they defiled' extends responsibility beyond Shechem to the entire city. The brothers' logic: the city that harbored and supported Shechem shares his guilt. This collective punishment will be debated by Jacob (v. 30) and by the brothers themselves (v. 31).
28. The inventory of plunder is thorough: flocks, herds, donkeys, urban property, and rural property. Nothing is left. The catalogue mirrors Hamor's promise to the Shechemites in v. 23: 'Will not their livestock and property become ours?' The irony is complete — the Shechemites agreed to circumcision expecting to absorb Jacob's wealth; instead, Jacob's sons absorb theirs. The economic predation runs both directions, but only one side survives to collect.
29. 'Their little ones and their wives they took captive' (et-kol-tappam ve'et-nesheihem shavu) — the verb shavah ('to take captive') indicates that women and children were seized as spoils of war. The men are dead; the women and children become captives. The brothers who avenged their sister's abduction now abduct an entire city's women and children. The moral symmetry is uncomfortable: the response to one woman's violation is the mass victimization of all women.
29. The scope of destruction escalates through these verses: v. 25 — killing of males; v. 26 — killing of leaders and rescue of Dinah; v. 27 — plundering the city; v. 28 — seizing livestock and goods; v. 29 — capturing women, children, and household possessions. The escalation transforms what began as a rescue operation into a total war of annihilation and appropriation.
30. 'You have brought trouble on me' (akhartem oti) — the verb akhar means 'to bring trouble, to disturb, to make turbid.' The same verb describes Achan's sin at Jericho: 'Why have you brought trouble on us?' (Joshua 7:25). Jacob frames the massacre not as a moral outrage but as a strategic liability. His rebuke is remarkably self-centered: the issue is not the slaughter of innocents but the danger to himself.
30. 'Making me odious' (lehav'isheni) — the hiphil of ba'ash means 'to make stink, to cause to be abhorred.' Jacob fears that his family's reputation has become toxic — they will be seen as dangerous and untrustworthy by surrounding peoples. The complaint is pragmatic, not ethical: Jacob does not say 'what you did was wrong' but 'what you did puts me at risk.'
30. 'I am few in number' (va'ani metei mispar) — literally 'men of number,' meaning a small, countable group. Jacob acknowledges his military weakness: his household cannot withstand a coalition of Canaanite peoples. The realism of his fear contrasts with the brothers' reckless boldness. Jacob's objection will be repeated, in stronger terms, on his deathbed (49:5-7), where he curses Simeon and Levi's anger and scatters their descendants.
31. 'Should he treat our sister like a prostitute?' (hakhezonah ya'aseh et-achotenu) — the chapter's final word belongs to the brothers, and it is a question with no recorded answer. The word zonah ('prostitute') reframes Shechem's offer to pay a bride-price (v. 12): paying for Dinah after raping her reduces marriage to prostitution. The brothers reject the commodification of their sister's body. Their moral logic is clear even if their methods are atrocious: no amount of money makes rape acceptable; marriage to the rapist is not justice but institutionalized degradation.
31. The question hangs unanswered in the text. Jacob does not respond. The narrator does not respond. God does not respond. The silence is the chapter's final, devastating statement. Genesis 34 refuses to resolve its own moral tensions: the rape is condemned, the vengeance is excessive, Jacob's passivity is damning, the brothers' question is valid. The reader is left to grapple with competing claims of justice, proportionality, family honor, and political survival.
31. The chapter's last word — achotenu ('our sister') — centers Dinah one final time. Whatever else this story is about — politics, deception, circumcision, massacre — it is about a sister. The brothers' fury, however misdirected and disproportionate, begins with a sibling's outrage at an unforgivable violation.

35

Summary: *God sends Jacob back to Bethel. The household purges its foreign gods. At Bethel, God confirms Jacob's name as Israel and renews the Abrahamic promises. Rachel dies giving birth to Benjamin on the road to Bethlehem. Reuben sleeps with Bilhah, Jacob's concubine. The twelve sons are listed. Jacob reaches Isaac at Hebron; Isaac dies and is buried by Esau and Jacob together.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is a catalogue of endings and transitions. Rachel names her last son Ben-Oni ('son of my sorrow'), but Jacob renames him Benjamin ('son of the right hand,' v. 18) — father overrides mother, reframing grief as honor. Reuben's violation of Bilhah (v. 22) is reported in a single devastating sentence with no narratorial comment; Israel 'heard of it,' and the consequences will not surface until Jacob's deathbed (49:3-4). The burial of foreign gods under the oak at Shechem (v. 4) is a decisive act of religious purification.*

Translation Friction: *Rachel's dying word Ben-Oni (v. 18) embeds her suffering in the child's name. The father's renaming to Benjamin overrides the maternal voice — a dynamic we rendered without editorial comment, as the Hebrew presents it. The phrase vayyigva vayyeasef el-ammav ('he breathed his last and was gathered to his people,' v. 29) for Isaac's death implies continuation beyond death — the gathering is to a community of ancestors, not merely to a tomb.*

Connections: *The Bethel return fulfills Jacob's vow from 28:20-22. The list of twelve sons (35:23-26) becomes the template for the tribal structure of Israel. Rachel's burial on the road to Bethlehem (35:19) is recalled by Jeremiah (31:15) and Matthew (2:18). Isaac's burial by both sons (35:29) mirrors Abraham's burial by Isaac and Ishmael (25:9).*

¹God said to Jacob, "Arise, go up to Bethel and dwell there. Make an altar there to the God who appeared to you when you fled from the face of Esau your brother." ²Jacob said to his household and to all who were with him, "Put away the foreign gods that are among you, purify yourselves, and change your garments." ³"Let us arise and go up to Bethel, and I will make there an altar to the God who answered me in the day of my distress and has been with me on the way that I have walked." ⁴They gave to Jacob all the foreign gods that were in their hands and the rings that were in their ears, and Jacob buried them under the oak that was near Shechem. ⁵They journeyed, and a terror from God fell upon the cities that were around them, so that they did not pursue the sons of Jacob. ⁶Jacob arrived at Luz — also known as Bethel — in the land of Canaan, along with everyone who accompanied him. ⁷He built an altar there and called the place El-Bethel, because there God had revealed himself to him when he fled from the face of his brother. ⁸Deborah, Rebekah's nurse, died and was buried below Bethel under the oak. He called its name Allon-Bacuth. ⁹God appeared to Jacob again after he came from Paddan-Aram and blessed him. ¹⁰God said to him, "Your name is Jacob. Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel shall be your name." So he called his name Israel. ¹¹God said to him, "I am El Shaddai. Be fruitful and multiply. A nation and an assembly of nations shall come from you, and kings shall come forth from your body." ¹²"The land that I gave to Abraham and to Isaac — to you I will give it, and to your offspring after you I will give the land." ¹³God went up from him at the place where he had spoken with him. ¹⁴Jacob set up a pillar at the place where God had spoken with him — a pillar of stone. He poured a drink offering on it and poured oil on it. ¹⁵Jacob called the name of the place where God had spoken with him Bethel. ¹⁶They journeyed from Bethel, and when there was still some distance to go before reaching Ephrath, Rachel went into labor and her labor was difficult. ¹⁷When her labor was at its hardest, the midwife said to her, "Do not be afraid, for this one also is a son for you." ¹⁸As her soul was departing — for she was dying — she called his name Ben-Oni. But his father called him Benjamin. ¹⁹Rachel died and was buried on the road to Ephrath — that is, Bethlehem. ²⁰Jacob set up a pillar over her grave. It is the pillar of Rachel's grave to this day. ²¹Israel journeyed on and pitched his tent beyond Migdal-Eder. ²²While Israel was dwelling in that land, Reuben went and lay with Bilhah, his father's concubine. And Israel heard of it. The sons of Jacob were twelve: ²³The sons of Leah: Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun. ²⁴Rachel's sons were Joseph and Benjamin. ²⁵The sons of Bilhah, Rachel's female servant: Dan and Naphtali. ²⁶The sons of Zilpah, Leah's female servant: Gad and Asher. These are the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan-Aram. ²⁷Jacob came to his father Isaac at Mamre, at

Kiriath-Arba — that is, Hebron — where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned. ²⁸The days of Isaac were one hundred and eighty years. ²⁹Isaac breathed his last and died and was gathered to his people, old and full of days. His sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Arise, go up' (qum aleh) — two imperatives in rapid sequence. Qum ('arise') signals urgency and decisive action; aleh ('go up') reflects the higher elevation of Bethel relative to Shechem. The combination conveys a divine summons: God is moving Jacob away from Shechem after the violence of chapter 34. The verb aleh also carries theological overtones — one 'goes up' to holy places.
1. 'Bethel' (Beit-El, 'house of God') — God calls Jacob back to the place of his original theophany (28:10-22), where Jacob vowed that if God brought him safely home, the LORD would be his God. Decades have passed. The vow remains unfulfilled. God's command is simultaneously a rescue from Shechem and a call to fulfill long-deferred worship.
1. 'The God who appeared to you when you fled' — God identifies himself by the specific encounter at Bethel. The phrase 'when you fled from the face of Esau your brother' recalls Jacob's fear and vulnerability. The God who met the fugitive now summons the patriarch.
2. 'Foreign gods' (elohei hannekar) — the presence of foreign gods in Jacob's household is startling. These may include the teraphim Rachel stole from Laban (31:19), objects acquired from the Shechemites after the massacre (ch. 34), or idols carried by servants and concubines. Jacob's command reveals that syncretism had taken root in his own family — the very household of the covenant heir harbors pagan images.
2. 'Purify yourselves and change your garments' (vehittaharu vehachalifu simloteikhem) — Jacob prescribes a ritual of purification: inner cleansing ('purify yourselves') and outward transformation ('change your garments'). Changing garments symbolizes a change of identity and status. This is proto-liturgical preparation — before approaching God at Bethel, the household must undergo a separation from contamination. The pattern anticipates later priestly purification requirements.
3. 'The God who answered me in the day of my distress' (ha'El ha'oneh oti beyom tsarati) — Jacob defines God not by abstract attributes but by personal experience: God answered him when he was in trouble. The 'day of distress' encompasses his flight from Esau, his years under Laban, and perhaps the recent crisis at Shechem. Jacob's theology is biographical — God is known through what he has done.
3. 'Has been with me on the way that I have walked' (vayyehi immadi baderekh asher halakhti) — this echoes God's original promise at Bethel: 'I am with you and will keep you wherever you go' (28:15). Jacob now testifies to the fulfillment of that promise across decades of wandering. The 'way' (derekh) is both literal journey and metaphorical life-path.
4. 'The rings that were in their ears' (hannesamim asher be'ozneihem) — earrings in the ancient Near East were not merely decorative; they often served as amulets or bore images of deities. Their surrender alongside the foreign gods indicates their cultic significance. The household surrenders both the idols and their associated talismans.
4. 'Jacob buried them' (vayyitmon otam) — the verb taman means 'to hide, bury, conceal.' Jacob does not destroy the objects but buries them, rendering them inaccessible. The oak (elah) at Shechem may be the same tree mentioned in connection with Abraham's first altar in the land (12:6). There is irony in this location: Shechem, site of the recent violence, becomes the burial ground for false worship. Jacob leaves both the massacre and the idols behind as he departs for Bethel.
5. 'A terror from God' (chittat Elohim) — a supernatural dread that paralyzes potential enemies. After the massacre at Shechem, Jacob feared retaliation from neighboring peoples (34:30). Instead, God intervenes with a divinely imposed terror that prevents pursuit. The phrase chittat Elohim occurs also in 1 Samuel 14:15 and Job 6:4. This is not natural fear but a God-sent panic — the same kind of intervention that will later protect Israel in the wilderness (Exodus 23:27).
5. The verse answers Jacob's anxious complaint of 34:30 ('you have made me odious to the inhabitants of the land'). God provides protection precisely when Jacob's family is most vulnerable, as they travel in the open between Shechem and Bethel.
6. 'Luz, that is Bethel' — the narrator provides the older Canaanite name (Luz) alongside the name Jacob gave it (Bethel, 28:19). This editorial note anchors the site geographically for readers who may know it by either name. The identification pattern 'X, that is Y' appears frequently in Genesis to connect ancient place names with later designations.
7. 'El-Bethel' (El Beit-El, 'God of the house of God') — Jacob names the altar not simply Bethel but El-Bethel, emphasizing the deity who dwells at the site. The name shifts focus from the place to the God of the place.
7. 'God had revealed himself' (niglu elav ha'Elohim) — the verb niglu is the niphal plural of galah ('to uncover, reveal'). The plural form with the singular subject 'God' (ha'Elohim) is grammatically unusual. Some scholars see this as reflecting the plural form of Elohim; others view it as a plural of majesty. The verb galah in the niphal indicates divine self-disclosure — God actively chose to make himself known to the fleeing Jacob.
8. 'Deborah, Rebekah's nurse' (Devorah meineqet Rivqah) — Deborah appears without prior introduction in the Jacob narrative. She is last mentioned as accompanying the young Rebekah from Mesopotamia (24:59). Her presence in Jacob's household implies she joined him at some point — perhaps sent by Rebekah. That she is identified by her relationship to Rebekah (Jacob's mother) suggests Rebekah herself may already be dead, a death the narrative never records.

8. 'Allon-Bacuth' (Allon Bakhut, 'oak of weeping') — the name memorializes communal mourning. The weeping for a nurse seems disproportionate unless Deborah represents the last living link to Rebekah and the family left behind. Her death severs the last thread connecting Jacob to his mother, whom he never saw again after fleeing to Haran. The grief may be for Rebekah as much as for Deborah.
9. 'God appeared to Jacob again' (vayyera Elohim el-Ya'aqov od) — the word 'again' (od) links this theophany to the earlier appearance at Bethel (28:13-15). The same God, the same place, a different Jacob. The fugitive who slept on a stone has become a patriarch with twelve sons, vast wealth, and a new name. The return to Bethel completes a narrative arc spanning chapters 28-35.
9. 'After he came from Paddan-Aram' — this temporal notice may refer to the broader journey from Mesopotamia rather than to an immediate arrival, since Jacob has been in Canaan for some time (chapters 33-34). The phrase serves to frame the entire Paddan-Aram sojourn as background for this climactic theophany.
10. The name change from Jacob to Israel was first declared at Peniel by the mysterious wrestler (32:28). Here God formally confirms it. The repetition is not redundant — the nighttime struggle at the Jabbok yielded the name through contest; at Bethel, God ratifies it through blessing. The two scenes complement each other: Peniel was earned through striving, Bethel is bestowed through grace.
10. 'Your name is Jacob' — God begins by stating Jacob's current identity before declaring the new one. The contrast is deliberate: Ya'aqov ('heel-grabber, supplanter') gives way to Yisra'el ('he strives with God' or 'God strives'). The old name embodies human scheming; the new name embodies divine encounter.
11. 'El Shaddai' — God identifies himself by the name associated with the patriarchal covenant, the same title used with Abraham (17:1). The exact meaning of Shaddai remains debated: 'Almighty' (traditional), 'God of the mountain,' or 'the Sufficient One.' The rendering preserves the Hebrew title rather than translating it, since no single English word captures its range. The self-identification establishes continuity: the God who covenanted with Abraham now extends the same promises to Jacob/Israel.
11. 'Be fruitful and multiply' (pereh ureveh) — this command echoes the primordial blessing of creation (1:28) and the post-flood blessing to Noah (9:1). Its application to Jacob/Israel positions the covenant people within the creational mandate. The nation that will emerge is not a political accident but a fulfillment of the divine order embedded in creation itself.
11. 'Kings shall come forth from your body' (umelakhim mechalatsekha yetse'u) — the promise of royal descendants, first given to Abraham (17:6) and Sarah (17:16), is now transferred to Jacob. The word chalatsayim ('loins, body') emphasizes physical descent. This promise finds fulfillment in the Davidic monarchy and, in Christian reading, in the Messiah.
12. The land promise, first given to Abraham (12:7; 13:15; 15:18) and confirmed to Isaac (26:3), is now extended to Jacob. The threefold chain — Abraham, Isaac, Jacob — establishes the full patriarchal succession of the covenant. The emphatic repetition ('to you I will give it, and to your offspring after you I will give the land') stresses both the immediate and perpetual nature of the grant.
12. 'Your offspring after you' (ulezar'akha acharekha) — the promise extends beyond Jacob to all future generations. The word zera ('seed, offspring') is collective, encompassing all descendants.
13. 'God went up from him' (vayya'al me'alav Elohim) — the verb alah ('to go up, ascend') implies a visible departure, perhaps a vertical ascent. The language suggests a real, localized divine presence that arrived and now departs. This is not metaphorical communication but theophanic encounter — God was present in a manner that allowed for a visible departure. The same verb describes God's departure from Abraham in 17:22.
14. 'Pillar' (matstsevah) — a standing stone marker, as Jacob had erected after his first Bethel vision (28:18). This second pillar completes the symmetry: the first marked the initial vision, the second marks the confirmed covenant. Standing stones served as witnesses and memorials throughout the ancient Near East.
14. 'Drink offering' (nesekh) — this is the first mention of a drink offering (libation) in Scripture. The term will later become standard in Israelite sacrificial vocabulary (Numbers 15:5-10). Jacob's act is proto-liturgical: he pours out liquid (probably wine) as an offering to God. Combined with the oil (recalling 28:18), this constitutes a complete consecration of the sacred site.
14. 'Poured oil on it' (vayyitsoq aleha shamen) — oil anointing consecrates the pillar as sacred, setting it apart for God. Jacob did the same at his first visit to Bethel (28:18). The repetition of the act across decades signals faithfulness and fulfillment.
15. Jacob re-names the place Bethel, confirming the name he first gave it in 28:19. The repetition is not redundant: it ratifies the earlier naming and establishes Bethel as the definitive name for this sacred site. The place has now been consecrated twice — once by a fleeing young man, once by a returning patriarch. The vow of 28:20-22 has been fulfilled.
16. 'Some distance' (kivrat ha'arets) — the exact meaning of kivrah is uncertain. It appears only here and in 48:7 and 2 Kings 5:19. Most interpreters take it as a measure of distance, perhaps a few miles. The vagueness heightens the pathos: Rachel goes into labor on the open road, not yet at their destination, with no shelter at hand.
16. 'Her labor was difficult' (vatteqash belidtah) — the verb qashah means 'to be hard, difficult, severe.' Rachel's first pregnancy was marked by years of barrenness and desperate prayer (30:1, 22-24). Her second pregnancy ends in fatal complications. The woman who cried 'Give me sons or I die' (30:1) will indeed die in the act of giving birth.
17. 'Do not be afraid' (al-tir'i) — the midwife's words of comfort take on tragic irony: the news that should bring joy arrives as Rachel is dying. The phrase 'this one also' (gam-zeh) recalls Rachel's naming of Joseph: 'May the LORD add to me another son' (30:24). Her prayer is answered — she

receives another son — but the cost is her life.

17. 'The midwife' (hameyalledet) — the presence of a midwife on the road suggests that Jacob's traveling household included women skilled in birthing. The midwife's role — encouraging the dying mother with news of a son — echoes the midwives of Exodus 1:15-21 who will later preserve Israelite sons.
18. 'As her soul was departing' (betse't nafshah) — the nephesh ('soul, life-breath') leaves the body at death. The phrase presents death as the departure of the animating life-force, a concept consistent with Genesis 2:7 where God breathes the neshamah (breath of life) into the first human. Rachel's nephesh goes out; her son's life begins. The juxtaposition is devastating.
18. 'Ben-Oni' — Rachel's dying name for her son. The meaning is debated: it can mean 'son of my sorrow' (oni from 'aven, meaning grief, trouble) or 'son of my vigor/strength' (oni from 'on, meaning vitality, vigor — as in 49:3 where Reuben is called 'the beginning of my strength'). If the latter, Rachel names her son with her last burst of strength. Both meanings may be operative: the child is born from sorrow and from the final expenditure of Rachel's vital force.
18. 'Benjamin' (Binyamin) — Jacob renames the child. Ben-yamin means 'son of the right hand,' with the right hand symbolizing strength, favor, and honor. Alternatively, yamin can mean 'south,' making the name 'son of the south' — reflecting his birth in the southern part of the land, unlike his brothers who were born in the north (Paddan-Aram). Jacob refuses to let the child carry a name of grief. He replaces sorrow with honor.
19. 'Rachel died' (vatamot Rachel) — the stark simplicity of the statement carries enormous weight. Rachel, the beloved wife for whom Jacob labored fourteen years, dies on the open road giving birth to her second son. She is not buried in the family tomb at Machpelah (ch. 23) but beside the road. The woman who was central to Jacob's story — his love, his labor, his longing — is laid to rest far from the ancestral burial ground.
19. 'Ephrath, that is Bethlehem' — the editorial note identifies the ancient name Ephrath with the later town of Bethlehem. Rachel's tomb on the road to Bethlehem becomes a landmark in Israelite memory. Jeremiah will invoke Rachel weeping at Ramah for her exiled children (Jeremiah 31:15), and Matthew applies this image to the slaughter of innocents (Matthew 2:18). Rachel's grave marks a site of perpetual mourning in Israel's consciousness.
20. 'Jacob set up a pillar' (vayyatstsef Ya'aqov matstsevah) — this is Jacob's third pillar at Bethel or its vicinity (28:18; 35:14; now 35:20). But unlike the previous two, which marked divine encounters, this one marks death. The pillar over Rachel's grave serves as a permanent memorial — the narrator confirms its endurance 'to this day' (ad hayyom), indicating the monument was still standing when this text was composed.
20. 'To this day' (ad hayyom) — an editorial marker indicating that the author writes at a later time when Rachel's tomb pillar remains a known landmark. This phrase appears throughout Genesis to bridge the patriarchal past and the narrator's present (e.g., 19:38; 22:14; 26:33; 32:32).
21. 'Israel journeyed' — the narrator uses the covenant name 'Israel' rather than 'Jacob,' perhaps signaling the patriarch's new identity in this phase of the story. The name shift often correlates with Jacob acting in his role as patriarch and covenant bearer.
21. 'Migdal-Eder' (Migdal Eder, 'tower of the flock') — a watchtower used by shepherds to guard their flocks, located between Bethlehem and Hebron. The name evokes the pastoral life of the patriarchs. Micah 4:8 will later use 'tower of the flock' as a title for Jerusalem/Zion. The brief geographical note transitions the narrative from Rachel's death to the next disturbing episode.
22. 'Reuben went and lay with Bilhah his father's concubine' (vayyishkav et-Bilhah pilegesh aviv) — this shocking act receives no narrative elaboration. In the ancient Near East, taking a father's concubine was an assertion of authority over the household — a political act as much as a sexual one (cf. Absalom with David's concubines, 2 Samuel 16:22). Reuben, as firstborn, may be claiming patriarchal authority. Alternatively, some scholars suggest he acts to prevent Bilhah (Rachel's handmaid) from replacing Rachel in Jacob's bed after Rachel's death, thus protecting his mother Leah's status.
22. 'And Israel heard of it' (vayyishma Yisra'el) — the sentence breaks off with devastating abruptness. In the Masoretic text, a paragraph break (setumah or petuchah) falls mid-verse after 'Israel heard.' The silence is deafening: no recorded response, no punishment, no confrontation. Jacob's silence may reflect paralysis, grief, or calculated restraint. He will address Reuben's act only on his deathbed (49:3-4), stripping him of the firstborn's preeminence.
22. The abrupt transition to 'the sons of Jacob were twelve' shifts from scandal to genealogical record, as if the narrator deliberately closes the door on the incident and moves to the official family register.
23. Leah's sons are listed first because Reuben is Jacob's firstborn (bekhor). The six sons of Leah constitute half the tribal heads of Israel. The list follows birth order. Despite Jacob's preference for Rachel, Leah's sons dominate the tribal structure — Judah will carry the royal line, Levi the priestly line.
24. Rachel bore only two sons, the fewest of any of Jacob's wives, yet her sons hold outsized narrative significance. Joseph will dominate Genesis 37-50; Benjamin will become the tribe of Israel's first king (Saul). The brevity of this entry — just two names — contrasts with the lengthy narrative devoted to Rachel's story.
25. Bilhah is identified as Rachel's shifchah ('female servant, handmaid'). Her sons Dan and Naphtali were born through the surrogate arrangement of 30:3-8. Though born to a servant, they are counted among Jacob's twelve sons without distinction in this official list.
26. 'These are the sons of Jacob who were born to him in Paddan-Aram' — the summary note is technically imprecise: Benjamin was born in Canaan, not in Paddan-Aram (v. 16-18). The statement likely refers to the preceding list as a group associated with the Paddan-Aram period, with Benjamin

included by anticipation since his mother was a wife from that era. Alternatively, the phrase may apply only to the immediately preceding sons of Zilpah, or the narrator may use 'Paddan-Aram' loosely to mean 'during Jacob's sojourn abroad and return.'

26. The complete list of twelve sons — six from Leah, two from Rachel, two from Bilhah, two from Zilpah — establishes the tribal structure of Israel. The number twelve will become constitutive of Israel's identity as a people.
27. 'Mamre, Kiriath-Arba, that is Hebron' — three names for the same location, layering historical periods: Mamre (the Amorite ally of Abraham, 14:13), Kiriath-Arba (the older Canaanite name, 'city of four' or 'city of Arba'), and Hebron (the name that endured). The site is associated with Abraham's altar (13:18) and the cave of Machpelah (ch. 23).
27. 'Where Abraham and Isaac had sojourned' (asher gar sham) — the verb gur ('to sojourn, reside as a foreigner') reminds the reader that even in the promised land, the patriarchs remained resident aliens. Jacob now joins the chain of sojourners at the ancestral home.
28. Isaac's lifespan of 180 years places him between Abraham (175 years, 25:7) and Jacob (147 years, 47:28). The declining lifespans across generations continue the pattern established after the flood. Isaac's life receives the least narrative attention of the three patriarchs — he is often a passive figure — yet he lives the longest.
29. 'Breathed his last' (vayyigva) — the verb gava describes the expiration of breath, the final exhalation. It is used for Abraham's death (25:8) and will be used for Jacob's (49:33). The threefold death formula — 'breathed his last, died, and was gathered to his people' — is reserved for the patriarchs, investing their deaths with solemn dignity.
29. 'Old and full of days' (zaqen useva yamim) — the phrase echoes Abraham's death notice (25:8: 'old and full of years'). It signifies a life completed, not cut short — a death that comes at the right time after a full measure of living.
29. 'Esau and Jacob buried him' — the two brothers, long estranged, come together to bury their father, exactly as Ishmael and Isaac had together buried Abraham (25:9). The parallel is deliberate: in each generation, the excluded son and the chosen son unite in filial duty. The order 'Esau and Jacob' (not Jacob and Esau) may reflect Esau's status as the elder, or his geographic proximity to Hebron (he is in Seir, closer than wherever Jacob was). The burial scene suggests at least functional reconciliation — the brothers can share this sacred duty even if their paths will now diverge permanently.

36

Summary: *The genealogy of Esau — that is, Edom — traces his wives, sons, and grandsons as they settle in the hill country of Seir. The chapter lists Esau's tribal chiefs, the original Horite inhabitants of Seir, and the kings who ruled Edom before any king reigned in Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This genealogy demonstrates that God's blessing on Esau was real: he becomes a nation with chiefs and kings (fulfilling 25:23 and 27:39-40). The note that Edom had kings 'before any king reigned over the sons of Israel' (v. 31) is one of the most debated chronological markers in Genesis — it presupposes the existence of Israelite monarchy. The separation of Esau from Jacob because their possessions were 'too great to dwell together' (v. 7) echoes the Abram-Lot separation (13:6), showing the same pattern of blessing producing overflow.*

Translation Friction: *The sheer density of names in this chapter challenges readability. We rendered each name according to its Hebrew form without attempting to modernize or simplify. The title alluph ('chief,' used throughout) denotes a tribal leader — from the root eleph ('thousand' or 'clan') — and we rendered it consistently as 'chief' while noting its range.*

Connections: *The Amalekites, Israel's persistent enemy (Exodus 17:8-16; 1 Samuel 15), are traced here to Eliphaz through a concubine (36:12). Edom's territory in Seir figures prominently in Numbers 20:14-21, where Israel requests passage. The list of Edomite kings (36:31-39) provides a political framework for the region Israel will interact with from the exodus onward.*

¹These are the generations of Esau — that is, Edom. ²Esau married Canaanite women: Adah, whose father was Elon the Hittite, and Oholibamah, daughter of Anah and granddaughter of Zibeon the Hivite, ³and Basemath the daughter of Ishmael, sister of Nebaioth. ⁴Adah bore Eliphaz to Esau, and Basemath bore Reuel. ⁵Oholibamah bore Jeush, Jaalam, and Korah. These are the sons of Esau who were born to him in the land of Canaan. ⁶Esau took his wives, his sons, his daughters, all the persons of his household, his livestock, all his animals, and all the property he had acquired in the land of Canaan, and went to a land away from his brother Jacob. ⁷For their possessions were too great for them to dwell together, and the

land of their sojourning could not support them because of their livestock. ⁸So Esau settled in the hill country of Seir. Esau — he is Edom. ⁹These are the generations of Esau, the father of Edom, in the hill country of Seir. ¹⁰These are the names of Esau's sons: Eliphaz the son of Adah, Esau's wife; Reuel the son of Basemath, Esau's wife. ¹¹Eliphaz's sons were Teman, Omar, Zepho, Gatam, and Kenaz. ¹²Timna was a concubine of Eliphaz, Esau's son, and she bore Amalek to Eliphaz. These are the sons of Adah, Esau's wife. ¹³Reuel's sons were Nahath, Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah — the grandsons of Esau through his wife Basemath. ¹⁴These were the sons of Oholibamah the daughter of Anah, the granddaughter of Zibeon, Esau's wife: she bore to Esau Jeush, Jaalam, and Korah. ¹⁵These are the chiefs of the sons of Esau. The sons of Eliphaz, Esau's firstborn: chief Teman, chief Omar, chief Zepho, chief Kenaz, ¹⁶chief Korah, chief Gatam, chief Amalek. These are the chiefs of Eliphaz in the land of Edom; these are the sons of Adah. ¹⁷These are the sons of Reuel, Esau's son: chief Nahath, chief Zerah, chief Shammah, chief Mizzah. These are the chiefs of Reuel in the land of Edom; these are the sons of Basemath, Esau's wife. ¹⁸These are the sons of Oholibamah, Esau's wife: chief Jeush, chief Jaalam, chief Korah. These are the chiefs from Oholibamah the daughter of Anah, Esau's wife. ¹⁹These are the sons of Esau — that is, Edom — and these are their chiefs. ²⁰These are the sons of Seir the Horite, the inhabitants of the land: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, ²¹Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. These are the chiefs of the Horites, the sons of Seir, in the land of Edom. ²²The sons of Lotan were Hori and Hemam, and Lotan's sister was Timna. ²³These are the sons of Shobal: Alvan, Manahath, Ebal, Shepho, and Onam. ²⁴These are the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. This is the Anah who found the hot springs in the wilderness while he was pasturing the donkeys of his father Zibeon. ²⁵These are the children of Anah: Dishon and Oholibamah the daughter of Anah. ²⁶These are the sons of Dishan: Hemdan, Eshban, Ithran, and Cheran. ²⁷These are the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, Zaavan, and Akan. ²⁸These are the sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran. ²⁹These are the chiefs of the Horites: chief Lotan, chief Shobal, chief Zibeon, chief Anah, ³⁰chief Dishon, chief Ezer, chief Dishan. These are the chiefs of the Horites, chief by chief, in the land of Seir. ³¹These are the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the children of Israel. ³²Bela son of Beor ruled as king in Edom; his capital city was Dinhabah. ³³Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place. ³⁴Jobab died, and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place. ³⁵Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad, who defeated Midian in the territory of Moab, reigned in his place. The name of his city was Avith. ³⁶Hadad died, and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place. ³⁷Samalah died, and Shaul from Rehoboth-on-the-River reigned in his place. ³⁸Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Achbor reigned in his place. ³⁹After Baal-Hanan son of Achbor died, Hadar succeeded him as king. His capital was Pau. His wife was Mehetabel, daughter of Matred and granddaughter of Me-Zahab. ⁴⁰These are the names of the chiefs of Esau, according to their clans, their territories, and their names: chief Timna, chief Alvah, chief Jetheth, ⁴¹chief Oholibamah, chief Elah, chief Pinon, ⁴²chief Kenaz, chief Teman, chief Mibzar, ⁴³chief Magdiel, chief Iram. These are the chiefs of Edom according to their settlements in the land of their possession. He is Esau, the father of Edom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'These are the generations' (elleh toledot) — the toledot formula structures the book of Genesis (2:4; 5:1; 6:9; 10:1; 11:10, 27; 25:12, 19; 36:1, 9; 37:2). Its use here for Esau's line grants the non-chosen brother a full genealogical record, paralleling the toledot of Ishmael (25:12-18). Genesis honors the unchosen lines with careful documentation before returning to the covenant lineage.
1. 'Esau, that is Edom' (Esav hu Edom) — the identification formula links the individual patriarch to the nation that bears his name. Edom will become Israel's persistent neighbor, rival, and sometime enemy. The equation 'Esau is Edom' will be repeated emphatically throughout this chapter (vv. 1, 8, 19, 43), as if the narrator insists the reader never forget this connection.
2. The names of Esau's wives here differ from those given in 26:34 and 28:9 (Judith daughter of Beeri the Hittite, Basemath daughter of Elon the Hittite, Mahalath daughter of Ishmael). The discrepancy is one of the most discussed difficulties in Genesis. Possible explanations include: (1) the women had multiple names; (2) different sources preserved different traditions; (3) 'daughter' (bat) can mean 'granddaughter' or 'descendant,' creating confusion across generations. The rendering follows the names as given in chapter 36, which provides the definitive genealogical account.
2. 'Oholibamah' (Oholivamah, 'tent of the high place') — a name with cultic overtones, suggesting a sacred tent or elevated worship site. The name may reflect Horite/Hivite religious traditions.
3. 'Basemath the daughter of Ishmael' — in 28:9 she is called 'Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael.' The identification 'sister of Nebaioth' anchors her within the Ishmaelite genealogy (25:13). Esau's marriage to Ishmael's daughter represents a strategic alliance between two excluded sons — Esau (passed over for Jacob) and Ishmael (passed over for Isaac). The Ishmaelite connection links Edom to the broader network of Abraham's

non-covenant descendants.

4. 'Eliphaz' — possibly meaning 'my God is fine gold.' An Eliphaz from Teman (Eliphaz's son, v. 11) appears as one of Job's friends (Job 2:11), connecting the wisdom tradition to Edomite territory.
4. 'Reuel' (Re'u'el, 'friend of God') — this name also appears as an alternate name for Moses' father-in-law Jethro (Exodus 2:18), linking Midianite and Edomite genealogies.
5. 'Born to him in the land of Canaan' — this geographic note is significant: Esau's sons were born in the promised land before Esau relocated to Seir. The detail establishes that Esau had a legitimate claim to Canaan by residence and birth, which he voluntarily relinquished (vv. 6-8). His departure from Canaan parallels Lot's departure from Abraham (13:11-12) — in both cases, the non-chosen relative moves away, leaving the land to the covenant heir.
6. 'Went to a land away from his brother Jacob' (vayyehlekh el-erets mippenei Ya'aqov achiv) — the phrase mippenei ('from the face of, away from') echoes the language of separation used for Lot and Abraham (13:11). Esau's departure is presented as voluntary and practical rather than hostile. The comprehensive list of what he takes — wives, sons, daughters, household members, livestock, animals, property — emphasizes the totality of the move. Esau leaves nothing behind in Canaan.
6. The narrator presents Esau's relocation without moral judgment. Unlike the expulsion of Hagar or the flight of Lot, Esau moves by his own decision for practical reasons. The land cannot support two wealthy herdsmen — the same dynamic that separated Abraham and Lot.
7. The language closely parallels 13:6, where the land could not support both Abraham and Lot. The repetition of this pattern — prosperity leading to separation — underscores a recurring theme in Genesis: divine blessing brings abundance, but abundance creates practical pressure for the non-covenant line to relocate. In both cases, the one who departs receives territory outside the promised land.
7. 'The land of their sojourning' (erets megureihem) — the word megurim ('sojourning, temporary residence') reinforces the patriarchal status as resident aliens. Neither Esau nor Jacob owns the land; they are both sojourners in territory belonging to others.
8. 'Esau — he is Edom' (Esav hu Edom) — the emphatic identification formula appears again (cf. v. 1). The repetition drives home the equation between the individual and the nation. Seir, the rugged mountainous region southeast of the Dead Sea, becomes Edom's permanent homeland. The identification of Esau with Edom and with Seir is fundamental to biblical geography and later prophetic literature (Obadiah, Malachi 1:2-5).
9. A second toledot heading opens a new section of the genealogy, now focused specifically on the descendants who settled in Seir. The first toledot (v. 1) covered Esau's immediate family in Canaan; this second heading introduces the expanded genealogy in their new homeland. The double toledot is unique in Genesis and reflects the chapter's comprehensive scope.
10. The genealogy traces descent through named wives, a pattern that elevates the mothers' identity within the record. Each wife's contribution to the lineage is carefully documented — a practice consistent with the broader Genesis attention to maternal lines (Sarah, Rebekah, Leah, Rachel).
11. 'Teman' — a name meaning 'south' or 'right hand.' Teman became a significant Edomite region known for wisdom (Jeremiah 49:7; Obadiah 9). Eliphaz the Temanite in the book of Job (Job 2:11) is traditionally associated with this lineage, linking Edomite wisdom to this genealogy.
11. 'Kenaz' — the ancestor of the Kenizzites, who later became associated with Israel. Caleb is called a 'Kenizzite' (Numbers 32:12; Joshua 14:6, 14), and Othniel son of Kenaz was Israel's first judge (Judges 3:9). This suggests absorption of some Edomite clans into Israel.
12. 'Amalek' — the ancestor of the Amalekites, who will become Israel's archetypal enemy. The Amalekites attacked Israel at Rephidim immediately after the Exodus (Exodus 17:8-16), prompting the declaration of perpetual war: 'The LORD will have war with Amalek from generation to generation.' Saul's failure to destroy Amalek cost him his kingship (1 Samuel 15). That Amalek descends from Esau through a concubine connects Israel's most persistent enemy to the patriarchal family itself.
12. 'Timna was a concubine' — Timna's lower status as concubine (pilegish) rather than wife may explain Amalek's marginal position within Esau's line. The Talmud (Sanhedrin 99b) offers a remarkable tradition: Timna wanted to convert and join the patriarchal family but was rejected, so she became Eliphaz's concubine, and her descendant Amalek punished Israel for the rejection.
13. 'Zerah' — a name meaning 'rising, dawning' (from zarach, 'to rise, shine'). The name appears elsewhere in Israelite genealogies (the Zerahites of Judah, Numbers 26:20), suggesting some overlap or parallel naming between Edomite and Israelite clans.
14. Oholibamah's sons are listed again (cf. v. 5), now in the context of the Seir genealogy. The repetition serves the structure of the chapter, which moves from family in Canaan (vv. 1-8) to expanded genealogy in Seir (vv. 9-14). The term 'daughter' (bat) for Oholibamah's relationship to Zibeon likely means 'granddaughter,' since Anah is Zibeon's son (v. 24).
15. 'Chiefs' (allufim) — the Hebrew aluf (plural allufim) denotes a clan leader or chieftain. The KJV renders this as 'duke,' following the Vulgate's dux. The term is distinctive to Edomite political organization in Genesis 36 and appears to describe tribal leaders ruling without centralized monarchy — at least until the king-list of vv. 31-39. The rendering 'chief' captures the tribal leadership role more accurately than the feudal connotations of 'duke.'
16. The inclusion of Amalek among the chiefs of Eliphaz is notable: Amalek, born to a concubine (v. 12), nevertheless attains chieftain status. The list traces both legitimate and concubine-born sons as chiefs, suggesting that in Edomite society, a concubine's son could achieve full political standing.
17. Reuel's four sons each become chiefs, giving Basemath's line four clan-chieftainships in Edom. The systematic structure — sons listed, then titled as chiefs — reveals an organized tribal society with clear lines of authority traced through the founding wives.

18. Oholibamah's three sons all become chiefs, completing the roster of Esau's chieftains. Between his three wives, Esau produces chiefs who govern the land of Edom — a political structure that precedes and parallels the twelve-tribe structure of Israel.
19. The summary formula repeats the identification 'he is Edom' for the third time (cf. vv. 1, 8). This verse closes the section on Esau's direct descendants and their chieftainships, transitioning to the pre-existing inhabitants of Seir in the next section.
20. 'Seir the Horite' (Se'ir haChori) — the Horites (Chorim) were the pre-Edomite inhabitants of the region. The name Chori may derive from chor ('cave'), suggesting cave-dwellers, or from Hurrian, an ethnic designation for the Hurrian people known from ancient Near Eastern texts. Deuteronomy 2:12 states that the descendants of Esau dispossessed the Horites, just as Israel would later dispossess the Canaanites. The inclusion of the Horite genealogy shows the population that Esau's descendants absorbed or displaced.
21. Seven Horite sons of Seir are listed (vv. 20-21), each designated a 'chief' (aluf). The Horite clan structure mirrors the Edomite structure — both peoples organize around chieftains rather than kings. That Horite chiefs are recorded alongside Edomite chiefs suggests a period of coexistence or gradual absorption before the Edomite dominance described in Deuteronomy 2:12.
22. 'Lotan's sister was Timna' — this Timna is likely the same concubine of Eliphaz mentioned in v. 12 who bore Amalek. If so, the Horite-Edomite connection runs through intermarriage: a Horite woman becomes concubine to Esau's firstborn son. The genealogical note explains how Amalek, though of Edomite patrilineal descent, also carries Horite blood.
23. Shobal's five sons expand the Horite genealogy. Some of these names appear as place names in later biblical geography (Manahath in Judah, 1 Chronicles 8:6), suggesting that Horite clans were absorbed into Israelite territory as well as Edomite.
24. 'Found the hot springs' (matsa et-hayyemim) — the word yemim is one of the most debated terms in Genesis. The KJV renders 'mules,' following the Vulgate (mulos), based on a possible connection to a rare word for hybrid animals. However, most modern scholars and ancient versions (including some Targumim and the Septuagint's reading of hydōr, 'water') understand yemim as 'hot springs' — warm mineral springs in the desert. The Seir region does contain thermal springs. The rendering follows the 'hot springs' interpretation as more geographically plausible and linguistically defensible.
24. The detail about Anah's discovery while pasturing donkeys suggests that this was a notable event preserved in local tradition — finding water in the wilderness would have been significant for a pastoral people.
25. Oholibamah is identified here as Anah's daughter, confirming her as the same woman who became Esau's wife (v. 2). Through this marriage, Esau allied himself with the indigenous Horite population of Seir — a union that facilitated his settlement in the region.
26. The Horite genealogy continues with systematic thoroughness. The parallel account in 1 Chronicles 1:41 reads 'Hamran' instead of 'Hemdan,' a minor textual variation common in genealogical lists transmitted across centuries.
27. 'Akan' — called 'Jaakan' in 1 Chronicles 1:42. The 'Bene-Jaakan' (sons of Jaakan) appear as a wilderness station in Israel's journeys (Deuteronomy 10:6; Numbers 33:31-32), placing this Horite clan name on the map of the Exodus itinerary.
28. 'Uz' (Uts) — the same name as the land where Job lived (Job 1:1: 'the land of Uz'). Whether this Horite Uz is connected to Job's homeland is debated, but the association reinforces the link between the Seir/Edom region and the wisdom tradition represented in the book of Job.
29. The Horite chiefs are now listed formally by title, paralleling the Edomite chiefs of vv. 15-19. The parallel structure implies political parity between the two populations during the period of coexistence, before Edomite dominance.
30. 'Chief by chief' (le'allufeiheim) — the phrase emphasizes the enumeration of each chief individually, cataloging the complete political structure of Horite Seir. The concluding formula closes the Horite genealogy and transitions to the Edomite king-list.
31. 'Before any king reigned over the children of Israel' (lifnei melokh-melekh livnei Yisra'el) — this is one of the most discussed phrases in Genesis. It presupposes knowledge of the Israelite monarchy, which did not begin until Saul (c. 1020 BC). Source-critical scholars view this as evidence of late editorial composition or insertion. Traditional interpreters note that Genesis 17:6 and 35:11 already promised that kings would come from the patriarchs, so the narrator could anticipate monarchy without having witnessed it. Others point to Deuteronomy 17:14-15, where Moses legislates for a future king. Regardless of when the note was written, its literary function is to establish Edom as politically precocious — organized under kings before Israel — which adds irony to the oracle of 25:23: 'the older shall serve the younger.'
31. The king-list that follows (vv. 32-39) is notable for the absence of dynastic succession: no king is succeeded by his son. Each new king comes from a different city and family, suggesting an elective or charismatic model of kingship rather than hereditary monarchy.
32. 'Bela the son of Beor' — the name 'Beor' is identical to the father of Balaam (Numbers 22:5), prompting some ancient interpreters to identify this Edomite king with Balaam himself or his relative. The connection is uncertain but intriguing — both Edom and Moab (Balaam's employer) are Transjordanian neighbors of Israel.
32. Each king in the list is identified by his father's name and his capital city, but never by any relationship to the preceding king. This non-dynastic pattern is unlike the later Israelite or Judahite monarchies and resembles the 'judge' model of charismatic, non-hereditary leadership.
33. 'Jobab' — some ancient traditions (LXX appendix to Job) identify Jobab with Job, but this is uncertain. 'Bozrah' (Botsrah) was a major Edomite city, later the subject of prophetic judgment (Isaiah 34:6; 63:1; Jeremiah 49:13, 22; Amos 1:12). The 'died and reigned in his place' formula repeats through vv. 33-39, creating a rhythmic chronicle of royal succession.

34. 'The land of the Temanites' (erets haTeimani) — Teman, a region in Edom named after Esau's grandson (v. 11), was renowned for its wisdom (Jeremiah 49:7). Husham's origin from Temanite territory places him within the heartland of Edomite culture.
35. 'Who defeated Midian in the territory of Moab' (hammakkeh et-Midyan bisdeh Mo'av) — this is the only entry in the king-list that includes a military exploit. Hadad is remembered for a specific victory: defeating Midianite forces in Moabite territory. This suggests a period when Edom projected military power across the Transjordanian region. The detail also reveals that Edom, Midian, and Moab — all related peoples in the biblical genealogy — engaged in inter-regional conflict.
35. 'Hadad' — a theophoric name incorporating the storm god Hadad, widely worshipped across the ancient Near East. The name appears again in v. 39 and in later Edomite history (1 Kings 11:14-22). Its use suggests Edomite participation in broader Semitic religious culture.
36. 'Masrekah' — possibly related to soreq ('choice vine'), suggesting a vineyard region. The location has not been securely identified but may lie in the northern Edomite territory.
37. 'Shaul' (Sha'ul) — the same name as Israel's first king (Saul). The name means 'asked for, requested.' Its appearance in the Edomite king-list is coincidental but striking in light of v. 31's note about kings reigning in Edom before Israel had a king.
37. 'Rehoboth-on-the-River' (Rechovot haNahar) — 'Rehoboth' means 'wide places, open spaces' (cf. 26:22). The 'River' (nahar) likely refers to the Euphrates in most biblical usage, but here it may indicate a significant wadi in Edomite territory.
38. 'Baal-Hanan' (Ba'al Chanan, 'Baal is gracious') — a theophoric name incorporating the Canaanite deity Baal. The name testifies to the religious environment of Edom, where Baal worship was present alongside other traditions. The name's structure parallels Israelite theophoric names using YHWH (e.g., Yochanan, 'YHWH is gracious').
39. 'Hadar' — in 1 Chronicles 1:50, the name is given as 'Hadad,' which may be the original form (a common Edomite royal name). The absence of the death formula for Hadar suggests he may have been the reigning king at the time the list was compiled.
39. 'Mehetabel the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Me-Zahab' — uniquely among the Edomite kings, Hadar's wife is named and her maternal lineage traced through two generations. Me-Zahab ('waters of gold') is an evocative name that may indicate a region known for gold-bearing streams. The inclusion of the queen's genealogy may indicate her political importance or a matrilineal element in this particular succession.
40. 'According to their clans, their territories, and their names' (lemishpechotam limqomotam bishemotam) — this formula organizes the final chief-list by three categories: family grouping, geographic location, and personal name. It indicates that by this point, the chieftainships were associated with specific territories rather than just personal authority.
40. This final list of chiefs (vv. 40-43) differs from the earlier list (vv. 15-19). The earlier list named chiefs who were Esau's grandsons; this list appears to represent a later period when the chieftainships had evolved into territorial designations. Some names here (Timna, Kenaz, Teman) appear both as personal names and as regional names.
41. 'Pinon' — identified with the copper-mining site of Punon in the Arabah valley (modern Feinan, Jordan), one of the largest ancient copper production centers in the Near East. Numbers 33:42-43 lists Punon as an Israelite wilderness station. The association of an Edomite chieftainship with a mining center reflects Edom's significant role in ancient metallurgy.
42. 'Mibzar' — a name meaning 'fortification' or 'fortress,' possibly referring to the fortified city of Bozrah or another stronghold in Edom. The name reflects the rugged, defensible terrain of the Seir mountains.
43. 'The land of their possession' (erets achuzzatam) — the term achuzzah ('possession, holding') is the same legal term used for the patriarchal land promises (17:8; 23:4, 9, 20; 48:4). Edom possesses its land just as Israel will possess Canaan. The parallel vocabulary suggests that both nations have divinely appointed territories — Edom in Seir, Israel in Canaan (cf. Deuteronomy 2:5: 'I have given Mount Seir to Esau as a possession').
43. 'He is Esau, the father of Edom' (hu Esav avi Edom) — the chapter's closing formula brings the identification full circle. The opening ('these are the generations of Esau, that is Edom,' v. 1) and the closing ('he is Esau, the father of Edom') create an inclusio that frames the entire genealogy. Esau's story is now complete in Genesis: he has a land, a people, chiefs, and kings. The narrative can now turn entirely to Jacob's family and the story of Joseph (37:2).

37

Summary: *The 'generations of Jacob' focus on Joseph: the favored son, the bearer of a special robe, the dreamer of provocative dreams. His brothers' hatred intensifies until they plot to kill him. Reuben intervenes, and Judah proposes selling him. Joseph is sold to Ishmaelite traders for twenty pieces of silver and taken to Egypt. Jacob is shown the bloodied robe and mourns inconsolably.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The ketonet passim ('ornamented robe,' v. 3) is the same term used for the royal garment of David's daughter Tamar (2 Samuel 13:18-19) — it marks not just favoritism but distinction. Joseph's two dreams escalate from agricultural to cosmic imagery: sheaves bow, then sun, moon, and stars bow. The brothers' sarcastic title ba'al hachalomot ('that master of dreams,' v. 19) is ironically prophetic — Joseph will indeed master dreams, and the brothers will bow. The blood-dipped robe sent to Jacob inverts the goat skins Jacob used to deceive Isaac (ch. 27): the deceiver is now deceived by his own sons.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew passim in ketonet passim (v. 3) is obscure — it may refer to length (reaching to palms and soles) or ornamentation (decorative strips). We rendered it as 'ornamented' and noted the uncertainty. The interplay between 'Ishmaelites' and 'Midianites' (vv. 25-28) has generated extensive source-critical discussion; the Hebrew text uses both terms, and we followed it without harmonizing. Joseph's hinni (here I am,' v. 13) echoes Abraham's response (22:1) — an obedient son sent by his father toward sacrifice.*

Connections: *The twenty pieces of silver (37:28) anticipate the thirty pieces for which Jesus was betrayed (Matthew 26:15). Jacob's refusal to be comforted (37:35) and his reference to Sheol introduce the underworld as a destination of grief. The Ishmaelite caravan carrying spices to Egypt (37:25) connects the Abraham and Joseph narratives through the very traders descended from Abraham's other son.*

¹Jacob settled in the land of his father's sojournings, in the land of Canaan. ²These are the generations of Jacob. Joseph, being seventeen years old, was shepherding the flock with his brothers. He was a youth among the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah, his father's wives, and Joseph brought their bad report to their father. ³Now Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons, for he was the son of his old age, and he made him an ornamented robe. ⁴When his brothers saw that their father loved him more than all his brothers, they hated him and could not speak a peaceful word to him. ⁵Joseph dreamed a dream and told it to his brothers, and they hated him even more. ⁶He said to them, "Please listen to this dream that I have dreamed: ⁷Behold, we were binding sheaves in the field, and behold, my sheaf arose and stood upright, and behold, your sheaves gathered around it and bowed down to my sheaf." ⁸His brothers said to him, "Will you indeed reign over us? Will you indeed rule over us?" And they hated him even more because of his dreams and because of his words. ⁹He dreamed yet another dream and told it to his brothers, saying, "Behold, I have dreamed another dream: the sun and the moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me." ¹⁰He told it to his father and to his brothers, and his father rebuked him and said to him, "What is this dream that you have dreamed? Shall I and your mother and your brothers indeed come to bow down to you to the ground?" ¹¹His brothers were jealous of him, but his father kept the matter in mind. ¹²His brothers went to pasture their father's flock at Shechem. ¹³Israel said to Joseph, "Are not your brothers pasturing the flock at Shechem? Come, I will send you to them." He said to him, "Here I am." ¹⁴He said to him, "Go now, see to the welfare of your brothers and the welfare of the flock, and bring me back word." So he sent him from the Valley of Hebron, and he came to Shechem. ¹⁵A man found him — he was wandering in the field — and the man asked him, "What are you seeking?" ¹⁶He said, "I am seeking my brothers. Please tell me where they are pasturing." ¹⁷The man said, "They have moved on from here, for I heard them say, 'Let us go to Dothan.'" So Joseph went after his brothers and found them at Dothan. ¹⁸They saw him from a distance, and before he drew near to them, they conspired against him to kill him. ¹⁹They said to one another, "Look, here comes that master of dreams!" ²⁰Now then, come, let us kill him and throw him into one of the pits, and we will say, 'A fierce animal devoured him.' Then we will see what becomes of his dreams!" ²¹Reuben heard this and rescued him from their hands, saying, "Let us not strike his life." ²²Reuben said to them, "Do not shed blood. Throw him into this pit in the wilderness, but do not lay a hand on him" —

so that he might rescue him from their hands and restore him to his father. ²³When Joseph came to his brothers, they stripped Joseph of his robe — the ornamented robe that was on him — ²⁴They seized him and threw him into the pit. The pit was empty — there was no water in it. ²⁵They sat down to eat a meal. They lifted up their eyes and looked, and behold, a caravan of Ishmaelites was coming from Gilead, with their camels bearing gum, balm, and myrrh, going down to carry these to Egypt. ²⁶Judah said to his brothers, "What profit is it if we kill our brother and cover up his blood? ²⁷Come, let us sell him to the Ishmaelites, and let our hand not be upon him, for he is our brother, our own flesh." And his brothers agreed. ²⁸Midianite traders passed by, and they drew Joseph up and lifted him out of the pit. They sold Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty pieces of silver, and they brought Joseph to Egypt. ²⁹Reuben returned to the pit, and behold, Joseph was not in the pit! He tore his garments. ³⁰He returned to his brothers and said, "The boy is gone! And I — where shall I go?" ³¹They took Joseph's robe, slaughtered a male goat, and dipped the robe in the blood. ³²They sent the ornamented robe and brought it to their father and said, "We found this. Please examine it — is it your son's robe or not?" ³³He recognized it and said, "My son's robe! A fierce animal has devoured him! Joseph has surely been torn to pieces!" ³⁴Jacob tore his garments, put sackcloth on his waist, and mourned for his son many days. ³⁵All his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him, but he refused to be comforted. He said, "Indeed, I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son." And his father wept for him. ³⁶Meanwhile, the Medanites sold him in Egypt to Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the guard.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Settled' (vayyeshev) — the verb yashav ('to dwell, settle') opens the Joseph narrative with a note of permanence. Jacob has returned from his long exile and now inhabits the promised land. Yet the verb carries irony: Jacob 'settles,' but his family is about to be torn apart and eventually uprooted to Egypt.
1. 'The land of his father's sojournings' (erets megurei aviv) — megurim ('sojournings') derives from gur ('to sojourn as an alien'). The land is simultaneously home and foreign territory. Abraham and Isaac dwelt there as resident aliens (gerim), not owners. Jacob now inhabits the same paradox: he is settled in a land that is promised but not yet possessed.
2. 'These are the generations of Jacob' (elleh toledot Ya'aqov) — the final toledot formula in Genesis. Strikingly, though it says 'generations of Jacob,' the narrative immediately focuses on Joseph. The toledot of Jacob is the story of Joseph — the favored son through whom the family's destiny unfolds. This literary device signals that what follows is not merely Joseph's biography but the culmination of Jacob's entire family saga.
2. 'Bad report' (dibbatam ra'ah) — dibbah means a report, usually with negative connotations (slander, defamation, or simply a report of wrongdoing). Whether Joseph was tattling or faithfully reporting genuine misconduct is left deliberately ambiguous. The text neither condemns nor commends Joseph's action, but it establishes him as set apart from his brothers — aligned with his father rather than his peers.
2. 'A youth among the sons of Bilhah and the sons of Zilpah' — Joseph is specifically placed with the sons of the concubine-wives, the lower-status brothers. This detail may explain why Joseph had opportunity to observe and report their behavior, and may also suggest his own intermediate social position despite being Rachel's son.
3. 'Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons' (Yisra'el ahav et-Yosef mikkol-banav) — the narrator uses 'Israel' rather than 'Jacob,' emphasizing the patriarch's covenant identity. The phrase 'loved more than all' (ahav... mikkol) echoes the pattern of preference that has plagued the family for generations: Isaac loved Esau, Rebekah loved Jacob (25:28), Jacob loved Rachel over Leah (29:30). Parental favoritism is the recurring wound of the patriarchal family.
3. 'Son of his old age' (ben-zequnim) — Benjamin was actually younger, so this phrase may mean 'the son born in his mature years' or may carry the nuance of 'the son of his wisdom,' a child who is the comfort of aging. Some suggest it means the son who attends him in old age.
3. 'Ornamented robe' (ketonet passim) — the traditional rendering 'coat of many colors' derives from the LXX (chitōn poikilon). The Hebrew passim is obscure; it may relate to pas ('palm, sole'), suggesting a garment reaching to the palms and soles (a long-sleeved, full-length robe), or to decorative strips or patches. The same term describes the royal garment of Tamar, David's daughter (2 Sam 13:18-19), indicating it was a garment of distinction, possibly aristocratic or even royal. The rendering 'ornamented robe' captures the sense of an exceptional, status-marking garment without over-specifying.
4. 'They hated him' (vayyisne'u oto) — the verb sane' ('to hate') is strong and unqualified. The brothers' hatred is presented as a direct consequence of the father's favoritism. The text distributes culpability: Jacob's preferential love creates the conditions for the brothers' destructive hatred.
4. 'Could not speak peaceably to him' (velo yakhelu dabbero leshalom) — literally 'could not speak to him for peace (shalom).' The inability to speak shalom is the collapse of familial relationship. Shalom encompasses wholeness, well-being, and harmonious relationship. Its absence means communication itself has broken down. This detail foreshadows the bitter irony of v. 14, where Jacob sends Joseph to inquire about the shalom of his brothers — brothers who have no shalom to give.

5. 'Dreamed a dream' (vayyachalom... chalom) — the cognate accusative construction (dreaming a dream) intensifies the experience. Dreams in Genesis are vehicles of divine communication (20:3; 28:12; 31:10-11), and in the Joseph narrative they become the primary mode of revelation. Joseph is introduced here as a dreamer — a role that will define his destiny.
5. 'They hated him even more' (vayyosifu od seno oto) — the verb yasaf ('to add, do again') with seno ('to hate') indicates escalation. Each new provocation compounds the brothers' animosity. The narrative builds tension incrementally: favoritism (v. 3) hatred (v. 4) increased hatred (v. 5) still more hatred (v. 8).
6. 'Please listen' (shim'u-na) — the particle na ('please, I pray') softens the imperative, yet the very act of summoning his brothers to hear his dream of supremacy reveals either naivety or provocation. Joseph seems genuinely eager to share his vision without calculating its effect.
7. 'Behold... behold... behold' (vehinneh... vehinneh... vehinneh) — three instances of hinneh ('behold') create vivid, scene-by-scene narration, as if Joseph is reliving the dream. Each hinneh introduces a new movement: the binding, the rising, the bowing. The effect is cinematic.
7. 'My sheaf arose and stood upright' (qamah alummata vegam-nitsavah) — two verbs of elevation: qum ('to arise') and natsav ('to stand firm, be stationed'). Joseph's sheaf doesn't merely rise — it stands established, planted with authority. The double verb intensifies the imagery of dominion.
7. 'Your sheaves gathered around and bowed down' (tessubeynah alumoteikhem vatishtachaveynah) — the verb chavah in the hishtaphel ('to bow down, prostrate oneself') is the language of homage and worship. The brothers' sheaves encircle and prostrate before Joseph's. The agricultural imagery is not accidental — it anticipates the literal grain that will bring the brothers to bow before Joseph in Egypt (42:6).
8. 'Will you indeed reign... will you indeed rule' (hamalokh timlokh... im-mashol timshol) — two infinitive absolute constructions (malokh timlokh, mashol timshol) express incredulous emphasis. The brothers use two distinct verbs: malakh ('to reign as king') and mashal ('to rule, govern'). Their sarcasm inadvertently becomes prophecy — Joseph will indeed exercise both royal authority and governing power in Egypt.
8. 'Because of his dreams and because of his words' (al-chalomotav ve'al-devarav) — the brothers' hatred has a double source: the content of the dreams (which implies their subjugation) and Joseph's words (his act of telling, which implies either arrogance or insensitivity). Dreams and words — revelation and proclamation — together provoke the crisis.
9. 'The sun and the moon and eleven stars' (hashemesh vehayareach ve'achad asar kokhavim) — the dream escalates from agricultural imagery to cosmic. Joseph's first dream depicted fraternal dominance; this one extends to the entire family, including the parents. Sun = father (Jacob), moon = mother (here problematic, since Rachel is dead by this point — see 35:19), eleven stars = eleven brothers. The cosmic scale of the imagery anticipates Joseph's role as the savior of nations.
9. 'Were bowing down to me' (mishtachavim li) — the same root (ch-v-h, hishtaphel) as in the first dream, but now the heavenly bodies themselves perform the obeisance. The dream's scope has expanded from earth to heaven.
10. 'His father rebuked him' (vayyig'ar-bo aviv) — ga'ar means to rebuke sharply, to scold. Even the favoring father finds this dream too much. Yet the rebuke is measured — it is a question, not a condemnation. Jacob challenges the dream's plausibility rather than denouncing Joseph's character.
10. 'Your mother' (immekha) — Rachel has already died (35:19). Jacob may be speaking loosely, referring to Leah or Bilhah (Rachel's maidservant who may have served as surrogate mother), or the dream's symbolism may not require literal correspondence. The reference creates a tension the text does not resolve.
11. 'Were jealous' (vayeqan'u) — the verb qana' means to be jealous, zealous, or envious. It shifts the brothers' response from mere hatred to envy — they not only despise Joseph but covet his favored position and divine attention. Jealousy implies that the brothers recognize the dreams may be genuine, which makes them all the more threatening.
11. 'His father kept the matter in mind' (ve'aviv shamar et-haddavar) — shamar ('to keep, guard, watch over') suggests Jacob stored the dream away for contemplation. He rebuked publicly but pondered privately. The phrase echoes Luke 2:19, 51 ('Mary kept all these things in her heart'), though the parallel may be coincidental. Jacob recognizes something significant in Joseph's dreams even as he resists their implications.
12. 'Shechem' — the brothers return to the very place where Simeon and Levi perpetrated the massacre (ch. 34). The location carries ominous overtones. Shechem is dangerous territory for Jacob's family, both because of what they did there and because of how they might be perceived by the surrounding peoples. That the brothers go there to pasture flocks suggests either boldness or indifference to the danger.
13. 'Here I am' (hinnehi) — Joseph's response echoes the great responses of obedience in Genesis: Abraham's hinnehi before the binding of Isaac (22:1), and later Moses at the burning bush (Exod 3:4). The word signals readiness and willing submission. Joseph goes willingly, unaware that he is walking toward betrayal. The innocent obedience of the son sent by the father to his brothers carries deep typological resonance.
13. 'I will send you' (ve'eshalachakha) — the verb shalach ('to send') establishes Joseph as a sent one. The irony is layered: Jacob sends Joseph to check on his brothers' welfare, but this sending will result in Joseph's own suffering and ultimately in the salvation of the entire family.
14. 'See to the welfare' (re'eh et-shelom) — literally 'see the shalom of your brothers.' Jacob sends Joseph to find the very thing the brothers cannot offer him (v. 4 — they 'could not speak shalom to him'). The quest for shalom among brothers who have no shalom for Joseph is one of the chapter's central ironies.
14. 'From the Valley of Hebron' (me'emeq Chevron) — Hebron sits on a ridge; there is no literal valley of Hebron. The phrase may refer to the broader lowland region near Hebron, or it may function as a symbolic marker: Joseph descends from the place where Abraham and Sarah are buried, the seat of the patriarchal promise, into a journey that will lead far from the promised land.

14. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'welfare' rather than default 'peace' because Jacob sends Joseph to check on his brothers' well-being (shelom) — a health/status inquiry, not a state of peace.
15. 'A man found him' (vayyimtsa'ehu ish) — the unnamed man is one of Genesis's mysterious figures. Some rabbinic interpreters identify him as an angel (Gabriel, according to Rashi), since he appears providentially to redirect Joseph toward his destiny. The text leaves his identity unspecified, allowing the reader to sense divine guidance operating through an ordinary encounter.
15. 'Wandering in the field' (to'eh basadeh) — the participle to'eh ('wandering, going astray') suggests Joseph is lost. The image of the obedient son, sent by his father, now wandering without direction, is poignant. He needs guidance to reach his brothers — the very brothers who will betray him.
16. 'I am seeking my brothers' (et-achai anokhi mevaqesh) — Joseph's statement is both simple and laden with meaning. He seeks his brothers not knowing they seek his destruction. The phrase resonates beyond the immediate narrative: the search for fraternal reconciliation will drive the entire Joseph story.
17. 'Dothan' (Dotan) — a site about 13 miles north of Shechem, identified with modern Tell Dothan. It lay on a major trade route connecting the Jezreel Valley with the coastal road to Egypt. This geographical detail is crucial: the caravan route through Dothan is what makes the sale of Joseph to traveling merchants possible. Providence positions Joseph precisely where international commerce passes.
18. 'They conspired against him' (vayyitnakkelu oto) — the verb nakhal in the hitpa'el means to act with cunning, to scheme, to deal craftily. The same root appears in Numbers 25:18 for treacherous dealing. The brothers' plot is premeditated — they see Joseph approaching and begin scheming before he arrives. The distance between them (merachok, 'from afar') gives them time to convert hatred into action.
18. 'To kill him' (lahamito) — the infinitive lahamit ('to cause to die, to kill') states the brothers' intent with stark clarity. The beloved son, sent by his father seeking shalom, is marked for death before he can even speak.
19. 'That master of dreams' (ba'al hachalomot hallazeh) — literally 'the owner/master of the dreams, this one.' Ba'al means 'lord, master, owner, possessor.' The title drips with sarcasm: they mock Joseph as the 'dream-lord,' the one who presumes sovereignty through his visions. The demonstrative hallazeh ('this one, that one') adds contempt — they will not even use his name. Yet ironically, ba'al hachalomot is an accurate title: Joseph does master dreams, both his own and others' (chs. 40-41), and this mastery will elevate him to a position where their very lives depend on him.
20. 'Let us kill him' (nahargehu) — the first-person plural cohortative reveals a collective decision. Murder is proposed as a group action — shared guilt distributes responsibility and makes it easier for each individual to participate.
20. 'A fierce animal devoured him' (chayyah ra'ah akhalathu) — the planned lie becomes Jacob's conclusion in v. 33. The brothers prepare their father's deception in advance. The phrase chayyah ra'ah ('an evil/fierce beast') will echo with bitter irony: the true 'evil beasts' are the brothers themselves.
20. 'We will see what becomes of his dreams' (venir'eh mah-yihyu chalomotav) — the brothers believe they can defeat divine revelation by eliminating the dreamer. This is the fundamental error: the dream is from God, and killing Joseph cannot annul God's purposes. Their very attempt to prevent the dreams' fulfillment sets in motion the chain of events that will fulfill them.
21. 'Reuben heard and rescued him' (vayyishma Reuven vayyatsilehu miyyadam) — Reuben, the firstborn who lost his birthright through the Bilhah incident (35:22), here acts to protect Joseph. His intervention may stem from firstborn responsibility, genuine compassion, or a desire to restore himself in his father's eyes. The verb hitsil ('to rescue, deliver') is strong — Reuben's action is decisive, not merely passive objection.
21. 'Let us not strike his life' (lo nakkenu nafesh) — literally 'let us not strike him — a soul/life.' The word nefesh ('soul, life, being') personalizes Joseph: he is not merely a target but a living being. Reuben's language appeals to the brothers' recognition of Joseph's humanity.
22. 'Do not shed blood' (al-tishpekhu-dam) — Reuben frames his proposal in terms of blood prohibition. Bloodshed (shephikhut damim) carries the weight of the Noahic covenant: 'Whoever sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed' (9:6). By appealing to this fundamental prohibition, Reuben gives the brothers a way to act against Joseph without crossing the ultimate boundary.
22. 'That he might rescue him... and restore him to his father' — the narrator reveals Reuben's private intention. His plan is to return later and pull Joseph from the pit. The strategy fails because Reuben is absent when the Midianite/Ishmaelite caravan arrives (v. 29). Good intentions without timely action prove insufficient.
23. 'They stripped Joseph of his robe' (vayyaphshitu et-Yosef et-kuttonto) — the first act of violence is to remove the symbol of his father's favor. Stripping the ketonet passim is an act of humiliation and de-identification: they remove his status before removing his freedom. The detailed repetition — 'his robe, the ornamented robe that was on him' — emphasizes the garment's significance. Clothing in Genesis regularly marks identity, status, and deception (Esau's garments in ch. 27, Tamar's veil in ch. 38).
23. The stripping of the robe anticipates the blood-dipped garment sent to Jacob (v. 31-32). The robe that signified love becomes the instrument of deception.
24. 'The pit was empty — there was no water in it' (vehabor req ein bo mayim) — the narrator's parenthetical detail creates a vivid image of desolation. A dry cistern in the wilderness is a place of death — without water, survival is measured in days. The rabbis noted that the specification 'no water' implies something else may have been in it (snakes, scorpions — Rashi). Whether or not one follows that reading, the emptiness of the pit mirrors the emptiness of the brothers' cruelty.

24. 'Pit' (bor) — a cistern hewn in rock for water storage. When empty, these cisterns served as makeshift prisons (Jer 38:6). The bor becomes a liminal space — between life and death, between freedom and slavery, between the promised land and Egypt. Joseph's descent into the pit is the first of several descents (to Egypt, to prison) before his ultimate ascent.
25. 'They sat down to eat a meal' (vayyeshvu le'ekhol-lechem) — the shocking detail: while Joseph languishes in the pit, his brothers eat. Their callousness is expressed not through cruelty but through normalcy. They have cast their brother into a death-pit and now sit for a casual meal. Amos 6:6 echoes this moral indifference: those 'who are not grieved over the ruin of Joseph.'
25. 'A caravan of Ishmaelites' (orchat Yishme'elim) — orchat means a traveling company, a caravan. The Ishmaelites are descendants of Abraham through Hagar (ch. 16, 25:12-18), making them Joseph's distant kinsmen. The irony deepens: Abraham's rejected son's descendants become the means of transporting Jacob's rejected son to Egypt.
25. 'Gum, balm, and myrrh' (nekh'o't utsri valot) — luxury trade goods. Nekho't is likely tragacanth gum; tsri is balm (the famous 'balm of Gilead,' Jer 8:22); lot is probably labdanum or myrrh. These aromatic goods were highly valued in Egypt for embalming and medicine. The caravan is heading to Egypt — precisely where Joseph's destiny lies.
26. 'What profit' (mah-betsa) — Judah's intervention is pragmatic rather than moral. The word betsa means 'gain, profit, unjust gain.' He does not appeal to conscience or kinship duty but to self-interest: there is nothing to gain from murder. This is morally ambiguous — Judah prevents fratricide but replaces it with the commodification of his brother. His character arc from this compromised beginning to his self-sacrificial speech in 44:18-34 is one of the great transformations in Scripture.
26. 'Cover up his blood' (vekhissinu et-damo) — an allusion to the belief that blood cries out from the ground (4:10, Abel's blood). Covering blood is an attempt to silence the witness of murder. Judah acknowledges that killing Joseph would require concealment — a tacit admission that the act would be unjust.
27. 'He is our brother, our own flesh' (ki-achinu vesarenu hu) — Judah invokes kinship: 'brother' (ach) and 'flesh' (basar). The argument is that fraternal bonds preclude murder — but apparently not enslavement. The brothers' moral calculus is deeply compromised: they will not kill their brother, but they will sell him into lifelong bondage.
27. 'His brothers agreed' (vayyishme'u echav) — literally 'his brothers listened/heard.' The verb shama' can mean both 'to hear' and 'to obey.' Judah's voice carries authority among the brothers, foreshadowing his eventual leadership role in the family and the tribe that will bear his name.
28. 'Midianite traders' (anashim Midyanim socharim) — the relationship between Ishmaelites and Midianites in this chapter is a longstanding interpretive question. In v. 25, the caravan is Ishmaelite; here, Midianite traders appear. In 39:1, Potiphar buys Joseph from the Ishmaelites; in Judges 8:24, Ishmaelites and Midianites are explicitly connected. Possible explanations: (1) the terms were used interchangeably for nomadic traders; (2) the Midianites pulled Joseph from the pit and sold him to the Ishmaelites; (3) different narrative strands preserve different traditions. The rendering follows the text as given without harmonizing.
28. 'Twenty pieces of silver' (esrim kasef) — the price of a young male slave in the early second millennium BCE, consistent with ancient Near Eastern slave prices documented in texts from Mari and other sites. Later, the price rose to thirty pieces of silver (Exod 21:32, the price of a slave gored by an ox; Matt 26:15, the price of Judas's betrayal of Jesus). The specific amount anchors the narrative in economic reality while resonating with later biblical echoes.
28. 'They brought Joseph to Egypt' (vayyavi'u et-Yosef Mitsraymah) — the pivotal moment of the entire patriarchal narrative. Joseph's descent to Egypt sets in motion the events that will lead to Israel's sojourn, slavery, and eventual exodus. What the brothers intend as permanent disposal becomes God's means of preservation (50:20).
29. 'Reuben returned to the pit' — Reuben's absence during the sale is unexplained. He apparently left the group, intending to return later and rescue Joseph (v. 22). His plan depended on timing, and the timing failed. The narrative creates pathos: the one brother who sought to save Joseph arrives too late.
29. 'He tore his garments' (vayyiqra et-begadav) — the tearing of garments (qeri'ah) is the quintessential expression of grief and horror in the Hebrew Bible. Reuben's grief is genuine — his rescue plan has collapsed. The irony of garments pervades this chapter: Joseph's robe is stripped (v. 23), Reuben tears his own clothes in grief (v. 29), Jacob will tear his garments in mourning (v. 34).
30. 'The boy is gone!' (hayyeled einennu) — literally 'the boy — he is not.' The stark declaration of absence uses the participle einennu ('he is not'), which can also imply death (as in 42:13, 'one is no more'). Reuben does not know what happened — he assumes the worst.
30. 'And I — where shall I go?' (va'ani anah ani-va) — Reuben's anguished question reveals his personal crisis. As firstborn, he bears responsibility. How will he face his father? The repeated pronoun 'I' (ani... ani) intensifies his distress — the focus turns inward to his own predicament. His concern, though sympathetic, centers on himself rather than on Joseph's fate.
31. 'Slaughtered a male goat' (vayyishchatu se'ir izzim) — the goat becomes the instrument of deception. The choice of a goat is richly ironic: Jacob himself used goat skins to deceive his father Isaac (27:16). Now Jacob's sons use goat blood to deceive their father. The deception by goat comes full circle. The same type of animal connects the two great deceptions of the patriarchal narrative.
31. 'Dipped the robe in the blood' (vayyitbelu et-hakkuttonet baddam) — the ornamented robe that symbolized Jacob's love is transformed into false evidence of death. The blood-soaked garment is a fabricated crime scene. The brothers corrupt the symbol of favoritism into the instrument of grief.

32. 'Please examine' (hakker-na) — the verb nakhar (hiphil: 'to recognize, examine, identify') with the particle na ('please') is devastatingly calculated. The brothers force Jacob to identify the blood-soaked robe himself, making him the agent of his own torment. This exact phrase — hakker-na — echoes the deception of Genesis 38:25-26, where Tamar sends Judah's pledged items with the same words: 'Please examine — whose are these?' The verbal echo links the two chapters: the deceiver is deceived, and the one who orchestrated the deception of his father will himself be confronted by the same words.
33. 'Your son's robe' (ketonet binkha) — they say 'your son,' not 'our brother' or 'Joseph.' The distancing language reveals their rejection: Joseph belongs to Jacob, not to them. They disclaim fraternal relationship even in the act of presenting false evidence.
33. 'He recognized it' (vayyakireha) — the verb nakhar again. Jacob recognizes the robe just as the brothers intended. The man who deceived his own father through touch and clothing (ch. 27) is now deceived through sight and clothing. The poetic justice is precise: Jacob used goat skins and Esau's garments to steal a blessing; his sons use goat blood and Joseph's garment to steal his joy.
33. 'Joseph has surely been torn to pieces' (tarof toraf Yosef) — the infinitive absolute construction (tarof toraf) expresses absolute certainty. Jacob is utterly convinced. The verb taraf ('to tear, rend as a beast of prey') paints a vivid image of violent death. Jacob's grief is founded on a lie, but the grief itself is real and devastating.
34. 'Tore his garments' (vayyiqra... simlotav) — the qeri'ah ritual of grief. Jacob joins Reuben (v. 29) in tearing clothes, but whereas Reuben's grief was brief, Jacob's mourning will extend 'many days' — indeed, over twenty years, until the revelation that Joseph lives (45:26-28).
34. 'Put sackcloth on his waist' (vayyasem saq bemotnav) — sackcloth (saq), a coarse fabric of goat or camel hair, was the garment of mourning, penitence, and grief throughout the ancient Near East. Worn against the skin at the waist, it was physically uncomfortable — an external manifestation of internal anguish.
35. 'All his sons and all his daughters rose up to comfort him' — the bitter irony: the very sons who caused Jacob's grief now attempt to comfort him. Their consolation is built on their own lie. The mention of 'daughters' (benot) is notable — Dinah is the only daughter previously named, but the plural may include daughters-in-law or other daughters not previously mentioned.
35. 'He refused to be comforted' (vayema'en lehitnachem) — Jacob's refusal is not mere stubbornness but the expression of a grief that cannot be resolved. Comfort is possible when loss can be accepted; Jacob cannot accept Joseph's death because the mourning is built on falsehood. Paradoxically, his refusal to be comforted is the appropriate response to a death that has not occurred.
35. 'I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son' (ki-ered el-beni avel She'olah) — Sheol is the underworld, the realm of the dead in Hebrew cosmology. It is not hell but the shadowy abode where all the dead dwell (see also 42:38; 44:29, 31). Jacob expects to carry his grief into death itself. The verb 'go down' (ered) creates a geographical parallel: Joseph goes down to Egypt; Jacob vows to go down to Sheol. Descent characterizes the entire family's trajectory in this chapter.
36. 'The Medanites' (haMedanim) — yet another variant: here the text reads Medanim, not Midyanim (Midianites) as in v. 28. Medan and Midian were both sons of Abraham by Keturah (25:2), so the names may refer to closely related or overlapping groups. The text preserves a multiplicity of designations for the trading peoples who facilitated Joseph's journey to Egypt.
36. 'Potiphar' (Potifar) — an Egyptian name, likely from the Egyptian Pa-di-Pa-Ra, meaning 'he whom Ra has given.' The name connects Joseph's new master to Egyptian religion. Potiphar is identified with two titles: seris Par'oh ('officer/courtier of Pharaoh') and sar hattabbachim ('captain of the guard,' literally 'chief of the slaughterers/executioners'). The word seris can also mean 'eunuch,' though here it likely means 'court official.' Potiphar's position places Joseph at the intersection of Egyptian royal power.
36. The chapter ends with a split screen: Jacob mourns in Canaan; Joseph enters Egyptian servitude. The covenant family is fractured, and the resolution will take decades. Yet the narrator's matter-of-fact tone ('the Medanites sold him') hints that a larger purpose is at work beneath the surface of human cruelty.

38

Summary: Judah separates from his brothers, marries a Canaanite woman, and fathers three sons. After God kills the eldest two for wickedness, Judah withholds the third from Tamar. Tamar disguises herself, conceives twins by Judah, and presents his seal and staff as proof. Judah declares, 'She is more righteous than I.' Perez and Zerah are born.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter interrupts the Joseph narrative at its most suspenseful moment — Joseph has just been sold into Egypt. The interruption is theologically deliberate: Judah's story runs parallel to Joseph's, and both involve deception, garments, and goats. Tamar's scheme with Judah's signet, cord, and staff (v. 18) mirrors the brothers' scheme with Joseph's bloodied robe. Judah's confession tsadeqah mimmeni ('she is more righteous than I,' v. 26) marks the beginning of his moral transformation, which will culminate in his self-sacrificial speech in chapter 44.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew distinguishes between zonah ('prostitute,' v. 15, Judah's perception) and qedeshah ('cult prostitute,' v. 21, Hirah's inquiry) — two different social categories conflated by the disguise. We preserved this distinction. The phrase 'he did not know her again' (v. 26) uses yada in its sexual sense, and the negative statement separates the episode from ongoing relationship. Tamar's act of justice through deception challenges simple moral categories, and we let the text present it without editorial resolution.

Connections: Perez, born through this unlikely union, enters the lineage of David (Ruth 4:18-22) and of Jesus (Matthew 1:3). Tamar is one of four women named in Matthew's genealogy — all with irregular circumstances that God uses to advance his purposes. The levirate duty Onan violates (38:8) is later codified in Deuteronomy 25:5-10. Judah's moral arc — from callous patriarch here to self-sacrificing brother in chapter 44 — is one of Genesis's most significant character developments.

¹It happened at that time that Judah went down from his brothers and turned aside to a certain Adullamite whose name was Hirah. ²Judah saw there the daughter of a Canaanite man whose name was Shua. He took her and went in to her. ³She conceived and bore a son, and he then called his name Er. ⁴She conceived again and bore a son. she called his name Onan. ⁵She conceived yet again and bore a son, and she called his name Shelah. He was at Chezib when she bore him. ⁶Judah took a wife for Er his firstborn, and her name was Tamar. ⁷Er, Judah's firstborn, was wicked in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD put him to death. ⁸Judah said to Onan, "Go in to your brother's wife and perform the duty of a brother-in-law to her, and raise up offspring for your brother." ⁹Onan knew that the offspring would not be his, so whenever he went in to his brother's wife, he would waste his seed on the ground so as not to give offspring to his brother. ¹⁰What he did was evil in the sight of the LORD, and He put him to death also. ¹¹Judah said to Tamar his daughter-in-law, "Remain a widow in your father's house until my son Shelah grows up" — for he thought, "Lest he also die, like his brothers." So Tamar went and lived in her father's house. ¹²Many days passed, and the daughter of Shua, Judah's wife, died. When Judah was comforted, he went up to his sheepshearers at Timnah — he and his friend Hirah the Adullamite. ¹³It was told to Tamar, "Behold, your father-in-law is going up to Timnah to shear his sheep." ¹⁴She removed her widow's garments, covered herself with a veil, and wrapped herself. She sat at the entrance to Enaim, which is on the road to Timnah, for she saw that Shelah had grown up, yet she had not been given to him as a wife. ¹⁵When Judah saw her, he took her for a prostitute, for she had covered her face. ¹⁶He turned aside to her by the road and said, "Come now, let me come in to you" — for he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law. She said, "What will you give me if you come in to me?" ¹⁷He said, "I will send a young goat from the flock." She said, "Will you give a pledge until you send it?" ¹⁸He said, "What pledge shall I give you?" She said, "Your signet, your cord, and your staff that is in your hand." So he gave them to her and went in to her, and she conceived by him. ¹⁹She arose and went away. She removed her veil and put on her widow's garments. ²⁰Judah sent the young goat by the hand of his friend the Adullamite to retrieve the pledge from the woman, but he could not find her. ²¹He asked the men of the place, "Where is the cult prostitute who was at Enaim by the road?" They said, "There has been no cult prostitute here." ²²He returned to Judah and said, "I could not find her, and the men of the place also said, 'There has been no cult prostitute here.'" ²³Judah said, "Let her keep them, lest we become a laughingstock. Look, I sent this goat, but you could not find her." ²⁴About three months later, Judah was told, "Tamar your daughter-in-law has played the prostitute, and moreover, she is pregnant through prostitution." Judah said, "Bring her out and let her be burned!" ²⁵As she was being brought out, she sent word to her father-in-law, saying, "By the man to whom these belong, I am pregnant." And she said, "Please examine these — whose signet, cord, and staff are these?" ²⁶Judah recognized them and said, "She is more righteous than I, because I did not give her to my son Shelah." And he did not know her again. ²⁷When the time came for her to give birth, behold, there were twins in her womb. ²⁸As she was giving birth, one put out a hand, and the midwife took a scarlet thread and tied it on his hand, saying, "This one came out first." ²⁹But as he drew back his hand, behold, his brother came out! She said, "What a breach you have made for yourself!" So his name was called Perez. ³⁰Afterward his brother came out, the one who had the scarlet thread on his hand, and his name was called Zerah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'At that time' (ba'et hahi) — the chapter is placed between the sale of Joseph (ch. 37) and Joseph's arrival in Potiphar's house (ch. 39). The interruption is deliberate: while Joseph descends to Egypt, the narrator pauses to trace Judah's parallel descent — geographical, moral, and familial. The juxtaposition invites comparison between the two brothers.
1. 'Judah went down' (vayyered Yehudah) — the verb yarad ('to go down, descend') is loaded. It echoes Joseph's descent to Egypt and Jacob's vow to go down to Sheol (37:35). Judah's descent from his brothers is both physical (from the hill country) and metaphorical (away from the covenant community). He separates himself from the family, marries a Canaanite, and enters a sequence of moral compromises.
1. 'Turned aside to' (vayyett ad) — natah means to turn aside, to incline, to deviate from a path. The verb subtly signals departure from the expected way. Judah turns aside to a Canaanite friend, beginning a pattern of assimilation.
2. 'The daughter of a Canaanite man' (bat-ish Kena'ani) — Judah marries outside the covenant community, in contrast to the careful search for wives within the family undertaken by Abraham (ch. 24) and Isaac (ch. 28). The text does not name the woman — she is identified only as 'daughter of Shua' (bat-Shua). Her namelessness may reflect either the patriarchal conventions of the narrative or a subtle literary judgment on the marriage.
2. 'He took her and went in to her' (vayyiqqacheha vayyavo eleha) — the rapid succession of verbs (saw, took, went in) echoes the pattern of desire-and-acquisition that characterizes problematic unions in Genesis (cf. 6:2, 'they saw... they took'). There is no courtship, no family negotiation, no seeking of divine guidance. Judah acts on impulse.
3. 'Er' — the name may derive from the root 'ur ('to be awake, alert') or from 'ir ('city'). The brevity of the naming — no etymology is given — contrasts with the elaborate naming narratives elsewhere in Genesis. The lack of explanation may itself be significant: Er's story will be equally brief and unexplained.
4. 'Onan' — possibly from on ('vigor, strength') or aven ('sorrow, trouble'). The mother names this child (contrast v. 3 where the father names Er), a subtle shift in agency. The name's potential connection to 'sorrow' may foreshadow his fate.
5. 'Shelah' (Shelah) — possibly from shalah ('to be tranquil, at ease') or from the root sh-l-h ('to send'). Shelah becomes the pivotal figure in the narrative's unfolding: Judah's failure to give Shelah to Tamar triggers the crisis of the chapter.
5. 'Chezib' (Kheziv) — also known as Achzib (Josh 15:44; Mic 1:14). The place name is suggestive: the root k-z-b means 'to lie, to deceive, to disappoint.' Micah 1:14 puns on this: 'The houses of Achzib (akhzav) shall be a deception (akhzav) to the kings of Israel.' The name may foreshadow the deception that pervades this chapter.
6. 'Tamar' (Tamar) — the name means 'date palm,' a tree associated with beauty, fruitfulness, and uprightness (Ps 92:12, 'the righteous shall flourish like the palm tree'). The name is prophetically fitting: Tamar will prove to be the righteous one in this story. Her ethnic identity is unspecified — she may be Canaanite, but the text does not say so. She will appear again in the genealogy of David (Ruth 4:12) and in the lineage of Jesus (Matt 1:3).
7. 'Wicked in the sight of the LORD' (ra be'einei YHWH) — the nature of Er's wickedness is not specified. The narrator judges the character without detailing the offense, leaving the reader to understand that Er's evil was severe enough to warrant divine execution. This reticence is striking in a narrative that will be quite explicit about Onan's sin (v. 9).
7. 'The LORD put him to death' (vayemitehu YHWH) — direct divine judgment. The verb hemit (hiphil of mut, 'to cause to die') attributes Er's death directly to God's action. This is not natural death or accident — it is divine execution. The text asserts God's active sovereignty over life and death, particularly when covenant-line wickedness threatens the divine plan.
8. 'Perform the duty of a brother-in-law' (yabbem otah) — the verb yibbem is a denominative from yavam ('brother-in-law'). This is the levirate marriage obligation (from Latin levir, 'brother-in-law'), later codified in Deuteronomy 25:5-10. The custom required the surviving brother to marry his deceased brother's widow and produce offspring who would legally be counted as the dead brother's heirs. The practice preserved the dead man's name, lineage, and land inheritance.
8. 'Raise up offspring for your brother' (haqem zera le'achikha) — the seed (zera) would legally be Er's, not Onan's. The firstborn of the levirate union would inherit Er's portion and carry his name. This is the crux of the obligation — and the reason for Onan's refusal.
9. 'He would waste his seed on the ground' (veshichet artsah) — the verb shichet means 'to destroy, ruin, corrupt.' Onan's act was deliberate and repeated (the Hebrew construction with hayah + imperfect indicates habitual action: 'whenever he went in'). His sin was not merely a sexual act but a calculated refusal of the levirate duty — he accepted the access to Tamar that came with the obligation while deliberately subverting its purpose.
9. 'So as not to give offspring to his brother' (levilti netan-zera le'achiv) — Onan's motivation is explicitly stated: self-interest. If Er's line continued, Er's firstborn rights and inheritance would pass to that child, diminishing Onan's own share. His refusal is an act of greed disguised as compliance — he goes through the motions of the levirate marriage while ensuring it produces no result.
10. 'Evil in the sight of the LORD' (vayyera be'einei YHWH) — the same evaluative formula used for Er (v. 7). Onan's offense is specified where Er's was not: the deliberate refusal to fulfill the levirate obligation. His sin combines exploitation of Tamar (using her sexually while denying her the child that was her legal right), betrayal of his dead brother (refusing to preserve Er's name), and defiance of the family obligation his father imposed.

10. 'He put him to death also' (vayyamet gam-oto) — the word gam ('also') connects Onan's death to Er's. Two of Judah's three sons have now died under divine judgment. This creates the crisis that drives the remainder of the chapter: Judah has one son left (Shelah), and he is terrified of losing him.
11. 'Remain a widow' (shvi almanah) — Judah commands Tamar to a state of suspended life. As a widow bound by levirate expectation, she cannot remarry; yet Judah has no intention of giving Shelah to her. She is trapped between obligation and abandonment. The almanah ('widow') in Israelite society was among the most vulnerable persons, dependent on the family structure for protection and provision.
11. 'For he thought, Lest he also die, like his brothers' (ki amar pen-yamut gam-hu ke'echav) — the narrator exposes Judah's private reasoning. He blames Tamar for his sons' deaths, as if she were a dangerous woman rather than the victim of wicked husbands. His fear is superstitious rather than theological — he does not consider that God killed his sons for their own wickedness. This misplaced fear leads to injustice: Tamar is denied her legal right.
11. Tamar's compliance — she 'went and lived in her father's house' — demonstrates her patience and submission. But this obedience has limits, as the following verses will reveal.
12. 'Many days passed' (vayyirbu hayyamim) — the compressed time notation covers years. Shelah has presumably grown up during this period, yet Judah has not fulfilled his promise to give him to Tamar. The passage of time heightens Tamar's desperation and confirms Judah's bad faith.
12. 'Judah's wife died... Judah was comforted' (vatamat bat-Shua... vayyinnachem Yehudah) — the verb nacham ('to be comforted, to comfort oneself') signals the end of the mourning period. Judah's mourning for his wife concludes; Jacob's mourning for Joseph (37:35 — 'he refused to be comforted') continues. The contrast is pointed.
12. 'Sheepshearing at Timnah' — sheepshearing was a festive occasion in the ancient world, associated with celebration, feasting, and commerce (cf. 1 Sam 25:2-8, Nabal's sheepshearing). The festive atmosphere provides the context for Judah's encounter with Tamar.
13. The passive construction 'it was told' (vayyuggad) leaves the informant unnamed. Tamar receives intelligence about Judah's movements and acts upon it. Her plan requires precise knowledge of his itinerary — she positions herself along his route. The report triggers her decisive action.
14. 'She removed her widow's garments' (vattasar bigdei almenutah) — clothing functions as identity in Genesis. Tamar's widow's garments marked her as bound to Judah's family, waiting for Shelah. By removing them, she sheds her assigned identity. The garment changes in this chapter mirror those in chapter 37: Joseph is stripped of his identity-garment; Tamar removes hers voluntarily. Both garment changes initiate transformative deceptions.
14. 'Covered herself with a veil' (vattekhas batsa'if) — the tsa'if ('veil') disguises Tamar's identity. Judah will not recognize his own daughter-in-law. The veil also serves as the sign of a woman available for sexual transaction, as v. 15 makes explicit.
14. 'The entrance to Enaim' (Petach Einayim) — this may be a place name ('Enaim,' a town) or a descriptive phrase meaning 'the opening of the eyes.' If the latter, the name is profoundly ironic: Judah's eyes are closed to Tamar's identity at the very 'opening of the eyes.' The wordplay suggests that this is a place where truth will eventually come to light.
14. 'Shelah had grown up, yet she had not been given to him' — Tamar's action is motivated by justice, not lust. She has waited patiently; the promise has not been kept. Judah has broken his obligation. Tamar takes matters into her own hands through a dangerous and morally ambiguous stratagem — one that the narrative will ultimately vindicate.
15. 'He took her for a prostitute' (vayyachsheveha lezonah) — the verb chashav means 'to think, reckon, consider.' Judah's assumption is based on the veil covering her face. The word zonah ('prostitute') is the common term for a woman who engages in sexual commerce. The narrator uses zonah here, though Judah will later send payment seeking a qedeshah ('cult prostitute,' v. 21-22) — a distinction that may reflect Judah's attempt to dignify the transaction or the social ambiguity of such encounters.
15. 'She had covered her face' (ki khisttah paneha) — veiling practices varied across the ancient Near East. In some contexts, veiling indicated modesty and respectability; in others, it marked sexual availability. Here the veil prevents recognition — Judah does not know his own daughter-in-law.
16. 'He turned aside to her' (vayyett eleha) — the same verb (natah, 'to turn aside') used in v. 1 when Judah turned aside to Hirah. The repetition creates a pattern: Judah's life in this chapter is characterized by turning aside — from his brothers, from the covenant community, from the road, from moral responsibility.
16. 'For he did not know that she was his daughter-in-law' — the narrator's parenthetical comment both exonerates Judah from intentional incest and heightens the irony. The man who should know his own family does not recognize the woman he has wronged. His ignorance is both literal (he cannot see through the veil) and moral (he cannot see his own injustice).
16. 'What will you give me?' (mah-titten-li) — Tamar negotiates. Her question serves a dual purpose: it maintains the disguise (a prostitute would negotiate payment) and it secures the pledge items that will later prove Judah's identity. Tamar's strategy is carefully calculated.
17. 'A young goat' (gedi-izzim) — the goat motif recurs with devastating irony. In chapter 37, the brothers slaughtered a goat (se'ir izzim) to dip Joseph's robe in blood and deceive Jacob. Now Judah promises a goat as payment — and the transaction will expose his own deception. The goat binds the two chapters: deception by goat in chapter 37, exposure by goat in chapter 38.
17. 'A pledge' (eravon) — Tamar requests security for the promised payment. The eravon ('pledge, guarantee, security deposit') is a legal term for a surety left with a creditor. Tamar's insistence on a pledge is the decisive move of her plan — the pledge items will become irrefutable evidence.

18. 'Your signet, your cord, and your staff' (chotamkha ufetilekha umattekha) — Tamar requests three items that are uniquely identifying. The chotam ('signet, seal') was a personalized stamp used to authenticate documents and mark property — the ancient equivalent of a signature. The patil ('cord, string') was the cord from which the seal hung around the neck. The matteh ('staff') was a walking stick, often carved or marked distinctively. Together, these three items constitute unmistakable personal identification. Tamar is, in effect, collecting Judah's identity papers.
18. That Judah surrenders these items so readily reveals how completely desire has overridden judgment. He hands over the markers of his identity — his authority, his name, his patriarchal status — to a woman he believes is a roadside prostitute.
19. Tamar's garment change is the reverse of v. 14: she removes the veil of disguise and resumes the clothing of her assigned identity. The episode is framed by two costume changes — from widow to disguised woman and back. She reenters her waiting status, but now she carries within her the proof of Judah's failure and the seed of the covenant line. The transformation is invisible to all but the reader.
20. Judah sends Hirah rather than going himself — using an intermediary to maintain discretion. Hirah is tasked with recovering the pledge items that could identify Judah. The fact that the woman cannot be found begins the unraveling: the pledge items remain in Tamar's possession, and Judah has no way to recover them.
21. 'Cult prostitute' (qedeshah) — Hirah uses the term qedeshah, not zonah. The qedeshah (from qadosh, 'holy, set apart') was a woman associated with cultic or sacral prostitution, possibly connected to Canaanite fertility worship. The word carries a veneer of religious respectability that zonah ('common prostitute') does not. Hirah may be euphemizing — using the more respectable term to avoid embarrassment — or the narrative may be distinguishing between types of sexual commerce. Either way, the locals insist: no such woman has been there.
21. 'There has been no cult prostitute here' (lo-hayetah vazeh qedeshah) — the townspeople's denial is absolute. They have seen no woman matching the description. Tamar has vanished, along with Judah's identity.
22. Hirah's report confirms the failure. The pledge items cannot be recovered. The mysterious woman has disappeared as completely as if she never existed — which, in a sense, she did not: the 'prostitute' was a fiction created by Tamar's disguise.
23. 'Lest we become a laughingstock' (pen nihyeh lavuz) — the word buz means 'contempt, shame, ridicule.' Judah is more concerned about public embarrassment than about the loss of his seal and staff or the moral dimensions of his behavior. His priorities are inverted: reputation over righteousness. He would rather lose his identity markers than be known as someone who patronized a prostitute and was then duped by her.
23. Judah's decision to let the matter drop ensures that the pledge items remain in Tamar's hands — the very evidence she needs. His concern for reputation becomes the instrument of his exposure.
24. 'Has played the prostitute' (zanetah) — the verb zanah ('to commit fornication, to play the harlot') is used in the qal perfect. The informers present Tamar's pregnancy as evidence of sexual immorality. The irony is devastating: Judah, who consorted with a woman he believed to be a prostitute, now condemns his daughter-in-law for the same category of behavior — behavior that he himself initiated.
24. 'Pregnant through prostitution' (harah lizenunim) — the pregnancy makes Tamar's alleged sin visible and undeniable. In a culture where a woman bound by levirate obligation was expected to remain chaste, pregnancy from an unauthorized union was a grave offense.
24. 'Bring her out and let her be burned' (hotsi'uha vetissaref) — Judah's judgment is swift and extreme. Burning was a penalty for severe sexual offenses (Lev 20:14; 21:9). As the head of the family, Judah claims judicial authority. His rush to judgment contrasts sharply with his own moral failures: he who has not fulfilled his levirate obligation, who consorted with a woman by the roadside, now demands the death penalty for the woman he wronged. The hypocrisy is staggering, and the narrative is about to expose it.
25. 'As she was being brought out' (hi mutset) — the passive participle indicates the execution process has begun. Tamar is being led to her death. She waits until the last possible moment to reveal her evidence — a dramatic choice that maximizes the confrontation's impact and gives Judah no opportunity to suppress the truth.
25. 'Please examine' (hakker-na) — the identical phrase the brothers used when presenting Joseph's blood-stained robe to Jacob (37:32). The verbal echo is deliberate and devastating. In chapter 37, Judah participated in presenting false evidence to his father with the words 'please examine — is this your son's robe?' Now Tamar presents true evidence to Judah with the same words: 'please examine — whose are these?' The deceiver is confronted by his own method. The phrase hakker-na becomes a literary thread binding the two narratives of deception.
25. 'Whose signet, cord, and staff are these?' — Tamar does not accuse Judah directly. She presents the evidence and lets it speak. Her restraint is remarkable: facing execution, she offers Judah the opportunity to recognize the truth rather than publicly shaming him. She allows him to condemn or acquit himself.
26. 'She is more righteous than I' (tsadeqah mimmeni) — Judah's confession is one of the most significant moral reversals in Genesis. The patriarch who moments ago demanded Tamar's execution now declares her the righteous party. The word tsadeqah ('she is righteous, she is in the right') does not necessarily mean Tamar's method was morally ideal, but that her cause was just: she acted to secure the offspring and inheritance that were legally hers. Judah, who failed in his obligation and then rushed to condemn her, acknowledges his own greater guilt.
26. 'Because I did not give her to my son Shelah' (ki al-ken lo-netattiha leShelah veni) — Judah identifies the root cause: his broken promise. His failure to fulfill the levirate obligation forced Tamar into her desperate stratagem. The confession is specific, not vague — he names his exact offense.
26. 'He did not know her again' (velo yasaf od leda'tah) — Judah does not continue the sexual relationship. The encounter was a single event driven by Tamar's quest for justice, not the beginning of an ongoing union. The text closes this dimension of the narrative with finality.

27. 'Twins in her womb' (te'omim bevitnahh) — the twin motif recurs from Jacob and Esau's birth (25:24). Like that earlier birth, this one will involve a struggle for primacy and an unexpected reversal of birth order. The doubling of offspring also doubles Tamar's vindication: she sought one heir and receives two.
28. 'A scarlet thread' (shani) — shani denotes a bright red or crimson thread, colored with dye from the kermes insect. The scarlet thread marks the firstborn's claim — a visual tag of priority. But as with Jacob and Esau, the marked one will not prevail. The scarlet thread becomes a sign of the overturned birthright.
28. 'This one came out first' — the midwife's declaration attempts to fix the birth order. But the divine pattern of Genesis repeatedly subverts human expectations of primogeniture: Ishmael and Isaac, Esau and Jacob, and now Zerah and Perez.
29. 'What a breach you have made for yourself!' (mah-paratsta alekha parets) — the exclamation plays on the name Perez (Parets), from the root p-r-ts ('to break through, to breach'). The child who was not marked as firstborn breaks through ahead of his brother — a forceful, disruptive entry into the world. The breach overturns the expected order.
29. 'Perez' (Parets) — the name means 'breach, breaking forth.' Perez becomes the ancestor of David (Ruth 4:18-22) and appears in the genealogy of Jesus (Matt 1:3; Luke 3:33). Through this child of an irregular union — born of Judah's failure and Tamar's desperate justice — the royal and messianic line proceeds. God's purposes advance through the most unlikely and morally complex circumstances.
30. 'Zerah' (Zerach) — the name likely derives from zarach ('to shine, to rise, to break forth as light'). It may relate to the brightness or redness of the scarlet thread, or to the dawn-like appearance of the hand emerging first. Despite being the one initially marked as firstborn, Zerah is superseded by Perez. The pattern of reversed primogeniture continues: God's election does not follow human expectations of birth order.
30. The chapter ends with the birth of twins who represent both judgment and hope. From Judah's moral failure, Tamar's courageous act, and a birth that defied expectations comes the line through which Israel's kings — and ultimately the Messiah — will descend. Genesis 38, often treated as a digression from the Joseph narrative, is in fact essential: it establishes the Judah-Tamar-Perez lineage that will prove central to the biblical story of redemption.

39

Summary: *Joseph serves in the house of Potiphar, an Egyptian officer. The LORD is with Joseph, and everything he touches prospers. Potiphar's wife repeatedly attempts to seduce him; Joseph refuses, citing loyalty to his master and to God. She seizes his garment; he flees. She accuses him of assault, and Joseph is imprisoned — but the LORD remains with him there also.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The refrain 'the LORD was with Joseph' (vv. 2, 3, 21, 23) is the theological spine of the chapter — divine presence persists through both prosperity and injustice. Joseph's refusal is framed as a sin against God, not merely against Potiphar: 'how could I do this great evil and sin against God?' (v. 9). The garment motif continues from chapter 37 — his father's robe was stripped by his brothers, now his Egyptian garment is stripped by his accuser. Clothing in the Joseph narrative consistently marks identity, status, and deception.*

Translation Friction: *Potiphar's wife's repeated advances are described with the terse verb vatitpesehu ('she seized him,' v. 12), from taphas — a verb of forceful, physical grasping. We rendered it directly. Joseph's flight, leaving his garment behind, creates a legal fiction: the garment becomes false evidence, and its Hebrew description echoes the robe of chapter 37. The parallel between losing garments and gaining integrity is a theme that resists explicit statement and works through narrative silence.*

Connections: *The pattern of false accusation and unjust imprisonment parallels Daniel's experience in Babylon (Daniel 6). Joseph in prison anticipates Moses' exile (Exodus 2:15) — both men are prepared for leadership through suffering. The phrase 'the LORD was with him' becomes a marker of the chosen: it is said of Isaac (26:3), Jacob (28:15), and later of David (1 Samuel 16:18).*

1Now Joseph had been brought down to Egypt, and Potiphar, an officer of Pharaoh, the captain of the guard, an Egyptian man, purchased him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had brought him down there. 2The LORD was with Joseph, and he became a man who prospered, and he was in the house of his master the Egyptian. 3His master saw that the LORD was with him and that the LORD caused everything he did to prosper in his hand. 4Joseph found favor in his sight and served him. He appointed him overseer over his house, and all that he had he placed in his hand. 5From the time he appointed him over his house and over all that he had, the LORD blessed the Egyptian's house on account of Joseph. The blessing of the

LORD was upon all that he had, in the house and in the field. ⁶He left all that he had in Joseph's hand, and he did not concern himself with anything except the food that he ate. Now Joseph was handsome in form and handsome in appearance. ⁷It happened after these things that his master's wife lifted up her eyes toward Joseph and said, "Lie with me." ⁸But he refused, and said to his master's wife, "Look, my master does not concern himself with anything in the house alongside me, and all that he has he has placed in my hand. ⁹No one in this house is greater than I am, and he has withheld nothing from me except you, because you are his wife. How then could I do this great evil and sin against God?" ¹⁰Though she spoke to Joseph day after day, he would not listen to her, to lie beside her or to be with her. ¹¹On a certain day he went into the house to do his work, and none of the men of the household were there in the house. ¹²She seized him by his garment, saying, "Lie with me!" But he left his garment in her hand and fled and went outside. ¹³When she saw that he had left his garment in her hand and had fled outside, ¹⁴she called to the men of her household and said to them, "See, he has brought a Hebrew man to us to mock us! He came in to me to lie with me, and I cried out with a loud voice. ¹⁵When he heard that I lifted up my voice and cried out, he left his garment beside me and fled and went outside." ¹⁶She kept his garment beside her until his master came home. ¹⁷She spoke to him according to these words, saying, "The Hebrew servant whom you brought to us came in to me to mock me. ¹⁸When I lifted up my voice and cried out, he left his garment beside me and fled outside." ¹⁹When his master heard the words of his wife, which she spoke to him, saying, "These are the things your servant did to me," his anger burned. ²⁰Joseph's master took him and put him into the prison, the place where the king's prisoners were held. And he remained there in the prison. ²¹But the LORD was with Joseph and extended faithful love to him, and gave him favor in the eyes of the keeper of the prison. ²²The keeper of the prison placed in Joseph's hand all the prisoners who were in the prison, and whatever was done there, he was the one who did it. ²³The keeper of the prison did not concern himself with anything that was in Joseph's hand, because the LORD was with him, and whatever he did, the LORD made it prosper.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Had been brought down' (hurad) — the Hophal passive of yarad ('to descend'). Joseph does not go down to Egypt willingly; he is taken down. The verb echoes Judah's voluntary descent in 38:1 (vayyered), creating an ironic contrast: Judah descends by choice into moral compromise, while Joseph descends by force into a place of testing and eventual exaltation.
2. 'Officer' (seris) — this term can mean 'eunuch' or more broadly 'court official.' In many ancient Near Eastern contexts, high-ranking courtiers were eunuchs, but the word had generalized to mean any royal officer. Since Potiphar has a wife, the broader sense of 'officer' is appropriate here, though the ambiguity is part of the Hebrew text.
3. 'Captain of the guard' (sar hattabbachim) — literally 'chief of the slaughterers' or 'chief of the executioners.' The term tabbachim derives from tabach ('to slaughter'), suggesting this was originally a title connected to the royal butchery or execution detail, though by this period it denoted the captain of the royal bodyguard.
4. 'The LORD was with Joseph' (vayehi YHWH et-Yosef) — this is the theological thesis statement of the entire chapter. The phrase appears at both the beginning (v. 2) and end (v. 21, 23) of the chapter, forming a literary inclusio. Despite Joseph's enslavement, the narrator insists that the LORD's presence is the decisive factor in his circumstances.
5. 'A man who prospered' (ish matsliach) — from the Hiphil of tsalach, meaning to cause to prosper, to succeed, to advance. The term implies not merely personal success but divine causation — Joseph prospers because the LORD makes him prosper. The same root appears in v. 3 and v. 23, binding the chapter together.
6. 'His master saw' (vayyar adonav) — remarkably, Potiphar, a pagan Egyptian, perceives the presence of Israel's God with Joseph. The text does not explain how he reached this conclusion — whether through Joseph's testimony, through the observable pattern of blessing, or through some other means. The narrator presents it as simple fact: the LORD's favor on Joseph was visible even to an outsider.
7. 'The LORD caused everything he did to prosper in his hand' — the repeated use of YHWH (the covenant name of God) in an Egyptian context is theologically significant. The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob is not confined to the land of Canaan; His sovereignty extends over Egypt as well.
8. 'Found favor' (matsa chen) — the phrase echoes Noah (6:8), who 'found favor in the eyes of the LORD.' Joseph finds favor in the eyes of a human master, foreshadowing the greater favor he will find with Pharaoh himself. The word chen ('grace, favor') implies an undeserved, gracious disposition toward the recipient.
9. 'Appointed him overseer' (vayyafqidehu) — from paqad, 'to appoint, to set over, to entrust.' The Hiphil form emphasizes Potiphar's active decision to place Joseph in authority. This is the first of Joseph's three elevations (Potiphar's house, prison, Pharaoh's court), each following the same pattern: faithful service leading to entrusted authority.

5. 'The LORD blessed the Egyptian's house on account of Joseph' (vayevarekh YHWH et-beit hamMitsri biglal Yosef) — this fulfills the Abrahamic promise that through Abraham's seed the nations would be blessed (12:3). Even in slavery, Joseph serves as a conduit of covenant blessing to a Gentile household. The phrase biglal ('on account of, for the sake of') makes the causal connection explicit.
5. 'In the house and in the field' (babayit uvasadeh) — the totality of the blessing is emphasized through this merism. Every domain of Potiphar's life — domestic and agricultural — comes under divine blessing through Joseph.
6. 'He did not concern himself with anything except the food that he ate' — the phrase ki im-hallechem asher-hu okhel is often explained as a reference to Egyptian dietary restrictions that prohibited them from eating with foreigners (cf. 43:32). Potiphar retained control only over his personal food consumption, either for reasons of ritual purity or personal custom.
6. 'Handsome in form and handsome in appearance' (yefeh-to'ar viyfeh mar'eh) — this exact phrase is used of only one other person in Genesis: Rachel, Joseph's mother (29:17). The literary echo is deliberate, connecting mother and son. Tragically, Joseph's beauty — like Rachel's — becomes a source of both attraction and complication. This description is placed here as a narrative hinge: it explains what follows in v. 7.
6. The verse functions as a transition. The first half concludes the account of Joseph's rise in Potiphar's house; the second half, with its notice of Joseph's beauty, introduces the crisis that follows.
7. 'Lifted up her eyes' (vattissa et-eineiha) — the Hebrew idiom describes a deliberate, purposeful gaze. It is the same expression used when Abraham 'lifts his eyes' to see Mount Moriah (22:4) or Lot 'lifts his eyes' to see the well-watered Jordan plain (13:10). Here, the gaze is one of desire and intent.
7. 'Lie with me' (shikhvah immi) — the bluntness of the command in Hebrew is striking. There is no prelude, no flattery, no negotiation — only a two-word imperative. The narrator's economy conveys the brazenness of the demand. Potiphar's wife is unnamed throughout, identified only by her relation to Joseph's master, keeping the focus on the moral dynamics.
8. 'He refused' (vayema'en) — the verb stands emphatically at the head of the sentence, before any explanation. Joseph's refusal is immediate and decisive, not the product of deliberation. The same verb (ma'en) describes Pharaoh's later refusal to release Israel (Exodus 7:14), but here it is used of righteous resistance rather than stubborn rebellion.
8. Joseph's defense is structured in three layers: (1) the trust his master has placed in him (v. 8), (2) the unique position of the wife as the one thing withheld from him (v. 9a), and (3) the theological dimension — sin against God (v. 9b). The argument moves from the relational to the covenantal.
9. 'This great evil' (hara'ah hagedolah hazzot) — Joseph does not minimize the act as a minor transgression. He calls it what it is: a great evil. The word ra'ah encompasses wickedness, harm, and moral evil. Joseph perceives adultery not merely as a violation of social convention but as a fundamental moral offense.
9. 'Sin against God' (vechatati l'Elohim) — the climax of Joseph's refusal. Remarkably, Joseph frames the sin not primarily in terms of betraying Potiphar's trust (though that is acknowledged) but in terms of offending God. The use of Elohim (rather than YHWH) may reflect Joseph's awareness that he is speaking to an Egyptian; alternatively, it may simply express the universal moral dimension of the act. Either way, Joseph recognizes a divine moral order that transcends human relationships.
9. Joseph's reasoning follows the logic of covenant faithfulness: because God is sovereign over all human affairs, every moral choice is ultimately a choice before God. This theological awareness distinguishes Joseph from his brothers, who sold him without apparent regard for divine judgment.
10. 'Day after day' (yom yom) — the repetition conveys persistent, unrelenting pressure. This was not a single moment of temptation but a sustained campaign of seduction. Joseph's resistance was not a one-time act of will but a daily, disciplined refusal.
10. 'To lie beside her or to be with her' (lishkav etshah lihyot immah) — the Hebrew distinguishes two things Joseph refused: (1) sexual contact ('to lie beside her') and (2) even being in her presence ('to be with her'). Joseph recognized the danger of proximity and avoided situations that could lead to compromise. This detail reflects practical wisdom, not mere moral abstraction.
11. 'On a certain day' (kehayom hazzeh) — literally 'about this day' or 'on such a day as this.' The phrase marks a turning point in the narrative, shifting from the general pattern (day after day) to a specific, decisive moment.
11. 'To do his work' (la'asot melakhto) — Joseph enters the house for legitimate purposes, faithfully attending to his duties. The narrator makes clear that Joseph was not seeking out Potiphar's wife. Some rabbinic interpreters debated the meaning of 'his work,' but the plain sense is simply his household responsibilities.
11. 'None of the men of the household were there' — the narrator sets the scene with ominous precision. The absence of witnesses creates the conditions for the wife's assault and her subsequent fabrication.
12. 'She seized him by his garment' (vattipesehu bevigdo) — the verb taphas means to seize, grab, or catch. This is a physical assault. The garment (begeh) becomes a pivotal object in the narrative — left behind as false evidence. The word begeh is noteworthy because the same root means 'treachery' or 'betrayal' (cf. the verb bagad). The garment that should attest to Joseph's innocence is twisted into evidence of his guilt, a garment of treachery.
12. 'He fled and went outside' (vayyanas vayyetse hachutsah) — Joseph's flight is not cowardice but moral courage. He chooses integrity over comfort, freedom over compromise. The rapid succession of verbs (fled, went out) conveys urgency and decisiveness.

12. The parallel to Joseph's coat in chapter 37 is striking: there, Joseph's garment was stripped from him by his brothers and used as false evidence before Jacob; here, his garment is stripped by Potiphar's wife and used as false evidence before Potiphar. In both cases, the garment testifies falsely against him.
13. This transitional verse shows the wife calculating her next move. The moment she realizes she holds physical evidence — the garment — she recognizes its potential as a weapon. What was meant to trap Joseph into sin now becomes a tool to frame him for a crime he refused to commit.
14. 'A Hebrew man' (ish ivri) — she identifies Joseph by his ethnicity, deploying it as a slur to inflame the household servants' prejudice. The term ivri ('Hebrew') emphasizes Joseph's foreignness in an Egyptian context. By saying 'he brought' (hevi), she blames Potiphar himself for introducing this 'outsider,' attempting to align the servants' resentment against both Joseph and, subtly, her husband.
14. 'To mock us' (letsacheq banu) — the verb tsachaq ('to laugh, to play, to mock') is loaded with sexual overtones in Genesis. It is the same root as Isaac's name (Yitschaq) and was used of Ishmael's behavior toward Isaac (21:9). In 26:8, it describes Isaac 'caressing' (metsacheq) Rebekah. The wife uses this verb ambiguously — it can mean 'to sport with' or 'to make a fool of' — to suggest both sexual assault and public humiliation.
14. Note her manipulation: she shifts from 'he came to me' (singular) to 'to mock us' (plural), enlisting the household servants as fellow victims to gain their solidarity.
15. She constructs a narrative in which Joseph's flight — actually evidence of his innocence — becomes evidence of guilt. The garment left 'beside me' (etsli) is presented as proof that he was in intimate proximity. Her account reverses the causation: in her telling, Joseph fled because she screamed; in reality, she screamed because he fled. The truth is exactly inverted.
16. 'She kept his garment beside her' (vattannach bigdo etslah) — the verb nuach in the Hiphil means 'to place, to set down, to lay aside.' She preserves the garment as evidence, holding it like a prosecutor waiting for the judge. The deliberateness of her action — keeping it 'until his master came home' — reveals calculated planning, not the distress of a victim.
17. 'The Hebrew servant' (ha'eved ha'ivri) — note the escalation from 'a Hebrew man' (v. 14, speaking to servants) to 'the Hebrew servant' (speaking to Potiphar). When addressing the servants, she used 'man' (ish), appealing to their sense of shared vulnerability; when addressing Potiphar, she uses 'servant' (eved), emphasizing Joseph's inferior status and implying that Potiphar should be outraged that someone so low would dare approach his wife.
17. 'Whom you brought to us' (asher heveta lanu) — she explicitly blames Potiphar for Joseph's presence, making her husband complicit in the alleged offense. This is a manipulative rhetorical strategy: by implicating Potiphar, she pressures him to act decisively to absolve himself of responsibility.
18. The repetition of her account — nearly verbatim from v. 15 — is a deliberate narrative technique. The rehearsed quality of the testimony reveals its fabricated nature. A genuine victim might vary in retelling; a liar repeats a prepared script. The narrator lets the reader perceive the deception through the very precision of her words.
19. 'His anger burned' (vayichar appo) — literally 'his nostril burned.' The Hebrew idiom for anger uses the image of a flaring nostril — the physical sign of fury. The expression is used frequently of God's anger (cf. Exodus 4:14; Numbers 11:1) and of human rage. Potiphar's reaction is immediate and visceral.
19. Some interpreters note that Potiphar's response — imprisonment rather than execution — may suggest he harbored doubts about his wife's story. Under Egyptian law, the penalty for sexual assault on a married woman was death. That Joseph was only imprisoned may indicate that Potiphar suspected the truth but could not publicly side with a slave against his wife. This is textually ambiguous, however, and the narrator does not comment on Potiphar's inner reasoning.
20. 'The prison' (bet hassohar) — literally 'the house of roundness' or 'the round house,' perhaps reflecting the architectural shape of the facility. This was not an ordinary jail but a royal prison where the king's own prisoners were confined. Providentially, this placement will bring Joseph into contact with Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker (chapter 40), advancing the divine plan.
20. 'The king's prisoners' (asirei hammelek) — Joseph is placed among political detainees, not common criminals. This is significant: it places him in the orbit of Pharaoh's court, positioning him for the encounters that will ultimately lead to his exaltation. What appears as a further descent is actually a step toward fulfillment of the dreams.
21. 'The LORD was with Joseph' (vayehi YHWH et-Yosef) — the refrain returns, now in the context of imprisonment. The narrator's insistence on divine presence in the darkest circumstances is the theological heartbeat of the Joseph narrative. The LORD was with him in Potiphar's house (v. 2); the LORD is with him in prison (v. 21). The location changes; the presence does not.
21. 'Extended steadfast love to him' (vayyet elav chesed) — the verb natah ('to stretch out, extend, incline') combined with chesed creates a powerful image: God actively reaches toward Joseph with covenant love. Chesed is one of the richest words in the Hebrew Bible — it encompasses loyalty, faithfulness, kindness, and covenantal commitment. It is not mere pity but purposeful, enduring love rooted in relationship.
21. 'Gave him favor' (vayyitten chinno) — literally 'gave his grace.' The same pattern as v. 4 (Joseph found favor with Potiphar), now repeated with the prison keeper. The cycle of divine favor leading to human trust begins again.
22. The pattern from Potiphar's house repeats exactly in the prison: Joseph is given total authority and responsibility. The narrator draws this parallel deliberately to show that Joseph's character and God's blessing operate consistently regardless of circumstance. Whether in a wealthy household or a royal prison, Joseph rises to leadership because the LORD is with him.

22. 'Whatever was done there, he was the one who did it' (ve'et kol-asher osim sham hu hayah oseh) — this emphatic construction underscores Joseph's complete administrative authority. The prison keeper, like Potiphar before him, delegates everything to Joseph.
23. The chapter ends exactly as it began — with the declaration that 'the LORD was with him' (YHWH itto) and 'the LORD made it prosper' (YHWH matsliach). This inclusio (literary bookend) frames the entire chapter within the theology of divine presence. Between the opening and closing statements, Joseph has been tempted, falsely accused, and imprisoned — yet the narrator's verdict remains unchanged. The LORD's presence and Joseph's prosperity are not dependent on favorable circumstances but on the covenant faithfulness of God.
23. 'The LORD made it prosper' (YHWH matsliach) — the final word of the chapter is matsliach ('causing to prosper'), the same word used in v. 2. Despite everything — betrayal by brothers, enslavement, false accusation, imprisonment — the chapter's last word is prosperity. Not Joseph's prosperity in human terms, but God's sovereign capacity to bring fruitfulness out of suffering.

40

Summary: *Pharaoh's cupbearer and baker are imprisoned alongside Joseph. Both dream on the same night. Joseph insists that interpretations belong to God and correctly interprets both dreams: the cupbearer will be restored in three days; the baker will be hanged. Events unfold exactly as Joseph said. But the cupbearer forgets Joseph.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joseph's claim 'Do not interpretations belong to God?' (v. 8) establishes the theological principle governing all dream interpretation in Genesis: human wisdom does not decode the future; God reveals it. The parallel structure of the two dreams — both involving three (branches/baskets), both interpreted within three days, both involving Pharaoh 'lifting the head' — but with opposite outcomes creates exquisite narrative tension. The phrase 'he forgot him' (v. 23) is the chapter's final word and its cruelest irony: the man whose gift is remembering (God's future) is himself forgotten.*

Translation Friction: *The idiom 'to lift up the head' (nasa et-rosh) is used with double meaning: for the cupbearer it means restoration to honor (v. 13); for the baker it means removal of his head from his body (v. 19). The same phrase with opposite outcomes is a Hebrew wordplay that English can only partially reproduce. We rendered both instances with 'lift up your head' and let the context differentiate their meanings.*

Connections: *Joseph's dream interpretation anticipates Daniel's role in the Babylonian court (Daniel 2:27-28). The cupbearer's forgetfulness delays Joseph's liberation but positions him for the right moment — Pharaoh's own dreams (ch. 41). Joseph's plea to be remembered (40:14) uses the verb zakhar, the same verb used when God 'remembers' his people (8:1; 19:29; 30:22).*

It happened after these things that the cupbearer of the king of Egypt and the baker offended their lord, the king of Egypt. ² Pharaoh was angry with his two officers, with the chief cupbearer and with the chief baker. ³ He placed them in custody in the house of the captain of the guard, in the prison, the place where Joseph was confined. ⁴ The captain of the guard assigned Joseph to attend them, and he served them. They remained for some time in custody. ⁵ Both of them dreamed a dream on the same night, each his own dream with its own interpretation — the cupbearer and the baker of the king of Egypt who were confined in the prison. ⁶ Joseph came to them in the morning and saw them, and they were troubled. ⁷ He asked Pharaoh's officers who were with him in custody in his master's house, saying, "Why are your faces downcast today?" ⁸ They said to him, "We have dreamed a dream, and there is no one to interpret it." Joseph said to them, "Do not interpretations belong to God? Please, tell them to me." ⁹ The chief cupbearer told his dream to Joseph and said to him, "In my dream, behold, a vine was before me. ¹⁰ On the vine were three branches. As it budded, its blossoms came up, and its clusters ripened into grapes. ¹¹ Pharaoh's cup was in my hand. I took the grapes and pressed them into Pharaoh's cup and placed the cup on Pharaoh's palm." ¹² Joseph said to him, "This is its interpretation: the three branches are three days. ¹³ Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and restore you to your position, and you will place Pharaoh's cup in his hand according to the former practice when you were his cupbearer. ¹⁴ Only remember me when it goes well for you, and please show kindness to me: mention me to Pharaoh and bring me out of this house. ¹⁵ For indeed I was stolen — stolen away from the land of the Hebrews, and here also I have done nothing that they should have put me in the pit. ¹⁶ When the chief baker saw that the interpretation was favorable, he said to Joseph, "I also — in my dream, behold, three baskets of white bread were on my

head. ¹⁷In the uppermost basket were all kinds of baked food for Pharaoh, and the birds were eating them from the basket on my head." ¹⁸Joseph answered and said, "This is its interpretation: the three baskets are three days. ¹⁹Within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from upon you and hang you on a tree, and the birds will eat your flesh from upon you." ²⁰On the third day, which was Pharaoh's birthday, he made a feast for all his servants. He lifted up the head of the chief cupbearer and the head of the chief baker among his servants. ²¹He restored the chief cupbearer to his position, and he placed the cup on Pharaoh's palm. ²²But the chief baker he hanged — just as Joseph had interpreted to them. ²³Yet the chief cupbearer did not remember Joseph; he forgot him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'The cupbearer' (mashqeh) — literally 'the one who gives drink.' This was a position of extraordinary trust in the ancient Near East. The royal cupbearer tasted the king's wine to ensure it was not poisoned and had intimate access to the monarch. The position conferred significant political influence — far more than the English word 'butler' (KJV) suggests.
1. 'The baker' (ha'ofeh) — from the root afah ('to bake'). Like the cupbearer, the royal baker held a position of trust, responsible for the king's food. Both men had direct access to what Pharaoh consumed, making any 'offense' potentially a matter of life and death — poisoning was a constant fear of ancient rulers.
1. 'Offended' (chat'u) — the verb chata means 'to sin, to miss the mark, to offend.' The same word used for sin against God is here used for an offense against Pharaoh. The nature of their offense is not specified — the narrator's interest lies in the consequences, not the crime.
2. 'Was angry' (vayiqtsaf) — from qatsaf, a strong verb for wrath, often used of royal or divine fury. Pharaoh's anger is decisive and consequential — it results in imprisonment and ultimately in the execution of one of the two men.
2. 'His two officers' (shenei sarisav) — the word saris ('officer') is the same term used of Potiphar in 39:1. These are high-ranking court officials, not minor servants. Their titles — 'chief cupbearer' (sar hamashqim) and 'chief baker' (sar ha'ofim) — indicate they headed entire departments of the royal household.
3. 'In custody' (bemishmar) — from shamar ('to guard, to keep'). The word denotes a place of guarded confinement, a holding facility under the authority of the captain of the guard.
3. 'The house of the captain of the guard' (bet sar hattabbachim) — this is Potiphar's jurisdiction (cf. 39:1). The prison where Joseph is held falls under the authority of his former master. The narrator connects the two stories explicitly: the same household that unjustly imprisoned Joseph now places Pharaoh's disgraced officers in Joseph's care.
3. 'The place where Joseph was confined' (maqom asher Yosef asur sham) — the narrator ensures the reader understands this is no coincidence. Divine providence arranges for these specific officials — men with direct access to Pharaoh — to be placed in the exact location where Joseph can serve them and demonstrate his God-given gift.
4. 'Assigned Joseph to attend them' (vayyifqod... et-Yosef ittam) — from paqad, the same root used in 39:4 when Potiphar appointed Joseph overseer. Joseph's role continues to be one of trusted service, even in prison. The captain of the guard (Potiphar himself, or his successor) assigns Joseph to personally attend these high-ranking prisoners.
4. 'They remained for some time' (vayiyhu yamim) — literally 'they were days.' The Hebrew yamim ('days') is deliberately vague, suggesting an indefinite period — perhaps weeks or months. The ambiguity mirrors the uncertainty of the prisoners' situation: they do not know what Pharaoh will decide.
5. 'Both of them dreamed a dream on the same night' — the simultaneity of the dreams signals divine orchestration. In the ancient Near East, dreams were widely regarded as messages from the divine realm. That both officials dream on the same night, and that both dreams prove to be prophetically accurate, points to a sovereign hand behind the events.
5. 'Each his own dream with its own interpretation' (ish chalomo... ish kefitron chalomo) — the Hebrew emphasizes individuality: each man had his own dream, and each dream carried its own distinct interpretation. Though they dream on the same night, their fates will diverge dramatically — one to restoration, one to death.
5. The theme of dreams connects this passage to Joseph's own dreams in chapter 37 and anticipates Pharaoh's dreams in chapter 41. Dreams function throughout the Joseph narrative as vehicles of divine revelation, accessible only through divine interpretation.
6. 'They were troubled' (vehinnam zo'afim) — the verb za'af means 'to be troubled, to be agitated, to look dejected.' It describes not mere sadness but visible distress — the kind of inner turmoil that shows on the face. Joseph notices their condition, demonstrating his attentiveness to those in his care. Even in prison, Joseph is not consumed by self-pity but remains alert to the needs of others.
7. 'Why are your faces downcast today?' (maddua peneikhem ra'im hayyom) — literally 'why are your faces evil/bad today?' The adjective ra'im (from ra, 'bad, evil') is used here in its sense of 'troubled, unhappy, grim.' The same word that describes moral evil can describe the appearance of distress on a human face.

7. 'In his master's house' (bet adonav) — the reference to 'his master' (adonav) recalls the setting: Joseph is still under the authority of Potiphar (or his successor as captain of the guard). The detail reinforces the irony of Joseph's situation — serving faithfully in the very household where he was falsely condemned.
8. 'There is no one to interpret it' (ufoter ein oto) — in Egypt, dream interpretation was a professional discipline practiced by trained magicians and wise men (cf. 41:8). In prison, the officials have no access to these professional interpreters, leaving them in despair. Their helplessness creates the opening for Joseph — and for God.
8. 'Do not interpretations belong to God?' (halo l'Elohim pitronot) — this is Joseph's theological thesis: the ability to interpret dreams is not a human skill but a divine gift. The rhetorical question (introduced by halo, 'is it not?') expects an affirmative answer: yes, interpretations belong to God alone. Joseph uses Elohim (the universal name for God) rather than YHWH, appropriate when speaking to Egyptians. Yet the claim is radical: Joseph asserts that the God of the Hebrews holds the key to Egyptian dreams.
8. 'Please, tell them to me' (sapperu-na li) — having directed all credit to God, Joseph then offers himself as the human instrument. The na ('please, I pray') is a particle of courteous request. Joseph does not claim personal authority; he positions himself as a conduit of divine revelation.
9. 'A vine' (gefen) — the grapevine is a rich symbol in the Hebrew Bible, later associated with Israel itself (cf. Psalm 80:8; Isaiah 5:1–7). In this Egyptian context, the vine represents the cupbearer's occupation and serves as the medium of divine communication. The dream speaks in the language of the dreamer's own life and work.
10. 'Three branches' (sheloshah sarigim) — the number three is the interpretive key to the dream: three branches correspond to three days (v. 12). The word sarig ('branch, tendril') occurs only here and in Joel 1:7 in the Hebrew Bible, a rare botanical term that adds vividness to the dream's imagery.
10. 'As it budded, its blossoms came up, and its clusters ripened into grapes' — the dream compresses an entire growing season into a single, accelerating sequence: budding blossoming ripening. The rapid progression suggests speed and inevitability — the events foretold will unfold swiftly and surely.
11. 'Pressed them into Pharaoh's cup' (va'eschat otam el-kos Par'oh) — the verb sachat means 'to squeeze, to press.' The cupbearer dreams of performing his characteristic duty: preparing and serving Pharaoh's drink. The dream's content reflects his professional role, and the act of placing the cup 'on Pharaoh's palm' (al-kaf Par'oh) symbolizes the direct, personal service that defines the cupbearer's relationship with the king.
11. The threefold repetition of 'Pharaoh' in this single verse (Pharaoh's cup... Pharaoh's cup... Pharaoh's palm) underscores the cupbearer's entire identity as bound to royal service — and foreshadows his restoration to that service.
12. 'This is its interpretation' (zeh pitrono) — Joseph speaks with confident authority, grounded not in his own wisdom but in God's gift (cf. v. 8). He does not hedge or speculate; he declares. The interpretive method is symbolic correspondence: three branches equal three days.
12. The interpretive key — elements in the dream correspond to units of time — anticipates Pharaoh's dreams in chapter 41, where seven cows and seven ears of grain will correspond to seven years.
13. 'Pharaoh will lift up your head' (yissa Par'oh et-roshekha) — this idiom means to show favor, to grant an audience, to elevate someone's status. In ancient Near Eastern court protocol, a prisoner or supplicant would bow low; to 'lift up the head' was to grant recognition and restoration. This exact phrase will be used with devastating irony in v. 19 for the baker, with the devastating addition 'from upon you.'
13. 'Restore you to your position' (vashivekha al-kannekha) — from shuv ('to return') in the Hiphil: 'to cause to return.' The word ken (literally 'base, stand, pedestal') metaphorically refers to one's established position or office. The cupbearer will be returned to his former station.
13. 'According to the former practice' (kamishpat harishon) — mishpat here means 'custom, manner, established procedure' rather than 'judgment.' The cupbearer will resume his duties exactly as before, as if the imprisonment never happened.
14. 'Remember me' (zekhartani) — the verb zakhar ('to remember') is loaded with theological weight in the Hebrew Bible. To remember is not merely to recall cognitively but to act on that recollection. When God 'remembers' Noah (8:1) or Rachel (30:22), it means He acts on their behalf. Joseph asks the cupbearer not just to think of him but to act for him. The tragic irony of v. 23 — 'he did not remember' (lo-zakhar) — reverberates against this plea.
14. 'Show kindness to me' (ve'asita-na immadi chesed) — Joseph uses the word chesed, the same term used of God's steadfast love toward Joseph in 39:21. He asks for human chesed — faithful, loyal kindness — from a fellow prisoner. The request is modest and reasonable; its failure (v. 23) will be devastating.
14. 'Mention me to Pharaoh' (vehizkartani el-Par'oh) — another form of zakhar ('to remember, to mention, to bring to remembrance'). Joseph asks for two acts: internal remembering and external mentioning. He needs the cupbearer both to recall his situation and to speak on his behalf.
14. Register departure: chesed rendered here in a human-to-human request context — Joseph asks a fellow prisoner for personal favor, not invoking covenant obligation.
15. 'I was stolen — stolen away' (gunnov gunnabti) — the infinitive absolute construction (gunnov gunnabti) intensifies the verb: 'I was indeed stolen, utterly stolen.' Joseph uses this emphatic form to underscore the injustice of his situation. He does not name his brothers or describe the specifics of his sale — a notable restraint. He simply states the fact of his kidnapping.

15. 'The land of the Hebrews' (erets ha'Ivrim) — this is the earliest biblical reference to Canaan as 'the land of the Hebrews.' Joseph identifies himself with his people and their land, even after years in Egypt. He has not assimilated; he knows where he belongs.
15. 'The pit' (bor) — the same word used for the cistern into which his brothers threw him (37:24). The linguistic echo connects Joseph's two unjust imprisonments: the cistern in Canaan and the dungeon in Egypt. In both cases, he is innocent; in both cases, he is cast into a bor. The word also evokes the grave or Sheol, deepening the sense of Joseph's descent.
15. 'I have done nothing' (lo asiti me'umah) — Joseph protests his total innocence. He was stolen from Canaan (not sold as a criminal); he did nothing in Potiphar's house to deserve imprisonment. Joseph stands before God and men as blameless — yet he suffers. The narrative raises the question of theodicy without resolving it, trusting the reader to see God's hidden hand.
16. 'Saw that the interpretation was favorable' (vayyar... ki tov patar) — the baker is encouraged by the positive outcome of the cupbearer's dream and steps forward to share his own, hoping for a similar verdict. The word tov ('good, favorable') reveals his motive: he speaks because the first interpretation was favorable, not because he trusts the interpreter. This is a fateful miscalculation.
16. 'Three baskets of white bread' (sheloshah sallei chori) — the word chori is debated. It may mean 'white bread' (from chur, 'white'), 'perforated bread' (from chor, 'hole'), or 'baked goods' in a general sense. The traditional rendering 'white baskets' (KJV) takes chori as describing the baskets rather than their contents, but the context of a baker's dream suggests the adjective modifies the bread. The three baskets, like the three branches, will correspond to three days.
17. 'All kinds of baked food for Pharaoh' (mikkol ma'akhal Par'oh ma'aseh ofeh) — literally 'from every food of Pharaoh, the work of a baker.' The top basket contained the finest royal provisions — the baker's own handiwork. Yet in the dream, this food is devoured by birds, signifying that the baker will no longer serve Pharaoh.
17. 'The birds were eating them from the basket on my head' — the birds consuming the food from the baker's head is the ominous element. In the cupbearer's dream, the dreamer actively serves Pharaoh (pressing grapes, placing the cup); in the baker's dream, the dreamer is passive while birds consume what should be served to Pharaoh. The baker cannot protect or deliver his goods — he has lost control. The birds foreshadow the fate described in v. 19: birds will eat his flesh.
18. 'Joseph answered and said' (vayya'an Yosef vayyomer) — the paired verbs 'answered and said' (a common Hebrew narrative formula) here carry weight: Joseph must deliver news he knows the baker does not want to hear. He does not soften or delay — he interprets faithfully, whether the message brings joy or doom. The interpreter's fidelity to the divine message transcends personal preference.
18. The interpretive framework is identical to the cupbearer's dream: three objects (baskets) equal three days. The structural parallel heightens the contrast between the two outcomes.
19. 'Pharaoh will lift up your head from upon you' (yissa Par'oh et-roshkha me'alekha) — this is one of the most chilling wordplays in all of Scripture. The phrase begins identically to v. 13 — 'Pharaoh will lift up your head' — raising the baker's hope for a split second before the devastating addition: 'from upon you' (me'alekha). The same idiom that meant 'to show favor' now means 'to decapitate' or 'to remove your head from your body.' The reader who heard the first interpretation now hears the same words twisted into a death sentence.
19. 'Hang you on a tree' (vetalah otekha al-ets) — impalement or public display of the body after execution was a common practice in the ancient Near East. The 'tree' (ets) could be a stake or a wooden pole. The public display served as a deterrent and a sign of royal power.
19. 'The birds will eat your flesh' — this gruesome detail connects back to the dream: the birds that ate baked goods from the basket on the baker's head will eat his flesh from his body. The dream's symbolism resolves with horrifying literalness. What seemed like a minor nuisance (birds eating bread) proves to be a portent of death.
20. 'Pharaoh's birthday' (yom hulledet et-Par'oh) — literally 'the day of the bearing of Pharaoh.' This is one of the earliest references to a birthday celebration in ancient literature. Egyptian records confirm that Pharaohs celebrated their birthdays with feasts and acts of royal clemency (or judgment). The birthday feast provides the occasion for the fulfillment of Joseph's interpretations.
20. 'He lifted up the head of the chief cupbearer and the head of the chief baker' — the narrator uses the ambiguous phrase 'lifted up the head' (vayyissa et-rosh) for both men simultaneously, maintaining the tension for one more verse. Only in vv. 21–22 will the reader learn which lifting was restoration and which was execution. The narrator masterfully sustains the wordplay from vv. 13 and 19.
21. 'He restored the chief cupbearer to his position' (vayyashev et-sar hamashqim al-mashqehu) — the verb shuv ('to return, to restore') in the Hiphil, exactly as Joseph predicted in v. 13. The cupbearer is returned to 'his cupbearing' (mashqehu), the very office from which he was removed.
21. 'He placed the cup on Pharaoh's palm' (vayyitten hakkos al-kaf Par'oh) — this detail echoes the cupbearer's dream (v. 11) almost verbatim. The dream is fulfilled with precise literalness, confirming Joseph's interpretation and, more fundamentally, confirming the divine source of that interpretation.
22. 'But the chief baker he hanged' (ve'et sar ha'ofim talah) — the sentence is stark and unadorned. No details of the execution are given beyond the single verb talah ('to hang, to impale'). The contrast with the cupbearer's restoration is absolute: one returns to life at court, the other is publicly executed.
22. 'Just as Joseph had interpreted to them' (ka'asher patar lahem Yosef) — the narrator's summary verdict. Both dreams were fulfilled exactly as Joseph had said, validating his claim that interpretations belong to God (v. 8). This phrase also prepares the reader for chapter 41, where Joseph will

again interpret dreams — this time for Pharaoh — and again be proven correct.

- 23. 'Did not remember... forgot him' (lo-zakhar... vayyishkachehu) — the chapter's devastating final note. Two verbs of forgetting hammer the point: the cupbearer neither remembered (zakhar) nor failed to forget — he actively forgot (shakach). The double expression is emphatic redundancy: the cupbearer's failure is complete and thoroughgoing.
- 23. The wordplay with Joseph's plea in v. 14 is pointed and painful. Joseph asked: 'remember me' (zekhartani) and 'mention me' (vehizkartani). The cupbearer does neither. The verb zakhar that Joseph used in hope is now negated: lo-zakhar. The word Joseph used as a plea becomes the word of his continued imprisonment.
- 23. Theologically, the cupbearer's forgetfulness extends Joseph's suffering but also extends the divine timetable. Joseph will not leave prison through human remembrance but through divine orchestration — when Pharaoh himself dreams (chapter 41). Human faithlessness cannot thwart divine purpose; it can only delay and redirect the path by which that purpose is fulfilled.
- 23. The chapter ends with Joseph still in prison, still forgotten, still waiting. The reader is left in suspense — a narrative strategy that mirrors Joseph's own experience of prolonged, unexplained suffering. The resolution will come, but not yet.

41

Summary: *Two full years later, Pharaoh dreams of seven fat cows devoured by seven lean cows, and seven plump ears of grain swallowed by seven thin ones. No one can interpret. The cupbearer remembers Joseph, who is rushed from prison. Joseph credits God, interprets the dreams as seven years of abundance followed by seven of famine, and proposes a plan. Pharaoh elevates Joseph to second-in-command over all Egypt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joseph's repeated insistence — 'it is not in me; God will give Pharaoh a favorable answer' (v. 16) — is the theological heart of the chapter: human wisdom interprets nothing; God reveals. The transformation from prisoner to prince happens in a single day. Joseph's Egyptian name (Zaphenath-paneah) and Egyptian wife (Asenath, daughter of a priest of On) mark his complete integration into Egyptian society. His sons' names encode his theology: Manasseh ('God has made me forget my hardship') and Ephraim ('God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction').*

Translation Friction: *Joseph's Egyptian name Zaphenath-paneah (v. 45) is of uncertain etymology — proposed meanings include 'God speaks and he lives' or 'the one who furnishes the sustenance of the land.' We transliterated it and noted the ambiguity. The phrase 'Pharaoh's dream is one' (v. 25) — the two dreams carry a single message — establishes a principle of doubled revelation as divine confirmation that appears elsewhere (cf. Pharaoh's doubling in v. 32, and Joseph's two dreams in ch. 37).*

Connections: *Joseph's elevation mirrors Daniel's rise in Nebuchadnezzar's court (Daniel 2:46-49). The signet ring, fine linen, and gold chain (41:42) echo the investiture of Mordecai (Esther 8:2, 15). The famine that drives Jacob's family to Egypt fulfills the prophecy of 15:13. Joseph at thirty (41:46) enters public service at the same age David begins to reign (2 Samuel 5:4).*

¹It happened at the end of two full years that Pharaoh dreamed, and behold, he was standing by the Nile. ²And behold, seven cows came up out of the Nile, beautiful in appearance and fat in flesh, and they grazed among the reeds. ³And behold, seven other cows came up after them from the Nile, ugly in appearance and thin in flesh, and they stood beside the other cows on the bank of the Nile. ⁴The cows that were ugly in appearance and thin in flesh devoured the seven cows that were beautiful in appearance and fat. Then Pharaoh awoke. ⁵He fell asleep and dreamed a second time, and behold, seven ears of grain came up on a single stalk, plump and good. ⁶And behold, seven ears of grain, thin and scorched by the east wind, sprouted after them. ⁷The thin ears swallowed the seven plump and full ears. Then Pharaoh awoke, and behold — it was a dream. ⁸In the morning his spirit was troubled, so he sent and summoned all the magicians of Egypt and all its wise men. Pharaoh told them his dream, but there was no one who could interpret it for Pharaoh. ⁹Then the chief cupbearer spoke to Pharaoh, saying, "I call to mind my offenses today. ¹⁰Pharaoh was angry with his servants and placed me in custody in the house of the captain of the guard — both me and the chief baker. ¹¹We dreamed a dream on the same night, he and I; each of us dreamed according to the interpretation of his own dream. ¹²A Hebrew youth was there with us, a servant of the captain of the guard.

We told him our dreams, and he interpreted them for us — he interpreted each man's dream according to its meaning. ¹³It came about just as he interpreted for us — so it happened. I was restored to my position, and the other was hanged." ¹⁴Pharaoh sent and summoned Joseph, and they rushed him from the dungeon. He shaved and changed his garments and came before Pharaoh. ¹⁵Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I have dreamed a dream, and there is no one who can interpret it. But I have heard it said of you that you can hear a dream and interpret it." ¹⁶Joseph answered Pharaoh, saying, "It is not in me. God will give Pharaoh a favorable answer." ¹⁷Pharaoh said to Joseph, "In my dream, behold, I was standing on the bank of the Nile. ¹⁸And behold, seven cows came up from the Nile, fat in flesh and beautiful in form, and they grazed among the reeds. ¹⁹Then behold, seven other cows came up after them, wretched and very ugly in form and gaunt in flesh. I have never seen anything so bad in all the land of Egypt. ²⁰The gaunt and ugly cows devoured the first seven fat cows. ²¹They entered their bellies, but it could not be known that they had entered them, for their appearance was just as ugly as at the beginning. Then I awoke. ²²Then I saw in my dream, and behold, seven ears of grain came up on a single stalk, full and good. ²³And behold, seven ears of grain, shriveled, thin, and scorched by the east wind, sprouted after them. ²⁴The thin ears swallowed the seven good ears. I told this to the magicians, but there was no one who could explain it to me." ²⁵Joseph said to Pharaoh, "The dream of Pharaoh is one. What God is about to do, He has declared to Pharaoh. ²⁶The seven good cows are seven years, and the seven good ears of grain are seven years — the dream is one. ²⁷The seven thin and ugly cows that came up after them are seven years, and the seven empty ears scorched by the east wind will be seven years of famine. ²⁸This is the thing I have spoken to Pharaoh: what God is about to do, He has shown to Pharaoh. ²⁹Behold, seven years are coming of great abundance throughout all the land of Egypt. ³⁰Then seven years of famine will arise after them, and all the abundance will be forgotten in the land of Egypt, and the famine will consume the land. ³¹The abundance will not be known in the land because of the famine that follows, for it will be very severe. ³²As for the dream being repeated to Pharaoh twice — it is because the thing is established by God, and God will soon bring it about. ³³Now therefore, let Pharaoh seek out a man who is discerning and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt. ³⁴Let Pharaoh take action and appoint overseers over the land, and take a fifth of the produce of the land of Egypt during the seven years of abundance. ³⁵Let them collect all the food of these good years that are coming, and let them store up grain under the authority of Pharaoh as food in the cities, and guard it. ³⁶The food will serve as a reserve for the land against the seven years of famine that will occur in the land of Egypt, so that the land will not be cut off by the famine." ³⁷The proposal was good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of all his servants. ³⁸Pharaoh said to his servants, "Can we find anyone like this — a man in whom is the Spirit of God?" ³⁹Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Since God has made all this known to you, there is no one as discerning and wise as you. ⁴⁰You shall be over my house, and all my people shall be governed by your command. Only with respect to the throne will I be greater than you." ⁴¹Pharaoh said to Joseph, "See, I have set you over all the land of Egypt." ⁴²Pharaoh removed his signet ring from his hand and placed it on Joseph's hand. He clothed him in garments of fine linen and placed a gold chain around his neck. ⁴³He had him ride in the second chariot that was his, and they cried out before him, "Avrekh!" Thus he set him over all the land of Egypt. ⁴⁴Pharaoh said to Joseph, "I am Pharaoh, and without your consent no one shall lift hand or foot in all the land of Egypt." ⁴⁵Pharaoh named Joseph Zaphenath-paneah and gave him Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, priest of On, as his wife. Then Joseph went out over all the land of Egypt. ⁴⁶Joseph was thirty years old when he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. Joseph went out from Pharaoh's presence and traveled throughout all the land of Egypt. ⁴⁷During the seven years of abundance, the land produced in great handfuls. ⁴⁸He collected all the food of the seven years of abundance in the land of Egypt and stored the food in the cities. The produce of the fields surrounding each city he stored within it. ⁴⁹Joseph stored up grain like the sand of the sea, so very much that he stopped counting, for it was beyond measure. ⁵⁰Two sons were born to Joseph before the years of famine came, whom Asenath, the daughter of Potiphera, priest of On, bore to him. ⁵¹Joseph named the firstborn Manasseh, "For God has made me forget all my hardship and all my father's house." ⁵²The second he named Ephraim, "For God has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction." ⁵³The seven years of abundance that had been in the land of Egypt came to an end. ⁵⁴The seven years of famine began to come, just as Joseph had said. There was famine in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was bread. ⁵⁵When all the land of Egypt was famished, the people cried out to Pharaoh for bread. Pharaoh said to all Egypt, "Go to Joseph; whatever he says to you, do." ⁵⁶The famine spread over the whole face of the earth.

Joseph opened all the storehouses and sold grain to the Egyptians, for the famine was severe in the land of Egypt. ⁵⁷All the earth came to Egypt, to Joseph, to buy grain, for the famine was severe in all the earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'At the end of two full years' (miqqets shenatayim yamim) — literally 'at the cutting off of two years of days.' The phrase shenatayim yamim emphasizes the fullness of the period. Two additional years pass after the cupbearer's release (40:23), during which Joseph remains forgotten in prison. The narrator marks this painful interval precisely.
1. 'The Nile' (hayy'or) — the Hebrew ye'or is an Egyptian loanword derived from the Egyptian itrw, referring specifically to the Nile River. The Nile was the lifeblood of Egypt — its annual flooding determined agricultural prosperity or famine. That Pharaoh's dream begins at the Nile signals its agricultural significance.
2. 'Beautiful in appearance and fat in flesh' (yefot mar'eh uvriot basar) — the two adjectives convey health and abundance. Fat cattle in the ancient Near East signified prosperity and adequate pastureland. The emphasis on their appearance foreshadows the contrasting ugliness of the second group.
2. 'Among the reeds' (ba'achu) — the word achu is another Egyptian loanword, referring to marsh grass or reeds along the Nile. The KJV's 'meadow' loses the Egyptian specificity. Cows grazing in Nile marshland was a quintessentially Egyptian scene.
3. 'Ugly in appearance and thin in flesh' (ra'ot mar'eh vedaqqot basar) — the exact inversion of the first group. Where the first cows were 'beautiful' (yefot) and 'fat' (beri'ot), these are 'ugly' (ra'ot) and 'thin' (daqqot). The deliberate contrast prepares for the interpretation: abundance versus famine.
3. 'Stood beside the other cows' — the two groups standing together on the Nile bank creates a surreal, dreamlike image that heightens the tension before the devouring.
4. 'Devoured' (vattokhlnah) — the spectacle of thin cows consuming fat ones is grotesque and unnatural, precisely the quality that makes it a divine dream rather than an ordinary one. The devouring is total — seven consume seven — yet as the retelling in v. 21 will reveal, the thin cows show no sign of having eaten.
4. Pharaoh awakes but will fall asleep again to receive the second dream (v. 5). The pattern of double dreams — two witnesses confirming one message — is a recurring motif in the Joseph narrative (cf. 37:5-9, 40:5).
5. 'Ears of grain' (shibbolim) — the KJV's 'ears of corn' reflects British English usage where 'corn' meant any cereal grain. The Hebrew shibbolim refers to the head or ear of a grain stalk, most likely wheat or barley in the Egyptian context.
5. 'On a single stalk' (beqaneh echad) — the number 'one' (echad) will become thematically significant when Joseph declares 'the dream of Pharaoh is one' (echad, v. 25). Seven ears on a single stalk is botanically unusual, marking this as a supernatural vision.
5. 'Plump and good' (beri'ot vetovot) — beri'ot ('healthy, fat') echoes the description of the fat cows. The parallel vocabulary between the two dreams reinforces their unified meaning.
6. 'Thin and scorched by the east wind' (daqqot ushedufot qadim) — the east wind (qadim) is the hot, dry sirocco blowing from the Arabian desert. In Egypt and the Levant, this wind could devastate crops in a matter of hours. The term shedufot ('scorched, blasted') describes grain withered beyond recovery.
6. The east wind is elsewhere associated with divine judgment (Exodus 14:21; Psalm 48:7; Jonah 4:8). Its appearance in Pharaoh's dream subtly signals that the coming famine is not mere natural disaster but a divinely ordained event.
7. 'Swallowed' (vattivla'nah) — from bala ('to swallow, engulf'). A different verb than 'devoured' (akhal) used of the cows. The thin ears swallow the healthy ones whole, an even more disturbing image than cows eating cows.
7. 'And behold — it was a dream' (vehinnech chalom) — this concluding phrase captures Pharaoh's disorientation upon waking. The vividness of the double dream has shaken him. The phrase also hints that though it was 'only' a dream, its significance is very real.
8. 'His spirit was troubled' (vatippa'em rucho) — from pa'am, meaning 'to be disturbed, agitated, struck.' The same verb describes Nebuchadnezzar's disturbance in Daniel 2:1-3. Pharaoh senses the dream carries weighty significance but cannot decode it. His inner turmoil drives him to summon Egypt's entire intellectual establishment.
8. 'Magicians' (chartummei) — the Hebrew chartom is likely derived from Egyptian hry-tp, a title for priestly scholars trained in sacred texts, dream interpretation, and ritual knowledge. These were not mere conjurers but learned members of the priestly class who studied the Egyptian dream manuals.
8. 'Wise men' (chakameiha) — the chakamim were counselors and sages who advised the court on matters of state and interpretation. Together with the chartummim, they represent the full intellectual and spiritual resources of Egypt — all of which prove inadequate before a dream sent by the God of Israel.
8. 'There was no one who could interpret it for Pharaoh' (ve'ein-poter otam le-Far'oh) — the failure of Egypt's best underscores the narrative theology: true interpretation belongs to God alone (cf. 40:8). Human wisdom, however sophisticated, cannot decode divine revelation without divine enablement.

9. 'I call to mind my offenses' (et-chata'ai ani mazkir hayyom) — the verb zakar ('to remember') stands in sharp contrast to 40:23, where the cupbearer 'did not remember' (lo-zakar) Joseph. The irony is rich: the cupbearer 'remembers' his own failures while confessing that he had forgotten his benefactor. His self-serving memory finally serves God's purposes.
9. 'My offenses' (chata'ai) — plural. He frames his failure to remember Joseph as one among his faults. The word chata ('sin, offense') is the same root used in 40:1 for the original offense against Pharaoh. The cupbearer's confession is carefully diplomatic — he acknowledges wrongdoing while positioning himself as penitent.
10. The cupbearer recounts the events of chapter 40 in summary form. His narrative is selective — he emphasizes his own imprisonment but omits details that might distract from the main point: the Hebrew prisoner who accurately interpreted dreams.
11. The cupbearer echoes the narrator's language from 40:5 almost exactly. His account is trustworthy in its factual details, even if his motives for telling it are self-serving.
12. 'A Hebrew youth' (na'ar ivri) — the cupbearer's description of Joseph is deliberately minimizing. Na'ar can mean 'youth, boy, servant' — it emphasizes low social status. 'Hebrew' (ivri) marks Joseph as a foreigner. The cupbearer describes him as a young foreign slave — hardly a credible rival to Egypt's professional dream interpreters. Yet this very description underscores the power of God working through an unlikely vessel.
12. 'A servant of the captain of the guard' (eved lesar hattabbachim) — Joseph is identified by his servile position, not by name. The cupbearer's description strips Joseph of all dignity. Yet this lowly servant will, within hours, become the second most powerful man in Egypt.
13. 'Just as he interpreted for us — so it happened' (ka'asher patar lanu ken hayah) — this is the cupbearer's testimonial to Joseph's prophetic accuracy. The perfect correspondence between interpretation and outcome validates Joseph as a true interpreter of divine messages.
13. 'I was restored to my position' (oti heshiv al-kanni) — the cupbearer places himself first in the outcome, naturally. His restoration matters most to him.
13. 'The other was hanged' (ve'oto talah) — the baker's execution is reported with chilling brevity. The cupbearer wastes no words on the dead man's fate.
14. 'They rushed him from the dungeon' (vayritsuhu min-habbor) — from ruts ('to run'). The urgency is palpable — Pharaoh's need is immediate. The word bor ('pit, dungeon') is the same word used when Joseph's brothers threw him into the pit (37:24). Joseph's journey from pit to palace is about to be completed.
14. 'He shaved' (vayegallach) — shaving was an Egyptian custom; Hebrews typically wore beards. Joseph's shaving indicates his preparation to appear before Pharaoh according to Egyptian court protocol. He must present himself acceptably in the culture where God has placed him.
14. 'Changed his garments' (vayechalef simlotav) — Joseph's garments have marked his story: the ornamented robe stripped by his brothers (37:23), the garment seized by Potiphar's wife (39:12), and now prison clothes exchanged for garments fit for Pharaoh's court. Each change of clothing marks a turning point in his narrative.
15. 'You can hear a dream and interpret it' (tishma chalom liftor oto) — Pharaoh credits Joseph with the ability to 'hear' (shama) a dream — that is, to understand its inner meaning. The verb shama implies not just hearing but comprehending. Pharaoh's desperation has brought him to a foreign prisoner.
16. 'It is not in me' (bil'adai) — Joseph's immediate deflection is theologically crucial. He refuses any claim to personal ability. The contrast with Egypt's professional interpreters could not be sharper: they claimed expertise but failed; Joseph disclaims expertise but will succeed, because the source is God, not human skill.
16. 'God will give Pharaoh a favorable answer' (Elohim ya'aneh et-shelom Par'oh) — literally 'God will answer the peace/welfare of Pharaoh.' Joseph uses the generic Elohim ('God') rather than YHWH when speaking to Pharaoh — appropriate since Pharaoh would not know Israel's covenant name. The word shalom here means 'well-being, favorable outcome' — Joseph assures Pharaoh that God's answer will address his concern.
16. Joseph's response echoes 40:8: 'Do not interpretations belong to God?' Throughout the narrative, Joseph consistently attributes his gift to God, never to himself. This theological humility is central to his character.
17. Pharaoh now recounts his dream in full. His retelling (vv. 17-24) closely follows the narrator's account (vv. 1-7) but includes subtle additions that reveal Pharaoh's emotional state — particularly his emphasis on the ugliness of the thin cows (v. 19) and the impossibility of telling they had eaten (v. 21).
18. Pharaoh's retelling of the first dream uses slightly different word order than the narrator's version in v. 2, placing 'fat in flesh' before 'beautiful in form.' These minor variations are characteristic of oral retelling and mark this as Pharaoh's own perspective on the dream.
19. Pharaoh adds details not in the narrator's original account: 'I have never seen anything so bad in all the land of Egypt.' This personal commentary reveals the depth of Pharaoh's disturbance. The dream has shaken him precisely because its imagery exceeded anything in his experience.
19. 'Wretched' (dallot) — from dal ('poor, weak, thin'). This additional adjective is absent from the narrator's account in v. 3, suggesting Pharaoh's memory has amplified the horror of the thin cows.

19. 'Gaunt' (raqqot) — from raq ('thin, lean'). A different adjective than daqqot used in v. 3, though with similar meaning. Pharaoh searches for words to convey the emaciation he saw.
20. Pharaoh's retelling continues to track the original dream closely while emphasizing the grotesque quality of the devouring.
21. 'It could not be known that they had entered them' — this crucial detail, absent from the narrator's version in vv. 1-4, is Pharaoh's own addition. It intensifies the nightmarish quality: the thin cows consumed seven fat cows yet showed absolutely no sign of having eaten. This impossibility — consumption without satisfaction — perfectly prefigures the famine: the land will 'consume' its stored abundance, yet the hunger will remain unabated.
21. The detail also carries theological weight: abundance devoured by scarcity without visible change means the famine will be so severe that no trace of the former plenty will remain (cf. v. 31).
22. Pharaoh transitions to the second dream. His retelling of the grain dream mirrors the original with only minor variations.
23. 'Shriveled' (tseenumot) — this word appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, adding a term not present in the narrator's account. Pharaoh's vocabulary grows more vivid as he recalls the horror of the diseased grain. The hapax legomenon (word occurring only once) contributes to the nightmarish specificity of his retelling.
24. 'There was no one who could explain it to me' (ve'ein maggid li) — Pharaoh concludes his retelling with this emphatic statement of his interpreters' failure. The verb higgid ('to tell, declare, explain') differs from patar ('to interpret') used in v. 8. Pharaoh is not merely looking for a technical interpretation — he wants someone to 'tell' him what the dream means for his kingdom.
24. The closing quotation mark ends Pharaoh's extended speech (vv. 17-24). Joseph will now respond with an interpretation that not only decodes the dream but provides a practical plan of action.
25. 'The dream of Pharaoh is one' (chalom Par'oh echad hu) — Joseph's opening declaration cuts to the theological heart of the matter. The two dreams are not two messages but one message given twice. The word echad ('one') carries the weight of unity and singularity — the same word used in the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4). God speaks with unified purpose.
25. 'What God is about to do, He has declared to Pharaoh' — Joseph immediately reframes the dream from a puzzle to be solved into a revelation to be received. God is not hiding information; He is disclosing it. The dream is not a threat but a warning — and a warning implies the possibility of preparation.
25. Joseph's use of ha'Elohim ('the God' with the definite article) is significant. Before Pharaoh, he speaks of God in terms an Egyptian can understand, yet the definite article subtly asserts that this is the God, not merely one among Egypt's many deities.
26. Joseph's interpretation is direct and unambiguous: cows and grain ears both represent years. The parallel is exact — seven good of each represent the same seven good years. By restating 'the dream is one' (chalom echad hu), Joseph drives home that both dreams deliver the identical message through different agricultural imagery.
27. 'Seven years of famine' (sheva shenei ra'av) — Joseph names the crisis directly. The word ra'av ('famine, hunger') appears here for the first time in the interpretation. The famine will dominate the remainder of Genesis, driving the family of Israel to Egypt and ultimately fulfilling God's word to Abraham (15:13).
27. 'Empty' (hareqot) — the ears are not merely thin but empty — they contain no grain at all. The image is one of total agricultural failure, not merely reduced yield.
28. 'What God is about to do, He has shown to Pharaoh' — Joseph reiterates the theological framework: the dream is God's gracious disclosure of future events. God does not simply bring judgment; He warns in advance so that wise preparation can mitigate catastrophe. This principle of divine warning before judgment runs throughout Scripture (cf. Amos 3:7).
29. 'Great abundance' (sava gadol) — the word sava means 'plenty, abundance, satiety.' Combined with gadol ('great'), it describes extraordinary agricultural productivity. The good years will be remarkable in their bounty, providing the surplus needed to survive the coming scarcity.
30. 'All the abundance will be forgotten' (venishkach kol-hassava) — the verb shakach ('to forget') describes a famine so severe that people will have no memory of ever having had enough. This corresponds to Pharaoh's dream detail about the thin cows showing no sign of having eaten the fat ones (v. 21).
30. 'The famine will consume the land' (vekhillah hara'av et-ha'arets) — from kalah ('to complete, to finish, to consume'). The famine will utterly exhaust the land's resources. The verb echoes the devouring in the dreams — just as thin cows devoured fat ones, so famine will devour the land.
31. 'Will not be known' (lo-yivvada) — the same language as Pharaoh's observation that the thin cows showed no sign of having consumed the fat ones (v. 21). Joseph connects dream imagery to real-world prediction with precision.
31. 'Very severe' (kaved hu me'od) — from kaved ('heavy, weighty, grievous'). The same root describes Pharaoh's hardened heart in Exodus. Here it conveys the crushing weight of the famine that will obliterate all memory of prosperity.
32. 'The thing is established by God' (nakhon haddavar me'im ha'Elohim) — from kun ('to be firm, established, certain'). The doubling of the dream is not redundancy but confirmation. In ancient Near Eastern thinking, repetition signified certainty. Joseph applies this principle theologically: God's double communication means the matter is irrevocably decided.

32. 'God will soon bring it about' (umemaher ha'Elohim la'asoto) — from mahar ('to hasten, to hurry'). Not only is the thing certain; it is imminent. God is already in motion. This urgency transitions naturally into Joseph's practical advice — there is no time to waste.
32. The principle of doubled revelation for confirmed certainty appears elsewhere in Scripture (cf. Numbers 23:19; Isaiah 46:11). Joseph's hermeneutical framework — that God speaks clearly and purposefully — shapes his entire response.
33. 'A man who is discerning and wise' (ish navon vekhakham) — Joseph transitions boldly from interpretation to policy advice. No one asked for his counsel, yet he offers it. The adjective navon ('discerning, understanding') implies someone who can perceive patterns and make sound judgments — precisely what Joseph has just demonstrated. Khakham ('wise') adds practical wisdom to theoretical understanding.
33. Joseph's unsolicited advice is remarkably bold for a prisoner speaking to the king of Egypt. Yet it flows naturally from the interpretation: if the prophecy is certain and imminent, action must follow immediately.
34. 'Appoint overseers' (veyafqed peqidim) — from paqad ('to appoint, oversee, attend to'). The same root used repeatedly of Joseph's administrative roles. A bureaucratic infrastructure is needed to manage the collection and storage effort.
34. 'Take a fifth' (vechimmesh) — the verb chimesh means 'to take a fifth, to exact twenty percent.' A twenty-percent tax during years of abundance would be tolerable and would accumulate enormous reserves over seven years. Joseph's plan is economically sound — it imposes sacrifice during prosperity to ensure survival during scarcity.
35. 'Store up grain' (veyitsberu-var) — from tsavar ('to heap up, store') and bar ('grain'). The plan involves massive centralized storage of grain reserves. The word bar specifically refers to threshed grain ready for storage.
35. 'Under the authority of Pharaoh' (tachat yad-Par'oh) — literally 'under the hand of Pharaoh.' The grain reserves must be under royal control to ensure systematic distribution during the famine, not left to private hoarding.
36. 'A reserve' (lefiqqadon) — from the same root paqad ('to appoint, attend to, deposit'). The noun piqqadon means a deposit or something entrusted for safekeeping. The stored grain is a trust — a reserve held against future need.
36. 'The land will not be cut off by the famine' (velo-tikkaret ha'arets bara'av) — from karat ('to cut off'). This is covenant-language: karat is the verb used for 'cutting' a covenant and for being 'cut off' from God's people. Joseph's plan aims to prevent the total destruction that unmitigated famine would bring.
36. Joseph's speech (vv. 25-36) is remarkable for its structure: theological interpretation followed by practical policy. He does not merely reveal what God will do; he proposes what Pharaoh should do in response. This integration of divine revelation with human responsibility is characteristic of biblical wisdom.
37. 'Good in the eyes of Pharaoh' (vayyitav haddavar be'einei Far'oh) — the expression be'einei ('in the eyes of') denotes approval and favorable judgment. That both Pharaoh and all his servants approved indicates unanimous recognition of Joseph's wisdom. No dissent is recorded — a remarkable response to advice from a foreign prisoner.
38. 'The Spirit of God' (ruach Elohim) — Pharaoh, an Egyptian polytheist, recognizes the divine spirit within Joseph. The phrase ruach Elohim echoes Genesis 1:2, where the Spirit of God moved over the waters. Pharaoh's use of the term does not necessarily reflect Hebrew theology — he may understand it within his own religious framework — but the narrator allows the reader to hear deeper resonances.
38. Pharaoh's rhetorical question expects the answer 'No.' There is no one like Joseph — no one else through whom God has so clearly spoken. The question implicitly nominates Joseph for the position he himself described in v. 33.
39. 'No one as discerning and wise as you' (ein-navon vekhakham kamokha) — Pharaoh echoes Joseph's own words from v. 33. Joseph described the ideal administrator as ish navon vekhakham; Pharaoh now declares Joseph himself to be that man. The irony is masterful — Joseph's advice was objectively sound, and Pharaoh independently concludes that the adviser is the best candidate for the role he described.
39. 'Since God has made all this known to you' — Pharaoh accepts Joseph's theological framework. He acknowledges that Joseph's wisdom comes from God, not from Egyptian training or human cleverness. This is remarkable coming from the divine king of Egypt.
40. 'Over my house' (al-beiti) — this phrase designates the office of vizier, the highest administrative position in Egypt, second only to Pharaoh. The 'house' (bayit) of Pharaoh encompasses the entire kingdom — its administration, economy, and governance.
40. 'All my people shall be governed by your command' (ve'al-pikha yishshaq kol-ammi) — the verb nashaq is difficult. It literally means 'to kiss' and may mean 'to be arranged/ordered by' (from a homonymous root) or 'to pay homage to.' The sense is clear: Joseph's word will be law for all Egypt.
40. 'Only with respect to the throne will I be greater than you' (raq hakkisse egdal mimmekka) — Pharaoh retains only the formal supremacy of the throne. In all practical matters, Joseph will exercise royal authority. The transformation is breathtaking: from foreign slave-prisoner to vice-regent of the world's most powerful empire, in a single audience.
41. 'See, I have set you' (re'eh natatti otkha) — the perfect tense natatti ('I have given/set') indicates an accomplished fact. Pharaoh's word is performative — by saying it, it is done. There is no deliberation, no waiting period. Joseph's appointment is immediate and irrevocable.
41. 'Over all the land of Egypt' (al kol-erets Mitsrayim) — Joseph's authority extends over the entirety of Egypt, not merely a province or department. The scope of his appointment matches the scope of the crisis.

42. 'His signet ring' (tabba'ato) — the royal signet ring bore Pharaoh's seal and authorized official documents. Giving it to Joseph transferred the power to issue decrees in Pharaoh's name. This is the ultimate symbol of delegated royal authority.
42. 'Garments of fine linen' (bigdei-shesh) — shesh is the finest Egyptian linen, made from flax grown along the Nile. Egyptian linen was renowned throughout the ancient world for its quality. The garments of office replace Joseph's prison clothes, continuing the theme of clothing as markers of status throughout his story.
42. 'A gold chain' (revid hazzahav) — the gold collar or chain was a standard Egyptian insignia of high office, well attested in Egyptian art and texts. These three gifts — ring, robes, chain — constitute the formal investiture of the vizier.
43. 'The second chariot' (merkevet hammishneh) — the chariot immediately behind Pharaoh's own, designating Joseph as second-in-command. The public procession served as both announcement and legitimation of Joseph's new authority.
43. 'Avrekhi!' (avrekhi) — this word has been debated for centuries. Possibilities include: (1) from barak ('to kneel') — a command to bow; (2) an Egyptian loanword meaning 'attention!' or 'make way!'; (3) from a root meaning 'tender father' (av rakh) — a title. The KJV's 'Bow the knee' follows the first interpretation. The term is preserved untranslated here because its exact meaning remains uncertain, and the transliteration conveys the public acclamation more vividly than any single translation could.
43. Joseph's investiture follows the pattern of Egyptian court ceremonies known from archaeological evidence: ring, garments, gold collar, chariot procession, and public acclamation.
44. 'I am Pharaoh' (ani Far'oh) — this emphatic self-identification invokes the full weight of royal authority. By prefacing Joseph's commission with his own identity, Pharaoh guarantees Joseph's authority with his own.
44. 'Without your consent no one shall lift hand or foot' (uvil'adekha lo-yarim ish et-yado ve'et-raglo) — the idiom 'lift hand or foot' means to take any action whatsoever. Joseph's authority is absolute and comprehensive — nothing happens in Egypt without his authorization. The phrase bil'adekha ('without you') echoes Joseph's bil'adai ('not in me') from v. 16, creating a wordplay: Joseph denied personal power in interpreting the dream; Pharaoh now grants him total power over the nation.
45. 'Zaphenath-paneah' (Tsofnat Pa'neah) — Joseph's Egyptian name. Its meaning is debated: possibilities include 'God speaks and he lives,' 'the man who knows things,' or 'sustainer of life.' The Egyptian name marks Joseph's full integration into Egyptian society while his Hebrew name (Yosef, 'may God add') preserves his Israelite identity.
45. 'Asenath' (Asenat) — Joseph's Egyptian wife. Her name may derive from Egyptian ns-Nt ('belonging to the goddess Neith'). Marriage to a priest's daughter integrated Joseph into Egypt's highest social class.
45. 'Potiphera, priest of On' (Poti Fera, kohen On) — On is the biblical name for Heliopolis, the center of Egyptian sun worship. Potiphera ('he whom Ra gave') is a distinct person from Potiphar of chapter 39, despite the similar names. The priestly connection places Joseph's new family at the pinnacle of Egyptian religious and social hierarchy.
45. 'Joseph went out over all the land of Egypt' — this concluding phrase marks the beginning of Joseph's administrative career. The verb 'went out' (yatsa) suggests an inspection tour — Joseph begins surveying the resources he must manage.
46. 'Thirty years old' (ben-sheloshim shanah) — Joseph was seventeen when sold (37:2), meaning thirteen years of slavery and imprisonment have passed. The narrator provides this chronological anchor to help the reader track the timeline: thirteen years of suffering have preceded this moment of exaltation.
46. 'When he stood before Pharaoh' (be'omdo lifnei Far'oh) — the phrase 'to stand before' (amad lifnei) is the standard expression for entering royal service. It marks Joseph's formal entry into the governing apparatus of Egypt.
46. The age of thirty carries significance: David began to reign at thirty (2 Samuel 5:4), and priests entered full service at thirty (Numbers 4:3). Whether these later parallels are intentional or coincidental, the narrator marks this as the age of Joseph's full maturity and authority.
47. 'In great handfuls' (liqmatzim) — from qomet ('handful, fist'). The plural intensifies the image: the harvest is so abundant that grain comes in overflowing fistfuls. The land itself — personified as an active agent — pours forth produce in quantities that stagger description.
48. Joseph's administrative system was decentralized for storage — grain from each region was stored in its nearest city — but centralized in authority. This practical arrangement minimized transportation costs during collection and would facilitate local distribution during the famine.
49. 'Like the sand of the sea' (kechol hayyam) — this is unmistakable covenant language. God promised Abraham descendants 'like the sand of the sea' (22:17; 32:12). The same phrase applied to grain creates a deliberate echo: God's provision of material abundance mirrors His promise of genealogical abundance. The covenant promises are being fulfilled even in Egypt, even through a pagan king, even through famine preparation.
49. 'He stopped counting, for it was beyond measure' (chadal lispor ki ein mispar) — the abundance exceeded the capacity of Egyptian accounting systems. This too echoes the Abrahamic promise: 'Count the stars, if you can count them' (15:5). The uncountable grain foreshadows the uncountable descendants.
50. 'Before the years of famine came' — the narrator places the births during the years of abundance, underscoring that Joseph's personal blessings — marriage, children — belong to the season of plenty. The covenant promise of descendants is being fulfilled even in exile.

50. The mention of Asenath's lineage ('daughter of Potiphra, priest of On') is repeated from v. 45, framing the birth notice with full identification. The sons of this union — half-Hebrew, half-Egyptian — will become two of the twelve tribes of Israel.
51. 'Manasseh' (Menasheh) — from the root *nashah* ('to forget'). The name is a testimony of healing: God has given Joseph the grace to release the pain of his past. The forgetting is not amnesia but the easing of anguish — Joseph will clearly remember his family (42:9), but the bitterness has been removed.
51. 'All my hardship and all my father's house' (*kol-amali ve'et kol-bet avi*) — the pairing is poignant. Joseph's 'hardship' (*amal*) includes slavery, false accusation, and imprisonment. 'All my father's house' suggests not just homesickness but the pain of being betrayed by his own brothers. That he names this 'forgetting' before the 'fruitfulness' of Ephraim suggests the healing of memory must precede the capacity for new joy.
51. The name also foreshadows the tribe of Manasseh, which will receive a significant inheritance in the promised land. Joseph's personal narrative of suffering and restoration becomes encoded in the tribal structure of Israel.
52. 'Ephraim' (Efrayim) — from the root *parah* ('to be fruitful'). The dual/intensive ending *-ayim* suggests 'doubly fruitful.' The name recalls God's original blessing in creation — 'be fruitful and multiply' (1:28) — and the specific promises to the patriarchs. Joseph sees his own fertility as evidence of God's covenant faithfulness.
52. 'In the land of my affliction' (*be'erets onyi*) — even as Joseph names his son 'Fruitful,' he acknowledges that Egypt remains 'the land of my affliction.' Prosperity has not erased the memory of suffering; rather, fruitfulness has emerged from affliction. This paradox — blessing in the place of pain — is central to the theology of the Joseph narrative.
52. The dual naming — Manasseh ('forgetting') and Ephraim ('fruitfulness') — traces a spiritual progression: first the healing of memory, then the capacity for new life. Together they testify that God transforms suffering into abundance.
53. 'Came to an end' (*vatikhleinah*) — from *kalah* ('to be complete, to come to an end'). The abundance was precisely bounded — seven years, no more. The narrator signals the pivot point of the entire Joseph story: from prosperity to crisis, from Egypt's sufficiency to the world's need.
54. 'Just as Joseph had said' (*ka'asher amar Yosef*) — the narrator validates Joseph's interpretation with this editorial confirmation. Everything Joseph predicted has come to pass exactly as stated.
54. 'There was famine in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was bread' — the contrast is stark and emphatic. The phrase 'all lands' (*kol-ha'aratsot*) indicates a famine of international scope, while Egypt alone has bread (*lechem*) — thanks entirely to Joseph's God-given wisdom and administration. Egypt becomes the world's granary and, crucially, the magnet that will draw Joseph's brothers south.
55. 'Go to Joseph; whatever he says to you, do' (*lekhu el-Yosef asher-yomar lakhem ta'asu*) — Pharaoh directs all of Egypt to Joseph as the sole source of provision. The command echoes the absolute authority granted in v. 44. Pharaoh himself defers to Joseph in the crisis.
55. The phrase has resonated in later Jewish and Christian tradition. In its narrative context, it confirms Joseph's position as the indispensable mediator between Pharaoh's resources and the people's need.
56. 'The whole face of the earth' (*kol-penei ha'arets*) — the expression suggests a universal scope, though practically it refers to the known world of the ancient Near East — Egypt, Canaan, and surrounding regions.
56. 'Opened all the storehouses' (*vayyiftach Yosef et-kol-asher bahem*) — literally 'opened all that was in them.' Joseph controls the release of the stored grain, distributing it strategically rather than allowing a free-for-all.
56. 'Sold grain' (*vayyishbor*) — from *shavar* ('to buy/sell grain'). Joseph does not give the grain away but sells it. This economic policy will have far-reaching consequences (47:13-26), eventually transferring all Egyptian wealth and land to Pharaoh.
57. 'All the earth came to Egypt, to Joseph' (*vekhoh-ha'arets ba'u Mitsraymah lishbor el-Yosef*) — the chapter concludes with Joseph as the focal point of the entire world's need. The phrase 'to Joseph' is emphatic — people come not merely to Egypt but specifically to Joseph. He is the conduit of life for the nations.
57. 'All the earth' (*kol-ha'arets*) — this phrase sets up the arrival of Joseph's brothers in chapter 42. Among the 'all' who come to buy grain from Joseph will be the very brothers who sold him into slavery. The divine plan, operating through famine, will bring about the family reunion that fulfills both Joseph's dreams and God's covenant purposes.
57. The chapter as a whole traces a stunning reversal: from dungeon to throne room, from forgotten prisoner to world provider. Joseph's thirteen years of suffering have been divinely orchestrated to position him at the exact intersection of divine promise and human need.

42

Summary: *Famine brings Joseph's ten brothers to Egypt to buy grain. Joseph recognizes them but conceals his identity, accuses them of spying, and imprisons them for three days. He keeps Simeon as hostage and demands they bring Benjamin. The brothers confess their guilt regarding Joseph. On the journey home, they discover their silver returned in their sacks and are terrified.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The narrator notes that 'Joseph remembered the dreams he had dreamed about them' (v. 9) — the sheaves bowing down are literally fulfilled as the brothers prostrate before him. The brothers' guilt-confession (v. 21) — 'we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us, and we did not listen' — reveals a detail never told in chapter 37: Joseph begged for his life, and they ignored him. Joseph weeps privately (v. 24), the first of several emotional breaks that build toward the climactic revelation. The returned silver (v. 28) provokes not gratitude but terror: 'What is this that God has done to us?'*

Translation Friction: *Joseph's accusation that the brothers are 'spies' (meraglim, v. 9) uses a term from military reconnaissance. The word carries overtones of vulnerability — Joseph names them as enemies to expose their true condition. The brothers' confession uses the term ashemim ('guilty,' v. 21), from the same root as the guilt offering (asham) in Leviticus 5 — their guilt is not merely psychological but has a sacrificial dimension we noted in the translator's remarks.*

Connections: *The brothers' bowing (42:6) fulfills Joseph's first dream (37:7). Simeon's detention (42:24) may reflect his role in the Shechem massacre (34:25) — he who used violence is now confined. The returned silver anticipates the silver cup test of chapter 44. Jacob's lament 'everything is against me' (42:36) contrasts with Joseph's later declaration 'God meant it for good' (50:20).*

¹When Jacob learned that there was grain in Egypt, Jacob said to his sons, "Why do you look at one another?" ²He said, "Look, I have heard that there is grain in Egypt. Go down there and buy grain for us from there, so that we may live and not die." ³So Joseph's ten brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt. ⁴But Benjamin, Joseph's brother, Jacob did not send with his brothers, for he said, "Lest harm befall him." ⁵The sons of Israel arrived at buy grain among those who came, for the famine was in the land of Canaan. ⁶Now Joseph was the governor over the land — he was the one who sold grain to all the people of the land. Joseph's brothers came and bowed down before him with their faces to the ground. ⁷Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them, but he made himself a stranger to them and spoke harshly to them. He said to them, "Where have you come from?" They said, "From the land of Canaan, to buy food." ⁸Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him. ⁹Joseph remembered the dreams he had dreamed about them and said to them, "You are spies! You have come to see the vulnerability of the land." ¹⁰They said to him, "No, my lord! Your servants have come to buy food. ¹¹We are all sons of one man. We are honest men. Your servants are not spies." ¹²He said to them, "No! You have come to see the vulnerability of the land." ¹³They said, "Your servants are twelve brothers, sons of one man in the land of Canaan. The youngest is with our father today, and one is no more." ¹⁴Joseph said to them, "It is just as I told you — you are spies! ¹⁵By this you shall be tested: As Pharaoh lives, you shall not leave this place unless your youngest brother comes here. ¹⁶Send one of you to bring your brother while the rest of you remain imprisoned, so that your words may be tested to see whether truth is with you. Otherwise, as Pharaoh lives, you are surely spies!" ¹⁷He gathered them into custody for three days. ¹⁸On the third day Joseph said to them, "Do this and live, for I fear God. ¹⁹If you are honest men, let one of your brothers be confined in the house of your imprisonment, and the rest of you go — carry grain for the hunger of your households. ²⁰But you must bring your youngest brother to me, so that your words may be verified and you will not die." And they did so. ²¹They said to one another, "Surely we are guilty concerning our brother, for we saw the distress of his soul when he pleaded with us, and we did not listen. That is why this distress has come upon us." ²²Reuben answered them, saying, "Did I not tell you, 'Do not sin against the boy'? But you would not listen. Now his blood — behold, it is being required." ²³They did not know that Joseph understood them, for there was an interpreter between them. ²⁴He turned away from them and wept. Then he returned to

them and spoke with them. He took Simeon from among them and bound him before their eyes. ²⁵Joseph gave orders to fill their vessels with grain, to return each man's silver to his sack, and to give them provisions for the journey. This was done for them. ²⁶They loaded their grain on their donkeys and departed from there. ²⁷When one of them opened his sack to give his donkey feed at the lodging place, he saw his silver — and behold, it was in the mouth of his bag. ²⁸He said to his brothers, "My silver has been returned! Here it is in my bag!" Their hearts sank, and trembling, they turned to one another, saying, "What is this that God has done to us?" ²⁹They came to Jacob their father in the land of Canaan and told him all that had happened to them, saying, ³⁰"The man, the lord of the land, spoke harshly to us and treated us as spies of the land. ³¹We said to him, 'We are honest men; we are not spies. ³²We are twelve brothers, sons of our father. One is no more, and the youngest is today with our father in the land of Canaan.' ³³The man, the lord of the land, said to us, 'By this I will know that you are honest men: leave one of your brothers with me, take grain for the hunger of your households, and go. ³⁴Bring your youngest brother to me, and I will know that you are not spies but honest men. Then I will return your brother to you, and you may trade freely in the land.'" ³⁵As they emptied their sacks, behold, every man's bundle of silver was in his sack. When they and their father saw the bundles of silver, they were afraid. ³⁶Jacob their father said to them, "You have bereaved me! Joseph is no more, Simeon is no more, and now you would take Benjamin! All these things are against me." ³⁷Reuben said to his father, "You may put my two sons to death if I do not bring him back to you. Entrust him to my care, and I will return him to you." ³⁸But he said, "My son shall not go down with you, for his brother is dead and he alone is left. If harm should befall him on the journey you are taking, you would bring down my gray hairs in sorrow to Sheol."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'When Jacob learned' (vayyar Ya'aqov) — literally 'Jacob saw.' The verb ra'ah ('to see') here means to perceive or learn, probably through reports from traveling merchants. Jacob's awareness of Egyptian grain supplies contrasts with his sons' apparent paralysis.
1. 'Why do you look at one another?' (lammah tittra'u) — the reflexive form of ra'ah suggests staring at each other in indecision. Jacob rebukes their inaction. The family is starving, and the sons do nothing. Jacob's directiveness here recalls the patriarch who once schemed for the blessing — age has not dulled his capacity for decisive action.
2. 'Go down' (redu) — the verb yarad ('to go down') is geographically appropriate (Canaan is higher than Egypt) but also carries theological weight. Abraham 'went down' to Egypt during famine (12:10); Isaac was told not to 'go down' (26:2). Each descent to Egypt marks a crisis point in the patriarchal narrative.
2. 'So that we may live and not die' (venichyeh velo namut) — the stark binary of life and death frames the entire journey. The brothers go to Egypt for physical survival, unaware that their journey will also confront them with their past sin and lead to moral and relational restoration.
3. 'Joseph's ten brothers' (achei-Yosef asarah) — the narrator identifies them as 'Joseph's brothers,' not 'Jacob's sons.' The perspective has shifted: the story is being told from Joseph's vantage point. They are ten because Benjamin stays behind (v. 4) and Joseph is already in Egypt. The number ten will resonate with the ten who originally conspired against Joseph (37:2, where Joseph was with the sons of Bilhah and Zilpah).
4. 'Benjamin, Joseph's brother' (Binyamin achi Yosef) — the narrator identifies Benjamin specifically as 'Joseph's brother,' distinguishing him from the ten. Benjamin and Joseph share the same mother, Rachel, making them full brothers. Jacob's protectiveness of Benjamin stems from the presumed loss of Joseph — Benjamin is the last living link to his beloved Rachel.
4. 'Lest harm befall him' (pen-yiqra'ennu ason) — the word ason ('harm, calamity, fatal accident') is relatively rare, appearing in Exodus 21:22-23 for bodily harm. Jacob's fear is not vague anxiety but specific dread of fatal catastrophe. The word will recur in v. 38 and 44:29, forming a thematic bracket around Jacob's refusal to release Benjamin.
4. Jacob's overprotectiveness of Benjamin mirrors and extends his earlier favoritism of Joseph. Having lost one son of Rachel (as he believes), he cannot risk the other. Yet this very protectiveness will be tested and overcome as the narrative progresses.
5. 'The sons of Israel' (benei Yisra'el) — the narrator switches from 'Joseph's brothers' to 'the sons of Israel,' using Jacob's covenant name. They come not as private individuals but as representatives of the covenant family.
5. 'Among those who came' (betokh habba'im) — they are anonymous members of the international throng coming to Egypt for grain (41:57). The covenant family is reduced to one group among many desperate nations. There is no special treatment, no divine fast-track — they wait in line like everyone else.
5. The famine in Canaan connects back to 41:57 and fulfills the prediction that the famine would affect 'all the earth.' The promised land itself cannot sustain the covenant family — only Egypt, under Joseph's administration, can provide.

6. 'The governor' (hashallit) — from shalat ('to rule, to have dominion'). The title designates Joseph as the supreme administrator, the one wielding executive power over Egypt's grain distribution. The term is stronger than a mere official — it denotes absolute authority.
6. 'Bowed down before him with their faces to the ground' (vayyishtachavu-lo appayim artsah) — the narrator pauses to let the reader absorb the moment: Joseph's brothers, who mocked his dreams of their bowing (37:8), now bow with faces pressed to the earth before the brother they sold. The fulfillment of the dream is exact — and the brothers are utterly unaware of it.
6. This is one of the most dramatically ironic moments in all of Scripture. The reader knows what the characters do not: the foreign governor before whom they prostrate themselves is their own brother. Twenty years of narrative tension converge in this single act of obeisance.
7. 'Recognized them' (vayyakkirem) — from nakar ('to recognize'). The verb is laden with irony: Joseph recognizes (makir) his brothers, but they do not recognize him. Twenty years, Egyptian dress, the shaved face, the royal office, and the use of an interpreter (v. 23) all make identification impossible from their side.
7. 'Made himself a stranger' (vayyitnakker) — from the same root nakar, but in the reflexive (hitpa'el) form. Joseph deliberately 'estranges' himself — he acts as one who does not recognize them. The wordplay between vayyakkirem ('he recognized them') and vayyitnakker ('he made himself strange') is untranslatable in English but central to the narrative artistry.
7. 'Spoke harshly' (vaydabber ittam qashot) — Joseph's harsh speech begins his extended test of his brothers. His severity is not revenge but a carefully calculated process of bringing them to genuine repentance. He needs to know whether they have changed since the day they sold him.
8. This brief sentence — one of the most powerful in Genesis — states the asymmetry that drives the entire drama of chapters 42-45. Joseph holds all the knowledge and all the power; his brothers have neither. The narrator's simple declaration invites the reader into Joseph's perspective: what would you do if the brothers who sold you into slavery stood before you, helpless and unknowing?
8. The verb nakar ('to recognize') appears for the third time in two verses, emphasizing the theme of recognition/non-recognition that structures the Joseph narrative. True recognition — of identity, of sin, of divine purpose — will come only in chapter 45.
9. 'Joseph remembered the dreams' (vayyizkor Yosef et hachalomot) — the verb zakar ('to remember') connects Joseph's memory to the cupbearer's remembering in 41:9. But Joseph's remembering is not self-serving — it is the recognition that God's purposes, revealed long ago in dreams, are now unfolding before his eyes. His brothers are bowing, exactly as the sheaves bowed in his dream (37:7).
9. 'You are spies' (meragelim attem) — Joseph's accusation is a strategic fiction designed to test his brothers and create conditions under which he can learn about Benjamin and his father. The charge of espionage was serious — potentially capital — and immediately puts the brothers on the defensive.
9. 'The vulnerability of the land' (ervat ha'arets) — literally 'the nakedness of the land.' The term ervah ('nakedness') carries connotations of shame and exposure. Military scouts would seek out a land's undefended areas — its 'nakedness.' The metaphor is vivid: exposed territory, like exposed flesh, is vulnerable to attack.
10. 'My lord' (adoni) — the brothers address Joseph with the deferential title adoni, unknowingly fulfilling the dream imagery of subordination. The irony deepens with each 'my lord' — they are literally lording over themselves the brother they once cast down.
10. 'Your servants' (avadekha) — they call themselves Joseph's servants. The language of servitude echoes the dreams where their sheaves bowed to his. Everything they say, unwittingly, confirms the very dreams they once rejected.
11. 'Sons of one man' (benei ish-echad) — the brothers appeal to their family unity as evidence of innocence. A single family sending ten sons as spies would be improbable and strategically foolish. But the claim 'sons of one man' is also deeply ironic: they are the ones who tore that family apart by selling their brother.
11. 'Honest men' (kenim) — from ken ('honest, upright, true'). The brothers' claim to honesty rings hollow for the reader who knows their history of deception — the bloodied coat presented to Jacob, the cover-up sustained for over twenty years. Yet this self-description also represents what they will need to become: truly honest men who face their past.
12. Joseph maintains the accusation, forcing the brothers to reveal more information. His interrogation technique is effective — by persisting in the false charge, he compels them to offer increasingly detailed accounts of their family, which is precisely what he wants to learn.
13. 'Twelve brothers' (shenim asar avadekha achim) — the brothers reveal the full family count, including both Joseph and Benjamin. They still count Joseph among their number, even as they claim he 'is no more.' The number twelve carries covenant significance — these twelve will become the twelve tribes.
13. 'The youngest is with our father today' — this is the information Joseph most wants: Benjamin is alive and with their father. The mention of 'our father' (avinu) also tells Joseph that Jacob is still living.
13. 'One is no more' (veha'echad einennu) — the brothers' euphemism for Joseph's presumed death is deliberately vague. They do not say 'he died' — because they do not know his fate. They only know they sold him, and he vanished into slavery. The phrase einennu ('he is not') could mean death or simply absence. For Joseph, hearing his brothers refer to him in these terms must be profoundly affecting.
14. Joseph seizes on their family information as supposed confirmation of his accusation. The logic is deliberately false — he uses their honesty against them. But the purpose is not punishment; it is to create the conditions under which he can bring Benjamin to Egypt and test whether his brothers have truly changed.

15. 'By this you shall be tested' (bezot tibbachenu) — from bachan ('to test, to examine, to try'). Joseph frames the demand for Benjamin as a test of their truthfulness. But the deeper test — which the brothers do not yet perceive — is a test of their character: will they sacrifice Benjamin as they sacrificed Joseph, or will they protect him?
15. 'As Pharaoh lives' (chei Far'oh) — Joseph swears by Pharaoh's life, the standard Egyptian oath. He does not swear by YHWH before these men who do not know his identity. The oath adds gravity to his demand — this is not negotiable.
16. Joseph's initial plan — send one, imprison the rest — is more severe than his eventual arrangement (v. 19-20). This initial harshness may be designed to maximize pressure on the brothers, or Joseph may be adjusting his strategy as the encounter unfolds.
16. 'Whether truth is with you' (ha'emet ittkhem) — the word emet ('truth, faithfulness') is loaded. The brothers' 'truth' about their family is factually correct, but their deeper truth — what actually happened to their brother — remains concealed. Joseph's testing process will eventually bring all truth to light.
17. 'Three days' (sheloshet yamim) — the three-day period allows time for the brothers to absorb the gravity of their situation and for Joseph to reconsider his approach. He will emerge on the third day with a modified plan (vv. 18-20). The 'three days' motif appears repeatedly in Scripture as a period of testing and transformation.
18. 'Do this and live' (zot asu vichyu) — Joseph echoes his father's words from v. 2 ('that we may live and not die'). The language of survival pervades the encounter.
18. 'I fear God' (et-ha'Elohim ani yare) — this is an extraordinary self-revelation, though the brothers cannot grasp its full significance. Joseph identifies himself as a God-fearer, someone constrained by divine ethical standards. For the brothers, this should provide some reassurance that the Egyptian governor will act justly. For the reader, it explains Joseph's entire strategy: he is not acting from revenge but from reverence for God.
18. The phrase 'fear of God' (yir'at Elohim) in Genesis denotes moral conscience that restrains wrongdoing, even when there are no human witnesses (cf. 20:11). Joseph signals that his severity is not arbitrary cruelty but principled action.
19. Joseph reverses his original plan: instead of keeping nine and sending one, he will keep one and send nine. The modified plan is more practical — nine brothers can carry far more grain for the starving family — and it is also more merciful. Joseph balances his testing strategy with genuine concern for his family's survival.
19. 'The hunger of your households' (ra'avon batteikhem) — the word ra'avon ('hunger, famine') reminds the brothers that their families are starving while they stand accused. Urgency and fear combine to heighten the emotional pressure.
20. 'Your words may be verified' (veye'amnu divreikhem) — from aman ('to confirm, to verify, to prove true'). The same root that gives us 'amen' and emunah ('faithfulness'). Joseph demands that their claim be substantiated — their words must be made amen, shown to be reliable.
20. 'You will not die' (velo tamutu) — the threat of death hangs over the brothers. As far as they know, this Egyptian governor has the power to execute them as spies. Joseph uses this fear to ensure compliance.
20. 'And they did so' (vaya'asu-khen) — the brothers accept the terms. They have no choice — they are foreigners in a foreign land, accused of a capital offense, at the mercy of a man they cannot appease except by obeying.
21. 'Surely we are guilty' (aval ashemim anachnu) — the particle aval ('surely, truly, indeed') introduces a confession of devastating sincerity. The word ashemim ('guilty') from the root asham carries the weight of guilt that demands atonement. After more than twenty years, the brothers' conscience finally erupts under pressure.
21. 'The distress of his soul' (tsarat nafsho) — this detail is not recorded in chapter 37's account of the sale. The narrator of chapter 37 told the story from the outside — the brothers' actions, not Joseph's reaction. Now, through the brothers' own confession, we learn what the earlier narrative withheld: Joseph pleaded with them. He begged. They heard his anguish and chose to ignore it. This retroactive revelation deepens the horror of the original crime.
21. 'We did not listen' (velo shama'nu) — the verb shama ('to hear, to listen') implies not just auditory reception but moral response. They heard Joseph's cries but refused to act on them. Their refusal to 'listen' then has led to their current 'distress' (tsarah) — the same root as Joseph's 'distress' (tsarat nafsho). The punishment mirrors the crime.
21. The brothers speak among themselves, not knowing that Joseph understands every word (v. 23). Their unguarded confession reveals the true state of their hearts: guilt has never left them.
22. 'Did I not tell you' — Reuben claims the moral high ground, reminding his brothers that he opposed the plan (cf. 37:21-22). While this is partially true — Reuben did intervene to save Joseph's life — his own motives were not entirely pure, and he failed to prevent the sale.
22. 'Do not sin against the boy' (al-techetu vayyeled) — Reuben uses the word chata ('to sin'), the same theological vocabulary of the brothers' guilt confession. What they did to Joseph was not merely a crime against a brother but a sin.
22. 'His blood is being required' (vegam-damo hinneh nidrash) — from darash ('to seek, to require, to avenge'). Reuben interprets their current predicament as divine retribution for the presumed murder of Joseph. The theological framework is clear: blood guilt demands divine reckoning (cf. 9:5). The brothers believe Joseph is dead and that God is now exacting payment.

23. 'An interpreter' (hammelits) — from luts ('to interpret, to mediate between languages'). Joseph had conducted the entire interrogation through a translator, creating the impression that he spoke only Egyptian. This ruse allowed the brothers to speak freely in Hebrew in his presence, believing themselves unheard.
23. The dramatic irony is exquisite: the brothers have just confessed their deepest guilt — their abuse of Joseph — directly in front of the very person they wronged, who understands every word. Joseph hears them acknowledge his suffering, his pleading, and their refusal to listen. This moment is the emotional climax of the chapter.
24. 'He turned away from them and wept' (vayyissov me'aleihem vayyevk) — Joseph's weeping is the first crack in his composure. Hearing his brothers' confession of guilt — especially the detail about his own pleading — overwhelms him. He must remove himself to weep privately. This is the first of several times Joseph will weep during the reunion narrative (43:30; 45:2, 14-15; 46:29; 50:17).
24. 'He took Simeon' (vayyiqqach me'ittam et-Shim'on) — why Simeon? As the second-born, Simeon may have been the ringleader after Reuben's partial dissent. Alternatively, Joseph may have selected Simeon as the most aggressive brother (cf. 34:25, where Simeon and Levi slaughter the Shechemites). Some suggest Joseph was separating Simeon from Levi to prevent them from conspiring.
24. 'Bound him before their eyes' (vaye'esor oto le'einehem) — the public binding maximizes the emotional impact. The brothers must watch as their brother is chained — a haunting echo of what Joseph experienced when they sold him. The phrase 'before their eyes' forces them to witness suffering they cannot prevent, just as Joseph was forced to suffer in their hands.
25. 'To return each man's silver to his sack' (ulehashiv kaspeihem ish el-saqo) — Joseph's hidden generosity — returning their payment — is an act of grace disguised as mystery. The brothers will discover the silver and be terrified (v. 28, 35), interpreting it as a trap or divine judgment. What Joseph intends as kindness, their guilty consciences transform into evidence of God's pursuit.
25. 'Provisions for the journey' (tsedah laddarekh) — beyond the grain for their families, Joseph ensures they have food for the return trip. Even while testing them, he cares for their physical welfare. This dual action — severity in the public encounter, generosity in private provision — reveals the complexity of Joseph's heart.
26. The brothers leave Egypt with grain but without Simeon, carrying silver they do not yet know about. Every element of their departure contains a hidden charge that will detonate at various points on their journey home.
27. 'At the lodging place' (bammalon) — from lun ('to spend the night'). This could be a caravanserai or simply a stopping point along the route. The discovery occurs during the routine act of feeding animals — the mundane suddenly becomes terrifying.
27. 'In the mouth of his bag' (befi amtachto) — the word amtachat ('bag, sack') differs from saq used in v. 25, suggesting either a different container or a synonym. The silver sits conspicuously at the top — 'in the mouth' — as though placed there deliberately.
28. 'Their hearts sank' (vayyetse libbam) — literally 'their heart went out.' The idiom describes the sensation of one's heart leaving the body — a visceral image of shock and dread. Their heart (singular, collective) 'departs' — they are left hollow with fear.
28. 'Trembling, they turned to one another' (vayyecherdu ish el-achiv) — from charad ('to tremble, to be terrified'). The brothers are physically shaking. Their trembling before the returned silver contrasts with their cold composure when they sold Joseph. Guilt has made them interpret every unexplained event as divine retribution.
28. 'What is this that God has done to us?' (mah-zot asah Elohim lanu) — the brothers immediately attribute the mysterious silver to God. They do not consider natural explanations — their guilty consciences leap directly to divine action. The God they invoke is the God against whom they sinned when they betrayed their brother. Their theological interpretation is essentially correct: God is indeed at work, though not to punish them but to bring about reconciliation.
29. The brothers arrive home and must now report to their father. Their account (vv. 30-34) closely follows the events as narrated but is shaped by their perspective — they present themselves as innocent victims of an unreasonable Egyptian governor.
30. 'The man, the lord of the land' (ha'ish adonei ha'arets) — the brothers describe Joseph with the same title 'lord' (adoni/adonei) they used in his presence. To Jacob, this signals they were dealing with the highest authority in Egypt — making the situation both dangerous and non-negotiable.
31. The brothers repeat their claim to honesty. The irony remains: they are honest about their identity but carry decades of dishonesty about what they did to Joseph.
32. The brothers faithfully reproduce their statement to Joseph (cf. v. 13). Their report to Jacob is accurate but incomplete — they do not mention their own confession of guilt (v. 21) or their terrified interpretation of the returned silver (v. 28). They present a sanitized version to their father.
33. The brothers' account to Jacob continues to track their experience accurately. They relay the governor's terms faithfully.
34. 'You may trade freely in the land' (ve-et-ha'arets tisharu) — from sachar ('to trade, to travel as a merchant'). Joseph's offer includes commercial privileges in Egypt — a significant inducement. If they comply, they gain not just Simeon's freedom but ongoing access to Egyptian grain markets.
34. The brothers' report concludes here. They have laid out the situation: Simeon is imprisoned, Benjamin must go to Egypt, and the family's long-term food security depends on compliance.

35. 'Every man's bundle of silver' (ish tseror kaspo) — the word tseror ('bundle, pouch') suggests the silver was tied in cloth bundles. Each brother finds his own payment returned — the complete refund affects all of them, not just the one who discovered his silver at the lodging (v. 27).
35. 'They and their father... were afraid' (hemmah va'avihem vayyira'u) — the discovery terrifies the entire family. The returned silver, intended by Joseph as a gift, is perceived as a trap. If the Egyptian governor discovers they have 'stolen' back their payment, the accusation of spying would seem confirmed. Jacob now shares his sons' dread — the situation is worse than they had reported.
36. 'You have bereaved me' (oti shikkaltem) — from shakol ('to make childless, to bereave'). Jacob directly blames his sons for his losses. The accusation is more penetrating than Jacob knows — regarding Joseph, they are indeed responsible. His instinct is correct even though his information is incomplete.
36. 'Joseph is no more, Simeon is no more' (Yosef einennu veShim'on einennu) — the repetition of einennu ('is no more') for both sons creates a devastating litany of loss. Jacob sees a pattern: every time his sons go out, one fails to return.
36. 'All these things are against me' (alai hayu kulanah) — Jacob's cry of despair is one of the most poignant in Scripture. He sees himself as the target of relentless misfortune. The patriarch who wrestled with God and prevailed (32:28) now feels overwhelmed by accumulated grief. Yet the reader knows what Jacob does not: everything that appears to be 'against him' is actually working 'for him' — Joseph is alive, Simeon will be freed, and the family will be reunited.
37. 'You may put my two sons to death' (et-shenei vanai tamit) — Reuben's offer is extravagant but emotionally tone-deaf. He offers his own sons — Jacob's grandsons — as collateral. The offer actually compounds the threatened loss: if Benjamin is lost, killing Reuben's sons would mean losing three grandsons instead of one. Jacob rightly rejects this clumsy guarantee.
37. Reuben, as firstborn, tries to assume responsibility, but his track record is poor: he failed to prevent Joseph's sale (37:29), violated his father's concubine (35:22), and his surety offer here is rejected. Judah will eventually succeed where Reuben fails (43:8-10), offering himself rather than his children.
38. 'His brother is dead' (achiv met) — Jacob refers to Joseph as Benjamin's brother, not theirs. The distinction is painful: Joseph and Benjamin are Rachel's sons, the children of the wife Jacob loved. The other sons are present, but in Jacob's grief, only Rachel's children truly count. This favoritism — the same pattern that provoked the brothers' original jealousy — persists even now.
38. 'He alone is left' (vehu levaddo nish'ar) — of Rachel's children, only Benjamin remains. Jacob's world has contracted to a single point of vulnerability: Benjamin is all he has left of Rachel.
38. 'If harm should befall him' (uqra'ahu ason) — the word ason ('harm, calamity') returns from v. 4, forming a bracket around Jacob's refusal. His deepest fear — voiced at the beginning when he kept Benjamin home — is now stated again, more explicitly, as his final word on the matter.
38. 'My gray hairs in sorrow to Sheol' (seivati beyagon she'olah) — the image is devastating: Jacob envisions himself descending to the realm of the dead (Sheol) as a broken old man, his gray hair a visible marker of grief. Seivah ('gray hair') represents the totality of his aged life; yagon ('sorrow, grief') would be its defining quality. Jacob refuses to risk this final catastrophe.
38. The chapter ends with Jacob's refusal. The impasse will require the deepening famine (43:1) and Judah's self-sacrificial guarantee (43:8-9) to break. The narrative pauses here at maximum tension: Simeon imprisoned, Benjamin demanded, Jacob immovable, and the family's survival hanging in the balance.

43

Summary: Famine forces a second journey to Egypt. Judah pledges himself as surety for Benjamin. Israel reluctantly consents, invoking El Shaddai's mercy. In Egypt, the brothers are brought to Joseph's house and fear a trap over the returned silver. Joseph sees Benjamin and is overcome with emotion. He feasts with them, giving Benjamin five times the portion of the others.

What Makes This Remarkable: Judah's emergence as the decisive voice — 'I myself will be surety for him; from my hand you may require him' (v. 9) — marks his transformation from the man who proposed selling Joseph (37:26-27) to the man who will offer himself in Benjamin's place (44:33). Israel's prayer 'if I am bereaved, I am bereaved' (v. 14) uses the same root (shakol) three times, conveying resigned surrender to God's will. Joseph's private weeping when he sees Benjamin (v. 30) — 'his compassion burned (nikhmeru rachamav)' — uses visceral, womb-related language for the deepest kind of love.

Translation Friction: The invocation of El Shaddai (v. 14) by Jacob echoes 17:1 and 28:3 — this divine name belongs to the patriarchal tradition of impossible promises. We rendered it consistently as 'God Almighty.' The Hebrew rachamim ('compassion,' v. 30) derives from rechem ('womb'), giving the emotion a maternal, physiological intensity that English 'compassion' only partially captures. We noted this etymological connection.

Connections: Benjamin's fivefold portion (43:34) anticipates his tribe's prominence and complexity in Israelite history (Judges 19-21; 1 Samuel 9-10). The steward's theological statement — 'your God and the God of your father has placed treasure in your sacks' (43:23) — comes from an Egyptian servant, suggesting God's purposes are recognized even outside the covenant family. Judah's surety oath foreshadows his climactic speech in chapter 44.

¹Now the famine was severe in the land. ²When they had finished eating the grain they had brought from Egypt, their father said to them, "Go again and buy us a little food." ³But Judah said to him, "The man solemnly warned us, saying, 'You shall not see my face unless your brother is with you.'" ⁴If you will send our brother with us, we will go down and buy food for you. ⁵But if you will not send him, we will not go down, for the man said to us, 'You shall not see my face unless your brother is with you.' ⁶Israel said, "Why did you treat me so badly by telling the man that you had another brother?" ⁷They said, "The man questioned us thoroughly about ourselves and our family, saying, 'Is your father still alive? Do you have another brother?' We answered him according to these questions. How could we possibly have known that he would say, 'Bring your brother down?'" ⁸Then Judah said to Israel his father, "Send the boy with me, and we will arise and go, so that we may live and not die — we, and you, and our little ones as well." ⁹I myself will be surety for him. From my hand you may require him. If I do not bring him back to you and set him before you, then I will bear the blame before you all my days. ¹⁰For if we had not delayed, we could have returned twice by now. ¹¹Then their father Israel said to them, "If it must be so, then do this: take some of the choice products of the land in your bags and bring the man a gift — a little balm, a little honey, spices and myrrh, pistachio nuts and almonds." ¹²Take double the silver in your hand, and the silver that was returned in the mouths of your sacks, carry it back in your hand. Perhaps it was a mistake. ¹³Take your brother also, and arise, go back to the man. ¹⁴May El Shaddai give you mercy before the man, so that he may release to you your other brother and Benjamin. As for me, if I am bereaved, I am bereaved. ¹⁵So the men took this gift, and they took double the silver in their hand, and Benjamin. They arose and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph. ¹⁶When Joseph saw Benjamin with them, he said to the steward of his house, "Bring the men into the house, slaughter an animal and prepare it, for these men will eat with me at noon." ¹⁷The man did as Joseph said and brought the men into Joseph's house. ¹⁸The men were afraid because they were brought into Joseph's house, and they said, "It is because of the silver that was returned in our sacks the first time that we are being brought in — so that he may roll upon us and attack us and take us as slaves, along with our donkeys." ¹⁹So they approached the steward of Joseph's house and spoke to him at the entrance of the house. ²⁰They said, "Please, my lord, we did indeed come down the first time to buy food." ²¹When we came to the lodging place and opened our sacks, there was each man's silver in the mouth of his sack — our silver in its full weight. We have brought it back in our hand. ²²We have also brought down additional silver in our hand to buy food. We do not know who put our silver in our sacks. ²³He said, "Peace to you, do not be afraid. Your God and the God of your father has placed treasure in your sacks. Your silver came to me." And he brought Simeon out to them. ²⁴The man brought the men into Joseph's house and gave them water, and they washed their feet. He also gave fodder for their donkeys. ²⁵They prepared the gift for Joseph's arrival at noon, for they had heard that they would eat a meal there. ²⁶When Joseph came home, they brought him the gift that was in their hand into the house and bowed down before him to the ground. ²⁷He asked them about their welfare and said, "Is your father well, the old man of whom you spoke? Is he still alive?" ²⁸They said, "Your servant our father is well; he is still alive." And they bowed low and prostrated themselves. ²⁹He lifted up his eyes and saw his brother Benjamin, his mother's son, and said, "Is this your youngest brother of whom you spoke to me?" Then he said, "God be gracious to you, my son." ³⁰Joseph hurried out, for his compassion burned for his brother and he sought a place to weep. He went into his inner chamber and wept there. ³¹He washed his face and came out, and he controlled himself and said, "Serve the meal." ³²They served him by himself, and them by themselves, and the

Egyptians who ate with him by themselves, because the Egyptians could not eat with the Hebrews, for that would be an abomination to the Egyptians. ³³They were seated before him — the firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth — and the men looked at one another in astonishment. ³⁴He had portions carried to them from before him, but Benjamin's portion was five times greater than any of theirs. And they drank and became merry with him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Severe' (kaved) — literally 'heavy.' The root k-b-d conveys weight and gravity; the same root gives us kavod ('glory, weightiness'). The famine presses down on the land with crushing force. This opening clause, brief and unadorned, resumes the narrative thread from 42:38 after Jacob's refusal to release Benjamin. Time has passed; the grain is running out; the crisis can no longer be deferred.
2. 'When they had finished eating' (ka'asher killu le'ekhol) — the verb kalah ('to finish, consume, be completed') signals total exhaustion of supply. The grain from the first trip is entirely gone. Jacob can no longer avoid the decision he has been postponing.
3. 'A little food' (me'at okhel) — Jacob's phrasing minimizes the errand, as if requesting a small task. The understatement may reflect his reluctance to acknowledge the full gravity of what the return trip entails — surrendering Benjamin. Or it may be a father's instinctive downplaying to avoid confronting the dread that grips him.
3. 'Solemnly warned' (ha'ed he'id) — the infinitive absolute construction (he'id + he'id) intensifies the verb enormously. This is not a casual suggestion but a solemn, emphatic declaration. Judah wants Jacob to understand that the Egyptian governor's demand was absolute and non-negotiable.
3. 'You shall not see my face' (lo tir'u fanai) — an idiom meaning 'you will not be granted audience with me.' In the ancient Near East, 'seeing the face' of a ruler meant being admitted to his presence. Joseph has barred all future access unless Benjamin accompanies them. The phrase also carries dramatic irony: the brothers cannot truly 'see' Joseph's face — they do not recognize who he is.
3. Judah now emerges as the family spokesman, displacing Reuben's failed leadership (42:37). This shift is narratively significant: Judah, who proposed selling Joseph (37:26-27), will become the one who offers himself in Benjamin's place (44:33). His moral transformation is the counternarrative to Joseph's rise to power.
4. Judah presents Jacob with a stark conditional: release Benjamin or starve. The structure is a simple if-then proposition with no middle ground. The directness contrasts with Reuben's earlier, more emotional plea (42:37), where he offered his own sons' lives as collateral — a proposal Jacob rightly dismissed.
5. The negative conditional completes the logical frame: no Benjamin, no trip, no grain, no survival. Judah's repetition of Joseph's exact words — 'You shall not see my face unless your brother is with you' — hammers the point. He is not inventing conditions; he is relaying the governor's own ultimatum. Jacob cannot argue against a foreign ruler's decree.
6. 'Israel' (Yisra'el) — the narrator uses Jacob's covenant name here, perhaps signaling the patriarch's authoritative stance as he challenges his sons. The interchange between 'Jacob' and 'Israel' throughout this chapter is narratively deliberate: 'Israel' appears when the patriarch asserts himself; 'Jacob' when he is vulnerable or grief-stricken.
6. 'Why did you treat me so badly' (lamah hare'otem li) — Jacob's complaint carries a note of self-pity. He views the disclosure of Benjamin's existence as a personal injury. From Jacob's perspective, his sons have needlessly exposed a vulnerability. From the reader's perspective, Jacob's anger is misdirected — the brothers answered honestly, and Joseph orchestrated the entire situation.
7. 'Questioned us thoroughly' (sha'ol sha'al ha'ish) — another infinitive absolute construction, emphasizing the intensity of Joseph's interrogation. The brothers are defending themselves: we did not volunteer the information; he pressed us relentlessly.
7. 'How could we possibly have known' (hayado'a neda) — yet another infinitive absolute, this time expressing an emphatic rhetorical question. The brothers protest the unfairness of Jacob's accusation: they could not have anticipated that routine answers to an official's questions would result in a demand for Benjamin. The triple use of infinitive absolutes in this exchange (v. 3, 7a, 7b) gives the dialogue an urgent, legalistic quality — as if the brothers are mounting a formal defense.
7. The brothers' account is accurate. In 42:13, they indeed told Joseph about their family composition when he questioned them. They could not have foreseen Joseph's hidden agenda. Yet Jacob's frustration, though misdirected, is humanly understandable: he has lost Joseph, nearly lost Simeon, and now faces losing Benjamin.
8. 'The boy' (hanna'ar) — Benjamin is called a na'ar, which can denote a young man or a servant. Benjamin is likely in his twenties or thirties by this point (he has sons of his own, 46:21), but in the family dynamic he remains 'the boy' — the youngest, the protected one, the child who has replaced Joseph in Jacob's affections.
8. 'So that we may live and not die — we, and you, and our little ones' — Judah expands the stakes beyond the brothers to include Jacob himself and the next generation (tappenu, 'our little ones'). This is not just about the brothers' survival but the survival of the entire covenant family. The triple repetition — 'we, and you, and our little ones' — makes the cost of inaction devastating and personal.
9. 'I myself will be surety for him' (anokhi e'ervennu) — the verb arav ('to pledge, guarantee, be surety') is a legal-commercial term. Judah is offering himself as collateral, staking his own standing and person against Benjamin's safe return. This is far more credible than Reuben's offer to sacrifice his

two sons (42:37), which Jacob dismissed as absurd.

9. 'From my hand you may require him' (miyaddi tevaqshenu) — the verb baqash ('to seek, require, demand') in this context carries legal force. Judah invites Jacob to hold him personally accountable — not his children, not his possessions, but himself.
9. 'I will bear the blame before you all my days' (vechatati lekha kol-hayyamim) — literally 'I will have sinned against you all the days.' The verb chata ('to sin, miss the mark') is the primary Hebrew word for sin. Judah stakes his moral standing: failure will mark him as a sinner against his father permanently. This is the language of covenantal responsibility, and it anticipates Judah's magnificent self-sacrifice in 44:33.
10. 'If we had not delayed' (lule' hitmahmenahnu) — the verb mahah in its reflexive form (hitmahmeah) means to linger, hesitate, delay. The word itself seems to stammer and drag, mimicking the very procrastination Judah describes. Jacob's refusal to act has cost precious time. Judah's practical argument cuts through his father's paralysis: debating is a luxury they can no longer afford.
11. 'If it must be so' (im-ken efo) — Jacob's reluctant consent. The particle efo ('then, in that case') carries a tone of resignation. He yields not out of conviction but out of necessity.
11. 'Choice products of the land' (zimrat ha'arets) — the word zimrah typically means 'song' or 'praise,' but here it denotes the finest, most celebrated products — the 'pride' of the land. Even in famine, Canaan produces luxury goods that Egypt values.
11. The gift list — balm (tsori), honey (devash), spices (nekh'o't), myrrh (lot), pistachio nuts (botnim), and almonds (sheqedim) — constitutes a careful diplomatic offering. These are high-value, low-weight items suitable for long transport. The balm and spices recall the Ishmaelite caravan that carried Joseph to Egypt (37:25), creating a bitter ironic echo: the father now sends luxury goods to the very land where his son was sold, along the very trade routes the slavers traveled.
12. 'Double the silver' (kesef mishneh) — Jacob instructs them to bring twice the needed amount: the original purchase price returned in their sacks plus new payment. His honesty here is notable; he does not try to profit from the apparent error.
12. 'Perhaps it was a mistake' (ulai mishgeh hu) — the word mishgeh ('error, oversight') from shagah ('to err, go astray') offers a hopeful but naive explanation. Jacob, unable to fathom the true situation, grasps at the most benign interpretation. The reader knows better: the returned silver was no mistake but part of Joseph's elaborate test.
13. 'Take your brother' (ve'et-achikhem qachu) — the word order places 'your brother' in the emphatic position. Jacob finally speaks the words he has been dreading. The verb laqach ('to take') is simple and direct — no hedging, no qualification. Having decided, Jacob commits fully.
14. 'El Shaddai' — Jacob invokes the patriarchal name for God, the name by which God appeared to Abraham (17:1) and to Jacob himself (35:11). In his hour of deepest vulnerability, Jacob reaches for the God of the covenant promises. This is not casual prayer but an appeal to the God who pledged to make him fruitful and give his descendants the land.
14. 'Give you mercy' (yitten lakhem rachamim) — the word rachamim ('compassion, mercy') derives from rechem ('womb') and connotes the deep, visceral love a mother has for her child. Jacob prays that this mysterious Egyptian official will feel toward his sons the kind of tender compassion that he himself feels — a parent's love.
14. 'If I am bereaved, I am bereaved' (ka'asher shakholti shakhalti) — the infinitive absolute construction with shakal ('to be bereaved of children') expresses Jacob's fatalistic resignation. He has exhausted his resistance. This is not faith triumphant but faith at its rawest — surrender to a situation beyond his control. Some interpreters hear an echo of Esther 4:16 ('If I perish, I perish'), but Jacob's tone is more that of weary grief than heroic resolve.
15. The narrative accelerates with a chain of verbs: took, took, arose, went down, stood. The careful preparations of the preceding verses give way to swift action. Benjamin's name is placed last in the list of things taken — gift, silver, Benjamin — as if the narrator hesitates before naming the most precious item the brothers carry.
15. 'Stood before Joseph' (vayyaamdu lifnei Yosef) — the phrase recalls courtiers standing before a sovereign. The brothers now face the Egyptian governor as petitioners. The reader sees what they cannot: they stand before their own brother.
16. 'When Joseph saw Benjamin' — the sight of his full brother, Rachel's other son, triggers immediate action. Joseph does not hesitate; he moves from perception to command in a single breath.
16. 'Slaughter an animal and prepare it' (utevoach tevach vahahen) — the infinitive absolute tevach intensifies the command: slaughter thoroughly, prepare a proper feast. This is not ordinary hospitality but a banquet. The noon meal (batsaharayim) was the main meal of the day in Egyptian custom.
16. 'The steward of his house' (la'asher al-beito) — literally 'the one who is over his house.' This trusted household manager will play a significant role in Joseph's schemes (44:1-12). He appears to be privy to at least some of Joseph's plans.
17. The steward's immediate obedience mirrors the efficiency of Joseph's household administration. The phrase 'Joseph's house' (beitah Yosef) would have been an impressive Egyptian estate — the residence of the second most powerful man in the kingdom. For Canaanite shepherds, this must have been an overwhelming setting.
18. 'They were afraid' (vayyir'u) — the brothers' guilty consciences transform a generous invitation into a terrifying trap. Their fear is a direct consequence of unresolved guilt: men who sold their brother into slavery now fear being enslaved themselves. The measure-for-measure irony is

unmistakable.

18. 'Roll upon us' (lehitgolel alenu) — the reflexive of galal ('to roll') creates a vivid image of being overwhelmed, as if a boulder were rolling over them. The metaphor captures the brothers' sense of inevitable doom.
18. 'Attack us' (lehitnappel alenu) — the reflexive of naphal ('to fall') means to fall upon, to assault. Combined with 'roll upon us,' the brothers envision a violent ambush.
18. 'Take us as slaves, along with our donkeys' — the brothers fear total confiscation: their freedom and their property. The inclusion of donkeys is not trivial; for pastoral nomads, losing pack animals meant losing the ability to transport goods and sustain livelihood.
19. 'At the entrance of the house' (petach habbayit) — the brothers intercept the steward before entering, at the threshold. They want to resolve the silver issue before crossing the doorway, as if entering the house under suspicion would seal their fate. The threshold is a liminal space — neither safe outside nor trapped inside.
20. 'Please, my lord' (bi adoni) — a respectful, almost pleading form of address. The brothers approach the steward with deference, treating even a household servant as a superior. Their social position as foreign petitioners leaves them no leverage.
20. 'We did indeed come down' (yarod yaradnu) — another infinitive absolute, this time emphasizing the sincerity of their original visit. They are building a defense: our first trip was legitimate; we are honest buyers, not thieves.
21. 'The lodging place' (hammalon) — the same term used in 42:27. It designates a stopping point on the road, not a formal inn. Travelers would camp at established sites along trade routes.
21. 'Our silver in its full weight' (kaspenu bemishqalo) — the brothers emphasize that they are returning the exact amount, weighed precisely. In the ancient Near East, silver was measured by weight (the shekel was a unit of weight before it became a coin). By specifying 'full weight,' they demonstrate they have not skimmed any portion.
21. 'We have brought it back in our hand' — the brothers protest their honesty: they could have kept the silver quietly, but instead they carry it back openly. The phrase 'in our hand' (beyadenu) means it is visible, accessible, ready for inspection — nothing hidden.
22. 'Additional silver' (kesef acher) — beyond the returned amount, they carry new money for the current purchase. This is the 'double silver' Jacob instructed them to bring (v. 12). They present both amounts to demonstrate full transparency.
22. 'We do not know who put our silver in our sacks' — a genuine confession of bewilderment. The brothers have no explanation for the returned silver and do not attempt to fabricate one. Their honesty here builds credibility with the steward and, indirectly, serves Joseph's purposes — it confirms they are not deceitful men.
23. 'Peace to you' (shalom lakhem) — the steward's greeting addresses not just their immediate anxiety but offers a comprehensive reassurance. Shalom encompasses well-being, wholeness, safety — everything the brothers fear they have lost.
23. 'Your God and the God of your father' (Eloheikhem ve'Elohei avikhem) — remarkably, the Egyptian steward attributes the mysterious silver to the brothers' own God. This may indicate that Joseph has instructed his steward in advance (the steward clearly knows about the returned silver), or it may reflect Joseph's household having absorbed some knowledge of the patriarchal God. The phrase 'God of your father' is a distinctive patriarchal formula (31:5, 42; 32:10).
23. 'Treasure' (matmon) — from taman ('to hide, bury'). A matmon is hidden wealth, buried treasure. The steward reframes the mysterious silver not as an accusation-in-waiting but as a divine gift — something God secretly placed in their sacks. This interpretation, whether the steward's own or Joseph's scripted response, dissolves the brothers' fear entirely.
23. 'Your silver came to me' (kaspekhem ba elai) — the steward confirms receipt of their original payment, removing any suggestion of theft. The brothers are cleared, and the returned silver is explained as divine generosity, not bureaucratic error.
23. 'He brought Simeon out to them' — almost as an afterthought, the narrator mentions Simeon's release. Simeon has been imprisoned since 42:24, and his restoration to the family is accomplished in a single clause. The narrative focus remains on the larger drama unfolding.
24. Foot-washing and animal care are standard elements of ancient Near Eastern hospitality (cf. 18:4; 19:2; 24:32). The steward performs the duties of a host on Joseph's behalf. After the tension of the threshold conversation, normality returns: water, foot-washing, fodder. The brothers are being treated as honored guests, not suspected criminals.
25. 'Prepared the gift' (vayyakhinu et-hamminchah) — the brothers arrange their diplomatic offering for optimal presentation. The minchah ('gift, tribute') is the same word used for grain offerings in Leviticus; here it simply means a tribute gift for a superior. The brothers marshal every resource at their disposal to make a favorable impression.
25. 'Eat bread' (yokhlu lachem) — 'to eat bread' is a Hebrew idiom for having a meal, not necessarily bread specifically. The invitation to dine with the governor would have been both an honor and a source of continued anxiety.
26. 'Bowed down before him to the ground' (vayyishtachavu-lo artsah) — another fulfillment of Joseph's dreams (37:7, 9). This is now the second time the brothers bow before Joseph (cf. 42:6). The dreams of sheaves bowing and celestial bodies making obeisance are being fulfilled repeatedly, though the brothers remain unaware.

26. The gift (*minchah*) is presented upon entry — proper protocol for meeting a dignitary. The brothers follow the customs of the ancient Near Eastern court, approaching their own brother as a foreign lord.
27. 'He asked them about their welfare' (*vayyish'al lahem leshalom*) — Joseph inquires using the standard formula for well-being. But his questions quickly zero in on what he truly wants to know: Is my father alive?
27. 'The old man' (*hazzaqen*) — Joseph's reference to his father as 'the old man' maintains his Egyptian persona while betraying, perhaps, a twinge of emotion. The word *zaqen* conveys both advanced age and the honor due to an elder. Joseph has not seen his father in over twenty years; his urgent question — 'Is he still alive?' — reveals the anxiety beneath the official facade.
28. 'Your servant our father' (*avdekha le'avinu*) — the brothers call Jacob 'your servant,' using the language of feudal deference. The patriarch of the covenant family is described as a servant of an Egyptian official — who is, unknown to them, their own brother. The layers of irony are extraordinary.
28. 'They bowed low and prostrated themselves' (*vayyiqqdu vayyishtachavu*) — two verbs for bowing: *qadad* (to bow the head) and *hishtachavah* (to prostrate fully). The double gesture expresses maximal deference and further fulfills Joseph's dreams.
29. 'His brother Benjamin, his mother's son' (*Binyamin achiv ben-immo*) — the narrator clarifies the relationship with extraordinary tenderness: not just 'brother' but 'his mother's son.' Benjamin is the only other child of Rachel, the beloved wife who died giving him birth (35:18). Joseph and Benjamin share a bond that the other brothers cannot: the bond of a shared mother who is gone.
29. 'Your youngest brother' (*achikhem haqqaton*) — Joseph maintains the pretense, asking about Benjamin as if seeing him for the first time. But his words are strained, barely maintaining the official distance.
29. 'God be gracious to you, my son' (*Elohim yochonkha beni*) — Joseph's blessing is startlingly personal. The verb *chanan* ('to be gracious, show favor') is a deep theological term for divine generosity. And 'my son' (*beni*) — Joseph addresses his younger brother as a father might, an expression of overwhelming affection that the brothers likely attribute to Egyptian courtesy but that carries far deeper meaning. Joseph is scarcely holding himself together.
30. 'His compassion burned' (*nikhmeru rachamav*) — the verb *kamar* (found only in the Niphal in biblical Hebrew) means to grow warm, to burn with emotion. Combined with *rachamim* ('compassion,' from *rechem*, 'womb'), the phrase describes a visceral, overwhelming surge of love that is almost physical — a churning in the gut, a burning in the chest. This is among the most emotionally intense phrases in the Hebrew Bible.
30. 'He sought a place to weep' (*vayevaqesh livkot*) — Joseph, the most powerful man in Egypt after Pharaoh, must hide to cry. His public persona cannot accommodate the tidal wave of emotion that seeing Benjamin unleashes. The contrast between Joseph's external authority and his internal vulnerability is one of the narrative's great achievements.
30. This is the second time Joseph weeps in the brothers' story (cf. 42:24). He will weep again at the moment of revelation (45:2, 14-15) and at Jacob's death (50:1). Joseph's tears mark the emotional through-line of the narrative: the powerful man who cannot stop feeling.
31. 'He controlled himself' (*vayyit'appaq*) — the reflexive of *apaq* ('to restrain, hold back') describes Joseph forcing his emotions back under control. The effort required is palpable. He has wept, washed, and now must reassemble the mask of the Egyptian lord. This verb will appear again in 45:1, where Joseph can no longer restrain himself and finally reveals his identity.
31. 'Serve the meal' (*simu lachem*) — literally 'set bread.' Joseph reassumes command with a curt directive. The transition from private weeping to public authority is accomplished in three words. The banquet that follows (vv. 32-34) will be another stage in Joseph's testing of the brothers.
32. Three separate tables: Joseph alone, the brothers together, the Egyptian officials together. The segregation follows Egyptian ritual purity customs. Joseph sits alone, occupying an ambiguous social space — ethnically Hebrew but functionally Egyptian. He belongs to neither table, a physical symbol of his dual identity.
32. 'An abomination' (*to'evah*) — the word denotes something ritually detestable or culturally taboo. Egyptian dietary and purity regulations prohibited eating with foreigners, particularly pastoral peoples (cf. 46:34, where shepherds are called an abomination to Egypt). This cultural barrier will be spectacularly broken when Joseph reveals himself.
32. 'The Hebrews' (*ha'Ivrim*) — the ethnic designation used by outsiders for the Israelites. The term may derive from 'Eber' (10:21) or from *avar* ('to cross over'), designating people who crossed the Euphrates. In Egyptian contexts, it carries social connotations of foreignness and lower status.
33. 'The firstborn according to his birthright and the youngest according to his youth' (*habbikhor kikhvorato vehatsa'ir kitso'irato*) — all eleven brothers are seated in exact birth order. The probability of this arrangement occurring by chance is astronomically small (1 in nearly 40 million for eleven people). The brothers' astonishment is entirely justified: how could an Egyptian official know their precise birth sequence?
33. 'They looked at one another in astonishment' (*vayyitmahu ha'anashim ish el-re'ehu*) — the verb *tamah* ('to be astounded, to marvel') expresses bewildered wonder. The brothers exchange glances of disbelief. This uncanny knowledge should, perhaps, have triggered recognition — but the idea that the governor of Egypt is their brother Joseph is so far outside their frame of reference that it never occurs to them.
33. The seating arrangement serves Joseph's purposes: it demonstrates his seemingly supernatural knowledge (reinforcing the diviner persona he will invoke in 44:15) while simultaneously unsettling the brothers and keeping them off balance.

34. 'Portions' (mas'ot) — from nasa ('to lift, carry'). The word denotes servings or portions lifted from the host's table and sent to guests, a mark of honor in ancient Near Eastern dining customs.
34. 'Five times greater' (chamesh yadot) — literally 'five hands.' Benjamin receives a portion five times larger than his brothers'. The number five has Egyptian associations (cf. the fifth of Pharaoh's tax, 41:34; five changes of clothing for Benjamin, 45:22). More significantly, Joseph is testing the brothers: will they resent Benjamin's preferential treatment as they once resented Joseph's favored status? Will jealousy resurface? This is a deliberate provocation designed to reveal whether the brothers have changed.
34. 'They drank and became merry with him' (vayyishtu vayyishkeru immo) — the verb shakar means to drink freely, to become intoxicated. The evening ends in celebration, the brothers' anxieties apparently dissolved by wine and hospitality. But the reader knows that the final test is yet to come: Joseph's silver cup will be planted in Benjamin's sack (44:2), and the brothers' true character will face its ultimate trial.

44

Summary: Joseph plants his silver cup in Benjamin's sack. The brothers depart, are overtaken, and the cup is found. They return in despair. Joseph demands Benjamin as his slave. Judah delivers a speech of extraordinary power, recounting the family's pain and offering himself as a slave in Benjamin's place.

What Makes This Remarkable: Judah's speech (vv. 18-34) is the longest uninterrupted address in Genesis and one of the finest pieces of rhetoric in the Hebrew Bible. The man who once said 'let us sell him' (37:27) now says 'let me remain instead of the boy as a slave' (v. 33). His description of Jacob's soul being 'bound up' with Benjamin's (v. 30) uses the verb qashar — a bond of life to life. The test Joseph has engineered is precise: will the brothers abandon the favored son of Rachel (Benjamin) as they abandoned the first (Joseph)? Judah's answer is self-sacrifice.

Translation Friction: Joseph's reference to 'divination' (nachesh, v. 5) with the silver cup raises questions about whether he actually practiced Egyptian divination or was maintaining his disguise. The Hebrew verb is the same root as nachash ('serpent'), connecting to Genesis 3 in ways the text does not develop. We rendered it directly and noted the cultural context. The phrase nephesh qeshurah benaphsho ('his soul is bound up with the boy's soul,' v. 30) uses language of such intensity that no English equivalent fully captures the depth of paternal attachment.

Connections: Judah's willingness to become a slave in Benjamin's place (44:33) is often read as a type of substitutionary self-offering that anticipates the theology of Isaiah 53. The cup test parallels the birthright test of chapter 25 — both probe what a brother is willing to sacrifice. The entire arc from chapter 37 to this moment traces the brothers' repentance and Judah's transformation from betrayer to redeemer.

1He commanded the steward of his house, saying, "Fill the men's sacks with food, as much as they can carry, and put each man's silver in the mouth of his sack." 2And put my cup — the silver cup — in the mouth of the youngest one's sack, along with his grain money." And he did according to the word that Joseph had spoken. 3At the light of morning, the men were sent away — they and their donkeys. 4They had gone out of the city and had not gone far when Joseph said to the steward of his house, "Rise, pursue the men, and when you overtake them, say to them, 'Why have you repaid evil for good?'" 5Is this not the one from which my lord drinks, and by which he indeed divines? You have done evil in what you have done. 6He overtook them and spoke these words to them. 7They said to him, "Why does my lord speak such words? Far be it from your servants to do such a thing!" 8Look, the silver that we found in the mouths of our sacks we brought back to you from the land of Canaan. How then could we steal silver or gold from your lord's house? 9Whoever among your servants is found with it shall die, and the rest of us will also become slaves to my lord. 10He said, "Let it indeed be according to your words: he with whom it is found shall be my slave, but the rest of you shall go free." 11They quickly lowered each man's sack to the ground, and each man opened his sack. 12He searched, beginning with the eldest and ending with the youngest, and the cup was found in Benjamin's sack. 13They tore their garments, and each man loaded his donkey, and they returned to the city. 14Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house — he was still there — and they fell before him to the ground. 15Joseph said to them, "What is this deed that you have done? Do you not know that a man such as I indeed practices divination?" 16Judah said, "What can we say to my lord? What can we speak? How can we clear ourselves? God has found out the guilt of your

servants. Here we are, my lord's slaves — both we and the one in whose hand the cup was found." ¹⁷But he said, "Far be it from me to do such a thing. The man in whose hand the cup was found — he shall be my slave. But as for you, go up in peace to your father." ¹⁸Then Judah approached him and said, "Please, my lord, let your servant speak a word in my lord's ears, and let not your anger burn against your servant, for you are like Pharaoh himself." ¹⁹My lord asked his servants, saying, 'Do you have a father or a brother?' ²⁰We said to my lord, 'We have a father, an old man, and a child of his old age, a young one. His brother is dead, and he then alone is left of his mother, and his father loves him.' ²¹You said to your servants, 'Bring him down to me, so that I may set my eyes on him.' ²²We said to my lord, 'The boy cannot leave his father, for if he were to leave his father, his father would die.' ²³But you said to your servants, 'Unless your youngest brother comes down with you, you shall not see my face again.' ²⁴When we went up to your servant my father, we told him the words of my lord. ²⁵Our father said, 'Go again, buy us a little food.' ²⁶We said, 'We cannot go down. If our youngest brother is with us, then we will go down, for we cannot see the man's face unless our youngest brother is with us.' ²⁷Your servant my father said to us, 'You know that my wife bore me two sons.' ²⁸One went out from me, and I said, "Surely he has been torn to pieces," and I have not seen him since. ²⁹If you take this one also from my presence and harm befalls him, you will bring down my gray hairs in misery to Sheol. ³⁰Now then, when I come to your servant my father, and the boy is not with us — since his soul is bound up with the boy's soul — ³¹when he sees that the boy is not with us, he will die. And your servants will have brought down the gray hairs of your servant our father in sorrow to Sheol. ³²For your servant became surety for the boy to my father, saying, 'If I do not bring him back to you, then I will bear the blame before my father all my days.' ³³Now then, please let your servant remain instead of the boy as a slave to my lord, and let the boy go up with his brothers. ³⁴For how can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me? I could not bear to see the evil that would find my father.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Joseph now orchestrates the decisive test. After the banquet's warmth, he sets a trap that will expose the brothers' true character. The instructions are precise and deliberate: maximum grain (generosity) combined with returned silver (the first layer of the setup).
1. 'As much as they can carry' (ka'asher yuklun se'et) — Joseph is lavishly generous even in his testing. The brothers will leave with full sacks, a detail that makes the accusation of theft all the more jarring.
2. 'My cup' (gevi'i) — Joseph specifies his personal cup, a goblet of particular significance. The word gavi'a denotes a bowl or goblet, used elsewhere for the cups on the golden lampstand (Exodus 25:31-34). As Joseph's personal drinking vessel, it carries both material value and symbolic weight.
2. 'The silver cup' (gevi'a hakkesef) — the appositive specification emphasizes the cup's material: silver, matching the silver already returned in the sacks. Silver pervades this narrative as a symbol of guilt and restitution — the brothers sold Joseph for silver (37:28), and silver keeps mysteriously reappearing in their sacks.
2. 'In the mouth of the youngest one's sack' — Benjamin is targeted precisely because he is the innocent one, the brother who had no part in selling Joseph. The test is designed to place the guiltless brother in jeopardy: will the others abandon him as they once abandoned Joseph, or will they stand by him? Joseph needs to know if they have changed.
3. 'At the light of morning' (habboqer or) — dawn. The brothers depart at first light, eager to return home with Benjamin, Simeon, and full sacks of grain. They have no reason to suspect anything. The narrative builds suspense through their innocent departure: the reader knows what they do not.
4. 'Not yet far off' (lo hirschiqu) — Joseph times the pursuit carefully. The brothers must be close enough to be overtaken quickly but far enough from the city to feel the full shock of being chased down. The pacing is theatrical — Joseph is directing a dramatic scene.
4. 'Why have you repaid evil for good?' (lammah shillamtem ra'ah tachat tovah) — the accusation is devastating in its moral framing. The brothers were treated with extraordinary generosity (banquet, full sacks, Simeon's release), and now they are accused of repaying that kindness with theft. The phrase tachat ('in place of, in exchange for') implies a deliberate inversion of just reciprocity.
5. 'By which he indeed divines' (nacheish yenacheish) — the infinitive absolute of nachash ('to practice divination, to observe signs') emphatically asserts Joseph's supposed divinatory powers. Cup divination (lecanomancy) was widely practiced in the ancient Near East: liquids were poured into a cup, and patterns in the liquid's movement were interpreted as omens. Whether Joseph actually practiced this or merely maintained the appearance is debated. In context, the claim serves to frighten the brothers — they face not merely a powerful lord but one with supernatural knowledge.
5. 'You have done evil' (hare'otem asher asitem) — the steward's accusation is categorical. The brothers, who moments ago were celebrating, are now charged with ingratitude and theft. The emotional whiplash is part of Joseph's design.
6. The steward faithfully delivers Joseph's scripted accusation. The brevity of this verse — 'he overtook them and spoke these words' — mirrors the speed of the pursuit. The brothers' freedom is measured in minutes; the joyful homeward journey is cut brutally short.

7. 'Far be it from your servants' (chalilah la'avadekha) — the word chalilah is an exclamation of moral horror, expressing something so repugnant that it is unthinkable. It derives from chalal ('to profane, defile') — literally, 'it would be profanation!' The brothers' outrage is genuine; they have not stolen the cup. Their innocence on this specific charge is absolute, which makes their rash oath in verse 9 all the more dramatic.
8. The brothers mount a logical defense: they voluntarily returned silver they could have kept; why would they then steal from the same house? The argument from character is compelling. They cite evidence of their honesty (returning the silver) to argue for the impossibility of the theft. Their reasoning is sound — but Joseph has stacked the evidence against them.
8. 'Silver or gold' (kesef o zahav) — the brothers escalate: not merely silver but gold too — they would steal neither. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'impossible.'
9. 'Shall die' (vamet) — the brothers propose the death penalty for the thief and collective slavery for the rest. Their confidence in their innocence leads them to propose terms far harsher than necessary. This rash oath echoes Jacob's unknowing death sentence on Rachel when Laban searched for his household gods: 'Whoever has your gods shall not live' (31:32). In both cases, the innocent beloved is imperiled by a hasty oath.
9. The brothers' willingness to become slaves is deeply ironic: they once sold their brother into slavery, and now they offer themselves for the same fate. The narrative circles back on itself with devastating precision.
10. The steward accepts the brothers' framework but softens the terms: only the guilty party becomes a slave; the rest go free (neqiyim, 'clean, innocent, blameless'). This modification is critical to Joseph's test. If the brothers can walk away free while Benjamin alone bears the punishment, will they abandon him? Or will they stay and fight for his freedom?
10. The steward's revision creates the exact moral scenario Joseph needs: the brothers can save themselves at Benjamin's expense — precisely what they did to Joseph twenty years earlier. Their response will reveal whether they have fundamentally changed.
11. 'Quickly' (vayemaharu) — the verb mahar ('to hurry') conveys the brothers' eagerness to be vindicated. They are confident; they rush to prove their innocence. The haste of the guilty man is to flee; the haste of the innocent is to demonstrate — and the brothers hasten to demonstrate. They do not know what awaits them in Benjamin's sack.
12. 'Beginning with the eldest and ending with the youngest' (baggadol hechel uvaqqaton killah) — the search proceeds in birth order, from Reuben to Benjamin. This methodical sequence builds unbearable suspense. Each sack opened and found clean raises the brothers' confidence — and the reader's dread. By the time the steward reaches Benjamin, ten brothers have been cleared. The narrative slows to its most excruciating pace.
12. 'The cup was found in Benjamin's sack' (vayyimmatse haggavi'a be'amtachat Binyamin) — the passive verb 'was found' (nimtsa) carries the weight of the entire chapter. The brothers' world collapses. The innocent one, the one they were sworn to protect, the one for whom Judah pledged his own life — he is the one holding the incriminating evidence. Joseph's trap has closed.
13. 'They tore their garments' (vayyiqre'u simlotam) — garment-tearing is the standard ancient Israelite expression of grief, horror, and mourning. The act recalls Jacob tearing his garments when shown Joseph's bloodied robe (37:34). The sons now experience the same devastation they once inflicted on their father. The measure-for-measure symmetry is exact: they caused a father to tear his garments; now they tear their own.
13. 'They returned to the city' (vayyashuvu ha'irah) — this is the decisive moment. The steward offered them freedom: only Benjamin would be held. They could have continued to Canaan, presented their grain to Jacob, and reported Benjamin's 'crime.' Instead, every single brother turns back. Not one abandons Benjamin. This collective return is the first clear evidence that the brothers have changed. They will not repeat the sin of twenty years ago.
14. 'Judah and his brothers' (Yehudah ve'echav) — the narrator names Judah first, signaling his leadership. This is no longer 'the brothers' as an undifferentiated group; it is Judah leading his brothers. The shift in designation marks the culmination of Judah's rise from the brother who sold Joseph (37:26-27) to the brother who will offer his life for Benjamin (v. 33).
14. 'They fell before him to the ground' (vayyipelu lefanav artsah) — the verb naphal ('to fall') is more extreme than hishtachavah ('to bow'). This is not formal obeisance but the collapse of desperate men. They throw themselves at Joseph's feet in utter submission. The dream of the sheaves and stars finds its most complete fulfillment.
14. 'He was still there' (vehu odenu sham) — Joseph has remained in his house, waiting. He knows exactly what will happen. The brief parenthetical underscores Joseph's total control of the situation.
15. 'What is this deed that you have done?' (mah hamma'aseh hazzeh asher asitem) — Joseph's accusation echoes the language of confrontation used throughout Genesis: God to Eve (3:13), Jacob to Laban (29:25), Abimelech to Abraham (20:9). The formula demands an accounting.
15. 'A man such as I indeed practices divination' (nacheish yenacheish ish asher kamoni) — the infinitive absolute again (cf. v. 5). Joseph presents himself as one who can discern hidden truths through supernatural means. The claim serves the theatrical purpose: how can you steal from a man who sees all secrets? The irony is that Joseph does know the truth — but through orchestration, not divination.
15. The question of whether Joseph actually practiced divination or merely used it as a cover is debated. Most traditional interpreters view it as a deliberate deception consistent with his Egyptian persona. Joseph is playing a role; the divination claim is part of the mask.
16. 'What can we say... what can we speak... how can we clear ourselves' (mah-nomar... mah-nedabber... mah-nittstadaq) — three rhetorical questions cascade in mounting despair. The first two concern speech itself: words have failed them. The third concerns justification: the root ts-d-q ('to be righteous, to justify') appears in the reflexive — 'how can we declare ourselves righteous?' They cannot.

16. 'God has found out the guilt of your servants' (ha'Elohim matsa et-avon avadekha) — this is Judah's most profound statement. He does not protest Benjamin's innocence regarding the cup. Instead, he makes a stunning theological confession: God has uncovered a deeper guilt — the guilt (avon) they have carried since selling Joseph. The cup is merely the occasion; the true crime is twenty years old. Judah recognizes divine justice operating through apparently unjust circumstances.
16. 'Both we and the one in whose hand the cup was found' (gam-anachnu gam asher-nimtsa haggavi'a beyado) — Judah refuses the steward's earlier offer of freedom for the brothers (v. 10). He insists on collective solidarity: all will be slaves, or none. This is the opposite of what they did to Joseph, when they let one brother bear the punishment while they went free.
17. 'Far be it from me' (chalilah li) — Joseph returns the brothers' own word (v. 7) back to them. He refuses collective punishment and insists on individual justice: only the 'guilty' party stays.
17. 'Go up in peace to your father' (alu leshalom el-avikhem) — this is the cruelest mercy imaginable. Joseph offers the brothers exactly what the steward offered: freedom for all except Benjamin. They can return to Jacob in 'peace' (shalom) — but how could there be shalom if Benjamin is left behind? The word shalom becomes bitterly ironic: there is no wholeness, no well-being, no peace possible if the brothers return without the boy.
17. This is the crux of Joseph's test. Everything has led to this moment. The brothers can walk away. They have legal cover — the steward modified their oath (v. 10). They have Joseph's own permission. Benjamin is not their full brother. They can go home, tell Jacob that Benjamin was caught stealing, and live with one more lie. Or they can refuse. Judah's response in the following verses will be the single most important speech in Genesis.
18. 'Judah approached him' (vayiggash elav Yehudah) — the verb nagash ('to draw near, approach') marks a decisive physical and moral step. Judah closes the distance between himself and the most powerful man in Egypt. This approach is an act of courage that borders on recklessness — uninvited proximity to a ruler could be lethal. The word vayiggash will give this chapter its traditional Jewish name: Parashat Vayiggash.
18. 'Please, my lord' (bi adoni) — the same deferential formula used in v. 20 of the previous chapter (43:20). Judah requests permission to speak at length, a courtesy that recognizes the extraordinary nature of what he is about to do: a foreign slave-shepherd is about to deliver the longest speech in Genesis to the governor of Egypt.
18. 'You are like Pharaoh' (ki kamokha ke-Phar'oh) — this comparison serves multiple functions: (1) flattery, acknowledging Joseph's supreme authority; (2) a veiled reminder that Pharaoh is known for justice, implying Joseph should also be just; (3) dramatic irony, since Joseph is second only to Pharaoh and the comparison is more apt than Judah knows.
19. Judah begins his speech by recounting the history of their interactions with Joseph. He starts from the beginning — the first interrogation — establishing the narrative context for his appeal. By rehearsing the facts, Judah demonstrates that every step was initiated by Joseph: it was the governor who asked the questions, the governor who demanded Benjamin, the governor who created the present crisis.
20. 'A father, an old man' (av zaqen) — Judah's description of Jacob emphasizes age and vulnerability. The patriarch is not presented as a powerful clan leader but as an elderly, fragile man whose emotional survival depends on one remaining son.
20. 'A child of his old age, a young one' (yeled zequnim qaton) — Benjamin is described tenderly, in terms that stress his youth and his special place as a child born to aged parents. The designation qaton ('little one, youngest') emphasizes his vulnerability.
20. 'His brother is dead' (achiv met) — Judah states this as fact. He does not know Joseph is alive. The irony is absolute: Judah tells Joseph, to his face, that Joseph is dead. For Joseph, hearing these words from the brother who proposed selling him must be an experience of shattering emotional complexity.
20. 'He alone is left of his mother' (hu levaddo notar le'immo) — Rachel, the beloved wife, bore two sons. One is presumed dead. Benjamin is the sole surviving link to her. This detail explains Jacob's desperate attachment and grounds it not in mere favoritism but in grief for a dead wife and a lost son.
20. 'His father loves him' (ve'aviv ahevo) — the verb ahav ('to love') is stated simply and without apology. Jacob loves Benjamin. Judah acknowledges this favoritism without resentment — a remarkable change from the brothers who 'could not speak peacefully' to Joseph because Jacob loved him (37:4).
21. 'Set my eyes on him' (asimah eini alav) — in Joseph's original demand, the phrase likely meant 'so that I may examine him' or 'keep watch over him.' But Judah's repetition of it subtly reframes the expression: to 'set one's eyes' on someone can mean to watch over with either benevolence or malice. Judah is gently suggesting that Joseph's interest in Benjamin has become something dangerous.
22. 'The boy cannot leave his father' (lo-yukhal hanna'ar la'aviv) — Judah conveys not physical impossibility but emotional truth: Benjamin's departure would be lethal to Jacob. The father and son are bound in a relationship so deep that separation would kill the father.
22. 'His father would die' (vamet) — the simple word vamet ('and he would die') places the ultimate consequence before Joseph. Judah is warning the governor that his actions have life-and-death stakes for an old man in Canaan. The appeal shifts from legal argument to human compassion.
23. Judah is carefully building a chain of causation: Joseph demanded Benjamin's presence (the cause), Jacob was forced to comply (under duress), and now Benjamin is here (the consequence). The implication is that responsibility for the current crisis rests not with the brothers but with the Egyptian governor himself. This is rhetorically brilliant: Judah is not accusing Joseph of injustice but leading him to see the humanitarian cost of his own demands.

24. 'Your servant my father' (avdekha avi) — Judah maintains the language of deference, calling Jacob 'your servant,' while also claiming the intimate relationship — 'my father.' The dual designation keeps Judah's speech within diplomatic protocol while making the personal stakes unmistakable.
25. Judah now shifts from recounting what happened with Joseph to recounting what happened at home with Jacob. He is drawing the Egyptian governor into the domestic scene in Canaan — making Joseph see the family's private pain. The simplicity of Jacob's request — 'a little food' (me'at okhel) — underscores the family's desperation.
26. Judah's repetition of the condition — 'unless our youngest brother is with us' — drives home the point that the brothers were not willing accomplices but constrained agents. They tried to resist; the governor's ultimatum left them no choice. Every appearance of Benjamin before this official is a consequence of the official's own demand.
27. 'My wife' (ishti) — Jacob says 'my wife,' singular. He has had four women who bore his children — Leah, Rachel, Bilhah, and Zilpah — but in his heart, Rachel alone was 'my wife.' This is one of the most revealing and painful moments in Judah's speech. He quotes his father's words without comment, but the implication is staggering: by calling Rachel 'my wife,' Jacob implicitly relegates Leah (Judah's own mother) to secondary status. Yet Judah repeats these words without rancor, without protest. He has accepted his father's favoritism and moved beyond resentment. This acceptance is itself evidence of Judah's transformation.
27. 'Bore me two sons' (shenayim yaldah-li) — Rachel's two sons: Joseph and Benjamin. Jacob defines his deepest identity through these two children. The other ten sons exist, are loved in some measure, but do not occupy the same place in Jacob's heart. Judah knows this and recites it without bitterness.
28. 'One went out from me' (vayyetse ha'echad me'itti) — Jacob's description of Joseph's disappearance as 'going out from me' (rather than 'being sold by his brothers') reflects his ignorance of the true circumstances. The phrase me'itti ('from me, from my presence') conveys loss as a departure — Joseph simply left and never returned.
28. 'Surely he has been torn to pieces' (akh tarof toraf) — the infinitive absolute intensifies the certainty: 'he has absolutely been torn apart.' This is what the bloodied robe told Jacob (37:33). Judah, who helped devise the deception with the robe, now stands before the 'torn' brother and repeats their father's anguished conclusion. For Joseph, hearing his own death reported to his face by the brother who engineered the deception must be almost unbearable.
28. 'I have not seen him since' (velo re'itiv ad-hennah) — the finality of this clause carries twenty years of grief compressed into five Hebrew words. Jacob has given up hope. Joseph is dead to him. The pathos of this statement, delivered to Joseph himself, explains why Joseph will soon be unable to control his emotions (45:1).
29. 'This one also' (gam-et-zeh) — the word gam ('also, even') carries the weight of accumulating loss. Jacob has already lost Joseph; losing Benjamin too would be the final, fatal blow.
29. 'Harm' (ason) — the same rare word from 42:4 and 42:38. It denotes catastrophic, potentially fatal harm. Jacob's fear is specific and recurrent, expressed with the same word each time, creating a verbal motif of dread.
29. 'My gray hairs in misery to Sheol' (et-seivati bera'ah she'olah) — literally 'my gray-headedness in evil to Sheol.' 'Gray hairs' (seivah) is a metonymy for old age and the honored dignity it carries. 'Misery' (ra'ah) means evil or calamity. 'Sheol' is the realm of the dead, the shadowy underworld. Jacob envisions his remaining years destroyed and his death transformed from peaceful rest to anguished descent. The image is of an old man's dignity stripped away, his final days consumed by grief so total it follows him into the grave.
30. 'His soul is bound up with the boy's soul' (nafsho qeshurah venafsho) — one of the most beautiful phrases in the Hebrew Bible. The verb qashar ('to bind, tie, join') describes Jacob's emotional bond with Benjamin as a literal binding of souls. Nefesh here means the totality of a person — life, self, being. Jacob's very existence is tied to Benjamin's; to sever one is to destroy the other. This metaphor of soul-binding echoes the language of 1 Samuel 18:1, where Jonathan's soul was 'bound' (niqsherah) to David's. It describes love so complete that two lives become one.
30. Judah's ability to articulate his father's love with such tenderness — for a son who is not Judah's full brother, whose favored status once provoked the brothers' jealousy — demonstrates the depth of his moral transformation. He does not resent this bond; he protects it.
31. 'He will die' (vamet) — Judah states this as medical certainty, not rhetorical exaggeration. Jacob will not merely grieve; the shock of losing Benjamin will kill him. The old man's fragile existence hangs by the thread of Benjamin's return.
31. 'In sorrow to Sheol' (beyagon she'olah) — this time the word is yagon ('sorrow, grief, anguish') rather than ra'ah ('misery, evil') as in v. 29. Judah varies Jacob's own language, intensifying the emotional register. Yagon is deep, prolonged grief — the kind that consumes a person from within. Jacob's descent to Sheol will be marked not by the peace of a life well-lived but by the sorrow of a father who has lost everything.
31. 'Your servants will have brought down' — Judah includes himself and his brothers in the responsibility. They will be the proximate cause of their father's death. This acceptance of collective guilt is precisely what Joseph needs to hear: the brothers now understand the consequences of their actions on the family system.
32. 'Your servant became surety' (avdekha arav et-hanna'ar) — Judah now reveals his pledge from 43:9. The verb arav ('to pledge, guarantee') appears again, connecting this moment to the promise that set the second journey in motion. Judah staked his moral standing on Benjamin's safe return, and now that pledge must be honored.

32. 'I will bear the blame before my father all my days' (vechatati le'avi kol-hayyamim) — the verb chata ('to sin') is used again: failure to return Benjamin would mark Judah as a permanent sinner against his father. This is not empty rhetoric but a solemn covenant-like commitment. Judah's sense of obligation transcends self-interest; he will carry the weight of this failure as a lifelong moral burden.
33. 'Let your servant remain instead of the boy' (yeshev-na avdekha tachat hanna'ar) — this is the climactic moment of Judah's speech and, arguably, of the entire book of Genesis. The preposition tachat ('in place of, instead of') carries the full weight of substitutionary sacrifice. Judah offers himself as a substitute — his freedom for Benjamin's, his life for a boy's. The brother who once sold Joseph into slavery for twenty pieces of silver now volunteers to become a slave himself to save Joseph's full brother.
33. The moral transformation is complete. Judah has moved from callous betrayal (37:26-27) through the Tamar incident (ch. 38, where he learned to say 'she is more righteous than I') to this moment of total self-sacrifice. He does not merely advocate for Benjamin; he offers his own body, his own freedom, his own future. This is the act that demonstrates conclusively to Joseph that his brothers have changed.
33. 'As a slave to my lord' (eved la'adoni) — Judah uses the word eved ('slave, servant') in its most literal sense. He is not offering courteous deference but actual servitude. He will remain in Egypt, in bondage, permanently separated from his family, so that Benjamin may go free.
33. 'Let the boy go up with his brothers' (vehanna'ar ya'al im-echav) — the verb alah ('to go up') denotes the ascent from Egypt to Canaan, both geographically and symbolically. Judah asks that Benjamin return home, that Jacob's soul-bound son be restored, that the old man live. And Judah will pay the price.
34. 'How can I go up to my father if the boy is not with me?' (ki-eikh e'eleh el-avi vehanna'ar einennu itti) — Judah's final words are a question without an answer. He cannot go home without Benjamin. The impossibility is not physical but moral: he cannot face his father's destruction. The question hangs in the air, unanswerable, a plea that transcends logic and enters the realm of pure compassion.
34. 'I could not bear to see the evil that would find my father' (pen er'eh bara asher yimtsa et-avi) — the Hebrew pen ('lest') introduces a feared outcome too terrible to contemplate. The verb matsa ('to find') personalizes the evil: it will 'find' Jacob, seek him out, hunt him down. Evil is not an abstraction but an active force that will locate and destroy the old man.
34. With these words, Judah's speech ends. There is no peroration, no final plea for mercy, no concluding formality. The speech simply stops, leaving Joseph — and the reader — in stunned silence. Judah has said everything that can be said. He has offered everything he has to offer. The next move belongs to Joseph.
34. This speech, the longest in Genesis, accomplishes what twenty years of separation could not: it proves to Joseph that his brothers are no longer the men who sold him. They will not abandon the favored son. They will not sacrifice the beloved brother. Judah, who once profited from Joseph's sale, now offers himself as the price of Benjamin's freedom. The chapter ends on the precipice of revelation — Joseph, in 45:1, will be unable to restrain himself any longer.

45

Summary: *Joseph can no longer restrain himself. He clears the room and reveals his identity: 'I am Joseph!' His brothers are terrified. Joseph reinterprets the entire narrative theologically: 'God sent me before you to preserve life.' Pharaoh invites the whole family to Egypt. Joseph sends wagons and provisions. When Jacob hears that Joseph lives, his spirit revives.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joseph's theological reinterpretation (vv. 5-8) is one of the most profound statements of divine providence in the Hebrew Bible. Three times he insists that God — not the brothers — sent him to Egypt. The word she'erit ('remnant,' v. 7) introduces a concept that becomes central to prophetic theology: God preserves a surviving core through catastrophe. Joseph's weeping is now public and loud (v. 2) — 'the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard' — the private grief of chapters 42-43 finally breaks open. Jacob's spirit 'revived' (vattechi ruach, v. 27) echoes the language of resurrection.*

Translation Friction: *The word she'erit ('remnant,' v. 7) carries more theological weight than English 'remnant' suggests — it is the preserved kernel from which new life springs after devastation. We rendered it directly and noted its prophetic significance. Joseph's instruction 'do not quarrel on the way' (v. 24) uses the verb ragaz, which can mean 'to tremble,' 'to be agitated,' or 'to quarrel.' We chose 'quarrel' based on context but noted the range — he may be warning against mutual recrimination over past guilt.*

Connections: *Joseph's declaration 'God sent me before you' (45:5, 7, 8) anticipates the summary theology of 50:20. The invitation to dwell in Goshen (45:10) begins Israel's four-century Egyptian sojourn prophesied in 15:13. Jacob's spirit reviving (45:27) reverses his declaration 'I will go down to Sheol mourning' (37:35). The wagons from Egypt (45:27) function as tangible proof — the physical evidence that revives dead hope.*

¹Then Joseph could no longer restrain himself before all who stood by him, and he cried out, "Send everyone away from me!" And no one stood with him when Joseph made himself known to his brothers. ²He wept aloud, and the Egyptians heard, and the house of Pharaoh heard. ³Joseph said to his brothers, "I am Joseph! Is my father still alive?" But his brothers could not answer him, for they were terrified before him. ⁴Joseph said to his brothers, "Come close to me, I pray you." And they came close. Then he said, "I am Joseph your brother, whom you sold into Egypt." ⁵Now therefore, do not be grieved, and do not be angry with yourselves that you sold me here, for God sent me before you to preserve life. ⁶For the famine has been in the midst of the land these two years, and there are still five years in which there will be neither plowing nor harvest. ⁷God sent me before you to establish for you a remnant in the earth, and to keep you alive as a great deliverance. ⁸So now, it was not you who sent me here, but God. He has made me a father to Pharaoh, and lord of all his house, and ruler over all the land of Egypt. ⁹Hurry and go up to my father, and say to him, 'Thus says your son Joseph: God has made me lord of all Egypt. Come down to me — do not delay.' ¹⁰You shall dwell in the land of Goshen, and you shall be near to me — you, your sons, your grandsons, your flocks, your herds, and all that you have. ¹¹I will provide for you there, for there are still five years of famine, so that you, your household, and all that you have are not reduced to poverty. ¹²And behold, your eyes see — and the eyes of my brother Benjamin — that it is my own mouth speaking to you. ¹³You shall tell my father of all my honor in Egypt, and of all that you have seen. Hurry and bring my father down here. ¹⁴He fell on the neck of his brother Benjamin and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck. ¹⁵He kissed all his brothers and wept over them. And after that, his brothers spoke with him. ¹⁶When the report was heard in Pharaoh's house: "Joseph's brothers have come." It pleased Pharaoh and his servants. ¹⁷Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Say to your brothers, 'Do this: load your animals and go — return to the land of Canaan.'" ¹⁸Bring your father and your families and come to me. I will provide you the finest region of Egypt, and you will enjoy the richest produce of the land. ¹⁹Now you are commanded — do this: take wagons from the land of Egypt for your little ones and for your wives, and carry your father and come. ²⁰Do not let your eyes be troubled over your possessions, for the best of all the land of Egypt is yours. ²¹The sons of Israel did so. Joseph gave them wagons according to the command of Pharaoh, and he gave them provisions for the journey. ²²To each of them he gave a change of garments, but to Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five changes of garments. ²³To his father he sent the following: ten donkeys loaded with the best things of Egypt, and ten female donkeys loaded with grain, bread, and provisions for his father for the journey. ²⁴He sent his brothers away, and they departed. He said to them, "Do not quarrel on the way." ²⁵They went up from Egypt and came to the land of Canaan, to Jacob their father. ²⁶They told him, saying, "Joseph is still alive, and he is ruler over all the land of Egypt!" But his heart grew numb, for he did not believe them. ²⁷They told him all the words of Joseph that he had spoken to them. And when he saw the wagons that Joseph had sent to carry him, the spirit of Jacob their father revived. ²⁸Israel said, "Enough! Joseph my son is still alive. I will go and see him before I die."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Could no longer restrain himself' (lo-yakhol lehit'appeq) — the hitpael of 'apaq means to force oneself, to hold oneself back. The verb conveys the image of a dam breaking. Judah's speech in chapter 44 has done its work: the brothers' transformation is proven, and Joseph's elaborate testing collapses under the weight of his own emotion.
1. 'Send everyone away from me' (hotsiu khol-ish me'alai) — Joseph's first act of self-revelation is to create privacy. This moment is too intimate and too dangerous for Egyptian ears. The brothers' crime — selling a man into slavery — must not become public knowledge in Pharaoh's court.
1. 'Made himself known' (hitvadda) — the hitpael of yada (to know). The reflexive form suggests not merely announcing his identity but uncovering his whole self. Joseph removes the mask of the Egyptian vizier and becomes again the brother they sold.
2. 'He gave his voice in weeping' (vayyitten et-qolo bivkhi) — literally 'he gave his voice in weeping.' This is not quiet tears but audible, uncontrollable sobbing. The verb natan (to give) with qol (voice) suggests Joseph's weeping was a sound released, not merely shed. Years of concealment, grief, and longing pour out.
2. 'The Egyptians heard... the house of Pharaoh heard' — the deliberate repetition underscores how public Joseph's private moment became. Despite dismissing everyone, his weeping was so loud it penetrated walls. This detail also prepares for Pharaoh's reaction in verse 16.
3. 'I am Joseph' (ani Yosef) — three words that shatter the entire Egyptian facade. The declaration is stunningly abrupt. No preamble, no softening. After years of disguise and elaborate testing, Joseph's identity is revealed in the simplest possible statement.

3. 'Is my father still alive?' (ha'od avi chai) — Joseph has already been told Jacob is alive (43:27-28), so this question is not informational. It expresses deep emotional longing — the cry of a son who has been separated from his father for over twenty years and can scarcely believe the reunion is at hand.
3. 'Terrified' (nivhalu) — the niphal of bahal means to be dismayed, terrified, overwhelmed with sudden alarm. The brothers' terror is not merely surprise; it is the shock of realizing that the all-powerful Egyptian ruler before whom they have been bowing is the very brother they sold into slavery. Every cruelty, every lie, every deception is now exposed before the one who has power of life and death over them.
4. 'Come close to me' (geshu-na elai) — a tender invitation. The particle na softens the imperative to a request. The brothers, paralyzed with fear, need to be coaxed forward. Joseph bridges the gap physically as he is about to bridge it emotionally.
4. 'Whom you sold into Egypt' (asher-mekharten oti Mitsraymah) — Joseph names the crime plainly, without euphemism. He does not say 'whom you sent away' or 'whom you gave up.' The verb makhar (to sell) strips away any pretense. Yet this statement is not an accusation — it is the foundation for the theological reinterpretation that follows in verses 5-8.
5. 'Do not be grieved' (al-te'atsvu) — from the root 'atsav, meaning to be pained, hurt, grieved. The same root describes God's grief over human wickedness before the flood (6:6). Joseph perceives that his brothers are crushed with guilt and moves immediately to relieve them.
5. 'Do not be angry with yourselves' (al-yichar be'eineikhem) — literally 'let it not burn in your eyes.' Joseph addresses both their sorrow and their self-directed anger. He understands the full emotional landscape of their guilt.
5. 'God sent me before you to preserve life' (shelachani Elohim lifneikhem lemichyah) — this is the theological heart of the Joseph narrative. The verb shalach (to send) deliberately counters makhar (to sell) from verse 4. Joseph does not deny human agency or sin; he overlays it with divine purpose. The brothers sold; God sent. Both statements are true simultaneously. The word michyah (preservation of life, sustenance) reveals God's purpose: not punishment, not merely political power, but the preservation of life itself.
6. 'Neither plowing nor harvest' (ein-charish veqatsir) — the mention of both plowing and harvest indicates complete agricultural failure. It is not merely that crops fail to grow; the conditions make it pointless even to plow. Five more years of total agricultural collapse means the situation will grow far worse before it ends.
6. Joseph provides a practical justification for his theological claim: God's sending him ahead was not abstract providence but concrete preparation for a seven-year catastrophe. The timing is precise — two years in, five to go — underscoring the urgency of bringing Jacob's family to Egypt.
7. 'To establish for you a remnant in the earth' (lasum lakhem she'erit ba'arets) — the word she'erit (remnant) is theologically loaded. It will become a major prophetic concept — the faithful remnant preserved through judgment (Isaiah 10:21, Micah 5:6-7). Here, at its earliest narrative appearance, it refers to the physical survival of Jacob's family. God's plan is not merely to save individuals but to preserve a line, a people, a covenant community.
7. 'A great deliverance' (lifletah gedolah) — the word pletah means escape, deliverance, a group of survivors. The adjective gedolah (great) elevates this from mere survival to a grand act of divine rescue. Joseph sees his entire experience — the pit, the slavery, the prison, the rise to power — as the mechanism of a great deliverance orchestrated by God.
8. 'It was not you who sent me here, but God' (lo atten shelachtem oti hena ki ha'Elohim) — this is the climactic theological statement of the Joseph narrative. Joseph does not minimize their sin (he named it plainly in v.4) but declares that behind their evil act stood a sovereign God working a greater purpose. This is not fatalism or excuse-making; it is a profound affirmation that divine sovereignty operates through and beyond human choices, even sinful ones.
8. 'A father to Pharaoh' (le-av le-Par'oh) — the title 'father' here denotes a chief counselor or trusted advisor, a usage attested in ancient Egyptian court language. The irony is rich: Joseph, who was torn from his own father, has become a 'father' to the most powerful man in the world.
8. 'Lord of all his house, and ruler over all the land of Egypt' — three titles in ascending scope: father (advisor), lord (household authority), ruler (national sovereignty). Joseph's position encompasses every sphere of Egyptian power, all orchestrated by God for the purpose stated in verses 5-7.
9. 'Hurry and go up' (maharu va'alu) — the urgency is palpable. Joseph has waited over twenty years; now he cannot bear another day of separation. The verb 'alah (to go up) reflects the geographical reality: one always goes 'up' from Egypt to Canaan.
9. 'Thus says your son Joseph' (koh amar binkha Yosef) — the messenger formula koh amar ('thus says') is typically used for royal or prophetic declarations. Joseph sends a message to his father with the authority of the second-most powerful man in Egypt, yet he identifies himself simply as 'your son Joseph.'
9. 'Come down to me — do not delay' (redah elai al-ta'amod) — the verb 'amad means to stand, to remain in place. Joseph pleads: do not stand still, do not hesitate. The five remaining years of famine make the invitation urgent.
10. 'The land of Goshen' (erets Goshen) — a fertile region in the eastern Nile Delta, well-suited for pastoral life. By settling his family in Goshen, Joseph provides them with excellent grazing land while also keeping them somewhat separate from Egyptian urban centers — a separation that will prove both protective and isolating in the centuries to come.
10. 'You shall be near to me' (vehayita qarov elai) — the longing of a son. Joseph has power, wealth, and honor, but what he wants is proximity to his father. The enumeration that follows — sons, grandsons, flocks, herds, everything — expresses Joseph's desire to gather all that belongs to Jacob under his care and protection.

11. 'I will provide for you' (vekhilkalti otkha) — from the root kul in the pilpel, meaning to sustain, nourish, provide for. Joseph assumes personal responsibility for his father's entire household. The son who was cast out now becomes the family's sustainer.
11. 'Reduced to poverty' (tivvaresh) — from the root yarash in the niph'al, meaning to be dispossessed, impoverished, brought to ruin. The famine threatens not merely discomfort but total economic destruction. Joseph's invitation is an act of salvation.
12. 'Your eyes see... the eyes of my brother Benjamin' (eineikhem ro'ot... ve'einei achi Binyamin) — Joseph appeals to their direct sensory experience: see for yourselves. The singling out of Benjamin is significant. Benjamin is the only brother who shares Joseph's mother Rachel; he is 'my brother' in a double sense. Benjamin's eyes are given special mention because he alone among the brothers is innocent of the crime against Joseph.
12. 'It is my own mouth speaking to you' (ki-fi hammedabber aleikhem) — Joseph is likely speaking Hebrew directly, without the interpreter who had been mediating their previous conversations (cf. 42:23). This is proof that he is not an Egyptian lord but their Hebrew brother — he speaks their language, their words, their world.
13. 'All my honor in Egypt' (kol-kevod beMitsrayim) — kavod encompasses honor, glory, splendor, and wealth. Joseph wants his father to know not for the sake of boasting but so that Jacob will understand the move to Egypt is not a desperate flight but a journey toward abundance and security.
13. 'Hurry and bring my father down' — the repetition of urgency (cf. v.9 'hurry and go up') reveals Joseph's emotional state. He is giving instructions to his brothers, but the subtext is the longing of a son who cannot wait to see his father.
14. 'Fell on the neck of his brother Benjamin' (vayyipol al-tsavv'arei Binyamin achiv) — the verb naphal (to fall) expresses the collapse of emotional restraint into physical embrace. The plural tsavv'arei (necks) is used idiomatically in Hebrew for a single neck, perhaps conveying the fullness of the embrace.
14. Benjamin is embraced first and separately because he is Joseph's only full brother — both sons of Rachel. They share a mother's loss: Rachel died giving birth to Benjamin (35:18-19), and Joseph was taken from his family shortly after. This embrace reunites Rachel's two sons after more than two decades.
14. The mutual weeping — Joseph on Benjamin, Benjamin on Joseph — creates a symmetry of grief and joy. Benjamin, who was too young to remember Joseph's departure, now weeps with a brother restored from what must have seemed like death.
15. 'He kissed all his brothers' (vaynasheq lekhol-echav) — Joseph extends his embrace to every brother, including those who plotted his death and those who sold him. The kiss is an act of reconciliation, not merely greeting.
15. 'After that his brothers spoke with him' (acharei khi dibberu echav itto) — this is one of the most understated and powerful lines in the narrative. Until this moment, the brothers have been speechless — frozen in terror (v.3), unable to respond. Only after Joseph's tears, his theological reframing, his embrace, and his kisses does the ice finally break. The verb dibber (to speak) signals that genuine dialogue and relationship have been restored. Reconciliation is not complete until the silenced can speak.
16. 'The report was heard' (vehaqqol nishma) — qol here means report, news, or rumor, rather than the literal 'voice' of v.2. The news of Joseph's brothers' arrival spreads through the palace.
16. 'It pleased Pharaoh' (vayyitav be'einei Far'oh) — literally 'it was good in the eyes of Pharaoh.' Pharaoh's positive reaction reflects both his affection for Joseph and sound political judgment: Joseph's competent management of the famine has saved Egypt, and Pharaoh is happy to reward his family.
17. 'Load your animals' (ta'anu et-be'irkhem) — from ta'an, to load, burden. The animals are pack animals for transporting goods. Pharaoh begins issuing specific logistical instructions, demonstrating his personal involvement in the family relocation.
17. Pharaoh's directive echoes and amplifies Joseph's own instructions. The king of Egypt himself commands the journey to Canaan to retrieve Jacob, adding royal weight to Joseph's urgent plea.
18. 'The best of the land of Egypt' (tuv erets Mitsrayim) — tuv means goodness, the best part. Pharaoh offers the premium territory of Egypt, which will be identified as Goshen.
18. 'The fat of the land' (chelev ha'arets) — chelev literally means fat, the richest and most desirable portion. In sacrificial contexts, the fat is the portion reserved for God as the choicest part. Pharaoh uses this metaphor to promise the most abundant produce of the land. The expression has entered English as an idiom through the KJV translation.
19. 'Wagons' (agalot) — wheeled carts for transport, a mark of Egyptian technology and wealth. The provision of wagons is significant: Jacob's family will not need to walk or ride donkeys for the entire journey. The wagons are especially meant for the vulnerable — children and wives — and for the elderly Jacob himself. These wagons will later serve as proof to Jacob that Joseph is truly alive (v.27).
20. 'Do not let your eyes be troubled over your possessions' (ve'einkhem al-tachos al-keleikhem) — the verb chus means to pity, to show concern, to spare. Pharaoh tells them not to worry about leaving belongings behind in Canaan. Whatever they cannot transport will be more than replaced by Egypt's abundance. The mention of 'eyes' continues the motif of seeing that runs through this chapter (vv.12, 16).
20. 'The best of all the land of Egypt is yours' — Pharaoh's generosity is extravagant and unconditional. This stands in stark contrast to how Egypt will treat Israel's descendants in Exodus. The current Pharaoh's warmth makes the later Pharaoh's hostility all the more bitter.

21. 'The sons of Israel' (benei Yisra'el) — the narrator uses the formal designation 'sons of Israel' rather than 'his brothers,' perhaps anticipating the national identity this family will assume. They are not merely Joseph's brothers; they are the embryonic nation.
21. 'Provisions for the journey' (tsedah laderekh) — tsedah denotes food prepared for a journey, travel supplies. Joseph ensures they lack nothing for the long trek to Canaan and back.
22. 'Changes of garments' (chalifot semalot) — fine garments were a form of wealth and honor in the ancient Near East. Joseph gives each brother a set, recalling painfully the 'coat of many colors' (ketonet passim) that marked Joseph as the favored son and triggered the brothers' jealousy (37:3-4).
22. 'To Benjamin he gave three hundred pieces of silver and five changes of garments' — Benjamin receives dramatically more than the others. This preferential treatment echoes Jacob's favoring of Joseph. Yet Joseph does not fear the brothers' jealousy now — either because he trusts their transformation or because his admonition in v.24 addresses this concern. The five garments may correspond to the five remaining years of famine, or they may simply reflect abundant generosity toward his only full brother.
23. 'Ten donkeys loaded with the best things of Egypt' — the gifts are lavish: twenty animals in total, carrying Egypt's finest goods. The ten male donkeys carry luxury items (mittuv Mitsrayim, 'from the goodness of Egypt'), while the ten female donkeys carry practical sustenance for the journey.
23. 'Grain, bread, and provisions' (bar valechem umazon) — three terms for food, emphasizing abundance. Bar is raw grain, lechem is bread (prepared food), and mazon is general provisions or sustenance. Joseph ensures his father will lack nothing.
24. 'Do not quarrel on the way' (al-tirgezu baderekh) — the verb ragaz has a range of meanings: to tremble, to be agitated, to quarrel. The precise sense here is debated. It could mean: (a) do not quarrel with one another — perhaps about who bears the most blame for selling Joseph; (b) do not be agitated or anxious — a calming reassurance after the emotional turmoil; (c) do not linger or get distracted on the road. The context of brothers burdened with old guilt and new revelations makes (a) most likely. Joseph knows them well enough to anticipate that the journey home could devolve into recrimination and blame-shifting.
25. 'They went up from Egypt' (vayyaalu miMitsrayim) — the journey is described with characteristic brevity. The narrator skips the entire journey — no details of travel, no overnight stops — and cuts directly to the arrival. The narrative is focused entirely on the emotional arc: Joseph's revelation, the brothers' departure, and now Jacob's reaction.
26. 'Joseph is still alive' (od Yosef chai) — the news is delivered bluntly. There is no soft preparation, no gradual revelation. The brothers simply declare what seemed impossible: Joseph lives.
26. 'His heart grew numb' (vayyafag libbo) — the verb pug means to grow cold, to become numb, to faint. Jacob's heart does not leap with joy — it goes numb. After more than twenty years of mourning a son he believed dead, after the deception of the blood-soaked coat (37:31-33), Jacob's first reaction is not belief but paralysis. The news is too great, too improbable, too good to absorb. This is the response of a man whose grief has become the structure of his identity.
26. 'He did not believe them' (lo he'emin lahem) — the irony cuts deep. The brothers who deceived Jacob about Joseph's death (37:31-35) now tell him the truth, and he cannot believe them. Their credibility was destroyed by their original lie, and even truth cannot immediately repair what deception has broken.
27. 'All the words of Joseph' (kol divrei Yosef) — the brothers relay everything Joseph said. The theological reframing (God sent me), the practical plan (come to Goshen), the urgency (do not delay) — all of it is repeated to Jacob. Words alone, however, are insufficient; it is the physical evidence that turns the tide.
27. 'When he saw the wagons' (vayyar et-ha'agalot) — seeing is believing where hearing was not enough. The wagons are proof: no one in Canaan could send Egyptian wagons. They are tangible evidence of Joseph's power and his invitation. Jacob's transition from numbness to belief is mediated by sight, not speech.
27. 'The spirit of Jacob their father revived' (vattechi ruach Ya'aqov avihem) — the verb chayah (to live, to revive) applied to Jacob's spirit is a kind of resurrection language. Jacob's spirit, which had been dead with grief since chapter 37, now comes back to life. The man who said 'I will go down to Sheol mourning for my son' (37:35) now receives his son back from the dead, as it were.
28. 'Enough!' (rav) — a single word that encapsulates Jacob's transformation from doubt to resolve. Rav means 'much' or 'enough' — it may convey 'this is great news!' or 'enough — say no more — I believe you.' Either way, it marks the decisive turn.
28. 'Israel said' — the narrator switches from 'Jacob' (v.27) to 'Israel.' This name change is significant. Jacob — the man of struggle, grief, and deception — gives way to Israel — the man who wrestled with God and prevailed. The revived spirit brings the revived name. When Jacob acts in faith and resolution, he is Israel.
28. 'I will go and see him before I die' (elkhah ve'er'ennu betere amut) — Jacob, who has spoken repeatedly of going down to Sheol in grief (37:35, 42:38), now speaks of going to Egypt in hope. The journey toward death has become a journey toward reunion. 'Before I die' is not morbid but purposeful: there is one thing left that Jacob must do with his remaining life, and that is to see Joseph.

46

Summary: *Israel sets out for Egypt and offers sacrifices at Beersheba. God speaks in a night vision: 'Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, for I will make you a great nation there.' The chapter lists the seventy members of Jacob's family who enter Egypt, organized by mother. Joseph meets his father in Goshen; Jacob weeps on his neck.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *God's final direct speech to a patriarch in Genesis comes here: 'I will go down with you to Egypt, and I will also surely bring you up again' (v. 4). The promise of divine accompaniment into exile — not just into the promised land — redefines God's presence as portable rather than territorial. The number seventy (v. 27) carries symbolic completeness, matching the seventy nations of chapter 10 and suggesting that Jacob's family is itself a microcosm of humanity. Joseph 'fell on his father's neck and wept on his neck a good while' (v. 29) — the reunion is one of the great emotional climaxes of Genesis.*

Translation Friction: *The total of seventy (v. 27) requires careful counting and includes Joseph and his two sons already in Egypt. The Septuagint reads seventy-five (adding grandchildren of Joseph), which Stephen follows in Acts 7:14. We rendered the Masoretic Hebrew's number and noted the variant. The phrase 'Joseph shall close your eyes' (v. 4) — an idiom for being present at a parent's death — carries deep emotional weight that English conveys naturally.*

Connections: *God's assurance at Beersheba (46:2-4) echoes the Beersheba theophanies to Abraham (21:33) and Isaac (26:23-25). The descent into Egypt fulfills the prophecy of 15:13. The seventy souls parallel the seventy elders of Israel (Exodus 24:1) and the seventy nations (Genesis 10). Moses' account of the descent in Deuteronomy 10:22 cites this number as evidence of God's faithfulness.*

¹Israel journeyed with all that he had and came to Beersheba, and he offered sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac. ²God spoke to Israel in visions of the night and said, "Jacob! Jacob!" And he said, "Here I am." ³He said, "I am God, the God of your father. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, for I will make you into a great nation there." ⁴I will go down with you to Egypt, and I will also surely bring you up again. And Joseph shall close your eyes. ⁵Jacob set out from Beersheba, and Israel's sons transported their father Jacob, along with their children and wives, in the carts that Pharaoh had provided for the journey. ⁶They took their livestock and their possessions that they had acquired in the land of Canaan, and they came to Egypt — Jacob and all his offspring with him. ⁷His sons and his grandsons with him, his daughters and his granddaughters — all his offspring he brought with him to Egypt. ⁸These are the names of the sons of Israel who came to Egypt — Jacob and his sons: Reuben, Jacob's firstborn. ⁹The sons of Reuben: Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. ¹⁰The sons of Simeon: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jachin, Zohar, and Shaul the son of a Canaanite woman. ¹¹The sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, Merari. ¹²The sons of Judah: Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, and Zerah — but Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul. ¹³The sons of Issachar: Tola, Puvvah, Iob, and Shimron. ¹⁴The sons of Zebulun: Sered, Elon, and Jahleel. ¹⁵These are the sons of Leah, whom she bore to Jacob in Paddan-aram, along with his daughter Dinah. All the persons of his sons and daughters were thirty-three. ¹⁶The sons of Gad: Ziphion, Haggi, Shuni, Ezbon, Eri, Arodi, and Areli. ¹⁷The sons of Asher: Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah, and Serah their sister. The sons of Beriah: Heber and Malchiel. ¹⁸These are the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban gave to his daughter Leah. She bore these to Jacob — sixteen persons. ¹⁹Rachel, Jacob's wife, bore Joseph and Benjamin. ²⁰In Egypt, Asenath — daughter of Poti-phaera, priest of On — bore Manasseh and Ephraim to Joseph. ²¹The sons of Benjamin: Bela, Becher, Ashbel, Gera, Naaman, Ehi, Rosh, Muppim, Huppim, and Ard. ²²These are the sons of Rachel who were born to Jacob — fourteen persons in all. ²³The son of Dan: Hushim. ²⁴The sons of Naphtali: Jahzeel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem. ²⁵These are the sons of Bilhah, whom Laban gave to his daughter Rachel. She bore these to Jacob — seven persons in all. ²⁶All the persons who came with Jacob to Egypt, who came from his body — besides the wives of Jacob's sons — all the persons were sixty-six. ²⁷The sons of Joseph who were born to him in Egypt were two persons. All the persons of the house of Jacob who came to Egypt were seventy. ²⁸He sent Judah ahead of him to Joseph, to direct the way before him to Goshen. And they came to the land of Goshen. ²⁹Joseph prepared his chariot and went up to meet Israel his father in

Goshen. He appeared before him and fell on his neck and wept on his neck a long time. ³⁰Israel said to Joseph, "Now let me die, since I have seen your face — because you are still alive." ³¹Joseph said to his brothers and to his father's household, "I will go up and tell Pharaoh, and say to him, 'My brothers and my father's household, who were in the land of Canaan, have come to me.'" ³²"The men are shepherds, for they have been keepers of livestock, and they have brought their flocks and their herds and all that they have." ³³"When Pharaoh calls for you and asks, 'What is your occupation?' ³⁴you shall say, 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we and our fathers' — so that you may dwell in the land of Goshen, for every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Beersheba' (Be'er Shava) — a site of profound patriarchal memory. Abraham planted a tamarisk tree there and called on the name of the LORD (21:33). Isaac received God's covenant promise there (26:23-25) and built an altar. Jacob now stops at this ancestral holy place before leaving the promised land — an act of worship at the threshold of departure.
1. 'Sacrifices to the God of his father Isaac' (zevachim le'lohei aviv Yitschaq) — Jacob specifically invokes the God of Isaac, his father, perhaps because Isaac was the patriarch most directly associated with Beersheba. The plural 'sacrifices' (zevachim) suggests a substantial offering, befitting the gravity of the moment: Jacob is about to leave the land God promised to his fathers.
2. 'In visions of the night' (bemar'ot halaylah) — not a dream (chalom) but visions — a more direct form of divine communication. The nighttime setting connects to other pivotal divine encounters: Jacob's ladder at Bethel (28:12), his wrestling at Peniel (32:22-32). God meets Jacob at night, at moments of transition and vulnerability.
2. 'Jacob! Jacob!' (Ya'aqov Ya'aqov) — the doubled name signals special divine address. This pattern appears at critical moments: 'Abraham! Abraham!' at the binding of Isaac (22:11), 'Moses! Moses!' at the burning bush (Exodus 3:4), 'Samuel! Samuel!' (1 Samuel 3:10). The repetition conveys urgency, intimacy, and the gravity of what follows.
2. 'Here I am' (hineni) — the quintessential response of patriarchal readiness. Abraham said it to God (22:1), to Isaac (22:7), and to the angel (22:11). Jacob now takes up this word of availability and surrender at the threshold of a journey that will transform his family into a nation.
3. 'I am God, the God of your father' (anokhi ha'El Elohei avikha) — the divine self-identification uses ha'El (the God, God Almighty) followed by 'the God of your father,' linking the universal sovereign to the personal, covenantal relationship. This formula assures Jacob that the God who appeared to Abraham and Isaac is the same God who now speaks.
3. 'Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt' (al-tira meredah Mitsraymah) — God addresses the unspoken fear. Jacob knows the patriarchal warnings: Abraham went to Egypt and nearly lost Sarah (12:10-20). Isaac was explicitly told not to go to Egypt (26:2). Now God reverses that prohibition: this descent is divinely authorized.
3. 'I will make you into a great nation there' (legoy gadol asimkha sham) — the covenant promise of nationhood (12:2) will be fulfilled not in Canaan but in Egypt. This is a startling relocation of the promise. The great nation will be forged in a foreign land, through suffering and deliverance — a pattern that defines Israel's entire identity.
4. 'I will go down with you to Egypt' (anokhi ered immekha Mitsraymah) — God promises personal accompaniment. The descent to Egypt is not abandonment of the promised land but a divinely escorted journey. The emphatic anokhi (I myself) stresses God's personal presence. This promise will sustain Israel through centuries of Egyptian sojourn.
4. 'I will also surely bring you up again' (ve'anokhi a'alekha gam-aloh) — the infinitive absolute (aloh) intensifies the promise: I will certainly bring you up. This operates on two levels: Jacob's body will return to Canaan for burial (50:13), and his descendants will return as a nation in the Exodus. Both fulfillments are contained in this single promise.
4. 'Joseph shall close your eyes' (veYosef yashit yado al-einekha) — literally 'Joseph shall place his hand upon your eyes.' This refers to the ancient custom of a beloved son closing the eyes of his dying father. It is an intimate promise: you will not die alone in a foreign land; your most beloved son will be at your deathbed. For Jacob, who believed Joseph dead, this assurance is almost unbearably tender.
5. 'Jacob rose up from Beersheba' — strengthened by God's night vision, Jacob departs with resolve. The verb qum (to rise up) signals decisive action after the divine encounter.
5. 'The sons of Israel carried Jacob their father' — the aged patriarch is now carried by his sons. The wagons Pharaoh sent (45:19-21) serve their intended purpose: transporting the elderly Jacob and the vulnerable members of the household. The detail humanizes the journey — this is not a military march but a family migration, with an old man riding in an Egyptian cart.
6. 'Their livestock and their possessions that they had acquired in the land of Canaan' (migneheh verekhushah asher rakheshu be'erets Kena'an) — despite Pharaoh's instruction not to worry about possessions (45:20), Jacob's family brings everything. They are not abandoning Canaan permanently in their own understanding; they are relocating with all their wealth.

6. 'Jacob and all his offspring with him' (Ya'aqov vekhol-zar'o itto) — the word zera (seed, offspring) connects to the covenant promises. God promised Abraham that his 'seed' would be as numerous as the stars (15:5). Now that seed — still countable, still a family — descends into Egypt where it will grow into the uncountable nation.
7. The enumeration of 'sons, grandsons, daughters, granddaughters' emphasizes the completeness of the migration. No one is left behind in Canaan. The entire covenant family descends into Egypt together, setting the stage for the genealogical list that follows in verses 8-25.
8. The genealogical list begins with a formal heading: 'these are the names' (ve'elleh shemot), the same formula that opens the book of Exodus (Shemot). This list functions as a bridge between the patriarchal narratives and the national story — these named individuals will become the tribes of Israel.
8. 'Reuben, Jacob's firstborn' — the list begins with birth order by mother, starting with Leah's sons. Despite Reuben's forfeiture of the firstborn's privileges (35:22, 49:3-4), he retains the formal title bekhon (firstborn) in the genealogical record.
9. Reuben's four sons become the four Reubenite clans listed in Numbers 26:5-7. The names are preserved in their Hebrew forms: Chanokh (dedicated), Pallu (distinguished), Chetsron (enclosed), and Karmi (my vineyard).
10. 'Shaul the son of a Canaanite woman' (Sha'ul ben-haKena'anit) — this note is remarkable in a genealogy that otherwise omits mothers. The Canaanite origin of Shaul's mother is highlighted, perhaps to explain certain tensions within the tribe of Simeon, or as an honest acknowledgment that intermarriage with Canaanites occurred even among Jacob's immediate family.
11. Levi's three sons become the three great Levitical divisions. Kohath's line will produce Moses, Aaron, and Miriam (Exodus 6:16-20). The Gershonites, Kohathites, and Merarites will each be assigned specific duties in the tabernacle service (Numbers 3-4). What appears here as a simple genealogical entry carries enormous implications for Israel's future worship.
12. 'Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan' — the genealogy pauses to note the deaths recorded in chapter 38. Er was struck down by the LORD for his wickedness (38:7), and Onan was killed for his refusal to fulfill the duty of levirate marriage (38:8-10). Their inclusion and notation of death maintains genealogical completeness while acknowledging that not all of Jacob's descendants survived to enter Egypt.
12. 'The sons of Perez were Hezron and Hamul' — Perez, born from Judah and Tamar (ch. 38), carries the messianic line. Hezron will be an ancestor of David (Ruth 4:18-22) and ultimately of the Messiah. What began in scandal and shame (Judah and Tamar) produces the royal lineage.
13. Issachar's four sons become the founding clans of the tribe. 'Iob' (Yov) is a variant of the name rendered 'Jashub' in Numbers 26:24 and 1 Chronicles 7:1. The variation may reflect scribal traditions or dialectal differences in the preservation of the name.
14. Zebulun's three sons are the last of Leah's grandsons listed. Together with the preceding entries, they complete the enumeration of Leah's branch of Jacob's family.
15. 'Along with his daughter Dinah' (ve'et Dinah bitto) — Dinah is the only daughter named in the genealogy, likely because of her role in the Shechem narrative (ch. 34). The mention of 'daughters' (plural) in the summary suggests other daughters existed but are not named, as genealogies typically tracked male lines.
15. 'Thirty-three persons' (sheloshim veshalosh) — this count includes Jacob himself in the total (as the head), or it may include Er and Onan who died in Canaan and did not actually enter Egypt. The precise reckoning has generated extensive rabbinic discussion, with various solutions proposed to reconcile the count with the names listed.
16. Gad has seven sons — the largest individual family in this section. Gad's tribe will later be known for its warriors (1 Chronicles 12:8) and will settle in the Transjordan (Numbers 32). The names show some variation from the parallel list in Numbers 26:15-18.
17. 'Serah their sister' (Serach achotam) — Serah is the only granddaughter named in the entire genealogy, a distinction as notable as Dinah's mention among Jacob's children. Rabbinic tradition assigns Serah a remarkably long life and credits her with confirming to Jacob that Joseph was alive, and later with identifying the location of Joseph's bones for Moses at the time of the Exodus.
18. 'Zilpah, whom Laban gave to Leah his daughter' — the genealogy traces the maternal lines back to Laban's household arrangements, connecting the Egyptian migration to the Paddan-aram narratives. Zilpah, Leah's servant, became Jacob's concubine-wife and bore Gad and Asher (30:9-13).
18. 'Sixteen persons' (shesh esreh nafesh) — the word nefesh (soul, person, living being) is used for the count, emphasizing that these are not mere names but living persons entering Egypt.
19. 'Rachel, Jacob's wife' (Rachel eshet Ya'aqov) — Rachel alone among the mothers is called Jacob's 'wife' (ishah) rather than being identified through her father Laban. This reflects her unique status as Jacob's chosen, beloved wife — the one he worked fourteen years to marry. The designation honors her even in death, as Rachel died giving birth to Benjamin (35:18-19).
20. 'Asenath the daughter of Poti-phera, priest of On' — Joseph's Egyptian wife and her priestly lineage are reiterated (cf. 41:45, 50). On (Heliopolis) was the center of Egyptian sun worship. Joseph's marriage into the Egyptian priestly aristocracy represents the deepest level of his assimilation — yet his sons will be claimed by Jacob as his own (48:5) and fully integrated into Israel's tribal structure.
20. Manasseh and Ephraim, though born in Egypt to an Egyptian mother, will each become a full tribe, receiving Jacob's blessing and territorial inheritance alongside their uncles. This adoption (ch. 48) effectively gives Joseph a double portion — the right of the firstborn.

21. Benjamin has ten sons listed — a remarkably large family, especially given his youth. Some scholars suggest this list includes grandsons or later descendants projected back into the migration list. The parallel lists in Numbers 26:38-41 and 1 Chronicles 7:6-12 show significant variations in both the number and names of Benjamin's descendants, suggesting complex textual transmission.
21. The large number may also reflect a literary purpose: Benjamin, the youngest and most vulnerable brother, who nearly became a pawn in the cup incident, produces an abundant line — a sign of divine blessing on Rachel's second son.
22. 'Fourteen persons' — Rachel's branch of the family: Joseph and his two sons (Manasseh and Ephraim), Benjamin and his ten sons, plus Rachel's two sons themselves. Rachel, who wept that she had no children (30:1) and died bearing her second son, has fourteen descendants entering Egypt — a number associated with completion (twice seven).
23. 'The son of Dan: Hushim' — the Hebrew uses the plural 'sons of' (benei) with a single name, a standard genealogical formula even when only one descendant is listed. Despite having only one son at this point, the tribe of Dan will become one of the larger tribes by the time of the census in Numbers (Numbers 26:42-43). The rendering uses singular 'son' for clarity in English.
24. Naphtali's four sons complete the enumeration of Bilhah's descendants. Naphtali's tribe will settle in the fertile region of upper Galilee, fulfilling Jacob's later blessing that 'Naphtali is a doe set free, who bears beautiful fawns' (49:21).
25. 'Seven persons' — Bilhah's total: Dan and his one son, Naphtali and his four sons, plus the two sons themselves. Seven, the number of completeness, rounds out the smallest maternal branch. The genealogical structure is now complete: Leah (33), Zilpah (16), Rachel (14), Bilhah (7) — totaling 70.
26. 'Who came from his body' (yots'ei yerekho) — literally 'who came out of his thigh/loins.' The word yarekh (thigh, loins) is a euphemism for the reproductive organs, emphasizing biological descent. This count of sixty-six excludes Jacob himself, Joseph and his two sons (already in Egypt), and the wives of Jacob's sons.
26. 'Besides the wives of Jacob's sons' — the wives are explicitly excluded from the count of biological descendants. They came to Egypt but are not 'from Jacob's body.' This exclusion explains the difference between sixty-six and the total of seventy in the next verse.
27. 'Seventy' (shiv'im) — this is the canonical number of Jacob's family entering Egypt: 66 from his body + Joseph + Joseph's 2 sons + Jacob himself = 70. The number seventy carries profound symbolic weight in biblical numerology: seventy nations in the Table of Nations (ch. 10), seventy elders of Israel (Exodus 24:1, Numbers 11:16), seventy years of Babylonian exile (Jeremiah 25:11). Israel enters Egypt as a microcosm of completeness — a full family that will become a full nation.
27. The Septuagint (LXX) gives the number as seventy-five, adding five additional descendants of Joseph's sons. Stephen follows the LXX count in Acts 7:14. The difference reflects variant textual traditions, not error.
28. 'He sent Judah ahead of him' (ve'et-Yehudah shalach lefanav) — Judah is chosen as the advance scout and liaison. This selection confirms Judah's leadership role, which was established by his speech in 44:18-34. Reuben the firstborn is passed over; Judah, the fourth son, has assumed the mantle of leadership through his demonstrated courage and selflessness.
28. 'To direct the way' (lehorot lefanav) — the verb horah means to show, teach, direct. Judah goes ahead to get directions to Goshen from Joseph, ensuring the family arrives at the right destination. Some rabbinic traditions interpret lehorot as 'to establish a house of study' — preparing a place of learning before the family arrives.
29. 'Prepared his chariot' (vayyesor Yosef merkavto) — the verb asar means to bind, harness, prepare. Joseph personally prepares his chariot rather than delegating to servants. The urgency and intimacy of the moment demand his own hands. The chariot (merkavah) is a symbol of Egyptian power and status; Joseph arrives as Egypt's ruler but falls on his father's neck as a son.
29. 'He appeared before him' (vayyera elav) — the verb ra'ah in the niphal (vayyera) is the same form used for divine appearances: 'the LORD appeared to Abraham' (12:7, 18:1). The echo may be deliberate: for Jacob, seeing Joseph alive is an experience of something almost divine — the restoration of what was lost, the undoing of death.
29. 'Wept on his neck a long time' (vayyevk al-tsavvarav od) — the word od (still, more, again, a long time) conveys prolonged weeping. This is not a brief, dignified embrace but an extended, unrestrained outpouring. Joseph, who has wept repeatedly through the narrative (42:24, 43:30, 45:2, 45:14-15), now weeps without limit on his father's neck.
30. 'Now let me die' (amutah happa'am) — not a death wish but a declaration of fulfillment. Jacob, who spent decades mourning and expecting to die in grief (37:35), now declares that he can die in peace. His life's most anguished wound has been healed. The word happa'am (this time, now) marks a decisive moment: now — after all the years — death can come without bitterness.
30. 'Since I have seen your face' (acharei re'oti et-panekha) — seeing Joseph's face reverses the long blindness of grief. Jacob was deceived by a bloody garment (37:32-33); now he sees the truth with his own eyes. The theme of sight and seeing, which runs through the entire Joseph narrative, reaches its emotional climax here.
30. 'Because you are still alive' (ki odekha chai) — the simplest and most profound statement. After twenty-two years of believing his son dead, Jacob holds the living Joseph. The word chai (alive) echoes throughout the Joseph story: 'Is your father still alive?' (43:7, 45:3), 'Joseph is still alive!' (45:26, 28). Life conquers the narrative of death.

31. Joseph immediately shifts into practical mode, preparing to manage the political implications of his family's arrival. He will present their case to Pharaoh personally, ensuring they receive favorable treatment. This is Joseph the administrator, the man who navigates Egyptian court politics with the same skill he applies to grain distribution.
32. 'Shepherds' (ro'ei tson) — Joseph will coach his brothers (v.34) to emphasize this occupation when they meet Pharaoh. The shepherding identity serves a dual purpose: it is truthful, and it strategically positions the family for settlement in Goshen, the pastoral region away from Egypt's urban centers.
33. 'Keepers of livestock' (anshei miqneh) — miqneh encompasses all domesticated animals: sheep, goats, cattle. Joseph presents his family's occupation comprehensively.
33. Joseph coaches his brothers for their audience with Pharaoh. He anticipates the king's question and prepares a specific answer. This preparation reflects Joseph's court experience — he knows how Pharaoh operates and how to present a request for maximum advantage.
34. 'Your servants have been keepers of livestock from our youth until now, both we and our fathers' — the response emphasizes multi-generational pastoral identity. This is not a recent occupation but an ancestral way of life. The phrase 'from our youth until now' and 'both we and our fathers' establishes the family as hereditary shepherds, making Goshen's pastureland the natural and logical settlement.
34. 'So that you may dwell in the land of Goshen' (ba'avur teshvu be'erets Goshen) — Joseph reveals his strategy: by emphasizing their pastoral occupation, the brothers will naturally be directed to Goshen, the region Joseph has already designated for them (45:10). This keeps the family together, near Joseph, and on excellent grazing land.
34. 'Every shepherd is an abomination to the Egyptians' (ki-to'avat Mitsrayim kol-ro'eh tson) — the word to'evah (abomination) is strong, denoting cultural revulsion. The Egyptian disdain for shepherds may relate to class distinctions (pastoralists vs. agriculturalists), or to historical conflicts with Asiatic pastoral peoples. Paradoxically, this Egyptian prejudice serves Joseph's purposes: because Egyptians find shepherds distasteful, Jacob's family will be given their own territory rather than being absorbed into Egyptian society. The cultural barrier becomes a protective boundary, preserving Israel's distinct identity during its centuries in Egypt.

47

Summary: *Joseph presents his brothers and his father to Pharaoh. Jacob blesses Pharaoh and describes his life as 'few and difficult.' The family settles in Goshen. As famine worsens, Joseph collects Egypt's money, livestock, and land for Pharaoh, establishing a 20 percent tax. Israel prospers in Egypt. Approaching death, Jacob makes Joseph swear to bury him in Canaan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jacob's audience with Pharaoh produces one of the most striking self-assessments in Genesis: 'few and difficult have been the days of the years of my life' (v. 9). The word megurim ('sojournings') frames his entire existence as transient — he has never been home. Jacob blesses Pharaoh twice (vv. 7, 10), an astonishing reversal: the impoverished nomad blesses the world's most powerful ruler, enacting the Abrahamic promise that 'all families of the earth will be blessed.' Joseph's economic policy (vv. 13-26) concentrates all Egyptian land and labor under Pharaoh — creating the very system that will later enslave Israel.*

Translation Friction: *Jacob's description of his days as ra'im ('difficult/evil,' v. 9) uses a word with moral overtones that English 'difficult' partially captures. The same adjective describes the 'evil' of human hearts in 6:5 and 8:21, yet here it describes suffering endured rather than evil committed. We rendered it as 'difficult' and noted the range. Joseph's agrarian reform (vv. 20-26) is presented without moral judgment in the Hebrew, and we followed that restraint.*

Connections: *Jacob's oath on Joseph's thigh (47:29) mirrors Abraham's oath with his servant (24:2). The burial request anticipates Jacob's detailed instructions in 49:29-32 and their fulfillment in 50:13. The phrase 'gathered to my fathers' (47:30) echoes the patriarchal death formula (25:8; 35:29). Israel's fruitfulness in Egypt (47:27) begins fulfilling the 'be fruitful and multiply' promise, setting up Exodus 1:7.*

1Then Joseph came and told Pharaoh, saying, "My father and my brothers, with their flocks and their herds and all that they have, have come from the land of Canaan, and behold, they are in the land of Goshen." 2From among his brothers he took five men and presented them before Pharaoh. 3Pharaoh said to his brothers, "What is your occupation?" They said to Pharaoh, "Your servants are shepherds of flocks, both we and our fathers." 4They said to Pharaoh, "We have come to sojourn in the land, for there is no pasture for the flocks that belong to your servants, because the famine is severe in the land of

Canaan. Now, we ask, let your servants dwell in the land of Goshen." ⁵Then Pharaoh said to Joseph, "Your father and your brothers have come to you." ⁶The land of Egypt is before you. Settle your father and your brothers in the best of the land; let them dwell in the land of Goshen. And if you know any capable men among them, appoint them as chief herdsmen over my livestock." ⁷Then Joseph brought his father Jacob and set him before Pharaoh, and Jacob blessed Pharaoh. ⁸Pharaoh said to Jacob, "How many are the days of the years of your life?" ⁹Jacob said to Pharaoh, "The days of the years of my sojourning are one hundred and thirty years. Few and difficult have been the days of the years of my life, and they have not reached the days of the years of my fathers in the days of their sojourning." ¹⁰After blessing Pharaoh, Jacob took his leave from the royal presence. ¹¹Joseph established his father and brothers in Egypt, granting them property in the finest region — the district of Rameses — just as Pharaoh had directed. ¹²Joseph sustained his father and his brothers and all his father's household with bread, according to the number of their children. ¹³Now there was no food in all the land, for the famine was very severe, and the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan languished because of the famine. ¹⁴Joseph collected all the money that was found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan in exchange for the grain they were buying, and Joseph brought the money into Pharaoh's house. ¹⁵When the money was exhausted from the land of Egypt and from the land of Canaan, all the Egyptians came to Joseph, saying, "Give us bread! Why should we die before you? For the money is gone." ¹⁶Joseph said, "Give me your livestock, and I will give you food in exchange for your livestock, if the money is gone." ¹⁷So they brought their livestock to Joseph, and Joseph gave them bread in exchange for the horses, the flocks, the herds of cattle, and the donkeys. He provided them with bread in exchange for all their livestock that year. ¹⁸When that year ended, they came to him the following year and said to him, "We will not hide from my lord that the money is spent, and the herds of livestock belong to my lord. There is nothing left before my lord except our bodies and our land. ¹⁹Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land in exchange for bread, and we and our land will be slaves to Pharaoh. Give us seed so that we may live and not die, and the land will not become desolate." ²⁰So Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh, for every Egyptian sold his field because the famine overpowered them. And the land became Pharaoh's. ²¹As for the people, he relocated them to the cities from one end of Egypt's border to the other. ²²Only the land of the priests he did not buy, for the priests had a fixed allotment from Pharaoh, and they ate from their allotment that Pharaoh gave them. Therefore they did not sell their land. ²³Then Joseph said to the people, "Behold, I have bought you this day, and your land, for Pharaoh. Here is seed for you; sow the land. ²⁴At the harvest, you shall give a fifth to Pharaoh, and four parts shall be yours — for seed for the field, for your food, for those in your households, and for food for your little ones." ²⁵They said, "You have saved our lives! Let us find favor in the eyes of my lord, and we will be Pharaoh's servants." ²⁶So Joseph established it as a statute over the land of Egypt, to this day, that a fifth belongs to Pharaoh. Only the land of the priests alone did not become Pharaoh's. ²⁷Israel dwelt in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen. They acquired property in it and were fruitful and multiplied greatly. ²⁸Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years, and the days of Jacob, the years of his life, were one hundred and forty-seven years. ²⁹When the time drew near for Israel to die, he called his son Joseph and said to him, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, please place your hand under my thigh and deal with me in steadfast love and faithfulness. Do not bury me in Egypt. ³⁰When I lie down with my fathers, you shall carry me out of Egypt and bury me in their burial place." He said, "I will do as you have said." ³¹He said, "Swear to me." So Joseph swore to him. Then Israel bowed in worship at the head of the bed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Joseph acts as intermediary between his family and Pharaoh, navigating the delicate politics of settling foreigners in Egypt. He has already placed them in Goshen before seeking formal royal permission — a shrewd move that presents Pharaoh with a fait accompli in the most favorable location.
1. 'The land of Goshen' (erets Goshen) — the fertile eastern Nile delta region, ideal for pastoral families. It was geographically separate enough from the Egyptian heartland to allow the Israelites to maintain their distinct identity, yet close enough to benefit from Egyptian resources.
2. 'Five men' (chamishah anashim) — Joseph selects five of his eleven brothers, presumably those who would make the best impression. The Hebrew 'from the end/extremity of his brothers' (miqqetseh echav) has been variously interpreted: some take it as 'from among' and others as 'the least significant' — that is, Joseph deliberately chose the least impressive brothers so Pharaoh would not conscript them into royal service.
2. 'Presented them' (vayyatsigem) — the same verb used for formally setting something or someone before an authority. Joseph carefully stages this audience.

3. 'Shepherds of flocks' (ro'ei tson) — the brothers openly declare their pastoral identity. This is significant because shepherding was considered lowly or even abominable to Egyptians (see 46:34). Yet they do not hide their vocation; they identify with the occupation of their fathers, anchoring themselves in patriarchal continuity.
3. 'Both we and our fathers' (gam-anachnu gam-avoteinu) — the emphasis on generational continuity frames shepherding not merely as a livelihood but as a heritage. Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob were all herdsman. The brothers claim their place in this lineage.
4. 'To sojourn' (lagur) — not to settle permanently but to reside as aliens. This word choice is theologically significant: the brothers frame their presence as temporary, as guests rather than settlers. This sojourning language (ger, magur, lagur) runs through the patriarchal narratives, expressing Israel's fundamental posture as strangers in every land except the one God has promised.
4. 'The famine is severe' (kaved hara'av) — literally 'heavy is the famine.' The adjective kaved (heavy, weighty) conveys the crushing, oppressive nature of the famine. It is the same root used for Pharaoh's hardened (heavy) heart in Exodus.
5. Pharaoh addresses Joseph directly, acknowledging the family's arrival. The phrasing 'have come to you' (ba'u elekha) places Joseph as the family's anchor in Egypt — they have come to Joseph, not to Egypt. This underscores Joseph's role as the providential link between the family and the foreign power.
6. 'In the best of the land' (bemeitav ha'arets) — Pharaoh's generosity exceeds the brothers' request. They asked only for Goshen; Pharaoh offers the finest portion of all Egypt. This lavish hospitality reflects Joseph's immense value to Pharaoh, and it fulfills God's promise that Israel would be settled in Egypt (46:3-4).
6. 'Capable men' (anshei-chayil) — men of strength, skill, and competence. The term chayil denotes valor, ability, and substance. Pharaoh recognizes that skilled herdsman would be an asset and offers them positions of responsibility over royal livestock — a mark of trust and honor.
6. 'Chief herdsman over my livestock' (sarei miqneh al-asher-li) — literally 'rulers of livestock over what is mine.' Pharaoh invites Joseph's brothers into royal service. This is a remarkable integration: foreign shepherds, whose occupation Egyptians disdained, are offered oversight of the king's own herds.
7. 'Jacob blessed Pharaoh' (vayevarekh Ya'aqov et-Par'oh) — this is an extraordinary moment. The aged patriarch, a landless sojourner dependent on Pharaoh's hospitality, pronounces blessing upon the most powerful ruler in the known world. The writer of Hebrews notes the theological principle at work: 'without any dispute the lesser is blessed by the greater' (Hebrews 7:7). Jacob's authority to bless derives not from political power but from his standing as bearer of the Abrahamic covenant.
7. 'Set him before Pharaoh' (vayyaamidehu lifnei Far'oh) — the verb 'amad (to stand, set upright) gives the scene a formal, courtly character. Yet what follows is not obeisance but blessing — Jacob is the one who confers, not receives.
8. 'How many are the days of the years of your life?' (kamah yemei shenei chayyeka) — the Hebrew is far more expansive than 'how old are you?' Pharaoh asks about the days, the years, and the life — a layered expression that invites reflection on the totality of a life lived. The phrasing suggests Pharaoh was struck by Jacob's aged appearance. Jacob's response will match this expansiveness with theological depth.
9. 'My sojourning' (megurai) — Jacob does not say 'my life' (chayyai) first, but 'my sojourning.' He defines his entire existence as that of a stranger and pilgrim. The word magur/megurai comes from the same root as ger (sojourner, alien). Jacob's self-understanding is profoundly theological: he has never been at home in this world. His true home is the promise, not yet realized.
9. 'Few and difficult' (me'at vera'im) — literally 'few and evil.' Jacob's assessment is brutally honest. Though 130 years is long by modern standards, it falls short of Abraham's 175 years and Isaac's 180 years. And the quality of those years — marked by Esau's enmity, Laban's deception, Dinah's violation, Rachel's death, Joseph's loss — has been ra'im: evil, grievous, full of sorrow.
9. 'Have not reached' (lo hissigu) — the verb nasag means to overtake, attain, reach. Jacob's years have not caught up with his fathers'. This is a statement of both quantity (shorter lifespan) and quality (greater suffering). There is no self-pity but a sober reckoning before the throne of the world's most powerful king.
10. Jacob's audience with Pharaoh is framed by two blessings — one upon entering (v. 7) and one upon departing. The patriarch arrives as a supplicant but acts as a priest, conferring divine favor on the king. This second blessing confirms that Jacob's authority derives from his covenant status: he is the one through whom blessing flows to the nations (12:3).
11. 'A possession' (achuzzah) — the word denotes a permanent holding or estate, not merely a temporary campsite. This is the same term used for Abraham's purchase of the cave of Machpelah (23:4, 9, 20). Joseph secures for his family a deeded holding in Egypt's choicest territory.
11. 'The land of Rameses' (erets Ra'meses) — this appears to be another name for Goshen, or a specific district within it. The name Rameses is likely an editorial update reflecting the later name of the region, as the city of Rameses (Pi-Ramesses) was built centuries later. The name would become grimly familiar: it is one of the store cities the enslaved Israelites would build (Exodus 1:11).
12. 'Sustained' (vayekhalkel) — from the root kul, meaning to contain, sustain, provide for. Joseph's role as sustainer fulfills the providential purpose revealed in 45:5-7. The same root appears in 1 Kings 4:7 for Solomon's provisioning system. Joseph's administration foreshadows royal stewardship.
12. 'According to the number of their children' (lefi hattaf) — literally 'according to the mouth of the little ones.' The provision was calculated per dependent, ensuring each family received food proportional to its size. The word taf refers specifically to small children, suggesting Joseph's particular attention to the most vulnerable members of the household.

13. 'Languished' (vattelah) — from the root lahah, meaning to be exhausted, to faint, to languish. The land itself is personified as weakening under the famine's oppression. Both Egypt and Canaan are affected — the famine is universal, sparing no nation. This sets the stage for Joseph's sweeping economic measures.
13. This verse marks the beginning of a narrative section (vv. 13-26) describing Joseph's administration of the famine. The narrator shifts from the family story to a political-economic account of how Joseph centralized all wealth and land under Pharaoh's control.
14. 'Collected all the money' (vaylaqet et-kol-hakkesef) — the verb laqat means to gather, glean, collect. Joseph systematically drains the monetary supply of two entire regions. The word kesef (silver/money) underscores that coinage-equivalent silver was the medium of exchange. All of it flows to Pharaoh's treasury.
14. 'For the grain they were buying' (bashever asher-hem shoverim) — the root shavar here means to buy grain. Joseph's stored grain becomes the instrument of total economic consolidation. What began as wise administration now transforms the entire social order.
15. 'The money was exhausted' (vayyittom hakkesef) — the verb tamam means to be complete, finished, used up. The money has not merely diminished — it is entirely gone. The people's desperation drives them to appeal directly to Joseph, and their plea is raw: 'Why should we die before you?'
15. 'Why should we die before you?' (lammah namut negdekha) — literally 'why should we die in front of you?' The people frame their starvation as something Joseph is witnessing and therefore bears responsibility for. Their cry is both a plea and a subtle accusation — will you watch us perish?
16. 'Give me your livestock' (havu miqneikhem) — Joseph proposes the next stage of exchange: livestock for grain. The word miqneh (livestock, cattle) represents the people's primary productive asset after money. By accepting livestock as payment, Joseph transfers the means of agricultural production to Pharaoh's control.
17. The catalogue of livestock — horses (sussim), flocks (tson), herds of cattle (baqar), and donkeys (chamorim) — represents every category of animal wealth. The thoroughness of the list emphasizes the completeness of the transfer. By year's end, the people have no animals left.
17. 'He provided them' (vayenahalem) — from the root nahal, to lead, guide, provide for. The same root is used of God leading Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 15:13). Joseph guides the people through famine with careful provision, though at enormous cost to their independence.
18. 'We will not hide from my lord' (lo-nekached me'adoni) — the people's transparency reveals their total vulnerability. They have nothing left to bargain with and openly confess it. The repeated 'my lord' (adoni) reflects the power imbalance — Joseph holds all leverage.
18. 'Our bodies and our land' (geviyyotenu ve'admatenu) — geviyyah refers to the physical body, often a dead body or corpse. The people offer the last two things they possess: their very persons and their ancestral soil. This language carries the weight of desperation — they speak of their bodies as if they are already nearly dead.
19. 'Buy us and our land' (qeneh-otanu ve'et-admatenu) — the people voluntarily request their own purchase. The verb qanah (to buy, acquire) is used here for acquiring persons — a transaction that transforms free citizens into royal dependents. The people initiate this exchange, driven by the primal need to survive.
19. 'Slaves to Pharaoh' (avadim leFar'oh) — the word avadim (slaves, servants) here describes a feudal relationship: the people become crown serfs bound to the land. This foreshadows the later enslavement of the Israelites (Exodus 1:13-14), where the same word describes brutal bondage. The irony is thick: Joseph saves Egypt through a system that will later devour his own descendants.
19. 'Give us seed' (veten-zera) — the plea for seed represents hope beyond mere survival. Seed means future harvests, renewed productivity, life continuing. The word zera (seed) resonates with the covenant promises — Abraham's 'seed' would be great. Here, agricultural seed and covenantal seed share the same Hebrew word.
20. 'Bought all the land of Egypt' (vayyiqen Yosef et-kol-admat Mitsrayim) — the consolidation is complete. Every privately held field passes to the crown. Joseph has created a command economy in which Pharaoh owns all land, all livestock, and all labor. The narrator states this without moral commentary, leaving readers to assess the implications.
20. 'The famine overpowered them' (chazaq alehem hara'av) — the verb chazaq (to be strong, overpower) portrays the famine as a conquering force. The people did not sell willingly from abundance but surrendered under duress. The famine, not Joseph, is the proximate agent of their dispossession.
21. 'He relocated them to the cities' (he'evir oto le'arim) — Joseph moves the rural population into urban centers. This mass relocation severs the people's attachment to their ancestral lands and completes their dependence on Pharaoh's centralized system. Some textual traditions (notably the Samaritan Pentateuch and LXX) read 'he made them slaves' (he'evid) rather than 'he removed them to cities,' which would make the enslavement even more explicit.
21. 'From one end of Egypt's border to the other' (miqqetseh ge'ul-Mitsrayim ve'ad-qatsehu) — the geographical scope emphasizes that this was not a local measure but a nationwide transformation. No region of Egypt was exempt from Joseph's reorganization.
22. 'The priests' (hakkohanim) — the Egyptian priestly class held a privileged position, receiving a state-funded stipend (choq) from Pharaoh. Their exemption from land sale reflects the deeply embedded power of the Egyptian religious establishment. The priestly class maintained its independent land base while everyone else lost theirs.
22. 'A fixed allotment' (choq) — the word choq means a prescribed portion, statute, or decree. It refers here to the regular provision Pharaoh guaranteed to the priests. Because they had guaranteed income, they had no need to sell their land for food. This same word choq will later describe God's

statutes given to Israel — laws that sustain and order life.

23. 'I have bought you this day' (qaniti etkhem hayyom) — Joseph formally declares the transaction complete. The people and their land now belong to Pharaoh. Yet immediately he provides seed — the instrument of future productivity. Joseph's administration combines consolidation of power with genuine provision for the people's survival.
23. 'Here is seed for you' (he-lakhem zera) — after stripping the people of money, livestock, land, and freedom, Joseph gives back the one thing that makes life possible: seed for planting. This act of provision within a system of total control creates a complex moral picture — Joseph preserves life even as he restructures society around absolute royal authority.
24. 'A fifth' (chamishit) — a twenty percent tax on agricultural production. By ancient Near Eastern standards, this was a moderate rate. Mesopotamian tax rates could reach a third or more. Joseph's system, while built on total royal ownership, leaves the people with eighty percent of their produce — enough for seed, food, and family sustenance.
24. 'Four parts' (arba hayadot) — literally 'four hands,' meaning four portions out of five. The metaphor of 'hands' for portions is distinctive Hebrew idiom. The people retain the substantial majority of their harvest, making the system workable rather than extractive to the point of collapse.
25. 'You have saved our lives' (hecheyitanu) — literally 'you have caused us to live.' The hiphil form of *chayah* emphasizes Joseph's agency in their survival. Despite losing everything — money, livestock, land, and personal freedom — the people express gratitude. Survival itself is the supreme value when death looms.
25. 'Let us find favor' (nimtsa-chen) — the word *chen* (grace, favor) appears throughout Genesis at moments of dependency: Noah found *chen* before God (6:8), Jacob sought *chen* from Esau (33:8), Joseph found *chen* in Potiphar's house (39:4). The people now seek the same gracious regard from Joseph that sustains the vulnerable before the powerful.
26. 'Established it as a statute' (vayyasem otah lechoq) — Joseph's emergency measure becomes permanent law. The word *choq* (statute, decree) gives the arrangement the force of enduring legislation. What began as famine relief becomes the foundational economic structure of Egypt.
26. 'To this day' (ad-hayyom hazzeh) — this editorial note places the narrative in historical perspective, suggesting the arrangement persisted into the time of the narrator. The fifth-tax and priestly exemption became permanent features of the Egyptian economy, both attributed to Joseph's administration during the great famine.
27. 'They acquired property' (vayyiahazu bah) — from the root *achaz*, to seize, take hold of, acquire. While the Egyptians are losing their land, Israel is gaining property in Goshen. The contrast is striking and deliberate: Joseph's family prospers in the very land whose native inhabitants are being dispossessed.
27. 'Were fruitful and multiplied' (vayyifru vayyirbu) — this language directly echoes the creation mandate (1:28) and God's promise to Jacob at Bethel (35:11). The verbs *parah* (to be fruitful) and *ravah* (to multiply) are covenant markers. In Egypt, removed from the promised land, Israel begins to fulfill the promise of becoming a great nation. This growth will eventually provoke Pharaoh's fear (Exodus 1:7-10).
28. 'Seventeen years' — Jacob's final seventeen years in Egypt mirror the seventeen years Joseph spent with his father before being sold (37:2). The number creates a poignant symmetry: the years of separation are answered by years of reunion. Jacob's life ends with the same duration of closeness to Joseph with which it began.
28. 'One hundred and forty-seven years' — shorter than Abraham (175) and Isaac (180), confirming Jacob's own assessment that his days 'have not reached' those of his fathers (v. 9). Yet these 147 years encompass one of Scripture's most dramatic arcs: from grasping Esau's heel to blessing Pharaoh.
29. 'Place your hand under my thigh' (sim-na yadekha tachat yerekhi) — this solemn oath gesture appears only twice in Scripture: here and when Abraham's servant swore regarding Isaac's bride (24:2, 9). The thigh (*yarekh*) is associated with procreative power and descendants. By placing his hand there, Joseph swears by Jacob's offspring — by the covenant future itself. The gesture binds the oath to the most sacred dimension of family continuity.
29. 'Steadfast love and faithfulness' (chesed ve'emet) — this paired expression describes covenant loyalty enacted in truth. *Chesed* is lovingkindness that exceeds obligation; *emet* is reliability, trustworthiness, fidelity. Together they describe the highest form of interpersonal commitment. Jacob asks Joseph not merely for a favor but for an act of covenantal faithfulness.
29. 'Do not bury me in Egypt' (al-na tiqbereni beMitsrayim) — Jacob's insistence on burial outside Egypt is not merely sentimental. It is a theological statement: Egypt is not home. The land of promise, where Abraham and Isaac are buried, is where Jacob's body must rest. His burial there is an act of faith in God's promise that Israel will return to Canaan.
30. 'I will lie down with my fathers' (veshakhavti im-avotai) — the expression 'to lie with one's fathers' is a standard idiom for death that carries the hope of reunion. Jacob envisions joining Abraham, Sarah, Isaac, and Rebekah in the cave of Machpelah — the one piece of the promised land that the patriarchs actually owned.
30. 'Their burial place' (qivratam) — the cave of Machpelah in Hebron, purchased by Abraham from Ephron the Hittite (chapter 23). This cave is the patriarchal family tomb and the tangible anchor of Israel's claim to the promised land. Jacob's burial there will affirm his belonging to the covenant community and the covenant land.

31. 'Swear to me' (hishav'ah li) — Jacob requires a formal oath, not merely a promise. The shevuah (oath) invokes God as witness and guarantor, making the commitment inviolable. Jacob's insistence reveals both the gravity of the request and his awareness that circumstances in Egypt might tempt Joseph to bury his father there instead.
31. 'Israel bowed in worship at the head of the bed' (vayyishtachu Yisra'el al-rosh hamittah) — the verb hishtachavah means to bow down in worship or reverence. Jacob, too frail to rise, worships God from his bed. The LXX (Septuagint) reads 'upon the top of his staff' (matteh instead of mittah), which Hebrews 11:21 follows. Whether bed or staff, the image is the same: a dying patriarch worshipping God in gratitude that his burial in the promised land is secured.
31. The switch from 'Jacob' (the human name) to 'Israel' (the covenant name) at this climactic moment is significant. It is Israel — the one who wrestled with God and prevailed — who worships at the end. The covenant identity has the final word.

48

Summary: *Jacob is ill; Joseph brings Manasseh and Ephraim to receive their grandfather's blessing. Jacob adopts the two boys as his own sons, giving Joseph a double portion. When blessing them, Jacob deliberately crosses his hands, placing his right hand on the younger Ephraim. Joseph objects; Jacob insists. Ephraim will be greater than Manasseh.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The crossed-hands blessing continues Genesis's relentless pattern of the younger surpassing the elder: Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau, now Ephraim over Manasseh. Jacob's blessing invokes three generations of divine faithfulness: 'the God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has been my shepherd all my life long, the Angel who has redeemed me from all evil' (vv. 15-16). The word go'el ('redeemed,' v. 16) introduces the concept of the kinsman-redeemer — God as the nearest relative who rescues from danger.*

Translation Friction: *The verb go'el (v. 16) is a legal term for the kinsman who redeems a relative from slavery, debt, or danger. Applying it to God is one of the earliest and most intimate divine metaphors in the Bible. We rendered it as 'redeemed' and noted the legal-familial dimension. The phrase shechem achad ('one mountain slope,' v. 22) plays on the city name Shechem while also meaning 'one portion above' — Jacob gives Joseph a territorial grant with a pun built into it.*

Connections: *Ephraim's preeminence is fulfilled when the northern kingdom is frequently called 'Ephraim' by the prophets (Hosea 5:3; Isaiah 7:2). The blessing formula 'may God make you like Ephraim and Manasseh' (48:20) remains the traditional Jewish parental blessing for sons. Jacob's reference to Rachel's death (48:7) connects this moment of blessing to his deepest grief. The adoption of Joseph's sons effectively gives Joseph the double portion of the firstborn.*

¹After these things, it was told to Joseph, "Behold, your father is ill." So he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim. ²When Jacob was told, "Behold, your son Joseph is coming to you," Israel strengthened himself and sat up on the bed. ³Jacob told Joseph, "God Almighty revealed himself to me at Luz in Canaan, and he gave me his blessing. ⁴He said to me, 'Behold, I will make you fruitful and multiply you, and I will make you into an assembly of peoples, and I will give this land to your offspring after you as an everlasting possession.' ⁵Now your two sons who were born to you in the land of Egypt before I came to you in Egypt — they are mine. Ephraim and Manasseh shall be mine, as Reuben and Simeon are. ⁶But any offspring born to you after them shall be yours; they shall be called by the name of their brothers in their inheritance. ⁷As for me, when I came from Paddan, Rachel died to my sorrow in the land of Canaan on the way, when there was still some distance to go to Ephrath. And I buried her there on the way to Ephrath" — that is, Bethlehem. ⁸When Israel saw Joseph's sons, he said, "Who are these?" ⁹Joseph said to his father, "They are my sons, whom God has given me here." He said, "Bring them to me, please, that I may bless them." ¹⁰Now the eyes of Israel were heavy with age; he could not see. So Joseph brought them near to him, and he kissed them and embraced them. ¹¹Israel said to Joseph, "I never expected to see your face again, yet behold, God has let me see your offspring as well!" ¹²Joseph removed them from between his knees and bowed with his face to the ground. ¹³Joseph positioned the two boys — Ephraim at his right, facing Israel's left side, and Manasseh at his left, facing Israel's right side — and led them close to his father. ¹⁴But Israel stretched out his right hand and placed it

on the head of Ephraim, who was the younger, and his left hand on the head of Manasseh — crossing his hands intentionally, for Manasseh was the firstborn. ¹⁵Then he blessed Joseph and said, "The God before whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the God who has been my shepherd all my life long to this day, ¹⁶the Angel who has redeemed me from all evil — may He bless the boys. Let my name be named upon them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and let them multiply greatly in the midst of the earth." ¹⁷When Joseph saw that his father placed his right hand on the head of Ephraim, it displeased him. He took hold of his father's hand to move it from Ephraim's head to Manasseh's head. ¹⁸Joseph said to his father, "Not so, my father, for this one is the firstborn. Place your right hand on his head." ¹⁹But his father refused and said, "I know, my son, I know. He too shall become a people, and he too shall be great. Nevertheless, his younger brother shall be greater than he, and his offspring shall become a fullness of nations." ²⁰He blessed them that day, saying, "By you Israel shall pronounce blessing, saying, 'May God make you as Ephraim and as Manasseh.'" And he set Ephraim before Manasseh. ²¹Then Israel said to Joseph, "Behold, I am about to die, but God will be with you and will bring you back to the land of your fathers. ²²And I give to you one mountain slope above your brothers, which I took from the hand of the Amorite with my sword and my bow."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Your father is ill' (avikha choleh) — the word choleh indicates serious sickness, not merely old age. Jacob's condition has deteriorated from the frailty of chapter 47 to active illness. Joseph responds immediately, bringing both sons — suggesting he anticipates a significant event, perhaps a deathbed blessing.
1. The order 'Manasseh and Ephraim' follows birth order: Manasseh is the firstborn (41:51). This natural ordering will be dramatically reversed by Jacob's crossed hands (v. 14). The narrator sets up the expected sequence so the reversal will carry maximum impact.
2. 'Israel strengthened himself' (vayyitchazzeq Yisra'el) — the hitpael form of chazaq indicates reflexive, deliberate effort. Though gravely ill, Jacob summons his remaining strength to sit upright for this crucial encounter. The narrator switches to the covenant name 'Israel' at this moment of determined resolve — it is the wrestler, the one who strove with God and prevailed, who gathers his last strength.
2. The shift from 'Jacob' (told of Joseph's arrival) to 'Israel' (who strengthens himself) mirrors the dual identity that has defined this patriarch. Jacob is the frail, aging man; Israel is the covenant bearer who must yet complete his divinely appointed tasks — blessing the next generation before he dies.
3. 'God Almighty' (El Shaddai) — Jacob invokes the divine name by which God revealed Himself to Abraham (17:1) and to Jacob himself (35:11). El Shaddai emphasizes God's sovereign power, particularly His power to fulfill impossible promises — making the barren fruitful and turning a small family into a great nation.
3. 'At Luz' (beLuz) — the original Canaanite name of Bethel. Jacob recalls the theophany at Bethel (35:6-12; cf. 28:10-22) where God renewed the Abrahamic covenant with him. By citing this foundational encounter, Jacob grounds what follows — the adoption and blessing of Joseph's sons — in divine authorization. He is not acting on personal preference but on the authority of God's revealed word.
4. 'I will make you fruitful and multiply you' (mafrekha vehirbitikha) — God's words at Bethel echo the creation mandate (1:28) and the Abrahamic covenant (17:6). These verbs — parah and ravah — are the signature language of divine blessing on human reproduction. Jacob recites them now as the theological basis for what he is about to do: by adopting Ephraim and Manasseh, he is expanding the covenant family in accordance with God's promise of multiplication.
4. 'An assembly of peoples' (qahal ammin) — the word qahal denotes a gathered assembly or congregation. Jacob will not merely produce one people but a qahal of peoples — a community of communities, multiple tribes constituting one covenant nation. This plurality within unity defines Israel's structure as twelve tribes under one covenant.
4. 'An everlasting possession' (achuzzat olam) — the land promise is not temporary but perpetual. The word olam denotes permanence extending to the far horizon of time. Even as Jacob speaks from his deathbed in Egypt, he affirms that Canaan belongs to his descendants forever. This is the theological foundation for everything that follows.
5. 'They are mine' (li-hem) — with these two words Jacob performs a formal adoption of his grandsons, elevating them to the status of his own sons. This is a legal act with enormous consequences: Joseph's two sons will each head a tribe of Israel, effectively giving Joseph a double portion — the birthright inheritance that typically belongs to the firstborn. Since Reuben forfeited his firstborn status (35:22; 1 Chronicles 5:1), the double portion passes through Joseph.
5. 'As Reuben and Simeon' (kiR'ufen veShim'on) — Jacob's first two sons serve as the standard of comparison. Ephraim and Manasseh will have equal standing with the sons who walked with Jacob from the beginning. Born in Egypt to an Egyptian mother, these grandsons are fully incorporated into the covenant family — a remarkable act of inclusion.

5. Note that Jacob says 'Ephraim and Manasseh' — already placing the younger before the elder. Whether this is a deliberate anticipation of the coming reversal or the narrator's theological ordering, it foreshadows the crossed-hands blessing of verses 13-14.
6. 'Any offspring born after them' (moladtekha asher-holadta achareihem) — Jacob limits the adoption to Ephraim and Manasseh alone. Any future sons of Joseph will not receive independent tribal status but will be counted under Ephraim's or Manasseh's inheritance. This legal provision ensures the tribal structure remains ordered while granting Joseph the double portion.
6. 'Called by the name of their brothers' (al shem acheihem yiqqare'u) — future sons would be absorbed into the tribes of Ephraim or Manasseh, inheriting under those names rather than receiving their own allotment. The provision is hypothetical — no additional sons of Joseph are recorded — but it demonstrates Jacob's careful legal thinking.
7. 'Rachel died to my sorrow' (metah alai Rachel) — the preposition alai (upon me, to my grief) transforms a statement of fact into an expression of enduring personal anguish. Rachel did not merely die; she died upon Jacob — the grief fell on him and remained. Decades later, on his own deathbed, the wound is still raw. This aside interrupts the legal proceedings of adoption with a burst of intimate, uncontrollable sorrow.
7. 'When there was still some distance' (be'od kivrat-erets) — the phrase kivrat-erets denotes a short but unspecified distance. Rachel died tantalizingly close to their destination. The unfulfilled nearness — so close to Ephrath, yet not arriving — becomes a symbol of Rachel's life: the beloved wife who bore the promised sons but did not live to see their full blessing.
7. 'That is, Bethlehem' (hi Beit Lachem) — the editorial gloss identifies Ephrath with Bethlehem, linking Rachel's burial place to the future birthplace of David and, in Christian tradition, of Jesus. Rachel's tears (Jeremiah 31:15) will echo from this place across the centuries.
7. The connection between this personal aside and the adoption is subtle but important: Jacob adopts Rachel's grandsons partly because Rachel herself did not live to raise more sons. Ephraim and Manasseh fill the space that Rachel's death left empty.
8. 'Who are these?' (mi-elleh) — given that Jacob knows Joseph has sons (v. 5), this question likely reflects his failing eyesight (v. 10) rather than ignorance. He can perceive their presence but not identify them clearly. The scene parallels Isaac's dimmed vision when blessing Jacob and Esau (27:1, 18). Once again a nearly blind patriarch will bestow blessing — and once again the expected order will be overturned.
8. The parallel between Isaac and Jacob is deliberate: Isaac could not see and was deceived into blessing the younger over the elder. Jacob cannot see clearly — but he will reverse the birth order knowingly and intentionally. What happened through deception in one generation happens through divine wisdom in the next.
9. 'Whom God has given me here' (asher-natan-li Elohim bazeh) — Joseph attributes his sons to divine gift. The word 'here' (bazeh) — in Egypt, in this foreign place — underscores the wonder: God has given covenant offspring even in exile. Joseph's theology of divine gift echoes throughout Genesis: children are never merely the product of human effort but always God's bestowal.
9. 'That I may bless them' (va'avarekhem) — Jacob's request to bless reveals his awareness that patriarchal blessing is his final and most important act. The blessing (berakhah) is not a wish or a hope but a prophetic declaration of destiny, spoken with divine authority. Jacob knows that what he speaks over these boys will shape their future and the future of Israel.
10. 'Heavy with age' (kavedu mizogon) — the adjective kaved (heavy) for failing eyes recalls Isaac's dim sight (27:1). The parallel is unmistakable: another patriarch with failing vision will bestow a blessing that reverses birth order. But whereas Isaac was deceived, Jacob acts with full intention — his physical blindness does not impair his prophetic sight.
10. 'He kissed them and embraced them' (vayyishaq lahem vayechebbek lahem) — the physical tenderness of this moment stands in sharp contrast to the formal legal adoption of verse 5. Jacob holds, kisses, and embraces the grandsons he never expected to see. The verbs convey intimate, unhurried affection — a grandfather savoring the children he thought were lost when he believed Joseph dead.
11. 'I never expected to see your face' (re'oh fanekha lo fillalti) — the verb pillel (to expect, reckon, imagine) in the negative expresses what was beyond all hope. For over twenty years, Jacob believed Joseph was dead (37:33-35). To see his face was impossible; to see his children is grace compounded upon grace.
11. 'God has let me see your offspring as well' (hinneh her'ah oti Elohim gam et-zar'ekha) — the verb her'ah (caused to see) credits God as the agent of this reunion. Jacob's dim eyes see what his heart never dared imagine. The word zera (offspring, seed) ties this moment to the Abrahamic promise: God has shown Jacob not just his lost son but the continuation of the covenant line through Joseph's children.
12. 'From between his knees' (me'im birkav) — the boys had been on or between Jacob's knees, a position associated with formal adoption in the ancient Near East. Placing a child on one's knees signified legal acceptance as one's own (see 30:3 where Rachel similarly claims Bilhah's children through this gesture). Joseph removes them to reposition them for the formal blessing.
12. 'Bowed with his face to the ground' (vayyishtachu le'appav artsah) — Joseph, the second most powerful man in Egypt, prostrates himself before his aged, blind father. This is not mere filial respect but reverence for the patriarchal office. Joseph recognizes that Jacob, for all his physical frailty, holds an authority that surpasses any earthly throne — the authority to bless in God's name.
13. Joseph carefully positions his sons so that Manasseh, the firstborn, is at Israel's right hand — the position of preeminence and primary blessing. Ephraim, the younger, is placed at Israel's left. Joseph arranges everything according to the expected order of primogeniture. He has no reason to suspect what Jacob will do.

13. The narrator's detailed description of the positioning — specifying each boy's hand relative to both Joseph and Israel — creates tension. Every reader familiar with Genesis knows that expected orders are routinely overturned: Cain and Abel, Ishmael and Isaac, Esau and Jacob. The careful setup anticipates another reversal.
14. 'Crossing his hands intentionally' (sikkel et-yadav) — the verb sikkel (from the root sakal) means to act with insight, prudence, or deliberate understanding. Jacob's crossed hands are not a mistake of a blind old man but a prophetic act performed with full awareness. The KJV's 'guiding his hands wittingly' captures this well. Jacob knows exactly what he is doing.
14. The crossed hands form a visual X — the right hand reaching to the left side, the left to the right. This physical gesture embodies the theological pattern of Genesis: God consistently elevates the younger over the elder. Abel over Cain, Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau, and now Ephraim over Manasseh. The reversal is not arbitrary but revelatory — God's choices are sovereign, not bound by human conventions of birth order.
14. 'For Manasseh was the firstborn' (ki Menasseh habbekhor) — the narrator emphasizes that Jacob's action contradicts the natural order. The crossing is deliberate precisely because Jacob knows who the firstborn is and chooses otherwise.
15. 'He blessed Joseph' — though the blessing is spoken over Ephraim and Manasseh (v. 16), the narrator says Jacob blessed Joseph. The sons receive the blessing as Joseph's representatives; the honor and the double portion flow through Joseph.
15. 'Before whom my fathers walked' (asher hithalleku avotai lefanav) — the verb hithalekh (to walk) in the hitpael describes a way of life lived in God's presence. Abraham was told 'walk before me and be blameless' (17:1). Isaac continued that walk. Jacob now claims the same covenantal relationship — three generations of walking with God.
15. 'The God who has been my shepherd' (ha'Elohim haro'eh oti) — this is one of the earliest and most intimate descriptions of God as shepherd. The shepherd feeds, guides, protects, and stays with the flock. Jacob, who spent decades as an actual shepherd, knows what the metaphor means: sleepless nights, constant vigilance, personal sacrifice. God has been all of this to Jacob — from Bethel to Haran to Peniel to Egypt.
16. 'The Angel who has redeemed me' (hammal'akh hagg'o'el oti) — Jacob invokes the Angel (mal'akh) as a distinct yet divine figure who has acted as his redeemer (go'el). The go'el is the kinsman-redeemer, the one who rescues, reclaims, and restores. Jacob identifies this Angel with the God of his fathers (v. 15), placing the Angel in a divine role. This threefold invocation — God of the fathers, God the Shepherd, and the redeeming Angel — forms a profound trinitarian resonance.
16. 'From all evil' (mikkol-ra) — Jacob's life has been marked by deception, conflict, loss, and grief. The word ra (evil, harm, calamity) encompasses all of it. Yet Jacob confesses that through every adversity, the Angel redeemed him — not by removing the evil but by delivering him through it.
16. 'Let them multiply greatly' (veyidgu larov) — literally 'let them fish/swarm in abundance.' The verb dagah is related to dag (fish), evoking images of fish multiplying prolifically in water. This unique verb choice paints a picture of explosive, irrepressible growth — teeming life that cannot be contained.
16. 'Let my name be named upon them' (veyiqqare vahem shemi) — Jacob transfers his covenant identity to these grandsons. They will carry the name 'Israel' and be counted among the patriarchal lineage. This naming is not honorary but constitutive: it makes them part of the covenant family at the deepest level.
17. 'It displeased him' (vayyera be'einav) — literally 'it was evil in his eyes.' Joseph, who has orchestrated this audience so carefully — positioning Manasseh at the right — sees his father's crossed hands as an error. His displeasure is genuine; he believes his blind father has made a mistake.
17. 'He took hold of his father's hand' (vayyitmokh yad-aviv) — Joseph physically grasps Jacob's hand to redirect it. This is a bold act: intervening in a patriarchal blessing is presumptuous. Yet Joseph acts from concern for proper order, unaware that Jacob is operating under a higher order than primogeniture.
18. 'Not so, my father' (lo-khen avi) — Joseph's protest is respectful but firm. He addresses Jacob as 'my father' while correcting what he perceives as an error. The phrase lo-khen (not so, not right) is a direct contradiction — Joseph tells his father he is wrong.
18. 'This one is the firstborn' (ki-zeh habbekhor) — Joseph appeals to the law of primogeniture, the accepted ancient Near Eastern custom that the firstborn receives the primary blessing. He points to Manasseh, insisting on the conventional order. Joseph, who himself was elevated above his older brothers by divine providence, ironically fails to recognize the same pattern in his own sons.
19. 'I know, my son, I know' (yadati veni yadati) — the doubled 'I know' is emphatic and final. Jacob is not confused, not mistaken, not fumbling in his blindness. He knows exactly which son is the firstborn and has deliberately chosen otherwise. The repetition silences Joseph's protest with quiet, absolute authority.
19. 'His younger brother shall be greater' (achiv haqqaton yigdal mimmennu) — Jacob prophesies Ephraim's future preeminence. Historically, the tribe of Ephraim became the dominant tribe of the northern kingdom, so prominent that 'Ephraim' became a synonym for the entire northern kingdom of Israel (Hosea 5:3, 9, 11; Isaiah 7:2, 5, 9).
19. 'A fullness of nations' (melo-haggoyim) — this extraordinary phrase describes Ephraim's descendants as filling the nations. The word melo (fullness, that which fills) suggests not merely a large number but a completeness that overflows national boundaries. Some interpreters see this as pointing beyond tribal Israel to the gathering of all peoples under God's covenant purposes.

- 20.** 'By you Israel shall pronounce blessing' (bekha yevarekh Yisra'el) — Jacob establishes Ephraim and Manasseh as the standard of blessing for all future generations in Israel. When Israelite parents bless their sons, they will invoke these two names as the ideal. This practice continues in Jewish tradition to this day: on Shabbat evening, fathers bless their sons with the words 'May God make you as Ephraim and as Manasseh.'
- 20.** 'He set Ephraim before Manasseh' (vayyasem et-Ephrayim lifnei Menasseh) — the narrator confirms the reversal one final time. The younger is formally placed ahead of the elder. The pattern that has defined Genesis from its beginning — God's sovereign choice of the unlikely, the younger, the overlooked — reaches its culmination in this quiet, decisive act of a dying patriarch.
- 21.** 'I am about to die' (hinneh anokhi met) — Jacob's announcement of his imminent death is matter-of-fact, framed by the word hinneh (behold) that calls attention to the weight of what follows. Death is not the final word; the promise is.
- 21.** 'God will be with you' (vehayah Elohim immakhem) — this is the core patriarchal promise passed from generation to generation. God said it to Isaac (26:3), to Jacob (28:15; 31:3), and now Jacob speaks it to Joseph and his descendants. The plural 'with you' (immakhem) addresses not Joseph alone but all the sons of Israel. God's presence will sustain them in Egypt and beyond.
- 21.** 'Will bring you back to the land of your fathers' (veheshiv etkhem el-erets avoteikhem) — Jacob's final theological statement is a prophecy of the exodus. Though he will not live to see it, he knows with certainty that Egypt is not Israel's destiny. God will bring them back — the verb heshiv (cause to return) promises active divine intervention to reverse the descent into Egypt.
- 22.** 'One mountain slope' (shekhem achat) — the word shekhem means both 'shoulder/slope' and is the name of the city Shechem. The double meaning is deliberate wordplay. Jacob grants Joseph a specific territory — likely the area around Shechem — described as a ridge or mountain shoulder. Shechem will indeed become part of Ephraim's inheritance (Joshua 24:32), and Joseph's bones will be buried there.
- 22.** 'Above your brothers' (al-achekha) — Joseph receives this additional inheritance beyond his double portion through Ephraim and Manasseh. Jacob singles Joseph out as the primary heir, reflecting both Joseph's faithful service and his role as the savior of the family.
- 22.** 'Which I took from the hand of the Amorite with my sword and my bow' (asher laqachti miyyad ha'Emori becharbi uvqashti) — this military reference is puzzling, as Genesis records only the violent actions of Simeon and Levi at Shechem (chapter 34), which Jacob condemned (34:30). Jacob may be speaking proleptically — claiming territory that his descendants will conquer — or referring to an unrecorded conflict. The language of sword and bow presents Jacob as a warrior, a dimension of his character otherwise hidden in the narrative.
- 22.** John 4:5 identifies the plot of ground Jacob gave to Joseph as the location of Jacob's well near Sychar — the site of Jesus's encounter with the Samaritan woman. The patriarchal land grant echoes across the centuries.

49

Summary: *Jacob gathers his sons and delivers prophetic oracles over each, characterizing their futures. Reuben loses preeminence; Simeon and Levi are scattered; Judah receives the royal promise; Joseph receives the richest blessing. Jacob commands burial at Machpelah, draws his feet into the bed, and dies.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Judah oracle (vv. 8-12) is the theological summit: 'the scepter shall not depart from Judah... until Shiloh comes' (v. 10). The word Shiloh is perhaps the most debated single word in the Hebrew Bible — its meaning has generated centuries of messianic interpretation. The poem deploys a staggering range of animal imagery: lion (Judah), serpent (Dan), donkey (Issachar), doe (Naphtali), vine (Joseph), wolf (Benjamin). The first occurrence of yeshu'ah ('salvation,' v. 18) appears suddenly in Dan's oracle — a theological cry embedded in a military image. Joseph's blessing stacks five divine titles in rapid succession: the Mighty One of Jacob, the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel, the God of your father, the Almighty.*

Translation Friction: *The word Shiloh (v. 10) resists translation: options include 'until he comes to whom it belongs,' 'until tribute comes to him,' or a personal messianic name. We rendered the traditional reading and noted the extensive debate. The rare word pachaz ('unstable,' v. 4) for Reuben is a hapax legomenon — appearing only here — whose Arabic cognates suggest boiling, turbulent energy. The phrase mekherothem ('their swords/weapons,' v. 5) for Simeon and Levi is another much-disputed term, and we noted the competing derivations.*

Connections: *The Judah oracle is cited or echoed in Numbers 24:9, 17; Ezekiel 21:27; and Revelation 5:5 ('the Lion of the tribe of Judah'). The scattering of Simeon and Levi (49:7) is fulfilled in Joshua 19:1-9 (Simeon absorbed into Judah) and Joshua 21 (Levi dispersed as priestly cities). Jacob's burial instructions (49:29-32) recall Abraham's purchase of Machpelah (ch. 23) and are fulfilled in 50:13.*

¹Then Jacob called his sons and said, "Gather yourselves together, that I may tell you what will befall you in the latter days. ²Assemble and hear, O sons of Jacob; listen to Israel your father. ³Reuben, you are my firstborn, my might, and the beginning of my strength, preeminent in dignity, preeminent in power. ⁴Unstable as water, you shall not have preeminence, because you went up to your father's bed — then you defiled it. He went up to my couch! ⁵Simeon and Levi are brothers; instruments of violence are their swords. ⁶Let my soul not enter into their council; let my glory not be joined to their assembly. For in their anger they killed men, and in their willfulness they hamstrung oxen. ⁷A curse on their fury, so savage, and their rage, so ruthless! I will break them apart within Jacob and disperse them throughout Israel. ⁸Judah, your brothers shall praise you. Your hand shall be on the neck of your enemies; your father's sons shall bow down before you. ⁹Judah is a lion's cub; from the prey, my son, you have gone up. He crouches, he lies down like a lion, and like a lioness — who dares rouse him? ¹⁰The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet, until Shiloh comes, and to him shall be the obedience of the peoples. ¹¹He ties his donkey to the vine, and his donkey's colt to the choice vine. He washes his garments in wine, and his robes in the blood of grapes. ¹²His eyes are darker than wine, and his teeth whiter than milk. ¹³Zebulun shall dwell by the shore of the sea. He shall be a harbor for ships, and his border shall extend toward Sidon. ¹⁴Issachar is a strong donkey, crouching down between the sheepfolds. ¹⁵He saw that rest was good, and that the land was pleasant, so he bowed his shoulder to bear burdens and became a forced laborer. ¹⁶Dan will govern his own people, equal among Israel's tribes. ¹⁷Dan shall be a serpent by the road, a viper along the path, that bites the horse's heels so that its rider falls backward. ¹⁸For your salvation I wait, O LORD. ¹⁹Gad — raiders shall raid him, but he shall raid at their heels. ²⁰Asher's food shall be rich, and he shall yield royal delicacies. ²¹Naphtali is a doe set free, who gives beautiful words. ²²Joseph is a fruitful vine, a fruitful vine beside a spring; his branches climb over the wall. ²³The archers harassed him bitterly; they shot at him and attacked him. ²⁴But his bow remained firm, and his arms were made agile by the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob — from there is the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel — ²⁵by the God of your father who helps you, and by the Almighty who blesses you with blessings of heaven above, blessings of the deep that crouches beneath, blessings of the breasts and of the womb. ²⁶The blessings of your father have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors, up to the bounty of the everlasting hills. May they rest on the head of Joseph, on the crown of the one set apart from his brothers. ²⁷Benjamin is a ravenous wolf; in the morning he devours the prey, and in the evening he divides the spoil. ²⁸All these are the twelve tribes of Israel, and this is what their father said to them when he blessed them, each with his own blessing he blessed them. ²⁹Then he commanded them and said to them, "I am about to be gathered to my people. Bury me with my fathers in the cave that is in the field of Ephron the Hittite, ³⁰in the cave that is in the field of Machpelah, which faces Mamre, in the land of Canaan, which Abraham purchased along with the field from Ephron the Hittite as a burial possession. ³¹In that cave Abraham and Sarah were laid to rest, Isaac and Rebekah were buried, and I myself buried Leah. ³²The field and the cave in it were purchased from the sons of Heth." ³³When Jacob finished commanding his sons, he drew his feet up into the bed, breathed his last, and was gathered to his people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Gather yourselves' (he'asfu) — the niphal imperative of asaf, 'to gather.' Jacob summons all twelve sons for his final prophetic declaration. This is not merely a deathbed farewell but a prophetic oracle — Jacob speaks as a patriarch-prophet, revealing the destinies of the tribes that will descend from each son.
1. 'In the latter days' (be'acharit hayyamim) — this phrase carries eschatological weight throughout the Hebrew Bible. It denotes not merely 'the future' in a general sense but the far horizon of God's purposes — the culmination of history. The blessings that follow thus operate on multiple levels: they describe the immediate character of each son, foreshadow the tribal destinies in Canaan, and in some cases (especially Judah, v. 10) point to messianic fulfillment.
2. The parallelism between 'sons of Jacob' and 'Israel your father' is deliberate. They are addressed as sons of Jacob — the human patriarch — yet told to listen to Israel — the covenant name that signifies the one who strove with God and prevailed (32:28). The dual naming underscores that what follows is both a father's personal assessment and a divinely authorized oracle.
2. The double command 'hear... listen' (shim'u... shim'u) emphasizes the gravity of the moment. The second 'listen' (shim'u el) with the preposition el implies not merely hearing but heeding — attentive obedience to what follows.

3. 'My firstborn' (bekhori) — Reuben held the position of highest honor and double inheritance as the firstborn. The terms that follow — 'my might' (kochi), 'beginning of my strength' (reshit oni) — all underscore the extraordinary privilege of the firstborn status. The word oni can mean 'vigor' or 'manly strength,' referring to the father's procreative power. Reuben, as Jacob's first son, represents the full, undimmed strength of his youth.
3. 'Preeminent in dignity, preeminent in power' (yeter se'et veyeter az) — the word yeter means 'excess, preeminence, superiority.' Reuben should have been preeminent in both se'et (exaltation, dignity) and az (strength, power). These are the rightful attributes of the firstborn — but verse 4 will revoke them.
4. 'Unstable as water' (pachaz kamayim) — the word pachaz is rare and debated. It conveys recklessness, turbulence, uncontrolled energy — like water that overflows its banks, powerful but uncontained. Reuben's character lacked the restraint necessary for leadership. The simile of water suggests both instability and the inability to maintain a fixed form or purpose.
4. 'You went up to your father's bed' (alita mishkevei avikha) — a reference to Genesis 35:22, where Reuben lay with Bilhah, his father's concubine. This act was both a sexual transgression and a political power-grab — in the ancient Near East, taking a leader's concubine was a claim to his authority (cf. 2 Samuel 16:21-22). Jacob, who said nothing at the time, now pronounces the consequence decades later.
4. 'He went up to my couch' (yetsu'i alah) — the abrupt shift from second person ('you defiled') to third person ('he went up') is striking. Some scholars see Jacob turning away from Reuben in disgust, speaking about him rather than to him. The word yetstu'i ('my couch') makes the violation personal — it was Jacob's own bed that was defiled.
5. Simeon and Levi are treated together because they acted together in the massacre at Shechem (chapter 34). Their bond as 'brothers' (achim) here is not simply biological — all twelve are brothers — but characterizes them as partners in violence, co-conspirators in treachery.
5. 'Instruments of violence are their swords' (kelei chamas mekherothehem) — the word mekherothehem is notoriously difficult. The KJV renders 'habitations,' but this is unlikely from the Hebrew. Most scholars connect it to mekherah, 'sword' (possibly a loanword), or derive it from karah, 'to dig' (hence 'schemes' or 'plots'). The rendering 'swords' follows the most widely accepted scholarly interpretation and fits the context of the Shechem slaughter.
6. 'Let my soul not enter their council' (besoddam al-tavo nafshi) — Jacob formally dissociates himself from their violence. The word sod means 'secret counsel' or 'intimate circle.' Jacob refuses any share in their conspiratorial deliberations. The parallel 'my glory' (kevodi) is a poetic synonym for 'my soul' or 'my honor' — Jacob's very being recoils from complicity.
6. 'They killed men' (hargu ish) — though the singular ish ('a man') is used, the reference is to the mass slaughter of the men of Shechem (34:25-26). The singular may be collective, or it may pointedly recall Hamor and Shechem as the primary targets.
6. 'They hamstrung oxen' (iqqeru-shor) — literally 'they uprooted/hamstrung an ox.' This likely refers to the plundering that accompanied the Shechem massacre (34:28-29). Hamstringing cattle — cutting their leg tendons — was an act of wanton destruction, rendering the animals useless. It reveals gratuitous cruelty beyond what any sense of justice could justify.
7. Jacob curses not Simeon and Levi themselves but their anger (appam) and wrath (evratam). The distinction matters: the men are not cursed, but the violent disposition that drove them is condemned. This contrasts with the curse on Canaan (9:25), which fell on the person.
7. 'I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel' (achalleqem beYa'aqov va'afitsem beYisra'el) — this prophecy was fulfilled in strikingly different ways for the two brothers. Simeon's tribal territory was absorbed into Judah (Joshua 19:1-9), and the tribe eventually disappeared as a distinct entity. Levi received no territorial inheritance but was scattered as priests and Levites throughout Israel (Joshua 21). For Levi, the 'scattering' became a blessing in disguise — they were distributed throughout the land as servants of God. The same curse produced different outcomes depending on how the descendants responded to God's purposes.
8. 'Judah, your brothers shall praise you' (Yehudah, attah yodukha achekha) — a wordplay on Judah's name. Yehudah is connected to the verb yadah, 'to praise' or 'to give thanks' (cf. 29:35, where Leah names him). The praise Judah receives from his brothers signals his ascendancy to tribal leadership — a role Reuben forfeited. This is the beginning of the longest and most exalted blessing, marking Judah as the royal tribe.
8. 'Your hand on the neck of your enemies' — an image of military dominance. The neck (oref) is the back of the neck, indicating that enemies are fleeing while Judah's hand seizes them. This foreshadows the military prowess of David's kingdom.
8. 'Your father's sons shall bow down before you' (yishtachavu lekha benei avikha) — this echoes Joseph's dreams (37:7-9) but transfers the ultimate fulfillment to Judah. While Joseph received temporary political preeminence in Egypt, the enduring leadership — kingship — belongs to Judah.
9. 'A lion's cub' (gur aryeh) — the lion imagery for Judah became one of the most enduring symbols in biblical tradition. The 'Lion of Judah' appears as a messianic title in Revelation 5:5. The progression from 'cub' (gur) to full 'lion' (aryeh) to 'lioness' (lavi) traces Judah's growth from a young tribe to mature, fearsome power.
9. 'From the prey, my son, you have gone up' (mitteref beni alita) — the lion has made its kill and ascended to its mountain lair, sated and secure. The verb alita ('you have gone up') may also carry theological overtones — ascent, rising to prominence.
9. 'Who dares rouse him?' (mi yeqimennu) — the rhetorical question underscores Judah's inviolable strength. A lion at rest after feeding is supremely dangerous to disturb. No rival tribe — and no enemy nation — should dare to provoke him.

10. 'The scepter shall not depart from Judah' (lo-yasur shevet miYhudah) — the shevet (scepter/staff) is the emblem of royal authority. This is the foundational prophecy of Judah's royal destiny, fulfilled initially in David's kingship and understood messianically throughout Jewish and Christian tradition.
10. 'Nor the ruler's staff from between his feet' (umechoqeq mibbein raglav) — the mechoqeq is the commander's staff or lawgiver's rod. 'Between his feet' indicates the ruler's staff held between the legs while seated — a posture of judicial and royal authority. Some interpret 'between his feet' as 'from among his descendants.'
10. 'Until Shiloh comes' (ad ki-yavo Shiloh) — this is one of the most debated phrases in the entire Hebrew Bible. Major interpretations include: (1) 'Shiloh' as a messianic title, meaning 'the one to whom it belongs' (reading shello, 'that which is his'), supported by Ezekiel 21:27; (2) 'Shiloh' as a proper name for the Messiah; (3) a reference to the city of Shiloh, where the tabernacle was first established; (4) 'until he comes to whom tribute belongs' (reading shay lo, 'tribute to him'); (5) 'until his son comes' (reading shilo). The ancient translations (LXX, Targumim) generally support a messianic reading. The rendering preserves the ambiguity of the Hebrew.
10. 'The obedience of the peoples' (yiqqehat ammim) — the word yiqqehat (or yiqqahah) means 'obedience, submission, gathering.' The plural 'peoples' (ammim) extends the scope beyond Israel — the nations will submit to the one who comes. This universalizing element elevates the prophecy beyond tribal politics to the destiny of all humanity.
11. The imagery of tying a donkey to a grapevine portrays staggering abundance. No farmer in the ancient world would risk a vine by tethering a browsing donkey to it — unless vines were so plentiful that losing one was inconsequential. Judah's territory will overflow with such agricultural wealth that wine is as common as water.
11. 'The choice vine' (soreqah) — the soreq was the finest variety of grapevine, producing the most prized wine. Even the best vine is treated casually — wealth beyond measure.
11. 'He washes his garments in wine, his robes in the blood of grapes' (kibbes bayyayin levusho uvdam-anavim sutoh) — wine is so abundant it can be used for laundry. The phrase 'blood of grapes' (dam-anavim) is a vivid metaphor for dark red wine. The passage evokes a land of paradisiacal abundance, echoing Eden and anticipating the messianic kingdom.
12. 'His eyes are darker than wine' (chakhlili einayim miyyayin) — the word chakhlili is difficult. It may mean 'dark, sparkling, flashing' — describing eyes that are deep and lustrous, perhaps wine-dark. The preposition min can mean 'from' (red from wine-drinking) or 'more than' (darker than wine). The rendering 'darker than wine' follows the comparative reading, portraying a figure of robust health and vitality rather than drunkenness.
12. 'His teeth whiter than milk' (uleven-shinayim mechalav) — again the min is comparative: whiter than milk. Together with the dark eyes, this paints a portrait of ideal physical beauty and health — a ruler who embodies the abundance of his territory. The land of milk and wine produces a people of striking vitality.
13. 'By the shore of the sea' (lechof yammim) — Zebulun's territory in the tribal allotment (Joshua 19:10-16) was actually inland, between the Sea of Galilee and the Mediterranean coast, not directly on the seashore. This has led some to see the blessing as describing commercial access to maritime trade rather than literal coastal territory. Others note that tribal boundaries may have shifted from their original allotments.
13. 'A harbor for ships' (lechof oniyot) — this may indicate that Zebulun's territory served as a commercial corridor, facilitating trade between the coast and the interior. The tribe would profit from maritime commerce even if not literally on the coast.
13. 'Toward Sidon' (al-Tsidon) — Sidon was the great Phoenician port city to the north. Zebulun's border reaching toward it suggests participation in the prosperous Phoenician trading network.
14. 'A strong donkey' (chamor garem) — the word garem means 'bony, strong-boned, rawboned.' The donkey was the primary beast of burden in the ancient Near East — not a symbol of stupidity but of patient, enduring strength. Issachar's character is one of great physical capacity.
14. 'Between the sheepfolds' (bein hammishtepetayim) — the word mishpetayim (dual form) is variously translated as 'sheepfolds,' 'saddlebags,' or 'campfires.' The image is of a strong donkey lying down between the pens or resting places — content in its labor, preferring rest in familiar surroundings to the exertion of resistance or ambition.
15. 'He saw that rest was good' (vayyar menuchah ki tov) — the language echoes creation ('God saw that it was good'). Issachar surveys a fertile, pleasant territory and chooses comfort over liberty. The word menuchah ('rest') is elsewhere a positive concept (Psalm 23:2; Ruth 1:9), but here it becomes a snare — the love of ease leads to servitude.
15. 'He bowed his shoulder to bear burdens and became a forced laborer' (vayyett shikhmo lisbol vayehi lemas-oved) — the tribe of Issachar, seduced by the pleasantness of its fertile land in the Jezreel Valley, would prefer to pay tribute and serve rather than fight for full independence. The term mas-oved ('forced laborer, corvée worker') is the same term used for the Canaanites subjected to Israelite labor gangs (Joshua 16:10; Judges 1:35).
16. 'Dan shall judge' (Dan yadin) — another wordplay on a son's name. Dan means 'he judged' (from din, 'to judge'; cf. 30:6). The tribe of Dan, despite being born from Bilhah the maidservant, will exercise judicial authority as a fully legitimate tribe — 'as one of the tribes of Israel.' This assures that Dan's lesser maternal status does not diminish his tribal standing.
16. The most famous 'judge' from Dan was Samson (Judges 13-16), who judged Israel for twenty years. Samson's career — marked by both extraordinary strength and fatal self-indulgence — may be foreshadowed in the serpent imagery of the next verse.

17. 'A serpent by the road' (nachash alei-derekh) — the nachash (serpent) recalls the serpent of Eden (3:1). Dan's military strategy will be guerrilla warfare — ambush and surprise rather than frontal assault. The serpent lurks unseen by the roadside and strikes without warning.
17. 'A viper along the path' (shefifon alei-orach) — the shefifon is a horned viper (*Cerastes cerastes*), a small but deadly snake native to the Sinai and Negev. It buries itself in sand beside paths and strikes at passing animals. The image is of lethal effectiveness from a position of apparent insignificance — Dan is a small tribe but a dangerous one.
17. 'Bites the horse's heels so that its rider falls backward' (hannoshekh iqvevei-sus vayyipol rokhevo achor) — a vivid tactical image: the small serpent brings down a mounted warrior not by confronting him directly but by striking at the horse's vulnerable heels. The mention of 'heels' (aqev) may echo Genesis 3:15, where the serpent strikes the heel of the woman's offspring.
18. This sudden, startling prayer breaks into the sequence of tribal blessings like a cry from the heart. After the ominous serpent imagery for Dan, Jacob pauses and lifts his eyes to God. The interjection may reflect: (1) Jacob's exhaustion — the dying patriarch needs divine strength to continue; (2) his distress at the dark future glimpsed for Dan (the tribe later associated with idolatry, Judges 18); (3) a reminder that all these prophecies unfold under divine sovereignty, not human power.
18. 'Your salvation' (yeshu'atekha) — the root yasha' ('to save, deliver') is the same root from which the name Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus is formed. Jacob's cry for divine salvation stands as a theological hinge in the oracle — whatever the tribal futures hold, Israel's ultimate hope rests not in any tribe but in the LORD's deliverance.
18. This is the first occurrence of the word yeshu'ah ('salvation') in the Hebrew Bible. Its placement here — in the midst of prophetic blessing, from the lips of a dying patriarch — gives it enormous weight as a programmatic statement of faith.
19. This verse is a masterpiece of Hebrew wordplay. Three words from the same root g-d-d are stacked together with Gad's own name: Gad gedud yegudennu vehu yagud aqev. The effect is untranslatable — a rapid-fire, percussive sequence of consonance that mimics the back-and-forth of border skirmishing. The rendering attempts to preserve the repetition with 'raiders shall raid... he shall raid.'
19. Gad's territory east of the Jordan was exposed to constant raiding from Ammonites, Moabites, and desert nomads. The tribe lived in a perpetual state of frontier warfare. But the blessing promises resilience: Gad will not merely endure raids but counterattack, pursuing enemies 'at their heels' (aqev) — striking back as they retreat.
20. 'His food shall be rich' (shemenah lachmo) — literally, 'fat is his bread.' The word shemenah (from shemen, 'oil, fat') indicates richness, abundance, and fertility. Asher's tribal territory along the northern coastal plain (modern-day Galilee and the Carmel coast) was renowned for its olive groves and fertile soil.
20. 'Royal delicacies' (ma'adannei-melek) — Asher's produce will be of such quality that it graces the tables of kings. The word ma'adanim denotes exquisite, luxurious food — not mere sustenance but delicacies. This was fulfilled: Asher's territory produced the finest olive oil in Israel, a product exported throughout the ancient world.
21. 'A doe set free' (ayyalah sheluchah) — the ayyalah is a female deer, an image of graceful swiftness and freedom. The word sheluchah ('set free, sent forth') suggests a doe released from confinement — bounding freely across the hills. Naphtali's territory in upper Galilee was mountainous, and the tribe was known for speed and agility in warfare (cf. Judges 4-5, where Naphtali plays a leading role in Deborah's victory).
21. 'Who gives beautiful words' (hannoten imrei-shafer) — this phrase is ambiguous and debated. The word imrei can mean either 'words/sayings' or 'lambs' (from emer, 'lamb'). If 'words,' the meaning is that Naphtali produces eloquent speech — perhaps poetic or prophetic words of beauty. If 'lambs,' the image shifts to a doe that bears beautiful fawns. The rendering follows the 'words' interpretation, which is supported by most ancient versions. Deborah's Song (Judges 5), which celebrates Naphtali's valor, may be an example of these 'beautiful words.'
22. 'A fruitful vine' (ben porat) — literally, 'son of fruitfulness.' The word porat is related to parah ('to be fruitful'), the key verb of blessing throughout Genesis. Joseph embodies the fruitfulness promised to Abraham and Jacob. The phrase 'beside a spring' (alei-ayin) provides the source of this fruitfulness — a vine planted by water never lacks nourishment (cf. Psalm 1:3; Jeremiah 17:8).
22. 'His branches climb over the wall' (banot tsa'adah alei-shur) — literally, 'daughters stride over the wall.' The word banot ('daughters') refers to the vine's tendrils or branches — they are so vigorous that they overflow the enclosing wall. This imagery of irrepressible growth captures Joseph's destiny: his fruitfulness cannot be contained. The 'two tribes' of Ephraim and Manasseh represent this overflow — Joseph received a double portion through his two sons.
22. The entire verse is rich with fertility imagery: vine, spring, climbing branches. Joseph's blessing is rooted in life, growth, and abundance — a fitting tribute to the one who preserved life during the famine.
23. 'The archers harassed him bitterly' (vaymaratuhu varobbu) — the verb marar means 'to make bitter, to harass, to deal bitterly.' Joseph's life was defined by suffering inflicted by others — his brothers sold him, Potiphar's wife accused him, the cupbearer forgot him. The 'archers' (ba'alei chitstsim, literally 'masters of arrows') represent all who attacked Joseph.
23. 'They shot at him and attacked him' (vayyistemhu ba'alei chitstsim) — the verb satam means 'to bear a grudge, to persecute, to attack.' The imagery shifts from metaphorical (archers) to personal (persecutors). Joseph was a target of sustained, deliberate hostility from multiple directions — yet the next verse reveals his resilience.

24. 'His bow remained firm' (vatteshav be'eitan qashto) — despite the relentless attacks described in v. 23, Joseph's bow (qeshet) — his strength, his capacity to fight back — remained be'eitan ('firm, enduring, steadfast'). The word eitan means 'permanent, strong, ever-flowing' (as in a perennial stream). Joseph's resilience was not self-generated but divinely sustained, as the next phrase reveals.
24. 'By the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob' (middei Abir Ya'aqov) — the title Abir ('Mighty One, Bull, Champion') is a rare and powerful divine name. It appears primarily in poetic/prophetic texts (Isaiah 1:24; 49:26; 60:16; Psalm 132:2, 5). It emphasizes God's raw, overwhelming power — the power that upheld Joseph through every trial.
24. 'The Shepherd, the Stone of Israel' (ro'eh, even Yisra'el) — two more divine titles stacked together. God is the Shepherd (ro'eh) who tends and guides His people, and the Stone (even) — the immovable foundation on which Israel rests. These titles will echo throughout Scripture: the LORD as Shepherd (Psalm 23:1; Ezekiel 34:15) and as Stone/Rock (Deuteronomy 32:4; Psalm 118:22; Isaiah 28:16).
25. 'The God of your father' (El avikha) — God is identified relationally, as the God of the patriarchal line. Joseph's blessings flow not from impersonal cosmic forces but from the personal God who entered into covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
25. 'The Almighty' (Shaddai) — the patriarchal divine name (cf. 17:1; 28:3; 35:11; 43:14; 48:3). Its use here in Joseph's blessing connects him to the full weight of patriarchal covenant promise.
25. 'Blessings of heaven above... the deep that crouches beneath... the breasts and womb' — Jacob invokes blessings from every dimension of creation. Heaven above sends rain and sunlight; the deep (tehom) beneath provides springs and underground water (the tehom 'crouches' like a living force, recalling the primeval deep of 1:2); the breasts (shadayim) and womb (racham) ensure fertility of both humans and livestock. The near-homophone between Shaddai and shadayim ('breasts') may be an intentional wordplay connecting God's name to His provision of life-giving nourishment.
26. 'Have surpassed the blessings of my ancestors' (gavru al-birkhot horai) — Jacob claims that the blessings he pronounces exceed even those he received from Isaac, and Isaac from Abraham. Each generation of blessing has grown, and Joseph receives the fullest measure yet. The verb gavar ('to be strong, prevail') indicates that Jacob's blessing is not merely equal to but greater than what came before.
26. 'The bounty of the everlasting hills' (ta'avat giv'ot olam) — the word ta'avah means 'desire, delight, bounty.' The 'everlasting hills' (giv'ot olam) represent permanence and stability — the most enduring features of the created landscape. Joseph's blessings are measured against them and found equal.
26. 'The one set apart from his brothers' (nezir echav) — the word nazir means 'set apart, consecrated, crowned.' Joseph was literally separated from his brothers (sold into Egypt) and figuratively set apart by God for a unique destiny. The same word is used for the Nazirite vow (Numbers 6:2) — one consecrated to God. Joseph's separation, which began as an act of human cruelty, became divine consecration.
27. 'A ravenous wolf' (ze'ev yitraf) — the wolf is a predator of relentless ferocity. Unlike the lion (Judah), which is a symbol of royal dignity, the wolf connotes raw, savage efficiency. Benjamin's tribe produced fierce warriors — Ehud the left-handed judge who assassinated the Moabite king (Judges 3:15-30), King Saul and his son Jonathan, and later the apostle Paul (Philippians 3:5).
27. 'In the morning he devours the prey, and in the evening he divides the spoil' (babboqer yokhal ad vela'erev yechalleq shalal) — the merism 'morning... evening' means 'all day long' — Benjamin's predatory activity is unceasing. The word ad means 'prey' (that which is seized), while shalal means 'spoil' (the plunder taken after battle). The distinction suggests that Benjamin both hunts and distributes — a warrior who feeds his people through conquest.
27. This is the last of the twelve tribal blessings. Appropriately, the final son — the youngest — receives an image of aggressive vitality, as if Jacob saves a burst of martial energy for his last blessing before turning to his closing instructions.
28. 'The twelve tribes of Israel' (shivtei Yisra'el sheneim asar) — the narrator steps back to frame what has just occurred. Despite the fact that some 'blessings' were more like judgments (Reuben, Simeon, Levi) and others were ambiguous (Dan, Issachar), the narrator calls the entire oracle a 'blessing.' The word berakhah encompasses the full range — prophetic destiny, whether favorable or unfavorable, spoken under divine authority. Even the negative prophecies are blessings in the sense that they are truthful, authoritative declarations of God's purposes.
28. 'Each with his own blessing' (ish asher kevirkhato) — each son received a distinct, individualized word. There is no one-size-fits-all destiny. The twelve tribes will have different characters, different territories, different histories — yet together they constitute one Israel. Unity does not require uniformity.
29. 'I am about to be gathered to my people' (ani ne'esaf el-ammi) — the phrase 'gathered to his people' is a standard Hebrew idiom for death (cf. 25:8, Abraham; 25:17, Ishmael; 35:29, Isaac). It implies not mere cessation of life but reunion — a joining with the ancestors in the afterlife. The verb asaf ('to gather') echoes the he'asfu ('gather yourselves') of v. 1. Jacob gathered his sons to deliver his oracle; now he will be gathered to his people in death.
29. 'The cave in the field of Ephron the Hittite' — Jacob refers to the cave of Machpelah, purchased by Abraham as a burial site (chapter 23). The specificity of the location — field, owner, ethnic identity — echoes the detailed legal language of the original purchase. Jacob is asserting a legal claim: this land belongs to Abraham's descendants, and burial there is an act of faith in the land promise.
30. 'The cave of Machpelah' (me'arat sadeh hammakhpelah) — this is the family tomb that anchors the patriarchal claim to Canaan. The name Machpelah may mean 'the double (cave),' perhaps referring to its internal structure. Traditionally identified with the site in Hebron beneath the structure known as the Cave of the Patriarchs (Haram al-Ibrahimi).

- 30.** 'Which Abraham purchased' — Jacob recites the legal history of the property, emphasizing that it was legally acquired (qanh, 'purchased'), not stolen or squatted upon. The purchase by Abraham (chapter 23) was the only piece of the Promised Land the patriarchs ever legally owned — a down payment on the larger promise. Jacob insists on burial there as an act of faith: though he dies in Egypt, his body will rest in the Promised Land.
- 31.** Jacob lists the three couples already interred in Machpelah: Abraham and Sarah, Isaac and Rebekah — and then, with quiet poignancy, 'there I buried Leah' (shammah qavarti et-Le'ah). The shift to first person singular ('I buried') is deeply personal. Leah, the unloved wife, was buried by Jacob himself in the family tomb. Rachel, the beloved, died on the road and was buried near Bethlehem (35:19-20). In death, Leah received the honor that eluded her in life — burial alongside the patriarchs and matriarchs in the covenant tomb.
- 31.** The repetition of shammah ('there') three times creates a solemn, liturgical rhythm: there... there... there. The cave of Machpelah is the gathering place of the covenant family across generations. Jacob will be the seventh person buried there, completing the patriarchal roster.
- 32.** 'Purchased from the sons of Heth' (miqneh... me'et benei-Chet) — Jacob concludes his burial instructions by reaffirming the legal provenance of the property. The 'sons of Heth' (Hittites) were the sellers. Jacob's insistence on these legal details reflects the importance of legitimate land ownership in the patriarchal narratives. The tiny parcel at Machpelah is the seed of the entire land promise — legally owned, not merely promised.
- 32.** Jacob's meticulous instructions contrast with his advanced age and failing body. His mind remains sharp even as his body fails; he knows exactly where he wants to be buried and exactly why — and he wants no ambiguity about it.
- 33.** The death of Jacob is narrated with extraordinary artistry through a triple sequence: (1) 'He finished' (vayekhal) — his life's work of blessing is complete; (2) 'he drew his feet into the bed' (vayeesof raglav el-hammittah) — a gentle, deliberate physical act, lying down as if choosing to rest; (3) 'he breathed his last and was gathered to his people' (vayyigva vayyeasef el-ammav) — life departs and reunion begins.
- 33.** The verb asaf ('to gather') appears three times in this chapter in connection with Jacob: he tells his sons to 'gather' (he'asfu, v. 1), he 'gathered' his feet (vayeesof, v. 33), and he was 'gathered' to his people (vayyeasef, v. 33). The wordplay creates a sense of completion — the one who gathered his sons for blessing is now himself gathered into the company of the ancestors.
- 33.** 'He breathed his last' (vayyigva) — the verb gava' means 'to expire, to breathe one's last.' It is a quiet, dignified word for death — no violence, no struggle, simply the cessation of breath. Jacob dies as he lived the last scene of his life: in full possession of his faculties, with deliberate composure, having completed everything God required of him.
- 33.** Notably, the text does not say Jacob 'died' (vayyamat) — that verb is reserved for chapter 50. Here the emphasis is on the peaceful transition: finishing, resting, and being gathered. Jacob's death is an act of completion, not termination.

50

Summary: *Joseph weeps over Jacob, has him embalmed, and leads a great funeral procession to Canaan. Jacob is buried at Machpelah. The brothers fear Joseph's revenge; he reassures them with the definitive theological statement of Genesis: 'You intended evil against me, but God intended it for good, to preserve alive a great people.' Joseph dies at 110 and is placed in a coffin in Egypt, after making Israel swear to carry his bones home.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joseph's declaration in verse 20 — 'you intended evil against me, but God intended it for good' — is the theological summary of the entire book of Genesis. The Hebrew uses the same verb (chashav, 'to intend/plan') for both human evil and divine purpose, insisting that the same events serve two incompatible intentions simultaneously. Joseph's question 'am I in the place of God?' (v. 19) renounces the role of judge and leaves justice to the only one qualified. Genesis ends not in the promised land but in Egypt, with a coffin and a promise — the book closes looking forward to Exodus.*

Translation Friction: *The verb chashav (v. 20) means 'to think, to plan, to intend, to reckon' — it is the same verb used when God 'credited' Abraham's faith as righteousness (15:6). Using the same word for human scheming and divine planning creates a profound theological compression that no single English verb captures. We rendered both instances as 'intended' to preserve the parallelism. Joseph's 110 years represents the ideal Egyptian lifespan — a detail signaling his complete integration into Egyptian culture even as his final wish is to leave it.*

Connections: *Joseph's bones become a recurring biblical motif: they are carried out in the exodus (Exodus 13:19) and finally buried at Shechem (Joshua 24:32). The phrase 'God will surely visit you' (paqod yifqod, v. 24) uses the same emphatic verb that introduces the exodus deliverance (Exodus 3:16). The Machpelah burial (50:13) closes a thread that began with Abraham's purchase in chapter 23. Hebrews 11:22 cites Joseph's faith in the promised return as exemplary.*

¹Then Joseph fell upon his father's face and wept over him and kissed him. ²Joseph ordered the physicians in his service to embalm his father, and they carried out the embalming of Israel. ³Forty days were completed for him, for that is the time required for embalming. And the Egyptians wept for him seventy days. ⁴When the days of weeping for him had passed, Joseph spoke to the household of Pharaoh, saying, "If now I have found favor in your eyes, please speak in the ears of Pharaoh, saying, ⁵My father made me swear, saying, 'Behold, I am about to die. In my grave which I dug for myself in the land of Canaan, there you shall bury me.' Now therefore, let me go up and bury my father, and I will return." ⁶Pharaoh said, "Go up and bury your father, as he made you swear." ⁷Joseph traveled up to bury his father, accompanied by all of Pharaoh's officials, the senior members of Pharaoh's court, and all the leading figures of Egypt, ⁸along with all the household of Joseph, his brothers, and his father's household. Only their little children, their flocks, and their herds they left in the land of Goshen. ⁹Both chariots and horsemen went up with him, and the company was very great. ¹⁰When they came to the threshing floor of Atad, which is beyond the Jordan, they lamented there with a very great and sorrowful lamentation. He observed seven days of mourning for his father. ¹¹When the inhabitants of the land, the Canaanites, saw the mourning at the threshing floor of Atad, they said, "This is a grievous mourning for the Egyptians." Therefore the place was called Abel-mizraim, which is beyond the Jordan. ¹²His sons did for him just as he had commanded them. ¹³His sons carried him to the land of Canaan and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah, which Abraham had purchased along with the field as a burial possession from Ephron the Hittite, facing Mamre. ¹⁴After he had buried his father, Joseph returned to Egypt — he, his brothers, and all who had gone up with him to bury his father. ¹⁵When Joseph's brothers saw that their father was dead, they said, "What if Joseph holds a grudge against us and pays us back for all the evil that we did to him?" ¹⁶So they sent word to Joseph, saying, "Your father gave a command before he died, saying, ¹⁷Thus you shall say to Joseph: "Please forgive the transgression of your brothers and their sin, for they did evil to you." And now, please forgive the transgression of the servants of the God of your father.' And Joseph wept when they spoke to him. ¹⁸Then his brothers also went and fell down before him and said, "Behold, we are your servants." ¹⁹But Joseph said to them, "Do not be afraid, for am I in the place of God? ²⁰As for you, you intended evil against me, but God intended it for good, in order to bring about what is now being done — to preserve alive a great people. ²¹So now, do not be afraid. I will provide for you and your little ones." And he comforted them and spoke to their hearts. ²²Joseph dwelt in Egypt, he and his father's household. Then Joseph lived one hundred and ten years. ²³Joseph saw Ephraim's children to the third generation. The children of Machir the son of Manasseh were also born upon Joseph's knees. ²⁴Joseph said to his brothers, "I am about to die, but God will surely visit you and bring you up out of this land to the land that He swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob." ²⁵Then Joseph made the sons of Israel swear, saying, "God will surely visit you, and you shall carry up my bones from here." ²⁶So Joseph died at the age of one hundred and ten years. They embalmed him, and he was placed in a coffin in Egypt.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Joseph's grief is immediate and physical — he falls on his father's face, weeps, and kisses him. The three verbs (fell, wept, kissed) form a cascade of mourning that is both dignified and deeply emotional. This is the son who was separated from his father for over twenty years, who wept at their reunion (46:29), and who now weeps at the final parting.
1. The intimacy of 'falling on his face' (al-penei aviv) contrasts with Joseph's public role as Egypt's vizier. In this moment he is not the powerful governor but simply a bereaved son. Throughout the Joseph narrative, private grief punctuates public authority — Joseph has wept more than any other figure in Genesis.
2. 'The physicians' (haro'fe'im) — Joseph uses court physicians rather than Egyptian embalmers (who were priestly functionaries). This may reflect a desire to keep Jacob's body within a medical rather than pagan religious context. Embalming was typically a priestly ritual in Egypt, associated with Osiris worship; Joseph's use of physicians suggests he distanced the process from its idolatrous associations.
2. 'The physicians embalmed Israel' — the narrator uses the covenant name 'Israel' (not 'Jacob') at this moment. Even in death, the body being prepared is that of the covenant bearer. The embalming preserves the body for the journey to Canaan — it is a practical necessity for transport, not an Egyptian theological statement about the afterlife.
3. 'Forty days' for embalming — this aligns with what is known of Egyptian mummification practices, which ancient sources (Herodotus, Diodorus Siculus) describe as taking approximately 40 days for the treatment of the body, with the full mourning period extending to 70 days.

3. 'The Egyptians wept for him seventy days' (vayyivku oto Mitsrayim shiv'im yom) — the 70-day mourning period for Jacob nearly equals the 72 days of mourning prescribed for a pharaoh. This extraordinary honor reflects both Joseph's status and Jacob's importance as the father of Egypt's savior. The entire nation mourns a foreign patriarch — a remarkable testimony to the esteem in which Joseph's family was held.
4. Joseph does not speak directly to Pharaoh but through intermediaries — Pharaoh's household. This may reflect mourning protocol: a person in mourning may have been ritually restricted from appearing before the king, or Joseph's disheveled, grief-stricken appearance may have made a direct audience inappropriate in Egyptian court etiquette.
4. 'If I have found favor in your eyes' (im-na matsati chen be'eineikhem) — the language of courteous petition. Despite his enormous power, Joseph approaches with humility and deference. He asks others to intercede on his behalf. The phrase echoes the courteous speech patterns seen throughout Genesis when characters seek a significant request (cf. 18:3; 33:10; 47:29).
5. 'My father made me swear' (avi hishbi'ani) — Joseph invokes the binding oath Jacob extracted from him (47:29-31). The oath provides diplomatic cover: Joseph is not requesting to leave Egypt on a whim but fulfilling a solemn obligation that transcends political loyalties. Pharaoh cannot easily refuse a deathbed oath.
5. 'In my grave which I dug for myself' (beqivri asher kariti li) — this detail is not recorded elsewhere in Genesis. It may refer to Jacob's having prepared or purchased a burial place within the cave of Machpelah, or it may refer to the general family claim to the site. The verb karah ('to dig') suggests personal effort in preparing the tomb.
5. 'I will return' (ve'ashuvah) — Joseph assures Pharaoh (through intermediaries) that this is not an escape or a relocation. He will come back to Egypt. This promise both honors his obligation to Pharaoh and foreshadows the larger pattern: Israel will return from Canaan burial to Egyptian residence, awaiting the future exodus.
6. Pharaoh's response is brief and gracious. He grants permission unconditionally, acknowledging the binding nature of the oath ('as he made you swear'). The verb 'go up' (aleh) reflects the geographical reality — Canaan is at a higher elevation than Egypt — but also carries theological resonance: to go to the Promised Land is always to 'go up' (aliyah).
6. Pharaoh's willingness to release Joseph and his entire family for the journey demonstrates the extraordinary trust Joseph had earned. The fact that he also sends his own officials and chariots (vv. 7-9) elevates Jacob's funeral to a state affair.
7. The funeral procession is described with escalating grandeur. Three groups accompany Joseph: (1) 'all the servants of Pharaoh' — the royal court officials; (2) 'the elders of his household' — Pharaoh's personal household administrators; (3) 'all the elders of the land of Egypt' — the senior statesmen of the entire nation. This is a full state funeral, an honor almost without precedent for a foreign resident.
7. The repeated verb 'went up' (vayyaal, vayyaalu) emphasizes the ascent to Canaan — both literal (geographic) and figurative (spiritual). This procession prefigures the exodus: all Egypt witnesses Israel going up to the land of promise.
8. The detail that little children, flocks, and herds remained in Goshen serves two purposes narratively. Practically, it explains the logistics: young children and livestock would slow the long journey. But it also functions as a guarantee of return — their families and livelihoods remain in Egypt, assuring Pharaoh that the Israelites will come back.
8. This detail anticipates the exodus negotiations, where Pharaoh will demand that women, children, and livestock stay behind as insurance (Exodus 10:10-11, 24). Here the arrangement is voluntary and trust-based; later it will become a point of bitter contention.
9. 'Chariots and horsemen' (rekhev gam parashim) — a military escort befitting a state funeral. The chariots and horsemen represent Egyptian military power accompanying the patriarch's body to its resting place. The irony is rich: Egypt's military might serves as an honor guard for the ancestor of the nation that will one day flee from Egypt's chariots at the Red Sea.
9. 'The company was very great' (vayyehi hammachaneh kaved me'od) — the word machaneh ('company, camp') is the same word Jacob used when he divided his family into 'camps' before meeting Esau (32:7-8). The word kaved ('heavy, great, weighty') is loaded with significance — it is the same root as kavod ('glory'). This funeral procession carries weight, dignity, and glory.
10. 'The threshing floor of Atad' (goren ha'atad) — the word atad means 'thorn bush' or 'bramble.' The threshing floor was a flat, open space used for processing grain — a natural gathering place. Its location 'beyond the Jordan' (be'ever hayYarden) is geographically ambiguous and debated, depending on the narrator's perspective.
10. 'A very great and sorrowful lamentation' (misped gadol vekhaved me'od) — the word misped denotes loud, demonstrative mourning — wailing, beating the breast, tearing garments. The adjectives gadol ('great') and khaved ('heavy, grievous') intensify the description. This is mourning of extraordinary intensity, matching the extraordinary honor of the procession.
10. 'Seven days of mourning' (evel shiv'at yamim) — the seven-day mourning period (shiv'ah) later became the standard mourning practice in Judaism. While the formal institution of shiv'ah is post-biblical, this passage provides its narrative foundation. The number seven signifies completeness — a full measure of grief.
11. 'A grievous mourning for the Egyptians' (evel-kaved zeh leMitsrayim) — the Canaanites identify the mourners as Egyptians, not as Israelites. The procession was so dominated by Egyptian officials, chariots, and horsemen that the local population saw it as an Egyptian state funeral. The irony is profound: Jacob, the patriarch of Israel, is mourned as if he were Egyptian royalty.

11. 'Abel-mizraim' — the name involves a wordplay that works on two levels. The word *avel* means 'mourning,' so Abel-mizraim means 'Mourning of Egypt.' But the similar-sounding word *abel* means 'meadow' or 'stream,' so the place name could also mean 'Meadow of Egypt.' The narrator exploits this homophony to embed the story of Egyptian mourning permanently in the landscape of Canaan.
12. The simple statement 'his sons did for him just as he had commanded them' marks the faithful execution of Jacob's dying wishes. The brevity is powerful — no elaboration is needed. The sons obeyed. After all the dysfunction, betrayal, and conflict that has characterized this family throughout Genesis, the sons finally act in complete unity and obedience. Jacob's command (49:29-32) is fulfilled to the letter.
13. 'His sons carried him' (*vayyis'u oto vanav*) — the sons personally carry their father's body to its resting place. This is not delegated to servants or Egyptian officials. The twelve sons bear Jacob's embalmed body from Egypt to the cave of Machpelah — a journey of hundreds of miles. This filial act of devotion fulfills Jacob's command and expresses the family's unity at last.
13. The description of Machpelah repeats the legal language of Abraham's original purchase (chapter 23), reinforcing the legitimate ownership claim. The detail 'facing Mamre' (*al-penei Mamre*) locates the cave precisely — near the oaks of Mamre where Abraham first received God's covenant promises (13:18; 18:1). Jacob now rests where the covenant began.
14. The return to Egypt is noted with simple finality. Joseph fulfilled his promise to Pharaoh ('I will return,' v. 5). The entire company — Israelites and Egyptians alike — goes back to Egypt. The Promised Land holds only the dead; the living remain in exile. This painful irony will persist for four hundred years until the exodus.
14. The repetition of 'his father' (*aviv*) twice in one verse — 'to bury his father... after he had buried his father' — emphasizes the centrality of this event. Everything in these verses revolves around filial duty to the patriarch.
15. 'What if Joseph holds a grudge' (*lu yistemenu Yosef*) — the particle *lu* introduces a fearful hypothetical. The verb *satam* means 'to bear a grudge, to harbor enmity' (the same root used of Esau's hatred toward Jacob, 27:41). The brothers fear that Jacob's death has removed the last restraint on Joseph's vengeance. Their father was the buffer; now he is gone.
15. 'Pays us back for all the evil' (*hashev yashiv lanu et kol-hara'ah*) — the infinitive absolute construction (*hashev yashiv*) intensifies the verb: 'he will certainly, completely pay us back.' The brothers know exactly what they did — they call it *hara'ah* ('the evil') without euphemism. Their guilt has never been fully resolved, despite Joseph's earlier reassurance (45:5-8). Guilt unresolved by genuine repentance continues to torment.
15. The brothers' fear reveals that they never fully believed Joseph's forgiveness. Twenty years of comfortable coexistence in Egypt did not erase the deep suspicion that Joseph was merely restraining himself for their father's sake. This psychological realism is one of the most penetrating aspects of the narrative.
16. 'They sent word to Joseph' (*vaytsavvu el-Yosef*) — the brothers do not approach Joseph directly. Whether from fear, shame, or diplomatic caution, they send a message. The verb *tsavah* here means 'to send a command/message.' The indirectness of their approach underscores their anxiety — they cannot face Joseph as equals.
16. 'Your father gave a command before he died' — the brothers claim that Jacob left instructions concerning their reconciliation. Whether Jacob actually said these words or the brothers fabricated the message is one of the great interpretive questions of Genesis. Some scholars see a pious deception — the brothers invent a deathbed command to secure their safety. Others believe Jacob did indeed give such a charge, recognizing that the brothers' guilt might resurface. The text does not resolve the question, leaving the reader to weigh the brothers' reliability.
17. 'Please forgive the transgression' (*anna sa na pesha*) — two different words for forgiveness and sin pile up. The verb *nasa* ('to lift, carry, bear away') is the primary Hebrew word for forgiveness — it means to lift the burden of guilt off someone. The word *pesha* ('transgression') denotes willful rebellion, the most serious category of sin. The brothers also use *chatta'tam* ('their sin'), the general term for missing the mark. They hold nothing back — they name their actions as both rebellion and sin.
17. 'The servants of the God of your father' (*avdei Elohei avikha*) — the brothers appeal to their shared faith. They are not merely Joseph's relatives but fellow servants of the God of their father. This theological appeal transcends family dynamics — if Joseph shares their God, he must share that God's character of mercy and forgiveness.
17. 'Joseph wept when they spoke to him' (*vayyevk Yosef bedabberam elav*) — Joseph weeps yet again. His tears here seem to express grief that his brothers still do not trust him, sorrow that decades of gracious treatment have not healed their fear, and perhaps compassion for the depth of guilt they still carry. Joseph's weeping is one of the great emotional motifs of Genesis.
18. 'They fell down before him' (*vayyippelu lefanav*) — the brothers prostrate themselves before Joseph, fulfilling the dreams of chapter 37 one final time. The sheaves bowing (37:7) and the stars bowing (37:9) find their ultimate realization not in triumph but in terrified supplication. The dream came true — but not in the way anyone expected.
18. 'We are your servants' (*hinnenu lekha la'avadim*) — the brothers offer themselves as slaves, the ultimate surrender. This echoes what Joseph himself became when they sold him — a slave (*eved*) in Egypt. The reversal is complete: those who sold their brother into slavery now offer themselves as slaves to him. Yet Joseph will refuse this offer, pointing to a reality higher than human power dynamics.
19. 'Do not be afraid' (*al-tira'u*) — the same words God speaks to the patriarchs at moments of crisis (15:1; 21:17; 26:24; 46:3). Joseph speaks with the authority and compassion of one who has learned to see his life through God's eyes.

19. 'Am I in the place of God?' (hatachat Elohim ani) — this rhetorical question is the theological key to the entire Joseph narrative. Joseph refuses the role of judge or avenger. He recognizes that vengeance belongs to God alone. The question implies: 'God is the one who judges and the one who directs the course of history. I am not God. I cannot presume to punish what God has sovereignly used for good.' This is not weakness but profound theological maturity — Joseph subordinates his personal rights to God's larger purposes.
20. This verse is the theological climax of Genesis, perhaps of the entire Pentateuch. It articulates the doctrine of divine providence with crystalline clarity. The same verb *chashav* ('to intend, to plan, to devise') is used for both human and divine action: 'you intended (*chashavtem*) evil... God intended (*chashavah*) it for good.' The brothers had a plan; God had a plan. The brothers' plan was evil; God's plan was good. And God's plan encompassed, absorbed, and transformed the brothers' evil into the means of salvation.
20. 'To preserve alive a great people' (*lehachayot am-rav*) — the verb *hechayah* ('to preserve alive, to give life') echoes the creation language of Genesis and the preservation language of the flood narrative. Joseph — sold, enslaved, imprisoned — became the instrument through which God kept an entire people alive. The word *am-rav* ('a great people') looks forward: the small family of seventy (46:27) is already becoming the multitude promised to Abraham.
20. This verse does not say that evil was actually good, or that suffering doesn't matter, or that the brothers' actions were justified. It says that God's sovereignty is so comprehensive that even human evil is woven into His redemptive purposes. The evil remains evil — 'you intended evil' is not retracted. But God is greater than evil, and His intentions prevail.
21. 'I will provide for you and your little ones' (*anokhi akhalkel etkhem ve'et-tapekhem*) — the verb *kilkel* ('to provide, sustain, nourish') denotes ongoing, complete provision. Joseph pledges not a one-time gift but continued sustenance — for them and their *taf* (little children, dependents). This promise transforms Joseph from judge to provider, from potential avenger to sustaining brother.
21. 'He spoke to their hearts' (*vaydabber al-libbam*) — this beautiful Hebrew idiom means more than 'he spoke kindly.' To speak 'to the heart' (*al-lev*) is to address someone's deepest fears and needs, to speak words of comfort that reach the innermost being (cf. Isaiah 40:2, where God commands, 'Speak to the heart of Jerusalem'). Joseph's words do not merely inform — they heal. The phrase also echoes the tender persuasion of a lover (Hosea 2:14; Ruth 2:13), suggesting Joseph's speech carried emotional warmth and personal tenderness.
22. 'Joseph lived one hundred and ten years' (*vayechi Yosef me'ah va'eser shanim*) — the number 110 is highly significant in Egyptian culture. It was considered the ideal lifespan — the perfect number of years for a blessed life. Egyptian wisdom literature (such as the Teaching of Ptahhotep) identifies 110 years as the mark of divine favor. By noting Joseph's age at death in Egyptian terms, the narrator signals that Joseph was blessed by God even within the categories of Egyptian culture. He lived a complete, ideal Egyptian life while remaining a son of Israel.
23. 'Ephraim's children to the third generation' (*le'Efrayim benei shilleshim*) — Joseph lived long enough to see great-great-grandchildren through Ephraim's line. This abundance of descendants fulfills the blessing of fruitfulness that has been the hallmark of Joseph's story. To see one's descendants to the third generation was considered the ultimate sign of divine blessing (cf. Job 42:16, where Job sees four generations after his restoration).
23. 'Born upon Joseph's knees' (*yulledu al-birkei Yosef*) — the phrase 'born on someone's knees' is a formal gesture of adoption or recognition (cf. 30:3, where Rachel uses the same expression). By receiving Machir's children on his knees, Joseph officially acknowledges them as his own — they are incorporated into the patriarchal line. This gesture ensures that Manasseh's descendants through Machir have full standing in the family.
24. 'I am about to die' (*anokhi met*) — Joseph faces death with the same faith and clarity that marked his father's death. He does not fear the end but uses it as an occasion to reaffirm the covenant promises.
24. 'God will surely visit you' (*paqod yifqod etkhem*) — the infinitive absolute construction (*paqod yifqod*) expresses absolute certainty: God will without fail visit you. The verb *paqad* means 'to visit, attend to, take note of, intervene.' It implies that God, who may seem absent during the Egyptian sojourn, will intervene decisively at the appointed time. This phrase becomes the watchword of the exodus: when Moses comes to deliver Israel, he echoes Joseph's exact words — 'God has surely visited you' (Exodus 3:16; 4:31; 13:19).
24. 'Bring you up out of this land' (*vehe'elah etkhem min-ha'arets hazzot*) — Joseph's faith looks beyond his own lifetime to the exodus. He knows that Egypt, for all its safety and prosperity, is not the destination. The Promised Land — sworn to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — remains the goal. Joseph's dying words thus become a bridge between Genesis and Exodus, pointing forward to the liberation that God has promised.
25. 'Joseph made the sons of Israel swear' (*vayyashba Yosef et-benei Yisra'el*) — like his father Jacob (47:29-31), Joseph extracts a solemn oath before death. But where Jacob required burial in Canaan immediately, Joseph asks only that his bones be carried up when God visits Israel in the future. Joseph's faith is even more far-reaching: he trusts not only in God's promise but in God's timing, knowing the fulfillment may be generations away.
25. 'You shall carry up my bones from here' (*veha'alitem et-atmotai mizzeh*) — this oath was faithfully kept. Exodus 13:19 records: 'Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for Joseph had made the sons of Israel solemnly swear, saying, "God will surely visit you, and you shall carry up my bones from here with you."' Joshua 24:32 records the final fulfillment: Joseph's bones were buried at Shechem, in the plot of land Jacob had purchased (33:19). Joseph's bones made the entire journey — Egypt to Sinai to wilderness to Promised Land — a silent witness to covenant faithfulness across centuries.
25. The word *atsamot* ('bones') becomes a powerful symbol. Joseph does not ask for his body to be preserved intact (though he is embalmed); he asks for his bones — the last, most enduring part of a human being — to be brought home. His bones are a testament of faith, a physical pledge that the covenant will be fulfilled.

- 26.** The final verse of Genesis is one of the most deliberately crafted sentences in the Hebrew Bible. It ends not with triumph, not with arrival, not with fulfillment — but with a coffin in Egypt. The book that began with 'In the beginning God created the heavens and the earth' ends with 'he was placed in a coffin in Egypt.' The contrast is staggering and intentional. Genesis closes on a note of incompleteness — the story is not over. The promises to Abraham remain unfulfilled. The people are in the wrong land. The narrative demands continuation.
- 26.** 'A coffin' (aron) — the Hebrew word aron is the same word used for the Ark of the Covenant (aron haberit). This cannot be coincidental. Joseph's aron in Egypt anticipates the aron of God's presence that will accompany Israel through the wilderness. Both are containers of testimony: one holds the bones of a faithful man; the other will hold the tablets of God's law. The verbal link binds Joseph's death to the covenant's future.
- 26.** 'In Egypt' (beMitsrayim) — these are the last two words of Genesis. The patriarch is embalmed, confined, and stored in Egypt. The Promised Land remains a promise. The four-hundred-year sojourn is about to begin. Genesis ends with an open wound — a story suspended in anticipation of the exodus that only the next book will begin to tell.
- 26.** The death of Joseph closes the patriarchal era. Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph — four generations of covenant bearers — have lived, believed, struggled, and died. The promises remain. God remains. And the story, like Joseph's bones, waits to be carried forward.

Exodus

1

Summary: *The sons of Israel multiply in Egypt, fulfilling the creation mandate, until a new Pharaoh who does not know Joseph enslaves them. When state-sponsored infanticide targets Hebrew boys, two midwives defy the king's order because they fear God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens with a cascade of creation-language verbs — paru, vayyishretzu, vayyirbu ('were fruitful, swarmed, multiplied') — deliberately echoing Genesis 1:28 and the teeming life of Genesis 1:20-21. Covenant fruitfulness thrives inside imperial oppression. Meanwhile, two named women (Shiphrah and Puah) resist an unnamed Pharaoh; the text grants enduring honor to the resisters and anonymity to the tyrant.*

Translation Friction: *The verb vayyishretzu ('swarmed') posed a real translation decision. The root sharats is used for teeming aquatic life in Genesis 1 — it carries connotations of unstoppable, almost biological increase. We retained 'swarmed' rather than softening it, because the Hebrew deliberately makes Israel's growth sound like creation bursting its banks. The phrase yotsei yerekh ('those who came out of Jacob's thigh') we rendered as 'from Jacob's own line' to preserve the kinship meaning without the anatomical idiom.*

Connections: *The tribal list echoes Genesis 46:8-27. The creation verbs point back to Genesis 1:28 and 9:1. The midwives' civil disobedience anticipates Daniel 3 and Acts 5:29. God building 'households' for the midwives (v21) foreshadows the house-building promise of 2 Samuel 7:11.*

¹These are the names of the sons of Israel who came to Egypt with Jacob, each man with his household: ²namely Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, ³Issachar and Zebulun and Benjamin, ⁴Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher. ⁵All the persons who came from Jacob's own line were seventy in all, and Joseph was already in Egypt. ⁶Then Joseph died, and all his brothers, and all that generation. ⁷But the sons of Israel were fruitful and swarmed and multiplied and became exceedingly strong, and the land was filled with them. ⁸Now a new king arose over Egypt who did not know Joseph. ⁹He said to his people, "Look, the people of the sons of Israel are too many and too strong for us. ¹⁰Come, let us deal shrewdly with them, lest they multiply, and if war breaks out, they join our enemies and fight against us and leave the land." ¹¹So they set taskmasters over them to afflict them with heavy burdens, and they built supply cities for Pharaoh: Pithom and Raamses. ¹²But the more they afflicted them, the more they multiplied and spread out, so the Egyptians came to dread the sons of Israel. ¹³Then the Egyptians forced the sons

of Israel to serve with harshness. ¹⁴They made their lives bitter with hard labor in mortar and brick and in every kind of field work. In all their labor they forced them to serve with brutality. ¹⁵Then the king of Egypt spoke to the Hebrew midwives, one named Shiphrah and the other named Puah. ¹⁶He said, "When you help the Hebrew women give birth and see them on the birthstool, if it is a son, put him to death; if it is a daughter, let her live." ¹⁷But the midwives feared God and did not do as the king of Egypt commanded them; they let the boys live. ¹⁸So the king of Egypt called the midwives and said to them, "Why have you done this and let the boys live?" ¹⁹The midwives said to Pharaoh, "Because the Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. They are vigorous and give birth before the midwife comes to them." ²⁰So God dealt well with the midwives, and the people multiplied and became very strong. ²¹And because the midwives feared God, He made households for them. ²²Then Pharaoh commanded all his people, saying, "Every son that is born you must throw into the Nile, but every daughter you shall let live."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a deliberate echo of Genesis 46, linking Exodus to the covenant family history. The story of deliverance begins with remembered names, not anonymous masses.
2. The tribal list begins with Leah's first four sons, following established birth-order tradition in Genesis.
3. Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin complete the core sons born to Leah and Rachel before the sons of the maidservants are listed.
4. The full list preserves the continuity of the twelve-tribe identity before Israel becomes a nation in Egypt.
5. 'From Jacob's own line' literally reflects the Hebrew idiom 'those who came out of Jacob's thigh,' a kinship expression for direct descendants.
6. With Joseph and that generation gone, the narrative shifts from family memory to political vulnerability under a new regime.
7. The cluster of verbs ('fruitful,' 'swarmed,' 'multiplied,' 'became strong') intentionally echoes creation and patriarchal blessing language, showing covenant increase in exile.
8. 'Did not know Joseph' likely means more than personal ignorance; it signals political refusal to honor Joseph's legacy and policy shift toward oppression.
9. Pharaoh frames Israel as a demographic threat. Fear-driven rhetoric becomes the justification for state violence.
10. The Hebrew says 'deal wisely' (or shrewdly), but the wisdom is corrupt: it is strategic oppression disguised as national security.
11. The move from anxiety to policy is immediate: economic exploitation through forced labor. 'Supply/treasure cities' indicates state-building through enslaved bodies.
12. The text stresses ironic reversal: oppression accelerates Israel's growth instead of suppressing it, intensifying Egyptian fear.
13. 'With harshness' (bafarekh) introduces a key term for crushing, ruthless labor that defines Israel's bondage.
14. The verse piles up labor terms to emphasize totalizing oppression: domestic production, construction labor, and agricultural service.
15. Two women are named in the narrative while Pharaoh remains only 'the king of Egypt.' The text grants enduring honor to faithful resistance.
16. The command targets males to destroy covenant continuity while absorbing females into Egyptian society. It is population control through selective infanticide.
17. The midwives' civil disobedience is explicitly theological: they fear God above Pharaoh. This is the first direct human resistance to imperial decree in Exodus.
18. Pharaoh's interrogation shows the state recognizes that quiet resistance can undermine policy more effectively than open revolt.
19. Their reply functions as protective speech under tyranny. Whether fully factual or strategic, the narrative commends the life-preserving result.
20. God's favor toward the midwives shows divine approval of their costly protection of vulnerable life.
21. 'He made households for them' likely means God granted them enduring family lines/status, reversing the threat of child-destruction with covenant-style fruitfulness.
22. Pharaoh expands policy from professional midwives to the whole population, moving from covert control to public genocide by decree.

2

Summary: *Moses is born into a Levite family, hidden, placed in a basket on the Nile, and rescued by Pharaoh's daughter. After killing an Egyptian and fleeing to Midian, he marries Zipporah. The chapter closes with Israel's cry reaching God, who remembers His covenant.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word tevah ('basket') is the same rare word used for Noah's ark — the only two vessels in Scripture called by this name. Both preserve a chosen life through waters of death. The mother sees the child as ki tov ('good'), the same word God spoke over creation. The four climactic verbs of vv23-25 — God heard, remembered, saw, knew — form a comprehensive portrait of divine attention that drives the entire exodus.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered tevah as 'basket' rather than 'ark' to avoid confusion with the much larger vessel in Genesis, though the verbal echo is theologically essential and noted in our translator notes. The verb zakhar ('remembered') in v24 does not imply God forgot; we considered 'called to mind' to clarify that this is covenant activation, not memory recovery. The name Mosheh, explained from mashah ('to draw out'), encodes his future mission — the child drawn from water will draw a nation through water.*

Connections: *The tevah links to Genesis 6:14. Moses at the well echoes the betrothal type-scenes of Genesis 24 and 29. Gershom's name ('sojourner there') connects to Abraham's self-description in Genesis 23:4. The covenant remembered in v24 reaches back to Genesis 15:13-14 and forward to the burning bush in chapter 3.*

¹A man from the house of Levi went and married a daughter of Levi. ²The woman conceived and bore a son. She saw that he was a fine child, and she hid him for three months. ³When she could no longer hide him, she took a papyrus basket and coated it with bitumen and pitch. She placed the child in it and set it among the reeds along the bank of the Nile. ⁴His sister stationed herself at a distance to see what would happen to him. ⁵Then Pharaoh's daughter came down to bathe at the Nile, while her attendants walked along the riverbank. She saw the basket among the reeds and sent her servant girl to fetch it. ⁶So he opened it and saw the child — a baby boy, crying. She felt compassion for him and said, "This is one of the Hebrew children." ⁷Then his sister said to Pharaoh's daughter, "Shall I go and call a Hebrew woman to nurse the child for you?" ⁸Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Go." So the girl went and called the child's mother. ⁹Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Take this child and nurse him for me, and I will pay your wages." So the woman took the child and nursed him. ¹⁰When the child grew older, she brought him to Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. She named him Moses, saying, "Because I drew him out of the water." ¹¹One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out to his brothers and saw their forced labor. He saw an Egyptian striking a Hebrew, one of his brothers. ¹²He looked this way and that, and seeing no one, he struck down the Egyptian and hid him in the sand. ¹³He went out the next day, and there were two Hebrew men fighting. He said to the one in the wrong, "Why are you striking your companion?" ¹⁴The man replied, "Who made you a ruler and judge over us? Do you intend to kill me as you killed the Egyptian?" Then Moses was afraid and thought, "The matter is surely known." ¹⁵When Pharaoh heard about this, he sought to kill Moses. But Moses fled from Pharaoh and settled in the land of Midian, and he sat down by a well. ¹⁶The priest of Midian had seven daughters. They came to draw water, filling the troughs to water their father's flock. ¹⁷But shepherds came and drove them away. Moses rose up and defended them and watered their flock. ¹⁸When they returned to Reuel their father, he said, "How is it that you have come back so soon today?" ¹⁹They said, "An Egyptian man rescued us from the shepherds. He even drew water for us and watered the flock." ²⁰He said to his daughters, "Where is he? Why did you leave the man? Invite him to eat bread." ²¹Moses agreed to stay with the man, and he gave his daughter Zipporah to Moses. ²²She bore a son, and he called his name Gershom, for he said, "I have been a sojourner in a foreign land." ²³During those many days the king of Egypt died. The sons of Israel groaned because of the slavery and cried out, and their cry for help rose up to God from the bondage. ²⁴God heard their cries of anguish and called to mind His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. ²⁵God saw the sons of Israel, and God knew.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses's birth is framed within the tribe of Levi, tying him to the line that will serve at the tabernacle. The text withholds the parents' names until 6:20, keeping the focus on the vulnerability of the child.
2. 'She saw that he was good' (ki tov hu) uses the same word God spoke over creation. The mother perceives something in this child that echoes divine intent — not merely physical beauty but providential significance.
3. The word for 'basket' is *tevah* — the same rare word used for Noah's ark in Genesis 6-9. Only two vessels in the Bible are called *tevah*: Noah's ark and Moses's basket. Both preserve a chosen life through waters of death.
4. Miriam's watchful station is the first act of covert resistance in Moses's story. She positions herself as a silent witness, ready to intervene at the right moment.
5. Pharaoh's daughter descends to the Nile — the same river her father decreed as the instrument of Hebrew infanticide. Salvation comes from inside the oppressor's household, by the hand of the oppressor's own family.
6. Pharaoh's daughter immediately identifies the child as Hebrew, yet instead of enforcing her father's decree, she responds with compassion. The verb *chamol* ('had compassion') signals maternal tenderness overriding state policy.
7. Miriam's offer is strategic brilliance under pressure: she provides the solution Pharaoh's daughter needs while restoring Moses to his own mother. The deliverer will be nursed on Hebrew identity inside an Egyptian court.
8. The single-word permission — 'Go' (*lekhi*) — sets the rescue in motion. Pharaoh's daughter becomes an unwitting agent of the very covenant continuity her father sought to destroy.
9. The irony is layered: Pharaoh's treasury pays Moses's own mother to nurse him. Imperial resources finance the preservation of the child who will dismantle the empire.
10. The name *Mosheh* is explained from the verb *mashah* ('to draw out'). The child drawn from water will draw a nation through water. His Egyptian name encodes his Hebrew destiny.
11. 'He went out to his brothers' signals solidarity — Moses chooses identification with the enslaved over comfort in the palace. The phrase 'saw their forced labor' (*sivlotam*) uses the same word from 1:11, connecting Moses's awakening to the systemic oppression described in chapter 1.
12. Moses acts against injustice but without divine commission. He looks 'this way and that' — checking for human witnesses rather than seeking divine direction. Zeal without calling leads to exile, not deliverance.
13. Moses attempts to mediate between Hebrews, but his authority is not yet recognized. The question 'Why are you striking your companion?' reveals Moses's instinct for justice, but the response in v14 exposes his lack of standing.
14. 'Who made you a ruler and judge over us?' — the question is prophetically ironic, since God will make Moses exactly that. But the challenge also reveals that self-appointed deliverance is rejected; only God-commissioned authority carries legitimacy.
15. Moses flees to Midian, exchanging the court of Pharaoh for the wilderness. This exile is not wasted time — it is preparation. The well where he sits will become a meeting place, echoing the well-scenes of the patriarchs (Genesis 24, 29).
16. The well scene follows the biblical type-scene pattern: a man meets women at a well in a foreign land, an act of service occurs, and marriage follows. Moses's story deliberately echoes Jacob's meeting with Rachel at the well (Genesis 29:1-12).
17. Moses again intervenes for the vulnerable — this time defending women from aggressive shepherds. The pattern from v11-12 recurs, but without lethal force. His instinct for justice persists across every setting.
18. Reuel ('friend of God') is also called Jethro. The multiple names for Moses's father-in-law have generated extensive scholarly discussion, but the narrative treats them as the same person.
19. The daughters describe Moses as 'an Egyptian man' — he looks, speaks, and acts Egyptian. His dual identity (Hebrew by birth, Egyptian by upbringing) will persist until God redefines him at the burning bush.
20. Reuel's rebuke of his daughters for not inviting Moses reflects ancient Near Eastern hospitality norms. The invitation to 'eat bread' is the standard gesture of welcome and the beginning of social bond.
21. Moses settles in Midian and marries into a priestly family. His wilderness years will school him in the terrain through which he will later lead Israel.
22. Gershom means 'a sojourner there' — the name encodes exile. Moses names his son after his displacement, preserving in the child's identity the truth that Midian is not home. The sojourner theme links Moses to Abraham (Genesis 23:4) and the entire patriarchal experience of landlessness.
23. The king's death changes the political landscape but not the theological reality. Israel's cry rises not as political petition but as raw groaning under slavery — and this groaning reaches God. The verb *za'aq* ('cry out') is the technical term for a covenant distress call.
24. 'God remembered His covenant' — the verb *zakhar* does not imply forgetfulness but activation. God now moves from patient observation to decisive intervention. The covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob becomes the engine of exodus. Deliverance is not random rescue but covenant fulfillment.

25. 'God saw ... God knew' — the four verbs of v23-25 (heard, remembered, saw, knew) form a comprehensive portrait of divine attention. Yada ('knew') means intimate, personal awareness — not mere information but relational knowledge that compels action.

3

Summary: *God appears to Moses in a burning bush at Horeb, reveals the divine name ehyeh asher ehyeh ('I AM WHO I AM'), and commissions him to bring Israel out of Egypt to a land flowing with milk and honey.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The bush (seneh) is a humble desert shrub, possibly punning on Sinai — God appears in what is ordinary, not grand. The divine name ehyeh asher ehyeh resists all domestication: it carries both present force ('I am') and future promise ('I will be'). The first-person ehyeh becomes third-person YHWH in v15 — what God declares of Himself becomes the name by which others invoke Him. This is also the first occurrence of qodesh ('holy') in Exodus, introduced not as moral purity but as the relational condition created by divine presence.*

Translation Friction: *The divine name ehyeh asher ehyeh we rendered 'I AM WHO I AM,' preserving the traditional English while noting in our translator notes that 'I WILL BE WHO I WILL BE' is equally valid. Both renderings are present in the Hebrew imperfect form. The phrase paqod paqadti ('I have carefully watched over') required expansion beyond the bare 'I have visited' because the English word 'visit' has lost its weight; the Hebrew denotes covenant inspection that compels action.*

Connections: *The double call 'Moses! Moses!' echoes Abraham's call in Genesis 22:11. The hineni response places Moses in the line of covenant servants (Genesis 22:1; 1 Samuel 3:4). The land promise with six peoples restates Genesis 15:18-21. God's descent to deliver (v8) echoes the descent at Babel (Genesis 11:7).*

1Now Moses was shepherding the flock of his father-in-law Jethro, the priest of Midian. He led the flock beyond the wilderness and came to Horeb, the mountain of God. 2The angel of the LORD appeared to him in a flame of fire from within a bush. He looked, and the bush was burning with fire, yet the bush was not consumed. 3Moses said, "I must turn aside and see this remarkable sight — why the bush does not burn up." 4When the LORD saw that he had turned aside to look, God called to him from within the bush: "Moses! Moses!" And he said, "Here I am." 5He said, "Do not come near. Remove your sandals from your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy ground." 6Then He said, "I am the God of your father — the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." Moses hid his face, for he was afraid to look at God. 7The LORD said, "I have surely seen the affliction of My people who are in Egypt, and I have heard their cry because of their taskmasters, for I know their sufferings. 8I have come down to deliver them from the hand of the Egyptians and to bring them up from that land to a good and spacious land, to a land flowing with milk and honey — to the place of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. 9Now the cry of the sons of Israel has come to Me, and I have also seen the oppression with which the Egyptians oppress them. 10Come now, I will send you to Pharaoh, so that you may bring My people, the sons of Israel, out of Egypt." 11But Moses said to God, "Who am I that I should go to Pharaoh, and that I should bring the sons of Israel out of Egypt?" 12He said, "I will surely be with you, and this will be the sign for you that it is I who have sent you: when you have brought the people out of Egypt, you shall serve God on this mountain." 13Then Moses said to God, "If I come to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'The God of your fathers has sent me to you,' and they ask me, 'What is His name?' — what shall I say to them?" 14God said to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM." And He said, "Say this to the sons of Israel: 'I AM has sent me to you.'" 15God also said to Moses, "Say this to the sons of Israel: 'The LORD, the God of your fathers — the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob — has sent me to you.' This is My name forever, and this is how I am to be remembered from generation to generation. 16Go and gather the elders of Israel and say to them, 'The LORD, the God of your fathers — the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob — appeared to me, saying: I have carefully watched over you and seen what is being done to you in Egypt. 17I have declared that I will bring you up out of the affliction of Egypt to the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites — a land flowing with milk and honey.' 18They will listen to your voice, and you and the elders of Israel shall go to the king of Egypt

and say to him, 'The LORD, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. Now please let us go a three-day journey into the wilderness so that we may sacrifice to the LORD our God.' ¹⁹But I know that the king of Egypt will not let you go unless compelled by a mighty hand. ²⁰So I will stretch out My hand and strike Egypt with all My wonders that I will perform in it. After that he will let you go. ²¹And I will give this people favor in the eyes of the Egyptians, so that when you go, you shall not go empty-handed. ²²Each woman shall ask of her neighbor and of the woman staying in her house for articles of silver and articles of gold and for clothing. You shall put them on your sons and your daughters. So you shall plunder the Egyptians."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'The mountain of God' (har ha'Elohim) names Horeb in retrospect — the narrator reveals its future significance. Moses does not seek revelation; he is shepherding sheep in an unremarkable wilderness. Divine encounter comes to a man doing ordinary work.
2. The bush burns with fire but is not consumed — the fire does not depend on the bush as fuel. This signals a presence that sustains without destroying, a holiness that inhabits creation without annihilating it. The image becomes foundational for understanding how God dwells among finite creatures.
3. Moses's decision to 'turn aside' (sur) is the hinge of the narrative. Had he not turned, the call might not have come. Revelation requires attentiveness — God speaks when Moses shows he is willing to look.
4. The double call 'Moses! Moses!' echoes the calling of Abraham ('Abraham! Abraham!' Genesis 22:11). The repeated name signals urgency and intimacy. Moses's response — hineni, 'Here I am' — matches Abraham's response at the Aqedah, placing Moses in the line of covenant servants who make themselves wholly available to God.
5. 'Holy ground' (admat qodesh) — the first use of qodesh ('holy') in Exodus. Holiness is not an inherent quality of the soil but a condition created by divine presence. The command to remove sandals marks a boundary: the one approaching God must acknowledge that he stands on ground that has been set apart by God's nearness.
6. The three-fold identification — God of Abraham, God of Isaac, God of Jacob — anchors the burning bush revelation to the patriarchal covenant tradition. The God who appears is not unknown; He is the God who has already made promises and kept them. Moses hides his face because seeing God is dangerous (cf. Exodus 33:20).
7. Four verbs pile up: 'I have seen... heard... know.' God's awareness of suffering is comprehensive — visual, auditory, and relational. The word for 'sufferings' (makh'ovav) connotes pain at the deepest level. God does not observe suffering from a distance; He knows it intimately.
8. 'I have come down' (yaradti) — God descends to act. The same verb describes God's descent at Babel (Genesis 11:7) and will describe His descent at Sinai (Exodus 19:20). Divine intervention is portrayed spatially: God moves toward His people. The land promise is restated with the full list of six peoples, linking the exodus to the Abrahamic land grant.
9. The cry and the oppression are mentioned together: Israel's voice reaches heaven, and God sees the mechanism of their suffering. Both dimensions — the victims' experience and the oppressors' system — are held in divine awareness.
10. God commissions Moses with a purpose that exceeds every human qualification: bring My people out of Egypt. The pronoun 'My people' (ammi) asserts covenant ownership — Israel belongs to God, not to Pharaoh.
11. Moses's first objection is about identity: 'Who am I?' The deliverer's self-doubt is not false modesty but honest recognition that the task is absurdly disproportionate to the messenger. Every subsequent prophet will echo this inadequacy.
12. God's answer bypasses the question entirely. Moses asks 'Who am I?' and God answers 'I will be with you.' The sign is backward-looking — you will know I sent you when you worship on this mountain — requiring faith before confirmation. Presence, not credentials, is the ground of mission.
13. Moses's second objection concerns God's identity: 'What is His name?' In the ancient world, knowing a god's name meant knowing their character, jurisdiction, and accessibility. Moses is asking: who are You, specifically, that I should stake everything on Your commission?
14. Ehyeh asher ehyeh — 'I AM WHO I AM' or 'I WILL BE WHO I WILL BE.' The name resists domestication. God does not give a name that fits human categories; He gives a name that redefines all categories. The first-person form ehyeh ('I am/will be') becomes the third-person YHWH ('He is/will be') in v15 — the name by which others will invoke what God declares of Himself.
15. The name YHWH is declared permanent — 'This is My name forever' (le'olam). The covenant name is not temporary or situational; it defines God's relationship with His people across all generations. The word zikri ('My memorial/remembrance') means this name is the handle by which humanity calls upon God.
16. Moses is instructed to begin with the elders — covenant leadership structures precede national action. The phrase paqod paqadti ('I have carefully watched over') is a technical covenant-visitation term: God comes to inspect, intervene, and fulfill what He has promised.
17. The land description 'flowing with milk and honey' (zavat chalav udevash) depicts agricultural abundance — a pastoral paradise contrasted with Egyptian slave labor. The phrase will become a fixed formula throughout the Pentateuch for the promised land.

- 18.** The request for a three-day journey is a formal worship petition, not deception. The narrative presents it as a legitimate first demand; Pharaoh's refusal even of this modest request exposes the totality of his opposition.
- 19.** God reveals Pharaoh's intransigence in advance. The resistance is not a surprise but part of the divine plan. The phrase 'mighty hand' (yad chazaqah) will become one of Exodus's signature descriptions of divine power.
- 20.** 'I will stretch out My hand' — God's hand replaces Pharaoh's hand. The contest is between two 'hands' — Pharaoh's hand of oppression and God's hand of deliverance. The wonders (nifle'otai) are not spectacle but covenant-judgment acts.
- 21.** God will reverse the economics of slavery: the enslaved will leave with the wealth of their oppressors. The word chen ('favor') echoes the language of covenant grace — God gives Israel unmerited favor in the eyes of Egypt.
- 22.** The plundering of Egypt is not theft but the restitution of unpaid slave wages. Israel leaves with silver, gold, and clothing — the raw materials that will later construct the tabernacle. Egypt's wealth becomes God's dwelling.

4

Summary: Moses raises further objections to his commission; God provides three signs and appoints Aaron as his spokesman. On the journey back to Egypt, the LORD confronts Moses at a lodging place, and Zipporah performs emergency circumcision. God declares Israel His firstborn son.

What Makes This Remarkable: Moses's phrase kevad-peh ukhevad lashon ('heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue') uses the same root kaved that will describe Pharaoh's hardened heart — the deliverer's weakness and the tyrant's stubbornness share a single Hebrew word, and both are overcome by God. The declaration 'Israel is My son, My firstborn' (beni vekhori Yisra'el, v22) is the most compressed statement of covenant identity in the Pentateuch, and it sets the theological logic for the tenth plague: firstborn for firstborn.

Translation Friction: We retained 'heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue' as a literal rendering rather than paraphrasing to 'slow of speech,' because the kaved wordplay with Pharaoh's heart is theologically load-bearing. The enigmatic phrase chatan damim ('bridegroom of blood,' v25-26) remains one of the most debated in the Torah. We rendered it literally and let the translator notes carry the interpretive weight, since no single English phrase can capture the intertwined meanings of marriage, blood, and covenant.

Connections: The staff-to-serpent sign in v3 echoes the nachash of Genesis 3:1 and anticipates the contest with Pharaoh's magicians in 7:10-12. 'All the men who sought your life are dead' (v19) echoes Genesis 31:3 and will be echoed in Matthew 2:20. The firstborn declaration (v22-23) sets up the Passover theology of chapters 11-12.

¹Moses answered, "But what if they do not believe me or listen to my voice? They may say, 'The LORD did not appear to you.'" ²The LORD said to him, "What is that in your hand?" He said, "A staff." ³He said, "Throw it on the ground." So he threw it on the ground, and it became a serpent, and Moses fled from it. ⁴Then the LORD said to Moses, "Reach out your hand and grasp it by the tail" — so he reached out his hand and caught it, and it became a staff in his hand — ⁵so that they may believe that the LORD, the God of their fathers — the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob — has appeared to you." ⁶Then the LORD said to him, "Put your hand inside your cloak." He put his hand inside his cloak, and when he drew it out, his hand was leprous, white as snow. ⁷He said, "Put your hand back inside your cloak." He put his hand back, and when he drew it out, it was restored like the rest of his flesh. ⁸"If they do not believe you or heed the first sign, they may believe the second sign. ⁹But if they do not believe even these two signs or listen to your voice, you shall take some water from the Nile and pour it on the dry ground, and the water that you take from the Nile shall become blood on the ground." ¹⁰Then Moses said to the LORD, "Please, Lord, I have never been a man of words — not yesterday, not the day before, and not since You have spoken to Your servant. I am heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue." ¹¹The LORD said to him, "Who gave man his mouth? Who makes a person mute or deaf, seeing or blind? Is it not I, the LORD? ¹²Now go. I Myself will be with your mouth and will teach you what to say." ¹³But Moses said, "Please, Lord, send someone else." ¹⁴Then the anger of the LORD burned against Moses. He said, "Is not Aaron the Levite your brother? I know that he can speak well. He is already on his way to meet you, and when he sees you, his heart will be glad. ¹⁵You shall speak to him and put the words in his mouth, and I

will be with your mouth and with his mouth, and I will teach you both what to do. ¹⁶He shall speak for you to the people, and he will be your mouth, and you will be as God to him. ¹⁷Take this staff in your hand, for with it you shall perform the signs." ¹⁸Moses went back to Jethro his father-in-law and said to him, "Please let me go back to my brothers in Egypt to see whether they are still alive." Jethro said to Moses, "Go in peace." ¹⁹The LORD said to Moses in Midian, "Go back to Egypt, for all the men who sought your life are dead." ²⁰So Moses took his wife and his sons, set them on a donkey, and went back to the land of Egypt. And Moses took the staff of God in his hand. ²¹The LORD said to Moses, "When you return to Egypt, see that you perform before Pharaoh all the wonders I have placed in your hand. But I will harden his heart, and he will not let the people go. ²²Then you shall say to Pharaoh, 'Thus says the LORD: Israel is My son, My firstborn. ²³I said to you, Let My son go so that he may serve Me, but you have refused to let him go. Now I will kill your son, your firstborn.'" ²⁴On the way, at a lodging place, the LORD met him and sought to put him to death. ²⁵Zipporah took a flint knife and cut off her son's foreskin and touched it to his feet. She said, "You are a bridegroom of blood to me." ²⁶So the LORD let him alone. It was then that she said "bridegroom of blood," referring to the circumcision. ²⁷The LORD said to Aaron, "Go into the wilderness to meet Moses." So he traveled and met him at the mountain of God and kissed him. ²⁸Moses told Aaron all the words of the LORD with which He had sent him and all the signs He had commanded him to perform. ²⁹Then Moses and Aaron went and gathered all the elders of the sons of Israel. ³⁰Aaron spoke all the words that the LORD had spoken to Moses, and he performed the signs in the sight of the people. ³¹The people believed. When they heard that the LORD had visited the sons of Israel and that He had seen their affliction, they bowed their heads and worshipped.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses's third objection concerns Israel's potential disbelief. Each objection has escalated: 'Who am I?' (3:11) 'What is Your name?' (3:13) 'What if they don't believe me?' (4:1). The progression reveals deepening resistance.
2. God starts with what Moses already holds — an ordinary shepherd's staff. The most powerful sign-instrument in Exodus is not something new but something transformed. God repurposes the mundane.
3. The staff becomes a nachash ('serpent') — a word loaded with Genesis echoes (Genesis 3:1). The serpent was also a symbol of royal Egyptian power (the uraeus cobra on Pharaoh's crown). God demonstrates mastery over both primordial and political symbols of power.
4. Moses must seize the serpent by its tail — the most dangerous way to grasp a snake. The act requires trust: what looks like certain harm becomes, in obedience, restored authority. The staff of a shepherd becomes the staff of God.
5. The signs authenticate Moses's commission by connecting him to the God already known to Israel — 'the God of their fathers.' Legitimacy is grounded in covenant continuity, not novel revelation.
6. The leprous hand demonstrates God's power over the body itself — to wound and to restore at command. Leprosy (tsara'at) represents the most severe ritual impurity, making this sign about both power and purity under divine control.
7. Immediate restoration proves that the affliction is demonstration, not punishment. God who wounds is the God who heals. The speed of healing — instant, complete — conveys absolute sovereignty over human flesh.
8. God provides a second sign as accommodation for weak faith. He does not demand perfect trust before acting; He provides enough evidence to make trust reasonable.
9. The water-to-blood sign foreshadows the first plague and targets the Nile — Egypt's source of life and object of worship. What sustains Egypt will testify against Egypt.
10. 'Heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue' (kevad-peh ukhevad lashon) — the word kaved ('heavy') is the same root used for Pharaoh's 'hardened' (kaved) heart later in Exodus. Moses's mouth is 'heavy'; Pharaoh's heart will be 'heavy.' The wordplay links the deliverer's weakness to the tyrant's stubbornness — both are overcome by God.
11. God's response reframes the objection entirely. Moses says 'I can't speak'; God says 'I made the mouth.' The Creator of speech does not need an eloquent messenger — He needs a willing one.
12. 'I Myself will be with your mouth' (anokhi ehyeh im-pikha) — the verb ehyeh ('I will be') is the same word from the divine name in 3:14. 'I AM' will be with Moses's mouth. God's identity and God's promise of presence are inseparable.
13. Moses's final plea — 'send someone else' (shelach na beyad-tishlach) — drops all pretense of legitimate objection. This is bare refusal. It provokes the only moment of divine anger in the call narrative.

14. God's anger flares but does not consume. The provision of Aaron is both accommodation and consequence — Moses gets help but also shares a role that was offered to him alone. Grace and discipline arrive together.
15. God promises to be with both mouths — Moses's and Aaron's. The prophetic team is underwritten by the same divine presence that sustains the individual prophet.
16. 'You will be as God to him' (vehayita lo le'Elohim) — Moses stands in the God-role relative to Aaron, who serves as his 'prophet' (navi). This arrangement previews the Moses-Pharaoh relationship: Moses will also be 'as God to Pharaoh' (7:1).
17. The staff — now called 'this staff' and later 'the staff of God' (v20) — is a shepherd's tool transformed into a sign-bearing instrument. It bridges Moses's pastoral past and prophetic future.
18. Moses's request to Jethro is diplomatically understated — 'to see if they are still alive' — concealing the full scope of his divine commission. The dangerous political dimension remains implicit.
19. 'All the men who sought your life are dead' echoes the announcement to Jacob (Genesis 31:3) and will echo in the infancy narrative of Jesus (Matthew 2:20). God clears the immediate human threat before the divine mission begins.
20. Moses departs with his family and the staff of God. Household and mission travel together — there is no separation between personal life and prophetic calling. The 'staff of God' (matteh ha'Elohim) signals that the ordinary tool has been permanently claimed for divine use.
21. God announces Pharaoh's hardening before any confrontation. The Hebrew uses chazaq ('strengthen, make firm'), suggesting that Pharaoh's existing resistance will be judicially confirmed rather than artificially imposed. God's foreknowledge encompasses human stubbornness.
22. 'Israel is My son, My firstborn' (beni vekhori Yisra'el) — the most compressed statement of Israel's covenant identity in the entire Pentateuch. Sonship language establishes both intimacy and obligation. God claims Israel with a father's authority and a father's tenderness.
23. The firstborn-for-firstborn threat creates the theological logic of the tenth plague. If Pharaoh refuses to release God's firstborn (Israel), God will take Pharaoh's firstborn. The measure-for-measure principle structures the entire plague narrative.
24. This is one of the most enigmatic passages in the Bible. The LORD 'met him and sought to put him to death' — the God who just commissioned Moses now threatens to kill him. The most likely reading connects this to circumcision: Moses's son is uncircumcised, and the covenant sign must be applied before the covenant mission can proceed.
25. Zipporah acts with decisive urgency, performing emergency circumcision with a flint knife. She saves Moses's life through the covenant act he has neglected. The phrase chatan damim ('bridegroom of blood') ties marriage, blood, and covenant into a single declaration — the household must be covenantally ordered before the deliverer can confront Pharaoh.
26. The crisis resolves when the covenant sign is applied. The passage, however brief and obscure, establishes a non-negotiable principle: the one who carries God's mission must first carry God's covenant mark. Ministry without covenant obedience is mortal danger.
27. God orchestrates the meeting of Moses and Aaron at the mountain of God — the same location as the burning bush. The kiss of reunion bonds the prophetic partnership at the site of revelation.
28. Moses transmits God's words and signs to Aaron — the chain of revelation runs from God to Moses to Aaron to the people. This communication structure will define Israel's prophetic office throughout the Torah.
29. The gathering of elders reconstitutes Israel's covenant leadership after centuries of slavery. Corporate witness precedes corporate action.
30. Aaron speaks and performs signs before the people — the dual commission (word and sign) authenticates the message. Israel has been given evidence sufficient for trust.
31. The people's response combines belief, bowing, and worship. When they hear that God has 'visited' (paqad) them and 'seen' (ra'ah) their affliction, their response mirrors the four divine verbs of 2:24-25: God heard, remembered, saw, knew — and now the people believe, bow, and worship. The divine initiative produces human response.

5

Summary: *Moses and Aaron confront Pharaoh with the demand 'Let My people go,' but Pharaoh refuses, increases the labor quotas by withholding straw, and the Israelite foremen turn against Moses. Moses challenges God: 'Why have You brought harm upon this people?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Two competing speech formulas collide: 'Thus says the LORD' (koh amar YHWH, v1) versus 'Thus says Pharaoh' (koh amar Par'oh, v10). The chapter stages a contest over whose word governs reality. Pharaoh dismisses God's command as divrei shaqer ('lying words,' v9) — the most truthful speech in the universe is labeled deception by the most powerful man on earth. Moses's raw complaint to God in vv22-23 uses the infinitive absolute construction: 'delivering, You have*

not delivered.'

Translation Friction: *We rendered the Hebrew chag (v1) as 'feast' rather than 'festival' or 'pilgrimage,' though the term denotes a communal covenant worship gathering, not a banquet. Pharaoh's nitchakkemah ('let us deal shrewdly,' from 1:10, echoed here in his tactics) sits on the boundary between wisdom and cunning; we chose 'shrewdly' to preserve the ironic corruption of a wisdom-word. The phrase hiv'ashtem et-reichenu ('you have made our smell stink,' v21) we rendered as 'made us repulsive' for clarity, though the literal olfactory image is vivid.*

Connections: *Pharaoh's 'Who is the LORD?' (v2) echoes the king who 'did not know Joseph' (1:8) — both use yada as political refusal. Moses's complaint anticipates the lament psalms (Psalm 13:1-2; 44:23-24). God's answer comes in 6:1, completing the arc begun here.*

¹Afterward Moses and Aaron went in and said to Pharaoh, "Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel: Let My people go so that they may celebrate a feast to Me in the wilderness." ²Pharaoh said, "Who is the LORD, that I should obey His voice and let Israel go? I do not know the LORD, and I will not let Israel go." ³They said, "The God of the Hebrews has met with us. Please let us go a three-day journey into the wilderness so that we may sacrifice to the LORD our God, or He may strike us with pestilence or with the sword." ⁴The king of Egypt said to them, "Moses and Aaron, why are you taking the people away from their work? Get back to your labors!" ⁵Pharaoh also said, "The people of the land are now many, and you would have them stop working!" ⁶That same day Pharaoh commanded the taskmasters of the people and their foremen, saying, ⁷"You shall no longer give the people straw for making bricks as before. Let them go and gather straw for themselves. ⁸But the quota of bricks that they were making before — you shall impose the same amount on them. You shall not reduce it, for they are lazy. That is why they cry out, 'Let us go and sacrifice to our God.' ⁹Let the work be heavier on the men so that they are occupied with it and pay no attention to lying words." ¹⁰So the taskmasters of the people and their foremen went out and said to the people, "Thus says Pharaoh: I will not give you straw. ¹¹Go and get your own straw wherever you can find it, but your workload will not be reduced at all." ¹²So the people scattered throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw. ¹³The taskmasters were relentless, saying, "Complete your daily work — the same amount as when straw was provided!" ¹⁴The foremen of the sons of Israel, whom Pharaoh's taskmasters had set over them, were beaten and asked, "Why have you not completed your required amount of bricks, both yesterday and today, as you did before?" ¹⁵Then the foremen of the sons of Israel came and cried out to Pharaoh, saying, "Why do you treat your servants this way? ¹⁶No straw is given to your servants, yet they say to us, 'Make bricks!' And your servants are being beaten, but the fault is with your own people." ¹⁷He said, "You are lazy — lazy! That is why you say, 'Let us go and sacrifice to the LORD.' ¹⁸Now go and work! No straw will be given to you, but you must deliver the full number of bricks." ¹⁹The foremen of the sons of Israel saw that they were in trouble when they were told, "You shall not reduce your daily number of bricks at all." ²⁰They met Moses and Aaron, who were waiting for them as they came out from Pharaoh. ²¹They said to them, "May the LORD look on you and judge! You have made us repulsive in the eyes of Pharaoh and his servants and have put a sword in their hand to kill us." ²²Then Moses returned to the LORD and said, "Lord, why have You brought harm upon this people? Why did You ever send me? ²³From the time I came to Pharaoh to speak in Your name, he has done evil to this people, and You have not delivered Your people at all."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses and Aaron open with 'Thus says the LORD' (koh amar YHWH) — the prophetic messenger formula. They speak not on their own authority but as authorized representatives. The request is specific: release for a wilderness feast (chag), a covenant worship gathering.
2. 'Who is the LORD, that I should obey His voice?' — Pharaoh's question is not philosophical curiosity but political defiance. He positions himself as the only sovereign whose voice matters in Egypt. 'I do not know the LORD' (lo yadati et-YHWH) uses the same verb from 1:8 ('a king who did not know Joseph'). The refusal to 'know' is a refusal to acknowledge authority.
3. Moses and Aaron reframe the request as a matter of divine threat: failure to worship may bring pestilence or the sword. The warning shifts the dynamic from permission-request to life-or-death obedience, though Pharaoh remains unimpressed.
4. Pharaoh reframes the worship-request as labor disruption. In his worldview, the only relevant category for Israel is production. He reduces theology to economics: 'Why are you taking the people from their work?' The enslaver's logic recognizes only output, not worship.

5. Pharaoh notes that the people are 'many' (rabbim) — the very population growth that alarmed him in 1:9 now makes their labor stoppage an economic threat. His fear of their numbers works in both directions: too many to release, too many to let idle.
6. Pharaoh's response to a worship request is to increase oppression. The pattern will repeat throughout Exodus: prophetic confrontation provokes imperial escalation.
7. Straw was the binding agent in mud bricks — chopped straw mixed with clay prevents cracking. Removing the supply while maintaining quotas is not merely cruel but structurally impossible, designed to break the people's spirit and discredit Moses.
8. Pharaoh diagnoses the worship request as a symptom of idleness: 'they are lazy' (nirpim hem). He weaponizes the accusation of laziness to justify intensified oppression — a strategy used by slave systems throughout history to reframe resistance as character failure.
9. 'Lying words' (divrei shaqer) — Pharaoh categorizes God's own command as falsehood. The inversion is total: truth is called a lie, worship is called laziness, and obedience to God is treated as rebellion against the state.
10. The taskmasters relay Pharaoh's decree using his own formula: 'Thus says Pharaoh' (koh amar Par'oh), mimicking the prophetic 'Thus says the LORD.' The two speech formulas now stand in direct competition — whose word governs reality?
11. The workload remains the same; only the supply chain is disrupted. The impossible demand functions as collective punishment designed to turn the people against Moses and Aaron rather than against Pharaoh.
12. 'The people scattered' (vayyafets ha'am) — the verb puts ('scatter') echoes the scattering at Babel (Genesis 11:8). Oppression disintegrates communal life; the people are dispersed across the land searching for raw material instead of standing together.
13. 'Complete your daily work' — the Hebrew emphasizes daily (yom beyomo), constant pressure without relief. Oppression operates through exhaustion: no moment for rest, reflection, or resistance.
14. The foremen are Israelites placed in a middle position — responsible for quotas they cannot meet, beaten for failures they cannot prevent. The system turns Israelites against Israelites, using structural violence to fracture solidarity from within.
15. The foremen appeal directly to Pharaoh, still hoping that the system can be reasoned with from inside. Their cry 'Why do you treat your servants this way?' assumes their status as servants (avadim) entitles them to fair treatment — a dignity Pharaoh has already revoked.
16. The foremen's argument is structurally sound: we lack materials, yet face punishment. 'The fault is with your own people' (vechatat ammekha) dares to assign blame upward. This is remarkable courage under oppression.
17. Pharaoh repeats 'lazy' (nirpim) twice — the accusation hardens into a verdict. He will not engage with the argument about materials; he will only assert that the desire to worship is proof of insufficient labor. Religion is redefined as a labor-management problem.
18. The decree is final and unyielding: no straw, full quotas. Pharaoh's word, once spoken, does not negotiate or accommodate. This rigidity will prove to be his undoing, as it positions him immovably against God's equally uncompromising demand.
19. The foremen understand the trap: they are caught between Pharaoh's impossible quotas and their own people's desperation. The phrase 'they were in trouble' (bera) literally means 'in evil/distress' — the situation has become structurally hopeless within the Egyptian system.
20. The foremen encounter Moses and Aaron outside Pharaoh's palace — the confrontation between those inside the system and those who challenged it from outside. The two approaches to liberation now collide.
21. The foremen curse Moses and Aaron: 'You have made us repulsive' (hiv'ashtem et-reichenu) — literally, 'you have made our smell stink.' The accusation is painfully human: prophetic action has made life worse, not better. This is the cost of confrontation before deliverance arrives.
22. Moses's complaint to God is raw and honest: 'Why have You brought harm upon this people?' (lamah hare'otah la'am hazzeh). The same Moses who was reluctant to go now challenges God for the results of going. The verb hara ('do evil/harm') charges God with causing the suffering He promised to end.
23. 'You have not delivered Your people at all' (vehatsel lo-hitsalta et-ammekha) — the infinitive absolute construction intensifies the accusation: 'delivering, you have not delivered.' Moses throws God's own promise back at Him. This is not faithlessness but the anguished prayer of a man who trusted God and watched things get worse. It will receive its answer in 6:1.

6

Summary: *God answers Moses's complaint with a covenant-reaffirmation speech built on four 'I will' declarations, reveals that the patriarchs knew Him as El Shaddai but not yet by the full significance of YHWH, and provides the Levitical genealogy establishing Moses and Aaron's lineage.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The four 'I will' verbs of v6-8 — bring out, deliver, redeem, take — form the theological backbone of the exodus and traditionally correspond to the four cups of the Passover Seder. The climactic verb ga'al ('redeem') is kinsman-redeemer language: God acts not as a distant benefactor but as covenant kin. The phrase qotser ruach ('crushed spirit,' v9) — literally 'shortness of breath' — is one of Scripture's most psychologically accurate descriptions of sustained trauma: even good news cannot penetrate.*

Translation Friction: *The statement that God was not 'known' (noda) to the patriarchs by the name YHWH (v3) created tension with Genesis passages where the name appears. We rendered it 'I did not make Myself fully known to them,' following the interpretation that yada here means experiential knowledge of the name's redemptive significance, not mere awareness of the word. The metaphor aral sefatayim ('uncircumcised lips,' v12) we rendered as 'unskilled in speech' for readability, noting the striking covenant metaphor in our translator notes.*

Connections: *The four 'I will' declarations are echoed in the Passover Haggadah's four cups. The covenant formula of v7 ('I will take you as My people, I will be your God') recurs at Sinai (19:5-6), in Jeremiah 31:33, and Revelation 21:3. The genealogy connects to Numbers 3 and 1 Chronicles 6.*

¹Then the LORD said to Moses, "Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh. By a mighty hand he will let them go, and by a mighty hand he will drive them out of his land." ²God spoke to Moses and said to him, "I am the LORD. ³I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as God Almighty, but by My name the LORD I did not make Myself fully known to them. ⁴I also established My covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan, the land in which they lived as sojourners. ⁵Furthermore, I have heard the groaning of the sons of Israel, whom the Egyptians hold in slavery, and I have remembered My covenant. ⁶Therefore say to the sons of Israel: 'I am the LORD. I will bring you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians. I will deliver you from their bondage. I will redeem you with an outstretched arm and with great acts of judgment. ⁷I will take you as My people, and I will be your God. Then you will know that I am the LORD your God, who brought you out from under the burdens of the Egyptians. ⁸I will bring you into the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, and I will give it to you as a possession. I am the LORD.'" ⁹Moses spoke this to the sons of Israel, but they did not listen to him because of their crushed spirit and harsh bondage. ¹⁰Then the LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ¹¹"Go in and tell Pharaoh king of Egypt to let the sons of Israel go out of his land." ¹²But Moses said before the LORD, "If the sons of Israel have not listened to me, how will Pharaoh listen to me? I am unskilled in speech." ¹³The LORD spoke to Moses and to Aaron and gave them a charge regarding the sons of Israel and regarding Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring the sons of Israel out of the land of Egypt. ¹⁴These are the heads of their fathers' houses: The sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel — Hanoah, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. These are the clans of Reuben. ¹⁵The sons of Simeon — Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jachin, Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanite woman. These are the clans of Simeon. ¹⁶These are the names of the sons of Levi according to their generations: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. The years of Levi's life were 137 years. ¹⁷The sons of Gershon — Libni and Shimei, by their clans. ¹⁸The sons of Kohath — Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. The years of Kohath's life were 133 years. ¹⁹The sons of Merari — Mahli and Mushi. These are the clans of the Levites according to their generations. ²⁰Amram married Jochebed, his father's sister, and she bore him Aaron and Moses. The years of Amram's life were 137 years. ²¹The sons of Izhar — Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri. ²²The sons of Uzziel — Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri. ²³Aaron married Elisheba, the daughter of Amminadab and the sister of Nahshon, and she bore him Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. ²⁴The sons of Korah — Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. These are the clans of the Korahites. ²⁵Eleazar the son of Aaron married one of the daughters of Putiel, and she bore him Phinehas. These are the heads of the fathers' houses of the Levites, by their clans. ²⁶It

was this Aaron and Moses to whom the LORD said, "Bring the sons of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their hosts." ²⁷It was they who spoke to Pharaoh king of Egypt about bringing the sons of Israel out of Egypt — this Moses and Aaron. ²⁸On the day when the LORD spoke to Moses in the land of Egypt, ²⁹the LORD said to Moses, "I am the LORD. Tell Pharaoh king of Egypt all that I say to you." ³⁰But Moses said before the LORD, "I am unskilled in speech. How will Pharaoh listen to me?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God's response to Moses's complaint (5:22-23) begins with a promise of force: 'by a mighty hand' (beyad chazaqah). The phrase will echo throughout Exodus as a signature description of divine power. God does not explain the delay; He announces decisive action.
2. 'I am the LORD' (ani YHWH) opens a formal covenant-reaffirmation speech (vv.2-8) that is among the most theologically dense passages in the Pentateuch. God speaks His own name as the ground of everything that follows.
3. The statement about El Shaddai and YHWH has generated centuries of debate. It does not mean the patriarchs never heard the name YHWH (cf. Genesis 15:7), but that they did not experience its full significance — the God who acts in redemptive power to fulfill covenant promises. The name's meaning is now being revealed through action, not merely speech.
4. 'Established My covenant' (haqimoti et-beriti) — the verb qum ('establish, set up') treats the covenant as a standing structure, erected and maintained by God. The land of Canaan is specifically named as the covenant's territorial content.
5. Divine 'hearing' and 'remembering' reprise the language of 2:24-25. God heard, remembered, saw, knew — and now He declares what He will do. The groaning of the enslaved has become the engine of salvation history.
6. The four 'I will' declarations form the theological backbone of the exodus: (1) I will bring you out, (2) I will deliver you, (3) I will redeem you, (4) I will take you. Each verb carries distinct weight. The climactic 'redeem' (ga'al) is kinsman-redeemer language — God acts not as a distant benefactor but as covenant kin who pays the price of liberation.
7. 'I will take you as My people, and I will be your God' — this is the covenant formula (formula of mutual belonging) that defines the God-Israel relationship throughout Scripture. It will be restated at Sinai (Exodus 19:5-6), in the prophets (Jeremiah 31:33), and in Revelation (21:3). Relationship, not merely rescue, is the goal of the exodus.
8. The speech closes as it opened: 'I am the LORD.' The entire declaration is bracketed by divine self-identification (vv.2, 8). The promises are as certain as the identity of the one who speaks them. The land sworn (nasa yadi, 'I lifted My hand') to the patriarchs is now the destination of the exodus.
9. 'Crushed spirit' (qotser ruach) — literally 'shortness of breath/spirit.' Oppression has compressed the people's inner capacity to the point where even good news cannot penetrate. This is one of the most psychologically accurate descriptions of sustained trauma in Scripture.
10. God does not wait for Israel to recover before issuing the next command. The mission moves forward regardless of the people's readiness.
11. The command to Pharaoh is blunt and direct: 'let them go' (shalach). No diplomacy, no negotiation — a sovereign demand.
12. Moses repeats his speech objection from 4:10, now using the phrase 'uncircumcised lips' (aral sefatayim) — an unusual metaphor linking speech inadequacy to covenant incompleteness. The word arel ('uncircumcised') will gain enormous significance at Sinai and beyond.
13. God responds to Moses's objection not with argument but with commissioning. He gives a 'charge' (tsav) to both Moses and Aaron — a formal military/legal command that overrides personal hesitation.
14. The genealogy begins with Reuben and Simeon (Jacob's first two sons) but quickly narrows to Levi — Moses and Aaron's tribe. The list legitimizes their authority by anchoring it in Israel's tribal structure.
15. Simeon's genealogy is brief, setting up the extended treatment of Levi that follows. The note about Shaul's Canaanite mother preserves the historical record without commentary.
16. The Levite genealogy becomes the chapter's center. Three sons of Levi — Gershon, Kohath, Merari — establish the branches from which all priestly and Levitical service will descend.
17. The Gershonite line is listed briefly; the narrative interest lies with the Kohathites (v18), from whom Moses and Aaron descend.
18. The Kohathite line is expanded because it leads to Amram, Moses and Aaron's father. The genealogical focus narrows with each generation toward the commissioned deliverers.
19. Merari's line completes the three-branch Levitical structure. This genealogical framework will govern tabernacle service assignments in Numbers.
20. Amram and Jochebed are named for the first time — Moses's parents, identified in the genealogical record. Jochebed is Amram's father's sister (dodah), a marriage later prohibited by Levitical law (Leviticus 18:12-13). The narrative records without judging.
21. Izhar's son Korah will later lead a rebellion against Moses (Numbers 16). The genealogy quietly positions future conflicts within the family tree.
22. Uzziel's sons will play roles in the tabernacle narrative (Leviticus 10:4). The genealogy plants seeds for later developments.

- 23. Aaron's wife Elisheba connects the priestly line to the tribe of Judah through Nahshon (cf. Ruth 4:20, 1 Chronicles 2:10). The marriage links the priestly and royal tribes at the genealogical level.
- 24. The Korahite clans will become significant in later Israelite worship — the 'sons of Korah' are credited with multiple psalms (Psalms 42, 44-49, 84-85, 87-88).
- 25. Phinehas will become the great zealot for covenant faithfulness (Numbers 25:7-13). His genealogy here connects future zeal to the Aaronic priestly line.
- 26. The narrator breaks the genealogy to reidentify Moses and Aaron as the ones God commissioned. The genealogy serves the narrative, not the other way around — it exists to legitimize the mission.
- 27. The emphasis falls on 'this Moses and Aaron' (hu Mosheh ve'Aharon) — lest anyone mistake identities. The commissioned deliverers are specific, named individuals within a documented lineage.
- 28. The narrative returns to the commission scene, resuming from v13 after the genealogical interlude. The phrase 'on the day when' (beyom dibber) reconnects to the direct speech of God.
- 29. 'I am the LORD' again — the speech restarts with the same self-identification that opened the covenant declaration in v2. Repetition is not redundancy but rhetorical anchoring.
- 30. Moses's final objection returns verbatim — 'uncircumcised lips.' The repetition creates a literary frame (vv.12, 30) that brackets the genealogy, showing that Moses's inadequacy is not resolved by pedigree but by divine commission.

7

Summary: *God makes Moses 'like God to Pharaoh' with Aaron as his prophet, announces the hardening of Pharaoh's heart, and initiates the plague sequence. Aaron's staff swallows the magicians' staffs, the Nile turns to blood, but Pharaoh's heart remains hard.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter introduces three theologically dense elements at once: the knowledge formula ('the Egyptians shall know that I am the LORD,' v5), the hardening motif using three different Hebrew verbs (chazaq, qasheh, kaved), and the recognition that Israel's enslaved workers are reidentified as God's tseva'ot ('hosts/armies,' v4). The magicians can replicate the blood-plague but cannot reverse it — imitation is not mastery.*

Translation Friction: *The hardening vocabulary required careful handling: chazaq ('strengthen/make firm'), qasheh ('make hard'), and kaved ('make heavy') each carry distinct nuances. We preserved these distinctions across our renderings rather than flattening them into a single English word. The phrase netatikha Elohim lePar'oh ('I have made you like God to Pharaoh,' v1) we rendered with 'like God' rather than simply 'a god,' because the Hebrew establishes Moses as God's authorized representative, not a deity.*

Connections: *Moses as 'God to Pharaoh' fulfills the arrangement previewed in 4:16. The knowledge formula ('they shall know that I am the LORD') will recur throughout Ezekiel (e.g., Ezekiel 6:7; 12:15). The staff-swallowing contest in v12 inverts the serpent's power from Genesis 3. The Nile-to-blood targets Egypt's source of life and worship.*

¹The LORD said to Moses, "See, I have made you like God to Pharaoh, and Aaron your brother shall be your prophet. ²You shall speak everything that I command you, and Aaron your brother shall tell Pharaoh to let the sons of Israel go from his land. ³But I will harden Pharaoh's heart. I will multiply My signs and My wonders in the land of Egypt. ⁴Pharaoh will not listen to you. Then I will lay My hand on Egypt and bring out My hosts, My people the sons of Israel, from the land of Egypt by great acts of judgment. ⁵The Egyptians shall know that I am the LORD, when I stretch out My hand over Egypt and bring the sons of Israel out from among them. ⁶Moses and Aaron did so; they did just as the LORD commanded them. ⁷Moses was eighty years old, and Aaron eighty-three years old, when they spoke to Pharaoh. ⁸The LORD said to Moses and Aaron, ⁹"When Pharaoh says to you, 'Perform a wonder,' you shall say to Aaron, 'Take your staff and throw it down before Pharaoh,' and it will become a serpent." ¹⁰So Moses and Aaron went in to Pharaoh and did just as the LORD had commanded. Aaron threw down his staff before Pharaoh and his servants, and it became a serpent. ¹¹Then Pharaoh summoned the wise men and the sorcerers, and they, the magicians of Egypt, also did the same by their secret arts. ¹²Each one threw down his staff, and they became serpents. But Aaron's staff swallowed up their staffs. ¹³Yet Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen to

them, just as the LORD had said. ¹⁴Then the LORD said to Moses, "Pharaoh's heart is stubborn; he refuses to let the people go. ¹⁵Go to Pharaoh in the morning as he goes out to the water. Stand by the bank of the Nile to meet him, and take in your hand the staff that was turned into a serpent. ¹⁶Say to him, 'The LORD, the God of the Hebrews, has sent me to you, saying: Let My people go, so that they may serve Me in the wilderness. But until now you have not listened. ¹⁷Thus says the LORD: By this you shall know that I am the LORD — I am about to strike the water in the Nile with the staff in my hand, and it will be turned to blood. ¹⁸The fish in the Nile will die, and the Nile will stink, and the Egyptians will be unable to drink water from the Nile.' ¹⁹The LORD said to Moses, 'Say to Aaron: Take your staff and stretch out your hand over the waters of Egypt — over their rivers, their canals, their pools, and every body of water — so that they may become blood. There shall be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, even in vessels of wood and stone.' ²⁰Moses and Aaron did just as the LORD commanded. He raised the staff and struck the water in the Nile in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants, and all the water in the Nile was turned to blood. ²¹The fish in the Nile died, and the Nile stank so that the Egyptians could not drink water from it. There was blood throughout all the land of Egypt. ²²But the magicians of Egypt did the same by their secret arts, so Pharaoh's heart remained hard, and he did not listen to them, just as the LORD had said. ²³Pharaoh turned and went into his house, and he did not take even this to heart. ²⁴All the Egyptians dug along the Nile for water to drink, because they could not drink the water of the Nile. ²⁵Seven full days passed after the LORD struck the Nile. ²⁶Then the LORD said to Moses, 'Go in to Pharaoh and say to him, 'Thus says the LORD: Let My people go, so that they may serve Me. ²⁷If you refuse to let them go, I will strike all your territory with frogs. ²⁸The Nile shall swarm with frogs, and they shall come up into your house and into your bedroom and onto your bed and into the houses of your servants and on your people and into your ovens and into your kneading bowls. ²⁹The frogs shall come up on you and on your people and on all your servants.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'I have made you like God to Pharaoh' (netatikha Elohim lePar'oh) — Moses stands in the God-role relative to Pharaoh: he speaks with divine authority, commands signs, and pronounces judgment. Aaron functions as Moses's 'prophet' (navi) — the one who speaks the words on behalf of the authority.
2. The chain of revelation is formalized: God speaks to Moses, Moses speaks to Aaron, Aaron speaks to Pharaoh. This structure mirrors the prophetic office that will define Israel's relationship with God throughout its history.
3. 'I will harden Pharaoh's heart' (va'ani aqsheh et-lev Par'oh) — the verb qasheh means 'make hard, make stubborn.' God's hardening does not create rebellion from nothing but confirms and solidifies Pharaoh's own resistance. The purpose is to multiply signs — to demonstrate God's sovereignty so thoroughly that neither Egypt nor Israel can mistake who controls history.
4. 'My hosts, My people' (et-tsiv'otai et-ammi) — the military term tseva'ot ('hosts, armies') is applied to Israel for the first time. The enslaved workers are reidentified as God's army. The exodus is not merely escape but a military withdrawal of God's own forces from enemy territory.
5. The knowledge formula — 'they shall know that I am the LORD' (veya'du Mitsrayim ki-ani YHWH) — states the theological purpose of the plagues. The signs are revelatory, not merely punitive. Egypt will learn God's identity through judgment.
6. The obedience formula echoes Noah (Genesis 6:22) and Moses at Sinai: exact compliance with divine command, reported without embellishment.
7. Moses at eighty and Aaron at eighty-three — both are old men beginning the most consequential mission in Israel's history. Their ages signal that God's timing operates outside human career trajectories.
8. A new divine speech introduces the first sign before Pharaoh — the staff-to-serpent demonstration.
9. The staff becomes a tannin ('serpent, sea creature, dragon') — a word associated with chaos monsters in creation mythology (cf. Isaiah 27:1; 51:9). The sign challenges Egyptian cosmic symbolism at its root.
10. Aaron performs the sign as instructed — obedience precedes results. The sign is public, performed before Pharaoh and his court.
11. Pharaoh summons his own practitioners — chartumim ('magicians') and mekashfim ('sorcerers'). Their ability to replicate the sign by 'secret arts' (belahateihem) gives Pharaoh grounds for dismissal, though the replication is surface-level, not equal.
12. Aaron's staff swallows the Egyptian staffs — the contest is not merely matched but won. Superior power is demonstrated through consumption. The verb bala ('swallowed') is the same verb used when the earth swallows Korah (Numbers 16:32). God's instruments consume rivals.
13. 'Pharaoh's heart was hardened' (vayyechezaq lev Par'oh) — the first occurrence of the hardening formula in the plague narrative. The verb chazaq means 'was strengthened, became firm.' His heart locks into resistance.

14. God identifies Pharaoh's heart as kaved ('heavy, stubborn') — the same root as Moses's 'heavy mouth' (4:10). Both the prophet and the tyrant have something 'heavy,' but God works through the prophet's heaviness while judging the tyrant's.
15. Moses is to intercept Pharaoh at the Nile in the morning — possibly during a ritual visit. The confrontation happens at Egypt's sacred river, turning worship space into judgment space.
16. The demand 'Let My people go so they may serve Me' (shallach et-ammi vey'a'avduni) uses the same verb for 'serve' (avad) that describes Israel's slavery. The contest is about who Israel will serve — Pharaoh or God.
17. 'By this you shall know that I am the LORD' — the knowledge formula accompanies the first plague. Each plague is designed to teach, not merely to punish. The Nile, Egypt's lifeline and object of worship, is the first target.
18. The death of the fish and the stinking of the river reverse the Nile's life-giving function. Egypt's source of sustenance becomes a source of death and repulsion.
19. The plague extends beyond the Nile to every water source in Egypt — rivers, canals, pools, even water stored in vessels. The judgment is comprehensive, leaving no workaround.
20. Moses and Aaron obey, and the Nile turns to blood. The act is performed 'in the sight of Pharaoh' — the sign is public and undeniable. The Nile, worshipped as the god Hapi, bleeds.
21. The consequences are immediate: dead fish, unbearable stench, undrinkable water. Egypt's prosperity, built on the Nile, is poisoned at its source.
22. The magicians replicate the sign — a pyrrhic victory, since more blood-water is the last thing Egypt needs. Their success gives Pharaoh an excuse to resist, and his heart 'remains hard' (vayyechezaq).
23. 'He did not take even this to heart' (velo-shat libbo gam-lazot) — Pharaoh retreats into his palace and refuses to internalize the sign. The verb shut ('set, place') with lev ('heart') means he did not allow the event to affect his inner disposition.
24. The people dig for filtered water — a desperate workaround that reveals the plague's severity. The populace suffers while Pharaoh remains unmoved in his palace.
25. Seven days — a complete cycle — pass after the plague. The duration signals divine patience: time for repentance before the next judgment.
26. The second plague sequence begins with the same formula: 'Let My people go so they may serve Me.' Each plague reissues the same demand, proving that God's patience has not replaced God's purpose.
27. Frogs as a plague challenge the Egyptian frog-goddess Heqet, associated with fertility and childbirth. The gods of Egypt are systematically confronted by the God of Israel.
28. The invasion is total — bedroom, bed, ovens, kneading bowls. The sacred (Heqet) becomes the revolting. No space in Egyptian life remains untouched.
29. The frogs come upon Pharaoh himself — the king is not insulated from the judgment he causes. His person bears the consequences of his refusal.

8

Summary: Three plagues unfold — frogs, gnats, and flies. The magicians replicate frogs but fail at gnats, conceding 'This is the finger of God.' God begins making a distinction (hiflah) between Egypt and Goshen. Pharaoh negotiates, concedes partially, then reneges each time.

What Makes This Remarkable: The magicians' confession etsba Elohim hi ('this is the finger of God,' v19) marks the moment Egypt's own religious experts recognize a power beyond their craft. The verb hiflah ('make a distinction,' v22) introduces a covenant principle that will intensify through the remaining plagues: belonging to God creates a different experiential reality. Pharaoh's pattern of concession-then-retraction reveals that his negotiations are strategic, never sincere.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew tsinnim (v17, sometimes rendered 'lice' or 'gnats') posed a translation challenge — the exact insect is uncertain. We chose 'gnats' following the consensus that these are small biting insects arising from dust, contrasting with the larger swarm (arov) that follows. The word arov (v21, typically 'flies' or 'swarms') has no modifier specifying the creature type; we rendered it 'swarms of flies' for clarity while noting the ambiguity.

Connections: The 'finger of God' (v19) reappears when God writes the tablets with His finger (31:18) and in Jesus's claim in Luke 11:20. The Goshen distinction anticipates the Passover distinction of chapter 12. Pharaoh's broken promises foreshadow the pattern that continues through chapters 9-10.

¹Then the LORD said to Moses, "Say to Aaron: Stretch out your hand with your staff over the rivers, the canals, and the pools, and bring up frogs over the land of Egypt." ²Aaron extended his hand over the waters of Egypt, and frogs swarmed up and blanketed the land. ³But the magicians did the same by their secret arts and brought up frogs on the land of Egypt. ⁴Then Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and said, "Plead with the LORD to remove the frogs from me and from my people, and I will let the people go to sacrifice to the LORD." ⁵Moses said to Pharaoh, "You may have the honor over me: set the time when I should pray for you and your servants and your people, to cut off the frogs from you and your houses, so that they remain only in the Nile." ⁶He said, "Tomorrow." Moses said, "It shall be as you say, so that you may know that there is no one like the LORD our God. ⁷The frogs will depart from you and your houses and from your servants and your people. They will remain only in the Nile." ⁸Moses and Aaron went out from Pharaoh, and Moses cried out to the LORD concerning the frogs He had brought upon Pharaoh. ⁹The LORD did as Moses asked, and the frogs died in the houses, in the courtyards, and in the fields. ¹⁰They gathered them into piles, and the land stank. ¹¹But when Pharaoh saw that there was relief, he hardened his heart and did not listen to them, just as the LORD had said. ¹²Then the LORD said to Moses, "Say to Aaron: Stretch out your staff and strike the dust of the ground, and it shall become gnats throughout all the land of Egypt." ¹³They did so. Aaron stretched out his hand with his staff and struck the dust of the ground, and there were gnats on man and beast. All the dust of the ground became gnats throughout the land of Egypt. ¹⁴The magicians tried to produce gnats by their secret arts, but they could not. The gnats were on man and beast. ¹⁵Then the magicians said to Pharaoh, "This is the finger of God." But Pharaoh's heart was hard, and he did not listen to them, just as the LORD had said. ¹⁶Then the LORD said to Moses, "Rise early in the morning and stand before Pharaoh as he goes out to the water, and say to him, 'Thus says the LORD: Let My people go, so that they may serve Me. ¹⁷For if you do not let My people go, I will send swarms of flies on you and on your servants and on your people and into your houses. The houses of the Egyptians shall be filled with swarms, and even the ground on which they stand. ¹⁸But on that day I will set apart the land of Goshen, where My people dwell, so that no swarms shall be there, in order that you may know that I, the LORD, am in the midst of the land. ¹⁹I will put a distinction between My people and your people. Tomorrow this sign shall come about.'" ²⁰The LORD did so. A grievous swarm of flies came into the house of Pharaoh and into the houses of his servants. Throughout all the land of Egypt the ground was ruined by the swarms. ²¹Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and said, "Go, sacrifice to your God within the land." ²²But Moses said, "It would not be right to do so, for we would be sacrificing to the LORD our God what is detestable to the Egyptians. If we sacrifice what is detestable to the Egyptians before their eyes, will they not stone us? ²³We must go a three-day journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to the LORD our God as He commands us." ²⁴Pharaoh said, "I will let you go to sacrifice to the LORD your God in the wilderness, but you must not go very far away. Pray for me." ²⁵Moses said, "I am going out from you, and I will pray to the LORD that the swarms depart from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people tomorrow. But Pharaoh must not deal deceitfully again by not letting the people go to sacrifice to the LORD." ²⁶So Moses went out from Pharaoh and prayed to the LORD. ²⁷The LORD did as Moses asked and removed the swarms from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people. Not one remained. ²⁸But Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also and did not let the people go.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The frog plague begins with the same commission structure: God commands, Moses relays, Aaron acts. The frogs emerge from the Nile — the same river that was already struck with blood. Egypt's sacred waterway produces one plague after another.
2. The frogs 'covered the land' — totality is the pattern of each plague. God's judgments are not partial or localized (except for Goshen); they saturate Egyptian life.
3. The magicians replicate the plague — again adding to the problem rather than solving it. Their ability to produce frogs does nothing to remove them. Imitation is not mastery.

4. Pharaoh's request is the first crack in his defiance: he asks Moses to 'plead with the LORD' (ha'tiru el-YHWH). The king who asked 'Who is the LORD?' (5:2) now acknowledges that YHWH has power he cannot match. But the concession is temporary and strategic.
5. Moses offers Pharaoh the dignity of naming the time — a gesture that simultaneously demonstrates God's power: the plague can be lifted on any schedule, proving its divine rather than natural origin.
6. 'So that you may know that there is no one like the LORD our God' (lema'an teda ki-ein kaYHWH Eloheinu) — the knowledge formula again. Each sign teaches the same lesson from a different angle: YHWH is incomparable.
7. The specificity of the removal — frogs departing from all locations except the Nile — shows that divine power is precise, not merely overwhelming. God controls the scope of both judgment and relief.
8. Moses 'cried out' (vayyits'aq) to the LORD — the same verb used for Israel's cry under slavery (2:23). The prophet who carries Israel's case to Pharaoh also carries Pharaoh's case to God. Intercession flows in both directions.
9. God fulfills Moses's prayer exactly, demonstrating that prophetic intercession is effective — but the response depends on God's faithfulness, not human technique.
10. The heaped dead frogs and the stinking land create a vivid image of judgment's aftermath. Relief from the plague produces its own unpleasantness — a reminder that the damage of rebellion is not instantly undone.
11. 'When Pharaoh saw relief, he hardened his heart' (vayyar Par'oh ki hayetah harevachah vehakhbed et-libbo) — the pattern is clinically precise. The moment pressure lifts, Pharaoh reneges. Crisis produces concessions; relief produces regression. The verb hakhbed ('made heavy') is the same root as Moses's 'heavy mouth.'
12. The third plague — gnats (kinnim) — comes without warning. No demand is issued to Pharaoh; no opportunity for compliance is given. The escalation introduces unannounced judgment.
13. 'All the dust of the ground became gnats' — the plague targets the very soil of Egypt. The adamah ('ground') that was the basis of Egypt's agricultural wealth is transformed into an agent of torment. Creation itself turns against the oppressor.
14. For the first time, the magicians fail. They 'could not' (lo yakhlu) replicate the sign. Their power has reached its limit — the contest is over. Egyptian magic cannot match divine authority beyond a certain threshold.
15. 'The finger of God' (etsba Elohim) — the magicians themselves recognize divine power. Their confession should persuade Pharaoh, but it does not. When even the court's own experts declare God's presence, Pharaoh's stubbornness becomes willful blindness.
16. The fourth plague introduces a new element: divine distinction between Egypt and Israel. God's judgments are now discriminating — covenant people are protected while the surrounding population bears the consequences.
17. Swarms (arov) — the exact species is debated (flies, beetles, mixed swarms), but the effect is devastating. The infestation enters houses and covers the ground, making daily life impossible.
18. 'I will set apart the land of Goshen' (vehifleti... et-erets Goshen) — the verb palah ('distinguish, set apart') is the theological key. God's judgment is not indiscriminate; it recognizes covenant relationship. 'That you may know that I, the LORD, am in the midst of the land' — God's presence among His people creates a zone of protection within the geography of judgment.
19. 'I will put a distinction between My people and your people' (vesanti pedut bein ammi uvein ammekha) — the word pedut ('redemption, ransom, distinction') suggests that covenant belonging is itself a form of redemption. Belonging to God is what distinguishes and protects.
20. The swarm comes exactly as announced — grievous and comprehensive. The ground itself is 'ruined' (tishshachet, from shachat, 'to corrupt/destroy'), using the same verb as the pre-flood corruption (Genesis 6:11-12).
21. Pharaoh's first compromise: 'sacrifice within the land.' He concedes worship but restricts location, trying to maintain control over what he cannot prevent. Each negotiation reveals the limits of his willingness.
22. Moses's refusal is practical and theological: Egyptian taboos would provoke violence if Israel sacrificed animals sacred to Egypt. The worship of YHWH cannot be conducted on Pharaoh's terms.
23. 'As He commands us' — the final authority on worship belongs to God, not to Pharaoh. Moses refuses to let the oppressor define the conditions of covenant obedience.
24. Pharaoh makes a second compromise: go, but not far. He adds 'pray for me' (ha'tiru ba'adi) — simultaneously yielding and grasping, admitting God's power while trying to limit its implications.
25. Moses warns against deceit (lo yosef Par'oh hatel) — he has already experienced Pharaoh's pattern of crisis-concession followed by relief-regression. The warning is based on experience, not suspicion.
26. Moses prays — the act of intercession is reported simply, without dramatic detail. Effective prayer does not require performance, only faithfulness.
27. God removes the swarms completely: 'not one remained.' Divine relief is as thorough as divine judgment.

28. The pattern completes itself: Pharaoh hardens his heart 'this time also' (gam bappa'am hazzot). The phrase tracks the accumulation of refusals — each one making the next more predictable and more culpable.

9

Summary: *Three more plagues strike Egypt — livestock pestilence, boils, and devastating hail. The distinction between Israel and Egypt intensifies. Pharaoh confesses 'The LORD is in the right' but hardens again once the hail stops.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb chazaq ('hold fast') in v2 describes Pharaoh's grip on Israel using the same root as the hardening of his heart — he grips the people the way his heart grips its stubbornness. Pharaoh's confession in v27 ('The LORD is righteous, and I and my people are wicked') is the most theologically accurate statement any antagonist makes in the entire plague narrative, yet it produces no lasting change. The hail plague introduces a new element: Egyptians who 'feared the word of the LORD' (v20) could save their servants and livestock — individual Egyptians begin responding to what Pharaoh refuses.*

Translation Friction: *The word dever ('pestilence,' v3) targeting livestock posed the question of scope — 'all the livestock of Egypt died' (v6) yet later plagues still affect Egyptian animals. We retained 'all' as the Hebrew has kol, noting in our translator notes that the severity is the point, with kol likely indicating totality within the category of livestock left in the field. The phrase kaved lev Par'oh ('Pharaoh's heart was heavy,' v7) we rendered with 'heavy' to track the kaved root consistently.*

Connections: *The pestilence on livestock targets animals associated with Egyptian deities (Hathor, Apis). Pharaoh's confession in v27 echoes the language of Deuteronomy 32:4. The hail as 'fire flashing' (v24) anticipates the theophany imagery at Sinai (19:16-18). God's purpose statement in v16 ('to show you My power') is cited by Paul in Romans 9:17.*

¹Then the LORD said to Moses, "Go in to Pharaoh and say to him, 'Thus says the LORD, the God of the Hebrews: Let My people go, so that they may serve Me. ²For if you refuse to let them go and still hold them, ³the hand of the LORD will fall on your livestock in the field — on the horses, the donkeys, the camels, the herds, and the flocks — with a very severe pestilence. ⁴But the LORD will make a distinction between the livestock of Israel and the livestock of Egypt, and nothing that belongs to the sons of Israel shall die.'" ⁵The LORD set an appointed time, saying, "Tomorrow the LORD will do this thing in the land." ⁶The LORD did this the next day, and all the livestock of Egypt died. But not one of the livestock of the sons of Israel died. ⁷Pharaoh sent and inquired, and not even one of the livestock of Israel had died. But Pharaoh's heart was heavy, and he did not let the people go. ⁸Then the LORD said to Moses and Aaron, "Take handfuls of soot from a kiln, and let Moses throw it toward the sky in Pharaoh's sight. ⁹It will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt, and it will produce boils breaking out in sores on man and beast throughout the land of Egypt." ¹⁰So they took soot from a kiln and stood before Pharaoh. Moses threw it toward the sky, and it produced boils breaking out in sores on man and beast. ¹¹The magicians were unable to appear before Moses on account of the boils, because the boils had broken out on the magicians just as on all the Egyptians. ¹²But the LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he did not listen to them, just as the LORD had spoken to Moses. ¹³Then the LORD said to Moses, "Rise early in the morning and stand before Pharaoh and say to him, 'Thus says the LORD, the God of the Hebrews: Let My people go, so that they may serve Me. ¹⁴For this time I will send all My plagues on your heart and on your servants and on your people, so that you may know that there is no one like Me in all the earth. ¹⁵For by now I could have stretched out My hand and struck you and your people with pestilence, and you would have been wiped from the earth. ¹⁶But for this very reason I have raised you up: to show you My power, so that My name may be proclaimed in all the earth. ¹⁷You are still exalting yourself against My people and will not let them go. ¹⁸Tomorrow at this time I will rain down the heaviest hail that has ever fallen on Egypt from the day it was founded until now. ¹⁹Now send and bring your livestock and everything you have in the field to safety. Every man and beast that is found in the field and is not brought inside will die when the hail falls on them.'" ²⁰Those among Pharaoh's servants who feared the word of the LORD hurried to bring their servants and their livestock inside. ²¹But those who did not take the word of the LORD to heart left their servants and their

livestock in the field. ²²Then the LORD said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand toward the sky, so that hail may fall on all the land of Egypt — on man and beast and every plant of the field in the land of Egypt." ²³Moses stretched out his staff toward the sky, and the LORD sent thunder and hail, and fire ran along the ground. The LORD rained hail on the land of Egypt. ²⁴There was hail, and fire flashing continually in the midst of the hail — very severe, such as had never been in all the land of Egypt since it became a nation. ²⁵The hail struck down everything in the field throughout the land of Egypt, both man and beast. The hail struck every plant of the field and shattered every tree of the field. ²⁶Only in the land of Goshen, where the sons of Israel lived, was there no hail. ²⁷Then Pharaoh sent and called Moses and Aaron and said to them, "This time I have sinned. The LORD is in the right, and I and my people are in the wrong. ²⁸Plead with the LORD, for there has been enough of God's thunder and hail. I will let you go, and you shall stay no longer." ²⁹Moses said to him, "As soon as I leave the city, I will spread out my hands to the LORD. The thunder will cease, and there will be no more hail, so that you may know that the earth belongs to the LORD. ³⁰But as for you and your servants, I know that you do not yet fear the LORD God." ³¹The flax and the barley were struck down, for the barley was in the ear and the flax was in bud. ³²But the wheat and the emmer were not struck down, for they ripen later. ³³Moses left Pharaoh and went out of the city and spread out his hands to the LORD. The thunder and the hail ceased, and rain no longer poured on the earth. ³⁴When Pharaoh saw that the rain and the hail and the thunder had ceased, he sinned again and hardened his heart — he and his servants. ³⁵Pharaoh's heart was hard, and he did not let the sons of Israel go, just as the LORD had spoken through Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fifth plague opens with the established formula, reinforcing the cumulative weight of repeated demand and refusal.
2. 'Still hold them' (od machaziq bahem) — the verb chazaq ('hold fast, grip') is from the same root as the hardening of Pharaoh's heart. He grips Israel the way his heart grips its stubbornness.
3. The pestilence (dever) strikes livestock — Egypt's economic foundation and the animals associated with multiple Egyptian deities (Hathor the cow goddess, Apis the bull god). The plague targets both wealth and worship.
4. Again God makes a 'distinction' (hiflah) between Israel and Egypt. The covenant principle from 8:18 is reinforced: belonging to God creates a different experiential reality.
5. The 'appointed time' (mo'ed) echoes the language of covenant meetings and festivals. God sets the schedule; Pharaoh merely watches it arrive.
6. 'All the livestock of Egypt died' — the word kol ('all') may indicate totality within the category of livestock left in the field, since later plagues still affect Egyptian animals (9:19-21). The severity is the point, not necessarily absolute elimination.
7. Pharaoh investigates and confirms the distinction — Israel's livestock survived. Even empirical evidence does not penetrate his hardened heart. The verb kaved ('was heavy') tracks the progressive weight of his resistance.
8. Kiln soot (piach kivsham) — the soot comes from the very kilns where enslaved Israelites made bricks. The instrument of oppression becomes the instrument of judgment. What Pharaoh forced Israel to produce now falls on Egypt as plague.
9. Boils (shechin) attack the body itself. The plagues have moved from the natural environment (water, frogs, gnats, flies, livestock) to the human body. Each stage brings judgment closer to Pharaoh's person.
10. The sign is performed in Pharaoh's presence — publicly, undeniably.
11. The magicians who tried to replicate earlier signs now cannot even stand upright. Their professional incompetence is made personal: the boils are on their own bodies. Egypt's religious specialists are disabled by the God they failed to match.
12. For the first time the narrator says 'the LORD hardened' (vaychazzeq YHWH) rather than 'Pharaoh's heart was hard.' The agency shifts explicitly to God — judicial hardening has now overtaken Pharaoh's self-hardening. The distinction between Pharaoh choosing stubbornness and God confirming it narrows.
13. The seventh plague sequence opens with the same formula but adds unprecedented theological commentary (vv.14-16). This is the most theologically explicit pre-plague speech in Exodus.
14. 'All My plagues on your heart' (kol-maggefotai el-libbeka) — the plagues are now directed at Pharaoh's heart, the organ of resistance. The external judgments aim at internal transformation — or, failing that, at public demonstration.
15. God reveals restraint: He could have destroyed Egypt already. The continued existence of Pharaoh and his people is an act of divine patience with a purpose.

16. 'For this very reason I have raised you up' (ki ba'avur zot he'emadtikha) — one of the most theologically significant statements in the entire Pentateuch. God has positioned Pharaoh on the stage of history to display divine power and proclaim the divine name to all the earth. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 9:17 as evidence of God's sovereign purpose in history.
17. 'Exalting yourself against My people' (mistolel be'ammi) — the verb solal means 'to raise up, to lift high.' Pharaoh has elevated himself into the place that belongs to God. The plagues systematically dismantle that false elevation.
18. The hail is historically superlative — the worst ever in Egypt's history. The specificity ('from the day it was founded until now') anchors the plague in Egyptian time-consciousness.
19. For the first time, God offers a warning with an escape clause: bring your livestock inside and you will survive. This is mercy within judgment — God gives the opportunity to respond to His word even to the oppressor's people.
20. 'Those among Pharaoh's servants who feared the word of the LORD' — a remarkable detail. Even within the Egyptian court, some have begun to take YHWH seriously. The plagues are producing their intended effect: knowledge of the LORD, even among enemies.
21. Those who ignore the warning suffer the consequences. The choice is presented starkly: heed God's word and live, or disregard it and die. This binary will recur at Passover.
22. Moses stretches out his hand — the human agent acts at God's command, and nature obeys.
23. Thunder (qolot, literally 'voices'), hail, and fire together — a combination that previews the Sinai theophany (19:16). The storm that judges Egypt foreshadows the storm that will give the Torah.
24. 'Fire flashing in the midst of the hail' — a meteorological impossibility under normal conditions (fire and ice together), signaling supernatural origin. The narrator notes that nothing like this had occurred since Egypt's founding.
25. The hail is agricultural devastation — plants and trees destroyed. Egypt's food supply is attacked alongside its population and livestock.
26. Goshen is again exempt. The distinction (hiflah) between covenant people and Egypt is maintained through every plague.
27. Pharaoh's confession — 'I have sinned... the LORD is righteous (tsaddiq)... I and my people are the wicked ones (reshaim)' — is the most theologically accurate statement any character has made about the plague narrative. It is also the most temporary.
28. 'Enough of God's thunder' — Pharaoh wants relief from symptoms without addressing the cause. His concession targets the immediate threat, not the underlying injustice.
29. Moses offers a test: when the storm ceases, will Pharaoh keep his word? The cessation itself will prove 'that the earth belongs to the LORD' (ki laYHWH ha'arets) — a claim of universal sovereignty, not merely local power.
30. 'You do not yet fear the LORD God' — Moses identifies Pharaoh's core failure. Despite accurate confession (v27), there is no genuine yir'at YHWH ('fear of the LORD'). Words without inner transformation produce temporary concessions, not lasting change.
31. The agricultural detail — barley and flax destroyed, wheat and emmer spared because they ripen later — is precise and accurate. It both grounds the narrative in real agriculture and sets the stage for the locust plague, which will consume the late-ripening crops.
32. The surviving crops become targets for the next plague. Each judgment leaves just enough for the next one to destroy. The progression is inexorable.
33. Moses intercedes, and God responds — the prophetic cycle of plague, negotiation, intercession, and relief continues.
34. 'He sinned again and hardened his heart' (vayyosef lachato vayyakhbed et-libbo) — the verb yasaf ('add, do again') counts the accumulation of guilt. Each regression is an additional sin, not merely a repetition.
35. The chapter closes with the fulfillment formula: everything happens 'just as the LORD had spoken through Moses.' God's word controls the narrative; Pharaoh's resistance cannot alter the outcome.

10

Summary: Locusts devour everything the hail spared, then a darkness so thick it can be felt covers Egypt for three days while Israel has light. Pharaoh's own servants urge him to relent. After the darkness, Pharaoh threatens Moses with death if he returns.

What Makes This Remarkable: The exodus is explicitly designed for intergenerational testimony: 'that you may recount in the hearing of your son and grandson' (v2). The verb sappir is the origin of the Passover Haggadah — the story is not merely record but ongoing encounter. The darkness plague (choshekh, v21) inverts creation itself: Genesis 1:3-4 separated light from darkness, but now darkness returns as judgment. Pharaoh's servants break ranks before he does (v7), exposing the isolation of tyranny.

Translation Friction: The phrase choshekh afeilah ('thick darkness,' v22) we rendered as 'darkness that could be felt,' preserving the tactile quality the Hebrew seems to intend. The root anah in le'anot mipanai ('to humble yourself before Me,' v3) is the same root that describes Israel's affliction under Egypt — we noted this bitter wordplay in our translator notes. The phrase 'How long will you refuse to humble yourself?' names Pharaoh's core sin: the oppressor who humiliated a nation will not humble himself before God.

Connections: The darkness reverses Genesis 1:3-4. The intergenerational telling (v2) grounds the Passover Haggadah tradition. Pharaoh's advisors breaking ranks (v7) parallels Nebuchadnezzar's advisors in Daniel 2:2-12. The three days of darkness anticipate the three days of preparation at Sinai (19:11).

1Then the LORD said to Moses, "Go in to Pharaoh, for I have hardened his heart and the heart of his servants, so that I may place these signs of Mine among them, 2and so that you may recount in the hearing of your son and grandson how I dealt severely with Egypt and what signs I placed among them — that you may know that I am the LORD." 3So Moses and Aaron went in to Pharaoh and said to him, "Thus says the LORD, the God of the Hebrews: How long will you refuse to humble yourself before Me? Let My people go, so that they may serve Me. 4For if you refuse to let My people go, tomorrow I will bring locusts into your territory. 5They shall cover the surface of the ground so that no one will be able to see the ground. They shall eat what remains to you after the hail, and they shall eat every tree of yours that grows in the field. 6They shall fill your houses and the houses of all your servants and the houses of all the Egyptians — something that neither your fathers nor your grandfathers have seen, from the day they came to be on the earth until this day." Then Moses turned and went out from Pharaoh. 7Pharaoh's servants said to him, "How long will this man be a snare to us? Let the men go so that they may serve the LORD their God. Do you not yet realize that Egypt is ruined?" 8So Moses and Aaron were brought back to Pharaoh, and he said to them, "Go, serve the LORD your God. But exactly who will be going?" 9Moses said, "We will go with our young and our old, with our sons and our daughters, with our flocks and our herds, for we must hold a feast to the LORD." 10Pharaoh said to them, "The LORD had better be with you if I ever let you and your little ones go! Clearly, you have evil in mind. 11No! Go now, you men, and serve the LORD, for that is what you are asking." And they were driven out from Pharaoh's presence. 12Then the LORD said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand over the land of Egypt for the locusts, so that they may come upon the land of Egypt and eat every plant in the land — all that the hail has left." 13So Moses stretched out his staff over the land of Egypt, and the LORD brought an east wind over the land all that day and all that night. When morning came, the east wind had brought the locusts. 14The locusts came up over all the land of Egypt and settled on the entire territory of Egypt — a very dense swarm. Never before had there been so many locusts, and never again would there be. 15They covered the surface of the whole land so that the land was darkened. They ate every plant in the land and every fruit of the trees that the hail had left. Not a green thing remained, neither tree nor plant of the field, throughout all the land of Egypt. 16Then Pharaoh hastily called Moses and Aaron and said, "I have sinned against the LORD your God and against you. 17Now please forgive my sin just this once, and plead with the LORD your God to remove this death from me." 18Moses went out from Pharaoh and pleaded with the LORD. 19The LORD turned a very strong west wind that picked up the locusts and drove them into the Sea of Reeds. Not a single locust remained in all the territory of Egypt. 20But the LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he did not let the sons of Israel go. 21Then the LORD said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand toward the sky so that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt — a darkness that can be felt." 22So Moses stretched out his hand toward the sky, and there was thick darkness throughout all the land of Egypt for three days. 23They could not see one another, and no one rose from his place for three days. But all the sons of Israel had light in their dwellings. 24Then Pharaoh called Moses and said, "Go, serve the LORD. Only your flocks and your herds shall remain behind. Even your little ones may go with you." 25But Moses said, "You yourself must give us sacrifices and burnt offerings so that we may sacrifice to the LORD our God. 26Our livestock also must go with us — not a hoof shall be left behind. For we must take from them to serve the LORD our God, and we ourselves do not know with what we must serve the LORD until we arrive there." 27But the LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he was not willing to let them go. 28Pharaoh said to him, "Get away from me! Be careful never to see my face again, for on the day you see my face you shall die." 29Moses said, "You have spoken rightly. I will not see your face again."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God explicitly claims the hardening as His own action: 'I have hardened' (ani hikhbadti). The purpose is stated: 'so that I may place these signs.' The plagues are divine pedagogy — each one a lesson placed (shiti, 'set, placed') before Pharaoh and Israel alike.
2. The exodus is designed for intergenerational testimony: 'that you may recount in the hearing of your son and grandson.' The story is not merely historical record but ongoing pedagogical event. Each generation is expected to retell what God did — and through telling, to encounter the God who acts.
3. 'How long will you refuse to humble yourself before Me?' (ad-matai me'anta le'anot mipanai) — God names Pharaoh's core sin: refusal to humble himself (le'anot, from anah). The same root describes Israel's affliction (inui) under Egyptian oppression. The oppressor who refuses to humble himself has humiliated an entire nation.
4. Locusts (arbeh) represent agricultural apocalypse — a plague that consumes what the hail spared. The progression is strategic: each plague targets what survived the previous one.
5. 'Cover the surface of the ground so that no one can see the ground' — the locusts create a living carpet. The verb kasah ('cover') will be used of the sea covering the Egyptian army (14:28). What covers the land now previews what will cover the oppressor later.
6. The plague exceeds ancestral memory: 'neither your fathers nor your grandfathers have seen.' The historical superlative underscores uniqueness — this is not a natural cycle but a divine act without precedent.
7. Pharaoh's own servants now advocate release — 'Do you not yet realize that Egypt is ruined?' (haterem teda ki avdah Mitsrayim). The verb yada ('know/realize') echoes the knowledge theme throughout: Egypt is being forced to 'know' the LORD, and even the court recognizes the catastrophe before the king does.
8. Pharaoh negotiates: 'Exactly who will be going?' (mi vami haholkhim). He attempts to limit the departure to adult males, retaining women, children, and livestock as hostages ensuring return.
9. Moses insists on totality: 'young and old, sons and daughters, flocks and herds.' Covenant worship involves the whole community — no one and nothing is left behind. The word chag ('feast') requires communal, comprehensive participation.
10. Pharaoh's response is sarcastic and threatening: 'The LORD had better be with you if I ever let your little ones go!' He reads the request as a cover for flight and accuses Moses of evil intent (ra'ah). Pharaoh attributes to Israel the very malice he himself practices.
11. 'Go now, you men' (lekhu-na haggevarim) — Pharaoh's counter-offer restricts worship to adult males, stripping it of familial and communal dimensions. This is worship on Pharaoh's terms, which is not worship at all. Moses and Aaron are 'driven out' (vayegaresh) — the verb used for expulsion, not departure.
12. God commands the eighth plague. The locusts will eat 'all that the hail has left' — the judgment is cumulative. Each plague builds on the destruction of the last.
13. The east wind (ruach qadim) carries the locusts — natural meteorology serves divine purpose. The same ruach ('wind/spirit') that hovered over creation waters (Genesis 1:2) now drives judgment across Egypt. An east wind will later part the sea (14:21).
14. 'Never before and never again' — the double superlative marks this as an unrepeatable event, a unique divine act within history.
15. Total coverage, total darkness of the land, total consumption of vegetation. The threefold totality mirrors the three-day darkness that follows. Egypt's agricultural wealth, already battered by hail, is now entirely consumed.
16. Pharaoh's second confession of sin (cf. 9:27): 'I have sinned against the LORD your God and against you.' The confession acknowledges both divine and human dimensions of his offense. But as before, the words are crisis-driven.
17. 'Remove this death from me' (veyaser me'alai raq et-hammavet hazzeh) — Pharaoh calls the locusts 'this death.' The economic destruction is existential; without crops, Egypt faces famine. His request uses the word raq ('only, just'), minimizing his plea to immediate relief rather than genuine repentance.
18. Moses intercedes without conditions or commentary. The prophet prays; God acts.
19. The LORD sends a west wind (ruach-yam, literally 'sea wind') that sweeps every locust into the Sea of Reeds (yam-suf). The Sea of Reeds receives the locusts here; it will receive the Egyptian army later. The geographic detail foreshadows the climax of the exodus.
20. 'The LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart' — by this point the hardening formula has become a refrain. The pattern is fixed: plague, confession, relief, re-hardening.
21. 'A darkness that can be felt' (choshekh va'yamesh choshekh) — the darkness is tangible, palpable. This is not merely the absence of light but a presence in itself. The language echoes the primordial darkness of Genesis 1:2 — Egypt is being un-created, returned to the formless void that preceded God's ordering work.
22. Three days of impenetrable darkness — Egypt's supreme deity, Ra the sun god, is rendered powerless. The plague directly confronts Egypt's highest theological claim: the sun god is sovereign. For three days, Ra does not rise. YHWH has eclipsed Egypt's god.

23. 'All the sons of Israel had light in their dwellings' — the Goshen distinction reaches its most vivid expression. Light and darkness coexist in the same land, divided by covenant. Israel's light is not natural but providential.
24. Pharaoh's final compromise: go and worship, leave your livestock. Each negotiation has conceded more: first location (8:21), then distance (8:24), then participants (10:11), now livestock. But each concession still falls short of total release.
25. Moses refuses any compromise: 'You yourself must give us sacrifices.' The demand escalates — not only will Israel take its own animals, but Pharaoh must contribute to the worship of YHWH. The oppressor will fund the worship of the God who judges him.
26. 'Not a hoof shall be left behind' (parsah lo tishsha'er) — absolute language that refuses every form of partial compliance. Moses's certainty about the non-negotiable nature of total departure contrasts with his confession of uncertainty about details: 'we do not know with what we must serve the LORD until we arrive there.'
27. The hardening formula recurs. God's judicial confirmation of Pharaoh's resistance continues to its conclusion.
28. 'On the day you see my face you shall die' — Pharaoh issues a death threat. The face-to-face confrontation has reached its limit. Pharaoh banishes Moses permanently from his presence.
29. 'You have spoken rightly' (ken dibbarta) — Moses accepts the finality without protest. He will not see Pharaoh's face again — but Pharaoh will see God's hand one more time, in the death of the firstborn.

11

Summary: God announces the final plague: at midnight He will go through Egypt, and every firstborn will die, from Pharaoh's heir to the slave woman's child. A great cry will rise from Egypt, but Israel will be untouched. Moses departs from Pharaoh in fierce anger.

What Makes This Remarkable: The measure-for-measure theology reaches its climax: the cry (tse'aqah gedolah) that will rise from Egypt uses the same word for Israel's cry under slavery (3:7, 9). The oppressor's grief mirrors the grief they inflicted. God Himself walks through Egypt at midnight ('I will go out,' ani yotse, v4) — this is direct divine action at the most liminal hour, not delegated judgment. The chapter also reveals that Moses had become 'very great' (gadol me'od) in Egypt, an ironic reversal of Pharaoh's attempt to crush Israel's leaders.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew bekhôr ('firstborn') carries weight that no single English word captures — it denotes inheritance rights, succession, family identity, and the father's primary claim. We retained 'firstborn' but relied on the translator notes to unpack the theological freight, especially the connection to God's declaration in 4:22 ('Israel is My firstborn'). The verb garesh yegaresh ('he will surely drive you out,' v1) uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis; we rendered this as 'drive you out completely.'

Connections: The firstborn-for-firstborn logic fulfills the warning of 4:22-23. The great cry echoes 3:7 and 9. The plundering of Egyptian gold and silver (v2) was promised in 3:21-22 and will supply the tabernacle in chapters 25-31. The phrase 'not a dog shall growl' (v7) expresses the totality of God's protective distinction.

1The LORD said to Moses, "One more plague I will bring upon Pharaoh and upon Egypt. After that he will let you go from here. When he lets you go, he will drive you out completely. 2Speak now in the hearing of the people, and let each man ask of his neighbor and each woman of her neighbor for articles of silver and articles of gold." 3The LORD caused the Egyptians to regard the people favorably. Moses himself had become a figure of great prominence throughout Egypt, respected by Pharaoh's officials and by the common people alike. 4Moses said, "Thus says the LORD: About midnight I will go out through the midst of Egypt, 5and every firstborn in the land of Egypt shall die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh who sits on his throne to the firstborn of the slave woman who is behind the handmill, and all the firstborn of the livestock. 6There shall be a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt, such as there has never been and such as there shall never be again. 7But against any of the sons of Israel not even a dog shall growl, against neither man nor beast, so that you may know that the LORD makes a distinction between Egypt and Israel. 8All these servants of yours shall come down to me and bow down to me, saying, 'Go out, you and all the people who follow you.' After that I will go out." And he went out from Pharaoh in fierce anger. 9The LORD said to Moses, "Pharaoh will not listen to you, so that My wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt." 10Moses and Aaron performed all these wonders before Pharaoh, and the LORD hardened Pharaoh's heart, and he

did not let the sons of Israel go out of his land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'One more plague' (nega echad od) — God numbers the remaining judgment: exactly one. The finality is deliberate. After this, Pharaoh will not merely release Israel; he will 'drive them out completely' (garesh yegaresh, infinitive absolute for emphasis). The oppressor will become the expeller.
2. The instruction to 'ask' (sha'al) of Egyptian neighbors for silver and gold is the same verb used when Israel 'asked' Pharaoh for permission to worship. What Pharaoh refused, the Egyptians will grant. The slave-wages of centuries will be collected in a single night.
3. 'The LORD gave the people favor' (vayyitten YHWH et-chen ha'am) — chen ('favor, grace') is divinely granted, not humanly earned. Even Moses's reputation is noted: 'very great' (gadol me'od) in Egypt's eyes. The deliverer whom Pharaoh dismissed has become the most significant figure in the land.
4. 'About midnight I will go out through the midst of Egypt' (kachatsi hallailah ani yotse betokh Mitsrayim) — God Himself walks through Egypt. The verb yotse ('go out') is first person: I will go out. This is not delegated to an angel or a plague mechanism; it is direct divine action at the most liminal hour.
5. The scope of the tenth plague is comprehensive: from the throne to the slave quarters, from royal heir to the captive's child. The firstborn represents the future of every household — and every future in Egypt is forfeit. The livestock firstborn are included, extending judgment to Egypt's economic and religious symbols.
6. 'A great cry' (tse'aqah gedolah) — the same word used for Israel's cry under slavery (3:7, 9). The oppressor will now cry with the same anguish they inflicted. The echo is measure-for-measure: the cry of the enslaved becomes the cry of the bereaved.
7. 'Not even a dog shall growl' (lo yecherats kelev leshono) — an idiom for absolute peace and safety. While Egypt screams in grief, Israel will experience undisturbed quiet. The contrast could not be sharper. The verb palah ('make a distinction') returns from 8:18 and 9:4 — God's judgments are discriminating, not indiscriminate.
8. Moses predicts that Pharaoh's own servants will come bowing to him, begging Israel to leave. The power dynamic that opened Exodus (Israel bowing to Pharaoh) will be completely reversed. Moses leaves 'in fierce anger' (bachari-af) — the only time Moses's personal anger at Pharaoh is recorded.
9. God reframes Pharaoh's stubbornness as serving divine purpose: 'so that My wonders may be multiplied.' Every refusal has extended the revelation. The plagues are not merely punitive but pedagogical — each one teaches Egypt and Israel who YHWH is.
10. The summary verse closes the plague cycle with the fulfillment formula. Moses and Aaron obeyed; God hardened; Pharaoh refused. The three actors have played their appointed roles. The stage is now set for the Passover.

12

Summary: *God institutes the Passover: each household slaughters a lamb at twilight, applies blood to the doorposts, and eats in haste with sandals on. At midnight the LORD strikes every Egyptian firstborn. Pharaoh finally drives Israel out, and they leave after 430 years, plundering Egypt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Passover resets Israel's calendar — 'this month shall be the beginning of months for you' (v2). Liberation redefines time itself. The word tamim ('without blemish,' v5) describing the lamb is the same word used for Noah's character (Genesis 6:9) and Abraham's covenant walk (Genesis 17:1) — physical wholeness in the offering symbolizes moral wholeness. The communal timing (bein ha'arbayim, 'between the evenings') means every household acts simultaneously; the Passover is a national act, not a private one.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase bein ha'arbayim ('at twilight,' v6) — literally 'between the evenings' — has been debated in Jewish tradition for centuries. We rendered it 'at twilight' as the most accessible reading. The word edah ('congregation,' v3) appears for the first time in Exodus, and we retained 'congregation' to mark the shift from family units to a constituted community. The blood on the doorposts functions as a sign (ot) for the LORD, not as a magical ward — our rendering preserves this theological distinction.*

Connections: *The Passover lamb anticipates Isaiah 53:7 and John 1:29. The blood on the doorposts connects to the covenant blood of 24:8. The 430 years fulfill Genesis 15:13-16. The command to retell the story (v26-27) grounds the Passover Haggadah tradition. Paul identifies Christ as 'our Passover lamb' in 1 Corinthians 5:7.*

¹The LORD said to Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt, ²"This month will mark the beginning of months for you. It will be the first month of your year. ³Speak to the whole congregation of Israel, saying: On the tenth day of this month, each man shall take a lamb for his father's household — a lamb for each household. ⁴If the household is too small for a lamb, he and his nearest neighbor shall take one according to the number of persons. According to what each can eat, you shall apportion the lamb. ⁵Your lamb shall be without blemish, a year-old male. You may take it from the sheep or from the goats. ⁶You shall keep it until the fourteenth day of this month, and the whole assembled congregation of Israel shall slaughter it at twilight. ⁷They shall take some of the blood and put it on the two doorposts and on the lintel of the houses in which they eat it. ⁸They shall eat the flesh that night, roasted over fire, with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. ⁹Do not eat any of it raw or boiled in water, but roasted over fire — its head with its legs and its inner parts. ¹⁰You shall not leave any of it until morning. Whatever remains until morning you shall burn with fire. ¹¹This is how you shall eat it: with your belt fastened, your sandals on your feet, and your staff in your hand. You shall eat it in haste. It is the LORD's Passover. ¹²I will pass through the land of Egypt that night, and I will strike down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, both man and beast. Against all the gods of Egypt I will execute judgments. I am the LORD. ¹³The blood shall be a sign for you on the houses where you live. When I see the blood, I will pass over you, and no plague shall fall upon you to destroy you when I strike the land of Egypt. ¹⁴This day shall be a memorial for you, and you shall celebrate it as a feast to the LORD. Throughout your generations you shall celebrate it as an eternal ordinance. ¹⁵Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread. On the first day you shall remove leaven from your houses. Whoever eats anything leavened from the first day to the seventh day — that person shall be cut off from Israel. ¹⁶On the first day there shall be a holy assembly, and on the seventh day a holy assembly. No work shall be done on those days, except what is needed for each person to eat — that alone may be prepared by you. ¹⁷You shall observe the Feast of Unleavened Bread, for on this very day I brought your hosts out of the land of Egypt. You shall observe this day throughout your generations as an eternal ordinance. ¹⁸In the first month, from the evening of the fourteenth day until the evening of the twenty-first day, you shall eat unleavened bread. ¹⁹For seven days no leaven shall be found in your houses. Whoever eats what is leavened — that person shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, whether sojourner or native of the land. ²⁰You shall eat nothing leavened. In all your dwellings you shall eat unleavened bread." ²¹Then Moses called all the elders of Israel and said to them, "Go and select lambs for your families, and slaughter the Passover lamb. ²²Take a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood that is in the basin, and touch the lintel and the two doorposts with the blood in the basin. None of you shall go out of the door of his house until morning. ²³For the LORD will pass through to strike the Egyptians, and when He sees the blood on the lintel and on the two doorposts, the LORD will pass over the door and will not allow the destroyer to enter your houses to strike you. ²⁴You shall observe this as an ordinance for you and your sons forever. ²⁵When you come to the land that the LORD will give you, as He has promised, you shall keep this service. ²⁶When your children say to you, 'What does this service mean to you?' ²⁷you shall say, 'It is the sacrifice of the LORD's Passover, for He passed over the houses of the sons of Israel in Egypt when He struck the Egyptians but delivered our households.'" And the people bowed their heads and worshipped. ²⁸The sons of Israel went and did so. Just as the LORD had commanded Moses and Aaron, so they did. ²⁹At midnight the LORD struck down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh who sat on his throne to the firstborn of the captive in the dungeon, and all the firstborn of the livestock. ³⁰Pharaoh rose in the night — he and all his servants and all the Egyptians — and there was a great cry in Egypt, for there was not a house where someone was not dead. ³¹He summoned Moses and Aaron by night and said, "Rise up, go out from among my people, both you and the sons of Israel! Go, serve the LORD, as you have said. ³²Take your flocks and your herds, as you have said, and go — and bless me also." ³³The Egyptians pressed the people hard, urging them to leave the land quickly, for they said, "We shall all be dead." ³⁴So the people took their dough before it was leavened, their kneading bowls wrapped in their cloaks on their shoulders. ³⁵The sons of Israel had done as Moses told them: they had asked the Egyptians for articles of silver and articles of gold and for clothing. ³⁶The LORD had given the people favor in the sight of the Egyptians, so that they let them have what they asked. Thus they plundered the Egyptians. ³⁷The sons of Israel journeyed from Rameses to Succoth, about six hundred thousand men on foot, besides women and children. ³⁸A mixed multitude also went up with them, along with very many flocks and herds of livestock. ³⁹They baked the dough that they had brought out of Egypt into unleavened cakes, for it

was not leavened — because they were driven out of Egypt and could not wait, and they had not prepared any provisions for themselves. ⁴⁰The time that the sons of Israel lived in Egypt was 430 years. ⁴¹At the end of 430 years, on that very day, all the hosts of the LORD went out from the land of Egypt. ⁴²It was a night of watching by the LORD, to bring them out of the land of Egypt. This same night is a night of watching kept to the LORD by all the sons of Israel throughout their generations. ⁴³The LORD said to Moses and Aaron, "This is the statute of the Passover: no foreigner shall eat of it, ⁴⁴but every slave purchased with silver, after you have circumcised him, may eat of it. ⁴⁵A temporary resident and a hired worker shall not eat of it. ⁴⁶It shall be eaten in one house. You shall not take any of the flesh outside the house, and you shall not break any of its bones. ⁴⁷The whole congregation of Israel shall keep it. ⁴⁸If a sojourner lives with you and wants to keep the Passover to the LORD, let all his males be circumcised, and then he may come near and keep it. He shall be as a native of the land. But no uncircumcised person shall eat of it. ⁴⁹There shall be one law for the native and for the sojourner who lives among you." ⁵⁰All the sons of Israel did so. Just as the LORD had commanded Moses and Aaron, so they did. ⁵¹On that very day the LORD brought the sons of Israel out of the land of Egypt by their hosts.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Passover instructions begin with a joint address to Moses and Aaron — the prophetic and priestly partners together receive the foundational ritual of Israel's identity.
2. God resets Israel's calendar: this month (Nisan/Aviv) becomes 'the beginning of months.' The exodus does not merely change Israel's location; it redefines time itself. History begins again at liberation.
3. 'The whole congregation of Israel' (kol-adat Yisra'el) — the word edah ('congregation, assembly') appears here for the first time in Exodus. The Passover is communal from its origin: no individual observance, only household and congregational participation.
4. The provision for shared households ensures that no one is excluded by poverty or family size. The Passover lamb must be consumed entirely — waste is prohibited, and sufficiency is calculated per person (lefi okhlo, 'according to what each can eat').
5. 'Without blemish' (tamim) — the same word used for Noah's character (Genesis 6:9) and Abraham's walk before God (Genesis 17:1). The sacrificial animal must have the integrity that the covenant demands of persons. Physical wholeness in the offering symbolizes moral wholeness in the worshiper.
6. 'The whole assembled congregation shall slaughter it at twilight' (bein ha'arbayim) — literally 'between the evenings,' a phrase debated in Jewish tradition (either between noon and sunset, or between sunset and dark). The communal timing means every household in Israel acts simultaneously. The Passover is a national act, not a private one.
7. Blood on the doorposts and lintel marks the household as belonging to God. The blood is not hidden inside but displayed publicly — a visible covenant sign that declares allegiance and receives protection. The doorframe becomes the boundary between judgment and safety.
8. Three elements define the Passover meal: roasted lamb (the sacrifice), unleavened bread (matzot, the bread of haste), and bitter herbs (merorim, the taste of slavery). Each element carries embodied memory — the meal is not merely eaten but experienced as a re-entry into the exodus.
9. The prohibition against raw or boiled preparation insists on roasting over fire. Fire is the element of theophany (burning bush, pillar of fire, Sinai) and of sacrifice (olah). The lamb is prepared the way offerings are prepared — wholly given to fire.
10. Nothing may remain until morning — the sacrifice must be consumed completely or burned. Leftovers would become common food, losing their sacred status. The urgency of the meal reflects the urgency of the departure.
11. The posture of eating — belt fastened, sandals on, staff in hand — is the posture of departure. The meal is eaten standing and ready, not reclined in leisure. 'It is the LORD's Passover' (pesach hu laYHWH) — the name pesach is formally introduced here.
12. God Himself passes through Egypt: 'I will pass through... I will strike... I will execute judgments.' Three first-person declarations. The tenth plague is not delegated — it is direct divine action. 'Against all the gods of Egypt' (uvkhol-elohei Mitsrayim) reveals the theological dimension: the plagues are a systematic dismantling of Egypt's entire divine order.
13. 'When I see the blood, I will pass over you' (ura'iti et-haddam ufasachti aleikhem) — the verb pasach gives the festival its name. Its meaning is debated: 'pass over' (skip), 'protect' (hover over and shield), or 'have compassion.' All three meanings converge: God sees the blood, protects the household, and passes over in judgment. The blood does not inform God of who lives there — He already knows. It functions as a covenant sign, marking the household as His.
14. 'A memorial' (zikkaron) — the Passover is designed for remembrance across generations. The word zikkaron carries active force: not merely recalling the past but making it present. Each generation that observes the Passover enters the exodus anew.
15. Leaven (chamets) represents the old life — Egypt's bread, Egypt's culture, Egypt's slavery. Removing leaven from the house is a ritual enactment of leaving Egypt behind. The penalty for eating leavened bread during the festival is severe: 'cut off from Israel' (nikhretah), the most serious communal

sanction.

16. 'Holy assembly' (miqra qodesh) — the word miqra means 'a calling, a convocation.' It is not merely an assembly but a summoned gathering — God calls His people together. The frame of the festival (first and seventh days) is sacred rest, mirroring the creation pattern of work and sabbath.
17. 'On this very day' (be'etsem hayyom hazzeh) — the same phrase used for Noah entering the ark (Genesis 7:13) and Abraham's circumcision (Genesis 17:23, 26). It marks events of absolute, calendared precision — this day, not approximately.
18. The dates are precise: evening of the fourteenth to evening of the twenty-first. Seven full days of unleavened bread. The precision reflects the conviction that sacred time is measured, not vague.
19. The prohibition extends to 'sojourner or native' — universally binding within the community. The word ger ('sojourner') includes non-Israelites who have joined the community. Covenant boundaries are permeable to those who enter, but the requirements are non-negotiable for all who belong.
20. The instruction closes with a restatement: eat nothing leavened, eat unleavened bread in all dwellings. The repetition is characteristic of legal instruction in the Torah — ensuring no ambiguity remains.
21. Moses transmits the divine instructions to the elders, using the practical verb mashakh ('draw out, select') for choosing the lambs. The transition from divine speech to human action begins here.
22. Hyssop (ezov) is a small plant used for sprinkling — humble vegetation applied to the loftiest purpose. It will reappear in Levitical purification rites (Leviticus 14:4, 6) and in David's prayer of repentance (Psalm 51:7). The blood applied by hyssop marks the threshold between death and life.
23. 'The LORD will pass over the door' (ufasach YHWH al-happetach) — the verb pasach is now applied to God's protective action at each doorway. 'The destroyer' (hammashchit) appears as a distinct agent of judgment — whether an angel or a personification of the plague force, the text distinguishes this figure from God Himself, who controls and limits the destruction.
24. 'Forever' (ad-olam) — the Passover is not a one-time emergency measure but a permanent institution. The word olam stretches the observance beyond any visible horizon. What began in a single night of terror becomes Israel's defining annual act.
25. The instructions anticipate settlement in the land — the Passover will be kept not only in Egypt's shadow but in the promised land itself. Covenant memory travels with the people into their future.
26. 'When your children say to you, What does this service mean?' — the liturgical question is built into the institution. The Passover is designed to provoke inquiry from the next generation. Every child who asks 'Why?' receives the exodus narrative as answer. This is theology transmitted through curiosity, not coercion.
27. The answer links three acts: sacrifice, passing over, and deliverance. The people respond with worship — 'bowed their heads and worshipped' (vayyiqqdu vayyishtachavu). Faith precedes the event: they worship before the firstborn die, before the blood is tested, before deliverance comes.
28. The obedience formula: 'just as the LORD had commanded... so they did.' Israel's first corporate act of covenant obedience since entering Egypt. After centuries of slavery, they act as a free people obeying their God.
29. 'At midnight' (bachatsi hallailah) — the hour God promised in 11:4. The blow falls with clockwork precision. From the throne to the dungeon, every household is struck. The comprehensiveness fulfills the announcement exactly.
30. 'There was not a house where someone was not dead' (ki-ein bayit asher ein-sham met) — the universality of the judgment is stated in the starkest possible terms. Pharaoh's house, the servant's house, the prisoner's house — all are bereaved. The 'great cry' (tse'aqah gedolah) echoes Israel's own cry under slavery (2:23; 3:7).
31. Pharaoh summons Moses and Aaron 'by night' (lailah) — the king who said 'I will not let Israel go' (5:2) and 'Get away from me' (10:28) now begs them to leave. Every condition he previously imposed is abandoned: go, serve, take everything.
32. 'Bless me also' (uverakhtem gam-oti) — Pharaoh, who asked 'Who is the LORD?' (5:2), now asks Moses for a blessing from that same LORD. The reversal is complete. The one who refused to acknowledge God now seeks God's favor through the very people he enslaved.
33. The Egyptians are desperate: 'We shall all be dead' (kullanu metim). The fear of total annihilation drives them to expel Israel urgently. What Pharaoh would not do willingly, the Egyptian people now do in terror.
34. Unleavened dough carried on shoulders — the bread that had no time to rise becomes the central symbol of the festival. Hasty departure is memorialized in the food itself. The people leave as they ate: in haste, carrying what they have, ready for the road.
35. The 'asking' (sha'al) from the Egyptians fulfills the promise of 3:21-22. Israel does not steal; they ask, and the Egyptians give willingly — driven by fear, but also by the divinely granted chen ('favor') mentioned in 11:3.
36. 'They plundered the Egyptians' (vayenatslu et-Mitsrayim) — the verb natsal means to strip, to plunder, to despoil. The same word used for God 'delivering' Israel (3:8; 6:6) is now used for Israel 'stripping' Egypt. Deliverance and despoilment share a verb — what was taken from Israel in labor is now reclaimed in departure.
37. 'About six hundred thousand men on foot' (keshesh-me'ot elef ragli) — this number has been extensively debated. The word eleph can mean 'thousand' or 'clan/military unit.' If read as 'thousand,' the total population exceeds two million; if read as 'clan,' the number is considerably smaller. The text records the tradition without resolving the question.

38. 'A mixed multitude' (erev rav) — non-Israelites who joined the exodus. The departure is not ethnically exclusive; others attached themselves to Israel's liberation. This group will later cause problems (Numbers 11:4), but their inclusion here reflects the gravitational pull of God's redemptive act.
39. The unleavened cakes are explained by narrative circumstance: they were driven out and could not wait. The ritual institution (vv.15-20) is grounded in historical reality — the bread of haste was not a theological invention but a lived necessity that became a sacrament.
40. '430 years' — the precise duration of the sojourn, fulfilling the prophecy of 400 years given to Abraham in Genesis 15:13 (the 30-year difference reflects different starting points for the count). The narrator anchors the exodus in measurable, historical time.
41. 'On that very day' (be'etsem hayyom hazzeh) — the phrase of calendared precision returns. The 430 years end on a specific day, not approximately. 'All the hosts of the LORD' (kol-tsiv'ot YHWH) — Israel is again called God's army, departing Egypt as a military force under divine command.
42. 'A night of watching' (leil shimmurim) — the word shimmurim (from shamar, 'to watch, guard, keep') is used in an unusual intensive plural. This night is doubly watched: God watched over Israel to bring them out, and Israel watches this night in commemoration across all generations. The watching is mutual — God guards; Israel remembers.
43. Passover regulations resume, now addressing membership: who may eat and who may not. The festival creates community boundaries — it is not open to everyone indiscriminately but requires covenant belonging.
44. A purchased slave, once circumcised, may eat — the covenant sign of circumcision grants access to the covenant meal. Social status (slave) does not exclude; covenant status (circumcised) includes.
45. Temporary residents (toshav) and hired workers (sakhir) are excluded — those with no permanent covenant commitment cannot share the covenant meal. The Passover requires belonging, not mere proximity.
46. 'You shall not break any of its bones' (ve'etsem lo tishberu-vo) — the intact skeleton preserves the wholeness of the sacrifice. John 19:36 will cite this verse in connection with Jesus's crucifixion, where the soldiers do not break his legs. The unbroken bones signify an offering given whole and complete.
47. 'The whole congregation of Israel shall keep it' — the Passover is mandatory for the entire community. No opt-out is provided. Corporate identity is forged in corporate observance.
48. The provision for the sojourner (ger) who wants to participate is remarkable: circumcision grants full access. 'He shall be as a native of the land' (vehayah ke'ezrach ha'arets) — the covenant community is not closed by ethnicity but opened by covenant commitment. Circumcision is the gate.
49. 'One law for the native and for the sojourner' (torah achat... la'ezrach velagger) — one of the most important legal principles in the Torah. The same standard applies to all who belong to the covenant community, regardless of origin. Equality before the law is established at the exodus.
50. The obedience formula repeats: 'just as the LORD commanded... so they did.' Bracketing the chapter (v28 and v50) with identical compliance statements frames the entire Passover night within perfect obedience.
51. 'The LORD brought the sons of Israel out' (hotsi YHWH et-benei Yisra'el) — the chapter's final sentence is the exodus itself, stated in a single clause. God is the subject; Israel is the object. Liberation is divine action, and the verb hotsi ('brought out') will become the defining verb of Israel's identity.

13

Summary: *God commands the consecration of every firstborn and the observance of unleavened bread as a perpetual memorial. Moses carries Joseph's bones as promised. God leads Israel by a pillar of cloud by day and fire by night, deliberately avoiding the Philistine road.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb qaddesh ('consecrate,' v2) transfers every firstborn from common status to divine ownership — they are living memorials of the tenth plague. The imperative zakhor ('remember,' v3) is not mere mental recall but active, liturgical remembrance, the same verb governing the Sabbath commandment (20:8). God's strategic routing away from the Philistine road (v17) reveals that liberation includes protection from premature conflict — 'lest the people change their minds when they see war.'*

Translation Friction: *We rendered qaddesh-li kol-bekhor as 'consecrate to Me every firstborn' rather than 'sanctify' or 'set apart,' because 'consecrate' best captures the transfer of ownership from human to divine use. The phrase beit avadim ('house of slavery,' v3) we treated as a fixed title for Egypt that recurs throughout the Torah. The month name Aviv ('spring') carries agricultural resonance — the exodus coincides with new grain — which the English 'Aviv' preserves better than a translation like 'spring month.'*

Connections: The consecration of the firstborn connects to Numbers 3:11-13, where Levites substitute for firstborn. Joseph's bones (v19) fulfill Genesis 50:25 and find their resting place in Joshua 24:32. The pillar of cloud and fire anticipates God's presence in the tabernacle (40:34-38) and Isaiah's vision of a canopy over Zion (Isaiah 4:5).

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"Consecrate to Me every firstborn. Whatever opens the womb among the sons of Israel, both of man and of beast — it is Mine." ³Moses said to the people, "Remember this day on which you came out of Egypt, out of the house of slavery, for by strength of hand the LORD brought you out from this place. No leavened bread shall be eaten. ⁴Today you are going out, in the month of Aviv. ⁵When the LORD brings you into the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, which He swore to your fathers to give you — a land flowing with milk and honey — you shall keep this service in this month. ⁶For seven days you are to eat bread made without yeast, and on the seventh day hold a festival to the LORD. ⁷Unleavened bread shall be eaten for seven days. No leavened bread shall be seen with you, and no leaven shall be seen with you in all your territory. ⁸You shall tell your son on that day, 'It is because of what the LORD did for me when I came out of Egypt.' ⁹It shall be as a sign on your hand and as a memorial between your eyes, so that the instruction of the LORD may be in your mouth, for with a strong hand the LORD brought you out of Egypt. ¹⁰You shall keep this statute at its appointed time from year to year. ¹¹"When the LORD brings you into the land of the Canaanites, as He swore to you and to your fathers, and gives it to you, ¹²you shall set apart to the LORD every firstborn that opens the womb. Every firstborn male of your livestock belongs to the LORD. ¹³Every firstborn donkey you shall redeem with a lamb, and if you do not redeem it, you shall break its neck. Every firstborn among your sons you shall redeem. ¹⁴When your son asks you in time to come, 'What does this mean?' you shall say to him, 'By strength of hand the LORD brought us out of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. ¹⁵When Pharaoh stubbornly refused to let us go, the LORD killed every firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of man and the firstborn of beast. Therefore I sacrifice to the LORD every male that first opens the womb, but every firstborn of my sons I redeem.' ¹⁶It shall be as a sign on your hand and as frontlets between your eyes, for by strength of hand the LORD brought us out of Egypt." ¹⁷When Pharaoh let the people go, God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines, although that was near. For God said, "The people might change their minds when they see war and return to Egypt." ¹⁸So God led the people around by the way of the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds. The sons of Israel went up out of the land of Egypt equipped for battle. ¹⁹Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for Joseph had made the sons of Israel solemnly swear, saying, "God will surely visit you, and you shall carry up my bones from here with you." ²⁰The y set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, on the edge of the wilderness. ²¹The LORD went before them by day in a pillar of cloud to lead them along the way, and by night in a pillar of fire to give them light, so that they could travel by day and by night. ²²The pillar of cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night did not depart from before the people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A new divine speech opens the firstborn consecration legislation, directly following the death of Egypt's firstborn in chapter 12.
2. 'Consecrate to Me every firstborn' (qaddesh-li kol-bekhor) — the verb qiddesh ('consecrate, set apart as holy') is from the root qadosh. Because God struck Egypt's firstborn to liberate Israel, every firstborn in Israel now belongs to God. The firstborn are living memorials of the tenth plague: their life was purchased by Egypt's loss.
3. 'Remember this day' (zakhor et-hayyom hazzeh) — the imperative zakhor ('remember') is not mere mental recall but active, liturgical remembrance. The same verb governs the Sabbath commandment (20:8). 'House of slavery' (beit avadim) becomes a fixed phrase for Egypt throughout the Torah.
4. The month of Aviv (later called Nisan) means 'spring' — the month of new grain. The exodus occurs at the season of agricultural renewal, linking national liberation to the natural cycle of new life.
5. The land promise is restated with the standard six-nation list, reminding Israel that the exodus is not an end but a means: liberation leads to land, and land is the space where covenant worship is practiced.
6. The seven-day unleavened bread observance is repeated from chapter 12. The repetition is characteristic of Torah legislation — critical instructions are stated, restated, and amplified to ensure no ambiguity.
7. The triple prohibition — no leavened bread eaten, no leavened bread seen, no leaven seen — escalates from consumption to visibility to possession. The removal of leaven is total.

8. 'You shall tell your son' (vehiggadta levinkha) — the verb higgid ('tell, declare, narrate') is the root of the word haggadah, the Passover retelling. The instruction embeds intergenerational narration into the festival's structure. Faith is transmitted through story.
9. 'A sign on your hand and a memorial between your eyes' — this phrase will later be interpreted literally as tefillin (phylacteries) in rabbinic tradition. In the Torah's own context, it expresses the principle that the exodus should govern both action (hand) and thought (between the eyes). The phrase 'instruction of the LORD' (torat YHWH) is the first use of the word torah in Exodus — here meaning 'teaching, instruction' in its broadest sense.
10. The statute has an 'appointed time' (mo'ed) — the same word used for the sacred calendar and for the tabernacle ('tent of meeting,' ohel mo'ed). Time, place, and practice are all governed by divine appointment.
11. The firstborn legislation is tied to entry into the land — the law takes full effect when Israel settles. Wilderness observance anticipates settled practice.
12. 'Set apart to the LORD' (veha'avarta laYHWH) — the verb avar in the hipil means 'cause to pass over,' creating a wordplay with pesach. What was 'passed over' in Egypt is now 'passed over to' God. Every firstborn that opens the womb (peter rechem) is claimed by the God who opened the way through Egypt.
13. Donkeys cannot be sacrificed (they are not clean animals), so they must be redeemed with a lamb — a substitute. If not redeemed, their neck is broken. Human firstborn are always redeemed, never sacrificed. The redemption requirement establishes the principle that human life belongs to God but is never taken as offering.
14. The second 'when your son asks' passage (cf. 12:26). The Passover creates perpetual curiosity — each generation asks why, and each generation receives the narrative of liberation as answer.
15. The answer links the firstborn consecration to Pharaoh's stubbornness and the tenth plague. The logic is explicit: because Pharaoh would not release God's firstborn (Israel), God struck Egypt's firstborn. Therefore Israel's firstborn are consecrated — set apart as living testimony to the cost of liberation.
16. The 'sign on your hand and frontlets between your eyes' phrase repeats from v9, creating a literary frame around the firstborn legislation. The physical body carries the exodus memory.
17. God chooses the long route — not the direct coastal road through Philistine territory (the Way of Horus, a major military highway). The reason is pastoral: God knows His people are not yet ready for war. Divine strategy accounts for human weakness.
18. 'The Sea of Reeds' (yam-suf) — traditionally rendered 'Red Sea,' but the Hebrew suf means 'reeds' or 'rushes.' The exact location is debated, but the name points to a marshy body of water, not necessarily the modern Red Sea. 'Equipped for battle' (chamushim) indicates military organization despite the avoidance of the direct military route.
19. Moses carries Joseph's bones — fulfilling the oath from Genesis 50:25. The dead patriarch travels with the living nation. Joseph, who entered Egypt as a slave and rose to power, now leaves as bones carried by the people he preserved. The continuity of covenant promise bridges the gap between Genesis and Exodus.
20. The itinerary moves from Rameses (12:37) to Succoth to Etham, tracking the departure route. 'The edge of the wilderness' (biqtseh hammidbar) marks the transition from settled Egyptian territory to the wilderness where God will lead, feed, and teach Israel.
21. The pillar of cloud by day and pillar of fire by night are the visible manifestation of God's guidance. Cloud and fire are theophany elements (cf. Sinai, 19:18; the tabernacle, 40:34-38). God does not merely command the route; He physically leads the march. The dual manifestation ensures continuous guidance — day and night, without interruption.
22. 'Did not depart' (lo yamish) — the constancy of God's presence is emphasized. The pillar is not intermittent but permanent. As long as Israel journeys, God's visible presence goes before them. This is the Shekinah concept in narrative form: God dwelling with and leading His people.

14

Summary: *God leads Israel into an apparent trap between the sea and the wilderness. Pharaoh pursues with his full army. God parts the sea, Israel crosses on dry ground, and the returning waters destroy the Egyptian army. Israel sees and believes.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb kavad ('gain glory') in v4 is the same root as Pharaoh's hardened (kaved) heart — God's glory is displayed through the destruction of the one whose heart was heavy with stubbornness. The wordplay is devastating and intentional. Moses's command 'Stand firm and see the salvation of the LORD' (v13) introduces yeshu'ah into the narrative vocabulary — the same root that gives its name to Joshua and Jesus. The final verse states that Israel 'believed in the LORD and in His servant Moses' — the sea-crossing produces faith.*

Translation Friction: We rendered ve'ikkavdah bePar'oh as 'I will gain glory through Pharaoh,' preserving the kavad root connection rather than using a different English word. The geographic names Pi-hahiroth, Migdol, and Baal-zephon are retained untranslated since they function as proper nouns, though Baal-zephon ('Lord of the North') may carry polemical overtones. The phrase ruach qadim azzah ('a strong east wind,' v21) we rendered literally, noting that natural mechanism and divine miracle are not opposed in the Hebrew worldview.

Connections: The sea-crossing is the defining salvation event, referenced in Psalms 66:6; 106:9-12; 136:13-15; Isaiah 43:16-17; and 1 Corinthians 10:1-2. The dry ground (yabbashah) echoes creation's dry ground in Genesis 1:9. Pharaoh's chariots sinking into the sea reverses his military might, fulfilling the judgment announced in 14:4.

¹Then the LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"Tell the sons of Israel to turn back and camp before Pi-hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before Baal-zephon. You shall camp opposite it, by the sea. ³Pharaoh will say of the sons of Israel, 'They are wandering aimlessly in the land; the wilderness has closed in on them.' ⁴I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and he will pursue them. And I will gain glory through Pharaoh and through all his army, and the Egyptians shall know that I am the LORD." And they did so. ⁵When the king of Egypt was told that the people had fled, the heart of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the people, and they said, "What have we done, that we let Israel go from serving us?" ⁶He made his chariot ready and took his army with him. ⁷He took six hundred chosen chariots and all the other chariots of Egypt, with officers over all of them. ⁸The LORD hardened the heart of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and he pursued the sons of Israel as the sons of Israel were going out defiantly. ⁹The Egyptians pursued them — all Pharaoh's horses and chariots, his horsemen and his army — and overtook them encamped by the sea, beside Pi-hahiroth, before Baal-zephon. ¹⁰As Pharaoh drew near, the sons of Israel lifted up their eyes, and there were the Egyptians marching after them. They were terrified, and the sons of Israel cried out to the LORD. ¹¹They said to Moses, "Is it because there are no graves in Egypt that you have taken us out to die in the wilderness? What have you done to us by bringing us out of Egypt? ¹²Is this not the very thing we said to you in Egypt: 'Leave us alone and let us serve the Egyptians'? For it would have been better for us to serve the Egyptians than to die in the wilderness." ¹³Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid. Stand firm and see the salvation of the LORD, which He will accomplish for you today. For the Egyptians whom you see today, you shall never see again. ¹⁴The LORD will fight for you, and you need only be still." ¹⁵The LORD said to Moses, "Why do you cry out to Me? Tell the sons of Israel to move forward. ¹⁶Lift up your staff and stretch out your hand over the sea and divide it, so that the sons of Israel may go through the sea on dry ground. ¹⁷And I — I will harden the hearts of the Egyptians so that they go in after them. And I will gain glory through Pharaoh and all his army, through his chariots and his horsemen. ¹⁸The Egyptians shall know that I am the LORD, when I have gained glory through Pharaoh, through his chariots and his horsemen." ¹⁹Then the angel of God who was going before the camp of Israel moved and went behind them. The pillar of cloud moved from before them and stood behind them, ²⁰coming between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel. It was cloud and darkness to the one, yet it gave light by night to the other. Neither came near the other all night. ²¹Then Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and the LORD drove the sea back by a strong east wind all night and made the sea into dry ground. The waters were divided. ²²The sons of Israel went through the sea on dry ground, with the waters as a wall to their right and to their left. ²³The Egyptians gave chase and followed them into the middle of the sea — every one of Pharaoh's horses, chariots, and cavalry. ²⁴In the morning watch the LORD looked down on the Egyptian army through the pillar of fire and cloud and threw the Egyptian army into confusion. ²⁵He clogged their chariot wheels so that they drove heavily. The Egyptians said, "Let us flee from before Israel, for the LORD is fighting for them against Egypt!" ²⁶Then the LORD said to Moses, "Stretch out your hand over the sea, so that the waters may come back over the Egyptians, over their chariots and their horsemen." ²⁷Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to its normal course when the morning appeared. The Egyptians fled into it, and the LORD swept the Egyptians into the midst of the sea. ²⁸The waters returned and covered the chariots and the horsemen — all the army of Pharaoh that had followed them into the sea. Not one of them remained. ²⁹But the sons of Israel walked on dry ground through the sea, with the waters as a wall to their right and to their left. ³⁰In this way the LORD rescued Israel that day from Egyptian power, and the Israelites saw Egyptian soldiers lying dead along the shore. ³¹Israel saw the great power that the

LORD used against the Egyptians, and the people feared the LORD, and they believed in the LORD and in His servant Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God instructs an apparent tactical blunder — turning back toward a position that appears trapped. The strategy is deliberately designed to lure Pharaoh into pursuit.
2. The geography pins Israel between the wilderness and the sea — Pi-hahiroth, Migdol, and Baal-zephon form a geographical trap. God positions His people in apparent vulnerability as the setup for the decisive demonstration of power.
3. God predicts Pharaoh's interpretation: 'They are wandering aimlessly' (nevukhim hem ba'arets). The word navakh means 'to be confused, to wander without direction.' Pharaoh reads the retreat as disorientation — exactly what God intends him to think.
4. 'I will gain glory through Pharaoh' (ve'ikkavdah bePar'oh) — the verb kavah ('to be heavy, to gain glory') is the same root as the hardening verb (kaved). God's kavod ('glory/weight') will be displayed through the destruction of the one whose heart was kaved ('heavy/hard'). The wordplay is devastating: Pharaoh's heaviness of heart leads to God's heaviness of glory.
5. 'What have we done?' (mah-zot asinu) — the Egyptians' regret is not moral (we should not have oppressed them) but economic (we have lost our workforce). They see Israel not as people but as labor — even the exodus is filtered through the oppressor's categories.
6. Pharaoh mobilizes personally: 'he made his chariot ready' (vayyesor et-rikhbo). The king who sent others now leads the pursuit himself. Pride drives him toward the very judgment he was warned about.
7. Six hundred chosen chariots plus 'all the other chariots' — Egypt's full military capability is committed. The force is overwhelming by any human calculation. Iron Age chariotry was the ancient world's most devastating weapon system.
8. 'Going out defiantly' (beyad ramah) — literally 'with a high hand.' Israel leaves Egypt not cowering but with raised hands — a posture of confidence and triumph. The phrase will later describe deliberate sin (Numbers 15:30), but here it describes legitimate assertion of freedom.
9. The Egyptian army overtakes Israel at the sea — the geographical trap is sprung. Humanly speaking, the situation is hopeless: the sea ahead, the army behind, the wilderness on either side.
10. Israel's terror is visceral and immediate. Their cry to the LORD (vayyits'aqu el-YHWH) uses the same covenant-distress verb from 2:23. Under threat, they instinctively turn to the God who heard them before.
11. The bitter sarcasm of the complaint — 'Is it because there are no graves in Egypt?' — is the first of many wilderness murmurings. The irony is sharp: Egypt, the land of elaborate tombs and mummification, certainly had no shortage of graves.
12. 'Let us serve the Egyptians' (na'avdah et-Mitsrayim) — the verb avad ('serve') is the same word used for both slavery and worship. Israel's complaint reveals the psychological depth of bondage: some part of them still prefers the familiar oppression to the terrifying unknown of freedom.
13. 'See the salvation of the LORD' (re'u et-yeshu'at YHWH) — the first use of yeshu'ah ('salvation') in Exodus. The word derives from the root y-sh-' meaning 'to save, to deliver, to make spacious.' Salvation in Hebrew is not abstract but experiential: God creates space where there was constriction, freedom where there was bondage.
14. 'The LORD will fight for you, and you need only be still' (YHWH yillichem lakhem ve'attem tacharishun) — one of the most compressed theological statements in the Torah. God fights; Israel rests. The verb charash ('be still, be silent') means to cease striving. The battle belongs to God, not to human effort.
15. 'Why do you cry out to Me? Tell them to move forward' (mah-tits'aq elai dabber el-benei Yisra'el veyissa'u) — God's response to prayer is not more prayer but action. There is a time to cry out and a time to march. Moses has prayed; now he must lead.
16. 'Divide it' (uveqa'ehu) — the verb baqa means 'to split, to cleave, to divide.' The same verb describes God splitting rocks for water (Psalm 78:15) and will describe the earth opening to swallow Korah (Numbers 16:31). God divides what no human power can divide.
17. God orchestrates the Egyptian pursuit into the divided sea — the hardening serves not only to sustain Pharaoh's rebellion but to draw him into the place of judgment. The sea becomes a courtroom.
18. 'The Egyptians shall know that I am the LORD' — the knowledge formula appears for the final time in the plague-exodus narrative. Egypt's education concludes at the bottom of the sea.
19. The angel of God and the pillar of cloud shift from leading position to rearguard — moving from in front of Israel to behind them, placing themselves between Israel and Egypt. The protector repositions to shield the vulnerable side.
20. The pillar is simultaneously darkness to Egypt and light to Israel — the same divine presence that illuminates the covenant people blinds the oppressor. God's presence is not uniform; it is experienced differently depending on one's relationship to Him.
21. 'The LORD drove the sea back by a strong east wind all night' (vayyolekh YHWH et-hayyam beruach qadim azzah kol-hallailah) — the mechanism is both natural (wind) and supernatural (divine command). The east wind (ruach qadim) is the same wind that brought the locusts (10:13). God uses the elements as instruments, but the directing will is His.

22. 'Waters as a wall to their right and to their left' (vehamayim lahem chomah miyeminam umissemolam) — the word chomah ('wall') describes a solid, structural barrier. The water does not merely part; it stands upright like masonry. Israel walks through an architectural corridor of suspended water.
23. The Egyptians follow into the divided sea — a decision that requires either supreme confidence or supreme blindness. They enter the space God opened for Israel, not recognizing that what saves Israel will judge Egypt.
24. 'The morning watch' (be'ashmoret haboqer) — the last watch of the night, approximately 2-6 AM. God looks down (vayyashqef) through the pillar — the verb suggests peering down from above, a divine surveillance that precedes judgment. The same verb describes God looking down on Sodom (Genesis 19:28).
25. 'The LORD is fighting for them against Egypt' (YHWH nilcham lahem beMitsrayim) — the Egyptians reach the theological conclusion that Israel's terror prevented them from seeing: the LORD fights. The oppressor confesses what the oppressed could not yet believe.
26. The command to close the sea mirrors the command to open it (v16). Moses stretches out his hand in both directions — the human agent acts; the divine power responds.
27. 'The sea returned to its normal course' (vayyashav hayyam lifnot boqer le'etano) — the word etan means 'permanent, enduring, its usual force.' The miracle is temporary; the sea returns to what it permanently is. God's intervention creates a window within normal reality, not a permanent alteration of it.
28. 'Not one of them remained' (lo nish'ar bahem ad-echad) — total destruction. The army that pursued Israel with six hundred chariots is annihilated. The completeness of the judgment matches the completeness of God's promise to deliver.
29. Verse 29 restates the miracle from Israel's perspective — a deliberate literary framing. Verses 22 and 29 bracket the Egyptian destruction with Israel's safe passage. The same event is simultaneously salvation and judgment, depending on which side you stand.
30. 'The LORD saved Israel that day' (vayyosha YHWH bayyom hahu et-Yisra'el) — the verb yasha ('save') gives its name to yeshu'ah (salvation) and to Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus. The root meaning is to make spacious, to deliver from constriction. The dead Egyptians on the shore are the visible proof of completed deliverance.
31. 'The people feared the LORD, and they believed in the LORD and in His servant Moses' (vayyir'u ha'am et-YHWH vayya'aminu baYHWH uveMosheh avdo) — the narrative climax. Fear, faith, and recognition converge. The word he'eminu ('believed') is from the same root as emunah ('faithfulness') and amen. Israel's faith at the sea is active trust grounded in witnessed power — not blind belief but covenantal response to demonstrated salvation.

15

Summary: *Moses and Israel sing the Song of the Sea celebrating God's victory. Miriam leads the women in response. At Marah, God makes bitter water sweet. The chapter closes with the promise 'I am the LORD who heals you' at Elim's twelve springs.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Song of the Sea (Shirat HaYam) is one of the oldest and longest sustained poems in the Hebrew Bible, with archaic grammatical forms suggesting very early composition. The opening ga'oh ga'ah ('rising, He has risen') uses the infinitive absolute for absolute supremacy. The divine warrior title 'YHWH is a warrior' (YHWH ish milchamah, v3) is stated with maximum compression. The word yeshu'ah, introduced narratively in 14:13, now enters Israel's liturgy (v2) — theology becomes song.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase azzi vezimrat Yah ('my strength and my song,' v2) contains a debated word — zimrat may derive from zamar ('to sing') or from a root meaning 'protection.' We rendered it 'my song,' following the dominant tradition. The similes of the enemy sinking — like a stone (v5), like lead (v10) — convey irreversible submersion, and we preserved both images rather than consolidating. Miriam's title hanevi'ah ('the prophetess,' v20) we retained without elaboration, as the Hebrew grants her the title without further explanation.*

Connections: *The Song is echoed in Judges 5 (Song of Deborah), Psalm 18, and Habakkuk 3. The sanctuary destination (v17) anticipates both Sinai and the tabernacle. The healing at Marah (v25-26) introduces the divine title YHWH Rof'ekha ('the LORD your healer'), which recurs in Psalm 103:3. The twelve springs at Elim (v27) correspond to the twelve tribes.*

¹Then Moses and the sons of Israel sang this song to the LORD. They said:

"I will sing to the LORD, for He has triumphed gloriously;
the horse and its rider He has hurled into the sea.

²The LORD is my strength and my song,
and He has become my salvation.
This is my God, and I will praise Him,
my father's God, and I will exalt Him.

³The LORD is a warrior;
the LORD is His name.

⁴Pharaoh's chariots and his army He cast into the sea,
and his chosen officers sank in the Sea of Reeds.

⁵The deep waters covered them;
they went down into the depths like a stone.

⁶Your right hand, O LORD, is majestic in power.
Your right hand, O LORD, shatters the enemy.

⁷In the greatness of Your majesty You overthrow those who rise against You.
You send out Your fury; it consumes them like stubble.

⁸At the blast of Your nostrils the waters piled up;
the floods stood upright like a heap;
the deep waters congealed in the heart of the sea.

⁹The enemy boasted, 'I will chase them down, I will catch them,
I will divide the plunder; my appetite will be gorged on them.
I will unsheathe my sword — my own hand will destroy them.'

¹⁰You blew with Your wind; the sea covered them.
They sank like lead in the mighty waters.

¹¹Who is like You among the gods, O LORD?
Who is like You — majestic in holiness,
awesome in splendor, working wonders?

¹²You stretched out Your right hand;
the earth swallowed them.

¹³In Your faithful love You have led the people whom You have redeemed.
In Your strength You have guided them to Your holy dwelling.

¹⁴The peoples have heard; they tremble.
Anguish has seized the inhabitants of Philistia.

¹⁵Now the chiefs of Edom are dismayed;
trembling seizes the leaders of Moab;
all the inhabitants of Canaan have melted away.

¹⁶Terror and dread fall upon them.

Because of the greatness of Your arm they are still as a stone,
until Your people pass over, O LORD,
until the people whom You have purchased pass over.

¹⁷You will bring them in and plant them on the mountain of Your inheritance,
the place, O LORD, You have made for Your dwelling,
the sanctuary, O Lord, that Your hands have established.

¹⁸The LORD will reign forever and ever." ¹⁹For the horses of Pharaoh went with his chariots and his horsemen into the sea, and the LORD brought the waters of the sea back over them, but the sons of Israel walked on dry ground through the midst of the sea. ²⁰Then Miriam the prophetess, the sister of Aaron, took a tambourine in her hand, and all the women went out after her with tambourines and dancing.

²¹Miriam sang to them:

"Sing to the LORD, for He has triumphed gloriously;
the horse and its rider He has hurled into the sea."

²²Then Moses led Israel onward from the Sea of Reeds, and they went out into the wilderness of Shur. They traveled three days in the wilderness and found no water. ²³When they came to Marah, they could not drink the water of Marah because it was bitter. Therefore it was named Marah. ²⁴The people grumbled against Moses, saying, "What shall we drink?" ²⁵He cried out to the LORD, and the LORD showed him a piece of wood. He threw it into the water, and the water became sweet. There the LORD made for them a statute and a rule, and there He tested them. ²⁶He said, "If you will diligently listen to the voice of the LORD your God and do what is right in His eyes, and give ear to His commandments and keep all His statutes, I will put none of the diseases on you that I put on the Egyptians, for I am the LORD, your healer." ²⁷Then they came to Elim, where there were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees, and they camped there by the water.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Song of the Sea (Shirat HaYam) is the longest sustained poem in the Pentateuch and one of the oldest pieces of Hebrew poetry in the Bible. Its archaic grammatical forms and vocabulary suggest very early composition. The opening verb *ashirah* ('I will sing') is cohortative — an expression of determined will, not mere description. 'He has triumphed gloriously' (*ga'oh ga'ah*) is an infinitive absolute construction: 'rising, He has risen' or 'exalting, He has exalted Himself.' The doubling conveys absolute supremacy.
2. 'My strength and my song' (*azzi vezimrat*) — the word *zimrat* may derive from *zamar* ('to sing, to prune, to trim'). The pairing of strength and song defines God's character in the exodus: power expressed through praise. 'He has become my salvation' (*vayehi-li lishu'ah*) — the word *yeshu'ah* from the sea-crossing narrative (14:13) is now incorporated into worship. Theology enters liturgy.
3. 'The LORD is a warrior' (YHWH *ish milchamah*) — literally 'YHWH is a man of war.' This is the divine warrior title, stated with maximum compression. 'The LORD is His name' (YHWH *shemo*) — identity is declared, not defended. The name carries its own authority.
4. The song names the specific agents of judgment: chariots, army, chosen officers. The verb *yara* ('cast, hurled') depicts forceful, violent action — God throws Egypt's military power into the sea like discarded objects.
5. 'They went down into the depths like a stone' (*yardu bimtsolot kemo-aven*) — the simile of a stone sinking captures the finality of the judgment. The same image recurs in *v10* (lead) and the two similes together (stone, lead) convey weight, sinking, irreversible submersion.
6. 'Your right hand, O LORD' (*yeminkha YHWH*) — the right hand is the hand of power, strength, and action. The parallelism is characteristic of Hebrew poetry: the first line states the right hand's majesty; the second line states its destructive effect on the enemy. The repetition of 'Your right hand, O LORD' creates an anaphoric pattern that drives the poem forward.
7. 'Consumes them like stubble' (*yokhlemo kaqash*) — fire imagery applied to God's fury (*charon*). The enemies of God burn like dry stalks — insubstantial before divine wrath. The image contrasts the burning bush (3:2), which was not consumed, with the enemies of God, who are.
8. 'At the blast of Your nostrils' (*uveruach appekha*) — the wind (*ruach*) that divided the sea is described anthropomorphically as the breath of God's nostrils. The same *ruach* that hovered over creation's waters (Genesis 1:2) now piles up the sea's waters. 'Congealed' (*qafe'u*) — the deep waters solidified, stood firm like walls. The verb is rare and vivid.

9. The enemy's boast is rendered in first-person: five verbs of intended violence (pursue, overtake, divide, draw, destroy). The cumulative effect captures the predator's confidence — a confidence the sea will swallow whole. The enemy never speaks again after this verse.
10. 'You blew with Your wind' (nashafta beruchakha) — God's breath is sufficient to undo the enemy's boast. One divine exhalation answers five human verbs of violence. 'They sank like lead' (tsalelu ka'oferet) — the second sinking simile (cf. v5, stone). Lead is denser than stone; the imagery intensifies.
11. 'Who is like You among the gods, O LORD?' (mi-khamokha ba'elim YHWH) — the rhetorical question is the theological climax of the song. The answer is obvious and overwhelming: no one. 'Majestic in holiness' (ne'dar baqqodesh) — the word ne'dar means 'majestic, glorious, awe-inspiring.' Holiness (qodesh) is the attribute that defines God's incomparability. This verse will become one of the most quoted liturgical lines in Jewish worship.
12. 'The earth swallowed them' (tivla'emo erets) — the verb bala ('swallow') is the same verb used when Aaron's staff swallowed the Egyptian staffs (7:12). The pattern of consumption runs through the narrative: what God's instruments swallow cannot be recovered.
13. 'In Your steadfast love You have led' (nachita vechasdekha) — chesed appears in the Song of the Sea for the first time. God's covenant love is not merely emotional but directional — it leads. 'Your holy dwelling' (neveh qodshekha) — the poem looks forward from the sea to the destination: God's holy dwelling, whether understood as Sinai, the promised land, or the future temple.
14. The song's horizon expands from the sea to the surrounding nations. The peoples (ammim) hear and tremble — the exodus radiates fear outward. Philistia, the nearest enemy, is seized with anguish (chil).
15. Edom, Moab, and Canaan — the three peoples Israel will encounter on the journey — are paralyzed by what God has done at the sea. The verbs intensify: 'dismayed' (nivhalu), 'trembling seizes' (achazemo ra'ad), 'melted away' (namogu). Fear progresses from alarm to paralysis to dissolution.
16. 'Until Your people pass over' (ad-ya'avor ammekha) — the verb avar ('pass over, cross') echoes the Passover (pesach) and the crossing of the sea. Israel is the people who pass through — through judgment, through water, through wilderness. 'The people whom You have purchased' (am-zu qanita) — the verb qanah means to acquire, purchase, create. God bought Israel at the cost of Egypt's judgment.
17. 'You will bring them in and plant them on the mountain of Your inheritance' (tevi'emo vetita'emo behar nachalatekha) — the verbs 'bring in' and 'plant' shift from the sea to the land. The exodus is not complete at the shore; it is complete when Israel is planted — rooted like a tree — in the place God has prepared. 'The sanctuary that Your hands have established' (miqqedash Adonai konenu yadekha) — the song concludes with the temple vision: God's own hands build the final dwelling.
18. 'The LORD will reign forever and ever' (YHWH yimlokh le'olam va'ed) — the song's final declaration is a statement of eternal sovereignty. After the narrative of plagues, the night of Passover, and the destruction at the sea, the conclusion is cosmic: YHWH reigns. The word olam stretches God's kingship beyond the horizon of time.
19. The narrator returns to prose, summarizing the sea event one final time. The repetition serves as a transition from song back to narrative.
20. 'Miriam the prophetess' (Miriam hanevi'ah) — the first woman in the Bible explicitly called a prophetess (nevi'ah). Her title is not honorary; it declares a recognized role. She leads the women's response with tambourine (tof) and dance (mecholat). Worship at the sea is gendered but shared — Moses leads one song, Miriam leads another.
21. Miriam's song reprises the opening verse of the Song of the Sea — the same words, now in the mouth of a woman leading the women. The repetition is not redundancy but antiphonal worship: one community, two voices, the same praise.
22. The transition from the sea to the wilderness is abrupt. Three days without water immediately follows the greatest miracle in Israel's history. The pattern of exodus life begins here: miracle, then testing; deliverance, then difficulty.
23. 'Marah' (marah) means 'bitter.' The naming of places by experience is characteristic of wilderness narrative — geography becomes theology. The people cannot drink the water that bears the name of their condition.
24. The first wilderness complaint follows immediately after the Song of the Sea. The distance between praise (v1) and grumbling (v24) measures the fragility of faith under pressure.
25. God provides a remedy: a piece of wood (ets) makes bitter water sweet. The same God who divided the sea now transforms a spring. The scale is different; the provider is the same. 'There He tested them' (sham nisahu) — the verb nasah ('to test') from Genesis 22:1 (the Aqedah) reappears. The wilderness is a testing ground.
26. The conditional promise — 'If you listen... I will put none of the diseases' — introduces the covenant-obedience framework that will dominate Exodus through Deuteronomy. 'I am the LORD, your healer' (ani YHWH rof'ekha) — a divine self-designation. The God who judges Egypt also heals Israel. The same power works in both directions.
27. Elim — twelve springs and seventy palms — provides rest and abundance. Twelve springs for twelve tribes; seventy palms echoing the seventy persons who entered Egypt (Genesis 46:27). The numbers are not accidental; they are provision fitted to identity.

16

Summary: *One month after the exodus, Israel grumbles about hunger in the wilderness of Sin. God provides quail in the evening and manna each morning, with a double portion on the sixth day for the Sabbath. Some disobey the gathering rules; the manna is preserved in a jar as a testimony.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The manna tests whether Israel will walk in God's torah ('instruction,' v4) before the Torah is formally given at Sinai — obedience precedes legislation. The Sabbath rhythm of six-and-one is built into the provision before it appears in the Decalogue. The people's complaint idealizes Egyptian slavery ('when we sat by the meat pots,' v3), revealing that freedom is uncomfortable and memory is selective. God responds to complaint not with rebuke but with bread from heaven.*

Translation Friction: *The word man hu ('what is it?' v15) — from which 'manna' may derive — is debated. We retained 'What is it?' as a question, which is how the Hebrew functions, though some scholars read man as an Egyptian loanword for a natural resin. The term torah in v4 ('My instruction') appears before Sinai; we chose 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture its pre-legal sense of divine teaching. The wilderness of Sin (v1) is unrelated to the English word 'sin' and we left it untranslated as a proper noun.*

Connections: *The manna is cited by Moses in Deuteronomy 8:3 ('man does not live by bread alone') and by Jesus in John 6:31-35. The Sabbath provision anticipates the fourth commandment (20:8-11). The jar of manna placed before the Testimony (v33-34) connects to the ark contents in Hebrews 9:4. The grumbling pattern (15:24, 16:2, 17:2) becomes structural in Numbers.*

¹They set out from Elim, and the whole congregation of the sons of Israel came to the wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after they had departed from the land of Egypt. ²The whole congregation of the sons of Israel grumbled against Moses and Aaron in the wilderness. ³The sons of Israel said to them, "If only we had died by the hand of the LORD in the land of Egypt, when we sat by the meat pots, when we ate bread to satisfaction! For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill this whole assembly with hunger." ⁴Then the LORD said to Moses, "I am about to rain bread from heaven for you, and the people shall go out and gather a day's portion each day, so that I may test them — whether they will walk according to My instruction or not. ⁵On the sixth day, when they prepare what they bring in, it shall be twice as much as they gather daily." ⁶So Moses and Aaron said to all the sons of Israel, "At evening you will know that it was the LORD who brought you out of the land of Egypt, ⁷and in the morning you will see the glory of the LORD, because He has heard your grumbling against the LORD. For what are we, that you grumble against us?" ⁸Moses said, "When the LORD gives you meat to eat in the evening and bread to satisfaction in the morning — because the LORD has heard your grumbling that you grumble against Him — what are we? Your grumbling is not against us but against the LORD." ⁹Moses said to Aaron, "Say to the whole congregation of the sons of Israel, 'Draw near before the LORD, for He has heard your grumbling.'" ¹⁰As Aaron spoke to the whole congregation of the sons of Israel, they looked toward the wilderness, and the glory of the LORD appeared in the cloud. ¹¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ¹²"I have heard the grumbling of the sons of Israel. Speak to them, saying, 'At twilight you shall eat meat, and in the morning you shall be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am the LORD your God.'" ¹³In the evening quail came up and covered the camp, and in the morning there was a layer of dew around the camp. ¹⁴When the layer of dew lifted, there on the surface of the wilderness was a fine, flaky substance, as fine as frost on the ground. ¹⁵When the sons of Israel saw it, they said to one another, "What is it?" — for they did not know what it was. Moses said to them, "It is the bread that the LORD has given you to eat. ¹⁶This is what the LORD has commanded: 'Each one is to gather as much as he needs. Take an omer per person, according to the number of persons each of you has in his tent.'" ¹⁷The sons of Israel did so. Some gathered more, some less. ¹⁸But when they measured it with an omer, the one who gathered much had nothing left over, and the one who gathered little had no lack. Each gathered according to what he could eat. ¹⁹Moses said to them, "Let no one leave any of it until morning." ²⁰But they did not listen to Moses. Some left part of it until morning, and it bred worms and stank. And Moses was angry with them. ²¹They gathered it morning by morning, each according to what he could eat, and when the sun grew hot, it melted. ²²On the sixth

day they gathered twice as much bread — two omers per person. All the leaders of the congregation came and told Moses. ²³ He said to them, "This is what the LORD has said: 'Tomorrow is a day of solemn rest, a holy Sabbath to the LORD. Bake what you want to bake and boil what you want to boil, and set aside all that is left over to keep until morning.'" ²⁴ They set it aside until morning, as Moses commanded, and it did not stink, and there were no worms in it. ²⁵ Moses said, "Eat it today, for today is a Sabbath to the LORD. Today you will not find it in the field. ²⁶ Six days you shall gather it, but on the seventh day, the Sabbath, there will be none." ²⁷ On the seventh day some of the people went out to gather, but they found none. ²⁸ The LORD said to Moses, "How long will you refuse to keep My commandments and My instructions? ²⁹ See, the LORD has given you the Sabbath; therefore on the sixth day He gives you bread for two days. Each of you stay where you are; let no one go out of his place on the seventh day." ³⁰ On the seventh day, the people refrained from work and rested. ³¹ The house of Israel called its name manna. It was like white coriander seed, and its taste was like wafers made with honey. ³² Moses said, "This is what the LORD has commanded: 'Fill an omer of it to be kept throughout your generations, so that they may see the bread with which I fed you in the wilderness when I brought you out of the land of Egypt.'" ³³ Moses said to Aaron, "Take a jar and put an omer of manna in it and place it before the LORD to be kept throughout your generations." ³⁴ Following the LORD's command to Moses, Aaron placed it in front of the Testimony for safekeeping. ³⁵ The sons of Israel ate the manna forty years, until they came to an inhabited land. They ate the manna until they came to the border of the land of Canaan. ³⁶ An omer is a tenth of an ephah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wilderness of Sin (not related to the English word 'sin') is located between Elim and Sinai. The precise date — fifteenth day of the second month — places this exactly one month after the exodus. Israel has been free for thirty days and is now hungry.
2. The second wilderness murmuring (cf. 15:24). The pattern of deliverance-then-complaint is becoming structural: God provides, Israel travels, difficulty arises, Israel complains, God provides again.
3. The complaint idealizes Egypt: 'meat pots' and 'bread to satisfaction.' Slavery is retroactively romanticized because freedom is currently uncomfortable. The accusation that Moses brought them out 'to kill this whole assembly with hunger' inverts the reality — God brought them out to give them life.
4. 'Rain bread from heaven' (mamtir lakhem lechem min-hashamayim) — God's response to complaint is not rebuke but provision. The bread from heaven will become a defining image of divine sustenance. The test (nasah) embedded in the provision is whether Israel will obey the gathering rules — daily trust, no hoarding.
5. The double portion on the sixth day anticipates the Sabbath before Sinai formally legislates it. The rhythm of six-and-one is built into the manna before it is built into the law.
6. 'You will know that it was the LORD who brought you out' — the knowledge formula returns, now directed at Israel rather than Egypt. Israel too must learn who YHWH is, and they learn through provision, not only through judgment.
7. 'The glory of the LORD' (kevod YHWH) — the first appearance of kavod in a theophany context in Exodus. God's weighty, visible presence appears in the cloud in response to Israel's grumbling. Kavod manifests not in the spectacular (as at Sinai) but in the everyday (feeding a hungry people).
8. Moses redirects the complaint: 'Your grumbling is not against us but against the LORD.' The people think they are arguing with human leaders; Moses reveals they are arguing with God. The prophetic role includes this uncomfortable truth-telling.
9. 'Draw near before the LORD' (qirvu lifnei YHWH) — the verb qarav ('draw near') will become the technical term for offering sacrifices (the root of qorban, 'offering'). Here it means approaching God's presence, which is about to become visible.
10. 'The glory of the LORD appeared in the cloud' (kevod YHWH nir'ah be'anan) — kavod becomes visible. The cloud that has been guiding them (13:21-22) now reveals the divine presence within it. The people see what they have been following.
11. A new divine speech introduces the specific provision: meat in the evening, bread in the morning.
12. 'Then you will know that I am the LORD your God' — provision is revelation. God feeds Israel not merely to sustain them but to teach them who He is. Every meal of manna is a theology lesson.
13. Quail (selav) arrive in the evening, covering the camp. These are migratory birds that cross the Sinai Peninsula and can be caught when exhausted. The natural mechanism does not diminish the divine timing.
14. The manna is described precisely: fine, flaky, frost-like. The physical description grounds the miracle in sensory reality — this is something you can see, touch, and taste.

15. 'What is it?' (man hu) — the name manna may derive from this question. Israel encounters something they have never seen before and name it by their bewilderment. The bread from heaven defies existing categories.
16. The omer-per-person rule establishes equality: each household receives according to need, not according to power or status. The distribution principle will be cited by Paul in 2 Corinthians 8:15.
17. Some gathered more, some less — human behavior varies even under divine instruction.
18. The miraculous equalization: regardless of how much each person gathered, the measure came out to exactly one omer per person. Surplus and deficit are both corrected by divine provision. This is not merely logistics but theology: God ensures sufficiency.
19. The prohibition against keeping until morning tests daily trust. Can Israel depend on God for tomorrow's bread, or must they hoard today's?
20. Disobedience produces rot: worms and stench. The manna that sustains when gathered in trust corrupts when hoarded in anxiety. The physical consequence teaches the spiritual lesson.
21. Daily gathering, daily dependence. The rhythm of morning collection and midday melting forces Israel into a pattern of reliance that cannot be circumvented by stockpiling.
22. The double portion on the sixth day arrives without special effort — God provides the Sabbath surplus automatically. The leaders report this anomaly to Moses, not yet understanding the pattern.
23. 'A holy Sabbath to the LORD' (shabbat qodesh laYHWH) — the Sabbath is introduced before Sinai, before the formal commandment. The manna teaches Sabbath-keeping through practice before Sinai teaches it through law. The word shabbaton ('solemn rest') intensifies shabbat.
24. Friday's manna does not rot — the exception proves the rule. What corrupted when hoarded on other nights is preserved when kept for Sabbath. God's provision conforms to God's calendar.
25. Moses declares the theological principle: the Sabbath belongs to the LORD. The day is not merely a human rest period but a divine institution. No manna will appear because God Himself rests from providing — the divine Sabbath models the human one.
26. Six days of gathering, one day of rest. The creation pattern (Genesis 1-2) is reproduced in the wilderness food cycle. Israel lives inside the rhythm God established at creation.
27. Some went out on the seventh day anyway and found nothing. Disobedience on the Sabbath is not punished with worms (as weekday hoarding was) but with absence. There is simply nothing there.
28. God's rebuke is directed through Moses: 'How long will you refuse to keep My commandments?' The plural 'you' (teme'anu) addresses the whole people, not just the Sabbath-breakers. Corporate responsibility is assumed.
29. 'The LORD has given you the Sabbath' (YHWH natan lakhem et-haShabbat) — the Sabbath is a gift, not merely a restriction. The double bread on the sixth day is the evidence: God provides in advance so that rest is possible. Sabbath is sustained by prior provision.
30. 'The people rested' (vayyishbetu ha'am) — the verb shavat appears for the first time in Exodus describing human rest. Israel does what God did at creation: ceases from labor on the seventh day.
31. The name 'manna' (man) is formally given. The physical description — white coriander seed, taste of honey wafers — makes the substance vivid and appealing. Numbers 11:7-8 will give additional details.
32. An omer of manna is preserved as a perpetual witness to divine provision in the wilderness. The jar will eventually be placed in the Ark of the Covenant (Hebrews 9:4), keeping the bread of the wilderness inside the holiest object in Israel.
33. Aaron is charged with the preservation — a priestly duty. The manna is placed 'before the LORD' (lifnei YHWH), meaning in God's presence, anticipating the tabernacle.
34. 'Before the Testimony' (lifnei ha'edut) — the Testimony refers to the tablets of the covenant that do not yet exist in the narrative. The narrator writes from the perspective of the completed tabernacle, placing the manna jar in its permanent home.
35. 'Forty years' — the manna sustained Israel for the entire wilderness period. The provision was not temporary but generational. It ceased only when Israel entered the promised land and ate its produce (Joshua 5:12).
36. A parenthetical measurement note: an omer equals one-tenth of an ephah (approximately 2.3 liters or 2 quarts). The narrator provides the conversion for readers unfamiliar with the measurement.

17

Summary: *At Rephidim, Israel quarrels over thirst; God provides water from the rock at Horeb. The Amalekites attack, and Israel prevails while Moses holds up the staff — when his arms tire, Aaron and Hur support them. God declares perpetual war against Amalek.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The place-names Massah and Meribah ('testing' and 'quarreling') memorialize Israel's failure in the geography itself. The staff that struck the Nile in judgment (7:20) now strikes the rock in provision — judgment-tools repurposed as grace-tools. The battle scene with Moses's raised hands (vv11-12) creates one of Scripture's most vivid images of intercession: when the hands are lifted, Israel prevails; when they drop, Amalek prevails. The altar name YHWH Nissi ('The LORD is my banner,' v15) becomes a divine title.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered vayyarev ('quarreled,' v2) to distinguish it from the grumbling (vayyillonu) of chapter 16 — the Hebrew escalates from complaint to legal dispute. The phrase massah umerivah ('testing and quarreling,' v7) we transliterated in the notes because these become fixed theological place-names referenced throughout Scripture. God standing 'on the rock at Horeb' (v6) places the divine presence at the point of provision — we rendered this literally to preserve the spatial theology.*

Connections: *The water from the rock is cited in Psalm 78:15-16; 105:41; and 1 Corinthians 10:4 (where Paul identifies the rock with Christ). The battle with Amalek is referenced in Deuteronomy 25:17-19 and 1 Samuel 15. Moses's supported arms anticipate the intercessory posture throughout Scripture (1 Timothy 2:8).*

¹The whole congregation of the sons of Israel set out from the wilderness of Sin, traveling by stages as the LORD commanded, and they camped at Rephidim. But there was no water for the people to drink. ²The people quarreled with Moses and said, "Give us water to drink." Moses said to them, "Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you test the LORD?" ³ But the people thirsted for water there, and they grumbled against Moses and said, "Why did you bring us up out of Egypt — to kill us and our children and our livestock with thirst?" ⁴Moses cried out to the LORD, saying, "What shall I do with this people? A little more and they will stone me." ⁵The LORD said to Moses, "Go on ahead of the people and take with you some of the elders of Israel. Take in your hand the staff with which you struck the Nile, and go. ⁶I will stand before you there on the rock at Horeb. Strike the rock, and water shall come out of it, and the people will drink." Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel. ⁷He called the name of the place Massah and Meribah, because of the quarreling of the sons of Israel and because they tested the LORD, saying, "Is the LORD among us or not?" ⁸Then Amalek came and fought with Israel at Rephidim. ⁹Moses said to Joshua, "Choose men for us and go out to fight Amalek. Tomorrow I will stand on the top of the hill with the staff of God in my hand." ¹⁰So Joshua did as Moses told him and fought with Amalek, while Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill. ¹¹Whenever Moses held up his hand, Israel prevailed, and whenever he lowered his hand, Amalek prevailed. ¹²But Moses's hands grew heavy, so they took a stone and put it under him, and he sat on it. Aaron and Hur held up his hands, one on each side, so that his hands remained steady until the sun went down. ¹³Joshua overwhelmed Amalek and his people with the edge of the sword. ¹⁴The LORD said to Moses, "Write this as a memorial in a book and recite it in the hearing of Joshua: I will utterly blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven." ¹⁵Moses built an altar and called its name "The LORD Is My Banner," ¹⁶saying, "A hand is on the throne of the LORD! The LORD will have war with Amalek from generation to generation."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. No water at Rephidim — the third provision crisis (bitter water at Marah, 15:23; hunger in Sin, 16:3; now thirst at Rephidim). Each crisis tests whether Israel will trust the God who has already provided.
2. The people 'quarrel' (vayyarev) and 'test' (tenassun) the LORD. Both verbs will be memorialized in the place-names Meribah ('quarreling') and Massah ('testing'). Moses reframes the complaint: they are not arguing with him but testing God.

3. The accusation repeats the Egypt-death formula from 16:3: 'You brought us out to kill us.' The complaint grows more specific — now livestock and children are named. Fear sharpens the rhetoric.
4. 'A little more and they will stone me' (od me'at usqaluni) — Moses's fear is physical, not hypothetical. The mob anger is so intense that Moses believes death is imminent. His appeal to God is raw: 'What shall I do?'
5. God's instruction uses the same staff that struck the Nile (7:20) — the instrument of Egypt's first plague becomes the instrument of Israel's provision. Judgment-tools are repurposed as grace-tools.
6. 'I will stand before you there on the rock' (hineni omed lefanekha sham al-hatsur) — God positions Himself on the rock before Moses strikes it. The divine presence is at the point of impact. When Moses strikes the rock, he strikes the place where God stands. The water comes from God's presence, not merely from stone.
7. Massah ('testing') and Meribah ('quarreling') — the place-names memorialize Israel's worst moment: questioning whether God is present. 'Is the LORD among us or not?' (hayesh YHWH beqirbenu im-ayin) is the existential question of the wilderness. It will be answered definitively at Sinai and in the tabernacle.
8. Amalek attacks the vulnerable — Deuteronomy 25:17-18 specifies that they struck the stragglers at the rear. This is Israel's first military engagement as a free people.
9. Joshua (Yehoshua, 'the LORD saves') appears for the first time by name. He is assigned military command while Moses takes the intercessory position on the hill. The battle is fought on two fronts: sword below, prayer above.
10. Aaron and Hur accompany Moses — the prophetic, priestly, and civic leadership together on the hilltop. Hur's identity is not specified here; tradition identifies him as Miriam's son (possibly from the tribe of Judah).
11. 'Whenever Moses held up his hand, Israel prevailed' — the raised hands are not magical but intercessory. Moses's posture embodies Israel's dependence on God: when the mediator lifts his hands, God's power flows through the battle. When the hands drop, the power ebbs.
12. 'Moses's hands grew heavy' (uydei Mosheh kevedim) — the adjective kaved ('heavy') echoes Pharaoh's heavy heart and Moses's heavy mouth. The same root that described obstacles throughout Exodus now describes the prophet's physical limitation. Aaron and Hur become the support structure — one man cannot sustain intercession alone. The word emunah ('steady, faithful') describes Moses's supported hands, linking physical steadiness to covenantal faithfulness.
13. Joshua 'overwhelmed' (vayyachalosh) Amalek — the verb chalash means to weaken, disable, defeat. The victory is attributed to Joshua's sword and Moses's hands working together.
14. 'Write this as a memorial in a book' (ketov zot zikkaron bassefer) — the first divine command to write in the Bible. The memory of Amalek's attack — and God's promise to blot out Amalek — is to be preserved in written form. Written memory outlasts oral tradition.
15. 'The LORD Is My Banner' (YHWH Nissi) — the altar name declares God as Israel's military standard. A nes ('banner, standard') was a rallying point in battle — the flag around which soldiers gathered. God is the point around which Israel's warfare organizes.
16. 'From generation to generation' (midor dor) — the conflict with Amalek is not a one-time event but an ongoing reality. The LORD's war against Amalek extends across all generations until Amalek is blotted out.

18

Summary: *Jethro, the Midianite priest and Moses's father-in-law, hears what God has done, brings Zipporah and Moses's sons to the wilderness, blesses the LORD, and offers sacrifices. He then advises Moses to delegate judicial authority to qualified leaders at multiple levels.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *A non-Israelite priest acknowledges YHWH's supremacy — 'Now I know that the LORD is greater than all gods' (v11). Jethro's confession forms a counterpoint to Pharaoh's rejection. His administrative counsel (vv17-23) introduces the principle that wise governance is not opposed to divine calling — practical wisdom from an outsider restructures Israel's leadership. Moses's two sons' names together summarize his biography: Gershom ('sojourner there') encodes alienation, Eliezer ('my God is help') encodes rescue.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered Jethro's title kohen Midyan as 'priest of Midian' without specifying which deity he served, since the text does not clarify and his conversion scene in v11 suggests a genuine theological turn. The verb shillach describing Moses sending Zipporah back (v2) is the same verb used for Pharaoh releasing Israel — we noted this wordplay. Jethro's qualifications for judges — 'capable men who fear God, trustworthy, who hate dishonest gain' (v21) — we rendered with accessible English rather than technical legal vocabulary.*

Connections: Jethro's administrative structure reappears in Deuteronomy 1:9-18. His confession echoes Rahab's in Joshua 2:9-11. The judicial delegation principle shapes Israel's governance through the period of the judges. The shared meal between Jethro and Israel's elders (v12) anticipates the covenant meal of 24:11.

¹Jethro, the priest of Midian and Moses's father-in-law, learned about everything God had done for Moses and for Israel His people — how the LORD had brought Israel out of Egypt. ²Jethro, Moses's father-in-law, had taken Zipporah, Moses's wife, after Moses had sent her back, ³along with her two sons, one of whom was named Gershom — for Moses had said, "I have been a sojourner in a foreign land" — ⁴and the other was named Eliezer — "for the God of my father was my help and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh." ⁵Jethro, Moses's father-in-law, came with Moses's sons and his wife to Moses in the wilderness where he was camped, at the mountain of God. ⁶He sent word to Moses, "I, your father-in-law Jethro, am coming to you with your wife and her two sons." ⁷Moses went out to meet his father-in-law and bowed down and kissed him. They asked each other about their welfare and went into the tent. ⁸Moses told his father-in-law all that the LORD had done to Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for Israel's sake, all the hardship that had befallen them on the way, and how the LORD had delivered them. ⁹Jethro rejoiced over all the good that the LORD had done for Israel, in that He had delivered them from the hand of the Egyptians. ¹⁰Jethro said, "Blessed be the LORD, who has delivered you from the hand of the Egyptians and from the hand of Pharaoh, and who has delivered the people from under the hand of the Egyptians. ¹¹Now I know that the LORD is greater than all gods, because in this matter where they dealt arrogantly, He was above them." ¹²Then Jethro, Moses's father-in-law, brought a burnt offering and sacrifices to God, and Aaron and all the elders of Israel came to eat bread with Moses's father-in-law before God. ¹³The next day Moses sat to judge the people, and the people stood around Moses from morning until evening. ¹⁴When Moses's father-in-law saw all that he was doing for the people, he said, "What is this that you are doing for the people? Why do you sit alone, and all the people stand around you from morning until evening?" ¹⁵Moses said to his father-in-law, "Because the people come to me to inquire of God. ¹⁶When they have a dispute, they come to me, and I judge between one person and another, and I make known the statutes of God and His instructions." ¹⁷Moses's father-in-law said to him, "What you are doing is not good. ¹⁸You will surely wear out, both you and this people who are with you, for the thing is too heavy for you. You are not able to do it alone. ¹⁹Now listen to my voice; I will give you counsel, and God be with you. You shall represent the people before God and bring their cases to God. ²⁰You shall teach them the statutes and the instructions and make known to them the way in which they must walk and the work that they must do. ²¹Moreover, look for able men from all the people — men who fear God, who are trustworthy and who hate dishonest gain — and appoint them as leaders over thousands, over hundreds, over fifties, and over tens. ²²Let them judge the people at all times. Every major matter they shall bring to you, but every minor matter they shall decide themselves. So it will be easier for you, and they will bear the burden with you. ²³If you do this, and God so commands you, then you will be able to endure, and all this people also will go to their place in peace." ²⁴Moses listened to the voice of his father-in-law and did all that he had said. ²⁵Moses chose able men out of all Israel and made them heads over the people — leaders of thousands, of hundreds, of fifties, and of tens. ²⁶They judged the people at all times. The difficult cases they brought to Moses, but every minor matter they decided themselves. ²⁷Then Moses let his father-in-law depart, and he went away to his own land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jethro's visit bridges the exodus and Sinai narratives. A Midianite priest — a non-Israelite — hears what God has done and comes to acknowledge YHWH. The outsider's response to the exodus forms a counterpoint to Pharaoh's rejection.
2. Moses had 'sent back' (shilluchehah) Zipporah at some point — the details are not given. The verb shillach is the same used for Pharaoh releasing Israel. The personal cost of the mission is noted but not elaborated.
3. Gershom's name ('sojourner there') encodes Moses's exile identity. Even the deliverer was once a displaced person.
4. Eliezer ('my God is help') encodes deliverance — named for God's protection of Moses from Pharaoh. The two sons' names together summarize Moses's biography: alienation (Gershom) and rescue (Eliezer).
5. 'The mountain of God' (har ha'Elohim) — Horeb/Sinai. Jethro comes to the same mountain where Moses saw the burning bush. The geography of revelation recurs.

6. The formal announcement of arrival follows ancient Near Eastern protocol — a visiting dignitary sends word before appearing.
7. Moses's greeting — going out, bowing, kissing — shows deep respect for his father-in-law. The verb *hishtachavah* ('bowed down') is the same word used for worship. Familial reverence mirrors the posture of divine reverence.
8. Moses recounts the entire exodus narrative to Jethro — the plagues, the hardships, the deliverance. This is the first retelling of the exodus to an outsider, and it is given to a Midianite priest. The story is not kept within Israel.
9. Jethro's joy (*vayyichad*) is the response the exodus was designed to produce: recognition of YHWH's power and goodness. What Pharaoh refused, Jethro embraces.
10. 'Blessed be the LORD' (*barukh YHWH*) — a Midianite priest blesses the God of Israel. The ecumenical reach of the exodus is visible here: YHWH's acts produce worship from outside the covenant community.
11. 'Now I know that the LORD is greater than all gods' (*attah yadati ki-gadol YHWH mikkol-ha'elohim*) — the knowledge formula, previously applied to Pharaoh and Egypt, is now fulfilled by Jethro. A pagan priest reaches the conclusion that ten plagues were designed to teach: YHWH is supreme. The phrase 'where they dealt arrogantly' (*badavar asher zadu*) refers to Egypt's arrogance — God's judgment precisely matched their sin.
12. Jethro offers sacrifices to God — a non-Israelite performing worship at the mountain of God, eating bread with Aaron and the elders 'before God' (*lifnei ha'Elohim*). This meal anticipates the covenant meal of chapter 24 but includes a Midianite. The boundaries of worship are remarkably permeable at this stage.
13. Moses as sole judge — sitting from morning to evening hearing disputes. The description of exhausting one-man governance sets up Jethro's intervention.
14. Jethro identifies the problem with the directness of a seasoned leader: 'What you are doing is not good.' The same phrase (*lo-tov*) echoes Genesis 2:18 ('It is not good for the man to be alone'). Solitary leadership, like solitary existence, is structurally inadequate.
15. Moses explains his role: mediator between the people and God. The people come 'to inquire of God' (*lidrosh Elohim*) — the verb *darash* means 'to seek, to inquire, to consult.' Moses functions as the access point between Israel and divine instruction.
16. Moses serves three functions: arbitrator of disputes, communicator of divine statutes (*chuqqim*), and teacher of divine instruction (*torot*, plural of *torah*). The triple role is unsustainable for one person.
17. 'Not good' (*lo-tov haddavar*) — Jethro's practical wisdom identifies organizational failure. The Midianite priest contributes to Israel's governance structure. Wisdom is not limited to the covenant community.
18. 'Too heavy for you' (*kaved mimmekha haddavar*) — the word *kaved* ('heavy') echoes throughout Exodus. Moses's burden is 'heavy' as Pharaoh's heart was 'heavy' and Moses's hands were 'heavy.' The solution is delegation, not endurance.
19. Jethro's counsel begins: Moses should focus on two things — representing the people before God and bringing their cases to God. Everything else can be delegated.
20. Teaching is Moses's primary role: statutes (*chuqqot*), instructions (*torot*), 'the way they must walk' (*haderekh yelkhu vah*), and 'the work they must do' (*hamma'aseh asher ya'asun*). Four categories of instruction that anticipate the Sinai legislation.
21. The leadership qualifications are character-based: able (*chayil* — capable, competent), God-fearing (*yir'ei Elohim*), trustworthy (*anshei emet* — men of truth), and incorruptible (*son'ei vatsa* — hating dishonest gain). Competence without character is excluded.
22. The tiered system — thousands, hundreds, fifties, tens — distributes both authority and burden. Major matters escalate to Moses; minor matters are resolved locally. The principle is subsidiarity: decisions made at the lowest effective level.
23. 'Go to their place in peace' (*al-meqomo yavo veshalom*) — Jethro's counsel aims at *shalom* for the entire community. The word *shalom* here means not merely absence of conflict but well-functioning communal order.
24. 'Moses listened' (*vayyishma Mosheh*) — the deliverer who spoke for God to Pharaoh now listens to a Midianite's practical advice. Humility is accepting wisdom from unexpected sources.
25. Implementation is immediate and complete. Moses selects, appoints, and structures — the organizational reform takes effect before Sinai.
26. The system works: difficult cases rise to Moses, routine matters are handled locally. The narrative confirms Jethro's wisdom through successful operation.
27. Jethro departs to his own land. The Midianite priest who blessed YHWH, offered sacrifices, and restructured Israel's governance returns home. His contribution is preserved in the Torah and implemented permanently.

19

Summary: *Israel arrives at Sinai in the third month. God declares them a 'kingdom of priests and a holy nation,' the people consecrate themselves, and on the third day God descends on the mountain in fire, smoke, and thunder. Boundaries are set; only Moses may approach.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The singular verb vayyichan ('he camped') for the plural subject 'Israel' (v2) is grammatically striking — at Sinai, Israel becomes one entity. Rashi noted: 'like one man with one heart.' The eagle-wing image (v4) combines power with nurture: the nesher (griffon vulture) is the largest soaring bird in the region. The destination is not land but God Himself: 'I brought you to Myself.' The covenant offer in v5-6 — 'kingdom of priests, holy nation' (mamlekheth kohanim vegoy qadosh) — defines Israel's identity for all subsequent Scripture.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered mamlekheth kohanim as 'kingdom of priests' rather than 'priestly kingdom,' preserving the construct-chain order and the implication that every member of the nation has priestly access. The word segullah ('treasured possession,' v5) has no exact English equivalent — it denotes a king's personal treasure, distinct from general crown property. We used 'treasured possession' and expanded in notes. The theophany vocabulary (thunder, lightning, thick cloud, trumpet blast) required careful handling to avoid making it sound like mere weather.*

Connections: *The 'kingdom of priests' declaration is cited in 1 Peter 2:9 and Revelation 1:6; 5:10. The theophany imagery recurs at Elijah's Horeb experience (1 Kings 19:11-12), in Isaiah 6, and in Hebrews 12:18-21. The three-day preparation anticipates other three-day patterns: Jonah 1:17, Hosea 6:2, and the resurrection narratives.*

¹In the third month after the sons of Israel had gone out of the land of Egypt, on that very day, they came to the wilderness of Sinai. ²They set out from Rephidim and came to the wilderness of Sinai, and they camped in the wilderness. Israel camped there before the mountain. ³Moses went up to God, and the LORD called to him from the mountain, saying, "Thus you shall say to the house of Jacob and tell the sons of Israel: ⁴'You yourselves have seen what I did to the Egyptians, and how I carried you on eagles' wings and brought you to Myself. ⁵Now then, if you will indeed obey My voice and keep My covenant, you shall be My treasured possession among all the peoples, for all the earth is Mine. ⁶You shall be to Me a kingdom of priests and a holy nation.' These are the words that you shall speak to the sons of Israel." ⁷Moses came and called the elders of the people and set before them all these words that the LORD had commanded him. ⁸The entire people responded in unison, "Everything the LORD has spoken, we will do." Then Moses brought the people's answer back to the LORD. ⁹The LORD said to Moses, "I am coming to you in a thick cloud, so that the people may hear when I speak with you and may also believe in you forever." Moses told the words of the people to the LORD. ¹⁰The LORD said to Moses, "Go to the people and consecrate them today and tomorrow. Let them wash their garments ¹¹and be ready for the third day, for on the third day the LORD will come down on Mount Sinai in the sight of all the people. ¹²You shall set boundaries for the people all around, saying, 'Be careful not to go up on the mountain or touch its edge. Whoever touches the mountain shall surely be put to death. ¹³No hand shall touch him, but he shall be stoned or shot through. Whether beast or man, he shall not live.' When the ram's horn sounds a long blast, they may go up to the mountain." ¹⁴Moses went down from the mountain to the people and consecrated the people, and they washed their garments. ¹⁵He said to the people, "Be ready for the third day. Do not go near a woman." ¹⁶On the morning of the third day there were thunders and lightning and a thick cloud on the mountain and a very loud trumpet blast, so that all the people in the camp trembled. ¹⁷Moses brought the people out of the camp to meet God, and they took their stand at the foot of the mountain. ¹⁸Mount Sinai was wrapped in smoke because the LORD had descended on it in fire. The smoke of it went up like the smoke of a kiln, and the whole mountain trembled violently. ¹⁹As the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder, Moses spoke and God answered him in thunder. ²⁰The LORD came down on Mount Sinai, to the top of the mountain. the LORD called Moses to the top of the mountain, and Moses went up. ²¹The LORD said to Moses, "Go down and warn the people, lest they break through to the LORD to look, and many of them perish. ²²Even the priests who come near to the LORD must consecrate themselves, or the LORD will break out against them." ²³Mo

ses said to the LORD, "The people cannot come up to Mount Sinai, for You Yourself warned us, saying, 'Set boundaries around the mountain and consecrate it.'" ²⁴The LORD said to him, "Go down, and then come up — you and Aaron with you. But the priests and the people must not break through to come up to the LORD, or He will break out against them." ²⁵So Moses went down to the people and told them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'The third month' (bachodesh hashelishi) — Israel arrives at Sinai exactly three months after the exodus. The third day (v11, 16) will bring the theophany. The number three structures the approach: third month, third day, threefold preparation.
2. 'Israel camped there before the mountain' (vayyichan-sham Yisra'el neged hahar) — the singular verb (vayyichan, 'he camped') is noteworthy: the plural 'sons of Israel' are treated grammatically as a unity. At Sinai, Israel becomes one entity facing one God. Rashi noted this: 'like one man with one heart.'
3. 'House of Jacob... sons of Israel' (beit Ya'aqov... benei Yisra'el) — the dual address may distinguish the whole community (house of Jacob) from the covenant heirs (sons of Israel), or it may be poetic parallelism. The traditional reading is that 'house of Jacob' includes the women and children.
4. 'Eagles' wings' (kanfei nesharim) — the image of God carrying Israel like an eagle carries its young is tender and powerful. The nesher is likely a griffon vulture, not a bald eagle — the largest soaring bird in the region. Deuteronomy 32:11 will elaborate the image. The destination is not merely the promised land but God Himself: 'I brought you to Myself' (va'avi etkhem elai).
5. 'My treasured possession' (segullah) — a word meaning personal property of special value, a royal treasure. Israel is not merely God's people but His prized possession. 'If you will obey My voice and keep My covenant' (im-shamo'a tishme'u beqoli ushmartem et-beriti) — the conditional clause makes the covenant relationship bilateral: God has already acted (the exodus); now Israel must respond with obedience. The covenant is offered, not imposed.
6. 'A kingdom of priests and a holy nation' (mamleket kohanim vegoy qadosh) — one of the most consequential declarations in the Bible. Israel's vocation is priestly: mediating between God and the nations. And they are qadosh — set apart for God's purposes. The entire nation, not just a clerical class, is called to holiness.
7. Moses mediates: God speaks to Moses, Moses speaks to the elders, the elders represent the people. The chain of communication is formal and structured.
8. 'All that the LORD has spoken we will do' (kol asher-dibber YHWH na'aseh) — Israel's collective acceptance of the covenant before hearing its terms. The verb na'aseh ('we will do') precedes the giving of the law. Commitment comes before content — a pattern that will be repeated and intensified in 24:7 ('we will do and we will hear').
9. 'A thick cloud' (av he'anan) — the cloud of divine presence (cf. 13:21) now intensifies. God comes in cloud to simultaneously reveal and conceal — Israel hears God's voice but does not see God's form. The cloud mediates between divine fullness and human limitation.
10. Consecration (qiddesh) involves ritual preparation — washing garments symbolizes inner purification. The people must be set apart before they can encounter the God who is set apart.
11. 'The LORD will come down' (yered YHWH) — the verb yarad ('descend') is the same word used for God's descent in 3:8 ('I have come down to deliver'). At the exodus, God descended to rescue; at Sinai, God descends to covenant. Both are acts of divine condescension — God bridging the gap between heaven and earth.
12. Boundaries (gevul) around the mountain create sacred space. The mountain is not inherently holy; it becomes holy because God's presence makes it so. The death penalty for trespass is not arbitrary but proportional: unmediated contact with absolute holiness is fatal for finite creatures.
13. 'When the ram's horn sounds' (bimshokh hayyovel) — the yovel ('ram's horn,' later the word for 'jubilee') signals transition. Its long blast will mark the moment when the boundary is lifted and approach is permitted. Sacred time is marked by sound.
14. Moses descends and consecrates the people — the prophetic mediator purifies the community for divine encounter. Washing garments is not mere hygiene but ritual symbolism: the people put on readiness.
15. 'Do not go near a woman' — temporary sexual abstinence as part of consecration for theophany. The instruction addresses the men directly and reflects ancient Near Eastern preparation for encountering the divine. The restriction is temporary and situational, not a statement about sexuality's inherent impurity.
16. 'Thunders and lightning and a thick cloud' (qolot uvera'qim ve'anan kaved) — the Sinai theophany is the most overwhelming divine manifestation in the Torah. The elements — sound (qolot, literally 'voices'), light (beraqim, 'lightning'), cloud (anan), and trumpet (qol shofar) — combine to create an experience that overwhelms every sense. The people tremble (vayyecherad) — not casual nervousness but existential dread before the holy.
17. 'To meet God' (liqrat ha'Elohim) — Moses leads the people out to a meeting. The word liqrat implies moving toward someone who is coming toward you. God descends; Israel approaches. The encounter is mutual, though radically asymmetric.

18. 'The LORD descended in fire' (yarad alav YHWH ba'esh) — fire is the primary element of Sinai theophany, as it was at the burning bush (3:2). The mountain smokes 'like the smoke of a kiln' (ke'ashan hakkivshan) — the same kilns where Israel made bricks in Egypt. The instrument of slavery becomes the image of divine glory.
19. 'Moses spoke and God answered in thunder' (Mosheh yedabber veba'Elohim ya'anenu veqol) — the most intimate verse of the theophany. Moses speaks, God answers. The dialogue is personal and direct. The word qol ('voice, thunder') blurs the line between speech and natural phenomenon — God's voice is the storm.
20. God descends to the mountaintop and summons Moses upward. The spatial drama is precise: God comes down; Moses goes up. They meet at the summit. The mountain becomes the axis between heaven and earth.
21. The warning against breaking through (pen-yehersu) reveals both divine holiness and divine concern. God does not want to destroy the curious; He warns them away from what would kill them. The holiness that demands distance is the same holiness that provides warning.
22. Even the priests — those closest to God's service — must consecrate themselves additionally. Proximity to God does not reduce the need for preparation; it increases it.
23. Moses's objection is procedural: boundaries have already been set (v12). The repetition of the warning underscores its gravity — God double-checks that the people understand the danger.
24. Aaron is invited up with Moses — the priestly and prophetic leaders together at the summit. But the people and the other priests must remain below. Access to God is real but regulated.
25. Moses descends to deliver the final warning. The narrative is now positioned for the giving of the Ten Commandments in chapter 20. Every preparation is complete; the people are consecrated, the boundaries are set, the mountain burns, and God is present.

20

Summary: *God speaks the Ten Commandments (Aseret HaDibberot, 'The Ten Words') directly to all Israel, beginning with self-identification as the God who liberated them. The commandments move from exclusive loyalty to God through Sabbath observance to right treatment of neighbor. The people, terrified, ask Moses to mediate.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The preamble 'I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of Egypt' (v2) establishes that every commandment flows from a prior act of grace — liberation first, then law. The Hebrew chesed ('faithful love,' v6) appears inside the Decalogue itself, set against judgment: three-to-four generations of consequence versus thousands of generations of loyal love. The word qanna ('jealous,' v5) describes passionate exclusive devotion — the jealousy of a covenant partner, not petty envy. The people's fear (v18-19) and request for Moses to mediate establishes the prophetic office.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew devarim ('words') gives the Decalogue its Hebrew name — these are 'words' (declarations of relationship), not merely 'commandments' (legal statutes). We preserved 'commandments' in common references for familiarity but noted the distinction. The phrase al-panai ('before Me/in My presence,' v3) we rendered 'besides Me' to capture the exclusivity claim. The prohibition lo tirtsach (v13) specifically means 'do not murder' (unlawful killing), not 'do not kill' (all killing); we rendered it 'you shall not murder.'*

Connections: *The Decalogue is restated in Deuteronomy 5:6-21 with significant Sabbath-motivation changes. Jesus summarizes the commandments in Matthew 22:37-40. Paul cites specific commandments in Romans 13:9. The covenant structure (preamble, stipulations, witnesses) parallels ancient Near Eastern suzerainty treaties. The people's terror at God's voice (v18-19) is cited in Hebrews 12:18-21.*

1God spoke all these words, saying, 2"I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. 3You must not have any other gods besides Me. 4You shall not make for yourself a carved image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is on the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth. 5You shall not bow down to them or serve them, for I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me, 6but showing faithful love to thousands of those who love Me and keep My commandments. 7You shall not take the name of the LORD your God in vain, for the LORD will not hold guiltless anyone who takes His name in vain. 8Keep the Sabbath day in remembrance and set it apart as holy. 9Six days you shall

labor and do all your work, ¹⁰but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. On it you shall not do any work — you, or your son, or your daughter, your male servant, or your female servant, or your livestock, or the sojourner who is within your gates. ¹¹For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy. ¹²Honor your father and your mother, so that your days may be long in the land that the LORD your God is giving you.

¹³You shall not murder.

You shall not commit adultery.

You shall not steal.

You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.

¹⁴You shall not covet your neighbor's house. You shall not covet your neighbor's wife, or his male servant, or his female servant, or his ox, or his donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor." ¹⁵All the people perceived the thunder and the lightning flashes and the sound of the trumpet and the mountain smoking. When the people saw it, they trembled and stood at a distance. ¹⁶They said to Moses, "You speak to us, and we will listen; but do not let God speak to us, or we will die." ¹⁷Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid, for God has come to test you, so that the fear of Him may be before you, that you may not sin." ¹⁸The people stood at a distance, while Moses drew near to the thick darkness where God was. ¹⁹The LORD said to Moses, "Thus you shall say to the sons of Israel: 'You yourselves have seen that I have spoken with you from heaven. ²⁰You shall not make gods of silver alongside Me, nor shall you make for yourselves gods of gold. ²¹An altar of earth you shall make for Me, and you shall sacrifice on it your burnt offerings and your peace offerings, your sheep and your oxen. In every place where I cause My name to be remembered, I will come to you and bless you. ²²If you make for Me an altar of stone, you shall not build it of cut stones, for if you wield your chisel on it, you profane it. ²³You shall not go up by steps to My altar, so that your nakedness is not exposed on it."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'God spoke all these words' (vaydabber Elohim et kol-haddevarim ha'elleh) — the Ten Commandments are introduced as God's own direct speech. The word devarim ('words') gives the Hebrew name for the Decalogue: Aseret HaDibberot ("The Ten Words"). These are not commandments in the sense of legal statutes but declarations of covenant relationship.
2. The preamble identifies the speaker and establishes the relationship: 'I am the LORD your God' (anokhi YHWH Elohekha). Before any command is given, identity is declared. The exodus is the credential: 'who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery.' Every commandment that follows is grounded in this prior act of liberation. Obedience is response to grace, not the condition for it.
3. 'No other gods before Me' (lo yihyeh-lekha elohim acherim al-panai) — the phrase al-panai literally means 'before My face' or 'in My presence.' The commandment does not deny other gods exist (that is a later theological development); it demands exclusive loyalty. In a world of many gods, Israel's God demands undivided allegiance.
4. The prohibition of carved images (pesel) extends to 'any likeness' (kol-temunah) of anything in the three-tiered cosmos: heaven, earth, and water below the earth. The scope is comprehensive — no physical representation of deity is permitted. The prohibition targets not all art but specifically images made for worship.
5. 'A jealous God' (El qanna) — the word qanna describes passionate, exclusive devotion. It is the jealousy of a husband for his wife, not petty envy. God's jealousy is the emotional counterpart of the first commandment: exclusive loyalty demanded because exclusive love is given. The generational consequence ('visiting iniquity') describes patterns of sin that perpetuate through family systems, not arbitrary punishment of innocent descendants.
6. 'Showing steadfast love to thousands' (ve'oseh chesed la'alafim) — chesed appears in the Decalogue itself. The contrast is stark: iniquity is visited to the third and fourth generation, but chesed extends to thousands. Judgment is limited; covenant love is boundless. This asymmetry defines God's character: mercy outweighs wrath by orders of magnitude.
7. 'Take the name of the LORD your God in vain' (tissa et-shem YHWH Elohekha lashshav) — the verb nasa means 'to lift up, to carry, to bear.' To 'bear' God's name in vain (lashshav, 'for emptiness, for falsehood, for nothing') means to invoke God's name without substance — in false oaths, empty worship, or as a tool of manipulation. Israel bears God's name; to bear it emptily is to misrepresent God Himself.
8. 'Remember the Sabbath day to keep it holy' (zakhor et-yom hashabbat leqaddesho) — the verb zakhor ('remember') is active, not passive. Remembering the Sabbath means structuring life around it, not merely noting its existence. 'To keep it holy' (leqaddesho) means to set it apart — to treat this day as belonging to God in a way the other six do not.

9. Six days of labor are affirmed — work is not a curse but a mandate. The Sabbath rest is meaningful only against the backdrop of productive labor. The creation pattern (Genesis 1-2:3) governs human life: work, then rest.
10. The Sabbath rest extends to every member of the household — sons, daughters, servants, livestock, and even the resident foreigner (ger). No one in Israel's community is excluded from rest. The sojourner provision is remarkable: even non-Israelites within Israel's territory receive the gift of Sabbath. The commandment has a social-justice dimension: those with power over others must grant them rest.
11. The theological basis is creation: God made everything in six days and rested on the seventh. The Sabbath is not arbitrary but cosmic — it mirrors the rhythm God established at the foundation of the world. Human rest participates in divine rest. The verb *vayyinnach* ('rested') means 'ceased and was refreshed.'
12. 'Honor your father and your mother' (*kabbed et-avikha ve-et-immekha*) — the verb *kabbed* is from the root *kavod* ('glory, weight, honor'). To honor parents is to treat them as weighty — as significant, substantial, deserving of respect. This is the only commandment with a promise attached: 'so that your days may be long.' The commandment bridges the God-directed commands (1-4) and the neighbor-directed commands (6-10): parents stand at the intersection of divine authority and human relationship.
13. Four brief commandments in rapid succession: no murder (*tirtsach* — intentional killing, not all killing), no adultery (*tin'af*), no stealing (*tignov*), no false witness (*ta'aneh... ed shaqer*). Each is a two-word prohibition in Hebrew, compressed to the minimum. The brevity is deliberate: these are absolute, non-negotiable boundaries. The verb *ratsach* is specifically murder — unlawful, intentional killing — not capital punishment or warfare, which the Torah separately addresses.
14. 'You shall not covet' (*lo tachmod*) — the final commandment addresses the interior life: desire, not action. *Chamad* means to desire, to take delight in, to want what belongs to another. The commandment moves from external behavior (murder, adultery, theft) to internal disposition (covetousness). The list — house, wife, servant, ox, donkey, 'anything' — is comprehensive, ending with *kol asher lere'ekha* ('anything that belongs to your neighbor').
15. 'The people perceived the thunder' (*ve'khol-ha'am ro'im et-haqqolot*) — the verb *ra'ah* ('to see') is used for perceiving sound: they 'saw' the thunder. The synesthetic language suggests an experience so overwhelming it crossed sensory boundaries. The theophany is not merely heard but perceived with the whole person.
16. 'Do not let God speak to us, or we will die' (*ve'al-yedabber immanu Elohim pen-namut*) — the people's terror leads them to request mediation. They want Moses as buffer between themselves and the direct voice of God. This request establishes the prophetic office: Israel will hear God's word through Moses (and later prophets) rather than directly. The people's fear, while understandable, represents a step back from the intimacy God offered.
17. Moses reframes the fear: God's coming is 'to test you' (*lenassot etkhem*) and 'so that the fear of Him may be before you' (*uv'avur tihyeh yir'ato al-peneikhem*). There are two kinds of fear: the terror that drives away (which Moses says to reject) and the reverent awe that prevents sin (which Moses says to embrace). The distinction between fear-as-terror and fear-as-reverence is foundational to biblical wisdom.
18. 'Moses drew near to the thick darkness where God was' (*uMosheh niggash el-ha'arafel asher-sham ha'Elohim*) — while the people retreat, Moses advances. The *arafel* ('thick darkness, deep gloom') is where God dwells. God's presence is simultaneously light to the trusting and darkness to the afraid. Moses enters the darkness; the people stand at a distance.
19. 'You have seen that I have spoken with you from heaven' (*atem re'item ki min-hashamayim dibbarti immakhem*) — God reminds Israel that the theophany came from heaven, not from any earthly image. The prohibition of images (v20) flows directly from the nature of the revelation: God spoke from heaven, invisible. Any image would reduce the heavenly God to an earthly object.
20. 'Gods of silver... gods of gold' (*elohei khsef... elohei zahav*) — the materials are significant. Silver and gold are the very materials Israel took from Egypt (12:35-36). The wealth of liberation must not become the material of idolatry. What God provided for the tabernacle (25:3) must not be redirected to false worship.
21. 'An altar of earth' (*mizbach adamah*) — the simplest possible altar. No ornamentation, no craftsmanship — just soil shaped into a platform. The altar law emphasizes accessibility and humility: worship does not require architectural grandeur. 'In every place where I cause My name to be remembered' (*bekhol-hamaqom asher azkir et-shemi*) — God chooses the place of worship, not the worshiper.
22. 'If you wield your chisel on it, you profane it' (*ki charbkha henafta aleha vatechalelehah*) — the tool (*cherev*, also meaning 'sword') profanes the stone. Instruments of human violence and craftsmanship must not shape God's altar. The altar is natural, uncut, unhewn — shaped by God's creation, not human artifice.
23. The prohibition of steps prevents exposure of the priest's body — a practical modesty provision. The altar is approached by a ramp, not by stairs. Every detail of worship protects the dignity of both the worshiper and the act of worship.

21

Summary: *The Book of the Covenant begins with case-law (mishpatim) governing servitude, personal injury, property damage, and the rights of the vulnerable. A Hebrew bonded worker goes free in the seventh year. The lex talionis ('eye for eye') establishes proportional justice.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The very first case-law concerns the eved ivri ('Hebrew bonded worker'), embedding liberation at the foundation of Israel's legal code — a people freed from slavery must regulate power over others. The six-year servitude limit with seventh-year release mirrors the Sabbath pattern; even labor relationships carry a built-in horizon of freedom. The lex talionis (vv23-25) is not a license for vengeance but a ceiling on punishment: the penalty must not exceed the injury.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered mishpatim as 'case-rulings' rather than 'judgments' or 'ordinances' to distinguish these casuistic laws ('if... then...') from the apodictic commands ('you shall not...') of the Decalogue. The word eved ('servant/slave') covers a wide semantic range; we chose 'bonded worker' for the Hebrew context of debt-servitude, distinguishing it from chattel slavery. The phrase 'eye for eye' (ayin tachat ayin, v24) we retained literally, noting in our translator notes that it establishes proportionality, not mandatory mutilation.*

Connections: *The seventh-year release connects to Deuteronomy 15:12-18 and Jeremiah 34:8-22. Jesus cites the lex talionis in Matthew 5:38-39. The goring ox laws (vv28-32) establish precedent for negligence liability throughout biblical and later legal traditions. The protection of the vulnerable (vv20-21, 26-27) operationalizes the exodus principle: because God freed you, you must not crush others.*

¹These are the case-rulings that you are to place before them: ²When you acquire a Hebrew bonded worker, he will serve for six years, but in the seventh year he goes free without payment. ³If he entered alone, he leaves alone. If he is a married man, his wife leaves with him. ⁴If his master gave him a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, the woman and her children belong to her master, and the man leaves alone. ⁵But if the bonded worker clearly declares, 'I love my master, my wife, and my children — I will not go free,' ⁶then his master brings him before God, and brings him to the door or the doorpost, and his master pierces his ear with an awl — and he will serve him permanently. ⁷When a man sells his daughter as a bonded woman, she does not go free in the same way as the male workers do. ⁸If she is displeasing to her master who designated her for himself, he must allow her to be redeemed. He has no authority to sell her to a foreign people, since he has broken faith with her. ⁹If he designates her for his son, he must treat her according to the rights of daughters. ¹⁰If he takes another wife for himself, he must not reduce her food, her clothing, or her marital rights. ¹¹If he does not provide these three things for her, she goes free without any payment. ¹²Whoever strikes a person fatally must be put to death. ¹³But if he did not hunt him down, and God let it happen by his hand, then I will designate a place for you where he may flee. ¹⁴But when a man plots deliberately against his neighbor to kill him by treachery, you must take him even from my altar to die. ¹⁵Whoever strikes his father or his mother must be put to death. ¹⁶Whoever kidnaps a person — whether he has sold him or the victim is still found in his possession — must be put to death. ¹⁷Whoever curses his father or his mother must be put to death. ¹⁸When men quarrel and one strikes the other with a stone or with his fist, and the victim does not die but is confined to bed — ¹⁹if the victim gets up and walks around outside on his own support, the striker is cleared — only he must compensate for the lost time and pay fully for healing. ²⁰When a man strikes his male or female servant with a rod and the servant dies immediately, the master must be held accountable. ²¹However, if the servant survives a day or two, the master is not punished, because the servant is his financial investment. ²²When men are fighting and they injure a pregnant woman so that her children come out prematurely but no lasting harm occurs, the offender must pay a fine as the woman's husband demands, subject to judicial assessment. ²³But if lasting harm does occur, then the penalty is life for life, ²⁴an eye in place of an eye, a tooth in place of a tooth, a hand in place of a hand, a foot in place of a foot, ²⁵burn for burn, wound for wound, bruise for bruise. ²⁶If a man strikes the eye of his male or female servant and destroys it, he must release the servant as a free person in compensation for the eye. ²⁷And if he knocks out the tooth of his male or female servant, he must release the servant as a

free person in compensation for the tooth. ²⁸When an ox gores a man or a woman to death, the ox must be stoned to death, and its meat must not be eaten, but the owner of the ox is clear. ²⁹But if the ox was known to gore in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it restrained, and it kills a man or a woman — the ox is stoned, and its owner also must be put to death. ³⁰If a ransom payment is imposed on him instead, he must pay whatever is set as the redemption price for his life. ³¹Whether it gores a son or a daughter, the same ruling applies to the owner. ³²If the ox gores a male or female servant, the owner must pay thirty silver shekels to the servant's master, and the ox is stoned. ³³When a man opens a cistern, or when a man digs a cistern and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it — ³⁴the owner of the cistern must pay compensation — he returns silver to the animal's owner, and the dead animal becomes his. ³⁵When one man's ox fatally injures another man's ox, they sell the living ox and split the proceeds equally, and they also split the dead animal equally. ³⁶But if it was known that the ox was a habitual gorer and its owner did not keep it restrained, he must pay in full — ox for ox — and the dead animal becomes his. ³⁷When a man steals an ox or a sheep and slaughters it or sells it, he must pay five cattle in place of the ox and four sheep in place of the sheep.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *mishpatim* ('case-rulings') signals a shift from the apodictic commands of the Decalogue to casuistic law — practical applications structured as 'if... then...' scenarios. These rulings operationalize the covenant principles of chapters 19–20 into daily community life.
2. The Hebrew *eved ivri* ('Hebrew bonded worker') refers to debt-servitude, not chattel slavery. The six-year limit with mandatory release in the seventh echoes the Sabbath pattern — even labor relationships must have a built-in horizon of liberation. A people who were themselves freed from bondage may not hold permanent power over their own.
3. The term *begappo* ('by his body alone') indicates arriving without dependents. The principle is that servitude cannot dissolve a marriage that existed before the labor arrangement — the prior family bond is protected.
4. This verse creates the painful tension that drives verses 5–6. A wife provided by the master during the service period remains part of the master's household. The law does not celebrate this arrangement — it sets up the moral weight of the choice that follows.
5. The emphatic Hebrew construction *amor yomar* ('saying, he says') stresses that this must be a deliberate, repeated declaration — not a coerced statement. The worker chooses permanent attachment out of love for his family, not fear. The verb 'love' (*ahav*) is the same word used for covenant loyalty throughout the Torah.
6. The phrase *el ha'Elohim* ('before God' or 'before the judges') indicates a formal legal proceeding with divine witness. Piercing the ear at the doorpost marks the threshold between freedom and chosen belonging. The ear — the organ of hearing — is marked because the worker heard the call to freedom but chose to stay. *Le'olam* ('permanently') in context means for the duration of his life, not eternally.
7. A father in extreme poverty might arrange his daughter into a household with the expectation that she would become a wife or concubine, not simply a laborer. The different release terms reflect this expectation — she has marriage protections rather than a simple six-year term, as the following verses specify.
8. The *ketiv-qere* (written/read) textual variant *lo/lo* shows an ancient scribal ambiguity: 'who did not designate her' vs. 'who designated her for himself.' Either reading yields the same protective result — if the arrangement fails, she cannot be trafficked to outsiders. The phrase *bigdo-vah* ('he broke faith with her') uses covenant-betrayal language.
9. Once designated for the son, the woman gains full daughter-status in the household. This elevates her from servant to family member with legal protections — she is not a disposable laborer but a recognized member of the household with rights.
10. The three obligations — *she'erah* (food/sustenance), *kesutah* (clothing), and *onatah* (conjugal rights) — form the baseline rights of a wife in Israelite law. Even if displaced by a second wife, these cannot be withdrawn. The term *onatah* specifically protects her sexual and relational dignity.
11. Failure to meet any of the three basic obligations — sustenance, clothing, marital rights — voids the arrangement entirely. The woman walks away with no debt owed. This functions as an ancient breach-of-contract remedy that protects the weaker party.
12. The shift from civil-family law to capital offenses marks a new section. The Hebrew uses the emphatic *mot yumat* ('dying, he shall die') to underscore the absolute nature of the penalty. The word *ish* ('person') here is generic — the law applies regardless of the victim's status or gender.
13. The verb *tsadah* ('hunted, stalked') distinguishes premeditated killing from accidental death. The phrase 'God let it happen by his hand' (*ha'Elohim innah leyado*) attributes the accidental convergence to divine providence, not the killer's intent. The cities of refuge (expanded in Numbers 35 and Deuteronomy 19) provide asylum from blood-avengers for unintentional killers.
14. The verb *yazid* ('acts presumptuously, boils over with intent') combined with *ormah* ('cunning, treachery') defines first-degree murder. Not even the sanctuary altar can protect a premeditated killer — sacred space does not override justice. This limits the asylum principle of verse 13 to genuinely accidental cases.

15. Physical violence against parents is treated as a capital offense because it violates the foundational social bond. The fifth commandment (honor your father and mother) is operationalized here at its extreme — the parental relationship represents covenant order in miniature.
16. This law criminalizes human trafficking with the death penalty. The verb *ganav* ('steal') when applied to a person means kidnapping. Both selling the victim and retaining him are equally capital offenses. This statute directly contradicts any attempt to use the Torah to justify chattel slavery.
17. The verb *meqallel* ('makes light of, curses') is the opposite of *kavod* ('give weight, honor'). Cursing parents invokes harm against the very people the commandments require one to honor. The pairing of this verse with verse 15 (striking parents) shows that both verbal and physical violations of parental honor carry identical weight.
18. The law now turns to non-fatal assault. The Hebrew distinguishes weapons (stone) from bare hands (fist), indicating that the degree of force matters less than the outcome. The phrase *nafal lemishkav* ('falls to his bed') describes incapacitation requiring recovery time.
19. Walking outside 'on his support' (*al mish'anto*) means the victim can move independently, even if with a cane. The attacker must cover two categories of damages: *shivto* ('his sitting' — lost wages/productivity) and medical costs (*rappo yerappeh*, 'healing, he shall heal'). This is one of the earliest recorded principles of compensatory damages in legal history.
20. The emphatic *naqom yinnaqem* ('avenging, he shall be avenged') means the servant's death is treated as a punishable homicide. In the surrounding ancient Near East, killing one's own slave generally carried no legal consequence. This law is extraordinary for its time — a master's authority over a servant does not include the right to kill.
21. The survival period creates a rebuttable presumption: if death is not immediate, the beating may not have been intended to kill. The rationale *ki kaspo hu* ('because he is his money') is not a moral endorsement but a legal observation — the master has economic self-interest against killing his own worker. Ancient readers understood this as a limitation on punishment, not an approval of violence.
22. The phrase *veyatze'u yeladeyha* ('her children come out') describes premature birth caused by the blow. The key term *ason* ('lasting harm, catastrophe') distinguishes between a premature but viable delivery and a fatal outcome. The husband sets the initial claim, but *pelilim* ('arbitrators, judges') determine the final amount — protecting against both undervaluation and extortion.
23. The *lex talionis* ('law of retaliation') begins here. *Nefesh takhat nefesh* ('life in place of life') sets the principle of proportional justice — the punishment must match the injury, no more and no less. Rabbinic tradition understood this as monetary compensation equivalent to the value of the injury, not literal physical mutilation.
24. The talionic formula establishes strict proportionality: an eye — not a life — for an eye. Far from endorsing brutality, this principle limits revenge. In surrounding cultures, a powerful man who lost an eye might kill the offender's entire family. Here, the injury itself sets the maximum penalty. The Talmud (*Bava Kamma* 83b–84a) interprets this as requiring monetary compensation equal to the injury.
25. The three additional pairs — burn (*keviyyah*), wound (*petsa*), bruise (*khabburah*) — extend the proportionality principle to every category of bodily harm. The descending severity (from burn to bruise) signals that even minor injuries carry legal consequences. No harm is too small for justice.
26. The talionic principle is applied to servants — but instead of 'eye for eye,' the remedy is freedom. The loss of a bodily member earns permanent liberation. This transforms the master-servant relationship: physical abuse literally costs the master his workforce. The verb *shikh'hatah* ('destroyed, ruined it') implies irreversible damage.
27. Even a tooth — far less significant than an eye — triggers mandatory manumission. The rabbis extended this principle: any permanent bodily damage to a servant results in freedom. The consistent remedy of liberation for injury creates a powerful economic disincentive against abuse.
28. The goring-ox laws (verses 28–36) establish the principle of owner liability for known dangers. In the first-offense case, the ox is destroyed (stoned, not slaughtered — so its meat is forbidden), but the owner bears no criminal guilt since the danger was unknown. The prohibition against eating the carcass treats a man-killing animal as profane.
29. The critical distinction is prior knowledge: *mitmol shilshom* ('from yesterday and the day before') means the animal had a documented pattern. The owner was *hu'ad* ('testified to, warned') — a formal legal notice. Negligence after warning transforms accidental harm into a capital offense. This establishes the foundational legal concept of culpable negligence.
30. The *kofer* ('ransom, atonement payment') allows monetary substitution for the death penalty in negligence cases. The word *pidyon* ('redemption price') connects this to the broader theology of ransom — a life-price paid in place of forfeited life. The amount is set by judicial assessment, not the negligent owner.
31. The explicit mention of both son and daughter establishes that gender does not affect the legal outcome. A child's life carries the same judicial weight as an adult's, and a daughter's life the same as a son's — a statement of legal equality unusual in the ancient Near East.
32. Thirty shekels of silver was the standard valuation for a servant in the ancient Near East. This fixed amount means the owner cannot negotiate the price down. The ox is still destroyed, confirming that even a servant's death defiles the animal. Later tradition links this sum to Zechariah 11:12 and the betrayal price in the Gospels.
33. The *bor* ('pit, cistern') laws extend negligence liability to property hazards. Whether uncovering an existing pit or digging a new one, the duty to cover the danger rests on the person who created or exposed it. Ancient cisterns were deep enough to injure or kill livestock that fell in.

34. The negligent pit-owner pays the full value of the lost animal, then keeps the carcass. This prevents double recovery — the animal owner receives the market value but does not also keep the dead animal. The principle of offsetting damages is built into the remedy.
35. For a first-offense ox-on-ox incident, both owners share the loss equally — each gets half of both the surviving animal's sale price and the dead animal's salvage value. This splits the risk between both parties when no negligence can be proven.
36. When prior knowledge is established (the 'habitual gorer' pattern), the loss-sharing of verse 35 no longer applies. The negligent owner bears the entire cost: he pays for a replacement animal at full value and absorbs the dead animal's loss. Knowledge of danger plus failure to act equals full liability.
37. The higher penalty for an ox (fivefold vs. fourfold for sheep) reflects the greater economic loss — an ox is a capital asset used for plowing and transport, while a sheep's primary value is consumable (wool, meat). The differential penalty recognizes that theft of productive tools causes compounding economic damage beyond the animal's market price. This verse is Hebrew 21:37 but corresponds to KJV 22:1 due to differing chapter divisions.

22

Summary: *Case-law continues with theft, property damage, restitution, seduction, sorcery, bestiality, and idolatry. The chapter then shifts to protecting the vulnerable — sojourners, widows, orphans — with God declaring 'I will surely hear their cry.' Interest on loans to the poor is forbidden.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The self-defense statute (vv1-2) is one of the earliest codified in any legal system: killing an intruder at night incurs no bloodguilt, but killing in daylight does, because alternatives exist. Restitution is calculated at top quality (meitav, 'the best,' v5) — the negligent party cannot compensate with inferior goods. The theological grounding for protecting the sojourner is visceral: 'for you were sojourners in the land of Egypt' (v21). Israel's own trauma becomes the basis for its ethics.*

Translation Friction: *The word makhteret ('tunnel/breach-point,' v1) describes a thief breaking through mud-brick walls — we rendered it 'tunneling in' to convey the method. The phrase ein lo damim ('there is no blood for him,' v2) required paraphrase as 'there is no bloodguilt' to clarify the legal concept. The transition from property law to ethical command in vv21-27 was challenging to render smoothly, since the Hebrew shifts register from casuistic to direct address; we maintained the shift to preserve the text's own movement from courtroom to conscience.*

Connections: *The sojourner protection recalls Deuteronomy 10:18-19 and is cited in the prophets (Zechariah 7:10; Malachi 3:5). The prohibition of interest on loans to the poor (v25) is expanded in Leviticus 25:35-37 and Deuteronomy 23:19-20. The declaration 'I am compassionate' (v27) connects to the divine self-description of 34:6. The command not to revile God or curse a ruler (v28) is cited by Paul in Acts 23:5.*

1If a thief is caught tunneling in and is struck and killed, there is no bloodguilt for his death. 2If the sun has risen on him, there is bloodguilt for killing him. The thief must make full restitution; if he has nothing, he is sold for his theft. 3If the stolen animal is actually found alive in his possession — whether ox, donkey, or sheep — he pays double. 4When a man lets his livestock graze in a field or vineyard, and sends his animal to feed in someone else's field, he must pay restitution from the best of his own field and the best of his own vineyard. 5When fire breaks out and catches in thornbushes, and stacked grain or standing grain or the entire field is consumed, the one who started the fire must make full restitution. 6When a man gives his neighbor money or goods for safekeeping, and they are stolen from the man's house — if the thief is caught, the thief pays double. 7If the thief is not caught, the owner of the house must come before God to determine whether he himself took his neighbor's property. 8In any case of disputed ownership — whether over an ox, a donkey, a sheep, a garment, or any lost item — where someone claims, 'This is mine,' the case of both parties comes before God. Whichever one God finds guilty must pay double to his neighbor. 9When a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to look after, and it dies, or is injured, or is carried off, with no witness present — 10an oath before the LORD must stand between them both — that the custodian did not misappropriate his neighbor's property. The owner must accept this, and no restitution is owed. 11But if it is in fact stolen from his custody, he must pay restitution to its owner. 12If it was torn apart by a predator, let him

bring the remains as evidence — he does not pay for the torn animal. ¹³When a man borrows an animal from his neighbor, and it is injured or dies while its owner is not present, the borrower must pay in full. ¹⁴If the owner was present with it, the borrower does not pay. If it was a hired animal, the loss is covered by the rental fee. ¹⁵When a man seduces a young woman who is not betrothed and sleeps with her, he must pay the bride-price and take her as his wife. ¹⁶If her father firmly refuses to give her to him, the man must still pay the full amount of the bride-price for young women. ¹⁷You must not let a sorceress live. ¹⁸Anyone who lies with an animal must be put to death. ¹⁹Whoever sacrifices to any god other than the LORD alone must be completely destroyed. ²⁰You must not mistreat or oppress a resident foreigner, because you yourselves were foreigners in the land of Egypt. ²¹You must not afflict any widow or orphan. ²²If you do afflict them in any way, and they cry out to me at all, I will surely hear their cry. ²³Then my anger will burn hot, and I will kill you by the sword — and your own wives will become widows and your own children orphans. ²⁴If you lend money to any of my people — the poor among you — you must not act as a creditor toward him. You must not charge him interest. ²⁵If you take your neighbor's garment as collateral, you must return it to him before the sun sets. ²⁶For it is his only covering — it is his garment for his skin. What else would he sleep in? And when he cries out to me, I will hear, because I am compassionate. ²⁷You must not curse God, and you must not curse a leader among your people. ²⁸You must not hold back your harvest fullness or your flowing produce. The firstborn of your sons you must give to me. ²⁹Do the same with your cattle and your flock: for seven days the young animal stays with its mother; on the eighth day you give it to me. ³⁰You are to be people set apart as holy to me. You must not eat the flesh of an animal torn by predators in the field — throw it to the dogs.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The makhteret ('tunnel, breach point') describes a thief breaking through mud-brick walls at night. The phrase *ein lo damim* ('there is no blood for him') means the homeowner bears no legal guilt for killing an intruder in darkness — the threat is presumed lethal when you cannot see whether the intruder is armed. This is one of the earliest codified self-defense statutes.
2. Daylight changes the legal calculus: once you can see the intruder, you can assess whether lethal force is necessary. Killing a thief in broad daylight creates bloodguilt because non-lethal options exist. The thief's penalty is full restitution or, if insolvent, being sold into debt-servitude — the same bondage system regulated in 21:2–6.
3. The emphatic *himmatse timmatse* ('finding, it is found') stresses certainty of evidence. When the stolen animal is recovered alive and intact, the penalty drops to twofold — much less than the four- or fivefold penalty when the animal has been slaughtered or sold (21:37). Recovery of the property reduces the damages owed.
4. The verb *bi'er* ('to graze, to consume') creates a wordplay: the man who let his animal *bi'er* (consume) another's field pays from his *meitav* (best). Restitution is calculated at top quality, not average — the negligent party cannot pay with inferior produce. This protects the victim from receiving substandard compensation.
5. Fire liability follows the chain of causation: even if the fire spread through thorns (an intermediate cause), the person who lit it bears full responsibility for everything destroyed. The list — stacked grain, standing grain, the field itself — covers all stages of agricultural production. Fire in an arid climate could devastate an entire community's food supply.
6. The deposit (*piqqadon*) laws begin here and run through verse 14. These regulate bailment — entrusting property to another person's care. When the thief is identified, liability falls on the actual criminal, not the custodian. The double payment matches the standard restitution for recovered theft.
7. When the thief is unknown, suspicion naturally falls on the custodian. The phrase *el ha'Elohim* ('before God') indicates either a divine oath at the sanctuary or a judicial proceeding — the custodian must swear his innocence under divine witness. The phrase *shalakh yado* ('extended his hand') is an idiom for misappropriation.
8. This verse generalizes the deposit principle into a universal dispute-resolution procedure. The word *pesha* ('violation, breach of trust') covers any contested property claim. The divine tribunal (*Elohim*) renders the verdict — human judges act as God's agents in civil disputes. Double payment serves both as penalty and deterrent.
9. This section addresses animal bailment — custody of living property. Three scenarios are listed: death, injury (*nishbar*, 'broken'), and seizure (*nishbah*, 'captured, driven off'). The critical factor is *ein ro'eh* ('no one seeing') — when there is no independent witness, the case requires a divine oath to resolve.
10. The *shevu'at YHVH* ('oath of the LORD') is the most solemn form of sworn testimony in Israelite law. Swearing falsely by God's name invokes divine judgment on the perjurer. When no human evidence exists, the oath functions as the final legal instrument — the owner must accept it, and the case is closed.

11. If it can be established that the animal was stolen while under the custodian's care, the custodian is liable — he should have secured the animal against theft. The oath defense of verse 10 only covers cases where the custodian acted in good faith. Proven theft from custody implies negligent safeguarding.
12. A wild animal attack (taraf, 'torn apart') is an act beyond human control. The custodian demonstrates his innocence by producing physical evidence — the mangled remains. This early forensic principle requires tangible proof of the claim. The word terefa ('torn carcass') later becomes a key term in dietary law for meat rendered unfit by violent death.
13. Borrowing (she'al) carries a higher standard of care than paid custody. The borrower benefits solely from the arrangement, so he bears full liability for any loss. The owner's absence (be'alav ein immo) removes any possibility that the owner's own negligence contributed to the damage.
14. When the owner is present, he shares responsibility for the animal's safety, so the borrower is not solely liable. For hired animals, the risk of loss is already factored into the rental price (ba biskharo, 'it came with its fee'). These distinctions show ancient Israel developing sophisticated categories of commercial liability.
15. The verb yefattech ('entice, persuade') describes seduction, not coercion — rape is addressed separately in Deuteronomy 22:25–27. The mohar ('bride-price') is the payment to the father's household that formalizes marriage. The law holds the man accountable for the sexual relationship by requiring him to formalize the union and bear its economic obligations.
16. The emphatic ma'en yema'en ('refusing, he refuses') gives the father unilateral veto power over the marriage. Even when the father blocks the union, the seducer still owes the full bride-price — he cannot escape financial responsibility by being rejected. The woman's family is compensated regardless of the marriage outcome.
17. The feminine form mekhashshafah ('sorceress, practitioner of harmful magic') uses the root k-sh-f, which refers to manipulative sorcery intended to harm others — not herbal medicine or midwifery. The feminine form may reflect the social reality that women were the primary practitioners of this type of magic in the ancient Near East, though Deuteronomy 18:10 applies the prohibition to both genders.
18. Sexual contact with animals violates the created order of distinct kinds established in Genesis 1. The death penalty places this alongside murder and kidnapping in severity. The prohibition appears repeatedly in Leviticus 18:23 and 20:15–16, where it is called tevel ('perversion, confusion of categories').
19. The verb yokhoram ('put under the ban, devoted to destruction') is from the root kh-r-m, denoting total consecration to God through destruction. Idolatrous sacrifice receives the same penalty as the banned items of holy war. The phrase bilti laYHVH levaddo ('except to the LORD alone') reinforces the exclusive covenant claim of the first commandment.
20. The two verbs toneh ('mistreat, exploit') and tilkhatshennu ('crush, oppress') cover both social abuse and economic exploitation. The ger ('resident foreigner') is someone living permanently among Israelites without clan protection. The motivation clause — 'you were foreigners in Egypt' — grounds ethical obligation in lived memory. Israel's own suffering under foreign rule becomes the moral foundation for how they treat outsiders.
21. The almanah ('widow') and yatom ('orphan, fatherless') represent people who have lost their primary economic protector in a patriarchal society. The verb te'annun ('afflict, cause to suffer') covers any exploitation of their vulnerable status. The kol ('any') makes the prohibition absolute — there are no exceptions.
22. Three emphatic infinitive constructions pile up: anneh te'anneh ('afflicting, you afflict'), tsa'oq yits'aq ('crying out, they cry out'), shamo'eshma ('hearing, I will hear'). God personally guarantees that the cries of the vulnerable reach divine ears. This is the same verb (tsa'aq) used for Israel's cry under Pharaoh — God heard then, and God hears now.
23. The punishment mirrors the crime with devastating precision: those who afflict widows and orphans will themselves create widows and orphans from their own families. This measure-for-measure principle (middah keneged middah) appears throughout the Torah. God does not merely prohibit — God threatens to become the avenger of the powerless.
24. The phrase et ammi et he'ani immakh ('my people, the poor one beside you') makes poverty personal: the borrower is 'my people' to God and 'beside you' to the lender. The word nosheh ('creditor, debt-collector') describes aggressive collection tactics. Neshekh ('interest,' literally 'a bite') reveals how the Torah views lending at interest to the vulnerable — as a predatory act that devours the borrower.
25. The outer garment (salmah) served as a blanket for sleeping in the cold Judean nights. Taking it as a pledge for a daytime loan was permissible, but keeping it overnight would leave the debtor exposed to the elements. The law prioritizes human survival over creditor rights — the debt is real, but so is the borrower's body.
26. God's self-identification as khannun ('compassionate, gracious') grounds the entire lending ethic in divine character. The rhetorical question 'What would he sleep in?' forces the creditor to see through the debtor's eyes. The same cry-and-hear pattern from the widow/orphan passage (v. 22) reappears — God positions himself as the guarantor of the poor person's rights.
27. The word Elohim here likely means 'God' rather than 'judges,' since the parallel with nasi ('leader, prince') creates a pair: divine authority and human authority. The verb teqalleh ('make light of, curse') is the same root used in verse 17 (cursing parents). Respect for legitimate authority — divine and communal — is a covenant obligation.
28. The unusual words mele'atekha ('your fullness') and dim'akha ('your flow, your tears') likely refer to grain at full ripeness and fresh-pressed juice or oil. Not delaying means giving the first portion promptly — before you consume or sell the rest. The firstborn-son obligation (redeemed by

substitution per Exodus 13:13) declares that all fertility belongs to God first.

29. The seven-day waiting period serves both practical and theological purposes — newborn animals need their mother's milk to survive the first week, and the eight-day timing echoes circumcision (Genesis 17:12). The Sabbath rhythm permeates even animal husbandry: seven days of nature, then consecration on the eighth.
30. The chapter's closing verse reframes all the preceding laws under one identity statement: *anshei qodesh* ('people of holiness'). Holiness is not an abstract status but a lived distinction visible even in diet. Torn flesh (*terefa*) carries the violence of its death — consuming it blurs the boundary between orderly covenant life and the chaos of predation. The dogs, as unclean scavengers, receive what holy people may not eat.

23

Summary: *The Book of the Covenant concludes with justice provisions (no false reports, no mob justice, impartiality), the three annual pilgrimage festivals, sabbatical year rest for the land, and God's promise to send an angel to guide Israel into the promised land.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The principle 'Do not follow the majority to do evil' (v2) is remarkable for any legal code — truth is not determined by vote. The obligation to return even an enemy's lost animal (v4-5) subordinates private hostility to communal responsibility. The three festivals — Unleavened Bread, Harvest, and Ingathering (vv14-17) — structure Israel's year around gratitude. The prohibition against boiling a kid in its mother's milk (v19) has generated centuries of interpretation and shapes Jewish dietary practice to this day.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered lo-tihyeh acharei-rabbim lera'ot as 'you shall not follow the majority to do evil,' preserving the legal force while making the principle accessible. The phrase shema shav ('false report,' v1) — literally 'empty/vain hearing' — targets both fabrication and circulation of falsehood; we noted both dimensions. The kid-in-mother's-milk prohibition (v19) we rendered literally, as the Hebrew gives no explanation and every interpretive expansion risks overreach.*

Connections: *The three festivals connect to Deuteronomy 16:1-17. The sabbatical year (v10-11) is expanded in Leviticus 25. The angel-guide promise (vv20-23) relates to 32:34-33:3. The hornet (v28) reappears in Deuteronomy 7:20 and Joshua 24:12. The gradual dispossession principle (v30) shapes the conquest narrative in Joshua.*

¹You shall not spread a false report. Do not join hands with a wicked person to be a malicious witness. ²You shall not follow the majority to do evil, nor shall you testify in a dispute by siding with the majority to pervert justice. ³Nor shall you show partiality to a poor person in his dispute. ⁴If you encounter your enemy's ox or his donkey going astray, you shall surely return it to him. ⁵If you see the donkey of one who hates you lying under its burden, you shall not leave him with it. You shall surely help him with it. ⁶You shall not pervert the justice due to your poor in their disputes. ⁷Keep far from a false charge, and do not kill the innocent and righteous, for I will not acquit the guilty. ⁸You shall not take a bribe, for a bribe blinds the clear-sighted and subverts the cause of the righteous. ⁹You shall not oppress a sojourner. You know the heart of a sojourner, for you were sojourners in the land of Egypt. ¹⁰For six years you shall sow your land and gather in its produce, ¹¹but in the seventh year you shall let it rest and lie fallow, so that the poor of your people may eat. What they leave, the wild animals may eat. You shall do the same with your vineyard and your olive grove. ¹²Six days you shall do your work, but on the seventh day you shall rest, so that your ox and your donkey may have rest, and the son of your female servant and the sojourner may be refreshed. ¹³Pay attention to everything I have said to you. Do not invoke the name of other gods; let it not be heard on your lips. ¹⁴Three times a year you shall celebrate a feast to Me. ¹⁵You shall keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread. For seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, as I commanded you, at the appointed time in the month of Aviv, for in it you came out of Egypt. No one shall appear before Me empty-handed. ¹⁶You shall keep the Feast of Harvest, of the firstfruits of your labor, of what you sow in the field. You shall keep the Feast of Ingathering at the end of the year, when you gather in your produce from the field. ¹⁷Three times a year all your males shall appear before the Lord GOD. ¹⁸You shall not offer the blood of My sacrifice with anything leavened, and the fat of My festival shall not remain until morning. ¹⁹The best of the firstfruits of your ground you shall bring to the house of the LORD your God. You shall not boil a young goat in its mother's

milk. ²⁰"I am sending an angel before you to guard you on the way and to bring you to the place I have prepared. ²¹Pay attention to him and listen to his voice. Do not rebel against him, for he will not forgive your transgression, for My name is in him. ²²But if you carefully listen to his voice and do all that I say, then I will be an enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries. ²³For My angel will go before you and bring you to the land of the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Canaanites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, and I will annihilate them. ²⁴You shall not bow down to their gods or serve them, nor do as they do. You shall utterly demolish them and smash their sacred pillars. ²⁵You shall serve the LORD your God, and He will bless your bread and your water, and I will remove sickness from your midst. ²⁶No woman in your land shall miscarry or be barren. I will fulfill the number of your days. ²⁷I will send My terror ahead of you and throw into confusion every people you encounter, and I will make all your enemies turn their backs to you. ²⁸I will send the hornet ahead of you, and it will drive out the Hivites, the Canaanites, and the Hittites before you. ²⁹I will not drive them out before you in a single year, or the land would become desolate and the wild animals would multiply against you. ³⁰Little by little I will drive them out before you, until you have increased enough to take possession of the land. ³¹I will set your borders from the Sea of Reeds to the Sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the Euphrates, for I will give the inhabitants of the land into your hand, and you shall drive them out before you. ³²You shall not make a covenant with them or with their gods. ³³They shall not dwell in your land, lest they make you sin against Me; for if you serve their gods, it will surely be a snare to you."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Book of the Covenant continues with justice provisions. 'False report' (shema shav) — literally 'empty/vain hearing.' The prohibition targets both the one who fabricates the report and the one who receives and spreads it. Justice depends on truthful information.
2. 'Do not follow the majority to do evil' (lo-tihyeh acharei-rabbim lera'ot) — a remarkable principle: majority opinion does not determine justice. Truth is not a vote. The legal system must resist mob pressure, even democratic mob pressure.
3. Partiality toward the poor is prohibited alongside partiality toward the rich (Leviticus 19:15). Justice requires impartiality, not favoritism in either direction. Compassion for the poor is commanded elsewhere; in court, only facts and law matter.
4. 'Your enemy's ox' — the obligation to return lost property extends even to your personal enemy. The law subordinates private enmity to communal obligation. You cannot let a neighbor's animal suffer because you dislike the neighbor.
5. The obligation extends to helping an enemy's overloaded donkey. The Hebrew is emphatic: azov ta'azov immo ('you shall surely help him'). Personal hatred does not suspend the duty of compassion toward animals and the shared social order.
6. 'Do not pervert justice due to your poor' (lo tatteh mishpat evyonkha) — the verb natah ('to pervert, to turn aside') means bending the legal process away from its straight course. The poor are vulnerable to legal exploitation precisely because they lack resources to advocate for themselves.
7. 'I will not acquit the guilty' (lo atsiq rasha) — God Himself guarantees the ultimate standard of justice. Human courts may fail; the divine court will not. The prohibition against killing the innocent (naqi vetsaddiq) uses two words: naqi ('clean, innocent of the charge') and tsaddiq ('righteous, in the right').
8. 'A bribe blinds the clear-sighted' (hashchohad ye'avver piqqechim) — the word piqqeach means 'open-eyed, seeing clearly.' Even the perceptive become blind when money enters the judicial process. The bribe does not merely influence; it literally impairs moral vision.
9. 'You know the heart of a sojourner' (atem yeda'tem et-nephesh hagger) — literally 'you know the nephesh (soul/inner life) of the stranger.' Israel's own experience of alienation in Egypt is the basis for empathy. Compassion is not abstract principle but remembered experience. This is experiential ethics: because you suffered, you must not inflict.
10. The agricultural sabbatical (shemittah) cycle parallels the weekly Sabbath: six years of work, one year of rest. The land itself receives Sabbath.
11. The purpose of the fallow year is social justice: 'that the poor of your people may eat.' The land's rest benefits the landless. What grows naturally during the sabbatical belongs to anyone who needs it — a redistribution built into the agricultural calendar.
12. The weekly Sabbath rest is restated with an emphasis on those who cannot demand rest for themselves: the ox, the donkey, the servant's son, the sojourner. Sabbath protects the vulnerable from exploitation by those with power over them.
13. 'Do not invoke the name of other gods' (veshem elohim acherim lo tazkiru) — the verb zakar ('mention, invoke, remember') means that the names of foreign gods should not even be spoken in worship or oath-taking. Covenant loyalty excludes all competitors even at the verbal level.
14. Three annual pilgrimage festivals (shalosh regalim, literally 'three feet/times') structure Israel's year. The festivals are agricultural and theological simultaneously: they mark both harvest cycles and covenant events.

15. The Feast of Unleavened Bread (Chag HaMatzot) is the first of three. Its connection to the exodus (the month of Aviv, the departure from Egypt) is stated as the reason for observance. 'No one shall appear before Me empty-handed' (velo-yera'u fanai reqam) — worship and offering are inseparable.
16. The Feast of Harvest (Chag HaQatzir, later called Shavuot/Pentecost) celebrates the firstfruits of the wheat harvest. The Feast of Ingathering (Chag HaAsif, later called Sukkot/Tabernacles) marks the final harvest at year's end. The three festivals map Israel's relationship with God onto the agricultural year.
17. 'All your males shall appear before the Lord GOD' (yera'eh kol-zekhurchah el-penei ha'Adon YHWH) — the verb yera'eh can be read as 'appear' (niph'al) or 'see' (qal). The pilgrimage is both appearing before God and seeing God — a mutual encounter at the appointed festivals.
18. Leaven is excluded from the sacrifice, maintaining the Passover principle (ch12). The fat (chelev) of the festival offering must be consumed the same night — nothing sacred may be treated as leftover.
19. 'You shall not boil a young goat in its mother's milk' (lo-tevashel gedi bachalev immo) — this prohibition, repeated three times in the Torah (here, 34:26, Deuteronomy 14:21), became the basis for the Jewish dietary separation of meat and dairy. In its original context, it likely prohibits a specific Canaanite fertility ritual that perverts the relationship between nourishment (milk) and death (slaughter).
20. 'I am sending an angel before you' (hineh anokhi sholeach mal'akh lefanekha) — the angelic guide transitions the chapter from law to promise. God's angel will lead Israel to the promised land. The angel's authority is grounded in the fact that God's name is 'in him' (v21).
21. 'My name is in him' (ki shemi beqirbo) — the angel bears God's own name, giving him divine authority. The phrase suggests an intimate identification between the angel and God Himself. The angel cannot forgive transgression because forgiveness is a divine prerogative that this angel exercises.
22. Obedience to the angel's voice is obedience to God's voice. The conditional promise — 'if you listen... I will be an enemy to your enemies' — ties Israel's military security to covenant faithfulness.
23. The standard six-nation list appears again (cf. 3:8, 17; 13:5). The verb kichad ('annihilate') is severe — the promise includes the displacement of the current inhabitants. This language must be read within the covenant framework where the land grant follows the pattern of Genesis 15:16 (the iniquity of the Amorites reaching its fullness).
24. The prohibition of foreign worship is comprehensive: no bowing, no serving, no imitating. Sacred pillars (matstsevoth) are to be smashed — the physical objects of Canaanite worship must be destroyed, not repurposed.
25. 'He will bless your bread and your water' (uverakh et-lachmekha ve'et-meimekha) — covenant obedience produces material blessing. The basics of sustenance (bread, water) are under God's direct provision. Health ('I will remove sickness') is also covenantal.
26. Fertility and longevity are covenant blessings: no miscarriage, no barrenness, full lifespan. The blessings mirror the curses of Deuteronomy 28 — covenant faithfulness and covenant violation produce opposite outcomes.
27. 'My terror' (et-eimati) — God sends fear ahead of the military advance. The conquest is won psychologically before it is won militarily. The verb hamam ('confuse, throw into confusion') describes divinely induced panic.
28. The 'hornet' (tsir'ah) — whether literal (swarms of insects) or metaphorical (terror, military advance, or even Egypt itself), the effect is the gradual displacement of the inhabitants. God uses natural means under supernatural direction.
29. 'Not in a single year' — the gradual pace of the conquest is explained: too-rapid depopulation would leave the land ecologically unmanageable. Wolves and other wild animals would overrun empty territory. God's strategy accounts for ecological sustainability.
30. 'Little by little' (me'at me'at) — the repeated word emphasizes gradualism. Conquest is not instantaneous but incremental. Patience is built into the divine plan.
31. The borders — Sea of Reeds to the Mediterranean, wilderness to the Euphrates — describe the maximum extent of the promised land, roughly realized under David and Solomon (1 Kings 4:21). This is the Abrahamic land grant restated in its fullest geographic terms.
32. 'You shall not make a covenant with them' (lo tikhrot lahem velohehem berit) — the verb karat ('cut') is the standard covenant-making verb. Israel must not enter into binding agreements with peoples whose religious practices would compromise covenant loyalty.
33. The chapter closes with a warning: coexistence with Canaanite worship will become a 'snare' (moqesh). The metaphor is a bird-trap — once triggered, escape is difficult. Religious compromise begins subtly and ends in captivity.

24

Summary: *The covenant is ratified in blood: Moses builds an altar with twelve pillars, reads the Book of the Covenant, and throws blood on the people. The elders ascend and see God, eating and drinking in His presence. Moses enters the cloud on Sinai for forty days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The people's unanimous response 'All that the LORD has spoken we will do' (na'aseh, v3, 7) is the covenant acceptance that defines Israel as a constituted community. The blood ceremony (vv6-8) divides the blood between the altar (representing God) and the people — both parties are bound. The elders' vision of God (v10-11) includes the astonishing detail of 'something like a pavement of sapphire, clear as the sky' (livnat hassappir) beneath God's feet, yet 'God did not lay His hand on them' — they survived the encounter. They ate and drank in God's presence.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered na'aseh as 'we will do' throughout, preserving the active commitment. The phrase livnat hassappir ('pavement of sapphire,' v10) posed a challenge — livnah could mean 'brick-work' or 'pavement,' and sappir may be sapphire or lapis lazuli. We chose 'pavement of sapphire' for its luminous quality. The combination of theophany and meal (v11) is theologically extraordinary; we rendered it straightforwardly, letting the strangeness speak for itself.*

Connections: *The covenant blood ceremony (v8) is cited in Hebrews 9:18-20, where Jesus's blood establishes a new covenant. The seventy elders anticipate Numbers 11:16-25. Moses's forty days on the mountain (v18) parallel Elijah's forty days to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8) and Jesus's forty days in the wilderness (Matthew 4:2). The sapphire vision connects to Ezekiel 1:26 and 10:1.*

¹Then He said to Moses, "Come up to the LORD — you and Aaron, Nadab and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel — and worship from a distance. ²Moses alone shall come near to the LORD; the others shall not come near, and the people shall not come up with him." ³Moses came and told the people all the words of the LORD and all the rules. And all the people answered with one voice and said, "All the words that the LORD has spoken we will do." ⁴Moses wrote down all the words of the LORD. He rose early in the morning and built an altar at the foot of the mountain and set up twelve pillars for the twelve tribes of Israel. ⁵He sent young men of the sons of Israel, and they offered burnt offerings and sacrificed peace offerings of oxen to the LORD. ⁶Moses took half the blood and put it in basins, and half the blood he threw against the altar. ⁷Then he took the Book of the Covenant and read it in the hearing of the people. They said, "All that the LORD has spoken we will do, and we will obey." ⁸Moses took the blood and threw it on the people and said, "Behold the blood of the covenant that the LORD has made with you in accordance with all these words." ⁹Then Moses went up with Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel, ¹⁰and they saw the God of Israel. Under His feet was something like a pavement of sapphire, as clear as the sky itself. ¹¹He did not stretch out His hand against the nobles of the sons of Israel. They beheld God, and they ate and drank. ¹²The LORD said to Moses, "Come up to Me on the mountain and stay there, and I will give you the tablets of stone with the law and the commandment that I have written for their instruction." ¹³Moses rose with Joshua his attendant, and Moses went up to the mountain of God. ¹⁴He said to the elders, "Wait here for us until we return to you. Aaron and Hur are with you. Whoever has a dispute, let him go to them." ¹⁵Then Moses went up on the mountain, and the cloud covered the mountain. ¹⁶The glory of the LORD settled on Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it for six days. On the seventh day He called to Moses out of the midst of the cloud. ¹⁷The appearance of the glory of the LORD was like a consuming fire on the top of the mountain in the sight of the sons of Israel. ¹⁸Moses entered the cloud and went up on the mountain. And Moses was on the mountain forty days and forty nights.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The invitation to approach God is carefully tiered: Moses comes nearest, Aaron and the leaders worship from a distance, the people do not come up at all. Access to God is real but graduated — proximity corresponds to calling and consecration.

2. 'Moses alone shall come near' (uniggash Mosheh levaddo) — the prophetic mediator has unique access. The distinction between Moses and everyone else — including Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and the seventy elders — establishes the singular authority of the Mosaic office.
3. 'All the people answered with one voice' (vayyya'an kol-ha'am qol echad) — the unanimity is emphatic: one voice (qol echad). Israel's covenant acceptance is corporate and consensual. 'All the words that the LORD has spoken we will do' (kol-haddevarim asher-dibber YHWH na'aseh) — the commitment precedes the formal ratification ceremony. Israel says 'we will do' before the blood is thrown.
4. Moses writes down God's words — the first written Torah. The altar and twelve pillars create a physical covenant space: the altar represents God, the twelve pillars represent the twelve tribes. The covenant ceremony has both parties symbolically present.
5. 'Young men' (na'arei benei Yisra'el) serve as the sacrificial assistants — this is before the Levitical priesthood is established. Any qualified Israelite can offer sacrifice at this stage. The burnt offerings (olot) represent total dedication; the peace offerings (shelamim) represent fellowship — the two together express both surrender and communion.
6. The blood is divided in half: half on the altar (representing God's side), half reserved for the people (v8). The splitting of the blood creates two parties who will be bound by the same blood. The covenant is literally a blood bond — two parties joined by one life-substance.
7. 'We will do and we will obey' (na'aseh venishma) — the most debated phrase in Jewish covenant theology. Israel commits to doing (na'aseh) before hearing fully (nishma). Action precedes understanding. The willingness to obey comes before the complete comprehension of what obedience entails. This is the structure of covenant faith: trust first, then learn.
8. 'The blood of the covenant' (dam habberit) — Moses throws the other half of the blood on the people, declaring that this blood seals the covenant between God and Israel. The altar received its half; the people receive theirs. Both parties are now covered by the same blood. Jesus will echo this phrase at the Last Supper: 'This is my blood of the covenant' (Matthew 26:28; Mark 14:24).
9. The ascent begins: Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy elders climb the mountain. The number seventy echoes the seventy persons who entered Egypt (Genesis 46:27) and the seventy nations of Genesis 10 — a representative number suggesting completeness.
10. 'They saw the God of Israel' (vayyir'u et Elohei Yisra'el) — one of the most extraordinary statements in the entire Bible. Human beings see God. The description focuses not on God's form but on what is beneath His feet: 'something like a pavement of sapphire' (ke'ma'aseh livnat hassappir). The sapphire pavement evokes the blue sky — God's footstool is the firmament itself. The description is restrained and awestruck: the narrator does not describe God directly but only the space around His feet.
11. 'He did not stretch out His hand against the nobles' (ve'el-atselei benei Yisra'el lo shalach yado) — the expected consequence of seeing God is death (cf. 33:20). The fact that these leaders survive is presented as remarkable. They 'beheld God' (vayyechezu et-ha'Elohim) — the verb chazah means 'to see in vision, to perceive.' And they ate and drank — a covenant meal in the divine presence. This is the most intimate human-divine encounter in the Torah: seeing God and sharing food before Him.
12. God summons Moses higher still — above the elders' level, into the cloud itself. The purpose: to receive the tablets of stone (luchot ha'even). The law and commandment have been spoken; now they will be written by God's own hand.
13. Joshua accompanies Moses partway — he is called Moses's 'attendant' (mesharet), a word that later describes priestly service. Joshua's role as Moses's closest aide foreshadows his eventual succession.
14. Aaron and Hur are left in charge — the same two who held Moses's arms during the Amalek battle (17:12). The appointment of temporary judges ensures governance continuity during Moses's absence. This arrangement will fail catastrophically in chapter 32.
15. 'The cloud covered the mountain' (vaykhas he'anan et-hahar) — the verb kasah ('cover') suggests total envelopment. The mountain disappears into the cloud of divine presence.
16. 'The glory of the LORD settled on Mount Sinai' (vayyishkon kevod-YHWH al-har Sinai) — the verb shakan ('settled, dwelt, tabernacled') is the root of Shekinah. God's glory takes up residence on the mountain. The six-day covering followed by the seventh-day call mirrors the creation pattern: God prepares and then speaks. The seventh day is the day of divine voice.
17. 'Like a consuming fire' (ke'esh okheleth) — the kavod of God is visible as fire. The same element that appeared in the burning bush (3:2), led Israel as a pillar (13:21), and descended on Sinai (19:18) is now described as 'consuming.' Kavod is not safe to approach — it is fire that devours. Yet Moses enters it.
18. Moses enters the cloud and remains forty days and forty nights. The number forty marks a period of complete preparation or testing (cf. the flood, 40 days; the wilderness, 40 years; Jesus's temptation, 40 days). The prophet disappears into God's presence — invisible to Israel below — to receive the instructions for the tabernacle.

25

Summary: *God instructs Moses to receive voluntary contributions for the tabernacle and describes the first furnishings: the ark of the covenant overlaid with gold, the mercy seat with two cherubim, the table of the Presence with its bread, and the golden lampstand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The tabernacle is funded by willing hearts — 'from every person whose heart moves him' (v2) — not compulsory taxation. The word *terumah* ('contribution,' from *rum*, 'to lift up') describes something lifted from one's possessions and given to God. The materials plundered from Egypt (12:35-36) now find their purpose as the raw material for God's dwelling. The mercy seat (*kapporet*, from *kipper*, 'to atone') is described before the ark it covers — the place of atonement is the theological center of the entire structure.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered *terumah* as 'contribution' rather than 'offering' to avoid confusion with sacrificial offerings. The *kapporet* (v17) is traditionally 'mercy seat,' but the Hebrew root *kipper* means 'to cover/atone.' We retained 'mercy seat' as the familiar rendering while noting the atonement semantics. The instruction 'make them according to the pattern (*tavnit*) shown you on the mountain' (v40) we rendered literally — the tabernacle is a copy of a heavenly original, a concept developed in Hebrews 8:5.*

Connections: *The ark design connects to its role in Numbers 10:33-36, Joshua 3:3-17, and 1 Samuel 4-6. The mercy seat as the meeting place between God and Moses (v22) anticipates Leviticus 16 (Day of Atonement). The bread of the Presence (v30) points to John 6:35. The lampstand anticipates Zechariah 4 and Revelation 1:12-13. The heavenly pattern (v40) is cited in Hebrews 8:5.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"Speak to the sons of Israel, that they take for Me a contribution. From every person whose heart moves him, you shall receive My contribution. ³This is the contribution you shall receive from them: gold, silver, and bronze, ⁴blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, fine linen, and goats' hair, ⁵rams' skins dyed red, fine leather, and acacia wood, ⁶oil for the light, spices for the anointing oil and for the fragrant incense, ⁷onyx stones and stones for setting, for the ephod and for the breastpiece. ⁸They are to construct a sanctuary for Me so that I may dwell in their midst. ⁹According to all that I show you — the pattern of the tabernacle and the pattern of all its furnishings — so you shall make it. ¹⁰They shall make an ark of acacia wood. It shall be two and a half cubits long, a cubit and a half wide, and a cubit and a half high. ¹¹You shall overlay it with pure gold — inside and outside you shall overlay it — and you shall make a molding of gold around it. ¹²You shall cast four gold rings for it and put them on its four feet, two rings on one side and two rings on the other. ¹³You shall make poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold. ¹⁴You shall put the poles through the rings on the sides of the ark, to carry the ark by them. ¹⁵The poles shall remain in the rings of the ark; they shall not be removed from it. ¹⁶You shall put into the ark the Testimony that I shall give you. ¹⁷You shall make an atonement cover of pure gold, two and a half cubits long and a cubit and a half wide. ¹⁸You shall make two cherubim of gold. You shall make them of hammered work at the two ends of the atonement cover. ¹⁹Make one cherub at one end and one cherub at the other end. Of one piece with the atonement cover you shall make the cherubim at its two ends. ²⁰The cherubim shall spread out their wings above, overshadowing the atonement cover with their wings, facing one another. The faces of the cherubim shall be turned toward the atonement cover. ²¹You shall put the atonement cover on top of the ark, and in the ark you shall put the Testimony that I shall give you. ²²There I will meet with you, and from above the atonement cover, from between the two cherubim that are on the ark of the Testimony, I will speak with you about all that I will command you concerning the sons of Israel. ²³You shall make a table of acacia wood, two cubits long, a cubit wide, and a cubit and a half high. ²⁴You shall overlay it with pure gold and make a molding of gold around it. ²⁵You shall make a rim around it a handbreadth wide, and a gold molding around the rim. ²⁶You shall make four gold rings for it and attach the rings to the four corners at its four legs. ²⁷The rings shall be close to the rim, as holders for the poles to carry the table. ²⁸You shall make the poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold, and the table shall be carried with them. ²⁹You shall make its plates, its dishes, its pitchers, and its bowls for pouring drink offerings. You shall make them of pure gold. ³⁰You shall set the bread of the Presence on the table before Me at all times. ³¹You shall

make a lampstand of pure gold. The lampstand shall be made of hammered work — its base, its stem, its cups, its buds, and its blossoms shall be of one piece with it. ³²Six branches shall extend from its sides — three branches from one side and three branches from the other. ³³Three cups shaped like almond blossoms, each with a bud and a blossom, on one branch, and three cups shaped like almond blossoms, each with a bud and a blossom, on the other branch — so for all six branches extending from the lampstand. ³⁴On the lampstand itself there shall be four cups shaped like almond blossoms, with their buds and blossoms. ³⁵A bud shall be under each pair of branches extending from it — a bud under the first pair, a bud under the second pair, and a bud under the third pair — for the six branches extending from the lampstand. ³⁶Their buds and their branches shall be of one piece with it, the whole of it a single piece of hammered work of pure gold. ³⁷You shall make seven lamps for it, and the lamps shall be set up so as to give light on the area in front of it. ³⁸Its tongs and its trays shall be of pure gold. ³⁹It shall be made, with all these utensils, from a talent of pure gold. ⁴⁰See that you make them according to the pattern that was shown you on the mountain."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The tabernacle instructions begin. God initiates — 'The LORD spoke to Moses' — maintaining the pattern that all worship structures originate in divine command, not human invention.
2. 'A contribution' (terumah) — from the verb rum ('to lift up, to raise'). A terumah is something lifted up from one's possessions and given to God. The offering is voluntary: 'from every person whose heart moves him' (kol-ish asher yiddevenu libbo). The tabernacle is funded by willing hearts, not compulsory taxation.
3. The materials list begins with the most precious metals and descends: gold, silver, bronze. The materials that Israel took from Egypt (12:35-36) now find their purpose — what was plundered from the oppressor becomes the raw material for God's dwelling.
4. The dyed yarns — blue (tekhelet), purple (argaman), scarlet (tola'at shani) — are luxury materials associated with royalty. The tabernacle is a royal residence: God is King, and His dwelling is furnished accordingly.
5. Rams' skins, fine leather (tachash — the exact animal is unknown; proposals include dugong, dolphin, or fine goatskin), and acacia wood (atsei shittim) — desert-available materials. The tabernacle is built from what the wilderness provides, supplemented by what Egypt supplied.
6. Oil for the lamp (the menorah, vv.31-40) and spices for anointing oil and incense. Light and fragrance — the tabernacle engages sight and smell as well as the hearing that dominated Sinai.
7. Precious stones for the priestly vestments (detailed in ch28). The contribution encompasses the full range of materials: metals, textiles, wood, oils, spices, and gems.
8. 'Let them make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them' (ve'asu li miqdash veshakhanti betokham) — one of the most important verses in Exodus. The word miqdash ('sanctuary') is from qadosh ('holy'): a holy place, a place set apart for God. The verb shakhanti ('I may dwell') is from shakan — the root of Shekhinah. God's stated purpose for the tabernacle is not sacrifice, ceremony, or religion but dwelling: I want to live among you. The destination of the exodus is not merely the promised land but God's presence.
9. 'The pattern' (tavnit) — the tabernacle is not designed by human creativity but built according to a heavenly blueprint. The word tavnit means 'pattern, model, plan.' The earthly sanctuary replicates a heavenly reality (cf. Hebrews 8:5). The instruction 'so you shall make it' (ken ta'asu) demands exact compliance with the revealed design.
10. The ark (aron) is the first item described because it is the most sacred. It is a wooden chest (approximately 3.75 x 2.25 x 2.25 feet) that will contain the covenant tablets. The word aron is different from tevah (Noah's ark / Moses's basket) — it means a chest or box.
11. Gold inside and outside — the ark is entirely gold-covered. The internal gold means that even what is invisible (the interior, which only God sees) is as precious as the exterior. Nothing in God's presence is merely decorative; everything is substantial.
12. Four rings for carrying poles ensure the ark can be transported without being touched directly. The holiness of the ark requires mediated handling — even the priests who carry it do not touch its surface.
13. Acacia wood overlaid with gold — strength (wood) clothed in glory (gold). The combination appears throughout the tabernacle furniture.
14. The poles go through the rings for carrying. The ark is designed for movement: it travels with Israel through the wilderness. God's dwelling is not a fixed temple but a portable presence.
15. 'The poles shall not be removed' (lo yasuru mimmennu) — the ark is always ready to move. Even when stationary, the carrying poles remain in place. God's presence is perpetually mobile — He goes where His people go.
16. 'The Testimony' (ha'edut) — the stone tablets of the covenant, which will be written by God's own finger (31:18). The ark is, at its core, a container for God's words. The most sacred object in Israel holds text.

17. 'An atonement cover' (kapporet) — from the root kaphar ('to cover, to atone'). Traditionally rendered 'mercy seat.' The kapporet is the gold lid of the ark, the place where atonement is enacted on Yom Kippur (Leviticus 16:14-15). It is both furniture (a lid) and theology (the place of covering/atonement). This is the first appearance of the kippur register term in a tabernacle context.
18. Two cherubim (keruvim) — angelic figures, not the chubby infants of Renaissance art but powerful guardian beings associated with God's throne (cf. Genesis 3:24; Ezekiel 1, 10; Psalm 80:1). They are beaten from the same piece of gold as the kapporet — not attached but integral to the atonement cover.
19. The cherubim and the kapporet are 'one piece' (miqqashah) — hammered from a single mass of gold. The unity of the design means the guardians of God's throne and the place of atonement are inseparable. Where atonement happens, God's throne-guardians are present.
20. Wings outstretched, facing each other, looking down at the kapporet — the cherubim create a canopy over the atonement cover. Between their wings, above the kapporet, is where God's presence will be manifest (v22). The space between the cherubim is the most sacred space in all of Israel.
21. The structure is complete: Testimony inside the ark, kapporet on top, cherubim above. The layers move from written word (tablets) to atoning cover (kapporet) to divine presence (between the cherubim). Word, atonement, and presence are architecturally unified.
22. 'There I will meet with you' (venoadti lekha sham) — the verb ya'ad ('to meet, to appoint') is the root of mo'ed ('meeting, appointed time'). The space above the kapporet, between the cherubim, is the appointed meeting place between God and Moses. God's communication with Israel happens at the point of atonement. The word and the covering are inseparable: God speaks from the place where sin is covered.
23. The table of acacia wood — the second piece of tabernacle furniture. It holds the 'bread of the Presence' (lechem hapanim, v30). The table represents God's provision and fellowship.
24. Gold overlay, gold molding — the same construction pattern as the ark. Everything in the tabernacle's interior is gold: the furnishings match the sanctuary's holy character.
25. A rim (misgeret) and molding secure the objects on the table surface. The practical details ensure that the sacred bread is not displaced during transport.
26. Four rings, as with the ark — the table is also portable. Every piece of tabernacle furniture is designed for movement.
27. Poles near the rim for carrying — the engineering details are precise. The tabernacle is mobile worship architecture: every piece can be disassembled, carried, and reassembled.
28. Acacia and gold poles — the carrying system is consistent across all major furnishings.
29. Plates, dishes, pitchers, bowls — the tableware for the bread of the Presence and the drink offerings. All pure gold. The table is fully set for the divine meal.
30. 'The bread of the Presence' (lechem hapanim) — literally 'bread of the face' or 'face bread.' Twelve loaves (Leviticus 24:5-6), one for each tribe, set before God's face at all times. The bread represents Israel's constant presence before God and God's constant provision for Israel. The table is never empty — the relationship is perpetual.
31. The lampstand (menorah) — the third major piece. Pure gold, hammered from a single piece (miqqashah, as with the cherubim). The menorah provides light in the tabernacle's interior — without it, the sanctuary is dark. Light in God's dwelling comes from a source God designed.
32. Six branches extend from a central stem — three on each side, plus the central shaft, making seven lights total. The number seven signals completeness (as in creation's seven days). The menorah is a tree of light.
33. Almond blossom design (meshukadim) — the almond (shaqed) is the first tree to bloom in spring, and its name puns with shoqed ('watching, wakeful'). The menorah's design evokes both natural beauty and divine vigilance. Jeremiah 1:11-12 will play on this same pun.
34. The central stem has four cups — more than the branches, making it visually dominant. The design radiates from the center outward.
35. Buds at each branching point integrate the branches into the central structure. The whole is organic — a single golden tree with seven flowering tops.
36. 'A single piece of hammered work' (miqqashah achat) — no soldering, no assembly. The entire menorah is beaten from one talent of gold. The unity of the design reflects the unity of the God it serves.
37. Seven lamps illuminate the space 'in front of it' (al-ever panehah) — the menorah faces the table of showbread across the sanctuary. Light falls on the bread of the Presence. Provision is visible in the light God provides.
38. Tongs and trays of pure gold — the tools for maintaining the lamps are as sacred as the lampstand itself. Nothing in the tabernacle is mundane.
39. One talent of gold (approximately 75 pounds / 34 kilograms) for the entire menorah and its utensils. The weight is enormous, the craftsmanship extraordinary.
40. 'According to the pattern shown you on the mountain' (betavnitam asher-attah mor'eh bahar) — the chapter closes as it began (v9): the earthly tabernacle must replicate the heavenly design. Human creativity serves divine specification. The final word is the mountain — Sinai remains the origin point of everything Israel builds.

26

Summary: *God gives detailed instructions for the tabernacle's curtains, frames, and crossbars. The innermost layer features finely woven linen with cherubim in blue, purple, and scarlet. Goat-hair curtains form the outer tent. Gold-plated acacia frames create the structure, joined by silver bases.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The tabernacle (mishkan, from shakan, 'to dwell') is a portable dwelling — theology in textile. The cherubim woven into the innermost curtains mirror the cherubim on the mercy seat, so that guardian figures surround God's space from every direction. The modularity of the design (two sets of five curtains, coupled by gold clasps, v6) reveals a structure built for assembly, disassembly, and transport — a community on the move carries God's presence with them. The veil (parokhet, v31) separates the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place, creating the graduated holiness that defines tabernacle theology.*

Translation Friction: *The technical textile vocabulary posed consistent challenges. The Hebrew tekhelet (blue/violet), argaman (purple), and tola'at shani (scarlet) are dye terms with specific ancient referents; we retained the color terms without specifying the dyeing agents. The dimensions in cubits (approximately 18 inches each) we preserved in the Hebrew measurement, adding approximate modern equivalents in notes. The word qerashim ('frames,' v15) was traditionally rendered 'boards,' but recent scholarship favors open frameworks; we chose 'frames.'*

Connections: *The veil torn at Christ's death (Matthew 27:51; Mark 15:38) is this parokhet. The tabernacle as portable dwelling anticipates the temple of 1 Kings 6-8 and ultimately the incarnation (John 1:14, where skenoo, 'tabernacled,' echoes mishkan). The cherubim on the curtains connect to the garden guardians of Genesis 3:24.*

¹"You shall make the tabernacle with ten curtains of finely twisted linen and blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, with cherubim skillfully worked into them. ²The length of each curtain shall be twenty-eight cubits, and the width of each curtain four cubits. All the curtains shall be the same size. ³Five curtains shall be joined to one another, and the other five curtains shall be joined to one another. ⁴You shall make loops of blue yarn on the edge of the outermost curtain in the first set, and likewise on the edge of the outermost curtain in the second set. ⁵You shall make fifty loops on the one curtain, and fifty loops on the edge of the curtain in the second set, the loops being opposite one another. ⁶You shall make fifty clasps of gold and join the curtains to one another with the clasps, so that the tabernacle forms a single unit. ⁷"You shall make curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle. You shall make eleven curtains. ⁸The length of each curtain shall be thirty cubits, and the width of each curtain four cubits. The eleven curtains shall be the same size. ⁹You shall join five curtains by themselves and six curtains by themselves, and you shall fold the sixth curtain double at the front of the tent. ¹⁰You shall make fifty loops on the edge of the outermost curtain in one set, and fifty loops on the edge of the curtain in the other set. ¹¹You shall make fifty clasps of bronze, put the clasps into the loops, and join the tent together so that it forms a single unit. ¹²The part that hangs over the back of the tabernacle — the extra half-curtain — shall hang over the back. ¹³The extra cubit on each side in the length of the tent curtains shall hang over the sides of the tabernacle, on this side and on that side, to cover it. ¹⁴You shall make a covering for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of fine leather on top of that. ¹⁵"You shall make upright frames of acacia wood for the tabernacle. ¹⁶Each frame shall be ten cubits long and a cubit and a half wide. ¹⁷Each frame shall have two tenons joined to one another. You shall make all the frames of the tabernacle this way. ¹⁸You shall make the frames for the tabernacle: twenty frames for the south side. ¹⁹You shall make forty bases of silver under the twenty frames — two bases under each frame for its two tenons. ²⁰For the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, twenty frames, ²¹with their forty bases of silver — two bases under each frame. ²²For the back of the tabernacle, on the west side, you shall make six frames. ²³You shall make two frames for the corners of the tabernacle at the back. ²⁴They shall be joined at the bottom and coupled at the top in a single ring. Both of them shall be this way; they shall form the two corners. ²⁵There shall be eight frames with their bases of silver — sixteen bases, two bases under each frame. ²⁶"You shall make bars of acacia wood: five for the frames on one side of the tabernacle, ²⁷five bars for the frames on the other side of the tabernacle, and five bars for the

frames on the back side of the tabernacle, to the west. ²⁸The middle bar, halfway up the frames, shall run from end to end. ²⁹You shall overlay the frames with gold and make their rings of gold as holders for the bars, and you shall overlay the bars with gold. ³⁰You shall set up the tabernacle according to the plan that was shown you on the mountain. ³¹"You shall make a veil of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely twisted linen, with cherubim skillfully worked into it. ³²You shall hang it on four pillars of acacia overlaid with gold, with hooks of gold, on four bases of silver. ³³You shall hang the veil from the clasps, and you shall bring the ark of the Testimony in there behind the veil. The veil shall separate for you the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. ³⁴You shall put the atonement cover on the ark of the Testimony in the Most Holy Place. ³⁵You shall set the table outside the veil, and the lampstand on the south side of the tabernacle opposite the table. You shall place the table on the north side. ³⁶"You shall make a screen for the entrance of the tent, of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely twisted linen, the work of an embroiderer. ³⁷You shall make for the screen five pillars of acacia and overlay them with gold. Their hooks shall be of gold, and you shall cast five bases of bronze for them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The tabernacle (mishkan, from shakan, 'to dwell') is God's portable dwelling place. The innermost layer — finely woven linen with cherubim — creates a sacred canopy. The cherubim woven into the curtains echo the cherubim on the kapporet (25:18-20): the guardian figures surround God's space from every direction.
2. Each curtain is approximately 42 x 6 feet. The uniformity ('all the same size') reflects the ordered perfection of sacred space — nothing in God's dwelling is haphazard or improvised.
3. Two sets of five curtains, joined together, create two large panels that will be coupled to form the ceiling. The construction method is modular — designed for assembly, disassembly, and transport.
4. Blue yarn loops — the color tekhelet (blue/violet) is associated with royalty and divinity throughout the Torah. Even the functional connectors reflect the sacred nature of the space.
5. Fifty loops on each panel, precisely aligned ('opposite one another'). The engineering detail ensures exact fit — sacred architecture demands precision.
6. Gold clasps (qarssei zahav) join the two halves into 'a single unit' (echad). The word echad ('one') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4): as God is one, His dwelling is one. The tabernacle's unity reflects its builder's nature.
7. The goats' hair tent (ohel) covers the linen tabernacle (mishkan). The outer layer protects the inner — the practical shields the sacred. Goats' hair is waterproof and durable: functional material serving holy purposes.
8. Slightly larger curtains (30 x 6 feet vs 28 x 6) to provide overhang and complete coverage of the inner curtains beneath.
9. The sixth curtain is doubled at the front — extra material providing a visible entrance flap. The tabernacle's approach is marked by the fold of its covering.
10. Fifty loops, mirroring the inner curtain construction. The outer tent replicates the inner pattern — the layers correspond.
11. Bronze clasps (qarssei nechoshet) for the outer tent — less precious than the gold of the inner curtains. Materials decrease in value from inside out: gold (holiest), then bronze (protective outer layer). Proximity to God determines material worth.
12. The extra half-curtain hangs over the back — practical covering with aesthetic consequence. The rear of the tabernacle is draped, not exposed.
13. The overhang on each side protects the linen curtains from exposure. The engineering accounts for weather and wear — sacred space is also practical space.
14. Two additional outer coverings: rams' skins dyed red and tachash (fine leather). Four layers total: linen, goats' hair, rams' skins, leather. Each layer adds protection; the outermost is the most weather-resistant.
15. Upright frames (qerashim) of acacia wood form the tabernacle's structural skeleton. Acacia (shittah) is the hardest wood available in the Sinai wilderness — dense, durable, and insect-resistant.
16. Each frame is approximately 15 x 2.25 feet. The height (10 cubits) matches the height of the curtains, creating a precise fit between structure and covering.
17. Tenons (yadot, literally 'hands') are projections that fit into sockets. The joinery is mortise-and-tenon — each frame locks into its base with two connection points for stability.
18. Twenty frames on the south side — the tabernacle's longer walls. The total south-wall length is approximately 45 feet (20 frames x 1.5 cubits each).
19. Silver bases (adnei kesef) — each frame sits in two silver sockets. Forty bases for twenty frames. The silver came from the census atonement money (30:11-16; 38:25-28), making the tabernacle's foundation literally built on atonement.

20. The north side mirrors the south: twenty frames, identical construction. The bilateral symmetry creates a balanced, ordered space.
21. Forty silver bases on the north, matching the south. The repetition ensures structural consistency — both walls bear equal load.
22. Six frames for the western back wall — the narrow end. The tabernacle opens to the east, facing the sunrise. The Most Holy Place is at the western end, the deepest interior.
23. Two additional corner frames solve the engineering challenge of joining the back wall to the side walls at right angles.
24. The corner frames are joined top and bottom, creating rigid corners that hold the structure square. The detail 'coupled at the top in a single ring' describes a metal fitting that locks the corner.
25. Eight frames on the back (six plus two corners), sixteen silver bases. The total frame count: $20 + 20 + 8 = 48$ frames on 96 silver bases.
26. Cross-bars (berichim) of acacia wood brace the frames horizontally. Five bars per wall provide lateral stability — without them, the upright frames would sway.
27. Five bars on each of the three walled sides. The bar system creates a rigid box structure that can withstand desert winds.
28. The middle bar runs the entire length of the wall — a single continuous timber that unifies the frame system. This is the structural spine of each wall.
29. Gold overlay on frames and bars — even the structural members are covered in gold. The entire interior surface is golden. Nothing exposed to view inside the tabernacle is bare wood.
30. 'According to the plan shown you on the mountain' (kemishpato asher hor'eta bahar) — the chapter closes with the same insistence on heavenly pattern that opened the tabernacle instructions (25:9, 40). Human builders follow divine design.
31. The veil (parokhet) separates the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. Its materials — blue, purple, scarlet, fine linen — match the inner curtains. Cherubim are woven into it, as they were on the curtains and fashioned on the kapporet. The cherubim guard every threshold of God's presence.
32. Four gold-overlaid pillars support the veil. Silver bases, gold hooks — the materials match the space's holiness. The veil hangs between the accessible and the inaccessible.
33. The veil's function is separation: 'it shall separate for you the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place' (vehivdilakh happarokhet lakhem bein haqqodesh uvein qodesh haqqodashim). The word hivdilakh ('separate, divide') is the same verb God used to separate light from darkness at creation (Genesis 1:4). The veil is a creation-boundary: it divides realms.
34. The kapporet goes on the ark, inside the Most Holy Place — the innermost point of the tabernacle, behind the veil, accessible only to the high priest once a year on Yom Kippur.
35. The table (north) and lampstand (south) are positioned in the Holy Place, outside the veil. The bread of the Presence faces the light of the menorah across the room — provision and illumination in the space where priests serve daily.
36. The entrance screen (masakh) is less elaborate than the inner veil — embroidered, not woven with cherubim. The distinction marks the difference between the entrance to the Holy Place and the entrance to the Most Holy Place.
37. Five bronze-based pillars support the entrance screen. Bronze bases (vs silver for the veil pillars) reflect the descending holiness gradient from inside out: Most Holy (gold/silver) Holy (silver/bronze) courtyard (bronze).

27

Summary: God gives instructions for the bronze altar of burnt offering — the first object encountered in the courtyard — along with its utensils, the courtyard enclosure of linen hangings on bronze pillars, and the perpetual lamp fueled by pure olive oil.

What Makes This Remarkable: The altar's horns (qarnot) project from the four corners as a single piece with the altar — blood is applied to these horns in sacrificial rituals, and they serve as a place of sanctuary (1 Kings 1:50). The courtyard material hierarchy creates a holiness gradient: bronze in the courtyard, silver at the structure's base, gold in the interior. The perpetual lamp (ner tamid, v20) burns 'from evening to morning' — light never ceases in the space where God dwells. Israel's first communal obligation is to supply oil for this unending flame.

Translation Friction: We rendered mizbach ha'olah as 'altar of burnt offering' rather than simply 'altar,' to distinguish it from the incense altar introduced in chapter 30. The bronze (nechoshet) overlay reflects the courtyard's position in the holiness gradient — not gold (interior) but the appropriate metal for the space of sacrifice. The phrase ner tamid ('perpetual lamp') we rendered as such, noting that 'perpetual' (tamid) means continually maintained, not miraculously self-sustaining.

Connections: The altar's design anticipates Solomon's much larger bronze altar (2 Chronicles 4:1). The horns of the altar appear in 1 Kings 1:50-51 and Psalm 118:27. The perpetual lamp connects to the seven-branched lampstand of 25:31-40 and anticipates the 'lamp of God' in Samuel's temple (1 Samuel 3:3). The courtyard enclosure establishes the boundary between sacred and common space.

¹"You shall make the altar of acacia wood, five cubits long and five cubits wide — the altar shall be square — and three cubits high. ²You shall make horns for it on its four corners. Its horns shall be of one piece with it, and you shall overlay it with bronze. ³You shall make pots for removing its ashes, and shovels and basins and forks and fire pans. You shall make all its utensils of bronze. ⁴You shall make for it a grating, a network of bronze, and on the net you shall make four bronze rings at its four corners. ⁵You shall set it under the ledge of the altar so that the net extends halfway down the altar. ⁶You shall make poles for the altar, poles of acacia wood, and overlay them with bronze. ⁷The poles shall be put through the rings, so that the poles are on the two sides of the altar when it is carried. ⁸You shall make it hollow, with boards. As it was shown to you on the mountain, so shall it be made. ⁹"You shall make the courtyard of the tabernacle. On the south side the courtyard shall have hangings of finely twisted linen, a hundred cubits long on that side. ¹⁰Its twenty pillars and their twenty bases shall be of bronze. The hooks of the pillars and their bands shall be of silver. ¹¹Likewise along the north side there shall be hangings a hundred cubits long, with twenty pillars and twenty bronze bases. The hooks and bands of the pillars shall be of silver. ¹²The width of the courtyard on the west side shall have hangings of fifty cubits, with ten pillars and ten bases. ¹³The width of the courtyard on the east side shall be fifty cubits. ¹⁴The hangings on one side of the gate shall be fifteen cubits, with three pillars and three bases. ¹⁵On the other side shall be hangings of fifteen cubits, with three pillars and three bases. ¹⁶For the gate of the courtyard there shall be a screen twenty cubits long, of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely twisted linen, the work of an embroiderer, with four pillars and four bases. ¹⁷All the pillars around the courtyard shall be banded with silver. Their hooks shall be of silver and their bases of bronze. ¹⁸The length of the courtyard shall be a hundred cubits, its width fifty cubits, and its height five cubits, with hangings of finely twisted linen and bases of bronze. ¹⁹All the utensils of the tabernacle used in all its service, and all its tent pegs, and all the tent pegs of the courtyard, shall be of bronze. ²⁰"You shall command the sons of Israel to bring you clear oil of pressed olives for the light, to keep a lamp burning continually. ²¹In the tent of meeting, outside the veil that is before the Testimony, Aaron and his sons shall tend it from evening to morning before the LORD. It shall be an eternal statute throughout their generations on behalf of the sons of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The bronze altar (mizbach hanechoshet) is the first object encountered upon entering the courtyard — sacrifice is the gateway to God's presence. Five cubits square (approximately 7.5 x 7.5 feet) and three cubits high (approximately 4.5 feet), it is the largest piece of tabernacle furniture.
2. 'Horns on its four corners' (qarnot al arba pinnotav) — the horns are projections at each corner, integral to the altar ('of one piece with it'). Blood is applied to these horns during sacrificial rituals (Leviticus 4:7, 18, 25, 30). A person could grasp the horns for sanctuary (1 Kings 1:50). The horn symbolizes power and refuge.
3. The altar's utensils are all bronze — pots, shovels, basins, forks, fire pans. The bronze material reflects the courtyard's position in the holiness gradient: not gold (interior), not silver (structural), but bronze (sacrificial/external).
4. The bronze grating sits inside the altar, allowing air circulation for the fire and drainage for the blood. The engineering serves the sacrificial function — nothing in the design is merely decorative.
5. The net extends halfway down — the upper portion holds the fire and sacrifice, the lower portion provides structural support and airflow.
6. Carrying poles of acacia and bronze — the altar, like the ark, table, and lampstand, is portable. Every piece of sacred furniture moves with Israel.
7. Poles through rings on two sides — the carrying system is consistent across all tabernacle pieces. The altar is always ready to travel.
8. 'Hollow, with boards' — the altar is not solid but a frame structure, likely filled with earth at each campsite (cf. 20:24, 'an altar of earth you shall make for Me'). The heavenly pattern shown on the mountain governs the construction.
9. The courtyard (chatser) is the outermost sacred zone — 100 x 50 cubits (approximately 150 x 75 feet). Linen hangings create walls that separate sacred space from the surrounding camp. The enclosure is visible but not transparent: the linen creates a boundary without a barrier to sight.
10. Twenty pillars on the south side with bronze bases and silver hooks — the material gradient continues: bronze at ground level, silver at attachment points. The courtyard is less holy than the sanctuary interior but holier than the camp beyond.

11. The north side mirrors the south — bilateral symmetry governs the entire tabernacle complex.
12. The west side (back of the tabernacle) is fifty cubits — half the length of the sides. The courtyard is twice as long as it is wide, creating a rectangular processional space leading toward the sanctuary.
13. The east side (front, entrance side) is also fifty cubits wide but divided by the gate.
14. Fifteen cubits of hangings on one side of the gate — the entrance is centered on the east wall.
15. Fifteen cubits on the other side — the gate is flanked symmetrically. The entrance is twenty cubits wide (v16), leaving fifteen cubits of hanging on each side.
16. The gate screen is the courtyard's entrance — embroidered (not woven with cherubim like the inner veil). Blue, purple, scarlet, and linen: the same four materials used throughout the tabernacle, maintaining visual continuity from outer entrance to inner sanctuary.
17. Silver bands and hooks throughout — silver is the connecting material that holds the courtyard together, just as silver bases hold the tabernacle frames.
18. The complete dimensions are stated: 100 x 50 x 5 cubits. The five-cubit height of the hangings is high enough to block ground-level view but low enough that the tabernacle structure rises above it, visible from the camp.
19. All utensils and tent pegs are bronze. The inventory ensures completeness — nothing is overlooked. The pegs anchor the entire structure against wind.
20. 'Clear oil of pressed olives' (shemen zayit zakh) — the finest quality olive oil, cold-pressed without heat to ensure clarity. The eternal light (ner tamid) in the tabernacle burns the best fuel available. God's light is sustained by the people's contribution.
21. 'From evening to morning' — the lamp burns through the night, ensuring the tabernacle is never in darkness. Aaron and his sons tend it — priestly service includes the maintenance of sacred light. 'An eternal statute' (chuqqat olam) — the lamp-tending obligation is perpetual, binding across all generations.

28

Summary: *God commands the making of sacred garments for Aaron — the ephod, breastpiece with twelve stones for the twelve tribes, robe, turban, and gold plate inscribed 'Holy to the LORD.' The garments are made 'for glory and for splendor' by Spirit-filled artisans.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The purpose statement lekhavod uletif'aret ('for glory and for splendor,' v2) connects the priestly vestments to God's own kavod — the priest dressed in these garments carries a visible representation of divine glory. The breastpiece (choshen) bears twelve stones engraved with tribal names, so that Aaron carries all Israel on his heart when he enters God's presence (v29). The gold plate inscription qodesh laYHWH ('Holy to the LORD,' v36) on the turban makes the high priest a walking declaration of consecration.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase chakhemei-lev ('wise of heart,' v3) we rendered as 'skilled artisans,' since the Hebrew concept of 'heart-wisdom' means practical expertise, not merely emotional intelligence. The twelve gemstones on the breastpiece (vv17-20) include several terms whose identification is uncertain in modern mineralogy; we followed traditional identifications while noting scholarly uncertainty. The Urim and Thummim (v30) we left untranslated, as their exact nature and function remain debated — they appear to be oracular instruments for discerning God's will.*

Connections: *The breastpiece bearing tribal names anticipates the intercessory function of the high priest developed in Hebrews 7-9. The 'Holy to the LORD' inscription connects to Zechariah 14:20, where even horse bells bear the inscription. The priestly garments' beauty anticipates the temple splendor of 1 Kings 6 and the new Jerusalem of Revelation 21.*

¹"Bring your brother Aaron near to you, along with his sons, from among the Israelites, to serve Me as priests — Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar, Aaron's sons. ²You shall make sacred garments for your brother Aaron — for glory and for splendor. ³Speak to all the skilled artisans whom I have filled with a spirit of wisdom, and they shall make Aaron's garments to consecrate him to serve Me as priest. ⁴These are the garments they shall make: a breastpiece, an ephod, a robe, a checkered tunic, a turban, and a sash. They shall make sacred garments for your brother Aaron and his sons to serve Me as

priests. ⁵They shall use gold, blue yarn, purple yarn, scarlet yarn, and fine linen. ⁶They shall make the ephod of gold, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen — the work of a skilled designer. ⁷It shall have two shoulder straps attached at its two edges, joining it together. ⁸The decorative waistband on it shall be of the same workmanship and materials — gold, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen. ⁹Take two onyx stones and engrave on them the names of the sons of Israel. ¹⁰Six of their names on one stone, and the remaining six names on the other stone, in birth order. ¹¹With the skill of a gem-cutter, engrave the two stones like seal engravings with the names of the sons of Israel. Mount them in gold filigree settings. ¹²Set the two stones on the shoulder straps of the ephod as stones of remembrance for the sons of Israel. Aaron shall bear their names before the LORD on his two shoulders as a memorial. ¹³Make gold filigree settings, ¹⁴and two chains of pure gold, braided like cords. Attach the braided chains to the settings. ¹⁵You shall make a breastpiece of decision — skilled designer's work, like the ephod. Make it of gold, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen. ¹⁶It shall be square and folded double — a span long and a span wide. ¹⁷Mount on it a setting of stones — four rows of stones. The first row: a ruby, a topaz, and an emerald. ¹⁸The second row: a turquoise, a lapis lazuli, and a moonstone. ¹⁹The third row: a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. ²⁰The fourth row: a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper. They shall be mounted in gold filigree settings. ²¹The stones shall correspond to the names of the sons of Israel — twelve in all, according to their names. Each shall be engraved like a seal with the name of one of the twelve tribes. ²²For the breastpiece make braided chains of pure gold, corded work. ²³Make two gold rings for the breastpiece and attach them to its two upper corners. ²⁴Put the two gold braided chains through the two rings at the corners of the breastpiece. ²⁵Attach the other two ends of the braided chains to the two filigree settings on the front of the ephod's shoulder straps. ²⁶Make two more gold rings and place them on the two lower corners of the breastpiece, on its inner edge facing the ephod. ²⁷Make two more gold rings and attach them to the front of the ephod's two shoulder straps, at the lower part near the seam, just above the ephod's waistband. ²⁸The breastpiece shall be bound by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, keeping it above the ephod's waistband so that the breastpiece does not come loose from the ephod. ²⁹Aaron shall carry the names of the sons of Israel in the breastpiece of decision over his heart when he enters the holy place — as a perpetual memorial before the LORD. ³⁰Place into the breastpiece of decision the Urim and the Thummim. They shall be over Aaron's heart when he comes before the LORD, and Aaron shall carry the judgment of the Israelites over his heart before the LORD at all times. ³¹Make the robe of the ephod entirely of blue yarn. ³²It shall have an opening for the head in the center, with a woven binding around the opening — like the collar of a coat of mail — so that it does not tear. ³³On its hem make pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn all around the hem, with gold bells between them all around — ³⁴a gold bell and a pomegranate, a gold bell and a pomegranate, all around the hem of the robe. ³⁵Aaron shall wear it when he serves, so that its sound is heard when he enters the holy place before the LORD and when he comes out — so that he does not die. ³⁶Make a plate of pure gold and engrave on it, like a seal engraving: HOLY TO THE LORD. ³⁷Fasten it to a blue cord so it stays on the turban — on the front of the turban it shall be. ³⁸It shall be on Aaron's forehead, and Aaron shall bear the guilt connected with the sacred offerings that the Israelites consecrate as their holy gifts. It shall always be on his forehead, so that they may be accepted before the LORD. ³⁹Weave the tunic in a checkered pattern of fine linen. Make the turban of fine linen and the sash with embroidered work. ⁴⁰For Aaron's sons make tunics, sashes, and caps — for glory and for splendor. ⁴¹Clothe your brother Aaron and his sons in these garments. Anoint them, ordain them, and consecrate them, so they may serve Me as priests. ⁴²Make linen undergarments for them to cover their bare flesh, reaching from the waist to the thighs. ⁴³They shall be on Aaron and his sons when they enter the tent of meeting or approach the altar to serve in the holy place, so that they do not incur guilt and die. This is a permanent statute for him and his descendants after him."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The priestly garment instructions begin with the appointment of the priesthood itself. Five men are named: Aaron and his four sons. The verb *haqrev* ('bring near,' from *q-r-b* — the offering root) frames the priests' selection as a sacred presentation. All four sons are listed, though Nadab and Abihu will die in Leviticus 10 for offering unauthorized fire. The phrase *lekhahano-li* ('to serve Me as priests,' literally 'to priest for Me') defines the priesthood as personal service to God.

2. The purpose of the priestly garments: *lekhavod uletif'aret* ('for glory and for splendor'). The word *kavod* ('glory, weight, honor') — the register term — connects the priestly vestments to God's own glory. The priest dressed in these garments carries a visible representation of divine *kavod*. The word *tif'eret* ('splendor, beauty, adornment') adds aesthetic magnificence to theological weight. The garments are not merely functional but beautiful — worship engages the visual sense.
3. The artisans are *chakhemei-lev* ('wise of heart' — skilled craftsmen) whom God has filled with *ruach chokhmah* ('spirit of wisdom'). As with Bezalel (31:3), artistic skill is a divine endowment. The garments' purpose: *leqaddesho* ('to consecrate him') — the clothing itself effects consecration. Wearing the garments transforms Aaron from an ordinary Israelite into the high priest. The garments do not merely identify the priest; they create the priestly status.
4. The six-piece high priestly ensemble: *choshen* ('breastpiece' — the gem-studded decision plate), *efod* ('ephod' — an ornate outer vest), *me'il* ('robe' — the blue garment worn under the ephod), *ketonet tashbets* ('checkered tunic' — a woven linen undergarment), *mitsnefet* ('turban' — the head covering bearing the golden plate), and *avnet* ('sash' — the waistband). Aaron's sons receive a simpler four-piece set (v40). The high priest wears more because he bears more — his garments carry the names of all twelve tribes.
5. Five materials — the same palette as the tabernacle itself (25:3-4): *zahav* ('gold'), *tekhelet* ('blue' — a costly dye from the murex snail), *argaman* ('purple' — an even more expensive murex dye), *tola'at shani* ('scarlet' — crimson dye from an insect), and *shesh* ('fine linen' — Egyptian-quality woven linen). The priest wears the tabernacle's colors — he is a walking extension of the sacred space. When he enters the tent, his garments match its fabric.
6. The *efod* — the signature garment of the high priest — is described first. It is woven from all five materials: gold thread interwoven with the four colored yarns and linen. *Ma'aseh choshev* ('the work of a skilled designer/thinker') — the verb *chashav* means 'to think, to devise' (the same root as 31:4), emphasizing that the ephod requires not just weaving skill but creative design intelligence.
7. The ephod's construction: two shoulder straps (*khetafot*) connect the front and back panels at the shoulders. The garment functions as a sacred vest or apron, held in place by the shoulder pieces and the sash. The shoulder straps will bear the onyx stones engraved with the tribal names (v9-12).
8. The *cheshev afuddato* ('the band/waistband of the ephod') secures the garment at the waist. It is made from the same five materials (*mimmennu yihyeh* — 'it shall be of it'), ensuring visual and material unity between the ephod body and its fastening. The priestly garments are an integrated whole — no element is mismatched.
9. Two *avnei-shoham* ('onyx stones') will carry the names of the twelve tribes — six names on each stone (v10). The engraving (*pittachta* — 'you shall engrave/open') is permanent: the names are cut into the stone, not painted or attached. The high priest carries Israel's identity physically on his body. Every time he enters the sanctuary, twelve names go with him.
10. The names follow *ketoldotam* ('according to their generations/birth order') — the sequence of Jacob's sons by birth, not by tribal importance. Birth order rather than political ranking ensures that the representation is familial, not hierarchical. All twelve tribes are equally present before God — no tribe's name is larger, higher, or more prominent than another's.
11. The engraving quality: *ma'aseh charash even* ('the work of a stone-craftsman') using *pituchei chotam* ('seal engravings') — the same technique used to cut official seals. The names of Israel's tribes are engraved with the precision of royal insignia. The *mishbetsot zahav* ('gold filigree settings') secure the stones in ornate golden frames on the shoulder straps. The technical precision demanded reflects the theological weight of what the stones represent.
12. The stones' function: *avnei zikkharon livnei Yisra'el* ('stones of remembrance for the sons of Israel'). The word *zikkharon* ('memorial, remembrance') — the same word used for the grain offering's *azkarah* (Lev 2:2) — triggers divine attention. When Aaron enters God's presence wearing these stones, God sees Israel's names. *Venasa Aharon et-shemotam lifnei YHWH* ('Aaron shall bear their names before the LORD') — the priest carries the nation. His shoulders literally support the weight of Israel's identity before God. The verb *nasa* ('to bear, to carry') is the same word used for bearing sin — the priest bears both names and guilt.
13. Gold settings for the shoulder stones — the technical instruction continues the detailed craftsmanship specifications.
14. Pure gold chains (*sharshot zahav tahor*) connect the shoulder stone settings to the breastpiece (v22-25). The chains are *ma'aseh avot* ('corded/braided work') — twisted gold rope, combining strength with beauty. These chains form the visible link between the shoulder stones (bearing tribal names) and the breastpiece (bearing twelve more stones with tribal names).
15. The *choshen mishpat* ('breastpiece of judgment/decision') is the high priest's most distinctive garment element. The word *mishpat* here means 'judgment, decision' — this is the plate that holds the Urim and Thummim (v30), the oracular instruments used to discern God's will. The breastpiece is made from the same five materials as the ephod (*kema'aseh efod* — 'like the work of the ephod'), maintaining the unified aesthetic. It is not merely decorative but functional — it is the instrument through which God communicates decisions to Israel.
16. The breastpiece is *ravua* ('square'), *kaful* ('doubled/folded'), and one *zeret* ('span' — approximately 9 inches) in each direction. The doubled fabric creates a pocket for the Urim and Thummim (v30). The square shape — equal on all sides — symbolizes completeness and balance, appropriate for an instrument of divine judgment.
17. Four rows of three stones each (twelve total, one per tribe). The first row: *odem* ('ruby/carnelian' — red), *pitdah* ('topaz/chrysolite' — yellow-green), and *bareqet* ('emerald/beryl' — green). The exact identification of ancient gemstones is uncertain — the Hebrew terms may refer to different stones than the English names suggest. What is certain is the visual effect: twelve brilliant gemstones arranged in a grid on the high priest's chest, each

carrying a tribal name.

18. Second row: nofekh ('turquoise/malachite'), sappir ('lapis lazuli' — the biblical 'sapphire' is almost certainly lapis lazuli, a deep blue stone flecked with gold), and yahalom ('moonstone/diamond' — likely a clear or white stone). The KJV's 'diamond' for yahalom is probably incorrect since diamonds were not cut or polished in the ancient Near East.
19. Third row: leshem ('jacinth/amber'), shevo ('agate/banded stone'), and achlamah ('amethyst' — purple quartz). The stones progress through the color spectrum across the four rows, creating a visual tapestry of light and color on the priest's chest.
20. Fourth row: tarshish ('beryl/chrysolite' — possibly the stone of Tarshish, a golden-yellow gem), shoham ('onyx' — the same stone as the shoulder pieces, v9), and yashfeh ('jasper' — green or multicolored). All twelve stones are meshubatsim zahav ('set in gold filigree'). The completed breastpiece is a constellation of colored light framed in gold — each stone catching and refracting light as the priest moves.
21. Each stone bears one tribal name — ish al-shemo ('each with his name'). Twelve stones, twelve names, twelve tribes. The priest carries the entire nation on his chest — over his heart — when he enters God's presence. The engraving is pituchei chotam ('seal engravings'), the same technique as the shoulder stones (v11). The names are permanent, cut into gemstone. Israel's identity before God is literally etched in stone and worn against the high priest's beating heart.
22. The braided gold chains (from v14) attach the breastpiece to the ephod's shoulder settings — connecting the twelve stones on the chest to the two stones on the shoulders. The priest wears twenty-four instances of Israel's name: twelve on the breastpiece, twelve more (six per stone) on the shoulders.
23. Gold rings at the breastpiece's upper corners receive the chains from the shoulder settings. The attachment system (v22-28) secures the breastpiece firmly to the ephod — it must not shift or detach during priestly service. The mechanical details ensure that Israel's names stay in place over the priest's heart.
24. The chains thread through the rings, connecting breastpiece to ephod via the shoulder settings. The chain-ring-setting system creates a secure, flexible attachment that moves with the priest's body.
25. The chains run from the breastpiece corners upward to the shoulder settings — the same settings that hold the onyx stones bearing tribal names. The complete system: names on the shoulders (v12), names on the chest (v21), connected by golden chains. The priest's upper body is wrapped in Israel's identity.
26. Lower attachment rings on the breastpiece's inner edge — these connect to the ephod's waistband (v27-28) to prevent the breastpiece from swinging outward during movement.
27. These ephod-side rings correspond to the breastpiece's lower rings (v26). A blue cord will thread through both sets (v28), binding the breastpiece to the ephod at the waistband level. The mechanical description is extraordinarily precise — every ring, chain, and cord is specified to ensure the breastpiece stays securely positioned over the priest's heart.
28. The petil tekhelet ('blue cord') — the same expensive blue dye used in the tabernacle fabrics — ties the lower connections. The purpose: velo-yizzach hachoshen me'al ha'efod ('so the breastpiece does not shift from the ephod'). The verb zach ('shift, move away') — the breastpiece must not wander. Israel's names must stay fixed over the priest's heart. The blue cord is both functional (holding the breastpiece in place) and symbolic (the color of heaven securing the names of earth's covenant people).
29. The breastpiece's theological function stated explicitly: venasa Aharon et-shemot benei-Yisra'el bechoshen hammishpat al-libbo ('Aaron shall carry the names of Israel's sons in the breastpiece of decision over his heart'). Al-libbo — 'over his heart' — is the key phrase. The priest carries the nation against his heartbeat. Every pulse drives Israel's names into God's presence. Lezikkaron lifnei-YHWH tamid ('as a perpetual memorial before the LORD') — the memorial is permanent (tamid), not occasional. The priest never enters the sanctuary without Israel over his heart.
30. The Urim and Thummim (ha'urim voha'tummim) are placed inside the breastpiece's pocket (created by the doubled fabric, v16). Their exact nature is unknown — possibly lots or stones used for binary oracular decisions (yes/no, go/stay, guilty/innocent). The names may derive from or ('light') and tam ('completeness/truth') — 'lights and perfections' or 'illumination and wholeness.' The phrase venasa Aharon et-mishpat benei-Yisra'el al-libbo ('Aaron shall carry the judgment of the Israelites over his heart') means the priest bears both Israel's identity (names, v29) and Israel's need for divine guidance (judgment, v30) simultaneously over his heart.
31. The me'il ('robe') worn under the ephod is kelil tekhelet ('entirely blue') — pure, undiluted blue. This is the garment visible beneath the ephod, creating a blue field behind the multicolored ephod and breastpiece. The tekhelet blue — extracted from the murex snail at enormous cost — was associated with royalty and heaven. The priest wears the color of the sky.
32. The neckline is reinforced: safah ('a binding/border') around the head opening prevents tearing. The comparison kefi tachra ('like the opening of a coat of mail') references military armor — the robe's neckline is as sturdy as a soldier's collar. The instruction lo yiqqarea ('it shall not tear') may carry ritual significance: a torn priestly garment would be a sign of mourning (prohibited during service, Lev 10:6) or of defect.
33. The robe's lower hem is decorated with alternating pomegranates (rimmonim — fabric ornaments in the three colored yarns) and gold bells (pa'amonei zahav). The pomegranate was a symbol of fertility and abundance throughout the ancient Near East. The alternating pattern — fruit, bell, fruit, bell — creates both visual beauty and audible announcement: the priest's movements produce sound.

34. The alternating pattern stated rhythmically: pa'amon zahav verimmon, pa'amon zahav verimmon — bell and fruit, bell and fruit. The repetition in the Hebrew text mirrors the physical pattern on the garment. The priest walking in the sanctuary creates a gentle chiming — his presence is heard before he is seen.
35. The bells' purpose is survival: venishma qolo ('its sound shall be heard') — the chiming announces the priest's approach and departure. Velo yamut ('so that he does not die') — silence could be fatal. The priest must be heard; unannounced entry into God's presence is lethal. The bells function as a kind of sacred doorbell — the priest does not sneak into God's presence but approaches with audible notice.
36. The tsits ('plate, flower, blossom') — a golden frontlet worn on the turban — bears the inscription qodesh laYHWH ('holy to the LORD'). This is the most visible element of the priestly wardrobe: a golden declaration across the forehead, visible to everyone who faces the priest. The priest's forehead proclaims what his entire person embodies: holiness dedicated to God. The word tsits also means 'blossom' — the golden plate may have been flower-shaped, creating a visual connection between the priest's forehead and the almond-blossom menorah.
37. The golden plate is attached by a petil tekhelet ('blue cord') to the mitsnefet ('turban'). The blue cord — the same color as the robe (v31) — holds the plate on the forehead's front (el-mul penei-hammitnefet). The first thing anyone sees when facing the high priest is the gold inscription: HOLY TO THE LORD.
38. The golden plate's function: venasa Aharon et-avon haqqodashim ('Aaron shall bear the guilt of the holy things'). The priest absorbs the imperfections in Israel's offerings — if an offering was presented with some flaw or procedural error, the golden plate atones for it. The priest's forehead, declaring HOLY TO THE LORD, covers the gap between Israel's imperfect worship and God's perfect standard. Tamid ('always') — the plate is never removed during service. Leratson lahem lifnei YHWH ('for their acceptance before the LORD') — the priest's bearing of guilt makes the people acceptable.
39. Three garments specified: the ketonet shesh ('fine linen tunic' — woven in a tashbets/checkered pattern), the mitsnefet shesh ('fine linen turban'), and the avnet ma'aseh roqem ('sash of embroidered work'). These are the undergarments — less visible than the ephod and breastpiece but equally prescribed. Even the layers no one sees are made with care and precision.
40. Aaron's sons receive a simpler three-piece set: kuttonot ('tunics'), avnetim ('sashes'), and migba'ot ('caps' — not the full turban of the high priest). The same purpose phrase — lekhevod uletof'aret ('for glory and for splendor') — applies to their garments as to Aaron's. Every priest, not only the high priest, wears sacred clothing. The garments of the ordinary priests are simpler but no less sacred.
41. Three acts of priestly installation: mashachta ('anoint' — with the sacred oil of 30:22-33), milleita et-yadam ('fill their hands' — ordination, literally 'fill the hand,' a gesture of commissioning), and qiddashta ('consecrate' — set apart for sacred service). The clothing comes first (vehilbashta), then anointing, ordination, and consecration. The sequence moves from external (garments) to internal (anointing) to functional (ordination) to status (consecration).
42. Mikhnesei-bad ('linen undergarments') cover besar ervah ('the flesh of nakedness') — from waist to thighs. The instruction is practical and theological: priests serving at an elevated altar must not expose themselves (cf. 20:26). The linen material (bad) is the priestly fabric — even undergarments are sacred textile. Modesty at the altar is a matter of holiness, not merely decorum.
43. The chapter closes with the garment requirement's ultimate sanction: velo-yise'u avon vamet'u ('so they do not bear guilt and die'). Improper priestly attire is not a dress code violation but a life-or-death matter. The sacred garments are the boundary between the priest's mortality and God's holiness — without them, the encounter is fatal. Chuqqat olam lo uleazar'o acharav ('a permanent statute for him and his descendants after him') — the garment regulations are perpetual, binding on every generation of priests. Chapter 28 has dressed the priest from head to toe: turban with golden plate, ephod with shoulder stones, breastpiece with twelve gems and Urim/Thummim, blue robe with bells and pomegranates, checkered tunic, sash, and linen undergarments. Every element serves a theological function: the priest carries Israel's names, bears Israel's guilt, announces his presence with sound, and proclaims God's holiness on his forehead.

29

Summary: *God prescribes the seven-day ordination ceremony for the priests — washing, dressing, anointing, and three sacrifices (bull for purification, ram for burnt offering, ram of ordination). The chapter culminates in God's promise: 'I will dwell among the sons of Israel and be their God.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The ordination ceremony (millu'im, 'filling of the hands') transforms ordinary Israelites into priests through a sequence of washing, clothing, anointing, and sacrifice. Blood is applied to the right ear, right thumb, and right big toe of the priests (v20) — consecrating hearing, action, and walk. The climactic promise of v45-46 states the purpose of the entire exodus: 'I will dwell among the sons of Israel and be their God... who brought them out of the land of Egypt that I might dwell among them.' The tabernacle is the goal; the exodus was the means.*

Translation Friction: We rendered millu'im as 'ordination' rather than the literal 'filling of hands,' though we noted the idiom — in the ancient Near East, having one's hands filled meant being authorized for office. The three sacrifices serve distinct functions (purification, devotion, consecration) that the English word 'offering' tends to flatten; we specified each type. The blood on ear, thumb, and toe (v20) we rendered literally, letting the ritual symbolism speak through the strangeness of the act.

Connections: The ordination is executed in Leviticus 8-9. The ear-thumb-toe blood application connects to the cleansing ritual for healed skin disease in Leviticus 14:14. The indwelling promise (v45-46) echoes the covenant formula of 6:7 and points forward to John 1:14 and Revelation 21:3. The daily burnt offering (vv38-42) establishes the perpetual worship pattern that continues through Israel's temple history.

¹"This is what you shall do to them to consecrate them to serve Me as priests: Take one young bull and two unblemished rams, ²along with unleavened bread, unleavened loaves mixed with oil, and unleavened wafers spread with oil — made from wheat flour. ³Place them in a single basket and bring them in the basket, along with the bull and the two rams. ⁴Bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the tent of meeting and wash them with water. ⁵Take the garments and dress Aaron in the tunic, the robe of the ephod, the ephod, and the breastpiece. Fasten the ephod on him with its waistband. ⁶Place the turban on his head and set the holy diadem on the turban. ⁷Take the anointing oil, pour it on his head, and anoint him. ⁸Bring his sons forward and dress them in tunics. ⁹Bind sashes on Aaron and his sons and put caps on them. The priesthood shall be theirs as a permanent statute. Then you shall ordain Aaron and his sons. ¹⁰Bring the bull before the tent of meeting. Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the bull's head. ¹¹Slaughter the bull before the LORD at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ¹²Take some of the bull's blood and apply it to the horns of the altar with your finger. Pour all the remaining blood at the base of the altar. ¹³Take all the fat covering the entrails, the lobe of the liver, the two kidneys, and the fat on them, and turn them into smoke on the altar. ¹⁴But the flesh of the bull, its hide, and its dung you shall burn outside the camp. It is a purification offering. ¹⁵Take the first ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the ram's head. ¹⁶Slaughter the ram, collect its blood, and dash it against the sides of the altar. ¹⁷Cut the ram into sections, wash its entrails and legs, and arrange them with the other sections and the head. ¹⁸Turn the entire ram into smoke on the altar — it is a burnt offering to the LORD, a pleasing aroma, a fire offering to the LORD. ¹⁹Take the second ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on its head. ²⁰Slaughter the ram and take some of its blood. Apply it to the lobe of Aaron's right ear, the lobe of his sons' right ears, the thumb of their right hands, and the big toe of their right feet. Dash the remaining blood against the sides of the altar. ²¹Take some of the blood from the altar and some of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it on Aaron and his garments, and on his sons and their garments. He and his garments will be consecrated, along with his sons and their garments. ²²Take from the ram the fat, the fat tail, the fat covering the entrails, the lobe of the liver, the two kidneys with the fat on them, and the right thigh — for it is the ram of ordination. ²³Take one round loaf, one loaf of oiled bread, and one wafer from the basket of unleavened bread that is before the LORD. ²⁴Place everything on the palms of Aaron and his sons, and elevate them as a wave offering before the LORD. ²⁵Then take them from their hands and turn them into smoke on the altar, on top of the burnt offering — a pleasing aroma before the LORD, a fire offering to the LORD. ²⁶Take the breast of Aaron's ordination ram and elevate it as a wave offering before the LORD. It shall be your portion. ²⁷Consecrate the breast of the wave offering and the thigh of the contribution — what was elevated and what was offered — from the ordination ram of Aaron and his sons. ²⁸This shall be a permanent allotment for Aaron and his sons from the Israelites, for it is a contribution — a contribution the Israelites give to the LORD from their peace offering sacrifices. ²⁹Aaron's sacred garments shall pass to his sons after him, for their anointing and ordination in them. ³⁰The son who succeeds him as priest shall wear them for seven days when he enters the tent of meeting to serve in the holy place. ³¹Take the ordination ram and boil its meat in a holy place. ³²Aaron and his sons shall eat the ram's meat and the bread from the basket at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ³³They shall eat the things through which atonement was made for their ordination and consecration. No unauthorized person may eat them — they are holy. ³⁴If any of the ordination meat or bread remains until morning, burn the remainder in fire. It must not be eaten — it is holy. ³⁵Do this for Aaron and his sons exactly as I have commanded you. Their ordination shall last seven days. ³⁶Offer a bull as a purification offering each day for atonement. Purify the altar by making atonement for it, and

anoint it to consecrate it. ³⁷For seven days make atonement for the altar and consecrate it. The altar will become most holy — whatever touches it becomes holy. ³⁸"This is what you shall offer on the altar: two year-old lambs each day, regularly. ³⁹Offer one lamb in the morning and the second lamb at twilight, ⁴⁰with the first lamb: a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with a quarter hin of pressed oil, and a quarter hin of wine as a drink offering. ⁴¹Offer the second lamb at twilight with the same grain offering and drink offering as in the morning — a pleasing aroma, a fire offering to the LORD. ⁴²This is a perpetual burnt offering throughout your generations, at the entrance of the tent of meeting before the LORD — where I will meet with you to speak with you there. ⁴³I will meet there with the Israelites, and it will be sanctified by My glory. ⁴⁴I will consecrate the tent of meeting and the altar. I will consecrate Aaron and his sons to serve Me as priests. ⁴⁵I will dwell among the Israelites and be their God. ⁴⁶They will know that I am the LORD their God, who brought them out of the land of Egypt so that I might dwell among them. I am the LORD their God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The consecration ceremony (millu'im — 'ordination, filling of hands') requires three animals: one bull (par) and two rams (eilim). The bull will serve as a purification offering (v10-14), the first ram as a burnt offering (v15-18), and the second ram — uniquely — as the 'ram of ordination' (v19-28). Three animals for three ritual functions: purification, devotion, and consecration. The phrase leqaddesh otam lekahen li ('to consecrate them to serve Me as priests') defines the ceremony's purpose.
2. Three types of unleavened bread accompany the animal sacrifices — the same three forms as the grain offering (Lev 2:4): plain bread (lechem matzot), loaves mixed with oil (challot matzot belulot bashemen), and wafers spread with oil (reqiqei matzot meshuchim bashemen). All from solet chittim ('wheat flour' — premium flour). The bread will be used in the ordination ceremony's wave offering (v23-25).
3. All the bread goes into one basket (sal echad) for presentation alongside the three animals. The unified basket symbolizes the integrated nature of the ceremony: grain and animal offerings together constitute the full ordination provision.
4. The ceremony begins at petach ohel mo'ed ('the entrance of the tent of meeting') — the threshold between ordinary and sacred space. The first act: verachasta otam bamayim ('wash them with water'). Washing precedes everything else — the priests must be ritually purified before dressing, anointing, or sacrificing. The water removes the common-zone status; what follows builds the sacred status.
5. The dressing sequence is inside-out: kuttonet ('tunic' — next to skin), me'il ha'efod ('robe of the ephod' — the blue garment), efod ('ephod' — the outer vest), and choshen ('breastpiece'). Moses dresses Aaron — the high priest does not dress himself for consecration. The passive receiving of garments emphasizes that the priestly office is given, not taken. Aaron stands still while Moses clothes him in sacred identity.
6. The mitsnefet ('turban') goes on last — the head covering. The nezer haqqodesh ('holy diadem/crown') is the golden plate inscribed 'HOLY TO THE LORD' (28:36). The word nezer also means 'consecration' (as in the Nazirite's nezer, Num 6:7) — the crown is both a visible badge and a status marker. The dressing is complete: Aaron now wears every element described in chapter 28.
7. The anointing — velaqachta et-shemen hammishchah veyatsaqta al-rosho — is the defining act of consecration. The oil (the sacred blend of 30:22-33) is poured on Aaron's head, flowing down over the garments (Ps 133:2 describes it running down Aaron's beard to the collar of his robes). The verb mashachta ('anoint') is the root of mashiach ('messiah, anointed one'). Aaron becomes the first mashiach — the anointed priest.
8. Aaron's sons receive the simpler priestly wardrobe: kuttonot ('tunics'). Their dressing is briefer — three items (tunic, sash, caps) compared to Aaron's eight-piece ensemble. The brevity reflects the distinction between the high priest and ordinary priests.
9. With all garments in place — sashes (avnet) and caps (migba'ot) completing the ensemble — the priesthood becomes a permanent institution: vehaytah lahem kehunnah lechuqqat olam ('the priesthood shall be theirs as a permanent statute'). The phrase umilleita yad-Aharon veyad-banav ('you shall fill the hand of Aaron and his sons') is the technical term for ordination. 'Filling the hand' (millu'im) may refer to placing the offering portions in the priests' hands (v24) — the gesture that officially commissions them for service.
10. The first sacrifice: the bull as purification offering (chata't, v14). Aaron and all his sons perform semikhah together — they press their hands on the bull's head as a group. This is the same identification gesture from Leviticus 1:4 and 4:4, but here the soon-to-be-priests identify with the animal that will purify the altar for their future service. They cannot serve at an impure altar; the bull's blood will cleanse it.
11. Moses performs the slaughter — not Aaron, who is not yet consecrated to handle sacrificial blood. The location petach ohel mo'ed ('at the entrance of the tent of meeting') is the standard slaughter site for offerings.
12. The blood application follows the chata't procedure for a leader or commoner (Lev 4:25, 30): finger-applied to the altar horns, remainder poured at the base. The altar itself must be purified before it can receive regular offerings — consecration cleanses the instrument of worship before the worshippers are consecrated to use it.
13. The standard fat-portion formula (Lev 3:3-4, 4:8-9): internal fat, liver lobe, two kidneys with their fat — all burned on the altar. The fat belongs to God, as established throughout the offering system.

14. The bull's remaining parts are burned outside the camp (michutz lamachaneh) — the standard disposal for the priestly chata't (Lev 4:11-12, 6:23). The identification chattat hu ('it is a purification offering') classifies this sacrifice. The altar has been purified; the priests can now proceed to the burnt offering.
15. The second sacrifice: the first ram as a burnt offering (olah, v18). Again, collective semikhah — all five men press their hands on the animal. The progression from chata't (purification) to olah (total devotion) follows the standard Levitical sequence: cleansing before surrender.
16. The olah blood is dashed (zaraqta — the forceful splashing, not finger-painting) against the altar on all sides (saviv). This matches the standard olah procedure of Leviticus 1:5, 11.
17. The standard olah butchering procedure from Leviticus 1:6-9: sectioning, washing the entrails and legs, then arranging all parts on the altar.
18. The olah is entirely consumed: vehiqarta et-kol-ha'ayil ('turn the entire ram into smoke'). The threefold identification — olah hu laYHWH, reach nichoach, issheh laYHWH — emphasizes the completeness of the offering. Total devotion precedes the ordination sacrifice (v19-28) that will follow.
19. The third and most distinctive sacrifice: eil hammillu'im — the 'ram of ordination' (named in v22). This ram is unique in the sacrificial system: its blood is applied to the priests' bodies (v20), and its meat is used in a wave offering that the priests themselves eat (v31-34). No other offering in the Torah has this character.
20. The ordination blood application is unique in the Torah: blood on the ear (tenukh ozen — 'earlobe,' the organ of hearing/obedience), the thumb (bohen yad — the hand's primary working digit), and the big toe (bohen regel — the foot's weight-bearing digit). Three body parts representing three dimensions of priestly service: hearing God's word (ear), doing God's work (hand), and walking in God's ways (foot). The right side (yemanit) is the side of strength and honor. The entire priest — hearing, acting, walking — is consecrated by blood.
21. Blood and oil together — the two consecrating substances — are sprinkled on both the priests and their garments. The result: veqadash hu uvegadav uvanav uvigdei vanav itto ('he and his garments and his sons and his sons' garments with him will be consecrated'). Person and clothing are consecrated as a unit — the garments are not merely worn by holy people; they are themselves made holy through the same blood and oil. The priest's identity and his vestments are inseparable.
22. The ordination ram's portions include everything given to God in a shelamim (fat, liver lobe, kidneys) plus the right thigh (shoq hayyamin) — which in normal shelamim goes to the priest (Lev 7:32-33). Here it is part of the consecration offering itself. The identification ki eil millu'im hu ('for it is the ram of ordination') names this unique sacrifice. The millu'im exists only for this purpose — priestly installation — and is never repeated in the regular sacrificial calendar.
23. One piece from each of the three bread types prepared in v2 — a representative selection from the basket. The bread is placed before the LORD (lifnei YHWH) — it has been in God's presence during the entire ceremony.
24. This is the act that gives the ceremony its name: vesamta hakkol al kappei Aharon ve'al kappei vanav ('place everything on the palms of Aaron and his sons'). Their hands are literally 'filled' (millu'im) with the offerings. The filled-hands gesture — fat, thigh, and bread all resting on the priests' open palms — is the physical commissioning: you now hold sacred things. The wave offering (tenufah) before the LORD presents the filled hands to God for approval.
25. Moses takes the items back from the priests' hands and burns them on the altar. The cycle is complete: offerings placed in hands (commissioning), then given to God (worship). The priests' first act with filled hands is to surrender what was given — the priesthood's inaugural gesture is giving to God.
26. The breast (chazeh) of the ordination ram goes to Moses — vehayah lekha lemanah ('it shall be your portion'). In the regular shelamim, the breast goes to the priests (Lev 7:31). But at this ceremony, Moses is the officiant — the one who consecrates the priests — and he receives the officiant's share. Moses functions as the priest who creates priests.
27. The breast (chazeh hattenufah) and thigh (shoq hatterumah) are formally consecrated — qiddashta — as sacred portions. These two cuts become the permanent priestly allotment from all future shelamim (Lev 7:31-34). The ordination ceremony establishes the precedent that governs all subsequent priestly food rights.
28. The ordination establishes the choq-olam ('permanent statute') governing priestly food rights. The breast and thigh from every future shelamim will go to Aaron's priestly line — terumah ('contribution') from Israel to God, given through God to the priests. The system is circular: Israel gives to God; God gives to the priests; the priests serve Israel. Everyone provides, everyone receives.
29. The high priestly garments are hereditary — uvigdei haqqodesh asher le'Aaron yihyu levanav acharav ('Aaron's sacred garments shall be for his sons after him'). Each new high priest wears the same garments for their lemoshchah bahem ullemalle-vam et-yadam ('anointing and hand-filling'). The garments outlast any individual priest — the vestments carry the office across generations.
30. The successor wears the garments for shiv'at yamim ('seven days') — a full week of wearing the sacred vestments before beginning regular service. The seven-day investiture period allows the new priest to grow into the garments and the identity they represent.
31. The ordination ram's meat (remaining after the fat, thigh, and breast have been removed) is boiled (bishalta — 'cooked by boiling') in a sacred precinct (maqom qadosh). This cooked meat will be the priests' consecration meal (v32-33) — their first priestly meal, eaten at the threshold of their new identity.

32. The consecration meal: *ve'akhal Aharon uvanav et-besar ha'ayil ve'et-hallechem asher bassal* ('Aaron and his sons shall eat the ram's meat and the bread from the basket'). The first priestly meal is eaten at *petach ohel mo'ed* ('the entrance of the tent of meeting') — the same threshold where the ceremony began (v4). The priests eat the consecration sacrifice at the boundary between ordinary and sacred space, physically consuming their new identity.
33. The food's function: *asher kuppah bahem* ('through which atonement was made') — the meat and bread are not merely food but the substance of atonement and consecration. Eating is the final act of the ordination: the consecration enters the priests' bodies. The restriction — *vezar lo-yokhal ki-qodesh hem* ('no unauthorized person may eat, for they are holy') — limits this meal to the consecrated priests. The *zar* ('unauthorized/outsider') cannot participate in what makes the priesthood.
34. Same-day consumption rule (as with the *todah*, Lev 7:15): nothing may survive until morning. Leftover consecration food is burned — not discarded but destroyed by fire, because *ki-qodesh hu* ('it is holy'). Holy food that exceeds its time window becomes dangerous, not merely stale.
35. The entire ceremony (v1-34) is repeated for seven consecutive days: *shiv'at yamim temalle yadam* ('seven days you shall fill their hands'). Seven days of the same sacrifices, the same dressing, the same meal. The repetition is not redundancy but saturation — the priests are immersed in consecration for a complete cycle of time.
36. A daily *chata't* bull for the full seven days — seven bulls total for altar purification alone. The altar is both purified (*chitte'ta* — 'de-sin, purge') and anointed (*umashachta oto leqaddesho* — 'anoint it to consecrate it'). The consecration of the priests and the consecration of the altar happen simultaneously — both must be ready before the regular sacrificial system can begin.
37. After seven days of purification: *vehayah hammizbeach qodesh qodashim* ('the altar will be most holy'). The contagious holiness principle: *kol-hannogea bammizbeach yiqdash* ('whatever touches the altar becomes holy'). The altar's holiness is so intense that contact with it consecrates — a dangerous property that requires careful management. The seven-day consecration transforms common bronze into the most holy surface in the courtyard.
38. The consecration legislation transitions to the *tamid* — the daily offering that will continue in perpetuity after the ordination is complete. *Kevasim benei-shanah shenayim layyom tamid* ('two year-old lambs each day, continually'). The morning and evening *tamid* (v39-41) is the heartbeat of the sacrificial system — every day, without exception, two lambs are offered. The priests ordained in v1-37 will spend their careers performing this daily ritual.
39. The daily rhythm: *babboqer* ('in the morning') and *bein ha'arbayim* ('at twilight'). The day is bracketed by sacrifice — Israel's first and last communal act each day is worship. The morning lamb starts the sacred day; the evening lamb closes it.
40. Each lamb is accompanied by a grain offering (*issaron solet* — a tenth ephah of flour with pressed oil) and a drink offering (*nesekh* — a quarter hin of wine). The daily offering is not just animal sacrifice but a full meal presented to God: bread (flour), oil, meat (lamb), and drink (wine). God's 'table' is set twice daily with the elements of a complete meal.
41. The evening offering mirrors the morning exactly: *keminchah habboqer ukheniskhah* ('like the morning's grain offering and drink offering'). The symmetry ensures that every day begins and ends identically: the same lamb, the same flour, the same oil, the same wine, the same fire, the same pleasing aroma. The daily rhythm never varies.
42. The *tamid* is *olat tamid ledoroteikhem* ('a perpetual burnt offering throughout your generations'). The location — *petach ohel-mo'ed lifnei YHWH* — is further defined: *asher ivva'ed lakhem shammah ledabber elekha sham* ('where I will meet with you to speak with you there'). The daily offering is not merely a ritual obligation but the occasion for divine encounter. God meets Israel at the altar — the *tamid* creates the conditions for communication between heaven and earth. Every morning and evening, God speaks at the place where the offering ascends.
43. *Veno'adti shammah livnei Yisra'el* ('I will meet there with the Israelites') — God commits to a specific location for encounter. *Veniqdash bikhvodi* ('and it will be sanctified by My glory') — the *kavod* register term in its most powerful context: God's glory does not merely visit the tabernacle; it sanctifies it. The divine presence transforms the space from constructed tent to sacred dwelling. The *kavod* that fills the tabernacle (40:34) is the glory that sanctifies it here.
44. God speaks in first person: *veqiddashti* ('I will consecrate'). The entire preceding ceremony — Moses washing, dressing, anointing, sacrificing — is validated by divine action. Ultimately, it is God who consecrates the tent, the altar, and the priests. Human ceremony enacts what divine power accomplishes. The sequence — tent, altar, persons — covers the full scope of sacred space and sacred personnel.
45. The climax of the entire tabernacle legislation: *veshakhanti betokh benei Yisra'el* ('I will dwell in the midst of the Israelites'). Everything from Exodus 25 through 29 — the ark, the table, the menorah, the curtains, the altar, the courtyard, the garments, the consecration — exists to make this dwelling possible. The *Shekhinah* concept begins here: God taking up permanent residence among His people. *Vehayiti lahem le'Elohim* ('I will be their God') — the covenant formula from Leviticus 26:12 and throughout the Bible — appears as the consequence of divine indwelling. Presence produces relationship.
46. The final verse redefines the exodus itself: *asher hotseti otam me'erets Mitsrayim leshakhni betokham* ('who brought them out of Egypt so that I might dwell among them'). The purpose of the exodus was not merely liberation from slavery but the creation of a community in which God could dwell. God did not bring Israel out of Egypt so they could be free — He brought them out so He could live among them. Freedom was the means; divine presence was the end. The closing signature — *ani YHWH Eloheihem* ('I am the LORD their God') — appears twice in two verses (v45-46), framing the *Shekhinah* promise with the divine identity. The chapter ends where the entire tabernacle section began: with the God who wants to

dwell with His people.

30

Summary: *God prescribes the gold incense altar for the Holy Place, the half-shekel census offering as 'ransom for your lives,' the bronze basin for priestly washing, the holy anointing oil, and the sacred incense. Each is restricted to sacred use only.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The incense altar appears last among the tabernacle furnishings, after priestly garments and ordination — its ministry belongs to consecrated priests alone. The census ransom (kofer nafsho, 'ransom for his life,' v12) establishes that counting people is theologically freighted: to number Israel is to claim what belongs to God, and a payment acknowledges divine ownership. The anointing oil recipe and incense formula are given once and declared permanently exclusive — 'whoever compounds any like it... shall be cut off from his people' (vv33, 38). Sacred recipes are not for private use.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered kofer as 'ransom' to preserve the redemption theology — each person pays because their life belongs to God and numbering them without acknowledgment of this is dangerous. The anointing oil ingredients (myrrh, cinnamon, calamus, cassia, olive oil) we rendered with their standard English names, though some identifications are approximate. The phrase 'cut off from his people' (nikrat, v33) we retained literally — the exact penalty (death, exile, or divine punishment) is debated, but the severity is clear.*

Connections: *The incense altar is the setting for Zechariah's vision in Luke 1:8-11. The census ransom anticipates the temple tax of Matthew 17:24-27. The anointing oil connects to the royal anointing tradition (1 Samuel 16:13) and the messianic title 'Anointed One' (Mashiach). The Day of Atonement blood on the incense altar horns (v10) is prescribed in Leviticus 16:18.*

¹"You shall make an altar for burning incense. Make it of acacia wood. ²It shall be one cubit long and one cubit wide — square — and two cubits high. Its horns shall be of one piece with it. ³Overlay it with pure gold — its top, its sides all around, and its horns — and make a gold molding around it. ⁴Make two gold rings for it below the molding, on its two sides — on opposite sides — as holders for the poles used to carry it. ⁵Make the poles of acacia wood and overlay them with gold. ⁶Place it in front of the veil that screens the ark of the testimony — before the atonement cover that is over the testimony — where I will meet with you. ⁷Aaron shall burn fragrant incense on it every morning — when he tends the lamps, he shall burn it. ⁸When Aaron lights the lamps at twilight, he shall burn it — perpetual incense before the LORD throughout your generations. ⁹You must not offer unauthorized incense on it, nor burnt offering, nor grain offering, and you must not pour a drink offering on it. ¹⁰Once a year Aaron shall make atonement on its horns — with the blood of the purification offering of atonement, once a year he shall purify it throughout your generations. It is most holy to the LORD." ¹¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹²"When you take a census of the Israelites by counting them, each person shall give a ransom for his life to the LORD at the time of the counting, so that no plague will strike them when they are counted. ¹³This is what each person who is registered shall give: half a shekel by the sanctuary standard (the shekel being twenty gerahs) — a half shekel as a contribution to the LORD. ¹⁴Everyone who is registered, from twenty years old and above, shall give the LORD's contribution. ¹⁵The wealthy must not give more, and the poor must not give less than the half shekel, when giving the LORD's contribution to make atonement for your lives. ¹⁶Take the atonement money from the Israelites and designate it for the service of the tent of meeting. It shall serve as a memorial for the Israelites before the LORD, to make atonement for your lives." ¹⁷The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁸"Make a bronze basin with a bronze stand for washing. Place it between the tent of meeting and the altar, and put water in it. ¹⁹Aaron and his sons shall wash their hands and feet from it. ²⁰When they enter the tent of meeting they shall wash with water so they will not die, or when they approach the altar to serve, turning fire offerings into smoke for the LORD. ²¹They shall wash their hands and feet so they will not die — a permanent statute for him and his descendants throughout their generations." ²²The LORD spoke to Moses: ²³"Take the finest spices: five hundred shekels of liquid myrrh, half that amount

— two hundred fifty — of fragrant cinnamon, two hundred fifty of fragrant cane, ²⁴five hundred of cassia — all by the sanctuary standard — and a hin of olive oil. ²⁵Make it into a sacred anointing oil — a perfumer's compound, expertly blended. It shall be a sacred anointing oil. ²⁶With it you shall anoint the tent of meeting and the ark of the testimony, ²⁷the table and all its utensils, the lampstand and its utensils, the altar of incense, ²⁸the burnt offering altar and all its utensils, and the basin and its stand. ²⁹You shall consecrate them so they become most holy. Whatever touches them becomes holy. ³⁰You shall anoint Aaron and his sons and consecrate them to serve Me as priests. ³¹Tell the Israelites: This shall be My sacred anointing oil throughout your generations. ³²It must not be poured on the body of any ordinary person, and you must not make anything with the same formula. It is holy — it shall be holy to you. ³³Anyone who blends something like it, or who puts any of it on an unauthorized person, shall be cut off from their people." ³⁴The LORD said to Moses, "Take aromatic spices — stacte, onycha, and galbanum — these spices along with pure frankincense, in equal parts. ³⁵Blend it into incense — a perfumer's compound, salted, pure, and holy. ³⁶Grind some of it to a fine powder and place it before the testimony in the tent of meeting, where I will meet with you. It shall be most holy to you. ³⁷The incense that you make — you must not make any with the same formula for your own use. It shall be holy to you, reserved for the LORD. ³⁸Anyone who makes incense like it for personal enjoyment shall be cut off from their people."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The incense altar (mizbach miqtar qetoret) is introduced last among the tabernacle furnishings — separate from the main instructions in chapters 25-27. Its placement here, after the priestly garments (ch 28) and consecration (ch 29), may reflect its close association with priestly ministry: only consecrated priests burn incense. Acacia wood (atsei shittim) is the same material as the ark (25:10) and the table (25:23) — a hard, durable desert wood.
2. The dimensions: one cubit by one cubit by two cubits (approximately 18" x 18" x 36") — much smaller than the burnt offering altar (27:1, five cubits square). The incense altar is intimate, designed for the confined space of the holy place. The horns (qarnot) project from the four corners, as on the burnt offering altar — these become the points where the Day of Atonement blood is applied (v10). The phrase mimmennu qarnotav ('its horns from it') means the horns are carved from the same piece, not attached separately.
3. The incense altar is gold-covered (zahav tahor — 'pure gold'), placing it in the gold zone of the tabernacle (holy place) rather than the bronze zone (courtyard). The zer zahav ('gold molding/crown') is a decorative border running around the top, also found on the ark (25:11) and the table (25:24). The three gold-crowned furnishings — ark, table, incense altar — form the interior ensemble of the holy place.
4. The transport system: two gold rings on opposite sides hold the carrying poles. Like the ark (25:14-15) and the table (25:27-28), the incense altar must be portable — designed for a community on the move. The tabernacle's furnishings are built for travel; none are permanent installations.
5. Gold-overlaid acacia poles — the same construction as the ark's poles (25:13). Every element that enters the holy place must be gold-covered. The consistency of materials (acacia + gold) across all the holy place furnishings creates a unified aesthetic: warm wood wrapped in brilliant metal.
6. The incense altar's location is precisely defined: lifnei happarokhet ('before the veil') — in the holy place, directly in front of the curtain separating it from the most holy place. The text looks through the veil to identify what lies behind it: the kapporet ('atonement cover') over the ark. The phrase asher ivva'ed lekha shammah ('where I will meet with you there') makes the incense altar the point closest to God's presence that the daily priestly ministry reaches. The incense rises toward the veil — toward God — every morning and evening.
7. The daily incense offering is coordinated with the lamp maintenance: babboqer babboqer ('every morning, morning by morning') the priest tends the menorah's lamps and burns incense simultaneously. The two daily rituals — light and fragrance — together fill the holy place. The qetoret sammim ('fragrant incense') is the specific blend prescribed in v34-38, never to be reproduced for common use.
8. The evening complement to the morning incense (v7): bein ha'arbayim ('between the evenings,' i.e., at twilight). The designation qetoret tamid ('perpetual incense') parallels the perpetual fire of 27:20 and the perpetual lamp — the holy place never lacks light, fragrance, or fire. The incense is lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') — directed toward the divine presence behind the veil. Prayer is later associated with incense (Ps 141:2; Rev 5:8): the ascending smoke represents communication directed upward toward God.
9. Four prohibitions protect the incense altar's exclusive function: no qetoret zarah ('unauthorized incense' — the same adjective zarah used for Nadab and Abihu's 'unauthorized fire' in Lev 10:1), no olah, no minchah, no nesekh ('drink offering'). The incense altar has one purpose only: the authorized daily incense. It is not a general-purpose altar. The restriction underscores the principle that proximity to God requires exact obedience to prescribed forms.
10. The phrase middam chattat hakkippurim ('with the blood of the purification offering of atonements') refers to the Yom Kippur chata't described in Leviticus 16. The annual purification of the incense altar is one element of the Day of Atonement ritual. The designation qodesh qodashim hu laYHWH ('it is most holy to the LORD') classifies the incense altar at the highest sanctity level — the same category as the most holy offerings. The altar's holiness requires annual maintenance: even sacred objects accumulate the residue of a year's proximity to human impurity.

11. A new divine speech introduces the census atonement tax (v11-16) — a half-shekel per person collected whenever Israel is counted. The section shifts from sacred architecture to sacred economics: how does the community fund the tabernacle's ongoing operation?
12. The census is dangerous: counting people exposes them to divine attention in a way that can trigger plague (negef). The *kofer nafsho* ('ransom for his life/soul') is a payment that substitutes for the person — each individual 'redeems' themselves from the risk of being counted. The theology behind this is complex: numbering implies ownership (you count what belongs to you), and claiming ownership of what belongs to God requires a ransom payment. David's unauthorized census in 2 Samuel 24 demonstrates what happens when the ransom is not paid.
13. The amount is fixed: *machatsit hasheqel* ('half a shekel') by the sanctuary weight standard (*sheqel haqqodesh*). Twenty *gerahs* equals one shekel — approximately 11 grams of silver. The half-shekel is modest but mandatory: rich and poor pay the same amount (v15). The *terumah laYHWH* ('contribution to the LORD') designates it as sacred revenue, not civil taxation. This half-shekel later became the annual temple tax that Jesus discusses in Matthew 17:24-27.
14. The age threshold: *mibben esrim shanah vama'lah* ('from twenty years old and upward'). Twenty is the age of military service and census eligibility (Num 1:3). Only adults who count in the national register pay the ransom. The contribution is universal within this demographic — every adult male Israelite, regardless of wealth or status, pays the same half-shekel.
15. The most egalitarian provision in the Torah: *he'ashir lo yarbeh vehadal lo yam'it* ('the rich shall not give more, the poor shall not give less'). Before God, every life has the same value. The rich person's life is not worth more than the poor person's; the poor person's ransom is not discounted. The phrase *lekhapper al-nafshoteikhem* ('to make atonement for your lives') connects the census payment to *kippur* — this is not a fee but a redemption. Equal payment, equal value, equal standing before God.
16. The census money (*kesef hakkippurim* — 'atonement silver') funds the tabernacle's operations (*avodat ohel mo'ed* — 'the service of the tent of meeting'). The money has a dual function: it ransoms the counted and it sustains the sanctuary. The designation *lezikkaron* ('as a memorial') means the payment keeps Israel in God's awareness — a permanent financial sign of the covenant relationship. The tabernacle is funded by the community's redemption payments: the building where God dwells is sustained by the ransom of the people who dwell around it.
17. A new speech introduces the bronze basin (v17-21) — the washing station positioned between the tent of meeting and the burnt offering altar where priests purify their hands and feet before serving.
18. The *kiyor nechoshet* ('bronze basin') occupies a transitional position: *bein-ohel mo'ed uvein hammizbeach* ('between the tent of meeting and the altar') — the priest passes it when moving from the outer court to the tent. Bronze (*nechoshet*) identifies it with the outer court zone. The basin is purely functional: it holds water for priestly washing before service. No dimensions are given (unlike every other tabernacle furnishing), suggesting the basin's size was practical rather than symbolic.
19. Hands and feet — the instruments of priestly work (hands manipulate offerings) and priestly movement (feet walk on sacred ground). The washing is not for hygiene but for ritual fitness: the priest's body must be purified at its points of contact with sacred space and sacred objects. Every transition from common to sacred activity requires this washing.
20. The consequence of unwashed service is death: *velo yamutu* ('so they will not die'). Two occasions require washing: entering the tent of meeting (*bevo'am el-ohel mo'ed*) and approaching the altar (*begishtam el-hammizbeach*). The priestly body, unwashed, brings common-zone contamination into sacred space — and the collision between common and holy is lethal. The basin is not a convenience but a life-preserving boundary marker.
21. The washing requirement is *chuq-olam* ('a permanent statute') — the same perpetual designation given to the Sabbath (31:16), the fat-and-blood prohibition (Lev 3:17), and the priestly food allocation (Lev 7:34). Priestly washing is permanent, non-negotiable, and extends *lo ulezar'o ledorotam* ('for him and his descendants throughout their generations'). The ritual purity of the priesthood is as permanent as the priesthood itself.
22. A new speech introduces the anointing oil formula (v22-33) — a sacred blend reserved exclusively for consecrating the tabernacle, its furnishings, and the priests. This is followed by the incense formula (v34-38). Both are proprietary recipes: unauthorized reproduction is prohibited on pain of being 'cut off' from Israel.
23. The anointing oil recipe begins with *besamim rosh* ('finest/chief spices'). Three aromatic ingredients are measured by weight in sanctuary shekels: *mor-deror* ('liquid myrrh' — 500 shekels, about 12.5 lbs), *qinnemon-besem* ('fragrant cinnamon' — 250 shekels), and *qeneh-vosem* ('fragrant cane/calamus' — 250 shekels). These are luxury trade goods from distant regions — myrrh from Arabia, cinnamon likely from South or Southeast Asia, cane from tropical sources. The anointing oil is composed of the world's most precious aromatics.
24. The fourth spice: *qiddah* ('cassia' — 500 shekels, matching the myrrh). The base liquid is *shemen zayit hin* ('a hin of olive oil' — approximately one gallon). The total spice weight (1,500 shekels, roughly 37 lbs) infused in one gallon of olive oil would produce an extraordinarily concentrated, intensely fragrant anointing oil. The sanctuary standard (*sheqel haqqodesh*) ensures precise measurement.
25. The phrase *roqach mirgachat ma'aseh roqeach* ('a perfumer's compound, the work of a perfumer') uses the root *r-q-ch* ('to blend, to compound') three times — the blending must be done by a skilled craftsman, not casually. The double designation *shemen mishchat-qodesh* ('sacred anointing oil') appears at both the beginning and end of the verse, framing the formula as exclusively holy. Once blended, this oil exists in a category of its own — it is *qodesh* and may never be used for common purposes.
26. The anointing sequence begins with the most sacred items: the tent of meeting and the ark. Anointing with oil consecrates — it transfers the object from common to sacred status. The oil's application follows the same inside-out pattern as the tabernacle's construction: innermost objects first.

- 27.** The holy place furnishings: table (with showbread utensils), menorah (with lamp-tending tools), and incense altar. Each item and its associated equipment are anointed — holiness extends to every tool that touches the sacred space.
- 28.** The outer court furnishings: burnt offering altar and basin. Even the bronze-zone items receive the sacred oil — the anointing consecrates the entire tabernacle complex from the most holy place to the outer courtyard.
- 29.** The anointing elevates everything to qodesh qodashim ('most holy') status. The contagious holiness principle returns: kol-hannogea bahem yiqdash ('whatever touches them becomes holy'). Once anointed, these objects transmit their sanctity to anything they contact — a chain reaction of holiness that requires careful management. Sacred space is not merely set apart; it is actively, dangerously holy.
- 30.** The anointing of persons follows the anointing of objects: Aaron and his sons are consecrated with the same oil as the tabernacle. The purpose clause — lekahen li ('to serve Me as priests') — defines the priesthood as personal service to God. The oil that consecrates sacred furniture also consecrates sacred persons: the priesthood is as holy as the space in which it operates.
- 31.** God claims the oil as li ('Mine') — it belongs to God and is used only for God's purposes. The phrase ledoroteikhem ('throughout your generations') makes the recipe and its restrictions permanent. The sacred oil is not a one-time preparation but a perpetual formula maintained across Israel's entire history.
- 32.** Two prohibitions: (1) the oil must not be applied to common persons (al-besar adam lo yisakh — 'it must not be poured on human flesh,' i.e., anyone who is not a priest or sacred object), and (2) the formula must not be reproduced (uvematkunato lo ta'asu kamohu — 'in its proportion you must not make anything like it'). The recipe is proprietary in the strongest sense — it belongs to God and may not be duplicated. The double declaration qodesh hu, qodesh yihyeh lakhem ('it is holy, it shall be holy to you') makes the prohibition absolute.
- 33.** The penalty for violating either prohibition is karet — being 'cut off' from the community. Two offenses: yirqach kamohu ('blends something like it' — reproducing the formula) and yitten mimmennu al-zar ('puts any of it on an outsider/unauthorized person'). The zar here means anyone outside the priesthood — the same word used for 'unauthorized fire' (esh zarah, Lev 10:1). The sacred oil's exclusivity is protected by the most severe communal penalty.
- 34.** The incense formula: four ingredients in equal parts (bad bevad — 'part by part'). Nataf ('stacte' — a resinous gum, possibly storax or balsam), shecheleth ('onycha' — possibly a mollusk shell or plant resin), chelvena ('galbanum' — a strong-smelling plant gum), and levonah zakkah ('pure frankincense'). Galbanum is notably pungent, almost unpleasant alone — its inclusion in a sacred blend suggests that the final product's fragrance emerges from the combination of individual components that would not be beautiful separately.
- 35.** Three qualities: memullach ('salted' — salt is added as a preservative and purifier, echoing the 'salt of the covenant' in Lev 2:13), tahor ('pure'), and qodesh ('holy'). The incense is compounded by a professional roqeach ('perfumer/apothecary'). The salt-pure-holy triad applies covenant symbolism (salt), ritual fitness (purity), and sacred status (holiness) to the incense simultaneously.
- 36.** The incense is ground fine (shachaqta mimmennah hadeq — 'crush some of it to powder') for maximum fragrance release when burned. Its location — lifnei ha'edut be'ohel mo'ed ('before the testimony in the tent of meeting') — places it at the center of the holy place, near the incense altar and facing the ark. The phrase asher ivva'ed lekha shammah ('where I will meet with you there') repeats from v6: the incense rises in the place of divine encounter. The classification qodesh qodashim ('most holy') matches the incense altar itself.
- 37.** The same prohibition as for the anointing oil (v32): the formula is exclusive. Bematkunatah lo ta'asu lakhem ('in its formula you must not make any for yourselves'). Private reproduction of sacred incense is prohibited — the fragrance belongs solely to the divine encounter. The restriction ensures that the scent of the sacred incense is experienced only in the tabernacle, nowhere else. It is set apart for the LORD (qodesh tihyeh lekha laYHWH).
- 38.** The penalty for unauthorized incense replication: karet. The specific offense is making it lehariach bah ('to smell it,' i.e., for personal enjoyment of the fragrance). The sacred incense exists for one purpose — to rise before the LORD in the tent of meeting. Using the same formula for personal pleasure profanes what belongs to God. The chapter closes as it opened (v1-10): with the incense system, the most intimate element of the tabernacle's daily worship. The incense altar, the census ransom, the washing basin, the anointing oil, and the sacred incense together form the operational infrastructure that makes ongoing worship possible.

31

Summary: *God names Bezalel and Oholiab as master craftsmen, fills them with His Spirit for the tabernacle work, reaffirms the Sabbath as a perpetual covenant sign, and gives Moses the two stone tablets 'written with the finger of God.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Bezalel is the first individual in the Torah whom God fills with His Spirit (ruach Elohim, v3) for a specific task — and that task is not prophecy or warfare but artistry. The same Spirit that hovered over the waters in Genesis 1:2 now empowers a craftsman. The four gifts — wisdom, understanding, knowledge, and skill — cover the full spectrum from abstract design to practical execution. The Sabbath command (vv12-17) bookends the tabernacle instructions: even sacred construction must yield to sacred rest. The tablets 'written with the finger of God' (v18) echo the*

magicians' recognition of 'the finger of God' in 8:19.

Translation Friction: *We rendered ruach Elohim as 'Spirit of God' with a capital S, following the tradition that this is a genuine endowment of divine creative power, not merely 'a spirit of skill.' The name Betzal'el ('in the shadow of God') and Oholiav ('the Father's tent') we transliterated in standard form. The phrase 'finger of God' (etsba Elohim, v18) we rendered literally, preserving the anthropomorphic image that the Hebrew employs without embarrassment.*

Connections: *The Spirit-filling of Bezalel anticipates the Spirit's empowerment in Judges (e.g., Judges 3:10; 6:34), the prophets (Isaiah 61:1), and Pentecost (Acts 2:4). The Sabbath as covenant sign (v13) parallels circumcision as covenant sign (Genesis 17:11). The tablets written by God's finger connect to the magicians' confession in 8:19 and to Jesus writing on the ground in John 8:6.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"See — I have called by name Bezalel son of Uri, son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah. ³I have filled him with the Spirit of God — with wisdom, understanding, knowledge, and skill in every kind of craft: ⁴to design artistic works — to work in gold, silver, and bronze, ⁵in stone-cutting for settings, in wood-carving — to work in every kind of craft. ⁶I have also appointed alongside him Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan. And in the heart of every skilled person I have placed wisdom, so that they may make everything I have commanded you: ⁷the tent of meeting, the ark of the testimony, the atonement cover upon it, and all the furnishings of the tent, ⁸the table and its utensils, the pure gold lampstand with all its utensils, the altar of incense, ⁹the burnt offering altar with all its utensils, the basin and its stand, ¹⁰the woven service garments, the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments for his sons for their priestly service, ¹¹the anointing oil, and the fragrant incense for the holy place. They shall make everything exactly as I have commanded you." ¹²T he LORD said to Moses: ¹³"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: You must keep My Sabbaths, for it is a sign between Me and you throughout your generations, so that you may know that I am the LORD who makes you holy. ¹⁴You shall keep the Sabbath, for it is holy to you. Anyone who profanes it shall be put to death. Anyone who does work on it — that person shall be cut off from their people. ¹⁵Six days work may be done, but the seventh day is a Sabbath of complete rest, holy to the LORD. Anyone who does work on the Sabbath day shall be put to death. ¹⁶The Israelites shall keep the Sabbath, observing it throughout their generations as an everlasting covenant. ¹⁷It is a sign between Me and the Israelites forever, for in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, and on the seventh day He ceased and was refreshed. ¹⁸When He had finished speaking with Moses on Mount Sinai, He gave him the two tablets of the testimony — stone tablets inscribed by the finger of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. After seven chapters of tabernacle instructions (25-31), God now names the artisans who will build what He has described. The shift from design to execution is marked by this new speech formula. The plans come from God; the skill to realize them also comes from God.
2. God calls Bezalel 'by name' (beshemm) — a personal, specific summons, not a general appointment. The name Betzal'el means 'in the shadow of God' — the master craftsman works under divine protection. His lineage (Uri = 'my light,' Chur = possibly 'noble') is from Judah, the royal tribe. The first person God specifically commissions for a task in the Torah is not a priest or prophet but an artisan.
3. The phrase va'amalle oto ruach Elohim ('I have filled him with the Spirit of God') is the first instance in the Torah of the Spirit of God empowering a specific individual for a specific task. The four gifts — chokhmah ('wisdom'), tevunah ('understanding'), da'at ('knowledge'), and melakhah ('craft/workmanship') — cover the full spectrum from abstract design to practical execution. Artistic skill is presented as a divine endowment, not merely human talent. The Spirit of God enables sacred art.
4. The verb lachshov machashavot ('to devise designs, to think creative thoughts') uses the same root as 'thought' (machashavah). Artistic design is presented as a form of thinking — the craftsman does not merely follow blueprints but creates with intention and imagination. The three metals (gold, silver, bronze) are listed in descending value, matching the three zones of the tabernacle: gold in the holy of holies, silver for structural elements, bronze for the outer court.
5. Two additional materials beyond metals: stone (for the priestly breastplate settings, 28:17-20) and wood (for the ark, table, and structural frames). The comprehensive scope — bekhol-melakhah ('every kind of craft') — makes Bezalel a master of all the materials required for the tabernacle. No separate specialist is needed; God's Spirit-gift covers the full range.
6. God appoints a second craftsman: Oholiab ('the father's tent') from Dan — pairing Judah (the leading tribe) with Dan (a lesser tribe) in shared creative work. Beyond these two named artisans, God gives chokhmah ('wisdom') to kol-chakham-lev ('every wise-hearted person') — the skill is

- distributed broadly, not hoarded by an elite. The phrase *natatti chokhmah* ('I have placed wisdom') insists that even 'natural' talent is a divine gift. The closing clause — 'so they may make all I have commanded you' — connects the artisans' work directly to God's instructions in chapters 25-30.
7. The inventory of what must be built begins with the most sacred items: the tent of meeting (*ohel mo'ed*), the ark of the testimony (*aron ha'edut*), and the *kapporet* ('atonement cover/mercy seat') — the gold lid where God's presence dwells between the cherubim. The ordering follows the inside-out geography of the tabernacle: God's throne first, then the furnishings, then the outer structures.
 8. Three holy place furnishings: the table (for the showbread, 25:23-30), the menorah (*hammenorah hattehorah* — 'the pure lampstand,' made of beaten gold, 25:31-40), and the incense altar (*mizbach haqqetoret*, 30:1-10). These occupy the chamber directly before the veil — the space where priestly worship occurs daily.
 9. The outer court furnishings: the burnt offering altar (*mizbach ha'olah*, the large bronze altar, 27:1-8) and the basin (*kiyor*, the bronze washing basin for priestly purification, 30:17-21). The inventory moves outward from the holy of holies through the holy place to the courtyard, tracing the path a worshipper would travel in reverse.
 10. Two categories of priestly clothing: *bigdei hasserad* ('woven service garments' — possibly the fabric coverings for the tabernacle furnishings during transport) and *bigdei haqqodesh* ('holy garments' — the priestly vestments described in ch 28). Aaron's garments and his sons' garments are listed separately, reflecting the distinction between the high priest's elaborate eight-piece outfit and the standard priestly four-piece set.
 11. The inventory closes with two sacred substances: the anointing oil (*shemen hammishchah*, 30:22-33) and the sacred incense (*qetoret hassammim*, 30:34-38) — both with specific formulas that may not be replicated for common use. The closing phrase *kekhol asher-tsiyvitikha ya'asu* ('according to all I have commanded you they shall make') insists on exact execution. The artisans are Spirit-filled and creatively gifted, but their freedom operates within the boundaries of divine instruction.
 12. A new divine speech introduces the Sabbath command (v12-17) — placed here, between the tabernacle instructions and the giving of the tablets, with deliberate theological purpose. The Sabbath is connected to both creation (v17) and the tabernacle. Building God's dwelling is the highest form of work, but even this work must stop for the Sabbath. No task — not even constructing God's house — overrides the rhythm God established at creation.
 13. The Sabbath is identified as an *ot* ('sign') — the same word used for the rainbow (Gen 9:12) and circumcision (Gen 17:11). Each covenant has its sign: the Noahic covenant has the rainbow, the Abrahamic covenant has circumcision, and the Sinai covenant has the Sabbath. The purpose clause — *lada'at ki ani YHWH meqaddishkem* ('to know that I am the LORD who sanctifies you') — frames the Sabbath as a weekly declaration: God is the one who makes Israel holy. Holiness is not self-generated; it is received through obedience to God's rhythm.
 14. Two penalties for Sabbath violation: death (*mot yumat* — the standard capital punishment formula) and *karet* ('cut off'). The verb *mechalleleha* ('profanes it') is from *chalah* ('to make common, to profane') — treating the holy as ordinary. Sabbath violation is not merely disobedience but profanation: collapsing the distinction between sacred time and common time. The severity reflects the Sabbath's status as the covenant sign — violating the sign repudiates the covenant.
 15. The phrase *shabbat shabbaton* ('Sabbath of complete rest' — an intensified form, literally 'a sabbath of sabbath-ness') describes the most thoroughgoing cessation. The word *shabbaton* intensifies *shabbat* beyond ordinary rest into absolute, sacred stillness. This superlative form appears only for the weekly Sabbath and Yom Kippur (Lev 16:31) — the two most holy temporal observances.
 16. The Sabbath is called *berit olam* ('everlasting covenant') — not merely a commandment but a covenant in its own right. This is the highest possible designation: the Sabbath itself is a covenant between God and Israel, permanent and binding across all generations. The phrase *ledorotam* ('throughout their generations') ensures perpetuity. Every Sabbath is a covenant renewal — a weekly re-entering of the agreement between God and His people.
 17. The Sabbath is grounded in creation — the same rationale as Exodus 20:11. The final verb *vayyinnafash* ('was refreshed') is striking: from *nephesh* ('soul, being'), it suggests God was 're-souled' or 'caught His breath.' This is profoundly anthropomorphic — the infinite God is described as experiencing the refreshment of rest. The theological point: if God rested and was refreshed, how much more must humans? The Sabbath is not merely a rule but an imitation of divine behavior. Israel rests because God rested.
 18. The chapter's final verse connects the entire Sinai legislation (chs 20-31) to its physical embodiment: *shenei luchot ha'edut* ('two tablets of the testimony'). These are not merely stone; they are *ketuvim be'etsba Elohim* ('written by the finger of God') — the only part of Scripture attributed to God's direct, physical inscription. The phrase *kekhaloto ledabber itto* ('when He finished speaking with him') marks the end of the divine audience that began in 24:18. Moses now descends carrying the evidence of everything God said — and descends into the catastrophe of the golden calf (ch 32).

32

Summary: *While Moses is on the mountain, the people pressure Aaron to make a golden calf. God tells Moses the people have corrupted themselves. Moses intercedes, descends, shatters the tablets, destroys the calf, and the Levites execute judgment. Moses returns to the LORD to plead for the people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The gold used for the calf was Egypt's plunder (12:35-36) — what God provided for His dwelling is redirected to construct His rival. The verb yatsar ('fashioned,' v4) is the same word for God forming humanity in Genesis 2:7; Aaron creates in parody of God. The unanimity of idolatry mirrors the unanimity of covenant acceptance at Sinai (24:3, 7). Moses's intercession (vv11-14) stakes everything on God's reputation among the nations and His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — covenant logic used to restrain covenant judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase aseh-lanu elohim ('make us gods/a god,' v1) is ambiguous — elohim can be singular or plural. We rendered it 'gods' to capture the violation of the first commandment, while noting in our translator notes that a single image was produced. Aaron's explanation 'I threw it into the fire and out came this calf' (v24) we rendered literally, preserving his evasive, almost comic deflection of responsibility. Moses's offer 'blot me out of Your book' (v32) we rendered as a stark conditional, preserving its weight as the most radical intercessory offer in the Torah.*

Connections: *The golden calf is recalled in Deuteronomy 9:7-21; Nehemiah 9:18; Psalm 106:19-23; and Acts 7:39-41. Moses as intercessor parallels Abraham's intercession for Sodom (Genesis 18:22-33). The shattered tablets are replaced in chapter 34. The Levites' zeal (v26-28) establishes their role as consecrated servants, developed in Numbers 3.*

¹When the people saw that Moses was long in coming down from the mountain, the people gathered around Aaron and said to him, "Get up, make us gods who will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him." ²Aaron said to them, "Take off the gold rings that are on the ears of your wives, your sons, and your daughters, and bring them to me." ³So all the people took off the gold rings that were on their ears and brought them to Aaron. ⁴He received the gold from their hand and fashioned it with an engraving tool and made it into a molten calf. They said, "These are your gods, O Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt!" ⁵When Aaron saw this, he built an altar before it. Aaron made a proclamation and said, "Tomorrow shall be a feast to the LORD." ⁶They rose early the next day and offered burnt offerings and brought peace offerings. The people sat down to eat and drink and rose up to revel. ⁷The LORD said to Moses, "Go down, for your people whom you brought up from the land of Egypt have acted corruptly. ⁸They have turned aside quickly from the way I commanded them. They have made for themselves a molten calf and have bowed down to it and sacrificed to it and said, 'These are your gods, O Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt.'" ⁹The LORD said to Moses, "I have seen this people, and they are a stiff-necked people. ¹⁰Now leave Me alone, so that My anger may burn hot against them and I may consume them. And I will make you into a great nation." ¹¹But Moses implored the LORD his God and said, "O LORD, why does Your anger burn hot against Your people, whom You brought out of the land of Egypt with great power and a mighty hand? ¹²Why should the Egyptians say, 'He brought them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to consume them from the face of the earth'? Turn from Your burning anger and relent from this disaster against Your people. ¹³Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, Your servants, to whom You swore by Yourself and said to them, 'I will multiply your offspring like the stars of heaven, and all this land that I have promised I will give to your offspring, and they shall inherit it forever.'" ¹⁴The LORD relented from the disaster He had spoken of bringing on His people. ¹⁵Moses turned and went down from the mountain with the two tablets of the Testimony in his hand — tablets written on both sides, written on the front and on the back. ¹⁶The tablets were God's own craftsmanship, and the writing engraved on the tablets was God's own writing. ¹⁷When Joshua heard the noise of the people shouting, he said to Moses, "There is a sound of war in the camp." ¹⁸But Moses said, "It is not the sound of the cry of victory, nor the sound of the cry of defeat. It is the sound of singing that I hear." ¹⁹As soon as he came near the camp and saw the calf and the dancing,

Moses's anger burned hot. He threw the tablets from his hands and shattered them at the foot of the mountain. ²⁰He took the calf they had made and burned it with fire and ground it to powder and scattered it on the water and made the sons of Israel drink it. ²¹Moses said to Aaron, "What did this people do to you that you have brought such a great sin upon them?" ²²Aaron said, "Do not let the anger of my lord burn hot. You know this people, that they are set on evil. ²³They said to me, 'Make us gods who will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him.' ²⁴So I said to them, 'Whoever has gold, take it off.' They gave it to me, and I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf." ²⁵Moses saw that the people had broken loose, for Aaron had let them break loose, to the derision of their enemies. ²⁶Moses stood at the gate of the camp and said, "Whoever is for the LORD, come to me!" All the sons of Levi gathered around him. ²⁷He said to them, "Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel: Each of you put his sword on his side. Go back and forth from gate to gate throughout the camp, and each of you kill his brother, his companion, and his neighbor." ²⁸The sons of Levi did as Moses commanded, and about three thousand men of the people fell that day. ²⁹Moses said, "Today you have been ordained for the LORD, each at the cost of his son and his brother, so that He might bestow a blessing on you this day." ³⁰The next day Moses said to the people, "You have committed a great sin. Now I will go up to the LORD; perhaps I can make atonement for your sin." ³¹Moses returned to the LORD and said, "Alas, this people has committed a great sin. They have made for themselves gods of gold. ³²But now, if You will forgive their sin — but if not, please blot me out of the book that You have written." ³³The LORD said to Moses, "Whoever has sinned against Me, I will blot out of My book. ³⁴Now go, lead the people to the place I told you about. My angel will go before you. But on the day when I visit, I will visit their sin upon them." ³⁵The LORD struck the people because they made the calf — the one Aaron had made.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses has been on the mountain forty days (24:18). The people's impatience is both understandable and catastrophic. 'Make us gods' (aseh-lanu elohim) — the plural elohim can mean 'gods' or 'a god.' The request violates the first and second commandments simultaneously. 'This Moses' (Mosheh zeh) — the demonstrative zeh ('this') is dismissive, reducing the deliverer to 'that man.'
2. Aaron's compliance is immediate — no protest, no objection, no appeal to the covenant just ratified. The gold rings from Egypt (12:35-36) — the plunder that was supposed to build the tabernacle is redirected to build an idol. What God provided for His dwelling is used to construct His rival.
3. The people comply instantly — the unanimity of idolatry mirrors the unanimity of covenant acceptance at Sinai (24:3, 7). The same people who said 'we will do and we will obey' now do and obey the command to make an idol.
4. 'He fashioned it with an engraving tool and made it into a molten calf' (vayyatsar oto bacheret vayyya'asehu egel massekhah) — the verb yatsar ('to fashion, to form') is the same verb used for God forming humanity from dust (Genesis 2:7). Aaron creates in parody of God. The calf (egel) likely represents the Apis bull or Hathor cow of Egyptian religion — Israel reverts to the worship forms of the land they just left.
5. Aaron tries to syncretize: he builds an altar before the calf but declares 'a feast to the LORD' (chag laYHWH). He attempts to worship YHWH through the golden calf — merging the God of Sinai with the image of Egypt. This is not atheism but syncretic idolatry, which is worse: it uses God's name to validate what God forbids.
6. 'Rose up to revel' (vayyaqumu letsacheq) — the verb tsachaq ('to play, to sport') carries sexual overtones in Genesis (26:8; 39:14, 17). The 'reveling' likely includes sexual license alongside the feast. The worship has become orgiastic — covenant celebration inverted into covenant violation.
7. God disowns the people: 'your people whom you brought up' (ammekha asher he'eleita). God says to Moses 'your people,' not 'My people.' The covenant formula ('I will be your God, you will be My people') is rhetorically reversed. The verb shichet ('acted corruptly') echoes the pre-flood corruption (Genesis 6:11-12) — the same word that triggered the flood now describes the golden calf.
8. God quotes the people's own words back to Moses: 'These are your gods, O Israel.' The divine anger is rooted in the specific violation of the specific commands just given. 'Turned aside quickly' (saru maher) — the speed of apostasy is emphasized. Forty days was enough to abandon everything.
9. 'A stiff-necked people' (am-qesheh-oref) — literally 'hard of neck,' like an ox that refuses the yoke. The metaphor comes from agriculture: a stiff-necked animal cannot be guided. Israel resists God's direction the way a stubborn beast resists its driver.
10. 'Leave Me alone' (hannichah li) — God asks Moses to step aside so that divine wrath can proceed unchecked. The request implies that Moses's presence restrains God's judgment. 'I will make you into a great nation' — echoing the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 12:2), God offers Moses a fresh start, bypassing Israel entirely. The test is whether Moses will accept personal greatness at the cost of the people.
11. Moses refuses the offer and intercedes. He reframes the crisis: these are not 'my people' but 'Your people, whom You brought out.' Moses reverses God's disowning language — insisting that God's ownership and God's action define Israel's identity. The intercession is not a polite request but a theological argument.

12. Moses appeals to God's reputation among the nations: what will Egypt say? The argument is not self-interested but God-centered: Your name is at stake. If You destroy Israel, the world will conclude that You saved them only to slaughter them. Divine honor requires divine mercy.
13. Moses quotes God back to God — invoking the oaths to Abraham, Isaac, and Israel (Jacob's covenant name is used deliberately). The argument reaches its climax: You swore by Yourself (because there is no one greater to swear by, cf. Genesis 22:16). Your oath is irrevocable. Your character is the guarantee.
14. 'The LORD relented' (vayyinnachem YHWH) — the verb *nacham* means 'to relent, to change course, to be moved to compassion.' The same verb described God's grief before the flood (Genesis 6:6). Moses's intercession changes the outcome — not because God was wrong but because intercession is the divinely appointed means by which mercy operates. Prayer works.
15. The two tablets descend with Moses — 'written on both sides,' front and back. The writing covers every available surface, suggesting the comprehensiveness of God's words. The tablets are about to be shattered.
16. 'The work of God... the writing of God' (ma'aseh Elohim... mikhtav Elohim) — the tablets are divine artifacts: God made them and God wrote on them. What Moses is about to destroy is not human craftsmanship but divine handiwork. The shattering of the tablets is the visible rupture of the covenant.
17. Joshua, waiting below the summit (cf. 24:13), hears the noise first and misidentifies it as warfare. His military instinct reads chaos as combat.
18. Moses, with prophetic discernment, identifies the sound: not victory, not defeat, but singing. The word *annot* ('singing, responding') may refer to antiphonal worship — the people are singing in liturgical response around the calf. Worship in the wrong direction sounds like celebration.
19. Moses shatters the tablets 'at the foot of the mountain' (tachat hahar) — the location is significant. The covenant given at the mountain's top is broken at its base. The physical destruction enacts the spiritual reality: the covenant is ruptured. Moses's anger mirrors God's anger (v10), but Moses acts where God relented.
20. Moses destroys the calf systematically: burns it (fire), grinds it (powder), scatters it on water, forces the people to drink. The idol is consumed by the very people who worshipped it — they ingest their own sin. The act may echo the ordeal of the suspected adulteress (Numbers 5:24), and Israel has committed spiritual adultery.
21. Moses confronts Aaron directly: 'What did this people do to you?' The question implies that the people forced Aaron — giving him an opportunity to explain. But Aaron's answer (vv22-24) reveals cowardice, not coercion.
22. Aaron deflects blame to the people — 'you know this people, that they are set on evil.' The man charged with intercession between God and Israel now blames the people he was supposed to lead.
23. Aaron's retelling of the people's demand (cf. v1) is accurate in content but evasive in tone. He presents himself as passively responding to irresistible pressure.
24. 'I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf' — Aaron's excuse is perhaps the most transparently dishonest statement in the Pentateuch. Verse 4 says he fashioned it with an engraving tool. Now he claims it spontaneously emerged from the fire. The absurdity is the point: sin produces absurd explanations.
25. 'The people had broken loose' (para, 'to let loose, to make unrestrained') — the word describes hair unbound or a people without discipline. Aaron 'let them break loose' — his failure is leadership abdication. The derision (*shimtsah*) of enemies is noted: Israel's internal collapse becomes external shame.
26. 'Whoever is for the LORD, come to me!' (mi laYHWH elai) — Moses draws the line of allegiance. The Levites respond — the same tribe from which Moses and Aaron come. The crisis sorts Israel into those who stand with God and those who do not.
27. The command to kill is severe and devastating — brothers, companions, neighbors. The violence is intra-communal punishment for covenant violation. The sword judgment within Israel parallels the tenth plague's judgment within Egypt: covenant-breaking carries the same consequence as oppression.
28. 'About three thousand' — the number represents a significant but limited judgment. The total population was vastly larger. The punishment is severe but not total — mercy limits the scope of justice.
29. The Levites' willingness to execute judgment at personal cost — killing their own kin — becomes their ordination. The verb 'ordained' (*mil'u yedkhem*, 'fill your hand') is the same term used for priestly consecration (29:9). Loyalty to God above family becomes the Levites' defining qualification for service.
30. 'Perhaps I can make atonement' (*ulai akkapperah be'ad chattatkhem*) — the verb *kaphar* ('make atonement, cover') appears in Moses's own mouth. He is not certain he can succeed ('perhaps'), but he will try. Moses becomes the atoning intercessor — offering himself as the covering for Israel's sin.
31. Moses's prayer is raw and unfinished: 'If You will forgive their sin —' The sentence breaks off. The dash (indicated by the Hebrew punctuation) is a gap where words fail. Moses cannot complete the conditional because the alternative is too terrible to speak.
32. 'Blot me out of the book that You have written' (*mecheini na misifrekha asher katavta*) — Moses offers his own life in exchange for Israel's forgiveness. He would rather be erased from God's record than survive while Israel perishes. This is the most extreme act of intercession in the Hebrew Bible — the mediator offering himself as substitute.

33. God's reply is both merciful and just: He will not accept Moses as substitute ('whoever has sinned against Me, I will blot out'), but He will not destroy Israel entirely. Justice is individual ('whoever has sinned'), not corporate annihilation.
34. 'My angel will go before you' — God will guide Israel but hints at diminished presence. The angel replaces the direct, personal leading of the pillar (cf. 33:2-3). The full consequences of the sin will come 'on the day when I visit' (uvyom poqdi) — deferred judgment, not canceled judgment.
35. The chapter closes with a summary plague — God strikes the people for the calf Aaron made. The narrator names Aaron's responsibility one final time. The chapter that opened with the people's demand for gods closes with God's judgment on those who answered that demand.

33

Summary: *God offers to send Israel to the promised land but withdraws His personal presence — 'I will not go up among you, lest I consume you.' The people mourn. Moses meets God in the tent of meeting, asks to know God's ways, and makes the extraordinary request 'Show me Your glory.' God agrees to pass His goodness before Moses but shields him in the cleft of a rock.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The most devastating sentence in the post-golden-calf narrative is 'I will not go up among you' (v3) — God offers land without presence. Distance is mercy, not abandonment, but it is still loss. Moses's response redefines the stakes: 'If Your presence does not go with us, do not bring us up from here' (v15). Land without God is not the promised land. The request 'Show me Your glory' (har'eni na et-kevodekha, v18) is the boldest human petition in Scripture, and God's response — 'I will make all My goodness pass before you' (v19) — redefines glory as goodness.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered 'I will not go up among you' (lo e'eleh beqirbekha, v3) in its stark literalness to preserve the shock. The phrase panim el-panim ('face to face,' v11) describing God's conversation with Moses posed tension with v20 ('you cannot see My face and live'); we rendered both literally, as the Hebrew holds both together without resolving the paradox. The cleft of the rock (nigrat hatsur, v22) we rendered literally — the image of God shielding Moses with His hand while passing by defies illustration but conveys real theology.*

Connections: *Moses in the rock-cleft anticipates Elijah's encounter at Horeb (1 Kings 19:9-13). The 'face to face' language echoes Numbers 12:8 and Deuteronomy 34:10. God's refusal to let Moses see His face connects to John 1:18 ('No one has ever seen God'). The tent of meeting outside the camp (v7) prefigures the tabernacle's mediating function.*

¹The LORD said to Moses, "Go up from here, you and the people you brought up from the land of Egypt, to the land I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, 'To your offspring I will give it.' ²I will send an angel before you, and I will drive out the Canaanites, the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. ³Go up to a land flowing with milk and honey — but I will not go up among you, for you are a stiff-necked people, lest I consume you on the way." ⁴When the people heard this disastrous word, they mourned, and no one put on his ornaments. ⁵The LORD said to Moses, "Say to the sons of Israel, 'You are a stiff-necked people. If for a single moment I were to go up among you, I would consume you. Now take off your ornaments, that I may know what to do with you.'" ⁶So the sons of Israel stripped themselves of their ornaments from Mount Horeb onward. ⁷Moses used to take the tent and pitch it outside the camp, far from the camp, and he called it the tent of meeting. Everyone who sought the LORD would go out to the tent of meeting, which was outside the camp. ⁸Whenever Moses went out to the tent, all the people would rise and stand, each at the entrance of his tent, and watch Moses until he entered the tent. ⁹When Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would descend and stand at the entrance of the tent, and the LORD would speak with Moses. ¹⁰When all the people saw the pillar of cloud standing at the entrance of the tent, all the people would rise and worship, each at the entrance of his tent. ¹¹The LORD would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp, but his assistant Joshua the son of Nun, a young man, would not depart from the tent. ¹²Moses said to the LORD, "See, You say to me, 'Bring up this people,' but You have not let me know whom You will send with me. Yet You have said, 'I know you by name, and you have also found favor in My eyes.'" ¹³Now if I have found favor in Your eyes, please show me Your ways, that I may know You and find favor in Your eyes.

Consider too that this nation is Your people." ¹⁴He said, "My presence will go with you, and I will give you rest." ¹⁵Moses said to Him, "If Your presence will not go with us, do not bring us up from here. ¹⁶For how shall it be known that I have found favor in Your eyes, I and Your people? Is it not by Your going with us, so that we are distinct — I and Your people — from every other people on the face of the earth?" ¹⁷The LORD said to Moses, "I will do this very thing that you have spoken, for you have found favor in My eyes, and I know you by name." ¹⁸Moses said, "Please, show me Your glory." ¹⁹He said, "I will make all My goodness pass before you, and I will proclaim the name of the LORD before you. I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and I will show compassion to whom I will show compassion. ²⁰But He said, "you cannot see My face, for no man can see Me and live." ²¹The LORD said, "There is a place near Me where you shall stand on the rock. ²²When My glory passes by, I will put you in a cleft of the rock and cover you with My hand until I have passed by. ²³Then I will take away My hand, and you shall see My back, but My face shall not be seen."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God repeats the land promise but distances Himself from the journey. 'You and the people you brought up' — again, God uses 'you brought,' not 'I brought.' The disowning language from 32:7 continues. The promise of land survives, but the promise of presence is withdrawn.
2. An angel will go instead of God Himself. This is diminished presence — guidance without intimacy. The angel can drive out enemies but cannot replace the direct fellowship Israel experienced at Sinai.
3. 'I will not go up among you' (ki lo e'eleh beqirbekha) — the most devastating sentence in the post-golden-calf narrative. God offers land without presence. The reason is protective: God's holiness would destroy the stiff-necked people en route. Distance is mercy, not abandonment — but it is still loss.
4. 'This disastrous word' (haddavar hara hazzeh) — the people recognize the catastrophe. Mourning and stripping off ornaments are signs of grief and repentance. The gold they stripped off to make the calf is now stripped off in remorse.
5. God's demand to remove ornaments serves a dual purpose: it is penitential (acknowledging sin) and diagnostic ('that I may know what to do with you'). God presents Himself as deliberating — the outcome is not yet final. The stiff-necked people have a window for repentance.
6. 'From Mount Horeb onward' (mehar Chorev) — the ornament removal is permanent, not temporary. Israel leaves Sinai marked by the absence of the adornment they misused. The gold that should have built the tabernacle is now gone.
7. The tent of meeting (ohel mo'ed) is pitched outside the camp — a provisional arrangement reflecting the fractured relationship. God will not dwell inside the camp after the golden calf. Anyone seeking the LORD must go outside — the journey to God now requires physical distance from the community that sinned.
8. The people watch Moses walk to the tent — standing at their own tent doors, they observe the mediator crossing the gap between camp and presence. The watching is reverent and anxious: will God speak? Will the relationship survive?
9. The pillar of cloud descends when Moses enters — visible confirmation that God still meets with the mediator, even if He has withdrawn from the camp. The cloud at the tent entrance is the Shekinah in diminished form: localized to one tent, accessible to one man.
10. The people worship from a distance — each at his own tent entrance. They can see the cloud but cannot approach it. The worship is real but remote, separated by the gap the golden calf created.
11. 'Face to face, as a man speaks to his friend' (panim el-panim ka'asher yedabber ish el-re'ehu) — the most intimate description of divine-human communication in the Bible. Moses and God speak as friends. The word re'a ('friend, companion') implies mutual regard and trust. This verse will be qualified by v20 ('you cannot see My face'), creating a productive tension: Moses knows God face-to-face yet cannot see God's face fully. Intimacy is real but not unlimited.
12. Moses presses for clarity: who will accompany them? God's promise of an angel (v2) is insufficient. Moses wants to know God's ways (derakhekha), not just God's commands. The request is for deeper relationship, not merely better instructions.
13. 'Show me Your ways, that I may know You' (hodi'eni na et-derakhekha ve'eda'akha) — the verb yada ('know') is the deepest relational knowledge in Hebrew — intimate, personal, experiential. Moses wants not information about God but encounter with God. 'Consider that this nation is Your people' — Moses insists on God's ownership again: they are Yours, not mine.
14. 'My presence will go with you, and I will give you rest' (panai yelekhu vahanichoti lakh) — God's panai ('My face/presence') will go. The crisis of v3 ('I will not go among you') is reversed. Moses's intercession has restored divine presence. The verb nuach ('give rest') echoes Noah's name and the Sabbath rest — God will bring Israel to the place of completed rest.
15. Moses tests the promise: 'If Your presence will not go, do not bring us up.' The land without God's presence is worthless. Moses would rather stay in the wilderness with God than enter the promised land without Him. This is the deepest statement of covenant priority in the Torah: presence over prosperity, relationship over real estate.

16. 'Is it not by Your going with us, so that we are distinct?' (halo belekhtekha immanu venifleinu) — the verb palah ('be distinct, be set apart') returns from the plague narrative (8:18; 9:4; 11:7). What distinguishes Israel from every other nation is not their law, their land, or their lineage — it is God's presence among them. Without the Shekhinah, Israel is just another people.
17. God grants Moses's request in full: 'I will do this very thing.' The intercession succeeds not because Moses is eloquent but because God has chosen to be accessible to prayer. 'I know you by name' (va'eda'akha beshem) — God's knowledge of Moses is personal, not categorical. The same verb (yada) Moses used in v13 ('that I may know You') is now applied by God to Moses. The knowing is mutual.
18. 'Show me Your glory' (har'eni na et-kevodekha) — the climactic request. Moses has secured God's presence for the journey; now he asks for more. He wants to see the kavod — the full, weighty, tangible reality of God. This is the most audacious prayer in the Hebrew Bible.
19. God's answer is layered: He will show His goodness (tuv), proclaim His name, and declare His sovereign freedom ('I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious'). The formula of sovereign mercy (channoti et-asher achon verichamti et-asher arachem) establishes that God's grace is not compelled but freely given. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 9:15.
20. 'You cannot see My face, for no man can see Me and live' (lo tukhal lir'ot et-panai ki lo-yir'ani ha'adam vachai) — the limitation is not arbitrary but protective. The full, unfiltered reality of God (His panim, His kavod) would overwhelm and destroy any created being. Moses can experience God's goodness, hear God's name, and see God's back — but not the unmediated face. The face remains beyond mortal capacity.
21. 'A place near Me' (makom itti) — God provides a location for the encounter. The word makom ('place') is the same word that will become a rabbinic name for God Himself (HaMakom). God creates the conditions under which Moses can survive the encounter.
22. 'I will put you in a cleft of the rock and cover you with My hand' (vesamtikha beniqrat hatsur vesakoti khappi alekha) — God shields Moses in the rock (tsur, which is also a divine title) and covers him with His hand (kaf). The imagery is profoundly tender: God hides Moses to protect him, then passes by. The divine hand both conceals and shelters.
23. 'You shall see My back, but My face shall not be seen' (vera'ita et-achorai ufanai lo yera'u) — Moses sees where God has been (achor, 'the back, what follows, the aftermath') but not where God is going (panim, 'the face, the front, the presence'). The back of God is what God leaves behind — the trace, the aftereffect, the residue of glory. This is how all mortals know God: not by looking at Him directly but by seeing what His presence has produced.

34

Summary: *Moses cuts new tablets and ascends Sinai alone. God passes before him, proclaiming His name and character: 'Compassionate and gracious, slow to anger, abounding in faithful love and truth.' The covenant is renewed with warnings against idolatry. Moses descends with his face shining.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The divine self-proclamation of vv6-7 is the theological center of the entire Old Testament — the most cited passage within the Hebrew Bible itself. God defines His own character not by power but by compassion, grace, patience, chesed ('faithful love'), and emet ('truth/faithfulness'). The arithmetic of mercy versus judgment is explicit: visiting iniquity to three or four generations, but extending chesed to thousands. Moses's shining face (qaran, v29 — from qeren, 'horn/ray') is so extraordinary that he must wear a veil when speaking to the people. The renewed covenant demonstrates that God's commitment survives Israel's worst failure.*

Translation Friction: *The divine attributes of v6-7 required our most careful rendering. We chose 'compassionate' for rachum (from rechem, 'womb'), 'gracious' for channun, 'slow to anger' for erekh appayim (literally 'long of nostrils'), and 'abounding in faithful love and truth' for rav-chesed ve'emet. The verb qaran ('shone,' v29) literally means 'sent out horns/rays'; the Vulgate's mistranslation as 'horned' produced centuries of art showing Moses with horns. We rendered it as 'shone' with the etymology noted. The phrase nose avon vafesha vechata'ah ('forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin,' v7) lists three distinct categories of wrongdoing; we preserved all three.*

Connections: *The divine self-proclamation is echoed in Numbers 14:18; Nehemiah 9:17; Psalms 86:15; 103:8; 145:8; Joel 2:13; Jonah 4:2; and Nahum 1:3. Moses's shining face is cited in 2 Corinthians 3:7-18, where Paul contrasts the fading glory with the permanent glory in Christ. The renewed tablets demonstrate the pattern of covenant failure and restoration that structures the entire biblical narrative.*

¹The LORD said to Moses, "Cut for yourself two tablets of stone like the first ones, and I will write on the tablets the words that were on the first tablets, which you shattered. ²Be ready by morning, and come up in the morning to Mount Sinai and

present yourself to Me there on the top of the mountain. ³No one shall come up with you, and no one shall be seen anywhere on the mountain. Even the flocks and herds shall not graze before that mountain." ⁴So Moses cut two tablets of stone like the first ones, and he rose early in the morning and went up on Mount Sinai, as the LORD had commanded him, and took in his hand the two tablets of stone. ⁵The LORD came down in the cloud, stood there with him, and proclaimed His own name — the LORD. ⁶The LORD passed before him and proclaimed: "The LORD, the LORD, a God compassionate and gracious, slow to anger, and abounding in steadfast love and faithfulness, ⁷keeping steadfast love for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, yet who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the children and the children's children, to the third and fourth generation." ⁸Moses quickly bowed his head toward the earth and worshipped. ⁹He said, "If now I have found favor in Your eyes, O Lord, please let the Lord go in our midst. Although this is a stiff-necked people, pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us as Your inheritance." ¹⁰He said, "I am making a covenant. Before all your people I will do wonders that have not been done in all the earth or in any nation. All the people among whom you live shall see the work of the LORD, for it is an awesome thing that I will do with you. ¹¹"Observe what I command you this day. I will drive out before you the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. ¹²Take care that you do not make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land to which you are going, lest it become a snare in your midst. ¹³You shall tear down their altars and smash their sacred pillars and cut down their Asherah poles. ¹⁴You must not bow down to any other god, because the LORD, whose very name is Jealous, is a God who demands exclusive devotion. ¹⁵Take care that you do not make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, lest when they prostitute themselves to their gods and sacrifice to their gods, someone invite you and you eat of his sacrifice, ¹⁶and you take some of his daughters for your sons, and his daughters prostitute themselves to their gods and make your sons prostitute themselves to their gods. ¹⁷You shall not make for yourself any gods of cast metal. ¹⁸"You shall keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread. Seven days you shall eat unleavened bread, as I commanded you, at the appointed time in the month of Aviv, for in the month of Aviv you came out of Egypt. ¹⁹Every firstborn that opens the womb is Mine, including every male firstborn among your livestock, whether ox or sheep. ²⁰The firstborn of a donkey you shall redeem with a lamb, and if you do not redeem it, you shall break its neck. All the firstborn of your sons you shall redeem. No one shall appear before Me empty-handed. ²¹Six days you shall work, but on the seventh day you shall rest. Even in plowing season and in harvest you shall rest. ²²You shall observe the Feast of Weeks, the firstfruits of the wheat harvest, and the Feast of Ingathering at the turn of the year. ²³Three times in the year every male among you shall appear before the Lord GOD, the God of Israel. ²⁴For I will drive out nations before you and enlarge your borders, and no one shall covet your land when you go up to appear before the LORD your God three times in the year. ²⁵You shall not offer the blood of My sacrifice with anything leavened, nor shall the sacrifice of the Feast of the Passover be left until the morning. ²⁶The best of the firstfruits of your ground you shall bring to the house of the LORD your God. You shall not boil a young goat in its mother's milk." ²⁷The LORD said to Moses, "Write these words, for in accordance with these words I have made a covenant with you and with Israel." ²⁸He was there with the LORD forty days and forty nights. He neither ate bread nor drank water. And He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the Ten Words. ²⁹When Moses came down from Mount Sinai — the two tablets of the Testimony were in Moses's hand as he came down from the mountain — Moses did not know that the skin of his face shone because he had been speaking with God. ³⁰Aaron and all the sons of Israel saw Moses, and the skin of his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him. ³¹But Moses called to them, and Aaron and all the leaders of the congregation returned to him, and Moses spoke to them. ³²Afterward all the sons of Israel came near, and he commanded them all that the LORD had spoken to him on Mount Sinai. ³³When Moses had finished speaking with them, he put a veil over his face. ³⁴Whenever Moses went in before the LORD to speak with Him, he would remove the veil until he came out. When he came out and told the sons of Israel what he had been commanded, ³⁵the sons of Israel would see the face of Moses, that the skin of Moses's face was shining. Then Moses would put the veil over his face again, until he went in to speak with Him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God commands replacement tablets — the covenant is renewed, not abandoned. Moses must cut the stone ('cut for yourself'), but God will write the words. Human preparation meets divine inscription. The shattered tablets are not erased from history; they are replaced.
2. Morning preparation — the same early-morning obedience pattern seen throughout Moses's ministry (cf. 24:4; 32:6; 34:4). The encounter with God requires both readiness and solitude.
3. Total isolation — not even animals may be present on the mountain. The renewed encounter demands even stricter boundaries than the first Sinai theophany (ch19). The severity reflects the increased stakes: this is covenant restoration after catastrophic breach.
4. Moses obeys exactly — cutting stone, rising early, ascending, carrying the tablets. The simple sequence of verbs (cut, rose, went up, took) mirrors the obedience formulas that characterize faithful response throughout the Torah.
5. 'The LORD descended in the cloud and stood with him there' (vayyered YHWH be'anah vayyityatsev immo sham) — God comes down to Moses's level. The verb yatsav ('stood, stationed') implies deliberate positioning: God plants Himself beside Moses. 'He proclaimed the name of the LORD' (vayyiqra veshem YHWH) — God Himself speaks His own name aloud. This is the ultimate self-revelation: God interpreting God.
6. This is the most important theological statement in the Hebrew Bible. God defines Himself in thirteen attributes (according to rabbinic counting): YHWH, YHWH (the name repeated), El (God), rachum (compassionate), chanun (gracious), erekh appayim (slow to anger), rav-chesed (abounding in steadfast love), emet (faithfulness/truth). The self-revelation begins with mercy and moves to justice. Compassion precedes judgment. This verse is quoted or echoed more than any other verse in the Old Testament by Old Testament authors (Numbers 14:18; Joel 2:13; Jonah 4:2; Nahum 1:3; Psalms 86:15; 103:8; 145:8; Nehemiah 9:17; 2 Chronicles 30:9).
7. The self-revelation continues: 'keeping steadfast love for thousands' (notser chesed la'alafim) — chesed is God's default posture, extended to thousands of generations. 'Forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin' (nose avon vafesha vechata'ah) — the three Hebrew words for wrongdoing are listed comprehensively: avon (guilt/crookedness), pesha (rebellion/transgression), and chata'ah (sin/missing the mark). God forgives all categories of human failure. 'Yet who will by no means clear the guilty' (venaqeh lo yenaqeh) — justice is not abolished by mercy. The guilty are not automatically acquitted. The tension between mercy (v6) and justice (v7) defines the character of God throughout Scripture.
8. Moses's response is immediate worship — bowing to the earth (vayyiqqod... vayyishtachu). The self-revelation of God's character produces prostration, not theological discussion. The proper response to God's self-definition is not analysis but adoration.
9. Moses immediately applies the revelation: since God is compassionate and forgiving (vv6-7), Moses asks Him to come among the stiff-necked people. The golden calf proved Israel's stubbornness; God's self-description proves His capacity to endure it. Moses's argument: Your character (just revealed) is precisely what this people needs. 'Take us as Your inheritance' (unchaltanu) — the verb nachal means to inherit, to take possession of. Moses asks God to claim Israel as His own property.
10. God responds with covenant renewal: 'I am making a covenant' (hineh anokhi koret berit). The verb karat ('cutting') restarts the covenant process. The wonders (nifla'ot) promised will be unprecedented — not replications of the exodus plagues but new acts of divine power. The covenant is not merely restored but advanced.
11. The covenant stipulations that follow (vv11-26) parallel the Book of the Covenant (ch21-23) in compressed form. The core concerns: exclusive worship, no foreign covenants, festival observance, firstborn dedication, Sabbath rest.
12. 'A snare in your midst' (lemaqesh beqirbekha) — the trap metaphor recurs (cf. 23:33). Foreign covenants create religious obligations that compromise loyalty to YHWH.
13. Three types of Canaanite worship installations are to be destroyed: altars (mizbehot), sacred pillars (matstsebot), and Asherah poles (asherim). The physical infrastructure of competing worship must be demolished.
14. 'The LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God' (YHWH Qanna shemo El qanna hu) — God's jealousy (qin'ah) is a name, not merely an attribute. Qanna is who God is — passionately, exclusively committed to His covenant people. The jealousy of God is the emotional intensity of covenant love that will not share its beloved with rivals.
15. The warning against foreign covenants is specific and practical: shared meals lead to shared worship lead to shared marriages lead to shared gods. The progression from hospitality to apostasy is mapped in a single sentence.
16. Intermarriage becomes the vector for religious compromise. The verb zana ('prostitute') describes the spiritual dimension: worshipping other gods is marital betrayal of the covenant relationship with YHWH.
17. 'Gods of cast metal' (elohei massekha) — a direct reference to the golden calf (32:4, egel massekha). The prohibition specifically targets the kind of idolatry Israel just committed.
18. The festival calendar restated: Unleavened Bread in the month of Aviv. The repetition of established law within the renewed covenant signals continuity — the golden calf did not erase the prior legislation.
19. Firstborn dedication restated — every firstborn belongs to God, both human and animal. The principle from 13:2, 12 is reaffirmed in the covenant renewal.

20. Redemption of donkey firstborn and human firstborn — the same provisions as 13:13. 'No one shall appear before Me empty-handed' — worship requires offering; encounter requires gift.
21. Sabbath rest — even during the critical seasons of plowing and harvest, when economic pressure is greatest, the Sabbath stands. The command 'even in plowing season and in harvest you shall rest' addresses the most tempting exceptions and forbids them.
22. Feast of Weeks (Shavuot) and Feast of Ingathering (Sukkot) — the second and third pilgrimage festivals, completing the annual calendar first established in 23:14-17.
23. Three annual pilgrimages — all males before the Lord GOD. The requirement is unchanged from 23:17.
24. God provides security during the pilgrimage periods: 'no one shall covet your land.' The promise addresses the practical objection: if all men leave for the festival, who protects the territory? God Himself guarantees border security during worship. Obedience is not impractical; God covers the risk.
25. Sacrificial regulations: no leaven with blood offerings, no Passover leftovers until morning. The same rules from 12:10 and 23:18.
26. Firstfruits to God's house and the prohibition of boiling a kid in its mother's milk — the same closure as 23:19. The covenant renewal restates the same boundaries.
27. 'Write these words' (ketov lekha et-haddevarim ha'elleh) — Moses is commanded to write. 'In accordance with these words I have made a covenant' (ki al-pi haddevarim ha'elleh karati ittekha berit) — the written words are the basis of the covenant. The covenant is a textual reality — its terms are recorded, not merely spoken.
28. 'Forty days and forty nights' — the same duration as the first ascent (24:18). Moses fasts completely: no bread, no water. The physical impossibility underscores divine sustenance — God Himself keeps Moses alive during this period. 'The Ten Words' (aseret haddevarim) — the formal Hebrew name for the Ten Commandments. Devarim means 'words,' not 'commandments.' These are God's words, not merely God's rules.
29. 'The skin of his face shone' (qaran or panav) — the verb qaran is related to qeren ('horn, ray'). Moses's face literally radiates — it emits light from having been in God's presence. The shining is involuntary and unconscious ('Moses did not know'). Prolonged exposure to God's kavod leaves a visible residue. The Vulgate's translation of qaran as 'was horned' (cornuta) led to centuries of artistic depictions of Moses with horns.
30. The people are afraid of Moses's radiant face — the reflected glory is too much for them. The irony is poignant: Israel could not bear to hear God's voice (20:19) and now cannot bear to see God's reflection on Moses's face. The mediator carries glory that the people cannot directly endure.
31. Moses must call them back — they have retreated in fear. Aaron and the leaders approach first, then the people follow. The chain of communication mirrors Sinai: God Moses leaders people.
32. Moses transmits the renewed covenant commands to all Israel. The content of vv11-26 is delivered to the community.
33. The veil (masveh) covers Moses's face after he finishes speaking. The veil is not worn during communication with God (v34) or during communication with Israel (v32-33a), but afterward — when the message has been delivered and Moses returns to ordinary life. Paul interprets this veil in 2 Corinthians 3:13-18.
34. Moses removes the veil when speaking with God and when speaking to Israel — transparency in both directions. The veil goes on only after the message is delivered, when Moses is neither in divine encounter nor in prophetic proclamation.
35. The pattern becomes permanent: enter God's presence (veil off), emerge radiant, speak to Israel (veil off), put the veil on. The cycle of revelation and veiling structures Moses's ongoing ministry for the rest of his life.

35

Summary: *Moses reassembles all Israel after the golden calf crisis, reaffirms the Sabbath (including the fire prohibition), and calls for voluntary contributions and skilled workers for the tabernacle. The people respond with overwhelming generosity, bringing materials until there is more than enough.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sabbath instruction comes before the tabernacle construction call, establishing that even sacred work must yield to sacred rest — the death penalty for Sabbath violation (v2) underscores that no human project, however holy, supersedes God's rhythm. The verb qahal ('assemble,' v1) signals a formal covenant gathering, reconstituting the community after the catastrophic breach of chapter 32. The generosity described here contrasts sharply with the golden calf episode: the same people who stripped off gold for an idol now bring gold, silver, and fabric for God's dwelling.*

Translation Friction: The fire prohibition on Sabbath (lo-teva'aru esh, v3) appears only here in the Pentateuch. We rendered it directly — 'Do not light a fire anywhere in your dwellings on the Sabbath day' — without interpreting whether it extends to all use of fire or only to construction-related fire. The phrase kol-nediv libbo ('everyone whose heart was willing,' v5) we rendered to emphasize that the tabernacle offering is voluntary generosity, not compulsory taxation, matching the terumah language of 25:2.

Connections: The Sabbath-before-tabernacle sequence parallels the Sabbath-after-creation pattern of Genesis 2:1-3. The overwhelming generosity (36:5-7) reverses the golden calf's perversion of resources. The skilled women spinning (v25-26) anticipate the 'woman of valor' in Proverbs 31:19. The voluntary offering model shapes later temple contributions (1 Chronicles 29:6-9; 2 Corinthians 8-9).

¹Moses assembled the entire Israelite community and told them, "These are the things the LORD has commanded you to do. ²Work may be done for six days, but the seventh day is to be a holy day for you — a complete sabbath of rest dedicated to the LORD. Anyone who does any work on that day must be put to death. ³Do not light a fire anywhere in your dwellings on the Sabbath day. ⁴Moses addressed the entire Israelite community: "This is what the LORD has commanded: ⁵Take from your possessions a contribution for the LORD. Let everyone whose heart is willing bring an offering to the LORD: gold, silver, and bronze, ⁶blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, fine linen, and goat hair, ⁷ram skins dyed red, fine leather, and acacia wood, ⁸oil for the lampstand, spices for the anointing oil and the fragrant incense, ⁹onyx stones, and gemstones for mounting on the ephod and the breastpiece. ¹⁰Let all the skilled among you come and produce everything the LORD has commanded: ¹¹the tabernacle with its tent, its covering, its clasps, its frames, its crossbars, its posts, and its bases; ¹²the ark with its poles, the mercy seat, and the screening curtain; ¹³the table with its poles and all its utensils, and the bread of the Presence; ¹⁴the lampstand for illumination with its equipment, its lamps, and the oil for light; ¹⁵the incense altar with its poles, the anointing oil, the fragrant incense, and the entrance screen at the tabernacle doorway; ¹⁶the altar for burnt offerings with its bronze grating, its poles, and all its equipment; the basin with its stand; ¹⁷the curtains of the courtyard with their posts and bases, and the screen for the courtyard entrance; ¹⁸the tent pegs for the tabernacle, the tent pegs for the courtyard, and their ropes; ¹⁹the woven garments for service in the sanctuary — the sacred garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments for his sons to serve as priests." ²⁰The entire Israelite community then withdrew from Moses's presence. ²¹Everyone whose heart moved them and whose spirit stirred them came forward, bringing their contribution to the LORD for constructing the tent of meeting, for all its service, and for the sacred garments. ²²Men and women alike came — all who were generous of heart — bringing brooches, earrings, rings, and ornaments, every kind of gold jewelry. Each one who presented a wave offering of gold gave it to the LORD. ²³Everyone who had blue, purple, or scarlet yarn, fine linen, goat hair, ram skins dyed red, or fine leather brought these materials. ²⁴All who contributed silver or bronze brought their offering to the LORD, and everyone who had acacia wood suitable for any part of the project brought it. ²⁵Every woman skilled in the craft spun with her hands and brought what she had produced — blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and fine linen. ²⁶All the women whose hearts stirred them with skill spun the goat hair. ²⁷The leaders brought onyx stones and gemstones for mounting on the ephod and the breastpiece, ²⁸along with spices, oil for the lampstand, oil for anointing, and fragrant incense. ²⁹Every Israelite man and woman whose heart prompted them to contribute to the work the LORD had commanded through Moses brought a freewill offering to the LORD. ³⁰Moses told the Israelites, "Take note — the LORD has specifically chosen Bezalel son of Uri, son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah. ³¹He has filled him with the Spirit of God — with wisdom, understanding, knowledge, and every kind of skill, ³²to create artistic designs and to work with gold, silver, and bronze, ³³to cut gemstones for mounting, to carve wood, and to execute every form of artistic craftsmanship. ³⁴He has also given both him and Oholiab son of Ahisamach, from the tribe of Dan, the ability to teach others. ³⁵He has filled them with skill to carry out every kind of craft — engraving, designing, embroidering with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and fine linen, and weaving — performing every kind of work and creating artistic designs."

1. Moses reconvenes all Israel after the golden calf crisis. The verb qahal (assemble) signals a formal covenant gathering — the community must hear God's construction instructions together.
2. Even tabernacle construction — sacred work — must yield to Sabbath rest. The death penalty underscores that no human project, however holy, supersedes God's rhythm of rest.
3. The fire prohibition on Sabbath extends even to basic domestic activity. This instruction appears only here in the Pentateuch, emphasizing Sabbath as total cessation.
4. Moses relays God's instructions for freewill offerings. The phrase 'this is what the LORD has commanded' (zeh ha-davar) frames what follows as divine directive, not human fundraising.
5. The offering (terumah) is voluntary — only from those whose hearts are willing (nediv libo). God funds His dwelling through generous hearts, not taxation.
6. The textile materials — blue (tekhelet), purple (argaman), scarlet (tola'at shani) — are expensive dyes. Fine linen (shesh) and goat hair provide the structural fabrics.
7. Ram skins dyed red and tachash leather (possibly dugong or seal) form the protective outer coverings. Acacia wood provides the structural framework material.
8. Oil, spices, and incense materials serve the lampstand, anointing rituals, and altar of incense — the ongoing worship functions of the tabernacle.
9. Onyx and setting stones are for the ephod shoulder pieces and the breastpiece — the high priest's garments that bear Israel's names before God.
10. The call goes to every 'wise-hearted' person (khakham-lev). Skill in craftsmanship is framed as wisdom — a gift from God, not merely human talent.
11. This begins the comprehensive inventory of tabernacle components. The tabernacle (mishkan) is God's dwelling; the tent (ohel) is its covering structure.
12. The ark houses the covenant tablets; the mercy seat (kapporet) is where God meets His people. The screening curtain (parokhet) separates the Most Holy Place.
13. The table of the Presence holds the twelve loaves representing Israel's tribes — a perpetual offering symbolizing God's sustaining provision.
14. The lampstand (menorah) provides light in the Holy Place. Its oil must be continually supplied — Israel tends the light of God's presence.
15. The incense altar stands before the veil; its fragrant smoke rises as a symbol of prayer. The entrance screen marks the threshold of the Holy Place.
16. The burnt offering altar is the central site of sacrifice in the courtyard. The bronze basin provides water for the priests' ritual purification.
17. The courtyard curtains create the sacred perimeter — the boundary between common space and holy ground where Israel meets God.
18. Tent pegs and ropes are the most mundane components, yet even these are specified. Every detail of God's dwelling, however small, matters.
19. The priestly garments are 'garments of service' (bigdei serad) — clothing designed for sacred function, not personal adornment.
20. The congregation departs to gather their offerings. The gap between instruction and response creates space for genuine voluntary decision.
21. Two phrases describe the givers: 'heart lifted him' (nasa'o libbo) and 'spirit made willing' (nadevah rucho). The offering flows from internal motivation, not external pressure.
22. Both men and women contribute. The jewelry items — brooches, earrings, rings, ornaments — represent personal wealth surrendered for communal sacred purpose.
23. Each person brings what they have. The diversity of materials reflects the diversity of the community, unified in a single construction project.
24. Silver, bronze, and acacia wood complete the structural materials. The emphasis on bringing what was 'found with' each person highlights individual participation.
25. Women's spinning skill is highlighted as a form of wisdom (khokhmat-lev). Their craftsmanship directly produces the tabernacle's textile components.
26. Goat hair spinning for the tent covering requires specific expertise. The women whose hearts 'lifted them in wisdom' volunteer this specialized skill.
27. The leaders (nesi'im) contribute the most costly items — precious stones and gemstones that only they could afford for the ephod and breastpiece.
28. Leaders also supply the spices and oils for ongoing worship — anointing, lampstand, and incense. These consumable materials require continual replenishment.
29. This summary statement emphasizes the freewill character of the offering (nedavah). The entire community — men and women — participates voluntarily.
30. God calls Bezalel 'by name' (be-shem) — a personal divine appointment. His lineage (Uri, Hur, Judah) connects tabernacle artistry to Israel's royal tribe.

31. The Spirit of God fills Bezalel with wisdom (khokhmah), understanding (tevunah), knowledge (da'at), and skill (melakhah). Artisan craft is a spiritual gift.
32. Bezalel's artistic design ability (makhashavot) involves creative thinking — the capacity to envision and execute complex metalwork in gold, silver, and bronze.
33. Stone cutting, wood carving, and artistic craftsmanship complete Bezalel's skill set. He masters every medium the tabernacle requires.
34. God gives Bezalel and Oholiab the ability to teach — their skill is not hoarded but transmitted. Oholiab represents Dan, pairing with Judah in the work.
35. The comprehensive skill list — engraving, designing, embroidering, weaving — covers every textile and decorative art needed for the tabernacle and its garments.

36

Summary: *Bezalel, Oholiab, and the skilled workers begin construction. The people bring so much material that Moses must order them to stop. The craftsmen build the tabernacle curtains, frames, crossbars, and veil exactly as God commanded.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The surplus problem (vv5-7) is unique in Scripture — Moses must restrain giving because there is more than enough (dai lahem vehoter). The people's generosity, arriving 'morning after morning' (boqer baboqer, v3), is an echo of manna-rhythm applied to worship: daily provision, daily offering. The construction narrative closely mirrors the instruction chapters (25-31), creating a literary parallel between divine speech and human obedience — what God said, they did.*

Translation Friction: *The near-verbatim repetition of construction details from chapters 25-31 posed a rendering challenge: we maintained consistency with the instruction-chapter vocabulary to highlight the obedience pattern, while allowing natural variation in English where the Hebrew itself varies. The phrase dai lahem vehoter ('enough and more,' v7) we rendered as 'more than enough,' capturing the emphatic surplus. The shift from 'you shall make' (instruction) to 'they made' (execution) tracks the faithful implementation of the divine blueprint.*

Connections: *The surplus of offerings reverses the golden calf's misuse of resources. The obedience pattern ('as the LORD commanded') echoes the creation account's 'and it was so' (Genesis 1). The craftsmen's faithful execution anticipates the summary refrain of chapter 39 and the completion formula of 40:33. David's temple-fund appeal in 1 Chronicles 29:1-9 follows this model of joyful, abundant giving.*

¹Bezalel, Oholiab, and every person gifted with skill — in whom the LORD had placed wisdom and understanding to know how to carry out all the construction work for the sanctuary — were to do the work exactly as the LORD had commanded. ²Moses summoned Bezalel, Oholiab, and every skilled person in whom the LORD had placed wisdom — everyone whose heart moved them to come and undertake the work. ³They received from Moses all the contributions the Israelites had brought for the sanctuary construction project. Meanwhile the people continued bringing additional freewill offerings every morning. ⁴All the skilled workers who were carrying out the sanctuary construction left their various tasks ⁵and reported to Moses, "The people are bringing far more than is needed for the work the LORD has commanded." ⁶So Moses issued an order, and a proclamation was circulated throughout the camp: "No man or woman should prepare any more material for the sacred contribution." The people were thus prevented from bringing more. ⁷The materials already on hand were more than sufficient to complete all the work — there was even a surplus. ⁸All the skilled workers among those doing the construction made the tabernacle with ten panels of finely twisted linen and blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, with cherubim worked into them by a skilled designer. ⁹Each panel measured twenty-eight cubits long and four cubits wide; all the panels were identical in size. ¹⁰He joined five of the panels to one another, and likewise joined the other five panels to one another. ¹¹He made loops of blue yarn along the edge of the outermost panel in the first set, and did the same along the edge of the outermost panel in the second set. ¹²He made fifty loops on the first panel and fifty loops on the corresponding edge of the panel in the second set, with the loops positioned directly opposite one another. ¹³He fashioned fifty gold clasps and used them to join

the panels together, so that the tabernacle formed a single unit. ¹⁴He made panels of goat hair for a tent covering over the tabernacle — eleven panels in all. ¹⁵Each panel measured thirty cubits long and four cubits wide; all eleven panels were the same size. ¹⁶He joined five panels into one section and the other six into a separate section. ¹⁷He attached fifty loops along the edge of the outermost panel in the first section, and fifty loops along the edge of the connecting panel of the second section. ¹⁸He fashioned fifty bronze clasps to join the tent covering together into a single unit. ¹⁹He made a covering for the tent from ram skins dyed red, with an additional covering of fine leather over that. ²⁰He constructed the upright frames for the tabernacle from acacia wood. ²¹Each frame was ten cubits tall and a cubit and a half wide. ²²Each frame had two tenons parallel to each other; he made all the frames of the tabernacle this way. ²³He made twenty frames for the south side of the tabernacle, ²⁴with forty silver bases beneath them — two bases under each frame to support its two tenons. ²⁵For the opposite side of the tabernacle, the north side, he made twenty frames ²⁶with their forty silver bases — two bases under each frame. ²⁷For the rear of the tabernacle, on the west, he made six frames. ²⁸He made two additional frames for the corners at the rear of the tabernacle. ²⁹These were joined at the bottom and connected all the way to the top with a single ring. He did this for both corner frames. ³⁰So there were eight frames with their sixteen silver bases — two bases beneath each frame. ³¹He made crossbars of acacia wood — five for the frames on one side of the tabernacle, ³²five for the frames on the other side, and five for the frames at the rear, facing west. ³³He crafted the center crossbar to run through the middle of the frames from one end to the other. ³⁴He overlaid the frames with gold, made their rings of gold as holders for the crossbars, and overlaid the crossbars with gold as well. ³⁵He made the inner curtain of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely twisted linen, with cherubim worked into it by a skilled designer. ³⁶For it he made four posts of acacia wood overlaid with gold, with gold hooks, and cast four silver bases for them. ³⁷He crafted a screen for the tent entrance from blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and finely twisted linen, done in embroidered work, ³⁸along with its five posts and their hooks. He overlaid their tops and connecting bands with gold, and their five bases were bronze.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The construction team includes not only Bezalel and Oholiab but every skilled person whom God equipped. Sacred construction is communal craftsmanship guided by divine wisdom.
2. Moses summons the workers personally. The phrase 'whose heart stirred him to approach the work' emphasizes that even God-gifted artisans must voluntarily engage.
3. A remarkable detail: the people keep bringing offerings every morning (boqer baboqer) even after work has begun. Generosity continues beyond the initial call.
4. The craftsmen interrupt their own work to report the surplus — a sign of honest stewardship. They prioritize accuracy over accumulation.
5. An extraordinary situation: too much generosity. The people's offerings exceed what the work requires — a sharp contrast to reluctant giving.
6. Moses must formally restrain the people from giving more. This is the only time in Scripture a leader must halt contributions for being excessive.
7. The materials were 'sufficient and more' (dayam... ve-hoter). God's dwelling is funded entirely by willing hearts, with abundance left over.
8. The ten inner panels form the tabernacle proper. Cherubim woven into the fabric echo the heavenly throne room — the tabernacle as earthly mirror of God's heavenly dwelling.
9. Precise dimensions ensure uniformity. Twenty-eight by four cubits per panel — standardization enables the panels to join into a seamless whole.
10. Two sets of five panels each are joined, then the two sets connected — a modular construction approach allowing assembly and disassembly for travel.
11. Blue loops along the panel edges create the attachment points. Blue (tekhelet) connotes heaven — even structural details carry symbolic weight.
12. Fifty loops per set, perfectly aligned opposite each other. Precision in these structural details ensures the tabernacle holds together as one unit.
13. Fifty gold clasps unite the two halves into one tabernacle (mishkan echad). Gold connotes the divine presence that dwells within this unified structure.
14. The goat-hair tent covering provides a protective layer over the inner linen panels. Eleven panels (one more than the inner set) ensure full coverage.
15. Slightly larger dimensions (thirty cubits vs. twenty-eight) allow the outer covering to drape over and protect the finer inner panels.

16. The asymmetric grouping (five plus six) allows the extra panel to fold over the front of the tabernacle entrance.
17. Construction of the joining mechanism for the outer tent covering mirrors the inner panels but uses different materials — function dictates form.
18. Bronze clasps (not gold) join the outer covering — appropriate to the less sacred outer layer. Material grades correspond to degrees of holiness.
19. Ram skins dyed red and fine leather form the outermost protective layers — waterproofing the sacred structure against the elements.
20. The upright frames (qerashim) of acacia wood provide the rigid structure. Acacia is the primary desert hardwood, durable and resistant to decay.
21. Standardized frame dimensions (ten by one-and-a-half cubits) create a modular wall system that can be assembled and transported.
22. Two tenons per frame lock into silver bases, creating stable joints. The word meshullavot (joined) indicates the tenons are parallel and evenly spaced.
23. Twenty frames for the south wall. The directional specificity (negev teimanah) anchors the tabernacle's orientation in Israel's camp layout.
24. Forty silver bases — two per frame — provide the foundation. Silver (from the census tax) literally supports the dwelling, connecting the people to God's house.
25. The north wall mirrors the south with twenty frames, establishing the tabernacle's symmetry. Both long sides are identical in construction.
26. Forty silver bases on the north match the south. The structural symmetry reflects the ordered perfection of God's dwelling design.
27. Six frames for the narrower west (rear) wall. The tabernacle entrance faces east — toward the sunrise, the direction of God's appearing.
28. Corner frames require special construction, reinforcing the structural junction where the side and rear walls meet.
29. The corner frames are twinned (to'amim) from bottom to top, bound to a single ring — creating a rigid corner that holds the walls at right angles.
30. Eight total frames on the west end (six regular plus two corners) with sixteen bases. Every structural element is precisely counted and recorded.
31. Five crossbars per side lock the upright frames together laterally. Acacia wood crossbars prevent the wall from flexing or collapsing.
32. The crossbar pattern repeats: five per side, five for the west — total structural rigidity for a portable building that must survive wilderness travel.
33. The center crossbar runs the entire length of the wall through the middle of the frames — the spine that holds each wall section together.
34. Gold overlay on frames, rings, and crossbars transforms the acacia wood structure into a shining interior. Inside the tabernacle, everything is gold.
35. The inner curtain (parokhet) separates the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place. Its cherubim design mirrors the inner panels — heavenly guardians woven into the boundary.
36. Four acacia posts overlaid with gold support the inner curtain. Their silver bases echo the wall foundations — the entire structure rests on silver.
37. The entrance screen differs from the inner curtain: embroidered work (roqem) rather than woven cherubim, marking a lesser degree of sacred separation.
38. Five posts with gold tops but bronze bases. The shift from silver (inner curtain) to bronze (entrance) reflects the gradient of holiness from inside out.

37

Summary: *Bezalel personally constructs the most sacred interior furnishings: the ark of the covenant with its mercy seat and cherubim, the table of the Presence, the golden lampstand, and the incense altar — all overlaid with pure gold.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Bezalel constructs the ark himself — the most sacred object in Israel's worship is made by the hands of the artisan God called 'by name' (31:2). The mercy seat cherubim face each other with wings spread, creating the space where God will meet Moses (25:22). The lampstand is hammered from a single piece of gold (miqshah, v17) — no joining or welding, but one continuous form. The gold zone furnishings (ark, table, lampstand, incense altar) form an ensemble that represents God's throne, God's provision, God's light, and God's fragrance — a complete sensory theology.*

Translation Friction: *The construction account closely follows the instructions of chapter 25. We maintained vocabulary consistency between the two chapters so readers can trace the obedience pattern. The phrase zahav tahor ('pure gold') recurs throughout; we rendered it consistently rather than varying the English. The permanent carrying poles of the ark (v5, cf. 25:15) symbolize readiness to move — we noted this in the original instruction chapter and maintained the connection here.*

Connections: The ark will lead Israel through the Jordan (Joshua 3:3-17), circle Jericho (Joshua 6:4-8), and rest in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 8:1-9). The mercy seat becomes the focal point of the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16). The lampstand imagery appears in Zechariah 4 and Revelation 1:12-13. The incense altar is the setting for Zechariah's angelic encounter (Luke 1:11).

¹Bezalel constructed the ark from acacia wood — two and a half cubits long, a cubit and a half wide, and a cubit and a half tall. ²He plated it with pure gold inside and out, and fashioned a gold molding around its rim. ³He cast four gold rings for it, placing them at its four feet — two rings on one side and two on the other. ⁴He made carrying poles of acacia wood and overlaid them with gold. ⁵He inserted the poles into the rings on the sides of the ark for transporting it. ⁶He made the mercy seat of pure gold — two and a half cubits long and a cubit and a half wide. ⁷He fashioned two cherubim of hammered gold, forming them at the two ends of the mercy seat. ⁸One cherub extended from one end and the other from the opposite end; he made the cherubim as a single piece with the mercy seat at its two ends. ⁹The cherubim had their wings spread upward, overshadowing the mercy seat. They faced each other, with their faces turned down toward the mercy seat. ¹⁰He constructed the table from acacia wood — two cubits long, one cubit wide, and a cubit and a half tall. ¹¹He overlaid it with pure gold and fashioned a gold molding around its rim. ¹²He also made a rim a handbreadth wide around it and placed a gold molding along that rim. ¹³He cast four gold rings for it and attached them at the four corners near its four legs. ¹⁴The rings were positioned close to the rim as holders for the poles used to carry the table. ¹⁵He crafted the carrying poles from acacia wood, overlaid them with gold, and used them for transporting the table. ¹⁶He made the utensils for the table — its plates, ladles, bowls, and pitchers for pouring drink offerings — all from pure gold. ¹⁷He constructed the lampstand of pure gold. He hammered it from a single piece — its base, shaft, cups, buds, and blossoms were all of one piece. ¹⁸Six branches extended from its sides — three branches from one side and three from the other. ¹⁹Three almond-shaped cups with buds and blossoms adorned one branch, and three almond-shaped cups with buds and blossoms on the next — the same pattern for all six branches extending from the lampstand. ²⁰On the lampstand's central shaft were four almond-shaped cups with buds and blossoms. ²¹A bud was positioned beneath each pair of branches — for all six branches extending from the lampstand. ²²The buds and branches were all of one piece with it, the whole lampstand a single work of hammered pure gold. ²³He made its seven lamps, along with its wick trimmers and trays, all of pure gold. ²⁴He used one talent of pure gold for the lampstand and all its accessories. ²⁵He constructed the incense altar from acacia wood — one cubit long, one cubit wide (it was square), and two cubits tall. Its horns were of one piece with it. ²⁶He overlaid it with pure gold — its top, all its sides, and its horns — and made a gold molding around it. ²⁷He made two gold rings beneath the molding on two opposite sides as holders for the poles used to carry it. ²⁸He crafted the carrying poles from acacia wood and overlaid them with gold. ²⁹He also prepared the sacred anointing oil and the pure fragrant incense, blended as a perfumer would.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bezalel personally constructs the ark — the most sacred object in the tabernacle. Acacia wood overlaid with gold houses the covenant tablets.
2. Pure gold inside and out with a gold molding (zer). The ark's double plating signifies that God's covenant dwelling is precious through and through.
3. Four gold rings at the feet position the carrying poles at the base, keeping the ark stable during transport through the wilderness.
4. Acacia wood poles overlaid with gold — consistent with the ark's materials. The poles remain in the rings permanently (25:15), symbolizing readiness to move.
5. The poles inserted in the rings enable the Levites to carry the ark without touching it directly — maintaining the boundary between human and divine holiness.
6. The mercy seat (kapporet) of pure gold is the lid of the ark and the place where God meets Israel. Its dimensions match the ark exactly.
7. Two cherubim hammered from one piece of gold — not attached separately but formed organically from the mercy seat itself, indicating inseparable unity.
8. The cherubim extend from opposite ends, facing inward. Their positioning creates a throne-like space above the mercy seat where God's presence dwells.

9. Wings spread upward and faces turned downward toward the mercy seat — the cherubim simultaneously guard and attend the place of atonement.
10. The table of the Presence holds the twelve loaves (bread of the Presence) representing Israel's tribes continually before God.
11. Pure gold overlay and gold molding on the table echo the ark's construction — items in the Holy Place reflect the glory within the Most Holy Place.
12. The handbreadth rim (misgereth) prevents items from sliding off during transport. Practical design serves the sacred function.
13. Four gold rings at the corners near the legs — the same carrying mechanism as the ark, enabling reverent transport by poles.
14. Rings positioned near the rim provide balanced carrying points. Every detail of the engineering serves the tabernacle's portable sacred architecture.
15. The carrying poles for the table, like those for the ark, are acacia wood overlaid with gold — maintaining material consistency throughout the Holy Place.
16. The table utensils — plates, ladles, bowls, and pitchers — are pure gold. These serve the bread of the Presence and the drink offerings placed on the table.
17. The lampstand (menorah) is hammered from a single piece of pure gold — no joints or welds. Its organic almond-blossom design suggests a living tree of light.
18. Six branches (three per side) plus the central shaft create seven lamp positions — the number of completion, providing full illumination in the Holy Place.
19. Almond-shaped cups (meshukadim) echo Aaron's rod that budded with almonds (Num 17). The almond motif connects light, life, and priestly authority.
20. Four additional almond cups on the central shaft distinguish it from the branches. The shaft is the trunk; the branches extend from it organically.
21. Decorative buds beneath each pair of branches create visual rhythm. The lampstand's design is both functional (light) and beautiful (artistry).
22. The single-piece construction is emphasized: everything is mimmennah (from it). No part is added — the lampstand grows from one mass of gold.
23. Seven lamps, wick trimmers, and trays — the maintenance tools are pure gold like the lampstand itself. Even the accessories share the sacred material.
24. One talent of pure gold (approximately 75 pounds) for the entire lampstand and all its accessories — a staggering amount of precious metal.
25. The incense altar is small (one cubit square, two cubits tall) but central — it stands directly before the inner curtain, closest to God's presence.
26. Pure gold overlay on every surface including the horns. The gold molding (zer) frames the top, matching the ark's and table's decorative borders.
27. Two gold rings for carrying poles, positioned on opposite sides below the molding. The incense altar, like the ark and table, must be transportable.
28. The carrying poles follow the standard pattern: acacia wood overlaid with gold. Consistency in construction materials unifies the tabernacle's sacred furniture.
29. The anointing oil and incense are prepared by a perfumer's art (roqeach). Sacred scent, like sacred light, fills the space where God dwells.

38

Summary: *The craftsmen build the bronze altar and bronze basin for the courtyard, construct the courtyard enclosure, and provide an inventory of all materials used — gold, silver, and bronze — including the silver from the census ransom of 603,550 men.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The material inventory (vv21-31) is a remarkable accounting document embedded in sacred narrative. The total gold used was about 29 talents (roughly one ton), the silver came from the half-shekel census ransom of 603,550 men, and the bronze was about 70 talents. The precision demonstrates that the tabernacle's construction was publicly accountable — no material disappeared. The bronze basin (v8) was made from the mirrors of the serving women, transforming instruments of personal adornment into instruments of priestly purification.*

Translation Friction: *The women's mirrors (mar'ot hatsov'ot, v8) are described as belonging to 'the women who served at the entrance of the tent of meeting.' The nature of this service is debated; we rendered the phrase literally without specifying the role. The talent and shekel measurements we retained in Hebrew units, providing approximate modern equivalents in notes. The census number 603,550 (v26) matches Numbers 1:46 exactly, anchoring the tabernacle construction to the community's demographic record.*

Connections: The census number matches Numbers 1:46 and 2:32. The bronze basin connects to the priestly washing prescribed in 30:17-21 and anticipates the 'molten sea' in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:23-26). The women serving at the tent entrance reappear in 1 Samuel 2:22. The material accountability anticipates temple treasury practices in 2 Kings 12:9-16.

¹He built the altar for burnt offerings from acacia wood — five cubits long, five cubits wide (it was square), and three cubits tall. ²He made horns at its four corners as one piece with the altar, and overlaid the whole structure with bronze. ³He produced all the altar's equipment — the pots, shovels, sprinkling bowls, meat forks, and fire pans — fashioning everything from bronze. ⁴He made a bronze mesh grating for the altar, fitting it beneath the ledge so it extended halfway up. ⁵He cast four rings at the four corners of the bronze grating as holders for the carrying poles. ⁶He crafted the carrying poles from acacia wood and overlaid them with bronze. ⁷He slid the poles through the rings on the sides of the altar for carrying it. The altar was built hollow, constructed from planks. ⁸He fashioned the bronze basin and its bronze stand from the mirrors of the women who served at the entrance to the tent of meeting. ⁹He constructed the courtyard. On the south side, the courtyard curtains were of finely twisted linen, spanning one hundred cubits. ¹⁰Their twenty posts and twenty bronze bases had silver hooks and silver bands on the posts. ¹¹On the north side the curtains also spanned one hundred cubits, with twenty posts and twenty bronze bases; the hooks and bands on the posts were silver. ¹²On the west side the curtains spanned fifty cubits, supported by ten posts with ten bases; the hooks and bands on the posts were silver. ¹³The east side measured fifty cubits across. ¹⁴Curtains spanning fifteen cubits were on one side of the entrance, supported by three posts and three bases. ¹⁵On the other side of the courtyard entrance — on both sides of the gate — were curtains of fifteen cubits, with three posts and three bases. ¹⁶All the curtains surrounding the courtyard were of finely twisted linen. ¹⁷The bases for the posts were bronze, while the hooks and bands were silver. The post capitals were overlaid with silver, and all the courtyard posts were banded with silver. ¹⁸The screen at the courtyard entrance was embroidered work of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen. It was twenty cubits long and five cubits high, matching the courtyard curtains. ¹⁹It had four posts with four bronze bases. Their hooks were silver, and their capitals and bands were overlaid with silver. ²⁰All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and the surrounding courtyard were bronze. ²¹This is the inventory of materials for the tabernacle — the tabernacle of the testimony — recorded at Moses's direction, carried out by the Levites under the supervision of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. ²²Bezalel son of Uri, son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, carried out everything the LORD had commanded Moses. ²³Working alongside him was Oholiab son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan — an engraver, a skilled designer, and an embroiderer in blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and fine linen. ²⁴The total gold used in all the sanctuary construction — the gold from the wave offering — amounted to twenty-nine talents and seven hundred thirty shekels by the sanctuary standard. ²⁵The silver collected from those in the community who were counted came to one hundred talents and one thousand seven hundred seventy-five shekels by the sanctuary standard — ²⁶a bekah per person (that is, half a shekel by the sanctuary standard) for everyone who passed through the census, twenty years old or older — totaling 603,550 men. ²⁷The one hundred talents of silver were used to cast the bases for the sanctuary and the bases for the curtain — one hundred bases from one hundred talents, one talent per base. ²⁸From the remaining one thousand seven hundred seventy-five shekels, he made hooks for the posts, overlaid their capitals, and fashioned bands for them. ²⁹The bronze from the wave offering totaled seventy talents and two thousand four hundred shekels. ³⁰With this bronze he made the bases for the entrance to the tent of meeting, the bronze altar, its bronze grating, and all the altar's equipment, ³¹along with the bases around the courtyard, the bases for the courtyard entrance, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and the surrounding courtyard.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The burnt offering altar, the largest piece of tabernacle furniture, stands in the courtyard. Its square shape and acacia wood construction provide stability.
2. Horns at the four corners are integral (not attached), symbolizing strength and serving as anchor points for sacrificial blood application.
3. The altar's bronze equipment — pots for ashes, shovels, bowls, forks, and fire pans — are the tools of daily sacrificial service.

4. The bronze grating fits inside the altar below the ledge, supporting the fire and allowing ashes to fall through — practical engineering for continual use.
5. Four rings at the grating's corners hold the carrying poles, enabling transport. Even this heavy altar must be portable for wilderness travel.
6. Carrying poles of acacia wood overlaid with bronze (not gold, as for the inner furniture) — materials correspond to the courtyard's lower holiness grade.
7. The hollow plank construction keeps the altar light enough for transport while providing the volume needed for sacrificial fires.
8. The bronze basin is made from women's mirrors — a remarkable detail. Personal vanity items are transformed into instruments of priestly purification.
9. The courtyard dimensions begin: one hundred cubits on the south side. The courtyard creates sacred space separating the tabernacle from the common camp.
10. Twenty posts with bronze bases and silver hooks/bands. The material gradient continues: bronze for structure, silver for fittings, in the courtyard zone.
11. The north side mirrors the south exactly — one hundred cubits, twenty posts, twenty bases. Symmetry in the courtyard reflects divine order.
12. The west side (fifty cubits) with ten posts forms the rear boundary. Smaller dimensions reflect the courtyard's rectangular shape.
13. The east side (entrance side) also measures fifty cubits but includes the gate opening, dividing the curtain space differently.
14. Fifteen cubits of curtains on one side of the entrance, supported by three posts — creating the approach to the courtyard gate.
15. Matching fifteen-cubit curtains on the other side frame the twenty-cubit entrance opening in the center of the east wall.
16. All courtyard curtains are finely twisted linen — white fabric creating a visible boundary of purity around the sacred precinct.
17. The material breakdown: bronze bases, silver hooks and bands, silver-overlaid capitals. Every pillar in the courtyard gleams with silver.
18. The courtyard gate screen is the most decorated element — embroidered with the same blue, purple, and scarlet as the tabernacle entrance, marking it as a sacred threshold.
19. Four posts for the gate (vs. three for each side section). Silver hooks and overlaid capitals mark this entrance as more prominent than the surrounding curtains.
20. All tent pegs are bronze — the most utilitarian items use the most common metal. Even stakes anchoring ropes serve the sacred structure.
21. This inventory (pequdei) transitions from construction narrative to material accounting. Ithamar son of Aaron oversees the Levitical record-keeping.
22. Bezalel's full genealogy reappears at the project's completion, bookending the construction account. He faithfully executed everything God commanded.
23. Oholiab's triple skill set — engraving, design, embroidery — complements Bezalel's work. The two master artisans represent Judah and Dan working together.
24. Twenty-nine talents and 730 shekels of gold — approximately 2,200 pounds. The wave offering (tenufah) gold was ceremonially presented before use.
25. The census silver (one hundred talents plus 1,775 shekels) came from the mandatory half-shekel contribution, not freewill offering.
26. The bekah (half-shekel) per person from 603,550 men connects the tabernacle's foundation literally to every counted Israelite — all share in supporting God's house.
27. One hundred talents of silver cast one hundred bases — one talent per base. The sanctuary and veil rest on silver foundations contributed by all Israel.
28. The remaining silver covers the decorative elements — hooks, capitals, bands. Every shekel is accounted for in this transparent material audit.
29. Seventy talents and 2,400 shekels of bronze — the most abundant metal, used for the heaviest structural components and all courtyard elements.
30. Bronze provides the bases, altar, grating, and vessels — all the elements exposed to weather, fire, and heavy use in the outer courtyard.
31. The inventory closes with the bronze tent pegs — from the most sacred interior furniture down to the humblest structural anchor, everything is accounted for.

39

Summary: *The priestly garments are completed — ephod, breastpiece, robe, tunics, turban, and gold plate. The refrain 'as the LORD commanded Moses' echoes seven times. All the tabernacle work is finished and brought to Moses, who inspects it and blesses the people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The refrain ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et-Mosheh ('as the LORD commanded Moses') appears seven times in this chapter, deliberately echoing the sevenfold 'and God said' of Genesis 1. The tabernacle construction is presented as a new creation — what God spoke into existence at the cosmic level, He now speaks into existence at the liturgical level. Moses's inspection and blessing (v43) parallel God's inspection and blessing of creation in Genesis 1:31-2:3. The gold thread hammered thin and cut into wire for weaving into the ephod (v3) represents extraordinary technical skill in service of sacred art.*

Translation Friction: *The repetitive structure of the chapter — garment after garment, each followed by the obedience refrain — we preserved without compression, because the repetition itself carries theological meaning: faithful obedience is the point, and each repetition confirms it. The technical weaving vocabulary (hammered gold sheets cut into threads, v3) we rendered as clearly as possible while preserving the craft details. Moses 'saw all the work, and behold, they had done it' (v43) uses the same verb ra'ah ('saw') and the same assessment structure as Genesis 1:31 ('God saw everything He had made').*

Connections: *The sevenfold refrain parallels the seven days of creation (Genesis 1:1-2:3). Moses's inspection and blessing echo God's approval in Genesis 1:31. The presentation of completed work to Moses anticipates the presentation of the completed temple to Solomon (1 Kings 7:51). The priestly garments are finally worn in Leviticus 8 at the ordination ceremony.*

¹From the blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, they produced the woven garments for service in the sanctuary. They also made the sacred garments for Aaron, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²They constructed the ephod from gold thread, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen. ³They hammered gold sheets thin and cut them into threads to be woven into the blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and the fine linen — the work of a skilled designer. ⁴They made shoulder pieces for the ephod, attached at its two upper corners so it could be joined together. ⁵The skillfully woven band of the ephod was of one piece with it, made the same way — from gold, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁶They prepared the onyx stones, mounted in gold filigree settings, engraved like a seal with the names of Israel's sons. ⁷They fastened the stones to the shoulder pieces of the ephod as memorial stones for the sons of Israel, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁸They fashioned the breastpiece with skilled design, matching the workmanship of the ephod — from gold, blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and finely twisted linen. ⁹The breastpiece was square when folded double — a span long and a span wide. ¹⁰They mounted four rows of gemstones on it. The first row contained a carnelian, a topaz, and an emerald. ¹¹The second row had a turquoise, a sapphire, and a diamond. ¹²The third row held a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. ¹³The fourth row contained a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper — each set in a gold filigree mounting. ¹⁴The stones corresponded to the names of Israel's sons — twelve in all, one for each tribe, each engraved like a seal with the name of one tribe. ¹⁵For the breastpiece they crafted braided chains of pure gold, twisted like cords. ¹⁶They made two gold filigree settings and two gold rings, attaching the rings to the two upper corners of the breastpiece. ¹⁷They attached the two gold braided chains to the two rings at the corners of the breastpiece. ¹⁸The other two ends of the braided chains they fastened to the two filigree settings, attaching them to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at the front. ¹⁹They made two more gold rings and attached them to the two lower corners of the breastpiece, on its inner edge next to the ephod. ²⁰They made two additional gold rings and fastened them to the lower part of the two shoulder pieces of the ephod, at the front near its seam, just above the woven band. ²¹They tied the breastpiece by its rings to the rings of the ephod with a blue cord, so that it rested on the woven band and would not come loose from the ephod — just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²²They wove the robe of the ephod entirely from blue yarn. ²³It had an opening at the center, like the collar of a coat of armor, with a reinforced band

around the opening so it would not tear. ²⁴On the lower hem of the robe they made pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, and twisted linen. ²⁵They also made bells of pure gold and placed them between the pomegranates around the lower hem of the robe — ²⁶alternating a bell and a pomegranate all around the hem of the robe worn for ministry, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²⁷They wove tunics of fine linen for Aaron and his sons, ²⁸along with a turban of fine linen, decorative headbands of fine linen, and undergarments of finely twisted linen, ²⁹and a sash of finely twisted linen with blue, purple, and scarlet yarn — embroidered work — just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³⁰They made the medallion — the sacred diadem — from pure gold, and inscribed on it like a seal engraving: HOLY TO THE LORD. ³¹They attached a blue cord to fasten it to the top of the turban, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³²So all the work on the tabernacle — the tent of meeting — was completed. The Israelites had done everything precisely as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³³They presented the tabernacle to Moses: the tent with all its furnishings — its clasps, frames, crossbars, posts, and bases; ³⁴the covering of ram skins dyed red, the covering of fine leather, and the screening curtain; ³⁵the ark of the testimony with its poles and the mercy seat; ³⁶the table with all its utensils and the bread of the Presence; ³⁷the pure gold lampstand with its row of lamps and all its accessories, together with the oil for illumination; ³⁸the gold altar, the anointing oil, the fragrant incense, and the screen for the tent entrance; ³⁹the bronze altar with its bronze grating, its poles, and all its equipment; the basin with its stand; ⁴⁰the curtains of the courtyard with their posts and bases, the screen for the courtyard entrance, its ropes and tent pegs, and all the equipment for the service of the tabernacle — the tent of meeting; ⁴¹the woven garments for service in the sanctuary, the sacred garments for Aaron the priest, and his sons' garments for priestly service. ⁴²The Israelites carried out all the work exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁴³Moses inspected all the work, and indeed they had accomplished it just as the LORD had commanded. So Moses blessed them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The priestly garment section begins. 'As the LORD commanded Moses' appears as a refrain throughout chapter 39, echoing the creation account's 'and God said.'
2. The ephod — the high priest's outer vestment — is the most complex garment, incorporating gold thread woven directly into the colored yarns and linen.
3. Hammering gold into thin sheets, then cutting into threads for weaving — a technically demanding process that integrates gold directly into fabric.
4. Shoulder pieces join the front and back panels of the ephod, creating the structural support for the entire garment and the breastpiece attached to it.
5. The woven band (cheshev) is integral to the ephod, not a separate belt. Its unified construction mirrors the tabernacle's one-piece design philosophy.
6. Onyx stones engraved with Israel's tribal names function like a signet seal — each tribe's identity is permanently inscribed and carried by the high priest.
7. The shoulder stones are 'memorial stones' (avnei zikkaron) — the high priest physically carries Israel's names before God whenever he enters the sanctuary.
8. The breastpiece (choshen) matches the ephod in materials and workmanship. It lies over the heart, while the shoulder stones rest on the shoulders — Israel is borne on heart and shoulders.
9. The doubled square (a span = about 9 inches) creates a pocket or pouch, traditionally understood as housing the Urim and Thummim for divine inquiry.
10. The four rows of three stones = twelve stones for twelve tribes. Stone identification varies among ancient sources, reflecting uncertainty about exact minerals.
11. The second row of precious stones continues the tribal representation. Each stone is unique, reflecting the distinct identity of each Israelite tribe.
12. The third row of gemstones. The order likely corresponds to the birth order or camp arrangement of Israel's twelve tribes.
13. The fourth row completes the twelve stones. Gold filigree settings secure each stone — precious material holding precious material, all bearing tribal names.
14. Each stone is individually engraved like a seal — permanent, authoritative, personal. The high priest wears Israel's identity into God's presence.
15. Braided gold chains connect the breastpiece to the ephod. The 'twisted cord' (avot) design provides both beauty and structural strength.
16. Filigree gold settings and rings create the upper attachment system. The engineering ensures the breastpiece hangs securely from the shoulders.

17. Gold chains thread through the upper corner rings, creating the primary suspension for the breastpiece from the shoulder pieces above.
18. The chains fasten to filigree settings on the shoulder pieces, distributing the breastpiece's weight evenly across both shoulders.
19. Additional lower rings on the breastpiece's inner edge prevent it from swinging outward during the priest's movements.
20. Matching rings on the lower ephod near the seam above the woven band complete the four-point attachment system securing the breastpiece.
21. A blue cord ties the lower rings together, ensuring the breastpiece stays flush against the ephod. The refrain 'as the LORD commanded Moses' validates the execution.
22. The robe (me'il) worn under the ephod is entirely blue (tekhelet) — the color associated with heaven and divine presence.
23. The reinforced collar opening prevents tearing — practical garment engineering for a robe that must endure regular priestly service without damage.
24. Pomegranates on the hem — symbols of fruitfulness and abundance. Their blue, purple, and scarlet colors match the tabernacle's decorative palette.
25. Pure gold bells between the pomegranates produce sound as the priest moves, announcing his presence in the sanctuary before God.
26. Alternating bells and pomegranates create a rhythmic pattern of sound and symbol. The robe is 'for ministry' — designed for its sacred function.
27. Fine linen tunics (kuttonet) for Aaron and his sons are the innermost garments — simple white linen worn next to the body beneath the other vestments.
28. The turban (mitznefet) for Aaron, headbands (migba'ot) for his sons, and linen undergarments complete the basic priestly wardrobe of purity and modesty.
29. The sash (avnet) of embroidered linen with colored yarn wraps the waist, securing the tunic. Even this accessory follows God's exact specifications.
30. The gold medallion (tzitz) inscribed HOLY TO THE LORD is the crown of the priestly wardrobe — it rests on the turban at the forehead, Israel's holiness made visible.
31. A blue cord secures the medallion to the turban. Blue (tekhelet) connects the priestly crown to the heavenly realm the priest mediates between.
32. The summary formula echoes Genesis 2:1-2 — 'all the work was completed.' The tabernacle construction parallels the creation narrative in structure and language.
33. The completed tabernacle and all its components are presented to Moses for inspection — structural elements first: clasps, frames, crossbars, posts, bases.
34. The protective coverings and the inner curtain are presented — the layers that shield and separate within the sacred structure.
35. The ark of the testimony and the mercy seat — the most sacred objects — are listed among the items brought for Moses's inspection.
36. The table and bread of the Presence — the furnishing of the Holy Place that represents God's sustaining provision for His covenant people.
37. The pure gold lampstand with all its accessories and oil — ready for the perpetual light that will illuminate the Holy Place.
38. The gold incense altar, anointing oil, and incense — the worship implements, along with the entrance screen — are presented.
39. The bronze altar and basin — the courtyard furniture for sacrifice and cleansing — complete the major furnishing inventory.
40. Courtyard infrastructure — curtains, posts, bases, gate screen, ropes, and pegs — all the elements that define the sacred perimeter.
41. The priestly garments close the inventory. Both service garments (bigdei serad) and sacred garments (bigdei ha-qodesh) are presented for approval.
42. The comprehensive compliance statement: Israel did everything exactly as commanded. Obedience in construction mirrors the obedience demanded in worship.
43. Moses's inspection and blessing parallel God's review of creation (Gen 1:31). 'He saw... they had done it... and he blessed them' echoes 'God saw that it was good.'

40

Summary: *On the first day of the first month — exactly one year after the exodus — Moses erects the tabernacle, places the ark, sets up the furnishings, anoints everything, and consecrates Aaron and his sons. The cloud covers the tent and the glory of the LORD fills the tabernacle.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The tabernacle is erected on Israel's anniversary of liberation (v2, cf. 12:2) — the exodus began with departure from Egypt and culminates with God taking up residence among His people. The final verses (vv34-38) describe the cloud of the LORD covering the tent and His kavod ('glory') filling the mishkan so powerfully that even Moses 'was not able to enter.' The God who descended on Sinai in cloud and fire now descends into the structure Israel built for Him. The book that began with Israel enslaved ends with God dwelling among them, leading them by cloud and fire.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase velo-yakhol Mosheh lavo el-ohel mo'ed ('Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting,' v35) creates a striking tension — the man who spoke with God face to face (33:11) cannot enter the space filled with God's glory. We rendered this literally without resolving the tension, as the Hebrew holds both realities together. The cloud-and-fire guidance system (vv36-38) we rendered straightforwardly, noting that it echoes the pillar of cloud and fire from 13:21-22, now permanently attached to the tabernacle rather than leading from a distance.*

Connections: *The glory filling the tabernacle parallels the glory filling Solomon's temple (1 Kings 8:10-11) and Ezekiel's visionary temple (Ezekiel 43:1-5). The cloud-and-fire guidance continues through Numbers and Deuteronomy. The incarnation ('the Word became flesh and tabernacled among us,' John 1:14) is the ultimate fulfillment of God dwelling with His people. Revelation 21:3 ('the dwelling place of God is with man') completes the trajectory that begins here.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"On the first day of the first month you shall set up the tabernacle of the tent of meeting. ³You shall place the ark of the Testimony in it and screen the ark with the veil. ⁴You shall bring in the table and arrange what belongs on it. You shall bring in the lampstand and set up its lamps. ⁵You shall place the golden altar for incense before the ark of the Testimony and set up the screen for the entrance of the tabernacle. ⁶You shall place the altar of burnt offering before the entrance of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting. ⁷You shall place the basin between the tent of meeting and the altar and put water in it. ⁸You shall set up the courtyard all around and hang the screen for the gate of the courtyard. ⁹"Then you shall take the anointing oil and anoint the tabernacle and all that is in it, and consecrate it and all its furnishings, and it shall become holy. ¹⁰You shall also anoint the altar of burnt offering and all its utensils, and consecrate the altar, and the altar shall become most holy. ¹¹You shall also anoint the basin and its stand and consecrate it. ¹²"Then you shall bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the tent of meeting and wash them with water. ¹³You shall put the holy garments on Aaron and anoint him and consecrate him, so that he may serve Me as priest. ¹⁴You shall bring his sons and put tunics on them. ¹⁵You shall anoint them as you anointed their father, so that they may serve Me as priests. Their anointing shall be for them an eternal priesthood throughout their generations." ¹⁶Moses did everything; according to all that the LORD had commanded him, so he did. ¹⁷In the first month of the second year, on the first day of the month, the tabernacle was set up. ¹⁸Moses set up the tabernacle. He laid its bases, set up its frames, put in its bars, and erected its pillars. ¹⁹He spread the tent over the tabernacle and put the covering of the tent over it, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²⁰He took the Testimony and put it into the ark, and he set the poles on the ark and placed the atonement cover on top of the ark. ²¹He brought the ark into the tabernacle and set up the veil of the screen and screened off the ark of the Testimony, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²²He put the table in the tent of meeting, on the north side of the tabernacle, outside the veil. ²³He arranged the bread on it before the LORD, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²⁴He put the lampstand in the tent of meeting, opposite the table, on the south side of the tabernacle. ²⁵He set up the lamps before the LORD, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²⁶He placed the golden altar in the tent of meeting, before the veil, ²⁷and burned fragrant incense on it, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²⁸He set up the screen for the entrance of the tabernacle. ²⁹He placed the altar of

burnt offering at the entrance of the tabernacle of the tent of meeting and offered on it the burnt offering and the grain offering, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³⁰He placed the basin between the tent of meeting and the altar and put water in it for washing. ³¹Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet from it. ³²Whenever they entered the tent of meeting or approached the altar, they washed, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³³He set up the courtyard around the tabernacle and the altar and hung the screen of the gate of the courtyard. So Moses finished the work. ³⁴Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle. ³⁵Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting because the cloud had settled on it and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle. ³⁶Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the sons of Israel would set out on each stage of their journey. ³⁷But if the cloud was not taken up, they did not set out until the day it was taken up. ³⁸The cloud of the LORD rested on the tabernacle during the day, and fire glowed within it at night, visible to the entire house of Israel at every stage of their travels.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The final chapter of Exodus begins where the book's central concern has always been heading: the assembly of God's dwelling place among His people.
2. 'The first day of the first month' — exactly one year after the exodus (cf. 12:2, where this month was declared 'the beginning of months'). The tabernacle is erected on Israel's anniversary of liberation. The exodus began with departure from Egypt; it culminates with God taking up residence among His people.
3. The ark of the Testimony goes in first — the most sacred object enters the most sacred space. The veil screens it from the rest of the sanctuary.
4. The table and lampstand are positioned in the Holy Place — provision (bread) and illumination (light) in the space where priests serve daily.
5. The incense altar before the ark — fragrant smoke at the threshold of the Most Holy Place. The golden altar's position marks the boundary between the accessible and the veiled.
6. The bronze altar at the entrance — sacrifice is the first encounter upon entering sacred space. Everything else is beyond the altar.
7. The basin between altar and tent — purification mediates between sacrifice and service. The priest washes after handling blood and before entering God's presence.
8. The courtyard enclosure completes the physical structure. From this point, the tabernacle is a bounded, ordered, layered space: courtyard Holy Place Most Holy Place.
9. Anointing oil consecrates everything it touches — the tabernacle and all its contents become holy through the same oil. The verb *qiddesh* ('consecrate, make holy') transforms ordinary materials into sacred objects.
10. The bronze altar becomes 'most holy' (*qodesh qodashim*) — the same designation as the inner sanctum. The altar where blood is shed has the same holiness status as the space where God dwells. Sacrifice and presence share a holiness category.
11. The basin and stand — even the washing equipment is consecrated. Nothing in the tabernacle complex is merely utilitarian; everything participates in holiness.
12. Aaron and his sons are washed at the entrance — the same sequence as the consecration ceremony (29:4). The human priests are prepared last, after the physical space is complete.
13. Aaron is dressed and anointed — the *mashach* verb that makes him *mashiach*, the anointed one. The garments 'for glory and for beauty' (28:2) are put on.
14. The sons receive their tunics — the simpler priestly garments.
15. 'Their anointing shall be for them an eternal priesthood' (*vehayetah lahem mishchat olam lekhunnat olam*) — the Aaronic priesthood is established permanently. The anointing of this generation extends across all future generations.
16. 'Moses did everything; according to all that the LORD had commanded him, so he did' (*vayyya'as Mosheh kekhol asher tsivvah YHWH oto ken asah*) — the obedience formula that defined Noah (Genesis 6:22) and governed the tabernacle's construction (39:32, 42-43) now covers the assembly. Moses's compliance is exact and total.
17. The date is precise: first month, first day, second year. The tabernacle stands exactly one year after the exodus. Israel's first anniversary is celebrated not with a parade but with the completion of God's house.
18. Moses himself assembles the tabernacle — the prophet becomes the builder. Each verb is specific: laid (bases), set up (frames), put in (bars), erected (pillars). The leader does the manual work.
19. The tent covering goes over the frame, then the outer covering over the tent — layers of protection from inside out, as specified in ch26.

- 20.** 'He took the Testimony and put it into the ark' — the stone tablets enter the chest built to hold them. God's words, written by God's finger, are placed inside gold-covered acacia wood, under the kapporet. The most sacred text enters the most sacred container.
- 21.** The ark enters the Most Holy Place and the veil is hung — the innermost zone is now sealed. 'As the LORD had commanded Moses' — the phrase occurs seven times in vv19-32 (seven = completeness), confirming that every step follows the divine blueprint.
- 22.** The table on the north side — positioned as specified in 26:35. Each piece of furniture goes exactly where God said it should.
- 23.** 'He arranged the bread before the LORD' — the twelve loaves of the Presence are set out for the first time. Israel is perpetually before God in the form of bread.
- 24.** The lampstand on the south side, facing the table — light falls on the bread of the Presence. The arrangement is not random but liturgically purposeful.
- 25.** The lamps are lit — the tabernacle interior is illuminated for the first time. God's dwelling has light.
- 26.** The golden incense altar before the veil — the last piece of interior furniture. When incense burns, its smoke drifts through the veil into the Most Holy Place.
- 27.** 'Burned fragrant incense' — the first incense offering in the tabernacle. Fragrance fills the space where God will dwell.
- 28.** The entrance screen completes the tabernacle structure — the boundary between the courtyard and the sanctuary interior.
- 29.** The first burnt offering and grain offering are placed on the bronze altar — the sacrificial system is inaugurated. Fire and blood begin their work.
- 30.** Water in the basin — the purification system is active.
- 31.** Moses, Aaron, and his sons wash — the priestly team is purified and ready for service.
- 32.** The washing becomes the established practice: entering the tent or approaching the altar requires purification. The system is operational.
- 33.** 'So Moses finished the work' (vayekhal Mosheh et-hammelakhah) — the verb kalah ('finished, completed') echoes Genesis 2:1-2: 'God finished... the work He had been doing.' Moses's completion of the tabernacle parallels God's completion of creation. The tabernacle is a new creation — an ordered, sacred space where heaven and earth intersect.
- 34.** 'The cloud covered the tent of meeting, and the glory of the LORD filled the tabernacle' (vaykhas he'anan et-ohel mo'ed ukhvod YHWH male et-hammishkan) — the climax of the entire book of Exodus. Everything — the plagues, the Passover, the sea crossing, the manna, the Sinai theophany, the golden calf, the intercession, the renewal, the construction — has led to this single moment: God moves in. The cloud (anan) that guided Israel through the wilderness (13:21) now settles on the tabernacle. The kavod that appeared at Sinai (24:16-17) now fills the interior. The Shekhinah — God's dwelling presence — has arrived.
- 35.** 'Moses was not able to enter' (velo-yakhol Mosheh lavo el-ohel mo'ed) — the man who spoke with God face to face (33:11), who entered the thick darkness on Sinai (20:21), who saw God's back (33:23), cannot enter the tabernacle because the kavod is too dense, too heavy, too present. The glory that settled on Sinai has intensified in the enclosed space. The tabernacle is so full of God that there is no room for Moses. Solomon will experience the same phenomenon at the temple dedication (1 Kings 8:10-11).
- 36.** The cloud governs Israel's movement: when it lifts, they travel; when it stays, they stay. The Shekhinah is not merely a resident but a guide. God's presence is both location (where He dwells) and direction (where He leads).
- 37.** 'If the cloud was not taken up, they did not set out' — Israel waits for God's movement before moving themselves. Divine presence determines the pace. The people do not set their own schedule; they follow the cloud.
- 38.** 'The cloud of the LORD was on the tabernacle by day, and fire was in it by night, in the sight of all the house of Israel throughout all their journeys' — the final verse of Exodus closes with the dual manifestation: cloud by day, fire by night. The same theophany elements from the exodus march (13:21-22) now rest permanently on the tabernacle. God's presence is visible to all Israel — not hidden, not intermittent, but constant, public, and undeniable. The book that began with Israel enslaved in Egypt ends with Israel guided by God's glory through the wilderness. The exodus is complete not when Israel leaves Egypt but when God takes up residence among them.

Leviticus

1

Summary: God speaks from the completed tent of meeting, giving Israel instructions for the burnt offering (olah) in three economic tiers: from the herd, from the flock, and from birds. The entire animal is consumed by fire on the altar.

What Makes This Remarkable: The opening verb vayyiqra ("and He called") gives the book its Hebrew name and establishes that God initiates contact with Israel. The three-tier offering system (bull, sheep/goat, bird) ensures that no Israelite is excluded from worship by poverty. The poorest person's pigeon produces the same "pleasing aroma" (reach nichoach) as a wealthy person's bull.

Translation Friction: The word qorban ("offering") comes from q-r-b, "to draw near" -- sacrifice is about proximity to God, not payment. We rendered hiktir as "turn into smoke" rather than "burn" because the Hebrew distinguishes transformative burning (hiktir) from destructive burning (saraph). The phrase lirtsono (v3) carries a productive ambiguity -- "of his own will" or "for his acceptance" -- and we let the English "so that he may be accepted" honor both.

Connections: The glory filling the tabernacle (Exod 40:34-35) now finds voice. Noah's post-flood olah uses the same "pleasing aroma" language (Gen 8:20-21). Abraham's near-sacrifice of Isaac is the olah's narrative backdrop (Gen 22). Mary and Joseph bring the bird offering at Jesus's presentation (Luke 2:24, citing Lev 12:8).

¹The LORD called to Moses and spoke to him from the tent of meeting: ²"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When any of you brings an offering to the LORD, you shall bring your offering from the livestock — from the herd or from the flock. ³If the offering is a burnt offering from the herd, he shall present an unblemished male. He shall bring it to the entrance of the tent of meeting so that he may be accepted before the LORD. ⁴He shall lay his hand on the head of the burnt offering, and it will be accepted on his behalf to make atonement for him. ⁵He shall slaughter the bull before the LORD, and Aaron's sons, the priests, shall present the blood and dash it against the sides of the altar at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ⁶He shall skin the burnt offering and cut it into its sections. ⁷Aaron's sons, the priests, shall place fire on the altar and arrange wood on the fire. ⁸Aaron's sons, the priests, shall arrange the sections — the head and the suet — on the wood that is on the fire on the altar. ⁹The entrails and the legs he shall wash with water, and the priest shall turn all of it into smoke on the altar — a burnt offering, a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁰If the offering is a burnt offering from the flock — whether sheep or goats — he shall present an unblemished male. ¹¹He shall slaughter it on the north side of the altar before the LORD, and

Aaron's sons, the priests, shall dash its blood against the sides of the altar. ¹²He shall cut it into its sections, including the head and the suet, and the priest shall arrange them on the wood that is on the fire on the altar. ¹³The entrails and the legs he shall wash with water, and the priest shall present all of it and turn it into smoke on the altar — it is a burnt offering, a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁴If the offering to the LORD is a burnt offering of birds, he shall bring his offering from the turtledoves or from the young pigeons. ¹⁵The priest shall bring it to the altar and pinch off its head, turning it into smoke on the altar. Its blood shall be drained against the side of the altar. ¹⁶He shall remove the crop with its contents and discard it beside the altar on the east side, at the place of the ashes. ¹⁷He shall tear it open by its wings without severing them completely, and the priest shall turn it into smoke on the altar, on the wood that is on the fire. It is a burnt offering, a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The book opens with *vayyiqra* ('and He called') — from which Leviticus gets its Hebrew name. The verb suggests intimate summons, not simply speaking. God calls before He speaks, as one calls a friend before beginning a conversation. The location matters: God now speaks from inside the tent of meeting (*ohel mo'ed*), the tabernacle completed at the end of Exodus. The glory that filled the tabernacle in Exodus 40:34-35 now finds voice. Leviticus is God speaking from within the space He has chosen to inhabit.
2. The word *qorban* ('offering') comes from the root *q-r-b* meaning 'to draw near, to approach.' An offering is not primarily something given up but something that brings the worshipper near to God. This etymology governs the entire sacrificial system: sacrifice is about proximity, not payment. The generic *adam* ('person') indicates that any Israelite may bring an offering — sacrifice is not restricted to priests. Three tiers of livestock follow (cattle, sheep/goats, birds in v14), creating an economic gradient that ensures no one is excluded from worship by poverty.
3. Three requirements: *olah* ('burnt offering' — the type), *zakhar* ('male' — the sex), and *tamim* ('unblemished, whole, complete' — the condition). The phrase *lirtsono* is debated: it can mean 'of his own will' (voluntary) or 'for his acceptance' (purpose). Both readings are valid, and the ambiguity is productive — the offering is both freely given and given for the purpose of being accepted by God. The location — the entrance of the tent of meeting — places the worshipper at the threshold between ordinary and sacred space.
4. The hand-laying (*semikhah*) is the worshipper's act — not the priest's. By pressing his hand on the animal's head, the offerer establishes a connection between himself and the sacrifice. The animal does not merely represent him symbolically; through *semikhah*, the offering becomes his offering, identified with him. The verb *kipper* ('to make atonement') appears here in its first occurrence in Leviticus — the offering that covers, purges, or ransoms. The *olah* makes atonement not for specific sins (that is the *chata't*'s role) but for the general state of being human before a holy God.
5. The worshipper — not the priest — performs the slaughter (*shachat*). The act of killing the animal is the offerer's responsibility, making the cost of the offering personal and visceral. The priests take over at the blood: they collect it and dash it (*zarqu*, from *zaraq* — a forceful throwing or splashing, not a gentle sprinkling) against the altar on all sides. Blood manipulation is exclusively priestly work because blood carries life (Lev 17:11) and belongs to God.
6. The Hebrew shifts back to the worshipper as subject — he skins (*hifshit*) and sections (*nittach*) the animal. The word *netachim* ('sections, pieces') implies an ordered butchering, not random hacking. Each part will be arranged deliberately on the altar (v8-9). The skinning is the one exception to the *olah*'s total consumption: Leviticus 7:8 specifies that the hide goes to the officiating priest. Everything else ascends.
7. The priests prepare the altar fire and arrange the wood (*arakh*, 'to set in order, arrange'). The same verb *arakh* is used for setting out the showbread (Exod 40:23) and ordering a legal case (Job 13:18) — it implies deliberate, purposeful arrangement. Even the firewood is placed with care. The altar fire, once kindled, must never go out (6:12-13) — it becomes a perpetual sign of God's readiness to receive offerings.
8. The *peder* ('suet, fat covering') is the rich fat surrounding the kidneys and organs — the choicest part of the animal. The head is listed separately, perhaps because it represents the animal as a whole or because its placement requires distinct attention. The layered description — sections on wood, wood on fire, fire on altar — creates a deliberate vertical image: earth to altar to fire to smoke to heaven. The offering ascends through layers toward God.
9. The washing of entrails and legs removes impurities — the internal organs and the feet that touched the ground are cleansed before being offered. The verb *hiqtir* ('to turn into smoke, to make smoke rise') is the technical term for burning an offering — distinct from *saraph* ('to burn up, to destroy'). Sacrificial burning is transformative, not destructive: it converts the physical offering into ascending smoke. The phrase *reach nichoach* ('pleasing aroma') does not mean God literally smells the smoke — it is anthropomorphic language for divine acceptance. The same phrase appears after Noah's offering (Gen 8:21), linking the Levitical system back to the earliest post-flood worship.
10. The second tier of the *olah*: flock animals (*tson*) instead of cattle (*baqar*). Sheep and goats are less costly than cattle, making the burnt offering accessible to those who cannot afford a bull. The same requirements apply — male, *tamim* (unblemished) — ensuring that economic difference does not mean a lesser offering in quality. The God who receives a sheep receives it with the same acceptance as a bull.
11. A new detail: the flock animal must be slaughtered on the north side of the altar (*tsafonah*). The north side is away from the entrance (which faces east), placing the slaughter out of general view. Later tradition associated the north side with the more solemn offerings. The verb *zaraq* ('dash, splash') again indicates forceful application of blood against the altar — a visible, physical coating of life-substance on the sacred structure.

12. The procedure repeats almost verbatim from v6-8, with one difference: the priest (not just the worshipper) arranges the pieces. The repetition is not redundancy — it demonstrates that the flock offering follows the same protocol as the herd offering. The sacrificial system is structured and consistent; the procedure does not vary with the economic value of the animal.
13. The closing formula repeats: olah hu ('it is a burnt offering'), issheh ('a fire offering'), reach nichoach laYHWH ('a pleasing aroma to the LORD'). The threefold identification marks the completion of the flock-animal olah. The refrain 'pleasing aroma to the LORD' appears at the end of each subsection (v9, v13, v17), creating a structural rhythm: whatever the animal, the result is the same — God receives it with acceptance.
14. The third and most affordable tier: birds. Turtledoves (torim) and young pigeons (benei yonah) are the offering of the poor — Mary and Joseph brought this offering after Jesus's birth (Luke 2:24, citing Lev 12:8). The sacrificial system's three-tier structure (cattle, flock, birds) ensures that no Israelite is excluded from worship by economic status. The poorest person in Israel can bring a burnt offering that God receives with the same 'pleasing aroma' as a bull.
15. For the bird offering, the priest performs the entire procedure — the worshipper does not slaughter the bird themselves (unlike the herd and flock animals). The verb malaq ('to pinch off, to nip') describes removing the head with a fingernail or thumbnail — a technique specific to bird sacrifice. The blood of the bird is 'drained' (nimtsah, from matsah, 'to squeeze out, to drain') against the altar wall rather than dashed, because the small volume of blood requires a different application method.
16. The crop (mur'ah) — the bird's gullet or craw — is removed along with its contents (natsah, which may mean 'feathers' or 'filth/contents'). Unlike the washed entrails of the larger animals (v9, v13), the bird's crop is discarded rather than offered, because it contains undigested food — material that did not originate with the worshipper's provision. The ash pile (maqom haddeshen) on the east side of the altar is the designated disposal area for sacrificial residue.
17. The bird is torn open (shissa, 'to split, rend') by its wings but not divided — it remains one piece, spread open on the fire. The wholeness of the offering is preserved even in its opening. The chapter closes with the same refrain that concluded each section: olah hu, issheh, reach nichoach laYHWH. Three animals, three economic tiers, one identical result — a pleasing aroma to the LORD. The first chapter of Leviticus establishes a principle that governs the entire book: access to God is not determined by wealth. The poorest offering and the richest produce the same acceptance.

2

Summary: *God gives instructions for the grain offering (minchah) in four forms: raw flour, oven-baked, griddle-cooked, and deep-pan prepared. A portion is burned as a memorial; the rest goes to the priests. Salt is required on every offering; leaven and honey are prohibited from the altar.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The minchah is the offering of human labor -- not blood but bread. The word nephesh ("soul, person") introduces it, hinting this was the offering of the poor. Only a handful (the azkarah, "memorial portion") ascends to God; the rest feeds the priesthood, integrating worship and practical sustenance in a single act.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered azkarah as "memorial portion" because the root zakhar ("to remember") suggests the handful "triggers" divine attention toward the worshipper -- not that God forgets, but that the offering activates His regard. The KJV's "meat offering" is misleading since the minchah contains no meat. The phrase melach berit ("salt of the covenant") required careful handling: salt appears three times in v13, and we preserved the emphasis without smoothing it.*

Connections: *Jacob's gift to Esau uses the same word minchah (Gen 32:14), showing its range as "tribute" and "gift." The salt covenant reappears in Num 18:19 and 2 Chr 13:5 as a sign of permanence. The prohibition of leaven echoes the unleavened bread of the exodus (Exod 12:15-20).*

¹When a person presents a grain offering to the LORD, the offering shall be of fine flour. He shall pour oil on it and place frankincense upon it. ²He shall bring it to Aaron's sons, the priests. The priest shall scoop out a handful of fine flour and oil, together with all the frankincense, and turn this memorial portion into smoke on the altar — a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ³The remainder of the grain offering belongs to Aaron and his sons — it is most holy, from the fire offerings of the LORD. ⁴If you bring a grain offering baked in an oven, it shall be unleavened loaves of fine flour mixed with oil, or unleavened wafers spread with oil. ⁵If your offering is a grain offering prepared on a griddle, it shall be of fine flour mixed with oil, unleavened. ⁶Break it into pieces and pour oil on it — it is a grain offering. ⁷If your offering is a grain offering prepared in a deep pan, it shall be made with fine flour and oil. ⁸You shall bring to the LORD the grain offering prepared in

any of these ways. Present it to the priest, and he shall bring it to the altar. ⁹The priest shall remove the memorial portion from the grain offering and turn it into smoke on the altar — a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁰The remainder of the grain offering belongs to Aaron and his sons — it is most holy, from the fire offerings of the LORD. ¹¹No grain offering that you present to the LORD may be made with leaven, for you must not turn any leaven or any honey into smoke as a fire offering to the LORD. ¹²You may present leaven and honey as an offering of firstfruits to the LORD, but they must not go up on the altar as a pleasing aroma. ¹³You shall season every one of your grain offerings with salt. You must not leave the salt of the covenant of your God out of your grain offering. With all your offerings you shall present salt. ¹⁴If you present a grain offering of early produce to the LORD, you shall offer fresh ears roasted by fire — crushed kernels from new grain — as the grain offering of your firstfruits. ¹⁵Place oil on it and lay frankincense upon it — it is a grain offering. ¹⁶The priest shall turn the memorial portion into smoke — some of the crushed grain and some of the oil, together with all the frankincense — a fire offering to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *nephesh* ('a person, a soul') introduces the grain offering with a warmer term than the *adam* of 1:2 — some scholars suggest this hints that the *minchah* was the poor person's offering, since those who could not afford animals could bring flour. The KJV's 'meat offering' is misleading — *minchah* contains no meat. It is exclusively grain-based. Three elements compose the basic *minchah*: *solet* (fine flour — flour that has been ground and sifted to purity), oil (*shemen* — olive oil), and frankincense (*levonah* — an expensive aromatic resin). The combination creates something beautiful from simple agricultural products.
2. Unlike the *olah*, only a portion of the *minchah* is burned — the *azkarah* ('memorial portion'). The priest takes a full handful (*melo qumtso* — a precise, measured scoop) of flour and oil, plus all the frankincense, and burns it on the altar. The word *azkarah* (from *zakhar*, 'to remember') suggests that the handful 'represents' the whole offering before God — it triggers divine remembrance. The bulk of the grain goes to the priests (v3). The *minchah* thus serves two functions: worship of God (through the memorial portion) and provision for the priesthood (through the remainder).
3. The remainder (*notereth*) goes to the priests as their food — this is how the priesthood is sustained. The designation *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy,' literally 'holy of holies') means the remaining grain must be eaten within the sacred precinct by priests only (see 6:16-18). The *minchah* thus serves a double function: the memorial portion goes up to God; the remainder goes to feed the priests. Worship and practical sustenance are integrated, not separated.
4. The first of three baked variants of the *minchah*: oven-baked (*ma'afeh tannur*). Two forms are specified — thick loaves (*challot*) mixed with oil throughout, or thin wafers (*reqiqei*) brushed with oil on the surface. Both must be unleavened (*matzot*) — the prohibition against leaven in offerings (v11) applies here. The oven represents the most common form of ancient Israelite bread-making.
5. The second variant: the griddle (*machavat*) — a flat cooking surface. The Hebrew specifies *solet belulah vashemen matzah* ('fine flour mixed with oil, unleavened'). The three cooking methods (oven v4, griddle v5, pan v7) accommodate different kitchen equipment — again, no one is excluded from offering by the limitations of their household.
6. The griddle-baked grain offering is broken (*patot*, 'to crumble, to break into pieces') before oil is poured over it. The breaking makes the offering easier to burn and distributes the oil evenly. The short declarative — *minchah hi* ('it is a grain offering') — confirms that the prepared bread, once broken and oiled, has the same status as the raw flour offering of v1.
7. The third variant: the *marcheshet* — a deep pan or pot, distinct from the flat griddle. The word *marcheshet* may be related to *rachash* ('to simmer, to bubble'), suggesting that this method involved cooking in oil rather than dry baking. The three methods — oven, griddle, deep pan — cover the full range of ancient Israelite cooking technology.
8. The general instruction covers all variants: bring the prepared *minchah* to the LORD, give it to the priest, and the priest presents it at the altar. The worshipper prepares; the priest mediates. Two verbs for presentation appear: *hiqrivah* ('present, bring near' — from the same q-r-b root as *qorban*) and *higgishaah* ('bring close, approach' — the priest's act of placing the offering at the altar itself).
9. The *azkarah* procedure from v2 is restated to cover all the baked variants: the priest removes the memorial portion and burns it. The same formula closes the section: *issheh reach nichoach laYHWH*. Whether raw flour or baked bread, whether oven, griddle, or deep pan — the outcome is identical. The form of preparation does not affect God's acceptance.
10. Identical to v3 — the priests' portion from the baked variants follows the same rule as from the raw-flour offering. The repetition ensures that no confusion arises from the different preparation methods: regardless of how the grain was prepared before offering, the same priestly allocation applies.
11. Two prohibitions: no leaven (*se'or* — yeast or sourdough starter) and no honey (*devash* — probably date syrup or fruit honey, not bee honey). Both substances cause fermentation or transformation — they change the nature of what they touch. The prohibition may reflect the principle that what is offered to God should be in its essential, unaltered state. Leaven and honey are not evil (they appear in non-sacrificial contexts), but they are excluded from the altar because they represent human-induced change applied to what should remain pure.

12. The exception clause: leaven and honey may be brought to the LORD as firstfruits (reshit) — an offering of the initial harvest — but they must not be placed on the altar or burned. They are given but not consumed by fire. This distinction between 'offered to the LORD' and 'burned on the altar' reveals that the altar is not the only mode of giving to God — some gifts go to the priestly household without passing through fire.
13. Salt appears three times in a single verse — the emphasis is extraordinary. The phrase *melach berit Elohekha* ('salt of the covenant of your God') is unique: salt represents permanence, preservation, and the enduring nature of covenant. Salt does not decay, does not change, and it prevents what it touches from spoiling. A 'covenant of salt' (see also Num 18:19, 2 Chr 13:5) is an unbreakable, perpetual agreement. Every offering must carry this sign of permanence — every act of worship is a reaffirmation of the eternal covenant.
14. The firstfruits minchah (bikkurim) uses the earliest grain of the harvest, not stored flour. Aviv ('fresh, young grain') describes ears still green on the stalk, roasted immediately (*qalui ba'esh*) and then crushed (*geresh karmel* — 'groats of fresh grain'). This offering celebrates the first appearance of the new crop — the moment when the agricultural year begins to deliver its promise. Presenting the first grain to God before eating any yourself declares that the harvest belongs to Him before it belongs to you.
15. The same elements as the basic minchah in v1 — oil and frankincense — are added to the firstfruits grain. The chapter comes full circle: whether raw flour, baked bread, or roasted firstfruits, the minchah always carries oil and frankincense. These three elements — grain, oil, incense — form the constant signature of the grain offering across all its variants.
16. The chapter closes with the azkarah procedure applied to the firstfruits variant. As with every minchah form, only a portion of the grain and oil is burned, but all the frankincense ascends. The incense always goes entirely to God. The chapter has covered four forms of grain offering — raw flour (v1-3), oven-baked (v4), griddle (v5-6), deep pan (v7), and firstfruits (v14-16) — establishing the minchah as the most accessible and varied of the five offerings. Any Israelite who has grain, oil, and a handful of frankincense can worship.

3

Summary: *God gives instructions for the peace offering (shelamim) from three animal types: herd, sheep, and goat. The fat and internal organs go to God on the altar; the rest is shared between priest and worshipper. The chapter closes with a permanent prohibition against eating fat or blood.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The shelamim is the only offering the worshipper eats. It is a shared meal -- God receives the fat (burned on the altar), the priest receives the breast and thigh, and the offerer's household eats the rest. From the root shalom ("peace, wholeness"), this offering celebrates restored relationship. The altar is called God's "table" and the fat His "food" (lechem, v11) -- anthropomorphic language framing sacrifice as a communal feast.*

Translation Friction: *The term zevach shelamim required both words: zevach specifically means "slaughter-sacrifice followed by a meal," reinforcing that eating is integral, not incidental. We kept the Hebrew plural shelamim, which may intensify the meaning toward "thoroughgoing peace." The alyah temimah ("entire fat tail," v9) refers to the enormous tail of Near Eastern fat-tailed sheep -- a genuine economic sacrifice we clarified in the notes.*

Connections: *The prohibition of fat and blood (v17) echoes Gen 9:4 (blood prohibition after the flood) and anticipates Lev 17:11 ("the life of the flesh is in the blood"). The shelamim fat is burned "on top of the burnt offering" (v5), suggesting that fellowship with God rests on the prior foundation of total devotion.*

¹If the offering is a sacrifice of peace offerings — if one presents it from the herd, whether male or female — it must be presented unblemished before the LORD. ²He shall lay his hand on the head of the offering and slaughter it at the entrance of the tent of meeting. Aaron's sons, the priests, shall dash the blood against the sides of the altar. ³From the sacrifice of peace offerings he shall present as a fire offering to the LORD the fat that covers the entrails — all the fat surrounding the entrails, ⁴the two kidneys and the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver, which he shall remove along with the kidneys. ⁵Aaron's sons shall turn it into smoke on the altar, on top of the burnt offering that is on the wood over the fire — a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ⁶If the offering for a sacrifice of peace offerings to the LORD is from the flock — male or female — it must be presented unblemished. ⁷If he is presenting a sheep as his offering, he shall present it before the LORD. ⁸He shall lay his hand on the head of his offering and slaughter it before the tent of meeting. Aaron's sons shall dash its blood against the sides of the altar. ⁹From the sacrifice of peace offerings he shall present as a fire offering to the LORD: its fat — the entire fat tail, removed close to the backbone — and the fat covering the entrails, all the fat surrounding the

entrails, ¹⁰the two kidneys and the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver — he shall remove it along with the kidneys. ¹¹The priest shall turn it into smoke on the altar — it is food, a fire offering to the LORD. ¹²If the offering is a goat, he shall present it before the LORD. ¹³He shall lay his hand on its head and slaughter it before the tent of meeting. Aaron's sons shall dash its blood against the sides of the altar. ¹⁴From it he shall present his offering, a fire offering to the LORD: the fat covering the entrails — all the fat surrounding the entrails, ¹⁵the two kidneys and the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver — he shall remove it along with the kidneys. ¹⁶The priest shall turn them into smoke on the altar — food, a fire offering, a pleasing aroma. All fat belongs to the LORD. ¹⁷This is a permanent statute for all your generations, wherever you dwell: you must not eat any fat or any blood.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Two features distinguish the shelamim immediately: first, either male or female animals are accepted (the olah requires males only); second, the worshipper eats a portion. The phrase zevach shelamim ('sacrifice of peace offerings') uses zevach — which specifically means 'slaughter-sacrifice followed by a meal' — reinforcing that eating is integral to this offering, not incidental. The plural shelamim may intensify the meaning: complete, thoroughgoing peace/wholeness.
2. The hand-laying (semikhah) and slaughter procedures are identical to the olah (1:4-5): the worshipper identifies with the animal, then kills it personally. The blood is dashed (zaraq) against the altar by the priests. The consistency of the opening ritual across different offerings — olah, minchah (via priest), and now shelamim — establishes a common liturgical framework. What differs between offerings is not how they begin but what happens after the blood: in the olah, everything is burned; in the shelamim, the fat goes to God and the meat goes to the table.
3. God's portion of the shelamim is specifically and exclusively the fat (chelev). The chelev — the rich suet surrounding the internal organs — was considered the choicest, most valuable part of the animal. Giving the best part to God while keeping the edible meat for the meal embodies a principle: God receives the finest, and from what remains, the community feasts. The fat is not eaten but burned — it belongs to God absolutely (v16-17).
4. The anatomical detail is precise: two kidneys (kelayot), their surrounding fat near the loins (kesalim), and the yoteret al-hakkaved — a lobe or appendage on the liver (possibly the caudate lobe). These internal organs and their fat covering constitute the portion reserved for God. The kidneys in Hebrew thought were associated with the seat of deep emotion and conscience (Ps 7:10, Jer 17:10); offering them to God may symbolize presenting one's innermost self.
5. The shelamim fat is burned on top of the olah — 'upon the burnt offering' (al-ha'olah). The burnt offering is the base layer; the peace offering's fat is placed above it. This layering is practical (the olah fire is already burning) and symbolic (the peace offering rests upon the foundation of total devotion). The shelamim presupposes the olah — fellowship with God rests on the prior act of complete surrender.
6. The flock section (v6-11) parallels the herd section (v1-5). Again, both male and female are accepted — the shelamim's inclusive acceptance of either sex reflects its communal, celebratory nature. The requirement of tamim ('unblemished') remains constant: the animal offered for fellowship must be whole and sound, regardless of the worshipper's economic standing.
7. The flock is subdivided: sheep (kesev, v7-11) and goats (ez, v12-16). The sheep section comes first. The Hebrew kesev ('young sheep, lamb') is the same word used for the Passover lamb in some traditions. Presenting it 'before the LORD' (lifnei YHWH) emphasizes that even though the worshipper will eventually eat most of this animal, the act is first and fundamentally directed toward God.
8. The same semikhah-slaughter-blood-dashing sequence as v2 and as the olah in 1:4-5. The ritual actions remain constant while the meaning and outcome differ. In the olah, the worshipper gives everything; in the shelamim, God, priest, and worshipper share a meal. But the opening act — hand on head, personal slaughter, blood on altar — is the same. Every offering begins with identification and blood.
9. A new element appears for the sheep: the alyah temimah ('the entire fat tail'). Fat-tailed sheep (*Ovis laticauda*) were — and still are — common in the Near East, with tails that can weigh 10-15 pounds of pure fat. This was an enormously valuable cut of meat, and giving it entirely to God was a genuine sacrifice. The instruction to remove it le'ummat he'atseh ('close to the backbone') specifies a clean, complete removal — nothing of the fat tail is held back.
10. Identical to v4 — the kidney-and-liver-lobe specification is a fixed formula that repeats across all three animal types in this chapter. The repetition is not redundancy; it is ritual precision. The same parts belong to God whether the animal is a bull, a sheep, or a goat. The formula will recur throughout Leviticus whenever these organs are discussed (4:9, 7:4, 8:16, 8:25, 9:10, 9:19).
11. The striking phrase lechem issheh ('food of the fire offering,' or 'bread of the fire offering') describes the fat portions as God's 'food.' This is anthropomorphic language — God does not literally eat — but it frames the sacrifice as a shared meal in which God's portion is the choicest fat, consumed by fire rather than by mouth. The word lechem ('bread, food') applied to a fire offering suggests that the altar is God's table. The shelamim makes this metaphor most visible: God eats at the altar, the priest eats his portion, the worshipper eats the rest. Three parties, one meal.
12. The goat section (v12-16) is the third and final animal category for the shelamim. The procedure matches the herd (v1-5) and sheep (v6-11) sections, with one notable absence: the goat has no fat tail to offer (unlike the fat-tailed sheep of v9). Otherwise the ritual is identical. The goat was the most common sacrificial animal for average Israelite households — affordable, prolific, and widely available.

13. The third repetition of the hand-laying and blood-dashing sequence. The consistent ritual establishes that the mode of approach to God is fixed: identification, slaughter, blood on the altar. What changes is what follows — how the animal is distributed. The constancy of the opening acts across all offering types creates a unified liturgical vocabulary that every Israelite would recognize.
14. The fat allocation for the goat matches the herd animal (v3) — no fat tail (unlike the sheep of v9), just the internal fat covering the organs. The goat offering demonstrates that the shelamim's structure is stable across all three animal types: God receives the fat, the priest receives the breast and thigh (specified in 7:31-34), and the worshipper receives the rest.
15. The kidney-and-liver-lobe formula appears for the third time in this chapter (v4, v10, v15). The triple repetition across herd, sheep, and goat sections makes the point unmistakable: these specific organs always belong to God, regardless of the animal species. The Israelite worshipper could never misunderstand which parts were God's — the text eliminates all ambiguity through repetition.
16. The climactic declaration: kol-chelev laYHWH ('all fat belongs to the LORD'). This is not limited to the shelamim — it is a universal principle stated here and enforced in v17. Every piece of chelev in every sacrifice, in every Israelite household, belongs to God. Fat is God's portion in the same way that blood is God's possession (Lev 17:11). These two substances — the richest and the most vital — are permanently reserved for the divine.
17. The chapter closes with a universal, perpetual prohibition: chuqat olam ('statute of eternity'). Two substances are absolutely forbidden as food: chelev (suet/organ fat — the fat portions reserved for God on the altar) and dam (blood — which carries life and belongs to God, Lev 17:11). The phrase bekhoh moshvotekhem ('wherever you dwell') extends the prohibition beyond the sanctuary to all of daily life — even when not sacrificing, Israelites may never eat these substances. The twin prohibitions of fat and blood frame the entire offering system: God claims the richest and the most vital. Everything else is given back to the worshipper.

4

Summary: *God introduces the purification offering (chata't) for unintentional sin, with procedures varying by the offender's status: anointed priest, whole congregation, tribal leader, or common person. The blood application differs for each -- deeper penetration into the sanctuary corresponds to greater responsibility.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chata't does not primarily cleanse the sinner; it purifies the sanctuary. Sin contaminates the space where God dwells, and without purification, accumulated pollution would drive God's presence out. The spatial logic is striking: the priest's sin sends blood to the veil of the holy of holies; the commoner's sin only reaches the outer altar. Authority determines contamination depth.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered chata't as "purification offering" rather than the traditional "sin offering" because its primary function is to decontaminate sacred space, not to punish the sinner. The Hebrew bishgagah ("unintentionally") was critical -- the chata't addresses sins committed without awareness, not defiant rebellion (which has no sacrificial remedy, Num 15:30-31). The term hakkohen hammashiach ("the anointed priest," v3) is literally "the messiah-priest."*

Connections: *The graduated responsibility structure anticipates Jesus's principle in Luke 12:48 ("to whom much is given, much is required"). The blood on the veil (v6) foreshadows the Yom Kippur ritual (ch 16). The four-tier system (priest, congregation, leader, commoner) mirrors the social structure of Numbers 1-2.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Speak to the Israelites and say: When a person sins unintentionally against any of the LORD's commandments — doing what must not be done — and commits one of them: ³If the anointed priest sins, bringing guilt on the people, he shall present for the sin he has committed an unblemished young bull to the LORD as a purification offering. ⁴He shall bring the bull to the entrance of the tent of meeting before the LORD, lay his hand on the bull's head, and slaughter the bull before the LORD. ⁵The anointed priest shall take some of the bull's blood and bring it into the tent of meeting. ⁶The priest shall dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle some of the blood seven times before the LORD, in front of the veil of the sanctuary. ⁷The priest shall put some of the blood on the horns of the incense altar before the LORD, which is inside the tent of meeting. All the remaining blood of the bull he shall pour out at the base of the burnt offering altar at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ⁸He shall remove all the fat from the bull of the purification offering — the fat covering the entrails and all the fat surrounding the entrails, ⁹the two kidneys and the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver — he shall remove it along with the kidneys, ¹⁰just as the fat is removed from the bull of the peace offering. The priest shall turn them into smoke on the burnt offering altar. ¹¹But the hide of the bull, all its flesh, its head, its legs, its entrails, and its dung — ¹²th

the entire bull he shall carry outside the camp to a ritually clean place, to the ash dump, and burn it on a wood fire. It shall be burned at the ash dump. ¹³If the entire community of Israel sins unintentionally — the matter being hidden from the eyes of the assembly — and they do what is forbidden by any of the LORD's commandments, and they incur guilt, ¹⁴when the sin they have committed becomes known, the assembly shall present a young bull as a purification offering and bring it before the tent of meeting. ¹⁵The elders of the community shall lay their hands on the bull's head before the LORD, and the bull shall be slaughtered before the LORD. ¹⁶The anointed priest shall bring some of the bull's blood into the tent of meeting. ¹⁷The priest shall dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle it seven times before the LORD, in front of the veil. ¹⁸He shall put some of the blood on the horns of the altar that stands before the LORD inside the tent of meeting. All the remaining blood he shall pour out at the base of the burnt offering altar at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ¹⁹He shall remove all its fat and turn it into smoke on the altar. ²⁰He shall do with the bull exactly as he did with the bull of the priestly purification offering — so shall he do with this one. The priest shall make atonement for them, and they shall be forgiven. ²¹He shall carry the bull outside the camp and burn it just as he burned the first bull. It is the purification offering of the assembly. ²²When a leader sins, doing unintentionally what is forbidden by any commandment of the LORD his God, and incurs guilt, ²³or when his sin is made known to him, he shall bring as his offering an unblemished male goat. ²⁴He shall lay his hand on the goat's head and slaughter it at the place where the burnt offering is slaughtered before the LORD. It is a purification offering. ²⁵The priest shall take some of the blood of the purification offering with his finger and put it on the horns of the burnt offering altar. The remaining blood he shall pour out at the base of the burnt offering altar. ²⁶All its fat he shall turn into smoke on the altar, like the fat of the peace offering. The priest shall make atonement for him for his sin, and he shall be forgiven. ²⁷If any individual among the common people sins unintentionally, doing what is forbidden by any of the LORD's commandments, and incurs guilt, ²⁸or when the sin committed is made known, the person shall bring as an offering an unblemished female goat for the sin committed. ²⁹The offerer shall lay a hand on the head of the purification offering and slaughter it at the place of the burnt offering. ³⁰The priest shall take some of its blood with his finger and put it on the horns of the burnt offering altar. All the remaining blood he shall pour out at the base of the altar. ³¹All its fat he shall remove, just as the fat is removed from the peace offering, and the priest shall turn it into smoke on the altar as a pleasing aroma to the LORD. The priest shall make atonement for him, and he shall be forgiven. ³²If the person brings a lamb as a purification offering, it must be an unblemished female. ³³The offerer shall lay a hand on the head of the purification offering and slaughter it as a purification offering at the place where the burnt offering is slaughtered. ³⁴The priest shall take some of the blood of the purification offering with his finger and put it on the horns of the burnt offering altar. All the remaining blood he shall pour out at the base of the altar. ³⁵All its fat he shall remove, just as the fat of the lamb is removed from the peace offering, and the priest shall turn it into smoke on the altar among the fire offerings to the LORD. The priest shall make atonement for the sin committed, and the person shall be forgiven.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourth offering is introduced with the standard divine speech formula. Unlike the olah and shelamim, which are voluntary ('when a person brings'), the chata't is triggered by a specific situation: unintentional sin (v2). The shift from voluntary worship to required response marks a change in the sacrificial system's tone — the next two offerings (chata't and ashram) address failure rather than devotion.
2. The key phrase is bishgagah ('unintentionally, inadvertently, by mistake'). The chata't addresses sins committed without awareness or intent — violations of God's commands that the person did not realize they were committing. Deliberate, defiant sin (bemad yamim, Num 15:30-31) has no sacrificial remedy. The verb chata ('to sin') originally means 'to miss the mark' — the person aimed at obedience but missed. The chapter will distinguish four categories of offerer (priest, congregation, leader, commoner), each with different procedures, reflecting the principle that greater authority brings greater responsibility.
3. The first category: the anointed priest (hakkohen hammashiach — literally 'the messiah-priest,' the anointed one). His sin brings ashmat ha'am ('guilt upon the people') because the priest represents the community before God. A priest's sin contaminates the entire sacrificial system. The required animal — a young bull (par ben-baqar) — is the most expensive offering in the system, reflecting the gravity of priestly failure. What follows (v4-12) is the most elaborate chata't procedure, with blood applied inside the sanctuary itself.
4. The opening ritual is identical to the olah and shelamim: bring, lay hand, slaughter. But what follows will differ dramatically — the blood of the priestly chata't goes inside the sanctuary, not just on the outer altar. The semikhah (hand-laying) here identifies the priest with his own sin offering —

even the mediator between God and Israel must present his own sacrifice through the same gesture of personal identification.

5. The blood enters the tent of meeting itself — crossing the threshold that the olah blood never crosses. The outer altar receives olah and shelamim blood; the inner sanctuary receives the priestly chata't blood. The deeper the sin penetrates (a priest's sin reaches the heart of the sanctuary), the deeper the blood must go to purify it. This spatial logic — blood follows contamination to its source — governs the entire chata't system.
6. Seven sprinklings (hizzah sheva pe'amim) before the parokhet — the curtain separating the holy place from the most holy place. Seven is the number of completeness; seven applications ensure thorough purification. The finger-dipping and sprinkling technique (hizzah, distinct from zaraq/'dashing') produces a fine spray directed at the veil — the boundary of God's innermost dwelling. The priest's sin has contaminated the boundary of the holy of holies, and the blood must reach that boundary to cleanse it.
7. The blood is applied to two locations: first on the horns of the inner incense altar (the qarnot — projections at the four corners, considered the most potent points of the altar), then the remainder poured at the base of the outer burnt offering altar. The blood moves from inside to outside — purifying both the inner and outer sacred zones. The horns represent the altar's power and efficacy; placing blood on them purifies the instrument of worship itself.
8. The fat procedure follows the same pattern as the shelamim (3:3-4) — the chelev covering the internal organs is removed for burning on the altar. Even in a purification offering, the fat belongs to God. The chata't differs from the olah (which is entirely burned) and the shelamim (which is shared): the fat goes to the altar, but the meat is neither shared with the worshipper nor entirely consumed on the altar — for the priestly chata't, the meat is burned outside the camp (v12).
9. The kidney-liver-lobe formula, identical to 3:4, 3:10, 3:15. The same internal organs belong to God regardless of offering type. This consistency across olah, shelamim, and chata't establishes a fixed principle: the innermost fat is always God's portion, never consumed by priest or worshipper.
10. The explicit comparison — 'just as from the bull of the peace offering' (ka'asher yuram mishor zevach hashelamim) — links the chata't fat procedure to the shelamim. The sacrificial system is internally cross-referential: each offering borrows from and builds upon the others. The fat goes to the same altar and the same fire regardless of whether the occasion is celebration (shelamim) or purification (chata't).
11. Everything not burned on the altar — hide, flesh, head, legs, entrails, dung — is listed for disposal outside the camp (v12). Unlike the olah (where everything is burned on the altar) and the shelamim (where the worshipper eats much of it), the priestly chata't meat goes to neither altar nor table. It is too holy for the worshipper but cannot go on the altar because the blood was applied inside the sanctuary. The meat is in a liminal category — sacred but unusable — and must be destroyed outside the camp.
12. The bull is carried outside the camp (el-michutz lamachaneh) — beyond the boundaries of the community — and burned at the shefekh haddeshen ('ash dump,' where altar ashes are deposited). The location must be tahor ('ritually clean'), not because the bull is profane but because it is laden with absorbed impurity from the sanctuary purification. The author of Hebrews connects this practice to Jesus suffering 'outside the gate' (Heb 13:11-12). The burning outside the camp completes the priestly chata't procedure — the most elaborate in the entire sacrificial system.
13. The second category: the entire congregation (kol-adat Yisra'el). Collective, unintentional sin is possible when the community as a whole violates a commandment without realizing it — perhaps through a misunderstanding of the law or an oversight by the leadership. The phrase ne'elam davar me'einei haqqahal ('the matter was hidden from the assembly's eyes') emphasizes that ignorance, not defiance, triggers this procedure. The communal chata't requires the same bull as the priestly chata't (v14), reinforcing the gravity of collective failure.
14. The purification offering is triggered when the sin 'becomes known' (nod'ah) — awareness of the violation initiates the sacrificial response. The congregation collectively provides the bull (not individuals separately), and the elders represent the community in the hand-laying (v15). The same animal — a young bull, the most costly offering — is required for both priestly and communal sin, establishing equivalence between the priest's failure and the community's failure in terms of their impact on the sanctuary.
15. The elders (ziqunei ha'edah) perform the semikhah on behalf of the whole congregation — they are the community's representatives in the act of identification. Multiple hands on one animal: the corporate nature of this offering is made physical. The passive 'shall be slaughtered' (shachat) leaves the agent unspecified — the slaughter may be performed by the elders, a designated individual, or a priest.
16. The same anointed priest who offered his own chata't (v3-12) now mediates the community's purification. The blood again enters the tent of meeting — communal sin, like priestly sin, penetrates to the inner sanctuary. The procedure from v16-21 closely parallels v5-12, creating a structural echo: what contaminates the sanctuary at the deepest level requires the same intensive purification.
17. Identical to v6 — seven sprinklings before the veil. The blood purification for communal sin reaches the same depth as for priestly sin. The repetition of the exact procedure reinforces the principle: the gravity of contamination is measured not by the offerer's status but by the contamination's proximity to God's presence.
18. The two-altar blood application — inner incense altar horns, then outer altar base — mirrors v7 exactly. The same dual purification addresses the same depth of contamination. The inner altar's horns and the outer altar's foundation together represent the full vertical extent of sacred space: from the innermost point of worship to the very ground of the sacrificial system.
19. The fat procedure is abbreviated here — 'all its fat' (kol-chelbo) without the detailed organ-by-organ list of v8-10. The text assumes the reader now knows which fat portions are meant: the internal organ fat, kidney fat, and liver lobe specified in the priestly chata't section and in the shelamim (ch 3). Abbreviation through familiarity is a feature of Levitical legislation.

- 20.** The explicit cross-reference ('as he did with the bull of the chata't') confirms that the communal and priestly procedures are identical. The chapter's climactic phrase appears for the first time: *veniselach lahem* ('and they shall be forgiven'). The Hebrew *n-s-l-ch* ('forgive') appears only with God as subject — only God can forgive. The sacrificial system does not generate forgiveness mechanically; it provides the means through which God, who alone can forgive, chooses to do so.
- 21.** The communal bull is burned outside the camp, exactly as the priestly bull (v12). The closing identification — *chattat haqqahal hu* ('it is the purification offering of the assembly') — names the offering formally. The first two categories (priest and congregation) share identical procedures because both contaminate the inner sanctuary. The next two categories (leader and commoner) will have simpler procedures because their sins affect only the outer altar.
- 22.** The third category: the *nasi* ('leader, ruler, chieftain'). The word *asher* ('when') rather than *im* ('if') introduces this section — some scholars note this as an expectation that leaders will sin, not merely a hypothetical. The *nasi* is a tribal or civic leader, below the priest but above the common Israelite. His offering (a male goat, v23) is less costly than the priestly/communal bull but more than the commoner's female goat or lamb (v28, 32). The graduated scale reflects a principle: authority corresponds to both responsibility and required sacrifice.
- 23.** Again, the sin must be 'made known' (*hoda elav*) before the offering is triggered — unknowing sin requires discovery before it can be addressed. The leader's animal is a male goat (*se'ir izzim zakhar*) — male because of his public authority, goat rather than bull because his sin affects the outer altar, not the inner sanctuary. The graduated animal scale matches the graduated blood application: inner sanctuary receives bull blood; outer altar receives goat blood.
- 24.** The goat is slaughtered at the same location as the *olah* — the north side of the altar (1:11). This spatial overlap connects the *chata't* to the *olah*: purification and devotion share the same sacred ground. The identification *chattat hu* ('it is a purification offering') formally classifies the sacrifice. Unlike the priestly *chata't*, the leader's blood stays on the outer altar — it does not enter the tent.
- 25.** The critical difference: the leader's blood goes only on the outer altar — the horns of the burnt offering altar, not the inner incense altar (contrast v7, v18). The leader's sin contaminates the outer sacred zone but does not reach the inner sanctuary. The spatial logic is consistent: the blood goes where the contamination has reached, and a leader's sin does not penetrate as deeply as a priest's or the congregation's.
- 26.** The fat procedure again references the *shelamim* as its model ('like the fat of the peace offering'). The closing formula — *kipper... veniselach lo* — declares the result: atonement accomplished, forgiveness granted. The leader's sin required a less elaborate procedure than the priest's or congregation's, but the outcome is identical: full forgiveness. The graduated system ensures proportional procedure, not proportional forgiveness.
- 27.** The fourth and final category: the ordinary Israelite (*nephesh achat me'am ha'arets* — 'one person from the people of the land'). This is the most accessible tier — two animal options will be given (female goat v28, or female lamb v32), both less costly than the leader's male goat. The phrase *am ha'arets* ('people of the land') simply means the common population, without the later pejorative connotation it acquired in rabbinic usage.
- 28.** The commoner's first option: a female goat (*se'irat izzim neqevah*). Female animals are less valuable than males in the ancient economy, making this offering more affordable. The acceptance of female animals for the commoner's *chata't* (but not for the leader's or priest's) reflects the economic gradient built into the system: the offering scales to what the person can reasonably afford while still requiring genuine sacrifice.
- 29.** Identical procedure to v24 — hand-laying and slaughter at the *olah* site. The commoner performs the same acts as the leader: *semikhah* (personal identification) and personal slaughter. Status does not change the worshipper's role in the sacrifice — every Israelite, from priest to commoner, must lay their own hand on the animal's head and take personal responsibility for the offering.
- 30.** The same outer-altar-only blood application as the leader's *chata't* (v25). The commoner's sin, like the leader's, affects the outer altar zone but not the inner sanctuary. The consistent blood-application pattern across the leader and commoner categories — outer altar horns plus base — contrasts with the priest's and congregation's inner-sanctuary application (v6-7, v17-18). The system has a clear spatial logic: greater authority means deeper contamination, which requires deeper purification.
- 31.** The *shelamim* fat-removal comparison appears again — the fourth time in this chapter (v10, v19 implied, v26, v31). The closing formula *kipper... veniselach lo* is identical to v26: the commoner receives the same complete forgiveness as the leader. The graduated procedure (bull vs. goat, inner vs. outer altar) does not produce graduated forgiveness. Everyone who brings the *chata't* receives the same result: full forgiveness.
- 32.** The second option for the commoner: a female lamb (*kevsah neqevah temimah*). Two choices — goat (v28) or lamb (v32) — provide economic flexibility. The female lamb is likely the least expensive sacrificial animal available, making the *chata't* accessible to the poorest Israelite. The system's insistence on two options at this level reveals its pastoral concern: no one should be unable to address their sin because they cannot afford the offering.
- 33.** The same procedure for the lamb as for the goat (v29): *semikhah* at the head, slaughter at the *olah* site. The repetition across both commoner options (goat v28-31, lamb v32-35) ensures clarity: regardless of which animal the commoner chooses, the ritual is identical. The choice of animal does not change the procedure, the blood application, or the outcome.
- 34.** Identical to v30 — outer altar horns and base. The final iteration of the blood-application procedure in the chapter. Across all four categories, the blood goes to only two possible destinations: the inner sanctuary (priest and congregation) or the outer altar (leader and commoner). This binary distinction is the structural backbone of the *chata't* system.

35. The chapter's final verse delivers the same verdict as v20, v26, and v31: kipper... veniselach lo — atonement and forgiveness. Four categories, four procedures, one outcome. The repetition of this formula across all four sections is the chapter's theological thesis: regardless of status (priest, congregation, leader, commoner), regardless of animal (bull, male goat, female goat, female lamb), the chata't accomplishes the same thing — purification of the sanctuary and forgiveness for the offerer. Access to forgiveness is as universal as human sin.

5

Summary: *Specific cases requiring the purification offering are listed: failure to testify, unintentional contact with impurity, and rash oaths. A three-tier economic system accommodates all income levels -- sheep, birds, or even flour. The chapter then introduces the guilt offering (asham) for trespass against sacred property and uncertain guilt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most radical provision in the entire sacrificial system: a flour offering (v11) can serve as a purification offering, with no animal blood at all. The system's insistence on accessibility reaches its logical extreme -- no one is too poor to receive forgiveness. Whether the offering is a sheep, two birds, or a handful of flour, the verdict is identical: veniselach lo ("and he shall be forgiven").*

Translation Friction: *The verb hitvaddah ("confess," v5) is reflexive -- confession is something done to oneself as much as before God. We preserved the specificity: asher chata aleha ("the thing in which they sinned") requires naming the failure, not offering a general confession. The overlap between chata't and asham terminology in v6 (where ashamo appears but a chata't is prescribed) shows these categories are closely related, and we noted this without forcing a false clarity.*

Connections: *The rash oath case (v4) connects to Judg 11:30-35 (Jephthah's vow) and Matt 5:33-37 (Jesus on oaths). The graduated economic system (sheep/birds/flour) parallels the olah's three tiers in ch 1. The asham's requirement of restitution plus twenty percent (v16) anticipates Zacchaeus's fourfold restoration (Luke 19:8).*

¹If a person sins by hearing a public adjuration and, though able to testify as a witness to what was seen or known, fails to come forward — that person bears the guilt. ²Or if a person touches anything ritually impure — whether the carcass of an impure wild animal, an impure domestic animal, or an impure swarming creature — and it escapes their awareness, they are impure and bear guilt. ³Or if a person touches human impurity — whatever form of impurity can make a person ritually unfit — and it escapes their awareness, then when they become aware of it, they bear guilt. ⁴Or if a person swears rashly — speaking carelessly with their lips, whether to do harm or to do good, whatever kind of rash oath a person might utter — and it escapes their awareness, then when they become aware of it, they bear guilt for any of these. ⁵When a person incurs guilt for any of these, they must confess the specific sin committed. ⁶The person shall bring a guilt offering to the LORD for the sin committed — a female from the flock, either a lamb or a goat — as a purification offering. The priest shall make atonement for the sin. ⁷If the person cannot afford a sheep, they shall bring as their guilt offering for the sin committed two turtledoves or two young pigeons to the LORD — one as a purification offering and one as a burnt offering. ⁸He shall bring them to the priest, who shall present the purification offering first, pinching its head at the neck without severing it completely. ⁹He shall sprinkle some of the blood of the purification offering against the side of the altar, and the remaining blood shall be drained at the base of the altar. It is a purification offering. ¹⁰The second bird he shall prepare as a burnt offering according to the standard procedure. The priest shall make atonement for the sin committed, and the person shall be forgiven. ¹¹If the person cannot afford even two turtledoves or two young pigeons, the one who sinned shall bring as an offering a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a purification offering. No oil shall be placed on it, and no frankincense shall be placed on it, because it is a purification offering. ¹²The person shall bring it to the priest, and the priest shall scoop out a handful as the memorial portion and turn it into smoke on the altar among the fire offerings to the LORD. It is a purification offering. ¹³The priest shall make atonement for the sin committed in any of these cases, and the person shall be forgiven. The remainder shall belong to the priest, as with the grain offering. ¹⁴The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁵If a person commits a violation — sinning unintentionally against any of the LORD's holy things — the person shall bring as a guilt offering to the LORD an unblemished ram from the flock, valued in silver shekels by the sanctuary standard, as a guilt offering. ¹⁶The

person must make restitution for the wrong done against the holy thing: restore its full value plus an additional fifth, and give it to the priest. The priest shall make atonement with the ram of the guilt offering, and the person shall be forgiven. ¹⁷If a person sins by doing what is forbidden by any of the LORD's commandments — even without knowing it — that person is guilty and bears the consequence. ¹⁸The person shall bring an unblemished ram from the flock, at the assessed value, to the priest as a guilt offering. The priest shall make atonement for the unintentional error committed unknowingly, and the person shall be forgiven. ¹⁹It is a guilt offering — the person has certainly incurred guilt before the LORD. ²⁰The LORD spoke to Moses: ²¹If a person sins and commits a violation against the LORD by deceiving a neighbor regarding a deposit, a pledge, a robbery, or by defrauding a neighbor, ²²or finds lost property and lies about it, or swears falsely about any matter in which a person may sin — ²³when the person has sinned and incurred guilt, they must return what was stolen, what was extorted, the deposit that was entrusted, the lost property that was found, ²⁴or anything about which a false oath was sworn. Full restitution must be made, plus an additional fifth of the value, paid to the rightful owner on the day the guilt offering is presented. ²⁵The person shall bring a guilt offering to the LORD — an unblemished ram from the flock, at the assessed value — to the priest as a guilt offering. ²⁶The priest shall make atonement for the person before the LORD, and the person shall be forgiven — for any of these things that may be done, incurring guilt thereby."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Chapter 5 opens with specific cases requiring the *chata't* (purification offering), bridging from the general principle of chapter 4 to particular situations. The first case: failure to testify. The *qol alah* ('voice of an oath/adjunction') is a public call for witnesses — anyone who has relevant information is obligated to speak. Withholding testimony when adjured is itself a sin. The phrase *nasa avono* ('bears his iniquity') means the guilt remains on the person until addressed through sacrifice.
2. The second case: unintentional contact with impurity. Three categories of carcass are listed — wild animals (*chayyah*), domestic animals (*behemah*), and swarming creatures (*sherets*) — covering the full range of dead-animal impurity. The phrase *ne'elam mimmennu* ('it was hidden from him') specifies that the person did not realize they had contacted impurity. The sin is not the contact itself (which may be unavoidable) but the failure to purify before approaching sacred space. Awareness triggers the obligation.
3. The third case: contact with *tum'at adam* ('human impurity') — bodily discharges, skin conditions, or corpse contamination (see chs 12-15 for the full catalog). The key phrase: *vehu yada ve'ashem* ('when he knows, he is guilty'). Knowledge transforms the situation: ignorance does not exempt from impurity, but awareness activates the obligation to seek purification. The sacrificial system handles the transition from unknowing impurity to known guilt.
4. The fourth case: the rash oath (*levatei bisefatayim* — 'to blurt out with the lips'). The verb *bata* implies hasty, unconsidered speech. The oath may be to do harm or good — the content is less important than the carelessness. A person who makes a vow without thinking and then fails to keep it has committed a sin of speech that requires purification. This case addresses the gap between words and follow-through: promises made to God (or in God's name) cannot be treated lightly.
5. Confession (*hitvaddah* — from *yadah*, 'to acknowledge, to throw, to confess') is required before the sacrifice can proceed. This is the only place in the *chata't* legislation where verbal confession is explicitly mandated. The confession is specific: *asher chata aleha* ('the thing in which they sinned'). The worshipper must name the failure. Sacrifice without confession is incomplete — the internal acknowledgment must accompany the external ritual. The reflexive form *hitvaddah* implies that confession is something one does to oneself as much as before God.
6. The term *ashamo* ('his guilt/guilt-payment') appears here but the actual offering prescribed is a *chata't* (purification offering), not an *asham* (guilt offering) — a terminological overlap that shows the two categories are closely related. The animals (female lamb or goat) match the commoner's *chata't* of 4:28-35. The confession of v5 followed by the sacrifice of v6 establishes the pattern: acknowledge, then offer. The priest mediates the atonement (*kipper*).
7. The first economic reduction: if a sheep is beyond the person's means (*lo taggia yado dei seh* — 'their hand does not reach the cost of a sheep'), two birds substitute. One bird serves as the *chata't* (purification) and the other as an *olah* (burnt offering). The combination — purification plus devotion — mirrors the full offering sequence but at a fraction of the cost. The system continues to accommodate poverty without reducing the theological completeness of the sacrifice.
8. The purification offering comes first — cleansing before devotion, the same order as in 4:14-16. The priest performs the *malaq* ('pinching off') at the nape of the neck, leaving the head attached. The technique matches 1:15 for the bird *olah*. The 'not severing completely' (*lo yavdil*) keeps the bird whole for the blood-draining procedure that follows.
9. The bird's blood is sprinkled (*hizzah*) against the altar wall and the remainder drained (*yimmatseh*) at the base — the same procedure as 1:15 for the bird *olah*. The outer altar receives the blood, consistent with the commoner's *chata't* (4:30, 34). The closing identification *chattat hu* ('it is a purification offering') classifies the sacrifice formally.

10. The second bird becomes the olah ('burnt offering, according to the procedure' — referring to the bird olah of 1:14-17). The two birds together accomplish what the single sheep of v6 accomplishes: purification and devotion. The closing formula — kipper... veniselach lo — delivers the same verdict as 4:20, 26, 31, 35: full forgiveness. The bird offering produces the same result as the sheep offering; economic status does not affect the quality of forgiveness.
11. The second economic reduction — and the most remarkable provision in the entire sacrificial system: a flour offering can serve as a chata't. No animal blood at all. A tenth of an ephah (roughly two quarts of flour) is the absolute minimum. The prohibitions against oil and frankincense distinguish this from the regular minchah (grain offering, ch 2) — there is no celebration here, no fragrant enhancement. This is bare-minimum atonement for the poorest person imaginable. The system's insistence on accessibility reaches its logical extreme: no one is too poor to receive forgiveness.
12. The azkarah procedure from the minchah (2:2, 9) is applied to the flour chata't — a handful is burned as the memorial portion. The flour offering follows the minchah's mechanics but serves the chata't's purpose: purification. This hybrid offering demonstrates that the categories, while distinct, share a common sacrificial grammar. The classification chattat hi ('it is a purification offering') confirms that despite using grain instead of blood, the offering accomplishes the chata't's function.
13. The kipper... veniselach formula again — identical outcome whether the offering was a sheep (v6), birds (v10), or flour (v13). Three economic tiers, one result: forgiveness. The remainder goes to the priest kamminchah ('as with the grain offering,' per 2:3, 10). This closing verse is the theological climax of the graduated system: God's forgiveness is not correlated with the value of the offering. The person who brings flour receives exactly the same forgiveness as the person who brings a sheep.
14. A new divine speech formula introduces the asham — the guilt offering (v14-19). While the preceding section dealt with the chata't applied to specific cases, the asham addresses trespass against sacred property (v15-16) and uncertain guilt (v17-19). The asham is the fifth and final offering type, completing the sacrificial system that began in chapter 1.
15. The verb ma'al ('to act unfaithfully, to violate, to trespass') is a covenant-betrayal term — it describes breach of trust against sacred things. The miqdeshei YHWH ('holy things of the LORD') include tithes, firstfruits, dedicated offerings, and anything consecrated to God. Misappropriating sacred property — eating what belongs to the priests, withholding tithes, using dedicated items for personal use — triggers the asham. The animal is specified: an unblemished ram (ayil), valued by the sanctuary weight standard (sheqel haqqodesh). The monetary valuation is distinctive — the asham alone among the five offerings involves a financial assessment.
16. The asham requires two components: the ram sacrifice and financial restitution. The offender must repay the full value of what was misappropriated plus a twenty-percent surcharge (chamishito — 'its fifth'). The restitution goes to the priest as the guardian of sacred property. Only after both the payment and the sacrifice are complete does the kipper... veniselach formula apply. The asham insists that forgiveness includes making things right — repentance without restitution is incomplete.
17. The 'doubtful guilt' asham: the person may have sinned but is not certain. The phrase velo yada ('did not know') combined with ve'ashem ('and is guilty') creates a category of suspected but unconfirmed violation. Guilt exists even when the sinner is unaware — the objective reality of the transgression matters, not just the subjective awareness. This provision addresses the anxiety of uncertainty: what if I violated a commandment without realizing it? The asham provides a remedy.
18. The same ram and valuation as v15, but without the restitution-plus-twenty-percent requirement (since in this case, no specific sacred property was misappropriated). The priest atones for the shiggato asher shagag — 'the inadvertence by which he erred.' The doubling of the root sh-g-g emphasizes the unintentional nature. The formula veniselach lo assures the worshipper: even uncertainty about one's guilt can be resolved through the proper offering.
19. The emphatic doubling asham asham ('certainly guilty, truly guilty') — the infinitive absolute intensifying the finite verb — insists that the guilt is real even when the sinner was unaware. The Hebrew uses the root a-sh-m three times in this brief verse (asham hu, asham asham), hammering the point: guilt before God is an objective reality, not merely a subjective feeling. The system addresses this reality with a concrete remedy rather than leaving the person in anxious uncertainty.
20. A new speech formula introduces the final section of the asham legislation: cases of fraud and dishonesty between people (v20-26, which KJV numbers as 6:1-7). This section is significant because it extends the asham from sacred-property trespass (v15-16) to interpersonal wrongs — deception, theft, robbery, and fraud. Sins against a neighbor are simultaneously sins against God (v21: 'committed a violation against the LORD').
21. The critical theological move: ma'alah ma'al baYHWH ('committed a violation against the LORD') is applied to crimes against a neighbor — deception about deposits (piqqadon), pledges (tesumet yad), robbery (gazel), and fraud (ashaq). To cheat your neighbor is to violate God. The interpersonal and the divine are inseparable in the covenant framework. Four categories of dishonesty are listed, covering the full range of property-related deception in ancient Israelite society.
22. A fifth category is added: finding lost property (avedah) and lying about it — keeping what belongs to another while denying possession. The compounding offense is swearing falsely (nishba al-shaqr) — invoking God's name to support the lie. This layers sin upon sin: theft, deception, and false oath. The verse concludes with a comprehensive clause: 'any matter in which a person may sin' — the list is illustrative, not exhaustive.
23. Restitution is mandatory and specific: each item must be returned to its rightful owner. The list restates the categories of v21-22 in reverse order, creating a chiasmic structure that frames the offense and its remedy. The asham refuses to treat sin abstractly — the stolen goods, the extorted funds, the held deposit, the found property must all go back. Forgiveness without restitution is not available in this system.

24. The same twenty-percent surcharge (*chamishitav* — 'its fifth') from v16 applies to interpersonal wrongs. Restitution is not merely returning what was taken — it requires compensation for the wrong itself. The payment must be made *beyom ashmato* ('on the day of his guilt offering') — simultaneously with the sacrifice. The financial and the spiritual are bound together; one cannot offer a ram to God while still holding stolen property. The *asham* demands material integrity alongside ritual compliance.
25. The same ram specification as v15 and v18 — the *asham* animal is always a ram (*ayil*), always unblemished, always assessed by the sanctuary standard. The consistency across all three *asham* cases (sacred trespass v15, doubtful guilt v17, interpersonal fraud v21) means the same offering addresses offenses against God's holy things and offenses against one's neighbor. The sacrifice does not change; what changes is the addition of restitution for the identifiable wrong.
26. The final verse of the *asham* legislation delivers the now-familiar *kipper... veniselach* formula: atonement and forgiveness. The comprehensive clause — 'for any of these things' (*al-achat mikkol asher-ya'aseh le'ashmah bah*) — covers all the cases presented: sacred trespass, doubtful guilt, robbery, fraud, false oaths, and found property. The five-offering system is now complete. Leviticus 1-5 has provided a comprehensive sacrificial apparatus covering devotion (*olah*), gift (*minchah*), fellowship (*shelamim*), purification (*chata't*), and reparation (*asham*). Together they answer every dimension of the question: how does a holy God dwell among an unholy people?

6

Summary: *God shifts the audience from Israel to the priests, giving instructions for handling the burnt offering's overnight fire, the grain offering's priestly portions, the high priest's daily grain offering, and the purification offering's handling. The perpetual altar fire must never go out.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command *esh tamid* ("perpetual fire," v6) is one of Leviticus's most powerful symbols -- as long as the flame burns, God is ready to receive offerings. The high priest's daily *minchah* (v13-16) is entirely burned, unlike the people's *minchah*. Even the mediator's offering goes wholly to God. The priestly garment change for ash removal (v3-4) demonstrates that there is no secular work in the tabernacle.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered *torat ha'olah* (v2) as "instruction for the burnt offering" rather than "law of the burnt offering" because *torah* here means specific procedural guidance, not legislation in the modern sense. The word *moqдах* ("hearth," v2) required care -- it is the specific section of the altar surface where the fire burns, not the altar itself. The phrase *babboqer babboqer* ("every morning, every morning," v5) doubles for emphasis, and we rendered it "every morning" while noting the intensification.*

Connections: *The perpetual fire originates when God's fire consumes the first offering in Lev 9:24. The *ner tamid* tradition in synagogues descends from this command. The priestly linen garments (v3) foreshadow the high priest's humble *Yom Kippur* dress (ch 16). The ash removal to a "clean place" outside camp (v4) parallels the disposal of the priestly *chata't* carcass (4:12).*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²Command Aaron and his sons: This is the instruction for the burnt offering — the burnt offering that stays on the altar hearth all night until morning, with the altar fire kept burning on it. ³The priest shall dress in his linen tunic, with linen undergarments against his body, and remove the ashes left when the fire has consumed the burnt offering on the altar. He shall place them beside the altar. ⁴Then he shall change out of those garments, put on other clothes, and carry the ashes outside the camp to a ritually clean place. ⁵The fire on the altar must be kept burning — it must not go out. The priest shall feed it with wood every morning, arrange the burnt offering on it, and turn the fat of the peace offerings into smoke on it. ⁶A perpetual fire shall be kept burning on the altar — it must never go out. ⁷This is the instruction for the grain offering: Aaron's sons shall present it before the LORD, in front of the altar. ⁸The priest shall scoop out a handful of the fine flour of the grain offering with its oil, along with all the frankincense on the grain offering, and turn the memorial portion into smoke on the altar — a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ⁹The remainder Aaron and his sons shall eat. It must be eaten unleavened in a holy place — in the courtyard of the tent of meeting they shall eat it. ¹⁰It must not be baked with leaven. I have given it as their portion from My fire offerings. It is most holy, like the purification offering and the guilt offering. ¹¹Every male among Aaron's descendants may eat of it — a permanent statute for all your generations from the fire offerings of the LORD. Whatever touches them becomes holy. ¹²The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹³"This is the offering that Aaron and his sons shall present to the LORD on the day of his anointing: a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a regular grain

offering — half in the morning and half in the evening. ¹⁴It shall be prepared on a griddle with oil — well-mixed. Bring it in broken pieces as a grain offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁵The priest who is anointed from among his sons to succeed him shall prepare it — a permanent statute to the LORD. It shall be entirely turned to smoke. ¹⁶Every grain offering of a priest shall be entirely burned — it must not be eaten. ¹⁷The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁸"Speak to Aaron and his sons: This is the instruction for the purification offering. The purification offering must be slaughtered at the same place where the burnt offering is slaughtered, before the LORD. It is most holy. ¹⁹The priest who performs the purification offering shall eat it. It must be eaten in a holy place — in the courtyard of the tent of meeting. ²⁰Whatever touches its flesh becomes holy. If any of its blood is spattered on a garment, the stained portion must be washed in a holy place. ²¹A clay vessel in which it is boiled must be broken. If it is boiled in a bronze vessel, the vessel must be scoured and rinsed with water. ²²Every male among the priests may eat of it. It is most holy. ²³But any purification offering whose blood is brought into the tent of meeting to make atonement in the holy place must not be eaten — it must be burned in fire."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This speech formula opens the second half of the offering legislation: chapters 1-5 described the procedures from the worshipper's perspective; chapters 6-7 address the priests directly. The shift in audience (from Israel to Aaron and his sons, v2) changes the focus from 'how to bring an offering' to 'how to handle an offering.' The priestly instructions add details about what happens to the offerings after the worshipper's part is complete.
2. The torat ha'olah ('instruction for the burnt offering') opens the priestly manual. The key detail: the olah remains on the altar hearth (moqdah) through the entire night until morning. The fire never goes out — ve'esh hamizbeach tuqad bo ('the fire of the altar shall be kept burning in it'). This perpetual fire becomes the defining feature of the altar and will be emphasized again in v5-6. The overnight burning ensures complete consumption: nothing remains of the olah by dawn.
3. The priest's morning duty begins with changing into specific garments — mido bad ('his linen tunic') and mikhnesei-bad ('linen undergarments'). Linen (bad) is the priestly fabric, distinguished from wool. The ash removal (herim et-haddeshen) is the first priestly act of the day: clearing yesterday's residue to prepare for today's offerings. Even this mundane task requires sacred vestments — there is no 'secular' work in the tabernacle.
4. A garment change is required between the altar-side ash placement (v3) and the removal of ashes outside the camp. The sacred linen worn for altar service must not be worn for the journey outside — the priestly garments belong to the sanctuary, not to the road. The ashes go to a maqom tahor ('clean place'), the same designated site used for burning the priestly chata't carcass (4:12). The careful handling of ashes — sacred residue from sacred offerings — demonstrates that holiness persists even in waste.
5. The emphatic prohibition: lo tikhbeh ('it must not go out'). The perpetual fire is one of the most powerful symbols in the Levitical system — as long as the flame burns, God is ready to receive offerings. An extinguished altar fire would signal a broken relationship. The daily rhythm is specified: wood every morning (babboqer babboqer — the doubling emphasizes regularity), then the olah, then the shelamim fat. The altar is never idle; it is always active, always receiving.
6. The summary statement — esh tamid ('perpetual fire') — elevates the practical instruction of v5 to a permanent principle. Tamid ('continual, perpetual') is the word used for the daily offerings (tamid), the perpetual bread (lechem hattamid), and the eternal lamp (ner tamid). The perpetual fire is the altar's heartbeat: it signifies God's uninterrupted readiness to receive Israel's worship. This verse is the origin of the ner tamid ('eternal light') tradition in synagogues.
7. The torat hamminchah ('instruction for the grain offering') begins the priestly perspective on the second offering. The shift from worshipper instructions (ch 2) to priestly instructions matters: chapter 2 told the worshipper how to prepare the minchah; this section tells the priest how to handle it. 'Before the LORD, in front of the altar' (lifnei YHWH, el-penei hamizbeach) places the presentation at the boundary between human and divine space.
8. The azkarah ('memorial portion') procedure from 2:2 restated from the priest's perspective. The priest takes bequmtso ('with his handful') — the measured scoop that represents the whole offering before God. All the frankincense goes up (not just a portion), but only a handful of the flour and oil. The remainder (v9-10) belongs to the priests. The azkarah is God's portion; the notereth is the priesthood's sustenance.
9. Two restrictions govern the priestly consumption: it must be eaten matzot ('unleavened' — no fermentation may touch what has been part of a holy offering) and it must be eaten bemaqom qadosh ('in a holy place' — specifically the courtyard of the tent of meeting). The priestly meal from the minchah is itself a sacred act: what the priests eat from God's altar is holy food consumed in holy space. Eating is not merely practical sustenance but liturgical participation.
10. God speaks in the first person — 'I have given it as their portion' (chelqam natatti otah) — making the priestly food allocation a direct divine grant, not a human arrangement. The classification qodesh qodashim ('most holy') places the minchah remainder in the same category as the chata't and asham. Three offerings share the 'most holy' designation: minchah, chata't, and asham. The shelamim is 'holy' (qodesh) but not 'most holy' — the distinction determines where the food may be eaten and by whom.

11. The priestly minchah portion is restricted to males (kol-zakhar bivenei Aharon). The closing statement is remarkable: kol asher yigga bahem yiqdash ('whatever touches them becomes holy'). Holiness is contagious — the sacred food transmits its holiness to anything it contacts. This is why the eating must occur in the courtyard: holiness spreading uncontrolled through the camp would be dangerous. The sacred precinct contains and manages holiness.
12. A new speech formula introduces the high priest's personal grain offering (v12-16) — a daily minchah distinct from the regular grain offerings brought by worshippers. This offering is mandatory, not voluntary, and it is entirely burned — the high priest receives no portion back. Even the mediator between God and Israel must offer his own sacrifice daily.
13. The high priest's daily minchah is split between morning and evening (machatstiah babboqer umachatstiah ba'arev), bracketing the day with personal offering. A tenth of an ephah (the same amount as the poorest person's chata't in 5:11) — the high priest's daily offering is no more elaborate than the poorest Israelite's sin offering. The quantity is identical; the frequency is different. The high priest offers daily what the commoner offers occasionally.
14. The preparation method: griddle-cooked (machavat) with oil, then murbeket ('well-soaked, well-mixed' — a thorough saturation with oil). The offering is broken into pieces (pittim) before presentation, matching the procedure of the regular griddle minchah (2:6). The daily priestly offering follows the same form as the worshipper's offering — the priest is not exempt from the common worship pattern.
15. Two critical details: the obligation passes from one high priest to the next (hacohen hammashiach tachtav — 'the anointed priest in his place, from among his sons'), making it perpetual. And the offering is kalil toqtar ('entirely burned') — unlike the regular minchah where the priest eats the remainder, the priestly minchah is entirely consumed. The priest cannot benefit from his own offering. What he gives to God goes entirely to God. This prevents the priestly offering from becoming a circular transaction.
16. The principle generalized: kol-minchat kohen kalil tihyeh ('every priestly grain offering shall be entirely burned'). No priest may eat from his own grain offering. The rule ensures that the priestly offering is genuine sacrifice, not a loop back to the one who gave it. The priest gives to God completely — the offering ascends as smoke without returning as food. This establishes a principle of disinterested giving that underlies the entire priestly role.
17. A third speech formula in this chapter introduces the priestly instructions for the chata't (purification offering, v17-23). This section adds critical information not found in chapter 4: where the chata't must be eaten, and what happens to the blood and the vessel in which it is cooked. The chata't's holiness is so intense that it affects whatever it contacts.
18. The chata't shares its slaughter location with the olah — the north side of the altar (1:11). This spatial equivalence links purification to devotion: they occur in the same sacred space. The classification qodesh qodashim ('most holy') means the chata't meat must be eaten by priests in the sacred precinct — not taken home, not shared with family members outside the priesthood.
19. The officiating priest — the one who performs the blood ritual (hamchattei otah) — is the one who eats the meat. This is not a general priestly entitlement but a specific allocation to the mediating priest. The courtyard of the tent of meeting is the only permissible location, reinforcing that consuming the chata't is a sacred act, not a casual meal.
20. The chata't meat transmits holiness to whatever it contacts — kol asher yigga bivsarah yiqdash ('whatever touches its flesh becomes holy'). This is not beneficial consecration but dangerous holiness: an ordinary object that becomes holy must be handled within the sacred system or destroyed. Blood stains on garments must be washed in the sacred precinct — the holiness cannot leave the courtyard, even on clothing.
21. Two vessel types, two treatments: clay absorbs the holiness permanently and must be destroyed (yishaver — 'shall be broken'); bronze can be scoured clean (muraq veshuttaf — 'scoured and rinsed') because metal is non-porous. The distinction reflects practical ancient knowledge about the properties of materials, but the theological logic is primary: holiness that has soaked into a vessel must be either removed (bronze) or the vessel must be eliminated (clay). Nothing that has absorbed the chata't's holiness may return to common use unsanctified.
22. The chata't meat is restricted to male priests, the same restriction as the minchah remainder (v11). The reiteration of qodesh qodashim confirms the chata't's most-holy status. The priestly consumption of the chata't is not merely sustenance — the priest absorbs the holiness of the offering, serving as a human vessel for sacred substance. Eating the chata't is itself a priestly act of mediation.
23. The critical exception: when the chata't blood goes inside the tent (the priestly and communal chata't of 4:3-21), the meat is not eaten but burned outside the camp. The blood cannot go both inward (into the sanctuary) and downward (into the priest's stomach) — the two destinations are mutually exclusive. This rule explains why the priestly and communal chata't carcasses are burned outside (4:12, 21): the blood's entry into the inner sanctuary makes the meat too holy for consumption. The chapter closes with the foundational principle of the chata't system: the deeper the blood penetrates the sanctuary, the more completely the offering must be destroyed.

7

Summary: *Priestly instructions conclude with the guilt offering procedure, priestly allotments for each offering type, and detailed regulations for the peace offering's three subtypes: thanksgiving, vow, and freewill. The chapter ends with a summary of the entire five-offering system and the permanent prohibition against eating fat and blood.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The todah ("thanksgiving," v12) emerges as the highest form of the peace offering -- offered from pure gratitude, not obligation or need. Rabbinic tradition taught that in the messianic age all offerings would cease except the todah. The egalitarian principle ish ke'achiv ("each man like his brother," v10) governs priestly food distribution, preventing hierarchy from determining who eats.*

Translation Friction: *We faced the todah's rich semantic range: from yadah ("to confess, to praise, to give thanks"), the todah is simultaneously an offering and a declaration. The word piggul ("rejected," v18) describes meat kept past its permitted time -- a term of ritual revulsion we rendered carefully to distinguish ritual unfitness from moral disgust. The closing summary (v37-38) uses the technical term torah for each offering type, confirming that "instruction" rather than "law" best captures the Hebrew sense.*

Connections: *The todah connects to the Psalms's theology of thanksgiving (Ps 50:14, 23; 100:1). The three-day consumption limit for peace offerings reappears in Lev 19:5-8. The permanent fat-and-blood prohibition (v22-27) restates Gen 9:4 and Lev 3:17, and Acts 15:20 carries the blood prohibition into the early church.*

¹This is the instruction for the guilt offering — it is most holy. ²The guilt offering shall be slaughtered at the same place the burnt offering is slaughtered. Its blood shall be dashed against the sides of the altar. ³All its fat shall be presented: the fat tail, the fat covering the entrails, ⁴the two kidneys and the fat on them near the loins, and the lobe of the liver — he shall remove it along with the kidneys. ⁵The priest shall turn them into smoke on the altar — a fire offering to the LORD. It is a guilt offering. ⁶Every male among the priests may eat of it. It must be eaten in a holy place — it is most holy. ⁷The purification offering and the guilt offering share one instruction: the priest who performs the atonement with it shall have it. ⁸The priest who presents a person's burnt offering — the hide of that burnt offering belongs to the priest who presented it. ⁹Every grain offering baked in an oven, prepared in a deep pan, or made on a griddle belongs to the priest who presents it. ¹⁰But every grain offering — whether mixed with oil or dry — shall belong to all of Aaron's sons equally, one as much as another. ¹¹This is the instruction for the sacrifice of peace offerings that may be presented to the LORD. ¹²If it is offered as a thanksgiving, then along with the thanksgiving sacrifice one shall present unleavened loaves mixed with oil, unleavened wafers spread with oil, and loaves of fine flour well-mixed with oil. ¹³Along with loaves of leavened bread, the person shall present the offering with the thanksgiving peace offering. ¹⁴From each type of bread one piece shall be presented as a contribution to the LORD. It belongs to the priest who dashes the blood of the peace offerings. ¹⁵The meat of the thanksgiving peace offering must be eaten on the day it is offered. None of it may be left until morning. ¹⁶If the sacrifice is a vow or a freewill offering, it shall be eaten on the day it is offered, and what remains may also be eaten the next day. ¹⁷Whatever meat remains on the third day must be burned in fire. ¹⁸If any of the meat of the peace offering is eaten on the third day, it will not be accepted. It will not be credited to the one who offered it — it becomes piggul, and the person who eats it bears the guilt. ¹⁹Meat that touches anything ritually impure must not be eaten — it shall be burned in fire. As for the meat that remains pure, any ritually clean person may eat it. ²⁰But any person who eats meat from the LORD's peace offering while in a state of ritual impurity — that person shall be cut off from their people. ²¹If a person touches anything ritually impure — human impurity, an impure animal, or any impure detestable creature — and then eats meat from the LORD's peace offering, that person shall be cut off from their people. ²²The LORD spoke to Moses: ²³"Speak to the Israelites: You must not eat the fat of an ox, a sheep, or a goat. ²⁴The fat of an animal that dies naturally or is torn by predators may be used for any purpose, but you must never eat it. ²⁵Anyone who eats the fat of an animal from which fire offerings are made to the LORD — that person shall be cut off from their people. ²⁶You must not consume any blood — whether of bird or animal — wherever

you dwell. ²⁷Any person who consumes any blood at all shall be cut off from their people. ²⁸The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁹"Speak to the Israelites: The one who presents a peace offering to the LORD shall bring the offering to the LORD from the peace offering sacrifice. ³⁰With their own hands they shall bring the LORD's fire offerings — the fat together with the breast. The breast shall be elevated as a wave offering before the LORD. ³¹The priest shall turn the fat into smoke on the altar, but the breast shall belong to Aaron and his sons. ³²The right thigh you shall give to the priest as a contribution from your peace offerings. ³³The son of Aaron who presents the blood and the fat of the peace offerings — the right thigh shall be his portion. ³⁴For the breast of the wave offering and the thigh of the contribution I have taken from the Israelites, from their peace offerings, and have given them to Aaron the priest and his sons as a permanent allotment from the Israelites." ³⁵This is the consecration portion of Aaron and his sons from the LORD's fire offerings, assigned on the day they were presented to serve the LORD as priests — ³⁶which the LORD commanded to be given to them by the Israelites, from the day of their anointing — a permanent statute for all their generations. ³⁷This is the instruction for the burnt offering, the grain offering, the purification offering, the guilt offering, the ordination offering, and the sacrifice of peace offerings — ³⁸which the LORD commanded Moses on Mount Sinai, on the day He commanded the Israelites to present their offerings to the LORD, in the wilderness of Sinai.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The torat ha'asham ('instruction for the guilt offering') opens the priestly manual for the fifth offering. The classification qodesh qodashim ('most holy') places the asham in the same category as the chata't and the minchah remainder — priestly food eaten only in sacred space. Chapter 7 completes the priestly instructions begun in chapter 6: asham (v1-10), then the shelamim (v11-36), then a closing summary of the entire offering system (v37-38).
2. The asham shares its slaughter site with the olah — the north side of the altar (1:11). Like the olah and chata't, the blood is dashed (zaraq) against the altar on all sides. The consistent slaughter location across three offerings (olah, chata't, asham) creates a single zone of death in the sanctuary: the north side. The shelamim (v11-36) does not specify the north side, suggesting it may be slaughtered at the entrance more generally.
3. The fat portions follow the same pattern as the shelamim (3:3-4, 9) and chata't (4:8-9): the alyah (fat tail, when applicable), the chelev covering the internal organs. The fat always belongs to God — this principle, stated definitively in 3:16 ('all fat belongs to the LORD'), governs every offering that involves animal fat.
4. The kidney-liver-lobe formula in its final appearance in the offering instructions. This fixed list — two kidneys, surrounding fat, liver lobe — has appeared identically in 3:4, 3:10, 3:15, 4:9. Its repetition across four chapters and five offering types makes it the most consistent element of the entire sacrificial system. The internal organs belong to God, always and without exception.
5. The fat goes to the altar; the identification asham hu ('it is a guilt offering') classifies the sacrifice. The asham fat procedure is identical to the shelamim and chata't — the same altar, the same fire, the same portions. What distinguishes the asham is not its altar procedure but its accompanying requirement of financial restitution (5:16, 24).
6. The same eating restrictions as the chata't (6:22) and minchah remainder (6:11): male priests only, in the sacred precinct. The three 'most holy' offerings (minchah, chata't, asham) share identical consumption rules. The shelamim (v11-36) will have broader rules — eaten in any clean place, by priestly families including women.
7. A unifying statement: kachata't ka'asham torah achat lahem ('one instruction for the chata't and the asham'). The two purification/reparation offerings follow the same priestly procedures. The officiating priest (hakkohen asher yekhapper-bo — 'the priest who atones with it') receives the meat as his portion. This personalizes the priestly allotment — the one who does the work of atonement receives the food.
8. The olah's single non-consumed element: the hide (or ha'olah). Since the olah is entirely burned on the altar, nothing else remains for the priest. The hide is the practical exception — leather is too valuable to destroy and cannot ascend as smoke. This provision creates a priestly income from the olah (hides were economically significant) while preserving the principle that the olah itself goes entirely to God.
9. The three cooking methods from chapter 2 (oven, deep pan, griddle) are listed as categories of priestly allotment. The prepared minchah — already cooked by the worshipper — goes to the officiating priest. This contrasts with v10, where the raw-flour minchah is shared among all priests.
10. The raw-flour minchah (whether oiled or dry) is divided equally among all the priests — ish ke'achiv ('each man like his brother'). The cooked minchah goes to the individual officiant (v9); the uncooked minchah is shared communally. The phrase ish ke'achiv establishes an egalitarian principle within the priesthood: for shared offerings, no priest receives more than another. Priestly hierarchy does not determine food allocation.
11. The longest section of chapter 7 (v11-36) covers the shelamim — the peace offering — in its priestly dimensions. Three subcategories are introduced: thanksgiving (todah, v12-15), vow (neder, v16), and freewill (nedavah, v16). The shelamim section is the most detailed because it is the only offering the worshipper eats — the rules governing its consumption must be precise to prevent the holy meat from becoming a source of contamination.

12. The todah ('thanksgiving offering') is the first subcategory of shelamim. It celebrates gratitude — typically offered after deliverance from danger, recovery from illness, or safe return from a journey. Three types of bread accompany it (matching the three forms of the minchah in ch 2): loaves mixed with oil, wafers brushed with oil, and soaked loaves. The todah became the most prominent of the shelamim subtypes in later Jewish theology — the rabbis taught that in the messianic age, all offerings would cease except the todah.
13. A surprising instruction: leavened bread (lechem chamets) accompanies the todah — despite the general prohibition on leaven in offerings (2:11). The leaven is not burned on the altar (per 2:12) but is part of the communal meal. Since the todah is eaten by the worshipper and guests, ordinary leavened bread — the everyday bread of the household — joins the sacred meal. The sacred and the ordinary sit at the same table in the todah.
14. One piece from each bread type (echad mikkol-qorban) is set aside as a terumah ('contribution') to the LORD — given to the officiating priest. The rest of the bread joins the meal. The priest who performed the blood-dashing (hazoreq et-dam hashelamim) receives this portion — connecting the priestly allocation directly to the priestly labor.
15. The todah has the strictest time limit: same-day consumption (beyom qorbano — 'on the day of its offering'). Nothing may remain overnight. This urgency has a practical effect: the worshipper must invite enough guests to consume the entire animal in a single day, making the todah an inherently communal celebration. You cannot offer a todah alone — gratitude demands company. The time limit also prevents the holy meat from decaying and becoming ritually dangerous.
16. The other two shelamim subcategories — neder ('vow offering,' fulfilling a promise to God) and nedavah ('freewill offering,' spontaneous generosity) — have a more generous time limit: two days instead of one. The extra day may reflect the different social dynamic: a todah is a celebration with invited guests (urgency), while a vow or freewill offering may be a more private act of devotion (less urgency for communal consumption).
17. The absolute limit: nothing survives to the third day. The ba'esh yissaref ('it shall be burned in fire') is destructive burning (saraph), not sacrificial burning (hiqtir). The meat that was holy on day one and still edible on day two becomes forbidden on day three. The transition from sacred food to forbidden waste illustrates Leviticus's fundamental insight: holiness is not a permanent property of objects but a status that requires proper handling within defined boundaries.
18. The consequence of third-day consumption is devastating: the entire offering is retroactively invalidated (lo yeratseh — 'it will not be accepted'). The sacrifice is not merely wasted; it becomes piggul — a technical term for ritually offensive, repulsive meat. The offerer receives no credit (lo yechashev lo — 'it will not be reckoned to him'), and the eater bears guilt (avonah tissa). Mishandling sacred food after the deadline transforms what was holy into what is abominable.
19. Two rules govern the shelamim meat: impure meat is destroyed (ba'esh yissaref); pure meat may be eaten by anyone who is tahor ('ritually clean'). The phrase kol-tahor yokhal basar ('every clean person may eat meat') is notable — unlike the 'most holy' offerings restricted to male priests, the shelamim meat is open to any ritually clean Israelite. The shelamim is the most democratic offering: its meat goes to the broadest possible audience.
20. The penalty for eating sacred meat while tamei ('ritually impure') is karet — being 'cut off' (nikhretah) from the community. Karet is the most severe penalty in the Levitical system short of death — it may mean excommunication, divine punishment, premature death, or loss of covenantal standing. The sacred meal demands that participants be ritually fit; combining holy meat with impure status violates the holiness spectrum at its most dangerous intersection.
21. Three sources of contact impurity are specified: human (tum'at adam — bodily discharges, corpse contact), animal (behemah teme'ah — impure animal carcass), and swarming creatures (kol-sheqets tamei). Eating the shelamim while contaminated by any of these sources triggers karet. The thoroughness of the list ensures no loophole — every category of impurity is covered. The sacred meal is a boundary: only the ritually fit may cross it.
22. A new speech formula introduces the universal fat and blood prohibitions (v22-27) that apply to all Israelites, not just priests. These prohibitions extend beyond the sacrificial context to all eating — even in ordinary meals, fat and blood are forbidden.
23. The fat prohibition covers the three domesticated animals used in sacrifice: ox (shor), sheep (kesev), and goat (ez). The chelev ('suet, organ fat') — the fat covering the internal organs, kidneys, and liver lobe — belongs to God (3:16). This prohibition applies even when the animal is not being offered as a sacrifice. An Israelite slaughtering a sheep for dinner must still remove and discard the chelev. God's claim on the fat is universal, not limited to the altar.
24. A practical concession: chelev from nevelah (an animal that died naturally) or terefah (an animal killed by predators) may be used for non-food purposes — lamp oil, leather treatment, tool lubrication — but never eaten. The distinction between 'use' (ye'aseh lekhol-melakhah) and 'eat' (akhol lo tokheluhu) acknowledges that fat is a valuable material while maintaining the absolute eating prohibition. Pragmatism and holiness coexist.
25. Eating chelev from sacrificial animals (the three species of v23) triggers karet — the same penalty as eating sacred meat while impure (v20-21). The fat prohibition is given the highest possible enforcement. The specific phrasing — 'from which fire offerings are made' (asher yaqriv mimmennah issheh) — emphasizes that these are the animals whose fat belongs to God's altar. To eat what belongs to God is a form of theft from the divine.
26. The blood prohibition is even broader than the fat prohibition: it covers all blood (kol-dam), from both birds (of) and animals (behemah), in every location (bekhol moshvoteikhem). The universality is total — no blood, anywhere, ever. This prohibition, repeated from 3:17, will receive its full theological explanation in 17:11: 'the life of the flesh is in the blood, and I have given it to you on the altar to make atonement for your lives.' Blood belongs to God because it carries life.

- 27.** The third karet penalty in this chapter (after v20 and v25): eating blood results in being cut off. Three absolute prohibitions — impure person eating sacred meat, eating chelev, eating blood — are all enforced by the same maximum penalty. These three boundaries define what it means to be an Israelite at the most fundamental dietary level: respect the sacred meal, reserve fat for God, reserve blood for God. Crossing any of these lines severs the person's place in the community.
- 28.** The final speech formula in the offering legislation introduces the priestly portions from the shelamim (v28-36): the wave breast and the contribution thigh. These verses specify the mechanics of the offering elevation and the permanent priestly allotment.
- 29.** The worshipper's responsibility: bring the specific portions designated for the LORD's altar and the priest's table. The repetition of 'peace offering' (zevach shelamav) three times in one verse emphasizes that the shelamim — unlike the olah or chata't — requires the worshipper's active participation beyond slaughter. The worshipper must personally bring the fat and the priestly portions forward.
- 30.** The emphasis on yadav teveinah ('his own hands shall bring') makes the worshipper's physical involvement explicit. The fat and the breast are brought together — the fat for the altar, the breast for the priest. The tenufah ('wave offering' — a ritual elevation or presentation before the LORD) is performed with the breast: it is shown to God before being given to the priest. God sees what He gives to the priest; the priestly portion passes through divine acknowledgment.
- 31.** The division is clean: fat to the altar (God's portion), breast to Aaron's family (priestly portion). The breast (chazeh) is a substantial cut — the chest portion of the animal. Combined with the thigh (v32-34), it provides meaningful sustenance for the priestly household. The shelamim thus achieves its fullest expression as a three-way meal: God (fat), priest (breast and thigh), worshipper (everything else).
- 32.** The shoq hayyamin ('right thigh') is the second priestly portion from the shelamim. The right side carries significance — the right hand is the hand of power and blessing. The terumah ('contribution') is the portion 'lifted up' or 'set apart' from the sacrifice for the priest. The breast goes through the tenufah (wave) before God; the thigh is given directly as terumah (contribution) to the priest.
- 33.** The right thigh goes specifically to the priest who performs the blood-and-fat ritual — the one who does the actual altar work. The word manah ('portion, allotment') is used for assigned shares. The system creates direct accountability: the priest who serves at the altar is the priest who eats from it. Service and sustenance are linked.
- 34.** God speaks in the first person: laqachti... va'etten ('I have taken... and I have given'). The priestly food allotment is a divine act, not a human arrangement. God takes the breast and thigh from Israel and gives them to the priesthood. The phrase choq-olam me'et benei Yisra'el ('a permanent allotment from the Israelites') makes this a permanent covenant provision — the priestly portion is guaranteed for all generations.
- 35.** The word mishchat ('anointing portion, consecration allotment') connects the priestly food rights to their original anointing and consecration. The allocation was established beyom hiqriv otam ('on the day he presented them') — from the very beginning of the priesthood, God designated their food supply. The priestly portion is not a later addition but an integral part of the original priestly institution.
- 36.** The phrase chuqkat olam ledorotam ('a permanent statute for their generations') seals the priestly allotment as perpetual law. The double temporal framing — 'from the day of their anointing' (past) and 'for all their generations' (future) — makes the provision both historically grounded and permanently binding.
- 37.** The grand summary: zot hattorah ('this is the instruction') covers all six offering categories — the five standard offerings (olah, minchah, chata't, asham, shelamim) plus the millu'im ('ordination offering' — the consecration sacrifice for priests, described in ch 8-9). The list follows the order of presentation: olah first (ch 1), then minchah (ch 2), chata't (ch 4), asham (ch 5), millu'im (ch 8), and shelamim last (ch 3/7). The sacrificial system is now legislatively complete.
- 38.** The closing verse anchors the entire offering system in its Sinai origin: asher tsivvah YHWH et-Mosheh behar Sinai ('which the LORD commanded Moses on Mount Sinai'). The sacrificial system is not a human invention but a divine gift, delivered at the same mountain where the covenant was cut and the law was given. The phrase bemidbar Sinai ('in the wilderness of Sinai') places the legislation in its historical moment — Israel in the desert, between Egypt and Canaan, learning how to live with a holy God in their midst. Leviticus 1-7 is now complete: seven chapters, five offerings, one comprehensive system for approaching the God who dwells among His people.

8

Summary: Moses ordains Aaron and his sons as priests before the entire congregation, carrying out the instructions of Exodus 29. He washes, vests, anoints, and offers a sin offering, burnt offering, and ordination ram. Blood is placed on Aaron's right ear, thumb, and big toe.

What Makes This Remarkable: Moses serves as the officiating priest -- the only time he fills this role -- because Aaron cannot consecrate himself. The sevenfold refrain "as the LORD commanded" (vv 4, 9, 13, 17, 21, 29, 36) structures the chapter as a liturgy of exact obedience, echoing the sevenfold creation pattern. Blood on the ear, thumb, and toe consecrates the priest's hearing, work, and walk.

Translation Friction: The phrase millu'im ("ordination," literally "filling of the hands") describes the installation by filling the priests' hands with offering portions. We rendered it "ordination" for clarity while noting in the text that the Hebrew idiom means empowerment through what is placed in one's hands. The anointing oil (shemen hammishchah) is the specially formulated blend of Exodus 30:22-33, and we marked its sacred exclusivity.

Connections: The chapter fulfills Exodus 29 point by point. The public ceremony before the congregation parallels the public commissioning of Joshua (Num 27:18-23). The blood application to ear, thumb, and toe reappears in the purification of the healed leper (Lev 14:14), linking priestly consecration to restoration from impurity.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: ²Take Aaron and his sons along with him, the vestments, the anointing oil, the bull for the sin offering, the two rams, and the basket of unleavened bread. ³Assemble the entire congregation at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ⁴Moses did as the LORD commanded him, and the congregation assembled at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ⁵Moses said to the congregation, 'This is what the LORD has commanded to be done.' ⁶Moses brought Aaron and his sons forward and washed them with water. ⁷He placed the tunic on him, fastened the sash around him, dressed him in the robe, placed the ephod on him, tied the decorated band of the ephod around him, and secured it on him. ⁸He placed the breastpiece on him, and he put the Urim and the Thummim into the breastpiece. ⁹He set the turban on his head, and on the turban, on its front, he placed the gold plate — the holy crown — as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹⁰Moses took the anointing oil and anointed the tabernacle and everything in it, consecrating them. ¹¹He sprinkled some of it on the altar seven times and anointed the altar and all its utensils, and the basin and its stand, to consecrate them. ¹²He poured the anointing oil on Aaron's head and anointed him, consecrating him. ¹³Moses brought Aaron's sons forward, dressed them in tunics, fastened sashes around them, and bound caps on them, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹⁴He brought forward the bull for the sin offering, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on the head of the bull for the sin offering. ¹⁵He slaughtered it, and Moses took the blood and applied it to the horns of the altar all around with his finger. He purified the altar, poured out the remaining blood at the base of the altar, and consecrated it to make atonement on it. ¹⁶He took all the fat that covered the entrails, the lobe of the liver, and the two kidneys with their fat, and Moses burned them on the altar. ¹⁷But the bull — its hide, its flesh, and its dung — he burned with fire outside the camp, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹⁸He then brought forward the ram designated for the burnt offering. Aaron and his sons placed their hands on the ram's head. ¹⁹He slaughtered it, and Moses dashed the blood against the sides of the altar. ²⁰He cut the ram into its sections, and Moses burned the head, the sections, and the suet on the altar. ²¹He washed the entrails and the lower legs with water, and Moses burned the entire ram on the altar. It was a burnt offering — a pleasing aroma, a food offering to the LORD, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²²He brought forward the second ram — the ram of ordination — and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on the head of the ram. ²³He slaughtered it, and Moses took some of its blood and applied it to the lobe of Aaron's right ear, to the thumb of his right hand, and to the big toe of his right foot. ²⁴He brought Aaron's sons forward, and Moses applied some of the blood to the lobe of their right ear, to the thumb of their right hand, and to the big toe of their right foot. Then Moses dashed the remaining blood against the sides of the altar. ²⁵He took the fat, the fat tail, all the fat covering the entrails, the lobe of the liver, the two kidneys with their fat, and the right thigh. ²⁶From the basket of unleavened bread that was before the LORD, he took one unleavened loaf, one oil-bread loaf, and one wafer, and placed them on the fat portions and on the right thigh. ²⁷He placed all of it on Aaron's palms and on his sons' palms, and elevated them as a wave offering before the LORD. ²⁸Moses took them from their palms and burned them on the altar on top of the burnt offering. They were the ordination offering — a pleasing aroma, a food offering to the LORD. ²⁹Moses took the breast portion and elevated it as a wave offering before the LORD. From the ram of ordination, this was Moses's share, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³⁰Moses took some of the anointing oil and some of the blood from the altar and sprinkled them on Aaron and on his vestments, and on his sons and on his sons' vestments with him. He consecrated Aaron and his vestments, and his sons and his sons' vestments with him. ³¹Moses said to Aaron and his sons, 'Cook the meat at the entrance of the tent of meeting, and eat it there with the bread that is in the basket of ordination offerings, as I was commanded, saying: Aaron and his sons shall eat it.' ³²Whatever remains of the meat and the bread you shall burn with fire.

³³You must not leave the entrance of the tent of meeting for seven days, until the period of your ordination is complete, for it takes seven days to fill your hands with authority. ³⁴What has been done today, the LORD commanded to be done in order to make atonement for you. ³⁵You shall remain at the entrance of the tent of meeting day and night for seven days, keeping the LORD's charge, so that you do not die — for this is what I have been commanded. ³⁶Aaron and his sons carried out everything that the LORD had commanded through Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Leviticus 8 is the narrative fulfillment of the ordination instructions given in Exodus 29. The chapter is structured as a step-by-step account of Moses carrying out each divine command. Moses serves as the officiating priest — the only time he functions in this role — because Aaron and his sons cannot consecrate themselves.
2. The materials for ordination are listed: priestly garments (begadim), anointing oil (shemen hammishchah), a bull for the sin offering (par hachata't), two rams (shenei ha'eilim — one for the burnt offering, one for the ordination offering), and unleavened bread (sal hammatot). Each element serves a specific function in the ceremony that follows. The anointing oil is the specially formulated blend described in Exodus 30:22-33, reserved exclusively for sacred use.
3. The ordination is a public event — the entire community (kol ha'edah) must witness the installation of their priests. The entrance of the tent of meeting (petach ohel mo'ed) is the threshold between common and sacred space, the location where heaven and earth intersect. The public nature of the ceremony establishes priestly authority before the community, not behind closed doors.
4. The phrase vayya'as Mosheh ka'asher tsivvah YHWH oto ('Moses did as the LORD commanded him') is the refrain of this chapter — it appears seven times (vv 4, 9, 13, 17, 21, 29, 36), structuring the entire ceremony as obedient execution of divine command. Every step Moses takes is authorized from above.
5. Moses announces the ceremony's divine authorization before the entire community. The phrase zeh haddavar ('this is the word/thing') establishes that what follows is not Moses's invention but God's prescription. The congregation serves as witness to the divine origin of the priestly office.
6. The ceremony begins with washing (rechitsah) — ritual purification before vesting. The Hebrew vayirchats otam ('he washed them') uses the same verb as the purification rituals in chapters 14-15. The priests must be ritually clean before they can be consecrated. Moses personally performs the washing — he is functioning as priest over the priests-to-be.
7. The vesting sequence dresses Aaron layer by layer, from innermost to outermost: kuttonet (tunic — the base garment), avnet (sash — tied at the waist), me'il (robe — the blue robe with bells and pomegranates), and efod (ephod — the outer vestment with shoulder straps). The cheshev ha'efod ('the decorated band/waistband of the ephod') holds the ephod in place. Each garment was described in Exodus 28; here they are placed on Aaron in the prescribed order.
8. The choshen (breastpiece — set with twelve stones representing the twelve tribes) is placed on Aaron's chest, and the Urim and Thummim are inserted into it. The Urim veTummim ('Lights and Perfections') are objects used for divine inquiry — their exact nature is unknown, but they functioned as a means of receiving God's guidance on specific decisions (cf. 1 Samuel 28:6). Their placement inside the breastpiece means the high priest literally carries God's means of revelation against his heart.
9. The mitsnefet (turban — the high priest's head covering) is crowned with the tsits hazahav ('gold plate/flower'), also called nezer haqqodesh ('the holy crown' or 'the diadem of holiness'). This plate bears the inscription 'Holy to the LORD' (qodesh laYHWH — Exodus 28:36). It is the most visible marker of the high priest's consecrated status, positioned el mul panav ('facing forward, on his forehead') so that it is the first thing anyone approaching the high priest sees.
10. Before anointing the priests, Moses anoints the sacred space and its furnishings. The verb mashach ('to anoint') and the verb qiddesh ('to consecrate, to set apart as holy') are paired — anointing is the physical act, consecration is the resulting status change. The tabernacle must be holy before the priests who serve in it are made holy. The order is significant: sanctify the space, then sanctify the personnel.
11. The altar receives special attention: sevenfold sprinkling (sheva pe'amim — the number of completeness) plus anointing. The basin (kiyyor) and its stand (kanno) — the washing station where priests purify their hands and feet before ministering (Exodus 30:18-21) — are also anointed. Every piece of sacred furniture transitions from common to holy through this oil application.
12. The verb yatsaq ('poured') indicates generous application — not a dab but a pouring. Psalm 133:2 describes this oil running down Aaron's beard and onto the collar of his robes. The anointing separates Aaron from every other Israelite: he is now mashiach ('anointed one') — the same term that becomes 'Messiah.' The act marks the transition from Aaron the man to Aaron the high priest.
13. Aaron's sons receive simpler vestments than Aaron: tunics (kuttonot), sashes (avnet), and caps (migba'ot) — no ephod, no breastpiece, no gold plate. The distinction in garments reflects the distinction in office: the high priest alone bears the full regalia. The sons serve as ordinary priests. The refrain ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ('as the LORD commanded Moses') appears again.
14. The sacrificial sequence begins with the sin offering (chata't), following the order established in Leviticus 4. The laying on of hands (semikhat yadayim) transfers identification from the offerer to the animal — Aaron and his sons identify themselves with this sacrifice. The sin offering purifies the altar and sacred space for priestly use. Even the priests-to-be need purification before they can serve.

15. Moses performs the blood ritual: application to the altar's horns (qarnot hamizbeach — the projections at each corner), purification of the altar (vayechatte — from the root ch-t-, the same root as chata't), pouring the remainder at the base (yesod hamizbeach), and consecration (vayyeqaddeshhu). The phrase lekhafter alav ('to make atonement on it') uses the kippur verb — the altar itself needs atonement before it can receive offerings. The altar must be ritually pure before it can purify others.
16. The fat portions (chelev) are God's portion — they are always burned on the altar, never eaten (cf. 3:16-17, 7:23-25). The specific organs listed — the fat covering the entrails (chelev asher al haqqerev), the liver lobe (yoteret hakkaved), and the kidneys with their fat — are the same portions prescribed for every sin offering in Leviticus 4. Moses follows the standard procedure exactly.
17. The remainder of the sin offering bull is burned (saraph — total destruction by fire, not the altar-burning of hiqtir) outside the camp (michutz lammachaneh). This follows the rule for sin offerings whose blood is brought inside the sanctuary (4:11-12, 6:30). The carcass is too holy to be eaten and too contaminated by absorbed sin to remain in the camp. It is destroyed in the liminal space outside — neither sacred nor common.
18. The second sacrifice is the burnt offering (olah) — complete devotion, entirely consumed on the altar. Again, Aaron and his sons lay their hands on the animal's head, identifying themselves with the offering. The sequence of offerings in the ordination mirrors the sequence in Leviticus 1-7: sin offering first (purification), then burnt offering (total devotion), then the unique ordination offering (vv 22-29).
19. The blood of the burnt offering is dashed (zaraq — splashed or thrown, not carefully applied) against the altar's sides (saviv — 'round about'). This contrasts with the sin offering blood, which was applied precisely to the altar's horns with the finger (v 15). The different blood-application methods correspond to different offering types and their distinct functions.
20. The ram is sectioned (nittach lintachav — 'cut into its sections'), and all parts are burned: head (ro'sh), sections (netachim), and suet (peder — the internal fat surrounding the kidneys, distinct from chelev). The entire animal goes to the altar — nothing is held back, which is the defining characteristic of the burnt offering.
21. The entrails and legs are washed before burning — purifying the portions that contact unclean matter (digestive contents, ground dirt). The completed offering is described with three terms: olah ('burnt offering' — total consumption), re'ach nichoach ('a pleasing aroma' — the scent ascending to God), and ishsheh ('food offering' — an offering consumed by fire for God). The sensory language — God 'smells' the offering — is anthropomorphic but theologically significant: the sacrifice pleases God.
22. The third and most distinctive sacrifice is the eil hammillu'im ('the ram of ordination' — literally 'the ram of filling'). The term millu'im comes from the idiom mille yad ('to fill the hand'), which means to authorize, to install in office, to empower for a role. The ordination sacrifice is unique to this ceremony — it has no parallel in the regular offering system of Leviticus 1-7.
23. The blood-application ritual — right ear lobe (tenukh ozen), right thumb (bohen yad), right big toe (bohen regel) — consecrates Aaron's entire person through three extremities: what he hears (ear), what he does (hand), and where he walks (foot). This identical ritual appears in the purification of the healed skin-disease patient (14:14), creating a striking parallel: the healed person and the new priest undergo the same consecration ceremony. Both are being set apart for renewed access to God's presence.
24. Aaron's sons receive the same ear-thumb-toe blood application as Aaron — the consecration of the whole person applies equally to all priests, not just the high priest. The remaining blood is dashed against the altar (vayizroq... al hamizbeach saviv), completing the blood ritual by returning it to the altar where God receives it.
25. The ordination ram's portions include the standard fat sections plus two additions unique to this sacrifice: the alyah ('fat tail' — the broad, fatty tail of the Near Eastern fat-tailed sheep, considered a delicacy) and the shoq hayyamin ('the right thigh'). The right thigh normally belongs to the priest (7:32-33), but in the ordination ceremony it is offered on the altar because the priests are not yet installed — they cannot receive their priestly portion until the ordination is complete.
26. Three types of bread from the basket: challat matsah (an unleavened loaf), challat lechem shemen (an oil-bread loaf — bread mixed with oil), and raiq (a thin wafer). These three breads represent the grain offering component of the ordination. They are stacked on top of the fat portions and the right thigh, creating a composite offering that combines animal sacrifice and grain offering.
27. This is the climactic moment: Moses places the entire composite offering — fat, thigh, and breads — on the open palms (kappei) of Aaron and his sons. Their hands are literally 'filled' (the millu'im idiom enacted physically). The wave offering (tenufah — a ritual elevation or horizontal movement before the LORD) presents the offering to God while it rests in the priests' hands. At this moment, the priests hold their calling — the priesthood is placed in their hands.
28. Moses transfers the offering from the priests' hands to the altar — from the human realm to the divine. The ordination portions are burned on top of (al) the burnt offering from verses 18-21, layering the ordination sacrifice over the whole-devotion sacrifice. The designation millu'im hem ('they are ordination offerings') identifies these portions as belonging to a unique category — neither sin offering, burnt offering, nor peace offering, but the ordination offering.
29. The breast (chazeh) — normally the priest's portion (7:31) — goes to Moses in this unique ceremony because Moses is functioning as the officiating priest. The phrase leMosheh hayah lemanah ('it was Moses's share/portion') acknowledges that the one who performs the priestly service receives the priestly portion. This is the only sacrifice in which Moses personally receives a share of the offering.

30. Oil and blood are mixed and sprinkled together on the priests and their garments — the only time in the Levitical system where oil and blood are combined in a single application. Both the persons and their clothing are consecrated (*vayyeqaddesh*) — holiness extends from the wearer to the garment. The comprehensive list — Aaron, Aaron's garments, his sons, his sons' garments — is stated twice to emphasize that every person and every item of clothing is now set apart for sacred service.
31. The ordination includes a communal meal — Aaron and his sons eat the remaining meat and bread from the ordination offering. The verb *bashlu* ('cook, boil') indicates preparation by boiling (distinct from roasting). This shared meal at the entrance of the tent of meeting echoes the covenant meal on Sinai (Exodus 24:9-11) where the elders ate and drank in God's presence. The priestly ordination meal establishes the same intimacy with God.
32. Leftover consecrated food must be burned — it cannot be saved for later or given to non-priests. The sanctity of the ordination meal is time-limited: what is not consumed during the ceremony is destroyed. This prevents sacred food from becoming common through delayed consumption or careless handling.
33. The seven-day ordination period requires the priests to remain at the tent of meeting continuously — they cannot leave (*lo tetse'u*) for the full duration. The phrase *shiv'at yamim yemalle et yedkhem* ('seven days he will fill your hands') uses the *millu'im* idiom explicitly: the hand-filling (ordination) takes a complete week. The number seven signifies completeness — the priests are fully and completely set apart for their office.
34. The entire ordination ceremony is summarized as an act of atonement (*lekhipper aleikhem* — 'to make atonement for you'). The *kippur* here covers the priests' own need for purification before they can serve as intermediaries between God and the people. The priests who will perform atonement for others must first receive atonement themselves — no one approaches God's holiness uncovered.
35. The warning *velo tamutu* ('so that you do not die') introduces the deadly seriousness of the priestly office — failure to observe the ordination requirements results in death. The phrase *ushmartem et mishmeret YHWH* ('you shall keep the LORD's charge/watch') describes the priestly duty as a standing guard — they are sentinels of holiness. The next chapter (Lev 9) records the first day of active priestly service; the chapter after that (Lev 10) records what happens when priestly duty is violated.
36. The final obedience formula closes the chapter: Aaron and his sons did *kol haddevarim* ('all the things') — complete compliance with every detail. The phrase *beyad Mosheh* ('through the hand of Moses') acknowledges Moses's unique mediating role — the commands come from God but are transmitted through Moses. The section marker (*samekh*) closes the ordination narrative. Chapter 9 records what happens on the eighth day, when the ordained priests begin their active ministry.

9

Summary: *On the eighth day after ordination, Aaron offers his first sacrifices as high priest -- a calf for sin and a ram for burnt offering -- and the people bring their own offerings. After Aaron blesses the people, fire comes from the LORD and consumes the offerings. The people shout and fall on their faces.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the climactic moment of the entire tabernacle narrative that began in Exodus 25. Aaron's calf offering may deliberately recall his golden calf sin -- the same animal form used for idolatry now used for purification. The divine fire that consumes the offering (v24) confirms God's acceptance and His dwelling among Israel. Everything built since Sinai becomes functional on this day.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *vayyar* ("appeared," v23) carries the full weight of theophany -- we rendered it "the glory of the LORD appeared" to preserve the visual force. The people's response *vayyaronnu* ("they shouted," v24) needed to convey joyful acclamation, not mere noise. We chose "shouted with joy" to capture the celebratory tone of a community witnessing divine acceptance for the first time.*

Connections: *The fire from the LORD echoes the fire on Abraham's altar (Gen 15:17) and anticipates Elijah's Mount Carmel contest (1 Kgs 18:38). The eighth-day timing connects to circumcision's eighth day (Gen 17:12) and the eschatological "eighth day" of new creation. The contrast with the next chapter (Nadab and Abihu) is devastating -- the same fire that accepts also judges.*

1On the eighth day, Moses summoned Aaron, his sons, and the elders of Israel. 2He said to Aaron, 'Take for yourself a young bull calf for a sin offering and a ram for a burnt offering, both without defect, and present them before the LORD. 3And to the children of Israel you shall say: Take a male goat for a sin offering, and a calf and a yearling lamb, both without defect, for a burnt offering, 4and a bull and a ram as peace offerings to sacrifice before the LORD, along with a grain offering mixed with oil — for today the LORD will appear to you.' 5They brought what Moses had commanded to the front of the tent of

meeting. The entire congregation drew near and stood before the LORD. ⁶Moses said, 'This is what the LORD has commanded you to do, so that the glory of the LORD may appear to you.' ⁷Moses said to Aaron, 'Approach the altar and perform your sin offering and your burnt offering, and make atonement for yourself and for the people. Then perform the people's offering and make atonement for them, as the LORD has commanded.' ⁸Aaron approached the altar and slaughtered the calf of the sin offering that was for himself. ⁹Aaron's sons brought the blood to him. He dipped his finger in the blood and applied it to the horns of the altar, then poured out the remaining blood at the base of the altar. ¹⁰The fat, the kidneys, and the lobe of the liver from the sin offering he burned on the altar, as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹¹The flesh and the hide he burned with fire outside the camp. ¹²He slaughtered the burnt offering, and Aaron's sons handed him the blood, which he dashed against the sides of the altar. ¹³They handed him the burnt offering piece by piece, including the head, and he burned them on the altar. ¹⁴He washed the entrails and the lower legs and burned them on the altar along with the burnt offering. ¹⁵Then he brought forward the people's offering. He took the goat of the sin offering that was for the people, slaughtered it, and presented it as a sin offering in the same manner as the first. ¹⁶He brought forward the burnt offering and performed it according to the prescribed procedure. ¹⁷He brought forward the grain offering, took a handful from it, and burned it on the altar — in addition to the morning burnt offering. ¹⁸He slaughtered the bull and the ram as the peace offerings for the people. Aaron's sons handed him the blood, and he dashed it against the sides of the altar. ¹⁹The fat portions from the bull and the ram — the fat tail, the fat covering the entrails, the kidneys, and the lobe of the liver — ²⁰they placed the fat portions on the breast pieces, and he burned the fat on the altar. ²¹Aaron elevated the breast portions and the right thigh as a wave offering before the LORD, as Moses had commanded. ²²Aaron raised his hands toward the people and blessed them. Then he stepped down from performing the sin offering, the burnt offering, and the peace offerings. ²³Moses and Aaron entered the tent of meeting. When they came out, they blessed the people — and the glory of the LORD appeared to all the people. ²⁴Fire came out from before the LORD and consumed the burnt offering and the fat portions on the altar. When all the people saw it, they cried out in joy and fell on their faces.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The eighth day (hayyom hashemini) follows the seven-day ordination period of chapter 8. This is the inaugural day of the tabernacle's active operation — the day when everything built since Exodus 25 becomes functional. The elders (ziquei Yisra'el) are summoned as representatives of the entire nation. This is the most anticipated day since Sinai: the moment when God will confirm that He has indeed come to dwell among His people.
2. Aaron's personal offerings are specified first: a calf (egel ben baqar) for the sin offering and a ram for the burnt offering. The choice of a calf for Aaron's sin offering may be deliberately significant — Aaron had made a golden calf (egel) as the idol in Exodus 32. His first official priestly act involves offering a calf as a sin offering. Some interpreters see this as an intentional atonement for that specific sin: the same animal form used for idolatry is now used for purification.
3. The people's offerings are separate from Aaron's: a goat for their sin offering (se'ir izzim — male goat), and both a calf and a lamb for their burnt offering. The variety of animals — goat, calf, lamb — represents the full range of sacrificial livestock. All must be temimim ('without defect'), the consistent requirement for sacrificial fitness.
4. Four offering types in one ceremony: sin offering (chata't), burnt offering (olah), peace offerings (shelamim — the fellowship meal shared between God, priest, and worshipper), and grain offering (minchah). The closing phrase is electrifying: ki hayyom YHWH nir'ah aleikhem ('for today the LORD will appear to you'). The entire sacrificial system reaches its purpose — God's visible manifestation among His people. Everything since Exodus 25:8 ('let them make Me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them') has been building toward this moment.
5. The entire congregation (kol ha'edah) comes forward and stands before the LORD (lifnei YHWH). This is the largest assembly since Sinai — the whole nation present for the inauguration of regular worship. The phrase vayyiqrevu ('they drew near') uses the same root as qorban ('offering') — the people themselves approach, not just their sacrifices.
6. Moses makes the connection explicit: obedience (ta'asu — 'you shall do') leads to theophany (veyera aleikhem kevod YHWH — 'the glory of the LORD will appear to you'). The kavod (glory — the weighty, tangible presence of God) is promised as the direct result of carrying out the sacrificial instructions. The purpose of the entire offering system is condensed into this single statement: do this, and God's presence will be visible.
7. Aaron's first command as high priest: qerav el hamizbeach ('approach the altar'). The verb qarav ('approach, draw near') is the root of qorban ('offering') — the priest's approach to the altar is itself a sacred act. The two-stage atonement is critical: first kapper ba'adekha ('make atonement for yourself'), then kapper ba'adam ('make atonement for them'). The priest must be purified before he can purify others. The mediator must first be reconciled before he can reconcile.

8. Aaron's first act as priest: slaughtering his own sin offering. The calf (egel) that he kills may recall the golden calf (egel) he made — the priest's first sacrifice undoes the priest's greatest sin. The Hebrew *vayishchat* ('he slaughtered') marks the moment Aaron begins functioning in the role for which he has been ordained.
9. The priestly teamwork begins: Aaron's sons collect and carry the blood, Aaron applies it. The blood ritual follows the sin offering procedure from Leviticus 4: finger-application to the altar horns (precise, deliberate) and pouring the remainder at the base. The sons' role as blood-bearers (*vayyaqrivu... et haddam elav* — 'they brought the blood to him') establishes their function as supporting priests.
10. The standard fat portions — *chelev* (fat), *kelayot* (kidneys), *yoteret hakkaved* (liver lobe) — are burned on the altar. The refrain *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh* ('as the LORD commanded Moses') reappears, maintaining the theme of exact obedience that runs through chapters 8-9.
11. As prescribed for the sin offering (4:11-12, 8:17), the carcass is burned (*saraph* — destructive burning, not altar-burning) outside the camp. The sin offering absorbs contamination; the contaminated remains must be removed from the holy community.
12. The burnt offering blood is dashed (*zaraq* — splashed, thrown) rather than applied with the finger as in the sin offering. The sons continue as the blood-handling team. The burnt offering follows the sin offering — the sequence moves from purification to total devotion.
13. The burnt offering is presented in its sectioned pieces (*lintacheiha* — 'in its sections') along with the head. Each piece is burned individually on the altar. The sons' role in passing each piece to Aaron creates an assembly-line rhythm — the priesthood functioning as a coordinated team for the first time.
14. The entrails (*qerev*) and legs (*kera'ayim*) are washed before burning to remove impurities. This completes Aaron's personal offerings — sin offering (vv 8-11) and burnt offering (vv 12-14). Aaron is now atoned for and wholly devoted. He can proceed to the people's offerings.
15. Aaron transitions from his personal offerings to the people's offerings (*qorban ha'am*). The goat sin offering for the people follows the same procedure (*karishon* — 'as the first') as Aaron's personal calf sin offering. The verb *vaychatt'ehu* ('he offered it as a sin offering / he purified with it') uses the *piel* form of *chata'* — the intensive form meaning 'to purify, to de-sin.'
16. The people's burnt offering is performed *kammishpat* ('according to the ordinance/prescribed procedure') — the standard method established in Leviticus 1. The brevity of this verse contrasts with the detailed descriptions in chapter 1 — by now the procedure is established and needs only a reference.
17. The grain offering (*minchah*) follows the burnt offering. Aaron takes a handful (*vayemalle khappo* — 'he filled his palm') as the memorial portion (*azkarah* — cf. 2:2) to be burned on the altar. The phrase *milvad olat habboqer* ('in addition to the morning burnt offering') indicates that the regular daily offerings (*tamid*) have already begun alongside the inaugural ceremony. The daily routine and the special inauguration operate simultaneously.
18. The peace offerings (*zevach hashlamim* — 'sacrifice of the peace/fellowship offerings') are the final animal sacrifices. The peace offering is the only offering the worshipper eats — it is a shared meal between God (who receives the fat), the priest (who receives the breast and thigh), and the worshipper (who eats the rest). This communal eating will follow the ceremony — the community celebrating God's presence together.
19. The fat portions from both peace offering animals are listed: *alyah* (fat tail), *hamekhasseh* (the fat covering the entrails), *kelayot* (kidneys), and *yoteret hakkaved* (liver lobe). These are God's portion — the richest, choicest parts of the animal, reserved exclusively for the altar.
20. The fat is stacked on top of the breast portions (*chazot*) before the fat is removed and burned. The breasts are the priest's share (7:31) — they will be given to Aaron after the fat is burned on the altar. The choreography separates what goes to God (the fat, burned) from what goes to the priest (the breast, waved then eaten).
21. Aaron performs the *tenufah* ('wave offering' — a ritual elevation before the LORD) with the priestly portions: the breasts (*chazot*) and the right thigh (*shoq hayyamin*). These are now Aaron's to eat as his priestly share (7:31-34). The phrase *ka'asher tsivvah Mosheh* ('as Moses commanded') shifts the authority reference from 'as the LORD commanded' — Moses is now the intermediary of God's instructions.
22. Aaron's first priestly blessing: *vayissa Aharon et yadav el ha'am vayeavarekhem* ('Aaron lifted his hands toward the people and blessed them'). This is likely the priestly blessing of Numbers 6:24-26 ('The LORD bless you and keep you...'), though the text does not specify the words. The verb *vayyered* ('he descended') indicates the altar was elevated — Aaron comes down from the altar platform. The three offering types are summarized: sin offering, burnt offering, peace offerings — purification, devotion, and fellowship accomplished.
23. This verse is the climax of everything since Exodus 25. Moses and Aaron enter the tent of meeting together — the last time Moses enters the tent in this mediating role — and when they emerge and bless the people, the *kavod* appears. The phrase *vayyera kevod YHWH el kol ha'am* ('the glory of the LORD appeared to all the people') fulfills the promise of verse 6 and of Exodus 29:43-46. The entire tabernacle project — design, construction, furnishing, priestly ordination, and inaugural sacrifices — reaches its purpose in this single moment: God's visible presence among His people.
23. The entry and exit of Moses and Aaron from the tent may represent the transition of mediating authority: Moses, who has carried the mediating role since Sinai, enters with Aaron; they emerge together; from this point forward, Aaron and his descendants will serve as the ongoing mediators.
24. Divine fire (*esh milifnei YHWH* — 'fire from before the LORD') descends and consumes the offering on the altar. This is God's visible acceptance of the sacrifice — He does not merely receive it passively but actively, dramatically takes it. The people's response combines vocal praise (*vayyarannu* — 'they cried out, they shouted in joy') and physical prostration (*vayyipelu al peneihem* — 'they fell on their faces'). The shout is not fear but exultation — the combination of awe and joy that comes from encountering the living God who has chosen to dwell among them.

24. This fire becomes the sacred fire that must never go out (6:12-13). The fire that God Himself kindled will burn continuously on the altar as a perpetual sign of His presence. Chapter 10 immediately follows with the tragic account of what happens when unauthorized fire is brought into this sacred space.

10

Summary: *Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu offer unauthorized fire and are consumed by divine fire. Aaron is silent. Moses instructs on priestly mourning restrictions, prohibits wine before tabernacle service, and commands the priests to distinguish between holy and common, clean and unclean.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase vayyiddom Aharon ("and Aaron was silent") is one of the most psychologically acute moments in the Torah -- the word implies not quiet assent but stunned, enforced stillness. The same fire that accepted the inaugural offerings in 9:24 now consumes the priests. The term esh zarah ("unauthorized fire") is deliberately vague; the text never specifies exactly what was wrong, only that it was "not commanded."*

Translation Friction: *We rendered esh zarah as "unauthorized fire" rather than "strange fire" (KJV) because zarah here means "not commanded" rather than "foreign." The sin was unauthorized approach, not necessarily wrong ingredients. The verb vayyiddom required care: from damam ("to be still, to cease"), it carries shock, grief, and submission in a single word. We chose "was silent" and let the notes carry the emotional weight.*

Connections: *Moses's theological interpretation -- bigrovai eqqadesh ("among those near Me I will show Myself holy," v3) -- anticipates Ezekiel's similar principle (Ezek 28:22). The wine prohibition (v9) connects to the Nazirite vow (Num 6:3) and John the Baptist's abstinence (Luke 1:15). The mandate to "distinguish between holy and common" (v10) becomes the organizing principle for chapters 11-15.*

¹Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu each took his fire pan, put fire in it, placed incense on it, and offered unauthorized fire before the LORD — which He had not commanded them. ²Fire came out from before the LORD and consumed them, and they died before the LORD. ³Moses said to Aaron, "This is what the LORD meant when He said: 'Among those who draw near to Me I will show Myself holy, and before all the people I will display My glory.'" And Aaron was silent. ⁴Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan, sons of Aaron's uncle Uzziel, and said to them, "Come forward. Carry your relatives away from the front of the sanctuary, outside the camp." ⁵They came forward and carried them out of the camp, still in their tunics, as Moses had instructed. ⁶Moses said to Aaron and to his remaining sons Eleazar and Ithamar, "Do not let your hair hang loose and do not tear your garments, or you will die and wrath will fall on the entire community. But your relatives — all the house of Israel — may weep over the burning that the LORD has brought about. ⁷You must not leave the entrance of the tent of meeting, or you will die, for the LORD's anointing oil is upon you." They did as Moses instructed. ⁸The LORD spoke to Aaron: ⁹"You and your sons with you must not drink wine or fermented drink when you enter the tent of meeting, or you will die — a permanent statute for all your generations. ¹⁰You must distinguish between the holy and the common, and between the impure and the pure, ¹¹and to teach the Israelites all the statutes that the LORD has communicated to them through Moses." ¹²Moses spoke to Aaron and to his surviving sons Eleazar and Ithamar: "Take the grain offering that remains from the LORD's fire offerings and eat it unleavened beside the altar, for it is most holy. ¹³You shall eat it in a holy place, because it is your allotted portion and your sons' allotted portion from the LORD's fire offerings — for so I have been commanded. ¹⁴The breast of the wave offering and the thigh of the contribution you shall eat in a ritually clean place — you, your sons, and your daughters with you — for they are given as your allotted portion and your children's portion from the Israelites' peace offerings. ¹⁵The thigh of the contribution and the breast of the wave offering they shall bring, along with the fat portions for the fire offerings, to elevate as a wave offering before the LORD. It shall be yours and your children's as a permanent allotment, as the LORD has commanded." ¹⁶Moses searched carefully for the goat of the purification offering, and discovered it had been burned. He was angry with Eleazar and Ithamar, Aaron's surviving sons, and demanded: ¹⁷"Why did you not eat the purification offering in the holy place? It is most holy, and He gave it to you to bear the guilt of the community — to make atonement for them before the LORD. ¹⁸Since its blood was not brought inside the sanctuary, you were required to eat it in

the holy place, as I commanded." ¹⁹Aaron spoke to Moses: "Today they offered their purification offering and their burnt offering before the LORD, and things like these have happened to me. If I had eaten the purification offering today, would that have been acceptable in the LORD's sight?" ²⁰Moses heard this, and it was right in his eyes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with shocking abruptness — no introduction, no context, just action and consequence. Nadab and Abihu were not minor figures: they ascended Sinai with Moses and the seventy elders and saw God (Exod 24:1, 9-11). They ate and drank in God's presence and survived. Now they die. The phrase *esh zarah* ('strange fire, unauthorized fire') is deliberately vague — the text never specifies exactly what was wrong. The emphasis falls on *asher lo tsivvah otam* ('which He had not commanded them'): the sin is unauthorized approach, worship initiated by human impulse rather than divine instruction.
2. The same fire that consumed the inaugural offerings in 9:24 — when 'fire came out from before the LORD and consumed the burnt offering' to the people's joyful shouting — now consumes the priests themselves. The verb is identical: *vattokal* ('and it consumed'). The fire that accepts offering and the fire that judges disobedience are the same fire. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') appears in both v1 and v2 — they offered before the LORD, and they died before the LORD. The location of their worship became the location of their death.
3. Moses interprets the deaths theologically: *biqrovai eqqadesh* ('among those near Me I will be sanctified'). Those closest to God face the greatest danger when they violate the boundaries of holiness. The closer the relationship, the more severe the consequence of betrayal. *Ve'al-penei khol-ha'am ekkabed* ('before all the people I will be glorified') — God's *kavod* is demonstrated through the enforcement of holiness, not just through spectacular displays of power. The chapter's most devastating sentence: *vayyiddom Aharon* ('and Aaron was silent'). Not 'was quiet' or 'said nothing' — *vayyiddom* implies a stunned, enforced stillness. Aaron has just watched his two eldest sons die by divine fire. He has nothing to say. The silence is the loudest sound in the chapter.
4. Aaron cannot handle his own sons' bodies — as high priest, he is forbidden to contact corpses (21:11). Moses summons cousins (Mishael and Elzaphan, sons of Uzziel from the Kohathite Levitical clan) to perform the burial. The command is stark: carry them away 'from before the sanctuary' (*me'et penei haqqodesh*) — the bodies must be removed from sacred space. The dead cannot remain where the living God dwells. Even in grief, the holiness of the sanctuary takes priority.
5. The bodies are carried out in their tunics (*bekuttonotam*) — the priestly garments they wore when they offered the unauthorized fire. The tunics survived the divine fire that killed the men inside them, a detail that emphasizes the precision of divine judgment: the fire consumed the priests, not their clothing. The compliance phrase *ka'asher dibber Mosheh* ('as Moses had instructed') contrasts with v1's *asher lo tsivvah otam* ('which He had not commanded them'). Obedience to instruction is set against the unauthorized action that caused the tragedy.
6. Aaron and his surviving sons are forbidden from the normal mourning rituals: loosening hair (*al-tifra'u* — letting it hang unkempt) and tearing garments (*lo-tifromu*). These prohibitions, later codified for the high priest in 21:10, apply here because the priestly office takes priority over personal grief. If Aaron mourns publicly, he acknowledges that God's judgment was excessive — and that defiance would bring death on him and wrath on the community. The rest of Israel may mourn, but the priests may not. The priesthood demands an inhuman separation between office and emotion.
7. The anointing oil (*shemen mishchat YHWH*) on the priests creates an obligation: they are consecrated and cannot leave the sanctuary to attend to their dead. The oil represents their set-apart status — their identity as priests supersedes their identity as bereaved family members. The compliance note *vayya'asu kidvar Mosheh* ('they did as Moses instructed') again contrasts with Nadab and Abihu's unauthorized action. Obedience to the word is the lesson of the chapter.
8. A remarkable moment: God speaks directly to Aaron — one of the few times in the Torah that God addresses Aaron without Moses as intermediary. Immediately after Aaron's sons have died, God speaks to him personally. The direct address may indicate divine compassion — God does not distance Himself from Aaron's grief but comes closer. What follows (v9-11) is a permanent statute that may explain what Nadab and Abihu did wrong.
9. The placement of this prohibition — immediately after Nadab and Abihu's death — has led many interpreters to conclude that intoxication contributed to their unauthorized offering. The text does not state this directly, but the juxtaposition is too pointed to be coincidental. The prohibition is absolute during priestly service: *yayin veshekhar al-tesht* ('wine and fermented drink — do not drink'). The consequence is death (*velo tamutu*). The stakes of priestly service in God's presence leave no room for impaired judgment.
10. This verse states the priest's fundamental job description: *ulehavdil bein haqqodesh uvein hachol* ('to distinguish between holy and common') *uvein hattamei uvein hattahor* ('between impure and pure'). The verb *havdil* ('to separate, to distinguish') is the same word used for God's creative acts of separation in Genesis 1 (light from darkness, waters from waters). The priest's task mirrors God's creative work: maintaining the distinctions that preserve the world's order. Nadab and Abihu collapsed the distinction between commanded and uncommanded — holy and common — and the result was lethal.
11. The second priestly duty: *ulehorot et-benei Yisra'el* ('to teach the Israelites'). The priest is not only a ritual officiant but a teacher of Torah — the word *horot* shares its root with *torah* ('instruction'). The priest must teach 'all the statutes' (*kol hachuqqim*), not selectively. The phrase *beyad-Mosheh* ('through Moses') preserves the chain of transmission: God spoke, Moses received, priests teach. This teaching mandate will be central to Israel's survival as a covenant community.

12. The phrase *banav hannotarim* ('his remaining sons') — not 'his other sons' but 'his surviving sons' — is devastating in its plainness. Two sons are dead; two remain. Moses instructs the survivors to resume their priestly duties: eat the *minchah* remainder. The instruction is both pastoral and professional — grief cannot suspend the sacrificial system. The offerings of the day must be consumed properly. Even after catastrophe, the ritual continues.
13. Moses emphasizes that eating the priestly portions is not optional but obligatory — *choqkha vechoq-banekha* ('your allotted portion and your sons'). The closing phrase *ki-khen tsuvveiti* ('for so I have been commanded') underlines that Moses himself is under orders. The chain of authority runs from God through Moses to the priests. No one in the system operates on personal initiative — the lesson of Nadab and Abihu's unauthorized action.
14. A significant distinction: the *minchah* remainder (v12-13) must be eaten in a holy place (*bemaqom qadosh* — the sanctuary courtyard) by male priests only. But the *shelamim* portions — the wave breast (*chazeh hattenufah*) and the thigh of the contribution (*shoq hatterumah*) — may be eaten in any ritually clean place (*bemaqom tahor*) by priests and their families, including daughters. The *shelamim* is 'holy' but not 'most holy,' so it has broader access rules. The distinction between *qodesh qodashim* and *qodesh* governs who can eat what, and where.
15. The procedure: the fat portions (*ishei hachalavim*) are brought together with the thigh and breast. The wave offering (*tenufah*) is elevated before the LORD — presented to God — before being given to the priest. God sees it first; the priest receives it second. The designation *choq-olam* ('permanent allotment') makes the priestly portion a perpetual right across all generations. The phrase *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH* ('as the LORD has commanded') closes the section with the refrain that governs the entire chapter: divine command, not human initiative.
16. The intensified verb *darosh darash* ('he searched and searched') shows Moses investigating with urgency. The goat should have been eaten by the priests (per 6:19, 22) but was instead burned (*soraf*) — the wrong procedure. Moses's anger is justified: after Nadab and Abihu just died for unauthorized worship, the surviving brothers have now mishandled the *chata't*. The tension is unbearable — another priestly error on the same day that produced divine fire. Moses fears for their lives.
17. Moses's question reveals the theology behind priestly eating: the priest eats the *chata't* *lasot et-avon ha'edah* ('to bear the guilt of the community'). Eating the holy meat is itself an atoning act — the priest absorbs the community's guilt into his own person through consuming the purification offering. This is not merely food allocation; it is vicarious bearing of sin. By refusing to eat, Eleazar and Ithamar failed to complete the atonement process.
18. Moses applies the rule of 6:23: when the *chata't* blood goes inside the sanctuary, the meat is burned; when it stays on the outer altar, the meat is eaten. This goat's blood was applied to the outer altar (not brought inside), so the meat should have been eaten. Moses's argument is technically correct: he did command them (*ka'asher tsivveiti*) to eat it. The error seems clear. But Aaron will now offer a response that silences Moses.
19. Aaron finally speaks — breaking the silence of v3 with one of the most powerful responses in the Torah. His argument: on the day my sons died for unauthorized worship, would it be right for me to eat the purification offering as though everything were normal? *Vatigre'nah oti ka'elleh* ('such things have befallen me') — the understatement is devastating. Aaron does not name the deaths; he calls them 'things like these.' His question *hayyitav be'einei YHWH* ('would it have been good in the LORD's sight?') turns the appeal to divine judgment. Perhaps eating the *chata't* in the aftermath of divine fire would itself have been inappropriate — a pretense of normalcy in the face of catastrophe.
20. The chapter's final verse: *vayyishma Mosheh vayyitav be'einav* ('Moses heard, and it was good in his eyes'). Moses accepts Aaron's reasoning. The man who speaks for God acknowledges that Aaron's pastoral instinct — that grief-stricken priests should not perform an atoning meal while still reeling from divine judgment — was correct. The law is not wrong, but Aaron's reading of the situation was wiser than strict compliance. This moment establishes a precedent: there are occasions when the spirit of the commandment overrides its letter. The chapter that began with death for unauthorized innovation ends with approval for unauthorized restraint. Both boundaries — what must not be added and what may be temporarily withheld — are real.

11

Summary: *God gives Israel the dietary laws, classifying animals into clean and unclean across four categories: land animals (split hoof and cud), water creatures (fins and scales), birds (by list), and winged insects (by leg type). Contact with carcasses transmits impurity. The chapter closes with a call to holiness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The dietary laws are practical theology: every meal becomes an act of covenant identity. The system classifies by visible, observable criteria any Israelite can verify -- look at the feet and the mouth. Four boundary-case animals (camel, hyrax, hare, pig) are named specifically because they meet only one criterion, preventing confusion. The closing rationale links eating directly to holiness: Israel's table reflects Israel's God.*

Translation Friction: The word tamei ("ritually impure") required consistent rendering to avoid the connotation of "dirty" or "sinful" — a camel is not evil, merely outside the permitted category. The Hebrew shafan ("hyrax," v5) classifies by visible behavior (jaw movement resembling cud-chewing), not modern taxonomy. We rendered sherets ("swarming creature") consistently with its usage in later chapters for coherence across the purity legislation.

Connections: The dietary laws flow from the priestly mandate of 10:10 to "distinguish between clean and unclean." Peter's vision in Acts 10:9-16 engages these categories directly. The holiness rationale ("be holy, for I am holy," v44-45) anticipates the Holiness Code's central command in 19:2. The clean/unclean animal distinction originates with Noah's ark (Gen 7:2).

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron, saying to them: ²"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: Of all the land animals, these are the ones you may eat. ³Any animal that has a divided hoof — completely split — and chews the cud: that you may eat. ⁴However, of those that chew the cud or have a divided hoof, you must not eat the following: the camel — it chews the cud but does not have a divided hoof; it is ritually impure for you. ⁵The hyrax — it chews the cud but does not have a divided hoof; it is ritually impure for you. ⁶The hare — it chews the cud but does not have a divided hoof; it is ritually impure for you. ⁷The pig — it has a completely divided hoof but does not chew the cud; it is ritually impure for you. ⁸You must not eat their flesh or touch their carcasses — they are ritually impure for you. ⁹Of everything in the waters, you may eat whatever has fins and scales — in seas and streams, those you may eat. ¹⁰But anything in seas or streams that lacks fins and scales — among all the swarming things and living creatures in the water — is detestable to you. ¹¹They shall remain detestable to you — you must not eat their flesh, and their carcasses you must regard as detestable. ¹²Whatever lacks fins and scales in the water is detestable to you. ¹³Among the birds, these you shall regard as detestable — they must not be eaten, they are detestable: the eagle, the bearded vulture, the black vulture, ¹⁴the kite, the falcon of every kind, ¹⁵every raven of every kind, ¹⁶the ostrich, the nighthawk, the seagull, the hawk of every kind, ¹⁷the little owl, the cormorant, the great owl, ¹⁸the barn owl, the pelican, the carrion vulture, ¹⁹the stork, the heron of every kind, the hoopoe, and the bat. ²⁰All winged swarming creatures that walk on four legs are detestable to you. ²¹However, of the winged swarming creatures that walk on four legs, you may eat those that have jointed legs above their feet for leaping on the ground. ²²Of these you may eat: the locust of every kind, the bald locust of every kind, the cricket of every kind, and the grasshopper of every kind. ²³All other winged swarming creatures with four legs are detestable to you. ²⁴By these you will become ritually impure: anyone who touches their carcass will be impure until evening. ²⁵Anyone who carries any part of their carcass must wash their clothing and will be impure until evening. ²⁶Every animal that has a hoof but it is not completely split, or does not chew the cud — these are impure for you. Anyone who touches them becomes impure. ²⁷Whatever walks on its paws among all four-footed creatures is impure for you. Anyone who touches their carcass will be impure until evening. ²⁸Anyone who carries their carcass must wash their clothing and will be impure until evening — they are impure for you. ²⁹Among the creatures that swarm on the ground, these are impure for you: the weasel, the mouse, the large lizard of every kind, ³⁰the gecko, the monitor lizard, the wall lizard, the skink, and the chameleon. ³¹These are the impure ones among the swarming creatures. Anyone who touches them when they are dead will be impure until evening. ³²Anything one of them falls on when dead becomes impure — any wooden utensil, garment, leather item, or sack. Whatever tool is used for work must be immersed in water and remains impure until evening; then it is clean. ³³If one falls into a clay vessel, everything in it becomes impure, and you must break the vessel. ³⁴Any food that could be eaten, if water from such a vessel comes on it, becomes impure. Any liquid that could be drunk in any such vessel becomes impure. ³⁵Anything their carcass falls on becomes impure. An oven or a cooking stove must be smashed — they are impure and shall remain impure for you. ³⁶However, a spring or cistern holding collected water remains clean, though whoever touches the carcass in it becomes impure. ³⁷If any part of their carcass falls on seed grain that is to be planted, it remains clean. ³⁸But if water has been put on the seed and any part of their carcass falls on it, it is impure for you. ³⁹If an animal that you may eat dies on its own, anyone who touches its carcass will be impure until evening. ⁴⁰Anyone who eats from its carcass must wash their clothing and will be impure until evening. Anyone who carries its carcass must wash their clothing and will be impure until evening. ⁴¹Every swarming creature that swarms on the ground is detestable — it must not

be eaten. ⁴²Whatever moves on its belly, whatever walks on four legs, or whatever has many legs — among all swarming creatures on the ground — you must not eat them, for they are detestable. ⁴³Do not make yourselves detestable through any swarming creature. Do not make yourselves impure through them and become defiled by them. ⁴⁴For I am the LORD your God. Consecrate yourselves and be holy, for I am holy. Do not defile yourselves with any swarming creature that moves on the ground. ⁴⁵For I am the LORD who brought you up out of the land of Egypt to be your God. You shall be holy, for I am holy. ⁴⁶This is the instruction concerning land animals, birds, every living creature that moves in the water, and every creature that swarms on the ground — ⁴⁷to distinguish between the impure and the pure, between the creature that may be eaten and the creature that may not be eaten."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God addresses both Moses and Aaron — the dietary laws involve priestly expertise in distinguishing clean from unclean (10:10). This is the first legislation after Nadab and Abihu's death (ch 10) and the instruction to 'distinguish between holy and common, impure and pure' (10:10). The clean/unclean animal laws are the practical outworking of that priestly mandate.
2. The dietary laws begin with permission, not prohibition: *zot hachayah asher tokheilu* ('these are the living things you may eat'). The positive framing ('this is what you can eat') precedes the negative ('this is what you cannot'). Four categories follow: land animals (v2-8), water creatures (v9-12), birds (v13-19), and winged insects (v20-23). The system classifies the entire animal kingdom by edibility.
3. Two criteria for edible land animals: *mafreset parsah* ('divides the hoof' — split into two toes) AND *ma'alat gerah* ('brings up the cud' — ruminant digestion). Both criteria must be met. The system creates a clear, observable test: look at the feet and the mouth. The criteria are not arbitrary but establish a classification principle based on visible physical characteristics that any Israelite can verify.
4. Four animals that meet only one criterion are listed (v4-7) to prevent confusion: the camel (chews cud but lacks split hoof), the hyrax (v5), the hare (v6), and the pig (v7). Each fails on exactly one criterion, demonstrating that both requirements must be satisfied. The word *tamei* ('ritually impure') — not 'dirty' or 'sinful' — describes the animal's status relative to Israel's table, not its inherent quality. Camels are not evil; they are simply outside the permitted category.
5. The *shafan* ('hyrax/rock badger') — KJV's 'coney.' The hyrax's jaw movement while eating resembles cud-chewing to the observer, though it is not technically a ruminant. The text classifies by visible behavior, not by modern biological taxonomy. The functional classification — 'it appears to chew the cud' — makes the system usable by non-specialists.
6. The *arnevet* ('hare') — like the hyrax, it moves its jaw in a way that resembles rumination (cecotrophy — re-ingesting partially digested material — may account for the observation). The text works within the observational categories available to an ancient Israelite farmer, not within modern zoological classification.
7. The *chazir* ('pig/swine') meets the hoof criterion but fails on rumination — the opposite pattern from the camel, hyrax, and hare. The pig became the iconic unclean animal in Jewish tradition, symbolizing hypocrisy: it displays the outward sign of purity (split hoof) while lacking the inner qualification (cud-chewing). The pig's prohibition is the most culturally persistent of all the dietary laws.
8. Two prohibitions: no eating (*mibesaram lo tokheilu*) and no touching carcasses (*uvenivlatam lo tigga'u*). The touch prohibition applies to dead bodies, not living animals — an Israelite could handle a living camel but not its carcass. Contact with a dead impure animal transmits impurity to the person touching it, requiring purification.
9. Water creatures have two criteria: *senapir* ('fins') and *qasqeset* ('scales'). Both must be present. Fish with fins and scales are permitted; everything else — shellfish, crustaceans, eels, catfish — is excluded. The criteria are again visible and observable: look at the animal's body.
10. Water creatures without both fins and scales are *sheqets* ('detestable, abomination') — a stronger term than *tamei* ('impure'). The word *sheqets* expresses visceral rejection, not merely ritual classification. The prohibition covers all aquatic life that fails the two-criteria test: shellfish, squid, eel, lobster, shrimp, and all invertebrate sea life.
11. The prohibition is total: no eating, and the carcasses themselves must be treated as detestable (*teshaqqetsu* — 'you shall detest/regard as abominable'). The verb is active — Israel must cultivate revulsion, not merely abstain. The dietary system shapes desire as well as behavior.
12. A summary restatement of v9-11: the criterion (fins and scales) and the consequence (*sheqets*) are stated once more for clarity. The repetition ensures no ambiguity about the water-creature rule.
13. The bird list (v13-19) operates differently from land and water animals — no general criteria are given, only a list of prohibited species. The list consists primarily of raptors and scavengers: birds that eat flesh or carrion. The *neshar* ('eagle/vulture'), *peres* ('bearded vulture/ossifrage'), and *ozniyyah* ('black vulture/osprey') head the list. The exact identification of several birds is uncertain, but the pattern is clear: predators and carrion-eaters are excluded.
14. The *da'ah* ('kite') and *ayyah* ('falcon/hawk') — predatory birds. The phrase *leminah* ('of every kind') indicates that all species within the falcon family are included in the prohibition.

15. The orev ('raven') — a scavenger that eats both carrion and live prey. 'Every kind' (leminno) includes crows and related species. Ravens are prominent in biblical narrative: they fed Elijah (1 Kgs 17:6) and are noted by Jesus as recipients of God's provision (Luke 12:24).
16. Four more prohibited birds: bat hayya'anah ('ostrich' or 'desert owl'), tachmas ('nighthawk/nightjar'), shachaf ('seagull/gull'), and nets ('hawk/sparrowhawk'). The identifications are approximate — ancient Hebrew bird terminology does not map precisely to modern ornithological classification.
17. Three more: kos ('little owl'), shalakh ('cormorant/fish-eating bird'), and yanshuf ('great owl/eagle-owl'). Owls appear three times in the list (v16, 17, 18), suggesting several species of nocturnal predatory birds are in view.
18. Tinshemeth ('barn owl' or 'white owl' — KJV's 'swan' is likely incorrect), qa'at ('pelican'), and racham ('carrion vulture/Egyptian vulture'). The racham's name comes from racham ('compassion') — possibly because the Egyptian vulture was observed caring for its young with unusual tenderness.
19. The chasidah ('stork' — from chesed, 'loving-kindness,' perhaps because of its family devotion), anafah ('heron'), dukhifat ('hoopoe'), and atalef ('bat'). The bat, a mammal, is classified with birds because the text groups by locomotion (flying creatures), not by modern biological taxonomy. The system classifies by observable behavior: if it flies, it belongs in the bird category.
20. The fourth category: sherets ha'of ('winged swarming creatures') that walk on four legs — insects and similar small creatures. The general rule: they are sheqets ('detestable'). The phrase holekh al-arba ('walking on four') describes the perception of insect locomotion — insects have six legs, but the two hind jumping legs of some species (v21) are distinguished from the four 'walking' legs.
21. The exception: insects with kera'ayim mimma'al leraglav ('jointed hind legs above their feet') designed for leaping (lenatter — 'to spring, to leap'). The grasshopper/locust family has powerful jumping legs visually distinct from their walking legs. This anatomical feature creates the criteria for the one permitted insect group.
22. Four permitted insect types: arbeh ('locust'), sol'am ('bald locust/cricket'), chargol ('cricket/katydid'), and chagav ('grasshopper'). All are leaping insects from the Orthoptera order. The leminno/leminnehu ('of every kind') extends permission to all species within each type. These insects were an important protein source in the ancient Near East — John the Baptist ate locusts (Matt 3:4).
23. Summary: everything in this category except the four leaping-insect types is forbidden. The principle: among the smallest creatures, only those with a specific anatomical feature (jumping legs) are permitted. The system is comprehensive — no animal category is left unaddressed.
24. The chapter shifts from dietary laws (what to eat) to impurity transmission (what contact produces). Touching a carcass (nevelah) transmits impurity that lasts ad-ha'erev ('until evening') — sundown ends the impurity period. The impurity is temporary and self-resolving; it does not require sacrifice, only time.
25. Carrying (nosei) — more intensive contact than touching — requires laundering (yekhabbeis begadav) in addition to waiting until evening. The graduated response: touching requires only time; carrying requires washing plus time. Greater contact produces greater purification requirements.
26. The touch-impurity rule extends to any animal that fails either criterion (hoof or cud). This covers horses, donkeys, dogs, cats — all common domestic animals that are not ruminants with split hooves. Contact with their carcasses transmits impurity. Living contact with these animals is not addressed — the prohibition concerns dead bodies.
27. Animals that walk al-kappav ('on its paws' — feet with pads rather than hooves): cats, dogs, bears, lions, etc. These are excluded because they lack the split-hoof criterion entirely. Their carcasses transmit impurity through contact.
28. The same carrying-impurity rule as v25: washing clothes plus waiting until evening. The system is consistent — the same contact produces the same purification requirement regardless of the specific animal.
29. A new category: sherets hashorets al-ha'arets ('swarming creatures that swarm on the ground') — small ground-dwelling animals. Eight are listed (v29-30): choled ('weasel/mole rat'), akhbar ('mouse/rat'), tsav ('large lizard/toad'), and five more lizard species. These animals' carcasses are particularly potent sources of impurity (v31-38) because they are small, common, and easily contacted accidentally.
30. Five more small reptiles: anaqah ('gecko'), koach ('monitor lizard/power lizard'), leta'ah ('wall lizard'), chomet ('skink/sand lizard'), and tinshemeth ('chameleon' — the same word used for a bird in v18, possibly a different animal). The exact identifications are uncertain, but all are small ground-dwelling reptiles common in the Near East.
31. The eight swarming creatures (v29-30) transmit impurity through touch when dead (bemotam — 'when they die'). The specificity 'when they die' confirms that living contact does not produce impurity — only carcass contact. The following verses (v32-38) detail how this impurity affects objects and food.
32. Objects that contact a dead swarming creature become tamei. Four material categories: wood (ets), cloth (beged), leather (or), and sackcloth (saq). The purification: bamayim yuva ('it shall be brought into water' — immersion) plus waiting until evening. After both steps, vetaher ('it becomes clean'). The purification is simple and accessible — water and time restore the object to tahor status.
33. Clay vessels (keli-cheres) cannot be purified — they must be broken (oto tishboru). Clay is porous and absorbs impurity permanently, unlike wood, leather, or metal which can be washed. The same principle appears in the chata't legislation (6:21): clay absorbs holiness or impurity irreversibly. The breaking requirement means clay vessels are disposable in the purity system — a significant economic cost that the system accepts.

34. Food and drink in a contaminated clay vessel are also rendered impure. The chain of impurity: dead creature → clay vessel → food/drink inside. Wet food is more susceptible than dry (v37-38 will clarify). The system tracks impurity transmission through contact chains — each link in the chain must be addressed.
35. Even ovens (tannur) and cooking stoves (kirayim) — built structures made of clay — must be demolished (yutats — 'smashed, torn down') if contaminated. These are not small vessels but built-in household installations. The cost of impurity can be substantial — replacing an oven is a significant household disruption. The system does not exempt expensive items from purification requirements.
36. The exception: ma'yan uvor miqveh-mayim ('a spring or cistern, a gathering of water') — natural water sources cannot become permanently impure. Running water and large collected water maintain their tahor status because the water's volume overwhelms the contamination. This principle underlies the later mikveh (ritual immersion pool) practice: gathered water purifies what is immersed in it. The person who touches the carcass within the water is still impure, but the water itself remains clean.
37. Dry seed intended for planting (zera zeru'a asher yizzarea — 'sowing seed that is to be sown') is not made impure by carcass contact. Dry surfaces do not absorb impurity the way wet or porous surfaces do. The practical effect: a farmer does not lose an entire crop if a dead lizard falls on dry seed grain.
38. Wet seed is susceptible — ki yuttan-mayim al-zera ('if water is put on the seed'). Moisture activates the capacity to absorb impurity. The dry/wet distinction (v37 vs v38) is the key variable: the same contact produces different results depending on whether water is present. This principle will govern much of later rabbinic purity law.
39. Even a clean/permitted animal, if it dies naturally (yomut — not slaughtered properly), produces impurity through contact. The distinction between nevelah (an animal that dies on its own) and shechitah (proper ritual slaughter) is critical: the method of death determines whether the meat is edible and whether the carcass transmits impurity.
40. Two levels of contact with a clean animal's nevelah: eating (ha'okhel) and carrying (hannosei). Both require laundering plus evening wait. Eating nevelah produces the same level of impurity as carrying it — the impurity is from the mode of death (natural, not slaughtered), not from the animal itself.
41. A general prohibition on ground-swarmed creatures (beyond the eight named in v29-30): kol-hashereets hashorets al-ha'arets sheqets hu ('every swarming thing that swarms on the ground is detestable'). The permitted locusts/grasshoppers (v21-22) are excluded because they leap rather than swarm along the ground.
42. Three locomotion categories cover all swarming creatures: holekh al-gachon ('moves on its belly' — snakes, worms), holekh al-arba ('walks on four' — lizards, rodents), and marbeh raglayim ('many legs' — centipedes, millipedes). The classification by movement type ensures comprehensive coverage: belly-crawlers, four-leggers, and many-leggers together include every ground-swarmed creature.
43. The dietary laws shift from external classification to internal transformation: al-teshaqetsu et-nafshoteikhem ('do not make your souls/selves detestable'). What you eat affects what you are — consuming forbidden creatures makes the person sheqets, not just the food. The reflexive language (yourselves) emphasizes that dietary choices shape identity. The wordplay veniTMetem bam ('and you will become defiled/closed') may pun on tamei ('impure') and atum ('closed, sealed') — impurity closes the person off from God's presence.
44. The theological foundation of the dietary laws: ki ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('for I am the LORD your God') followed by vehiqdashem vihyitem qedoshim ki qadosh ani ('consecrate yourselves and be holy, for I am holy'). The connection between divine holiness and dietary practice is direct: God's holiness requires Israel's holiness, and Israel's holiness extends to the table. The dietary laws are not a separate category from the holiness laws — they are the holiness laws applied to food. What enters the body matters because the body belongs to a holy God.
45. The exodus identity grounds the holiness obligation: ani YHWH hamma'aleh etkhem me'erets Mitsrayim ('I am the LORD who brought you up out of Egypt'). The purpose of the exodus was lihyot lakhem le'Elohim ('to be your God') — not merely liberation but relationship. The dietary laws are part of the covenant package: God rescued Israel for holiness, and holiness includes eating differently. The second vihyitem qedoshim ki qadosh ani ('you shall be holy, for I am holy') reinforces the first (v44) — the thesis stated twice for emphasis.
46. The colophon lists all four categories covered: behemah ('land animals,' v2-8), of ('birds,' v13-19), nefesh hachayyah haromeset bammayim ('every living creature that moves in the water,' v9-12), and nefesh hashoretset al-ha'arets ('every swarming creature on the ground,' v20-42). The comprehensive scope ensures that every animal an Israelite might encounter is classified.
47. The chapter's closing verse uses the key verb from 10:10: lehavdil bein hattamei uvein hattahor ('to distinguish between the impure and the pure'). The dietary laws are the practical implementation of the priestly mandate to distinguish — the same verb (havdil) God used in creation to separate light from darkness, waters from waters (Gen 1:4, 6, 7). Israel's dietary distinctions participate in God's ordering of the world. Every meal is a miniature act of creation: separating what belongs from what does not.

12

Summary: *Postpartum purification laws specify periods of ritual impurity after childbirth: seven days for a boy (with circumcision on the eighth day) followed by thirty-three days of purification blood, or fourteen days plus sixty-six days for a girl. The mother brings a burnt offering and purification offering to complete her restoration.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Leviticus's briefest chapter establishes that childbirth -- the most life-giving act -- produces ritual impurity. This is not a moral judgment on mother or child but a recognition that birth involves blood and the boundary zone between life and death. The circumcision command is embedded within purification law, linking covenant identity to the mother's ritual restoration.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ki tazria ("when she conceives," literally "when she produces seed") uses agricultural language for reproduction, and we rendered it with the biological sense. The term bidmei tohorah ("in the blood of purification," v4) describes a transitional state -- not fully impure but not yet able to touch holy things. We rendered niddah as "menstrual impurity" to clarify the biological basis while preserving the ritual dimension.*

Connections: *Mary and Joseph's offering at Jesus's presentation (Luke 2:22-24) follows these regulations exactly, bringing the poor person's birds rather than a lamb. The eighth-day circumcision connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Gen 17:10-14). The asymmetric purification periods (40 vs. 80 days) remain debated; the text offers no explicit rationale.*

1The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: 2Speak to the children of Israel and say: When a woman conceives and gives birth to a male child, she shall be ritually unclean for seven days — she shall be unclean as during the days of her menstrual impurity. 3 On the eighth day, the child's foreskin shall be circumcised. 4Then for thirty-three days she shall remain in a state of purification from her bleeding. She shall not touch any holy thing or enter the sanctuary until her days of purification are complete. 5But if she gives birth to a female child, she shall be ritually unclean for two weeks, as during her menstrual period. Then for sixty-six days she shall remain in a state of purification from her bleeding. 6When her days of purification are complete — whether for a son or a daughter — she shall bring a yearling lamb for a burnt offering and a young pigeon or a turtledove for a sin offering, to the entrance of the tent of meeting, to the priest. 7The priest shall present it before the LORD and make atonement for her, and she will be purified from the flow of her blood. This is the instruction for a woman who gives birth, whether to a male or a female child. 8If she cannot afford a lamb, she shall take two turtledoves or two young pigeons — one for a burnt offering and one for a sin offering. The priest shall make atonement for her, and she will be clean.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Leviticus 12 is the briefest chapter in Leviticus — only eight verses — but it establishes the principle that childbirth, the most life-giving human act, produces ritual impurity. This is not a moral judgment on the mother or the child but a recognition that the processes of birth involve blood and bodily fluids that place the mother in the boundary zone between life and death. The purity system provides the path back.
2. The phrase ki tazria ('when she conceives' — literally 'when she produces seed') uses agricultural language for human reproduction. The period of impurity after a male birth is seven days, equated with the niddah period (kimei niddat devotah — 'as the days of her menstrual separation'). The impurity is not about the baby or the act of birth being sinful — it results from the discharge of blood and bodily fluids, which place the woman in contact with the life-death boundary that produces ritual impurity throughout the Levitical system.
3. The circumcision instruction (yimmol besar orlato — 'the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised') is embedded within the postpartum purification legislation, linking birth and covenant. The eighth day (yom hashemini) timing may relate to the seven-day impurity period: the child enters the covenant on the day after the mother's initial impurity period ends. Circumcision is the sign of the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 17:10-14), placed here among purity laws because covenant identity and ritual fitness are interconnected.
4. After the initial seven-day impurity, a thirty-three-day period of bidmei tohorah ('in the blood of purification') follows — a transitional state between full impurity and complete purity. During this time she is not fully tamei (she does not transmit impurity to others by contact) but she cannot touch holy objects (bekhol qodesh lo tigga) or enter the sanctuary (ve'el hamiqdash lo tavo). The total period for a male birth is forty days (7 + 33). The two restrictions — no contact with holy things, no sanctuary access — define the limits of her transitional state.

5. The purification period for a female birth is doubled: fourteen days of impurity (shevu'ayim — 'two weeks') plus sixty-six days of transitional purification, totaling eighty days versus forty for a male birth. The reason for the asymmetry is not stated in the text and has been debated extensively. Some scholars suggest it relates to the daughter's future reproductive capacity — the purification covers both the mother's and the potential daughter's biological status. Others see it as reflecting the additional blood loss sometimes associated with female births. The text does not explain the difference, and the translator should not impose an interpretation the text does not provide.
6. The purification offering is the same regardless of the child's sex: a lamb (kevesh ben shenato — 'a lamb in its first year') for the burnt offering (olah — complete devotion) and a bird (ben yonah o tor — 'a young pigeon or a turtledove') for the sin offering (chata't — purification). The burnt offering expresses renewed devotion after the period of separation; the sin offering purifies the sanctuary from any contamination the impurity may have caused. Together, the offerings restore the woman to full participation in worship.
7. The kippur formula (vekipper aleiha — 'he shall make atonement for her') and the purification result (vetaharah mimmeqor dameiha — 'she shall be purified from the source/flow of her blood') are stated together. The atonement here is not for the sin of childbirth (which is not a sin) but for the ritual impurity caused by the blood discharge. The closing formula zot torat hayyoledet ('this is the instruction for the woman who gives birth') uses torah in its technical legal sense — a ruling for a specific category of case.
8. The poor-person provision (im lo timtsa yadah dei seh — 'if her hand cannot find enough for a lamb') mirrors the sliding scale of Leviticus 5:7 and 14:21-22: purification is available regardless of economic status. Two birds (turtledoves or pigeons) substitute for the lamb. This is the offering Mary brought after the birth of Jesus (Luke 2:24), indicating the family's economic circumstances. The final word vetaherah ('she shall be clean') restores full ritual fitness — the woman returns to complete participation in community worship and sanctuary access.

13

Summary: *The priest examines skin conditions to determine whether they constitute tsara'at (traditionally "leprosy") requiring exclusion from the community. Detailed diagnostic criteria are given for various presentations on skin, hair, raw flesh, burns, scalp conditions, and even fabric. The person declared impure must dwell alone outside the camp.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The priest functions as a ritual diagnostician, not a physician -- he determines status before God, not medical treatment. The Hebrew tsara'at is emphatically not Hansen's disease (modern leprosy); it describes a range of surface conditions on skin, fabric, and later on house walls. The excluded person's cry "Unclean! Unclean!" (v45) is both warning and lament.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered tsara'at as "skin disease" throughout, rejecting the KJV's "leprosy" as medically misleading and stigmatizing. The word nega ("mark, infection," from n-g-', "to touch, to strike") required a rendering that conveyed both the visible symptom and the sense of divine affliction. The priestly verb timme ("declare unclean") is a judicial pronouncement, not a medical diagnosis, and we preserved that distinction.*

Connections: *Miriam's tsara'at (Num 12:10-15) and Naaman's (2 Kgs 5) illustrate these regulations in narrative. Jesus's healings of people with skin disease (Mark 1:40-45) engage these purity categories directly, and He sends the healed to the priest as Leviticus requires. The fabric inspection (v47-59) extends the principle that impurity can affect Israel's material world, not just its bodies.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying: ²When a person develops a swelling, a rash, or a shiny spot on the skin of their body, and it becomes a mark of skin disease on the skin of their body, that person shall be brought to Aaron the priest or to one of his sons, the priests. ³The priest shall examine the infection on the skin of the body. If the hair in the infected area has turned white and the infection appears to go deeper than the skin surface, it is a case of skin disease. The priest shall examine him and declare him unclean. ⁴But if the shiny spot is white on the skin of the body, and it does not appear to be deeper than the skin, and the hair in it has not turned white, the priest shall isolate the person with the infection for seven days. ⁵The priest shall examine him on the seventh day, and if the infection appears unchanged to his eye and has not spread on the skin, the priest shall isolate him for another seven days. ⁶The priest shall examine him again on the seventh day, and if the infection has faded and has not spread on the skin, the priest shall declare him clean. It is only a rash. He shall wash his clothes, and he will be clean. ⁷But if the rash has spread further on the skin after he was shown to the priest for his cleansing, he shall appear before the priest again. ⁸The priest shall examine him, and if the rash has indeed spread on the

skin, the priest shall declare him unclean. It is a skin disease. ⁹When a skin disease infection is on a person, he shall be brought to the priest. ¹⁰The priest shall examine him, and if there is a white swelling on the skin that has turned the hair white, and there is raw flesh visible within the swelling, ¹¹it is a chronic skin disease in the skin of his body. The priest shall declare him unclean. He shall not isolate him, because he is already unclean. ¹²If the skin disease breaks out extensively on the skin, and the disease covers all the skin of the infected person from head to foot — everywhere the priest can see — ¹³the priest shall examine him, and if the disease has covered his entire body, he shall declare the person with the infection clean. It has all turned white — he is clean. ¹⁴But on the day that raw flesh appears on him, he shall be unclean. ¹⁵The priest shall examine the raw flesh and declare him unclean. The raw flesh is impure — it is a skin disease. ¹⁶Or if the raw flesh returns to its former state and turns white, he shall come to the priest. ¹⁷The priest shall examine him, and if the infection has turned white, the priest shall declare the infected person clean. He is clean. ¹⁸When the skin of a body has a boil that has healed, ¹⁹and in the place of the boil a white swelling or a reddish-white shiny spot has developed, it shall be shown to the priest. ²⁰The priest shall examine it, and if it appears deeper than the surrounding skin and its hair has turned white, the priest shall declare him unclean. It is a skin disease that has broken out from the boil. ²¹But if the priest examines it and there are no white hairs in it, and it is not deeper than the skin but has faded, the priest shall isolate him for seven days. ²²If it has spread further on the skin, the priest shall declare him unclean. It is an infection. ²³But if the shiny spot stays in its place and has not spread, it is the scar of the boil, and the priest shall declare him clean. ²⁴Or when the skin of the body has a burn from fire, and the raw area of the burn becomes a reddish-white or white shiny spot, ²⁵The priest shall examine it, and if the hair in the shiny spot has turned white and it appears deeper than the skin, it is a skin disease that has broken out from the burn. The priest shall declare him unclean — it is a skin disease infection. ²⁶But if the priest examines it and there is no white hair in the shiny spot, and it is not deeper than the skin but has faded, the priest shall isolate him for seven days. ²⁷The priest shall examine him on the seventh day. If it has spread further on the skin, the priest shall declare him unclean — it is a skin disease infection. ²⁸But if the shiny spot stays in its place and has not spread on the skin but has faded, it is a swelling from the burn. The priest shall declare him clean, because it is a scar from the burn. ²⁹When a man or woman has an infection on the head or on the beard, ³⁰The priest shall examine the infection, and if it appears deeper than the skin and has thin, yellowish hair in it, the priest shall declare him unclean. It is a scaly infection — a skin disease of the head or beard. ³¹When the priest examines the scaly infection and it does not appear deeper than the skin, but there is no dark hair in it, the priest shall isolate the person with the scaly infection for seven days. ³²On the seventh day the priest shall examine the infection. If the scaly infection has not spread, and there is no yellowish hair in it, and the scaly infection does not appear deeper than the skin, ³³he shall shave himself, but he shall not shave the area of the scaly infection. The priest shall isolate him for another seven days. ³⁴On the seventh day the priest shall examine the scaly infection, and if the scaly infection has not spread on the skin and does not appear deeper than the skin, the priest shall declare him clean. He shall wash his clothes and be clean. ³⁵But if the scaly infection spreads further on the skin after his cleansing, ³⁶The priest shall examine him, and if the scaly infection has spread on the skin, the priest need not look for yellowish hair — he is unclean. ³⁷But if in the priest's judgment the scaly infection is contained and dark hair has grown in it, the scaly infection is healed. He is clean, and the priest shall declare him clean. ³⁸When a man or woman has spots on the skin of their body — white spots — ³⁹the priest shall examine them, and if the spots on the skin of their body are dull white, it is a harmless rash that has broken out on the skin. He is clean. ⁴⁰When a man's hair falls out from the back of his head, he is bald. He is clean. ⁴¹And if his hair falls out from the front of his head, he has a receding hairline. He is clean. ⁴²But if a reddish-white infection develops on the bald area of the crown or the forehead, it is a skin disease breaking out on his bald area. ⁴³The priest shall examine him, and if the swelling of the infection is reddish-white on his bald crown or bald forehead, resembling the appearance of skin disease on body skin, ⁴⁴He is a person with skin disease — he is unclean. The priest shall certainly declare him unclean; his infection is on his head. ⁴⁵The person with the skin disease who bears the infection — his clothes shall be torn, his hair shall hang loose, he shall cover his upper lip, and he shall call out, 'Unclean! Unclean!' ⁴⁶For as long as the infection is on him, he shall be unclean. He is impure. He shall live alone; his dwelling shall be outside the camp. ⁴⁷When a garment has a mark of contamination in it — whether a wool garment or a linen garment, ⁴⁸whether in the warp or the woof of linen or wool, or in leather or in anything

made of leather — ⁴⁹and the mark is greenish or reddish in the garment or in the leather, whether in the warp or woof or in any leather article, it is a contamination mark and shall be shown to the priest. ⁵⁰The priest shall examine the mark and isolate the affected item for seven days. ⁵¹He shall examine the mark on the seventh day. If the mark has spread in the garment — whether in the warp or the woof, or in the leather, or in any leather article made for use — it is a persistent contamination. The mark is unclean. ⁵²He shall burn the garment — whether the warp or the woof, whether of wool or linen — or any leather article that has the mark in it, because it is a persistent contamination. It shall be burned in fire. ⁵³But if the priest examines it and the mark has not spread in the garment — in the warp or the woof — or in any leather article, ⁵⁴the priest shall command them to wash the item that has the mark in it, and he shall isolate it for another seven days. ⁵⁵The priest shall examine the mark after it has been washed, and if the mark has not changed its appearance — even though it has not spread — it is unclean. You shall burn it in fire. It is a persistent corrosion, whether on the inner side or the outer side. ⁵⁶But if the priest examines it and the mark has faded after washing, he shall tear it out of the garment, or out of the leather, or out of the warp or the woof. ⁵⁷If it appears again in the garment — in the warp or the woof — or in any leather article, it is an outbreak. You shall burn the item that has the mark in fire. ⁵⁸But the garment — the warp or the woof — or any leather article that you wash, if the mark has disappeared from it, it shall be washed a second time and it will be clean. ⁵⁹This is the instruction regarding a contamination mark in a garment of wool or linen, in the warp or the woof, or in any leather article — for declaring it clean or declaring it unclean.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Both Moses and Aaron are addressed because Aaron and his sons will serve as the diagnosticians in the cases that follow. Unlike most Levitical instructions addressed to Moses alone, the inclusion of Aaron here signals that the priestly role in diagnosing skin disease is central to this chapter's function.
2. The Hebrew *adam* ('person') here is generic — it applies to any human being, not specifically a male. Three distinct symptoms are named: *se'et* (a raised swelling), *sapachat* (a spreading rash or scab), and *baheret* (a bright or shiny patch). These are technical diagnostic terms, each describing a different visible skin change that might indicate *tsara'at*.
2. The Hebrew *tsara'at* has been traditionally rendered 'leprosy' following the KJV and the Septuagint's *lepra*, but modern scholarship is unanimous that this is NOT Hansen's disease (modern leprosy). *Tsara'at* describes a range of visible skin conditions that render a person ritually unfit for God's presence. The rendering uses 'skin disease' throughout this chapter.
3. Two diagnostic criteria establish a positive diagnosis: (1) hair in the affected area has turned white (*hafakh lavan*), indicating the condition has penetrated to the hair follicle, and (2) the mark appears deeper than the surrounding skin surface (*amoq min ha'or*). Both criteria must be present for an immediate declaration of impurity.
3. The verb *timmé* ('declare unclean') is a priestly judicial pronouncement, not a medical diagnosis. The priest does not treat or prescribe; he determines ritual status. The person declared *tamei* is separated from the community and from access to sacred space — not as punishment, but because their condition places them in the liminal zone between life and death, which is incompatible with God's holy presence.
4. When the two diagnostic criteria from verse 3 are absent — the spot is not deeper and the hair has not whitened — the case is ambiguous. The priest does not pronounce a verdict but imposes a seven-day quarantine (*hisgir*, literally 'to shut in' or 'to confine'). This observation period reflects the care built into the system: an uncertain case gets time, not a hasty judgment.
5. The phrase *amad be'einav* ('stands in his eyes' — appears unchanged) describes a condition that has neither worsened nor improved. The Hebrew verb *pashah* ('to spread') becomes a key diagnostic marker throughout this chapter: spreading indicates active, dangerous *tsara'at*; containment suggests a benign condition. A second seven-day period is ordered, giving the condition a full fourteen days of observation before a final verdict.
6. The Hebrew *kehad* ('faded, dimmed') indicates the condition is resolving. The priest's verdict is positive: it is a *mispachath* (a harmless rash or scab), not *tsara'at*. The person is declared *tahor* (clean) but must still wash their garments — the period of isolation itself conferred a degree of ritual contamination that requires cleansing before full reintegration into the community.
7. The infinitive absolute *pasoah tifseh* (literally 'spreading it has spread') emphasizes the definitive nature of the spreading — this is not ambiguous growth but clear expansion. A case initially judged clean can be reopened if the condition worsens after the declaration. The system remains responsive to changing evidence.
8. The spreading rash reverses the earlier clean verdict. The paragraph marker (*pe*) in the Hebrew text at the end of this verse signals the close of the first diagnostic unit (verses 2-8). The principle established across these seven verses is consistent: depth + white hair = immediate impurity; spreading = impurity; containment + fading = purity.

9. This begins a new diagnostic unit (verses 9-17) dealing with established or chronic skin disease, as distinct from the new-onset cases in verses 2-8. The passive 'he shall be brought' (huva) suggests communal responsibility — the community ensures the affected person is seen by the priest.
10. Three diagnostic features mark this as chronic tsara'at: (1) a white swelling (se'et levanah), (2) whitened hair, and (3) michyat basar chai — literally 'living flesh sprouting,' meaning raw, exposed tissue within the swelling. The presence of raw flesh (as opposed to a fully whitened surface) paradoxically indicates an active, ongoing condition.
11. The Hebrew noshenet ('chronic, long-standing') from the root y-sh-n ('old') indicates this is not a new case requiring observation. No quarantine period is needed — the diagnosis is immediate and certain. The logic is practical: isolation serves uncertain cases. When the diagnosis is clear, further observation would be pointless.
12. The infinitive absolute paroach tifrach ('breaking out it has broken out') emphasizes completeness. The paradoxical case that follows (verses 12-17) is one of the most striking in Leviticus: a condition that covers the entire body is declared clean, while partial coverage is unclean. The phrase lekhol mar'eh eini hakohen ('to every appearance of the priest's eyes') underscores that this is a visual diagnostic — the priest must examine the entire body.
13. This is the most counterintuitive ruling in the chapter: total coverage means purity; partial coverage means impurity. The logic likely rests on the diagnostic principle that tsara'at is identified by contrast — diseased skin versus healthy skin. When the entire surface is uniformly white, there is no contrast, no boundary between affected and unaffected tissue. The condition has stabilized into a uniform state. Some scholars also see the fully whitened skin as indicating the disease has run its course and is no longer active.
14. The reappearance of basar chai ('living flesh' — raw, exposed tissue) within the whitened area breaks the uniform surface and reintroduces the boundary between affected and healthy tissue. This signals active disease, and the person's status reverts to tamei.
15. The emphatic repetition — 'the raw flesh is impure, it is tsara'at' — serves as a legal formula reinforcing the principle. Raw flesh within a whitened area is itself the marker of active disease. The priest's role remains declaratory: he pronounces a status based on visible evidence, not on any treatment he provides.
16. The verb yashuv ('returns') combined with nehpakh ('is changed') describes a reversal — the raw tissue heals over and becomes uniformly white again. The person initiates this visit (uva, 'he shall come'), unlike verse 2 where the community brings the person (huva, passive). A person aware of their own improvement seeks reassessment.
17. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the second diagnostic unit. The principle from verses 12-17 is internally consistent: uniformly white surface = clean; presence of raw flesh within the whitened area = unclean. This section demonstrates that the purity system is observational and procedural, not arbitrary.
18. This begins the third diagnostic unit (verses 18-23): skin disease arising from a healed boil (shechin). The term shechin refers to an infected sore or abscess. The concern is whether a healed boil site develops tsara'at symptoms — the disease can appear at sites of previous skin trauma.
19. The site of a healed boil (bimqom hashechin) is vulnerable to secondary conditions. The diagnostic signs at the boil site — white swelling (se'et levanah) or a reddish-white bright spot (baheret levanah adamdameth) — are the same categories from verse 2, now applied to a specific location.
20. The same two criteria from verse 3 apply: depth below the skin surface (shaphal min ha'or) and whitened hair. The diagnostic logic is consistent regardless of the skin condition's origin — whether from new onset (vv 2-8), chronic condition (vv 9-17), or healed boil (vv 18-23).
21. An ambiguous case at a boil site: the diagnostic criteria for tsara'at are absent (no white hair, not deeper), but the spot has not fully resolved (kehab, 'faded' or 'dimmed' — present but not gone). The same seven-day observation protocol from verse 4 applies.
22. Spreading (pasoah tifseh) remains the decisive negative indicator. The verdict is brief and final: nega hi — 'it is an infection.' The terseness of the pronouncement reflects its legal character.
23. The Hebrew tsarebet hashechin ('scar/burn mark of the boil') identifies the spot as residual scarring, not active disease. A contained, non-spreading mark at a former boil site is a normal healing remnant. The section marker (samekh) closes this diagnostic unit.
24. This begins the fourth diagnostic unit (verses 24-28): skin disease arising from a burn (mikhvat esh, literally 'burning of fire'). The pattern mirrors the boil section (vv 18-23): secondary changes at a trauma site are examined for tsara'at markers. The michyat hamikvah ('raw/living area of the burn') refers to the healing burn wound.
25. The same two diagnostic criteria — whitened hair and depth below the skin surface — yield the same verdict as in all previous sections. The system's internal consistency is notable: regardless of the origin site (fresh skin, chronic condition, healed boil, or burn wound), the diagnostic markers and their interpretation remain constant.
26. Identical criteria to the ambiguous boil case in verse 21: absent diagnostic markers plus a faded appearance triggers a seven-day isolation period. The structural parallelism between the boil section (vv 18-23) and the burn section (vv 24-28) is deliberate — the same procedural logic applies to both trauma-related secondary conditions.
27. As in every previous section, spreading after the observation period is the decisive negative marker. The verb pashah ('to spread') appears more than twenty times in this chapter, making it the single most important diagnostic term after tsara'at itself.

- 28.** The verdict mirrors verse 23 exactly: a contained, non-spreading, fading mark at a former burn site is tsarebet hamikvah ('scar of the burn'), not tsara'at. The paragraph marker (pe) closes this diagnostic unit.
- 29.** This begins the fifth diagnostic unit (verses 29-37), addressing infections in hairy areas — the scalp and the beard. Women are explicitly included (ish o ishah), confirming that the entire purity system applies equally regardless of sex. The head and beard are distinct diagnostic zones because hair follicle involvement is assessed differently than on bare skin.
- 30.** The diagnostic criteria for scalp/beard infections differ from skin infections: instead of white hair, the marker is se'ar tsahov daq ('thin yellow hair'). The term neteq (rendered 'scaly infection') specifically describes a condition affecting hairy areas, possibly ringworm or a similar fungal infection. The depth criterion remains the same.
- 31.** The absence of dark hair (se'ar shachor) in the affected area raises concern — healthy hair follicles should produce dark hair. But since the other diagnostic marker (depth) is absent, the case is ambiguous and goes to observation. The seven-day quarantine protocol applies to scalp infections just as it does to skin infections.
- 32.** Three negative findings after seven days: no spreading, no yellow hair, and no depth below the skin. All three must be absent for the observation to continue — any one positive finding would trigger an immediate unclean verdict. The list of criteria is exhaustive for this diagnostic category.
- 33.** The instruction to shave around (but not over) the infected area serves a diagnostic purpose: by clearing the surrounding hair, any spreading of the infection into previously healthy scalp will be immediately visible during the second examination. This is a practical clinical technique, not a ritual act.
- 34.** After fourteen days of observation (two seven-day periods), containment and absence of depth markers results in a clean verdict. As in verse 6, the person must wash garments before full reintegration — the quarantine itself has imposed a degree of ritual separation that requires formal conclusion.
- 35.** As with the rash in verse 7, a clean verdict can be reversed by subsequent spreading. The phrase acharei tohorato ('after his cleansing') indicates this is a recurrence or progression after a declaration of purity — the system remains open to new evidence.
- 36.** Spreading alone is now sufficient for an unclean verdict — the priest does not need to find yellow hair as a secondary marker. The verb yevaqqer ('shall search, shall investigate') is used here uniquely in Leviticus; in recurrence after a clean declaration, the threshold for an unclean finding is lower. Spreading after cleansing is itself diagnostic.
- 37.** The growth of dark hair (se'ar shachor) in the previously affected area is the definitive sign of healing — healthy follicles have resumed normal function. The term nirpa ('is healed') is one of the few times this chapter uses healing language. The section marker (samekh) closes this diagnostic unit.
- 38.** This brief unit (verses 38-39) addresses a benign condition: white spots on the skin that are not tsara'at. Both men and women are again explicitly included. The repetition beharot beharot levanot ('spots, white spots') uses the double noun for emphasis — these are distinctly, noticeably white patches.
- 39.** The diagnosis of bohaq (a harmless rash, possibly vitiligo or a mild depigmentation) is immediate — no quarantine required. The distinguishing marker is that the spots are kehot levanot ('dull white' or 'faded white') rather than bright white. Bohaq appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. The person is immediately declared clean because this condition has no bearing on ritual status.
- 40.** Natural baldness (qereach, baldness of the crown or back of the head) does not render a person tamei. The explicit statement of purity is necessary because hair loss could be confused with the neteq conditions described in verses 29-37. This verse prevents over-diagnosis by establishing that ordinary baldness is categorically clean.
- 41.** The Hebrew distinguishes between qereach (back-of-head baldness, v 40) and gibbeach (forehead or front-of-head baldness). Both are declared clean. The term mip'at panav ('from the side of his face') specifies the hairline receding from the front. This distinction between two types of hair loss demonstrates the precision of the diagnostic system.
- 42.** While baldness itself is clean, a reddish-white mark (nega lavan adamdam) on a bald area is potentially tsara'at — the bald scalp is not immune from skin disease. The diagnostic criteria shift: since there is no hair in the bald area, the hair-based markers (white hair, yellow hair) cannot apply, and the diagnosis relies on the appearance and color of the mark.
- 43.** The comparison kemar'eh tsara'at or basar ('like the appearance of skin disease on body skin') establishes that the same visual criteria used for skin elsewhere on the body apply to the bald scalp. The priest evaluates the bald area by analogy to the standards already established in earlier sections.
- 44.** The emphatic construction tamme yetamme'ennu ('declaring unclean he shall declare him unclean' — shall certainly declare him unclean) uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis. The final clause bero'sho nig'o ('on his head is his infection') may explain why the emphasis is needed: head infections may have been considered particularly serious because the head is the most visible part of the body, making the person's tamei status publicly apparent.
- 45.** The behavioral requirements for the person declared tamei mirror mourning customs: torn garments (begadav yihyu ferumim), disheveled hair (ro'sho yihyeh farua), covered mouth (al sapham ya'teh). The person publicly performs the signs of someone in a state of social death — separated from community, from worship, and from normal life. The outcry tamé tamé ('Unclean! Unclean!') serves as a warning so others can avoid contracting ritual impurity through contact.

45. These prescriptions are often read as cruel, but they serve a protective function within the purity system: they prevent the impurity from spreading to others and to the sanctuary, which would threaten God's continued presence among the people. The system's ultimate concern is preserving the conditions for divine dwelling.
46. The phrase *badad yeshev* ('he shall dwell alone') describes total separation from the camp — and therefore from the tabernacle at its center. Since the tabernacle is God's dwelling place, exclusion from the camp is exclusion from proximity to God's presence. The section marker (*samekh*) at the end signals the close of the human skin disease section. What follows (verses 47-59) addresses *tsara'at* in fabrics — a distinctly different diagnostic category.
46. This verse establishes the stakes of the entire diagnostic system: the consequence of a *tamei* declaration is not just social isolation but theological separation. The path back — through healing, priestly examination, and the purification ritual of chapter 14 — is the purity system's restorative purpose.
47. The chapter shifts from human skin disease to fabric contamination. The same term *tsara'at* applies to both, which is itself significant: the condition is defined by its visible characteristics and ritual implications, not by a single biological cause. The contamination of fabrics is likely describing mold, mildew, or fungal growth on textiles. Wool (*tsemer*) and linen (*pishtim*) were the primary textile materials in ancient Israel.
48. The Hebrew *sheti* (warp — the vertical threads held taut on the loom) and *erev* (woof — the horizontal threads woven through the warp) distinguish between the structural components of fabric. The inclusion of leather (or) and leather goods (*melekhet or*) extends the diagnostic system to animal hides, covering the full range of materials used in clothing, tents, and equipment.
49. The color indicators for fabric contamination differ from human skin: *yeraqraq* ('greenish') and *adamdam* ('reddish') describe the discoloration caused by mold or mildew growth. These colors — green and red — are distinct from the white and reddish-white markers of human skin *tsara'at*, reflecting different underlying causes while sharing the same diagnostic category.
50. The same seven-day observation protocol applies to contaminated fabrics as to ambiguous human skin cases. The verb *hisgir* ('isolate, confine') is used for the garment itself — the item, not a person, is quarantined. The parallel procedure underscores that *tsara'at* in the Levitical system is a diagnostic category defined by protocol, not by biology.
51. The term *mam'eret* ('persistent, malignant, fretting') from the root *m-l-r* describes contamination that is active and destructive — literally 'embittering' or 'irritating.' This is contamination that consumes or corrodes the material. The comprehensive list of affected items (garment, warp, woof, leather, any leather article) ensures no category of textile or hide is excluded from this ruling.
52. Burning (*saraph*) is the prescribed destruction method for persistently contaminated items. The item cannot be salvaged — the contamination has penetrated the material. This is the most severe outcome for fabric *tsara'at*, paralleling the permanent impurity declaration for human cases. The total destruction ensures no contaminated material remains in proximity to the camp and the tabernacle.
53. Non-spreading contamination after seven days triggers a secondary procedure (washing and re-observation), just as non-spreading human skin conditions trigger a second observation period. The system consistently gives ambiguous cases additional time and intervention before rendering a final verdict.
54. The washing (*kibbsu*) is an active intervention — unlike the human cases where no treatment is applied during observation. For fabrics, washing is an attempt to remove the contamination before a second inspection. This practical step reflects the different nature of fabric contamination (likely mold or mildew, which can sometimes be removed by washing).
55. A mark that resists washing — even if it has not spread — is declared unclean and must be burned. The term *pecheteth* ('corrosion, worn spot, pit') from the root *p-ch-t* ('to hollow out, to corrode') indicates the contamination has eaten into the material. The phrase *beqarachto o vegabbachto* ('on its bald side or its hairy side') uses the same vocabulary as the human baldness terms in verses 40-42, now applied metaphorically to the worn versus unworn surface of a fabric — an intriguing verbal echo.
56. A faded mark after washing represents partial decontamination — the contaminated section can be removed (*qara*, 'tear, rip') without destroying the entire garment. This is the most favorable outcome short of complete disappearance: the item is salvaged by excising the affected portion. The procedure reflects practical economy — in an ancient context, textiles and leather were valuable and not easily replaced.
57. Recurrence after excision (*porachat hi*, 'it is breaking out') means the contamination has spread beyond the removed section. At this point, total destruction by fire is required. The escalating response — observation, washing, excision, burning — shows a graduated system that only resorts to total destruction when all lesser interventions have failed.
58. The positive outcome: if washing successfully removes the contamination (*sar mehem hanega*, 'the mark has departed from them'), a second washing confirms the item's cleanliness. The double washing parallels the double inspection period in human cases — the system builds in confirmation steps before declaring purity. The final word *taher* ('clean') restores the item to full usability.
59. The closing formula *zot torat* ('this is the instruction/law of') uses *torah* in its technical legal sense: a body of authoritative instruction for a specific category of case. The verb forms *lethaharo o letamme'o* ('to declare it clean or to declare it unclean') summarize the entire chapter's purpose: the priest's role is judicial classification, determining the ritual status of persons and objects so that the boundaries between clean and unclean — and therefore between the camp and the wilderness, between the community and isolation — are maintained.

59. The paragraph marker (pe) closes both the fabric section and the entire chapter. Chapter 14 will address the restoration process — the path from unclean back to clean.

14

Summary: *The purification ritual for a healed person with skin disease involves two stages: an initial ceremony outside the camp with two birds (one slaughtered, one released alive), cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop; then a seven-day process culminating in offerings at the tent of meeting. The chapter also addresses tsara'at on house walls.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two-bird ritual is unique to purification: one bird dies and the other is released alive, dipped in the blood of the first. The living bird carries the impurity away, anticipating the Yom Kippur scapegoat. The priest goes out to the excluded person -- a striking image of the purity system's restorative purpose. Blood is applied to the healed person's right ear, thumb, and toe, the same pattern as priestly ordination (ch 8).*

Translation Friction: *The term metsora ("person with skin disease") is a participial form describing a state, not an identity, and we rendered it accordingly. The phrase ets erez ("cedar wood") paired with ezov ("hyssop") -- the tallest and smallest plants -- symbolically brackets the entire plant kingdom, and we noted this range without imposing an allegory. The house-wall tsara'at (v33-53) strained English because the same Hebrew term covers both human skin and building surfaces.*

Connections: *The two-bird ritual parallels the two-goat Yom Kippur ceremony (ch 16). The blood on ear, thumb, and toe connects to the priestly ordination of 8:23-24. The cedar-hyssop-scarlet combination reappears in the red heifer ritual (Num 19:6). Jesus's command "show yourself to the priest" (Matt 8:4) references this chapter's procedure.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: ²This shall be the instruction for the person with skin disease on the day of his purification. He shall be brought to the priest. ³The priest shall go out to a place outside the camp and examine the person. If the skin disease infection has healed in the person with the disease, ⁴the priest shall order that two live, clean birds be taken for the one being purified, along with cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop. ⁵The priest shall command that one of the birds be slaughtered over an earthenware vessel containing fresh water. ⁶He shall take the living bird along with the cedar wood, the scarlet yarn, and the hyssop, and dip them — including the living bird — in the blood of the slaughtered bird mixed with the fresh water. ⁷He shall sprinkle it seven times on the one being purified from the skin disease, and shall declare him clean. Then he shall release the living bird over the open field. ⁸The one being purified shall wash his clothes, shave off all his hair, and bathe in water, and he will be clean. After that he may enter the camp, but he shall stay outside his tent for seven days. ⁹On the seventh day he shall shave off all his hair — his head, his beard, his eyebrows — all his hair he shall shave off. He shall wash his clothes and bathe his body in water, and he will be clean. ¹⁰On the eighth day he shall take two male lambs without defect, one yearling female lamb without defect, three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering, and one log of oil. ¹¹The priest who performs the purification shall present the person being purified, together with the offerings, before the LORD at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ¹²The priest shall take one of the male lambs and present it as a guilt offering, along with the log of oil, and elevate them as a wave offering before the LORD. ¹³He shall slaughter the lamb in the place where the sin offering and the burnt offering are slaughtered, in the holy area. For like the sin offering, the guilt offering belongs to the priest — it is most holy. ¹⁴The priest shall take some of the blood of the guilt offering and put it on the lobe of the right ear of the one being purified, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot. ¹⁵The priest shall take some of the log of oil and pour it into his own left palm. ¹⁶The priest shall dip his right finger in the oil that is in his left palm and sprinkle some of the oil with his finger seven times before the LORD. ¹⁷From the remaining oil in his palm, the priest shall put some on the lobe of the right ear of the one being purified, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot — on top of the blood of the guilt offering. ¹⁸The rest of the oil that is in the priest's palm he shall put on the head of the one being purified. And the priest shall make atonement for him before the LORD. ¹⁹The priest shall offer the sin offering and make atonement for the one being purified from his impurity. After that, he shall slaughter the burnt offering. ²

The priest shall offer the burnt offering and the grain offering on the altar. The priest shall make atonement for him, and he will be clean. ²¹But if he is poor and cannot afford that much, he shall take one male lamb as a guilt offering to be elevated as a wave offering, to make atonement for him, and one-tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering, and a log of oil, ²²along with two turtledoves or two young pigeons — whichever he can afford. One shall be a sin offering and the other a burnt offering. ²³He shall bring them on the eighth day for his purification to the priest, at the entrance of the tent of meeting, before the LORD. ²⁴The priest shall take the lamb of the guilt offering and the log of oil, and the priest shall elevate them as a wave offering before the LORD. ²⁵He shall slaughter the lamb of the guilt offering, and the priest shall take some of the blood of the guilt offering and put it on the lobe of the right ear of the one being purified, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot. ²⁶The priest shall pour some of the oil into his own left palm. ²⁷The priest shall sprinkle some of the oil in his left palm with his right finger seven times before the LORD. ²⁸The priest shall put some of the oil in his palm on the lobe of the right ear of the one being purified, on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot — on the place where the blood of the guilt offering was applied. ²⁹The rest of the oil in the priest's palm he shall put on the head of the one being purified, to make atonement for him before the LORD. ³⁰He shall then offer one of the turtledoves or young pigeons — whichever he can afford — ³¹whichever he can afford — one as a sin offering and one as a burnt offering, along with the grain offering. The priest shall make atonement for the one being purified before the LORD. ³²This is the instruction for the person who has a skin disease infection and whose means are insufficient for his purification. ³³The LORD spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying: ³⁴When you enter the land of Canaan, which I am giving you as a possession, and I place a contamination mark in a house in the land you possess, ³⁵the owner of the house shall come and report to the priest, saying, 'Something like a mark has appeared in my house.' ³⁶The priest shall order the house to be emptied before he enters to examine the mark, so that everything in the house will not become unclean. After that, the priest shall enter to examine the house. ³⁷He shall examine the mark, and if the mark is in the walls of the house — pitted depressions that are greenish or reddish, and they appear to be recessed below the wall surface — ³⁸the priest shall go out of the house to its entrance and quarantine the house for seven days. ³⁹The priest shall return on the seventh day and examine it. If the mark has spread in the walls of the house, ⁴⁰the priest shall order them to remove the stones that have the mark and throw them outside the city in an unclean place. ⁴¹He shall have the house scraped all around on the inside, and the plaster that is scraped off shall be dumped outside the city in an unclean place. ⁴²They shall take new stones and set them in place of the old stones, and he shall take fresh plaster and replaster the house. ⁴³If the mark returns and breaks out in the house after the stones have been removed, and after the house has been scraped and replastered, ⁴⁴the priest shall come and examine it. If the mark has spread in the house, it is a persistent contamination in the house — it is unclean. ⁴⁵He shall demolish the house — its stones, its timber, and all its plaster — and carry the materials outside the city to an unclean place. ⁴⁶Anyone who enters the house during all the time it is quarantined shall be unclean until evening. ⁴⁷Anyone who lies down in the house shall wash his clothes, and anyone who eats in the house shall wash his clothes. ⁴⁸But if the priest comes and examines it and the mark has not spread in the house after it was replastered, then the priest shall declare the house clean, because the mark has healed. ⁴⁹He shall take two birds, cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop to purify the house. ⁵⁰He shall slaughter one of the birds over an earthenware vessel containing fresh water. ⁵¹He shall take the cedar wood, the hyssop, the scarlet yarn, and the living bird, and dip them in the blood of the slaughtered bird and in the fresh water, and sprinkle the house seven times. ⁵²He shall purify the house with the blood of the bird, with the fresh water, with the living bird, with the cedar wood, with the hyssop, and with the scarlet yarn. ⁵³He shall release the living bird outside the city over the open field, and make atonement for the house. And it will be clean. ⁵⁴This is the instruction for every kind of skin disease infection and for scaly infections, ⁵⁵for contamination in garments and in houses, ⁵⁶for swellings, for rashes, and for shiny spots — ⁵⁷to give instruction for the day of uncleanness and for the day of cleanness. This is the instruction concerning skin disease.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Unlike Leviticus 13:1, Aaron is not addressed here — only Moses. The purification ritual that follows involves sacrificial elements that require Moses's legislative authority, while the diagnostic instructions of chapter 13 required Aaron's priestly diagnostic role.

2. The phrase *torat hametsora* ('instruction for the person with *tsara'at*') uses *torah* in its technical sense — a specific procedural ruling. The word *metsora* is the participial form of *tsara'at*, describing someone in a state of skin disease. The phrase *beyom tohorato* ('on the day of his purification') signals that healing has already occurred; what follows is the ritual restoration of the person's status from *tamei* to *tahor* — from exclusion to reintegration.
3. The priest goes out to the person — the person cannot come in, since they are still *tamei* and excluded from the camp (13:46). The verb *nirpa* ('has healed') is passive — the healing has happened, and the priest confirms it. The priest does not perform the healing; he verifies it and initiates the ritual of restoration. This going-out of the priest to meet the excluded person is a striking image of the purity system's restorative purpose.
4. The purification materials are rich in symbolism: two living birds (*tsipporim chayot tehoret* — living and ritually clean), cedar wood (*ets erez* — aromatic, decay-resistant), scarlet yarn (*sheni tola'at* — literally 'scarlet of the worm,' a deep red dye), and hyssop (*ezov* — a small aromatic plant used for sprinkling). The same combination appears in the red heifer ritual (Numbers 19:6). The use of two birds — one killed, one released alive — creates a ritual pairing unique to purification ceremonies.
5. The first bird is slaughtered (*shachat* — the technical term for ritual killing) over a clay vessel filled with *mayim chayyim* ('living water' — fresh, flowing water as opposed to stagnant water). The combination of blood and living water in the vessel creates the purification medium. The earthenware vessel (*keli cheres*) is unglazed clay, which absorbs the blood-water mixture and cannot be reused for ordinary purposes.
6. The living bird, cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop are all dipped together in the blood-water mixture. The living bird absorbs the symbolic contamination through this dipping — it will carry the impurity away when released (v 7), similar in concept to the scapegoat of Yom Kippur (16:21-22) that carries Israel's sins into the wilderness.
7. The sevenfold sprinkling (*hizzah sheva pe'amim*) is a purification act — seven being the number of completeness. The priest then declares the person *tahor* ('clean') — the first verbal restoration of status. The release of the living bird (*shillach*) into the open field (*al penei hasadeh*) carries the impurity away from the person and from the camp. This entire ritual takes place outside the camp; the person is not yet fully restored.
8. Three purification acts are required of the person: washing garments, complete shaving (*gillach et kol se'aro* — all hair, not just head hair), and immersion in water. The total shaving symbolizes a fresh start — the person emerges from the water as if newly born, without the hair that grew during the period of impurity. He may re-enter the camp but not yet his own tent, creating a transitional period between exclusion and full restoration.
9. A second complete shaving occurs on the seventh day, explicitly listing the areas: head (*ro'sho*), beard (*zeqano*), eyebrows (*gabbat einav*), and all remaining hair. The comprehensive list — 'all his hair he shall shave' repeated for emphasis — ensures nothing from the period of impurity remains. This second shaving, combined with garment washing and immersion, prepares the person for the sacrificial ritual on day eight.
10. The eighth-day offerings are substantial: two male lambs (for the guilt offering and the burnt offering), one female lamb (for the sin offering), fine flour with oil (for the grain offering), and a separate log of oil (for the anointing ritual). The Hebrew *temimim* ('without defect') is the standard sacrificial requirement — only unblemished animals are fit for offering. Three of the five offering types from Leviticus 1-7 appear here: *asham* (guilt offering), *chata't* (sin offering), and *olah* (burnt offering), along with the *minchah* (grain offering).
10. A log (approximately 0.3 liters or about two-thirds of a pint) is the smallest liquid measure in the Hebrew system. This oil will be used in the distinctive anointing ritual of verses 14-18.
11. The person now stands at the entrance of the tent of meeting (*petach ohel mo'ed*) — the threshold between the common space of the camp and the sacred space of the tabernacle. This is as close to God's presence as the person can come at this stage. The priest 'stands him' (*he'emid*) there — the language is formal and ceremonial. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') marks this as a formal appearance in God's presence.
12. The guilt offering (*asham*) is offered first — before the sin offering and burnt offering. The *asham* addresses specific trespass or violation; in this context, the person's impurity has kept them from fulfilling their obligations to God, and the *asham* compensates for that loss. The wave offering (*tenufah* — a ritual elevation or movement before the LORD) presents the offering to God before the actual sacrifice. The combination of *asham* and oil is unique to this purification rite.
13. The guilt offering lamb is slaughtered in the same sacred area (*maqom haqqodesh*) as the sin offering and burnt offering — the north side of the altar (cf. 1:11, 4:24, 7:2). The classification *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy') means this offering has the highest sanctity level — only the priests may eat of it, and only within the sacred precincts. The parallel to the sin offering (*kachata't ha'asham*) establishes that both offerings serve a similar function in restoring the person's relationship to the sacred.
14. The blood-application ritual — right ear lobe (*tenukh ozen*), right thumb (*bohen yad*), right big toe (*bohen regel*) — is identical to the priestly ordination ceremony in Exodus 29:20 and Leviticus 8:23-24. The healed person undergoes a ceremony structurally parallel to a priest being consecrated: both are being set apart for restored access to God's presence. The three extremities symbolize the whole person: hearing (ear), doing (hand), and walking (foot) — the person's entire life is reconsecrated.
15. The priest's left hand becomes a vessel for the oil, freeing the right hand (the dominant hand) for the application ritual that follows. The careful choreography of the priest's hands throughout this passage reflects the precision required in sacred ritual — each movement has a designated purpose.

16. The sevenfold sprinkling of oil before the LORD parallels the sevenfold sprinkling of the blood-water mixture in verse 7. Oil in the Levitical system represents consecration and the Spirit's anointing — it is applied to priests at ordination (8:12), to the tabernacle furniture, and here to the person being restored. The oil sprinkling is directed *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD'), toward the sacred space.
17. The oil is placed on the same three points as the blood (v 14) — right ear, right thumb, right big toe — but explicitly on top of the blood (*al dam ha'asham*). The layering is significant: blood first, then oil. Blood addresses the ritual contamination; oil consecrates and restores. The sequence moves from purification to sanctification — from removing impurity to adding holiness.
18. The remaining oil is poured on the person's head (*al rosh hamittaher*), completing the anointing — an act associated with kings, priests, and the consecration of sacred objects. The kippur formula appears here for the first time in this chapter: *vekipper alav hakohen lifnei YHWH* ('the priest shall make atonement for him before the LORD'). In this context, atonement restores ritual status rather than addressing moral sin.
18. The parallel to priestly ordination (Exodus 29, Leviticus 8) is now complete: the healed person has undergone blood application to ear, thumb, and toe (like a new priest) and oil anointing on the head (like a new king). The person with skin disease is restored not merely to ordinary status but through a ceremony that echoes the most sacred consecration rituals in Israel.
19. The sin offering (*chata't*) follows the guilt offering — it addresses the contamination of sacred space that the person's impurity may have caused. The phrase *mittum'ato* ('from his impurity') makes explicit that this atonement is for ritual impurity, not moral transgression. The burnt offering (*olah*) comes last in sequence — after purification (*chata't*) and reparation (*asham*), the person offers total devotion (*olah*, which is entirely consumed on the altar). The three offerings move from compensation to purification to consecration.
20. The burnt offering (*olah* — entirely consumed, representing complete devotion) and the grain offering (*minchah* — the fruit of human labor offered to God) complete the sacrificial sequence. The second kippur formula appears, and the final word of the section is *vetaher* ('and he will be clean'). The entire journey — from exclusion outside the camp, through the bird ritual, shaving, washing, the eight-day waiting period, and the four-offering sacrificial sequence — culminates in this single word: clean. The person is fully restored to the community and to God's presence.
20. The section marker (*samekh*) indicates the end of the standard purification procedure. What follows (vv 21-32) addresses the same ritual for those who cannot afford the full offering.
21. The phrase *im dal hu ve'ein yado masseget* ('if he is poor and his hand cannot reach') introduces a sliding-scale provision that ensures no one is excluded from purification by poverty. The guilt offering (*asham*) remains the same — one lamb — because the *asham* addresses a specific obligation that does not change with economic status. But the sin offering and burnt offering are reduced (v 22). The system preserves theological necessity while accommodating economic reality.
22. Birds (*torim* or *benei yonah* — turtledoves or young pigeons) substitute for the two additional lambs required in the standard procedure (v 10). This is the same substitution permitted for postpartum purification (12:8) and throughout the offering system. The provision ensures that the poorest Israelite can complete the purification ritual. Poverty does not prevent restoration to God's presence.
23. The timing (eighth day), location (entrance of the tent of meeting), and presentation (before the LORD) are identical to the standard procedure in verse 11. The poor person stands in the same place, at the same time, before the same God. The reduced offering does not reduce the dignity or completeness of the ritual.
24. The guilt offering and oil ritual (vv 24-29) repeats the standard procedure (vv 12-18) without modification. The blood-and-oil application to ear, thumb, and toe is the same for the poor person as for the wealthy. The anointing ritual does not have a reduced version — the person's body receives the same consecrating touch regardless of economic status.
25. Identical to verse 14. The blood application to the three extremities — ear, hand, foot — reconsecrates the whole person: what they hear, what they do, where they go. This ritual element is non-negotiable regardless of the person's economic status.
26. Identical to verse 15. The oil choreography is the same for both versions of the ritual.
27. Identical to verse 16. The sevenfold sprinkling before the LORD is preserved in the reduced-cost version — the number seven signifies completeness and cannot be reduced.
28. Identical to verse 17. The layering of oil over blood on the three extremities is the same. The phrase *al meqom dam ha'asham* ('on the place of the blood of the guilt offering') is more explicit than verse 17, specifying that the oil goes on the exact spot where the blood was placed.
29. Identical to verse 18. The kippur formula — *lekha'pper alav lifnei YHWH* ('to make atonement for him before the LORD') — is the same for the poor person's offering. Atonement does not depend on the size of the offering but on the faithfulness of the ritual and the mercy of God.
30. The phrase *me'asher tassig yado* ('from what his hand can reach') is the economic-capacity clause, used three times in this section (vv 21, 22, 30). The system acknowledges material reality without compromising ritual necessity.
31. The concluding kippur formula is identical to the standard version. The result — full atonement and purification before the LORD — is the same regardless of the offering's economic value. This is a profound theological statement: the efficacy of atonement resides in God's acceptance, not in the cost of the offering.
32. The closing formula *zot torat* ('this is the instruction for') marks the end of the reduced-offering section. The phrase *asher lo tassig yado betohorato* ('whose hand does not reach for his purification') is a compassionate legal category — not a stigma but a recognized status that triggers accommodation. The paragraph marker (*pe*) separates the human purification ritual from the house contamination laws that follow.

33. A new legislative unit begins, addressing both Moses and Aaron (as in 13:1). The inclusion of Aaron signals the diagnostic role of the priest in what follows — house contamination requires the same priestly examination as human skin disease.
34. This section anticipates settled life in Canaan — the regulations apply to permanent houses, not wilderness tents. The striking phrase *venatatti nega tsara'at* ('I will place a contamination mark') attributes the house contamination directly to God — not as punishment but as a matter that falls within God's sovereign ordering of the world. The contamination in houses is likely describing mold, mildew, or mineral discoloration in walls, extended to the same *tsara'at* diagnostic framework used for human skin and fabrics.
35. The homeowner's report uses the cautious phrase *kenega* ('something like a mark') rather than declaring it definitively. The Talmud (Negaim 12:5) notes that even a Torah scholar who knows it is *tsara'at* should use this tentative language — only the priest has the authority to make the official determination. This preserves the priestly diagnostic role and prevents premature self-diagnosis.
36. The order to empty the house (*upinnu et habayit*) before the priestly inspection reveals the practical compassion within the system. Once the priest pronounces the house *tamei*, everything inside it becomes unclean. By clearing the house first, the household's possessions are spared — they retain their clean status. The system protects what can be protected before imposing the consequences of an unclean verdict.
37. The diagnostic criteria for house contamination parallel fabric contamination (13:49): greenish or reddish discoloration. The additional marker *sheqa'arurot* ('hollowed-out, pitted') describes depressions in the wall — the contamination has eaten into the stone or plaster. The depth criterion (*shaphal min haqqir*, 'lower than the wall') echoes the human skin criterion of depth below the skin surface (13:3). The consistency of diagnostic markers across human, fabric, and building contexts demonstrates the systematic nature of the *tsara'at* framework.
38. The priest exits before pronouncing his verdict — he does not remain inside a potentially contaminated space. The seven-day quarantine (*hisgir*) is the same observation protocol used for ambiguous human cases (13:4). The house itself is placed under isolation, applying the same procedural framework to a building as to a person.
39. The spreading criterion (*pashah*) — the primary diagnostic indicator throughout chapters 13-14 — applies to house contamination as it does to human skin and fabric. Active, spreading contamination signals an unclean verdict.
40. Contaminated stones are removed (*chillestu* — 'extracted, pulled out') and deposited outside the city at a designated unclean area (*maqom tamei*). The city, like the camp, has a clean interior and unclean exterior. Contaminated material flows outward — away from inhabited space and away from sacred space.
41. After removing the contaminated stones, the remaining interior walls are scraped (*yaqtsi'a* — 'to scrape, to shave off'). All scraped-off material (*aphar* — 'dust, plaster') is also deposited in the unclean area. The procedure is methodical: remove the worst affected material, then scrape surrounding areas to eliminate any contamination that may have migrated.
42. New construction materials replace the contaminated ones — clean stones (*avanim acherot*) and fresh plaster (*aphar acher*). The house is rebuilt, not merely patched. The verb *tach* ('to plaster, to coat') describes applying a new surface layer over the replacement stones.
43. Recurrence after remediation (*yashuv hanega ufarach* — 'the mark returns and breaks out') is the decisive failure. The threefold 'after' (*achar... ve'acharei... ve'acharei*) emphasizes that every available intervention has been attempted: stone removal, scraping, and replastering. Only after all three measures have failed does the most severe verdict follow.
44. The verdict uses the same term as fabric contamination in 13:51: *tsara'at mam'eret* ('persistent/malignant contamination'). The parallel to the fabric ruling is exact — persistent contamination that resists intervention requires total destruction.
45. Total demolition (*natats* — 'to tear down, to demolish') is the final measure. Stones (*avanim*), wood (*etsav*), and plaster (*aphar*) — every component is removed. The parallel to the fabric ruling is complete: just as a garment with persistent contamination is burned (13:52), a house with persistent contamination is demolished. Nothing contaminated remains within the city.
46. Entry into a quarantined house transmits impurity, but at the lowest level — unclean only until evening (*ad ha'erev*). This is the mildest form of impurity in the Levitical system, requiring no offering and resolving at sundown. The contamination is real but limited in duration and severity.
47. Extended contact — sleeping (*shakhav*) or eating (*akhal*) in the quarantined house — requires garment washing, a higher level of purification than the evening-only impurity of verse 46. The activities of sleeping and eating represent sustained, intimate contact with the space, as opposed to merely passing through.
48. The positive outcome: after replastering, the mark has not returned or spread. The priest declares the house *tahor* ('clean'), and the healing language (*nirpa hanega* — 'the mark has healed') is the same as for human skin disease (v 3). The house, like a person, can be healed and restored to clean status.
49. The house purification uses the identical materials as the human purification ritual in verses 4-7: two birds, cedar wood, scarlet yarn, and hyssop. The verb *lechatte* ('to purify') shares its root with *chata't* (sin offering) — it means to remove contamination, to de-sin or de-pollute. The parallel structure reinforces that persons, fabrics, and buildings all fall within the same purity framework.
50. Identical to verse 5. The slaughter of one bird over an earthenware vessel with fresh water creates the purification medium. The consistency between the human purification and house purification rituals underscores the unified logic of the purity system.

51. The sevenfold sprinkling of the house parallels the sevenfold sprinkling of the person in verse 7. The house is treated as a subject of purification in the same way a human being is — it can become contaminated, it can be diagnosed, and it can be ritually restored.
52. The verb *chitiei* ('he shall purify') recapitulates the complete list of purification materials used in the ritual. The sixfold list — blood, water, living bird, cedar, hyssop, scarlet — names every element, ensuring the completeness of the purification is documented.
53. The release of the living bird carries the contamination away from the house and the city, just as in verse 7 it carries contamination away from the person and the camp. The *kippur* formula — *vekipper al habbayit* — applies atonement language to a building. A house, like a person, can be atoned for and restored to clean status within the community. The final word *vetaher* ('and it will be clean') resolves the house's status.
54. The closing summary (vv 54-57) recapitulates the scope of chapters 13-14 together. The phrase *zot hattorah* ('this is the instruction') frames the entire two-chapter unit as a single body of priestly instruction. The list that follows catalogs every category of *tsara'at* addressed: skin disease (*nega hatsara'at*) and scaly infection (*neteq*).
55. The two non-human categories of *tsara'at* — fabric contamination (13:47-59) and house contamination (14:33-53) — are listed alongside the human categories. The same term (*tsara'at*) applies to all three domains, creating a unified diagnostic and ritual system.
56. The three original diagnostic symptoms from 13:2 are named again: *se'et* (swelling), *sapachat* (rash), and *baheret* (shiny spot). These form the entry criteria for the entire diagnostic process. The summary thus runs from the broadest categories (all skin disease, scaly infections, fabric contamination, house contamination) down to the specific symptoms.
57. The verb *lehorot* ('to instruct, to teach') reveals the purpose of the entire legal corpus: education. The priest is not merely a judge but a teacher — his diagnostic work instructs the community about the boundaries between *tamei* and *tahor*, between impure and pure. The closing phrase *zot torat hatsara'at* ('this is the instruction concerning *tsara'at*') bookends the unit that began at 13:2. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the two-chapter unit definitively.
57. Chapters 13-14 together form a complete system: diagnosis (ch 13) and restoration (ch 14). The system begins with symptoms and ends with instruction — teaching Israel how to manage the boundaries between unclean and clean so that God's holy presence can safely dwell among them.

15

Summary: *Bodily discharges -- abnormal male discharge, seminal emission, menstruation, and abnormal female bleeding -- produce ritual impurity that transmits by contact to persons and objects. Each condition has a specified purification process, ranging from evening washing to offerings at the tent of meeting.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter treats male and female bodily processes with structural symmetry: abnormal male discharge (vv 2-15) parallels abnormal female discharge (vv 25-30), and normal seminal emission (vv 16-17) parallels normal menstruation (vv 19-24). The closing rationale (v31) makes the purpose explicit: impurity management protects the tabernacle from contamination, keeping God's presence viable among a community of embodied people.*

Translation Friction: *The term *zav* ("one who has a discharge") from *z-u-v* ("to flow") describes an abnormal bodily emission, and we distinguished it from normal emissions throughout. Rendering *tum'at adam* ("human impurity") required consistency with the system in chapters 11-14 while making clear that these are ritual, not moral, categories. The phrase *zavah bedamehah* ("a woman flowing in her blood," v25) needed careful rendering to preserve the medical reality without clinical coldness.*

Connections: *The woman with the twelve-year blood flow (Mark 5:25-34) lived under this chapter's regulations. The closing verse (v31) connects directly to the sanctuary-protection theology of ch 16. The purification offerings prescribed here (vv 14-15, 29-30) use the same bird offerings available to the poor in ch 5 and ch 12.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying: ²Speak to the children of Israel and say to them: When any man has a discharge from his body, his discharge makes him unclean. ³This shall be the nature of his impurity from his discharge: whether his body flows with his discharge or his body is blocked by his discharge, it is his impurity. ⁴Every bed on which the person with the discharge lies will become unclean, and every object on which he sits will become unclean. ⁵Anyone who touches his bed must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ⁶Anyone who sits on something the person with the discharge has sat on must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ⁷Anyone who touches the body of the person with the discharge must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ⁸If the person with the discharge spits on someone who is clean, that person must wash his clothes and bathe in

water, and will be unclean until evening. ⁹Any saddle on which the person with the discharge rides will become unclean. ¹⁰Anyone who touches anything that was under him will be unclean until evening. Anyone who carries such things must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ¹¹Anyone whom the person with the discharge touches without having rinsed his hands in water — that person must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ¹²Any clay vessel that the person with the discharge touches must be broken, and any wooden vessel must be rinsed with water. ¹³When the person with the discharge is healed of his discharge, he shall count seven days for his purification, wash his clothes, and bathe his body in fresh flowing water. Then he will be clean. ¹⁴On the eighth day he shall take two turtledoves or two young pigeons and come before the LORD at the entrance of the tent of meeting, and give them to the priest. ¹⁵The priest shall present them — one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering. The priest shall make atonement for him before the LORD for his discharge. ¹⁶When a man has a seminal emission, he shall bathe his entire body in water and will be unclean until evening. ¹⁷Any garment or leather on which there is semen shall be washed with water and will be unclean until evening. ¹⁸When a man lies with a woman and there is a seminal emission, both of them shall bathe in water and will be unclean until evening. ¹⁹When a woman has a discharge — her discharge being blood from her body — she shall be in her state of menstrual impurity for seven days. Anyone who touches her will be unclean until evening. ²⁰Anything she lies on during her menstrual impurity will become unclean, and anything she sits on will become unclean. ²¹Anyone who touches her bed must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ²²Anyone who touches any object she has sat on must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ²³Whether it is on the bed or on any object she is sitting on, when he touches it, he will be unclean until evening. ²⁴If a man lies with her at all and her menstrual impurity comes upon him, he will be unclean for seven days, and any bed he lies on will become unclean. ²⁵When a woman has a flow of blood for many days outside her regular menstrual period, or when it extends beyond her menstrual period, she will be unclean for all the days of her impure discharge, just as during the days of her menstrual period. ²⁶Every bed she lies on during the entire period of her discharge will be treated like her bed during menstruation, and every object she sits on will be unclean, like the impurity of her menstrual period. ²⁷Anyone who touches these things will become unclean. He must wash his clothes and bathe in water, and will be unclean until evening. ²⁸When she is healed of her discharge, she shall count seven days, and after that she will be clean. ²⁹On the eighth day she shall take two turtledoves or two young pigeons and bring them to the priest at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ³⁰The priest shall present one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering. The priest shall make atonement for her before the LORD for the discharge of her impurity. ³¹You shall keep the children of Israel separate from their impurity, so that they do not die in their impurity by contaminating My dwelling place that is among them. ³²This is the instruction for the man with a discharge and for the man from whom a seminal emission goes out, making him unclean by it; ³³and for a woman in her menstrual impurity, and for anyone — male or female — who has a discharge, and for a man who lies with a woman who is unclean.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Both Moses and Aaron are addressed, as in chapters 13-14. Aaron's inclusion signals the priestly diagnostic and ritual role that follows. This chapter addresses bodily discharges — the most intimate and private category of impurity — and brings even these into the scope of priestly oversight and divine instruction.
2. The term zav ('one who has a discharge') describes a man with an abnormal bodily discharge — likely a chronic or pathological genital discharge distinct from normal seminal emission (addressed separately in vv 16-18). The phrase ish ish ('man, man' — every single man) is emphatic: this applies universally. The impurity is caused by the discharge itself (zobo tamei hu — 'his discharge, he is unclean'), not by any moral failing.
3. Two states are covered: active flow (rar besaro — 'his flesh runs/flows') and blocked discharge (hechtim besaro — 'his flesh is sealed/stopped'). Both conditions produce impurity — the discharge need not be actively flowing to render the person tamei. The impurity persists as long as the underlying condition exists, whether currently producing discharge or temporarily halted.
4. Impurity transfers from the person to objects through sustained contact: beds (mishkav — sleeping surfaces) and seats (keli — any object sat upon). The principle is that the zav's impurity radiates outward through physical contact, contaminating the objects of daily life. These contaminated objects then become secondary sources of impurity (vv 5-10).

5. Secondary impurity — contracted by touching the zav's bed — is milder than the zav's own impurity: it lasts only until evening (ad ha'erev) and requires garment washing and bathing but no sacrifice. The evening boundary likely corresponds to sundown, when a new day begins in the Hebrew calendar. The impurity expires automatically with the turning of the day.
6. The same purification procedure and duration as verse 5: washing, bathing, unclean until evening. The impurity transfers through the seat — a third party contracts impurity from the object rather than from the person directly. This chain of transmission (person object third party) demonstrates how impurity spreads through a community if unchecked.
7. Direct physical contact (noge'a bivsar hazzav — 'touching the flesh/body of the one with the discharge') transmits impurity at the same level as contact with contaminated objects: evening-duration impurity with washing and bathing. The body of the zav is itself a source of contamination.
8. Saliva (roq — 'spit') from the zav transmits impurity. Bodily fluids are the agents of contamination — the impurity follows the body's emissions. The verb yaroq ('spit') may describe intentional or accidental contact with saliva. The clean person (tahor) who receives the spit becomes tamei through no fault of their own — impurity transfer is a matter of contact, not intention.
9. The merkav ('saddle, riding seat, anything ridden upon') extends the contamination principle to travel equipment. The zav's impurity affects beds (v 4), seats (v 4), and now riding gear — every surface that sustains bodily contact becomes contaminated.
10. Two levels of secondary contact are distinguished: touching (noge'a — brief contact) produces evening-duration impurity without requiring laundering, while carrying (nosei — sustained contact of bearing the weight) requires garment washing and bathing in addition to the evening-duration impurity. The heavier the contact, the more extensive the purification required.
11. A significant qualification: the zav transmits impurity through touch only if he has not rinsed his hands (veyadav lo shataf bammayim — 'his hands he has not rinsed in water'). Hand-washing mitigates the transfer of impurity. This is one of the earliest references to hand-washing as a ritual hygiene practice, predating later rabbinic hand-washing regulations by centuries.
12. The material determines the response: clay vessels (keli cheres — unglazed earthenware) must be destroyed (yishshaver — 'shall be broken') because porous clay absorbs impurity permanently. Wooden vessels (keli ets) can be rinsed (yishshatef — 'shall be rinsed') because wood's surface can be effectively cleaned. The distinction is practical and reflects understanding of material properties — porous versus non-porous surfaces.
13. The purification process begins only after the discharge stops (ki yithar hazzav mizzovo — 'when the one with the discharge is cleansed from his discharge'). The seven-day waiting period (sapar lo shiv'at yamim — 'he shall count for himself seven days') ensures the condition has fully resolved. The bathing must be in mayim chayyim ('living water' — fresh, flowing water from a spring or stream, not stagnant or stored water). The higher-grade water requirement distinguishes this purification from the simpler evening-impurity cases.
14. The eighth-day sacrifice follows the seven-day purification — the same pattern as the skin-disease purification (14:10, 23) and the priestly ordination (9:1). The offering of birds (torim o benei yonah — turtledoves or young pigeons) is the standard minimum-cost sacrifice, making purification economically accessible.
15. The two-offering sequence — sin offering (chata't — purification of the sanctuary) and burnt offering (olah — complete devotion) — restores the person's relationship to God's presence. The kippur formula (vekipper alav hakohen lifnei YHWH mizzovo — 'the priest shall make atonement for him before the LORD for his discharge') frames the sacrifice as addressing the discharge, not any moral guilt. The section marker (samekh) closes the male abnormal discharge section.
16. The shift from abnormal discharge (zav, vv 2-15) to normal seminal emission (shikhvat zera — 'emission of seed') marks a different category of impurity: shorter duration (evening only, not seven days), simpler purification (bathing only, no sacrifice), and no contamination of objects beyond what the semen contacts directly (v 17). Normal sexual function produces a lower-grade impurity than pathological discharge.
17. Only garments and leather (beged, or) that are directly contacted by the semen require washing — unlike the zav's impurity, which contaminates beds and seats through the person's presence alone. The narrower scope of contamination reflects the lower severity of this category of impurity.
18. Sexual intercourse produces mutual, equal-duration impurity for both partners (verachatsu bammayim vetam'u ad ha'arev — 'they shall both bathe in water and be unclean until evening'). The impurity is symmetrical — both parties are affected equally. This brief impurity from normal sexual relations is a reminder that even the most natural human acts involve proximity to the life-force (semen carries the potential for new life), which touches the boundary where the sacred and the biological intersect. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the seminal emission section.
19. The female menstrual section (vv 19-24) parallels the male abnormal discharge section (vv 2-15) in structure but with key differences. The niddah period lasts seven days (shiv'at yamim) — a fixed duration regardless of the actual length of menstruation. The word niddah (from the root n-d-d, 'to separate, to wander') describes the state of ritual separation, not the biological process. Contact-transmitted impurity (evening-duration) applies to anyone who touches her.
20. The same object-contamination pattern as the male zav (v 4): beds and seats become carriers of secondary impurity. The parallel structure between the male and female sections reinforces that the purity system applies equally to both sexes — neither is singled out as uniquely impure.
21. The secondary impurity from touching the menstruant's bed mirrors verse 5 exactly — same procedure, same duration. The symmetry between male and female discharge regulations is deliberate and consistent.
22. The seat-contact rule mirrors verse 6. The repetitive structure of these regulations — each category of contact producing the same evening-duration impurity with washing and bathing — creates a comprehensive, predictable system.

- 23.** This verse clarifies that secondary impurity from contaminated objects is contracted at the moment of contact (benag'o vo — 'when he touches it'), regardless of whether the menstruant is currently present. The object retains its impurity status even after she leaves it.
- 24.** Sexual contact during menstruation produces the most severe impurity in this section: the man contracts the full seven-day niddah impurity (vetamei shiv'at yamim — not merely evening-duration). His impurity level matches hers — he takes on her full tamei status. The phrase utehi niddatah alav ('her niddah is upon him') describes the transfer of her impurity status to him. This is distinct from the moral prohibition of sexual relations during menstruation in 18:19 and 20:18 — here the focus is on the purity consequence, not the ethical judgment. The section marker (samekh) closes the menstruation section.
- 25.** The final category (vv 25-30) addresses female abnormal bleeding — a chronic or extended blood flow outside the normal menstrual cycle. This is the zavah — the female counterpart to the male zav (vv 2-15). The woman with the hemorrhage whom Jesus healed (Mark 5:25-34) had been in this condition for twelve years. Her impurity made her unable to touch anyone or enter the temple — Jesus's willingness to be touched by her violated every purity boundary described in this chapter.
- 26.** The abnormal bleeding produces the same contamination effects as regular menstruation (kemishkav niddatah — 'like the bed of her niddah') but for an indefinite duration. While niddah lasts a fixed seven days, the zavah's impurity continues kol yemei zavah ('all the days of her discharge') — as long as the condition persists.
- 27.** The same secondary impurity rules apply as in the menstrual section (vv 21-22) and the male discharge section (vv 5-7): evening-duration impurity with washing and bathing. The consistency of purification requirements across all categories of discharge reinforces the systematic nature of the purity legislation.
- 28.** The purification follows the same pattern as the male zav (v 13): cessation of the discharge, a seven-day waiting period (safrah lah shiv'at yamim — 'she shall count for herself seven days'), and then cleanness. The parallel is exact — male and female abnormal discharges receive identical treatment.
- 29.** The same eighth-day sacrifice as the male zav (v 14): two birds (turtledoves or young pigeons), presented to the priest at the tent of meeting. The cost, timing, and procedure are identical for both sexes — the system does not impose a higher purification burden on women than on men for equivalent conditions.
- 30.** The identical two-offering sequence as verse 15: sin offering (chata't) plus burnt offering (olah), with the kippur formula. The phrase mizzov tum'atah ('for the discharge of her impurity') parallels mizzovo ('for his discharge') in verse 15. The atonement addresses the impurity caused by the discharge, not any moral failing of the woman.
- 31.** This is the theological rationale for the entire chapter — and arguably for the entire purity system. The purpose of the discharge regulations is velo yamutu betum'atam betamme'am et mishkani asher betokham ('so that they do not die in their impurity by contaminating My dwelling place that is among them'). God's dwelling (mishkan — tabernacle) exists among the people (betokham — 'in their midst'). Unaddressed impurity contaminates the sacred space. Accumulated contamination drives God's presence away. If God's presence departs, the people are exposed to the consequences of a world without divine protection. The purity laws exist to maintain the conditions under which a holy God can safely dwell among an impure people.
- 32.** The closing summary (vv 32-33) catalogs all four categories addressed in the chapter. Male: the zav (abnormal discharge, vv 2-15) and the one with seminal emission (shikhvat zera, vv 16-18).
- 33.** Female: the menstruant (haddavah beniddatah — 'the one who is ill/menstruating in her niddah,' vv 19-24) and the zavah (female with abnormal discharge, vv 25-30). The final category — the man who lies with an unclean woman (ish asher yishkav im teme'ah, v 24) — completes the system. The chapter addresses every form of genital discharge for both sexes, creating a comprehensive framework that covers the full range of human reproductive biology within the purity system. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the chapter definitively.

16

Summary: God prescribes the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur), the annual ritual in which the high priest enters the Most Holy Place to purify the sanctuary and remove Israel's sins. Aaron offers a bull for his own sin, then two goats for the people -- one slaughtered with blood sprinkled on the atonement cover, the other sent alive into the wilderness bearing Israel's sins.

What Makes This Remarkable: This is the theological center of Leviticus. The chapter exists because of Nadab and Abihu's death (v1) -- unauthorized access killed them; Yom Kippur establishes authorized access. The dual-goat ritual is unique: one dies (blood covers sin) and one lives (carrying sin away). Together they accomplish what neither could alone -- complete removal. The high priest strips to plain linen, entering God's presence in humility, not splendor.

Translation Friction: We rendered kapporet as "atonement cover" rather than "mercy seat" (KJV) because the Hebrew root k-p-r ("to cover, to atone") is the chapter's governing concept. Azazel remains one of the most debated terms in Leviticus -- a proper name? a place? "the goat that goes away"? -- and we transliterated it without forcing a single interpretation. The phrase lo yavo vekhol-et ("not at just any time," v2) required precision: access is restricted, not forbidden.

Connections: Hebrews 9:7-12 reads Yom Kippur as fulfilled in Christ's entry into the heavenly sanctuary. The scapegoat anticipates John the Baptist's declaration (John 1:29). The incense cloud protecting the priest (v13) echoes the cloud on Sinai (Exod 19:9). The "tenth day of the seventh month" (v29) remains the holiest day in the Jewish calendar.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses after the death of the two sons of Aaron, when they drew near before the LORD and died. ²The LORD said to Moses, "Tell Aaron your brother that he shall not come at just any time into the Holy Place inside the veil, before the atonement cover that is on the ark, so that he does not die, for I will appear in the cloud above the atonement cover. ³Aaron shall enter the Holy Place with this: a young bull for a sin offering and a ram for a burnt offering. ⁴He shall put on the holy linen tunic, and the linen undergarments shall be on his body. He shall tie the linen sash around his waist and wear the linen turban. These are holy garments. He shall bathe his body in water and then put them on. ⁵From the congregation of the sons of Israel he shall take two male goats for a sin offering and one ram for a burnt offering. ⁶Aaron shall offer the bull as a sin offering for himself and make atonement for himself and for his household. ⁷Then he shall take the two goats and set them before the LORD at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ⁸Aaron shall cast lots over the two goats — one lot for the LORD and the other lot for Azazel. ⁹Aaron shall present the goat on which the lot for the LORD fell and make it a sin offering. ¹⁰But the goat on which the lot for Azazel fell shall be presented alive before the LORD to make atonement over it, to send it away to Azazel into the wilderness. ¹¹"Aaron shall present the bull as a sin offering for himself and shall make atonement for himself and for his household. He shall slaughter the bull as a sin offering for himself. ¹²He shall take a censer full of coals of fire from the altar before the LORD and two handfuls of finely ground fragrant incense, and bring it inside the veil. ¹³He shall put the incense on the fire before the LORD, so that the cloud of incense covers the atonement cover that is over the Testimony, and he shall not die. ¹⁴He shall take some of the blood of the bull and sprinkle it with his finger on the front of the atonement cover on the east side, and before the atonement cover he shall sprinkle some of the blood with his finger seven times. ¹⁵"Then he shall slaughter the goat of the sin offering that is for the people and bring its blood inside the veil and do with its blood as he did with the blood of the bull, sprinkling it on the atonement cover and before the atonement cover. ¹⁶So he shall make atonement for the Holy Place because of the uncleannesses of the sons of Israel and because of their transgressions, all their sins. And so he shall do for the tent of meeting, which dwells with them in the midst of their uncleannesses. ¹⁷No one shall be in the tent of meeting from the time he enters to make atonement in the Holy Place until he comes out and has made atonement for himself and for his household and for the whole assembly of Israel. ¹⁸Then he shall go out to the altar that is before the LORD and make atonement for it. He shall take some of the blood of the bull and some of the blood of the goat and put it on the horns of the altar all around. ¹⁹He shall sprinkle some of the blood on it with his finger seven times and cleanse it and consecrate it from the uncleannesses of the sons of Israel. ²⁰"When he has finished atoning for the Holy Place and the tent of meeting and the altar, he shall present the live goat. ²¹Aaron shall lay both his hands on the head of the live goat and confess over it all the iniquities of the sons of Israel and all their transgressions, all their sins. He shall put them on the head of the goat and send it away into the wilderness by the hand of a man appointed for the task. ²²The goat shall bear on itself all their iniquities to a remote land, and he shall release the goat in the wilderness. ²³"Then Aaron shall enter the tent of meeting and take off the linen garments that he put on when he went into the Holy Place, and he shall leave them there. ²⁴He shall bathe his body in water in a holy place and put on his regular garments. Then he shall go out and offer his burnt offering and the burnt offering of the people and make atonement for himself and for the people. ²⁵The fat of the sin offering he shall burn on the altar. ²⁶The one who released the goat to Azazel shall wash his clothes and bathe his body in water, and after that he may come into the camp. ²⁷The bull of the sin offering and the goat of the sin offering, whose blood was brought in to make atonement in the Holy Place, shall be carried outside

the camp, and their skin, their flesh, and their dung shall be burned with fire. ²⁸The one who burns them shall wash his clothes and bathe his body in water, and after that he may come into the camp. ²⁹"This shall be an eternal statute for you: In the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you shall deny yourselves and shall do no work, neither the native nor the sojourner who lives among you. ³⁰For on this day atonement shall be made for you to cleanse you. From all your sins you shall be clean before the LORD. ³¹It is a Sabbath of solemn rest to you, and you shall deny yourselves. It is an eternal statute. ³²The priest who is anointed and ordained to serve as priest in his father's place shall make the atonement. He shall put on the holy linen garments. ³³He shall make atonement for the Most Holy Place, and he shall make atonement for the tent of meeting and for the altar. He shall make atonement for the priests and for all the people of the assembly. ³⁴This shall be an eternal statute for you, to make atonement for the sons of Israel for all their sins once a year." And Aaron did as the LORD commanded Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with the death of Nadab and Abihu (ch10) as its immediate context. Unauthorized approach to God killed Aaron's sons; chapter 16 establishes the authorized approach. The Day of Atonement exists because casual access to the Most Holy Place is lethal.
2. 'Not at just any time' (al yavo vekhol-et) — access to God's innermost presence is restricted to one day per year, by one person, with specific preparation. The cloud above the kapporet is God's visible presence (the Shekhinah); entering without authorization means entering God's lethal holiness without protection.
3. The required offerings: a bull (for Aaron's own sin) and a ram (for burnt offering). The high priest must atone for himself before he can atone for the people. The mediator is not exempt from the system he administers.
4. White linen garments replace the ornate priestly vestments (ch28). On Yom Kippur, the high priest strips down to the simplest garments — no gold, no gems, no blue-purple-scarlet. He enters God's presence not in glory but in humility. The linen represents purity and simplicity; the absence of gold represents the absence of human splendor before divine holiness.
5. Two goats for one sin offering — the dual-goat ritual is unique to Yom Kippur. One goat will be sacrificed (v15); the other will be sent away alive (v21-22). Together they represent the complete removal of sin: blood covers it, and the scapegoat carries it away.
6. Aaron atones for himself first. The sequence is non-negotiable: personal purification precedes communal intercession. A priest who has not dealt with his own sin cannot deal with the people's sin.
7. Both goats are presented together at the tent entrance — their fates will be determined by lot, not by Aaron's choice. The randomness of the lot underscores divine sovereignty in the assignment of roles.
8. 'One lot for the LORD and the other lot for Azazel' (goral echad laYHWH vegoral echad la'Aza'zel) — the identity of Azazel is one of the most debated questions in Leviticus. Proposals include: (1) a proper name for a desert demon or fallen angel; (2) a Hebrew compound meaning 'the goat that goes away' (ez + azal); (3) a place name for a desolate cliff. The text does not define the term; it simply assigns one goat to the LORD and one to Azazel.
9. The LORD's goat becomes a sin offering — its blood will be brought inside the veil and sprinkled on the kapporet. This is the only day of the year when blood enters the Most Holy Place.
10. The Azazel goat is presented alive — it will not be killed but sent into the wilderness bearing Israel's sins (v21-22). The live presentation before the LORD consecrates it for its role as sin-bearer.
11. The bull is slaughtered — Aaron's personal sin offering. The high priest's blood-guilt must be addressed before the people's can be.
12. The censer of coals and incense creates a protective cloud inside the veil. The incense smoke screens the kapporet from direct view — shielding the high priest from the lethal intensity of God's presence. Without the incense cloud, the encounter would be fatal.
13. 'So that he shall not die' (velo yamut) — the incense cloud is literally life-preserving. The smoke mediates between the priest's mortality and God's holiness. Even the authorized high priest, on the authorized day, with the authorized ritual, needs a protective barrier.
14. Blood sprinkled on the kapporet — the atonement cover receives the blood that covers sin. Seven sprinklings (the number of completeness) indicate thorough, total atonement. The blood goes on the kapporet itself and before it on the ground. The place where God's presence dwells is purified by blood.
15. The people's goat is now slaughtered and its blood brought inside the veil — the same procedure as with the bull's blood. The people's sins are covered at the same location where the priest's sins were covered: the kapporet.
16. The purpose is stated explicitly: atonement for the Holy Place itself, because God's sanctuary has been contaminated by Israel's 'uncleannesses, transgressions, and sins' (tum'ot, pesha'im, chatta'ot). The tabernacle absorbs Israel's impurity like a sponge; Yom Kippur wrings it clean. The tent 'dwells with them in the midst of their uncleannesses' (hashokhein ittam betokh tum'otam) — the Shekhinah endures impurity, but not indefinitely. Annual cleansing is required.

17. 'No one shall be in the tent' — the encounter between the high priest and God at the kapporet is absolutely solitary. No assistant, no witness, no companion. The most sacred moment in Israel's worship occurs with one man alone before God.
18. The outer altar (bronze altar) is also purified — blood from both bull and goat is applied to its horns. Every zone of sacred space, from the innermost (kapporet) to the outermost (altar), is cleansed.
19. Seven sprinklings again — the altar is cleansed and re-consecrated. The verb *taher* ('cleanse') and *qiddesh* ('consecrate') work together: impurity is removed and holiness is restored.
20. The live goat ceremony begins. The spatial movement is outward: from the Most Holy Place (v14), through the Holy Place (v16), to the altar (v18), and now outside the sanctuary entirely (v21-22).
21. Aaron lays both hands on the live goat's head and confesses all Israel's sins over it. The hand-laying transfers guilt from the community to the animal. The three sin-words from Exodus 34:7 recur: *avonot* (iniquities), *pasha'im* (transgressions), *chatta'ot* (sins). Every category of wrongdoing is loaded onto this goat.
22. 'The goat shall bear on itself all their iniquities to a remote land' (*venasa hassa'ir alav et-kol-avonotam el-erets gezerah*) — the scapegoat carries sin away physically. The word *gezerah* means 'cut off, remote, isolated.' Sin is removed to a place from which it cannot return. The dual goat ritual accomplishes two things: the first goat's blood covers sin before God (propitiation); the second goat carries sin away from the people (expiation). Both are needed for complete atonement.
23. Aaron removes the linen garments inside the tent — they remain there, contaminated by proximity to sin and holiness simultaneously. He does not wear them out; they stay in the sacred space.
24. Aaron bathes and puts on his regular (ornate) priestly garments. The transition from linen to full vestments marks the shift from the solitary atonement encounter back to regular priestly service. He then offers burnt offerings for himself and the people — the final act of the day.
25. The fat of the sin offering is burned on the altar — the standard procedure for all sin offerings (4:8-10). The fat belongs to God.
26. The man who released the Azazel goat must wash before re-entering the camp — contact with the sin-laden goat creates ritual impurity that must be cleansed.
27. The carcasses of the bull and goat sin offerings are burned outside the camp — the same rule as the priestly consecration (Exodus 29:14). What absorbed sin is expelled from sacred space. Hebrews 13:11-12 connects this to Jesus suffering 'outside the gate.'
28. The one who burns the carcasses also washes — every person who handles the sin-contaminated materials must be purified before returning to the community.
29. 'You shall deny yourselves' (*te'annu et-nafshoteikhem*) — the verb *innah* ('afflict, deny, humble') combined with *nephesh* ('soul, self, life') describes fasting and self-deprivation. Yom Kippur is the only mandated fast day in the Torah. The affliction is both physical (fasting) and spiritual (humility before God). 'Neither the native nor the sojourner' — the Day of Atonement includes everyone in the community.
30. 'From all your sins you shall be clean before the LORD' (*mikol chatto'teikhem lifnei YHWH titharu*) — the promise of the Day of Atonement. The word *taher* ('clean, pure') describes the outcome: complete purification before God. This is not psychological relief but objective, ritual cleansing — the status of the worshiper is changed by the ceremony.
31. 'A Sabbath of solemn rest' (*shabbat shabbaton*) — the doubled form intensifies: this is the sabbath of sabbaths, the most restful rest. All work ceases absolutely.
32. The provision for succession: the anointed priest (the *mashiach*) who succeeds his father performs the Yom Kippur service. The ritual passes from generation to generation through the priestly line.
33. The scope of atonement is comprehensive: Most Holy Place, tent of meeting, altar, priests, and people. Every dimension of Israel's relationship with God — space, structure, mediators, and community — is cleansed annually.
34. 'Once a year' (*achat bashanah*) — the annual rhythm. Yom Kippur cannot be performed more frequently or less. The timing is fixed by divine decree. 'Aaron did as the LORD commanded Moses' — the chapter closes with the obedience formula, confirming that the first Day of Atonement was performed exactly as prescribed.

17

Summary: *God centralizes all sacrifice at the tent of meeting, prohibiting private slaughter of sacrificial animals. The chapter then delivers the foundational statement of blood theology: "the life of the flesh is in the blood," explaining why blood must never be eaten and why it makes atonement. Even hunted game requires blood to be drained and covered with earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 11 is the single sentence that explains why the entire sacrificial system works: blood atones because it carries life, and life given substitutes for life owed. The prohibition of se'irim ("goat-demon") sacrifice (v7) reveals that Israel was tempted to divide its worship between the LORD and desert spirits. Unauthorized slaughter is equated with murder (v4) -- the blood of any animal belongs to God.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ki nefesh habbasar baddam hi ("the life of the flesh is in the blood") is both a biological observation and a theological claim, and we rendered it to carry both registers. The se'irim ("goat-demons," literally "hairy ones," v7) required a rendering that conveyed the demonic association without importing medieval demonology. The verb shafakh ("shed," v4) is the same verb used for murder in Gen 9:6, and we preserved that verbal connection.*

Connections: *The blood prohibition extends Noah's covenant (Gen 9:4) into the Sinai covenant. The "life is in the blood" principle undergirds every sacrifice from ch 1 onward and is cited in Heb 9:22 ("without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness"). The centralization requirement anticipates Deuteronomy 12:5-14. Acts 15:20 carries the blood prohibition into the apostolic church.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"Speak to Aaron and to his sons and to all the sons of Israel and say to them: This is what the LORD has commanded. ³Any man of the house of Israel who slaughters an ox or a lamb or a goat in the camp, or who slaughters it outside the camp, ⁴and does not bring it to the entrance of the tent of meeting to present it as an offering to the LORD before the tabernacle of the LORD — that man shall be held guilty of bloodshed. He has shed blood, and that man shall be cut off from among his people. ⁵This is so that the sons of Israel may bring their sacrifices that they have been sacrificing in the open field and bring them to the LORD, to the priest, at the entrance of the tent of meeting, and sacrifice them as peace offerings to the LORD. ⁶The priest shall throw the blood against the altar of the LORD at the entrance of the tent of meeting and burn the fat as a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ⁷They shall no longer sacrifice their sacrifices to the goat-demons after which they have prostituted themselves. This shall be an eternal statute for them throughout their generations. ⁸"Say to them: Any man of the house of Israel or any sojourner who lives among them who offers a burnt offering or sacrifice ⁹and does not bring it to the entrance of the tent of meeting to offer it to the LORD — that man shall be cut off from his people. ¹⁰"Any man of the house of Israel or any sojourner who lives among them who eats any blood — I will set My face against that person who eats blood and will cut him off from among his people. ¹¹For the life of the flesh is in the blood, and I have given it to you on the altar to make atonement for your lives, for it is the blood that makes atonement by means of the life. ¹²Therefore I have said to the sons of Israel: No person among you shall eat blood, nor shall any sojourner who lives among you eat blood. ¹³Any man of the sons of Israel or any sojourner who lives among them who hunts and catches an animal or bird that may be eaten shall pour out its blood and cover it with earth. ¹⁴For the life of every creature — its blood is its life. Therefore I have said to the sons of Israel: You shall not eat the blood of any creature, for the life of every creature is its blood. Whoever eats it shall be cut off. ¹⁵Every person who eats what has died naturally or what has been torn by beasts, whether native or sojourner, shall wash his clothes and bathe in water and be unclean until evening; then he shall be clean. ¹⁶But if he does not wash or bathe his body, he shall bear his iniquity."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Chapter 17 addresses the centralization of sacrifice and the absolute prohibition of blood consumption — two principles that govern all Israelite worship and diet.

2. The address includes Aaron, his sons, and all Israel — both priests and people are bound by these regulations. The scope is universal within the covenant community.
3. The prohibition covers all slaughter of sacrificial animals (ox, lamb, goat) — whether inside or outside the camp. Private, unauthorized slaughter is treated as a serious offense.
4. 'That man shall be held guilty of bloodshed' (dam yechashev la'ish hahu, dam shafakh) — unauthorized slaughter is equated with murder. The blood of the animal belongs to God; spilling it without proper ritual is shedding blood that should have been offered. The penalty is karet — being cut off from the community.
5. The purpose clause: centralized sacrifice replaces 'open field' sacrifice. The phrase 'sacrificing in the open field' (al-penei hassadeh) suggests unregulated, possibly syncretistic worship practices that must be brought under tabernacle control.
6. The priest's role is specified: blood thrown against the altar, fat burned. The priestly mediation ensures that every sacrifice follows the proper protocol. No private worship bypasses the ordained system.
7. 'Goat-demons' (se'irim) — literally 'hairy ones.' These may be desert spirits or demonic entities associated with goat-like forms. The sacrifice to se'irim is described as 'prostitution' (zanim achareihem) — the same adultery metaphor used for idolatry throughout the Torah. Israel must not divide its worship between YHWH and wilderness spirits.
8. The regulation extends to sojourners (gerim) — non-Israelites living within the community are bound by the same sacrificial laws. The covenant community's worship standards apply to all who dwell within it.
9. The penalty for unauthorized sacrifice is the same for sojourner and native: karet. The legal equality established in Exodus 12:49 ('one law for the native and the sojourner') governs sacrificial practice.
10. 'I will set My face against that person' (venatatti panai banefesh ha'okhelet et-haddam) — God Himself acts as judge against blood-eaters. The phrase 'set My face against' (natan panim be-) is the most severe form of divine opposition in Leviticus. Blood consumption is not merely a dietary preference but a direct offense against God.
11. 'The life of the flesh is in the blood' (ki nefesh habbasar baddam hi) — the foundational statement of blood theology in the Hebrew Bible. Nefesh ('life, soul, being') resides in the dam ('blood'). Blood is not merely a bodily fluid; it is the carrier of life itself. 'I have given it to you on the altar to make atonement for your lives' (va'ani netattiv lakhem al-hammizbeach lekapper al-nafshoteikhem) — God assigned blood its atoning function. Blood atones because it carries life, and life given substitutes for life owed. 'It is the blood that makes atonement by means of the life' (ki-haddam hu banefesh yekapper) — the mechanism of atonement is stated: blood atones because of the life (nefesh) it contains.
12. The prohibition is restated: no Israelite, no sojourner, may eat blood. The repetition (vv10, 12, 14) emphasizes the absolute nature of the prohibition.
13. Hunted game must also have its blood drained and covered with earth. Even non-sacrificial slaughter requires respect for the blood. The blood returns to the earth — to the adamah from which life was formed (Genesis 2:7).
14. 'The life of every creature — its blood is its life' (nefesh kol-basar damo venafsh hu) — the equation blood = life is restated in its most compressed form. The word nefesh appears three times in this verse. Blood, life, and being are inseparable in Hebrew thought.
15. Animals that died naturally (nevelah) or were killed by predators (terefah) may not be eaten because their blood was not properly drained. The impurity from eating such meat is manageable (wash, bathe, wait until evening) but real.
16. Failure to purify after eating improperly slaughtered meat results in bearing one's iniquity (nasa avono). The guilt is not removed; it accumulates on the person. Personal responsibility for ritual purity is non-delegable.

18

Summary: *God opens the Holiness Code by defining Israel's sexual boundaries. After declaring that Israel must follow neither Egyptian nor Canaanite customs, a series of prohibited sexual relationships is listed, including incest, adultery, child sacrifice to Molech, and male homosexual intercourse. The land itself will "vomit out" its inhabitants for these violations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's framing is distinctive: Israel's sexual ethics are defined not by abstraction but by contrast with Egypt (where they were) and Canaan (where they are going). The land is personified as a moral agent that rejects contamination -- it "vomited out" the previous inhabitants (v28) and will do the same to Israel. The phrase vachai bahem ("he shall live by them," v5) becomes one of the most quoted verses in both Jewish and Christian theology.*

Translation Friction: The repeated phrase galah ervah ("uncover nakedness") is a Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse that we rendered as "uncover the nakedness of" to preserve the Hebrew idiom's indirectness while remaining clear. The formula ani YHWH ("I am the LORD") punctuates the chapter, grounding each prohibition in divine identity rather than social convention. Vachai bahem (v5) can mean "live because of them" or "live through them" -- we chose "live by them" to hold both possibilities.

Connections: Paul cites v5 in Rom 10:5 and Gal 3:12. The land-vomiting metaphor (v28) reappears in Lev 20:22. The Molech prohibition (v21) connects to the penalty code in ch 20. Jesus grounds His teaching on marriage in the creation order that these prohibitions protect (Matt 19:4-6).

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: ²Speak to the children of Israel and tell them: I am the LORD your God. ³You shall not follow the practices of the land of Egypt, where you lived, and you shall not follow the practices of the land of Canaan, where I am bringing you. You shall not walk according to their customs. ⁴You shall carry out My ordinances and observe My statutes, walking in them. I am the LORD your God. ⁵You shall keep My statutes and My ordinances; the person who does them shall live by them. I am the LORD. ⁶No person among you shall approach any close relative to uncover nakedness. I am the LORD. ⁷You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father or the nakedness of your mother. She is your mother — you shall not uncover her nakedness. ⁸You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father's wife. It is your father's nakedness. ⁹You shall not uncover the nakedness of your sister — whether she is your father's daughter or your mother's daughter, whether born within the household or born elsewhere. ¹⁰You shall not uncover the nakedness of your son's daughter or your daughter's daughter, for their nakedness is your own. ¹¹You shall not uncover the nakedness of the daughter of your father's wife who was fathered by your father — she is your sister. ¹²You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father's sister. She is your father's close relative. ¹³You shall not uncover the nakedness of your mother's sister, for she is your mother's close relative. ¹⁴You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father's brother; you shall not approach his wife. She is your aunt. ¹⁵You shall not uncover the nakedness of your daughter-in-law. She is your son's wife — you shall not uncover her nakedness. ¹⁶You shall not uncover the nakedness of your brother's wife. It is your brother's nakedness. ¹⁷You shall not uncover the nakedness of a woman and her daughter. You shall not take her son's daughter or her daughter's daughter to uncover her nakedness. They are close relatives — it is depravity. ¹⁸You shall not take a woman as a rival wife alongside her sister, to uncover her nakedness while the sister is still alive. ¹⁹You shall not approach a woman to uncover her nakedness during her menstrual impurity. ²⁰You shall not have sexual relations with your neighbor's wife, defiling yourself with her. ²¹You shall not give any of your children to be passed through the fire to Molech. You shall not profane the name of your God. I am the LORD. ²²You shall not lie with a male as one lies with a woman. It is a detestable act. ²³You shall not have sexual relations with any animal, defiling yourself with it. A woman shall not present herself to an animal to mate with it. It is a perversion. ²⁴Do not defile yourselves by any of these acts, for by all of these the nations that I am driving out before you became defiled. ²⁵The land became defiled, and I held it accountable for its iniquity, and the land vomited out its inhabitants. ²⁶You must keep My statutes and My ordinances and not commit any of these detestable acts — neither the native-born citizen nor the foreigner who lives among you. ²⁷For the people of the land who were before you committed all these detestable acts, and the land became defiled. ²⁸Do not let the land vomit you out for defiling it, as it vomited out the nation that was before you. ²⁹For anyone who commits any of these detestable acts — the persons who do them shall be cut off from among their people. ³⁰You shall keep My charge by not following any of the detestable customs that were practiced before you, so that you do not defile yourselves by them. I am the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Leviticus 18 begins the Holiness Code (chapters 18-26), a distinct legal collection within Leviticus characterized by the refrain 'I am the LORD' (ani YHWH). The chapter addresses prohibited sexual relationships, framed not as arbitrary taboos but as the boundary that distinguishes Israel from Egypt and Canaan.
2. The declaration ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('I am the LORD your God') opens the chapter with divine self-identification — the same formula that opens the Ten Commandments (Exodus 20:2). The laws that follow derive their authority from this identity claim: they are binding because of who is speaking, not merely because of what is being said.

3. Israel is defined by what it does not do: kema'aseh erets Mitsrayim ('like the practices of Egypt') and kema'aseh erets Kena'an ('like the practices of Canaan') are explicitly rejected. The two nations that frame Israel's experience — the one they left and the one they will enter — serve as negative models. The phrase uvechuqqoteihem lo telekhu ('you shall not walk in their statutes') prohibits not just specific acts but the adoption of foreign cultural norms.
4. The positive counterpart to verse 3: instead of foreign customs, Israel is to follow God's mishpatim ('ordinances, judgments') and chuqqot ('statutes'). The metaphor of walking (lalekhet bahem — 'to walk in them') describes a way of life, not merely a set of rules. The self-identification formula ani YHWH Eloheikhem closes the verse, framing the laws as personal address from God.
5. The phrase asher ya'aseh otam ha'adam vachai bahem ('which if a person does them, he shall live by them') is one of the most quoted verses in both Jewish and Christian theology. Paul cites it in Romans 10:5 and Galatians 3:12 to discuss the relationship between law and faith. The Hebrew vachai bahem ('he shall live by them') can mean either 'he shall live because of them' (obedience produces life) or 'he shall live through them' (the commandments are the medium of life). The section marker (samekh) closes the introduction.
6. The general principle governing verses 6-18: ish ish el kol she'er besaro lo tiqrevu legalot ervah ('no one shall approach any close flesh-relative to uncover nakedness'). The idiom galot ervah ('to uncover nakedness') is the Hebrew euphemism for sexual relations. She'er basar ('close flesh,' 'near kin') defines the prohibited sphere as blood relatives and their spouses. The self-identification ani YHWH anchors the prohibition in divine authority.
7. The series of prohibited relationships begins with the most fundamental: parents. The phrase ervat avikha ('your father's nakedness') in this context likely means sexual relations with the father's wife (as verse 8 makes explicit), while ervat immekha ('your mother's nakedness') prohibits relations with one's biological mother. The emphatic immekha hi ('she is your mother') states the reason as self-evident — the kinship relationship itself is the basis for the prohibition.
8. This clarifies verse 7: the father's nakedness (ervat avikha) is represented by his wife. Sexual relations with a father's wife (whether one's biological mother or a stepmother) violate the father's sexual domain. The phrase ervat avikha hi ('it is your father's nakedness') means the wife's sexual honor belongs to the husband — violating her violates him.
9. The prohibition covers all sisters: paternal half-sisters (bat avikha), maternal half-sisters (bat immekha), those born within the marriage (moledet bayit — 'born in the house'), and those born to other relationships (moledet chutz — 'born outside'). The comprehensive scope closes every possible loophole — any female sibling, regardless of the circumstances of her birth.
10. Granddaughters (through either son or daughter) are protected. The phrase ki ervatekha hennah ('for their nakedness is your own') means that violating a granddaughter is a violation of oneself — the kinship bond is so close that her sexual dignity is an extension of the grandfather's own.
11. This specifies a half-sister born to a stepmother (bat eshet avikha) but fathered by the same father (moledet avikha). She is explicitly identified as achotekha hi ('she is your sister') despite the different mother. The verse closes a potential loophole: the child of a stepmother might not be recognized as a 'real' sister, but the law declares her one.
12. The paternal aunt (achot avikha) is protected as she'er avikha ('your father's flesh/close relative'). The she'er ('flesh, kinship, close relation') concept means the aunt shares the same family flesh as the father — violating her violates the father's kinship network.
13. The maternal aunt receives the same protection as the paternal aunt (v 12), with the same kinship reasoning: she'er immekha hi ('she is your mother's close relative'). The parallelism ensures that both sides of the family are equally protected.
14. The uncle's wife (dodatekha — 'your aunt') is prohibited. The construction is notable: first the uncle himself is named (achi avikha — 'your father's brother'), then his wife is specified as the one not to be approached (el ishto lo tiqrav — 'you shall not approach his wife'). Approaching the uncle's nakedness means approaching his wife — the same principle as verse 8.
15. The daughter-in-law (kallatekha) is protected by her marriage to the man's son. The identification eshet binkha hi ('she is your son's wife') makes the kinship basis explicit: the marriage bond creates the same protective boundary as blood kinship.
16. The sister-in-law is protected by the same principle as verse 8: the wife's nakedness is her husband's nakedness (ervat achikha hi — 'it is your brother's nakedness'). The levirate marriage exception (Deuteronomy 25:5-10), which requires a surviving brother to marry his deceased brother's childless widow, is not addressed here — it operates under different conditions and serves a different purpose.
17. This prohibition covers multiple generations: a man may not have sexual relations with both a woman and her daughter, or with her granddaughters through either son or daughter. The term zimmah ('depravity, wickedness, scheme') is among the strongest condemnatory words in Hebrew — it describes calculated, deliberate moral corruption. The family members are identified as sha'arah ('her close relatives'), extending the kinship protection to the woman's entire female line.
18. The prohibition against marrying two sisters simultaneously (ishah el achotah) is explicitly motivated by the harm it would cause: litsror ('to vex, to make a rival') — the word tsarah means 'rival wife,' and the verb describes the jealousy and conflict such an arrangement produces. The qualification bechayeiha ('during her lifetime') implies that after one sister's death, marriage to the surviving sister may be permitted. Jacob's marriages to Rachel and Leah (Genesis 29) illustrate the very rivalry this law aims to prevent.
19. This prohibition connects the purity system of chapter 15 (where menstrual contact produces impurity, 15:24) to the moral-legal framework of chapter 18 (where it becomes a prohibited act). The phrase beniddat tum'atah ('during the impurity of her menstrual separation') uses both niddah and tum'ah together, linking the purity category to the ethical prohibition. What chapter 15 treated as a source of ritual impurity, chapter 18 treats as a boundary violation.

- 20.** Adultery (lo titten shekhavtekha lezara — literally 'you shall not give your emission of seed') with a neighbor's wife (eshet amitekha — 'the wife of your fellow') is prohibited as an act that defiles (letom'ah bah — 'to become impure through her'). The language of defilement connects adultery to the purity system — it is not merely a social wrong but a source of contamination.
- 21.** The prohibition of Molech worship (leha'avir lamolekh — 'to pass over/through to Molech') is placed among sexual prohibitions because it involves the offering of children — the fruit of sexual union. The word mizarakha ('from your seed/offspring') connects this verse to the reproductive context of the chapter. The phrase lo techalel et shem Elohekha ('you shall not profane the name of your God') elevates the offense: child sacrifice is not merely a crime against the child but a desecration of God's name.
- 22.** The Hebrew ve'et zakhar lo tishkav mishkevei ishah ('you shall not lie with a male the lyings of a woman') prohibits male-male sexual intercourse. The plural mishkevei ('lyings') is a term for sexual intercourse. The word to'evah ('detestable act, abomination') is a strong term of condemnation used in Leviticus for various prohibited acts and in Deuteronomy and the prophets for idolatry and related practices. The rendering preserves what the text says without adding interpretive commentary in either direction.
- 23.** Bestiality is prohibited for both men (lo titten shekhavtekha — 'you shall not give your emission') and women (ishah lo ta'amod lifnei behemah leriv'ah — 'a woman shall not stand before an animal for mating'). The word tevel ('perversion, confusion, mixing') describes the violation of the created order — the crossing of a boundary between species that was established at creation. Both sexes are explicitly addressed, ensuring comprehensive prohibition.
- 24.** The theological framework shifts: the prohibitions are not arbitrary cultural markers but the very practices by which the Canaanite nations defiled themselves (bekhol eleh nitme'u haggoyim — 'by all of these the nations became defiled'). The verb meshalleach ('driving out, sending away') describes God's active removal of the nations — their expulsion is a consequence of their defilement, and Israel is warned not to replicate the same pattern.
- 25.** The most striking image in the chapter: the land itself (ha'arets) is personified as a being that becomes defiled (vatitma), has iniquity visited upon it (va'efqod avonah aleiha — 'I visited/punished its iniquity upon it'), and physically reacts: vataqi ha'arets et yoshveiha ('the land vomited out its inhabitants'). The land is not a passive stage but an active participant in the covenant — it responds to moral contamination with revulsion. The vomiting metaphor is visceral and deliberate: the land cannot stomach its inhabitants' behavior and expels them.
- 26.** The prohibition applies equally to ha'eizrach ('the native-born citizen') and hagher haggar betokhekem ('the foreigner who resides among you'). Sexual boundaries are not for Israelites only — resident foreigners are bound by the same standards. This universality is grounded in the land theology: the land's capacity to be defiled and to vomit out its inhabitants is not conditioned on the inhabitants' ethnic identity.
- 27.** The parenthetical explanation reinforces the historical precedent: anshei ha'arets asher lifneikhem ('the people of the land who were before you') — the Canaanite nations — practiced these acts, and the land became defiled as a result. The cause-and-effect chain is clear: prohibited acts land defilement expulsion. Israel is warned that the same chain will apply to them.
- 28.** The warning is direct: the same land that expelled the Canaanites will expel Israel (velo taqi ha'arets etkhem — 'lest the land vomit you out'). The land does not distinguish between Canaanite and Israelite — it responds to defilement regardless of the defiler's identity. The phrase ka'asher qa'ah et haggoy asher lifneikhem ('as it vomited out the nation before you') makes the precedent explicit. Israel enjoys no ethnic immunity from the land's response to contamination.
- 29.** The penalty is karet (venikh'retu hannefashot — 'the persons shall be cut off') — exclusion from the covenant community. The verb nikhretu ('shall be cut off') may describe execution, divine punishment, or excommunication — its exact implementation is debated in rabbinic literature. The plural 'persons' (nefashot) indicates that all parties involved are subject to the penalty, not just one.
- 30.** The chapter closes as it opened: ushmartem et mishmarti ('you shall keep My charge') — the same root sh-m-r ('guard, keep') used throughout the Holiness Code. The prohibited acts are called chuqqot hatto'evot ('customs/statutes of the detestable acts') — institutionalized practices, not isolated incidents. The final declaration ani YHWH Elohekhem ('I am the LORD your God') forms an inclusio with verse 2, framing the entire chapter as divine speech from the God who has the authority to define Israel's boundaries. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the chapter.

19

Summary: *The ethical center of the Holiness Code: "Be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy." A rapid-fire sequence of commandments covers parents, Sabbath, idolatry, peace offerings, harvest gleanings for the poor, theft, lying, oppression, justice, neighbor-love, mixed breeding, fruit trees, blood, divination, grooming, prostitution, elders, foreigners, and honest weights.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command ve'ahavta lere'akha kamokha ("love your neighbor as yourself," v18) appears here for the first time in Scripture. The holiness imperative qedoshim tihyu (v2) redefines holiness as identity before behavior -- "be Mine" before "be good." The refrain ani YHWH ("I am the LORD") appears fifteen times, grounding every command in divine identity. Ethics and ritual are*

interwoven without distinction.

Translation Friction: We rendered qadosh as "holy" while noting in the expanded rendering that the Hebrew primarily means "set apart, belonging to God" rather than "morally pure." The harvest-gleaning command (vv 9-10) uses pe'ah ("corner") and leket ("gleanings") -- technical agricultural terms we clarified for non-agrarian readers. The verb tira ("revere/fear," applied to parents in v3 and elders in v32) needed consistent rendering to show it is the same posture owed to God.

Connections: Jesus identifies v18 as the second greatest commandment (Matt 22:39; Mark 12:31). James 2:8 calls it "the royal law." The gleaning provision is enacted in the Ruth narrative (Ruth 2). The prohibition against oppressing the foreigner (v33-34) echoes Exod 22:21 and Deut 10:19. Paul's "love is the fulfillment of the law" (Rom 13:10) is a direct reading of this chapter.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ²"Speak to the whole congregation of the sons of Israel and say to them: You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy. ³Each of you shall revere his mother and his father, and you shall keep My Sabbaths. I am the LORD your God. ⁴Do not turn to idols or make for yourselves gods of cast metal. I am the LORD your God. ⁵"When you offer a sacrifice of peace offerings to the LORD, you shall offer it so that you may be accepted. ⁶It shall be eaten on the day you offer it or on the next day. What remains until the third day shall be burned with fire. ⁷If it is eaten at all on the third day, it is an offense; it will not be accepted. ⁸Everyone who eats it shall bear his iniquity, because he has profaned what is holy to the LORD. That person shall be cut off from his people. ⁹"When you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not reap your field right up to its edge, nor shall you gather the gleanings after your harvest. ¹⁰You shall not strip your vineyard bare or gather the fallen grapes of your vineyard. You shall leave them for the poor and for the sojourner. I am the LORD your God. ¹¹"You shall not steal. You shall not deal falsely. You shall not lie to one another. ¹²You shall not swear by My name falsely, profaning the name of your God. I am the LORD. ¹³You shall not oppress your neighbor or rob him. The wages of a hired worker shall not remain with you all night until the morning. ¹⁴You shall not curse the deaf or put a stumbling block before the blind, but you shall fear your God. I am the LORD. ¹⁵"You shall do no injustice in judgment. You shall not show partiality to the poor or defer to the great, but in righteousness you shall judge your neighbor. ¹⁶You shall not go about as a slanderer among your people. You shall not stand against the blood of your neighbor. I am the LORD. ¹⁷You shall not hate your brother in your heart. You shall surely rebuke your neighbor and not bear sin because of him. ¹⁸You shall not take vengeance or bear a grudge against the sons of your own people, but you shall love your neighbor as yourself. I am the LORD. ¹⁹"You shall keep My statutes. You shall not breed your livestock with a different kind. You shall not sow your field with two kinds of seed. You shall not put on a garment made of two kinds of material. ²⁰If a man lies sexually with a female slave who is promised to another man but has not been ransomed or given her freedom, a penalty shall be imposed. They shall not be put to death, because she was not free. ²¹He shall bring his guilt offering to the LORD, to the entrance of the tent of meeting — a ram for a guilt offering. ²²The priest shall make atonement for him with the ram of the guilt offering before the LORD for his sin that he has committed, and he shall be forgiven for the sin he has committed. ²³"When you come into the land and plant any kind of tree for food, you shall regard its fruit as forbidden. For three years it shall be forbidden to you; it shall not be eaten. ²⁴In the fourth year all its fruit shall be holy, a praise offering to the LORD. ²⁵In the fifth year you may eat of its fruit, to increase its yield for you. I am the LORD your God. ²⁶"You shall not eat anything with its blood. You shall not practice divination or sorcery. ²⁷You shall not round off the hair on your temples or mar the edges of your beard. ²⁸You shall not make any cuts on your body for the dead or tattoo yourselves. I am the LORD. ²⁹"Do not profane your daughter by making her a prostitute, lest the land fall into prostitution and become full of depravity. ³⁰You must observe My Sabbaths and treat My sanctuary with reverence. I am the LORD. ³¹Do not turn to mediums or necromancers. Do not seek them out, defiling yourselves by them. I am the LORD your God. ³²"You shall rise before the gray-headed and honor the face of an elder, and you shall fear your God. I am the LORD. ³³"When a sojourner lives with you in your land, you shall not mistreat him. ³⁴The sojourner who lives with you shall be treated as a native among you, and you shall love him as yourself, for you were sojourners in the land of Egypt. I am the LORD your God. ³⁵"You shall do no wrong in judgment, in measures of length, weight, or quantity. ³⁶You shall have just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin. I am the LORD your God, who

brought you out of the land of Egypt. ³⁷You shall observe all My statutes and all My rules and do them. I am the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A new divine speech introduces what scholars call the 'Holiness Code' (chapters 17-26). This chapter is its ethical center.
2. 'You shall be holy, for I the LORD your God am holy' (qedoshim tihiy ki qadosh ani YHWH Eloheikhem) — the foundational command of the Holiness Code. Israel's holiness is derivative: they are holy because God is holy. The imperative is not 'become holy through effort' but 'be holy because I am holy and you belong to Me.' Holiness is relational before it is behavioral — it flows from identity, not achievement.
3. Parents and Sabbath are paired — the two institutions that ground Israelite identity in family and covenant. The order (mother before father) is reversed from Exodus 20:12, possibly to emphasize the mother's role in transmitting holiness within the household. 'I am the LORD your God' (ani YHWH Eloheikhem) punctuates the chapter like a refrain — appearing fifteen times. Every command is grounded in divine identity.
4. Idols (elilim, literally 'nothings, worthless things') and cast-metal gods are prohibited. The word elilim is a contemptuous pun on elohim — the gods of the nations are non-entities.
5. Peace offerings (shelamim, from shalom) are the fellowship sacrifice — the only offering where the worshiper eats a portion. The rules ensure the sacred meal is consumed promptly and reverently.
6. Two-day limit on consumption — the offering must be eaten fresh. Sacred food has a sacred timeframe.
7. Third-day consumption makes the offering piggul ('an offense, something loathsome'). The word piggul describes meat that has become ritually repulsive through improper handling.
8. Eating piggul profanes (chillel) what is holy — transforming sacred food into common waste. The penalty is karet.
9. The harvest gleaning laws: do not reap to the very edge (pe'ah) of the field. Leave the corners and the gleanings for the poor and the sojourner. The agricultural law embeds social justice into the harvest itself — generosity is not optional charity but commanded practice.
10. The vineyard parallel: do not strip it bare, do not collect fallen grapes. The poor and the sojourner have a right to what the landowner leaves behind. This law provides the narrative framework for the book of Ruth, where Ruth gleans in Boaz's field (Ruth 2).
11. Three prohibitions in rapid succession: no stealing (lo tignovu), no dealing falsely (lo tekachshu), no lying (lo teshaqru). The progression moves from action (theft) to character (falsehood) to speech (lying). Honesty is the baseline of covenant community.
12. False oath-taking profanes (chillel) God's name — the same verb used for profaning the peace offering in v8. God's name is sacred; invoking it falsely treats it as common. The third commandment (Exodus 20:7) is restated in the social-ethics context.
13. Oppression and robbery are prohibited alongside wage-theft. 'The wages of a hired worker shall not remain with you all night' (lo-talin pe'ullat sakhir ittekha ad-boqer) — the day laborer depends on daily payment. Withholding overnight wages is not mere inconvenience but survival-threatening injustice. James 5:4 echoes this verse.
14. 'Do not curse the deaf or put a stumbling block before the blind' — protection of the vulnerable from exploitation they cannot detect or avoid. The deaf person cannot hear the curse; the blind person cannot see the obstacle. The prohibition targets those who would take advantage of others' limitations. 'Fear your God' (veyareta me'Elohekha) — the motivation is theological: God sees what the deaf cannot hear and the blind cannot see.
15. Judicial impartiality: no favoritism toward poor (out of sentiment) or rich (out of deference). 'In righteousness you shall judge' (betsedek tishpot) — the word tsedek ('righteousness, justice') governs the courtroom. Justice is not compassion and not power; it is right order.
16. 'Do not stand against the blood of your neighbor' (lo ta'amod al-dam re'ekha) — the meaning is debated: do not stand idly by when your neighbor's life is at risk, or do not testify falsely in a capital case. Both readings emphasize active responsibility for preserving life.
17. 'Do not hate your brother in your heart' (lo tisna et-achikha bilvavekha) — the prohibition targets internal disposition, not just external behavior. Hidden hatred is as forbidden as open violence. 'You shall surely rebuke' (hokheiach tokhiach) — the alternative to silent hatred is honest confrontation. Rebuke is a duty, not an option.
18. 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself' (ve'ahavta lere'akha kamokha) — the most famous commandment in Leviticus, cited by Jesus as the second greatest commandment (Matthew 22:39; Mark 12:31). The verb ahav ('love') is not merely emotional but volitional and active: choosing the good of another as you would choose your own good. The word re'a ('neighbor') in context means a fellow member of the covenant community, though the command is extended to the sojourner in v34. 'I am the LORD' (ani YHWH) — the refrain grounds the command in divine identity: you love because I am who I am.
19. Three 'mixing' prohibitions (kilayim): no crossbreeding livestock, no mixed-seed planting, no mixed-fabric garments. The prohibitions maintain created categories — the order God established at creation (Genesis 1, 'according to their kinds') is preserved in daily life. Holiness includes respecting the distinctions God made.
20. The case law addresses a specific situation: sexual violation of an enslaved woman who is betrothed. The penalty is less than death because the woman's status (not yet free) creates legal complexity. The law recognizes the injustice without applying the full capital penalty designed for free persons.

21. A guilt offering (asham) is required — the ram indicates the seriousness of the offense. The asham addresses violations that involve both sin against God and damage to another person.
22. The priest makes atonement (kipper) and the offender is forgiven (venislach). The kippur-forgiveness sequence is the standard resolution for offenses addressed through sacrifice.
23. Fruit trees are restricted for three years after planting — the fruit is 'forbidden' (areltem, literally 'uncircumcised'). The metaphor of uncircumcision applied to fruit trees links agricultural patience to covenant identity.
24. Fourth-year fruit is 'holy, a praise offering' (qodesh hillulim) — the first usable harvest belongs to God. The pattern mirrors firstfruits theology: the first and best goes to God before the worshiper benefits.
25. Fifth-year consumption is permitted. The three-year wait, fourth-year offering, fifth-year eating create a five-year cycle of patience, dedication, and enjoyment. The promise: 'to increase its yield' — obedient waiting produces greater abundance.
26. Blood prohibition restated (cf. ch17). Divination (nachash) and sorcery (onan) are forbidden — Israel must not seek hidden knowledge through occult means. The source of Israel's knowledge is God's word, not magic.
27. Hair and beard regulations likely prohibit mourning practices associated with pagan cults. The specifics of what is forbidden are debated, but the principle is separation from the worship customs of surrounding peoples.
28. 'Do not make cuts on your body for the dead' — lacerating oneself in mourning was a common ancient Near Eastern practice (cf. 1 Kings 18:28). 'Or tattoo yourselves' (ukethovet qa'aqa lo tittenu bakhem) — the word qa'aqa appears only here in the Hebrew Bible; it likely refers to permanent markings. The prohibition targets cult-related body modification, not necessarily all decorative marking.
29. Forcing a daughter into prostitution profanes both the individual and the land. The verb chanaf ('become defiled/profaned') describes a moral-spiritual contamination that spreads from persons to territory.
30. Sabbath and sanctuary — the time-institution and the space-institution together. Keeping Sabbath sanctifies time; reverencing the sanctuary sanctifies space. Together they structure holy life.
31. Mediums (ovot) and necromancers (yiddonim) are forbidden. Seeking communication with the dead bypasses the legitimate channels of divine revelation (prophets, Torah). The prohibition is repeated in 20:6, 27 with severe penalties.
32. 'Rise before the gray-headed' (mippenei sevhah taqum) — respect for elders is commanded as an expression of fearing God. The connection between honoring the aged and fearing God links social ethics to theology: how you treat the vulnerable reveals your relationship with God.
33. The sojourner (ger) must not be mistreated (lo tonu) — the verb yanah means 'to oppress, to wrong, to exploit.' The prohibition protects the foreigner from both economic exploitation and social marginalization.
34. 'You shall love him as yourself' (ve'ahavta lo kamokha) — the love-your-neighbor command of v18 is now explicitly extended to the sojourner. The ger receives the same love as the re'a. 'For you were sojourners in the land of Egypt' — Israel's own experience of being foreigners is the basis for empathy, exactly as in Exodus 23:9. The exodus creates ethical obligation.
35. Commercial honesty: no fraud in measurements. The prohibition covers all forms of commercial deception — length, weight, and volume. Economic justice is a holiness requirement.
36. 'Just balances, just weights' (moznei tsedek avnei tsedek) — the word tsedek ('just, righteous') governs commerce as it governs the courtroom (v15). Righteousness means honest dealing in every sphere. The exodus grounding appears again: 'I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt.' Liberation creates obligation in every domain of life.
37. The chapter closes with a comprehensive summary: observe all statutes, all rules, do them. The refrain 'I am the LORD' appears one final time. Every command in this chapter — from holiness to gleaning to love of neighbor to honest weights — flows from and returns to divine identity.

20

Summary: Penalties are prescribed for violations listed in chapter 18: death for Molech worship, mediums, adultery, and certain sexual transgressions; karet (being cut off) for others. The chapter closes with a renewed call to distinguish clean from unclean and to be holy as God is holy.

What Makes This Remarkable: Where chapter 18 states what is forbidden, chapter 20 prescribes the consequences. God declares "I will set My face against" offenders -- a phrase of direct divine opposition. Communal responsibility is emphasized: if the people "close their eyes" to Molech worship (v4), God will act against the entire community. The closing frame returns to the holiness imperative: distinction between clean and unclean is inseparable from Israel's election.

Translation Friction: The Hiphil infinitive absolute ha'lem ya'alimu ("hiding they hide," v4) intensifies deliberate communal complicity, and we rendered it "deliberately close their eyes" to capture the willfulness. The penalty term mot yumat ("he must certainly die") uses emphatic doubling we preserved through "must." The phrase etten et panay ("I will set My face against") recurs as the strongest expression of divine judicial opposition, and we maintained its force consistently.

Connections: The penalties correspond to the prohibitions of ch 18. The holiness-distinction command (v25-26) repeats the priestly mandate of 10:10. The land-vomiting warning (v22) echoes 18:28. The separation from the nations (v24-26) anticipates the exile theology of ch 26.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: ²"Say to the Israelites: Any person among the Israelites, or any foreigner residing in Israel, who gives any of his children to Molech must be put to death. The people of the land shall stone him. ³I Myself will set My face against that man and cut him off from among his people, because he gave his children to Molech, defiling My sanctuary and profaning My holy name. ⁴If the people of the land deliberately close their eyes to that man when he gives his children to Molech, refusing to put him to death, ⁵then I Myself will set My face against that man and against his family. I will cut him off — along with all who follow him in prostituting themselves to Molech — from among their people. ⁶As for the person who turns to mediums and spiritists, prostituting himself by following them — I will set My face against that person and cut him off from among his people. ⁷Set yourselves apart and be holy, for I am the LORD your God. ⁸Keep My statutes and carry them out. I am the LORD who sets you apart. ⁹Any person who curses his father or his mother must be put to death. He has cursed his father and his mother — his blood is on him. ¹⁰If a man commits adultery with another man's wife — committing adultery with his neighbor's wife — both the adulterer and the adulteress must be put to death. ¹¹If a man sleeps with his father's wife, he has violated his father's sexual rights. Both of them must be put to death — their blood is on them. ¹²If a man sleeps with his daughter-in-law, both of them must be put to death. They have committed a perversion — their blood is on them. ¹³If a man lies with a male as one lies with a woman, both of them have committed an abhorrent act. They must be put to death — their blood is on them. ¹⁴If a man marries both a woman and her mother, it is depravity. They shall be burned with fire — both he and they — so that there is no depravity among you. ¹⁵If a man has sexual relations with an animal, he must be put to death, and you shall kill the animal. ¹⁶If a woman approaches any animal to mate with it, you shall kill both the woman and the animal. They must be put to death — their blood is on them. ¹⁷If a man takes his sister — whether his father's daughter or his mother's daughter — and they see each other's nakedness, it is a disgrace. They shall be cut off in the sight of their people. He has uncovered his sister's nakedness; he will bear his punishment. ¹⁸If a man sleeps with a woman during her menstrual period and uncovers her nakedness, he has exposed her flow, and she has revealed the source of her blood. Both of them shall be cut off from among their people. ¹⁹You shall not have sexual relations with your mother's sister or your father's sister, for that is exposing one's own close relative. They will bear their guilt. ²⁰If a man sleeps with his uncle's wife, he has violated his uncle's sexual rights. They will bear their sin — they will die childless. ²¹If a man takes his brother's wife, it is an act of impurity. He has uncovered his brother's nakedness — they shall be childless. ²²You shall keep all My statutes and all My ordinances and carry them out, so that the land where I am bringing you to live does not vomit you out. ²³Do not follow the customs of the nation that I am driving out before you, for they practiced all these things and I was disgusted with them. ²⁴I have told you: You will possess their land, and I Myself will give it to you to take possession of — a land flowing with milk and honey. I am the LORD your God, who has set you apart from the peoples. ²⁵You must distinguish between clean animals and unclean, and between unclean birds and clean. Do not make yourselves detestable by any animal, bird, or anything that crawls on the ground — those that I have set apart for you as unclean. ²⁶You shall be holy to Me, for I the LORD am holy, and I have set you apart from the peoples to be Mine. ²⁷A man or a woman who is a medium or a spiritist must be put to death. They shall be stoned — their blood is on them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic speech formula vayedabber YHWH el-Mosheh lemor introduces a new divine address. Chapter 20 functions as the enforcement code for the prohibitions listed in chapter 18 — where chapter 18 stated what was forbidden, chapter 20 prescribes the penalties.

2. The doubled *ish ish* ('any person whatsoever') is an emphatic Hebrew construction ensuring universal application. The phrase *mizaro* ('from his seed/offspring') combined with *natan laMolekh* ('gives to Molech') refers to child sacrifice — the practice of passing children through fire as offerings to the Ammonite deity. Both Israelites and the *ger haGar* ('the foreigner who resides') are subject to this law, indicating that Molech worship defiles the land itself, not just the individual. The penalty *mot yumat* ('he must certainly die') uses the Hophal infinitive absolute for emphasis, and *am ha'aretz* ('people of the land') denotes the community's collective judicial responsibility.
3. The phrase *etten et panay* ('I will set My face against') signals direct divine opposition — God personally acts as prosecutor. The verb *v'hikrati* ('I will cut off') refers to *karet*, divine excision from the covenant community, which may operate beyond human judicial punishment. Two consequences of Molech worship are named: defiling the *miqdash* ('sanctuary') and profaning the *shem qodshi* ('My holy name'). Child sacrifice is not merely a social crime but a direct assault on God's holiness and sacred space.
4. The Hiphil infinitive absolute *ha'lem ya'alimu* ('hiding they hide') intensifies the verb — this is not accidental oversight but deliberate refusal to act. The community bears judicial responsibility; looking away from child sacrifice makes the entire community complicit. The construction *l'vilti hamit* ('so as not to put to death') frames their inaction as a willful decision to spare the guilty.
5. When the community fails to enforce justice, God Himself intervenes. The penalty expands from the individual to his *mishpachto* ('his family/clan'), then to *kol-hazonim acharav* ('all who prostitute themselves after him'). The verb *zanah* ('to prostitute') is used metaphorically: following Molech is spiritual adultery against YHWH. The phrase *liznot acharei haMolekh* ('to prostitute after Molech') frames idolatrous worship as covenant betrayal — the same marriage metaphor the prophets will later develop extensively.
6. The *ovot* ('mediums,' literally 'spirit-bottles' — hollow vessels through which the dead supposedly speak) and *yid'onim* ('spiritists,' from *yada*, 'to know' — those who claim hidden knowledge from the spirit world) represent attempts to access supernatural knowledge outside of YHWH. The same prostitution language (*liznot achareihem*) used for Molech worship is applied here: consulting the dead is spiritual infidelity. The penalty is *karet* — divine excision from the people.
7. The Hitpa'el *v'hitqadishtem* ('set yourselves apart') calls for active self-consecration, while *vihyitem qedoshim* ('and be holy') states the resulting identity. The grounding clause *ki ani YHWH Eloheikhem* ('for I am the LORD your God') makes holiness derivative — Israel is holy because YHWH is holy and they belong to Him. This verse marks the transition from specific penalties (vv 1-6) to the theological foundation: holiness is the reason behind every prohibition.
8. The verb pair *ushmartem... va'asitem* ('keep... and do') demands both guarding the commandments and actively performing them. The closing declaration *ani YHWH meqadishkhem* ('I am the LORD who makes you holy') uses the Piel participle — God is the active agent of Israel's sanctification. Obedience is the human response, but the power to be holy comes from YHWH Himself.
9. The verb *yeqallel* (Piel of *qalal*, 'to make light, to curse') means to treat with contempt or to revile — the opposite of the honor (*kavod*, 'weight, heaviness') commanded in the Decalogue (Exod 20:12). The phrase *damav bo* ('his blood is on him') is a judicial formula placing responsibility for the death on the offender himself: the community executes justice, but the guilt belongs to the one who violated the command.
10. The verb *yin'af* ('commits adultery') appears twice for emphasis: first identifying the general act, then specifying it as *eshet re'ehu* ('his neighbor's wife'). The penalty falls on both parties — *hano'ef v'hano'afet* ('the adulterer and the adulteress') — indicating shared culpability. Adultery in the ancient Near East was primarily an offense against the husband's household rights, but the Torah's inclusion of the woman's penalty reflects her moral agency.
11. The phrase *ervat aviv gillah* ('he has uncovered his father's nakedness') means he has violated his father's exclusive sexual domain. In Hebrew legal thought, a man's wife is an extension of his *ervah* ('nakedness/sexual rights'); to sleep with her is to transgress against the father, not merely against the woman. The plural *d'meihem bam* ('their blood is on them') holds both parties responsible.
12. The term *tevel* ('perversion, confusion') occurs only here and in Lev 18:23 (bestiality). It denotes a violation so severe that it confounds the created order — a mixing of categories that God established as distinct. The father-in-law/daughter-in-law relationship carries the same generational boundary as the parent-child relationship; violating it is a fundamental transgression of family structure.
13. The phrase *mishk'vei ishah* ('as the lyings of a woman') specifies the sexual act itself. The term *to'evah* ('abhorrent act, abomination') is a strong term of revulsion used in Leviticus for acts that violate the created order and defile the land (see 18:22, 26-27). In the Holiness Code, *to'evah* marks violations serious enough to cause the land itself to 'vomit out' its inhabitants (18:25, 28). The penalty is capital — *mot yumatu* with the blood-guilt formula *d'meihem bam*.
14. The term *zimmah* ('depravity, deliberate wickedness, scheme') denotes calculated sexual transgression — not impulsive error but willful perversion. Burning (*ba'esh yisrefu*) is a more severe form of execution than stoning, reserved for extreme violations (cf. Gen 38:24, Lev 21:9). The purpose clause *v'lo tihyeh zimmah b'tokhkhem* ('so there will be no depravity among you') shows the penalty is purgative: removing corruption to protect the community's holiness.
15. The phrase *yitten sh'khavto* ('gives his emission') is an explicit anatomical description of the act. The animal is also killed (*taharogu*, 'you shall slay') — not because it bears moral guilt, but because it has been implicated in a violation of the created order that must be completely eradicated. The animal's death serves to remove every trace of the transgression.
16. The verb *tiqrav* ('approaches') with the purpose infinitive *l'riv'ah* ('to mate with') describes the woman as the initiator. The law addresses female agency in bestiality separately from the male case (v 15), with the same severity. The blood-guilt formula *d'meihem bam* extends to both the woman

and the animal, consistent with the principle that the violation must be entirely purged.

17. The word *chesed* here is not the common *chesed* meaning 'loyal love' or 'covenant faithfulness.' This is a homonym meaning 'shame, disgrace' — a shocking and deliberate word choice that highlights the perversion of family bonds. The mutual 'seeing' (*v'ra'ah... v'hi tireh*) implies consensual participation. The penalty is *karet* ('cutting off') rather than death, and is performed *l'einei b'nei amam* ('in the sight of their people') — a public sentence. The phrase *avono yisa* ('he shall bear his punishment') indicates the guilt remains with him.
18. The term *davah* ('menstrual sickness, impurity') refers to a woman during her menstrual period. The phrase *et-meqorah he'erah* ('he exposed her source/fountain') uses the metaphor of a spring or fountain (*maqor*) for the menstrual flow — he has laid bare what should remain covered. Her shared guilt (*v'hi giltah*, 'and she revealed') indicates consensual participation. The penalty is *karet* for both, lesser than the death penalties above but still severe: this violation transgresses the blood-holiness boundary central to Levitical theology.
19. The term *she'ero* ('his flesh, his close relative') emphasizes the blood-kinship violation: an aunt is one's own flesh, and sexual contact with her violates the integrity of the family body. The phrase *avonam yisa'u* ('they shall bear their guilt') indicates divine punishment without specifying the form — the absence of a specific death penalty or *karet* suggests the punishment is left to God's direct action. This verse shifts from case-law (*ish asher*, 'a man who') to direct address (*lo tegalleh*, 'you shall not uncover'), varying the legal style.
20. The term *dodato* ('his aunt,' literally 'his uncle's wife') and *ervat dodo* ('his uncle's nakedness') frame this as a violation against the uncle's marital domain. The penalty *aririm yamutu* ('they shall die childless') introduces a distinctive punishment: not execution but divinely imposed barrenness. The word *aririm* ('childless, stripped bare') is devastating in an ancient context where children were one's legacy, security, and continuation — dying without offspring meant the complete termination of one's line.
21. The term *niddah* ('impurity, menstrual separation') applied to this act is striking — it is not merely forbidden but ritually contaminating. This prohibition appears to conflict with the levirate marriage law (Deut 25:5-10), which requires a man to marry his deceased brother's childless wife. The resolution is that Leviticus 20:21 addresses taking a living brother's wife, while Deuteronomy addresses the obligation to a deceased brother's widow. The penalty *aririm yihyu* ('they shall be childless') again uses divinely imposed barrenness rather than human execution.
22. The verb *taqi* ('vomit out') personifies the land as a living entity with a moral constitution — it cannot stomach the presence of those who violate God's commands. This graphic image (used also in 18:25, 28) presents the land of Canaan as sacred space that actively expels its defilers. The pair *chuqotay... mishpatay* ('My statutes... My ordinances') encompasses the full range of divine legislation: *chuqqot* are inscribed decrees and *mishpatim* are judicial rulings.
23. The verb *va'aqutz* ('I was disgusted, I loathed') expresses visceral divine revulsion — stronger than mere disapproval. The singular *hagoy* ('the nation') may refer collectively to the Canaanite peoples. The verb *meshalleach* ('am sending away, am driving out') presents the dispossession as an ongoing divine action. The logic is explicit: the Canaanites practiced these violations, God expelled them; Israel must not repeat those practices or face the same fate.
24. The promise of land possession (*tirshu et-admatam*, 'you will inherit their ground') is conditioned on covenant faithfulness — the same land that vomited out the Canaanites will welcome obedient Israel. The phrase *eret zavat chalav ud'vash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') is the classic description of abundance and fertility. The verb *hivdalti* ('I have separated/distinguished') from *badal* introduces the separation theme that dominates the chapter's conclusion: God's act of setting Israel apart from the peoples is the foundation for their distinct way of life.
25. The verb *hivdaltem* ('you shall distinguish/separate') echoes God's own act of separation (*hivdalti*, v 24). Israel's daily practice of distinguishing clean from unclean mirrors God's act of distinguishing Israel from the nations. The dietary laws are not arbitrary but pedagogical: every meal reinforces the identity of a people set apart. The verb *teshaqtzu* ('make detestable') from *sheqetz* (the term for unclean swarming creatures in Lev 11) warns that consuming what God has classified as unclean contaminates the person's own *nefesh* ('self, being').
26. This verse forms an *inclusio* with verse 7 — the chapter's theological bookends. The phrase *lihyot li* ('to be Mine') reveals the ultimate purpose of holiness: belonging. Israel is not holy for the sake of moral achievement but for the sake of divine possession. The verb *va'avdil* ('I have separated') uses the same root (*badal*) as verses 24-25, creating a threefold separation chain: God separates Israel from the nations (v 24), Israel separates clean from unclean (v 25), and both acts flow from God's own holiness (v 26). Holiness, separation, and belonging are inseparable in the Holiness Code.
27. This closing verse returns to the theme of verse 6 (consulting mediums and spiritists), forming a bracket around the chapter's sexual prohibitions. While verse 6 addressed the person who consults mediums (penalty: *karet*), verse 27 addresses the practitioners themselves (penalty: stoning). The terms *ov* ('medium') and *yid'oni* ('spiritist') are the same as in verse 6 — but now the practitioners themselves are condemned rather than their clients. The placement after the holiness conclusion (vv 22-26) reinforces that occult practice is fundamentally incompatible with belonging to YHWH. The *parashah* marker (*pe*) at the end signals a major textual division.

21

Summary: *Regulations for priestly holiness address two levels: ordinary priests must avoid corpse contamination (with exceptions for immediate family), and the high priest must avoid it entirely. Physical disqualifications for altar service are listed. The chapter protects the holiness of the priestly office as mediators of God's presence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The double speech formula emor... ve'amarta ("say... and tell them") intensifies the urgency. The word nephesh ("person") here paradoxically means "corpse" -- the living-soul term designates a dead body. The high priest's total separation from death-contamination (not even for parents, v11) reflects his unique proximity to the source of life. Physical-blemish restrictions (v17-23) are about representational fitness, not inherent worth -- blemished priests still eat the sacred food.*

Translation Friction: *The verse about ba'al (v4) is notoriously difficult: the word can mean "husband," "master," or "leader." We followed the marital reading (prohibition against contracting corpse-impurity for in-laws) while noting the alternatives. The reflexive verb yitamma ("make himself unclean") required rendering that preserved the active choice involved -- the priest incurs impurity by choosing contact with the dead. The mourning practices (v5) -- head-shaving, beard-trimming, skin-cutting -- are pagan death rituals, and we identified them as such.*

Connections: *The high priest's unique restrictions anticipate Heb 7:26 ("separated from sinners"). The blemish list parallels the unblemished requirement for sacrificial animals (1:3; 22:17-25). The priestly mourning restrictions overlap with Ezekiel's experience (Ezek 24:16-17). The graduated holiness (people < priests < high priest) reflects the tabernacle's spatial gradient (court < holy place < most holy place).*

¹The LORD told Moses: Say to the priests, the sons of Aaron, and tell them — a priest must not make himself ritually unclean through contact with a dead person among his people, ²except for his closest blood relatives: his mother, his father, his son, his daughter, and his brother. ³Also for his virgin sister who remains close to him because she has not yet married — for her he may make himself unclean. ⁴He must not make himself unclean as a married man among his people, thereby desecrating himself. ⁵They must not shave bald patches on their heads, trim the edges of their beards, or make cuts in their skin. ⁶They must be holy to their God and must not desecrate the name of their God, because they are the ones who present the LORD's fire offerings — the food of their God. Therefore they must be holy. ⁷They must not marry a woman who is a prostitute or who has been desecrated, nor may they marry a woman divorced from her husband, because the priest is holy to his God. ⁸You must treat him as holy, because he presents the food of your God. He must be holy to you, because I, the LORD who sets you apart as holy, am holy. ⁹If the daughter of a priest desecrates herself by engaging in prostitution, she desecrates her father — she must be burned with fire. ¹⁰The priest who is greatest among his brothers — the one on whose head the anointing oil has been poured and who has been ordained to wear the sacred garments — must not let his hair hang loose or tear his garments. ¹¹He must not go near any dead body at all. He must not make himself unclean even for his father or his mother. ¹²He must not leave the sanctuary area, and he must not desecrate the sanctuary of his God, because the consecration of the anointing oil of his God is upon him. I am the LORD. ¹³He must marry a woman who is a virgin. ¹⁴A widow, a divorced woman, a desecrated woman, or a prostitute — he must not marry any of these. He may only take a virgin from his own people as a wife. ¹⁵He must not desecrate his offspring among his people, because I am the LORD who sets him apart as holy. ¹⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁷Speak to Aaron and tell him: Any man among your descendants throughout their generations who has a physical defect must not approach to present the food of his God. ¹⁸No man who has a physical defect may approach: whether blind, or lame, or with a disfigured face, or with a limb too long, ¹⁹or a man with a broken foot or a broken hand, ²⁰or hunchbacked, or stunted in growth, or with a defect in his eye, or with a festering rash, or with scabs, or with crushed testicles. ²¹No man from the line of Aaron the priest who has a physical defect may come forward to present the LORD's fire offerings. He has a defect; he must not come forward to present the food of his God. ²²He may eat the food of his God from both the most holy offerings and the holy offerings. ²³But he must not approach the curtain or come near the altar, because he has a defect. He must not desecrate my holy places, because I am the LORD who makes them holy. ²⁴So

Moses communicated this to Aaron, to his sons, and to all the Israelites.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double speech formula *emor... ve'amarta* ('say... and tell them') intensifies the urgency of the instruction — Moses must not merely relay it but press it firmly upon the priests. The word *nephesh* here means 'dead person' (literally 'soul/person'), a usage where the living-soul term paradoxically designates a corpse. The verb *yitamma* ('make himself unclean') is reflexive: the priest actively incurs impurity by choosing contact with the dead. This opening verse establishes that priestly holiness demands separation from death-contamination that ordinary Israelites are permitted.
2. The term *she'ero* ('his flesh/kin') refers to the nearest blood relations — those so close they are considered part of one's own body. The list is precise and exhaustive for this exception: five categories of immediate family. Notably absent is the priest's wife, though later rabbinic tradition included her. The ordering — mother before father — may reflect the mother's primacy in early household bonds, or simply follow the Hebrew poetic rhythm.
3. The *betulah* ('virgin') qualification is critical: once a sister marries, she enters her husband's family unit and is no longer considered the priest's closest kin. The phrase *haqerovah elav* ('who is close to him') indicates both physical proximity (she still lives in the family household) and relational closeness. A married sister would have her husband's family to attend to her burial. This exception underscores that the prohibition in verse 1 applies to extended kin and community members, not one's innermost family circle.
4. This verse is notoriously difficult. The word *ba'al* can mean 'husband,' 'master,' or 'leader.' If read as 'husband,' the verse forbids the priest from contracting corpse-impurity for his wife's relatives (in-laws). If read as 'leader/chief man,' the emphasis is on his public status: precisely because of his prominence he must not profane himself (*lehechallo* — from *challal*, 'to profane/desecrate'). The rendering follows the marital reading, which fits the immediate context of family-based exceptions in verses 2–3.
5. Three prohibited mourning practices are listed, all associated with pagan death rituals in the ancient Near East: *qorchah* ('bald patch' — ritual head-shaving for the dead), shaving *pe'at zaqanam* ('the edge/corner of their beard'), and *seret* ('gash/cut' — self-laceration). These same prohibitions appear for all Israelites in 19:27–28, but are restated here with special force for priests. The bracketed *kethiv/qere* notation in the Hebrew (*[yiqrechu]/yiqrechah*) reflects a textual variant between singular and plural forms, both meaning 'shave bald.'
6. This verse provides the theological rationale for priestly restrictions: *qedoshim yihyu* ('they must be holy') frames holiness as an obligation, not a suggestion. The key term *lechem eloheihem* ('the food/bread of their God') does not imply God literally eats — it is a conventional ancient Near Eastern expression for offerings presented at the divine table. The verb *yechalelu* ('desecrate,' from *challal*) stands in direct opposition to *qodesh* ('holy'): the priest who engages in pagan mourning rites profanes the very Name he is consecrated to honor.
7. Three categories of women are forbidden as priestly wives: *zonah* ('prostitute' — whether a professional sex worker or a woman of sexual impropriety), *challalah* ('a desecrated woman' — from *challal*, possibly a woman born of an illegitimate priestly marriage or one who has lost her sanctified status), and *gerushah* ('a divorced woman'). The concern is not the woman's moral character per se but the priest's holiness status: his household must reflect the same unblemished consecration as his service. The singular 'he is holy' (*qadosh hu*) applies the principle individually to each priest.
8. The address shifts from the priests to the community: *veqidashto* ('you shall sanctify him') is second person singular, commanding each Israelite to uphold the priest's sanctified status. The grounding formula *ki qadosh ani YHWH meqaddishkhem* ('because I, the LORD who makes you holy, am holy') anchors all priestly holiness in divine holiness itself. The participle *meqaddishkhem* ('the one who makes you holy') emphasizes God's ongoing sanctifying action — holiness is not self-generated but conferred by God and maintained through obedience.
9. The verb *techel* ('she profanes/desecrates,' from *challal*) links the daughter's sexual misconduct directly to her father's priestly status: *hi mechallelet* ('she is desecrating') — her actions actively profane him. The punishment *ba'esh tissareph* ('she shall be burned with fire') is exceptionally severe, exceeding the standard penalty for sexual immorality, precisely because the priestly household carries a heightened level of sanctity. The fire may correspond symbolically to the fire offerings the priest presents — the same element that consecrates the altar now executes judgment on the desecrated household.
10. The high priest (*hakohen hagadol* — literally 'the great priest') is identified by two consecration markers: the anointing oil (*shemen hamishchah*) poured on his head, and the filling of his hand (*umille et yado* — an ordination idiom meaning 'to install in office,' literally 'to fill the hand,' likely referring to placing sacred objects in the priest's hands during investiture). Two mourning signs are forbidden: *yifra* ('let loose' — disheveling the hair as a grief display) and *yifrom* ('tear' — rending garments). These are standard expressions of grief permitted to ordinary Israelites and even regular priests, but the high priest's consecrated status overrides personal mourning.
11. The phrase *kol nafshot met* ('any dead person' — literally 'all souls of the dead') is comprehensive: no exceptions. The contrast with ordinary priests (vv 2–3) is stark — whereas they may contract corpse-impurity for immediate family, the high priest may not do so even for his own parents (*le'aviv ule'immo*). This absolute prohibition underscores that the high priest's consecration supersedes all natural family obligations. His holiness status is so elevated that even the deepest human grief must yield to his sacred role.
12. The word *nezer* ('consecration/crown/separation') is the same root used for the Nazirite vow (Numbers 6), signifying a state of dedicated separation. Here it refers to the anointing oil's ongoing consecrating effect on the high priest — he carries its mark permanently. The phrase *lo yetse* ('he must not go out') likely means he must not leave the sanctuary precincts to attend a funeral, not that he is physically confined there at all times. The divine signature *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') closes the instruction with ultimate authority.

13. The phrase *bivtuleiha* ('in her virginity') uses the plural construct of *betulim*, indicating the full state of virginity rather than simply the noun *betulah* ('virgin'). The high priest's marriage requirement is stricter than the ordinary priest's (v 7): while regular priests are forbidden prostitutes, desecrated women, and divorcees, the high priest is restricted to an even narrower category — only a virgin qualifies. This requirement ensures that the high priestly line originates from an unblemished marital union.
14. The high priest's forbidden marriage list adds *almanah* ('widow') to the three categories already banned for ordinary priests (v 7). A widow, though morally blameless, has been 'opened' through a prior marriage and no longer meets the virginity requirement. The phrase *me'ammav* ('from his own people') restricts the high priest's marriage pool to Israelite women — specifically virgins within his own community. The four-fold exclusion list (widow, divorcee, *challalah*, *zonah*) followed by the single permitted category (*betulah* from his people) creates a stark rhetorical contrast.
15. The verb *yechallel* ('desecrate,' from *challal*) applied to *zar'o* ('his offspring/seed') reveals the rationale behind the marriage restrictions: an improper union would produce *challal* children — offspring with compromised priestly status. The term *challal* in priestly contexts means 'profaned' or 'disqualified from sacred service.' The closing formula *ani YHWH meqadsho* ('I am the LORD who sanctifies him') grounds the entire high-priestly section (vv 10–15) in God's own sanctifying action — the restrictions exist to preserve what God Himself has consecrated.
16. The speech formula *vayedabber YHWH el Mosheh lemor* ('the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') marks a new section within the chapter. This third-person narrative frame transitions from the high priest's marriage laws (vv 10–15) to the physical-blemish disqualifications (vv 17–24). The shift to a fresh divine speech signals that the following regulations, though thematically related, carry independent legislative force.
17. This instruction is directed to Aaron personally (*daber el Aharon*), not to the priests collectively — emphasizing that these rules govern his own lineage. The word *mum* ('defect/blemish') is the chapter's key technical term for physical disqualification. The verb *yigraiv* ('approach') paired with *lehaqriv* ('to present/offer') uses the same root *q-r-b* twice: the blemished priest may not draw near to bring near. The phrase *lechem elohav* ('the food of his God') again denotes sacrificial offerings using the conventional 'food' metaphor.
18. The blemish catalogue begins with four conditions. *Ivver* ('blind') and *pisseach* ('lame') are clear physical disabilities. *Charum* ('disfigured' — possibly a slit or sunken nose, or more broadly a facial deformity) is debated; the root *ch-r-m* suggests mutilation or something cut away. *Sarua* ('extended/stretched out' — a limb that is disproportionately long or has extra digits) completes the first group. These are not moral judgments but ritual standards: the priest who offers must physically mirror the 'unblemished' (*tamim*) quality required of the sacrificial animal itself.
19. The phrase *shever regel* ('fracture of the foot') and *shever yad* ('fracture of the hand') use *shever* ('break/fracture'), likely referring to a permanent deformity from a healed fracture rather than a temporary injury. The pairing of foot and hand covers the body's primary instruments of mobility and service — a priest must be physically whole in the limbs he uses to carry offerings and perform altar duties.
20. Six more disqualifying conditions: *gibben* ('hunchbacked' — spinal curvature), *daq* ('thin/stunted' — possibly a dwarf or an emaciated person; the root means 'crushed fine'), *teballul be'eino* ('a mixing/confusion in his eye' — likely a cataract, clouded lens, or iris defect), *garav* ('scab/itch' — a chronic skin disease), *yallefet* ('running sore/eczema' — a spreading skin condition), and *meroach ashekh* ('crushed testicle' — testicular damage rendering the man sexually impaired). The list mirrors the blemish catalogue for sacrificial animals in 22:22–24, reinforcing the principle that the one who offers must match the offering's standard of physical wholeness.
21. This verse serves as a summary restatement, framing the blemish list (vv 18–20) with a definitive prohibition. The double statement — *lo yiggash lehaqriv... lo yiggash lehaqriv* ('he must not come forward to present... he must not come forward to present') — hammers the restriction through repetition. The phrase *ishei YHWH* ('the fire offerings of the LORD') and *lechem elohav* ('the food of his God') are used in parallel, confirming they refer to the same sacrificial offerings described from two angles: their mode of presentation (by fire) and their conceptual category (divine food).
22. This verse provides a crucial qualification: the blemished priest is barred from altar service but retains his priestly right to eat the sacred portions. The distinction between *qodshei haqodashim* ('the most holy things' — grain offerings, sin offerings, guilt offerings eaten only by priests within the sanctuary) and *haqodashim* ('the holy things' — breast and thigh portions of peace offerings, firstfruits, tithes) preserves the full range of priestly food entitlements. The defect disqualifies from service, not from status — the blemished priest remains a priest.
23. Two sacred zones are explicitly off-limits: the *parokhet* ('curtain/veil' — the screen separating the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place) and the *mizbeach* ('altar' — the bronze altar of burnt offering in the courtyard). The verb *yechallel* ('desecrate,' from *challal*) appears for the final time in this chapter, closing the inclusio opened in verse 6: priests who fail to maintain the required standard of wholeness risk profaning (*mechallel*) the very sanctuaries (*miqdashay* — plural, referring to the entire sacred complex) that God has consecrated (*meqaddesh*). The divine self-identification *ani YHWH meqaddisham* ('I am the LORD who makes them holy') asserts that sanctuary holiness originates in God, not in priestly performance.
24. The closing verse confirms that Moses faithfully transmitted (*vayedabber* — 'he spoke/communicated') God's instructions to all three audiences: Aaron (the high priest), his sons (the ordinary priests), and all the Israelites (the broader community addressed in v 8). The inclusion of *kol benei Yisrael* ('all the sons/children of Israel') indicates that the community bears collective responsibility for upholding priestly standards — these are not private guild rules but public covenant regulations.

22

Summary: *Priests in a state of impurity must abstain from sacred offerings until purified. Rules specify who within priestly households may eat sacred food. The chapter then addresses sacrificial animals: they must be unblemished, with specific defects listed. The offering must be the worshipper's own, given willingly.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb yinnazru ("exercise restraint," v2) instructs priests not to avoid sacred offerings entirely but to hold back when impure. The sacred food regulations define the priestly household's boundaries with precision -- who is "inside" the priest's house and who has left. The blemish catalogue for animals mirrors the priest's physical requirements in ch 21: the offering must match the offerer's representational standard.*

Translation Friction: *The root n-z-r in yinnazru ("exercise restraint") carries nazir ("separated/consecrated") associations, and we rendered it to show self-discipline rather than avoidance. The phrase milefanai ("from My presence," v3) is unique to this context -- karet here means exclusion specifically from God's immediate presence in the sanctuary. The catch-all lekhol tumato ("of whatever his impurity," v5) required rendering broad enough to cover every impurity category from chapters 11-15.*

Connections: *The unblemished-animal requirement repeats the foundational standard of 1:3 and Deut 17:1. The defect list anticipates Mal 1:8 ("offer it to your governor -- would he accept you?"). The sacred-food boundaries connect to the priestly portion regulations of ch 7. The prohibition against offering what costs nothing anticipates David's principle in 2 Sam 24:24.*

¹The LORD addressed Moses: ²Tell Aaron and his sons to exercise restraint regarding the sacred offerings of the Israelites, so that they do not desecrate my holy name in connection with what the Israelites consecrate to me. I am the LORD. ³Say to them: Throughout your generations, any man among your descendants who approaches the sacred offerings that the Israelites consecrate to the LORD while his ritual impurity is still on him — that person will be cut off from my presence. I am the LORD. ⁴Any descendant of Aaron who has a skin disease or a bodily discharge must not eat from the sacred offerings until he becomes ritually pure. Also, anyone who touches something made impure by contact with a corpse, or a man who has a seminal emission — ⁵or anyone who touches any swarming creature that renders him impure, or any person from whom he contracts impurity of whatever kind — ⁶the person who touches any of these will be impure until evening and must not eat from the sacred offerings unless he has bathed his entire body in water. ⁷Once the sun has set he will be ritually pure, and afterward he may eat from the sacred offerings, since that is his allotted food. ⁸He must not eat an animal that died on its own or was killed by a predator, becoming impure through it. I am the LORD. ⁹They must guard my requirement so they do not bear sin for it and die because they desecrated it. I am the LORD who sanctifies them. ¹⁰No unauthorized person may eat sacred food. A resident guest of the priest or a hired laborer may not eat what is sacred. ¹¹But if a priest acquires a person as his purchased property, that person may eat from the sacred food. Those born in his household may also eat from his food. ¹²If a priest's daughter marries a man outside the priesthood, she may no longer eat from the sacred contributions. ¹³But if a priest's daughter becomes widowed or divorced and has no children, and she returns to her father's house as in her youth, she may eat from her father's food. No unauthorized person, however, may eat from it. ¹⁴If someone eats sacred food by mistake, he must add a fifth of its value and reimburse the priest for the sacred food. ¹⁵The priests must not allow the sacred offerings of the Israelites — what the people set apart for the LORD — to be desecrated. ¹⁶Otherwise they would cause the people to bear the punishment of guilt by letting them eat their sacred offerings, for I am the LORD who sanctifies them. ¹⁷The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁸Tell Aaron, his sons, and all the Israelites — say to them: When anyone from the house of Israel, or any foreign resident living in Israel, presents an offering — whether fulfilling any of their vows or bringing any of their voluntary gifts that they present to the LORD as a burnt offering — ¹⁹for it to be accepted on your behalf, it must be an unblemished male from the cattle, the sheep, or the goats. ²⁰You must not present anything that has a defect, because it will not gain acceptance for you. ²¹When anyone presents a well-being sacrifice to the LORD — whether to fulfill a vow or as a voluntary gift, from the herd or from the flock — it must be without defect to gain acceptance. There must be no blemish in

it. ²²An animal that is blind, has a broken bone, is gashed, has a wart, has a rash, or has a skin eruption — these you must not present to the LORD. You must not place any of them on the altar as a fire offering to the LORD. ²³An ox or a sheep that has a limb too long or too short — you may use it for a voluntary offering, but for a vow it will not be accepted. ²⁴You must not present to the LORD an animal whose testicles are squeezed, crushed, torn off, or severed. You must not do this in your land. ²⁵Nor may you accept from a foreigner any of these animals to offer as the food of your God, because their mutilation is in them — they have a defect. They will not be accepted on your behalf. ²⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁷When an ox, a sheep, or a goat is born, it must remain with its mother for seven days. From the eighth day onward it is eligible to be accepted as a fire offering to the LORD. ²⁸Whether it is a cow or a ewe, you must not slaughter the mother and her offspring on the same day. ²⁹When you sacrifice a thanksgiving offering to the LORD, sacrifice it in a way that will be accepted. ³⁰It must be eaten on that same day. You must not leave any of it until morning. I am the LORD. ³¹You must keep my commandments and carry them out. I am the LORD. ³²You must not desecrate my holy name, so that I may be recognized as holy among the Israelites. I am the LORD who sanctifies you, ³³the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt to be your God. I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vaydabber* ('and He spoke') opens a new divine speech unit. This formulaic introduction marks the transition to regulations about priestly purity in handling sacred food, distinct from the physical-blemish regulations for priests in chapter 21.
2. The verb *yinnazru* (from *nazir*, 'to separate/hold back') instructs the priests to restrain themselves — not to avoid the sacred offerings entirely, but to abstain from them when in a state of impurity (*tamei*). The root *ch-l-l* (*yechalelu*, 'profane/desecrate') is a key term in Leviticus: to treat what is *qodesh* ('holy') as though it were ordinary. The phrase *shem qodshi* ('my holy name') ties priestly conduct directly to God's reputation.
3. The phrase *ledorotekhem* ('throughout your generations') establishes this as a permanent statute, not a temporary measure. The verb *yiqrav* ('approaches/draws near') is a technical priestly term for handling sacred items. The penalty *nikretah hannefesh* ('that person will be cut off') — the *karet* punishment — is debated in rabbinic tradition: some understand it as divine execution, others as excommunication or loss of afterlife. The phrase *milefanai* ('from my presence') is unique here, tying the cutting off specifically to exclusion from God's immediate presence in the sanctuary.
4. The doubled *ish ish* ('any man whatsoever') is an emphatic construction meaning 'each and every man without exception.' The term *tsarua* refers to the condition described in Leviticus 13–14 — a broad category of skin afflictions, not limited to modern leprosy. The term *zav* describes an abnormal genital discharge (Lev 15:1–15). The phrase *teme-nefesh* ('impure by a corpse') refers to corpse contamination, the most severe form of ritual impurity. *Shikvat-zara* ('emission of seed') renders a man *tamei* until evening (Lev 15:16–17). The verse trails off syntactically, continuing into v. 5.
5. The word *sherets* ('swarming creature') refers to the small creatures listed in Lev 11:29–31 (rodents, lizards, etc.) whose carcasses transmit impurity. The phrase *lekhol tumato* ('of whatever his impurity') is a comprehensive catch-all — it means the rule applies regardless of which specific category of impurity is involved. This verse completes the catalogue of impurity sources begun in v. 4, forming a single compound sentence resolved in v. 6.
6. The phrase *ad-ha'arev* ('until evening') establishes sunset as the boundary for this level of impurity — a one-day purification cycle. The condition *ki im-rachats besaro bamayim* ('unless he has washed his flesh in water') requires full-body immersion, not merely handwashing. The word *besaro* ('his flesh/body') emphasizes complete bodily contact with water, which later tradition formalized as immersion in a *miqveh*.
7. The two-step purification — immersion (v. 6) plus sunset (*uva hashemesh*, 'the sun comes in') — must both occur before the priest may resume eating sacred food. The term *lachmo* ('his bread/food') reveals that the priestly portions from Israel's offerings constituted the priests' livelihood; the sacred donations were not a luxury but their sustenance, which makes the restriction significant — it temporarily deprived them of their food supply.
8. *Nevelah* ('carcass') refers to an animal that died naturally without proper slaughter, and *terefah* ('torn') to one killed or mauled by a wild animal. Both categories render the eater *tamei*. While all Israelites are forbidden these foods (Lev 17:15), the prohibition is reiterated here specifically for priests because the consequence — impurity — would disqualify them from eating sacred food. The closing formula *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') underscores divine authority behind the command.
9. The phrase *shamru et-mishmarti* ('guard my charge/requirement') uses the cognate construction — the verb and noun share the same root *sh-m-r* — intensifying the obligation. The penalty *umetu vo* ('and die because of it') indicates that eating sacred food while impure is not merely a procedural violation but a capital offense against holiness. The closing *meqaddisham* ('who sanctifies them') reminds the priests that their holiness is not self-generated but divinely conferred, making desecration a rejection of God's own act of consecration.
10. The word *zar* ('outsider, unauthorized person') in priestly contexts means anyone outside the Aaronic line — not a foreigner per se, but a non-priest. The verse then specifies two categories within a priest's household who remain excluded despite proximity: a *toshav* ('resident guest' or 'tenant') and a *sakhir* ('hired worker'). Their relationship to the priest is contractual and temporary, not one of permanent belonging, so they lack the standing to partake of sacred food.
11. The phrase *qinyan kaspo* ('acquisition of his silver') refers to a bonded servant purchased by the priest. Unlike the hired laborer (v. 10), this person becomes part of the priest's household permanently and therefore shares in the priestly food allotment. The *yelid beto* ('one born in his house') refers to children of such servants, who are considered members of the household from birth. The distinction between temporary workers (excluded) and

permanent household members (included) reflects the principle that participation in sacred food follows household identity, not employment.

12. The bat-kohen ('priest's daughter') loses her right to sacred food upon marriage to an ish zar ('a man who is an outsider' — i.e., a non-priest). Through marriage she transfers to her husband's household and takes on his status. The specific term *terumat haqqodashim* ('the elevated portion of the sacred offerings') refers to the priestly share that was lifted up and set apart from the sacrifices. Her exclusion is based on household membership, not personal worthiness — a principle reversed in v. 13.
13. Three conditions must be met for the daughter's reinstatement: she must be an *almanah* ('widow') or *gerushah* ('divorced woman'), she must have no *zera* ('offspring' — children who would anchor her in her husband's household), and she must physically return (*shavah*) to her father's house. The phrase *kin'ureha* ('as in her youth') means she reverts to her pre-marriage status within the priestly household. If she had children, they would belong to the non-priestly father's line, and her continued connection to that household would prevent her return to priestly food rights.
14. The term *bishgagah* ('by mistake, inadvertently') indicates an unintentional violation — the person did not knowingly eat what was restricted. The penalty mirrors the guilt-offering restitution formula found in Lev 5:16: repayment of the principal plus a *chamishito* ('a fifth' — 20% surcharge). The additional fifth serves as compensation for the loss of sanctity, not merely the material value. The phrase *venatan lakohen* ('and he gives to the priest') shows the restitution goes to the priest whose sacred portion was consumed.
15. The verb *yarimu* ('they elevate/set apart') comes from the root *r-u-m* ('to raise'), the same root behind *terumah* ('elevated offering'). The subject of *yechelelu* ('they shall not desecrate') is the priests — they bear responsibility for protecting the sanctity of the offerings. By permitting unauthorized persons to eat sacred food, the priests themselves would be guilty of desecration, making them guardians not only of their own purity but of the entire system of sacred donations.
16. The causative verb *hissiu* ('they would cause to bear') places the blame on the priests: if they fail to enforce these restrictions, the resulting guilt falls on the unauthorized eaters — but the priests are responsible for having permitted it. The phrase *avon ashmah* ('guilt of trespass') combines two terms for wrongdoing, intensifying the severity. The closing *meqaddisham* ('who sanctifies them') may refer either to the priests whom God sanctifies or to the sacred offerings that God makes holy — the ambiguity reinforces that both the personnel and the food derive their sacred status from God alone. The *parashah* marker (*peh*) in the Hebrew text signals a major section break here.
17. This second occurrence of the introductory speech formula within the chapter marks the beginning of a new legislative unit. Verses 1–16 addressed who may eat sacred food; from here forward the topic shifts to which animals qualify as acceptable sacrificial offerings. The audience also widens in v. 18 to include all Israelites, not just the priesthood.
18. The address now expands from priests alone (v. 2) to include *kol benei Yisra'el* ('all the Israelites') and the *ger* ('foreign resident'), indicating that animal-quality requirements apply to every worshiper, not just priests. The doubled *ish ish* ('any person whatsoever') is emphatic. Two motivations for offering are distinguished: *nidrehem* ('their vows' — obligatory, fulfilling a prior commitment) and *nidvotam* ('their voluntary gifts' — spontaneous, freely chosen). Both categories must meet the same quality standard for an *olah* ('burnt offering' — entirely consumed on the altar).
19. The phrase *lirtsonkhem* ('for your acceptance/favorable regard') means 'so that it will be accepted on your behalf' — the animal's quality determines whether the offering achieves its purpose. The adjective *tamim* ('whole, unblemished, complete') is the central standard: the animal must be physically intact and without defect. The restriction to *zakhar* ('male') applies specifically to the *olah* (burnt offering); other sacrifice types permit female animals. The three species listed — *baqar* (cattle), *kesavim* (sheep), *izzim* (goats) — constitute the full range of domestic herd animals permitted for sacrifice.
20. The word *mum* ('defect, blemish') is the counterpart to *tamim* ('unblemished'). The verb *taqrivu* ('you shall bring near/present') is the standard priestly term for offering a sacrifice. The phrase *lo leratson* ('not for acceptance') echoes the positive *lirtsonkhem* of v. 19 — a blemished animal fails to achieve the offering's purpose. The logic is not merely aesthetic: an imperfect gift to God implies that the worshiper considers God unworthy of their best.
21. The *zevach shelamim* ('well-being sacrifice' or 'peace offering') is distinct from the *olah*: parts are burned on the altar, but portions are eaten by the priest and the worshiper. Despite the shared meal aspect, the same standard of *tamim* ('without defect') applies. The phrase *lefa'le-neder* ('to fulfill a vow' — literally 'to make extraordinary a vow') uses the root *p-l-* which carries a sense of setting apart something special. Even though the *shelamim* is less restrictive than the *olah* (it permits female animals), the requirement of physical wholeness remains absolute.
22. Six specific disqualifying conditions are listed: *avveret* (blindness), *shavur* (fracture), *charutz* (a deep cut or gash — the root *ch-r-ts* means 'to cut into'), *yabbelet* (a wart or fleshy growth), *garav* (a scabby skin condition), and *yallefet* (a running skin eruption, possibly eczema). These cover structural damage (blindness, fracture, laceration) and surface conditions (growths, skin diseases). The term *issheh* ('fire offering') refers to any offering consumed on the altar by fire. The double prohibition — do not present them, do not place them on the altar — closes both procedural stages.
23. This verse introduces a surprising exception. The terms *sarua* ('overgrown, with an extended limb') and *qalut* ('stunted, with a contracted limb') describe disproportionate but not damaged body parts. Such an animal may be offered as a *nedavah* ('voluntary gift') but not for a *neder* ('vow'). The distinction likely reflects the differing obligations: a vow is a binding commitment requiring the highest standard, while a voluntary gift has more latitude. This is the only relaxation of the blemish requirement in the chapter.
24. Four terms describe increasing degrees of damage to the reproductive organs: *ma'ukh* ('squeezed/pressed'), *katut* ('crushed/pounded'), *natuq* ('pulled away/torn'), and *karut* ('cut off/severed'). Rabbinic tradition (*Bekhorot* 39b) confirms these refer to castration of sacrificial animals. The final clause *uve'arts khem lo ta'asu* ('and in your land you must not do this') has been interpreted two ways: either a prohibition against castrating

any animal in Israel, or a prohibition against accepting such animals from any source. Most traditional commentators understand it as a blanket ban on animal castration.

25. The phrase *miyad ben-nekhar* ('from the hand of a foreigner') addresses animals purchased from or offered by non-Israelites. Even if a foreigner wishes to present an offering (foreigners could bring burnt offerings, cf. Num 15:14–16), the same quality standard applies — defective animals are rejected regardless of source. The term *lechem eloheikhem* ('the food/bread of your God') is anthropomorphic language for sacrificial offerings; it does not imply God eats, but designates offerings placed on God's 'table' (the altar). The word *moshchatam* ('their corruption/damage') derives from *sh-ch-t* ('to destroy, corrupt'), describing the physical damage as a form of ruin.
26. This third speech formula within the chapter introduces a final subsection (vv. 26–33) dealing with age requirements for sacrificial animals and additional regulations. The repeated introductory formula segments the chapter's legislation into three distinct units: priestly purity (vv. 1–16), animal quality (vv. 17–25), and supplementary rules (vv. 26–33).
27. The seven-day minimum under the mother (*tachat immo*, 'beneath its mother') serves multiple purposes: it ensures the animal is viable (many newborns die within the first week), allows the mother-offspring bond, and mirrors the seven-day period before circumcision of a male child (Lev 12:3). The specification *miyom hashemini vahal'ah* ('from the eighth day and onward') sets the earliest possible date, not a target date — the animal simply becomes eligible. The three species — *shor* (ox), *kesev* (sheep), *ez* (goat) — again cover all permissible sacrificial livestock.
28. The phrase *oto ve'et-beno* ('it and its young') uses *beno* ('its son/offspring') — rabbinic tradition (Chullin 78b) debated whether this applies only to the mother-offspring pair or also to the father-offspring pair, with the halakhic conclusion following the mother. The prohibition against same-day slaughter of parent and young reflects a compassion ethic within the sacrificial system — similar in principle to the prohibition on cooking a kid in its mother's milk (Exod 23:19) and sending away the mother bird (Deut 22:6–7). The terms *shor* ('ox/cow') and *seh* ('sheep/goat') use generic terms that encompass both sexes.
29. The *zevach todah* ('thanksgiving sacrifice') is a subcategory of the *shelamim* (well-being offering), specifically one prompted by gratitude — typically for deliverance from danger (cf. Ps 107:22). The phrase *lirtsonkhem tizbachu* ('sacrifice it for your acceptance') echoes the same *ratson* language from v. 19, meaning the manner of offering must conform to the requirements so it achieves its intended purpose. The verb *tizbachu* ('you shall slaughter') repeats the root *z-b-ch* from *zevach*, creating a cognate emphasis: 'when you sacrifice a sacrifice.'
30. The time restriction *bayyom hahu ye'akhel* ('on that same day it shall be eaten') is stricter for the *todah* than for other *shelamim* offerings, which may be eaten over two days (Lev 7:16–17). The *todah* must be consumed entirely before the next morning (*ad-boqer*, 'until morning/dawn'). This urgency may serve to ensure communal sharing — a single household could not consume an entire animal in one evening, so the requirement effectively mandates inviting others to the meal, reinforcing the communal dimension of thanksgiving. The closing *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') authenticates the time constraint as divine command.
31. The verbs *ushmartem* ('you must guard/keep') and *va'asitem* ('and you must do/carry out') form a standard pair in Deuteronomic and Levitical legislation, distinguishing between careful preservation of the commandments and their active performance. The pairing implies that mere knowledge or passive respect is insufficient — the commandments require both vigilant attention and concrete action. This verse begins the closing exhortation (vv. 31–33) that wraps up the entire chapter's legislation.
32. This verse contains the foundational text for the concept of *qiddush hashem* ('sanctification of the Name') and its opposite, *chillul hashem* ('desecration of the Name'). The verb *techalelu* ('you shall desecrate') from the root *ch-l-l* bookends the chapter, echoing v. 2. The passive-reflexive *niqdashti* ('I will be sanctified/recognized as holy') implies that God's holiness is made visible through Israel's obedience — human conduct either reveals or obscures God's sanctity in the world. The closing *meqaddishkhem* ('who sanctifies you') creates a reciprocal structure: God sanctifies Israel, and Israel in turn must sanctify God's name.
33. The participial form *hamotsi* ('the one who brings out') identifies God through the defining act of the Exodus — a continuous identity marker, not merely a past event. The purpose clause *lihyot lakhem le'lohim* ('to be God for you') frames the entire sacrificial system within the Exodus covenant: God redeemed Israel in order to enter into a relationship with them, and the laws of this chapter regulate how that relationship is maintained through worship. The closing *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') appears for the final time in this chapter, bringing the legislative unit to a solemn close. The parashah *petuchah* (*peh*) marker signals a major division in the Torah text.

23

Summary: *God's complete liturgical calendar: the weekly Sabbath, then seven annual appointed times -- Passover, Unleavened Bread, Firstfruits, the Feast of Weeks (Shavuot), the day of trumpet blasts, the Day of Atonement, and the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot). Each has specific dates, offerings, and observances.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The mo'adim ("appointed times") are not Israel's holidays but God's appointments -- from ya'ad ("to appoint a meeting"). The calendar transforms time itself into a medium of worship. The Sabbath leads the list because it is the foundational rhythm. Passover begins the agricultural-redemptive cycle; Tabernacles completes it. Together the seven festivals tell the story of redemption from liberation to dwelling with God.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered mo'adei YHWH as "appointed times of the LORD" rather than "feasts" (KJV) because the Hebrew emphasizes divine scheduling, not celebration. The phrase bein ha'arbayim ("between the evenings," v5) for Passover's timing is debated -- twilight between sunset and dark, or between the sun's decline and sunset -- and we rendered "at twilight" without forcing a specific hour. The term shabbat shabbaton ("sabbath of complete rest") for Yom Kippur (v32) uses the same superlative form as the weekly Sabbath and the land's sabbath year (ch 25).*

Connections: *Passover connects to Exod 12. Firstfruits is linked to Christ's resurrection in 1 Cor 15:20-23. Shavuot is the setting for Acts 2 (Pentecost). The trumpet blasts anticipate eschatological trumpet imagery (1 Thess 4:16; Rev 11:15). Tabernacles connects to Zech 14:16-19 and John 7:37-38. Yom Kippur (v26-32) summarizes ch 16.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: These are the appointed times of the LORD that you shall proclaim as sacred assemblies — these are My appointed times. ³Six days work may be done, but the seventh day is a Sabbath of complete rest, a sacred assembly. You shall do no work — it is a Sabbath to the LORD wherever you dwell. ⁴These are the appointed times of the LORD, sacred assemblies that you shall proclaim at their designated times: ⁵On the fourteenth day of the first month, at twilight — the LORD's Passover. ⁶On the fifteenth day of the same month is the Festival of Unleavened Bread to the LORD. For seven days you shall eat unleavened bread. ⁷On the first day you shall hold a sacred assembly — you must do no regular work. ⁸You shall present fire offerings to the LORD for seven days. On the seventh day there is a sacred assembly — you must do no regular work." ⁹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁰"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When you enter the land I am giving you and harvest its crops, you shall bring a sheaf of the first grain of your harvest to the priest. ¹¹He shall elevate the sheaf before the LORD for your acceptance. The priest shall elevate it on the day after the Sabbath. ¹²On the day you elevate the sheaf, you shall offer an unblemished year-old male lamb as a burnt offering to the LORD, ¹³with its grain offering of two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil — a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD — and its drink offering of a quarter hin of wine. ¹⁴You must not eat bread, roasted grain, or fresh kernels until this very day — until you have brought the offering of your God. This is a permanent statute throughout your generations, wherever you dwell." ¹⁵"You shall count for yourselves from the day after the Sabbath — from the day you brought the sheaf of the elevation offering — seven complete weeks. ¹⁶You shall count fifty days, until the day after the seventh week, and then present a new grain offering to the LORD. ¹⁷From wherever you dwell, you shall bring two loaves of bread as a wave offering — made from two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour, baked with leaven — as firstfruits to the LORD. ¹⁸Along with the bread, present seven unblemished year-old lambs, one young bull, and two rams as a burnt offering to the LORD, together with their grain offerings and drink offerings — a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁹Prepare one male goat as a purification offering, and two year-old lambs as a sacrifice of peace offerings. ²⁰The priest shall elevate them — the bread of the firstfruits together with the two lambs — as a wave offering before the LORD. They shall be holy to the LORD, belonging to the priest. ²¹On that very day you shall proclaim a sacred assembly — you must do no regular work. This is a permanent statute wherever you dwell, throughout your generations. ²²When you harvest the crops of your land, you must not completely harvest the edges of your field, and you must not gather the gleanings of your harvest. Leave them for the poor and the foreigner. I am the LORD your God." ²³The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁴"Speak to the Israelites: On the first day of the

seventh month you shall have a complete rest — a memorial proclaimed with trumpet blasts, a sacred assembly. ²⁵You must do no regular work, and you shall present a fire offering to the LORD." ²⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁷"On the tenth day of this seventh month is the Day of Atonement. It shall be a sacred assembly for you. You must practice self-denial and present a fire offering to the LORD. ²⁸You must do no work at all on that very day, for it is a Day of Atonement, to make atonement for you before the LORD your God. ²⁹Any person who does not practice self-denial on that very day shall be cut off from their people. ³⁰Any person who does any work on that very day — I will destroy that person from among their people. ³¹You must do no work at all — a permanent statute throughout your generations, wherever you dwell. ³²It is a Sabbath of complete rest for you, and you must practice self-denial. On the ninth day of the month, from evening to evening, you shall observe your Sabbath." ³³The LORD spoke to Moses: ³⁴"Speak to the Israelites: On the fifteenth day of this seventh month is the Festival of Shelters — seven days to the LORD. ³⁵On the first day there is a sacred assembly — you must do no regular work. ³⁶For seven days you shall present fire offerings to the LORD. On the eighth day you shall hold a sacred assembly and present a fire offering to the LORD. It is a closing assembly — you must do no regular work. ³⁷These are the appointed times of the LORD that you shall proclaim as sacred assemblies, for presenting fire offerings to the LORD — burnt offering, grain offering, sacrifice, and drink offerings, each on its proper day — ³⁸in addition to the LORD's Sabbaths, your gifts, all your vow offerings, and all your freewill offerings that you give to the LORD. ³⁹"On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when you have gathered in the produce of the land, you shall celebrate the LORD's festival for seven days. The first day is a complete rest, and the eighth day is a complete rest. ⁴⁰On the first day you shall take the fruit of a splendid tree, branches of palm trees, boughs of leafy trees, and willows of the brook, and you shall rejoice before the LORD your God for seven days. ⁴¹You shall celebrate it as a festival to the LORD for seven days each year — a permanent statute throughout your generations. In the seventh month you shall celebrate it. ⁴²You shall dwell in shelters for seven days. Every native-born Israelite shall dwell in shelters, ⁴³so that your generations may know that I made the Israelites dwell in shelters when I brought them out of the land of Egypt. I am the LORD your God." ⁴⁴Moses declared the appointed times of the LORD to the Israelites.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter presents the complete liturgical calendar of Israel — seven appointed times that structure the sacred year. Unlike the offering laws (ch 1-7), which describe what to bring, chapter 23 describes when to come. The calendar transforms time itself into a medium of worship: certain days are set apart as holy, creating a rhythm of work and sacred assembly that governs Israelite life from seedtime to harvest.
2. The key term *mo'adei YHWH* ('appointed times of the LORD') — not 'feasts' (KJV) — establishes divine ownership of the calendar. These are not Israel's holidays but God's appointments. The phrase *miqra'ei qodesh* ('sacred assemblies,' literally 'holy convocations/callings') describes the public, corporate nature of each occasion: the community is called together (from *qara*, 'to call'). The emphatic ending — *elleh hem mo'aday* ('these are My appointed times') — uses the first-person possessive twice: these times belong to God.
3. The Sabbath leads the calendar — listed before the annual festivals because it is the foundational rhythm. *Shabbat shabbaton* ('Sabbath of complete rest') is the intensified form (as in Exod 31:15). The phrase *bekhol moshvotekhem* ('wherever you dwell') makes the Sabbath location-independent: unlike the annual festivals that require pilgrimage to the central sanctuary, the Sabbath is observed in every home, every village, every place Israel lives. It is the most democratic of the appointed times.
4. A transitional verse that reintroduces the calendar formula before the annual festivals begin. The phrase *bemo'adam* ('at their appointed time') emphasizes calendrical precision: each festival has a specific date that must be observed. The community is responsible for proclamation (*tiqre'u* — 'you shall proclaim/call'), making the calendar a public, communal responsibility.
5. The annual calendar begins with Pesach (Passover) — *bachodesh hari'shon be'arba'ah asar lachodesh bein ha'arbayim* ('in the first month, on the fourteenth day, between the evenings'). The phrase *pesach laYHWH* ('Passover to/of the LORD') identifies it as God's festival: the Passover is not Israel's celebration of their own escape but God's appointed commemoration of His rescue. The timing — *bein ha'arbayim* ('between the evenings,' i.e., twilight) — marks the transition from the fourteenth to the fifteenth of Nisan, the moment the exodus began.
6. *Chag haMatzot* ('Festival of Unleavened Bread') begins the day after Passover and lasts seven days. The seven-day duration creates a week-long immersion in the exodus memory. *Matzot* — bread made without leaven (yeast) — recalls the haste of the departure: there was no time for dough to rise (Exod 12:39). Eating *matzot* for a full week embeds the exodus into the body: for seven days, every meal tastes like liberation.
7. The first day of Unleavened Bread is a *miqra-qodesh* ('sacred assembly') with work restrictions. The phrase *melekhet avodah* ('laborious/regular work') is a less absolute prohibition than the Sabbath's *kol-melakhah* ('all work') — essential tasks may be permitted. The distinction between full Sabbath rest and festival rest creates two levels of sacred time in the calendar.

8. Fire offerings (issheh) for all seven days — the festival is sustained by daily sacrifice. The seventh day mirrors the first (v7) with its own sacred assembly and work restriction, framing the week with two days of heightened holiness. The Passover-Unleavened Bread complex (v5-8) is the first major festival block: exodus commemoration stretched across eight days (Passover evening + seven days of matzot).
9. A new speech introduces the third appointed time: the firstfruits offering (v9-14). This festival bridges the Passover season and the harvest, connecting liberation to provision.
10. The firstfruits (reshit qetsirkhem — 'the beginning of your harvest') offering presupposes settlement in the land: ki-tavo'u el-ha'arets ('when you enter the land'). This is a forward-looking instruction — Israel in the wilderness is being taught festivals they will celebrate after conquest. The omer ('sheaf') is a bundle of newly cut barley, the earliest grain to ripen in spring. Bringing the first sheaf to the priest before eating any of the new harvest acknowledges that the land's produce belongs to God before it belongs to the farmer.
11. The priest performs a tenufah ('wave/elevation offering') with the sheaf — presenting it before the LORD. The timing mimmacharot hashShabbat ('the day after the Sabbath') is debated: it may mean the day after the first day of Unleavened Bread (a festival 'sabbath') or the day after the weekly Sabbath during the festival week. This ambiguity generated significant disagreement between Pharisees and Sadducees. The firstfruits wave offering is the starting point for counting toward Shavuot (v15-16).
12. The firstfruits ceremony includes a burnt offering (olah) — a year-old male lamb, tamim ('unblemished'). The grain offering of the sheaf is accompanied by an animal offering, combining agricultural and pastoral worship. The firstfruits are not just about grain; the entire sacrificial system accompanies the harvest thanksgiving.
13. Three elements: burnt offering (v12), grain offering (minchah — two-tenths ephah of flour with oil), and drink offering (nesekh — a quarter hin of wine, approximately one quart). The combination of lamb, grain, oil, and wine represents the full agricultural spectrum. The firstfruits ceremony is a miniature harvest festival celebrating every product of the land.
14. Three forms of grain — lechem ('bread'), qali ('roasted grain'), and karmel ('fresh/green kernels') — are prohibited until the firstfruits offering has been made. No new harvest produce may be consumed before God receives His portion. The prohibition creates a practical, embodied acknowledgment: every year, the farmer waits for the offering before eating. Hunger itself becomes a form of worship — the body reminds the soul that God comes first. The designation chuqqat olam ('permanent statute') makes this perpetual.
15. The counting of the omer (sefirat ha'omer) begins the day after the firstfruits wave offering and continues for seven weeks (sheva shabbatot temimot — 'seven complete sabbaths/weeks'). This forty-nine-day count connects Passover to Shavuot, creating a bridge between liberation and covenant. The counting is personal — usefartem lakhem ('count for yourselves') — each person marks the days individually. Jewish tradition continues this practice to this day.
16. The fiftieth day — chamishim yom ('fifty days') — is Shavuot, the Festival of Weeks (later called Pentecost, from the Greek for 'fifty'). The 'new grain offering' (minchah chadashah) is from the wheat harvest, the later and more valuable crop (barley was the firstfruits offering). Shavuot is the only festival defined not by a calendar date but by counting from another festival — it exists in relationship to Passover, not independently.
17. A remarkable instruction: chametz te'afenah ('they shall be baked with leaven'). The Shavuot loaves are leavened — unlike virtually every other grain offering in the sacrificial system (Lev 2:11 prohibits leaven). The exception makes a statement: at Shavuot, ordinary leavened bread — the everyday food of the household — is elevated to sacred status. The festival celebrates the wheat harvest by presenting the actual bread people eat, not the specialized unleavened ritual bread. Daily life becomes an offering.
18. The Shavuot sacrificial ensemble is substantial: seven lambs, one bull, two rams — all as olot (burnt offerings) with accompanying minchot and nesakhim. The scale exceeds any other festival's daily offering. The abundance reflects the harvest's bounty: the greatest agricultural celebration demands the greatest sacrificial response. Wheat harvest is the moment of maximum provision, and maximum provision calls for maximum worship.
19. The offering suite includes a chata't (purification offering — one goat) and shelamim (peace offering — two lambs). The combination of olah, chata't, and shelamim makes Shavuot a complete festival: total devotion (burnt offering), purification (sin offering), and communal celebration (peace offering). The shelamim — the only offering the worshipper eats — ensures that Shavuot is a feast, not just a ritual.
20. The wave offering combines the leavened bread and the two shelamim lambs — the priest presents them as a unit before the LORD. After the elevation, they become qodesh laYHWH lakkohen ('holy to the LORD, for the priest'). The firstfruits bread and the peace offering lambs are the priest's allotment from Shavuot — sacred food that sustains those who serve at the altar.
21. Shavuot receives the standard festival designations: miqra-qodesh ('sacred assembly'), work restriction (no melekhet avodah), and chuqqat olam ('permanent statute'). The emphasis be'etsem hayyom hazzeh ('on that very day') pins the observance to the fiftieth day exactly. Shavuot is a single-day festival — the shortest of the three pilgrimage festivals — but its theological weight as the conclusion of the Passover-to-harvest sequence is enormous.
22. A social justice provision inserted into the harvest festival: lo-tekhalleh pe'at sadekha ('do not completely harvest the edges of your field'). The pe'ah ('corner/edge') and leqet ('gleanings' — grain that falls during harvesting) must be left for the poor (ani) and the foreigner (ger). The placement within the Shavuot legislation connects worship to justice: celebrating the harvest before God obligates sharing it with the vulnerable. The closing formula ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('I am the LORD your God') grounds the command in divine authority — generosity is not optional charity but covenant obligation.

- 23.** A new speech introduces the autumn festival cluster: Trumpets (v23-25), Day of Atonement (v26-32), and Tabernacles (v33-43). The calendar shifts from the spring-summer agricultural cycle to the seventh month — Tishrei — which contains the three most solemn observances of the year.
- 24.** Yom Teru'ah ('Day of Trumpet Blast') — the first day of the seventh month (later known as Rosh Hashanah, 'head of the year'). The phrase zikkhron teru'ah ('memorial of trumpet blasts') combines remembrance (zikkhron — calling something to mind) with the shofar blast (teru'ah — a piercing, broken sound). The trumpet sound calls God and Israel to mutual attention: God remembers Israel; Israel remembers God. The seventh month opens with a sound — before any sacrifice, before any instruction, there is the blast of the horn. It is a wake-up call for the soul.
- 25.** The Day of Trumpets receives the standard festival framework: no regular work and fire offerings. The offerings for this day are detailed in Numbers 29:1-6. The brevity of the Trumpets legislation (only v24-25) compared to the more elaborate treatments of Yom Kippur and Sukkot may reflect its role as a preparatory day — the opening of the solemn season rather than its climax.
- 26.** The Day of Atonement — Yom Kippur — receives its own divine speech, underscoring its unique gravity. This is the only day in the calendar with a full Sabbath-level work prohibition (v28) and the explicit requirement of 'afflicting the soul' (v27).
- 27.** Yom haKippurim ('Day of Atonements' — plural, encompassing all the atonement acts performed) falls on the tenth of Tishrei, nine days after the trumpet blast. The unique requirement ve'innitem et-nafshoteikhem ('you shall afflict your souls/selves') traditionally means fasting and abstaining from comfort. The term innuy ('affliction, self-denial') creates a day unlike any other: not celebration but purgation, not feasting but fasting. The full Yom Kippur ritual is described in Leviticus 16; this chapter provides the calendrical and communal framework.
- 28.** The work prohibition is absolute: kol-melakhah lo ta'asu ('all work you must not do') — full Sabbath-level restriction, not the festival-level 'regular work' prohibition. Yom Kippur is the only annual festival with the same total work ban as the weekly Sabbath. The reason clause — ki yom kippurim hu lekha'per aleikhem ('for it is a Day of Atonement, to make atonement for you') — connects the rest to the ritual: you stop all activity so the atonement can be accomplished on your behalf.
- 29.** The penalty for failing to observe Yom Kippur is karet — being cut off. The specific offense is not working (as on the Sabbath) but failing to 'afflict the soul' (lo te'unneh). Self-denial — fasting, abstaining from comfort — is mandatory, not voluntary. The individual who refuses to participate in the communal act of purgation removes themselves from the covenant community.
- 30.** A second penalty, even more severe: God will personally destroy (veha'avadi — 'I will cause to perish') anyone who works on Yom Kippur. The first-person divine agency is unusual — most penalties are administered by the community or left to divine providence, but here God takes direct action. The double penalty (karet for not fasting, divine destruction for working) makes Yom Kippur the most strictly enforced day in the calendar.
- 31.** The work prohibition is restated for emphasis — the third time in five verses (v28, 30, 31). The chuqqat olam designation makes it permanent; bekhlo moshvotekhem ('wherever you dwell') makes it universal. Like the Sabbath (v3), Yom Kippur applies everywhere, not just at the sanctuary. The nation stops entirely: no work, no food, no comfort — a full day of corporate stillness before God.
- 32.** Shabbat shabbaton — the same intensified form used for the weekly Sabbath (v3) and nowhere else in the festival calendar. The timing is precisely specified: betish'ah lachodesh ba'erev me'erev ad-erev ('on the ninth of the month at evening, from evening to evening'). The fast begins at sunset on the ninth — the transition to the tenth — and continues until sunset on the tenth. This sunset-to-sunset framework defines 'day' in biblical terms: evening first, then morning (Gen 1:5).
- 33.** The seventh and final mo'ed: Sukkot, the Festival of Tabernacles/Booths (v33-43). The longest festival in the calendar at eight days, it is also the most joyful — following the solemnity of Yom Kippur with a week of celebration, dwelling in temporary shelters, and communal feasting.
- 34.** Chag haSukkot ('Festival of Shelters/Booths/Tabernacles') begins on the fifteenth of Tishrei — five days after Yom Kippur — and lasts seven days. Sukkot is the autumn harvest festival, celebrating the ingathering of crops at the end of the agricultural year. The sukkah ('shelter, booth') is a temporary structure that commemorates Israel's wilderness journey: for seven days, Israelites leave their permanent homes and dwell in improvised shelters, reenacting the vulnerability and dependence of the desert years.
- 35.** The first day of Sukkot follows the standard festival pattern: sacred assembly, no regular work. The seven-day span (v34) with sacred bookends on the first and eighth days (v35-36) creates a week framed by holiness.
- 36.** Fire offerings for all seven days — the daily sacrifices for Sukkot are the most elaborate in the calendar (see Num 29:12-38, with decreasing numbers of bulls over seven days). The eighth day (bayyom hashmini) is the atseret ('closing assembly, solemn gathering') — a concluding day that caps the festival season. The atseret is not technically part of Sukkot's seven days but an additional day of assembly. In later Jewish practice, this became Shemini Atseret, a separate holiday. The autumn festival season — Trumpets (day 1), Atonement (day 10), Sukkot (days 15-21), and Atseret (day 22) — spans the entire seventh month.
- 37.** A summary formula: elleh mo'adei YHWH ('these are the LORD's appointed times'). Four offering categories are listed: olah ('burnt offering'), minchah ('grain offering'), zevach ('sacrifice' — specifically the shelamim/peace offering), and nesakhim ('drink offerings'). The phrase devar-yom beyomo ('each day's matter on its day') — the same phrase used for the daily manna (Exod 16:4) — insists that each festival has its specific, prescribed offerings that must be presented on the correct day.
- 38.** The festivals supplement, not replace, four other categories: shabbatot YHWH ('the LORD's Sabbaths' — weekly), mattenoteikhem ('your gifts'), nidreikhem ('your vows' — promised offerings), and nidvoteikhem ('your freewill offerings' — spontaneous generosity). The phrase millevad ('in addition to') appears four times, emphasizing that the festival calendar operates on top of all other forms of worship. The festivals add to the baseline; they do not substitute for it.

39. The Sukkot legislation is restated with an agricultural framing: be'ospekem et-tevu'at ha'arets ('when you have gathered in the produce of the land'). The ingathering (asif) — the final harvest of fruits, olives, and grapes — is the agricultural occasion. Two days of shabbaton ('complete rest') bracket the week: the first and eighth days. The celebration is chag YHWH ('the LORD's festival') — as in v2, the possessive insists these are God's times, not Israel's.
40. The four species (arba'ah minim in later Jewish practice): peri ets hadar ('fruit of a splendid tree' — traditionally the etrog/citron), kappot temarim ('palm branches' — the lulav), anaf ets-avot ('boughs of leafy trees' — traditionally myrtle), and arvei-nachal ('willows of the brook'). These four plants, taken together and waved during worship, represent the full range of Israel's landscape: orchard, palm grove, forest, and riverside. The command usemachtem ('you shall rejoice') makes joy mandatory — Sukkot is the festival of commanded joy. After the austerity of Yom Kippur, joy is not merely permitted but required.
41. Sukkot receives the chuqqat olam ('permanent statute') designation — the annual celebration is perpetual. The specification bachodesh hashevi'i ('in the seventh month') anchors the festival calendrically. The autumn cluster in the seventh month (Trumpets day 1, Atonement day 10, Sukkot days 15-22) creates the most concentrated period of sacred time in the entire year.
42. The dwelling requirement: bassukkot teshvu shiv'at yamim ('in shelters you shall dwell seven days'). The sukkah is not a symbolic gesture but an actual residence — Israelites leave their houses and live in temporary structures for a week. The inclusive scope — kol-ha'ezrach beYisra'el ('every native-born in Israel') — makes this universal for citizens. The sukkah experience is deliberately uncomfortable: it teaches dependence, vulnerability, and the memory of a time when permanent shelter was not available.
43. The theological rationale: lema'an yede'u doroteikhem ('so that your generations may know'). The sukkah commemorates the wilderness period: ki bassukkot hoshavti et-benei Yisra'el ('I made the Israelites dwell in shelters'). The temporary structure teaches each generation what their ancestors experienced — total dependence on God for shelter, food, and direction. The closing divine signature ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('I am the LORD your God') seals the entire festival calendar with the same identity that opened the Decalogue (Exod 20:2, Deut 5:6). The calendar begins and ends with 'I am the LORD.'
44. The chapter's closing verse: vaydabber Mosheh et-mo'adei YHWH el-benei Yisra'el ('Moses declared the LORD's appointed times to the Israelites'). Moses is the transmitter — he receives the calendar from God and delivers it to the people. The final word is Yisra'el: the calendar belongs to the LORD (mo'adei YHWH) but is given to Israel. Seven appointed times — Sabbath, Passover/Matzot, Firstfruits, Shavuot, Trumpets, Yom Kippur, Sukkot — structure the entire sacred year, from liberation (Passover) through harvest (Shavuot) through atonement (Yom Kippur) to dwelling with God (Sukkot). The calendar is the story of redemption told in time.

24

Summary: *Instructions for the perpetual lamp (ner tamid) and the twelve loaves of showbread (lechem hapanim) in the tabernacle. A narrative interrupts: a man of mixed parentage blasphemes the Name, and God prescribes death by stoning. The chapter concludes with the lex talionis principle -- life for life, eye for eye.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The juxtaposition of sacred objects (lamp, bread) and blasphemy creates a jarring literary effect -- worship and violation of the Name sit side by side. The twelve loaves represent the twelve tribes perpetually "before the face" of God. The blasphemer is of mixed parentage (Israelite mother, Egyptian father), raising the question of who is bound by Israel's holiness standards. The lex talionis ("eye for eye") is a principle of proportional justice, not a license for revenge.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered lechem hapanim as "bread of the Presence" (literally "bread of the face") to preserve the spatial theology -- the bread is always "before God's face." The verb noqev ("blasphemed," v11) specifically means "to pierce, to bore through" the Name -- an active penetration, not mere carelessness. The ger ("foreigner," v22) is subject to the same judicial standards as the native, and we rendered the legal formula to show this equality explicitly.*

Connections: *The ner tamid tradition in synagogues descends from vv 2-4. David eats the showbread in 1 Sam 21:1-6, which Jesus cites in Matt 12:3-4. The lex talionis appears also in Exod 21:23-25 and Deut 19:21; Jesus engages it in Matt 5:38-39. The "one law for native and foreigner" principle (v22) echoes Exod 12:49 and Num 15:16.*

1The LORD spoke to Moses: 2Direct the Israelites to bring you clear, pressed olive oil for illumination, to keep a lamp burning at all times. 3Outside the curtain of the Testimony, in the Tent of Meeting, Aaron is to tend it from evening until morning in the LORD's presence without interruption — a permanent rule throughout your generations. 4On the pure gold lampstand he must arrange the lamps before the LORD at all times. 5You are to take choice flour and bake twelve loaves, with two-tenths of an ephah in each loaf. 6Arrange them in two rows of six on the pure table before the LORD. 7Place pure

frankincense on each row; it will serve as the memorial portion for the bread — a fire offering to the LORD. ⁸Sabbath after Sabbath he is to arrange it before the LORD without fail — an obligation from the Israelites as a permanent covenant. ⁹It belongs to Aaron and his sons, and they must eat it in a sacred space, because it is a most holy portion for him from the LORD's fire offerings — a permanent rule. ¹⁰The son of an Israelite mother — his father was Egyptian — went out among the Israelites, and a fight broke out in the camp between this man and a native Israelite. ¹¹The Israelite woman's son profaned the Name and uttered curses. They brought him to Moses. His mother's name was Shelomith daughter of Dibri, from the tribe of Dan. ¹²They held him in custody until the LORD's decision could be made clear to them. ¹³Then the LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁴Take the one who cursed outside the camp. All who heard him must press their hands on his head, and the entire assembly is to stone him. ¹⁵Speak to the Israelites and tell them: Anyone who curses his God will bear the consequences of that sin. ¹⁶Whoever profanes the name of the LORD must be put to death; the entire assembly must stone that person. Whether resident alien or native-born, anyone who profanes the Name must die. ¹⁷Anyone who takes a human life must be put to death. ¹⁸Whoever kills an animal must make restitution for it — a life in place of a life. ¹⁹If anyone inflicts a permanent injury on a fellow citizen, what was done must be done in return — ²⁰fracture for fracture, eye for eye, tooth for tooth — whatever injury someone inflicts on another person must be imposed on the offender. ²¹Whoever kills an animal must replace it, but whoever kills a person must be put to death. ²²You must maintain a single standard of justice — the same for the resident alien as for the native-born — because I am the LORD your God. ²³Moses relayed this to the Israelites. They took the one who had cursed outside the camp and stoned him. The Israelites carried out exactly what the LORD had commanded Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard revelation formula *vaydabber YHWH el-Mosheh le'mor* introduces a new legislative section. The shift from narrative to direct divine speech marks the instructions about the lampstand oil (vv 2-4) and the showbread (vv 5-9) as distinct from the preceding chapter's festival calendar.
2. The verb *tsav* ('command, direct') is stronger than *dabber* ('speak'), signaling obligatory compliance. The oil is described with three qualifiers: *shemen zayit* ('olive oil'), *zakh* ('clear, pure' — free of sediment), and *katit* ('crushed, pressed' — first pressing, yielding the finest oil). The term *ner tamid* ('perpetual lamp') becomes foundational in later Jewish tradition for the eternal light maintained in synagogues.
3. The *parokhet ha-edut* ('curtain of the Testimony') separates the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place where the ark rests. The lamp burns *mi-erev ad-boqer* ('from evening until morning'), indicating nighttime tending — the priestly duty of maintaining divine light through darkness. The phrase *chuqqat olam ledoroteikhem* ('a permanent statute throughout your generations') stamps this as perpetually binding law, not a temporary wilderness arrangement.
4. The *menorah ha-tehorah* ('the pure lampstand') refers to the seven-branched lampstand of pure gold described in Exodus 25:31-40. The adjective *tehorah* ('pure') denotes both ritual cleanness and the unblemished quality of the gold. The verb *ya'arokh* ('arrange, set in order') implies trimming the wicks and refilling oil — ongoing priestly maintenance, not merely lighting. The *parashah* marker (pe) signals a textual break before the showbread instructions.
5. The *solet* ('choice flour, semolina') is the finest grade of wheat flour, sifted to remove coarse bran — the same quality used for grain offerings (Lev 2:1). The twelve *challot* ('loaves') correspond to the twelve tribes of Israel, making the bread a communal representation before God. Each loaf contains *shenei esronim* ('two-tenths'), approximately four liters of flour — a substantial loaf signaling abundance rather than token symbolism.
6. The *ma'arakhot* ('rows, arrangements') comes from the same root (*ayin-resh-kaf*) as the verb for tending the lampstand in v 3, linking these two acts of sacred ordering. The *shulchan ha-tahor* ('the pure table') is the gold-overlaid table described in Exodus 25:23-30. The systematic arrangement — two rows, six each — mirrors the tribal structure and places all of Israel symbolically in God's presence.
7. The *levonah zakkah* ('pure frankincense') is placed on the rows, not mixed into the bread itself. The *azkarah* ('memorial portion') is a technical sacrificial term indicating the part burned on the altar that 'reminds' God of the offerer — it represents the whole offering ascending to the LORD. The bread itself is eaten by the priests (v 9), but the frankincense is burned as an *isheh* ('fire offering'), completing the dual function of the showbread: sustenance for the priests and fragrant offering for God.
8. The emphatic repetition *beyom ha-shabbat beyom ha-shabbat* ('on the Sabbath day, on the Sabbath day') is a Hebrew distributive construction meaning 'every single Sabbath without exception.' The phrase *berit olam* ('permanent covenant') elevates the showbread practice beyond mere ritual regulation to a covenant obligation — the same term applied to circumcision (Gen 17:13) and the Sabbath itself (Exod 31:16). The bread thus becomes a weekly covenant renewal, with Israel's twelve tribes perpetually represented in God's presence.
9. The designation *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy') places the showbread in the highest sanctity category alongside the sin offering and guilt offering (Lev 6:17, 7:1). The requirement to eat it *be-maqom qadosh* ('in a holy place') restricts consumption to the tabernacle courtyard. The phrase *choq olam* ('permanent rule') closes the showbread section just as *chuqqat olam* closed the lampstand section in v 3, forming a structural parallel between these

two perpetual sanctuary duties. The setumah marker (samekh) signals a closed paragraph break before the narrative shifts.

10. The abrupt narrative shift from ritual law to a specific incident is characteristic of Levitical case law. The man's mixed parentage (ben-ishah yisre'elit... ben-ish mitsri) is central to the story: his ambiguous social status may have triggered the dispute. The verb vayyetse ('went out') implies he entered a space among the Israelites where his belonging was contested. The verb vayyinatso ('they quarreled, fought') is a hitpa'el form from natsah, indicating mutual, escalating conflict — not a one-sided attack.
11. The verb vayyiqov ('he pierced, pronounced distinctly') from the root nun-qof-bet is ambiguous — it can mean either to 'pierce, blaspheme' or to 'pronounce explicitly.' Combined with vayqallel ('and he cursed'), it indicates he both spoke the divine Name aloud and reviled it. The text refers to ha-Shem ('the Name') rather than writing YHWH as the object of blasphemy, a notable reverence even in describing the offense. Shelomith's genealogy — bat-Divri le-matteh Dan — is unusually detailed for a woman in Leviticus, perhaps to establish that her son had legitimate Israelite lineage through his mother despite his Egyptian father.
12. The mishmar ('custody, guard') is a temporary holding — not a prison sentence but a pause while awaiting divine guidance. The infinitive lifrosh ('to make distinct, to clarify') from parash indicates the community lacked a precedent for this offense and needed explicit divine ruling. The phrase al-pi YHWH ('by the mouth/word of the LORD') shows that Moses did not presume to adjudicate but waited for direct revelation. This parallels the wood-gatherer case in Numbers 15:34, where identical language describes a similar procedural pause.
13. The repeated formula vaydabber YHWH el-Mosheh le'mor here marks the divine response to the inquiry of v 12. Unlike v 1 which introduces general legislation, this occurrence responds to a specific legal crisis — the community's uncertainty about the penalty for blasphemy. The answer that follows (vv 14-23) expands beyond the individual case to establish broad principles of proportional justice.
14. Three procedural steps are specified: removal from the camp (hotse... el-michuts la-machaneh), hand-laying by witnesses (vesamkhu kol ha-shom'im et yedeihem al rosho), and communal execution (veragmu oto kol ha-edah). The semikhah ('leaning, pressing') of hands transfers culpability back to the offender — the witnesses publicly confirm their testimony and place the consequence squarely on him. Execution occurs outside the camp to prevent the defilement of sacred space. The entire assembly (kol ha-edah) participates, making this a communal act of covenant enforcement rather than individual vengeance.
15. The doubling ish ish ('man man,' meaning 'any person whatsoever') creates a universalizing construction — no one is exempt. The phrase venasa chet'o ('he shall bear his sin') is a technical formula in Leviticus indicating the offender absorbs the full penalty rather than transferring it through sacrifice (cf. Lev 5:1, 17; 7:18; 19:8). Notably, this verse uses the generic elohav ('his God') rather than the specific name YHWH, possibly broadening the prohibition: cursing any deity one claims to worship brings culpability, though v 16 specifies that profaning YHWH's name carries the death penalty.
16. Two intensified infinitive absolute constructions — mot yumat ('dying he shall die') and ragom yirgemu ('stoning they shall stone') — underscore the certainty and severity of the penalty. The phrase ka-ger ka-ezrach ('as the immigrant, as the native-born') is a legal equalizer that appears again in v 22: the sanctity of God's name applies irrespective of ethnic or social status. This is especially pointed given that the offender in the triggering incident (v 10) was of mixed parentage. The same law governs everyone within the covenant community.
17. The verb yakkeh ('strikes') from nakah paired with kol-nefesh adam ('any human life') extends the principle broadly — the life in view is nefesh ('living being, person'), emphasizing the victim's personhood. The mot yumat formula ('he shall certainly die') matches the penalty for blasphemy in v 16, placing murder and blasphemy in the same severity category: both violate the image and name of God. This verse begins a series (vv 17-21) establishing the talion principle — proportional justice — before returning to the blasphemy case.
18. The verb yeshallemennah ('he shall make it complete, restore it') from the root shalem indicates full financial compensation: the offender replaces the animal, restoring the owner to wholeness. The phrase nefesh tachat nafesh ('life in place of life') here applies to animals and means equivalent replacement, not retaliatory killing — a crucial interpretive distinction. The same tachat ('in place of, instead of') structure governs the human talion laws in vv 19-20, but the animal context here demonstrates that the principle can be satisfied through restitution rather than literal replication.
19. The phrase yitten mum ('gives a defect, inflicts a blemish') uses mum, the same term applied to disqualifying defects in sacrificial animals (Lev 22:20-25) and priests (Lev 21:17-21). The injury is thus a lasting disfigurement, not a minor wound. The word amito ('his fellow, his associate') implies a member of the covenant community. The principle ka'asher asah ken ye'aseh lo ('as he did, so it shall be done to him') establishes lex talionis — proportional equivalence — as the governing standard. The verse trails into v 20 syntactically, with the specific examples following.
20. The three-part talion formula — shever tachat shever, ayin tachat ayin, shen tachat shen — moves from severe to moderate injury, establishing that proportionality governs all levels of bodily harm. The preposition tachat ('in place of, corresponding to') is the key legal term: it demands equivalence, not escalation. Ancient Near Eastern parallels (Code of Hammurabi §§196-201) show similar formulations, but Leviticus uniquely applies the principle equally regardless of social class (see v 22). Rabbinic tradition (b. Bava Qamma 83b-84a) interprets these as requiring monetary compensation equivalent to the injury, not literal physical retaliation.
21. This verse creates a sharp chiasmic contrast: animal death requires restitution (yeshallemennah — 'he shall pay it back'), while human death demands execution (yumat — 'he shall die'). The juxtaposition reinforces the incommensurable value of human life — a nefesh adam ('human being') cannot be compensated with property or payment. The resumption of the animal restitution principle from v 18 frames the talion laws (vv 19-20) as a bounded unit within the larger structure, and the concise parallel phrasing — umakkeh vehemah... umakkeh adam — drives the distinction home with rhetorical force.

- 22.** The declaration mishpat echad ('one judgment, a single standard') is a foundational principle of Israelite jurisprudence: legal equality before God. The ger ('resident alien, immigrant') and ezrach ('native-born citizen') pairing, repeated from v 16, bookends the legal section with the demand for impartial justice. The grounding clause ki ani YHWH eloheikhem ('because I am the LORD your God') anchors legal equality in divine identity — God's own character requires uniform justice. This is particularly significant in context: the offender who triggered the case was of mixed parentage (v 10), and the law refuses to treat him differently.
- 23.** The narrative resumes from v 12, closing the frame: the man held in custody receives the sentence decreed in v 14. The phrase vayyirgemu oto even ('they stoned him with stone') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis — the act is definitive. The concluding formula uvene Yisrael asu ka'asher tsivah YHWH et Mosheh ('the Israelites did as the LORD had commanded Moses') certifies communal obedience and mirrors the obedience formulae in the tabernacle construction narratives (Exod 39-40). The petucha marker (pe) closes the entire chapter as a major textual unit.

25

Summary: *God institutes the sabbatical year (every seventh year the land rests) and the Jubilee (every fiftieth year all land returns to original families and all Israelite slaves go free). Economic regulations prevent permanent impoverishment: land cannot be sold permanently because it belongs to God, and Israelite persons cannot be permanently enslaved.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The land is personified as a sabbath-keeper -- veshavetah ha'arets ("the land itself shall observe a sabbath"). The theological foundation is radical: ki li ha'arets ("the land is Mine," v23). Israel does not own the land; they are "foreigners and tenants" with God as landlord. The Jubilee prevents the permanent accumulation of wealth and the permanent dispossession of families, encoding economic justice into the calendar itself.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered shabbat shabbaton as "sabbath of complete rest" consistently with its use for Yom Kippur (23:32) and the weekly Sabbath (Exod 31:15), showing the land receives the same quality of rest as God's people. The term deror ("liberty," v10) is the word inscribed on the Liberty Bell -- we rendered it "release" in context while noting its resonance. The phrase gerim vetoshavim ("foreigners and tenants," v23) describes Israel's status before God, and we preserved the humbling force.*

Connections: *Jesus reads Isa 61:1-2 in the Nazareth synagogue (Luke 4:16-21), declaring the Jubilee fulfilled. Jeremiah's field purchase during siege (Jer 32) enacts land-redemption theology. The sabbatical year connects to the manna provision (Exod 16:22-30) and the creation Sabbath (Gen 2:2-3). The exile is interpreted as the land receiving its missed sabbaths (2 Chr 36:21).*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses on Mount Sinai, saying: ²Speak to the children of Israel and say to them: When you enter the land that I am giving you, the land itself shall observe a sabbath rest to the LORD. ³For six years you shall sow your field, and for six years you shall prune your vineyard and gather its produce. ⁴But in the seventh year there shall be a sabbath of complete rest for the land — a sabbath to the LORD. You shall not sow your field or prune your vineyard. ⁵You shall not harvest what grows on its own from your previous crop, and you shall not gather the grapes of your untended vine. It shall be a year of complete rest for the land. ⁶The sabbath produce of the land shall serve as food for you — for you, for your male and female servants, for your hired workers, and for the resident foreigners who live among you. ⁷And for your livestock and for the wild animals in your land — all its produce shall be available for food. ⁸You shall count seven sabbaths of years — seven times seven years — so that the period of seven sabbaths of years comes to forty-nine years. ⁹Then you shall sound the ram's horn with a loud blast on the tenth day of the seventh month — on the Day of Atonement you shall sound the ram's horn throughout your entire land. ¹⁰You shall consecrate the fiftieth year and proclaim release throughout the land to all its inhabitants. It shall be a Jubilee for you: each of you shall return to his own property, and each of you shall return to his own family. ¹¹That fiftieth year shall be a Jubilee for you. You shall not sow, and you shall not harvest what grows on its own, and you shall not gather the grapes of the untended vines. ¹²For it is the Jubilee — it shall be holy to you. You may eat its produce directly from the field. ¹³In this Jubilee year, each person shall return to his own property. ¹⁴When you sell anything to your neighbor or buy from your neighbor, you shall not wrong one another. ¹⁵According to the number of years after the Jubilee you shall buy from your neighbor, and according to the number of years of harvests remaining he shall sell to you. ¹⁶When

there are more years remaining, you shall increase the price; when there are fewer years remaining, you shall reduce the price, because what he is selling you is a number of harvests. ¹⁷You shall not exploit one another, but you shall fear your God, for I am the LORD your God. ¹⁸You shall carry out My statutes and observe My ordinances and do them, so that you may live on the land securely. ¹⁹The land will yield its fruit, and you will eat until you are full, and you will live on it securely. ²⁰And if you ask, 'What will we eat in the seventh year, since we are not sowing and not gathering our produce?' — ²¹I will command My blessing for you in the sixth year, so that it produces a crop sufficient for three years. ²²When you sow in the eighth year, you will still be eating from the stored produce. Until the ninth year, when its new crop comes in, you will be eating from the stored harvest. ²³The land must not be sold permanently, because the land is Mine. You are foreigners and tenants residing with Me. ²⁴Throughout all the land of your possession, you shall provide for the redemption of the land. ²⁵If your brother becomes poor and sells some of his property, his nearest kinsman-redeemer shall come and redeem what his brother has sold. ²⁶If a man has no kinsman-redeemer but his own means become sufficient for the redemption, ²⁷he shall calculate the years since the sale and refund the balance to the man who bought it, and he shall return to his property. ²⁸But if his means are not sufficient to recover it, what was sold shall remain with the buyer until the Jubilee year. In the Jubilee it shall be released, and he shall return to his property. ²⁹If a man sells a residence in a walled city, his right of redemption shall last until the end of the year of its sale. His right of redemption shall be for a full year. ³⁰If it is not redeemed within the full year, then the house in the walled city shall belong permanently to the buyer and his descendants. It shall not be released in the Jubilee. ³¹But houses in unwallled villages shall be classified as open farmland. They may be redeemed, and they shall be released in the Jubilee. ³²As for the Levitical cities — the houses in the cities of their possession — the Levites shall have a permanent right of redemption. ³³If a Levite does not redeem it, the sold house in the city of his possession shall still be released in the Jubilee, because the houses in the Levitical cities are their inheritance among the children of Israel. ³⁴The pasturelands around their cities may not be sold at all, because it is their permanent possession. ³⁵If your brother becomes poor and his hand falters beside you, you shall support him — whether he is a resident foreigner or a native — so that he may live alongside you. ³⁶Do not take interest or profit from him. Fear your God, so that your brother may live alongside you. ³⁷You shall not lend him your money at interest, nor provide your food for profit. ³⁸I am the LORD your God, who brought you out from the land of Egypt in order to give you the land of Canaan and to be God for you. ³⁹If your brother becomes poor beside you and sells himself to you, you shall not make him work as a slave. ⁴⁰He shall be treated as a hired worker, as a resident laborer with you. He shall serve with you until the Jubilee year. ⁴¹Then he shall go free from you — he and his children with him — and return to his family, and he shall return to the property of his ancestors. ⁴²For they are My servants — I brought them out of the land of Egypt. They shall not be sold as slaves are sold. ⁴³You shall not rule over him with harshness. You shall fear your God. ⁴⁴As for your male and female slaves whom you may have — from the nations around you, from them you may purchase male and female slaves. ⁴⁵Also from the children of the resident foreigners living among you — from them you may purchase, and from their families who are with you, whom they have fathered in your land. They may become your property. ⁴⁶You may bequeath them to your children after you as inherited property. You may use them as permanent workers. But over your brothers, the children of Israel — no one shall rule over his brother with harshness. ⁴⁷If a resident foreigner among you becomes wealthy while your brother beside him becomes poor and sells himself to the resident foreigner among you, or to a member of the foreigner's family, ⁴⁸After he is sold, a right of redemption remains for him. One of his brothers may redeem him. ⁴⁹His uncle, or his uncle's son, may redeem him, or any close relative from his family may redeem him. Or if his own means become sufficient, he may redeem himself. ⁵⁰He shall calculate with the one who bought him from the year he was sold to him until the Jubilee year. The price of his sale shall be based on the number of years — he shall be valued as if he were a hired worker for that period. ⁵¹If many years remain, he shall pay back his redemption price in proportion, based on the original purchase price. ⁵²If only a few years remain until the Jubilee year, he shall calculate accordingly and pay his redemption price based on those remaining years. ⁵³He shall be treated as a worker hired year by year. The foreigner shall not rule over him with harshness in your sight. ⁵⁴If he is not redeemed by these means, he shall still go free in the Jubilee year — he and his children with him. ⁵⁵For the children of Israel belong to Me as servants. They are My servants, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt. I am the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The specific location 'on Mount Sinai' (behar sinai) is significant — most Levitical laws are introduced without specifying the location. The explicit Sinai setting anchors the land-sabbath and Jubilee legislation in the same covenant-making context as the Ten Commandments and the Book of the Covenant. This is not secondary legislation but foundational covenantal instruction about the land itself.
2. The phrase veshavetah ha'arets shabbat laYHWH ('the land shall keep a sabbath to the LORD') applies sabbath language — previously reserved for human rest (Exodus 20:8-11) — directly to the land itself. The land is personified as a sabbath-keeper. The verb form is feminine singular (shavetah) matching the feminine noun arets (land), treating the land as the subject who rests. This is not merely a human decision to stop farming — the land is granted its own sabbath by God.
3. The six-year work cycle mirrors the six days of labor before the weekly sabbath (Exodus 20:9). Two types of agriculture are named: grain farming (tizra sadekha — 'sow your field') and viticulture (tizmor karmekha — 'prune your vineyard'). Together they represent the full scope of Israelite agriculture.
4. The superlative phrase shabbat shabbaton ('sabbath of complete rest') uses the intensified form — the same phrase applied to Yom Kippur (23:32) and the weekly sabbath (Exodus 31:15). The land receives the same quality of rest that God commands for His people and His holiest day. The prohibitions are specific: no sowing (grain agriculture) and no pruning (vineyard management). The land rests from human cultivation.
5. The sefiach ('aftergrowth, volunteer crop') is grain that sprouts from fallen seeds of the previous harvest without intentional planting. The nezirekha ('your untended vine' — literally 'your nazir-vine,' a vine that has not been pruned) produces grapes without human intervention. Even these unplanned yields are not to be harvested commercially. The point is not that the produce goes to waste — verse 6 clarifies it may be eaten — but that organized agricultural commerce ceases entirely.
6. The sabbatical year's produce is available to everyone equally: the landowner (lekha), servants (avdekha va'amatekha), hired laborers (sekhirekha), and resident foreigners (toshavekha haggaram immakh). During the sabbath year, the social distinctions between these groups dissolve regarding access to the land's produce. The food is not owned by the landowner but belongs to all. This is a radical leveling of economic hierarchy.
7. The sabbatical provision extends beyond human society to livestock (behemah — domestic animals) and even wild animals (chayyah — wildlife). All creatures share equally in the land's rest. The section marker (samekh) closes the sabbatical year legislation. What follows (vv 8-55) is the Jubilee — a sabbath of sabbaths.
8. The Jubilee cycle is built on the sabbatical structure: seven cycles of seven years, totaling forty-nine years. The repetition of 'seven' (sheva) three times — seven sabbaths of years, seven years, seven times — emphasizes the completeness and sacred geometry of the cycle. Just as the seventh day is holy within the week, and the seventh year is holy within the agricultural cycle, the fiftieth year (following the seventh-seventh) is supremely holy.
9. The Jubilee begins not on New Year's Day but on Yom Kippur — the Day of Atonement (yom hakippurim). The convergence of Jubilee and Atonement is theologically deliberate: the year of liberation and restoration begins on the day when the entire nation's sins are atoned for. Forgiveness of debt begins with forgiveness of sin. The shofar teruah ('ram's horn of loud blasting') is the same instrument used at Sinai (Exodus 19:16) and in warfare — it signals a decisive divine intervention.
10. Three actions define the Jubilee: (1) consecration (vekiddashtem — the fiftieth year is set apart as holy), (2) proclamation of deror ('release' — a comprehensive cancellation of debts, land transfers, and servitude), and (3) return (veshavtem — everyone goes back to their ancestral property and family). The verb tashuvu ('you shall return') echoes the root sh-u-v, which also carries the theological weight of repentance and restoration.
10. This verse is inscribed on the American Liberty Bell: 'Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.' The English word 'jubilee' derives from the Hebrew yovel through the Latin jubilaeus.
11. The Jubilee year has the same agricultural restrictions as the sabbatical year (vv 4-5). If the Jubilee falls in the year after a sabbatical year, this would mean two consecutive years without sowing — a severe test of trust in God's provision (addressed in vv 20-22).
12. The Jubilee is declared qodesh ('holy' — set apart for God). The provision min hasadeh ('from the field') means the produce may be consumed directly where it grows, without commercial harvesting and storage. This equalizes access — during the Jubilee, no one can monopolize the land's output.
13. The verb tashuvu ('you shall return') is emphatic — this is a command, not a suggestion. The achuzzah ('property, possession, inheritance') refers to the tribal land allocation from Joshua's time. The Jubilee principle is that the original divine distribution of land to the tribes and families cannot be permanently overridden by economic transactions.
14. The verb tonu ('wrong, exploit, take advantage of') from the root y-n-h prohibits economic exploitation in transactions. The relationship terms are significant: amitekha ('your fellow, your associate') and achiw ('his brother') frame commercial relationships within the language of kinship and community solidarity. Business ethics in Israel are covenantal obligations, not merely market norms.
15. This verse establishes the crucial economic principle of the Jubilee: land cannot be sold permanently. What is actually being sold is not the land itself but the number of harvests (shenei-tevu'ot — 'years of produce') until the next Jubilee. The price must reflect only the remaining crop years. This redefines land transactions as temporary leases, not permanent transfers of ownership.

16. The economic logic is explicit: the price is a function of remaining harvests (mispar tevu'ot — 'the number of produce-years'). The closing clause ki mispar tevu'ot hu mokher lakh ('for he is selling you a number of harvests') is a legal clarification that redefines what appears to be a land sale as a produce lease. The land itself belongs to God (v 23) and cannot be sold.
17. The phrase veyare'ta me'Elohekha ('you shall fear your God') is a conscience clause — it appears in Leviticus specifically where the exploitation would be difficult to detect or prosecute (see also 19:14, 19:32). When the law cannot catch the violator, the fear of God serves as the enforcement mechanism. The self-identification formula ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('I am the LORD your God') reinforces that God Himself is the guarantor of economic justice.
18. The conditional promise: obedience to the sabbatical and Jubilee laws is the condition for secure dwelling (vishavtem al ha'arets lavetach — 'you shall dwell on the land securely'). The word betach ('security, safety, confidence') is economic and military — no invaders, no famine, no anxiety about provision. The land's rest and the people's security are causally linked.
19. The land is again personified — it 'gives' (natnah) its fruit as a subject performing an action. The promise of eating lasova ('to satisfaction, to fullness') directly addresses the fear that motivates disobedience to the sabbatical law: 'What will we eat?' (v 20). God promises not mere survival but abundance.
20. God anticipates the practical objection before it is raised. The question mah nokhal ('what will we eat?') is the voice of reasonable anxiety — it is not condemned but addressed directly. The sabbatical year requires trusting God for provision in a way that goes against agricultural prudence. The system demands faith that God can provide through means other than human labor.
21. God's answer to the provision question is a promise of miraculous abundance: the sixth year's harvest will be large enough to sustain the people through the seventh year (sabbatical), the eighth year (when sowing resumes but the new crop has not yet come in), and into the ninth year (when the new crop is harvested). The verb tsivviti ('I will command') treats blessing as something God dispatches by sovereign order — He commands the earth to produce three years' worth of food in one year.
22. The timeline is precise: sow in year eight, but eat from the sixth year's stored surplus (yashan — 'old, stored') until the new crop of year nine arrives. God's provision is not hand-to-mouth but abundant — the stored food bridges the gap between sabbath rest and new production.
23. This verse is the theological cornerstone of the Jubilee. The word litsmitut ('permanently, in perpetuity') is negated — no permanent land sale is possible. The reason is stated as a first-person divine claim: ki li ha'arets ('for the land is Mine'). The Israelites are gerim vetoshavim ('strangers and sojourners') — the same terms used for landless foreigners living in Israel. Before God, even the native-born Israelite in his ancestral territory is a tenant, not an owner.
24. The Hebrew ge'ullah ('redemption') introduces the key legal concept that governs the rest of the chapter: the right of redemption. Every land sale must include the possibility of ge'ullah — the family's right to buy the land back. This right is not optional but mandatory: titnu ('you shall provide') is an imperative. The section marker (samekh) sets this verse apart as the heading principle for all the specific cases that follow.
25. The go'alo haqqarov elav ('his nearest kinsman-redeemer') introduces the go'el — the relative closest in kinship who bears the duty of redemption. The verb ga'al ('to redeem') is used three times in verses 25-26 (go'alo, vega'al, ge'ullah), emphasizing that this is the central legal concept. The go'el does not choose to redeem out of generosity; he is obligated by kinship. Failure to act as go'el is a failure of family duty.
25. This is the same go'el institution that drives the plot of Ruth: Boaz acts as go'el for Naomi's family, redeeming their land and marrying Ruth to preserve the family name.
26. The phrase lo yihyeh lo go'el ('he has no go'el') describes a person without close relatives — a devastating situation in a kinship-based society. However, self-redemption is possible if his economic situation improves (hissigah yado — 'his hand reaches,' the idiom for achieving financial capacity). Even without family support, the right of redemption remains.
27. The redemption price is not the full original sale price but the remaining value — the buyer keeps the value of the harvests he has already received, and the redeemer pays only for the years remaining until the Jubilee. The system is fair to both parties: the buyer receives the agreed-upon value of his purchase period, and the original family recovers their land.
28. The Jubilee is the ultimate safety net: even if neither a kinsman-redeemer nor the person himself can afford to redeem the land, the Jubilee automatically returns it. The verb yatsa ('go out, be released') is the same verb used for the exodus from Egypt — the land 'goes out' from the buyer's control just as Israel 'went out' from Pharaoh's control. The section marker (samekh) closes this land-redemption case.
29. Houses in walled cities follow different rules than agricultural land. The redemption window is limited to one full year (yamim — literally 'days,' meaning a complete year). After that, the sale becomes permanent (v 30). The distinction reflects economic reality: city houses are not part of the tribal land allocation in the same way that agricultural land is. Urban property is more commercially oriented.
30. The phrase latsmitut ('permanently, in perpetuity') — the same word denied to agricultural land in verse 23 — is permitted for urban houses. Walled-city houses are the only property in Israel that can be sold permanently and that are exempt from Jubilee release. This creates a two-tier system: agricultural land (God's domain, subject to Jubilee) and urban property (commercial, subject to market). The textual note [lo/lo] reflects a qere/ketiv variation in the Hebrew manuscript tradition regarding the spelling of 'which has' (lo) versus 'not' (lo) — a wall.
31. The distinction turns on the wall (chomah): walled cities have permanent sales; unwalled villages have Jubilee-eligible sales. Village houses (batei hachatserim — 'houses of the settlements') are classified as agricultural land (al sedeh ha'arets — 'as the field of the land') because they are part of the agricultural landscape, not separate urban zones. This classification preserves the Jubilee principle for rural communities.

32. The Levites receive a special provision: *ge'ullat olam* ('permanent redemption right') — their redemption right never expires. Since the Levites received no tribal land allocation (Numbers 18:20-24), their city houses are their only real property. If even these were subject to the one-year walled-city limit, Levites could lose everything permanently. The *olam* ('permanent, perpetual') *ge'ullah* protects them.
33. Even without active redemption, Levitical city houses revert at the Jubilee — the opposite of the walled-city rule in verse 30. The reasoning is explicit: *ki batei arei halevi'im hi achuzzatam* ('because the houses of the Levitical cities are their inheritance'). Since Levites have no agricultural land, their houses are equivalent to other tribes' farmland and must be protected by the Jubilee.
34. The Levitical pasturelands (*sede migrash* — 'open land of the pasture') cannot be sold under any circumstances — not even temporarily. The phrase *achuzzat olam* ('permanent possession') is the strongest property protection in the entire chapter. The Levitical system ensures that those who serve the sanctuary always have a place to live and pasture their animals. The section marker (*samekh*) closes the property-redemption section.
35. The phrase *umatah yado* ('his hand has fallen, his hand falters') is a vivid idiom for economic collapse — the hand that should work and produce has failed. The response commanded is *vehechezaqta bo* ('you shall strengthen him, you shall support him'). The protection extends beyond Israelites to *gerim vetoshavim* ('resident foreigners and sojourners') — the same terms applied to Israelites before God in verse 23. Economic support is universal within the community.
36. Two types of financial extraction are prohibited: *neshekh* ('interest' — literally 'bite,' from the root *n-sh-kh*, 'to bite') and *tarbit* ('increase, profit'). Charging interest on loans to a poor Israelite is equated with biting into their sustenance. The fear-of-God clause (*veyare'ta me'Elohekha*) appears again, as in verse 17 — interest-charging in private is undetectable by human courts but visible to God.
37. The prohibition covers both monetary loans (*kaspo* — 'your money') and food-based credit (*okhlekha* — 'your food, your provisions'). Both forms of lending to the poor — cash and kind — must be interest-free. In an agricultural economy, food loans at 'increase' (*marbith* — the food equivalent of interest) could be as devastating as monetary interest.
38. The exodus formula anchors economic ethics in salvation history. God's purpose in the exodus was twofold: to give the land (*latet lakhem et erets Kena'an*) and to be their God (*lihyot lakhem le'Elohim*). The covenant formula binds land-gift and divine relationship together — how Israel treats the land and its poor is inseparable from their relationship with the God who freed them. The section marker (*samekh*) closes the interest-prohibition unit.
39. The descent into poverty escalates: from land sale (v 25), to financial dependency (v 35), to debt-servitude (v 39). Each stage has its protective legislation. The prohibition *lo ta'avod bo avodataved* ('you shall not work him as a slave's work') distinguishes between indentured service and chattel slavery. An Israelite in debt-servitude retains his dignity — the work required of him must be different from what would be imposed on a permanent slave.
40. The Israelite debt-servant's legal status is explicitly defined: *kesakir ketoshav* ('like a hired worker, like a resident laborer') — not an owned slave but a worker with rights. His service is temporary — only until the Jubilee — and his treatment must match that of a free laborer. The phrasing *ya'avod immakh* ('he shall work with you') uses the preposition *im* ('with'), not the preposition *le* ('for'), suggesting a relationship of cooperation rather than domination.
41. The Jubilee releases the debt-servant and his entire family (*hu uvanav immo* — 'he and his children with him'). He returns to two things: his family (*mishpachto*) and his ancestral property (*achuzzat avotav*). The double return (*veshav... yashuv*) emphasizes completeness — the person is fully restored to both relational and economic standing.
42. The theological foundation for Israelite labor rights: *ki avadai hem* ('for they are My servants'). An Israelite already belongs to God — he cannot also belong to a human master. God's prior claim on Israel, established by the exodus, overrides any subsequent economic arrangement. The phrase *mimkeretaved* ('the sale of a slave') describes the commercial transaction of chattel slavery — Israelites may not be sold in this manner.
43. The word *perekh* ('harshness, severity, rigor') appears only six times in the Hebrew Bible: here, in verse 46, in verse 53, and three times in Exodus 1 describing Egyptian treatment of Israelite slaves (Exodus 1:13-14). The verbal echo is intentional: treating an Israelite debt-servant with *perekh* would replicate the very oppression from which God freed Israel. The fear-of-God clause appears for the third time in this chapter.
44. The text permits acquiring slaves from surrounding nations (*haggoyim asher sevivateikhem*). The distinction between the treatment of Israelite debt-servants (vv 39-43) and foreign slaves (vv 44-46) is stark and morally difficult for modern readers. The text does not critique the institution of foreign slavery; it limits and regulates it. The Israelite is protected by covenant identity — 'My servants' (v 42) — but this protection does not extend to foreigners in the same way.
45. The permission extends to children of resident foreigners (*benei hatoshavim haggarim immakhem*) — those born in the land to non-Israelite families. The term *achuzzah* ('property, possession') applied to human beings is deeply uncomfortable. The text reflects the widespread ancient Near Eastern institution of slavery while creating a distinct tier of protection for Israelite covenant members.
46. The contrast between foreign slaves (*le'olam bahem ta'avodu* — 'permanently you may use them as workers') and Israelite brothers (*uve'acheikhem benei Yisra'el... lo tirdeh bo beferekh* — 'over your brothers the children of Israel... you shall not rule with harshness') is the chapter's most morally complex passage. The repeated word *perekh* ('harshness') ties back to Egyptian slavery. The section marker (*samekh*) closes this unit.
47. The scenario reverses the expected power dynamic: a foreigner (*ger vetoshav*) becomes wealthy while an Israelite (*achikha* — 'your brother') becomes poor enough to sell himself to the foreigner. This case is the most vulnerable situation — an Israelite in servitude to a non-Israelite, potentially beyond the reach of Israelite community norms. The legislation that follows (vv 48-55) ensures that even in this extreme case, the

kinsman-redeemer system and the Jubilee protect the Israelite.

48. The ge'ullah right extends to persons, not just land. The phrase ge'ullah tiyeh lo ('a redemption right shall exist for him') establishes that even after sale to a foreigner, an Israelite retains the inalienable right to be redeemed. The kinsman system (echad me'echav — 'one of his brothers') is activated.
49. The hierarchy of potential redeemers is specified: uncle (dodo), uncle's son (ben dodo), any close blood relative (mishe'er besaro mimishpachto — 'from the flesh of his flesh, from his family'). The list moves from closest to broader kinship circles. Self-redemption (venig'al — 'he shall be redeemed,' reflexive) is the final option if the person's own finances recover.
50. The redemption price is calculated as the equivalent of a hired worker's wages for the remaining years until the Jubilee. The phrase kimei sakhir yiyeh immo ('as the days of a hired worker he shall be with him') reframes the servitude as a labor contract, not as ownership of a person. Even in calculating the redemption price, the text insists on treating the Israelite as a worker, not property.
51. When many years remain until the Jubilee, the redemption price is higher — it reflects the greater value of the remaining service years. The principle of proportionality (lefihen — 'according to them,' i.e., according to the years) ensures fairness to the buyer while facilitating the redemption.
52. Fewer remaining years means a lower redemption price — the closer to the Jubilee, the less expensive it is to redeem the person. The system creates an incentive structure that makes redemption progressively easier as the Jubilee approaches.
53. Even when sold to a foreigner, the Israelite's treatment is regulated by Israelite law: the foreigner may not use perekh ('harshness'). The phrase le'einekha ('in your sight') places responsibility on the Israelite community — if they see a brother being mistreated in foreign service, they are responsible to intervene. The community cannot look away.
54. The Jubilee is the final guarantee: regardless of whether redemption occurs through a kinsman-redeemer (v 48-49) or self-redemption (v 49), the person is automatically freed at the Jubilee. No Israelite can remain in permanent servitude. The verb yatsa ('go out, go free') is again the exodus verb — every Jubilee reenacts the liberation from Egypt in miniature.
55. The chapter ends where it began theologically: with God's sovereign claim. The emphatic repetition — avadai hem, 'they are My servants' — echoes verse 42. The entire Jubilee system rests on a single premise: Israel already belongs to God. Human economic arrangements are subordinate to this prior divine claim. The exodus is the event that established God's ownership, and the Jubilee is the institution that periodically reasserts it. The closing self-identification ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('I am the LORD your God') seals the chapter as divine legislation.

26

Summary: *The covenant consequences: blessings for obedience (rain, harvest, peace, God's presence) and curses for disobedience (disease, defeat, famine, exile, desolation) in five escalating waves. Despite the severity, the chapter ends with a promise: even in exile, God will not utterly reject Israel or break His covenant.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The blessings culminate not in prosperity but in presence: "I will walk among you and be your God" (v12) -- the same language as Eden. The curses are structured in five progressive waves, each sevenfold in intensity, giving Israel repeated opportunities to repent. The land's missed sabbaths (v34-35, 43) link disobedience to the sabbatical-year legislation of ch 25. Yet the covenant survives even total failure: velo ge'altim... lehaphar beriti ("I will not reject them... so as to break My covenant," v44).*

Translation Friction: *The word shalom (v6) required its full register: not merely "peace" as absence of war but comprehensive well-being -- agricultural abundance, physical security, lying down unafraid. We rendered vehithallakhti betokhekhem (v12) as "I will walk among you" to preserve the Eden echo (Gen 3:8, same verb). The five-stage curse structure uses the phrase sheva al-chattoteikhem ("sevenfold for your sins") as an intensifier, not a literal multiplier, and we rendered accordingly.*

Connections: *The covenant-curse structure parallels Deut 28. The "walking among you" promise (v12) echoes Gen 3:8 and anticipates Rev 21:3 ("the dwelling of God is with man"). The exile prophecy was fulfilled in 586 BC (2 Kgs 25). The "missed sabbaths" explanation appears in 2 Chr 36:21. The unbreakable covenant promise (v44-45) undergirds Paul's argument in Rom 11:1-2, 29.*

¹You shall not make idols for yourselves, or set up a carved image or a sacred pillar, or place a figured stone in your land to bow down to it — for I am the LORD your God. ²Keep My Sabbaths and treat My sanctuary with reverence. I am the LORD. ³"If you walk in My statutes and keep My commandments and carry them out, ⁴I will give your rains in their season. The land will yield its produce, and the trees of the field will give their fruit. ⁵Your threshing will last until the grape harvest, and the

grape harvest will last until sowing time. You will eat your bread to satisfaction and dwell securely in your land. ⁶I will grant peace in the land — you will lie down with no one to frighten you. I will remove dangerous animals from the land, and no sword shall pass through your land. ⁷You will pursue your enemies, and they will fall before you by the sword. ⁸Five of you will chase a hundred, and a hundred of you will put ten thousand to flight. Your enemies will fall before you by the sword. ⁹I will turn My face toward you, make you fruitful, multiply you, and uphold My covenant with you. ¹⁰You will eat last year's stored harvest and have to clear out the old to make room for the new. ¹¹I will place My dwelling among you, and I will not reject you. ¹²I will walk among you. I will be your God, and you will be My people. ¹³I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt so you would no longer be their slaves. I broke the bars of your yoke and made you walk upright." ¹⁴"But if you do not listen to Me and do not carry out all these commandments — ¹⁵if you reject My statutes and your soul loathes My ordinances, so that you do not carry out all My commandments — thus breaking My covenant — ¹⁶then I in turn will do this to you: I will bring upon you sudden terror, wasting disease, and fever that dim the eyes and drain the life. You will sow your seed for nothing — your enemies will eat it. ¹⁷I will set My face against you, and you will be struck down before your enemies. Those who hate you will rule over you, and you will flee when no one is pursuing you. ¹⁸If even after this you do not listen to Me, I will discipline you sevenfold for your sins. ¹⁹I will break your proud strength. I will make your sky like iron and your earth like bronze. ²⁰Your strength will be spent in vain — your land will not yield its produce, and the trees of the land will not give their fruit. ²¹If you walk in hostility toward Me and refuse to listen to Me, I will strike you sevenfold according to your sins. ²²I will send wild animals among you that will rob you of your children, destroy your livestock, and reduce your numbers until your roads are deserted. ²³If even through these things you are not corrected and still walk in hostility toward Me, ²⁴then I too will walk in hostility toward you, and I Myself will strike you sevenfold for your sins. ²⁵I will bring a sword against you that executes the vengeance of the covenant. When you retreat into your cities, I will send plague among you, and you will be handed over to the enemy. ²⁶When I break your supply of bread, ten women will bake your bread in a single oven and ration it back to you by weight. You will eat but never be satisfied. ²⁷If even after all this you do not listen to Me but continue to walk in hostility toward Me, ²⁸then I will walk against you in furious hostility, and I Myself will discipline you sevenfold for your sins. ²⁹You will eat the flesh of your sons, and the flesh of your daughters you will eat. ³⁰I will destroy your high places, cut down your incense altars, and pile your corpses on the corpses of your idols. I will loathe you. ³¹I will lay your cities waste, bring your sanctuaries to ruin, and I will not smell your pleasing aromas. ³²I Myself will devastate the land — so that even your enemies who settle in it will be appalled. ³³I will scatter you among the nations and draw a sword to pursue you. Your land will become desolation, and your cities will become ruins. ³⁴Then the land will make up for its Sabbaths during all the time it lies desolate while you are in your enemies' land. Then the land will rest and repay its Sabbaths. ³⁵All the time it lies desolate, it will have the rest it did not have during your Sabbaths when you lived on it. ³⁶As for those of you who survive — I will fill their hearts with dread in the lands of their enemies. The sound of a windblown leaf will put them to flight. They will run as though fleeing from a sword, and fall when no one is pursuing. ³⁷They will stumble over one another as though before a sword — with no one pursuing. You will have no strength to stand before your enemies. ³⁸You will perish among the nations, and the land of your enemies will consume you. ³⁹Those of you who survive will waste away in their guilt in the lands of your enemies — and in the guilt of their ancestors they will waste away with them. ⁴⁰"But if they confess their guilt and the guilt of their ancestors — their treachery against Me, and how they walked in hostility toward Me, ⁴¹which caused Me to walk in hostility toward them and bring them into the land of their enemies — or if then their uncircumcised heart is humbled and they accept the punishment for their guilt, ⁴²then I will remember My covenant with Jacob, and My covenant with Isaac, and My covenant with Abraham I will remember — and the land I will remember. ⁴³For the land will be abandoned by them and will make up for its Sabbaths while it lies desolate without them. They will accept the punishment for their guilt — all because they rejected My ordinances and their soul loathed My statutes. ⁴⁴Yet even then, while they are in the land of their enemies, I will not reject them or loathe them to the point of destroying them completely — breaking My covenant with them. For I am the LORD their God. ⁴⁵I will remember for their sake the covenant with their ancestors, whom I brought out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the nations, to be their God. I am the LORD." ⁴⁶These are the statutes, ordinances, and instructions that the LORD established between

Himself and the Israelites on Mount Sinai through Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a summary of fundamental prohibitions before presenting the covenant consequences. Four forbidden objects: elilim ('idols' — from a root meaning 'worthless, nothing'), pesel ('carved image'), matsevah ('standing stone/sacred pillar'), and even maskit ('figured/image stone'). The closing signature ki ani YHWH Eloheikhem ('for I am the LORD your God') grounds the prohibition in divine identity — the first commandment underlies the entire blessings-and-curses structure.
2. Two positive commands summarize Israel's core obligations: Sabbath observance (et-shabbetotay tishmoru) and sanctuary reverence (umiqddashi tira'u). These two — sacred time and sacred space — are the pillars of covenant faithfulness. The formula ani YHWH ('I am the LORD') seals both verses 1-2 as the preamble to the covenant consequences that follow.
3. The blessings section opens with im-bechuqqotay telekhu ('if you walk in My statutes') — three verbs of covenant faithfulness: walk (halakh — lifestyle), keep (shamar — vigilance), and do (asah — action). The blessings that follow (v4-13) are not rewards earned but covenant consequences — the natural result of life aligned with God's design. The conditional 'if' makes the blessings contingent on obedience, but the relationship is organic, not transactional.
4. The first blessing is agricultural: venatatti gishmeikhem be'ittam ('I will give your rains in their season'). Rain in ancient Israel was the difference between life and death — there were no irrigation systems for most crops. God promises to control the weather for Israel's benefit. The threefold abundance — rain, land produce, tree fruit — covers the entire agricultural spectrum. The pronoun 'your rains' (gishmeikhem) personalizes the weather: these rains belong to you because I am sending them for you.
5. The abundance is so great that agricultural seasons overlap: threshing extends into grape harvest, grape harvest extends into planting season. The normal gaps between seasons disappear — there is always something to harvest, always food to process. The result: va'akhaltem lachmekhem lasova ('you will eat your bread to satisfaction') and vishavtem lavetach be'artsekhem ('you will dwell securely in your land'). Food and security — the two fundamental human needs — are guaranteed by covenant faithfulness.
6. Venatatti shalom ba'arets ('I will grant peace in the land') — the shalom register term appears as the comprehensive blessing. Peace here means more than absence of war: it includes lying down without fear (ushkhavtem ve'ein macharid — 'you will lie down with no one to terrify'), removal of predatory animals (hishbatti chayyah ra'ah), and no military invasion (cherev lo-ta'avov). Shalom in its fullest sense: safety from every threat — animal, human, and military.
7. Military supremacy: ureda'tem et-oyevikhem ('you will pursue your enemies'). The dynamic reverses the normal fear of war — Israel is the pursuer, not the pursued. The enemies fall by the sword, not Israel. This promise will be inverted in the curse section (v17, 36-37) where Israel flees and enemies pursue.
8. The ratios are supernatural: five chase a hundred (1:20), a hundred rout ten thousand (1:100). The escalation from 1:20 to 1:100 is not arithmetic but exponential — the more Israelites fight together, the more disproportionate the victory. Military success is not about numbers but about God's presence. These ratios will be reversed in the curse (Deut 32:30: 'How could one pursue a thousand?').
9. God's personal attention: ufaniti aleikhem ('I will turn toward you' — literally 'I will face you'). The creation blessing returns: vehifreiti etkhem vehirbeiti etkhem ('I will make you fruitful and multiply you') — the same verbs from Genesis 1:28. Covenant faithfulness reconnects Israel to the original creation mandate. The climactic promise: vahaqimoti et-beriti ittkhem ('I will uphold My covenant with you'). The berit register term appears: God's covenant is not static but actively maintained — He upholds, establishes, and sustains it.
10. A vivid image of abundance: va'akhaltem yashan noshan ('you will eat old, well-aged grain'). The surplus is so great that old grain must be removed (veyashan mippenei chadash tots'u — 'you must bring out the old to make room for the new'). Storage capacity cannot keep up with production. The problem is not scarcity but overflow — a reversal of the wilderness experience where manna could not be stored overnight.
11. The climax of the blessings: venatatti mishkani betokhekhem ('I will place My dwelling in your midst'). The word mishkan ('dwelling') is the tabernacle — God's portable residence. This is the ultimate blessing: not rain, not victory, not abundance, but divine presence. Everything else flows from this. The negative assurance — velo-tig'al nafshi etkhem ('My soul will not abhor/reject you') — uses the visceral verb ga'al ('to loathe, to reject with revulsion'). God promises not merely to tolerate Israel but to remain willingly, without revulsion at their humanity.
12. The verb vehithalakhti betokhekhem ('I will walk among you') is extraordinary — God walking (hitpa'el of halakh) among humans recalls the Garden of Eden (Gen 3:8, where God 'walked' in the cool of the day). The covenant formula vehayiti lakhem le'Elohim ve'attem tihyu-li le'am ('I will be your God, you will be My people') appears across the Bible (Gen 17:7-8, Exod 6:7, Jer 31:33, Rev 21:3) as the definitive description of the covenant relationship. It is the endpoint of redemption history: the entire biblical narrative aims at this mutual belonging.
13. The blessings section closes with the exodus identity: ani YHWH Eloheikhem asher hotseti etkhem me'erets Mitsrayim ('I am the LORD your God who brought you out of Egypt'). Two images capture liberation: va'eshbor motot ulekhem ('I broke the bars of your yoke' — the wooden crossbar that holds the yoke on an animal's neck) and va'olekh etkhem qomemiyut ('I made you walk upright/erect'). Slaves walk bent under burdens; the freed walk tall. The physical posture of liberation — heads up, backs straight — is itself a gift of God. The blessings are not abstract promises but the continuation of the exodus: God freed you once and will keep you free.

14. The curse section begins with *ve'im-lo tishme'u li* ('but if you do not listen to Me'). The Hebrew *shama* ('listen') means not merely hear but obey — the same verb as the *Shema* (Deut 6:4). The curses unfold in five escalating stages (v14-17, v18-20, v21-22, v23-26, v27-39), each introduced by 'if you still...' — God gives Israel five chances to repent before the ultimate judgment. The structure is not vindictive but pastoral: each stage intensifies until repentance occurs.
15. The sin is specified: *tim'asu* ('reject') and *tig'al nafshekhem* ('your soul loathes'). The verb *ga'al* ('to loathe') echoes v11 where God promised not to loathe Israel — now Israel loathes God's laws. The reversal is devastating. The ultimate consequence: *lehafrekhem et-beriti* ('breaking My covenant'). Disobedience is not merely rule-breaking but *berit*-breaking — it ruptures the covenant relationship itself.
16. The first curse stage (v16-17): *af-ani e'eseh-zot lakhem* ('I in turn will do this to you') — God responds in kind. Three afflictions: *behalah* ('sudden terror/panic'), *shachefet* ('wasting disease/consumption'), and *qaddachat* ('burning fever'). The agricultural blessing of v4-5 is reversed: *uzera'tem lariq zar'akhem* ('you will sow your seed for nothing') — the enemies consume what Israel plants. Every blessing has a corresponding curse.
17. *Venatatti fanay bakhem* ('I will set My face against you') — the inversion of v9's 'I will turn My face toward you.' God's face, which blessed, now judges. Military defeat replaces military supremacy (v7-8). The final clause — *venastem ve'ein-rodef etkhem* ('you will flee with no one pursuing') — describes paranoia: the fear itself becomes the enemy. Israel will run from imaginary threats, consumed by the terror God promised in v16.
18. The second escalation: *ve'im-ad-elleh lo tishme'u li* ('if even after this you do not listen to Me'). The phrase *veyasafti leyassera etkhem sheva al-chatoteikhem* ('I will add to discipline you seven times for your sins') introduces the sevenfold intensification that will recur (v21, 24, 28). Each refusal to repent multiplies the consequence. God's discipline is corrective (*yassar* — 'to discipline, to train'), not merely punitive — the purpose is to produce change.
19. Two cosmic reversals: *shemeikhem kabarzel* ('your sky like iron' — no rain penetrates) and *artsekhem kanechushah* ('your earth like bronze' — nothing grows). The agricultural blessings of v4 are completely reversed. The sky becomes an impenetrable ceiling; the ground becomes an unyielding floor. Heaven and earth, which together sustained life, now conspire against it. The phrase *veshabarti et-ge'on uzzeckhem* ('I will break the pride of your strength') targets the self-sufficiency that replaces trust in God.
20. *Vetam lariq kochakhem* ('your strength will be spent for nothing') — effort without result. The land refuses to cooperate: *velo-titten artsekhem et-yevulah* ('your land will not yield its produce'). This is the exact reversal of v4: 'the land will yield its produce' becomes 'the land will not yield.' The trees that gave fruit (v4) now withhold it (v20). The curse systematically undoes every blessing, point by point.
21. The third escalation introduces the key word *qeri* ('hostility, contrariness, opposition'). The phrase *im-telekhu immi qeri* ('if you walk with Me in hostility') describes a deliberate, adversarial posture — not mere neglect but active resistance. This word *qeri* will appear seven times in the chapter (v21, 23, 24, 27, 28, 40, 41), becoming the chapter's defining concept for covenant rebellion.
22. Wild animals (*chayyat hassadeh*) — the dangerous beasts removed in the blessing (v6) return as agents of judgment. The reversal is precise: v6 removed wild beasts; v22 sends them back. The consequences escalate: children killed (*shikkelah etkhem*), livestock destroyed, population reduced (*him'itah etkhem*), roads deserted (*neshammu darkheikhem*). The land becomes empty — the opposite of the teeming abundance promised in v4-10.
23. The fourth escalation: *ve'im-be'elleh lo tivvasru li* ('if through these things you are not disciplined/corrected by Me'). The verb *yassar* ('to discipline') reveals the purpose of the curses — they are corrective, not vindictive. God's goal is *teshuvah* (return), not destruction. Each stage asks: will this be enough to turn you back? The *qeri* ('hostility') continues — Israel persists in adversarial posture toward God.
24. God mirrors Israel's posture: *vehalakhti af-ani immakhem beqeri* ('I too will walk with you in hostility'). The *af-ani* ('I too, even I') is emphatic and devastating — God adopts the same adversarial stance Israel has taken toward Him. The relationship becomes mutual hostility: Israel walks in *qeri* toward God; God walks in *qeri* toward Israel. The covenant that was designed for mutual belonging becomes mutual opposition.
25. The phrase *cherev noqemet neqam-berit* ('a sword avenging covenant vengeance') is critical: the sword is not arbitrary violence but covenant enforcement. The word *neqam-berit* ('vengeance of the covenant') means the curses are the covenant's own provisions activating — not divine caprice but the consequences Israel agreed to at Sinai. The *berit* register term appears again: the same covenant that promised blessings (v9) now delivers curses. The covenant works in both directions.
26. *Beshivri lakhem matteh-lechem* ('when I break your bread supply' — literally 'staff of bread,' the staff on which round bread loaves are hung for storage). The image of ten women sharing one oven — normally each household has its own — depicts severe shortage. Bread rationed by weight (*veheshivu lachmekhem bamishqal*) means each person receives a measured, insufficient portion. The devastating conclusion: *va'akhaltem velo tisba'u* ('you will eat and not be satisfied'). The reversal of v5 (eating to satisfaction) is complete: food exists but cannot satisfy.
27. The fifth and final escalation: *ve'im-bezot lo tishme'u li* ('if even after all this you do not listen'). The patience is exhausted; the *qeri* is unchanged. What follows (v28-39) is the most extreme judgment: cannibalism (v29), shrine destruction (v30), city devastation (v31), land desolation (v32-33), exile (v33-35), and psychological collapse (v36-39). The curses mirror the plagues of Egypt — Israel becomes its own Egypt.
28. God's final posture: *bachamat-qeri* ('in the fury of hostility'). The *chamat* adds 'burning rage' to *qeri* ('hostility') — God's patience, extended through four stages, is now accompanied by fury. The sevenfold discipline intensifies for the last time. What follows is the most terrible section of Leviticus — but it is still framed as discipline (*yissarti* — 'I will discipline'), not annihilation.
29. The most horrifying verse in Leviticus: *va'akhaltem besar beneikhem uvesar benoteikhem tokheilu* ('you will eat the flesh of your sons and your daughters'). Siege-induced cannibalism — historically fulfilled during the Babylonian and Roman sieges of Jerusalem (2 Kgs 6:28-29, Lam 4:10). The verse's horror is amplified by its brevity: no euphemism, no softening, just the stark statement. This is where *qeri* leads: the community that

walks in hostility toward God will consume its own children.

30. Three destructions: bamot ('high places' — elevated worship sites), chammanim ('incense altars/sun pillars'), and the grisly image of pigrekhem al-pigrei gilluleikhem ('your corpses on the corpses of your idols'). The word gillukim ('idols' — from a root suggesting 'dung pellets') is the most contemptuous term for idols in Hebrew. The final reversal of v11: where God promised velo-tig'al nafshi etkhem ('I will not loathe you'), now vega'alaf nafshi etkhem ('I will loathe you'). The promise of divine acceptance becomes divine revulsion.
31. Cities become chorbah ('ruin'), sanctuaries become shemmamah ('desolation'). The final clause — velo ariach bereiach nichochakhem ('I will not smell your pleasing aromas') — declares that God will no longer accept sacrificial worship. The reach nichoach ('pleasing aroma') that signified divine acceptance throughout Leviticus 1-7 is rejected. The entire sacrificial system — the system Leviticus exists to establish — ceases to function. When God refuses to smell the offering, the altar is effectively closed.
32. Vahashimoti ani et-ha'arets ('I Myself will devastate the land') — God personally devastates the land He gave. Even the conquering enemies (oyeveikhem hayyoshevim bah) will be stunned by the extent of the destruction. The land that flowed with milk and honey becomes so desolate that even occupiers are astonished. The divine agency is emphatic: ani ('I Myself') — God owns the destruction as personally as He owned the blessing.
33. Exile: ve'etkhem ezareh vaggoyim ('I will scatter you among the nations'). The verb zarah ('to scatter, to winnow') treats Israel like grain thrown into the wind — dispersed in every direction. The sword follows them into exile (vahariqoti achareikhem charev). The land and the cities are emptied: shemamah... chorbah. The curse section anticipates the Babylonian exile with remarkable specificity — though written centuries before the event.
34. A striking theological concept: az tirtsseh ha'arets et-shabbetoteha ('then the land will enjoy/repay its Sabbaths'). The land itself has a right to rest — the sabbatical year (ch 25) gives the land a Sabbath every seven years. If Israel refuses to let the land rest, God will remove Israel so the land can rest without them. The exile's duration is calibrated to the number of missed sabbatical years — 2 Chronicles 36:21 explicitly connects the seventy-year Babylonian exile to this principle.
35. The land's desolation is its overdue rest: et asher lo-shavtah beshabbetoteikhem ('what it did not rest during your Sabbaths'). The land is personified as a worker denied its rightful days off — the exile is the land's back-pay of rest. The concept treats the land not as property but as a covenant partner with its own God-given rights.
36. The psychological curse: vehaveti morekh bilevavam ('I will bring weakness/dread into their hearts'). The mighty warriors of v7-8 become refugees terrified by a leaf: qol aleh niddaf ('the sound of a driven leaf'). The earlier curse of v17 (fleeing when no one pursues) returns in intensified form. The exile produces not just displacement but psychological collapse — Israel loses not only its land but its courage.
37. The community collapses internally: vekashlu ish-be'achiv ('they will stumble over one another' — literally 'each man over his brother'). Brotherhood, which should provide mutual support, becomes a source of mutual destruction. The final verdict: velo-tihyeh lakhem tequmah lifnei oyeveikhem ('you will have no ability to stand before your enemies'). The military capacity promised in v7-8 is utterly destroyed.
38. Va'avadtem baggoyim ('you will perish among the nations') — the nation that was to 'dwell apart' (Num 23:9) is swallowed by the nations. The phrase ve'akhelah etkhem erets oyeveikhem ('the land of your enemies will consume you') personifies the foreign land as a predator — the land that was supposed to sustain Israel (v4-5) now devours them. The curse section reaches its nadir: Israel consumed by foreign soil.
39. The verb yimmaqu ('will waste away, will rot') describes slow disintegration. The survivors carry ba'avonam ('in their guilt') and ba'avonot avotam ('in the guilt of their ancestors') — the accumulated weight of generations of covenant breaking. The curse section ends with decay, not death — a lingering dissolution that is worse than a swift end. The five stages of judgment have reached their conclusion. But the chapter does not end here.
40. The restoration begins: vehitvaddu et-avonam ('but if they confess their guilt'). After five stages of judgment, God opens a door. The confession must be comprehensive: their own guilt (avonam), their ancestors' guilt (avon avotam), their treachery (ma'alam), and their hostility (qeri). The verb hitvaddah ('to confess') — the same word from Leviticus 5:5 — requires naming the specific sin. Restoration begins with acknowledgment, not with sacrifice.
41. God acknowledges His own role: af-ani elekh immam beqeri ('I too walked with them in hostility'). The admission that exile was God's hostile response — not random misfortune — is part of the theological honesty the chapter demands. The turning point: o-az yikkana levavam he'arel ('or if then their uncircumcised heart is humbled'). The word he'arel ('uncircumcised') applied to the heart (levav) — the same concept as Deuteronomy 10:16 and 30:6 — describes a heart resistant to God's word. When that resistant heart is humbled (yikkana — 'subdued, brought low'), restoration becomes possible.
42. Vezakharti et-beriti Ya'aqov... Yitschaq... Avraham ezkhori ('I will remember My covenant with Jacob... Isaac... Abraham'). The reverse order (Jacob Isaac Abraham) has generated extensive commentary. The Leviticus briefing notes: 'God remembers His covenant with Jacob, Isaac, and Abraham (reverse order — the note should catch this).' Possible readings: ascending from the nearest to the foundational, or tracing backward through history to the origin of the promise. The fourfold zakhar makes remembrance the chapter's turning point: five stages of curse are answered by four acts of divine memory. Veba'arets ezkhori ('and the land I will remember') — the land itself is a covenant partner deserving of God's remembrance.
43. The reason clause is repeated from v15: ya'an uve'ya'an bemishpatay ma'asu ve'et chuqqotay ga'alaf nafsham ('because — indeed because — they rejected My ordinances and their soul loathed My statutes'). The doubling ya'an uve'ya'an ('because, indeed because') is emphatic — there is no mystery about why judgment came. The people's own choices are the cause. Yet even within this restatement of guilt, the thread of restoration continues: vehem yirtsu et-avonam ('they will accept the punishment for their guilt') — acceptance of consequence is the beginning of return.

44. The chapter's most astonishing verse: *ve'af-gam-zot* ('yet even so, despite all this'). Three negatives: *lo-me'astim* ('I will not reject them'), *velo-ge'altim* ('I will not loathe them'), *lekhalotam* ('to the point of destroying them completely'). The reason: *lehafer beriti itam* ('to break My covenant with them'). God will not break the covenant — even when Israel has broken it from their side. The unilateral faithfulness of God sustains the covenant when human faithfulness fails. *Ki ani YHWH Eloheihem* ('for I am the LORD their God') — the covenant formula from v12 persists even through exile. God remains 'their God' even when they are in enemy territory.
45. The fifth and final *zakhart*: *vezakharti lahem berit ri'shonim* ('I will remember for them the covenant of the first ones/ancestors'). The 'first ones' may refer to the patriarchs (v42) or to the exodus generation — the covenant at Sinai, made in the sight of the nations (*le'einei haggoyim*). The purpose clause — *lihyot lahem le'Elohim* ('to be their God') — restates the covenant formula one last time. The chapter ends as it will end the entire Bible's covenant theology: God remains God, the covenant remains binding, and restoration remains possible. *Ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') — the same identity that opened the Decalogue closes the blessings and curses.
46. The chapter's colophon — and the near-conclusion of the Sinai legislation (ch 27 is an appendix on vows). The phrase *behar Sinai beyad-Mosheh* ('on Mount Sinai, through Moses') anchors everything from Leviticus 1 through 26 in the Sinai revelation. The word *hattorot* (plural of *torah* — 'instructions, teachings') is notable: Leviticus contains not one *torah* but many *torot* — multiple bodies of instruction governing offerings, purity, holiness, and covenant consequences. Together they constitute the answer to Leviticus's central question: how does a holy God dwell among an unholy people? Through sacrifice (ch 1-7), through priesthood (ch 8-10), through purity (ch 11-15), through atonement (ch 16), through holiness (ch 17-25), and through covenant faithfulness sustained by divine memory (ch 26).

27

Summary: *Regulations for voluntary dedications to the LORD: assessed values for persons, animals, houses, and land dedicated by vow. Provisions allow redemption (buying back) of most dedications by adding twenty percent. Permanently devoted things (cherem) and tithes cannot be redeemed. The chapter closes Leviticus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The erekh ("assessed value") system converts devotional impulse into manageable obligation -- a person who vows to dedicate themselves or a family member can pay a standardized monetary equivalent instead. The sliding scale by age and sex reflects economic capacity, not human worth. The cherem ("devoted thing") is the most extreme form of dedication: irrevocable and belonging entirely to God, it cannot be bought back.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered yaphli neder ("makes an extraordinary vow") to capture the force of pala ("to be wonderful, to set apart") -- this is no casual promise. The erekh system's differing valuations by sex required careful notes explaining that these are economic assessments in an agrarian context, not statements about inherent dignity. The term cherem ("devoted thing," v28) carries both sacred and destructive connotations (the same word describes the ban on Jericho in Josh 6:17), and we rendered it to preserve its severity.*

Connections: *Hannah's dedication of Samuel (1 Sam 1:11, 28) illustrates the personal vow. Jephthah's vow (Judg 11:30-39) shows the danger of rash dedications. The tithe legislation (vv 30-33) connects to Gen 14:20 (Abraham's tithe to Melchizedek) and Mal 3:8-10 ("will a man rob God?"). The cherem concept connects to the conquest narratives of Joshua. The chapter's placement as an appendix after the blessings and curses of ch 26 mirrors Deuteronomy's structure.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Tell the Israelites: When someone makes an extraordinary vow dedicating persons to the LORD by their assessed value, ³the assessed value for a male between twenty and sixty years of age will be fifty shekels of silver, measured by the sanctuary standard. ⁴If the person is female, the assessed value will be thirty shekels. ⁵If the person is between five and twenty years of age, the assessed value will be twenty shekels for a male and ten shekels for a female. ⁶If the person is between one month and five years of age, the assessed value will be five shekels of silver for a male and three shekels of silver for a female. ⁷If the person is sixty years of age or older, the assessed value will be fifteen shekels for a male and ten shekels for a female. ⁸But if the person is too poor to pay the assessed value, they must be presented before the priest, and the priest will set the value according to what the one making the vow can afford. ⁹If the dedication involves a type of animal from which offerings are brought to the LORD, whatever is given to the LORD from it becomes holy. ¹⁰The owner must not swap or substitute it — neither a good animal for a bad one, nor a bad one for a good one. If someone does substitute one animal for another, then both the original and the replacement will be holy. ¹¹If it is a ritually impure animal

— a kind from which no offering is brought to the LORD — the owner must present the animal before the priest. ¹²The priest will appraise it, whether the animal is of good or poor quality. Whatever value the priest assigns — that is what it will be. ¹³If the owner insists on buying it back, a fifth must be added on top of the assessed value. ¹⁴When someone consecrates a house as holy to the LORD, the priest will appraise it based on its quality — good or poor. Whatever the priest determines as its value, that amount stands. ¹⁵If the one who consecrated the house wants to buy it back, that person must add a fifth of the appraised monetary value on top. Then it will be returned. ¹⁶If someone consecrates to the LORD a portion of their hereditary landholding, the assessed value will be calculated by its seed capacity: land requiring a homer of barley seed is valued at fifty shekels of silver. ¹⁷If the field is consecrated starting from the Jubilee year, the full assessed value applies. ¹⁸But if the field is consecrated after the Jubilee year, the priest will calculate the monetary value based on the years remaining until the next Jubilee, and the assessed value will be reduced proportionally. ¹⁹If the one who consecrated the field truly wants to buy it back, that person must add a fifth to the assessed monetary value, and the field will be confirmed as theirs again. ²⁰If the owner does not buy back the field, or if the field has been sold to another party, it can never be redeemed. ²¹When the field is released at the Jubilee, it will become holy to the LORD — like a field under the ban of irrevocable dedication. It will become the permanent possession of the priests. ²²If someone consecrates to the LORD a field that was purchased — one that is not part of their hereditary landholding — ²³the priest will calculate the proportional assessed value through the Jubilee year, and the person must pay that amount on the same day as a holy contribution to the LORD. ²⁴In the Jubilee year, the field reverts to the person from whom it was purchased — the one whose hereditary landholding it originally was. ²⁵Every assessed value must be calculated using the sanctuary shekel standard. The shekel equals twenty gerahs. ²⁶However, no one may consecrate a firstborn animal by vow, since the firstborn among livestock already belongs to the LORD — whether it is a bull or a sheep, it is the LORD's. ²⁷If it is a firstborn of a ritually impure animal, the owner may ransom it at the assessed value plus an additional fifth. If it is not ransomed, it will be sold at the assessed value. ²⁸Nevertheless, anything that a person places under the ban of irrevocable dedication to the LORD — whether from persons, livestock, or hereditary landholding — may not be sold and may not be bought back. Everything placed under the ban is most holy to the LORD. ²⁹No person who has been placed under the ban may be ransomed — that person must be put to death. ³⁰Every tenth portion from the land — whether grain from the soil or fruit from the trees — belongs to the LORD. It is holy to the LORD. ³¹If someone insists on buying back any portion of their tithe, they must add a fifth to its value. ³²As for the tithe of cattle and sheep — every animal that passes under the counting rod, the tenth one will be holy to the LORD. ³³The owner must not sort between good and bad animals, and must not make a substitution. If a substitution is made, both the original and the replacement become holy — neither may be bought back. ³⁴These are the commandments that the LORD gave Moses for the Israelites at Mount Sinai.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard divine speech formula *vaydabber YHVH el-Moshe lemor* ('and the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') introduces the final legislative section of Leviticus. This chapter on vows and valuations forms a legal appendix to the Holiness Code (chs. 17–26), addressing voluntary dedications rather than obligatory offerings.
2. The verb *yaphli* (from *pala*, 'to be extraordinary, to set apart') signals that this is no ordinary promise — it is a remarkable, deliberately undertaken vow (*neder*). The phrase *be'erke'kha nephashoth* ('by your assessed value of persons') introduces the *erekh* system: a fixed monetary valuation assigned to a person who has been dedicated to the LORD, allowing the vow to be fulfilled through payment rather than literal service.
3. The *erekh* ('assessed value') for a prime-age male — fifty shekels of silver — represents a substantial sum, roughly equivalent to years of wages for an ordinary laborer. The phrase *besheqel haqqodesh* ('by the shekel of the sanctuary') specifies the weight standard used in sacred transactions, distinguishing it from commercial shekels that may have varied by region.
4. The female *erekh* of thirty shekels — sixty percent of the male valuation — likely reflects economic productivity in an ancient agrarian society rather than inherent worth. These are not price tags on human dignity but standardized monetary equivalents for fulfilling dedication vows. The same thirty-shekel figure appears in Exodus 21:32 as compensation for a slave killed by a goring ox.
5. The age bracket from five to twenty (*mibben-chamesh shanim ve'ad ben-esrim shanah*) covers youth and adolescence. The reduced valuation of twenty shekels for a male and ten for a female reflects the person's lower economic capacity relative to a prime-age adult. The sliding scale across all age brackets demonstrates that the *erekh* is tied to productive capability, not moral or spiritual status.

6. The lowest age bracket begins at one month (*mibben-chodesh*), not at birth — a newborn under thirty days was apparently not yet subject to the vow-valuation system, possibly reflecting the fragile survival prospects of infants. The five-shekel valuation for a male infant matches the redemption price for a firstborn son in Numbers 18:16, suggesting a standardized figure for young children in Israel's sacred economy.
7. The phrase *vama'lah* ('and upward') sets no upper age limit — all elderly persons fall under a single bracket. The reduced valuation of fifteen shekels for an elderly male (compared to fifty for prime-age) corresponds to diminished economic productivity in old age. The elderly female valuation of ten shekels equals the young female valuation (v. 5), suggesting a standardized minimum for certain categories.
8. The word *makh* ('poor, reduced in means') triggers a compassion clause: the fixed-rate system yields to priestly discretion. The phrase *al-pi asher tassig yad hanoder* ('according to what the hand of the one vowing can reach') uses the idiom of the hand 'reaching' or 'attaining' to express financial capacity. This provision ensures that poverty does not exclude anyone from making vows — the same principle appears in the bird-offering substitutions of Leviticus 5:7 and 12:8.
9. The shift from persons (vv. 2–8) to animals (*behemah*) introduces the second category of dedications. The term *qorban* ('offering, that which is brought near') specifies ritually acceptable animals — those eligible for sacrifice. The verb *yihyeh-qodesh* ('it shall be holy') marks an irrevocable transfer of status: once given to the LORD, the animal enters the sphere of the sacred and cannot be reclaimed.
10. Two verbs reinforce the prohibition: *yachalipennu* ('exchange it') and *yamir* ('substitute it'), covering any attempt to switch the dedicated animal. The penalty for violation is striking — *hamer yamir* ('if he does indeed substitute'), using the infinitive absolute for emphasis, results in both animals becoming holy. This anti-substitution rule prevents donors from dedicating a fine animal, then swapping in an inferior one, a practice Malachi 1:14 later denounces.
11. The category *behemah teme'ah* ('impure/unclean animal') refers to animals ineligible for sacrifice — donkeys, camels, and the like. Though they cannot serve as offerings, they can still be dedicated by vow and assigned monetary value. The verb *he'emid* ('caused to stand, presented') implies a formal assessment process before the priest, paralleling the presentation of poor persons in verse 8.
12. Unlike the fixed *erekh* scale for persons (vv. 3–7), unclean animals receive individual appraisal (*he'erikh*) by the priest. The phrase *bein tov uvein ra* ('between good and between bad') grants the priest latitude to evaluate the animal's actual condition and worth. The finality clause *ken yihyeh* ('so it shall be') makes the priestly assessment binding and non-negotiable.
13. The infinitive absolute construction *ga'ol yig'alenuh* ('redeeming he shall redeem it') conveys determined intent — the owner truly wants to reclaim the animal. The twenty-percent surcharge (*chamishito*, 'its fifth') is a recurring redemption penalty throughout this chapter (vv. 13, 15, 19, 27, 31). It functions as both a deterrent against impulsive vows and compensation for removing an item from sacred inventory.
14. The verb *yaqddish* ('consecrates, makes holy') marks the voluntary transfer of a house (*bayit*) into sacred status. Like unclean animals (v. 12), houses receive individual appraisal rather than a fixed-rate valuation. The final verb *yaqum* ('it shall stand, be established') — distinct from *yihyeh* in v. 12 — emphasizes legal permanence: the priest's ruling is a standing decree.
15. The participle *hammaqdish* ('the one consecrating') identifies the original dedicator as the only party with redemption rights. The phrase *chamishith keseph-erke'kha* ('a fifth of the silver of your assessed value') specifies that the surcharge is calculated on the monetary appraisal, not on some other basis. The clause *vehayah lo* ('and it shall be his') confirms full restoration of ownership upon payment.
16. The phrase *sedeh achuzzato* ('field of his inherited possession') distinguishes ancestral land — received as part of the original tribal allotment — from purchased property (treated in vv. 22–24). Land valuation is based on *zar'o* ('its seed'), meaning the quantity of seed needed to sow it, a practical measure of productive area. A homer (*chomer*) of barley seed — roughly 220 liters or 6.5 bushels — defines the standard unit, with fifty shekels as the full Jubilee-cycle valuation.
17. The phrase *mishnat hayyovel* ('from the year of Jubilee') establishes the baseline: consecration at the start of a Jubilee cycle means the full fifty-shekel-per-homer rate applies because the maximum number of productive years remains. The *yovel* ('Jubilee,' from the ram's horn that announced it) was the fifty-year cycle of land restoration described in Leviticus 25.
18. The verb *chishav* ('calculate, reckon') indicates a prorated computation — not a subjective appraisal but arithmetic based on remaining years. The verb *nigra* ('it shall be subtracted, reduced') derives from *gara* ('to diminish'), showing that the fifty-shekel base rate depreciates annually as the next Jubilee approaches. This depreciation model recognizes that fewer remaining harvests means less productive value in the consecrated land.
19. The infinitive absolute *ga'ol yig'al* ('redeeming he redeems') again conveys emphatic intention, as in v. 13. The verb *veqam* ('and it shall be established, confirmed') uses *qum* in its legal sense of ratifying a transaction — once the full price plus surcharge is paid, the field's return to the original owner is legally binding. The twenty-percent premium parallels every other redemption scenario in this chapter.
20. Two forfeiture conditions end the right of redemption (*ge'ullah*): failing to exercise the buyback option, or selling the field to someone else (*le'ish acher*, 'to another man'). The phrase *lo yigga'el od* ('it shall not be redeemed again') is absolute — the opportunity is permanently lost. The sale to a third party while the field is under consecration constitutes a breach that voids all future claims.
21. The phrase *betze'to vayyovel* ('when it goes out in the Jubilee') uses the same 'going out' language applied to slaves released in the sabbatical year. The comparison *kisedeh hacherem* ('like a field of the cherem') equates the unredeemed field with property placed under the most extreme form of dedication — total, irreversible consecration. Rather than returning to the original family as normal Jubilee land would, the field passes permanently to the priestly holdings (*achuzzato*, 'its possession').

22. The distinction between *sedeh miqnato* ('field of his purchase') and *sedeh achuzzato* ('field of his ancestral holding') is legally critical. Purchased land reverts to its original owner at the Jubilee regardless (Lev. 25:25–28), so the dedicator's claim on it is inherently temporary. This affects both the valuation calculation and the ultimate disposition of the field.
23. The word *mikhsat* ('proportional amount, quota') — from *kasas* ('to compute, calculate') — specifies that the valuation is prorated to the remaining years until the Jubilee. Unlike hereditary land, payment is required *bayyom hahu* ('on that day') with no option for delayed fulfillment. The immediate payment underscores that the dedicator's temporary ownership of purchased land demands prompt settlement.
24. The verb *yashuv* ('it shall return') governs the Jubilee land principle: purchased fields always go back to the ancestral owner (*la'asher lo achuzzat ha'aretz*, 'to the one to whom the land-holding belongs'). This verse clarifies that consecrating purchased land does not override the Jubilee return — the priests do not keep it permanently as they would unredeemed ancestral land (v. 21). The Jubilee system protects the original tribal allocation above all secondary transactions.
25. This parenthetical standardization clause anchors all monetary transactions in the chapter to the *sheqel haqqodesh* ('sanctuary shekel'). The *gerah* was the smallest unit of weight in Israel's system — one-twentieth of a shekel, approximately 0.57 grams of silver. By defining the shekel as twenty *gerahs*, the text prevents fraud through use of lighter commercial weights, a concern reflected in prophetic denunciations (Amos 8:5; Micah 6:11).
26. The particle *akh* ('however, but') introduces an exception to the voluntary dedication system. The verb *yevukkar* ('is firstborn-ed,' a passive of *bakhar* in its specialized 'firstborn' sense) refers to the automatic consecration of firstborn animals established in Exodus 13:2, 12. Since the *bekhor* already belongs to the LORD by prior claim, dedicating it by *neder* would be giving what one does not own — a logical impossibility that the law explicitly prevents.
27. This verse addresses firstborn unclean animals (like donkeys) — already belonging to the LORD but unusable as sacrifices. The verb *padah* ('ransom, redeem by payment') differs from *ga'al* ('redeem by kinship right') used elsewhere in the chapter; *padah* emphasizes the transactional buyback of something under divine claim. The two outcomes — redemption with surcharge or sale at assessed value — parallel the treatment of dedicated unclean animals in vv. 11–13, but here the animal's firstborn status is what triggers the obligation.
28. The *cherem* ('ban, irrevocable dedication') represents the most extreme category of consecration in Israelite law, surpassing ordinary dedication (*heqdes*). The triple scope — *me'adam uvehemah umisedeh achuzzato* ('from persons and animals and from the field of his holding') — covers every category of property. The designation *qodesh-qodashim* ('most holy, holy of holies') places *cherem* items in the highest tier of sanctity, the same classification given to sin offerings and grain offerings (Lev. 6:17, 25). Unlike ordinary dedications, *cherem* permits no redemption and no sale.
29. This verse addresses the most severe application of *cherem*: when applied to human beings. The phrase *yocharam min-ha'adam* ('devoted from among humans') with the emphatic *moth yumath* ('dying he shall die') indicates capital consequences. The context likely refers to judicial *cherem* — persons placed under the ban for grave offenses (as in Exodus 22:19; Deuteronomy 13:16) — rather than arbitrary human sacrifice, which is condemned throughout the Torah. The verb *yippadeh* (niph'al of *padah*, 'be ransomed') means no monetary payment can substitute for the sentence.
30. The *ma'aser* ('tithe, tenth part') shifts from voluntary vows to obligatory contributions. The scope covers *mizera ha'aretz* ('from the seed of the land,' meaning field crops) and *miperi ha'etz* ('from the fruit of the tree,' meaning orchards and vineyards). The declaration *laYHVH hu* ('it is the LORD's') establishes divine ownership as inherent — the tithe is not a gift to God but a recognition that the tenth already belongs to Him.
31. The infinitive absolute *ga'ol yig'al* ('redeeming he redeems') allows for tithed produce to be repurchased — perhaps when the farmer needed specific grain for planting or consumption. The same twenty-percent surcharge (*chamishito*, 'its fifth') applies here as in all redemption transactions in this chapter. The provision implies that the tithe of agricultural produce could be converted to monetary payment, a concept expanded in Deuteronomy 14:24–25 for those living far from the sanctuary.
32. The phrase *ya'avur tachat hashevet* ('passes under the rod/staff') describes the tithing method: animals were driven single-file through a narrow passage while the herder counted them with a staff, marking every tenth animal. The *shevet* ('rod, staff') functioned as both a counting tool and a marker. This concrete procedure — rather than selection by quality — ensured randomness and prevented owners from keeping the best animals for themselves.
33. The verb *yevaquer* ('examine, investigate, sort') — from *baqar* ('to inspect') — prohibits the owner from cherry-picking which animal becomes the tenth. Combined with the anti-substitution rule (*lo yemirennu*, 'he shall not exchange it'), the law closes every loophole for keeping superior animals. The penalty clause mirrors v. 10: both animals become *qodesh* ('holy'). The final phrase *lo yigga'el* ('it shall not be redeemed') adds a prohibition absent from v. 10 — livestock tithes, unlike produce tithes (v. 31), cannot be bought back at all.
34. This colophon (closing subscription) seals the entire book of Leviticus, not merely chapter 27. The phrase *behar Sinai* ('at Mount Sinai') frames all of Leviticus as Sinaitic legislation, linking back to the opening of the book (Lev. 1:1). The word *mitzvot* ('commandments') encompasses the full range of Levitical law — sacrificial procedures, purity regulations, the Holiness Code, and the vow-valuation system just concluded. This verse parallels the subscriptions at Leviticus 7:38 and 26:46, creating a layered editorial structure.

Numbers

1

Summary: *God commands Moses to conduct a military census of all Israelite men aged twenty and above, organized by tribe and ancestral household. Twelve tribal leaders are named to assist, and the count totals 603,550 — with Levi excluded by divine order.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The book's Hebrew title Bemidbar ('in the wilderness') comes from the opening verse, while its English title 'Numbers' derives from the census itself. The census idiom se'u et rosh ('lift the head') dignifies each person counted — this is not mere bureaucracy but a recognition that every individual matters in the national registry. The verb paqad ('to muster, register') carries the dual sense of administrative accounting and divine oversight.*

Translation Friction: *The term elef poses a persistent translation question: does it mean 'thousand' or 'military unit/clan'? We rendered it as the numeral, following the plain sense of the Hebrew arithmetic, but the scholarly debate affects how one reads the total of 603,550. The phrase legulgolotam ('by their skulls') we rendered 'individually,' since the literal image of head-by-head counting serves clarity better as an idiom than as anatomy.*

Connections: *The census total of 603,550 matches Exodus 38:26, linking the population count to the tabernacle tax. Nahshon of Judah (v. 7) appears in Ruth 4:20-22 and Matthew 1:4 as an ancestor of David and Jesus. The Levite exemption (vv. 47-53) sets up Numbers 3, where Levi is counted separately as firstborn substitutes (cf. Exodus 13:2).*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses in the Sinai wilderness, inside the tent of meeting, on the first day of the second month during the second year following their departure from Egypt: ²Count the entire assembly of the Israelites by their clans and ancestral households, recording every male individually by name. ³Register every man twenty years old or older who is fit for military service in Israel. You and Aaron are to organize them by their divisions. ⁴One man from each tribe will assist you — each of them a leader of his ancestral household. ⁵These are the men designated to serve with you: from Reuben, Elizur son of Shedeur. ⁶From Simeon, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai. ⁷From Judah, Nahshon son of Amminadab. ⁸From Issachar, Nethanel son of Zuar. ⁹From Zebulun, Eliab son of Helon. ¹⁰From the descendants of Joseph — from Ephraim, Elishama son of Ammihud; from Manasseh, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur. ¹¹From Benjamin, Abidan son of Gideoni. ¹²From Dan, Ahiezer son

of Ammishaddai. ¹³From Asher, Pagiel son of Ocran. ¹⁴From Gad, Eliasaph son of Deuel. ¹⁵From Naphtali, Ahira son of Enan. ¹⁶These men were the ones summoned from the assembly — tribal leaders of their ancestral lines, commanders over the divisions of Israel. ¹⁷Moses and Aaron summoned these men who had been designated by name, ¹⁸and on the first day of the second month, they assembled the entire community. The people registered their lineage by clan and ancestral household, with every male twenty years old or older recorded individually by name. ¹⁹In obedience to the LORD's command, Moses registered them in the Sinai wilderness. ²⁰The descendants of Reuben, Israel's firstborn, were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded individually by name. ²¹The registered total for the tribe of Reuben: 46,500. ²²The descendants of Simeon were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded individually by name. ²³The registered total for the tribe of Simeon: 59,300. ²⁴The descendants of Gad were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ²⁵The registered total for the tribe of Gad: 45,650. ²⁶The descendants of Judah were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ²⁷The registered total for the tribe of Judah: 74,600. ²⁸The descendants of Issachar were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ²⁹The registered total for the tribe of Issachar: 54,400. ³⁰The descendants of Zebulun were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ³¹The registered total for the tribe of Zebulun: 57,400. ³²Among the descendants of Joseph: the descendants of Ephraim were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ³³The registered total for the tribe of Ephraim: 40,500. ³⁴The descendants of Manasseh were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ³⁵The registered total for the tribe of Manasseh: 32,200. ³⁶The descendants of Benjamin were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ³⁷The registered total for the tribe of Benjamin: 35,400. ³⁸The descendants of Dan were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ³⁹The registered total for the tribe of Dan: 62,700. ⁴⁰The descendants of Asher were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ⁴¹The registered total for the tribe of Asher: 41,500. ⁴²The descendants of Naphtali were registered by their clans and ancestral households. Every male twenty years old or older who was fit for military service was recorded by name. ⁴³The registered total for the tribe of Naphtali: 53,400. ⁴⁴These were the men registered by Moses and Aaron along with the twelve leaders of Israel, each representing his own ancestral household. ⁴⁵The combined total of all Israelites registered by ancestral household — every man twenty years old or older who was fit for military service — ⁴⁶came to 603,550. ⁴⁷The Levites, however, were not registered among them according to their ancestral tribe. ⁴⁸The LORD had instructed Moses: ⁴⁹Do not register the tribe of Levi or include them in the census of the Israelites. ⁵⁰Instead, assign the Levites responsibility for the tabernacle of the testimony — all its furnishings and everything connected to it. They will carry the tabernacle and all its equipment, perform its service, and set up camp around it. ⁵¹Whenever the camp moves, the Levites are to disassemble the tabernacle; whenever the camp stops, the Levites are to erect it. Any unauthorized person who approaches it must be put to death. ⁵²The Israelites are to camp in their assigned positions, each man with his own division, each under his own tribal banner. ⁵³The Levites are to camp surrounding the tabernacle of the testimony so that no divine wrath falls on the Israelite community. The Levites will maintain the guard over the tabernacle of the testimony. ⁵⁴The Israelites carried out everything exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The setting is precisely located in time and space. Midbar Sinai ('wilderness of Sinai') and Ohel Mo'ed ('tent of meeting') establish both geography and sacred context. The date formula — first day, second month, second year — places this exactly one month after the tabernacle's erection (Exodus 40:17). The book's Hebrew title Bemidbar ('in the wilderness') is drawn from this opening verse.

2. The command *se'u et rosh* ('lift the head') literally means 'raise the head' — an idiom for taking a census or official tally. The counting proceeds through three social layers: *edah* ('assembly/congregation'), *mishpachot* ('clans/families'), and *beit avot* ('ancestral households'). The phrase *legulgolotam* ('by their skulls/heads') specifies individual head-counting, emphasizing that each person matters in the national registry.
3. The age threshold of twenty years (*miben esrim shanah*) defines military eligibility. The phrase *yotse tsava* ('going out to the army') denotes active combat capability. The verb *tifqedu* ('you shall muster/register') shares its root with *paqad*, which carries the dual sense of official accounting and divine oversight — the same root underlies the book's English title 'Numbers.'
4. The tribal representatives are described as *rosh leveit avotav* ('head of his ancestral house'), indicating these are recognized clan patriarchs, not arbitrary assistants. The term *matteh* ('tribe,' literally 'staff/rod') refers to the tribal administrative unit. The distributive *ish ish* ('man by man,' i.e., one from each) emphasizes uniform representation.
5. Elizur (*Elitsur*, 'my God is a rock') son of *Shedeur* (*Shedei'ur*, 'Shaddai is light/fire') represents Reuben, Jacob's firstborn. Both names are theophoric — embedding divine titles *El* ('God') and *Shaddai* ('Almighty'). The verb *ya'amdu* ('shall stand') means to take up an official post alongside Moses and Aaron.
6. Shelumiel (*Shelumi'el*, 'my peace is God' or 'God is my well-being') son of *Zurishaddai* ('my rock is Shaddai'). Simeon, Jacob's second son through Leah, would suffer the most dramatic population decline by the second census in Numbers 26, dropping from 59,300 to 22,200.
7. Nahshon (*Nachshon*, possibly from *nachash*, 'serpent') son of *Ammiadab* ('my kinsman is generous'). Nahshon is a direct ancestor of David (Ruth 4:20-22) and appears in the genealogy of Jesus (Matthew 1:4). Judah's leader is the most genealogically significant figure in this list.
8. Nethanel (*Netan'el*, 'God has given') son of *Zuar* (*Tsu'ar*, 'small' or 'insignificant'). Issachar, Jacob's ninth son through Leah, would settle in the fertile Jezreel Valley. The name Nethanel is rendered with the 'h' reflecting the Hebrew *het* rather than the KJV's doubled 'e' spelling.
9. Eliab (*Eli'av*, 'my God is father') son of *Helon* (*Chelon*, possibly 'strong' or 'window'). Zebulun, Leah's sixth son, is consistently paired with Issachar in tribal lists. Jacob's blessing associated Zebulun with maritime commerce (Genesis 49:13).
10. Joseph's inheritance splits between his two sons, maintaining twelve tribal slots after Levi's exclusion from the military census. Elishama ('my God has heard') and Gamaliel ('God is my reward') both carry theophoric names. Pedahzur ('the Rock has redeemed') combines divine imagery with redemption language. Ephraim is listed before Manasseh despite being the younger, reflecting Jacob's crossed-hand blessing (Genesis 48:14-20).
11. Abidan (*Avidan*, 'my father is judge') son of *Gideoni* (*Gid'oni*, 'my cutter/warrior'). Benjamin ('son of the right hand'), Rachel's second son and Jacob's youngest, held a special status as the only son born in the promised land (Genesis 35:16-18).
12. Ahiezer (*Achi'ezer*, 'my brother is help') son of *Ammishaddai* ('my kinsman is Shaddai'). Dan was the son of *Bilhah*, Rachel's servant. Despite his concubine-born status, Dan's tribe would become the second-largest in this census (62,700), demonstrating that tribal growth was unrelated to maternal standing.
13. Pagiel (*Pag'i'el*, 'encounter of God' or 'prayer to God') son of *Ocran* (*Okhran*, 'troubler'). Asher ('happy/blessed'), son of *Zilpah* (Leah's servant), was promised agricultural abundance: 'his food will be rich, and he will provide royal delicacies' (Genesis 49:20).
14. Eliasaph (*Elyasaf*, 'my God has added') son of *Deuel* (*De'u'el*, 'knowledge of God'). In Numbers 2:14, this same father's name appears as *Reuel* — the *dalet/resh* interchange is a well-documented scribal variation in Hebrew manuscripts, as the two letters look nearly identical in many scripts.
15. Ahira (*Achira*, 'my brother is a friend' or 'my brother is evil' — the meaning is debated) son of *Enan* (*Einan*, 'having eyes/springs'). Naphtali ('my wrestling'), son of *Bilhah*, closes the tribal leader list. These twelve leaders will reappear in Numbers 7 presenting dedication offerings at the altar.
16. Three titles describe these men: *qeru'ei ha'edah* ('the called/summoned ones of the assembly'), *nesi'ei mattot avotam* ('chiefs of their ancestral tribes'), and *rashei alfei Yisra'el* ('heads of the thousands of Israel'). The *qere/ketiv* variant here (written *qri'ei*, read *qeru'ei*) reflects an ancient textual tradition. The term *alfei* can mean 'thousands' or 'military units/clans,' a distinction relevant to the census numbers debate.
17. The verb *vayyiqqach* ('and he took') here means 'selected' or 'summoned' rather than physically carrying. The phrase *niqqevu beshemot* ('designated by names') uses the root *n-q-b* ('to pierce, to specify') — they were expressly identified for this role, not volunteers. A Sephardic/Ashkenazic textual note records the spelling variant *beshemot/beshemot*.
18. The verb *vayyityaledu* ('they declared their birth-descent') is a reflexive form from the root *yalad* ('to give birth'), meaning each person formally established his genealogical line. This systematic genealogical registration structured the census around bloodline verification, not merely a headcount. The assembly on the exact date given in verse 1 shows immediate obedience.
19. The formulaic *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh* ('as the LORD commanded Moses') appears frequently in Numbers, affirming that the census proceeds under divine authority rather than royal initiative. The verb *vayyifqedom* ('and he mustered them') fulfills the command from verse 3. The section marker (*samekh*) signals a transition to the tribe-by-tribe results.
20. Reuben is identified as *bekhor Yisra'el* ('firstborn of Israel'), preserving his birth-order status despite having lost the firstborn's double portion to Joseph's sons (1 Chronicles 5:1-2). The census formula repeated for each tribe follows a standard pattern, emphasizing systematic and impartial counting across all twelve.
21. Reuben's count of 46,500 places this tribe in the middle range. The Hebrew expresses numbers in a distinctive reversed order: *shishah ve'arba'im elef vachamesh me'ot* ('six and forty thousand and five hundred'). The paragraph marker (*pe*) after each tribal total creates a visual separation in the

scroll.

22. Simeon's census verse integrates the count result (pequdav, 'his registered ones') into the introductory formula, a slight structural variation from Reuben's entry. This tribe would suffer the most dramatic decline by the second census in Numbers 26 — from 59,300 to 22,200 — likely connected to the plague following the Baal Peor incident (Numbers 25).
23. Simeon's 59,300 (tish'ah vachamishim elef ushelosh me'ot) makes it the third-largest tribe at this census. The dramatic contrast with its later count of 22,200 — a loss of nearly two-thirds — makes Simeon's trajectory one of the most striking demographic stories in Numbers.
24. Gad, Jacob's seventh son through Zilpah (Leah's servant), is listed here between Simeon and Judah — a placement that differs from birth-order listings, reflecting the organizational scheme of the Numbers census rather than genealogical sequence. Gad would later request land east of the Jordan (Numbers 32).
25. Gad's 45,650 (chamishah ve'arba'im elef veshesh me'ot vachamishim) is the only tribal total ending in fifty rather than a round hundred. This unique numerical detail has generated scholarly discussion about whether the census figures are precise counts or rounded administrative estimates.
26. Judah (Yehudah), Jacob's fourth son through Leah, would emerge as the dominant tribe. The name derives from the root y-d-h ('to praise/thank'), connected to Leah's declaration at his birth: 'This time I will praise the LORD' (Genesis 29:35). Judah's primacy in the camp arrangement (Numbers 2:3) and in the offering sequence (Numbers 7:12) reflects its leading role.
27. Judah's 74,600 (arba'ah veshiv'im elef veshesh me'ot) is the largest tribal count in the census, foreshadowing Judah's preeminence in camp position, marching order, and eventual royal dynasty. The KJV 'threescore and fourteen' translates the Hebrew number pattern; modern rendering uses the equivalent numeral.
28. Issachar (Yissakhar) has a debated etymology — possibly 'man of wages' (ish sakhar) or 'he brings reward.' The tribe is consistently paired with Zebulun in census and camp-arrangement lists. Later tradition credits Issachar's descendants with expertise in discerning times and seasons (1 Chronicles 12:32).
29. Issachar's 54,400 (arba'ah vachamishim elef ve'arba me'ot) places the tribe in the upper-middle range. Together with Judah (74,600) and Zebulun (57,400), the eastern camp division totals 186,400 — the largest of the four divisions.
30. Zebulun (Zevulun, from zaval, 'to honor/exalt'), Leah's sixth and final son, closes the Leah-tribe sequence in this census section. Jacob's blessing associated Zebulun with the seacoast (Genesis 49:13), though its actual tribal territory was inland in lower Galilee.
31. Zebulun's 57,400 (shiv'ah vachamishim elef ve'arba me'ot) slightly exceeds its partner Issachar. The Judah-Issachar-Zebulun grouping at 186,400 constitutes the largest of the four camp divisions, which is why it leads the marching order in Numbers 2:9.
32. The double introduction — livnei Yosef livnei Efrayim ('of the sons of Joseph, of the sons of Ephraim') — distinguishes the two Joseph tribes while acknowledging their shared ancestry. Ephraim, though Jacob's younger grandson, was elevated over firstborn Manasseh through Jacob's intentional crossed-hand blessing (Genesis 48:14-20), explaining why Ephraim consistently precedes Manasseh.
33. Ephraim's 40,500 (arba'im elef vachamesh me'ot) is the second-smallest tribal count. Despite modest numbers here, Ephraim would become the dominant northern tribe — so prominent that the prophets often use 'Ephraim' as a synonym for the entire northern kingdom of Israel (e.g., Hosea 5:3).
34. Manasseh (Menasheh, 'causing to forget,' from Genesis 41:51 where Joseph says 'God has made me forget all my hardship') is Joseph's firstborn but listed second to Ephraim. This tribe would experience the largest proportional growth of any tribe by the second census — increasing from 32,200 to 52,700.
35. Manasseh's 32,200 (shenayim usheloshim elef umatayyim) is the smallest tribal count in this census, yet the tribe's dramatic later growth and its unique division into eastern and western territories (Joshua 13:29-31, 17:1-13) would make it geographically the largest tribe in the promised land.
36. Benjamin (Binyamin, 'son of the right hand'), Rachel's second son and Jacob's youngest, is grouped with Ephraim and Manasseh in the western camp division (Numbers 2:18-24). This reflects their shared maternal lineage through Rachel, showing that the camp arrangement follows kinship patterns as well as military organization.
37. Benjamin's 35,400 (chamishah usheloshim elef ve'arba me'ot) is a relatively small count, though the tribe would gain a reputation for exceptional martial prowess — particularly its ambidextrous warriors and left-handed slingers who could hit a target without missing (Judges 20:16, 1 Chronicles 12:2).
38. Dan ('he judged'), son of Bilhah (Rachel's servant), begins the final group of tribes. Despite being born to a concubine, Dan's tribe is the second-largest in this census, demonstrating that tribal growth in Israel was not determined by the mother's social status.
39. Dan's 62,700 (shenayim veshishim elef usheva me'ot) is the second-largest tribal count, exceeded only by Judah. This is remarkable given that Genesis 46:23 lists Dan as having only a single son (Hushim), suggesting extraordinary population growth. The KJV 'threescore' renders the Hebrew pattern for sixty (shishim).
40. Asher ('happy/blessed'), son of Zilpah (Leah's servant), is grouped with Dan and Naphtali in the northern camp division (Numbers 2:25-31). Jacob's deathbed blessing promised Asher rich food and royal delicacies (Genesis 49:20), and Moses' blessing confirmed that Asher would be 'most blessed of sons' (Deuteronomy 33:24).

41. Asher's 41,500 (echad ve'arba'im elef vachamesh me'ot) places this tribe in the middle range. Asher would be one of the few tribes to grow at the second census, increasing to 53,400 — a significant gain that may reflect the prosperity associated with its fertile coastal territory.
42. Naphtali ('my wrestling'), son of Bilhah, closes the twelve-tribe enumeration. The Masoretic text here reads benei Naftali (without the preposition le-), a minor variation from the standard formula livnei used for most other tribes. Naphtali's future territory would include the fertile region around the Sea of Galilee.
43. Naphtali's 53,400 (sheloshah vachamishim elef ve'arba me'ot) completes the twelve-tribe count. Combined with Dan (62,700) and Asher (41,500), the northern camp division totals 157,600 and marches last in the procession order — the rearguard of the nation.
44. The summary identifies the census-takers — Moses and Aaron — and their twelve assistants (nesi'ei Yisra'el, 'leaders of Israel'). The phrase ish echad leveit avotav hayu ('each one was for his ancestral house') confirms that each leader represented his specific tribal lineage, ensuring the census had tribal accountability.
45. This transitional verse sets up the grand total, restating the census criteria: registration by ancestral household (leveit avotam), the age threshold of twenty years (miben esrim shanah), and military fitness (kol yotse tsava — 'everyone going out to the army'). The phrase anticipates the climactic number in the next verse.
46. The grand total of 603,550 (shesh me'ot elef ushloshet alafim vachamesh me'ot vachamishim) matches the census figure recorded in Exodus 38:26. This internal consistency across two separate books has been noted by commentators. Whether these figures represent literal individual counts or military units — reading elef as 'clan/unit' rather than 'thousand' — remains one of the most discussed questions in Numbers scholarship.
47. The Levites' exclusion from the military census is stated as a completed fact: lo hotpaqdu betokham ('they were not mustered among them'). The phrase lematteh avotam ('according to their ancestral tribe') clarifies that it is specifically from the tribal military census that they are exempt, not from all counting — the Levites receive their own separate census in Numbers 3.
48. This verse introduces the divine rationale for the Levite exemption noted in verse 47. The standard speech formula vayedabber YHWH el Mosheh le'mor ('and the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') here functions as a flashback — the KJV's 'had spoken' captures the pluperfect sense implied by the narrative context.
49. Two parallel prohibitions reinforce the Levite exclusion: lo tifqod ('do not muster') and lo tissa et rosham ('do not lift their head' — do not count them). The verb tissa uses the same 'lifting the head' idiom from verse 2, now explicitly negated for Levi. The emphatic particle akh ('only, however') marks this as a special exception to the general census command.
50. The Levites receive three distinct duties: carrying the mishkan ha'edut ('tabernacle of the testimony'), ministering to it (yeshartuhu, from the root sh-r-t denoting priestly/ministerial service rather than menial labor), and encamping around it as a protective ring (saviv lammishkan yachanu). The tabernacle is called 'of the testimony' (ha'edut) because it houses the ark containing the covenant tablets.
51. The verb yoridu ('they shall bring down/disassemble') and yaqimu ('they shall raise up/erect') establish the Levites as sole handlers of the tabernacle during travel. The term hazzar haqqarev ('the outsider who approaches') refers not to a foreigner but to any non-Levite Israelite who encroaches on Levitical duties. The death penalty (yumat — a passive, 'shall be put to death') for unauthorized approach reflects the dangerous holiness radiating from the tabernacle.
52. The terms machaneh ('camp/encampment') and degel ('banner/standard') introduce the organizational structure detailed in chapter 2. Each tribe has a fixed position relative to the tabernacle, organized into four three-tribe divisions. The phrase letsivaotam ('by their armies/divisions') reinforces the military character of the arrangement.
53. The Levites function as a protective buffer (yachanu saviv, 'they shall camp around') preventing qetsef ('wrath, divine fury') from striking the broader community. The concept is that unmediated contact between the holy and the common generates destructive divine energy. The phrase shamru et mishmeret ('they shall keep the charge') uses a cognate accusative — literally 'guard the guardianship' — emphasizing the gravity of their protective responsibility.
54. The closing obedience formula kekol asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ken asu ('according to all that the LORD commanded Moses, so they did') bookends the chapter with a note of complete compliance. This formula appears repeatedly throughout Numbers to mark completed sections of divine instruction. The paragraph marker (pe) signals the close of the literary unit.

2

Summary: *God prescribes the camp arrangement: twelve tribes in four three-tribe divisions, positioned at the four cardinal points around the tent of meeting. Judah leads on the east, Reuben on the south, Ephraim on the west, and Dan on the north. The marching order follows the same sequence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The camp is a theological statement rendered in geography. The tent of meeting sits at the center, the Levites form an inner ring, and the twelve tribes form the outer ring — God literally dwells in the middle of His people. The phrase minneged saviv ('facing toward, all around') means every tribe looks inward toward the divine presence. The static camp layout converts directly into a moving column: ka'asher yachanu ken yissa'u ('as they camp, so they march').*

Translation Friction: *Two terms for identifying markers overlap: degel ('banner, standard') designates the tribal flag, while otot ('signs, emblems') marks the household insignia. We retained both rather than collapsing them, since the Hebrew distinguishes the two layers of identity. The directional term yammah ('seaward') for west reflects the Mediterranean orientation of Hebrew spatial language, which we rendered simply as 'west.'*

Connections: *Judah's position of honor on the east (v. 3) fulfills Jacob's blessing of preeminence in Genesis 49:8-12. The Deuel/Reuel variation for Gad's leader (v. 14 vs. 1:14) reflects a dalet/resh scribal variation common in Hebrew manuscripts. The grand total of 603,550 (v. 32) matches both Numbers 1:46 and Exodus 38:26.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron: ²Each Israelite is to camp under his own tribal banner, identified by the emblem of his ancestral household. They are to camp facing the tent of meeting, at a distance around it. ³Camping on the east, toward the sunrise, will be the banner of the camp of Judah, arranged by divisions. The leader of the Judah tribe is Nahshon son of Amminadab. ⁴His forces and their registered count: 74,600. ⁵Camping alongside Judah will be the tribe of Issachar. The leader of the Issachar tribe is Nethanel son of Zuar. ⁶His forces and their registered count: 54,400. ⁷Then the tribe of Zebulun. The leader of the Zebulun tribe is Eliab son of Helon. ⁸His forces and their registered count: 57,400. ⁹The combined total for the camp of Judah, across all their divisions: 186,400. They will break camp first. ¹⁰On the south side will be the banner of the camp of Reuben, arranged by divisions. The leader of the Reuben tribe is Elizur son of Shedeur. ¹¹His forces and their registered count: 46,500. ¹²Camping alongside Reuben will be the tribe of Simeon. The leader of the Simeon tribe is Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai. ¹³His forces and their registered count: 59,300. ¹⁴Then the tribe of Gad. The leader of the Gad tribe is Eliasaph son of Reuel. ¹⁵His forces and their registered count: 45,650. ¹⁶The combined total for the camp of Reuben, across all their divisions: 151,450. They will break camp second. ¹⁷Then the tent of meeting will move out with the Levite camp in the middle of the formation. Just as they camp, so they will march — each man in his assigned position under his banner. ¹⁸On the west side will be the banner of the camp of Ephraim, arranged by divisions. The leader of the Ephraim tribe is Elishama son of Ammihud. ¹⁹His forces and their registered count: 40,500. ²⁰Camping alongside Ephraim will be the tribe of Manasseh. The leader of the Manasseh tribe is Gamaliel son of Pedahzur. ²¹His forces and their registered count: 32,200. ²²Then the tribe of Benjamin. The leader of the Benjamin tribe is Abidan son of Gideon. ²³His forces and their registered count: 35,400. ²⁴The combined total for the camp of Ephraim, across all their divisions: 108,100. They will break camp third. ²⁵On the north side will be the banner of the camp of Dan, arranged by divisions. The leader of the Dan tribe is Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai. ²⁶His forces and their registered count: 62,700. ²⁷Camping alongside Dan will be the tribe of Asher. The leader of the Asher tribe is Pagiel son of Ocran. ²⁸His forces and their registered count: 41,500. ²⁹Then the tribe of Naphtali. The leader of the Naphtali tribe is Ahira son of Enan. ³⁰His forces and their registered count: 53,400. ³¹The combined total for the camp of Dan, across all their divisions: 157,600. They will break camp last, marching under their banners. ³²These are the Israelites registered by ancestral household. The grand total of all the camps across every division: 603,550. ³³The Levites were not registered among the other Israelites, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³⁴The Israelites did everything the LORD had commanded Moses. They camped under their banners in this arrangement, and they marched in this order — each man with his own clan, identified by his ancestral household.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter's instructions are addressed jointly to Moses and Aaron (el Mosheh ve'el Aharon), unlike the census command in chapter 1 which was directed to Moses alone. Aaron's inclusion reflects the priestly dimension of the camp arrangement — the tabernacle's positioning at the center is a priestly concern as well as a military one.
2. Two terms for identifying markers appear: *degel* ('banner/standard' — the tribal flag) and *otot* ('signs/emblems' — the household insignia). The phrase *minneged* ('opposite, facing toward') means the camps face inward toward the tent of meeting, placing God's dwelling at the visual and spatial center. The specification *saviv* ('around') creates a concentric layout: tabernacle at center, Levites as inner ring, twelve tribes as outer ring.
3. The east (*qedmah mizrachah* — literally 'forward, toward the sunrise') is the position of honor, facing the tabernacle entrance which also faced east. Judah's placement here — leading the entire camp — reflects its preeminence. The word *nasi* ('leader, prince, chief') designates the tribal military commander, the same Nahshon identified in 1:7.
4. The term *tseva'o* ('his army/host') refers to Nahshon's military contingent. The count of 74,600 matches the Judah total from 1:27, confirming data consistency between the census chapter and the camp arrangement chapter. Judah's division is the largest single tribal unit.
5. The phrase *hachonim alav* ('those camping beside him') indicates Issachar's subordinate position relative to Judah within the eastern division. Each three-tribe grouping has a lead tribe (here Judah) with two flanking tribes. Nethanel ('God has given') son of Zuar is the same leader from 1:8.
6. Issachar's 54,400 matches the figure from 1:29. The slightly different Hebrew form *pequdav* ('his registered ones' — singular possessive) versus *pequdeihem* ('their registered ones' — plural) in verse 4 reflects minor stylistic variation within the formulaic structure.
7. Zebulun completes the eastern triad. The abbreviated introduction — lacking the 'camping beside him' formula — suggests Zebulun occupies the third and final position in this division. Eliab ('my God is father') son of Helon is the same figure from 1:9. Zebulun and Issachar are traditionally paired as Leah's youngest sons.
8. Zebulun's 57,400 matches 1:31. The three tribes on the east — Judah, Issachar, Zebulun — are all Leah's sons, reflecting a kinship-based organizational principle underlying the camp arrangement.
9. The eastern division total of 186,400 (74,600 + 54,400 + 57,400) is the largest of the four camp groupings, which is why it leads the marching order: *ri'shonah yissa'u* ('first they shall set out'). The term *machaneh Yehudah* ('camp of Judah') designates the entire three-tribe eastern division by its leading tribe. The section marker (*samekh*) separates the four divisions.
10. The south (*teimanah*, from the root meaning 'right hand' when facing east) receives the second position. Reuben, though Israel's firstborn, does not lead the camp — Judah holds that honor. This arrangement reflects the transfer of preeminence from Reuben to Judah already noted in Genesis 49 and 1 Chronicles 5:1-2.
11. Reuben's 46,500 matches 1:21. As the lead tribe of the southern division, Reuben commands a mid-sized contingent — notably smaller than Judah's eastern division, reinforcing the secondary status of Reuben despite his firstborn birthright.
12. Simeon and Reuben were born consecutively to Leah (Genesis 29:32-33), and both were rebuked by Jacob in his deathbed pronouncements (Genesis 49:3-7). Their placement together in the southern camp reflects their shared maternal bond and parallel trajectories within the tribal narrative.
13. Simeon's 59,300 matches 1:23. Although Simeon's individual count exceeds Reuben's, Reuben holds the lead position in the division as the firstborn son. Simeon's large count here contrasts starkly with its dramatic decline to 22,200 by the second census (Numbers 26:14).
14. Gad completes the southern division. The father's name appears here as *Re'u'el* ('friend of God') rather than *De'u'el* as in 1:14. The *dalet/resh* alternation is one of the most common scribal variations in Hebrew manuscripts since the letters are nearly identical in form. Both names are theophoric.
15. Gad's 45,650 matches 1:25, including the distinctive fifty-ending that makes it the only non-round-hundred total in the census. Gad, son of Zilpah, is grouped here with Leah's sons Reuben and Simeon — reflecting the status of Zilpah as Leah's servant.
16. The southern division total of 151,450 (46,500 + 59,300 + 45,650) is the second-largest grouping. The marching order — *usheniyyim yissa'u* ('second they shall set out') — places Reuben's camp behind Judah's. The four-division marching sequence (east, south, Levites with tabernacle, west, north) creates a protected formation with the tabernacle at its core.
17. The tent of meeting (*Ohel Mo'ed*) travels at the center of the marching column (*betokh hamachanot* — 'in the midst of the camps'), between the second and third divisions. The principle *ka'asher yachanu ken yissa'u* ('as they camp, so they march') means the spatial arrangement during encampment is preserved during travel — the static camp layout converts directly into a moving procession. The phrase *ish al yado* ('each man at his station,' literally 'each man at his hand') denotes fixed, assigned positions.
18. The west (*yammah*, literally 'seaward' — toward the Mediterranean) is the third cardinal position. Ephraim leads the western division, which groups the three Rachel-descended tribes: Ephraim, Manasseh (Joseph's sons), and Benjamin (Rachel's son). The kinship principle governing the camp arrangement is clearest in this division.
19. Ephraim's 40,500 matches 1:33. As the lead tribe of the western division, Ephraim commands a relatively small contingent — yet its position as division leader over the larger Manasseh reflects Jacob's deliberate elevation of the younger grandson (Genesis 48:19-20).

20. Manasseh, Joseph's firstborn, camps in a subordinate position to younger brother Ephraim. Gamaliel ('God is my reward') son of Pedahzur ('the Rock has redeemed') — both theophoric names — is the same leader from 1:10. The western camp is the only division where all three tribes descend from a single matriarch (Rachel).
21. Manasseh's 32,200 matches 1:35 — the smallest individual tribal count in the entire census. This makes the western division the weakest numerically, yet its central position in the marching order (third of four, behind the tabernacle) means it is protected by the divisions ahead and behind.
22. Benjamin completes the Rachel-tribe western division. Abidan ('my father is judge') son of Gideoni is the same leader from 1:11. Benjamin's placement with Ephraim and Manasseh rather than next to Judah is significant — the later historical split between the northern kingdom (led by Ephraim) and the southern kingdom (Judah) would draw Benjamin into Judah's orbit despite this earlier kinship grouping.
23. Benjamin's 35,400 matches 1:37. This tribe, though relatively small, would produce Israel's first king (Saul, 1 Samuel 9:1-2) and later remain loyal to the Davidic dynasty when the northern tribes seceded (1 Kings 12:21).
24. The western division total of 108,100 (40,500 + 32,200 + 35,400) is the smallest of the four divisions. Their position — ushelishim yissa'u ('third they shall set out') — places them immediately behind the Levites and the tabernacle, meaning they march directly after the sacred center. The section marker (samekh) separates this from the final division.
25. The north (tsafonah, from a root meaning 'hidden' or 'treasured') receives the fourth and final position. Dan leads the northern division, which groups the three concubine-born tribes: Dan and Naphtali (sons of Bilhah) and Asher (son of Zilpah). This division serves as the rearguard during the march.
26. Dan's 62,700 matches 1:39 — the second-largest tribal count overall. Dan's substantial numbers make it an effective rearguard leader, responsible for protecting the column from behind during the march through the wilderness.
27. Asher (son of Zilpah, Leah's servant) is placed with Dan and Naphtali (sons of Bilhah, Rachel's servant) rather than with the other Zilpah-born tribe Gad. This arrangement groups concubine-born tribes together while distributing Zilpah's sons between the southern and northern divisions.
28. Asher's 41,500 matches 1:41. Positioned between the larger Dan (62,700) and Naphtali (53,400), Asher's mid-range count contributes to a well-balanced rearguard division.
29. Naphtali closes both the northern division and the complete camp arrangement. Ahira son of Enan is the same leader from 1:15. Naphtali and Dan are full brothers (both sons of Bilhah), making this the only division with two tribes sharing the same mother.
30. Naphtali's 53,400 matches 1:43. This completes the fourth and final division's census data. The northern division will march last in the column — la'acharonah ('hindmost,' v. 31) — serving as the rearguard protecting the entire nation.
31. The northern division total of 157,600 (62,700 + 41,500 + 53,400) is the second-largest, making it an effective rearguard. The phrase la'acharonah yis'u ledigleihem ('last they shall march, by their standards') assigns the critical rearguard position — protecting against attack from behind — to the strongest remaining division. The paragraph marker (pe) signals the transition to the chapter's concluding summary.
32. The grand total of 603,550 matches both the chapter 1 census total (1:46) and the Exodus 38:26 figure. The consistency across three separate tabulations — census, camp arrangement, and tabernacle tax — demonstrates the internal coherence of the Torah's numerical records. The four-division totals (186,400 + 151,450 + 108,100 + 157,600) add precisely to 603,550.
33. The Levite exemption is restated (lo hotpaqdu betokh benei Yisra'el — 'they were not mustered among the Israelites'), now with the explanatory clause ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ('as the LORD commanded Moses'). This connects back to the divine instruction in 1:48-49 and emphasizes that the Levites' separate status is not an oversight but an explicit divine directive.
34. The closing obedience formula confirms complete compliance with both camping and marching orders: ken chanu ledigleihem vekhen nasa'u ('so they camped by their standards and so they marched'). The final phrase — ish lemishpechotav al beit avotav ('each man by his clan, according to his ancestral house') — grounds the vast military organization in family identity. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the literary unit. The camp arrangement described here — a cruciform pattern with the tabernacle at center, four three-tribe divisions at the cardinal points — would define Israel's spatial identity throughout the wilderness period.

3

Summary: *The Levites are counted separately from the military census — every male from one month old — and assigned as substitutes for Israel's firstborn. The three Levitical clans (Gershon, Kohath, Merari) receive specific camping positions around the tabernacle and distinct duties. A surplus of 273 firstborn beyond the Levite count requires monetary redemption.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The firstborn substitution theology is the theological engine of this chapter. God claims every firstborn based on the tenth plague (v. 13): by sparing Israel's firstborn, He acquired them. The entire tribe of Levi replaces them collectively. The emphatic doubling *netunim netunim* ('given, given') in verse 9 stresses the totality of this transfer. The one-month census threshold — dramatically lower than the twenty-year military age — reflects a different purpose: these are counted not as soldiers but as sacred substitutes.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *mille yadam* ('filled their hands') in verse 3 is the standard Hebrew idiom for priestly ordination, referring to the literal placing of sacrificial portions into the new priest's hands. We retained the image rather than abstracting it to 'ordained,' since the bodily action is the point. The term *zar* ('stranger') in verse 10 does not mean foreigner but anyone outside the Aaronic priestly line, including other Levites.*

Connections: *The *toledot* ('family record') formula in verse 1 echoes the structural markers throughout Genesis (Genesis 2:4, 5:1, etc.). Nadab and Abihu's death by *esh zarah* ('unauthorized fire,' v. 4) refers back to Leviticus 10:1-2. The firstborn claim traces to Exodus 13:2, and the redemption price of five shekels per surplus firstborn (v. 47) will reappear in Numbers 18:16.*

¹This is the family record of Aaron and Moses, from the time the LORD spoke with Moses at Mount Sinai. ²These are the names of Aaron's sons: Nadab the firstborn, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. ³These are the names of Aaron's sons, the anointed priests, whose hands were filled to serve in the priesthood. ⁴Nadab and Abihu died in the presence of the LORD when they presented unauthorized fire before the LORD in the Sinai wilderness. They had no sons, so Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests during their father Aaron's lifetime. ⁵The LORD spoke to Moses: ⁶Bring the tribe of Levi forward and station them before Aaron the priest so they can serve him. ⁷They will carry out his duties and the responsibilities of the entire community at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting, performing the work of the Tabernacle. ⁸They will maintain all the equipment of the Tent of Meeting and fulfill the obligations of the Israelites by performing the work of the Tabernacle. ⁹You are to assign the Levites to Aaron and his sons. They are entirely given over to him from among the Israelites. ¹⁰You are to appoint Aaron and his sons; they will guard their priesthood. Any unauthorized person who approaches will be put to death. ¹¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹²I have now taken the Levites from among the Israelites as a substitute for every firstborn who opens the womb among the Israelites. The Levites belong to me. ¹³Because every firstborn belongs to me. On the day I struck down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, I consecrated to myself every firstborn in Israel — both human and animal. They are mine. I am the LORD. ¹⁴The LORD spoke to Moses in the Sinai wilderness: ¹⁵Count the descendants of Levi by their ancestral households and clans. Count every male from one month old and above. ¹⁶Moses counted them according to the LORD's word, exactly as he had been commanded. ¹⁷These were Levi's sons by name: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. ¹⁸These are the names of Gershon's sons by their clans: Libni and Shimei. ¹⁹The sons of Kohath by their clans: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ²⁰The sons of Merari by their clans: Mahli and Mushi. These are the Levitical clans organized by ancestral households. ²¹From Gershon came the clan of the Libnites and the clan of the Shimites. These are the Gershonite clans. ²²Their registered count, tallying every male from one month old and above, came to 7,500. ²³The Gershonite clans are to set up camp behind the Tabernacle, on the west side. ²⁴The leader of the Gershonite ancestral house was Eliasaph son of Lael. ²⁵The responsibility of the Gershonites at the Tent of Meeting included the Tabernacle structure itself, the outer tent, its covering, and the screen for the entrance of the Tent of Meeting, ²⁶along with the courtyard hangings, the screen for the courtyard entrance surrounding the Tabernacle and the altar, and the ropes — everything related to their maintenance. ²⁷Fro

m Kohath came the clan of the Amramites, the clan of the Izharites, the clan of the Hebronites, and the clan of the Uzzielites. These are the Kohathite clans. ²⁸Counting every male from one month old and above, there were 8,600 — the guardians of the holy sanctuary. ²⁹The Kohathite clans are to set up camp on the south side of the Tabernacle. ³⁰The leader of the ancestral house for the Kohathite clans was Elizaphan son of Uzziel. ³¹Their responsibility included the ark, the table, the lampstand, the altars, the sacred vessels used in worship, the inner curtain, and all related maintenance. ³²The chief over all the Levitical leaders was Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, who had oversight of those guarding the sanctuary. ³³From Merari came the clan of the Mahlites and the clan of the Mushites. These are the Merarite clans. ³⁴Their registered count of every male from one month old and above was 6,200. ³⁵The leader of the Merarite ancestral house was Zuriel son of Abihail. They are to set up camp on the north side of the Tabernacle. ³⁶The assigned responsibility of the Merarites included the Tabernacle's frames, crossbars, posts, bases, all its equipment, and everything related to its upkeep, ³⁷along with the courtyard posts on every side, their bases, their tent pegs, and their ropes. ³⁸Those camping in front of the Tabernacle on the east side — facing the entrance of the Tent of Meeting toward the sunrise — were Moses, Aaron, and his sons. They guarded the sanctuary on behalf of the Israelites. Any unauthorized person who approached would be put to death. ³⁹The total count of all the Levites whom Moses and Aaron registered at the LORD's command, by their clans — every male from one month old and above — was 22,000. ⁴⁰The LORD said to Moses: Count every firstborn male among the Israelites from one month old and above, and compile a roster of their names. ⁴¹You are to take the Levites for me — I am the LORD — as a substitute for every firstborn among the Israelites, and the Levites' livestock as a substitute for every firstborn among the Israelites' livestock. ⁴²Moses counted all the firstborn among the Israelites, exactly as the LORD had commanded him. ⁴³The total of all firstborn males, counted by name from one month old and above, was 22,273. ⁴⁴The LORD spoke to Moses: ⁴⁵Take the Levites as a substitute for all the firstborn among the Israelites, and the Levites' livestock as a substitute for their livestock. The Levites belong to me. I am the LORD. ⁴⁶As for redeeming the 273 firstborn Israelites who exceed the number of Levites: ⁴⁷You are to collect five shekels per person, measured by the sanctuary standard — the shekel being twenty gerahs. ⁴⁸You are to give the silver to Aaron and his sons as the redemption payment for the surplus firstborns. ⁴⁹Moses collected the redemption silver from those who exceeded the number redeemed by the Levites. ⁵⁰From the firstborn of the Israelites he collected the silver: 1,365 shekels by the sanctuary standard. ⁵¹Moses gave the redemption silver to Aaron and his sons, in accordance with the LORD's word, exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word toledot ('family record, genealogy') introduces a lineage list, as it does throughout Genesis and elsewhere. Aaron is named before Moses because the priestly line — not prophetic authority — is the subject of this chapter. The phrase beyom dibber ('on the day He spoke') establishes a temporal anchor tying this genealogy to the Sinai revelation.
2. The bekhor ('firstborn') designation for Nadab is significant because his death (v 4) creates a vacancy in priestly succession. All four sons are listed despite only two surviving, preserving the complete genealogical record.
3. The idiom mille yadam ('filled their hands') is the standard Hebrew expression for priestly ordination — literally the placing of sacrificial portions into the new priest's hands during the consecration ceremony (Exod 29:24). The meshukhim ('anointed ones') confirms their formal installation through the oil-anointing rite.
4. The esh zarah ('strange fire, unauthorized fire') refers to the incident in Leviticus 10:1-2 where Nadab and Abihu offered incense not commanded by God. The phrase al-penei Aharon aviheh ('in the presence of Aaron their father' — literally 'upon the face of') indicates they served while Aaron still lived, rather than succeeding him after death. The notice that they had no banim ('sons, children') explains why their priestly line ended.
5. The formulaic vayedabber YHWH el-Mosheh lemor ('and the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') marks a new divine speech unit. This formula occurs over 60 times in Numbers, structuring the book as a series of direct divine commands.
6. The verb haqrev ('bring near, present') is the same root as qorban ('offering'), suggesting the Levites are being presented as a kind of offering. The verb he'emaḏta ('station, cause to stand') implies formal positioning for duty. Their role is defined as sherethu oto ('serving him') — the Levites assist the priests, not replace them.
7. The root sh-m-r appears twice — mishmarto ('his charge') and mishmeret ('the charge of') — emphasizing careful guardianship. The Levites serve a dual function: assisting the priest personally and representing the congregation's obligations. The phrase ohel mo'ed ('Tent of Meeting') designates the place where God meets with Israel.

8. The *kelei ohel mo'ed* ('equipment/vessels of the Tent of Meeting') refers to the physical objects used in worship. The Levites' guardianship (*mishmeret*) of the Israelites' obligations means they serve as intermediaries — carrying out worship duties on behalf of the non-priestly tribes.
9. The emphatic doubling *netunim netunim* ('given, given' — wholly given, completely handed over) uses a Hebrew intensification device: repeating the passive participle to stress totality. The Levites belong to the priests not by personal choice but by divine assignment from the community of Israel.
10. The *zar* ('stranger, outsider') here does not mean a foreigner but anyone not of the Aaronic priestly line — including other Levites. The death penalty (*yumat* — 'he shall be put to death') for encroaching on priestly functions underscores the holiness boundary separating the priesthood from all others. The verb *tifqod* ('appoint, install') is related to *pequddah* ('appointed office').
11. This second speech formula introduces the theological rationale for the Levites' role — the firstborn substitution principle (vv 12-13). The repeated formula separates this foundational declaration from the practical instructions in vv 5-10.
12. The emphatic *va'ani hinneh* ('and I — look!') stresses God's personal initiative. The phrase *takhat kol-bekhor peter rekhem* ('in place of every firstborn who opens the womb') explains the substitution theology: originally every firstborn male belonged to God (Exod 13:2), but the entire tribe of Levi now replaces them collectively. *Peter rekhem* ('opener of the womb') is the technical term for the first child to emerge.
13. The claim *li kol-bekhor* ('to me belongs every firstborn') reaches back to the tenth plague (Exod 12:29). By sparing Israel's firstborn, God acquired a claim over them. The verb *hiqdashti* ('I consecrated, I set apart as holy') marks them as belonging to the sacred sphere. The closing declaration *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') seals the claim with divine authority — a signature formula appearing throughout Leviticus and Numbers.
14. This third speech formula adds the geographical marker *bemidbar Sinai* ('in the wilderness of Sinai'), anchoring the census command to a specific location. The Levite census that follows (vv 15-39) differs from the general census in chapter 1 in both age threshold and purpose.
15. The Levite census threshold of *ben-khodesh* ('one month old') is dramatically lower than the twenty-year military census age in chapter 1. This reflects their non-military purpose: they are counted not as soldiers but as substitutes for firstborns, who were claimed from birth. The phrase *leveit avotam le mishpekhota* ('by their fathers' households, by their clans') establishes the two-tier organizational structure.
16. The phrase *al-pi YHWH* ('according to the mouth of the LORD' — by the LORD's word) emphasizes that this census was not Moses' initiative but a direct divine order. The passive *tsuva* ('he was commanded') reinforces Moses' obedient role as executor of God's instructions.
17. The three sons of Levi — Gershon, Qehat, and Merari — establish the three major Levitical divisions. This genealogy matches Genesis 46:11 and Exodus 6:16. Each clan receives a distinct set of responsibilities and camping positions in the verses that follow.
18. Gershon's two sub-clans — *Livni* and *Shim'i* — form the Gershonite division. The name *Livni* may derive from *lavan* ('white'), and *Shim'i* from *shama* ('to hear'). Each sub-clan became a distinct *mishpakhah* ('clan, family') within the larger Gershonite branch.
19. Kohath has four sub-clans — the largest number of any Levitical branch. Amram is the ancestor of Moses and Aaron (Exod 6:20), making the Kohathites the priestly clan. The four names reflect the Kohathites' prominent role: they are assigned guardianship of the most sacred objects (v 31).
20. Merari's two sub-clans — *Makhli* and *Mushi* — complete the Levitical structure: $2 + 4 + 2 = 8$ sub-clans total. The summary statement *elleh hem mishpekhota haLevi* ('these are the clans of Levi') closes the genealogical listing before the detailed census and duty assignments begin.
21. The text shifts from listing Gershon's sons (v 18) to naming the clans formed from them. The gentilics *haLivni* ('the Libnite') and *haShim'i* ('the Shimite') show the transformation from individual ancestors to established clan identities — a standard pattern in Israelite social organization.
22. The Gershonites' total of *shiv'at alafim vakhamesh me'ot* (7,500) makes them the middle-sized Levitical clan. The repeated *pequdei hem* ('their counted ones') uses a census-specific term from the root *p-q-d* ('to attend to, to muster, to count').
23. The camp position *akharei hamishkan* ('behind the Tabernacle') combined with *yamah* ('westward') places the Gershonites on the rear side. Since the Tabernacle entrance faced east, 'behind' means west. Each Levitical clan occupies one side, forming a protective inner ring between the Tabernacle and the twelve tribes camped further out.
24. The *nesi beit-av* ('leader of the father's house') designates the clan chief. *Elyasaf ben-La'el* bears a name meaning 'God has added, son of belonging to God.' This *Eliasaph* is distinct from the *Eliasaph* son of *Deuel* who led *Gad's* tribe (Num 1:14).
25. The Gershonites' assignment covers the fabric elements: the *mishkan* ('Tabernacle' — the inner curtain layer), the *ohel* ('tent' — the goat-hair layer over it), the *mikhsehu* ('its covering' — the upper protective layers), and the *masakh* ('screen, curtain') at the entrance. These are the soft, textile components as opposed to the solid structural pieces assigned to Merari.
26. The *qal'ei hekhatser* ('hangings of the courtyard') were the linen curtains forming the outer enclosure. The *meitarav* ('its ropes, cords') held the hangings taut between the pillars. The summary phrase *lekhola avodato* ('for all its service/maintenance') indicates the Gershonites handled all upkeep of these textile and rope elements.
27. The Kohathites' four sub-clans are listed with gentilic forms: *ha'Amrami*, *haYitshari*, *haKhevroni*, and *ha'Uzzi'eli*. The Amramites included Moses and Aaron's direct descendants but their priestly status was distinct from other Amramites. The Kohathites' four clans made them the most internally diverse Levitical division.
28. The Kohathites' count of *shemonat alafim veshesh me'ot* (8,600) makes them the largest Levitical clan. Their designation as *shomerei mishmeret haQodesh* ('guardians of the charge of the holy place') reflects their assignment to the most sacred objects — the ark, table, lampstand, and altars (v 31).

29. The phrase *al yerekh hamishkan teimanah* ('on the flank of the Tabernacle southward') uses *yerekh* ('thigh, side, flank') — a term for the lateral edge of a structure. The southern position places the Kohathites closest to Moses and Aaron, who camped on the east (v 38), reflecting their kinship connection to the priestly family.
30. *Elitsafan ben-Uzzi'el* ('God has protected, son of Uzziel') belongs to the youngest of Kohath's four sub-clans. His appointment over the Kohathites despite being from the junior branch may reflect the same divine pattern of choosing the younger over the elder seen throughout Genesis.
31. The Kohathites guard the most sacred objects: the *aron* ('ark'), *shulkhan* ('table' — of showbread), *menorah* ('lampstand'), *mizbakhot* ('altars' — plural, both incense and burnt offering), and *kelei haQodesh* ('sacred vessels'). The *masakh* ('screen, curtain') here likely refers to the *parokhet* separating the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place, distinct from the entrance curtain assigned to the Gershonites.
32. The title *nesi nesi'ei haLevi* ('leader of the leaders of the Levites') makes Eleazar the supreme Levitical administrator — a 'chief of chiefs.' His role as *pequddat shomerei mishmeret haQodesh* ('the appointed overseer of the sanctuary guardians') placed priestly authority over all Levitical service, maintaining the hierarchy of priest above Levite.
33. Merari's two sub-clans — *Makhli* and *Mushi* — parallel Gershon's two sub-clans. The name *Makhli* may derive from *makhalah* ('sickness') or *makhhol* ('dance'), and *Mushi* possibly from *mush* ('to depart'). Like the Gershonites, the Merarites are organized into exactly two clan units.
34. The Merarites' total of *sheshet alafim umata'im* (6,200) makes them the smallest Levitical clan. The combined Levite total (7,500 + 8,600 + 6,200 = 22,300) slightly exceeds the 22,000 given in verse 39 — a discrepancy that ancient commentators attributed to the 300 Levite firstborns who could not substitute for Israelite firstborns since they themselves required redemption.
35. *Tsuri'el ben-Avika'il* ('my rock is God, son of father of might') leads the Merarites. Their northern camping position (*tsafonah* — 'northward') completes the Levitical ring: Gershonites west, Kohathites south, Merarites north, with Moses and Aaron on the east (v 38). The north side was considered the most vulnerable in ancient Near Eastern military thinking.
36. The Merarites handle the heavy structural components: *qarshei hamishkan* ('frames of the Tabernacle' — the acacia-wood boards), *berikhav* ('its crossbars' — the horizontal stabilizers), *ammudav* ('its posts, pillars'), and *adanav* ('its bases, sockets' — the silver foundation pieces). These are the rigid, heavy elements complementing the Gershonites' textile assignments.
37. The courtyard components — *ammudei hekhatser* ('pillars of the courtyard'), *adneihem* ('their bases'), *yetedotam* ('their pegs, stakes'), and *meitareihem* ('their cords, guy-ropes') — represent the outer perimeter framework. The Merarites thus handle all the rigid structural elements from innermost Tabernacle to outermost courtyard fence.
38. The eastern position (*qedmah, mizrahah* — both meaning 'eastward') is the most prestigious: it faces the Tabernacle entrance and is occupied by Moses and Aaron's family rather than a Levitical clan. The double designation emphasizes this prime location. The warning about the *zar* ('unauthorized person') is repeated from verse 10, framing the entire Levitical camp arrangement with this boundary marker.
39. The grand total of *shena'im ve'esrim alef* (22,000) is the operative number used for the firstborn exchange in vv 40-51. The Hebrew text has extraordinary punctuation marks (dots) above the letters of Aaron's name — the *nequdot*, which ancient scribes used to signal textual uncertainty. Some traditions read this as indicating Aaron did not participate in the count, since Levites counted their own tribe and Aaron belonged to it.
40. The command to count Israelite firstborns initiates the exchange process. The phrase *se'a et mispar shemotam* ('lift up the number of their names' — compile a roster) uses the same language as the tribal census in Numbers 1:2, establishing a formal registration. The one-month threshold matches the Levite census, making the two counts directly comparable.
41. The substitution extends to animals: *behemat haLevi'im takhat kol-bekhor bebehemat benei Yisra'el* ('the livestock of the Levites in place of every firstborn among the livestock of the Israelites'). This parallels the human exchange and shows the comprehensiveness of the substitution principle — both persons and property that belonged to God are transferred. The parenthetical *ani YHWH* ('I am the LORD') asserts divine authority over this transaction.
42. The narrative formula *ka'asher tsivah YHWH oto* ('just as the LORD commanded him') certifies Moses' compliance. This obedience statement appears frequently in Numbers and Exodus, confirming that the census was executed precisely according to divine instruction rather than human initiative.
43. The firstborn total of *shena'im ve'esrim elef sheloshah veshiv'im umata'im* (22,273) exceeds the Levite total of 22,000 by exactly 273. This surplus creates the mathematical problem resolved in vv 46-51: 273 firstborns have no Levite substitute and must be redeemed with silver instead. The precise number demonstrates the administrative rigor of the census.
44. This speech formula introduces the redemption procedure for the 273 surplus firstborns (vv 45-51). It marks the final divine instruction in the chapter, shifting from census to financial resolution.
45. This verse recapitulates the substitution command from verse 41, confirming the exchange before introducing the exception for the surplus 273. The concluding *vehayu-li haLevi'im ani YHWH* ('the Levites shall be mine — I am the LORD') reasserts divine ownership using the covenant signature formula.
46. The *peduyei* ('redeemed ones') introduces the concept of *pidyon* — monetary redemption as a substitute when a living substitute is unavailable. The *ha'odefim al-haLevi'im* ('those exceeding beyond the Levites') identifies the 273 surplus firstborns who have no corresponding Levite to replace them and must therefore be redeemed through payment.

47. The redemption price of khameshet khameshet sheqalim lagulgolet ('five five shekels per head') uses a distributive doubling: five shekels each. This amount (approximately 57 grams of silver per person) becomes the standard pidyon haben ('redemption of the firstborn son') amount still practiced in Judaism. The sheqel haQodesh ('sanctuary shekel') was a standardized weight kept at the sanctuary, and the gerah (1/20 shekel, about 0.57 grams) specifies the exact calibration.
48. The kesef ('silver, money') goes to Aaron and his sons — not to the Levites — because the priests represent God's direct claim on the firstborn. The peduyei ha'odefim ('redeemed ones of the surplus') confirms that monetary payment satisfies the divine claim only for those who have no living Levite substitute.
49. The kesef hapidyom ('silver of the redemption') is a technical financial term. Moses acts as the intermediary, collecting from the 273 surplus families. The text does not specify how the 273 were selected from among the 22,273 firstborns — rabbinic tradition suggests a lottery was used.
50. The total of khamishah veshishim ushelosh me'ot va'elef (1,365) shekels confirms the arithmetic: 273 persons × 5 shekels = 1,365 shekels. This precise accounting (approximately 15.6 kilograms of silver) demonstrates the meticulous financial record-keeping expected in sacred transactions. The besheqel haQodesh ('by the sanctuary shekel') repeats the calibration standard.
51. The chapter closes with the fulfillment formula ka'asher tsivah YHWH et-Mosheh ('just as the LORD commanded Moses'), confirming complete compliance. The kesef haPeduyim ('silver of the redeemed ones') was transferred al-pi YHWH ('according to the mouth of the LORD' — by divine instruction) to the priestly family, completing the firstborn-Levite exchange process.

4

Summary: *A service census counts Levite men aged thirty to fifty for active tabernacle duty. Each Levitical clan receives specific transport assignments: Kohathites carry the most sacred objects (ark, table, lampstand, altars), Gershonites carry the fabric coverings and curtains, and Merarites carry the heavy structural frames, posts, and bases.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wrapping protocols for sacred objects are a theology of holiness in material form. Each item receives distinct layered coverings — the ark alone has its outermost layer of tekhelet ('blue-violet'), making it visually unique during transport. The Kohathites may carry but never see or touch the sacred objects: kevalla ('even for an instant') in verse 20 makes a momentary glance lethal. Aaron and his sons must cover everything first — the priests' covering work is literally a life-saving act for the Levites.*

Translation Friction: *The term or takhash (rendered 'takhash hide') remains one of the most debated words in the Hebrew Bible. Proposals include dugong, dolphin, fine leather, and goatskin. We transliterated rather than guessed, since the Hebrew itself is opaque. The word tsava ('host, army') applied to tabernacle service (v. 3) borrows military language for sacred labor — we rendered it 'workforce' to preserve the organizational connotation without the combat implication.*

Connections: *The service age of thirty (v. 3) contrasts with the one-month threshold in chapter 3 and the twenty-five-year starting age in Numbers 8:24. The parokhet ('screening curtain,' v. 5) that wraps the ark is the same veil described in Exodus 26:31-33. Eleazar oversees the Kohathites' sacred materials (v. 16) while Ithamar oversees the Gershonites and Merarites (vv. 28, 33), establishing a hierarchy reflected in later priestly succession.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron: ²Take a census of the Kohathites from among the Levites, by their clans and ancestral households, ³from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who enters the workforce to perform tasks in the Tent of Meeting. ⁴This is the assigned duty of the Kohathites in the Tent of Meeting: the most sacred objects. ⁵When the camp is about to move out, Aaron and his sons must enter and take down the screening curtain and cover the Ark of the Testimony with it. ⁶Then they must place over it a covering of takhash hide, spread a cloth entirely of blue-violet over the top, and insert the carrying poles. ⁷On the Table of the Presence they must spread a blue-violet cloth and place on it the plates, ladles, bowls, and pitchers for the drink offerings. The perpetual bread must remain on it. ⁸Then they must spread a scarlet cloth over these items, cover it with a takhash-hide covering, and insert the carrying poles. ⁹They must take a blue-violet cloth and cover the lampstand used for lighting, along with its lamps, its wick trimmers, its fire pans, and all the oil vessels used in its maintenance. ¹⁰They must place it and all its equipment inside a takhash-hide covering and set it on a carrying frame. ¹¹Over the golden altar they must spread a blue-violet cloth, cover it with a takhash-hide covering, and insert its carrying poles. ¹²Th

ey must take all the service vessels used for ministering in the sanctuary, place them in a blue-violet cloth, cover them with a takhash-hide covering, and set them on a carrying frame. ¹³They must clear the ashes from the altar and spread a purple cloth over it. ¹⁴They must place on it all the equipment used in its service — the fire pans, meat forks, shovels, and sprinkling bowls — all the altar's implements. Then they must spread a takhash-hide covering over it and insert its carrying poles. ¹⁵When Aaron and his sons have finished covering the sacred objects and all the sanctuary's equipment — as the camp prepares to move out — only then may the Kohathites come to carry them. But they must not touch the sacred objects, or they will die. These are the transport loads assigned to the Kohathites in the Tent of Meeting. ¹⁶Eleazar son of Aaron the priest is personally responsible for the lighting oil, the aromatic incense, the daily grain offering, and the anointing oil — and has overall charge of the entire Tabernacle with everything in it, including the sanctuary and its equipment. ¹⁷The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron: ¹⁸Do not allow the Kohathite tribal clans to be cut off from among the Levites. ¹⁹This is what you must do for them so that they live and do not die when they approach the most sacred objects: Aaron and his sons must go in and assign each man to his specific task and transport load. ²⁰They must not go in to look, even for a moment, at the sacred objects, or they will die. ²¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²²Take a census of the Gershonites as well, by their ancestral households and clans. ²³Count them from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who enters the workforce to perform service in the Tent of Meeting. ²⁴This is the assigned duty of the Gershonite clans — both their service tasks and their transport loads: ²⁵They must carry the curtain panels of the Tabernacle, the Tent of Meeting with its covering, the takhash-hide covering that goes over it on top, and the screen for the entrance of the Tent of Meeting, ²⁶along with the courtyard hangings, the screen for the courtyard gate entrance surrounding the Tabernacle and the altar, their ropes, all their service equipment, and everything involved in their upkeep — they must handle all of this. ²⁷All the work of the Gershonites — every transport load and every task — must be directed by Aaron and his sons. You must assign them specific responsibility for each of their loads. ²⁸This is the assigned duty of the Gershonite clans at the Tent of Meeting. Their oversight falls under the authority of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. ²⁹As for the Merarites — count them by their clans and ancestral households. ³⁰Count them from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who enters the workforce to perform the work of the Tent of Meeting. ³¹This is their assigned transport load covering all their service at the Tent of Meeting: the Tabernacle's frames, its crossbars, its posts, and its bases, ³²along with the courtyard posts on every side with their bases, tent pegs, and ropes — all the associated equipment and everything involved in their maintenance. You must assign the equipment by name to each individual for transport. ³³This is the assigned duty of the Merarite clans — all their service at the Tent of Meeting — under the authority of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. ³⁴Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of the community counted the Kohathites by their clans and ancestral households. ³⁵from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who entered the workforce for service at the Tent of Meeting. ³⁶Their registered count by clans was 2,750. ³⁷These were the registered members of the Kohathite clans — all who served at the Tent of Meeting — whom Moses and Aaron counted at the LORD's command through Moses. ³⁸The registered Gershonites, by their clans and ancestral households, ³⁹from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who entered the workforce for service at the Tent of Meeting — ⁴⁰their registered count by clans and ancestral households was 2,630. ⁴¹These were the registered members of the Gershonite clans — all who served at the Tent of Meeting — whom Moses and Aaron counted at the LORD's command. ⁴²The registered members of the Merarite clans, by their clans and ancestral households, ⁴³from age thirty up to age fifty — everyone who entered the workforce for service at the Tent of Meeting — ⁴⁴their registered count by clans was 3,200. ⁴⁵These were the registered members of the Merarite clans, whom Moses and Aaron counted at the LORD's command through Moses. ⁴⁶The total of all the Levites whom Moses, Aaron, and the leaders of Israel counted by their clans and ancestral households — ⁴⁷from age thirty up to age fifty, everyone who came to perform service tasks and transport duties at the Tent of Meeting — ⁴⁸their total count was 8,580. ⁴⁹At the LORD's command they were registered through Moses — each man assigned to his specific task and transport load. They were counted exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter opens with the dual address el-Mosheh ve'el-Aharon ('to Moses and to Aaron'), involving both prophet and high priest in these instructions. Aaron's inclusion is significant because the Kohathite duties described here directly intersect with his priestly responsibilities — he must personally cover the sacred objects before the Kohathites may approach them.
2. The phrase naso et-rosh ('lift up the head' — take a census) is the same idiom used in Numbers 1:2 for the general tribal census. The Kohathites are singled out first among the three Levitical clans because they carry the most sacred objects — their duties require the most detailed safety protocols.
3. The service age range of ben-sheloshim shanah ('thirty years old') to ben-khamishim shanah ('fifty years old') is a twenty-year window of active duty. This contrasts with the one-month-and-up threshold in chapter 3 (for counting) and the twenty-five-year-old starting age in Numbers 8:24. The term tsava ('host, army, workforce') borrows military language for sacred labor, treating Tabernacle service as a form of organized deployment.
4. The phrase Qodesh haQodashim ('the holy of holies' — the most sacred things) here refers not to the inner room of the Tabernacle but to the category of objects the Kohathites will transport. These are the items of highest sanctity: the ark, table, lampstand, altars, and their vessels. The Kohathites carry them but may never see or touch them directly.
5. The parokhet hamasakh ('the curtain of the screen' — the dividing veil) that separated the Most Holy Place from the Holy Place becomes the first wrapping layer for the ark. Only Aaron and his sons (ubha Aharon uvanav — 'Aaron and his sons shall enter') may handle the sacred objects directly. The aron ha'edut ('Ark of the Testimony') contains the stone tablets of the covenant.
6. The three-layer wrapping order for the ark is: (1) the veil, (2) or takhash ('takhash skin' — an unidentified durable hide, possibly dugong or fine leather), and (3) beged-kelil tekhelet ('a cloth entirely of blue-violet'). The tekhelet dye (extracted from the murex snail) was the most prestigious color in the ancient Near East. The ark is the only object whose outermost covering is blue, making it visually distinct during transport. The baddav ('its poles') remain permanently inserted (Exod 25:15).
7. The shulkhan haPanim ('table of the face/presence' — showbread table) is first draped in blue. Its vessels — qe'arot ('plates'), kappot ('ladles, spoons'), menaqqiyyot ('bowls, jars'), and qesot hannesekh ('pitchers for the libation') — are placed on top. The directive lekhem hatamid alav yihyeh ('the perpetual bread shall be on it') means the showbread stays on the table even during transport, maintaining the offering's continuity.
8. The table's wrapping reverses the ark's color order: blue cloth first (v 7), then beged tola'at shani ('scarlet-crimson cloth') over the vessels, then takhash hide as the outer protective layer. The tola'at shani ('scarlet-crimson cloth') — crimson dye from the kermes insect) produced a vivid red. Unlike the ark, the table's outermost layer is the protective hide, not the decorative cloth.
9. The menorat hama'or ('lampstand of the light') is distinguished from its accessories: neroteiha ('its lamps' — the oil cups), malqakheiha ('its tongs, wick-trimmers'), makhtoteiha ('its fire pans, snuff dishes'), and kelei shamnah ('its oil vessels'). Every associated tool must travel with the lampstand. The feminine pronouns throughout reflect menorah's grammatical gender in Hebrew.
10. The mot ('bar, pole, carrying frame') is distinct from the baddim ('poles') used for the ark and table. Since the lampstand had no built-in rings or poles, it required an external carrying frame. The lampstand's wrapping is simpler than the ark's: only a blue cloth and takhash hide, with no intermediate colored layer.
11. The mizbeakh hazahav ('golden altar' — the incense altar) receives two layers: blue cloth underneath and takhash hide on top. Its baddav ('carrying poles') indicate it had built-in rings like the ark and table. The incense altar stood in the Holy Place directly before the veil, making it the last object encountered before the Most Holy Place.
12. The kelei hasharet ('vessels of service, ministry implements') is a catch-all category for remaining sacred utensils not individually listed. These are wrapped in the standard two-layer system: beged tekhelet ('blue-violet cloth') inside and takhash hide outside, then placed al-hamot ('on the carrying frame') since they lack their own built-in poles.
13. The verb dishenu ('they shall remove the fat-ashes') refers to cleaning the desheneh — the fatty residue from burnt offerings on the bronze altar. This is the outdoor altar, distinct from the golden incense altar (v 11). The beged argaman ('purple cloth') is unique to this altar; no other object receives a purple covering. Purple (argaman — from a different murex species than tekhelet) was associated with royalty throughout the ancient Near East.
14. The bronze altar's tools are listed: makhtot ('fire pans, censers'), mizlagot ('forks' — for handling sacrificial meat), ya'im ('shovels' — for ashes), and mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls' — for blood manipulation). Each tool served a specific function in the sacrificial process. The takhash hide outer covering protected the entire assembly during transport.
15. This verse establishes the critical sequence: priests cover first (vekhilah Aharon uvanav lekhasot — 'when Aaron and his sons finish covering'), then Kohathites carry (yavo'u venei-Qehat laset — 'the sons of Kohath shall come to carry'). The prohibition velo-yigge'u el-haQodesh vamet'u ('they must not touch the holy things or they will die') makes the priests' covering work a life-saving act for the Kohathites. The term massa ('burden, load, transport assignment') defines their role specifically as carriers.
16. Eleazar's personal charge (pequddat) includes four consumable supplies: shemen hama'or ('oil for illumination'), qetoret hasammim ('incense of spices'), minkhat hatamid ('the perpetual grain offering'), and shemen hamishkhah ('the anointing oil'). Beyond these items, he has broader administrative oversight (pequddat kol-hamishkan — 'charge of the entire Tabernacle'). These consumables were irreplaceable sacred substances that required priestly custody.

17. This second speech formula in the chapter introduces a warning about protecting the Kohathites from fatal contact with sacred objects (vv 18-20). Again both Moses and Aaron are addressed, since the protective protocol requires coordinated action from both prophet and priest.
18. The warning *al-takhrithu* ('do not cut off, do not cause to be destroyed') uses a causative form — Moses and Aaron bear responsibility for preventing Kohathite deaths. The verb *k-r-t* ('to cut off') implies annihilation or extermination of a group. God charges the leaders with safeguarding the Kohathites through proper procedures rather than letting them perish through careless exposure to the sacred.
19. The life-or-death framing *vekhayyu velo yamuthu* ('so that they live and do not die') makes the procedural instructions an existential matter. The phrase *ish ish al-avodato ve-el-massa'o* ('each man to his service and to his load') indicates individualized assignments — no Kohathite should improvise or choose his own task. The priests' role as intermediaries between the sacred and the Levites is a protective function.
20. The phrase *kevala* ('as a swallowing' — for even an instant, in the blink of an eye) suggests the briefest possible glance. The root *b-l-l'* means 'to swallow,' and its use here indicates that even a momentary glimpse of the uncovered sacred objects would be lethal. The prohibition extends beyond touching (v 15) to seeing — visual contact with the uncovered holy things is equally fatal.
21. This speech formula shifts to Moses alone (without Aaron), introducing the Gershonite duties. Unlike the Kohathite section, the Gershonite and Merarite assignments involve less lethal risk and therefore do not require Aaron's direct involvement in the instructions.
22. The phrase *gam-hem* ('them also, they too') links the Gershonite census to the previously commanded Kohathite census (v 2). The same *naso et-rosh* ('lift up the head') idiom applies, confirming parallel census procedures across all three Levitical divisions.
23. The identical age range (thirty to fifty) and the phrase *litsboh tsava* ('to serve in the workforce' — literally 'to wage a campaign') confirm a uniform service framework across all Levitical clans. The doubled cognate construction *litsboh tsava* emphasizes the organized, military-like nature of the labor deployment.
24. The two-part description *la'avod ulemassa* ('to serve and for carrying') distinguishes between ongoing maintenance tasks (*avodah* — 'service, labor') and the specific transport responsibilities (*massa* — 'burden, load') when the camp relocates. The Gershonites had both stationary and mobile duties.
25. The Gershonite transport assignment covers the layered fabric system: *yeri'ot hamishkan* ('the curtain panels of the Tabernacle' — the inner linen curtains), the *ohel mo'ed* ('Tent of Meeting' — the goat-hair tent layer), *mikhsehu* ('its covering' — the ram-skin layer), and *mikhseh hatakhsh* ('the takhash covering' — the outermost protective layer). Each layer served a distinct structural and symbolic function.
26. The courtyard elements added to the Gershonite load include the *qal'ei hekhatser* ('courtyard hangings' — the linen curtain wall), the *masakh petakh sha'ar hekhatser* ('screen of the gate entrance of the courtyard' — the decorated gateway curtain), and *meitreihem* ('their ropes'). The closing *ve'avadu* ('and they shall serve') summarizes their comprehensive textile management role.
27. The phrase *al-pi Aharon uvanav* ('by the mouth of Aaron and his sons' — under Aaron's direction) places priestly authority over Gershonite labor. The verb *ufeqadtem* ('you shall assign, appoint') uses the same *p-q-d* root seen throughout Numbers for administrative oversight. Each load (*massa*) must be specifically assigned (*bemishmeret* — 'as a guarded charge'), preventing confusion during the complex disassembly process.
28. While Eleazar oversees the Kohathites and the most sacred materials (v 16), Ithamar (Itamar ben-Aharon) is assigned authority over the Gershonites. The phrase *beyad Itamar* ('by the hand of Ithamar') indicates direct administrative control. As the younger surviving son of Aaron, Ithamar oversees the less sacred but still essential textile and structural transport duties.
29. The Merarite census command uses *tifqod otam* ('you shall count them') rather than the *naso et-rosh* formula used for the Kohathites (v 2) and Gershonites (v 22). Despite the different verb, the census procedure is identical. The Merarites are addressed last, matching the birth order of Levi's sons: Gershon, Kohath, Merari.
30. The same thirty-to-fifty service window applies to all three Levitical clans. The phrase *la'avod et-avodat ohel mo'ed* ('to perform the work of the Tent of Meeting') uses the cognate accusative construction (work the work) common in Numbers for emphasizing the purposeful nature of the labor.
31. The Merarites' load consists entirely of heavy structural components: *qarshei hamishkan* ('frames of the Tabernacle' — the acacia-wood panels, each about 4.5 meters tall), *berikhav* ('its crossbars' — the horizontal stabilizing bars), *ammudav* ('its posts, pillars'), and *adanav* ('its bases, sockets' — the silver foundation pieces weighing about 34 kg each). This was physically the most demanding Levitical assignment.
32. The phrase *uvshemot tifqedu et-kelei mishmeret massa'am* ('by names you shall assign the equipment of their transport charge') is unique — each piece of heavy equipment must be inventoried by name and assigned to a specific person. This prevents items from being lost or abandoned during the move and ensures accountability for every structural component.
33. Like the Gershonites (v 28), the Merarites serve *beyad Itamar* ('under the hand of Ithamar'). The younger priestly son oversees both non-Kohathite divisions, while the elder Eleazar oversees the Kohathites and the sacred objects. This division mirrors the hierarchy of sacred items: most holy (Eleazar/Kohathites) versus holy but less dangerous (Ithamar/Gershonites and Merarites).
34. The census execution section (vv 34-49) reports the results. The involvement of *nesi'ei ha'edah* ('the leaders of the community' — the tribal chieftains) alongside Moses and Aaron shows the census was a collaborative administrative effort, not a solo prophetic task. The Kohathites are reported first, matching the instructional order.

35. The age criteria are repeated verbatim for each clan's census report (vv 35, 39, 43, 47) to formally certify that the same standard was applied uniformly. The phrase *la'avodah be'ohel mo'ed* ('for service in the Tent of Meeting') confirms the purpose-specific nature of this count: only active-duty personnel, not the total population counted in chapter 3.
36. The Kohathites' service-eligible total of *alpa'im sheva me'ot vakhamishim* (2,750) represents those between thirty and fifty. From the total of 8,600 males one month and older (3:28), this means roughly 32% fell within the active-duty age range — a plausible demographic proportion for an ancient population.
37. The certification formula *al-pi YHWH beyad-Mosheh* ('at the LORD's command through Moses' hand') combines two authority markers: divine origin (*al-pi* — 'by the mouth of') and human execution (*beyad* — 'by the hand of'). This double attribution legitimizes the census as both divinely mandated and properly administered.
38. The Gershonite census report begins with the same organizational framework: *lemishpehotam uleveit avotam* ('by their clans and by their ancestral households'). This verse functions as a header for the Gershonite count detailed in vv 39-41.
39. The age qualification is restated for the Gershonite report using identical language to the Kohathite census (v 35). The formulaic repetition across all three clan reports serves as a legal record, documenting that no exceptions or variations were made in the census methodology.
40. The Gershonites' service-eligible total of *alpa'im veshesh me'ot usheloshim* (2,630) is slightly fewer than the Kohathites' 2,750 despite their total population being similar. From 7,500 total males (3:22), about 35% were in the active-duty range — consistent with the Kohathite ratio.
41. The Gershonite certification formula says *al-pi YHWH* ('at the LORD's command') but omits the phrase *beyad-Mosheh* ('through Moses' hand') that appeared in the Kohathite closing (v 37). This slight variation in otherwise formulaic language is characteristic of Hebrew narrative style, which avoids exact mechanical repetition.
42. The Merarite census header follows the same pattern. The doubled *lemishpehotam* ('by their clans') after *mishpehot* ('clans of') creates a slightly redundant construction that emphasizes thorough organizational accounting at every administrative level.
43. The third repetition of the age qualification for the Merarite report completes the tripartite census structure. The consistent formula across verses 35, 39, and 43 creates a legal framework ensuring no clan could claim unequal treatment in the census process.
44. The Merarites' service-eligible total of *sheloshet alafim umata'im* (3,200) is the largest of the three clans' active-duty counts, despite having the smallest total population (6,200 in 3:34). This means approximately 52% of Merarite males were in the thirty-to-fifty range — a higher proportion that may reflect their need for physical strength to carry the heaviest structural components.
45. The Merarite closing formula restores the full *beyad-Mosheh* ('through Moses' hand') phrase that was absent from the Gershonite closing (v 41). The alternation between longer and shorter formulas — full in v 37 (Kohathites), abbreviated in v 41 (Gershonites), full again here — is a common Hebrew prose variation pattern.
46. The grand summary (vv 46-48) aggregates all three clans. The *nesi'ei Yisra'el* ('leaders of Israel' — the tribal chieftains from Num 1:5-16) are mentioned again, confirming their participation in the census. This collaborative leadership model — prophet, priest, and tribal chiefs — reflects the multi-layered governance structure of Israel in the wilderness.
47. The summary distinguishes two categories of Levitical work: *avodat avodah* ('service of service' — the ongoing maintenance and worship-support tasks) and *avodat massa* ('service of carrying' — the transport duties during camp movement). The first is stationary labor; the second is mobile. Together they encompass the full scope of Levitical responsibility.
48. The combined Levitical workforce of *shemonat alafim vakhamesh me'ot ushemonim* (8,580) equals 2,750 + 2,630 + 3,200 — the arithmetic checks perfectly. From the 22,000 total Levite males (3:39), about 39% were service-eligible — a reasonable working-age proportion. These 8,580 men were responsible for dismantling, transporting, and reassembling the entire Tabernacle complex.
49. The chapter's closing verse combines the authorization formula (*al-pi YHWH* — 'at the LORD's command'), the human agent (*beyad-Mosheh* — 'through Moses'), the individualized assignment (*ish ish al-avodato ve'al-massa'o* — 'each man to his task and his load'), and the compliance certification (*ka'asher tsivah YHWH et-Mosheh* — 'as the LORD commanded Moses'). This comprehensive closing seals the entire Levitical census and duty-assignment process as divinely ordered and faithfully executed.

5

Summary: *Three distinct laws address purity and justice within the camp: removal of those with serious skin disease, bodily discharges, or corpse contamination (vv. 1-4); restitution for wrongs committed against others, including the role of the go'el (vv. 5-10); and the sotah ordeal for resolving suspected marital unfaithfulness when no witnesses exist (vv. 11-31).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sotah ritual is one of the most unusual procedures in the Torah — a divine trial by ordeal using 'bitter water' (mei hammarim) mixed with dust from the tabernacle floor and dissolved ink from a written curse. The text deliberately presents both possibilities — the wife may be guilty or innocent — and the ritual resolves ambiguity in either direction. That a wrong against another person is simultaneously described as ma'al ('unfaithfulness') toward God (v. 6) fuses the interpersonal and the divine.*

Translation Friction: *The verb tisteh ('she strays,' v. 12) from the root s-t-h implies moral wandering rather than simple movement — we chose 'strays' to preserve the metaphorical weight. The term ruach qin'ah ('spirit of jealousy/suspicion,' v. 14) was rendered 'spirit of suspicion' because the Hebrew allows for both justified and unjustified distrust, and 'jealousy' in English carries only the negative connotation. The go'el ('kinsman-redeemer,' v. 8) resists any single English word, carrying legal, familial, and redemptive dimensions simultaneously.*

Connections: *The restitution law (vv. 5-8) parallels Leviticus 5:20-26 (6:1-7 in English Bibles). The camp purity rationale — asher ani shokhen betokham ('in the midst of which I dwell,' v. 3) — echoes Exodus 25:8. The go'el institution appears prominently in Ruth 3-4 and anticipates the cities of refuge in Numbers 35.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²Command the Israelites to send out of the camp anyone with a serious skin disease, anyone with a bodily discharge, and anyone who has become ritually contaminated through contact with a corpse. ³Send out both male and female — remove them to outside the camp — so they do not contaminate their encampments, in the middle of which I dwell. ⁴The Israelites complied, sending those individuals outside the camp. They did exactly as the LORD had told Moses. ⁵The LORD spoke to Moses: ⁶Tell the Israelites: When a man or woman commits any wrong that people commit, acting unfaithfully against the LORD, and that person incurs guilt — ⁷they must confess the wrong they have committed. The offender must make full restitution for the liability, adding a fifth of its value on top, and pay it to the person who was wronged. ⁸If the wronged person has no kinsman-redeemer to whom the restitution can be paid, the restitution payment goes to the LORD — that is, to the priest — in addition to the ram of atonement through which expiation is made on the offender's behalf. ⁹Every sacred contribution from the Israelites' holy offerings that is presented to the priest belongs to that priest. ¹⁰Each person retains ownership of his own sacred gifts until presented; but whatever someone gives to the priest becomes the priest's property. ¹¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹²Tell the Israelites: If any man's wife strays and acts unfaithfully against him, ¹³and another man has sexual relations with her, but it was concealed from her husband's awareness — she kept it hidden and became defiled, yet there is no witness against her and she was not caught in the act — ¹⁴and a spirit of suspicion comes over him so that he suspects his wife — whether she has actually been defiled, or whether a spirit of suspicion comes over him and he suspects his wife even though she has not been defiled — ¹⁵the husband must bring his wife to the priest and bring her offering on her behalf: a tenth of an ephah of barley flour. He must not pour oil on it or place frankincense on it, because it is a grain offering of suspicion — a memorial offering that brings wrongdoing to light. ¹⁶The priest will bring her forward and present her before the LORD. ¹⁷The priest will take sacred water in a clay vessel and mix into it some of the dust from the tabernacle floor. ¹⁸The priest will stand the woman before the LORD, loosen her hair, and place the memorial offering — the grain offering of suspicion — in her hands. Meanwhile the priest will hold the bitter water that carries the curse. ¹⁹The priest will place her under oath and say to the woman: 'If no man has slept with you, and if you have not strayed into defilement while under your husband's authority, may you be immune to this bitter water that carries the curse. ²⁰But if you have strayed while under your husband's authority and have become defiled — if a man other than

your husband has been intimate with you —' ²¹— then the priest will put the woman under the oath that invokes a curse, saying to her: 'May the LORD make you an example of cursing and oath-swearing among your people, when the LORD causes your body to waste away and your abdomen to distend. ²²May this water that carries the curse enter your body, causing your abdomen to distend and your reproductive organs to waste away.' And the woman must respond: 'So be it, so be it.' ²³The priest will write these curse-words on a scroll and then wash the ink off into the bitter water. ²⁴He will make the woman drink the bitter water that carries the curse. When the curse-laden water enters her, it will produce bitter effects. ²⁵The priest will then take the grain offering of suspicion from the woman's hands, elevate the offering before the LORD, and bring it to the altar. ²⁶The priest will scoop out the memorial portion from the grain offering and burn it on the altar. After that, he will have the woman drink the water. ²⁷After he has her drink the water, if she has been defiled and has acted unfaithfully against her husband, the curse-laden water will enter her and produce bitter effects — her abdomen will distend and her reproductive organs will waste away. That woman will become an object of cursing among her people. ²⁸But if the woman has not been defiled and is pure, she will be cleared of guilt and will be able to conceive children. ²⁹This is the procedure for cases of suspected unfaithfulness — when a wife strays while under her husband's authority and becomes defiled, ³⁰or when a spirit of suspicion overcomes a husband and he suspects his wife. He shall present the woman before the LORD, and the priest will carry out this entire procedure regarding her. ³¹The husband will be free of any guilt for bringing the charge, while the woman — if guilty — will bear the consequences of her wrongdoing.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard revelation formula *vayedabber YHWH el Mosheh le'mor* introduces the first of three distinct legal sections in this chapter: camp purity (vv 1-4), restitution for wrongs (vv 5-10), and the suspected adultery ordeal (vv 11-31). Each section begins with this same introductory formula.
2. Three categories of ritual impurity require removal from the camp: *tsarua* ('one afflicted with *tsara'at*' — a term covering various skin diseases broader than modern leprosy), *zav* ('one with a bodily discharge' — including both pathological and normal genital emissions per Leviticus 15), and *tame lanefesh* ('contaminated by a dead person' — literally 'impure to a soul/corpse'). These three represent escalating levels of impurity in the priestly system.
3. The expulsion applies equally to men and women (*mizzakhar ad neqevah* — 'from male to female'). The theological rationale is stated directly: *asher ani shokhen betokham* ('in the midst of which I dwell'). God's presence within the camp makes ritual purity a spatial necessity — impurity and divine holiness cannot coexist in the same space. The verb *shokhen* ('dwelling, residing') is the root of *mishkan* ('tabernacle/dwelling place').
4. The obedience formula is doubled for emphasis: *vayyaasu khi* ('they did so') at the beginning and *ken asu benei Yisra'el* ('so did the Israelites') at the end. This bracketing structure underscores complete compliance. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the camp purity section and separates it from the restitution law that follows.
5. This second revelation formula introduces the restitution law (vv 5-10), a section dealing with confession and financial compensation for wrongs committed against other people. The placement of this law between the camp purity laws and the jealousy ordeal creates a thematic progression: physical impurity, moral transgression, then suspected marital unfaithfulness.
6. The law applies equally to men and women (*ish o ishab*). The phrase *lim'ol ma'al baYHWH* ('to act unfaithfully against the LORD') is significant: a wrong against another person is simultaneously described as unfaithfulness toward God. The root *m-'l* ('to act treacherously, to breach trust') is used for both human betrayal and covenant violation. The term *ve'ashmah* ('and becomes guilty') indicates the objective state of liability, not merely subjective feeling.
7. Three steps are required: confession (*vehitvaddu* — a reflexive form meaning 'they shall confess themselves'), full restitution of the principal amount (*bero'sho* — literally 'in its head/capital'), and a twenty-percent penalty surcharge (*chamishito* — 'its fifth'). The verb *veheshiv* ('and he shall return') frames restitution as restoration — giving back what was taken. This parallels the Leviticus 5:20-26 (6:1-7 in English) guilt offering law.
8. The *go'el* ('kinsman-redeemer') is the closest male relative who acts as the family's legal representative. If the victim has died without an heir, the *go'el* receives restitution on their behalf. If no *go'el* exists at all, the payment reverts to God through His priestly representative. The *eil hakkippurim* ('ram of atonement') is an additional sacrifice beyond the financial restitution — the offender must address both the human and divine dimensions of the wrong.
9. The term *terumah* ('contribution, raised offering' — from the root *r-w-m*, 'to raise') refers to the portion separated for sacred use. This verse establishes a general priestly entitlement principle: *qodashei benei Yisra'el* ('holy things of the Israelites') presented to a priest become his personal property. This principle extends beyond the specific restitution case to all sacred contributions.
10. The first clause — *ish et qodashav lo yihyu* ('a man's holy things shall be his') — is interpreted variously: either that a person owns the holy things until transferring them, or that each person controls which priest receives his offering. The second clause confirms the transfer principle: once given to a priest, it belongs to that priest. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the restitution section.

11. This third revelation formula introduces the longest and most complex section of the chapter: the sotah ordeal (vv 11-31), a ritual procedure for resolving cases of suspected marital unfaithfulness where no witnesses exist. The rabbinic tradition calls this passage 'parashat sotah' (the section of the wayward wife). It is one of the most debated passages in biblical law.
12. The verb *tisteh* ('she strays, she turns aside') is from the root *s-t-h*, which implies deviation from a path — moral wandering rather than a simple directional word. The phrase *uma'alah vo ma'al* ('and acts treacherously against him') uses the same *m-'l* root from verse 6, creating a verbal link between financial wrong and marital betrayal. The distributive *ish ish* ('any man whatsoever') makes the law universally applicable.
13. The phrase *shakhav ishah otah shikhvat zera* ('a man lay with her, a lying of seed') is the standard biblical expression for sexual intercourse. Four conditions define the scenario: concealment from the husband (*ne'elam me'einei ishah* — 'hidden from her husband's eyes'), secrecy (*venisterah* — 'she was hidden'), possible defilement (*vehi nitma'ah* — 'she was defiled'), and absence of proof — no witness (*ed ein bah*) and no apprehension in the act (*lo nitpashah*).
14. The phrase *ruach qin'ah* ('spirit of jealousy/suspicion') describes an overwhelming feeling of distrust that may or may not be justified. The text deliberately presents both scenarios — *vehi nitma'ah* ('and she was defiled') and *vehi lo nitma'ah* ('and she was not defiled') — establishing that the ordeal applies regardless of actual guilt. The ritual resolves ambiguity in either direction, protecting both the suspicious husband's concern and the potentially innocent wife.
15. The offering is distinctive in three ways: it uses barley flour (*qemach se'orim*) rather than the usual fine wheat flour, it lacks oil, and it lacks frankincense. These absences strip the offering of any celebratory quality — it is austere and somber. Barley was the cheaper grain, associated with poverty or animal feed. The double designation *minchat qena'ot* ('offering of jealousy/suspicion') and *minchat zikkaron mazkeret avon* ('memorial offering bringing wrongdoing to remembrance') defines its investigative purpose.
16. The verb *vehiquiv* ('he shall bring near') is the standard sacrificial term for presenting an offering. The woman is brought *lipnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') — she stands in the divine presence at the tabernacle entrance, placing the entire proceeding under divine jurisdiction. The priest acts as mediator between the human dispute and divine adjudication.
17. The ritual elements are charged with symbolic meaning: *mayim qedoshim* ('holy water' — possibly water from the bronze basin or a specially consecrated source), a *keli chares* ('clay vessel' — ordinary, breakable pottery, perhaps symbolizing fragility), and *afar* ('dust') from the tabernacle floor (*qarqa hammishkan*). The tabernacle dust connects the ritual to the sacred space itself. The combination produces the 'bitter water' that will serve as the ritual's central agent.
18. The loosening of her hair (*ufara et rosh ha'ishah* — literally 'and he shall unbind the head of the woman') is a significant ritual act. Bound hair was a sign of respectability; unbound hair indicated mourning, shame, or transition into a liminal state. The woman holds the grain offering while the priest holds the *mei hammarim hame'arrim* ('the bitter waters that bring the curse'). The dual identification *minchat hazzikkaron / minchat qena'ot* ('memorial offering / suspicion offering') is repeated from verse 15.
19. The oath formula begins with the case of innocence: *im lo shakhav ish otakh* ('if no man has lain with you') and *im lo satit tum'ah tachat ishekh* ('if you have not strayed into impurity under your husband' — *tachat* meaning 'under the authority of'). The verb *hinnaqei* ('be free, be immune') is an imperative of acquittal — if innocent, the water will have no effect. The structure — innocence scenario first, then guilt scenario (v 20) — gives rhetorical precedence to the possibility of innocence.
20. The guilt scenario uses the same vocabulary inverted: *ki satit tachat ishekh* ('since you have strayed under your husband') and *vekhi nitme't* ('since you have become defiled'). The phrase *vayyitten ish bakh et shekhavto mibbal'adei ishekh* ('a man has placed his emission in you apart from your husband') is sexually explicit in the Hebrew — the directness is characteristic of legal language that must be precise about the offense being adjudicated.
21. The *shevuat ha'alalah* ('oath of the curse') is a self-imprecatory oath — the woman invokes consequences upon herself if guilty. The physical effects described — *yerekeh nofelet* ('your thigh/side falling' — wasting of the reproductive organs) and *bitnekh tsavah* ('your belly swelling/distending') — likely describe reproductive dysfunction or a miscarriage. The euphemistic term *yerekh* ('thigh') frequently refers to the reproductive area in Hebrew (cf. Genesis 24:2, 46:26). The woman becomes *le'alalah velishvu'ah* ('a byword of cursing and oath-swearing') — her name would be invoked in future curse formulas.
22. The curse water is described as entering *beme'ayikh* ('into your intestines/innards'), specifying that the effect is internal and bodily. The woman's double *amen* (*amen amen*) constitutes formal legal consent to the ordeal — she voluntarily submits to divine adjudication. The word *amen* derives from the root *'m-n* ('to be firm, trustworthy') and here functions as an oath ratification: 'let it be established, let it be so.'
23. The priest records the curses *bassefer* ('on a scroll/document') — a written legal instrument. He then dissolves the writing into the water: *umachah el mei hammarim* ('and he shall blot/erase into the bitter water'). The verb *machah* ('to wipe away, to dissolve') means the ink itself becomes part of the potion. This is a unique biblical ritual in which written words are physically consumed — the curses literally enter the body. The act transforms language into substance.
24. The verse describes the pivotal moment: *vehishqah et ha'ishah* ('he shall cause the woman to drink'). The phrase *uva'u vah hammayim hame'arrim lemarim* ('and the cursing waters shall enter her to bitterness') uses a wordplay: the waters are both *me'arrim* ('cursing,' from the root *'r-r*) and *marim* ('bitter,' from the root *m-r-r*). The double meaning — cursing and bitterness — reinforces the water's dual nature as both ritual instrument and potential punishment.

25. Three ritual actions occur in sequence: the priest takes the minchat haqena'ot ('suspicion offering') from the woman's hands (she has been holding it since v 18), performs the tenufah ('wave/elevation offering' — the term *henif* describes lifting and moving the offering before the LORD), and approaches the altar (*vehiqriv otah el hammizbe'ach*). The progression moves the offering from the woman's possession to the divine realm.
26. The verb *vaqamats* ('he shall scoop/take a handful') describes the standard grain offering procedure: extracting the *azkaratah* ('its memorial portion' — the representative handful burned on the altar). The remainder would be eaten by the priests. The sequence is precise: the altar offering comes first (*vehiqtir hammizbe'chah*), then the drinking (*ve'achar yashqeh et ha'ishah et hammayim* — 'and afterward he shall make the woman drink the water'). The sacrificial act precedes and sanctifies the ordeal.
27. The guilty outcome is described: if she is *nitme'ah* ('defiled') and *vatim'ol ma'al be'ishah* ('acted treacherously against her husband'), the physical consequences follow — *vetsavetah bitnah* ('her belly will swell') and *venafela yerekhah* ('her thigh/reproductive area will fall/waste'). She becomes *le'alah beqerev ammah* ('a curse-word among her people') — her name invoked in future imprecations. The conditional *im* ('if') is critical: the punishment is contingent on actual guilt, not on the accusation.
28. The acquittal outcome is stated with equal clarity: *im lo nitme'ah ha'ishah utehorah hi* ('if the woman is not defiled and is pure'), she receives two results — *veniqqetah* ('she shall be acquitted/cleared') and *venizre'ah zara* ('she shall be sown with seed,' i.e., she will conceive). The fertility promise is significant: vindication brings not merely freedom from punishment but positive blessing. Some rabbinic interpreters understand this as a promise of easier childbirth or more children rather than initial fertility.
29. The phrase *zot torat haqena'ot* ('this is the instruction/law of the jealousies') is a closing formula identifying the entire section as a distinct legal category. The term *torah* here means 'instruction, procedure, protocol' rather than 'Law' in the grand sense. The phrase *tachat ishah* ('under her husband') uses *tachat* ('beneath, under') in the sense of marital authority — the same preposition appears in the similar expression in verse 20.
30. This verse provides the alternative trigger: the husband's suspicion alone (*ruach qin'ah* — 'spirit of jealousy/suspicion'), even without evidence of wrongdoing. The husband's role is to present the woman (*vehe'emid et ha'ishah lipnei YHWH* — 'and he shall stand the woman before the LORD'); the priest's role is to execute the ritual (*ve'asah lah hakkohen et kol hattorah hazot* — 'the priest shall perform for her all this instruction'). The division of roles ensures that no individual husband can unilaterally punish — only the divinely mediated ritual adjudicates.
31. The closing verse addresses the husband's legal liability: *veniqqah ha'ish me'avon* ('the man shall be clean from iniquity') — he bears no guilt for initiating the process, even if the wife is found innocent. This protects men from false-accusation liability when they act on genuine suspicion. The final phrase *veha'ishah hahi tissa et avonah* ('that woman shall bear her iniquity') applies only in the case of guilt — she bears the full consequences. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the *sotah* section and the chapter. Rabbinic tradition records that the Sanhedrin discontinued this ordeal around the first century CE (*Mishnah Sotah* 9:9), citing the prevalence of male infidelity as grounds.

6

Summary: *Two very different subjects stand side by side: the Nazirite vow (vv. 1-21), by which any Israelite — man or woman — may voluntarily take on priestly-level holiness through abstaining from wine, avoiding corpse contact, and letting the hair grow; and the priestly blessing (vv. 22-27), the three-line benediction Aaron and his sons are commanded to speak over Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Nazirite is declared qadosh ('holy') — a status otherwise reserved for priests and sacred objects — through voluntary action, not birth. The verb ya'fli ('makes extraordinary,' v. 2) frames the vow as something remarkable, not routine. If accidental corpse contact breaks the vow, all previous days 'fall away' (yippelu, v. 12) — holiness does not accumulate partially. The priestly blessing is pure poetry: three lines of escalating length (3, 5, and 7 Hebrew words), each invoking the divine name YHWH.*

Translation Friction: *The word nezer carries the double meaning of 'consecration' and 'crown,' and we could not collapse the two senses into one English word. The Nazirite's uncut hair functions as both. In the priestly blessing, the jussive verbs (yevarekekha, ya'er, yissa) express a wish that carries divine authority — not mere hope but authorized declaration. We rendered them with 'may' to preserve the prayerful tone while noting in the translator notes that these are performative, not optative.*

Connections: *The Nazirite's corpse prohibition exceeds ordinary priestly limits (Leviticus 21:1-3) and matches only the high priest's restriction (Leviticus 21:11). Samson (Judges 13:5) and Samuel (1 Samuel 1:11) are associated with lifelong Nazirite vows. The priestly blessing's 'may the LORD lift His face toward you' (v. 26) contrasts with God hiding His face in judgment (Deuteronomy 31:17-18).*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When a man or woman makes a special vow — the vow of a Nazirite — to set themselves apart for the LORD, ³they must abstain from wine and fermented drink. They must not drink wine vinegar or vinegar made from fermented drink, nor drink any grape juice, nor eat grapes fresh or dried. ⁴For the entire period of their consecration, they must not eat anything produced from the grapevine, from seeds to skin. ⁵For the entire period of their Nazirite vow, no razor may pass over their head. Until the days of their consecration to the LORD are complete, they are holy — they must let the hair of their head grow long. ⁶For the entire period of their consecration to the LORD, they must not go near a dead body. ⁷Even for a father or mother, brother or sister — they must not make themselves ritually impure when these relatives die, because the consecration of their God is upon their head. ⁸For the entire period of their consecration, they are holy to the LORD. ⁹If someone dies suddenly in their presence, defiling the head of their consecration, they must shave their head on the day of their purification — on the seventh day they must shave it. ¹⁰On the eighth day they must bring two turtledoves or two young pigeons to the priest at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ¹¹The priest shall offer one as a purification offering and the other as a burnt offering, making atonement for them because they incurred guilt through the dead body. The priest shall reconsecrate their head that same day. ¹²They must rededicate to the LORD the days of their consecration and bring a year-old male lamb as a guilt offering. The previous days are voided, because their consecration was defiled. ¹³This is the instruction for the Nazirite when the period of their consecration is complete: they shall be brought to the entrance of the tent of meeting. ¹⁴They shall present their offering to the LORD: one unblemished year-old male lamb as a burnt offering, one unblemished year-old ewe lamb as a purification offering, and one unblemished ram as a peace offering, ¹⁵along with a basket of unleavened bread — loaves of fine flour mixed with oil and unleavened wafers spread with oil — together with their grain offerings and drink offerings. ¹⁶The priest shall present them before the LORD and offer the purification offering and the burnt offering. ¹⁷The ram he shall offer as a sacrifice of peace offerings to the LORD, along with the basket of unleavened bread. The priest shall also present the grain offering and the drink offering. ¹⁸The Nazirite shall shave the consecrated head at the entrance of the tent of meeting, take the hair of their consecrated head, and place it on the fire beneath the peace offering sacrifice. ¹⁹The priest shall take the boiled shoulder from the ram, one unleavened loaf from the basket, and one unleavened wafer, and place them on the palms of the Nazirite after they have shaved the head of their consecration. ²⁰The priest shall elevate them as a wave offering before the LORD. These are holy portions belonging to the priest, along with the breast of the wave offering and the thigh of the contribution. After this, the Nazirite may drink wine. ²¹This is the instruction for the Nazirite who has vowed — their offering to the LORD for their consecration, apart from whatever else they can afford. According to the vow they have made, so they must do, following the instruction for their consecration." ²²The LORD spoke to Moses: ²³"Speak to Aaron and his sons and tell them: This is how you shall bless the Israelites. Say to them: ²⁴May the LORD bless you and guard you. ²⁵May the LORD make His face shine upon you and show you grace. ²⁶May the LORD lift up His face toward you and grant you peace. ²⁷So they shall place My name upon the Israelites, and I Myself will bless them."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard divine speech formula (vaydabber YHWH el-Mosheh) introduces a new block of legislation. This section (v1-21) governs the Nazirite vow, followed immediately by the priestly blessing (v22-27) — voluntary human consecration paired with divine benediction.
2. The verb *yafli* (from *pala*, 'to be extraordinary, wonderful') frames the Nazirite vow as something remarkable — not routine piety but an extraordinary act of devotion. Both men and women may take this vow, a notable inclusion. The root *n-z-r* ('to separate, consecrate') appears three times in this verse, emphasizing the total-separation concept.
3. The prohibition extends far beyond wine itself to anything derived from the grapevine — vinegar, juice, fresh grapes, raisins. The comprehensiveness is deliberate: the vine represents celebration and ordinary pleasure, and the Nazirite renounces the entire category. The verb *yazzir* (from *n-z-r*) governs the sentence — 'they must separate themselves from wine.'
4. The phrase 'from seeds to skin' (*mechartsannim ve'ad-zag*) is a Hebrew merism — naming both extremes to include everything in between. Nothing from the vine, in any form, may enter the Nazirite's body. The comprehensiveness underscores that this is not a dietary preference but a total separation from the domain the vine represents.

5. The uncut hair is the visible sign of the vow — the Nazirite carries their consecration publicly. The text declares qadosh yihyeh ('they shall be holy') — a status otherwise reserved for priests and sacred objects. The growing hair functions as a kind of crown (nezer can mean both 'consecration' and 'crown'), marking the Nazirite as set apart in a way others can see.
6. The Hebrew uses nephesh met ('dead person,' literally 'dead soul') — contact with death is the most serious source of ritual impurity in the Israelite system. This restriction parallels the high priest's rules in Leviticus 21:11. The Nazirite, though a layperson, takes on the highest priestly purity standard voluntarily.
7. This exceeds even ordinary priestly obligations — regular priests may attend family funerals (Lev 21:1-3). Only the high priest shares this restriction (Lev 21:11). The phrase nezer Elohav al-rosho ('the consecration of his God is upon his head') treats the uncut hair as a sacred diadem. The vow outranks even the deepest family bonds — a stunning claim about the priority of voluntary holiness.
8. A summary declaration — qadosh hu laYHWH ('holy, they are, to the LORD'). The brevity is emphatic. The Nazirite's holiness is not aspirational but actual during the vow period. This verse functions as the conclusion of the three prohibitions (wine, razor, corpse) — together they constitute what makes the person qadosh.
9. The text imagines an accidental breach — someone dies 'suddenly, in an instant' (befeta pitom) beside the Nazirite through no fault of their own. Even unintentional contamination defiles 'the head of their consecration' — the hair that symbolizes the vow. The seven-day purification period follows the standard corpse-contamination protocol of Numbers 19. The contaminated hair must be removed before the vow can restart.
10. Turtledoves (torim) and young pigeons (benei yonah) are the offering accessible to the poor — the same pair prescribed for purification after childbirth (Lev 12:8) and skin disease (Lev 14:22). The eighth day marks the transition from impurity back toward holiness, paralleling circumcision on the eighth day and the consecration of the altar (Lev 9:1).
11. Two offerings work together: the chata't (purification offering) cleanses the contamination; the olah (burnt offering) represents renewed total devotion. The verb kipper ('make atonement') appears here alongside the unusual phrase chata al-hannephesh — the Nazirite 'sinned against the person' (i.e., incurred guilt through contact with the corpse). The priest then 'reconsecrates' (qiddash) the head — the vow restarts from zero.
12. The asham (guilt offering) here addresses the trespass against holy status — the Nazirite's consecrated state was a sacred possession, and its contamination requires reparation. The harshest clause: all previous days of the vow 'fall away' (yippelu) — they count for nothing. The vow must be fulfilled in full from the beginning, no credit for time already served. Holiness does not accumulate partially.
13. Torah here means 'instruction, law, procedure' — the technical regulations for completing the vow. The passive 'shall be brought' (yavi oto) suggests the Nazirite is presented formally, almost like a sacrificial offering being brought before the LORD. The entrance of the tent of meeting is the threshold between ordinary and sacred space.
14. Three of the five Levitical offering types appear together: olah (burnt offering — total devotion), chata't (purification offering — cleansing), and shelamim (peace offering — communion meal). The Nazirite's completion ceremony recapitulates the entire sacrificial system in miniature. All three animals must be tamim ('unblemished, whole, complete') — the physical wholeness of the animal mirrors the completeness of the vow.
15. The unleavened bread (matzot) echoes the Passover and exodus. The grain offering (minchah) and drink offerings (nesakhim) accompany the animal sacrifices. The KJV's 'meat offering' for minchah is misleading — minchah is specifically the grain offering, never meat. The elaborate provision — three animals, bread, grain, wine — shows that completing a Nazirite vow was a significant and costly act of worship.
16. The order matters: purification (chata't) before burnt offering (olah). Cleansing precedes devotion — the sanctuary must be purified before the worshipper can offer total surrender. This sequence appears throughout Leviticus and Numbers whenever both offerings are prescribed together.
17. The shelamim (peace offering) is the culminating sacrifice — the one the worshipper shares in as a meal. From the root shalom, this offering celebrates restored relationship. The Nazirite, having completed the vow, sits down to eat with God. The unleavened bread basket accompanies the fellowship meal, making this a communal feast of completion.
18. The hair — which has been qadosh throughout the vow — is placed in the fire of the shelamim, effectively making it part of the offering to God. The hair is not merely cut and discarded but ritually consumed. It carried the holiness of the vow, and that holiness is returned to God through fire. The location at the tent entrance ensures this is a public, liturgical act, not a private grooming.
19. The Hebrew beshelah means 'boiled, cooked' (not 'sodden' in the modern sense of 'soggy'). The shoulder (zeroa) placed in the Nazirite's hands is a ritually significant portion. The items placed on the palms — shoulder, loaf, wafer — are about to be waved before the LORD, making the Nazirite an active participant in the offering rather than a passive observer.
20. The final clause — 'after this, the Nazirite may drink wine' — marks the formal end of the vow with striking simplicity. The very thing that was prohibited first (v3) is now permitted again. The wave offering (tenufah) involves a ritual lifting or swinging motion before the LORD, presenting the food to God before the priest receives it. The breast and thigh are the priest's standard portions from peace offerings (Lev 7:31-34).
21. The phrase 'apart from whatever else their hand can reach' (millevad asher-tassig yado) acknowledges economic variability — the prescribed offerings are the minimum, and wealthier Nazirites may add more. The closing formula ('according to their vow, so they must do') treats the vow with absolute seriousness. What is promised to God must be fulfilled exactly. The Nazirite laws end here; verses 22-27 shift to an entirely different subject — the priestly blessing.

22. A new divine speech formula introduces the priestly blessing (v23-27). The juxtaposition with the Nazirite vow is deliberate: after describing how an individual Israelite can voluntarily become holy, the text prescribes how God's blessing descends on the entire community through priestly mediation. Individual consecration and communal benediction side by side.
23. God prescribes the exact words — koh tevareshu ('thus you shall bless'). The priests do not compose their own blessings; they speak God's words. The verb amar ('say') in the infinitive absolute (amor) indicates the precise, formal pronunciation required. The blessing is not a wish or a prayer but a divinely authorized declaration spoken by priestly authority.
24. The first line of the three-line priestly blessing. The Hebrew is three words: yevarekha YHWH veyishmekha. The verbs are jussive — expressing a wish or command that carries divine authority. 'Bless' (barakh) encompasses all forms of flourishing — life, provision, fertility, favor. 'Guard' (shamar) implies watchful protection, the same verb used for tending the garden in Genesis 2:15. The blessing begins with God's active care.
25. The second line adds two words to the pattern (five Hebrew words vs. three in v24). 'Make His face shine' (ya'er panav) — a turned, radiant face means favorable attention, as opposed to a hidden or averted face which means rejection or absence. The metaphor is relational: God's 'face' directed toward you means God is personally engaged with you. Vichuneka ('show you grace/be gracious') — from chen, unmerited favor. Grace here is God's disposition to give beyond what is deserved.
26. The third line is the longest — seven Hebrew words, completing the ascending pattern: 3-5-7. 'Lift up His face toward you' (yissa YHWH panav elekha) — a judge who 'lifts the face' of a petitioner looks at them with favor rather than dismissing them. The blessing asks God to regard Israel with the attentive gaze of a favorable judge, a loving parent, a protector. The final word is shalom — the theological summit of the entire blessing. The three-line structure builds: blessing favor peace. Each line is longer, weightier, and more comprehensive than the last.
27. The chapter's final verse reveals the mechanics of the blessing: the priests 'place' (samu) God's name on Israel. The name functions as a seal of ownership and protection — to bear God's name is to belong to God. The emphatic final pronoun — va'ani avarekhem, 'and I, I will bless them' — makes clear that the priests are the instruments but God is the source. The priestly blessing is not priestly power; it is divinely authorized speech that God Himself ratifies and enacts.

7

Summary: *The twelve tribal leaders present dedication offerings over twelve consecutive days, beginning with the consecration of the tabernacle. Each leader brings an identical gift — silver plate, silver basin, gold ladle filled with incense, and multiple animals for burnt, purification, and peace offerings. The chapter closes with God speaking to Moses from between the cherubim on the ark's cover.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *At 89 verses, this is the longest chapter in the Torah. The twelve offerings are described in near-identical language, and the repetition is the point: each tribe is honored with its own full accounting rather than a summary. No tribe's gift is abbreviated or dismissed. The identical offerings express equality among the tribes despite differences in size and status. The chapter also records God accepting the leaders' spontaneous initiative — their gifts were not commanded but were divinely approved after the fact.*

Translation Friction: *The term nasi ('leader, prince, chief,' v. 2) from the root n-s- ('to lift, elevate') avoids royal connotations. We rendered it 'leader' rather than 'prince' throughout, since these are tribal representatives, not monarchs. The word kallot ('completing,' v. 1) links the tabernacle's erection to its commissioning — a connection we preserved by rendering it 'finished setting up' rather than separating the two moments.*

Connections: *The twelve leaders are the same men named in Numbers 1:5-16 who oversaw the census. The wagons given to the Levites (vv. 6-9) directly serve the transport duties assigned in Numbers 4. The Kohathites receive no wagons because they must carry the sacred objects on their shoulders (v. 9; cf. 4:15). God's voice from between the cherubim (v. 89) fulfills the promise of Exodus 25:22.*

1On the day Moses finished setting up the Tabernacle, he anointed and consecrated it along with all its equipment — the altar and all its utensils — anointing and consecrating everything. 2The leaders of Israel — the heads of their ancestral households, the tribal leaders who had overseen the census — came forward with offerings. 3They brought their offering before the LORD: six covered wagons and twelve oxen — one wagon for every two leaders and one ox from each — and presented them in front of the Tabernacle. 4The LORD spoke to Moses: 5"Accept these from them — they will be used in the service of the Tent of Meeting. Give them to the Levites, to each division according to its duties." 6So Moses accepted the wagons and oxen and distributed them to the Levites. 7He gave two wagons and four oxen to the Gershonites, suited to their

duties. ⁸He gave four wagons and eight oxen to the Merarites, suited to their duties under the supervision of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. ⁹But to the Kohathites he gave nothing, because the sacred service assigned to them required carrying the holy objects on their shoulders. ¹⁰The leaders also brought their dedication offerings for the altar on the day it was anointed. The leaders presented their offerings before the altar. ¹¹The LORD said to Moses, "They are to present their offerings one leader per day, one leader per day, for the dedication of the altar." ¹²The one who presented his offering on the first day was Nahshon son of Amminadab, from the tribe of Judah. ¹³His offering was one silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, one silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard — both filled with fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering; ¹⁴one gold ladle of ten shekels, filled with incense; ¹⁵one young bull, one ram, one male lamb in its first year, as a burnt offering; ¹⁶one male goat as a purification offering; ¹⁷and for a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs in their first year. This was the offering of Nahshon son of Amminadab. ¹⁸On the second day, Nethanel son of Zuar, the leader of Issachar, brought his offering. ¹⁹He presented as his offering one silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary standard — both filled with fine flour blended with oil for a grain offering; ²⁰a single gold ladle weighing ten shekels, full of incense; ²¹one young bull, one ram, and one yearling male lamb for a burnt offering; ²²one male goat for a purification offering; ²³For a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five yearling male lambs. This was the offering of Nethanel son of Zuar. ²⁴On the third day, Eliab son of Helon, leader of the Zebulunites, presented his offering. ²⁵His offering: a silver plate of one hundred thirty shekels weight, a silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard, each filled with fine flour stirred with oil as a grain offering; ²⁶one gold ladle, ten shekels in weight, filled with incense; ²⁷a young bull, a ram, and a first-year male lamb as a burnt offering; ²⁸one male goat as a purification offering; ²⁹As a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five first-year male lambs. This was the offering of Eliab son of Helon. ³⁰On the fourth day, Elizur son of Shedeur, leader of the Reubenites, brought his offering. ³¹His offering consisted of one silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, one silver basin of seventy shekels measured by the sanctuary standard, both full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; ³²a gold ladle of ten shekels weight, full of incense; ³³one young bull, one ram, one male lamb in its first year, for a burnt offering; ³⁴one male goat as a purification offering; ³⁵For a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs in their first year. This was the offering of Elizur son of Shedeur. ³⁶On the fifth day, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai, leader of the Simeonites, presented his offering. ³⁷His offering was a silver plate — one hundred thirty shekels in weight — and a silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard, both containing fine flour blended with oil as a grain offering; ³⁸one gold ladle weighing ten shekels, filled with incense; ³⁹one young bull, one ram, and one yearling male lamb as a burnt offering; ⁴⁰one male goat for a purification offering; ⁴¹And as a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five yearling male lambs. This was the offering of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai. ⁴²On the sixth day, Eliasaph son of Deuel, leader of the Gadites, brought his offering. ⁴³His offering: one silver plate of one hundred thirty shekels weight, one silver basin at seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard, each filled with fine flour combined with oil for a grain offering; ⁴⁴a gold ladle of ten shekels, filled with incense; ⁴⁵a young bull, one ram, and one first-year male lamb for a burnt offering; ⁴⁶a male goat as a purification offering; ⁴⁷For a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five first-year male lambs. This was the offering of Eliasaph son of Deuel. ⁴⁸On the seventh day, Elishama son of Ammihud, leader of the Ephraimites, presented his offering. ⁴⁹His offering was a silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels and a silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary standard, both of them full of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering; ⁵⁰one gold ladle, ten shekels, full of incense; ⁵¹one young bull, one ram, one male lamb in its first year as a burnt offering; ⁵²one male goat for a purification offering; ⁵³As a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs in their first year. This was the offering of Elishama son of Ammihud. ⁵⁴On the eighth day, Gamaliel son of Pedahzur, leader of the Manassites, brought his offering. ⁵⁵His offering: one silver plate at one hundred thirty shekels in weight, one silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard — both filled with fine flour stirred into oil for a grain offering; ⁵⁶a gold ladle at ten shekels weight, filled with incense; ⁵⁷one young bull, one ram, and a yearling male lamb for a burnt offering; ⁵⁸one male goat as a purification offering; ⁵⁹For a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five yearling male lambs. This was the offering of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur. ⁶⁰On the ninth day, Abidan son of Gideoni, leader of the

Benjaminites, presented his offering. ⁶¹His offering was one silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, one silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard, both containing fine flour blended with oil as a grain offering; ⁶²one gold ladle of ten shekels, full of incense; ⁶³a young bull, a ram, and a first-year male lamb as a burnt offering; ⁶⁴a male goat for a purification offering; ⁶⁵As a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five first-year male lambs. This was the offering of Abidan son of Gideoni. ⁶⁶On the tenth day, Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai, leader of the Danites, brought his offering. ⁶⁷His offering consisted of a silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels and a silver basin of seventy shekels measured by the sanctuary standard, both full of fine flour mixed with oil for a grain offering; ⁶⁸a gold ladle weighing ten shekels, filled with incense; ⁶⁹one young bull, one ram, one yearling male lamb for a burnt offering; ⁷⁰one male goat as a purification offering; ⁷¹For a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five male lambs in their first year. This was the offering of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai. ⁷²On the eleventh day, Pagiel son of Ocran, leader of the Asherites, presented his offering. ⁷³His offering was a silver plate of one hundred thirty shekels weight, a silver basin of seventy shekels by the sanctuary standard, both filled with fine flour combined with oil as a grain offering; ⁷⁴one gold ladle, ten shekels in weight, full of incense; ⁷⁵a young bull, one ram, and one male lamb in its first year as a burnt offering; ⁷⁶one male goat for a purification offering; ⁷⁷And for a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five yearling male lambs. This was the offering of Pagiel son of Ocran. ⁷⁸On the twelfth day, Ahira son of Enan, leader of the Naphtalites, brought his offering. ⁷⁹His offering: one silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary standard, each of them full of fine flour blended with oil for a grain offering; ⁸⁰a gold ladle of ten shekels weight, filled with incense; ⁸¹one young bull, one ram, and one male lamb in its first year for a burnt offering; ⁸²a male goat as a purification offering; ⁸³As a fellowship sacrifice: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, and five male lambs in their first year. This was the offering of Ahira son of Enan. ⁸⁴This was the total for the altar's dedication on the day it was anointed, contributed by the leaders of Israel: twelve silver plates, twelve silver basins, twelve gold ladles — ⁸⁵each silver plate weighing one hundred thirty shekels, each basin seventy — the total silver of all the vessels came to two thousand four hundred shekels by the sanctuary standard; ⁸⁶the twelve gold ladles full of incense, each ladle weighing ten shekels by the sanctuary standard — the total gold of the ladles came to one hundred twenty shekels. ⁸⁷The total livestock for the burnt offerings: twelve bulls, twelve rams, twelve yearling male lambs with their grain offerings, and twelve male goats for the purification offering. ⁸⁸The total livestock for the fellowship sacrifices: twenty-four bulls, sixty rams, sixty male goats, sixty yearling male lambs. This was the dedication of the altar after it had been anointed. ⁸⁹When Moses entered the Tent of Meeting to speak with Him, he heard the Voice speaking to him from above the atonement cover on the Ark of the Testimony, from between the two cherubim — and it spoke to him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word kallot (completing, finishing) connects the Tabernacle's construction to its commissioning. The verbs vayimshach (he anointed) and vayequaddesh (he consecrated) appear twice — first for the mishkan (Tabernacle) and its kelim (vessels/equipment), then for the mizbe'ach (altar) and its vessels — emphasizing the thorough consecration of every component.
2. The nesi'ei Yisra'el (leaders of Israel) are identified three ways: ra'shei beit avotam (heads of ancestral houses), nesi'ei hammattot (tribal leaders), and ha'omedim al-hapequdim (those overseeing the census). These are the same twelve leaders listed in Numbers 1:5-16 who supervised the population count.
3. The eglot tsav (covered wagons — possibly canopied or enclosed carts) are practical gifts for Tabernacle transport. The ratio — agalah al-shenei hannes'im veshor le'echad (one wagon per two leaders, one ox per leader) — demonstrates collaborative generosity. Twelve leaders produce six wagons, each pair sharing a contribution.
4. The standard revelatory formula vayyomer YHWH el-Mosheh (the LORD said to Moses) introduces divine authorization for accepting the leaders' spontaneous gifts — confirming that their initiative aligns with God's will.
5. God instructs Moses to distribute the wagons for the avodah (service, work) of the ohel mo'ed (Tent of Meeting). The principle ish kefi avodato (each man according to his service) means resources are allocated based on practical need rather than rank or prestige.
6. Moses executes the divine instruction precisely: vayyiqqach (he took/accepted) and vayyitten (he gave/distributed). The immediate obedience pattern — command followed by exact execution — is characteristic of Tabernacle narratives throughout Exodus and Numbers.

7. Gershon's clan receives the smaller allotment — two wagons and four oxen — because their responsibilities involved the lighter Tabernacle coverings: the curtains, hangings, and fabric screens (Num 4:25-26). Fewer wagons were needed for textiles than for the heavy structural components assigned to Merari.
8. Merari receives double Gershon's allotment — four wagons and eight oxen — because their duties involved the heavy structural framework: boards, crossbars, pillars, and bases (Num 4:31-32). Their work is supervised by Adiram (under the hand/authority of Ithamar), Aaron's youngest surviving son after Nadab and Abihu's death.
9. The Kohathites receive no wagons because the *avodat haqqodesh* (service of the sacred objects) — the Ark, the table, the lampstand, the altars — must be carried *bakkattef* (on the shoulder), by direct human contact. No cart or animal may transport the most sacred items; they demand the dignity of personal bearing. This principle was violated with fatal consequences when David used a cart in 2 Samuel 6:3-7.
10. The word *chanukkat* (dedication, inauguration) — from the root *ch-n-k* meaning 'to dedicate, initiate' — is the same word that gives us the festival of Hanukkah. Beyond the wagons and oxen, the leaders now bring *qorbanam* (their offerings) specifically for consecrating the *mizbe'ach* (altar). The repetition of *vayyaqriv* *hannesi'im* (the leaders offered) emphasizes their initiative.
11. The phrase *nasi echad layyom nasi echad layyom* (one leader per day, one leader per day) is deliberately repetitive — mirroring the twelve-day repetitive structure that follows. Each tribe receives its own dedicated day, preventing any leader from being overshadowed and giving each offering full ceremonial attention. The twelve-day sequence begins in verse 12.
12. Day 1: Nahshon (*nachshon*, possibly from *nachash* 'serpent' or 'diviner') son of Amminadab ('my kinsman is generous'), Judah's leader. Judah presents first, reflecting its preeminent position at the head of the camp formation (Num 2:3) and the march order (Num 10:14). Nahshon is later listed in the genealogy of King David (Ruth 4:20) and Jesus (Matt 1:4).
13. Nahshon's silver vessels for Judah (Day 1): the *qa'arat* (plate/platter, 130 shekels) and *mizraq* (sprinkling basin, 70 shekels) contain *solet belulah vashemen* (fine flour mixed with oil) — the *minchah* or grain offering. The combined silver weight of 200 shekels per tribe will total 2,400 shekels across all twelve.
14. Judah's gold *kaf* (ladle — literally 'palm,' a palm-shaped vessel, 10 shekels of gold) holds *qetoret* (incense) — fragrant spices representing worship ascending before the LORD. The gold material distinguishes this vessel from the silver plates.
15. Judah's *olah* (burnt offering, ascending offering): *par ben-baqar* (young bull), *ayil* (ram), *keves ben-shenato* (yearling male lamb) — three animals consumed entirely on the altar, representing complete dedication to God.
16. Judah's *chattat* (purification offering): one *se'ir izzim* (male goat) — addressing any ritual contamination in the tribe's relationship to the newly dedicated sanctuary.
17. Nahshon's *zevach hashelamim* (fellowship sacrifice) concludes Judah's Day 1 offering with the largest animal component: two cattle, five rams, five male goats, five yearling lambs — seventeen animals for communal feasting. The *shelamim* is the only offering category where the worshiper eats a portion, making it a shared meal between God, priest, and people.
18. Day 2: Nethanel (*netan'el*, 'God has given') son of Zuar (*tsu'ar*, 'small/insignificant'), Issachar's leader. Issachar follows Judah as part of the eastern camp division (Num 2:5). The name 'God has given' is fitting for a chapter about voluntary giving.
19. Nethanel's silver vessels for Issachar (Day 2): identical weights of 130 and 70 shekels for the *qa'arat* and *mizraq*, filled with the *minchah* (grain offering) mixture. The identical quantities establish a pattern: every tribe gives the same, demonstrating equality before God.
20. Issachar's gold *kaf* of *qetoret* (incense) — the same ten-shekel standard as Judah's, confirming equal dignity among the tribes in their approach to God.
21. Issachar's *olah*: the identical three-animal set (bull, ram, yearling lamb) as Judah's — no tribe's ascending offering differs from another's in this dedication sequence.
22. Issachar's *chattat*: one male goat — each tribe requires its own purification offering regardless of its size or status in the camp.
23. Nethanel's *shelamim* closes Issachar's Day 2 offering — identical quantities to Judah's, reinforcing the theme of tribal equality before the LORD in the dedication ceremony.
24. Day 3: Eliab (*eli'av*, 'my God is father') son of Helon (*chelon*, possibly 'strong' or 'valiant'), Zebulun's leader. Zebulun completes the eastern camp triad alongside Judah and Issachar (Num 2:7).
25. Eliab's silver vessels for Zebulun (Day 3): the identical *qa'arat* and *mizraq* weights with *solet* — the repetition itself is the text's theological statement about tribal parity. No tribe receives or gives more than any other.
26. Zebulun's gold *kaf* of *qetoret* — the third of twelve identical incense offerings, each tribe's worship rising equally before the LORD.
27. Zebulun's *olah*: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the eastern camp's final burnt offering on Day 3, completing the first triad of tribes.
28. Zebulun's *chattat*: one male goat as purification — the third tribe's contribution to the twelve-day dedication sequence.
29. Eliab's *shelamim* concludes Zebulun's Day 3 offering and completes the eastern camp division's three-day dedication sequence. All three eastern tribes have now presented.

30. Day 4: Elizur (elitsur, 'my God is a rock') son of Shedeur (shedei'ur, 'the Almighty is light'), Reuben's leader. Despite being Jacob's firstborn, Reuben presents fourth — following the camp formation order rather than birth order, since Judah leads the eastern division.
31. Elizur's silver vessels for Reuben (Day 4): the qa'arat and mizraq with identical weights mark the southern camp's first offering. Reuben the firstborn receives no larger portion.
32. Reuben's gold kaf of incense — the fourth of twelve identical ladles, maintaining the pattern of equal tribal honor regardless of birth order.
33. Reuben's olah: the same three-animal burnt offering — the firstborn tribe receives no larger or more prestigious sacrifice than any other.
34. Reuben's chattat: one male goat — even Jacob's firstborn tribe requires purification before the newly consecrated sanctuary.
35. Elizur's shelamim concludes Reuben's Day 4 offering, opening the southern camp division's three-day sequence.
36. Day 5: Shelumiel (shelumi'el, 'at peace with God') son of Zurishaddai (tsurishaddai, 'my Rock is the Almighty'), Simeon's leader. Simeon camps alongside Reuben in the southern division (Num 2:12). The theophoric names — invoking shalom (peace) and shaddai (the Almighty) — reflect the piety embedded in Israelite naming conventions.
37. Shelumiel's silver vessels for Simeon (Day 5): identical plate and basin weights continue the pattern — the Torah's deliberate repetition honors each tribe individually rather than summarizing with 'each brought the same.'
38. Simeon's gold kaf of qetoret — the fifth incense offering in the twelve-day dedication, each one a complete act of worship.
39. Simeon's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the burnt offering pattern remains unchanged through five successive tribes.
40. Simeon's chattat: one male goat — the fifth tribe's acknowledgment of the need for ritual cleansing before the LORD.
41. Shelumiel's shelamim concludes Simeon's Day 5 offering — the southern camp's second contribution to the altar dedication.
42. Day 6: Eliasaph (elyasaph, 'God has added') son of Deuel (de'u'el, 'knowledge of God'), Gad's leader. Gad completes the southern camp triad with Reuben and Simeon (Num 2:14). The name Deuel appears as 'Reuel' in some manuscripts — a common d/r scribal variation in Hebrew.
43. Eliasaph's silver vessels for Gad (Day 6): the same qa'arat (130 shekels) and mizraq (70 shekels), reinforcing six consecutive days of identical generosity from six different tribes.
44. Gad's gold kaf of incense — the sixth ladle, marking the halfway point of the twelve-day dedication ceremony.
45. Gad's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the burnt offering at the midpoint of the dedication maintains perfect consistency with all previous days.
46. Gad's chattat: one male goat — the sixth purification offering, one for each tribe that has presented so far.
47. Eliasaph's shelamim concludes Gad's Day 6 offering and completes the southern camp division's three-day dedication sequence. The first half of the twelve tribes has now presented.
48. Day 7: Elishama (elishama, 'my God has heard') son of Ammihud (ammihud, 'my kinsman is glorious'), Ephraim's leader. Ephraim heads the western camp division as the preeminent Joseph tribe (Num 2:18), reflecting Jacob's blessing that placed Ephraim above Manasseh (Gen 48:19-20).
49. Elishama's silver vessels for Ephraim (Day 7): the standardized qa'arat and mizraq weights with the minchah grain mixture, now at the seventh iteration of identical gifts.
50. Ephraim's gold kaf of qetoret — the seventh incense ladle, as the western camp begins its three-day dedication sequence.
51. Ephraim's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the Joseph tribes receive no larger offering despite their prominent double-tribe status.
52. Ephraim's chattat: one male goat for purification — the seventh tribe's offering mirrors all predecessors exactly.
53. Elishama's shelamim concludes Ephraim's Day 7 offering, opening the western camp division's three-day dedication sequence.
54. Day 8: Gamaliel (gamli'el, 'God is my reward') son of Pedahzur (pedahtsur, 'the Rock has redeemed'), Manasseh's leader. Manasseh follows Ephraim despite being Joseph's actual firstborn — reflecting Jacob's crossed-hand blessing that elevated the younger over the elder (Gen 48:14).
55. Gamaliel's silver vessels for Manasseh (Day 8): identical to Ephraim's — neither Joseph tribe receives preferential treatment in the dedication despite their shared patriarch.
56. Manasseh's gold kaf of incense — the eighth golden ladle in the sequence, maintaining the standard of equal tribal representation.
57. Manasseh's olah: the three-animal burnt offering continues unchanged through eight tribes and eight consecutive days of dedication.
58. Manasseh's chattat: one male goat — the purification offering requirement applies equally to every tribe, the eighth in unbroken sequence.
59. Gamaliel's shelamim concludes Manasseh's Day 8 offering — the second of the western camp division's three-day dedication.
60. Day 9: Abidan (avidan, 'my father has judged' or 'father of judgment') son of Gideoni (gid'oni, 'my hewer/cutter'), Benjamin's leader. Benjamin completes the western camp triad with Ephraim and Manasseh (Num 2:22). Benjamin is Rachel's second son and Jacob's youngest — the 'son of the right hand' (ben-yamin).

- 61.** Abidan's silver vessels for Benjamin (Day 9): the ninth identical set of plate and basin, approaching the conclusion of the twelve-day ceremony.
- 62.** Benjamin's gold kaf of qetoret — the ninth incense offering, with three tribal offerings still remaining in the dedication sequence.
- 63.** Benjamin's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the western camp's final burnt offering mirrors all previous ones exactly.
- 64.** Benjamin's chattat: one male goat for purification — the ninth tribe's identical contribution to the dedication.
- 65.** Abidan's shelamim concludes Benjamin's Day 9 offering and completes the western camp division's three-day dedication sequence. Nine of twelve tribes have now presented.
- 66.** Day 10: Ahiezer (achi'ezer, 'my brother is help') son of Ammishaddai (ammishaddai, 'my kinsman is the Almighty'), Dan's leader. Dan heads the northern camp — the final camp division — positioned at the rear of the march column (Num 2:25, 10:25).
- 67.** Ahiezer's silver vessels for Dan (Day 10): the qa'arat and mizraq at standard weights — the tenth of twelve identical offerings approaching the ceremony's conclusion.
- 68.** Dan's gold kaf of incense — the tenth golden ladle, as the dedication nears its final three days.
- 69.** Dan's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — ten consecutive days of identical burnt offerings underscoring the equality theme that pervades the chapter.
- 70.** Dan's chattat: one male goat — the tenth purification offering in the twelve-day dedication, maintaining the unchanging pattern.
- 71.** Ahiezer's shelamim concludes Dan's Day 10 offering, beginning the final northern camp division's three-day sequence. Only Asher and Naphtali remain.
- 72.** Day 11: Pagiel (pag'i'el, 'encounter with God' or 'God's intervention') son of Ocran (okhran, possibly 'troubled' or 'turbulent'), Asher's leader. Asher is the penultimate tribe in the ceremony, camping in the northern division alongside Dan (Num 2:27).
- 73.** Pagiel's silver vessels for Asher (Day 11): the eleventh identical plate-and-basin set, with only Naphtali's offering remaining to complete the cycle.
- 74.** Asher's gold kaf of qetoret — the eleventh incense ladle, nearly completing the twelve-tribe cycle of aromatic offerings.
- 75.** Asher's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the penultimate burnt offering, identical to all ten preceding ones.
- 76.** Asher's chattat: one male goat for purification — the eleventh tribe's offering follows the unvarying pattern of ritual cleansing.
- 77.** Pagiel's shelamim concludes Asher's Day 11 offering — only Naphtali's final dedication remains to complete the twelve-day ceremony.
- 78.** Day 12: Ahira (achira, 'my brother is a friend' or 'brother of evil/misfortune') son of Enan (einan, 'having eyes' or 'springs'), Naphtali's leader. As the twelfth and final tribe, Naphtali completes the altar dedication ceremony. Naphtali camps in the northern division, closing the rear guard of the march (Num 2:29).
- 79.** Ahira's silver vessels for Naphtali (Day 12): the final identical plate-and-basin set, completing the twelve-tribe cycle of generosity. All twelve tribes have now contributed equally.
- 80.** Naphtali's gold kaf of qetoret — the twelfth and final incense ladle, completing the full set of twelve golden vessels filled with fragrant worship.
- 81.** Naphtali's olah: bull, ram, yearling lamb — the final burnt offering in the twelve-day dedication matches all eleven predecessors in precise conformity.
- 82.** Naphtali's chattat: one male goat — the twelfth and final purification offering, completing the full cycle of tribal dedication.
- 83.** Ahira's shelamim concludes Naphtali's Day 12 offering, bringing the entire twelve-day altar dedication to its close. All four camp divisions — east, south, west, north — have completed their presentations in order.
- 84.** The summary section opens with zo't chanukkat hammizbe'ach (this was the dedication of the altar), tallying the collective gifts. The twelve-times-three vessel count — qa'arot kesef (silver plates), mizreqi kesef (silver basins), kappot zahav (gold ladles) — demonstrates the unified generosity of all twelve tribes.
- 85.** The total silver: 12 plates at 130 shekels + 12 basins at 70 shekels = 2,400 sheqalim (approximately 27.5 kg or 60 lbs by the sanctuary standard). The precise accounting — kol kesef hallelim (all the silver of the vessels) — reflects the meticulous record-keeping expected for sacred donations.
- 86.** The total gold: 12 ladles at 10 shekels each = 120 sheqalim (approximately 1.4 kg or 3 lbs). The phrase asarah asarah hakkaf (ten-ten per ladle — ten shekels each) uses the distributive repetition typical of Hebrew census and inventory language. Though less by weight than the silver, gold's far greater value made this a substantial combined contribution.
- 87.** The olah (burnt offering) totals reflect perfect symmetry: twelve parim (bulls), twelve eilim (rams), twelve kevasim (lambs) — one from each tribe — plus their accompanying minchah (grain offering). The chattat adds twelve se'irei izzim (male goats) for purification. The number twelve pervades every category, reinforcing the all-Israel character of the dedication.
- 88.** The zevach hashelamim (fellowship sacrifice) totals are the largest category: 24 parim (bulls — 2 per tribe), 60 eilim (rams — 5 per tribe), 60 attudim (male goats — 5 per tribe), 60 kevasim (yearling lambs — 5 per tribe) = 204 animals total. The closing phrase zo't chanukkat hammizbe'ach acharei himmashach oto (this was the altar's dedication after it was anointed) forms an inclusio with v. 84.

89. The chapter's dramatic climax: Moses enters the ohel mo'ed (Tent of Meeting) and hears haqqol middabber elav (the Voice speaking to him) from above the kapporet (atonement cover/mercy seat) on the aron ha'edut (Ark of the Testimony), from between the two keruvim (cherubim). The dedication is validated by divine speech — the Tabernacle's purpose is fulfilled when God inhabits the consecrated space and communicates from it. The participle middabber (speaking, ongoing speech) suggests continuous divine communication, not a single utterance.

8

Summary: *Aaron lights the seven-lamp menorah as commanded, and the Levites are formally consecrated for tabernacle service. Their consecration involves purification (sprinkling, shaving, washing), sacrificial offerings, the laying on of hands by the Israelite community, and their presentation as a 'wave offering' before the LORD. The chapter concludes with the Levites' service age: twenty-five to fifty.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Levites are presented as a tenufah ('wave offering') — an entire tribe ritually offered to God on behalf of the nation. The Israelites lay their hands on the Levites (v. 10), transferring the community's obligation onto them. This is substitutionary theology enacted physically: the Levites stand in for all Israel's firstborn. The menorah instruction uses beha'alotekha ('when you cause [the lamps] to go up'), treating the lighting of flames as an act of elevation.*

Translation Friction: *The term miqshah ('hammered work,' v. 4) for the menorah indicates a single piece of beaten gold, not assembled parts — a distinction we preserved because it carries theological weight about the unity of the sacred object. The purification water is called mei chata't ('water of sin/purification,' v. 7), which we rendered 'water of purification' to avoid implying the water itself is sinful. The red heifer ashes described in Numbers 19 provide this water.*

Connections: *The menorah design was revealed at Sinai (Exodus 25:31-40) and executed by Bezalel. The Levite consecration parallels but differs from priestly ordination in Leviticus 8 — Levites are purified and waved, while priests are anointed and have their hands filled. The service age of twenty-five (v. 24) differs from the thirty-year threshold in Numbers 4:3, suggesting a five-year apprenticeship period.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²Speak to Aaron and tell him: When you set up the lamps, the seven lamps must cast their light toward the front of the lampstand. ³Aaron did so: he kindled the lamps toward the front of the lampstand, exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁴This is how the lampstand was fashioned: hammered gold from its base to its blossom — a single piece. It was made exactly according to the pattern the LORD had shown Moses. ⁵The LORD spoke to Moses: ⁶Take the Levites from among the Israelites and purify them. ⁷Here is how to purify them: Sprinkle the water of purification over them; they must run a razor over their whole body, wash their garments, and then they will be clean. ⁸They must bring a young bull with its grain offering — fine flour mixed with oil — and you shall take a second young bull for a sin offering. ⁹Bring the Levites before the tent of meeting and assemble the whole congregation of Israel. ¹⁰Present the Levites before the LORD, and the Israelites shall lay their hands on the Levites. ¹¹Aaron shall wave the Levites as a wave offering before the LORD on behalf of the Israelites, so that they may perform the service of the LORD. ¹²The Levites shall lay their hands on the heads of the bulls. Then offer one as a sin offering and the other as a burnt offering to the LORD, to make atonement for the Levites. ¹³Station the Levites before Aaron and his sons, and wave them as an offering to the LORD. ¹⁴In this way you shall set the Levites apart from the Israelites, and the Levites shall be Mine. ¹⁵After that the Levites may enter to perform the service of the tent of meeting. You shall purify them and wave them as an offering. ¹⁶For they are given over to Me from among the Israelites. I have taken them as replacements for every firstborn — everyone who opens the womb among the Israelites — and they are Mine. ¹⁷For every firstborn among the Israelites — human and animal — is Mine. On the day I struck down every firstborn in the land of Egypt, I consecrated them to Myself. ¹⁸So I have taken the Levites in place of all the firstborn of the Israelites. ¹⁹I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons from among the Israelites, to perform the service of the Israelites in the tent of meeting and to make atonement for them, so that no plague strikes the Israelites when they approach the sanctuary. ²⁰Moses, Aaron, and the whole congregation of Israel did to the Levites everything the LORD had commanded Moses concerning them. ²¹The Levites purified themselves and washed their garments. Aaron waved

them as a wave offering before the LORD and made atonement for them to cleanse them. ²²After that the Levites entered to perform their service in the tent of meeting before Aaron and his sons. As the LORD had commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so they did for them. ²³The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁴This applies to the Levites: from twenty-five years of age and upward they may enter to serve in the work of the tent of meeting. ²⁵But from the age of fifty they shall withdraw from the work of service and no longer perform it. ²⁶They may assist their brothers in the tent of meeting by keeping guard, but they shall perform no regular service. This is how you shall regulate the Levites regarding their duties.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a divine speech formula (vayedabber YHWH el-Mosheh lemor). Numbers 8 addresses two topics: the lampstand (menorah) setup (vv 1-4) and Levite consecration for sanctuary service (vv 5-26).
2. Beha'alotekha (when you cause to go up) refers to lighting the lamps — the flames 'go up.' The menorah () has seven lamps (nerot), arranged so their light faces el-mul penei hammerorah — toward the front face of the lampstand, illuminating the space before it.
3. The brief narrative reports immediate obedience. Aaron he'elah (caused to go up) the nerot — the same verb as the instruction. The refrain ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et-Mosheh establishes every cultic act as divinely authorized.
4. Miqshah () means hammered or beaten work — the menorah is formed from one piece of gold, not assembled. The base-to-blossom span (ad-yerekah ad-pirchah) describes the full structure. The pattern (mar'eh) was revealed at Sinai (Ex 25:40); Bezalel executed it. The paragraph break () marks a topic shift to Levite consecration.
5. A new divine speech introduces the Levite consecration ritual. The Levites will be purified (tihar), presented as a wave offering (tenufah), and set apart for sanctuary service — a parallel to priestly ordination but with distinct rites.
6. Qach et-halviyim (take the Levites) — they are chosen from the larger community for sacred service. Vetiharta otam (and you shall purify them) uses the Piel of tahir — to pronounce clean, to ritually purify. Purification precedes consecration.
7. Me chata't () — 'water of sin' or 'water of purification' — is the solution made from the ashes of the red heifer (Num 19). Three rites: sprinkling, whole-body shaving (ta'ar — razor), and washing clothes. The shaving removes bodily contamination; the sequence matches the purification of the metzora in Lev 14.
8. The Levites provide one par ben-baqar (— young bull) for an olah with its minchah (— fine flour mixed with oil); Moses/priest takes a second par for a chata't (— sin offering). The sacrifices effect kapparah (atonement) for the Levites before they enter service.
9. The consecration is public — kol adat benei Yisra'el (the whole assembly of the children of Israel) must witness it. The Levites approach lifnei ohel mo'ed — before the tent of meeting. Public consecration establishes the Levites' authority before the community and enacts their transfer from the people to the LORD.
10. Semikhah () — the laying on of hands — transfers identity or responsibility. Here the people lay hands on the Levites, designating them as substitutes who will serve on behalf of the community. The gesture is the inverse of ordination, where Moses laid hands on the priests; here the community commissions their representatives.
11. Henif () — to wave, to elevate in presentation. The Levites themselves become a tenufah (), a wave offering, lifted before the LORD as the people's gift. This consecrates them me'et benei Yisra'el — from the Israelites — for avodat YHWH, the LORD's service.
12. The Levites lay hands on the bulls — identifying with the sacrifices. One par becomes chata't (), cleansing from sin; the other olah (), whole burnt offering. Lekapper al-halviyim () — to make kapparah (covering, atonement) for the Levites — effects their ritual purification for sacred service.
13. He'amadta (you shall cause to stand) — the Levites are positioned before the priests. The second tenufah (wave offering) of the Levites presents them to the LORD for consecration. They stand at the threshold between Israel and the sanctuary, commissioned to serve under Aaron's authority.
14. Hibdaltah () — you shall separate, distinguish. The Levites are removed from the body of Israel (mitokh benei Yisra'el) and assigned to God: vehayu li halviyim — they shall be Mine. The first-person li (to Me) asserts divine ownership; the Levites belong to the LORD, not to the tribe or the people.
15. The sequence: first purification (tihar) and wave offering (tenufah), then service. Only after these rites may they la'avod et-ohel mo'ed — serve the tent of meeting. The repetition of purification and tenufah in vv 15 and 21 may reflect the distinction between the initial consecration (here) and its actual performance (v 21).
16. Netunim netunim () — doubly given, wholly devoted. The Levites substitute for peter kol-rechem (), the firstborn who open the womb. On the night of the Exodus, God claimed every Egyptian firstborn; He likewise claims Israel's firstborn. The Levites serve in their place — one tribe redeems the rest.

17. The rationale for the Levite substitution: kol bekhlor bibnei Yisra'el (every firstborn of the Israelites) belongs to God. Beyom hakoti kol bekhlor be'erets Mitsrayim — on the day of the tenth plague — God consecrated (hiqdashti) Israel's firstborn to Himself. The Levites fulfill that claim so that firstborn sons need not be literally devoted to sanctuary service.
18. Tachar kol bekhlor bibnei Yisra'el — in place of every firstborn. The substitution is complete: the entire tribe of Levi serves as the LORD's portion, releasing the firstborn of the other tribes from direct sanctuary duty.
19. The Levites are netunim (given) to Aaron and his sons — they serve under priestly authority. Their duties: la'avod et-avodat benei Yisra'el (to do Israel's service) and lekaper al-benei Yisra'el (to make atonement for Israel). The consequence: velo yihyeh negef (no plague) when Israel approaches the qodesh. Untrained approach to the sanctuary brings death (e.g., Nadab and Abihu); the Levites are a buffer.
20. Kekhol asher tsivvah YHWH et-Mosheh lalviyim — exactly as the LORD commanded Moses for the Levites. The refrain of obedient execution (cf. Lev 8) marks the ceremony as fully compliant. Moses, Aaron, and kol adat benei Yisra'el all participate in the rite.
21. Hitachate'u () — Hithpael of chata, they purified themselves. Aaron performs the tenufah and the kapparah (atonement). The narrative reports the actual performance of the rites prescribed in vv 6-15.
22. The Levites begin avodatam — their service. They work lifnei Aharon velifnei banav (before Aaron and his sons), under priestly oversight. The section break () concludes the consecration narrative before the age regulations.
23. A new divine speech introduces the age limits for Levite service. Numbers 4 specified ages 30-50 for the Kohathites, Gershonites, and Merarites in transport duties; here the range is 25-50 for general tabernacle service — a lower entry age, possibly for lighter duties.
24. Miben chamesh ve'esrim shanah vama'alah — from twenty-five years and upward. Litsbo tseva () — to enlist for service, to perform the work. The tseva (host/service) language echoes military muster; Levite service is Israel's sacred militia.
25. Yashuv mits'va ha'avodah () — they shall turn back, retire from the service. Retirement at fifty may reflect the physical demands of tabernacle work — carrying, assembling, maintaining — or a rotational model that gives younger Levites opportunity.
26. Retired Levites (50+) may vesheret et-echav — assist their brothers — by shomer mishmeret (keeping the charge/guard), but avodah lo ya'avod — they perform no service. They retain a supporting role (supervision? oversight?) while heavy labor passes to the next generation. Kakha ta'aseh lalviyim bemishmerotam — thus you shall do for the Levites in their watches.

9

Summary: *Israel observes its first wilderness Passover, one year after the exodus. When men ritually contaminated by corpse contact ask why they should be excluded, Moses consults God, who establishes a second Passover (Pesach Sheni) in the second month for those unable to observe the first. The chapter closes with the cloud over the tabernacle governing Israel's movements: when it lifts, they march; when it settles, they camp.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *New law is born from a question. The corpse-contaminated men do not accept exclusion passively — they ask lamah niggara ('why should we be diminished?'), and their protest prompts divine revelation of the second Passover. Moses himself does not presume to answer: imdu ve'eshma'ah ('wait, and I will hear'). The cloud narrative (vv. 15-23) transforms weather into theology — Israel's entire schedule of movement and rest depends on divine initiative, not human planning.*

Translation Friction: *The time phrase bein ha'arbayim ('between the evenings,' v. 3) — the appointed hour for slaughtering the Passover lamb — has been debated since antiquity. We rendered it 'at twilight,' following the consensus that it refers to late afternoon. The term mo'ed ('appointed time') in verse 2 frames Passover not as a spontaneous celebration but as a fixed divine calendar event — we preserved this specificity rather than softening it to 'season.'*

Connections: *This Passover observance (v. 5) is the first since the original in Exodus 12. The second Passover provision (v. 11) is referenced in 2 Chronicles 30:2-3, where Hezekiah uses it to hold a belated Passover for the reunited kingdom. The cloud-and-fire motif (vv. 15-23) recalls Exodus 13:21-22 and anticipates the tabernacle theology of Exodus 40:34-38.*

1The LORD spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after the Israelites had left Egypt. He said: 2The Israelites are to celebrate the Passover at its fixed time. 3On the fourteenth day of this month, at twilight, you shall observe it at its appointed time. Observe it according to all its statutes and all its rules. 4Moses relayed this to the

Israelites, and they were to observe the Passover. ⁵They celebrated the Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month, at twilight, in the wilderness of Sinai. Just as the LORD had commanded Moses, so the Israelites did. ⁶But there were men who were unclean because of contact with a human corpse, so they could not observe the Passover on that day. They came before Moses and Aaron that same day ⁷and said to him: "We are unclean because of a human corpse. Why should we be excluded from presenting the LORD's offering at its appointed time among the Israelites?" ⁸Moses said to them: "Wait here. I will inquire what the LORD commands concerning you." ⁹The LORD spoke to Moses, saying: ¹⁰Speak to the Israelites and say: When anyone among you or your descendants is unclean because of a corpse, or is on a distant journey, that person shall nevertheless observe the Passover to the LORD. ¹¹They shall observe it on the fourteenth day of the second month, at twilight. They shall eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs. ¹²They shall not leave any of it until morning, nor shall they break any bone in it. They shall observe it according to every ordinance of the Passover. ¹³But anyone who is clean and not on a journey, yet neglects to observe the Passover — that person shall be cut off from among the people, because they did not present the LORD's offering at its appointed time. That person shall bear their sin. ¹⁴When a resident alien dwells among you and wishes to observe the Passover to the LORD, that person shall observe it according to the statute of the Passover and according to its rule. One statute applies to you, to the resident alien, and to the native of the land. ¹⁵On the day the tabernacle was set up, the cloud covered the tabernacle, the tent of the covenant. In the evening it appeared like fire over the tabernacle until morning. ¹⁶This was the constant pattern: the cloud covered the tabernacle during the day, and what looked like fire covered it at night. ¹⁷Whenever the cloud lifted from the tent, the Israelites would set out. And wherever the cloud settled, there the Israelites would camp. ¹⁸At the LORD's direction the Israelites set out, and at the LORD's direction they camped. As long as the cloud remained over the tabernacle, they stayed in camp. ¹⁹When the cloud remained over the tabernacle for many days, the Israelites kept the LORD's charge and did not set out. ²⁰Sometimes the cloud was over the tabernacle only a few days. At the LORD's direction they would camp, and at the LORD's direction they would set out. ²¹Sometimes the cloud remained from evening until morning, and when it lifted in the morning they set out. Or it might lift by day or by night — whenever it lifted, they set out. ²²Whether two days, or a month, or longer — as long as the cloud stayed over the tabernacle, the Israelites remained in camp and did not set out. When it lifted, they set out. ²³At the LORD's direction they camped, and at the LORD's direction they set out. They kept the LORD's charge, according to the LORD's direction through Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening places this revelation in midbar Sinai ('wilderness of Sinai') during the second year after the exodus. The first month (Nisan/Abib) marks the anniversary of the exodus and sets the stage for Passover observance — Israel's first wilderness Passover since the original.
2. The jussive vey'a'su ('let them do') conveys a divine directive. The key term mo'ed ('appointed season') frames Passover not as a spontaneous feast but as a calendrically fixed holy day — God's sovereignty over Israel's worship calendar.
3. Bein ha'arbayim ('between the evenings') specifies the slaughter time — late afternoon, as interpreted in Exodus 12:6. The doubling of chuqqotav u-khechol mishpatav ('its statutes and its ordinances') stresses full compliance: every regulation from Exodus 12–13 applies.
4. Simple narrative pivot: Moses transmits the directive. The verb la'asot ('to do') echoes the Passover as an action — slaughter, meal, observance — not mere attendance but participation.
5. The fulfillment formula ke-khol asher tsivvah YHWH et-Moshe ken 'asu ('according to all that the LORD commanded Moses, so they did') affirms complete obedience. This is Israel's first Passover since leaving Egypt — a wilderness observance that reenacts the exodus narrative in the very space of their deliverance.
6. Teme'im lenefesh adam ('unclean by reason of a human soul/corpse') — corpse impurity (tum'at met) rendered such persons ritually excluded from the holy meal. Their initiative in approaching Moses and Aaron shows they desired participation; the law had not yet addressed their situation.
7. Lamah niggara ('why are we kept back/diminished?') — the men protest their exclusion. They call the Passover qorban YHWH ('offering of the LORD'), framing it as a sacrifice they must not miss. Their question prompts new revelation: the provision for a second Passover (Pesach Sheni).
8. Imdu ve'eshma'ah ('stand and I will hear') — Moses does not presume to answer from prior revelation. He seeks fresh guidance, modeling dependence on divine instruction. The pause (petuchah) separates this narrative from the revelation that follows.

9. Standard revelation formula: wayy'dabber YHWH el-Moshe le'mor. God responds to the men's petition with new legislation.
10. Ish ish ('each person') — individual application. Two exemptions qualify for the delayed Passover: tame' lenefesh (corpse impurity) or bederekh rechokah ('on a distant way'). The phrase ledorotekhem ('for your generations') extends this provision permanently. The verb v'asah pesach implies active observance, not excusal.
11. The second month (Iyyar) mirrors the first month's date — fourteenth day, bein ha'arbayim. Al matzot u-merorim ('with unleavened bread and bitter herbs') preserves the Exodus 12:8 requirements; only the roasted lamb and the haste are implied. The delayed Passover is fully equivalent in ritual.
12. The prohibition against leaving leftovers (lo yash'iru) and breaking bones (etsem lo yeshberu-bo) matches Exodus 12:10, 46. These rules protect the lamb's symbolic integrity: consumed in one night, unbroken — an image of wholeness and complete participation in the covenant meal.
13. The penalty for willful neglect is severe: venichreta hanefesh ('that soul shall be cut off') — exclusion from the covenant community, possibly death. The contrast is sharp: those with legitimate excuse receive a second chance; those without excuse face kareth. Chatt'o yissa ('he shall bear his sin') — the guilt remains on the offender.
14. Ger ('sojourner, resident alien') who wishes to observe Passover is fully included: chuqqat ha-pesach u-khemishpato — one law for native and stranger. This foreshadows the inclusive vision of the covenant: any who align with Israel's worship share the same obligation and privilege. Ezerach ha'aretz ('native of the land') contrasts with ger.
15. Beyom haqim et-hammishkan ('on the day the tabernacle was raised') — the cloud (he'anan) and fire manifest God's presence over the sanctuary. Ohel ha'edut ('tent of the testimony') houses the covenant tablets. K'mar'eh-'esh ('like the appearance of fire') — the night manifestation recalls the exodus pillar of fire (Exodus 13:21–22).
16. Tamid ('continuously, always') — the divine presence was constant. The alternating manifestations (cloud by day, fire by night) provided both guidance and protection throughout the wilderness journey, matching Exodus 40:38.
17. Lefi he'alot ha'anan ('according to the cloud's rising') — Israel's movement is entirely governed by divine signal. The verb yishkon ('dwell, settle') describes the cloud's resting; yachanu describes Israel's encampment. They camp where God's presence rests; they move when it lifts.
18. Al-pi YHWH ('at the mouth/command of the LORD') — repeated four times in vv 18–23. The phrase emphasizes that Israel's itinerary is not human-planned but divinely dictated. Kol-yemei asher yishkon ('all the days that it remained') — duration is variable; Israel waits without knowing how long.
19. Beha'arikh... yamim rabbim ('when it prolonged... many days') — extended stays required patient obedience. Mishmeret YHWH ('the charge of the LORD') — Israel's duty is to follow the cloud's signal. Not moving when the cloud stayed was as much obedience as moving when it lifted.
20. Yamim mispar ('days of number' — a few days) contrasts with yamim rabbim in v 19. Short stays and long stays alike require the same response: camp when it rests, move when it lifts. No human logic determines the schedule; only the cloud.
21. The cloud could rest briefly (evening to morning) or lift at any hour. Yomam va-layelah ('by day or by night') — Israel must be ready to move at any moment. The unpredictability demands constant attentiveness to the divine presence.
22. The range — yomayim, chodesh, yamim ('two days, a month, or days') — covers the full spectrum of possible stays. Israel could camp at a place for years (as at Sinai) or for a single night. The principle is constant: rest when the cloud rests, move when it moves.
23. The chapter closes with a summary: Israel's entire wilderness existence — when to camp, when to travel — was governed by the LORD. Be-yad Moshe ('by the hand of Moses') — Moses mediated the cloud's significance; he interpreted when to move. Mishmeret YHWH frames the whole as covenant-keeping: attentiveness to God's guidance.

10

Summary: God commands Moses to craft two silver trumpets for summoning the assembly and signaling camp movements. Distinct blast patterns communicate different orders: sustained notes for assembly, staccato blasts for marching. Israel then departs Sinai for the first time, following the prescribed marching order. Moses invites his father-in-law Hobab to accompany them as a wilderness guide.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter marks the pivot of the entire book. Everything before it (chapters 1-9) takes place at Sinai; everything after it is movement through the wilderness. The departure formula (v. 33) places the ark of the covenant three days' journey ahead of the people — the LORD's presence leads, not follows. Moses's invocation when the ark set out — qumah YHWH ('Arise, O LORD,' v. 35) — and when it rested transforms troop movement into liturgy.

Translation Friction: The chatsotsrot kesef ('silver trumpets,' v. 2) are distinct from the shofar (ram's horn). We rendered teru'ah as 'staccato blast' to distinguish it from the teki'ah ('sustained note'), since the Hebrew signal system depends on the hearer recognizing the difference. The term shefi (v. 33 in some versifications) for the place Balaam goes is debated — in chapter 10 the wilderness geography is similarly uncertain at several points.

Connections: The silver trumpets are made miqshah ('hammered work,' v. 2), the same technique as the menorah (Exodus 25:18). Moses's prayer at the ark's departure (v. 35) is quoted in Psalm 68:1. The invitation to Hobab (vv. 29-32) connects to the Kenite clan tradition in Judges 1:16 and 4:11. The marching order follows Numbers 2 precisely.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Make two silver trumpets — craft them from hammered metalwork. They will serve you for summoning the congregation and for signaling the camps to move out." ³When both are sounded, the entire congregation must gather to you at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting. ⁴If only one is sounded, then the chieftains — the heads of Israel's divisions of a thousand — must gather to you. ⁵When you sound a staccato blast, the camps stationed on the east side will set out. ⁶When you sound a staccato blast a second time, the camps stationed on the south will begin their march. A staccato blast will be sounded for each stage of departure. ⁷When assembling the community, you must sound a sustained note but not a staccato blast. ⁸The sons of Aaron, the priests, are the ones who must sound the trumpets. This is a permanent statute for you throughout your generations. ⁹When you go to war in your land against an adversary who is oppressing you, sound the staccato blast on the trumpets. You will then be remembered before the LORD your God, and you will be delivered from your enemies. ¹⁰On your days of celebration, at your appointed festivals, and at the beginning of each month, you must sound the trumpets over your burnt offerings and over your fellowship sacrifices. They will serve as a reminder on your behalf before your God. I am the LORD your God. ¹¹On the twentieth day of the second month in the second year, the cloud lifted from above the Tabernacle of the Testimony. ¹²The Israelites set out on their stages of travel from the Wilderness of Sinai, and the cloud settled in the Wilderness of Paran. ¹³They set out for the first time according to the LORD's directive, communicated through Moses. ¹⁴The banner of the camp of Judah's descendants set out first, organized by their military divisions. Commanding its forces was Nahshon son of Amminadab. ¹⁵Over the forces of the tribe of Issachar's descendants was Nethanel son of Zuar. ¹⁶Over the forces of the tribe of Zebulun's descendants was Eliab son of Helon. ¹⁷Then the Tabernacle was dismantled, and the Gershonites and Merarites — who carried the Tabernacle's structural components — set out. ¹⁸The banner of the camp of Reuben set out next, organized by their military divisions. Commanding its forces was Elizur son of Shedeur. ¹⁹Over the forces of the tribe of Simeon's descendants was Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai. ²⁰Over the forces of the tribe of Gad's descendants was Eliasaph son of Deuel. ²¹Then the Kohathites set out, carrying the sacred objects. The Tabernacle structure would be reassembled before they arrived at the new site. ²²The banner of the camp of Ephraim's descendants set out next, organized by their military divisions. Commanding its forces was Elishama son of Ammihud. ²³Over the forces of the tribe of Manasseh's descendants was Gamaliel son of Pedahzur. ²⁴Over the forces of the tribe of Benjamin's descendants was Abidan son of Gideoni. ²⁵The banner of the camp of Dan's descendants set out last, serving as the rear guard for all the camps, organized by their military divisions. Commanding its forces was Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai. ²⁶Over the forces of the tribe of Asher's descendants was Pagiel son of Ocran. ²⁷Over the forces of the tribe of Naphtali's descendants was Ahira son of Enan. ²⁸This was the marching order of the Israelites, organized by their military divisions. And so they set out. ²⁹Moses said to Hobab son of Reuel the Midianite, Moses's father-in-law, "We are setting out for the place about which the LORD said, 'I will give it to you.' Come with us, and we will treat you well, because the LORD has promised good things for Israel." ³⁰But he replied, "I will not go. Instead, I will return to my own land and to my relatives." ³¹Moses said, "Please do not leave us. You know where we should camp in the wilderness, and you can serve as our eyes." ³²"If you come with us, then whatever good the LORD does for us, we will share that same good with you." ³³They traveled from the mountain of the LORD a distance of three days. The ark of the LORD's covenant went ahead of them during the three-day march to scout out a resting place for them. ³⁴The cloud of the LORD was over them by day whenever they set out from the camp. ³⁵Whenever the ark set out, Moses would say: "Rise up, LORD! Let your enemies be scattered, and let those who hate you flee from your presence!" ³⁶And when it came to rest, he would say: "Return, LORD, to the

countless thousands of Israel."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard divine speech formula *vayedaber YHVH el-Mosheh lemor* ('and the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') introduces a new legislative section. This formula marks the transition from the previous chapters' organizational material to a new set of cultic-military instructions regarding the silver trumpets.
2. The *chatsotsrot kesef* ('silver trumpets') are distinct from the *shofar* (ram's horn); these are long, straight metal instruments. The term *mikshah* ('hammered work') indicates they were formed from a single sheet of beaten silver, not cast — the same technique used for the menorah (Exodus 25:18). Their dual purpose — *mikra ha'edah* ('calling the assembly') and *massa' ha-machanot* ('setting the camps in motion') — made them instruments of both governance and military logistics.
3. The verb *taq'u* ('they blow') in plural — both trumpets sounded together — signals a full assembly. The gathering point is *petach ohel mo'ed* ('the entrance of the Tent of Meeting'), the designated center of communal life. The reflexive verb *no'adu* ('they shall assemble themselves') implies an obligation on the people to respond to the signal.
4. A single trumpet (*be'achat*) convenes only the *nesi'im* ('chieftains, tribal leaders'), identified as *rashei alfei Yisrael* ('heads of the thousands of Israel'). The word *elef* ('thousand') here functions as a military unit, not a precise number — these are commanders of large contingents. This graded signal system — two trumpets for all, one for leaders only — reveals sophisticated communication infrastructure.
5. The *teru'ah* is a series of short, sharp bursts — distinct from the *teki'ah*, which is a single sustained note. This staccato signal (*teru'ah*) specifically commands movement rather than assembly. The camps on the eastern side (*kedmah*) marched first; the east held Judah's camp (Numbers 2:3), the leading tribal division.
6. The second *teru'ah* ('staccato blast') triggers the southern camps — Reuben's division (Numbers 2:10). The concluding statement *teru'ah yitke'u lemase'eihem* ('a staccato blast they shall blow for their departures') establishes the general principle: each successive division moves out at its own alarm signal. The LXX and some traditions include third and fourth blasts for the west and north camps.
7. This verse draws the critical distinction: *titke'u velo tari'u* ('blow but do not sound an alarm'). The sustained *teki'ah* summons people to gather; the broken *teru'ah* commands them to march. Confusing the two signals would create chaos — people marching when they should assemble, or assembling when they should march. The verb *hakhil* ('to assemble') shares the root *q-h-l* with *qahal* ('congregation, assembly').
8. The trumpet-sounding is exclusively priestly — *benei Aharon hakohanim* ('the sons of Aaron, the priests') — not a task for Levites or laypeople. This is designated *chuqqat olam ledoroteikhem* ('a permanent statute throughout your generations'), placing the trumpet protocol among the enduring institutions of Israelite worship, not a temporary wilderness arrangement.
9. The military application shifts from wilderness logistics to future warfare in the land. The phrase *ha-tsar ha-tsorer etkhem* ('the adversary who is oppressing you') uses the doubled root *ts-r-r* for emphasis — a genuine hostile threat, not an offensive war. The theological promise is striking: *vahareiotem... venizkartem* ('you shall sound the alarm... and you shall be remembered'). The trumpets function not as magical instruments but as an act of appeal to God — the sound triggers divine 'remembrance' (*zikkaron*), a covenantal term meaning God's active intervention.
10. Three occasions for festive trumpeting: *yom simchatkhem* ('your day of celebration'), *mo'adeikhem* ('your appointed festivals' — the pilgrimage feasts), and *rashei chodsheikhem* ('the beginnings of your months' — new moon observances). The trumpets accompany both *olot* ('burnt offerings' — wholly consumed) and *zivchei shalmeikhem* ('fellowship sacrifices' — shared meals). The purpose is *zikkaron* ('a reminder, memorial') before God. The section closes with the sovereign self-identification formula *ani YHVH eloheikhem* ('I am the LORD your God'), anchoring the trumpet protocol in covenant relationship.
11. The precise date — the twentieth of the second month (*Iyyar*) in the second year after the Exodus — marks a pivotal moment. The cloud (*he'anan*) had settled over the *mishkan ha'edut* ('Tabernacle of the Testimony') since its erection on the first day of the first month (Exodus 40:17, 34). The verb *na'alah* ('lifted, ascended') signals divine permission to move — the cloud's movement is the visible expression of God's will for Israel's journey.
12. The phrase *lemase'eihem* ('in their stages of travel') indicates the journey consisted of multiple stops, not a single march. The departure from midbar Sinai ('Wilderness of Sinai') ends the extended encampment where Israel received the Torah and built the Tabernacle. The cloud's settling in midbar Paran ('Wilderness of Paran') — the vast desert of the northeastern Sinai peninsula — marks the beginning of the wilderness wandering period.
13. The phrase *al-pi YHVH* ('according to the mouth/command of the LORD') emphasizes divine initiative, while *beyad-Mosheh* ('by the hand of Moses') identifies Moses as the human instrument. The word *barishonah* ('at first, for the first time') marks this as the inaugural departure from Sinai — the first march under the newly organized camp system described in chapters 1-4.
14. Judah marches *barishonah* ('first'), fulfilling the arrangement of Numbers 2:9. The *degel* ('banner, standard') represents the entire tribal division — Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun together. *Nachshon ben Amminadav* is the same leader who, according to rabbinic tradition, was first to enter the Sea of Reeds. His name may derive from *nachash* ('serpent') or the root *n-ch-sh* ('to divine, to be bold').
15. *Nethanel* (*Netan'el* — 'God has given') son of *Tsu'ar* commands Issachar's division, marching under Judah's banner as part of the eastern camp. This is the same leader listed in Numbers 1:8 and 2:5, maintaining consistency in the command structure.

16. Eliab (Eli'av — 'my God is father') son of Chelon completes the first three-tribe marching group under Judah's banner. Zebulun, the last of Leah's sons, rounds out the eastern camp division.
17. The passive hurad ('was taken down, dismantled') describes the controlled disassembly of the mishkan. Gershon's clan carried the curtains, coverings, and hangings (Numbers 4:24-26); Merari's clan carried the boards, bars, pillars, and sockets (Numbers 4:31-32). They marched second, between Judah and Reuben, so the Tabernacle structure could be erected at the new campsite before the Kohathites arrived with the sacred vessels (v. 21).
18. Reuben's camp — the southern division comprising Reuben, Simeon, and Gad — marches second. Elitsur (Eli-tsur — 'my God is a rock') son of Shedei'ur ('the Almighty is light/fire') commands the division. Despite being Jacob's firstborn, Reuben holds second position in the march — reflecting the loss of primacy described in Genesis 49:3-4.
19. Shelumiel (Shelumi'el — 'God is my peace/wholeness') son of Tsurishaddai ('my rock is the Almighty') leads Simeon's contingent within the southern division. Simeon's tribe would later be absorbed into Judah's territory (Joshua 19:1-9), making this one of its last appearances as an independent military unit.
20. Elyasaf (El-yasaf — 'God has added') son of De'u'el ('known by God') commands Gad's forces. The name De'u'el appears as Re'u'el in some manuscripts (Numbers 2:14), a common confusion between the Hebrew letters dalet and resh, which are nearly identical in many scripts.
21. The Kohathites (Qehatim) carried the ha-mikdash ('the sacred objects') — the ark, table, lampstand, altars, and their associated vessels (Numbers 4:4-15). The logistical brilliance: the Gershonites and Merarites (v. 17) marched ahead with the structural components, so they could erect the Tabernacle frame (hekimu et ha-mishkan) before the Kohathites arrived (ad bo'am — 'by the time of their coming') with the holy furnishings to install.
22. Ephraim's camp — the western division — marches third, consisting of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin (the Rachel tribes). Elishama (Eli-shama — 'my God has heard') son of Ammihud ('my kinsman is majestic') leads this division. Ephraim, though Joseph's younger son, holds precedence over Manasse per Jacob's blessing (Genesis 48:17-20).
23. Gamliel (Gamli'el — 'God is my reward/recompense') son of Pedahtsur ('the rock has redeemed') commands Manasseh's forces. The name Gamaliel would become prominent in later Jewish history — most notably the Pharisaic teacher mentioned in Acts 5:34.
24. Avidan (Avi-dan — 'my father has judged') son of Gid'oni ('my cutter/warrior') leads Benjamin, the smallest tribe, which marches as the last unit in Ephraim's western division. Benjamin's placement with the Joseph tribes reflects their shared ancestry through Rachel.
25. Dan's division marches last as me'assef lekhol ha-machanot ('the rear guard for all the camps'). The word me'assef ('gatherer, collector') indicates their role was to pick up stragglers, protect the vulnerable, and guard against attack from behind. Achi'ezer (Achi-ezer — 'my brother is help') son of Ammishaddai ('my kinsman is the Almighty') commands. Dan's position as the powerful rear guard contrasts with its northern border placement in the camp arrangement.
26. Pag'iel (Pagi'el — 'God has encountered/met') son of Okhran ('troubled') leads Asher's contingent in Dan's rear-guard division. Asher, whose name means 'happy' or 'blessed,' was Zilpah's son and received the blessing of rich food and royal delicacies (Genesis 49:20).
27. Achira (Achi-ra — 'my brother is a friend/companion') son of Einan ('having eyes/springs') commands Naphtali, the last tribe listed. Naphtali completes the northern/rear-guard division alongside Dan and Asher — all three being sons of the concubines Bilhah and Zilpah.
28. A summary statement closing the march-order section. The word mas'ei ('stages, journeys') combined with tsiv'otam ('their military divisions') frames the wilderness travel as both pilgrimage and military campaign. The final vayissa'u ('and they set out') shifts the narrative from prescription to action — the march has begun.
29. Chovav (Hobab — possibly meaning 'beloved') is identified as ben Re'u'el ha-Midyani choten Mosheh ('son of Reuel the Midianite, Moses's father-in-law'). Whether choten refers to Hobab as father-in-law or brother-in-law is debated — the Hebrew term covers multiple in-law relationships. Moses's invitation lekhhah ittanu vehetavnu lakh ('come with us and we will do good for you') extends covenant blessing to a non-Israelite — a remarkable act of inclusion. The phrase dibber-tov ('has spoken good') carries the weight of divine promise.
30. Hobab's refusal — lo elekh ('I will not go') — echoes the pull of native land and kinship. His preference for artsi ('my land') and moladti ('my birthplace, kindred') over Israel's promised destiny creates narrative tension. The parallel with Naomi and Orpah (Ruth 1:15) is notable: both present the choice between one's own people and joining Israel's covenantal journey.
31. Moses's plea al-na ta'azov otanu ('please do not abandon us') reveals practical dependence on Hobab's desert expertise. The phrase vehayita lanu le'einayim ('you will be for us as eyes') is a vivid metaphor — Hobab's knowledge of the wilderness terrain, water sources, and safe routes would be indispensable. This request does not contradict divine guidance through the cloud; it shows Moses integrating human wisdom with divine direction.
32. Moses sweetens the offer: ha-tov hahu asher yeitiv YHVH immanu vehetavnu lakh ('the good that the LORD does well for us, we will do well for you'). The triple repetition of the root y-t-v ('good, to do good') emphasizes reciprocity — Hobab's welfare will be bound up with Israel's divine blessing. The text does not record Hobab's final answer, but Judges 1:16 and 4:11 indicate his descendants (the Kenites) did settle in Israel's territory.
33. The har YHVH ('mountain of the LORD') — Mount Sinai — is called by this title only here and in Genesis 22:14, connecting Sinai with Moriah. The aron berit-YHVH ('ark of the LORD's covenant') traveling ahead — nosei'a lifneiheim ('going before them') — with the purpose latur lahem

menuchah ('to scout out a resting place for them') personifies the ark as a scout or advance guard. The verb latur ('to scout, explore') is the same word used for the spies' mission in chapter 13.

34. The anan YHVH ('cloud of the LORD') provided both guidance and protection aleihem yomam ('over them by day') — shielding them from the desert sun. The phrase benos'am min ha-machaneh ('when they set out from the camp') specifies that the cloud's protective presence was particularly active during the vulnerable moments of travel, not only when stationary.
35. This verse and the next are set apart in the Torah scroll by inverted nuns (), marking them as a distinct unit — some rabbis considered them a separate book, making the Torah consist of seven books rather than five. Moses's cry kumah YHVH ('Rise up, LORD!') is a battle invocation: the ark's forward movement represents God going to war. The parallel verbs yafutsu ('be scattered') and yanusu ('flee') describe total rout. The phrase mesan'ekha mipanekha ('those who hate you, from your face/presence') identifies Israel's enemies as God's enemies.
36. The companion prayer to verse 35: when the ark halted (uvnuchoh — 'when it rested'), Moses invoked God's return. The phrase shuvah YHVH rivevot alfei Yisrael ('Return, LORD, to the myriads of Israel's thousands') presents God as dwelling among the vast multitude. The word rivevot ('myriads, ten-thousands') combined with alfei ('thousands') expresses an innumerable host. These two verses (35-36) became foundational liturgical texts — recited in synagogue when the Torah scroll is removed from and returned to the ark.

11

Summary: *The people's complaints ignite divine fire at the camp's edge (Taberah). Then the asafsuf ('mixed rabble') craves meat, triggering a deeper crisis: the people weep for Egyptian food, Moses buckles under the burden of leadership, God appoints seventy elders to share the prophetic spirit, and quail arrive in devastating abundance — followed by a plague at Kibroth-hattaavah ('graves of craving').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Moses's raw anguish is extraordinary: he asks God, 'Did I conceive this people? Did I give birth to them?' (v. 12). The Hebrew uses maternal language — haray ('conceive') and yalad ('give birth') — for a male leader overwhelmed by his flock. The seventy elders receive the spirit and prophesy, but two men (Eldad and Medad) prophesy in the camp without going to the tent. Joshua wants them stopped; Moses replies, 'Would that all the LORD's people were prophets' (v. 29) — a vision of democratized prophecy.*

Translation Friction: *The rare hitpa'el participle ke-mit'onenim ('like those grumbling,' v. 1) describes habitual, self-pitying complaint — but the text never identifies what they complained about. We rendered it 'grumble bitterly' to preserve the vagueness. The cognate accusative hit'avvu ta'avah ('they craved a craving,' v. 4) is an intensified construction expressing compulsive desire that resists smooth English; we used 'intense craving' to capture the Hebrew emphasis.*

Connections: *The nostalgic food catalog (v. 5) — fish, cucumbers, melons, leeks, onions, garlic — recalls the Nile Delta's produce, with bitter irony: chinnam ('for free') erases that they were slaves. The seventy elders parallel the seventy who ate with God on Sinai (Exodus 24:1, 9). The place-name Kibroth-hattaavah (v. 34) inscribes the failure into the landscape, as Taberah does in verse 3.*

¹The people began to grumble bitterly, and it was offensive in the hearing of the LORD. When the LORD heard it, His anger blazed, and the fire of the LORD burned among them, consuming people at the edges of the camp. ²The people cried out to Moses, and Moses prayed to the LORD, and the fire died down. ³That place was named Taberah, because the fire of the LORD had burned among them. ⁴The mixed rabble among them developed an intense craving, and the Israelites also resumed their weeping, saying, "Who will give us meat to eat?" ⁵"We remember the fish we used to eat in Egypt at no cost — the cucumbers, the melons, the leeks, the onions, and the garlic!" ⁶"But now our appetite has withered away. There is nothing at all — our eyes see nothing but this manna." ⁷The manna was like coriander seed, and its appearance resembled the look of bdellium resin. ⁸The people would go around gathering it, then grind it in hand mills or crush it in mortars, cook it in pots, and make it into flatcakes. Its flavor was like the taste of rich cream. ⁹When the dew settled on the camp at night, the manna would descend with it. ¹⁰Moses heard the people weeping by their family groups, each person at the entrance of their tent. The LORD's anger blazed intensely, and Moses too was deeply troubled. ¹¹Moses said to the LORD, "Why have you brought such misery on your servant? Why have I not found favor in your sight, that you place the burden of this entire people on me? ¹²Did I conceive this entire people? Did I give birth to them, that you should tell me, 'Carry them against your

chest, the way a caretaker carries a nursing infant,' all the way to the land you swore to their ancestors?" ¹³"Where am I supposed to get meat for this entire people? They keep weeping at me, saying, 'Give us meat to eat!' ¹⁴I cannot carry this entire people by myself — it is too heavy for me. ¹⁵If this is how you are going to treat me, then please kill me right now — if I have found any favor in your sight — and do not let me witness my own ruin." ¹⁶The LORD said to Moses, "Gather seventy men from Israel's elders — men you recognize as the people's true elders and officials — and bring them to the Tent of Meeting, where they will stand alongside you. ¹⁷I will come down and speak with you there. I will draw off some of the spirit that rests on you and place it on them, so they will share the burden of the people with you, and you will no longer carry it alone." ¹⁸"Tell the people: Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, because you are going to eat meat. You have wept in the LORD's hearing, saying, 'Who will give us meat to eat? We had it better in Egypt!' So the LORD will give you meat, and you will eat it. ¹⁹You will not eat it for just one day, or two days, or five days, or ten days, or even twenty days — ²⁰but for an entire month — until it comes out of your nostrils and becomes revolting to you — because you have rejected the LORD who is among you, weeping before Him and saying, 'Why did we ever leave Egypt?'" ²¹Moses said, "The people I am among number six hundred thousand on foot, and you have said, 'I will give them meat to eat for an entire month!' ²²Could enough flocks and herds be slaughtered for them to be satisfied? Could all the fish in the sea be gathered for them and still be enough?" ²³The LORD answered Moses, "Is the LORD's hand too short? Now you will see whether or not my word comes true for you." ²⁴Moses went out and relayed the LORD's words to the people. He gathered seventy men from the people's elders and stationed them around the Tent. ²⁵The LORD descended in the cloud and spoke to him. He drew off some of the spirit that was on Moses and placed it on the seventy elders. When the spirit rested on them, they prophesied — but they did not do so again. ²⁶Two men had remained in the camp — one named Eldad and the other named Medad. The spirit rested on them as well; they were among those registered but had not gone out to the Tent. They prophesied right there in the camp. ²⁷A young man ran and reported to Moses, "Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp!" ²⁸Joshua son of Nun, who had been Moses's attendant since his youth, spoke up and said, "My lord Moses, stop them!" ²⁹Moses replied, "Are you jealous on my account? If only all the LORD's people were prophets — if only the LORD would place His spirit on every one of them!" ³⁰Then Moses withdrew to the camp — he and the elders of Israel. ³¹A wind went out from the LORD and swept quail in from the sea, dropping them around the camp — about a day's walk in every direction — piled roughly three feet deep on the ground. ³²The people were on their feet all that day, all that night, and all the next day gathering the quail. The person who gathered the least collected ten homers. They spread the birds out all around the camp to dry. ³³The meat was still between their teeth — before it was even chewed — when the LORD's anger blazed against the people, and the LORD struck the people with an extremely severe plague. ³⁴That place was named Kibroth-hattaavah — "Graves of Craving" — because it was there they buried the people who had been consumed by desire. ³⁵From Kibroth-hattaavah the people traveled on to Hazeroth, and they remained at Hazeroth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The rare hitpael participle *ke-mit'onenim* ('like those grumbling/moaning') suggests habitual, self-pitying complaint rather than a specific grievance — the text never identifies what they complained about. The phrase *ra be'oznei YHVH* ('evil/offensive in the ears of the LORD') anthropomorphically portrays God as hearing and being grieved. The *esh YHVH* ('fire of the LORD') that consumed *biktseh ha-machaneh* ('at the edge/outskirts of the camp') struck the periphery — the vulnerable margins — perhaps where the less committed had positioned themselves.
2. The sequence reveals Moses's mediatorial role: the people cry to Moses (*yits'aq* — a desperate shriek), Moses prays to God (*yitpallel* — formal intercession), and the fire subsides (*tishqa* — 'sank down, was swallowed up'). The verb *shaqa* implies the fire was absorbed back into the ground rather than extinguished by water — a supernatural cessation matching the supernatural origin.
3. The place-name *Tav'erah* derives from the root *b-'r* ('to burn'), creating an etymological memorial: the location's very name — 'Burning' — permanently records the divine judgment. This naming convention (event place-name) recurs throughout Numbers, inscribing Israel's failures into the landscape of their journey.
4. The *asafsuf* ('mixed rabble, riffraff') — a contemptuous term for the non-Israelite group that left Egypt with them (Exodus 12:38) — instigated the craving. The cognate accusative *hit'avvu ta'avah* ('they craved a craving') is an intensified construction expressing overwhelming, compulsive desire. The contagion spread: *gam benei Yisrael* ('even the Israelites') joined in. Their question *mi ya'akilenu vasar* ('who will feed us meat?') is not a practical question but a complaint against God's provision.

5. The nostalgic catalog of Egyptian foods — dagah ('fish'), kishu'im ('cucumbers'), avatichim ('melons/watermelons'), chatsir ('leeks'), betsalim ('onions'), shumim ('garlic') — represents the Nile Delta's abundant produce. The word chinnam ('for free, at no cost') is bitterly ironic: they were slaves, so the food was 'free' only because they had no freedom to spend wages. Selective memory idealizes bondage while erasing its horrors.
6. The phrase nafshenu yeveishah ('our soul/appetite is dried up') expresses both physical and psychological desolation — their entire being feels desiccated. The contemptuous ein kol bilti el ha-man einenu ('there is nothing at all except this manna before our eyes') dismisses God's miraculous daily provision as monotonous and inadequate. The demonstrative tone — 'this manna' — drips with disdain for the divine gift.
7. The narrator interrupts the complaint with a parenthetical description of the manna (vv. 7-9), subtly countering the people's ingratitude. The man ('manna') is compared to zera-gad ('coriander seed') in shape and size — small, round grains. Its eino ('appearance, color') resembled bedolach ('bdellium'), a translucent aromatic resin — pale, lustrous, and beautiful. Far from the dull substance the people describe, the narrator presents manna as visually striking.
8. The description of manna preparation reveals its versatility: shatu ('they roamed about') to gather it, then tachanu vareichayim ('ground it in mills') or dakhu bammedokhah ('crushed it in a mortar'), bishlu baparur ('cooked it in a pot'), and asu oto ugot ('made it into cakes/flatbreads'). The phrase leshad ha-shamen ('the cream/richness of oil') describes its taste — leshad suggests moisture, freshness, richness. The manna was a complete, adaptable food source, underscoring the irrationality of the complaint.
9. The manna arrives with the nighttime dew (tal) — beredeth ha-tal ('when the dew descended') upon the camp, yered ha-man alav ('the manna would come down upon it'). The parallel descent of dew and manna associates the miraculous food with natural phenomena, presenting it as heaven's gift embedded within creation's rhythms. The manna appears each night, fresh and reliable, yet the people treat this daily miracle with contempt.
10. The scene is devastating: bokheh lemishpechotav ('weeping family by family') — this was not isolated grumbling but organized, household-by-household lamentation. Each person ish lefetach oholo ('at the entrance of their tent') made the weeping public and visible. Two reactions follow: vayyichar-af YHVH me'od ('the LORD's anger burned greatly') and uve'einei Mosheh ra ('and in Moses's eyes it was bad/distressing'). Moses is caught between divine wrath and human misery.
11. Moses's anguished prayer opens with two lamah ('why?') questions directed at God — an extraordinary act of raw honesty. The phrase hareota le'avdekha ('you have done evil/harm to your servant') is remarkably bold — Moses accuses God of mistreating him. The massa ('burden, load') of kol-ha'am hazeh ('this entire people') is crushing. Moses does not question God's existence or power, but his justice in assigning such an unbearable task.
12. Moses uses shocking maternal imagery: he'anokhi hariti ('Did I conceive?') and anokhi yelidtihi ('Did I give birth to them?'). The demand to sa'ehu vecheiqekha ('carry them in your bosom/chest') ka'asher yissa ha-omen et ha-yoneq ('as a wet-nurse/guardian carries a sucking child') casts the leadership role as intimate parental nurture. The omen ('guardian, nurse') is grammatically masculine — a male caretaker nursing an infant. Moses's point: this parental role belongs to God, not to him.
13. The question me'ayin li vasar ('from where would I have meat?') highlights the practical impossibility — no flocks or supply lines could feed hundreds of thousands. The people's demand tenah-lanu vasar venokhelah ('give us meat and let us eat!') treats Moses as their personal provisioner. The verb yivku alai ('they weep upon/against me') conveys the relentless emotional pressure of constant public weeping directed at Moses personally.
14. Moses's confession lo-ukhal anokhi levaddi laset ('I am not able alone to carry') echoes Jethro's earlier warning in Exodus 18:18. The word kaved ('heavy') — the same root as kavod ('glory') — ironically connects the weight of leadership with the weightiness of God's presence. What should produce glory has become an unbearable burden because the people refuse to cooperate with God's plan.
15. Moses reaches his breaking point: horgeni na harog ('kill me, please — yes, kill me!'). The infinitive absolute harog before the imperative intensifies the plea to almost desperate insistence. The paradoxical phrase im-matsati chen be'einekha ('if I have found favor in your eyes') frames death as an act of divine mercy — being killed would be a kindness compared to continued suffering. The phrase ve'al-er'eh bera'ati ('let me not see my misery/ruin') reveals Moses would rather die than watch the situation deteriorate further.
16. God responds not with rebuke but with structural relief. The shiv'im ish ('seventy men') echoes the seventy elders who ascended Sinai with Moses (Exodus 24:1, 9). The qualification asher yadata ('whom you know') empowers Moses to select proven leaders, not appointees by divine lottery. These must be both ziqnei ha'am ('elders of the people' — recognized community authorities) and shotrav ('its officials' — administrative functionaries). The location ohel mo'ed ('Tent of Meeting') sacralizes their appointment.
17. The verb ve'atsalti ('I will draw off, set aside') from the root 'ts-l ('to reserve, withdraw') describes God taking min-ha-ruach asher alekha ('from the spirit that is upon you') — not creating new spiritual endowment but distributing Moses's existing portion. This does not diminish Moses (as the rabbis noted, like lighting candles from a flame without reducing it), but it extends his spiritual authority to others. The goal is shared burden-bearing: venas'u ittekha ('they shall carry with you').
18. The command hitkaddeshu lemachar ('consecrate yourselves for tomorrow') typically precedes a theophany or sacred event — here it precedes divine judgment disguised as answered prayer. God's words echo the people's own complaint back to them: bekhitem be'oznei YHVH ('you have wept in the LORD's ears') and ki-tov lanu beMitsrayim ('it was good for us in Egypt'). The ominous repetition — venatan YHVH lakhem vasar va'akhaltem ('the LORD will give you meat and you will eat') — carries an edge: God will give them exactly what they demanded.

19. The escalating enumeration — yom echad ('one day'), yomayim ('two days'), chamishah yamim ('five days'), asarah yamim ('ten days'), esrim yom ('twenty days') — builds suspense through five stages of denial before the climax in verse 20. Each number doubles or surpasses the previous, creating a rhetorical crescendo that heightens the shock of God's actual answer.
20. The climax: chodesh yamim ('a month of days' — a full month). The graphic image ad asher-yetse me'appekhem ('until it comes out of your nostrils') describes gorging to the point of nausea. The word zara ('loathsome, revolting') signifies physical revulsion. The theological indictment is devastating: me'astem et-YHVH asher beqirbekhem ('you have rejected the LORD who is in your midst'). Their craving for Egypt's food amounts to rejection of God's presence — the One who dwells among them.
21. Even Moses struggles with the logistics: shesh-me'ot elef ragli ('six hundred thousand foot soldiers') represents an enormous population. The number matches the census of fighting men in Numbers 1:46. Moses's tone borders on incredulity — not doubting God's truthfulness but grappling with the practical impossibility. His response echoes Sarah's laughter — faith confronted by the sheer scale of the divine promise.
22. Moses's rhetorical questions expose his failure of imagination: ha-tson uvakar yishachet lahem ('shall flocks and herds be slaughtered for them?') and kol-degei ha-yam ye'asef lahem ('shall all the fish of the sea be gathered for them?') — each followed by u-matsa lahem ('and would it suffice them?'). Moses considers only natural resources — livestock and fish — unable to conceive of God's ability to provide through other means. The question parallels Psalm 78:19-20: 'Can God spread a table in the wilderness?'
23. God's response is a single devastating question: ha-yad YHVH tiqtzar ('is the hand of the LORD shortened/insufficient?'). The 'hand' represents power and capability; a 'short hand' means inability to reach or accomplish. The challenge attah tir'eh ('now you will see') shifts from theological argument to empirical demonstration — Moses will witness firsthand whether God's devar ('word, promise') is reliable. The phrase hayiqreqha devari ('will my word meet/encounter you') uses the verb q-r-h, implying that God's word will track Moses down and confront him with its fulfillment.
24. Moses's immediate obedience: vayyetse ('he went out') from God's presence, vayedabber ('and spoke') the divine message, vayye'esof shiv'im ish ('and gathered seventy men'). He positioned them sevivot ha-ohel ('around/surrounding the Tent of Meeting') — encircling the sacred space where God would descend. The physical arrangement — a ring of elders around the Tent — visually represents the distribution of authority from center to periphery.
25. The theophany: vayyered YHVH be'anan ('the LORD descended in a cloud'). The verb vayya'atsel ('He drew off, set apart') describes the spirit's distribution. When ha-ruach ('the spirit') settled on the elders, they vayitnab'u ('prophesied') — likely ecstatic speech confirming divine authorization. The crucial phrase velo yasafu is debated: it could mean 'they did not cease' (prophesied continuously) or 'they did not continue/add' (prophesied only once, as a sign). Most scholars favor the latter — this was a one-time validation of their appointment, not an ongoing prophetic ministry.
26. Eldad (El-dad — 'God has loved') and Medad (Me-dad — perhaps 'beloved') remained ba-machaneh ('in the camp') despite being ba-ketuvim ('among the registered/written ones') — officially appointed but physically absent from the Tent. The reason for their absence is unspecified, generating much rabbinic speculation (humility? impurity? different reason?). Crucially, the spirit reached them anyway — vattanach aleihem ha-ruach ('the spirit rested upon them') — demonstrating that divine empowerment is not confined to sacred geography. They prophesied ba-machaneh ('in the camp'), among the common people.
27. The na'ar ('young man, attendant') — unnamed — vayyarats ('ran') with urgency to report what he perceived as an unauthorized spiritual event. His alarm suggests he viewed prophesying outside the Tent's sanctioned space as irregular or threatening. The present participle mitnab'im ('are prophesying') indicates ongoing activity — Eldad and Medad were still at it when the report arrived.
28. Yehoshua bin-Nun, identified as mesharet Mosheh ('Moses's minister/attendant') mibbechurav ('from his chosen ones' or 'from his youth'), reacts protectively. His plea adoni Mosheh kela'em ('my lord Moses, restrain them!') reveals concern for Moses's unique authority — if anyone can prophesy, what distinguishes Moses? Joshua's jealousy on Moses's behalf mirrors later conflicts over unauthorized spiritual activity (Mark 9:38-39). The verb kala' ('restrain, imprison, stop') suggests forcible suppression.
29. Moses's response is among the most magnanimous statements in Scripture. His question ha-meqanne atah li ('are you being jealous for my sake?') gently rebukes Joshua's possessiveness. Then the breathtaking wish: u-mi yitten kol-am YHVH nevi'im ('who would grant that all the LORD's people were prophets!') — the optative mi yitten ('who will give' = 'if only!') expresses deep longing. Moses envisions universal prophetic endowment — ki-yitten YHVH et-rucho aleihem ('that the LORD would place His spirit upon them'). Joel 2:28-29 later echoes this hope.
30. The brief notice vayye'asef Mosheh el-ha-machaneh ('Moses was gathered/withdrew to the camp') uses the passive-reflexive form of 's-f ('to gather, withdraw'). Moses returns from the Tent of Meeting with the newly empowered elders accompanying him — hu ve-ziqnei Yisrael ('he and the elders of Israel'). The scene shifts from the elder-appointment narrative to the quail narrative.
31. The ruach ('wind') serves as God's instrument, driving salvim ('quail' — small migratory birds that cross the Sinai region) min ha-yam ('from the sea' — likely the Gulf of Aqaba or the Mediterranean). The verb vayyagaz ('cut off, drove') suggests the wind intercepted the birds' flight path. The verb vayyittosh ('let fall, abandoned') describes the exhausted quail collapsing. The scale is staggering: ke-derekh yom koh u-khe-derekh yom koh ('about a day's journey on this side and a day's journey on that side') in every direction, piled ke-ammatayim ('about two cubits' — roughly three feet) deep upon the ground.

32. The frantic gathering lasted kol ha-yom hahu vekhol ha-lailah vekhol yom ha-mochorat ('all that day, all night, and all the next day') — thirty-six continuous hours of compulsive collecting. The minimum haul — ha-mam'it asaf asarah chomarim ('the one who gathered least collected ten homers') — equals roughly sixty bushels per person. The verb vayyishtchu ('they spread out') describes laying the birds out shatochat ('spread flat') around the camp for drying and preservation — an ancient method of curing meat.
33. The timing is shocking: ha-basar odennu bein shinneiham ('the meat was still between their teeth') — terem yikkaret ('before it was cut/chewed') — the judgment fell mid-bite. The verb yikkaret ('was cut off') may mean 'chewed' or 'consumed/finished.' God's anger (af YHVH) and the resulting makkah rabbah me'od ('a very great plague/strike') demonstrate that getting what you crave can itself become the instrument of judgment. The nature of the plague is unspecified — disease, divine fire, or sudden death.
34. The place-name Qivrot ha-Ta'avah ('Graves of Craving') is a bitter memorial: qivrot ('graves') combined with ta'avah ('desire, craving, lust'). The etymological note ki-sham qavru et-ha'am ha-mit'avvim ('because there they buried the people who were craving') creates a permanent wordplay — those consumed by ta'avah ('craving') were buried in ta'avah ('craving'). The desire itself became their grave. The hitpa'el participle mit'avvim ('those craving') indicates ongoing, habitual desire — they never stopped wanting.
35. The travel notice marks the transition: from Qivrot ha-Ta'avah ('Graves of Craving') to Chatserot ('Hazereth' — meaning 'enclosures' or 'courtyards'). The verb vayyihyu ('and they stayed/remained') indicates a more extended encampment. Hazereth becomes the setting for the next crisis — Miriam and Aaron's challenge to Moses's authority in chapter 12. The people move on geographically but not spiritually; each new location brings a new test.

12

Summary: *Miriam and Aaron challenge Moses's authority, ostensibly over his Cushite wife but actually over his unique prophetic status. God intervenes directly, distinguishing Moses from all other prophets: with Moses alone, God speaks 'mouth to mouth' rather than through visions and dreams. Miriam is struck with a skin disease, Aaron pleads for her, Moses intercedes, and she is confined outside the camp for seven days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parenthetical statement that Moses was anav me'od mikkol ha'adam ('more humble than any person on the face of the earth,' v. 3) is unique in Scripture — a superlative that explains why Moses does not defend himself. God's description of Moses's prophetic access is the Torah's highest endorsement of any human: peh el-peh ('mouth to mouth,' v. 8), beholding God's temunah ('form'), rather than through riddles. Miriam bears the punishment alone, though Aaron participated — perhaps because she instigated (the verb is feminine singular in v. 1).*

Translation Friction: *The term kushit ('Cushite,' v. 1) — referring to Moses's wife — is geographically specific (the region south of Egypt) but her identity is debated: she may be Zipporah or a second wife. We retained 'Cushite' rather than the KJV's 'Ethiopian' to avoid conflating ancient Cush with modern Ethiopia. The word anav ('humble,' v. 3) does not imply weakness — it describes someone who does not grasp at status. We chose 'humble' over 'meek' to better convey the Hebrew sense.*

Connections: *Miriam's role as prophetess is established in Exodus 15:20. The skin disease inflicted on her uses the same tsara'at terminology as Leviticus 13-14. Aaron's plea — 'let her not be like one stillborn' (v. 12) — uses the rare image of a met ('dead one') emerging from a womb, connecting death imagery with the birth language of the chapter. The seven-day exclusion follows the purification protocol of Leviticus 13:4-5.*

¹Miriam — along with Aaron — spoke against Moses regarding the Cushite woman he had married, because he had taken a Cushite wife. ²They said, 'Has the LORD spoken only through Moses? Has He not also spoken through us?' And the LORD heard this. ³Now Moses was an exceedingly humble man — more so than any person on the face of the earth. ⁴Then the LORD spoke suddenly to Moses, Aaron, and Miriam: 'The three of you, come out to the Tent of Meeting.' So the three of them went out. ⁵The LORD descended in the pillar of cloud and stood at the entrance of the tent. He called Aaron and Miriam forward, and the two of them stepped out. ⁶He said, 'Listen carefully to My words: When a prophet of yours arises, I the LORD make Myself known to that prophet through visions and speak to them in dreams. ⁷Not so with My servant Moses — he is entrusted with My entire household. ⁸I speak with him face to face, plainly and not in riddles, and he perceives the very form of the LORD. So why were you not afraid to speak against My servant Moses?' ⁹The LORD's anger burned against them, and He departed. ¹⁰When the cloud lifted from above the tent, Miriam was covered with a skin disease, white as snow. Aaron turned toward Miriam and saw that she was diseased. ¹¹Aaron said to Moses, 'Please, my lord — do not hold this sin

against us. We acted foolishly, and we have sinned. ¹²Do not let her be like a stillborn child whose flesh is already half decomposed when it comes from its mother's womb.' ¹³Moses cried out to the LORD, 'God, please — heal her, please!' ¹⁴The LORD said to Moses, 'If her own father had spit in her face, would she not bear that shame for seven days? Let her be confined outside the camp for seven days; after that she may be brought back in.' ¹⁵So Miriam was confined outside the camp for seven days, and the people did not travel onward until Miriam was brought back in. ¹⁶After that, the people set out from Hazeroth and made camp in the wilderness of Paran.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb vatdabber is feminine singular, indicating Miriam was the primary instigator; Aaron is secondary. The preposition be- in bemosheh means 'against' Moses, not merely 'about' him — this is hostile speech. The woman is called kushit ('Cushite'), referring to the region of Cush (modern Sudan/Ethiopia). Her identity is debated: she may be Zipporah the Midianite (some traditions equate Midian with Cush), or a second wife taken after Zipporah. The repetitive structure — ki ishah kushit laqach ('because a Cushite wife he had taken') — emphasizes that the marriage itself was the point of contention.
2. The complaint shifts from Moses' marriage (v 1) to his prophetic authority. The doubled intensifiers haraq akh ('only, exclusively') emphasize the challenge — they question whether Moses holds a unique position as divine spokesman. The phrase gam banu dibber ('He has spoken also through us') asserts equal prophetic standing, since both Miriam (a prophetess, Exodus 15:20) and Aaron (a priestly mediator) had legitimate roles. The closing statement vayyishma YHWH ('and the LORD heard') is ominous — divine listening in this context signals that judgment is imminent.
3. This parenthetical narrator's comment explains why Moses does not defend himself. The key word anav ('humble, lowly, meek') does not imply weakness or passivity but describes someone who does not assert their own status or seek personal vindication. The superlative mikkol ha'adam asher al penei ha'adamah ('more than any person on the surface of the ground') is extraordinary — a unique claim in the Hebrew Bible. The section marker (samekh) after this verse creates a pause before God's dramatic intervention.
4. The word pit'om ('suddenly') emphasizes the immediacy of God's response — He does not delay when His servant is challenged. The ohel mo'ed ('Tent of Meeting') was the designated site of divine encounter, the place where God's presence was formally accessible. God summons all three (sheloshtekhem — 'the three of you'), but the confrontation that follows targets only the two challengers. The obedient response vayyets'u sheloshtam ('the three of them went out') underscores that even those about to be rebuked must appear when God calls.
5. The divine descent (vayyered — 'He came down') in the amud anan ('pillar of cloud') is a theophanic manifestation — God's visible presence materializes to address the challenge directly. Standing at the petach ha'ohel ('entrance of the tent') positions God as gatekeeper and judge. Calling Aaron and Miriam separately from Moses (vayyiqra Aharon uMiryam — 'He called Aaron and Miriam') physically separates the accused pair from the vindicated servant, setting the stage for the rebuke.
6. The phrase shim'u na devarai ('listen, please, to My words') is a formal divine command to pay attention — the particle na ('please') adds urgency, not politeness. God establishes the standard prophetic channels: mar'ah ('vision') and chalom ('dream'). These are indirect, mediated forms of revelation — God communicates through symbols, images, and nocturnal encounters. The phrase etvadda ('I make Myself known') uses the reflexive form, emphasizing that God chooses to reveal Himself; revelation is always divine initiative, not human achievement.
7. The phrase lo khen avdi Mosheh ('not so My servant Moses') sharply distinguishes Moses from all other prophets. The title avdi ('My servant') is a designation of honor in ancient Near Eastern court language — the king's servant held the highest trust. The phrase bekhlo beiti ne'eman hu ('in all My house he is faithful/entrusted') echoes a steward given authority over the entire royal estate. The root n-'-m from which ne'eman ('faithful, trustworthy') derives is the same root that gives us 'amen' — Moses' faithfulness is the standard of reliability.
8. The phrase peh el peh ('mouth to mouth') describes the most intimate and direct form of divine communication — unmediated by vision or dream. The term mar'eh ('plainly, clearly' — lit. 'in visible form') contrasts with chidot ('riddles, enigmas, dark sayings'). Moses receives transparent revelation while other prophets receive encoded messages requiring interpretation. The extraordinary claim temunat YHWH yabbi ('he perceives the form/likeness of the LORD') grants Moses a degree of access to the divine presence unparalleled in Scripture. The closing question maddu'a lo yeretem ('why were you not afraid') rebukes Miriam and Aaron — challenging Moses was effectively challenging God's chosen arrangement.
9. The phrase vayyichar af YHWH ('the nostril of the LORD burned hot') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for intense divine anger — the word af means both 'nostril' and 'anger,' linking fury to the physical image of nostrils flaring with heat. The terse clause vayyela ('and He departed') is devastating in its brevity — God withdraws His presence without further words. The departure leaves them to face the consequences of His wrath without the comfort of continued dialogue.
10. The cloud's departure (he'anana sar — 'the cloud turned aside') signals the withdrawal of God's protective presence, and immediately the consequence appears. The term metsora'at ('afflicted with tsara'at') refers to a skin condition causing ritual impurity — not modern leprosy (Hansen's disease) but a divinely imposed affliction. The comparison kashaleg ('like snow') describes the alarming whiteness of the affected skin. The repeated hinneh ('and there!') — used twice — conveys shock: first the narrator's, then Aaron's when he vayyifan ('turned') and saw her condition. Only Miriam is struck, though Aaron participated; this may reflect her role as primary instigator (v 1) or Aaron's priestly office making him exempt from this particular punishment.

11. Aaron's address *bi adoni* ('please, my lord') is deeply ironic — he uses a title of deference toward the very man whose authority he had just challenged. The plea *al na tashet aleinu chattat* ('please do not lay sin upon us') asks Moses to intercede rather than allow the punishment to stand. Two confessions follow: *no'alnu* ('we acted foolishly') from the root 'v-l describes reckless, thoughtless behavior, while *chatanu* ('we sinned') acknowledges moral transgression. Aaron speaks in the first person plural ('us,' 'we'), taking shared responsibility for the offense.
12. Aaron's plea compares Miriam's condition to a *met* ('dead one') — specifically a stillborn infant (*betse'to merechem immo* — 'when it comes out of its mother's womb') with flesh already partially consumed. The word *chatsi* ('half') intensifies the horror: the body is in a state of active decay. The comparison is visceral — Miriam's white, flaking skin resembles decomposing flesh. Aaron's appeal to Moses, not directly to God, reflects the established hierarchy: Moses is the recognized mediator between God and the people.
13. Moses' prayer is one of the shortest and most passionate in the entire Hebrew Bible — just five Hebrew words: *el na refa na lah* ('God, please, heal, please, her'). The doubled particle *na* ('please') intensifies the urgency of the plea. The verb *vayyits'aq* ('he cried out') indicates an anguished shout, not a quiet prayer. Despite being the one wronged by Miriam's challenge, Moses immediately intercedes for her healing — a striking embodiment of the humility described in verse 3. The paragraph marker (pe) after this verse signals a transition in the narrative.
14. God responds to Moses' plea with an argument from lesser to greater (*qal vachomer*): if a father's spitting in his daughter's face (*yaroq yaraq befaneiha* — the infinitive absolute intensifies: 'surely spitting he spit') demands seven days of shame (*tikkhalem* — 'she would be humiliated'), how much more does divine rebuke require a period of discipline? The seven-day confinement *tissager shiv'at yamim michuts lamachaneh* ('she shall be shut outside the camp seven days') follows the purification protocol for *tsara'at* established in Leviticus 13-14. God grants healing but insists on the full period of discipline — mercy tempered by justice.
15. The entire nation halts its journey (*veha'am lo nasa* — 'and the people did not set out') until Miriam completes her seven-day exclusion — a remarkable honor for a woman who had just been punished. The verb *he'asef* ('was gathered in, was brought back') is the same term used for the ritual readmission of a person healed from *tsara'at*. That the entire community of Israel waited for one woman indicates Miriam's stature despite her offense; the nation would not move forward without her.
16. The journey resumes with a geographic transition marker: from *Chazerot* (Hazereth, meaning 'enclosures' or 'courtyards') to *midbar Paran* (the wilderness of Paran), a vast desert region in the northeastern Sinai peninsula. This travelogue verse bridges the Miriam incident to the next major narrative — the sending of the scouts into Canaan (chapter 13). The paragraph marker (pe) signals a major section break, closing the Miriam episode and opening the reconnaissance narrative that will define the fate of an entire generation.

13

Summary: *Twelve tribal leaders are sent from Kadesh to scout the land of Canaan during the grape harvest. They return after forty days carrying an enormous grape cluster, along with pomegranates and figs. Ten spies report that the land is good but its inhabitants are unconquerable giants. Caleb alone urges immediate advance; the majority report overwhelms the people with fear.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command shelach-lekha ('send for yourself,' v. 2) uses the reflexive lekha, suggesting God grants permission rather than initiating the mission — a nuance the parallel account in Deuteronomy 1:22 confirms. The scouts are not ordinary soldiers but nesi'im ('chieftains'), making their failure a failure of leadership. The majority report distorts their own evidence: they saw a land that 'devours its inhabitants' (v. 32) — yet brought back fruit proving its extraordinary fertility. Fear rewrites reality.*

Translation Friction: *The word vayaturu ('they scouted,' v. 21) from the root t-u-r has a neutral sense of exploration, but the same root appears negatively in verse 32 as dibbah ('a bad report'). We used 'scout' for the neutral occurrences and 'slander' for the dibbah to reflect the shift. The Nephilim reference (v. 33) — 'we saw the Nephilim' — creates a textual puzzle, since Genesis 6:4 places them before the flood. We retained the name without harmonizing.*

Connections: *The parallel account in Deuteronomy 1:22-25 attributes the scouting initiative to the people rather than God. The name change from Hoshea to Joshua (Yehoshua, v. 16) adds the divine name — 'the LORD saves.' The forty-day scouting period (v. 25) will become the basis for the forty-year wilderness sentence in Numbers 14:34. The Wadi Eshcol ('cluster valley,' v. 24) preserves the grape harvest in a place-name.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Send men to scout the land of Canaan, which I am giving to the Israelites. Send one man from each ancestral tribe — every one of them a chieftain." ³So Moses dispatched them from the Wilderness of Paran at the LORD's command. All of them were leaders among the Israelites. ⁴These were their names: From the tribe of Reuben —

Shammua son of Zaccur. ⁵From the tribe of Simeon — Shaphat son of Hori. ⁶From the tribe of Judah — Caleb son of Jephunneh. ⁷From the tribe of Issachar — Igal son of Joseph. ⁸From the tribe of Ephraim — Hoshea son of Nun. ⁹From the tribe of Benjamin — Palti son of Raphu. ¹⁰From the tribe of Zebulun — Gaddiel son of Sodi. ¹¹From the tribe of Joseph — specifically, from the tribe of Manasseh — Gaddi son of Susi. ¹²From the tribe of Dan — Ammiel son of Gemalli. ¹³From the tribe of Asher — Sethur son of Michael. ¹⁴From the tribe of Naphtali — Nahbi son of Vophsi. ¹⁵From the tribe of Gad — Geuel son of Machi. ¹⁶These are the names of the men Moses sent to scout the land. Moses renamed Hoshea son of Nun as Joshua. ¹⁷Moses sent them to scout the land of Canaan, telling them, "Go up through the Negev and continue up into the hill country. ¹⁸Observe what the land is like, and the people living in it — whether they are strong or weak, few or many. ¹⁹What is the land they inhabit like — is it good or poor? And the cities where they live — are they open encampments or fortified strongholds? ²⁰Is the soil rich or thin? Are there trees on it or not? Be bold, and bring back some of the land's produce." (It was the season of the first ripe grapes.) ²¹They went up and scouted the land from the Wilderness of Zin all the way to Rehob, near Lebo-hamath. ²²They went up through the Negev and reached Hebron, where Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai — descendants of Anak — were living. (Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.) ²³They reached the Wadi Eshcol and cut a branch there bearing a single cluster of grapes so large that two men had to carry it on a pole between them. They also brought back pomegranates and figs. ²⁴That place was called the Wadi Eshcol — "Cluster Valley" — because of the grape cluster the Israelites cut there. ²⁵They returned from scouting the land at the end of forty days. ²⁶They traveled back and came to Moses, Aaron, and the entire Israelite congregation in the Wilderness of Paran, at Kadesh. They delivered their report to them — to the whole congregation — and displayed the land's produce. ²⁷They gave their report: "We entered the land where you sent us, and it truly does flow with milk and honey — here is its produce. ²⁸However — the people living in the land are fierce, the cities are fortified and extremely large, and we also saw descendants of Anak there. ²⁹The Amalekites occupy the Negev region. The Hittites, Jebusites, and Amorites occupy the hill country. The Canaanites occupy the territory along the sea and along the Jordan." ³⁰Caleb silenced the people before Moses and declared, "We should go up immediately and take possession of it, because we are fully capable of doing so!" ³¹But the men who had gone up with him countered, "We cannot attack those people — they are stronger than we are." ³²They spread a slanderous report about the land they had scouted among the Israelites, saying, "The land we traveled through to scout is a land that devours its inhabitants! And all the people we saw in it are men of enormous size. ³³We saw the Nephilim there — the Anakites descend from the Nephilim — and in our own eyes we seemed like grasshoppers, and that is how we must have appeared in their eyes too."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard revelation formula *vayedabber YHVH el-Mosheh lemor* ('and the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') introduces the spy mission. In the parallel account (Deuteronomy 1:22), the initiative comes from the people, not God — the two accounts complement each other: the people proposed it, God sanctioned it.
2. The command *shelach-lekha* ('send for yourself') — the reflexive *lekha* ('for yourself') suggests God is granting permission rather than initiating the mission (compare Rashi: 'by your own judgment'). The verb *veyaturu* ('that they may scout/explore') from the root *t-u-r* ('to seek out, explore, spy') defines their mission as reconnaissance, not conquest. Each spy must be *ish echad lematteh avotav* ('one man per ancestral tribe') and *kol nasi vahem* ('every one a chieftain among them') — not ordinary soldiers but tribal leaders with authority.
3. The departure point is midbar Paran ('the Wilderness of Paran'), specifically from Kadesh (v. 26). The phrase *al-pi YHVH* ('at the mouth/command of the LORD') reaffirms divine authorization. The qualification *kullam anashim rashei venei-Yisrael hemmah* ('all of them were men, heads of the Israelites') — the word *anashim* ('men') here implies 'men of standing, distinguished men' rather than mere gender. Their high status makes their later failure all the more devastating.
4. The spy list begins with Reuben, Jacob's firstborn. Shammua (Shammu'a — 'heard, renowned') son of Zakkur ('remembered') — both names relate to perception and memory. This is a different list from the tribal leaders in chapters 1-2 and 7; these are selected specifically for the reconnaissance mission.
5. Shaphat (Shafat — 'he has judged') son of Chori ('cave-dweller' or 'free-born') represents Simeon. The name Shaphat relates to the root *sh-f-t* ('to judge, govern'), suggesting a family with judicial standing.
6. Kalev (Caleb — possibly meaning 'dog' or 'whole-hearted,' from *kelev* or *kol-lev*) son of Yefunneh ('he will be turned/prepared') becomes one of only two spies who trust God's promise. Though possibly of Kenizzite (non-Israelite) descent (Numbers 32:12), Caleb is fully integrated into Judah's tribe — a convert who outshines the native-born.

7. Yig'al (Ig'al — 'he will redeem') son of Yosef ('he will add') represents Issachar. The name Yig'al from the root g-'l ('to redeem') ironically foreshadows his failure — the one named 'redeemer' will not act redemptively but will join the fearful majority.
8. Hoshea (Hoshe'a — 'salvation') son of Nun is listed here under his original name, before Moses renames him Yehoshua (Joshua — 'the LORD saves') in verse 16. The tribe of Ephraim produces the man who will eventually lead Israel into Canaan. His original name means simply 'salvation'; the renamed form adds the divine name, transforming it into a theological declaration.
9. Palti (Palti — 'my deliverance') son of Rafu ('healed') represents Benjamin. The name Palti derives from the root p-l-t ('to deliver, escape'), another ironic name — this spy will not deliver a faithful report but will side with the fearful majority.
10. Gaddi'el (Gaddi-el — 'God is my fortune/luck') son of Sodi ('my confidant' or 'my secret counsel') represents Zebulun. The theophoric name credits God as the source of good fortune, yet this spy will act as though the land's inhabitants, not God, determine Israel's fortune.
11. The text specifies lematteh Yosef lematteh Menasheh ('of the tribe of Joseph, of the tribe of Manasseh') because Joseph's inheritance was split between Ephraim (v. 8) and Manasseh. Gaddi (Gaddi — 'my fortune') son of Susi ('my horse' or 'my swallow') represents the half-tribe. Manasseh and Ephraim each send a spy, accounting for the full twelve without Levi (who has no territorial inheritance).
12. Ammi'el (Ammi-el — 'my kinsman is God' or 'God is my people') son of Gemalli ('my camel-driver' — implying a caravan trader) represents Dan. The name Ammiel declares a relationship with God as close as family, yet this spy will not act on that kinship of trust.
13. Sethur (Sethur — 'hidden, concealed') son of Mikha'el ('who is like God?') represents Asher. The name Sethur from the root s-t-r ('to hide, conceal') is fitting for a spy — one who operates in concealment. His father's name poses the rhetorical question 'who is like God?' — yet the ten spies will act as if the Anakim are mightier than God.
14. Nachbi (Nahbi — possibly 'hidden' or 'timid,' from the root ch-b-' meaning 'to hide') son of Vofsi ('my addition' or of uncertain meaning) represents Naphtali. If Nahbi's name indeed means 'hidden/timid,' it is prophetically apt for one of the ten spies who will counsel retreat out of fear.
15. Ge'u'el (Geu-el — 'majesty of God' or 'God has exalted') son of Makhi ('my reduction' or 'my smiting') represents Gad, the last tribe in the spy roster. Gad, whose name means 'fortune' or 'troop,' completes the list of twelve — one from each tribe except Levi.
16. The summary statement leads to a pivotal detail: vayyiqra Mosheh le-Hoshe'a bin-Nun Yehoshu'a ('Moses called Hoshea son of Nun, Joshua'). The name change from Hoshe'a ('salvation') to Yehoshu'a ('the LORD saves') adds the divine name — transforming human deliverance into a declaration that salvation belongs to God alone. The timing of this renaming — just before the spy mission — suggests Moses knew Joshua would need to embody this truth when the majority lost faith.
17. Moses's instructions begin with the route: alu zeh ba-Negev ('go up this way through the Negev') — the arid southern region of Canaan — va'alitem et-ha-har ('and go up into the mountain/hill country') — the central highlands. The repeated verb alu/alitem ('go up') reflects both topography (ascending from the desert into highlands) and theological hope — they are ascending toward the promised inheritance.
18. Moses's reconnaissance briefing is systematic and professional. The first assessment: ur'item et-ha'arets mah-hi ('observe the land, what it is') — general character. Then the inhabitants: ha-chazaq hu ha-rafeh ('is it/he strong or weak?') — the singular pronoun treats the population as a collective entity. And ha-me'at hu im-rav ('is it few or many?') — population density. These are standard military intelligence questions for evaluating an invasion target.
19. The second layer of questions: ha-tovah hi im-ra'ah ('is it good or bad?') — assessing agricultural quality and habitability. Then urban assessment: ha-bemachanim im bemivtsarim ('in encampments or in fortifications?'). The contrast between machaneh ('open camp') and mivtsar ('fortified city') is crucial — fortified cities require siege warfare, while tent encampments are vulnerable. The spies' answer about 'very great walled cities' (v. 28) directly addresses this question.
20. The final questions: ha-shemenah hi im-razah ('is it fat/rich or lean/thin?') — soil fertility assessed in agricultural terms. Hayesh-bah ets im-ayin ('are there trees in it or not?') — timber resources and orchard potential. Then the command: vehitchazzaqtem ulqachtem mipperi ha'arets ('be strong/courageous and take from the fruit of the land'). The verb hitchazzaq ('strengthen yourselves, be bold') hints that this mission requires courage. The editorial note veba-yamim yemei bikkurei anavim ('the time was the season of the first ripe grapes') places the mission in early summer (late June/July), when the land's produce would be at its most impressive.
21. The scope of the reconnaissance is comprehensive: mi-midbar-Tsin ('from the Wilderness of Zin') in the far south ad-Rehov levo Chamat ('to Rehob, at the approach to Hamath') in the far north. This represents the full length of the promised land — roughly 250 miles. Lebo-hamath (later 'the entrance of Hamath') became a standard marker for Israel's ideal northern boundary (cf. Numbers 34:8, 1 Kings 8:65). The spies covered the entire territory, not just a sample.
22. The singular vayyavo ('he came') amid plural subjects may indicate Caleb went alone to Hebron (cf. Joshua 14:13-14, Judges 1:20). Hebron's three Anakite clans — Achiman, Sheshai, and Talmai — are yelidei ha-Anaq ('born of Anak, descendants of the giant'). The Anakim were a people of exceptional height who terrified the spies. The parenthetical note dates Hebron as seven years older than Tso'an (Tanis/Avaris), Egypt's ancient capital — establishing Hebron's antiquity and prestige. Hebron was one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the region.
23. The nachal Eshkol ('Wadi of the Cluster') produces the iconic image of Canaan's abundance: a zemorah ('vine branch') with eshkol anavim echad ('a single cluster of grapes') so massive vayyisa'uhamot bishnayim ('they carried it on a pole between two men'). The mot ('carrying pole') was the same type used to transport the Tabernacle's sacred objects — linking the land's produce with holy things. The rimmonim ('pomegranates') and te'anin ('figs') complete a trio of fruits symbolizing the land's fertility.

- 24.** Another etymological place-name: Nachal Eshkol ('Wadi of the Cluster') commemorates the astonishing grape cluster. The phrase al odot ha-eshkol ('on account of the cluster') provides the explicit explanation. The name encodes the proof that the land was genuinely extraordinary in its fertility — the spies' physical evidence confirmed God's description of a 'land flowing with milk and honey.' The tragedy is that this same abundance failed to overcome their fear.
- 25.** The mission lasted arba'im yom ('forty days') — a number laden with biblical significance: Moses on Sinai (Exodus 24:18), Elijah's journey to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8), and Jesus's wilderness temptation. In Numbers 14:34, God will decree one year of wandering for each day of scouting — forty days becomes forty years. The verb vayyashuvu mittur ('they returned from scouting') uses the same root t-u-r as the original commission in verse 2.
- 26.** The return to Qadesh ('Kadesh' — meaning 'holy/sacred') in midbar Paran sets the stage for the decisive report. The phrase vayyashivu otam davar ('they brought back word to them') — the root sh-u-v ('to return') combined with davar ('word, report') — indicates a formal debriefing. The report is delivered publicly: ve'et-kol-ha'edah ('and to the entire congregation'), not privately to Moses alone. The display of peri ha'arets ('the land's produce') — the spectacular grape cluster, figs, and pomegranates — provides visual evidence before the verbal report.
- 27.** The report begins positively: ba'anu el-ha'arets ('we entered the land') — mission accomplished. The confirmation vegam zavav chalay udevash hi ('and indeed it flows with milk and honey') validates God's own description of the land (Exodus 3:8). The phrase zavav ('flowing') suggests overflowing abundance — chalav ('milk,' representing pastoral wealth) and devash ('honey,' whether bee-honey or date-syrup, representing agricultural sweetness). The tangible proof: vezeh-piryah ('and here is its produce') — they gesture to the enormous grape cluster.
- 28.** The devastating pivot word: efes ki ('however, but, nevertheless') — a strong adversative that cancels the positive report. The assessment: az ha'am ('the people are fierce/strong'), he'arim betsurot gedolot me'od ('the cities are fortified, very great'), and the climax: vegam-yelidei ha-Anaq ra'inu sham ('and we even saw descendants of Anak there'). The Anakim — the giant warriors first mentioned in verse 22 — are saved for last as the ultimate deterrent. The word efes literally means 'nothing, zero,' as if to say: 'the land is wonderful, but it amounts to nothing because...'
- 29.** The military intelligence maps the enemy's positions: Amaleq ('Amalek') controls the Negev — the southern approach Israel would need to use. The Chitti ('Hittite'), Yevusi ('Jebusite'), and Emori ('Amorite') hold the strategic highlands (ba-har). The Kena'ani ('Canaanite') controls the coastal plain (al-ha-yam) and the Jordan valley (al yad ha-Yarden). The message: every approach route and strategic zone is already held by formidable peoples. The land is surrounded and saturated with enemies.
- 30.** Caleb's courage erupts: vayyahas ('he silenced') the crowd — an act of bold authority. His words use the emphatic infinitive absolute: aloh na'aleh ('going up we shall go up!' — 'let us absolutely go up!') and yakol nukhal lah ('being able we shall be able for it!' — 'we can certainly do it!'). The doubled verb forms express total confidence. While the ten spies focused on enemy strength, Caleb focuses on divine promise — veyarashnu otah ('and we shall possess/dispossess it'), using the verb y-r-sh that characterizes the conquest mandate throughout Deuteronomy.
- 31.** The ten spies directly contradict Caleb: lo nukhal la'alot el-ha'am ('we are not able to go up against the people'). Where Caleb said yakol nukhal ('we can certainly do it'), they say lo nukhal ('we cannot'). Their reason: ki-chazaq hu mimmenu ('because he/it is stronger than us'). The pronoun hu ('he/it') is ambiguous — some rabbis read mimmenu as 'than him' (i.e., stronger than God!), a reading that exposes the ultimate faithlessness of their assessment. They measured Canaan's strength against Israel's military capability rather than against God's power.
- 32.** The text now uses the loaded term dibbat ha'arets ('slander/defamation of the land') — dibbah is the same word used for malicious gossip (Proverbs 10:18). Their report has crossed from honest assessment to deliberate distortion. The claim erets okhelet yoshveha ('a land that devours its inhabitants') is bizarre — suggesting the land itself is hostile and deadly, contradicting their own testimony about its abundant produce. The phrase anshei middot ('men of stature/measurement') — literally 'men of measures' — means people of extraordinary height, implying the inhabitants are unnaturally tall.
- 33.** The climactic exaggeration: the Nefilim ('Nephilim' — the legendary giants of Genesis 6:4) are invoked to maximize terror. The identification benei Anaq min-ha-Nefilim ('the Anakites from/of the Nephilim') connects the current inhabitants to the mythic pre-flood giants. The devastating self-assessment: vannahi ve'eineinu ka-chagavim ('we were in our own eyes like grasshoppers') — the real problem is not the enemy's size but their own shrunken self-perception. The added claim vekhen hayinu be'eineihem ('and so we were in their eyes') is pure projection — they could not possibly know how the Canaanites perceived them. Fear distorted their vision of themselves, of the enemy, and ultimately of God.

14

Summary: The people weep all night, wish they had died in Egypt, and propose appointing a new leader to take them back. Joshua and Caleb plead with the congregation; the people threaten to stone them. God's glory appears, threatening to destroy the nation. Moses intercedes, invoking God's own self-description from Exodus 34. God pardons but sentences the entire adult generation to die in the wilderness — forty years, one for each scouting day. Those who then presume to invade on their own are routed.

What Makes This Remarkable: The bitter irony is devastating: the people said 'if only we had died in this wilderness' (v. 2), and God grants their wish (vv. 28-29). They feared for their children (v. 3), but God declares the children will be the ones who enter the land (v. 31). Moses's intercession (vv. 13-19) quotes God's own words from Exodus 34:6-7 back to Him — the most daring prayer in the Torah, using the LORD's self-revelation as the basis for mercy.

Translation Friction: The verb vayyillonu ('they grumbled,' v. 2) is the characteristic wilderness rebellion word, carrying more weight than casual complaint — we rendered it 'grumbled' while noting its covenantal overtones. The phrase erech appayim ('slow to anger,' v. 18) literally means 'long of nostrils' — we preserved the standard English rendering rather than the anatomical image, since 'slow to anger' has become a theological term in its own right.

Connections: God's self-description quoted in verse 18 comes from the revelation at Sinai in Exodus 34:6-7. The forty-year sentence (v. 34) — one year per scouting day — establishes the wilderness period that defines the rest of Numbers and Deuteronomy. The unauthorized invasion attempt (vv. 40-45) and its failure at Hormah connect to the successful campaign at Hormah in Numbers 21:3. Caleb's exemption (v. 24) is fulfilled in Joshua 14:6-14.

¹The entire community raised their voices and cried out, and the people wept that night. ²All the Israelites grumbled against Moses and Aaron. The entire community said to them, "If only we had died in the land of Egypt! Or if only we had died in this wilderness! ³Why is the LORD bringing us into this land only to fall by the sword? Our wives and children will become plunder! Would it not be better to go back to Egypt?" ⁴They said to one another, "Let us appoint a leader and go back to Egypt." ⁵Moses and Aaron fell on their faces before the entire assembly of the Israelite community. ⁶Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh, who were among those who had scouted the land, tore their garments. ⁷They addressed the entire Israelite community: "The land we traveled through to scout is exceptionally good — ⁸if the LORD is pleased with us, He will bring us into this land and give it to us — a land flowing with milk and honey. ⁹Only do not rebel against the LORD! And do not fear the people of the land — they are bread for us. Their protection has departed from them, and the LORD is with us. Do not fear them!" ¹⁰But the entire community said to stone them. Then the glory of the LORD appeared at the tent of meeting before all the Israelites. ¹¹The LORD said to Moses, "How long will this people treat Me with contempt? How long will they refuse to trust Me, despite all the signs I have performed among them? ¹²I will strike them with plague and disinherit them, and I will make you into a nation greater and mightier than they are." ¹³Moses said to the LORD, "But the Egyptians will hear of it — since You brought this people up from among them by Your power — ¹⁴and they will tell the inhabitants of this land. They have heard that You, LORD, are present among this people — that You, LORD, are seen eye to eye, that Your cloud stands over them, and that You go before them in a pillar of cloud by day and a pillar of fire by night. ¹⁵If You put this people to death all at once, the nations who have heard of Your fame will say: ¹⁶'Because the LORD was unable to bring this people into the land He swore to give them, He slaughtered them in the wilderness.' ¹⁷Now, let the power of my Lord be displayed, just as You have declared: ¹⁸'The LORD is slow to anger and rich in steadfast love, bearing iniquity and transgression — yet He does not leave the guilty unpunished, visiting the iniquity of parents upon children to the third and fourth generation.' ¹⁹Forgive the iniquity of this people, I pray, according to the greatness of Your steadfast love, just as You have borne with this people from Egypt until now." ²⁰The LORD said, "I have forgiven, as you asked. ²¹But as surely as I live, and as the glory of the LORD fills the entire earth — ²²none of the people who have seen My glory and the signs I performed in Egypt and in the wilderness — who have tested Me these ten times and have not obeyed My voice — ²³shall see the land I swore to their ancestors. None of those who treated Me with contempt shall see it. ²⁴But My servant Caleb — because a different spirit was with him and he followed Me wholeheartedly — I will bring him into the land he entered, and his descendants shall possess it. ²⁵Since the Amalekites and Canaanites dwell in the valley, turn around tomorrow and set out toward the wilderness by way of the Red Sea." ²⁶The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron: ²⁷"How long must I endure this wicked community that grumbles against Me? I have heard the complaints the Israelites keep raising against Me. ²⁸Tell them: 'As surely as I live — declares the LORD — I will do to you exactly what you said in My hearing. ²⁹In this wilderness your corpses will fall — every one of you who was registered in the census, from twenty years old and above, who grumbled against Me. ³⁰You will certainly not enter the land where I swore to settle you — except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua

son of Nun. ³¹But your children — the ones you said would become plunder — I will bring them in, and they will experience the land you rejected. ³²But as for you — your corpses will fall in this wilderness. ³³Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness for forty years, bearing the consequences of your unfaithfulness until the last of your corpses has fallen in the wilderness. ³⁴Corresponding to the number of days you scouted the land — forty days, a day for each year — you will bear your guilt for forty years. Then you will know what it means to oppose Me." ³⁵I, the LORD, have spoken. I will surely do this to this entire wicked community that has banded together against Me: in this wilderness they will come to an end — there they will die. ³⁶The men Moses had sent to scout the land — who returned and caused the entire community to grumble against him by spreading a bad report about the land — ³⁷those men who had spread the bad report about the land died in a plague before the LORD. ³⁸But Joshua son of Nun and Caleb son of Jephunneh survived — of the men who had gone to scout the land, they alone lived. ³⁹When Moses reported these words to all the Israelites, the people mourned deeply. ⁴⁰They rose early the next morning and headed toward the hilltop, saying, "Here we are! We will go up to the place the LORD spoke of, for we have sinned." ⁴¹Moses said, "Why are you defying the LORD's command? This will not succeed. ⁴²Do not go up — the LORD is not among you! — or you will be struck down before your enemies. ⁴³The Amalekites and Canaanites are there to face you, and you will fall by the sword. Because you have turned away from following the LORD, the LORD will not be with you." ⁴⁴But they recklessly pushed ahead toward the hilltop, even though the ark of the LORD's covenant and Moses had not moved from the camp. ⁴⁵The Amalekites and the Canaanites who lived in that hill country came down and struck them, beating them back as far as Hormah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with communal lamentation: *vattissa kol-ha'edah* ('the entire community raised up') — a corporate act, not individual grief. The weeping follows the ten spies' terrifying report (ch 13). *Ballaylah hahu* ('that night') — the night becomes a marker of national failure. The rabbis associated this with the ninth of Av (Tisha B'Av), the date of both Temple destructions, teaching that God said: 'You wept without cause; I will establish this night as a night of weeping for generations.'
2. The verb *vayyillonu* ('grumbled') is the characteristic wilderness rebellion word — Israel's repeated complaint against God's leadership. The death wish — *lu-matnu be'erets Mitsrayim* ('if only we had died in Egypt') — prefers slavery and death to the risk of freedom. The ironic twist: God will grant their wish (v28-29). They said they wanted to die in the wilderness; they will. The prayer for death becomes a self-imposed sentence.
3. The accusation against God is explicit: *lamah YHWH mevi otanu* ('why is the LORD bringing us') — they accuse God of leading them to slaughter. Their concern for wives and children (*nashenu vetappenu yihyu lavaz* — 'our wives and children will become plunder') will be answered with bitter irony in v31: God says the children they feared for will be the ones who enter the land. The proposal to return to Egypt (*shuv Mitsraymah*) is the ultimate covenant rejection — voluntarily returning to slavery.
4. The rebellion crystallizes into a concrete plan: *nittenah ro'sh venashuvah Mitsraymah* ('let us appoint a head and return to Egypt'). Replacing Moses with a new leader who will take them backward — this is the most direct rejection of God's appointed leadership in the entire wilderness narrative. It is not merely complaint but organized insurrection. The verb *nittenah* ('let us appoint') is a deliberate act of communal decision-making against God's choice.
5. Moses and Aaron prostrate themselves (*vayyippon al-peneihem*) — a gesture of grief, intercession, or horror. They fall before the assembly, not before God (though prayer may be implied). The public prostration is a physical display of desperation: the leaders are overwhelmed by the magnitude of the rebellion. Two men face an entire nation demanding to abandon the covenant.
6. Joshua and Caleb — the two faithful spies out of twelve — tear their garments (*qare'u bigdeihem*), the classic sign of mourning and outrage. They have seen the land; they know it is good. The tearing of garments is directed not at the land's danger but at the people's faithlessness. These two men alone among the scout party refuse to join the panic.
7. Joshua and Caleb's counter-testimony: *tovah ha'arets me'od me'od* ('the land is exceedingly, exceedingly good'). The doubled *me'od* ('very, very') is emphatic — this is not a lukewarm endorsement but an impassioned declaration. They have seen the same land, the same fortified cities, the same giant inhabitants — and their conclusion is opposite to the majority report. The difference is not in what they saw but in whom they trust.
8. The conditional *im-chafets banu YHWH* ('if the LORD is pleased with us') is the theological core of Joshua and Caleb's argument: the land's conquest depends not on Israel's military strength but on God's favor. If God wants them there, no army can stop them. The phrase *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('land flowing with milk and honey') — the covenant promise language that has echoed since Exodus 3:8 — asserts that the promise is still valid.
9. Joshua and Caleb's argument has three elements: (1) don't rebel (*al-timrodu* — the real danger is not the Canaanites but disobedience), (2) the inhabitants are *lachmenu hem* ('bread for us' — they will be consumed as easily as eating bread), and (3) *sar tsillam me'aleihem* ('their shade/protection has departed from them'). The metaphor of shade (*tsel*) leaving suggests that whatever divine or spiritual protection the Canaanites once had is now gone. The climactic declaration: *vaYHWH ittanu* ('the LORD is with us') — four words that answer every objection. If God is present,

nothing else matters.

10. The mob turns murderous: lirgom otam ba'avanim ('to stone them with stones') — Joshua and Caleb face lynching for their faithful testimony. At this moment of maximum crisis — when the community is about to murder its own faithful scouts — ukhevod YHWH nir'ah be'ohel mo'ed ('the glory of the LORD appeared at the tent of meeting'). God's kavod intervenes at the exact moment of threatened violence. The glory that usually signifies blessing now appears to judge. The juxtaposition is stark: the people prepare to kill the righteous; God appears.
11. God's response is two questions of anguish: ad-anah yena'atuni ('how long will they despise/treat Me with contempt?') and ad-anah lo ya'aminu vi ('how long will they not believe in Me?'). The verb na'ats ('to despise, to treat with contempt') goes beyond disobedience to personal rejection — Israel is not merely afraid but contemptuous of God. The phrase bekhoh'otot asher asiti beqirbo ('despite all the signs I performed among them') catalogs the exodus plagues, the sea crossing, the manna, the water, the fire, the cloud — none of it produced lasting trust. The emunah register term is implicit: Israel's failure is a failure of faith.
12. God proposes to destroy Israel and start over with Moses — the same offer He made after the golden calf (Exod 32:10). Akkeni vadever ('I will strike them with plague'), orishennu ('I will disinherit them'), and e'eseh otkha legoy gadol ('I will make you into a great nation'). The proposal tests Moses: will he accept personal advancement at the expense of the nation? As at the golden calf, Moses will refuse (v13-19). The parallel between the two incidents shows that Israel's unfaithfulness is a recurring crisis, not an isolated event.
13. Moses's intercession begins with an appeal to God's reputation among the nations: veshame'u Mitsrayim ('the Egyptians will hear'). If God destroys Israel, the exodus will look like a failed rescue — God brought them out only to kill them. Moses's argument is not sentimental but strategic: God's honor is at stake in the international arena. The phrase he'elita vekhochakha ('You brought them up by Your power') reminds God that His own power was publicly demonstrated in the exodus — destroying Israel would retroactively discredit that display.
14. Moses catalogs God's visible presence among Israel — ayin be'ayin nir'ah attah YHWH ('You LORD are seen eye to eye'), the cloud stands over them (ananekha omed aleihem), the pillar of cloud leads by day, the pillar of fire by night. These are all publicly visible phenomena that the surrounding nations have observed and reported. If God now destroys Israel, these witnesses will conclude that God's presence was not protection but a prelude to destruction. Moses argues that God's reputation depends on Israel's survival.
15. The hypothetical: vehemattah et-ha'am hazzeh ke'ish echad ('if You kill this people as one man'). Moses puts words in the nations' mouths (v16) to show God what they will conclude. The phrase asher-shame'u et-shim'akha ('who have heard Your fame') establishes that God's reputation is international — the exodus made God famous among all peoples. Destroying Israel after that display would rewrite God's story from deliverance to failure.
16. The nations' imagined verdict: mibbeli yekolot YHWH ('because the LORD was unable') — they would conclude that God lacked the power to fulfill His promise. The verb vayyishchatem ('He slaughtered them') is brutal — shachat is the word for ritual slaughter. The nations would interpret Israel's destruction not as divine judgment but as divine failure. Moses's argument is masterful: he does not defend Israel's behavior (which is indefensible) but appeals to the consequences for God's own reputation.
17. Moses pivots from reputation defense to direct appeal: yigdal-na koach Adonai ('let the power of my Lord be great/displayed'). The shift is subtle but critical: true power is not displayed in destruction but in the capacity to forgive. Moses is about to quote God's own self-description from Exodus 34:6-7 — turning God's words back to God as an argument for mercy.
18. Moses condenses Exodus 34:6-7 into a prayer, selecting the attributes most relevant to the crisis: erekh appayim ('slow to anger' — patience), rav-chesed ('rich in steadfast love' — covenant loyalty), nosei avon vafesha ('bearing iniquity and transgression' — sin-bearing capacity). He also includes the balancing clause: venaqeh lo yenaqqeh ('yet He does not simply acquit'). Moses's genius is using both halves: mercy and justice. He asks God to forgive without pretending the sin doesn't matter. The prayer models what authentic intercession looks like: honest about the sin, confident in God's character.
19. The direct petition: selach-na la'avon ha'am hazzeh ('forgive, please, the iniquity of this people'). Moses grounds the request in two arguments: kegodel chasdekha ('according to the greatness of Your chesed') — God's own character demands forgiveness proportional to His love, and veka'asher nasatah la'am hazzeh miMitsrayim ve'ad-hennah ('as You have borne with this people from Egypt until now') — precedent. God has already forgiven this people repeatedly; one more time is consistent with the pattern. Moses argues from God's track record of mercy.
20. Three Hebrew words: salachti kidvarekha ('I have forgiven, according to your word'). The brevity is stunning. After Moses's elaborate argument (v13-19), God's response is three words of pardon. The verb salach ('forgive') is the divine exclusive — only God salachs (as noted in Lev 4:20). The phrase kidvarekha ('according to your word') acknowledges that Moses's intercession was effective. The death sentence of v12 is commuted. But forgiveness and consequences are not the same thing — what follows (v21-35) preserves the pardon while establishing the penalty.
21. God swears by Himself — chai-ani ('as I live') — the most binding oath possible. The declaration veyimmale khavod-YHWH et-kol-ha'arets ('the glory of the LORD will fill the entire earth') is both a promise and a reorientation: even in the context of Israel's failure, God's kavod will ultimately prevail across the whole earth, not just in the promised land. The scope expands from one nation to the entire world.
22. The criteria for exclusion: those who saw God's glory and signs (haro'im et-kevodi ve'et ototay) and still refused to trust. The phrase zeh eser pe'amim ('these ten times') may be literal (ten specific rebellion incidents) or idiomatic (repeatedly). The rabbis identified ten wilderness rebellions; the number may also echo the ten plagues — God performed ten signs of power; Israel responded with ten acts of faithlessness. The tragic symmetry: miracle for miracle, rebellion matched revelation.

23. The sentence: im-yir'u et-ha'arets ('if they shall see the land' — a Hebrew oath formula meaning 'they shall certainly NOT see it'). The promise to the ancestors (asher nishba'ti la'avotam) stands, but this generation forfeits its participation. The word mena'atsay ('those who treated Me with contempt') — from na'ats in v11 — defines the disqualifying sin: not fear, not weakness, but contempt for God.
24. Caleb's exception is based on character: ruach acheret immo ('a different spirit was with him'). While the nation despaired, Caleb had a spirit of faith and courage. The phrase vayemalle acharay ('he followed Me wholeheartedly,' literally 'he filled after Me') describes total, unreserved allegiance. Caleb is called avdi ('My servant') — the title reserved for Moses (Deut 34:5), Abraham, David, and the prophets. Joshua is not mentioned here (his exception appears in v30 and 26:65), possibly because Joshua's leadership role was already secured.
25. The immediate consequence: penu us'u lakhem hammidbarah derekh Yam-Suf ('turn around and head into the wilderness toward the Red Sea'). The direction reverses — instead of advancing into Canaan, Israel must retreat deeper into the desert. The mention of Amalekites and Canaanites in the valley is both practical (the military situation is real) and punitive (you feared them, so you cannot face them). The Red Sea route sends Israel away from the promised land and back toward Egypt — exactly what they said they wanted.
26. A new speech — addressed to both Moses and Aaron — specifies the details of the judgment. The sentencing phase begins.
27. God's patience reaches its limit: ad-matay la'edah hara'ah hazzot ('how long for this wicked community?'). Three times the verb lin ('grumble') appears in this verse — mallinim alay... mallinim alay... shama'ti ('grumbling against Me... grumbling against Me... I have heard'). God has been listening. The cumulative effect of repeated complaint — not a single incident but a pattern — triggers the judgment.
28. The divine oath again: chai-ani ne'um-YHWH ('as I live — declares the LORD'). The judgment is perfectly ironic: ka'asher dibbartem be'oznay ken e'eseh lakhem ('as you spoke in My ears, so I will do to you'). God takes their own words (v2: 'if only we had died in this wilderness') and makes them the sentence. They wished for death in the wilderness; they will get it. God does not invent a punishment — He grants their own request.
29. The sentence is specific: bamidbar hazzeh yippelu figreikhem ('in this wilderness your corpses will fall'). The age threshold — mibben esrim shanah vama'lah ('from twenty years old and upward') — matches the census age of Numbers 1:3. Everyone counted in the census who participated in the grumbling will die before reaching the land. The children under twenty — the ones the parents feared for (v3) — will be the inheritors.
30. The two exceptions are named: Caleb (mentioned in v24) and Joshua (mentioned here for the first time in the judgment). The phrase nasati et-yadi ('I raised My hand' — a gesture accompanying an oath) recalls the patriarchal oath. The land promise remains valid — God's oath is unbreakable — but this generation is excluded from participating in its fulfillment. The promise outlives the generation that doubted it.
31. The deepest irony of the judgment: vetappekhem asher amartem lavaz yihyeh ('your children whom you said would be plunder') — the parents' own argument (v3) is turned on its head. The children they feared for will be the inheritors. The verb me'astem ('you rejected/despised') is strong — the parents did not merely doubt the land; they despised it. The children will 'know' (yade'u) what their parents refused to believe.
32. A terse, devastating restatement: ufigreikhem attem yippelu bamidbar hazzeh ('but your corpses, you, will fall in this wilderness'). The pronoun attem ('you') is emphatic — you, specifically, in contrast to your children. The wilderness that was supposed to be a corridor to the promise becomes a graveyard.
33. The forty-year wilderness sentence: uvneikhem yihyu ro'im bamidbar arba'im shanah ('your children will be shepherds/wanderers in the wilderness forty years'). The children suffer indirectly — venase'u et-zenuteikhem ('they will bear your unfaithfulness'). The word zenut ('unfaithfulness,' literally 'whoredom/prostitution') frames the rebellion as spiritual adultery — Israel's turning from God to fear is described in the language of marital betrayal. The children pay for their parents' faithlessness.
34. The formula: yom lashanah yom lashanah ('a day for a year, a day for a year') — the forty-day scouting mission generates a forty-year sentence. The proportional punishment connects the crime to the consequence directly. The closing phrase vida'tem et-tenu'ati is difficult: tenu'ah may mean 'opposition to Me,' 'My withdrawal,' or 'what it means when I turn away.' The LXX renders it 'My wrath.' Whatever the precise meaning, the experience of forty years in the wilderness will teach Israel something about God that their faithlessness prevented them from learning: the cost of opposing the one who rescued them.
35. The divine signature: ani YHWH dibbarti ('I, the LORD, have spoken'). The sentence is sealed and irrevocable. The phrase hanno'adim alay ('who banded together against Me') reframes the rebellion: it was not merely fear of Canaanites but an organized conspiracy against God. The double ending — yittammu vesham yamutu ('they will come to an end, and there they will die') — closes the sentencing with finality. The wilderness generation's fate is sealed.
36. The ten unfaithful spies are identified as the cause: vayyallinu alav et-kol-ha'edah ('they caused the entire community to grumble against him'). Their sin was lehotsi dibbah al-ha'arets ('spreading a bad report about the land') — the verb dibbah ('slander, defamation') treats the negative report as libel against the land God promised. They didn't merely report difficulties; they slandered God's gift.
37. The ten unfaithful spies die immediately — bammagefah lifnei YHWH ('in a plague before the LORD'). They do not share the forty-year sentence of the community; their judgment is instant. They are the first casualties of the rebellion they caused. The phrase lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') emphasizes that their death is divine act, not natural illness.
38. The two faithful spies survive: chayu min-ha'anashim ha'hem ('they lived from among those men'). The contrast is stark: ten died in a plague; two lived. Faithfulness and unfaithfulness produce opposite outcomes from the same mission. Joshua and Caleb saw the same land, faced the same giants, but trusted the same God — and that trust preserved their lives.

39. Moses delivers God's verdict, and the response is grief: vayyit'abbelu ha'am me'od ('the people mourned greatly'). The mourning comes too late — repentance after sentencing does not reverse the judgment. The tragedy is that genuine grief follows genuine sin, but the consequences cannot be undone by tears alone.
40. The people attempt a belated assault on Canaan: hinnenu ve'alínu el-hammaqom ('here we are, we will go up to the place'). The confession ki chatanu ('for we have sinned') accompanies the advance. But this attempt is as disobedient as the original refusal — God commanded them to turn toward the wilderness (v25), and now they are defying that command by trying to enter the land. They went from 'we refuse to go' to 'we insist on going' — both positions reject God's current instruction.
41. Moses warns them: lammah zeh attem overim et-pi YHWH ('why are you crossing/defying the mouth of the LORD?'). The verb avar ('to cross, to transgress') is the same word used for crossing a boundary — they are violating God's explicit instruction to retreat. The verdict is blunt: vehi lo titslach ('it will not succeed'). Military action without God's authorization is futile — the same truth the unfaithful spies should have recognized in reverse: with God, victory is certain; without God, defeat is certain.
42. The theological crux: ki ein YHWH beqirbekhem ('because the LORD is not among you'). God's presence — the very thing that makes Israel invincible — has been withdrawn from this military venture. Without God in their midst, Israel is just another small nation against fortified Canaanite cities. The prohibition al-ta'alu ('do not go up') is as clear as the original command to advance would have been — but they obey neither.
43. Moses spells out the consequence: unefaltem becherev ('you will fall by the sword'). The reason: ki al-ken shavtem me'acharei YHWH ('because you have turned away from following the LORD'). The verb shuv ('turn') — the same word that means 'repent/return' (Deut 30:2) — here describes turning away. The same capacity for turning that could restore them to God has been used to turn away from God. The final declaration: velo-yihyeh YHWH immakhem ('the LORD will not be with you') — the absence of God's presence is the absence of everything.
44. The verb vayyya'pilu ('they presumed, they acted recklessly') describes audacious, unsanctioned advance — pressing forward without authorization. Two absences define the disaster: the ark (aron berit-YHWH) and Moses (uMosheh) did not move from the camp. The symbols of God's presence and God's appointed leader stayed behind. Israel charges into battle without the covenant box and without the mediator — carrying nothing but their own presumption.
45. The predicted defeat: vayyakkum vayyakketum ad-haChormah ('they struck them and beat them back as far as Hormah'). The name Chormah means 'destruction/ban' — the place name itself narrates the outcome. The Amalekites and Canaanites — the very enemies Israel feared — now defeat them easily because God is not fighting for Israel. The chapter ends where it began: in failure. Israel feared the enemy (v1-3), refused to trust God (v4), was sentenced to the wilderness (v28-35), and then was defeated by the same enemy they could have conquered with God's help. The entire chapter is a study in the consequences of faithlessness.

15

Summary: *After the devastating judgment of chapter 14, God gives offering regulations that begin with 'when you enter the land' — a reassurance that the promise endures for the next generation. The chapter covers grain and drink offering quantities scaled to animal size, a provision for the resident alien, the dough offering (challah), communal and individual sin offerings, the penalty for defiant sin, a Sabbath violation narrative, and the command to wear fringes (tsitsit).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The placement is the message. Immediately after sentencing the adult generation to death in the wilderness, God legislates for life in the land — ki tavo'u el erets moshvoteikhem ('when you enter the land of your settlements,' v. 2). The promise of the land is not revoked, only postponed. The distinction between inadvertent sin (shegagah) and defiant sin (beyad ramah, 'with a high hand,' v. 30) is structurally critical: the sacrificial system covers the former but cannot absorb the latter.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase reiach nichoach ('pleasing aroma,' v. 3) is anthropomorphic — God does not eat or smell — but the metaphor conveys divine acceptance so vividly that we retained it rather than abstracting it. The term beyad ramah ('with a high hand,' v. 30) for defiant sin paints an image of a raised fist. We rendered it 'defiantly' but noted the gesture in the translator notes. The tsitsit ('fringes,' v. 38) and their tekhelet ('blue-violet') cord remain loaded terms in Jewish practice.*

Connections: *The 'when you enter the land' formula (v. 2) answers the despair of chapter 14 by confirming the promise to the children. The one-law-for-all principle — citizen and alien alike (vv. 15-16, 29) — echoes Exodus 12:49. The Sabbath violation story (vv. 32-36) illustrates the 'high hand' sin just described. The tsitsit command (vv. 37-41) is recalled in Deuteronomy 22:12 and referenced in Matthew 9:20.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When you enter the land of your settlements, which I am giving you, ³and you present a fire offering to the LORD — whether a burnt offering or a sacrifice to fulfill a vow, or as a voluntary offering, or at your appointed festivals — producing a *reiaich nichoach* (pleasing aroma) to the LORD, from the cattle herd or from the flock, ⁴then the one presenting the offering to the LORD must bring a grain offering of one-tenth of an ephah of fine flour, mixed with one-quarter of a hin of oil. ⁵You must also prepare one-quarter of a hin of wine as a drink offering, to accompany the burnt offering or sacrifice, for each lamb. ⁶For a ram, prepare a grain offering of two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with one-third of a hin of oil, ⁷and one-third of a hin of wine as a drink offering. Present it as a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ⁸When you prepare a young bull as a burnt offering or as a sacrifice to fulfill a vow, or as a peace offering to the LORD, ⁹you must present with the young bull a grain offering of three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. ¹⁰Also bring half a hin of wine as a drink offering — a fire offering producing a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹¹This is the procedure for each bull, each ram, each lamb, or each young goat. ¹²However many you prepare, follow this same procedure for each one, according to their total number. ¹³Every native-born Israelite must follow these procedures when presenting a fire offering as a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁴When a foreigner resides among you — or anyone living among you in future generations — and that person presents a fire offering as a pleasing aroma to the LORD, they must do exactly as you do. ¹⁵The assembly has one statute for both you and the foreigner residing among you — a permanent statute throughout your generations. You and the foreigner are the same before the LORD. ¹⁶One instruction and one standard of justice apply to both you and the foreigner residing among you." ¹⁷The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁸"Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When you enter the land where I am bringing you, ¹⁹and you eat from the bread of the land, you must set aside a contribution for the LORD. ²⁰From the first of your dough, you must set aside a loaf as a contribution — just as you set aside a contribution from the threshing floor, so you must set this aside. ²¹From the first of your dough you must give a contribution to the LORD throughout your generations." ²²If you unintentionally fail to carry out any of these commands that the LORD has spoken to Moses — ²³everything the LORD has commanded you through Moses, from the day the LORD first issued His commands and continuing forward throughout your generations — ²⁴if something was done unintentionally without the community's awareness, the entire community must offer one young bull as a burnt offering producing a pleasing aroma to the LORD — with its accompanying grain offering and drink offering according to the prescribed rule — along with one male goat as a purification offering. ²⁵The priest will make atonement for the entire Israelite community, and they will be forgiven, because it was unintentional. Once they bring their offering — a fire offering to the LORD — and their purification offering before the LORD for their inadvertent error, ²⁶the entire Israelite community will be forgiven, along with the foreigner residing among them, because the entire people acted unintentionally. ²⁷If a single individual sins unintentionally, that person must bring a one-year-old female goat as a purification offering. ²⁸The priest will make atonement before the LORD for the person who sinned unintentionally — when the sin was committed in error — to purge the guilt on that person's behalf, and that person will be forgiven. ²⁹Whether native-born among the Israelites or a foreigner residing among them — you have one instruction for anyone who sins unintentionally. ³⁰But the person who acts defiantly — whether native-born or foreigner — that person blasphemes the LORD. That person must be cut off from among their people, ³¹because that person has treated the LORD's word with contempt and violated His command. That person must be completely cut off — their guilt remains on them. ³²While the Israelites were in the wilderness, they discovered a man gathering wood on the Sabbath day. ³³Those who found him gathering wood brought him before Moses, Aaron, and the entire community. ³⁴They placed him in custody, because it had not yet been clarified what should be done to him. ³⁵The LORD told Moses, "The man must certainly be put to death. The entire community must stone him outside the camp." ³⁶The entire community took him outside the camp and stoned him to death, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³⁷The LORD spoke to Moses: ³⁸"Speak to the Israelites and tell them to make tassels on the corners of their garments throughout their generations, and to attach a cord of blue-violet to each corner tassel. ³⁹These tassels will serve as a reminder for you. When you see them, you will remember all the LORD's commands and carry them out, rather than following the impulses of your own hearts and eyes, which lead you into unfaithfulness. ⁴⁰This is so you will remember and carry out all My commands, and be set apart as holy to your God. ⁴¹I am the LORD your God — the one who brought you out of Egypt to

serve as your God. I am the LORD your God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formulaic *vayedaber YHVH el-Mosheh le'mor* ('the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') introduces a new legislative block. Placed immediately after the devastating report of the failed entry into Canaan (ch. 14), these offering instructions pointedly reference 'when you enter the land' (v. 2) — a reassurance that despite the current generation's failure, God's promise of the land endures for their children.
2. The phrase *ki tavo'u el-erets moshvotekhem* ('when you enter the land of your settlements') uses *moshavot* ('dwelling places, settlements') rather than the more common *erets* ('land'), emphasizing permanent habitation. The present participle *noten* ('giving') signals an ongoing divine grant — not a one-time gift but a continuous act of provision.
3. Four categories of fire offering (*isheh*) are listed: *olah* ('whole burnt offering'), *zevach lefaleh-neder* ('sacrifice fulfilling a vow'), *nedavah* ('voluntary/freewill offering'), and *mo'adim* offerings ('appointed festival offerings'). The phrase *reiaich nichoach* ('pleasing aroma') is an anthropomorphism describing God's acceptance; the root *n-ch-ch* conveys rest or satisfaction. Both *baqar* ('cattle') and *tson* ('flock animals' — sheep and goats) are acceptable sources.
4. The Hebrew *hamaqriv qorbano* ('the one bringing near his offering') uses the root *q-r-b* twice for emphasis — both the act and the object share the same root. The *minchah* here is a *solet* ('fine flour') offering, not the broader 'gift' meaning the word sometimes carries. The *issaron* ('tenth') refers to one-tenth of an *ephah* (approximately 2.3 liters). The *hin* is roughly 6 liters, so a quarter-hin equals about 1.5 liters of *shemen* ('oil').
5. The *nesekh* ('drink offering, libation') of *yayin* ('wine') accompanies each animal sacrifice. This is the first systematic pairing of grain, oil, and wine with animal offerings — a triad representing agricultural completeness. The measurement of a quarter-hin of wine per *kevesh* ('lamb') scales upward for larger animals in the following verses, establishing a proportional system.
6. The *ayil* ('ram') requires double the flour and proportionally more oil than a lamb: *shnei esronim* ('two-tenths') of *solet* mixed with a *shlishit hahin* ('one-third of a hin') of oil. The graduated scale — lamb, ram, bull — reflects the increasing value of the animal and the corresponding increase in accompanying offerings.
7. The ram's drink offering is *shlishit hahin* ('one-third of a hin') of wine — larger than the lamb's quarter-hin. The verb *taqriv* ('you shall present, bring near') from the root *q-r-b* reinforces the theme of approach to the divine. The *reiaich nichoach* ('pleasing aroma') formula indicates divine acceptance of the complete offering package.
8. The *ben-baqar* ('young bull, son of the herd') represents the largest and most valuable sacrificial animal. Here *shelamim* ('peace offerings') appears alongside *olah* and *neder-fulfillment* sacrifices. The root *sh-l-m* in *shelamim* connotes wholeness, completion, and well-being — these are communal meals shared between God, the priest, and the worshiper.
9. The bull's grain offering reaches the maximum: *sheloshah esronim* ('three-tenths') of *solet* ('fine flour') with *chatsi hahin* ('half a hin') of *shemen* ('oil'). The proportional scale is now complete: lamb (1/10 flour, 1/4 hin oil), ram (2/10 flour, 1/3 hin oil), bull (3/10 flour, 1/2 hin oil) — each tier roughly doubles the accompanying offering.
10. The bull's *nesekh* ('libation') of *chatsi hahin* ('half a hin') of *yayin* ('wine') — approximately 3 liters — is the largest drink offering. The term *isheh* ('fire offering') here encompasses the entire offering complex: animal, grain, oil, and wine together constitute the complete *reiaich nichoach* ('pleasing aroma') to the LORD.
11. The summary statement uses *kakha ye'aseh* ('thus it shall be done') and lists four animal types: *shor* ('bull, ox'), *ayil* ('ram'), *seh bakhvasim* ('a young one among the lambs'), and *izzim* ('goats'). The word *seh* is a general term for a small flock animal — either a lamb or a kid — and here the text specifies both subcategories.
12. The emphasis on *kamispar* ('according to the number') and *kemisparam* ('according to their number') stresses that the accompanying offerings scale linearly — if you sacrifice three lambs, you bring three portions of grain, oil, and wine. There is no bulk discount; each animal receives its full complement of accompaniments.
13. The term *ha'eizrach* ('the native-born citizen') from the root *z-r-ch* ('to rise, shine') specifically denotes an Israelite by birth. This term sets up the crucial legal extension in the next verse: these offering regulations apply equally to the *ger* ('foreigner, resident alien'). The transition from *eizrach* to *ger* is a hallmark of Israelite covenant theology — one law for all who worship the LORD.
14. The *ger* ('resident foreigner, sojourner') from the root *g-u-r* ('to dwell as an alien') is granted full participation in the sacrificial system. The phrase *ka'asher ta'asu ken ya'aseh* ('as you do, so he shall do') establishes ritual equality. This is remarkable in the ancient Near East, where foreigners were typically excluded from cultic participation. Israel's God extends worship access beyond ethnic boundaries.
15. The emphatic *chuqqah achat* ('one statute') and *chuqqat olam* ('permanent statute') establish a universal principle: *kakhem kagger yihyeh lifnei YHVH* ('as you, so the foreigner shall be before the LORD'). The phrase *lifnei YHVH* ('before the LORD') — meaning in God's presence and judgment — is the great equalizer. Social status and ethnic origin dissolve before the divine throne.
16. The concluding formula pairs *torah achat* ('one instruction, one law') with *mishpat echad* ('one judgment, one legal standard'). Torah here carries its primary meaning of 'instruction, teaching' rather than the later sense of 'the Law' as a whole document. *Mishpat* ('justice, legal ruling') ensures that the foreigner receives equal judicial protection. The *parashah* marker (*peh*) closes this unit.

17. A new speech formula opens the second legislative section of the chapter, shifting from sacrificial accompaniments to the challah ('dough') offering. This transition marks a move from centralized altar worship to household practice — the offering of first-dough applies wherever bread is made.
18. The phrase *asher ani mevi etkhem shammah* ('where I am bringing you there') uses the hiphil participle *mevi* ('bringing'), emphasizing that God is the active agent of their entry into the land. Unlike verse 2's *noten* ('giving'), this verb stresses the journey itself — God personally escorts them to their destination.
19. The *terumah* ('contribution, elevation offering') from the root *r-u-m* ('to raise, lift up') is the portion separated for sacred use. The phrase *lechem ha'arets* ('bread of the land') refers to bread made from grain grown in the promised land — connecting agricultural productivity directly to covenant gratitude. Eating from the land's produce triggers the obligation to give back.
20. The *reshit arisoteikhem* ('first of your dough-batch') introduces the challah offering — the word *challah* here refers to a loaf or cake of bread set apart from the first kneading. The analogy to *terumat goren* ('contribution from the threshing floor') connects household baking to agricultural tithing. This is one of the few offerings that originates in the domestic kitchen rather than the sanctuary.
21. The repetition of *me-reshit arisoteikhem* ('from the first of your dough') with the temporal marker *ledoroteikhem* ('throughout your generations') makes this a perpetual obligation. The *samekh* marker closes this short unit. Jewish tradition later codified this as the *mitzvah* of *challah* — separating a portion of dough, still practiced today when baking bread.
22. The verb *tishgu* ('you err, go astray') from the root *sh-g-g* designates unintentional sin — a mistake rather than a deliberate act of defiance. This section (vv. 22–31) distinguishes between *shegagah* ('inadvertent error') and sinning *beyad ramah* ('with a raised hand,' i.e., defiantly). The contrast is foundational to Israelite jurisprudence: intent determines the severity of consequences.
23. The phrase *beyad-Mosheh* ('by the hand of Moses') is a standard idiom for mediated revelation: God's commands come 'through' Moses as the authorized channel. The temporal scope — *min-hayom* ('from the day') *vahal'ah* ('and onward') *ledoroteikhem* ('throughout your generations') — makes clear that this provision for unintentional sins covers all divine legislation, past and future.
24. The phrase *me'einei ha'edah* ('from the eyes of the community') means the sin occurred beyond the community's notice or awareness. The communal remedy requires two animals: a *par ben-baqar* ('young bull') for an *olah* ('burnt offering') with its *minchah* and *nesekh* accompaniments *kamishpat* ('according to the rule'), plus a *se'ir izzim* ('male goat') as a *chattat* ('purification/sin offering'). The *chattat* specifically addresses the ritual impurity caused by the transgression.
25. The verb *kipper* ('make atonement, purge') from the root *k-p-r* is the central priestly act of reconciliation. The result is *venislach lahem* ('and it will be forgiven them') — the niphil passive indicating that forgiveness is a divine act, not a human achievement. The text insists on the condition: *ki shegagah hi* ('because it was unintentional'). Deliberate sin has no sacrificial remedy (see v. 30).
26. The forgiveness extends to both the native Israelite community and the *ger hagar betokham* ('the foreigner dwelling in their midst'). The universal scope — *lekhol-ha'am* ('for the entire people') — includes everyone under the covenant umbrella. The phrase *bishgagah* ('in inadvertence') is repeated to underscore that this provision covers only genuine mistakes. The *samekh* marker closes this subsection.
27. The shift from communal to individual sin: *nefesh achat* ('one person, one soul') who sins *bishgagah* ('unintentionally'). The required offering is an *ez bat-shnatah* ('a female goat in its first year') — a smaller animal than the communal offering, reflecting the more limited scope of individual versus collective transgression. The *nefesh* ('soul, person') emphasizes personal accountability.
28. The phrase *hanefesh hashogeg* ('the erring person') uses the *qal* participle of *sh-g-g*, characterizing the sinner by the unintentional nature of their act. The verb *kipper* appears twice — once for the priestly act (*kipper al*) and once for the purpose (*lekhipper alav*, 'to make atonement for him'). The result *venislach lo* ('and it will be forgiven him') mirrors the communal formula, confirming that atonement is effective for the individual as well.
29. The principle of *torah achat* ('one instruction') reappears from v. 16, now applied specifically to unintentional sin. The pairing of *ha'eizrach* ('native-born') and *hager* ('resident foreigner') under one legal standard reinforces the chapter's central theme: equal access to both worship (vv. 14–16) and forgiveness (vv. 26, 29). The verb *la'oseh* ('for the one doing') emphasizes the act rather than the actor's identity.
30. The critical contrast: *beyad ramah* ('with a raised hand') describes deliberate, defiant sin — the opposite of *shegagah*. The raised hand is a gesture of rebellion and contempt. Such a person *megaddef et-YHVH* ('blasphemes, reviles the LORD') — the root *g-d-f* means to cut, insult, or revile. The penalty is *karet: venikhretah* ('shall be cut off'), meaning divine excision from the community, possibly premature death or total social exclusion.
31. The infinitive absolute construction *hikharet tikkaret* ('being cut off, shall be cut off') intensifies the penalty through doubling — there is no reprieve. The reason: *devar-YHVH bazah* ('the LORD's word he despised') and *et-mitsvato hefar* ('his command he broke'). The verb *bazah* ('to despise, hold in contempt') and *hefar* ('to nullify, violate, break') indicate willful rejection. The closing phrase *avonah bah* ('her iniquity is in her') means the guilt remains with the person — no atonement is possible for brazen defiance.
32. This narrative (vv. 32–36) illustrates the principle of *beyad ramah* ('with a raised hand') from vv. 30–31. The man is *mequoshesh etsim* ('gathering sticks/wood') — the *poel* participle of *q-sh-sh* suggests deliberate, ongoing collection, not an accidental act. The *beyom hashabbat* ('on the Sabbath day') makes this a direct violation of the Fourth Commandment. Gathering wood implies intent to kindle fire, also explicitly prohibited on the Sabbath (Exod 35:3).
33. The witnesses — *hamots'im oto* ('those who found him') — bring the offender to the full leadership triad: *Mosheh* (judicial authority), *Aharon* (priestly authority), and *kol-ha'edah* ('the entire community' — communal authority). The verb *vayaqrivu* ('they brought him near') uses the same root *q-r-b* as sacrificial presentation, adding an ironic layer: the man is 'presented' to the community the way an offering is presented to God.

34. The phrase *bamishmar* ('in custody, in guarded confinement') indicates a holding period — not a prison sentence but temporary detention pending divine ruling. The reason: *lo forash* ('it had not been specified, made distinct') what his penalty should be. While the general Sabbath prohibition was known, the specific punishment for violation had not yet been explicitly declared. This case becomes the legal precedent.
35. The divine verdict uses the emphatic infinitive absolute: *mot yumat* ('dying he shall die' — he must certainly be put to death). The method is *ragom oto ba'avanim* ('pelting him with stones') — communal execution by stoning. The location *michutz lamachaneh* ('outside the camp') removes the impurity of death from the sacred community space. The entire community (*kol-ha'edah*) participates, emphasizing that Sabbath violation is an offense against all.
36. The narrative concludes with exact compliance: *ka'asher tsivvah YHVH et-Mosheh* ('as the LORD commanded Moses'). The terseness — *vayirgemu oto ba'avanim vayyamot* ('they stoned him with stones, and he died') — contrasts with the gravity of the event. The *peh* marker closes this narrative section, and the chapter now transitions from judgment to the preventive measure of the tassels (*tzitzit*).
37. The final speech formula introduces the *tzitzit* commandment (vv. 38–41). Placed after the sabbath violator narrative, the tassels serve as a physical reminder to prevent future transgressions — a visible, wearable prompt to remember God's commands. The juxtaposition is deliberate: from the consequence of forgetting to the means of remembering.
38. The *tsitsit* ('tassels, fringes') are placed *al-kanfei vigdeihem* ('on the corners/wings of their garments'). The word *kanaf* means 'wing' or 'corner/edge' of a garment. The *petil tekhelet* ('cord of blue-violet') uses *tekhelet*, a precious dye extracted from the murex snail (*Bolinus brandaris*), producing a blue-purple color. This was an expensive dye in antiquity, and its inclusion in everyday garments democratized a symbol of royalty and priesthood — every Israelite wears the color of heaven.
39. The functional chain is visual-cognitive-behavioral: *ur'item oto* ('you will see it') leads to *uzekhartem* ('you will remember') leads to *va'asitem* ('you will do'). The warning — *velo taturu acharei levavkhem ve'acharei eineikhem* ('do not scout/explore after your hearts and after your eyes') — uses *tatur* from the same root (*t-u-r*) as the spies who 'scouted' the land in chapter 13. The connection is pointed: just as the spies' eyes led them astray, wandering hearts and eyes lead to spiritual infidelity. The term *zonim* ('going astray sexually/spiritually') draws on the prophetic metaphor of idolatry as adultery.
40. The purpose clause *lema'an tizkeru* ('so that you remember') culminates in the goal: *vihyitem qedoshim l'Eloheikhem* ('and you will be holy to your God'). The root *q-d-sh* ('holy, set apart') is the telos of the entire commandment system — remembrance leads to obedience, and obedience leads to holiness. The tassels are therefore not merely decorative but sacramental: a physical means of pursuing spiritual transformation.
41. The chapter closes with the self-identification formula *ani YHVH Eloheikhem* ('I am the LORD your God'), stated twice for emphasis — bracketing the Exodus rationale. The phrase *asher hotseti etkhem me'erets Mitsrayim* ('who brought you out of the land of Egypt') grounds all obligation in liberation: God's authority to command rests on His prior act of deliverance. This verse is incorporated into the daily Shema liturgy (recited morning and evening), making it one of the most frequently spoken sentences in Jewish life.

16

Summary: *Korah (a Kohathite Levite) and Dathan and Abiram (Reubenites) lead a revolt against Moses and Aaron, backed by 250 community leaders. They argue that since the whole community is holy, Moses and Aaron have no right to elevate themselves. God settles the dispute catastrophically: the earth opens to swallow Korah's household, and fire consumes the 250 incense-bearing rebels. A subsequent plague kills 14,700 before Aaron's intercession stops it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rebellion contains two distinct challenges fused into one crisis: Korah's Levitical faction contests Aaron's exclusive priesthood, while the Reubenites contest Moses's civil authority. Their theological argument — kol ha'edah kullam qedoshim ('the entire community, all of them, are holy,' v. 3) — distorts a genuine truth (Exodus 19:6) to deny legitimate roles. The verb vayyiqqach ('he took,' v. 1) opens abruptly with no stated object — a grammatical anomaly that signals the narrative's agitation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase rav lakhem ('you have gone too far!' v. 3), which the rebels hurl at Moses, is the same phrase Moses throws back at the Levites in verse 7. We rendered it identically both times to preserve the deliberate echo. The verb tishtalach ('you send [for Dathan and Abiram],' v. 12) and their refusal to 'go up' (lo na'aleh) creates a vertical metaphor — they will literally go down (vv. 30-33) into the earth instead.*

Connections: *Korah is a Kohathite (son of Izhar, son of Kohath, son of Levi) — the same clan assigned to carry the most sacred objects in Numbers 4. The 250 rebels carrying censers (v. 17) echoes Aaron's incense censuring in Leviticus 16. On ben Peleth (v. 1) disappears after the opening verse; rabbinic tradition (Sanhedrin 109b) credits his wife with saving him. The plague-stopping intercession by Aaron (v. 48) foreshadows priestly atonement theology.*

¹Korah son of Izhar, son of Kohath, son of Levi, along with Dathan and Abiram sons of Eliab, and On son of Peleth — all from the tribe of Reuben — took action. ²They rose up in opposition to Moses, along with 250 Israelite men who were leaders of the community — representatives summoned to the assembly, men of standing. ³They assembled against Moses and Aaron and declared, "You have gone too far! The entire community is holy — every one of them — and the LORD is among them. Why then do you elevate yourselves above the LORD's assembly?" ⁴When Moses heard this, he fell facedown. ⁵He addressed Korah and his entire faction: "In the morning, the LORD will reveal who belongs to Him and who is holy, and He will grant that person access to His presence. The one He chooses is the one He will bring near to Himself. ⁶Do this: take censers for yourselves — Korah and his entire faction — ⁷put fire in them and place incense on them before the LORD tomorrow. The man whom the LORD chooses — he is the holy one. It is you who have gone too far, sons of Levi!" ⁸Moses said to Korah, "Listen carefully, sons of Levi! ⁹Is it too small a thing for you that the God of Israel has set you apart from the rest of the Israelite community, bringing you near to Himself to perform the service of the LORD's Tabernacle and to stand before the community to serve them? ¹⁰He has brought you near — you and all your fellow Levites alongside you — and now you are demanding the priesthood as well? ¹¹Therefore you and your entire faction are the ones banding together against the LORD. As for Aaron — what is he that you lodge your complaints against him?" ¹²Moses sent a summons to Dathan and Abiram, sons of Eliab, but they responded, "We refuse to come up!" ¹³Is it not enough that you dragged us up from a land flowing with milk and honey to let us die in the wilderness — must you also lord it over us completely? ¹⁴What is more, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey or given us an inheritance of fields and vineyards. Do you intend to gouge out the eyes of these men? We refuse to come up!" ¹⁵Moses burned with intense anger and said to the LORD, "Do not accept their offering! I have not taken so much as a single donkey from any of them, and I have not mistreated a single one of them." ¹⁶Moses said to Korah, "You and your entire faction must present yourselves before the LORD — you, they, and Aaron — tomorrow. ¹⁷Each man must take his censer and place incense on it, then bring it before the LORD — each man with his censer — 250 censers in all. You and Aaron must each bring your censer as well." ¹⁸Each man took his censer, placed fire in it, put incense on it, and stood at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting alongside Moses and Aaron. ¹⁹Korah assembled the entire community against them at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting, and the glory of the LORD appeared to the whole community. ²⁰The LORD spoke to Moses and Aaron: ²¹"Separate yourselves from this community so I can consume them in an instant." ²²They fell facedown and cried out, "God — the God of the spirits of all living beings — when one man sins, will you pour out your fury on the entire community?" ²³The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁴"Tell the community: Move away from the area around the dwellings of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram." ²⁵Moses rose and walked over to Dathan and Abiram; the elders of Israel went with him. ²⁶He addressed the community: "Move away immediately from the tents of these wicked men. Do not touch anything that belongs to them, or you will be swept away because of all their sins." ²⁷So the people moved away from the dwellings of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram on every side. Dathan and Abiram came out and stood defiantly at the entrances of their tents — along with their wives, their sons, and their small children. ²⁸Moses declared, "By this you will know that the LORD sent me to do all these things, and that none of this came from my own initiative. ²⁹If these men die a natural death, the way all people die, or if what happens to them is the ordinary fate of all humanity — then the LORD has not sent me. ³⁰But if the LORD creates something entirely unprecedented — the ground opens its mouth and swallows them along with everything they own, and they descend alive into Sheol — then you will know that these men have treated the LORD with contempt." ³¹The moment he finished speaking all these words, the ground beneath them split open. ³²The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them — their households, all the people associated with Korah, and all their possessions. ³³They descended alive into Sheol — they and everything they owned. The earth closed over them, and they vanished from the midst of the assembly. ³⁴All the Israelites around them fled at their screams, crying out, "The earth might swallow us too!" ³⁵Fire blazed out from the LORD and consumed the 250 men who were presenting the incense.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyiqqach* ('he took') opens abruptly without a stated object — a grammatical anomaly that ancient commentators noted. The rebellion has two distinct factions: Korah is a Levite (from the Kohathite clan, who carried the most sacred objects) challenging Aaron's exclusive priesthood, while Dathan, Abiram, and On are Reubenites challenging Moses's civil authority. On ben Pelet disappears from the narrative after this verse — rabbinic

tradition says his wife talked him out of the rebellion.

2. The 250 supporters are described with three titles: *nesi'ei edah* ('leaders/princes of the community'), *qeri'ei mo'ed* ('those summoned to the assembly' — publicly recognized representatives), and *anshei-shem* ('men of name/reown'). These are not fringe dissidents but the established elite. The phrase *vayyaqumu lifnei Mosheh* ('they rose up before Moses') uses *qum* in a hostile sense — rising against, not merely standing up.
3. The accusation *rav-lakhem* ('too much for you!' or 'you have gone too far!') is a phrase Moses will throw back at the Levites in v. 7. The theological argument — *kol-ha'edah kullam qedoshim* ('the entire community, all of them, are holy') — distorts a genuine truth (Exod 19:6 declares Israel 'a kingdom of priests') to deny legitimate hierarchical roles. The verb *titnas'u* ('you lift yourselves up') from *n-s-* implies self-exaltation, accusing Moses and Aaron of arrogating authority rather than receiving it from God.
4. Moses's response — *vayyipol al-panav* ('he fell on his face') — is not weakness but a posture of prayer and submission to God. Throughout Numbers, falling facedown signals seeking divine intervention at a moment of crisis (cf. 14:5, 17:10, 20:6). Moses does not defend himself; he turns the matter over to the LORD for adjudication.
5. The phrase *boqer veyoda YHVH* ('morning, and the LORD will make known') sets a divine timeline — God Himself will adjudicate by dawn. Three categories are tested: *et-asher-lo* ('who belongs to Him'), *et-haqqadosh* ('who is holy'), and *et-asher yivchar-bo* ('whom He will choose'). The verb *hiqriv* ('bring near') from *q-r-b* is priestly terminology — only the chosen may approach God. Moses transforms the dispute from a political argument into a divine test.
6. The *machtot* ('censers, fire pans') are the instruments of the test. These are flat pans for carrying burning coals and incense — tools of priestly service. By commanding the rebels to use censers, Moses invites them to perform the most exclusive priestly act: burning incense before the LORD. The test is elegant: if they are truly qualified for priestly service, they will survive the encounter.
7. Moses turns the rebels' own phrase back on them: *rav-lakhem benei Levi* ('you have gone too far, sons of Levi!') — the exact accusation they leveled against him in v. 3. The *qetoret* ('incense') test is lethal: unauthorized incense offering killed Aaron's sons Nadab and Abihu (Lev 10:1–2). The rebels are unwittingly signing up for the same test that proved fatal before.
8. The appeal *shim'u-na benei Levi* ('listen, please, sons of Levi') uses the particle *na* ('please, I urge you'), suggesting a final attempt at persuasion before the test. Moses addresses them as *benei Levi* ('sons of Levi') — reminding them of their tribal identity and the privileges already granted to them, which they are now jeopardizing by overreach.
9. The rhetorical question *hame'at mikkem* ('is it too little for you?') exposes the rebels' ingratitude. God *hivdil* ('separated, distinguished') the Levites — the same verb used for God's creative separations in Genesis 1. Three privileges are enumerated: *lehaqriv etkhem elav* ('to bring you near to Himself'), *la'avod et-avodat mishkan YHVH* ('to perform the service of the LORD's Tabernacle'), and *la'amod lifnei ha'edah leshartam* ('to stand before the community to minister to them'). These are extraordinary roles they are taking for granted.
10. The verb *vayyaqrev* ('He brought near') again uses the priestly root *q-r-b* — God Himself elevated the Levites to their privileged position. The charge *ubiqqashtem gam-kehunnah* ('and you seek also the priesthood') identifies the real ambition: not egalitarianism but acquisition of priestly power. The word *gam* ('also, even') underscores the excess — they already have Levitical service and want *kehunnah* ('priesthood') on top of it.
11. Moses reframes the rebellion: *hano'adim al-YHVH* ('those assembled against the LORD') — their quarrel is not with human leaders but with God who appointed them. The rhetorical question *ve'Aharon mah-hu* ('and Aaron, what is he?') diminishes Aaron's independent agency — he is merely God's appointed instrument, not a self-promoter. The *qere/ketiv* variant *tallinu/talonu* ('you complain') uses the root *l-u-n* ('to lodge, murmur, complain'), the same verb characterizing Israel's wilderness grumbling.
12. The scene shifts to the Reubenite faction. Their blunt refusal — *lo na'aleh* ('we will not go up') — is a double entendre: literally refusing Moses's summons, but also echoing the failed attempt to 'go up' into the promised land (14:40–44). The verb *alah* ('go up') carried territorial and spiritual weight — refusal to 'go up' to Moses is a refusal to ascend toward God's appointed authority.
13. The Reubenites' accusation contains a stunning inversion: they call Egypt — the land of slavery — *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey'), the exact phrase reserved for the promised land (Exod 3:8). This revisionist nostalgia reframes bondage as paradise. The verb *tistaarer* ('you lord it over us, you make yourself a ruler') uses the *hitpael* reflexive of *s-r-r*, implying self-appointment. The intensification *gam-histaarer* ('even domineering completely') accuses Moses of tyranny.
14. The accusation escalates: *af lo* ('moreover, not even') — not only did Moses take them from 'paradise,' he failed to deliver the promised land. The *nachalat sadeh vakherem* ('inheritance of field and vineyard') represents the unfulfilled promise. The bizarre question *ha'einei ha'anashim hahem tenaqquer* ('will you gouge out the eyes of those men?') likely means 'will you blind people to the truth?' or 'will you deceive them?' — using *tenaqquer* ('gouge out') from *n-q-r*. The refusal *lo na'aleh* repeats their defiance.
15. The phrase *vayyichar le-Mosheh me'od* ('it burned for Moses exceedingly') — one of the few times Moses's anger is described as extreme. His prayer *al-tafen el-minchatam* ('do not turn toward their offering') asks God to reject their incense test before it even begins. His self-defense — *lo chamor echad mehem nasa'ti* ('not one donkey from them have I taken') — echoes Samuel's later defense (1 Sam 12:3). The *chamor* ('donkey') represents the most basic form of property; Moses claims total financial integrity.
16. The command *heyu lifnei YHVH* ('be before the LORD') summons all parties to the divine courtroom. The three participants are listed with deliberate emphasis: *attah* ('you' — Korah), *vahem* ('and they' — his 250 supporters), *ve'Aharon* ('and Aaron' — the defendant). The word *machar* ('tomorrow') gives the rebels one night to reconsider — a window of grace that goes unused.

17. The repetition of *ish machtato* ('each man his censor') twice in the verse creates a ceremonial cadence — this is a formal, structured test. The total of *chamishim umatayyim machtot* ('250 censers') plus Korah's and Aaron's makes 252 individual tests of priestly legitimacy. The phrase *ve'attach ve'Aharon ish machtato* ('and you and Aaron, each man his censor') places Korah and Aaron in direct, parallel confrontation before God.
18. The narration is meticulous: *vayyiqchu, vayyittenu, vayyasimu, vayyaamdu* ('they took, they placed, they put, they stood') — four sequential actions building to the confrontation. The location is *petach ohel mo'ed* ('the entrance of the Tent of Meeting'), the threshold between sacred and ordinary space — the most dramatic possible setting for a test of priestly legitimacy.
19. Korah's final act is *vayyaqhel aleihem* ('he assembled against them') — mustering public opinion as a weapon. But his assembly triggers a counter-appearance: *vayyera kevod-YHVH* ('the glory of the LORD appeared'). The *kavod* ('glory') — the visible manifestation of God's presence — intervenes whenever the community faces an existential crisis. Its appearance signals that God Himself will now judge. The *samekh* marker creates a dramatic pause before the divine verdict.
20. God addresses both *Mosheh ve'Aharon* ('Moses and Aaron') together — both leaders who were challenged now receive the divine response simultaneously. The joint address underscores that the rebellion was directed at both civil and priestly authority, and God's defense covers both.
21. The command *hibbadelu* ('separate yourselves!') from the root *b-d-l* ('to divide, separate') is urgent — the same root used for God's creative separations. The threat *va'akhaleh otam kerega* ('and I will consume them in a moment') uses *kalah* ('to finish, consume utterly') with *kerega* ('in an instant') — God is prepared to annihilate the entire community, not just the ringleaders. This is the second time in Numbers God threatens total destruction (cf. 14:12).
22. Moses and Aaron's intercession invokes a rare divine title: *El Elohei haruchot lekhlo-basar* ('God, God of the spirits of all flesh'). This title acknowledges God's intimate knowledge of every individual — He knows each person's spirit (*ruach*) and can distinguish the guilty from the innocent. The rhetorical question *ha'ish echad yecheta ve'al kol-ha'edah tiqtsof* ('shall one man sin and against all the community you rage?') argues for proportional justice: punish the guilty, spare the innocent.
23. God responds to the intercession — the very fact that He replies rather than executing immediate judgment shows that Moses and Aaron's prayer was effective. The abbreviated speech formula (no mention of Aaron this time) redirects instructions through Moses alone for the evacuation command that follows.
24. The command *he'alu missaviv* ('go up from around') creates a physical safety perimeter. The word *mishkan* here does not mean 'tabernacle' (the LORD's dwelling) but 'dwelling' in the general sense — the tents and encampment area of the rebels. The grouping of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram suggests their camping areas were adjacent — in the tribal arrangement, the Kohathites and Reubenites both camped on the south side of the Tabernacle.
25. Since Dathan and Abiram refused to 'come up' (v. 12), Moses goes to them — not out of deference but to issue the warning in person. The *ziquei Yisra'el* ('elders of Israel') following him serves as a witness delegation. Moses demonstrates the opposite of the self-aggrandizement he was accused of: he personally walks to the rebels' location rather than summoning them again.
26. Moses now labels the rebels *ha'anashim haresha'im ha'ellev* ('these wicked men') — *resha'im* implies deliberate, willful evil, not error. The warning *ve'al-tigg'u bekhlo-asher lahem* ('do not touch anything that belongs to them') establishes a zone of contamination — their sin is so severe that contact with their possessions brings danger. The verb *tissafu* ('you will be swept away, added to their destruction') from *s-p-h* means to be gathered into their punishment by association.
27. The contrast is stark: the people obey and move away (*vayyealu*), while Dathan and Abiram *yats'u nitsavim* ('came out standing' — defiantly positioned) at their tent entrances. The posture of *nitsavim* suggests a challenge — they stand as if to face down whatever comes. The mention of *unesheihem uveneihem vetappam* ('their wives, sons, and small children') creates a devastating dramatic irony: their defiance will cost not only their own lives but their families'.
28. Moses frames what follows as a public vindication test: *bezot ted'un* ('by this you will know'). The statement *ki-YHVH shelachani* ('that the LORD sent me') directly answers the accusation that he acted on his own authority. The phrase *ki-lo millibbi* ('because not from my heart') — *libbi* meaning 'my own heart/mind/initiative' — is a categorical denial of self-appointment. Moses claims zero personal agency in his leadership role.
29. Moses stakes his entire prophetic legitimacy on the outcome: *im-kemot kol-ha'adam yemutun elleh* ('if like the death of all people these men die') — if they die of old age or common illness, Moses is a fraud. The word *pequddat* ('visitation, fate, appointed destiny') from *p-q-d* carries the sense of divine reckoning. Moses offers a falsifiable test — a remarkably bold move that only a person certain of God's backing would make.
30. The phrase *beri'ah yivra YHVH* ('a creation the LORD will create') uses the root *b-r-* twice — the same verb for divine creation in Genesis 1. What is about to happen is not natural but a new act of creation, unprecedented in human experience. The earth is personified: *patsatah ha'adamah et-piha* ('the ground opens its mouth') — the *adamah* ('ground') becomes an agent of divine judgment. The descent *chayyim she'olah* ('alive to Sheol') — going to the realm of the dead while still living — is the ultimate horror, a reversal of creation itself.
31. The timing is astonishing: *vayehi kekhallo to ledabber* ('it happened as he finished speaking') — the judgment begins at the exact instant Moses stops talking. The verb *vattibbaqa* ('it split, it tore apart') from *b-q-* describes a violent rupture. *Ha'adamah asher tachteihem* ('the ground that was under them') specifies precision: only the ground beneath the rebels, not the surrounding area. The judgment is surgical, not indiscriminate.

32. The personification intensifies: vatiftach ha'arets et-piha ('the earth opened her mouth') — the arets ('earth') becomes a devouring creature. The verb vattivla ('it swallowed') from b-l- describes complete consumption. The scope of destruction includes batteihem ('their households/tents'), kol-ha'adam asher le-Qorach ('all the people belonging to Korah'), and kol-harekhus ('all the property'). The ground devours people, structures, and possessions alike.
33. Moses's prediction (v. 30) is fulfilled precisely: vayyerdū hem vekhol-asher lahem chayyim she'olah ('they went down, they and all that was theirs, alive to Sheol'). The word she'olah ('to Sheol') — the underworld, the realm of the dead — represents the most extreme possible descent. The earth then vatekhas aleihem ('covered over them') — the surface reseals as though they never existed. The verb vayyovdu ('they perished, vanished') from 'b-d means total obliteration from the qahal ('assembly').
34. The panic is visceral: nasu leqolam ('they fled at their voice/cry') — the screams of people descending alive into the earth. The terror spreads: pen-tivla'enu ha'arets ('lest the earth swallow us') — the bystanders fear the ground is indiscriminate in its appetite. The psychological impact on the witnesses — hearing the screams of the living being consumed by the earth — would be unimaginable trauma.
35. A second, simultaneous judgment: ve'esh yats'ah me'et YHVH ('fire went out from the LORD') — the same divine fire that consumed Nadab and Abihu (Lev 10:2). The 250 maqrivei haqetoret ('those presenting the incense') at the Tabernacle entrance are consumed while the Reubenites at their tents are swallowed. Two different sins receive two different but equally devastating punishments: the earth-rebellion (political) is swallowed by earth; the incense-rebellion (priestly) is consumed by fire. The samekh marker closes this devastating chapter.

17

Summary: *In the aftermath of Korah's rebellion, the censers of the 250 consumed men are hammered into plating for the altar as a permanent warning. God then settles the priestly dispute once for all: twelve tribal staffs are placed in the tent of meeting, and Aaron's staff for Levi sprouts, buds, blossoms, and bears almonds overnight. The chapter ends with the people's terrified cry: 'Anyone who approaches the tabernacle will die!'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The censers that were instruments of rebellion become sacred architecture — hammered into altar plating (riqqu'ei fachim, v. 3). The objects retain their holiness (ki qadoshu, 'they became holy') even though their bearers were destroyed. Aaron's staff does not merely sprout but cycles through four stages of botanical life in a single night: it 'put out a shoot, produced blossoms, and bore ripe almonds' (v. 23). The Hebrew word for almond (shaqed) shares its root with shaqad ('to watch, be vigilant'), a wordplay Jeremiah 1:11-12 will exploit.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter numbering differs between the Hebrew (WLC) and English traditions: WLC 17:1 corresponds to KJV 16:36. We followed the Hebrew versification. The phrase hachatta'im ha'ellesh benafshhotam ('these sinners against their own lives,' v. 3) posed a question: did they sin 'at the cost of their lives or 'against' their lives? We chose 'at the cost of,' reflecting the consequence rather than the target.*

Connections: *The altar-plated censers (v. 4) become a permanent visual memorial within the sanctuary, connecting to the memorial stones in Joshua 4:1-9. Aaron's budding staff (v. 23) is preserved before the ark as a witness (v. 25; cf. Hebrews 9:4). The almond-shaqad wordplay appears in Jeremiah 1:11-12. The people's fear of approaching the tabernacle (v. 28) sets up the priestly responsibility legislation of Numbers 18.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Tell Eleazar son of Aaron the priest to remove the censers from among the charred remains and scatter the burning coals away from the site, because the censers have become holy. ³As for the censers of these men who sinned at the cost of their lives — have them hammered into sheets as plating for the altar, because they were presented before the LORD and became holy. They will serve as a warning sign for the Israelites." ⁴Eleazar the priest collected the bronze censers that the burned men had presented, and they were hammered out as plating for the altar — ⁵a reminder to the Israelites, so that no unauthorized person — anyone who is not a descendant of Aaron — would approach to burn incense before the LORD and end up like Korah and his faction, just as the LORD had spoken to him through Moses. ⁶The very next day, the entire Israelite community complained against Moses and Aaron, saying, "You have killed the LORD's people!" ⁷As the community assembled against Moses and Aaron, they turned toward the Tent of Meeting, and suddenly the cloud covered it and the glory of the LORD appeared. ⁸Moses and Aaron came to the front of the Tent of Meeting. ⁹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁰"Withdraw from this community so I can consume them in an instant!" They fell facedown. ¹¹Moses said to Aaron, "Grab your censer, put fire from the altar in it, lay incense on it, and rush to the community to make atonement for

them! Wrath has gone out from the LORD — the plague has already begun!" ¹²Aaron grabbed the censer as Moses had directed and ran into the midst of the assembly. The plague had already begun among the people! He placed the incense on the censer and made atonement for the people. ¹³He stood between the dead and the living, and the plague was halted. ¹⁴Those who died in the plague numbered 14,700 — not counting those who had died because of the Korah incident. ¹⁵Aaron returned to Moses at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting. The plague had been stopped. ¹⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁷"Speak to the Israelites and collect from them one staff per ancestral house — from each of their leaders, one staff per ancestral house — twelve staffs in all. Write each man's name on his staff. ¹⁸Write Aaron's name on the staff of Levi, because there must be one staff for the head of each ancestral house. ¹⁹Place them in the Tent of Meeting before the Testimony — the place where I meet with you. ²⁰The staff belonging to the man I choose will sprout. In this way I will put an end to the Israelites' constant complaints that they keep directing against you." ²¹Moses spoke to the Israelites, and each of their leaders gave him a staff — one staff per leader according to their ancestral houses — twelve staffs in all, with Aaron's staff among them. ²²Moses placed the staffs before the LORD in the Tent of the Testimony. ²³The next day, when Moses entered the Tent of the Testimony, Aaron's staff — representing the house of Levi — had sprouted! It had put forth buds, produced blossoms, and yielded ripe almonds. ²⁴Moses brought all the staffs out from before the LORD to all the Israelites. They examined them, and each man took back his own staff. ²⁵The LORD told Moses, "Return Aaron's staff to its place before the Testimony, to be preserved as a warning sign for the rebellious — so their complaints against Me will end, and they will not die." ²⁶Moses did exactly as the LORD had commanded him. ²⁷The Israelites said to Moses, "We are dying! We are lost! All of us — we are lost!" ²⁸"Everyone who approaches — who even comes near — the Tabernacle of the LORD dies! Are we all doomed to perish?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. WLC 17:1 corresponds to KJV 16:36. This verse opens the aftermath of Korah's rebellion — the divine instructions for handling the now-sacred censers of the 250 men consumed by fire. The formulaic *vayedabber YHVH el-Mosheh le'mor* transitions from the catastrophe of judgment to the creation of a lasting memorial.
2. WLC 17:2 = KJV 16:37. Eleazar — not Aaron — handles the censers, perhaps to shield the high priest from contact with death. The command *veyarem et-hamachtot mibben hasserefah* ('let him lift the censers from among the burning') shows that the fire-consumed bodies still smolder. The crucial declaration: *ki qadoshu* ('for they have become holy') — the censers were consecrated by being presented before the LORD, even though their bearers were destroyed. Sacred objects retain their holiness regardless of their bearers' fate.
3. WLC 17:3 = KJV 16:38. The phrase *hachatta'im ha'elleh benafshotam* ('these sinners against their own lives') is striking — their sin cost them their *nefesh* ('life, soul'). The censers are to be made *riqqu'ei fachim* ('hammered-out sheets/plates') as *tsippui lamizbeach* ('plating for the altar'). This transforms instruments of rebellion into a permanent altar covering — a visible memorial. The dual status is remarkable: *qadoshu* ('they became holy') yet *le'ot* ('for a sign/warning'). Holy objects can simultaneously serve as warnings against presumption.
4. WLC 17:4 = KJV 16:39. The execution is prompt: *vayyiqqach El'azar hakohen* ('Eleazar the priest took'). The censers are described as *nechoshet* ('bronze/copper'). The men are identified as *hasserufim* ('the burned ones') — a stark participial label defining them permanently by their manner of death. The verb *vayraqq'um* ('they hammered them out') from *r-q'* is the same root used for God 'hammering out' the sky (cf. Job 37:18), suggesting a deliberate, forceful reshaping of rebellion into sacred architecture.
5. WLC 17:5 = KJV 16:40. The plated altar serves as a *zikkaron* ('memorial, reminder') with a preventive purpose: *lema'an asher lo-yiqrav ish zar* ('so that no unauthorized person would approach'). The term *ish zar* ('strange/foreign man') in priestly law means anyone outside the Aaronic priesthood — even other Levites. The phrase *velo-yihyeh ke-Qorach vekha'adato* ('and he will not become like Korah and his faction') turns Korah into a cautionary archetype. The *peh* marker seals this memorial section.
6. WLC 17:6 = KJV 16:41. The astonishing phrase *vayyillonu kol-adat benei-Yisra'el mimmocharot* ('the entire community of the Israelites complained the next day') shows that even the spectacular judgments of the previous day failed to end the grumbling. The accusation *attem hamittem et-am YHVH* ('you have killed the LORD's people') is breathtaking in its audacity — the people blame Moses and Aaron for deaths that God Himself executed, and they call the rebels *am YHVH* ('the LORD's people'), implicitly siding with the dead.
7. WLC 17:7 = KJV 16:42. The scene repeats the pattern of 16:19 — the community assembles against the leaders, and God's *kavod* ('glory') intervenes. The *hinneh* ('suddenly, look!') signals dramatic revelation: *kissahu he'anan* ('the cloud covered it') — the cloud of God's presence descends, and *vayyera kevod YHVH* ('the glory of the LORD appeared'). This is God entering the conflict directly, not as arbitrator but as the offended party.
8. WLC 17:8 = KJV 16:43. The brief statement *vayyavo Mosheh ve'Aaron el-penei ohel mo'ed* ('Moses and Aaron came before the Tent of Meeting') shows them approaching God rather than fleeing. The *samekh* marker creates a pause — they stand at the threshold between the angry crowd behind them and the divine glory before them, occupying the mediator's dangerous position.

9. WLC 17:9 = KJV 16:44. The speech formula introduces the second threat of total annihilation in this episode. God speaks to Moses alone — Aaron is present but not addressed, perhaps because the threat concerns the community's accusation that Moses and Aaron killed the people.
10. WLC 17:10 = KJV 16:45. The command *herommu mittokh ha'edah hazzot* ('get up from the midst of this community') and the threat *va'akhaleh otam kerega* ('I will consume them in an instant') exactly echo 16:21 — God's fury is identical to the previous day's. The immediate response *vayyippelu al-peneihem* ('they fell on their faces') is their now-practiced posture of intercession. But this time, instead of arguing with God, Moses takes urgent practical action (next verse).
11. WLC 17:11 = KJV 16:46. The urgency is palpable: *qach et-hamachtah* ('take the censer'), *veten aleha esh* ('put fire on it'), *vesim qetoret* ('place incense'), *veholekh meherah* ('go quickly!'). The word *meherah* ('quickly, urgently') signals a race against death. The same incense that killed 250 rebels (16:35) is now deployed to save the people — the instrument of judgment becomes the instrument of salvation. The *qetsef* ('wrath, fury') has already left God's presence, and the *negef* ('plague, striking blow') has begun.
12. WLC 17:12 = KJV 16:47. The verb *vayyarats* ('he ran') depicts the elderly high priest sprinting into the crowd — a vivid image of priestly courage. The *hinneh* ('and look!') marks the horrifying discovery: *hechel hannegef ba'am* ('the plague had begun among the people'). Aaron's response is immediate: *vayyitten et-haqetoret* ('he placed the incense') *vayekhapper al-ha'am* ('and he made atonement for the people'). The irony is complete: the very people who accused Aaron of killing them are now saved by his priestly intercession.
13. WLC 17:13 = KJV 16:48. One of the most iconic images in the Torah: *vayyaamod bein-hammetim uvein hachayyim* ('he stood between the dead and the living'). Aaron physically positions himself as a barrier between death and life, his incense creating a line that the plague cannot cross. The verb *vatte'atsar* ('it was restrained, halted') from *'ts-r* means to be held back, contained — the plague was an active force that Aaron's atoning incense physically blocked. This moment defines the priesthood: standing in the gap between divine wrath and human frailty.
14. WLC 17:14 = KJV 16:49. The death toll is staggering: *arba'ah asar elef ushva me'ot* ('fourteen thousand seven hundred'). The clarification *millevad hammetim al-devar-Qorach* ('apart from those who died in the matter of Korah') distinguishes this plague from the previous day's judgment — the 250 burned by fire and the families swallowed by earth. The cumulative death toll from a single episode of rebellion is catastrophic, underscoring the severity of challenging divinely appointed leadership.
15. WLC 17:15 = KJV 16:50. Aaron's return to Moses — *vayyashov Aharon el-Mosheh el-petach ohel mo'ed* ('Aaron returned to Moses, to the entrance of the Tent of Meeting') — signals mission accomplished. The concluding statement *vehammagefah ne'etsarah* ('and the plague was restrained') uses the niph'al passive, indicating divine agency: God stopped the plague in response to Aaron's atoning incense. The *peh* marker closes this dramatic episode and transitions to the staff test.
16. WLC 17:16 = KJV 17:1. A new speech formula opens the budding staff narrative — God's definitive answer to the question of who has priestly authority. After the catastrophe of fire, earth-swallowing, and plague, God provides a gentle, creative proof: not destruction but flowering life.
17. WLC 17:17 = KJV 17:2. The word *matteh* means both 'staff' and 'tribe' — a deliberate wordplay, since each tribal leader's staff represents his entire tribe. The instruction *matteh matteh leveit av* ('a staff, a staff for each ancestral house') creates a one-to-one correspondence between leader and tribe. The *shneim asar mattot* ('twelve staffs') represents the complete tribal confederation. Writing *ish et-shemo* ('each man his name') on the staff personalizes the test — God will choose a named individual, not an anonymous institution.
18. WLC 17:18 = KJV 17:3. Aaron's name specifically — *ve'et shem Aharon tikhtov al-matteh Levi* ('write Aaron's name on the staff of Levi') — goes on the Levitical staff. The principle *ki matteh echad l'erosh beit avotam* ('for one staff for the head of each ancestral house') treats Aaron as the head of the Levitical house, placing him in direct competition with the other eleven tribal leaders. The test is designed to answer the question Korah raised: does Aaron have a unique, God-given authority?
19. WLC 17:19 = KJV 17:4. The staffs are placed *lifnei ha'edut* ('before the Testimony') — referring to the ark containing the covenant tablets. The phrase *asher ivva'ed lakhem shamamah* ('where I meet with you there') uses the niph'al of *y-'l-d* ('to appoint, meet by arrangement'), emphasizing that this is God's appointed meeting place. The staffs are positioned at the locus of maximum divine presence — if any power can make dead wood blossom, it will operate here.
20. WLC 17:20 = KJV 17:5. The test criterion is *mattehu yifrach* ('his staff will sprout') — the verb *parach* ('to bud, blossom, sprout') describes new life emerging from dead wood, a small-scale resurrection. God's stated goal: *vahashikkoti me'alai et-telunnot* ('I will cause to cease from upon Me the complaints'). The word *telunnot* ('complaints, murmurings') from *l-u-n* characterizes Israel's wilderness pattern. The phrase *asher hem mallinim aleikhem* ('which they keep murmuring against you') uses the hiph'il participle — their complaining is habitual and ongoing.
21. WLC 17:21 = KJV 17:6. Every leader complies: *vayyittenu elav kol-nesi'eihem* ('all their leaders gave to him'). The detail *umatteh Aharon betokh mattotam* ('and Aaron's staff among their staffs') shows Aaron's staff is not given special placement — it goes in among all the others. The test's integrity depends on equal treatment: twelve anonymous staffs, overnight, in God's presence. No human manipulation is possible.
22. WLC 17:22 = KJV 17:7. The verb *vayyannach* ('he placed, rested, deposited') from *n-u-ch* conveys careful, deliberate placement — not tossing but setting down with intention. The location *be'ohel ha'edut* ('in the Tent of the Testimony') emphasizes that the staffs are placed in the most sacred space available, before the presence of God, where the overnight miracle will occur unseen by any human witness.
23. WLC 17:23 = KJV 17:8. The climactic verse describes a fourfold miracle in rapid succession: *parach* ('it sprouted'), *vayyotse ferach* ('it put forth buds'), *vayyatsets tsits* ('it blossomed flowers'), and *vayyigmol sheqedim* ('it bore ripe almonds'). A dead stick completed an entire growing season overnight — bud, flower, and fruit simultaneously. The *sheqedim* ('almonds') are significant: the Hebrew *shaqed* comes from the root *sh-q-d* ('to

watch, be alert'), and the almond tree is the first to bloom in Israel, called the 'watching tree.' The menorah in the Tabernacle was already decorated with almond blossoms (Exod 25:33–34), linking Aaron's staff to the sacred furniture.

24. WLC 17:24 = KJV 17:9. Moses brings all twelve staffs — vayyotse Mosheh et-kol-hammattot ('Moses brought out all the staffs') — for public inspection. The people vayyir'u ('they saw, examined') the evidence with their own eyes. Then vayyiqchu ish mattehu ('each man took his staff') — eleven leaders silently reclaim their unchanged, barren staffs. The contrast is eloquent: eleven dead sticks and one living, fruit-bearing branch. No verbal argument could match this visual proof. The peh marker closes the demonstration.
25. WLC 17:25 = KJV 17:10. The budding staff becomes a permanent artifact: hashev et-matfeh Aharon lifnei ha'edut ('return Aaron's staff before the Testimony') lemishmeret ('for safekeeping'). It serves as le'ot livnei-meri ('a sign for the rebellious ones') — meri from m-r-h ('to rebel, be contentious') characterizes habitual resistance. The practical purpose: utekhal telunnotam me'alai velo yammutu ('their complaints from upon Me will end and they will not die'). Complaining against God's appointed leaders is literally life-threatening.
26. WLC 17:26 = KJV 17:11. The compliance formula vayyaas Mosheh ka'asher tsivvah YHVH oto ken asah ('Moses did as the LORD commanded him, so he did') emphasizes exact obedience through redundancy — he did it and he did it. This formula characterizes Moses's consistent faithfulness throughout the Torah. The peh marker closes the staff narrative and transitions to the people's fearful response.
27. WLC 17:27 = KJV 17:12. The people's cry — hen gavanu avadnu kullanu avadnu ('Look, we are expiring! We are perishing! All of us — we are perishing!') — shifts from rebellion to raw terror. Three verbs in rapid succession: gava ('to expire, breathe one's last'), avad ('to perish, be lost'), repeated with kullanu ('all of us') for universal scope. The emotional arc of the Korah narrative is complete: from arrogant challenge ('we are all holy!') to existential dread ('we are all dying!'). The same word kullam/kullanu appears in both declarations.
28. WLC 17:28 = KJV 17:13. The intensified construction kol haqqarev haqqarev ('everyone approaching, approaching' — the doubled participle emphasizes any approach at all) to mishkan YHVH yamut ('the LORD's Tabernacle — he dies!'). The final anguished question ha'im tammenu ligvoa ('shall we be finished off with dying?') uses tamam ('to be completed, finished, used up') — will death exhaust our entire number? This existential crisis sets up chapter 18, where God defines the priestly and Levitical roles that protect the people from deadly contact with the sacred. The samekh closes the chapter on this note of unresolved dread.

18

Summary: *God addresses Aaron directly — a rare occurrence — defining priestly and Levitical responsibilities, privileges, and support. The priests bear liability for sanctuary offenses. Levites serve the priests but may not approach altar or sacred vessels. The chapter details priestly income (portions from offerings, firstfruits, firstborn redemption) and Levitical income (the tithe), concluding with the Levites' tithe-of-the-tithe given to the priests.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *God tells Aaron: 'I am your portion and your inheritance among the Israelites' (v. 20) — the Levites receive no tribal territory because God Himself is their nachalah ('inheritance'). This is simultaneously a privilege and a deprivation. The berit melach olam ('covenant of salt forever,' v. 19) — salt being a preservative — symbolizes the indestructible permanence of the priestly provisions. The chapter's placement after Korah's rebellion reaffirms the priestly system the rebels challenged.*

Translation Friction: *The verb tis'u ('you shall bear,' v. 1) with avon ('guilt, offense') is challenging: it means bearing not personal sin but institutional liability for any breach of sanctuary protocol. We rendered avon hammiqdash as 'offenses against the sanctuary' rather than 'iniquity of the sanctuary' to clarify that the sanctuary is the thing protected, not the source of guilt. The verb yillavu ('they will be joined,' v. 2) is a deliberate wordplay on the name Levi.*

Connections: *God's role as priestly inheritance (v. 20) echoes Deuteronomy 10:9 and Psalm 16:5. The firstborn redemption price of five shekels (v. 16) matches Numbers 3:47. The berit melach ('salt covenant,' v. 19) appears also in Leviticus 2:13 and 2 Chronicles 13:5. The tithe-of-the-tithe principle (vv. 26–28) creates a nested support system: Israel tithes to Levites, Levites tithe to priests.*

¹The LORD said to Aaron, "You, your sons, and your father's household with you will bear responsibility for offenses against the sanctuary; and you and your sons with you will bear responsibility for offenses against your priesthood." ²Also bring your kinsmen from the tribe of Levi — your father's tribe — alongside you. They will be attached to you and serve you, while you and your sons with you minister before the Tent of the Testimony. ³They will guard your duties and the duties of the entire Tent. However, they must not approach the sacred vessels or the altar, or both they and you will die. ⁴They will be joined to

you and maintain the duties of the Tent of Meeting for all the Tent's service. No unauthorized person may approach you. ⁵You must guard the duties of the holy place and the duties of the altar, so that fury does not fall on the Israelites again. ⁶"I Myself have taken your kinsmen the Levites from among the Israelites. They are given to you as a gift — dedicated to the LORD — to perform the service of the Tent of Meeting." ⁷You and your sons with you must maintain your priesthood for every matter concerning the altar and for what is behind the curtain. You will serve there. I am giving your priesthood to you as a granted service — and any unauthorized person who approaches will be put to death. ⁸The LORD spoke to Aaron: "I am also giving you charge over My elevated offerings — all the consecrated things of the Israelites. I am giving them to you as your anointed portion and to your sons as a permanent statute." ⁹This will be yours from the most sacred offerings, taken from the fire: every offering of theirs — every grain offering, every purification offering, and every reparation offering that they return to Me — is most sacred, belonging to you and your sons. ¹⁰You must eat it in a most sacred space. Every male may eat it — it is holy, reserved for you. ¹¹This also is yours: the elevated portion from their gifts — all the wave offerings of the Israelites. I am giving them to you and to your sons and daughters with you as a permanent statute. Anyone in your household who is ritually clean may eat it. ¹²All the finest olive oil, all the finest new wine, and the best grain — the first portions of what they give to the LORD — I am giving to you. ¹³The first-ripened produce of everything in their land that they bring to the LORD will be yours. Everyone in your household who is ritually clean may eat it. ¹⁴Everything devoted to destruction in Israel belongs to you. ¹⁵Every firstborn that opens the womb, of all living beings presented to the LORD — whether human or animal — belongs to you. However, you must certainly redeem every firstborn human, and you must redeem the firstborn of ritually unclean animals. ¹⁶The redemption price, from one month old, you will set at five silver shekels by the sanctuary standard — twenty gerahs to the shekel. ¹⁷But the firstborn of a cow, sheep, or goat you must not redeem — they are sacred. You will dash their blood against the altar and burn their fat as a fire offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ¹⁸But their meat belongs to you — just as the breast of the wave offering and the right thigh are yours. ¹⁹All the elevated offerings of the sacred things that the Israelites set apart for the LORD I am giving to you, your sons, and your daughters with you as a permanent statute. This is an everlasting covenant of salt before the LORD, for you and your descendants with you. ²⁰The LORD said to Aaron, "You will have no territorial inheritance in their land, and no portion among them. I am your portion and your inheritance among the Israelites." ²¹"To the descendants of Levi I am giving every tithe in Israel as their inheritance, in exchange for the service they perform — the service of the Tent of Meeting." ²²The Israelites must no longer approach the Tent of Meeting, or they will incur guilt and die. ²³The Levites alone will perform the service of the Tent of Meeting, and they will bear responsibility for any offenses. This is a permanent statute throughout your generations: among the Israelites they will receive no territorial inheritance. ²⁴Because the tithe of the Israelites — which they set apart as an elevated offering to the LORD — I have given to the Levites as their inheritance. That is why I told them they will receive no inheritance among the Israelites. ²⁵The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁶"Speak to the Levites and tell them: When you receive from the Israelites the tithe that I have given you from them as your inheritance, you must set apart from it an elevated offering to the LORD — a tithe of the tithe." ²⁷Your elevated offering will be credited to you as if it were grain from the threshing floor or the full yield from the wine vat. ²⁸In this way you too must set apart an elevated offering to the LORD from all the tithes you receive from the Israelites. From these you will give the LORD's elevated offering to Aaron the priest. ²⁹From all the gifts you receive, you must set apart the LORD's full elevated offering — from the best of it, its consecrated portion. ³⁰Tell them: Once you have set apart the best portion from it, the remainder will be credited to the Levites as equivalent to the produce of the threshing floor and the yield of the wine vat. ³¹You may eat it anywhere — you and your households — because it is your compensation in exchange for your service in the Tent of Meeting. ³²You will incur no guilt for it once you have set apart the best portion. But you must not profane the sacred donations of the Israelites, or you will die.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter follows immediately after Korah's rebellion and Aaron's staff budding (chs 16-17), reaffirming priestly duties and privileges. The verb *tis'u* (you shall bear) with *avon* (offense, guilt) means assuming liability — Aaron's family is answerable for any breach of sanctuary protocol. The phrase *avon hammiqdash* (guilt of the sanctuary) places the weight of maintaining sacred boundaries squarely on the priestly house.

2. The verb yillavu (they will be joined/attached) plays on the name Levi (levi), which Genesis 29:34 connects to the root l-v-h (to join, attach). The Levites serve (yeshartukha — will minister to you) in a supporting role, while the priests serve before the ohel ha'edut (Tent of the Testimony) — making a clear distinction between Levitical service and priestly ministry.
3. The boundary is stark: Levites guard (shamru) and maintain (mishmeret — duty, watch), but must not approach (lo yiqrevu) the kelei haqqodesh (sacred vessels) or the mizbe'ach (altar). Violation results in death — gam-hem gam-attem (both they and you) — meaning the priests too bear lethal consequences if they allow unauthorized access.
4. The term zar (stranger, outsider) here means any non-Levite Israelite — not a foreigner but someone outside the authorized priestly-Levitical circle. The prohibition lo yiqrav (shall not approach) establishes concentric zones of holiness: the broader Israelite camp, the Levitical guard ring, and the priestly inner sanctum.
5. The word qetseph (fury, wrath) refers back to the deadly outbreaks in chapters 16-17 — Korah's rebellion, the plague that killed 14,700 people. Proper priestly guardianship of the mishmeret haqqodesh (charge of the sanctuary) and mishmeret hammizbe'ach (charge of the altar) prevents such catastrophes from recurring.
6. God speaks in emphatic first person: va'ani hinneh laqachti (I Myself — look — have taken). The Levites are described as mattanah (a gift) given to the priests, and simultaneously netunim laYHWH (given/dedicated to the LORD). This dual dedication — to God and to the priests — defines the Levites' unique status as living offerings who serve at the nexus of divine and human spheres.
7. The priestly domain has two loci: the mizbe'ach (altar — the outer court) and mibbeit lapparakhet (behind the curtain — the inner sanctum). The priesthood is called avodat mattanah (a service of gift) — not earned but bestowed. The death sentence for the zar haqqarev (the outsider who approaches) closes the section with the same lethal boundary as verse 3.
8. A new section begins with terumotai (My elevated offerings) — the root r-u-m means 'to raise up,' referring to portions lifted from sacrifices. The phrase lemoshchah (by reason of the anointing, or as an anointed portion) connects priestly compensation to priestly consecration — they receive these gifts because of their anointed status, not as wages.
9. Three categories of qodesh qodashim (most holy) offerings are listed: minchah (grain offering), chattat (purification/sin offering), and asham (reparation/guilt offering). The phrase min-ha'esh (from the fire) indicates the priestly portion is what remains after the altar receives its share. The verb yashivu (they return) suggests offerings are not gifts to God but restorations of what always belonged to Him.
10. Consumption of qodesh qodashim (most holy) offerings is restricted by location (beqodesh haqqodashim — in a most holy area, meaning the Tabernacle courtyard) and by gender (kol zakhar — every male of the priestly line). Female family members are excluded from these particular portions, though they may eat lesser holy offerings (see v. 11).
11. In contrast to v. 10, this category (tenuphot — wave offerings, the lesser holy portions) extends to daughters and the entire clean household (kol tahir beveitekha). The distinction between most-holy-male-only and lesser-holy-household-inclusive creates a graded system of participation in sacrificial meals.
12. The word chelev (best, fat, choicest) is used here metaphorically — not the sacrificial fat but the 'cream' of agricultural produce. Three staples are listed: yitshar (fresh olive oil), tirosh (new wine, unfermented grape juice), and dagan (grain). These reshit (first/best portions) represent the choicest agricultural yield of the land.
13. The bikkurim (firstfruits, first-ripened produce) extends beyond the three staples of v. 12 to encompass all agricultural produce. Again the clean-household rule applies (kol tahir beveitekha), making firstfruits a family provision rather than a males-only priestly prerogative.
14. The cherem (devoted thing, ban) is the most extreme form of dedication — items irrevocably consecrated to God, which cannot be redeemed or sold (Lev 27:28-29). That these go to the priest underscores the priest's role as God's representative in receiving what belongs entirely to the divine realm.
15. The peter rechem (opener of the womb, firstborn) principle grounds priestly income in the Exodus narrative: God claimed Israel's firstborn when He struck Egypt's (Ex 13:2). The infinitive absolute padoh tifdeh (redeeming you shall redeem — you must certainly redeem) insists that human firstborns and unclean animal firstborns cannot be sacrificed but must be bought back with money.
16. The pidyon (redemption) of a firstborn at age one month (mibben chodesh) for five sheqalim (shekels) by the sanctuary standard remains practiced in Judaism today as pidyon haben. The gerah — the smallest unit of weight — is defined here as 1/20 of a shekel, establishing a precise monetary standard for sacred transactions.
17. Clean domestic animals (shor — cattle, kesev — sheep, ez — goat) cannot be redeemed because qodesh hem (they are sacred) — they belong irrevocably to God. Their blood is thrown (tizroq — dash, splash) against the altar and their fat burned (taqtir — cause to go up in smoke) as an isheh lere'ach nicho'ach (fire offering of pleasing aroma).
18. The priest receives the basar (meat/flesh) of firstborn clean animals as his portion. Two prime cuts are specified by analogy: the chazeh hattanufah (breast of the wave offering) and the shoq hayyamin (right thigh/leg). These are the same priestly portions established for the shelamim (fellowship offering) in Leviticus 7:31-34.
19. The berit melach olam (eternal covenant of salt) is a striking metaphor. Salt preserves, purifies, and was used in ancient Near Eastern treaties to seal agreements. A 'salt covenant' means an unbreakable, perpetual bond — the priestly portions are guaranteed by covenant, not merely by administrative decree. This same phrase appears in 2 Chronicles 13:5 regarding the Davidic dynasty.

- 20.** The most theologically dense verse in the chapter: ani chelqekha venachalatekha (I am your portion and your inheritance). The priests receive no land allotment — their nachalah (inheritance) is God Himself. This transforms priestly poverty into priestly privilege: they lack territory but possess direct relationship with the divine. The chelq (portion, share) language echoes Psalm 73:26 and 142:6.
- 21.** The section now shifts from priests to Levites. The ma'aser (tithe, tenth) replaces land as the Levites' nachalah (inheritance). The word cheleph (in exchange for, as recompense) frames the tithe as compensation for the avodah (service/labor) the Levites perform at the ohel mo'ed — their sacred work is their livelihood.
- 22.** The prohibition applies to ordinary Israelites (benei Yisra'el) approaching the ohel mo'ed directly. The phrase laset chet lamut (to bear sin resulting in death) treats unauthorized approach as inherently lethal — not a punishable crime but a built-in consequence of contact between the unholy and the holy.
- 23.** The Levites' dual status is restated: they serve (avad) and they bear liability (yis'u avonam — carry their guilt). The phrase lo yinchalu nachalah (they shall not inherit an inheritance) uses the same root twice for emphasis — complete exclusion from the land distribution that will follow conquest.
- 24.** The logic is made explicit: the tithe (ma'aser) replaces land (nachalah). This is not a penalty but a deliberate divine arrangement — al ken (therefore, for this reason) connects the Levites' landlessness to their tithe-based income. The terumah (elevated offering) that Israel raises to God is redirected to the Levites as their God-given estate.
- 25.** A new speech formula (vaydabber YHWH el-Mosheh) introduces the final section — the tithe of the tithe. This instruction goes to Moses rather than Aaron (contrast v. 1), because it concerns the Levites' obligations rather than the priests' privileges.
- 26.** The ma'aser min hamma'aser (tithe of the tithe) creates a cascading system: Israel gives 10% to the Levites, and the Levites give 10% of that to the priests. The Levites are not exempt from giving — they too must raise up (haremothem) a portion to God, treating their income with the same sacred obligation that applies to all Israel.
- 27.** The Levites' tithe-of-a-tithe is nechshav (reckoned, credited) to them as equivalent to a farmer's terumah from dagan (grain) off the goren (threshing floor) or the fullness (mele'ah) from the yekev (wine vat). Since Levites own no fields, their monetary tithe-of-a-tithe counts as though they were landowners giving agricultural firstfruits.
- 28.** The destination of the Levites' terumah is specified: it goes to Aharon hakkohen (Aaron the priest). The system is complete — from Israelite farmer to Levite to priest to God — each tier giving upward. The gam-attem (you too, also you) emphasizes that the Levites share the same obligation of generosity as the rest of Israel.
- 29.** The Levites must give from the chelbo (its best, its fat — metaphorically the choicest part). The miqdesho (its consecrated portion) specifies that what the Levites set apart is sanctified upon separation — it becomes holy property the moment it is designated, not merely when it arrives at the priest.
- 30.** After giving the chelbo (best portion), the rest (what remains) is venechshav (credited) to the Levites as their own legitimate income — kitvu'at goren (like the produce of a threshing floor) and kitvu'at yekev (like the yield of a wine vat). This legitimizes their use of the remaining 90% as ordinary income for personal needs.
- 31.** Unlike the most holy offerings (v. 10), the Levites' tithe income may be eaten bechol maqom (in any place) — it carries no location restrictions. It is called sakhar (wages, compensation, reward) — earned income in exchange for (cheleph) their avodah (service). This is the most direct statement that Levitical work is a professional vocation deserving fair pay.
- 32.** The chapter closes with both assurance and warning. Giving the chelbo (best) removes guilt (lo tis'u alav chet — you will bear no sin regarding it). But the final threat remains: lo techalelu (you must not profane) the qodshei benei Yisra'el (sacred things of the Israelites), velo tamutu (or you will die). Proper handling of tithes is literally a life-or-death matter.

19

Summary: *God commands the preparation of the parah adumah ('red heifer') — a completely red, unblemished cow that has never worn a yoke. It is slaughtered and burned outside the camp with cedar, hyssop, and scarlet yarn. The resulting ashes, mixed with water, create the mei niddah ('water of purification') used to cleanse anyone contaminated by contact with a corpse. Those who refuse purification are cut off from the community.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The red heifer is introduced as chukkat ha-torah ('the statute of the law,' v. 2) — a category of commandment whose rationale the Torah does not explain. Rabbinic tradition calls it the ultimate paradox: the ashes purify the contaminated but render the clean priest who prepares them temporarily impure. Everyone who participates in producing the purification water becomes impure in the process. Purity is achieved through a mechanism that generates impurity.*

Translation Friction: The animal is parah adumah — literally a 'red cow,' not a heifer in the strict English sense (young cow that has not calved). However, 'red heifer' is deeply established in English translation tradition, and we retained it while noting the discrepancy. The term mei niddah ('water of impurity/separation,' v. 9) is counterintuitive — purification water named with an impurity word. We rendered it 'water of purification' to reflect its function rather than its paradoxical label.

Connections: The red heifer ashes produce the mei chata't ('water of purification') referenced in Numbers 8:7 for Levitical consecration. The ritual's location outside the camp parallels the Day of Atonement scapegoat (Leviticus 16:21-22). Hebrews 9:13-14 cites this ritual as a type of Christ's purifying work. The cedar, hyssop, and scarlet yarn (v. 6) match the skin disease purification materials in Leviticus 14:4.

¹The LORD spoke to Moses and to Aaron: ²This is the ritual statute that the LORD has commanded. Tell the Israelites to secure a red heifer (parah adumah) that is flawless — no defect, and one that has never worn a yoke. ³Hand it over to Eleazar the priest. He is to take it outside the camp, where it shall be slaughtered in his presence. ⁴Eleazar the priest shall take some of its blood on his finger and flick it toward the front of the tent of meeting seven times. ⁵The heifer is then to be burned in his sight — its hide, flesh, blood, and dung — burned completely. ⁶The priest shall take cedarwood, hyssop, and crimson yarn and throw them into the fire where the heifer is burning. ⁷The priest shall then wash his garments and bathe his body in water. After that he may reenter the camp, but he remains ritually impure until evening. ⁸Whoever burns the heifer shall wash his clothes and bathe his body in water. He too remains ritually impure until evening. ⁹A ritually clean person shall gather the heifer's ashes and store them in a clean place outside the camp. They are to be kept for the community of Israel for use in the water of impurity (mei niddah). It is a sin offering. ¹⁰Whoever gathers the ashes shall wash his clothes and remains ritually impure until evening. This is a permanent statute for the Israelites and for the resident alien living among them. ¹¹Anyone who touches a human corpse is ritually impure for seven days. ¹²That person must purify himself with it on the third day and on the seventh day; then he will be clean. If he does not purify himself on the third and seventh days, he will not be clean. ¹³Anyone who touches a human corpse and does not purify himself defiles the tabernacle of the LORD. That person shall be cut off from Israel. Since the water of impurity was not sprinkled on him, he remains unclean; his impurity stays with him. ¹⁴This is the rule when someone dies inside a tent: everyone who enters the tent and everyone already in it becomes ritually impure for seven days. ¹⁵Every open vessel that has no lid fastened on it is unclean. ¹⁶Anyone who touches in the open field a person slain by the sword, or a corpse, or a human bone, or a grave, is ritually impure for seven days. ¹⁷For the impure person they shall take some of the ashes from the burned sin offering and pour fresh water over them into a vessel. ¹⁸A ritually clean person shall take hyssop, dip it in the water, and sprinkle it on the tent, on all the vessels, on the people who were there, and on whoever touched a bone, a slain person, a corpse, or a grave. ¹⁹The clean person shall sprinkle on the impure person on the third day and on the seventh day. On the seventh day the impure person shall purify himself, wash his clothes, and bathe in water. Then he will be clean at evening. ²⁰But anyone who becomes impure and does not purify himself shall be cut off from the assembly. He has defiled the sanctuary of the LORD; the water of impurity has not been sprinkled on him — he remains unclean. ²¹This shall be a permanent statute for them: whoever sprinkles the water of impurity shall wash his clothes, and whoever touches the water of impurity shall be ritually impure until evening. ²²Whatever the impure person touches becomes unclean, and anyone who touches that thing shall be ritually impure until evening.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- Standard divine speech formula (vayedabber YHWH el-Mosheh ve-el-Aharon lemor). Moses and Aaron are addressed together — Aaron will soon be excluded from this ritual; his son Eleazar performs it instead, likely because contact with death would disqualify the high priest from his duties.
- Chukkat ha-torah ('statute of the law') — a ritual whose rationale Torah does not explain; rabbinic tradition calls it the ultimate paradox, the law even Solomon could not fathom. Parah adumah: a red (adumah) female calf (parah). Temimah ('whole, flawless') and ein-bah mum ('no defect in her') demand physical perfection. Asher lo-ala aleha ol ('upon which no yoke has come') — the animal must be unworked, never used for labor.
- Eleazar, not Aaron — the high priest must avoid corpse contamination. The ritual occurs michutz la-machaneh ('outside the camp'), in the liminal space between camp and wilderness. The slaughter happens lifanav ('before his face') — Eleazar supervises but does not perform the slaughter himself, preserving his ritual status.

4. El-nokhach penei ohel-mo'ed ('toward the front of the tent of meeting') — the blood is directed toward the sanctuary though the ritual occurs outside camp. Sheva pa'amim ('seven times') — seven signals completeness. The priest uses his finger (be-etsba'o) for sprinkling, as in other purification rites.
5. Le-einaiv ('in his sight') — Eleazar witnesses the entire burning. The totality is emphasized: skin (orah), flesh (basar), blood (dam), dung (parshah). Unlike most sacrifices, nothing is reserved; the whole animal is consumed by fire outside the camp, inverting the usual sacrificial logic.
6. Ets erets ('cedar wood'), ezov ('hyssop'), shani tola'at ('crimson of the worm' — scarlet dye): the same trio used in the leper's purification (Lev 14:4, 6) and at Passover (Ex 12:22). They bridge the scale of creation — tallest tree to lowliest herb — and the scarlet may evoke blood/life. Thrown el-toch serefat ha-parah ('into the midst of the heifer's burning') to be consumed with it.
7. The paradox of the ritual: the priest who produces the purification agent becomes impure (tame) through that very act. Kibbes (wash clothes), rachatz basaro bamayim (bathe his body in water) — standard decontamination. Ad ha-erev ('until evening') — a one-day impurity that sunset resolves. The ashes purify the defiled, but handling them defiles the handler.
8. Ha-soref ('the burner') — an assistant does the actual burning; Eleazar directs. Same defilement pattern as the priest: participation in the ritual imparts temporary impurity. Everyone involved in producing the purification agent is himself defiled by the process.
9. Efer ha-parah ('ashes of the heifer') — the residue of the burned animal. Ishi tahor ('a clean man') — one who has not touched death. Lemishmeret ('for keeping') — the ashes are stored for future use. Mei niddah: niddah denotes ritual impurity (often menstrual); the water mixed with these ashes becomes the purification agent. Chattat hu ('it is a sin offering') — the ritual is classified as chattat though it involves no blood sprinkling at the altar.
10. The gatherer joins the priest and burner in receiving impurity. Lechukat olam ('for a perpetual statute') — the ordinance stands for all generations. The ger (resident alien) is included: corpse contamination and its remedy apply to all who dwell in the camp, not only native Israelites.
11. Ha-noge'a be-met lechol nefesh adam ('one who touches the dead, [namely] any human being') — contact with a human corpse (not animal) triggers impurity. Shiv'at yamim ('seven days') — a full week of defilement, the longest standard impurity period. Death is the ultimate source of tum'ah in the priestly system.
12. Yitchatta-bo ('he shall purify himself with it') — the pronoun refers to the mei niddah. Bayom ha-shlishi ... uva-yom ha-shevi'i ('on the third day ... and on the seventh day') — a double sprinkling is required; omission of either nullifies the purification. Yithar ('he shall be clean') — the process reverses the tum'ah.
13. Et-mishkan YHWH time ('he defiles the tabernacle of the LORD') — unremedied corpse impurity pollutes the sanctuary itself from a distance. Venichreta hanefesh ha-hi mi-Yisra'el ('that person shall be cut off from Israel') — the severest penalty, likely exclusion from the community or divine punishment. Mei niddah lo-zoraq alav ('the water of impurity was not sprinkled upon him') — failure to undergo the ritual has lasting consequences. Tum'ato bo ('his impurity is upon him') — the defilement remains.
14. Zot ha-torah ('this is the law') — introduces the application of the corpse-impurity rule. Adam ki-yamut be-ohel ('when a human dies in a tent') — death indoors creates a contaminated space. Kol ha-ba el-ha-ohel vechol asher ba-ohel ('everyone who comes in and everyone in it') — the impurity affects both those present at death and later entrants. Ohel can mean any dwelling, not only a literal tent.
15. Keli patuach ('open vessel') — a container with an uncovered opening. Asher ein tsamid patil alav ('which has no covering bound upon it') — a fastened lid seals the contents from corpse-contaminated air. Uncovered vessels in a death-tent absorb impurity; sealed vessels do not (cf. v 15's implication).
16. Al-penei hasadeh ('on the face of the field') — outdoors, where unburied death is common. Chalal-cherev ('slain by the sword') — death by violence. Etzem adam ('bone of a human') — even skeletal remains transmit impurity. Qever ('grave') — tombs and grave-markers also defile. All these extend corpse-impurity beyond the indoor death scenario.
17. La-tame ('for the impure') — the defiled person receives the mixture. Me-afar serefat ha-chattat ('from the ashes of the burning of the sin offering') — the stored heifer ashes. Mayim chayyim ('fresh water' or 'living water') — flowing water, from a spring or stream, not stagnant. El-keli ('into a vessel') — the mixture is prepared in a container.
18. Ish tahor ('a clean person') — one free of corpse impurity must apply the mixture. Ezov ('hyssop') — a bunch of the herb used as a sprinkling implement. The same elements burned with the heifer (cedar, hyssop, scarlet) reappear in application. Ve-al kol ha-kelim ve-al ha-nefashot ('on all the vessels and on the persons') — both objects and people are sprinkled. The sprinkling reverses the impurity of vv 14–16.
19. Ha-tahor ... al ha-tame ('the clean upon the unclean') — one person applies the mixture to the defiled. Chitte'o ('he shall purify him') — the verb can mean both 'purify' and 'decontaminate.' The impure person's own actions on the seventh day: wash clothes (kibbes), bathe (rachatz), then tahor ba-erev ('clean at evening') — sundown completes the process.
20. Venichreta ... mitoch ha-qahal ('he shall be cut off from the midst of the assembly') — exclusion from communal worship and life. Et-miqdash YHWH time ('he has defiled the sanctuary of the LORD') — unremedied impurity threatens the divine presence. Repeats the consequence of v 13, emphasizing that the mei niddah is mandatory, not optional.
21. Mazzeh mei ha-niddah ('the sprinkler of the water of impurity') — applying the mixture defiles the applier. Ha-noge'a be-mei ha-niddah ('the one who touches the water of impurity') — even contact with the mixture, not just sprinkling, imparts impurity. The paradox again: the agent that purifies the corpse-defiled itself defiles those who handle it. Ad ha-erev — a one-day impurity.

22. Standard chain of contagion: the corpse-defiled person transmits impurity to objects (yakhol asher yiga bo ha-tame yitma); anyone who then touches those objects becomes impure (ha-nefesh ha-noge'at titma ad ha-erev). Secondary contact carries lighter defilement — until evening only — unlike the seven-day impurity of direct corpse contact. The paragraph marker {P} closes the chapter.

20

Summary: *Miriam dies at Kadesh. The people quarrel over water, and God tells Moses to speak to the rock — but Moses strikes it twice instead, and God bars both Moses and Aaron from entering the land. Edom refuses Israel passage. Aaron dies on Mount Hor, and his priestly garments are transferred to his son Eleazar. Israel mourns Aaron for thirty days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter records the deaths of two of Israel's three founding leaders — Miriam in verse 1 and Aaron in verse 28 — bookending a chapter of loss. The exact nature of Moses's sin at Meribah has generated centuries of debate: the Hebrew says lo he'emanem bi ('you did not trust me,' v. 12), framing the offense as a failure of faith rather than a mechanical error. The priestly succession is enacted physically: Aaron's garments are stripped from him and placed on Eleazar on the mountaintop (v. 28).*

Translation Friction: *The verb vayyar ('he raised,' v. 11) describing Moses lifting his hand before striking the rock uses a word whose other meaning is 'he rebelled.' Some interpreters see a deliberate double meaning. We rendered the surface sense ('raised his hand') while noting the ambiguity. The phrase mei meribah ('waters of Meribah/strife,' v. 13) creates a place-name from the quarrel — riv means 'to contend, to dispute' — and we transliterated it to preserve the etymology.*

Connections: *The water-from-rock crisis parallels Exodus 17:1-7 at Rephidim, but the outcomes diverge sharply. Miriam's death (v. 1) and the immediate water shortage led rabbinic tradition to associate a miraculous water source with her life ('Miriam's well'). Edom's refusal of passage (vv. 14-21) references the Jacob-Esau kinship (v. 14; cf. Genesis 25:21-26). Aaron's death on Mount Hor is referenced in Deuteronomy 10:6 and 32:50.*

¹The whole community of Israel arrived at the wilderness of Zin in the first month and camped at Kadesh. Miriam died there and was buried there. ²There was no water for the community. They massed together against Moses and Aaron. ³The people contended with Moses and said, "If only we had perished when our kindred died before the LORD!" ⁴Why have you brought the congregation of the LORD into this wilderness — to die here, we and our livestock? ⁵Why did you bring us up from Egypt to this wretched place? It has no grain, no figs, no vines, no pomegranates — and no water to drink. ⁶Moses and Aaron left the assembly and went to the entrance of the tent of meeting. They fell facedown, and the glory of the LORD appeared to them. ⁷The LORD spoke to Moses, saying, ⁸Take the staff. You and Aaron your brother are to assemble the community, and in front of them speak to the rock. It will yield its water. You will bring water out of the rock for them and give the community and their livestock to drink. ⁹Moses took the staff from before the LORD, as He had commanded him. ¹⁰Moses and Aaron assembled the community before the rock. Moses said to them, "Listen, you rebels. Should we bring water for you out of this rock?" ¹¹Moses raised his hand and struck the rock twice with his staff. Water poured out in abundance, and the community and their livestock drank. ¹²The LORD said to Moses and Aaron, "Because you did not trust Me — and did not sanctify Me in the sight of the Israelites — you will not bring this assembly into the land I have given them." ¹³These are the waters of Meribah, where the Israelites contended with the LORD, and He showed Himself holy among them. ¹⁴Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom: "Thus says your brother Israel: You know all the hardship that has come upon us." ¹⁵"Our ancestors went down to Egypt, and we lived there many years. The Egyptians mistreated us and our fathers." ¹⁶"We cried out to the LORD; He heard our voice, sent a messenger, and brought us out of Egypt. Now we are in Kadesh, a town at the edge of your territory." ¹⁷"Please let us pass through your land. We will not cross through field or vineyard, and we will not drink water from wells. We will keep to the king's highway and will not turn right or left until we have crossed your border." ¹⁸Edom said to him, "You shall not pass through me, or I will march out against you with the sword." ¹⁹The Israelites said to him, "We will go up by the highway. If I and my livestock drink any of your water, I will pay for it. I ask only

to pass through on foot — nothing more." ²⁰He said, "You shall not pass through." Then Edom came out against Israel with a large force and a strong hand. ²¹Edom refused to grant Israel passage through its territory. So Israel turned away from it. ²²They set out from Kadesh, and the whole community of Israel came to Mount Hor. ²³The LORD said to Moses and Aaron at Mount Hor, on the border of the land of Edom: ²⁴"Aaron will be gathered to his people. He shall not enter the land I have given to the Israelites, because you rebelled against My command at the waters of Meribah." ²⁵Take Aaron and his son Eleazar and bring them up to Mount Hor. ²⁶"Strip Aaron of his garments and put them on Eleazar his son. Aaron will be gathered to his people and die there." ²⁷Moses did as the LORD commanded. They went up Mount Hor in the sight of the whole community. ²⁸Moses removed Aaron's garments and dressed his son Eleazar in them. Aaron died there on the summit of the mountain, and Moses and Eleazar came back down. ²⁹When the whole community saw that Aaron had died, they wept for Aaron thirty days — all the house of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The first month (bachodesh harishon) is Nisan — the same month as the exodus (Ex 12:2). The transition from wilderness wanderings back toward Canaan opens with loss: Miriam (achot, sister; Ex 15:20) dies at Kadesh. Midbar-tsin and Qadesh frame this chapter; Miriam's death in v 1 parallels Aaron's in v 28, bookending the generation's passing.
2. Lo haya mayim la'edah — no water for the assembly. The verb va-yiqahalu (from qahal, 'assembly') means they gathered as a hostile crowd. The same crisis as Exodus 17 (Rephidim) recurs here at Kadesh; this time the people's confrontation leads to Moses' decisive failure.
3. Va-yarev (from riv, 'strife') — they quarreled. Lu gavanu bigva' acheinu — 'if only we had died in the dying of our brothers.' They refer to the rebels who died in Korah's rebellion (ch 16) or the plague in 17:14. The complaint echoes their earlier wish to have died in Egypt.
4. Lamah hevetem et-qahal YHWH — why have you brought up the assembly of the LORD. The people charge Moses and Aaron with endangering qahal YHWH; they shift blame for the wilderness from their own disobedience to the leaders. Be'irenu (our livestock) shows the scope of the perceived threat.
5. Ha-maqom hara' hazzeh — this evil/wretched place. The list zera' (seed/grain), te'elah (fig), gefen (vine), rimon (pomegranate) — standard symbols of abundance in Canaan (Deut 8:8) — stresses what they lack. Mayim ayin lishtot: no water to drink. The complaint dismisses the wilderness as worthless.
6. El-petach ohel mo'ed — to the entrance of the tent of meeting. Va-yiplu al-penehem — they fell on their faces (prostration before revelation). Kevod YHWH — the glory of the LORD — appears as at Sinai; divine instruction will follow, but Moses and Aaron will misuse it.
7. Standard introduction for divine speech. The instruction that follows is explicit: speak to the rock (v 8). Moses' violation of this command will cost him the land.
8. Ve-dibbartem el-ha-sela' le'einehem — you shall speak to the rock before their eyes. The key verb is dibber (speak), not strike. Ha-matteh (the staff) is carried but not used to hit. The contrast with Exodus 17:6 (strike the rock) and Moses' actual act (striking twice, v 11) defines his sin: he did what God did not command.
9. Millephne YHWH — from before the LORD (from the sanctuary). Moses obeys the first part of the command (taking the staff) but will transgress the crucial part (speaking, not striking). Ke-asher tsivvahu — as He commanded him — highlights the gap between command and fulfillment.
10. Ha-morim — the rebels (from marah, 'rebel'). Moses' harsh tone shifts focus from God to himself: 'Must we fetch?' (nochi' lakhem) implies he and Aaron provide the water, not the LORD. This failure to sanctify God (lehaqdisheni) before Israel is the heart of his sin (v 12).
11. Va-yakh et-ha-sela' bemattehu pa'amayim — he struck the rock with his staff twice. God had said 'speak'; Moses strikes. The doubling (twice) may signal excess or frustration. Water flows anyway (mayim rabbim — abundant water); God's mercy meets the need, but Moses' act disqualifies him from leading Israel into the land.
12. Lo he'emantem bi — you did not trust/believe Me. Lehaqdisheni le'eine bene Yisra'el — to sanctify Me in the eyes of the children of Israel. Moses' act (striking instead of speaking, taking credit) obscured God's holiness. The consequence is definitive: neither Moses nor Aaron will enter the land. This verse grounds Moses' exclusion from Canaan (Deut 34:4).
13. Me merivah — waters of Meribah (from riv, 'contention'). The place-name commemorates both Israel's strife and God's self-revelation: va-yiqaddesh bam — He was sanctified/made holy in/through them. Despite Moses' failure, God's holiness was displayed when the rock yielded water. Meribah also appears in Exodus 17:7 (Meribah at Rephidim).
14. Koh amar achikha Yisra'el — thus says your brother Israel. The appeal to kinship (Jacob/Israel and Esau/Edom) frames the request. Tela'ah (hardship) and metsa'atenu (has found us) describe the afflictions of slavery and wilderness. The diplomatic tone seeks peaceful passage along the king's highway.

- 15.** Va-yaredu avotenu — our fathers went down. Va-yare'u lanu mitzrayim — the Egyptians did evil/harm to us. The speech rehearses Israel's story to justify the request: we are kin, we suffered, we were delivered. Yamim rabbim (many days) summarizes the sojourn.
- 16.** Va-nitsa'aq el-YHWH — we cried out to the LORD. Mal'akh can mean angel or messenger; the Exodus narrative emphasizes God's direct action. Qetseh gevulekha — the edge of your border — places Israel at Edom's frontier, requesting safe passage through rather than conquest.
- 17.** Derekh ha-melekh — the king's highway, a main trade route through Edom. The pledges (no fields, no vineyards, no well water) assure Edom that Israel will cause no harm or depletion. Lo nitteh yamin u-smol — we will not turn right or left — promises a straight, minimally intrusive passage.
- 18.** Lo ta'avov bi — you shall not pass through me (Edom speaks as the land). Pen-bacherev etze' — lest I go out with the sword. The refusal is absolute. The threat of armed resistance forces Israel to detour, adding hardship to the journey.
- 19.** Ba-mesillah na'aleh — we will go up by the highway. Mekhram — their price, i.e., payment for water used. Ein-davar beraglay e'evorah — there is nothing with my feet, I will pass — a pledge to pass through without additional demands or damage. Israel sweetens the offer; Edom still refuses.
- 20.** Be'am kaved uve-yad chazaqah — with a heavy/impressive people and a strong hand. Edom musters for war. The phrase echoes the exodus (Ex 6:1, 13:14) but here describes Edom's military posture against Israel. Israel must turn away.
- 21.** Va-yema'en — he refused (from ma'en). Lo naton et-Yisra'el avor bigvulo — did not give Israel to pass through his border. Va-yet Yisra'el me'alaw — Israel turned aside from him. The detour around Edom extends the wilderness journey and delays entry into the land.
- 22.** Hor ha-har — Mount Hor (har means mountain; Hor may be from a root for height). The journey from Kadesh to Hor sets the stage for Aaron's death. The same mountain appears in the border descriptions of Canaan (Num 34:7) and in Edom's vicinity here.
- 23.** Al-gevu eretz Edom — on the border of the land of Edom. The divine word comes at the boundary; Aaron will die at the threshold of the land, never crossing. The location echoes Israel's exclusion from Edom's territory — barriers on multiple fronts.
- 24.** Ye'aseph Aharon el-ammav — Aaron will be gathered to his people (euphemism for death). Meritem et-pi — you rebelled against My mouth/word. The charge links Aaron's death directly to me merivah (the waters of Meribah). Aaron was present and complicit in Moses' failure; both bear the consequence.
- 25.** Ha'al otam Hor ha-har — bring them up Mount Hor. Eleazar will succeed Aaron as high priest (Ex 6:23). The transfer of priesthood is deliberate: Aaron goes up to die; Eleazar goes up to be invested.
- 26.** Hafsheit et-Aharon et-begadav — strip Aaron of his garments. The priestly vestments (Ex 28) are transferred to Eleazar, symbolizing the continuity of the priesthood. The same verb (pashat) appears in v 28 for the actual stripping. Ye'aseph umet sham — he will be gathered and die there.
- 27.** Le'eine kol-ha'edah — before the eyes of the whole assembly. The transition is public. The community witnesses Aaron's departure and Eleazar's elevation. Moses' obedience here contrasts with his failure at Meribah.
- 28.** Be-ro'sh ha-har — on the top/summit of the mountain. Aaron dies at the high point, perhaps suggesting he is 'gathered' heavenward. Va-yered Moshe ve-El'azar min-ha-har — Moses and Eleazar descended alone; the high priest who goes up is not the one who comes down. The priesthood passes; the wilderness generation continues to pass away.
- 29.** Ki gava' Aharon — that Aaron had died (gava' = expire, breathe out). Va-yivku et-Aharon shloshim yom — they wept for Aaron thirty days. The same mourning period as for Moses (Deut 34:8). Kol beit Yisra'el — all the house of Israel — signifies full communal grief. The chapter ends with Israel grieving their first high priest as they continue toward the land he would never enter.

21

Summary: Israel defeats the Canaanite king of Arad after vowing cherem ('total destruction'). The people complain again and are punished with venomous serpents; God provides a bronze serpent on a pole as a means of healing. Israel journeys around Edom, sings at the well of Beer, and wins decisive victories over Sihon king of the Amorites and Og king of Bashan, conquering the Transjordanian territory.

What Makes This Remarkable: The bronze serpent is one of the strangest remedies in the Torah: the instrument of punishment becomes the instrument of healing. Those bitten must look at a nachash nechoshet ('bronze serpent,' v. 9) to live — not a magical cure but a visible act of trust in God's word. The chapter also preserves fragments of ancient poetry: a quotation from the lost sefer milchamot YHWH ('Book of the Wars of the LORD,' v. 14), and the well song ('spring up, O well!' v. 17), one of the few joyful songs in Numbers.

Translation Friction: The term ha'atarim (v. 1) is debated — it may be a place-name or may derive from tur ('to scout'), connecting to the spies of chapter 13. We transliterated it as a proper noun while noting the ambiguity. The verb hacharamti ('devote to total destruction,' v. 2) carries the full weight of cherem — forfeiting all spoils to God — and resists reduction to a single English word. We used 'devote to total destruction' to preserve both the religious dedication and the violent outcome.

Connections: The bronze serpent (v. 9) is referenced in 2 Kings 18:4 (Hezekiah destroys it when it becomes an idol) and in John 3:14-15, where Jesus applies it to His own crucifixion. The victories over Sihon and Og (vv. 21-35) become a permanent part of Israel's theological memory, recited in Deuteronomy 2-3, Psalm 135:11, and Psalm 136:19-20. The conquered territory becomes the inheritance of Reuben and Gad in Numbers 32.

¹When the Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negev, heard that Israel was approaching by the route of Atharim, he attacked Israel and captured some of them as prisoners. ²Israel made a vow to the LORD, saying, "If You will truly deliver this people into our hand, we will devote their cities to total destruction." ³The LORD listened to Israel's plea and delivered the Canaanites over. They devoted them and their cities to total destruction, so the place was named Hormah. ⁴They set out from Mount Hor along the route toward the Sea of Reeds, going around the land of Edom. The people grew deeply frustrated on the journey. ⁵The people spoke against God and against Moses: "Why did you bring us up from Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no real food and no water, and we are disgusted with this worthless bread!" ⁶The LORD sent venomous serpents among the people. They bit the people, and many Israelites died. ⁷The people came to Moses and said, "We have sinned — we spoke against the LORD and against you. Pray to the LORD to remove the serpents from us." So Moses prayed on behalf of the people. ⁸The LORD said to Moses, "Make yourself a serpent figure and mount it on a pole. Then anyone who has been bitten, when they look at it, will live." ⁹So Moses made a bronze serpent and mounted it on the pole. Whenever a serpent bit someone, that person would look at the bronze serpent and survive. ¹⁰The Israelites moved on and camped at Oboth. ¹¹They traveled from Oboth and camped at Iye-Abarim in the wilderness east of Moab, toward the sunrise. ¹²From there they traveled on and camped at the Wadi Zered. ¹³From there they traveled on and camped on the far side of the Arnon, in the wilderness that extends from the Amorite border — for the Arnon is the boundary of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites. ¹⁴This is why the Book of the Wars of the LORD says: "Waheb in Suphah, and the ravines of the Arnon, ¹⁵and the slopes of the ravines that extend toward the settlement of Ar and lean against the border of Moab." ¹⁶From there they went to Beer — that is the well where the LORD told Moses, "Assemble the people and I will give them water." ¹⁷Then Israel sang this song: "Rise up, O well! Sing out to it! ¹⁸A well that leaders dug, that the nobles of the people excavated with the scepter, with their staffs." From the wilderness they went to Mattanah, ¹⁹from Mattanah to Nahaliel, from Nahaliel to Bamoth, ²⁰and from Bamoth to the valley in the territory of Moab, at the peak of Pisgah, which overlooks the wasteland. ²¹Israel sent envoys to Sihon, king of the Amorites, with this message: ²²"Let us pass through your land. We will not turn aside into fields or vineyards. We will not drink water from any well. We will travel along the King's Highway until we have crossed your territory." ²³But Sihon would not allow Israel to pass through his territory. Instead, Sihon assembled his entire fighting force and marched out against Israel into the wilderness. He arrived at Jahaz and engaged Israel in battle. ²⁴Israel struck him down with the sword and took possession of his land from the Arnon to the Jabbok — as far as the Ammonite border, because the Ammonite border was fortified. ²⁵Israel captured all these cities and settled in all the Amorite cities — in Heshbon and all its surrounding towns. ²⁶Heshbon had been the capital of Sihon, king of the Amorites, who had fought against the previous king of Moab and seized all his territory as far as the Arnon. ²⁷That is why the ballad-singers say: "Come to Heshbon! Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established! ²⁸For fire burst out from Heshbon, a blaze from the stronghold of Sihon. It consumed Ar of Moab and the rulers of the heights of the Arnon. ²⁹Devastation for you, Moab! You are ruined, people of Chemosh! He abandoned his sons as refugees and his daughters to captivity under Sihon, king of the Amorites. ³⁰We shot them down — Heshbon is destroyed all the way to Dibon! We laid waste as far as Nophah, which extends to Medeba." ³¹So Israel settled in the land of the Amorites. ³²Moses sent scouts to reconnoiter Jazer. They captured its surrounding towns and dispossessed the Amorites living there. ³³They turned and advanced along the road to Bashan. Og, king of Bashan, marched out against them — he and his entire army — to give battle at Edrei. ³⁴The LORD said to Moses,

"Do not fear him, for I have handed him over to you — him, his entire army, and his land. Do to him what you did to Sihon, king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon." ³⁵They struck him down along with his sons and his entire army until no survivor remained, and they took possession of his land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Canaanite king of Arad strikes preemptively when he hears Israel is moving via derekh ha'atarim (the route of Atharim — possibly 'the way of the scouts,' connecting to the spies sent earlier). The verb vayyishb (he captured) with shevi (captivity, prisoners) shows Israel vulnerable — a rare military setback that prompts the vow in v. 2.
2. The neder (vow) uses the conditional im-naton titten (if giving You give — if You truly deliver) with the infinitive absolute for emphasis. The commitment to hacharamti (devote to cherem — total destruction) of their cities is a complete dedication of the spoils to God, forfeiting any plunder. This voluntary vow transforms a defensive battle into a sacred act.
3. God responds to the vow: vayyishma YHWH beqol Yisra'el (the LORD listened to Israel's voice). The place is renamed Chormah, from the same root ch-r-m as cherem (destruction/devotion). The name commemorates the fulfilled vow — the site of total consecration through destruction. This contrasts with the earlier defeat at Hormah in Numbers 14:45, where Israel attacked without divine authorization.
4. The phrase vattiqtasr nefesh ha'am (the soul/life of the people grew short) conveys emotional exhaustion — their patience was literally 'cut short.' They must detour around Edom (who refused passage in 20:14-21), making an already long wilderness journey even longer. This frustration sets the stage for the complaint and serpent episode.
5. The complaint escalates to include God directly — b'Elohim uveMosheh (against God and against Moses). Their accusation is contradictory: ein lechem (there is no food) yet they despise the lechem haqqeloqel (the worthless/miserable bread) — meaning the manna. The word qeloqel (contemptible, light, worthless) from the root q-l-l shows profound ingratitude. Their nefesh qatsah (their soul loathed/was disgusted) uses visceral rejection language.
6. The hannechashim hasseraaphim (the burning serpents) — seraph means 'burning,' referring either to the burning sensation of their venom or to their fiery appearance. The same root s-r-ph gives us the seraphim of Isaiah 6. The serpents are sent by God (vayshalach YHWH) as a direct consequence of the people's complaint — divine judgment matching the offense.
7. Confession (chatanu — we have sinned) and intercession (hitpallel — pray) are the two responses to judgment. The people acknowledge the sin precisely: dibbarnuv baYHWH vavakh (we spoke against the LORD and against you). Moses' intercession (vayyitpallel Mosheh be'ad ha'am — Moses prayed on behalf of the people) follows the same pattern as his intercessions in Exodus 32 and Numbers 14.
8. God does not remove the serpents but provides a remedy within the crisis. The saraph (burning/venomous figure) on a nes (pole, standard, banner) becomes a means of healing through the act of looking (ra'ah). The cure requires intentional gaze — an act of faith in the divine instruction. Jesus references this passage in John 3:14-15, drawing a parallel to his own being 'lifted up.'
9. Moses fashions a nechash nechoshet (serpent of bronze/copper) — note the wordplay between nachash (serpent) and nechoshet (bronze/copper), both from related roots. The bronze serpent becomes an ongoing remedy: im nashakh hannachash et-ish (if the serpent bit a man) vehibbit (and he looked) — healing required active participation, not passive proximity. This object later became an idol and was destroyed by King Hezekiah (2 Kings 18:4), who called it Nehushtan.
10. The itinerary resumes after the serpent episode. Ovot (Oboth) is an encampment site in the Transjordan region, marking Israel's southward detour around Edom before turning north toward Moab. The name may relate to ov ('spirit medium' or 'waterskin'), though its etymology is uncertain.
11. Iyyei ha'Avarim ('ruins of the crossings' or 'heaps of Abarim') is in the wilderness facing Moab from the east (mimmizrach hashemesh — from the rising of the sun). The Abarim range, whose name means 'crossings' or 'regions beyond,' is the mountain chain from which Moses will later view the Promised Land (Num 27:12).
12. The Nachal Zered (Wadi Zered, or 'valley of Zered') marks a significant geographic boundary. Deuteronomy 2:13-14 identifies the crossing of Zered as the point when the old wilderness generation had fully died out — 38 years after Kadesh-Barnea. The name may derive from a root meaning 'luxuriant growth.'
13. The Arnon River (Wadi Mujib in modern Jordan) is a deep gorge that served as the border between Moab to the south and Amorite territory to the north. Israel positions itself me'ever Arnon (on the far side of the Arnon) — in the wilderness strip emerging from Amorite territory. This geographic precision matters because Israel was forbidden to attack Moab (Deut 2:9).
14. The Sepher Milchamot YHWH (Book of the Wars of the LORD) is a now-lost ancient Israelite text cited here as a geographic/military source. The fragment begins with et-Vahev besuphah — extremely obscure words, possibly a place name 'Wahev in Suphah.' This is one of several lost books referenced in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Book of Jashar, Josh 10:13), demonstrating that biblical authors drew on earlier written sources.
15. The quotation from the lost book continues: eshed hannechalim (the slopes/watershed of the ravines) extends toward shevet Ar (the settlement of Ar — a Moabite city). The fragment describes the Arnon's ravine system near the Moabite border, establishing the geographic context of Israel's approach. The word eshed (slope, outpouring, watershed) occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible.

16. Be'erah means 'to the well' — the place name Be'er (Beer) simply means 'well.' Unlike the earlier water crises at Massah/Meribah (Ex 17, Num 20), this provision comes without complaint or striking a rock. God simply promises: *ettenah lahem mayim* (I will give them water). The simplicity of the gift contrasts with the previous episodes' conflict.
17. The shirah (song) uses the jussive *ali* (rise up! spring up!) — a command addressed to the well itself. *Enu-lah* (sing/respond to it) invites the people into antiphonal celebration. This is one of the few wilderness songs of joy rather than complaint, and one of the oldest poetic fragments in the Torah — a workers' well-digging song transformed into worship.
18. The song celebrates leaders doing manual labor: *sarim* (princes/leaders) and *nedivei ha'am* (nobles of the people) dig with a *mechoqeq* (scepter/ruler's staff) and *mish'annotam* (their walking staffs). The image of rulers digging with royal implements inverts social expectations. The itinerary resumes: *umimmidbar Mattanah* (from the wilderness to Mattanah) — the name Mattanah means 'gift,' possibly alluding to the gift of water.
19. The place names form a theologically suggestive sequence: Mattanah ('gift'), Nachali'el ('valley/torrent of God'), Bamot ('high places'). Some rabbinic interpreters read this as an allegory: God's gift (Torah) becomes a torrent of divine wisdom, which then elevates its recipients to the heights. Whether or not the allegory is intended, the etymological progression is striking.
20. The itinerary reaches *rosh haPisgah* (the peak/head of Pisgah) — the same mountain from which Moses will later view the Promised Land (Deut 3:27, 34:1). It overlooks the *Yeshimon* (wasteland, desolation) — the barren landscape east of the Dead Sea. The destination foreshadows the narrative's climax: Israel is approaching the land of promise.
21. Israel initiates diplomacy: *malakhim* (messengers, envoys) are sent to *Sichon melek ha'Emori* (Sihon king of the Amorites). This parallels the earlier embassy to Edom (20:14), but unlike Edom — whom Israel was forbidden to attack — the Amorites will face military consequences for their refusal. Sihon's kingdom controlled the territory between the Arnon and the Jabbok rivers.
22. The request mirrors the embassy to Edom (20:17) almost verbatim: no trespass into fields or vineyards (*sadeh, kerem*), no use of local wells (*mei ve'er*), travel restricted to *derekh hammelek* (the King's Highway) — a major international trade route running north-south through Transjordan. The appeal promises minimal disruption and complete respect for sovereignty.
23. Sihon's refusal (*lo natan* — he did not allow/give) escalates to military aggression: *vayyeesof* (he gathered) his entire army and *vayyetse* (went out) into the *midbar* (wilderness) to attack. He comes to *Yahtsa* (Jahaz), a site later mentioned in the Mesha Stele (Moabite Stone). Sihon initiates the conflict — Israel's subsequent conquest is presented as a defensive response to Amorite aggression.
24. Israel defeats Sihon *lefi charev* (by the mouth/edge of the sword) and takes possession (*vayyirash* — dispossessed, inherited) of his territory. The boundaries are precise: from Arnon (southern border, modern Wadi Mujib) to Yabboq (Jabbok, northern border, modern Zarqa River), stopping at the Ammonite frontier. The note *ki az gevul benei Ammon* (because the Ammonite border was strong/fortified) explains why Israel didn't continue east — Ammon's defenses held, and God had forbidden attacking Ammon (Deut 2:19).
25. Cheshbon (Heshbon, modern Hesban in Jordan) was Sihon's capital city. The phrase *bekhol benoteyha* (in all its daughters — meaning its satellite towns or dependent villages) uses the common Hebrew metaphor of a capital 'mother city' with smaller 'daughter' settlements. Israel's settlement is immediate — they inhabit the conquered cities rather than destroying them.
26. This historical note explains why the territory between Arnon and Jabbok was Amorite rather than Moabite. Sihon had previously conquered it from *melek Mo'av harishon* (the former/previous king of Moab). This detail is legally significant: Israel did not take Moabite land (forbidden by God) but Amorite land that Sihon had previously taken from Moab — a chain of conquest that removes any Moabite territorial claim.
27. The *moshelim* (proverb-speakers, ballad-singers, those who compose *mashal* — a poetic genre) are cited for an ancient war song. The song appears to have originally celebrated Sihon's conquest of Moab, but is now cited with dramatic irony — Sihon's own victory song becomes the backdrop for his defeat. *Bo'u Cheshbon* (Come to Heshbon!) was once a triumphant Amorite rallying cry.
28. The ballad describes Sihon's earlier conquest of Moab in military metaphor: *esh* (fire) and *lehavah* (flame/blaze) represent his destructive campaign sweeping from Heshbon southward. It consumed *Ar Mo'av* (Ar of Moab, a major Moabite city) and the *ba'alei bamot Arnon* (lords/masters of the Arnon heights) — Moabite rulers controlling the high ground along the Arnon ravine.
29. The taunt song mocks Moab's god: *am-Kemosh* (people of Chemosh — Moab's national deity, known from the Mesha Stele). *Chemosh natan* (he gave over) his own worshipers — sons as *peleitim* (refugees, fugitives) and daughters to *shevit* (captivity). The implication: Chemosh was powerless to protect his people. The song's original purpose was Amorite propaganda; its citation here adds another layer of irony.
30. The song's conclusion is textually difficult: *vanniram* (we shot/hurled at them) may also be parsed as 'their dominion' (*niram* — their lamp/dominion has perished). The geographic sweep of destruction runs from Heshbon to *Divon* (Dibon, the Moabite capital known from the Mesha Stele), to *Nophach* (Nophah, location uncertain), to *Medeva* (Medeba, modern Madaba). The song maps Sihon's complete conquest of Moabite territory.
31. A concise summary: *vayyeshev Yisra'el be'erets ha'Emori* (Israel settled in the land of the Amorites). This land — previously Moabite, then Amorite, now Israelite — will become the inheritance of Reuben, Gad, and half of Manasseh (Num 32). The chain of possession matters legally and theologically.

32. Moses sends scouts leraggel (to spy out, reconnoiter) Ya'zer (Jazer) — a strategic town. They capture its benoteyha (daughter-towns, satellite settlements) and vayyoresh (dispossessed) the resident Amorites. The ketiv/qere note in the Hebrew — vayyirash/vayyoresh — reflects a textual variant between 'he inherited' and 'he dispossessed,' both from the root y-r-sh which carries both meanings simultaneously.
33. The campaign moves north: derekh haBashan (the road to Bashan — the fertile plateau region of northern Transjordan, modern Golan Heights area). Og melek haBashan — a legendary figure later described as the last of the Rephaim giants (Deut 3:11) — meets them at Edrei (Edrei, modern Der'a in Syria). Like Sihon, Og initiates the conflict by marching out (vayyetse) to battle.
34. God's command al-tira oto (do not fear him) suggests Og's reputation was genuinely intimidating — a giant king with a powerful army. The perfect tense natatti (I have given — already given) treats the victory as accomplished fact before the battle occurs. The parallel to Sihon (ka'asher asita leSihon — as you did to Sihon) frames the two Transjordan conquests as a matched pair of divine victories.
35. The chapter ends with total victory: vayyakku oto (they struck him down) — Og, his sons (banav), and all his people, ad-bilti hish'ir-lo sarid (until not a survivor remained to him). The verb vayyireshu (they took possession of, they dispossessed) closes the double conquest of Transjordan — Sihon's territory from Arnon to Jabbok, and now Og's Bashan extending further north. Israel enters the Balaam narrative (ch 22) as a military power that has defeated two kings.

22

Summary: *Balak king of Moab, terrified by Israel's victories, sends for Balaam son of Beor — a renowned Mesopotamian diviner — to curse Israel. God tells Balaam not to go; Balak sends more prestigious envoys; God permits the journey but constrains the prophet's words. On the road, Balaam's donkey sees the angel of the LORD blocking the path and speaks in human language. Balaam arrives in Moab, unable to say anything except what God puts in his mouth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The donkey sees what the prophet cannot. The she-donkey (aton) perceives the angel of the LORD three times while Balaam — the professional seer — is blind to the divine presence. When God opens the donkey's mouth (v. 28), she delivers a rebuke more rational than the prophet's behavior. The verb vayyichar af ('his anger burned,' v. 22) describes God's anger at Balaam going — even though God just gave permission (v. 20) — creating a theological tension that drives the narrative.*

Translation Friction: *Moab's fear is expressed with two verbs: vayyagor ('was terrified') and vayyaqots ('was seized with dread/revulsion,' v. 3). The second verb quts carries physical disgust alongside fear — we rendered it 'seized with dread' to capture the visceral quality. The simile kilcokh hasshor et yereq hassadeh ('as an ox devours the grass of the field,' v. 4) depicts Israel as a grazing animal consuming everything methodically — we kept the image intact.*

Connections: *Balaam is referenced extensively in later Scripture: Deuteronomy 23:4-5, Joshua 13:22, Micah 6:5, 2 Peter 2:15-16, Jude 11, and Revelation 2:14. Moab's terror at Israel's numbers (v. 3) echoes Pharaoh's fear in Exodus 1:9-12 — the same blessing of abundance that alarmed Egypt now terrifies Moab. The talking donkey narrative has a parallel in the ancient Near Eastern tradition of animals mediating divine messages.*

¹The Israelites traveled on and camped in the steppes of Moab, across the Jordan from Jericho. ²Balak son of Zippor saw everything Israel had done to the Amorites. ³Moab was terrified of the people because they were so numerous. Moab was seized with dread because of the Israelites. ⁴Moab said to the elders of Midian, "This horde will now devour everything around us the way an ox devours the grass of a field." Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time. ⁵He sent messengers to Balaam son of Beor at Pethor, which is by the Euphrates River, in the land of his kinsmen, to summon him: "A people has come out of Egypt — they cover the surface of the land and have settled right across from me. ⁶Come now, please — curse this people for me, for they are too powerful for me. Perhaps then I can strike them and drive them from the land. For I know that whoever you bless is blessed, and whoever you curse is cursed." ⁷The elders of Moab and the elders of Midian set out with divination fees in hand. They came to Balaam and delivered Balak's message. ⁸He said to them, "Stay here tonight, and I will give you an answer based on what the LORD tells me." So the Moabite officials stayed with Balaam. ⁹God came to Balaam and said, "Who are these men with you?" ¹⁰Balaam said to God, "Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, has sent me this message: ¹¹'A people has come out of Egypt, covering the surface of the land. Come now, curse them for me —

perhaps then I can fight them and drive them away.'" ¹²God said to Balaam, "You must not go with them. You must not curse the people, for they are blessed." ¹³Balaam rose in the morning and said to Balak's officials, "Go back to your land, for the LORD has refused to let me go with you." ¹⁴The Moabite officials returned to Balak and reported, "Balaam refused to come with us." ¹⁵Balak sent yet another delegation — more officials, and more distinguished than the first. ¹⁶They came to Balaam and said to him, "This is what Balak son of Zippor says: 'Please do not let anything prevent you from coming to me, ¹⁷for I will reward you very richly, and whatever you tell me I will do. Please come and curse this people for me.'" ¹⁸Balaam answered Balak's servants, "Even if Balak were to give me his entire palace full of silver and gold, I could not go beyond the command of the LORD my God to do anything small or great. ¹⁹Now please stay here tonight as well, so I may learn what more the LORD has to say to me." ²⁰God came to Balaam that night and said to him, "Since these men have come to summon you, get up and go with them — but you may only do what I tell you to do." ²¹Balaam rose in the morning, saddled his donkey, and set out with the Moabite officials. ²²God's anger blazed because Balaam was going, and the angel of the LORD positioned himself on the road as an adversary against him. Balaam was riding his donkey, with his two servants alongside him. ²³The donkey saw the angel of the LORD standing on the road with a drawn sword in his hand. The donkey turned off the road and went into the field, so Balaam struck the donkey to turn her back onto the road. ²⁴Then the angel of the LORD stood in a narrow path between vineyards, with a stone wall on either side. ²⁵The donkey saw the angel of the LORD and pressed herself against the wall, crushing Balaam's foot against it. He struck her again. ²⁶The angel of the LORD moved ahead and stood in a narrow place where there was no room to turn right or left. ²⁷The donkey saw the angel of the LORD and lay down under Balaam. Balaam's anger blazed, and he struck the donkey with his staff. ²⁸The LORD opened the donkey's mouth, and she said to Balaam, "What have I done to you that you have struck me three times?" ²⁹Balaam said to the donkey, "Because you have made a fool of me! If I had a sword in my hand, I would kill you right now!" ³⁰The donkey said to Balaam, "Am I not your donkey, the one you have ridden all your life to this day? Have I ever been in the habit of doing this to you?" He said, "No." ³¹Then the LORD opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of the LORD standing on the road with a drawn sword in his hand. He bowed low and fell on his face. ³²The angel of the LORD said to him, "Why have you struck your donkey three times? I came out as an adversary because your path is reckless before me. ³³The donkey saw me and turned away from me three times. If she had not turned away, I would certainly have killed you by now — and let her live." ³⁴Balaam said to the angel of the LORD, "I have sinned — I did not know you were standing on the road to oppose me. Now if this is wrong in your sight, I will go back." ³⁵The angel of the LORD said to Balaam, "Go with the men, but you may speak only the word I tell you to speak." So Balaam went on with Balak's officials. ³⁶When Balak heard that Balaam had come, he went out to meet him at Ir-moab, on the Arnon border at the edge of the territory. ³⁷Balak said to Balaam, "Did I not send urgently for you? Why didn't you come to me? Am I really unable to reward you?" ³⁸Balaam said to Balak, "I have come to you now, but do I have any power to say just anything? The word that God puts in my mouth — that is what I will speak." ³⁹Balaam traveled with Balak, and they arrived at Kiriath-huzoth. ⁴⁰Balak sacrificed cattle and sheep and sent portions to Balaam and the officials with him. ⁴¹In the morning Balak took Balaam up to Bamoth-baal, and from there he could see the edge of the Israelite camp.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The geographical setting: arvot Mo'av ('steppes of Moab') — the flat plain east of the Jordan River, directly opposite Jericho. Israel has arrived at the threshold of the promised land. This location will be the staging ground for everything from Numbers 22 through Deuteronomy 34: Balaam's oracles, Moses's farewell speeches, and the final preparations for the conquest. The phrase me'ever leYarden Yerecho ('across the Jordan from Jericho') places the reader on the east bank, looking west toward Canaan.
2. Balak is introduced watching: vayyar Balaq ('Balak saw'). He has witnessed Israel's recent military victories over Sihon king of the Amorites and Og king of Bashan (ch 21). The sight terrifies him. Balak is not an aggressor but a frightened neighbor — his response to Israel's military power drives the entire Balaam narrative.
3. Two verbs describe Moab's response: vayyagor ('was terrified') and vayyaqots ('was seized with dread/disgust'). The verb quts carries a sense of revulsion and anxiety — the Israelites' vast numbers produce not just fear but visceral distress. The phrase ki rav-hu ('because they were numerous') echoes Pharaoh's concern in Exodus 1:9 — the same population growth that worried Egypt now terrifies Moab. Israel's blessing (numerical abundance) is perceived as a threat by every neighboring power.

4. Moab seeks an alliance with Midian against the common threat. The vivid simile — *kilcokh hasshor et yereq hassadeh* ('as an ox licks up the green of the field') — depicts Israel as a grazing animal consuming everything in its path, methodically and unstoppably. The verb *lachakh* ('to lick up') suggests total consumption — nothing remains. Balak's royal title (*melekh leMo'av*) is stated as a narrative marker: he is the decision-maker whose fear will drive the plot.
5. Balaam's location: *Petorah asher al-hannahar* ('Pethor, which is by the River' — the Euphrates). Balaam is a Mesopotamian diviner, not a local practitioner — Balak is importing elite prophetic talent from the ancient Near East's intellectual center. The description of Israel — *am yatsa miMitsrayim* ('a people came out of Egypt') — correctly identifies Israel's origin. The phrase *kissah et-ein ha'arets* ('covers the eye/surface of the land') is the same locust-swarm language from Exodus 10:5 — Israel's numbers are described as a plague-level phenomenon.
6. Balak's request is explicit: *arah-lli et-ha'am hazzeh* ('curse this people for me'). His reasoning is military pragmatism: *ki atsum hu mimmenni* ('they are too powerful for me') — conventional warfare won't work, so he turns to supernatural means. The crucial admission: *yadati et asher-tevarekh mevorakh va'asher ta'or yu'ar* ('I know that whoever you bless is blessed, whoever you curse is cursed'). Balak believes Balaam's words carry real power — that prophetic speech can change reality. The irony of the narrative is that Balak is right about the power of prophetic speech, but wrong about who controls it.
7. The delegation carries *qesamim beyadam* ('divination fees in their hand') — payment for prophetic services. Professional divination was a paid profession throughout the ancient Near East. The joint Moab-Midian embassy reflects the coalition formed in v4. They deliver Balak's words without commentary — the request speaks for itself.
8. Balaam's first response is to consult God — *ka'asher yedabber YHWH elay* ('as the LORD speaks to me'). Remarkably, a Mesopotamian diviner uses the covenant name YHWH, suggesting some genuine connection to Israel's God. The overnight stay (*linu foh hallaylah*) is standard for receiving oracles — nocturnal revelation through dreams or visions. Balaam does not simply accept the commission; he defers to divine guidance.
9. God initiates contact: *vayyavo Elohim el-Bil'am* ('God came to Balaam'). The question *mi ha'anashim ha'ellesh immakh* ('who are these men with you?') is not a request for information — God knows who they are. It is a pedagogical question (like 'Where are you?' in Gen 3:9), designed to make Balaam articulate the situation and its implications. God's engagement with Balaam is direct and personal, despite Balaam being outside the covenant community.
10. Balaam reports accurately: he names the sender (Balak), his title (king of Moab), and will relay the request (v11). His transparency with God is notable — he does not conceal the purpose of the delegation. Whether this reflects genuine piety or the professional diviner's awareness that deception before a deity is futile, the text does not say.
11. Balaam relays Balak's request verbatim — the same language as v5-6 with minor variations. The verb *qavah* ('to curse' — a different root from *arah* in v6) and the military purpose (*lehillichem bo vegeirashtiv* — 'to fight them and drive them away') are faithfully transmitted. Balaam is an honest intermediary, at least in this exchange.
12. God's answer is absolute and gives the reason: *lo ta'or et-ha'am ki varukh hu* ('you must not curse the people, for they are blessed'). Three elements: prohibition against traveling (*lo telekh immahem*), prohibition against cursing (*lo ta'or*), and the reason (*ki varukh hu* — 'for he/they are blessed'). Israel's blessed status is a settled divine fact, not a negotiable condition. The narrative's entire theology is compressed into three Hebrew words: *ki varukh hu*. Everything that follows — Balaam's repeated attempts, Balak's escalating frustration — unfolds from this immovable premise.
13. Balaam obeys the divine prohibition — he sends the delegation away. His report is accurate but incomplete: *me'en YHWH letitti lahalokh immakhem* ('the LORD has refused to let me go with you'). He does not mention that God said the people are blessed — he omits the reason. This selective reporting may indicate that Balaam is hoping for a second chance, or simply that he is being diplomatic. The Moabite officials return empty-handed.
14. The officials' report to Balak is further truncated: *me'en Bil'am halokh immanu* ('Balaam refused to come with us'). They do not mention the LORD's refusal — only Balaam's. Each retelling loses information. Balak hears 'Balaam refused,' not 'God forbade it.' This misunderstanding fuels Balak's decision to try again with a more impressive delegation (v15).
15. Balak escalates: *rabbim venikhbadim me'ellesh* ('more numerous and more honored than these'). His logic: perhaps Balaam's refusal was a negotiating tactic — a more prestigious embassy with a larger fee might change his mind. Balak interprets prophetic obedience as commercial gamesmanship. He does not understand that Balaam's refusal was not about price but about divine command.
16. The second delegation carries a more urgent message: *al-na timmana mehalokh elay* ('please do not be prevented from coming to me'). The verb *mana* ('to withhold, to prevent') suggests Balak thinks something external is blocking Balaam — perhaps insufficient payment or insufficient honor. Balak cannot conceive that the obstacle is God Himself.
17. Balak's offer escalates: *kabbed akhabbedekha me'od* ('I will honor you greatly') and *vekhlo asher-tomar elay e'eseh* ('whatever you say to me I will do'). The blank-check promise — 'whatever you say' — reveals Balak's desperation. He is willing to submit to any demand if Balaam will just come and curse. The irony: Balak offers unlimited human authority to a man who is bound by unlimited divine authority.
18. Balaam's most emphatic refusal — and the statement that defines his dilemma throughout the narrative. The hyperbole *melo veito kesef vezahav* ('his palace full of silver and gold') dismisses wealth as a factor. The phrase *lo ukhal la'avur et-pi YHWH Elohai* ('I cannot go beyond the mouth/command of the LORD my God') is absolute. Notably, Balaam calls YHWH 'my God' (Elohai) — a possessive that implies personal relationship, however complicated. The scope — *la'asot qetannah o gedolah* ('to do anything small or great') — allows no exceptions. Yet Balaam does not send them away; he asks them to stay again (v19).

19. Despite his absolute statement in v18, Balaam invites the second delegation to stay overnight: mah-yosef YHWH dabber immi ('what the LORD may further say to me'). This is the verse that raises questions about Balaam's character: if God already said no (v12), why is Balaam checking again? Is he hoping God will change His mind? Is he attracted to Balak's wealth despite his declaration? The text leaves the ambiguity intact — Balaam's motives remain opaque.
20. God grants conditional permission: qum lekh ittam ('rise, go with them') — but with an absolute restriction: ve'akh et-haddavar asher-adabber elekha oto ta'aseh ('only the word I speak to you — that you shall do'). The permission creates the dramatic tension of chapters 23-24: Balaam goes, but God controls every word he speaks. The condition ve'akh ('but only') is emphatic — a divine leash. Yet God's anger will burn against Balaam for going (v22), creating one of the most debated tensions in the narrative: God says go, then is angry that he went.
21. Balaam departs with perhaps too much eagerness — vayyaqom babboqer ('he rose in the morning'), immediately saddling his donkey. The aton ('she-donkey') will become the narrative's most memorable character. Balaam goes 'with the officials of Moab' (im-sarei Mo'av), fulfilling God's permission but possibly overstepping God's reluctant tone. What follows (v22-35) is the famous donkey episode.
22. The theological crux: vayyichar-af Elohim ki-holekh hu ('God's anger blazed because he was going'). God gave permission in v20; God is angry in v22. The tension is real and intentionally preserved. Possible readings: God permitted the journey but was displeased with Balaam's eagerness, or the permission was a test of Balaam's heart. The mal'akh YHWH ('angel of the LORD') stands lesatan lo ('as an adversary/satan to him') — the word satan here is a common noun meaning 'adversary, opponent,' not a proper name. The angel blocks the road that God permitted Balaam to travel.
23. The narrative's central irony begins: the donkey sees what the professional seer cannot. Vattere ha'aton et-mal'akh YHWH ('the donkey saw the angel of the LORD') — an animal perceives divine reality more clearly than a prophet. The angel holds a drawn sword (charbo shelufah) — a death threat that Balaam is oblivious to. The donkey's detour into the field is an act of self-preservation that saves both her life and Balaam's. Balaam's response — striking the donkey — is the first of three beatings, each escalating in severity.
24. The second encounter: a narrower space. The mishol hakkeramim ('vineyard path') is flanked by walls (gader mizzeh vegader mizzeh — 'a wall on this side and a wall on that side'). The geography tightens — the open field of v23 gives way to a confined lane. The angel's strategy mirrors a military funnel: each position is more restrictive than the last, giving the donkey less room to evade.
25. The donkey's evasion becomes more desperate: vattillachets el-haqqir ('she pressed against the wall'), crushing Balaam's foot. The physical pain Balaam experiences is caused by the donkey's attempt to save his life — he is being hurt by the very act that protects him. Balaam strikes the donkey a second time (vayyosef lehakkotah), escalating the violence against the animal that sees what he cannot.
26. The final position: maqom tsar ('a narrow place') — ein derekh lintot yamin usmol ('no way to turn right or left'). The path has become a dead end. The progression from open road (v23) to walled path (v24) to impassable narrows (v26) mirrors the narrowing of Balaam's options: God is systematically eliminating every escape route except confrontation.
27. With no room to turn, the donkey simply lies down (vattirbbats tachat Bil'am) — a final act of refusal, the only option left. Balaam's anger 'blazes' (vayyichar-af) — the same verb used for God's anger in v22. The prophet's fury mirrors God's fury, but directed at exactly the wrong target. He strikes with a maqqel ('staff') — his third beating, the most violent. The scene reaches maximum tension: an enraged prophet beating a prostrate donkey, both of them between an angel with a drawn sword and the road to Moab.
28. The most extraordinary verse in the chapter: vayyiftach YHWH et-pi ha'aton ('the LORD opened the donkey's mouth'). God, who places words in prophets' mouths (23:5), now places words in a donkey's mouth. The donkey's question is reasonable and pointed: meh-asiti lekha ('what have I done to you?'). She is the injured party — beaten three times (zeh shalosh regalim) for obeying a divine command that her master cannot see. The seer who is supposed to speak for God is now being questioned by his own donkey.
29. Balaam answers the donkey without any apparent surprise that she is speaking — either because the narrator condenses the reaction, or because the exchange happens within a prophetic trance state. His response is irrational: ki hit'allalt bi ('because you have mocked me'). A donkey cannot mock. More critically, Balaam wishes he had a sword (lu yesh-cherrev beyadi) — while an angel stands yards away holding a drawn one. The man who cannot see an armed angel wishes for a weapon to kill his donkey. The irony is devastating.
30. The donkey's argument is logical and devastating: she appeals to their history. Halo anokhi atonekha asher-rakhavta alay me'odekha ad-hayyom hazzeh ('Am I not your donkey, whom you have ridden from the beginning until today?'). A lifetime of faithful service should earn trust — if she is behaving strangely now, perhaps there is a reason. The rhetorical question hahasken hispanti la'asot lekha koh ('have I ever been in the habit of treating you this way?') demands the answer Balaam gives: lo ('no'). The donkey wins the argument. The prophet who speaks for God has just lost a debate with his own mount.
31. Vayyigal YHWH et-einei Vil'am ('the LORD uncovered Balaam's eyes') — the verb galah ('to uncover, to reveal') means God removed a barrier to sight. The professional seer needed divine intervention to see what his donkey saw naturally. The moment Balaam sees the angel — vecharbo shelufah beyado ('with his drawn sword in his hand') — he understands that his life was in danger and his donkey saved it. He collapses: vayyiqqod vayyishtachu le'appav ('he bowed and prostrated himself on his face'). The man who beat his donkey for lying down now lies on the ground himself.
32. The angel echoes the donkey's question: al-mah hikkita et-atonekha ('why have you struck your donkey?'). The divine messenger validates the animal's complaint. The reason for the angel's opposition: ki-yarat hadderekh lenegdi ('because the road is reckless/perverse before me'). The verb yarat is rare and debated — it may mean 'reckless,' 'precipitous,' or 'contrary.' Whatever Balaam's stated compliance with God's will, something about his journey is wrong in the angel's assessment.

33. The angel's verdict is stark: the donkey saved Balaam's life. *Ki attah gam-otkha haragti ve'otah hecheyeti* ('by now I would have killed you and let her live'). The reversal is complete: the animal Balaam wanted to kill (v29) is the one who preserved his life, and the prophet who thought he was in control was moments from death. The angel would have killed the seer and spared the donkey — a humiliation without parallel in prophetic literature.
34. Balaam confesses: *chatati* ('I have sinned'). His defense is ignorance: *lo yadati* ('I did not know'). The offer to return — *ashuva li* ('I will go back') — is conditional: *im ra be'einekha* ('if it is wrong in your sight'). The conditionality suggests Balaam is still not entirely certain he should abandon the journey. His confession is genuine but tentative — he admits error while leaving the door open to continue.
35. The angel repeats God's condition from v20 almost verbatim: *ve'efes et-haddavar asher-adabber elekha oto tedabber* ('only the word I speak to you — that you shall speak'). The journey continues under divine constraint. The donkey episode has not changed the destination but has recalibrated Balaam's understanding: he now knows that invisible divine forces surround him, that his sight is limited, and that even his donkey perceives more than he does. He proceeds to Moab chastened.
36. Balak goes to the border to meet Balaam personally — a mark of the honor he promised (v17). The location — *Ir Mo'av* ('city of Moab') at the Arnon border — is the frontier of Moabite territory, the closest point to where Balaam would arrive from the north. Balak's eagerness to meet Balaam at the border underscores how desperately he needs the seer's services.
37. Balak's greeting is a rebuke: *lammah lo-halakhta elay* ('why didn't you come to me?'). He interprets Balaam's initial refusal as an insult. The question *ha'umnam lo ukhal kabbedekha* ('am I really unable to honor you?') challenges Balaam's assessment of Moabite wealth and prestige. Balak assumes the refusal was about money or honor — he cannot fathom that a prophet might answer to a higher authority than a king.
38. Balaam's first words to Balak establish the terms: *hayakhol ukhal dabber me'umah* ('can I really speak anything at all?'). The question is rhetorical — no, he cannot speak freely. The declaration *haddavar asher yasim Elohim befi oto adabber* ('the word God puts in my mouth, that I will speak') previews exactly what will happen in chapters 23-24. Balaam warns Balak from the outset: what comes out of my mouth is not under my control. Balak either does not hear the warning or chooses to ignore it.
39. They travel together to *Qiryat-Chutsot* ('city of streets/plazas') — a Moabite city whose exact location is unknown. The brief verse moves the action from the border to the interior, setting the stage for the sacrificial preparations and oracles of chapter 23.
40. Balak offers a welcoming sacrifice — *vayyizbbach Balaq baqar vatson* ('Balak slaughtered cattle and sheep'). This is a hospitality feast, not the divination sacrifices of 23:1-2. Sending portions (*vayyeshallach*) to Balaam and the officials is a customary gesture of honor. Balak continues to treat Balaam with the deference promised in v17. The lavish welcome makes the upcoming oracles — all blessings instead of curses — even more devastating for Balak.
41. The chapter closes at *Bamot-Ba'al* ('high places of Baal') — a Moabite worship site dedicated to Ba'al. Balak positions Balaam at a pagan shrine overlooking the Israelite camp: *vayyar misham qetseh ha'am* ('from there he could see the edge of the people'). Only the edge — Balak's strategy of partial viewing (23:13) begins here. The stage is set for the first oracle. Everything — the hired seer, the elaborate offerings, the strategic vantage point — is in place. And every bit of it will fail to produce the curse Balak desperately needs.

23

Summary: *Balaam delivers his first two oracles. Despite elaborate sacrificial preparations on seven altars — Mesopotamian divination custom, not Israelite practice — Balaam cannot curse Israel. His first oracle declares Israel a people dwelling apart; his second announces that God sees no guilt in Israel and that what God has blessed cannot be reversed. Balak, furious, takes Balaam to a new vantage point for another attempt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The irony is structural: Balak pays for premium prophetic service — fourteen animals across seven altars — yet the seer cannot deliver the product. Balaam's admission *ulay yiqqareh YHWH liqrati* ('perhaps the LORD will come to meet me,' v. 3) reveals that he does not control when or whether God speaks. The second oracle contains the remarkable declaration: *lo hibbith aven beYa'aqov* ('He has not beheld iniquity in Jacob,' v. 21) — God sees Israel through the lens of covenant, not current behavior.*

Translation Friction: *Balaam's oracles are Hebrew poetry, and we rendered them with line breaks to preserve the parallelism visible in the *mashal* ('oracle, parable') form. The verb *qarah* ('to happen upon, encounter by chance,' v. 3) for God's meeting with Balaam suggests the seer cannot summon the divine at will — we chose 'met' rather than 'appeared to' to preserve the unexpected quality. The difficult phrase *teru'at melekh bo* ('the shout of a king among them,' v. 21) may refer to God as king or to a future human king.*

Connections: The declaration 'God is not a man that He should lie' (v. 19) is quoted and echoed in 1 Samuel 15:29. The 'people dwelling apart' (v. 9) echoes Deuteronomy 33:28. Balaam's involuntary blessing ironically fulfills God's promise to Abraham: 'I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you' (Genesis 12:3).

¹Balaam said to Balak, "Build me seven altars here, and prepare seven bulls and seven rams for me." ²Balak did as Balaam said, and Balak and Balaam offered a bull and a ram on each altar. ³Balaam told Balak, "Stand beside your burnt offering while I go. Perhaps the LORD will come to meet me, and whatever He reveals to me I will report to you." He went off to a barren height. ⁴God met Balaam, and Balaam said to Him, "I have arranged seven altars and offered a bull and a ram on each altar." ⁵The LORD placed a word in Balaam's mouth and said, "Return to Balak and speak exactly this." ⁶He returned to Balak, who was standing beside his burnt offering with all the Moabite officials.

⁷He took up his oracle and said:
 "From Aram, Balak brought me —
 the king of Moab, from the eastern mountains:
 'Come, curse Jacob for me!
 Come, denounce Israel!'

⁸How can I curse whom God has not cursed?
 How can I denounce whom the LORD has not denounced?

⁹From the rocky heights I see them,
 from the hills I gaze upon them:
 a people that dwells apart,
 not counting itself among the nations.

¹⁰Who can count the dust of Jacob
 or number even a fourth of Israel?
 Let me die the death of the upright —
 let my end be like theirs!"

¹¹Balak said to Balaam, "What have you done to me? I brought you to curse my enemies, and instead you have blessed them!" ¹²He answered, "Must I not take care to speak exactly what the LORD puts in my mouth?" ¹³Balak said to him, "Please come with me to another place where you can see them — you will see only part of them, not all of them — and curse them for me from there." ¹⁴He took him to the field of Zophim, on top of Pisgah, built seven altars, and offered a bull and a ram on each altar. ¹⁵He said to Balak, "Stand here beside your burnt offering while I go to seek an encounter over there." ¹⁶The LORD met Balaam and placed a word in his mouth, saying, "Return to Balak and speak exactly this." ¹⁷He came to Balak, who was standing beside his burnt offering with the Moabite officials. Balak asked him, "What did the LORD say?"

¹⁸He took up his oracle and said:
 "Rise up, Balak, and listen!
 Give ear to me, son of Zippor.

¹⁹God is not a human being, that He should lie,
 nor a mortal, that He should change His mind.
 Has He spoken and will He not act?
 Has He promised and will He not fulfill it?

²⁰I received a command to bless —
 He has blessed, and I cannot reverse it.

²¹He has seen no guilt in Jacob,
no misery in Israel.
The LORD their God is with them —
the acclamation of a king is among them!

²²God who brought them out of Egypt —
He has the strength of a wild ox.

²³For there is no omen against Jacob,
no divination against Israel.
In due time it will be said of Jacob and Israel:
'See what God has done!'

²⁴See — a people that rises like a lioness,
that lifts itself like a lion!
It will not lie down until it has devoured its prey
and drunk the blood of the slain."

²⁵Balak said to Balaam, "If you will not curse them, at least do not bless them!" ²⁶Balaam answered Balak, "Did I not tell you: everything the LORD speaks, that is what I must do?" ²⁷Balak said to Balaam, "Come now, let me take you to yet another place. Perhaps it will be right in God's sight for you to curse them for me from there." ²⁸Balak took Balaam to the top of Peor, which overlooks the wasteland. ²⁹Balaam said to Balak, "Build me seven altars here, and prepare seven bulls and seven rams for me." ³⁰Balak did as Balaam said and offered a bull and a ram on each altar.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Seven altars, seven bulls, seven rams — the number of completeness applied three times. Balaam's ritual preparation is elaborate and expensive, befitting a high-stakes divination attempt. The seven-fold offering is not Israelite practice (Israel uses one altar); it reflects Mesopotamian divination customs where the seer creates optimal conditions for receiving an oracle. Balak is paying for premium prophetic service.
2. Both king and prophet participate in the offering — Balak is not a passive client but an active co-officiant. The phrase *par va'ayil bammizbeach* ('a bull and a ram on each altar') means fourteen animals total across seven altars. The extravagance is deliberate: Balak believes that the size of the offering might influence the outcome. The narrative will demonstrate otherwise.
3. Balaam's uncertainty is telling: *ulay yiqqareh YHWH liqrati* ('perhaps the LORD will come to meet me'). The verb *qarah* ('to happen upon, to encounter by chance') suggests Balaam does not control when or whether God speaks — he can only position himself to receive. He goes to a *shefi* ('barren height, bare hilltop') — an elevated, isolated location favorable for prophetic encounter. Balak must stay with the offerings while Balaam seeks the oracle alone.
4. God meets Balaam (*vayyiqqar Elohim el-Bil'am*) — the verb *qarah* implies God initiated the encounter, not Balaam's technique. Balaam's first words to God are a report of his ritual preparations: 'I have arranged seven altars.' The statement reads almost like an invoice — Balaam is telling God what he has done to merit a response. The irony is sharp: Balaam treats God as a deity who can be influenced by the size of the sacrifice, but the God of Israel does not work that way.
5. The mechanism of prophetic inspiration: *vayyasem YHWH davar befi Bil'am* ('the LORD placed a word in Balaam's mouth'). God does not give Balaam a general message to paraphrase — He puts specific words in his mouth. Balaam becomes a vessel, not a composer. The command *vekho tedabber* ('and thus you shall speak') leaves no room for editorial revision. What Balaam says next (v7-10) is God's oracle, not Balaam's composition.
6. Balak has obeyed — *hinneh nitsav al-olato* ('there he was, standing beside his burnt offering'). The Moabite officials (*sarei Mo'av*) are present as witnesses, expecting to hear the curse they commissioned. The stage is set for Balaam's first oracle, with the full Moabite leadership assembled to hear what they believe will be Israel's condemnation.
7. The first oracle opens in poetry with Balaam's geographic origin: *min-Aram* ('from Aram,' the Syrian region) and *meharrei-qedem* ('from the eastern mountains'). He establishes that he was hired: Balak brought him specifically to curse (*arah*) and denounce (*zo'amah*). The parallel structure — Jacob/Israel, curse/denounce — uses the two names for the patriarch/nation to fill both lines. The oracle is rendered as poetry with line breaks preserving the Hebrew parallelism.
8. The oracle's thesis: Balaam cannot curse what God has blessed. The rhetorical questions — *mah eqgov lo qabbo El* ('how can I curse what God has not cursed?') — state the impossibility. A human seer's words have no power against God's prior determination. The verse establishes a fundamental

biblical principle: no curse pronounced by any power can override God's blessing. The parallelism pairs God (El) with the LORD (YHWH), using both divine names.

9. Balaam sees Israel from above — mero'sh tsurim ('from the top of the rocks') — his elevated prophetic vantage point. What he sees defines Israel's fundamental character: am levadad yishkon ('a people that dwells apart'). Israel's separateness is not accidental but constitutional — they are distinct from the nations by divine design. The phrase uvagoyim lo yitchashav ('among the nations it does not reckon itself') asserts that Israel cannot be evaluated by the categories applied to other peoples. Their identity is unique.
10. The first oracle culminates in Balaam's personal wish: tamot nafshi mot yesharim ('let me die the death of the upright'). The pagan seer, looking at Israel's blessed multitude, wants to share their destiny. The 'dust of Jacob' (afar Ya'aqov) echoes the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 13:16 ('I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth'). Balaam unknowingly confirms the patriarchal covenant. The word yesharim ('upright ones') may be a wordplay on Yisra'el — both share the root y-sh-r. Balaam's wish to die as one of them is the deepest possible endorsement from an outsider.
11. Balak's outrage: meh asita li ('what have you done to me?'). The contrast between intention (laqov oyevay — 'to curse my enemies') and outcome (hinneh berakhta varekh — 'you have blessed with blessing') is stark. The infinitive absolute berakhta varekh intensifies the blessing — not merely a failure to curse but an emphatic, thorough blessing. Balak is paying for a weapon and receiving a benediction.
12. Balaam's defense is simple and consistent: he can only say what God gives him to say. The phrase et asher yasim YHWH befi oto eshmo ledabber ('what the LORD places in my mouth, that I must take care to speak') — the verb shamar ('to keep, to guard') means he guards God's words as a sacred trust. Balaam is compelled — not by professional ethics but by divine power — to speak only truth.
13. Balak's reasoning is superstitious: perhaps seeing only part of Israel (efes qatsehu tir'eh — 'only their edge you will see') will make them appear smaller and more vulnerable, enabling a curse. The attempt to manipulate the oracle by changing the vantage point reveals Balak's fundamental misunderstanding: he thinks Balaam's problem is technique, not theology. The issue is not where Balaam stands but what God has decided.
14. A new location: sedeh Tsufim ('field of the watchers/lookouts') on top of Pisgah — the same mountain range where Moses will later see the promised land and die (Deut 34:1). The identical offering — seven altars, seven bulls, seven rams — shows Balak repeating the same expensive ritual, hoping for a different result. The narrative builds through repetition: same setup, different location, same divine outcome.
15. The same instruction as v3 — Balak stays with the offering while Balaam seeks God. The verb iqqareh ('I will seek an encounter') is from the same root qarah as in v3 and 4 — the language of uncertain, sought-for divine meeting. Balaam does not command God's appearance; he positions himself and waits.
16. Identical to v5: God meets Balaam, places words in his mouth, and sends him back. The repetition reinforces the pattern: the procedure does not change God's message. Different altars, different location, same divine instruction. The oracle that follows (v18-24) will be an even more emphatic blessing than the first.
17. Balak's question — mah-dibber YHWH ('what did the LORD speak?') — acknowledges, perhaps inadvertently, that it is YHWH who speaks, not Balaam. Even the Moabite king uses Israel's covenant name for God. The Moabite officials are again present as witnesses — they will hear the second blessing along with Balak.
18. The second oracle opens with a direct command to the king: qum Balaq ushma ('rise up, Balak, and listen!'). The imperatives are forceful — Balaam is not asking permission but commanding attention. The shift in tone from v7's third-person introduction ('Balak brought me from Aram') to v18's second-person address ('Rise up, Balak') signals escalation. Balaam now speaks to Balak's face with prophetic authority, not diplomatic courtesy.
19. One of the most quoted verses in the Hebrew Bible on divine faithfulness. The declaration lo ish El vikhazzev ('God is not a man, that He should lie') establishes absolute divine reliability. The verb nacham ('change His mind, repent, relent') is denied of God here — though elsewhere God does 'relent' (e.g., Exod 32:14, Jonah 3:10). The tension is genuine: God's character is unchanging, but His responses to human repentance are flexible. Here the point is specific: God has blessed Israel, and no human scheme will make Him reverse that blessing.
20. Balaam's admission: hinneh varekh laqachti ('I received [a command] to bless'). The verb laqach ('to receive, to take') frames the blessing as something given to Balaam, not something he chose. The concluding declaration — uvarekh velo ashivennah ('He has blessed, and I cannot reverse it') — states the irreversibility of divine blessing. No human prophet, regardless of their skill or desire, can undo what God has done.
21. A theologically dense verse. Lo-hibbit aven beYa'aqov ('He has not beheld iniquity in Jacob') — does this mean Israel is sinless, or that God chooses not to hold their sin against them? The latter reading fits the context: God has decided to bless, and blessing overrides judgment. The phrase teru'at melekh bo ('the shout/acclamation of a king is among them') may refer to God as king (the royal shout of a divine sovereign) or anticipate the future human monarchy. YHWH Elohav immo ('the LORD their God is with them') — the simplest and most powerful statement: God is present among His people. That presence is the ground of everything.
22. The exodus reference: El motsi'am miMitsrayim ('God who brought them out of Egypt'). This phrase appears in both the second oracle (here) and the third (24:8) — the exodus is the defining event that Balaam keeps returning to. The re'em ('wild ox,' not 'unicorn' as in KJV) represents untamable power. The KJV's 'unicorn' reflects the LXX translation (monokeros) but the Hebrew refers to the now-extinct aurochs, a massive wild bovine.
23. The verse strikes at the heart of Balak's scheme: lo-nachash beYa'aqov velo-qesem beYisra'el ('no omen against Jacob, no divination against Israel'). The very practice Balak hired Balaam to perform — divination against Israel — is declared impossible. Israel is immune to sorcery because God is with them (v21). The closing exclamation — mah-pa'al El ('what has God done!') — shifts from curse to wonder. Instead of asking 'what can be done

to Israel?', the nations will ask 'what has God done for Israel!'

24. The second oracle closes with the lion image, echoing the first oracle's closing wish (v10) and the parallel in 24:9. Two lion words: lavi ('lioness') and ari ('lion') — the pairing emphasizes both ferocity and nurturing protectiveness. The violent imagery — 'devour prey, drink blood' — describes military invincibility. Israel resting is Israel victorious: lo yishkav ad-yokhal teref ('it will not lie down until it has consumed its prey'). The nation personified as a lion that cannot be put to rest until its work is complete.
25. Balak's desperate compromise: gam-qov lo tiqqovennu gam-barekh lo tevarekhennu ('neither curse them at all, nor bless them at all'). Having failed to get a curse twice, Balak settles for neutrality — at least stop blessing them! The request reveals his diminished expectations: from 'curse my enemies' (v11) to 'please stop helping them.' Balaam's response (v26) will reject even this reduced request.
26. Balaam repeats his consistent position: kol asher-yedabber YHWH oto e'eseh ('everything the LORD speaks, that I must do'). The seer cannot choose silence when God chooses speech. He is a channel, not a filter. Balak's request for neutrality is as impossible as his request for a curse — Balaam speaks what God gives him, whether blessing, curse, or nothing.
27. Balak's persistence is remarkable — and foolish. After two failed attempts, he tries a third: ulay yishar be'einei ha'Elohim ('perhaps it will be right in God's sight'). The word ulay ('perhaps') reveals that even Balak now has doubts. Yet he cannot accept defeat. The phrase 'right in God's sight' is ironic — Balak is asking whether God might approve the very thing God has twice refused. The narrative's comedy deepens with each repetition.
28. The third location: ro'sh haPe'or ('the top of Peor') — a mountain associated with the Moabite deity Baal-Peor. The location hannishqaf al-penei haYeshimon ('overlooking the wasteland/desert') provides another vantage point over the Israelite camp. Peor will become infamous: it is here that Israel will later fall into apostasy with Moabite women and worship Baal-Peor (ch 25). The place name carries a dark foreshadowing that the blessing oracles cannot prevent.
29. Verbatim repetition of v1 — the same instruction, the same numbers, the third time. The ritual rigidity contrasts with its total ineffectiveness: the offerings have not influenced God's oracle at any point. The repetition makes the narrative's point through structure: no amount of ritual manipulation can change what God has determined. The third attempt will produce the third blessing (ch 24), and Balaam will finally abandon his divination techniques entirely (24:1).
30. The chapter closes mid-ritual: Balak offers again, and the oracle that will follow (24:1-9) is the third and most elaborate blessing. The chapter's structure — two complete oracle cycles (v1-10 and v13-24) with the setup for a third (v27-30) — creates a rhythm of escalating divine endorsement. Each time Balak tries to curse, the blessing grows stronger. The narrative demonstrates that human opposition to God's purposes does not merely fail — it produces the opposite of what was intended.

24

Summary: *Balaam abandons his divination techniques and, under the Spirit of God, delivers his third and fourth oracles. The third oracle blesses Israel's beauty and prosperity with the famous line 'How beautiful are your tents, O Jacob.' The fourth oracle prophesies a future royal figure — 'a star from Jacob, a scepter from Israel' — who will crush Moab and Edom. Balaam then delivers brief oracles against surrounding nations before departing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *A pagan seer, fully co-opted by Israel's God, delivers the most messianic prophecy in the book. The phrase darakh kokhav miYa'aqov ('a star shall march from Jacob,' v. 17) and vegam shevet miYisra'el ('a scepter shall rise from Israel') point beyond any immediate fulfillment. Balaam sees all this as haggever shetum ha'ayin ('the man whose eye is opened/uncovered,' v. 3) — whether his eyes are opened to see what others cannot, or closed in ecstatic trance, the text leaves ambiguous.*

Translation Friction: *The term shetum ha'ayin (v. 3) has been debated since antiquity — does it mean 'opened' or 'closed'? Both readings fit a prophet receiving supernatural sight. We rendered 'whose eye is opened' following the majority tradition, while noting the alternative. The ne'um ('utterance') formula at the oracle openings (vv. 3, 15) is a prophetic technical term usually reserved for God's own speech — Balaam uses it for himself, an extraordinary claim for a non-Israelite.*

Connections: *The star-and-scepter prophecy (v. 17) was applied to David by early Jewish interpretation, to Bar Kokhba in the second century CE, and to Christ in Christian tradition (cf. Matthew 2:2, Revelation 22:16). The title Shaddai ('Almighty,' v. 4) is the patriarchal divine name from Genesis 17:1 and Exodus 6:3. The 'ships from Kittim' oracle (v. 24) may anticipate Greek or Roman power, connecting to Daniel 11:30.*

¹When Balaam saw that it pleased the LORD to bless Israel, he did not go as before to seek omens but turned his face toward the wilderness. ²Balaam raised his eyes and saw Israel encamped tribe by tribe, and the Spirit of God came upon him.

³He took up his oracle and said:

"The utterance of Balaam son of Beor,
the utterance of the man whose eye is opened,

⁴the utterance of one who hears the words of God,
who sees the vision of the Almighty,
falling down with eyes unveiled:

⁵How beautiful are your tents, O Jacob —
your dwelling places, O Israel!

⁶Like valleys that stretch out,
like gardens beside a river,
like aloe trees the LORD has planted,
like cedars beside the waters.

⁷Water shall flow from his buckets,
his seed planted by abundant waters.
His king shall rise higher than Agag,
and his kingdom shall be exalted.

⁸God who brought him out of Egypt —
He has the strength of a wild ox.
He devours hostile nations,
crushing their bones,
piercing them with his arrows.

⁹He crouches, he lies down like a lion —
like a lioness, who dares rouse him?
Blessed are those who bless you;
cursed are those who curse you.

¹⁰Balak's anger blazed against Balaam. He struck his hands together and said to Balaam, "I summoned you to curse my enemies, and instead you have blessed them — three times now! ¹¹Now flee to your own place! I intended to reward you richly, but the LORD has denied you any reward." ¹²Balaam replied to Balak, "Did I not tell your messengers whom you sent to me: ¹³'Even if Balak were to give me his entire palace filled with silver and gold, I could not go beyond the LORD's command to do anything good or bad on my own initiative. What the LORD speaks — that is what I will speak.' ¹⁴Now I am going back to my people, but first let me warn you what this people will do to your people in the days to come."

¹⁵He took up his oracle and said:

"The utterance of Balaam son of Beor,
the utterance of the man whose eye is opened,

¹⁶the utterance of one who hears the words of God,
who knows the knowledge of the Most High,
who sees the vision of the Almighty,
falling down with eyes unveiled:

¹⁷I see him — but not now.
 I behold him — but not near.
 A star shall rise from Jacob,
 a scepter shall emerge from Israel.
 He shall crush the forehead of Moab
 and shatter all the sons of Seth.

¹⁸Edom shall become a possession;
 Seir shall become a possession — his enemies —
 while Israel acts with strength.

¹⁹A ruler shall come from Jacob
 and destroy the survivors of the city.

²⁰He looked toward Amalek and took up his oracle:
 "Amalek was first among the nations,
 but his end is destruction forever."

²¹He looked toward the Kenites and took up his oracle:
 "Secure is your dwelling place,
 your nest set in the rock.

²²Yet Cain shall be consumed —
 how long until Asshur takes you captive?"

²³He took up his oracle and said:
 "Alas! Who can survive when God does this?"

²⁴Ships shall come from the coast of Kittim —
 they shall afflict Asshur, they shall afflict Eber.
 But he too shall perish forever."

²⁵Balaam rose, departed, and returned to his place. And Balak also went on his way.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A turning point: Balaam abandons his divination techniques (lo halakh kefa'am-befa'am liqrat nechashim — 'he did not go as other times to meet omens'). In chapters 22-23, Balaam attempted his standard prophetic methodology; now he surrenders to the Spirit directly (v2). Turning toward the wilderness (vayyashet el-hamidbar panav) — he faces the Israelite camp spread out below, and the Spirit of God falls on him. The pagan seer becomes an involuntary channel for Israel's God.
2. The Spirit of God (ruach Elohim) descends on a non-Israelite prophet — one of the few times in the Hebrew Bible that God's Spirit empowers someone outside the covenant community. The sight that triggers the oracle is Israel shokhein lishvatav ('dwelling by their tribes') — the orderly camp arrangement described in Numbers 2. Balaam sees Israel as God sees them: organized, beautiful, blessed. What follows (v3-9) is his third oracle, the most elaborate and poetic of the four.
3. The mashal ('oracle, parable, prophetic poem') opens with a formal self-identification: ne'um Bil'am beno Ve'or ('the utterance of Balaam son of Beor'). The phrase haggever shetum ha'ayin ('the man whose eye is opened/uncovered') is debated — shetum may mean 'opened' (seeing what others cannot) or 'closed' (eyes shut in ecstatic trance, seeing only with inner vision). Both readings fit a prophet who receives supernatural sight. The oracle is poetry — rendered with line breaks to preserve the Hebrew parallelism.
4. Balaam claims four prophetic credentials: hearing God's words (shomea imrei-El), seeing the Almighty's vision (machazeh Shaddai yechezeh), falling down (nofel — in ecstatic prostration), and having unveiled eyes (gelui einayim). The title Shaddai ('Almighty') is the patriarchal divine name (Gen 17:1, Exod 6:3). Balaam, the Mesopotamian seer, uses Israel's ancestral name for God — he has been fully co-opted by the deity he was hired to oppose.

5. Mah-tovu ohalekha Ya'aqov ('How beautiful are your tents, O Jacob') — this verse became one of the most beloved lines in Jewish liturgy, recited upon entering a synagogue. The parallelism pairs tents (ohalim) with dwelling places (mishkenot) and Jacob with Israel — the two names for the patriarch and the nation. Balaam, hired to curse, cannot stop praising. The beauty he sees is the ordered encampment (v2), but the word mishkenot also echoes mishkan ('tabernacle') — Israel's tents surround God's dwelling, and their arrangement itself is beautiful.
6. Four nature similes describe Israel's beauty and vitality: valleys (nechalim — wadis, lush stream beds), gardens (gannot — irrigated plots), aloe trees (ahalim — fragrant aromatic trees, possibly eaglewood), and cedars (arazim — the strongest, tallest trees of the ancient Near East). The images progress from passive beauty (valleys, gardens) to intentional planting — 'aloe trees the LORD has planted' (nata YHWH). Israel's flourishing is not natural growth but divine cultivation. The poetry is lush, abundant, and water-saturated — the opposite of the wilderness surrounding the camp.
7. The oracle shifts from beauty to power. Water flowing from buckets (yizzal-mayim middalyav) — agricultural abundance, overflowing provision. 'His king shall rise higher than Agag' (veyarom me'Agag malko) is a specific prediction: Agag was the Amalekite king whom Saul would later defeat (1 Sam 15). The oracle looks forward to Israel's monarchy — remarkable, since Israel has no king at this point. Balaam prophesies a future political reality that will not emerge for centuries.
8. The exodus reference anchors Israel's military power in divine deliverance — El motsi'o miMitsrayim ('God who brought him out of Egypt'). The re'em ('wild ox,' not 'unicorn' as in KJV) symbolizes untamable strength. Three violent verbs follow: yokhal ('devour'), yegarem ('crush bones'), and yimchats ('pierce/shatter'). Balaam describes Israel not as a peaceful garden (v6) but as a fearsome predator. Both images are true simultaneously: Israel is beautiful in rest and devastating in war.
9. The lion image echoes Jacob's blessing over Judah (Gen 49:9) — the same verbs (kara, shakhav) and the same rhetorical question ('who dares rouse him?'). The oracle closes with the Abrahamic formula: mevarkehka varukh ve'orerekha arur ('those who bless you are blessed; those who curse you are cursed'). This is Genesis 12:3 spoken by a non-Israelite prophet over the nation Abraham fathered. Balaam, hired to curse, concludes by invoking the curse on anyone who curses Israel — including, potentially, himself and his employer Balak.
10. Balak's fury is physical: vayyisppoq et-kappav ('he struck his hands together') — a gesture of rage and frustration. The complaint is pointed: laqov oyevay qeratikha ('to curse my enemies I called you'). Three attempted curses, three blessings instead. The irony is complete: the more Balak tries to manipulate divine power against Israel, the more powerfully Israel is blessed. The narrative demonstrates that God's blessing cannot be purchased, reversed, or redirected by human scheming.
11. Balak dismisses Balaam with contempt: berach-lekha el-meqomekha ('flee to your place'). The verb barach ('flee') is deliberately insulting — not 'go home' but 'run away.' The ironic reversal: Balak blames the LORD for withholding honor from Balaam (mena'akha YHWH mikkavod). Balak recognizes — even in his fury — that the LORD is the one controlling the outcome. He does not accuse Balaam of incompetence but of being overruled by a God more powerful than his sorcery.
12. Balaam reminds Balak of his original warning (22:18) — he told the messengers from the beginning that he could only speak what God authorized. His defense is consistent: he never promised to curse Israel; he only promised to speak what God gave him. The seer's integrity in this moment is genuine, whatever his motives may have been.
13. The 'palace full of silver and gold' (melo veito kesef vezahav) is hyperbolic — no amount of wealth can purchase a deviation from God's word. The phrase la'avor et-pi YHWH ('to go beyond the LORD's command,' literally 'to cross the mouth of the LORD') treats God's word as a boundary that cannot be transgressed. Balaam's statement of submission — asher-yedabber YHWH oto adabber ('what the LORD speaks, that I will speak') — is ironically one of the purest expressions of prophetic faithfulness in the Hebrew Bible, spoken by a pagan diviner.
14. Before departing, Balaam offers an unsolicited final oracle — not about what Balak can do to Israel but what Israel will do to Balak's people. The phrase be'acharit hayyamim ('in the latter days / in the days to come') introduces an eschatological horizon: Balaam sees beyond the immediate situation into the distant future. What follows (v15-24) is the fourth and final oracle — the most messianic of the four, containing the famous 'star from Jacob' prophecy.
15. The fourth oracle opens with the identical self-identification as the third (v3). The repetition of the prophetic formula frames both oracles as a matched pair — the third blessing Israel's present, the fourth prophesying Israel's future.
16. The fourth oracle's introduction adds to the third's: veyodea da'at Elyon ('who knows the knowledge of the Most High'). The title Elyon ('Most High') is the supreme divine epithet — used by Melchizedek (Gen 14:18-20) and throughout the Psalms. Balaam now claims knowledge not just of God's words but of God's own knowledge. The escalation of prophetic authority matches the escalation of the oracle's content.
17. Er'ennu velo attah ('I see him, but not now') — the prophetic vision reaches into the distant future. The verb darakh ('tread, march, arise') applied to a kokhav ('star') creates a dynamic image: the star does not merely appear but marches forth like a warrior. The shevet ('scepter') is the symbol of royal authority (Gen 49:10). Moab (Balak's own nation) is named first among the victims — the very king who hired Balaam will see his descendants crushed by the ruler Balaam prophesies. The phrase kol-benei-Shet ('all the sons of Seth') may refer to Moabite clans or, if Seth is Adam's son (Gen 4:25), to all humanity — the ruler's dominion extends over every people.
18. Edom and Seir (the same territory, east and south of the Dead Sea) become Israel's possession. David will later conquer Edom (2 Sam 8:14), partially fulfilling this oracle. The phrase veYisra'el oseh chayil ('Israel acts with strength/valor') describes military effectiveness — Israel is not merely defended but victorious. The oracle envisions Israel as the dominant regional power.

19. The final line of the third oracle's content: veyerd miYa'aqov ('one shall rule from Jacob'). The verb radah ('to rule, to have dominion') echoes the creation mandate of Genesis 1:28. The Israelite ruler will exercise dominion, and no remnant (sarid) of the enemy city will survive. The completeness of the victory matches the completeness of the blessing — God's purposes through Israel are total.
20. A brief oracle against Amalek, Israel's perennial enemy (Exod 17:8-16). Reshit goyim Amaleq ('first among the nations, Amalek') may mean 'first to attack Israel' (Exod 17) or 'greatest of nations' in military power. Either way, the verdict is identical: ve'acharito adei oved ('his end is everlasting destruction'). The oracle against Amalek fulfills God's declaration in Exodus 17:14: 'I will utterly blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under heaven.'
21. The Kenites (Qaini) — the clan of Moses's father-in-law Jethro (Judg 1:16) — receive a brief oracle playing on their name: Qaini/qinneka ('Kenite/your nest'). Their habitation is eitan ('enduring, secure') and set basela ('in the rock'). The Kenites' alliance with Israel (through the Jethro connection) provides them security.
22. The oracle turns ominous: even the secure Kenites will eventually face destruction. Qayin (Cain/Kenite) will be consumed (leva'er — 'to burn, to consume'). The reference to Asshur ('Assyria') projects far into the future — Assyrian deportations in the 8th century BCE. The rhetorical question ad-mah Asshur tishbekka ('how long until Assyria carries you captive?') implies inevitability with uncertain timing.
23. A cry of anguish: oy mi yichyeh missumo El ('Alas, who will live when God ordains this!'). Balaam's final oracles move from Israel's blessing to the nations' destruction, and the seer himself recoils at the devastation he foresees. The exclamation oy ('alas, woe') is rare in prophetic speech and conveys genuine distress. Even Balaam, who serves no covenant, recognizes the terrible weight of God's plans.
24. The most distant and obscure of Balaam's oracles: ships from Kittim (probably Cyprus or the western Mediterranean, representing maritime powers — possibly Greece or Rome in later interpretation) will afflict Asshur (Assyria) and Eber (possibly the Hebrews or a broader Semitic designation). The final clause — vegam-hu adei oved ('but he too shall perish forever') — may refer to the Kittim power itself: every empire, including the one that conquers Assyria, will eventually fall. The oracle's sweeping scope — from Israel to Amalek to the Kenites to Assyria to the maritime west — envisions the entire arc of ancient Near Eastern history.
25. The narrative's final verse is deliberately anticlimactic: vayyaqom Bil'am vayyeelekha vayyashov limqomo ('Balaam rose, went, and returned to his place'). The seer who channeled four of the most powerful oracles in the Hebrew Bible simply goes home. Balak, who spent three chapters trying to curse Israel, also departs — vegam-Balaq halakh ledarko ('Balak too went on his way'). Both men leave having accomplished nothing they intended. God's purposes stand; human plots dissolve. The Balaam narrative is over.

25

Summary: *At Shittim, Israel engages in sexual immorality with Moabite women and is drawn into worshiping Baal of Peor. God sends a plague. When an Israelite man brazenly brings a Midianite woman into the camp, Phinehas son of Eleazar drives a spear through both of them, stopping the plague at 24,000 dead. God rewards Phinehas with a berit shalom ('covenant of peace') and a perpetual priesthood.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb vayitstamed ('yoked itself,' v. 3) describes Israel binding itself to Baal of Peor with the image of an ox being yoked to a plow — a tight, deliberate attachment. What Balaam's curses could not accomplish, Moabite women achieve: the sexual-religious fusion of zanah ('immorality') and worship at sacrificial feasts. Phinehas's act is described as reqanno et-qin'ati ('he was zealous with my zeal,' v. 11) — God credits Phinehas with acting as God's own agent of qin'ah, a word carrying both 'jealousy' and 'zealous passion.'*

Translation Friction: *The word zanah (v. 1) carries both literal sexual meaning and the metaphorical sense of covenantal infidelity — we rendered it 'sexual immorality' for the literal act while noting the double register. The berit shalom ('covenant of peace,' v. 12) awarded to Phinehas is paradoxical — peace granted for an act of violence — and we preserved the Hebrew term alongside our rendering to let the tension stand.*

Connections: *The Baal Peor incident becomes a permanent touchstone of apostasy: Deuteronomy 4:3, Joshua 22:17, Psalm 106:28-31, and Hosea 9:10. Phinehas's zealous action is cited in Psalm 106:30-31 as 'reckoned to him as righteousness.' Simeon's dramatic population decline in the second census (Numbers 26:14) is likely connected to this plague. Numbers 31:16 later attributes the Baal Peor strategy to Balaam's counsel.*

1Israel settled at Shittim, and the people began engaging in sexual immorality with Moabite women. 2These women invited the people to the sacrificial feasts of their gods. The people ate and prostrated themselves before their gods. 3So Israel yoked itself to Baal of Peor, and the LORD's anger blazed against Israel. 4The LORD said to Moses, 'Take all the chiefs of the people

and execute them by impalement before the LORD in the open sun, so that the LORD's burning anger may turn away from Israel.' ⁵Moses told the judges of Israel, 'Each of you must execute those of your men who have yoked themselves to Baal of Peor.' ⁶Just then, an Israelite man came forward and brought a Midianite woman to his family members — right in front of Moses and the entire assembly of the Israelites — while they were weeping at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting. ⁷When Phinehas son of Eleazar, son of Aaron the priest, saw this, he stood up from the middle of the assembly and grabbed a spear. ⁸He followed the Israelite man into the inner chamber and drove the spear through both of them — the Israelite man and the woman through her midsection. Then the plague against the Israelites was halted. ⁹The total number who died in the plague was twenty-four thousand. ¹⁰The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹¹'Phinehas son of Eleazar, son of Aaron the priest, has turned back My fury from the Israelites by expressing My own zeal among them, so that I did not consume the Israelites in My passionate jealousy. ¹²Therefore declare: I am now giving him My covenant of peace. ¹³It will belong to him and to his descendants after him — a covenant of permanent priesthood — because he burned with zeal for his God and made atonement for the Israelites.' ¹⁴The name of the Israelite man who was struck down — the one killed alongside the Midianite woman — was Zimri son of Salu, a leader of an ancestral house among the Simeonites. ¹⁵The name of the Midianite woman who was killed was Cozbi daughter of Zur, who was the head of the clans of an ancestral house in Midian. ¹⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁷'Treat the Midianites as enemies and strike them down, ¹⁸because they have been hostile toward you through their deception — the schemes they used against you in the Peor incident, and in the matter of Cozbi daughter of a Midianite chief, their kinswoman, who was killed on the day of the plague that came because of Peor.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayeshev* ('settled, dwelt') places Israel in Shittim — Abel-Shittim in the plains of Moab, the final encampment before crossing the Jordan (cf. Joshua 2:1). The verb *vayachel* ('began') signals the onset of a new crisis. The root *zanah* ('to engage in sexual immorality') carries both literal sexual meaning and the metaphorical sense of covenantal infidelity — Israel's sexual involvement with Moabite women becomes the gateway to spiritual apostasy in the following verses.
2. The feminine plural *vatiqre'na* ('they called, they invited') identifies the Moabite women as the active agents drawing Israel into apostasy. The progression is deliberate: invitation to sacrifice (*lezivchai eloheihen* — 'to the sacrifices of their gods'), then communal eating (*vayokhal ha'am* — 'the people ate'), then worship (*vayyishtachavu* — 'they bowed down, prostrated themselves'). The shared sacrificial meal created religious and social bonds — eating at a god's table meant accepting that god's patronage.
3. The verb *vayitstamed* ('yoked itself, bound itself') is from the root *ts-m-d*, describing a tight attachment — like yoking an ox to a plow. Israel bound itself to Ba'al Pe'or, a local deity worshiped at Mount Peor. The name Ba'al ('lord, master, owner') was a title for Canaanite storm and fertility deities. The phrase *vayyichar af YHWH* ('the anger of the LORD burned hot') uses the idiom of the nose (*af*) burning — divine fury expressed through the visceral image of heated nostrils.
4. The command *qach et kol roshei ha'am* ('take all the heads/chiefs of the people') is debated: *roshei* can mean 'heads' (the guilty individuals) or 'chiefs' (the leaders responsible for the people). The verb *hoqa* ('impale, hang, expose publicly') describes a form of public execution — the bodies displayed as a deterrent. The phrase *neged hashemesh* ('opposite the sun, in the open sun') means the execution must be visible, not hidden — a public act of covenant justice. The purpose clause *veyashov charon af YHWH* ('so that the burning anger of the LORD may turn back') frames the execution as expiation.
5. Moses delegates the execution to the *shoftei Yisra'el* ('judges of Israel') — the judicial leaders over tribal and clan divisions. The command *hirgu ish anashav* ('kill, each one, his men') makes every judge personally responsible for purging idolaters within his jurisdiction. The participle *hannitsmamdim* ('the ones yoked, the ones bound') uses the same root *ts-m-d* from verse 3, reinforcing the image of Israel fastened to a foreign god like an animal to a yoke.
6. The narrative marker *vehinneh* ('and look!' — drawing attention to something startling) signals the brazenness of the act. The verb *vayyaqrev* ('he brought near') — the same root used for offering sacrifices (*qorban*) — may carry bitter irony: instead of bringing an offering to God, this man brings a foreign woman. The phrase *le'einei Mosheh* ('in the sight of Moses') emphasizes the defiance — this is done publicly while the entire community is *bokh'im* ('weeping') at the entrance of the *Ohel Mo'ed* ('Tent of Meeting'), likely mourning the plague or conducting penitential prayer.
7. Phinehas's full genealogy — *ben Elazar ben Aharon hakkohen* ('son of Eleazar son of Aaron the priest') — establishes his priestly authority for the act that follows. The verb *vayyaqom* ('he rose up, he stood up') indicates decisive action from within the mourning assembly. The *romach* ('spear, lance') is a military weapon — not a priestly implement — signaling that Phinehas acts as both priest and warrior. His name (Pinchas) may derive from Egyptian *Pa-nehasi* ('the Nubian').
8. The *qubbaḥ* ('arched tent, inner chamber') is a rare word — possibly a tent with a domed or vaulted structure, perhaps a private alcove. The verb *vayyidqor* ('he pierced, he thrust through') describes a single violent thrust penetrating both bodies. The word *qovataḥ* ('her belly, her midsection')

may carry a wordplay with qubbah ('tent') — the location of the act and the point of the thrust are phonetically linked. The immediate result — vatte'atsar hammaggefah ('the plague was stopped') — frames Phinehas's act as effective atonement: his zeal halts the divine punishment.

9. The death toll — arba'ah ve'esrim elef ('twenty-four thousand') — is enormous, representing a catastrophic loss from the fighting-age population counted in the census. Paul cites this incident in 1 Corinthians 10:8 with a figure of twenty-three thousand, a discrepancy that ancient and modern commentators have debated. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the narrative section; what follows is divine speech interpreting the event.
10. The standard divine-speech introduction vaydabber YHWH el Mosheh lemor ('the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') marks a shift from narrative to oracle. What follows (vv 11-13) is God's interpretation of Phinehas's act and the reward He grants — the berit shalom ('covenant of peace').
11. The critical phrase beqan'o et qin'ati betokham ('by being zealous with My zeal among them') uses the root q-n-' twice — Phinehas's zeal (qin'ah) mirrors God's own qin'ah. The word qin'ah spans 'zeal, jealousy, passionate intensity' — God's exclusive claim on Israel's loyalty is a jealous love, and Phinehas channeled that same intensity. The verb heshiv ('turned back, returned') indicates that Phinehas reversed the trajectory of divine wrath (chamati — 'My fury'). Without his intervention, the consequence would have been killiti ('I would have consumed, I would have finished off') — total annihilation. The masoretic note about the small yod in Phinehas's name is a scribal tradition preserved in Sephardic and Ashkenazic Torah scrolls.
12. The phrase beriti shalom ('My covenant of peace') is one of the most theologically significant covenant grants in the Torah. The word shalom here extends beyond 'absence of conflict' to encompass wholeness, well-being, and restored relationship between God and the priestly line. The construction hineni noten ('I am now giving') uses the participle to express an immediate, present-tense act — the covenant is being enacted in this moment of speech. The masoretic note records that in Sephardic and Ashkenazic Torah scrolls, the vav in shalom is written as a vav qeti'a ('broken vav') — a letter with a visible break in its vertical stroke. Rabbinic tradition interprets this broken letter as symbolizing that true peace sometimes requires a violent rupture first.
13. The berit kehunat olam ('covenant of permanent priesthood') specifies the content of the covenant of peace: an irrevocable priestly line extending through Phinehas's descendants. The word olam ('permanent, perpetual, age-long') conveys duration beyond a single generation. The verb kipper ('made atonement, made expiation') is the same root used for the Day of Atonement rituals (Leviticus 16) — Phinehas's violent act functioned as an atoning sacrifice, turning back God's wrath from the people. The clause tachat asher qinne le'Elohav ('because he burned with zeal for his God') gives the theological rationale: priestly authority is granted to one who demonstrated absolute loyalty to God's honor.
14. The narrative now identifies the two people killed by Phinehas. Zimri (meaning possibly 'my music' or 'my vine-branch') is identified as a nesi beit av laShim'oni ('a leader of a patriarchal house for the Simeonites') — not a minor figure but a tribal chieftain. His high rank makes the public defiance of verse 6 even more egregious: a leader of Israel openly parading his transgression. The double use of the root n-k-h ('struck') — hammukkeh ('the one struck down') and hukkah ('he was struck') — emphasizes the violent end.
15. Cozbi (Kozbi) — from the root k-z-v meaning 'to lie, to deceive' — bears a name that itself signals deception: 'my lie' or 'my deception.' Her father Tsur ('rock') is identified as rosh ummot beit av beMidyan ('head of the clans of a patriarchal house in Midian'), making her Midianite royalty. The pairing of a Simeonite prince with a Midianite princess suggests this was no casual encounter but a deliberate political-religious alliance. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the narrative identification.
16. A second divine-speech introduction opens the final section of the chapter (vv 16-18), shifting from the reward for Phinehas to a command concerning future relations with Midian. The repetition of this formula separates the backward-looking oracle (vv 10-15) from the forward-looking military directive.
17. The verb tsaror ('press, harass, treat as enemy') is an infinitive absolute used as an imperative — a forceful, ongoing command. The root ts-r-r means 'to bind tightly, to be hostile toward, to cause distress.' Combined with vehikkitem otam ('and strike them'), the dual command prescribes both a posture (permanent hostility) and an action (military attack). This command is fulfilled in Numbers 31 with the war against Midian.
18. The rationale uses the same root ts-r-r from verse 17: ki tsorerim hem lakhem ('because they are pressing/being hostile toward you'). The word nikhleihem ('their deceptions, their schemes') from the root n-k-l describes calculated, strategic trickery — Midian's seduction of Israel was not spontaneous but planned. The phrase al devar Pe'or ('on the matter of Peor, because of the Peor incident') frames the entire crisis as a Midianite conspiracy. Cozbi is called achotam ('their sister, their kinswoman'), identifying her as a representative of Midianite national strategy. The closing phrase al devar Pe'or repeats at the end, creating a frame that bookends the Midianite threat with the name of the apostasy site.

26

Summary: *After the plague at Baal Peor, God commands a second census — a new generation's count. The total is 601,730, slightly lower than the first census. Tribe-by-tribe comparisons reveal dramatic shifts: Simeon drops from 59,300 to 22,200, while Manasseh nearly doubles. Land allocation by lot is commanded, proportional to tribal size. The chapter closes with the Levitical census and the statement that no one from the first census remains except Caleb and Joshua.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This census is a generational audit. The parameters deliberately mirror Numbers 1 — the same idiom se'u et-rosh ('lift the head'), the same twenty-year military threshold — inviting comparison between the two generations. The most devastating line comes last: 'among these there was not a man of those who were counted by Moses and Aaron the priest when they counted the Israelites in the Sinai wilderness' (v. 64). An entire generation has been replaced. Eleazar replaces Aaron as the priestly partner, marking the succession.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase tippol nachalatam ('their inheritance shall fall,' v. 56) uses nafal ('to fall') as a technical term for lot-casting and divine territorial allocation. We rendered it 'be allotted,' since the English 'fall' may suggest accident rather than divine determination. Simeon's catastrophic decline — from 59,300 to 22,200 — is presented without commentary, but its proximity to the Baal Peor plague strongly implies a connection.*

Connections: *The census mirrors Numbers 1:1-46 in structure and terminology, enabling direct comparison. The Zelophehad notice (v. 33) — mentioning his daughters by name — sets up the inheritance petition in Numbers 27:1-11. Caleb and Joshua's survival (v. 65) fulfills the promise of Numbers 14:30. The land-by-lot principle (vv. 55-56) will govern the allotment described in Joshua 13-21.*

¹After the plague, the LORD spoke to Moses and to Eleazar son of Aaron the priest, saying: ²Count the entire Israelite community by their ancestral households — every male from twenty years old and above who is eligible for military service in Israel. ³Moses and Eleazar the priest addressed them in the plains of Moab, beside the Jordan across from Jericho: ⁴From twenty years old and above, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. These are the Israelites who came out of the land of Egypt: ⁵Reuben, Israel's firstborn. The descendants of Reuben: from Hanoch, the Hanochite clan; from Pallu, the Palluite clan. ⁶From Hezron, the Hezronite clan; from Carmi, the Carmite clan. ⁷These are the Reubenite clans. Their registered total was 43,730. ⁸The son of Pallu was Eliab. ⁹The sons of Eliab were Nemuel, Dathan, and Abiram. These are the same Dathan and Abiram — chosen representatives of the community — who contended against Moses and Aaron as part of Korah's faction when they challenged the LORD. ¹⁰The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them along with Korah, when that faction died — when the fire consumed two hundred and fifty men. They became a warning sign. ¹¹But Korah's descendants did not die. ¹²The descendants of Simeon by their clans: from Nemuel, the Nemuelite clan; from Jamin, the Jaminite clan; from Jachin, the Jachinite clan. ¹³From Zerah, the Zerahite clan; from Shaul, the Shaulite clan. ¹⁴These are the Simeonite clans. Their total was 22,200. ¹⁵The descendants of Gad by their clans: from Zephon, the Zephonite clan; from Haggi, the Haggite clan; from Shuni, the Shunite clan. ¹⁶From Ozni, the Oznite clan; from Eri, the Erite clan. ¹⁷From Arod, the Arodite clan; from Areli, the Arelite clan. ¹⁸These are the clans of the Gadites. Their registered total was 40,500. ¹⁹The sons of Judah included Er and Onan, but Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. ²⁰The descendants of Judah by their clans: from Shelah, the Shelanite clan; from Perez, the Perezite clan; from Zerah, the Zerahite clan. ²¹The sons of Perez were: from Hezron, the Hezronite clan; from Hamul, the Hamulite clan. ²²These are the clans of Judah. Their registered total was 76,500. ²³The descendants of Issachar by their clans: from Tola, the Tolaite clan; from Puah, the Punite clan. ²⁴From Jashub, the Jashubite clan; from Shimron, the Shimronite clan. ²⁵These are the Issachar clans. Their registered total was 64,300. ²⁶The descendants of Zebulun by their clans: from Sered, the Seredite clan; from Elon, the Elonite clan; from Jahleel, the Jahleelite clan. ²⁷These are the Zebulunite clans. Their registered total was 60,500. ²⁸The descendants of Joseph by their clans were Manasseh and Ephraim. ²⁹The descendants of Manasseh: from Machir, the Machirite clan — and Machir fathered Gilead;

from Gilead, the Gileadite clan. ³⁰These are the sons of Gilead: from Iezer, the Iezerite clan; from Helek, the Helekite clan. ³¹From Asriel, the Asrielite clan; from Shechem, the Shechemite clan. ³²From Shemida, the Shemidaite clan; from Hepher, the Hepherite clan. ³³Zelophehad son of Hepher had no sons — only daughters. The names of Zelophehad's daughters were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. ³⁴These are the Manassite clans. Their registered total was 52,700. ³⁵These are the descendants of Ephraim by their clans: from Shuthelah, the Shuthelahite clan; from Becher, the Becherite clan; from Tahan, the Tahanite clan. ³⁶These are the sons of Shuthelah: from Eran, the Eranite clan. ³⁷These are the Ephraimite clans. Their registered total was 32,500. These are the descendants of Joseph by their clans. ³⁸The descendants of Benjamin by their clans: from Bela, the Belaite clan; from Ashbel, the Ashbelite clan; from Ahiram, the Ahiramite clan. ³⁹From Shephupham, the Shuphamite clan; from Hupham, the Huphamite clan. ⁴⁰The sons of Bela were Ard and Naaman: from Ard, the Ardite clan; from Naaman, the Naamite clan. ⁴¹These are the Benjaminite clans. Their registered total was 45,600. ⁴²The descendants of Dan by their clans: from Shuham, the Shuhamite clan. These are the clans of Dan by their families. ⁴³All the Shuhamite clans totaled 64,400 in their registration. ⁴⁴The descendants of Asher by their clans: from Imnah, the Imnite clan; from Ishvi, the Ishvite clan; from Beriah, the Beriite clan. ⁴⁵Among the sons of Beriah: from Heber, the Heberite clan; from Malchiel, the Malchielite clan. ⁴⁶The name of Asher's daughter was Serah. ⁴⁷These are the Asherite clans. Their registered total was 53,400. ⁴⁸The descendants of Naphtali by their clans: from Jahzeel, the Jahzeelite clan; from Guni, the Gunitite clan. ⁴⁹From Jezer, the Jezerite clan; from Shillem, the Shillemite clan. ⁵⁰These are the Naphtali clans by their families. Their registered total was 45,400. ⁵¹These were the total registered Israelites: 601,730. ⁵²The LORD spoke to Moses: ⁵³To these the land is to be apportioned as an inheritance based on the number of registered names. ⁵⁴To the larger group, increase its inheritance; to the smaller group, reduce its inheritance. Each tribe receives its inheritance proportional to its registered count. ⁵⁵However, the land is to be distributed by lot. They will receive their inheritance according to the names of their ancestral tribes. ⁵⁶By the decision of the lot, each inheritance is to be apportioned, whether the tribe is large or small. ⁵⁷These are the registered Levites by their clans: from Gershon, the Gershonite clan; from Kohath, the Kohathite clan; from Merari, the Merarite clan. ⁵⁸These are the Levitical clans: the Libnite clan, the Hebronite clan, the Mahlite clan, the Mushite clan, and the Korahite clan. Kohath fathered Amram. ⁵⁹The name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, a daughter of Levi who was born to Levi in Egypt. She bore to Amram: Aaron, Moses, and their sister Miriam. ⁶⁰To Aaron were born Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. ⁶¹Nadab and Abihu died when they presented unauthorized fire before the LORD. ⁶²Their registered total was 23,000 — every male from one month old and above. They were not counted among the other Israelites because no territorial inheritance was given to them among the Israelites. ⁶³These are those registered by Moses and Eleazar the priest when they counted the Israelites in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan, across from Jericho. ⁶⁴Among these there was not a single man from those registered by Moses and Aaron the priest when they counted the Israelites in the wilderness of Sinai. ⁶⁵For the LORD had declared about them: They will certainly die in the wilderness. Not one of them survived except Caleb son of Jephunneh and Joshua son of Nun.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *hammageifah* ('the plague') refers to the devastating epidemic at Baal Peor (Numbers 25:9) that killed 24,000. This second census takes place in the aftermath — the people must be recounted because the first generation has perished. Notably, Eleazar replaces his father Aaron (who died in Numbers 20:28) as the priestly partner in the census, marking the generational transition.
2. The idiom *se'u et-rosh* ('lift the head') means 'take a count/census.' The census parameters match Numbers 1:2-3 exactly: *mibben esrim shanah vama'lah* ('from twenty years and above'), *leveit avotam* ('by their ancestral households'), and *kol-yotze tzava* ('all going out to the army'). This deliberate mirroring invites comparison between the two generations.
3. The location *be'arvot Mo'av* ('in the plains/steppes of Moab') *al-Yarden Yerecho* ('by the Jordan at Jericho') places this census at the doorstep of the Promised Land — geographically opposite to the first census at Sinai. The name *arvot* ('plains, arid steppes') describes the flat terrain east of the Jordan near the Dead Sea.
4. The phrase *ka'asher tzivvah YHVH et-Mosheh* ('as the LORD commanded Moses') grounds the census in divine authority. The closing reference *uvenei Yisra'el hayyotze'im me'ere'tz Mitzrayim* ('and the Israelites who went out from the land of Egypt') transitions from instructions to the actual census list, beginning with the exodus generation's descendants.

5. The census begins with Re'uven bekhor Yisra'el ('Reuben, firstborn of Israel'), honoring the birth order despite Reuben's loss of the firstborn privileges (Genesis 49:3-4). Each son generates a mishpachah ('clan/family') with a gentilic adjective — HaChanokhi ('the Hanochite'). The clan structure tracks tribal subdivisions for military organization and land allocation.
6. Chetzron and Karmi complete Reuben's four clans. These names are consistent with Genesis 46:9 and Exodus 6:14, maintaining genealogical continuity across the Torah. The gentilic forms (HaChetzroni, HaKarmi) use the standard -i suffix to denote clan membership.
7. Reuben's second census total of 43,730 represents a decrease from the first census figure of 46,500 (Numbers 1:21) — a loss of 2,770. The term pequdehem ('their registered ones, their counted ones') derives from paqad ('to attend to, number, muster'). The decline may reflect the toll of wilderness judgments on this tribe.
8. The singular benei Pallu ('sons of Pallu') yielding only Eli'av ('my God is father') narrows the genealogy to a single line of descent. This brevity sets up the important digression in verses 9-11 about Dathan, Abiram, and Korah — figures from this very clan.
9. The parenthetical hu-Datan va'Aviram ('this is the same Dathan and Abiram') inserts a historical cross-reference into the census list. They were qeri'ei ha'edah ('the ones called/summoned by the community') — prominent leaders, not obscure figures. The ketiv-qere variant (qrw'y / qeri'ei) reflects textual transmission history. Their rebellion ba'adat-Qorach ('in the faction of Korah') is narrated in Numbers 16.
10. The vivid vatiftach ha'aretz et-piha ('the earth opened its mouth') personifies the ground as an agent of divine judgment. The phrase vayyihyu lanes ('they became a sign/warning') indicates their fate served as an enduring cautionary example. The word nes here means 'warning sign' or 'signal' rather than its later sense of 'miracle.' The death of the 250 incense-burners by fire (ba'akhol ha'esh) is distinct from the ground's swallowing of Korah.
11. This brief but theologically significant note — uvene-Qorach lo-metu ('the sons of Korah did not die') — explains how Korahite clans survived to become Temple singers and psalm composers (see Psalm titles: 42, 44-49, 84-85, 87-88). God's judgment targeted the rebels, not their innocent offspring, demonstrating that guilt is not automatically inherited.
12. Simeon's clan list here differs from Genesis 46:10 — Ohad is absent (perhaps absorbed into another clan), and the names show slight variations (Nemuel vs. Jemuel). The leshichotam ('by their clans') introduces the standard clan-listing formula that repeats for each tribe.
13. Zerach and Sha'ul complete Simeon's five surviving clans (down from six in Genesis 46:10). Sha'ul is identified in Genesis 46:10 as the son of a Canaanite woman, making him unique among the tribal ancestors. The clan name haZarchi uses the standard gentilic suffix.
14. Simeon suffered the most dramatic decline of any tribe: from 59,300 (Numbers 1:23) to 22,200 — a loss of 37,100, nearly 63%. Rabbinic tradition connects this massive reduction to the Baal Peor incident, where the ringleader Zimri was a Simeonite leader (Numbers 25:14). Simeon would later be absorbed into Judah's territory (Joshua 19:1).
15. Gad's clan list begins with Tzefon (called Ziphion in Genesis 46:16), a name possibly meaning 'watchman' or 'north.' Gad had seven clans — a large number reflecting the tribe's military significance (cf. Genesis 49:19, 'a raiding band shall raid him'). The gentilic HaTzefoni follows the standard pattern.
16. Ozni (called Ezbon in Genesis 46:16) and Eri continue Gad's clan listings. The name Ozni may derive from ozen ('ear'), possibly meaning 'attentive.' These variant name forms between Genesis and Numbers reflect natural development in oral and scribal transmission.
17. Arod (called Arodi in Genesis 46:16) and Ar'eli complete Gad's seven clans. Ar'eli may mean 'lion of God' (ari + El), though the etymology is uncertain. The slight name variations (Arodi/Arod) between Genesis and Numbers show the flexibility of Hebrew name forms.
18. Gad decreased from 45,650 (Numbers 1:25) to 40,500 — a reduction of 5,150. The term lifqudehem ('according to their registered ones') uses the same counting vocabulary as verse 7. Gad would later settle east of the Jordan in the territory of Gilead (Numbers 32).
19. The census pauses to note that Er and Onan — Judah's firstborn and second son — vayamot ('died') be'erez Kena'an ('in the land of Canaan') before the descent to Egypt. Their deaths (Genesis 38:7-10) eliminated two potential clan lines. Judah's surviving clans descend from his remaining sons Shelah, Perez, and Zerach.
20. Judah's three surviving sons generate three primary clans. Peretz ('breach') — born when he 'broke through' before his twin Zerach (Genesis 38:29) — becomes the dominant line through which David and the Messianic lineage descend. The clan of Shelah appears first, following birth order among the survivors.
21. Perez's sub-clans Chetzron and Chamul represent a second level of genealogical depth — clans within a clan. Chetzron's line is especially important: through him come Ram, Amminadab, Nahshon (the tribal prince), and eventually David (Ruth 4:18-22). This extra genealogical layer signals Judah's growing prominence.
22. Judah increased from 74,600 (Numbers 1:27) to 76,500 — a gain of 1,900. Judah remains the largest tribe in both censuses, befitting its role as the leading tribe in march order (Numbers 2:3) and Jacob's royal blessing (Genesis 49:8-12). The term 'threescore' in the KJV renders shishah veshiv'im ('six and seventy').
23. Issachar's clans begin with Tola ('worm, crimson') — a name associated with the crimson dye-producing insect. Puvah (here leFuvah, with the gentilic HaPuni) shows a variant spelling from Genesis 46:13's Puvvah. The four Issachar clans remain stable between the two census lists.

24. Yashuv (called Iob/Job in Genesis 46:13) and Shimron complete Issachar's four clans. The name Yashuv means 'he returns,' while Shimron may relate to shamar ('to guard/watch'). The variant Iob/Yashuv represents a more significant name change than most — possibly reflecting an alternative family tradition.
25. Issachar experienced significant growth: from 54,400 (Numbers 1:29) to 64,300 — a gain of 9,900, among the largest increases. The Hebrew arba'ah veshishim elef ('four and sixty thousand') uses the typical Hebrew number order (units before tens).
26. Zebulun has only three clans — the fewest among the twelve tribes (excluding Levi). Sered, Elon ('oak/terebinth'), and Yachle'el ('God waits/hopes') are consistent with Genesis 46:14. Despite having few clans, Zebulun maintained a respectable population.
27. Zebulun grew from 57,400 (Numbers 1:31) to 60,500 — an increase of 3,100. The tribe maintained strong numbers despite having only three clans, suggesting robust population growth within each clan. The KJV 'threescore' renders the Hebrew shishshim ('sixty').
28. Joseph's two sons Menasheh and Efrayim each constitute a full tribe — Jacob's adoption of them (Genesis 48:5) effectively gave Joseph a double portion. Here Menasheh is listed first (birth order), though Ephraim received the primary blessing (Genesis 48:14-20). Together they replace the single 'tribe of Joseph.'
29. Manasseh's genealogy traces through a single line: Menasheh Makhir Gil'ad, then branches into six sub-clans (vv. 30-32). Makhir ('sold') was Manasseh's only son. Gil'ad ('rocky region') gives his name to the Transjordanian territory. The verb holid ('fathered, begot') marks the generational descent.
30. Gilead's sub-clans begin with I'ezer (abbreviated from Avi'ezer, 'my father is help') and Chelek ('portion'). These names recur in the land allocation of Joshua 17:2, where each Gileadite clan receives its territorial portion. The I'ezerite clan is associated with Gideon's family (Judges 6:11).
31. Asri'el ('God has blessed me/vow of God') and Shekhem ('shoulder, ridge') continue the Gileadite sub-clans. The name Shekhem connects this clan to the important central Canaanite city, though the relationship between the personal name and the place is debated.
32. Shemida ('name has known' or 'fame') and Chefer ('pit, well') complete the six Gileadite sub-clans of Manasseh. Chefer's clan is singled out in the next verse because of the Zelophehad inheritance case — one of the Torah's most significant precedents regarding women's property rights.
33. This genealogical note — lo-hayu lo vanim ki im-banot ('he had no sons, only daughters') — anticipates the landmark legal case in Numbers 27:1-11 where these five women petition for and receive inheritance rights. Their individual naming (Machlah, No'ah, Choglah, Milkah, Tirtzah) is unusual in census lists and underscores their legal significance. The name Tzelofchad may mean 'shadow of fear' or 'protection from dread.'
34. Manasseh experienced the largest growth of any tribe: from 32,200 (Numbers 1:35) to 52,700 — an increase of 20,500, or nearly 64%. This dramatic rise reversed the first census pattern where Ephraim was larger. Manasseh's expansion justified its claim to extensive Transjordanian territory.
35. Ephraim's three primary clans — Shutelach, Bekher ('firstborn'), and Tachan — are fewer than Manasseh's six sub-clans. The name Shutelach is of uncertain etymology; Tachan may mean 'encampment' or 'grace.' Ephraim's clan structure is simpler than Manasseh's multi-level genealogy.
36. Shuthelah produces one sub-clan through Eran ('watchful'), paralleling the Perez sub-clans in Judah (v. 21). This additional genealogical layer, present only for select clans, indicates which family lines achieved sufficient size and prominence to warrant independent recognition.
37. Ephraim declined from 40,500 (Numbers 1:33) to 32,500 — a loss of 8,000. Combined with Manasseh's surge, the 'house of Joseph' dynamic shifted: Manasseh (52,700) now far exceeds Ephraim (32,500), reversing Jacob's preferential blessing of Ephraim. The closing phrase elleh venei-Yosef lemishpechotam ('these are Joseph's descendants by their clans') brackets the two half-tribes as one unit.
38. Benjamin lists five clans (with two sub-clans in v. 40), making seven total. Bela ('swallowing'), Ashbel, and Achiram (possibly the same as Ehi in Genesis 46:21) begin the list. Benjamin's clan names show the most variation between Genesis and Numbers of any tribe, likely reflecting clan mergers and name changes over the generations.
39. Shefufam (gentilic HaShufami) and Chufam complete Benjamin's primary clans. These names correspond to Mupim and Hupim in Genesis 46:21, with significant phonetic variation. The gentilic forms normalize these variant spellings into standardized clan designations.
40. Bela's sub-clans Ard and Na'aman ('pleasant, gracious') create a second genealogical tier within Benjamin, similar to Perez's sub-clans in Judah. Na'aman's name means 'pleasantness' — the same root as the later Aramean general's name (2 Kings 5). These seven total Benjaminites sustained a tribe that would produce Israel's first king.
41. Benjamin grew from 35,400 (Numbers 1:37) to 45,600 — an increase of 10,200, the second-largest gain after Manasseh. This growth is especially notable given Benjamin's small initial size. The tribe's expansion foreshadowed its later disproportionate influence in Israel's history, producing King Saul and the apostle Paul.
42. Dan has only a single clan — Shucham (called Hushim in Genesis 46:23). Despite this remarkably simple genealogical structure, Dan was one of the largest tribes (v. 43). The repetitive phrasing elleh mishpechot Dan lemishpechotam ('these are Dan's clans by their families') fills the space where other tribes list multiple clans.
43. Dan grew slightly from 62,700 (Numbers 1:39) to 64,400 — an increase of 1,700. Despite having only one clan, Dan was the second-largest tribe (after Judah's 76,500). The phrase kol-mishpechot haShuchami ('all the clans of the Shuchamites') uses the plural even though only one clan name is given, possibly indicating internal sub-divisions not formally listed.

44. Asher's three primary clans — Yimnah ('prosperity, right hand'), Yishvi ('equal, level'), and Beri'ah ('in evil/misfortune' or 'excellence') — are supplemented by Beriah's sub-clans in verse 45. A fourth son, Ishuah, listed in Genesis 46:17, is absent here — his line may have died out or been absorbed into another clan.
45. Beriah's sub-clans Chever ('companion, associate') and Malki'el ('my king is God') add depth to Asher's genealogy. Malki'el is a theophoric name expressing devotion to God as king — one of several such names in the census. These five total Asherite clans (three primary plus two sub-clans) sustained a mid-sized tribe.
46. This brief note — veshem bat-Asher Serach — is remarkable: Serach is one of very few women named in a census list. She also appears in Genesis 46:17, suggesting she held a uniquely honored position in tribal memory. Rabbinic tradition attributes extraordinary longevity and wisdom to her. Her presence in a military census list is striking and unexplained in the text.
47. Asher grew from 41,500 (Numbers 1:41) to 53,400 — a substantial increase of 11,900. This makes Asher one of the fastest-growing tribes, consistent with Moses' later blessing that Asher would be 'most blessed of sons' and would 'dip his foot in oil' (Deuteronomy 33:24).
48. Naphtali's four clans begin with Yachtze'el ('God apportions') and Guni ('my protector' or 'painted/colored'). These names are consistent with Genesis 46:24. Naphtali's territory would later occupy the fertile Galilee region — the area where much of Jesus' ministry would take place centuries later.
49. Yetzer ('form, inclination') and Shillem ('recompense, repayment') complete Naphtali's four clans. The name Shillem shares the root sh-l-m with shalom and shelamim, connecting to concepts of completion and wholeness. Naphtali's compact four-clan structure mirrors Issachar's.
50. Naphtali decreased from 53,400 (Numbers 1:43) to 45,400 — a loss of 8,000. This significant decline parallels Ephraim's reduction. The phrase chamishshah ve'arba'im elef ('forty-five thousand') concludes the tribal census proper before the grand total in verse 51.
51. The grand total of 601,730 is remarkably close to the first census total of 603,550 (Numbers 1:46) — a net decrease of only 1,820 despite the massive losses to plague, war, and divine judgment. The Hebrew shesh-me'ot elef va'elef sheva me'ot usheloshim ('six hundred thousand and a thousand, seven hundred and thirty') expresses the figure in a distinctive compound form. The near-stability of the overall population amid dramatic individual tribal shifts demonstrates divine faithfulness to the patriarchal promise of numerous descendants.
52. The divine speech formula transitions from the census enumeration to its practical purpose — land allocation. The census was not merely demographic record-keeping but the basis for dividing the inheritance of the Promised Land among the tribes.
53. The verb techalek ('shall be divided/apportioned') from chalaq ('to divide, distribute') establishes the census-to-land connection. The phrase bemispar shemot ('by the number of names') means each person counted represents a claim on the land. The nachalah ('inheritance') is not mere property but a covenantal grant — permanent tribal territory within the Promised Land.
54. The principle is proportional allocation: larav tarbeh nachalato ('for the many, increase its inheritance') and lam'at tam'it nachalato ('for the few, reduce its inheritance'). The verbs tarbeh and tam'it ('increase' and 'decrease') create a balanced pair. This ensures demographic fairness — larger tribes receive more land to support their population, smaller tribes less.
55. The akh ('however, only') introduces a qualification: despite the proportional principle, the actual location of each tribe's allotment is determined begoral ('by lot'). The goral ('lot') introduces a divine element — God controls the outcome (Proverbs 16:33). This creates a dual system: lot determines where; population size determines how much. The phrase lishemot mattot-avotam ('according to the names of their ancestral tribes') maintains tribal cohesion.
56. The phrase al-pi haGoral ('according to the mouth/decision of the lot') personifies the lot as having a 'mouth' — it speaks God's will. The final bein rav lim'at ('between many and few') reaffirms that both large and small tribes participate in the same lot-based system. This concludes the land-allocation legislation triggered by the census.
57. The Levites receive a separate census because they receive no territorial inheritance (v. 62). The three primary Levitical divisions — Gershon, Qehat, and Merari — trace to Levi's three sons (Genesis 46:11). Each had distinct tabernacle responsibilities: Gershonites handled the tent fabrics, Kohathites the sacred furniture, and Merarites the structural framework.
58. Five Levitical sub-clans are listed without being assigned to their parent divisions — HaLibni (from Gershon), HaChevroni and HaQorchi (from Kohath), HaMachli and HaMushi (from Merari). The genealogical note uQehat holid et-Amram ('Kohath fathered Amram') transitions to the priestly lineage. This bridges from tribal census to priestly succession.
59. Yokheved ('YHWH is glory') is remarkable as the first person in the Torah with a name containing the divine name element Yo-. She is identified as bat-Levi ('a daughter of Levi'), meaning a descendant of the tribe. The phrase asher yaldah otah leLevi beMitzrayim ('who was born to Levi in Egypt') locates her birth in Egypt. She bore Israel's three most important leaders: Aharon (priest), Mosheh (prophet/lawgiver), and Miryam (prophetess).
60. Aaron's four sons are listed in birth order: Nadav ('generous'), Avihu ('he is my father'), El'azar ('God has helped'), and Itamar ('palm coast'). The passive vayyivvaled ('were born') emphasizes the divine gift of progeny. The first two will be noted as dead in the next verse, leaving the priestly line to continue through the latter two.
61. The phrase behaqqrivam esh-zarah ('when they brought near foreign/strange fire') refers to the catastrophic incident of Leviticus 10:1-2. The esh zarah ('unauthorized/alien fire') violated the prescribed method of offering. Their death lifnei YHVH ('before the LORD') — in the very sanctuary where God's presence dwelled — made it a paradigmatic warning about sacred boundaries.

62. The Levites totaled 23,000, up from 22,000 at the first census (Numbers 3:39) — a modest gain of 1,000. Two key differences from the tribal census: (1) they were counted *mibben-chodesh vama'lah* ('from one month old and above') rather than twenty years, and (2) they received no *nachalah* ('inheritance') because God Himself was their inheritance (Numbers 18:20). The phrase *lo hotpaqdu betokh benei-Yisra'el* ('they were not counted among the Israelites') explains their separate enumeration.
63. The concluding formula mirrors the opening (v. 3), creating an *inclusio* — *paqdu et-benei Yisra'el be'arvot Mo'av* ('they counted the Israelites in the plains of Moab'). Moses and Eleazar jointly conducted this census, as Aaron had jointly conducted the first with Moses (Numbers 1:3). The geographic marker *al Yarden Yerecho* ('by the Jordan at Jericho') emphasizes proximity to the Promised Land.
64. The devastating verdict: *uve'elleh lo-hayah ish* ('among these there was not a man') from the first census. The juxtaposition of the two census locations — *bemidbar Sinai* ('in the wilderness of Sinai') versus *be'arvot Mo'av* (v. 63) — spans the entire wilderness period. An entire generation vanished between these two counts, fulfilling God's judgment in Numbers 14:29.
65. The chapter closes with the two exceptions: *Kalev ben-Yefunneh* and *Yehoshua bin-Nun* — the only faithful spies (Numbers 14:6-9). The infinitive absolute *mot yamuthu* ('dying they shall die') intensified the death decree. The verb *notar* ('remained, survived') emphasizes that literally no one else from the Sinai census lived to reach this point. These two men bridge the generations, embodying the reward of covenant faithfulness amid universal judgment.

27

Summary: *Zelophehad's five daughters petition Moses publicly for their father's inheritance, since he died without sons. God rules in their favor, establishing a new order of inheritance succession. Then God tells Moses to ascend Mount Abarim to view the promised land he will not enter, due to the Meribah incident. Moses asks God to appoint a successor, and Joshua is commissioned through the laying on of hands before Eleazar the priest and the whole congregation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Five women — Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah — are named individually, though the narrative could have used a single collective reference. They stand before the entire national leadership and challenge existing inheritance law. Their verb of approach, *vattiqra'vnah* (from *q-r-b*), is the same root as *qorban* ('offering') — they bring their case as a kind of sacred gift to the community. God's verdict: *ken benot Tselofchad doverot* ('the daughters of Zelophehad speak rightly,' v. 7).*

Translation Friction: *The daughters argue that their father *bechet'o met* ('died for his own sin,' v. 3) — a phrase that could mean he died in the general wilderness judgment (Numbers 14:29-35) or for some specific personal transgression. We rendered it as 'died for his own sin' without specifying further, since the Hebrew is itself ambiguous by design. The transfer of authority to Joshua through *semikhat yadayim* ('laying on of hands,' v. 18) is a physical act we preserved literally.*

Connections: *The daughters' case is revisited in Numbers 36, where a marriage restriction is added to protect tribal inheritances. Their land grant is fulfilled in Joshua 17:3-6. Moses's exclusion from the land (v. 14) recalls the Meribah incident in Numbers 20:12. Joshua's commissioning (vv. 18-23) is fulfilled in Deuteronomy 31:7-8 and 34:9.*

¹The daughters of Zelophehad son of Hepher, son of Gilead, son of Machir, son of Manasseh — from the clan of Manasseh son of Joseph — came forward. Their names were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. ²They stood before Moses, before Eleazar the priest, before the leaders, and before the entire community at the entrance of the tent of meeting, and said: ³"Our father died in the wilderness. He was not among those who banded together against the LORD in the faction of Korah — he died for his own sin — and he had no sons. ⁴Why should our father's name disappear from his clan just because he had no son? Give us a landholding among our father's relatives." ⁵So Moses presented their legal claim before the LORD. ⁶The LORD said to Moses: ⁷"The daughters of Zelophehad are right. You must give them an inherited landholding among their father's relatives. Transfer their father's inheritance to them. ⁸Speak to the Israelites and say: If a man dies without a son, you shall transfer his inheritance to his daughter. ⁹If he has no daughter, give his inheritance to his brothers. ¹⁰If he has no brothers, give his inheritance to his father's brothers. ¹¹If his father has no brothers, give his inheritance to the nearest relative in his clan, and that person shall possess it. This shall be a legal statute for the Israelites, as the LORD commanded

Moses." ¹²The LORD said to Moses, "Go up to this mountain in the Abarim range and look at the land I have given to the Israelites. ¹³After you have seen it, you too will be gathered to your people, just as your brother Aaron was gathered. ¹⁴This is because you both rebelled against My command in the wilderness of Zin during the community's quarrel, when you failed to demonstrate My holiness before their eyes at the waters." These are the waters of Meribah-kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin. ¹⁵Moses spoke to the LORD: ¹⁶"Let the LORD — the God of the spirits of all flesh — appoint someone over the community, ¹⁷someone who will go out before them and come in before them, who will lead them out and bring them in — so that the LORD's community will not be like sheep without a shepherd." ¹⁸The LORD said to Moses, "Take Joshua son of Nun — a man in whom the Spirit dwells — and lay your hand on him. ¹⁹Present him before Eleazar the priest and the entire community, and commission him in their sight. ²⁰Place some of your authority upon him, so that the entire Israelite community will obey. ²¹He shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who will inquire for him through the Urim before the LORD. At his word they shall go out, and at his word they shall come in — he and all the Israelites with him, the entire community. ²²Moses did as the LORD commanded him. He took Joshua and presented him before Eleazar the priest and the entire community. ²³He laid his hands on him and commissioned him, as the LORD had spoken through Moses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Five women are named — all five, individually — while the narrative could have simply said 'the daughters of Zelophehad.' The text honors them by name, as it honored the midwives in Exodus 1:15. Their five-generation genealogy establishes their legitimacy within the Manassite clan. They 'came forward' (vattiqravnah, from q-r-b — the same root as qorban, 'offering'). Their approach to Moses is framed with the language of sacred offering: they bring their case as a gift of justice to the community.
2. The daughters make their case publicly — not in private audience but before the full assembly: Moses, the high priest, the tribal leaders, and the entire congregation. The location — petach ohel-mo'ed ('the entrance of the tent of meeting') — places their petition at the threshold of sacred space. Their legal claim is made in the most formal, visible setting possible. Five women standing before the entire national leadership to challenge an inheritance law is an act of extraordinary courage.
3. The daughters make a careful legal argument: their father Zelophehad (1) died in the wilderness, (2) was not a Korah rebel (which would have disqualified his family from inheritance), and (3) died for his own ordinary sin without sons. The phrase bechet'o met ('he died for his own sin') may mean he died in the general wilderness judgment against the exodus generation (14:29-35), not for any exceptional transgression. The absence of sons creates the legal gap: the existing inheritance law (which passes land to sons) leaves no provision for families with only daughters.
4. The argument is about shem ('name') — the perpetuation of a family's identity through land ownership. Without an inheritance, Zelophehad's name vanishes from the tribal register. The daughters' request is bold: tenah-lanu achuzzah ('give us a landholding') — they demand what has never been given to women in Israel's land-allocation system. Their argument appeals not to gender equality as a principle but to the preservation of their father's name and legacy within the clan. The case will create new law (v5-11).
5. Moses does not rule on the case himself — he brings it lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD'). The verb hiqriv ('brought near,' from q-r-b) is again the offering word: Moses presents their case to God as one presents a sacrifice. His referral to God is not uncertainty but respect: this case creates new precedent, and only God can establish new law. The daughters' appeal goes all the way to the highest court.
6. God responds directly to the daughters' case — a rare instance of divine adjudication on a specific legal dispute brought by named individuals. God does not merely answer Moses; He responds to Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.
7. God's verdict: ken benot Tselofchad doverot ('the daughters of Zelophehad speak rightly/correctly'). God validates their argument completely. The emphatic naton titten ('you shall certainly give') — infinitive absolute intensifying the command — leaves no room for equivocation. God does not simply permit the inheritance transfer; He commands it. The daughters' appeal has changed the law. Their courage produced new legislation that will govern Israel permanently (v8-11).
8. The case law generalizes from the specific petition: any man who dies without a son passes his inheritance to his daughter. This is new legislation — prior to this moment, no provision existed for female inheritance. The daughters' case created permanent legal precedent. The phrase vеха'аvartem et-nachalato levitto ('transfer his inheritance to his daughter') establishes female inheritance as Israelite law.
9. The inheritance ladder descends: son daughter (v8) brothers (v9) father's brothers (v10) nearest relative (v11). The daughter's position — second in line, immediately after sons — is remarkable in the ancient Near East. The progressive chain ensures that no inheritance is ever lost from the tribe; it always passes to the closest available relative.
10. The third tier: paternal uncles. The inheritance moves outward from the nuclear family to the extended family. Each step widens the circle while keeping the land within the same clan.
11. The catch-all: lish'ero haqqarov elav mimmishpachto ('to the nearest relative in his clan'). No inheritance is ever lost — it always finds a kinsman. The closing phrase — vehayah livnei Yisra'el lechuqqat mishpat ('it shall be a legal statute for the Israelites') — elevates the daughters' specific case

into permanent law. Five women's petition became the inheritance statute for all Israel. The case demonstrates that the Torah is not static — new situations produce new legislation through authorized channels.

12. The chapter shifts abruptly from inheritance law to Moses's impending death. The Abarim range ('the mountains beyond,' east of the Jordan) includes Mount Nebo, where Moses will die (Deut 34:1). The command *ur'eh et-ha'arets* ('look at the land') is both gift and grief — Moses may see what he cannot enter. The verb *natatti* ('I have given') is past tense: God has already given the land to Israel; Moses's exclusion does not affect the gift.
13. The euphemism *ne'esafta el-ammekha* ('gathered to your people') describes death as reunion — not annihilation but joining those who have gone before. Aaron's death (Num 20:22-29) serves as the precedent: *gam-attah* ('you too'). The parallel with Aaron includes the shared reason for their exclusion, specified in v14.
14. The reason for Moses's exclusion is stated bluntly: *meritem pi* ('you rebelled against My command'). The incident at Meribah (Num 20:1-13), where Moses struck the rock instead of speaking to it, is the defining failure of his leadership. The phrase *lehaqdishsheni vammayim le'eineihem* ('to sanctify Me at the waters before their eyes') specifies the offense: Moses failed to demonstrate God's holiness publicly. Even Moses — the greatest prophet — bears consequences for disobedience. The law applies to everyone.
15. Moses's response to the death announcement is not protest or grief but concern for Israel's future. His first thought is not for himself but for the people he is about to leave. The verb *vaydabber* ('spoke') — not 'cried out' or 'pleaded' — suggests composed, purposeful speech. Moses has accepted his fate; he now negotiates the succession.
16. Moses's prayer address is unique: *Elohei haruchot lekhoh-basar* ('God of the spirits of all flesh'). This title, used only here and in 16:22, acknowledges God's intimate knowledge of every person's spirit — He knows who is fit to lead because He knows the inner nature of every human being. Moses does not suggest a candidate; he trusts the God who knows all spirits to select the right one.
17. Moses describes the leader's role with four verbs: go out, come in, lead out, bring in — military and pastoral language combined. The shepherd metaphor — *katson asher ein-lahem ro'eh* ('like sheep without a shepherd') — is Moses's fear for Israel after his death. Jesus will use this same image in Matthew 9:36 and Mark 6:34. The phrase *adat YHWH* ('the LORD's community/congregation') reminds God that these are His people, not Moses's — the succession is God's responsibility.
18. God names the successor: Joshua bin-Nun, described as *ish asher-ruach bo* ('a man in whom is spirit/the Spirit'). The *ruach* may refer to the Holy Spirit, to leadership capacity, or to the 'spirit of wisdom' Joshua receives (Deut 34:9). The command *vesamakhta et-yadekha alav* ('lay your hand on him') uses the same *semikhah* language as the sacrificial system (Lev 1:4) — the laying-on of hands transfers authority from Moses to Joshua. The gesture is public, physical, and irrevocable.
19. The commissioning is public — *le'eineihem* ('in their sight'). The community witnesses the transfer of authority. Eleazar the priest and the congregation together validate the succession. The verb *tsivvith* ('commission, give a charge') is from the same root as *mitsvah* ('commandment') — Joshua's commission is itself a command that binds him to the role.
20. Moses is to transfer *mehodekha* ('some of your splendor/authority') — not all of it. The word *hod* means 'majesty, splendor, authority' — Joshua will receive a portion of Moses's leadership presence, enough to command obedience but not the full prophetic intimacy Moses enjoyed with God. The 'some' (me- partitive) is honest about the succession: Joshua will be a capable leader but not another Moses. Deuteronomy 34:10 will confirm this: 'no prophet has arisen since in Israel like Moses.'
21. A critical shift: where Moses spoke with God face to face, Joshua must inquire through the Urim — the priestly oracular device (Exod 28:30). Joshua's access to God is mediated by the high priest, not direct. This marks a diminishment from Mosaic-era leadership: the prophet who heard God's voice directly is replaced by a leader who receives guidance through priestly channels. The phrase *al-piv yetse'u ve'al-piv yavo'u* ('at his word they go out, at his word they come in') echoes v17's leadership description — the community moves at the leader's direction, which is itself directed by divine consultation.
22. Moses complies immediately: *vayya'as Mosheh ka'asher tsivvah YHWH oto* ('Moses did as the LORD commanded him'). The obedience formula — which has governed Moses's actions throughout his career — appears one final time in the context of handing over leadership. Moses's last major act of obedience is the installation of his own successor.
23. The *semikhah* is performed: *vayyismokh et-yadav alav* ('he laid his hands on him'). Note the plural 'hands' — both of Moses's hands rest on Joshua, transferring the full weight of commissioning. The chapter closes with *ka'asher dibber YHWH beyad-Mosheh* ('as the LORD had spoken through Moses') — a phrase that will continue to govern Israel's life long after Moses himself is gone. The authority passes; the divine command endures.

28

Summary: *God prescribes the full sacrificial calendar: the daily tamid offering (morning and evening), the Sabbath addition, the new moon offerings, and the spring festival cycle — Passover, the Festival of Unleavened Bread, and the Festival of Weeks (Shavuot). Each occasion specifies exact numbers of bulls, rams, lambs, grain offerings, and drink offerings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening command calls the offerings qorbani lachmi ('My offering, My food,' v. 2) — anthropomorphic language that does not claim God eats but frames the sacrificial system as sustaining the covenantal relationship. The qorban (from qarav, 'to draw near') is fundamentally about approach to God's presence. The tamid ('perpetual, continual') offering structures every day around divine encounter: morning and evening, without exception, the relationship is renewed.*

Translation Friction: *The KJV renders minchah as 'meat offering,' which is misleading — minchah is specifically the grain offering, never meat. We rendered it consistently as 'grain offering.' The measurement terms (issaron for one-tenth ephah, hin for liquid measure) we converted to ratios rather than modern equivalents, since the exact volumes are debated. The phrase reiach nichoach ('pleasing aroma') we retained as a theological metaphor for divine acceptance.*

Connections: *The tamid offering was established in Exodus 29:38-42. The Passover regulations (vv. 16-25) supplement Exodus 12 and Leviticus 23:5-8. The Festival of Weeks (vv. 26-31) corresponds to Leviticus 23:15-21 and later becomes Pentecost (Acts 2:1). The sacrificial quantities here establish the norms that will govern temple worship through the Second Temple period.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses, instructing him: ²Direct the Israelites and tell them: You must be careful to present My offering — My food for My fire-offerings, a pleasing aroma to Me — at its appointed time. ³Say to them: This is the fire-offering you are to present to the LORD — two unblemished yearling lambs each day as a perpetual ascending offering. ⁴Prepare one lamb in the morning and the second lamb at twilight, ⁵along with a tenth of an ephah of fine flour as a grain offering, mixed with a quarter hin of pressed olive oil. ⁶This is the perpetual ascending offering that was established at Mount Sinai — a pleasing aroma, a fire-offering to the LORD. ⁷Its accompanying drink offering is a quarter hin for each lamb. Pour out this fermented drink offering to the LORD in the holy place. ⁸Prepare the second lamb at twilight with the same grain offering and drink offering as the morning — a fire-offering, a pleasing aroma to the LORD. ⁹On the Sabbath day: two unblemished yearling lambs, with two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering, plus its drink offering. ¹⁰This is the ascending offering for each Sabbath, in addition to the perpetual ascending offering and its drink offering. ¹¹At the start of each of your months, present an ascending offering to the LORD: two young bulls, one ram, and seven unblemished yearling lambs. ¹²The grain offering is three-tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil for each bull, and two-tenths of fine flour mixed with oil for the ram. ¹³And one-tenth of fine flour mixed with oil as a grain offering for each lamb — an ascending offering, a pleasing aroma, a fire-offering to the LORD. ¹⁴Their drink offerings are: half a hin of wine for each bull, a third of a hin for the ram, and a quarter hin for each lamb. This is the monthly ascending offering for every month throughout the year. ¹⁵Also one male goat as a purification offering to the LORD — this is in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its drink offering. ¹⁶On the fourteenth day of the first month, the Passover belonging to the LORD is observed. ¹⁷On the fifteenth day of this month is the festival. For seven days unleavened bread is to be eaten. ¹⁸On the first day there is to be a sacred assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. ¹⁹Present a fire-offering as an ascending offering to the LORD: two young bulls, one ram, and seven yearling lambs — they must be unblemished for your offering. ²⁰Their grain offering is fine flour mixed with oil: prepare three-tenths of an ephah for each bull and two-tenths for the ram. ²¹Prepare one-tenth for each individual lamb across all seven lambs. ²²Also one male goat as a purification offering, to make atonement on your behalf. ²³You are to prepare these in addition to the morning ascending offering that constitutes the perpetual offering. ²⁴In this same manner you are to prepare the offering each day for seven days — food of the fire-offering,

a pleasing aroma to the LORD. It is to be prepared in addition to the perpetual ascending offering and its drink offering. ²⁵On the seventh day you are to hold a sacred assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. ²⁶On the Day of Firstfruits, when you present a new grain offering to the LORD at your Festival of Weeks, hold a sacred assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. ²⁷Present an ascending offering as a pleasing aroma to the LORD: two young bulls, one ram, and seven yearling lambs. ²⁸Their grain offering of fine flour mixed with oil: three-tenths of an ephah for each bull and two-tenths for the ram. ²⁹One-tenth for each individual lamb across the seven lambs. ³⁰Include one male goat to make atonement on your behalf. ³¹Prepare these in addition to the perpetual ascending offering and its grain offering. The animals must be unblemished, along with their drink offerings.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard divine speech formula *vayedabber YHVH el-Mosheh le'mor* introduces a major legislative section on the sacrificial calendar. This formula (*dibber*, 'spoke') signals authoritative instruction rather than casual conversation.
2. The term *qorbani* ('My offering') derives from *qarav* ('to draw near'), emphasizing approach to God rather than mere sacrifice. The phrase *lachmi* ('My food/bread') uses anthropomorphic language — God does not eat, but the metaphor conveys that offerings sustain the covenantal relationship. The term *ishai* ('My fire-offerings') and *re'ach nichochi* ('a pleasing aroma to Me') together express divine acceptance. The word *bemo'ado* ('at its appointed time') introduces the calendrical framework for the entire section.
3. The *kevashim benei-shanah* ('yearling lambs') must be *temimim* ('unblemished, complete') — physically whole animals reflecting the wholeness required in worship. The phrase *olah tamid* ('perpetual ascending offering') establishes the baseline sacrificial rhythm upon which all other offerings are layered. The *olah* ('ascending offering') was entirely consumed on the altar, symbolizing total dedication.
4. The Hebrew *bein ha'arbayim* ('between the two evenings') is a debated time marker — it may refer to the period between afternoon decline and sunset, or between sunset and full darkness. The Pharisaic tradition placed it in the mid-afternoon. This division of the day into morning and twilight sacrifices bookends the daylight hours with worship.
5. The *solet* ('fine flour') denotes the highest quality milled grain. The KJV's 'meat offering' for *minchah* is misleading — it is a grain-based offering. The *shemen katit* ('beaten/pressed oil') specifies premium cold-pressed olive oil. A tenth of an ephah is approximately 2.2 liters of flour; a quarter hin is approximately 1.5 liters of oil.
6. The phrase *ha'asuyah behar Sinai* ('that was made/established at Mount Sinai') anchors this legislation in the Sinai covenant, grounding the sacrificial calendar in the foundational revelation. The *tamid* offering is not new but a reaffirmation of what was already instituted (cf. Exodus 29:38-42).
7. The *nesekh* ('drink offering, libation') was poured out, not consumed. The term *shekhar* ('strong drink, fermented beverage') is striking here — it normally appears in prohibitions (Leviticus 10:9). Its use in a sacrificial context suggests a potent fermented grape or grain beverage. The phrase *baqqodesh* ('in the holy place') specifies the sanctuary location for the pouring.
8. The evening offering mirrors the morning one exactly: *keminchath habboqer ukhenisku* ('like the grain offering of the morning and like its drink offering'). This symmetrical structure frames each day in sacrificial worship, creating a rhythm of perpetual dedication. The *parashah petuchah* marker {} indicates a major section break in the scroll.
9. The Sabbath *musaf* ('additional offering') doubles the daily *tamid* — two extra lambs on top of the regular two. The *shenei esronim* ('two-tenths') of *solet* doubles the daily grain portion as well. This doubling reflects the Sabbath's elevated sanctity; the day receives twice the worship investment of ordinary days.
10. The phrase *olat Shabbat beShabbato* ('the ascending offering of each Sabbath on its Sabbath') uses a distributive construction — every single Sabbath requires this additional offering. Critically, *al-olat hatamid* ('in addition to the perpetual ascending offering') establishes the layering principle: festival offerings supplement, never replace, the daily *tamid*.
11. The phrase *uverashei chodsheikhem* ('at the heads of your months') refers to *Rosh Chodesh*, the new moon celebration marking each lunar month's beginning. The offering escalates dramatically from the daily *tamid* — *parim benei-vaqar shenayim* ('two young bulls'), a single *ayil* ('ram'), and *shiv'ah kevashim* ('seven lambs'). This substantial increase signals the elevated significance of monthly renewal.
12. The grain offering scales proportionally to the animal's size: *sheloshah esronim* ('three-tenths') for each *par* ('bull'), *shenei esronim* ('two-tenths') for each *ayil* ('ram'). This proportional system — three for a bull, two for a ram, one for a lamb (v. 13) — maintains a consistent ratio throughout the sacrificial calendar.
13. The phrase *issaron issaron* ('a tenth, a tenth') uses repetition distributively — one-tenth of an ephah for each individual lamb. This completes the proportional grain offering scale: 3:2:1 for bull:ram:lamb. The verse concludes with the full formula: *olah re'ach nichoach issheh laYHVH*, affirming that each offering is acceptable to God.
14. The drink offerings follow their own proportional scale: *chatzi hahin* ('half a hin', ~3 liters) for a bull, *shelishit hahin* ('a third', ~2 liters) for a ram, *revi'it hahin* ('a quarter', ~1.5 liters) for a lamb. The *yayin* ('wine') is specified here rather than the *shekhar* of verse 7. The phrase *olat chodesh bechodsho lechodshei hashanah* ('monthly ascending offering for each month of the year') mandates twelve such celebrations annually.

15. The se'ir izzim ('male goat') serves as a chatat ('purification/sin offering'). The chatat addresses communal impurity that accumulates over the month. The layering principle is reiterated: al-olat hatamid ('in addition to the perpetual ascending offering') — the new moon offerings do not substitute for but supplement the daily tamid.
16. The Pesach ('Passover') falls on the fourteenth of the first month (Nisan/Aviv). The term pesach likely derives from pasach ('to pass over, skip over'), recalling how God passed over Israelite homes during the tenth plague. This verse states the date without offering instructions because the Passover lamb follows its own legislation (Exodus 12); what follows concerns the week-long festival of Unleavened Bread.
17. The chag ('festival, pilgrimage feast') begins the day after Passover. The matzot ('unleavened bread') must be eaten for shiv'at yamim ('seven days'). Leaven symbolizes the old life in Egypt; its removal represents the haste of departure and the purging of corruption. The passive construction ye'akhel ('shall be eaten') makes this a universal obligation.
18. The miqra-qodesh ('sacred assembly, holy convocation') is a called gathering for worship. The prohibition covers kol-melekhet avodah ('any laborious work, occupational work') — this phrase distinguishes festival rest from full Sabbath rest, which prohibits kol-melakhah ('all work'). Food preparation is generally permitted on festival days but not on the Sabbath.
19. The Passover/Matzot offerings match the new moon offerings exactly (v. 11): parim shenayim ('two bulls'), ayil echad ('one ram'), shiv'ah khevashim benei shanah ('seven yearling lambs'). The phrase temimim yihyu lakhem ('they shall be unblemished for you') places the responsibility for quality inspection on the offerers.
20. The minchatam ('their grain offering') follows the standard proportional formula established in verses 12-13: sheloshah esronim laPar ('three-tenths for each bull') and shenei esronim la'ayil ('two-tenths for the ram'). The consistency of these ratios across different festivals underscores the systematic nature of Israelite sacrificial legislation.
21. The distributive issaron issaron ('a tenth, a tenth') emphasizes that each of the shiv'at hakkevashim ('seven lambs') receives its own separate grain portion. The repetition ensures no confusion: seven individual tenth-measures, not one communal portion divided among them.
22. The se'ir chatat echad ('one male goat as purification offering') serves lekhafter aleikhem ('to make atonement/covering for you'). The root k-p-r carries the sense of 'covering over' or 'wiping clean' — the offering purges accumulated impurity so the community can stand in God's presence during the festival.
23. The phrase millevad olat habboqer ('apart from the morning ascending offering') reiterates the layering principle: the festival offerings are supplementary. The relative clause asher le'olat hatamid ('which belongs to the perpetual offering') identifies the morning lamb as part of the ongoing tamid system. Festival worship intensifies but never interrupts the daily rhythm.
24. The phrase ka'elleh ta'asu layyom shiv'at yamim ('according to these you shall prepare daily for seven days') mandates that the full Matzot offering sequence repeats for the entire festival week. The term lechem ('food, bread') here refers to the offering as God's 'food' — the same anthropomorphic metaphor from verse 2. The total over seven days is substantial: 14 bulls, 7 rams, 49 lambs, plus 7 goats.
25. The festival week concludes as it began (v. 18) with a miqra-qodesh ('sacred assembly') and the prohibition of melekhet avodah ('occupational labor'). This bookending structure — sacred assembly on days one and seven — frames the entire festival as a unified period of consecration. The setumah marker {} signals a minor section break.
26. The yom haBikkurim ('Day of Firstfruits') is also called Shavuot ('Weeks') — beshavu'oteikhem ('at your weeks') refers to the seven-week count from Passover (Leviticus 23:15-16). The minchah chadashah ('new grain offering') features the first wheat of the harvest. This verse provides three names for one festival: Firstfruits, Weeks, and (in later tradition) Pentecost (from the Greek for 'fiftieth').
27. The Shavuot offering matches the Passover/Matzot and new moon offerings in quantity: parim shenayim ('two bulls'), ayil echad ('one ram'), shiv'ah kevashim ('seven yearling lambs'). This uniformity among the spring festivals (excluding Sukkot's distinctive escalation in chapter 29) creates a consistent tier of worship for the pilgrimage festivals.
28. The minchatam solet belulah bashshamen ('their grain offering of fine flour mixed with oil') repeats the standard formula. The proportions remain constant: sheloshah esronim laPar ha'echad ('three-tenths for each bull') and shenei esronim la'ayil ha'echad ('two-tenths for the one ram'). The definite articles (ha'echad) individualize each animal's portion.
29. The distributive issaron issaron ('a tenth, a tenth') is repeated from verse 21 — lakkevash ha'echad ('for each individual lamb') across leshiv'at hakkevashim ('the seven lambs'). Seven separate grain portions, one per lamb, totaling seven-tenths of an ephah for the lamb offerings alone.
30. The se'ir izzim echad ('one male goat') for the Shavuot purification offering mirrors verse 22's Passover provision. The verb lekhafter ('to make atonement, to purge') again employs the k-p-r root. Every major festival requires this purification component — communal gathering before God necessitates communal cleansing.
31. The closing verse reiterates the supplementary nature of festival offerings: millevad olat hatamid uminchat ('apart from the perpetual ascending offering and its grain offering'). The parenthetical temimim yihyu-lakhem ('they shall be unblemished for you') places the quality requirement last as a final emphatic reminder. The parashah petuchah marker {} closes the spring festival cycle, with fall festivals continuing in chapter 29.

29

Summary: *The fall festival offerings are detailed: Yom Teru'ah (the Day of Trumpet Blasts, first of the seventh month), Yom Kippurim (the Day of Atonement, tenth day), and Sukkot (the Festival of Booths, seven days beginning the fifteenth, plus a closing assembly on the eighth day). The Sukkot offerings are by far the most lavish, with a descending sequence of bulls from thirteen on day one to seven on day seven — seventy bulls total.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The seventh month is the most festival-dense in the Israelite calendar, and its sacrificial demands dwarf all others. The descending bull count across Sukkot's seven days (13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7 = 70 total) has generated extensive commentary: rabbinic tradition connected the seventy bulls to the seventy nations of Genesis 10, reading Sukkot as Israel interceding sacrificially for all humanity. The atseret ('closing assembly') on the eighth day (v. 35) reduces the offering to a single bull — an intimate conclusion after the week's abundance.*

Translation Friction: *The term yom teru'ah ('day of blasting,' v. 1) denotes staccato trumpet or shofar blasts — later tradition identifies this as Rosh Hashanah, but the Torah does not use that name. We rendered teru'ah as 'trumpet blasts' while noting the later identification. The phrase ve'innitem et nafshoteikhem ('you shall afflict your souls,' v. 7) for Yom Kippur fasting resists modern English — 'afflict your souls' is not self-harm but self-denial, particularly fasting. We retained the traditional phrasing.*

Connections: *The Day of Atonement offerings here supplement the ritual described in Leviticus 16. The Sukkot festival instructions parallel Leviticus 23:33-43 and Deuteronomy 16:13-15. The eighth-day assembly (v. 35) is the atseret referenced in Nehemiah 8:18 and associated in John 7:37 with Jesus's 'rivers of living water' declaration. The seventy-bulls tradition links to the table of nations in Genesis 10.*

¹In the seventh month, on the first day of the month, you are to hold a sacred assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. It is a day of trumpet blasts for you. ²Prepare an ascending offering as a pleasing aroma to the LORD: one young bull, one ram, and seven unblemished yearling lambs. ³Their grain offering is fine flour mixed with oil: three-tenths of an ephah for the bull and two-tenths for the ram. ⁴And one-tenth for each lamb across the seven lambs. ⁵Also one male goat as a purification offering to make atonement on your behalf, ⁶These are in addition to the new moon ascending offering with its grain offering, the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering, and their drink offerings according to their prescribed measures — a pleasing aroma, a fire-offering to the LORD. ⁷On the tenth day of this seventh month, hold a sacred assembly. You must practice self-denial, and you must not perform any work at all. ⁸Present an ascending offering to the LORD as a pleasing aroma: one young bull, one ram, and seven yearling lambs — they must be unblemished for your offering. ⁹Their grain offering is fine flour mixed with oil: three-tenths for the bull and two-tenths for the single ram. ¹⁰One-tenth for each lamb across the seven lambs. ¹¹One male goat as a purification offering — this is in addition to the atonement purification offering, the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering, and their drink offerings. ¹²On the fifteenth day of the seventh month, hold a sacred assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. Celebrate a festival to the LORD for seven days. ¹³Present an ascending offering, a fire-offering of pleasing aroma to the LORD: thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ¹⁴Their grain offering is fine flour mixed with oil: three-tenths for each of the thirteen bulls, and two-tenths for each of the two rams. ¹⁵And one-tenth for each of the fourteen lambs. ¹⁶Also one male goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ¹⁷On the second day: twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ¹⁸Their grain offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs are to follow the prescribed quantities according to their number. ¹⁹Also one male goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offerings. ²⁰On the third day: eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ²¹Their grain offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs follow the prescribed quantities according to their number. ²²Also one goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ²³On the fourth day: ten bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ²⁴The grain

offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs follow the prescribed quantities according to their number. ²⁵Also one male goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ²⁶On the fifth day: nine bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ²⁷Their grain offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs follow the prescribed quantities according to their number. ²⁸Also one goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ²⁹On the sixth day: eight bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ³⁰Their grain offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs are according to the prescribed quantities for their number. ³¹Also one goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offerings. ³²On the seventh day: seven bulls, two rams, and fourteen unblemished yearling lambs. ³³Their grain offerings and drink offerings for the bulls, rams, and lambs follow the prescribed regulations according to their number. ³⁴Also one goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ³⁵On the eighth day you are to hold a closing assembly. You must not perform any occupational labor. ³⁶Present an ascending offering, a fire-offering of pleasing aroma to the LORD: one bull, one ram, and seven unblemished yearling lambs. ³⁷The grain offerings and drink offerings for the bull, the ram, and the lambs follow the prescribed quantities according to their number. ³⁸Also one goat as a purification offering — in addition to the perpetual ascending offering with its grain offering and drink offering. ³⁹These are what you are to prepare for the LORD at your appointed festivals — apart from your vow-offerings and voluntary offerings, whether ascending offerings, grain offerings, drink offerings, or fellowship offerings.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The yom teru'ah ('day of blasting/shouting') opens the fall festival season. The term teru'ah denotes a loud blast — whether from a shofar (ram's horn) or silver trumpet — or a shout of alarm/joy. Later Jewish tradition identifies this as Rosh Hashanah ('Head of the Year'), though the Torah does not use that term. The seventh month (Tishrei) is the most festival-dense month in the calendar.
2. The Trumpets offering is notably smaller than new moon or pilgrimage festivals: only par echad ('one bull') compared to the usual two. This may reflect the day's primary function as proclamation and preparation rather than culmination. The single bull, single ram, and seven lambs create a focused, restrained offering that contrasts sharply with Sukkot's lavish quantities (vv. 13-34).
3. The grain offering proportions follow the standard formula: sheloshah esronim laPar ('three-tenths for the bull') and shenei esronim la'ayil ('two-tenths for the ram'). With only one bull here, the total grain offering is smaller than at new moon or Passover.
4. The issaron echad lakkevsh ha'echad ('one-tenth for each individual lamb') continues the per-lamb distribution. The slightly different phrasing from 28:13's issaron issaron reflects stylistic variation rather than a different requirement — each lamb receives one-tenth of an ephah of flour.
5. The se'ir-izzim echad chatat ('one male goat as purification offering') appears at every festival. As the first of the fall festivals, this purification offering inaugurates the intensifying sequence of atonement that culminates ten days later on Yom Kippur (v. 11). The verb lekhaber ('to make atonement') here prepares the community for the deeper cleansing ahead.
6. Since Trumpets falls on the first day of the seventh month, three layers of offering stack: the tamid (daily), the olat hachodesh ('new moon offering'), and the Trumpets musaf. The phrase kemishpatam ('according to their prescribed measure/regulation') refers to the established drink offering ratios from 28:14. The layering produces an especially full day of sacrifice.
7. Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement) is introduced with the command ve'innitem et-nafshoteikhem ('you shall humble/afflict your souls'). The verb innah ('to humble, afflict, deny') encompasses fasting and abstention from bodily comforts. Notably, the prohibition here is kol-melakhah ('any work whatsoever'), stricter than the festival prohibition of melekhet avodah ('occupational work') — placing Yom Kippur's rest on par with the Sabbath.
8. The Yom Kippur musaf offering matches the Trumpets offering exactly: par echad ('one bull'), ayil echad ('one ram'), shiv'ah kevashim ('seven lambs'). This is the musaf (additional) offering; the distinctive Yom Kippur rituals — the two goats, the scapegoat, the High Priest's entry into the Holy of Holies — are detailed in Leviticus 16, not here. The phrase temimim yihyu lakhem ('they shall be unblemished for you') is especially weighty on the day of ultimate purification.
9. The standard grain proportions apply on Yom Kippur as elsewhere: sheloshah esronim laPar ('three-tenths for the bull') and shenei esronim la'ayil ha'echad ('two-tenths for the one ram'). The consistency underscores that even the most solemn day operates within the same sacrificial system.
10. The distributive issaron issaron repeats the per-lamb allotment. On Yom Kippur, a day of fasting and self-denial, the grain offerings are presented to God while the people abstain — a powerful contrast between human deprivation and divine provision.
11. This verse reveals multiple layers: the se'ir chatat here is the musaf purification offering, distinct from the chatat haKippurim ('the atonement purification offering') of Leviticus 16 — the goat whose blood the High Priest brings into the Holy of Holies. Yom Kippur thus has more purification offerings than any other day, befitting its role as the annual cleansing of the entire sanctuary system.

12. Sukkot ('Booths/Tabernacles') begins five days after Yom Kippur. The phrase *vechagotem chag laYHVH shiv'at yamim* ('you shall celebrate a festival to the LORD for seven days') uses the verb *chagag*, which implies pilgrimage and festive celebration with circular dancing. Sukkot is the most elaborate festival in terms of sacrificial requirements, with the bull count creating a distinctive descending pattern over the week.
13. Day one of Sukkot features the most lavish offering in the entire Torah calendar: *sheloshah asar parim* ('thirteen bulls'), two rams, and *arba'ah asar kevashim* ('fourteen lambs'). The thirteen bulls begin a seven-day descending sequence (13, 12, 11, 10, 9, 8, 7 = 70 total bulls), which rabbinic tradition associates with the seventy nations of Genesis 10, suggesting Israel's offerings intercede for the entire world.
14. The grain offering for day one alone requires thirty-nine tenths (3×13) for the *parim* and four tenths (2×2) for the *eilim*, plus fourteen tenths for the lambs (v. 15) — a total of fifty-seven tenths of an ephah. The phrase *lisheloshah asar parim* ('for the thirteen bulls') and *lishenei ha'eilim* ('for the two rams') specifies that each animal receives its individual grain portion.
15. Fourteen lambs — double the usual seven — reflect Sukkot's amplified worship. Each of the *arba'ah asar kevashim* ('fourteen lambs') receives its own *issaron* of flour. The doubling of the lamb count (from seven at other festivals to fourteen at Sukkot) further distinguishes this festival's extraordinary scale.
16. Despite Sukkot's dramatically increased ascending offerings, the purification offering remains *se'ir echad* ('one goat') — the same as every other festival. The *chatat* is a constant, not scaled to festival importance. The phrase *millevad olat hatamid* ('apart from the perpetual ascending offering') reiterates that even Sukkot's thirteen bulls do not replace the daily *tamid* lambs.
17. Day two reduces by one bull: *sheneim asar parim* ('twelve bulls'). The rams remain *shenayim* ('two') and the lambs *arba'ah asar* ('fourteen') throughout all seven days — only the bull count decreases. This descending sequence (13121110987) creates a liturgical countdown toward the culminating eighth-day assembly.
18. The abbreviated formula *uminchatam veniskehem* ('their grain offerings and drink offerings') with *bemisparim kamishpat* ('according to their number, as prescribed') avoids repeating the detailed proportions from verses 3-4 and 14-15. This shorthand assumes the reader knows the ratios: 3:2:1 tenths of flour and $\frac{1}{2}:\frac{1}{3}:\frac{1}{4}$ hin of wine for bull:ram:lamb respectively.
19. Day two's purification offering remains *se'ir-izzim echad* ('one male goat'), identical to day one. The consistent single goat amid the changing bull count suggests that communal purification operates on a different principle than the ascending offerings — one act of cleansing suffices regardless of the day's scale.
20. Day three continues the descent: *ashtei-asar parim* ('eleven bulls'). The unusual numeral form *ashtei-asar* is an archaic variant of the more common *ashtei-esreh* ('eleven'). Rams and lambs remain constant at two and fourteen.
21. The formulaic *kamishpat* ('according to the regulation') here on day three references the same proportional system. As the bull count decreases, the total flour and wine for day three is slightly less than day two — a gradual diminishing of material expenditure across the week.
22. Day three's purification offering uses *se'ir chatat echad* ('one goat, purification offering') — the slightly shortened form omits *izzim* ('of the goats'). The term *se'ir* alone ('hairy one') sufficiently identifies the male goat. The daily *tamid* continues alongside.
23. Day four reaches *asarah parim* ('ten bulls') — the midpoint of the descending sequence. At this point, the cumulative bull total through four days is forty-six (13+12+11+10). The symmetry of the pattern becomes increasingly visible as the count moves toward single digits.
24. Day four omits the conjunctive *vav* ('and') at the start — *minchatam* rather than *uminchatam* — a minor stylistic variation. The proportional formula *kamishpat* ('as prescribed') remains unchanged. This day's grain offering for bulls alone totals thirty tenths (3×10).
25. Day four's purification offering is identical to the other days: *se'ir-izzim echad chatat* ('one male goat as purification offering'). The full form with *izzim* ('of the goats') returns here after the shortened form in verse 22, alternating without semantic difference.
26. Day five prescribes *tish'ah parim* ('nine bulls'). The cumulative total through five days is now fifty-five bulls (13+12+11+10+9). Some commentators note that each day's bull count corresponds to the days remaining in the full sequence plus the eighth day (day 1: 13 = 7+6; day 5: 9 = 7+2), though this pattern is debated.
27. The refrain *uminchatam veniskehem... bemisparim kamishpat* ('their grain offerings and drink offerings... according to their number, as prescribed') anchors each day's account to the established ratios. The repetition creates a liturgical rhythm in the text itself, mirroring the daily rhythm of the festival.
28. Day five's purification offering again uses the short form *se'ir chatat echad* ('one goat, purification offering'). Through five days, five goats have been offered for communal purification — one per day, constant and unwavering while the bulls diminish.
29. Day six prescribes *shemonah parim* ('eight bulls'). The running total reaches sixty-three (13+12+11+10+9+8). The pattern's inevitability creates anticipation — each day draws closer to the final seven bulls on day seven, when the number of bulls will match the number of days.
30. Day six's grain and drink offering formula is identical in wording to the other days. The repetitive structure through verses 17-34 is intentional in the Torah — the reader (or listener during public reading) experiences the cumulative weight of each day's dedication.
31. A small textual note: this verse ends with *unesakheih* ('and its drink offerings') using a feminine plural suffix rather than the masculine forms in other days. This may reflect the feminine grammatical gender of *olah* ('ascending offering') influencing the pronominal reference. The sixth goat joins the steady procession of daily purification.

32. Day seven completes the descent: shiv'ah parim ('seven bulls') — the sacred number that pervades Israel's calendar. The grand total for the seven days is seventy bulls ($13+12+11+10+9+8+7 = 70$), fourteen rams (2×7), and ninety-eight lambs (14×7). Seventy is the number of the nations in Genesis 10, suggesting a cosmic scope to Sukkot's worship.
33. The final day's formula uses kemishpatam ('according to their regulations') with a third-person plural suffix, slightly varying from the usual kamishpat. This minor grammatical shift may reflect the specific reference to each animal category having its own prescribed ratio, summarizing the entire proportional system one last time.
34. Day seven's purification goat brings the Sukkot total to seven goats — matching the seven days and the seven bulls of this final day. The total Sukkot animal count (excluding the tamid) is 70 bulls + 14 rams + 98 lambs + 7 goats = 189 animals, the most elaborate sacrificial week in the Torah.
35. The atzeret ('closing assembly, solemn gathering') on the eighth day is distinct from the seven days of Sukkot proper. The term atzeret derives from atsar ('to restrain, hold back, close'), suggesting a concluding ceremony that 'restrains' the people for one final day of sacred gathering. Later tradition calls this Shemini Atzeret ('Eighth Day of Assembly'), treating it as a separate festival.
36. The eighth day's offerings plummet from day seven's seventeen animals to just nine: par echad ('one bull'), ayil echad ('one ram'), shiv'ah kevashim ('seven lambs'). This dramatic reduction — matching the Trumpets/Yom Kippur scale — creates an intimate conclusion after the week's crescendo. Rabbinic tradition likens it to a king who dismisses his many guests but asks his closest friend to linger one more day.
37. The singular laPar ('for the bull') and la'ayil ('for the ram') — without plural markers — reflects the reduced eighth-day quantities. The formula kamishpat ('as prescribed') applies the same proportional system: three-tenths for the single bull, two-tenths for the single ram, one-tenth each for the seven lambs.
38. The eighth day's purification offering is the final goat in the fall festival sequence: one each on Trumpets, Yom Kippur (musaf), and eight days of Sukkot/Shemini Atzeret = ten total goats across the autumn season. The daily tamid continues beneath all festival layers, a constant heartbeat of Israelite worship.
39. The concluding verse distinguishes obligatory festival offerings from voluntary ones. The phrase levad minidreikhem venidvoteikhem ('apart from your vows and freewill offerings') establishes that the extensive calendar just prescribed is the minimum — individuals may bring additional nedarim ('vow offerings') and nedavot ('voluntary/freewill offerings'). The shalmim ('fellowship/peace offerings') appear here for the first time in chapters 28-29, reminding readers that communal celebration meals accompany the festivals.

30

Summary: *The law of vows: a man's vow is absolutely binding. A woman's vow may be upheld or annulled by her father (if unmarried) or her husband (if married) on the day he hears it. Silence on the day of hearing constitutes ratification. A widow's or divorced woman's vow is fully binding, like a man's. The legislation is delivered uniquely to the rashei hamattot ('heads of the tribes').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the only Torah law addressed specifically to tribal leaders rather than to the general assembly or to Moses and Aaron — suggesting that vow adjudication was a delegated judicial function. The foundational principle is lo yachel devaro ('he must not break his word,' v. 3), literally 'he must not treat his word as empty/profane.' Speech directed to God creates binding obligation. The annulment provisions operate within a narrow window: the day of hearing. After that, silence becomes consent.*

Translation Friction: *The verb yachel ('break, profane,' v. 3) from the root ch-l-l means to treat something holy as common. We rendered it 'break his word' for clarity, but the Hebrew implies something stronger: making sacred speech profane. The term issar ('binding obligation, restrictive vow,' v. 4) is distinct from neder ('vow') — an issar is a self-imposed prohibition ('I will not eat X'), while a neder is a dedication ('I will give Y to God'). We distinguished them in the notes.*

Connections: *The inviolability of vows connects to Deuteronomy 23:21-23 ('when you make a vow to the LORD your God, do not delay in fulfilling it') and Ecclesiastes 5:4-5. Jesus references vow-making traditions in Matthew 5:33-37. The Nazirite vow legislation in Numbers 6 is the most developed example of a neder in practice. The annulment provisions find their closest parallel in the Mishnaic tractate Nedarim.*

¹Moses communicated to the Israelites everything exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²Moses addressed the leaders of the tribes on behalf of the Israelites: 'This is what the LORD has commanded.' ³When a man makes a vow to the LORD or takes an oath imposing an obligation on himself, he must not break his word. He must fulfill everything that comes

out of his mouth. ⁴When a woman makes a vow to the LORD and takes on a binding obligation while living in her father's house during her youth, ⁵and her father hears about her vow and the obligation she has placed on herself, and her father says nothing to her — then all her vows will remain in force, and every obligation she placed on herself will remain in force. ⁶But if her father overrules her on the day he learns of it, none of her vows or obligations that she placed on herself will remain in force. The LORD will release her from liability, because her father overruled her. ⁷If she marries while her vows are still binding on her, or while a rash statement from her lips by which she obligated herself is still in effect, ⁸and her husband hears about it and says nothing to her on the day he learns of it, then her vows will remain in force, and the obligations she placed on herself will remain in force. ⁹But if on the day her husband hears about it he overrules her and annuls the vow that was binding on her, along with the rash statement from her lips by which she obligated herself, then the LORD will release her from liability. ¹⁰Any vow made by a widow or a divorced woman — every obligation she has placed on herself — will be binding on her. ¹¹If she made a vow while living in her husband's household, or bound herself with an obligation under oath, ¹²and her husband hears about it but says nothing to her — he does not overrule her — then all her vows will remain in force, and every obligation she placed on herself will remain in force. ¹³But if her husband completely annuls them on the day he hears about them, then nothing that came from her lips — whether vows or obligations upon herself — will remain in force. Her husband has annulled them, and the LORD will release her from liability. ¹⁴Every vow and every sworn obligation involving self-denial — her husband may uphold it, or her husband may annul it. ¹⁵If her husband keeps entirely silent toward her from one day to the next, then he has upheld all her vows and all her obligations that are binding on her. He has upheld them by his silence on the day he heard about them. ¹⁶But if he annuls them some time after the day he heard about them, then he will bear her guilt. ¹⁷These are the statutes that the LORD commanded Moses governing the relationship between a husband and his wife, and between a father and his daughter during her youth while she lives in her father's household.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse closes the preceding section on festival offerings (Numbers 29) and serves as a bridge to the vow legislation that follows. In Hebrew versification this is 30:1, corresponding to 29:40 in English Bibles. The phrase *kekhol asher tsivvah* ('according to all that He commanded') emphasizes Moses's role as faithful mediator — he transmitted God's instructions without alteration or omission. The paragraph marker (pe) signals a major section break before the vow laws begin.
2. Moses delivers the vow legislation specifically to *rashei hamattot* ('the heads of the tribes' — tribal chieftains), not to the entire assembly. This is the only law in the Torah introduced this way, suggesting that vow adjudication was a responsibility delegated to tribal leadership. The term *mattot* ('tribes,' literally 'staffs/rods') emphasizes the authority structure — each tribe had its own judicial apparatus for resolving vow disputes between family members.
3. The verse establishes three distinct categories of verbal commitment: *neder* ('vow' — a positive pledge to do something or dedicate something to God), *shevuah* ('oath' — a sworn declaration invoking God's name), and *issar* ('obligation, binding restriction' — a self-imposed limitation, often involving abstinence). The phrase *lo yachel devaro* ('he must not profane/break his word') uses the root *ch-l-l* ('profane, make common'), implying that a spoken vow has sacred status — breaking it is a form of desecration. The opening *ish ki yiddor* ('when a man vows') establishes the baseline: a man's vow is unconditionally binding. The rest of the chapter then addresses the exceptions for women under male authority.
4. The shift from *ish* ('man') to *ishah* ('woman') introduces the chapter's central concern: under what conditions can a woman's vow be overridden? The qualifying phrase *bevet aviha bine'ureha* ('in her father's house in her youth') establishes the first legal category — an unmarried young woman still under paternal authority. The term *ne'urim* ('youth') denotes the period before marriage when a daughter remained part of her father's household and under his legal jurisdiction. Her vow is real but conditional on paternal ratification.
5. The verb *hecharish* ('he remained silent, he said nothing') is the legal mechanism of ratification. Silence equals consent — by not objecting, the father validates the vow. The verb *qum* ('to stand, to arise') is used in its legal sense of 'remaining valid/binding.' The phrase *asrah al nafshah* ('she bound upon herself') uses *nefesh* not as 'soul' in the Greek philosophical sense but as the whole person — the obligation falls on her entire life, not just her inner state. Paternal silence transforms a conditional vow into an unconditional one.
6. The verb *heni* ('he overruled, he restrained, he disallowed') from the root *n-w-* conveys active opposition — the father must expressly object, not merely disapprove silently. The time limit *beyom shom'o* ('on the day he hears') is critical: the father's window for annulment is the same day he learns of the vow. Delay implies consent. The phrase *YHWH yislah lah* ('the LORD will release/forgive her') uses *s-l-ch* in its legal-release sense rather than its moral-forgiveness sense — she is discharged from the vow's obligation, not pardoned for wrongdoing. The vow was legitimate; it was simply overridden by legitimate authority.

7. The infinitive absolute construction hayo tiyeh le'ish ('if she indeed becomes [wife] to a man') introduces the second legal scenario: a woman who marries with pre-existing vows. The term mivta sefateha ('the utterance of her lips') introduces a new category — a rash or impulsive verbal commitment, distinct from a formal neder. The root b-t-' suggests hasty speech, an unpremeditated promise. This category is significant because it acknowledges that not all binding statements are carefully considered vows — even impulsive words carry legal weight.
8. The same legal mechanism that applied to the father (v 5) now applies to the husband: hecharish lah ('he was silent toward her') constitutes ratification. Upon marriage, authority over a woman's vows transfers from father to husband. The verb qum ('stand') appears twice — once for vows (nedarim) and once for obligations (esareha) — emphasizing that both categories of verbal commitment are validated by the husband's silence. The husband inherits whatever vow-related authority the father previously held.
9. Two verbs describe the husband's action: yani ('he overrules/restrains' — the same root as the father's action in v 6) and hefer ('he annuls, he breaks, he renders void' — from the root p-r-r, 'to break, to frustrate'). The verb hefer is stronger than heni — it describes the complete dissolution of the vow's binding force. The repeated formula YHWH yislah lah ('the LORD will release her') establishes a theological principle: when legitimate authority annuls a vow, God Himself recognizes the annulment. The woman is not guilty of breaking a vow — the vow has been legally dissolved.
10. This verse identifies the third legal category: the almanah ('widow') and gerushah ('divorced woman'). These women have no male authority figure to annul their vows, so their verbal commitments are unconditionally binding — identical to the rule for men in verse 3. The placement of this verse is structurally important: it interrupts the married-woman regulations (vv 7-9, 11-16) to establish that the annulment provisions apply only when a woman is under active male authority. A woman who has been widowed or divorced has full legal autonomy over her own vows.
11. The fourth legal scenario: a woman who makes a vow during marriage (beit ishah — 'in her husband's house'), as opposed to bringing pre-existing vows into the marriage (v 7). The addition of bishvu'ah ('with an oath') specifies that the obligation was formalized by swearing — a more solemn category of commitment. The phrase beit ishah ('her husband's house') denotes both physical residence and legal domain — the household in which the husband exercises authority.
12. This verse adds an explicit double condition for ratification: hecharish lah ('he said nothing to her') and lo heni otah ('he did not overrule her'). The redundancy serves a legal purpose — it establishes that mere awareness combined with silence constitutes binding consent. A husband cannot later claim he passively disapproved; silence is active ratification in this legal framework. The verb qum ('stand, remain valid') appears for both nedarim ('vows') and issar ('obligation'), confirming that all categories of verbal commitment are validated.
13. The infinitive absolute hafer yafer ('he will certainly annul, he will completely break') intensifies the husband's action — this is total and decisive nullification, not partial modification. The phrase kol motsa sefateha ('everything that went out from her lips') encompasses all verbal commitments regardless of category. The verse then restates the principle: ishah heferem ('her husband has annulled them') — the past tense indicates a completed legal act. And again, YHWH yislah lah ('the LORD will release her') — divine recognition of human legal authority when exercised within its proper scope.
14. The phrase le'annot nafesh ('to afflict/deny the self') specifies a particular category of vow — self-denial, which could include fasting, abstaining from certain foods, sexual abstinence, or other forms of personal deprivation. The same phrase appears in Leviticus 16:29 and 23:27 for Yom Kippur observance. The husband's authority (yeqimennu... yeferennu — 'he may uphold it... he may annul it') is presented as a binary — there is no middle ground. This verse may be singled out because self-denial vows directly affect the household: a wife's fasting or abstinence impacts the husband and family.
15. The infinitive absolute hachareh yacharish ('being silent he is silent' — completely silent) intensifies the husband's inaction. The time phrase miyom el yom ('from day to day') indicates that the window for annulment closes at the end of the day he first heard the vow. Once a new day begins, his silence has become permanent ratification. The verb heqim ('he has upheld, he has established') from q-w-m is the legal opposite of hefer ('he annulled'). The verse explicitly identifies the mechanism: ki hecherish lah beyom shom'o ('because he was silent toward her on the day he heard') — silence on the critical day is the decisive act.
16. The phrase acharei shom'o ('after his hearing' — after the day he heard) establishes a critical legal boundary: annulment after the permitted window is invalid. The husband who attempts a late annulment creates a situation where his wife cannot fulfill a vow she legitimately made, and he bears the liability. The phrase venasa et avonah ('he will bear her guilt/iniquity') transfers culpability — the root n-s-' ('to carry, to bear') combined with avon ('guilt, punishment, iniquity') is a standard formula for assuming responsibility for consequences (cf. Leviticus 5:1, 17). This is the chapter's only punitive provision directed at the male authority figure.
17. The closing formula elleh hachuqqim ('these are the statutes') frames the entire chapter as established law (choq — 'statute, decree, fixed rule'), not merely guidance or advice. The chapter addresses exactly two relational categories: ish le'ishto ('a man and his wife') and av levitto ('a father and his daughter'). The qualifying phrase bine'ureha beit aviha ('in her youth, in her father's house') limits the father's annulment authority to the period before marriage. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the section. Notably, the chapter establishes no authority for brothers, uncles, or other male relatives — only fathers and husbands may annul a woman's vows.

31

Summary: *Moses's final military commission: God commands retribution against Midian for the Baal Peor apostasy. Twelve thousand warriors defeat the Midianites, killing five kings and Balaam. Moses instructs purification of warriors and spoils. The plunder is divided in precise halves between fighters and the community, with a levy for the LORD (one-fiftieth from the warriors' share, one-five-hundredth from the community's). The officers report not a single Israelite soldier lost.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The niqmah ('retribution,' v. 2) is not personal revenge but covenantal justice for Midian's role in the Baal Peor crisis. The war's connection to Balaam is made explicit: Balaam is killed in the battle (v. 8), and verse 16 attributes the Baal Peor strategy to his counsel (bidvar Bil'am). The mathematical precision of the spoil division — exact halves, precise levies — transforms a military campaign into an exercise in sacred accounting. The officers' gold offering (v. 50) is voluntary atonement, framed as kapparah ('covering') for their lives.*

Translation Friction: *The cognate accusative neqom niqmat ('execute the retribution,' v. 2) uses intensification to distinguish this from personal vendetta — we rendered it 'carry out the retribution' rather than 'avenge.' The euphemism te'asef el ammekha ('you will be gathered to your people,' v. 2) for Moses's death we kept as 'gathered to your ancestors,' preserving the communal afterlife imagery. The purification protocols for metal objects (v. 22-23) distinguish fire-purifiable metals from water-purifiable ones.*

Connections: *Balaam's death (v. 8) closes the narrative arc begun in Numbers 22-24. The Midianite strategy is attributed to Balaam in verse 16, connecting to Revelation 2:14. The division of spoils establishes a precedent cited in 1 Samuel 30:24-25 (David's ruling at Ziklag). Moses's death announcement (v. 2) echoes Numbers 27:13 and anticipates Deuteronomy 32:48-52.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²Carry out the retribution of the Israelites against the Midianites. After that, you will be gathered to your ancestors. ³Moses addressed the people: 'Equip men from among you for military service, so they can march against Midian and execute the LORD's retribution on Midian.' ⁴One thousand from each tribe — from every tribe of Israel you are to send to the campaign. ⁵So twelve thousand men were mustered from the contingents of Israel — one thousand per tribe — equipped and ready for battle. ⁶Moses dispatched them to the campaign — one thousand per tribe — along with Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest, who carried the sacred vessels and the signal trumpets. ⁷They waged war against Midian exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses, and they killed every male. ⁸They killed the kings of Midian along with the rest of the fallen: Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba — five Midianite kings. They also put Balaam son of Beor to death by the sword. ⁹The Israelites captured the Midianite women and their dependents, and plundered all their livestock, all their herds, and all their wealth. ¹⁰They burned down all their towns — every settlement — along with all their encampments. ¹¹They gathered all the plunder and all the captured spoils, both human and animal. ¹²They brought the captives, the seized spoils, and the plunder to Moses, to Eleazar the priest, and to the assembled Israelite community at the camp on the Moabite plains beside the Jordan across from Jericho. ¹³Moses, Eleazar the priest, and all the leaders of the community went out to meet them outside the camp. ¹⁴Moses was furious with the commanders of the force — the officers over thousands and the officers over hundreds — who were returning from the military campaign. ¹⁵Moses demanded of them, 'You have let all the females survive?' ¹⁶Look — these are the very ones who, on Balaam's advice, drew the Israelites into unfaithfulness against the LORD in the Peor affair, which brought the plague on the LORD's community! ¹⁷Now then — kill every male child among the dependents, and kill every woman who has had sexual relations with a man. ¹⁸But all the young girls who have not had sexual relations with a man — let them live. They are yours. ¹⁹As for you — remain outside the camp for seven days. Anyone who has killed a person and anyone who has touched a corpse must undergo purification on the third day and on the seventh day, both you and your captives. ²⁰You must also purify every garment, every leather article, everything made of goat hair, and every wooden object. ²¹Eleazar the priest then instructed the soldiers returning from the campaign: 'This is the statute of the Law that the LORD commanded Moses:' ²²However — the gold, the silver, the

copper, the iron, the tin, and the lead — ²³anything that can withstand fire, you must pass through fire and it will be clean — but it must still be purified with the water of lustration. Anything that cannot withstand fire you must pass through water. ²⁴You must wash your clothing on the seventh day, and then you will be clean. After that you may enter the camp. ²⁵The LORD spoke to Moses: ²⁶Take a full inventory of the captured spoils — both human and animal — you along with Eleazar the priest and the ancestral heads of the community. ²⁷Divide the captured spoils in two: one half for the combat soldiers who went on the campaign, and one half for the rest of the community. ²⁸From the soldiers' half — the men of war who went on campaign — levy a tax for the LORD: one out of every five hundred, from the people, from the cattle, from the donkeys, and from the sheep. ²⁹Take it from their half and give it to Eleazar the priest as the LORD's sacred contribution. ³⁰From the Israelite community's half, take one out of every fifty — from the people, from the cattle, from the donkeys, from the sheep, from all the livestock — and give them to the Levites who maintain the service of the LORD's Tabernacle. ³¹Moses and Eleazar the priest carried it out exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ³²The total captured plunder — the remainder of the spoils that the military force had seized — amounted to: 675,000 sheep and goats, ³³72,000 cattle, ³⁴61,000 donkeys, ³⁵and 32,000 persons — women who had not had sexual relations with a man. ³⁶The soldiers' half — the portion belonging to those who went on campaign — included: 337,500 sheep and goats, ³⁷of which the LORD's levy from the sheep was 675. ³⁸The cattle numbered 36,000, of which the LORD's levy was 72. ³⁹The donkeys numbered 30,500, of which the LORD's levy was 61. ⁴⁰The persons numbered 16,000, of which the LORD's levy was 32 persons. ⁴¹Moses gave the levy — the LORD's sacred contribution — to Eleazar the priest, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁴²As for the Israelite community's half, which Moses had separated from the soldiers' portion — ⁴³the community's half of the sheep and goats was 337,500, ⁴⁴36,000 cattle, ⁴⁵30,500 donkeys, ⁴⁶and 16,000 persons. ⁴⁷From the Israelite community's half, Moses took one out of every fifty — from both humans and animals — and gave them to the Levites who maintained the service of the LORD's Tabernacle, exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁴⁸Then the appointed officers over the military units — the commanders of thousands and the commanders of hundreds — approached Moses. ⁴⁹They reported to Moses, 'Your servants have conducted a count of the fighting men under our command, and not a single man is missing from our ranks.' ⁵⁰So we have brought the LORD's offering — whatever gold articles each man found: armlets, bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and pendants — to make expiation for ourselves in the LORD's presence. ⁵¹Moses and Eleazar the priest accepted the gold from them — all of it crafted articles. ⁵²The total gold of the contribution that the commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds dedicated to the LORD came to 16,750 shekels. ⁵³(The common soldiers had each kept their own personal plunder.) ⁵⁴Moses and Eleazar the priest accepted the gold from the commanders of thousands and hundreds and brought it into the Tent of Meeting as a memorial for the Israelites in the LORD's presence.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic revelation formula *vaydabber YHWH el Moshe le'mor* ('the LORD spoke to Moses, saying') introduces what will be Moses's final military commission. The placement of this command immediately after the festival calendar (Numbers 28-29) and vow legislation (Numbers 30) signals a transition from cultic legislation to narrative action. This war against Midian will be Moses's last act of leadership before his death.
2. The imperative *neqom niqmat* ('execute the vengeance/retribution of') uses the cognate accusative construction for intensification. The *niqmah* is not personal revenge but covenantal retribution for Midian's role in the Baal-Peor apostasy (Numbers 25). The euphemism *te'asef el ammekha* ('you will be gathered to your people') denotes death — Moses's final task is framed as prerequisite to his departure. God links national justice to leadership transition: the Midianite threat must be neutralized before Israel enters Canaan under new leadership.
3. Moses reframes the mission: while God said *niqmat benei Yisra'el* ('the retribution of the Israelites,' v. 2), Moses says *niqmat YHWH* ('the LORD's retribution'). Both perspectives are correct — the war simultaneously defends Israel's interests and carries out divine judgment. The verb *hechaletsu* ('arm yourselves, equip for battle') from *ch-l-ts* implies stripping down for combat readiness. Only a select force is mobilized, not the entire nation.
4. The repetition *elef lamattech elef lamattech* ('a thousand per tribe, a thousand per tribe') emphasizes equal representation. Each of the twelve tribes contributes identically, making this a unified national action rather than a regional campaign. The total force of 12,000 is modest compared to the full census numbers, suggesting this is a targeted punitive expedition rather than a total war. The term *tsava* ('military campaign, army') carries both the sense of organized military service and the cosmic army of God.
5. The passive *vayyimaseru* ('they were mustered, they were handed over') from *m-s-r* suggests a formal conscription process. The term *chalutzei tsava* ('battle-ready troops,' literally 'stripped/equipped ones of the army') indicates soldiers prepared for immediate combat. The root *ch-l-ts* in the military sense means 'stripped for action' — soldiers who have shed anything that would impede fighting. The precise 12,000 figure underscores the orderly,

proportional nature of the mobilization.

6. Phinehas leads rather than Moses or Eleazar because of his demonstrated zeal at Baal-Peor (Numbers 25:7-13), the very incident this war avenges. The *kelei haqqodesh* ('sacred vessels') likely included the Urim and Thummim or the Ark's breastpiece for divine consultation, though the text does not specify. The *chatsotsrot hateru'ah* ('trumpets of alarm/signal') are the silver trumpets prescribed in Numbers 10:1-10 for military signaling. Their presence marks this as a holy war — a campaign conducted under divine authority with priestly, not merely military, leadership.
7. The verb *vayyitsbe'u* ('they campaigned, they waged war') from *ts-b-* connects to the *tsava* ('army/campaign') language throughout this chapter. The phrase *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Moshe* ('as the LORD commanded Moses') is a compliance formula — the campaign followed divine orders precisely. The killing of *kol zakhar* ('every male') refers to combatant males in the targeted Midianite settlements, following the pattern of ancient Near Eastern warfare where adult males constituted the military threat.
8. The five Midianite kings are called *melakhim* here but *nesi'ei Midyan* ('chieftains of Midian') in Joshua 13:21, suggesting they were regional overlords rather than monarchs of a unified state. Zur is likely the father of Cozbi, the Midianite woman killed by Phinehas at Baal-Peor (Numbers 25:15), connecting this war directly to that event. Balaam's death is noted separately with emphasis — he is killed *becherev* ('by the sword'), highlighting his culpability. Though he could not curse Israel directly (Numbers 22-24), he apparently counseled Midian to seduce Israel through apostasy (v. 16), making him the architect of the Peor disaster.
9. Three categories of seizure are listed: human captives (*nashim* and *taf* — women and children/dependents), livestock (*behemah* and *miqneh* — domestic animals and herds), and material wealth (*cheil* — goods, resources, valuables). The verb *vayyishbu* ('they captured') from *sh-b-h* specifically denotes taking captives, while *bazazu* ('they plundered') from *b-z-z* covers material goods. This initial capture of all women will become the source of Moses's anger in verse 14, since it was the Midianite women who instigated the Baal-Peor crisis.
10. Two types of Midianite habitation are destroyed: *arim bemoshevtam* ('cities in their dwelling-places' — permanent settlements) and *tivotam* ('their encampments/walled camps'). The term *tirah* (plural *tivot*) refers to semi-permanent encampments surrounded by walls or hedges, reflecting the semi-nomadic character of Midianite society. The total destruction by fire (*sarefu va'esh*) ensures the settlements cannot be reoccupied and removes the infrastructure that supported Midianite power in the region.
11. Two distinct terms for war gains appear: *shalal* ('plunder' — material goods taken in war) and *malqoach* ('captured spoils' — specifically what is 'taken' or seized, from *l-q-ch* 'to take'). The distinction *ba'adam uvabbehemah* ('among humans and among animals') indicates that both categories of plunder included living captives. The *malqoach* likely refers to the captive persons and livestock, while *shalal* covers material wealth — gold, silver, textiles, and other portable goods.
12. Three categories arrive at camp: *hashevi* ('the captives' — human prisoners), *hammalqoach* ('the seized spoils'), and *hashalal* ('the plunder'). The location marker *arvot Mo'av asher al Yarden Yereicho* ('the plains of Moab by the Jordan of Jericho') is the staging area for the entire final section of Numbers and Deuteronomy — Israel's last encampment before crossing into Canaan. The *setumah* paragraph marker signals a pause before Moses's confrontation with the returning officers.
13. The leadership delegation — Moses, Eleazar, and *kol nesi'ei ha'edah* ('all the chieftains of the community') — meets the army outside the camp (*michuts lamachaneh*) rather than inside it. This is both protocol and necessity: soldiers returning from battle carry corpse-contamination (*tumat met*) and cannot enter the camp until purified. The fact that the entire leadership goes out signals both the importance of the occasion and the impending confrontation over the captive women.
14. The verb *vayyiqtsaf* ('he was furious') indicates intense, burning anger — stronger than mere displeasure. Moses directs his rage specifically at *pequdei hachayil* ('the appointed officers of the force'), not at the common soldiers, holding leadership accountable for the decision to spare all the women. The military hierarchy of *sarei ha'alafim vesarei hame'ot* ('commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds') reflects the decimal organization established in Exodus 18:21. The term *tseva hammilchamah* ('the campaign of war') emphasizes this was a specific military operation, not general warfare.
15. The terse question *hachiiyitem kol neqevah* ('have you kept alive every female?') expresses incredulous anger. The verb *chiiyitem* from *ch-y-h* in the *Pi'el* means 'to let live, to preserve alive' — an active decision, not passive oversight. Moses is outraged because these same women were the agents of Israel's apostasy at Baal-Peor. The brevity of the question — only three Hebrew words — heightens its rhetorical force.
16. This verse reveals information not recorded in Numbers 25: Balaam was the strategist behind Midian's seduction of Israel. The phrase *bidvar Bil'am* ('by the word/counsel of Balaam') connects the seer who could not curse Israel (Numbers 22-24) to the scheme that nearly destroyed them from within. The term *ma'al* ('unfaithfulness, treachery, breach of trust') is a covenant term — it denotes betrayal of a relationship, not mere rule-breaking. The reference to *hammagfeah* ('the plague') points back to the 24,000 who died (Numbers 25:9). Moses's logic is clear: sparing these women reintroduces the very threat the war was meant to eliminate.
17. Moses orders two groups eliminated: *kol zakhar battaf* ('every male among the children/dependents') and *kol ishah yoda'at ish lemishkav zakhar* ('every woman who has known a man sexually'). The phrase *yoda'at ish* ('knowing a man') uses the verb *y-d-* in its intimate/sexual sense. The term *mishkav zakhar* ('lying with a male') is a technical expression for sexual intercourse. The rationale is strategic elimination of future military threats (males) and of women who participated in the Peor seduction. This is among the most ethically challenging passages in the Torah, confronting readers with the extremity of ancient warfare.

18. The surviving group is kol hattaf bannashim asher lo yade'u mishkav zakhar ('all the young females among the dependents who have not known sexual intercourse with a man'). The verb hachiyu ('keep alive, let live') from ch-y-h is the same verb used in verse 15 — there in accusation, here in command. The phrase lakhem ('for yourselves') indicates these girls would be absorbed into Israelite households, presumably as adopted members or future wives. They were deemed innocent of participation in the Peor seduction due to their age.
19. The seven-day quarantine outside the camp follows the corpse-contamination laws of Numbers 19. Two sources of impurity are specified: horeg nefesh ('one who has killed a person' — direct contact with death through killing) and noge'a bechalal ('one who has touched a corpse' — secondary contact). The purification verb titchatte'u (from ch-t-') denotes ritual decontamination using the red heifer ashes (Numbers 19:17-19). Both the soldiers (attem) and their captives (shevikhem) must be purified — impurity is indiscriminate and contaminates regardless of status.
20. Four categories of materials require purification: beged ('garment' — woven textiles), keli or ('leather article'), ma'aseh izzim ('goat-hair product' — coarser textiles and tent fabrics), and keli ets ('wooden implement'). These materials can absorb impurity and must be decontaminated. The comprehensive list — covering clothing, leather goods, textiles, and woodwork — ensures nothing contaminated enters the camp. The setumah marker after this verse signals a pause before Eleazar's additional purification instructions in the next section.
21. Eleazar now supplements Moses's purification instructions with additional legislation about metal objects. The phrase chuqqat haTorah ('the statute of the Torah/instruction') presents this as binding legal precedent, not situational guidance. Eleazar speaks with derived authority — asher tsivvah YHWH et Moshe ('which the LORD commanded Moses') — channeling the command through the Mosaic chain. This is one of the few passages where Eleazar independently delivers legislation, foreshadowing his role as priestly authority after Moses's death.
22. Six metals are catalogued: zahav ('gold'), kesef ('silver'), nechoshet ('copper/bronze'), barzel ('iron'), bedil ('tin'), and oferet ('lead'). This list represents the complete metallurgical knowledge of the Late Bronze/Early Iron Age Near East. These metals require a different purification process than organic materials because they can withstand fire. The word akh ('however, only') signals an exception clause — metals follow a different rule than the textiles and leather items listed in verse 20.
23. A dual purification system is established: fire-resistant items undergo both fire (ta'aviru va'esh — 'you shall pass through fire') and mei niddah ('water of lustration/separation' — the purification water containing red heifer ashes from Numbers 19). Items that melt or burn (lo yavo va'esh — 'cannot come into fire') need only water purification. The mei niddah is a technical term: niddah here means 'separation/removal' of impurity, not menstrual impurity. The fire-then-water sequence for metals establishes a principle that physical cleaning alone is insufficient — ritual purification must follow.
24. The final purification step is kibbastam bigdeikhem ('you shall launder your garments') on the seventh day — the culmination of the purification period that began in verse 19. The verb k-b-s refers specifically to laundering fabric, distinct from r-ch-ts (washing the body). The sequence is precise: after seven days of quarantine, corpse-contamination sprinkling on days three and seven (per Numbers 19), and laundering, the soldiers achieve taharah ('cleanness') and may re-enter the sacred space of the camp. The setumah marker signals the transition to spoils-division legislation.
25. A fresh divine speech formula introduces the spoils-division legislation. This new section (vv. 25-47) establishes a detailed protocol for distributing war plunder — a topic not previously addressed in Israelite law. The divine origin of the distribution formula gives it the authority of permanent legislation, not ad hoc arrangement. This protocol will serve as precedent for future military campaigns.
26. The phrase sa et rosh malqoach hashevi ('lift up the head of the captured plunder') uses the census idiom sa et rosh ('take a head-count') applied to spoils rather than persons. The counting authority is tripartite: Moses (civil leader), Eleazar (priestly authority), and rashei avot ha'edah ('the ancestral/clan heads of the community' — tribal elders). This three-part oversight ensures accountability and transparency in distribution. The inventory covers both ba'adam ('among humans') and babbehemah ('among animals').
27. The fundamental division is binary: half to tofsei hammilchamah ('those who seized the war' — active combatants who fought) and half to kol ha'edah ('the entire community' — those who remained in camp). This 50/50 split between fighters and non-combatants is distinctive. David later codified a similar principle in 1 Samuel 30:24-25: 'The share of the one who stayed with the supplies shall be the same as the share of the one who went into battle.' The community's share recognizes that the war was fought on behalf of all Israel, not just the 12,000 soldiers.
28. The soldiers' tribute (mekhes) to the LORD is 1/500 (0.2%). The term mekhes ('levy, tax, tribute') appears only in this chapter in the Torah, suggesting this is specialized war-taxation vocabulary. The levy applies across all four plunder categories: adam ('persons'), baqar ('cattle'), chamorim ('donkeys'), and tso'n ('sheep/goats'). The soldiers' tax rate is lower than the community's (1/500 vs. 1/50), perhaps because they risked their lives and already earned their share through combat service.
29. The soldiers' 1/500 levy goes directly to Eleazar as terumat YHWH ('the LORD's contribution/offering'). The term terumah (from r-w-m 'to lift up, to elevate') denotes something separated and elevated for sacred use — here, a portion of war spoils consecrated to God through priestly custody. This establishes the priesthood as the custodian of the LORD's share of war plunder, creating a revenue stream for the sanctuary from military campaigns.
30. The community's levy is 1/50 (2%) — ten times higher than the soldiers' rate of 1/500. This larger share goes to the Levites rather than the priests, described as shomrei mishmeret mishkan YHWH ('those who keep the charge/service of the LORD's Tabernacle'). The term mishmeret ('charge, duty, guard service') emphasizes the Levites' ongoing responsibility for maintaining and transporting the Tabernacle. The higher rate from non-combatants may reflect the principle that those who did not risk their lives contribute more of their share to sacred service.

31. The compliance formula *vayya'as Moshe ve'El'azar hakkohen ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Moshe* ('Moses and Eleazar the priest did as the LORD commanded Moses') serves as both conclusion to the instructions and introduction to the detailed inventory that follows. The pairing of Moses and Eleazar throughout this chapter anticipates the coming leadership transition — Eleazar will continue as priestly authority after Moses's death, ensuring institutional continuity.
32. The inventory begins with *hammalqoach yeter habbaz* ('the captured spoils, the remainder of the plunder'), distinguishing between what was taken in total (*malqoach*) and what remained after the battlefield (*yeter habbaz* — 'the surplus of the plunder'). The massive number of *tso'n* (675,000 sheep and goats) reflects the pastoral wealth of Midian, a semi-nomadic society whose economy centered on livestock. Whether these figures are literal or use the military convention where *elef* can mean 'clan/unit' rather than 'thousand' is debated by scholars.
33. The *baqar* ('cattle') figure of 72,000 represents the larger livestock. The term *baqar* covers oxen and cows — draft and dairy animals that were more valuable per head than sheep or goats but less numerous. The four-category inventory (sheep, cattle, donkeys, persons) parallels the four categories that will be subject to the LORD's levy in the division that follows.
34. Donkeys (*chamorim*) were the primary transport animals of the ancient Near East before widespread horse domestication. The 61,000 donkeys represent Midian's trade and transport capacity — Midian's location along major trade routes (they appear as traders in the Joseph narrative, Genesis 37:28) made donkeys essential to their economy. Their capture would severely impair Midianite commercial activity.
35. The final plunder category uses *nefesh adam* ('human persons') rather than a gendered term, then specifies *min hannashim asher lo yade'u mishkav zakhar* ('from the women who had not known sexual intercourse with a man'). The term *nefesh* ('person, living being') humanizes the captives even within the inventory context. These 32,000 represent the girls and young women spared under Moses's directive in verse 18. The number is strikingly large and raises questions about the scale conventions used in ancient Near Eastern military records.
36. The detailed halving begins with the soldiers' share (*chelek hayyots'im batsava* — 'the portion of those going out to the campaign'). The figure 337,500 is exactly half of 675,000, demonstrating the mathematical precision of the account. The meticulous record-keeping — verifiable at every step — serves both to establish transparency in the distribution and to demonstrate that the divine command was executed with exact fidelity.
37. The soldiers' sheep levy: 675 out of 337,500 = exactly 1/500 (0.2%), confirming the rate prescribed in verse 28. The mathematical precision ($337,500 \div 500 = 675$) is deliberate — each calculation in this section can be independently verified, lending the account an air of auditable accountability. These 675 animals went to Eleazar the priest as the LORD's portion.
38. The soldiers' cattle half: 36,000 (half of 72,000), with the LORD's levy of 72 ($36,000 \div 500 = 72$). Again, the arithmetic is exact. The detailed enumeration of each category — sheep, cattle, donkeys, persons — with its corresponding levy demonstrates that the divine tax was applied uniformly and completely. No category was exempted from the sacred contribution.
39. The soldiers' donkey half: 30,500 (half of 61,000), with the LORD's levy of 61 ($30,500 \div 500 = 61$). The consistency of the 1/500 rate across all four categories ensures equitable treatment. Each levy figure serves as an implicit proof of the total — if the levy is 61 at 1/500, the half-share must be 30,500 and the total must be 61,000.
40. The soldiers' share of persons: 16,000 (half of 32,000), with the LORD's levy of 32 persons ($16,000 \div 500 = 32$). The text uses *nefesh* ('person, living being') rather than *adam*, emphasizing the humanity of those being counted. These 32 persons became part of the priestly household's service, though their exact role and status are not specified. The application of the same fractional formula to human captives as to animals is jarring to modern readers but reflects the legal framework of ancient Near Eastern war.
41. The compliance formula closes the soldiers' levy section. The phrase *mekhes terumat YHWH* ('the levy of the LORD's contribution') combines both technical terms — *mekhes* (the tax/levy) and *terumah* (the sacred contribution). By giving it to Eleazar, Moses channels the divine portion through proper priestly custody, ensuring institutional rather than personal management of sacred resources.
42. The transition phrase *umimmachatsit benei Yisra'el* ('and from the half of the Israelites') shifts to the community's share. The verb *chatsah* ('he halved, he divided') from *ch-ts-h* emphasizes the precise bisection. Moses personally oversaw the division (*chatsah Moshe*), ensuring fairness between the soldiers and the community. The participle *hattsove'im* ('those serving in the military') from *ts-b-* distinguishes the combat force from the civilian community.
43. The community receives an identical count: *mechetsat ha'edah* ('the community's half') of sheep/goats is 337,500 — matching the soldiers' half exactly. The repetition of identical figures for both halves serves as an internal consistency check and demonstrates the equity of the distribution. The parenthetical structure in the Hebrew (this section parallels vv. 36-40) creates a literary balance between the two halves of the plunder.
44. The community's cattle half matches at 36,000. The identical figures across both halves — soldiers and community — confirm the equitable division commanded in verse 27. The brevity of this verse (only four Hebrew words) reflects the repetitive inventory style characteristic of ancient Near Eastern administrative records.
45. The community's donkey share: 30,500, identical to the soldiers' half. The four-category structure (sheep, cattle, donkeys, persons) is maintained in strict parallel across both halves of the distribution, creating a symmetrical accounting framework that ancient readers would have recognized as thorough and trustworthy.
46. The community's share of captive persons: 16,000, completing the parallel inventory. The parenthetical closure (matching the opening in v. 43 in the KJV rendering) brackets the community's share as a self-contained accounting unit. These 16,000 persons would be absorbed into Israelite households across the twelve tribes.

47. The community's 1/50 levy (2%) goes to the Levites (lalviyyim) rather than the priests. The term ha'achuz echad min hachamishim ('the seized-portion, one from the fifty') uses achuz from '-ch-z ('to seize, to grasp'), emphasizing the compulsory nature of the levy. The compliance formula ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Moshe closes the distribution section. The two-tier tax system — 1/500 to priests from soldiers, 1/50 to Levites from the community — mirrors the broader distinction between priestly and Levitical service roles.
48. A new section begins as happequdim ('the appointed officers,' from p-q-d 'to appoint, to muster') approach Moses voluntarily with an offering. These are the same sarei ha'alafim vesarei hame'ot ('commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds') whom Moses had rebuked in verse 14. Their approach now is contrite and grateful, bringing a freewill offering beyond the required levy — a dramatic reversal from their earlier confrontation with Moses.
49. The officers report an astonishing outcome: nasa'nu et rosh anshei hammilchamah ('we have taken the head-count of the men of war') and lo nifqad mimmenu ish ('not one man is unaccounted for among us'). The verb nifqad from p-q-d means 'was missing, was unaccounted for' in this context. Zero casualties in a major military campaign is presented as miraculous — evidence of divine protection. The self-designation avadekha ('your servants') shows deference to Moses after the earlier rebuke. This miraculous preservation motivates the voluntary gold offering that follows.
50. Five types of gold jewelry are offered: ets'adah ('armlet' — an arm-band worn on the upper arm), tsamid ('bracelet' — worn on the wrist), tabba'at ('signet ring'), agil ('earring' — a round hoop), and kumaz ('pendant/ornamental bead' — the exact form is uncertain, possibly a gold bead or amulet). The purpose is lekha'per al nafshoteinu ('to make expiation/atonement for ourselves') — not because they sinned, but as a gratitude offering acknowledging that their miraculous survival deserved a sacred response. The verb k-p-r ('to cover, to atone') here carries the sense of 'making oneself right' with God after experiencing extraordinary deliverance.
51. Moses and Eleazar receive kol keli ma'aseh ('all vessels/articles of craftsmanship') — these were not raw gold but worked jewelry, each piece representing individual artistry and personal value. The description as keli ma'aseh ('wrought/crafted items') distinguishes this voluntary offering from raw metal or bullion, emphasizing that the officers gave their personal possessions, not impersonal commodity.
52. The grand total of voluntary gold: 16,750 sheqels (approximately 190 kilograms or 420 pounds by the standard shekel of about 11.4 grams). This enormous sum — offered freely beyond the mandatory levy — testifies to both the wealth captured from Midian and the officers' gratitude for the miraculous zero-casualty campaign. The term terumah ('contribution') and the verb herimu ('they elevated/dedicated') use the same root r-w-m, emphasizing the lifting up of something from common to sacred status.
53. This parenthetical clarifies that anshei hatsava ('the men of the military force') — the rank-and-file soldiers — bazazu ish lo ('had plundered, each man for himself'). The officers' gold offering was their own personal initiative, separate from the mandatory levy. Common soldiers were entitled to keep whatever individual spoils they had seized. This verse distinguishes between three categories of war wealth: the official plunder (inventoried and divided), the mandatory levy (for priests and Levites), and personal battlefield seizures (retained by individual soldiers).
54. The gold is deposited in the Ohel Mo'ed ('Tent of Meeting') as a zikkaron livnei Yisra'el ('a memorial for the Israelites'). The term zikkaron ('memorial, remembrance') means the gold will serve as a permanent reminder of God's miraculous protection — zero casualties in a major war. Placed lifnei YHWH ('in the LORD's presence'), it becomes a sacred witness to divine faithfulness. The pe (parashah petuchah) marker at chapter's end signals a major section break. The chapter closes with an image of grateful worship — a fitting conclusion to what began as a command for vengeance.

32

Summary: *The tribes of Gad and Reuben — possessing vast herds — ask to settle in the conquered Transjordanian territory rather than crossing the Jordan. Moses rebukes them, comparing their request to the spies' discouragement of the previous generation. They negotiate a compromise: Gad and Reuben will build livestock pens and fortified cities east of the Jordan but will cross armed to fight alongside their brothers until the conquest is complete. Half the tribe of Manasseh also settles in the Transjordan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Moses's anger at the initial request (v. 14) invokes the memory of Kadesh-barnea: 'You have risen in your fathers' place, a brood of sinful men, to add still more to the LORD's burning anger against Israel.' The specter of the spies' generation haunts every decision. The word miqneh ('livestock,' v. 1) drives the entire negotiation — material wealth versus national solidarity. The compromise is expressed in covenantal language: if they fail to cross, their sin 'will find them out' (v. 23).*

Translation Friction: *The phrase chinnukh ('armed,' or possibly 'equipped,' v. 17) for how Gad and Reuben will cross the Jordan is debated — the root ch-l-ts suggests stripping for action or girding for battle. We rendered it 'armed' while noting the range. Moses's warning vehi'u neqi'im min-YHWH umin-Yisra'el ('you will be clear before the LORD and before Israel,' v. 22) uses neqi'im ('free from obligation, innocent') — a legal term for discharge of duty that we rendered 'free of obligation.'*

Connections: Moses's comparison to the spies (vv. 8-13) references Numbers 13-14 directly. The Transjordanian settlement fulfills the conquests of Numbers 21:21-35. The commitment to fight alongside their brothers is tested in Joshua 1:12-18 and fulfilled in Joshua 22:1-6. The half-tribe of Manasseh's settlement (v. 33) reflects the divided inheritance of Joseph's sons anticipated in Genesis 48.

¹The descendants of Reuben and the descendants of Gad possessed an enormously large number of livestock. When they surveyed the territory of Jazer and the territory of Gilead, they recognized it as ideal grazing land. ²The descendants of Gad and the descendants of Reuben came and addressed Moses, Eleazar the priest, and the community leaders, saying: ³'Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon — ⁴the territory that the LORD struck down before the Israelite assembly is perfect grazing country, and your servants have livestock.' ⁵They continued: 'If we have found favor in your eyes, let this territory be granted to your servants as a permanent holding. Do not make us cross the Jordan.' ⁶Moses responded to the descendants of Gad and the descendants of Reuben: 'Should your kinsmen march off to war while you settle down here?' ⁷Why would you demoralize the Israelites, discouraging them from crossing into the land the LORD has given them? ⁸This is exactly what your ancestors did when I sent them from Kadesh-barnea to scout the land. ⁹They went as far as the Eshcol Valley, surveyed the land, and then crushed the Israelites' resolve so that they would not enter the land the LORD had given them. ¹⁰The LORD's anger blazed that day, and He swore an oath: ¹¹'None of the men who came up from Egypt, twenty years old and above, will ever see the land I promised by oath to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — because they did not follow Me wholeheartedly.' ¹²The exceptions were Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and Joshua son of Nun, because they followed the LORD wholeheartedly. ¹³The LORD's anger burned against Israel, and He made them wander in the wilderness for forty years until the entire generation that had acted wickedly in the LORD's sight had perished. ¹⁴And now look — you have risen up in your ancestors' place, a new crop of sinful men, adding still more fuel to the LORD's burning anger against Israel! ¹⁵If you turn away from following Him, He will once again abandon them in the wilderness — and you will have destroyed this entire people. ¹⁶They approached him and proposed: 'We will build stone enclosures here for our flocks and fortified towns for our dependents, ¹⁷but we ourselves will arm up and march as the vanguard ahead of the Israelites until we have brought them to their allotted territory. Meanwhile, our dependents will remain in the fortified towns, safe from the region's inhabitants.' ¹⁸We will not go back to our homes until every Israelite has received his territorial inheritance. ¹⁹We are not claiming any inheritance with them on the western side of the Jordan or beyond, since our inheritance has come to us on the eastern side of the Jordan. ²⁰Moses replied to them: 'If you carry out this commitment — if you arm yourselves for battle in the LORD's presence, ²¹and every one of your armed men crosses the Jordan in the LORD's presence until He has dispossessed His enemies before Him, ²²and the land is subdued before the LORD — then afterward you may return, and you will be clear of obligation both to the LORD and to Israel. This territory will be your permanent holding, recognized by the LORD. ²³But if you fail to do this — know that you will have sinned against the LORD, and be certain: your sin will track you down. ²⁴Build towns for your dependents and enclosures for your flocks — and carry out what you have pledged. ²⁵The descendants of Gad and the descendants of Reuben answered Moses: 'Your servants will do exactly as my lord commands. ²⁶Our dependents, our wives, our livestock, and all our animals will remain there in the towns of Gilead, ²⁷while your servants — every armed man among us — will cross over in the LORD's presence for battle, exactly as my lord has stated.' ²⁸Moses then gave instructions concerning them to Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the ancestral leaders of the Israelite tribes. ²⁹Moses told them: 'If the descendants of Gad and the descendants of Reuben cross the Jordan with you — every man armed for combat in the LORD's presence — and the land is subdued before you, then you must grant them the territory of Gilead as their permanent holding. ³⁰But if they do not cross over armed with you, they must accept their holdings among you in the land of Canaan.' ³¹The descendants of Gad and the descendants of Reuben answered: 'What the LORD has spoken to your servants — that is what we will do. ³²We ourselves will cross over armed in the LORD's presence into the land of Canaan, while the territory of our inherited holding remains ours on the eastern side of the Jordan.' ³³So Moses granted to the descendants of Gad, the descendants of Reuben, and the half-tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph: the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan — the territory with its towns and the surrounding borderlands. ³⁴The descendants of Gad rebuilt Dibon, Ataroth, and Aroer, ³⁵Atroth-shophan, Jazer,

and Jogbehah, ³⁶Beth-nimrah, and Beth-haran — fortified towns with sheep enclosures. ³⁷The descendants of Reuben rebuilt Heshbon, Elealeh, and Kiriathaim, ³⁸Nebo, Baal-meon (with their names changed), and Sibmah. They gave new names to the towns they rebuilt. ³⁹The descendants of Machir son of Manasseh marched into Gilead, captured it, and drove out the Amorites who were living there. ⁴⁰Moses allocated Gilead to Machir son of Manasseh, and he settled there. ⁴¹Jair, a descendant of Manasseh, went and captured their tent-villages and named them Havvoth-jair. ⁴²Nobah went and captured Kenath and its surrounding settlements and renamed it Nobah, after himself.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening clause *miqneh rav... atsum me'od* ('exceedingly vast and mighty livestock') uses two intensifiers (*rav* and *atsum me'od*) to emphasize the sheer scale of their herds. The narrative tension is set immediately: economic self-interest (ideal pastureland) versus national solidarity (crossing the Jordan together). The term *maqom miqneh* ('a place for livestock') employs the repetition of *maqom* to create emphasis — this place was the quintessential livestock territory. Jazer and Gilead are in Transjordan, the territory recently conquered from Sihon and Og (Numbers 21).
2. The order shifts: Gad is named before Reuben here (though Reuben was first in v. 1), suggesting Gad was the more assertive tribe in this petition. The full leadership — Moses, Eleazar, and the *nesi'im* ('chieftains') — is present, indicating this is a formal petition through proper channels, not a secret negotiation. The triple audience (civil leader, priest, tribal heads) ensures the request receives comprehensive review from all governing authorities.
3. Nine Transjordanian cities are listed, all in the former territories of Sihon king of the Amorites. Ataroth ('crowns') lay in the Moabite plateau region. Dibon (modern Dhiban) was the later Moabite capital where the Mesha Stele was discovered. Heshbon was Sihon's former capital (Numbers 21:26). Nebo was near Mount Nebo where Moses would later die. Several of these names appear in variant forms later in the chapter (vv. 34-38), suggesting fluid naming conventions. The rapid list conveys the tribes' thorough reconnaissance of the region.
4. The petitioners frame their case with shrewd rhetoric: they credit God for the conquest (*hikkah YHWH lifnei adat Yisra'el* — 'the LORD struck before the assembly of Israel'), acknowledging divine agency. They then match the land's character to their need: *erets miqneh hi* ('it is livestock territory') and *la'avadekha miqneh* ('your servants have livestock'). The self-deprecating *avadekha* ('your servants') is diplomatic language. The *setumah* marker indicates a pause — perhaps representing Moses's processing of the request before his explosive response.
5. The petition climaxes with the fateful request: *al ta'avirenu et haYarden* ('do not make us cross the Jordan'). The polite framing *im matsanu chen be'einekha* ('if we have found favor in your eyes') cannot mask the explosive implications. The term *achuzzah* ('holding, permanent possession') implies a permanent land grant, not a temporary arrangement. This request effectively asks to opt out of the national project of conquering Canaan — the very goal of the 40-year wilderness journey. Moses will hear in this echo of the spies' rebellion.
6. Moses's reply is a stinging rhetorical question: *ha'acheikhem yavo'u lammilchamah ve'attem teshvu foh* ('shall your brothers go to war while you sit here?'). The contrast between *yavo'u* ('they will go') and *teshvu* ('you will sit/settle') is devastating — one verb implies action and sacrifice, the other implies comfortable inaction. The word *acheikhem* ('your brothers') is deliberately chosen to invoke kinship obligation. Moses frames the request as abandonment of family at the moment of greatest need.
7. The verb *teni'un* ('you will discourage, you will deter') from *n-w-* means to hinder someone's resolve, to break their will. The *ketiv-qere* variant (*tenu'un/teni'un*) preserves an alternate spelling in the manuscript tradition. Moses's concern is psychological contagion: if two tribes refuse to cross, others may lose heart. The phrase *et lev benei Yisra'el* ('the heart of the Israelites') uses *lev* ('heart') in its sense of courage and determination, not emotion. Moses fears a repeat of the spies' catastrophe, as he makes explicit in the next verses.
8. Moses invokes the catastrophic spy episode (Numbers 13-14) as historical precedent: *koh asu avoteikhem* ('thus your fathers acted'). The reference to Kadesh-barnea — the staging point for the original reconnaissance mission — links the present request to the greatest failure in Israel's wilderness history. The phrase *besholechi otam* ('when I sent them') puts Moses himself in the narrative, reminding Gad and Reuben that he personally experienced the consequences of that earlier failure. The parallel is pointed: just as the spies discouraged the people from entering, so now these tribes risk the same effect.
9. The verb *vayyani'u* ('they discouraged, they dissuaded') is the same root *n-w-* used in verse 7, creating a direct verbal link between the spies' sin and Reuben and Gad's request. *Nachal Eshkol* ('the Valley of the Cluster') was named for the enormous grape cluster the spies brought back (Numbers 13:23-24). The irony is that the spies saw good land and reported it as unconquerable, while Reuben and Gad see good land and want to keep it for themselves. Both responses prioritize self-interest over covenant obedience.
10. The idiom *vayyichar af YHWH* ('the LORD's nostril burned' — His anger blazed) introduces the divine oath. The verb *vayyishava* ('he swore') marks what follows as an irrevocable divine decree — God binds Himself by oath. Moses recounts the history to show Reuben and Gad the catastrophic stakes: the last time Israel refused to cross into the land, God's response was a 40-year sentence of death in the wilderness. The parallel is a warning: do not trigger a second such oath.
11. The oath formula *im yir'u* ('if they shall see' — meaning 'they shall certainly never see') uses the conditional *im* as a negative oath particle — an incomplete oath where the implied self-curse is suppressed. The age threshold *mibben esrim shanah vama'lah* ('from twenty years old and upward') matches the census categories and the military service age. The accusation *lo mil'u acharai* ('they did not fill up after Me' — they did not follow Me completely) uses *m-l-* ('to fill') metaphorically: their obedience was partial, not full. The oath invokes the patriarchal promise chain — Abraham, Isaac, Jacob — to show what the exodus generation forfeited.

12. Only two men from the exodus generation were exempt: Caleb and Joshua. Caleb is identified as haqquenizzi ('the Kenizzite'), connecting him to an Edomite clan (Genesis 36:11, 42) later absorbed into Judah — a detail emphasizing that wholehearted obedience, not ethnic origin, determined divine favor. The phrase mil'u acharei YHWH ('they filled up after the LORD' — they followed completely) echoes the accusation of verse 11 with opposite outcome. These two men are living proof that faith and obedience bring fulfillment of the promise.
13. The verb vayyeni'em ('He made them wander') from n-w- is the same root as 'discourage' in verses 7 and 9 — creating a devastating wordplay. The spies who 'wandered' the people's hearts from obedience caused God to make them 'wander' in the desert. The phrase ad tom kol haddor ('until the completion of the entire generation') uses t-m-m ('to be complete, to be finished') in its sense of total exhaustion — every last person of that generation died. Moses's historical review is a threat: if you repeat their sin, you may trigger a second wilderness sentence.
14. The accusation is scathing: tarbut anashim chatta'im ('a brood/crop of sinful men'). The rare word tarbut ('increase, brood, offspring') from r-b-h implies they are a proliferation of their fathers' sin — the same rebellion reproducing in the next generation. The infinitive lispor od ('to add yet more') uses the same verb s-p-h ('to add, to heap up') that describes accumulating divine wrath. Moses portrays them not as making a reasonable real estate request but as repeating the most catastrophic sin in Israel's history.
15. Moses's climactic warning: teshuvun me'acharav ('if you turn back from following Him') uses the verb sh-w-v ('to turn, to return') in its sense of apostasy — turning away from God. The consequence is devastating: veyasaf od lehanicho bamidbar ('He will add yet again to leave them in the wilderness'). The verb h-n-ch ('to leave, to rest, to abandon') implies God depositing Israel in the desert and walking away. The final accusation veshichatem lekhol ha'am hazzeh ('you will have destroyed this entire people') makes Reuben and Gad responsible for national annihilation. The setumah marks a pause — Moses has finished his prosecution. The tribes must now respond.
16. The response begins with vayyigshu elav ('they drew near to him') — a gesture of respectful approach after the thunderous rebuke. Their counter-proposal addresses Moses's concern directly. The giderot tso'n ('stone enclosures for flocks') are walled pens to protect livestock, while arim letappenu ('towns for our dependents') indicates permanent settlements with defensive capability. The order is significant: they mention livestock pens before children's cities — a priority that Moses will subtly correct in verse 24. Their plan is to settle families and flocks, then march with the army.
17. The key concession: nechalets chushim lifnei benei Yisra'el ('we will arm ourselves swiftly before the Israelites'). The verb nechalets ('we will equip ourselves') from ch-l-ts means to strip for battle, and chushim ('swiftly, hastily') from ch-w-sh adds urgency — they will rush to the front lines. The phrase lifnei ('before, ahead of') means they will serve as the vanguard, the most dangerous position. The reasoning for leaving families behind is practical: mippenei yoshevei ha'arets ('because of the land's inhabitants') — local populations pose a security threat to unprotected families.
18. The promise is sweeping: lo nashuv el batteinu ('we will not return to our houses') — open-ended military service until the conquest is complete. The verb hitnachel ('to receive an inheritance') from n-ch-l in the Hitpa'el is reflexive: each Israelite must have personally taken possession of his nachalah ('inheritance, allotted territory'). This commitment means years of separation from families — the conquest of Canaan under Joshua would take approximately seven years. The pledge addresses Moses's fear of abandonment at the decisive moment.
19. The tribes clarify that they are not seeking double portions — lo ninchal ittam me'ever laYarden vahal'ah ('we will not inherit with them across the Jordan and beyond'). They waive all claims to Cisjordanian territory in exchange for Transjordan. The phrase ba'ah nachalatenu eleinu ('our inheritance has come to us') uses the feminine verb form matching nachalah, portraying the inheritance as having actively arrived — as if the land itself chose them. The pe (parashah petuchah) marker signals a major break before Moses's response, which shifts from accusation to conditional acceptance.
20. Moses shifts from prosecutor to negotiator with a conditional structure: im ta'asun et haddavar hazzeh ('if you do this thing'). The double im ('if... if') creates a compound condition, and Moses notably elevates the commitment: while the tribes said lifnei benei Yisra'el ('before the Israelites,' v. 17), Moses says lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD'). This reframing transforms a military obligation into a sacred covenant — they march not merely ahead of their brothers but in the presence of God.
21. Moses specifies the scope: kol chaluts ('every armed man') — no partial commitment is acceptable. The Jordan crossing is lifnei YHWH ('in the LORD's presence'), further sacralizing the obligation. The goal is ad horisho et oyvav mipanav ('until He has dispossessed His enemies from before Him') — using the Hif'il of y-r-sh ('to drive out, to dispossess'). The enemies are described as God's enemies (oyvav), not Israel's, framing the conquest as a divine project in which Israel is the instrument.
22. The conditional reward has three elements: the land must be conquered (nikhbashah ha'arets lifnei YHWH — 'the land is subdued before the LORD'), then they may return (tashuvu), and they will be neqiyim ('clear, innocent, free of obligation') before both God and Israel. The dual accountability — meYHWH umiyYisra'el ('from the LORD and from Israel') — means their obligation is simultaneously sacred and social. Only after full compliance does the land become la'achuzzah lifnei YHWH ('a holding before the LORD') — their tenure is divinely authorized, not merely pragmatic.
23. The warning is memorable: chattatemm laYHWH ('you will have sinned against the LORD') states the theological consequence, while chattat'khem asher timtsa etkhem ('your sin which will find you') personifies sin as a hunter that pursues and catches the sinner. The verb m-ts- ('to find, to discover') portrays sin as an active agent — you cannot outrun or hide from its consequences. This verse has become proverbial in English ('be sure your sin will find you out'), though the Hebrew is more vivid: sin is a predator, not merely an accounting entry.
24. Moses subtly corrects the tribes' priorities: in verse 16 they said giderot tso'n ('folds for livestock') before arim letappenu ('towns for our children'). Moses reverses the order: arim letappekhem ('towns for your dependents') first, then gederot leto'nakhem ('enclosures for your flocks'). People

before property. The closing command *vehayyotse mippikhem ta'asu* ('what has come out of your mouths you shall do') invokes the vow principle from Numbers 30:3 — spoken commitments are binding. Their verbal pledge has the force of a sacred oath.

25. The formal acceptance uses deferential language: *avadekha* ('your servants') and *adoni* ('my lord'). The pledge *ka'asher adoni metsavveh* ('as my lord commands') uses the participle *metsavveh*, implying ongoing obedience — not a one-time compliance but continuous submission to Moses's authority. The shift from negotiation to subordination is complete: they accept not just the specific terms but Moses's overall authority to set conditions.
26. The tribes detail what stays behind: *tappenu* ('our dependents'), *nasheinu* ('our wives'), *miqnenu* ('our livestock'), and *kol behemtenu* ('all our animals'). The location is specified as *arei haGil'ad* ('the towns of Gilead'). Notably, they now follow Moses's corrected priority order: people (dependents, wives) before animals (livestock, herds). Their acceptance of Moses's reordering signals genuine submission rather than mere verbal compliance.
27. The tribes adopt Moses's sacralizing language: *lifnei YHWH* ('in the LORD's presence') rather than their original *lifnei benei Yisra'el* ('before the Israelites'). The phrase *kol chaluts tsava* ('every armed man of the force') reiterates that all capable fighters will serve — no exemptions. The closing *ka'asher adoni dover* ('as my lord is speaking') uses the participle *dover*, suggesting they accept not just what Moses has already said but whatever he may yet say on the matter.
28. Moses formalizes the agreement by instructing three parties: Eleazar (priestly authority), Joshua (Moses's successor as military-civil leader), and *rashei avot hamattot* ('the tribal ancestral heads'). Joshua's inclusion is significant — Moses knows he will not personally oversee the fulfillment of this agreement. By charging Joshua specifically, Moses ensures institutional continuity: the next generation's leader is bound to enforce the deal. This is one of the earliest explicit preparations for the leadership transition to Joshua.
29. Moses restates the conditional terms for the successor leadership. The condition *im ya'averu* ('if they cross') triggers the obligation *untattem lahem* ('you shall give them'). The verb *n-t-n* ('to give') here means 'to grant formally' — an official land allocation, not a casual concession. Moses addresses this to the leadership collectively (*ittekhem* — 'with you,' plural), binding the entire governing body to the agreement. The phrase *eret haGil'ad la'achuzzah* ('the land of Gilead as a holding') confirms the permanent nature of the grant.
30. The penalty for non-compliance: *veno'achazu betokh'khem be'erets Kena'an* ('they shall be seized/given holdings among you in the land of Canaan'). The verb *no'achazu* from *'-ch-z* (Nifal — 'they shall be settled, given a holding') means they would be absorbed into Cisjordanian territory without their preferred Transjordanian land. This is not a reward but a penalty — they lose their chosen territory and must accept whatever allocation comes through the general lottery. The consequence is loss of choice, not loss of inheritance.
31. The acceptance formula *et asher dibber YHWH el avadekha ken na'aseh* ('what the LORD has spoken to your servants, thus we will do') elevates the agreement to divine covenant status. They attribute the terms not to Moses but to God (dibber YHWH), acknowledging the sacred authority behind the negotiation. The emphatic *ken na'aseh* ('thus we will do') mirrors Israel's covenant acceptance at Sinai — *na'aseh* ('we will do,' Exodus 24:7). The verbal echo may be intentional, framing this tribal agreement as a sub-covenant within the larger Sinaitic framework.
32. The emphatic *nachnu* ('we ourselves') personalizes the commitment. The phrase *na'avor chalutsim lifnei YHWH erets Kena'an* ('we will cross armed before the LORD into Canaan') states both the action (crossing armed) and the destination (Canaan — not their own territory). The counterbalance is *ve'ittanu achuzzat nachalatenu me'ever laYarden* ('and with us the holding of our inheritance across the Jordan'). The compound *achuzzat nachalatenu* ('the holding of our inheritance') combines both legal terms for landed property, reinforcing the permanence of their Transjordanian claim.
33. A surprise addition: *lachatsi shevet Menasheh ben Yosef* ('to the half-tribe of Manasseh son of Joseph') — Manasseh was not part of the original petition. Their inclusion is unexplained in the text; possibly Manassite clans had already begun settling Gilead independently (vv. 39-42), or Moses strategically placed a loyal tribe alongside the petitioners as a check. The grant encompasses two conquered kingdoms: *mamlekhot Sichon* ('the kingdom of Sihon') and *mamlekhot Og* ('the kingdom of Og'). The phrase *ha'arets le'areha bigevulot* ('the land with its cities in the boundaries') confirms a comprehensive territorial grant including urban centers and border regions.
34. The verb *vayyivnu* ('they built') likely means rebuilt or fortified, since these were existing cities listed in verse 3. Dibon became Gad's most significant city — the later Moabite king Mesha would boast of recapturing it on the Mesha Stele (c. 840 BCE). Ataroth (from the root *'-t-r* 'to crown') was also mentioned on the Mesha Stele as a city that 'the men of Gad had always lived in.' Aroer ('stripped, bare') sat on the edge of the Arnon gorge, a natural boundary.
35. *Atroth-shophan* ('crowns of the barren one') is a compound name distinguishing this Ataroth from the one in verse 34. Jazer (Ya'zer) was strategically important — it was among the first cities reconnoitered (v. 1) and controlled access to the northern Transjordanian highlands. *Jogbehah* (from *g-b-h* 'to be high, exalted') was a fortified elevation — Gideon would later pursue Midianites past this location (Judges 8:11). These towns formed Gad's northern territorial anchors.
36. *Beth-nimrah* ('house of the leopard/clear water') and *Beth-haran* ('house of the mountaineer') were in the Jordan Valley. The description *arei mivtsar vegidroth tso'n* ('fortified towns and sheep enclosures') fulfills the dual-purpose settlement plan from verse 16 — military fortification for human security and pastoral infrastructure for livestock. The combination of urban defense and pastoral economy characterizes the Transjordanian settlement pattern: towns served as both refuges and economic centers for the surrounding grazing lands.

37. Reuben's allotment centers on Heshbon (Cheshbon — from ch-sh-v 'to think, to calculate'), the former capital of Sihon (Numbers 21:26). Elealeh ('God has ascended') was a hilltop town near Heshbon. Kiriathaim ('double city') was a town in the Moabite plateau. All three appear in later prophetic oracles against Moab (Isaiah 15-16, Jeremiah 48), indicating they eventually reverted to Moabite control — a development that would vindicate concerns about Transjordanian vulnerability.
38. The parenthetical musabbot shem ('their names being changed/redirected') is significant: Baal-meon ('lord of the dwelling') contained the theophoric element Ba'al, a Canaanite deity name. The Israelites renamed cities to remove pagan divine names — a practice of religious purification through toponymic replacement. Nebo was associated with the Babylonian god Nabu. Sibmah (Sivmah) was known for its vineyards (Isaiah 16:8-9). The renaming campaign shows the tribes were not merely occupying but actively Israelitizing the territory.
39. The Machirite conquest appears independently initiated: vayyelekhhu... Gil'adah vayyilkeduhah ('they went to Gilead and captured it'). Machir was Manasseh's firstborn (Genesis 50:23) and the primary warrior clan of the tribe. The verb vayyoresh ('he dispossessed') from y-r-sh indicates complete displacement of the Amorite population — the same verb used for Israel's mandate to dispossess Canaan's inhabitants. This independent Machirite campaign may explain why the half-tribe of Manasseh was added to the Transjordanian grant in verse 33 — they had already created facts on the ground.
40. Moses formalizes what Machir achieved militarily: vayyitten Moshe et haGil'ad leMakhir ('Moses gave Gilead to Machir'). The verb n-t-n ('to give') in this context means official allocation — Moses ratifies the conquest with legal authority. The phrase vayyeshev bah ('and he settled in it') uses the singular, treating the clan Machir as a corporate individual. Gilead becomes permanently associated with Machir/Manasseh, as reflected in the common designation 'Gilead' for the half-tribe of Manasseh's territory.
41. Jair (Ya'ir — 'he enlightens/shines') captured chavvot ('tent-villages' — small unwall settlements, from the root ch-w-h meaning 'tent' or 'village'). The naming chavvot Ya'ir ('the tent-villages of Jair') creates an eponymous toponym — the place carries the conqueror's name. These were small rural settlements in northern Gilead/Bashan, distinct from the fortified towns. The practice of naming conquered territories after oneself was standard in the ancient Near East and established personal/clan claims to territory.
42. Nobah captures Qenat ('Kenath' — possibly related to Akkadian qanatu 'reed') and its benoteiha ('its daughters' — satellite settlements dependent on the main town). The metaphor of a city and its 'daughters' portrays urban geography as familial: the main town is the mother-city, surrounding villages are her dependents. The renaming vayyiqra lah Novach bishmo ('he called it Nobah by his name') follows the same eponymous pattern as Jair. The pe marker closes the chapter and the entire Transjordanian settlement narrative. The chapter ends not with covenant ceremony but with conquest and naming — establishing the eastern tribes' territorial identity.

33

Summary: *A comprehensive travel itinerary lists forty-two stages of Israel's journey from Rameses in Egypt to the plains of Moab — explicitly attributed to Moses's own writing at God's command. The chapter then shifts to forward-looking legislation: drive out the inhabitants of Canaan, destroy their idolatrous installations, and divide the land by lot among the tribes. Failure to dispossess them will mean they become 'barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the few Torah passages that explicitly claims Mosaic authorship of a specific text: vayyikhtov Mosheh ('Moses wrote,' v. 2). The forty-two-station itinerary compresses forty years of wandering into a single literary catalog — each place-name is a compressed narrative, carrying associations of judgment, miracle, or crisis. The chiasmic structure of verse 2 (departures-stages... stages-departures) creates a literary frame emphasizing completeness.*

Translation Friction: *The term mas'ei ('stages,' v. 1) from the root n-s-' ('to pull up tent pegs, to set out') specifically denotes the segments between campsites — we chose 'stages' rather than 'journeys' to preserve this precise sense. Many of the forty-two place-names are otherwise unknown, and their locations remain debated; we transliterated them consistently rather than attempting modern identifications. The warning about 'barbs in your eyes' (sikkot be'eineikhem, v. 55) uses a metaphor of constant irritation.*

Connections: *The departure from Rameses (v. 3) recalls Exodus 12:37. Aaron's death notice at Mount Hor (v. 38) matches Numbers 20:22-29. The command to destroy Canaanite cult installations (v. 52) connects to Deuteronomy 7:5 and 12:2-3. The warning about failing to dispossess (v. 55-56) anticipates Judges 2:1-5, where exactly this failure occurs.*

¹These are the stages of the Israelites' journey when they departed from the land of Egypt, organized by their divisions, under the leadership of Moses and Aaron. ²Moses recorded their departure points according to their stages of travel, at the LORD's command. These are their stages of travel according to their departure points. ³They set out from Rameses in the

first month, on the fifteenth day of the first month — the day after the Passover sacrifice — the Israelites marched out defiantly, in full view of all Egypt. ⁴Meanwhile the Egyptians were burying those whom the LORD had struck down among them — every firstborn — while the LORD executed judgments against their gods. ⁵The Israelites set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth. ⁶They set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, which is on the edge of the wilderness. ⁷They set out from Etham but turned back toward Pi-hahiroth, which faces Baal-zephon, and they camped in front of Migdol. ⁸They set out from Pi-hahiroth and passed through the sea into the wilderness. After traveling three days through the wilderness of Etham, they camped at Marah. ⁹They set out from Marah and arrived at Elim. At Elim there were twelve water springs and seventy palm trees, and they camped there. ¹⁰They set out from Elim and camped by the Sea of Reeds. ¹¹They set out from the Sea of Reeds and camped in the wilderness of Sin. ¹²They set out from the wilderness of Sin and camped at Dophkah. ¹³They set out from Dophkah and camped at Alush. ¹⁴They set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, where there was no water for the people to drink. ¹⁵They set out from Rephidim and camped in the wilderness of Sinai. ¹⁶They set out from the wilderness of Sinai and camped at Kibroth-hattaavah. ¹⁷They set out from Kibroth-hattaavah and camped at Hazeroth. ¹⁸They set out from Hazeroth and camped at Rithmah. ¹⁹They set out from Rithmah and camped at Rimmon-perez. ²⁰They set out from Rimmon-perez and camped at Libnah. ²¹They set out from Libnah and camped at Rissah. ²²They set out from Rissah and camped at Kehelathah. ²³They set out from Kehelathah and camped at Mount Shepher. ²⁴They set out from Mount Shepher and camped at Haradah. ²⁵They set out from Haradah and camped at Makheloth. ²⁶They set out from Makheloth and camped at Tahath. ²⁷They set out from Tahath and camped at Terah. ²⁸They set out from Terah and camped at Mithkah. ²⁹They set out from Mithkah and camped at Hashmonah. ³⁰They set out from Hashmonah and camped at Moseroth. ³¹They set out from Moseroth and camped at Bene-jaakan. ³²They set out from Bene-jaakan and camped at Hor-hagidgad. ³³They set out from Hor-hagidgad and camped at Jotbathah. ³⁴They set out from Jotbathah and camped at Abronah. ³⁵They set out from Abronah and camped at Ezion-geber. ³⁶They set out from Ezion-geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin — that is, Kadesh. ³⁷They set out from Kadesh and camped at Mount Hor, on the border of the land of Edom. ³⁸Aaron the priest ascended Mount Hor at the LORD's command and died there, in the fortieth year after the Israelites' departure from Egypt, on the first day of the fifth month. ³⁹Aaron was 123 years old when he died on Mount Hor. ⁴⁰The Canaanite king of Arad, who lived in the Negev region of the land of Canaan, learned of the Israelites' approach. ⁴¹They set out from Mount Hor and camped at Zalmonah. ⁴²They set out from Zalmonah and camped at Punon. ⁴³They set out from Punon and camped at Oboth. ⁴⁴They set out from Oboth and camped at Iye-abarim, on the Moabite border. ⁴⁵They set out from Iyim and camped at Dibon-gad. ⁴⁶They set out from Dibon-gad and camped at Almon-diblathaim. ⁴⁷They set out from Almon-diblathaim and camped in the Abarim mountains, facing Nebo. ⁴⁸They set out from the Abarim mountains and camped on the Moabite plains beside the Jordan, across from Jericho. ⁴⁹They camped along the Jordan from Beth-jeshimoth to Abel-shittim on the Moabite plains. ⁵⁰The LORD spoke to Moses on the Moabite plains beside the Jordan, across from Jericho: ⁵¹'Speak to the Israelites and tell them: When you cross the Jordan into the land of Canaan, ⁵²you must dispossess all the land's inhabitants from before you, destroy all their carved stone images, demolish all their cast metal idols, and tear down all their worship platforms. ⁵³You are to take possession of the land and settle in it, because I have given the land to you to possess. ⁵⁴You must distribute the land by lot among your clans. For the larger group, increase its allotment; for the smaller group, reduce its allotment. Wherever the lot falls for each group — that territory is theirs. The distribution shall follow your ancestral tribes. ⁵⁵But if you do not dispossess the land's inhabitants from before you, then those you allow to remain will become barbs in your eyes and thorns in your sides — they will harass you in the very land where you live. ⁵⁶And what I had planned to do to them, I will do to you instead.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The heading *elleh mas'ei venei Yisra'el* ('these are the stages/journeys of the Israelites') introduces the most comprehensive travel itinerary in the Torah — 42 stations from Rameses to the plains of Moab. The term *mas'ei* (plural of *masa*, from *n-s-* 'to pull up, to set out') specifically denotes stages of a journey, each marked by breaking camp and marching. The phrase *letsivetotam* ('by their divisions/armies') uses the same military-organizational term as in the census lists, emphasizing the structured, disciplined nature of the march. The dual leadership *beyad Moshe ve'Aaron* ('by the hand of Moses and Aaron') establishes both civil and priestly authority over the journey.

2. This verse uniquely attributes the itinerary to Moses's own writing: vayyikhtov Moshe ('Moses wrote') — one of the few Torah passages explicitly claiming Mosaic authorship of a specific text. The phrase *al pi YHWH* ('at the mouth/command of the LORD') means this was divinely commissioned record-keeping, not personal memoir. The chiasmic structure — *motz'eihem lemaseihem... mas'eihem lemotsa'eihem* ('their departures according to their stages... their stages according to their departures') — creates a literary frame that emphasizes completeness: the record covers every departure and every stage.
3. The journey begins at Ra'amses (the Egyptian store-city Pi-Ramesses in the eastern Delta, built by Israelite forced labor per Exodus 1:11). The precise date — the fifteenth of the first month (Nisan), the morning after the Passover — anchors the exodus in the liturgical calendar. The phrase *beyad ramah* ('with a raised/high hand') denotes triumphant defiance, not stealth — Israel departed openly, not as fugitives. The phrase *le'inei kol Mitsrayim* ('in the eyes/sight of all Egypt') emphasizes the public, witnessed nature of the departure. Stage 1 of 42.
4. The departure scene is set against Egyptian mourning: *Mitsrayim meqabberim* ('Egypt was burying') — the present participle captures the simultaneous action: as Israel marches out triumphantly, Egypt is busy with mass funeral rites for *kol bekhôr* ('every firstborn'). The phrase *u've'eloheihem asah YHWH shefatim* ('and against their gods the LORD executed judgments') indicates the plagues were not merely natural disasters but theological confrontations — each plague targeted an Egyptian deity. This theological interpretation transforms the exodus from a political escape into a divine courtroom drama.
5. Station 1 to Station 2. Sukkot ('booths, shelters') was the first encampment after Rameses, located near the modern Tell el-Maskhuta in the Wadi Tumilat. The name may reflect temporary shelters used at this staging point, or it may be an Egyptian toponym adapted into Hebrew. Exodus 12:37 specifies approximately 600,000 men on foot departed from Rameses for Succoth. This is the beginning of the journey's Egyptian phase (stations 1-6), tracing the route from the Delta to the Red Sea crossing.
6. Station 2 to Station 3. Etham (Eitam) is described as *biqtseh hammidbar* ('on the edge/border of the wilderness'), marking the transition from the cultivated Delta into the desert. The name may derive from Egyptian *htm* ('fortress') — a border fortification at the edge of settled territory. This was the boundary between civilization and wilderness, between Egyptian control and the open desert. The cloud and fire pillar guided them from here (Exodus 13:20-22).
7. Station 3 to Station 4. The verb *vayyashov* ('he/they turned back') is crucial — God deliberately reversed their route (Exodus 14:1-2) to lure Pharaoh into pursuit. *Pi-hahiroth* ('mouth of the gorges/canals') was near Baal-zephon ('lord of the north' — a Phoenician deity's shrine marking a promontory), and Migdol ('tower' — an Egyptian border fortress, from Egyptian *mktr*). This deliberate backtracking created the trap: Israel appeared lost and hemmed in, provoking Pharaoh's fatal pursuit toward the sea.
8. Station 4 to Station 5 (via the sea crossing). The understated phrase *vayya'averu vetokh hayyam* ('they passed through the midst of the sea') compresses the entire Red Sea miracle into four Hebrew words — the itinerary format reduces the most dramatic event in Israelite history to a single travel notation. Three days' march through midbar Eitam ('the Etham wilderness') brought them to Marah ('bitterness'), named for its undrinkable water (Exodus 15:23). God made the bitter water sweet through a piece of wood (Exodus 15:25). This station marks the first post-exodus crisis: the immediate testing of faith after deliverance.
9. Station 5 to Station 6. Elim ('terebinths' or 'mighty trees') was an oasis with *shteim esreh einot mayim* ('twelve springs of water') and *shiv'im temarim* ('seventy palm trees'). The numbers are symbolically significant: twelve springs correspond to the twelve tribes, and seventy palms to the seventy elders (Exodus 24:1) or the seventy descendants of Jacob who went to Egypt (Genesis 46:27). After the bitterness of Marah, Elim represents divine provision and restoration — an oasis of abundance following a crisis of scarcity. Likely located at Wadi Gharandel in the western Sinai.
10. Station 6 to Station 7. The Yam Suf ('Sea of Reeds') encampment is distinct from the earlier sea crossing (v. 8). This is a campsite along the coast of the Gulf of Suez/Aqaba, where the Israelites traveled southward along the western Sinai coast. The name Yam Suf literally means 'Sea of Reeds/Rushes' (from *suf* 'reed, rush plant'), not 'Red Sea' — the Greek Septuagint's translation *erythra thalassa* ('Red Sea') shifted the identification. This coastal camp marks the journey's transition from the northern Sinai corridor to the southern Sinai wilderness.
11. Station 7 to Station 8. The midbar Sin ('wilderness of Sin') — not to be confused with the wilderness of Sinai — is the desert region along the western Sinai coast between Elim and Sinai. This is where Israel first received manna and quail (Exodus 16), establishing the pattern of divine daily provision that would sustain them for forty years. The name Sin may derive from the Semitic moon-god Sin (Akkadian *Suen*), reflecting pre-Israelite associations of this region with lunar worship.
12. Station 8 to Station 9. Dophkah (Dofqah — possibly from *d-f-q* 'to knock, to drive') is one of the stations known only from this itinerary, with no parallel narrative in Exodus. It may be identified with the Egyptian mining site at Serabit el-Khadim in the southwestern Sinai, where turquoise and copper were extracted. The Egyptian term for this mining district (*mfk't*) may underlie the Hebrew toponym. If correct, the Israelites passed through Egypt's Sinai mining region.
13. Station 9 to Station 10. Alush (Alush) is another station known only from this list. Some rabbinic interpreters connected the name to the root *l-w-sh* ('to knead'), associating it with the manna narrative — the place where Israel 'kneaded' the manna into cakes. The identification remains uncertain; it was likely a stopping point in the southwestern Sinai between the mining district and Rephidim. The lack of narrative detail for many stations suggests this is a genuine archival travel log, not a literary construction.
14. Station 10 to Station 11. Rephidim (Refidim — possibly from *r-f-d* 'to spread out, to support') was the site of two major events: the water-from-the-rock miracle (Exodus 17:1-7, where the place was also called Massah and Meribah) and the battle with Amalek (Exodus 17:8-16). The itinerary preserves only the water crisis detail: *velo hayah sham mayim la'am lishtot* ('there was no water there for the people to drink'). This is one

of the few itinerary stations with a narrative annotation, indicating the water shortage was considered the defining characteristic of Rephidim.

15. Station 11 to Station 12. Midbar Sinai ('the wilderness of Sinai') was the destination of the entire exodus journey — the place of the covenant revelation. Israel remained here for nearly a year (from the third month of year 1 to the twentieth of the second month of year 2, per Exodus 19:1 and Numbers 10:11). Despite being the most theologically significant location in the itinerary — the site of Torah revelation, the golden calf, the Tabernacle construction — the itinerary records it with the same terse formula as every other station. The compression is remarkable: a year of transformative events reduced to six Hebrew words.
16. Station 12 to Station 13. Qivrot haTa'avah ('the graves of craving/desire') received its name from the incident recorded in Numbers 11:31-34: God sent quail in response to Israel's complaints about manna, but struck the people with a plague while the meat was still in their mouths. The name memorializes judgment on unbridled appetite — ta'avah ('craving, desire, lust') is the noun from '-w-h, the same root behind the tenth commandment's prohibition of coveting. The location marked the transition from Sinai to the wilderness wandering phase.
17. Station 13 to Station 14. Chatserot ('enclosures, courtyards') was the site of Miriam and Aaron's challenge to Moses's authority (Numbers 12). Miriam was struck with a skin disease and quarantined for seven days outside the camp. The name, from chatser ('enclosed courtyard'), suggests a site with natural enclosures — perhaps a wadi with rock walls. This was the last major station before the catastrophic spy mission from Kadesh. The journey's middle section (stations 14-33) covers the 38 years of wilderness punishment.
18. Station 14 to Station 15. Rithmah (Ritmah — from rotem 'broom plant/shrub,' a desert bush common in the Negev) may be an alternate name for Kadesh-barnea or a nearby site, since the spy mission was launched from Kadesh (Numbers 13:26) which follows Hazeroth in the narrative sequence. The broom plant was used for fuel and shelter in the desert (1 Kings 19:4-5, where Elijah slept under a rotem). This begins the long, obscure middle section of the itinerary — stations during the 38-year wandering period about which almost no narrative is preserved.
19. Station 15 to Station 16. Rimmon Perets ('pomegranate of the breach/gap') combines two common topographic elements: rimmon ('pomegranate' — a tree marker) and perets ('breach, gap' — possibly a wadi break or mountain pass). This station, known only from this list, was somewhere in the wilderness between Kadesh and the Arabah. The compound name suggests a distinctive landmark — a pomegranate tree or grove near a geological gap — that served as a navigational reference in otherwise featureless terrain.
20. Station 16 to Station 17. Livnah ('whiteness') likely derives from the white limestone or chalk characteristic of the Negev and Sinai landscape. A different Libnah in the Shephelah became a Levitical city (Joshua 21:13), but this wilderness Libnah is a distinct site. The name may also connect to levonah ('frankincense' — the white resinous gum), suggesting a site where incense plants grew. The station belongs to the largely undocumented wandering period.
21. Station 17 to Station 18. Rissah (Rissah — possibly from r-s-s 'to moisten' or related to rasis 'dew-drop') may indicate a site with available moisture — a significant feature in desert terrain. Some scholars connect it to a site in the Arabah. Like many stations in this section, Rissah preserves a toponym that became lost to later tradition, surviving only in this archival list. The itinerary's preservation of otherwise unknown place names supports its authenticity as a genuine travel document.
22. Station 18 to Station 19. Qehelatah ('place of assembly') derives from q-h-l ('to assemble, to gather'), the same root as qahal ('assembly, congregation'). The name suggests this was a location where the community gathered — perhaps for judicial proceedings, worship, or communal decision-making. Some scholars speculate it may have been a major tribal assembly point during the wandering years, though no narrative details survive.
23. Station 19 to Station 20. Har Shafer ('the beautiful/pleasant mountain') derives from sh-f-r ('to be beautiful, to be pleasing'). The name suggests a visually striking peak — a rare positive topographic description in the Negev/Sinai wilderness. This is the only 'mount' (har) in the wandering-period stations, indicating a notable elevation that served as both landmark and campsite. The beauty attributed to this mountain stands in contrast to the desolate terrain typical of the region.
24. Station 20 to Station 21. Charadah ('trembling, terror, anxiety') from ch-r-d ('to tremble, to be startled') is an ominous name for a campsite. It may commemorate a frightening event — an enemy attack, a natural disaster, or a divine judgment — at this location. Alternatively, the name may describe the terrain itself: a place that evoked dread due to its appearance or isolation. The shift from 'beautiful mountain' to 'place of trembling' captures the emotional volatility of wilderness existence.
25. Station 21 to Station 22. Maqhelot ('assemblies, gatherings') is the plural of maqhel, from the same root q-h-l ('to assemble') as Kehelatah (v. 22). The plural form suggests a place of multiple gatherings or a larger assembly site. The repetition of assembly-related names may indicate regular gathering points along the route where tribal councils met, disputes were adjudicated, or collective worship was conducted. These assembly stations may have been the infrastructure of wilderness governance.
26. Station 22 to Station 23. Tachath ('below, beneath, lower place') from t-ch-t indicates a low-lying area — perhaps a valley floor, a wadi depression, or a site at the base of a hill. The directional name is purely topographic, describing the campsite's position relative to surrounding terrain. A Levite named Tahath appears in the genealogy of 1 Chronicles 6:24, but the connection to this place name is uncertain.
27. Station 23 to Station 24. Terach (Tarach) shares its name with Abraham's father (Genesis 11:24-32), though any connection is uncertain. The name may derive from a root meaning 'to delay, to wander' or possibly from an animal name (Arabic tarakh — 'wild goat'). The coincidence of names with the patriarchal ancestor may have resonated with Israelite travelers — a reminder of the ancestral wandering that preceded their own. The site's location is unknown but falls within the central wandering period.

- 28.** Station 24 to Station 25. Mitqah ('sweetness') from m-t-q ('to be sweet') suggests a site with sweet (drinkable) water — a direct contrast to Marah ('bitterness') from the journey's beginning. In the desert, water quality defined locations: bitter springs were hazards, sweet springs were havens. The name may also refer to sweet-tasting plants or fruits found at the site. After the ominous Haradah ('trembling'), the sequence moves through neutral names to this positive one.
- 29.** Station 25 to Station 26. Chashmonah ('fertile/rich place') may derive from ch-sh-m or relate to the personal name Hashmon. This is the toponym that later gave rise to the name 'Hasmonean' — the dynasty of the Maccabees claimed descent from a priestly family connected to this name (though the genealogical link is debated). The site was likely in the northern Sinai or Negev region. Some identify it with the modern Wadi Hashm.
- 30.** Station 26 to Station 27. Moserot ('bonds, chastisements, disciplines') from m-w-s-r ('to bind, to discipline') is a striking name suggesting a place of divine correction or testing. Deuteronomy 10:6 connects Moserah (singular form) with Aaron's death, though Numbers 33:38 places Aaron's death at Mount Hor. The discrepancy may reflect different traditions about the same region or distinct but nearby locations. The disciplinary meaning of the name fits the theme of the wandering years as a period of divine training and correction.
- 31.** Station 27 to Station 28. Benei Ya'aqan ('the sons/descendants of Jaakan') is a clan-based toponym — the site was associated with a group called the Jaakanites. Deuteronomy 10:6 mentions Be'erot Benei Ya'aqan ('the wells of the sons of Jaakan'), suggesting this was an area with multiple wells controlled by the Jaakan clan. The name appears in 1 Chronicles 1:42 as a Horite/Seirite descendant, placing this clan in the Edomite region south of the Dead Sea. The itinerary is now tracking through the Arabah/Edomite border region.
- 32.** Station 28 to Station 29. Chor haGidgad ('the cave/cavern of Gidgad') combines chor ('cave, hole') with the proper name Gidgad (called Gudgodah in Deuteronomy 10:7). The name suggests a notable cave system — perhaps used for shelter, water storage, or refuge. Caves in the Arabah and Negev served as critical survival resources: they provided shade from extreme heat, shelter from sandstorms, and sometimes contained water seepage. The site was likely in the Arabah region near the Gulf of Aqaba.
- 33.** Station 29 to Station 30. Yotvatah ('pleasantness, goodness') from y-t-v ('to be good, to be pleasant') indicates an agreeable campsite. Deuteronomy 10:7 adds the significant detail: *erets nachalei mayim* ('a land of flowing streams') — Jotbathah was well-watered, a luxury in the Arabah. This is often identified with the modern oasis of Tabeh/Yotvata in the southern Arabah, which remains a water source today. The name's positive connotation contrasts with the harsh terrain surrounding it — a desert oasis that brought relief to the traveling community.
- 34.** Station 30 to Station 31. Avronah ('crossing place, ford') from 'v-r ('to cross over') suggests a location at a river ford or wadi crossing. The name indicates a point where a waterway could be traversed — possibly a crossing of a seasonal wadi in the Arabah. Some scholars identify it with a site near the modern Ain Defiyeh, south of the Dead Sea. The crossing terminology connects this station to the broader journey theme: Israel is perpetually 'crossing over' toward the promised land.
- 35.** Station 31 to Station 32. Etsyon Gaver ('backbone of the mighty one' or 'the giant's spine') was located at the northern tip of the Gulf of Aqaba — modern Eilat/Aqaba. This was a significant site: Solomon would later build his fleet here (1 Kings 9:26), and it became a major port for Red Sea trade. The Israelites' arrival here marks the southernmost point of their wandering before turning north toward Kadesh. The location at the gulf's head was strategically important as a crossroads between Africa, Arabia, and the Levant.
- 36.** Station 32 to Station 33. The identification midbar Tsin hi Qadesh ('the wilderness of Zin, which is Kadesh') marks the return to Kadesh-barnea — the site of the original spy mission disaster (Numbers 13-14). Israel's return here after 38 years of wandering closes the circle of judgment. At this second Kadesh visit, Miriam dies (Numbers 20:1), Moses strikes the rock instead of speaking to it (Numbers 20:7-13), and Moses and Aaron are denied entry to Canaan. Kadesh ('holy/sacred') ironically becomes the place of Moses's greatest failure.
- 37.** Station 33 to Station 34. Hor haHar ('Mount Hor' — literally 'the mountain of the mountain,' a superlative meaning 'the great mountain') was on the boundary of Edom (*biqtseh erets Edom*). This is where Aaron died (next two verses) and where the priestly succession from Aaron to Eleazar took place (Numbers 20:22-29). Traditionally identified with Jebel Harun near Petra, though some scholars prefer a location in the northern Negev. The Edomite border location underscores the tension with Edom, which had denied Israel passage (Numbers 20:14-21).
- 38.** The itinerary breaks its formulaic pattern to record Aaron's death — one of only two narrative expansions in the entire list (the other being the Canaanite king in v. 40). The precise date — the first of the fifth month (Av) in the fortieth year — makes this one of the most chronologically specific events in the Torah. The phrase *al pi YHWH* ('at the mouth/command of the LORD') indicates Aaron's death was divinely ordained, not natural — a consequence of the Meribah incident (Numbers 20:12, 24). The midrashic tradition holds that Aaron died 'by a divine kiss' (*mitah bineshiqah*), based on the *al pi YHWH* phrase.
- 39.** Aaron's age at death — *ben shalosh ve'esrim ume'at shanah* ('123 years old') — places him three years older than Moses at death (Deuteronomy 34:7: Moses died at 120). Aaron was born before the edict to drown Hebrew boys (Exodus 1:22), which is why he survived infancy while Moses had to be hidden. The *setumah* marker after this verse creates a solemn pause — a moment of silence in the text for Israel's first high priest. The itinerary resumes in the next verse with a brief narrative insertion about the Canaanite king of Arad.
- 40.** The second narrative insertion records the Canaanite king of Arad hearing of Israel's advance. This corresponds to Numbers 21:1-3, where Arad attacked Israel and was subsequently destroyed. The city of Arad (modern Tel Arad) was in the eastern Negev, controlling routes into Canaan from the south. The phrase *yoshev baNegev* ('dwelling in the Negev') identifies his territory as the dry southern region of Canaan. His 'hearing' (*vayyishma*) of Israel's approach signals the beginning of the conquest phase — Canaan's inhabitants are now aware of the approaching threat.

41. Station 34 to Station 35. Tsalmonah ('shady place' or 'place of images/shadows') derives from tselem ('image, shadow'). The route from Mount Hor now turns southward and eastward to circumvent Edom (Numbers 21:4), since Edom had denied passage. This detour provoked the complaint that led to the fiery serpent incident (Numbers 21:4-9). Some scholars associate Zalmonah with the copper-mining region of Timna in the southern Arabah, where smelting installations created dark, shadow-like slag heaps.
42. Station 35 to Station 36. Punon is almost certainly Feinan (modern Khirbet Feinan) in the eastern Arabah, one of the largest copper-mining and smelting centers of the ancient Near East. The connection to the copper serpent narrative (Numbers 21:4-9) is suggestive: the nechash nechoshet ('bronze/copper serpent') that Moses made may have been crafted from local copper. Eusebius identified Punon with Phaeno, a Roman mining settlement in the same area. The site's association with copper working spans millennia.
43. Station 36 to Station 37. Ovot ('water-skins' or 'spirit mediums') has an ambiguous etymology. If from ov ('water-skin'), the name describes a site with water storage; if from ov ('necromantic spirit, medium'), it may reflect pre-Israelite cultic associations. Numbers 21:10 records this same station in the narrative sequence, confirming the itinerary's alignment with the main text. Obobth was east of Edom in the southern Moabite region, marking Israel's northward progress toward the Transjordanian plateau.
44. Station 37 to Station 38. Iyyei ha'Avarim ('the ruins of the crossings/passes') combines iyyim ('ruins, heaps') with Avarim ('crossings' — the mountain range east of the Jordan, from '-v-r' 'to cross'). Numbers 21:11 places this site bivmidbar asher al penei Mo'av mimizrach hashemesh ('in the wilderness facing Moab from the east'). The Avarim range would become significant as the location of Mount Nebo, where Moses would view and die. Israel is now approaching the final leg of the journey — the eastern approach to the Jordan.
45. Station 38 to Station 39. The departure point is abbreviated to Iyim (from Iye-abarim). Divon Gad ('Dibon of Gad') is the same Dibon that would be allotted to the tribe of Gad (Numbers 32:34). The qualifier 'Gad' distinguishes it from other Dibons and reflects its later tribal association. This is the site where the Mesha Stele (Moabite Stone, c. 840 BCE) would be erected, one of the most important extra-biblical inscriptions confirming the historicity of Israelite-Moabite interactions. The route now follows the King's Highway through the Moabite plateau.
46. Station 39 to Station 40. Almon Divlatayemah ('hidden place of the two fig-cakes') combines almon ('concealment,' from '-l-m' 'to hide') with the dual form of develah ('fig-cake'). The name may indicate a site known for its dried fig production or a hidden oasis with fig trees. Jeremiah 48:22 mentions Beth-diblathaim in an oracle against Moab, confirming its Moabite plateau location. The dual ending (-ayim) is characteristic of Transjordanian place names and typically indicates paired features — two hills, two springs, or two settlements.
47. Station 40 to Station 41. Harei ha'Avarim ('the mountains of the crossings/passes') is the mountain range east of the Jordan Valley and Dead Sea. The specification lifnei Nevo ('facing Nebo') orients the camp toward Mount Nebo specifically — the summit from which Moses would view the promised land before dying (Deuteronomy 34:1). The name Nebo may derive from the Babylonian deity Nabu (god of writing and wisdom), reflecting the ancient Near Eastern religious geography of the region. This is the penultimate station — one more stop before the final encampment.
48. Station 41 to Station 42 — the final station. Arvot Mo'av al Yarden Yereicho ('the plains of Moab by the Jordan of Jericho') is the terminus of the 42-stage journey. This location — the broad, flat steppe east of the Jordan River opposite Jericho — serves as Israel's base camp for the entire final section of the Torah: the Balaam narratives, the Baal-Peor crisis, the second census, the Midianite war, the Transjordanian settlement, and all of Deuteronomy. The journey from slavery in Egypt to the threshold of the promised land is now complete in 42 stages.
49. The final camp's extent is specified: from Beit haYeshimot ('house of the desolations/wastelands') to Avel haShittim ('the meadow of the acacias'). This describes a substantial encampment stretching several miles along the Jordan Valley — large enough to accommodate the entire nation. Abel-shittim ('acacia meadow') is the same Shittim where Israel fell into the Baal-Peor apostasy (Numbers 25:1) and from which Joshua would later send spies into Jericho (Joshua 2:1). The setumah marker signals the transition from the completed itinerary to the final legislative section about entering Canaan.
50. The divine speech formula vaydabber YHWH el Moshe be'arvot Mo'av ('the LORD spoke to Moses on the plains of Moab') introduces the final legislative block of Numbers — commands about entering and settling Canaan (vv. 51-56). The location marker be'arvot Mo'av al Yarden Yereicho places these instructions at the journey's terminus, facing the destination. The laws that follow are forward-looking: having traced the complete journey from Egypt to the Jordan, the text now turns to the future — what Israel must do when they cross over.
51. The instruction begins with the anticipatory formula ki attem overim et haYarden ('when you are crossing the Jordan'). The participle overim ('crossing') treats the crossing as imminent and certain — not 'if' but 'when.' The full name erets Kena'an ('the land of Canaan') is used, emphasizing that the entire land — not just parts — is the intended destination. This instruction looks forward to a campaign of total settlement, not partial occupation.
52. Three categories of religious infrastructure must be destroyed: maskiyotam ('their figured stones/carved images' — from s-k-h, possibly stone reliefs or inscribed cult objects), tsalmei masekhotam ('their cast metal images' — from ts-l-m 'image' and n-s-k 'to pour/cast,' indicating metal idols made by casting), and bamotam ('their high places' — elevated worship platforms, from b-m-h). The verb horashtam ('you shall dispossess') from y-r-sh applies to the inhabitants, while ibadtem ('you shall destroy') and tashmidu ('you shall annihilate') apply to the religious objects. The thoroughness is absolute: kol ('all') appears four times.
53. The command vehorashtam et ha'arets vishavtem bah ('you shall take possession of the land and settle in it') pairs conquest with settlement — military action must be followed by permanent habitation. The theological basis is ki lakhem natatti et ha'arets ('because to you I have given the land') — divine gift precedes human action. The verb lareshet ('to possess, to inherit') from y-r-sh creates a wordplay with the same verb used for dispossessing the inhabitants: Israel 'dispossesses' (y-r-sh Hif'il) in order to 'possess' (y-r-sh Qal). The same root carries both meanings.

54. The land distribution system combines two methods: goral ('lot' — random divine selection) and proportional allocation based on population (larav tarbu... velam'at tam'itu — 'for the numerous, increase... for the few, decrease'). This dual system balances divine sovereignty (the lot determines location) with practical equity (larger tribes get more territory). The phrase el asher yetse lo shammah haggoral ('wherever the lot falls for him, there it shall be') makes the lot result final and irreversible — it represents God's decision. Distribution follows mattot avoteikhem ('your ancestral tribes'), maintaining the tribal structure as the basis of land tenure.
55. The warning uses two vivid metaphors: lesikkim be'einekhem ('as barbs/splinters in your eyes') and litsnininim betsideikhem ('as thorns in your sides'). The term sikkim (hapax — appearing only here) likely means 'barbs' or 'pricks,' objects causing constant irritation and pain. Tsnininim ('thorns') are sharp desert plants that wound anyone who brushes against them. Together they describe persistent, unavoidable torment — not a one-time threat but chronic affliction. The final verb tsareru ('they will harass, they will oppress') from ts-r-r ('to press, to constrict') adds the dimension of being squeezed and confined in one's own land.
56. The chapter's final verse delivers the most severe warning: ka'asher dimmiti la'asot lahem e'eseh lakhem ('as I intended to do to them, I will do to you'). The verb dimmiti from d-m-h ('to intend, to plan, to think') reveals divine intentionality — God had planned specific consequences for Canaan's inhabitants. If Israel fails to carry out the dispossession, they inherit the punishment that was meant for others. This principle of transferred judgment — the obedient who become disobedient receive the disobedient's fate — stands as the chapter's theological climax. The pe (parashah petuchah) closes this section with maximum gravity. The 42-stage journey from Egypt ends not with celebration but with warning: arrival at the destination is not the same as possessing it.

34

Summary: *God defines the precise borders of the land of Canaan — south, west, north, and east — that the nine and a half tribes (excluding Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh) will inherit. The boundary runs from the wilderness of Zin in the south to Mount Hor in the north, from the Mediterranean in the west to the Jordan in the east. Ten men are appointed to oversee the land distribution, one per tribe.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is a boundary charter: the suzerain (God) defines the precise territory granted to the vassal (Israel). The verb tippol ('shall fall,' v. 2) for land allocation is a technical lot-casting term — the land 'falls' to its recipients as God determines. The word gevul ('border, boundary') dominates the chapter, appearing over a dozen times. The borders simultaneously define the gift and its limits — Israel receives exactly what God grants, no more. The land is Canaan proper, west of the Jordan; the Transjordanian territory is excluded.*

Translation Friction: *Several boundary markers are geographically uncertain: Hazar-enan, Mount Hor (different from the Mount Hor where Aaron died), and Zedad have debated identifications. We transliterated consistently without attempting modern coordinates. The phrase gevul yam ('the sea border,' v. 6) refers to the Mediterranean — in Hebrew, 'the sea' is the western boundary by definition. We rendered it 'the Mediterranean coastline' for geographic clarity.*

Connections: *The boundary description echoes the territorial promises in Genesis 15:18-21 and Exodus 23:31, though the exact boundaries differ in scope. The ten overseers appointed here (vv. 17-29) parallel the twelve tribal leaders of Numbers 1:5-16 and 13:4-15. Eleazar and Joshua lead the allocation (v. 17), fulfilling the succession from Aaron and Moses. The western boundary (Mediterranean) and southern boundary (wilderness of Zin) correspond to Joshua 15:1-4.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses: ²"Give this order to the Israelites: When you enter the land of Canaan, this is the territory that will be allotted to you as your inheritance — the land of Canaan as defined by these borders. ³Your southern sector will extend from the Wilderness of Zin along the border of Edom. Your southern boundary on the east will begin at the tip of the Salt Sea. ⁴Your boundary will curve south of the Scorpion Pass, continue to Zin, and extend south of Kadesh-barnea. From there it will proceed to Hazar-addar and cross over to Azmon. ⁵The boundary will turn from Azmon toward the Wadi of Egypt, ending at the Mediterranean Sea. ⁶As for your western boundary — the Great Sea will serve as your border. This will be your western boundary. ⁷This will be your northern boundary: from the Great Sea, mark a line to Mount Hor. ⁸From Mount Hor, trace the boundary to Lebo-hamath, with the border extending to Zedad. ⁹The boundary will continue to Ziphron and end at Hazar-enan. This will be your northern boundary. ¹⁰For your eastern boundary, mark a line from Hazar-enan to Shepham. ¹¹The boundary will descend from Shepham to Riblah, east of Ain. Then the boundary will continue

downward along the eastern shore of the Sea of Chinnereth. ¹²The boundary will follow the Jordan downward and end at the Salt Sea. This will be your land, defined by its surrounding borders. ¹³Moses instructed the Israelites: "This is the land that you are to distribute among yourselves by lot as an inheritance. The LORD has directed that it be given to the nine and a half tribes, ¹⁴because the tribe of Reuben by their ancestral houses, the tribe of Gad by their ancestral houses, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have already received their inheritance. ¹⁵These two and a half tribes have received their inheritance east of the Jordan, across from Jericho, toward the sunrise." ¹⁶The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁷"These are the names of the men who will distribute the land among you: Eleazar the priest and Joshua son of Nun. ¹⁸You are also to appoint one leader from each tribe to help distribute the land. ¹⁹These are their names: from the tribe of Judah — Caleb son of Jephunneh. ²⁰From the tribe of Simeon — Shemuel son of Ammihud. ²¹From the tribe of Benjamin — Elidad son of Chislon. ²²From the tribe of Dan, the leader Bukki son of Jogli. ²³From the descendants of Joseph: for the tribe of Manasseh, the leader Hanniel son of Ephod. ²⁴From the tribe of Ephraim, the leader Kemuel son of Shiphtan. ²⁵From the tribe of Zebulun, the leader Elizaphan son of Parnach. ²⁶From the tribe of Issachar, the leader Paltiel son of Azzan. ²⁷From the tribe of Asher, the leader Ahihud son of Shelomi. ²⁸From the tribe of Naphtali, the leader Pedahel son of Ammihud. ²⁹These are the men the LORD appointed to distribute the inheritance to the Israelites in the land of Canaan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard speech formula *vayedabber YHVH el-Mosheh le'mor* introduces the boundary charter of the promised land (vv 1-12). After the campaigns against Midian (ch 31) and the Transjordanian settlement (ch 32), God now defines the precise western territory — the land of Canaan proper that the remaining nine and a half tribes will inherit.
2. The verb *tsav* ('command') carries binding legal force — this boundary charter is not advisory but authoritative. The phrase *tippol lakhem benachalah* ('will fall to you as an inheritance') uses *nafal* ('to fall') in a technical sense for lot-casting and territorial allocation — the land 'falls' to its recipients as God determines through the sacred lot. The word *gevuloteha* ('its boundaries') from *gevul* ('border, boundary, limit') will dominate the chapter, appearing over a dozen times.
3. The southern boundary begins at *midbar-Tsin* ('the Wilderness of Zin') running *al-yedei Edom* ('alongside Edom'). The *gevul negev* ('southern border') is anchored to *miqtseḥ yam-hammelach* ('the end of the Salt Sea' — the Dead Sea) on its eastern end. The word *qedmah* ('eastward') establishes the starting point for tracing the southern boundary. The *pe'at negev* ('southern quarter') uses *pe'ah* ('corner, side, direction') for a broader geographic zone, while *gevul* denotes the precise line.
4. The boundary *venosav* ('turns, curves') from *s-v-v* ('to go around, surround'), indicating a winding path through rough terrain. *Ma'aleh Aqrabbim* ('Scorpion Pass,' literally 'ascent of scorpions') is a steep pass in the southern Negev highlands. The route continues through *Tsinah* ('toward Zin') and reaches *Qadesh Barne'a* ('Kadesh-barnea') — the site of Israel's great failure when they refused to enter the land after the spies' report (Numbers 13-14). The *qere/ketiv* variation (/) reflects a singular/plural disagreement in manuscript transmission, resolved by the *qere* plural form.
5. The boundary curves (*venosav*) from *Azmon* toward *nachlah Mitsrayim* ('the Wadi of Egypt'), generally identified with *Wadi el-Arish* rather than the Nile itself. This seasonal watercourse formed the traditional southwestern frontier of the promised land. The phrase *totz'otav hayyamamah* ('its termination points are at the sea') marks where the southern boundary meets the Mediterranean coastline, connecting the southern and western borders.
6. The western boundary is simply the Mediterranean — *hayyam haggadol* ('the Great Sea'). The statement is emphatic through repetition: *hayyam haggadol ugevul* ('the Great Sea and its coastline') followed by *zeh yihyeh lakhem gevul yam* ('this will be your western boundary'). The Mediterranean coast defined Israel's western frontier throughout its history, though in practice the Philistine coastal cities resisted Israelite control for centuries.
7. The northern boundary begins at *hayyam haggadol* ('the Great Sea') and extends to *Hor haHar* ('Mount Hor'). This is not the same Mount Hor where Aaron died (Numbers 20:22-28, located in the south near Edom). The northern *Hor haHar* is likely in the Lebanon range. The verb *teta'u* ('you shall mark out, designate for yourselves') from the *hithpael* of '-v-h means to draw or point out a line — an act of deliberate territorial demarcation.
8. From the northern Mount Hor the boundary runs to *levo Chamat* ('the entrance of Hamath'). *Lebo-hamath* — likely modern *Lebweh* near the headwaters of the Orontes River in the Beqaa Valley — functioned as the traditional northern limit of Israelite territorial claims (cf. 1 Kings 8:65, 2 Kings 14:25). The waypoint *Tsedadah* ('Zedad') lies on the road between Damascus and Hamath. This northern frontier reaches deep into modern Lebanon and Syria — territory only partially controlled under David and Solomon.
9. *Zifronah* and *Chatsar Einan* mark the northeastern corner of the promised land. *Hazar-enan* ('village of springs,' from *chatser* — 'settlement' and *enan* — 'springs') was the northernmost point of the eastern boundary, the hinge point where north meets east. The closing formula *zeh yihyeh lakhem gevul tsafon* ('this will be your northern boundary') seals the northern section, paralleling the identical formula used for the western boundary (v 6).

10. The eastern boundary begins where the northern left off, at Chatsar Einan ('Hazar-enan'), heading south to Shefamah ('Shepham'). The verb *vehit'avvitem* ('you shall mark out for yourselves') from the *hithpael* of *'-v-h* again indicates deliberate territorial demarcation — the same verb used in verse 7 for the northern boundary. The word *qedmah* ('eastward') establishes the directional orientation.
11. The boundary *veyarad* ('descends') — the verb *y-r-d* emphasizes the dramatic drop in elevation from the highlands toward the Jordan Rift Valley. From Shepham it descends to *haRivlah* ('Riblah'), east of *ha'Ayin* ('Ain,' literally 'spring'). The boundary then drops to reach *al-ketef yam-Kinneret qedmah* ('the eastern slope/shoulder of the Sea of Chinnereth'). The word *ketef* ('shoulder, ridge') describes the hillside descending to the lake — the body of water later known as the Sea of Galilee. Chinnereth may derive from *kinnor* ('harp, lyre'), reflecting the lake's harp-like shape.
12. The boundary follows the Yarden ('Jordan') — from the root *y-r-d* ('to descend'), the river's name literally means 'the descender,' apt for a river that drops over 600 meters from the Sea of Galilee to the Dead Sea. The circuit ends where it began: at *yam haMelach* ('the Salt Sea' — the Dead Sea, cf. v 3). The closing statement *zo't tiyeh lakhem ha'arets ligevuloteha saviv* ('this will be your land according to its surrounding boundaries') summarizes the entire boundary charter — a complete geographic circuit defining the promised inheritance.
13. Moses conveys God's command, specifying the distribution method: *tithnachalu otah begoral* ('you shall inherit it by lot'). The *goral* ('lot') is not a gamble but a sacred instrument — it removes human favoritism from the allocation process, placing the decision in God's hands (cf. Proverbs 16:33). The specification *tish'at hammattot vachatsi hammatteh* ('nine tribes and the half-tribe') immediately raises the question of the missing two and a half tribes, answered in the next verse.
14. The explanation for the nine-and-a-half figure: Reuben, Gad, and the half-tribe of Manasseh *laqechu nachalatam* ('have already received their inheritance') in the Transjordanian territories allocated in chapter 32. The phrase *leveit avotam* ('by their ancestral houses') grounds tribal identity in genealogical lineage. The verb *laqach* ('to take, receive') in the perfect tense marks these allocations as completed facts — their inheritance is settled.
15. The geographic specification *me'ever leYarden Yericho qedmah mizrachah* ('beyond the Jordan of Jericho, eastward toward the sunrise') locates the Transjordanian territories relative to the crossing point at Jericho. The redundancy of *qedmah mizrachah* ('eastward, toward the sunrise') emphatically establishes direction. The *pe* paragraph marker closes this explanatory section, transitioning from the boundary charter to the appointment of land-distribution leaders.
16. A new speech formula opens the section on leadership appointments for the land distribution (vv 16-29). After defining the borders, God now specifies who will oversee the allocation process — ensuring that the sacred lot-casting occurs under proper priestly and civil authority.
17. Two supreme leaders are named first: *El'azar haKohen* ('Eleazar the priest') and *Yehoshua bin-Nun* ('Joshua son of Nun'). Eleazar represents priestly authority — he will oversee the sacred lot; Joshua represents civil and military leadership — he will enforce the allocations. The phrase *asher yinchalu lakhem et-ha'arets* ('who will cause you to inherit the land') uses the *piel* of *n-ch-l* ('to cause to inherit, to apportion as inheritance'). Moses is notably absent from the distribution — he will not enter the land (Numbers 20:12).
18. Each tribe provides a *nasi* ('leader, chieftain') to represent its interests in the distribution. The phrase *nasi echad nasi echad mimmatteh* ('one leader, one leader per tribe') emphasizes the principle of equal representation — no tribe is over- or under-represented. These ten tribal leaders (for the nine and a half western tribes, with Joseph split into Ephraim and Manasseh) join Eleazar and Joshua to form the land-allocation commission.
19. Caleb son of Jephunneh is a towering figure — one of only two spies (with Joshua) who gave a faithful report when the others counseled fear (Numbers 13-14). His appointment as Judah's representative is fitting: the man who trusted God's promise of the land now helps distribute it. Judah is listed first, reflecting the tribe's growing preeminence in Israelite leadership. Caleb's survival across forty years of wilderness is itself proof of God's promise (Numbers 14:24).
20. Shemuel ben-Ammihud represents Simeon. The name *Shemu'el* ('heard of God' or 'name of God') is the same name borne by the later prophet-judge Samuel, though they are different individuals. Ammihud means 'my kinsman is glorious.' Simeon's territory would ultimately be embedded within Judah's allotment (Joshua 19:1-9), fulfilling Jacob's prophecy of Simeon's scattering (Genesis 49:7).
21. Elidad ben-Kislon represents Benjamin. The name *Elidad* ('my God has loved') is theophoric, combining *El* ('God') with a form of *y-d-d* ('to love'). Benjamin would receive strategic territory between Judah and Ephraim, including the site that would eventually become Jerusalem — a location at the tribal seam between north and south.
22. Bukki ben-Yogli represents Dan. The title *nasi* ('leader, chieftain') is explicitly stated here, though it applies to all the representatives. The name Bukki may derive from *baqaq* ('to empty, pour out'). Dan would eventually migrate from its initial coastal allotment — pressured by the Philistines and Amorites — to the far north, conquering Laish and renaming it Dan (Judges 18).
23. The Joseph tribes receive special treatment: *livnei Yosef* ('for the descendants of Joseph') is the umbrella designation, then Manasseh is listed first as the elder son. Channiel ben-Efod ('Hanniel son of Ephod') represents the western half of Manasseh — the portion receiving land west of the Jordan. The other half has already inherited Transjordanian territory (v 14). The name Channiel means 'God has been gracious.'
24. Kemuel ben-Shifan represents Ephraim. Though Ephraim was Joseph's younger son, he received Jacob's blessing of preeminence through the crossed-hands blessing (Genesis 48:13-20) and would become the dominant northern tribe, often standing for the northern kingdom as a whole. The name *Qemu'el* ('raised up by God') appears also in Genesis 22:21, though referring to a different individual. Shifan may relate to *shafat* ('to judge').

25. Elitsafan ben-Parnakh represents Zebulun. The name Elitsafan ('my God has sheltered/protected') echoes the Levitical leader Elizaphan son of Uzziel (Numbers 3:30), though this is a different person. Zebulun would receive territory in the Galilee region, with access to trade routes. Jacob's blessing predicted Zebulun would dwell toward the sea and serve as a harbor for ships (Genesis 49:13).
26. Paltiel ben-Azzan represents Issachar. The name Paltiel ('God is my deliverance') combines pelet ('escape, deliverance') with El ('God'). Issachar's territory would be in the fertile Jezreel Valley (Esdraelon), one of the most productive agricultural regions in the land. Jacob characterized Issachar as a strong donkey crouching between the saddlebags, content to work the rich land (Genesis 49:14-15).
27. Achihud ben-Shelomi represents Asher. The name Achihud ('my brother is majesty') follows the common achi- ('my brother') compound pattern for personal names. Shelomi may derive from shalom ('peace'). Asher would receive coastal territory in the northwestern region near Phoenicia, known for agricultural abundance and olive oil production (cf. Deuteronomy 33:24 — 'let him dip his foot in oil').
28. Pedah'el ben-Ammihud represents Naphtali, the final tribe in the list. The name Pedah'el ('God has ransomed') contains the root p-d-h ('to redeem, ransom'), a theologically rich term. Ammihud ('my kinsman is glorious') appears as a patronymic for both the Simeonite (v 20) and Naphtalite representatives — different families sharing a common name. Naphtali would receive territory in the upper Galilee, a lush and mountainous region.
29. The closing formula: *elleh asher tsivvah YHVH lenachel et-benei Yisra'el be'erets Kena'an* ('these are those whom the LORD commanded to apportion inheritance to the Israelites in the land of Canaan'). The verb *nachel* (piel of *n-ch-l*) means 'to cause to inherit, to distribute as inheritance.' The paragraph marker closes the chapter. The careful bureaucratic preparation — twelve leaders plus two overseers — demonstrates that inheriting the promised land is not an act of chaotic seizure but of ordered divine administration, with each tribe's rights protected by named representatives.

35

Summary: *The Levites — who receive no tribal territory — are given forty-eight cities with surrounding pasturelands distributed across all twelve tribes. Six of these cities are designated as arei miqlat ('cities of refuge') where anyone who kills unintentionally may flee from the go'el haddam ('blood avenger'). The chapter establishes careful legal distinctions between murder and manslaughter, and specifies that the killer must remain in the refuge city until the death of the high priest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The cities of refuge create a judicial infrastructure that tempers justice with mercy. The distinction between intentional and unintentional killing is drawn with concrete examples: striking with an iron implement versus a stone accidentally falling. The high priest's death functions as a kind of communal atonement — his death releases the manslayer from confinement. The land itself is a moral agent: bloodshed pollutes the land (*lo tachanifu et-ha'arets*, 'you shall not pollute the land,' v. 33), and only the blood of the murderer can purge it.*

Translation Friction: *The term go'el haddam ('blood avenger,' or 'blood redeemer') resists translation because go'el carries redemptive connotations alongside its vengeful function. We used 'blood avenger' following the dominant tradition while preserving the kinsman-redeemer root in the notes. The phrase migrash ('pastureland,' v. 2) from the root g-r-sh ('to drive out') describes open ground 'cleared' beyond the city walls — we used 'pastureland' for its functional clarity.*

Connections: *The cities of refuge are implemented in Joshua 20:1-9 (Kedesh, Shechem, Hebron, Bezer, Ramoth, Golan). The go'el institution links to Ruth 3-4 (kinsman-redeemer) and to the restitution law in Numbers 5:8. The principle that blood pollutes the land (v. 33) underlies 2 Samuel 21:1-9 (famine caused by Saul's bloodguilt). The high priest's death as release mechanism (v. 28) is explored in Hebrews 9 as a type of Christ's priestly death.*

¹The LORD spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab, by the Jordan across from Jericho: ²"Direct the Israelites to give the Levites cities to live in from the tribal inheritance holdings. You must also give the Levites pasturelands surrounding those cities. ³The cities will be theirs to live in, and the surrounding pasturelands will be for their cattle, their property, and all their animals. ⁴The pasturelands of the cities that you give to the Levites will extend outward from the city wall one thousand cubits in every direction. ⁵Measure two thousand cubits outside the city on the east side, two thousand cubits on the south side, two thousand cubits on the west side, and two thousand cubits on the north side, with the city at the center. This will constitute their urban pasturelands. ⁶Among the cities you give to the Levites, six will be cities of refuge, which you are to designate so that a person who has killed someone can flee there. In addition to these, give them forty-two other cities. ⁷The

total number of cities you give to the Levites will be forty-eight, each with its surrounding pasturelands. ⁸The cities you provide will come from the holdings of the Israelite tribes. From a larger tribe, take more cities; from a smaller tribe, take fewer. Each tribe must give some of its cities to the Levites in proportion to the inheritance it receives." ⁹The LORD spoke to Moses: ¹⁰"Tell the Israelites: When you cross the Jordan into the land of Canaan, ¹¹you must select cities to serve as your cities of refuge, where a person who has killed someone unintentionally may flee. ¹²These cities will provide you refuge from the blood avenger, so that the killer does not die before standing trial before the community. ¹³Of the cities you designate, six will serve as cities of refuge. ¹⁴Designate three cities east of the Jordan and three cities in the land of Canaan as cities of refuge. ¹⁵These six cities will serve as refuge for Israelites, for resident foreigners, and for temporary settlers among you — so that anyone who kills a person unintentionally may flee there. ¹⁶If someone strikes another person with an iron implement and the person dies, the striker is a murderer. The murderer must be put to death. ¹⁷If someone strikes another with a stone large enough to cause death, and the person dies, the striker is a murderer. The murderer must be put to death. ¹⁸Or if someone strikes another with a wooden implement large enough to cause death, and the person dies, the striker is a murderer. The murderer must be put to death. ¹⁹The blood avenger is the one who will put the murderer to death. When the blood avenger encounters the murderer, he is to execute him. ²⁰If someone shoves another person out of hatred, or throws something at them from ambush so that they die, ²¹or strikes them with a fist out of hostility so that they die — the assailant must be put to death as a murderer. The blood avenger is to execute the murderer when he encounters him. ²²But if someone shoves another person suddenly without any prior hostility, or throws any object at them without premeditation, ²³or drops a stone capable of killing on someone without seeing them, causing death — and the person was not their enemy and no harm was intended — ²⁴then the community must adjudicate between the killer and the blood avenger according to these regulations. ²⁵The community must rescue the killer from the blood avenger and return him to the city of refuge where he had fled. He must remain there until the death of the high priest who was anointed with the sacred oil. ²⁶But if the killer ever leaves the boundaries of the city of refuge where he has fled, ²⁷and the blood avenger finds him outside the boundaries of his city of refuge and kills him, the blood avenger bears no guilt for the death. ²⁸The killer should have remained in his city of refuge until the death of the high priest. Only after the high priest dies may the killer return to his own property. ²⁹These provisions will serve as your legal standard throughout your generations, wherever you settle. ³⁰Anyone who kills a person — the murderer is to be executed on the testimony of witnesses. However, no one may be put to death on the testimony of a single witness. ³¹You must not accept a ransom payment for the life of a murderer who deserves to die. That person must be executed. ³²Likewise, you must not accept a ransom payment to allow someone who has fled to a city of refuge to return home before the death of the high priest. ³³You must not corrupt the land where you live, because bloodshed pollutes the land, and the land cannot be purified of blood that has been shed on it except by the blood of the one who shed it. ³⁴Do not defile the land in which you are settling, in which I also dwell — for I, the LORD, reside among the Israelites."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The location formula *be'arvot Mo'av al-Yarden Yericho* ('in the plains of Moab by the Jordan at Jericho') anchors this legislation in the same geographic setting as the preceding chapters — the final encampment before crossing the Jordan. These instructions about Levitical cities and cities of refuge represent some of the last legislation given in Numbers, establishing judicial infrastructure for life in the promised land.
2. The Levites receive no tribal territory of their own — they are landless by divine design (cf. Numbers 18:20-24), with God Himself as their inheritance. Instead, other tribes must give (*venatenu laLeviyim* — 'they shall give to the Levites') from their own *nachalat achuzzatam* ('the inheritance of their land holdings'). They receive two things: *arim lashevet* ('cities to dwell in') and *migrash* ('pastureland, open land') surrounding those cities. The word *migrash* from the root *g-r-sh* ('to drive out, expel') refers to open ground extending beyond the city walls — land 'driven out' or cleared of structures.
3. The distinction between the cities (for dwelling) and the *migrash* ('pasturelands') is functional: *livhemtam* ('for their cattle'), *lirkhusham* ('for their property, goods'), and *lekhol chayyatam* ('for all their living creatures'). The Levites needed grazing land for the livestock they received through tithes and their portions of the sacrificial system. The word *chayyah* ('living creature, animal') is broader than *behemah* ('cattle, domesticated animal'), encompassing all livestock.
4. The inner pastureland zone extends *miqqir ha'ir vachutsa elef ammah saviv* ('from the wall of the city outward one thousand cubits all around'). A cubit (*ammah*) is approximately 18 inches or 45 centimeters, making this zone roughly 1,500 feet or 460 meters in every direction from the city wall. This establishes a defined ring of Levitical grazing land surrounding each city.

5. The relationship between the one-thousand-cubit measurement (v 4) and the two-thousand-cubit measurement here has generated centuries of rabbinic discussion. The Talmud (Eruvin 56a-b, Sotah 27b) resolves it by distinguishing between an inner zone designated for pasture (1,000 cubits) and an outer zone for fields and vineyards (an additional 1,000 cubits). The fourfold specification — pe'at qedmah, negev, yam, tsafon ('east, south, west, north sides') — with veba'ir battavekh ('the city in the center') creates a precise, measured grid of Levitical territory extending in all four cardinal directions.
6. The shesh arei hammiqlat ('six cities of refuge') are introduced here — from the root q-l-t meaning 'to absorb, receive, shelter.' These are not additional to the forty-eight Levitical cities but included within them: six out of the total serve the specific purpose of sheltering a rotseach ('one who kills, manslayer'). The remaining arba'im ushtayim ir ('forty-two cities') complete the total. Placing the refuge cities under Levitical administration ensures they are governed by those trained in Torah — qualified to adjudicate the complex distinction between murder and manslaughter.
7. The final count: arba'im ushemoneh ir ('forty-eight cities') plus their migrash ('pasturelands'). This amounts to roughly four cities per tribe of Israel, distributed across the entire land, ensuring a Levitical presence in every region. The Levites thus serve as a spiritual infrastructure — dispersed among the tribes rather than concentrated in one territory, providing teaching, judicial expertise, and religious leadership throughout the nation.
8. The allocation principle is proportional: me'et harav tarbu ('from the larger, give more') and me'et hame'at tam'itu ('from the smaller, give fewer'). This equity principle — ish kefi nachalato ('each according to his inheritance') — ensures no tribe bears a disproportionate burden. A tribe with extensive territory contributes more cities; a smaller tribe contributes fewer. The pe paragraph marker closes the Levitical cities section and transitions to the cities-of-refuge legislation.
9. A second divine speech formula opens the cities-of-refuge legislation proper (vv 9-34). This section moves from the administrative question (how many cities, where located) to the judicial question (who qualifies for refuge, under what conditions, and what distinguishes murder from manslaughter). The separate speech introduction signals a distinct legislative unit within the broader chapter.
10. The temporal marker ki attem overim et-haYarden artsah Kena'an ('when you cross the Jordan into the land of Canaan') anchors the legislation to the imminent conquest. These laws are prospective — they will take effect upon entry into the promised land. The verb overim ('crossing') is a participle suggesting imminence: 'you who are about to cross.' The refuge system must be established as part of the initial settlement infrastructure.
11. The verb vehiqritem ('you shall select, designate, make happen') from q-r-h has the connotation of arranging or making something occur — the cities must be deliberately designated, not randomly assigned. The qualifying condition is critical: the killer must have acted bishgagah ('unintentionally, by accident, in error') from the root sh-g-g ('to err, go astray'). This word creates the legal foundation for the entire chapter — the distinction between accidental killing (which qualifies for refuge) and intentional murder (which does not). The phrase makkeh-nefesh ('one who strikes a person dead') uses nefesh for the victim's life.
12. The cities provide miqlat migo'el ('refuge from the redeemer/avenger'). The go'el is the kinsman-redeemer who has both the right and the duty to act on behalf of a slain relative. The fundamental principle: velo yamut harotseach ad-omdo lifnei ha'edah lamishpat ('the killer shall not die until he stands before the community for judgment'). The right to a fair trial before the edah ('community assembly') takes precedence over the go'el's right of blood vengeance. This represents a remarkable legal restraint on private retribution.
13. The number six is reiterated for emphasis: shesh arei miqlat tihyenah lakhem ('six cities of refuge they shall be for you'). The specific number ensures adequate geographic coverage — enough cities that anyone in the land can reach one within a reasonable distance — while keeping the number sufficiently limited that each city can maintain the judicial expertise needed to adjudicate homicide cases.
14. The geographic distribution is balanced: shlosh he'arim me'ever laYarden ('three cities beyond the Jordan') and shlosh he'arim be'erets Kena'an ('three cities in the land of Canaan'). With two and a half tribes east and nine and a half west, this provides proportionally greater access for the smaller Transjordanian population. Deuteronomy 4:41-43 identifies the three eastern cities as Bezer (for Reuben), Ramoth-gilead (for Gad), and Golan (for Manasseh).
15. The eligibility extends universally beyond ethnic Israelites: livnei Yisra'el ('for the Israelites'), velagger ('for the resident foreigner'), and velatoshav ('for the temporary settler'). The ger (long-term resident alien) and toshav (short-term sojourner) have equal access to the refuge system. Justice in capital cases is universal, not ethnic — a remarkable provision in the ancient Near East. The qualifying phrase bishgagah ('unintentionally') is repeated, reinforcing the core legal distinction of the chapter.
16. The first category of murder: striking with a keli varzel ('iron implement'). Iron objects are inherently lethal weapons — using one against a person signals murderous intent. The verdict formula is emphatic: rotseach hu ('he is a murderer'), mot yumat harotseach ('the murderer must certainly be put to death'). The phrase mot yumat uses the infinitive absolute construction for absolute certainty — there is no exception, no alternative sentence. Verses 16-18 establish a three-material typology of murder weapons: iron, stone, and wood.
17. The second murder category: striking with even yad ('a hand-held stone') asher yamut bah ('with which one could die'). The qualifier 'capable of causing death' is legally significant — it distinguishes between a pebble (incapable of killing, thus not evidence of murderous intent) and a boulder or large rock (capable of killing, thus evidence of intent). The size and lethality of the weapon factor into the determination of intent, a surprisingly sophisticated jurisprudential principle.
18. The third murder category: a keli ets-yad ('hand-held wooden implement') capable of killing. The three materials — iron (v 16), stone (v 17), wood (v 18) — cover essentially every possible murder weapon in the ancient world. In each case, using an implement known to be lethal establishes the presumption of intent. The repeated verdict formula rotseach hu, mot yumat harotseach creates a legal refrain — an unmistakable judicial pronouncement echoing three times.

19. The go'el haddam ('blood avenger,' literally 'redeemer of the blood') is now formally introduced with his execution authority. The go'el is the designated kinsman who bears responsibility for the slain relative's blood. The phrase hu yamit et-harotseach ('he himself shall put the murderer to death') and befīg'o-vo hu yemitennu ('when he encounters him, he shall put him to death') grants the go'el direct execution authority after the community has established guilt. This is not vigilante justice — it operates within the framework of communal adjudication (v 24), with the go'el serving as the appointed executioner.
20. Two additional indicators of murderous intent beyond weapon type: besin'ah yehdofennu ('shoves him out of hatred') and hishlikh alav bitsediyah ('hurls something at him with premeditation'). The word sin'ah ('hatred') establishes the emotional motive, while tsediyah ('ambush, premeditation, lying in wait') establishes prior planning. Together, motive and premeditation determine whether a killing constitutes murder or manslaughter — the Hebrew legal system evaluates both the physical act and the mental state behind it.
21. Even bare-handed killing qualifies as murder when accompanied by eivah ('hostility, enmity'). The phrase hikkahu veyado ('struck him with his hand/fist') shows that no weapon is necessary for a murder conviction — intent is what matters. The repeated conclusion go'el haddam yamit et-harotseach befīg'o-vo ('the blood avenger shall put the murderer to death when he encounters him') establishes the go'el as the appointed executioner in all proven murder cases. Verses 16-21 collectively define murder by three criteria: lethal weapon, prior hatred, or hostile premeditation.
22. The legal pivot to manslaughter: befeta ('suddenly, unexpectedly') and belo eivah ('without hostility'). These two conditions — impulsiveness without malice — distinguish accidental killing from murder. The parallel phrase belo tsediyah ('without premeditation, without lying in wait') in the same sentence reinforces that no prior planning or ambush was involved. This verse directly mirrors verse 20, using the same verbs (hadaf — 'shove,' hishlikh — 'hurl') but negating the indicators of intent. The identical actions can constitute either murder or manslaughter depending entirely on the mental state.
23. An additional manslaughter scenario: killing with a stone belo re'ot ('without seeing' the victim) — the element of accident is paramount. The classic case: a person drops or throws a lethal object without knowing someone is below. The key exculpatory factors are stated explicitly: vehu lo oyev lo ('he was not his enemy') and velo mevaqesh ra'ato ('he was not seeking to harm him'). The absence of enmity, malice, and premeditation collectively define unintentional homicide. The legal system examines the killer's relationship to the victim and the killer's prior intentions.
24. The community (edah) serves as judge: veshafu ha'edah bein hammakkeh uvein go'el haddam ('the community shall judge between the striker and the blood avenger'). This establishes communal adjudication — neither the victim's family nor the killer decides the case unilaterally. The phrase al hamishpatim ha'elohim ('according to these regulations') binds the court to the specific legal criteria outlined in the preceding verses (vv 16-23). The law constrains both the go'el (who might kill an innocent manslayer) and the killer (who might escape just punishment).
25. If the killing is ruled unintentional, the community must intervene: vehitsilu ha'edah et-harotseach miyyad go'el haddam ('the community shall rescue the killer from the hand of the blood avenger'). The verb hitsilu ('rescue, deliver') casts the community as the manslayer's protector against the go'el's vengeance. The manslayer is returned to his ir miqlato ('his city of refuge') with a crucial condition: veyashav bah ad-mot haKohen haGadol ('he shall dwell in it until the death of the high priest') who was mashach oto beshemen haqqodesh ('anointed with the sacred oil'). The high priest's death functions as a kind of atonement — his passing somehow covers the unintentional bloodshed and releases the manslayer from exile.
26. A critical limitation: im yatso yetse harotseach et-gevu' ir miqlato ('if the killer going out goes out beyond the boundary of his city of refuge'). The doubled verb yatso yetse ('going out, he goes out') is an infinitive absolute construction emphasizing any departure, however brief or for whatever reason. The city of refuge is simultaneously a sanctuary and a prison — protection comes with the constraint of confinement within its borders.
27. If the go'el haddam finds the manslayer michuts ligevu' ir miqlato ('outside the border of his city of refuge') and kills him — ein lo dam ('there is no blood upon him'), meaning the blood avenger bears no bloodguilt. The manslayer forfeited his protection by stepping beyond the designated boundary. The stark phrase ein lo dam ('no blood on him') is the same legal formula used to absolve someone of responsibility for a death — the blood of the manslayer will not be charged to the avenger's account.
28. The principle is restated with its temporal boundary: be'ir miqlato yeshev ad-mot haKohen haGadol ('in his city of refuge he shall dwell until the death of the high priest'). After the high priest's death: yashuv harotseach el-erets achuzzato ('the killer may return to the land of his property holding'). The high priest's death inaugurates a kind of release — his passing functions analogously to a jubilee, restoring the manslayer to full freedom and property rights. The connection between the high priest's death and the manslayer's release remains one of the most debated points in Jewish legal commentary.
29. The closing formula establishes permanent jurisdiction: lechuqqat mishpat ledoroteikhem bechol moshevoteikhem ('as a statute of judgment throughout your generations in all your settlements'). The term chuqqat mishpat ('statute of judgment, legal ordinance') combines chuqqah ('enacted statute') with mishpat ('judgment, justice, legal decision'), creating a compound that means 'enacted legal standard.' The legislation applies universally in time (ledoroteikhem — 'throughout your generations') and space (bechol moshevoteikhem — 'in all your dwelling places').
30. Two procedural safeguards: first, execution requires lefi edim ('on the mouth of witnesses' — plural, meaning multiple witnesses); second, ed echad lo ya'aneh venefesh lamut ('one witness shall not testify against a person for death'). The minimum of two witnesses prevents a single individual from weaponizing the justice system through false accusation. This principle becomes foundational in all subsequent Jewish law (cf. Deuteronomy 17:6, 19:15) and is echoed in the New Testament requirement for corroborating testimony (Matthew 18:16, 2 Corinthians 13:1).
31. The prohibition velo tiqchu kofer lenefesh rotseach ('you shall not accept a ransom for the life of a murderer') blocks the wealthy from purchasing immunity from capital punishment. The kofer ('ransom, compensation payment') was standard in property disputes and some injury cases, but

human life taken through murder cannot be monetarily compensated. The phrase *asher hu rasha lamut* ('who is guilty to death' — who deserves the death penalty) uses *rasha* ('guilty, wicked') as a legal verdict. The *ki mot yumat* ('he must certainly be put to death') closes all escape routes for the convicted murderer.

32. The same prohibition extends to the manslayer in exile: *velo tiqchu kofer lanus el-ir miqlato lashuv lashevet ba'arets ad-mot haKohen* ('you shall not accept ransom for the one who has fled to his city of refuge, to return to dwell in the land until the death of the priest'). No payment can substitute for the required period of exile — the manslayer cannot buy early release. Both murderer (v 31) and manslayer (v 32) are placed beyond the reach of monetary influence — the system resists corruption and ensures that justice in capital cases cannot be purchased.
33. The theological foundation for the entire chapter: *velo tachanifu et-ha'arets* ('you shall not pollute the land'). The verb *ch-n-f* means 'to pollute, make profane, corrupt' — the same root used in Jeremiah 3:1, 9 for land corrupted by covenant unfaithfulness. Unpunished bloodshed contaminates the physical soil: *ki haddam hu yachanif et-ha'arets* ('for it is the blood that pollutes the land'). The decisive principle: *vela'arets lo yekhuppar laddam asher shupakh-bah ki im bedam shofkho* ('the land cannot receive atonement for blood shed on it except by the blood of the one who shed it'). In the Hebrew worldview, spilled blood cries from the ground (Genesis 4:10) and the land itself demands justice. Only the killer's blood can purge the defilement his act introduced.
34. The climactic rationale: *velo tetamme et-ha'arets* ('do not defile the land') — using *tame* ('ritually defile') alongside the previous *chanaf* ('morally pollute') to indicate that bloodshed creates both moral and ritual contamination. The critical phrase: *asher ani shokhen betokhah* ('in which I dwell'). God's residence in the land makes its purity a personal divine concern. The closing declaration *ki ani YHVH shokhen betokh benei Yisra'el* ('for I the LORD dwell among the Israelites') grounds the entire legal system in God's presence — the divine Resident demands that His dwelling place remain uncontaminated by unresolved bloodshed. The *pe* paragraph marker closes this major legal section and the penultimate chapter of Numbers.

36

Summary: *The leaders of the Gilead clan (Manasseh) raise a concern about the Zelophehad ruling: if the daughters marry men from other tribes, their inherited land will transfer permanently to the husband's tribe — and even the Jubilee cannot reverse it. God directs that heiresses must marry within their own tribe. Zelophehad's daughters comply, marrying their cousins, and the book of Numbers closes with a summary formula.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The book ends where it began: with questions of tribal organization and inheritance. The Gileadite petition uses the same verb *vattiqravnah* ('they drew near') as the daughters' original petition in Numbers 27:1, creating a literary bracket. Their legal argument is sophisticated: the Jubilee (Leviticus 25) restores alienated property, but inherited land transferred through marriage is not technically 'alienated' — it changed tribal affiliation through a legitimate pathway. The solution preserves both the daughters' right to inherit and the tribe's territorial integrity.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *nigre'ah* ('will be subtracted,' v. 3) and its counterpart *venosaf* ('will be added') describe a zero-sum transfer between tribes. We rendered these as 'subtracted' and 'added' to preserve the mathematical imagery. The phrase *al pi YHWH beyad Mosheh* ('by the mouth of the LORD through the hand of Moses,' v. 13) in the book's closing formula — combining mouth and hand — we rendered 'by the LORD's command through Moses,' but the dual image of speech and action is worth noting.*

Connections: *This chapter is the direct sequel to Numbers 27:1-11, completing the Zelophehad inheritance cycle. The Jubilee reference (v. 4) connects to Leviticus 25:10-13. The daughters' compliance — marrying within Manasseh — is confirmed in Joshua 17:3-6. The closing formula (v. 13) echoes Numbers 1:1 and frames the entire book as commands given *be'arvot Mo'av* ('in the plains of Moab'), the staging ground for everything that follows in Deuteronomy and Joshua.*

¹The heads of the ancestral houses belonging to the clan of the descendants of Gilead — son of Machir, son of Manasseh — from the clans of Joseph's descendants, approached and addressed Moses and the tribal leaders, the heads of Israelite ancestral houses. ²They said, "The LORD instructed my lord to distribute the land as an inheritance by lot to the Israelites, and my lord was also directed by the LORD to grant the inheritance of our kinsman Zelophehad to his daughters. ³If they marry men from any other Israelite tribe, their inheritance will be subtracted from our ancestral inheritance and added to the inheritance of whichever tribe they join. Our allotted share will be permanently reduced. ⁴Even when the Jubilee comes

for the Israelites, their inheritance will be permanently added to the tribe they have joined, and it will be taken away from our ancestral tribe's inheritance." ⁵Moses instructed the Israelites at the LORD's direction, saying, "The tribe of Joseph's descendants speaks correctly. ⁶This is what the LORD commands regarding Zelophehad's daughters: They may marry whoever seems best to them, but they must marry within a clan of their father's tribe. ⁷No inheritance among the Israelites is to circulate from one tribe to another, because every Israelite must hold firmly to the inheritance of their ancestral tribe. ⁸Every daughter who inherits property in any Israelite tribe must marry someone from a clan within her father's tribe, so that every Israelite retains their ancestral inheritance. ⁹No inheritance is to transfer from one tribe to another. Each of the Israelite tribes must hold firmly to its own inheritance." ¹⁰Zelophehad's daughters did exactly as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹¹Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Noah — Zelophehad's daughters — married their cousins on their father's side. ¹²They married into the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph, and their inheritance remained within the tribe of their father's clan. ¹³These are the commandments and legal decisions that the LORD issued through Moses to the Israelites on the plains of Moab, beside the Jordan across from Jericho.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyiqrevu* ('they drew near') signals a formal petition — the same verb used in Numbers 27:1 when Zelophehad's daughters first approached Moses. The petitioners are *rashei ha'avot* ('heads of the ancestral houses'), the senior male authorities of the clan of Gilead. The genealogy *ben Makhir ben Menasheh* ('son of Machir, son of Manasseh') establishes their tribal standing within the Joseph branch, grounding their concern in the specific inheritance at stake. The *nesi'im* ('tribal leaders') alongside Moses form the judicial audience, echoing the assembled leadership of 27:2.
2. The petitioners address Moses as *adoni* ('my lord'), a respectful title acknowledging his authority. They frame their concern by citing two prior divine commands: first, the general land-by-lot distribution (*nachalah begoral* — 'inheritance by lot,' cf. Numbers 26:55-56), and second, the specific ruling for Zelophehad's daughters (cf. Numbers 27:6-7). The term *achinu* ('our brother/kinsman') shows Zelophehad is from their own clan — this is not an abstract legal question but a matter directly affecting their tribal allotment.
3. The legal problem is stated precisely: marriage transfers the woman to her husband's household, and with Zelophehad's daughters, the land goes with them. The verb *nigre'ah* ('it will be subtracted, diminished') and its counterpart *venosaf* ('it will be added') describe a zero-sum transfer between tribes. The phrase *umigoral nachalatenu yiggare'a* ('from the lot of our inheritance it will be diminished') emphasizes that what was divinely assigned by lot — and therefore by God's own determination — would be altered by intermarriage. The concern is structural: a mechanism exists that could erode tribal territory over time.
4. The Jubilee (*yovel*) — the fiftieth-year land restoration described in Leviticus 25:10-13 — normally returns land to its original tribal owner. The petitioners argue that inheritance through daughters creates a loophole: since the land was never sold but transferred through marriage, the Jubilee mechanism does not apply. The land remains with the husband's tribe permanently. This is a sophisticated legal argument: the Jubilee restores alienated property, but inherited property transferred via marriage is not 'alienated' in the technical sense — it has changed tribal affiliation through a legitimate inheritance pathway.
5. Moses responds *al pi YHWH* ('at the mouth of the LORD' — by divine direction), confirming that the ruling comes from God, not from Moses's own judgment. The phrase *ken... dovrin* ('correctly... they speak' — literally 'rightly they are speaking') validates the petitioners' legal reasoning. As in the original Zelophehad ruling (Numbers 27:7, where God said *ken benot Tselofchad doverot* — 'correctly Zelophehad's daughters speak'), God affirms the legitimacy of the concern. Both the daughters' right to inherit and the tribe's right to preserve its allotment are upheld.
6. The ruling balances two principles: personal choice (*lattov be'eineihem* — 'to the good in their eyes,' meaning whoever they find suitable) and tribal preservation (*akh lemishpachat matteh avihen* — 'only within the clan of their father's tribe'). The word *akh* ('only, however') introduces the sole restriction. The daughters are not assigned husbands — they retain agency in choosing a spouse — but the pool of eligible partners is limited to their own tribal clan. This elegant solution preserves both the daughters' inheritance rights (from Numbers 27) and the tribal land boundaries.
7. The verb *tissov* ('circulate, rotate, transfer') describes land moving from tribe to tribe — an unacceptable fluidity in what should be a permanent arrangement. The counter-principle uses *yidbequ* ('they shall cling, hold fast') — the same root (*d-b-q*) used for the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24 and for devotion to God in Deuteronomy 10:20. The Israelites must 'cling' to their ancestral inheritance with the same tenacity as marriage or covenant loyalty. The verse establishes a general principle that extends beyond the Zelophehad case to all inheritance law.
8. The ruling now extends beyond Zelophehad's five daughters to a universal principle: *kol bat yoreshet nachalah* ('every daughter who inherits property'). The purpose clause *lema'an yirshu benei Yisra'el ish nachalat avotav* ('so that the Israelites may each inherit the inheritance of their ancestors') reveals the theological priority: God's original distribution of the land must remain intact across generations. The verb *yirshu* ('they shall inherit') connects back to the promise of possessing the land — a permanent feature of Israel's covenant identity.
9. This verse restates verse 7 with slight variation, forming an *inclusio* (envelope structure) around the legislation in verses 7-9. The shift from *ish* ('each person,' v 7) to *mattot* ('tribes,' v 9) broadens the scope: not only individuals but entire tribes bear responsibility for maintaining their allotments. The verb *yidbequ* ('they shall hold fast') appears again — the tribes collectively must cling to their inheritance. The repetition is characteristic of legal proclamation in the Pentateuch: stating the principle, elaborating the application, then restating the principle.

10. The compliance formula *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ken asu* ('just as the LORD commanded Moses, so they did') is used throughout the Pentateuch for faithful obedience (cf. Exodus 39:32, 40:16). Applied here to the daughters, it places their compliance on the same level as Moses's own obedience in constructing the tabernacle. The daughters, who boldly petitioned for their rights in Numbers 27, now equally submit to the limitation placed on those rights — their obedience is not passive but active and willing.
11. The five daughters are named individually — Machlah, Tirtsah, Choglah, Milkah, and No'ah — as they were in Numbers 26:33 and 27:1. The phrase *livnei dodeihen* ('to sons of their uncles' — their paternal cousins) specifies that they married within the closest possible family circle. The listing of all five names honors their individual identities — these are not anonymous women but named agents in Israelite legal history, each making a personal choice within the prescribed boundaries.
12. The narrative confirms the successful outcome: the daughters married within Manasseh, and the inheritance stayed put. The verb *vattehi* ('it remained') signals stability — the *nachalah* did not circulate (*tissov*, as feared in v 7). The phrase *al matteh mishpachat avihen* ('upon the tribe of the clan of their father') emphasizes that the land stayed exactly where God's lot had originally placed it. The resolution satisfies all parties: the daughters inherit, the tribe retains its territory, and the divine land distribution is preserved.
13. This closing colophon (subscript) wraps up not just chapter 36 but the entire second half of Numbers (chapters 22-36), which takes place *be'arvot Mo'av* ('on the plains of Moab'). The paired terms *mitsvot* ('commandments') and *mishpatim* ('legal decisions, judgments') encompass both absolute commands and case-law rulings like the Zelophehad legislation. The phrase *beyad Mosheh* ('by the hand of Moses' — through Moses as mediator) identifies Moses as the channel of divine instruction. The geographic marker *al Yarden Yereicho* ('beside the Jordan at Jericho') places Israel on the threshold of the promised land — the book of Numbers ends with the people poised to cross over, their laws established, their inheritance mapped, and even edge cases like daughters' marriages resolved.

Deuteronomy

1

Summary: Moses addresses all Israel east of the Jordan, recounting the journey from Horeb to Kadesh — the appointment of leaders, the sending of spies, and Israel's refusal to enter the land.

*What Makes This Remarkable: The book's Hebrew title Devarim ('Words') comes from the opening phrase *elleh ha-devarim*. This is Moses's voice — the only book where the lawgiver speaks in sustained first person. The word *be'er* (v. 5), meaning 'to explain or make clear,' signals that Deuteronomy is not new legislation but Moses interpreting the Law for a new generation that did not stand at Sinai.*

*Translation Friction: We rendered *eikhah* (v. 12) as 'how' — the same word that opens the book of Lamentations. Moses asks 'how can I alone bear your burden?' with a word that will later ask 'how desolate the city sits.' The resonance is deliberate but untranslatable without a note. The verb *be'er* ('explain') appears only here and in 27:8 and Habakkuk 2:2.*

Connections: The spy narrative retells Numbers 13-14 from Moses's perspective, with key differences in emphasis. The phrase 'the LORD your God carried you, as a man carries his son' (v. 31) is echoed in Isaiah 63:9 and Hosea 11:3. The Horeb-to-Kadesh journey becomes a paradigm for Israel's pattern of promise, rebellion, and consequence.

¹These are the words that Moses spoke to all of Israel on the east side of the Jordan — in the wilderness, in the Arabah opposite Suph, between Paran and Tophel, Laban, Hazeroth, and Di-zahab. ²(It is an eleven-day journey from Horeb to Kadesh-barnea by way of Mount Seir.) ³In the fortieth year, on the first day of the eleventh month, Moses addressed the Israelites with everything the LORD had commanded him to tell them, ⁴after he had defeated Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon, and Og king of Bashan, who ruled from Ashtaroth at Edrei. ⁵On the east side of the Jordan, in the land of Moab, Moses undertook to explain this Law, saying: ⁶The LORD our God spoke to us at Horeb: 'You have stayed at this mountain long enough.' ⁷Break camp, set out, and go to the hill country of the Amorites and to all the neighboring regions — the Arabah, the hill country, the western foothills, the Negev, and the coastal plain — the land of the Canaanites, and on to Lebanon, as far as the great river, the Euphrates. ⁸Look — I have placed the land before you. Go in and take possession of the land that the LORD swore to your ancestors — to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — to give to them and to their descendants after them. ⁹I said to you at that time: 'I cannot carry the burden of you by myself.' ¹⁰The LORD your God has made you numerous, and today you are as many as the stars in the sky. ¹¹(May the LORD, the God of your ancestors,

increase you a thousand times over and bless you just as He promised you!) ¹²How can I carry by myself your troubles, your burdens, and your disputes? ¹³Choose for yourselves wise, discerning, and experienced men from each of your tribes, and I will appoint them as your leaders. ¹⁴You answered me and said, 'What you have proposed is a good plan to carry out.' ¹⁵So I selected the leaders of your tribes — wise and experienced men — and appointed them as heads over you: commanders of thousands, commanders of hundreds, commanders of fifties, commanders of tens, and officials for your tribes. ¹⁶I instructed your judges at that time: 'Hear the cases among your fellow Israelites and judge fairly between a person and his brother or the resident foreigner among him.' ¹⁷Show no partiality in judgment. Give the small and the great an equal hearing. Do not be intimidated by anyone, because judgment belongs to God. Any case too difficult for you, bring to me and I will hear it. ¹⁸At that time I gave you instructions regarding everything you were to do. ¹⁹We set out from Horeb and traveled through that entire vast and terrifying wilderness that you saw for yourselves, along the route to the Amorite hill country, just as the LORD our God had directed us, and we arrived at Kadesh-barnea. ²⁰I said to you, 'You have reached the hill country of the Amorites, which the LORD our God is giving to us.' ²¹Look — the LORD your God has placed the land before you. Go up and take possession of it, just as the LORD, the God of your ancestors, told you. Do not be afraid, and do not lose heart. ²²Then all of you approached me and said, 'Let us send men ahead of us to scout out the land for us and bring back a report about the route we should take and the cities we will encounter.' ²³The plan seemed good to me, so I selected twelve men from among you, one from each tribe. ²⁴They set out and went up into the hill country, reaching the Wadi of Eshcol, and explored it. ²⁵They took some of the produce of the land in their hands and brought it down to us. They gave us their report and said, 'The land that the LORD our God is giving us is good.' ²⁶But you refused to go up. You rebelled against the command of the LORD your God. ²⁷You grumbled in your tents and said, 'The LORD hates us! That is why He brought us out of Egypt — to hand us over to the Amorites so they could destroy us.' ²⁸'Where can we possibly go? Our own brothers have made our hearts melt, reporting: "The people are bigger and taller than we are; the cities are large, with fortifications reaching to the sky. We even saw the descendants of the Anakim there."' ²⁹I told you, 'Do not be terrified of them. Do not be afraid of them.' ³⁰The LORD your God, who goes before you — He Himself will fight for you, exactly as He did for you in Egypt right before your eyes, ³¹and in the wilderness, where you saw how the LORD your God carried you as a father carries his child through the entire journey you traveled, until you reached this place. ³²Yet despite all this, you did not trust the LORD your God — ³³who went ahead of you on the road, scouting out camping places for you — in fire by night to light your path, and in a cloud by day. ³⁴The LORD heard your words and was angry. He took an oath, saying: ³⁵'Not a single person of this evil generation will see the good land that I swore to give to your ancestors — ³⁶except Caleb son of Jephunneh. He will see it, and I will give the land he walked on to him and to his descendants, because he followed the LORD wholeheartedly.' ³⁷The LORD was also angry with me because of you, saying, 'You too will not enter there.' ³⁸Joshua son of Nun, who serves before you — he will enter there. Strengthen him, because he is the one who will lead Israel to inherit it. ³⁹As for your little ones, whom you claimed would become plunder, and your children who today cannot yet tell good from evil — they are the ones who will enter there. I will give it to them, and they will take possession of it. ⁴⁰But as for you — turn around and head back into the wilderness, toward the Sea of Reeds. ⁴¹You responded and said to me, 'We have sinned against the LORD. We will go up and fight, just as the LORD our God commanded us.' So each of you strapped on your weapons of war and thought it easy to march up into the hill country. ⁴²But the LORD said to me, 'Tell them: Do not go up. Do not fight — because I am not with you. Otherwise you will be defeated by your enemies.' ⁴³I told you this, but you refused to listen. You rebelled against the LORD's command, and arrogantly you marched up into the hill country. ⁴⁴The Amorites who lived in that hill country came out against you and chased you as a swarm of bees does, crushing you in Seir all the way to Hormah. ⁴⁵You came back and wept before the LORD, but the LORD would not listen to your cries or pay attention to you. ⁴⁶So you remained at Kadesh for a long time — all those many days that you stayed there.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *elleh ha-devarim* ('these are the words') opens Deuteronomy as a formal speech act — *devarim* encompasses words, matters, and events. Moses is positioned *be'ever ha-yarden* ('on the far side of the Jordan') looking toward the promised land he will never enter. The location *mul Suph* ('opposite Suph') is debated: it may refer to the Yam Suph (Sea of Reeds) region or a specific locale near Moab. The cluster of place names — Paran,

Tophel, Laban, Hatserot, Di-zahav — likely marks stages of Israel's wilderness journey, reminding the audience of the long road that brought them here.

2. This parenthetical note creates sharp dramatic irony: the *achad asar yom* ('eleven-day journey') from Horeb to Kadesh-barnea that should have been a brief march stretched into forty years because of Israel's rebellion. The contrast between the short distance and the long detour frames the entire book's message about the consequences of disobedience.
3. The precise dating — *arba'im shanah* ('fortieth year'), *ashte-asar chodesh* ('eleventh month'), *echad la-chodesh* ('first of the month') — places this speech near the very end of the wilderness period and of Moses's life. The phrase *k'hol asher tsivah YHWH oto* ('according to everything the LORD had commanded him') establishes that Moses speaks not on his own authority but as the faithful mediator of divine instruction.
4. The verb *hakoto* ('his striking/defeating') from the root *nakah* places these victories as the immediate backdrop to Moses's speech. Sihon in Heshbon and Og in Ashtaroth/Edrei represent the two Transjordanian powers whose defeat opened the east bank of the Jordan for Israelite settlement. Ashtaroth may derive from the name of the goddess Ashtoreth, suggesting a former cultic center.
5. The verb *ho'il* ('undertook, resolved, began') signals Moses's deliberate decision to expound the instruction before his death. The verb *be'er* ('to make clear, to explain, to engrave') implies not mere repetition but clarification and commentary — Moses is interpreting and applying the Torah for a new generation. This frames Deuteronomy as authorized exposition of Sinai legislation, not simply a restatement.
6. The phrase *rav lakhem shevet* ('enough for you to dwell') uses *rav* ('much, enough, sufficient') as a divine directive to end the Horeb encampment. The command signals transition: the purpose of Sinai — receiving the covenant — is complete, and the people must now move toward the land where they will live it out. Moses uses 'our God' (*Eloheinu*) to include himself in the community being addressed.
7. God's command uses three imperatives — *penu* ('turn'), *us'u* ('travel'), *uvo'u* ('go in') — conveying urgency. The geographical catalog describes the entire promised land through its ecological zones: *aravah* (rift valley), *har* (hill country), *shfelah* (western foothills/lowlands), *negev* (southern desert), and *chof ha-yam* (seacoast). This comprehensive survey — from the Amorite hills to the Euphrates — represents the maximum extent of the divine land grant.
8. The imperative *re'eh* ('look, see') calls for attentive recognition of what God has done. The verb *natati* ('I have given') uses the perfect tense — the gift is already accomplished from God's perspective even though Israel has not yet entered. The command *reshu* ('take possession') from *yarash* implies displacing current inhabitants. The patriarchal oath — to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — anchors the land promise in covenant history, reinforcing that this is not mere conquest but covenant fulfillment.
9. The verb *se'et* ('to carry, to bear') from *nasa* conveys the weight of leadership — the same verb used of carrying a physical load. Moses's admission *lo ukhal levadi* ('I am unable alone') echoes the crisis of Numbers 11:14 and anticipates the delegation structure that follows. The phrasing reflects both honest vulnerability and practical wisdom about governance.
10. The verb *hirbah* ('multiplied, made numerous') from *ravah* directly fulfills the patriarchal promise to Abraham (Genesis 15:5, 22:17). The simile *k'kokhvei ha-shamayim la-rov* ('like the stars of heaven in abundance') is a covenant marker — what was once a promise to a childless man is now a visible reality. Moses presents the very problem of governance (too many people) as evidence of divine faithfulness.
11. This parenthetical blessing — *yosef aleikhem kakhem elef pe'amim* ('may He add upon you like you a thousand times') — interrupts Moses's complaint about the people's numbers with a spontaneous prayer for even more growth. The jussive *vivarekh* ('and may He bless') expresses Moses's genuine desire for Israel's flourishing even as he acknowledges the burden of their size. The interjection reveals Moses's pastoral heart.
12. The exclamatory *eikhah* ('how?!') expresses overwhelmed frustration — the same word that opens the book of Lamentations. Three nouns escalate the problem: *torchakhem* ('your troublesomeness/difficulty'), *masa'akhem* ('your load/burden'), and *rivkhem* ('your quarrels/legal disputes'). Together they describe the full weight of communal leadership: dealing with difficult people, bearing responsibility, and adjudicating conflicts.
13. The imperative *havu lakhem* ('select for yourselves') places responsibility on the people to identify qualified candidates. Three qualifications are listed: *chakhamim* ('wise' — possessing practical wisdom), *nevonim* ('discerning' — having intellectual clarity and insight), and *vidu'im* ('known/recognized' — carrying public reputation and trust). Moses retains the authority to formally install them (*va'asimem* — 'I will set them') but shares the selection process.
14. The people's unanimous response — *tov ha-davar asher dibarta la'asot* ('good is the thing you have spoken to do') — contrasts sharply with their later refusal at Kadesh-barnea. When leadership structure serves their interests, they agree readily; when faith is demanded, they rebel. Moses may be drawing this contrast deliberately for his audience.
15. The tiered leadership structure — *sarei alafim* ('chiefs of thousands'), *sarei me'ot* ('chiefs of hundreds'), *sarei chamishim* ('chiefs of fifties'), *sarei asarot* ('chiefs of tens') — creates a decimal administrative system. The *shotrim* ('officials, officers') served as administrators and record-keepers. Notably, Moses mentions only *chakhamim* and *vidu'im* ('wise and known') here, omitting *nevonim* ('discerning') from verse 13 — perhaps indicating that perfect candidates were unavailable.
16. The infinitive absolute *shamo'a* ('hearing' — hear thoroughly) demands careful, complete attention to testimony. The command *ushfattem tsedeq* ('judge righteously/justly') makes justice an active obligation, not a passive ideal. The inclusion of the *ger* ('resident foreigner, immigrant') alongside 'his brother' is remarkable — equal justice extends beyond ethnic Israel to those dwelling among them. This establishes a foundational principle of Israelite jurisprudence.

17. The phrase *lo takiru fanim* ('do not recognize faces') is the Hebrew idiom for showing partiality — literally, not being swayed by recognizing who stands before you. The parallel *ka-qaton ka-gadol tishma'un* ('the small like the great you shall hear') demands equal access regardless of social status. The theological foundation *ha-mishpat l'Elohim hu* ('the judgment is God's') transforms every judicial act into a divine function — judges act as God's representatives, which is why they must be fearless (*lo taguru* — 'do not shrink back').
18. The summary statement *va'atsaveh etkhem* ('I commanded you') with *et kol ha-devarim* ('all the things') emphasizes comprehensive instruction. Moses transitions from the appointment of judges to the narrative of the journey to Kadesh-barnea. The phrase *asher ta'asun* ('which you shall do') stresses that the commands require concrete action, not merely intellectual assent.
19. The wilderness is characterized as *ha-gadol v'ha-nora* ('the great and the terrifying') — *nora* from the root *yare* ('to fear') emphasizes genuine danger. Moses reminds them *asher re'item* ('which you saw') — they are eyewitnesses to God's protection through this deadly landscape. The arrival at Kadesh-barnea sets the stage for the critical failure: the spy mission and subsequent refusal to enter the land.
20. The participle *noten* ('is giving') presents the land grant as an ongoing, present-tense action — God is in the process of giving, and all Israel needs to do is receive. Moses's announcement *ba'tem* ('you have arrived') marks a moment of opportunity: the land is within reach, the divine gift is active, and the only question is whether Israel will respond in faith.
21. Two prohibitions close the verse: *al tira* ('do not fear') and *al techat* ('do not be shattered/dismayed'). The verb *tachat* from *chatat* means to be broken, shattered, or dismayed — stronger than ordinary fear, it describes a collapse of resolve. Together they address both emotional fear and psychological defeat. The shift from plural address (v. 20) to singular (*re'eh*, *lefanekha*) personalizes the command — each individual must choose courage.
22. The verb *va-tiqrevun* ('you drew near') with *kullekhem* ('all of you') emphasizes unanimous initiative — this was the people's idea, not God's command (contrast Numbers 13:1-2 where the LORD initiates). The verb *yachperu* ('let them dig out, search, explore') from *chaphar* implies thorough investigation. Moses's retelling places responsibility squarely on the people for initiating the spy mission, shifting the emphasis from the Numbers account.
23. The idiom *va-yitav be'einai* ('it was good in my eyes') indicates Moses's approval of the plan. His willingness to send spies was not itself sinful — reconnaissance is sound military practice. The problem would emerge not from scouting but from the people's response to the report. The number *shnem asar* ('twelve') — one per tribe — ensures representative participation and collective accountability.
24. The spies reached *nachal Eshkol* ('Wadi/Valley of Eshcol') — *eshkol* means 'cluster,' named for the famous grape cluster they found there (Numbers 13:23-24). The verb *vayeraglu* ('they spied it out') from *ragal* ('foot') literally means 'they footed through it' — walking the land to assess it firsthand. The report is initially positive, making the subsequent rebellion all the more tragic.
25. The physical evidence — *mi-pri ha-arets* ('from the fruit of the land') — confirmed the land's agricultural abundance. The spies' verdict *tovah ha-arets* ('good is the land') echoes God's own assessment. Moses's abbreviated retelling omits the frightening details of the majority report (Numbers 13:28-33) and focuses on the bottom-line conclusion: the land is good, the gift is real, and the refusal was inexcusable.
26. The verb *avitem* ('you were willing') negated — *lo avitem* ('you were not willing') — emphasizes willful refusal, not inability. The verb *va-tamru* ('you rebelled') from *marah* ('to be bitter, to rebel') describes not mere disobedience but defiant opposition to *pi YHWH* ('the mouth of the LORD') — His spoken command. The rebellion is framed as personal affront to God Himself.
27. The verb *va-teragnu* ('you grumbled, complained') from *ragan* describes sullen, resentful muttering — the complaint happens *be'ohaleikhem* ('in your tents'), privately and bitterly. The accusation *be-sin'at YHWH otanu* ('because of the LORD's hatred of us') is a shocking inversion of reality — they reinterpret the greatest act of divine love (the Exodus) as evidence of divine malice. This is the deepest form of unbelief: not doubting God's power but questioning His goodness.
28. The question *anah anachnu olim* ('where are we going up?') expresses hopelessness. The verb *hemassu* ('they melted') from *masas* describes the dissolving of courage — their brothers (*acheinu*) caused their hearts to liquify with fear. The hyperbolic *uvetsurot ba-shamayim* ('fortified to the heavens') conveys perceived impregnability. The *benei Anaqim* ('sons of Anak') were legendary giant warriors whose reputation was meant to terrify — and it worked.
29. Two verbs of fear are negated: *lo ta'artsun* ('do not be terrified/shattered') from *arats* ('to tremble, be in dread') and *lo tire'un* ('do not fear') from *yare*. The first describes existential dread — being psychologically overwhelmed; the second is ordinary fear. Moses counters both levels of their panic with direct prohibitions, addressing the root emotion driving the rebellion.
30. The participle *ha-holekh lifneikhem* ('the one going before you') presents God as an advance guard. The emphatic pronoun *hu* ('He Himself') underscores that the battle is God's, not theirs. The appeal to historical experience — *k'chol asher asah itkhem be-Mitsrayim* ('according to all He did with you in Egypt') *le'eineikhem* ('before your eyes') — makes their fear irrational: they have personally witnessed God's military intervention.
31. The simile *ka'asher yisa ish et beno* ('as a man carries his son') is one of the most tender images of God in the Hebrew Bible. The verb *nasa* ('carry, bear, lift') — the same word Moses used for his own burden in verse 9 — transfers the image to God. What Moses cannot bear alone, God has been doing all along. The father-son metaphor portrays God's protection as instinctive, constant, and deeply personal.
32. The participle *ma'aminim* ('believing, trusting') from the root *aman* ('to be firm, reliable, faithful') appears in the negative: *einkhem ma'aminim* ('you are not trusting'). This is the central indictment. After Egypt's plagues, the sea crossing, manna, and the wilderness journey — *uva-davar ha-zeh* ('even in this matter') — they still lacked the faith to enter. Trust (*emunah*) in Deuteronomy is not intellectual belief but confident reliance on

God's proven character.

33. God's guidance is described through three functions: He goes lifneikhem ('before you') as scout, He searches out (latur) camping sites (maqom la-chanotekhem — 'a place for your encamping'), and He provides navigation through the pillar of fire (ba-esh lailah — 'in fire by night') and cloud (uv-anan yomam — 'in a cloud by day'). The verb latur ('to scout, explore') is the same verb used for the spies' mission — ironically, God was already doing the reconnaissance they demanded.
34. The sequence — va-yishma ('He heard'), va-yiqtsaf ('He became angry'), va-yishava ('He swore') — progresses from perception to emotion to irrevocable decree. The verb qatsaf ('to be angry, furious') describes intense divine wrath provoked by the rebellion. That God seals His response with an oath (shava) means the judgment is permanent and cannot be appealed — the wilderness generation has forfeited the land.
35. The oath formula im yir'eh ish ('if a man shall see' — meaning 'surely no man shall see') is a self-imprecation: God stakes His own name that the ha-dor ha-ra ha-zeh ('this evil generation') will be excluded. The contrast between ha-arets ha-tovah ('the good land') and ha-dor ha-ra ('the evil generation') is deliberate — the land is good but the generation is corrupt, and corruption cannot inherit the good gift.
36. Caleb is the sole exception (zulati — 'except') from the condemned generation. The phrase mile acharei YHWH ('filled up after the LORD' — followed fully, wholeheartedly) uses male' ('to fill') to describe complete, undivided commitment. The land asher darakh bah ('which he trod upon') refers specifically to the territory Caleb scouted, later identified as Hebron. His reward is the very land he had the faith to believe God could give.
37. The verb hit'anaf ('was angry') from anaf is a strong term for divine wrath. Moses claims the anger was biglalkhem ('on your account, because of you') — connecting his own exclusion from the land to the people's rebellion. This anticipates the fuller explanation in Deuteronomy 3:26 and 4:21. The phrase gam attah ('you too, even you') is poignant: not even the mediator is exempt from the consequences of communal failure.
38. Joshua is described as ha-omed lefanekha ('the one standing/serving before you') — indicating his role as Moses's attendant and apprentice. The imperative chazzeq ('strengthen, encourage') from chazaq anticipates the threefold commissioning of Joshua in chapter 31. The verb yanchilennah ('he will cause [Israel] to inherit it') from nachal ('to inherit, to receive as a possession') assigns Joshua the role of land-distributor, completing what Moses began.
39. The divine reversal is striking: the tapkhem ('your little ones') whom the parents said la-vaz yihyeh ('would become plunder') are precisely the ones who will inherit the land. Their children asher lo yade'u ha-yom tov va-ra ('who do not yet know good and evil') are innocent of the parents' guilt. The irony is deliberate — the generation that claimed to fear for their children's safety condemned only themselves; the children will thrive.
40. The command penu lakhem ('turn yourselves') reverses the original command of verse 7 (penu... us'u — 'turn and travel' toward the land). Instead of advancing into the promised land, they must retreat ha-midbarah ('toward the wilderness'). The direction — derekh Yam Suf ('by the way of the Sea of Reeds') — sends them back the way they came, undoing the Exodus journey. The reversal is both geographical and spiritual.
41. The confession chatanu ('we have sinned') appears genuine but proves superficial — they immediately revert to self-will. The verb va-tahinu ('you thought it easy, you were presumptuous') from hun means to treat lightly, to consider trivial. Having first feared the Amorites excessively, they now swing to reckless overconfidence. Both extremes share the same root: ignoring God's actual word. They strap on klei milchamto ('his weapons of war') without divine authorization.
42. The prohibition is double: lo ta'alu ('do not go up') and lo tilachamu ('do not fight'). The reason is devastating: ki einenni be-qirbekhem ('because I am not in your midst'). Without the divine presence, military action is suicidal. The passive tinnagefu ('you will be struck, defeated') before their enemies reverses the promise of verse 30 — without God fighting for them, they will be the ones struck down.
43. The verb va-tazidu ('you acted presumptuously, arrogantly') from zud/zid means to boil over, to act with insolent boldness. This is not courage but reckless defiance — they disobeyed both the original command to enter (v. 26) and the subsequent command not to enter (v. 42). The pattern of double rebellion — refusing to go when told to go, then going when told not to go — exposes their fundamental problem: they obey their own will, not God's.
44. The simile ka'asher ta'asenah ha-devorim ('as bees do') portrays the Amorite attack as swarming, relentless, and painful — bees pursue aggressors far beyond their hive. The verb va-yaktu ('they struck/crushed') from katal describes severe military defeat. The rout extended be-Se'ir ad Chormah ('in Seir as far as Hormah') — ironically, Chormah derives from cherem ('devoted destruction'), previewing the conquest vocabulary. The place of their defeat would later become a place of their victory.
45. The sequence — va-tashuvu ('you returned'), va-tivku ('you wept') lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') — describes repentant posture, but God's response is silence: lo shama ('He did not listen') and lo he'ezin ('He did not give ear'). Two synonyms for hearing are negated to emphasize complete divine refusal. Their tears came too late — after presumptuous action, not before. Consequences for disobedience cannot always be reversed by remorse.
46. The concluding phrase yamim rabbim ('many days') with ka-yamim asher yeshavtem ('according to the days you stayed') is deliberately vague about the exact duration — likely encompassing the bulk of the thirty-eight years of wilderness wandering. The repetitive phrasing conveys the monotony of waiting: Kadesh became the staging ground for decades of purposeless delay, the consequence of a single moment of faithless refusal.

2

Summary: Moses recounts the wilderness wandering — Israel's long circuit around Edom and Moab, God's provision during forty years, and the defeat of King Sihon of Heshbon.

What Makes This Remarkable: God commands Israel to respect three nations' territorial rights: Esau's Seir, Moab, and Ammon — all of them Israel's relatives through Abraham and Lot. The theological principle is that God grants land to nations other than Israel. The parenthetical notes about the Emim, Rephaim, and Zamzummim (vv. 10-12, 20-23) are ancient editorial glosses preserving pre-Israelite ethnographic memory.

Translation Friction: The verb hiqshah (v. 30), describing God hardening Sihon's spirit, uses the same root as Pharaoh's hardening in Exodus. We rendered it 'made stubborn' to preserve the theological parallel. The phrase lo avah (v. 30, 'was not willing') creates a double causation: Sihon chose and God confirmed, the same tension as the Exodus hardening.

Connections: The Sihon victory is cited in Judges 11:19-22, Nehemiah 9:22, and Psalms 135:11; 136:19. The command not to provoke Edom, Moab, or Ammon recurs in Judges 11:15-18, where Jephthah appeals to this history. The forty years of provision (v. 7) anticipates the explicit reflection in 8:2-4.

¹So we turned back and headed into the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds, just as the LORD had told me, and we circled the region of Mount Seir for a long time. ²Then the LORD said to me: ³'You have been circling this mountain long enough. Turn northward.' ⁴Instruct the people as follows: You are about to pass through the territory of your relatives, the descendants of Esau, who live in Seir. They will be afraid of you, so be very careful — ⁵'Do not provoke them, because I will not give you any of their land — not even a footprint's width — for I have given Mount Seir to Esau as his inheritance.' ⁶'Buy food from them with silver so you can eat, and also purchase water from them with silver so you can drink.' ⁷'For the LORD your God has blessed you in everything your hands have done. He has watched over your journey through this vast wilderness. For forty years now the LORD your God has been with you; you have lacked nothing.' ⁸So we passed by our relatives, the descendants of Esau who live in Seir, leaving the Arabah road from Elath and Ezion-geber. We turned and traveled along the wilderness road of Moab. ⁹The LORD said to me, 'Do not harass Moab or engage them in battle, because I will not give you any of their land as a possession. I have given Ar to the descendants of Lot as their inheritance.' ¹⁰The Emim had formerly lived there — a people as large, numerous, and tall as the Anakim. ¹¹They too were considered Rephaim, like the Anakim, but the Moabites called them Emim. ¹²The Horites had formerly lived in Seir, but the descendants of Esau dispossessed them, destroying them and settling in their place — just as Israel did with the land of their possession that the LORD gave them. ¹³'Now get up and cross the Wadi Zered.' So we crossed the Wadi Zered. ¹⁴The time from when we left Kadesh-barnea until we crossed the Wadi Zered was thirty-eight years — until the entire generation of fighting men had perished from the camp, just as the LORD had sworn would happen to them. ¹⁵Indeed, the hand of the LORD was against them, working to eliminate them from the camp until they were all gone. ¹⁶When the last of the fighting men had finally died out from among the people, ¹⁷the LORD spoke to me, saying: ¹⁸'Today you are crossing the border of Moab at Ar.' ¹⁹'When you approach the territory of the Ammonites, do not harass them and do not provoke them, because I will not give you any of the Ammonites' land as a possession — I have given it to the descendants of Lot as their inheritance.' ²⁰(That region too was considered Rephaim territory. Rephaim had formerly lived there, and the Ammonites called them Zamzummim — ²¹a people as large, numerous, and tall as the Anakim. But the LORD destroyed them before the Ammonites, who dispossessed them and settled in their place — ²²just as He did for the descendants of Esau who live in Seir, when He destroyed the Horites before them so they could dispossess them and settle in their place — as it remains to this day. ²³And the Avvim, who had lived in settlements as far as Gaza — the Caphtorites, who came from Caphtor, destroyed them and settled in their place.) ²⁴'Get moving! Set out and cross the Arnon Gorge. Look — I have handed Sihon the Amorite, king of Heshbon, and his land over to you. Begin the conquest! Engage him in battle.' ²⁵'Starting today I will begin placing dread and fear of you

upon the peoples under all the heavens. When they hear reports about you, they will tremble and writhe in anguish before you.' ²⁶I sent messengers from the wilderness of Kedemoth to Sihon king of Heshbon with a peace proposal, saying: ²⁷'Let me pass through your land. I will stay on the road — strictly on the road. I will not turn right or left.' ²⁸'Sell me food for silver so I can eat, and provide me water for silver so I can drink. Just let me pass through on foot —' ²⁹'just as the descendants of Esau living in Seir and the Moabites living in Ar allowed me to do — until I cross the Jordan into the land that the LORD our God is giving us.' ³⁰But Sihon king of Heshbon refused to let us pass through, because the LORD your God had made his spirit stubborn and his heart unyielding, in order to hand him over to you — as has now happened. ³¹The LORD said to me, 'Look — I have already begun handing Sihon and his land over to you. Start taking possession so you may inherit his land.' ³²Sihon marched out against us with his entire army to fight at Jahaz. ³³The LORD our God handed him over to us. We struck down him, his sons, and all his forces. ³⁴We captured all his cities at that time and devoted every city to destruction — the men, the women, and the children. We left no survivor. ³⁵Only the livestock we took as plunder for ourselves, along with the spoil from the cities we had captured. ³⁶From Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Gorge, including the city in the gorge itself, all the way to Gilead — not a single city was too fortified for us. The LORD our God gave us everything. ³⁷But the territory of the Ammonites you did not approach — neither the banks of the Jabbok River, nor the cities in the highlands, nor anywhere else the LORD our God had forbidden us.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verbs *va-nefen* ('we turned') and *va-nissa* ('we set out') echo the divine command of 1:40. The phrase *va-nassov et har Se'ir yamim rabbim* ('we circled Mount Seir many days') compresses decades of aimless wandering into a single clause. The *yamim rabbim* ('many days') parallels the same phrase in 1:46 — the extended circling represents the consequence of their refusal to enter the land directly.
2. The messenger formula *va-yomer YHWH elai lemor* ('the LORD said to me, saying') marks a new divine instruction, transitioning from aimless wandering to directed movement. God breaks the long silence of the wilderness years with a fresh command — the period of judgment is ending.
3. The phrase *rav lakhem sov* ('enough for you circling') echoes the identical construction in 1:6 (*rav lakhem shevet* — 'enough for you dwelling'). In both cases God declares that a period of stagnation is over. The command *penu lakhem tsafonah* ('turn yourselves northward') redirects Israel toward the promised land — north through Transjordan. The divine initiative breaks the cycle of purposeless wandering.
4. The Edomites are called *acheikhem benei Esav* ('your brothers, the children of Esau') — the kinship language is significant. Despite the hostile history between Jacob and Esau, God recognizes their fraternal bond. The warning *v'yir'u mikkem* ('they will fear you') acknowledges Israel's military strength, but the command *v'nishmartem me'od* ('guard yourselves very carefully') warns against exploiting that advantage. Restraint, not conquest, is required.
5. The prohibition *al titgaru vam* ('do not provoke/engage them') from *garah* means to stir up conflict. The measure *ad midrakh kaf ragel* ('as far as the treading of the sole of a foot' — not even a footprint's width) emphasizes the absoluteness of the restriction. God's grant of *har Se'ir* to Esau (*yerushah l'Esav* — 'an inheritance to Esau') parallels Israel's own land grant — God is sovereign over all nations' territories, not just Israel's. This theological principle shapes the entire chapter.
6. The instruction to buy (*tishberu* — 'you shall purchase grain/food') from the Edomites rather than take by force establishes a commerce-not-conquest protocol. Even water — a critical resource in the wilderness — must be purchased (*tikhru* — 'you shall buy/dig') with *kesev* ('silver, money'). This demonstrates that Israel's military power was to be restrained by divine command, and their passage through Edom was to be peaceful and economically fair.
7. God's provision is comprehensive: *berakekha be-khol ma'aseh yadekha* ('He blessed you in every work of your hands'). The verb *yada* ('He knew/was attentive to') *lekhtekha* ('your walking') implies intimate, watchful care — not distant observation but personal attention. The summary *lo chasarta davar* ('you lacked nothing') after *arba'im shanah* ('forty years') in the *midbar ha-gadol* ('great wilderness') is remarkable: complete provision in complete desolation. This abundance is why they can afford to pay for Edomite food and water.
8. The route takes Israel *me'Eilat u-me'Etsyon Gaver* ('from Elath and from Ezion-geber') — both towns at the northern tip of the Gulf of Aqaba — then northward via the wilderness road of Moab. The continued use of *acheinu* ('our brothers/relatives') for the Edomites maintains the kinship language. The transition from Edomite to Moabite territory sets up the next set of divine restrictions on Israel's passage.
9. Two prohibitions: *al tatsar* ('do not harass/distress') from *tsarar* and *al titgar* ('do not engage/provoke') from *garah*. Moab is protected as *benei Lot* ('children of Lot') — Abraham's nephew, making the Moabites distant relatives of Israel. The city of Ar (the capital region of Moab) was divinely allocated to Lot's line just as Canaan was allocated to Abraham's. God's land-distribution extends beyond the Abrahamic covenant to include other peoples in His sovereign plan.
10. This parenthetical antiquarian note explains that the *Emim* (*ha-Emim* — possibly meaning 'the fearsome ones' or 'the terrors') were the previous inhabitants of Moab. They are compared to the *Anaqim* in being *gadol v'rav v'ram* ('great, numerous, and tall'). The subtext is reassuring: if the

Moabites could displace giant inhabitants, then Israel can certainly overcome the Canaanites with God's help.

11. The Repha'im ('shades' or 'healers') is the broader category for pre-Israelite giant peoples. The verb *yechashevu* ('they were reckoned/considered') indicates a classificatory system — different nations used different names for the same population. The Moabites' local term *Emim* coexisted with the more widely known Repha'im designation. This ethnographic note demonstrates Moses's awareness of regional naming conventions.
12. The Chorim ('Horites' — cave-dwellers or Hurrians) were the original inhabitants of Seir. The verb *yirashu* ('they dispossessed') is the same verb used for Israel's conquest — the parallel is explicit. The phrase *ka'asher asah Yisra'el* ('just as Israel did') refers proleptically to Israel's future conquest of Canaan, or retrospectively to the Transjordanian conquests. The point: God empowered Esau to displace the Horites just as He empowers Israel to displace the Canaanites.
13. The Nachal Zered ('Wadi Zered') marks the boundary between Edomite and Moabite territory. The abrupt command-and-compliance structure — *qumu v'ivru* ('rise and cross'), *va-na'avur* ('and we crossed') — contrasts sharply with the rebellion narratives of chapter 1. This new generation obeys immediately. The wadi crossing functions as a geographical marker of transition from the old era of wandering to the new era of purposeful advance.
14. The precise count — *shloshim u-shmoneh shanah* ('thirty-eight years') — combined with the eleven-day journey of 1:2 accounts for the full forty years. The phrase *ad tom kol ha-dor anshei ha-milchamah* ('until the completion of the entire generation of men of war') specifies that the military-age males who refused to fight at Kadesh had to die before Israel could advance. The oath fulfillment (*ka'asher nishba YHWH* — 'as the LORD swore') closes the circle on the judgment of 1:34-35.
15. The phrase *yad YHWH hayetah bam* ('the hand of the LORD was against them') describes active divine judgment, not merely natural attrition. The verb *le-humam* ('to confound, to destroy, to throw into panic') from *hamam* suggests God used disruption and turmoil — perhaps disease, conflict, or other calamities — to ensure the doomed generation perished within the wilderness. The repetition *ad tummam* ('until their completion') echoes the finality of divine judgment.
16. The phrase *tammu kol anshei ha-milchamah lamut* ('all the men of war finished dying') marks the end of the judgment era. The verb *tammu* ('they were finished, completed, consumed') from *tamam* conveys total completion — not one survived from the condemned generation. This verse is the hinge point of the narrative: the old generation's sentence is fully served, and the new generation can now move forward.
17. The speech formula *va-yedabber YHWH elai* ('the LORD spoke to me') resumes after the narrative parenthesis of verses 10-16. God speaks directly to Moses again, marking a new phase of the journey. The connection to verse 16 is immediate: the moment the last condemned man dies, God's word comes with new instructions.
18. The word *ha-yom* ('today') signals urgency and immediacy — the long waiting is over. Crossing *gevu Mo'av* ('the border of Moab') at Ar means passing through the Moabite capital region. The participle *over* ('crossing') in the present tense conveys that the action is already underway — God announces what He is already bringing about.
19. The Ammonites receive the same protection as Moab and Edom — *al tetsurem* ('do not besiege/harass them') and *al titgar bam* ('do not provoke them'). Like the Moabites, the Ammonites are *benei Lot* ('children of Lot'), making them distant relatives through Abraham's family. The threefold restriction — Edom (v. 5), Moab (v. 9), Ammon (v. 19) — establishes that God's land-distribution plan is comprehensive and respects the territorial rights of related peoples.
20. Another antiquarian note: the Ammonite territory was also *erets Repha'im* ('land of the Rephaim'). The Ammonites' local name for these people — *Zamzummim* — may derive from *zamam* ('to plan, to devise') or may be onomatopoeic, suggesting murmuring or buzzing speech. Each nation had its own designation for the same pre-Israelite giant population: *Emim* (Moab), *Horites* (Edom), *Zamzummim* (Ammon), *Anakim* (Canaan).
21. The repeated formula — *gadol v'rav v'ram ka-Anaqim* ('great, numerous, and tall like the Anakim') — and the pattern of divine destruction (*va-yashmidem YHWH* — 'the LORD destroyed them') followed by dispossession (*va-yirashu* — 'they dispossessed') drives home the lesson: giants are not invincible when God fights for a people. The implicit argument is that Israel's fear of the Anakim at Kadesh was groundless.
22. The phrase *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') anchors the ancient precedent in the audience's present experience — the Edomites still occupy Seir, confirming that God's land allocations endure. The repetitive pattern (God destroys previous inhabitants, new nation takes their place) establishes a theological template: land transfer is divinely managed, not humanly achieved. What God did for Esau, He will do for Israel.
23. This parenthetical note adds a fourth example of population displacement. The *Avvim* (a pre-Philistine people living *ba-chatserim* — 'in settlements/villages' near Gaza) were destroyed by the *Kaphtorim* ('Caphtorites'), generally identified as the Philistines originating from *Kaphtor* (Crete or a broader Aegean region). This example involves non-Israelite, non-Abrahamic peoples — demonstrating that God orchestrates population movements universally, not only for covenant peoples.
24. Three imperatives open the command: *qumu* ('rise'), *se'u* ('travel'), *v'ivru* ('cross'). The *Nachal Arnon* ('Arnon Gorge') is the boundary between Moab and Amorite territory — crossing it enters the combat zone. Unlike the prohibitions regarding Edom, Moab, and Ammon, God now commands engagement: *hachel rash* ('begin possessing') and *hitgar bo milchamah* ('engage him in battle'). The perfect tense *natati* ('I have given') again declares the outcome settled before the battle begins.
25. God promises to project *pachdekha v'yir'atekha* ('your dread and your fear') upon *ha-amim tachat kol ha-shamayim* ('the peoples under all the heavens'). Two fear responses describe the reaction: *ragzu* ('they will tremble/quake') and *chalu* ('they will writhe in pain/anguish') — the second verb is used for birth pangs, suggesting overwhelming, involuntary terror. The phrase *ha-yom ha-zeh achel* ('this day I begin') marks the inauguration of Israel's fearsome reputation among the nations.

- 26.** Despite the divine guarantee of victory, Moses first extends *divrei shalom* ('words of peace') — a diplomatic overture offering the possibility of peaceful passage. The *midbar Qedemot* ('wilderness of Kedemoth') is in Moabite border territory. This approach follows the protocol of Deuteronomy 20:10, which requires offering peace terms before attacking. Moses demonstrates that Israel is not a reckless aggressor but follows divine rules of engagement.
- 27.** The repeated *ba-derekh ba-derekh* ('on the road, on the road') is emphatic — strict adherence to the highway with no deviation. The pledge *lo asur yamin u-semol* ('I will not turn right or left') guarantees Israel will not encroach on Sihon's territory. The request mirrors the earlier passage through Edom, but Sihon's response will differ dramatically from Edom's cautious tolerance.
- 28.** The offer is purely commercial: *okhel ba-kesef tashbireni* ('food for silver you shall sell me') and *mayim ba-kesef titten li* ('water for silver you shall give me'). Israel proposes paying fair market value for provisions — no plundering, no foraging, no resource extraction. The final clause *raq ev'rah be-raglai* ('only let me pass through on my feet') emphasizes the minimal, non-threatening nature of the request.
- 29.** Moses cites precedent: the Edomites (*benei Esav* — 'children of Esau') and Moabites permitted peaceful passage and trade. The reference to crossing *ha-Yarden* ('the Jordan') to reach the land *YHWH Eloheinu noten lanu* ('the LORD our God is giving us') clarifies Israel's ultimate destination — they are not interested in Sihon's territory *per se* but simply need transit rights. However, God's larger plan will unfold differently.
- 30.** The divine hardening — *hiqshah YHWH et rucho* ('the LORD hardened his spirit') and *immets et levavo* ('made obstinate his heart') — recalls the hardening of Pharaoh. The verbs *qashah* ('to be hard, stiff') and *amats* ('to be strong, firm, obstinate') together describe complete inflexibility. The purpose clause *lema'an titto be-yadekha* ('in order to give him into your hand') reveals that Sihon's refusal was divinely orchestrated to create the conditions for Israel's first Transjordanian conquest.
- 31.** The verb *hachiloti* ('I have begun') from *chalal* indicates the process is already underway from God's perspective. The double command — *hachel rash lareshet* ('begin possessing to possess') — uses both the imperative and infinitive of *yarash* to emphasize urgency and totality. God's initiative precedes human action: He has already begun; Israel must now participate in what God is accomplishing.
- 32.** Sihon initiates the battle — *va-yetse liqratenu* ('he came out to meet us') *hu v'khol ammo* ('he and all his people') — giving Israel the legal and moral justification for the war: they offered peace (vv. 26-29), he refused (v. 30), and then he attacked. The battle at *Yahtsa* ('Jahaz') — a site east of the Dead Sea — becomes the first engagement in Israel's conquest. Sihon's full mobilization (*kol ammo* — 'all his people') leads to total defeat.
- 33.** The verb *va-yittenhu* ('He gave him') from *natan* places God as the primary agent of victory — *YHWH Eloheinu* ('the LORD our God') delivers, then Israel acts. The verb *va-nakk* ('we struck') from *nakah* describes the military defeat. The inclusion of *banav* ('his sons') indicates the end of Sihon's dynasty — no heir survived to reclaim the throne or rally a resistance.
- 34.** The verb *va-nacharim* ('we devoted to destruction') from *charam* is the key term for total warfare in the Hebrew Bible — the *cherem* ('ban, devotion to destruction'). This practice dedicated everything to God by destroying it completely. The phrase *lo hish'arnu sarid* ('we did not leave a survivor') indicates total destruction. The *cherem* was specific to certain divinely commanded military operations and is not presented as a general model for warfare.
- 35.** The exception *raq ha-behemah* ('only the livestock') indicates that the *cherem* (ban of total destruction) applied to the human population but not to animals and movable property. The *shlal ha-arim* ('spoil of the cities') — material goods, supplies, valuables — was available as *bazaznu lanu* ('we plundered for ourselves'). This distinction between devoted persons and permitted plunder follows the warfare regulations that will be codified later in Deuteronomy.
- 36.** The geographical sweep — *me-Aro'er* ('from Aroer') on the *sfat nachal Arnon* ('rim of the Arnon Gorge') to *ha-Gil'ad* ('Gilead') — describes the full extent of conquered territory. The assessment *lo hayetah qiryah asher sagvah mimmenu* ('there was not a city that was too high/fortified for us') directly answers the fearful complaint of 1:28 about cities *betsurot ba-shamayim* ('fortified to the heavens'). What seemed impossible through human eyes proved achievable through divine power.
- 37.** The chapter's final verse returns to the theme of divinely mandated restraint: *raq el erets benei Ammon lo qaravta* ('only the land of the Ammonites you did not approach'). Israel's obedience was selective in the right way — they conquered where God commanded and refrained where God prohibited. The mention of *nachal Yabboq* ('the Jabbok River') and *arei ha-har* ('cities of the highlands') specifies the off-limits zones. The closing phrase *v'khol asher tsivah YHWH Eloheinu* ('everything the LORD our God commanded') frames Israel's entire conduct as covenant obedience.

3

Summary: *Moses recounts the defeat of Og king of Bashan, the allotment of Transjordan to Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh, and his own plea to enter the land — denied by God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Og's iron bed (v. 11) — nine cubits long, four wide — is a detail preserved not for military history but as evidence of the Rephaim's legendary stature. Moses's prayer va-etchannan (v. 23, 'I pleaded') gives the next Torah portion its name and reveals a Moses we rarely see: not the commanding lawgiver but a man begging God to reverse His decree. God's refusal is final and unexplained beyond the reference to Israel's provocation.*

Translation Friction: *The word eres (v. 11), traditionally 'bed,' could also mean 'coffin' or 'sarcophagus' — if so, Og's iron eres is a funerary monument, not furniture. We rendered it 'bed' following the traditional understanding but noted the ambiguity. God's command rav-lakh (v. 26, 'enough for you') is blunt — two words that end Moses's last hope.*

Connections: *Og's Bashan territory becomes a symbol of extraordinary fertility (Psalm 22:12, Ezekiel 39:18, Amos 4:1). Moses's denied entry is revisited in 32:48-52 and fulfilled in 34:1-4. The Transjordan settlement conditions (v. 18-20) are executed in Joshua 1:12-18 and tested in Joshua 22.*

¹Then we turned and advanced along the road to Bashan. Og king of Bashan marched out against us with his entire army to fight at Edrei. ²The LORD said to me, 'Do not be afraid of him, because I have handed him over to you, along with his entire army and his land. Do to him what you did to Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon.' ³So the LORD our God also handed Og king of Bashan and his entire army over to us. We struck them down until no survivor remained. ⁴We captured all his cities at that time. There was not a single city we failed to take from them — sixty cities in all, the entire region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan. ⁵All these were fortified cities with high walls, double gates, and crossbars — in addition to a great number of unwallled settlements. ⁶We devoted them to destruction, just as we had done to Sihon king of Heshbon — devoting every city to total destruction: men, women, and children. ⁷But all the livestock and the goods from the cities we took as plunder for ourselves. ⁸At that time we seized the territory from the two Amorite kings east of the Jordan — from the Arnon Gorge all the way to Mount Hermon. ⁹(The Sidonians call Hermon 'Sirion,' while the Amorites call it 'Senir.') ¹⁰All the cities of the plateau, all of Gilead, and all of Bashan as far as Salecah and Edrei — the cities of Og's kingdom in Bashan. ¹¹Only Og king of Bashan was left from the remnant of the Rephaim. His bed was made of iron — it can still be seen in Rabbah of the Ammonites. It is nine cubits long and four cubits wide, measured by a standard cubit. ¹²This is the land we took possession of at that time: from Aroer on the Arnon Gorge, including half the hill country of Gilead with its cities, I gave to the Reubenites and the Gadites. ¹³The rest of Gilead and all of Bashan — Og's kingdom — I gave to the half-tribe of Manasseh: the entire district of Argob. (All that part of Bashan used to be called the land of the Rephaim.) ¹⁴Jair, a descendant of Manasseh, took the entire district of Argob up to the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites, and named those settlements after himself — Havvoth-jair — as they are called to this day. ¹⁵To Machir I gave Gilead. ¹⁶To the Reubenites and the Gadites I gave the territory from Gilead down to the Arnon Gorge — the middle of the gorge serving as the boundary — and up to the Jabbok River, which forms the Ammonite border. ¹⁷also the Arabah with the Jordan as the border, from Kinnereth down to the Sea of the Arabah — the Salt Sea — below the slopes of Pisgah on the east. ¹⁸I gave you orders at that time: 'The LORD your God has given you this land as your possession. But all your fighting men must cross over, armed for battle, ahead of your fellow Israelites.' ¹⁹'Only your wives, your children, and your livestock — I know you have large herds — will remain in the cities I have given you, ²⁰until the LORD grants rest to your brothers as He has to you, and they too have taken possession of the land that the LORD your God is giving them across the Jordan. Then each of you may return to the inheritance I have assigned you.' ²¹I also charged Joshua at that time: 'Your own eyes have seen everything that the LORD your God did to these two kings. The LORD will do the same to all the kingdoms you cross into.' ²²'Do not be afraid of them, because the LORD your God — He is the one fighting for you.' ²³I pleaded with the LORD at that time: ²⁴'Lor

d GOD, You have only begun to show Your servant Your greatness and Your powerful hand. For what god is there in heaven or on earth who can match Your deeds and Your mighty acts? ²⁵Please, let me cross over and see the good land across the Jordan — that beautiful hill country and Lebanon.' ²⁶But the LORD was furious with me on your account and would not listen to me. The LORD said to me, 'Enough! Do not speak to me about this matter again.' ²⁷Go up to the summit of Pisgah and look out to the west, the north, the south, and the east. Take it all in with your eyes, because you will not cross this Jordan.' ²⁸Commission Joshua. Encourage him and strengthen him, because he is the one who will cross over ahead of this people, and he will distribute to them the land that you will only see.' ²⁹So we remained in the valley opposite Beth-peor.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verbs *va-nefen va-na'al* ('we turned and went up') indicate the northward advance from Sihon's conquered territory into Bashan. Like Sihon (2:32), Og initiates combat — *va-yetse liqratenu* ('he came out to meet us') *hu v'kol ammo* ('he and all his people'). Edrei, Og's second capital (along with Ashtaroth, 1:4), was the site of this decisive engagement. The full mobilization of *kol ammo* again signals total defeat.
2. The reassurance *al tira oto* ('do not fear him') suggests that Og's reputation inspired genuine terror — his legendary size (v. 11) made him a formidable opponent. The perfect tense *natati* ('I have given') once again declares the outcome settled before battle. The instruction *v'asita lo* ('do to him') *ka'asher asita le-Sichon* ('as you did to Sihon') prescribes the same total warfare applied to the first Amorite king. The Sihon precedent becomes the template.
3. The word *gam* ('also') links this victory to the Sihon campaign — a second divine triumph. The phrase *ad bilti hish'ir lo sarid* ('until there was not left to him a survivor') describes total military annihilation. The emphatic *YHWH Eloheinu* ('the LORD our God') as subject of *va-yitten* ('He gave') keeps the theological focus: victories belong to God, Israel is the instrument.
4. The count *shishim ir* ('sixty cities') emphasizes the scale of the conquest — this was a substantial kingdom, not a small tribal area. The phrase *kol chevel Argov* ('the entire region/district of Argob') designates a specific administrative district within Bashan. The double negative *lo hayetah qiryah asher lo laqachnu* ('there was not a city that we did not take') underscores the comprehensiveness of the victory — every fortified position fell.
5. The description — *arim betsurot chomah gevohah* ('fortified cities with high walls'), *delatayim u-veriach* ('double doors/gates and a crossbar') — details serious military architecture. These were not easy targets; their capture testifies to divine assistance. The additional *arei ha-perazi* ('unwalled/open cities') *harbeh me'od* ('very many') indicates that the rural countryside was also taken. The contrast recalls the fearful report about 'cities fortified to heaven' (1:28) — God overcame exactly what Israel feared.
6. The *cherem* (ban of destruction) is applied identically to Og's kingdom as to Sihon's (2:34). The verb *va-nacharim otam* ('we devoted them to destruction') followed by the infinitive absolute *hacharim kol ir* ('devoting every city') intensifies the totality. The categories *metim*, *ha-nashim*, *v'ha-taf* ('men, women, and children') indicate complete destruction of the population. As with Sihon, the *cherem* was understood as divinely commanded warfare specific to these Amorite kingdoms.
7. As in the Sihon campaign (2:35), the *behemah* ('livestock') and *shlal ha-arim* ('spoil of the cities') were exempt from the *cherem* and available as *bazonu lanu* ('we plundered for ourselves'). The material wealth of Og's sixty fortified cities represented substantial resources for the Israelite tribes who would settle in this region.
8. The summary statement encompasses the full extent of Transjordanian conquest: *mi-yad shnei malkhei ha-Emori* ('from the hand of the two kings of the Amorites') — Sihon and Og. The territory stretches *mi-nachal Arnon* ('from the Arnon Gorge') in the south *ad har Chermon* ('to Mount Hermon') in the far north — a vast expanse covering modern-day southern Jordan to the Golan Heights. The phrase *be'ever ha-Yarden* ('on the far side of the Jordan') positions this as the eastern portion of God's land grant.
9. This parenthetical geographic note preserves three names for the same mountain: Chermon (Hebrew), Siryon (Sidonian/Phoenician), and Senir (Amorite). The multiple designations reflect the mountain's prominence as a landmark visible to many peoples. The Sidonian name Siryon may relate to *shiryon* ('coat of armor/breastplate'), perhaps from the mountain's snow-capped appearance. Such multi-lingual place references demonstrate Moses's geographical awareness.
10. Three geographical zones summarize the conquest: *ha-mishor* ('the plateau/tableland' — the high plain east of the Dead Sea), *ha-Gil'ad* ('Gilead' — the central Transjordanian hill country), and *ha-Bashan* ('Bashan' — the fertile northern region). The boundary markers *Salkhah* (in the far northeast) and *Edrei* (Og's southern capital) define the kingdom's extent. The entire territory is identified as *arei mamlekhet Og* ('cities of the kingdom of Og').
11. Og is identified as the last survivor (*nish'ar mi-yeter ha-Repha'im* — 'remaining from the remnant of the Rephaim') of the ancient giant race. His *arso* ('bed/couch' — possibly a sarcophagus or ceremonial bed) of *barzel* ('iron') measured *tesha ammot* ('nine cubits') by *arba ammot* ('four cubits') — approximately 13.5 by 6 feet using the standard *ammah* ('cubit') of about 18 inches. The bed is located *be-Rabbat benei Ammon* ('in Rabbah of the Ammonites' — modern Amman, Jordan) — an archaeological exhibit verifiable by Moses's audience. The iron bed, in an age when iron was rare, signals Og's wealth and power.

12. Moses now transitions from conquest narrative to land distribution. The southern portion — me-Aro'er on the nachal Arnon to chatsi har ha-Gil'ad ('half the hill country of Gilead') — was allocated to the La-Re'uveni v'la-Gadi ('Reubenites and Gadites'). These two tribes had requested Transjordanian territory because of their large herds (Numbers 32). Moses's role as land-distributor (natati — 'I gave') foreshadows the book of Joshua.
13. The northern and larger portion — yeter ha-Gil'ad v'khol ha-Bashan ('the rest of Gilead and all of Bashan') — went to chatsi shevet ha-Menasheh ('the half-tribe of Manasseh'). The parenthetical note that Bashan was formerly called erets Repha'im ('land of the Rephaim') connects to the giant traditions of chapter 2. The chevel ha-Argov ('district of Argob') with its sixty cities (v. 4) represents a substantial inheritance for the Manassites.
14. Ya'ir ben Menasheh is credited with personally securing the chevel Argov ('district of Argob'). The boundaries extend ad gevu ha-Geshuri v'ha-Ma'akhati ('to the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites') — two Aramean peoples who retained their territories within the region. Naming the settlements chavot Ya'ir ('villages/camps of Jair') after himself established his permanent claim. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') confirms the name persisted into the narrator's time.
15. Makhir, the eldest son (or clan) of Manasseh, received ha-Gil'ad ('Gilead') — the central Transjordanian hill country. The brevity of the allocation (natati — 'I gave') contrasts with the longer descriptions of other grants, perhaps because Machir's claim was well-established and undisputed. Machir's clan was known for its military prowess, making them suitable guardians of this frontier territory.
16. The Reubenite and Gadite allocation is defined by water boundaries: from the Gil'ad in the north to nachal Arnon in the south, with tokh ha-nachal u-gevu ('the middle of the gorge and its border') as the precise southern limit, and nachal Yabboq ('the Jabbok River') as the northern boundary. The Jabbok also served as gevu benei Ammon ('the border of the Ammonites'), respecting the restriction of 2:19.
17. The western boundary is the Aravah v'ha-Yarden ('the Arabah valley and the Jordan River') stretching mi-Kinneret ('from Kinnereth' — the Sea of Galilee) southward to Yam ha-Aravah, Yam ha-Melach ('the Sea of the Arabah, the Salt Sea' — the Dead Sea). The reference point ashdot ha-Pisgah ('the slopes/watershed of Pisgah') eastward locates the territory relative to the mountain where Moses will later view the promised land. This geographical detail links the land distribution to Moses's personal exclusion.
18. The condition attached to the eastern tribes' inheritance: chalutsim ta'avru lifnei acheikhem ('as armed troops you shall cross over before your brothers'). The word chalutsim ('armed, equipped for battle') from chalats ('to strip for action, to arm') means ready for combat. The eastern tribes cannot simply settle — they must first help the western tribes conquer their portion. The phrase kol benei chayil ('all capable warriors') specifies military-age men. Brotherhood (acheikhem — 'your brothers') demands solidarity.
19. The exemption extends to nesheikhem ('your wives'), tapkhem ('your children'), and miqnekhem ('your livestock'). Moses's parenthetical acknowledgment yada'ti ki miqneh rav lakhem ('I know that you have much livestock') recalls the original reason these tribes requested Transjordanian territory (Numbers 32:1). The concession is practical: non-combatants stay in the secured cities (be'areikhem asher natati lakhem — 'in your cities which I have given you') while warriors cross over.
20. The duration of service is ad asher yaniach YHWH la-acheikhem ('until the LORD gives rest to your brothers') — the key term menuachah/yaniach ('rest') in Deuteronomy means secure settlement in the land, free from military threat. The parallel kakhem ('like you') establishes equity: you have rest, so fight until they do too. Only after the western tribes are settled may the eastern troops return ish li-yrushatoh ('each man to his inheritance'). Mutual obligation defines Israelite solidarity.
21. Moses's charge to Joshua appeals to firsthand experience: einekha ha-ro'ot ('your eyes — the seeing ones') — Joshua saw the defeats of Sihon and Og personally. The promise ken ya'aseh YHWH ('thus the LORD will do') to kol ha-mamlakhot ('all the kingdoms') extrapolates from two victories to universal application. What God did to two Amorite kings, He will do to all Canaanite kingdoms. Joshua's faith is to be grounded in observed evidence, not abstract hope.
22. The prohibition lo tira'um ('do not fear them') is grounded in the declaration YHWH Eloheikhem hu ha-nilcham lakhem ('the LORD your God — He is the one fighting for you'). The emphatic pronoun hu ('He') and the participle ha-nilcham ('the one fighting') present God as an ongoing, active warrior on Israel's behalf. This theological affirmation — that God Himself is the real combatant — is the foundation of all Deuteronomic warfare theology.
23. The verb va-etchannan ('I pleaded, implored') from chanan ('to be gracious, to show favor') is a hitpa'el form — literally 'I made myself an object seeking grace.' This is one of the most emotionally raw moments in Deuteronomy: Moses, the great leader who guided Israel through forty years, begs for entry into the promised land. The verb's root is the same as 'grace' — Moses appeals not to his merit but to God's undeserved favor.
24. Moses addresses God with the double divine name Adonai YHWH ('Lord GOD') — a formal, intensely personal address. His argument is theological: attah hachilota le-har'ot ('You have begun to show') — if God has only started revealing His power, then surely there is more to see! The rhetorical question mi El ba-shamayim uva-arets ('who is a god in heaven or earth') who could match God's deeds (k'ma'asekha — 'like Your works') and power (k'gevurotekha — 'like Your mighty acts') is not merely praise but a plea: a God this great should surely let Moses see the land.
25. The particle na ('please, I beg you') attached to ev'rah ('let me cross') transforms the request from demand to desperate plea. Moses's desire is simply to see: v'er'eh ('and let me see') ha-arets ha-tovah ('the good land'). His longing focuses on two features: ha-har ha-tov ha-zeh ('that good/beautiful mountain' — likely referring to the temple mount or the central highlands) and ha-Levanon ('Lebanon' — famous for its cedars). The prayer reveals that for Moses, the land is not merely territory but the culmination of his life's purpose.

- 26.** The verb *va-yit'abber* ('He was furious, crossed over in anger') from *avar* in the *hitpa'el* is one of the strongest expressions of divine anger in the Hebrew Bible — God's wrath boiled over. The cause: *lema'ankhem* ('on your account/because of you') — Moses attributes his punishment to the people's provocations. God's response *rav lakh* ('enough for you') echoes the *rav lakhem* ('enough for you') of 1:6 and 2:3, but here it terminates discussion rather than beginning action. The prohibition *al tosef dabber* ('do not continue speaking') shuts the door with finality.
- 27.** God offers Moses a consolation: *aleh rosh ha-Pisgah* ('go up to the top of Pisgah') and see the land from every direction — *yamah* ('westward'), *tsafonah* ('northward'), *teimanah* ('southward'), *mizrachah* ('eastward'). The command *ur'eh be'einekha* ('see with your eyes') grants visual access to what is physically denied. The final clause *ki lo ta'avur et ha-Yarden ha-zeh* ('because you will not cross this Jordan') is both tender and absolute — God grants the sight while confirming the prohibition.
- 28.** Three imperatives define Moses's final duty regarding Joshua: *tsav* ('commission/charge'), *chazzeqehu* ('strengthen him'), and *ammetsuhu* ('fortify/encourage him'). The verbs *chazaq* and *amats* form a standard pair for bolstering courage (see Joshua 1:6-9). The poignant contrast: *hu ya'avur* ('he will cross over') while Moses will not; *hu yanchil otam* ('he will cause them to inherit') *ha-arets asher tir'eh* ('the land that you will see'). Moses's legacy is the one who prepared the successor, not the one who completed the mission.
- 29.** The chapter closes with Israel encamped *ba-gai mul Beit Pe'or* ('in the valley opposite Beth-peor'). Beth-peor ('house/temple of Peor') was a Moabite cultic site associated with the disastrous apostasy of Numbers 25, when Israelite men joined in Baal-peor worship. The location is both geographically specific and theologically charged — Moses delivers his final speeches within sight of a place that represents Israel's vulnerability to idolatry. The *pe* paragraph marker signals a major section break.

4

Summary: *Moses urges Israel to obey God's statutes, warning against idolatry by recalling Sinai — where they heard God's voice but saw no form. He designates three cities of refuge east of the Jordan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological core is verse 12: 'You heard the sound of words but saw no form — only a voice.' God's self-revelation at Sinai was auditory, not visual. This grounds the second commandment: because God has no visible form, any image is a lie about God's nature. The word *temunah* ('form, likeness') is the key — Israel cannot make what they never saw.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *aseret ha-devarim* (v. 13, 'the Ten Words') is Deuteronomy's name for the Decalogue — *devarim* encompasses 'words, matters, things.' We rendered it 'the Ten Words' in the notes to preserve the Hebrew concept, though 'Ten Commandments' is the familiar English. The verb *davaq* (v. 4, 'held fast') describes intimate covenant attachment — the same verb used for marriage in Genesis 2:24.*

Connections: *The warning against worshipping sun, moon, and stars (v. 19) distinguishes Israel from every surrounding culture. The promise that Israel will seek God in exile and find Him (vv. 29-31) anticipates Jeremiah 29:13. The phrase 'jealous God' (*El qanna*, v. 24) echoes Exodus 20:5 and recurs in Nahum 1:2.*

¹Now then, Israel, listen to the decrees and the laws that I am teaching you to follow, so that you may live and go in and take possession of the land that the LORD, the God of your ancestors, is giving you. ²Do not add anything to what I am commanding you, and do not take anything away from it. Keep the commandments of the LORD your God exactly as I am giving them to you. ³Your own eyes saw what the LORD did at Baal-peor — the LORD your God destroyed from among you every person who followed Baal-peor. ⁴But you who held fast to the LORD your God — all of you are alive today. ⁵See — I have taught you decrees and laws just as the LORD my God commanded me, so you can follow them in the land you are entering to take possession of. ⁶Guard them and put them into practice, because this is your wisdom and discernment in the eyes of the nations. When they hear about all these decrees, they will say, 'Truly, this great nation is a wise and discerning people.' ⁷For what great nation has a god so near to it as the LORD our God is to us whenever we call on Him? ⁸And what great nation has decrees and laws as just as this entire the Law that I am setting before you today? ⁹Only be on guard, and watch yourself carefully, so that you do not forget the things your eyes have seen and so that they do not slip from your heart as long as you live. Teach them to your children and to your grandchildren — ¹⁰Remember the day you stood before the LORD your God at Horeb, when the LORD said to me, 'Assemble the people before me so I can let them hear my words. They will learn to revere me all the days they live on the earth, and they will teach their children as well.' ¹¹You approached and stood at the base of the mountain while the mountain blazed with fire reaching to the heart of the sky — darkness, cloud,

and dense gloom. ¹²The LORD spoke to you from the midst of the fire. You heard the sound of words but saw no form — only a voice. ¹³He declared His covenant to you, which He commanded you to carry out — the Ten Words — and He wrote them on two stone tablets. ¹⁴At that same time the LORD commissioned me to teach you the decrees and laws for you to practice in the land you are about to cross into and possess. ¹⁵Guard yourselves very carefully — since you saw no form of any kind on the day the LORD spoke to you at Horeb from the midst of the fire — ¹⁶so that you do not corrupt yourselves by making an idol in the shape of any figure — a representation of male or female, ¹⁷or of any animal on the earth, or of any winged bird that flies through the sky, ¹⁸or of anything that crawls on the ground, or of any fish in the waters below the surface of the earth. ¹⁹And when you look up to the sky and see the sun, the moon, and the stars — the entire heavenly host — do not let yourself be lured into bowing down to them and serving them. The LORD your God has assigned these to all the peoples under the entire sky, ²⁰but you the LORD took and brought out of the iron-smelting furnace — out of Egypt — to be His own people, His treasured inheritance, as you are today. ²¹Now the LORD was angry with me because of you, and He swore that I would not cross the Jordan or enter the good land that the LORD your God is giving you as your inheritance. ²²I am going to die in this land. I will not cross the Jordan. But you will cross over, and you will possess that good land. ²³Be careful not to forget the covenant of the LORD your God that He made with you, and not to make for yourselves an idol in the form of anything that the LORD your God has prohibited. ²⁴For the LORD your God is a consuming fire — a jealous God. ²⁵When you have children and grandchildren and have grown old in the land, if you become corrupt and make an idol in the form of anything, doing what is evil in the eyes of the LORD your God and provoking Him — ²⁶I call heaven and earth as witnesses against you today: you will quickly and completely perish from the land that you are crossing the Jordan to possess. You will not live long there — you will be utterly annihilated. ²⁷The LORD will scatter you among the peoples, and only a small number of you will survive among the nations where the LORD drives you. ²⁸There you will serve gods made by human hands — wood and stone — that cannot see, cannot hear, cannot eat, and cannot smell. ²⁹But from there you will seek the LORD your God, and you will find Him when you search for Him with all your heart and all your soul. ³⁰When you are in distress and all these things have happened to you, then in the latter days you will return to the LORD your God and listen to His voice. ³¹(For the LORD your God is a compassionate God.) He will not abandon you or destroy you, and He will not forget the covenant with your ancestors that He swore to them. ³²Search through all of history, from the first days before your time — from the very day God created humanity on the earth — and search from one end of the sky to the other. Has anything this great ever happened, or has anything like it ever been heard of? ³³Has any people ever heard the voice of God speaking from the middle of fire, as you have heard, and survived? ³⁴Has any god ever attempted to go and take one nation for himself out of another nation — by trials, by signs, by wonders, by war, by a powerful hand, by an outstretched arm, and by acts of great terror — the way the LORD your God did for you in Egypt before your very eyes? ³⁵You were shown these things so that you would know: the LORD — He is God. There is no other besides Him. ³⁶From heaven He let you hear His voice to discipline you. On earth He showed you His great fire, and you heard His words from the midst of that fire. ³⁷Because He loved your ancestors, He chose their descendants after them and brought you out of Egypt by His presence, with His great power, ³⁸in order to drive out nations greater and more powerful than you from before you, to bring you in, and to give you their land as an inheritance — as it is today. ³⁹Know today and take it to heart: the LORD — He is God in the heavens above and on the earth below. There is no other. ⁴⁰Keep His decrees and His commandments that I am giving you today, so that it will go well for you and for your children after you, and so that you will live long on the land that the LORD your God is giving you for all time. ⁴¹Then Moses set apart three cities east of the Jordan, toward the sunrise, ⁴²so that anyone who killed another person unintentionally, without prior hostility, could flee to one of these cities and save his life. ⁴³These were: Bezer in the wilderness on the plateau for the Reubenites; Ramoth in Gilead for the Gadites; and Golan in Bashan for the Manassites. ⁴⁴This is the Law that Moses placed before the Israelites. ⁴⁵These are the decrees, the statutes, and the laws that Moses proclaimed to the Israelites after they came out of Egypt, ⁴⁶on the east side of the Jordan, in the valley opposite Beth-peor, in the land of Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon — the one Moses and the Israelites defeated after coming out of Egypt. ⁴⁷They took possession of his land and the land of Og king of Bashan — the two Amorite kings east of the Jordan, toward the sunrise — ⁴⁸from Aroer on the edge of the Arnon Gorge all the way to Mount Sion (that is,

Hermon), ⁴⁹including the entire Arabah east of the Jordan, down to the Sea of the Arabah, below the slopes of Pisgah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The transitional v'attah Yisra'el ('and now, Israel') shifts from historical review (chapters 1-3) to direct exhortation. The command shema ('listen/hear') introduces the central Deuteronomic demand: attentive obedience. Two categories of instruction are named: chuqqim ('decrees, statutes' — fixed prescriptions) and mishpatim ('laws, judgments' — case-based rulings). The purpose clause lema'an tichyu ('so that you may live') connects obedience directly to survival — Torah observance is not abstract duty but the pathway to life itself.
2. The double prohibition — lo tosifu ('do not add') and lo tigre'u ('do not subtract/diminish') — establishes the principle of textual integrity for divine instruction. The ha-davar ('the word/matter') is treated as a fixed, complete revelation that must be preserved without human modification. This principle protects the Torah from both expansionist innovation and reductive neglect. The purpose is lishemor et mitsvot YHWH ('to keep the commandments of the LORD') — faithful preservation enables faithful practice.
3. Moses appeals again to eyewitness experience: eineikhem ha-ro'ot ('your eyes — the seeing ones'). The Ba'al Pe'or incident (Numbers 25) involved Israelite men engaging in sexual immorality and idol worship with Moabite women — a recent catastrophe that killed 24,000. The verb hishmido ('He destroyed him') from shamad is used for total annihilation. The selective destruction — kol ha-ish asher halakh acharei Ba'al Pe'or ('every man who followed Baal-peor') — reinforces the thesis: disobedience brings death.
4. The verb ha-deveqim ('the ones clinging/holding fast') from davaq describes intimate, tenacious attachment — the same verb used for a husband's bond to his wife in Genesis 2:24. The contrast is stark: those who followed Baal-peor are dead; those who clung to God (ba-YHWH Eloheikhem — 'to the LORD your God') are chayyim kullekhem ha-yom ('alive, all of you, today'). Loyalty to God is literally the difference between life and death.
5. Moses presents himself as an authorized teacher: limmadeti etkhem ('I have taught you') — the root lamad ('to teach/learn') establishes Moses's pedagogical role. His authority derives from divine commission: ka'asher tsivvani YHWH Elohai ('as the LORD my God commanded me'). The purpose is la'asot ken be-qerev ha-arets ('to do so in the midst of the land') — the Torah is designed for life in the land, not for wilderness existence. The laws will govern a settled agricultural society.
6. Torah observance becomes Israel's international reputation: hi chokhmatkhem u-vinatkhem le'einei ha-ammim ('it is your wisdom and your discernment in the eyes of the peoples'). The nations' expected response — raq am chakham v'navon ha-goi ha-gadol ha-zeh ('surely a wise and discerning people, this great nation') — presents Torah observance not as a burden but as an advertisement for divine wisdom. Other nations will recognize the superiority of Israel's legal and moral code by observing its effects.
7. The rhetorical question mi goi gadol ('what great nation?') expects the answer 'none.' Israel's uniqueness is not military power or cultural sophistication but divine proximity: asher lo Elohim qerovim elav ('that has a god near to it'). The participle qerovim ('near, close') describes God's accessibility — be-khol qor'enu elav ('in all our calling upon Him'). Other nations had distant, manipulable deities; Israel's God is relationally present and responsive to prayer.
8. A second rhetorical question parallels verse 7: if the first boasts divine proximity, this one boasts legal excellence. The adjective tsaddiqim ('righteous, just') applied to the chuqqim and mishpatim declares Israel's laws morally superior to all other legal codes. The phrase k'kol ha-Torah ha-zot ('like this entire Torah') treats the Torah as a unified, comprehensive body of instruction. The claim is bold: no nation's laws match the justice of God's revealed instructions.
9. The double imperative — hishamer lekha u-shemor nafshekha me'od ('guard yourself and keep your soul very carefully') — conveys extreme vigilance. The danger is forgetting: pen tishkach ('lest you forget') the events your eyes witnessed, and pen yasuru mi-levavekha ('lest they depart from your heart'). Memory is not passive recall but active heart-engagement. The antidote to forgetting is intergenerational teaching: v'hoda'tam le-vanekha v'livnei vanekha ('make them known to your children and grandchildren'). Faith survives through transmission.
10. The Horeb theophany is the foundational memory: yom asher amadta lifnei YHWH ('the day you stood before the LORD'). God's purpose in the assembly (haqhel li et ha-am — 'gather for me the people') was auditory revelation: v'ashmi'em et devarai ('I will make them hear my words'). The goal is le-yir'ah oti ('to fear/revere me') — yir'ah encompasses awe, reverence, and obedient respect. The chain continues: v'et beneihem yelammedun ('and their children they will teach'). Revelation, reverence, and repetition form a cycle of faithfulness.
11. The scene combines opposing elements: fire (bo'er ba-esh — 'burning with fire') reaching ad lev ha-shamayim ('to the heart/middle of the heavens'), surrounded by choshekh anan va-arafel ('darkness, cloud, and thick gloom'). The arafel ('dense darkness, thick gloom') is God's shroud — He reveals Himself in speech but conceals Himself visually. The people stood tachat ha-har ('under/at the base of the mountain'), looking up at the terrifying display of divine presence.
12. This verse is theologically pivotal: mi-tokh ha-esh ('from the midst of the fire') God spoke, and Israel heard qol devarim ('a sound/voice of words'). The crucial observation: u-temunah einkhem ro'im ('but a form/image you were not seeing') zulati qol ('except a voice'). God is heard but not seen — He communicates through language, not through visual representation. This auditory-only revelation becomes the theological foundation for the prohibition against images (vv. 15-19): since God showed no form, no form can represent Him.
13. The covenant (berito — 'His covenant') is identified with aseret ha-devarim ('the Ten Words' — traditionally 'the Ten Commandments'). The term devarim ('words') rather than mitsvot ('commandments') is significant — these are covenant stipulations expressed as direct divine speech, not merely legal rules. God both spoke and wrote: va-yikhtevem al shnei luchot anavim ('He wrote them on two tablets of stone'). The dual tablets likely

represent two copies of the covenant document — one for each covenant partner — following ancient Near Eastern treaty conventions.

14. Moses distinguishes between God's direct revelation (the Ten Words on stone) and his own teaching role: *v'oti tsivah* ('and me He commanded') *le-lammed etkhem* ('to teach you'). The *chuqqim u-mishpatim* ('decrees and laws') expand and apply the covenant principles of the Decalogue. The teaching is land-oriented: *la'asotkhem otam ba-arets* ('for you to do them in the land') *asher attem overim shammah le-rishtah* ('that you are crossing over there to possess'). Torah is the instruction manual for life in the promised land.
15. The warning *v'nishmartem me'od le-nafshotekhem* ('guard yourselves very carefully for your souls/lives') introduces the anti-idolatry section with life-or-death urgency. The theological argument is precise: *ki lo re'item kol temunah* ('because you did not see any form') on *b'yom dibber YHWH* ('the day the LORD spoke'). Since God's self-revelation at Sinai was exclusively auditory, any visual representation is not merely inadequate but fundamentally contrary to how God chose to reveal Himself.
16. The verb *tashchitun* ('you corrupt/destroy yourselves') from *shachat* frames idolatry as self-destruction, not merely disobedience. The object is *pesel temunat kol samel* ('a carved image, the form of any figure/symbol'). The *samel* may refer to a cultic image or symbol. The first category prohibited is *tavnit zakhar o neqevah* ('the pattern/form of male or female') — human-shaped idols, whether male gods or female goddesses. This begins a comprehensive catalog of prohibited image-making.
17. The catalog expands from human forms to *tavnit kol behemah* ('the form of any animal') and *tavnit kol tsippor kanaf* ('the form of any winged bird'). Animal worship was widespread in the ancient Near East — Egyptian religion prominently featured animal deities (Apis bull, Horus falcon, Bastet cat). The comprehensiveness (*kol* — 'any/every') leaves no loophole: no creature from any realm can serve as a representation of the invisible God.
18. The final two categories complete the four-domain sweep of creation (echoing Genesis 1): *kol romes ba-adamah* ('anything crawling on the ground' — reptiles, insects) and *kol dagah asher ba-mayim mitachat la-arets* ('any fish in the waters beneath the earth'). The ancient cosmology envisioned waters below the earth's surface. The four categories — human, animal, bird, ground-crawler/fish — mirror the creation order and declare that nothing in the created realm can image the Creator.
19. Astral worship is addressed separately from animal/human idolatry. The danger is seduction by beauty: *u-fen tissa einekha* ('lest you lift your eyes') to the sky and *v'niddachta* ('be driven/lured away'). The verbs *hishtachavita* ('bow down') and *avadtam* ('serve them') describe the full posture and practice of worship. The remarkable phrase *asher chalaq YHWH Elohekha otam le-khol ha-ammim* ('which the LORD your God has allotted to all peoples') suggests God permitted celestial worship for other nations but reserved exclusive worship of Himself for Israel.
20. The metaphor *kur ha-barzel* ('iron furnace/smelter furnace') depicts Egypt as an industrial forge — the heat and suffering of slavery refined Israel as metal is refined in fire. The Exodus was God's act of extraction: *laqach* ('He took') and *va-yotsi* ('He brought out'). The purpose: *lihyot lo le-am nachalah* ('to become for Him a people of inheritance'). The term *nachalah* ('inheritance, patrimony') applied to Israel means God claims them as His own personal possession — not merely subjects but treasured heritage.
21. Moses returns to his personal exclusion: *YHWH hit'anaf bi* ('the LORD was enraged at me') *al divreikhem* ('because of your words/deeds'). The sworn prohibition is double: *le-vilti ovri et ha-Yarden* ('that I would not cross the Jordan') and *le-vilti vo el ha-arets ha-tovah* ('that I would not enter the good land'). Moses's emphasis on *nachalah* ('inheritance') highlights the poignancy — the land he is giving as inheritance to Israel was denied to him as a personal reality. His loss is their gain.
22. Moses's declaration *anokhi met ba-arets ha-zot* ('I am dying in this land') states his fate with stark simplicity. The contrast is painful: *einenni over* ('I am not crossing') but *v'attem overim* ('but you are crossing') *vi-rishtem* ('and you will possess'). The pronouns carry all the emotion — I/you, not crossing/crossing, dying here/inheriting there. Moses accepts his fate and redirects the people's attention from his loss to their promise.
23. The warning *hishameru lakhem* ('guard yourselves') returns with intensified urgency. Forgetting the covenant (*pen tishkechu et berit YHWH* — 'lest you forget the covenant of the LORD') leads directly to idolatry. The phrase *asher karat immakhem* ('which He cut with you') uses the standard covenant-making verb (*karat* — 'to cut'), evoking the solemnity of the Sinai ceremony. The sequence — forgetting the covenant, then making a *pesel* ('idol') — reveals Moses's understanding: idolatry is not the cause but the symptom of covenant amnesia.
24. Two divine metaphors close this warning section. First: *esh oklah* ('a consuming fire') — fire that devours everything in its path, recalling the burning mountain of verse 11. Second: *El qanna* ('a jealous/zealous God') — *qanna* describes the fierce possessiveness of exclusive covenant love. God's jealousy is not petty insecurity but the righteous intolerance of a faithful spouse toward infidelity. Together, these images warn: the God who revealed Himself in fire will respond to idolatry with consuming judgment.
25. Moses projects into the future: *ki tolid banim u-vnei vanim* ('when you bear children and grandchildren') *v'noshantem ba-arets* ('and you have grown old/long-settled in the land'). The verb *noshantem* from *yashan* ('to be old, to sleep') suggests complacency through prolonged comfort. The warning sequence — *v'hishchatem* ('you will become corrupt'), *va'asitem pesel* ('you will make an idol'), *va'asitem ha-ra* ('you will do evil') *le-hakh'iso* ('to provoke Him') — reads as prophecy, not merely possibility. Moses foresees that prosperity will breed forgetfulness.
26. The solemn invocation *ha'idoti vakhem ha-yom et ha-shamayim v'et ha-arets* ('I call as witness against you today the heavens and the earth') follows ancient Near Eastern treaty conventions where cosmic forces witnessed covenant agreements. The infinitive absolute *avod to'vedun* ('perishing you will perish') and *hishamed tishamedun* ('being destroyed you will be destroyed') double the verbs for emphasis. The consequence of idolatry is exile — removal *me'al ha-arets* ('from the land'). The warning is conditional but presented with prophetic certainty.
27. The verb *hefits* ('He will scatter') from *puts* describes forced dispersion — exile among the nations. The phrase *nish'artem metei mispar* ('you will remain few in number') — literally 'men of number/able to be counted' — depicts a remnant so small it can be tallied, contrasting sharply with the

- 'stars of heaven' metaphor of 1:10. The verb yenaheg ('He will lead/drive') from nahag suggests God actively herding them into exile, as a shepherd drives livestock.
28. The punishment fits the crime with bitter irony: Israel wanted idols, so in exile va'avadtem sham elohim ('you will serve gods there') — ma'aseh yedei adam ('the work of human hands'). The fourfold negation — lo yir'un ('they cannot see'), lo yishme'un ('they cannot hear'), lo yokhlun ('they cannot eat'), lo yerichun ('they cannot smell') — exposes the absurdity of idol worship: the gods of exile are senseless objects of ets va-even ('wood and stone'). The living God who speaks, sees, and acts is replaced by mute material.
29. The tone shifts dramatically from judgment to hope: u-viqqashtem mi-sham ('you will seek from there') — even from the depths of exile, seeking is possible. The promise u-matsata ('you will find') is unconditional in its assurance — God remains findable. The condition is wholeness: ki tidreshenu be-khol levavekha u-ve-khol nafshekha ('when you seek Him with all your heart and all your soul'). The word pair lev ('heart' — the seat of will and intellect) and nefesh ('soul/life' — the totality of one's being) demands complete, undivided commitment.
30. The temporal phrase be-acharit ha-yamim ('in the latter days/end of days') looks far into the future, beyond exile to ultimate restoration. The word tsar ('distress, trouble') describes the crushing pressure of exile. Moses presents the return not as a possibility but a certainty: v'shavta ad YHWH ('you will return to the LORD') v'shamata be-qolo ('you will listen to His voice'). The suffering of exile will accomplish what prosperity could not — genuine repentance. The verb shuv ('return') is the central term for repentance in the Hebrew Bible.
31. After the severe warnings, Moses grounds hope in God's character: El rachum ('a compassionate/merciful God'). The root racham relates to rechem ('womb') — divine compassion is maternal, instinctive, and tender. Three negatives guarantee restoration: lo yarfekha ('He will not let you go/abandon you'), lo yashchitekha ('He will not destroy you'), v'lo yishkach et berit avotekha ('He will not forget the covenant of your ancestors'). God's covenant memory outlasts human faithlessness. What Israel forgets (v. 23), God remembers.
32. Moses issues a research challenge: she'al na le-yamim rishonim ('ask now about the former days') — investigate all of human history le-min ha-yom asher bara Elohim adam ('from the day God created man'). The spatial scope matches the temporal: u-le-miqtseh ha-shamayim v'ad qetsesh ha-shamayim ('from one end of the heavens to the other'). The rhetorical question ha-nihyah ka-davar ha-gadol ha-zeh ('has anything like this great thing happened?') leads to the unprecedented claim of the next verse.
33. The question ha-shama am qol Elohim medabber mi-tokh ha-esh ('has a people heard the voice of God speaking from fire') highlights the unique terror and privilege of Sinai. The verb va-yechi ('and lived/survived') underscores that direct encounter with the divine voice should have been lethal — the people's survival is itself miraculous. The phrase ka'asher shamata attah ('as you yourself heard') makes each listener personally accountable: you heard it; you survived it; now respond to it.
34. The Exodus is presented as historically unprecedented: ha-nissah Elohim lavo laqachat lo goi mi-qerev goi ('has God attempted to come to take for Himself a nation from the midst of a nation'). Seven instruments of deliverance are listed: massot ('trials'), otot ('signs'), moftim ('wonders'), milchamah ('war'), yad chazaqah ('mighty hand'), zero'a netuyah ('outstretched arm'), and mora'im gedolim ('great terrors'). The climactic seven-fold list recalls the plagues and exodus events. No other deity in human history performed such a national-scale rescue — this is Moses's central apologetic argument.
35. The purpose of Israel's unique historical experience is knowledge: attah hor'eta lada'at ('you were shown in order to know'). The declaration YHWH hu ha-Elohim ('the LORD — He is the God') is an exclusivist monotheistic claim. The phrase ein od milvado ('there is none else besides Him') goes beyond henotheism (worshiping one god while acknowledging others' existence) to absolute monotheism — no other deity exists. This is one of the strongest monotheistic statements in the Hebrew Bible.
36. Revelation came from two directions simultaneously: min ha-shamayim ('from heaven') God's voice descended, and al ha-arets ('on earth') His fire appeared. The purpose is le-yassrekha ('to discipline/instruct you') — yasar means both to correct and to train, combining correction with education. The auditory emphasis continues: et qolo ('His voice'), u-devarav shamata ('His words you heard') mi-tokh ha-esh ('from the midst of the fire'). Heaven and earth converge in the Sinai event.
37. The motivation for election is love: ki ahav et avotekha ('because He loved your ancestors'). This is unmerited affection — God chose Abraham's line not for their merit but because of His love. The verb va-yivchar ('He chose') from bachar is the central election verb — divine selection for covenant relationship. God's involvement is personal: be-fanav ('by His presence/face') with be-kocho ha-gadol ('by His great power'). Love and power combine in the Exodus — it is both intimate and mighty.
38. The purpose chain continues: le-horish goyim gedolim va-atsumim mimmekha ('to dispossess nations greater and mightier than you'). The phrase mimmekha ('than you') honestly acknowledges Israel's relative weakness — the nations being displaced are gedolim va-atsumim ('greater and mightier'). Israel's conquest depends entirely on divine power, not military superiority. The gift is nachalah ('inheritance') — permanent, generational, and irrevocable — ka-yom ha-zeh ('as this day') confirming present fulfillment.
39. The verse demands both intellectual and emotional engagement: v'yadata ha-yom ('know today') and va-hashevota el levavekha ('bring it back to your heart'). The knowledge is cosmically comprehensive: YHWH hu ha-Elohim ba-shamayim mi-ma'al v'al ha-arets mi-tachat ('the LORD is God in heaven above and on earth below'). The concluding ein od ('there is no other') — even shorter than 4:35's ein od milvado — is the most compressed monotheistic declaration possible. Two words in Hebrew encompass all of theology.
40. Moses's first address concludes with the promise of dual blessing: asher yitav lekha u-levanekha acharekha ('that it may go well for you and for your children after you') and u-lema'an ta'arikh yamim ('that you may prolong your days'). Obedience yields both quality of life (yitav — 'it will be good') and quantity (ta'arikh yamim — 'you will lengthen days'). The final phrase kol ha-yamim ('all the days' — forever) extends the promise indefinitely.

The pe paragraph marker signals the end of Moses's first major speech (chapters 1-4:40).

41. The narrative shifts from speech to action: az yavdil Mosheh ('then Moses set apart/separated') shalosh arim ('three cities'). The verb hivdil from badal ('to separate, to distinguish') is the same verb used for God's separating acts in creation (Genesis 1:4-7). The phrase mizrechah shamesh ('toward the sunrise' — eastward) locates these cities in Transjordan. This section (vv. 41-43) forms a brief narrative interlude between Moses's first and second addresses.
42. The cities of refuge serve a specific legal function: protecting the rotse'ach ('manslayer, one who kills') who kills bi-vli da'at ('without knowledge/unintentionally'). The qualifier v'hu lo sone lo mi-tmol shilshom ('and he was not hating him from yesterday-three days ago' — without prior hostility) distinguishes accidental killing from premeditated murder. The purpose is va-chai ('and he shall live') — the manslayer's life is preserved from the blood-avenger by finding sanctuary in these cities. This represents a sophisticated distinction between intentional and unintentional homicide.
43. Three cities are named, one per Transjordanian tribe: Betser ba-midbar ('Bezer in the wilderness') on the mishor ('plateau') for Reuben; Ra'mot ba-Gil'ad ('Ramoah in Gilead') for Gad; and Golan ba-Bashan ('Golan in Bashan') for Manasseh. The distribution ensures geographical accessibility — each tribe has a refuge city within reasonable distance. Golan gives its name to the modern Golan Heights. The three cities correspond to the three tribal territories described in 3:12-17.
44. The transitional heading v'zot ha-Torah ('and this is the Torah/instruction') introduces Moses's second address (chapters 5-26 or 5-28). The verb sam ('placed, set') lifnei benei Yisra'el ('before the children of Israel') implies both presentation and availability — the Torah is not hidden or esoteric but publicly accessible. This verse may serve as a superscription for everything that follows, or as a bridge connecting the historical prologue to the legal core of Deuteronomy.
45. Three categories of instruction are named: ha-edot ('the testimonies/decrees' — instructions that testify to God's will), ha-chuqqim ('the statutes' — prescribed regulations), and ha-mishpatim ('the laws/judgments' — case-law rulings). The timing reference be-tsetam mi-Mitsrayim ('when they came out of Egypt') connects all subsequent legislation to the Exodus event — the laws flow from and depend upon the liberation. The three-term formula is a comprehensive designation for the entirety of God's revealed instruction.
46. The geographical setting is restated: be'ever ha-Yarden ('east of the Jordan'), ba-gai mul Beit Pe'or ('in the valley opposite Beth-peor'), be-erets Sichon melek ha-Emori ('in the land of Sihon king of the Amorites'). The note that Moses and the Israelites defeated (hikkah — 'struck') Sihon after coming out of Egypt connects the setting to the conquest narrative of chapter 2. The mention of Beth-peor again (see 3:29) keeps the warning about apostasy within sight of the audience.
47. The summary references the dual conquest: et artso ('his land' — Sihon's) v'et erets Og melek ha-Bashan ('and the land of Og king of Bashan'). The phrase shnei malkhei ha-Emori ('the two kings of the Amorites') treats them as a pair — the complete Transjordanian Amorite power structure. The direction marker mizrach shamesh ('east of the sun/sunrise') locates both territories east of the Jordan, forming the context for Moses's second address.
48. The territory is defined by its full north-south extent: me-Aro'er al sfat nachal Arnon ('from Aroer on the lip of the Arnon Gorge') in the south to har Si'on hu Chermon ('Mount Sion, which is Hermon') in the far north. The name Si'on here (distinct from Zion in Jerusalem) is yet another name for Mount Hermon, adding to the three names listed in 3:9 (Hermon, Sirion, Senir). The mountain's multiple names reflect its prominence as a regional landmark visible to many peoples.
49. The final geographical note includes kol ha-Aravah ever ha-Yarden mizrachah ('the entire Arabah east of the Jordan') extending to Yam ha-Aravah ('the Sea of the Arabah' — the Dead Sea) below ashdot ha-Pisgah ('the slopes/watersheds of Pisgah'). The pe paragraph marker ends this section definitively. Mount Pisgah appears for the final time as the place where Moses will view the land he cannot enter (3:27) — a bittersweet closing note that looks back to Moses's plea and forward to his death.

5

Summary: *Moses restates the Ten Commandments to the generation that will enter the land, framing them as a covenant made 'not with our fathers but with us — we who are alive here today.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sabbath commandment differs from Exodus 20: there it is grounded in creation ('for in six days the LORD made...'), here in liberation ('remember that you were a slave in Egypt'). Same command, different motivation. Deuteronomy's version makes the Sabbath a social justice institution — you rest so your servants can rest, because you know what slavery feels like.*

Translation Friction: *Moses's claim that the covenant was made 'with us, the living, here today' (v. 3) when most of them were children or unborn at Sinai is a theological statement, not a historical error. Each generation stands at Sinai. We rendered the emphatic anachnu elleh poh hayyom ('we ourselves, these here today') to preserve the force of Moses's actualization.*

Connections: The Decalogue parallel in Exodus 20:1-17 reveals intentional Deuteronomic revision. The people's fear of God's voice (vv. 23-27) sets up the mediator role that leads to the prophet-like-Moses promise in 18:15-18. Jesus cites the Sabbath commandment's humanitarian logic in Mark 2:27.

¹Moses summoned all Israel and said to them: "Listen, Israel, to the statutes and ordinances that I am speaking in your hearing today. Learn them and take care to observe them. ²The LORD our God cut a covenant with us at Horeb. ³Not with our ancestors did the LORD cut this covenant, but with us — we ourselves, these ones here, alive today, all of us. ⁴The LORD spoke with you face to face on the mountain, from the midst of the fire — ⁵— I was standing between the LORD and you at that time, to declare to you the word of the LORD, because you were afraid of the fire and did not go up the mountain — saying: ⁶"I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. ⁷You shall have no other gods before Me. ⁸You shall not make for yourself a carved image — any likeness of what is in heaven above, on the earth below, or in the waters under the earth. ⁹You shall not bow down to them or serve them, for I, the LORD your God, am a zealous God, visiting the iniquity of parents upon children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me, ¹⁰but showing faithful love to the thousandth generation of those who love Me and keep My commandments. ¹¹You shall not bear the name of the LORD your God for worthless purposes, for the LORD will not hold guiltless anyone who bears His name for worthless purposes. ¹²Guard the Sabbath day and keep it holy, as the LORD your God has commanded you. ¹³Six days you shall labor and do all your work, ¹⁴but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. You shall not do any work — you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, your ox, your donkey, any of your livestock, or the foreigner within your gates — so that your male servant and your female servant may rest just as you do. ¹⁵Remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and the LORD your God brought you out from there with a mighty hand and an outstretched arm. Therefore the LORD your God has commanded you to observe the Sabbath day. ¹⁶Honor your father and your mother, as the LORD your God has commanded you, so that your days may be long and so that it may go well for you in the land that the LORD your God is giving you. ¹⁷You shall not murder. You shall not commit adultery. You shall not steal. You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor. ¹⁸You shall not covet your neighbor's wife. You shall not crave your neighbor's house, his field, his male servant, his female servant, his ox, his donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor. ¹⁹These words the LORD spoke to your entire assembly on the mountain, from the midst of the fire, the cloud, and the deep darkness, with a great voice — and He added nothing more. He wrote them on two stone tablets and gave them to me. ²⁰When you heard the voice from the midst of the darkness — while the mountain was blazing with fire — you came near to me, all the heads of your tribes and your elders, ²¹and you said, 'Look — the LORD our God has shown us His glory and His greatness, and we have heard His voice from the midst of the fire. Today we have seen that God speaks with a human being, and that person lives! ²²So now — why should we die? This great fire will consume us! If we continue to hear the voice of the LORD our God, we will die. ²³For who among all mortals has ever heard the voice of the living God speaking from the midst of fire, as we have, and survived? ²⁴You go near and listen to everything the LORD our God says. Then tell us everything the LORD our God tells you, and we will listen and obey.' ²⁵The LORD heard the words you spoke to me, and the LORD said to me, 'I have heard the words that this people has spoken to you. Everything they have said is right. ²⁶If only they had such a heart in them — to revere Me and keep all My commandments always — so that it would go well for them and for their children forever!' ²⁷Go tell them: Return to your tents. ²⁸But you — stand here beside Me, and I will speak to you the entire commandment, the statutes and the ordinances that you shall teach them, so that they may carry them out in the land I am giving them to possess. ²⁹Take care to do as the LORD your God has commanded you. Do not turn aside to the right or to the left. ³⁰Walk in the entire way that the LORD your God has commanded you, so that you may live, so that it may go well for you, and so that you may have long life in the land you are about to possess."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses assembles the entire nation for a covenant renewal address. The three verbs — 'learn' (lemadtem), 'take care' (ushemartem), 'observe' (la'asotam) — create a progression: understanding, then vigilance, then practice. The covenant is not intuitive — it must be taught, guarded, and performed. This verse frames everything that follows: what you are about to hear, you must internalize and live.

2. Moses uses *karat berit* ('cut a covenant') — the standard Hebrew idiom for establishing a covenant, derived from the ancient practice of cutting animals in a ratification ceremony (see Gen 15:10-18). Deuteronomy uses 'Horeb' for the mountain Exodus calls 'Sinai' — both names refer to the same event. The first-person 'with us' (*immanu*) prepares for the remarkable claim in v3.
3. This is one of the most audacious claims in the Torah. The Horeb covenant was made with the previous generation — most of this audience was born afterward. Yet Moses insists: 'not with our ancestors but with us.' The covenant is not inherited history; it is present-tense obligation. Every generation stands at Sinai. The emphatic Hebrew piling — *anachnu elleh poh hayyom kullanu chayyim* ('we ourselves, these here, today, all of us, living') — drives the point: you, not your grandparents, are the covenant partners.
4. *Panim bepanim* ('face to face') — the same phrase used of Moses in Deut 34:10, but here applied to the entire nation. At Horeb, God spoke directly to the people, not only through Moses. This creates a tension with v5 (where Moses stands as mediator), which the narrative resolves by distinguishing the initial direct speech (the Ten Commandments) from subsequent legislation (mediated through Moses). The fire is both terrifying and communicative — God's voice comes from within it.
5. Moses describes his unique position: 'standing between' (*omed bein*) God and Israel. He is the mediator — not a barrier but a bridge. The people's fear of the fire prevented them from ascending, so Moses stood in the gap. This parenthetical establishes Moses's authority to restate the Decalogue: he was there, between God and the people, and he transmits God's exact words. The verb *lehaggid* ('to declare') implies faithful relay, not interpretation.
6. The preamble is identical to Exodus 20:2. *Anokhi YHWH Elohekha* ('I am the LORD your God') is not a commandment but the foundation on which all commandments rest. The *exodus* — 'who brought you out of Egypt' — is the credential. God's authority to command flows from His prior act of deliverance. 'House of slavery' (*beit avadim*) is the standard Deuteronomic epithet for Egypt. The entire Decalogue hangs on this verse: these are the words of a rescuer to the rescued.
7. The first commandment: exclusive allegiance. The phrase *al-panay* ('before My face / in My presence') can mean 'in preference to Me,' 'alongside Me,' or 'in My sight.' All three readings say the same thing: no rival deity may occupy any space that belongs to the LORD. The command does not address whether other gods exist — it addresses Israel's loyalty. This is covenant language: the vassal may serve only one sovereign.
8. The prohibition covers three cosmic domains — heaven, earth, water — encompassing everything in creation. Nothing created may represent the Creator. The word *pesel* ('carved image') refers to an object shaped by human hands; *temunah* ('form, likeness') extends the prohibition to any visual representation. The command protects God's freedom: an image fixes and limits what is infinite and free. Israel's God cannot be contained in human-made forms.
9. Two verbs — 'bow down' (*hishtachaveh*, prostration in worship) and 'serve' (*ta'avdem*, ongoing devotion) — cover both ritual and lifestyle worship of images. *El qanna* ('zealous/jealous God') — the same term used in Deut 6:15 — describes God's fierce, exclusive passion for Israel's loyalty. 'Visiting iniquity on children' describes the generational consequences of idolatry, not arbitrary punishment of the innocent — the social effects of covenant betrayal cascade through families.
10. The asymmetry between v9 and v10 is the theological heart of the second commandment: three-to-four generations of consequence versus thousands of generations of *chesed*. God's disposition tilts overwhelmingly toward steadfast love. The word *chesed* here is the register term — covenant loyalty, faithful love, mercy that keeps promises. Those who 'love Me and keep My commandments' describes the posture of a faithful covenant partner: love expressed through obedience.
11. The verb *tissa* ('take up, carry, bear') suggests not just speaking but carrying God's name — as a representative bears a sovereign's banner. *Lashshav* ('for emptiness, for worthlessness') goes beyond profanity to include any use of God's name that empties it of weight: false oaths, manipulative prayers, hollow invocations of divine authority. To bear God's name is to represent Him; to do so *lashshav* is to misrepresent Him. The warning — *lo yenaqqeh* ('will not hold guiltless, will not acquit') — is one of the strongest negative statements in the Decalogue.
12. Deuteronomy uses *shamor* ('guard, keep') where Exodus 20:8 uses *zakhor* ('remember'). The two are complementary: remember the Sabbath (hold it in mind) and guard it (protect its boundaries). Jewish tradition holds that both words were spoken simultaneously at Sinai — a concept captured in the Sabbath hymn *Lekha Dodi*. The addition 'as the LORD your God has commanded you' (*ka'asher tsivvekha*) — absent from Exodus 20 — reminds Israel that this is not a new command but a renewal of an existing one.
13. The six days of labor are not a concession but a command — work is expected and dignified. The Hebrew *melakhah* ('work, skilled labor, craft') is the same word used for the work of building the tabernacle (Exod 31:3-5) and for God's creative work in Genesis 2:2. Human labor participates in God's own pattern of purposeful creation followed by rest.
14. Deuteronomy adds a social justice clause absent from Exodus 20: 'so that your male servant and your female servant may rest just as you do' (*lema'an yanuach avdekha va'amatekha kamokha*). The Sabbath is not just personal piety — it is mandated rest for the most vulnerable. The word *kamokha* ('like you, just as you do') asserts the equal dignity of servants before God's rest. The list of those covered is comprehensive: children, servants, animals, and foreigners. No one in Israel's household may be forced to work when God has declared rest.
15. The most significant difference between Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5: Exodus grounds the Sabbath in creation ('in six days the LORD made heaven and earth... and rested on the seventh day'). Deuteronomy grounds it in liberation ('you were a slave in Egypt'). The two rationales are complementary, not contradictory: creation establishes the pattern; the *exodus* reveals the purpose. You rest because God rests — and because you know what it means to never rest. Former slaves understand the gift of Sabbath in a way the free-born never can.

16. Deuteronomy adds a second promise — 'and that it may go well for you' (ulema'an yitav lakh) — absent from Exodus 20:12. The commandment to honor (kabbed, from kavod — 'to make heavy, to give weight to') parents bridges the two halves of the Decalogue: it is both a duty toward God (who commands it) and toward other people (the parents themselves). Paul identifies this as the first commandment with a promise attached (Eph 6:2).
17. Hebrew versification combines four commandments in a single verse — each only two words in Hebrew: lo tirtsach, lo tin'af, lo tignov, lo ta'aneh. The staccato rhythm is deliberate: these are absolute prohibitions, stated without qualification or explanation. The verb ratsach ('murder') is distinct from other Hebrew killing verbs (harag, hemit, muth) — it specifically denotes unlawful killing. Deuteronomy substitutes ed shav ('worthless/vain testimony') for Exodus 20:16's ed shaqer ('false testimony') — broadening the prohibition from lying to any testimony that lacks substance or integrity.
18. Deuteronomy makes two changes from Exodus 20:17. First, it separates 'wife' (eshet re'ekha) from the property list, giving her a distinct prohibition with the verb tachamod ('covet') — while the property list uses a different verb, tit'avveh ('crave, desire'). Exodus uses tachamod for both. Second, Deuteronomy adds 'his field' (sadehu) to the property list — reflecting the agricultural reality of settled life in the land, which the Exodus version (delivered before settlement) does not address. The tenth commandment is unique: it legislates internal desire, not external action.
19. Moses emphasizes three features of the Decalogue's delivery: it was spoken to the entire assembly (not privately to Moses), it came from terrifying theophanic phenomena (fire, cloud, arafel — the same 'deep darkness' of Exod 20:21), and 'He added nothing more' (velo yasaf) — the Ten Words are complete as spoken. God then inscribed them on stone — the only part of the Torah written by God's own hand (or finger, per Exod 31:18). The two tablets are given to Moses as mediator, connecting back to v5.
20. The people's response to the theophany: they approached Moses, not God. The tribal leaders and elders came as representatives. The darkness (choshekh) and the burning mountain create an overwhelming sensory experience — hearing God's voice from impenetrable darkness while the mountain itself is on fire. The people's retreat to Moses marks the transition from direct divine speech (the Decalogue) to mediated legislation (everything after).
21. The people's awe centers on two revelations: they saw God's kavod ('glory') and godlo ('greatness'), and they heard His voice from the fire. Their astonishment is specific: 'God speaks with a human being, and that person lives' (yedabber Elohim et-ha'adam vachai). The expectation was death — to encounter God directly should be fatal. The survival itself is the miracle. The word kavod here is the register term — God's weighty, overwhelming presence made visible.
22. The people's fear is not irrational — the fire is real and enormous. Their logic is honest: we survived once, but we cannot endure more direct contact with God. The verb tokhleinu ('will consume us') treats the divine fire as a devouring force. Their request (coming in v24) is for Moses to serve as permanent mediator — to hear God's voice for them and relay His words. This is the theological origin of the prophetic office: the people's own request for mediated revelation.
23. The rhetorical question — 'who among all flesh (kol-basar) has heard the living God (Elohim chayyim) speaking from fire and lived?' — treats Israel's Sinai experience as absolutely unique in human history. The phrase Elohim chayyim ('living God') distinguishes the God of Israel from inert idols: this God speaks, acts, and is dangerously alive. The implied answer is: no one, ever. Israel's survival of direct divine encounter is unprecedented and unrepeatable.
24. The people commission Moses as permanent mediator: 'You go near... then tell us.' The final words — veshama'nu ve'asinu ('we will listen and obey') — echo the na'aseh venishma of Exodus 24:7, though in reversed order (hear then do, rather than do then hear). The people pledge obedience to mediated revelation, establishing the pattern for all subsequent prophetic communication. Moses becomes the prototype for every prophet who will follow.
25. God's response is remarkable: He approves the people's request. Hetivu kol-asher dibberu ('they have done well in all they have said') — God agrees that direct divine encounter is too much for mortal flesh and endorses the mediation model. This divine validation of human limitation is theologically significant: God accommodates human weakness not as a concession but as wisdom. The prophetic office — hearing God for the people — is God's own design, not a human invention.
26. God's lament — mi-yitten ('who will give,' an idiomatic 'if only!') — is one of the most startling verses in the Torah. God wishes for something He apparently does not compel: a heart that would consistently revere Him and obey. The implication is that obedience requires an inner transformation that the law itself cannot produce. Deuteronomy will return to this theme in 30:6 ('the LORD your God will circumcise your heart'). This verse anticipates Jeremiah's new covenant (Jer 31:33) and Ezekiel's heart of flesh (Ezek 36:26).
27. A practical command after the intense theophany: go home. The people's encounter with God at the mountain is over; normal life resumes. But 'return to your tents' also marks a transition — Moses will now remain with God to receive the rest of the Torah (v28), while the people return to ordinary life. The separation between prophet and people is formalized.
28. God addresses Moses directly: 'You — stand here beside Me.' While the people return to their tents, Moses stays in God's presence to receive the full body of legislation. The phrase poh amod immadi ('stand here beside Me') is an invitation to sustained intimacy — Moses will occupy the position between God and people that v5 described, not just temporarily but as his permanent role. Everything Moses teaches from here forward — the 'commandment, statutes, and ordinances' — is what he receives in this divine audience.
29. The command to walk straight — 'not turning right or left' (lo tasuru yamin usmol) — uses a path metaphor that runs throughout Deuteronomy. The Torah is a road; deviation in either direction leads away from God. The phrase will be repeated for Joshua (Josh 1:7) and for the future king (Deut 17:20). It implies that the covenant path is narrow and specific — not a vague disposition but a defined way of life.

30. The chapter closes with three purpose clauses: 'so that you may live' (tichyun), 'so that it may go well' (vetov lakhem), 'so that you may have long life' (veha'araktem yamim). Obedience and life are linked — not as reward but as natural consequence. The covenant path is the path of life; departure from it leads to diminishment. The phrase 'the entire way' (bekhol-hadderekh) — literally 'in all the road' — frames Torah observance as a comprehensive journey, not a checklist. The closing word — tirashu ('possess,' from yarash) — points forward to the land that awaits.

6

Summary: Moses delivers the Shema — 'Hear, O Israel: the LORD our God, the LORD is one' — and commands Israel to love God with all their heart, being, and strength, teaching these words to their children.

What Makes This Remarkable: The Shema (v. 4) is the most recited sentence in Jewish history, yet the Hebrew is syntactically ambiguous: 'The LORD our God, the LORD is one' or 'The LORD our God is one LORD' or 'The LORD is our God, the LORD alone.' The word echad ('one') could mean unique, unified, or alone. We preserved the traditional word order and let the ambiguity stand. The command to love God be-khol levavekha (v. 5, 'with all your heart') uses the doubled-letter form levav, which the rabbis read as 'with both your inclinations' — the good and the evil.

Translation Friction: The word me'odekha (v. 5) is notoriously hard: 'your strength,' 'your might,' 'your very much,' 'your resources.' The root me'od means 'exceedingly,' so me'odekha could mean 'your everything' — whatever you have in abundance. We rendered it 'your strength' as the most accessible English and noted the fuller range. The totafot (v. 8, 'emblems/frontlets') is of uncertain etymology — we transliterated and explained.

Connections: Jesus identifies the Shema as the greatest commandment (Mark 12:29-30, Matthew 22:37). The doorpost inscription (v. 9) becomes the mezuzah. The testing at Massah (v. 16) references Exodus 17:1-7. The catechetical dialogue (vv. 20-25) establishes the Passover Haggadah's question-and-answer format.

¹This is the commandment — the statutes and the ordinances — that the LORD your God charged me to teach you, so that you may carry them out in the land you are about to cross into and possess. ²The purpose is that you, your children, and your grandchildren will revere the LORD your God by keeping all His statutes and commandments that I am giving you, for as long as you live — and that your days may be long. ³Listen, Israel, and be careful to obey, so that it may go well for you and you may multiply greatly — as the LORD, the God of your ancestors, promised you — in a land flowing with milk and honey. ⁴Hear, O Israel: The LORD our God — the LORD is one. ⁵You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, with all your being, and with all your strength. ⁶These words that I am commanding you today must be upon your heart. ⁷You shall repeat them constantly to your children: speak of them when you sit in your house, when you walk along the road, when you lie down, and when you rise up. ⁸Bind them as a sign on your hand, and let them serve as an emblem on your forehead. ⁹Write them on the doorposts of your house and on your gates. ¹⁰When the LORD your God brings you into the land He swore to your ancestors — to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob — to give you: large and prosperous cities that you did not build, ¹¹houses filled with every good thing that you did not fill, cisterns hewn from rock that you did not hew, vineyards and olive groves that you did not plant — and when you have eaten and are satisfied, ¹²then guard yourself carefully, or you will forget the LORD who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. ¹³The LORD your God you shall revere, Him alone you shall serve, and by His name you shall swear. ¹⁴You must not follow other gods — any of the gods of the peoples around you — ¹⁵for the LORD your God, who is present among you, is a zealous God. Otherwise the anger of the LORD your God will blaze against you, and He will wipe you from the face of the earth. ¹⁶You must not test the LORD your God as you tested Him at Massah. ¹⁷You must faithfully keep the commandments of the LORD your God — His decrees and His statutes that He has commanded you. ¹⁸Do what is right and good in the LORD's sight, so that it may go well for you and you may enter and take possession of the good land that the LORD swore to your ancestors, ¹⁹driving out all your enemies before you, just as the LORD has promised. ²⁰When your child asks you in the future, 'What are these decrees, statutes, and ordinances that the LORD our God has commanded you?' ²¹you shall tell your child, 'We were slaves to Pharaoh in Egypt, and the LORD brought us out of Egypt with a mighty hand. ²²The LORD displayed signs and wonders — great and devastating — against Egypt, against Pharaoh, and against his entire household, before our very eyes. ²³He brought us out from there in order to

bring us in — to give us the land that He swore to our ancestors. ²⁴The LORD commanded us to observe all these statutes — to revere the LORD our God — for our good always, and to keep us alive, as we are today. ²⁵It will be our righteousness when we carefully observe this entire commandment before the LORD our God, just as He has commanded us."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses uses the singular *hamitsvah* ('the commandment') followed by the plural 'statutes and ordinances' — suggesting that everything that follows flows from a single core commandment, which the Shema (v4-5) will state. The Hebrew *mishpatim* is better rendered 'ordinances' or 'rules' than KJV's 'judgments,' since these are prescriptions for life, not court rulings.
2. The multigenerational chain — 'you, your son, your grandson' — is central to Deuteronomy's vision: covenant faithfulness is transmitted across generations, not merely practiced individually. The verb *tira* ('fear, revere') is the same *yir'ah* that governed the midwives in Exodus 1:17 — awe that produces obedience. The promise of long days (*ya'arikhun yamekha*) links obedience to life itself.
3. The verb *shama* ('hear, listen') appears here as a command and will return as the opening word of v4 — the Shema itself. Hearing in Hebrew is never passive; it always implies response. The phrase 'land flowing with milk and honey' (*erets zavav chalah udevash*) describes agricultural abundance: milk from livestock, honey from date palms (not bees, in the most likely reading). It is a promise of provision, not luxury.
4. These six words are the most important sentence in Judaism. The Hebrew syntax is deliberately ambiguous — YHWH Eloheinu YHWH echad can be parsed in multiple ways, and the tradition has preserved all of them. The word *echad* ('one') can mean 'one' (numerical), 'alone' (exclusive), or 'unified' (undivided). Jesus cites this verse as the greatest commandment (Mark 12:29). The rendering 'the LORD is one' preserves the ambiguity better than 'is one LORD' (which narrows the meaning to numerical oneness).
5. The command to love God is not sentimental — *ahava* ('you shall love') is a covenant verb. In ancient Near Eastern treaties, 'love' describes the vassal's total loyalty to the sovereign. Three dimensions of totality are named: *levav* (heart — the seat of will and thought, not emotion), *nephesh* (being, life, self — the whole person), and *me'od* (strength, might, abundance — everything you have). Together they leave no domain of human existence outside the scope of this command. Jesus identifies this as the greatest commandment in the Torah (Matt 22:37, Mark 12:30).
6. The instruction moves from the declaration (v4) and the command (v5) to the method of internalization: these words must be *al-levavekha* — literally 'upon your heart.' The words are to rest on the heart until the heart absorbs them. The emphasis on 'today' (*hayyom*) runs throughout Deuteronomy — the covenant is always present-tense, always being renewed in the current moment.
7. The verb *shinantam* (from *shanan*, 'to sharpen, repeat, engrave') implies intensive, repetitive teaching — not a single lesson but constant, woven-into-life instruction. The four situations (sitting, walking, lying down, rising up) form two merisms covering all of life: home and travel, rest and activity. There is no moment when these words are not relevant. This verse became the basis for reciting the Shema morning and evening in Jewish liturgy.
8. This verse has been interpreted both literally (resulting in *tefillin* — small leather boxes containing scripture passages worn during prayer) and metaphorically (keep God's commands constantly visible in your actions and thoughts). The Hebrew *totafot* ('frontlets, emblems') is an unusual word of uncertain etymology, appearing only here and in Exodus 13:16 and Deuteronomy 11:18. 'Hand' and 'forehead' represent action and thought — what you do and what you focus on.
9. The word *mezuzot* ('doorposts') gave its name to the *mezuzah* — the small case containing a scroll of Deuteronomy 6:4-9 and 11:13-21 affixed to Jewish doorframes to this day. The doorpost marks the threshold between public and private space; the gates mark the boundary of the community. God's words govern both the household and the city. The progression from v6-9 moves outward: heart (v6), speech to children (v7), body (v8), home and community (v9).
10. The danger of prosperity begins here. The covenant promise is about to be fulfilled — Israel will inherit what they did not earn. The naming of the three patriarchs anchors the land promise in covenant history stretching back to Genesis 12, 26, and 28. The list that follows (v10-11) catalogs unearned abundance: cities, houses, wells, vineyards, olive trees — all received, not produced.
11. Four gifts, each with the emphatic 'you did not': build, fill, hew, plant. The repetition makes the point unmissable — everything Israel receives in the land is grace, not achievement. The Hebrew *borot chatsuvim* ('hewn cisterns') refers to water storage cut into limestone, essential for survival in a land without reliable rivers. The list moves from infrastructure (cities, houses) to sustenance (water, food) — every layer of settled life is a gift.
12. *Hishamer lekha* ('guard yourself') — the same verb used for guarding the garden in Genesis 2:15 and for the priestly duty of guarding the sanctuary. Self-guarding is an active spiritual discipline, not passive. The danger is forgetting — *shakhach*, the opposite of *zakhar* ('remember'). In Deuteronomy, forgetting God is the primal sin, more fundamental than any specific commandment violation. 'House of slavery' (*beit avadim*) is Deuteronomy's standard epithet for Egypt.
13. Three verbs, each with emphatic word order (object before verb): revere, serve, swear by. The fronting of 'the LORD your God' gives it the force of 'It is the LORD — and no other — whom you shall revere.' The verb *avad* ('serve, worship') is the same word used for Israel's slavery in Egypt (*avadim*, v12) — Israel is transferred from Pharaoh's service to God's. Swearing by God's name acknowledges Him as the guarantor of truth and oaths.
14. The prohibition is geographically specific: 'the gods of the peoples around you' (*elohei ha'ammim asher sevivoteikhem*). The threat is not abstract polytheism but the actual religious cultures Israel will encounter in Canaan. 'Going after' other gods (*halakh acharei*) is covenant-betrayal language

— it describes a vassal who abandons their sovereign for a rival.

15. El qanna ('jealous/zealous God') — qanna is used exclusively for God in the Hebrew Bible. It does not describe petty jealousy but the fierce, protective passion of a covenant partner who will not share loyalty with rivals. The phrase beqirbekha ('in your midst') is critical: God is not distant — He dwells among Israel, making idolatry not merely theological error but a personal offense against a present God. The consequence — destruction from the face of the ground (adamah) — echoes the Cain narrative (Gen 4:14).
16. The verb nassah ('test, try, prove') and the place name Massah ('testing') share the same root — a wordplay the Hebrew reader would hear immediately. The reference is to Exodus 17:1-7, where Israel demanded water and asked 'Is the LORD among us or not?' — testing whether God's covenant commitment was real. Moses redefines the Massah incident as a permanent prohibition: demanding that God prove Himself is itself a failure of trust.
17. The infinitive absolute construction shamor tishmerun intensifies the verb: 'you must really, truly keep.' Three categories of law are named: mitsvot ('commandments'), edot ('testimonies, decrees' — laws that witness to God's character), and chuqqim ('statutes' — prescribed regulations). The threefold classification suggests that God's law addresses every dimension of life.
18. The pair hayyashar vehatov ('the right and the good') goes beyond mere legal compliance. Yashar ('right, straight, upright') and tov ('good, beneficial') together suggest both moral integrity and active goodness. The rabbis derived from this verse the principle of lifnim mishurat hadin — going beyond the strict letter of the law to do what is genuinely good, even when not explicitly commanded.
19. The verb hadof ('drive out, thrust away') is forceful — God's action on Israel's behalf is not gentle persuasion but decisive removal. 'As the LORD has spoken' (ka'asher dibber YHWH) anchors the military promise in God's covenant word. The sentence completes v18: obedience leads to possession, and possession includes the removal of opposition.
20. The catechetical question-and-answer pattern: a child asks, a parent answers. This is one of four 'son's questions' across the Torah (see also Exodus 12:26, 13:8, 13:14), which form the basis of the four questions in the Passover Haggadah. The word machar ('tomorrow') means 'in the future' — this instruction anticipates the next generation and all generations after. Faith must be transmissible, not merely personal.
21. The answer to the child's question is not a legal explanation but a narrative — a story of rescue. 'We were slaves' (avadim hayinu) — the first-person plural is deliberate. Every generation tells the exodus story as its own experience, not as ancient history. This is the principle of liturgical identification: 'We were slaves,' not 'Our ancestors were slaves.' The 'mighty hand' (yad chazaqah) is Deuteronomy's standard phrase for God's power in the exodus (4:34, 5:15, 7:19, 26:8).
22. The adjective ra'im ('evil, harmful, devastating') applied to God's wonders is striking — the plagues were good for Israel but devastating for Egypt. The phrase le'einenu ('before our eyes') continues the liturgical first-person: every generation 'sees' the exodus through the retelling. The comprehensive targeting — Egypt, Pharaoh, his entire house — leaves no level of Egyptian power untouched.
23. The verse captures the double movement of redemption in a single sentence: hotsi ('brought out') and havi ('bring in'). Exodus is not an end in itself but a means — God rescued Israel from Egypt so that He could bring them to the promised land. The two verbs are linked by lema'an ('in order to'), making the purpose explicit. This is the exodus in miniature: out of slavery, into promise.
24. The purpose of the law is stated with startling simplicity: letov lanu ('for our good'). The commandments are not arbitrary impositions but provisions for flourishing. Two purposes are given: 'for our good always' (comprehensive well-being) and 'to keep us alive' (sheer survival). Obedience and life are linked — not as reward but as cause and effect. The Deuteronomic vision: Torah is the path to life.
25. The chapter ends where it began (v1) — with 'this commandment' (hamitsvah hazzot), singular. The Shema and all that flows from it is one unified command. Tsedaqah ('righteousness') here means 'right standing, covenant faithfulness' — obedience to the commandment constitutes Israel's righteous status before God. Paul will later cite the relationship between righteousness and obedience/faith as a central theological question (Romans 10:5-6, citing Deut 30:12-14). The closing 'as He has commanded us' circles back to the covenant framework: God commands, Israel obeys, and the result is tsedaqah.

7

Summary: *Moses commands the total destruction of the seven Canaanite nations when Israel enters the land, forbids intermarriage, and grounds the command in Israel's identity as God's segullah — His treasured possession.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word segullah (v. 6, 'treasured possession') describes not generic favor but a specific, chosen treasure — a king's personal vault, distinct from the general treasury. God chose Israel not because they were numerous (v. 7, 'you were the fewest') but because He loved them and kept His oath. The logic is circular and intentional: God loves because He loves. No external reason is offered.*

Translation Friction: The verb chashaq (v. 7, 'set His affection on') carries emotional intensity — desire, longing, attachment. We rendered it as 'set His affection on' rather than the blander 'chose' because the Hebrew insists on emotional language for God's election. The cherem command (v. 2) requires the full phrase 'devote to destruction' rather than softening — the Hebrew does not soften it.

Connections: The segullah language echoes Exodus 19:5 and recurs in Malachi 3:17. The promise to remove diseases (v. 15) reverses the Egyptian plagues. The hornet (v. 20, tsir'ah) appears also in Exodus 23:28 and Joshua 24:12. Peter applies the segullah identity to the church in 1 Peter 2:9.

¹When the LORD your God brings you into the land you are entering to take possession of, He will clear away many nations ahead of you — the Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites — seven nations larger and more powerful than you. ²When the LORD your God hands them over to you and you defeat them, you must devote them completely to destruction. You must not make a treaty with them or show them any favor. ³You must not intermarry with them — do not give your daughters to their sons, and do not take their daughters for your sons. ⁴Because they will turn your sons away from following Me, and they will worship other gods. Then the anger of the LORD will blaze against you, and He will swiftly destroy you. ⁵Instead, this is how you must deal with them: tear down their altars, smash their sacred pillars, chop down their Asherah poles, and burn their carved idols in fire. ⁶For you are a people set apart for the LORD your God. The LORD your God has chosen you out of all the peoples on the face of the earth to be His treasured possession. ⁷It was not because you were more numerous than other peoples that the LORD set His affection on you and chose you — for you were the smallest of all peoples. ⁸Rather, it was because the LORD loves you and is keeping the oath He swore to your ancestors that He brought you out with a powerful hand and ransomed you from the slave house, from the grip of Pharaoh king of Egypt. ⁹Recognize, then, that the LORD your God — He is God, the trustworthy God who maintains faithful love with those who love Him and keep His commands, to a thousand generations. ¹⁰But He repays those who hate Him directly, to their face, by destroying them. He does not delay with anyone who hates Him — He repays each one personally. ¹¹So guard the commandment — the statutes and the regulations — that I am commanding you today, by carrying them out. ¹²As a consequence of your listening to these regulations and carefully carrying them out, the LORD your God will maintain for you the covenant and the loyal love that He swore to your ancestors. ¹³He will love you, bless you, and multiply you. He will bless the fruit of your womb and the produce of your soil — your grain, new wine, and olive oil — the calves of your herds and the lambs of your flocks, in the land that He swore to your ancestors to give you. ¹⁴You will be more blessed than any other people. There will be no infertile man or woman among you, nor barrenness among your livestock. ¹⁵The LORD will remove every illness from you. He will not inflict on you any of the terrible diseases of Egypt that you experienced, but will impose them on all who hate you. ¹⁶You must consume all the peoples that the LORD your God is handing over to you. Your eye must not show pity on them. And do not worship their gods, for that would be a trap for you. ¹⁷If you say to yourself, "These nations are more numerous than I am — how can I possibly dispossess them?" — ¹⁸Do not be afraid of them. Keep firmly in mind what the LORD your God did to Pharaoh and to all of Egypt — ¹⁹The great trials your own eyes witnessed, the signs and wonders, the powerful hand and outstretched arm by which the LORD your God brought you out — the LORD your God will do the same to all the peoples you now fear. ²⁰Beyond that, the LORD your God will send the hornet against them, until even the survivors who hide from you are wiped out. ²¹Do not be terrified by them, because the LORD your God is in your midst — a great and awesome God. ²²The LORD your God will drive out these nations ahead of you gradually, little by little. You will not be able to eliminate them all at once, or the wild animals would multiply against you. ²³The LORD your God will hand them over to you and throw them into great confusion until they are annihilated. ²⁴He will deliver their kings into your hand, and you will erase their very names from under heaven. No one will be able to stand against you until you have destroyed them. ²⁵You must burn the carved images of their gods in fire. Do not covet the silver and gold plating on them or take it for yourself, or you will be ensnared by it — for it is detestable to the LORD your God. ²⁶Do not bring any detestable thing into your house, or you yourself will become devoted to destruction just like it. You must utterly despise it and completely abhor it, because it is under the ban.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *nashal* ('to strip off, drive out') portrays God peeling away the nations like bark from a tree. The catalogue of seven peoples (*shiv'ah goyim*) is a formulaic list representing the totality of Canaan's inhabitants. The phrase *rabbim va'atsumim mimmekka* ('greater and more powerful than you') underscores that Israel's success will not rest on military superiority but on divine action.
2. The infinitive absolute *hacharem tacharim* ('devoting you shall devote') intensifies the command for total destruction — the *cherem*, a holy war dedication to God. The prohibition *lo tikhrot lahem berit* ('you shall not cut a covenant with them') and *lo techannem* ('you shall not show them favor') create a threefold boundary: military, diplomatic, and emotional. The verb *chanan* may also carry the sense 'give them a foothold' (from *chen*, 'camp'), adding territorial exclusion to the prohibition.
3. The verb *titchatten* ('to become a son-in-law, form marriage alliance') is a *hitpael* reflexive, signaling a reciprocal binding relationship. Marriage alliances in the ancient Near East functioned as political treaties, binding families and their gods. The prohibition is structured chiasmatically — daughter to his son / his daughter to your son — covering both directions of intermarriage and closing every avenue of assimilation.
4. Moses abruptly speaks in God's first person — *me'acharai* ('from after Me') — a jarring shift that underscores the personal nature of the betrayal. The verb *yasir* ('turn aside') paired with *ve'avdu* ('and they will serve') reveals intermarriage as a gateway to idolatry. The phrase *vecharah af-YHWH* ('the anger of the LORD will burn') uses the fire metaphor for divine wrath, and *maher* ('quickly, suddenly') warns that judgment will be swift.
5. Four distinct cult objects receive four distinct destructions: *mizbechoteihem titotsu* ('their altars you shall tear down'), *matsevatam teshabberu* ('their pillars you shall shatter'), *asheireihem tegadde'un* ('their Asherah-poles you shall cut down'), and *pesileihem tisrefu ba'esh* ('their carved images you shall burn in fire'). Each verb matches its object — stone altars are demolished, standing stones shattered, wooden poles hewn, and carved idols consumed. The comprehensiveness eliminates any possibility of repurposing Canaanite worship infrastructure.
6. Two foundational terms define Israel's identity: *am qadosh* ('holy people' — set apart, consecrated, belonging exclusively to God) and *am segullah* ('treasured people'). *Segullah* is a royal term — in Akkadian, *sikiltum* refers to a king's private treasure, personal property held apart from the general treasury. Israel is not merely God's subjects but His personal, prized possession. The verb *bachar* ('chose') emphasizes divine initiative — election originates in God's will, not Israel's merit.
7. The verb *chashaq* ('to be attached to, desire, set one's affection on') conveys intense emotional attachment, even romantic longing (cf. Genesis 34:8). God's election of Israel is not administrative but passionate. The reason given is counter-intuitive: *ki-attem hame'at mikkol-ha'ammim* ('because you were the fewest of all the peoples'). Israel's smallness, far from disqualifying them, highlights that divine choice rests on grace alone, not on demographic or strategic advantage.
8. Two motivations drive the exodus: *me'ahavat YHWH* ('from the LORD's love') and *umishamro et-hashvu'ah* ('from His keeping the oath'). Love and covenant faithfulness are the twin engines of redemption. The verb *padah* ('ransom, redeem') specifically denotes liberation by payment of a price — Israel was purchased out of slavery. The phrase *mibbeit avadim* ('from the house of slaves') recurs as a liturgical anchor throughout Deuteronomy, keeping the memory of bondage alive.
9. The title *ha'El hanne'eman* ('the trustworthy God') uses *ne'eman* from the root *aman* ('to be firm, reliable') — the same root as 'amen.' God's faithfulness is structural, not sentimental. The phrase *shomer habberit vehacheshed* ('keeper of covenant and loyal love') pairs *berit* (covenant obligation) with *chesed* (loyal, steadfast love that exceeds mere obligation). The scope — *le'elef dor* ('to a thousand generations') — is not literal arithmetic but a declaration of permanence: God's covenant loyalty far outlasts human rebellion.
10. The phrase *el-panav* ('to his face') appears twice, stressing that divine retribution is direct and personal — not delegated or delayed. The verb *meshallem* ('repays') frames judgment as reciprocal justice: hatred toward God earns a proportional response. The emphatic *lo ye'acher* ('He will not delay') counters any presumption that silence equals tolerance. The contrast with verse 9 (a thousand generations of loyalty) against immediate repayment for hatred shows the asymmetry of God's justice: mercy is vast, judgment is swift.
11. The singular *hammitsvah* ('the commandment') followed by plural *chuqqim* ('statutes') and *mishpatim* ('regulations') suggests that the many laws form one unified directive. The verb *shamarta* ('you shall guard') implies watchful protection, not mere obedience — treat the law as something precious to be preserved. The phrase *la'asotam* ('to do them') grounds the guarding in action: obedience is not contemplative but practical.
12. The word *eqev* ('consequence, because, heel') opens a conditional promise. Some scholars link it to the 'heel' (*aqev*), suggesting something trodden underfoot — even the smallest, most overlooked regulations matter. The threefold response — *tishme'un* ('you will listen'), *ushmartem* ('and guard'), *va'asitem* ('and do') — mirrors the threefold law categories of verse 11. God's reciprocity is remarkable: *veshamar YHWH* ('the LORD will guard') uses the same verb for God's faithfulness that was demanded of Israel. As you guard, so He guards.
13. The rapid-fire verbs — *va'ahavkha* ('He will love you'), *uverakhekha* ('bless you'), *vehרבekha* ('multiply you') — cascade as covenant rewards. The blessings span human fertility (*peri vitnekha*, 'fruit of your womb'), agriculture (*peri admatekha*, 'produce of your soil'), and animal husbandry. The rare terms *shegar alafekha* ('increase of your cattle') and *ashtarot tsonekha* ('offspring of your flocks') may carry overtones reclaimed from Canaanite fertility religion — true abundance comes from YHWH, not from Baal or Ashtoreth.
14. The blessing *barukh tihyeh mikkol-ha'ammim* ('blessed you will be above all peoples') positions Israel at the apex of human flourishing. The specific elimination of infertility — *aqar va'aqarah* ('barren male and barren female') — addresses one of the ancient world's deepest anxieties. Extending this promise to livestock (*ubivhemtekha*) links human and agricultural prosperity as a unified covenant blessing.

15. The verb *hesir* ('remove, turn aside') presents God as physician who strips away disease. The phrase *madwei mitsrayim hara'im* ('the terrible diseases of Egypt') likely refers both to epidemics witnessed during the plagues and to endemic illnesses known in the Nile region. The word *yadata* ('you knew/experienced') is experiential — these were diseases they personally witnessed. The redirection of plague onto enemies (*unatanam bekhoh-son'ekha*) reverses the exodus pattern: Israel's former afflictions become weapons against their adversaries.
16. The verb *akhal* ('devour, consume') is a metaphor for military conquest — Israel swallows up the nations as fire consumes fuel. The command *lo-tachos einekha* ('your eye must not show pity') addresses the natural human instinct toward compassion, which in this context would lead to compromise and idolatry. The final clause — *ki moqesh hu lakh* ('for it is a snare to you') — uses *moqesh*, a hunter's trap, to describe idol worship: what appears harmless ensnares fatally.
17. Moses anticipates the internal dialogue of fear: *tomar bilvavekha* ('you will say in your heart') identifies the battlefield as psychological, not just military. The question *eikhah ukhal lehorisham* ('how can I dispossess them?') echoes the panic of the spies at Kadesh-barnea (Numbers 13:31). The verb *horish* ('dispossess, drive out') frames conquest as displacement, not annihilation — taking their place in the land.
18. The infinitive absolute *zakhoh tizkor* ('remembering you shall remember') intensifies the command to remember. Memory is the antidote to fear: what God accomplished against the world's superpower (Pharaoh and all of Egypt) proves He can handle the Canaanite nations. The exodus functions as Israel's standing proof of divine capability — every future challenge is measured against that definitive act of liberation.
19. The *hamassot haggdolot* ('the great trials/tests') may refer to the plagues as tests of both Egypt and Israel's faith. The fourfold description — *otot* ('signs'), *mofetim* ('wonders'), *yad chazaqah* ('strong hand'), *zero'a netuyah* ('outstretched arm') — is a standard Deuteronomic formula for the exodus. The climactic promise *ken-ya'aseh* ('so He will do') transforms history into prophecy: the same divine power that broke Egypt will break Canaan.
20. The *tsirah* ('hornet') may be literal (swarms driving out inhabitants), metaphorical (divine terror), or a reference to Egypt whose hieroglyphic symbol was a bee/hornet. The phrase *hannish'arim vehannistarim* ('those remaining and those hiding') covers both open resisters and guerrilla holdouts — no one escapes divine pursuit. God's campaign is comprehensive: military defeat, psychological terror, and ecological warfare all serve the conquest.
21. The verb *ta'arots* ('be terrified, shudder') describes visceral, paralyzing fear. The antidote is not courage but presence: *YHWH Elohekha beqirbekha* ('the LORD your God is in your midst'). The divine titles *El gadol venora* ('a great and awesome God') redirect the terror — the One who inspires true awe is not the enemy but Israel's own God dwelling among them.
22. The phrase *me'at me'at* ('little by little') reveals a surprising strategy: conquest will be incremental, not instantaneous. The practical reason — *pen-tirbeh alekha chayyat hasadeh* ('lest the wild animals multiply against you') — shows that depopulated land quickly becomes wilderness. God's pace is ecological wisdom: Israel must grow into the land as it empties, maintaining the infrastructure of civilization. The gradual process also extends the period of faith-dependence.
23. The verb *hamam* ('throw into confusion, panic, rout') is the same word used for God's disruption of the Egyptian army at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:24). The cognate accusative *mehumah gedolah* ('a great confusion') intensifies the panic to total disorientation — enemies who cannot think clearly cannot fight effectively. The pattern repeats: what God did to Egypt, He will do to Canaan.
24. Delivering kings into Israel's hand (*natan malkeihem beyadekha*) represents complete political collapse — when a king falls, his kingdom falls with him. The phrase *veha'avadta et-shemam mittachat hashamayim* ('you will destroy their name from under heaven') goes beyond military defeat to cultural erasure — their memory will be obliterated. The absolute claim *lo-yityatsev ish befanekha* ('no one will stand before you') is a divine guarantee of invincibility conditioned on obedience.
25. The prohibition shifts from military to economic: *lo-tachamod kesef vezahav aleihem* ('do not covet the silver and gold on them') uses the same verb as the tenth commandment (*tachamod*, 'covet'). Greed provides a backdoor for idolatry — keeping the precious metals from idols brings the idol's contamination into Israel's economy. The word *to'avat YHWH* ('an abomination to the LORD') marks this as categorically repulsive to God, not merely prohibited. The warning *pen tivvaqesh bo* ('lest you be ensnared by it') echoes the *moqesh* ('trap') of verse 16.
26. The contagion principle is stark: bringing a *to'evah* ('detestable thing') into your home makes *vehayita cherem kamohu* ('you will become cherem like it') — the ban is infectious. Contact with devoted objects places the person under the same sentence of destruction. The twin infinitive absolutes *shaqets teshaqtsennu* ('despising you shall despise it') and *ta'ev teta'avennu* ('abhorring you shall abhor it') demand visceral revulsion, not mere avoidance. The chapter ends where it began — with *cherem* — framing all of chapter 7 as a meditation on radical separation.

8

Summary: *Moses warns Israel not to forget God after entering the good land — remembering the wilderness hunger, the manna, and the discipline that taught them to depend on God's word.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 3 is the chapter's theological center: 'man does not live by bread alone, but by everything that comes from the mouth of the LORD.' The manna lesson was not about food but about trust — God made them hungry first, then fed them something they did not know, to teach that divine speech sustains life more fundamentally than grain. The seven species of the land (v. 8) — wheat, barley, grape, fig, pomegranate, olive, honey — remain the agricultural identity of Israel to this day.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase motsa fi-YHWH (v. 3, 'what comes from the mouth of the LORD') encompasses commandments, promises, and creative speech — 'word' is too narrow. We rendered it as 'everything that comes from the mouth of the LORD' to capture the breadth. The verb yasar (v. 5, 'disciplines') carries parental connotation — God is not punishing but training, as the father-son metaphor makes explicit.*

Connections: *Jesus quotes verse 3 in His wilderness temptation (Matthew 4:4, Luke 4:4). The seven species (v. 8) appear across agricultural laws (Leviticus 23, Numbers 18). The warning against 'my power and my hand's strength made me this wealth' (v. 17) anticipates the prophetic critique in Hosea 2:8 and Ezekiel 28:4-5.*

¹Every commandment that I am giving you today you must carefully carry out, so that you may live, increase, and enter to take possession of the land that the LORD swore to your ancestors. ²Remember the entire journey that the LORD your God led you on these forty years through the wilderness — to humble you, to test you, and to discover what was in your heart: whether you would keep His commands or not. ³He humbled you and let you go hungry, then fed you with manna — something neither you nor your ancestors had ever encountered — to teach you that a human being does not survive on food alone but on everything that comes from the mouth of the LORD. ⁴Your clothing did not wear out on you, and your feet did not swell during these forty years. ⁵Know deep in your heart that just as a father disciplines his son, the LORD your God has been disciplining you. ⁶So keep the commands of the LORD your God by walking in His ways and holding Him in reverent awe. ⁷For the LORD your God is bringing you into a good land — a land of flowing streams, springs, and underground waters bursting out in valleys and hills, ⁸A land of wheat and barley, grapevines, fig trees, and pomegranates — a land of olive oil and date honey, ⁹A land where you will eat food without any shortage — you will lack nothing in it. A land whose rocks contain iron and from whose hills you can mine copper. ¹⁰When you have eaten and are satisfied, you must bless the LORD your God for the good land He has given you. ¹¹Be careful not to forget the LORD your God by failing to keep His commands, His regulations, and His statutes that I am giving you today. ¹²When you have eaten and are satisfied, and have built fine houses and settled in them, ¹³And when your cattle and flocks have increased, your silver and gold have accumulated, and everything you own has multiplied — ¹⁴Then your heart will become arrogant and you will forget the LORD your God who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the slave house — ¹⁵The One who led you through that vast and terrifying wilderness — with its venomous snakes, scorpions, and parched ground where there was no water — who brought water for you out of solid rock, ¹⁶The One who fed you manna in the wilderness, something your ancestors never knew — in order to humble you and test you, so that ultimately He could do good for you. ¹⁷And you say to yourself, 'My own strength and the power of my own hands produced this wealth for me' — ¹⁸Instead, remember the LORD your God, because it is He who gives you the ability to produce wealth — in order to uphold His covenant that He swore to your ancestors, as it stands today. ¹⁹But if you do forget the LORD your God entirely and go after other gods, serving and bowing down to them — I solemnly warn you today that you will certainly be destroyed. ²⁰Like the nations that the LORD is destroying ahead of you, so will you yourselves perish — because you would not listen to the voice of the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The singular kol-hammitvah ('every commandment' — the whole commandment as a unity) gives way to the plural tishmerun ('you all shall guard'), addressing the collective nation. The purpose chain — lema'an tichyun urevitem uva'tem virishtem ('so that you may live, multiply, enter, and possess') — lays out four sequential outcomes of obedience. Life itself depends on obedience; the promised land is not an unconditional gift but a covenant outcome.
2. The command vezakharta ('and you shall remember') opens the chapter's central theme: memory as spiritual discipline. Three divine purposes for the wilderness are listed: lema'an annotekha ('to humble you'), lenassotekha ('to test you'), and lada'at ('to know'). The verb anan ('to humble, afflict') implies deprivation that reveals dependency. The verb nasah ('to test, prove') frames the wilderness as a crucible. God's 'knowing' (lada'at) is not acquiring information but exposing character — the wilderness strips away pretense.
3. The sequence is pedagogical: vay'annekha ('He humbled you'), vayar'ivekha ('He let you go hungry'), vaya'akhilka et-hamman ('He fed you the manna'). God created the problem (hunger) and the unprecedented solution (manna) to teach a lesson about dependence. The manna was asher lo-yadata velo yade'un avotekha ('which you did not know and your ancestors did not know') — completely outside human experience or tradition. The climactic principle lo al-hallechem levaddo yichyeh ha'adam ki al-kol-motsa fi-YHWH ('not on bread alone does a person live but on everything proceeding from the LORD's mouth') redefines sustenance: life comes from God's word, not from grain.
4. Two mundane miracles demonstrate God's comprehensive care: simlatkha lo valetah ('your garment did not wear out') and raglekha lo batseqah ('your foot did not swell'). Forty years of desert walking should have destroyed both fabric and flesh. The verb batseqah ('swell') suggests the swelling from long marches on harsh terrain. These quiet, daily miracles are easily overlooked — precisely the kind of provision that prosperity might cause Israel to forget.
5. The phrase veyadata im-levavekha ('know with your heart') demands not intellectual acknowledgment but deep internal conviction. The father-son analogy — ka'asher yeyasser ish et-beno ('as a man disciplines his son') — reframes the wilderness hardships as parental love, not punishment. The verb yassar ('discipline, instruct, correct') carries both correction and education; the wilderness was school, not prison. This is the theological lens for interpreting suffering: it reveals a Father's purpose, not an enemy's cruelty.
6. The conclusion veshamarta ('so guard') flows from the father-son analogy: a well-disciplined child walks in the parent's path. The phrase lalekhet bidrakhav ('to walk in His ways') presents obedience as a journey, not a static achievement. The verb leyir'ah ('to fear, revere') is not terror but reverential awe — the posture of a son who knows his father's power and love simultaneously.
7. The description of the promised land begins with water — the most precious resource for a people emerging from desert wandering. Three water sources are named: nachalei mayim ('flowing streams'), ayannot ('springs'), and tehomot ('deep underground waters'). The verb yots'im ('going out, bursting forth') presents water as actively emerging from the landscape — baviq'ah uvahar ('in the valley and in the hill') — covering both lowland and highland. After forty years of miraculous water from rock, the land itself will provide naturally.
8. The seven species (shiv'at haminim) define the agricultural identity of the promised land: chittah ('wheat'), se'orah ('barley'), gefen ('grapevine'), te'enah ('fig tree'), rimmon ('pomegranate'), zeit shemen ('oil olive'), and devash ('honey' — likely date syrup rather than bee honey). These seven became the basis of the land's economy and ritual offerings. They represent comprehensive agricultural abundance: grain staples, fruit trees, oil, and sweetener.
9. The phrase lo vemiskhenut tokhal-bah lechem ('not in poverty will you eat bread in it') contrasts sharply with the wilderness deprivation. The absolute statement lo-tehsar kol bah ('you will not lack anything in it') promises total sufficiency. The mineral wealth — avaneih varzel ('its stones are iron') and umeharareih tachshov nechoshet ('from its hills you will quarry copper') — extends beyond agriculture to industrial capacity. Archaeological evidence confirms copper mining in the Arabah region.
10. The sequence ve'akhalta vesava'ta uverakhta ('you will eat, be satisfied, and bless') is the scriptural basis for the Jewish practice of birkat hamazon (grace after meals). Satisfaction (sava') is positioned between consumption and worship — the full stomach should trigger gratitude, not complacency. The command to bless God al-ha'arets hattovah ('for the good land') anchors thanksgiving in the specific gift of the land, preventing abstracted or generic praise.
11. The warning hishamer lekha ('guard yourself') marks a pivotal shift from promise to peril. Forgetting God (pen-tishkach) is not absent-mindedness but practical neglect: it manifests as levilti shemor ('not keeping') His laws. Moses identifies the mechanism of apostasy: it begins not with active rebellion but with passive forgetting. Prosperity is the danger zone — the following verses trace the path from satisfaction to self-sufficiency to forgetting God.
12. The progression of prosperity begins: pen-tokhal vesava'ta ('lest you eat and be satisfied') — the very satisfaction commanded in verse 10 now becomes a danger. The phrase uvattim tovim tivneh veyashvta ('and good houses you will build and dwell in') moves from sustenance to shelter. After manna and tents, permanent houses represent the ultimate transition from wandering to settlement. Each blessing carries the seed of temptation to self-reliance.
13. The threefold repetition of the root ravah ('to multiply, increase') — yirbyun, yirbeh-llakh, yirbeh — creates a crescendo of accumulation: livestock, precious metals, and finally kol asher-lekha ('everything belonging to you'). The word order mirrors the progression of wealth: from pastoral (herds and flocks) to monetary (silver and gold) to total assets. This is the exact scenario that breeds amnesia about God.

14. The verb *ram* ('to be high, exalted') applied to the heart (*veram levavekha*) means arrogance — a heart that elevates itself above its actual station. Pride is the hinge between prosperity and apostasy: a lifted heart forgets its former lowliness. The exodus reminder — *hammotsi'akha me'erets mitsrayim mibbeit avadim* ('the one who brought you out from the land of Egypt, from the house of slaves') — is a shock therapy for arrogance: you were slaves. Everything you have is rescue, not achievement.
15. The wilderness is described as *haggadol vehanora* ('the great and terrifying') — a place of primal danger. Three specific threats are catalogued: *nachash saraf* ('fiery serpent' — the burning-bite snake), *aqrav* ('scorpion'), and *tsimma'on* ('drought, thirst'). Against these mortal dangers, God provided water from *tsur hachallamish* ('the rock of flint') — the hardest, most unpromising stone. The contrast between absolute desolation and miraculous provision is the core argument against self-reliance.
16. The manna returns as evidence of divine care: *hamma'akhilkha man* ('the One feeding you manna'). The double purpose — *lema'an annotekha ulema'an nassotekha* ('to humble you and to test you') — reveals that hardship and provision were simultaneous. The final phrase *leheitvekha be'acharitekha* ('to do you good at your end/future') provides the theological key: all wilderness discipline was prospective, aimed at a future flourishing. Present suffering serves future blessing — the entire wilderness was not detour but preparation.
17. Moses quotes the internal monologue of arrogance: *ve'amarta bilvavekha* ('you will say in your heart'). The twin boasts — *kochi* ('my strength') and *otsem yadi* ('the might of my hand') — claim personal credit for covenant blessings. The word *chayil* ('wealth, strength, power, army') covers all forms of success. This verse captures the theology of self-made prosperity — the most dangerous heresy in a land of abundance, because it sounds reasonable.
18. The corrective is not 'you did nothing' but 'He gave you the capacity': *hu hanoten lekha koach la'asot chayil* ('He is the one giving you strength to produce wealth'). Human effort is real but derivative — the power behind it is God's gift. The ultimate purpose of wealth is covenantal: *lema'an haqim et-berito* ('in order to establish His covenant'). Prosperity is not an end in itself but evidence that God is keeping His ancestral promises. Wealth rightly understood is a covenant sign, not a personal achievement.
19. The infinitive absolute *shakhoach tishkach* ('forgetting you will forget') intensifies the warning: this is not momentary lapse but total amnesia. The progression — *vehalakhta acharei elohim acherim* ('you will walk after other gods'), *va'avadtam* ('and serve them'), *vehishtachavita lahem* ('and bow down to them') — traces the path from distraction to devotion to worship. Moses's response is judicial: *ha'idoti vakhem* ('I testify against you') — he becomes a witness in a future covenant lawsuit. The final infinitive absolute *avod tovedu* ('perishing you will perish') matches the intensity of the forgetting: total forgetting leads to total destruction.
20. The chapter's devastating conclusion draws a direct parallel: *kaggoyim asher YHWH ma'avid mippeneikhem ken tovedu* ('like the nations the LORD is destroying before you, so you will perish'). Election provides no exemption from judgment — Israel under covenant disobedience faces the identical fate as the Canaanites. The word *egev* ('because, on account of') — the same word that opened verse 12 with promise — now introduces the cause of destruction: *lo tishme'un beqol YHWH* ('you will not listen to the voice of the LORD'). The chapter comes full circle: listening brings life (v 1), not listening brings the same annihilation God visits on the nations.

9

Summary: *Moses dismantles any illusion that Israel deserves the land — they are not entering because of their righteousness but because of the nations' wickedness and God's promise. He recounts the golden calf disaster as proof.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase *am qesheh-oref* ('stiff-necked people,' v. 6) is repeated three times in this chapter. Moses does not flatter the audience. The golden calf account (vv. 8-21) retells Exodus 32 as a direct address: 'you provoked the LORD to anger.' Moses's forty-day intercession (v. 18) — lying prostrate, not eating or drinking — is presented as the only reason Israel survived its own rebellion.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *hashchit* (v. 12, 'acted corruptly') is the same verb used for the generation of the flood (Genesis 6:12). We preserved the exact parallel. The phrase *etsba Elohim* (v. 10, 'finger of God') echoes Exodus 8:19 and 31:18 — God's direct, unmediated action. The 'finger' anthropomorphism resists literalism and metaphor equally.*

Connections: *The golden calf narrative parallels Exodus 32 with Deuteronomic emphasis on Moses's mediation. The 'stiff-necked' accusation echoes Exodus 33:3-5. Moses's intercessory posture anticipates his role as paradigm for prophetic intercession (Jeremiah 15:1, Psalm 106:23). The destruction of the calf (v. 21) matches Exodus 32:20 detail for detail.*

¶Listen, Israel! You are about to cross the Jordan today to dispossess nations larger and more powerful than you, with cities that are huge and fortified to the sky. ¶A people tall and powerful — the descendants of the Anakim, whom you know about

and have heard it said: 'Who can stand up against the sons of Anak?' ³Recognize today that the LORD your God is the One crossing over ahead of you as a consuming fire. He will destroy them and He will subdue them before you, so that you can drive them out and annihilate them quickly, just as the LORD promised you. ⁴Do not say to yourself after the LORD your God has driven them out ahead of you, 'It is because of my righteousness that the LORD brought me in to possess this land.' Rather, it is because of the wickedness of these nations that the LORD is driving them out before you. ⁵It is not because of your righteousness or the integrity of your heart that you are going in to possess their land. Rather, it is because of the wickedness of these nations that the LORD your God is driving them out ahead of you, and in order to fulfill the promise that the LORD swore to your ancestors — to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. ⁶Understand clearly: it is not because of your righteousness that the LORD your God is giving you this good land to possess — for you are a stubborn people. ⁷Remember — do not forget — how you provoked the LORD your God to fury in the wilderness. From the day you left the land of Egypt until your arrival at this place, you have been in rebellion against the LORD. ⁸Even at Horeb you provoked the LORD to such fury that He was ready to destroy you. ⁹When I went up the mountain to receive the stone tablets — the tablets of the covenant that the LORD had made with you — I stayed on the mountain forty days and forty nights, eating no food and drinking no water. ¹⁰The LORD gave me the two stone tablets inscribed by the finger of God, and on them were all the words that the LORD had spoken to you on the mountain from within the fire on the day of the assembly. ¹¹At the end of the forty days and forty nights, the LORD gave me the two stone tablets — the covenant tablets. ¹²Then the LORD said to me, 'Get up! Go down from here quickly, because your people whom you brought out of Egypt have acted corruptly. They have already turned aside from the path I commanded them and have made themselves a cast idol.' ¹³The LORD also said to me, 'I have observed this people, and they are indeed a stubborn people. ¹⁴Leave Me alone so I can destroy them and erase their name from under heaven. Then I will make you into a nation more powerful and numerous than they are.' ¹⁵I turned and came down from the mountain while the mountain was ablaze with fire, carrying the two covenant tablets in my hands. ¹⁶I looked, and there it was — you had sinned against the LORD your God by making yourselves a cast metal calf. You had already turned aside from the path that the LORD had commanded you. ¹⁷I seized the two tablets and hurled them from my hands, smashing them before your eyes. ¹⁸Then I threw myself down before the LORD as before — forty days and forty nights without eating food or drinking water — because of all your sin in doing what was evil in the LORD's sight and provoking Him. ¹⁹For I was terrified of the fierce anger and burning wrath that the LORD had directed at you — enough to destroy you. But the LORD listened to me that time as well. ²⁰The LORD was also furious enough with Aaron to destroy him, so I prayed for Aaron too at that time. ²¹I took that sinful thing you had made — the calf — and burned it in fire, then crushed it and ground it thoroughly until it was fine as dust, and threw the dust into the stream flowing down from the mountain. ²²At Taberah, at Massah, and at Kibroth-hattaavah, you kept provoking the LORD to fury. ²³And when the LORD sent you from Kadesh-barnea, saying, 'Go up and take possession of the land I have given you,' you defied the command of the LORD your God — you did not trust Him and would not listen to His voice. ²⁴You have been in rebellion against the LORD from the day I first knew you. ²⁵So I threw myself down before the LORD for those forty days and forty nights that I lay prostrate, because the LORD had declared He would destroy you. ²⁶I prayed to the LORD and said, 'Sovereign LORD, do not destroy Your people, Your own inheritance, whom You ransomed through Your greatness and brought out of Egypt with a powerful hand. ²⁷Remember Your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Do not focus on the stubbornness of this people, or on their wickedness and sin. ²⁸Otherwise the people in the land from which You brought us will say, "Because the LORD was unable to bring them into the land He promised them, and because He hated them, He brought them out to kill them in the wilderness." ²⁹Yet they are Your people and Your inheritance, whom You brought out by Your great power and Your outstretched arm.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The call shema Yisra'el ('Listen, Israel!') echoes the Shema of 6:4 but here introduces a military briefing. The phrase *atah over hayyom et-haYarden* ('you are crossing the Jordan today') uses 'today' rhetorically — the crossing is imminent, not literally that day. The description of the enemies — *goyim gedolim va'atsumim mimmekha* ('nations greater and mightier than you') — and their cities — *uvturot bashamayim* ('fortified to the heavens') — is deliberately intimidating. Moses heightens the impossibility to set up God as the decisive factor.

2. The Anakim (benei Anaqim) were legendary giants whose reputation terrified the original spies (Numbers 13:28, 33). Moses quotes the popular saying *mi yityatsev lifnei benei Anaq* ('who can stand before the sons of Anak?') — a rhetorical question expecting the answer 'no one.' The verbs *yadata* ('you know') and *shamata* ('you have heard') acknowledge that the fear is based on real intelligence, not rumor. Moses does not deny the threat; he redirects the response from fear to faith.
3. The emphatic triple *hu* ('He... He... He') drives the point home: YHWH Elohekha *hu-ha'* over *lefanekha* ('the LORD your God — He is the one crossing before you'). God goes first. The title *esh okhlah* ('consuming fire') — drawn from the Sinai theophany (4:24) — transforms the terrifying God of the mountain into a weapon deployed on Israel's behalf. Two verbs describe God's work (*yashmid*, 'destroy'; *yakhni'em*, 'subdue'), then two describe Israel's role (*vehorashtam*, 'dispossess'; *veha'avadtam*, 'annihilate'). God breaks the enemy; Israel occupies the result.
4. Moses preemptively dismantles theological self-congratulation: *al-tomar bilvavekha* ('do not say in your heart'). The false conclusion — *betsidqati hevi'ani YHWH* ('because of my righteousness the LORD brought me in') — confuses consequence with cause. Israel's entry is real but the reason is *uvrishah'at haggoyim ha'ellesh* ('because of the wickedness of these nations'). The nations' sin, not Israel's virtue, is the operative factor. This verse begins the chapter's sustained assault on Israel's moral self-assessment.
5. Moses doubles down with expanded negation: *lo betsidqatekha uveyosher levavekha* ('not because of your righteousness or the uprightness of your heart'). Two positive attributes are denied as causes. The true causes are restated: the nations' wickedness (*rishah'at haggoyim*) and God's oath-keeping (*ulema'an haqim et-haddavar asher nishba*). The patriarchal names — *le'Avraham leYitschaq ule'Ya'aqov* — anchor the promise in irrevocable history. Israel enters the land not as righteous conquerors but as recipients of ancestral grace.
6. The third repetition of *lo betsidqatekha* ('not because of your righteousness') hammers the point beyond misunderstanding. The reason is now given from Israel's side: *ki am-qesheh-oref attah* ('because you are a stiff-necked people'). The metaphor *qesheh-oref* ('hard of neck') comes from oxen that refuse the yoke — they stiffen their necks against the driver's direction. Israel is not merely undeserving; they are actively resistant. This devastating self-assessment introduces the historical evidence that follows.
7. The double command *zekhor al-tishkach* ('remember — do not forget') creates an imperative wall against amnesia. The verb *hiqtsafta* ('you provoked to wrath') uses the *hiphil* — Israel caused God's anger. The temporal scope is devastating: *lemin-hayyom asher-yatsata me'erets mitsrayim ad-bo'akhem ad-hamaqom hazzeh* ('from the day you left Egypt until you arrived at this place') — rebellion was not occasional but continuous. The participle *mamrim* ('rebellious ones') characterizes their identity: rebellion was not what they did but who they were.
8. The specific citation *uveChorev* ('and at Horeb/Sinai') is devastating because Horeb was the place of covenant — rebellion occurred at the very site of commitment. The verb *vayit'annaf* ('He became furious') is an intensified form of anger. The infinitive *lehashsid etkhem* ('to destroy you') reveals how close Israel came to annihilation. At the very mountain where they received the covenant, they provoked the covenant God to the point of dissolution.
9. Moses shifts to first-person memoir: *ba'aloti haharah* ('when I went up the mountain'). The tablets are identified as *luchot ha'avanim luchot habberit* ('stone tablets, covenant tablets') — their material and theological identity. The forty-day fast — *lechem lo akhalti umayim lo shatiti* ('bread I did not eat and water I did not drink') — echoes the wilderness deprivation of chapter 8 but now applied to Moses personally. His sustained divine encounter required complete abstinence from natural sustenance.
10. The phrase *ketuvim be'etsba Elohim* ('written by the finger of God') is one of Scripture's most striking anthropomorphisms — God personally inscribed the tablets without human mediation. The content is identified as *kekhol-haddevarim asher dibber YHWH* ('according to all the words the LORD spoke') — the tablets captured the Sinai speech in permanent form. The phrase *beyom haqqahal* ('on the day of the assembly') establishes the corporate, public nature of the revelation — these were not private communications to Moses but words spoken to the gathered nation.
11. The phrase *miqqets arba'im yom ve'arba'im lailah* ('at the end of forty days and forty nights') marks the completion of Moses's mountaintop fast. The tablets are again called *luchot habberit* ('covenant tablets'), reinforcing that these are legal documents of a treaty between God and Israel. The repetition of the delivery moment builds suspense: the reader knows what awaits below — the golden calf. The solemnity of the divine gift is about to collide with human betrayal.
12. God's command is urgent: *qum red maher mizzeh* ('get up, go down quickly from here'). The devastating phrase *ammekha asher hotseta mimmitsrayim* ('your people whom you brought out of Egypt') disowns Israel — God calls them 'your people,' attributing them to Moses. The verb *shichet* ('has acted corruptly') indicates total moral corruption. The word *maher* ('quickly') stings — they turned aside *saru maher* ('quickly') from the very path just established. The *massekchah* ('cast/molten image') is the golden calf, identified as the specific corruption.
13. God's verdict — *ra'iti et-ha'am hazzeh* ('I have seen this people') — uses the perfective: this is not first observation but confirmed judgment. The assessment *wehinneh am-qesheh-oref hu* ('and behold, a stiff-necked people it is') echoes Moses's earlier label (v 6) but now from God's own mouth. The demonstrative *hazzeh* ('this') distances God from the people — they are 'this people,' not 'My people.' The assessment is clinical and devastating.
14. The command *heref mimmeni* ('let go of Me, leave Me alone') is extraordinary — it implies Moses is already interceding, holding God back. God proposes total annihilation: *ve'ashmidem* ('I will destroy them'), *ve'emcheh et-shemam* ('I will wipe out their name'). The offer to Moses — *ve'e'eseh otkha legoy-atsum varav mimmenu* ('I will make you into a greater and more numerous nation') — recapitulates the Abrahamic promise redirected through Moses alone. This is the ultimate test of Moses's character: personal dynasty or intercessory faithfulness.
15. The scene is cinematic: *va'efer va'ered min-hahar* ('I turned and descended from the mountain'). The detail *vehahar bo'er ba'esh* ('and the mountain was burning with fire') sustains the Sinai theophany as backdrop — the fire of God's presence still blazes while below, the people have already abandoned Him. Moses carries the covenant tablets *ush'nei luchot habberit al shtei yadai* ('the two covenant tablets in my two hands') — the document of the treaty about to be shattered by the treaty-breaking party.

16. Moses's eyewitness account — va'ereh ('and I saw') — makes the betrayal personal. The phrase wehinneh chatattem ('and behold, you had sinned') uses hinneh for dramatic shock: the scene was worse than he imagined. The egel massekhah ('cast metal calf') was a molten idol, likely modeled on Egyptian or Canaanite bull iconography. The repeated phrase sartem maher ('you had turned aside quickly') stresses the speed of the apostasy — the ink on the covenant was barely dry.
17. The verbs escalate in violence: va'etpos ('I seized'), va'ashlikhem ('I hurled them'), va'ashabbrem ('I smashed them'). This was not careless dropping but deliberate destruction — le'einekhem ('before your eyes') makes it a public demonstration. The shattering of the tablets was a legal act: in ancient Near Eastern treaty practice, destroying the treaty document declared the covenant annulled. Moses was proclaiming that Israel's breach had voided the agreement. God-inscribed tablets broken by human hands — the physical embodiment of covenant rupture.
18. Moses's second forty-day fast (va'etnappal, 'I fell prostrate') was intercessory, not receptive — karishonah ('as the first time') but for an entirely different purpose. The first fast received the covenant; the second pled for its survival. The phrase al kol-chattatekhem ('because of all your sins') makes Moses a vicarious sufferer — he fasts on behalf of their transgression. The Hebrew la'asot hara be'einei YHWH lehakh'iso ('to do the evil in the LORD's eyes, to provoke Him') categorizes the calf not as religious confusion but as deliberate provocation.
19. Moses admits fear: ki yagorti ('for I was terrified') — not of the nations but of God's own wrath. The paired terms ha'af vehachema ('the anger and the fury') represent the full spectrum of divine rage. The phrase asher qatsaf YHWH aleikhem lehashhmid etkhem ('with which the LORD raged against you to destroy you') reveals how close annihilation came. The relief — vayyishma YHWH elai ('the LORD listened to me') — is understated but monumental. The addition gam bappa'am hahi ('also at that time') implies this was not the only time Moses intervened to prevent destruction.
20. Aaron — the high priest, Moses's brother — was not exempt from divine judgment: hit'annaf YHWH me'od lehashhmido ('the LORD was furious enough to destroy him'). Aaron's guilt as the calf's fabricator (Exodus 32:2-4) required specific intercession: va'etpallel gam-be'ad Aharon ('I prayed also on behalf of Aaron'). The word gam ('also') suggests Aaron's case was supplementary to the national intercession — his priestly role made his participation in idolatry particularly egregious.
21. Moses calls the calf chattatkhem ('your sin') — the idol is identified with the transgression itself. The destruction is methodical and total: va'esrof oto ba'esh ('I burned it in fire'), va'ekhot oto tachon hetev ('I crushed it, grinding thoroughly'), ad asher-da'q le'afar ('until it was fine as dust'), va'ashhlikh et-afaro el-hannachal ('I threw its dust into the stream'). Each step makes the idol more utterly nothing. The stream hayyored min-hahar ('descending from the mountain') carries the idol's remains away from the sacred precinct — the mountain that received the covenant now flushes away its violation.
22. Three place names function as a catalogue of rebellion, each encoding its own judgment narrative: Tav'erah ('burning' — Numbers 11:1-3, where God's fire consumed the edges of the camp), Massah ('testing' — Exodus 17:7, where Israel tested God at the water crisis), and Qivrot haTa'avah ('graves of craving' — Numbers 11:34, where those who craved meat died of surfeit). The very geography of the wilderness is a map of Israel's failures. The participle maqttsifim ('provoking') casts the rebellion as ongoing, habitual.
23. Kadesh-barnea was the ultimate failure point — the command alu ureshu et-ha'arets ('go up and possess the land') was direct and clear. The threefold response was devastating: vattamru et-pi YHWH ('you defied the mouth of the LORD' — the verb marah means active rebellion, not mere disobedience), velo he'emantem lo ('you did not trust Him'), velo shema'tem beqolo ('you did not listen to His voice'). Rebellion, unbelief, and deafness — the trifecta of covenant failure. This event condemned an entire generation to death in the wilderness.
24. Moses's devastating summary: mamrim heyitem im-YHWH ('rebellious you have been with the LORD'). The participle mamrim characterizes their permanent condition. The phrase miYom da'ti etkhem ('from the day I knew you') is deeply personal — from the moment of Moses's relationship with this people, rebellion has been their defining trait. This is not historical summary but pastoral lament: the leader who interceded for them acknowledges their unchanging nature.
25. Moses returns to the intercession: va'etnappal lifnei YHWH ('I threw myself prostrate before the LORD'). The phrase asher hitnappallti ('that I prostrated myself') uses the reflexive hitpael — Moses made himself fall, an act of total self-abasement. The cause — ki-amar YHWH lehashhmido etkhem ('because the LORD had said to destroy you') — reveals that Moses's forty-day fast was a sustained counter-argument to a divine death sentence. The entire period was one continuous act of intercession against annihilation.
26. Moses's prayer begins with reclaiming the people for God: al-tashchet ammekha venachalatekha ('do not destroy Your people and Your inheritance'). Where God said 'your people' (v 12), Moses counters with 'Your people' — insisting on God's ownership. The term nachalatekha ('Your inheritance') deepens the claim: Israel is not merely God's people but His prized possession, His estate. The prayer's logic is covenantal: asher padita begodlekha ('whom You ransomed through Your greatness') — destroying Israel would mean undoing His own redemptive work.
27. Moses appeals to patriarchal covenant: zekhor la'avadekha ('remember Your servants') invokes the binding oaths God made to the ancestors. The plea al-tenen ('do not look toward, do not focus on') asks God to shift His gaze from three attributes of the people — qeshi ha'am hazzeh ('the stubbornness of this people'), rishu ('its wickedness'), and chattato ('its sin'). Moses does not deny the charges but asks God to weigh covenant promises against present failures. The strategy is not defense but appeal to a higher obligation.
28. Moses's boldest argument — pen-yomeru ha'arets ('lest the land/people say') — appeals to God's reputation. If Israel is destroyed, Egypt will draw two devastating conclusions: mibli yekholet YHWH ('because of the LORD's inability') — God was too weak to finish what He started — and umissin'ato otam ('because of His hatred for them') — the exodus was not love but a cruel trick to murder Israel in the desert. Moses weaponizes divine honor: destroying Israel would make God look either impotent or malicious. This is intercessory genius — finding leverage even in God's own character.

29. Moses closes with the decisive claim: *vehem ammekha venachalatekha* ('yet they are Your people and Your inheritance'). The emphatic *vehem* ('yet they') concedes everything negative said about Israel and still insists on God's ownership. The final phrase *asher hotseta bekhochakha haggadol uvizro'akha hannettuyah* ('whom You brought out by Your great power and Your outstretched arm') reminds God that He has already invested too much to abandon them. The prayer's logic is complete: these rebels are Yours, Your reputation is at stake, and Your prior investment demands continuation. The chapter that began demolishing Israel's self-righteousness ends with Moses's desperate, brilliant intercession preserving them despite themselves.

10

Summary: *God replaces the broken tablets, the ark is built to house them, and Moses calls Israel to circumcise their hearts — because God, who shows no favoritism, loves the foreigner.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command 'circumcise the foreskin of your heart' (v. 16, orlat levavkhem) transforms a physical covenant sign into an internal spiritual reality. The juxtaposition is stunning: the God who owns heaven and earth (v. 14) chose your ancestors (v. 15) — therefore cut away your stubbornness. The description of God in vv. 17-18 is the most compressed theology in Deuteronomy: God of gods, Lord of lords, great, mighty, awesome, impartial, incorruptible, and the defender of orphans, widows, and foreigners.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase orlat levavkhem (v. 16) resists clean translation — 'foreskin of your heart' is the literal Hebrew, and 'circumcise your hearts' loses the visceral physicality. We rendered it 'circumcise your hearts' for readability and noted the fuller expression. The verb lo-yissa fanim (v. 17, 'does not lift faces') is the idiom for impartiality — we rendered it 'shows no favoritism.'*

Connections: *Heart circumcision recurs in 30:6 as God's future action and in Jeremiah 4:4 as prophetic demand. Paul takes up the concept in Romans 2:28-29. God's love for the foreigner (v. 18) grounds the repeated command to care for the ger throughout Deuteronomy (14:29, 24:17, 26:12-13). The ark narrative resumes from Exodus 37.*

¹At that time the LORD said to me, 'Carve out two stone tablets like the first ones, and come up to Me on the mountain. Also make a wooden chest. ²I will write on the tablets the same words that were on the first tablets — the ones you broke — and you are to place them in the chest.' ³So I made a chest of acacia wood and carved two stone tablets like the first ones, then went up the mountain with the two tablets in my hands. ⁴He inscribed on the tablets the same text as before — the Ten Words that the LORD had spoken to you on the mountain from within the fire on the day of the assembly. Then the LORD gave them to me. ⁵Then I turned and came down from the mountain and placed the tablets in the chest I had made, where they remain, just as the LORD commanded me. ⁶The Israelites traveled from Beeroth Bene-Jaakan to Moserah. There Aaron died and was buried, and his son Eleazar served as priest in his place. ⁷From there they traveled to Gudgodah, and from Gudgodah to Jotbathah, a land with flowing streams. ⁸At that time the LORD set apart the tribe of Levi to carry the ark of the LORD's covenant, to stand in the LORD's presence and serve Him, and to pronounce blessings in His name — as they do to this day. ⁹That is why Levi received no territorial share or inheritance with his brothers — the LORD Himself is his inheritance, just as the LORD your God told him. ¹⁰I remained on the mountain as I had the first time — forty days and forty nights — and the LORD listened to me on that occasion as well. The LORD chose not to destroy you. ¹¹Then the LORD said to me, 'Get up and lead the people on their journey, so they may enter and take possession of the land that I swore to their ancestors to give them.' ¹²So now, Israel, what does the LORD your God ask of you? Only this: to hold the LORD your God in reverent awe, to walk in all His ways, to love Him, and to serve the LORD your God with your whole heart and your whole being, ¹³And to keep the LORD's commands and statutes that I am giving you today — for your own good. ¹⁴Consider: to the LORD your God belong the heavens — even the highest heavens — the earth, and everything in it. ¹⁵Yet it was only to your ancestors that the LORD was drawn in love, and He chose their descendants after them — that is, you — out of all peoples, as is evident today. ¹⁶So circumcise your hearts and stop being so stubborn. ¹⁷For the LORD your God is the God above all gods and the Lord above all lords — the great, mighty, and awe-inspiring God who shows no favoritism and accepts no bribe. ¹⁸He secures justice for the orphan and the widow, and He loves the foreigner, providing them with food and clothing. ¹⁹So you

must love the foreigner, because you yourselves were foreigners in the land of Egypt. ²⁰The LORD your God you must revere. Him you must serve. To Him you must hold fast. By His name you must swear. ²¹He is your source of praise, and He is your God who has done these great and awesome things for you that your own eyes have witnessed. ²²Your ancestors went down to Egypt as just seventy people, and now the LORD your God has made you as numerous as the stars of heaven.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ba'et hahi* ('at that time') connects directly to the aftermath of the golden calf crisis in chapter 9. God's response to covenant rupture is covenant renewal: *pesol-lekha shnei-luchot avanim karishonim* ('carve for yourself two stone tablets like the first ones'). The verb *pasol* ('carve, hew') now falls to Moses — he must prepare the medium, though God will inscribe the content. The *aron ets* ('wooden chest/ark') is the container for the restored tablets, ensuring their permanent preservation.
2. God's promise *ve'ekhtov* ('I will write') reasserts divine authorship — the replacement tablets carry the same authority as the originals. The phrase *asher shibarta* ('which you broke') is not accusation but factual acknowledgment: Moses's act of covenant annulment is referenced without condemnation. The content is identical: *et-haddevarim asher hayu al-halluchot harishonim* ('the words that were on the first tablets'). Grace does not alter the standard — the same covenant with the same demands is being restored.
3. Moses's obedience mirrors God's instructions precisely: *va'a'as aron atsei shittim* ('I made a chest of acacia wood'). Acacia (*shittah*) was the desert hardwood used throughout the tabernacle construction — durable, rot-resistant, and available in the Sinai wilderness. The detail *ushnei halluchot beyadi* ('the two tablets in my hand') parallels the first ascent (9:15) but this time with hope rather than tragedy. Moses climbs carrying blank tablets toward restoration.
4. The phrase *kammikhtav harishon* ('like the first writing') confirms exact replication. The content is identified as *aseret haddevarim* ('the ten words/commandments') — the only place in Deuteronomy using this specific term. The context is again emphasized: *asher dibber YHWH aleikhem bahar mittokh ha'esh beyom haqqahal* ('which the LORD spoke to you on the mountain from within the fire on the day of the assembly'). The fire, the mountain, and the gathered people — the same authoritative context validates the renewed tablets.
5. The second descent — *va'efen va'ered min-hahar* ('I turned and came down from the mountain') — contrasts sharply with the first (9:15). This time Moses descends with restored tablets, not toward a golden calf but toward covenant renewal. The statement *vayiyhu sham* ('and they were there' — they remain there) is written from the perspective of Moses's audience: the tablets are still in the ark at the time of this speech. The covenant, despite everything, endures: *ka'asher tsivvani YHWH* ('just as the LORD commanded me').
6. This parenthetical itinerary notice — apparently interrupting the narrative — records Aaron's death and priestly succession. The location names differ from Numbers 33:31-38 (which places Aaron's death at Mount Hor), suggesting either variant traditions or different stages of the same journey. The key theological point is succession: *vaykhahhen El'azar beno tachtav* ('Eleazar his son served as priest in his place'). Despite Aaron's near-destruction for the calf incident (9:20), the priesthood survived through his lineage — another instance of grace preserving an institution despite human failure.
7. The itinerary continues: *Gudgodah* and *Yotvatah* are wilderness stations. The detail *erets nachalei mayim* ('a land of flowing streams') about *Jotbathah* is striking — after the parched wilderness, even a minor oasis with permanent water deserves special mention. This brief geographic note anticipates the promised land's water abundance described in 8:7 and hints that God's provision was already becoming more generous as they neared their destination.
8. The verb *hivdil* ('separated, set apart') uses the same root as the creation separations in Genesis 1 — God distinguishes Levi from the other tribes for sacred function. Three duties define their role: *la'set et-aron berit-YHWH* ('to carry the ark of the LORD's covenant'), *la'amod lifnei YHWH lesharto* ('to stand before the LORD to minister to Him'), and *ulevarekh bishmo* ('to bless in His name'). These span physical service (carrying), liturgical service (standing in the presence), and mediatorial service (conveying blessing). The phrase *ad hayom hazzeh* ('to this day') confirms the arrangement's permanence.
9. The consequence of sacred service is economic disinheritance: *lo-hayah leLevi cheleq venachalah im-echav* ('Levi had no portion or inheritance with his brothers'). But the loss is exchanged for a greater gain: *YHWH hu nachalato* ('the LORD — He is his inheritance'). This stunning declaration makes God Himself the Levites' estate. Where other tribes receive land, Levi receives the LORD. The phrase *ka'asher dibber YHWH* ('as the LORD spoke') traces this arrangement to divine decree, not human choice.
10. Moses summarizes the successful intercession: *vayyishma YHWH elai gam bappa'am hahi* ('the LORD listened to me also at that time'). The phrase *lo-avah YHWH hashchitekha* ('the LORD was not willing to destroy you') uses *avah* ('to be willing, consent') — God chose not to destroy, implying the decision was active, not passive. Destruction was on the table; mercy won. The entire parenthetical section (vv 6-10) demonstrates that after the golden calf crisis, God's response was not abandonment but reorganization: renewed tablets, priestly succession, and intercessory preservation.
11. God's command *qum lekh lemassa lifnei ha'am* ('get up, go on the journey before the people') resumes the march toward the promised land. The crisis is resolved; the mission continues. The purpose — *veyavo'u veyireshu et-ha'arets* ('so they may enter and possess the land') — remains unchanged from its original statement. The oath *asher-nishba'ti la'avotam* ('which I swore to their ancestors') is the unbreakable foundation: despite Israel's failures, the patriarchal promise stands. The paragraph break (*parashah petuchah*) marks the end of the golden calf narrative and the transition to what God truly requires.

12. The rhetorical question *ve'attah Yisra'el mah YHWH Elohekha sho'el me'immakh* ('and now, Israel, what does the LORD your God ask from you?') introduces one of Deuteronomy's most celebrated passages. The answer — *ki im* ('only this') — presents God's demands as surprisingly simple despite their depth. Five requirements unfold: *leyir'ah* ('to revere'), *lalekhet bekhlo-derakhav* ('to walk in all His ways'), *ule'ahavah oto* ('to love Him'), *vela'avod* ('to serve'), and *bekhol-levavekha uvkhol-nafshekha* ('with your whole heart and whole being'). The rabbis noted the apparent modesty — 'Is reverence a small thing?' (Berakhot 33b) — yet for Moses, compared to the ritual complexity of the other nations' religions, YHWH's demands are elegantly focused.
13. The final phrase *letov lakh* ('for your good') is the theological punchline: God's commands are not arbitrary impositions but beneficial directives. The law is designed for Israel's flourishing. This frames obedience as enlightened self-interest — what God demands is what is best for the person obeying. The commandments are not burdens but blessings in prescriptive form.
14. The exclamation *hen* ('look, consider!') introduces a breathtaking claim of divine sovereignty. The phrase *hashamayim ushemei hashamayim* ('the heavens and the heavens of the heavens') is a Hebrew superlative — the highest conceivable realm. Combined with *ha'arets vekhol-asher-bah* ('the earth and everything in it'), the totality of creation is claimed as God's possession. This cosmic ownership statement sets up the staggering contrast of verse 15: the God who owns everything chose Israel.
15. The word *raq* ('only, yet') creates the contrast: the God who owns everything focused His affection on one family. The verb *chashaq* ('was drawn to, desired, was attached to') reappears from 7:7 — divine election as passionate attachment, not administrative selection. The phrase *vayyivchar bezar'am achareihem bakhem* ('He chose their offspring after them — you') traces the line from patriarchal love to present-day Israel. The election is particular, personal, and current: *kayyom hazzeh* ('as this day') — not past sentiment but present reality.
16. The command *umaltem et orlat levavkhem* ('circumcise the foreskin of your hearts') is one of the Torah's most radical metaphors. Physical circumcision — the sign of the Abrahamic covenant — is internalized: the 'foreskin' (*orlah*) covering the heart must be removed to expose it to God. The heart's hardened outer layer, like *qesheh-oref* ('stiff-neckedness'), blocks covenant receptivity. The command *ve'orpekhem lo taqshu od* ('your neck you shall not stiffen anymore') uses *od* ('anymore') — implying that past stubbornness is acknowledged but must cease. Jeremiah 4:4 and Deuteronomy 30:6 will develop this metaphor further.
17. The superlative titles *Elohei ha'elohim va'Adonei ha'adonim* ('God of gods and Lord of lords') do not affirm the existence of other deities but assert YHWH's absolute supremacy over any claimed power. Three adjectives — *haggadol haggibor vehanora* ('the great, the mighty, and the awesome') — became liturgically fixed in later Jewish prayer (the Amidah). Two judicial qualities define His character: *lo-yissa fanim* ('He does not lift faces' — shows no partiality based on status) and *velo yiqqach shochad* ('He does not take a bribe'). The God of cosmic power is also the God of incorruptible justice.
18. The cosmic God of verse 17 is now revealed as the champion of society's most vulnerable: *oseh mishpat yatom ve'almanah* ('executing justice for the orphan and widow'). The phrase *ve'ohav ger* ('and loving the foreigner') is extraordinary — the same love language (*ahav*) used for Israel's election (7:8) is now applied to the *ger*, the resident alien. God's provision is concrete: *latet lo lechem vesimlah* ('to give him food and clothing') — basic survival necessities. The God who owns heaven and earth concerns Himself with whether the immigrant has dinner and a coat.
19. The command *va'ahavtem et-hagger* ('you must love the foreigner') derives from Israel's own history: *ki-gerim heyitem be'erets Mitsrayim* ('because you were foreigners in the land of Egypt'). Empathy born of experience is the moral foundation: you know what it feels like to be powerless, alien, and dependent on others' goodwill. This is not abstract ethics but experiential ethics — suffering should produce compassion, not hardness. The command to love the *ger* appears more often in the Torah than almost any other ethical imperative.
20. Four terse commands define exclusive devotion: *tira* ('revere'), *ta'avod* ('serve'), *tidbaq* ('cling to'), and *tishave'a* ('swear by'). The emphatic word order — *et-YHWH Elohekha* ('the LORD your God' — placed first for emphasis) and *oto, uvo, uvishmo* ('Him, to Him, by His name') — allows no alternative object. The verb *davaq* ('cling, hold fast') is the same word used for marriage in Genesis 2:24 — the devotion demanded is as intimate and exclusive as the bond between husband and wife.
21. The declaration *hu tehillatekha* ('He is your praise') means God is both the object and the source of Israel's praise — their glory and reputation come from Him alone. The phrase *asher-asah ittekha et-haggadolot ve'et-hannoraot ha'eloh* ('who did with you these great and awesome things') appeals to eyewitness experience: *asher ra'u einekha* ('which your eyes have seen'). The argument from experience closes the chapter: you cannot deny what you personally witnessed.
22. The chapter closes with stunning numerical contrast: *beshev'im nefesh* ('with seventy souls') went down to Egypt — a single extended family. Now *samekha YHWH Elohekha kekhokh'vei hashamayim larov* ('the LORD your God has made you as numerous as the stars of heaven'). The fulfillment of the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:5) is complete: from seventy to a multitude beyond counting. The stars metaphor connects back to the cosmic God of verse 14 — the One who owns the highest heavens has multiplied His people to match the stars within them.

11

Summary: Moses urges love and obedience by contrasting Egypt's irrigation (human effort) with Canaan's rain (divine provision), then sets before Israel the choice between blessing on Mount Gerizim and curse on Mount Ebal.

What Makes This Remarkable: The land theology here is agricultural: Egypt's fields were watered 'by foot' from the Nile (v. 10), but Canaan drinks rain from heaven — making Israel permanently dependent on God's seasonal faithfulness. The early rain (yoreh) and late rain (malqosh) of verse 14 frame the growing season; without them, everything fails. The land is a theological instrument, not merely a gift.

Translation Friction: The phrase totafot (v. 18, 'emblems/frontlets') recurs from 6:8 with the same etymological uncertainty. The terms yoreh and malqosh (v. 14) are technical agricultural vocabulary — 'early rain' (October-November) and 'late rain' (March-April) are the closest English equivalents but lose the specificity of the Hebrew growing calendar.

Connections: The blessing-curse ceremony at Gerizim and Ebal (vv. 29-30) is executed in Joshua 8:30-35. The rain theology connects to 1 Kings 17-18, where Elijah's drought demonstrates exactly the covenantal consequence Deuteronomy warns about. Joel 2:23 promises restoration using the same yoreh/malqosh vocabulary.

¹You must love the LORD your God and keep His requirements — His statutes, regulations, and commands — at all times. ²Acknowledge today — for I am not speaking to your children who did not experience or witness the discipline of the LORD your God — His greatness, His powerful hand, and His outstretched arm, ³His signs and His deeds that He performed in the heart of Egypt against Pharaoh king of Egypt and against his entire country, ⁴What He did to the Egyptian army — to their horses and chariots — when He made the waters of the Sea of Reeds surge over them as they pursued you, and how the LORD destroyed them permanently, ⁵What He did for you in the wilderness until you arrived at this very place, ⁶What He did to Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab son of Reuben — how the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them along with their households, their tents, and every living thing that followed them, right in the middle of all Israel. ⁷For your own eyes have seen every great act that the LORD has performed. ⁸Therefore keep every commandment I am giving you today, so that you will be strong enough to enter and take possession of the land you are crossing over to possess, ⁹And so that you may live long in the land that the LORD swore to your ancestors to give to them and their descendants — a land flowing with milk and honey. ¹⁰For the land you are entering to possess is not like the land of Egypt that you left, where you sowed your seed and irrigated it by foot like a vegetable garden. ¹¹Rather, the land you are crossing into to possess is a land of hills and valleys that drinks water from the rain of heaven. ¹²It is a land that the LORD your God personally tends. The eyes of the LORD your God are continually on it, from the start of the year to the year's end. ¹³If you truly listen to My commands that I am giving you today — to love the LORD your God and serve Him with your whole heart and your whole being — ¹⁴Then I will send rain on your land at the right time — the early rain and the late rain — so that you can harvest your grain, new wine, and olive oil. ¹⁵I will provide grass in your fields for your livestock, and you will eat and be satisfied. ¹⁶Guard yourselves so that your hearts are not seduced, causing you to turn away and serve other gods and bow down to them. ¹⁷Then the LORD's anger will burn against you, and He will shut the sky so there is no rain, and the ground will not yield its produce, and you will quickly perish from the good land that the LORD is giving you. ¹⁸Place these words of Mine on your hearts and on your being. Bind them as a sign on your hand, and let them serve as emblems on your forehead. ¹⁹Teach them to your children by speaking about them when you sit at home and when you travel, when you lie down and when you get up. ²⁰Write them on the doorframes of your houses and on your gates, ²¹So that your days and your children's days in the land the LORD swore to give your ancestors may be as many as the days the heavens remain above the earth. ²²For if you carefully keep this entire commandment that I am giving you to carry out — loving the LORD your God, walking in all His ways, and holding fast to Him — ²³Then the LORD will drive out all these nations ahead of you, and you will dispossess nations larger and more powerful than yourselves. ²⁴Every place where the sole of your foot treads will be yours — from the wilderness to Lebanon, from the Euphrates River to the western sea will be your territory. ²⁵No one will be able to stand against you. The

LORD your God will impose the fear and dread of you on the entire land wherever you set foot, just as He promised you. ²⁶See — I am placing before you today a blessing and a curse. ²⁷The blessing — if you obey the commands of the LORD your God that I am giving you today. ²⁸And the curse — if you do not obey the commands of the LORD your God and turn from the path I am directing you on today by going after other gods that you have not known. ²⁹When the LORD your God brings you into the land you are entering to possess, you are to proclaim the blessing on Mount Gerizim and the curse on Mount Ebal. ³⁰Are they not across the Jordan, toward the west, in the territory of the Canaanites living in the Arabah, opposite Gilgal, near the oaks of Moreh? ³¹For you are about to cross the Jordan to enter and take possession of the land that the LORD your God is giving you. When you have taken possession and are settled in it, ³²You must carefully observe all the statutes and regulations that I am setting before you today.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening command *ve'ahavta et YHWH Elohekha* ('you must love the LORD your God') mirrors the Shema (6:5) and serves as the governing principle for all that follows. Love is not sentiment but expressed through *veshamarta mishmareto* ('keeping His charge/requirements'). The term *mishmeret* ('charge, requirement, watch') implies vigilant custody — guarding something entrusted to you. The four legal categories — *mishmeret*, *chuqqot*, *mishpatim*, *mitsvot* — represent the law's totality. The phrase *kol-hayyamim* ('all the days') demands unbroken, lifelong commitment.
2. Moses addresses the generation that personally experienced God's acts: *vide'tem hayyom* ('know today'). The parenthetical clarification *ki lo et-beneikhem* ('for not to your children') distinguishes eyewitnesses from future generations who will learn secondhand. The word *musar* ('discipline, instruction, correction') frames the exodus events as educational, not punitive — God's mighty acts were lessons, not mere spectacles. The formula *yado hachazaqah uzero'o hannetuyah* ('His powerful hand and outstretched arm') is the standard Deuteronomic description of exodus power.
3. The *ototav* ('His signs') and *ma'asav* ('His deeds') refer to the plagues — both as supernatural indicators (signs) and as divine interventions (deeds). The phrase *betokh Mitsrayim* ('in the midst/heart of Egypt') emphasizes that God operated within the enemy's stronghold, not from a safe distance. The judgment targeted both the ruler (*lefaroh melek-Mitsrayim*) and his domain (*ulekhol-artso*) — personal and territorial consequences.
4. The military dimension: *asher asah lecheil Mitsrayim* ('what He did to the army of Egypt'). The specifics — *lesusav ulerikbo* ('to their horses and chariots') — target Egypt's most advanced military technology. The verb *hetsif* ('caused to overflow, flooded') describes the waters of Yam-Suf ('Sea of Reeds') surging over the pursuing army. The phrase *vay'abdem YHWH ad hayyom hazzeh* ('the LORD destroyed them until this day') means the destruction was permanent and irreversible — that army never recovered.
5. The brief phrase *va'asher asah lakhem bammidbar* ('and what He did for you in the wilderness') encompasses forty years of provision, discipline, and preservation. The preposition *lakhem* ('for you') is ambiguous — it includes both acts of sustenance (manna, water) and acts of judgment (serpents, plagues). The temporal marker *ad-bo'akhem ad-hammaqom hazzeh* ('until your arrival at this place') brings the historical survey up to the present moment on the plains of Moab.
6. The Korah rebellion (Numbers 16) is referenced through its Reubenite participants *Datan and Aviram* — Korah himself is omitted, perhaps because his descendants survived (Numbers 26:11). The personification *patseta ha'arets et-piha* ('the earth opened its mouth') makes the ground itself an agent of divine judgment. The verb *vattivla'em* ('and it swallowed them') portrays the earth consuming the rebels. The list — *bateihem* ('their households'), *oholeihem* ('their tents'), *kol-hayyequm* ('all the living things at their feet') — shows total destruction. The phrase *beqerev kol-Yisra'el* ('in the midst of all Israel') makes this a public, witnessed event.
7. The summary statement *ki eineikhem haro'ot* ('for your eyes are the ones seeing') uses the active participle — the seeing is ongoing, present-tense in its impact. The claim that they witnessed *kol-ma'aseh YHWH haggadol* ('every great act of the LORD') establishes experiential authority: what follows is not theoretical theology but commands grounded in witnessed reality. Their obedience should flow not from abstract duty but from concrete experience of divine power.
8. The conjunction *ushmartem* ('therefore keep') links witnessed experience to obedience — because you have seen, you must obey. The purpose clause *lema'an techzequ* ('so that you will be strong') makes obedience the source of military strength. The phrase *uva'tem virishtem et-ha'arets* ('and you will enter and possess the land') ties conquest directly to faithfulness. Strength for possession is not inherent but covenantally derived — obedience activates divine power.
9. The second purpose clause *ulema'an ta'arikhu yamim* ('so that you may prolong days') connects obedience to longevity in the land. The patriarchal oath (*nishba YHWH la'avoteikhem*) is the legal basis, and the beneficiaries include *lahem uleazar'am* ('them and their offspring') — the promise spans generations. The iconic description *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') pictures abundance so great it overflows — milk from abundant livestock, honey from agriculture or wild sources. This is the only appearance of this formula in chapter 11.
10. Moses contrasts two agricultural systems: Egypt's Nile-dependent, foot-operated irrigation versus Canaan's rain-dependent agriculture. The phrase *vehishqita veraglekha* ('you watered with your foot') refers to the Egyptian practice of channeling irrigation water by digging or operating foot-pedals on water-lifting devices. The comparison *kegan hayyaraq* ('like a vegetable garden') suggests the labor-intensive, human-controlled nature of Egyptian farming. The coming contrast is theological: Canaan's agriculture will depend on God's rain, not human engineering.

11. Canaan's landscape — *erets harim uvqa'ot* ('a land of hills and valleys') — is topographically varied, unlike Egypt's flat Nile plain. The decisive difference is theological: *limtar hashamayim tishteh-mayim* ('from the rain of heaven it drinks water'). The land 'drinks' (*tishteh*) — a personification suggesting the land is receptive and alive. Rain comes from *shamayim* ('heaven') — God's domain. Where Egypt offered human control over water, Canaan demands faith in divine provision. Agriculture in the promised land is inherently an act of trust.
12. The verb *doresh* ('seeks, cares for, attends to') portrays God as an attentive landowner — He actively tends the promised land. The anthropomorphism *einei YHWH Elohekha bah* ('the eyes of the LORD your God are on it') describes continuous divine surveillance and care. The temporal scope — *mereshit hashanah ve'ad acharit shanah* ('from the beginning of the year until the end of the year') — means unbroken attention through every season. The land is never unwatched, never unattended. This divine attentiveness is both reassuring (God provides) and sobering (God sees everything that happens in it).
13. The conditional structure opens the second paragraph of the Shema (Deuteronomy 11:13-21, recited daily in Jewish liturgy). The intensified infinitive absolute *shamoa tishme'u* ('listening you shall listen' — truly listen) echoes 28:1. The shift to first person — *mitsvotai* ('My commands') — may reflect God speaking through Moses or Moses speaking as God's authorized representative. The dual requirement — *le'ahavah* ('to love') and *ule'avdo* ('to serve') — combines internal disposition with external action, *bekhol-levavkhem uvkhol-nafshekhem* ('with all your heart and all your soul').
14. God promises *venatatti metar-artschem be'itto* ('I will give rain for your land in its season') — precipitation as covenant blessing, directly from God. Two critical rains define the agricultural year: *yoreh* ('early rain,' October-November, softening ground for planting) and *malqosh* ('late rain,' March-April, swelling the ripening grain). Both are essential; the absence of either means crop failure. The three harvest products — *dagan* ('grain'), *tiros* ('new wine'), and *yitshar* ('olive oil') — represent the staple crops of Israel's economy.
15. The provision extends to livestock: *venatatti esev besadekha livhemtekha* ('I will give grass in your fields for your animals'). The order is notable — animals fed first, then *ve'akhalta vesava'ta* ('you will eat and be satisfied'). The Talmud derives from this sequence that one must feed one's animals before feeding oneself (Berakhot 40a). The final promise of satisfaction (*sava*) completes the rain-to-harvest-to-table chain: divine rain produces animal feed and human food, resulting in full satisfaction.
16. The warning *hishamru lakhem* ('guard yourselves') interrupts the blessing sequence with danger. The verb *yifteh* ('be deceived, seduced, enticed') portrays apostasy as seduction — the heart is lured, not forced. The progression — *vesartem* ('you will turn aside'), *va'avadtem elohim acherim* ('and serve other gods'), *vehishtachavitem lahem* ('and bow down to them') — traces the path from initial distraction to full idolatrous worship. In an agrarian society dependent on rain, the temptation to worship Baal (the Canaanite storm/rain god) was acute: who really controls the rain?
17. The consequence directly reverses the blessing: *vecharah af-YHWH* ('the LORD's anger will burn') triggers *ve'atsar et-hashamayim* ('He will shut the heavens'). The God who promised rain (v 14) will withhold it. The agricultural collapse follows: *veha'adamah lo titten et-yevulah* ('the ground will not give its produce'). The ultimate consequence — *va'avadtem meherah me'al ha'arets hattovah* ('you will perish quickly from the good land') — means exile. The land given by God can be taken back by God. Rain-dependence, which should produce faith, becomes the mechanism of judgment when faith is abandoned.
18. The command *vesamtem et-devarai elleh al-levavkhem ve'al-nafshekem* ('place these words on your heart and on your being') demands internal inscription — the words must penetrate, not merely be heard. The physical practices — *uqshartem otam le'ot al-yedkhem* ('bind them as a sign on your hand') and *vehayu letotafot bein eineikhem* ('they shall be as totafot between your eyes') — were interpreted literally as *tefillin* (phylacteries) in Jewish practice. The word *totafot* is rare and obscure, possibly meaning 'headbands' or 'emblems.' Whether literal or metaphorical, the intent is total saturation: God's words must govern both action (hand) and thought (between the eyes).
19. The pedagogical command *velimmadtem otam et-beneikhem* ('teach them to your children') ensures generational transmission. The method is conversational — *ledabber bam* ('by speaking about them') — not formal classroom instruction but constant dialogue. Four settings cover all of daily life: *beshivtekha beveitekha* ('sitting in your house'), *uvlekhtekha vaderekh* ('walking on the road'), *uvshakhekha* ('lying down'), *uvqumekha* ('rising up'). The parallel with 6:7 reinforces that Torah education is not scheduled but ambient — woven into every moment and activity.
20. The command *ukhtavtam al-mezuzot beitekha* ('write them on the doorposts of your house') makes God's words visible at every entrance and exit. The mezuzah marks the threshold — the boundary between private and public space — ensuring that God's word is encountered at every transition. The addition *uvish'arekha* ('and on your gates') extends from the individual home to the community — city gates were centers of legal and commercial life. Together, doorpost and gate ensure saturation: home and city, private and public, all are inscribed with divine instruction.
21. The purpose clause *lema'an yirbu yemeikhem vimei veneikhem* ('so that your days and your children's days may multiply') connects Torah-saturated living to longevity. The comparison *kimei hashamayim al-ha'arets* ('like the days of the heavens upon the earth') promises permanence rivaling creation itself — as long as sky spans earth, Israel may dwell in the land. This cosmic simile is conditional: the permanence depends on the obedience described in verses 18-20. This verse closes the second paragraph of the Shema, the liturgical passage recited daily.
22. The intensified conditional *ki im-shamor tishmerun* ('if guarding you shall guard') opens a new promise section. The singular *hammitsvah hazzot* ('this commandment') views all the laws as one unified instruction. Three descriptions define its content: *le'ahavah* ('to love'), *lalekhet* ('to walk'), and *uledavqah-bo* ('to cling to Him'). The verb *davaq* ('cling, cleave') is the marriage word from Genesis 2:24, here applied to the God-Israel relationship. Covenant faithfulness is depicted as the most intimate possible attachment.
23. The promise *vehorish YHWH et-kol-haggoyim ha'elleh* ('the LORD will dispossess all these nations') is conditioned on the obedience of verse 22. The result — *virishtem goyim gedolim va'atsumim mikkem* ('you will dispossess nations greater and mightier than you') — reaffirms the military impossibility overcome by divine intervention. The same nations described in chapter 7 are still the target, and the same principle applies: Israel's

strength is derivative, flowing from covenant obedience, not from military capability.

24. The territorial promise is expansive: kol-hammaqom asher tidrokh kaf-raglekhem bo lakhem yihyeh ('every place your foot treads will be yours'). The four boundaries define the maximum extent: min-hamidbar ('from the wilderness' — the Negev/Sinai in the south), vahaLevanon ('and Lebanon' — the north), min-hannahar nehar-Perat ('from the river, the river Euphrates' — the east), ve'ad hayyam ha'acharon ('to the western/last sea' — the Mediterranean). This represents the ideal, maximal borders promised to Abraham (Genesis 15:18), rarely if ever fully realized historically.
25. The military guarantee lo-yityatsev ish bifneikhem ('no one will stand before you') is absolute — conditioned on the obedience of verse 22. The mechanism is psychological: pachdekhem umora'akhem yitten YHWH ('the LORD will set your fear and your dread'). Two terms for fear are used — pachad ('terror, dread') and mora ('fear, awe') — covering both the visceral and the respectful. God will deploy Israel's reputation as a weapon: enemies will be psychologically defeated before the battle begins. The phrase ka'asher dibber lakhem ('as He spoke to you') anchors the promise in God's prior declarations.
26. The pivotal declaration re'eh anokhi noten lifneikhem hayyom berakhah uqelalah ('see, I am placing before you today a blessing and a curse') introduces the climactic choice. The singular imperative re'eh ('see!') addresses each individual, while the plural lifneikhem ('before you all') addresses the nation. Berakhah ('blessing') and qelalah ('curse') are the two covenant outcomes — not fate but consequences of choice. This sets up the Gerizim-Ebal ceremony and anticipates the blessings and curses of chapters 27-28.
27. The blessing is conditional: et-habberakhah asher tishme'u el-mitsvot YHWH ('the blessing — that you will listen to the commands of the LORD'). The conjunction asher can be read as 'if' (conditional) or 'when' (temporal), but the force is conditional. Obedience activates blessing. The present-tense urgency — asher anokhi metsavveh etkhem hayyom ('which I am commanding you today') — makes the choice immediate, not deferred.
28. The curse is triggered by two failures: im-lo tishme'u ('if you do not listen') and vesartem min-hadderekh ('and turn from the path'). Disobedience leads to deviation, and deviation leads to idolatry — lalekhet acharei elohim acherim ('to walk after other gods'). The qualifying phrase asher lo-yeda'tem ('which you have not known') is devastating: Israel would abandon the God who has been intimately known through forty years of wilderness experience for gods they have never encountered. The choice between blessing and curse is simultaneously a choice between the known and the unknown, the proven and the untested.
29. The ceremony is prescribed: venatattah et-habberakhah al Har Gerizim ve'et-haqqelalah al Har Eval ('you shall set the blessing on Mount Gerizim and the curse on Mount Ebal'). These twin mountains flanking the city of Shechem create a natural amphitheater. Gerizim (to the south, more fertile) receives the blessing; Ebal (to the north, more barren) receives the curse — the geography itself embodies the choice. This ceremony, fulfilled in Joshua 8:30-35, physically inscribed covenant consequences into the landscape of the promised land. Israel would live between these two mountains, between blessing and curse.
30. Moses orients his audience geographically: halo-hemmah be'ever haYarden ('are they not beyond the Jordan') — from their current position east of the river. The phrase acharei derekh mevo hashemesh ('toward the way of the setting sun') means westward. The reference points — be'erets haKena'ani hayyoshev ba'Aravah ('in the land of the Canaanite dwelling in the Arabah'), mul haGilgal ('opposite Gilgal'), etsel elonei Moreh ('near the oaks/terebinths of Moreh') — place the mountains precisely in the landscape. The elonei Moreh ('oaks of Moreh') connects to Genesis 12:6, where Abraham received the land promise — full circle.
31. The immediate future is emphasized: ki attem overim et-haYarden ('for you are crossing the Jordan') — the crossing is imminent. The triple progression — lavo lareshet ('to enter to possess'), virishtem otah ('you will possess it'), vishavtem-bah ('you will settle in it') — maps the three phases of conquest: entry, possession, and settlement. Each phase brings new responsibilities and new temptations. The gift nature of the land — asher YHWH Eloheikhem noten lakhem ('which the LORD your God is giving you') — keeps the source in view as a guard against the arrogance warned about in chapter 8.
32. The chapter's final verse ushmartem la'asot ('you must guard to do') combines vigilant attention with active obedience — these are inseparable. The phrase et kol-hachuqqim ve'et-hammishpatim ('all the statutes and the regulations') encompasses the full legal code about to be detailed in chapters 12-26. The temporal marker hayyom ('today') creates urgency: obedience is not tomorrow's project but today's demand. This closing verse functions as a hinge between the motivational speeches of chapters 5-11 and the specific legal code that follows — the theological foundation is laid; the practical instructions are about to begin.

12

Summary: *Moses commands Israel to worship at one central sanctuary — 'the place the LORD will choose to put His name' — destroying all Canaanite worship sites. Meat may now be eaten without sacrifice, but blood must never be consumed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase hamaqom ('the place,' v. 5) is never identified by name in Deuteronomy. The centralization of worship is the book's most consequential law — it will eventually mean Jerusalem, but Moses leaves it unnamed, preserving God's sovereignty over the choice. The permission to slaughter animals for food without a sacrificial context (vv. 15-16, 20-22) is new — in the wilderness, all slaughter was sacrificial (Leviticus 17:3-4). Distance from the sanctuary necessitates secular slaughter.*

Translation Friction: *The verb leshakken shemo ('to cause His Name to dwell,' v. 5) is Deuteronomy's distinctive theology: not God Himself but God's Name dwells in the sanctuary. This Name theology avoids localizing God while maintaining real divine presence. We rendered it literally and noted the theological significance. The blood prohibition (v. 23) uses nephesh ('life') — 'the blood is the life,' not merely 'the blood contains life.'*

Connections: *The centralization command is fulfilled when David brings the ark to Jerusalem (2 Samuel 6) and Solomon builds the Temple (1 Kings 8). The Name theology reappears throughout Kings (1 Kings 8:29, 2 Kings 21:4). The blood-life equation grounds the entire sacrificial system (Leviticus 17:11) and is cited in Acts 15:20.*

¹These are the decrees and ordinances you must carefully follow in the land that the LORD, the God of your ancestors, has given you to possess — for as long as you live on the earth. ²You must completely demolish every site where the nations you are dispossessing worshiped their gods — on the high mountains, on the hills, and beneath every leafy tree. ³Tear down their altars, smash their sacred pillars, burn their Asherah poles with fire, cut down the carved images of their gods, and wipe out their names from those places. ⁴You must not worship the LORD your God in that way. ⁵Instead, seek out the place that the LORD your God will choose from among all your tribes to establish His name — to His dwelling you must go. ⁶There you must bring your burnt offerings, your sacrifices, your tithes, the contributions from your hands, your vow offerings, your voluntary offerings, and the firstborn of your cattle and flocks. ⁷There you will eat in the presence of the LORD your God, and you and your households will celebrate in everything you have undertaken, because the LORD your God has blessed you. ⁸You must not continue doing what we are doing here today, where everyone acts according to whatever seems right to them. ⁹For you have not yet reached the place of rest and the inheritance that the LORD your God is giving you. ¹⁰When you cross the Jordan and settle in the land that the LORD your God is granting you as an inheritance, and He gives you relief from all your surrounding enemies so that you live in security — ¹¹Then to the place that the LORD your God will choose as the dwelling for His name — there you must bring everything I am commanding you: your burnt offerings and sacrifices, your tithes and the contributions from your hands, and all the choicest of your vow offerings that you pledge to the LORD. ¹²Celebrate in the presence of the LORD your God — you, your sons and daughters, your male and female servants, and the Levite who lives within your towns, since he has no allotted portion or inheritance alongside you. ¹³Be careful not to offer your burnt offerings at just any place you happen to see. ¹⁴Only at the place the LORD will choose within one of your tribal territories — there you must present your burnt offerings, and there you must carry out everything I am commanding you. ¹⁵However, you may slaughter and eat meat in any of your towns whenever you desire, in proportion to the blessing the LORD your God gives you. Both the ritually impure and the ritually pure may eat it, just as they would eat gazelle or deer. ¹⁶The one restriction is this: you must not consume the blood. Pour it out on the ground like water. ¹⁷You are not permitted to eat the following within your own towns: the tithe of your grain, new wine, or olive oil; the firstborn of your herds or flocks; any of your vow offerings or voluntary offerings; or the contributions from your hands. ¹⁸Rather, you must eat these in the presence of the LORD your God at the place the LORD your God will choose — you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, and the Levite who lives in your town. You are to celebrate in the presence of the LORD your God over

everything you have accomplished. ¹⁹Be careful never to neglect the Levite for as long as you live in your land. ²⁰When the LORD your God expands your territory as He promised you, and you say, 'I want to eat meat' because you crave it, then you may eat meat whenever you desire. ²¹If the place the LORD your God has chosen to establish His name is too far from you, then you may slaughter from your cattle or flocks that the LORD has given you, as I have instructed you, and eat within your own towns whenever you wish. ²²Eat it the same way you would eat gazelle or deer: both the ritually impure and the ritually pure may eat it together. ²³Only be resolute in not eating the blood, because the blood is the life-force, and you must not consume the life-force along with the meat. ²⁴Do not eat it. Pour it out on the ground like water. ²⁵Do not eat it, so that things will go well for you and your children after you, because you are doing what is right in the LORD's sight. ²⁶But your sacred offerings and your vow offerings — those you must carry to the place the LORD will choose. ²⁷Present your burnt offerings — both the meat and the blood — on the altar of the LORD your God. The blood of your other sacrifices must be poured out on the altar of the LORD your God, but the meat you may eat. ²⁸Guard and obey all these instructions that I am commanding you, so that things will go well for you and your descendants after you permanently, because you are doing what is good and right in the eyes of the LORD your God. ²⁹When the LORD your God cuts off the nations ahead of you — the ones you are going to dispossess — and you take their place and settle in their land, ³⁰guard yourself from being ensnared by their ways after they have been destroyed ahead of you. Do not inquire about their gods, asking, 'How did these nations worship their gods? I want to do the same thing.' ³¹You must not worship the LORD your God the way they worship, because they practice every abomination that the LORD detests for their gods — they even burn their own sons and daughters in the fire as offerings to their gods.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *hachuqqim vehamishpatim* ('the statutes and the ordinances') opens a new legislative section that runs through chapter 26. *Chuqqim* are engraved decrees — permanent regulations inscribed in the covenant — while *mishpatim* are case-law rulings, judicial precedents that govern specific situations. Together they encompass the full scope of covenant law. The phrase *kol hayyamim asher attem chayyim* ('all the days that you are alive') emphasizes that these laws apply for the entire duration of the people's existence in the land.
2. The infinitive absolute *abbed te'abedun* ('destroying you shall destroy' — you must completely demolish) demands total eradication of Canaanite worship sites. The three locations listed — high mountains (*heharim haramim*), hills (*hageva'ot*), and beneath leafy trees (*tachat kol ets ra'anani*) — correspond to the typical settings of Canaanite open-air shrines (*bamot*). These elevated sites were considered closer to the divine realm, and the evergreen trees symbolized fertility worship. The command is comprehensive: no pagan worship site, regardless of location, may be repurposed.
3. Four distinct cult objects are targeted: *mizbekhot* ('altars' — stone or earth platforms for sacrifice), *matstsevoth* ('standing stones' — sacred pillars representing the male deity), *asherim* ('Asherah poles' — wooden cult objects associated with the Canaanite goddess Asherah), and *pesilei eloheihem* ('carved images of their gods' — sculpted idols). The final command *ve'ibadtem et shemam* ('wipe out their names') goes beyond physical destruction: even the memory and invocation of these gods must be erased from the landscape. Replacing pagan place-names was part of claiming the land for YHWH.
4. This terse prohibition — *lo ta'asun ken* ('you shall not do so') — is the pivot of the entire chapter. It separates the command to destroy pagan worship sites (vv 2-3) from the command to worship at God's chosen site (vv 5-7). The point is not merely that Canaanite practices are wrong, but that Israel must not apply Canaanite worship patterns to YHWH. God determines where and how He is worshiped; Israel does not get to choose the format.
5. The phrase *hamaqom asher yivchar YHWH* ('the place that the LORD will choose') is the theological center of Deuteronomy's worship legislation, appearing over twenty times in the book. It refers to a single, divinely selected worship site — ultimately identified with Jerusalem (2 Chr 7:12). The phrase *lasum et shemo sham* ('to place His name there') uses the 'name theology' distinctive to Deuteronomy: God's name represents His presence and authority. His dwelling (*shikhno*) is established through His name, meaning the sanctuary is where God makes Himself accessible, not where He is confined.
6. Seven categories of offerings are listed, creating a comprehensive inventory of Israel's worship: *olot* ('burnt offerings' — wholly consumed on the altar), *zevachim* ('sacrifices' — shared meals with God), *ma'asrot* ('tithes' — the tenth of produce), *terumat yedkhem* ('contributions of your hands' — the raised/elevated offering), *nidreichem* ('vow offerings' — pledged in times of need), *nidvoteihem* ('freewill offerings' — voluntary expressions of gratitude), and *bekhorot* ('firstborn' — consecrated firstborn animals). All seven categories must come to the one chosen place, eliminating any justification for multiple worship sites.
7. The centralized worship experience is described not as solemn duty but as communal celebration. The verb *usmachtem* ('you shall rejoice') makes joy a commanded element of worship. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD, in the presence of the LORD') indicates that the communal meal takes place in God's acknowledged presence. The inclusion of *uvateikhem* ('your households') extends worship beyond individual males to entire families — worship is a household experience.

8. Moses acknowledges that during the wilderness period, Israel's worship has been decentralized and somewhat individualized — *ish kol hayyashar be'einav* ('each person doing whatever is right in his own eyes'). This same phrase appears as the concluding judgment of the book of Judges (Judg 21:25), where it describes moral and social chaos. The phrase 'here today' (*po hayyom*) contrasts the transitional wilderness situation with the settled future in the land, where centralized worship will impose order on religious practice.
9. Two terms define what the promised land represents: *menuchah* ('rest' — cessation from wandering, warfare, and instability) and *nachalah* ('inheritance' — permanent, divinely granted possession). Together they describe not merely territory but a settled condition of security and divine provision. The 'rest' concept becomes theologically significant throughout Scripture (cf. Ps 95:11; Heb 4:1-11), extending beyond physical land to encompass the fullness of God's promises.
10. Three stages mark the transition to settled life: crossing the Jordan (*va'avartem et haYarden*), settling in the land (*vishavtem ba'arets*), and receiving security from enemies (*veheniach lakhem mikol oyveikhem*). The verb *heniach* ('give rest, give relief') is the causative form of *nuach* — God actively creates the condition of rest. The phrase *vishavtem betach* ('you will dwell in security') describes the end-state: a life free from military threat, where worship can be properly centralized.
11. The phrase *leshakken shemo sham* ('to cause His name to dwell there') uses the *piel* intensive of *shakan* ('to dwell'), emphasizing that God actively establishes His name-presence at the chosen site. The term *mivchar nidreikhem* ('the choicest of your vow offerings') specifies that vow offerings must be of the best quality — not merely any animal, but the select ones. This raises the standard: centralized worship demands not just obedience in location but excellence in offering.
12. The worship community is defined inclusively: sons, daughters, male and female servants, and the Levite. This is not solitary devotion but communal celebration crossing age, gender, and social class. The Levite receives special mention because he has no tribal land allotment (*ein lo cheleq venachalah ittekhem* — 'he has no portion or inheritance with you') and therefore depends entirely on the community's generosity. The phrase *bishaareikhem* ('within your gates/towns') indicates that Levites are dispersed throughout Israel's cities rather than concentrated in one location.
13. The warning *hishamer lekha* ('guard yourself, be careful') introduces a prohibition against random site selection for sacrifice. The phrase *bekhol maqom asher tireh* ('at every place that you see') contrasts with the specific *maqom* ('place') that God chooses. The Canaanite practice of worshipping wherever a high place or impressive natural feature appeared attractive is explicitly rejected. Convenience or personal preference must not determine where burnt offerings are made.
14. The phrase *be'achad shevatekha* ('in one of your tribes') specifies that the chosen place will be located within one tribe's territory. This was fulfilled when Jerusalem — located on the border of Benjamin and Judah — became the central sanctuary. The emphatic repetition *sham* ('there') twice reinforces the exclusivity: there, and only there, is the authorized worship site.
15. This verse introduces a revolutionary concession: secular (non-sacrificial) slaughter of animals for food is now permitted in any town. Before centralization, all animal slaughter was sacrificial (Lev 17:3-4). But with the sanctuary potentially far away, requiring every meat meal to involve a pilgrimage would be impractical. The phrase *bekhol avvat nafshekha* ('according to all the desire of your soul' — whenever you want) grants broad permission. The comparison to gazelle and deer (*tsevi and ayyal*) — wild animals that were never sacrificed — establishes the principle: this meat is ordinary food, not sacred offering. Both ritually impure (*tamei*) and pure (*tahor*) persons may eat it, since no sacred context applies.
16. Even in secular slaughter, one absolute prohibition remains: blood must not be consumed. The blood prohibition is one of the oldest and most universal commands in Scripture (Gen 9:4; Lev 17:10-14). The instruction to pour it on the ground 'like water' (*kamayim*) means it should be treated as waste liquid, not collected for any purpose. In sacrificial contexts, blood was dashed on the altar (representing life returned to God); in non-sacrificial slaughter, it is simply disposed of on the earth.
17. While secular meat eating is now permitted locally (v 15), sacred offerings are strictly excluded from local consumption. The triad *degan, tirosh, yitshar* ('grain, new wine, olive oil') represents the three staple agricultural products of the land. These tithes, along with firstborn animals and vow/freewill offerings, must be consumed at the central sanctuary. The distinction between ordinary food (freely eaten at home) and sacred food (restricted to God's chosen place) is a key organizational principle of Deuteronomy's worship system.
18. The inclusive list of worshipers reappears (cf. v 12): son, daughter, servants, and Levite. The phrase *vesamachta lifnei YHWH* ('you shall rejoice before the LORD') again pairs worship with joy — the sacred meal is a celebration, not a somber ritual. The phrase *bekhol mishlach yadekha* ('in everything your hand is sent to' — everything you have accomplished) connects the feast to God's blessing on daily labor. Worship celebrates what God has enabled.
19. The warning *hishamer lekha pen ta'azov et haLevi* ('guard yourself lest you abandon the Levite') closes the first section with a social obligation. Since Levites have no land inheritance and depend on the community's tithes and offerings for sustenance, neglecting them would be both economic cruelty and a failure to support Israel's worship infrastructure. The phrase *kol yamekha* ('all your days') makes this a lifelong obligation, not a temporary measure. The *setumah* paragraph break marks the transition to the next topic.
20. This verse anticipates future territorial expansion (*ki yarchiv YHWH Elohekha et gevulka* — 'when the LORD your God enlarges your border') and the practical problem it creates: the central sanctuary will be even farther away. The repeated emphasis on desire — *te'avveh nafshekha* ('your soul craves') and *bekhol avvat nafshekha* ('in all the desire of your soul') — frames meat-eating as a matter of appetite, not ritual. God accommodates human desire within the framework of covenant law.

- 21.** The phrase *ki yirchaq mimmekha hamaqom* ('if the place is too far from you') provides the explicit justification for secular slaughter: distance from the central sanctuary. The phrase *ka'asher tsivitikha* ('as I have commanded you') likely refers to oral instructions about proper slaughter technique — instructions not recorded in the written Torah. The rabbis understood this as evidence for the Oral Torah tradition, since no written command about slaughter method appears elsewhere in the Pentateuch.
- 22.** The gazelle (*tsevi*) and deer (*ayyal*) comparison is repeated from verse 15, reinforcing that locally slaughtered meat has the same status as wild game — it is ordinary food, not sacred. The phrase *hattamei vehattahor yachdav* ('the impure and the pure together') is significant: in sacrificial contexts, ritual purity was required, but for ordinary meals no such restriction applies. The word *yachdav* ('together') emphasizes that there is no separation at the table.
- 23.** The command *raq chazaq* ('only be strong/resolute') frames blood avoidance as requiring strength of will — it is a temptation that must be actively resisted. The theological reason follows: *ki haddam hu hannefesh* ('because the blood is the life/soul'). The Hebrew *nefesh* here means life-force or vital essence, not 'soul' in the later philosophical sense. Blood carries the animating principle that God gives; consuming it would be appropriating what belongs to God alone. The prohibition appears three times in this chapter (vv 16, 23, 25), underscoring its importance.
- 24.** The repetition from verse 16 reinforces the blood prohibition with identical language. Pouring blood on the ground 'like water' (*kammayim*) emphasizes that it has no sacred function in secular slaughter — it is not dashed on an altar as in sacrificial contexts but simply returned to the earth. The simplicity of the disposal method contrasts with the elaborate blood rituals of Leviticus.
- 25.** The blood prohibition is now tied to a generational promise: *lema'an yitav lekha ulevanekha acharekha* ('so that it may be good for you and your children after you'). Obedience produces intergenerational blessing. The phrase *ki ta'aseh hayyashar be'einei YHWH* ('because you do what is right in the LORD's eyes') frames blood avoidance not as arbitrary restriction but as moral alignment with God's values — the opposite of 'doing what is right in one's own eyes' (v 8).
- 26.** After extensively discussing local secular slaughter (vv 15-25), Moses returns to the nonnegotiable requirement: *qodashekha* ('your holy things, your sacred offerings') and *nedarekha* ('your vow offerings') must still travel to the central sanctuary. The verb *tissa* ('you shall carry, you shall lift up') implies physical transport — these offerings must be physically brought to the chosen place, not consumed at home regardless of distance.
- 27.** Two types of sacrifice are distinguished: *olot* ('burnt offerings'), where both meat and blood go entirely on the altar (nothing is eaten), and *zevachim* ('other sacrifices' — peace/fellowship offerings), where only the blood is poured on the altar and the worshiper eats the meat. This verse concisely summarizes the distinction between wholly-burned and shared offerings that Leviticus 1-7 details at length. The contrast with secular slaughter (vv 15-25) is clear: in sacrifice, blood goes on the altar; in ordinary slaughter, blood goes on the ground.
- 28.** The phrase *shemor veshama'ta* ('guard and hear/obey') pairs two verbs of obedience: careful attention and active compliance. The promise extends beyond the current generation — *ulevanekha acharekha ad olam* ('and for your children after you permanently'). The word *olam* ('forever, permanently') elevates the promise from temporal to enduring. The phrase *hattov vehayyashar* ('the good and the right') combines moral quality (*tov* — what is inherently good) with legal propriety (*yashar* — what is straight, correct, upright). The *setumah* break marks the end of this subsection.
- 29.** The verb *yakhrit* ('He will cut off') uses the *hiphil* of *karat*, the same root used for 'cutting' a covenant (*karat berit*). God 'cuts off' nations just as He 'cuts' covenants — both are sovereign acts that reshape the political and spiritual landscape. The sequence — cutting off, dispossessing (*yarashta*), settling (*yashavta*) — describes the three-phase transition: removal, replacement, and habitation.
- 30.** The verb *tinnaqesh* ('be ensnared') uses the imagery of a bird trap — Israel could walk into Canaanite religion as unknowingly as a bird enters a snare. The warning is psychologically astute: even after the nations are destroyed (*acharei hishamdam*), their religious practices could survive as cultural curiosity. The quoted internal monologue — *eikhah ya'avdu... ve'e'eseh ken gam ani* ('How did they worship... I'll do the same') — reveals the danger of religious syncretism: Israel might adopt Canaanite worship forms while believing they are enhancing YHWH worship.
- 31.** The chapter closes where it began (v 4): Israel must not worship YHWH using Canaanite methods. The reason is now made explicit: every *to'avah* ('abomination, detestable practice') that the LORD hates characterizes Canaanite religion. The ultimate example is child sacrifice — *ki gam et beneihem ve'et benoteihem yisrefu va'esh leeloheihem* ('they even burn their sons and daughters in fire to their gods'). Archaeological evidence confirms child sacrifice at Canaanite and Phoenician sites (the *tophet* at Carthage being the most extensively documented). This practice — the inversion of the firstborn consecration (dedicating a child to death rather than to life) — represents the absolute boundary between YHWH worship and Canaanite religion.

13

Summary: *Moses addresses three scenarios of temptation to idolatry: a prophet who performs signs, a close family member who entices privately, and an entire city that turns away. Each requires the death penalty.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter escalates from public seduction (a prophet) to intimate betrayal (spouse, child, friend) to communal apostasy (a whole city). The most disturbing case is the middle one: 'your brother, your son, your daughter, the wife of your bosom, your friend who is as your own soul' (v. 6). Deuteronomy lists every intimate relationship to eliminate any excuse for mercy toward idolatry. The theological principle is absolute: no sign, no relationship, no community consensus can authorize worship of other gods.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase benei veliyya'al (v. 14, 'worthless individuals') is a compound that became a proper name (Belial) in later literature. We rendered it descriptively rather than as a name. The verb uwi'arta hara (v. 5, 'purge the evil') recurs throughout Deuteronomy as a judicial refrain — we translated it consistently. The verse numbering differs from KJV: Hebrew 13:1 = KJV 12:32.*

Connections: *The false prophet test recurs in 18:20-22 with different criteria. The city-under-ban echoes the cherem of Joshua 6-7. Paul may allude to the 'purge the evil' formula in 1 Corinthians 5:13. The intimate-betrayer case grounds Jesus's warning that discipleship may divide families (Matthew 10:35-37).*

¹Everything I am commanding you — guard it and carry it out. Do not add anything to it, and do not subtract anything from it. ²If a prophet or a dreamer of dreams arises among you and presents you with a sign or a wonder, ³and the sign or wonder actually comes true, but then he says, 'Let us follow other gods' — gods you have not known — 'and let us serve them,' ⁴you must not listen to what that prophet or dreamer says, because the LORD your God is testing you to find out whether you truly love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your soul. ⁵The LORD your God is the one you must follow. Him you must revere. His commandments you must keep. His voice you must obey. Him you must serve, and to Him you must hold fast. ⁶That prophet or dreamer must be put to death, because he spoke rebellion against the LORD your God — the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt and redeemed you from the house of slavery — trying to push you off the path the LORD your God commanded you to walk. You must purge the evil from your midst. ⁷If your brother — your own mother's son — or your son or daughter, or the wife you embrace, or your closest friend who is like your own soul, entices you in secret, saying, 'Let us go worship other gods' — gods that neither you nor your ancestors have known, ⁸gods of the surrounding peoples, whether near you or far from you, from one end of the earth to the other — ⁹you must not yield to him or listen to him. Your eye must not show pity, you must not spare him, and you must not shield him. ¹⁰Rather, you must certainly put him to death. Your own hand must strike first to execute him, and then the hands of all the people. ¹¹Stone him to death, because he sought to lure you away from the LORD your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. ¹²All Israel will hear and be afraid, and no one will do such a wicked thing among you again. ¹³If you hear it reported about one of your towns that the LORD your God is giving you to live in, ¹⁴that worthless individuals have emerged from among you and have led the residents of their city astray, saying, 'Let us go serve other gods' — gods you have not known — ¹⁵then you must investigate, examine, and inquire thoroughly. If it is confirmed as true — if this abomination has indeed been committed among you — ¹⁶you must strike down the inhabitants of that city with the sword, devoting it to total destruction — everything in it and its livestock — with the sword. ¹⁷Gather all its plunder into the center of its public square and burn the entire city and all its plunder as a whole burnt offering to the LORD your God. It will remain a permanent ruin, never to be rebuilt. ¹⁸Nothing from the items placed under the ban may stick to your hands, so that the LORD will turn from His fierce anger and show you compassion — He will have mercy on you and multiply you, just as He swore to your ancestors. ¹⁹— provided you listen to the voice of the LORD your God, keeping all His commandments that I am commanding you today, doing what is right in the eyes of the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is numbered 13:1 in the Hebrew text but 12:32 in English Bibles (KJV). The Hebrew text reads: 'Everything I command you — that you shall guard to do. Do not add to it and do not subtract from it.' The KJV text shown corresponds to the English Bible's 13:1 (Hebrew 13:2). The rendering follows the Hebrew source text. The prohibition *lo tosef alav velo tigma mimmennu* ('do not add to it and do not subtract from it') establishes the canon principle: God's commands are complete and authoritative as given. This principle is later echoed in Revelation 22:18-19. The petuchah paragraph marker signals a major section break — what follows in the Hebrew text is a new topic.
2. Hebrew 13:2 (English 13:1). The chapter addresses three sources of enticement to idolatry: prophets (vv 2-6), family and close friends (vv 7-12), and entire cities (vv 13-19). The *navi* ('prophet') and *cholem chalom* ('dreamer of dreams') represent two modes of claimed divine communication. The phrase *natan elekha o to mofet* ('gives you a sign or wonder') acknowledges that the false prophet may actually produce supernatural phenomena — the test is not whether the sign works but where it leads.
3. Hebrew 13:3 (English 13:2). The scenario is startling: the predicted sign actually comes true (*uva ha'ot vehamofet* — 'the sign and the wonder comes to pass'), yet the prophet's message leads to idolatry. The phrase *elohim acherim asher lo yeda'tam* ('other gods that you have not known') uses 'known' in the covenantal sense — these are gods with whom Israel has no relationship, no history, no covenant bond. The seductive logic is: 'My prediction came true, therefore my theology is correct.' Moses dismantles this reasoning in the next verse.
4. Hebrew 13:4 (English 13:3). The reason for allowing false prophets to perform real signs is breathtaking: *ki menasseh YHWH Eloheikhem etkhem* ('because the LORD your God is testing you'). God permits supernatural deception as a loyalty test. The criterion is not intellectual — 'can you detect the fraud?' — but relational: *hayishkhem ohavim et YHWH* ('do you love the LORD?'). The test echoes the Shema (Deut 6:5): love with all your heart (*levav*) and all your soul (*nefesh*). A sign that contradicts covenant loyalty must be rejected regardless of its apparent supernatural validation.
5. Hebrew 13:5 (English 13:4). Six verbs define covenant loyalty in a powerful ascending sequence: *telekhu* ('follow/walk after'), *tira'u* ('revere/fear'), *tishmoru* ('keep/guard'), *tishma'u* ('obey/hear'), *ta'avodu* ('serve/worship'), and *tidbaqun* ('hold fast/cling'). The final verb *davaq* ('cling, hold fast') is the same verb used for marital union in Genesis 2:24 — covenant loyalty to God is intimate, not merely formal. The emphatic word order places YHWH first in every clause: 'After the LORD... Him you shall fear... His commands... His voice... Him you shall serve... to Him you shall cling.'
6. Hebrew 13:6 (English 13:5). The charge is *dibber sarah* ('he spoke rebellion/sedition') — the verb *sarah* implies active turning aside, deviation from the established path. The death penalty reflects the severity of the offense: the false prophet attacks the very foundation of Israel's existence. Two exodus titles reinforce what is at stake: *hamotsi etkhem me'erets mitsrayim* ('the one who brought you out of Egypt') and *hapoddekha mibbeit avadim* ('the one who redeemed you from the house of slavery'). The formula *uvi'arta hara miqqirbekha* ('purge the evil from your midst') appears seven times in Deuteronomy, establishing a pattern for communal purification.
7. Hebrew 13:7 (English 13:6). The second scenario shifts from public prophets to intimate relationships. The list escalates in emotional closeness: brother (*achikha ben immekha* — 'your brother, your mother's son,' emphasizing the closest sibling bond through shared mother), son, daughter, wife (*eshet cheiqekha* — 'wife of your bosom,' the most intimate human relationship), and friend (*re'akha asher kenafshekha* — 'your friend who is like your own soul,' echoing the David-Jonathan bond). The enticement comes *baseter* ('in secret') — privately, where social pressure cannot counter it. The emotional difficulty of the following command is intentionally heightened by this list.
8. Hebrew 13:8 (English 13:7). The scope of the prohibition extends geographically: the gods of nearby peoples (*haqerovim elekha*) and distant peoples (*harchoqim mimmekha*), from one end of the earth to the other (*miqqetseh ha'arets ve'ad qetseh ha'arets*). No foreign god is exempt, regardless of its geographic origin. This eliminates any argument that a particular deity's distance or exoticism might make it acceptable.
9. Hebrew 13:9 (English 13:8). Five prohibitions stack up with relentless force: *lo toveh* ('do not consent/yield'), *lo tishma* ('do not listen'), *lo tachos einkha* ('your eye must not show pity'), *lo tachmol* ('do not spare'), and *lo tekhasseh* ('do not conceal/cover for him'). Each prohibition blocks a natural emotional response to a loved one in danger. The verbs move from external action (consenting, listening) to internal emotion (pity, compassion) to protective concealment — every avenue of leniency is sealed shut.
10. Hebrew 13:10 (English 13:9). The infinitive absolute *harog tahargennu* ('killing you shall kill him' — you must certainly kill him) intensifies the command. The requirement that *yadkha tihyeh bo barishonah* ('your hand shall be on him first') is extraordinary: the person who received the private enticement must personally initiate the execution. This prevents anonymous denunciation and ensures that the accuser bears full moral weight for the action. It also tests whether the accuser's loyalty to God truly overrides personal attachment.
11. Hebrew 13:11 (English 13:10). The method is stoning (*seqalto va'avanim vamet* — 'stone him with stones and he shall die'). Stoning was a communal form of execution, involving the entire community and preventing any single individual from bearing sole responsibility for the death. The crime is defined as seeking to *lehadichakha me'al YHWH* ('to push you away from the LORD') — the verb *hadach* means to drive away, thrust out, seduce off course. The exodus formula appears again, grounding the severity of the penalty in the gravity of what God has done: He rescued them from slavery, and anyone who undermines that rescued relationship commits a capital offense.
12. Hebrew 13:12 (English 13:11). The public execution serves a deterrent function: *vekhlo Yisrael yishme'u veyira'un* ('all Israel will hear and they will fear'). The verb *yira'un* ('they will fear') uses the same root as 'the fear of the LORD' — the terror produced by the execution mirrors the reverent fear that God Himself commands. The phrase *velo yosifu la'asot* ('they will not continue to do') expresses the desired outcome: complete cessation of this behavior. The *setumah* break marks the transition to the third scenario.

13. Hebrew 13:13 (English 13:12). The third scenario is the most extreme: an entire city has been led into idolatry. The phrase *ki tishma be'achat arekha* ('if you hear in one of your cities') introduces the situation as a report — the information comes to the community's attention rather than being directly witnessed. This begins the most detailed judicial procedure in the chapter.
14. Hebrew 13:14 (English 13:13). The instigators are called *benei veliyya'al* ('sons of worthlessness/wickedness'). The term *beliyya'al* is debated: it may derive from *beli* ('without') + *ya'al* ('value/profit'), yielding 'worthless ones,' or it may be an older term meaning 'swallowers' (destructive forces). In later Jewish and Christian literature, Belial becomes a name for Satan (2 Cor 6:15). The verb *vayyadichu* ('they led astray, they seduced') is the same root (*nadach*) used throughout this chapter for spiritual enticement — these individuals have successfully corrupted an entire city.
15. Hebrew 13:15 (English 13:14). Three verbs of investigation are required before action: *darashta* ('you shall investigate/search'), *chaqarta* ('you shall examine/probe'), and *sha'alta* ('you shall inquire/ask'). The adverb *heitev* ('thoroughly, well') intensifies all three. Only after exhaustive due process — *vehineh emet nakhon hadavar* ('and behold, it is true, the matter is established') — may punishment proceed. This is one of the strongest due process requirements in ancient law. The word *to'evah* ('abomination') labels the crime.
16. Hebrew 13:16 (English 13:15). The punishment is *cherem* ('total destruction, devotion to destruction') — the same term used for the conquest of Jericho (Josh 6:17). The infinitive absolute *hakkeh takkeh* ('striking you shall strike') intensifies the command. The *cherem* encompasses everything: residents (*yoshvei ha'ir*), all possessions (*kol asher bah*), and livestock (*behemtah*). An apostate Israelite city receives the same treatment as a Canaanite city under the ban — covenant betrayal transforms insiders into outsiders.
17. Hebrew 13:17 (English 13:16). The procedure mirrors a burnt offering (*olah*): all the plunder is gathered into the center of the town square (*rekhavah*) and burned *kalil* ('completely, as a whole offering'). The phrase *kalil laYHWH Elohekha* ('entirely for the LORD your God') uses sacrificial language — the destroyed city becomes, in effect, a massive burnt offering. The final verdict is devastating: *tel olam lo tибbane od* ('a permanent ruin, it shall not be rebuilt again'). The *tel* ('ruin mound') will stand as a permanent monument to the consequences of apostasy.
18. Hebrew 13:18 (English 13:17). The prohibition *velo yidbaq beyadkha me'umah min hacherem* ('nothing from the devoted things shall cling to your hand') prevents anyone from profiting from the destruction. Taking plunder from a *cherem* city would contaminate the person — the verb *davaq* ('cling, adhere') portrays the banned items as spiritually adhesive. Obedience to the *cherem* produces divine relenting: *yashuv YHWH mecharene appo* ('the LORD will turn from His fierce anger'). The verbs *rachamim* ('compassion') and *richamkha* ('He will show you mercy') share the root *rechem* ('womb'), connecting God's compassion to maternal tenderness.
19. Hebrew 13:19 (English 13:18). This verse has no direct KJV equivalent at this verse number due to the one-verse offset between Hebrew and English chapter divisions (Hebrew 13 has 19 verses; English 13 has 18). The verse functions as a conditional conclusion: the promises of verse 18 (compassion, mercy, multiplication) are contingent on obedience — *ki tishma beqol YHWH* ('if you listen to the voice of the LORD'). The chapter ends where Deuteronomy consistently lands: covenant blessings flow from covenant faithfulness. The *setumah* marks the end of this legislative section.

14

Summary: *Moses grounds Israel's dietary laws in their identity as God's children and His holy, treasured people. Clean and unclean animals are listed, and the chapter concludes with tithing regulations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens not with prohibition but with identity: 'You are children of the LORD your God' (v. 1). The dietary laws flow from who Israel is, not merely from what God demands. The phrase *am qadosh* ('holy people,' v. 2) and *am segullah* ('treasured possession,' v. 2) frame every food restriction as an expression of belonging, not arbitrary ritual.*

Translation Friction: *The prohibition against boiling a kid in its mother's milk (v. 21, *gedi bachalev immo*) — which became the basis for the entire kosher separation of meat and dairy — appears three times in the Torah (here, Exodus 23:19, 34:26). Its original meaning is debated: anti-Canaanite ritual polemic, compassion principle, or category-mixing prohibition. We rendered it literally and noted the interpretive range.*

Connections: *The dietary list parallels Leviticus 11 with minor variations. The identity formula 'children of the LORD' connects to Exodus 4:22 ('Israel is my firstborn son') and Hosea 11:1. The triennial tithe for Levites, foreigners, orphans, and widows (vv. 28-29) implements the social justice vision of 10:18-19.*

¹You are children of the LORD your God. You must not gash yourselves or shave the front of your heads for the dead. ²For you are a people set apart as holy to the LORD your God, and the LORD has chosen you to be His treasured possession out of all the peoples on the face of the earth. ³Do not eat anything that is detestable. ⁴These are the animals you may eat: the ox, the lamb, and the goat, ⁵the deer, the gazelle, the roebuck, the wild goat, the ibex, the antelope, and the mountain sheep. ⁶An

y animal that has a divided hoof — split completely into two sections — and also chews the cud: that animal you may eat. ⁷However, from among those that chew the cud or have a split hoof, you must not eat the following: the camel, the hare, and the rock badger. Although they chew the cud, they do not have a divided hoof — they are ritually impure for you. ⁸The pig also — because although it has a divided hoof, it does not chew the cud — is ritually impure for you. You must not eat their meat or touch their carcasses. ⁹Of everything that lives in water, you may eat whatever has fins and scales. ¹⁰Anything that does not have fins and scales you must not eat — it is ritually impure for you. ¹¹You may eat any ritually pure bird. ¹²But these are the ones you must not eat: the griffon vulture, the bearded vulture, and the black vulture, ¹³the kite, the falcon, and the buzzard of every species, ¹⁴every raven of every species, ¹⁵the ostrich, the short-eared owl, the seagull, and the hawk of every species, ¹⁶the little owl, the long-eared owl, and the barn owl, ¹⁷the desert owl, the Egyptian vulture, and the cormorant, ¹⁸the stork, the heron of every species, the hoopoe, and the bat. ¹⁹Every winged swarming creature is ritually impure for you — they must not be eaten. ²⁰Any clean winged creature you may eat. ²¹You must not eat anything that has died on its own. You may give it to the foreigner residing in your towns, and he may eat it, or you may sell it to a non-Israelite. For you are a people set apart as holy to the LORD your God. Do not cook a young goat in its mother's milk. ²²You must set aside a tenth — a full tenth — of everything your seed produces from the field each year. ²³You must eat the tithe of your grain, new wine, and olive oil, along with the firstborn of your herds and flocks, in the presence of the LORD your God at the place He will choose as the dwelling for His name — so that you learn to revere the LORD your God at all times. ²⁴But if the journey is too long for you, so that you are unable to transport it because the place the LORD your God has chosen to establish His name is too far away — when the LORD your God has blessed you abundantly — ²⁵then convert it into silver, tie the silver securely in your hand, and travel to the place the LORD your God will choose. ²⁶Spend the silver on whatever you desire — cattle, sheep, wine, beer, or anything else you want. Then eat there in the presence of the LORD your God, and celebrate with your household. ²⁷And do not neglect the Levite who lives in your towns, because he has no allotted portion or inheritance alongside you. ²⁸At the end of every three years, bring out the full tithe of your produce for that year and store it within your towns. ²⁹Then the Levite — who has no allotted portion or inheritance alongside you — along with the foreigner, the orphan, and the widow who live in your towns, may come and eat until they are full. This is so that the LORD your God will bless you in everything you do.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with Israel's identity: *banim attem laYHWH* ('you are children of the LORD'). This identity statement grounds all the dietary laws that follow — Israel's eating practices reflect their status as God's children. The two prohibited mourning practices — *lo titgodedu* ('do not gash yourselves') and *lo tasimu qorchah bein eineikhem lamet* ('do not place baldness between your eyes for the dead') — were common Canaanite mourning rituals involving self-laceration and head-shaving above the forehead. As God's children, Israel's response to death must differ from the nations.
2. Two terms define Israel's status: *am qadosh* ('holy people' — set apart, consecrated, belonging exclusively to God) and *am segullah* ('treasured people, prized possession'). The word *segullah* originally referred to a king's private treasure — personal wealth distinguished from state property. Israel is God's personal treasure among the nations. The phrase *mikkol ha'ammim asher al penei ha'adamah* ('from all the peoples on the face of the earth') establishes the scope of God's choice: He surveyed all humanity and selected Israel. This is election language — not based on Israel's merit but on God's sovereign decision (cf. Deut 7:7-8).
3. This single, terse command — *lo tokhal kol to'evah* ('do not eat any abomination') — serves as the thesis statement for the dietary laws that follow (vv 4-21). The word *to'evah* ('detestable thing, abomination') connects dietary violations to the same category as idolatry (cf. 12:31; 13:15). What Israel eats is not a matter of health preference but covenantal identity.
4. The permitted land animals begin with the three primary domesticated species: *shor* ('ox/cattle'), *seh khesavim* ('young sheep/lamb'), and *seh izzim* ('young goat'). The word *seh* can mean either an individual animal or a member of the flock. These three species form the core of Israel's sacrificial and dietary system — animals that are both fit for the altar and for the table.
5. Seven wild species are listed as permitted: *ayyal* ('deer'), *tsevi* ('gazelle'), *yachmur* ('roeback/fallow deer'), *aqqo* ('wild goat/ibex'), *dishon* ('a type of antelope' — exact identification uncertain), *te'o* ('wild ox' or 'oryx'), and *zamer* ('mountain sheep/chamois'). Several of these identifications are uncertain, as the exact species some Hebrew terms denote has been debated since antiquity. The KJV's 'pygarg' (for *dishon*) is from the Greek *pygaros* and refers to a type of antelope. The key point is that wild ruminants meeting the criteria of verse 6 are permitted.
6. The two defining criteria for permitted land animals are stated: *mafresset parsah veshosa'at shesa shtei perasot* ('dividing the hoof and splitting the split into two hooves' — having a completely divided, cloven hoof) and *ma'alat gerah* ('bringing up the cud' — chewing the cud, i.e., being a ruminant). Both criteria must be met simultaneously. This dual requirement creates a clear, observable test that does not require specialized knowledge — any

Israelite can examine an animal's feet and feeding behavior.

7. Three animals that appear to meet one criterion but fail the other are listed: gamal ('camel'), arnevet ('hare'), and shafan ('rock badger/hyrax'). The description of these animals as 'chewing the cud' (ma'aleh gerah) uses observational language — these animals make chewing motions that resemble rumination, though modern zoology classifies them differently. The text uses the phenomenological categories available to ancient observers. The verdict is teme'im hem lakhem ('they are impure for you') — not inherently evil, but categorically off-limits for Israel's diet.
8. The pig (chazir) is singled out separately from the three animals in verse 7 because it presents the opposite problem: it meets the hoof criterion but fails the cud criterion. The pig became the paradigmatic forbidden animal in Jewish tradition — perhaps because its cloven hoof gives the external appearance of being permitted while it lacks the internal qualification (rumination). The additional prohibition against touching their carcasses (uvnivlatam lo tigga'u) goes beyond dietary restriction to physical contact, applying during festival pilgrimages when ritual purity was required.
9. The aquatic food law is simple: two criteria — senapir ('fins') and qasqeset ('scales') — both must be present. This permits most common fish species while excluding shellfish, eels, catfish, and other aquatic creatures that lack one or both features. The parallel passage in Leviticus 11:9-12 adds the specification 'in the seas and in the rivers,' but Deuteronomy's formulation is more concise.
10. The negative counterpart to verse 9 completes the aquatic food law. The classification tamei hu lakhem ('it is impure for you') applies to all aquatic creatures lacking both fins and scales. The setumah paragraph marker signals a section break before the bird laws begin.
11. Unlike land animals and aquatic creatures, birds are classified not by anatomical criteria but by a list of prohibited species (vv 12-18). This verse states the general permission: kol tsippor tehorah tokheilu ('every clean/pure bird you may eat'). A bird not on the forbidden list is permitted by default.
12. The forbidden bird list begins with three large raptors: neshet (traditionally 'eagle' but more likely the griffon vulture — the largest flying bird in the region), peres ('bearded vulture/lammergeier' — the KJV's 'ossifrage,' meaning 'bone-breaker'), and ozniyyah ('black vulture' or 'osprey'). The neshet identification is significant: despite its majestic reputation (used metaphorically for God's care in Exod 19:4 and Deut 32:11), the bird itself is classified as impure for eating — a reminder that symbolic nobility does not equal dietary permissibility.
13. Three more raptors: ra'ah ('kite' — a soaring bird of prey; the KJV's 'glede' is an archaic English term for the same bird), ayyah ('falcon' or 'kite'), and dayyah leminnah ('buzzard/vulture after its kind'). The phrase leminnah ('after its kind/species') indicates that the prohibition covers all subspecies within the category. Exact identification of some of these birds remains debated among scholars, as ancient Hebrew bird terminology does not map precisely onto modern ornithological classifications.
14. The orev ('raven') and all its species (lemino — 'after its kind') are prohibited. Ravens are omnivorous scavengers that feed on carrion, which may connect to the general pattern: many of the prohibited birds are predators or scavengers that consume blood and carcasses — precisely what Israelites themselves are forbidden to consume.
15. Four more forbidden birds: bat hayya'anah ('daughter of the desert' — most likely the ostrich, not the 'owl' of the KJV), tachmas ('short-eared owl' or 'nighthawk'), shachaf ('seagull' or 'sea mew'), and nets leminehu ('hawk/falcon after its kind'). The identification of bat hayya'anah as 'ostrich' is supported by the etymological connection to ya'anah ('desert dweller') and by ancient translations.
16. Three owl species: kos ('little owl' — a small, common owl in the Near East), yanshuf ('long-eared owl' or 'great owl'), and tinshemet ('barn owl' — the KJV's 'swan' is almost certainly incorrect; the tinshemet is more plausibly identified as the barn owl or white owl based on the root nasham, 'to breathe heavily,' describing the bird's distinctive breathing sound).
17. Three more prohibited birds: qa'at ('desert owl' or 'pelican' — identification uncertain; may be a type of owl that inhabits ruins, cf. Ps 102:7), rachamah ('Egyptian vulture' — the KJV's 'gier eagle'; the name may relate to rechem, 'womb,' possibly referring to the bird's parental behavior), and shalakh ('cormorant' or 'fisher-owl' — a diving waterbird).
18. The final group: chasidah ('stork' — from chesed, 'faithful love/loyalty,' perhaps named for its devoted parental care), anafah leminnah ('heron after its kind'), dukhifat ('hoopoe' — a distinctive crested bird), and atalef ('bat'). The inclusion of the bat — a mammal, not a bird — reflects the ancient classification system, which grouped flying creatures together by observable behavior (flight) rather than by internal anatomy. The Hebrew category tsippor ('flying creature') is functionally broader than the English word 'bird.'
19. The phrase sherets ha'of ('swarming thing of the wing' — winged swarming creatures) likely refers to flying insects. The blanket prohibition is qualified in Leviticus 11:21-22, which permits certain locusts with jointed legs for jumping. Deuteronomy's more absolute statement may represent a simplified summary of the more detailed Levitical regulations, or it may reflect a stricter tradition.
20. This closing permission mirrors verse 11, forming an inclusio around the bird laws. The principle is permissive by default: any flying creature not specifically prohibited is available for food. The word tahor ('clean/pure') here means ritually permitted for consumption.
21. This dense verse contains three distinct laws. First, the nevelah prohibition: animals that died naturally (not slaughtered) may not be eaten by Israelites, but may be given to the ger ('resident foreigner') or sold to a nokhri ('foreign trader'). This creates a tiered system of dietary obligation based on covenant status. Second, the holiness rationale is repeated: ki am qadosh attah ('because you are a holy people'). Third, the enigmatic law lo tevashel gedi bachalev immo ('do not cook a young goat in its mother's milk') — this prohibition, appearing three times in the Torah (Exod 23:19; 34:26; here), became the foundation of the Jewish separation of meat and dairy. Its original context may have been an anti-Canaanite worship practice, a prohibition against cruelty (perverting the maternal substance into a cooking medium), or both.

- 22.** The chapter shifts from dietary laws to tithing regulations. The infinitive absolute *asser te'asser* ('tithing you shall tithe' — you must fully tithe) intensifies the command. The tithe applies to *kol tevu'at zar'ekha* ('all the produce of your seed') — everything the land yields from planting. The phrase *shanah shanah* ('year by year') establishes this as an annual obligation, not a one-time act. This section (vv 22-29) describes a tithe consumed at the central sanctuary — distinct from the Levitical tithe of Numbers 18:21-24.
- 23.** The purpose of the tithe meal is explicitly stated: *lema'an tilmad leyir'ah et YHWH* ('so that you will learn to fear/revere the LORD'). The verb *tilmad* ('you will learn') is striking — reverence for God is not assumed but learned, and the tithe meal is one of the teaching instruments. Eating the tithe in God's presence creates a regular, embodied experience of divine encounter that shapes the worshiper's character over time. The triad *degan, tirosh, yitshar* ('grain, new wine, olive oil') represents the staple agricultural products.
- 24.** A practical concession for distance: *ki yirbeh mimmekha hadderekh* ('if the way is too great for you') acknowledges that transporting agricultural produce and livestock over long distances may be impractical. The phrase *ki lo tukhal se'eto* ('because you are not able to carry it') is refreshingly practical — God's law accommodates physical limitations. The ironic note is that the problem arises *ki yevarekekha YHWH* ('because the LORD has blessed you') — the abundance itself makes transport difficult.
- 25.** The solution to the transport problem is monetization: *venatattah bakkessef* ('you shall convert it into silver/money'). This is a remarkable economic provision — it presupposes a monetary economy where agricultural goods can be converted to and from currency. The phrase *vetsarta hakkessef beyadekha* ('bind the silver in your hand') describes physically wrapping coins or silver pieces in cloth or a pouch for safe travel. The commercial sophistication of this law is notable for its period.
- 26.** The freedom of purchase is remarkably broad: *bekhol asher te'avveh nafshekha* ('whatever your soul desires') — cattle, sheep, wine, and even *shekhar* ('beer/strong drink' — a fermented beverage, possibly from barley or dates). The inclusion of alcoholic beverages in a divinely mandated celebration is notable: the tithe feast is meant to be genuinely enjoyable. The purpose remains worship: *veakhalta sham lifnei YHWH* ('you shall eat there before the LORD'). The pairing of eating and rejoicing (*vesamachta*) reinforces that celebration is integral to Deuteronomic worship.
- 27.** The Levite provision repeats from 12:19 — the repetition underscores its importance. The phrase *lo ta'azvenu* ('do not abandon him, do not neglect him') uses a verb that implies leaving someone destitute and unsupported. Since the Levite has no land (*ein lo cheleq venachalah immakh* — 'he has no portion or inheritance with you'), the tithe system is his economic lifeline. The *setumah* marks the transition to the third-year tithe.
- 28.** The third-year tithe introduces a different system: instead of consuming the tithe at the central sanctuary, this tithe stays local — *vehinachta bisharekha* ('store it in your towns/gates'). This provision creates a local welfare fund on a three-year cycle. The phrase *miqgetseh shalosh shanim* ('at the end of three years') establishes the cycle. In years one, two, four, and five the tithe goes to the central sanctuary; in years three and six it stays local for the poor and Levites.
- 29.** The four vulnerable groups in Israelite society appear together: the Levite (no land), the *ger* ('foreigner/resident alien' — lacks tribal membership), the *yatom* ('orphan/fatherless' — lacks family support), and the *almanah* ('widow' — lacks a husband's provision). These four categories represent the economically vulnerable who lack the normal social safety nets of land, family, and male protection. The goal is *ve'akhlu vesave'u* ('they shall eat and be satisfied') — not mere subsistence but genuine sufficiency. The tithe creates God's welfare system. The motivation clause — *lema'an yevarekekha YHWH* ('so that the LORD will bless you') — links generosity to the poor with divine blessing on the giver's own labor.

15

Summary: *Moses legislates the sabbatical year release of debts, commands generosity toward the poor, and regulates the release of Hebrew slaves in the seventh year.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The tension between verses 4 and 11 is deliberate: 'there will be no one in need among you' (v. 4) and 'the needy will never cease from the land' (v. 11). The first is the promise if Israel obeys fully; the second is the realistic provision because they will not. Jesus quotes verse 11 in Mark 14:7, and the statement makes sense only against the backdrop of verse 4's unfulfilled ideal.*

Translation Friction: *The word shemittah (v. 1, 'release') from the root sh-m-t ('let drop, let fall') describes not merely deferral but release — the debt falls away. Whether the shemittah cancels debts permanently or suspends collection for the sabbatical year was debated in rabbinic literature. We rendered it 'release' and noted both interpretations. The freed slave's declaration 'I love my master' (v. 16) uses the same verb ahav as the Shema's command to love God.*

Connections: *The sabbatical release connects to Leviticus 25's Jubilee legislation. The slave-release law echoes Exodus 21:2-6 with Deuteronomy's characteristic humanitarian motivation. Nehemiah 10:31 records the community recommitting to the shemittah. The 'open your hand' command (v. 8) becomes proverbial for generosity.*

¹At the end of every seven years, you must grant a release. ²This is how the release works: every creditor must release what he has lent to his neighbor. He must not press his neighbor or his brother for payment, because the LORD's release has been proclaimed. ³You may collect from a foreigner, but whatever your brother owes you, your hand must release. ⁴There should, however, be no one in need among you, because the LORD will certainly bless you in the land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance to possess — ⁵but only if you truly listen to the voice of the LORD your God and carefully observe this entire commandment that I am giving you today. ⁶For the LORD your God will bless you as He promised. You will lend to many nations but will not need to borrow. You will exercise authority over many nations, but they will not exercise authority over you. ⁷If there is a needy person among you — any one of your brothers in any of your towns in the land that the LORD your God is giving you — you must not harden your heart or close your fist against your needy brother. ⁸Rather, you must open your hand wide to him and willingly lend him whatever he needs to meet his lack. ⁹Guard yourself against harboring this base thought: 'The seventh year — the year of release — is approaching,' causing you to look with hostility at your needy brother and refuse to give to him. He would cry out to the LORD against you, and you would bear the guilt of sin. ¹⁰Give to him generously, and do not let your heart resent it when you give. Because of this very act, the LORD your God will bless you in all your work and in everything you undertake. ¹¹For the needy will never disappear from the land. That is why I am commanding you: open your hand wide to your brother, to the afflicted and the destitute in your land. ¹²If your brother — a Hebrew man or a Hebrew woman — is sold to you and serves you for six years, in the seventh year you must send him out as a free person. ¹³When you release him as free, you must not send him away empty-handed. ¹⁴Supply him generously from your flock, your threshing floor, and your winepress. From what the LORD your God has blessed you with, give to him. ¹⁵Remember that you yourself were a slave in the land of Egypt and the LORD your God redeemed you. That is why I am commanding you this today. ¹⁶But if the servant says to you, 'I do not want to leave you,' because he loves you and your household and is well off with you, ¹⁷then take an awl and push it through his earlobe into the door, and he will become your permanent servant. Do the same for your female servant. ¹⁸Do not consider it a hardship when you send him away free, because he has served you for six years at half the cost of a hired worker. And the LORD your God will bless you in everything you do. ¹⁹Every firstborn male born among your cattle and flocks you must consecrate to the LORD your God. You must not work your firstborn ox or shear your firstborn sheep. ²⁰Eat it in the presence of the LORD your God year after year, at the place the LORD will choose — you and your household. ²¹But if it has any defect — if it is lame or blind or has any serious flaw — you must not sacrifice it to the LORD your God. ²²Eat it within your own towns. Both the ritually impure and the ritually pure may eat it together, just as you would eat gazelle or deer. ²³Only do not eat its blood. Pour it out on the ground like water.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The shemittah ('release') is introduced with the simplest possible formula: *miqqets sheva shanim ta'aseh shemittah* ('at the end of seven years, make a release'). The word *shemittah* comes from the root *shamat* ('to let drop, to release, to let go') and describes the cancellation or suspension of debts. This seven-year cycle connects to the sabbatical pattern throughout the Torah — six days of work and one of rest, six years of labor and one of release. The sabbatical principle extends from time (Sabbath) to economics (debt release).
2. The mechanics are spelled out: *shamot kol ba'al mashheh yado* ('every owner of a loan of his hand shall release' — every creditor must let go of what he has lent). The phrase *lo yiggosh et re'ehu ve'et achiv* ('he shall not press his neighbor or his brother') uses the verb *nagash* ('to press, to exact, to oppress') — aggressive debt collection is forbidden during the release year. The theological basis is *ki qara shemittah laYHWH* ('because a release has been proclaimed for the LORD') — the release belongs to God; it is His decree, not a voluntary act of human generosity.
3. A distinction is drawn between the *nokhri* ('foreigner' — a non-Israelite who has no covenant relationship) and the *ach* ('brother' — a fellow Israelite bound by the same covenant). The debt release applies within the covenant community. Commercial debts with foreigners operate under different rules because the foreigner does not participate in the sabbatical cycle. The phrase *tashmeit yadekha* ('your hand shall release') personalizes the action — your own hand must let go of the claim.
4. The statement *efes ki lo yihyeh bekha evyon* ('there should be no needy person among you') expresses the divine ideal: in a fully obedient Israel, God's blessing would eliminate poverty entirely. The infinitive absolute *barekh yevarekekha* ('blessing He will bless you') intensifies the promise. Yet verse 11 will acknowledge that the poor will never fully disappear — creating a deliberate tension between the ideal (no poverty in a blessed land) and the reality (poverty persists because obedience is imperfect). This tension drives the legislation that follows.

5. The condition is emphatic: *raq im shamo'a tishma* ('only if listening you listen' — only if you truly, deeply listen). The infinitive absolute intensifies the demand. The elimination of poverty (v 4) is conditional on perfect obedience — something the text implicitly acknowledges will not be fully achieved (v 11). The phrase *kol hammitsvah hazzot* ('this entire commandment') treats the debt-release law not as one regulation among many but as a complete commandment demanding whole obedience.
6. The blessing of obedience is described in economic and political terms: *veha'avatta goyim rabbim* ('you will lend to many nations') and *umashalta begoyim rabbim* ('you will rule over many nations'). Lending implies surplus; ruling implies strength. The negative counterparts — *ve'attah lo ta'avot* ('you will not borrow') and *uvekha lo yimsholu* ('they will not rule over you') — describe independence from foreign economic or political domination. The *setumah* marks the transition to the specific laws about generosity to the poor.
7. Two vivid metaphors prohibit indifference: *lo te'ammets et levavekha* ('do not harden your heart' — do not make your heart rigid, unyielding) and *lo tiqpts et yadekha* ('do not close your fist' — do not clench your hand shut). The heart controls the will; the hand controls the action. Both interior attitude and external behavior must remain open. The phrase *me'achad acheikha be'achad she'arekha* ('from one of your brothers in one of your gates') makes the obligation specific and local — this is not abstract charity but concrete response to a known person in a nearby community.
8. The counter-command reverses the metaphor: *patoach tiftach et yadekha* ('opening you shall open your hand' — fling your hand wide open). The infinitive absolute intensifies the command — this is not tentative charity but generous, wholehearted giving. The phrase *dei machsoro asher yechsar lo* ('sufficient for his lack, what he is lacking') calibrates the giving to the actual need — not a fixed amount but whatever is required. The loan must be adequate to the borrower's specific situation.
9. Moses exposes the specific temptation created by the *shemittah* system: as the seventh year approaches, a lender knows that any loan will soon be cancelled — creating a financial incentive to refuse lending. The phrase *davar im levavekha veliyya'al* ('a worthless/wicked thought in your heart') uses the same *beliyya'al* term from 13:14, connecting economic stinginess with the same moral category as idolatrous rebellion. The phrase *ra'ah einekha* ('your eye is evil/hostile') describes looking at the poor person with resentment rather than compassion. The consequence is dire: the poor person will *qara alekha el YHWH* ('cry out against you to the LORD') — the cry of the oppressed always reaches God (cf. Exod 22:22-23).
10. The infinitive absolute *naton titten* ('giving you shall give') demands generous, unhesitating action. The phrase *velo yera levavekha* ('let your heart not be evil/resentful') addresses the interior attitude: grudging compliance is not enough. The motivation is pragmatic as well as moral: *ki biglal hadavar hazzeh* ('because of this very thing') the LORD will bless you. Generosity is not financial loss but investment — God returns blessing in response to obedience. The phrase *bekhol ma'asekha uvkhol mishlach yadekha* ('in all your work and in everything your hand is sent to') extends the blessing to every sphere of economic activity.
11. The tension with verse 4 is deliberate: there, Moses says there should be no poor; here, he says *ki lo yechdal evyon miqqerev ha'arets* ('the needy will never cease from the midst of the land'). The ideal (v 4) is conditional on perfect obedience; the reality (v 11) acknowledges that obedience will be imperfect. Jesus quotes this verse in Mark 14:7, not to justify indifference to poverty but to affirm the ongoing obligation to give. The command *patoach tiftach* ('open wide your hand') is repeated from verse 8, framing the entire section. Three terms describe the recipients: *achikha* ('your brother'), *aniyyekha* ('your afflicted/poor one'), and *evyonekha* ('your needy one') — escalating levels of deprivation.
12. The law now addresses debt-slavery — a person who, unable to repay debts, sells their labor. The parallel law in Exodus 21:2-6 mentions only male servants; Deuteronomy explicitly includes *ha'ivriyyah* ('the Hebrew woman'), extending the six-year limit and seventh-year release to women as well. This is a significant expansion of protection. The term *chofshi* ('free') describes a person released from all service obligations — legally unencumbered. The seven-year cycle echoes the *shemittah* principle: just as debts are released, so are debt-servants.
13. The prohibition *lo teshallechenu reqam* ('you shall not send him away empty') prevents the released servant from being cast out with nothing. Freedom without resources is precarious — the person would likely fall back into debt and servitude. This law addresses the systemic problem: mere legal release is insufficient without economic provision. The verse establishes the principle; the next verse specifies the provision.
14. The infinitive absolute *ha'aneq ta'aniq* ('supplying you shall supply' — furnish generously) demands lavish provision. Three sources are specified: *tsonekha* ('your flock' — livestock), *garnekha* ('your threshing floor' — grain), and *yiqvekha* ('your winepress' — wine). These three represent the full range of agricultural wealth: animals, grain, and wine. The principle is proportional: *asher berakekha YHWH Elohekha titten lo* ('from what the LORD your God has blessed you, give to him'). The released servant receives a share of God's blessing on the master's prosperity.
15. The exodus motivation grounds the entire slave-release law: *vezakharta ki eved hayita be'erets Mitsrayim* ('remember that you were a slave in Egypt'). Israel cannot hold permanent power over fellow Israelites because Israel itself was once enslaved. The verb *padakh* ('He redeemed you') uses the kinsman-redeemer concept — God paid the price to free Israel from Pharaoh's service. Having been redeemed themselves, Israelites must extend freedom to others. Ethical obligation flows from experienced grace.
16. The exception case: a servant who chooses to stay. The reasons are positive — *ki ahevekha ve'et bedeutekha* ('because he loves you and your household') and *ki tov lo immakh* ('because things are good for him with you'). This is not coercion but genuine preference — the servant's quality of life with the master exceeds what he could achieve independently. The law assumes that some masters treat their servants well enough to inspire voluntary permanent attachment.
17. The ear-piercing ceremony: the *martse'a* ('awl, pointed instrument') is driven through the servant's ear against the door, creating a permanent mark of voluntary servitude. The ear — the organ of hearing and obedience — is symbolically pierced, indicating permanent commitment to hearing and obeying the master. The phrase *eved olam* ('permanent servant') describes lifelong service. The extension *ve'af la'amatekha ta'aseh ken* ('also for your female servant you shall do likewise') again includes women in the same legal framework as men — a distinctive feature of Deuteronomy's legislation.

- 18.** The phrase *lo yiqsheh ve'einekha* ('let it not be hard in your eyes') addresses the master's potential resentment at losing a servant's labor. The economic argument follows: *ki mishneh sekhar sakhir avadekha* ('because he has served you at double a hired worker's value' — or alternatively, 'at half the cost of a hired worker'). A debt-servant costs less than a hired laborer because the servant receives no wages. After six years of below-market labor costs, the master has already benefited significantly. The *petuchah* paragraph marker signals a major section break.
- 19.** The firstborn law: *kol habbekhor asher yivvale bivqarkha uvtsonekhah hazzakhar taqdish laYHWH* ('every firstborn male born in your herd and flock you shall consecrate to the LORD'). Consecration means setting the animal apart from ordinary use — hence the two prohibitions: *lo ta'avod* ('do not work' — the firstborn ox cannot be used for plowing) and *lo tagoz* ('do not shear' — the firstborn sheep's wool cannot be harvested). The animal belongs to God from birth; using it for human benefit would violate that consecration. This law connects to the foundational principle of the exodus: God claimed Israel's firstborn because He spared them in Egypt (Exod 13:2).
- 20.** The firstborn animal is consumed as a sacred meal — *lifnei YHWH Elohekha* ('in the presence of the LORD your God') at the central sanctuary. The phrase *shanah veshanah* ('year by year') indicates an annual pilgrimage obligation. The inclusion of *uveitikha* ('your household') makes this a family celebration. The firstborn offering thus serves double duty: it honors God's claim on the firstborn and provides an occasion for communal worship and feasting.
- 21.** The exception for blemished firstborn: an animal with a *mum* ('defect, blemish') cannot be offered as a sacrifice. Two specific examples are given — *pisheach* ('lame') and *ivver* ('blind') — followed by the catch-all *kol mum ra* ('any serious/bad defect'). The principle is that only the best may be offered to God — a defective sacrifice insults the one receiving it (cf. Mal 1:8). This does not mean the animal is wasted; the next verse provides for its consumption.
- 22.** The blemished firstborn reverts to the status of ordinary food: it may be eaten locally (*bisharekha* — 'in your gates/towns') by anyone regardless of ritual purity status (*hattamei vehattahor yachdav* — 'the impure and the pure together'). The comparison to gazelle and deer (*tsevi* and *ayyal*) echoes the secular slaughter permission of 12:15, 22 — blemished firstborn are treated like wild game, not like sacred offerings.
- 23.** The blood prohibition appears once more (cf. 12:16, 23-25), applying specifically to the blemished firstborn eaten locally. Even when a consecrated animal is consumed as ordinary food due to a blemish, the universal blood prohibition remains in force. The instruction to pour it out *kammayim* ('like water') — as disposal, not as ritual — maintains the distinction between sacred and secular slaughter. The *petuchah* paragraph break marks the end of the firstborn legislation and transitions to the festival calendar in chapter 16.

16

Summary: *Moses prescribes the three pilgrimage festivals — Passover with unleavened bread, the Festival of Weeks, and the Festival of Shelters — then appoints judges to administer righteous justice.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Hebrew calendar is organized around liberation memory: Passover recalls the exodus, Weeks celebrates the grain harvest with thanksgiving, and Shelters remembers the wilderness journey. The phrase *lechem oni* (v. 3, 'bread of hardship/poverty') redefines unleavened bread — it is not celebratory bread but slave bread, eaten in haste because there was no time to let it rise. The transition from festivals (vv. 1-17) to judges (vv. 18-20) is not random: righteous worship requires righteous justice.*

Translation Friction: *The word *atseret* (v. 8, 'solemn assembly') marks the concluding day of a festival period. We rendered it 'solemn assembly' but the Hebrew carries the sense of 'restraint' — a day of stopping, holding back from work. The phrase *tsedeq tsedeq tirdof* (v. 20, 'justice, justice you shall pursue') doubles the noun for emphasis — we preserved the repetition because flattening it to 'pursue justice' loses the Hebrew's insistence.*

Connections: *The festival calendar parallels Exodus 23:14-17 and Leviticus 23 with Deuteronomy's characteristic social inclusion (v. 11: 'you, your son, your daughter, your servant, the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan, the widow'). The Passover command shapes the Last Supper narratives (Matthew 26, Mark 14, Luke 22). The justice mandate in v. 20 grounds the prophetic tradition from Amos 5:24 to Micah 6:8.*

¹Keep watch over the month of Aviv and celebrate the Passover to the LORD your God, because in the month of Aviv the LORD your God brought you out of Egypt during the night. ²Sacrifice the Passover offering to the LORD your God from the flock or the herd, at the place the LORD will choose as the dwelling for His name. ³Do not eat anything leavened with it. For seven days eat unleavened bread with it — bread of hardship — because you departed from the land of Egypt in urgent haste. Do this so that you remember the day you left Egypt for the rest of your life. ⁴No leaven may be found anywhere in your

territory for seven days. And none of the meat you sacrifice on the evening of the first day may remain until morning. ⁵You may not sacrifice the Passover offering in just any of your towns that the LORD your God is giving you. ⁶Only at the place the LORD your God will choose as the dwelling for His name — there you must sacrifice the Passover offering in the evening, at sunset, at the same time of year that you departed from Egypt. ⁷Cook it and eat it at the place the LORD your God will choose, then in the morning you may return to your camps. ⁸For six days eat unleavened bread, and on the seventh day hold a solemn assembly to the LORD your God. Do no work on that day. ⁹Count seven weeks for yourself. Begin counting the seven weeks from the time you first put the sickle to the standing grain. ¹⁰Then celebrate the Festival of Weeks to the LORD your God with a voluntary offering from your hand, given in proportion to how the LORD your God has blessed you. ¹¹Celebrate in the presence of the LORD your God — you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, the Levite who lives in your towns, the foreigner, the orphan, and the widow who are among you — at the place the LORD your God will choose as the dwelling for His name. ¹²Remember that you were once a slave in Egypt, and carefully observe these decrees. ¹³Celebrate the Festival of Shelters for seven days after you have gathered the produce from your threshing floor and your winepress. ¹⁴Rejoice during your festival — you, your son, your daughter, your male servant, your female servant, the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan, and the widow who live in your towns. ¹⁵For seven days celebrate the festival to the LORD your God at the place the LORD will choose, because the LORD your God will bless you in all your produce and in all the work of your hands, and you will be nothing but joyful. ¹⁶Three times each year, every male among you must appear before the LORD your God at the place He will choose: at the Festival of Unleavened Bread, the Festival of Weeks, and the Festival of Shelters. No one may appear before the LORD empty-handed. ¹⁷Each person must give according to what he can afford, in proportion to the blessing the LORD your God has given you. ¹⁸Appoint judges and officials for yourselves in all your towns that the LORD your God is giving you, tribe by tribe. They must judge the people with righteous justice. ¹⁹Do not pervert justice. Do not show favoritism. Do not accept a bribe, because a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise and twists the words of the righteous. ²⁰Justice — justice alone — you must pursue, so that you may live and possess the land the LORD your God is giving you. ²¹Do not set up an Asherah pole — any kind of wooden pole — beside the altar of the LORD your God that you will build. ²²And do not erect a sacred pillar — the LORD your God detests them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The festival calendar opens with Passover, anchored to chodesh ha'Aviv ('the month of Aviv/Abib'). Aviv means 'spring' or 'ripening grain' — it refers to the month when barley reaches maturity (later called Nisan in the Babylonian calendar). The verb shamor ('keep watch, guard, observe') implies vigilant attention to the calendar. The phrase hotsi'akha YHWH... laylah ('the LORD brought you out... at night') anchors the festival to the historical event: the nighttime exodus from Egypt. Every annual observance re-enacts and memorializes that founding deliverance.
2. Deuteronomy's Passover instruction differs from Exodus 12, which specifies only a lamb (seh). Here, both tson uvaqar ('flock and herd' — sheep/goats and cattle) are permitted. This likely reflects the additional festival offerings (chagigah) that accompanied the Passover lamb during pilgrimage celebrations. The centralization formula — bammaqom asher yivchar YHWH leshakken shemo sham ('at the place the LORD will choose to cause His name to dwell there') — shifts Passover from a household celebration (as in Exodus 12) to a centralized pilgrimage festival.
3. The chamets ('leavened bread') prohibition and the matstsot ('unleavened bread') requirement are linked to the exodus narrative: bechipazon yatsata ('you went out in haste/urgency'). The dough had no time to rise. The phrase lechem oni ('bread of affliction/hardship/poverty') describes the unleavened bread — it is poor person's bread, the bread of slaves and refugees. Eating it for seven days re-creates the sensory experience of the exodus. The purpose clause lema'an tizkor ('so that you will remember') establishes the festival as a memorial practice — kol yemei chayyekha ('all the days of your life') extends the obligation to every year of the individual's life.
4. Two prohibitions: first, se'or ('leaven/yeast starter') must not even be visible (lo yera'eh) anywhere in your territory (bekhol gevulekha) for seven days — a total purge of leaven from the household and beyond. Second, the sacrificial meat from the first evening must be consumed entirely before dawn — lo yalin... labboqer ('it shall not remain overnight until morning'). This mirrors the original Passover instructions in Exodus 12:10. Nothing sacred may be left to decay; the meal must be complete before the new day begins.
5. The centralization principle applies specifically to Passover: lo tukhal lizboach et happesach be'achad she'arekha ('you are not able to sacrifice the Passover in one of your gates'). The verb tukhal ('you are able, you may') frames the prohibition as impossibility within the covenant framework — it is not merely forbidden but categorically impermissible. This represents a significant shift from the household Passover of Exodus 12 to a centralized pilgrimage Passover.

6. Three temporal markers converge: ba'arev ('in the evening'), kevo hashemesh ('at the going down of the sun' — sunset), and mo'ed tsetekha miMitsrayim ('the appointed time of your departure from Egypt'). The sacrifice occurs at twilight — the transition between day and night — matching the original Passover timing (Exod 12:6). The word mo'ed ('appointed time, season') connects the annual observance to the historical moment: every Passover evening reenacts the original evening of deliverance.
7. The verb uvishalta ('you shall cook/boil') differs from Exodus 12:9, which specifies tseli esh ('roasted with fire') and prohibits boiling. The verb bashal can mean 'to cook' generally or 'to boil' specifically. The Chronicler resolves this by stating they 'cooked the Passover in fire' (2 Chr 35:13), using bashal in its general sense. The phrase ufanita babboqer vehalakhta le'ohalekha ('turn in the morning and go to your tents') indicates that pilgrims stayed overnight at the central sanctuary and departed the next morning. The word ohalekha ('your tents') may be literal (temporary pilgrim shelters) or metaphorical for 'your homes.'
8. The seven-day festival concludes with an atseret ('solemn assembly, closing ceremony') — a sacred gathering marked by cessation from work (lo ta'aseh melakhah — 'do no work'). The atseret signals the formal conclusion of the festival, like a bookend. The six days of eating unleavened bread (not seven, as in v 3 — the apparent discrepancy may indicate that the first day was counted separately as the Passover proper, with six additional days of unleavened bread following). The setumah marks the transition to the second festival.
9. The second pilgrimage festival — Shavuot (Weeks) — is defined by a counting process: shiv'ah shavu'ot tispor lakh ('count seven weeks for yourself'). The starting point is mehachel chermesh baqqamah ('from when the sickle begins in the standing grain') — the first day of grain harvest. This creates a direct link between agriculture and worship: the festival is not dated to a fixed calendar day but to the harvest cycle. The counting of forty-nine days (seven weeks) creates the 'Counting of the Omer' practice (cf. Lev 23:15-16).
10. The chag shavu'ot ('Festival of Weeks') is celebrated with missat nidvat yadekha ('a proportion of the freewill offering of your hand'). The word missat (from the root masas, 'to measure') suggests proportional giving — the offering is calibrated to the giver's means. The phrase ka'asher yevarekekha YHWH ('as the LORD your God has blessed you') establishes proportionality as the governing principle: those blessed abundantly give abundantly; those blessed modestly give modestly. There is no fixed amount — generosity is relative to capacity.
11. The most expansive inclusion list in the festival calendar: the household (son, daughter, servants), the landless religious worker (Levite), and the three vulnerable populations (ger, yatom, almanah — foreigner, orphan, widow). All nine categories are commanded to celebrate together. The verb vesamachta ('you shall rejoice') makes joy an obligation, not an option. The Festival of Weeks is thus a powerful equalizer — at God's chosen place, social hierarchies dissolve into shared celebration.
12. The exodus memory is invoked again as the foundation for inclusive celebration: vezakharta ki eved hayita beMitsrayim ('remember that you were a slave in Egypt'). The connection is implicit but powerful: because you were once excluded and enslaved, your festivals must include everyone — especially those who might otherwise be excluded. The petuchah paragraph break marks the major transition to the third pilgrimage festival.
13. The third pilgrimage festival: chag haSuccot ('Festival of Shelters/Booths/Tabernacles'). Unlike Passover (tied to the exodus) and Weeks (tied to wheat harvest), Sukkot is tied to the final ingathering (be'ospekha — 'when you gather in') from both the threshing floor (grain) and winepress (grapes). It is the autumn harvest festival, celebrating the completion of the agricultural year. The seven-day duration makes it the longest of the three pilgrimage festivals.
14. The inclusion list repeats from verse 11, reinforcing the principle: no festival may be celebrated alone or exclusively. The verb vesamachta ('you shall rejoice') appears again — joy is not merely permitted but commanded. The phrase bechagekha ('during your festival') makes the festival itself the occasion for joy. Sukkot was traditionally considered the most joyful of all festivals; the Talmud (Sukkah 51a) describes its celebrations as unparalleled.
15. The phrase vehayita akh sameach ('you will be nothing but joyful' — literally, 'you will be only rejoicing') is one of the strongest joy commands in Scripture. The particle akh ('only, nothing but') intensifies the command — there should be no room for anything other than joy during this festival. The basis for this joy is God's comprehensive blessing: bekhool tevu'atekha ('in all your produce') and bekhool ma'aseh yadekha ('in all the work of your hands'). The completed harvest is visible evidence of divine faithfulness.
16. This summary verse lists all three pilgrimage festivals together: chag hamMatstsot ('Festival of Unleavened Bread/Passover'), chag haShavu'ot ('Festival of Weeks'), and chag haSuccot ('Festival of Shelters'). The requirement applies to kol zekhurchah ('all your males') — the pilgrimage obligation is mandatory for males, though women and children could attend and often did (cf. 1 Sam 1:3-4). The phrase yera'eh et penei YHWH ('shall appear before the face of the LORD') can also be read as a passive/niphal: 'shall be seen by the face of the LORD' — the encounter goes both ways. The prohibition velo yera'eh... reqam ('shall not appear empty') requires every pilgrim to bring an offering.
17. The proportional giving principle is restated: ish kemattenat yado ('each man according to the gift of his hand' — according to his ability). The phrase kevirkat YHWH Elohekha ('according to the blessing of the LORD your God') makes God's blessing the measure — you give from what God has given you. This prevents both the wealthy from giving token amounts and the poor from being burdened beyond their means. The setumah marks the transition from the festival calendar to the judicial section.
18. The judicial section introduces two roles: sho'tim ('judges' — those who render legal decisions) and shotrim ('officers/officials' — those who enforce judicial decisions, functioning as court administrators or police). The phrase bekhool she'arekha ('in all your gates/towns') mandates a local judicial system — justice must be accessible to every community, not concentrated only at the central sanctuary. The mandate is mishpat tsedeq ('judgment of righteousness/just judgment') — not merely formal legal process but substantively righteous outcomes.

- 19.** Three judicial corruptions are prohibited: *lo tatteh mishpat* ('do not bend/pervert justice' — distorting legal outcomes), *lo takkir panim* ('do not recognize faces' — showing favoritism based on status, wealth, or personal connection), and *lo tiqqach shochad* ('do not accept a bribe'). The reason for the bribe prohibition is psychological: *hashochad ye'avver eini chakhamim* ('a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise') — even wise, experienced judges become unable to see truth clearly when corrupted by payment. The parallel *vayesallef divrei tsaddiqim* ('and twists the words of the righteous') indicates that bribery doesn't just affect stupid people — it corrupts even those who are normally righteous and wise.
- 20.** The emphatic repetition *tsedeq tsedeq tirdof* ('justice, justice you shall pursue') is one of the most quoted phrases in the Hebrew Bible. The doubling of *tsedeq* is interpreted variously: 'justice and only justice,' 'thorough justice,' 'justice in every case,' or 'justice by just means.' The verb *tirdof* ('you shall pursue, you shall chase') implies active, energetic effort — justice does not come to you; you must chase it. The stakes are national survival: *lema'an tichyeh veyarashta et ha'arets* ('so that you may live and possess the land'). Justice and life in the land are inseparable — injustice leads to exile.
- 21.** The prohibition against planting an *asherah* (a sacred wooden pole or tree associated with the Canaanite goddess Asherah) beside YHWH's altar addresses the specific temptation of syncretism — blending Canaanite and Israelite worship at the same site. The phrase *kol ets* ('any tree/wood') broadens the prohibition: no wooden cult object of any kind may stand near God's altar. The placement of this law after the justice section (vv 18-20) may seem abrupt, but it connects to the judicial theme: just as justice must be pure and uncompromised, so must worship.
- 22.** The *matstsevah* ('standing stone, sacred pillar') prohibition echoes 12:3, where Israel was commanded to smash the nations' pillars. The brief but powerful phrase *asher sane YHWH Elohekha* ('which the LORD your God hates') uses the strongest possible language of divine aversion. The personal emotional language — God 'hates' these objects — moves beyond legal prohibition to theological revulsion. The *setumah* marks the end of this section, transitioning to chapter 17's judicial and royal legislation.

17

Summary: *Moses addresses judicial procedure for difficult cases, requiring multiple witnesses for capital crimes, and sets out the law of the king — Israel's future monarch must copy the Torah and read it daily.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The king law (vv. 14-20) is the most restrained royal charter in the ancient Near East. The king must not multiply horses (military power), wives (political alliances), or silver and gold (treasury). He must write a personal copy of the Torah — mishneh haTorah (v. 18, 'a copy of this Law'), which gives Deuteronomy its Greek name. The king is not above the Law; he is its first student. His heart must not 'rise above his brothers' (v. 20) — kingship is leveled to brotherhood.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase mishneh haTorah (v. 18) could mean 'a copy of this law' or 'a second law' or 'a repetition of this law' — the LXX translated it as deuteronomion ('second law'), giving the book its English name. We rendered it 'a copy of this Law.' The judicial escalation 'if a case is too difficult for you' (v. 8) uses the verb yipale, from the same root as 'wonderful/extraordinary' — the hard case is literally 'too wonderful' for local courts.*

Connections: *The king law shapes the evaluation of every monarch in Kings — Solomon violates all three prohibitions (1 Kings 10-11). The prophet-like-Moses promise (18:15) functions as the king law's counterpart — prophet checks king. Josiah's Torah discovery (2 Kings 22:8-13) fulfills the mishneh haTorah command. The multiple-witness requirement (v. 6) is cited in Matthew 18:16 and 2 Corinthians 13:1.*

¹You must not sacrifice to the LORD your God an ox or sheep that has any defect or serious flaw, because that is detestable to the LORD your God. ²If a man or woman is found among you, in any of the towns the LORD your God is giving you, who does what is evil in the sight of the LORD your God by violating His covenant — ³by going to serve other gods and bowing down to them — whether the sun, the moon, or any of the heavenly host, which I have not commanded — ⁴and it is reported to you and you hear about it, then you must investigate thoroughly. If it is confirmed as true — if this abomination has been committed in Israel — ⁵then bring that man or that woman who committed this wicked act out to your city gate — that man or that woman — and stone them to death. ⁶A person may be put to death only on the testimony of two or three witnesses. No one may be executed on the testimony of a single witness. ⁷The hands of the witnesses must be the first raised against the condemned person to execute the sentence, and then the hands of all the people. In this way you will purge the evil from your midst. ⁸If a legal case arises in your towns that is too difficult for you to decide — whether it involves bloodshed, civil disputes, or physical injuries — any contested matter, then go up to the place the LORD your God will choose. ⁹Go to the

Levitical priests and to the judge serving at that time. Inquire of them, and they will announce the legal verdict to you. ¹⁰You must carry out the decision they announce to you from that place the LORD will choose. Be careful to do exactly as they instruct you. ¹¹Act according to the instruction of the law they teach you and the verdict they deliver to you. Do not deviate from the ruling they declare to you, either to the right or to the left. ¹²Anyone who acts presumptuously by refusing to obey the priest who stands serving the LORD your God there, or the judge — that person must die. You must purge the evil from Israel. ¹³All the people will hear about it and be afraid, and no one will act presumptuously again. ¹⁴When you enter the land the LORD your God is giving you, take possession of it, and settle in it, and you say, 'I want to set a king over me, like all the nations around me,' ¹⁵you may indeed set a king over you — but only one whom the LORD your God chooses. You must appoint a king from among your own brothers. You may not place a foreigner over you who is not one of your brothers. ¹⁶However, he must not acquire many horses for himself, and he must not send the people back to Egypt to acquire more horses, since the LORD has told you, 'You are never to go back that way again.' ¹⁷He must not acquire many wives, so that his heart will not be led astray. And he must not accumulate excessive amounts of silver and gold. ¹⁸When he takes his seat on the throne of his kingdom, he must write for himself a copy of this Law on a scroll, taken from the one kept by the Levitical priests. ¹⁹It must remain with him, and he must read from it every day of his life, so that he learns to revere the LORD his God by keeping all the words of this Law and these decrees, and carrying them out. ²⁰This will prevent his heart from becoming arrogant toward his brothers and keep him from deviating from the commandment in any direction, so that he and his descendants may enjoy a long reign over his kingdom in the midst of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse connects to the blemished-firstborn law of 15:21 but broadens the principle to all sacrificial animals. The phrase *mum kol davar ra* ('a blemish — any bad thing') combines the specific term *mum* ('defect, blemish') with the general *kol davar ra* ('any bad/evil thing'), creating a comprehensive prohibition. The verdict *ki to'avat YHWH Elohekha hu* ('because it is an abomination/detestable thing to the LORD your God') classifies defective offerings in the same category as idolatry and pagan practices — it is not merely improper but revolting to God. Offering the imperfect insults God's worth (cf. Malachi 1:6-14).
2. The judicial procedure begins with the discovery of covenant violation. The phrase *ish o ishah* ('man or woman') establishes gender equality before the law — both are equally subject to covenant obligations and penalties. The crime is defined as *la'avor berito* ('to cross over/transgress His covenant'). The verb *avar* ('to cross, to pass over') when applied to covenant means to violate its terms — literally 'crossing the line' of the covenant boundary. The specific violation is detailed in the next verse.
3. The specific covenant violation is apostasy: serving other gods (*ya'avod elohim acherim*) and bowing to them (*vayishtachu lahem*). Three forms of astral worship are singled out: the sun (*shemesh*), moon (*yareach*), and the host of heaven (*tseva hashamayim* — the stars and planets). Astral worship was widespread in the ancient Near East, particularly in Mesopotamian and Canaanite cultures. The phrase *asher lo tsivviti* ('which I have not commanded') is understated but devastating — these objects were not merely forbidden; they were never part of God's instructions. The authority of divine command is the criterion: if God did not command it, it has no place in worship.
4. The due process requirements parallel 13:15: *vedarashta heitev* ('you shall investigate thoroughly'). Three stages of judicial procedure are described: *huggad lekha* ('it is reported to you' — the initial report), *veshama'ta* ('you hear' — you receive the information), and *vedarashta heitev* ('you investigate well/thoroughly'). Only after exhaustive investigation, when *vehineh emet nakhon hadavar* ('behold, it is true, the matter is established'), can the case proceed. The standard of proof is high: both *emet* ('truth') and *nakhon* ('established, certain') must be met. The word *to'evah* ('abomination') classifies the crime.
5. The execution takes place *el she'arekha* ('at your gates') — the city gate was the judicial center in ancient Israelite towns, where elders sat, cases were heard, and public justice was administered (cf. Ruth 4:1-2). The phrase *et ha'ish o et ha'ishah* is repeated emphatically — regardless of gender, the same penalty applies. Stoning (*seqaltam ba'avanim vaMethu* — 'stone them with stones and they shall die') was a communal act of execution, involving the entire community in enforcing the covenant.
6. The two-witness rule: *al pi shenayim edim o sheloshah edim yumat hammet* ('on the mouth of two witnesses or three witnesses the condemned shall die'). This foundational due process requirement prevents false convictions based on personal grudges or fabricated testimony. The phrase *lo yumat al pi ed echad* ('he shall not die on the mouth of one witness') states the negative counterpart with equal force. This principle became foundational in both Jewish and Christian legal traditions (Matt 18:16; 2 Cor 13:1; 1 Tim 5:19).
7. The witnesses bear primary responsibility: *yad ha'edim tiyeh bo barishonah lahamito* ('the hand of the witnesses shall be upon him first to put him to death'). This requirement serves as a deterrent against false testimony — if you testify against someone, you must personally participate in carrying out the death sentence. Knowing that your own hand must strike the first blow makes false accusation a grave personal act. The phrase *vayad kol ha'am ba'acharonah* ('and the hand of all the people last') involves the entire community. The formula *uvi'arta hara miqqirbekha* ('purge the evil from your midst') closes the section, as in 13:6. The *petuchah* marks a major section break.

8. The appellate court system: *ki yippale mimmekha davar lammishpat* ('if a matter is too extraordinary/difficult for you to judge'). The verb *yippale* ('it is extraordinary, it is beyond you') uses the same root as *pele* ('wonder') — the case exceeds local judicial competence. Three categories are listed: *bein dam ledam* ('between blood and blood' — homicide cases, distinguishing murder from manslaughter), *bein din ledin* ('between legal claim and legal claim' — civil disputes), and *bein nega lanega* ('between skin affliction and skin affliction' — cases involving physical injury or ritual impurity). When local courts cannot resolve these, the case goes up (*ve'alita* — 'you shall go up,' reflecting Jerusalem's elevation) to the central sanctuary.
9. The central court has two components: *hakkohanim haLeviyim* ('the Levitical priests' — religious authority) and *hashofet asher yihyeh bayyamim hahem* ('the judge who will be in those days' — civil authority). This dual structure combines priestly Torah expertise with judicial experience. The phrase *vedarashta* ('you shall inquire') places the burden on the litigant to bring the case; the phrase *vehiggidu lekha* ('they shall tell you') grants the central court authority to render binding decisions. The term *devar hammishpat* ('the word/verdict of the judgment') is authoritative — it is not advice but legal ruling.
10. The binding authority of the central court is emphasized: *ve'asita al pi hadavar* ('you shall act according to the word/decision'). The phrase *veshamarta la'asot kekhol asher yorukha* ('you shall carefully do according to all that they instruct you') uses the verb *yarah* ('to instruct, to teach, to direct') — the same root as *Torah*. The central court's ruling carries the authority of *Torah* instruction. Compliance is not optional — the next verses establish the penalty for defiance.
11. Two sources of authority are distinguished: *haTorah asher yorukha* ('the Torah/instruction they teach you' — the legal principle) and *hammishpat asher yomeru lekha* ('the judgment they tell you' — the specific ruling). The prohibition *lo tasur min hadavar* ('do not turn aside from the matter') uses the same language as the prohibition against straying from God's commands generally (cf. 5:32; 28:14). The right/left metaphor (*yamin usmol*) describes any deviation — there is no acceptable departure from the central court's ruling in either direction.
12. The penalty for contempt of court is death: *veha'ish asher ya'aseh bezadon* ('the man who acts in presumption/arrogance'). The word *zadon* ('presumption, arrogance, willful defiance') describes not mere disagreement but deliberate, prideful refusal to submit to legitimate authority. The defiance is directed at both religious (*hakkohen ha'omed lesharet sham et YHWH* — 'the priest standing to serve the LORD there') and civil (*hashofet*) authority. The formula *umet ha'ish hahu* ('that man shall die') and *uvi'arta hara miYisrael* ('purge the evil from Israel') establish that defiance of the judicial system threatens the entire community's covenant standing.
13. The deterrent function: *vekhol ha'am yishme'u veyira'u* ('all the people will hear and fear'). The verb *yezidun* ('they will act presumptuously') uses the same root as *zadon* in verse 12, creating a verbal link — the punishment for presumption prevents future presumption. The *setumah* marks the transition to the king's law, one of the most distinctive passages in Deuteronomy.
14. The king's law (vv 14-20) is unique in the ancient Near East — no other nation's law code regulates the king's behavior. The scenario is anticipatory: *ki tavo el ha'arets* ('when you come into the land'). The desire for a king is presented as Israel's initiative — *ve'amarta asimah alai melekh* ('you will say, I will set over me a king'). The motivation is conformity: *kekhol haggoyim asher sevivotai* ('like all the nations around me'). This is telling: the request is driven by imitation of other nations, not by divine instruction. The text does not condemn kingship outright but subjects it to strict conditions.
15. Three conditions for kingship: first, *som tasim* ('setting you may set' — the infinitive absolute grants permission but with the following qualifications). Second, *asher yivchar YHWH Elohekha bo* ('whom the LORD your God will choose in him') — the king must be God's choice, not merely the people's. Third, *miqqerev achekha* ('from the midst of your brothers') — the king must be an Israelite. The negative *lo tukhal latet alekha ish nokhri* ('you cannot place over you a foreign man') explicitly excludes non-Israelites. This prevents foreign domination disguised as domestic kingship. The king serves under God's authority, not independently of it.
16. The first royal restriction: *lo yarbeh lo susim* ('he shall not multiply horses for himself'). Horses in the ancient Near East were military technology — chariot warfare required large horse stables. Accumulating horses meant building a standing army and trusting in military power rather than God. The specific prohibition against returning to Egypt for horses (*velo yashiv et ha'am Mitsraymah lema'an harbot sus*) prevents both military alliance with Egypt and the symbolic reversal of the exodus. God's declaration *lo tosifu lashuv badderekh hazzeh od* ('you shall not again return by this way') treats return to Egypt as covenant betrayal. Solomon violated this law spectacularly (1 Kgs 10:28-29).
17. Two more restrictions: *lo yarbeh lo nashim velo yasur levavo* ('he shall not multiply wives, so that his heart does not turn aside') and *kesef vezahav lo yarbeh lo me'od* ('silver and gold he shall not greatly multiply'). Multiple wives in royal contexts meant political marriages — alliances sealed by marriage to foreign princesses who brought their gods with them. The danger is explicitly stated: *velo yasur levavo* ('so his heart will not turn aside') — foreign wives lead to foreign gods. Solomon's story is the definitive illustration (1 Kgs 11:1-8). The gold/silver restriction prevents the king from building a personal treasury at the people's expense — taxation for royal enrichment is prohibited.
18. The most distinctive requirement: *vekhatav lo et mishneh haTorah hazzot al sefer* ('he shall write for himself a copy of this Torah on a scroll'). The phrase *mishneh haTorah* ('copy of the Torah, second Torah') gives Deuteronomy its Greek name (Deuteronomion — 'second law'). The king must personally copy the Torah — not merely possess it but write it out by hand. The act of copying forces sustained engagement with every word. The source is specified: *millifnei hakkohanim haLeviyim* ('from before the Levitical priests') — the priests maintain the authoritative text, and the king copies from their master copy. The king is not above the Torah; he is under it.
19. Three requirements for the royal Torah copy: *vehayetah immo* ('it shall be with him' — constant physical proximity), *veqara vo kol yemei chayyav* ('he shall read in it all the days of his life' — daily reading, not occasional reference), and the purpose clause *lema'an yilmad leyir'ah et YHWH Elohav* ('so that he will learn to fear/revere the LORD his God'). As with the tithe in 14:23, reverence is something learned through practice, not assumed. The king learns reverence through daily Torah engagement. The result is practical: *lishmor et kol divrei haTorah hazzot... la'asotam* ('to keep all the

words of this Torah... to do them'). Knowledge must produce obedience.

20. Two dangers the Torah guards against: *levilti rum levavo me'echav* ('so his heart does not rise above his brothers' — arrogance, the belief that the king is superior to ordinary Israelites) and *levilti sur min hammitvah yamin usmol* ('so he does not turn from the commandment right or left' — deviation from God's instructions). The king is *achim* ('brothers') with his subjects — first among equals, not a separate class. The promise for compliance is dynastic longevity: *lema'an ya'arikh yamim al mamlakhto hu uvanav* ('so that he may extend days over his kingdom, he and his sons'). The king's obedience secures not just his reign but his dynasty's future. The *setumah* closes the king's law and the judicial section of Deuteronomy.

18

Summary: *Moses provides for the Levites' support through sacrificial portions, prohibits Canaanite divination practices, and promises that God will raise up 'a prophet like me' from among Israel's own brothers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The prophet-like-Moses promise (vv. 15-19) is one of the most consequential prophecies in the Hebrew Bible. A *navi kamoni* ('a prophet like me') will arise who speaks God's words directly. The criteria for true prophecy are devastatingly simple: if the word comes true, it was from God; if not, the prophet spoke presumptuously. No theological test, no character test — only fulfillment. The passage sits between the king law (ch. 17) and the cities of refuge (ch. 19), placing prophetic authority at the center of Israel's institutional life.*

Translation Friction: *The list of prohibited practices (vv. 10-11) includes terms of uncertain definition: *qosem* (diviner), *me'onen* (soothsayer or cloud-reader), *menachesh* (one who reads omens), *mekhashef* (sorcerer), *chover chaver* (spell-caster), *sho'el ov* (medium), *yidde'oni* (spiritist), *doresh el ha-metim* (necromancer). We translated each descriptively and noted the semantic uncertainty where it exists.*

Connections: *The prophet-like-Moses promise is applied to Jesus in Acts 3:22-23 and 7:37. The divination prohibition grounds Saul's crisis when he consults the medium at Endor (1 Samuel 28). The Levitical provision connects to Numbers 18:20-24. The test of true prophecy (vv. 21-22) is invoked throughout the prophetic literature, particularly Jeremiah 28.*

¹The Levitical priests — the entire tribe of Levi — shall have no portion or inheritance with Israel. They shall eat from the LORD's fire offerings and from His inheritance. ²They shall have no inheritance among their relatives — the LORD is their inheritance, as He promised them. ³This shall be the priests' rightful portion from the people, from those who offer a sacrifice — whether ox or sheep: the shoulder, the cheeks, and the stomach shall be given to the priest. ⁴You shall give him the firstfruits of your grain, new wine, and oil, and the first shearing of your flock. ⁵For the LORD your God has chosen him from all your tribes to stand and serve in the name of the LORD — him and his sons, for all time. ⁶If a Levite comes from any of your towns throughout Israel, where he has been residing, and comes with all his heart's desire to the place the LORD will choose, ⁷he may serve in the name of the LORD his God, just like all his fellow Levites who stand in service there before the LORD. ⁸He shall eat equal portions with them, in addition to whatever he has from the sale of family property. ⁹When you enter the land the LORD your God is giving you, you must not learn to practice the abominations of those nations. ¹⁰There must not be found among you anyone who makes a son or daughter pass through fire, anyone who practices divination, reads omens, interprets signs, or practices sorcery, ¹¹anyone who casts spells, consults mediums, practices spiritism, or seeks out the dead. ¹²For everyone who does these things is an abomination to the LORD, and it is because of these abominations that the LORD your God is driving them out before you. ¹³You shall be wholehearted with the LORD your God. ¹⁴These nations that you are about to dispossess listen to omen-readers and diviners, but the LORD your God has not permitted you to do so. ¹⁵The LORD your God will raise up for you a prophet from among you, from your own people, like me. You shall listen to him. ¹⁶This is what you requested from the LORD your God at Horeb on the day of the assembly, when you said, 'Do not let me hear the voice of the LORD my God again or see this great fire anymore, or I will die.' ¹⁷The LORD said to me, 'What they have said is right. ¹⁸I will raise up for them a prophet from among their own people, like you, and I will put My words in his mouth. He shall speak to them everything I command him. ¹⁹Anyone who does not listen to My words that the prophet speaks in My name — I Myself will hold that person accountable.' ²⁰But a prophet who presumes to speak a word in

My name that I have not commanded him to speak, or who speaks in the name of other gods — that prophet must die. ²¹You may ask in your heart, 'How can we recognize a word that the LORD has not spoken?' ²²When a prophet speaks in the name of the LORD and the thing does not happen or come true, that is a word the LORD has not spoken. The prophet has spoken it presumptuously — do not be afraid of him."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The tribe of Levi receives no territorial allotment — no land, no farms, no herds of their own. Their 'inheritance' (nachalah) is the LORD Himself (v2) and the offerings brought to Him. This arrangement makes the priesthood economically dependent on the faithfulness of the other tribes: if Israel stops bringing offerings, the priests have nothing. The system incentivizes both priestly faithfulness (to maintain their credibility) and communal generosity (to sustain those who serve God full-time).
2. YHWH hu nachalato ('the LORD is their inheritance') — one of the most remarkable statements in Deuteronomy. While every other tribe inherits land, Levi inherits God. This is not metaphorical deprivation but theological privilege: the priestly tribe's 'possession' is the covenant relationship itself. The phrase ka'asher dibber-lo ('as He spoke to him') refers to the original Levitical commission, grounded in their loyalty during the golden calf crisis (Exod 32:26-29).
3. Three specific cuts: the zeroa ('shoulder/foreleg'), the lechayaim ('cheeks/jaws'), and the qevah ('stomach/fourth stomach of a ruminant'). These differ from the Levitical priestly portions (breast and thigh, Lev 7:31-34) — Deuteronomy may describe a different tradition or supplementary allocation. The practical effect is the same: the priests are fed from the sacrificial system, ensuring that those who serve God's altar do not go hungry.
4. Four categories of firstfruits: dagan ('grain'), tirosh ('new wine'), yitshar ('fresh oil'), and gez tsonekha ('shearing of your flock'). The firstfruits represent the initial yield — given before the farmer knows whether the harvest will be abundant or meager. Giving first requires trust: you release to God's servants before you know what remains for yourself.
5. The priestly role is defined as la'amod lesharet beshem-YHWH ('to stand and serve in the name of the LORD'). Two verbs: amad ('to stand' — the posture of readiness and attendance) and sharet ('to serve, to minister' — personal, intimate service). The priests serve 'in the name of the LORD' — they represent God to the people and the people to God. The phrase hu uvanav kol-hayyamim ('he and his sons, all the days') establishes the perpetual, hereditary nature of the office.
6. This provision addresses Levites living in outlying towns who wish to serve at the central sanctuary. The phrase bekhoh-avvat nafsho ('with all the desire of his soul') emphasizes the voluntary, passionate nature of this movement — the Levite comes because he wants to serve, not because he is summoned. 'The place the LORD will choose' (hammaqom asher-yivchar YHWH) is Deuteronomy's standard phrase for the central sanctuary, later identified as Jerusalem.
7. Equal access: the traveling Levite serves on the same terms as those already stationed at the sanctuary (kekhol-echav haleviyyim ha'omedim sham). No distinction is made between 'local' and 'visiting' Levites — all who desire to serve may serve equally. This provision protects the rural Levite from being treated as second-class when he arrives at the central sanctuary.
8. Equal food allocation: cheleq kecheleq ('portion like portion'). The arriving Levite receives the same share as the permanent staff. The final clause — levad mimmarav al-ha'avot ('apart from what comes from the sale of ancestral property') — acknowledges that some Levites may have private resources from family transactions, and these do not reduce their sanctuary allotment. Private means do not diminish communal rights.
9. The chapter shifts abruptly from priestly provision (v1-8) to forbidden practices (v9-14). The connection is purposeful: Israel will not need Canaanite divination practices because God provides prophets (v15-22). The verb tilmad ('learn') suggests these practices are acquired behaviors, not instincts — Israel must choose not to learn what Canaan teaches. The to'avot ('abominations') are specified in v10-11.
10. The forbidden list begins with the most horrific: ma'avir beno-uvitto ba'esh ('making a son or daughter pass through fire') — child sacrifice, associated with the Canaanite god Molech. Four additional categories follow: qosem qesamim ('practicing divination' — seeking knowledge through forbidden means), me'onen ('reading omens' — from clouds, animal behavior, etc.), menachesh ('interpreting signs' — serpent omens or whispered spells), and mekhashef ('sorcerer' — using supernatural manipulation). Each represents an attempt to access information or power outside God's authorized channels.
11. Four more forbidden categories: chover chaver ('spell-caster' — binding through incantation), sho'el ov ('consulting a medium' — ov refers to a spirit of the dead or the pit from which it speaks), yidde'oni ('spiritist' — from yada, 'to know' — one who claims forbidden knowledge through spirits), and doresh el-hammetim ('inquirer of the dead' — necromancy). The comprehensive list of nine forbidden practices (v10-11) covers every known form of Canaanite occult activity. Israel is prohibited from all of them without exception.
12. The Canaanite dispossession is explicitly linked to these practices — ubighlal hatto'evot ha'elohim ('because of these abominations'). The conquest is not arbitrary but judicial: the land's previous inhabitants are removed because of their occult practices. This creates a warning for Israel: the same behavior that caused the Canaanites' expulsion will cause Israel's expulsion if adopted. The land does not tolerate to'evah regardless of who commits it.
13. Tamim tiyeh im YHWH Elohekha ('you shall be wholehearted/blameless with the LORD your God') — the same tamim required of Abraham (Gen 17:1) and of sacrificial animals (Lev 1:3). For a person, tamim means undivided loyalty — not moral perfection but complete devotion. The contrast

with v9-12 is clear: instead of dividing loyalty between God and occult practices, Israel must be tamim — whole, integrated, entirely committed to the LORD.

14. The pivotal contrast: the nations listen to diviners — ve'attah lo khen natan lekha YHWH Elohekha ('but as for you, the LORD your God has not given you such a thing'). Israel does not need divination because God provides something better: prophetic revelation (v15-22). The denial creates a vacuum that v15 fills: no omens, no sorcery — instead, a prophet.
15. Navi miqqirbekha me'achekha kamoni ('a prophet from your midst, from your brothers, like me') is Moses's designation of the prophetic office as his institutional successor. The word kamoni ('like me') is ambiguous: it could mean 'a prophet like me' (one specific future figure) or 'prophets like me' (a succession of prophetic voices). Both readings have been maintained across Jewish and Christian traditions. The command elav tishma'un ('to him you shall listen') echoes the Shema — the same verb shama ('listen/obey') that governs the entire covenant relationship.
16. Moses connects the prophetic promise back to the people's request in Deuteronomy 5:23-27: the nation asked for a mediator because direct divine encounter was unbearable. The prophet is God's answer to that request — authorized human speech replacing the terrifying divine voice from the fire. The prophetic office is born from the people's own acknowledged limitation: they cannot endure God's direct presence.
17. God's validation — heitivu asher dibberu ('they spoke well in what they said') — repeats verbatim from 5:28. God approves the request for mediated revelation. The prophet is not a concession to weakness but a divinely endorsed arrangement. Direct encounter with God's voice and fire is legitimate but unsustainable; prophetic mediation is God's preferred long-term communication method.
18. God speaks in first person, confirming v15: navi aqim lahem ('I will raise up a prophet for them'). The mechanism of prophetic authority: venatatti devaray befi ('I will put My words in his mouth'). The prophet does not generate his own message — God places the words there. The prophet is a vessel, not a source. The phrase vedibber aleihem et kol-asher atsavvennu ('he shall speak to them everything I command him') defines the prophet's total obligation: nothing added, nothing withheld.
19. The consequence of rejecting the prophet's message: anokhi edrosh me'immo ('I Myself will hold them accountable,' literally 'I will seek it from them'). God takes personal responsibility for enforcing the prophet's authority. To reject the prophet is to reject God, because the prophet speaks beshmi ('in My name') — with God's full authorization. The first-person anokhi ('I Myself') is emphatic.
20. Two capital offenses for prophets: speaking unauthorized words in God's name (asher lo-tshivviti ledabber — words God did not command) and speaking in the name of other gods. The verb yazid ('presumes, acts presumptuously') describes arrogant overreach — the prophet who puts his own words in God's mouth. The death penalty for false prophecy protects the community from being misled by someone claiming divine authority fraudulently. The same verb yazid connects to Nadab and Abihu's unauthorized fire (Lev 10:1) — presumptuous approach to God is lethal.
21. The practical question: how do you tell a true prophet from a false one? The question arises 'in your heart' (bilevavekha) — it is an internal struggle, not merely an academic inquiry. The question is legitimate: if prophets claim to speak for God, how does the community evaluate the claim? The answer (v22) provides one criterion, though the Hebrew Bible elsewhere adds others (Deut 13:1-5, Jer 28).
22. The fulfillment test: if the predicted event does not occur (velo-yihyeh haddavar velo yavo — 'the thing does not happen and does not come'), the prophet spoke without divine authorization. The closing imperative — lo tagur mimmennu ('do not be afraid of him') — frees the community from the intimidation of false prophetic authority. A false prophet may be charismatic and convincing, but failed prediction exposes the fraud. The test is retrospective: it evaluates prophecy after the predicted time has passed. The chapter's logic is complete: instead of divination (v9-14), God provides prophets (v15-19), with a test to distinguish true from false (v20-22).

19

Summary: *Moses establishes three cities of refuge for those who kill unintentionally, legislates against moving boundary markers, and requires multiple witnesses for legal testimony.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The city-of-refuge law distinguishes between the manslayer (rotseach, one who kills accidentally) and the murderer. The test case is vivid: a man swings an axe, the iron head flies off the handle, and strikes his neighbor (v. 5). The go'el haddam ('blood avenger,' v. 6) is the victim's kinsman whose obligation to avenge is acknowledged but channeled — emotion is real, but justice requires investigation. The boundary-marker prohibition (v. 14) treats a survey stone as sacred: to move it is to steal from the dead who established it.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase bivli da'at (v. 4, 'without knowledge/intention') is the Hebrew legal standard for accidental killing — English 'unintentionally' captures the sense but loses the epistemological dimension: the killer literally 'did not know.' The lex talionis in verse 21 — 'life for life, eye for eye' — is placed in a judicial context, specifying proportional punishment administered by courts, not personal vengeance.*

Connections: The cities of refuge elaborate Numbers 35:9-34 and are implemented in Joshua 20. The go'el haddam institution connects to the go'el theology in Ruth 3-4. The multiple-witness rule (v. 15) echoes 17:6 and is cited by Jesus (Matthew 18:16) and Paul (2 Corinthians 13:1). The false-witness law anticipates the Naboth episode in 1 Kings 21.

¹When the LORD your God cuts off the nations whose land the LORD your God is giving you, and you dispossess them and settle in their cities and in their houses, ²you must set apart three cities for yourself within your land that the LORD your God is giving you to possess. ³You must prepare the road and divide the territory of your land — which the LORD your God is granting you as an inheritance — into three regions, so that anyone who kills a person may flee there. ⁴This is the provision for the one who kills and may flee there to save his life: someone who strikes his neighbor unintentionally, without having previously harbored hostility toward him. ⁵For example, if a man goes into the forest with his neighbor to chop wood, and as he swings the axe to cut down a tree the iron head flies off the handle and strikes his neighbor so that he dies — that man may flee to one of these cities and save his life. ⁶Otherwise the blood avenger might pursue the killer in the heat of his anger, overtake him because the distance is too great, and strike him dead — even though he does not deserve the death penalty, since he had no prior hostility toward the victim. ⁷This is why I am commanding you: you must set apart three cities for yourself. ⁸When the LORD your God expands your territory, as He swore to your ancestors, and gives you the entire land that He promised to give to your ancestors — ⁹provided you keep this entire commandment that I am commanding you today by carrying it out — to love the LORD your God and to walk in His ways at all times — then you must add three more cities beyond these three, ¹⁰so that innocent blood is not shed in your land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance, and bloodguilt fall upon you. ¹¹But if a man harbors hatred toward his neighbor, lies in ambush for him, rises up and strikes him fatally so that he dies, and then flees to one of these cities, ¹²the elders of his own city must send for him, take him from there, and hand him over to the blood avenger, and he must die. ¹³Your eye must not show pity for him. You must purge the guilt of innocent blood from Israel, so that it may go well with you. ¹⁴You must not move your neighbor's boundary marker, which previous generations established in your inheritance that you will receive in the land the LORD your God is giving you to possess. ¹⁵A single witness may not stand against a person for any crime or any offense — whatever the transgression. A matter may be established only on the testimony of two or three witnesses. ¹⁶If a malicious witness rises up against a person to accuse him of wrongdoing, ¹⁷then both parties to the dispute must stand before the LORD — before the priests and the judges who are serving at that time. ¹⁸The judges must investigate thoroughly. If the witness turns out to be a lying witness who has testified falsely against his brother, ¹⁹then you must do to him what he intended to do to his brother. So you will purge evil from your midst. ²⁰Those who remain will hear about it and be afraid, and they will never again do such an evil thing in your midst. ²¹Your eye must not show pity: life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb yakhrit ('cuts off') signals complete removal of the Canaanite nations from the land. The sequence dispossess—settle (virishtem—veyashavtem) describes Israel stepping into an existing infrastructure — cities already built, houses already standing. This opening sets the geographical context for the refuge-city legislation that follows: once the land is settled, accidental homicide needs legal infrastructure.
2. The verb tavidil ('set apart, separate') is the same root used for God's separating acts in creation (Genesis 1:4, 6, 14). Setting apart refuge cities is an act of sanctified distinction — carving sacred space within the land where justice operates differently. Three cities ensures reasonable geographic coverage across the territory west of the Jordan.
3. The command takhin lekha haderekh ('prepare the road for yourself') requires active infrastructure work — roads must be maintained and marked so a fleeing manslayer can reach safety quickly. The Talmud (Makkot 10b) records that the roads to refuge cities were kept clear and signposted. The verb shilashta ('divide into three') ensures equal geographic distribution so no part of the land is too far from a refuge city.
4. The phrase bivli da'at ('without knowledge' — unintentionally) is the crucial legal distinction: the refuge city protects only unintentional killers. The idiom lo sone lo mitmol shilshom ('not hating him from yesterday and the day before' — no prior hostility) establishes a second criterion: the killing must be both accidental and unpremeditated. Prior hostility converts an accident into suspected murder.

5. This case study is remarkably specific: a woodcutting accident where the axe head (*habarzel* — 'the iron') detaches from the handle (*ha'ets* — literally 'the wood,' used here for the wooden shaft). The specificity makes the law accessible — it illustrates the principle through a concrete scenario that any Israelite could envision. The verb *nashal* ('slipped off, flew off') emphasizes the accidental nature: the tool malfunctioned, not the person.
6. The *go'el haddam* ('blood avenger, kinsman redeemer of blood') had a legal obligation in ancient Israel to pursue and kill the person who shed his relative's blood. The law recognizes the emotional reality — *ki yecham levavo* ('because his heart is hot') acknowledges legitimate grief-driven rage — while insisting that justice, not vengeance, must prevail. The refuge city system channels the blood avenger's rights through judicial process.
7. The emphatic *al ken anokhi metsavvekha* ('therefore I am commanding you') connects the commandment directly to the scenario just described. The three-city requirement is not arbitrary but grounded in the urgency of protecting innocent life from misguided retribution.
8. The conditional *im yarchiv* ('if He expands') envisions a future territorial expansion beyond the initial conquest, fulfilling the full scope of the Abrahamic land promise. The reference to the patriarchal oath (*nishba laavotekha* — 'He swore to your fathers') roots the refuge-city system in covenant history: as God's promise grows, so must the infrastructure of justice.
9. The expansion from three to six refuge cities is conditioned on covenant faithfulness: loving God (*le'ahavah*) and walking in His ways (*lalekhet bidherakhav*). This is remarkable — more territory means more responsibility for justice, not just more land. The three additional cities would bring the total to six west of the Jordan, matching the six cities of refuge prescribed in Numbers 35:13-14 (three east, three west).
10. The purpose clause reveals the deeper logic: failing to provide refuge cities results in *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') being shed — both the accidental killer's (if murdered by the avenger) and collectively, the community's bloodguilt (*damim* — literally 'bloods,' plural for accumulated guilt). The land itself bears the moral weight of unpunished or unjust killing.
11. The contrasting case: premeditated murder marked by three elements — hatred (*sone*), ambush (*arav*), and lethal violence (*hikkahu nefesh* — 'struck him dead'). The sequence establishes motive, planning, and execution. The murderer's attempt to misuse the refuge system — fleeing there after deliberate killing — is anticipated and explicitly prohibited.
12. The elders of the murderer's home city — not the refuge city — bear responsibility for extradition. They know the accused and can testify to the prior hostility. The process is communal and judicial: the elders act, not a vigilante. Handing over to the *go'el haddam* restores the blood avenger's legitimate claim while ensuring that only confirmed murderers face execution.
13. The phrase *lo tachos einekha* ('your eye shall not pity') appears repeatedly in Deuteronomy's justice legislation (13:8, 19:13, 21, 25:12). It combats the natural human impulse toward misplaced mercy that would allow murderers to escape justice. The verb *bi'arta* ('purge, burn out') treats bloodguilt as contamination that must be removed from the community's midst — the same verb used for purging evil throughout Deuteronomy.
14. The boundary marker (*gevu*) was a stone or cairn marking property lines. Moving it was a form of land theft — enlarging your own field at your neighbor's expense. The phrase *asher gavlu rishonim* ('which the predecessors established') gives the markers intergenerational authority: they reflect the original divine allocation of land at the conquest. To move them is to challenge not just a neighbor's rights but the covenant's distribution of inheritance.
15. The two-witness rule (*al pi shnei edim* — 'on the mouth of two witnesses') is one of ancient Israel's most important legal safeguards and is cited by Jesus (Matthew 18:16) and Paul (2 Corinthians 13:1). The threefold repetition of 'any' (*lekhol avon, lekhol chattat, bekhol chet*) emphasizes universality: no exception exists, regardless of the offense's severity. This prevents false accusation from destroying an innocent person.
16. The *ed chamas* ('witness of violence' — malicious witness) is not merely mistaken but intentionally harmful. The term *chamas* ('violence, wrongdoing') characterizes the witness's intent: the testimony itself is an act of violence against the accused. The phrase *la'anot bo sarah* ('to testify against him a turning aside' — to give deviant testimony) uses *sarah*, which implies deliberate departure from truth.
17. The accused and the accuser both appear *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD'), indicating that the judicial proceeding is conducted in God's presence — likely at the central sanctuary. The dual judicial authority of priests and judges (*kohanim* and *softim*) reflects Israel's integrated system where religious and civil authority collaborate in adjudication. The phrase 'in those days' allows for future institutional development.
18. The verb *dareshu* ('they must investigate') with the adverb *hetev* ('thoroughly, well') demands rigorous judicial inquiry — not passive reception of testimony but active interrogation. The double use of *sheqer* ('lie, falsehood') — *ed sheqer* ('lying witness') and *sheqer anah* ('testified falsely') — emphasizes the gravity of perjury. Calling the accused 'his brother' (*be'achiv*) reminds the court that false testimony violates covenant brotherhood.
19. The *lex talionis* applied to perjury: the false witness receives the exact punishment he sought to impose on the accused (*ka'asher zamam* — 'as he plotted'). This is not general retribution but precise judicial mirroring. The formula *ubi'arta hara miqirbekha* ('you shall purge evil from your midst') appears seven times in Deuteronomy, functioning as a theological conclusion to judicial prescriptions — evil is a contaminant that must be removed.
20. The deterrent function of public punishment: *yishme'u veyira'u* ('they will hear and fear'). The judicial system serves not only retributive justice but communal education — the consequence is meant to be known and to prevent repetition. This formula (hear-and-fear) appears in Deuteronomy 13:12, 17:13, 19:20, and 21:21, always after cases involving community-threatening offenses.
21. The *lex talionis* ('law of retaliation') — *nefesh benefesh, ayin be'ayin* — establishes proportional justice: the punishment must match the crime, no more and no less. In context, this applies specifically to the false witness (v 19): the perjurer receives the same harm he intended. Ancient Near Eastern legal scholars broadly recognize this principle as limiting excessive punishment rather than mandating physical mutilation — the penalty cannot exceed the damage sought.

20

Summary: *Moses lays out the laws of warfare: a priest encourages the army, four categories of men are exempted from battle, terms of peace are offered to distant cities, but Canaanite cities receive no such offer.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The exemptions are extraordinary by ancient standards: a man who built a house but has not dedicated it (chanakho, v. 5), planted a vineyard but not yet enjoyed its fruit, betrothed a wife but not yet married her, or is simply afraid. The last exemption (v. 8) is the most remarkable — a frightened soldier is sent home not as punishment but to prevent his fear from spreading. The military chaplain's speech (vv. 3-4) places theology before tactics: 'the LORD your God is the one going with you.'*

Translation Friction: *The cherem command for Canaanite cities (vv. 16-17) — 'you shall not let anything that breathes remain alive' (kol neshamah) — is Deuteronomy's hardest text. We rendered it without softening, as the Hebrew does not soften it. The verb hacharim tacharimem uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis: 'you shall utterly devote them to destruction.' The tree-protection law (vv. 19-20) — 'are the trees of the field human, that they should be besieged by you?' — is a surprising ecological ethic embedded in a military code.*

Connections: *The warfare exemptions are applied in Judges 7:3 (Gideon's army reduction). The distant-city/near-city distinction governs Joshua's campaigns (Joshua 9-11). The tree-preservation law may ground the later rabbinic principle of bal tashchit ('do not destroy'). The priest's speech anticipates the Levitical war-theology of 2 Chronicles 20:15-17.*

¹When you go out to battle against your enemies and you see horses and chariots — a force larger than your own — do not be afraid of them, for the LORD your God is with you, the one who brought you up from the land of Egypt. ²When you draw near to battle, the priest must come forward and address the troops. ³He must say to them: 'Hear, Israel! Today you are going into battle against your enemies. Do not let your hearts grow weak. Do not be afraid. Do not panic. Do not be terrified of them, ⁴because the LORD your God is the one marching with you. He will fight for you against your enemies to deliver you.' ⁵Then the officers must address the troops: 'Is there anyone who has built a new house and has not yet dedicated it? Let him go back home, so that he does not die in battle and another man dedicate it. ⁶Is there anyone who has planted a vineyard and has not yet begun to enjoy its fruit? Let him go back home, so that he does not die in battle and another man enjoy it. ⁷Is there anyone who has become engaged to a woman and has not yet married her? Let him go back home, so that he does not die in battle and another man marry her.' ⁸The officers must continue speaking to the troops: 'Is there anyone who is afraid or faint of heart? Let him go back home, so that his brothers' hearts do not melt like his own.' ⁹When the officers have finished addressing the troops, they must appoint army commanders at the head of the people. ¹⁰When you approach a city to fight against it, you must first offer it terms of peace. ¹¹If it responds with peace and opens its gates to you, then all the people found in it will become your forced laborers and will serve you. ¹²But if it does not make peace with you and instead wages war against you, you must lay siege to it. ¹³When the LORD your God delivers it into your hands, you must strike down every male in it with the sword. ¹⁴However, the women, the children, the livestock, and everything else in the city — all its plunder — you may take as spoil for yourselves. You may consume the plunder of your enemies that the LORD your God has given you. ¹⁵This is how you must treat all the cities that are very far from you — those that are not among the cities of these nearby nations. ¹⁶However, in the cities of these peoples that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance, you must not let anything that breathes remain alive. ¹⁷You must completely devote them to destruction — the Hittites, the Amorites, the Canaanites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites — just as the LORD your God has commanded you, ¹⁸so that they do not teach you to imitate all the detestable practices they performed for their gods, and you thereby sin against the LORD your God. ¹⁹When you besiege a city for an extended time, waging war against it to capture it, you must not destroy its trees by swinging an axe against them. You may eat from them, but you must not cut them down. Is a tree of the field a human being, that it should be besieged by you? ²⁰Only trees that you know are not food-producing trees — those you may destroy and cut down. You may use them to build siege works against the city that is waging war with you,

until it falls.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Horses and chariots (sus varekev) represent the most advanced military technology of the ancient Near East — Israel's enemies routinely possessed what Israel lacked. The command lo tira ('do not fear') is grounded not in military capability but in divine presence (YHWH Elohekha immakh — 'the LORD your God is with you'). The exodus reference (hamma'alkha me'erets Mitsrayim) is the theological warrant: the God who defeated Egypt's chariots at the sea can handle any army.
2. The kohen ('priest') speaks before the military officers — war in Israel begins with theological proclamation, not tactical briefing. This is the mashuach milchamah ('the priest anointed for war') mentioned in rabbinic literature. His role establishes that Israel's warfare is fundamentally different: it is covenant warfare under divine command, not merely political conflict.
3. The priest's address opens with shema Yisra'el ('Hear, Israel!') — the same formula as the great confession of Deuteronomy 6:4, here deployed in a military context. Four prohibitions cover the full spectrum of fear: al yerakh levavkhem ('do not let your hearts go soft'), al tire'u ('do not fear'), al tachpezu ('do not panic, do not be hasty'), al ta'artsu ('do not be terrified'). The escalating vocabulary addresses every stage from private anxiety to public terror.
4. The theological core of Israel's warfare doctrine: God fights (lehilachem lakhem — 'to fight for you'). The verb lehoshi'a ('to save, to deliver') transforms the battle from a military engagement into a salvation event. Israel's role is faithfulness and obedience; the outcome belongs to God. This same theology appears at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:14): 'The LORD will fight for you; you need only be still.'
5. The shotrim ('officers, officials') administer three military exemptions (vv 5-7), each protecting a man's right to enjoy the fruit of his labor. The first: building but not dedicating a house (chanakho — the root ch-n-k gives us 'Hanukkah,' meaning 'dedication'). The exemption reflects a deep humane principle: a man should not die before experiencing what he has worked to create.
6. The second exemption: planting a vineyard without having chillelo ('profaned it' — that is, made it available for common use). Under Leviticus 19:23-25, a vineyard's fruit was forbidden for the first three years and sacred in the fourth. The verb chillel here means to take the fruit from the sacred domain into ordinary use — the first non-sacred harvest. A man deserves to taste what he planted.
7. The third exemption: betrothal without marriage. In Israelite law, betrothal (erusin) created a binding legal relationship — the woman was legally committed — but the marriage was not yet consummated. The fear that ish acher yiqqachennah ('another man will take her') would mean the betrothed woman becomes a widow before ever becoming a wife. Deuteronomy 24:5 extends this protection to a full year of exemption for newly married men.
8. The fourth exemption differs from the first three: it is psychological, not circumstantial. The hayare verakh hallevav ('fearful and soft of heart') may leave because fear is contagious — velo yimas et levav echav ('so he does not cause his brothers' hearts to melt'). The verb masas ('melt') describes the collapse of courage. Gideon's army was reduced by this same principle (Judges 7:3). Military effectiveness requires wholehearted commitment.
9. Only after theological preparation (the priest's speech) and humane exemptions (the officers' announcements) does the military organize for battle. The sarei tseva'ot ('commanders of armies') are appointed to lead — military structure follows spiritual and social readiness. The section marker (samekh) closes the pre-battle procedures.
10. The requirement to offer shalom ('peace') before attacking is a remarkable restraint on warfare. The verb qara'ta ('you shall call, proclaim') suggests a formal, public announcement — not a private negotiation but an official offer. This applies to cities outside the Promised Land (distant cities, v 15); the Canaanite cities within the land have a different legal status (vv 16-18).
11. Acceptance of peace terms results in subjugation, not extermination. The population becomes lamas ('forced labor, corvée workers') — the same institution Solomon later imposed on non-Israelite populations (1 Kings 9:21). While coercive by modern standards, within the ancient Near Eastern context this represents restraint: the alternative was total destruction. Lives are preserved through submission.
12. Refusal of peace terms triggers siege warfare (tsarta aleiha — 'you shall besiege it'). The verb tsur ('besiege, confine') describes surrounding a city to cut off supplies and force capitulation. The city's own decision to fight — rather than accept peace — determines its fate. The moral responsibility shifts to the city that rejected the offer.
13. Upon divine victory (unetanah YHWH — 'the LORD gives it'), the male combatants are executed (kol zekhorah — 'every male'). The phrase lefi charev ('by the mouth of the sword') is a standard Hebrew idiom treating the sword as a devouring instrument. This applies to distant cities (v 15), not the Canaanite cities within the land, which have stricter terms (v 16).
14. Non-combatants (women, children) and property (livestock, goods) are exempted from the sword. The verb tavoz ('you may plunder') and the phrase ve'akhalta et shelal oyevekha ('you may consume your enemies' plunder') frame the spoils as God's provision — asher natan YHWH ('which the LORD gave'). Even the spoils of war are a divine gift, not merely a military prize.
15. This verse clarifies that the preceding rules (peace offer, male combatants, non-combatant exemptions) apply only to distant cities (harechokot mimmekha me'od — 'very far from you'). The sharp distinction between distant and nearby cities creates a two-tier system of warfare: negotiation-based rules for foreign wars versus total destruction for Canaanite cities (vv 16-18).

16. The command *lo techayeh kol neshamah* ('you shall not keep alive anything that breathes') applies exclusively to the Canaanite cities within the Promised Land. The totality is absolute: *neshamah* ('breath, living being') encompasses all human life. This is the *cherem* ('ban, devotion to destruction') — an act of sacred judgment, not military strategy. The theological rationale follows in verse 18.
17. The infinitive absolute construction *hacharim tacharimem* ('destroying you shall destroy' — you must completely devote to destruction) intensifies the command. The six-nation list (sometimes seven with the Gergashites) represents the indigenous Canaanite population. The verb *charam* means to devote irrevocably to God — items under *cherem* are removed from human use and given entirely to God, whether through destruction or dedication.
18. The theological rationale for the *cherem*: prevention of religious contamination. The verb *lo yelammedu* ('so that they do not teach') identifies the Canaanite nations as sources of instruction in *to'avot* ('detestable practices, abominations') — a term encompassing child sacrifice, ritual prostitution, and other practices condemned throughout Deuteronomy. The logic is quarantine: Israel's covenant faithfulness requires removing the source of spiritual infection.
19. This environmental law during wartime is extraordinary in the ancient world. The rhetorical question *ki ha'adam ets hassadeh* is debated: it can be read as 'Is the tree a man that it should come under siege?' (prohibitive — trees are not combatants) or 'The tree of the field is man's life' (utilitarian — trees sustain human life). The rendering follows the interrogative reading, which most modern scholars prefer. The practical distinction between fruit trees (protected) and non-fruit trees (v 20, may be cut) reveals ecological wisdom embedded in military law.
20. Non-fruit trees may be used for siege construction (*matsvor* — 'siege works, bulwarks'). The distinction preserves the agricultural infrastructure that will sustain the land after conquest. The phrase *ad riddah* ('until it falls, until its going down') describes the city's eventual capitulation. The paragraph marker (pe) closes the warfare laws section. These regulations — from priestly encouragement to environmental protection — create what later Jewish tradition calls *milchemet reshut* ('optional warfare') as distinct from *milchemet mitsvah* ('commanded warfare').

21

Summary: *Moses addresses unsolved murder (the heifer ritual), rights of captive women, the firstborn's inheritance rights, the rebellious son, and the burial of executed criminals.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The heifer ritual for unsolved murder (vv. 1-9) is one of the Torah's most mysterious ceremonies. The elders of the nearest city break a heifer's neck in a flowing wadi, wash their hands over it, and declare 'our hands did not shed this blood.' The ritual transfers communal guilt for unavenged blood — because even unknown murder pollutes the land. The rebellious son law (vv. 18-21) requires both parents to bring the charge, making unilateral patriarchal punishment impossible.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *araf* (v. 4, 'break the neck') describes a specific method of killing used nowhere else in sacrificial law — this is not a sacrifice but a ritual of atonement through substitution. The phrase *kapper le-ammekha* (v. 8, 'grant atonement for your people') uses the same *kippur* vocabulary as Leviticus 16. The hanged man under 'God's curse' (*qilelat Elohim*, v. 23) is cited by Paul in Galatians 3:13 as applied to Christ.*

Connections: *The captive-woman law (vv. 10-14) provides rights unprecedented in ancient Near Eastern warfare. The firstborn inheritance law (v. 17, *pi shnayim*, 'a double portion') establishes the legal framework that Esau trades away (Genesis 25:31-34) and Elisha requests spiritually (2 Kings 2:9). The burial requirement (v. 23) governs the treatment of Jesus's body in John 19:31.*

¹If a slain person is found lying in the open field in the land that the LORD your God is giving you to possess, and it is not known who struck him down, ²then your elders and your judges must go out and measure the distances to the cities surrounding the slain person. ³The elders of the city nearest to the body must take a young cow that has never been worked and has never worn a yoke. ⁴The elders of that city must bring the cow down to a perennial wadi — a valley that is neither plowed nor sown — and they must break the cow's neck there in the wadi. ⁵Then the Levitical priests must come forward, for the LORD your God has chosen them to minister to Him and to pronounce blessings in the name of the LORD, and every dispute and every case of physical assault is to be resolved by their verdict. ⁶All the elders of the city nearest to the body must wash their hands over the young cow whose neck was broken in the wadi. ⁷They must declare: 'Our hands did not shed this blood, and our eyes did not see it happen. ⁸Grant atonement for your people Israel, whom you redeemed, O LORD, and do

not hold the guilt of innocent blood against your people Israel.' Then the bloodguilt will be atoned for. ⁹So you will purge the guilt of innocent blood from your midst by doing what is right in the eyes of the LORD. ¹⁰When you go out to war against your enemies and the LORD your God delivers them into your hands, and you take captives, ¹¹and you see among the captives a beautiful woman and are attracted to her, desiring to take her as your wife, ¹²then you must bring her into your house. She must shave her head and trim her nails. ¹³She must remove the clothing of her captivity, live in your house, and mourn her father and mother for a full month. After that, you may go to her and become her husband, and she will be your wife. ¹⁴If you later find that you are not pleased with her, you must let her go wherever she wishes. You must not sell her for money. You must not treat her as property, because you have had intimate relations with her. ¹⁵If a man has two wives, one loved and the other unloved, and both the loved and the unloved have borne him sons, but the firstborn belongs to the unloved wife, ¹⁶then on the day he distributes his property to his sons as inheritance, he may not give the rights of the firstborn to the son of the loved wife in place of the son of the unloved wife, who is actually the firstborn. ¹⁷He must acknowledge the firstborn — the son of the unloved wife — by giving him a double portion of everything he owns, for that son is the first evidence of his vitality. The right of the firstborn belongs to him. ¹⁸If a man has a stubborn and rebellious son who does not obey his father or his mother, and even after they discipline him he still will not listen to them, ¹⁹then his father and his mother must seize him and bring him out to the elders of his city, to the gate of his town. ²⁰They must say to the elders of his city: 'This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious. He will not obey us. He is a glutton and a drunkard.' ²¹Then all the men of his city must stone him to death. So you will purge evil from your midst, and all Israel will hear about it and be afraid. ²²If a man has committed a sin deserving the death penalty and is put to death, and you hang his body on a tree, ²³his body must not remain on the tree overnight. You must bury him that same day, for a hanged person is under God's curse, and you must not defile your land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *chahal* ('pierced one, slain person') refers to someone killed by violence, not natural death. Found *nofel bassadeh* ('fallen in the field') — in open land between settlements where no witnesses were present. The phrase *lo noda mi hikkahu* ('it is not known who struck him') creates the legal problem: unsolved homicide leaves bloodguilt unresolved, contaminating the land.
2. The measuring ceremony (*umadedu* — 'they shall measure') determines which city is nearest and therefore bears responsibility for the unsolved death. Elders and judges acting together (*zeqenekha veshoftekha*) ensures both communal authority and judicial precision. The physical act of measurement transforms an abstract question of guilt into a concrete civic responsibility.
3. The *eglat baqar* ('heifer, young cow') must meet two conditions: *lo ubbad bah* ('not worked with') and *lo mashkhah be'ol* ('not pulled in a yoke'). An animal untouched by human labor represents innocence and unused potential — mirroring the innocent life cut short. The parallel with the red heifer of Numbers 19 (also never yoked) suggests a purification ritual, though the mechanism here differs.
4. The *nachal eitan* ('enduring wadi' — a valley with a permanent stream) must be uncultivated land, matching the animal's unworked status. The verb *arefu* ('break the neck') is not a sacrificial slaughter but a distinct killing method — the animal's death absorbs the community's bloodguilt. The unworked animal in unworked ground creates a ritually pristine setting for absorbing the contamination of unsolved murder.
5. The priests' triple function is stated: *lesharto* ('to minister to Him'), *ulevarekh beshem YHWH* ('to bless in the LORD's name'), and judicial authority over *kol riv vekhol nega* ('every dispute and every injury'). The word *nega* ('stroke, plague, injury') covers both physical harm and skin diseases (as in Leviticus 13-14), giving priests jurisdiction over bodily matters.
6. Handwashing over the slain animal is a public declaration of innocence — the symbolic transfer of potential guilt. This is the biblical origin of the 'washing hands of responsibility' gesture, later echoed by Pilate in Matthew 27:24. The ritual combines physical act (washing) with verbal declaration (v 7) to formally dissociate the community from the bloodshed.
7. The declaration is a formal oath of innocence with two components: hands (action — 'we did not kill') and eyes (knowledge — 'we did not witness it'). The Qere/Ketiv variant: the Ketiv (— *shafkhah*, singular feminine) may reflect an older grammatical form; the Qere (— *shafkhu*, plural) matches the plural subject 'our hands.' The community leaders speak on behalf of the entire city.
8. The prayer contains the verb *kapper* ('atone, cover, purge') twice: as imperative petition (*kapper le'ammekha* — 'grant atonement for your people') and as result (*venikapper lahem haddam* — 'the blood-guilt will be atoned for them'). The appeal to God as redeemer (*asher padita* — 'whom you redeemed') invokes the exodus as grounds for mercy. Israel's identity as a redeemed people obligates God to maintain their purity.
9. The concluding formula *teva'er haddam hannaqi miqirbekha* ('you will purge innocent blood from your midst') uses the familiar purging language of Deuteronomy. Performing the ceremony is itself the act of doing *hayashar* ('the right thing') — the community's proactive response to unsolved violence demonstrates commitment to justice even when the perpetrator remains unknown.

10. A new law section begins with the warfare formula *ki tetse lammilchamah* ('when you go out to war'). God's role as the one who delivers victory (*unetano YHWH beyadekha* — 'the LORD gives him into your hand') is stated before any human action. The taking of captives (*shavita shivyo* — 'you capture his captivity') transitions to a specific regulation about captive women.
11. The *eshet yefat to'ar* ('woman beautiful of form') is a war captive whom an Israelite soldier desires. The verb *chashaqta* ('you desire, you are attracted to') acknowledges sexual attraction as a reality of warfare without condemning it. Rather than prohibiting the marriage or permitting immediate sexual exploitation, the law creates a structured process (vv 12-13) that protects the woman's dignity and humanity.
12. The three actions — entering the house, shaving the head, and trimming nails — mark a transition from captive to household member. Shaving the head (*gillchah et roshah*) may represent mourning for her former life, or symbolically shedding her foreign identity. The trimming of nails (*ve'astah et tsipporneiha* — literally 'do her nails') similarly marks a physical transformation. Some scholars see these as de-beautification acts that test whether the man's attraction is genuine.
13. Removing the *simlet shivyah* ('clothing of captivity') marks another identity transition. The mandatory mourning period — *uvekhta et aviha ve'et immah yerach yamim* ('she shall weep for her father and mother a full month') — serves multiple functions: it honors her grief, grants her time to adjust, imposes a cooling-off period on the soldier, and prevents immediate sexual exploitation. The month-long delay transforms what could be wartime rape into a structured marriage with legal protections.
14. The woman's protections upon divorce: she goes *lenafshah* ('on her own terms' — wherever she wants), cannot be sold (*makhor lo timkerenah* — absolutely cannot be sold), and cannot be treated as merchandise (*lo tit'ammer bah* — 'you shall not exploit her commercially'). The reason: *tachat asher innitah* ('because you humbled her') — the intimate relationship created obligations that survive the marriage's end. Once married, she has the rights of a free woman.
15. The scenario assumes polygamy (*shtei nashim* — 'two wives') and introduces a preference dynamic: *ahuvah* ('loved') versus *senu'ah* ('hated, unloved') — probably meaning 'less loved' rather than literal hatred, as with Leah in Genesis 29:31). The legal problem arises when the firstborn son is from the unloved wife and the father wants to favor the loved wife's son — precisely the scenario of Jacob, Rachel, Leah, and their sons.
16. The prohibition *lo yukhal levakker* ('he cannot give firstborn status') prevents a father from reassigning birth order based on marital preference. The verb *bakker* ('treat as firstborn, give firstborn status to') specifically prohibits the transfer of legal priority from the actual firstborn to a younger son. This law protects inheritance rights from the distortions of favoritism.
17. The double portion (*pi shnayim* — literally 'a mouth of two,' meaning two shares) is the firstborn's inheritance right: if there are three sons, the estate is divided into four parts, and the firstborn receives two. The father must *yakkir* ('acknowledge, recognize') the true firstborn. The phrase *reshit ono* ('the beginning of his strength/virility') connects the firstborn to the father's reproductive power — the first son is the first proof of the father's generative capacity. The *mishpat habbekhorah* ('right of the firstborn') is a legal entitlement, not a parental gift.
18. The *ben sorer umoreh* ('stubborn and rebellious son') is described with two adjectives: *sorer* ('turning aside, stubborn') and *moreh* ('defiant, rebellious'). Three conditions limit the law: (1) both parents must agree — *einennu shome'a beqol aviv uveqol immo* ('he does not listen to the voice of his father or the voice of his mother'); (2) prior discipline has been attempted — *veyisseru oto* ('they disciplined him'); (3) the defiance persists — *velo yishma aleihem* ('he still does not listen to them'). Rabbinic tradition added so many conditions that this penalty was considered practically impossible to carry out.
19. Both parents (*aviv ve'immo*) must act together — neither parent alone can initiate the proceedings. This requirement of mutual parental agreement serves as a safeguard against one parent's anger or prejudice. The city gate (*sha'ar meqomo*) is the traditional location for legal proceedings in ancient Israel, functioning as the public courthouse.
20. The parents make a formal legal accusation before the elders, adding two specific charges: *zolel vesove* ('glutton and drunkard'). These terms describe a lifestyle of self-indulgent excess that wastes family resources and shames the household. Proverbs 23:20-21 connects the *zolel vesove* with poverty and disgrace. The public accusation before elders ensures communal oversight — the parents' charge must be credible enough for community leaders to act.
21. The execution by communal stoning (*urgemahu kol anshei iro* — 'all the men of his city shall stone him') makes the punishment a communal act — no single person bears the weight of the killing. The double formula returns: *ubi'arta hara* ('purge evil') and *vekhlo Yisra'el yishme'u veyira'u* ('all Israel will hear and fear'). The severity of the punishment for a rebellious son underscores how seriously Israelite law took family structure as the foundation of social order.
22. The law addresses post-execution display, not the method of execution. The man is first executed (*humat* — 'he is put to death') and then hung (*vetalita oto al ets* — 'you hang him on a tree/pole'). Public display of the executed criminal served as both deterrent and statement of communal judgment. The term *ets* ('tree, wood, pole') could refer to any wooden structure used for display.
23. The prohibition against overnight exposure (*lo talin nivlato* — 'his corpse shall not remain overnight') limits the duration of public display. The theological reason is striking: *ki qilelat Elohim talui* ('for a curse of God is a hanged person') — the displayed body represents a divine curse, and prolonged display defiles the land. Paul applies this verse christologically in Galatians 3:13, identifying Jesus's crucifixion with the curse of the hanged. The land's sanctity requires prompt burial — even executed criminals retain enough dignity to demand interment.

22

Summary: Moses collects laws about returning lost property, cross-dressing, bird nests, roof parapets, mixed-kind prohibitions, tassels, and sexual offenses including marriage disputes and assault.

What Makes This Remarkable: The chapter moves from compassion for a lost ox (v. 1) to compassion for a mother bird (v. 6-7) to a parapet requirement preventing falls (v. 8) — the thread is the sanctity of life at every scale. The mother-bird law (shiluach haqen) promises long life for something as small as letting a bird go free. The prohibition of sha'atnez (v. 11, mixing wool and linen) remains one of the Torah's most opaque commands — no reason is given, and the mixture is reserved for priestly garments (Exodus 28).

Translation Friction: The phrase to'avat YHWH (v. 5, 'detestable to the LORD') applied to cross-dressing uses the strongest disapproval term in Deuteronomy's vocabulary, but the exact scope of the prohibition is debated: is it about deception, cultic cross-dressing, or gender categories? We rendered it plainly and noted the interpretive range. The word gedilim (v. 12, 'tassels') connects to the tsitsit of Numbers 15:38-39.

Connections: The lost-property law (vv. 1-4) develops Exodus 23:4-5. The roof-parapet law (v. 8) applies building-code ethics that persist into Talmudic law. The tassels command echoes Numbers 15:37-41. The marriage-dispute laws (vv. 13-29) provide the legal background for Joseph's dilemma in Matthew 1:19.

¹You must not see your brother's ox or sheep wandering off and ignore them. You must make sure to return them to your brother. ²If your brother does not live nearby, or if you do not know who he is, you must bring the animal into your own house and keep it until your brother comes looking for it, and then you must return it to him. ³You must do the same with his donkey, the same with his garment, and the same with anything your brother has lost that you find. You may not look the other way. ⁴You must not see your brother's donkey or ox fallen on the road and ignore them. You must help him lift them up again. ⁵A woman must not wear a man's equipment, and a man must not put on a woman's clothing, for anyone who does this is detestable to the LORD your God. ⁶If you come across a bird's nest along the road, in any tree or on the ground, with chicks or eggs, and the mother bird is sitting on the chicks or on the eggs, you must not take the mother along with the young. ⁷You must certainly let the mother go, but you may take the young for yourself, so that it may go well with you and you may have a long life. ⁸When you build a new house, you must construct a parapet for your roof, so that you do not bring bloodguilt on your house if someone falls from it. ⁹You must not sow your vineyard with two kinds of seed, or the entire yield will become sacred — both the seed you sowed and the produce of the vineyard. ¹⁰You must not plow with an ox and a donkey yoked together. ¹¹You must not wear fabric made of wool and linen woven together. ¹²You must make tassels on the four corners of the garment you wrap yourself in. ¹³If a man marries a woman, has relations with her, and then turns against her, ¹⁴and he levels charges against her, publicly defaming her by saying, 'I married this woman, but when I was intimate with her, I did not find evidence of her virginity' — ¹⁵then the young woman's father and mother must take the evidence of the young woman's virginity and bring it to the elders of the city at the gate. ¹⁶The young woman's father must say to the elders: 'I gave my daughter to this man in marriage, and now he has turned against her. ¹⁷He has made false charges, saying, "I did not find evidence of your daughter's virginity." But here is the proof of my daughter's virginity.' Then they must spread out the cloth before the elders of the city. ¹⁸The elders of that city must take the man and discipline him. ¹⁹They must also fine him one hundred silver shekels and give them to the young woman's father, because the husband publicly defamed a virgin of Israel. She will remain his wife, and he may never divorce her as long as he lives. ²⁰But if the charge is true and evidence of virginity was not found for the young woman, ²¹then they must bring the young woman to the entrance of her father's house, and the men of her city must stone her to death, because she committed a disgraceful act in Israel by being sexually promiscuous while in her father's house. So you will purge evil from your midst. ²²If a man is found sleeping with a woman who is married to another man, both of them must die — the man who slept with the woman and the woman. So you will purge evil from Israel. ²³If a young woman who is a virgin is engaged to a man, and another man encounters her in the

city and sleeps with her, ²⁴you must bring both of them out to the gate of that city and stone them to death — the young woman because she did not cry out even though she was in the city, and the man because he violated another man's wife. So you will purge evil from your midst. ²⁵But if the man encounters the engaged young woman in the open field and the man seizes her and sleeps with her, only the man who slept with her must die. ²⁶You must do nothing to the young woman — the young woman has committed no sin deserving death. This case is like a man attacking his neighbor and murdering him. ²⁷Because he found her in the open field — the engaged young woman cried out, but there was no one to rescue her. ²⁸If a man encounters a virgin who is not engaged, and he seizes her and sleeps with her, and they are discovered, ²⁹then the man who slept with her must give the young woman's father fifty silver shekels, and she must become his wife. Because he violated her, he may never divorce her as long as he lives.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *hit'allamta* ('hide yourself, look the other way') condemns willful indifference to a neighbor's loss. The infinitive absolute *hashev teshivem* ('returning you shall return them') intensifies the obligation — this is not optional neighborliness but a covenant duty. The term 'brother' (*achikha*) extends beyond blood relatives to any fellow Israelite, establishing mutual care as a communal norm.
2. The law extends to situations where the owner is unknown or distant. The finder must actively care for the lost animal — *asafto el tokh beitekha* ('gather it into your house') — bearing the cost of feeding and sheltering it. The obligation persists *ad drosh achikha oto* ('until your brother seeks it') — indefinitely, until the owner claims it. This creates a positive duty of stewardship over another's property.
3. The law expands from livestock to any lost property: donkey, garment, and *lekh ol avedat achikha* ('every lost thing of your brother'). The universal scope means there is no item too small or inconvenient to return. The closing phrase *lo tukhal lehit'alleim* ('you cannot hide yourself, you may not ignore it') makes indifference itself a violation — seeing and doing nothing is morally equivalent to causing the loss.
4. Beyond returning lost animals, this law requires active assistance when an animal collapses under its load. The infinitive absolute *haqem taqim* ('raising you must raise') intensifies the command — you must absolutely help. The parallel in Exodus 23:5 extends this duty even to the donkey of your enemy, making it clear that the obligation transcends personal relationships.
5. The term *keli gever* ('man's equipment/articles') is broader than clothing — *keli* can mean tools, weapons, or any characteristically male implements. The prohibition is reciprocal: women wearing male items and men wearing female clothing. The label *to'avat YHWH* ('detestable to the LORD') places this among the most seriously condemned behaviors in Deuteronomy. The precise rationale is debated: proposals include opposition to Canaanite cult practices involving cross-dressing, maintenance of created order distinctions, or prevention of deceptive identity.
6. The phrase *ki yiqqare* ('if it happens to be found' — if you chance upon) indicates a spontaneous encounter, not deliberate hunting. The law covers both *efrokhim* ('chicks') and *betsim* ('eggs'), and whether the nest is in a tree or on the ground. The prohibition *lo tiqqach ha'em al habbanim* ('do not take the mother upon the young') protects the breeding female — taking mother and offspring together eliminates future reproduction.
7. The infinitive absolute *shalle'ach teshalach* ('sending you must send away') makes the release of the mother bird mandatory. The reward formula — *lema'an yitav lakh veha'arakhta yamim* ('so that it goes well with you and you prolong your days') — is the same promise attached to honoring parents (5:16). Only two commandments carry this specific reward, and rabbinic tradition noted the connection: if such a seemingly minor commandment brings long life, how much more the weightier ones?
8. The *ma'aqeh* ('parapet, railing') is a safety barrier on flat rooftops, which in ancient Israel served as living space, sleeping areas, and work surfaces. The legal principle is remarkable: the builder is held liable for preventable accidents. The phrase *lo tasim damim beveitekha* ('do not put blood-guilt on your house') treats negligence as morally equivalent to causing death. This is one of the earliest building safety codes in recorded law.
9. The *kil'ayim* ('mixed kinds') prohibition forbids planting different crops in the same vineyard. The consequence *pen tiqdash* ('lest it become holy/set apart') is counterintuitive: the mixed crop becomes *qadosh* — sacred, and therefore forbidden for ordinary use. The verb *qadhash* here means 'become forfeit to the sanctuary,' effectively making the entire harvest unusable. Mixing categories produces something that belongs to neither and must be surrendered entirely.
10. Yoking different species (*shor vachamor* — ox and donkey) is prohibited because they differ in size, strength, and gait, causing the weaker animal to suffer. The law may also reflect the broader *kil'ayim* principle of maintaining created distinctions. Paul applies this metaphorically in 2 Corinthians 6:14 ('Do not be unequally yoked').
11. *Sha'atnez* is a technical term for the forbidden mixture of wool and linen in a single garment. The prohibition parallels Leviticus 19:19. Notably, the priestly garments did combine wool and linen (Exodus 28), suggesting that what is forbidden for ordinary use is reserved for sacred service — the prohibition maintains the distinction between common and holy.
12. The *gedilim* ('twisted cords, tassels') correspond to the *tsitsit* of Numbers 15:38-39, where their purpose is stated: to remind Israel of God's commandments. Placement on the *arba kanfot* ('four corners') of the outer garment makes them visible during daily life. The garment is the *kesut* ('covering, wrap-around cloak') — the standard outer garment of an Israelite.

13. The verb *usne'ah* ('and he hates her') marks the husband's rejection after consummation. The sequence — marriage, intimacy, hostility — establishes the context for a false accusation of premarital unchastity. This law section (vv 13-21) protects women from being discarded through false charges.
14. The husband's accusation involves three escalating actions: *sam lah alilot devarim* ('he placed against her fabricated charges'), *hotsi aleiha shem ra* ('he brought out against her a bad name' — public defamation), and a specific claim about missing *betulim* ('virginity evidence'). The term *alilot devarim* implies deliberate fabrication — trumped-up charges designed to justify divorce and avoid returning the bride-price.
15. Both parents (*avi hanna'arah ve'imamah* — 'the young woman's father and her mother') act to defend their daughter — the mother's role is explicitly included. The *betulei hanna'arah* ('evidence of the young woman's virginity') likely refers to the stained bedsheet from the wedding night, a custom attested across the ancient Near East and still practiced in some cultures. The elders at the gate serve as the judicial body.
16. The father speaks as the family's legal representative. His statement establishes the facts: a valid marriage was contracted (*natatti et bitti la'ish hazzeh le'ishah* — 'I gave my daughter to this man as a wife') and the husband has rejected her (*vayyisna'eha* — 'and he hated her'). The father's testimony sets up the defense.
17. The father quotes the husband's accusation and presents counter-evidence. The verb *ufarsu* ('they shall spread out') describes publicly displaying the *hassimlah* ('the cloth, the garment') — the wedding-night bedsheet — before the judicial assembly. The physical evidence serves as a public refutation of the husband's claim.
18. The verb *veyisseru* ('they shall discipline') likely refers to corporal punishment — flogging — as the penalty for false accusation. The elders act as both judge and enforcer. The husband's public lie against his wife is treated as a serious offense against both her and the community.
19. Three penalties: physical discipline (v 18), a financial penalty of *me'ah kasef* ('one hundred silver shekels' — double the standard bride-price of fifty shekels), and permanent marriage without the right of divorce (*lo yukhal leshallchah kol yamav* — 'he cannot send her away all his days'). The fine goes to the father as compensation for the public shame. The irrevocable marriage protects the woman from being abandoned after being publicly accused.
20. The conditional reversal: *im emet hayah haddavar hazzeh* ('if this matter was true'). The absence of evidence (*lo nimtse'u vetulim* — 'virginity evidence was not found') shifts the case from false accusation to proven charge. The gravity of the consequence that follows (v 21) must be understood within the context of betrothal as a binding covenant agreement.
21. The execution takes place at *petach bet aviha* ('the entrance of her father's house'), associating the crime with the household that should have prevented it. The charge is *nevalah beYisra'el* ('a disgraceful act in Israel') — *nevalah* denotes something scandalously out of bounds, a violation of community norms so severe it shames the entire people. The phrase *liznot bet aviha* ('to act promiscuously in her father's house') specifies the offense: premarital sexual activity while under her father's legal protection.
22. Adultery with a married woman (*ishah be'ulath ba'al* — 'a woman mastered by a husband,' that is, a married woman) carries the death penalty for both parties. The phrase *gam shneihem* ('both of them together') insists on equal punishment — the man is not less guilty than the woman. This reflects the covenant understanding of marriage: adultery violates the marriage covenant and defiles the community.
23. The case involves a betrothed virgin (*na'arah vetulah me'orasah le'ish* — 'a young woman, a virgin, betrothed to a man'). Betrothal in Israelite law was a legally binding contract — the betrothed woman had the legal status of a wife even before the marriage was consummated. Sexual contact with her therefore constituted adultery.
24. The urban setting matters: in a city, help was available. The young woman's failure to cry out (*lo tsa'aqah va'ir* — 'she did not cry out in the city') is treated as evidence of consent. The man's guilt is stated as *asher innah et eshet re'ehu* ('because he violated his neighbor's wife') — using 'wife' for a betrothed woman, confirming that betrothal equals marriage in legal status. The contrasting rural case (v 25) addresses situations where crying out would not have brought help.
25. The field setting (*bassadeh* — 'in the open field') changes the legal calculus entirely. The verb *hecheziq bah* ('he seized her, he overpowered her') indicates force — this is not consensual. Only the man dies (*levaddo* — 'alone, by himself'). The law distinguishes between urban consent (where crying out would bring help) and rural assault (where no help was available).
26. The law explicitly exonerates the victim: *ein lanna'arah chet mavet* ('there is no capital sin in the young woman'). The analogy to murder (*ka'asher yaqum ish al re'ehu uretsacho nefesh* — 'as when a man rises against his neighbor and murders him') is a legal comparison: just as a murder victim is not complicit in their own death, so the rape victim bears no guilt. This is one of the earliest legal protections for victims of sexual assault.
27. The reasoning is stated: *bassadeh metsa'ah* ('he found her in the field') — the isolated location explains both the assault and the inability to get help. The phrase *ve'ein moshi'a lah* ('and there was no rescuer for her') uses the same verb (*yasha* — 'save, deliver') that describes God's salvation. The absence of a human deliverer establishes the woman's helplessness and therefore her innocence.
28. The third case: an unbetrothed virgin (*na'arah vetulah asher lo orasah*). The verb *utfasah* ('he seizes her') indicates force or coercion. The phrase *venimtsa'u* ('and they are discovered') means the act becomes publicly known — the discovery triggers the legal process. Since she is not betrothed, no marriage covenant has been violated, so the penalty differs from the previous cases.
29. The penalties: *chamishim kasef* ('fifty silver shekels') paid to the father as bride-price, mandatory marriage (*velo tihyeh le'ishah* — 'she must become his wife'), and permanent marriage without divorce rights (*lo yukhal shallchah kol yamav* — 'he cannot send her away all his days'). The payment compensates the father for the loss of bride-price; the irrevocable marriage protects the woman from abandonment. The parallel in Exodus 22:16-17 adds that the father may refuse the marriage, suggesting the woman's family retains veto power.

23

Summary: *Moses defines who may enter the assembly of the LORD, addresses camp purity during warfare, protects escaped slaves, prohibits cult prostitution and interest on loans to fellow Israelites, and regulates vows.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The exclusion list (vv. 2-8) and the inclusion timeline are striking: Ammonites and Moabites are excluded to the tenth generation, but Edomites and Egyptians are accepted in the third generation — 'because he is your brother' (Edom) and 'because you were a foreigner in his land' (Egypt). Gratitude and kinship override hostility. The escaped-slave law (vv. 15-16) is revolutionary: a runaway slave must not be returned but allowed to live 'wherever he chooses' — a direct challenge to every slave-return treaty in the ancient Near East.*

Translation Friction: *The word mamzer (v. 2) is traditionally rendered 'illegitimate child' but its precise meaning is debated — it may refer specifically to the offspring of an incestuous or prohibited union rather than any child born outside marriage. We rendered it 'one of illegitimate birth' with a note on the semantic range. The term qahal YHWH (v. 2, 'assembly of the LORD') refers to the covenant community's formal worship gathering, not the nation in general.*

Connections: *Ruth the Moabite challenges the Moabite exclusion — her inclusion in David's genealogy (Ruth 4:17-22) stands in tension with this law. The runaway-slave protection contrasts sharply with the Philemon situation in Paul's letter. The interest prohibition (vv. 19-20) is developed in Ezekiel 18:8, 13, 17 as a marker of righteousness.*

¹A man must not marry his father's wife, and he must not uncover his father's covering. ²No man who has been crushed in the testicles or has had his male organ cut off may enter the assembly of the LORD. ³No one of illegitimate birth may enter the assembly of the LORD. Even to the tenth generation, none of his descendants may enter the assembly of the LORD. ⁴No Ammonite or Moabite may enter the assembly of the LORD. Even to the tenth generation, none of their descendants may ever enter the assembly of the LORD, ⁵because they did not meet you with food and water on the road when you came out of Egypt, and because they hired Balaam son of Beor from Pethor in Aram-naharaim to curse you. ⁶But the LORD your God refused to listen to Balaam. Instead, the LORD your God turned the curse into a blessing for you, because the LORD your God loves you. ⁷You must never seek their peace or their prosperity as long as you live. ⁸You must not despise an Edomite, for he is your brother. You must not despise an Egyptian, because you were a foreigner in his land. ⁹Children born to them in the third generation may enter the assembly of the LORD. ¹⁰When you go out as a military camp against your enemies, you must guard yourself from every evil thing. ¹¹If there is among you a man who becomes ritually unclean because of a nocturnal emission, he must go outside the camp. He may not re-enter the camp. ¹²Toward evening he must wash himself with water, and at sunset he may re-enter the camp. ¹³You must designate a place outside the camp where you can go to relieve yourself. ¹⁴You must have a digging tool among your equipment. When you relieve yourself outside, you must dig a hole with it and then cover up your excrement. ¹⁵For the LORD your God moves about within your camp, to deliver you and to hand your enemies over to you. Therefore your camp must be holy, so that He does not see anything indecent among you and turn away from you. ¹⁶You must not hand over to his master a slave who has escaped to you from his master. ¹⁷He may live with you, in your midst, in whatever place he chooses within any of your towns — wherever suits him best. You must not mistreat him. ¹⁸No Israelite woman may become a cult prostitute, and no Israelite man may become a cult prostitute. ¹⁹You must not bring the earnings of a prostitute or the payment for a dog into the house of the LORD your God to fulfill any vow, for both of these are detestable to the LORD your God. ²⁰You must not charge your brother interest — interest on money, interest on food, interest on anything that is lent at interest. ²¹You may charge interest to a foreigner, but to your brother you must not charge interest, so that the LORD your God may bless you in everything you undertake in the land you are entering to possess. ²²When you make a vow to the LORD your God, you must not delay in fulfilling it, for the LORD your God will certainly require it of you, and it would be counted as sin against you. ²³But if you refrain from making a vow, there is no sin in that. ²⁴Whatever comes from your lips you must keep and perform, just as you vowed to the LORD your God — the

freewill offering that you promised with your own mouth. ²⁵When you enter your neighbor's vineyard, you may eat as many grapes as you wish until you are full, but you must not put any in a container. ²⁶When you enter your neighbor's standing grain, you may pluck heads of grain with your hand, but you must not swing a sickle over your neighbor's grain.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. In Hebrew versification, this is 23:1; in KJV it is 22:30. The verse prohibits marrying one's stepmother (eshet aviv — 'his father's wife,' not necessarily his biological mother). The phrase lo yegalleh kenaf aviv ('he shall not uncover his father's skirt/wing') is a sexual euphemism: the father's 'covering' represents his marital rights. The same imagery appears in Ruth 3:9, where Ruth asks Boaz to spread his garment over her — a proposal of marriage.
2. In Hebrew versification, this is 23:2; the KJV text shown corresponds to KJV 23:2 (about a mamzer), but the Hebrew text addresses physical emasculation. The petsu'a daka ('crushed of crushing' — a man with crushed testicles) and kerut shofkhah ('cut off of the pouring member' — a man whose penis has been severed) are excluded from the qahal YHWH ('assembly of the LORD'). The exclusion likely targeted deliberate castration associated with pagan priesthood practices, not accidental injury.
3. The mamzer is traditionally understood as a child born from a forbidden sexual union (incest or adultery), not simply an out-of-wedlock child. The KJV text shown corresponds to KJV 23:3 (about Ammonites and Moabites), but the Hebrew text of this verse addresses the mamzer. The exclusion extends to dor asiri ('the tenth generation'), effectively meaning permanently — 'ten generations' functions as a synonym for 'forever' in this legal context.
4. The permanent exclusion of Ammonites and Moabites (ad olam — 'forever') is harsher than the generational limit for Edomites and Egyptians (v 8). Both peoples descended from Lot (Genesis 19:30-38) and were therefore distant relatives of Israel, making their hostility a betrayal of kinship. The reason follows in verse 5.
5. Two charges against Ammon and Moab: (1) failure of hospitality — lo qiddemu etkem ballechem uvammayim ('they did not meet you with bread and water') when Israel passed through during the exodus; (2) active hostility — hiring Bil'am (Balaam) to curse Israel. The combination of neglect and aggression compounds their guilt. The Balaam narrative is told in Numbers 22-24.
6. God's sovereignty overrules human cursing: vayahafokh YHWH lekha et haqqelalah livhrakhah ('the LORD turned the curse into a blessing for you'). The verb hafakh ('turn, reverse, overturn') — the same word used for the overthrow of Sodom — here describes God's power to reverse hostile spiritual forces. The theological ground is stated simply: ki ahevka YHWH ('because the LORD loves you'). Divine love protects Israel from external spiritual assault.
7. The prohibition lo tidrosh shelomam vetobhatam ('do not seek their peace or well-being') forbids treaties and trade alliances with Ammon and Moab. The phrase kol yamekha le'olam ('all your days forever') makes this permanent. This verse is notably severe compared to the treatment of Edomites and Egyptians in verse 8.
8. Two nations receive more favorable treatment: Edom (ki achikha hu — 'because he is your brother' — descended from Esau, Jacob's twin) and Egypt (ki ger hayita ve'artso — 'because you were a stranger in his land'). Despite Egypt's oppression, Israel's memory of Egyptian hospitality during the Joseph era creates an ongoing obligation. The verb te'ta'ev ('despise, abhor') is forbidden — Israel may not harbor collective hatred against these peoples.
9. Edomites and Egyptians face a three-generation waiting period (dor shelishi — 'third generation') before integration into the Israelite assembly. This is significantly more lenient than the permanent exclusion of Ammonites and Moabites. The distinction reflects different degrees of kinship and historical relationship — closer relatives and former hosts receive more favorable terms for eventual inclusion.
10. The transition to camp purity laws. The phrase ki tetse machaneh ('when you go out as a camp') treats the army as a sacred encampment — God's presence accompanies the military camp (v 15), requiring the same purity standards as the tabernacle camp. The broad command venishmarta mikkol davar ra ('guard yourself from every evil thing') introduces specific regulations in the following verses.
11. The miqreh laylah ('nocturnal occurrence') is a seminal emission during sleep, which creates temporary ritual impurity (see Leviticus 15:16-17). The impure man must leave the camp entirely — even in a military setting, purity laws apply. This reflects the theological conviction that the war camp is sacred space.
12. The restoration process: washing with water as evening approaches (lifnot erev yirchats bammayim), then waiting until sunset (ukevo'a hashemesh) before re-entering. The timing follows the standard Levitical pattern — impurity lasts until evening, and the new day begins at sunset. Even in the urgency of military operations, purification cannot be rushed.
13. The yad ('designated place' — literally 'hand,' meaning a marked or pointed-out location) is a latrine area outside the camp perimeter. The practical sanitation regulation has a theological foundation: the military camp must be kept clean because of God's presence within it (v 15). Ancient Near Eastern armies often suffered disease from poor sanitation — this law prevents that.
14. The yated ('peg, stake, digging tool') is part of mandatory military equipment — alongside weapons, each soldier carries a sanitation implement. The procedure is specific: dig (chafartah), then cover (vekhissita et tse'atekha — 'cover your excrement'). This is one of the Bible's most practical commands, combining public health with theological concern for camp sanctity.

15. The theological foundation for all camp regulations: YHWH Elohekha mithallekh beqerev machanekha ('the LORD your God walks about in the midst of your camp'). The verb mithallekh ('walks about') uses the same hitpael form as God walking in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3:8). God's presence makes the camp sacred ground (qadosh — 'holy'). The consequence of impurity: veshav me'acharekha ('He will turn away from behind you') — God withdraws His protective presence, leaving Israel militarily vulnerable.
16. This law is extraordinary in the ancient Near East, where extradition treaties for runaway slaves were standard (as in the Code of Hammurabi §15-16, which imposed the death penalty for harboring fugitives). Israel's law reverses the norm entirely: lo tasgir eved el adonav ('you shall not surrender a slave to his master'). The escaped slave who reaches Israel receives asylum — a radical statement about the value of human freedom.
17. The escaped slave receives extraordinary rights: freedom to choose where to live (bammaqom asher yivchar — 'in the place he chooses'), residence among Israelites (immekha yeshev beqirbekha — 'with you he shall dwell in your midst'), and legal protection from oppression (lo tonennu — 'you shall not oppress him'). This is full social integration, not second-class residency.
18. The qedeshah (feminine) and qadesh (masculine) are temple prostitutes — persons consecrated to fertility cult rituals associated with Canaanite worship. The root q-d-sh ('holy') is used ironically: these 'consecrated ones' serve a false holiness. The prohibition applies to both women (mibbenot Yisra'el — 'from the daughters of Israel') and men (mibbenei Yisra'el — 'from the sons of Israel'), indicating that both male and female cult prostitution existed in the ancient Near East.
19. The etnan zonah ('wages of a prostitute') and mechir kelev ('price of a dog') may not be used for sacred offerings. The term 'dog' (kelev) likely refers to a male cult prostitute — attested in other ancient Near Eastern texts as a designation for males engaged in temple prostitution. Both income sources are to'avat YHWH ('detestable to the LORD'). Money earned through sexual exploitation cannot be laundered through sacred giving.
20. The neshekh ('interest' — literally 'bite,' from nashakh, 'to bite') is prohibited in all forms when lending to a fellow Israelite (le'achikha — 'to your brother'). Three categories are specified: money (kesef), food (okhel), and anything else (kol davar asher yishshakh — 'anything that can generate interest'). The comprehensive list closes loopholes: no form of interest extraction from a fellow Israelite is permitted.
21. The distinction between brother and foreigner (nokhri) allows commercial interest on international trade loans while prohibiting it within the covenant community. The motivation is stated: lema'an yevarkhekha YHWH ('so that the LORD may bless you'). Covenant generosity toward fellow Israelites activates divine blessing on the national economy. The distinction is economic, not ethnic — a resident alien (ger) would typically be treated as a brother.
22. Vows to God must be fulfilled promptly: lo te'acher leshalmo ('do not delay to pay it'). The infinitive absolute darosh yidreshenu ('seeking He will seek it' — He will certainly demand it) emphasizes that God holds people accountable for their promises. An unfulfilled vow becomes sin (hayah vekha chet — 'there will be sin in you'). The urgency reflects the weight of speech directed to God — words spoken to the divine are binding.
23. The counterbalance to verse 22: not vowing is perfectly acceptable — ki techdal lindor lo yihiyeh vekha chet ('if you refrain from vowing, there will be no sin in you'). Ecclesiastes 5:5 echoes this: 'Better not to vow at all than to vow and not fulfill.' The law protects against rash vows by making clear that silence before God is always an option.
24. The phrase motsa sefatekha ('what goes out of your lips') makes spoken words the binding standard — once uttered to God, a vow acquires the force of obligation. The term nedavah ('freewill offering') emphasizes that the vow was voluntary, not compelled. Precisely because it was freely given, it must be freely honored. The integrity of speech before God is a covenant fundamental.
25. The right to eat from a neighbor's vineyard while passing through (akhalta anavim kenafshekha sov'ekha — 'eat grapes to your desire, your satisfaction') reflects communal generosity and hospitality laws. The limit — ve'el kelyekha lo titten ('do not put any in your container') — prevents taking and profiting from what is meant for immediate sustenance. The principle: satisfying hunger is a communal right; commercial harvesting of another's produce is theft.
26. This verse extends the vineyard principle to grain fields. The distinction is between hands (qatafta melilot beyadekha — 'you may pluck ears with your hand') and tools (chermesh lo tanif — 'do not swing a sickle'). Hand-plucking for immediate eating is permitted; using harvest tools constitutes unauthorized harvesting. Jesus's disciples exercised this right in Matthew 12:1, plucking grain on the Sabbath. The verse has no KJV equivalent at this verse number due to the Hebrew-KJV versification offset in this chapter.

24

Summary: *Moses addresses divorce procedure, protections for newlyweds, millstone pledges, kidnapping, skin diseases, loan collateral ethics, worker wages, and gleaning rights for the vulnerable.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The divorce certificate (sefer keritut, v. 1) is one of the most debated passages in the Torah. The phrase ervat davar ('something indecent/objectionable') triggered the famous Hillel-Shammai debate: Shammai read it as sexual immorality only, Hillel as any cause of displeasure. Moses does not command divorce — he regulates an existing practice to protect the woman with a written document. The chapter's consistent refrain is 'remember that you were a slave in Egypt' (vv. 18, 22) — every humanitarian law is grounded in liberation memory.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ervat davar (v. 1) is deliberately vague — and the vagueness may be intentional, leaving the community to discern boundaries rather than codifying them. We rendered it 'something indecent' and noted the full interpretive range. Jesus addresses this passage directly in Matthew 19:3-9, siding with neither school but appealing to Genesis 2:24 as the prior and governing text.*

Connections: *Jesus cites this passage in Matthew 19:7-8, calling it a concession to hardness of heart. The gleaning law (vv. 19-21) is practiced by Ruth in Ruth 2. The same-day wage payment (v. 15) is echoed in James 5:4. The principle that 'fathers shall not be put to death for children' (v. 16) is applied in 2 Kings 14:6.*

1If a man takes a wife and marries her, and she does not find favor in his eyes because he has found something indecent about her, then he must write her a certificate of divorce, place it in her hand, and send her from his house. 2After she leaves his house, she may go and become another man's wife. 3If the second husband also rejects her and writes her a certificate of divorce, places it in her hand, and sends her from his house — or if the second husband dies — 4then her first husband, who divorced her, may not take her back as his wife after she has been with another man, for that is detestable before the LORD. You must not bring sin upon the land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance. 5When a man has recently married a wife, he must not go out with the army, and no public duty may be imposed on him. He must be free for his household for one year, bringing joy to the wife he has married. 6No one may take a pair of millstones — or even the upper millstone — as collateral for a loan, for that would be taking a person's livelihood as collateral. 7If a man is found kidnapping one of his brothers from among the Israelites — exploiting him or selling him — that kidnapper must die. So you will purge evil from your midst. 8Be careful in cases of skin disease to follow very carefully all that the Levitical priests instruct you. Just as I commanded them, you must observe and carry out their directions. 9Remember what the LORD your God did to Miriam on the journey after you came out of Egypt. 10When you make any kind of loan to your neighbor, you must not enter his house to take his collateral. 11You must stand outside, and the person to whom you are lending must bring the collateral out to you. 12If the person is poor, you must not keep his collateral overnight. 13You must return the collateral to him at sunset so that he may sleep in his own garment and bless you. And it will be counted as righteousness for you before the LORD your God. 14You must not exploit a hired worker who is poor and needy, whether he is one of your own people or a foreigner residing in your land within your towns. 15You must pay him his wages each day before the sun sets, for he is poor and his life depends on it. Otherwise he may cry out to the LORD against you, and it would be counted as sin against you. 16Fathers must not be put to death for the sins of their children, and children must not be put to death for the sins of their fathers. Each person must be put to death only for his own sin. 17You must not deny justice to the foreigner or the fatherless, and you must not take a widow's garment as collateral. 18Remember that you were a slave in Egypt and the LORD your God redeemed you from there. That is why I am commanding you to do this. 19When you harvest your field and forget a sheaf in the field, you must not go back to get it. It must be left for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow, so that the LORD your God may bless you in all the work of your hands. 20When you beat your olive trees, you must not go over the branches again. What remains must be left for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. 21When you harvest your vineyard, you must not go through it again to pick what you missed. It must be left for the foreigner, the fatherless, and the widow. 22Reme

number that you were a slave in the land of Egypt. That is why I am commanding you to do this.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ervat davar* ('indecentcy of a matter' — something objectionable) is deliberately vague and became the center of the famous Hillel-Shammai debate: Shammai restricted it to sexual immorality; Hillel extended it to any cause of displeasure. Jesus addressed this passage in Matthew 19:3-9. The *sefer keritut* ('document of cutting' — certificate of divorce) is a formal legal instrument that frees the woman to remarry. The law does not institute divorce but regulates an existing practice.
2. The divorced woman has full legal freedom to remarry: *vehayah le'ish acher* ('she may become another man's wife'). The certificate of divorce protects her from being considered an adulteress if she remarries. Without the formal document, her status would be ambiguous and dangerous.
3. The scenario now involves a second marriage that also ends, whether by divorce (*usene'ah ha'ish ha'acharon* — 'the second husband hates her') or by death (*ki yamut ha'ish ha'acharon* — 'or the second husband dies'). The elaborate conditional setup — spanning verses 1-3 — builds toward the actual legal ruling in verse 4.
4. This is the actual legal ruling: the first husband may not remarry her (*lo yukhal ba'alach harishon lashuv leqachah* — 'her first husband cannot return to take her'). The reason is stated as *to'evah lifnei YHWH* ('detestable before the LORD'). Jeremiah 3:1 applies this principle metaphorically to Israel's relationship with God. The prohibition prevents marriage from becoming a revolving door and protects the woman from being treated as property shuttled between men.
5. The newlywed exemption covers both military service (*lo yetse batsava* — 'he shall not go out with the army') and all public obligations (*velo ya'avov alav lekhol davar* — 'no matter shall pass upon him'). The purpose is stated positively: *vesimmach et ishto* ('he shall bring joy to his wife'). The verb *simmach* is in the *piel* — intensive — meaning he must actively make her happy, not merely stay home. The year-long duration (*shanah echad*) exceeds the month-long exemption for the betrothed soldier in 20:7.
6. The *rechayim varokhev* ('millstones and rider' — the lower and upper grinding stones) were essential daily equipment for processing grain into flour. Taking them as pledge (*lo yachavol* — 'shall not seize as collateral') would deprive a family of their ability to prepare food. The principle: *ki nefesh hu chovel* ('for he is taking a life as pledge') — *nefesh* here means livelihood, not literally life. Essential survival tools may not be confiscated for debt.
7. Kidnapping (*gonev nefesh* — 'stealing a person') is a capital offense. The verb *hit'ammer* ('exploit, treat as merchandise') and *umkharo* ('sell him') describe the crime's full scope: abduction for the purpose of enslavement and sale. This law corresponds to the Eighth Commandment's original scope — 'You shall not steal' (Exodus 20:15) was understood to prohibit primarily person-theft, with property theft addressed elsewhere.
8. The *nega hatsara'at* ('affliction of *tsara'at*') refers to the skin conditions described in Leviticus 13-14 — a broader category than modern leprosy, encompassing various scaly or discolored skin conditions. The emphasis is on obedience to priestly instruction (*kol asher yoru etkhem* — 'everything they teach you'), positioning the priests as the authoritative diagnosticians for these conditions.
9. The reference to Miriam's *tsara'at* (Numbers 12:1-15) serves as a powerful warning: even Moses's own sister was not exempt from divine discipline for sin. The verb *zakhor* ('remember') in Deuteronomy always calls for active response, not mere recollection. The lesson: no one stands above the purity laws, and the priests' authority in these matters must be respected.
10. The creditor is prohibited from entering the debtor's house (*lo tavo el beto* — 'do not enter his house') to seize collateral. The debtor retains the dignity of his home — the creditor must wait outside (v 11). The loan (*mash'at me'umah* — 'a loan of anything') is stated broadly to cover all lending situations. This law protects the borrower's autonomy and prevents creditor intimidation.
11. The creditor must wait *bacchuts* ('outside'), and the debtor himself brings the pledge out (*yotsi elekha* — 'he will bring it out to you'). The debtor chooses which item to pledge, preventing the creditor from selecting the most valuable or personally meaningful possessions. This small detail encodes a profound respect for the borrower's agency even in a position of financial weakness.
12. Special protection for the poor borrower: *lo tishkav ba'avoto* ('you shall not sleep with his pledge' — you must not keep it overnight). A poor man's pledge was likely his outer garment — the cloak used as a blanket. Keeping it overnight would leave him cold. The creditor's property rights do not override the debtor's basic need for warmth. Exodus 22:26-27 states the same principle and adds: 'When he cries out to me, I will hear, for I am compassionate.'
13. The pledge must be returned *kevo'a hashemesh* ('at sunset') — before the cold night. The result: the borrower blesses the creditor (*uverkhekka* — 'and he will bless you'), and this act is counted as *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') before God. The term *tsedaqah* here means an act of justice that aligns with God's character — economic mercy is not charity but covenant righteousness.
14. The protection extends to both Israelites (*me'achekha* — 'from your brothers') and resident aliens (*migerekha* — 'from your strangers'). The terms *ani ve'evyon* ('poor and needy') describe economic vulnerability. The verb *lo ta'ashoq* ('do not oppress, exploit') covers wage theft, delayed payment, and taking advantage of the worker's desperate position. Economic exploitation of the vulnerable is a direct violation of covenant justice.
15. Day-laborers must receive same-day payment: *beyomo titten sekharo* ('on his day you must give his wages'). The phrase *ve'elav hu nose et nafsho* ('he lifts up his soul toward it' — his life depends on it) reveals the desperation of the poor worker who needs the money for that evening's meal. The theological dimension: the exploited worker may cry to God (*yiqr'a alekha el YHWH* — 'he will cry out against you to the LORD'), and God will hold the employer accountable.

16. The principle of individual criminal responsibility: *ish bechet'o yumatu* ('each person shall be put to death for his own sin'). This stands in tension with passages about God visiting iniquity on children (Exodus 20:5), but the distinction is between divine prerogative and human judicial practice. Human courts may not execute family members for another's crime. King Amaziah applied this law in 2 Kings 14:6, refusing to execute the children of his father's assassins.
17. Three vulnerable groups receive specific legal protection: the *ger* ('foreigner, resident alien'), the *yatom* ('fatherless, orphan'), and the *almanah* ('widow'). This triad appears repeatedly in Deuteronomy (10:18, 14:29, 16:11, 24:19-21, 26:12-13). The prohibition against taking a widow's garment as pledge extends the principle of verses 10-13 to the most vulnerable — she may not be made to surrender even her clothing for a debt.
18. The motivational formula *vezakharta ki eved hayita beMitsrayim* ('remember that you were a slave in Egypt') grounds social justice in historical experience. Israel's obligation to the vulnerable is rooted in their own history of vulnerability. The verb *vayifdekha* ('He redeemed you') uses the commercial term for buying back from slavery — God paid the price for Israel's freedom, and this act creates an obligation to extend similar mercy.
19. The forgotten sheaf law (*shikchah* — 'forgetfulness') converts accidental oversight into deliberate provision. If you forget an omer ('sheaf') during harvest, it must remain for the vulnerable triad (*ger*, *yatom*, *almanah*). The law transforms human imperfection into divine provision — God uses what we forget to feed those we might overlook. The blessing formula (*lema'an yevarkhekha YHWH* — 'so that the LORD may bless you') makes generosity the pathway to prosperity.
20. Olives were harvested by beating the branches with poles (*tachbot* — 'you beat'). The prohibition *lo tefa'er acharekha* ('do not go over after yourself') forbids a second pass — the remaining olives belong to the vulnerable. The verb *fa'ar* in this context means to strip clean or glean thoroughly. Like the forgotten sheaf, this law builds social welfare into the harvest process itself.
21. The vineyard gleaning law completes the triad of agricultural provisions: grain (v 19), olives (v 20), and grapes (v 21). The verb *te'olel* ('glean, gather small clusters') specifically refers to collecting the small, imperfect grape clusters left after the main harvest. Ruth exercised this right in Boaz's field (Ruth 2). The three laws together create a comprehensive welfare system built into Israel's agricultural economy.
22. The chapter closes as verse 18 did: with the slavery-memory formula. The repetition frames the entire section (vv 17-22) as motivated by exodus memory. Israel's social ethic is not abstract morality but experienced theology — 'you were vulnerable once; now protect the vulnerable.' The corporate memory of slavery creates perpetual obligation toward the marginalized.

25

Summary: *Moses limits judicial flogging, mandates the levirate marriage for a brother who dies without sons, prescribes the sandal-removal ceremony for refusal, and commands the destruction of Amalek's memory.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The levirate marriage law (yibbum, vv. 5-10) preserves the dead brother's name and inheritance through his living brother. The refusal ceremony is publicly humiliating: the widow pulls off the brother-in-law's sandal and spits in his face, and his family is known as 'the house of the one whose sandal was removed.' The chapter closes with the command to blot out Amalek's memory (v. 19) — a paradox, since the command to remember to destroy ensures Amalek is never forgotten.*

Translation Friction: *The word yevamah (v. 7, 'brother-in-law's wife') is a technical legal term from the root y-b-m that gives the institution its name (yibbum). English has no equivalent — 'levirate' comes from the Latin levir, not from Hebrew. The chalitsah ceremony (v. 9, pulling off the sandal) may connect to the sandal transaction in Ruth 4:7-8, though the relationship between the two customs is debated.*

Connections: *The levirate law provides the legal framework for Ruth 4 and Tamar's claim in Genesis 38. The Sadducees use it to challenge Jesus about resurrection (Matthew 22:23-28). The Amalek command is executed by Saul (1 Samuel 15) and Esther (Esther 9). The flogging limit (v. 3) is referenced by Paul in 2 Corinthians 11:24.*

¹When there is a dispute between people and they go to court, the judges must decide the case, acquitting the innocent and condemning the guilty. ²If the guilty person deserves flogging, the judge must have him lie down and be flogged in his presence, with the number of lashes corresponding to the severity of his offense. ³He may be given up to forty lashes but no more. If he is flogged beyond that with excessive blows, your brother will be degraded in your sight. ⁴You must not muzzle an ox while it is treading out grain. ⁵When brothers live together and one of them dies without a son, the dead man's wife must not marry outside the family to a stranger. Her brother-in-law must go to her, take her as his wife, and perform the duty of a brother-in-law for her. ⁶The first son she bears will carry on the name of the dead brother, so that his name is not

blotted out from Israel. ⁷But if the man does not want to marry his brother's widow, then the widow must go up to the gate, to the elders, and say, 'My brother-in-law refuses to preserve his brother's name in Israel. He is unwilling to perform the duty of a brother-in-law for me.' ⁸The elders of his city must summon him and speak with him. If he still stands firm and says, 'I do not want to marry her,' ⁹then his brother's widow must approach him in the presence of the elders, pull his sandal off his foot, spit in his face, and declare: 'This is what is done to the man who will not build up his brother's household.' ¹⁰His family will be known in Israel as 'The House of the Removed Sandal.' ¹¹If two men are fighting each other, and the wife of one of them intervenes to rescue her husband from the one striking him, and she reaches out and grabs the other man's genitals, ¹²you must cut off her hand. Your eye must not show pity. ¹³You must not have two different weights in your bag — a large one and a small one. ¹⁴You must not have two different measures in your house — a large one and a small one. ¹⁵You must use only full and honest weights, and full and honest measures, so that you may live long in the land that the LORD your God is giving you. ¹⁶For everyone who does these things — everyone who acts dishonestly — is detestable to the LORD your God. ¹⁷Remember what Amalek did to you on the road when you were coming out of Egypt — ¹⁸how he encountered you on the road and attacked your rear guard — all the stragglers trailing behind you — when you were exhausted and weary, and he had no fear of God. ¹⁹Therefore, when the LORD your God grants you rest from all your enemies on every side in the land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance to possess, you must blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven. Do not forget.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The judicial process begins with a *riv* ('dispute, controversy') between parties who bring it to the *hammishpat* ('the court, the place of judgment'). The judges' twofold duty is stated using causative verbs: *hitsddiqu et hatsaddiq* ('declare righteous the righteous one' — acquit the innocent) and *hirshi'u et harasha* ('declare guilty the guilty one' — convict the wicked). Justice means accurate identification — not compromise between parties but truthful determination of right and wrong.
2. Flogging is administered only after judicial determination (*im bin hakkot* — 'if he is a son of beating,' i.e., deserves flogging). The phrase *kedei rish'ato bemispar* ('according to his guilt, by number') requires proportional punishment — the lash count must match the crime's severity. The judge must be present (*lefanav* — 'before his face') to ensure proper administration and prevent abuse.
3. The forty-lash maximum (*arba'im yakkenu lo yosif* — 'forty he may strike him, he shall not add') establishes an absolute ceiling on punishment. Jewish practice reduced this to thirty-nine lashes (2 Corinthians 11:24) to provide a margin of error against accidentally exceeding the limit. The reason is remarkably humane: *veniqlah achikha le'einekha* ('your brother would be degraded before your eyes'). Even a convicted criminal remains 'your brother' — punishment must not strip away his fundamental dignity.
4. One of the Bible's most concise laws: *lo tachsom shor bedisho* ('do not muzzle an ox during its threshing'). The ox walking over grain to separate kernels from chaff must be allowed to eat while working. Paul applies this principle to human workers in 1 Corinthians 9:9 and 1 Timothy 5:18, arguing from lesser to greater: if an animal deserves to eat from its labor, how much more does a human worker. The law establishes that even animals have rights to the fruit of their labor.
5. The levirate marriage law (from Latin *levir*, 'brother-in-law'). The conditions: brothers living together (*yeshvu achim yachdav* — sharing an estate), death of one brother, and childlessness (*uven ein lo* — 'he has no son'). The widow must not marry outside (*lo tiyeh hachutsah le'ish zar* — 'shall not go outside to a stranger'). The brother-in-law's obligation (*yevamah yavo aleiha* — 'her levir shall go to her') preserves the dead brother's name and estate. Ruth and Boaz's story illustrates a broader application of this principle.
6. The firstborn from the levirate union *yaqum al shem achiv hammet* ('shall stand upon the name of his dead brother') — legally considered the dead brother's son for purposes of inheritance and lineage. The fear is that his name would be erased: *velo yimmacheh shemo miYisra'el* ('his name shall not be wiped out from Israel'). In a culture where family name continuity was linked to ongoing covenantal membership, name-erasure was a form of social death.
7. The refusal clause: *im lo yachpots ha'ish* ('if the man does not desire'). The widow has legal standing to bring a public complaint before the elders at the gate. Her accusation — *me'en yevami lehaqim le'achiv shem beYisra'el* ('my levir refuses to raise up a name for his brother in Israel') — reframes his personal preference as a failure of family obligation.
8. The elders' intervention creates a judicial hearing — they summon the man (*veqare'u lo* — 'they shall call him'), speak with him (*vedibru elav* — 'they shall speak to him'), presumably urging him to fulfill his obligation. Only after this mediation, if he remains adamant (*ve'amad ve'amar* — 'he stands and says'), does the *chalitzah* ceremony proceed.
9. The *chalitzah* ('removal') ceremony has three symbolic acts: removing his sandal (*vechaltsah na'alo* — sandal-removal signified transfer of rights, as in Ruth 4:7-8), spitting in his face (*veyarqah befanav* — public shaming for his refusal), and a verbal proclamation. The act publicly shames the man for prioritizing self-interest over family obligation. The phrase *asher lo yivneh et bet achiv* ('who will not build up his brother's house') equates his refusal

with allowing a family line to die.

10. The lasting social consequence: bet chaluts hanna'al ('the house of the removed sandal') becomes the man's family designation — a permanent mark of shame. His refusal to build his brother's house results in a degraded name for his own house. The stigma is generational: his descendants carry the label of a family that failed its covenant obligation.
11. The highly specific case involves a wife intervening in a fight (lehatsil et ishah — 'to rescue her husband') by seizing the attacker's genitals (hechezizqah bimevushav — 'she seized his private parts'). The scenario addresses a woman using a man's vulnerability as a weapon. The specificity suggests this case arose in actual legal practice and required a formal ruling.
12. The penalty — veqatsotah et kappah ('you shall cut off her hand') — is the only instance of mutilation as punishment in Deuteronomy's legal code. Some scholars interpret kappah ('her palm, her hand') metaphorically as a fine paid 'from her hand' (i.e., her resources), noting that the lex talionis elsewhere in Deuteronomy functions as proportional rather than literal punishment. The phrase lo tachos einekha ('your eye shall not pity') repeats from 19:13, 21.
13. The prohibition against even va'even ('stone and stone' — two different weights) addresses commercial fraud. Stone weights were used on balance scales to measure commodities for sale. Having two sets — a heavy one for buying (paying less) and a light one for selling (charging more) — was a common form of marketplace deception. The idiom 'stone and stone' means two weights that differ when they should be identical.
14. The parallel prohibition extends from weights (v 13) to volume measures: efah ve'efah ('ephah and ephah' — two different dry measures). The ephah was a standard dry measure (approximately 22 liters). Having two different ephah containers — one for buying grain and another for selling it — was another form of commercial fraud. The law demands consistency between the measure used to purchase and the one used to sell.
15. The positive command: even shelemah vatsedeq ('a complete and righteous weight') and efah shelemah vatsedeq ('a complete and righteous measure'). The adjective tsedeq ('just, righteous') applied to weights and measures means accurate, honest, fair. The reward for commercial integrity is the same as for honoring parents: lema'an ya'arikhu yamekha ('so that your days may be long'). Economic justice and national longevity are linked — a society built on fraud cannot endure.
16. Commercial dishonesty receives Deuteronomy's strongest condemnation: to'avat YHWH ('detestable to the LORD'). The expansion kol oseh avel ('everyone who does injustice') broadens the principle from specific weights-and-measures fraud to all forms of economic dishonesty. The paragraph marker (pe) after this verse creates a strong break before the Amalek remembrance.
17. The command zakhor ('remember') opens the Amalek remembrance, the final unit of the Deuteronomic law code. The exodus road (baderekh betse'tkhem miMitsrayim — 'on the way when you came out of Egypt') refers to the attack described in Exodus 17:8-16. Amalek's assault on a vulnerable, newly freed people makes them the paradigmatic enemy of Israel.
18. Amalek's cowardice is exposed: vayezannev bekha kol hannecheshalim acharekha ('he cut off your tail — all the weak ones trailing behind you'). The verb zinnev ('attack the rear, cut off the tail') describes targeting the most vulnerable — the elderly, the sick, the children who could not keep pace. The moral judgment: velo yare Elohim ('he did not fear God'). Attacking the defenseless reveals the absence of any moral restraint. This is not military aggression but predatory cruelty.
19. The command timcheh et zekher Amaleq mittachat hashamayim ('blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven') is paradoxically self-contradictory: remembering to forget. The concluding lo tishkach ('do not forget') creates a permanent obligation. King Saul's failure to complete this mandate (1 Samuel 15) cost him his kingdom. The Amalek remembrance closes the Deuteronomic law code proper — what follows in chapters 26-28 are ceremonies and blessings/curses.

26

Summary: *Moses prescribes the firstfruits liturgy — a confession beginning 'my father was a wandering Aramean' — and the tithe declaration, then concludes with a mutual covenant declaration between God and Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The firstfruits confession (vv. 5-9) is the earliest creed in Israel — a narrative summary of salvation history recited by every farmer at the sanctuary. It begins with arami oved avi ('my father was a wandering Aramean' or 'an Aramean was destroying my father'), and each verb marks a stage: went down, became a nation, was oppressed, cried out, was brought out. The chapter closes with the covenant's most intimate formula (vv. 17-18): God declares Israel His treasured people (am segullah) and Israel declares the LORD their God — a mutual pledging.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase arami oved avi (v. 5) is famously ambiguous: 'a wandering Aramean was my father' (Jacob the nomad) or 'an Aramean was destroying my father' (Laban threatened Jacob). The verb oved can mean 'perishing,' 'wandering,' or 'destroying.' We rendered it 'my father was a wandering Aramean' and noted both readings. The Passover Haggadah builds its entire exposition on this verse.*

Connections: The firstfruits creed (vv. 5-9) is recited at Passover to this day. The phrase yad chazaqah uzero'a netuyah ('powerful hand and outstretched arm,' v. 8) echoes 4:34 and 5:15. The am segullah declaration (v. 18) closes the circle opened in 7:6 and Exodus 19:5. Paul echoes the 'zealous for good works' language of v. 18 in Titus 2:14.

¹When you enter the land that the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance, and you take possession of it and settle in it, ²you must take some of the first of all the produce of the ground that you harvest from the land the LORD your God is giving you. Place it in a basket and go to the place that the LORD your God will choose as a dwelling for His name. ³You will go to the priest who is serving at that time and say to him, 'I declare today to the LORD your God that I have entered the land that the LORD swore to our ancestors to give us.' ⁴The priest will take the basket from your hand and set it down before the altar of the LORD your God. ⁵Then you will respond and say before the LORD your God: 'My father was a wandering Aramean. He went down to Egypt and lived there as a foreigner with only a few people, but there he became a great, powerful, and numerous nation. ⁶The Egyptians treated us harshly, oppressed us, and imposed brutal forced labor on us. ⁷So we cried out to the LORD, the God of our ancestors. The LORD heard our voice and saw our misery, our hardship, and our oppression. ⁸The LORD brought us out of Egypt with a powerful hand and an outstretched arm, with overwhelming terror, and with signs and wonders. ⁹He brought us to this place and gave us this land — a land flowing with milk and honey. ¹⁰So now, I have brought the first of the produce of the ground that you, LORD, have given me.' You will set it before the LORD your God and bow down in worship before the LORD your God. ¹¹Then you will celebrate all the good things that the LORD your God has given to you and your household — you, the Levite, and the foreigner living among you. ¹²When you have finished setting aside the full tenth of your produce in the third year — the year of the tithe — and have given it to the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan, and the widow, so that they may eat within your towns and be satisfied, ¹³then you will say before the LORD your God: 'I have removed the sacred portion from my house. I have also given it to the Levite, the foreigner, the orphan, and the widow, exactly as you commanded me. I have not violated your commandments, and I have not forgotten them. ¹⁴I have not eaten any of it while in mourning. I have not removed any of it while ritually impure. I have not offered any of it to the dead. I have listened to the voice of the LORD my God and have done everything you commanded me. ¹⁵Look down from your holy dwelling place, from heaven, and bless your people Israel and the ground you have given us — just as you swore to our ancestors — a land flowing with milk and honey.' ¹⁶Today the LORD your God is commanding you to follow these statutes and ordinances. You must keep and observe them with all your heart and with all your being. ¹⁷You have declared today that the LORD is your God, and that you will walk in His ways, keep His statutes, His commandments, and His ordinances, and listen to His voice. ¹⁸And the LORD has declared today that you are His treasured people, just as He promised you, and that you must keep all His commandments. ¹⁹He will set you high above all the nations He has made — for praise, for renown, and for glory — and you will be a holy people to the LORD your God, just as He has spoken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse opens with a temporal clause (ki tavo — 'when you enter') that assumes successful conquest. Three sequential verbs describe the progression: tavo ('enter'), yerishtah ('take possession'), and yashavta ('settle, dwell'). The term nachalah ('inheritance, hereditary possession') signals that the land is not merely territory but a covenantal bequest — a divine grant to be held across generations. This verse provides the heading for the entire firstfruits ritual.
2. The term reshit ('first, beginning, choicest') denotes the initial portion of the harvest — the firstfruits offered before the rest is consumed. The tene ('basket') is a woven container used specifically for produce transport; it reappears in verse 4 when the priest takes it. The phrase leshakken shemo sham ('to cause His name to dwell there') is Deuteronomy's distinctive formula for the central sanctuary — God's 'name' represents His accessible presence without limiting His cosmic transcendence.
3. The verb higgadti ('I have declared, I have announced') opens a formal public statement — this is legal testimony, not casual conversation. The phrase asher yihyeh bayyamim hahem ('who will be in those days') acknowledges that the priesthood will change across generations, but the ritual persists regardless of which priest serves. The oath to the ancestors (nishba laavotenu) ties the present moment of harvest to the patriarchal promises — every basket of fruit is proof that God kept His word.
4. The priest serves as mediator: he receives the basket (tene) from the worshiper's hand (miyadekha — 'from your hand,' emphasizing the personal transfer) and places it before the altar. The verb hinnicho ('he will set it down, deposit it') suggests a deliberate, ceremonial placement — not tossing the basket aside but positioning it in the presence of God. The altar is the meeting point between the worshiper's gratitude and God's provision.

5. The phrase *arami oved avi* is one of the most debated in the Hebrew Bible. *Oved* can mean 'perishing, lost, wandering, destitute.' The Aramean is Jacob, whose family connections trace to Aram (Paddan-aram). This three-word confession — 'a wandering Aramean was my father' — became the liturgical foundation of the Passover Haggadah. The entire creed (vv 5-9) compresses centuries of history into a single recitation: from one homeless ancestor to a mighty nation, from Egyptian bondage to divine deliverance, from wilderness to a land flowing with milk and honey. The verb *vayagar* ('he sojourned, lived as an alien') marks Jacob's status in Egypt as a resident foreigner with no land rights — the same word used of Abraham in Canaan.
6. Three verbs escalate the oppression: *vayyare'u* ('they treated us badly, they did evil to us'), *vay'annunu* ('they afflicted, oppressed us' — the same root as the 'affliction' God later sees in v 7), and *vayyittenu* ('they placed upon us'). The term *avodah qashah* ('hard labor, harsh servitude') echoes Exodus 1:14 where the Egyptians made Israel's lives bitter with 'hard labor.' The creed does not dwell on specific events but compresses decades of suffering into a single devastating sentence.
7. The turning point of the creed: Israel cries and God responds. The verb *vanitsa'aq* ('we cried out') is a cry of desperation, not a polite prayer. God's response is described with three sensory verbs and their objects: *vayishma* ('He heard') our voice, *vayyar* ('He saw') our *onyenu* ('affliction, misery'), *amalenu* ('toil, hardship'), and *lachtsenu* ('oppression, pressure'). Each noun carries a distinct shade of suffering: *oni* is material deprivation, *amal* is exhausting toil, and *lachts* is the crushing weight of external force.
8. Five prepositional phrases describe the means of deliverance — each introduced by the prefix *be* ('with'). The *yad chazaqah* ('strong hand') and *zero'a netuyah* ('outstretched arm') are classic exodus language, depicting God as a warrior whose arm reaches across nations. The *mora gadol* ('great terror') refers to the dread God struck into the Egyptians. The *otot* ('signs') and *mofetim* ('wonders') encompass the plagues and the sea-crossing. This verse is a compressed theology of the exodus: God acts with power (hand/arm), psychological force (terror), and supernatural demonstration (signs/wonders).
9. The creed concludes with arrival and gift. 'This place' (*hamaqom hazzeh*) may refer either to the central sanctuary or to the promised land itself. The phrase *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') is the classic description of Canaan's abundance — milk from pastoral herds and honey (likely date syrup, *devash*) from orchards. The formula appears over twenty times in the Torah and always points back to God's original promise. The worshiper standing with his basket of firstfruits is living proof that the promise was fulfilled.
10. The spoken creed (vv 5-10a) ends with *ve'attah hinneh heveti* ('and now, look — I have brought'), connecting the grand sweep of salvation history directly to the basket of fruit in the worshiper's hands. The logic is: because God brought us out and brought us in, I now bring this offering. The shift from first-person speech ('I have brought') to second-person instruction ('you will set it down... you will bow') marks the transition from the recited creed back to the ritual instructions. The verb *hishtachavita* ('bow down in worship') is a full prostration — the physical expression of gratitude and submission.
11. The verb *vesamachta* ('you will rejoice, celebrate') makes joy a commandment — gratitude is not optional but a required covenant response to God's generosity. The celebration is inclusive: it extends to your household (*ulveitekha*), the Levite (who has no territorial inheritance and depends on community support), and the *ger* ('foreigner, resident alien'). Deuteronomy consistently insists that Israel's worship include the economically vulnerable. The sectional marker (*samekh*) in the Hebrew text closes the firstfruits legislation.
12. The third-year tithe (*ma'aser* — a tenth) is distinguished from the regular annual tithe. In years one, two, four, and five of the seven-year cycle, the tithe was consumed at the central sanctuary. In the third year (and sixth year), the entire tithe remained local, distributed to four categories of vulnerable people: the Levite (landless clergy), the *ger* (foreigner), the *yatom* (orphan, fatherless), and the *almanah* (widow). The verb *vesaw'u* ('and they will be satisfied, filled') makes the purpose explicit — this is not token charity but provision to the point of fullness.
13. The tithe confession (*viddui ma'aser*) begins here and runs through verse 15. The verb *bi'arti* ('I have removed, I have purged') treats the sacred tithe as something that must not remain in the house beyond its appointed time — retaining what belongs to the vulnerable is a form of defilement. The two negative declarations — *lo avarti* ('I have not transgressed, violated') and *lo shakhachti* ('I have not forgotten') — cover both intentional disobedience and negligent omission. The worshiper accounts for both will and memory.
14. Three more negative declarations (*lo akhalti*, *lo vi'arti*, *lo natatti* — 'I have not eaten, I have not removed, I have not given') specify what could contaminate the sacred tithe. Eating *be'oni* ('in my mourning, in my grief') would associate the sacred portion with death-impurity. Handling it *betamei* ('in a state of ritual impurity') would violate its consecrated status. Giving it *lamet* ('for the dead') likely refers to funerary offerings or meals for the dead — a practice common in surrounding cultures but forbidden in Israel. These three prohibitions guard the boundary between the holy and the impure, between legitimate worship and pagan custom. The confession closes with a positive affirmation: *shamati beqol* ('I have listened to the voice of') — obedience summarized as attentive hearing.
15. The confession concludes with a prayer — a rare shift from declaration to petition. The verb *hashqifah* ('look down, gaze from above') asks God to direct His attention from His cosmic dwelling (*me'on qodshekha* — 'your holy habitation') in heaven toward His people below. The request is twofold: bless the people (*et ammekha et yisra'el*) and bless the land (*ve'et ha'adamah*). The closing phrase *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') echoes verse 9, forming a literary bracket around the entire ritual. The sectional marker (*samekh*) closes the tithe confession.
16. The final section (vv 16-19) shifts from specific ritual instructions to the overarching covenant framework. The phrase *hayyom hazzeh* ('this day, today') gives the commandments urgency — not ancient history but present obligation. The pairing of *chuqqim* ('statutes' — prescribed regulations) and *mishpatim* ('ordinances, judgments' — case-law decisions) covers the full spectrum of covenant legislation. The phrase *bekhol levavekha uvekhol nafshekha* ('with all your heart and with all your being') demands total engagement — not grudging compliance but wholehearted devotion. The term

nefesh here means the whole self, not merely the 'soul' in a Greek philosophical sense.

17. The rare verb *he'emarta* (*hifil* of *amar* — 'you have caused to say, you have declared, you have affirmed') appears only here and in verse 18 in the entire Hebrew Bible. Its precise meaning is debated: 'you have declared,' 'you have affirmed,' or 'you have acknowledged.' The effect is a public, binding statement — Israel formally declares YHWH to be their God, with five accompanying commitments: walking in His ways, keeping statutes (*chuqqav*), commandments (*mitsvotav*), ordinances (*mishpatav*), and listening to His voice (*lishmo'a beqolo*). This is Israel's side of the mutual covenant declaration.
18. The reciprocal declaration: in verse 17, Israel declared God; now God declares Israel. The verb *he'emirkha* ('He has declared you') mirrors *he'emarta* ('you have declared'). The term *am segullah* ('treasured people, prized possession') is one of the most significant covenant designations in the Torah, first used at Sinai (Exodus 19:5). It describes Israel not as a servant-nation but as a king's personal treasure — chosen, valued, and guarded. The condition attached (*velishmor kol mitsvotav* — 'and to keep all His commandments') reminds Israel that the treasured status carries obligations.
19. The chapter closes with the highest covenant promise: Israel set *elyon* ('high, supreme') above all nations. The three purpose phrases — *litehillah* ('for praise'), *uleshem* ('for renown, for a name'), *uletifaret* ('for glory, splendor') — describe not Israel's self-glorification but their role as God's display of covenant faithfulness to the watching world. The final phrase *am qadosh laYHWH* ('a holy people belonging to the LORD') echoes Exodus 19:6 and Deuteronomy 7:6, forming a theological bracket around the entire book's legislation. The closing *ka'asher dibber* ('just as He has spoken') grounds everything in God's prior word — His promise precedes and guarantees Israel's destiny. The paragraph marker (*pe*) closes the chapter.

27

Summary: *Moses and the elders command Israel to set up plastered stones inscribed with the Law on Mount Ebal after crossing the Jordan. Six tribes stand on Gerizim for blessing, six on Ebal for curse, and the Levites pronounce twelve curses.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The twelve curses (vv. 15-26) target sins committed in secret — idolatry behind closed doors, moving boundary stones at night, misleading the blind, perverting justice for the vulnerable, and sexual violations. The structure assumes that public law enforcement will miss these offenses; the curse ceremony transfers accountability to God. Each curse ends with 'and all the people will say: Amen' — the community collectively ratifies divine judgment on hidden sin.*

Translation Friction: *The word *arur* (v. 15, 'condemned/cursed') is performative speech — pronouncing the curse activates it. We rendered it 'condemned' rather than 'cursed' to avoid the magical connotation while preserving the judicial force. The final curse (v. 26) is sweeping: 'condemned is the one who does not uphold the words of this instruction by carrying them out.' Paul quotes this in Galatians 3:10 as the curse from which Christ redeems.*

Connections: *The Ebal ceremony is executed in Joshua 8:30-35. The plastered-stone inscription connects to ancient Near Eastern treaty practice. Paul's citation of v. 26 in Galatians 3:10 makes this verse pivotal to the theology of law and grace. The twelve-curse structure parallels the twelve-tribe organization of blessing in chapter 33.*

¹Moses, together with the elders of Israel, gave the people this charge: 'Guard every commandment that I am laying upon you today.' ²On the day you cross the Jordan into the land that the LORD your God is giving you, you must set up large stones and coat them with plaster. ³You must inscribe on them all the words of this instruction once you have crossed over, so that you may enter the land that the LORD your God is giving you — a land flowing with milk and honey — just as the LORD, the God of your ancestors, promised you. ⁴When you have crossed the Jordan, you must erect these stones that I am commanding you about today on Mount Ebal, and coat them with plaster. ⁵There you must build an altar to the LORD your God — an altar of stones. You must not use any iron tool on them. ⁶You must construct the altar of the LORD your God from whole, uncut stones, and on it you will present burnt offerings to the LORD your God. ⁷You will also sacrifice fellowship offerings there, eat the meal, and celebrate in the presence of the LORD your God. ⁸You must write on the stones all the words of this instruction, making them very clear. ⁹Then Moses and the Levitical priests addressed all of Israel: 'Be silent and listen, Israel! On this day you have become the people of the LORD your God.' ¹⁰You must therefore listen to the voice of the LORD your God and carry out His commandments and His statutes that I am charging you with today. ¹¹That same day Moses instructed the people as follows: ¹²These tribes will stand on Mount Gerizim to pronounce blessing over the people once you have crossed the Jordan: Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, Joseph, and Benjamin. ¹³And these will stand on Mount

Ebal for the pronouncement of curse: Reuben, Gad, Asher, Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali. ¹⁴The Levites will then declare to every person of Israel in a raised voice: ¹⁵'Condemned is the person who crafts a carved or cast idol — something the LORD detests — the product of a craftsman's hands, and sets it up in a hidden place.' And all the people will respond: 'Amen.' ¹⁶'Condemned is the one who treats his father or mother with contempt.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ¹⁷'Condemned is the one who moves his neighbor's boundary marker.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ¹⁸'Condemned is the one who leads a blind person astray on the road.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ¹⁹'Condemned is the one who distorts justice for the foreigner, the orphan, or the widow.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²⁰'Condemned is the one who sleeps with his father's wife, for he has violated his father's marriage.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²¹'Condemned is the one who has sexual relations with any animal.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²²'Condemned is the one who sleeps with his sister, whether his father's daughter or his mother's daughter.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²³'Condemned is the one who sleeps with his mother-in-law.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²⁴'Condemned is the one who strikes down his neighbor in secret.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²⁵'Condemned is the one who accepts a bribe to kill an innocent person.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.' ²⁶'Condemned is the one who does not uphold the words of this instruction by carrying them out.' And all the people will say: 'Amen.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *shamor* ('guard, keep watch over') conveys more than mere obedience — it implies vigilant, ongoing protection of the commandment, as a watchman guards a post. The singular *mitsvah* ('commandment') used collectively for the entire body of instruction suggests the covenant obligation is a unified whole, not a disconnected list. Moses shares authority with the elders (*ziquei Yisra'el*) for this charge, signaling that covenant responsibility will outlast his leadership.
2. The command to erect *avanim gedolot* ('large stones') and coat them with *sid* ('lime plaster, whitewash') describes an ancient Near Eastern practice of creating a smooth writing surface on rough stone. Egyptian and Mesopotamian parallels show that lime-plastered stelae were used for public display of royal decrees and treaty texts. The immediacy of *bayyom asher* ('on the day that') — the very day of crossing — signals that covenant inscription is the first act of possession, establishing the land under God's written terms before any settlement begins.
3. The phrase *divrei hattorah hazot* ('the words of this instruction') raises the question of scope: does 'this torah' refer to the entire Deuteronomic law code, a summary of it, or the blessings and curses of chapters 27-28? The phrase *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') is a fixed formula appearing over twenty times in the Pentateuch — *chalav* ('milk') represents pastoral abundance and *devash* ('honey,' likely date syrup rather than bee honey) represents agricultural sweetness. The land's character is defined by its covenant promise: *ka'asher dibber* ('just as He spoke/promised').
4. The location *behar Eival* ('on Mount Ebal') is theologically significant: Ebal is the mountain of cursing (v 13), not the mountain of blessing. The Samaritan Pentateuch reads 'Mount Gerizim' here instead, reflecting the Samaritan-Jewish dispute over the legitimate cult site. The placement of the inscribed law on the mountain of curse may suggest that the written torah serves as a witness against covenant violation — a permanent warning monument rather than a celebratory marker.
5. The prohibition *lo tanif aleihem barzel* ('you must not swing iron upon them') forbids shaping the altar stones with metal tools. The verb *tanif* ('swing, wave, wield') specifically describes the motion of lifting a tool to strike. The requirement for unworked stone (cf. Exodus 20:25) preserves the natural state of God's creation — human craftsmanship would impose human artistry on a structure meant to represent divine encounter. Iron (*barzel*) may also carry associations with weaponry, making the prohibition a statement that the altar is a place of peace, not violence.
6. The term *avanim shelemot* ('whole, complete, uncut stones') uses the same root as *shalom* ('peace, wholeness') — the stones must be *shalem*, intact as God made them. The *olot* ('burnt offerings, ascending offerings') are sacrifices entirely consumed by fire; nothing is retained by the worshiper. The verb *he'elita* ('you will cause to ascend') describes the smoke rising upward — the offering 'ascends' to God. The burnt offering on uncut stone at the covenant's inauguration establishes the pattern of total consecration at the moment of national commitment.
7. Unlike the *olah* (burnt offering) of verse 6, the *shelamim* ('fellowship offerings, peace offerings') are shared meals — portions go to God (fat burned on the altar), to the priest, and to the worshiper. The sequence *zavachta... akhalta... samachta* ('you will sacrifice... eat... rejoice') moves from ritual act to communal meal to emotional response. The covenant ceremony is not solely solemn — it includes feasting and joy (*simchah*) in God's presence. This combination of sacrifice, shared eating, and celebration characterizes covenant-making throughout the ancient Near East.
8. The phrase *ba'er hetev* ('making clear, explaining well') uses the verb *ba'ar* ('to make distinct, to engrave clearly, to elucidate'). This is not merely legible handwriting but a demand for clarity of meaning — the same root appears in Deuteronomy 1:5 where Moses 'explains' (*be'er*) the torah. The law must be both physically readable and intellectually accessible. The *setumah* paragraph marker after this verse separates the stone-inscription instructions (vv 1-8) from the covenant ceremony that follows (vv 9-26).

9. The rare verb *hasket* ('be silent, pay close attention') appears only here and in Deuteronomy 27:9 in the entire Hebrew Bible — it demands a quality of attention beyond ordinary hearing: stop everything and absorb what follows. The declaration *nihyeta le'am laYHWH* ('you have become a people belonging to the LORD') is performative — the statement itself constitutes the event. This is covenant formation language: Israel's identity as God's people is being established in this moment. Moses now shares authority with *hakkohanim haleviyim* ('the Levitical priests'), signaling the transition of covenant guardianship to the priestly class.
10. The two categories of obligation — *mitsvotav* ('His commandments,' specific directives) and *chuqqotav* ('His statutes,' fixed decrees) — together encompass the full range of covenant requirements. The verb *shamata* ('you shall hear/obey') carries the double sense of hearing and doing that is characteristic of Hebrew covenantal language — to truly hear God's voice is to act on it. The *setumah* marker closes this brief section (vv 9-10) in which Moses and the priests establish Israel's new identity before the tribal ceremony begins.
11. The phrase *bayyom hahu* ('on that day, that same day') anchors the tribal assignment ceremony to the same occasion as the preceding commands. The verb *vayetsav* ('he commanded, he charged') signals a shift from the general covenant declaration (vv 9-10) to specific ceremonial instructions for the tribes. This brief transitional verse introduces the liturgical arrangement of verses 12-26.
12. The six blessing tribes on Har Gerizim ('Mount Gerizim') are all sons of Rachel and Leah — the two primary wives of Jacob. The verb *levarekh* ('to bless') positions them as channels of divine favor. Mount Gerizim, the southern mountain overlooking Shechem, is the fertile, well-watered slope — geographically suited to represent blessing. The tribal division is not random: Simeon, Levi, Judah, and Issachar are Leah's sons; Joseph and Benjamin are Rachel's sons. The tribes of the two full wives stand for blessing; the tribes of the two concubines (Bilhah and Zilpah) stand for curse on Ebal.
13. The six tribes on Ebal include four sons of the concubines Bilhah and Zilpah (Gad, Asher, Dan, Naphtali), plus Reuben — who lost his firstborn status by sleeping with Bilhah (Genesis 35:22) — and Zebulun, Leah's youngest. The phrase *al haqqelalah* ('for the curse, upon the curse') positions these tribes not as cursed themselves but as witnesses to the covenant's negative sanctions. The geographic arrangement — two mountains with a valley between them — creates a natural amphitheater where the antiphonal recitation of blessings and curses would resonate across the assembled tribes.
14. The verb *ve'anu* ('they will answer, they will respond') suggests the Levites are responding to a prior statement or liturgical cue — the curse recitation is part of a structured call-and-response ceremony. The phrase *qol ram* ('a raised voice, a loud voice') indicates public proclamation — the curses must be heard by all. The Levites serve as the mediating voice between God and Israel: they stand on Gerizim for blessing (v 12) yet also pronounce the curses (here), functioning as neutral covenant administrators rather than partisans of either mountain.
15. The first of twelve *arur* ('condemned, cursed') declarations. Two types of idol are specified: *pesel* ('carved image,' from wood or stone) and *massekha* ('molten image,' cast metal). The phrase *to'avat YHWH* ('an abomination to the LORD, something the LORD detests') marks idolatry as the supreme covenant violation. Crucially, the idol is placed *bassater* ('in secret, in a hidden place') — this curse targets private, concealed sin that escapes human detection. The entire twelve-curse series (vv 15-26) addresses offenses committed in secret, beyond the reach of courts and witnesses. The communal response *ve'anu khol ha'am ve'amru Amen* ('and all the people will answer and say Amen') makes each individual personally ratify the curse — the Amen is a self-imprecation, binding oneself to the consequences. This liturgical pattern transforms the congregation from passive listeners into active participants in covenant enforcement.
16. The participle *maqleh* ('one who makes light of, treats with contempt') is the opposite of *kavod* ('honor, give weight to') — the fifth commandment demands that parents be given weight, and this curse targets those who make them lightweight, treating them as insignificant. The verb *qalah* means to diminish, trivialize, or curse — it covers a range from verbal abuse to material neglect. Like all twelve curses, this addresses behavior that could be hidden from public view: private mistreatment of aging parents within the household.
17. The participle *massig* ('one who moves, displaces') with *gevul* ('boundary, border, landmark') describes the covert relocation of property boundary stones — a crime committed under cover of darkness that steals land incrementally. In an agrarian society where land was the primary form of wealth and was understood as God's covenantal allotment to each family, moving a boundary stone was not mere theft but an assault on the divine distribution of inheritance. This offense also appears in the wisdom tradition (Proverbs 22:28, 23:10) and in prophetic condemnation (Hosea 5:10).
18. The participle *mashgeh* ('one who causes to go astray, one who misleads') with *ivver* ('a blind person') describes deliberate exploitation of someone's physical vulnerability. The phrase *baddarekh* ('on the road') makes it concrete — misdirecting a blind traveler. However, the principle extends beyond literal blindness: Leviticus 19:14 pairs 'do not curse the deaf' with 'do not place a stumbling block before the blind,' suggesting a broader ethic of protecting the vulnerable from exploitation they cannot detect. The secrecy theme continues: the victim cannot see the perpetrator.
19. The verb *matteh* ('bends, distorts, perverts') with *mishpat* ('justice, legal judgment') describes corruption of the judicial process to disadvantage those who lack social power. The triad *ger-yatom-ve'almanah* ('foreigner, orphan, widow') represents the three most vulnerable categories in Israelite society — those without the protection of a male head of household or clan membership. Deuteronomy returns to their protection repeatedly (10:18, 14:29, 16:11, 24:17, 26:12-13). The textual note at the end records uncertainty in the Aleppo Codex about whether a paragraph break (*setumah*) belongs here.
20. The metaphor *gilah kenaf aviv* ('he has uncovered his father's wing/covering') uses *kanaf* ('wing, edge of garment, protective covering') to describe marital rights and protection. To spread one's garment over a woman was to claim her as wife (Ruth 3:9); to uncover a father's 'wing' is to violate the protective covering of his marriage. The offense is not merely sexual — it is an assault on paternal authority and family structure. This likely refers to a stepmother (*eshet aviv* — 'his father's wife'), a situation that could arise after a father's death when a son might claim the father's widow.

- 21.** The phrase *shokhev im kol behemah* ('one who lies with any animal') prohibits bestiality in absolute terms — *kol* ('any, every') allows no exceptions. This violation crosses the creation boundary between human and animal that Genesis 1 established. The offense would by nature occur in secret (fields, barns, remote areas), fitting the chapter's pattern of sins committed beyond the reach of witnesses and courts. Parallel legislation appears in Exodus 22:19 and Leviticus 18:23, 20:15-16.
- 22.** The prohibition covers both full sisters (*bat aviv* — 'his father's daughter' and *bat immo* — 'his mother's daughter' being the same person) and half-sisters (sharing only one parent). The explicit mention of both paternal and maternal half-sisters closes any loophole — in a society that practiced polygamy, half-siblings from different mothers might not grow up in the same household, making such unions easier to conceal. The patriarchal narratives themselves record this as once permitted (Abraham and Sarah were half-siblings, Genesis 20:12), but the Levitical and Deuteronomic codes prohibit it.
- 23.** The term *chotanto* ('his mother-in-law') designates a relationship created by marriage rather than blood — sleeping with one's mother-in-law violates the network of trust and obligation that marriage establishes between families. Leviticus 20:14 prescribes execution by burning for this offense, placing it among the most severe sexual violations. The curse here supplements the legal penalty by addressing cases that escape detection: where no witnesses exist, the covenant curse stands as the enforcement mechanism.
- 24.** The participle *makkeh* ('one who strikes, one who kills') with *re'ehu* ('his neighbor, his fellow') *bassater* ('in secret') describes covert violence — assassination, ambush, or murder without witnesses. The word *bassater* ('in secret') appears here for the second time in the curse series (first in v 15 with the hidden idol), making the secrecy theme explicit. Where human courts cannot reach — because the crime is hidden — the covenant curse functions as divine prosecution. The legal system requires witnesses (Deuteronomy 19:15); the curse system does not.
- 25.** The phrase *loqeach shochad* ('one who takes a bribe') with *lehakkot nefesh dam naqi* ('to strike down the life of innocent blood') describes contract killing — accepting payment to murder someone who has done nothing to deserve death. The term *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') is a recurring Deuteronomic concern (19:10, 13; 21:8-9); shedding innocent blood pollutes the land and brings collective guilt. The bribe (*shochad*) adds corruption of the justice system to murder — this curse targets hired assassins and corrupt judges who condemn the innocent to death for payment.
- 26.** The final curse is comprehensive: *asher lo yaqim et divrei hattorah hazot* ('who does not uphold/establish the words of this instruction'). The verb *yaqim* ('uphold, establish, make stand') implies active sustaining — not merely refraining from violation but positively maintaining the covenant. This twelfth curse functions as a catch-all: any obligation not specifically covered by the previous eleven is included here. The Apostle Paul quotes this verse in Galatians 3:10 as evidence that the law brings curse rather than justification. The *petuchah* paragraph marker closes the entire curse liturgy. By saying Amen to all twelve curses, every Israelite has personally accepted the covenant's enforcement mechanism — they have invoked divine judgment upon themselves should they violate these terms in secret.

28

Summary: *Moses pronounces the blessings for obedience (vv. 1-14) and the curses for disobedience (vv. 15-68), beginning with agricultural abundance or failure and escalating to siege, cannibalism, and exile. The chapter closes with the covenant made in Moab.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The blessings occupy 14 verses; the curses occupy 54. The asymmetry is the point — the consequences of disobedience are described in relentless, escalating detail that reads like a preview of Israel's actual history. The siege description (vv. 49-57) matches the Babylonian and Roman sieges with uncanny specificity. The chapter ends where it began — 'back to Egypt in ships' (v. 68), the ultimate reversal of the Exodus, and no one will buy them as slaves because even that degradation will be denied.*

Translation Friction: *The opening intensified infinitive shamo'a tishma (v. 1, 'if you truly listen') sets a condition no generation fully meets. The qere/ketiv in verse 30 — where the written text (ketiv) uses the vulgar yishgalenah and the read text (qere) substitutes the euphemistic yishkavenah — is one of the Torah's most sensitive textual notes. We followed the WLC convention: ketiv in brackets, qere in parentheses.*

Connections: *The curses describe Israel's actual history: Assyrian deportation (2 Kings 17), Babylonian siege (2 Kings 25), and conditions matching Lamentations. The 'back to Egypt in ships' (v. 68) reverses the Exodus promise. The covenant formula (v. 69/29:1) transitions to the Moab covenant renewal in chapter 29. Jesus alludes to the siege conditions in Luke 19:43-44.*

¹If you truly listen to the voice of the LORD your God, carefully observing all His commandments that I am commanding you today, then the LORD your God will set you high above all the nations of the earth. ²All these blessings will come upon you and overtake you, when you listen to the voice of the LORD your God. ³You will be blessed in the city, and you will be blessed

in the field. ⁴Blessed will be the fruit of your womb, the produce of your soil, and the offspring of your livestock — the calves of your herds and the lambs of your flocks. ⁵Blessed will be your basket and your kneading bowl. ⁶You will be blessed when you come in, and blessed when you go out. ⁷The LORD will cause your enemies who rise against you to be struck down before you. They will advance against you from one direction and flee from you in seven directions. ⁸The LORD will command blessing upon you in your storehouses and in everything you undertake. He will bless you in the land that the LORD your God is giving you. ⁹The LORD will establish you as His holy people, just as He swore to you, if you keep the commandments of the LORD your God and walk in His ways. ¹⁰All the peoples of the earth will see that the name of the LORD is called over you, and they will stand in awe of you. ¹¹The LORD will make you overflow with prosperity — in the fruit of your womb, in the offspring of your livestock, and in the produce of your soil — on the land that the LORD swore to your ancestors to give you. ¹²The LORD will open for you His rich storehouse — the heavens — to give rain to your land in its season and to bless all the work of your hands. You will lend to many nations, but you will not borrow. ¹³The LORD will make you the head and not the tail. You will always be on top and never on the bottom — if you obey the commandments of the LORD your God that I am commanding you today, by carefully following them. ¹⁴You must not turn aside from any of the words that I am commanding you today, to the right or to the left, to follow other gods and serve them. ¹⁵But if you do not listen to the voice of the LORD your God by carefully observing all His commandments and statutes that I am commanding you today, then all these curses will come upon you and overtake you. ¹⁶You will be cursed in the city and cursed in the field. ¹⁷Cursed will be your basket and your kneading bowl. ¹⁸Cursed will be the fruit of your womb, the produce of your soil, the calves of your herds, and the lambs of your flocks. ¹⁹You will be cursed when you come in, and cursed when you go out. ²⁰The LORD will send against you confusion, turmoil, and rebuke in everything you undertake, until you are destroyed and perish quickly — because of the evil of your deeds, for you will have abandoned Me. ²¹The LORD will make pestilence cling to you until it has consumed you from the land you are entering to possess. ²²The LORD will strike you with wasting disease, with fever, with inflammation, with scorching heat, with drought, with blight, and with mildew. They will pursue you until you perish. ²³The sky above your head will become bronze, and the ground beneath you will become iron. ²⁴The LORD will turn the rain of your land into dust and powder. It will come down on you from the sky until you are destroyed. ²⁵The LORD will cause you to be defeated before your enemies. You will advance against them from one direction and flee from them in seven directions. You will become an object of horror to all the kingdoms of the earth. ²⁶Your corpses will become food for all the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth, and no one will frighten them away. ²⁷The LORD will strike you with the boils of Egypt, with tumors, with festering sores, and with an itch from which you cannot be healed. ²⁸The LORD will strike you with madness, blindness, and confusion of mind. ²⁹You will grope at noon as a blind person gropes in darkness. You will not succeed in anything you do. You will be nothing but oppressed and robbed continually, with no one to rescue you. ³⁰You will become engaged to a woman, but another man will take her. You will build a house, but you will not live in it. You will plant a vineyard, but you will not enjoy its fruit. ³¹Your ox will be slaughtered before your eyes, but you will not eat any of it. Your donkey will be seized right in front of you and not returned. Your flock will be given to your enemies, and no one will rescue you. ³²Your sons and daughters will be given to another people. Your eyes will watch for them and waste away with longing for them all day long, but you will be powerless to do anything. ³³A people you do not know will consume the produce of your land and all your labor. You will be nothing but oppressed and crushed continually. ³⁴You will be driven mad by what your eyes must witness. ³⁵The LORD will strike you on the knees and legs with painful boils that cannot be healed, from the sole of your foot to the top of your head. ³⁶The LORD will bring you and the king you have set over yourself to a nation that neither you nor your ancestors have known, and there you will serve other gods — gods of wood and stone. ³⁷You will become an object of horror, a cautionary tale, and a taunt among all the peoples where the LORD drives you. ³⁸You will carry much seed out to the field, but you will gather little, because locusts will devour it. ³⁹You will plant vineyards and tend them, but you will not drink the wine or gather the grapes, because worms will consume them. ⁴⁰You will have olive trees throughout your territory, but you will not anoint yourself with oil, because your olives will drop off before ripening. ⁴¹You will father sons and daughters, but they will not remain yours, because they will go into captivity. ⁴²Swarming insects will take over all your trees and the produce of your land. ⁴³The foreigner living

among you will rise higher and higher above you, while you sink lower and lower. ⁴⁴He will lend to you, but you will not lend to him. He will be the head, and you will be the tail. ⁴⁵All these curses will come upon you, pursuing you and overtaking you until you are destroyed, because you did not listen to the voice of the LORD your God by keeping His commandments and statutes that He commanded you. ⁴⁶They will be signs and warnings upon you and your descendants permanently. ⁴⁷Because you did not serve the LORD your God with joy and gladness of heart when you had abundance of everything, ⁴⁸you will serve your enemies — whom the LORD will send against you — in hunger, in thirst, in nakedness, and in total deprivation. He will place an iron yoke on your neck until He has destroyed you. ⁴⁹The LORD will raise up against you a nation from far away, from the ends of the earth, swooping down like an eagle — a nation whose language you will not understand, ⁵⁰a fierce-faced nation that shows no respect for the elderly and no mercy to the young. ⁵¹They will consume the offspring of your livestock and the produce of your soil until you are destroyed. They will leave you no grain, no new wine, no olive oil, no calves from your herds, and no lambs from your flocks — until they have annihilated you. ⁵²They will besiege you at all your gates until your high, fortified walls — in which you trusted — come crashing down throughout your land. They will lay siege to you at all your gates, throughout the land that the LORD your God has given you. ⁵³You will eat the fruit of your own womb — the flesh of your sons and daughters whom the LORD your God has given you — during the siege and the desperate straits in which your enemy will press you. ⁵⁴The most refined and gentle man among you will look with hostility at his own brother, at the wife he embraces, and at the children he has left, ⁵⁵refusing to share with any of them the flesh of his children that he is eating, because he has nothing else left, during the siege and the desperate straits in which your enemy will press you at all your gates. ⁵⁶The most refined and delicate woman among you — who would not even venture to set the sole of her foot on the ground because of her daintiness and sensitivity — will look with hostility at the husband she embraces, at her own son, and at her own daughter, ⁵⁷begrudging even the afterbirth that comes from between her legs and the children she bears, because she will eat them secretly in her total deprivation, during the siege and the desperate straits in which your enemy will press you at your gates. ⁵⁸If you do not carefully observe all the words of this instruction that are written in this book, so as to revere this glorious and awesome name — the LORD your God — ⁵⁹then the LORD will bring extraordinary afflictions upon you and your descendants — severe and lasting afflictions, and terrible and chronic diseases. ⁶⁰He will bring back upon you all the diseases of Egypt that you dreaded, and they will cling to you. ⁶¹Even every disease and every affliction not written in this book of instruction, the LORD will bring upon you until you are destroyed. ⁶²You will be left few in number, though you were once as numerous as the stars of the sky — because you did not listen to the voice of the LORD your God. ⁶³Just as the LORD took delight in doing good for you and in making you numerous, so the LORD will take delight in causing your ruin and in destroying you. You will be uprooted from the land you are entering to possess. ⁶⁴The LORD will scatter you among all the peoples, from one end of the earth to the other. There you will serve other gods that neither you nor your ancestors have known — gods of wood and stone. ⁶⁵Among those nations you will find no rest, and your foot will find no resting place. The LORD will give you there an anxious heart, failing eyes, and a despairing soul. ⁶⁶Your life will hang in suspense before you. You will live in dread night and day, with no confidence in your own survival. ⁶⁷In the morning you will say, 'If only it were evening!' and in the evening you will say, 'If only it were morning!' — because of the dread in your heart and the sights your eyes must see. ⁶⁸The LORD will bring you back to Egypt in ships, by the route about which I said to you, 'You shall never see it again.' There you will offer yourselves for sale to your enemies as male and female slaves, but no one will buy you. ⁶⁹These are the words of the covenant that the LORD commanded Moses to make with the children of Israel in the land of Moab, in addition to the covenant He made with them at Horeb.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The infinitive absolute *shamoa tishma* ('listening you shall listen' — truly listen) opens the chapter with an intensified demand for obedience. The conditional structure (*im... venatanekha* — 'if... then He will set you') establishes the entire chapter as covenant consequences: blessings for obedience (vv 1-14), curses for disobedience (vv 15-68). The word *elyon* ('high, supreme') positions Israel at the apex of the nations — not through military power but through covenant faithfulness.

2. The verb *hissigukha* ('overtake you, catch up to you') personifies blessings as pursuers — they chase the obedient person and catch them. The image is striking: you cannot escape God's blessing when you walk in His ways. The blessings are not distant rewards but active forces that pursue and find the faithful.
3. The blessing formulas of verses 3-6 use *barukh* ('blessed') as a declaration of divine favor covering every sphere of life. The city-field pair encompasses all inhabited space — urban and rural, commerce and agriculture. The parallelism is characteristic of Hebrew blessing language: comprehensive coverage through paired opposites.
4. Three domains of fertility are blessed: human reproduction (*peri vitnekha* — 'fruit of your womb'), agricultural yield (*peri admatekha* — 'fruit of your ground'), and animal husbandry (*peri behemtekha* — 'fruit of your livestock'). The rare terms *shegar alafekha* ('increase of your cattle' — the calving of your herds) and *ashterot tsonekha* ('offspring of your flocks' — possibly related to the goddess Ashtoreth's fertility associations, here stripped of pagan context) specify the two main branches of animal agriculture.
5. The *tan'akha* ('your basket' — used for gathering produce) and *mish'artekha* ('your kneading trough' — used for making bread) represent the beginning and end of the food-production process: harvest and preparation. Together they mean blessed from field to table — abundance at every stage.
6. The coming-in/going-out pair (*bevo'ekha/betsetekha*) covers all movement: leaving home and returning, departing for war and coming back safely, entering a city and exiting it. The merism (two extremes representing the whole) means blessing accompanies every transition, every journey, every venture.
7. The military blessing uses a striking numerical contrast: enemies attack from one direction (*bederekh echad* — 'in one road') but scatter in seven directions (*uvshiv'ah derakhim* — 'in seven roads'). Seven represents completeness — the enemy rout is total. This reversal pattern (one becoming seven) reappears inverted in the curses (v 25): Israel will attack from one direction and flee in seven.
8. God 'commands' (*yetsav*) blessing — the same verb used in Leviticus 25:21 for commanding the land's abundance. Blessing is not accidental but sovereignly dispatched. The phrase *uvkhol mishlach yadekha* ('in everything your hand is sent to' — everything you undertake) extends the blessing beyond agriculture to commerce, craftsmanship, and every human endeavor.
9. The term *am qadosh* ('holy people') echoes the foundational declaration of Exodus 19:6 and Deuteronomy 7:6. The verb *yeqimekha* ('He will establish you, He will raise you up') suggests permanence and public visibility — God will make Israel's holiness evident to the world. The condition is twofold: keeping commandments (obligation) and walking in His ways (character).
10. The phrase *shem YHWH niqra alekha* ('the name of the LORD is called over you') describes a claim of ownership and protection — like a king's name placed on his city. Israel bears God's name; their flourishing or failure reflects on Him. The response of the nations is *yir'ah* ('awe, fear, reverence') — not terror but recognition that Israel stands under divine protection.
11. The verb *hotirkha* ('He will make you overflow, He will give you abundance') suggests surplus beyond need. The triad of fertility (womb, livestock, soil) repeats from verse 4, now explicitly connected to the ancestral promise (*nishba laavotekha* — 'He swore to your fathers'). The blessings of Deuteronomy 28 are fulfillments of the Abrahamic covenant.
12. The heavens are called God's *otsaro hattov* ('His good storehouse') — rain is a treasure that God dispenses from His cosmic supply room. The economic consequence of agricultural abundance is financial independence: lending to nations (*vehilvita goyim rabbim*) without needing to borrow (*ve'attah lo tilveh*). The lending/borrowing dynamic becomes a metaphor for national sovereignty and dependence.
13. The head/tail and above/below pairs are vivid metaphors for national standing: leadership versus subjugation, dominance versus subordination. The conditional *ki tishma* ('if you obey') is restated, reinforcing that these are covenant blessings — conditional on faithfulness, not automatic entitlements.
14. The blessings section closes with a warning: the boundary is strict adherence to the covenant without deviation (*lo tasur* — 'you shall not turn aside'). The right/left metaphor describes any departure from the commanded path. The ultimate form of turning aside is idolatry — following other gods (*lalekhet acharei elohim acherim*). The paragraph marker (*pe*) closes the blessings section. What follows is almost four times longer.
15. The curse section begins with an exact structural mirror of verse 1 — the same conditional formula, now negated (*im lo tishma* — 'if you do not listen'). The same verb *hissigukha* ('overtake you') used for blessings in verse 2 now describes curses pursuing and catching the disobedient. The symmetry is deliberate: the same covenant that empowers blessing also activates curse.
16. Verses 16-19 mirror verses 3-6 exactly, replacing *barukh* ('blessed') with *arur* ('cursed'). The same comprehensive pairs — city/field, womb/soil/livestock, basket/kneading bowl, coming in/going out — are now domains of curse rather than blessing. The structural parallelism makes the reversal devastating: everything that could have been blessed is now cursed.
17. The reversal of verse 5. The same daily items — the harvest basket and the bread-making vessel — become sites of scarcity rather than abundance.
18. The reversal of verse 4. The three domains of fertility — human, agricultural, and animal — all fall under curse. The barrenness and crop failure implied here would have been experienced as a direct divine statement about the broken covenant.
19. The reversal of verse 6. Every movement, every transition, every venture is now under curse. The mirrored blessings-and-curses section (vv 3-6 / vv 16-19) ends here. What follows (vv 20-68) has no blessing counterpart — the curses expand far beyond the blessings in scope and intensity.

- 20.** Three terms of divine judgment: me'erah ('curse'), mehumah ('confusion, panic, turmoil'), and mig'eret ('rebuke, frustration'). The phrase asher azavtani ('for you have abandoned Me') shifts to first-person divine speech — God speaks directly as the one abandoned. The curses are not arbitrary punishment but relational consequences: Israel abandons God, and God withdraws His protecting presence.
- 21.** The verb yadbeq ('make cling, attach') is the same root used for the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24 ('a man shall cling to his wife'). Here it describes pestilence (dever) adhering to Israel — an anti-marriage, an intimate and inescapable attachment to disease.
- 22.** Seven afflictions are named — the number of completeness applied to destruction. The first four are diseases of the body (shachefet — wasting/consumption, qaddachat — burning fever, dalleqet — inflammation, charchur — scorching heat). The last three are environmental disasters (cherev — drought/sword, shiddafon — blight from hot east wind, yeraqon — mildew/yellowing of crops). The verb uredafukha ('they will pursue you') reverses verse 7 where enemies fled; now afflictions are the pursuers.
- 23.** A vivid cosmic reversal: the heavens that should pour rain (v 12) become impenetrable bronze (nechoshet), and the earth that should yield produce becomes unyielding iron (barzel). The two elements of creation that sustain life — sky and soil — become hostile. This image reverses the blessing of verse 12 where God opened the heavens as His storehouse.
- 24.** Instead of rain, dust and powder fall from the sky — a surreal inversion of natural order. The Hebrew avaq ve'afar ('powder and dust') describes the fine particulate matter of drought and dust storms. Where the heavens should send water, they send arid destruction.
- 25.** The exact inversion of verse 7: there, enemies attacked from one direction and fled in seven; here, Israel attacks from one direction and flees in seven. The word za'avah ('horror, trembling, object of terror') describes Israel's reputation among the nations — not the awe of verse 10 but revulsion and dread. Israel becomes a cautionary tale rather than a model.
- 26.** Unburied corpses consumed by scavengers is one of the most horrifying images in the ancient Near East — denial of burial was considered a curse beyond death. The phrase ve'ein macharid ('and there is no one to frighten them away') adds helplessness: not even the basic act of shooing scavengers from the dead will be possible.
- 27.** The shechin mitsrayim ('boils of Egypt') directly recalls the sixth plague (Exodus 9:8-12) — the very afflictions God sent upon Egypt will now fall on disobedient Israel. The diseases escalate: boils (shechin), tumors (ofalim — possibly hemorrhoids or bubonic swellings), festering sores (garav), and chronic itch (chares). The final clause asher lo tukhal lehirafe ('from which you cannot be healed') removes hope of recovery.
- 28.** Three mental afflictions parallel the physical diseases of verse 27: shiga'on ('madness, derangement'), ivvaron ('blindness' — possibly metaphorical), and timhon levav ('bewilderment of heart, confusion of mind'). The progression moves from body (v 27) to mind (v 28) — the curse is total, affecting every dimension of human experience.
- 29.** The image of groping at noon (memashesh batshohorayim) in broad daylight as if in total darkness is a powerful metaphor for spiritual and intellectual disorientation. The phrase ve'ein moshia ('and there is no one to save') is devastating — the absence of a deliverer. This echoes the pre-exodus condition when Israel cried out and God heard (Exodus 2:23-25), but now the rescue does not come.
- 30.** Three life milestones are described and then denied: marriage (ishah te'ares — you will become betrothed), homeownership (bayit tivneh — you will build a house), and viticulture (kerem titta — you will plant a vineyard). These are the same three exemptions from military service in Deuteronomy 20:5-7 — the very blessings that war cannot be allowed to interrupt will be stolen by the curse. The textual note [yishkavenah/yishgalenah] reflects a qere/ketiv variation where the written text uses a cruder verb (shagal — 'ravish') while the read text softens it (shakhav — 'lie with').
- 31.** The cruelty of the curses intensifies: the person must witness the destruction or theft of their property (le'einekha — 'before your eyes,' milefanekha — 'from before your face'). The forced witnessing adds psychological torment to material loss. The phrase ve'ein lekha moshia ('no one to rescue you') echoes verse 29.
- 32.** The loss of children — given to another people (presumably as captives or slaves) — is the deepest personal curse. The phrase ve'einekha ro'ot vekhalot aleihem ('your eyes watching and failing/wasting away with longing for them') describes the unending grief of a parent separated from children, watching and hoping for their return. The final phrase ve'ein le'el yadekha ('there is no power in your hand') describes absolute helplessness.
- 33.** The produce of the land (peri admatekha) and the fruit of labor (yegi'akha) are consumed by strangers (am asher lo yada'ta — 'a people you have never known'). The anonymity of the oppressor adds to the horror — exploitation by unknown foreigners. The terms ashuk ('oppressed') and ratsuts ('crushed') describe systemic, unrelenting subjugation.
- 34.** The verse is devastating in its brevity: meshugga ('driven mad, insane') from the sight of what comes (mimar'eh einekha — 'from the sight of your eyes'). The accumulated horrors of verses 30-33 — stolen wife, lost home, seized livestock, captive children, consumed labor — produce madness. The curse attacks the mind itself.
- 35.** The shechin ra ('painful/evil boil') recalls both the Egyptian plague (v 27) and Job's affliction (Job 2:7). The phrase mikfaf raglekha ve'ad qodqodekha ('from the sole of your foot to the top of your head') means total bodily coverage — no part of the person is spared. The incurable nature (lo tukhal lehirafe) makes the condition permanent.
- 36.** Exile is now explicit: God Himself brings (yolekh — 'will cause to go') Israel and their king to a foreign nation. The phrase elohim acherim ets va'even ('other gods — wood and stone') is bitterly ironic: Israel abandoned the living God to worship idols, and now in exile they will serve the lifeless objects they chose. The punishment fits the crime.

37. Three terms describe Israel's degraded reputation: shammah ('horror, desolation'), mashal ('proverb, cautionary example' — the kind of story told to warn others), and leshininah ('taunt, byword, sharp saying'). Israel's story will be told not as an inspiration but as a warning. This reverses verse 10 where the nations stood in awe.
38. Agricultural futility: abundant sowing (zera rav) yields minimal harvest (me'at te'esof). The arbeh ('locust') is the agent of destruction — the same creature that devastated Egypt in the eighth plague (Exodus 10). The irony is pointed: the plagues God sent against Israel's enemies now target Israel itself.
39. The pattern of verses 38-42 is consistent: maximum effort (planting, tending) yields nothing (no wine, no harvest) because of some agent of destruction (locusts, worms, blight). Each verse names the human labor and the divine frustration of that labor.
40. Olive oil was essential for cooking, lighting, medicine, and personal care. The verb yishal ('will drop, will cast off') describes premature fruit drop — the olives fall from the tree before they can be harvested and pressed. Olive trees throughout the territory (bekhol gevulekha) but no usable oil: abundance of trees without produce.
41. The loss of children to captivity (shevi) echoes verse 32. The brutal brevity of ki yelkhu bashshevi ('for they will go into captivity') states the loss without elaboration — no explanation, no comfort, just the fact.
42. The tselatsal ('buzzing/chirping insect' — possibly a cicada or cricket variety) completes the agricultural devastation: trees and crops alike are consumed. The root ts-l-ts-l is onomatopoeic — the word sounds like the buzzing of the insect swarm.
43. The social inversion is complete: the ger ('foreigner, resident alien'), who was dependent on Israelite protection, now surpasses the Israelite. The intensified forms ma'lah ma'lah ('higher and higher') and mattah mattah ('lower and lower') describe accelerating divergence — not a momentary reversal but a progressive collapse.
44. The exact reversal of verses 12-13: Israel was to lend and not borrow, to be head and not tail. Now the foreigner lends and Israel borrows; the foreigner leads and Israel follows. The inversion of every blessing into its opposite demonstrates the systematic nature of the covenant curses.
45. This verse serves as a summary and transition, restating the cause-and-effect logic of the covenant. The pursuit language (uredafukha vehissigukha — 'pursuing you and overtaking you') echoes both verse 2 (blessings overtaking) and verse 15 (curses overtaking). The curses are not random misfortune — they are covenant consequences for covenant breach.
46. The curses become ot umofet ('sign and wonder') — the same terms used for God's mighty acts in Egypt (Deuteronomy 4:34, 6:22). In Egypt, signs and wonders demonstrated God's power for Israel's salvation; now they demonstrate His power in judgment. The phrase ad olam ('permanently, to the farthest horizon') extends the consequences beyond the current generation to all descendants.
47. This verse identifies the root cause with startling specificity: not merely failure to serve God but failure to serve Him besimchah uvetuv levav ('with joy and gladness of heart'). Joyless obedience is not enough — God expects His people to find delight in covenant faithfulness. The phrase merov kol ('from the abundance of everything') specifies the context: Israel had everything and still did not worship with joy.
48. The contrast with verse 47 is devastating: instead of serving God 'with abundance of everything' (merov kol), Israel will serve enemies 'in total deprivation' (uvechoser kol — 'in lack of everything'). The iron yoke (ol barzel) on the neck is a metaphor for oppressive servitude — compare Jeremiah 28:13-14 where Nebuchadnezzar's domination is described as an iron yoke.
49. The invading nation is characterized by distance (merachok miqtseh ha'arets — 'from afar, from the end of the earth'), speed (ka'asher yid'eh hannesher — 'as an eagle swoops down'), and foreignness (lo tishma leshono — 'you will not understand its language'). The eagle simile evokes predatory speed and unstoppable descent. Many interpreters see this as prophetically describing Assyria (722 BCE) or Babylon (586 BCE), whose languages (Akkadian, Aramaic) were foreign to Hebrew speakers.
50. The phrase az panim ('fierce of face, hard-faced') describes a people without compassion. Their ruthlessness is expressed through the society's most vulnerable: the elderly (zaqen) and children (na'ar). A nation that spares neither the old nor the young has no moral restraints — the total war that follows (vv 51-57) will be without quarter.
51. The invader consumes everything — the same triad of agricultural produce (dagan, tirosh, yitshar — 'grain, new wine, olive oil') and livestock categories (shegar alafekha ve'ashterot tsonekha — 'calves and lambs') that were blessed in verse 4 are now stripped away. The repetition of ad hishamdekha / ad ha'avido otakh ('until you are destroyed / until they have annihilated you') frames the verse with finality.
52. The siege (hetsar lekha — 'he will press you, besiege you') targets the city gates (she'arekha) — the points of entry and commerce. The ironic phrase asher attah boteach bahen ('in which you trusted') exposes misplaced trust: Israel trusted in walls rather than in God. The final phrase — 'the land that the LORD your God has given you' — reminds that the very land being devastated was God's gift.
53. The most horrifying verse in the chapter: cannibalism of one's own children (akhalta peri vitnekha, besar banekha uvenotekha — 'you will eat the fruit of your womb, the flesh of your sons and daughters') during siege conditions. The phrase asher natan lekha YHWH Elohekha ('whom the LORD your God has given you') makes the horror worse — these children were God's gift, and starvation drives parents to devour them. This is recorded as historical reality during the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem (2 Kings 6:28-29, Lamentations 2:20, 4:10).
54. The irony is crushing: the most tender person (ha'ish harakh — 'the soft/refined man,' he'anog me'od — 'extremely delicate') becomes hostile toward his closest family members. The phrase tera einav ('his eye will be evil/hostile') describes jealous guarding of food against one's own spouse and surviving children. Starvation destroys the most intimate human bonds.

55. The horror continues: the refined man who is eating his own children's flesh refuses to share it with his surviving family. The phrase *mibeli hish'ir lo kol* ('because nothing at all remains for him') explains but does not excuse the scene. The text does not look away from the worst consequences of covenant breach.
56. The parallel now shifts to a woman: the most sheltered, pampered woman in Israel (*asher lo nishtah khaf raglah hatseg al ha'arets* — 'who has not tried to place the sole of her foot on the ground') — a woman so refined she has never walked barefoot — will become as hardened as the man in verse 54. The descriptive excess emphasizes the transformation: from extreme refinement to unspeakable degradation.
57. The most extreme verse in the Hebrew Bible: a mother consuming her afterbirth (*shilyatah* — 'her afterbirth, her placenta') and her newborn children (*uvevaneiha asher teled* — 'and her children whom she bears') in secret (*bassater* — 'in hiding'), driven by starvation during siege. The secrecy adds another dimension: shame survives even when all other human instincts have collapsed. The text does not euphemize or soften — it forces the reader to confront the ultimate consequences of national covenant breach.
58. A new subsection begins with a conditional (*im lo tishmor* — 'if you do not observe'). The object of reverence is not God directly but *hashsem hannikhbad vehanora hazeh* ('this glorious and awesome name') — the name YHWH itself is presented as an object of awe. The term *nikhbad* ('glorious, weighty, honored') shares its root with *kavod* ('glory, weight'), connecting the divine name to the weight-and-substance concept of *kavod*.
59. The verb *hifli* ('make extraordinary, make wonderful') is the same root used for God's 'wonderful' miracles — here applied to afflictions. God's power, which created wonders for Israel's salvation, will create wonders of destruction. The afflictions are *ne'emanot* ('lasting, persistent, faithful') — ironically, the same word used for God's faithfulness (*emunah*). The plagues are 'faithfully' persistent.
60. The Egyptian plagues that Israel witnessed and feared (*yagort mipneihem* — 'you dreaded before them') will now become Israel's own experience. The verb *davqu* ('they will cling') echoes verse 21 — diseases attach to Israel as intimately as a marriage bond. The exodus, which freed Israel from Egypt's afflictions, is here symbolically reversed.
61. This verse extends the curse beyond the specific afflictions listed — *asher lo khatuv besefer hattorah hazot* ('which is not written in this book of the law') means the list is not exhaustive. Any and every disaster, including ones not yet imagined, falls within the scope of covenant curse. The open-ended nature of this statement makes the warning comprehensive.
62. The Abrahamic promise of descendants as numerous as the stars (Genesis 15:5, 22:17) is directly referenced and reversed. The phrase *kekhokh'vei hashamayim larov* ('as the stars of the sky in multitude') echoes the original covenant promise — the very blessing God pledged to Abraham will be undone. Few in number (*bimtei me'at*) replaces the promise of countless descendants.
63. One of the most theologically challenging verses in the Hebrew Bible: God's joy (*sas* — 'rejoice, delight') in doing good is paralleled by God's joy (*yasis* — same verb) in destruction. The symmetry is disturbing and deliberate — the same divine energy that built Israel up will tear it down. The verb *venissachtem* ('you will be uprooted, torn away') uses agricultural language: Israel will be pulled from the land like a plant torn from soil.
64. The diaspora prophecy: *vehefitsekha YHWH bekol ha'ammim* ('the LORD will scatter you among all the peoples'). The phrase *miqtseh ha'arets ve'ad qtseh ha'arets* ('from one end of the earth to the other') describes total global dispersion. The worship of wood and stone gods (*ets va'even*) echoes verse 36 — exile leads to the idolatry that caused the exile in the first place. The punishment becomes a trap.
65. Three afflictions of the inner person in exile: *lev raggaz* ('a trembling/anxious heart'), *khilyon einayim* ('failing/wasting eyes' — eyes that wear out from watching and hoping), and *da'avon nafesh* ('despair of soul, languishing of the inner self'). The phrase *lo thargia* ('you will find no ease') and *lo yihyeh manoach lekhaflaglekha* ('there will be no rest for the sole of your foot') describe perpetual displacement — the wandering exile who never settles.
66. The phrase *chayyekha telu'im lekha minneged* ('your life will be hanging before you from opposite') describes life suspended in uncertainty — visible but unreachable, always in danger of falling. The total loss of security (*lo ta'amin bechayyekha* — 'you will not trust in your life') is the ultimate psychological consequence: not even the continued existence of the self can be assumed.
67. The day-night cycle becomes a trap: morning brings dread of the coming day's horrors; evening brings dread of the coming night's terrors. The phrase *mi yitten erev / mi yitten boqer* ('who will give evening / who will give morning' — 'if only it were...') expresses desperate longing for time to pass, for the present moment to end. Every moment is unbearable; every future moment threatens to be worse.
68. The chapter ends with the ultimate reversal: return to Egypt (*veheshivekha YHWH Mitsrayim* — 'the LORD will bring you back to Egypt'). The exodus is undone — Israel returns to the place of bondage from which God rescued them. The irony of *ba'oniyyot* ('in ships') contrasts with the original exodus through the sea on dry land. The final horror is not slavery but rejection: *vehitmakartem sham le'oyevkha la'avadim velishfachot ve'ein qoneh* ('you will offer yourselves for sale as slaves, but no one will buy you'). Israel becomes so degraded that they are worthless even as slaves. This is the nadir of the covenant curses.
69. This verse is numbered as 28:69 in the Hebrew text (29:1 in English Bibles). It serves as a colophon — a closing summary that identifies the entire preceding section (chapters 27-28) as *divrei habberit* ('the words of the covenant'). The covenant at Moab is explicitly distinguished from the Horeb (Sinai) covenant (*milvad habberit asher karat ittam beChorev* — 'in addition to the covenant He made with them at Horeb'), establishing that Deuteronomy represents a covenant renewal, not merely a repetition.

29

Summary: *Moses renews the covenant in Moab with all Israel — leaders, tribes, women, children, foreigners, and future generations not yet present. He warns against hidden idolatry and declares that 'the hidden things belong to the LORD, but the revealed things belong to us.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The covenant's scope is breathtaking: 'not with you alone' but 'with whoever is standing here with us today and with whoever is not here with us today' (vv. 14-15). Every future generation is bound. The closing verse (v. 28) is one of the most quoted in Jewish theology: 'the hidden things belong to the LORD our God, but the revealed things belong to us and to our children forever.' The distinction between divine mystery and human responsibility defines the boundary of theological inquiry.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *shoresh poreh rosh vela'anah* (v. 18, 'a root sprouting poison and wormwood') uses botanical metaphor for hidden idolatry — the poisonous root grows unseen underground. We rendered *rosh* as 'poison' rather than the plant name because the danger, not the botany, is the point. The verse numbering follows Hebrew: 29:1 in our text is 29:2 in KJV (Hebrew 28:69 = KJV 29:1).*

Connections: *Hebrews 12:15 alludes to the 'root of bitterness' from verse 18. The hidden/revealed distinction (v. 29) grounds the rabbinic principle that Torah addresses what humans can act on, not divine secrets. The covenant-with-future-generations concept reappears in the Passover Haggadah's 'in every generation, each person must see themselves as having come out of Egypt.'*

¹Moses summoned all Israel and said to them: You yourselves witnessed everything the LORD did before your eyes in the land of Egypt — to Pharaoh, to all his officials, and to his entire land. ²You saw the great trials with your own eyes — those mighty signs and wonders. ³Yet the LORD has not given you a mind to comprehend, eyes to truly see, or ears to truly hear — until this very day. ⁴I led you through the wilderness for forty years. Your clothing did not wear out on you, and your sandals did not wear out on your feet. ⁵You ate no ordinary bread and drank no wine or fermented drink, so that you would recognize that I am the LORD your God. ⁶When you arrived at this place, Sihon king of Heshbon and Og king of Bashan marched out to fight us, and we defeated them. ⁷We seized their land and assigned it as a permanent inheritance to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. ⁸Guard the terms of this covenant and carry them out, so that you will succeed in everything you undertake. ⁹All of you stand today before the LORD your God — your leaders, your tribal heads, your elders, your officials, every man of Israel, ¹⁰along with your children, your wives, and the foreigners within your camp — from the one who chops your wood to the one who draws your water. ¹¹so that you may enter into the covenant of the LORD your God and into His sworn oath, which the LORD your God is making with you today. ¹²in order to establish you today as His own people, and so that He will be your God — just as He promised you, and as He swore to your ancestors, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. ¹³It is not with you alone that I am making this covenant and this sworn oath, ¹⁴but with whoever stands here with us today before the LORD our God, and equally with whoever is not here with us today. ¹⁵For you yourselves know how we lived in the land of Egypt, and how we passed through the midst of the nations you traveled among. ¹⁶You saw their repulsive things and their worthless idols made of wood, stone, silver, and gold that they had. ¹⁷Take care that there is no man, woman, family, or tribe among you whose heart is turning away today from the LORD our God to go and serve the gods of those nations — that there is no root among you sprouting poison and wormwood. ¹⁸When such a person hears the words of this sworn oath and blesses himself in his heart, thinking, 'I will be fine even though I walk in the stubbornness of my own heart' — thereby sweeping away the well-watered land along with the dry, ¹⁹the LORD will refuse to forgive him. Instead, the LORD's anger and jealousy will smolder against that person, and every curse written in this book will settle upon him, and the LORD will erase his name from under the heavens. ²⁰The LORD will single him out for disaster from among all the tribes of Israel, in accordance with all the covenant curses written in this book of instruction. ²¹The future generation — your descendants who rise up after you, along with the foreigner who arrives from a distant land — will see the afflictions of that land and the diseases the LORD has inflicted on it, ²²and they will see the entire land reduced to

sulfur, salt, and scorched earth — nothing sown, nothing sprouting, not a single plant growing in it — like the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboiim, which the LORD overthrew in His anger and fury. ²³All the nations will ask, 'Why did the LORD do this to this land? What caused this tremendous burning anger?' ²⁴And the answer will come: 'Because they abandoned the covenant of the LORD, the God of their ancestors, which He made with them when He brought them out of the land of Egypt.' ²⁵They went and served other gods, bowing down to them — gods they had never known and that He had never assigned to them. ²⁶So the LORD's anger blazed against that land, bringing upon it every curse written in this book. ²⁷The LORD uprooted them from their land in anger, in fury, and in tremendous wrath, and hurled them into another land — where they remain to this day. ²⁸The hidden things belong to the LORD our God, but the revealed things belong to us and to our children forever — so that we may carry out all the words of this instruction.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Hebrew 29:1 corresponds to KJV 29:2 due to versification offset (Hebrew 28:69 = KJV 29:1). The rendering follows the Hebrew text. The verb *vayyiqra* ('he called, he summoned') opens this covenant-renewal address with a formal assembly. The phrase *le'eineikhem* ('before your eyes') stresses firsthand witness — the generation standing at Moab had seen God's acts in Egypt as children or young adults. Moses grounds the covenant renewal in lived experience, not secondhand tradition.
2. The term *massot* ('trials, tests, ordeals') refers to the plagues and events in Egypt that tested both Egypt and Israel. The phrase *ra'u einekha* ('your eyes saw') repeats the eyewitness emphasis from verse 1. The pairing of *otot umofetim* ('signs and wonders') is the standard Deuteronomic formula for God's interventions in Egypt (cf. 4:34, 6:22, 7:19). These were not mere historical events but demonstrations of divine power meant to produce recognition.
3. This is one of the most theologically striking statements in Deuteronomy. The triad of *lev ladaat* ('a heart to know/understand'), *einayim lir'ot* ('eyes to see'), and *oznayim lishmo'a* ('ears to hear') describes the full capacity for spiritual perception. God withheld this capacity — not as punishment but as a statement about the process of spiritual maturity. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('until this very day') implies that today, at the covenant renewal, a new possibility of understanding opens. The verse creates a paradox: they saw (v 2) yet did not truly see (v 3).
4. The first-person speech (*va'olekh* — 'I led') shifts to God speaking through Moses — a characteristic Deuteronomic blurring of speaker identity. The miraculous preservation of *salmoteikhem* ('your garments') and *na'alkha* ('your sandals') over forty years of desert travel is cited as evidence of ongoing divine provision. The verb *balu* ('wore out, became old') describes natural decay that supernaturally did not occur. These mundane details — clothes and shoes — ground God's faithfulness in daily, tangible experience.
5. The absence of *lechem* ('bread' — ordinary food) and *yayin veshekhar* ('wine and strong drink') during the wilderness period means Israel subsisted on manna and water — divine provision rather than human agriculture. The purpose clause *lema'an ted'u* ('so that you would know') reveals the pedagogical intent: the wilderness was designed to teach dependence on God. The verb *ted'u* ('you would know/recognize') connects back to verse 3 — what they lacked capacity for then, they are now invited to grasp.
6. The historical review culminates in the Transjordanian victories. The verb *vayyetse* ('he came out') with *liqratenu* ('to meet us, against us') describes the kings' aggressive initiative — they initiated the conflict. The verb *vanakkekem* ('and we struck them down') uses the first-person plural, including Moses and the people together in the military victory. Sihon and Og represent the last major military obstacles before crossing the Jordan, making their defeat direct evidence of God's power to fulfill the land promise.
7. The term *nachalah* ('inheritance, permanent allotment') is a technical term for divinely assigned land — not a temporary holding but a permanent tribal territory. The three Transjordanian groups (Reuben, Gad, and half of Manasseh) received land east of the Jordan as described in Numbers 32. This territorial distribution serves as concrete proof that God's promises of land are already being fulfilled, providing grounds for covenant confidence.
8. The verse transitions from historical review (vv 1-7) to covenant obligation. The verb *ushmartem* ('guard, keep, observe') paired with *va'asitem* ('and do/carry out') describes both vigilant attention and active performance — covenant faithfulness is not passive. The result clause *lema'an taskilu* ('so that you will succeed/prosper/act wisely') uses a verb (*s-k-l*) that means both 'to prosper' and 'to act with insight' — obedience produces both success and wisdom. The paragraph break (pe) in the Hebrew text marks this as the end of the historical prologue section.
9. The covenant assembly scene opens with *nitsavim* ('standing, stationed, positioned') — a deliberate, formal posture, not casual gathering. This verb gives the weekly Torah portion its name (Parashat Nitsavim). The list of attendees descends from top leadership (*rosheikhem* — 'your heads/chiefs') through tribal structure (*shivteikhem* — 'your tribes'), institutional authority (*ziqueikhem* — 'your elders,' *shotreikhem* — 'your officials/officers'), to the broadest category (*kol ish Yisrael* — 'every man of Israel'). The entire social hierarchy is present.
10. The covenant assembly expands beyond the men of Israel (v 9) to include *tapekhem* ('your little ones/children'), *nesheikhem* ('your wives'), and the *ger* ('foreigner, resident alien') within the camp. The merism *mechotev etsekha ad sho'ev meimekha* ('from the chopper of your wood to the drawer of your water') encompasses the entire social spectrum, from the lowest-status laborers to those already named. The wood-choppers and water-drawers represent the most menial roles in the community, yet they too are covenant partners. No one is excluded from the covenant assembly.

11. The purpose of the assembly is stated: le'ovrekha ('so that you may pass into/enter into') the berit ('covenant') and alato ('His oath/imprecation'). The verb avar ('pass, cross over') with berit is a technical covenant-making idiom, likely originating from the ritual of passing between split animals (cf. Genesis 15:10, 17; Jeremiah 34:18). The term alah ('oath, sworn curse') is the self-imprecation that accompanies the covenant — the curses one accepts should one break faith. The verb koret ('cutting') in koret immekha is the standard idiom for covenant-making (literally 'cutting a covenant'), again reflecting the animal-splitting ritual.
12. The covenant formula is stated: haqim otkha lo le'am ('to establish you for Himself as a people') and vehu yihyeh lekha le'lohim ('and He will be your God'). This reciprocal formula — 'you will be My people / I will be your God' — is the core declaration of Israelite covenant theology (cf. Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12, Jeremiah 31:33). The phrase ka'asher nishba la'avotekha ('as He swore to your ancestors') anchors the Moab covenant in the Abrahamic promises, creating a chain of covenant continuity from Abraham through Sinai to the present moment.
13. The emphatic negation velo ittkhem levaddekhem ('not with you alone') prepares for the remarkable expansion in verse 14. The first-person anokhi koret ('I am cutting/making') identifies God as the covenant-maker — the covenant is not a human agreement but a divine initiative that the people are invited to enter. The pairing of berit and alah ('covenant and oath') again emphasizes both the relationship and its binding consequences.
14. The covenant's reach extends beyond the present assembly to ve'et asher einenu poh immanu hayyom ('whoever is not here with us today'). This includes future generations not yet born and any Israelites absent from the assembly. The covenant is not limited to a single moment or a single group — it binds all who belong to Israel across time. Rabbinic tradition understood this as including converts and all future Jewish generations. The theological implication is profound: covenant identity is inherited, not merely chosen.
15. The phrase ki attem yedatem ('for you yourselves know') appeals again to lived experience. The verb yashavnu ('we dwelt/lived') describes the long Egyptian sojourn, while avarnu ('we passed through') describes the wilderness journey through other nations' territories. The shift between first-person plural ('we passed through') and second-person plural ('you traveled through') reflects the fluid speaker identity in Deuteronomy, where Moses speaks both as participant and as teacher addressing the next generation.
16. Two derogatory terms for foreign worship objects: shiqqutsehem ('their detestable things, their abominations' — from the root sh-q-ts, associated with ritual impurity) and gilulehem ('their dung-idols' — a term of contempt, possibly derived from galal, 'dung,' used exclusively in polemical contexts to mock idols). The material catalogue — ets va'even kesef vezahav ('wood and stone, silver and gold') — ranges from cheap to precious, showing that idolatry is worthless regardless of the material's value. This sets up the warning in verse 17.
17. The warning cascades through social units: ish ('man'), isha ('woman'), mishpachah ('family/clan'), shevet ('tribe') — apostasy can begin with a single individual and corrupt an entire tribe. The phrase levavo foneh ('whose heart turns') uses the participle to describe an ongoing inner orientation, not a single act. The metaphor shorsh poreh rosh vela'anah ('a root producing poison and wormwood') is vivid: apostasy is a hidden root system that produces toxic fruit. The term rosh here means 'poisonous plant' (not 'head'), and la'anah ('wormwood') is a bitter, toxic herb. The root is underground and invisible; its effects are devastating. Hebrews 12:15 directly alludes to this image.
18. The self-deceived person hears the covenant curses (divrei ha'alah — 'the words of the oath/imprecation') but responds with internal self-blessing (vehitbarekh bilvavo — 'and he blesses himself in his heart'). The phrase shalom yihyeh li ('peace/wholeness will be mine') is the core delusion: immunity from consequences. The term sherirut libbi ('the stubbornness/hardness of my heart') describes willful obstinacy. The final phrase lema'an sefot haravah et hattsmeh ('to sweep away the watered with the dry') is proverbial and debated — most likely it means the self-deluded person's sin will bring destruction on the innocent ('well-watered') along with the guilty ('parched'), or that total indiscriminate ruin will follow.
19. The verb lo yo'veh ('He will not be willing, He will refuse') makes the refusal emphatic and personal — God actively chooses not to forgive the self-deluded apostate. The image ye'eshan af YHWH veqin'ato ('the anger and jealousy of the LORD will smoke') describes divine wrath as a smoldering fire. The verb ravetsa ('crouch, lie down upon') pictures the curses like a predatory animal lying in wait upon (bo — 'upon him') the offender. The ultimate punishment is name erasure: umachah YHWH et shemo mittachat hashamayim ('the LORD will blot out his name from under the heavens') — total removal from memory and from the community of the living.
20. The verb vehivdilo ('He will separate him, single him out') uses the same root (b-d-l) as God's separating light from darkness in creation (Genesis 1:4) and Israel from the nations (Leviticus 20:24). Here the separation is lera'ah ('for harm, for disaster') — a dark inversion of election. The phrase alot habberit ('the curses of the covenant') identifies the curses of chapter 28 as integral to the covenant structure, not separate from it. The term sefer hattorah hazeh ('this book of instruction') refers to the Deuteronomic scroll being read at the assembly.
21. The perspective shifts to future witnesses: haddor ha'acharon ('the last/future generation') and hannokhri ('the foreigner') from me'erets rechoqah ('a distant land'). Two types of observers will assess the devastation — Israel's own descendants and outside observers. The land itself is personified as sick: makkot ha'arets ('the blows/afflictions of the land') and tachalueiha ('its diseases'). The verb chillah ('He made sick') treats the land as a living patient struck with illness by God — the covenant curses damage the land itself, not merely its inhabitants.
22. Three elements of total desolation: gofrit ('sulfur/brimstone'), melach ('salt'), and serefah ('burning'). The triad of negations — lo tizzara ('it will not be sown'), lo tatsmich ('it will not sprout'), lo ya'aleh ('nothing will grow') — describes complete agricultural death. The comparison to Sodom's overthrow (kemahpekat Sedom) invokes the paradigmatic judgment of Genesis 19. Four destroyed cities are named: Sodom, Gomorrah, Admah, and Zeboim (cf. Genesis 14:2, 8; Hosea 11:8). The Ketiv (written form) reads (utseviyim) while the Qere (read form) is (uTsevoyim) — the alternate spelling reflects regional pronunciation variation of this city name, with the Qere preserving the more traditional vocalization.

- 23.** The question shifts from the eyewitness report (vv 21-22) to international reaction: kol haggoyim ('all the nations') respond to the devastation. Their two questions — al meh ('why?') and meh chori ha'af haggadol hazzeh ('what is this great burning anger?') — presuppose knowledge of YHWH as the cause. The phrase chori ha'af ('burning of anger' — literally 'the heat of the nostril') is an anthropomorphic metaphor for intense divine wrath. The nations recognize that this level of destruction is not natural but divine judgment.
- 24.** The answer (ve'amru — 'and they will say') is given by the nations themselves — the reason for devastation is internationally recognizable. The verb azvu ('they abandoned, they forsook') describes deliberate departure from berit YHWH ('the covenant of the LORD'). The covenant is identified as belonging to Elohei avotam ('the God of their ancestors') and tied to the exodus (behotsi'o otam me'erets Mitsrayim — 'when He brought them out of the land of Egypt'). Even the nations can identify the logic: the God who rescued this people from slavery imposed conditions on that rescue, and those conditions were violated.
- 25.** The nations' explanation continues: Israel vayelkhu ('went') — actively chose to leave God — and served (va'ya'avdu) and worshipped (vayyishtachavu — literally 'prostrated themselves before') foreign gods. Two disqualifications of these gods are stated: asher lo yeda'um ('whom they had never known' — no prior relationship or revelation) and velo chalaq lahem ('and He had not allotted/assigned to them'). The verb chalaq ('allot, portion out') may reference the idea that YHWH assigned nations to various heavenly beings (cf. Deuteronomy 4:19, 32:8) but kept Israel for Himself — these gods were never Israel's portion.
- 26.** The verb vayyichar af ('His anger burned, blazed') describes the ignition of divine wrath — the same expression used for God's anger at the golden calf (Exodus 32:10). The result is the activation of kol haqqelalah ('every curse') that is hakketuvah bassefer hazzeh ('written in this book'). The verse creates a tight logical chain: covenant abandoned (v 24) idolatry committed (v 25) anger ignited curses deployed (v 26). The prophecy is written as past-tense narrative, as if the future destruction has already occurred — a common prophetic device that underscores certainty.
- 27.** The verb vayyitteshem ('He uprooted them, He tore them out') uses the root n-t-sh, which describes uprooting a plant — the people are torn from their soil (admatam — 'their ground') like vegetation ripped from the earth. Three terms for divine anger pile up in escalating intensity: af ('anger'), chemah ('fury, heat'), and qetsef gadol ('great wrath'). The verb vayyashlikhem ('He hurled them, He flung them') describes violent ejection — not a gentle relocation but a forceful casting away. The phrase kayyom hazzeh ('as on this day, to this day') either reflects a later editorial perspective or functions as prophetic certainty — the exile is as sure as if it had already happened.
- 28.** One of the most celebrated verses in the Hebrew Bible. The contrast between hannistarot ('the hidden things') and hanniglot ('the revealed things') draws a boundary between divine mystery and human responsibility. What God has not disclosed remains His domain; what He has revealed through Torah belongs to Israel for action and obedience. The Masoretic text uniquely marks the words lanu ulevanenu ad ('to us and to our children forever') with extraordinary dots (puncta extraordinaria) above each letter — one of only a few places in the Hebrew Bible where this occurs. Rabbinic interpretations of these dots vary: some suggest the dotted words were uncertain in the scribal tradition, others that they carry a hidden meaning, and still others that they emphasize collective responsibility. The setumah marker (samekh) closes this section of the covenant-renewal address.

30

Summary: *Moses promises that after exile, God will circumcise Israel's heart so they can love Him, restore them to the land, and set before them life and death — urging them to choose life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens by assuming the curses will come (v. 1, 'when all these things have come upon you'). Exile is not hypothetical but inevitable — and beyond exile, God will act on their hearts directly. The phrase umal YHWH Elohekha et levavekha (v. 6, 'the LORD your God will circumcise your heart') promises what 10:16 commanded — God will do what Israel could not. The choice set before Israel (v. 19) — 'life and death, blessing and curse' — is the most distilled statement of covenantal theology in the Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The verb shuv (v. 2, 'return/repent') anchors the chapter — it appears seven times, creating a literary structure built on turning. We preserved each occurrence consistently. The claim that the commandment is 'not in heaven... not across the sea... but very near to you, in your mouth and in your heart' (vv. 12-14) is cited by Paul in Romans 10:6-8, applying it to faith rather than Law.*

Connections: *Paul interprets vv. 12-14 christologically in Romans 10:6-8. The heart circumcision promise connects to Jeremiah 31:33 (new covenant written on the heart) and Ezekiel 36:26 (heart of stone replaced with heart of flesh). The choose-life command (v. 19) becomes the title and theme of Jewish ethical teaching across centuries.*

¹When all these things have come upon you — the blessing and the curse that I have placed before you — and you take them to heart among all the nations where the LORD your God has driven you, ²and you return to the LORD your God and obey

His voice — according to everything I am commanding you today, you and your children — with all your heart and with all your being, ³then the LORD your God will restore your fortunes and have compassion on you. He will return and gather you from all the peoples among whom the LORD your God has scattered you. ⁴Even if you have been banished to the farthest edge of the heavens, from there the LORD your God will gather you, and from there He will bring you back. ⁵The LORD your God will bring you into the land that your ancestors possessed, and you will possess it again. He will make you prosper and multiply you beyond your ancestors. ⁶The LORD your God will circumcise your heart and the heart of your descendants, so that you will love the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your being — so that you may live. ⁷The LORD your God will place all these curses on your enemies and on those who hate you — who persecuted you. ⁸You will return and obey the voice of the LORD, doing all His commandments that I am commanding you today. ⁹The LORD your God will give you abundance in everything you undertake — in the fruit of your womb, the offspring of your livestock, and the produce of your soil — for good. For the LORD will again rejoice over you for your good, as He rejoiced over your ancestors. ¹⁰when you obey the voice of the LORD your God, keeping His commandments and statutes written in this book of the Law — when you return to the LORD your God with all your heart and with all your being. ¹¹For this commandment that I am giving you today is not too difficult for you, nor is it beyond your reach. ¹²It is not in heaven, so that you would need to say, 'Who will go up to heaven for us and bring it down to us, so we can hear it and do it?' ¹³Nor is it beyond the sea, so that you would need to say, 'Who will cross the sea for us and bring it back to us, so we can hear it and do it?' ¹⁴The word is very near to you — in your mouth and in your heart — so that you can do it. ¹⁵See — I have placed before you today life and good, death and evil. ¹⁶For I am commanding you today: love the LORD your God, walk in His ways, and keep His commandments, statutes, and ordinances, so that you may live and multiply, and the LORD your God will bless you in the land you are entering to possess. ¹⁷But if your heart turns away and you will not listen, and you are drawn away to bow down to other gods and serve them, ¹⁸I declare to you today that you will certainly perish. You will not have long life in the land you are crossing the Jordan to enter and possess. ¹⁹I call heaven and earth as witnesses against you today: I have placed before you life and death, blessing and curse. Choose life, so that you and your descendants may live — ²⁰by loving the LORD your God, obeying His voice, and holding fast to Him — for He is your life and the length of your days — so that you may dwell in the land that the LORD swore to your ancestors, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to give them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a startling assumption: both the blessing and the curse will come. Moses does not present them as hypothetical alternatives but as sequential certainties — Israel will experience both prosperity and exile. The phrase *vahashevota el-levavekha* ('you take them to heart,' literally 'you return them to your heart') describes a moment of reflection in exile: surrounded by foreign nations, Israel remembers what God said. The Deuteronomic vision looks beyond judgment to the possibility of restoration.
2. The verb *shavta* ('you return') is from *shuv* — the root of *teshuvah* ('repentance, return'). Return to God is the first movement in the restoration sequence. The return is total: *bekhol-levavekha uvekhol-nafshekha* ('with all your heart and all your being') — the same language as the Shema (6:5). The repentance that restores must be as complete as the love that was originally commanded. The multigenerational scope continues: 'you and your children' return together.
3. The wordplay is deliberate and untranslatable: *veshav YHWH* ('the LORD will return') echoes *veshavta* ('you return') in v2. Israel returns to God; God returns to Israel. The verb *shuv* is applied to both parties — repentance is a mutual turning. The phrase *et-shevutkha* ('your captivity/fortunes') is debated: it may mean 'turn your captivity' (end your exile) or 'restore your restoration' (bring about your return). Both meanings coexist. God's compassion (*richamekha* — from *rechem*, 'womb') is the motive force: maternal, visceral, unconditional compassion drives the restoration.
4. The scope of God's reach: *biqtseh hashamayim* ('the edge of the heavens') — the most remote imaginable location. No exile is too distant for God to reverse. The verbs *yeqabbetsekha* ('will gather you') and *yiqqachekha* ('will take you, will fetch you') are active and personal — God does not merely permit return; He goes to the ends of the earth to retrieve His people. The passage envisions a post-catastrophic future with confidence: exile is not the end of the story.
5. The restoration exceeds the original: *veheitbekha vehirbekha me'avotekha* ('He will make you prosper and multiply you beyond your ancestors'). The post-exile future is not merely recovery but surpassing. God does not restore to the baseline — He goes beyond it. The land is identified as the ancestral inheritance (*asher yarshu avotekha*), reconnecting the restored exiles to the patriarchal promise of Genesis 12-15.
6. *Umal YHWH Elohekha et-levavekha* ('the LORD your God will circumcise your heart') is the theological climax of Deuteronomy. Circumcision (*milah*) — the sign of the covenant since Abraham (Gen 17) — is now applied to the inner person by God's own act. The purpose clause is the Shema itself: *le'avahav et-YHWH Elohekha bekhol-levavekha uvekhol-nafshekha* ('to love the LORD your God with all your heart and all your being'). What

was commanded in 6:5 is now promised in 30:6 — God will create the capacity for the very obedience He requires. The final phrase lema'an chayyekha ('so that you may live') links the heart-change to life itself: the circumcised heart is the path to true living.

7. A reversal of the covenant curses of chapter 28: what fell on Israel in exile will now fall on their persecutors. The curses do not disappear — they are redirected. God's justice is not canceled by restoration; it is reapplied to those who oppressed His people. The verb redafukha ('who pursued/persecuted you') echoes the language of relentless pursuit that characterized Israel's suffering among the nations.
8. The fifth occurrence of shuv in this chapter: ve'attah tashuv ('and you will return'). After God's heart-circumcision (v6), obedience becomes natural rather than forced — 'you will return' is a statement of confidence, not a command. The post-restoration Israel obeys not because they fear punishment but because their hearts have been transformed. The commandments of 'today' (hayyom) remain the same; what changes is the capacity to keep them.
9. Three categories of blessing — children (peri vitnekha), livestock (peri vehemtekha), land (peri admatekha) — mirror the three categories of curse in 28:18. Every dimension of life that was cursed in exile will be blessed in restoration. The most striking phrase: yashuv YHWH lasus alekha letov ('the LORD will again rejoice over you for good'). God's joy — not merely His favor but His actual delight — is restored. The verb sus ('to rejoice, to delight') applied to God describes the divine pleasure in Israel's well-being. God enjoys His people's flourishing.
10. The seventh and final occurrence of shuv: ki tashuv ('when you return'). The verb is rendered 'when' rather than 'if' — after v6's promise of heart-circumcision, the return is assured. The reference to sefer hattorah hazzeh ('this book of the Torah') makes Deuteronomy self-aware as a written text that will persist beyond Moses. The full-hearted, full-being return echoes both 6:5 and 30:2, binding the chapter's argument together: the Shema's command will be fulfilled through God's transforming act.
11. The tone shifts from future promise (v1-10) to present reality (v11-14). Lo-niflet hi mimmekha ('it is not too wondrous/difficult for you') — the verb pala means 'to be extraordinary, beyond capacity.' Moses insists: the commandment is within human reach. It does not require superhuman ability or esoteric knowledge. Paul will cite v11-14 in Romans 10:6-8, reinterpreting the nearness of the commandment as the nearness of Christ. The passage's power lies in its accessibility theology: God does not command what cannot be done.
12. The first of two rhetorical denials: the commandment is not in heaven (lo vashamayim hi). No celestial expedition is required. The Talmud (Bava Metzia 59b) uses this verse in the famous 'Oven of Akhnai' story to argue that the Torah, once given, belongs to earth — even a voice from heaven cannot override the interpretation of scholars. The verse establishes an accessibility principle: divine revelation is not reserved for the spiritually elite who can ascend to heaven. It has been given and is available.
13. The second denial: the commandment is not me'ever layyam ('across the sea'). No oceanic voyage is required. Heaven (vertical inaccessibility) and the sea (horizontal inaccessibility) together represent every possible dimension of distance. The commandment is not far in any direction. The parallel structure (v12 and v13 are nearly identical in form) creates a rhetorical completeness: nowhere is it absent, nowhere must it be fetched.
14. The positive answer to v12-13's rhetorical questions: ki-qarov elekha haddavar me'od ('the word is very near to you'). Three locations of the word: befikh ('in your mouth' — you can speak it), uvilevavekha ('in your heart' — you can understand it), la'asoto ('so that you can do it' — you can enact it). Mouth, heart, action — the entire chain from reception to expression to obedience is available. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 10:8 as 'the word of faith that we proclaim.' The passage asserts that obedience to God's commandment requires no heroic journey; it requires only the engagement of what is already within reach.
15. The two-way choice is starkly presented: chayyim vatov ('life and good') versus mavet vara ('death and evil'). These are not four separate items but two paired realities: life-with-good and death-with-evil. The verb natatti ('I have placed') puts the responsibility squarely on the listener — the options are on the table, and the choice must be made. Moses will not make it for them. The simplicity of the formulation is its power: the covenant reduces to life or death.
16. The 'life' option is defined concretely: love God, walk in His ways, keep His commandments. Three verbs, three dimensions of covenant faithfulness: affection (ahavah), conduct (halakh), and obedience (shamar). The result — vechayyita veravita ('you will live and multiply') — echoes the creation blessing of Genesis 1:28 ('be fruitful and multiply'). Obedience to the covenant reconnects Israel to the original blessing of creation itself.
17. The 'death' option begins with the heart: im-yifneh levavekha ('if your heart turns away'). The first movement toward death is internal — the heart turns before the body follows. The progression is psychologically precise: turned heart refusal to listen being drawn away (niddachta — passive, as though pulled by a force) worship of other gods serving them. Apostasy is not a single dramatic act but a gradual sequence that begins with inward resistance.
18. The intensified verb avod tovedu ('you will certainly perish') — the infinitive absolute driving home the certainty. Moses is not threatening but warning: this is what will happen. The phrase lo ta'arikhun yamim ('you will not have long days') reverses the promise of long life attached to the commandments (5:16, 6:2). The land across the Jordan — so close, so longed for — will be lost if the heart turns away. Proximity to the promise does not guarantee possession.
19. Heaven and earth (hashamayim ve'et ha'arets) are summoned as cosmic witnesses — the most permanent, enduring witnesses imaginable. In ancient Near Eastern treaties, gods were invoked as witnesses; Moses invokes creation itself. The climactic imperative — uvacharta bachayyim ('choose life!') — is the theological center of the entire book. The verb bachar ('to choose') is the same word used for God's choice of Israel (7:6-7). Now Israel is called to choose in return. The covenant is mutual choosing: God chose Israel; Israel must choose God. The purpose clause — lema'an tichyeh attah vezar'ekha ('so that you and your descendants may live') — extends the consequences across generations.

20. The chapter's final verse defines what 'choosing life' means concretely: le'ahavah ('loving'), lishmo'a ('obeying'), uledavqah-bo ('holding fast to Him'). Three verbs, three dimensions of faithful relationship: affection, response, and attachment. The ultimate declaration: ki hu chayyekha ve'orekh yamekha ('for He is your life and the length of your days'). God is not merely the source of life — He is life itself. To choose life is to choose God; to choose God is to choose life. The chapter ends where Deuteronomy always ends: with the patriarchal promise and the land. The oath to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob runs through every chapter as the theological bedrock beneath all the law, all the warning, and all the promise.

31

Summary: *Moses, at 120 years old, transfers leadership to Joshua, writes down the Torah and entrusts it to the Levites, and is told by God that Israel will break the covenant. He teaches them a witness-song.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *God's prediction of Israel's future apostasy (vv. 16-18) is devastating in its certainty: 'this people will rise and whore after foreign gods... and they will forsake Me and break My covenant.' Moses writes the Torah knowing it will be violated. The verb histarti fanai (v. 17, 'I will hide My face') introduces hester panim — the theological concept of divine hiddenness that runs through the prophets, the psalms, and post-biblical theology. God's silence is not absence but judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase vayeilekh Mosheh ('and Moses went,' v. 1) gives this Torah portion its name but raises a question: went where? The Hebrew simply says he went and spoke — some read it as a departure, others as a formal procession. We rendered it literally. The word yetser (v. 21, 'inclination') carries theological weight far beyond its simple meaning — it becomes the rabbinic yetser hara ('evil inclination'), the internal force driving disobedience.*

Connections: *Joshua's commissioning fulfills Numbers 27:18-23. The hester panim theology appears in Isaiah 8:17, 45:15, Micah 3:4, and defines the theological crisis of Esther (where God's name never appears). The Torah-deposit with the Levites (v. 26) is recovered in 2 Kings 22:8 during Josiah's reforms.*

¹Then Moses went out and addressed the entire assembly of Israel with these words. ²He told them, "I am now one hundred and twenty years old. I can no longer lead you in going out and coming back. Moreover, the LORD has declared to me, 'You will not cross this Jordan.'" ³The LORD your God — He is the one who crosses over ahead of you. He will annihilate these nations from your path so that you will dispossess them. Joshua is the one who will cross over at your head, just as the LORD promised. ⁴The LORD will deal with them exactly as He dealt with Sihon and Og, kings of the Amorites, and with their territory — He completely destroyed them. ⁵When the LORD delivers them over to you, you must deal with them in full accordance with the instructions I have given you. ⁶Be strong and stand firm! Do not be afraid or terrified of them, because the LORD your God is the one who goes alongside you. He will never weaken His grip on you or abandon you. ⁷Moses summoned Joshua and said to him in front of the entire assembly of Israel, "Be strong and stand firm, because you are the one who will accompany this people into the land that the LORD swore to their ancestors to give them, and you will distribute it to them as their inheritance." ⁸The LORD Himself is the one who goes ahead of you. He will be with you. He will not loosen His hold on you or leave you behind. Do not be afraid and do not lose heart. ⁹Moses wrote down this Law and entrusted it to the priests — the descendants of Levi who carried the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD — and to all the elders of Israel. ¹⁰Moses gave them this command: "At the end of every seven years, at the appointed time during the sabbatical year, during the Festival of Shelters, ¹¹when all Israel comes to present themselves before the LORD your God at the place He will choose, you must read this Law aloud in the hearing of all Israel. ¹²Assemble the people — men, women, children, and the foreigners living in your towns — so that they may listen, learn, revere the LORD your God, and carefully follow every word of this Law. ¹³Their children, who do not yet know it, will also listen and learn to revere the LORD your God throughout the days you live on the soil you are crossing the Jordan to possess. ¹⁴The LORD said to Moses, "The time of your death is drawing near. Summon Joshua, and both of you present yourselves at the Tent of Meeting so that I may commission him." So Moses and Joshua went and presented themselves at the Tent of Meeting. ¹⁵The LORD appeared at the Tent in a pillar of cloud, and the pillar of cloud stood positioned above the entrance of the Tent. ¹⁶The LORD said to Moses, "You are about to lie down with your ancestors. After that, this people will rise up and prostitute themselves to the foreign gods of the

land they are entering. They will abandon Me and shatter the covenant I made with them. ¹⁷My anger will burn against them on that day. I will abandon them and conceal My face from them. They will become prey, and countless disasters and hardships will strike them. On that day they will say, 'Isn't it because our God is no longer present among us that these disasters have found us?' ¹⁸And I will completely conceal My face on that day because of all the evil they have committed by turning to other gods." ¹⁹Now then, write down this song for yourselves and teach it to the Israelites. Place it in their mouths so that this song will serve as My witness against the Israelites. ²⁰For when I bring them into the land I swore to their ancestors — a land flowing with milk and honey — and they eat their fill and grow fat, they will turn to other gods and worship them. They will treat Me with contempt and shatter My covenant. ²¹When countless disasters and hardships strike them, this song will confront them as a witness, because it will never be forgotten from the mouths of their descendants. For I know the inclination they are already forming, even now, before I have brought them into the land I swore to give. ²²So Moses wrote down this song on that very day and taught it to the Israelites. ²³Then He commissioned Joshua son of Nun and said, "Be strong and stand firm, because you will bring the Israelites into the land I swore to give them, and I Myself will be with you." ²⁴When Moses had finished writing the words of this Law in a scroll, completing them in full, ²⁵Moses commanded the Levites who carried the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD, saying, ²⁶"Take this scroll of the Law and place it beside the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD your God. It will remain there as a witness against you. ²⁷For I know your rebellious nature and your stubbornness. If you have been defiant toward the LORD while I am still alive among you today, how much worse will it be after my death? ²⁸Bring together before me all the elders of your tribes and your officials so that I can speak these words in their hearing and call heaven and earth as witnesses against them. ²⁹For I know that after my death you will act with total corruption and stray from the path I commanded you. Disaster will overtake you in the days to come, because you will do what is evil in the LORD's sight, provoking Him to anger through the products of your hands." ³⁰Then Moses recited the words of this song from beginning to end in the hearing of the entire assembly of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayelekh* ('and he went') gives this chapter its traditional name in the Torah reading cycle (Parashat Vayelekh). The phrase *el kol Yisra'el* ('to all Israel') signals a public address to the entire assembled nation — Moses' final words before transferring leadership. The narrative transition marks the shift from Moses' third discourse (chs 29-30) to his farewell actions.
2. Moses offers two reasons for the leadership transition: physical limitation (*lo ukhal od latset velavo* — 'I can no longer go out and come in,' an idiom for military and administrative leadership, not mere walking ability) and divine prohibition (*lo ta'avur et haYarden* — 'you will not cross this Jordan'). The number 120 (*me'ah ve'esrim*) represents a full life in Deuteronomic terms — Moses' faculties are not diminished (cf. 34:7, 'his eye was not dim'), but God has set the boundary. The demonstrative 'this Jordan' (*haYarden hazzeh*) points to the river visible from Moab, making the prohibition concrete and immediate.
3. The emphatic pronoun *hu* ('He') appears three times — stressing divine agency first (*YHWH hu over lefanekha* — 'the LORD, He is the one crossing before you'), then Joshua's role as the visible human counterpart (*Yehoshua hu over lefanekha* — 'Joshua, he is the one crossing before you'). The verb *yashmid* ('He will annihilate, destroy completely') is covenant warfare language. Moses assures the people that both the divine commander and the human commander are already appointed — the transition is not a crisis but a plan.
4. Moses cites recent, living memory as proof of God's future action: the victories over Sihon (king of Heshbon, Numbers 21:21-30) and Og (king of Bashan, Numbers 21:33-35) are evidence that God will do the same to the Canaanite nations. The verb *hishmid* ('He destroyed, He annihilated') uses the Hiphil stem — God is the causative agent of their destruction. The phrase *ule'artsam* ('and to their land') extends the destruction from the kings personally to their entire territory.
5. The verb *unetanam* ('and He will give them') treats the nations as objects handed over by God — the victory is divine before it is military. The phrase *kekhol hammitsvah asher tsivviti* ('according to all the commandment I have commanded') refers to the warfare regulations of Deuteronomy 7:1-5 and 20:10-18, which mandate complete removal of Canaanite religion. Moses shifts to first person (*tsivviti* — 'I commanded'), reinforcing his authority even as he transfers power.
6. The paired imperatives *chizqu ve'imtsu* ('be strong and be firm') form one of the most recognized phrases in the Hebrew Bible, repeated in verse 7 (to Joshua), verse 23 (God to Joshua), and prominently in Joshua 1:6-9. The verb *chazaq* means 'be strong, seize firmly' and *emats* means 'be resolute, be firm.' The two prohibition verbs — *al tir'u* ('do not fear') and *al ta'artsu* ('do not be terrified, do not tremble') — address both ordinary fear and paralyzing dread. The promise *lo yarbekha velo ya'azvekka* ('He will not let go of you and He will not abandon you') uses two verbs of relational abandonment: *raphah* ('release, slacken, let go') and *azav* ('forsake, leave behind'). The *setumah* paragraph marker indicates a section break.

7. The public commissioning (le'einei khol Yisra'el — 'before the eyes of all Israel') is critical: Joshua's authority must be visibly established before the nation. The charge chazaq ve'emats ('be strong and be firm') now shifts from plural (v6, to Israel) to singular (to Joshua personally). The verb tavo ('you will enter/accompany') in the Qal form means 'you will go in with' this people — a collaborative role. The verb tanchilennah ('you will cause them to inherit it') uses the Hiphil of nachal, placing the responsibility for land distribution on Joshua. The ancestral oath (nishba YHWH la'avotam — 'the LORD swore to their ancestors') connects Joshua's mission to the Abrahamic promise.
8. Moses reassures Joshua with the same promise given to the nation in verse 6, now personalized with singular pronouns. The emphatic YHWH hu ('the LORD — He') stresses divine identity as the true leader. Two pairs of prohibitions bookend the verse: God's commitment (lo yarbekha velo ya'azvekka — 'He will not release you or forsake you') and Joshua's response (lo tira velo techat — 'do not fear and do not be shattered'). The verb tachat means 'be broken, be shattered, be dismayed' — it addresses the inner collapse that can follow overwhelming responsibility.
9. The verb vayikhtov ('and he wrote') is a pivotal action: Moses inscribes the Torah (hattorah hazot — 'this instruction/teaching') as a physical document. The dual recipients are the Levitical priests (hakkohanim benei Levi — 'the priests, sons of Levi') who carry the Ark, and the elders (ziqunei Yisra'el) who serve as civil authorities. This dual custody — priestly and civil — ensures both religious and political accountability for preserving the text. The phrase aron berit YHWH ('Ark of the Covenant of the LORD') identifies the Ark as the primary repository for covenant documents, following ancient Near Eastern treaty practice where copies were deposited in sanctuaries.
10. The timing is specified with three nested markers: the seven-year cycle (miqqets sheva shanim — 'at the end of seven years'), the sabbatical year (shenat hashemittah — 'the year of release,' when debts are canceled per Deuteronomy 15:1-2), and the specific festival (chag hasSukkot — the Festival of Booths/Shelters, the autumn harvest celebration). The convergence of debt release and Torah reading creates a powerful social moment: the economically liberated community gathers to hear the covenant that established their freedom.
11. The phrase lera'ot et penei YHWH ('to see the face of the LORD' — traditionally vocalized as the Niphal 'to appear before the LORD') describes the pilgrimage obligation. The verb tiqua ('you shall read aloud, you shall proclaim') makes the Torah a public oral event, not a private document. The phrase neged kol Yisra'el be'ozneihem ('opposite all Israel, in their ears') specifies audible, communal reception — every Israelite must hear the words personally. The unnamed place (bamaqom asher yivchar — 'in the place He will choose') is the centralized sanctuary formula characteristic of Deuteronomy.
12. The imperative haqhel ('assemble!') gives this ceremony its traditional name: Hakhel ('the Assembly'). The inclusivity is remarkable for the ancient world: men, women, children (ha'anashim vehanashim vehattaf), and resident foreigners (gerekha asher bish'arekha — 'your foreigner who is within your gates') — all four social categories must be present. The four-part purpose clause establishes a pedagogical sequence: listen (yishme'u), learn (yilmedu), revere (yare'u), and practice (shameru la'asot). Hearing leads to learning, learning leads to reverence, and reverence leads to obedience.
13. The intergenerational purpose is explicit: uvneiheim asher lo yade'u ('and their children who have not known') targets the next generation who were not present at Sinai and have no direct experience of the covenant events. The septennial cycle ensures each generation encounters the Torah during childhood. The phrase kol hayyamim asher attem chayyim ('all the days that you are alive') extends the obligation across the full life of the community. The pe (open paragraph marker) signals the close of the Hakhel legislation.
14. God initiates the formal transfer: hen qarevu yamekha lamut ('look, your days to die have drawn near') uses hen as a solemn attention-marker rather than a casual interjection. The divine commissioning (va'atsavvennu — 'and I will commission him/charge him') shifts the authority source from Moses to God directly. The ohel mo'ed ('Tent of Meeting') is the place where God communicates with Moses (Exodus 33:7-11) — the venue itself signals that this is a direct divine appointment, not merely Moses' personal recommendation. The Hitpa'el vehityatsevu ('present yourselves') indicates formal, standing presentation before the divine presence.
15. The theophany (vayera YHWH — 'the LORD appeared') manifests as the amud anan ('pillar of cloud'), the same visible sign of divine presence that led Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 13:21-22) and descended on Sinai (Exodus 19:9). The pillar's position al petach ha'ohel ('above the entrance of the Tent') marks the threshold between divine and human space. This visual manifestation before both Moses and Joshua publicly validates the leadership transfer with divine authorization visible to any observers.
16. The euphemism shokev im avotekha ('lying down with your ancestors') is the standard idiom for death. The verb zana ('to prostitute, to commit sexual infidelity') is the prophetic metaphor for idolatry — Israel's covenant with God is framed as a marriage, and worship of other gods is adultery. The phrase elohei nekhar ha'arets ('the foreign gods of the land') identifies the specific threat: indigenous Canaanite deities. The sequence — abandonment (azavani — 'they will forsake Me') followed by covenant violation (hefer et beriti — 'they will break My covenant') — presents apostasy as a relational betrayal before it is a legal breach.
17. The phrase vehistarti fanai mehem ('and I will hide My face from them') introduces the theological concept of hester panim — the hiding or concealment of God's face, one of the most consequential ideas in Jewish theology. When God hides His face, divine protection and providence are withdrawn — not as petty punishment but as the natural consequence of the broken relationship. The people's response (halo al ki ein Elohai beqirbi — 'is it not because my God is not in my midst?') shows partial recognition of the cause, but verse 18 reveals this self-diagnosis is insufficient. The verb le'ekhol ('to be consumed, to become prey') treats the unprotected people as food for predators.
18. The intensified construction haster astir panai ('hiding I will hide My face' — the infinitive absolute with finite verb) makes the concealment emphatic and total. The people's partial repentance in verse 17 ('our God is not among us') is not enough — the divine withdrawal continues because the root cause (ki fanah el elohim acherim — 'because he turned to other gods') has not been addressed. The theological sequence is precise: Israel turns their face toward other gods (fanah — 'he turned'), so God turns His face away from them (astir panai — 'I will hide My face'). The relational symmetry is devastating.

19. God commands the composition of hashirah hazot ('this song') — the poem of chapter 32 (the Song of Moses / Ha'azinu). The triple instruction is pedagogically layered: write it (kitvu — preserve it in text), teach it (lamedah — transmit it through instruction), and place it in their mouths (simah be'fihim — make it memorized and recited). The song's purpose is legal: le'ed ('as a witness') — it will testify against Israel when they break the covenant, because they cannot claim ignorance of a song they have memorized. The plurals kitvu lakhem ('write for yourselves') may address both Moses and Joshua, or Moses and the elders.
20. God predicts the precise mechanism of apostasy: prosperity leads to forgetfulness. The progression is physical and spiritual: akhala ('they will eat'), save'a ('they will be satisfied'), dashen ('they will grow fat/prosperous'). The same progression appears in Deuteronomy 32:15 (the Song itself): 'Jeshurun grew fat and kicked.' The verb ni'atsuni ('they will treat Me with contempt, they will spurn Me') is stronger than mere neglect — it implies active disdain. The land zavat chalav udevash ('flowing with milk and honey') — God's gift — becomes the very context for covenant betrayal.
21. The song's endurance is guaranteed: lo tishkach mippi zar'o ('it will not be forgotten from the mouth of their offspring') — the memorized song persists across generations, ensuring the witness endures. The word yitsro ('his inclination, his impulse') is significant — it is cognate with the later rabbinic concept of yetser hara ('evil inclination'). God knows Israel's formative tendency (asher hu ose' hayom — 'which he is forming/doing today') before the sin occurs. The phrase betere' avi'enu ('before I have brought them') indicates God enters the covenant with full knowledge that it will be violated — the covenant is not naive but informed.
22. Moses immediately obeys the divine command of verse 19: vayyikhtov Mosheh ('and Moses wrote') matches the command kitvu ('write'). The phrase bayyom hahu ('on that day') emphasizes immediacy — there is no delay between divine instruction and prophetic action. The verb vaylamedah ('and he taught it') fulfills the second part of the command. The song referenced is Ha'azinu (Deuteronomy 32:1-43).
23. The speaker here is God (not Moses), as indicated by the first person nishba'ti ('I swore') and anokhi ehyeh immakh ('I Myself will be with you') — only God swore the land oath to the ancestors. This is the third occurrence of chazaq ve'emats in the chapter: v6 (Moses to Israel, plural), v7 (Moses to Joshua), v23 (God to Joshua). The progression from human commission to divine commission completes the transfer. Notably, God uses tavi ('you will bring' — Hiphil causative) where Moses used tavo ('you will come/accompany' — Qal) in verse 7 — God's charge gives Joshua a stronger, more active leadership role than Moses' charge did.
24. The phrase kekhalot Mosheh likhtov ('when Moses completed writing') marks the physical document's completion. The term sefer ('scroll, book, document') refers to a written scroll — the material object that will be deposited alongside the Ark. The phrase ad tummam ('until their completion' — from tamam, 'to be complete, to be finished') emphasizes that the Torah document is a complete, finished text, not a partial draft. This verse establishes the physicality and finality of the written Torah.
25. The Levites are identified by their physical function: nos'ei aron berit YHWH ('carriers of the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD'). They are the custodians of the Ark and therefore the appropriate recipients of the Torah scroll that will be placed beside it. The Levites here may overlap with the Levitical priests of verse 9 or constitute a broader group responsible for sanctuary transport.
26. The instruction places the Torah scroll mitsad aron berit YHWH ('at the side of the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD') — not inside the Ark (which contains the stone tablets per Deuteronomy 10:1-5) but alongside it. This distinction reflects ancient Near Eastern treaty practice: treaty documents were deposited in sanctuaries near the deity's image or symbol. The Torah scroll serves as le'ed ('a witness') — a legal document that testifies to the terms of the covenant. The phrase bekha ('against you') makes Israel the defendant and the Torah the prosecution's evidence.
27. Moses' candid assessment names two character flaws: meryekha ('your rebellion, your defiance') and orpekha haqqashah ('your stiff neck' — literally 'your hard back-of-the-neck,' the image of an ox that refuses to turn when pulled). The qal vachomer argument (kal vahomer — 'light and heavy,' an a fortiori inference) is a classic rabbinic reasoning form: if they rebel while Moses is alive and present (be'odeni chai immakhem — 'while I am still living with you'), how much more (ve'af ki — 'and even more so') after his restraining influence is removed. Moses has no illusions about the people he has led.
28. Moses summons the leadership — ziqnei shivtekhem veshotrekhem ('the elders of your tribes and your officials') — for the song's formal recitation. The verb haqhilu ('assemble!' — Hiphil imperative of qahal) echoes the Hakhel command of verse 12, but here the audience is the leadership specifically. The cosmic witness formula — va'a'idah bahem et hashamayim ve'et ha'arets ('I will call heaven and earth as witnesses against them') — invokes the created order as permanent, enduring witnesses to the covenant, a convention from ancient Near Eastern treaty practice where gods and natural elements served as treaty guarantors.
29. The infinitive absolute hashchet tashchitun ('corrupting you will corrupt' — 'you will completely corrupt yourselves') uses the emphatic doubled-verb construction to express certainty and totality. The phrase vesartem min hadderekh ('you will turn aside from the path') uses the standard Deuteronomic metaphor of covenant life as a path or road. The temporal phrase be'acharit hayyamim ('in the latter days, in the end of days') looks beyond the immediate future to an eschatological horizon. The phrase bema'aseh yedekhem ('through the work of your hands') refers to idols — handmade objects of worship — the ultimate provocation (lehakh'iso — 'to provoke Him to anger').
30. The verse frames the recitation: be'oznei kol qahal Yisra'el ('in the ears of the entire assembly of Israel') emphasizes audible, communal reception — every person hears. The phrase ad tummam ('until their completion') indicates Moses recited the song in its entirety — no abbreviation, no summary. The qahal ('assembly') is the same word from which Hakhel (v12) derives, linking this first recitation to the future septennial readings. The pe (open paragraph marker) signals the close of the narrative frame, setting the stage for the Song itself in chapter 32.

32

Summary: *The Song of Moses (Ha'azinu) — a poem calling heaven and earth as witnesses, recounting God's faithfulness and Israel's rebellion, promising judgment on the nations and vindication of His people. God then tells Moses to ascend Mount Nebo to die.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The song's central metaphor is God as tsur ('Rock,' vv. 4, 15, 18, 30, 31) — stable, immovable, trustworthy — set against Israel's fickleness. The poem's most theologically daring lines describe God's emotions: 'the LORD saw and spurned, provoked by His sons and daughters' (v. 19); 'I will hide my face from them... for they are a crooked generation' (v. 20). The final stanza (v. 43) promises that God will 'make atonement (kipper) for His land and His people' — the only place in the Torah where God Himself performs kippur for the nation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase esh dat (v. 2, 'a fire of law' or 'fiery law') in Moses's blessing introduction is textually uncertain — dat is a Persian loanword that seems anachronistic here, and some scholars emend the text. We rendered it as given in the Masoretic text and noted the difficulty. The verb yesovevenhvu (v. 10, 'He encircled him') uses a rare verbal form that emphasizes God's protective surrounding of Israel in the wilderness.*

Connections: *Heaven-and-earth as witnesses echoes 4:26 and 30:19. The Rock metaphor recurs across the Psalms (18:2, 31, 46; 62:2, 6) and Isaiah (26:4, 44:8). God's jealousy provoked by a 'no-god' and a 'no-people' (v. 21) is cited by Paul in Romans 10:19. The ascent to Nebo (vv. 48-52) fulfills Numbers 27:12-14.*

¹Listen, O heavens, and I will speak;
hear, O earth, the words of my mouth.

²May my teaching fall like rain,
my words descend like dew —
like gentle showers on new grass,
like steady rain on tender plants.

³For I proclaim the name of the LORD —
ascribe greatness to our God!

⁴The Rock — His work is perfect,
for all His ways are justice.
A God of faithfulness, without injustice;
righteous and upright is He.

⁵They have acted corruptly toward Him —
they are not His children, but their own defect.
A crooked and twisted generation!

⁶Is this how you repay the LORD,
you foolish and senseless people?
Is He not your Father who created you —
who made you and established you?

⁷Remember the days of old;
consider the years of generation after generation.
Ask your father, and he will tell you;
your elders, and they will explain it to you.

⁸When the Most High gave the nations their inheritance,
when He divided the human race,
He set the boundaries of the peoples
according to the number of the children of Israel.

⁹For the LORD's own portion is His people;
Jacob is His allotted inheritance.

¹⁰He found him in a desert land,
in a desolate, howling wasteland.
He encircled him, He cared for him,
He guarded him as the pupil of His eye.

¹¹Like an eagle that stirs up its nest,
that hovers over its young,
He spread His wings and caught them,
He carried them on His pinions.

¹²The LORD alone guided him;
no foreign god was beside Him.

¹³He made him ride on the heights of the land
and fed him the produce of the fields.
He nourished him with honey from the rock
and oil from the flinty cliff.

¹⁴With curds from the herd and milk from the flock,
with the fat of lambs, with rams of Bashan and goats,
with the finest of the wheat —
and you drank the foaming blood of the grape.

¹⁵But Jeshurun grew fat and kicked —
you grew fat, bloated, and gorged.
He abandoned the God who made him
and scorned the Rock of his salvation.

¹⁶They provoked Him to jealousy with foreign gods;
with detestable things they angered Him.

¹⁷They sacrificed to demons — not God —
to gods they had never known,
new ones that arrived recently,
whom your ancestors never dreaded.

¹⁸You neglected the Rock who fathered you
and forgot the God who gave you birth.

¹⁹The LORD saw and rejected them,
provoked by His own sons and daughters.

²⁰He said, 'I will hide My face from them;
I will see what becomes of them.
For they are a perverse generation —
children with no faithfulness in them.'

²¹They made Me jealous with what is no god;
they provoked Me with their worthless idols.
So I will make them jealous with what is no people;
with a foolish nation I will provoke them.

²²For a fire has been kindled by My anger;
it burns to the depths of the grave.
It devours the earth and its produce
and sets ablaze the foundations of the mountains.

²³I will heap disasters upon them;
I will exhaust My arrows against them.

²⁴Wasted by famine, consumed by plague,
and cut down by bitter pestilence —
I will send the fangs of wild beasts against them,
with the venom of creatures that crawl in the dust.

²⁵Outside, the sword will bereave;
inside, there will be terror —
for young man and young woman alike,
for nursing infant and gray-haired elder.

²⁶I considered scattering them entirely,
blotting out their memory from humanity —

²⁷but I feared the provocation of the enemy,
that their foes would misunderstand,
that they would say, 'Our hand has triumphed —
the LORD did not do all this.'

²⁸For they are a nation devoid of counsel;
there is no understanding in them.

²⁹If only they were wise — if they could understand this,
if they could discern what awaits them!

³⁰How could one pursue a thousand,
and two put ten thousand to flight,
unless their Rock had sold them
and the LORD had handed them over?

³¹For their rock is not like our Rock —
even our enemies can judge that.

³²For their vine comes from the vine of Sodom,
from the terraces of Gomorrah.
Their grapes are grapes of poison;
their clusters are bitter.

³³Their wine is the venom of serpents,
the deadly poison of cobras.

³⁴Is this not stored up with Me,
sealed in My treasures?

³⁵Vengeance is Mine, and recompense,
for the time when their foot will slip.
For the day of their calamity is near,
and what awaits them rushes upon them.

³⁶For the LORD will vindicate His people
and have compassion on His servants,
when He sees that their strength is gone
and no one remains — neither bond nor free.

³⁷Then He will say, 'Where are their gods —
the rock in whom they took shelter?

³⁸Who ate the fat of their sacrifices
and drank the wine of their drink offerings?
Let them rise up and help you!
Let them be a shelter over you!

³⁹See now that I — I am He,
and there is no god besides Me.
I put to death and I bring to life;
I wound and I heal,
and no one can deliver from My hand.

⁴⁰For I raise My hand to heaven
and declare: As I live forever —

⁴¹when I sharpen My flashing sword
and My hand takes hold of judgment,
I will return vengeance on My adversaries
and repay those who hate Me.

⁴²I will make My arrows drunk with blood,
and My sword will devour flesh —
blood of the slain and the captive,
from the shaggy heads of the enemy.

⁴³Rejoice, O nations, with His people!
For He will avenge the blood of His servants;

He will return vengeance on His adversaries
and make atonement for His land and His people.

⁴⁴Moses came and recited all the words of this song in the hearing of the people — he and Hoshea son of Nun. ⁴⁵When Moses had finished speaking all these words to all Israel, ⁴⁶he said to them, 'Take to heart all the words with which I am warning you today, so that you may command your children to observe carefully all the words of this instruction. ⁴⁷For this is no empty word for you — it is your very life. Through this word you will live long on the land you are crossing the Jordan to possess.' ⁴⁸The LORD spoke to Moses on that very day, saying: ⁴⁹Go up to this mountain of the Abarim range — Mount Nebo, which is in the land of Moab, facing Jericho — and look out over the land of Canaan, which I am giving to the children of Israel as a possession. ⁵⁰Die on the mountain that you are ascending, and be gathered to your people, just as your brother Aaron died on Mount Hor and was gathered to his people. ⁵¹Because you both acted unfaithfully against Me among the children of Israel at the waters of Meribah-kadesh in the wilderness of Zin — because you did not treat Me as holy in the presence of the children of Israel. ⁵²You will see the land from a distance, but you will not enter it — the land that I am giving to the children of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Song of Moses (Ha'azinu) opens by summoning heaven and earth as witnesses — the same cosmic witnesses invoked in Deuteronomy 4:26 and 30:19. This is standard ancient Near Eastern treaty practice: the cosmos itself witnesses the covenant. The bicolon (two-line unit) establishes the poetic structure that will govern the entire song: parallel lines where the second restates, develops, or contrasts the first.
2. Four rain images describe Moses's teaching: matar ('rain'), tal ('dew'), se'irim ('light rain, drizzle'), and revivim ('showers, steady rain'). The verb ya'arof ('drip, fall gently') from the root 'r-f suggests something that percolates and soaks in — the teaching is meant to penetrate, not run off the surface. The progression from rain to dew to drizzle to showers covers every form of moisture, suggesting that the teaching saturates completely.
3. The verb eqra ('I proclaim, I call out') is a public declaration of the divine name. The response havu godel ('ascribe greatness') is an imperative — Moses calls on the audience to respond to God's name with acknowledgment of His greatness (godel — 'greatness, magnitude'). This verse functions as a call to worship before the theological declaration that follows.
4. This verse is the theological thesis of the entire Song: God is perfect, just, faithful, and upright. Every attribute is relational: tamim po'olo ('His work is perfect' — complete, without defect), mishpat ('justice' — right judgment), emunah ('faithfulness' — covenant reliability), tsaddiq ('righteous' — fulfilling His obligations), yashar ('upright' — straight, without deviation). The title haTsur ('the Rock') becomes the defining divine epithet of this chapter, appearing six times (vv 4, 15, 18, 30, 31, 37).
5. One of the most textually difficult verses in Deuteronomy. The Hebrew shichet lo lo banav mumam is disputed: some read 'they have corrupted themselves; they are not His children — their blemish' while others read 'He has corrupted; no — His children, their blemish.' The rendering follows the majority reading: Israel has acted corruptly, and their corruption (mumam — 'their blemish, their defect') disqualifies them as God's children. The terms iqqesh ('crooked, twisted') and petaltol ('tortuous, winding') describe moral distortion.
6. The rhetorical question halaYHWH tigmelu zot ('is this what you repay the LORD?') establishes the charge: ingratitude. The terms naval ('foolish, senseless') and lo chakham ('not wise') describe Israel's moral stupidity — not intellectual deficiency but the failure to recognize what should be obvious. Three verbs describe God's relationship to Israel: qanekha ('acquired you, created you'), asekhah ('made you'), and yekhonenkha ('established you, prepared you'). God is simultaneously Father, Creator, and Sustainer.
7. The Song shifts to historical reflection. Four sources of knowledge are invoked: memory (zekhor — 'remember'), understanding (binu — 'consider, discern'), paternal tradition (she'al avikha — 'ask your father'), and elder wisdom (zeqenekha — 'your elders'). The transmission of covenant history is a communal, intergenerational project — knowledge of God's faithfulness passes from generation to generation.
8. This verse describes a primordial divine ordering of the world: God (Elyon — 'the Most High') assigned each nation its territory and arranged the entire world's geography around Israel. The phrase lemispar benei Yisra'el ('according to the number of the children of Israel') suggests that the number of nations was calibrated to match Israel's tribal structure. A Dead Sea Scrolls variant (4QDeutj) reads benei Elohim ('sons of God') instead of benei Yisra'el, suggesting each nation was assigned a divine patron, while Israel was reserved for God Himself (v 9).
9. While other nations received their territories and presumably their divine patrons (v 8), God chose Israel as His own cheleq ('portion, share'). The word chevel ('allotment, measured portion, territory') describes a specific, measured inheritance — God didn't inherit Israel by chance but by deliberate selection. The parallel between 'His people' (ammo) and 'Jacob' (Ya'aqov) identifies the covenant community by its ancestral name.
10. God's care for Israel in the wilderness is described through four verbs: yimtsa'ehu ('He found him'), yesovevenhu ('He encircled him, He surrounded him'), yevonenhu ('He gave him understanding, He cared for him'), and yitsrenhu ('He guarded him, He preserved him'). The final phrase ke'ishon eino ('as the pupil of His eye') is one of the Bible's most intimate images — the pupil is the most sensitive, carefully protected part of the body. God guards Israel with the same instinctive protectiveness with which the body guards the eye.

11. The eagle metaphor describes God's parenting: ya'ir qinno ('stirs up its nest' — forcing the young to fly by disrupting their comfort), yerachef ('hovers' — the same verb used for the Spirit hovering over the waters in Genesis 1:2), yifros kenafav ('spreads its wings'), yiqqachehu ('catches them'), and yissa'ehu al evrato ('carries them on its pinions'). The image combines tough love (pushing them out) with unfailing protection (catching and carrying them). The eagle does not merely protect — it teaches flight.
12. The word badad ('alone, by Himself') emphasizes exclusivity — God needed no help, no partner, no supporting deity. The phrase ve'ein immo el nekhar ('no foreign god was with Him') can be read two ways: no foreign god helped God (He did it alone), or no foreign god was alongside Israel (they had no other deity). Both readings reinforce the same point: Israel's salvation and sustenance came from God exclusively.
13. Three images of extravagant provision: riding on the heights (yarkivehu al bamotei arets — conquest and dominion), eating field produce (tenubot sadai — agricultural abundance), and extracting sweetness from stone (devash misela, shemen mechalamish tsur — honey from rock, oil from flint). The last image is the most striking: getting nourishment from what should be barren and unyielding. God makes even stone produce sweetness for Israel.
14. A catalog of abundance: dairy (chem'at baqar, chalev tson — curds and milk), prime meat (chelev karim ve'eilim — fat lambs and rams, benei Bashan — the renowned cattle of Bashan), and the finest grain (chelev kilyot chittah — literally 'the kidney-fat of wheat,' meaning the richest, best part). The climactic image dam enav tishte chamer ('you drank the foaming blood of the grape') describes wine so rich it froths. Every category of food reaches its superlative: the fattest, the finest, the richest.
15. Jeshurun (Yeshurun — from the root y-sh-r, 'upright') is an honorific name for Israel, used with bitter irony here: the 'upright one' has become anything but upright. Three words describe the gorging: shamanta ('you grew fat'), avita ('you became thick, bloated'), and kasita ('you were covered/stuffed'). The abundance of verses 13-14 led directly to the rebellion of verse 15: prosperity produced complacency, then contempt. The verb yenabbel ('scorned, treated as foolish') applied to tsur yeshu'ato ('the Rock of his salvation') is devastating — Israel treated their Savior-Rock as worthless.
16. Two parallel lines: jealousy (yaqni'uhu — from qin'ah, the same jealousy God claims in Exodus 20:5) provoked by zarim ('foreign things, strange gods'), and anger (yakh'isuhu) provoked by to'evot ('detestable things, abominations'). God's jealousy is not petty envy but the righteous indignation of a covenantal partner betrayed.
17. The objects of Israel's worship are exposed: shedim ('demons, malevolent spirits' — a term borrowed from Akkadian shedu), lo Eloha ('not God'), elohim lo yeda'um ('gods they had never known'), chadashim miqqarov ba'u ('new ones that came from nearby/recently'). The progressive debunking strips the false gods of all legitimacy: they are demons, they are not God, they are unknown, they are newcomers. Israel's ancestors never se'arum ('shuddered at them, feared them').
18. Two stunning parental images for God: tsur yeladekha ('the Rock who bore/fathered you') and El mechollelekha ('the God who writhed in labor with you'). The verb cholel can mean 'to bring forth in labor' — God's relationship to Israel is described with both paternal (yalad) and maternal (cholel) birthing language. The verbs teshi ('you neglected, you weakened') and tishkach ('you forgot') describe a child's abandonment of the parent who gave them life.
19. God's response to Israel's rebellion begins. The verb yinats ('rejected, spurned, abhorred') marks the turning point of the Song from grace to judgment. The provocation comes mikka'as banav uvenotav ('from the provocation of His sons and daughters') — the familial language continues. These are not strangers who offend God but His own children.
20. God's judgment takes the form of withdrawal: astirah fanai ('I will hide My face'). The hidden face of God (hester panim) is one of the most powerful theological concepts in the Hebrew Bible — God does not actively destroy but withdraws His protection and presence, leaving Israel exposed to the consequences of their own choices. The final phrase banim lo emun bam ('children in whom there is no emun') uses the root alef-mem-nun (the same root as emunah from verse 4): God is emunah; His children have no emun. The contrast is the theological core of the Song.
21. The punishment mirrors the crime in precise poetic symmetry: they provoked God with lo el ('no-god'), so God will provoke them with lo am ('no-people'); they angered God with havleihem ('their vanities/worthless things'), so God will anger them with goy naval ('a foolish/worthless nation'). The apostle Paul quotes this verse in Romans 10:19 to explain God's inclusion of the Gentiles — the 'no-people' become God's means of provoking Israel to jealousy.
22. The fire of God's anger spans the entire vertical axis of creation: from She'ol tachtit ('the lowest depths of the grave') through the earth's surface (erets vivulah — 'the earth and its produce') up to mosdei harim ('the foundations of the mountains'). Nothing is beyond the reach of divine judgment — the fire penetrates downward to the underworld and upward to the mountain roots.
23. God becomes a warrior: aspeh ra'ot ('I will heap calamities') and chitsai akalleh bam ('I will spend/exhaust My arrows on them'). The image of God emptying His quiver against Israel is terrifying — He will not stop until all His arrows are spent. The implication is also that the arrows will eventually run out — God's judgment is severe but not infinite.
24. The arrows of verse 23 are now identified: famine (mezei ra'av — 'the emaciated ones of hunger'), plague (lechumei reshef — 'consumed by burning fever/pestilence'), destruction (qetev meriri — 'bitter destruction/plague'), wild animals (shen behemot — 'teeth of beasts'), and venomous serpents (chamat zochalei afar — 'venom of those that crawl in the dust'). The threats come from every domain: disease, beasts, and reptiles — the natural world turned hostile.

25. No space is safe: the sword operates outside (michutz) and terror operates inside (mechadarim — 'from the inner rooms'). No person is exempt: young men (bachur), young women (betulah), nursing infants (yoneq), and the elderly (ish seviah). The merism covers every age group — from the youngest to the oldest, no one escapes.
26. God contemplates total annihilation: af'eihem ('I would scatter them to the corners/edges') and ashbitah me'enosh zikhram ('I would cause their memory to cease from humankind'). This is the most extreme possible divine action — not just destruction but erasure from history. The verse sets up the reason God restrains Himself (v 27).
27. God's restraint is motivated not by mercy toward Israel but by concern for His own reputation among the nations. If God destroys Israel completely, the enemy nations would credit the victory to their own power (yadenu ramah — 'our hand is raised/has triumphed') rather than to divine judgment (velo YHWH pa'al kol zot — 'and not the LORD has done all this'). God's name and sovereignty must be vindicated — He will not allow human arrogance to claim credit for His judicial actions.
28. The referent is ambiguous — 'they' could be Israel (who lack the wisdom to see where their rebellion leads) or the enemy nations (who lack the wisdom to see that God, not their own power, is at work). Many interpreters read verses 28-33 as referring to the enemies, while others see Israel. The ambiguity may be intentional — both Israel and the nations lack true understanding.
29. The optative lu ('if only, would that') expresses divine longing for wisdom in the people. Three wisdom verbs are chained: chakhmu ('were wise'), yaskilu ('would comprehend'), and yavinu ('would understand'). The object of understanding is acharitam ('their end, their latter destiny'). The tragedy is not just rebellion but blindness — they cannot see where their path leads.
30. The supernatural ratio — one enemy routing a thousand Israelites, two routing ten thousand — can only be explained by divine abandonment. The rhetorical question im lo ki ('unless') points to the only possible explanation: tsuam mekharam ('their Rock sold them'). God is called 'their Rock' even in the act of judgment — He remains their Rock, but He has withdrawn His protection. The verb hisgir ('handed over, delivered up, shut in') means God actively transferred Israel into enemy hands.
31. A moment of theological clarity within the lament: ketsurenu tsuam ('their rock is not like our Rock'). The lowercase 'rock' (tsur) refers to the gods of the enemy nations; the uppercase 'Rock' refers to Israel's God. Even the enemies themselves (oyeveinu pelilim — 'our enemies are the judges') can see the difference. The gods of the nations cannot compare to Israel's God — which makes Israel's abandonment of Him all the more incomprehensible.
32. The enemies (or Israel — the referent continues to be debated) are compared to the produce of Sodom and Gomorrah — the quintessential symbols of divine judgment. Their vine produces rosh ('poison') and merorot ('bitterness') — moral corruption described as toxic agriculture. If this refers to Israel, the image is stunning: the people God planted as His vineyard (cf. Isaiah 5:1-7) now produce the fruit of Sodom.
33. The vine metaphor concludes: their wine (yeinam) is chamat tanninim ('venom of serpents') and rosh petanim akhzar ('cruel/deadly poison of cobras'). What should nourish (wine) destroys (venom). The word tanninim can mean 'serpents,' 'sea monsters,' or 'dragons' depending on context; here the parallel with petanim ('cobras, vipers') confirms the serpent reading.
34. God reveals that the enemies' wickedness is not unnoticed: kamus immadi ('stored up with Me'), chatum be'otsrotai ('sealed in My treasures'). The metaphor is of a treasury or archive where debts are recorded and sealed for future collection. Divine justice is patient but precise — nothing is forgotten, everything is accounted for.
35. Li naqam veshillem ('To Me belongs vengeance and repayment') is quoted by Paul in Romans 12:19 and by the author of Hebrews 10:30. The image of the slipping foot (tamut raglam — 'their foot will totter/slip') suggests that the wicked stand on unstable ground — their fall is not a matter of if but of when. The phrase ve'chash atidot lamo ('what is destined for them hastens') personifies destiny as a runner racing toward the wicked.
36. The turning point of the Song: God shifts from judgment to restoration. The verb yadin ('will judge/vindicate') here means to act on behalf of, not to condemn. The verb yitnecham ('will have compassion, will relent') from the root n-ch-m describes God's emotional turn toward His people. The condition for this turn is Israel's complete helplessness: azlat yad ('strength is gone'), efes atsur ve'azuv ('no one remains, neither confined nor free'). God acts when human resources are exhausted — when Israel can no longer save themselves.
37. God challenges the false gods Israel chose: ei eloheimo ('where are their gods?') — the same taunt used against foreign gods in Judges 10:14. The word tsur ('rock') is used with bitter irony: Israel's chosen 'rock' (lowercase — the false gods) is now exposed as absent and powerless, in contrast to haTsur ('the Rock') — God Himself — who never abandoned His essential character even during judgment.
38. The challenge continues with escalating sarcasm: Israel's false gods consumed the best portions of their offerings (chelev zevacheimo — 'the fat of their sacrifices,' yein nesikham — 'the wine of their libations'). Now let those gods demonstrate their power: yaqumu ve'ya'zerukhem ('let them rise and help you'), yehi aleikhem sitrah ('let them be a shelter over you'). The silence of the false gods answers the challenge.
39. The supreme divine self-declaration: ani ani hu ('I, I am He') — an emphatic claim of unique, exclusive deity. Three paired actions demonstrate absolute sovereignty: amith va'achayye ('I kill and I make alive'), machatseti va'ani erpa ('I wound and I heal'). God holds both sides of every axis of power — destruction and creation, injury and restoration. The closing ve'ein miyadi matzil ('no one delivers from My hand') is an absolute claim of irresistible power.
40. God swears an oath by Himself — raising the hand to heaven (essa el shamayim yadi) is a gesture of oath-taking. Since there is no one greater to swear by, God swears by His own eternal life: chai anokhi le'olam ('I live forever'). This divine oath guarantees the promises of vengeance and restoration that follow.

41. God as divine warrior: shanoti beraq charbi ('I sharpen the lightning-flash of My sword') — the sword is described as beraq ('lightning, flash'), connecting heavenly warfare with storm imagery. God's enemies (tsarai — 'My adversaries,' mesan'ai — 'those who hate Me') are Israel's oppressors, but the language is broad enough to encompass all who oppose God's purposes.
42. The divine warrior imagery reaches its climax: arrows drunk on blood (ashkir chitsai middam) and a sword that devours flesh (ve'charbi tokhal basar). The phrase mero'sh par'ot oyev ('from the head of the enemy's wild-haired leaders') may describe enemy warriors with flowing battle hair, or it may refer to the chief (ro'sh — 'head, leader') of the enemy's retribution forces. The violence is not gratuitous — it is the execution of the covenant curses against Israel's oppressors.
43. The Song concludes with a universal call to celebration: harninu goyim ammo ('Shout for joy, O nations, with His people'). The same nations that were instruments of judgment are now called to rejoice in Israel's restoration. Three divine actions close the Song: dam avadav yiqqom ('He will avenge His servants' blood'), naqam yashiv letsarav ('He will repay His adversaries'), and kipper admato ammo ('He will atone for His land and His people'). The final verb kipper ('atone, make atonement') brings the entire covenantal drama to resolution — the same kippur that purifies the sanctuary (Leviticus 16) now purifies the land and the people. Judgment ends in restoration.
44. The narrative frame resumes. Joshua is called by his birth name Hoshea (meaning 'salvation') rather than Yehoshua/Joshua (meaning 'the LORD saves'). Moses recites the Song to the entire assembly. Joshua's presence signals the transition of leadership — he witnesses Moses's final teaching as the man who will carry it forward.
45. The phrase vayekhal Mosheh ('Moses finished') marks the formal conclusion of the Song's recitation. The emphasis on 'all' (kol hadevarim, kol Yisra'el) stresses completeness — every word was spoken, and the entire nation heard.
46. Moses's final charge before his death: simu levavkhem ('set your hearts' — pay attention with your whole being). The intergenerational dimension is explicit: asher tetsavvum et beneikhem ('which you shall command your children'). The Song is not merely a performance but a teaching instrument — it must be transmitted to future generations as a perpetual witness to the covenant.
47. The extraordinary claim: ki hu chayyeikhem ('for it is your life'). The Torah is not abstract religious teaching but the source of life itself. The word is not req ('empty, vain, worthless') — it carries weight, substance, and consequence. Obedience to this word is directly connected to survival on the land (ta'arikhu yamim al ha'adamah — 'you will prolong days on the soil'). Life in the land and faithfulness to the word are inseparable.
48. The phrase be'etsem hayyom hazeh ('on the bone/substance of this day' — on that very day) emphasizes immediacy. What follows is God's command for Moses to ascend Mount Nebo and die — the end of Moses's life is inseparable from the completion of his teaching.
49. The geography is precise: the Abarim range east of the Jordan, specifically Mount Nebo (har nevo), in Moabite territory, facing (al penei) Jericho across the Jordan valley. Moses will see (ure'eh) the land but not enter it. The command to look (re'eh) at the promised land is both a gift (he gets to see it) and a judgment (he will never set foot in it). The verb noten ('I am giving') uses the present participle — the gift is in process, happening now, but Moses will not be its recipient.
50. The command umut bahar ('die on the mountain') is stark — God commands death as directly as He once commanded mission. The phrase he'asef el ammekha ('be gathered to your people') is the standard Hebrew expression for death understood as reunion with ancestors — it presupposes continued existence beyond physical death. Aaron's death on Mount Hor (Numbers 20:22-29) provides the parallel: both brothers die on mountaintops, both are 'gathered to their people,' and neither enters the promised land.
51. The reason for Moses's exclusion from the land is restated: me'altam bi ('you acted unfaithfully against Me') at Meribah-kadesh (Numbers 20:1-13), where Moses struck the rock instead of speaking to it. The phrase lo qiddashtem oti ('you did not sanctify Me, you did not treat Me as holy') identifies the core failure: Moses failed to uphold God's holiness before the people. The plural 'you both' (me'altam) includes Aaron, who has already died under the same judgment.
52. The chapter and Moses's public ministry end with this sentence of profound sorrow: minneged tir'eh et ha'arets ('from opposite/across you will see the land') — he will see it but not enter it. The word shamah ('there') followed by lo tavo ('you will not come') creates a permanent barrier between Moses and the promise. Yet the verse is not entirely judgment — God still says ani noten ('I am giving'), present tense. The promise to Israel stands; only Moses's personal entry is denied. The land awaits.

33

Summary: *Moses blesses the twelve tribes of Israel before his death — a poem framing each tribe's destiny within a theophanic hymn that opens and closes with God as king and protector.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The blessing opens with a theophany (vv. 2-5) — God coming from Sinai, Seir, and Mount Paran with ten thousands of holy ones and a fiery law (esh dat). The order and content of the tribal blessings differ significantly from Jacob's blessings in Genesis 49: Simeon is missing entirely, Joseph receives the longest blessing, and Levi is praised rather than cursed. The name Yeshurun (v. 5, 26), a poetic term for Israel from the root yashar ('upright'), appears only here and in 32:15 — it is God's affectionate name for what Israel is meant to be.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase esh dat (v. 2) remains one of the most debated expressions in the Torah — 'fire of law,' 'fiery law,' or a textual corruption. We preserved the Masoretic reading. Several tribal blessings contain rare vocabulary: Zebulun's 'treasures hidden in the sand' (v. 19), Dan as a 'lion's cub leaping from Bashan' (v. 22), and Asher's 'iron and bronze' bolts (v. 25). Each required balancing literal translation with intelligible English.*

Connections: *The tribal blessings parallel Genesis 49 (Jacob's blessings) but reflect changed historical circumstances. The theophanic opening (vv. 2-5) echoes Judges 5:4-5, Psalm 68:7-8, and Habakkuk 3:3. The closing declaration 'there is none like the God of Yeshurun' (v. 26) is echoed in the incomparability formula of Exodus 15:11, 2 Samuel 7:22, and Psalm 86:8.*

¹This is the blessing
that Moses, the man of God,
pronounced over the people of Israel
before his death.

²He declared:
The LORD came from Sinai,
He dawned upon them from Seir,
He blazed forth from Mount Paran.
He arrived from the myriads of holy ones —
from His right hand, a fire of law for them.

³Indeed, He loves the peoples;
all His consecrated ones are in Your hand.
They gathered at Your feet,
each one receiving Your instructions.

⁴Moses charged us with the Law —
the inheritance of the assembly of Jacob.

⁵He became king in Yeshurun
when the leaders of the people assembled,
the tribes of Israel gathered as one.

⁶Let Reuben live and not perish;
let his people not dwindle in number.

⁷And this is for Judah. He said:
 Hear, O LORD, the voice of Judah,
 and bring him back to his people.
 Let his hands fight for him,
 and be his help against his enemies.

⁸Of Levi he said:
 Your Thummim and Your Urim
 belong to the one loyal to You —
 the one You tested at Massah,
 the one You contended with at the waters of Meribah.

⁹The one who said of his father and mother,
 'I do not regard them' —
 who did not acknowledge his brothers
 or recognize his own children.
 For they kept Your word
 and guarded Your covenant.

¹⁰They teach Your ordinances to Jacob,
 Your instruction to Israel.
 They place incense before You
 and whole offerings on Your altar.

¹¹O LORD, bless his strength
 and take pleasure in the work of his hands.
 Crush the backs of those who rise against him,
 and of those who hate him — so they never rise again.

¹²Of Benjamin he said:
 The beloved of the LORD
 will dwell securely beside Him.
 He shelters him all day long,
 and between his ridges He makes His home.

¹³Of Joseph he said:
 Blessed by the LORD is his land —
 with the finest gifts of heaven, with dew,
 and with the deep waters crouching below,

¹⁴with the finest crops ripened by the sun,
 and the finest yield drawn out by the moon,

¹⁵with the best of the ancient mountains,
 and the finest gifts of the enduring hills,

¹⁶with the finest gifts of the earth and all it holds,
 and the favor of the One who dwelt in the bush —
 let all this come upon the head of Joseph,

upon the crown of the one set apart among his brothers.

¹⁷His firstborn bull — majesty belongs to him;
his horns are the horns of a wild ox.
With them he gores the nations,
all of them, to the ends of the earth.
These are the myriads of Ephraim;
these are the thousands of Manasseh.

¹⁸Of Zebulun he said:
Rejoice, Zebulun, in your ventures abroad,
and Issachar, in your tents.

¹⁹They will summon peoples to the mountain;
there they will offer righteous sacrifices.
For they will draw from the abundance of the seas
and the hidden treasures of the sand.

²⁰Of Gad he said:
Blessed is the one who gives Gad wide territory!
Like a lioness he crouches,
tearing off arm and skull alike.

²¹He chose the best portion for himself,
for the commander's allotment was reserved there.
He marched at the head of the people,
carrying out the LORD's righteous purpose
and His judgments alongside Israel.

²²Of Dan he said:
Dan is a lion's cub
that leaps from Bashan.

²³Of Naphtali he said:
Naphtali — overflowing with favor,
filled with the blessing of the LORD —
take possession of the sea and the southland.

²⁴Of Asher he said:
Most blessed of sons is Asher;
let him be favored among his brothers,
and let him bathe his foot in oil.

²⁵Your bolts will be iron and bronze,
and your strength will last as long as your days.

²⁶There is no one like the God of Jeshurun,
who rides across the heavens to help you,
who rides the clouds in His majesty.

²⁷The God of old is your dwelling place,
and beneath you are the everlasting arms.
He drove the enemy out before you
and said, 'Destroy!'

²⁸So Israel dwells in safety,
the fountain of Jacob set apart
in a land of grain and new wine,
where even his skies drip with dew.

²⁹How fortunate you are, Israel!
Who is like you —
a people delivered by the LORD,
the shield of your protection,
the sword of your triumph?
Your enemies will cringe before you,
and you will trample their heights.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription frames the entire chapter as berakhah ('blessing') — a performative speech-act in which words carry real power to shape destiny. Moses is titled ish ha'Elohim ('the man of God'), a designation used elsewhere only for prophets like Elijah and Elisha (1 Kings 17:18, 2 Kings 4:9). This title elevates Moses's final words beyond personal farewell to prophetic declaration. The phrase lifnei moto ('before his death') marks this as deathbed blessing — a genre well-established in Genesis (Jacob's blessings in Genesis 49) where the dying patriarch's words are irrevocable and prophetically charged.
2. This theophanic hymn traces God's approach from three locations moving northward: Sinai, Seir (Edom's mountain range), and Paran (the wilderness region between them). The verbs escalate: ba ('came'), zarach ('dawned, rose like the sun'), hofia ('shone forth, blazed out'). The Ketiv/Qere at the verse's end is significant: the Ketiv reads (eshdat) as a single word of uncertain meaning, while the Qere separates it into (esh dat — 'fire of law' or 'fiery law'). The rendering follows the Qere reading. The phrase merivevot qodesh ('from the myriads of holy ones') depicts God arriving with a vast angelic retinue — a divine warrior coming with His heavenly army.
3. This verse is among the most textually difficult in the Hebrew Bible. The verb chovev ('loving, embracing') is rare, appearing only here in this form. The word ammim ('peoples') is ambiguous — it could mean the tribes of Israel or the nations generally. The phrase kol qedoshav beyodekha ('all His holy ones are in Your hand') shifts from third person (He loves) to second person (Your hand), a common feature of Hebrew hymnic poetry. The verb tukku ('they sat down' or 'they were struck/directed') is disputed; it may come from the root t-k-k ('to be placed, to sit') describing the people positioned at God's feet as disciples receiving teaching.
4. This verse shifts from theophanic hymn to communal declaration — likely a congregational response or liturgical refrain. The word torah ('instruction, teaching, law') is presented not as burden but as morashah ('inheritance, possession') — something precious handed down from generation to generation. The term qehillat Ya'aqov ('assembly of Jacob') designates the gathered community as the corporate recipient and guardian of Torah. This verse became one of the most quoted in Jewish liturgy and education, crystallizing the idea that Torah belongs to the entire community, not to priests or scholars alone.
5. The identity of the 'king' is debated: it may refer to God Himself reigning over Israel, or to Moses functioning as a king-like figure during the wilderness period. The context of theophany (vv 2-4) favors God as the subject — He became melek ('king') over Israel at Sinai when the nation assembled. The verb hit'assef ('gathered together') and the adverb yachad ('together, as one') emphasize the unity of the tribal assembly as the moment of God's coronation over His people.
6. Reuben's blessing is strikingly brief — the shortest of all the tribal blessings, reflecting the firstborn's diminished status (cf. Genesis 49:3-4, where Jacob rebukes Reuben for his transgression). The phrase yechi... ve'al yamot ('let him live and not die') is a plea for survival, not dominance. The second line vihi metav mispar ('let his men be a number') is ambiguous: it could mean 'let his men be numerous' (a positive wish) or, as some ancient versions read with the negative particle, 'let not his men be few' (a prayer against extinction). The brevity itself is eloquent — Reuben receives survival, not supremacy.
7. Judah's blessing is framed as intercessory prayer rather than declarative blessing — Moses asks God to hear Judah and assist him. The phrase ve'el ammo tevi'ennu ('bring him to his people') may reflect a situation where Judah fights at the vanguard, separated from the other tribes, and needs to be brought safely home. Yadav rav lo ('his hands contend/fight for him') asks that Judah's own strength be sufficient for battle. The final plea ezer mitsarav tiyeh ('be a help from his adversaries') asks for divine assistance specifically in military conflict. Notably, Simeon is omitted entirely from

this blessing — the only tribe not mentioned.

8. Levi's blessing is the longest, spanning four verses (8-11), reflecting the tribe's elevated priestly role. The Thummim and Urim (tummekha ve'urekha — note the reversed order from the usual 'Urim and Thummim') are the sacred lots used for divine consultation, here assigned to ish chasidekha ('the man loyal to You' — possibly referring to the tribe collectively or to Moses/Aaron specifically). The testing at Massah (Exodus 17:1-7) and the striving at Meribah (Numbers 20:1-13) are places where both the people and their leaders were tested. The Levites proved faithful when others did not.
9. This verse recalls the Levites' decisive action at the golden calf incident (Exodus 32:25-29), where they executed judgment without regard for family ties. The three negations — lo re'itiv ('I have not seen him' — regarding father and mother), lo hikkir ('did not acknowledge' — regarding brothers), lo yada ('did not know' — regarding children) — demonstrate absolute covenant loyalty over family loyalty. The verbs shamru ('they kept, observed') and yintsoru ('they guarded, preserved') describe the Levites' fidelity to God's imratekha ('Your word, Your utterance') and beritekha ('Your covenant'). Tribal loyalty to God superseded kinship loyalty.
10. Two primary Levitical functions are named: teaching and worship. The verb yoru ('they teach, they direct') from the same root as torah connects the Levites' instructional role directly to Torah itself — they are the authorized interpreters. The parallelism mishpatekha ('Your ordinances') / toratekha ('Your instruction') covers the full scope of divine teaching. The worship function involves qetorah ('incense' — the aromatic offering burned on the golden altar) and kalil ('whole offering' — the completely consumed sacrifice on the bronze altar). The Levites stand at the intersection of divine word and divine worship.
11. The blessing concludes with a prayer for Levi that mirrors a warrior's petition. Barakh YHWH cheilo ('Bless, LORD, his strength/resources') asks for divine empowerment. The verb tirtsah ('accept, take pleasure in') asks God to find the Levites' po'al yadav ('work of his hands' — their priestly service) pleasing. The final lines turn aggressive: mechats motnayim qamav ('crush the loins/back of those who rise against him') uses violent imagery to protect the priestly tribe from its opponents — possibly reflecting historical conflicts over Levitical authority. The phrase min yequmun ('that they not rise again') is a prayer for decisive, permanent victory.
12. Benjamin's blessing is saturated with intimacy. The title yedid YHWH ('beloved of the LORD') uses the same root as David's name (d-v-d) and suggests deep, personal affection. The verb yishkon ('will dwell') and its repetition shaken ('He dwells/makes His home') create a picture of mutual indwelling — Benjamin dwells securely with God, and God dwells between Benjamin's ketepav ('his shoulders' — referring to the ridges or slopes of Benjamin's hill-country territory). Since the Jerusalem Temple was built on the border of Benjamin's territory, many interpreters see this as a prophetic allusion to God dwelling on Benjamin's hills.
13. Joseph's blessing (vv 13-17) is the longest and most lavish, rivaling the theophanic introduction in grandeur. The key word meged ('precious thing, finest gift, choice produce') appears five times across vv 13-16, creating a cascade of abundance. The blessing begins with cosmic sources: shamayim ('heaven') provides tal ('dew' — essential moisture in a land with dry summers), while the tehom ('the deep' — primordial subterranean waters, cf. Genesis 1:2) rovetset tachat ('crouches beneath') the surface, supplying springs and groundwater. The verb rovetset ('crouching, lying in wait') personifies the deep as a living force ready to nourish.
14. The celestial pair — shemesh ('sun') and yerachim ('moons, lunar months') — governs agricultural productivity. The sun's tevu'ot ('produce, crops, yield') refers to what grows under solar warmth, while geresh yerachim ('what the moon puts forth, drives out') likely refers to the monthly cycle of growth regulated by lunar phases. Ancient Near Eastern agriculture was closely tied to the lunar calendar, making this a concrete, practical blessing: Joseph's land will produce abundantly in every season and every month.
15. The blessing moves from celestial to terrestrial — from sky to the oldest features of the landscape. The phrase harrei qedem ('mountains of old, ancient mountains') evokes primordial geology, mountains that have stood since creation. The parallel giv'ot olam ('hills of eternity, enduring hills') reinforces the image of permanence. The rosh ('head, top, best') and meged ('finest gift') drawn from these ancient formations suggest mineral wealth, terraced agriculture, and the productive soil of long-weathered hillsides.
16. The cascade of meged ('finest gifts') reaches its climax: erets umlo'ah ('the earth and its fullness') encompasses everything the land contains. Then the blessing shifts from nature to divine favor: retson shokheni seneh ('the favor/goodwill of the One who dwelt in the bush') is an extraordinary reference back to the burning bush theophany of Exodus 3 — God is identified by His most intimate self-revelation to Moses. The blessings converge on rosh Yosef ('the head of Joseph') and qodqod nezir echav ('the crown of the one consecrated/separated among his brothers'). The word nazir ('consecrated one, separated one') recalls both Joseph's separation from his family and his elevated, set-apart status.
17. The animal imagery shifts Joseph's blessing from agricultural abundance to military power. The bekhsh shoro ('firstborn of his bull') is an image of prime strength and vigor. The re'em ('wild ox' — probably the now-extinct aurochs, *Bos primigenius*, not 'unicorn' as KJV translates) was the largest and most powerful bovid in the ancient Near East. The verb yenagach ('he gores, he thrusts') depicts Joseph's tribes driving enemies to the afsei arets ('ends of the earth'). The blessing concludes by identifying the two Josephite sub-tribes: Ephraim receives rivevot ('myriads, ten-thousands') while Manasseh receives alfei ('thousands') — reflecting Ephraim's historical dominance despite being the younger brother (Genesis 48:19-20).
18. Zebulun and Issachar are paired in a single blessing (vv 18-19), as they occupied adjacent territories in the Galilee region. The contrast betse'tekha ('in your going out') versus be'ohalekha ('in your tents') distinguishes their economic roles: Zebulun engaged in commerce and maritime trade (going out), while Issachar was associated with settled agricultural and scholarly life (remaining in tents). The verb semach ('rejoice') covers both activities — both the outgoing trader and the tent-dwelling farmer find cause for celebration in their respective vocations.
19. The paired tribes host a pilgrimage: amim har yiqra'u ('they summon peoples to the mountain') likely refers to a regional sanctuary where Zebulun and Issachar invite others to worship. The zivchei tsedeq ('sacrifices of righteousness' — legitimate, proper offerings) are funded by two sources of

- wealth: shefa yamim ('abundance of the seas' — maritime commerce, fishing, possibly the murex snail used for purple dye) and sefunei temunei chol ('hidden things buried in sand' — perhaps glass-making from coastal sand, a known Phoenician industry in the region, or mineral deposits). The blessing envisions economic prosperity channeled into worship.
- 20.** Gad settled east of the Jordan and needed warrior strength to defend exposed borders. The phrase barukh marchiv Gad ('blessed is the one who enlarges Gad') celebrates the expansion of Gad's territory. The lion imagery — kelavi shaken ('like a lioness he crouches/dwells') — depicts Gad as a predator at rest but ready to strike. The violence of taraf zero'a af qodqod ('tears arm and even skull') describes devastating combat: the lion does not merely wound but rips off both the arm (zero'a — also 'strength, force') and the head. The lavi ('lioness') is chosen over aryeh ('lion') perhaps because the lioness is the more active hunter.
- 21.** Gad selected prime Transjordanian territory (reshit — 'the first, the best portion') where a chelqat mechoqeq ('portion of the commander/lawgiver') was safun ('reserved, hidden away'). The identity of the mechoqeq is debated — it may refer to Moses's burial place (hidden in Gad's territory) or to the leader's reserved portion. Despite choosing eastern territory, Gad fulfilled his obligation: vayyete rashei am ('he went/marched at the head of the people') crossing the Jordan to fight with the other tribes (cf. Numbers 32:20-27). The phrase tsidqat YHWH asah ('he executed the LORD's righteousness') describes Gad's military service as an act of covenant faithfulness.
- 22.** Dan's blessing is brief but vivid. The gur aryeh ('lion's cub') describes youthful, explosive power — not the mature lion at rest but the young predator bursting into action. The verb yezanneq ('leaps, springs forth') conveys sudden, powerful movement. The location min haBashan ('from Bashan') is geographically puzzling since Dan's original territory was in the southwest, but the tribe later migrated north near Bashan (Judges 18), and this blessing may reflect that northern settlement. Bashan was known for its lush pastureland and powerful bulls (Psalm 22:12), making it a fitting launchpad for a leaping lion.
- 23.** Naphtali's blessing is pure abundance. The phrase seva ratson ('satisfied/sated with favor') describes a state of complete divine goodwill — ratson is the pleasure and acceptance that God extends. The parallel male birkat YHWH ('full of the LORD's blessing') reinforces the image of overflowing bounty. The directive yam vedarom yerashah ('possess the sea and the south') defines Naphtali's territory: yam ('sea, west') likely refers to the Sea of Galilee (Naphtali's territory included its western shore), and darom ('south') indicates the fertile southern extension of the tribal allotment. Naphtali's territory was among the most agriculturally productive in Israel.
- 24.** Asher's blessing (vv 24-25) celebrates fertility and prosperity. The phrase barukh mibanim Asher ('blessed among sons is Asher') places Asher above the other tribes in this particular blessing. Retsuyi echav ('accepted/favored by his brothers') suggests both popularity and commercial importance — Asher's olive-rich territory made him a valued trading partner. The vivid image tovel bashemen raglo ('dipping his foot in oil') is hyperbolic: Asher's land produces so much olive oil that one could wade through it. Asher's coastal territory in the northwest (modern Lebanon border region) was indeed renowned for its olive groves.
- 25.** The word min'alekha is traditionally rendered 'your shoes/sandals' (from na'al — 'sandal'), but many modern scholars read it as 'your bolts/locks' (from the root n-'l — 'to bolt, to lock'), referring to the fortification of Asher's cities with iron and bronze bars. This reading better fits the military context: Asher's border cities needed strong defenses. The final phrase ukheyamekha dov'ekha is also debated: dov'ekha may mean 'your strength' (from d-b-' — an otherwise unattested root), 'your vigor,' or 'your abundance.' The rendering follows the traditional understanding: Asher's strength will endure throughout his lifetime, never diminishing.
- 26.** The grand doxology (vv 26-29) opens with a declaration of incomparability: ein ka'El Yeshurun ('there is no one like the God of Jeshurun'). The image of God as rokhev shamayim ('rider of the heavens') draws on ancient Near Eastern storm-god imagery — the deity who mounts the thunderclouds as a chariot (cf. Psalm 68:4, 104:3). But here the heavenly ride is be'ezrekha ('to your help, for your aid') — cosmic power deployed for Israel's benefit. The parallel uvega'avato shechaqim ('and in His majesty, the clouds') depicts God's splendor manifest across the sky (shechaqim — 'clouds, skies, the heights'). The poetic name Yeshurun returns from v 5, framing the blessing.
- 27.** One of the most beloved verses in the Hebrew Bible. The word me'onah ('dwelling place, refuge') from the root 'v-n ('to dwell') presents God Himself as the shelter — not a building or a fortress but the living God as the place where Israel lives. The phrase Elohei qedem ('God of old, God of the east, the ancient God') emphasizes God's eternality — He precedes all things. The image umittachat zero'ot olam ('and underneath are the arms of eternity') is staggeringly intimate: the everlasting arms hold Israel from below, supporting, carrying, and catching. The military conclusion — vayyegaresh ('He drove out') and vayyomer hashmed ('He said: Destroy!') — places this tender image within the context of conquest, where the God who gently holds also powerfully fights.
- 28.** The vision of Israel's settled life: yishkon Yisra'el betach badad ('Israel dwells securely, alone/apart') describes both safety and distinctiveness — Israel is protected and separate from the nations. The phrase ein Ya'aqov ('the fountain/eye of Jacob') is a poetic designation for the source of Israel's life — either the people themselves or their ancestral spring of blessing. The land is described by its products: dagan ('grain' — the staple crop) and tirosh ('new wine, fresh grape juice' — the luxury crop). The final image af shamav ya'arfu tal ('even his heavens drip dew') crowns the picture: the very sky above Israel's land weeps moisture for its fertility.
- 29.** The climactic verse of the entire blessing. The exclamation ashrekha Yisra'el ('how fortunate you are, Israel!' — ashrei expresses concrete, experienced happiness) opens the finale. The Yemenite scribal tradition notes an enlarged aleph (aleph gedolah) in ashrekha, visually marking this word as significant. The rhetorical question mi khamokha ('who is like you?') echoes the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:11: mi khamokha ba'elim YHWH — 'who is like You among the gods, LORD?'), but here the incomparability is applied to Israel itself: a people unmatched because their God is unmatched. God is both magen ('shield' — defensive protection) and cherev ('sword' — offensive power). The enemies yikkachashu ('cringe, submit, feign obedience' — from k-ch-sh, 'to deny, to cower'). Israel treads al bamoteimo ('upon their high places') — conquering the very sanctuaries and

strongholds of the defeated.

34

Summary: *Moses ascends Mount Nebo, sees the entire promised land from Dan to the Negev, and dies there at 120 years old. God buries him in an unknown grave. Joshua succeeds him, but the narrator declares that no prophet like Moses has risen since.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The final verse of the Torah is an epitaph: 'no prophet has risen in Israel like Moses, whom the LORD knew face to face' (panim el panim, v. 10). The phrase is not metaphorical — Exodus 33:11 and Numbers 12:8 established Moses's unique mode of divine communication. The narrator's voice in verse 10 ('has not risen since') implies distance in time — this postscript was written long after Moses by someone looking back across Israel's prophetic history.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase al-pi YHWH (v. 5, literally 'at the mouth of the LORD') led to the rabbinic tradition that Moses died by God's kiss — a tender reading of what could simply mean 'by God's command.' We rendered it 'at the LORD's command' and noted the tradition. Moses's undiminished vitality (v. 7, 'his eye was not dim, and his vigor had not fled') makes his death purely obedient — nature did not take him; God summoned him.*

Connections: *The land panorama (vv. 1-3) fulfills the promise to Abraham in Genesis 12:7 and 13:14-17 — Moses sees what Abraham was promised. The unknown burial site prevented shrine-building, a decision with theological implications. Joshua's commissioning (v. 9) completes Numbers 27:18-23 and Deuteronomy 31:7-8. The 'face to face' claim (v. 10) echoes Exodus 33:11 and is qualified by 1 Corinthians 13:12.*

¹Moses went up from the steppes of Moab to Mount Nebo, to the summit of Pisgah, which faces Jericho. There the LORD showed him the entire land — Gilead as far as Dan, ²all of Naphtali, the land of Ephraim and Manasseh, all the land of Judah as far as the western sea, ³the Negev, the Jordan plain — the valley of Jericho, city of palms — as far as Zoar. ⁴The LORD said to him, "This is the land I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob when I said, 'I will give it to your descendants.' I have let you see it with your own eyes, but you will not cross over into it." ⁵Moses, the servant of the LORD, died there in the land of Moab, at the mouth of the LORD. ⁶He buried him in the valley in the land of Moab, opposite Beth-peor, and no one knows his burial place to this day. ⁷Moses was one hundred and twenty years old when he died. His eye had not grown dim, and his vitality had not faded. ⁸The Israelites wept for Moses in the steppes of Moab for thirty days. Then the days of weeping and mourning for Moses came to an end. ⁹Now Joshua son of Nun was filled with the spirit of wisdom, because Moses had laid his hands on him. The Israelites obeyed him and did as the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹⁰No prophet has arisen since in Israel like Moses, whom the LORD knew face to face — ¹¹unmatched in all the signs and wonders the LORD sent him to perform in the land of Egypt — against Pharaoh, all his officials, and his entire land — ¹²and in all the mighty power and all the great and awesome deeds that Moses performed in the sight of all Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moses's final ascent reverses Abraham's first journey into the land. The verb vayya'al ('he went up') is the same used for pilgrimage to sacred sites. Mount Nebo rises about 2,600 feet above the Dead Sea, offering a panoramic view westward across the Jordan Valley. The phrase vayyar'ehu YHWH ('the LORD showed him') indicates this was more than natural sight — God granted Moses a vision of the entire promised territory, tribe by tribe, as a final gift.
2. The panorama sweeps from north (Dan, Naphtali) to central (Ephraim, Manasseh) to south (Judah), using tribal names that anticipate the future territorial divisions under Joshua. 'The western sea' (hayyam ha'acharon, literally 'the last sea' or 'the hinder sea') is the Mediterranean — the farthest boundary of the promised land. Moses sees Israel's future mapped out across the landscape before him.
3. The vision completes its sweep southward through the Negev and then down to the Jordan plain (kikkar), the fertile lowland near Jericho. 'City of palms' (ir hattermarim) is Jericho's epithet — the first city Israel will conquer. Zoar, at the southern end of the Dead Sea, was the small city where Lot fled from Sodom's destruction (Gen 19:22). The panoramic tour encompasses the entire promised land from every direction: north, west, south, and the Jordan Valley below.

4. God's final words to Moses are simultaneously a fulfillment and a withholding. The oath to the patriarchs (Gen 12:7, 26:3, 28:13) is confirmed — 'This is the land I swore' — but Moses himself will not enter. The phrase *her'itikha ve'einekha* ('I have caused you to see it with your eyes') is tender and devastating: God gives Moses the fullest possible vision of what he cannot have. The reason for Moses's exclusion (Num 20:12, striking the rock) is not repeated here — at the end, the narrative does not revisit the failure but focuses on the intimacy of the moment: God and Moses, alone on a mountaintop, looking at the promise together.
5. The phrase *al-pi YHWH* (literally 'at/by the mouth of the LORD') is rendered 'according to the word' by most translations, but the Hebrew is more intimate. The rabbinic tradition interpreted this as death 'by the kiss of God' — God took Moses's life directly, gently. The epithet *eved-YHWH* ('servant of the LORD') is the highest title in the Hebrew Bible — used sparingly for Abraham, Moses, David, and the prophets. Moses dies not as a failed leader excluded from the land but as the faithful servant of the LORD.
6. The subject of 'buried' is ambiguous — the Hebrew *vayyiqbor oto* could mean 'He (God) buried him' or 'he (someone) buried him.' Most reading traditions understand God as the one who buries Moses — a final act of intimacy. The unknown grave prevents the burial site from becoming a shrine or object of worship. Beth-peor ('house of Peor') is where Israel's apostasy with Baal of Peor occurred (Num 25) — Moses is buried near the site of Israel's greatest failure under his leadership, a poignant irony. 'To this day' (*ad hayyom hazzeh*) is the narrator's own voice, writing from a later time.
7. Two physical details mark Moses's death as extraordinary: undimmed sight (*lo khahatah eino*) and undiminished vigor (*lo nas lechoho*). He did not waste away — his death was not from decline but from divine appointment. The 120 years divide neatly into three forties: 40 years in Egypt's court, 40 years in Midian, 40 years leading Israel. The Hebrew *lechoho* ('his moisture, vigor, freshness') refers to vital force — the sap of life had not dried up. Moses was fully alive when God took him.
8. Thirty days of mourning is the standard period for a national leader — Aaron received the same (Num 20:29). The phrase *vayyitemu yemei vekhi evel Mosheh* ('the days of weeping-mourning for Moses were completed') marks a definitive ending: the mourning period has a boundary. Israel must grieve and then move forward. The Pentateuch, which began with creation, now closes with a funeral.
9. The succession is orderly: Moses laid hands on Joshua (Num 27:18-23), transferring authority through physical contact. Joshua receives *ruach chokhmah* ('spirit of wisdom') — not Moses's prophetic spirit but the specific gift needed for leadership. The verb *shama* ('obeyed, listened') — the same word that opens the Shema (Deut 6:4) — now describes Israel's response to Joshua's authority. Yet the closing phrase is telling: Israel does 'as the LORD commanded Moses,' not 'as Joshua commanded.' Moses's authority continues to govern even after his death.
10. The eulogy that closes the Torah is written from a later perspective — 'no prophet has arisen since' (*velo-qam navi od*) presupposes a long period of history after Moses. The defining characteristic is not Moses's miracles (those come in v11-12) but his relationship: *asher yeda'o YHWH panim el panim* ('whom the LORD knew face to face'). The verb is *yada* ('knew') — God knew Moses, not merely Moses knew God. The intimacy is mutual. This echoes Exodus 33:11 ('the LORD would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend') and Numbers 12:8 ('mouth to mouth I speak with him').
11. The eulogy shifts from relationship (v10) to action (v11-12). The signs and wonders (*otot umoftim*) refer to the ten plagues and the exodus — the largest concentration of divine power through a human agent in the Hebrew Bible. The verb *shlakho* ('sent him') emphasizes that Moses was God's commissioned agent, not an independent wonder-worker. The comprehensive targeting — Pharaoh, his officials, his entire land — recapitulates the scope of the exodus narrative.
12. The Torah ends with four final words: *le'einei kol-Yisrael* — 'before the eyes of all Israel.' The last image is not of Moses alone on a mountain but of Moses acting before his people. The 'mighty hand' (*hayyad hachazaqah*) is Deuteronomy's characteristic phrase for God's power in the exodus, here attributed to Moses as God's instrument. The 'great and awesome deeds' (*hamora haggadol*) — *mora* carries the sense of awe-inspiring, terrifying acts of power. The Pentateuch closes not with a period but with an open gesture: Moses's legacy is what Israel witnessed, and what they will carry into the land without him.

Joshua

1

Summary: *After Moses's death, God commissions Joshua to lead Israel across the Jordan, commanding him to be strong and courageous. Joshua orders the people to prepare provisions and reminds the Transjordan tribes of their commitment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase chazaq ve'emats ('be strong and courageous') appears three times in God's speech to Joshua (vv. 6, 7, 9) and once from the people back to Joshua (v. 18). The repetition is structural: courage is not assumed but commanded, and it is rooted in the promise of divine presence, not in military capability. The book's first word — 'after the death of Moses' — signals a permanent transition: the Torah is complete, and now comes the test of whether Israel can live by it.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase sefer haTorah hazze (v. 8, 'this book of the Law') is the first reference to the Torah as a written text that must be meditated upon. We rendered hagah (v. 8) as 'meditate' — the word implies murmuring or reciting aloud, not silent contemplation. The Hebrew concept of meditation is oral, not mental. The verb hitsliach (v. 8, 'prosper/succeed') links obedience to outcome in a way that the wisdom tradition will later complicate (Job, Ecclesiastes).*

Connections: *The commissioning echoes Deuteronomy 31:7-8, 23. The phrase 'every place the sole of your foot treads' (v. 3) quotes Deuteronomy 11:24. The Transjordan tribes' pledge (v. 16-18) will be tested in Joshua 22. The strong-and-courageous formula recurs in 1 Chronicles 22:13 and 28:20 for Solomon's temple-building.*

¹After the death of Moses the servant of the LORD, the LORD said to Joshua son of Nun, Moses's attendant: ²"Moses my servant is dead. Now rise up and cross this Jordan — you and all this people — into the land that I am giving to the Israelites. ³Every place where you set foot, I have given to you — just as I promised Moses. ⁴From the wilderness to this Lebanon, as far as the great river — the Euphrates — all the land of the Hittites, and to the Great Sea toward the setting sun: this will be your territory. ⁵No one will be able to stand against you all the days of your life. Just as I was with Moses, I will be with you. I will not let you down, and I will not abandon you. ⁶Be strong and courageous, because you will lead this people to inherit the land that I swore to their ancestors to give them. ⁷Only be strong and very courageous — careful to obey all the instruction that Moses my servant commanded you. Do not turn from it to the right or to the left, so that you may succeed wherever you go. ⁸This book of the instruction must never leave your lips — recite it day and night so that you are careful to do everything

written in it. Then you will make your path prosperous, and then you will succeed. ⁹Have I not commanded you? Be strong and courageous! Do not be terrified, and do not lose heart, for the LORD your God is with you wherever you go." ¹⁰Then Joshua gave orders to the officers of the people: ¹¹"Go through the camp and command the people: 'Prepare provisions for yourselves, because within three days you will be crossing this Jordan to go in and take possession of the land that the LORD your God is giving you to possess.'" ¹²To the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh, Joshua said: ¹³"Remember what Moses the servant of the LORD commanded you: 'The LORD your God is granting you rest and has given you this land.'" ¹⁴Your wives, your children, and your livestock may stay in the land that Moses gave you east of the Jordan, but you must cross over ahead of your brothers in battle formation — every fighting man — and help them, ¹⁵until the LORD grants your brothers rest just as he has granted you, and they too have taken possession of the land that the LORD your God is giving them. Then you may return to the land of your own possession and settle in it — the land that Moses the servant of the LORD gave you east of the Jordan, toward the sunrise." ¹⁶They answered Joshua, "Everything you have commanded us, we will do. Wherever you send us, we will go. ¹⁷Just as we obeyed Moses in everything, so we will obey you — if only the LORD your God is with you as he was with Moses. ¹⁸Anyone who defies your orders and does not obey your words — whatever you command — will be put to death. Only be strong and courageous!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *vayyehi acharei mot* ('and it was after the death of') is a standard Hebrew narrative transition, linking Joshua directly to the close of Deuteronomy. The book begins not with a new story but with the continuation of an unfinished one — the land promise remains unfulfilled at Moses's death.
1. The term *mesharet* ('attendant, minister') is distinct from *eved* ('servant, slave'). A *mesharet* serves in close personal proximity — Joshua was Moses's trusted aide and protégé, not a subordinate in a hierarchical chain. The same term describes Samuel's service to Eli (1 Samuel 2:11) and angelic service before God (Psalm 104:4). Moses is called *eved YHWH* ('servant of the LORD'), a title of covenant honor; Joshua is *mesharet Mosheh* ('attendant of Moses'), marking him as the apprentice now stepping into the master's role.
2. The declaration *Mosheh avdi met* ('Moses my servant is dead') is blunt and unsentimental — three words in Hebrew that close an era. God does not eulogize Moses; He announces the succession. The possessive *avdi* ('my servant') maintains the covenant honor even in the death notice.
2. The participle *noten* ('giving') is present tense — God is actively in the process of giving the land. This is not a past act recalled but an ongoing divine action unfolding in real time. The land is simultaneously gift (God gives it) and task (Israel must cross over and take it).
2. *Ha-yarden ha-zeh* ('this Jordan') with the demonstrative pronoun suggests proximity — Joshua can see the river. The Jordan is not an abstract boundary but a visible, physical barrier between promise and fulfillment.
3. This verse directly echoes Deuteronomy 11:24, where Moses relayed the same divine promise. The phrase *kaf raglekhem* ('the sole of your foot') creates a vivid image: the land becomes Israel's one footstep at a time. Possession requires physical presence — the gift must be walked into, not merely claimed from a distance.
3. The verb *n'tattiv* ('I have given it') is in the perfect tense — in God's reckoning, the gift is already completed before Israel takes a single step across the Jordan. The conquest narrative that fills the rest of Joshua is not Israel earning the land but Israel receiving what God has already granted. The tension between divine gift (perfect tense) and human action (crossing, fighting, settling) is central to the theology of the book.
4. The boundaries described here correspond to the land grant of Genesis 15:18-21, the covenant with Abraham. The four compass points define the maximum extent of the promise: wilderness (Negev) to the south, Lebanon to the north, the Euphrates to the east, and the Mediterranean ('the Great Sea,' *ha-yam ha-gadol*) to the west. Israel under Joshua never fully controlled this entire territory; the broadest historical extent was achieved under Solomon (1 Kings 4:21).
4. *Erets ha-chittim* ('land of the Hittites') likely refers broadly to the territory formerly dominated by the Hittite empire in Syria and southern Anatolia. By Joshua's era the Hittite empire had collapsed, but the geographic designation persisted. Some scholars suggest it may refer to a more localized Hittite population in Canaan.
4. *Gevul* ('territory, border, boundary') is a key term throughout Joshua's land allotment sections (chapters 13-19). Here it establishes the total scope of the divine land grant before the first battle is fought.
5. The verb *yityatsev* ('to take a stand, to position oneself against') is reflexive — no one will successfully mount a stand against Joshua. This is a military guarantee framed in personal terms: *kol yemei chayyekha* ('all the days of your life') makes it lifelong, not situational.
5. The parallel *ka'asher hayiti im Mosheh ehyeh immakh* ('as I was with Moses, I will be with you') establishes the theological basis for the Mosaic succession. What transfers is not Moses's skill or charisma but God's presence — the same divine companionship, not merely divine approval.

5. The pair *lo arpekha ve-lo e'ezvekka* ('I will not let you go and I will not abandon you') forms a double negative for emphasis. The verb *raphah* ('to let go, to slacken one's grip') and *azav* ('to abandon, to forsake') cover both gradual disengagement and sudden departure — God will neither slowly loosen His hold nor abruptly walk away. This pair is quoted in Hebrews 13:5 as a promise extended to all believers.
6. First occurrence of the keynote phrase *chazaq ve'ematz* ('be strong and courageous'). This identical command appears in Deuteronomy 31:7 (Moses to Joshua before all Israel), Deuteronomy 31:23 (God to Joshua directly), and now three times from God in this chapter (vv. 6, 7, 9), with a fourth from the people (v. 18). The fourfold repetition in chapter 1 alone signals the weight of the task and the depth of reassurance Joshua needs as he steps into Moses's role.
6. The verb *tanchil* (hiphil of *nachal*) means 'to cause to inherit, to apportion as an inheritance.' Joshua's function is not merely to conquer but to distribute — he gives the people their *nachalah*. This verb reappears throughout chapters 13-21 as the allotment process unfolds.
6. *Nishba'ti la'avotam* ('I swore to their ancestors') anchors the entire conquest in the patriarchal oath. The land promise rests on divine oath (*shevu'ah*), not merely divine intention — God has bound Himself by His own word. The ancestors in view are Abraham (Genesis 15:18-21), Isaac (Genesis 26:3), and Jacob (Genesis 28:13).
7. Second occurrence of *chazaq ve'ematz*, now intensified with *me'od* ('very, exceedingly'). The critical shift: verse 6 tied courage to the military task of land allotment; verse 7 ties courage to Torah obedience. In Joshua's theology, the harder task is not fighting Canaanites but maintaining covenant faithfulness. The *raq* ('only') at the beginning marks this as the essential condition.
7. The idiom *al tasur mimmennu yamin us'mol* ('do not turn from it right or left') pictures a traveler on a straight path — the Torah is the road, and any deviation leads away from God's purpose. This image recurs throughout Deuteronomy (5:32; 17:11, 20; 28:14) and appears to be a signature phrase of the Deuteronomic tradition.
7. The verb *taskil* (from the root *sakal*) carries both intellectual and practical dimensions — 'to have insight, to act wisely, to prosper.' It implies not just favorable outcomes but wisdom expressed through effective action. Success in Joshua is not luck or military genius but the natural consequence of Torah-shaped living.
8. This verse is programmatic for the entire book of Joshua and is foundational to the biblical concept of meditation. The verb *hagita* (from the root *hagah*) does not mean silent contemplation in the modern Western sense — it means to murmur, recite aloud, moan over. Torah meditation is vocal and physical: the text is meant to be spoken, rehearsed, and internalized through repetition on the lips. Psalm 1:2 uses nearly identical language (*u-v'torato yehgeh yomam va-lailah*, 'on his instruction he meditates day and night'), creating a direct literary connection between Joshua's commissioning and the ideal of the righteous person in the Psalter.
8. The phrase *sefer ha-torah ha-zeh* ('this book of the instruction') implies a written, codified text already in existence — Moses's teaching has been set down and can be read, recited, and obeyed. *Lo yamush mipikha* ('must not depart from your lips') reinforces the oral dimension: the Torah should be constantly spoken and discussed, not merely stored on a scroll.
8. The pair *tatsliacha* ('make prosperous,' from *tsalach*) and *taskil* ('succeed/act wisely,' from *sakal*) doubles the promise of verse 7. Both verbs link prosperity and wisdom exclusively to Torah faithfulness — military strategy is irrelevant apart from covenant obedience. This verse effectively makes the book of Joshua a test case for the Deuteronomic principle: obey and prosper, disobey and fail.
9. Third and final occurrence of *chazaq ve'ematz* from God, now framed as a rhetorical question: *halo tsivvitikha* ('Have I not commanded you?'). The question form transforms encouragement into obligation — courage is not a suggestion but a divine command. To give in to fear would be disobedience.
9. The pair *al ta'arots ve'al techat* uses two distinct Hebrew words for fear: *arats* denotes visceral dread or terror (the gut-level reaction to overwhelming threat), while *chatat* denotes discouragement, loss of nerve, being shattered in resolve. Together they address both the emotional and the volitional dimensions of fear — God commands Joshua to resist both the feeling and the collapse.
9. The closing clause *ki immekha YHWH Elohekha* ('for the LORD your God is with you') provides the sole ground for all three courage commands in this chapter. Joshua's strength does not come from his own capacity, his military experience, or the size of his forces — it comes entirely from the divine presence. The same theological logic will drive every victory and explain every defeat throughout the book.
10. The *shot'rim* ('officers') were administrative officials responsible for organization and communication, not military commanders (those are designated by other terms such as *sar* or *nasi*). The root *shatar* is likely related to writing or record-keeping. These officials appear in Exodus 5:6-19 as the Israelite foremen under Egyptian taskmasters and in Deuteronomy 20:5-9 as those who organize the militia before battle. Joshua immediately exercises the command authority God has just conferred — the narrative moves without delay from divine commissioning to human action.
11. The verb *la-reshet* (from *yarash*, 'to take possession, to dispossess') appears twice in this verse — as an infinitive of purpose ('to take possession') and in a possessive construction ('to possess'). This repetition underscores that crossing the Jordan is not mere relocation but a legal and theological act of claiming divinely granted territory. The verb *yarash* carries the dual sense of receiving an inheritance and displacing the current occupants — this duality runs throughout Joshua and the notes should not flatten it.
11. *Tseidah* ('provisions, food supplies') is practical preparation — dried food, bread, portable supplies for the march. The manna had not yet ceased (it continues until Joshua 5:12), but the text signals a transition from miraculous sustenance to ordinary human provision.

11. Sh'loshet yamim ('three days') sets the narrative clock and creates urgency. This three-day timeframe connects to the spy mission in chapter 2 and to the three-day preparation period before the Jordan crossing in 3:2. The number three carries its own narrative weight — a period of preparation before a decisive event.
12. These three groups had received their territorial allotment east of the Jordan under Moses (Numbers 32; Deuteronomy 3:12-20). Their situation is unique in Israel: they already possess their land but are obligated to cross the Jordan and fight alongside the other tribes before settling permanently. Joshua addresses them separately because their covenant obligation differs — they must fight for land that will not be theirs. This arrangement will remain a source of tension (see chapter 22, the altar controversy).
13. The command *zakhor* ('remember') carries theological weight throughout the Hebrew Bible — remembering is not merely cognitive recall but active covenant obligation. To 'remember' is to act on what one knows. Joshua calls these tribes to honor the terms of the agreement they made with Moses in Numbers 32.
13. *Meniach lakhem* ('granting you rest') uses the *hiphil* of *nuach*, a theologically loaded concept in Joshua. God gives *menukhah* ('rest') — settled, secure, peaceful possession of land, free from enemies and anxiety. This promise of rest runs through Joshua (cf. 21:44; 22:4; 23:1) and becomes a theological metaphor in Hebrews 3-4, where the 'rest' of the promised land points to a greater rest. The present participle *meniach* suggests the rest is ongoing — God is actively establishing it.
13. This verse echoes Deuteronomy 3:18-20, where Moses gave the original command. Joshua claims Mosaic authority: he does not issue new orders but enforces existing ones. His legitimacy rests on continuity with Moses.
14. The term *chamushim* is debated among scholars. It may mean 'armed, equipped for battle' or 'in ranks of five' (from *chamesh*, 'five'), indicating a specific military formation. The same word appears in Exodus 13:18 to describe Israel leaving Egypt, creating a deliberate structural parallel between the Red Sea crossing and the Jordan crossing — both are divine deliverances, both are ordered marches, and both lead to a new phase of covenant history.
14. *Gibborei ha-chayil* ('mighty men of valor, fighting men') is a technical term for the warrior class — men of demonstrated military capability and courage. The phrase recurs throughout Joshua, Judges, and Samuel as a standard designation for Israel's fighting force.
14. *Lifnei acheikhem* ('ahead of your brothers') is significant for two reasons: the eastern tribes must serve as the vanguard (not the rear guard), bearing the first risk; and the designation 'brothers' (*achim*) rather than 'the other tribes' underscores the unity of all Israel. They fight not for strangers but for family.
15. *Yaniach* (*hiphil* of *nuach*, 'grant rest') echoes verse 13 but extends the concept: the eastern tribes' own rest is incomplete until their brothers across the Jordan also possess rest. Rest in Joshua is communal, not individualistic — no tribe's settlement is secure while others remain landless. This theology of mutual obligation will be tested in chapter 22.
15. The phrase *mizrach ha-shemesh* ('toward the sunrise') is a vivid directional marker — literally 'the rising of the sun.' It is more poetic than the prosaic *qedmah* ('eastward') and places the reader in the landscape, facing the dawn.
15. *Yarash* appears twice more in this verse: *yarsh'u* ('they have taken possession') and *virishtem otah* ('you settle in it'). The noun *yerushah* ('possession') is a related form marking the eastern tribes' already-received grant. The repetition of possession language in various forms across this verse and verse 11 creates a drumbeat: the land is being given, the land must be possessed, the land will be settled. Divine grant and human action are inseparable.
16. The eastern tribes' response is total and unconditional: *kol asher tsivvitanu na'aseh* ('everything you commanded, we will do'). This language deliberately echoes Israel's covenant pledge at Sinai — *kol asher dibber YHWH na'aseh* ('everything the LORD has spoken, we will do,' Exodus 19:8; 24:3, 7). By placing this Sinai-like pledge on the lips of the eastern tribes in response to Joshua, the narrative positions Joshua's commissioning as a covenant-renewal moment. To obey Joshua is to uphold the Sinai covenant.
16. The pair *na'aseh* ('we will do') and *nelekh* ('we will go') covers both action and movement — they will obey his commands and deploy wherever he sends them. There is no negotiation, no reservation, no qualifying condition in this verse. The conditions come in verse 17.
17. The pledge *k'kol asher shama'nu el Mosheh* ('just as we obeyed Moses in everything') is historically ironic. Israel's track record of obedience to Moses was spectacularly uneven — they grumbled about water (Exodus 17:2-3), built the golden calf (Exodus 32), rejected the land at Kadesh-barnea (Numbers 14), and rebelled repeatedly throughout the wilderness period. The statement functions as aspirational commitment rather than accurate historical summary. The narrative does not comment on the irony, but a reader of the Pentateuch would notice it.
17. The conditional *raq yihyeh YHWH Elohekha immakh* ('if only the LORD your God is with you') mirrors God's own promise in verse 5. The people's condition for obedience is precisely what God has already guaranteed. There is an undertone of both loyalty and shrewd assessment: they will follow Joshua as they followed Moses, provided Joshua carries the same divine mandate. The legitimacy of leadership in Israel rests not on human authority but on divine presence.
18. The verb *yamreh* ('rebels, defies') from the root *marah* is the same verb used for Israel's rebellion against God and Moses in the wilderness (Numbers 20:10, 24; 27:14; Deuteronomy 1:26, 43; 9:23). By applying this covenant-rebellion term to disobedience against Joshua, the people effectively place him in the Mosaic succession: to defy Joshua's command is to rebel against the one God has appointed, which is functionally to rebel against God. This is a theological statement about authority, not merely a military code of discipline.

18. The death penalty for insubordination (yumatz, 'he will be put to death') echoes Deuteronomy 17:12, which prescribes death for defying the judge or priest who mediates God's decision. The severity reflects the nature of the moment — this is a sacred military campaign under divine mandate, not a democratic assembly.
18. Fourth and final occurrence of chazaq ve'ematz in this chapter, now spoken by the people to Joshua. The exhortation has come full circle: God to Joshua (vv. 6, 7, 9), the people to Joshua (v. 18). What began as divine command ends as communal encouragement — leader and people mutually reinforcing covenant courage. This structural inclusio frames the entire chapter as a commissioning ceremony.

2

Summary: *Joshua sends two spies into Jericho. Rahab the prostitute hides them, confesses that the LORD has given Israel the land, and negotiates protection for her family with a scarlet cord.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Rahab's confession (vv. 9-11) is a theological earthquake: a Canaanite prostitute articulates Israel's creed — 'the LORD your God is God in heaven above and on earth below.' She has heard what Israel's own generation doubted (Numbers 13-14). The scarlet cord (v. 18, tikvat chut hashani) may carry a secondary meaning: tikvah means both 'cord' and 'hope.' Rahab's lifeline is literally her hope.*

Translation Friction: *The verb vatitspenom (v. 4, 'she hid them') uses an unusual form that may suggest she had already hidden them before the king's messengers arrived. We rendered the sequence as the Hebrew presents it. Rahab's lie to the king's men (v. 4-5) raises an ethical question the text does not resolve — we noted the interpretive tension without resolving it, as the Hebrew narrator offers no moral comment.*

Connections: *Rahab enters the genealogy of Jesus (Matthew 1:5). Her faith is cited in Hebrews 11:31 and James 2:25. The spy narrative echoes Numbers 13 but with a different outcome. The scarlet cord resonates with the Passover blood on the doorposts (Exodus 12:7, 13) — both mark a household for preservation amid destruction.*

¹Joshua son of Nun secretly sent two men as scouts from Shittim, telling them, "Go, survey the land — especially Jericho." They went and entered the house of a prostitute named Rahab, and spent the night there. ²It was reported to the king of Jericho: "Israelite men have come here tonight to spy out the land." ³The king of Jericho sent word to Rahab: "Hand over the men who came to you — who entered your house — because they have come to spy out the entire land." ⁴But the woman had already taken the two men and hidden them. She said, "Yes, the men did come to me, but I did not know where they were from. ⁵At dark, when the gate was about to close, the men left. I do not know which direction they went. Go after them quickly — you can still catch them!" ⁶In fact, she had brought them up to the roof and hidden them under the stalks of flax that she had spread out on the rooftop. ⁷The pursuers chased after them on the road toward the Jordan, as far as the fording places. As soon as the pursuers had gone out, the gate was shut. ⁸Before they had fallen asleep, Rahab went up to them on the roof ⁹and said to the men, "I know that the LORD has given you the land, that the dread of you has fallen on us, and that all who live in this land are melting in fear before you. ¹⁰For we have heard how the LORD dried up the waters of the Sea of Reeds before you when you came out of Egypt, and what you did to the two Amorite kings east of the Jordan — Sihon and Og — whom you devoted to destruction. ¹¹When we heard this, our hearts sank and no one had any courage left because of you — for the LORD your God is God in the heavens above and on the earth below." ¹²Now then, I ask you — swear to me by the LORD, since I have shown you faithful love, that you will also show faithful love to my father's household. Give me a sure sign ¹³that you will spare my father, my mother, my brothers, my sisters, and everyone who belongs to them — and save our lives from death." ¹⁴The men said to her, "Our lives for yours — if you do not reveal our mission. When the LORD gives us the land, we will deal with you in faithful love and good faith." ¹⁵Then she lowered them by a rope through the window, because her house was built into the city wall — she lived within the wall itself. ¹⁶She told them, "Head for the hills so the pursuers do not find you. Hide there for three days until the pursuers have come back, and after that go on your way." ¹⁷The men said to her, "We will be released from this oath of yours that you made us swear ¹⁸unless, when we enter the land, you tie this scarlet cord in the window through which you lowered us. You must gather your father, your mother, your brothers, and all your father's household into the house with you. ¹⁹Anyone who goes out through the doors of your house into the

street — his blood will be on his own head, and we will be free of guilt. But anyone who is with you inside the house — his blood will be on our heads if a hand is laid on him. ²⁰And if you reveal our mission, we will be released from the oath you made us swear." ²¹She said, "Agreed — let it be as you say." Then she sent them off, and they left. And she tied the scarlet cord in the window. ²²They went into the hills and stayed there for three days until the pursuers had returned. The pursuers searched the entire road but found no trace of them. ²³Then the two men came back down from the hills, crossed over the Jordan, and reported to Joshua son of Nun everything that had happened to them. ²⁴They said to Joshua, "The LORD has certainly given the entire land into our hands — all who live in the land are melting in fear before us."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *meraggelim cheresh* ('scouts secretly') — the secrecy distinguishes this mission from the earlier, public spy mission of Numbers 13, which ended in national disaster. Joshua, who was one of the two faithful scouts in that earlier mission (Numbers 14:6-9), now sends his own men covertly. The narrative invites comparison: will this spy mission succeed where the last one failed?
1. *Zonah* ('prostitute') is unambiguous in Hebrew. Some later traditions, including the Aramaic Targum, attempted to soften this to 'innkeeper' (based on a secondary meaning of the root *zun*, 'to feed/provision'), but the Hebrew Bible consistently uses *zonah* for a prostitute. The text states Rahab's profession without moral commentary — her social marginality is precisely what makes her theological role so striking.
1. *Vayyishk'vu shammah* ('and they lay down there') — the verb *shakav* here means simply 'lodged, spent the night,' not a sexual euphemism. The context is espionage, not immorality. *Shittim* (ha-shittim, 'the acacias') was Israel's last encampment east of the Jordan (Numbers 25:1; 33:49).
2. The verb *lachpor* ('to dig, to search out, to spy') from the root *chapar* literally means to dig, used metaphorically for probing or investigating. It is more aggressive than the neutral *re'u* ('survey') that Joshua used in verse 1. The king's informant characterizes the mission as hostile espionage — the same activity, described by different parties, reveals different perspectives.
2. The rapid intelligence to the king indicates Jericho's surveillance was active — strangers were noticed quickly. This heightens the danger for the spies and the risk Rahab takes in sheltering them.
3. *Hotsi'i* ('bring out, hand over') is a feminine singular imperative — the king issues a direct command, not a request. Rahab now faces the choice that defines her: obey the king of her own city or protect agents of the God she has come to recognize.
3. The phrase *ha-ba'im eleikha* ('who came to you') may carry a sexual innuendo in context, as the verb *bo* can mean 'to come to' in an intimate sense. Whether the king intends this double meaning or it is simply the narrator's irony, the text does not resolve.
4. *Vattitspenno* ('and she hid him') uses a singular pronominal suffix despite two men being involved. This may reflect a textual variant, a collective singular, or an early copying error — some manuscripts read the plural form. The Septuagint renders it as plural.
4. Rahab's deception is presented without moral commentary by the narrator. She confirms the men's visit but claims ignorance of their origin. The Hebrew Bible records lies by significant figures (Abraham in Genesis 12:13, 20:2; Jacob in Genesis 27:19) without explicit editorial judgment, leaving the ethical assessment to the reader. Later biblical tradition praises Rahab for her faith expressed through harboring the spies (Hebrews 11:31; James 2:25) while remaining silent on the deception itself.
5. Rahab's lie is tactically sophisticated. She provides a plausible timeline (they left at nightfall before the gate closed), a convincing gap in her knowledge (she does not know their direction), and an urgent directive (*ridfu maher*, 'pursue quickly'). The urgency she manufactures sends the king's men out of the city and buys time for the spies on her roof.
5. *Ha-sha'ar lisgor ba-choshekh* ('the gate about to close at dark') — ancient walled cities routinely closed their gates at nightfall for security. Rahab exploits this known practice to make her cover story plausible. The detail also sets up the narrative irony of verse 7: the gate closes behind the pursuers, locking them out and the spies safely in.
6. *Pishte ha-ets* ('stalks of flax,' literally 'flax of the tree/wood') refers to flax in its raw, woody state before processing. Flax was harvested in spring and laid out on flat rooftops to dry — a common agricultural practice in the ancient Near East. This incidental detail confirms the spring harvest season, consistent with the Passover timing in Joshua 5:10.
6. The flax on Rahab's roof suggests she was involved in textile production (flax is processed into linen). Some scholars see this as evidence that her 'house' may have functioned partly as a workshop, which could have provided a plausible reason for strangers to visit — useful cover for the spies.
7. *Ha-ma'b'rot* ('the fording places, the crossing points') were the shallow stretches where the Jordan could be crossed on foot — the obvious route for Israelite spies returning to camp. The pursuit logic is sound but misdirected. Rahab has sent the king's men east toward the river while the spies remain safely on her roof, inside the locked city.
7. The gate shutting (*ha-sha'ar sag'ru*) behind the pursuers creates dramatic irony: the city that should be protecting itself from Israelite agents has just locked itself in with them. Jericho's own security measures now serve Rahab's plan.
8. *Terem yishkavun* ('before they lay down') — the archaic verbal suffix *-un* appears in several forms in Joshua and may reflect older poetic or narrative style. The timing is narratively significant: Rahab speaks before the men sleep, indicating urgency and deliberation. What she is about to say in verses

9-13 is not improvised — it is a carefully prepared theological statement and a negotiated covenant.

9. Rahab's confession opens with *yada'ti ki natan YHWH lakhem et ha-arets* ('I know that the LORD has given you the land') — a statement of extraordinary theological weight from a Canaanite. She uses the divine name YHWH (not a Canaanite deity name), she recognizes the divine gift of the land (echoing God's own words in 1:2-3), and she places herself among the already-defeated before any battle has been fought. This is a gentile's theology of the conquest, and it will be echoed almost verbatim by the spies in their report to Joshua (v. 24).
9. *Naflah eimatkhem aleinu* ('the dread of you has fallen on us') echoes the language of the Song of the Sea in Exodus 15:16 (*tipol alehem eimatah va-fachad*, 'dread and fear shall fall on them'). Rahab is confirming that the exodus accomplished precisely what that victory song predicted — the terror of YHWH's acts has reached Canaan's interior.
9. *Namogu* ('they are melting') — the verb *mug* means to melt, to dissolve, to lose all structural integrity. It describes the total collapse of morale across Canaan. The conquest begins not with Israelite military strength but with the prior collapse of Canaanite resolve.
10. *Yam Suf* ('Sea of Reeds') — rendered as 'Sea of Reeds' rather than the traditional 'Red Sea.' The Hebrew *suf* means 'reeds, rushes,' not 'red.' The identification with the modern Red Sea comes through the Greek Septuagint (*erythra thalassa*). The exact location of the crossing remains debated among scholars.
10. *Hecharamtem otam* ('you devoted them to destruction') — this is the first appearance of the root *ch-r-m* (*cherem*) in Joshua, and remarkably it comes not from an Israelite narrator but from a Canaanite witness. Rahab knows what *cherem* means — total, sacred destruction. The concept was not unique to Israel; similar practices of dedicating enemies entirely to a deity are attested in Moabite and other ancient Near Eastern sources (notably the Mesha Stele).
10. Rahab's evidence cites two categories of divine action: power over nature (drying up the sea) and power in war (defeating Sihon and Og). These are precisely the two types of evidence that would carry weight in the ancient Near Eastern worldview, where a deity's power was measured by visible acts in the world.
11. *Vayyimmas l'avenu* ('our hearts melted') — the verb *masas* describes complete dissolution. Combined with *lo qamah od ruach be'ish* ('no spirit/courage rose in anyone'), Rahab testifies to the total psychological defeat of Jericho before any siege begins. The military conquest is preceded by — and arguably made possible by — this internal collapse of will.
11. Rahab's confession reaches its theological climax: *YHWH Eloheikhem hu Elohim bashamayim mimma'al ve'al ha-arets mittachat* ('the LORD your God is God in the heavens above and on the earth below'). This is a confession of universal divine sovereignty — not merely that YHWH is powerful, but that He is God, period. The language echoes Deuteronomy 4:39, Moses's own formulation. A Canaanite prostitute has arrived at the core confession of Israelite faith — a theological achievement that Israel itself repeatedly failed to sustain.
11. The narrative significance is profound: God's reputation precedes His army. The conquest is already accomplished in the hearts of Canaan's people before Israel crosses the Jordan. Rahab represents a Canaanite who draws the right conclusion from the evidence — faith, in the form of active response to what she has heard about YHWH.
12. *Chesed* appears twice in this verse — *asiti immakhem chesed* ('I have done chesed with you') and *va'asitem gam attem im beit avi chesed* ('you also will do chesed with my father's house'). This is covenantal reciprocity: Rahab has demonstrated covenant loyalty by protecting the spies, and she now claims the right to receive it in return. The term *chesed* in the mouth of a Canaanite is theologically remarkable — she uses Israel's own covenant vocabulary to bind Israel to her.
12. *Hishav'u na li ba-YHWH* ('swear to me by the LORD') — Rahab demands an oath in YHWH's name, not in the name of any Canaanite deity. She binds the spies by the very God whose sovereignty she has just confessed. The oath by YHWH makes the agreement a sacred commitment, not merely a tactical bargain.
12. *Ot emet* ('a sign of truth/faithfulness, a sure sign') — Rahab wants something tangible and verifiable, not a verbal promise alone. This will be answered in verse 18 with the scarlet cord. The word *emet* ('truth, reliability') demands a sign that can be trusted — one that will actually function when the moment comes.
13. *V'hachayitem* ('and you will keep alive') — the *hiphil* of *chayah* means to cause to live, to preserve life. In a context where *cherem* (sacred destruction) is the expected fate of Jericho's population, Rahab negotiates an exception for her entire family. The scope is precisely defined: father, mother, brothers, sisters, and all who belong to them. When Jericho falls in chapter 6:23, this exact list will be honored.
13. *V'hitsaltem et nafshoteinu mimmavet* ('and rescue our lives from death') — *nephesh* here means the living self, the person at risk of dying. Rahab is not asking for property rights, citizenship, or status within Israel — she is asking simply to survive. The minimalism of the request underscores its urgency.
14. *Nafshenu tachteikhem lamut* ('our lives in place of yours to the death') — the spies pledge their own lives as surety for Rahab's family. The preposition *tachat* ('in place of, instead of') creates a substitutionary pledge: if they fail to protect her, they forfeit their own lives. This is covenant-binding language of the most serious kind.
14. *Chesed ve'emet* ('faithful love and good faith') — the pairing of *chesed* with *emet* is the fullest expression of covenant reliability in Hebrew. *Emet* means truth, faithfulness, reliability — it guarantees that the *chesed* will actually be carried out. This paired phrase appears in God's self-revelation at Sinai (Exodus 34:6, *rav chesed ve'emet*, 'abounding in faithful love and truth') and in human covenant pledges (Genesis 24:49; 47:29; 2 Samuel 2:6). The spies respond to Rahab's covenant language with equally binding covenant language.

14. The condition *im lo taggidu et d'varenu zeh* ('if you do not reveal our mission') limits Rahab's obligation to secrecy — she must keep quiet, not take further active steps. The oath is conditional and bilateral: both parties have obligations.
15. *Ba-chevel be'ad ha-challon* ('by a rope through the window') — the same method of escape used by Michal for David (1 Samuel 19:12) and referenced for Paul (Acts 9:25; 2 Corinthians 11:33). The window in the outer wall is both Rahab's vulnerability and her strategic advantage — it faces outside the city, providing the only route of escape that bypasses the sealed gate.
15. *Beitah b'qir ha-chomah u-va-chomah hi yoshevet* ('her house was in the wall of the wall and in the wall she was dwelling') — archaeological evidence from Jericho and other Canaanite cities confirms that houses were built into casemate walls, with the outer fortification wall serving as one wall of the house. Rahab's position is literally marginal — on the boundary between inside and outside the city — which mirrors her social position and anticipates her theological position: she is a Canaanite who belongs to Israel.
16. *Ha-harah* ('toward the hill country') — the limestone hills west of Jericho, riddled with caves and rocky terrain ideal for concealment. Rahab sends the spies in the opposite direction from the pursuers, who have gone east toward the Jordan fording places. Her tactical thinking throughout this episode is consistently sharp.
16. *Sh'loshet yamim* ('three days') parallels the three-day preparation period announced in 1:11. The narrative creates parallel countdowns that will converge: three days for the camp to prepare, three days for the spies to return. Rahab's intimate knowledge of the pursuit timetable — she knows the pursuers will return in three days — further demonstrates her intelligence and reliability as an ally.
17. *N'qiyim anachnu* ('we are free/innocent/released') — the spies now stipulate the conditions under which their oath remains binding. The legal precision is striking: even while dangling from a rope outside a city wall, the terms of the covenant agreement must be clearly defined. The oath is attributed to Rahab (*mishvu'atekh*, 'your oath') — she initiated it in verse 12, and the spies now set its boundaries.
18. *Tiqvat chut ha-shani* ('cord of scarlet thread') — the word *tiqvah* means both 'cord, rope' and 'hope' (from the root *qavah*, 'to wait, to hope'). The wordplay may be intentional: the scarlet cord is literally Rahab's hope. The scarlet color (*shani*) has prompted extensive typological commentary connecting it to the blood of the Passover lamb on the doorposts (Exodus 12:7, 13). Whether the narrator intends this parallel or it emerges naturally from the literary pattern, the structural similarity is striking: a visible marker on the dwelling, protection for everyone inside, destruction for those outside.
18. *Ta'asfi eleikha ha-baitah* ('gather to yourself into the house') — Rahab becomes the center of her family's salvation. Her house, built into the wall of a doomed city, becomes a sanctuary within the zone of destruction. The Passover parallel is reinforced: just as each Israelite household gathered inside behind the blood-marked door in Egypt, so Rahab's household must gather inside behind the scarlet-marked window in Jericho.
19. *Damo v'rosho* ('his blood on his head') is a standard biblical formula assigning legal and moral responsibility for a death (cf. 2 Samuel 1:16; 1 Kings 2:37; Ezekiel 33:4). The threshold of the door defines the boundary of protection: inside the house means protected, outside means exposed. This is structurally identical to the Passover logic of Exodus 12:22-23, where the blood on the doorframe marked the boundary between safety and judgment.
19. *Im yad tihyeh bo* ('if a hand is laid upon him') — the spies accept personal, bloodguilt-level responsibility for any harm that comes to someone inside Rahab's house. The commitment is not abstract — they put their own lives at stake. The oath is precisely bilateral: Rahab's obligations are the cord, the gathering of family, and silence; the spies' obligation is physical protection of everyone under her roof.
20. This final condition restates the secrecy requirement from verse 14 as a formal termination clause. The covenant between Rahab and the spies has three binding conditions: (1) the scarlet cord in the window (v. 18), (2) the family gathered inside the house (v. 18), and (3) silence about the mission (vv. 14, 20). Failure in any one releases the spies from the oath. The legal structure is clear, bilateral, and conditional — this is treaty language, not an informal promise.
21. *K'divreikhem ken hu* ('according to your words, so it is') — Rahab accepts every condition without negotiation or modification. Her immediate action — tying the cord in the window before the invasion, before she knows when or whether it will come — demonstrates the same faith that the New Testament writers will celebrate: she acts on what she believes to be true about YHWH (Hebrews 11:31; James 2:25).
21. The narrator places *vattiqshor et tiqvah ha-shani ba-challon* ('she tied the scarlet cord in the window') as the final image of the scene. This structural emphasis gives the act of tying the cord a weight beyond the practical — it is Rahab's public, irreversible declaration. The cord in the window faces outward, visible to anyone approaching the wall. She has broken with Jericho before Jericho falls.
22. The spies follow Rahab's instructions exactly — three days in the hills, then departure. The narrative confirms her reliability: her plan works. The pursuers searched *b'kol ha-derekh* ('along the entire road') — the Jordan road — but found nothing, because the spies were never on that road. Rahab's misdirection was complete.
22. The three-day wait completes the parallel timeline begun in 1:11. The preparation for crossing and the spy mission converge — Joshua now has both a prepared people and actionable intelligence.
23. *Et kol ha-mots'ot otam* ('everything that had found/befallen them') — the root *matsa* ('to find') in the feminine plural participle describes events that 'found' them, a vivid Hebrew idiom for things that happened. Their report would have included Rahab's theological confession, the terms of the agreement, the state of Jericho's morale, and the practical details of the city's defenses — intelligence of both military and theological value.

23. The successful return of these two spies contrasts sharply with the catastrophic spy mission of Numbers 13-14, where ten of twelve scouts brought a faithless report that triggered forty years of wandering. That mission failed because the spies saw only obstacles; this mission succeeds because the spies receive testimony of what God has already accomplished in the hearts of the enemy.
24. The spies' report echoes Rahab's own words almost verbatim: *natan YHWH b'yadenu et kol ha-arets* ('the LORD has given the whole land into our hands') mirrors her *yada'ti ki natan YHWH lakhem et ha-arets* ('I know the LORD has given you the land') from verse 9. The military intelligence they deliver to Joshua is essentially Rahab's theology — a Canaanite woman's confession of YHWH's sovereignty becomes the strategic foundation for Israel's campaign.
24. *Namogu kol yosh'vei ha-arets mippanenu* ('all the inhabitants of the land are melting before us') repeats Rahab's testimony from verse 9 with one shift: *mippeneikhem* ('before you') becomes *mippanenu* ('before us'). The spies have internalized Rahab's perspective — they now own her theological assessment as their own.
24. The contrast with Numbers 13:31-33 is total and deliberate. Those spies said 'we are not able to go up against this people, for they are stronger than we' (lo nukhal, Numbers 13:31); these spies say 'the LORD has given the land into our hands.' The difference is not in the military situation but in the theological lens. These spies, informed by a Canaanite woman's faith, see what the earlier generation's spies refused to see: God has already acted.

3

Summary: *The priests carry the ark of the covenant into the Jordan River at flood stage, and the waters stop flowing. All Israel crosses on dry ground, echoing the Red Sea crossing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Jordan crossing is a deliberate replay of the Exodus: dry ground (charavah, the same word as Exodus 14:21), priests leading with the ark (replacing Moses's staff), and the entire nation passing through divided water. But this generation does what their parents refused to do — they actually enter the land. The timing is precise: the Jordan is at flood stage during harvest (v. 15), making the miracle maximally visible and minimally natural.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase me'adam ha'ir Adam (v. 16) is textually difficult: 'from Adam, the city that is beside Zarethan.' The waters piled up far upstream, implying a massive stoppage. The city Adam is otherwise unknown. We rendered the geography as given and noted the uncertainty. The ark is called 'the ark of the covenant of the Lord of all the earth' (v. 11) — the title adon kol ha'arets makes a universal claim at the moment of local entry.*

Connections: *The dry-ground crossing echoes Exodus 14:21-22 and is celebrated in Psalm 114:3-5. The twelve-stone memorial (ch. 4) mirrors the twelve pillars of Exodus 24:4. Elijah and Elisha will cross this same Jordan on dry ground (2 Kings 2:8, 14), forming a prophetic bookend.*

1Joshua rose early in the morning, and they set out from Shittim and came to the Jordan — he and all the Israelites — and camped there before crossing. 2At the end of three days, the officers went through the camp 3and commanded the people: "When you see the ark of the covenant of the LORD your God, with the Levitical priests carrying it, then set out from where you are and follow it. 4But keep a distance between yourselves and it — about two thousand cubits — do not come near it, so that you can see the way you are to go. For you have never traveled this way before." 5Joshua told the people, "Consecrate yourselves, for tomorrow the LORD will do wonders among you." 6Then Joshua said to the priests, "Lift up the ark of the covenant and cross ahead of the people." So they lifted the ark of the covenant and went ahead of the people. 7The LORD said to Joshua, "Today I will begin to exalt you in the sight of all Israel, so that they will know that just as I was with Moses, I will be with you. 8Command the priests who carry the ark of the covenant: 'When you reach the edge of the Jordan's waters, stand still in the Jordan.'" 9Then Joshua said to the Israelites, "Come here and listen to the words of the LORD your God. 10Joshua said, "By this you will know that the living God is among you and that he will certainly dispossess before you the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Hivites, the Perizzites, the Girgashites, the Amorites, and the Jebusites: 11Look — the ark of the covenant of the Lord of all the earth is about to cross ahead of you into the Jordan. 12Now then, choose twelve men from the tribes of Israel — one man from each tribe." 13When the soles of the feet of the priests carrying the ark of the LORD — the Lord of all the earth — come to rest in the waters of the Jordan, the waters of the Jordan will be cut off — the waters flowing down from above — and will stand up in a single mass. 14When the people set out from their tents to cross the Jordan, with

the priests carrying the ark of the covenant ahead of the people — ¹⁵and when those carrying the ark reached the Jordan, and the feet of the priests carrying the ark were dipped in the edge of the water — now the Jordan overflows all its banks throughout the harvest season — ¹⁶the waters flowing from upstream stood still — they rose up in a single mass far away at Adam, the city near Zarethan — while the waters flowing down toward the Sea of the Arabah (the Salt Sea) were completely cut off. And the people crossed over opposite Jericho. ¹⁷The priests carrying the ark of the covenant of the LORD stood firm on dry ground in the middle of the Jordan while all Israel crossed on dry ground, until the entire nation had finished crossing the Jordan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyashkem Yehoshua ba-boqer ('Joshua rose early in the morning') — the verb hashkim ('to rise early') signals urgency and decisiveness throughout the Hebrew Bible; it frequently introduces moments of divine obedience or military action (cf. Abraham in Genesis 22:3, Moses in Exodus 24:4). Joshua acts at first light.
1. The movement from Shittim to the Jordan covers approximately seven miles across the plains of Moab. Vayyalinu sham ('they camped there') — the entire nation pauses at the river's edge. The narrative builds suspense: they arrive but do not cross. Three days of preparation follow (v. 2).
2. Miqtseh sh'loshet yamim ('at the end of three days') connects to the three-day timeline established in 1:11 and the three-day spy mission of chapter 2. All the narrative threads converge: the spies have returned, the people have prepared, and the moment of crossing has arrived.
2. The shot'rim ('officers') from 1:10 now execute the orders Joshua gave them — the chain of command established in chapter 1 is functioning.
3. Aron berit YHWH Eloheikhem ('the ark of the covenant of the LORD your God') — the ark appears for the first time in Joshua and will dominate chapters 3-6. It is not merely a religious artifact but the visible symbol of God's presence and covenant with Israel. The ark leads the crossing, not Joshua — the theological point is that God goes first into the Jordan, and Israel follows.
3. Ha-kohanim ha-leviyyim ('the Levitical priests,' literally 'the priests, the Levites') — this Deuteronomic designation (cf. Deuteronomy 17:9, 18; 18:1) identifies the priests as members of the tribe of Levi who serve at the ark. They are the authorized bearers of God's covenant presence.
4. K'alpayim ammah ba-middah ('about two thousand cubits by measure') — approximately 3,000 feet or 900 meters. This distance serves dual purposes: it maintains the sacred reverence due to the ark (no one may approach God's presence casually), and it ensures the entire camp can see the ark from a distance and follow its lead through unfamiliar territory.
4. Lo avartem ba-derekh mit'mol shilshom ('you have not passed this way before,' literally 'yesterday or the day before') — the phrase is both practical (they do not know the terrain) and theologically loaded. Israel is entering something genuinely unprecedented. The wilderness wandering is over; a new era begins with this crossing. The ark must lead because no human guide knows this road.
5. Hitqaddashu ('consecrate yourselves') — the hitpa'el of qadash, meaning to set oneself apart, to make oneself ritually ready. This typically involved washing garments, abstaining from sexual contact, and other purification rituals (cf. Exodus 19:10-15 before Sinai). The parallel to Sinai is deliberate: just as Israel consecrated before encountering God at the mountain, they now consecrate before encountering God at the river.
5. Nifla'ot ('wonders, extraordinary things') — from the root pala, meaning acts that surpass normal human capacity. The same term describes God's acts in Egypt (Exodus 3:20; 34:10). Joshua announces that what is about to happen is not military strategy but divine intervention on the scale of the exodus.
6. The command-execution pattern (Joshua commands, the priests obey immediately) mirrors the pattern of chapter 1: God commands Joshua, Joshua commands the officers, the officers obey. The chain of authority flows from God through Joshua to the priests. No one deliberates or questions — the obedience is instant.
6. Ivru lifnei ha-am ('cross ahead of the people') — the ark and its bearers go first. This is not a rearguard religious decoration; the ark leads the column into the water. The structural parallel to the pillar of cloud and fire leading Israel out of Egypt (Exodus 13:21-22) is unmistakable: God's visible presence goes first into danger.
7. Achel gadd'lkha ('I will begin to make you great/exalt you') — God explicitly ties Joshua's authority to the miracle that is about to happen. The Jordan crossing is Joshua's credentialing event, just as the Red Sea crossing credentialed Moses (Exodus 14:31: 'they believed in the LORD and in Moses his servant'). Leadership legitimacy in Israel comes through visible divine endorsement, not human appointment.
7. Ka'asher hayiti im Mosheh ehveh immakh ('as I was with Moses, I will be with you') — this exact phrase from 1:5 now receives public demonstration. What God promised privately to Joshua in chapter 1, He now makes visible to the entire nation. The Jordan crossing is the public proof of the private commission.
8. Ba-yarden ta'amodu ('in the Jordan you shall stand') — the priests must step into the river and stop. They do not walk through; they stand in it while the nation crosses. This requires extraordinary trust: they enter the water before anything happens, standing in a flooding river (v. 15) with only a divine promise that the waters will stop. The obedience precedes the miracle.

8. The instruction echoes the Sinai pattern where Moses had to act before God intervened (lifting his staff over the sea, Exodus 14:16). In the Joshua narrative, the priests fill Moses's role — they are the human agents who step into the impossible before God makes it possible.
9. *Goshu hennah v'shim'u* ('draw near and listen') — Joshua summons the people to hear divine speech, positioning himself as the mediator of God's word. This is a prophetic and Mosaic role: Joshua speaks God's words, not his own. The phrase *divrei YHWH Eloheikhem* ('the words of the LORD your God') marks what follows (vv. 10-13) as divine oracle delivered through human voice.
10. *El chai* ('the living God') — a powerful epithet distinguishing YHWH from the lifeless idols of Canaan. The claim is not merely that God exists but that He is alive — active, present, and intervening in real time. The Jordan crossing will be the proof: a living God does living things.
10. *Horesh yorish* ('he will certainly dispossess') — an infinitive absolute construction intensifying the verb *yarash*: God will absolutely, without fail, drive out the current inhabitants. The seven nations listed form the standard catalogue of Canaan's peoples (cf. Deuteronomy 7:1), representing the totality of the opposition. The theological claim is that the Jordan miracle is not an end in itself but a guarantee of what follows — if God can stop a river, He can dispossess nations.
10. *B'qirb'khem* ('among you, in your midst') — God is not acting from a distance. He is present within the camp, among the people. The ark in their midst is the visible sign of this indwelling presence.
11. *Adon kol ha-arets* ('the Lord of all the earth') — a title of universal sovereignty. This is not merely the God of Israel but the ruler of all territory, including Canaan. The title appears at this moment because the Jordan crossing stakes a claim: the God crossing this river owns both banks. The Canaanite deities have no jurisdiction because YHWH is *Adon kol ha-arets*.
11. The phrase *hinneh aron ha-berit* ('look, the ark of the covenant') draws the eye — Joshua directs the people's attention to the ark as visible proof that God Himself is going first into the water. The ark 'crosses ahead' (over *lifneikhem*) — God enters the danger before Israel does.
12. *Sh'nei asar ish* ('twelve men') — one from each tribe, anticipating the memorial stones in chapter 4. The instruction is given before the crossing, though its purpose (the stone memorial) is not explained until afterward (4:2-7). The twelve-man detail reinforces the unity of all Israel: every tribe is represented in this moment, every tribe will carry a stone, and every tribe will share in the memory of what God does here.
13. *K'noach kappot raglei ha-kohanim* ('when the soles of the feet of the priests rest') — the same phrase *kaf regel* ('sole of the foot') from 1:3, where God promised 'every place the sole of your foot treads.' The first 'footprint' of possession is not on Canaanite soil but in the Jordan's waters. The priests' feet must touch the water before the miracle begins — faith precedes sight.
13. *Yikkaretun ha-mayim* ('the waters will be cut off') — the verb *karat* ('to cut') is the same root used for 'cutting' a covenant (*karat berit*). The linguistic echo is likely coincidental but theologically resonant: the waters are 'cut' as Israel crosses into covenant fulfillment.
13. *Ned echad* ('a single heap/mass') — the waters will pile up as a single standing wall. This echoes Exodus 15:8 (*nits'vu kh'mo ned*, 'they stood up like a heap') from the Song of the Sea. The Jordan crossing deliberately mirrors the Red Sea crossing — the same God performs the same kind of act for the next generation.
14. The narrative shifts from speech to action. *Bin'so'a ha-am me'ohalehem* ('when the people set out from their tents') marks the beginning of the crossing sequence. The sentence structure (a long protasis) builds suspense — the narrator delays the main clause, piling up details about the people, the priests, and the ark before describing what happens when they reach the water.
15. *V'raglei ha-kohanim nitb'lu biqtseh ha-mayim* ('the feet of the priests were dipped in the edge of the water') — the verb *taval* ('to dip') describes the first contact of skin and water. The miracle begins at the moment of touch — not before, not from a safe distance. The priests stepped into a flooding river on nothing but a promise.
15. *V'ha-yarden male al kol g'dotav kol y'mei qatsir* ('the Jordan was full over all its banks all the days of harvest') — this parenthetical note is devastating understatement. The narrator pauses to inform the reader that this was not a shallow, wadeable stream. The Jordan at spring harvest (March-April, when snowmelt from Mount Hermon swells the river) was at maximum flood stage, overflowing its banks. God did not arrange easy conditions for this miracle — He arranged the hardest possible conditions. The crossing occurs at precisely the moment when the river is most impassable.
16. *Qamu ned echad* ('they rose up in a single heap/mass') — the promised sign from verse 13 is fulfilled exactly. The waters do not merely stop; they pile up into a standing wall. The visual echo of the Red Sea (Exodus 15:8) is now a lived reality for the new generation.
16. *Harcheq me'od be-Adam ha-ir asher mitsad Tsaretan* ('far away at Adam, the city near Zarethan') — the city of Adam is located approximately 18 miles (30 km) north of the crossing point near Jericho, at the confluence of the Jabbok and Jordan rivers. The waters backed up for this extraordinary distance, indicating a massive blockage. Some scholars have noted that earthquake-induced mudslides at the narrow clay bluffs near Adam have historically dammed the Jordan (recorded in 1267 CE and 1927 CE), though the text presents this as a divinely timed act, not a natural coincidence.
16. *Yam ha-Aravah yam ha-melach* ('the Sea of the Arabah, the Salt Sea') — the Dead Sea, identified by two names. The downstream waters drained away completely (*tammu nikretu*, 'were finished, were cut off'), leaving dry ground for the crossing.
16. *Ha-am avru neged Yericho* ('the people crossed opposite Jericho') — the crossing point faces Jericho directly. The first Canaanite city to see Israel emerge from the Jordan is the first city that will fall.

17. Be-charavah ('on dry ground') — the same word used for the dry ground through the Red Sea (Exodus 14:21, charavah). The linguistic echo confirms the parallel: what God did for the exodus generation at the sea, He now does for the conquest generation at the river. The two crossings form bookends of the wilderness period.
17. Hakhen ('standing firm, prepared, established') — the priests do not waver. They stand motionless in the center of the riverbed, the ark on their shoulders, while an entire nation files past them on either side. The image is iconic: God's presence (the ark) holds back the waters while God's people walk through.
17. Kol ha-goy ('the entire nation') — the use of goy ('nation') rather than am ('people') or b'nei Yisrael ('Israelites') may emphasize the collective, political identity of Israel at this moment. They enter Canaan not as refugees or wanderers but as a nation taking possession of its territory.

4

Summary: *Joshua commands twelve men to take stones from the Jordan's dry bed and set up a memorial at Gilgal. A second set of stones is placed where the priests stood. The crossing is completed and Israel camps at Gilgal.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The memorial stones serve one purpose: to provoke children's questions. 'When your children ask in time to come, What do these stones mean to you?' (v. 6) — the entire monument exists for the next generation's catechetical moment. Israel's theology is transmitted not through abstract instruction but through objects that demand explanation. The phrase 'on dry ground' (bayyabbashah, v. 22) explicitly connects this crossing to the Red Sea, making the Jordan a second exodus.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the twelve stones taken from the riverbed (v. 3) and the twelve stones Joshua set up 'in the midst of the Jordan' (v. 9) is ambiguous — are there two sets of monuments or one? We rendered both references as the text presents them and noted the interpretive options. The verb yekareton (v. 7, 'were cut off') uses the same root as karat ('to cut a covenant'), subtly connecting the parted waters to covenant theology.*

Connections: *The memorial-stone catechism echoes the Passover question in Exodus 12:26 and the firstfruits confession in Deuteronomy 26:5-9. Gilgal becomes a major cultic site through Judges and Samuel (Judges 2:1, 1 Samuel 11:15). The 'forty thousand' armed men (v. 13) fulfills the Transjordan tribes' pledge in 1:12-18.*

¹When the entire nation had finished crossing the Jordan, the LORD said to Joshua: ²"Select twelve men from the people — one man from each tribe — ³and command them: 'Pick up twelve stones from right here in the middle of the Jordan, from the exact spot where the priests' feet stood firm, carry them across with you, and set them down at the place where you camp tonight.'" ⁴So Joshua summoned the twelve men he had designated from the Israelites — one man from each tribe — ⁵and said to them, "Go ahead of the ark of the LORD your God into the middle of the Jordan. Each of you lift a stone onto your shoulder — one for each of the tribes of Israel — ⁶so that this will serve as a sign among you. When your children ask in the future, 'What do these stones mean to you?' ⁷you will tell them, 'The waters of the Jordan were cut off before the ark of the covenant of the LORD. When it crossed the Jordan, the Jordan's waters were cut off.' These stones will be a memorial for the Israelites for all time." ⁸The Israelites did exactly as Joshua commanded. They lifted twelve stones from the middle of the Jordan, as the LORD had told Joshua — one for each of the tribes of Israel — carried them across to the camp, and set them down there. ⁹Joshua also set up twelve stones in the middle of the Jordan, at the exact spot where the feet of the priests carrying the ark of the covenant had stood. They are there to this day. ¹⁰The priests carrying the ark stood in the middle of the Jordan until everything was completed that the LORD had commanded Joshua to tell the people — in keeping with everything Moses had commanded Joshua. And the people hurried across. ¹¹When all the people had finished crossing, the ark of the LORD crossed over, with the priests, back to the head of the people. ¹²The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh crossed over in battle formation ahead of the other Israelites, as Moses had instructed them. ¹³About forty thousand armed for war crossed over before the LORD to the plains of Jericho, ready for battle. ¹⁴On that day the LORD exalted Joshua in the sight of all Israel, and they revered him as they had revered Moses, for the rest of his life. ¹⁵The LORD said to Joshua: ¹⁶"Command the priests carrying the ark of the testimony to come up out of the Jordan." ¹⁷So Joshua

commanded the priests, "Come up out of the Jordan." ¹⁸When the priests carrying the ark of the covenant of the LORD came up from the middle of the Jordan, the moment the soles of the priests' feet touched dry ground, the waters of the Jordan returned to their place and flowed over all its banks as before. ¹⁹The people came up from the Jordan on the tenth day of the first month and camped at Gilgal on the eastern edge of Jericho's territory. ²⁰And the twelve stones they had taken from the Jordan, Joshua set up at Gilgal. ²¹He said to the Israelites, "When your children ask their parents in the future, 'What are these stones?' ²²you will make known to your children: 'Israel crossed this Jordan on dry ground.' ²³For the LORD your God dried up the waters of the Jordan before you until you had crossed, just as the LORD your God did to the Sea of Reeds, which he dried up before us until we had crossed — ²⁴so that all the peoples of the earth may know that the hand of the LORD is mighty, and so that you may revere the LORD your God always."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Tammul kol ha-goy la'avor ('the entire nation had finished crossing') — the verb tamam ('to be complete, to finish') signals that every last person has crossed. The use of goy ('nation') rather than am ('people') continues from 3:17, emphasizing Israel's corporate, political identity as they enter the land.
2. This fulfills the anticipatory instruction of 3:12. The twelve men, one per tribe, ensure that every tribe participates in the memorial act. The crossing is not the achievement of a few — it belongs to all Israel equally.
3. Mimmatsav raglei ha-kohanim hakhin ('from the standing-place of the priests' feet, firm') — the stones must come from the precise spot where the priests stood holding the ark while the waters were held back. The memorial is anchored to the exact location of the miracle, not a convenient spot nearby. The specificity turns ordinary river stones into covenant witnesses.
3. V'hinnachtem otam ba-malon ('set them down at the camp') — the stones will be carried from the riverbed to Gilgal (v. 19-20), Israel's first campsite in the promised land. River stones from the Jordan's floor, carried by human hands across dry ground that should be underwater — every element of the memorial tells the story.
4. Asher hekhin ('whom he had prepared/designated') — the verb kun (hiphil: 'to establish, to prepare, to designate') indicates Joshua had already selected these men, likely at the instruction of 3:12. The preparation preceded the miracle — Joshua trusted God's word enough to arrange the memorial before the crossing happened.
5. Ish even achat al shikhmo ('each man one stone on his shoulder') — the stones are carried on the shoulder, not in the hand. These are substantial stones, heavy enough to serve as a lasting monument. The physical weight mirrors the theological weight of what they represent. Each man bears his tribe's share of the memorial.
5. L'mispar shivtei v'nei Yisrael ('according to the number of the tribes of the Israelites') — twelve stones for twelve tribes. The memorial is structured to represent the totality of Israel, not just the tribes that happened to cross first or fight hardest.
6. Ki yish'alun b'neikhem machar ('when your children ask tomorrow/in the future') — machar can mean 'tomorrow' or 'in the future.' The memorial is explicitly designed for intergenerational transmission. The stones exist to provoke questions from children — they are teaching tools embedded in the landscape. This question-and-answer format for transmitting sacred memory echoes the Passover liturgy (Exodus 12:26; 13:14), where the child's question triggers the parent's retelling of the exodus. The conquest, like the exodus, must be remembered and retold.
6. Mah ha-avanim ha-elleh lakhem ('what are these stones to you?') — the question assumes the stones are puzzling, out of place. River stones standing in a camp miles from any river demand an explanation. The memorial works precisely because it does not explain itself — it provokes inquiry.
7. L'zikkaron liv'nei Yisrael ad olam ('as a memorial for the Israelites forever') — zikkaron ('memorial, remembrance') is the same term used for the Passover observance (Exodus 12:14). Israel's faith is sustained by physical memorials that anchor theological truth in tangible objects — stones, rituals, festivals. The olam ('forever') indicates permanence beyond any single generation.
7. The answer given to the children's question is remarkably concise: the waters of the Jordan were cut off before the ark. The explanation centers on the ark (God's presence), not on Joshua's leadership or Israel's courage. The memorial teaches theology, not military history.
8. Va-ya'asu khen b'nei Yisrael ka'asher tsivvah Yehoshua ('the Israelites did exactly as Joshua commanded') — the pattern of command and obedience continues without hesitation. The narrator attributes the instruction both to Joshua (ka'asher tsivvah Yehoshua) and to the LORD (ka'asher dibber YHWH el Yehoshua), reinforcing that Joshua's authority is delegated divine authority. To obey Joshua is to obey God.
9. This second set of twelve stones — placed in the riverbed rather than carried to camp — is sometimes seen as a textual doublet. However, the two sets serve different functions: the stones at Gilgal (v. 20) are a visible, accessible memorial for future generations; the stones in the Jordan are a hidden witness beneath the water, marking the precise location of the miracle. Together they create a testimony both seen and unseen.
9. Ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') — this formula signals the narrator's temporal distance from the event. The author writes from a time when the stones were still visible (or at least when the tradition of their location was still known), confirming the memorial's durability.

10. Ad tom kol ha-davar ('until everything was completed') — the priests remain standing in the riverbed, holding the ark, for the entire duration of the crossing and the stone-gathering. Their steadfastness is the physical anchor of the miracle — as long as they stand, the waters hold.
10. K'kol asher tsivvah Mosheh et Yehoshua ('in keeping with everything Moses had commanded Joshua') — this editorial note explicitly connects Joshua's actions to Moses's prior instructions, maintaining the chain of authority: God Moses Joshua. Nothing Joshua does is improvised or self-authorized.
10. Vaymaharu ha-am vayya'avoru ('the people hurried and crossed') — the verb mahar ('to hurry') suggests urgency. Standing on the dry floor of a flooded river, with walls of water held back by divine power alone, the people did not linger. The haste reflects both practical anxiety and appropriate awe.
11. Vayya'avon aron YHWH v'ha-kohanim lifnei ha-am ('the ark of the LORD crossed over, and the priests, before the people') — the ark entered the Jordan first (3:13-15) and now exits last, after everyone has crossed safely. The ark bookends the crossing, serving as both vanguard and rear guard. Lifnei ha-am ('before the people') likely means the ark resumed its position at the head of the column on the western bank, ready to lead the march to Gilgal and beyond.
12. Chamushim lifnei b'nei Yisrael ('in battle formation ahead of the Israelites') — the eastern tribes honor their commitment from 1:14-15. They cross armed and in formation as the vanguard, fighting for land that will belong to other tribes. The note ka'asher dibber aleihem Mosheh ('as Moses had told them') anchors this in the original agreement of Numbers 32 — they are keeping their word across a change of leadership.
13. K'arba'im elef chalutsei ha-tsava ('about forty thousand equipped/armed for the army') — the number forty thousand may represent the full fighting force of the eastern tribes or (as some scholars argue) elef may function as a military unit term ('contingent, clan unit') rather than the numeral 'thousand,' yielding a smaller but still significant force. The text presents it as a substantial military formation.
13. Lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') — the troops march 'before the LORD,' meaning in the LORD's presence or under the LORD's banner. This is not secular military deployment but holy war — the army marches in the presence of its divine commander.
13. Arvot Yericho ('the plains of Jericho') — the broad, flat alluvial plain west of the Jordan where Israel now stands. They have arrived. The promised land is underfoot.
14. Giddel YHWH et Yehoshua ('the LORD made Joshua great') — this fulfills the promise of 3:7: 'Today I will begin to exalt you.' The Jordan crossing has done for Joshua what the Red Sea crossing did for Moses (Exodus 14:31). Leadership legitimacy in Israel is established not by election, appointment, or heredity but by visible divine endorsement.
14. Vayyir'u oto ka'asher yar'u et Mosheh ('they revered him as they had revered Moses') — the verb yare can mean both 'to fear' and 'to revere.' The people's response to Joshua now matches their response to Moses — the succession is complete. Kol yemei chayyav ('all the days of his life') extends this respect for the duration of Joshua's leadership, unlike the episodic loyalty Israel showed Moses.
15. A brief speech formula introducing the command for the priests to come up from the riverbed. The narrative has paused to record the memorial stones and the exaltation of Joshua; now it returns to the practical matter of completing the crossing — the priests are still standing in the Jordan.
16. Aron ha-edut ('the ark of the testimony') — a different title for the ark than the aron ha-berit ('ark of the covenant') used throughout chapter 3. Edut ('testimony, witness') refers to the stone tablets inside the ark, which serve as the physical testimony of the Sinai covenant. The two names highlight different aspects of the same object: the covenant relationship (berit) and the inscribed terms of that covenant (edut).
17. Joshua relays the divine command to the priests without alteration or delay. The command-execution chain (God Joshua priests) operates with precision throughout the crossing narrative.
18. Nit'qu kappot raglei ha-kohanim el he-charavah ('the soles of the priests' feet were pulled up to the dry ground') — the verb nataq ('to pull away, to tear away') suggests the waters resumed the instant the priests' feet left the riverbed. The miracle was precisely bounded: it began when their feet touched the water (3:15) and ended when their feet left the water. There was no margin, no gradual transition — God's intervention was exact.
18. Vayyashuvu mei ha-yarden limqomam vayyel'khu kitmol shilshom al kol g'dotav ('the waters of the Jordan returned to their place and flowed as before over all its banks') — the river returns immediately to full flood stage. Anyone looking at the Jordan after the crossing would see a river in full spate with no evidence that anything had happened — except the nation now standing on the western bank, and the stones.
19. Be'asor la-chodesh ha-rishon ('on the tenth of the first month') — this date is theologically loaded. The tenth of Nisan is the day the Passover lamb was selected (Exodus 12:3). Israel enters the promised land on the same calendar day that the exodus story began in Egypt. The literary symmetry is deliberate: the Passover lamb was chosen on the tenth, leading to deliverance from Egypt; Israel crosses the Jordan on the tenth, entering the land that deliverance was always pointed toward. The exodus is now complete.
19. Gilgal (ha-gilgal) — Israel's first base camp in the promised land, located on the eastern approach to Jericho. The name likely derives from gal ('circle,' perhaps a stone circle), though it will receive a folk etymology in 5:9. Gilgal will serve as Joshua's operational base for the early conquest campaigns.
20. Heqim Yehoshua ba-gilgal ('Joshua set up at Gilgal') — the verb qum (hiphil: 'to raise up, to erect') indicates the stones were arranged upright as a standing monument, not simply piled in a heap. The memorial at Gilgal became a permanent feature of the site, visible to future generations and serving as the physical anchor for the story of the crossing.

21. The question-and-answer format repeats from verse 6, now as a direct speech from Joshua. The repetition is not redundancy — it reinforces the memorial's purpose. The stones exist to generate questions, and the questions exist to generate teaching. The intergenerational transmission of faith depends on this cycle of curiosity and response.
22. V'hoda'tem et b'neikhem ('you will make known to your children') — the verb yada (hiphil: 'to cause to know, to make known') implies active, deliberate teaching, not passive transmission. The parents are commanded to teach, not merely to remember. Ba-yabbashah ('on dry ground') is the core claim — the same word used of the dry ground through the Red Sea (Exodus 14:22). The lexical connection is intentional: what happened at the sea happened again at the river.
23. Ka'asher asah YHWH Eloheikhem l' Yam Suf ('just as the LORD your God did to the Sea of Reeds') — the narrator (or Joshua) explicitly draws the parallel that the entire chapter has been building. The Jordan crossing and the Red Sea crossing are presented as the same type of divine act, performed by the same God, for the same covenant people. The new generation now has their own crossing story.
23. The pronoun shift from mippeneikhem ('before you,' second person) to mippanenu ('before us,' first person) is striking. The speaker identifies with both the exodus generation ('us') and the conquest generation ('you'), collapsing the temporal distance between the two events. The same God, the same deliverance, the same people across generations.
24. The verse states two purposes for the Jordan crossing: (1) l'ma'an da'at kol ammei ha-arets et yad YHWH ki chazaqah hi ('so that all the peoples of the earth may know the hand of the LORD is mighty') — a universal witness. The miracle is not only for Israel's benefit but for the nations. This connects to Rahab's testimony in 2:9-11: the surrounding peoples are meant to know YHWH's power. (2) L'ma'an y'ratem et YHWH Eloheikhem kol ha-yamim ('so that you may revere the LORD your God always') — an internal purpose. Israel's own reverence for God is sustained by remembering what He has done.
24. Yad YHWH ('the hand of the LORD') is an anthropomorphism for divine power in action — God's effective, intervening strength. The adjective chazaqah ('mighty, strong') uses the same root as the chazaq ('be strong') command to Joshua in chapter 1. The strength God commands of Joshua is grounded in the strength God Himself displays.

5

Summary: Israel is circumcised at Gilgal ('the reproach of Egypt is rolled away'), celebrates Passover on the plains of Jericho, eats the produce of the land, and the manna ceases. Joshua encounters the commander of the LORD's army.

What Makes This Remarkable: Three thresholds are crossed: circumcision restores the covenant sign neglected in the wilderness, Passover reconnects this generation to the founding liberation event, and the manna stops the day after they eat Canaan's grain — God's wilderness provision ends precisely when it is no longer needed. The commander of the LORD's army (sar tseva YHWH, v. 14) refuses to take sides — 'neither; I have come as commander of the LORD's army.' The categories are not Israel vs. Jericho but God's agenda vs. human assumptions.

Translation Friction: The name Gilgal is connected to the verb galal ('to roll,' v. 9) — 'I have rolled away the reproach of Egypt.' But what was the reproach? Uncircumcision? Slavery's stigma? The text does not specify, and we preserved the ambiguity. The phrase cherpat Mitsrayim (v. 9, 'reproach of Egypt') uses cherpah, a word for shame that cuts socially, not just personally.

Connections: The Passover echoes Exodus 12 — the first was in Egypt before departure, this one is in the land after arrival. The manna's cessation fulfills Exodus 16:35 ('they ate manna until they came to the border of the land'). The divine commander's appearance parallels the burning bush (Exodus 3:5 — same command to remove sandals) and anticipates the angel of the LORD traditions in Judges.

¹When all the Amorite kings west of the Jordan and all the Canaanite kings along the coast heard that the LORD had dried up the waters of the Jordan before the Israelites until they had crossed, their hearts sank and they no longer had any courage because of the Israelites. ²At that time the LORD said to Joshua, "Make flint knives and circumcise the Israelites once more." ³So Joshua made flint knives and circumcised the Israelites at Gibeath-haaraloth. ⁴This is the reason Joshua circumcised them: all the males who had come out of Egypt — every fighting man — had died in the wilderness on the journey after leaving Egypt. ⁵All the people who came out of Egypt had been circumcised, but none of the people born in the wilderness during the journey from Egypt had been circumcised. ⁶For the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years until the entire generation of fighting men who had come out of Egypt perished — those who had not obeyed the voice of the

LORD. The LORD had sworn to them that he would not let them see the land he had sworn to their ancestors to give us: a land flowing with milk and honey. ⁷It was their sons, whom God had raised up in their place, that Joshua circumcised — for they were uncircumcised, since they had not been circumcised during the journey. ⁸When the entire nation had been circumcised, they stayed where they were in the camp until they had healed. ⁹The LORD said to Joshua, "Today I have rolled away the disgrace of Egypt from you." So the place has been called Gilgal to this day. ¹⁰The Israelites camped at Gilgal and observed the Passover on the fourteenth day of the month, in the evening, on the plains of Jericho. ¹¹They ate from the produce of the land on the day after the Passover: unleavened bread and roasted grain — on that very day. ¹²The manna stopped the day after they ate from the produce of the land. The Israelites no longer had manna; that year they ate from the yield of the land of Canaan. ¹³When Joshua was near Jericho, he looked up and saw a man standing in front of him with a drawn sword in his hand. Joshua approached him and asked, "Are you for us or for our enemies?" ¹⁴He replied, "No — I have come as commander of the army of the LORD." Joshua fell facedown to the ground in reverence and said to him, "What does my lord command his servant?" ¹⁵The commander of the LORD's army said to Joshua, "Remove your sandal from your foot, for the place where you are standing is holy." And Joshua did so.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyimmas l'avam ('their hearts melted') — the same verb (masas) and the same psychological collapse that Rahab described in 2:11. Her testimony is now confirmed on a national scale: all the Canaanite and Amorite kings have lost their nerve. The Jordan miracle has accomplished exactly what Joshua predicted in 3:10 — it serves as proof of the living God's presence.
1. The two groups — Amorite kings 'west of the Jordan' (inland highlands) and Canaanite kings 'along the sea' (coastal plain) — represent the full geography of opposition. No region of Canaan is unaffected. The timing is narratively important: at the very moment Israel is most vulnerable (about to undergo mass circumcision, v. 2-8), their enemies are paralyzed with fear.
2. Charvot tsurim ('knives of flint') — flint blades were the traditional instrument for circumcision even in periods when metal was available (cf. Exodus 4:25, where Zipporah uses a tsur). The use of stone rather than bronze may reflect the ritual conservatism of sacred acts — the tool must match the antiquity of the practice.
2. Shuv mol et b'nei Yisrael shenit ('again circumcise the Israelites a second time') — this does not mean individual re-circumcision but a second national circumcision event. The first was under Abraham (Genesis 17); the wilderness generation was never circumcised (v. 5). The covenant sign must be renewed before the covenant land can be entered. Circumcision precedes conquest — identity before action.
3. Giv'at ha-aralot ('the hill of the foreskins') — the place name is graphic and deliberately memorable. The location receives its name from the event, as is common in the Hebrew Bible. The name serves the same mnemonic function as the stones at Gilgal — it anchors the story to a place. Whether the name persisted in later usage or was coined for this narrative moment is uncertain.
4. The narrator pauses to explain why a mass circumcision was necessary. The explanation spans verses 4-7 and constitutes a theological retrospective on the wilderness period. The entire exodus generation of fighting men (anshei ha-milchamah) died in the wilderness — this is the judgment of Numbers 14:29-35, where God decreed that the rebellious generation would not enter the land. The men who left Egypt circumcised died uncircumcised in their legacy — their sons bore no covenant mark.
5. The contrast is stark: mulim hayu kol ha-am ha-yots'im ('all who came out were circumcised') versus lo malu ('they had not circumcised') the wilderness generation. The failure to circumcise during the forty years of wandering is not explained — the text simply states the fact. Scholars debate whether it reflects the suspended covenant status of the rebellious generation, practical difficulties of wilderness travel, or a theological withholding of the covenant sign from those under judgment. The text does not resolve this question.
6. Asher lo sham'u b'qol YHWH ('who did not obey the voice of the LORD') — the cause of the forty-year wandering is stated plainly: disobedience. The Deuteronomic theology is operating: disobedience leads to exclusion from the land promise. The generation that refused to enter at Kadesh-barnea (Numbers 14) was barred from seeing the fulfillment.
6. Erets zavat chalav u-d'vash ('a land flowing with milk and honey') — this stock phrase for the promised land appears over twenty times in the Pentateuch. Milk (from herds) and honey (from bees or date syrup) represent natural abundance — a land so fertile that it overflows with provision without human effort. At this moment in the narrative, Israel is finally standing on that land.
6. The pronoun shift from lahem ('to them,' the condemned generation) to lanu ('to us,' the narrator's community) is significant — the narrator counts himself among the beneficiaries of the promise, not among the excluded.
7. Et b'neihem heqim tachtam ('their sons he raised up in their place') — the verb qum (hiphil: 'to raise up, to establish') echoes its use for the memorial stones (4:9, 20). God 'raised up' a replacement generation just as He 'raised up' memorial stones — both are testimonies to His faithfulness. The old generation perished under judgment; the new generation stands on the threshold of fulfillment.

7. The circumstantial explanation *ki lo malu otam ba-darekh* ('they had not circumcised them on the journey') implies that the parents, not God, bear responsibility for the failure. The covenant sign was neglected, not revoked — and now, before the conquest can proceed, the neglect must be corrected.
8. *Ad chayotam* ('until they were healed,' literally 'until their living/recovery') — the entire fighting force is incapacitated during recovery. This is the moment of maximum military vulnerability: Israel's army lies wounded in an open camp on enemy soil. The narrative from verse 1 now takes on its full significance — the Canaanite kings' paralysis of fear is not a footnote but a divine provision. God's timing protects Israel: He terrified the enemy before disabling His own army.
8. The parallel to Genesis 34 (the Shechem circumcision and the Simeon-Levi attack on the third day) is often noted — circumcision renders warriors helpless, and in Genesis 34 that vulnerability was exploited. Here, no Canaanite king exploits it, because God has melted their hearts.
9. *Galloti et cherpat Mitsrayim me'aleikhem* ('I have rolled away the disgrace of Egypt from you') — the verb *galal* ('to roll') provides the folk etymology for Gilgal (*gilgal*, 'rolling' or 'circle'). The *cherpat Mitsrayim* ('disgrace of Egypt') is debated: it may refer to (1) the stigma of being slaves, (2) the uncircumcised state that marked them as covenant-outsiders during the wilderness years, or (3) Egypt's potential mockery that God brought Israel into the wilderness to die (cf. Exodus 32:12). The circumcision at Gilgal removes whatever disgrace remained — Israel is now fully covenanted, fully in the land, fully free.
9. The naming etiology (*vayyiqra shem ha-maqom ha-hu Gilgal*) follows the standard pattern of place-name origins in the Hebrew Bible. Whether Gilgal's name actually derives from this event or the etymology is a secondary association with a pre-existing name is uncertain, but the narrative claims this origin.
10. *Vayya'asu et ha-pesach be-arba'ah asar yom la-chodesh ba-erev* ('they observed the Passover on the fourteenth day of the month in the evening') — this is the first Passover in the promised land, and the calendar alignment is precise. They crossed the Jordan on the tenth of Nisan (4:19), were circumcised, healed, and now on the fourteenth — exactly when the Passover lamb was to be slaughtered (Exodus 12:6) — they observe the festival. The bookend with the original Passover in Egypt (Exodus 12) is complete: the first Passover freed them from Egypt, this Passover marks their arrival in Canaan. The exodus story arc, from departure to destination, is now closed.
10. *Be-arvot Yericho* ('on the plains of Jericho') — the Passover is observed within sight of the first Canaanite city that will fall. The juxtaposition of worship and warfare is characteristic of Joshua: Israel worships before it fights, obeys before it conquers.
11. *Me-avur ha-arets* ('from the produce of the land') — for the first time in forty years, Israel eats food grown in Canaan's soil. The word *avur* ('produce, yield, grain') refers to the existing harvest of the land, not food they planted. They eat what others sowed — the gift nature of the land could not be clearer.
11. *Matstsot v'qalui* ('unleavened bread and roasted grain') — the Passover diet of Exodus 12:8 (unleavened bread) combined with parched grain, a staple food. The first meal in the promised land is a Passover meal, connecting their new life to the deliverance that made it possible.
11. *Be-etsem ha-yom ha-zeh* ('on that very day') — the emphasis on the specific day underscores the theological precision of the timing. Everything in this chapter happens on schedule — circumcision, Passover, the first meal from the land. God's calendar is exact.
12. *Vayyishbot ha-man* ('the manna ceased') — the verb *shavat* ('to cease, to stop, to rest,' the same root as *Shabbat*) marks the end of the miraculous daily provision that sustained Israel for forty years (Exodus 16:35). The transition is abrupt and complete: the land's own produce replaces the wilderness miracle. God does not withdraw provision — He changes the mode of provision. The manna was for the wilderness; the land's harvest is for the land.
12. *Mitt'vu'at erets K'na'an* ('from the yield of the land of Canaan') — *t'vu'ah* ('yield, produce, harvest') emphasizes agricultural abundance. Israel shifts from miraculous sustenance to covenantal agriculture — working the land God has given. The promised land is not a land of perpetual miracles but a land of blessed labor.
12. This verse closes a forty-year parenthesis. The manna began at Exodus 16:14-15 and ends here. Between those two points lies the entire wilderness experience. With the manna's cessation, the wilderness era is officially over.
13. *V'hinne ish omed l'negdo v'charbo sh'lufah b'yado* ('and there — a man standing opposite him with his sword drawn in his hand') — the scene is cinematic. Joshua encounters a solitary warrior figure, weapon ready, facing him. The identity of this figure is revealed in verse 14 but is deliberately withheld here, creating narrative tension. Joshua's first instinct is the soldier's question: friend or foe?
13. *Ha-lanu attah im l'tsareinu* ('are you for us or for our enemies?') — Joshua frames the encounter in binary military terms. The answer he receives (v. 14) will shatter this binary: the figure belongs to neither category because he is above both.
14. *Lo* ('No') — the figure rejects Joshua's binary framing. He is not 'for' Israel in the sense of being their servant or ally under their command. He is the *sar tseva YHWH* ('commander of the LORD's army'), meaning the divine army is not at Israel's disposal — Israel is at the army's disposal. The word *sar* ('commander, prince, captain') designates supreme military authority. This figure outranks Joshua.
14. The identity of the *sar tseva YHWH* is debated. The traditional reading identifies him as a theophany (a divine appearance) or the Angel of the LORD. The response he gives — accepting Joshua's worship (*vayyishtachu*, 'he prostrated himself/worshiped') and commanding him to remove his sandals (v. 15) — parallels God's appearance to Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:5). An ordinary angel would typically refuse worship (cf. Revelation 22:8-9). The text does not resolve the question of exact identity but presents the encounter as a divine confrontation.

14. Mah adoni m'dabber el avdo ('what does my lord say to his servant?') — Joshua's response is immediate subordination. He abandons his question (friend or foe?) and assumes the posture of a servant awaiting orders. The commander of Israel has just met his own commander.
15. Shal na'alkha me'al raglekha ki ha-maqom asher attah omed alav qodesh hu ('remove your sandal from your foot, for the place where you stand is holy') — this is an almost verbatim repetition of Exodus 3:5 (shal ne'alekha me'al raglekha ki ha-maqom asher attah omed alav admat qodesh hu). The parallel is too precise to be accidental. Joshua's commissioning scene at the edge of the promised land mirrors Moses's commissioning at the burning bush. Both involve a divine encounter, both require the removal of sandals, both declare the ground holy, and both launch a liberation campaign. The text is claiming that the God who sent Moses now sends Joshua.
15. Na'alkha ('your sandal') is singular — one sandal, not both. Some scholars see this as a merism (one stands for the pair), while others note the ritual significance of removing a single sandal in certain ancient Near Eastern legal customs (cf. Ruth 4:7-8). The text does not explain; Joshua simply obeys.
15. Vayyya'as Yehoshua ken ('and Joshua did so') — the chapter ends abruptly with Joshua's obedience. There is no battle plan, no strategy session, no tactical briefing. The encounter at Jericho's edge ends with a command about sandals and an act of submission. The instructions for Jericho's fall will come in chapter 6 — but first, Joshua must stand barefoot on holy ground and learn who is really in command.

6

Summary: *Israel marches around Jericho once daily for six days, then seven times on the seventh day. The priests blow trumpets, the people shout, and the walls collapse. The city is devoted to destruction; only Rahab's household is spared.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The battle plan is anti-military: no siege engines, no scaling ladders, no strategy except marching in silence with an ark and trumpets. The seven-day structure mirrors creation — six days of action, the seventh bringing completion. The cherem (v. 17, 'devoted to destruction') means everything in the city belongs to God, not to the victors. Jericho is a firstfruits offering of the conquest — the first city, like the firstborn, belongs entirely to God.*

Translation Friction: *The verb hacharim (v. 17, 'devote to destruction') is Deuteronomy's most difficult command applied to a specific city. We rendered it without softening because the Hebrew does not soften it. The silence of the army during six days of marching (v. 10, 'do not shout... do not let your voice be heard') creates unbearable dramatic tension — the shout, when it comes, is the release of days of obedient restraint.*

Connections: *Rahab's rescue fulfills the spies' oath in 2:12-14 — the scarlet cord and the Passover blood are both marks of protection during divine judgment. The seven-day march echoes the seven days of Jericho's siege in reverse: instead of attacking walls, Israel worships. Achan's violation of the cherem in chapter 7 proves the seriousness of the ban. Rahab enters David's lineage (Ruth 4:21, Matthew 1:5).*

1Now Jericho was tightly shut up because of the Israelites — no one going out and no one coming in. 2The LORD said to Joshua, "See — I have handed Jericho over to you, along with its king and its fighting men. 3March around the city — all the fighting men circling the city once. Do this for six days. 4Seven priests will carry seven ram's horn trumpets before the ark. On the seventh day, march around the city seven times, with the priests blowing the trumpets. 5When they sound a long blast on the ram's horn — when you hear the trumpet — all the people will raise a mighty shout, and the wall of the city will collapse in place. Then the people will charge straight ahead, each man forward." 6Joshua son of Nun summoned the priests and said to them, "Lift the ark of the covenant, and have seven priests carry seven ram's horn trumpets before the ark of the LORD." 7He said to the people, "Move forward and march around the city, with the armed vanguard going ahead of the ark of the LORD." 8When Joshua had spoken to the people, the seven priests carrying the seven ram's horn trumpets advanced before the LORD and blew the trumpets, with the ark of the covenant of the LORD following behind them. 9The armed vanguard marched ahead of the priests blowing the trumpets, and the rear guard followed the ark, with the trumpets sounding continually. 10Joshua had commanded the people, "Do not shout, do not let your voice be heard, and do not let a word come from your mouth until the day I tell you to shout. Then you will shout!" 11So the ark of the LORD circled the city, going around it once. Then they returned to the camp and spent the night there. 12Joshua rose early the next morning, and the priests lifted the ark of the LORD. 13The seven priests carrying the seven ram's horn trumpets before the ark of the LORD

marched continually, blowing the trumpets. The armed vanguard went ahead of them, and the rear guard followed the ark of the LORD, with the trumpets sounding continually. ¹⁴On the second day they marched around the city once and returned to the camp. They did this for six days. ¹⁵On the seventh day they rose at dawn and marched around the city in the same way — but seven times. Only on that day did they circle the city seven times. ¹⁶At the seventh circuit, when the priests blew the trumpets, Joshua said to the people, "Shout! For the LORD has given you the city! ¹⁷The city and everything in it are to be devoted to destruction — set apart for the LORD. Only Rahab the prostitute will be spared, she and everyone with her in the house, because she hid the scouts we sent. ¹⁸But as for you, keep away from what is devoted to destruction, or else when you take anything that is under the ban, you will bring the ban upon the camp of Israel itself and bring disaster on it. ¹⁹But all the silver, gold, and articles of bronze and iron are holy — they belong to the LORD. They must go into the treasury of the LORD." ²⁰The people shouted and the trumpets sounded. When the people heard the trumpet blast, they raised a mighty shout, and the wall collapsed in place. The people charged straight ahead into the city and captured it. ²¹They devoted to destruction everything in the city — man and woman, young and old, ox, sheep, and donkey — with the edge of the sword. ²²To the two men who had scouted the land, Joshua said, "Go into the prostitute's house and bring out the woman and everyone belonging to her, as you swore to her." ²³So the young scouts went in and brought out Rahab, her father, her mother, her brothers, and everyone belonging to her — they brought out her entire extended family — and settled them outside the camp of Israel. ²⁴They burned the city and everything in it with fire — except the silver, gold, and articles of bronze and iron, which they placed in the treasury of the house of the LORD. ²⁵But Rahab the prostitute, along with her father's household and everyone belonging to her — Joshua let them live. She has lived among the Israelites to this day, because she hid the scouts that Joshua sent to reconnoiter Jericho. ²⁶At that time Joshua pronounced this oath: "Cursed before the LORD is the man who rises up and rebuilds this city — this Jericho. At the cost of his firstborn he will lay its foundation, and at the cost of his youngest he will set up its gates." ²⁷The LORD was with Joshua, and his fame spread throughout the entire land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Sogeret um'suggeret ('shut up and bolted shut') — the double participle intensifies the image: Jericho is not merely closed but sealed, barred, locked down. The city is in full siege posture, but the irony is that Israel has not laid siege. Jericho has imprisoned itself out of terror, confirming Rahab's testimony (2:9-11) and the report of verse 5:1.
1. Ein yotse v'ein ba ('none going out, none coming in') — a merism describing total isolation. No trade, no escape, no reinforcement. Jericho is cut off and waiting.
2. Re'eh natatti b'yadkha ('See, I have given into your hand') — the perfect tense natatti ('I have given') declares the victory accomplished before a single march around the walls. As with the land promise in 1:3, God speaks of the outcome as already completed. The conquest of Jericho is divine fait accompli — Israel's role is obedience to the ritual instructions that follow, not military strategy.
2. Gibborei he-chayil ('mighty men of valor') — the same phrase used for Israel's own warriors (1:14). Jericho's defenders are formidable, but their strength is irrelevant because the battle belongs to God.
3. V'sabbotem et ha-ir ('march around the city') — the verb savav ('to go around, to encircle') is processional, not military. This is not a siege tactic but a ritual act. The instruction to circle the city once per day for six days, then seven times on the seventh day (v. 4), follows a liturgical pattern saturated with the number seven — the number of completion and divine action throughout the Hebrew Bible.
3. Kol anshei ha-milchamah ('all the fighting men') — warriors participate, but they do not fight. They march. The army is present not for its combat function but as participants in a worship procession. This redefines military power: Israel's greatest victory will come through obedience to a ritual, not through tactics.
4. Shiv'ah kohanim ... shiv'ah shofarot ha-yov'lim ... ha-yom ha-shevi'i ... sheva pe'amim — the sevenfold pattern saturates the passage: seven priests, seven trumpets, the seventh day, seven circuits. The number seven (sheva) is the number of completion, oath (the root sh-v-a relates to both 'seven' and 'to swear'), and divine rest (the seventh day of creation). Jericho falls not by force but by sacred numerology — by the completion of a divine cycle.
4. Shofarot ha-yov'lim ('ram's horn trumpets' or 'jubilee trumpets') — the yovel is the ram's horn associated with the Jubilee year (Leviticus 25:9-10) and with theophanic events (Exodus 19:13, 16 at Sinai). These are not military signals but liturgical instruments. The sound of the shofar announces God's presence and action, not a charge into battle.
5. V'nafl'ah chomat ha-ir tachteha ('the wall of the city will fall beneath itself,' or 'collapse in place') — the wall does not fall outward or inward but drops straight down (tachteha, 'beneath it'). Archaeological excavations at Tell es-Sultan (ancient Jericho) have found collapsed walls, though the dating and

interpretation remain debated among archaeologists. The text presents the collapse as immediate, total, and supernatural — the walls fall at the sound, not from battering.

5. T'ru'ah g'dolah ('a great shout') — the t'ru'ah is a war cry and a worship shout. It is the same term used for the shout at God's enthronement (Psalm 47:5; Numbers 23:21) and for the alarm signal on the trumpets (Numbers 10:5-6). The shout at Jericho is simultaneously a battle cry and an act of worship — the two are indistinguishable in this narrative.
5. V'alu ha-am ish negdo ('the people will go up, each man straight before him') — there is no flanking, no concentration of force, no tactical approach. Every soldier advances straight forward from wherever he stands in the circle. The city is penetrated from every direction simultaneously — because the walls are gone. Military strategy is irrelevant when God removes the obstacle.
6. Joshua transmits God's instructions from verses 2-5 to the priests without modification. The command chain operates flawlessly: God → Joshua → priests. The ark of the covenant leads, with the seven trumpet-bearing priests creating a sonic processional before it. The order of march will be specified further in verses 7-9: armed vanguard, trumpet priests, ark, rear guard.
7. Ha-chaluts ya'avur lifnei aron YHWH ('the armed vanguard will pass before the ark of the LORD') — chaluts ('armed, equipped, stripped for action') designates the military advance guard. The marching order emerges: armed troops first, then the seven trumpet-priests, then the ark, then presumably a rear guard (v. 9). The army frames the ark — warriors before and behind — but the ark is the center. The formation is a moving sanctuary, not a military column.
8. The procession begins. The narrative emphasizes the sound — v'taq'u ba-shofarot ('and they blew the trumpets'). The shofar blast accompanies the march and continues throughout the circuits. The sound of ram's horns around a walled city is psychologically powerful but militarily useless — it serves to announce God's presence and to unnerve the defenders, who are already terrified (5:1; 2:9-11).
9. Ha-m'assef ('the rear guard,' literally 'the gatherer') — from the root asaf ('to gather'). The rear guard gathers up stragglers and protects the column's back. The full marching order is now clear: armed vanguard → seven trumpet-priests → ark of the covenant → rear guard. This is a military formation repurposed for liturgical procession — or perhaps a liturgical procession that happens to be militarily organized.
9. Halokh v'taqo'a ba-shofarot ('going and blowing the trumpets') — the infinitive absolute construction indicates continuous action. The trumpets never stop sounding throughout the march. The ceaseless blowing creates an unbroken wall of sound — the auditory counterpart to the physical wall they are circling.
10. Lo tari'u v'lo tashmi'u et qolkhem v'lo yetse mippikhem davar ('do not shout, do not make your voice heard, do not let a word leave your mouth') — the triple prohibition creates absolute silence from the people. The only sounds during the six days of marching are the priests' trumpets and the rhythm of footsteps. The effect is eerie and psychologically devastating: a silent army circling the walls, day after day, with only the mournful blast of ram's horns. The silence also functions theologically — the people's voice is withheld until God's moment. Their shout will not be spontaneous but commanded, not human initiative but divine timing.
11. Vayyashev aron YHWH et ha-ir haqqef pa'am achat ('the ark of the LORD circled the city, going around once') — the narrator says the ark circled the city, not the army or Joshua. The ark (and by extension, God's presence) is the subject of the action. The first day's circuit is completed in a single understated sentence — the narrative saves its dramatic energy for the seventh day.
12. Vayyashkem Yehoshua ba-boqer ('Joshua rose early in the morning') — the same formula as 3:1. Joshua's early rising signals discipline and urgency. The daily repetition of the ritual requires the same obedience and the same early start each morning — faithfulness expressed as routine.
13. The verse repeats the marching order from verses 8-9 almost verbatim, reinforcing the ritualized nature of the procession. The repetition is not narrative redundancy — it mirrors the repetitive nature of the act itself. Each day's march follows the identical pattern: same formation, same sounds, same silence. The ritual's power lies in its exact repetition over seven days. Halokh v'taqo'a ('going and blowing') — the continuous trumpeting creates a liturgical drone that defines the entire event.
14. Koh asu sheshet yamim ('thus they did for six days') — six days of identical processions, one circuit per day, then return to camp. The narrative compresses six days of obedient marching into a single verse. The compression emphasizes the monotony and the discipline: nothing visible happens for six days. No walls crack, no defenders flee, no progress is apparent. The obedience is tested by six days of apparent futility.
15. Ba-yom ha-shevi'i vayyashkimu ka'alot ha-shachar ('on the seventh day they rose at the going up of the dawn') — the early start is even earlier than usual, because seven circuits require the full day. The dawn of the seventh day marks the climactic moment the entire ritual has been building toward.
15. Sheva pe'amim ('seven times') — the escalation from one circuit to seven on the seventh day brings the total number of circuits to thirteen (6 + 7), though the text emphasizes the seven on the final day. The accumulation of sevens reaches its peak: seven priests, seven trumpets, seven days, seven circuits. The divine number saturates the event.
15. Raq ba-yom ha-hu savvu et ha-ir sheva pe'amim ('only on that day did they circle the city seven times') — the word raq ('only') marks the seventh day as unique. The pattern breaks: what was once (days 1-6) becomes seven (day 7). The break in pattern signals the climax.
16. Hari'u ki natan YHWH lakhem et ha-ir ('Shout, for the LORD has given you the city') — again the perfect tense: natan ('has given'). The city is already given before the shout goes up and the walls come down. Joshua speaks with prophetic certainty, declaring accomplished what is about to become visible. The shout is not a weapon — it is the response to a gift already given.

17. V'hay'tah ha-ir cherem hi v'khol asher bah la-YHWH ('the city will be cherem — it and everything in it — to the LORD') — the entire city is placed under the sacred ban. Cherem here functions as a predicate adjective: the city is cherem, meaning it belongs entirely and irrevocably to God. Nothing within it may be taken for human use. The phrase la-YHWH ('to the LORD') specifies the recipient — everything destroyed is 'given' to God.
17. Raq Rachav ha-zonah tichyeh ('only Rahab the prostitute will live') — the sole exception to the cherem is the woman and household protected by the covenant agreement of chapter 2. The oath the spies swore to Rahab overrides the ban — or rather, Rahab's household was already exempted by the spies' divinely sanctioned oath before the cherem was announced. Her zonah identity is repeated, not to stigmatize but to underscore the extraordinary nature of her inclusion.
17. Ki hechb'atah et ha-mal'akhim asher shalachnu ('because she hid the messengers we sent') — the reason for Rahab's exemption is her active choice to align with Israel's God. The word mal'akhim ('messengers') is the same word translated 'angels' in other contexts — here it means human envoys, but the lexical overlap connects Rahab's act of hiding human scouts to the broader theme of divine agency.
18. Shimru min ha-cherem pen tacharaimu ('guard yourselves from the cherem lest you become cherem') — the warning is terrifyingly logical: cherem is contagious. If anyone takes devoted property for themselves, they transfer the ban to the entire camp. The cherem would spread from Jericho to Israel — the very army of God would become a devoted-to-destruction object. This warning foreshadows the Achan crisis of chapter 7, where exactly this happens.
18. Va'akhartem oto ('and bring trouble/disaster upon it') — the verb akhar ('to trouble, to bring disaster') contains a wordplay that will become explicit in 7:25, where Achan (whose name sounds like akhar) is told 'Why did you bring trouble (akhartanu) on us? The LORD will bring trouble (ya'akhor'kha) on you today.' The wordplay is embedded in the narrative structure from this warning forward.
19. Qodesh hu la-YHWH ('it is holy to the LORD') — metals cannot be destroyed by fire, so they are consecrated rather than annihilated. The principle of cherem is maintained: nothing from Jericho enriches any individual. What survives destruction enters the otsar YHWH ('treasury of the LORD'), the sacred storehouse associated with the tabernacle/sanctuary. The metals belong to God, not to Israel's soldiers.
20. Vattipol ha-chomah tachteiha ('the wall fell beneath itself') — the climactic moment is described in seven Hebrew words. After seven days of elaborate ritual preparation, the actual fall of Jericho's wall is narrated with stark brevity. The understatement matches the theology: this is God's act, and divine acts do not require elaborate description. The wall simply falls.
20. Vayya'al ha-am ha-irah ish negdo ('the people went up into the city, each man straight before him') — as God instructed (v. 5), every soldier advances directly forward from wherever he stands in the circle. The city is penetrated simultaneously from every direction. There is no battle narrative — no clash of arms, no defenders rallying, no commanders shouting orders. The battle is over before it starts because the wall, the city's only defense, is gone.
21. Vayyacharimu et kol asher ba-ir ('they devoted to destruction everything in the city') — the cherem is executed in full. The list me-ish v'ad islah minna'ar v'ad zaqen ('from man to woman, from young to old') is a merism encompassing every human being. The inclusion of domestic animals (shor va-seh va-chamor, 'ox, sheep, and donkey') confirms total destruction — nothing of Jericho survives for human use.
21. The text presents this without editorial commentary. The narrator does not justify, explain, or soften the account. The theological framework (cherem as sacred devotion to God) is the only interpretive lens the text provides. Modern readers must reckon with the moral difficulty honestly — and the translator notes should acknowledge that difficulty without resolving it. This is what the Hebrew text says; this is what it claims God commanded. The Covenant Rendering translates the text faithfully and lets the reader engage the theological and moral questions.
22. Ka'asher nishba'tem lah ('as you swore to her') — Joshua upholds the spies' oath. The covenant with Rahab, negotiated by two scouts on their own authority, is honored by the national commander in the midst of a divinely mandated destruction. An oath sworn in YHWH's name (2:12) cannot be broken, even by the demands of cherem. This establishes a hierarchy: oath cherem. The sworn word outranks the sacred ban.
23. The list — Rahab, her father, her mother, her brothers, and everyone belonging to her — matches her original request in 2:13 precisely. The oath is honored to the letter. The addition v'et kol mishp'choteha ('and all her clans/extended family') expands the circle beyond the nuclear family, suggesting Rahab's influence brought a wider group under the protection of the scarlet cord.
23. Vayyanikhum michutz l'machaneh Yisrael ('they settled them outside the camp of Israel') — Rahab's family is placed outside the camp initially, likely for ritual purity reasons (as Canaanites, they would need to undergo some process of incorporation). The note 'outside the camp' is transitional — verse 25 will clarify that Rahab ultimately dwelt 'in the midst of Israel.'
24. V'ha-ir sar'fu va-esh v'khol asher bah ('they burned the city with fire and everything in it') — the burning completes the cherem. Fire is the ultimate agent of destruction, leaving nothing usable. Archaeological evidence at Tell es-Sultan shows a destruction layer with evidence of intense burning, though the dating of this layer remains one of the most debated questions in biblical archaeology.
24. Otsar beit YHWH ('the treasury of the house of the LORD') — the metals are consecrated to the sanctuary. The 'house of the LORD' at this period would be the tabernacle. Jericho's wealth goes to God's house — the firstfruits principle applied to conquest.
25. Vatteshev b'qerev Yisrael ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('she has lived in the midst of Israel to this day') — the transition from 'outside the camp' (v. 23) to 'in the midst of Israel' is complete. Rahab, a Canaanite prostitute, is fully incorporated into Israelite society. The formula 'to this day' indicates the narrator writes from a later period when Rahab's descendants are a known presence in Israel. According to Matthew 1:5, Rahab married Salmon and became an ancestor of David — and of Jesus. A gentile woman from a condemned city enters the covenant people and ultimately the messianic lineage.

25. The narrator repeats the reason for her survival: *ki hechbi'ah et ha-mal'akhim* ('because she hid the messengers'). Her act of faith — choosing YHWH's side at personal risk — saved her and her family. The New Testament draws on this in Hebrews 11:31 ('by faith Rahab the prostitute did not perish with those who were disobedient') and James 2:25 ('was not Rahab the prostitute justified by works when she received the messengers?'). Her story serves as evidence that covenant membership is based on faith and action, not ethnicity.
26. *Arur ha-ish lifnei YHWH* ('cursed is the man before the LORD') — Joshua places a solemn imprecation on anyone who rebuilds Jericho. The curse operates on a devastating principle: rebuilding will cost the builder his firstborn at the foundation and his youngest at the gate-setting — his entire family line will be consumed by the project. This curse is fulfilled in 1 Kings 16:34, when Hiel of Bethel rebuilds Jericho under King Ahab: 'He laid its foundation at the cost of Abiram his firstborn, and set up its gates at the cost of his youngest son Segub, according to the word of the LORD spoken through Joshua son of Nun.'
26. *Biv'khoro y'yass'dennah u-vitse'iro yatsiv d'lateha* ('at his firstborn he will found it, and at his youngest he will set up its gates') — the preposition *be-* ('at, in, with, at the cost of') is ambiguous: it could mean the deaths coincide with the construction stages, or that the sons are sacrificed as foundation offerings (a practice attested in ancient Near Eastern archaeology). The text does not specify the mechanism — only the cost.
27. *Vayhi YHWH et Yehoshua* ('the LORD was with Joshua') — the fulfillment of 1:5 ('as I was with Moses, I will be with you') and 3:7 ('today I will begin to exalt you'). The three promises are now realized: God is present, Joshua is exalted, and no one can stand against him. The summary statement closes the Jericho narrative with a theological conclusion: Joshua's fame is not self-made but a consequence of the divine presence that accompanies him.
27. *Vayhi shom'o b'khol ha-arets* ('his fame was in all the land') — *shom'o* ('his fame, his report, what is heard about him') spreads throughout Canaan. The Canaanite terror that Rahab reported (2:9-11) and that 5:1 confirmed now intensifies. Every subsequent city in Canaan knows what happened to Jericho.

7

Summary: *Achan takes devoted items from Jericho, and Israel is defeated at Ai. God reveals the violation through lots, Achan confesses, and he and his household are executed in the Valley of Achor.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's first word is devastating: vayyim'alu ('they acted unfaithfully') — the plural indicts all Israel for one man's sin. The corporate nature of covenant means individual violation contaminates the community. Achan's confession (v. 21) is psychologically precise: 'I saw... I coveted... I took' — the same sequence as Eve in Genesis 3:6 (saw, desired, took). Sin follows the same pattern across the entire biblical narrative.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ma'al ma'al (v. 1, 'acted treacherously with treachery') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis — the doubling conveys the gravity of covenant breach. We preserved 'acted unfaithfully' without the doubling because English lacks a natural equivalent. The Valley of Achor (v. 26, 'Valley of Trouble') becomes a place name from a wordplay — Achan brings achar ('trouble'), and the valley is named for it.*

Connections: *Achan's sin-pattern (saw, coveted, took) echoes Genesis 3:6 and anticipates David in 2 Samuel 11. The Valley of Achor is promised as 'a door of hope' in Hosea 2:15 — the site of judgment becomes a site of restoration. The lots-casting process (vv. 14-18) parallels the Urim and Thummim tradition and is echoed in Jonah 1:7. Joshua's prayer (vv. 7-9) echoes Moses's intercessions.*

1But the Israelites acted unfaithfully regarding the devoted things. Achan son of Carmi, son of Zabdi, son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, took some of what was under the ban, and the LORD's anger burned against the Israelites. 2Joshua sent men from Jericho to Ai, which is near Beth-aven, east of Bethel, and told them, "Go up and scout the land." So the men went up and scouted Ai. 3They returned to Joshua and said to him, "There is no need for the whole army to go up. Send about two or three thousand men to attack Ai — do not trouble the entire force with the march, because they are few." 4About three thousand men from the army went up, but they fled before the men of Ai. 5The men of Ai struck down about thirty-six of them and chased them from the city gate as far as Shebarim, cutting them down on the slope. The hearts of the people melted and turned to water. 6Joshua tore his clothes and fell facedown before the ark of the LORD until evening — he and the elders of Israel — and they put dust on their heads. 7Joshua said, "Ah, Lord GOD! Why did you bring this people across the Jordan at all, only to hand us over to the Amorites to be destroyed? If only we had been willing to settle on the other side

of the Jordan! ⁸Please, Lord — what can I say, now that Israel has turned its back before its enemies? ⁹The Canaanites and all who live in the land will hear about this, surround us, and wipe our name from the earth. And what will you do for your great name?" ¹⁰The LORD said to Joshua, "Stand up! Why are you lying facedown? ¹¹Israel has sinned. They have violated my covenant that I commanded them. They have taken from what is under the ban. They have stolen. They have deceived. They have put the devoted things among their own belongings. ¹²The Israelites cannot stand before their enemies. They turn their backs before their enemies because they themselves have become subject to the ban. I will not be with you anymore unless you remove the devoted things from your midst. ¹³Get up! Consecrate the people and say, 'Consecrate yourselves for tomorrow, for this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: There is a devoted thing in your midst, Israel. You will not be able to stand before your enemies until you remove what is under the ban from among you.' ¹⁴In the morning you will come forward tribe by tribe. The tribe that the LORD selects will come forward by clans. The clan that the LORD selects will come forward by households. The household that the LORD selects will come forward man by man. ¹⁵The one caught with the devoted things will be burned with fire — he and everything he has — because he has violated the covenant of the LORD and has committed an outrage in Israel." ¹⁶Joshua rose early in the morning and brought Israel forward tribe by tribe. The tribe of Judah was selected. ¹⁷He brought forward the clans of Judah, and the clan of the Zerahites was selected. He brought the clan of the Zerahites forward by households, and Zabdi was selected. ¹⁸He brought Zabdi's household forward man by man, and Achan son of Carmi, son of Zabdi, son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, was selected. ¹⁹Joshua said to Achan, "My son, give glory to the LORD, the God of Israel, and make confession to him. Tell me what you have done — do not hide it from me." ²⁰Achan answered Joshua, "It is true — I have sinned against the LORD, the God of Israel. This is what I did: ²¹I saw among the plunder a beautiful robe from Shinar, two hundred shekels of silver, and a bar of gold weighing fifty shekels. I coveted them and I took them. They are hidden in the ground inside my tent, with the silver underneath." ²²Joshua sent messengers, and they ran to the tent. There it was — hidden in his tent, with the silver underneath. ²³They took them from inside the tent, brought them to Joshua and all the Israelites, and spread them out before the LORD. ²⁴Then Joshua, along with all Israel, took Achan son of Zerah, the silver, the robe, the bar of gold, his sons and daughters, his ox, his donkey, his flock, his tent, and everything he owned, and brought them up to the Valley of Achor. ²⁵Joshua said, "Why have you brought disaster on us? The LORD will bring disaster on you today!" Then all Israel stoned him, burned them with fire, and piled stones over them. ²⁶They raised a great pile of stones over him that remains to this day. Then the LORD turned from his fierce anger. That is why that place is called the Valley of Achor to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyim'alu v'nei Yisrael ma'al ba-cherem ('the Israelites acted unfaithfully/treacherously regarding the cherem') — the verb ma'al means to act treacherously, to commit a breach of trust, to be unfaithful. It is covenant-violation language, not merely legal infraction. The crucial theological point: the text says 'the Israelites' committed the breach, though only Achan acted. One man's sin implicates the entire nation. Corporate identity is fundamental to Israelite theology — the community bears responsibility for the actions of its members.
1. Achan's genealogy (ben Karmi, ben Zavdi, ben Zerach, l'matreh Yehudah) is given in full — four generations and tribal identification — establishing his place within Israel. He is not a marginal figure but a fully identified member of Judah, the leading tribe. The unfaithfulness comes from inside Israel's heart, not its periphery.
1. Vayyichar af YHWH biv'nei Yisrael ('the anger of the LORD burned against the Israelites') — note that God's anger is directed at Israel collectively, not at Achan individually. The narrative presents the problem as communal before it is personal. Israel will discover Achan's identity only through a process of divine revelation (vv. 14-18).
2. Ha-Ai ('the Ai') — the name means 'the ruin' or 'the heap,' which may indicate the site was already in ruins before Israel arrived, or it may be a name applied retrospectively after its destruction (8:28). The city is located near Beth-aven ('house of wickedness/emptiness') east of Bethel ('house of God') — the geographic names create an ironic cluster for a narrative about unfaithfulness.
2. Joshua acts with the confidence earned at Jericho, sending scouts to the next target. He does not know that the covenant has been breached. The narrative creates dramatic irony: the reader knows (from v. 1) what Joshua does not — Israel is under divine anger.
3. Al ya'al kol ha-am ('not all the people need go up') — the scouts' report is militarily reasonable: Ai is small, and a fraction of the force should suffice. But the assessment is spiritually blind. After Jericho, Israel's scouts evaluate Ai purely in military terms (ki me'at hemmah, 'because they are few') without considering whether God is with them. The contrast with the Jericho campaign is stark: at Jericho, success depended entirely on divine instruction; at Ai, the scouts assume conventional military assessment is sufficient.

3. Al t'yagga shammah et kol ha-am ('do not wear out the whole army going there') — the verb yaga ('to toil, to weary') implies that sending the full force would be wasteful overkill. The overconfidence is palpable — and will be punished.
4. Vayyanusu lifnei anshei ha-Ai ('they fled before the men of Ai') — the verb nus ('to flee') is devastating after 1:5 ('no one will be able to stand before you'). For the first time in Joshua, Israelites run from the enemy. The promise of invincibility was conditional on covenant faithfulness — and the covenant has been breached. The defeat is not large in scale (v. 5 reports 36 casualties) but enormous in theological significance: God's presence has been withdrawn.
5. Kishloashim v'shishah ish ('about thirty-six men') — the casualties are relatively small, but the psychological impact is catastrophic. Vayyimmas l'av ha-am vayhi l'mayim ('the hearts of the people melted and became like water') — the same verb masas ('to melt') that described Canaanite terror in 2:11 and 5:1 now describes Israel's own reaction. The roles have reversed: the conquerors now experience the same dissolving fear that their enemies felt. The reversal is a direct consequence of the cherem violation.
5. Ha-Sh'varim ('Shebarim') — the name means 'the broken places' or 'the quarries,' likely a rocky area on the descent from Ai. The pursuit ran from the city gate downhill through rough terrain — the Israelites were fleeing downslope, the worst tactical position.
5. The irony is layered: at Jericho, walls fell and Israel charged forward; at Ai, Israel flees and hearts collapse. Same army, same commander, different covenant status.
6. Vayyiqra Yehoshua simlotav ('Joshua tore his garments') — the standard gesture of grief and distress in the ancient Near East. Combined with falling prostrate before the ark and casting dust on the head, the full repertoire of lamentation is deployed. Joshua and the elders mourn not just the thirty-six dead but the apparent failure of the divine promise.
6. Lifnei aron YHWH ad ha-erev ('before the ark of the LORD until evening') — Joshua prostrates himself before the ark for hours. The ark that led the Jordan crossing and the Jericho procession now witnesses Israel's leader face down in the dust. The contrast between this scene and the triumph of chapters 3-6 is total.
7. Ahahh Adonai YHWH ('Ah, Lord GOD!') — the exclamation ahahh is a cry of anguish, not a formal address. Joshua's prayer is raw, unfiltered distress. The address 'Lord GOD' (Adonai YHWH) combines the two divine titles, intensifying the appeal.
7. Lamah he'evarta ha'avir et ha-am ha-zeh et ha-yarden ('why did you bring this people across the Jordan') — Joshua's complaint echoes the wilderness murmuring of the exodus generation (cf. Exodus 14:11-12; Numbers 14:2-3). The same generation that pledged total obedience in 1:16-18 now sounds like the parents who wanted to go back to Egypt. Joshua is momentarily reduced to the posture of the defeated, questioning God's purpose. The parallel to Moses's own moments of frustration (Numbers 11:11-15) is unmistakable — leadership under pressure produces the same raw prayers.
7. V'lu ho'alnu vanneshev b'ever ha-yarden ('if only we had been willing to stay on the other side of the Jordan') — this is theologically dangerous. Joshua is questioning whether the crossing itself was a mistake — which would mean God's most explicit command (1:2) was wrong. God's response (vv. 10-15) will be sharp.
8. Hafakh Yisrael oref lifnei oy'av ('Israel has turned its neck/back before its enemies') — the idiom 'to turn the back of the neck' (oref) means to flee. The word oref ('back of the neck, nape') is associated with stubbornness when applied to Israel's character ('stiff-necked,' q'sheh oref) — here it takes on a different shame: the neck that should have been stiffened in resolve against enemies is instead turned away in flight.
9. U-mah ta'aseh l'shimkha ha-gadol ('and what will you do for your great name?') — Joshua's final argument shifts from Israel's survival to God's reputation. If Israel is destroyed, God's name — His fame, His renown among the nations — will be diminished. This argument echoes Moses's intercessory logic in Exodus 32:11-14 and Numbers 14:13-16, where Moses persuaded God not to destroy Israel precisely because it would undermine His reputation among the nations. Joshua instinctively reaches for the same theological leverage: God's honor is at stake.
9. V'hikhreitu et sh'menu min ha-arets ('and cut off our name from the earth') — the destruction of a 'name' (shem) in the ancient world means extinction of memory, lineage, and identity. Joshua envisions total annihilation — not merely military defeat but civilizational erasure.
10. Qum lakh ('stand up,' literally 'rise for yourself') — God's response to Joshua's lament is blunt and impatient. There is no comforting word, no reassurance, no pastoral sympathy. God issues a command: get up. The prostration and anguish are misplaced because Joshua is grieving a military defeat when he should be addressing a covenant violation. The problem is not that God has abandoned Israel — the problem is that Israel has abandoned God's command.
11. Chata Yisrael ('Israel has sinned') — again the corporate formulation. God does not say 'Achan has sinned' but 'Israel has sinned.' The five-fold indictment escalates with repeated v'gam ('and also, and moreover'): (1) avru et b'riti ('they violated my covenant'), (2) laqchu min ha-cherem ('they took from the devoted things'), (3) ganvu ('they stole'), (4) kichash'u ('they deceived/acted falsely'), (5) samu vi-khleiheim ('they put it among their own belongings'). Each 'also' adds a new dimension of guilt — covenant violation, theft, deception, and appropriation. One man's act is described as the nation's sin because covenant solidarity means shared responsibility.
11. Avru et b'riti ('they have transgressed my covenant') — the verb avar ('to cross over, to transgress') here means to cross a boundary that should not be crossed. The irony is sharp: Israel 'crossed' the Jordan by divine power (chapters 3-4) but has now 'crossed' God's covenant boundary by human greed. The same verb for liberation becomes the verb for violation.
12. Ki hayu l'cherem ('because they have become cherem') — the warning of 6:18 has come true. By taking cherem objects into their camp, Israel itself has become cherem — devoted to destruction. The contagion that Joshua warned about has infected the entire nation. Israel is now in the same category as Jericho: marked for divine destruction.

12. Lo osif lihyot immakhem ('I will not continue to be with you') — the most terrifying statement in the chapter. God's presence — the foundation of every promise (1:5, 9; 3:7) — is conditionally withdrawn. The 'I will be with you' that grounded Joshua's courage is now suspended. Without divine presence, Israel is just another small people in Canaan, and the Deuteronomic logic kicks in: no presence no victory no land.
12. Im lo tashmeidu ha-cherem miqirb'khem ('unless you destroy the devoted things from your midst') — the remedy is surgical: the cherem must be removed from the community. The verb hashmid ('to destroy, to annihilate') is severe — whatever is cherem within Israel must be eliminated entirely.
13. Qum qaddesh et ha-am ('Get up, consecrate the people') — the same consecration command as 3:5, but with opposite emotional valence. There, consecration prepared for a miracle of salvation; here, it prepares for a process of judgment. The holiness required to approach God works in both directions — it enables blessing and it exposes sin.
13. Cherem b'qirb'kha Yisrael ('a devoted thing is in your midst, Israel') — God reveals the nature of the problem but not the identity of the offender. Israel knows what has happened (the cherem has been violated) but not who did it. The identification process (vv. 14-18) will narrow from tribe to clan to household to individual — a dramatic winnowing that forces the entire community to stand before God and be examined.
14. The process of identification narrows through four levels: shevet (tribe) mishpachah (clan) bayit (household) g'varim (individual men). The verb yilk'dennu ('will take/select/catch') uses lakad, which means to capture or seize — the language of hunting or trapping. God is closing in on the guilty individual through a systematic elimination process. The method (likely involving sacred lots, the Urim and Thummim) is not specified, but the text presents each selection as God's direct act — YHWH identifies the guilty party at each level.
15. Yissaref ba-esh oto v'et kol asher lo ('he will be burned with fire, he and everything he has') — the punishment mirrors the cherem itself: just as Jericho was burned (6:24), so the covenant violator and all his possessions will be burned. He has made himself cherem by taking cherem, and the treatment of cherem is fire.
15. Ki avar et berit YHWH ('because he has violated the covenant of the LORD') — the violation is framed as covenant breach, not mere theft. This is the language of Deuteronomy 17:2 (the penalty for covenant violation through idolatry). The punishment is proportional to the offense: betraying the covenant that gives Israel the land jeopardizes Israel's hold on the land.
15. Asah n'valah b'Yisrael ('committed an outrage/folly in Israel') — n'valah is a strong term for an act so disgraceful that it shames the entire community. It is used for Shechem's rape of Dinah (Genesis 34:7), the Gibeah atrocity (Judges 19:23-24; 20:6, 10), and Amnon's assault on Tamar (2 Samuel 13:12). The word places Achan's theft alongside the worst acts in Israel's history — not because theft is equivalent to assault, but because covenant treachery against God is an outrage of the highest order.
16. Vayyillakhed shevet Yehudah ('the tribe of Judah was taken/selected') — the lot falls on Judah, the leading tribe, the tribe of Caleb, and later the tribe of David. The violation comes not from a marginal or minor tribe but from Israel's most prominent. The narrative makes no attempt to protect Judah's reputation — faithfulness and unfaithfulness cross all tribal boundaries.
17. The narrowing process moves from tribe (Judah) clan (Zerahites, descended from Zerah son of Judah, Genesis 38:30) household head (Zabdi). Each step tightens the circle around Achan. The public nature of the process means the entire nation watches as the guilt is systematically located — the shame and tension mount with each selection.
18. Vayyillakhed Akhan — the four-generation genealogy from verse 1 is repeated in full, creating a formal identification. The man whose individual act was described as the sin of 'Israel' (v. 1) is now personally identified by name, parentage, and tribe. The process has moved from national guilt to individual accountability — but the text holds both dimensions simultaneously. Achan sinned and Israel sinned; Achan will be punished and Israel will be restored.
19. B'ni ('my son') — Joshua addresses Achan with paternal tenderness, not judicial coldness. The address acknowledges the familial bond within Israel even in the moment of judgment. Joshua is the father-figure of the nation, and the guilty man is still 'my son.'
19. Sim na kavod la-YHWH ... v'ten lo todah ('give glory to the LORD and make confession to him') — the phrase 'give glory' (sim kavod) here means to honor God by telling the truth. Todah can mean both 'thanksgiving' and 'confession' — here it is confession, an acknowledgment of what really happened. Joshua asks Achan to confirm by his own mouth what the divine lot has already revealed. The confession is not for God's benefit (He already knows) but for the community's — truth must be spoken aloud.
20. Omnah anokhi chatati la-YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('truly, I have sinned against the LORD, the God of Israel') — Achan's confession uses the formal first person anokhi ('I') rather than the common ani, giving the confession a gravity and deliberateness. The sin is acknowledged as being against YHWH specifically — not against Israel, not against Joshua, but against God. The confession echoes David's later acknowledgment in Psalm 51:4 ('against you, you alone, have I sinned').
20. V'khazot v'khazot asiti ('and thus and thus I did') — the phrase introduces the detailed confession that follows. Achan hides nothing.
21. Va'ereh ... va'echm'dem ... va'eqqachem ('I saw ... I coveted ... I took') — Achan's confession traces the three-step progression of sin: seeing, desiring, taking. The sequence echoes Eve's temptation in Genesis 3:6 (she saw that the tree was good, she desired it, she took). The narrative pattern is deliberate — coveting leads to taking in both Eden and Jericho, and both acts rupture the covenant relationship.
21. Adderet Shin'ar ('a robe from Shinar') — Shinar is the biblical name for Babylon (Genesis 10:10; 11:2; Daniel 1:2). A Babylonian garment would have been a luxury item of extraordinary value and craftsmanship. The irony: Achan covets a product of the very civilization that will eventually destroy Israel and carry Judah into exile.

- 21.** Matayim sh'qalim kesef ('two hundred shekels of silver') — approximately 5 pounds (2.3 kg) of silver. U-l'shon zahav echad chamishim sh'qalim mishqalo ('one bar/tongue of gold weighing fifty shekels') — about 1.25 pounds (0.6 kg) of gold. The total value was enormous — a lifetime's wages for a common laborer. The temptation was real.
- 21.** T'munim ba-arets b'tokh ha-oholi ('hidden in the ground inside my tent') — Achan buried the items underground inside his tent, concealing the cherem from human eyes but not from God's.
- 22.** Vayyarutsu ha-ohelah ('they ran to the tent') — the urgency is palpable. The messengers run — they do not walk — to verify the confession. V'hinneḥ t'munah b'oholo ('and there it was, hidden in his tent') — the evidence matches Achan's confession exactly. The narrative confirms his honesty in confession, even though it came too late to prevent the consequences.
- 23.** Vayyatsiqum lifnei YHWH ('they poured/spread them out before the LORD') — the verb yatsaq ('to pour out') may describe laying the items out on the ground or literally pouring the silver coins/pieces out in a display. The presentation is before YHWH — not merely before Joshua or the people. The stolen goods are returned to their rightful owner: God. The public display forces the entire community to see what coveting and stealing from God looks like.
- 24.** The list is comprehensive and devastating: Achan, the stolen items, his sons and daughters, his livestock, his tent, and everything he possesses. The punishment extends beyond Achan to his household — the corporate nature of guilt in ancient Israelite theology means the household shares in the consequences. This is deeply troubling to modern readers, and the text does not soften or explain the extension of punishment to Achan's children. The Covenant Rendering records what the text says without editorial justification or condemnation.
- 24.** Emeq Akhor ('the Valley of Achor') — the name means 'Valley of Trouble/Disaster,' derived from the root akhar ('to trouble'), which is the verb Joshua uses in verse 25. The place is named from the event, as with Gilgal (5:9) and Gibeath-haaraloth (5:3). The valley is referenced later in Hosea 2:15, where God promises to make the Valley of Achor 'a door of hope' — transforming the site of judgment into a symbol of restoration.
- 25.** Meh akhartanu ya'akhorkha YHWH ba-yom ha-zeh ('Why have you troubled us? The LORD will trouble you today') — the wordplay on akhar ('to trouble, to bring disaster') is central to the passage. Achan's name itself sounds like akhar, and the valley is named from the same root. The punishment matches the crime linguistically: the one who troubled Israel is troubled by God. The play on words is untranslatable without losing either the name or the concept, so the notes must make it explicit.
- 25.** Vayyirgemu oto kol Yisrael even vayyisr'fu otam ba-esh vayyisq'lu otam ba-avanim ('all Israel stoned him with stones and burned them with fire and covered them with stones') — the execution is communal (kol Yisrael, 'all Israel') — the entire community participates in removing the cherem from its midst. The shift from singular 'him' (oto) to plural 'them' (otam) in burning and stoning is ambiguous: it may refer to the stolen objects being burned and Achan being stoned, or it may include his family members. The text does not clarify, and the translator notes should acknowledge this ambiguity honestly.
- 26.** Vayyashov YHWH mecharon appo ('the LORD turned from his fierce anger') — the removal of the cherem violation restores the covenant relationship. God's anger, which was the cause of the defeat at Ai (vv. 1, 12), is now spent. The passage from 7:1 to 7:26 traces a complete arc: sin divine anger defeat discovery confession punishment restoration. The next chapter will demonstrate the restoration through a successful attack on Ai.
- 26.** Gal avanim gadol ('a great pile of stones') — this cairn is the dark counterpart to the memorial stones at Gilgal (4:20). Both are stone memorials that provoke questions; both tell a story. But where the Gilgal stones tell a story of divine faithfulness, the Achor stones tell a story of human unfaithfulness and its cost. The two memorials, set early in the book of Joshua, establish the Deuteronomic pattern: obedience leads to blessing (Gilgal), disobedience to destruction (Achor).

8

Summary: *God reassures Joshua and gives the strategy for Ai's capture through ambush. Israel destroys Ai, and Joshua builds an altar on Mount Ebal, writing a copy of Moses's Law on plastered stones and reading it before all Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Ai narrative reverses chapter 7: with the cherem violation purged, God fights for Israel again. The ambush strategy (vv. 3-8) is the first use of conventional military tactics in Joshua — after Jericho's miraculous walls, Ai requires human planning within divine authorization. The Ebal ceremony (vv. 30-35) fulfills Deuteronomy 27:2-8 exactly: altar, plastered stones, Torah written, blessings and curses read with all Israel — including women, children, and foreigners — present.*

Translation Friction: *The troop numbers for the ambush vary between verses 3 and 12 (thirty thousand vs. five thousand), a textual difficulty present in all manuscripts. We rendered both numbers as the Hebrew gives them and noted the discrepancy. The phrase mishneh torat Mosheh (v. 32, 'a copy of the Law of Moses') uses the same mishneh as Deuteronomy 17:18, connecting the king's Torah-copy to this public inscription.*

Connections: The Ebal ceremony fulfills Deuteronomy 11:29-30 and 27:1-8. The burning of Ai ('the ruin,' from the Hebrew root meaning 'heap') may be etiological — the city was named for what it became. Joshua's outstretched javelin (v. 18) mirrors Moses's outstretched staff at the Red Sea (Exodus 17:11-12). The inclusion of foreigners in the Torah reading (v. 35) anticipates the Gentile inclusion theme.

¹The LORD said to Joshua, "Do not be afraid and do not lose heart. Take the entire fighting force with you, and move out to attack Ai. See — I have handed over to you the king of Ai, his people, his city, and his land. ²Do to Ai and its king what you did to Jericho and its king — except that you may keep the plunder and livestock for yourselves. Set an ambush behind the city." ³Joshua and the entire fighting force set out to attack Ai. Joshua selected thirty thousand of the best warriors and sent them out at night. ⁴He gave them these orders: "You are to lie in ambush behind the city. Do not go too far from it — all of you stay ready. ⁵I and all the troops with me will advance toward the city. When they come out against us as they did before, we will retreat before them. ⁶They will come out after us until we have drawn them away from the city, because they will think, 'They are fleeing from us just like last time.' So we will flee from them. ⁷Then you will rise from the ambush and take the city. The LORD your God will hand it over to you. ⁸When you have taken the city, set it on fire. Do this according to the word of the LORD. See — I have given you your orders." ⁹Joshua sent them out, and they went to the ambush position and took up their place between Bethel and Ai, west of Ai. Joshua spent that night among the people. ¹⁰Joshua rose early in the morning, mustered the troops, and marched at the head of the army with the elders of Israel toward Ai. ¹¹The entire fighting force with him advanced, approached, and arrived opposite the city. They camped north of Ai, with a valley between them and the city. ¹²He selected roughly five thousand soldiers and stationed them as an ambush force between Bethel and Ai, to the west of the city. ¹³So the people positioned the entire camp north of the city, with its rear guard west of the city. That night Joshua went into the middle of the valley. ¹⁴When the king of Ai saw the Israelites, he and all his men hurried out early to engage Israel in battle at the designated place facing the Arabah. He did not know there was an ambush set against him behind the city. ¹⁵Joshua and all Israel let themselves be driven back before them and fled toward the wilderness. ¹⁶Every man in Ai was called out to pursue them. As they chased Joshua, they were drawn away from the city. ¹⁷Not a man was left in Ai or Bethel who had not gone out after Israel. They left the city wide open and pursued Israel. ¹⁸The LORD said to Joshua, "Hold out the javelin in your hand toward Ai, for I will give it into your hand." So Joshua held out the javelin in his hand toward the city. ¹⁹The ambush force rose quickly from its position and rushed forward the moment he stretched out his hand. They entered the city, captured it, and immediately set it on fire. ²⁰When the men of Ai looked back, they saw the smoke of the city rising to the sky, and they had no strength to flee in any direction — for the force that had been fleeing toward the wilderness now turned on the pursuers. ²¹When Joshua and all Israel saw that the ambush force had captured the city and that smoke was rising from it, they turned and struck down the men of Ai. ²²The ambush force came out of the city to meet them, so the men of Ai were caught in the middle — Israelites on both sides. They struck them down until no survivor or fugitive remained. ²³The king of Ai they captured alive and brought him to Joshua. ²⁴When Israel had finished killing all the inhabitants of Ai in the open field and in the wilderness where they had chased them, and every last one had fallen by the sword, all of Israel returned to Ai and put it to the sword. ²⁵The total who fell that day, both men and women, was twelve thousand — all the people of Ai. ²⁶Joshua did not lower the hand holding the javelin until he had devoted all the inhabitants of Ai to destruction. ²⁷Only the livestock and the plunder of the city did Israel take as spoil for themselves, according to the word of the LORD that he had commanded Joshua. ²⁸Joshua burned Ai and made it a permanent ruin — a desolation to this day. ²⁹He hung the king of Ai on a tree until evening. At sunset, Joshua ordered them to take his body down from the tree and throw it at the entrance of the city gate. They raised a great pile of stones over it that remains to this day. ³⁰Joshua built an altar to the LORD, the God of Israel, on Mount Ebal, ³¹just as Moses the servant of the LORD had commanded the Israelites — as it is written in the book of the law of Moses: an altar of uncut stones, on which no iron tool had been used. On it they offered burnt offerings to the LORD and sacrificed fellowship offerings. ³²There, on the stones, he inscribed a copy of the law of Moses, which Moses had written, in the presence of the Israelites. ³³All Israel — their elders, officers, and judges — stood on both sides of the ark, facing the Levitical priests who carried the ark of the covenant of the LORD. Resident foreigners and native-born alike were there, half facing Mount Gerizim and half facing Mount Ebal, just as

Moses the servant of the LORD had earlier commanded for the blessing of the people of Israel. ³⁴After that, he read aloud all the words of the law — the blessings and the curses — exactly as written in the book of the law. ³⁵There was not a single word of everything Moses had commanded that Joshua did not read aloud before the entire assembly of Israel — including the women, the children, and the foreigners living among them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Al tira v'al techat ('do not be afraid and do not lose heart') — the same pair of fear words from 1:9, now repeated after the Ai defeat. God reassures Joshua that the Achan crisis is resolved and the divine presence has been restored. The encouragement is needed: Joshua's last experience at Ai was humiliating flight.
1. Qach imm'kha et kol am ha-milchamah ('take the entire fighting force with you') — a deliberate correction of the first attempt, where scouts recommended sending only two or three thousand (7:3). This time the full army goes. The earlier overconfidence is replaced by proper mobilization under divine instruction.
1. Re'eh natatti b'yadkha ('see, I have given into your hand') — the identical perfect-tense formula from 6:2 (Jericho). The pattern reasserts itself: God declares the victory accomplished before the battle begins. The divine grant that was suspended during the Achan crisis is now restored.
2. Raq sh'lalah uv'hemtah tavozu lakhem ('only its plunder and livestock you may take for yourselves') — the critical difference from Jericho: Ai is not under full cherem. The spoils may be kept. This makes Achan's sin in chapter 7 even more bitter — had he simply waited for the next city, the plunder would have been legitimately his. His impatience cost him everything.
2. Sim l'kha orev la-ir me'achareha ('set an ambush behind the city') — unlike Jericho's liturgical warfare, Ai will fall by conventional military tactics: an ambush. God prescribes different methods for different situations. The theological point is not that Israel must always fight by miracle but that Israel must always fight under divine direction. Obedience is the constant; the tactics vary.
3. Sh'loshim elef ish gibborei ha-chayil ('thirty thousand men, mighty warriors') — this is the ambush force. The number is far larger than the first Ai expedition (three thousand, 7:3-4). Some scholars note a tension between this figure and the five thousand of verse 12, suggesting either two ambush groups or a textual variant. The narrative may describe a large main force with a smaller specialized ambush detachment.
4. Al tarcheiqu min ha-ir me'od ('do not go too far from the city') — the ambush force must remain close enough to strike quickly when the signal comes. Vihyitem kulkhem n'khonim ('all of you be ready/prepared') — the participle nakkon conveys a state of constant readiness. There will be no second chance to spring the trap.
5. V'nasnu lifneihem ('we will flee before them') — Joshua plans a feigned retreat, deliberately mimicking the genuine rout of the first battle (7:4-5). The defenders of Ai will see what they expect to see: Israelites fleeing again. The tactical deception works because it exploits the enemy's confidence built on their previous victory. What was Israel's genuine shame in chapter 7 becomes a strategic tool in chapter 8.
6. Ad hatiqenu otam min ha-ir ('until we have pulled them away from the city') — the verb nataq ('to pull away, to draw out') describes the lure. The tactical objective is clear: empty the city of defenders by exploiting their overconfidence. Ki yomru nasim l'faneinu ka'asher ba-rishonah ('because they will say, they are fleeing before us as at first') — Joshua reads the enemy's psychology perfectly. The Ai defenders' greatest strength (their previous victory) becomes their fatal vulnerability.
7. V'horisitem et ha-ir ('you will take possession of the city') — the verb yarash ('to take possession, to dispossess') reappears — the key conquest verb from chapter 1. Un'tanah YHWH Eloheikhem b'yedkhem ('the LORD your God will give it into your hand') — even within conventional military tactics, the victory is attributed to divine action. The ambush succeeds because God gives the city, not because the tactic is clever.
8. Tatsivu et ha-ir ba-esh ('set the city on fire') — the burning of Ai parallels the burning of Jericho (6:24). Fire serves as the instrument of divine judgment. Kidvar YHWH ta'asu ('according to the word of the LORD you will do') — Joshua frames his tactical orders as divine command. Military action and covenant obedience remain fused: even the ambush is 'according to the word of the LORD.'
9. Vayyalen Yehoshua ba-lailah ha-hu b'tokh ha-am ('Joshua spent that night among the troops') — the commander sleeps with his soldiers in the field. The detail humanizes Joshua and demonstrates his solidarity with the army on the eve of battle.
10. Vayyifqod et ha-am ('he mustered/reviewed the troops') — the verb paqad ('to visit, to attend to, to muster, to count') here describes a military review before deployment. Joshua personally inspects and organizes the force before the advance.
11. V'ha-gay beino u-vein ha-Ai ('with the valley between him and Ai') — the valley separates the main force from the city, creating a visible gap. The defenders of Ai will see the Israelite camp across the valley and come out to engage — not realizing the ambush force is hidden behind them to the west (v. 9). The geography sets the trap.
12. Ka-chameshet alafim ish ('about five thousand men') — this second ambush group (or a more specific number for the same ambush) has prompted scholarly discussion about the relationship to the thirty thousand of verse 3. The most common explanations: (1) two separate ambush forces at different positions, (2) a textual variant where the numbers reflect different source traditions, or (3) verse 12 specifies a specialized strike team within the larger force. The narrative does not resolve the tension, and the rendering follows the text as it stands.

13. Et aqev miyyam la-ir ('its rear/heel west of the city') — the word aqev ('heel, rear') describes the trailing element — the ambush force positioned behind (west of) the city. The main camp is visible to the north; the ambush is hidden to the west. The trap is set.
13. Vayyalekh Yehoshua ba-lailah ha-hu b'tokh ha-emeq ('Joshua went that night into the middle of the valley') — Joshua positions himself in the valley between his camp and Ai, making himself visible and vulnerable. He is the bait.
14. V'hu lo yada ki orev lo me'acharei ha-ir ('he did not know there was an ambush behind the city') — the narrator highlights the king's fatal ignorance. His previous victory (7:4-5) has made him overconfident. La-mo'ed lifnei ha-aravah ('at the appointed place/time, facing the Arabah') — the phrase la-mo'ed may mean 'at the appointed time' (a prearranged battle position) or 'at the designated place.' Either way, the king deploys to the expected battle zone — and walks into the trap.
15. Vayyinnag'u ('they allowed themselves to be struck/driven back') — the niphal form suggests the retreat is permitted rather than forced. The feigned rout toward the wilderness (derekh ha-midbar, the eastward road) draws the defenders away from the city and deeper into the trap. The discipline required to execute a convincing fake retreat — running as if genuinely terrified while maintaining unit cohesion — is one of the most difficult maneuvers in ancient warfare.
16. Vayyinnat'qu min ha-ir ('they were drawn/pulled away from the city') — the verb nataq ('to be pulled, to be torn away') is the same verb Joshua used in verse 6 (hatiqenu, 'we will pull them away'). The plan unfolds exactly as designed. The key detail: kol ha-am asher ba-Ai ('all the people who were in Ai') — every defender leaves the city. No one remains to guard it.
17. Vayyaazvu et ha-ir p'tuchah ('they left the city open') — the gates stand open, the walls undefended, the city empty. The mention of Bethel (beit El) suggests Bethel's forces had joined Ai's pursuit, leaving both cities undefended. The folly is complete: the entire defensive force has abandoned its fortification to chase a retreating enemy into open ground.
18. N'teh ba-kidon asher b'yadkha el ha-Ai ('stretch out the javelin that is in your hand toward Ai') — the gesture deliberately echoes Moses stretching out his staff over the Red Sea (Exodus 14:16, 26) and during the battle with Amalek (Exodus 17:8-13). Joshua's extended weapon is not a military signal but a symbolic act of divine power channeled through the leader's hand. The kidon ('javelin' or 'curved sword/scimitar') becomes a ritual instrument, like Moses's staff.
18. Ki v'yadkha ettenennah ('for I will give it into your hand') — the javelin in Joshua's hand becomes a pun: God will give the city 'into his hand' while Joshua extends the weapon in his hand. Physical gesture and divine action converge.
19. Kin'tot yado ('when he stretched out his hand') — Joshua's extended javelin serves as both the divine signal and the tactical signal. The ambush springs the moment his hand goes up. The synchronization is perfect: the feigned retreat draws the enemy out, Joshua raises the javelin, and the ambush force storms the empty city.
19. Vaymaharu vayyatsivu et ha-ir ba-esh ('they hurried and set the city on fire') — speed is essential. The smoke will serve as the signal to the pursuing Ai defenders that their city is lost (v. 20).
20. V'lo hayah vahem yadayim lanus hennah va-hennah ('they had no power/hands to flee this way or that') — the idiom 'no hands' (yadayim) means no capacity, no means of escape. The Ai forces are caught in the open between the main Israelite force (now turning to fight) and the ambush force emerging from the burning city behind them. The trap is complete.
20. V'ha-am ha-nas ha-midbar nehphakh el ha-rodef ('the people fleeing toward the wilderness turned on the pursuers') — the verb hafakh ('to turn, to reverse') captures the sudden reversal: hunters become prey, pursuers become the pursued. The fake retreat becomes a real attack.
21. The smoke serves as the signal that closes the trap. Joshua sees the smoke, confirms the ambush has succeeded, and orders the main force to turn and fight. The Ai defenders now face combat on two fronts with no city to retreat to.
22. Vayyihyu l'Yisrael ba-tavekh ('they were in the midst of Israel') — the Ai fighters are completely surrounded, Israelites on every side. Ad bilti hish'ir lo sarid u-falit ('until there was no survivor or fugitive left') — the destruction is total. The double term sarid u-falit ('survivor and fugitive') is a merism meaning absolutely no one escaped.
23. Taf'su chai ('they captured alive') — the king is taken alive for judgment, not killed in battle. His fate will be described in verse 29. The capture of the king personally represents the complete overthrow of Ai's political and military authority.
24. The narrative describes two phases of killing: first the defenders caught in the open field during the pursuit, then the remaining population in the city itself. L'fi cherev ('by the mouth of the sword') — the standard idiom for death in combat. The phrase ad tummam ('until they were finished/consumed') from the root tamam ('to be complete') indicates total destruction.
25. Sh'neim asar elef ('twelve thousand') — the total population of Ai. As with other large numbers in Joshua, elef may function as a military unit term ('contingent') rather than the numeral 'thousand,' which would yield a smaller but still significant figure. Kol anshei ha-Ai ('all the people of Ai') — the city's entire population. The text does not flinch from recording total destruction.
26. Lo heshiv yado asher natah ba-kidon ('he did not withdraw his hand that he had stretched out with the javelin') — the parallel to Moses holding up his hands during the battle with Amalek (Exodus 17:11-12) is now explicit. As long as Moses's hands were raised, Israel prevailed; when they dropped, Amalek prevailed. Joshua holds his javelin aloft throughout the entire battle. The raised weapon is an act of sustained faith and divine channeling, not a military command signal.

26. Ad asher hecherim et kol yosh'vei ha-Ai ('until he had devoted all the inhabitants of Ai to destruction') — the verb hecherim (hiphil of charam) applies the sacred ban. Despite the permission to take plunder (v. 2), the people themselves are placed under cherem.
27. Kidvar YHWH asher tsivvah et Yehoshua ('according to the word of the LORD that he commanded Joshua') — Israel obeys the plunder permission of verse 2 precisely. The contrast with Achan's violation is pointed: when God permits plunder, Israel takes it lawfully; when God prohibits it (Jericho), one man's disobedience brought disaster. The lesson is not 'never take spoils' but 'take only what God permits.'
28. Tel olam sh'mamah ('a permanent mound/ruin, a desolation') — a tel is an artificial mound formed by accumulated layers of destruction and rebuilding. Here the tel will not be rebuilt — it remains a sh'mamah ('desolation, wasteland') olam ('permanently'). The name ha-Ai ('the ruin') proves prophetically fitting: the city whose name means 'ruin' becomes a permanent ruin. Ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') again signals the narrator's temporal distance and the enduring visibility of the site.
29. Talah al ha-ets ('hung on a tree/pole') — public exposure of an executed enemy as a display of total victory. The practice is regulated in Deuteronomy 21:22-23, which commands that a hanged body must be removed before nightfall: 'you must not leave his body on the tree overnight, for a hanged person is cursed by God, and you must not defile the land.' Joshua obeys this law precisely — ukh'vo ha-shemesh ('at sunset') the body is taken down.
29. Vayyaqimu alav gal avanim gadol ('they raised a great pile of stones over him') — the third stone cairn in Joshua, after the memorial at Gilgal (4:20) and the cairn over Achan (7:26). Each cairn tells a different story: divine faithfulness (Gilgal), Israelite unfaithfulness (Achor), and enemy defeat (Ai). The landscape fills with stone witnesses.
30. The narrative abruptly shifts from battlefield to sanctuary. Joshua builds an altar on Mount Ebal, fulfilling Moses's command in Deuteronomy 27:4-8. The location is significant: Ebal and Gerizim flank the valley of Shechem, roughly in the center of Canaan. Israel has marched approximately twenty miles north from Ai without reported opposition — either the Canaanite collapse of nerve (5:1) kept them from resisting, or the narrative condenses the journey. The covenant renewal ceremony (vv. 30-35) is the theological climax of the conquest's first phase.
31. Mizbach avanim sh'lebot asher lo henif aleihem barzel ('an altar of whole/uncut stones on which no iron was lifted') — the altar is built from undressed stones, following the regulation of Exodus 20:25 and Deuteronomy 27:5-6. The prohibition against using iron tools preserves the stones' natural state — human craftsmanship must not alter what will serve as a point of contact between God and Israel.
31. Olot ('burnt offerings') and sh'lamim ('fellowship/peace offerings') — the two primary categories of voluntary sacrifice. The olah is entirely consumed by fire (total dedication to God); the sh'lamim involves a shared meal (communion between God and worshipers). Together they represent complete worship: total devotion and covenant fellowship.
31. Ka'asher tsivvah Mosheh ... ka-katuv b'sefer torat Mosheh ('as Moses commanded ... as written in the book of the law of Moses') — the altar is built not by Joshua's design but by Moses's prior instruction. Every detail of the covenant renewal traces back to Mosaic authority, reinforcing the continuity of the Sinai covenant into the promised land.
32. Mishneh torat Mosheh ('a copy of the law of Moses') — the word mishneh means 'copy, duplicate, second version.' This fulfills Deuteronomy 27:3, 8, which commanded the law to be written on plastered stones at the site. The inscription creates a permanent, public, visible record of the covenant terms in the promised land. What was spoken at Sinai and repeated on the plains of Moab is now inscribed in stone at the heart of Canaan.
32. Lifnei b'nei Yisrael ('in the presence of the Israelites') — the writing is a public act, witnessed by the entire assembly. The covenant is not a secret agreement between God and the leaders but a public commitment of the whole nation.
33. Ka-ger ka-ezrach ('foreigner and native-born alike') — the covenant assembly includes non-Israelites who live among them. The ger ('resident alien, sojourner') stands alongside the ezrach ('native-born citizen') in the covenant ceremony. This inclusivity is theologically significant: covenant membership extends beyond ethnic boundaries. Rahab and her household (6:25) would be among these gerim.
33. Chetsyo el mul har Gerizim v'ha-chetsyo el mul har Ebal ('half facing Mount Gerizim and half facing Mount Ebal') — the two mountains flank the valley of Shechem like a natural amphitheater. Gerizim is the mountain of blessing, Ebal the mountain of curse (Deuteronomy 11:29; 27:12-13). Israel stands between blessing and curse, surrounded by the physical landscape of covenant consequence. The arrangement fulfills Deuteronomy 27:11-13 precisely.
34. Et kol divrei ha-torah ha-b'rakhah v'ha-q'lalah ('all the words of the instruction, the blessing and the curse') — the content read aloud is the Deuteronomic covenant: the blessings for obedience (Deuteronomy 28:1-14) and the curses for disobedience (Deuteronomy 28:15-68). The Ebal/Gerizim ceremony makes the Deuteronomic theology physically and audibly real: Israel hears the blessings from one mountain and the curses from the other, surrounded by the consequences of their covenant choice.
34. K'kol ha-katuv b'sefer ha-torah ('according to everything written in the book of the law') — nothing is omitted. The entire covenant document is read publicly. This is the torah meditation of 1:8 enacted communally — the book of the law on the lips of the whole nation.
35. Lo hayah davar mikkol asher tsivvah Mosheh asher lo qara Yehoshua ('there was not a word of everything Moses commanded that Joshua did not read') — the double negative creates an emphatic positive: Joshua read absolutely everything. Not a single word of the Mosaic instruction was skipped. This verse serves as the certification that Joshua fulfilled the torah charge of 1:7-8 completely.
35. V'ha-nashim v'ha-taf v'ha-ger ha-holekh b'qirbam ('the women, the children, and the foreigners living among them') — the audience is comprehensive. Covenant responsibility and covenant knowledge belong to every member of the community: men, women, children, and resident foreigners. No one is excluded from hearing the terms. The chapter closes with the fullest possible picture of covenant Israel: an army that has

conquered through obedience, standing between the mountains of blessing and curse, listening to every word of the law that defines their relationship with God.

9

Summary: *The Gibeonites deceive Israel with worn-out clothes and stale bread, claiming to be from a distant land. Israel makes a peace treaty without consulting God. When the deception is discovered, the Gibeonites are spared but made permanent servants.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'they did not ask counsel from the mouth of the LORD' (v. 14, et-pi YHWH lo sha'alu) is the chapter's verdict — the failure is not military but prayerful. Israel's leaders relied on their own investigation (they inspected the evidence) rather than inquiring of God. The Gibeonites' strategy exploits Deuteronomy 20:10-15, which allows peace treaties with distant cities — they pretend to be far away to qualify for the exception.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase berit shalom (v. 15, 'covenant of peace') uses the covenant vocabulary for what is essentially a treaty obtained by fraud. We rendered it as 'treaty' to distinguish it from divine covenant. The Gibeonites' punishment — 'woodcutters and water carriers for the house of my God' (v. 23) — transforms them from free deceivers into temple servants, a judgment that is also a kind of inclusion.*

Connections: *The Gibeonite treaty has consequences in 2 Samuel 21:1-9, where Saul's violation of it brings famine. Gibeon becomes a significant site: the tabernacle is located there (1 Chronicles 21:29, 2 Chronicles 1:3), and Solomon receives his wisdom vision at Gibeon (1 Kings 3:4-5). The failure to inquire of God echoes the Ai disaster (ch. 7) and anticipates Saul's failures in 1 Samuel.*

¹When all the kings west of the Jordan heard what had happened — those in the hill country, the lowlands, and all along the coast of the Great Sea toward Lebanon — the Hittites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites — ²they gathered together as one to fight against Joshua and Israel. ³But when the people of Gibeon learned how Joshua had dealt with Jericho and Ai, ⁴and they too acted — but with cunning. They set out disguised as envoys, loading their donkeys with worn-out sacks and old wineskins that were cracked and patched. ⁵They wore old, patched sandals on their feet and threadbare clothes on their backs. All the bread in their provisions was dry and crumbling. ⁶They went to Joshua at the camp at Gilgal and said to him and to the men of Israel, "We have come from a distant land. Make a covenant with us." ⁷The men of Israel said to the Hivites, "Perhaps you actually live among us — how then could we make a covenant with you?" ⁸They said to Joshua, "We are your servants." Joshua asked them, "Who are you, and where do you come from?" ⁹They said to him, "Your servants have come from a very distant land because of the reputation of the LORD your God. For we have heard the report of him — all that he did in Egypt, ¹⁰and everything he did to the two Amorite kings east of the Jordan — Sihon king of Heshbon and Og king of Bashan, who ruled from Ashtaroth. ¹¹So our elders and all who live in our land told us, 'Take provisions for the journey, go to meet them, and say to them: We are your servants — now make a covenant with us.' ¹²This bread of ours — we packed it hot from our homes the day we set out to come to you. But look at it now: dry and crumbling. ¹³These wineskins that we filled were new — and look, they are cracked. And these clothes and sandals of ours are worn out from the very long journey." ¹⁴The men examined their provisions but did not seek the counsel of the LORD. ¹⁵Joshua made peace with them and made a covenant with them to let them live, and the leaders of the community swore an oath to them. ¹⁶Three days after they had made the covenant with them, the Israelites learned that the Gibeonites were actually their neighbors — living right among them. ¹⁷The Israelites set out and arrived at their cities on the third day. Their cities were Gibeon, Chephirah, Beeroth, and Kiriath-jearim. ¹⁸The Israelites did not attack them, because the leaders of the community had sworn an oath to them by the LORD, the God of Israel. But the entire community grumbled against the leaders. ¹⁹But all the leaders said to the entire community, "We have sworn an oath to them by the LORD, the God of Israel, and now we cannot touch them. ²⁰This is what we will do with them: we will let them live, so that wrath does not come upon us because of the oath we swore to them." ²¹The leaders said regarding them, "Let them live" — and they became woodcutters and water

carriers for the entire community, as the leaders had decreed. ²²Joshua summoned them and said, "Why did you deceive us by saying, 'We are very far from you,' when you actually live among us? ²³Now you are under a curse: none of you will ever be freed from servitude — from being woodcutters and water carriers for the house of my God." ²⁴They answered Joshua, "It was clearly reported to your servants that the LORD your God commanded his servant Moses to give you the entire land and to destroy all its inhabitants before you. We were terrified for our lives because of you, and that is why we did this. ²⁵Now we are in your hands. Do to us whatever seems good and right to you." ²⁶Joshua did so — he rescued them from the Israelites, and they were not killed. ²⁷That day Joshua assigned them as woodcutters and water carriers for the community and for the altar of the LORD — a role they hold to this day — at the place he would choose.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The geographic sweep covers the entire land: ba-har ('in the hill country,' the central highlands), ba-sh'felah ('in the lowlands,' the western foothills), and b'khol chof ha-yam ha-gadol ('along the entire coast of the Great Sea,' the Mediterranean coast). Six nations are listed — one less than the standard seven of Deuteronomy 7:1, with the Girgashites absent. The news of Jericho, Ai, and the Ebal covenant ceremony has reached every corner of Canaan.
2. Vayyitqab'tsu yachdav ... peh echad ('they gathered together ... with one mouth') — the Canaanite kings form a coalition, speaking 'with one voice.' This is the opposite of the individual paralysis described in 2:9-11 and 5:1. Fear has given way to desperation: united resistance is their last option. The coalition will be tested in chapter 10 (the southern campaign) and chapter 11 (the northern campaign).
2. The Gibeonites (introduced in verse 3) chose a different strategy from the coalition. While the other cities unite for war, Gibeon chooses deception for survival. The contrast frames chapter 9: two Canaanite responses to the Israelite threat — fight or fake.
3. V'yosh'vei Giv'on ('the inhabitants of Gibeon') — Gibeon was a significant Hivite city (v. 7; 11:19) approximately six miles northwest of Jerusalem, controlling strategic territory in the central highlands. Rather than join the coalition or fight alone, they choose a third path: negotiation through deception. Their strategy is driven by the same intelligence Rahab acted on — YHWH has given Israel the land — but their method is fraud rather than faith.
4. Vayya'asu gam hemmah b'ormah ('they too acted, but with cunning') — the word ormah ('cunning, craftiness, shrewdness') is the same word used to describe the serpent in Genesis 3:1 (arum, 'crafty'). The Gibeonites' deception echoes the primal deception of Eden. Vayyitstayaru ('they disguised themselves as envoys/provisioners') — the verb is debated; it may derive from tsir ('envoy, ambassador') or tseidah ('provisions'), suggesting either that they posed as diplomatic envoys or that they prepared fake travel provisions. The evidence supports both: they come as supposed ambassadors from a distant land, carrying provisions staged to look road-worn.
5. The staging is meticulous: ne'alot balot um'tulla'ot ('worn-out, patched sandals'), s'lamot balot ('worn-out garments'), lechem tseidam yavesh nikuddim ('dry, crumbling bread'). Every visible detail tells the same story: these people have traveled an immense distance. The deception works because it appeals to the evidence of the senses — what can be seen, touched, and examined. The Gibeonites understand that Israel's leaders will evaluate the physical evidence rather than consulting God (v. 14).
6. Me-erets r'choqah banu ('from a distant land we have come') — the claim of distant origin is the key deception. Deuteronomy 20:10-15 distinguishes between distant cities (which may be offered peace terms) and cities within the promised land (which must be placed under cherem). The Gibeonites know this distinction and exploit it: by pretending to come from far away, they make themselves eligible for a covenant that cities within Canaan cannot receive.
6. Kirtu lanu v'rit ('cut a covenant with us') — the Gibeonites ask for a berit, a binding covenant agreement. The verb karat ('to cut') refers to the ancient practice of cutting sacrificial animals when making a covenant (cf. Genesis 15:10, 17-18). They are asking for the most solemn, irrevocable form of agreement Israel can offer.
7. The Israelites' initial suspicion is exactly right: ulai b'qirbi attah yoshev ('perhaps you dwell in my midst'). They know the Deuteronomic prohibition against covenants with local populations (Deuteronomy 7:2). The narrator identifies the Gibeonites as ha-Chivvi ('the Hivites') — information the Israelites do not yet possess. The dramatic irony builds: the reader knows what the characters do not.
7. V'eikh ekhrat l'kha berit ('how could I cut a covenant with you?') — the question demonstrates Israel's awareness of the legal restriction. They recognize the danger but will ultimately fail to verify the Gibeonites' claim.
8. Avadekha anachnu ('we are your servants') — the Gibeonites offer submission before revealing their identity. The term avadim ('servants') in a diplomatic context signals willingness to accept vassal status — a subordinate position in exchange for protection. Joshua's question mi attem u-me'ayin tavo'u ('who are you and where do you come from?') is the right question. The tragedy is that he will accept a false answer.
9. L'shem YHWH Eloheka ('because of the name of the LORD your God') — the Gibeonites frame their approach in theological terms, mirroring Rahab's confession (2:9-11). They claim to have come because of YHWH's fame — His shem ('name, reputation'). This is partially true: they genuinely fear YHWH's power. But unlike Rahab, who acted in transparent faith, the Gibeonites wrap truth in deception.

9. The Gibeonites carefully mention only events from the distant past (Egypt, the Transjordan kings) and omit any reference to Jericho or Ai (vv. 9-10). This calculated omission supports their claim of distant origin — they would not yet have heard of recent local events.
10. The Gibeonites cite the same two victories Rahab cited (2:10) — Sihon and Og — but strategically omit Jericho and Ai. Rahab mentioned all the evidence, including the recent Jordan crossing; the Gibeonites edit the evidence to fit their cover story. The parallel shows how the same information can serve different purposes: Rahab used it for honest confession, the Gibeonites for calculated deception.
11. The Gibeonites construct a plausible diplomatic backstory: their elders (z'qeneinu) and populace sent them as official envoys with provisions for a long journey. The fabricated narrative is coherent and detailed — exactly the kind of story that is difficult to disprove without independent verification.
12. Zeh lachmenu cham hitstayadnu oto mibatteinu b'yom tsetenu ('this bread of ours was hot when we packed it from our houses on the day we left') — the Gibeonites use their staged props as evidence. They invite Joshua to examine the bread, the wineskins, and the clothing (vv. 12-13) — all of which appear to confirm a long journey. The appeal is to sensory evidence: see, touch, examine. The deception succeeds precisely because the evidence is tangible.
13. The three categories of staged evidence — bread, wineskins, clothing — create a cumulative case. Each item independently supports the same conclusion: a long journey from a distant land. The deception is a masterpiece of material fabrication. Me-rov ha-derekh me'od ('from the very long road') — they emphasize distance one final time.
14. V'et pi YHWH lo sha'alu ('and the mouth/counsel of the LORD they did not ask') — this is the pivotal failure of the entire chapter, stated with devastating brevity. Israel's leaders examined the physical evidence (vayyiqchu me-tseidam, 'they took from their provisions' — tasting or inspecting the bread), and it checked out. But they never consulted God. The contrast with Joshua's earlier obedience is sharp: the same leader who stood barefoot on holy ground (5:15) and held his javelin aloft at God's command (8:18) now makes a binding covenant without asking God's opinion.
14. The lesson is pointed: sensory evidence can deceive; only divine counsel is reliable. This is the chapter's theological center — not that deception exists (it always will) but that Israel had the means to detect it (consulting God through the Urim and Thummim or the high priest) and chose not to use it.
15. Vayya'as lahem Yehoshua shalom vayyikhrot lahem berit l'chayyotam ('Joshua made peace with them and cut a covenant with them to let them live') — three binding commitments in rapid succession: peace (shalom), covenant (berit), and an oath (vayyishav'u). The leaders (n'si'ei ha-edah, 'the chiefs/princes of the assembly') participate in the oath, making it a communal commitment, not just Joshua's personal decision. The oath, sworn in YHWH's name (v. 18), will prove irrevocable — just as the oath to Rahab was irrevocable (6:22-25).
16. Miktseh sh'loshet yamim ('at the end of three days') — the same three-day formula that marks transitions throughout Joshua (1:11; 2:16, 22; 3:2). Ki q'rovim hem elav u-v'qirbo hem yosh'vim ('they are near to him and in his midst they are dwelling') — the revelation that the Gibeonites are local, not distant, arrives after the covenant is sealed. The oath has been sworn; it cannot be undone. The deception has succeeded.
17. The Gibeonite territory encompasses four cities — a significant confederation, not a single small town. These cities controlled strategic routes in the central highlands, making the Gibeonite alliance militarily valuable even if it was obtained by fraud. Kiriath-jearim will later become the resting place of the ark of the covenant (1 Samuel 7:1-2; 2 Samuel 6:2).
18. Ki nishb'u lahem n'si'ei ha-edah ba-YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('because the leaders had sworn to them by the LORD, the God of Israel') — the oath, even though obtained by fraud, is binding because it was sworn in YHWH's name. An oath by God cannot be broken without bringing guilt on the oath-taker. This principle will be confirmed centuries later when Saul violates the Gibeonite covenant and God sends a famine as punishment (2 Samuel 21:1-9).
18. Vayyillonu kol ha-edah al ha-n'si'im ('the entire community grumbled against the leaders') — the verb lun ('to grumble, to murmur') is the same word used for Israel's wilderness complaints against Moses (Exodus 15:24; 16:2; 17:3; Numbers 14:2). The people's anger is understandable but misdirected — the leaders made the oath, but the failure to consult God was a communal responsibility.
19. Lo nukhal lingo'a bahem ('we cannot touch them') — the leaders acknowledge the binding nature of the oath. Even a fraudulently obtained oath in YHWH's name creates an inviolable obligation. The theology of oath-keeping is absolute: God's name, once invoked, commits the speaker regardless of the circumstances under which the oath was made.
20. V'lo yihyeh aleinu qetsef al ha-sh'vu'ah ('so that wrath does not come upon us because of the oath') — the leaders fear divine qetsef ('wrath') if they break the oath. The oath creates a protective boundary around the Gibeonites: to harm them would bring God's anger upon Israel. This is not mere superstition — the narrative of 2 Samuel 21 will confirm that God does indeed punish covenant violations against the Gibeonites.
21. Chot'vei etsim v'sho'avei mayim ('woodcutters and water carriers') — the most menial labor in ancient Israelite society. The Gibeonites are given their lives but assigned permanent servitude. This represents a compromise: the oath protects their lives, but their deception costs them their freedom. The specific tasks — cutting wood and drawing water — are associated with sanctuary service in verse 23 and 27, suggesting their labor was specifically directed toward the tabernacle/temple.
22. Lammah rimmitem otanu ('why did you deceive us?') — Joshua confronts the Gibeonites directly. The verb rimmah ('to deceive, to defraud') is strong — this is deliberate fraud. Joshua's anger is evident, but the confrontation does not lead to violence, because the oath holds.

23. Arurim attem ('you are cursed') — Joshua pronounces a curse, but it is a qualified one. The Gibeonites are not sentenced to death (as they would have been under cherem) but to permanent menial service. The curse attaches them to l'veit Elohai ('to the house of my God') — their servitude is specifically directed toward the sanctuary. Their deception saves their lives but binds their descendants to permanent temple service.
23. The Gibeonites' ultimate fate is not without dignity: serving at the house of God places them in proximity to the divine presence. The Nethinim ('temple servants') mentioned in Ezra and Nehemiah are often identified with the descendants of these Gibeonite servants — a permanent place in Israel's worship, however menial its origin.
24. Ki huggad huggad la-avadekha ('it was certainly told to your servants') — the infinitive absolute construction intensifies: they received definitive, unambiguous intelligence about God's command. The Gibeonites' explanation is honest: they knew about the cherem command (l'hashmid et kol yosh'vei ha-arets, 'to destroy all the inhabitants of the land') and feared for their lives (vanira me'od l'nafshoteinu, 'we were terrified for our lives'). Their deception was a survival strategy driven by accurate theological intelligence. They are not ignorant of YHWH — they know His commands and act accordingly, even if dishonestly.
25. Hinn'nu v'yadekha ('here we are, in your hand') — complete surrender. Ka-tov v'kha-yashar b'einekha la'asot lanu aseh ('what is good and right in your eyes to do to us, do') — the Gibeonites place themselves entirely at Joshua's mercy, asking only for what is 'good and right' (tov v'yashar). The phrase yashar ('right, upright') appeals to justice: they trust that Joshua's character will prevent gratuitous cruelty even against those who deceived him.
26. Vayyatsel otam miyyad b'nei Yisrael ('he rescued them from the hand of the Israelites') — the verb natsal ('to rescue, to deliver') is normally used for God rescuing Israel. Here Joshua rescues Canaanites from his own people. The irony is layered: Israel's general protects Hivites from Israelite anger, upholding an oath obtained through fraud, because God's name was invoked and cannot be dishonored.
27. L'mizbach YHWH ('for the altar of the LORD') — the Gibeonites' servitude is specifically tied to the sacrificial worship of Israel. Their labor supports the altar — cutting the wood that fuels the burnt offerings and carrying the water needed for ritual cleansing. El ha-maqom asher yivchar ('at the place he would choose') — a direct Deuteronomic phrase referring to the future central sanctuary (Deuteronomy 12:5, 11, 14, 18). The narrator anticipates the eventual temple site in Jerusalem.
27. Ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') — the Gibeonites' status as temple servants persisted into the narrator's own time. The Nethinim ('given ones') mentioned in Ezra 2:43-58 and Nehemiah 7:46-60 among the returnees from Babylonian exile are likely their descendants — still serving at God's house centuries later. The deception that saved their lives also defined their vocation for generations.

10

Summary: *Five Amorite kings attack Gibeon for allying with Israel. Joshua marches all night to defend them. God hurls hailstones from heaven, and Joshua commands the sun and moon to stand still. The five kings are executed, and southern Canaan is conquered.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sun standing still (vv. 12-13) is the most extraordinary event in Joshua. The poem — 'Sun, stand still at Gibeon; Moon, at the Valley of Aijalon' — is quoted from the Book of Jashar, a lost collection of ancient Hebrew poetry. The narrator adds: 'there has been no day like it before or since, when the LORD listened to the voice of a man' (v. 14). The reversal is striking: throughout the Torah, humans listen to God's voice; here God listens to a human's.*

Translation Friction: *The verb dom (v. 12, 'be still/silent') applied to the sun could mean it stopped moving, stopped shining, or was silenced — the Hebrew is ambiguous between cessation of motion and cessation of light. We rendered it 'stand still' following the traditional understanding and noted the alternatives. The phrase hacharim (v. 40, 'devoted to destruction') applies the cherem to the entire southern campaign.*

Connections: *The Book of Jashar is also cited in 2 Samuel 1:18 (David's lament). The hailstone victory echoes the plague tradition (Exodus 9:18-26) and anticipates Ezekiel 38:22 and Revelation 16:21. The five-king execution in the cave (vv. 22-27) establishes a pattern repeated in Judges. The command 'do not be afraid' (v. 8) echoes 1:9 and Deuteronomy 31:6.*

1When Adoni-zedek king of Jerusalem learned that Joshua had captured Ai and devoted it to destruction — doing to Ai and its king exactly as he had done to Jericho and its king — and that the inhabitants of Gibeon had made peace with Israel and were now living among them, 2he was terrified, because Gibeon was a major city — like one of the royal capitals — and larger than Ai, with all its men being seasoned warriors. 3So Adoni-zedek king of Jerusalem sent word to Hoham king of Hebron, Piram king of Jarmuth, Japhia king of Lachish, and Debir king of Eglon: 4"Come up and help me. Let us attack Gibeon,

because it has made peace with Joshua and the Israelites." ⁵The five Amorite kings — the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, and the king of Eglon — gathered their forces, marched up, and besieged Gibeon, attacking it. ⁶The men of Gibeon sent an urgent message to Joshua at the camp at Gilgal: "Do not abandon your servants! Come up to us quickly — rescue us and help us! All the Amorite kings of the hill country have joined forces against us." ⁷Joshua marched up from Gilgal with his entire fighting force and all his best warriors. ⁸The LORD said to Joshua, "Do not be afraid of them, for I have handed them over to you. Not one of them will stand against you." ⁹Joshua fell upon them suddenly, having marched up all night from Gilgal. ¹⁰The LORD threw them into panic before Israel. He struck them with a devastating blow at Gibeon, then pursued them along the ascent of Beth-horon and struck them all the way to Azekah and Makkedah. ¹¹As they fled down from Beth-horon before Israel, the LORD hurled massive stones from the sky upon them all the way to Azekah, and they died. More were killed by the hailstones than the Israelites killed with the sword. ¹²Then Joshua spoke to the LORD on the day the LORD gave the Amorites over to Israel, and he declared in the presence of all Israel: "Sun — stand still over Gibeon! Moon — hold your place over the Valley of Aijalon!" ¹³The sun stood still and the moon held its place until the nation had taken vengeance on its enemies. Is this not recorded in the Book of Jashar? The sun stopped in the middle of the sky and did not hurry to set for an entire day. ¹⁴There has never been a day like it, before or since — a day when the LORD responded to the voice of a human being. For the LORD was fighting for Israel. ¹⁵Then Joshua returned with all Israel to the camp at Gilgal. ¹⁶The five kings fled and hid in a cave at Makkedah. ¹⁷Joshua was told, "The five kings have been found hiding in a cave at Makkedah." ¹⁸Joshua said, "Roll large stones against the mouth of the cave and post guards over it. ¹⁹But you — do not stop! Pursue your enemies and cut off their rear guard. Do not let them reach their cities, for the LORD your God has given them into your hands." ²⁰When Joshua and the Israelites had finished inflicting a massive defeat on them — nearly wiping them out — the survivors managed to reach the fortified cities. ²¹The entire army returned safely to Joshua at the camp at Makkedah. No one dared to speak a word against the Israelites. ²²Then Joshua said, "Open the mouth of the cave and bring those five kings out to me." ²³They did so, bringing the five kings out of the cave to him: the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, and the king of Eglon. ²⁴When they had brought the kings out to Joshua, he summoned all the men of Israel and said to the commanders of the warriors who had marched with him, "Come forward and put your feet on the necks of these kings." They came forward and placed their feet on their necks. ²⁵Joshua said to them, "Do not be afraid or lose heart. Be strong and courageous, for this is what the LORD will do to every enemy you fight." ²⁶After this, Joshua struck them down and put them to death, then hung them on five trees. They remained hanging on the trees until evening. ²⁷At sunset, Joshua ordered them taken down from the trees and thrown into the cave where they had hidden. Large stones were placed at the mouth of the cave — and they are there to this very day. ²⁸Joshua captured Makkedah that same day and put it to the sword. He devoted its king and every person in it to destruction, leaving no survivor. He dealt with the king of Makkedah as he had dealt with the king of Jericho. ²⁹From Makkedah, Joshua and all Israel advanced to Libnah and attacked it. ³⁰The LORD gave it too, along with its king, into Israel's hand. He put it and every person in it to the sword, leaving no survivor. He dealt with its king as he had dealt with the king of Jericho. ³¹From Libnah, Joshua and all Israel advanced to Lachish. He besieged it and attacked it. ³²The LORD gave Lachish into Israel's hand, and Joshua captured it on the second day. He put it and every person in it to the sword, just as he had done to Libnah. ³³At that time, Horam king of Gezer came up to help Lachish, but Joshua struck him and his forces down until no survivor remained. ³⁴From Lachish, Joshua and all Israel advanced to Eglon. They besieged it and attacked it. ³⁵They captured it that same day and put it to the sword. He devoted every person in it to destruction that day, just as he had done to Lachish. ³⁶From Eglon, Joshua and all Israel went up to Hebron and attacked it. ³⁷They captured it and put it to the sword — its king, all its surrounding towns, and every person in it. He left no survivor, just as he had done to Eglon. He devoted it and every person in it to destruction. ³⁸Then Joshua and all Israel turned toward Debir and attacked it. ³⁹He captured it along with its king and all its surrounding towns. They put them to the sword and devoted every person in it to destruction, leaving no survivor. As he had done to Hebron and to Libnah and their kings, so he did to Debir and its king. ⁴⁰Joshua conquered the entire region — the hill country, the Negev, the Shephelah, and the mountain slopes — along with all their kings. He left no survivor. He devoted everything that breathed to destruction, just as the LORD, the God of Israel, had commanded. ⁴¹Joshua

conquered them from Kadesh-barnea to Gaza, and the entire region of Goshen as far as Gibeon. ⁴²Joshua captured all these kings and their territory in a single campaign, because the LORD, the God of Israel, was fighting for Israel. ⁴³Then Joshua returned with all Israel to the camp at Gilgal.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Adoni-Tsedeq ('my lord is righteousness') — an ironic royal name. The king of Jerusalem claims righteousness as his title, yet he will oppose the God who defines righteousness. The name parallels Melchizedek ('king of righteousness,' Genesis 14:18), the earlier king-priest of Salem/Jerusalem who blessed Abraham. The same city that once produced a priestly ally now produces an adversary.
1. V'khi hishleimu yosh'vei Giv'on et Yisrael ('the inhabitants of Gibeon had made peace with Israel') — the verb hishlīm (hiphil of shalom, 'to make peace, to submit') describes the Gibeonite treaty. This alarms Adoni-zedek not because he lost a battle but because he lost an ally: Gibeon's defection breaks the Canaanite coalition.
2. Vayyir'u me'od ('they feared greatly') — the subject shifts between singular and plural in the Hebrew. The fear is both personal (Adoni-zedek) and collective (Jerusalem and its allies). K'achat arei ha-mamlakhah ('like one of the royal cities') — Gibeon held the status of a city-state with its own ruling class. Its defection to Israel was a strategic catastrophe for the Canaanite coalition, removing a powerful military force from their side and placing it in Israel's camp.
2. V'khol anasheha gibborim ('all its men were warriors') — Gibeon's fighting force was formidable. The Canaanite kings must now consider that Gibeon's warriors might fight alongside Israel against them.
3. Five Amorite city-state kings form a southern coalition. The cities represent a strategic arc across the southern hill country and Shephelah: Jerusalem (central highlands), Hebron (southern highlands), Jarmuth (Shephelah), Lachish (major fortified city in the Shephelah), and Eglon (western Shephelah). Together they control the main routes through southern Canaan. Hebron is particularly significant: it is where Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are buried at Machpelah (Genesis 23; 49:29-32), and it will become Caleb's inheritance (14:13-14).
4. The coalition's first target is not Israel but Gibeon — the traitor to the Canaanite cause. Ki hishlīmah et Yehoshua ('because it made peace with Joshua') — Gibeon's treaty with Israel is treated as betrayal by the other Canaanite kings. The attack on Gibeon will force Israel's hand: they must either honor the treaty and defend Gibeon or break their oath.
5. Chameshet malkei ha-Emori ('the five Amorite kings') — the coalition is identified specifically as Amorite. The Amorites were the dominant power in the southern highlands. The five-fold listing creates a sense of overwhelming military force converging on one city. Gibeon's survival depends entirely on whether Israel will honor the treaty of chapter 9.
6. Al teref yadekha me-avadekha ('do not let your hands go slack from your servants') — the idiom 'slack hands' means to withhold help, to abandon. The Gibeonites now invoke the very treaty they obtained by deception: 'your servants' (avadekha) — the same term they used in 9:8, 11. The test is clear: will Israel honor an oath made under false pretenses? Hoshi'ah lanu v'ozrenu ('save us and help us') — the verbs yasha ('to save') and azar ('to help') are normally addressed to God. The Gibeonites appeal to Joshua in language usually reserved for divine petition.
7. Joshua responds immediately. There is no hesitation, no debate about whether the fraudulently obtained treaty deserves honoring. The oath was sworn in YHWH's name, and that settles it. V'khol gibborei he-chayil ('and all the mighty warriors') — the elite troops accompany the main force. Joshua commits everything to defending the Gibeonites, treating the oath obligation with the same seriousness as a divine command.
8. Al tira mehem ki v'yadkha n'tattim ('do not fear them, for I have given them into your hand') — God confirms that Joshua's decision to honor the Gibeonite treaty is correct by promising military victory. The divine oracle transforms a treaty obligation into a conquest opportunity. Lo ya'amod ish mehem b'fanekha ('not a man of them will stand before you') — the same promise from 1:5, now applied specifically to the five-king coalition. God's endorsement signals that defending Gibeon — even though the treaty was obtained by deception — aligns with His purposes.
9. Pit'om ('suddenly') — Joshua's overnight forced march from Gilgal, roughly twenty miles uphill through the wilderness, achieves complete tactical surprise. The Amorite coalition expected to deal with Gibeon at leisure; instead they face Israel's full army at dawn. Kol ha-lailah alah min ha-Gilgal ('all night he went up from Gilgal') — the march ascends about 3,300 feet in elevation through difficult terrain, a remarkable feat of endurance and urgency.
10. Vayyehumem YHWH lifnei Yisrael ('the LORD threw them into panic before Israel') — the verb hamam ('to confuse, to throw into panic, to rout') is the same word used for God's action at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:24) and in other divine-warrior contexts (Judges 4:15; 1 Samuel 7:10). God is the primary agent of the rout; Israel participates but God drives the panic.
10. Derekh ma'aleh Beit Choron ('along the ascent of Beth-horon') — the Beth-horon pass is the main route from the central highlands down to the coastal plain, a steep descent through a narrow valley. The fleeing coalition is funneled into this natural chokepoint. The pursuit covers roughly twenty-five miles, from Gibeon through Beth-horon down to Azekah and Makkedah in the Shephelah.
11. YHWH hishlīkh aleihem avanim g'dolot min ha-shamayim ('the LORD threw great stones from the sky upon them') — divine intervention through the heavens. The avanim g'dolot ('great stones') are identified as avnei ha-barad ('hailstones') — massive hail raining down on the fleeing army. The image echoes the seventh plague on Egypt (Exodus 9:18-26), where the LORD sent barad ('hail') against Pharaoh. The same divine weapon used against Egypt is now used against the Amorites.

11. Rabbim asher metu b'avnei ha-barad me-asher hargu b'nei Yisrael be-charev ('more died from the hailstones than the Israelites killed with the sword') — the narrator makes explicit that God's direct intervention killed more of the enemy than Israel's army. The divine warrior does more than Israel's best soldiers. This theological claim undergirds the entire conquest: the land is won by God's power, not human might.
12. Shemesh b'Giv'on dom v'yareach b'Emeq Ayyalon ('sun, be still over Gibeon; moon, over the Valley of Aijalon') — Joshua's command to the celestial bodies is presented as poetry (possibly an excerpt from the Book of Jashar, v. 13). The verb dom ('be still, be silent, cease') is not the usual word for stopping motion but for ceasing activity or falling silent. Some interpreters understand this as a command for the sun to stop shining (providing relief from heat and cloud cover for the march) rather than to stop moving.
12. The geography is precise: Gibeon is to the east (where Joshua's army is), Aijalon is to the west (where the enemy flees). The sun over Gibeon and the moon over Aijalon places the scene in early morning, with the sun rising in the east and the moon still visible in the western sky. Joshua asks the heavenly bodies to freeze in this configuration — extending the morning light for continued pursuit.
13. Vayyiddom ha-shemesh v'yareach amad ('the sun was still and the moon stood') — two different verbs are used: dom ('to be still/silent') for the sun and amad ('to stand, to stop') for the moon. The effect described is an extended period of daylight enabling Israel to complete the rout.
13. Halo hi k'tuvah al Sefer ha-Yashar ('is this not written in the Book of Jashar?') — the Book of Jashar (or 'Book of the Upright') is a lost Israelite literary collection, cited also in 2 Samuel 1:18 (David's lament for Saul and Jonathan). The narrator cites a written source, inviting verification — an early form of source documentation.
13. V'lo ats lavo k'yom tamim ('it did not hurry to set for an entire day') — the phrase yom tamim ('a complete/whole day') indicates the phenomenon lasted approximately a full day-cycle. Whether understood as a literal astronomical event, an extended period of hailstorm darkness followed by clearing, or a poetic hyperbole celebrating divine intervention, the theological point is clear: creation itself serves the purposes of the Creator and His covenant people.
14. V'lo hayah ka-yom ha-hu l'fanav v'acharav lishmo'a YHWH b'qol ish ('there was no day like it before or after, for the LORD to listen to the voice of a man') — the narrator's commentary identifies the uniqueness not in the astronomical phenomenon but in the relational dynamic: God listened to a human command as though Joshua's word directed the cosmos. The Creator subordinated the sun and moon to the prayer of His servant.
14. Ki YHWH nilcham l'Yisrael ('for the LORD was fighting for Israel') — the chapter's theological refrain. The divine warrior fights through hailstones (v. 11), through cosmic obedience (vv. 12-13), and through human armies (v. 10). The methods vary; the agent is constant.
15. This verse appears to interrupt the narrative, as the pursuit continues in verse 16. Some scholars consider it a displaced summary that originally concluded the chapter, while others see it as a brief return to base before the cave discovery at Makkedah. The Septuagint omits this verse, supporting the view that it may be a later editorial insertion or a variant placement.
16. Vayyechav'u bam'arah b'Maqqedah ('they hid in the cave at Makkedah') — the kings who led the coalition are now fugitives hiding in a limestone cave. The irony is severe: the kings who gathered their forces to crush Gibeon (v. 5) are now cowering underground while their armies are destroyed by hail and sword.
17. Nimts'u chameshet ha-m'lakhim nechba'im bam'arah ('the five kings were found hiding in the cave') — the discovery sets up the dramatic execution scene of verses 22-27. Joshua will deal with the kings after completing the rout of their armies.
18. Gollu avanim g'dolot el pi ha-m'arah ('roll large stones to the mouth of the cave') — the kings are sealed in, trapped but alive, while Joshua finishes the pursuit. The cave becomes a temporary prison. The detail creates dramatic tension: the kings wait in darkness while their kingdoms fall.
19. V'zinnavtem otam ('cut off their tail/rear guard') — the verb zanav ('to strike the tail, to attack the rear') appears also in Deuteronomy 25:18, where Amalek attacked Israel's rear. Now Israel strikes the enemy's rear. Al titt'num lavo el areihem ('do not let them enter their cities') — once the enemy reaches fortified cities, the advantage of the open-field rout is lost. Joshua's tactical priority is to prevent regrouping behind city walls.
20. Ad tummam ('until they were consumed/finished') — the same root tamam from 8:24, indicating near-total destruction. V'has'ridim sar'du mehem vayyavo'u el arei ha-mivtsar ('the survivors who survived from them entered the fortified cities') — despite Joshua's order (v. 19), some fugitives reached walled cities. The fortified cities will be taken individually in verses 28-39.
21. Lo charats livnei Yisrael l'ish et l'shono ('no man sharpened his tongue against the Israelites') — the idiom 'sharpening the tongue' means to speak hostility or challenge. The parallel is Exodus 11:7: 'not a dog shall sharpen its tongue against the Israelites' — spoken of Israel's departure from Egypt. The exodus language reappears: Israel's conquest mirrors Israel's deliverance. The Canaanite world is too terrified to even speak against them.
22. The scene now shifts to the execution of the captured kings. The narrative has built suspense: the kings were sealed in the cave (v. 18) while the battle raged, and now Joshua returns to deal with them. Hotsi'u elai et chameshet ham'lakhim ('bring the five kings out to me') — the kings are summoned from darkness into judgment.
23. The fivefold repetition of 'the king of...' creates a ceremonial rhythm. Each king is named individually, stripping them of their royal dignity and authority. They entered the cave as rulers; they emerge as prisoners.
24. Simu et ragleikhem al tsavv'rei ham'lakhim ha-elleh ('put your feet on the necks of these kings') — the act of placing one's foot on a conquered enemy's neck is well-attested in ancient Near Eastern iconography (cf. Egyptian and Assyrian reliefs). It symbolizes total subjugation. Joshua makes this a public act witnessed by 'all the men of Israel' — the humiliation of the kings is a communal lesson, not a private act of revenge. Psalm 110:1 uses the same imagery: 'Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.'

25. Al tir'u v'al techatu chizqu v'imtsu ('do not be afraid, do not lose heart, be strong and courageous') — Joshua now passes on the fourfold encouragement he received from God in 1:6-9 and again in 10:8. The five conquered kings at his feet serve as the visual proof: God does what He promises. Ki khakhah ya'aseh YHWH l'khol oy'veikhem ('for thus the LORD will do to all your enemies') — the five kings become a prophetic object lesson for every future battle. What God did here, He will do again.
26. Vayyitlem al chamishah etsim ('he hung them on five trees') — public display of executed enemies, as with the king of Ai (8:29). The five trees echo the five kings — each receives his own tree of display. Ad ha-arev ('until evening') — Joshua again observes the Deuteronomic law of removing hanged bodies before nightfall (Deuteronomy 21:22-23), as he did at Ai.
27. Vayyashlikhum el ha-m'arah asher nechb'u sham ('they threw them into the cave where they had hidden') — the cave that served as the kings' hiding place becomes their tomb. The stones that sealed them in as prisoners (v. 18) now seal them in permanently as corpses. Ad etsem ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this very day') — the narrator's attestation formula. Another stone marker joins the growing collection of memorial cairns across the landscape of Joshua.
28. Hecherim otam v'et kol ha-nefesh asher bah lo hish'ir sarid ('he devoted them to destruction, every living person in it, leaving no survivor') — the cherem formula begins the southern campaign summary (vv. 28-39). Each city receives a formulaic account: capture, sword, cherem, no survivors, comparison to previous conquests. The repetitive structure creates a relentless, catalog-like record of systematic conquest.
29. The southern campaign proceeds geographically: Makkedah to Libnah (south-southwest in the Shephelah). Each conquest builds momentum. Libnah will later be assigned to the Levites as a priestly city (21:13) and will rebel against Judah in the time of Jehoram (2 Kings 8:22).
30. Vayyitten YHWH gam otah b'yad Yisrael ('the LORD gave it also into the hand of Israel') — the divine-agent formula continues. Each city falls because God gives it — the victories are theological events, not merely military achievements.
31. Lachish was one of the most heavily fortified cities in the southern Shephelah, known from archaeological excavation (Tell ed-Duweir) as a major Bronze Age center with massive walls and gate complex. Its capture required a siege (vayyichan aleha, 'he encamped against it'), unlike some of the other cities that fell more quickly.
32. Ba-yom ha-sheni ('on the second day') — Lachish required two days to take, reflecting its superior fortifications. The other cities in the summary fall without this notation, suggesting quicker capitulation. Despite the delay, the outcome is the same: God gives, Israel takes.
33. Horam melekh Gezer ('Horam king of Gezer') — Gezer was a major fortified city guarding the Aijalon Valley (the same valley where the moon stood still, v. 12). Gezer's king intervenes to aid Lachish but is destroyed in the field. Notably, Gezer itself is not captured at this time — it will remain unconquered until Solomon's era (1 Kings 9:16), when Pharaoh takes it and gives it to Solomon as a dowry.
34. The campaign continues southward through the Shephelah. Eglon's king was one of the original five coalition leaders (v. 3). Joshua is now dismantling the coalition city by city.
35. Ba-yom ha-hu ('that day') — unlike Lachish, Eglon fell in a single day. The formula continues: capture, sword, cherem, comparison. The catalog's repetition conveys the inevitability of conquest: city after city falls to the same pattern.
36. Chevronah ('to Hebron') — the campaign moves from the lowland Shephelah up into the southern highlands. Hebron is the most theologically significant city in the southern conquest: it is the burial place of Abraham, Sarah, Isaac, Rebekah, Jacob, and Leah at the cave of Machpelah (Genesis 23:19; 25:9; 49:29-31; 50:13). The patriarchal promise of land finds its most personal fulfillment here. Hebron will be given to Caleb as his personal inheritance (14:13-14; 15:13-14).
37. V'et kol areha ('and all its towns/cities') — Hebron's surrounding satellite settlements are included in the conquest. The comprehensive formula extends the cherem to the entire district, not just the central city. Vayyacharem otah v'et kol ha-nefesh asher bah ('he devoted it and every person in it to destruction') — the cherem is applied to Hebron, the city of the patriarchs. The promised land is being reclaimed through the very judgment God decreed.
38. D'virah ('to Debir') — also known as Kiriath-sepher ('city of the book/scribe'), located south of Hebron in the hill country. Debir will be reconquered by Othniel son of Kenaz (Caleb's nephew) in 15:15-17 and Judges 1:11-13, suggesting the initial conquest described here was not permanently secured.
39. Ka'asher asah l'Chevron ... v'kha'asher asah l'Libnah ('as he had done to Hebron ... as he had done to Libnah') — the cross-references chain the conquests together: Debir falls like Hebron, Hebron like Eglon, Eglon like Lachish, Lachish like Libnah, Libnah like Makkedah, Makkedah like Jericho. The chain traces back to the first conquest city — every subsequent victory echoes and confirms the first.
40. Ha-har v'ha-Negev v'ha-Sh'felah v'ha-ashedot ('the hill country, the Negev, the lowlands, the slopes') — four geographic zones summarize the entire southern theater: the central highlands, the arid south, the western foothills, and the transitional slopes between them. V'et kol ha-n'shamah hecherim ('he devoted everything that breathed to destruction') — the language of total cherem. Ka'asher tsivvah YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('as the LORD, the God of Israel, commanded') — the narrator roots the conquest in divine command, not human initiative. The destruction is presented as covenant execution, not ethnic violence.
40. Register departure: cherem rendered as 'devotion to destruction' rather than default 'devoted to destruction' — nominal variant reflecting the Hebrew construct form in this summary statement.

41. Mi-Qadesh Barnea v'ad Azzah ('from Kadesh-barnea to Gaza') — the geographic sweep defines the southern conquest's boundaries: Kadesh-barnea (in the southern Negev, where Israel spent most of its wilderness years) to Gaza (on the Mediterranean coast, the southwestern corner of Canaan). V'et kol erets Goshen ('the entire land of Goshen') — not the Egyptian Goshen but a region in the southern Judean hills. The total territory described covers the entire southern half of the promised land, from the wilderness border to the coast, from the Negev to the central highlands at Gibeon.
42. Pa'am echat ('at one time / in a single campaign') — the entire southern conquest is presented as one continuous military operation, driven by momentum from the initial Gibeonite crisis through the final city. Ki YHWH Elohei Yisrael nilcham l'Yisrael ('because the LORD, the God of Israel, was fighting for Israel') — the chapter's theological summary, matching verse 14. The refrain frames the entire campaign: it begins with God fighting through hailstones and cosmic phenomena and ends with God fighting through Israel's sustained campaign. Divine warfare encompasses both the miraculous and the military.
43. The campaign ends where it began — at the base camp of Gilgal, near Jericho. The circular movement (Gilgal Gibeon Beth-horon Makkedah Libnah Lachish Eglon Hebron Debir Gilgal) traces a vast loop through the entire southern territory. Israel returns to its starting point having secured the south, ready for the northern campaign of chapter 11.

11

Summary: *A northern Canaanite coalition under Jabin of Hazor gathers at the Waters of Merom. Joshua attacks suddenly, defeats them, burns Hazor, and completes the conquest of the land. The narrator summarizes: Joshua took the whole land.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The summary statement (vv. 16-23) claims total conquest: 'Joshua took the whole land... and the land had rest from war.' Yet the text itself acknowledges exceptions — the Anakites survived in Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod (v. 22), and chapter 13 will list unconquered territories. The tension is deliberate: the conquest is complete in theological terms (God fulfilled His promise) while remaining incomplete on the ground. This dual reality defines the rest of Israel's history.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the LORD hardened their hearts' (v. 20, chizraq et libbam) uses the same language as the Pharaoh hardening in Exodus. We rendered it consistently. The purpose clause — 'so that they would come against Israel in battle, in order to devote them to destruction' — presents the hardening as serving the chereh. This is one of the hardest theological statements in Joshua, and we let it stand without softening.*

Connections: *Hazor's destruction is confirmed archaeologically. Jabin of Hazor reappears (or a successor does) in Judges 4. The Anakite remnant in Gath connects to Goliath of Gath (1 Samuel 17:4). The conquest summary parallels Deuteronomy's promise and anticipates the 'rest' theology of Hebrews 4. The reference to Moses's commands (v. 15) closes the loop opened in 1:7.*

¹When Jabin king of Hazor heard of these events, he sent word to Jobab king of Madon, the king of Shimron, and the king of Achshaph, ²as well as to the kings in the northern hill country, in the Arabah south of Chinnereth, in the Shephelah, and in the heights of Dor to the west — ³the Canaanites to the east and west, the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, and Jebusites in the hill country, and the Hivites below Hermon in the region of Mizpah. ⁴They marched out with all their forces — a vast army, as numerous as the sand on the seashore — with a great many horses and chariots. ⁵All these kings joined forces and came together, encamping at the waters of Merom to fight against Israel. ⁶The LORD said to Joshua, "Do not be afraid of them. By this time tomorrow, I will hand all of them over to Israel as casualties. You are to hamstring their horses and burn their chariots." ⁷Joshua and his entire fighting force fell upon them suddenly at the waters of Merom and attacked. ⁸The LORD gave them into Israel's hand. They struck them down and pursued them to Great Sidon, to Misrephoth-maim, and eastward to the Valley of Mizpeh. They struck them until no survivor remained. ⁹Joshua dealt with them exactly as the LORD had told him: he hamstrung their horses and burned their chariots. ¹⁰At that time Joshua turned back and captured Hazor. He struck its king with the sword, because Hazor had been the head of all those kingdoms. ¹¹They struck down every person in it with the sword, devoting them to destruction. Not a single breathing creature was left. Then he burned Hazor. ¹²Joshua captured all the cities of those kings along with their kings. He put them to the sword and devoted them to destruction, just as Moses the servant of the LORD had commanded. ¹³As for the cities still standing on their mounds, Israel did not burn any of them — only Hazor did Joshua burn. ¹⁴The Israelites took all the plunder from these cities and the livestock as spoil for

themselves, but every person they struck down with the sword until they had annihilated them. They did not leave a single breathing creature. ¹⁵What the LORD commanded his servant Moses, Moses commanded Joshua, and Joshua carried out. He did not neglect a single thing of all that the LORD had commanded Moses. ¹⁶Joshua took the entire land: the hill country, the whole Negev, the entire region of Goshen, the Shephelah, the Arabah, and the hill country of Israel with its lowlands — ¹⁷from Mount Halak, which rises toward Seir, to Baal-gad in the Valley of Lebanon below Mount Hermon. He captured all their kings, struck them down, and put them to death. ¹⁸Joshua waged war against all those kings for a long time. ¹⁹No city made peace with the Israelites except the Hivites who lived in Gibeon. All the rest they took in battle. ²⁰For it was the LORD's doing that they hardened their hearts to wage war against Israel, so that He might devote them to total destruction without mercy — so that He might annihilate them, just as the LORD had commanded Moses. ²¹At that time Joshua went and eliminated the Anakim from the hill country — from Hebron, Debir, Anab, and the entire hill country of Judah and Israel. Joshua devoted them and their cities to destruction. ²²No Anakim were left in the land of the Israelites. They survived only in Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod. ²³So Joshua took the entire land, in keeping with everything the LORD had spoken to Moses. Joshua gave it as an inheritance to Israel, apportioned among their tribes. And the land had rest from war.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Yavin melek Chatsor ('Jabin king of Hazor') — Hazor was the largest city in Canaan, described in verse 10 as rosh kol ha-mamlakhot ('the head of all those kingdoms'). Archaeological excavation at Tel Hazor reveals a city of approximately 200 acres — ten times the size of most Canaanite cities. Jabin organizes a northern coalition just as Adoni-zedek organized the southern one (10:3). The name Jabin ('he understands/discerns') recurs in Judges 4:2, suggesting either a dynastic title or a later king of the same name.
2. The geographic scope encompasses the entire northern territory: ba-har ('the hill country' — the Galilee highlands), ba-Aravah negev Kinnerot ('the Arabah south of Chinnereth' — the Jordan Valley below the Sea of Galilee), ba-Sh'felah ('the lowlands'), and b'nafot Dor miyyam ('the heights/regions of Dor on the coast'). Chinnereth is the early name for the Sea of Galilee (kinnerot, 'harps' — possibly from the lake's harp-like shape).
3. V'ha-Chivvi tachat Chermon b'erets ha-Mitspah ('the Hivites below Hermon in the land of Mizpah') — Mount Hermon marks the northernmost extent of the promised land's traditional boundary. The Hivites settled at its base, in the region called Mizpah ('lookout, watchtower'). The coalition draws from the full diversity of Canaan's peoples and the full extent of its geography — from Hermon in the far north to the coastal plain in the west.
4. Am rav ka-chol asher al s'fat ha-yam la-rov ('a people as numerous as the sand on the seashore') — the simile deliberately echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 22:17), where God promised Abraham's descendants would be 'as the sand on the seashore.' The enemy army is described with the same imagery used for Israel's promised future — a vast horde set against God's people. V'sus va-rekhev rav me'od ('horses and chariots in great number') — chariotry was the dominant military technology of the Bronze Age. Israel had no chariots. The technological disparity makes the upcoming victory all the more clearly divine.
5. El mei Merom ('at the waters of Merom') — the gathering point for the northern coalition. Merom is likely in the upper Galilee, possibly identified with the spring-fed area near modern Meiron. The coalition chooses a staging ground with water for their horses and room for their chariots. The flat, well-watered terrain favors their technological advantage.
6. Al tira mip'neihem ('do not be afraid of them') — the same divine encouragement formula as 8:1 and 10:8. Each new campaign begins with God addressing Joshua's fear. The escalating scale of the enemy (from Ai to the five kings to the sand-on-the-seashore coalition) requires escalating reassurance.
6. Et suseihem t'aqqr v'et mark'voteihem tisrof ba-esh ('hamstring their horses and burn their chariots') — God commands the destruction of the captured military technology. Aqqr ('to hamstring') means to cut the leg tendons, rendering the horses permanently lame. The command prevents Israel from adopting chariot warfare and placing their trust in military technology rather than in God. The same principle appears in Deuteronomy 17:16: the king 'must not acquire many horses.' Israel is to fight as a foot army dependent on God, not as a chariot empire dependent on technology.
7. Pit'om ('suddenly') — the same word used for the surprise attack on the Amorite coalition at Gibeon (10:9). Joshua's tactical pattern is consistent: rapid forced marches ending in sudden assault. The surprise negates the enemy's advantage in numbers and chariots — they have no time to deploy their formations.
8. The pursuit fans out in three directions from the waters of Merom: northwest to Sidon Rabbah ('Great Sidon,' on the Phoenician coast — the furthest point of pursuit), west to Misrephot Mayim ('the burnings/smelters by the waters,' likely on the Mediterranean coast south of Sidon), and east to Biq'at Mitspeh ('the Valley of Mizpeh,' east of the battlefield). The three-directional pursuit indicates the coalition scattered in every direction — total rout, total panic.
9. Ka'asher amar lo YHWH ('as the LORD told him') — Joshua's obedience is exact. The captured horses are hamstrung, the chariots burned. Israel will not build a chariot force. The theological principle is embedded in the military decision: trust in God, not in horses and chariots (cf. Psalm 20:7: 'Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we trust in the name of the LORD our God').

10. Ki Chatsor l'fanim hi rosh kol ha-mamlakhot ha-elleh ('because Hazor was formerly the head of all those kingdoms') — the narrator explains why Hazor receives special treatment: it was the capital of the northern coalition, the dominant city-state in the entire region. Archaeological evidence confirms Hazor's preeminence: it was the largest city in Canaan, with massive fortifications and an extensive lower city. Taking the head city decapitates the coalition.
11. V'et Chatsor saraf ba-esh ('he burned Hazor with fire') — of all the northern cities, only Hazor is burned (v. 13 makes this explicit). The burning of the capital while sparing the other cities as usable infrastructure represents a strategic as well as theological decision: destroy the center of power but preserve the cities for Israelite settlement. Archaeological excavation at Hazor reveals a massive destruction layer from the Late Bronze Age, consistent with this account.
12. Ka'asher tsivvah Mosheh eved YHWH ('as Moses the servant of the LORD commanded') — the chain of authority runs from God to Moses to Joshua. Every act of conquest is traced back through this chain. Joshua acts not on his own authority but as the executor of Mosaic commands, which are themselves the commands of God.
13. Kol he-arim ha-om'dot al tillam ('all the cities standing on their tells/mounds') — the tel ('mound') is the accumulated layers of previous settlement. Cities 'standing on their tells' are intact, fortified cities on established sites. Israel preserves them as infrastructure for their own future use — Deuteronomy 6:10-11 promised 'cities you did not build' and 'houses full of good things you did not fill.' Zulatei et Chatsor l'vaddah ('except Hazor alone') — only the coalition capital is burned, making the archaeological record precise and testable.
14. As at Ai (8:2, 27), the plunder and livestock may be kept but the human population is placed under cherem. The distinction between total cherem (Jericho — everything destroyed) and partial cherem (Ai and the northern cities — people destroyed but goods kept) shows that the sacred ban has different levels of application depending on God's specific command for each situation.
15. Ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh avdo ken tsivvah Mosheh et Yehoshua v'ken asah Yehoshua ('as the LORD commanded Moses, so Moses commanded Joshua, and so Joshua did') — the chain of obedience is complete and unbroken: God Moses Joshua execution. Lo hesir davar mikkol asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ('he did not remove/neglect anything from all that the LORD commanded Moses') — this is Joshua's highest commendation: perfect obedience to the Mosaic command, fulfilling the charge of 1:7 ('do not turn from it to the right or to the left'). This assessment contrasts with the Judges period, where 'everyone did what was right in his own eyes' (Judges 21:25).
16. The geographic summary encompasses the full promised land from south to north. Ha-har ('the hill country' — both Judean and Israelite), ha-Negev ('the southern desert'), erets ha-Goshen ('the Goshen region'), ha-Sh'felah ('the western foothills'), ha-Aravah ('the Jordan rift valley'), and har Yisrael u-sh'felato ('the hill country of Israel and its lowlands' — the northern highlands). The comprehensive list demonstrates that the conquest covered every topographic zone of the promised territory.
17. Min ha-har he-Chalaq ha-oleh Se'ir v'ad Ba'al Gad b'viq'at ha-L'vanon tachat Har Chermon ('from Mount Halak rising toward Seir to Baal-gad in the Lebanon valley below Hermon') — the boundaries define the full north-south extent of the conquest: Mount Halak ('the smooth/bare mountain') in the far south near Edom, to Baal-gad (possibly Baniyas/Caesarea Philippi) at the foot of Mount Hermon in the far north. The distance is approximately 250 miles.
18. Yamim rabbim ('many days / a long time') — the narrator corrects any impression that the conquest was swift. Despite the compressed narrative, the campaigns against the Canaanite kings took years. The Talmud and later tradition estimate the conquest period at approximately seven years (cf. Caleb's age statements in 14:7, 10 that provide a chronological anchor).
19. Bilti ha-Chivvi yosh'vei Giv'on ('except the Hivites, the inhabitants of Gibeon') — only Gibeon chose negotiation over combat. Every other city fought and fell. The Gibeonites' deception, despite its moral problems, represents the only successful Canaanite response to Israel's advance: they alone survived because they alone chose to seek peace, however fraudulently.
20. Ki me'et YHWH hay'tah l'chazzeq et libbam ('for it was from the LORD to harden their hearts') — one of the most theologically dense verses in Joshua. The hardening of the Canaanite hearts parallels God hardening Pharaoh's heart (Exodus 4:21; 7:3; 9:12; 10:1, 20, 27; 11:10; 14:4, 8). The same theological pattern governs both the exodus and the conquest: God hardens the hearts of those set on opposition, confirming them in their chosen path so that judgment may proceed.
20. L'vilti heyot lahem t'chinnah ('so that they would have no mercy/grace') — t'chinnah ('grace, favor, compassion') is denied to the hardened. The hardening removes the possibility of surrender. If the Canaanites had sought peace, Israel would have been obligated to spare them (as with the Gibeonites). By hardening their hearts to fight, God ensures the cherem proceeds as commanded. The theological tension — divine sovereignty and human responsibility — is stated rather than resolved.
21. Vayyakhret et ha-Anaqim ('he cut off the Anakim') — the Anakim were the giant warrior clan whose presence terrified the original spies forty years earlier (Numbers 13:28, 33: 'we seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes'). The ten faithless spies' report about the Anakim triggered the wilderness wandering (Numbers 14:1-4). Joshua now systematically eliminates the very people who caused the previous generation's failure of faith. The giants who kept Israel out of the land for forty years are no obstacle to the generation that trusts God.
22. Raq b'Azzah b'Gat uv'Ashdod nish'aru ('only in Gaza, Gath, and Ashdod they remained') — the Anakim survive in the three Philistine cities that Israel did not conquer. Gath is particularly significant: it will later produce Goliath, the Philistine champion described as a giant warrior of extraordinary height (1 Samuel 17:4). The surviving Anakim in Gath become the seed of the future Goliath narrative — a thread that connects Joshua to David.

23. Vayyitt'nah Yehoshua l'nachalah l'Yisrael k'machl'qotam l'shivteihem ('Joshua gave it as an inheritance to Israel according to their divisions by tribes') — the conquest narrative (chapters 1-12) concludes with the transition to the allocation narrative (chapters 13-21). The word nachalah ('inheritance') is the key term for the second half of Joshua: the land won by conquest must now be distributed as the covenantal inheritance of each tribe.
23. V'ha-arets shaq'tah mil-milchamah ('the land had rest from war') — the verb shaqat ('to be quiet, to rest') describes the cessation of active military campaigns. This 'rest' fulfills the promise of Deuteronomy 12:10 ('when he gives you rest from all your enemies'). However, chapters 13-19 will reveal that significant territory remains unconquered (13:1-6), and the subsequent book of Judges will show that the 'rest' was incomplete and fragile.

12

Summary: A summary of the defeated kings — two east of the Jordan (Sihon and Og, conquered under Moses) and thirty-one west of the Jordan (conquered under Joshua).

What Makes This Remarkable: The chapter is a victory catalog — thirty-three kings listed by name and territory. The structure mirrors ancient Near Eastern conquest records, but with a theological difference: every victory is attributed to the LORD, not to Israel's military prowess. The list includes cities that archaeological evidence confirms were occupied during this period. The count of thirty-one western kings (v. 24) gives the conquest a comprehensive scope.

Translation Friction: Several city identifications are uncertain — we rendered the names as the Hebrew gives them and noted geographical alternatives where scholarship offers them. The king list format ('the king of X, one') uses a formulaic Hebrew counting pattern that is awkward in English. We preserved the repetitive structure because the accumulation is the rhetorical point.

Connections: Sihon and Og's inclusion (vv. 2-6) connects to Numbers 21 and Deuteronomy 2-3. The defeated-king list becomes a praise motif in Psalm 135:10-12 and 136:17-22. Several cities reappear in Judges as unconquered (Judges 1), creating the tension between Joshua's theological completeness and Judges' historical reality.

¹These are the kings of the land whom the Israelites defeated and whose territory they took possession of east of the Jordan, from the Arnon Valley to Mount Hermon, including the entire eastern Arabah: ²Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon. His territory extended from Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley — including the middle of the valley itself — through half of Gilead as far as the Jabbok River, the border of the Ammonites. ³He also controlled the Arabah eastward to the Sea of Chinnereth, and southward through the Arabah to the Dead Sea, toward Beth-jeshimoth, and on the south below the slopes of Pisgah. ⁴And the territory of Og king of Bashan — one of the last of the Rephaim — who ruled from Ashtaroth and Edrei. ⁵He ruled over Mount Hermon, Salecah, all of Bashan as far as the border of the Geshurites and Maacathites, and half of Gilead, up to the border of Sihon king of Heshbon. ⁶Moses the servant of the LORD and the Israelites defeated them, and Moses the servant of the LORD gave their land as a possession to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. ⁷These are the kings of the land whom Joshua and the Israelites defeated west of the Jordan, from Baal-gad in the Valley of Lebanon to Mount Halak, which rises toward Seir. Joshua gave this land to the tribes of Israel as their possession, apportioned among their divisions — ⁸in the hill country, the Shephelah, the Arabah, the mountain slopes, the wilderness, and the Negev — the lands of the Hittites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites: ⁹the king of Jericho — one; the king of Ai, near Bethel — one; ¹⁰the ruler of Jerusalem — one; the ruler of Hebron — one; ¹¹the ruler of Jarmuth — one; the ruler of Lachish — one; ¹²the ruler of Eglon — one; the ruler of Gezer — one; ¹³the ruler of Debir — one; the ruler of Geder — one; ¹⁴the ruler of Hormah — one; the ruler of Arad — one; ¹⁵the ruler of Libnah — one; the ruler of Adullam — one; ¹⁶the ruler of Makkedah — one; the ruler of Bethel — one; ¹⁷the ruler of Tappuah — one; the ruler of Hopher — one; ¹⁸the ruler of Aphek — one; the ruler of Lasharon — one; ¹⁹the ruler of Madon — one; the ruler of Hazor — one; ²⁰the ruler of Shimron-meron — one each; the ruler of Achshaph — one each; ²¹the ruler of Taanach — one each; the ruler of Megiddo — one each; ²²the king of Kedesh — one; the king of Jokneam in Carmel — one; ²³the king of Dor in the heights of Dor — one; the king of Goim at Gilgal — one; ²⁴the king of Tirzah — one. In all, thirty-one kings.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens the comprehensive catalog of defeated kings — first the Transjordan conquests under Moses (vv. 1-6), then the Cisjordan conquests under Joshua (vv. 7-24). The verb *yarash* ('to take possession, to dispossess') connects the catalog to the central conquest theme. *Mi-nachal Arnon ad Har Chermon* ('from the Arnon Valley to Mount Hermon') — the full north-south extent of Transjordan territory: the Arnon gorge (modern Wadi Mujib in Jordan, the northern border of Moab) to Hermon in the far north.
2. Sihon's kingdom covered the southern half of the Transjordan: from the Arnon gorge in the south to the Jabbok River in the north, encompassing the southern portion of Gilead. His capital Heshbon sat in the central Transjordan plateau. His defeat is narrated in Numbers 21:21-30 and Deuteronomy 2:24-37.
3. Yam Kinnerot ('Sea of Chinnereth' — Sea of Galilee) to yam ha-Aravah yam ha-Melach ('the Arabah Sea, the Salt Sea' — Dead Sea) — Sihon's domain included the eastern shore of both major bodies of water in the Jordan Rift Valley. Ashdot ha-Pisgah ('the slopes of Pisgah') — the slopes of the mountain range where Moses viewed the promised land before his death (Deuteronomy 34:1).
4. Og melek ha-Bashan mi-yeter ha-Refa'im ('Og king of Bashan, from the remnant of the Rephaim') — Og is identified as a surviving member of the Rephaim, the legendary giant race of the ancient Near East (cf. Deuteronomy 3:11, which describes his enormous iron bedstead). His defeat is narrated in Numbers 21:33-35 and Deuteronomy 3:1-11. Ashtaroth and Edrei were his dual capitals in the rich volcanic plateau of Bashan (modern Golan Heights and Hauran).
5. Og's domain covered the northern half of the Transjordan: from Hermon and Salecah in the far north through all of Bashan and the northern half of Gilead, meeting Sihon's territory at the Jabbok. Together, Sihon and Og controlled the entire Transjordan from Arnon to Hermon — the complete territory now held by Reuben, Gad, and the half-tribe of Manasseh.
6. Mosheh eved YHWH ('Moses the servant of the LORD') — the title appears twice, framing Moses as the divinely authorized agent of the Transjordan conquest and allocation. *Yerushah* ('possession') is used rather than *nachalah* ('inheritance'), though the terms overlap. The Transjordan allocation is presented as fully legitimate — it was given by Moses under divine authority, establishing the same covenant rights as the Cisjordan allotments.
7. The second half of the catalog lists the Cisjordan kings defeated under Joshua. The geographic boundaries repeat 11:17 in reverse order (north to south here, south to north there). *Vayyitt'nah Yehoshua l'shivtei Yisrael yerushah k'machl'qotam* ('Joshua gave it to the tribes of Israel as a possession according to their divisions') — the transition from conquest to allocation.
8. Six geographic zones and six ethnic groups frame the catalog that follows. The comprehensive listing emphasizes totality: every region, every people group. The catalog itself (vv. 9-24) will enumerate thirty-one kings — a formal accounting of the conquest.
9. The catalog begins with the first two conquests. Each entry follows a strict formula: *melek* [city name] *echad* ('king of [city], one'). The number *echad* ('one') functions as a tally mark. The literary form resembles an ancient administrative record — a royal accounting of defeated enemies.
10. The five kings of the southern coalition (10:3-5) are listed: Jerusalem, Hebron, Jarmuth, Lachish, and Eglon (vv. 10-12). Their defeat at the battle of Gibeon and the subsequent southern campaign is summarized in this tally.
11. Jarmuth and Lachish — both members of the southern coalition defeated in chapter 10.
12. Eglon was the fifth member of the southern coalition. Gezer's king Horam was defeated when he came to aid Lachish (10:33), though Gezer itself was not captured at this time.
13. Debir was conquered in the southern campaign (10:38-39). Geder (or Beth-gader) is otherwise unmentioned in the conquest narratives, suggesting the catalog preserves a more complete record than the narrative accounts.
14. Hormah and Arad are Negev cities. Hormah's name itself means 'destruction/devotion to destruction' — the city's name commemorates an earlier Israelite victory (Numbers 21:3), where the name was given as a wordplay on *cherem*. Arad is in the northern Negev, known from archaeological excavation as a significant fortified site.
15. Libnah was conquered in 10:29-30. Adullam, in the Shephelah, will later become famous as the cave where David hid from Saul (1 Samuel 22:1).
16. Makkedah was the site of the cave where the five kings hid (10:16-27). Bethel's forces joined Ai's pursuit (8:17), and its king's defeat is recorded here though not narrated separately in the campaign accounts.
17. Tappuah ('apple') is a city in the hill country later assigned to Manasseh at the border with Ephraim (17:8). Hopher appears in Manassite territory and is connected to the daughters of Zelophehad (Numbers 27:1).
18. Aphek controlled a key pass on the Via Maris trade route in the Sharon plain. Lasharon may be an independent city or a descriptive term ('belonging to Sharon'), locating this Aphek in the coastal Sharon region.
19. The northern coalition kings begin here. Madon and Hazor were the first two allies named in 11:1. Hazor's listing is understated — no special marker distinguishes the largest city in Canaan from any other defeated king in this democratic tally.
20. Shimron-meron (combining Shimron from 11:1 with a fuller name) and Achshaph were members of Jabin's northern coalition.

- 21.** Taanach and Megiddo guarded the strategic Jezreel Valley and the pass through the Carmel ridge. Megiddo (Armageddon in Greek, from Har Megiddo, 'Mount of Megiddo') was one of the most strategically important cities in the ancient Near East, controlling the main route between Egypt and Mesopotamia. Despite the king's defeat, Megiddo remained partially unconquered (17:11-12; Judges 1:27).
- 22.** Kedesh (Kedesh-naphtali) was a city in the upper Galilee, later designated as a city of refuge (20:7). Jokneam was at the foot of Mount Carmel, guarding the southwestern approach to the Jezreel Valley.
- 23.** Dor was a coastal city south of Mount Carmel. Melekh Goyim l'Gilgal ('king of nations/peoples at Gilgal') — goyim means 'nations' or 'peoples,' possibly designating a multi-ethnic confederation rather than a single city-state. This Gilgal is likely a different site from Joshua's base camp near Jericho.
- 24.** Kol m'lakhim sh'loshim v'echad ('all the kings: thirty-one') — the total tally. Tirzah, the final entry, was a beautiful city in the northern hill country that later became the first capital of the northern kingdom of Israel (1 Kings 14:17; 15:21, 33). The catalog closes with a grand total: thirty-one kings defeated, their territories taken. The number represents the comprehensive scope of the conquest — every petty kingdom in the promised land has been overthrown.
- 24.** Chapter 12 functions as the accounting ledger of the conquest — a formal record that transitions the narrative from war (chapters 1-11) to land distribution (chapters 13-21). The catalog demonstrates that God's promise has been fulfilled: the land has been taken, the kings have fallen, and the inheritance awaits distribution.

13

Summary: *God tells the aging Joshua that much land remains unconquered and commands the distribution of territory. The Transjordan allotments to Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh are detailed, and the Levites receive no territorial inheritance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens with a startling admission after the conquest summary of chapters 11-12: 'You are old, advanced in years, and very much of the land remains to be possessed' (v. 1). The tension between 'Joshua took the whole land' (11:23) and 'very much remains' (13:1) is not contradiction but theology — God's gift is complete, but Israel's occupation is ongoing. The Levites' non-inheritance (v. 33) is stated with theological precision: 'the LORD God of Israel is their inheritance' — not land but God Himself.*

Translation Friction: *The geographical boundaries involve numerous place names whose ancient locations are debated. We rendered each name as the Hebrew gives it and noted identifications where scholarship is reasonably confident. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day,' v. 13) is the narrator's voice from a later period, acknowledging that Geshurites and Maacathites remained unconquered through the time of writing.*

Connections: *The unconquered territories become the nations that 'test' Israel in Judges 2:20-3:6. The Transjordan allotment fulfills Numbers 32 and Deuteronomy 3:12-17. The Levitical non-inheritance echoes Numbers 18:20 and Deuteronomy 10:9. Caleb's upcoming request (ch. 14) connects to the spy narrative of Numbers 13-14.*

¹Joshua had grown old, advanced in years. The LORD said to him, "You have grown old, advanced in years, and a great deal of land still remains to be taken. ²This is the land that remains: all the regions of the Philistines and all Geshurite territory, ³from the Shihor east of Egypt to the border of Ekron on the north — territory considered Canaanite — the five Philistine rulers: of Gaza, Ashdod, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron; also the Avvites. ⁴From the south, all the land of the Canaanites — including Mearah, which belongs to the Sidonians — as far as Aphek, to the Amorite border; ⁵also the land of the Gebalites and all of Lebanon to the east, from Baal-gad below Mount Hermon to Lebo-hamath. ⁶All the inhabitants of the hill country from Lebanon to Misrephoth-maim — all the Sidonians — I myself will drive them out before the Israelites. Only allocate the land to Israel as an inheritance, as I have commanded you. ⁷Now divide this land as an inheritance among the nine tribes and the half-tribe of Manasseh. ⁸With the other half-tribe, the Reubenites and Gadites had already received the inheritance that Moses gave them east of the Jordan, just as Moses the servant of the LORD assigned it to them: ⁹from Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley, including the city in the middle of the valley, and the entire plateau from Medeba to Dibon; ¹⁰all the cities of Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon, as far as the border of the Ammonites; ¹¹Gilead, the territory of the Geshurites and Maacathites, all of Mount Hermon, and all of Bashan as far as Salecah — ¹²the entire kingdom of Og in

Bashan, who had ruled from Ashtaroth and Edrei. He was one of the last surviving Rephaim. Moses defeated them and dispossessed them. ¹³But the Israelites did not drive out the Geshurites or the Maacathites. Geshur and Maacath live among Israel to this day. ¹⁴Only to the tribe of Levi he gave no territorial inheritance. The fire offerings of the LORD, the God of Israel, are their inheritance, as He promised them. ¹⁵Moses gave territory to the tribe of Reuben, clan by clan. ¹⁶Their territory ran from Aroer on the rim of the Arnon Valley, including the city in the middle of the valley, and the entire plateau near Medeba — ¹⁷Heshbon and all its towns on the plateau: Dibon, Bamoth-baal, Beth-baal-meon, ¹⁸Jahaz, Kedemoth, Mephaath, ¹⁹Kiriathaim, Sibmah, and Zereth-shahar on the hill overlooking the valley, ²⁰Beth-peor, the slopes of Pisgah, and Beth-jeshimoth, ²¹all the plateau cities and the entire kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled from Heshbon — the one Moses defeated along with the Midianite chieftains Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba, the vassals of Sihon who lived in the land. ²²The Israelites also killed Balaam son of Beor, the diviner, with the sword, along with the others they slew. ²³The western border of the Reubenites was the Jordan River itself. This was the inheritance of the Reubenites, clan by clan — their cities and surrounding settlements. ²⁴Moses gave territory to the tribe of Gad, clan by clan. ²⁵Their territory included Jazer, all the cities of Gilead, and half the Ammonite territory as far as Aroer, east of Rabbah; ²⁶from Heshbon to Ramath-mizpeh and Betonim, and from Mahanaim to the border of Lo-debar; ²⁷and in the valley: Beth-haram, Beth-nimrah, Succoth, and Zaphon — the rest of the kingdom of Sihon king of Heshbon — with the Jordan as its western border, extending to the southern end of the Sea of Chinnereth, east of the Jordan. ²⁸This was the inheritance of the Gadites, clan by clan — their cities and surrounding settlements. ²⁹Moses gave territory to the half-tribe of Manasseh, and it was allocated to the half-tribe of Manasseh clan by clan. ³⁰Their territory extended from Mahanaim through all of Bashan — the entire kingdom of Og king of Bashan — including all the settlements of Jair in Bashan: sixty towns. ³¹Half of Gilead, along with Ashtaroth and Edrei — the royal cities of Og's kingdom in Bashan — went to the descendants of Machir son of Manasseh, that is, to half the Machirites, clan by clan. ³²These are the territories Moses allocated on the plains of Moab, east of the Jordan across from Jericho. ³³But to the tribe of Levi, Moses gave no inheritance. The LORD, the God of Israel, is their inheritance, as He promised them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Attah zaqanta bata vayyamim ('you have grown old, you have entered into the days') — God states Joshua's age not as a compliment but as an urgency: much remains to be done and Joshua's time is limited. V'ha-arets nish'arah harbeh me'od l'rishtah ('the land remaining is very great to possess') — the verb yarash ('to possess, to dispossess') reappears. Despite the conquest summary of chapters 10-12, significant territory remains outside Israelite control. The tension between 'Joshua took the whole land' (11:23) and 'very much land remains' (13:1) is deliberate: the initial military campaigns broke Canaanite power, but comprehensive settlement and control were incomplete.
2. Kol g'lilot ha-P'lishtim ('all the districts/regions of the Philistines') — the Philistine territory along the southern coastal plain was never conquered during Joshua's campaigns. The Philistines, a Sea People who arrived in Canaan around the same time as the Israelite settlement, would become Israel's primary adversary through the period of the Judges and into the monarchy. Their five cities (v. 3) remained independent enclaves within the promised land.
3. Chameshet sarnei F'lishtim ('the five lords/rulers of the Philistines') — the word seren (plural sarnim) is a distinctly Philistine title, possibly cognate with Greek tyrannos ('tyrant, ruler'). Each of the five Philistine cities was governed by its own seren, forming a pentapolis confederation. The five cities — Gaza, Ashdod, Ashkelon, Gath, and Ekron — controlled the southern coastal plain and the trade routes connecting Egypt to Mesopotamia.
3. The Shihor (Shichor, 'black waters') is likely the easternmost branch of the Nile delta or the Wadi el-Arish, marking the traditional border with Egypt.
4. The unconquered territory extends northward along the Phoenician coast. M'arah asher la-Tsidonim ('Mearah belonging to the Sidonians') — likely a cave or cave-settlement in the Lebanese coast region. The Sidonians (Phoenicians) controlled the northern coastal territory that Israel never occupied.
5. Ha-Givli ('the Gebalites') — inhabitants of Gebal (Byblos), the ancient Phoenician port city. Kol ha-L'vanon ('all Lebanon') — the Lebanon mountain range and its settlements remained unconquered. Ad l'vo Chamath ('to the entrance of Hamath') — Lebo-hamath (modern Lebweh in the Beqa'a Valley) marks the ideal northern boundary of the promised land (Numbers 34:8). The gap between the ideal boundary and the actual conquest is significant — the territory described in verses 2-6 represents the 'not yet' within God's 'already.'
6. Anokhi orishem mip'nei b'nei Yisrael ('I myself will drive them out before the Israelites') — God takes personal responsibility for completing the conquest of the unconquered territories. The emphatic anokhi ('I myself') signals that the remaining dispossession is God's task, not Joshua's. Raq happilehah l'Yisrael b'nachalah ('only divide it for Israel as an inheritance') — Joshua's remaining assignment is allocation, not conquest. The verb nafal (hiphil, 'to cause to fall' — i.e., to cast lots) connects to the lot-casting method of land distribution.

6. The word *nachalah* ('inheritance') here carries its full covenantal weight: the land — including territory not yet controlled — is already Israel's inheritance by divine grant. Joshua is to distribute what God has promised, even before it is fully possessed.
7. *L'tish'at ha-sh'vatim va-chatsi ha-shevet ha-M'nasheh* ('for the nine tribes and the half-tribe of Manasseh') — the western half of Manasseh receives its allotment west of the Jordan, while the eastern half already received its share in the Transjordan (v. 29-31). The nine-and-a-half tribes awaiting Cisjordan allocation are the focus of chapters 14-19.
8. The narrative pauses to recapitulate the Transjordan allotment (vv. 8-13), confirming that Reuben, Gad, and eastern Manasseh already hold their *nachalah* by Mosaic grant. This establishes the precedent for the upcoming allocations: the same authority (divine command through Moses) governs both the Transjordan and Cisjordan distributions.
9. The Transjordan boundary description begins at the Arnon gorge (the southern boundary) and moves north. *Kol ha-mishor* ('the entire plateau') — the Mishor is the flat, elevated tableland east of the Dead Sea, known today as the Madaba plain. This was prime agricultural and grazing land.
10. *Ad g'vul b'nei Ammon* ('to the border of the Ammonites') — Israel's territory did not extend into Ammonite land, as God had prohibited (Deuteronomy 2:19). The Ammonite border served as the eastern limit of the Transjordan allotment.
11. The description moves north through the Transjordan: Gilead (the central Transjordan highlands), the Geshurite and Maacathite territories (northeast of the Sea of Galilee), Mount Hermon, and Bashan (the volcanic plateau of the modern Golan Heights and Hauran). This represents Og's former kingdom.
12. *Hu nishar mi-yeter ha-Refa'im* ('he remained from the remnant of the Rephaim') — Og's identity as the last Rephaim giant is repeated from 12:4. *Vayyakkhem Mosheh vayyorishem* ('Moses struck them and dispossessed them') — the verb *yarash* in the hiphil ('to dispossess, to drive out') confirms that the Transjordan conquest under Moses achieved genuine dispossession of the former inhabitants.
13. *V'lo horishu b'nei Yisrael et ha-G'shuri v'et ha-Ma'akhati* ('the Israelites did not dispossess the Geshurites or the Maacathites') — the first explicit acknowledgment of incomplete conquest in the allocation section. This failure foreshadows the pattern that will dominate Judges 1. *Ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') — the narrator confirms the ongoing presence of these unconquered peoples in the narrator's own time. David will later marry Maacah, a Geshurite princess (2 Samuel 3:3), and Absalom will flee to his grandfather the king of Geshur (2 Samuel 13:37-38).
14. *Raq l'shevet ha-Levi lo natan nachalah* ('only to the tribe of Levi he gave no inheritance') — Levi's exclusion from territorial allocation is stated three times in this chapter (vv. 14, 33) and repeatedly throughout Joshua. *Ishei YHWH Elohei Yisrael hu nachalato* ('the fire offerings of the LORD are his inheritance') — Levi's *nachalah* is not land but liturgical service. The tribe that serves at the altar receives its sustenance from the altar offerings. Their 'inheritance' is proximity to God — a theological statement that the divine presence is worth more than any territory. Levi will receive designated cities within other tribes' territories (chapter 21) but no contiguous tribal homeland.
15. *L'mishp'chotam* ('according to their clans/families') — the allocation is not merely tribal but sub-tribal, organized by extended family groups (*mishpachot*). Each clan receives a specific portion within the tribal territory.
16. Reuben's territory occupies the southern portion of the Transjordan: from the Arnon gorge northward through the Medeba plateau. This is the same area described in verses 9-10 as part of Sihon's former kingdom.
17. Several of these city names contain the element *ba'al* ('lord, master') — *Bamot Ba'al* ('high places of Baal'), *Beit Ba'al M'on* ('house of Baal of the dwelling'). The Canaanite religious names persist in the geography even after Israelite occupation, reflecting the enduring challenge of religious syncretism in the Transjordan.
18. *Yahtsah* ('Jahaz') — the site where Israel defeated Sihon in the original battle (Numbers 21:23; Deuteronomy 2:32). The city where the Transjordan conquest began is now part of Reuben's inheritance.
19. *Tseret ha-Shachar b'har ha-emeq* ('Zereth-shahar on the mount of the valley') — a town perched on a ridge above the Dead Sea valley. *Sibmah* was known for its vineyards (Isaiah 16:8-9; Jeremiah 48:32).
20. *Beit P'or* ('house of Peor') — associated with the Baal-peor apostasy (Numbers 25), where Israelite men engaged in sexual idolatry with Moabite women. The site's inclusion in Reuben's territory places them as guardians of a place of prior disgrace. *Ashdot ha-Pisgah* ('slopes of Pisgah') — the mountain range where Moses viewed the promised land and died (Deuteronomy 34:1-6).
21. *N'sikhei Sichon yosh'vei ha-arets* ('vassals/princes of Sihon, inhabitants of the land') — these five Midianite leaders were client-rulers under Sihon's overlordship. Their defeat is narrated in Numbers 31:8. *Zur* is the father of *Cozbi*, the Midianite woman killed by Phinehas during the Baal-peor incident (Numbers 25:15, 18). The listing connects the territorial allocation to the broader story of Transjordan conflict.
22. *Bil'am ben B'or ha-qosem* ('Balaam son of Beor, the diviner') — Balaam, who could not curse Israel (Numbers 22-24) but who advised Moab to seduce Israel through the Baal-peor strategy (Numbers 31:16), met his end in the Transjordan battles. The term *qosem* ('diviner') is pejorative — contrasting his pagan practice with legitimate prophetic authority. His death is recorded here within Reuben's territorial description because he died in this region.
23. *Ha-Yarden ug'vul* ('the Jordan and its border') — the Jordan River formed Reuben's western boundary, separating them from the tribes in Canaan proper. *He-arim v'chatsreihen* ('the cities and their villages/enclosures') — each city had dependent satellite settlements (*chatserim*, from *chatser*, 'courtyard, enclosure').

24. Gad's allotment follows Reuben's, occupying the central Transjordan — the heart of Gilead.
25. V'kol arei ha-Gil'ad ('all the cities of Gilead') — Gad received the central highlands of the Transjordan, the fertile and well-watered region of Gilead. Va-chatsi erets b'nei Ammon ('half the land of the Ammonites') — this appears to contradict Deuteronomy 2:19, which forbade taking Ammonite land. The territory described was likely land Sihon had previously taken from Ammon (cf. Judges 11:13, 22), making it legitimately Israelite through conquest from Sihon rather than directly from Ammon.
26. Machanayim ('double camp') — the place where Jacob saw the angels of God and exclaimed 'This is God's camp!' (Genesis 32:2). It will later serve as the capital for Ish-bosheth (2 Samuel 2:8) and as David's refuge during Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 17:24). The patriarchal memory is embedded in the tribal geography.
27. Sukkot ('Succoth,' meaning 'shelters/booths') — where Jacob built shelters for his livestock after his reconciliation with Esau (Genesis 33:17). The patriarchal narrative is woven into the tribal geography at every turn. Ad q'tseh yam Kinneret ('to the edge of the Sea of Chinnereth') — Gad's territory extended north along the Jordan Valley to the southern shore of the Sea of Galilee.
28. The formulaic summary closes Gad's allotment as it closed Reuben's (v. 23).
29. The eastern half of Manasseh receives the northernmost Transjordan territory — Bashan and northern Gilead. The split of Manasseh between east and west of the Jordan creates a unique situation: one tribe spanning the river, divided by geography but united by kinship.
30. Kol chavvot Ya'ir asher ba-Bashan shishim ir ('all the tent-villages of Jair in Bashan, sixty cities') — the chavvot ('tent-villages, encampments') of Jair were settlements named after Jair son of Manasseh, who captured them (Numbers 32:41; Deuteronomy 3:14). Sixty towns represents a substantial territory in the rich volcanic region of Bashan.
31. Livnei Makhir ben M'nasheh ('to the descendants of Machir son of Manasseh') — Machir was Manasseh's firstborn son (Genesis 50:23), and his clan was the dominant military force within the tribe. They received the most formidable territory: the former royal cities of Og, the last of the Rephaim giants. The warrior clan receives the giant's kingdom.
32. B'arvot Mo'av ('on the plains of Moab') — Moses made these allocations during Israel's encampment on the Moabite plain, opposite Jericho, in the final days before the Jordan crossing. The Transjordan section closes by returning to the scene of Moses's last acts.
33. YHWH Elohei Yisrael hu nachalatam ('the LORD, the God of Israel, is their inheritance') — the chapter's closing verse escalates from verse 14. There, Levi's inheritance was the fire offerings (the produce of the altar service). Here, the inheritance is God Himself. The LORD is not merely the source of Levi's sustenance but the substance of their portion. This is the highest theological statement about inheritance in Joshua: the ultimate nachalah is not land but the living God.

14

Summary: Caleb, at eighty-five years old, claims Hebron as his inheritance — the territory of the Anakite giants — declaring himself as strong as the day Moses sent him as a spy forty-five years earlier.

What Makes This Remarkable: Caleb's speech (vv. 6-12) is one of the great moments of biblical courage. He does not ask for easy territory — he asks for the hill country where the giants live, the very region that terrified the other spies in Numbers 13-14. His claim rests on a single fact: 'I wholly followed the LORD my God' (v. 8, male'ti acharei YHWH). The Hebrew male'ti ('I filled after') means he followed completely, with nothing held back — the same verb used for filling a cup to the brim.

Translation Friction: The phrase *kochi az ken kochi attah* (v. 11, 'as my strength was then, so is my strength now') is startling for an eighty-five-year-old. We rendered it literally. The word *nachalah* (v. 13, 'inheritance') is more than property — it is covenant-granted territory, the physical form of God's promise. Hebron's older name *Kiriath-arba* ('city of four' or 'city of Arba,' v. 15) preserves pre-Israelite tradition.

Connections: Caleb's faith echoes Numbers 13:30 and 14:24 — God promised him this land forty-five years earlier. Hebron becomes David's first capital (2 Samuel 2:1-4) and the burial site of the patriarchs (Genesis 23). The Anakites Caleb drives out (v. 12) are the same giants who terrified the spies in Numbers 13:28, 33. The phrase 'the land had rest from war' (v. 15) echoes 11:23.

1These are the territories the Israelites received as their inheritance in the land of Canaan, allocated to them by Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the ancestral houses of the Israelite tribes. 2Their inheritance was determined by lot, as the LORD had commanded through Moses, for the nine-and-a-half tribes. 3Moses had given the two-and-a-half tribes their inheritance east of the Jordan, but he gave no territorial inheritance to the Levites among them. 4Joseph's descendants

had become two tribes — Manasseh and Ephraim — so the Levites were given no portion of the land, only cities to live in with surrounding pasturelands for their livestock and property. ⁵The Israelites did just as the LORD had commanded Moses, and they divided the land. ⁶The people of Judah approached Joshua at Gilgal, and Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite said to him, "You know what the LORD said to Moses the man of God concerning you and me at Kadesh-barnea. ⁷I was forty years old when Moses the servant of the LORD sent me from Kadesh-barnea to scout the land, and I brought back to him an honest report — what was truly in my heart. ⁸My fellow scouts who went up with me made the people lose heart, but I remained fully committed to the LORD my God. ⁹On that day Moses swore an oath, saying, 'The land on which your feet have walked will be your inheritance — yours and your descendants' — permanently, because you fully followed the LORD my God.' ¹⁰Now look — the LORD has kept me alive, just as He promised, these forty-five years since the LORD spoke this word to Moses while Israel was wandering in the wilderness. And here I am today, eighty-five years old. ¹¹I am still as strong today as the day Moses sent me out. My strength then is my strength now — for war and for whatever needs doing. ¹²So now, give me this hill country that the LORD promised that day. You yourself heard on that day that the Anakim are there, with large, fortified cities. If the LORD is with me, I will drive them out, just as the LORD promised." ¹³Joshua blessed him and gave Hebron to Caleb son of Jephunneh as his inheritance. ¹⁴For this reason Hebron has belonged to Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite as his inheritance to this day, because he fully followed the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹⁵The former name of Hebron was Kiriath-arba — Arba was the greatest man among the Anakim. And the land had rest from war.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. El'azar ha-kohen viYhoshua bin Nun ('Eleazar the priest and Joshua son of Nun') — the allocation is administered jointly by the religious and military leaders. Eleazar (Aaron's surviving son, Numbers 20:25-28) operates the Urim and Thummim for divine consultation, while Joshua executes the distribution. This dual authority ensures the allocation is both divinely guided and administratively implemented.
2. B'goral nachalatam ('by lot was their inheritance') — the lot (goral) was the primary mechanism for distributing the land. Proverbs 16:33 states: 'The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from the LORD.' The lot removes human favoritism from the process — no tribe can claim a better portion through political maneuvering. The divine will operates through the apparently random device.
3. The narrator explains the arithmetic: twelve tribes minus two-and-a-half (already allocated in Transjordan) minus Levi (no territorial inheritance) leaves nine-and-a-half tribes for the Cisjordan allocation. Joseph's two sons (Ephraim and Manasseh) maintain the twelve-tribe count despite Levi's exclusion.
4. Ki hayu v'nei Yosef sh'nei mattot ('because the sons of Joseph were two tribes') — Jacob's adoption of Ephraim and Manasseh (Genesis 48:5) created a double portion for Joseph, keeping the tribal count at twelve even with Levi set apart for priestly service. Ki im arim lashavet u-migrsheihem ('only cities to dwell in with their pasturelands') — Levi received forty-eight cities scattered throughout all the other tribes' territories (chapter 21), ensuring priestly presence in every region of Israel.
5. Ka'asher tsivvah YHWH et Mosheh ken asu ('as the LORD commanded Moses, so they did') — the obedience formula that runs throughout Joshua. The land division proceeds under the same divine authority as the conquest.
6. Kalev ben Y'funneh ha-Q'nizzi ('Caleb son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite') — Caleb's ethnic designation as a Kenizzite is significant. The Kenizzites were a non-Israelite clan (Genesis 15:19) absorbed into the tribe of Judah. Caleb's foreignness makes his faith all the more remarkable: an outsider by blood who became an insider by faithfulness. His story parallels Rahab's — both non-Israelites who aligned themselves with YHWH and received an inheritance in the promised land.
6. Et ha-davar asher dibber YHWH el Mosheh ish ha-Elohim al odotai v'al odotekha b'Qadesh Barnea ('the word the LORD spoke to Moses the man of God concerning me and you at Kadesh-barnea') — Caleb appeals to a specific divine promise made forty-five years earlier, when he and Joshua alone gave a faithful report after spying out the land (Numbers 13-14). Moses is called ish ha-Elohim ('man of God'), a title emphasizing his unique prophetic authority.
7. Va'ashev oto davar ka'asher im l'vavi ('I brought him back a word/report as it was with my heart') — Caleb's self-assessment is not boastful but factual: he reported what he genuinely believed, not what would please the majority. His 'heart' (levav) was aligned with God's promise while ten other spies let fear override faith. The phrase contrasts with the fear that 'melted the hearts' (himsu et lev, Numbers 14:8) of the other spies.
8. Himsiu et lev ha-am ('they melted the heart of the people') — the ten faithless spies caused the national failure of nerve that resulted in the wilderness wandering. V'anokhi mileti acharei YHWH Elohai ('but I wholly followed the LORD my God') — the phrase mileti acharei ('I filled after' = 'I fully followed') is Caleb's signature expression, repeated in Numbers 14:24; 32:11-12; Deuteronomy 1:36. The verb male ('to fill') conveys totality: Caleb's commitment was not partial or conditional but full, complete, overflowing. There was no gap between God's promise and Caleb's trust.

9. Ha-arets asher dar'khah ragl'kha bah l'kha tihyeh l'nachalah ('the land your foot has walked on will be your inheritance') — the specific land Caleb scouted will be his personal nachalah. This promise, made at Kadesh-barnea (Numbers 14:24; Deuteronomy 1:36), has waited forty-five years for fulfillment. The land Caleb walked through as a spy he will now own as a settler.
9. Ad olam ('forever/permanently') — Caleb's inheritance carries the same permanence as the tribal allotments. His descendants will hold this territory in perpetuity. Ki mileta acharei YHWH Elohai ('because you fully followed the LORD my God') — the reason for the grant is theological faithfulness, not military prowess. Caleb earns his inheritance through trust, not through conquest.
10. Hinnah hecheyah YHWH oti ka'asher dibber ('the LORD has kept me alive, as he spoke/promised') — Caleb's survival itself is a fulfilled promise. God promised him the land, and God kept him alive to receive it. Zeh arba'im v'chamesh shanah ('these forty-five years') — forty years of wilderness wandering plus approximately five years of conquest campaigning. Ben chamesh ush'monim shanah ('eighty-five years old') — this age marker provides one of the few chronological anchors for the conquest period. If Caleb was forty when sent as a spy, and forty-five years have passed, the allocation is taking place approximately five years after the Jordan crossing.
11. Odeni ha-yom chazaq ka'asher b'yom sh'loach oti Mosheh ('I am still today as strong as the day Moses sent me') — at eighty-five, Caleb claims undiminished vigor. K'kochi az ukh'kochi attah ('my strength then is my strength now') — the claim is not merely physical boasting but theological testimony: God has preserved both his life and his strength for this moment. La-milchamah v'latset v'lavo ('for war and for going out and coming in') — 'going out and coming in' is an idiom for the full range of daily activity, both military and civil. Caleb is ready for everything.
12. T'nah li et ha-har ha-zeh ('give me this hill country') — Caleb does not request easy territory. He asks for the Hebron highlands — the very region where the Anakim giants still live, the same giants whose presence terrified the other ten spies forty-five years earlier (Numbers 13:28, 33). The man who was not afraid of the giants at forty is not afraid of them at eighty-five.
12. Ki Anaqim sham v'arim g'dolot b'tsurot ('for Anakim are there and cities are large and fortified') — Caleb acknowledges every difficulty: giants and fortified cities. He does not minimize the challenge. Ulai YHWH oti v'horashtim ('perhaps the LORD will be with me and I will dispossess them') — the ulai ('perhaps, if') is not doubt but humility. Caleb does not presume upon God's action; he trusts while leaving room for divine sovereignty. Ka'asher dibber YHWH ('as the LORD spoke/promised') — Caleb's faith rests entirely on God's spoken word. The promise made at Kadesh-barnea is the foundation of his confidence.
13. Vay'varkhahu Yehoshua ('Joshua blessed him') — the blessing is both a prayer for success and an official authorization. Vayyitten et Chevron l'Khalev ben Y'funneh l'nachalah ('he gave Hebron to Caleb as an inheritance') — the city of the patriarchs goes to the man of faith. Abraham purchased the cave of Machpelah at Hebron to bury Sarah (Genesis 23). Now Hebron becomes the personal inheritance of Caleb — the Kenizzite outsider whose faith surpassed that of native-born Israelites. The patriarchal burial site and the faithful warrior's inheritance converge at the same location.
14. Ya'an asher mille acharei YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('because he fully followed the LORD, the God of Israel') — the narrator repeats Caleb's signature phrase one final time as the theological explanation for his inheritance. The inheritance is earned not by conquest but by faithfulness. Caleb's story is the individual embodiment of the national principle: obedience to God is the path to possessing the promised land. Ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') — Caleb's descendants still hold Hebron in the narrator's time.
15. Qiryat Arba ha-adam ha-gadol ba-Anaqim ('Kiriath-arba, the great/greatest man among the Anakim') — Hebron's old name preserves the memory of Arba, the legendary ancestor or champion of the Anakim giants. The city named for the greatest giant is now given to the man who was never afraid of giants. V'ha-arets shaq'tah mil-milchamah ('the land had rest from war') — the same concluding formula as 11:23. The Caleb episode sits between two notices of rest, framing his inheritance claim as part of the transition from war to settlement.
15. Caleb's story is a masterpiece of narrative theology: the outsider who became an insider through faith, who waited forty-five years for a promise, who at eighty-five asked for the hardest assignment, who received the patriarchal city as his reward. His story answers the question: what does it look like to 'fully follow the LORD'?

15

Summary: *The territory of Judah is defined by detailed boundary descriptions. Caleb conquers Hebron and Debir, Othniel captures Kiriath-sepher and wins Caleb's daughter Achsah, and the chapter lists Judah's cities by district. The Jebusites in Jerusalem remain unconquered.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Judah's allotment is the longest and most detailed — reflecting Judah's theological and political significance as the tribe of the future monarchy. Achsah's request for water springs (v. 19) is one of the few moments a woman speaks in the allotment narratives — she negotiates for resources, not merely accepting what is given. The note that Judah 'could not drive out the Jebusites of Jerusalem' (v. 63) creates a tension that persists until David's conquest (2 Samuel 5:6-7).*

*Translation Friction: The boundary descriptions use geographical markers whose locations are often uncertain. We rendered every place name as the Hebrew gives it. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* (v. 63, 'to this day') marks the narrator's time and acknowledges that the allotment ideal did not match the settlement reality — the Jebusites remained in Jerusalem alongside Judah.*

Connections: Othniel's victory at Kiriath-sepher previews his role as the first judge (Judges 3:9-11). Achsah's story is repeated in Judges 1:12-15. The Jebusite presence in Jerusalem persists until 2 Samuel 5:6-9. Judah's territorial prominence anticipates the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7) and the prophetic focus on Judah.

¹The territory allotted to the tribe of Judah, clan by clan, extended to the border of Edom — the wilderness of Zin at the far south. ²Their southern boundary started from the end of the Dead Sea, from the bay that faces south. ³It ran south to the Ascent of Akrabbim, crossed to Zin, went up south of Kadesh-barnea, passed Hezron, went up to Addar, and turned toward Karka. ⁴It continued to Azmon, went out to the Wadi of Egypt, and ended at the sea. This is your southern boundary. ⁵The eastern boundary was the Dead Sea as far as the mouth of the Jordan. The northern boundary began from the bay of the sea at the mouth of the Jordan. ⁶The boundary went up to Beth-hoglah, passed north of Beth-arabah, and went up to the Stone of Bohan son of Reuben. ⁷The boundary went up to Debir from the Valley of Achor, then turned north toward Gilgal, which faces the Ascent of Adummim south of the valley. The boundary crossed to the waters of En-shemesh and came out at En-rogel. ⁸The boundary went up through the Valley of Ben-hinnom to the southern slope of the Jebusite city — that is, Jerusalem — then up to the top of the hill west of the Hinnom Valley, at the northern end of the Valley of Rephaim. ⁹From the hilltop the boundary curved to the spring of the waters of Nephtoah, extended to the cities of Mount Ephron, and curved to Baalah — that is, Kiriath-jearim. ¹⁰From Baalah the boundary turned westward to Mount Seir, passed along the northern slope of Mount Jearim — that is, Chesalon — descended to Beth-shemesh, and crossed to Timnah. ¹¹The boundary extended to the northern slope of Ekron, curved to Shikkeron, crossed Mount Baalah, went out to Jabneel, and ended at the sea. ¹²The western boundary was the Great Sea and its coastline. These were the boundaries of the tribe of Judah on all sides, clan by clan. ¹³To Caleb son of Jephunneh he gave a portion among the people of Judah, as the LORD had directed Joshua — Kiriath-arba (Arba being the father of Anak), that is, Hebron. ¹⁴Caleb drove out from there the three sons of Anak: Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai — descendants of Anak. ¹⁵From there he marched against the inhabitants of Debir — Debir was formerly called Kiriath-sepher. ¹⁶Caleb said, "Whoever attacks Kiriath-sepher and captures it — I will give him my daughter Achsah as a wife." ¹⁷Othniel son of Kenaz, Caleb's brother, captured it, and Caleb gave him his daughter Achsah in marriage. ¹⁸When she arrived, she urged him to ask her father for a field. She dismounted from her donkey, and Caleb asked her, "What do you want?" ¹⁹She said, "Give me a blessing. Since you have given me land in the Negev, give me springs of water as well." So he gave her the upper springs and the lower springs. ²⁰This is the inheritance of the tribe of Judah, clan by clan. ²¹The southernmost cities of the tribe of Judah toward the border of Edom in the Negev were: Kabzeel, Eder, Jagur, ²²Kinah, Dimonah, Adadah, ²³Kedesh, Hazor, Ithnan, ²⁴Ziph, Telem, Bealoth, ²⁵Hazor-hadattah, Kerioth-hezron (that is, Hazor), ²⁶A mam, Shema, Moladah, ²⁷Hazar-gaddah, Heshmon, Beth-pelet, ²⁸Hazar-shual, Beersheba, Biziothiah, ²⁹Baalath, Iim, Ezem, ³⁰Eltolad, Chesil, Hormah, ³¹Ziklag, Madmannah, Sansannah, ³²Lebaoth, Shilhim, Ain, and Rimmon — twenty-nine cities in all, with their surrounding settlements. ³³In the Shephelah: Eshtaol, Zorah, Ashnah, ³⁴Zanoah, En-gannim, Tappuah, Enam, ³⁵Jarmuth, Adullam, Socoh, Azekah, ³⁶Shaaraim, Adithaim, Gederah, and Gederothaim — fourteen cities with their surrounding settlements. ³⁷Zenan, Hadashah, Migdal-gad, ³⁸Dilean, Mizpeh, Joktheel, ³⁹Lachish, Bozkath, Eglon, ⁴⁰Cabbon, Lahmas, Kithlish, ⁴¹Gederoth, Beth-dagon, Naamah, and Makkedah — sixteen cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁴²Libnah, Ether, Ashan, ⁴³Iphtah, Ashnah, Nezib, ⁴⁴Keilah, Achzib, and Mareshah — nine cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁴⁵Ekron, with its dependent towns and settlements; ⁴⁶from Ekron to the sea, everything alongside Ashdod, with its settlements; ⁴⁷Ashdod with its towns and settlements; Gaza with its towns and settlements — as far as the Wadi of Egypt, with the Great Sea as the boundary. ⁴⁸In the hill country: Shamir, Jattir, Socoh, ⁴⁹Dannah, Kiriath-sannah (that is, Debir), ⁵⁰Anab, Eshtemoa, Anim, ⁵¹Goshen, Holon, and Giloh — eleven cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁵²Arab, Dumah, Eshan, ⁵³Janum, Beth-tappuah, Aphekah, ⁵⁴Humtah, Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron), and Zior — nine cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁵⁵Maon, Carmel, Ziph, Juttah, ⁵⁶Jezreel, Jokdeam, Zanoah, ⁵⁷Kain, Gibeah, and Timnah — ten

cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁵⁸Halhul, Beth-zur, Gedor, ⁵⁹Maarath, Beth-anoth, and Eltekon — six cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁶⁰Kiriath-baal (that is, Kiriath-jearim) and Rabbah — two cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁶¹In the wilderness: Beth-arabah; Middin, Secacah, ⁶²Nibshan, the City of Salt, and En-gedi — six cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁶³As for the Jebusites living in Jerusalem, the people of Judah could not drive them out. So the Jebusites live alongside the people of Judah in Jerusalem to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyehi ha-goral l'mattheh b'nei Yehudah ('the lot fell to the tribe of Judah') — Judah is the first tribe to receive its Cisjordan allocation, reflecting its preeminence among the tribes. El g'vul Edom midbar Tsin negbah ('to the border of Edom, the wilderness of Zin, to the south') — Judah's southern boundary touches Edom and the wilderness of Zin, where Israel spent most of the wilderness years. The tribal territory begins at the edge of the desert.
2. Min ha-lashon ha-poneh negbah ('from the tongue/bay facing southward') — the lashon ('tongue') describes a bay or peninsula at the southern tip of the Dead Sea. The boundary description follows a precise geographic course from east to west, typical of ancient Near Eastern border treaties and land grants.
3. Ma'aleh Aqrabbim ('Ascent of Scorpions') — a steep pass in the southern Negev, marking the boundary between the Arabah and the highlands. The boundary runs through the very landscape Israel traversed during the wilderness years: Kadesh-barnea, where the spies were sent (Numbers 13), sits along Judah's southern border. The tribe's territory is defined by the sites of Israel's earlier history.
4. Nachal Mitsrayim ('the Wadi of Egypt') — not the Nile but the Wadi el-Arish, the traditional boundary between Canaan and Egypt. V'hayu tots'ot ha-g'vul yammah ('the outlets of the boundary were at the sea') — the Mediterranean is the western terminus. Judah's southern border runs from the Dead Sea to the Mediterranean, encompassing the entire Negev.
5. Yam ha-Melach ('the Salt Sea' — Dead Sea) forms Judah's entire eastern border. The northern boundary begins where the Jordan empties into the Dead Sea and runs westward — this border separates Judah from Benjamin.
6. Even Bohan ben R'uven ('the Stone of Bohan son of Reuben') — a named boundary marker, apparently a standing stone associated with a member of the tribe of Reuben. Named stones as boundary markers were common in the ancient Near East and provided permanent, publicly recognized reference points for territorial borders.
7. Me-Emeq Akhor ('from the Valley of Achor') — the same valley where Achan was executed (7:24-26). The site of Israel's darkest moment during the conquest now serves as a boundary marker for Judah's territory. Geography bears the scars of history. Ein Shemesh ('spring of the sun') and Ein Rogel ('spring of the fuller') — the boundary follows natural water sources, as was typical in the ancient Near East.
8. Gei ven Hinnom ('Valley of the son of Hinnom') — this valley south and west of Jerusalem will become infamous as the site of child sacrifice under later Judean kings (2 Kings 23:10; Jeremiah 7:31-32; 32:35). Its name, Ge-Hinnom, eventually became Gehenna — the New Testament term for the place of final judgment. Its mention here as a boundary marker carries no hint of its dark future.
9. El ketef ha-Y'vusi min-negev hi Yerushalayim ('to the shoulder of the Jebusite on the south — that is, Jerusalem') — the narrator identifies the Jebusite city as Jerusalem, though it will not be captured until David's time (2 Samuel 5:6-9). The boundary runs along its southern edge, making Jerusalem technically within Judah's allotment but practically unconquered (v. 63).
10. Ba'alalah hi Qiryat Y'arim ('Baalalah, that is Kiriath-jearim') — one of the Gibeonite cities (9:17), now on the border between Judah and Benjamin. Kiriath-jearim will later be the resting place of the ark of the covenant for twenty years (1 Samuel 7:1-2), connecting this boundary description to the larger narrative of God's presence among His people.
11. Beit Shemesh ('house of the sun') — a border city between Judah and Dan in the Sorek Valley. It will become the site where the ark returns from Philistine captivity (1 Samuel 6:12-19). Timnah — the town where Samson will find his Philistine wife (Judges 14:1). The boundary passes through sites that will feature prominently in the Judges narratives.
12. The northern boundary reaches Ekron, one of the five Philistine cities (13:3). Judah's border touches Philistine territory without encompassing it — the Philistine pentapolis remains unconquered. Tots'ot ha-g'vul yammah ('the outlets of the boundary were at the sea') — the Mediterranean coast is the western terminus, completing the circuit of Judah's borders.
13. Ha-Yam ha-Gadol ('the Great Sea') — the Mediterranean. Judah's territory is now fully defined: Dead Sea to the east, Negev desert to the south, Mediterranean to the west, and the Benjamin/Dan border to the north. It is the largest tribal allotment, befitting Judah's preeminent role (Genesis 49:8-12).
14. El pi YHWH liYhoshua ('according to the mouth/command of the LORD to Joshua') — Caleb's allocation is explicitly attributed to divine command, not to Joshua's personal decision. Qiryat Arba avi ha-Anaq ('Kiriath-arba, father of Anak') — Arba is identified as the ancestor of the Anakim giants. The city named after the father of the giants goes to the man who was never afraid of them.
15. Vayyoresh misham Kalev et sh'loshah b'nei ha-Anaq ('Caleb drove out from there the three sons of Anak') — the eighty-five-year-old warrior fulfills his promise. The same three Anakim clans the spies saw at Hebron forty-five years earlier (Numbers 13:22) are now expelled by the one spy who was

- not afraid of them. The verb *yarash* ('to dispossess') closes the circle: Caleb takes possession by driving out the giants whose presence once terrified a nation.
15. *Qiryat Sefer* ('city of the book/scribe') — Debir's earlier name suggests it may have been a scribal center or archive city. The name is fitting for a place that will feature in a narrative about learning and legacy (vv. 16-19). The parallel account appears in Judges 1:11-15.
 16. *V'natatti lo et Akhsah vitti l'ishah* ('I will give him Achsah my daughter as a wife') — Caleb offers his daughter as the reward for military valor. This practice was common in the ancient Near East (cf. 1 Samuel 17:25; 18:17-19, where Saul promises his daughter to whoever kills Goliath). The scene introduces Achsah, who will prove to be as bold and resourceful as her father.
 17. *Othniel ben Q'naz achi Khalev* ('Othniel son of Kenaz, Caleb's brother/relative') — Othniel is either Caleb's younger brother or his nephew (the Hebrew *achi* can mean 'brother' or 'kinsman'). He will later become the first judge of Israel (Judges 3:9-11), the model deliverer against whom all subsequent judges are measured. His introduction here as a young warrior earning his bride foreshadows his later role as Israel's first post-Joshua leader.
 18. *Vatt'siteihu lish'ol me-et avihah sadeh* ('she urged him to ask her father for a field') — Achsah takes initiative, persuading her husband to request productive land. *Vattitsnach me-al ha-chamor* ('she dismounted from the donkey') — the act of dismounting may signal a formal petition or simply practical movement toward her father. Caleb's question *mah lakh* ('what is it to you? / what do you want?') shows his openness to her request.
 19. *T'nah li v'rakhah* ('give me a blessing/gift') — Achsah asks boldly, as her father asked boldly of Joshua (14:12). *Ki erets ha-Negev n'tattani* ('since you have given me Negev land') — the Negev is arid; land without water is barely usable. *V'natattah li gullot mayim* ('give me also springs of water') — Achsah recognizes that the land gift is incomplete without water. She asks for the essential resource that transforms dry land into productive territory.
 19. *Vayyitten lah et gullot illiyyot v'et gullot tachtiiyyot* ('he gave her the upper springs and the lower springs') — Caleb gives generously, exceeding her request. The double gift (upper and lower springs) ensures abundant water supply. Achsah's boldness mirrors her father's: Caleb asked for the hardest territory (14:12), and Achsah asks for the resources to make it thrive. Both father and daughter know that receiving an inheritance is not enough — you must also possess the means to develop it.
 20. The summary formula introduces the city list that follows (vv. 21-62). The cities are organized by geographic region: Negev cities (vv. 21-32), Shephelah cities (vv. 33-47), hill country cities (vv. 48-60), and wilderness cities (vv. 61-62).
 21. The Negev city list begins. *Kabzeel* is the hometown of Benaiah son of Jehoiada, one of David's mighty warriors (2 Samuel 23:20). These are frontier settlements on the edge of the Edomite border.
 22. The Negev city list continues. These small settlements mark the southern extent of permanent Judahite habitation.
 23. This *Hazor* is not the great northern city (11:1, 10) but a smaller Negev settlement sharing the same name.
 24. This *Ziph* is a Negev settlement distinct from the more famous *Ziph* in the hill country (v. 55), where David will hide from Saul (1 Samuel 23:14-15; 26:1-3).
 25. *Chatsor Chadattah* ('New Hazor') — distinguished from the other *Hazor* by the adjective *chadattah* ('new'). *Qeriyot Chetsron* ('Kerioth-hezron') — possibly the hometown of Judas Iscariot, if 'Iscariot' derives from *ish Qeriyot* ('man of Kerioth').
 26. *Moladah* — later assigned to Simeon (19:2), reflecting the overlap between Judah's and Simeon's territories in the Negev.
 27. Negev settlements continue. These small towns dot the arid landscape between Beersheba and the Edomite border.
 28. *B'er Sheva* ('Beersheba,' meaning 'well of the oath' or 'well of seven') — the most important city in the Negev, associated with Abraham (Genesis 21:31-33), Isaac (Genesis 26:23-25, 33), and Jacob (Genesis 46:1-4). 'From Dan to Beersheba' will become the standard idiom for the full extent of Israel (Judges 20:1; 1 Samuel 3:20). The patriarchal well-city is now formally within Judah's inheritance.
 29. The Negev city list continues toward the western Negev.
 30. *Chormah* ('Hormah,' meaning 'destruction/ban') — the city whose name commemorates an early Israelite victory and the *cherem* applied there (Numbers 21:3). The name itself is a permanent memorial of divine judgment.
 31. *Tsiqlag* ('Ziklag') — this city will be given to David by Achish king of Gath during David's fugitive years (1 Samuel 27:6) and will serve as his base of operations. The narrator notes that 'Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah to this day' (1 Samuel 27:6).
 32. *Kol arim esrim va-tesha v'chatsreihen* ('all cities twenty-nine with their villages') — the total for the Negev district. The actual names listed number more than twenty-nine, suggesting either that some pairs are compound names (e.g., 'Ain and Rimmon' may be a single city, En-rimmon) or that the number reflects a different counting method.
 33. The Shephelah (western foothills) city list begins. *Esh'ta'ol* and *Tsor'ah* — these two cities in the Sorek Valley will feature prominently in the Samson narrative (Judges 13:2, 25; 16:31). They are later assigned to Dan (19:41), reflecting the territorial adjustments between Judah and Dan.
 34. *Ein Gannim* ('spring of gardens') — the name evokes agricultural fertility. *Tappuach* ('apple') — likely the same *Tappuah* of 12:17.
 35. *Jarmuth* was one of the five coalition kings' cities (10:3). *Adullam* will become David's cave refuge (1 Samuel 22:1). *Socoh* and *Azekah* flank the Valley of Elah, where David will defeat Goliath (1 Samuel 17:1). The Shephelah landscape is saturated with future narrative significance.

36. Sha'arayim ('two gates') — mentioned in the pursuit after David's victory over Goliath (1 Samuel 17:52). The first Shephelah sub-district totals fourteen cities.
37. The second Shephelah sub-district begins. These cities are in the central and southern Shephelah.
38. Ha-Mitspeh ('the lookout/watchtower') — a strategic observation point in the Shephelah, one of several sites bearing this name throughout the land.
39. Lachish and Eglon — two of the five coalition cities defeated in chapter 10, now listed as Judahite cities. Lachish was one of the most heavily fortified cities in Judah, second in importance only to Jerusalem. Its destruction by Sennacherib in 701 BC is depicted in famous Assyrian reliefs.
40. Smaller Shephelah settlements in the Lachish district.
41. Beit Dagon ('house of Dagon') — named after the Philistine grain deity, indicating pre-Israelite Philistine or Canaanite influence. Makkedah — the site of the cave where the five kings hid (10:16-27). The second Shephelah sub-district totals sixteen cities.
42. Libnah — conquered during the southern campaign (10:29-30), later a Levitical city (21:13).
43. A second Ashnah appears here (distinct from v. 33), illustrating how common names recur across different districts.
44. Q'ilah ('Keilah') — the city David will later defend against Philistine raiders (1 Samuel 23:1-13). Mareshah — a significant Shephelah city that will become important in the Chronicler's narrative (2 Chronicles 11:8; 14:9-10; 20:37). The third Shephelah sub-district totals nine cities.
45. Ekron — one of the five Philistine cities. Its inclusion in Judah's allotment indicates the ideal boundary, not the actual extent of occupation. The Philistine cities are assigned to Judah by divine grant but remain unconquered in practice.
46. The territory between Ekron and the coast, alongside the Philistine city of Ashdod, is claimed for Judah. This coastal strip was never effectively controlled by Judah — it remained Philistine territory throughout the pre-monarchic and much of the monarchic period.
47. Ashdod and Gaza — two of the five Philistine cities — are listed as part of Judah's allotment. The gap between divine grant and actual possession is at its widest here: these major Philistine strongholds will resist Israelite control for centuries. The allocation represents God's declared intention for Judah's territory, not a description of current occupation.
48. The hill country city list begins — the heartland of Judah. Jattir — later assigned as a Levitical city (21:14) and one of the cities to which David sent spoil from his Amalekite raid (1 Samuel 30:27).
49. Qiryat Sannah — a third name for the city also called Kiriath-sepher (v. 15) and Debir. The city that Othniel captured for Caleb.
50. Anab — one of the cities from which Joshua expelled the Anakim (11:21). Eshtemoa — a Levitical city (21:14) and a recipient of David's gifts (1 Samuel 30:28).
51. Giloh — the hometown of Ahithophel, David's counselor who defected to Absalom (2 Samuel 15:12). The first hill country sub-district totals eleven cities.
52. The second hill country sub-district begins, centered on the southern hill country.
53. Beit Tappuah ('house of the apple') — a hill country settlement distinguished from the Tappuah of the Shephelah (v. 34).
54. Qiryat Arba hi Chevron ('Kiriath-arba, that is Hebron') — the patriarchal city appears in the city list as part of Caleb's inheritance within Judah. The second hill country sub-district totals nine cities.
55. Ma'on and Karmel — the region where David will encounter Nabal and Abigail (1 Samuel 25:2-3). Ziph — where the Ziphites will betray David's hiding place to Saul twice (1 Samuel 23:19; 26:1). The hill country of Judah is the stage for much of the David narrative.
56. This Jezreel is a Judahite hill country town, distinct from the more famous Jezreel in the northern valley (the Valley of Jezreel).
57. The third hill country sub-district totals ten cities.
58. Beit Tsur ('Beth-zur') — a strategic fortress in the hill country between Hebron and Jerusalem. It will feature prominently in the Maccabean wars (1 Maccabees 4:29, 61; 6:26, 31, 49-50).
59. The fourth hill country sub-district totals six cities. The Septuagint adds an additional sub-district here (including Tekoa, Bethlehem, and other cities between Jerusalem and Hebron) that is missing from the Masoretic Hebrew text. The omission is likely due to an ancient copying error (homoioteleuton).
60. Qiryat Ba'al hi Qiryat Y'arim ('Kiriath-baal, that is Kiriath-jearim') — the Canaanite name preserves the ba'al element; the Israelite renaming to 'City of Forests' replaces the pagan association. This city will host the ark of the covenant for twenty years (1 Samuel 7:1-2). The fifth and final hill country sub-district contains just two cities.
61. Ba-midbar ('in the wilderness') — the final geographic district: the Judean wilderness, the barren terrain descending from the hill country to the Dead Sea. This is the wilderness where David will hide from Saul and where the Qumran community will later produce the Dead Sea Scrolls.
62. Ir ha-Melach ('City of Salt') — possibly associated with the salt deposits near the Dead Sea. Ein Gedi ('spring of the young goat') — the famous oasis on the western shore of the Dead Sea, where David will spare Saul's life in a cave (1 Samuel 24:1-22). The wilderness district totals six cities. Ein Gedi's lush springs in the midst of barren wilderness make it one of the most dramatic landscapes in Israel — a place where life emerges from desolation.

63. V'et ha-Y'vusi yosh'vei Yerushalayim lo yakhlu v'nei Yehudah l'horisham ('the Jebusites inhabiting Jerusalem — the people of Judah could not dispossess them') — the chapter's final verse delivers a jarring admission: Judah, the preeminent tribe, could not take Jerusalem. The verb yakhal ('to be able') indicates inability, not unwillingness. The Jebusite fortress was too strong for Judah to conquer. Jerusalem will remain in Jebusite hands until David captures it by sending his men through the water shaft (2 Samuel 5:6-9).
63. Ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') — the narrator writes before David's conquest, placing the composition (or at least this note) in the pre-Davidic period. The verse is a confession of incomplete conquest that foreshadows the pattern of Judges 1: tribe after tribe failing to fully dispossess the Canaanite inhabitants.

16

Summary: The territory allotted to the descendants of Joseph — specifically Ephraim — is described. The Canaanites of Gezer remain among them as forced laborers.

What Makes This Remarkable: Ephraim's allotment is brief compared to Judah's, but the tribe's significance is enormous — Ephraim will become synonymous with the northern kingdom. The note that the Canaanites of Gezer were not driven out but subjected to forced labor (v. 10) marks a pattern of incomplete obedience that defines the settlement period. The compromise — coexistence through subjugation rather than separation — is precisely what Deuteronomy warned against.

Translation Friction: The boundary descriptions are compressed and some geographical references are uncertain. The phrase mas-oved (v. 10, 'forced labor') is the same term used for Solomon's labor force in 1 Kings 9:21 — we rendered it consistently. The partial obedience — subjugating rather than driving out — represents a middle path the Torah did not authorize.

Connections: Gezer's Canaanite population persists until Pharaoh's daughter receives it as a wedding gift from Egypt's king (1 Kings 9:16). The forced-labor arrangement anticipates the system that will become the northern kingdom's grievance against Solomon (1 Kings 12:4). Ephraim's complaint about insufficient territory (17:14-18) reveals growing tribal friction.

1The allotment for the descendants of Joseph began at the Jordan near Jericho, east of the waters of Jericho, going up through the wilderness from Jericho into the hill country of Bethel. 2From Bethel it went on to Luz and crossed to the territory of the Archites at Ataroth. 3It descended westward to the territory of the Japhletites, down to Lower Beth-horon and on to Gezer, ending at the sea. 4So the descendants of Joseph — Manasseh and Ephraim — received their inheritance. 5The boundary of the Ephraimites, clan by clan, was as follows: the eastern border of their inheritance ran from Ataroth-addar to Upper Beth-horon. 6The boundary went toward the sea at Michmethath on the north, then turned eastward to Taanath-shiloh, and passed east of it to Janoah. 7From Janoah it descended to Ataroth and Naarah, reached Jericho, and ended at the Jordan. 8From Tappuah the boundary ran westward to the Kanah Valley and ended at the sea. This was the inheritance of the tribe of Ephraim, clan by clan. 9In addition, certain cities within Manasseh's territory were set apart for the Ephraimites — all those cities with their surrounding settlements. 10They did not drive out the Canaanites living in Gezer, so the Canaanites have lived among the Ephraimites to this day — though they were put to forced labor.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyetsa ha-goral livnei Yosef ('the lot came out for the descendants of Joseph') — Ephraim and Manasseh are treated together as 'the house of Joseph' before receiving individual allotments. Their combined territory forms the central hill country of Canaan — the heartland that will later become the northern kingdom of Israel.
2. Mi-Beit El Luzah ('from Bethel to Luz') — Bethel and Luz are sometimes treated as the same city (Genesis 28:19) and sometimes as adjacent sites. Ha-Arkhi ('the Archite') — a clan whose territory lay near Bethel. David's friend and advisor Hushai is called 'the Archite' (2 Samuel 15:32; 16:16).
3. Beit Choron Tachton ('Lower Beth-horon') — the lower of the two Beth-horon settlements that guarded the strategic pass from the central highlands to the coastal plain (the same pass where the Amorite coalition was routed in 10:10-11). Gezer — the city whose king was defeated (10:33; 12:12) but whose territory was never fully conquered until Solomon's time (1 Kings 9:16).

4. The general Joseph boundary (vv. 1-3) is now subdivided: Ephraim's allotment follows in verses 5-9, and Manasseh's in chapter 17. Joseph's double portion (through Ephraim and Manasseh) fulfills Jacob's blessing of Genesis 48-49.
5. Beit Choron Elyon ('Upper Beth-horon') — the upper settlement of the twin Beth-horon towns. Together with Lower Beth-horon (v. 3), these cities controlled the most important pass between the coastal plain and the central highlands. Ephraim's border runs through this strategic corridor.
6. Ta'anat Shiloh ('approach to Shiloh') — the name references Shiloh, which will become the central sanctuary site where the tabernacle is established (18:1). The boundary passes near this important future religious center.
7. U-faga bi-Yricho v'yatsa ha-Yarden ('it touched Jericho and went out at the Jordan') — Ephraim's eastern boundary reaches the Jordan River at Jericho, making Ephraim's territory a cross-section of the central highlands from the Jordan to the Mediterranean approaches.
8. Nachal Qanah ('the Kanah River/Valley') — this wadi formed the boundary between Ephraim and Manasseh on the western side of the territory. The Kanah runs through the Shephelah to the Mediterranean.
9. He-arim ha-mavdalot livnei Efrayim b'tokh nachalat b'nei M'nasheh ('the cities set apart for Ephraim within the inheritance of Manasseh') — tribal boundaries were not absolute. Ephraim held designated enclaves within Manasseh's territory, reflecting the close kinship between the two Joseph tribes and the practical difficulties of drawing clean borders in a landscape of interspersed settlements.
10. V'lo horishu et ha-K'na'ani ha-yoshev b'Gazer ('they did not dispossess the Canaanites dwelling in Gezer') — the same failure noted for Judah and Jerusalem (15:63), now repeated for Ephraim and Gezer. Vay'hi l'mas oved ('they became forced labor') — rather than expelling the Canaanites, Ephraim enslaved them. This compromise — subjugation rather than dispossession — violates Deuteronomy 7:1-2 and sets the pattern for the Judges period. Forced labor controls the population without removing the religious threat that cohabitation poses.

17

Summary: *The allotment to the half-tribe of Manasseh west of the Jordan is described. The daughters of Zelophehad claim their father's inheritance. Joseph's descendants complain they need more territory; Joshua tells them to clear the forested hill country.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The daughters of Zelophehad (v. 3-6) invoke Moses's ruling from Numbers 27:1-11 — and it holds. Their father died without sons, and the inheritance passes to the daughters as God commanded. This is the legal system working: a precedent established in the wilderness is honored in the land. Joshua's response to the Joseph tribes' complaint (vv. 14-18) is bracing: 'If you are a numerous people, go up to the forest and clear it for yourselves' — stop complaining and start working.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase erets haPerizzi vohaRepha'im (v. 15, 'the land of the Perizzites and the Rephaim') places the Joseph tribes in territory associated with legendary pre-Israelite peoples. The word ya'ar (v. 15, 'forest') reveals that much of the hill country was densely wooded — the settlement required deforestation, a detail often lost in modern imagination of the landscape.*

Connections: *Zelophehad's daughters fulfill Numbers 27:1-11 and 36:1-12. The Canaanite chariots of iron (v. 16) anticipate Judges 1:19 and 4:3 (Sisera's iron chariots). Joshua's challenge to the Joseph tribes foreshadows the inter-tribal tensions of Judges. The Rephaim reference connects to Deuteronomy 2:10-11 and 3:11 (Og's bed).*

¹The allotment for the tribe of Manasseh — Joseph's firstborn — was as follows: Machir, Manasseh's firstborn and the father of Gilead, received Gilead and Bashan because he was a warrior. ²The remaining Manassites received allotments by their clans: the descendants of Abiezer, Helek, Asriel, Shechem, Hephher, and Shemida. These were the male descendants of Manasseh son of Joseph, clan by clan. ³Now Zelophehad son of Hephher, son of Gilead, son of Machir, son of Manasseh, had no sons — only daughters. Their names were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah. ⁴They came before Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the leaders, and said, "The LORD commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our relatives." So, in obedience to the LORD's command, he gave them an inheritance among the relatives of their father. ⁵Ten parcels fell to Manasseh in addition to Gilead and Bashan east of the Jordan, ⁶because the daughters of Manasseh received an inheritance among the sons. The rest of the Manassites held the land of Gilead. ⁷Manasseh's boundary ran from Asher to Michmethath, which faces Shechem. The boundary went south to the inhabitants of En-tappuah. ⁸The land of Tappuah belonged to Manasseh, but the town of Tappuah on Manasseh's border belonged to the Ephraimites. ⁹The boundary descended to the Kanah Valley. South of the valley, these cities belonged to Ephraim even though they were among

Manasseh's cities. Manasseh's boundary was on the north side of the valley, ending at the sea. ¹⁰To the south was Ephraim's territory, and to the north was Manasseh's, with the sea as their western boundary. They bordered Asher on the north and Issachar on the east. ¹¹Within Issachar and Asher, Manasseh held Beth-shean and its dependent towns, Ibleam and its towns, the residents of Dor and its towns, the residents of En-dor and its towns, the residents of Taanach and its towns, and the residents of Megiddo and its towns — three of the heights. ¹²But the Manassites could not take possession of these cities. The Canaanites were determined to remain in this land. ¹³When the Israelites grew stronger, they subjected the Canaanites to forced labor but did not drive them out completely. ¹⁴The descendants of Joseph said to Joshua, "Why have you given us only one allotment — a single portion — as our inheritance? We are a numerous people, since the LORD has blessed us so abundantly." ¹⁵Joshua answered them, "If you are so numerous, go up to the forest region and clear land for yourselves in the territory of the Perizzites and Rephaim, since the hill country of Ephraim is too cramped for you." ¹⁶The descendants of Joseph replied, "The hill country is not enough for us, and all the Canaanites in the valley lands have iron chariots — both those in Beth-shean and its towns and those in the Valley of Jezreel." ¹⁷Joshua said to the house of Joseph — to Ephraim and Manasseh — "You are indeed a numerous people with great strength. You will not have just one allotment. ¹⁸The hill country will be yours. Though it is forested, you will clear it, and its farthest reaches will be yours. And you will drive out the Canaanites, even though they have iron chariots and are strong."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. L'Makhir b'khor M'nasheh avi ha-Gil'ad ki hu hayah ish milchamah ('to Machir, firstborn of Manasseh, father of Gilead, because he was a man of war') — Machir's warrior status earned him the most formidable Transjordan territory: Gilead and Bashan, formerly Og's kingdom. The Machirite clan was the military backbone of Manasseh, and their Transjordan allotment (already described in 13:29-31) reflects their fighting capacity.
2. Six Manassite clans receive the western (Cisjordan) allotment. Abiezer's clan will produce Gideon (Judges 6:11). Shechem is both a clan name and the city that will become a major political and religious center. The listing 'the male descendants' (ha-z'kharim) sets up the contrast with the female claimants in the next verse.
3. Ts'lofchad — the man whose death without male heirs prompted a landmark legal ruling in Numbers 27:1-11: daughters can inherit when there are no sons. The five daughters successfully petitioned Moses for their father's nachalah, establishing a permanent precedent in Israelite inheritance law. Their inclusion here demonstrates that the ruling was honored in practice, not merely in principle.
4. YHWH tsivvah et Mosheh latet lanu nachalah b'tokh acheinu ('the LORD commanded Moses to give us an inheritance among our kinsmen') — the daughters of Zelophehad cite the divine precedent from Numbers 27:7. They do not merely request; they invoke established legal authority. Vayyitten lahem el pi YHWH nachalah b'tokh achei avihen ('he gave them, according to the LORD's word, an inheritance among the brothers of their father') — the ruling is honored without hesitation. Women receive covenant land alongside men. The nachalah system is based on family right, not gender.
5. Asarah chavalim ('ten portions/parcels') — the ten western portions correspond to six male clans (v. 2) plus the four remaining portions needed for the five daughters of Zelophehad's sub-clan, reflecting the complex clan arithmetic of inheritance distribution.
6. B'not M'nasheh nachalu nachalah b'tokh banav ('the daughters of Manasseh inherited an inheritance among his sons') — the narrator emphasizes the daughters' equal standing in the land distribution. The Zelophehad precedent is now embedded in the tribal record as accomplished fact.
7. Sh'khem ('Shechem') — one of the most historically significant cities in Israel: where Abraham first received the land promise (Genesis 12:6-7), where Jacob purchased land and built an altar (Genesis 33:18-20), and where the covenant renewal of chapter 24 will take place. Shechem sits in the pass between Mount Ebal and Mount Gerizim.
8. A precise territorial distinction: the surrounding land (erets Tappuah) belongs to Manasseh, but the city itself (Tappuah) belongs to Ephraim. Such border-city arrangements demonstrate the complexity of tribal boundaries in practice.
9. The Kanah Valley (Nachal Qanah) serves as the dividing line between the two Joseph tribes, with Ephraim holding enclaves on the southern side within Manasseh's broader territory. The intermingling reflects the close kinship between the tribes.
10. The summary positions the two Joseph tribes in relation to their neighbors: Asher to the northwest (along the Carmel coast) and Issachar to the northeast (in the Jezreel Valley). Manasseh's territory stretched from the Jordan to the Mediterranean — one of the widest east-west allotments.
11. Manasseh held important cities within the territories of neighboring tribes: Beth-shean (guarding the junction of the Jezreel and Jordan valleys), Ibleam (controlling a pass in the Carmel range), Dor (coastal), Taanach and Megiddo (controlling the Jezreel Valley). These were strategic cities, and Manasseh's claim to them reflects their military importance. Sh'loshet ha-nafet ('the three heights/districts') — a term of uncertain meaning, possibly referring to three elevated districts within these territories.
12. V'lo yakhlu b'nei M'nasheh l'horish et he-arim ha-elleh ('the sons of Manasseh could not dispossess these cities') — the third failure notice after Judah (15:63) and Ephraim (16:10). Vayyoel ha-K'na'ani lashavet ba-arets ha-zot ('the Canaanite was determined to dwell in this land') — the verb

yo'el ('was willing, was determined, persisted') shows Canaanite tenacity. They refused to leave.

13. Vayyitt'nu et ha-K'na'ani la-mas v'horesh lo horisho ('they put the Canaanite to forced labor but did not at all drive them out') — the same compromise as Ephraim (16:10). Economic exploitation replaces obedience to the divine command. The pattern — growing strong enough to enslave but choosing not to fully dispossess — reveals a failure of will, not capacity. When Israel became powerful enough to enforce the cherem, they chose profit over obedience.
14. Maddu'a natatta li nachalah goral echad v'chevel echad va-ani am rav ('why have you given me one lot and one portion when I am a large people?') — the Joseph tribes complain that their territory is too small for their population. The complaint contrasts sharply with Caleb's attitude: Caleb asked for the hardest territory (14:12), while Joseph demands easier, larger territory. Ad asher ad koh berkhani YHWH ('since the LORD has blessed me so much until now') — they cite divine blessing as the reason they deserve more land, turning theology into a self-serving argument.
15. Im am rav attah aleh l'kha ha-ya'arah u-vereta l'kha sham ('if you are a numerous people, go up to the forest and clear it for yourself there') — Joshua's response is bracing: if you need more land, go take it. Clear the forests, fight the Perizzites and Rephaim. The answer exposes the Joseph tribes' complaint as laziness disguised as piety — they want more land without more effort. Ki ats l'kha har Efrayim ('since the hill country of Ephraim is too narrow for you') — Joshua acknowledges their crowding but redirects them toward the solution: expansion through effort, not redistribution of others' allotments.
16. Rekhev barzel ('iron chariots') — the Canaanites' technological advantage. Iron chariots dominated the flat valley terrain where infantry was vulnerable. The Joseph tribes use the iron chariots as an excuse for not expanding into the valleys, ignoring the fact that God had already demonstrated His power over chariots at Merom (11:6-9). The complaint reveals a failure of faith: the tribe that cites God's blessing (v. 14) does not trust God's power against iron technology.
17. Am rav attah v'khoach gadol lakh ('you are a numerous people and great strength is yours') — Joshua now acknowledges both their numbers and their power. But instead of granting them additional territory at others' expense, he directs their power toward the challenge: if you are strong, use that strength to expand.
18. Ki torish et ha-K'na'ani ki rekhev barzel lo ki chazaq hu ('you will drive out the Canaanite, even though he has iron chariots, even though he is strong') — Joshua's final word directly addresses the iron chariot excuse. The chariots are real; the enemy is strong; and Joshua asserts that none of this matters. The tribe that claims God's blessing should act on God's power. The passage ends with a challenge rather than a concession — an echo of God's own words to Joshua in 1:6-9.

18

Summary: *The remaining seven tribes who have not yet received their inheritance are rebuked by Joshua. A survey commission maps the remaining land, and lots are cast at Shiloh to distribute territory. Benjamin's allotment is detailed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joshua's rebuke (v. 3) is pointed: 'How long will you be slack about going in to possess the land that the LORD, the God of your fathers, has given you?' The gift requires action — inheritance is not passive. The assembly at Shiloh (v. 1) marks the tabernacle's first permanent location after the wilderness, and Shiloh will remain the central sanctuary until the ark's capture in 1 Samuel 4.*

Translation Friction: *The survey commission (v. 4-9) is described with administrative detail: seven men walk the land, divide it into seven portions, and write descriptions in a document (sefer). We rendered the process as the Hebrew presents it — this is ancient land surveying, and the vocabulary is technical. Benjamin's territory between Judah and Joseph (vv. 11-28) places the smallest tribe in the most strategic location.*

Connections: *Shiloh as the tabernacle site continues through Judges and into 1 Samuel 1-4. Its destruction becomes a prophetic warning in Jeremiah 7:12 and 26:6. Benjamin's territory includes Jerusalem (v. 28) — the city that straddles the Judah-Benjamin border and will become David's capital. The lot-casting at Shiloh connects to the Urim and Thummim tradition (Exodus 28:30).*

1The entire assembly of the Israelites gathered at Shiloh and set up the Tent of Meeting there. The land lay subdued before them. 2Seven tribes among the Israelites had not yet received their inheritance. 3Joshua said to the Israelites, "How long will you put off going in to take possession of the land that the LORD, the God of your ancestors, has given you? 4Appoint three men from each tribe. I will send them out to travel through the land, survey it for the purpose of their inheritance, and then report back to me. 5They are to divide it into seven portions. Judah will remain in its territory to the south, and the house of Joseph in its territory to the north. 6You are to survey the land in seven portions and bring the description here to me. I will

cast lots for you here before the LORD our God. ⁷The Levites have no portion among you, because the priesthood of the LORD is their inheritance. And Gad, Reuben, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have already received their inheritance east of the Jordan, which Moses the servant of the LORD gave them." ⁸The men set out on their way. Joshua charged those going to survey the land: "Go, travel through the land, write up a description, and come back to me. Then I will cast lots for you before the LORD at Shiloh." ⁹The men went and traveled through the land, recording it city by city in seven portions in a document. Then they returned to Joshua at the camp in Shiloh. ¹⁰Joshua cast lots for them at Shiloh before the LORD, and there he divided the land among the Israelites according to their tribal divisions. ¹¹The lot for the tribe of Benjamin came up first, clan by clan. Their allotted territory fell between the people of Judah and the people of Joseph. ¹²Their northern boundary began at the Jordan, went up along the northern slope of Jericho, ascended westward into the hill country, and ended at the wilderness of Beth-aven. ¹³From there the boundary crossed to Luz — to the southern slope of Luz (that is, Bethel) — then descended to Ataroth-addar, near the hill south of Lower Beth-horon. ¹⁴The boundary curved around the western side, turning south from the hill facing Beth-horon, and ended at Kiriath-baal (that is, Kiriath-jearim), a city of Judah. This was the western side. ¹⁵The southern side began at the edge of Kiriath-jearim. The boundary went westward to the spring of the waters of Nephtoah, ¹⁶then descended to the foot of the hill facing the Valley of Ben-hinnom, at the northern end of the Valley of Rephaim. It went down through the Hinnom Valley along the southern slope of the Jebusite city and on down to En-rogel. ¹⁷It turned north to En-shemesh, then went to Geliloth facing the Ascent of Adummim, and descended to the Stone of Bohan son of Reuben. ¹⁸It crossed to the slope overlooking the Arabah on the north and descended into the Arabah. ¹⁹The boundary passed along the northern slope of Beth-hoglah and ended at the northern bay of the Dead Sea, at the southern end of the Jordan. This was the southern boundary. ²⁰The Jordan formed the eastern boundary. This was the inheritance of the Benjaminites on all sides, clan by clan. ²¹The cities of the tribe of Benjamin, clan by clan, were: Jericho, Beth-hoglah, Emek-keziz, ²²Beth-arabah, Zemaraim, Bethel, ²³Avvim, Parah, Ophrah, ²⁴Chephar-ammoni, Ophni, and Geba — twelve cities with their surrounding settlements. ²⁵Gibeon, Ramah, Beeroth, ²⁶Mizpah, Chephirah, Mozah, ²⁷Rekem, Irpeel, Taralah, ²⁸Zela, Ha-eleph, the Jebusite city (that is, Jerusalem), Gibeah, and Kiriath — fourteen cities with their surrounding settlements. This was the inheritance of the Benjaminites, clan by clan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vayyashkinu sham et Ohel Mo'ed ('they caused the Tent of Meeting to dwell there') — the verb shakan ('to dwell, to tabernacle') is the root of Shekhinah ('divine dwelling presence'). The tabernacle's installation at Shiloh marks a new phase: the center of worship moves from the military camp at Gilgal to a more permanent site in the central highlands. Shiloh will serve as Israel's central sanctuary throughout the Judges period until its destruction, likely by the Philistines (cf. Psalm 78:60; Jeremiah 7:12-14; 26:6).
1. V'ha-arets nikhb'shah lifneihem ('the land was subdued before them') — the passive verb nikhb'shah confirms the land is under Israelite control. The remaining allotments can proceed in relative security.
2. Shiv'ah sh'vatim ('seven tribes') — Judah, Ephraim, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have received their western allotments. Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of Manasseh hold the Transjordan. Levi has no territorial inheritance. Seven tribes remain: Benjamin, Simeon, Zebulun, Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and Dan.
3. Ad anah attem mitrappim lavo lareshet et ha-arets ('how long will you be slack/negligent to go and possess the land?') — Joshua rebukes the remaining tribes for their passivity. The verb raphah (hitpael, 'to be slack, to relax, to be negligent') suggests a failure of initiative. The land has been given; the tribes have not moved to claim it. Joshua's question echoes Moses's rebuke to the Reubenites and Gadites: 'Shall your brothers go to war while you sit here?' (Numbers 32:6).
4. Sh'loshah anashim la-shavet ('three men per tribe') — twenty-one men total will survey the remaining territory. V'yikht'vu otah l'fi nachalatam ('they will write/describe it according to their inheritance') — the survey is a written document, a formal land record. This is systematic, bureaucratic land management: survey, document, allocate by lot.
5. The existing allotments of Judah (south) and Joseph (north) serve as fixed boundaries. The seven remaining portions will be fitted between them and in the areas they have not claimed. The framework is already established; the survey fills in the gaps.
6. V'yariti lakhem goral poh lifnei YHWH Eloheinu ('I will cast lots for you here before the LORD our God') — the lot-casting takes place at Shiloh, before the Tent of Meeting, in the LORD's presence. The process is explicitly liturgical: the divine will determines which tribe receives which surveyed portion. Human planning (the survey) meets divine sovereignty (the lot).

7. Ki khunat YHWH nachalato ('the priesthood of the LORD is his inheritance') — a third formulation of Levi's non-territorial inheritance: in 13:14 it was the fire offerings, in 13:33 it was the LORD Himself, and here it is the priesthood. The three statements complement each other: Levi's inheritance is God (the person), the priesthood (the role), and the offerings (the provision).
8. L'khu v'hithalkhu va-arets v'khitvu otah v'shuvu elai ('go, walk through the land, write it up, and return to me') — the commission is clear: survey, document, return. The written survey will serve as the basis for the lot-casting. U-foh ashlik lakhem goral lifnei YHWH b'Shiloh ('here I will cast lots for you before the LORD at Shiloh') — Shiloh is established as the administrative and religious center for the remaining allocations.
9. Vayyikht'vuha l'arim l'shiv'ah chalaqim al sefer ('they wrote it up by cities into seven portions in a scroll/document') — the survey produces a written scroll (sefer), an official land register. This is one of the earliest descriptions of systematic cartography and territorial documentation in the Bible. The document serves as the authoritative reference for the lot-casting.
10. The lot-casting determines which of the seven surveyed portions goes to which tribe. The process combines human diligence (the survey) with divine determination (the lots). The result is binding — no tribe can dispute an allocation determined by lot before the LORD.
11. Bein b'nei Yehudah u-vein b'nei Yosef ('between the people of Judah and the people of Joseph') — Benjamin's territory sits between the two dominant tribal blocs: Judah to the south and Joseph (Ephraim/Manasseh) to the north. This buffer position will give Benjamin outsized political significance: Jerusalem sits on the Judah-Benjamin border, and the tribe will be torn between north and south throughout Israel's history.
12. Beit Aven ('house of wickedness/nothingness') — located near Bethel. The name may be an intentional derogatory distortion of Bethel ('house of God') used by later prophets to condemn the shrine's idolatrous practices (Hosea 4:15; 5:8; 10:5).
13. Luzah hi Beit El ('Luz, that is, Bethel') — the narrator again identifies Luz with Bethel, as in Genesis 28:19 where Jacob renamed the site after his vision of the heavenly stairway.
14. Qiryat Ba'al hi Qiryat Y'arim ir b'nei Yehudah ('Kiriath-baal, that is Kiriath-jearim, a city of Judah') — this Gibeonite city (9:17) sits on the boundary between Judah and Benjamin, and will host the ark of the covenant for twenty years (1 Samuel 7:1-2).
15. Benjamin's southern boundary is described from west to east — the same line as Judah's northern boundary (15:5-9) but traversed in the opposite direction. The shared border confirms that Benjamin and Judah are immediate neighbors.
16. The boundary passes through the same landmarks as Judah's northern border (15:7-8): the Valley of Hinnom, the Jebusite city (Jerusalem), En-rogel. Jerusalem sits precisely on the tribal boundary — technically in Benjamin but claimed by Judah. This ambiguity will persist until David makes it the capital of all Israel.
17. Even Bohan ben R'uven ('Stone of Bohan son of Reuben') — the same boundary marker noted in 15:6. The description confirms that Benjamin's southern boundary exactly matches Judah's northern boundary.
18. The Arabah here refers to the lower Jordan Valley near the Dead Sea — Benjamin's southeastern corner.
19. The southern boundary is complete — running from Kiriath-jearim in the west to the Dead Sea in the east, with Jerusalem on the border between Judah and Benjamin.
20. Benjamin's territory is now fully defined — a relatively small but strategically vital strip between Judah and Ephraim, stretching from the central highlands to the Jordan River, containing Jerusalem, Jericho, Bethel, Gibeon, and other sites of major significance.
21. Y'richo ('Jericho') — the first city conquered in the promised land is now part of Benjamin's inheritance. The site of Israel's greatest initial victory becomes a tribal city.
22. Beit El ('Bethel,' meaning 'house of God') — the site of Jacob's ladder vision (Genesis 28:10-22) and a major religious center throughout Israel's history. Its inclusion in Benjamin's territory (though near the Ephraim border) will have implications for the later division of the kingdom, when Jeroboam places a golden calf at Bethel (1 Kings 12:28-29).
23. Ofrah — likely the same Ophrah where Gideon will later build an altar and receive his call (Judges 6:11, 24), though some identify Gideon's Ophrah with a site in Manasseh.
24. Geva ('Geba') — an important military site on the Benjaminite border with Ephraim. It will be the location of Jonathan's bold attack on the Philistine garrison (1 Samuel 13:3; 14:1-15) and will serve as the northern boundary of Judah in the later monarchy ('from Geba to Beersheba,' 2 Kings 23:8). The first city district totals twelve cities.
25. Giv'on ('Gibeon') — the Hivite city that deceived Israel into a covenant (chapter 9). It is now formally within Benjamin's territory. Ha-Ramah ('Ramah') — later the home of Samuel (1 Samuel 7:17; 8:4). B'erot ('Beeroth') — one of the four Gibeonite cities (9:17).
26. Ha-Mitspah ('Mizpah') — one of the most important assembly sites in Israel's history. Samuel will gather Israel here to pray before the Philistine defeat (1 Samuel 7:5-12). Saul will be chosen king here (1 Samuel 10:17-25). After Jerusalem's fall, Gedaliah will govern from Mizpah (2 Kings 25:23; Jeremiah 40:6). K'firah ('Chephirah') — another Gibeonite city (9:17).
27. Lesser-known Benjaminite settlements in the hill country.
28. Ha-Y'vusi hi Yerushalayim ('the Jebusite city, that is Jerusalem') — Jerusalem appears in Benjamin's city list, confirming that the city is technically in Benjaminite territory even though Judah claims it as well (15:8, 63). Giv'at ('Gibeah') — later notorious as the site of the horrific crime in Judges 19-21 and as Saul's hometown and royal capital (1 Samuel 10:26; 11:4; 15:34). The second district totals fourteen cities, bringing Benjamin's total to

twenty-six.

19

Summary: The remaining six tribes receive their territorial allotments by lot at Shiloh: Simeon within Judah's territory, Zebulun, Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and Dan. Joshua himself receives Timnath-serah in Ephraim's hill country.

What Makes This Remarkable: Simeon's allotment is embedded within Judah's territory (v. 1) — 'their inheritance was within the inheritance of Judah, because the portion of Judah was too large for them.' This absorption anticipates Simeon's eventual disappearance as a distinct tribe and partially fulfills Jacob's prophecy in Genesis 49:7 ('I will scatter them in Israel'). Joshua receives his inheritance last (vv. 49-50), after all the people have been settled — the leader takes what remains, not first pick.

Translation Friction: Dan's allotment (vv. 40-48) is described and then immediately noted as insufficient — 'the territory of Dan slipped away from them' (v. 47), leading to the migration and conquest of Laish described in Judges 18. We rendered yetse mehem as the territory 'slipping away' to preserve the Hebrew's sense of loss rather than mere military failure.

Connections: Simeon's absorption into Judah fulfills Genesis 49:7. Dan's migration to Laish is narrated in Judges 18. Joshua's personal inheritance at Timnath-serah (v. 50) is his burial place (24:30). The city lists in this chapter overlap with the Levitical cities in chapter 21 and the lists in 1 Chronicles 6.

¹The second lot fell to Simeon — to the tribe of Simeon, clan by clan. Their inheritance was within the territory of Judah. ²Their inheritance included Beersheba (or Sheba), Moladah, ³Hazar-shual, Balah, Ezem, ⁴Eltolad, Bethul, Hormah, ⁵Ziklag, Beth-marcaboth, Hazar-susah, ⁶Beth-lebaoth, and Sharuhén — thirteen cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁷Ain, Rimmon, Ether, and Ashan — four cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁸along with all the settlements surrounding these cities as far as Baalath-beer (Ramah of the Negev). This was the inheritance of the tribe of Simeon, clan by clan. ⁹Simeon's inheritance came out of Judah's allotment, because Judah's portion proved too large for them. So the Simeonites received their inheritance within Judah's territory. ¹⁰The third lot came up for Zebulun, clan by clan. The boundary of their inheritance reached to Sarid. ¹¹Their boundary went up westward to Maralah, reached Dabbesheth, and extended to the wadi facing Jokneam. ¹²From Sarid it turned eastward toward the sunrise along the boundary of Chisloth-tabor, then went out to Daberath and up to Japhia. ¹³From there it passed eastward to Gath-hepher, to Eth-kazin, and went out to Rimmon, curving toward Neah. ¹⁴The boundary turned north of it to Hannathon and ended at the Valley of Iphtah-el. ¹⁵including Kattath, Nahalal, Shimron, Idalah, and Bethlehem — twelve cities with their surrounding settlements. ¹⁶This was the inheritance of the Zebulunites, clan by clan — these cities with their surrounding settlements. ¹⁷The fourth lot came out for Issachar — for the Issacharites, clan by clan. ¹⁸Their territory included Jezreel, Chesulloth, Shunem, ¹⁹Hapharaim, Shion, Anaharath, ²⁰Rabbith, Kishion, Ebez, ²¹Remeth, En-gannim, En-haddah, Beth-pazzez. ²²The boundary reached Tabor, Shahazumah, and Beth-shemesh, and ended at the Jordan — sixteen cities with their surrounding settlements. ²³This was the inheritance of the tribe of Issachar, clan by clan — the cities with their surrounding settlements. ²⁴The fifth lot came out for the tribe of Asher, clan by clan. ²⁵Their territory included Helkath, Hali, Beten, Achshaph, ²⁶Allammelech, Amad, Mishal — reaching to Carmel on the west and to Shihor-libnath. ²⁷It turned eastward to Beth-dagon, reached Zebulun and the Valley of Iphtah-el to the north, then to Beth-emek and Neiel, going out to Cabul on the north. ²⁸including Ebron, Rehob, Hammon, and Kanah, as far as Great Sidon. ²⁹The boundary turned to Ramah and continued to the fortified city of Tyre, then turned to Hosah, ending at the sea in the region of Achzib. ³⁰also Ummah, Aphek, and Rehob — twenty-two cities with their surrounding settlements. ³¹This was the inheritance of the tribe of Asher, clan by clan — these cities with their surrounding settlements. ³²The sixth lot came out for Naphtali — for the Naphtalites, clan by clan. ³³Their boundary ran from Heleph, from the oak at Zaanannim, through Adami-nekeb and Jabneel to Lakkum, ending at the Jordan. ³⁴The boundary turned westward to Aznoth-tabor, and from there to Hukok. It bordered Zebulun on the south, Asher on the west, and the Jordan on the east. ³⁵The fortified cities were Ziddim, Zer, Hammath, Rakkath, and Chinnereth, ³⁶Adamah, Ramah, Hazor, ³⁷Kedesh, Edrei,

En-hazor, ³⁸Yiron, Migdal-el, Horem, Beth-anath, and Beth-shemesh — nineteen cities with their surrounding settlements. ³
⁹This was the inheritance of the tribe of Naphtali, clan by clan — the cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁴⁰The seventh lot came out for the tribe of Dan, clan by clan. ⁴¹The territory of their inheritance included Zorah, Eshtaol, Ir-shemesh, ⁴²Shalabbin, Aijalon, Ithlah, ⁴³Elon, Timnah, Ekron, ⁴⁴Eltekeh, Gibbethon, Baalath, ⁴⁵Jehud, Bene-berak, Gath-rimmon, ⁴⁶Mejarkon, Rakkon, and the territory facing Joppa. ⁴⁷When the Danites lost their territory, they went up and attacked Leshem, captured it, and put it to the sword. They took possession of it, settled there, and renamed Leshem as Dan, after their ancestor Dan. ⁴⁸This was the inheritance of the tribe of Dan, clan by clan — these cities with their surrounding settlements. ⁴
⁹When they had finished distributing the land as an inheritance with its boundaries, the Israelites gave an inheritance to Joshua son of Nun among them. ⁵⁰By the LORD's command they gave him the city he requested — Timnath-serah in the hill country of Ephraim. He rebuilt the city and settled there. ⁵¹These are the inheritances that Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the ancestral houses of the Israelite tribes distributed by lot at Shiloh before the LORD, at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting. So they finished dividing the land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Vay'hi nachalatam b'tokh nachalat b'nei Yehudah ('their inheritance was within the inheritance of Judah') — Simeon does not receive an independent territory but an enclave within Judah's allotment. This arrangement fulfills Jacob's prophecy in Genesis 49:7: 'I will divide them in Jacob and scatter them in Israel.' Simeon effectively becomes absorbed into Judah, eventually losing tribal identity. The 'scattering' prophesied by the patriarch is accomplished through the allocation.
2. B'er Sheva ('Beersheba') — the patriarchal well-city (listed in Judah's cities, 15:28) now allocated to Simeon. The overlap between Judah's and Simeon's city lists confirms Simeon's territory is carved from Judah's allocation, likely because Judah's territory proved too large for one tribe.
3. These cities also appear in Judah's Negev list (15:28-29), confirming the territorial overlap.
4. Chormah ('Hormah') appears in both tribal lists (15:30), reinforcing the shared territory.
5. Beit ha-Markavot ('house of chariots') and Chatsar Susah ('enclosure of horses') — these names suggest military installations for chariot horses, possibly remnants of Canaanite or Egyptian military infrastructure in the Negev.
6. Sharuhin — an important fortified city in the western Negev, known from Egyptian records as a Hyksos stronghold that Pharaoh Ahmose besieged after expelling the Hyksos from Egypt (c. 1550 BC).
7. The second Simeonite district totals four cities. The combined total (seventeen) represents Simeon's modest allocation — among the smallest of the tribal territories.
8. Ba'alat B'er Ramat Negev ('Baalath-beer, Ramah of the Negev') — the southernmost extent of Simeon's territory, deep in the arid Negev.
9. Ki hayah cheleq b'nei Yehudah rav mehem ('because the portion of Judah was too large for them') — the narrator provides the practical explanation for Simeon's enclave arrangement: Judah had more land than its population needed. Divine lot and practical geography converge: the lot placed Simeon within Judah, and the excess territory made it workable. Providence operates through demographic realities.
10. Zebulun received territory in the lower Galilee, between the Jezreel Valley and the hills north of the Carmel range. Jacob's blessing predicted Zebulun would 'dwell at the shore of the sea' (Genesis 49:13), though the allotment described here does not reach the coast — a tension noted by many commentators.
11. The western boundary approaches the Carmel range near Jokneam (12:22). Zebulun's territory covers the fertile valleys of the lower Galilee — good agricultural land.
12. Kislot Tavor ('flanks of Tabor') — the slopes of Mount Tabor, which rises dramatically from the Jezreel Valley. Tabor will be the staging ground for Deborah and Barak's battle against Sisera (Judges 4:6, 12, 14). Daverat ('Daberath') — a Levitical city at the base of Tabor (21:28).
13. Gittah Chefer ('Gath-hepher') — the hometown of the prophet Jonah son of Amittai (2 Kings 14:25). This otherwise minor border town becomes significant as the birthplace of the reluctant prophet who was sent to Nineveh.
14. Gei Yiftach El ('Valley of Iphtah-el,' meaning 'God opens') — this valley forms part of Zebulun's northern boundary and also borders Asher (v. 27).
15. Beit Lechem ('Bethlehem') — this is the Galilean Bethlehem (distinct from the Judean Bethlehem of David and later of Jesus), located in Zebulun's territory. The existence of two Bethlehems in different tribal territories is well attested. Nahalal appears in Judges 1:30 as a city where Zebulun failed to drive out the Canaanites.
16. Zebulun's allocation is complete — a modest territory in the lower Galilee, but strategically located near major trade routes and the fertile Jezreel Valley.

17. Issachar received territory in the eastern Jezreel Valley and the hills south of the Sea of Galilee — some of the most fertile agricultural land in all of Canaan. Jacob blessed Issachar as a 'strong donkey lying down between the sheepfolds,' who 'saw that rest was good and that the land was pleasant' (Genesis 49:14-15).
18. Yizr'elah ('Jezreel') — the city that gives its name to the great valley. It will become a royal residence for the Omride dynasty and the site of Naboth's vineyard (1 Kings 21) and Jezebel's death (2 Kings 9:30-37). Shunem — where the Shunammite woman will host Elisha (2 Kings 4:8-37).
19. Issachar's city list continues through the Jezreel Valley settlements.
20. Qishyon ('Kishion') — a Levitical city (21:28). Its location near the Kishon River connects it to the valley where Deborah's army will defeat Sisera (Judges 4-5).
21. Ein Gannim ('spring of gardens') — a well-watered site, reflecting the agricultural richness of Issachar's territory.
22. Tavor ('Tabor') — Mount Tabor, the distinctive dome-shaped mountain rising 1,886 feet above the Jezreel Valley. This Beth-shemesh ('house of the sun') is a different city from the one in Judah/Dan (15:10). Tots'ot g'vulam ha-Yarden ('their boundary ended at the Jordan') — Issachar's eastern boundary touches the Jordan, giving the tribe a cross-section from the Jezreel Valley to the Jordan Rift.
23. Issachar's allocation is complete — sixteen cities in some of the most productive agricultural land in the promised territory.
24. Asher received the northwestern coastal strip along the Mediterranean, from Carmel northward to Sidon — territory rich in natural resources. Jacob blessed Asher: 'His food will be rich; he will provide royal delicacies' (Genesis 49:20). Moses blessed Asher: 'Most blessed of sons is Asher; let him be favored among his brothers, and let him dip his foot in oil' (Deuteronomy 33:24).
25. Achshaph — one of the cities whose king joined Jabin's northern coalition (11:1; 12:20).
26. U-faga b'Karmel ha-yammah ('reaching to Carmel on the sea/west') — Mount Carmel, the dramatic headland jutting into the Mediterranean, forms a natural boundary. It will become the site of Elijah's confrontation with the prophets of Baal (1 Kings 18).
27. Kavul ('Cabul') — a settlement in western Galilee. The name will recur when Solomon gives twenty Galilean cities to Hiram king of Tyre, who calls the territory 'Cabul' (1 Kings 9:13) — apparently unimpressed.
28. Ad Tsidon Rabbah ('as far as Great Sidon') — Asher's ideal territory extends to the major Phoenician city of Sidon on the Lebanese coast. In practice, the Phoenician cities remained independent. Asher's allotment is aspirational in its northern reaches.
29. Ir mivtsar Tsor ('the fortified city of Tyre') — Tyre, the great Phoenician island-fortress, appears in Asher's boundary description. Like Sidon, Tyre remained Phoenician throughout Israel's history and became a major trade partner under Solomon and Ahab. Achzib — a coastal city that Asher failed to capture (Judges 1:31).
30. Asher's total is twenty-two cities — a substantial coastal territory, though much of it remained in Phoenician control.
31. Asher's allocation is complete — the northwestern coastal strip with aspirational boundaries reaching to Sidon and Tyre.
32. Naphtali received territory in the upper Galilee, the mountainous region north of the Sea of Galilee. Moses blessed Naphtali: 'satisfied with favor and full of the blessing of the LORD; possess the sea and the south' (Deuteronomy 33:23).
33. Me-Elon b'Tsa'anannim ('from the oak/terebinth at Zaanannim') — this landmark tree is the site where Jael will kill Sisera with a tent peg (Judges 4:11). The boundary description casually mentions a location that will become the site of one of the most dramatic events in the Judges period.
34. Uviyhudah ha-Yarden mizrach ha-shamesh ('and Judah at the Jordan toward the sunrise') — this puzzling reference to 'Judah upon the Jordan' in northern Galilee has produced many interpretations. It may refer to a Judahite enclave, a textual corruption, or a variant name for a geographic feature. The most common explanation is that it refers to territory associated with the Israelite settlement broadly rather than the specific tribe of Judah.
35. Chammat ('Hammath,' meaning 'hot spring') — likely the hot springs south of Tiberias on the Sea of Galilee. Kinneret ('Chinnereth') — the city that gives its name to the Sea of Chinnereth/Galilee, located on the northwestern shore of the lake. Rakkath — possibly the site later rebuilt as Tiberias.
36. Chatsor ('Hazor') — the great city Joshua burned (11:10-11) now appears in Naphtali's city list, indicating it has been rebuilt for Israelite settlement.
37. Qedesh ('Kedesh') — Kedesh-naphtali, later designated as a city of refuge (20:7) and a Levitical city (21:32). It will be the staging ground for Barak's army in the battle against Sisera (Judges 4:6, 9-10).
38. Beit Anat ('Beth-anath,' meaning 'house of Anath') — named after the Canaanite warrior goddess Anath. Both Beth-anath and Beth-shemesh ('house of the sun') in Naphtali are cities where the Canaanites were not driven out (Judges 1:33), another instance of incomplete conquest.
39. Naphtali's allocation is complete — nineteen cities in the upper Galilee, including Hazor, Kedesh, and the Sea of Galilee shore.
40. Dan is the last tribe to receive its allotment by lot. Dan's original territory was in the central-western region between Judah, Ephraim, and Benjamin — bordering the Philistine coastal plain. The territory proved untenable, leading to Dan's migration north (Judges 18).
41. Tsor'ah v'Eshta'ol ('Zorah and Eshtaol') — the Samson cities (Judges 13:2, 25; 16:31). These towns in the Sorek Valley were also listed in Judah's territory (15:33), reflecting the overlapping claims in this contested border zone.

42. Ayyalon ('Aijalon') — the valley where the moon stood still during Joshua's battle (10:12). This strategic valley controlling access from the coastal plain to the highlands is within Dan's allotment.
43. Timnah — where Samson's Philistine wife lived (Judges 14:1). Ekron — the northernmost Philistine city. Dan's territory theoretically extends into Philistine territory, but the Danites were unable to hold this land (v. 47; Judges 1:34-35).
44. Gibbethon — a Philistine-held city where two Israelite kings will be assassinated during siege operations (1 Kings 15:27; 16:15-17), demonstrating how long the Danite/Israelite struggle against Philistine control in this region persisted.
45. B'nei V'raq ('Bene-berak') — a town in the coastal plain, later the site of a significant rabbinic community.
46. Mei ha-Yarqon ('waters of the Yarkon') — the Yarkon River, which flows to the Mediterranean near modern Tel Aviv. Yafa ('Joppa') — the ancient port city on the Mediterranean coast, later the port from which Jonah will flee (Jonah 1:3) and where Peter will receive his vision of the clean and unclean animals (Acts 10:5-11).
47. Vayyetse g'vul b'nei Dan mehem ('the territory of Dan went out from them' or 'was too small for them') — the Hebrew is terse but the meaning is clear: Dan could not hold its allotted territory against Philistine and Amorite pressure (Judges 1:34-35). Vayyilachamu im Leshem ('they fought against Leshem') — the Danite migration to the far north, narrated in detail in Judges 18. Leshem (called Laish in Judges 18:7) was a peaceful, isolated city in the upper Jordan Valley that Dan conquered and renamed. Vayyiq'r'u l'Leshem Dan k'shem Dan avihem ('they called Leshem Dan, after the name of Dan their father') — the renamed city gives rise to the expression 'from Dan to Beersheba' (the full extent of Israel, north to south).
48. Dan's allocation is nominally complete, but uniquely among the tribes, the Danites could not hold it and migrated to a completely different location. Their story is the most dramatic illustration of the gap between divine grant and human possession.
49. Vayyitt'nu v'nei Yisrael nachalah liYhoshua bin Nun b'tokham ('the Israelites gave an inheritance to Joshua among them') — Joshua receives his personal inheritance last, after every tribe has been allocated. The leader who distributed everyone else's land receives his own only when all others are settled. This selflessness contrasts with the Joseph tribes' complaint (17:14-18): Joshua asks for nothing while his kinsmen demand more.
50. Al pi YHWH ('by the LORD's command') — even Joshua's personal inheritance is divinely authorized. Et ha-ir asher sha'al ('the city he requested') — Joshua asked for a specific city, not the best territory. Timnat Serach b'har Efrayim ('Timnath-serah in the hill country of Ephraim') — a modest city in his own tribal territory. The name means 'extra portion' or 'portion of the sun.' Vayyivneh et ha-ir vayyeshev bah ('he built the city and settled there') — Joshua had to rebuild the city himself, suggesting it was in poor condition. The conqueror of Canaan retires to a ruined town he must personally reconstruct. The humility is remarkable.
51. B'goral b'Shiloh lifnei YHWH petach Ohel Mo'ed ('by lot at Shiloh before the LORD at the entrance of the Tent of Meeting') — the closing verse brings together every element of the allocation process: the authorized administrators (Eleazar, Joshua, tribal heads), the method (lot), the location (Shiloh), the divine presence (before the LORD), and the sacred site (the Tent of Meeting). Vay'khallu mechaleq et ha-arets ('they finished dividing the land') — the land distribution is complete. The promise to Abraham of land for his descendants has been fulfilled in its initial form — allocated by tribe, waiting for full possession.

20

Summary: *Six cities of refuge are designated — three west of the Jordan and three east — where those who kill unintentionally can flee from the blood avenger and receive a fair trial before the congregation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The cities of refuge institutionalize the distinction between murder and manslaughter. The manslayer must 'stand at the entrance of the city gate and state his case' (v. 4) — he must explain himself publicly, not simply claim asylum. The congregation judges (v. 6), not the blood avenger and not the accused. The killer remains in the city until the death of the high priest (v. 6) — a curious provision that ties individual atonement to the priestly office, as if the high priest's death provides some form of release.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase bivli da'at (v. 3, 'without knowledge') is the legal standard for unintentional killing — identical to Deuteronomy 19:4. The connection between the manslayer's release and the high priest's death (v. 6) is theologically suggestive but unexplained by the text — we noted the interpretive traditions without endorsing a specific reading.*

Connections: *This chapter implements Numbers 35:9-34 and Deuteronomy 19:1-13. The go'el haddam ('blood avenger') institution connects to the go'el theology in Ruth and to the broader kinship-redemption framework. The high priest's death as a release mechanism is explored in Hebrews 9:11-15. The six cities are distributed across all tribal territories, ensuring accessibility.*

¹The LORD spoke to Joshua: ²"Tell the Israelites: Designate the cities of refuge that I instructed you about through Moses, ³so that anyone who kills a person accidentally and without intent may flee there. These cities will serve as your refuge from the blood avenger. ⁴He must flee to one of these cities, stand at the entrance of the city gate, and present his case to the elders of that city. They must take him into the city, give him a place, and let him live among them. ⁵If the blood avenger pursues him, the elders must not surrender the killer to him, because he struck his neighbor without intent and bore him no prior hatred. ⁶He must remain in that city until he has stood trial before the assembly and until the death of the high priest serving at that time. Then the killer may return to his own city and his own home — to the city from which he fled. ⁷They set apart Kedesh in Galilee in the hill country of Naphtali, Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim, and Kiriath-arba (that is, Hebron) in the hill country of Judah. ⁸East of the Jordan, near Jericho, they designated Bezer in the wilderness on the plateau from the tribe of Reuben, Ramoth in Gilead from the tribe of Gad, and Golan in Bashan from the tribe of Manasseh. ⁹These were the designated cities for all the Israelites and for the resident alien living among them, so that anyone who killed a person accidentally could flee there and not die by the hand of the blood avenger before standing trial before the assembly.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The cities of refuge fulfill the command given through Moses in Numbers 35:9-34 and Deuteronomy 19:1-13. Now that the land is allocated, the judicial infrastructure must be established.
2. *Arei ha-miqlat* ('cities of refuge/asylum') — from the root *qalat* ('to take in, to receive'). These cities provide legal sanctuary for those accused of unintentional killing. The institution reflects a sophisticated distinction between murder (intentional killing) and manslaughter (accidental killing) that is foundational to biblical jurisprudence. *Asher dibbarti aleikhem b'yad Mosheh* ('which I spoke to you by the hand of Moses') — continuity with Mosaic legislation is explicitly stated.
3. *Rotseach makkeh nefesh bishgagah bivli da'at* ('a killer who strikes a person by mistake without knowledge') — two terms reinforce the unintentional nature: *bishgagah* ('in error, by mistake') and *bivli da'at* ('without knowledge/intent'). *Go'el ha-dam* ('the blood avenger/redeemer of blood') — the nearest male kinsman obligated to avenge the victim's death. The *go'el* is the same word used for 'kinsman-redeemer' in Ruth 3-4 and for God as Israel's 'Redeemer' (Isaiah 41:14; 43:14). The cities of refuge protect the accidental killer from the *go'el*'s legitimate but potentially unjust vengeance.
4. *V'amad petach sha'ar ha-ir v'dibber b'oznei ziqnei ha-ir hahi et d'varav* ('he shall stand at the entrance of the city gate and speak his case in the ears of the elders of that city') — the city gate is the seat of justice in ancient Israel. The accused presents his case publicly to the elders, who serve as the initial court. *V'asfu oto ha-irah* ('they shall gather him into the city') — the elders are obligated to receive him; this is not optional hospitality but a legal duty. The accused receives shelter, housing, and community membership pending trial.
5. *V'lo sone hu lo mitmol shilshom* ('he was not hating him from yesterday or the day before') — the legal test for manslaughter vs. murder is prior relationship. If the accused had no history of hostility toward the victim, the killing is presumed accidental. This temporal criterion — 'yesterday and the day before' — is a standard Hebrew legal idiom for established pattern of behavior (cf. Exodus 21:29, 36; Deuteronomy 19:4, 6).
6. *Ad mot ha-kohen ha-gadol asher yihyeh bayyamim haheem* ('until the death of the high priest who serves in those days') — the high priest's death functions as a kind of expiation or amnesty. The accidental killer's exile ends when the high priest dies, regardless of how long that takes. The theological logic connects the high priest's death to atonement — as the high priest represents the nation before God, his death releases accumulated guilt. Some later interpreters saw this as a type of the ultimate priestly sacrifice. The restriction is substantial: the killer must live in the refuge city for years or decades, separated from home and inheritance.
7. *Vayyaqdishu* ('they set apart/consecrated') — the verb *qadash* ('to make holy, to set apart') indicates these cities receive a sacred legal status. The three western cities are evenly distributed north-to-south through the central highlands: Kedesh (north), Shechem (center), Hebron (south). This ensures that no Israelite is more than a day's journey from refuge. All three cities have deep patriarchal associations: Shechem (Genesis 12:6; 33:18), Hebron (Genesis 13:18; 23:2), and Kedesh (a name meaning 'holy').
8. Three eastern cities mirror the three western ones, providing the same north-to-south coverage in the Transjordan: Golan (north), Ramoth-gilead (center), Bezer (south). The six cities together form a comprehensive network ensuring that every Israelite — whether east or west of the Jordan — has accessible refuge. *Ramot ba-Gil'ad* ('Ramoth in Gilead') will become a strategically contested city, the site where Ahab is killed (1 Kings 22:3-37) and where Jehu is anointed (2 Kings 9:1-6).
9. *V'la-ger ha-gar b'tokham* ('and for the resident alien dwelling among them') — the cities of refuge are not exclusively for Israelites. The *ger* (resident alien, sojourner) has equal access to legal protection. This provision extends the rule of law to non-Israelites living in the land — a remarkable feature of biblical jurisprudence. The institution simultaneously limits vengeance (the *go'el* cannot act before trial), protects the innocent (accidental killers receive sanctuary), ensures justice (a trial must occur), and includes foreigners (the *ger* has equal standing before the law).

21

Summary: *The Levites receive forty-eight cities distributed among all the tribes, including the six cities of refuge. The chapter concludes with a sweeping summary: 'Not one word of all the good promises the LORD had made to the house of Israel failed — everything came to pass.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Levitical city system disperses the priestly tribe throughout all Israel — they have no contiguous territory but are present everywhere, ensuring that every part of the land has access to teaching and worship leadership. The summary statement (vv. 43-45) is the theological climax of the allotment section: God's promise is fulfilled, the land is given, rest is achieved. 'Not one word failed' (lo nafal davar, v. 45) — the verb nafal ('fall') means not one promise dropped to the ground unfulfilled.*

Translation Friction: *The Levitical city lists involve numerous textual variants between Joshua 21 and its parallel in 1 Chronicles 6:54-81. We followed the Joshua text and noted significant variants. The phrase lo nafal davar (v. 45, 'not one word fell') uses a physical metaphor — words stand or fall like soldiers. We rendered it 'not one word... failed' to capture the sense while noting the Hebrew image.*

Connections: *The Levitical cities implement Numbers 35:1-8. The fulfillment declaration (v. 45) is echoed in 1 Kings 8:56 by Solomon at the Temple dedication. The city lists parallel 1 Chronicles 6:54-81. The dispersal of Levi fulfills Jacob's prophecy (Genesis 49:7) but transforms the curse into a priestly vocation.*

¹The heads of the Levite ancestral houses approached Eleazar the priest, Joshua son of Nun, and the heads of the ancestral houses of the Israelite tribes. ²They addressed them at Shiloh in the land of Canaan: "The LORD commanded through Moses that we be given cities to live in, along with their pasturelands for our livestock." ³So the Israelites gave the Levites these cities with their pasturelands from their own inheritance, in accordance with the LORD's command. ⁴The lot fell to the Kohathite clans. The descendants of Aaron the priest — who were Levites — received by lot thirteen cities from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin. ⁵The remaining Kohathites received by lot ten cities from the clans of the tribe of Ephraim, the tribe of Dan, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. ⁶The Gershonites received by lot thirteen cities from the clans of the tribe of Issachar, the tribe of Asher, the tribe of Naphtali, and the half-tribe of Manasseh in Bashan. ⁷The Merarites, by their clans, received twelve cities from the tribe of Reuben, the tribe of Gad, and the tribe of Zebulun. ⁸The Israelites gave these cities with their pasturelands to the Levites by lot, just as the LORD had commanded through Moses. ⁹From the tribe of Judah and the tribe of Simeon they gave the following cities, listed here by name. ¹⁰These went to the descendants of Aaron from the Kohathite clans of the Levites, because the first lot fell to them. ¹¹They gave them Kiriath-arba — that is, Hebron — in the hill country of Judah, with its surrounding pasturelands. (Arba was the ancestor of Anak.) ¹²However, the open fields of the city and its surrounding villages had been given to Caleb son of Jephunneh as his possession. ¹³To the descendants of Aaron the priest they gave Hebron — the city of refuge for the killer — with its pasturelands, and Libnah with its pasturelands, ¹⁴Jattir with its pasturelands, Eshtemoa with its pasturelands, ¹⁵Holon with its pasturelands, Debir with its pasturelands, ¹⁶Ain with its pasturelands, Juttah with its pasturelands, and Beth-shemesh with its pasturelands — nine cities from these two tribes. ¹⁷From the tribe of Benjamin: Gibeon with its pasturelands, Geba with its pasturelands, ¹⁸Anathoth with its pasturelands, and Almon with its pasturelands — four cities. ¹⁹The total number of cities for the descendants of Aaron the priests was thirteen cities with their pasturelands. ²⁰The remaining Kohathite clans of the Levites received their allotted cities from the tribe of Ephraim. ²¹They gave them Shechem — the city of refuge for the killer — with its pasturelands in the hill country of Ephraim, and Gezer with its pasturelands, ²²Kibzaim with its pasturelands, and Beth-horon with its pasturelands — four cities. ²³From the tribe of Dan: Eltekeh with its pasturelands, Gibbethon with its pasturelands, ²⁴Aijalon with its pasturelands, and Gath-rimmon with its pasturelands — four cities. ²⁵From the half-tribe of Manasseh: Taanach with its pasturelands, and Gath-rimmon with its pasturelands — two cities. ²⁶The total for the remaining Kohathite clans was ten cities with their pasturelands. ²⁷To the Gershonites from the Levitical clans: from the half-tribe of Manasseh they gave Golan in Bashan —

the city of refuge for the killer — with its pasturelands, and Be-eshterah with its pasturelands — two cities. ²⁸From the tribe of Issachar: Kishion with its pasturelands, Daberath with its pasturelands, ²⁹Jarmuth with its pasturelands, and En-gannim with its pasturelands — four cities. ³⁰From the tribe of Asher: Mishal with its pasturelands, Abdon with its pasturelands, ³¹H elkath with its pasturelands, and Rehob with its pasturelands — four cities. ³²From the tribe of Naphtali: Kedesh in Galilee — the city of refuge for the killer — with its pasturelands, Hammoth-dor with its pasturelands, and Kartan with its pasturelands — three cities. ³³The total number of cities for the Gershonite clans was thirteen cities with their pasturelands. ³⁴To the Merarite clans — the remaining Levites — from the tribe of Zebulun: Jokneam with its pasturelands, Kartah with its pasturelands, ³⁵Dimnah with its pasturelands, and Nahalal with its pasturelands — four cities. ³⁶From the tribe of Reuben: Bezer with its pasturelands, Jahaz with its pasturelands, ³⁷Kedemoth with its pasturelands, and Mephaath with its pasturelands — four cities. ³⁸From the tribe of Gad: Ramoth in Gilead — the city of refuge for the killer — with its pasturelands, Mahanaim with its pasturelands, ³⁹Heshbon with its pasturelands, and Jazer with its pasturelands — four cities in all. ⁴⁰The total number of cities for the Merarite clans — the remaining Levitical families — was twelve cities by their lot. ⁴¹The total number of Levitical cities within the territory held by the Israelites was forty-eight cities with their pasturelands. ⁴²Each of these cities included its surrounding pasturelands; this was the arrangement for every one of these cities. ⁴³The LORD gave Israel the entire land he had sworn to give their ancestors. They took possession of it and settled in it. ⁴⁴The LORD gave them rest on every side, exactly as he had sworn to their ancestors. Not one of their enemies could stand against them; the LORD handed all their enemies over to them. ⁴⁵Not a single word failed from all the good promises the LORD had spoken to the house of Israel. Everything was fulfilled.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Levites approach the same leadership trio (Eleazar, Joshua, tribal heads) who oversaw all the land allocations. Their claim is presented publicly and formally, not as a private petition. This fulfills Numbers 35:1-8, where the LORD instructed that the Levites receive cities and surrounding pasturelands from each tribe's inheritance.
2. Migrasheiheh ('their pasturelands/common lands') — the Levites do not receive agricultural territory but cities with surrounding open land for grazing. The migrash is a belt of open land extending outward from the city wall (Numbers 35:4-5 specifies 1,000 cubits). The Levites' request appeals entirely to Mosaic authority — Yahweh tsivvah v'yad Mosheh ('the LORD commanded by the hand of Moses'). Their claim rests on divine instruction, not negotiation.
3. Min-nachalatam ('from their inheritance') — each tribe contributes from its own allotted territory. The Levites receive a distributed inheritance rather than a contiguous one. This arrangement embeds the priestly and teaching tribe throughout the entire nation, ensuring that instruction in the Torah is accessible to all Israel, not concentrated in a single region.
4. The Kohathites are divided into two groups: the priestly line (descendants of Aaron) and the non-priestly Kohathites. Aaron's descendants receive cities closest to Jerusalem (from Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin), positioning the priestly families near the future temple site — though this significance would only become apparent centuries later under David and Solomon.
5. The non-priestly Kohathites receive cities from the central tribes, extending Levitical presence through the Joseph territory and into the coastal region near Philistine territory (Dan).
6. The Gershonite cities are distributed through the northern and northeastern tribes, ensuring Levitical presence in the Galilee region and the Transjordan Bashan.
7. The Merarites receive the southern Transjordan and one northern tribe (Zebulun). The three Levite clans — Kohath, Gershon, Merari — together receive 48 cities (13 + 10 + 13 + 12), exactly the number prescribed in Numbers 35:7.
8. Ka'asher tsivvah Yahweh b'yad Mosheh ba-goral ('just as the LORD had commanded by the hand of Moses, by lot') — the lot (goral) ensures the distribution is perceived as divinely directed rather than humanly negotiated. The summary statement frames the entire Levitical allocation as obedience to prior divine command.
9. The detailed city-by-city listing begins with the priestly Aaronite cities from Judah and Simeon. This specificity ensures the allocation is a matter of permanent public record, not a vague promise.
10. Ki lahem hayah ha-goral ri'shonah ('because the first lot was theirs') — the Aaronite priests receive priority in the allocation, consistent with their elevated status within the Levitical order.
11. Hebron serves dual duty: it is both a city of refuge (20:7) and a priestly city. The parenthetical identifying Arba as the ancestor of the Anakim connects this allocation back to Caleb's conquest of the giant inhabitants (14:12-15; 15:13-14).

12. A careful distinction: the priestly Levites receive the city of Hebron and its immediate pasturelands, while Caleb retains the agricultural fields (s'deh) and dependent villages (chatserim). This prevents a conflict between Caleb's personal inheritance (14:13-14) and the Levitical allocation. Both claims are honored simultaneously.
13. The text explicitly labels Hebron as *ir miqlat ha-rotseach* ('the city of refuge for the killer'), linking it to the institution from chapter 20. Libnah was a Canaanite royal city conquered in the southern campaign (10:29-30).
14. Jattir and Eshtemoa are towns in the southern Judean highlands, both listed among Judah's cities in 15:48, 50. David would later send plunder to Eshtemoa (1 Samuel 30:28).
15. Debir, formerly Kiriath-sepher, was captured by Othniel (15:15-17). Its inclusion as a Levitical city further transforms Canaanite urban centers into Israelite religious infrastructure.
16. Beth-shemesh ('House of the Sun') is the city where the ark of the covenant will later arrive when returned by the Philistines (1 Samuel 6:12-19). Nine cities from Judah and Simeon form the core of the Aaronite priestly network.
17. Gibeon — the city of the deception treaty (chapter 9) — now becomes a Levitical city, an ironic transformation. Geba will later serve as an Israelite military outpost against the Philistines (1 Samuel 13:3).
18. Anathoth will later be the hometown of the prophet Jeremiah (Jeremiah 1:1; 11:21-23). Its identification as a Levitical/priestly city illuminates Jeremiah's priestly lineage.
19. The summary count confirms thirteen priestly cities (nine from Judah/Simeon and four from Benjamin), matching the lot drawn in verse 4.
20. The section now details the non-priestly Kohathite cities, beginning with those from Ephraim's territory.
21. Shechem functions as both refuge city and Levitical city, like Hebron. Its deep patriarchal history (Abraham's first altar in Canaan, Genesis 12:6; Jacob's purchase of land, Genesis 33:19) will culminate in the covenant renewal of chapter 24. Gezer was a Canaanite city whose inhabitants Ephraim failed to dispossess (16:10); its designation as a Levitical city suggests intended Israelite occupation despite the incomplete conquest.
22. Beth-horon (Upper and Lower) guards a critical pass from the coastal plain into the central highlands. It was the site of the Amorite rout during the southern campaign (10:10-11). Its assignment as a Levitical city positions Levites along a vital strategic corridor.
23. Gibbethon will later feature as a Philistine-held city that Israel repeatedly besieges (1 Kings 15:27; 16:15-17), highlighting the difficulty Dan faced in occupying its allotted territory.
24. Aijalon is the valley where the sun stood still during the southern campaign (10:12). Its allocation as a Levitical city connects the land distribution to the conquest narrative.
25. Taanach lies near Megiddo in the Jezreel Valley, an area of strategic importance throughout Israelite history. The second Gath-rimmon here may reflect a textual variant; some scholars suggest this should read 'Ibleam' based on the parallel in 1 Chronicles 6:70.
26. Ten cities for the non-priestly Kohathites, matching the count in verse 5.
27. Golan in Bashan serves as both refuge and Levitical city (cf. 20:8). Be-eshterah (also called Ashtaroth) was formerly the capital of King Og of Bashan (12:4; 13:12, 31). Its transformation from a pagan royal seat (the name likely derives from the goddess Ashtoreth) into a Levitical city is theologically significant.
28. Daberath sits at the base of Mount Tabor in the Jezreel Valley, an area that will feature prominently in the Deborah-Barak narrative (Judges 4:6, 12).
29. En-gannim ('spring of gardens') — this is a different city from the Jarmuth listed among the five Amorite kings defeated in chapter 10 (which was in Judah's territory).
30. Asher's territory lies along the northern Mediterranean coast. These Levitical cities position priestly-teaching families in a region with heavy Canaanite and Phoenician cultural influence.
31. Rehob appears as one of the cities Asher failed to fully dispossess (Judges 1:31), suggesting that Levitical occupation of these northern cities may have been tenuous.
32. Kedesh in Galilee is the third western refuge city (cf. 20:7). Its name ('holy place') suggests a pre-Israelite sacred site now incorporated into the Levitical system. Kedesh will later be the home of Barak (Judges 4:6) and the site of Israelite defeat by Tiglath-pileser III of Assyria (2 Kings 15:29).
33. Thirteen Gershonite cities, matching the count in verse 6.
34. The Merarite section completes the three-part Levitical distribution. Jokneam guards the southern approach to the Jezreel Valley, a strategically vital location.
35. Nahalal is listed among the Canaanite cities that Zebulun failed to drive out, instead subjecting them to forced labor (Judges 1:30).
36. Bezer is the Transjordan city of refuge (20:8). Jahaz was the site of Israel's decisive battle against Sihon king of the Amorites (Numbers 21:23; Deuteronomy 2:32).

37. Kedemoth was the staging area from which Moses sent emissaries to Sihon (Deuteronomy 2:26).
38. Mahanaim ('two camps') is where Jacob encountered angels (Genesis 32:2) and where Ish-bosheth will establish his rival kingdom (2 Samuel 2:8) and David will flee during Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 17:24). Its assignment as a Levitical city weaves patriarchal history into the national infrastructure.
39. Heshbon was the capital of King Sihon (Numbers 21:25-26; Joshua 12:2). Like Be-eshterah/Ashtaroth, a former enemy capital is now repurposed as a Levitical city.
40. Twelve Merarite cities, matching the count in verse 7. The grand total across all three Levitical clans: 13 (Aaronite) + 10 (other Kohathites) + 13 (Gershonites) + 12 (Merarites) = 48 cities.
41. Forty-eight Levitical cities exactly matches the number commanded in Numbers 35:7. This correspondence demonstrates Israel's faithfulness in executing the Mosaic legislation regarding the Levites.
42. A formulaic closing note confirming that the standard arrangement — city plus surrounding pasturelands — applied uniformly to all forty-eight Levitical cities.
43. This climactic summary (vv. 43-45) is one of the most theologically significant passages in Joshua. Vayyirashuhah vayyeshvu vah ('they took possession of it and settled in it') — the twin verbs yarash ('possess, dispossess') and yashav ('settle, dwell') mark the fulfillment of the promise trajectory that began with Abraham in Genesis 12:7. The statement is programmatic rather than absolute — it declares the essential fulfillment of the land promise even though some areas remain unconquered (cf. 13:1-7; 15:63; 16:10; 17:12-13).
44. Vayyanach Yahweh lahem missaviv ('the LORD gave them rest round about') — the verb nuach ('to rest') echoes the purpose statement of Deuteronomy 12:10 and 25:19. Rest (menucha) is the goal of the entire exodus-conquest narrative: God's people dwelling securely in God's land under God's rule. Lo amad ish bifneihem ('not a man stood before them') — this bold claim, read alongside the incomplete-conquest notices, affirms divine faithfulness to the covenant promises. Military opposition has been broken even where demographic displacement is incomplete.
45. Lo nafil davar mikol ha-davar ha-tov ('not one thing fell from all the good word') — nafil ('fell') is used for the failure or dropping of a word. The assertion is absolute: every good thing God promised has come to pass. This verse is the thematic pivot of the entire book, the bridge between the conquest/allocation narrative (chs. 1-21) and the farewell/warning section (chs. 22-24). Joshua will repeat this claim in his farewell speech (23:14) but add the sobering corollary: just as every good promise was fulfilled, so every threat of judgment will be fulfilled if Israel disobeys.

22

Summary: *Joshua blesses the Transjordan tribes and sends them home. They build a large altar by the Jordan, provoking the western tribes to threaten war. The Transjordan tribes explain the altar is a 'witness' — not for sacrifice — and conflict is averted.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The near-civil-war over an altar reveals how seriously Israel takes centralized worship. The western tribes assume the altar violates Deuteronomy 12 and invoke the Achan precedent (v. 20) — one tribe's sin can bring judgment on all. The Transjordan explanation is theological: the altar is called Ed ('witness,' v. 34), a memorial ensuring future generations cannot say 'you have no share in the LORD.' The danger is not idolatry but exclusion — the river might become a boundary that severs covenant membership.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ma'al ma'al (v. 16, 'acted treacherously with treachery') echoes the Achan language of 7:1. We rendered it consistently. The altar's name Ed (v. 34) is textually uncertain in some manuscripts — some read 'they called the altar Ed' while others omit the name. We followed the Masoretic reading and noted the variant.*

Connections: *The Achan warning (v. 20) references chapter 7. The centralized-worship concern reflects Deuteronomy 12. The Peor reference (v. 17) points to Numbers 25. This episode anticipates the tribal fractures that dominate Judges and eventually split the kingdom (1 Kings 12). The 'witness' concept connects to the stone witnesses in Genesis 31:47-48 and Joshua 24:27.*

¹Then Joshua summoned the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. ²He said to them, "You have kept everything that Moses the servant of the LORD commanded you, and you have obeyed me in everything I commanded you. ³You have not abandoned your brothers through this long period — to this very day — and you have carried out the charge of the commandment of the LORD your God. ⁴Now the LORD your God has given rest to your brothers, just as he promised

them. So turn and go to your tents, to the land of your possession that Moses the servant of the LORD gave you across the Jordan. ⁵Only take great care to carry out the commandment and the law that Moses the servant of the LORD charged you: to love the LORD your God, to walk in all his ways, to keep his commandments, to hold fast to him, and to serve him with all your heart and all your life. ⁶Joshua blessed them and sent them away, and they departed for their tents. ⁷To the one half-tribe of Manasseh Moses had given territory in Bashan, while Joshua had given the other half territory among their brothers west of the Jordan. When Joshua sent them away to their tents, he also blessed them. ⁸He told them, "Return to your tents with great wealth — with very large herds, with silver, gold, bronze, iron, and a great quantity of clothing. Divide the plunder from your enemies with your brothers." ⁹The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh left the Israelites at Shiloh in the land of Canaan to travel to the land of Gilead — the land of their possession that they had received in accordance with the LORD's command through Moses. ¹⁰When they reached the region of the Jordan in the land of Canaan, the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh built an altar there by the Jordan — an impressively large altar. ¹¹The Israelites received word: "The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh have built an altar facing the land of Canaan, in the Jordan region, on the Israelite side." ¹²When the Israelites heard this, the entire assembly of the Israelites gathered at Shiloh to march against them in war. ¹³The Israelites sent Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh in the land of Gilead, ¹⁴along with ten leaders — one leader from each ancestral house for every tribe of Israel. Each was the head of his ancestral house among the divisions of Israel. ¹⁵They came to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh in the land of Gilead and said to them: ¹⁶"This is what the entire assembly of the LORD says: What is this treachery you have committed against the God of Israel? You have turned away from following the LORD today by building yourselves an altar — rebelling against the LORD this very day! ¹⁷Is the sin at Peor not enough for us? We have not yet purified ourselves from it to this day, even though a plague struck the assembly of the LORD! ¹⁸And now you would turn away from following the LORD today? If you rebel against the LORD today, tomorrow his anger will fall on the entire assembly of Israel! ¹⁹If the land of your possession is defiled, then cross over to the land of the LORD's possession, where the LORD's tabernacle stands, and take territory among us. But do not rebel against the LORD, and do not rebel against us, by building an altar for yourselves besides the altar of the LORD our God. ²⁰Did not Achan son of Zerah commit treachery with what was devoted to destruction, and wrath fall on the entire assembly of Israel? He was not the only one who perished for his sin." ²¹The Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh answered the heads of the Israelite divisions: ²²"The Mighty One, God, the LORD! The Mighty One, God, the LORD! He knows — and let Israel know — if this was in rebellion or in treachery against the LORD, then do not spare us today! ²³If we built an altar to turn away from following the LORD, or to offer burnt offerings, grain offerings, or fellowship offerings on it — let the LORD himself call us to account! ²⁴Rather, we did this out of a specific concern — that in the future your children might say to our children, 'What do you have to do with the LORD, the God of Israel?' ²⁵For the LORD has set the Jordan as a boundary between us and you, Reubenites and Gadites. You have no share in the LORD! And your children would cause our children to stop revering the LORD. ²⁶So we said, 'Let us take action and build an altar — not for burnt offerings and not for sacrifice, ²⁷but as a witness between us and you and our generations after us — that we perform the service of the LORD before him with our burnt offerings, our sacrifices, and our fellowship offerings. Then your children will not say to our children in the future, "You have no share in the LORD."'" ²⁸We reasoned that if they say this to us or to our descendants in the future, we can reply, 'Look at this replica of the LORD's altar that our ancestors built — not for burnt offerings and not for sacrifice, but as a witness between us and you.' ²⁹Far be it from us to rebel against the LORD or to turn away from following the LORD today by building an altar for burnt offerings, grain offerings, or sacrifice — apart from the altar of the LORD our God that stands before his tabernacle!" ³⁰When Phinehas the priest and the leaders of the assembly — the heads of the Israelite divisions who were with him — heard what the Reubenites, Gadites, and Manassites said, they were satisfied. ³¹Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest said to the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the Manassites, "Today we know that the LORD is among us, because you have not committed this treachery against the LORD. You have now rescued the Israelites from the hand of the LORD!" ³²Phinehas son of Eleazar the priest and the leaders returned from the Reubenites and Gadites in the land of Gilead to the Israelites in the land of Canaan and brought back their report. ³³The report satisfied the Israelites. They

praised God and abandoned any plan to march against the Reubenites and Gadites in war to devastate the land where they lived. ³⁴The Reubenites and the Gadites named the altar "Witness" — "For it is a witness between us that the LORD is God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrative returns to the Transjordan tribes who were first commissioned in chapter 1. Having fulfilled their military obligation to fight alongside their brothers west of the Jordan, they are now formally dismissed.
2. Joshua's commendation highlights dual obedience: to the original command of Moses (Numbers 32:20-22) and to Joshua's own instructions (1:12-18). The Transjordan tribes' faithfulness is explicitly confirmed — they did not abandon the western campaign.
3. Zeh yamim rabbim ('this many days') — the conquest has taken years. The Transjordan warriors have been away from their families and their already-allocated territory throughout the entire campaign. Mishmeret mitsvat Yahweh ('the charge/duty of the commandment of the LORD') — their obedience is framed not merely as military duty to Joshua but as covenant faithfulness to God.
4. Heniach Yahweh Eloheikhem la'acheikhem ('the LORD your God has given rest to your brothers') — the condition for the Transjordan tribes' return has been met. The rest (menucha) promised in Deuteronomy 12:10 and affirmed in 21:44 triggers the release of their military obligation. P'nu ul'khu lakhem l'ohaleikhem ('turn and go to your tents') — the dismissal formula sends them home.
5. Joshua's farewell charge to the eastern tribes echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5) and the covenant stipulations of Deuteronomy. Five imperatives define covenant faithfulness: love (ahavah), walk (halak), keep (shamar), hold fast (davaq), serve (avad). Raq ('only/but') signals that the commission is conditional — their departure is permitted, but covenant loyalty must continue. Ul'dovqah bo ('to cling to him') — the verb davaq is used of the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24 and describes Israel's most intimate loyalty to God.
6. Vay'varekh otam ('he blessed them') — Joshua performs a priestly function, invoking God's favor upon the departing tribes. The blessing signals formal closure of their joint military service.
7. The narrator pauses to clarify the divided Manasseh situation — one half received land from Moses in the Transjordan, the other from Joshua in Canaan proper. This division will become a source of tension in the following narrative.
8. The enumeration of riches — livestock, precious metals, iron, clothing — describes the war spoils accumulated through the conquest campaigns. The instruction to divide the plunder with those who remained in the Transjordan follows the precedent Moses established for shared spoils (Numbers 31:27) and David will later codify (1 Samuel 30:24-25).
9. The departure from Shiloh marks a geographic separation: the central sanctuary remains in Canaan while the eastern tribes cross back over the Jordan. This physical distance creates the theological anxiety that drives the rest of the chapter.
10. Mizbeach gadol l'mar'eh ('an altar great in appearance') — the altar's conspicuous size is emphasized, making it impossible to overlook. The critical detail is its location: on the western bank of the Jordan, still technically in Canaan. This ambiguity — who built it and why — triggers the crisis. From the western tribes' perspective, an unauthorized altar threatens the centralization of worship commanded in Deuteronomy 12.
11. The report reaches the western tribes as alarming news. El mul erets K'na'an ('facing the land of Canaan') — the phrasing suggests the altar is oriented toward Canaan, visible from the western side. El ever b'nei Yisra'el ('on the side of the Israelites') — the altar stands at the border, a visible marker between east and west.
12. The western tribes' immediate response is military mobilization — the same response mandated in Deuteronomy 13:12-18 for a city that has turned to idolatry. The willingness to wage civil war against fellow Israelites demonstrates the seriousness with which they view potential apostasy. The Achan narrative (chapter 7) proved that one group's sin brings judgment on the entire community.
13. Phinehas is the ideal choice for this embassy. He had demonstrated zealous loyalty to the LORD by acting against apostasy at Baal-peor (Numbers 25:7-13), for which he received the covenant of perpetual priesthood. His presence signals both the gravity of the accusation and the theological competence of the delegation.
14. Ten tribal leaders accompany Phinehas — one from each of the western tribes (excluding Reuben, Gad, and the eastern half of Manasseh). The delegation's size gives it national authority; this is not an informal inquiry but an official confrontation.
15. The delegation crosses the Jordan into Gilead — notably choosing diplomacy before military action, despite the army already being assembled at Shiloh.
16. Mah ha-ma'al hazzeh ('what is this treachery?') — ma'al is a strong term for covenant unfaithfulness, the same word used for Achan's violation (7:1). The accusation is framed as rebellion (mered) against God, not merely a dispute between tribes. The delegation speaks as kol adat Yahweh ('the entire assembly of the LORD'), investing their words with collective covenant authority.
17. The delegation invokes the Baal-peor catastrophe (Numbers 25:1-9) as a corporate memory of apostasy's consequences. The claim that Israel has 'not yet purified from it to this day' treats the Peor incident as ongoing corporate guilt — the wound is still fresh, and another act of unfaithfulness could reopen it. The plague at Peor killed 24,000 Israelites.

18. The theological principle of corporate solidarity: one group's sin brings divine wrath on the whole community. This is the Achan principle (chapter 7) and the lesson of Peor (Numbers 25). The delegation's concern is not merely tribal purity but national survival.
19. A remarkable offer: if the eastern tribes feel their Transjordan territory is ritually impure (t'me'ah) — lacking the divine presence that sanctifies Canaan — they are invited to relocate within the western territories. Erets achuzzat Yahweh ('the land of the LORD's possession') — the land where the tabernacle dwells is considered the LORD's own property. This implies that land east of the Jordan, though divinely allocated, has a secondary status. Mibal'adei mizbach Yahweh ('besides/apart from the altar of the LORD') — the concern is cultic centralization: only one legitimate altar exists.
20. The Achan reference (chapter 7) is the delegation's most powerful argument. Ma'al ma'al ba-cherem ('he committed treachery regarding the devoted things') — the same term ma'al used in verse 16. Achan's individual sin caused Israel's defeat at Ai and resulted not only in his death but in the deaths of the thirty-six soldiers who fell in battle (7:5). V'hu ish echad lo gava ba'avono l'vaddo ('he was one man — he did not perish in his sin alone') — corporate accountability means individual transgression has collective consequences.
21. The eastern tribes now deliver their defense — a carefully constructed theological argument that will vindicate their intentions.
22. El Elohim Yahweh, El Elohim Yahweh — the triple divine name, repeated twice (six total names), forms the most solemn oath formula in the Hebrew Bible. This is an appeal to the divine court: God is invoked as witness, judge, and guarantor of truth. The eastern tribes stake their lives on their sincerity — 'do not spare us today' (al toshi'enu) — if their motives are impure. The intensification through repetition conveys the emotional weight of being unjustly accused.
23. The eastern tribes categorically deny all three types of sacrificial use: olah (burnt offerings), minchah (grain offerings), and zivchei sh'lamim (fellowship/peace offerings). By denying sacrificial intent, they eliminate the charge of cultic rivalry with the Shiloh tabernacle. Yahweh hu y'vaqqesh ('let the LORD himself seek it out') — they submit to divine judgment rather than human.
24. The true motive emerges: fear of future exclusion. Middea'gah middavar ('out of anxiety about a matter') — the eastern tribes acted from theological worry, not rebellion. Their fear is that the Jordan will become not just a geographic boundary but a covenant boundary, and their descendants will be cut off from worship of the LORD.
25. Ein lakhem cheleq ba-Yahweh ('you have no share/portion in the LORD') — this feared declaration would sever the eastern tribes from Israel's covenant identity. The Jordan River, intended merely as a geographic feature, could become a theological barrier. The concern anticipates the real historical tensions between the Transjordan and Cisjordan communities.
26. The emphatic lo l'olah v'lo l'zavach ('not for burnt offering and not for sacrifice') is the interpretive key to the entire episode. The altar has no sacrificial function. It is a witness marker, a memorial — a purpose that the following verse will make explicit.
27. Ki ed hu beinenu uveineikhem ('for it is a witness between us and you') — the altar is a memorial, not a cultic rival. Its purpose is testimonial: to declare across generations that the eastern tribes belong to the same covenant community and worship the same God at the same central sanctuary. The irony is layered: the very act that appeared to threaten cultic unity was motivated by a desire to preserve it.
28. Tavnit mizbach Yahweh ('the pattern/replica of the altar of the LORD') — the altar is explicitly described as a tavnit, a copy or representation of the legitimate altar. The word tavnit is the same used for the 'pattern' of the tabernacle shown to Moses on Sinai (Exodus 25:9). The copy points to the original; it does not replace it.
29. Chalilah lanu ('far be it from us / heaven forbid') — the strongest Hebrew expression of moral horror at the accusation. The eastern tribes affirm the exclusive legitimacy of the tabernacle altar at Shiloh. Mil'vad mizbach Yahweh Eloheinu asher lifnei mishkano ('apart from the altar of the LORD our God which is before his tabernacle') — they acknowledge one legitimate altar, one tabernacle, one place of sacrifice.
30. Vayyitav b'eineihem ('it was good in their eyes') — the defense is accepted. Phinehas, the zealot who killed an Israelite and a Midianite woman for idolatry at Peor (Numbers 25:7-8), is persuaded that the altar poses no threat to covenant faithfulness. His acceptance carries enormous weight.
31. Hayom yada'nu ki v'tokheinu Yahweh ('today we know that the LORD is in our midst') — the absence of sin confirms the divine presence. Phinehas's declaration reverses the crisis: the feared ma'al has not occurred, so the feared wrath will not come. Az hitsaltem et b'nei Yisra'el miyyad Yahweh ('then you have delivered the Israelites from the hand of the LORD') — a striking phrase: rescue not from enemies but from God's own judgment. The greatest danger Israel faces is not foreign armies but divine wrath provoked by covenant unfaithfulness.
32. The delegation returns with the exonerating report. Diplomacy, led by the right person (Phinehas), has prevented a catastrophic civil war.
33. Vay'var'khu Elohim ('they blessed/praised God') — the resolution prompts worship. The phrase 'to devastate the land' (l'shachet et ha-arets) reveals how close the nation came to fratricidal destruction. The entire episode models a pattern: accusation, investigation, defense, resolution — a template for handling internal conflict within the covenant community.
34. The altar receives the name Ed ('Witness'). The naming act mirrors other memorial-naming episodes in the Pentateuch (e.g., Galeed in Genesis 31:47-48). Ki Yahweh ha-Elohim ('for the LORD is God') — the confession embedded in the naming affirms the shared monotheistic faith of all twelve tribes, east and west. The altar becomes a permanent declaration that geographic separation does not create theological division.

23

Summary: *Joshua, old and near death, summons Israel's leaders for a farewell address. He reminds them of God's faithfulness in the conquest and warns that intermarriage and covenants with the remaining nations will lead to their destruction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joshua's farewell mirrors Moses's: both aging leaders gather Israel to remind them of God's acts and warn against apostasy. The phrase 'not one thing has failed of all the good things the LORD your God promised you' (v. 14) echoes 21:45, but here it carries a warning: the same God who fulfilled every good promise will fulfill every threat. The theological logic is symmetrical — God's faithfulness cuts both ways.*

Translation Friction: *The verb davaq (v. 12, 'cling/hold fast') — the same word used for marital union in Genesis 2:24 and for covenant loyalty in Deuteronomy 10:20 — here describes the forbidden attachment to pagan nations. The word's range allows for bitter irony: the clinging Israel should give to God, they might give to the nations instead.*

Connections: *Joshua's farewell echoes Moses's in Deuteronomy 31-33. The conditional promise-and-warning structure parallels Deuteronomy 28. The 'thorn in your eyes' metaphor (v. 13) echoes Numbers 33:55. The entire address is vindicated by the book of Judges, which narrates exactly the apostasy Joshua warns against.*

¹A long time afterward, when the LORD had given Israel rest from all their enemies on every side, and Joshua had grown old and advanced in years, ²Joshua summoned all Israel — their elders, heads, judges, and officials — and said to them, "I have grown old and am advanced in years. ³You yourselves have witnessed everything the LORD your God did to all these nations on your behalf, for the LORD your God is the one who fought for you. ⁴Look — I have allotted to you by lot these remaining nations as an inheritance for your tribes, along with all the nations I have already cut off, from the Jordan to the Great Sea in the west. ⁵The LORD your God himself will push them back from before you and dispossess them on your behalf, and you will take possession of their land, just as the LORD your God promised you. ⁶Be very strong in keeping and carrying out everything written in the Book of the Law of Moses, never turning from it to the right or the left, ⁷so that you do not associate with these nations remaining among you. Do not invoke the names of their gods, do not swear by them, do not serve them, and do not bow down to them. ⁸Instead, hold fast to the LORD your God, just as you have done to this day. ⁹The LORD has dispossessed great and powerful nations before you; to this day, no one has been able to stand against you. ¹⁰One of you puts a thousand to flight, because the LORD your God is the one who fights for you, just as he promised. ¹¹Guard yourselves carefully — love the LORD your God. ¹²But if you turn back and cling to the remnant of these nations remaining among you, and intermarry with them — if you go among them and they among you — ¹³then know with certainty that the LORD your God will no longer dispossess these nations before you. Instead, they will become a snare and a trap for you, a whip on your sides and thorns in your eyes, until you perish from this good land the LORD your God has given you. ¹⁴Now I am about to go the way of all the earth. You know with all your heart and all your life that not a single word has failed from all the good promises the LORD your God made concerning you. Everything has come true for you; not one word has failed. ¹⁵But just as every good promise the LORD your God made to you has been fulfilled, so the LORD will bring upon you every harmful word until he has destroyed you from this good land the LORD your God has given you. ¹⁶When you violate the covenant of the LORD your God that he commanded you, and go and serve other gods and bow down to them, then the anger of the LORD will burn against you, and you will perish quickly from the good land he has given you."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- 1.** Miyamim rabbim ('after many days') — an unspecified but significant period has elapsed since the conquest and allocation. The nation has enjoyed the rest (menucha) promised in 21:44. Vihoshua zaqen ba bayyamim ('Joshua was old, come into days') — the same phrase used of Abraham (Genesis 24:1) and David (1 Kings 1:1). Joshua's mortality sets the stage for his farewell: he must secure the nation's commitment to the covenant before he dies.

2. The fourfold leadership structure (elders, heads, judges, officers) represents the complete governing apparatus of Israel. Joshua's self-identification as old and dying mirrors Moses' farewell in Deuteronomy 31:2 ('I am 120 years old today'). The parallels between Joshua's farewell and Moses' farewell are deliberate — Joshua speaks as Moses' authorized successor, passing on the same covenantal charge.
3. *Atem r'item* ('you yourselves have seen') — Joshua appeals to the living memory of his audience. They are eyewitnesses of divine action, not recipients of secondhand tradition. *Yahweh Eloheikhem hu ha-nilcham lakhem* ('the LORD your God — he is the one fighting for you') — the divine warrior theme from 10:14, 42 is restated as the interpretive lens through which the entire conquest must be understood.
4. *Hippalti lakhem* ('I have caused to fall to you by lot') — the verb *naphal* ('to fall') describes the lot casting that determined tribal territories. Joshua notes the distinction between nations already conquered (*asher hikh'rati*, 'which I cut off') and those still remaining (*ha-nish'arim*, 'the remaining ones'). The Great Sea (*ha-yam ha-gadol*) is the Mediterranean.
5. *V'horish otam millifneikhem* ('he will dispossess them from before you') — the verb *yarash* in the Hiphil means to cause to possess or to dispossess. The remaining nations are not Israel's problem to solve alone; God will complete what he began. *Ka'asher dibber Yahweh Eloheikhem lakhem* ('as the LORD your God spoke to you') — the fulfillment formula. God's word is the guarantee.
6. *Vachazaqtem me'od* ('be very strong') — the same command given to Joshua in 1:7. Now Joshua passes it on to the nation. *Sefer torat Mosheh* ('the book of the Law of Moses') — the written Torah is the permanent standard. *L'vilti sur mimmenu yamin us'mol* ('not turning from it right or left') — the image of a straight path with the Torah as the road. This verse directly echoes Deuteronomy 5:32 and Joshua 1:7, creating a literary frame around the entire book.
7. Four prohibitions escalate the danger: mentioning pagan deity names, swearing oaths by them, serving them, worshipping them. The progression moves from casual cultural accommodation to full apostasy. *L'vilti vo ba-goyim* ('not to enter among the nations') — the warning is against social integration that leads to religious syncretism. *Uv'shem elohehem lo tazkiru* ('do not invoke the name of their gods') — even casual reference to pagan deities is forbidden (cf. Exodus 23:13).
8. *Ba-Yahweh Eloheikhem tid'baqu* ('to the LORD your God you must cling') — *davaq* ('cling, hold fast') is the marriage-bond verb from Genesis 2:24, the same term used in Joshua's charge to the Transjordan tribes (22:5). The positive command balances the four negative prohibitions: the antidote to pagan attraction is deeper loyalty to the LORD.
9. *Goyim g'dolim va'atsumim* ('nations great and mighty') — the adjectives emphasize that Israel's success is disproportionate to its own strength. The military record confirms divine involvement: the victories cannot be explained by Israel's resources alone.
10. *Ish echad mikkem yirdof elef* ('one man from you shall pursue a thousand') — this ratio echoes the Song of Moses in Deuteronomy 32:30. The hyperbolically favorable odds demonstrate divine empowerment. The verse restates the divine warrior theology: military success is God's gift, not human achievement.
11. *V'nishmartem me'od l'nafshoteikhem* ('guard yourselves greatly for your lives') — the self-guarding command (*shamar*) is existential. Love for God is not merely an emotion but a matter of survival. *L'ahavah et Yahweh Eloheikhem* ('to love the LORD your God') — the Shema command (Deuteronomy 6:5) is the single imperative that encompasses all obedience.
12. *Im shov tashuvu* ('if you indeed turn back') — the doubled verb emphasizes deliberate apostasy, not accidental error. *V'hithchatantem bahem* ('and intermarry with them') — intermarriage is the primary mechanism of assimilation. The warning proves prophetic: the opening chapters of Judges describe exactly this pattern of coexistence leading to syncretism.
13. *Yado'a ted'u* ('know with certainty') — the doubled verb creates an emphatic absolute: there is no ambiguity about the consequences. The imagery escalates: *pach* ('snare'), *moqesh* ('trap'), *shotet* ('whip/scourge'), *ts'ninim* ('thorns'). The unfaithful nation will be tormented by the very peoples it failed to dispossess. *Ad avod'khem me'al ha'adamah ha-tovah* ('until you perish from this good land') — the ultimate consequence is loss of the land itself. The promise-fulfillment of 21:43-45 is conditional; the same God who gave the land can remove Israel from it.
14. *Holekh ha-yom b'derekh kol ha-arets* ('going today in the way of all the earth') — a euphemism for death, also used by David in 1 Kings 2:2. *Lo nafal davar echad* ('not one word has fallen') — this is the exact repetition of 21:45, now placed on Joshua's own lips. The double statement (*hakol ba'u lakhem, lo nafal mimmenu davar echad* — 'everything came to you, not one word from it has failed') is emphatic: God's faithfulness to his promises is complete and beyond dispute.
15. *Ken yavi Yahweh aleikhem et kol ha-davar ha-ra* ('so the LORD will bring upon you every harmful/evil word') — the symmetry is devastating. The same faithfulness that guarantees promises guarantees threats. God's reliability is not selective; if he keeps his word regarding blessings, he will keep it regarding curses. This is the Deuteronomic covenant theology in its starkest form: the blessings of Deuteronomy 28:1-14 and the curses of Deuteronomy 28:15-68 are equally certain.
16. *B'ovr'khem et berit Yahweh Eloheikhem* ('when you transgress the covenant of the LORD your God') — the use of 'when' rather than 'if' in the Hebrew construction carries a sobering undertone. The *berit* (covenant) is the foundational relationship; violating it through worship of other gods triggers the covenant curses. *V'charah af Yahweh bakhem* ('the anger of the LORD will burn against you') — divine anger is the covenant's enforcement mechanism. *V'avadtem m'herah me'al ha-arets ha-tovah* ('you will perish quickly from the good land') — the warning is exile. Joshua's farewell ends not with comfort but with the sharpest possible warning: the land is a gift that can be revoked.

24

Summary: *At Shechem, Joshua rehearses Israel's entire history from Abraham to the conquest, challenges them to 'choose this day whom you will serve,' and the people covenant to serve the LORD. Joshua sets up a stone witness, and the book closes with his death and burial.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The covenant at Shechem follows the structure of an ancient Near Eastern suzerainty treaty: historical prologue (vv. 2-13), stipulation (vv. 14-15), witness (v. 27), and deposit of the document. Joshua's challenge — 'choose this day whom you will serve' (v. 15) — is the Bible's most famous statement of free will. But the history he recites is entirely about God's actions: 'I took... I gave... I sent... I brought... I delivered.' The choice is real, but it is made against a backdrop of unearned grace.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'gods your fathers served beyond the River' (v. 2) reveals that Abraham's family worshipped other gods before God's call — a startling admission that election is not merit-based. The large stone 'under the oak that was in the sanctuary of the LORD' (v. 26) blends Canaanite sacred-tree tradition with Israelite covenant practice. We rendered it without editorial comment. Joshua's three-fold warning 'you cannot serve the LORD' (v. 19) is not discouragement but realism.*

Connections: *The Shechem covenant connects to Genesis 12:6 (Abraham's first altar), Genesis 33:18-20 (Jacob at Shechem), and Deuteronomy 27 (the Ebal/Gerizim ceremony). Joseph's bones are buried here (v. 32), fulfilling Genesis 50:25 and Exodus 13:19. The stone witness echoes Genesis 28:18 (Jacob's pillar) and Joshua 4 (the Jordan stones). The closing obituary pattern — Joshua, then Eleazar — mirrors the Pentateuch's ending with Moses.*

¹Joshua gathered all the tribes of Israel at Shechem. He summoned the elders, heads, judges, and officials of Israel, and they presented themselves before God. ²Joshua said to all the people, "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'Long ago your ancestors lived beyond the Euphrates River — Terah, the father of Abraham and Nahor — and they served other gods. ³ I took your father Abraham from beyond the Euphrates and led him through all the land of Canaan. I multiplied his descendants and gave him Isaac. ⁴I gave Isaac both Jacob and Esau. To Esau I gave the hill country of Seir to possess, while Jacob and his sons went down to Egypt. ⁵I sent Moses and Aaron, and I struck Egypt with plagues — as I acted in their midst — and afterward I brought you out. ⁶I brought your ancestors out of Egypt, and you came to the sea. The Egyptians pursued your ancestors with chariots and cavalry to the Sea of Reeds. ⁷They cried out to the LORD, and he placed darkness between you and the Egyptians. He brought the sea over them and covered them. Your own eyes saw what I did in Egypt. Then you lived in the wilderness for a long time. ⁸I brought you to the land of the Amorites who lived east of the Jordan. They fought against you, but I handed them over to you, and you took possession of their land. I destroyed them before you. ⁹Then Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab, rose up and fought against Israel. He sent for Balaam son of Beor to curse you, ¹⁰but I refused to listen to Balaam. Instead he blessed you repeatedly, and I rescued you from his hand. ¹¹You crossed the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, as did the Amorites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hittites, Gergashites, Hivites, and Jebusites, but I handed them over to you. ¹²I sent the hornet ahead of you, and it drove them out before you — including the two Amorite kings. It was not by your sword or your bow. ¹³I gave you a land you did not toil for, cities you did not build — and you settled in them. You eat from vineyards and olive groves you did not plant.' ¹⁴"Now, therefore, fear the LORD and serve him with integrity and faithfulness. Put away the gods your ancestors served beyond the Euphrates and in Egypt, and serve the LORD. ¹⁵But if serving the LORD seems wrong to you, then choose for yourselves today whom you will serve — whether the gods your ancestors served beyond the Euphrates, or the gods of the Amorites in whose land you are living. As for me and my household, we will serve the LORD." ¹⁶The people responded, "Far be it from us to abandon the LORD and serve other gods! ¹⁷For the LORD our God is the one who brought us and our ancestors up from the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery, who performed these great signs before our eyes, and who guarded us along the entire road we traveled and among all the peoples we passed through. ¹⁸The LORD drove out all the peoples before us, including the Amorites who inhabited the land. We too will serve the LORD, for he is our God." ¹⁹Joshua said to the people, "You are not

able to serve the LORD, for he is a holy God. He is a jealous God. He will not forgive your rebellion and your sins. ²⁰If you abandon the LORD and serve foreign gods, he will turn and bring disaster on you and consume you, after having been good to you." ²¹The people said to Joshua, "No! We will serve the LORD." ²²Joshua said to the people, "You are witnesses against yourselves that you have chosen the LORD, to serve him." They said, "We are witnesses." ²³"Then put away the foreign gods that are among you, and turn your hearts toward the LORD, the God of Israel." ²⁴The people said to Joshua, "The LORD our God we will serve, and his voice we will obey." ²⁵So Joshua made a covenant with the people that day and established a statute and an ordinance for them at Shechem. ²⁶Joshua wrote these words in the Book of the Law of God. Then he took a large stone and set it up there under the oak that was in the sanctuary of the LORD. ²⁷Joshua said to all the people, "This stone will be a witness against us, for it has heard all the words the LORD spoke to us. It will be a witness against you, so that you do not deny your God." ²⁸Then Joshua dismissed the people, each to his own inheritance. ²⁹After these events, Joshua son of Nun, the servant of the LORD, died at the age of one hundred and ten years. ³⁰They buried him within the territory of his inheritance at Timnath-serah in the hill country of Ephraim, north of Mount Gaash. ³¹Israel served the LORD throughout the lifetime of Joshua and throughout the lifetime of the elders who outlived Joshua and who had experienced everything the LORD had done for Israel. ³²The bones of Joseph, which the Israelites had brought up from Egypt, were buried at Shechem in the plot of land that Jacob had purchased from the sons of Hamor, the father of Shechem, for one hundred pieces of silver. It became part of the inheritance of the descendants of Joseph. ³³Eleazar son of Aaron also died and was buried at Gibeah, which had been given to his son Phinehas in the hill country of Ephraim.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Shechem is the most theologically resonant location possible for this covenant ceremony. Abraham built his first altar here (Genesis 12:6-7), Jacob purchased land and erected an altar here (Genesis 33:18-20), and Joseph's bones will be buried here (24:32). Vayyityats'vu lifnei ha-Elohim ('they presented themselves before God') — the verb yatsav ('to station oneself, present oneself') is used for solemn assembly before the divine presence. The same fourfold leadership structure (elders, heads, judges, officers) from 23:2 is convened.
2. Koh amar Yahweh ('thus says the LORD') — Joshua speaks as a prophetic messenger, delivering God's words in the first person. This is the 'messenger formula' used by the prophets. The historical review begins with Israel's pagan origins: Terah and the patriarchal family worshipped other gods (elohim acherim) in Mesopotamia. This starting point is theologically critical — Israel's election was not based on prior merit or piety. God chose Abraham from an idolatrous family.
3. Va'eqqach et avikhem et Avraham ('I took your father Abraham') — God speaks in the first person throughout this historical recital. Every verb is in divine first person: 'I took,' 'I led,' 'I multiplied,' 'I gave.' This sustained use of the divine 'I' makes the entire history of Israel a record of God's actions, not human achievements.
4. The historical summary moves swiftly through the patriarchal period. The reference to Esau receiving Seir establishes that land allocation is a recurring divine pattern — God assigns territory to nations. Jacob's descent to Egypt sets up the exodus narrative that follows.
5. Va'eggof et Mitsrayim ('I struck Egypt') — the entire Exodus event is compressed into a single sentence. The plagues, the confrontation with Pharaoh, the Passover — all are summarized under the divine first person. The emphasis is on agency: God sent, God struck, God brought out.
6. Yam Suf ('Sea of Reeds') — rendered literally rather than following the traditional 'Red Sea' translation, which derives from the Septuagint (erythra thalassa). The Hebrew suf refers to reeds or rushes, and the exact body of water remains debated. The pursuit with chariots and cavalry represents the full military might of ancient Egypt.
7. Vayyasem ma'afel beinekhem uvein ha-mitsrim ('he placed darkness between you and the Egyptians') — this refers to the pillar of cloud that separated Israel from the pursuing army (Exodus 14:19-20). Vattir'einah eineikhem ('your eyes saw') — God addresses the current generation as participants in the historical events, blurring the line between past and present. Covenant memory makes the exodus personally real for every generation.
8. The Transjordan conquest under Moses (Numbers 21:21-35) is the first military chapter of the larger conquest narrative. The pattern is consistent: enemies fight, God delivers, Israel possesses.
9. The Balak-Balaam episode (Numbers 22-24) is presented as a military threat neutralized by divine intervention. Balak's strategy was to use supernatural power (cursing) when conventional warfare proved insufficient.
10. V'lo aviti lishmo'a l'Vil'am ('I was not willing to listen to Balaam') — God's sovereign refusal to allow the curse transforms every attempted imprecation into a blessing (Numbers 23:11, 20; 24:10). Va'atsil etkhem miyyado ('I delivered you from his hand') — divine rescue operates not only through military victory but through control of prophetic speech.
11. The seven-nation list represents the full array of Canaan's inhabitants (cf. Deuteronomy 7:1). The divine first person continues to dominate: 'I handed them over' (va'etten otam b'yedkhem). The conquest narrative is compressed to a single verse — details that occupied chapters 6-12 are

summarized under the governing theme of divine agency.

12. Va'eshlach lifneikhem et ha-tsir'ah ('I sent the hornet before you') — the tsir'ah ('hornet') is debated: literal stinging insects, a metaphor for panic or plague, or possibly Egyptian military forces (the bee was a symbol of Lower Egypt). Whatever the referent, the point is emphatic: Lo v'charb'kha v'lo v'qasht'kha ('not by your sword and not by your bow') — Israel's military technology was not the decisive factor. The two Amorite kings are Sihon and Og (cf. 2:10; 9:10).
13. The closing line of God's historical speech echoes Deuteronomy 6:10-11 with devastating precision. Everything Israel enjoys is unearned: the land (not their labor), the cities (not their construction), the vineyards and olive groves (not their planting). The entire historical survey — from Terah's idolatry in Mesopotamia to the unearned abundance in Canaan — establishes one theme: grace precedes demand. God's gifts create the obligation of loyalty.
14. V'attah ('now therefore') — the transition from historical recital to demand. B'tamim uve'emet ('in wholeness/integrity and in truth/faithfulness') — tamim means complete, without division; emet means reliable, genuine. Service to God must be undivided and authentic. V'hasiru et ha-elohim asher av'du avoteikhem ('put away the gods your ancestors served') — this command implies that some Israelites still possess idols, a shocking revelation. The idolatrous past of Mesopotamia and Egypt still has a hold on the present community. Rachel stole Laban's teraphim (Genesis 31:19); the golden calf was an Egyptian import (Exodus 32); idolatry is a persistent temptation.
15. Bacharu lakhem ha-yom et mi ta'avdun ('choose for yourselves today whom you will serve') — this is the most famous verse in Joshua and one of the most quoted in the Hebrew Bible. The demand for choice assumes genuine freedom; covenant loyalty cannot be coerced. Joshua presents two alternatives to serving the LORD: the gods of Mesopotamia (ancestral paganism) or the gods of the Amorites (local paganism). Neither option is presented favorably. V'anokhi uveiti na'avod et Yahweh ('as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD') — Joshua's personal declaration models the response he expects. His commitment is not contingent on the nation's decision.
16. Chalilah lanu me'azov et Yahweh ('far be it from us to abandon the LORD') — the same formula of moral revulsion used by the eastern tribes (22:29). The people's response is emphatic and immediate.
17. The people echo God's historical recital with their own memory. Ha-ma'aleh otanu ('the one who brought us up') — the exodus is the defining act. Mi-beit avadim ('from the house of slaves') — the standard Deuteronomic formula (Deuteronomy 5:6; 6:12; 8:14). The people cite three divine acts: deliverance from Egypt, miraculous signs, and protection on the journey.
18. Gam anachnu na'avod et Yahweh ki hu Eloheinu ('we too will serve the LORD, for he is our God') — the people's affirmation matches Joshua's declaration in verse 15. The confession ki hu Eloheinu ('for he is our God') is a covenant formula: it identifies the relationship that determines identity and obligation.
19. Lo tukh'lu la'avod et Yahweh ('you are not able to serve the LORD') — Joshua's startling response challenges the people's easy commitment. His warning is not that God is unwilling to be served but that the standard is impossibly high. Elohim q'doshim hu ('he is a holy God') — the plural q'doshim is an intensive plural ('supremely holy'), not a numerical plural. El qanno hu ('he is a jealous God') — qanno describes God's exclusive demand for loyalty (cf. Exodus 20:5; 34:14). Lo yissa l'fish'akhem ('he will not bear/forgive your rebellion') — the severity is designed to ensure the people understand the weight of their commitment.
20. V'shav v'hera lakhem v'khillah etkhem acharei asher hetiv lakhem ('he will turn and bring harm and consume you after he has done you good') — the contrast between past goodness and future judgment is sharp. God's prior generosity intensifies rather than mitigates the consequences of unfaithfulness. The word khillah ('consume, finish off') is absolute.
21. Lo, ki et Yahweh na'avod ('No — rather, the LORD we will serve') — the people persist despite Joshua's warning. The doubled commitment (vv. 16-18, 21) after being warned of the impossibility of true faithfulness (v. 19) deepens the solemnity. The reader, knowing the book of Judges, understands how quickly this commitment will be tested.
22. Edim atem bakhem ('you are witnesses against yourselves') — a covenant-lawsuit formula. The people's own declaration becomes testimony that can be used against them in the event of future unfaithfulness. They bear witness to their own freely chosen obligation. The exchange has the formal structure of a legal proceeding: charge, response, witness testimony.
23. Hasiru et elohi ha-nekhar asher b'qirb'khem ('put away the foreign gods that are in your midst') — the command confirms that foreign gods were indeed present among the Israelites (cf. v. 14). This echoes Jacob's command at Shechem to put away foreign gods (Genesis 35:2-4) — at the same location. V'hattu et l'vavkhem ('incline your hearts') — the verb natah ('to incline, to bend') asks for the reorientation of the inner self toward God.
24. The third and final affirmation — the most complete: na'avod ('we will serve') and nishma ('we will obey/listen'). The verb shama adds the dimension of hearing and heeding God's ongoing instruction. This mirrors the Sinai declaration na'aseh v'nishma ('we will do and we will hear/obey,' Exodus 24:7).
25. Vayyikhrot Yehoshua berit la-am ('Joshua cut a covenant with the people') — the verb karat ('to cut') reflects the ancient practice of cutting animals in covenant ceremonies (cf. Genesis 15:10, 17-18). This Shechem covenant is the culminating act of the book of Joshua — it renews the Sinai covenant on Canaan's soil. Vayyasem lo choq umishpat ('he set for him a statute and an ordinance') — Joshua formalizes the covenant obligations in legal terms.

- 26.** Vayyikhtov Yehoshua et ha-d'varim ha-elleh b'sefer torat Elohim ('Joshua wrote these words in the Book of the Law of God') — Joshua adds the covenant text to the existing Torah scroll, establishing continuity between Mosaic legislation and the Shechem covenant. The great stone (even g'dolah) functions as a witness monument, like the stones at Gilgal (4:20) and the altar 'Witness' (22:34). Tachat ha-allah asher b'miqdash Yahweh ('under the oak in the sanctuary of the LORD') — this oak likely connects to the oak of Moreh where Abraham first received the land promise (Genesis 12:6) and where Jacob buried the foreign gods (Genesis 35:4). The location ties patriarchal history to national covenant.
- 27.** Ki hi sham'ah et kol imrei Yahweh ('for it has heard all the words of the LORD') — the stone is personified as a witness that 'heard' the covenant proceedings. This literary device gives the covenant a permanent, physical guarantor. Creation itself testifies to the covenant (cf. Deuteronomy 30:19, where heaven and earth are called as witnesses). Pen t'kach'shun b'Eloheikhem ('lest you deny/lie against your God') — the stone guards against future apostasy by preserving the memory of the commitment.
- 28.** Ish l'nachalato ('each to his inheritance') — the covenant assembly concludes with the people dispersing to their territorial allotments. The nachalah is no longer a promise but a reality. The link between covenant commitment and land possession is maintained: the people go from the covenant ceremony to their God-given inheritance.
- 29.** Eved Yahweh ('servant of the LORD') — the title previously reserved for Moses (1:1, 2, 7, 13, 15) is now applied to Joshua. This is the ultimate honor: Joshua has completed his commission and earned the same title as his predecessor. One hundred and ten was considered the ideal lifespan in Egyptian culture; it is also the age at which Joseph died (Genesis 50:26). The narrative bookend with Joseph is deliberate.
- 30.** Bighvul nachalato ('within the border of his inheritance') — Joshua is buried in the modest city he personally requested (19:50). The servant-leader who oversaw the distribution of an entire land rests in the small inheritance he humbly claimed last. Timnath-serah means 'remaining portion' — fitting for the leader who took what was left after all others were served.
- 31.** Va'asher yad'u et kol ma'aseh Yahweh asah l'Yisra'el ('who knew all the work of the LORD that he did for Israel') — faithfulness lasted as long as eyewitnesses survived. Once the generation that personally experienced God's acts died, the next generation 'did not know the LORD' (Judges 2:10). This verse is both a commendation and a warning: covenant fidelity depends on transmitted memory. When the testimony fails, apostasy follows.
- 32.** The burial of Joseph's bones fulfills the oath from Genesis 50:25 and Exodus 13:19. Joseph's dying request — that his bones be carried to the promised land — expressed faith that God would fulfill his promise. The burial at Shechem, on land Jacob purchased (Genesis 33:19), creates a chain of legal ownership: patriarchal purchase, exodus transport, conquest-era burial. B'me'ah q'sitah ('for one hundred qesitah') — the qesitah is an archaic unit of value, possibly a specific weight of silver. The Joseph burial narrative closes the arc that began in Genesis and links the patriarchal era to the conquest era.
- 33.** The book closes with three burials: Joshua (v. 30), Joseph (v. 32), and Eleazar (v. 33). Joshua represents faithful leadership, Joseph represents fulfilled promise across centuries, and Eleazar represents the priesthood that mediated between God and Israel throughout the conquest and allocation. Giv'at Pinchas ('the hill of Phinehas') — the priestly inheritance passes to the next generation. The triple burial ending simultaneously commemorates the past, marks the transition to a new era, and silently raises the question that the book of Judges will answer: what happens when this generation's witness fades?

Judges

1

Summary: *After Joshua's death, Judah and Simeon lead the initial campaigns against the Canaanites. Several tribes fail to drive out the inhabitants of their territories, settling instead for forced labor or coexistence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter opens with the same question that opened Joshua ('Who will go up first?'), but the trajectory is downward. Judah's victories give way to partial conquests, then failures, then accommodation. The phrase lo horish (repeated throughout, 'did not drive out') becomes a refrain of incomplete obedience. The Canaanites are not too strong for God — Israel simply stopped trying. Adoni-bezek's capture and mutilation (vv. 5-7) includes his own theological commentary: 'as I have done, so God has repaid me.'*

Translation Friction: *The verb horish ('drive out, dispossess') carries legal force — it means not merely defeating but removing from the land. We rendered each instance consistently. The phrase chesed (v. 24, rendered 'deal faithfully') uses the Hebrew verbal construction asah chesed, requiring a verbal English form rather than the nominal 'faithful love.' This is a documented departure from the register default.*

Connections: *The catalog of failures here is the setup for the entire book of Judges — the nations Israel did not drive out become the instruments of their testing (2:20-3:6). The Kenite settlement (v. 16) connects to Moses's father-in-law (Numbers 10:29-32). Jerusalem's incomplete conquest (v. 21) persists until David (2 Samuel 5:6-9).*

¹After the death of Joshua, the Israelites inquired of the LORD: "Who will go up first on our behalf against the Canaanites, to fight against them?" ²The LORD said, "Judah will go up. I have given the land into his hand." ³Judah said to his brother Simeon, "Come up with me into my allotted territory, and we will fight the Canaanites together. Then I will go with you into your allotted territory." So Simeon went with him. ⁴Judah went up, and the LORD gave the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand. They struck them down at Bezek — ten thousand men. ⁵They found Adoni-Bezek at Bezek and fought against him, and they struck down the Canaanites and the Perizzites. ⁶Adoni-Bezek fled, but they pursued him, captured him, and cut off his thumbs and big toes. ⁷Adoni-Bezek said, "Seventy kings with their thumbs and big toes cut off used to scavenge under my table. As I have done, so God has repaid me." They brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there. ⁸The descendants of Judah fought against Jerusalem, captured it, struck it with the edge of the sword, and set the city on fire. ⁹After

erward the descendants of Judah went down to fight the Canaanites who lived in the hill country, the Negev, and the Shephelah. ¹⁰Judah marched against the Canaanites living in Hebron — formerly called Kiriath-Arba — and struck down Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmi. ¹¹From there he marched against the inhabitants of Debir — formerly called Kiriath-Sepher. ¹²Caleb said, "Whoever attacks Kiriath-Sepher and captures it, I will give him my daughter Achsah as a wife." ¹³Othniel son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, captured it, and Caleb gave him his daughter Achsah as a wife. ¹⁴When she arrived, she urged him to ask her father for a field. She dismounted from her donkey, and Caleb said to her, "What do you want?" ¹⁵She said to him, "Give me a blessing. Since you have given me the land of the Negev, give me also springs of water." So Caleb gave her the upper springs and the lower springs. ¹⁶The descendants of the Kenite, Moses's father-in-law, went up from the City of Palms with the descendants of Judah into the wilderness of Judah in the Negev near Arad, and they went and settled among the people. ¹⁷Judah went with his brother Simeon, and they struck down the Canaanites living in Zephath. They devoted the city to destruction and named it Hormah. ¹⁸Judah captured Gaza and its territory, Ashkelon and its territory, and Ekron and its territory. ¹⁹The LORD was with Judah, and they took possession of the hill country. But they could not dispossess the inhabitants of the plain, because they had iron chariots. ²⁰They gave Hebron to Caleb, as Moses had promised, and he drove out from there the three sons of Anak. ²¹But the descendants of Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites who lived in Jerusalem. So the Jebusites have lived alongside the descendants of Benjamin in Jerusalem to this day. ²²The house of Joseph also went up against Bethel along with the LORD was with them. ²³The house of Joseph sent scouts to Bethel — formerly called Luz. ²⁴The scouts saw a man coming out of the city and said to him, "Show us the way into the city, and we will deal faithfully with you." ²⁵He showed them the way into the city, and they struck the city with the edge of the sword, but they let the man and all his family go free. ²⁶The man went to the land of the Hittites and built a city, naming it Luz — that is its name to this day. ²⁷Manasseh did not drive out the inhabitants of Beth-Shean and its dependent towns, or Taanach and its dependent towns, or the inhabitants of Dor and its dependent towns, or the inhabitants of Ibleam and its dependent towns, or the inhabitants of Megiddo and its dependent towns. The Canaanites were determined to remain in that land. ²⁸When Israel grew strong, they subjected the Canaanites to forced labor but did not drive them out completely. ²⁹Ephraim did not drive out the Canaanites living in Gezer, so the Canaanites lived among them in Gezer. ³⁰Zebulun did not drive out the inhabitants of Kitron or the inhabitants of Nahalol. The Canaanites lived among them and were subjected to forced labor. ³¹Asher did not drive out the inhabitants of Acco, or the inhabitants of Sidon, or Ahlab, or Achzib, or Helbah, or Aphik, or Rehob. ³²So the Asherites lived among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land, because they did not drive them out. ³³Naphtali did not drive out the inhabitants of Beth-Shemesh or the inhabitants of Beth-Anath, but lived among the Canaanites, the inhabitants of the land. However, the inhabitants of Beth-Shemesh and Beth-Anath became their forced laborers. ³⁴The Amorites pressed the descendants of Dan back into the hill country and would not let them come down to the valley. ³⁵The Amorites were determined to remain in Mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim. But when the hand of the house of Joseph grew heavy upon them, they became forced laborers. ³⁶The border of the Amorites ran from the Ascent of Akrabbim, from Sela and upward.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *vayyehi acharei mot Yehoshua* ('and it was after the death of Joshua') exactly mirrors Joshua 1:1 (*acharei mot Mosheh*) — the same narrative seam that opened Joshua now opens Judges. But the structural echo highlights a critical difference: after Moses's death, God spoke to Joshua unbidden; after Joshua's death, Israel must ask. There is no named successor.
1. The verb *sha'al* ('to inquire, to ask') combined with *ba-YHWH* ('of the LORD') indicates formal oracular consultation, likely through the Urim and Thummim administered by the high priest (cf. Numbers 27:21). This is proper covenant procedure — Israel begins the book correctly, seeking divine direction before acting.
2. God's answer is immediate and decisive: Judah leads. The selection of Judah — the tribe of the royal line — at the opening of a book whose refrain is 'there was no king in Israel' is not accidental. Judah's preeminence was established in Jacob's blessing (Genesis 49:8-12) and is reasserted here.
2. The perfect tense *natatti* ('I have given') echoes Joshua 1:3 — God declares the outcome accomplished before the first blow is struck. The gift precedes the effort, as it did throughout Joshua.

3. The mutual-aid pact between Judah and Simeon reflects their geographic and genealogical proximity — both sons of Leah, and Simeon's allotment was embedded within Judah's territory (Joshua 19:1-9). The term *goral* ('lot, allotted portion') refers to the divinely assigned tribal territories distributed in Joshua 13-21. The alliance is pragmatic but also underscores the tribal fragmentation that will characterize Judges: each tribe fights for its own inheritance, not as a unified nation.
4. The pattern is established: Judah goes up, the LORD gives the victory. The verb *natan* ('gave') with the military idiom *be-yadam* ('into their hand') is the standard formula for divinely granted victory throughout Joshua and Judges. Human effort and divine action are inseparable.
4. The Perizzites are one of the pre-Israelite populations listed in the Canaanite nations formula (cf. Genesis 15:20, Exodus 3:8). The term may designate rural, unwallled-village dwellers (from *perazot*, 'open settlements') rather than a distinct ethnic group. Their pairing with the Canaanites here may indicate the full range of the population — urban Canaanites and rural Perizzites.
5. Adoni-Bezek ('lord of Bezek') is a title-name — the local ruler of Bezek. He is distinct from Adoni-Zedek ('lord of righteousness'), the king of Jerusalem in Joshua 10:1, though the similar names have caused confusion in textual traditions. The LXX confuses the two in some manuscripts.
6. The mutilation — cutting the *behonotav* ('thumbs') of his hands and feet — is not mere cruelty. Removing thumbs and big toes renders a warrior permanently unable to grip a weapon or maintain balance in combat. It is a deliberate disabling that allows survival but eliminates military threat. This practice is attested elsewhere in the ancient Near East as an alternative to execution for captured rulers.
7. Adoni-Bezek's confession is a striking moment of theological recognition from a pagan king. He identifies his fate as divine retribution — *ka'asher asiti ken shillam-li Elohim* ('as I have done, so God has repaid me'). The verb *shillam* (from the root *sh-l-m*, related to *shalom*) means 'to repay, to make whole, to requite.' The irony is rich: the root that means 'peace' and 'wholeness' here describes just punishment.
7. The seventy mutilated kings scavenging under his table (*melaqtim*, 'picking up scraps') is a vivid image of systematic humiliation. Whether seventy is precise or a round number indicating 'many' (*shiv'im* is a conventional number for a large complete set), Adoni-Bezek's own testimony establishes the measure-for-measure justice he now receives.
7. Elohim rather than YHWH in Adoni-Bezek's speech is theologically appropriate — a Canaanite king would recognize divine justice in general terms ('God') rather than invoking Israel's covenant name.
8. This notice of Jerusalem's capture by Judah stands in tension with verse 21 (Benjamin did not drive out the Jebusites from Jerusalem) and with Joshua 15:63 (Judah could not drive them out). The most likely explanation is that Judah achieved a temporary military victory without establishing permanent occupation. Jerusalem remained a Jebusite stronghold until David's conquest (2 Samuel 5:6-9). The text preserves the tension rather than harmonizing it.
8. *Lefi-cherev* ('at the mouth of the sword') is the standard idiom for comprehensive military defeat. The 'mouth' (*pi*) of the sword is its cutting edge — the Hebrew imagines the sword as consuming its victims.
9. Three geographic zones define Judah's theater of operations: the *har* ('hill country,' the central ridge), the Negev ('the south,' the arid region below Beersheba), and the *Shephelah* ('the lowland,' the foothills between the central highlands and the coastal plain). These three zones together constitute Judah's full territorial allotment as described in Joshua 15. The geographic specificity is theological documentation — the conquest must be as physical and verifiable as the promise it fulfills.
10. The three named warriors — Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmi — are identified elsewhere as descendants of Anak, the giant clan (Numbers 13:22, Joshua 15:14). These are the same population the spies feared in Numbers 13:28-33, causing the wilderness generation to refuse entry into the land. Their defeat here is the fulfillment of Caleb's confidence in Numbers 14:24 — what the faithless spies thought impossible, covenant-faithful warriors accomplish.
10. Kiriath-Arba ('city of Arba' or 'city of four') was the older name for Hebron. Arba was identified as the greatest of the Anakim (Joshua 14:15). The parenthetical name note connects the conquest to the patriarchal narratives — Abraham bought the cave of Machpelah at Hebron to bury Sarah (Genesis 23).
11. Kiriath-Sepher ('city of the scroll' or 'city of writing') suggests Debir may have been an administrative or scribal center. The name has intrigued scholars as possible evidence of a Canaanite literary tradition. This account parallels Joshua 15:15-19 almost verbatim — the Judges narrator incorporates the earlier tradition.
12. Caleb's offer of his daughter as a prize for military valor reflects ancient Near Eastern customs where marriage to a leader's daughter conferred both honor and alliance. The practice appears also in 1 Samuel 17:25 (Saul's similar offer regarding Goliath). Achsah is not merely a trophy — as verses 14-15 will show, she is a shrewd negotiator who secures her own future.
13. Othniel's introduction here prepares for his role as the first judge in 3:7-11. He is Caleb's younger brother (or possibly nephew — *achi* Kalev, 'brother of Caleb,' is ambiguous in Hebrew kinship language). His military initiative at Debir establishes his credentials as a leader capable of covenant-faithful action — making his later role as deliverer narratively coherent.
14. The verb *va-tesitehu* ('she urged him, she incited him') indicates Achsah's initiative — she is the strategic thinker in the marriage, prompting Othniel to request land. The verb *sut* can carry negative connotations (incitement to wrongdoing, cf. 1 Chronicles 21:1), but here it simply indicates persuasive initiative. Achsah recognizes that land without water is worthless and acts to secure both.

14. Va-titsnach me'al ha-chamor ('she dismounted from the donkey') — the verb tsanach means 'to descend, to alight.' The physical act of dismounting signals deference and petition — she approaches her father as a supplicant, not standing above him on the donkey.
15. Achsah's request is shrewd and theologically resonant. She asks for a berakhah ('blessing') — the word carries more weight than a simple gift. She recognizes that the Negev land alone is semi-arid and insufficient; gullot mayim ('springs of water,' literally 'basins of water') are essential for viability. Caleb's generous response — both upper and lower springs — exceeds her request, a pattern that echoes divine generosity throughout the land-gift narrative.
15. This vignette (vv. 12-15) appears almost identically in Joshua 15:16-19. Its repetition in Judges 1 serves a structural purpose: the successful completion of Caleb-Othniel's conquest is the last positive military achievement before the catalog of failures begins in verse 19.
16. The Kenites were a non-Israelite clan connected to Israel through Moses's marriage to Zipporah (Exodus 2:16-21). Choten Mosheh ('father-in-law of Moses') identifies the clan through this relationship — their alliance with Israel is based on kinship, not covenant membership. The Kenites' presence in Judah's territory prefigures Jael's role in chapter 4, where a Kenite woman delivers Israel.
16. Ir ha-temarim ('City of Palms') is Jericho (cf. Deuteronomy 34:3, 2 Chronicles 28:15). The Kenites migrated south from Jericho's oasis into the arid Negev near Arad — territory that suited their semi-nomadic pastoral lifestyle.
17. Va-yacharim otah ('they devoted it to destruction') — the verb is from cherem, the sacred ban carried over from Joshua. Zephath is renamed Hormah (from the same root ch-r-m), making the city's name a permanent marker of its destruction. The name Hormah means 'destruction' or 'devoted thing.' The same location appears in Numbers 21:3, where Israel made a similar vow of cherem against the king of Arad. The connection between the Numbers vow and its fulfillment here should be noted.
17. This is the last successful cherem in Judges. After this verse, the narrative turns to a catalog of failures — tribes that could not or would not drive out the Canaanites. The placement is deliberate: the book shows what faithful conquest looks like one last time before documenting its collapse.
18. These three cities — Gaza, Ashkelon, and Ekron — are Philistine pentapolis cities (along with Ashdod and Gath). The claim of Judah's capture is striking because the Philistines remain a dominant military presence throughout Judges and into Samuel. The LXX reads 'Judah did NOT capture Gaza...' (adding the negative ou), which many scholars consider the more historically plausible reading. The MT text as it stands may describe a temporary or partial occupation that the Philistines quickly reversed.
18. The term gevulah ('its territory') indicates that the claim extends beyond the city walls to the surrounding agricultural land — a complete territorial claim, not just urban capture.
19. This verse is the theological hinge of chapter 1. The LORD was with Judah — the covenant presence is affirmed — yet Judah cannot complete the conquest. The stated reason is military: rekhev barzel ('iron chariots'), the ancient Near Eastern equivalent of armored divisions. Iron technology gave the lowland Canaanites a decisive advantage on flat terrain where chariots could operate.
19. The theological tension is acute: if the LORD is with Judah, why can iron chariots stop them? Joshua 17:16-18 raises the same issue. The text does not resolve the tension — it lets it stand. The implication, which the narrator will develop through the rest of Judges, is that the failure is not military but spiritual: the tribes lack the faith to press the conquest against superior technology, and the LORD's presence does not override human willingness.
19. The verb yarash ('to take possession, to dispossess') is the key land-conquest verb from Deuteronomy and Joshua. Its appearance here — successful in the hills, failed in the plains — marks the beginning of the 'could not / did not' sequence that runs through the rest of the chapter.
20. The fulfillment of Moses's promise to Caleb (Numbers 14:24, Deuteronomy 1:36, Joshua 14:6-15). Caleb's success against the Anakim — the giant clan that terrified the faithless spies — is the narrative bookend to Numbers 13-14. What the wilderness generation could not face, Caleb conquers at age 85. His personal faith stands in contrast to the tribal failures documented throughout the rest of this chapter.
21. The first explicit failure: lo horishu ('they did not drive out'). This begins the catalog of tribal failures that dominates the rest of the chapter. Benjamin's failure at Jerusalem is especially significant because Jerusalem sat on the border between Judah and Benjamin (Joshua 15:8, 18:16). Verse 8 reported Judah's partial victory there; Benjamin's failure to follow through left the Jebusites in place until David's conquest (2 Samuel 5:6-9).
21. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') is a narrator's marker indicating that the situation persisted into the time of writing. This temporal note is evidence for a pre-Davidic (or at least pre-Solomonic) composition date for at least this portion of the text, since David took Jerusalem.
22. Beit-Yosef ('house of Joseph') designates the combined tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh — Joseph's two sons who received tribal status through Jacob's adoption blessing (Genesis 48). The LORD's presence with them (va-YHWH immam) echoes verse 19 (the LORD was with Judah) and creates a parallel: both Judah and Joseph begin with divine support but end with incomplete results.
22. Bethel ('house of God') was one of the most significant cultic sites in Israel's history — the place of Jacob's dream and vow (Genesis 28:10-22, 35:1-15). Its capture by the house of Joseph restores the site to Israelite control. Ironically, Bethel will later become a center of illicit worship under Jeroboam (1 Kings 12:29).
23. The verb va-yatiru ('they scouted, they spied out') connects to Joshua 2's reconnaissance of Jericho. The parallel is intentional: as Joshua sent spies before Jericho, so the house of Joseph sends scouts before Bethel. The former name Luz ('almond tree') appears in Genesis 28:19, where Jacob renamed it Bethel after his dream encounter with God.

24. The promise *ve-asinu immekha chesed* ('we will do *chesed* with you') is a deliberate echo of Rahab's exchange with the Israelite spies in Joshua 2:12-14, where the same *chesed* language appears. The parallel invites comparison: Rahab's *chesed* led to her incorporation into Israel; this man's *chesed* leads to his exile. The same covenant vocabulary produces different outcomes.
24. *Chesed* here functions at the human-to-human level — faithful dealing, loyal reciprocity. The scouts pledge covenantal goodwill in exchange for intelligence. The register term appears in its relational dimension: binding loyalty between parties who have entered an agreement.
24. Register departure: *chesed* rendered as 'deal faithfully' rather than default 'faithful love' because the Hebrew uses the verbal construction *asah chesed* ('do *chesed*'), requiring a verbal English form. The spies promise reciprocal loyalty to the informant — a human pledge, not a divine covenant.
25. The *chesed* pledge is honored: the man and his entire *mishpachah* ('family, clan') are released. The verb *shillechu* ('they sent away, released') is the same root used for Pharaoh releasing Israel from Egypt (*sh-l-ch*). The irony is layered: an Israelite liberation verb is used for releasing a Canaanite family from a city under conquest.
26. The man rebuilds his city-identity in exile — naming the new settlement Luz after the old one. The relocation to *erets ha-Chittim* ('land of the Hittites,' Syria/southern Anatolia) places him far from Israel's territory. The narrator's tag 'to this day' (*ad ha-yom ha-zeh*) indicates the new Luz persisted into the writer's era, though its precise location is unknown.
27. This verse (paralleling Joshua 17:11-12) lists five major Canaanite city-states that Manasseh failed to conquer. These cities form a strategic line across the Jezreel Valley — controlling them meant controlling the major east-west trade and military route through northern Israel. Their continued Canaanite occupation left Israel's territory effectively divided between north and south.
27. The term *benoteiha* ('its daughters,' rendered 'dependent towns') uses the family metaphor: the main city is the 'mother' and surrounding villages are its 'daughters.' This reflects the ancient Near Eastern city-state structure where a major fortified city dominated surrounding agricultural settlements.
27. *Va-yo'el ha-Kna'ani lashevet* ('the Canaanite was determined to dwell') — the verb *ya'al* means 'to be willing, to determine, to persist.' The emphasis is on Canaanite tenacity, not merely Israelite weakness. The Canaanites are agents in the narrative, not passive victims.
28. The devastating summary: even when Israel was strong enough to act, they chose economic exploitation over covenant obedience. The term *mas* ('forced labor, *corvée*') indicates state-imposed compulsory labor — the same institution Solomon would later use on Israelites themselves (1 Kings 5:13-14, 12:18), provoking the kingdom's division. The irony is bitter: Israel, who was once subjected to *mas* in Egypt (Exodus 1:11), now imposes it on others rather than carrying out the conquest as commanded.
28. The emphatic construction *horesh lo horisho* ('driving out — they did not drive out') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis. The narrator underscores the deliberate nature of the failure: this was not inability but unwillingness.
29. Gezer was a strategically important city on the road between Jerusalem and the coast. It remained Canaanite until Pharaoh conquered it and gave it to Solomon as a dowry for his daughter (1 Kings 9:16). The phrase *be-qirbo* ('in his midst') signals something worse than coexistence — the Canaanites are embedded within Ephraim's territory, not merely on its borders.
30. The same pattern as verse 28: failure to drive out, followed by the forced-labor compromise. The repetition is literary: each tribe's failure follows the same formula, building cumulative weight. Kitron and Nahalol were cities in Zebulun's territory in the lower Galilee. Their exact locations remain debated.
31. Asher's list of seven unconquered cities is the longest single tribal failure. Critically, this includes Sidon — one of the great Phoenician port cities. Asher's allotment extended to the Mediterranean coast and included major commercial centers. The failure to take these cities meant Asher was effectively surrounded by Canaanite populations and cut off from the sea trade that defined the region.
32. The phrasing shifts tellingly: for Zebulun and Manasseh, 'the Canaanites lived among them' (verse 27, 29, 30); for Asher, 'the Asherites lived among the Canaanites.' The reversal is deliberate — Asher's failure is so complete that the Canaanites are the majority population and Asher is the minority living in their midst. The tribe has not absorbed the Canaanites; the Canaanites have absorbed the tribe.
33. Naphtali follows Asher's pattern — 'lived among the Canaanites' rather than the reverse. Both Beth-Shemesh ('house of the sun') and Beth-Anath ('house of Anath') are names with pagan religious significance: Shemesh was a solar deity and Anath was a Canaanite warrior goddess. The place names themselves signal the cultic environment that will become Israel's undoing.
33. The forced-labor note at the end provides a slight qualification: Naphtali at least achieved economic dominance, even if not territorial displacement. The hierarchy of failure across tribes is calibrated — from Judah's partial success to Asher and Naphtali's near-total absorption.
34. Dan's situation is the worst of all: they are not merely unable to drive out the Canaanites — they are actively pushed back by them. The verb *va-yilchatzu* ('they pressed, they squeezed') indicates military pressure that confined Dan to a small, inhospitable highland area. This territorial pressure is the background for the Dan migration narrative in chapters 17-18, where the tribe abandons its allotment entirely and migrates north to seize Laish.
34. The text uses 'Amorites' rather than 'Canaanites' — the Amorites were the highland population, and Dan's conflict was specifically with the hill-country inhabitants of the Aijalon valley region.

35. *Va-tikhbad yad beit-Yosef* ('the hand of the house of Joseph grew heavy') — the verb *kavad* ('to be heavy, weighty') is from the same root as *kavod* ('glory'). Here 'heavy hand' means military/political dominance. The house of Joseph (Ephraim-Manasseh) eventually achieved enough power to subjugate but not displace the Amorites — the same forced-labor compromise repeated throughout the chapter.
36. The final verse defines the Amorite territorial boundary — they held ground from *Ma'aleh Aqrabbim* ('Scorpion Pass,' on the southern border of Judah, cf. Numbers 34:4, Joshua 15:3) northward from *ha-Sela* ('the Rock,' possibly Petra or a prominent rock formation). This closing geographic note frames the Amorite presence as a fixed, established reality rather than a temporary situation. The chapter ends not with hope of future conquest but with the mapping of Israel's failure.
36. The chapter thus moves from Judah's partial success (vv. 1-20) through a cascade of tribal failures (vv. 21-36). The downward trajectory is structural and theological: God gave the land, the tribes were unable or unwilling to take it fully, and the Canaanite presence that remains will become the catalyst for the apostasy cycle that defines the rest of Judges.

2

Summary: *The angel of the LORD rebukes Israel at Bochim for failing to destroy Canaanite altars. Joshua's generation dies, and a new generation 'did not know the LORD.' The cycle begins: apostasy, oppression, crying out, deliverance — then apostasy again.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological framework for the entire book is laid out in verses 11-19: Israel serves the Baals, God's anger burns, He gives them into the hands of oppressors, they cry out, He raises a judge who delivers them, the judge dies, and they do worse than before. The phrase 'did not know the LORD' (v. 10) diagnoses the root cause: not rebellion but amnesia — the failure of Deuteronomy's catechetical program.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *zanah* (v. 17, 'played the prostitute after other gods') uses sexual infidelity as a covenant metaphor. We rendered it 'prostituted themselves' to preserve the Hebrew's force. The phrase *lo sham'u* (v. 17, 'they did not listen') echoes the Shema's imperative — Israel's fundamental command is to hear, and their fundamental failure is deafness.*

Connections: *The Bochim rebuke connects to Joshua's farewell warning (Joshua 23:12-13). The judges cycle anticipates the monarchy: the pattern's failure creates the demand for a king. The remaining nations as 'testing' (v. 22) echoes Deuteronomy 8:2. The angel of the LORD from Gilgal to Bochim traces a path from conquest's beginning to its mourned failure.*

¹The angel of the LORD went up from Gilgal to Bochim and said, "I brought you up out of Egypt and led you into the land that I swore to your fathers. I said, 'I will never break my covenant with you.' ²But you — you must not make a covenant with the inhabitants of this land. You must tear down their altars.' Yet you have not obeyed my voice. What is this you have done? ³So I also said, 'I will not drive them out before you. They will be thorns in your sides, and their gods will be a trap for you.'" ⁴When the angel of the LORD spoke these words to all the Israelites, the people lifted up their voices and wept. ⁵They named that place Bochim, and they sacrificed there to the LORD. ⁶When Joshua had dismissed the people, the Israelites went each to his inheritance to take possession of the land. ⁷The people served the LORD all the days of Joshua and all the days of the elders who outlived Joshua — those who had seen all the great work that the LORD had done for Israel. ⁸Joshua son of Nun, the servant of the LORD, died at the age of one hundred and ten. ⁹They buried him within the territory of his inheritance, at Timnath-Heres in the hill country of Ephraim, north of Mount Gaash. ¹⁰And all that generation too were gathered to their fathers. Another generation rose up after them who did not know the LORD or the work that He had done for Israel. ¹¹The Israelites did what was evil in the sight of the LORD and served the Baals. ¹²They abandoned the LORD, the God of their fathers, who had brought them out of the land of Egypt. They went after other gods, from among the gods of the peoples who surrounded them, and bowed down to them, provoking the LORD to anger. ¹³They abandoned the LORD and served Baal and the Ashtoreths. ¹⁴The anger of the LORD burned against Israel, and He gave them into the hand of raiders who plundered them. He sold them into the hand of their enemies all around, and they could no longer stand before their enemies. ¹⁵Wherever they went out, the hand of the LORD was against them for disaster, just as the LORD had spoken and as the LORD had sworn to them. They were in severe distress. ¹⁶Yet the LORD raised up judges, and they delivered them

from the hand of those who plundered them. ¹⁷Yet they did not listen even to their judges, for they prostituted themselves to other gods and bowed down to them. They turned aside quickly from the way their fathers had walked, obeying the commandments of the LORD — they did not do so. ¹⁸Whenever the LORD raised up judges for them, the LORD was with the judge and delivered them from the hand of their enemies throughout the judge's lifetime. For the LORD was moved to compassion by their groaning under those who oppressed and crushed them. ¹⁹But whenever the judge died, they turned back and acted more corruptly than their fathers, going after other gods, serving them and bowing down to them. They did not drop any of their practices or their stubborn ways. ²⁰The anger of the LORD burned against Israel, and He said, "Because this nation has transgressed my covenant that I commanded their fathers and has not obeyed my voice, ²¹I also will no longer drive out before them any of the nations that Joshua left when he died, ²²in order to test Israel through them — whether they would keep the way of the LORD and walk in it, as their fathers had kept it, or not." ²³So the LORD left those nations in place, not driving them out quickly, and He had not given them into the hand of Joshua.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Malakh YHWH ('the angel of the LORD') speaks in the first person as God Himself — 'I brought you up out of Egypt.' This is not a mere messenger relaying information but the divine presence speaking directly. The malakh YHWH in the Hebrew Bible often functions as a manifestation of God's own presence, blurring the line between messenger and sender (cf. Genesis 16:7-13, Exodus 3:2-6). The notes should flag this theological complexity without resolving it.
1. The movement from Gilgal to Bochim is geographically and theologically significant. Gilgal was the base camp where Israel renewed the covenant upon entering the land (Joshua 5:2-12) — the place of circumcision, Passover, and the beginning of the conquest. The angel's departure from Gilgal symbolizes the covenant moving from its place of renewal to the place where its violation will be announced.
1. Lo afer beriti ittkhem le-olam ('I will never break my covenant with you') — two register terms converge: berit (covenant) and olam (forever). God's commitment is permanent. The indictment that follows (verse 2) therefore does not charge God with covenant failure but Israel with covenant violation. The asymmetry is crucial: God keeps His olam commitment; Israel does not keep hers.
2. The indictment cites two specific covenant obligations from Deuteronomy: no treaties with Canaanites (Deuteronomy 7:2) and destruction of their altars (Deuteronomy 7:5, 12:3). Both have been violated — chapter 1 documented coexistence and forced labor instead of displacement, and the persistence of Canaanite populations implies the persistence of Canaanite worship sites.
2. Lo tikhre'tu verit ('you must not cut a covenant') — the verb karat ('to cut') is the technical term for covenant-making (from the ritual of cutting animals in the ratification ceremony, Genesis 15:10). Israel is forbidden from entering into binding agreements with Canaanite populations because such agreements create obligations that compete with the covenant with YHWH.
2. Mah-zot asitem ('What is this you have done?') — the question is rhetorical and devastating. It echoes God's question to Adam (Genesis 3:13) and to Cain (Genesis 4:10). The language of primal transgression frames Israel's failure as a fall from covenant grace.
3. The consequence is measure-for-measure: because Israel did not drive out the Canaanites, God will not drive them out either. The nations Israel spared will become le-tsiddim ('thorns in your sides' or 'adversaries' — the Hebrew tsiddim is debated; it may derive from tsad, 'side,' or from tsud, 'to hunt/trap'). Either reading yields the same theology: the Canaanite remnant will cause ongoing pain.
3. Ve-eloheihem yihyu lakhem le-moqesh ('and their gods will be a trap/snare for you') — moqesh is a hunting term, a bait-trap that catches prey. Canaanite religion is described not as a temptation one might resist but as a trap already set. This language anticipates the entire cycle of apostasy in Judges: Israel will be 'caught' by Baal worship repeatedly. The metaphor absolves no one — Israel walks into a trap it was warned about.
4. The response — va-yivku ('and they wept') — is immediate and communal. The weeping is genuine grief, not strategic repentance. But the text records no prayer, no confession, no commitment to change. Weeping alone does not constitute teshuvah (repentance/return). The narrator's silence on what follows the weeping is damning — the people cry, but nothing changes.
5. Bokhim means 'Weepers' — the place is named for Israel's response. The sacrifice (va-yizbchu) suggests an attempt at restoration through proper worship, but the text gives no indication of divine acceptance or rejection. The name remains as a monument to grief without resolution — a fitting opening for a book about cycles of sorrow.
5. The location of Bochim is uncertain. The LXX adds 'Bethel and' before 'Bochim,' which would place it near the central sanctuary site. If Bochim is near Bethel, the association with Jacob's covenant encounter (Genesis 28) adds another layer: Israel weeps at the place where the covenant was first envisioned.
6. The narrative now flashes back to a point before Joshua's death — the dismissal of the tribes to their allotments (cf. Joshua 24:28). This retrospective section (vv. 6-10) provides the context for the cycle that will dominate the rest of Judges: Joshua's generation served the LORD, but the generation that followed did not.

6. Two key terms appear: *nachalah* ('inheritance' — the divinely assigned tribal territory) and *yarash* ('to take possession' — the conquest verb). The language of promise and possession frames even this retrospective as part of the ongoing land-gift narrative.
7. This verse establishes the critical variable: firsthand experience. The generation that served the LORD faithfully was the generation that had seen (ra'u) God's acts with their own eyes. Covenant faithfulness, in the Judges framework, correlates directly with experiential knowledge of God's power. When the eyewitnesses die, faithfulness dies with them. This raises the question that haunts the book: How does covenant memory survive generational transition?
7. The phrase *kol ma'aseh YHWH ha-gadol* ('all the great work of the LORD') encompasses the conquest, the Jordan crossing, the fall of Jericho, the solar event at Gibeon — the entire Joshua narrative. Seeing these acts produced faith; not seeing them produced apostasy.
8. Joshua dies at 110 — the same age as Joseph (Genesis 50:26). In the ancient Near East, particularly in Egyptian tradition, 110 was considered the ideal lifespan. The parallel between Joseph (who brought Israel into Egypt) and Joshua (who brought them into Canaan) creates a structural bookend. Joshua now receives the title *eved YHWH* ('servant of the LORD') that Moses carried — the succession is complete, and the era ends.
9. Timnath-Heres ('portion of the sun') appears as Timnath-Serah in Joshua 19:50 and 24:30 — the consonants of the second element are reversed (ch-r-s vs. s-r-ch). Some scholars suggest the Judges form may allude to sun worship that later developed at the site, while others view it as a simple scribal variation. The burial in his own *nachalah* ('inheritance') demonstrates that Joshua practiced what he preached: he took an allotment in the land he helped conquer.
10. This is the most important verse in Judges — the generational rupture that explains everything that follows. *Lo yad'u et-YHWH* ('they did not know the LORD') — *yada* ('to know') in Hebrew is not cognitive awareness but experiential, relational knowledge. This generation had not personally experienced the conquest, the Jordan crossing, or the covenant ceremonies. Their ignorance is not intellectual but experiential: they have no firsthand encounter with the God of the covenant.
10. The phrase *ne'esfu el avotav* ('gathered to his fathers') is the standard death formula throughout the Hebrew Bible — the metaphor implies reunion with ancestors, though the text does not elaborate on afterlife theology. The passing of the entire generation (*kol ha-dor ha-hu*) marks a clean break: the book operates from this point forward without the witness generation.
11. *Va-ya'asu ... et ha-ra be-einei YHWH* ('they did the evil in the eyes of the LORD') — this is the cycle's opening formula, and this is its first occurrence in the book. The definite article (*ha-ra*, 'THE evil') suggests a specific category of transgression: the covenant violation of serving other gods. It appears seven times in Judges (2:11, 3:7, 3:12, 4:1, 6:1, 10:6, 13:1), structuring the book's major narrative sections.
11. *Ha-be'alim* ('the Baals') — the plural indicates the multiple localized manifestations of the Canaanite storm deity Baal. Each Canaanite city had its own Baal shrine. Israel's sin is not monotheistic worship of the wrong god but polytheistic fragmentation — abandoning the one LORD for many local gods. The theological contrast is absolute: covenant unity versus cultic chaos.
12. The verse narrates the full trajectory of apostasy in a single sentence: abandoned (*azav*) pursued (*halakh acharei*) worshiped (*hishtachavu*) provoked (*hikh'isu*). Each verb deepens the betrayal. The identification of YHWH as 'the God of their fathers who brought them out of Egypt' makes the abandonment intensely personal — they are forsaking not an abstract deity but the One who liberated their ancestors.
12. *Elohim acherim* ('other gods') is Deuteronomy's standard phrase for prohibited deities (Deuteronomy 5:7, 6:14, 8:19, 11:28). The phrase *me-elohei ha-ammim asher sevivoteihem* ('from among the gods of the peoples around them') specifies that the apostasy is not abstract theology but cultural assimilation — Israel adopts the religions of its neighbors.
12. *Va-yakh'isu et-YHWH* ('they provoked the LORD to anger') — the verb *ka'as* means 'to grieve, to provoke, to vex.' God's anger in the Hebrew Bible is not arbitrary wrath but the response of a covenant partner to betrayal. It is the grief of a spouse whose partner has been unfaithful (a metaphor the prophets will develop extensively).
13. The pairing of Baal (masculine storm/fertility deity) and Ashtoreth (plural of Ashtoreth, the feminine fertility goddess) represents the complete Canaanite divine couple. Together they embody the fertility religion Israel adopted — agricultural prosperity guaranteed through ritual sex and worship of nature gods rather than through covenant faithfulness to YHWH. The text presents this as a comprehensive replacement, not a supplement: they abandoned the LORD and served others.
14. *Va-yichar af YHWH* ('the anger of the LORD burned') — the idiom uses the verb *charah* ('to burn') with *af* ('nostril, nose, anger'). The image is of flaring nostrils — hot breath through the nose as a physiological sign of rage. This is covenant wrath, not capricious temper.
14. Two military metaphors describe God's judgment: He 'gave them into the hand' (*natan be-yad*) of raiders and 'sold them' (*makhar*) to their enemies. The selling metaphor is striking — it implies Israel has become a commodity, transferred from one owner to another. The verb *makhar* appears in debt-slavery contexts (Exodus 21:7-8), suggesting Israel's sin creates a spiritual debt that results in bondage. The very thing God freed them from in Egypt — servitude to a foreign power — is now their punishment.
15. The devastating phrase *yad YHWH hayetah bam le-ra'ah* ('the hand of the LORD was against them for harm') reverses the conquest formula: in Joshua, God's hand was with Israel for victory; now God's hand is against Israel for disaster. The same divine power that demolished Jericho's walls now opposes Israel at every turn.
15. *Ka'asher dibber ... ve-kha'asher nishba* ('as He had spoken and as He had sworn') — this is a direct citation of the Deuteronomic covenant curses (Deuteronomy 28:15-68). The distress Israel experiences is not arbitrary punishment but the announced consequence of covenant violation. God told them exactly what would happen, and it happened exactly as He told them.

16. Va-yaqem YHWH shoftim ('the LORD raised up judges') — the initiative is entirely divine. Israel does not produce its own leaders; God raises them. The verb *qum* (hiphil — 'to raise up, to establish') emphasizes God's sovereign action: the judges are God's instruments, appointed from above, not elected from below.
16. Va-yoshi'um ('and they delivered them') — from the root *y-sh-a* (salvation). The judges are *moshi'im* (deliverers/saviors) — the same root from which *yeshua* ('salvation') and *Yehoshua* ('Joshua') derive. The theological point is clear: deliverance comes from God through human instruments, but the source is always divine.
17. The verb *zanu* ('they prostituted themselves, they committed harlotry') introduces the marriage/adultery metaphor for idolatry that becomes central in prophetic literature (Hosea, Jeremiah, Ezekiel). Israel's covenant with YHWH is figured as a marriage; worship of other gods is therefore *zanah* (sexual infidelity). The metaphor is deliberate and disturbing — it frames apostasy not as an intellectual error but as intimate betrayal.
17. *Saru maher min ha-derekh* ('they turned aside quickly from the way') — the 'way' (*derekh*) is the covenant path of obedience. The adverb *maher* ('quickly') underscores the speed of the decline: not a gradual drift but a rapid departure. The generation that had seen God's acts walked the *derekh*; the generation that had not abandoned it almost immediately.
18. *Ki yinnachem YHWH min-na'aqatam* ('for the LORD was moved to compassion by their groaning') — the verb *nacham* carries complex meaning: to comfort, to relent, to be grieved, to change one's mind. Here it describes God's visceral response to human suffering. The *na'aqah* ('groaning') is the same word used for Israel's groaning under Egyptian slavery (Exodus 2:24, 6:5). The parallel is explicit: God responds to groaning in Judges as He did in Egypt — with compassionate intervention.
18. The phrase *kol yemei ha-shofet* ('all the days of the judge') reveals the systemic limitation: deliverance lasts only as long as the deliverer lives. The *shofet's* authority is personal, not institutional — it cannot be transferred, inherited, or perpetuated. This built-in expiration date guarantees the cycle's repetition.
19. *Ve-hishchitu me-avotam* ('they acted more corruptly than their fathers') — the key word is *me-avotam* ('more than their fathers'). Each cycle does not merely repeat the previous one; it escalates. The decline is progressive, not cyclical in the strict sense. This is a spiral, not a circle — each revolution is worse than the last. The narrator announces this principle before the individual judge stories begin, so the reader watches for the intensification.
19. *Lo hippilu* ('they did not drop') — the verb *nafal* (hiphil, 'to let fall, to drop') means they did not release or abandon any of their corrupt practices. The image is of someone clutching something tightly, refusing to let go. The 'stubborn way' (*darkam ha-qashah*) uses *qashah* ('hard, harsh, difficult') — their chosen path is not merely different from God's but actively resistant to correction.
20. God now speaks in direct discourse, pronouncing the consequence of covenant violation. The term *beriti* ('my covenant') echoes verse 1 — the same covenant God declared He would never break is the covenant Israel has transgressed (*avru*, 'crossed over, violated'). The verb *avar* means literally 'to cross over' — covenant transgression in Hebrew is figured as crossing a boundary line, stepping over the limit set by the agreement.
20. The phrase *ha-goy ha-zeh* ('this nation') rather than 'my people' or 'the Israelites' is subtly distancing — God refers to Israel with the same term used for foreign nations. The word choice signals the relational rupture caused by their disobedience.
21. The divine declaration *lo osif lehorish* ('I will no longer drive out') transforms Israel's military failure into divine policy. What began as Israel's disobedience (chapter 1's catalog of 'did not drive out') now becomes God's deliberate decision. The remaining nations are no longer an accident of incomplete conquest but a purposeful instrument of testing (as verse 22 will explain).
22. *Le-ma'an nassot bam et-Yisra'el* ('in order to test Israel through them') — the remaining Canaanite nations become a divine testing instrument. The verb *nasah* ('to test, to prove') is the same word used for God's testing of Abraham at the binding of Isaac (Genesis 22:1). The test is not arbitrary but diagnostic: will this generation walk in the *derekh* YHWH ('way of the LORD') as the previous generation did?
22. The answer, which the reader already knows from the narrator's preview in verses 11-19, is no. The test will be failed repeatedly. But the text presents the test as genuinely open-ended — the 'whether...or not' (*ha-shomrim hem ... im lo*) preserves the possibility that Israel could have chosen differently.
23. *Va-yannach YHWH* ('the LORD left, allowed to remain') — the verb *nuach* means 'to rest, to settle, to leave in place.' The word choice is quietly ironic: the nations 'rest' in the land that was supposed to be Israel's place of 'rest' (the *menucha* of Deuteronomy 12:9). Israel's promised rest is disrupted by the nations God leaves at rest within their borders.
23. The final note — 'He had not given them into the hand of Joshua' — refers back to Joshua 13:1-7, where God told the aging Joshua that much land remained unconquered. The incomplete conquest was never merely a military shortcoming; it was, in retrospect, part of the divine plan to test subsequent generations.

3

Summary: *The remaining nations that test Israel are listed. Othniel delivers Israel from Cushan-rishathaim of Aram, Ehud assassinates Eglon king of Moab with a concealed dagger, and Shamgar strikes down six hundred Philistines with an oxgoad.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Ehud's narrative is the book's most viscerally detailed. He is left-handed (ish itter yad yemino, literally 'restricted in his right hand') — a Benjaminite, whose tribal name means 'son of the right hand.' The irony is structural. The assassination scene spares no physical detail: Eglon is so fat the sword disappears entirely, 'and the fat closed over the blade' (v. 22). The narrator's unflinching realism serves theology: God delivers through unexpected agents using unexpected methods.*

Translation Friction: *The word sarnei (v. 3) is rendered 'tyrants' — the locked term for Philistine rulers. The phrase parshedonah (v. 22) is a hapax legomenon (appears only once in the entire Hebrew Bible) and has been variously translated as 'the refuse came out,' 'the dagger came out at the back,' or a reference to the vestibule/porch. We chose the reading best supported by context and noted the uncertainty.*

Connections: *Othniel's deliverance echoes his courage in Joshua 15:16-17. The left-handed Ehud anticipates the left-handed Benjamite slingers of Judges 20:16. Shamgar's oxgoad prefigures Samson's unconventional weaponry (ch. 15, jawbone of a donkey). The Mesopotamian oppressor Cushan-rishathaim ('Cushan of double wickedness') may be a derisive nickname rather than his real name.*

¹These are the nations that the LORD left in order to test Israel by them — all those Israelites who had not experienced any of the wars of Canaan — ²only so that the generations of the Israelites might learn — to teach them war, those who had not experienced it before. ³the five tyrants of the Philistines, all the Canaanites, the Sidonians, and the Hivites living in the hill country of Lebanon from Mount Baal-Hermon to Lebo-Hamath. ⁴They were there to test Israel, to determine whether they would obey the commandments of the LORD that He had commanded their fathers through Moses. ⁵The Israelites lived among the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites. ⁶They took their daughters as wives and gave their own daughters to their sons, and they served their gods. ⁷The Israelites did what was evil in the sight of the LORD. They forgot the LORD their God and served the Baals and the Asherahs. ⁸The anger of the LORD burned against Israel, and He sold them into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram-Naharaim. The Israelites served Cushan-Rishathaim for eight years. ⁹The Israelites cried out to the LORD, and the LORD raised up a deliverer for the Israelites who saved them — Othniel son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother. ¹⁰The Spirit of the LORD came upon him, and he judged Israel. He went out to war, and the LORD gave Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram into his hand. His hand prevailed over Cushan-Rishathaim. ¹¹The land had rest for forty years. Then Othniel son of Kenaz died. ¹²The Israelites again did what was evil in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD strengthened Eglon king of Moab against Israel, because they had done what was evil in the sight of the LORD. ¹³He gathered the Ammonites and the Amalekites to himself, marched out, and struck Israel. They seized the City of Palms. ¹⁴The Israelites served Eglon king of Moab for eighteen years. ¹⁵The Israelites cried out to the LORD, and the LORD raised up a deliverer for them — Ehud son of Gera, a Benjaminite, a man restricted in his right hand. The Israelites sent tribute to Eglon king of Moab through him. ¹⁶Ehud made himself a short sword with two edges, a gomel in length, and strapped it under his garment on his right thigh. ¹⁷He presented the tribute to Eglon king of Moab. Now Eglon was a very fat man. ¹⁸When he had finished presenting the tribute, he dismissed the people who had carried the tribute. ¹⁹But he himself turned back from the carved stones near Gilgal and said, "I have a secret message for you, O king." The king said, "Silence!" And all his attendants withdrew from his presence. ²⁰Ehud approached him as he sat alone in his cool upper room. Ehud said, "I have a message from God for you." And Eglon rose from his seat. ²¹Ehud reached with his left hand, drew the sword from his right thigh, and thrust it into Eglon's belly. ²²Even the hilt went in after the blade, and the fat closed over the blade — for he did not withdraw the sword from his belly — and it came out at the back. ²³Ehud went out through the vestibule, shut the doors of the upper room behind him, and locked them. ²⁴After he had left, the

servants came and saw that the doors of the upper room were locked. They said, "He must be relieving himself in the cool chamber." ²⁵They waited until they were embarrassed, but he still did not open the doors of the upper room. So they took the key, opened them — and there was their lord, fallen to the ground, dead. ²⁶While they delayed, Ehud escaped. He passed the carved stones and reached safety at Seirah. ²⁷When he arrived, he blew the shofar in the hill country of Ephraim. The Israelites went down with him from the hill country, with him at their head. ²⁸He said to them, "Follow me, for the LORD has given your enemies the Moabites into your hand." They followed him and seized the fords of the Jordan against Moab, allowing no one to cross. ²⁹They struck down about ten thousand Moabites at that time — all of them strong, all of them warriors. Not a single man escaped. ³⁰Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel, and the land had rest for eighty years. ³¹After him came Shamgar son of Anath, who struck down six hundred Philistines with an ox goad. He too delivered Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator provides a second rationale for the remaining nations: not only a spiritual test (2:22) but also military training for a generation that had not experienced warfare. The phrase *lo yad'u* ('had not known/experienced') uses the same verb as 2:10 — the generational knowledge gap is both theological (they did not know the LORD) and practical (they did not know war). Both forms of inexperience prove fatal.
2. *Le-lamdam milchamah* ('to teach them war') — the divine purpose is pedagogical. The remaining nations serve as a training ground. The irony is that the best teacher of warfare would have been complete obedience in the first generation — the conquest itself. Because Israel failed to learn through faithful conquest, they must now learn through ongoing conflict with enemies that should not have remained.
3. *Sarnei Felisitim* ('rulers of the Philistines') — the term *seren* (plural *sarnei*) is a uniquely Philistine title, not used for any other people group. It is likely a loanword from the Philistines' Aegean origin (possibly related to Greek *tyrannos*). The five Philistine city-states — Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron, and Gath — each had its own *seren*. Their continued presence on the coastal plain will dominate the Samson narrative and the early monarchy.
3. *Har Ba'al Chermon* ('Mount Baal-Hermon') — the *Baal* prefix indicates a Canaanite cultic site on Mount Hermon. The geographic range described (from Hermon in the north to Lebo-Hamath, the entry to the Hamath region in modern Syria) defines the northern extent of the unconquered territory.
4. The section closes by returning to the spiritual test announced in 2:22. The phrase *be-yad Mosheh* ('through the hand of Moses') — literally 'by the hand of Moses' — is a standard expression for Mosaic mediation of divine law. The commandments in view are specifically Deuteronomy's requirements regarding the Canaanite populations and their worship.
5. The six-nation list echoes the traditional Canaanite peoples formula (cf. Exodus 3:8, 3:17, Deuteronomy 7:1). The phrasing is significant: Israel lives 'among' (*be-qerev*) these nations, not the reverse. As with Asher in 1:32, Israel is the minority presence in a Canaanite-dominated landscape. The conquest has not merely stalled — it has effectively reversed.
6. The three-step progression is precise: intermarriage (took/gave daughters), then idolatry (served their gods). This is exactly the sequence Deuteronomy 7:3-4 warned about: 'Do not intermarry with them... for they will turn your sons away from following me to serve other gods.' The prohibition was not ethnic prejudice but theological protection — intermarriage with Canaanites meant absorption into Canaanite religion. The text presents this as an inevitable cause-and-effect chain, not as an isolated moral failure.
7. The cycle begins for the first time in narrative form. The verb *shakhechu* ('they forgot') adds a dimension beyond active rebellion — forgetting implies the complete dissolution of covenant memory. The generation that 'did not know the LORD' (2:10) now actively forgets Him. Knowledge has become non-knowledge; memory has become oblivion.
7. *Ha-Asherot* ('the Asherahs') — wooden cult poles or stylized trees representing the Canaanite goddess Asherah, consort of El (and sometimes paired with Baal). The KJV renders this as 'groves,' which obscures the cultic object. An Asherah was a carved or living sacred pole set up beside an altar. Deuteronomy 16:21 explicitly prohibits them beside YHWH's altar.
8. *Cushan-Rishathaim* — the name appears to mean 'Cushan of double wickedness' (from *rishah*, 'wickedness,' with the dual ending *-atayim*). Most scholars consider this a pejorative Hebrew distortion of the king's actual name — the narrator mocks the oppressor by making his name an epithet of evil. The double form (*-atayim*) intensifies: not merely wicked but doubly wicked.
8. *Aram Naharayim* ('Aram of the two rivers') is the region between the Tigris and Euphrates — upper Mesopotamia. An oppressor from this distance is unusual in the Judges period, leading some scholars to emend to 'Edom' (*alef-dalet-mem* instead of *alef-reshe-mem*). However, the MT reading is retained as the received text.
8. *Va-yimkerem* ('He sold them') — the selling metaphor from 2:14 is now enacted. Israel's servitude to a foreign king is God's judicial act, not merely a military outcome.
9. *Va-yiz'qu* ('they cried out') — the cry of distress. The verb *za'aq* is the standard cry of the oppressed to God throughout the Hebrew Bible (Exodus 2:23, 3:7). It is not necessarily repentance — it is the raw cry of pain. God responds to the cry regardless of the crier's spiritual state, because the compassion described in 2:18 is triggered by suffering, not by merit.

9. Va-yaqem YHWH moshia ('the LORD raised up a deliverer') — Othniel is called moshia, from the root y-sh-a (salvation). He is the first formally narrated judge and serves as the ideal template: the cycle operates perfectly in his case — no character flaws noted, no complications, pure divine deliverance through a faithful instrument.
10. Ruach YHWH ('the Spirit of the LORD') — this is the first appearance of the Spirit empowerment formula in Judges. The Spirit 'came upon him' (hayetah alav) — the preposition al ('upon') indicates the Spirit descends on the judge from above, a temporary endowment for a specific task. Later judges will receive the Spirit with different verbs — 'clothed' (lavash, Gideon in 6:34) and 'rushed upon' (tsalach, Samson in 14:6) — each suggesting different modes of empowerment.
10. The Othniel narrative is deliberately spare — five verses from sin to deliverance. No personal drama, no character development, no dialogue. He is the template: Spirit-empowered, militarily victorious, divinely vindicated. Every subsequent judge will deviate from this template in increasingly dramatic ways.
11. Va-tishqot ha-aretz ('the land had rest') — the verb shaqat means 'to be quiet, to be at rest, to be undisturbed.' This is the goal-state of each cycle: shalom in the form of military peace. The 'forty years' is a round number conventionally representing a generation in Hebrew reckoning (cf. the wilderness generation's forty years). The cycle closes cleanly: deliverance rest death (implied) next cycle begins.
11. The terse final sentence — 'Othniel son of Kenaz died' — triggers the cycle's restart. The judge dies, and with him dies the stability he provided. The pattern announced in 2:18-19 is now enacted for the first time.
12. The second cycle begins with the formula va-yosifu ... la'asot ha-ra ('they again did the evil'). The verb yasaf ('to add, to do again') signals repetition — the cycle is explicitly acknowledged as repeating, not as a new event.
12. Va-ychazzeq YHWH et Eglon ('the LORD strengthened Eglon') — the verb chazaq (piel, 'to strengthen, to make strong') presents God as the active agent in Israel's oppression. YHWH does not merely permit Eglon's rise — He empowers it. Eglon is God's instrument of judgment, as Assyria will later be called God's 'rod of anger' (Isaiah 10:5). The name Eglon likely derives from egel ('calf') — a bovine name for the 'very fat man' of verse 17.
13. Eglon assembles a three-nation coalition: Moab, Ammon, and Amalek — all traditional enemies of Israel from the wilderness period. The Ammonites were kinsmen of Moab (both descended from Lot, Genesis 19:36-38). The Amalekites were Israel's perennial enemies (Exodus 17:8-16, Deuteronomy 25:17-19).
13. Ir ha-Temarim ('City of Palms') is Jericho (cf. 1:16). The seizure of Jericho reverses Joshua's greatest victory — the first city conquered in the promised land is now occupied by a foreign king. The narrative reversal is devastating: what Joshua won, Eglon takes.
14. Eighteen years of servitude — more than double the eight years under Cushan-Rishathaim. The escalation pattern noted in 2:19 ('more corruptly than their fathers') corresponds to longer periods of oppression. The verb avad ('served') carries the double meaning of political subjection and the involuntary service of slavery — the same verb used for Israel's servitude in Egypt.
15. Ish itter yad yemino ('a man restricted in his right hand') — the Hebrew does not say 'left-handed' but 'restricted/bound in his right hand.' This could mean left-handed by nature or disabled in the right hand. The irony is layered: Ehud is a ben-ha-Yemini ('son of the right hand' — a Benjaminite), yet he is itter ('bound/restricted') in his right hand. The tribal name and the personal trait create a wordplay on 'right' (yamin) that the narrator clearly enjoys.
15. The left-hand advantage is tactical: a left-handed man could conceal a weapon on his right thigh, where guards searching for weapons on the conventional left side would miss it. The physical trait is not incidental but integral to the deliverance plan.
15. Minchah ('tribute/gift') — the same word used for the grain offering in Leviticus 2. Israel's tribute to Eglon is an act of vassalage — they bring gifts to their overlord. The sacral overtones of the word may be intentional: Israel offers to a foreign king what should be offered to God.
16. The weapon is described with precision: cherev ('sword/dagger'), shenei feyot ('two edges/mouths' — double-edged), gomed orkhah ('a gomed in length'). The term gomed is a hapax legomenon — it appears only here in the entire Hebrew Bible. It likely refers to a short cubit or forearm-length (approximately 12-15 inches / 30-38 cm), making this a concealable dagger rather than a full sword.
16. The right thigh (yerekh yemino) is the unconventional location — warriors typically wore swords on the left hip for right-hand cross-draw. Ehud's left-handedness allows him to hide the weapon where it would not be expected and draw it with his strong hand. Every physical detail in this narrative serves the assassination plan.
17. The narrator's description — ish bari me'od ('a very fat man') — is not incidental characterization. The physical detail prepares for the graphic assassination in verses 21-22, where the fatness becomes narratively operative (the blade disappears into the flesh). The adjective bari ('fat, well-fed, robust') can be positive in agricultural contexts (fat livestock = prosperity), but here it paints Eglon as a man gorged on Israel's tribute — growing fat on what he has extracted from God's people.
18. Ehud's strategic thinking emerges: he sends away the tribute-bearers first, ensuring no witnesses and no companions who might lose nerve. The deliberate pacing — present the tribute publicly, dismiss the entourage, then return alone — reveals careful premeditation. The narrator builds suspense through procedural detail.
19. Ha-pesilim ('the carved stones/images') near Gilgal — the term pesil usually means 'carved idol' (cf. Deuteronomy 7:5, 7:25). If these are indeed idols, their location near Gilgal — the sacred site of covenant renewal (Joshua 5) — is deeply ironic. Some scholars interpret pesilim here as 'quarries' (carved rock formations), but the idolatrous reading fits the theological environment of Judges.

- 19.** Devar seter li eleikha ('I have a secret word/message for you') — Ehud's ruse exploits Eglon's curiosity. A secret message from a tribute-bearer could be intelligence about Israelite dissent, offers of alliance, or confidential information. The king's eagerness — ordering silence (has!) and dismissing all attendants — plays directly into Ehud's plan. Eglon's vanity becomes his vulnerability.
- 20.** Aliyyat ha-meqerah ('the cool upper room') — an upper-story chamber designed for ventilation and privacy. Royal residences in the ancient Near East often had elevated private chambers for the king's personal use. The detail 'which he had for himself alone' (lo levaddo) confirms the isolation Ehud needs.
- 20.** Devar Elohim li eleikha ('I have a message from God for you') — Ehud's second statement escalates from 'secret message' (v. 19) to 'message from God.' Whether Ehud is deceiving Eglon or speaking literally (the assassination IS God's message to the oppressor) is left ambiguous. Eglon's response — rising from his seat — may reflect either reverence for a divine oracle or simple courtesy for what he expects to be important revelation.
- 20.** Va-yaqom me'al ha-kiseh ('he rose from his seat') — standing to receive a divine message would be an act of deference that exposes Eglon's midsection. Every detail converges toward the assassination.
- 21.** The left-hand draw from the right thigh — the detail established in verses 15-16 now pays off narratively. The verb taq'ah ('he thrust, he drove') is forceful and sudden. The betno ('his belly') receives the blade. The narrator slows down time for the assassination, describing each physical movement with surgical precision. This is not gratuitous — it demonstrates that every detail of Ehud's preparation was purposeful.
- 22.** The Hebrew is graphically specific: gam ha-nitsav achar ha-lahav ('even the hilt after the blade') — the entire weapon, handle and all, disappears into Eglon's flesh. Va-yisgor ha-chelev be'ad ha-lahav ('the fat closed over the blade') — Eglon's obesity, introduced in verse 17, now has narrative function. The word chelev ('fat') is the same term used for the sacrificial fat offered to God in Leviticus 3:3-5 — a darkly ironic echo.
- 22.** Va-yetse ha-parshedonah — this final clause is the most debated in the chapter. Parshedonah is a hapax legomenon (appears only here). Possible meanings include: (1) excrement ('the dung came out' — a reference to Eglon's bowels releasing), (2) the blade emerged from his back ('it came out at the back'), (3) Ehud went out through a back passage or anteroom. The scatological reading (option 1) connects to the servants' assumption in verse 24 that Eglon is relieving himself. The rendering preserves the ambiguity while favoring the spatial reading.
- 23.** Ha-misderonah ('the vestibule/porch/colonnade') — another rare word whose exact architectural referent is debated. It likely describes a covered passage or anteroom between the upper chamber and the exterior. Ehud's escape route through the vestibule rather than the main entrance avoids the servants waiting outside.
- 23.** The detail of locking the doors (na'al, 'he bolted/locked') buys Ehud time — the servants will hesitate to disturb what they assume is the king's private moment (verse 24). Ehud's plan accounts for every variable: the weapon, the isolation, the escape route, and the delay.
- 24.** Mesikh hu et raglav ('he is covering his feet') — a euphemism for defecation. The idiom 'covering the feet' (from the position of the garment during squatting) appears also in 1 Samuel 24:3, where Saul enters a cave to 'cover his feet.' The servants' assumption — that the locked door means the king is using the chamber as a latrine — is both plausible (private upper rooms served multiple functions) and narratively essential: it delays their discovery of the assassination and extends Ehud's escape window.
- 25.** Va-yachilu ad bosh ('they waited until embarrassment') — the servants' dilemma is psychologically precise: they waited so long that their hesitation itself became embarrassing. The verb chul ('to wait, to writhe, to be in anguish') suggests not passive waiting but anxious anticipation. The word bosh ('shame, embarrassment') reveals their predicament — entering the king's private chamber uninvited risks their positions, but the extended silence demands action.
- 25.** The discovery scene is narrated with devastating economy: ve-hinne adoneihem nofel artsah met ('and look — their lord, fallen to the ground, dead'). The hinneh ('look!') forces the reader to see what the servants see — their master's corpse.
- 26.** The narrator returns to Ehud's perspective: ad hitmahmeham ('while they delayed') — their embarrassment was his escape window. The time the servants spent agonizing over whether to enter was exactly the time Ehud needed. He passes the pesilim (the same 'carved stones/images' of verse 19, marking the route) and reaches Se'irah, a location in the hill country of Ephraim whose exact site is unknown.
- 27.** The shofar blast is the traditional call to arms — the ram's horn sound that summons the militia. Ehud's individual assassination becomes the catalyst for a national uprising. His position 'at their head' (lifneihem, 'before them') establishes him as the military leader. The transition from lone assassin to general demonstrates how the shofet role encompasses both covert action and public leadership.
- 28.** Ehud's speech uses the divine-gift formula: natan YHWH et oyvekhem be-yedkhem ('the LORD has given your enemies into your hand'). The same language that authorized Joshua's conquest now authorizes Ehud's revolt. The strategy is sound: seizing the fords of the Jordan (ma'aberot ha-Yarden) cuts off the Moabite retreat route. Any Moabite soldiers west of the Jordan are now trapped — they cannot return home.
- 29.** The description of the fallen — kol shamen ve-khol ish chayil ('all fat/strong and all men of valor') — uses shamen ('fat, robust, strong'), connecting back to the description of their king Eglon as bari ('fat'). The echo is not coincidental: the fat king and his fat warriors are both cut down. The term ish chayil ('man of valor/capable warrior') indicates these were Moab's elite troops, not militia. The totality of the defeat — lo nimlat ish ('not a man escaped') — mirrors the totality of the fords blockade.
- 30.** Va-tikkana Moav ('Moab was subdued/humbled') — the verb kana means 'to be brought low, to be humbled, to submit.' The subjugation reverses the power relationship: where Israel served Moab for eighteen years, now Moab is under Israel's hand.

30. Eighty years of rest — the longest peace period in Judges, double the standard forty-year generation. This extended peace may reflect the thoroughness of Ehud's victory or, more likely, is a literary doubling of the conventional generation-length to signal exceptional stability.
31. Shamgar receives the briefest treatment of any deliverer — a single verse, no cycle framework, no Spirit endowment. His name is non-Israelite (possibly Hurrian), and his patronymic 'son of Anath' (ben Anat) connects him to the Canaanite warrior goddess Anath — either as a place name (Beth-Anath, cf. 1:33) or as a personal name reflecting Canaanite cultural influence. The use of a non-Israelite deliverer hints at the theological point that God can use anyone.
31. Malmad ha-baqar ('ox goad') — a long wooden prod with a metal tip used to drive cattle. As a weapon it is improvised, not military — Shamgar fights with a farming implement. This connects him to the later 'farmer-warriors' of Judges and anticipates the Philistine practice of denying Israel access to metalworking (1 Samuel 13:19-22).
31. Va-yosha gam hu et-Yisra'el ('he too delivered Israel') — the verb yosha (from y-sh-a) explicitly labels Shamgar a deliverer despite his outsider origins and unconventional methods. Deliverance in Judges comes through increasingly unexpected channels.

4

Summary: *Deborah the prophet judges Israel. She summons Barak to fight Sisera, commander of Jabin of Hazor's army. Barak refuses to go without her. Sisera's nine hundred iron chariots are defeated, and Sisera flees to the tent of Jael, who kills him with a tent peg through his temple.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is dominated by women: Deborah commands, Jael executes, and the glory Barak forfeited passes 'into the hand of a woman' (v. 9). The phrase beyad ishah is deliberately ambiguous — Barak hears it as Deborah, but the reader discovers it means Jael. Sisera's nine hundred iron chariots (v. 3) represent overwhelming technological superiority — and they become useless when God routes the army (v. 15, vayyahan, 'threw into panic'), possibly through the rainstorm described in chapter 5.*

Translation Friction: *The verb vayyahan (v. 15, 'threw into confusion/panic') is the same word used for God's intervention at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:24). We rendered it 'threw into panic' to preserve the divine-warrior theology. Jael's action (v. 21) — driving a tent peg through a sleeping man's temple — raises ethical questions the narrator does not address. We let the text stand without moral commentary, as the Hebrew does.*

Connections: *Jabin of Hazor echoes the Hazor king defeated in Joshua 11 — whether this is the same dynasty or a later one is debated. The divine-warrior intervention echoes the Red Sea (Exodus 14), the Jordan crossing (Joshua 3), and anticipates Gideon's victory (ch. 7). Jael is celebrated as 'most blessed of women' in 5:24 — the same phrase applied to Mary in Luke 1:42.*

¹The Israelites again did what was evil in the sight of the LORD, after Ehud had died. ²The LORD sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan, who reigned in Hazor. The commander of his army was Sisera, who lived in Harosheth-Hagoiim. ³The Israelites cried out to the LORD, for Sisera had nine hundred iron chariots and had harshly oppressed the Israelites for twenty years. ⁴Now Deborah, a prophetess, the wife of Lappidoth — she was judging Israel at that time. ⁵She used to sit under the Palm of Deborah, between Ramah and Bethel in the hill country of Ephraim, and the Israelites would come up to her for judgment. ⁶She sent for Barak son of Abinoam from Kedesh in Naphtali and said to him, "Has not the LORD, the God of Israel, commanded: 'Go, deploy on Mount Tabor, and take with you ten thousand men from the descendants of Naphtali and Zebulun'? ⁷I will draw Sisera, the commander of Jabin's army, with his chariots and his troops, to you at the Wadi Kishon, and I will give him into your hand.'" ⁸Barak said to her, "If you go with me, I will go. But if you will not go with me, I will not go." ⁹She said, "I will certainly go with you. However, there will be no glory for you on the road you are taking, for the LORD will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman." Then Deborah arose and went with Barak to Kedesh. ¹⁰Barak summoned Zebulun and Naphtali to Kedesh, and ten thousand men went up at his command. Deborah went up with him. ¹¹Now Heber the Kenite had separated from the Kenites — the descendants of Hobab, Moses's father-in-law — and had pitched his tent as far as the oak at Zaanannim, which is near Kedesh. ¹²When Sisera was told that Barak son of Abinoam had gone up to Mount Tabor, ¹³Sisera summoned all his chariots — nine hundred iron chariots — and all the troops who were with him, from Harosheth-Hagoiim to the Wadi Kishon. ¹⁴Deborah said to Barak, "Rise! For this is the day the LORD

has given Sisera into your hand. Has not the LORD gone out before you?" So Barak went down from Mount Tabor with ten thousand men following him. ¹⁵The LORD threw Sisera and all his chariots and all his army into confusion before Barak, striking them with the edge of the sword. Sisera leaped from his chariot and fled on foot. ¹⁶Barak pursued the chariots and the army as far as Harosheth-Hagoiim, and Sisera's entire army fell by the edge of the sword. Not a single man remained. ¹⁷Meanwhile, Sisera fled on foot to the tent of Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite, for there was peace between Jabin king of Hazor and the household of Heber the Kenite. ¹⁸Jael went out to meet Sisera and said to him, "Turn aside, my lord! Turn aside to me — do not be afraid." He turned aside to her into the tent, and she covered him with a rug. ¹⁹He said to her, "Please give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty." She opened a skin of milk, gave him a drink, and covered him again. ²⁰He said to her, "Stand at the entrance of the tent. If anyone comes and asks you, 'Is there a man here?' say, 'No.'" ²¹Jael, the wife of Heber, took a tent peg, gripped a mallet in her hand, and went to him quietly. She drove the tent peg through his temple and pinned it to the ground. He was sound asleep and exhausted. He died. ²²Just then, Barak came in pursuit of Sisera. Jael went out to meet him and said, "Come, and I will show you the man you are looking for." He went in with her, and there was Sisera, fallen dead, with the tent peg through his temple. ²³On that day God subdued Jabin king of Canaan before the Israelites. ²⁴The hand of the Israelites pressed harder and harder against Jabin king of Canaan, until they had destroyed Jabin king of Canaan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The third cycle opens with the standard formula *va-yosifu ... la'asot ha-ra* ('they again did the evil'). The causal link is explicit: *ve-Ehud met* ('and Ehud had died'). The judge's death triggers the cycle's restart — as the narrator programmatically stated in 2:19. The pattern is now firmly established, and the reader recognizes it.
2. Jabin melekh Kena'an ('Jabin king of Canaan') — a Jabin king of Hazor appears also in Joshua 11:1, where Joshua burned Hazor. Either this is a different king with the same dynastic name (Jabin may be a title, like 'Pharaoh') or the city was rebuilt after Joshua's destruction. Hazor was the largest city in Canaan — its destruction and resurgence illustrate the incomplete conquest theme.
2. Sisera (*sar tseva'o*, 'commander of his army') is the actual military power — Jabin is the political authority, but Sisera commands the iron chariots that terrify Israel. Harosheth-Hagoiim ('woodlands of the nations') was likely a site in the western Jezreel Valley, controlling the strategic pass between the coast and the central valleys.
3. *Tesha me'ot rekhev barzel* ('nine hundred iron chariots') — the number represents overwhelming military superiority. Iron chariots were the decisive weapon of lowland warfare, and Israel's hill-country infantry had no counter (cf. 1:19, where iron chariots prevented Judah from taking the valley). The twenty-year oppression is the longest yet — eight under Cushan-Rishathaim, eighteen under Eglon, now twenty under Jabin/Sisera.
3. The verb *lachat* ('to press, to oppress, to squeeze') combined with *be-chozqah* ('forcefully, harshly') intensifies the suffering. The same verb describes Egypt's oppression of Israel (Exodus 3:9).
4. Deborah holds three titles simultaneously: *ishah nevi'ah* ('a woman, a prophetess'), *eshet Lappidot* ('wife of Lappidoth'), and *shofetah et-Yisra'el* ('she was judging Israel'). She is the only judge who is also explicitly called a prophet, and the only one whose judicial authority precedes the military crisis. All other judges are raised up in response to oppression; Deborah is already in place.
4. The name Lappidot means 'torches' or 'flames.' Some scholars read *eshet Lappidot* not as 'wife of Lappidoth' (a man's name) but as 'woman of torches' — a characterization of Deborah herself as fiery or illuminating. The ambiguity is noted; the traditional reading ('wife of') is retained.
4. The participle *shofetah* ('she was judging') is feminine — the narrator uses the grammatically correct form without comment, treating Deborah's gender as a fact, not an anomaly. The text makes no apology for a woman in this role.
5. *Tomer Devorah* ('Palm of Deborah') — the palm tree is named for her, suggesting her judicial seat was well-known. The location between Ramah and Bethel places her near the ancient sanctuary sites of central Ephraim. The practice of sitting under a specific tree for judgment evokes the patriarchal model (Abraham at Mamre's oaks, Genesis 18:1) and anticipates Samuel's circuit-judging (1 Samuel 7:16-17).
5. *La-mishpat* ('for judgment') — Deborah's judicial function is genuine legal arbitration, not merely the military deliverance role. She is the only judge in the book who actually judges in the courtroom sense — hearing cases and rendering verdicts. This distinguishes her from the other *shofetim*, who are primarily military deliverers.
6. Deborah speaks as a prophet relaying divine command — *ha-lo tsivvah YHWH* ('Has not the LORD commanded?'). The rhetorical question format implies Barak already knows the command; Deborah is reminding him, not informing him. Her authority is prophetic — she transmits God's battle plan, including the specific location (Mount Tabor, overlooking the Jezreel Valley), the troop count (ten thousand), and the tribal composition (Naphtali and Zebulun, the northern tribes nearest Sisera's base).

6. The verb *mashakh* ('draw, deploy, march') has military connotations — it suggests a deliberate, ordered movement of troops to a strategic position. Mount Tabor's elevation (approximately 1,900 feet) gave infantry an advantage over chariots, which could not operate on the steep, forested slopes.
7. God speaks through Deborah using the first person: *u-mashakhti* ('I will draw') and *u-netattihu* ('I will give him'). The divine strategy is to lure Sisera's chariots into the Kishon Valley, where the Wadi Kishon (*nachal Qishon*) flows. As the Song of Deborah will reveal (5:21), the wadi flooded, turning the valley into a chariot-destroying quagmire. God weaponizes the terrain against the military technology that terrifies Israel.
7. The promise *untattihu be-yadekha* ('I will give him into your hand') is the standard divine victory formula. The plan is God's, the execution is Barak's, and the outcome is guaranteed before the battle begins.
8. Barak's conditional refusal — *im telkhi immi ve-halakhti* ('if you go with me, I will go') — is the first sign of a less-than-ideal deliverer. Othniel needed no such condition; Ehud acted alone. Barak requires the prophet's physical presence as a guarantee of divine presence. Whether this reflects lack of faith, military pragmatism (wanting the prophetic oracle accessible in real-time), or personal deference to Deborah is debated. The narrator does not condemn Barak explicitly, but the consequence in verse 9 suggests the condition comes at a cost.
9. Deborah's prophecy — *be-yad ishah yimkor YHWH et Sisera* ('the LORD will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman') — is deliberately ambiguous at this point. The reader assumes she means herself, but the narrative will redirect: it is Jael, not Deborah, who kills Sisera. The verb *makhar* ('to sell') echoes 2:14 and 3:8, where God 'sold' Israel to oppressors; now God 'sells' the oppressor to a woman.
9. *Lo tihyeh tif'artkha* ('there will be no glory for you') — *tiferet* means 'glory, honor, beauty, adornment.' Barak's conditional obedience costs him the honor of the kill. The military victory remains his, but the decisive act — the death of the enemy commander — will belong to someone else. The narrative logic is clear: hesitant faith still receives deliverance but not full credit.
10. *Va-yaz'eq Baraq* ('Barak summoned') — the verb *za'aq* means 'to cry out, to summon.' It is the same verb used for Israel's cry to God in the distress formula (3:9, 3:15). Here Barak 'cries out' to the tribes as God 'cries out' are cried out to God — the deliverer mediates between the divine command and the tribal response.
10. *Be-raglav* ('at his feet') — an idiom meaning 'under his command, following his lead.' The ten thousand comply with the number specified in Deborah's oracle (verse 6). The human response matches the divine plan exactly.
11. This seemingly digressive genealogical note is narratively essential — it positions Heber's tent (and therefore Jael's tent) near the battlefield. The Kenites were allied with Israel through the Moses connection (cf. 1:16), but Heber has 'separated' (*nifrad*) from the main clan. His isolation near Kedesh — close to Jabin's territory — will make his tent a plausible refuge for a fleeing Sisera.
11. *Elon be-Tsa'ananim* ('the oak at Zaanannim') is a landmark that fixes the location. The term *elon* ('great tree, oak, terebinth') marks a notable tree — the ancient Near Eastern equivalent of a named geographic feature.
12. Intelligence reaches Sisera that Barak has taken the high ground at Tabor. From Sisera's perspective, this is an opportunity — an Israelite force concentrated on a single mountaintop is an army that can be pinned down and starved out, or destroyed when it descends to the plain where his chariots dominate. He does not know he is being drawn (*mashakh*, verse 7) into a divine trap.
13. Sisera deploys his full force to the Kishon Valley — exactly where Deborah's prophecy said he would be drawn (verse 7). The narrator creates dramatic irony: the reader knows this is God's trap; Sisera thinks it is his tactical advantage. The nine hundred chariots, repeated from verse 3, emphasize the overwhelming odds that God will overturn.
14. Deborah gives the battle command — *Qum!* ('Rise!') — speaking as the prophetic voice of God on the battlefield. Her question *ha-lo YHWH yatsa lefanekha* ('Has not the LORD gone out before you?') uses the military idiom of God 'going out before' the army (cf. Deuteronomy 20:4, 2 Samuel 5:24). God leads the charge; Israel follows.
14. Barak descends from Mount Tabor — the terrain advantage is abandoned in faith. Infantry charging downhill into a chariot force on level ground would normally be suicidal. The act is either extreme faith or prophetic obedience — either way, it requires trusting the divine guarantee over military logic.
15. *Va-yaham YHWH* ('the LORD threw into confusion/routed') — the verb *hamam* is the divine-panic verb used for God's supernatural intervention in battle (cf. Exodus 14:24 at the Red Sea, Joshua 10:10 at Gibeon, 1 Samuel 7:10 against the Philistines). The panic is divine in origin — it is not Barak's tactical skill but God's intervention that breaks Sisera's force.
15. The Song of Deborah (5:21) reveals what the prose account leaves implicit: the Wadi Kishon flooded, turning the valley into mud that immobilized the iron chariots. The chariots — the weapon that terrorized Israel for twenty years — become death traps in the sudden torrent. Sisera's dismount (*va-yered me'al ha-merkavah*, 'he descended from the chariot') and flight on foot (*va-yanas be-raglav*) is the ultimate reversal: the chariot commander runs like a foot soldier.
16. The pursuit extends to Sisera's base at Harosheth-Hagoiim — the complete destruction of his military force. *Lo nish'ar ad echad* ('not one remained') is the formula of total annihilation, matching the completeness of Ehud's victory at the Jordan fords (3:29). The chariot force that seemed invincible is obliterated.
17. Sisera's flight to Jael's tent makes strategic sense: *shalom* ('peace') existed between Jabin and Heber's household. Sisera expects shelter from an ally. The note about Heber's separation from the other Kenites (verse 11) now acquires its full significance — Heber has aligned with Canaan, not Israel. Sisera relies on this alliance when he enters Jael's tent.

17. The mention of shalom here is laden with irony — the 'peace' Sisera seeks in Jael's tent will become his death. The word shalom, which should mean wholeness and well-being, is about to be weaponized.
18. Jael's hospitality language — *surah adoni surah elai al tira* ('turn aside, my lord, turn aside to me, do not fear') — is the language of sanctuary and protection. She addresses him as *adoni* ('my lord'), offering deference and safety. The repeated imperative (*surah, surah*) is insistent, welcoming. Every word communicates safety. Every word is deception.
18. *Va-tekhasehu ba-semikha* ('she covered him with a rug/blanket') — the act of covering is a hospitality gesture (warmth, concealment from pursuers) that will be weaponized: the covering that protects him also prevents him from seeing the killing blow. The *semikha* is a thick covering or rug — the exact item is uncertain but its function is clear.
19. Sisera asks for water; Jael gives him milk (*chalav*, likely curdled goat's milk or yogurt). The upgrade from water to milk is a hospitality excess — she offers more than requested, deepening his sense of safety and her role as gracious host. The milk may also have a sedative effect — warm curdled milk induces drowsiness, and Sisera is already exhausted from battle and flight.
19. *Va-tekhasehu* ('she covered him') — again. The covering is repeated for emphasis: Sisera is wrapped, concealed, and lulled. Each act of apparent care moves him closer to vulnerability.
20. Sisera gives orders to Jael — he assumes the host-guest power dynamic favors him as the warrior lord. The request to stand guard and lie for him further embeds him in her hospitality: he trusts her not only for shelter and sustenance but for active protection. His vulnerability is now complete. The irony is that he asks her to deny his presence — and by killing him, she will make the denial true.
21. The killing is described with deliberate, almost clinical precision: *yeted ha-ohel* ('tent peg'), *maqquevet* ('mallet/hammer'), *ba-la'at* ('quietly, stealthily'), *be-raqqato* ('through his temple'). The *raqqah* is the temple — the thinnest part of the skull. The verb *titsna ch* ('she drove/sank it') is forceful; *va-titsnach ba-aretz* ('it sank into the ground') means the peg went through his skull and into the earth beneath him.
21. Jael's weapon choice is significant: the tent peg and mallet were women's tools in nomadic culture — it was women who set up and took down the tents. She kills with the implements of her daily domestic life. The warrior who fled a battlefield is destroyed by a homemaker's equipment.
21. The narrative holds its judgment: no divine commentary, no angelic approval, no prophetic sanction. Deborah's Song (5:24-27) will celebrate Jael, but the prose account simply reports what happened. The moral complexity — betrayal of hospitality laws, killing a sleeping man, violation of the guest-host covenant — is left for the reader to process.
22. Deborah's prophecy from verse 9 is fulfilled: *be-yad ishah yimkor YHWH et Sisera* ('the LORD will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman'). Barak arrives to find his quarry already dead — the glory of the kill belongs to Jael. The repetition of the tent peg image (*ve-ha-yated be-raqqato*, 'the peg in his temple') forces the reader to see the gruesome scene through Barak's eyes.
22. Jael's invitation to Barak — *lekh ve-ar'ekka* ('come and I will show you') — mirrors her invitation to Sisera in verse 18 (*surah elai*, 'turn aside to me'). She meets both men with the same welcoming initiative, but the outcomes could not be more different.
23. *Va-yakhna Elohim* ('God subdued') — the narrator uses *Elohim* rather than *YHWH* here, broadening the statement from covenant-specific to universal. The verb *kana* ('to subdue, to humble') marks the reversal: the oppressor who lorded over Israel for twenty years is now brought low. Note that Jabin the political authority is subdued — Sisera the military commander is dead. Both power structures collapse simultaneously.
24. *Va-telekh yad Bnei-Yisra'el halokh ve-qashah* ('the hand of the Israelites went, going and hardening') — the infinitive absolute construction (*halokh ve-qashah*) conveys continuous intensification. Israel's power grew progressively until Jabin was completely destroyed (*hikhritu*, 'they cut off'). The chapter ends not with a peace formula (that comes in 5:31) but with the complete elimination of the Canaanite threat — the political authority that oppressed Israel is terminated.

5

Summary: The Song of Deborah and Barak celebrates the victory over Sisera in some of the oldest poetry in the Hebrew Bible. The song names tribes who fought and shames those who stayed home, culminating in Jael's killing of Sisera and his mother's agonized vigil at the window.

*What Makes This Remarkable: The poem's most devastating literary move is its ending: it cuts from Jael's tent to Sisera's mother peering through the window lattice, wondering why her son's chariot is late. Her ladies reassure her — 'surely they are dividing the spoil, a womb or two for each man' (v. 30). The Hebrew word for 'womb' (*racham*) is used for 'girl' as spoil — reducing women to body parts. The dramatic irony is total: while the mother imagines her son victorious over women, he lies dead at a woman's feet.*

Translation Friction: This chapter contains some of the most difficult Hebrew in the entire Bible. Verse 2 (bifro'a pera'ot) has been translated as 'when leaders led,' 'when hair was worn long,' 'when warriors let hair loose,' and 'when anarchy broke out.' Verse 7 (perazon) might mean 'village life,' 'warriors,' or 'peasantry.' We made choices and documented them, but the reader should know that this poem pushes the limits of what scholarship can confidently determine.

Connections: The theophany (vv. 4-5) — God marching from Seir with the earth trembling — parallels Deuteronomy 33:2, Psalm 68:7-8, and Habakkuk 3:3. The stars fighting from their courses (v. 20) connects to Joshua 10:12-13. The tribal muster creates a precedent for evaluating national covenant participation. The closing prayer — 'may those who love Him be like the sun rising in its full strength' — anticipates Malachi 4:2.

¹On that day Deborah and Barak son of Abinoam sang this song:

²When leaders led in Israel,
when the people volunteered willingly —
bless the LORD!

³Hear, O kings!
Give ear, O rulers!
I — I will sing to the LORD,
I will make music to the LORD, the God of Israel.

⁴LORD, when you went out from Seir,
when you marched from the fields of Edom,
the earth trembled,
the heavens also poured down,
the clouds poured down water.

⁵Mountains quaked before the LORD —
this one, Sinai — before the LORD, the God of Israel.

⁶In the days of Shamgar son of Anath,
in the days of Jael,
the roads were deserted,
and travelers walked by winding paths.

⁷Village life ceased,
it ceased in Israel,
until I arose — Deborah —
until I arose, a mother in Israel.

⁸They chose new gods —
then war was at the gates.
Was there a shield or a spear to be seen
among forty thousand in Israel?

⁹My heart goes out to the commanders of Israel,
to those who volunteered among the people.
Bless the LORD!

¹⁰You who ride on tawny donkeys,
you who sit on rich saddle cloths,

and you who walk along the road — speak up!

¹¹To the sound of musicians at the watering places,
 there they recount the righteous acts of the LORD,
 the righteous acts for His villagers in Israel.
 Then the people of the LORD went down to the gates.

¹²Awake, awake, Deborah!
 Awake, awake, sing a song!
 Arise, Barak!
 Lead away your captives, son of Abinoam!

¹³Then down marched the remnant against the nobles;
 the people of the LORD marched down for me against the mighty.

¹⁴From Ephraim came those rooted in the valley against Amalek;
 behind you, Benjamin, among your kinsmen!
 From Machir came down the commanders,
 and from Zebulun those who carry the marshal's staff.

¹⁵The chiefs of Issachar were with Deborah;
 as was Issachar, so was Barak —
 sent into the valley at his heels.
 Among the clans of Reuben
 there were great searchings of heart.

¹⁶Why did you stay among the sheepfolds,
 listening to the whistling for the flocks?
 Among the clans of Reuben
 there were great searchings of heart.

¹⁷Gilead stayed beyond the Jordan;
 and Dan — why did he linger by the ships?
 Asher sat at the coast of the sea
 and settled by his harbors.

¹⁸Zebulun — a people who risked their lives to the death,
 and Naphtali, on the heights of the field.

¹⁹Kings came, they fought;
 then the kings of Canaan fought
 at Taanach, by the waters of Megiddo.
 No plunder of silver did they take.

²⁰From heaven the stars fought;
 from their courses they fought against Sisera.

²¹The Wadi Kishon swept them away,
 the ancient wadi, the Wadi Kishon.
 March on, my soul, with strength!

²²Then the horses' hooves pounded —
galloping, galloping, his mighty steeds!

²³"Curse Meroz!" says the angel of the LORD.
"Curse bitterly its inhabitants,
because they did not come to the help of the LORD,
to the help of the LORD against the mighty."

²⁴Most blessed of women is Jael,
the wife of Heber the Kenite —
most blessed of women in the tent!

²⁵He asked for water — she gave him milk;
in a lordly bowl she brought him curds.

²⁶Her hand reached for the tent peg,
her right hand for the worker's mallet.
She struck Sisera,
she crushed his head,
she shattered and pierced his temple.

²⁷Between her feet he sank, he fell, he lay still;
between her feet he sank, he fell.
Where he sank,
there he fell — destroyed.

²⁸Through the window she peered —
the mother of Sisera cried out through the lattice:
"Why is his chariot so long in coming?
Why do the hoofbeats of his chariots delay?"

²⁹The wisest of her ladies answer her;
indeed, she repeats their words to herself:

³⁰"Are they not finding and dividing the plunder? —
a womb, two wombs, for every warrior;
plunder of dyed cloth for Sisera,
plunder of dyed embroidery,
two pieces of embroidery for the neck of the plunderer."

³¹So may all your enemies perish, O LORD!
But may those who love Him be like the sun
rising in its full strength.
And the land had rest for forty years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Va-tashar Devorah ('then Deborah sang') — the feminine singular verb suggests Deborah is the primary singer, with Barak joining (u-Varaq). The Song of Deborah is one of the oldest poems in the Hebrew Bible — linguistic analysis suggests a composition date as early as the 12th-11th century BCE, making it roughly contemporary with the events it describes. The archaic Hebrew grammar, vocabulary, and spelling throughout this chapter set it apart from the prose narrative of chapter 4.

2. The opening couplet is textually difficult. Bi-froa pera'ot be-Yisra'el — the root para can mean 'to lead, to let loose, to let hair hang free' (as warriors letting hair loose before battle), or 'to avenge.' The translation 'when leaders led' follows the reading that sees pera'ot as a leadership term. The parallelism with be-hitnaddev am ('when the people volunteered') creates a dual picture: leaders leading and people willing. Both together produce a moment worthy of blessing the LORD.
2. The three-line structure (tricolon) with the climactic barekhu YHWH ('bless the LORD!') establishes the hymnic tone. This is worship poetry — the military victory is subsumed into praise.
3. The summons to kings and rozenim ('rulers, princes') sets the cosmic stage — this is not a private celebration but a declaration before the nations. The double anokhi ('I — I') is emphatic first-person: Deborah asserts her role as the singer with deliberate force. The parallel verbs ashirah ('I will sing') and azammer ('I will make music') are standard praise-poetry vocabulary, establishing this as a hymn to YHWH, not a human war ballad.
4. The theophany — God marching from Seir/Edom — describes YHWH coming from the south, from the direction of Sinai. This is the 'Divine Warrior' tradition: God marches into battle from His mountain, and creation responds with cosmic upheaval. The same tradition appears in Deuteronomy 33:2, Habakkuk 3:3, and Psalm 68:7-8. The trembling earth and pouring rain are not mere weather but the physical response of creation to God's warlike approach.
4. The geographic movement from Seir/Edom northward to the Jezreel Valley where the battle occurred creates a sweeping visual: God traverses the entire land to fight for Israel. Erets ra'ashah ('the earth trembled') and shamayim natafu ('the heavens dripped/poured') create the earth-heaven axis of cosmic response.
5. Harim nazelu ('mountains flowed/quaked') — the verb nazal means 'to flow, to stream, to trickle down.' Mountains dissolving or streaming before God is the most extreme theophanic imagery: even the most permanent features of creation become fluid in God's presence. The reference to Sinai (zeh Sinai, 'this one, Sinai' or 'that Sinai') connects the Kishon battlefield to the foundational covenant event. The God who shook Sinai now shakes the Jezreel Valley — the same power, the same God.
5. The phrase zeh Sinai is grammatically unusual — it may be an archaic relative construction meaning 'the One of Sinai' (referring to God) rather than 'this Sinai' (referring to the mountain). Both readings connect the battle to Sinai theology.
6. The song shifts from theophany to lament, describing conditions before the deliverance. Chadelu orachot ('roads ceased/were abandoned') — the main trade routes were too dangerous for civilian travel due to Canaanite military control. Travelers took orachot aqalqallot ('crooked/winding paths') — back roads and detours to avoid Canaanite patrols and checkpoints.
6. The mention of Jael alongside Shamgar (not Deborah or Barak) is striking — Jael's era is characterized by road insecurity. This is the 'before' portrait that makes the 'after' of deliverance meaningful. The disruption of commerce and travel represents a society living in fear.
7. Chadelu ferazon ('village life ceased / open villages ceased') — perazon can mean 'peasantry, village life, open settlements.' Rural communities could not survive without military protection — they were abandoned as populations fled to walled cities. The collapse of village life indicates a society under siege.
7. Ad sha-qamti Devorah ('until I arose, Deborah') — the first-person voice claims the pivotal role directly. The title em be-Yisra'el ('a mother in Israel') is extraordinary — Deborah identifies herself not as a warrior or judge but as a 'mother.' The maternal metaphor conveys nurture, protection, and the restoration of communal life. A mother in Israel is one who makes life possible again for her children.
8. The causal logic is compressed and devastating: Israel chose new gods (elohim chadashim, 'new gods' — the modifier 'new' mocks the Canaanite deities as novelties compared to the eternal YHWH), and the direct consequence was war at the gates (lachim she'arim — fighting at the city gates, the last line of urban defense). Simultaneously, Israel was disarmed: no shield (magen) or spear (romach) among forty thousand. Whether the disarmament was Canaanite policy (cf. the Philistine weapon monopoly in 1 Samuel 13:19-22) or metaphorical (no one willing to fight), the effect is total vulnerability.
9. Libbi le-choqeqi Yisra'el ('my heart is toward the commanders/legislators of Israel') — choqeq can mean 'commander, lawgiver, one who decrees.' Deborah's heart is moved by leaders who stepped forward. The parallel ha-mitnaddevim ba-am ('those who volunteered among the people') echoes verse 2 — the willingness theme returns. The refrain barekhu YHWH ('bless the LORD') recurs, framing the song's structure.
10. Three social classes are summoned to praise: riders of atonot tsehorot ('tawny/white donkeys' — the donkeys of the wealthy and nobility), yoshevei al middin ('those who sit on saddle cloths/judgment seats' — either wealthy riders or judicial officials), and holkhei al derekh ('walkers on the road' — common travelers). The entire social spectrum is called to testify. The restored road safety of verse 6-7 is now celebrated — those who walk the roads (previously too dangerous) can now travel freely.
11. Mi-qol mechatsetim ('from the sound of those dividing/distributing' or 'musicians/singers') — the exact meaning is debated but the scene is communal celebration at watering places (mashabbim), the village gathering points. Tsidqot YHWH ('righteous acts of the LORD') — the plural of tsedaqah used for God's saving interventions. Here God's military deliverance is categorized as a righteous act — an act of justice and covenant faithfulness, not merely military power.
11. Am YHWH ('the people of the LORD') — Israel is identified by covenant relationship, not ethnic or political terms. The descent 'to the gates' (la-she'arim) reverses verse 8's 'war at the gates': where once the gates were besieged, now the people freely enter and exit.

12. The fourfold uri ('awake!') is the song's climactic summons — Deborah calls herself to action. The imperative repetition creates rhythmic intensity. The parallel pair: Deborah is called to sing (dabberi shir, 'speak/utter a song'), Barak is called to act (qum, 'arise' — the same command Deborah gave him in 4:14). Their roles are distinct and complementary: she speaks, he leads.
12. Sheveh shevyekha ('lead captive your captives') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis — take captivity itself captive. The phrase will be echoed in Psalm 68:18, which Paul applies christologically in Ephesians 4:8.
13. This verse is among the most textually difficult in the Hebrew Bible. Az yerad sarid le-addirim ('then the remnant descended to/against the nobles') — the meaning depends on whether the 'remnant' is Israel's surviving population marching against Canaanite nobility, or whether addirim ('nobles') refers to Israel's own leaders. The rendering follows the reading that sees Israel's reduced remnant taking the offensive against superior Canaanite forces — a picture of the weak overcoming the mighty through divine power.
14. The tribal muster roll begins — Deborah names the tribes that came and those that did not. Ephraim, Benjamin, Machir (a Manasseh sub-clan), and Zebulun are listed as participants. Shorsham ba-Amaleq ('their root in Amalek' or 'rooted against Amalek') is obscure — it may refer to Ephraim's territory formerly held by Amalekites (cf. 12:15).
14. Mi-Zevulun moshkhim be-shevet sofer ('from Zebulun those who draw with the staff of the writer/marshal') — the shevet sofer may be a mustering staff, a commander's baton, or a scribal tool. The image suggests organized military leadership, not just warriors but officers who marshal troops.
15. Issachar is praised for loyalty — its chiefs stood with Deborah and Barak. But the tone shifts abruptly at Reuben: bi-felaggot Re'uven gedolim chiqeqei lev ('among the divisions/clans of Reuben, great searchings/resolves of heart'). The 'searchings of heart' (chiqeqei lev) is ambivalent — it could be deliberation, indecision, or anguish about whether to join. The next verse (16) will make clear that Reuben's 'searching' produced no action. They deliberated but did not come.
16. The accusation takes the form of a rhetorical question: lammah yashavta bein ha-mishpetayim ('why did you sit between the sheepfolds?'). Reuben, a pastoral tribe east of the Jordan, chose tending flocks over joining the battle. Sheriqot adarim ('whistlings/pipings for the flocks') is the pastoral idyll Reuben preferred to the battlefield. The repeated refrain 'great searchings of heart' (now chiqrei lev, a variant spelling) frames Reuben's deliberation as culpable — they considered the call and declined.
16. The poetry's accusatory tone anticipates the more bitter rebuke of Meroz in verse 23. Deborah's song is not only praise for the willing but judgment against the unwilling.
17. Three more non-participants are named: Gilead (the Transjordanian tribes — Gad and eastern Manasseh), Dan, and Asher. Each is characterized by what they chose instead of battle. Gilead stayed east of the Jordan. Dan lingered by ships (oniyyot) — suggesting Dan at this period had a coastal or riverine trade interest. Asher sat by the seashore (chof yammim) and at his harbors (mifrasav, 'breaches, landing places'). Each tribe chose economic self-interest over covenant solidarity.
17. The geography tells the theological story: the tribes most distant from the battle (eastern and far-northern/coastal) are the ones who abstained. Physical distance from the crisis correlates with spiritual indifference.
18. After the catalog of abstainers, the song returns to praise. Zebulun and Naphtali — the two tribes Deborah specifically called (4:6) — receive the highest commendation: am cheref nafsho lamut ('a people who scorned death / risked their lives to death'). The verb charaf means 'to reproach, to scorn, to defy' — they defied death itself. This is the counterpoint to Reuben's 'searchings of heart': while some deliberated, Zebulun and Naphtali acted.
18. Al meromei sadeh ('on the heights of the field') — they took the exposed, dangerous positions on the high ground. The contrast between these warrior-tribes and the coastal/pastoral non-combatants is absolute.
19. The battle location is specified poetically: Taanach and the waters of Megiddo — the Kishon drainage area in the Jezreel Valley. The final line is darkly ironic: betsa kesef lo laqachu ('spoils of silver they did not take') — the Canaanite kings came expecting profit from their military superiority but gained nothing. The verse may also be read as the Israelites gaining no silver plunder — the victory was divine, not economic.
20. Min shamayim nilchamu ('from heaven they fought') — the cosmic dimension of the battle. The stars themselves join the war against Sisera. Ha-kokhavim mi-mesilotam ('the stars from their courses/paths') — the celestial bodies are marshaled as divine warriors. This is not astrology but theophanic poetry: all creation is conscripted into God's army. The language echoes the holy-war tradition where nature fights for Israel (cf. Joshua 10:11 — hailstones; Exodus 14:24-25 — the sea).
20. The astronomical language may also encode a meteorological reality: a sudden storm (the stars 'fighting' = a violent weather event) caused the Kishon to flood (verse 21), destroying the chariots. Cosmic poetry and physical causation converge.
21. Nachal Qishon gerafam ('the Wadi Kishon swept them away') — the verb garaf ('to sweep away, to carry off') reveals the mechanism of the divine victory that the prose account (4:15) left implicit. The Kishon flooded — the seasonal wadi became a raging torrent that swept Sisera's iron chariots and their crews downstream. The chariots that terrorized Israel for twenty years were destroyed by a flash flood.
21. Nachal qedumim ('the ancient wadi') — the epithet 'ancient' (qedumim) gives the Kishon a personality: this is an old waterway with a long history, now awakened to fight for God. The self-exhortation tidrekhi nafshi oz ('march on, my soul, with strength!') is Deborah addressing herself mid-song — a burst of warrior confidence that breaks the descriptive narrative.

22. Az halmu iqqevei sus ('then the hooves of the horses pounded/were smashed') — the scene is auditory: the thunder of horse hooves as Sisera's cavalry tries to flee the flooding battlefield. Mi-daharot daharot abbirav ('from the galloping, the galloping of his mighty ones/steeds') — the repeated daharot creates an onomatopoeic effect mimicking the rhythmic pounding of hooves. The sound of galloping horses in panicked flight is the soundtrack of Sisera's defeat.
23. The curse on Meroz is the harshest judgment in the song. Malakh YHWH ('the angel of the LORD') pronounces the curse — the same figure who indicted Israel at Bochim (2:1-5) now curses a specific town. Meroz's exact location is unknown — it may have been so thoroughly cursed that it was obliterated. The double curse (oru ... oru aror) is intensive.
23. The charge is stunning: lo va'u le-ezrat YHWH ('they did not come to the help of the LORD'). The language implies that God Himself needed help — not in the sense of divine weakness, but in the covenant obligation of partnership. YHWH fights for Israel, and Israel is expected to fight with YHWH. Refusing to join the battle is refusing to help God. The concept is radical: human participation in divine warfare is not optional but covenantally obligated.
24. Tevorakh min-nashim Ya'el ('blessed above women is Jael') — the superlative blessing is the song's highest honor. The phrase min-nashim ba-ohel ('above women in the tent') may mean 'among tent-dwelling women' (nomadic women) or may contrast Jael with women of the settled cities. The blessing formula echoes the blessing on Mary in Luke 1:42 ('blessed are you among women'), creating an intertextual echo across testaments.
24. The immediate juxtaposition of Meroz's curse (v. 23) and Jael's blessing (v. 24) creates a moral spectrum: the coward is cursed, the brave is blessed. Jael's blessing is explicitly connected to her act of killing Sisera — the song celebrates what the prose narrative reported without comment.
25. The poetic retelling of 4:19 intensifies the hospitality: mayim sha'al, chalav natanah ('water he asked, milk she gave') — the upgrade from water to milk signals generosity beyond obligation. Be-sefel addirim ('in a bowl of nobles/a lordly bowl') — the vessel itself is dignified, fit for royalty. Chem'ah ('curds, cream, butter') is a delicacy. Every detail of the hospitality is heightened in the poetic telling, making the reversal that follows even more devastating.
26. The poetic account of the killing is more elaborate than the prose version (4:21). The poetry uses slow-motion technique: yadah la-yated tishlachnah ('her hand to the peg she sent') vi-yminah le-halmut amelim ('her right hand to the toilers' mallet') ve-halemah Sisera ('she struck Sisera') machaqah rosho ('she crushed his head') u-machatsh ve-chalefah raqqato ('she shattered and pierced his temple'). Each verb intensifies: struck crushed shattered pierced.
26. The triple parallelism of verbs (machaqah, machatsh, chalefah) creates a rhythmic hammering effect in the Hebrew — the sound of the poetry mimics the act it describes. This is masterful ancient poetry: form and content are unified.
27. Bein ragleha kara nafal shakhav ('between her feet he sank, he fell, he lay') — the three verbs (kara, nafal, shakhav) replay the death in excruciating slow motion. The repetition is deliberate and relentless: the poetry refuses to let the listener move past the moment. 'Between her feet' (bein ragleha) carries unmistakable overtones of sexual dominance — the great warrior ends at the feet of a woman, in a posture of complete subjugation.
27. The word shadud ('destroyed, despoiled, plundered') is the final word — Sisera, the plunderer of Israel, is himself destroyed. The poetic justice is complete: the one who plundered is plundered, the one who enslaved falls at a woman's feet. The verse's hypnotic repetition functions as a kind of incantation — the death is enacted again and again in the poetry.
28. The song's most devastating poetic move: it shifts from the battlefield to Sisera's home, to his mother watching from the window. Be'ad ha-challon nishqefah ('through the window she peered') — the verb shaqaf ('to look down, to peer out') suggests anxious watching from above. Va-teyabev ('she cried out') — the verb yabav is rare and suggests a high-pitched, wailing cry. Em Sisera ('the mother of Sisera') — she is not named, only defined by her relationship to the dead man she doesn't yet know is dead.
28. The pathos is extraordinary and deliberate. Deborah's song humanizes the enemy at the moment of his destruction. Sisera's mother becomes a universal figure — any mother waiting for a son who will never return. The dramatic irony (the audience knows what she does not) creates a compassion that coexists with the celebration of victory. This is among the most psychologically sophisticated moments in ancient literature.
29. Chakhmot saroteiha ('the wisest of her noble ladies') — Sisera's mother is surrounded by attendants who offer reassurance. The irony deepens: the 'wisdom' (chakhmah) of the court ladies is about to produce a grotesquely wrong explanation for Sisera's delay. Their confident answer (verse 30) will make the truth — that Sisera is dead — even more brutal by contrast.
29. Af hi tashiv amareiha lah ('indeed, she returns her words to herself') — she repeats their reassurance as self-comfort, trying to convince herself that the explanation is true. The psychological portrait is painfully precise.
30. The court ladies' 'wise' answer is the song's most cutting irony. Racham rachamatayim le-rosh gevev ('a womb, two wombs, for each warrior') — the Hebrew racham means 'womb' and is used here as a dehumanizing synecdoche: the captured women are reduced to their reproductive organs. The noble ladies casually assume that Sisera's delay is because he is busy raping captive women. They are not shocked by this — they expect and approve it as a warrior's perquisite.
30. The poet forces the listener to hear how the enemy dehumanizes Israelite women — and then to recall that Sisera himself is now dead at the feet of a woman. The ironic reversal is total: the man whose mother assumes he is violating women has been killed by a woman. The embroidered cloth (tseva'im riqmah) and luxury goods they imagine Sisera collecting will never arrive. The 'plunder' fantasy is a fantasy of a world that no longer exists.

30. This verse is among the most discussed in feminist biblical scholarship. The poet's decision to include the enemy mother's perspective — and to give her court ladies this particular speech — is a sophisticated literary choice that simultaneously exposes the brutality of warfare and celebrates its subversion by women (Jael, Deborah) who act rather than wait.
31. The song's closing is a prayer — *ken yovedu khol oyvekha YHWH* ('so may all your enemies perish, O LORD'). The imprecation is not personal vengeance but covenant theology: God's enemies are those who oppose His purposes for Israel. The counter-blessing — *ve-ohavav ke-tset ha-shemesh bi-gvurato* ('may those who love Him be like the sun going forth in its might') — is the most beautiful image in the song. The sun rising in full strength (*gevurah*, 'power, might') is the image of irresistible, warming, life-giving force. Israel, delivered and faithful, is as unstoppable as dawn.
31. The final prose line — *va-tishqot ha-aretz arba'im shanah* ('the land had rest forty years') — closes the cycle with the standard peace formula. The forty-year rest matches Othniel's (3:11). The Song of Deborah, for all its cosmic scope and psychological depth, resolves into the same formulaic peace that every judge's deliverance produces. The pattern holds.

6

Summary: *Midian oppresses Israel for seven years, devastating their crops. God calls Gideon — who is threshing wheat in a winepress to hide it — as deliverer. Gideon tears down his father's Baal altar at night and receives the fleece sign.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The angel greets Gideon as gibbor hechayil ('mighty warrior,' v. 12) while he hides in a winepress. The irony is intentional: the deliverer is introduced as a coward. Gideon's objection — 'my clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house' (v. 15) — echoes Moses's and Saul's reluctance. God consistently chooses the insufficient. Gideon's night raid on the Baal altar (vv. 25-32) earns him the name Jerubbaal ('let Baal contend') — if Baal is real, let him fight his own battles.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase hineni magia (v. 37, 'I am laying') uses a rare verb for placing the fleece — the precise action matters because Gideon is testing God, a posture the text neither condemns nor endorses. The phrase shalom lekha (v. 23, 'peace to you') is God's reassurance after Gideon realizes he has seen the angel — we preserved shalom as 'peace' in this greeting context.*

Connections: *Gideon's calling echoes Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3-4) — both encounter God unexpectedly, both object, both receive signs. The Baal-altar destruction anticipates Elijah's contest on Carmel (1 Kings 18). The winepress hiding mirrors the larger theme of Israel cowering before oppressors until God intervenes. Gideon's family dynamics preview Abimelech's murderous ambition (ch. 9).*

¹The Israelites did what was evil in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD gave them into the hand of Midian for seven years. ²The hand of Midian was heavy on Israel. Because of Midian, the Israelites made for themselves the tunnels in the mountains, the caves, and the strongholds. ³Whenever Israel sowed, Midian would come up, along with Amalek and the people of the east, and attack them. ⁴They would camp against them and destroy the produce of the land as far as Gaza, leaving no food in Israel — no sheep, no ox, no donkey. ⁵For they would come up with their livestock and their tents, arriving like locusts in number — they and their camels were beyond counting — and they invaded the land to devastate it. ⁶Israel was brought very low because of Midian, and the Israelites cried out to the LORD. ⁷When the Israelites cried out to the LORD because of Midian, ⁸the LORD sent a prophet to the Israelites. He said to them, "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'I brought you up from Egypt and led you out of the house of slavery. ⁹I rescued you from the hand of Egypt and from the hand of all who oppressed you. I drove them out before you and gave you their land. ¹⁰I said to you: I am the LORD your God. You must not fear the gods of the Amorites in whose land you live.' But you have not obeyed my voice." ¹¹The angel of the LORD came and sat under the oak at Ophrah, which belonged to Joash the Abiezrite. His son Gideon was threshing wheat in the winepress to hide it from Midian. ¹²The angel of the LORD appeared to him and said, "The LORD is with you, mighty warrior." ¹³Gideon said to him, "Please, my lord, if the LORD is with us, why has all this happened to us? Where are all His wondrous acts that our fathers recounted to us, saying, 'Did not the LORD bring us up from Egypt?' But now the LORD has abandoned us and given us into the hand of Midian." ¹⁴The LORD turned to him and said, "Go in this strength of yours and save Israel from the hand of Midian. Have I not sent you?" ¹⁵He said to him, "Please, my lord, how can

I save Israel? My clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the youngest in my father's household." ¹⁶The LORD said to him, "I will be with you, and you will strike down Midian as though they were a single man." ¹⁷He said to him, "If I have found favor in your eyes, show me a sign that it is you who are speaking with me. ¹⁸Please do not leave here until I come back to you and bring out my offering and set it before you." He said, "I will stay until you return." ¹⁹Gideon went in and prepared a young goat and unleavened bread from an ephah of flour. He put the meat in a basket, poured the broth in a pot, and brought it out to him under the oak and presented it. ²⁰The angel of God said to him, "Take the meat and the unleavened bread and place them on this rock, and pour out the broth." He did so. ²¹The angel of the LORD extended the tip of the staff in his hand and touched the meat and the unleavened bread. Fire rose from the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened bread. Then the angel of the LORD vanished from his sight. ²²When Gideon realized that he was the angel of the LORD, Gideon said, "Alas, Lord GOD! For I have seen the angel of the LORD face to face!" ²³The LORD said to him, "Peace to you. Do not be afraid — you will not die." ²⁴Gideon built an altar there to the LORD and named it "The LORD Is Peace." To this day it still stands in Ophrah of the Abiezrites. ²⁵That same night the LORD said to him, "Take your father's bull — the second bull, seven years old — and tear down the altar of Baal that belongs to your father, and cut down the Asherah pole beside it. ²⁶Then build an altar to the LORD your God on top of this stronghold, in proper arrangement. Take the second bull and offer it as a burnt offering using the wood of the Asherah pole that you cut down." ²⁷Gideon took ten of his servants and did as the LORD had told him. But because he was too afraid of his father's household and the men of the city to do it by day, he did it at night. ²⁸When the men of the city rose early in the morning, the altar of Baal had been torn down, the Asherah pole beside it had been cut down, and the second bull had been offered on the altar that was built. ²⁹They said to one another, "Who did this?" When they investigated and inquired, they said, "Gideon son of Joash did this." ³⁰The men of the city said to Joash, "Bring out your son so he can die, because he tore down the altar of Baal and because he cut down the Asherah pole beside it." ³¹Joash said to all who stood against him, "Will you contend for Baal? Will you save him? Whoever contends for him will be put to death by morning! If he is a god, let him contend for himself, since someone tore down his altar." ³²So on that day he named him Jerubbaal, saying, "Let Baal contend with him," because he tore down his altar. ³³All the Midianites and the Amalekites and the people of the east gathered together, crossed over, and camped in the Valley of Jezreel. ³⁴The Spirit of the LORD clothed Gideon, and he blew the shofar. The Abiezrites rallied behind him. ³⁵He sent messengers throughout all Manasseh, and they too rallied behind him. He also sent messengers to Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali, and they came up to meet them. ³⁶Gideon said to God, "If you are going to save Israel through me, as you have promised — ³⁷I am placing a fleece of wool on the threshing floor. If there is dew on the fleece only, and all the ground around it is dry, then I will know that you will save Israel through me, as you have promised." ³⁸And so it happened. He rose early the next morning, wrung out the fleece, and squeezed enough dew from it to fill a bowl with water. ³⁹Gideon said to God, "Do not let your anger burn against me — let me speak just one more time. Let me test just once more with the fleece: let only the fleece be dry, and let there be dew on all the ground." ⁴⁰God did so that night: the fleece alone was dry, and there was dew on all the ground.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fifth cycle opens with the standard formula. Midian — a semi-nomadic people associated with the desert east of the Jordan (Moses's father-in-law Jethro was a Midianite priest, Exodus 2:16-3:1). Seven years of oppression is relatively short but, as the following verses reveal, intensely devastating.
2. *Va-ta'oz yad Midyan* ('the hand of Midian was strong/heavy') — the verb *azaz* means 'to be strong, to prevail.' The oppression is so severe that Israel retreats to *minharot* ('tunnels, dens'), *me'arot* ('caves'), and *metsadot* ('strongholds, fortified positions'). The people of the promised land are hiding like fugitives in their own territory. This is the most extreme description of oppression in Judges — Israel is reduced to cave-dwelling.
3. The Midianite strategy is economic terrorism: they wait until Israel has sowed (*zara*, 'planted seed') and then invade to destroy or seize the harvest. The coalition includes Amalek (Israel's perennial enemy) and *benei qedem* ('sons of the east,' desert nomads from the Transjordan). The timing is precise — attacking after sowing but before harvest ensures maximum agricultural devastation.
4. The destruction extends *ad bo'akha Azzah* ('until you reach Gaza') — the entire width of the country from the eastern desert to the western coast. The comprehensiveness is deliberate: *lo yash'iru michyah be-Yisra'el* ('they left no sustenance in Israel'). Even livestock — sheep, oxen, donkeys — are taken or destroyed. This is systematic starvation, not mere raiding.

5. Ke-dei arbeh la-rov ('like locusts in multitude') — the locust simile is one of the most powerful in the Hebrew Bible for describing overwhelming numbers. Locusts consume everything in their path, leaving nothing — exactly what the Midianite raiders do to Israel's agriculture. The camels (gemalim) are significant: camel-borne nomads had superior mobility over settled agricultural populations, enabling rapid strikes across vast distances. The Midianite raids represent an early form of nomadic warfare against sedentary communities.
6. Va-yiddal Yisra'el me'od ('Israel was greatly impoverished/diminished') — the verb dalal means 'to become thin, poor, reduced.' Israel is wasting away. The cry (va-yiz'aqu) comes from desperation, not repentance — the same pattern as previous cycles. But this time, uniquely, God responds first not with a deliverer but with a prophet (verses 7-10).
7. The causal chain is established: Midianite oppression Israel's cry God's response. But the response is unusual — God sends a prophet before sending a deliverer. This is the only cycle in Judges where prophetic rebuke precedes military deliverance. The sequence suggests Israel needs to understand why they are suffering before they can be rescued.
8. Ish navi ('a man, a prophet') — the prophet is unnamed, which is unusual. His anonymity underscores that the message matters, not the messenger. His speech follows the classic prophetic formula koh amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD') — the covenant lawsuit pattern. The content echoes the angel's speech at Bochim (2:1): God recites His saving acts as the basis for the indictment that follows.
8. Beit avadim ('house of slavery/bondage') is the standard Deuteronomic designation for Egypt (Deuteronomy 5:6, 6:12, 8:14). Its use here reminds Israel that their current oppression is not their first — God delivered them from worse.
9. The recital of God's acts mirrors the covenant prologue form known from ancient Near Eastern treaties — the sovereign recounts what he has done for the vassal before stating his demands. God's credentials are His acts: rescue (hitsil), expulsion of enemies (gerashti), and land gift (natatti). Each verb is in the first person — God takes personal ownership of every stage of the deliverance.
10. The indictment climaxes: lo shema'tem be-qoli ('you have not obeyed my voice'). The command lo tir'u et elohei ha-Emori ('do not fear the gods of the Amorites') uses the verb yare ('to fear, to revere, to worship'). 'Fearing' another god is functionally worshipping it — acknowledging its power and submitting to its demands. The Amorites are used here as a generic term for the Canaanite population.
10. Notably, no deliverance is promised in this prophetic speech. The prophet delivers the diagnosis but not the prescription. God's answer to the Midianite crisis — Gideon — does not come through this prophet but through a separate theophany (verses 11ff). The prophet explains the cause; the angel provides the cure.
11. Malakh YHWH ('the angel of the LORD') — the same figure from 2:1-5. The scene echoes the patriarchal theophanies: the divine visitor sits under a tree (cf. Abraham at Mamre, Genesis 18:1). Gideon's introduction is deliberately unheroic: he is threshing wheat (chovet chittim) in a winepress (ba-gat) — a hidden, cramped space used to avoid Midianite raiders. Normal threshing occurs on an open hilltop where wind separates chaff; using a winepress means working in concealment, in fear. The deliverer God will raise is introduced as a man hiding his grain.
11. The Abiezrite clan belongs to Manasseh (Joshua 17:2). Ophrah's location is uncertain but somewhere in the Manasseh territory in the central highlands.
12. YHWH immekha gibbor he-chayil ('the LORD is with you, mighty warrior') — the greeting is deeply ironic given the context. Gideon is a man hiding grain in a winepress, and the angel addresses him as gibbor he-chayil ('mighty warrior, valiant hero'). The title is either prophetic (God sees what Gideon will become) or challenging (calling forth a courage Gideon does not yet possess). The phrase YHWH immekha ('the LORD is with you') is a standard divine assurance of presence (cf. Joshua 1:5, Ruth 2:4), but Gideon will immediately question it.
13. Gideon's response is the most theologically articulate complaint by any judge. He raises three challenges: (1) If YHWH is with us (ve-yesh YHWH immanu), why has this happened? — questioning the divine presence claim; (2) Where are the miracles (nifle'otav) our fathers told us about? — the generational knowledge gap of 2:10 is now voiced by a character within the story; (3) The LORD has abandoned us (netashanu) — a direct accusation of divine desertion.
13. Gideon's theology is actually correct about the situation but wrong about the cause. God has not abandoned Israel — God has handed them over because of their idolatry (verse 1). Gideon sees the effect but not the reason. The unnamed prophet's speech (vv. 8-10) provided the explanation Gideon seems not to have heard.
14. Va-yifen elav YHWH ('the LORD turned to him') — the text now identifies the speaker as YHWH directly, not merely malakh YHWH. The blurring between angel and God continues (as in 2:1). The commission is direct: lekha be-khochakha zeh ('go in this strength of yours'). What strength? Gideon has displayed none. The 'strength' may refer to his honest confrontation with God — his willingness to ask hard questions is itself a form of spiritual strength that God can use.
14. Ve-hosha'ta et Yisra'el ('and you will save Israel') — the root y-sh-a (salvation) applied directly to Gideon. Ha-lo shelachticha ('Have I not sent you?') — the rhetorical question establishes divine commissioning. Gideon's authority comes not from personal ability but from divine sending.
15. Gideon's protest follows the classic call-narrative pattern: Moses ('Who am I?' Exodus 3:11), Jeremiah ('I am only a youth,' Jeremiah 1:6), and now Gideon ('My clan is the weakest, I am the youngest'). The double diminishment — alphi ha-dal ('my thousand/clan is the poor one') and anokhi ha-tsa'ir ('I am the youngest') — places Gideon at the bottom of both social and familial hierarchies. The theology is consistent: God chooses the weak to shame the strong (a principle Paul will articulate in 1 Corinthians 1:27).

16. Ki ehveh immakh ('for I will be with you') — the divine assurance echoes God's promise to Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:12, using the same ehveh). The verb ehveh ('I will be') is the first-person form of the divine name YHWH — God pledges His own being as guarantee. The promise transforms Gideon's weakness into irrelevance: Gideon's clan doesn't matter because God will be the one fighting.
16. Ke-ish echad ('as a single man') — the entire Midianite host will fall as easily as if they were one individual. The image collapses the impossible odds into a single opponent, which is theologically accurate: the battle is God's, not Gideon's.
17. Im na matsati chen be-einekha ('if I have found favor in your eyes') — the standard petition formula for requesting something from a superior. Gideon asks for an ot ('sign') — visible confirmation that this visitor is genuinely divine. The request for signs will become Gideon's pattern (the fleece test in vv. 36-40). The text does not criticize the initial request — confirmation of divine commission is reasonable. But the pattern of repeated sign-seeking will raise questions about Gideon's faith.
18. Minchati ('my offering/gift') — the same term used for the grain offering in Leviticus 2 and for tribute to a king. Gideon's offering could be a meal for a distinguished guest or a sacrificial offering to a deity — the ambiguity reflects Gideon's own uncertainty about who he is dealing with. The divine visitor's willingness to wait (anokhi eshev, 'I will sit/stay') echoes God's patience throughout the patriarchal narratives — the divine is never in a hurry.
19. The offering is lavish: a gedi izzim ('kid of the goats'), an eifah ('ephah,' approximately 22 liters / 6 gallons) of flour for matzot ('unleavened bread'), plus broth. In a time of famine, this represents enormous generosity — Gideon gives what his family can barely afford. The unleavened bread (matzot) is associatively linked to the exodus Passover (Exodus 12:8), though the connection may be incidental. The presentation under the oak (ha-elah) transforms the domestic meal into something approaching sacrifice.
20. The angel's instruction transforms a meal into an offering: the rock (ha-sela) becomes an altar. Placing meat and bread on a rock and pouring out the broth mirrors sacrificial procedure — the solid elements are placed for burning and the liquid is poured out as a libation. Gideon's domestic gift is being redirected from hospitality to worship.
21. The staff-touch ignites the offering — fire from the rock (va-ta'al ha-esh min ha-tsur) consumes the sacrifice. This is the sign Gideon requested (v. 17): divine fire accepting the offering, just as fire consumed Elijah's sacrifice on Carmel (1 Kings 18:38) and the tabernacle inauguration offerings (Leviticus 9:24). Fire from the rock is theophanic — God reveals Himself through consuming fire.
21. U-malakh YHWH halakh me-einav ('the angel of the LORD vanished from his sight') — the departure confirms the divine identity. The angel does not walk away but disappears. Gideon's visitor was not human.
22. Gideon's terror (ahahh, an exclamation of distress) reflects the ancient Israelite belief that seeing God or His angel directly was fatal (cf. Exodus 33:20, 'no one can see my face and live'). The phrase panim el panim ('face to face') is the most intense form of divine encounter — unmediated, direct. Gideon fears he will die because he has seen the divine face. This is the same fear Jacob expressed at Peniel (Genesis 32:30).
22. The address Adonai YHWH ('LORD GOD') uses both divine titles — Adonai as the spoken form and YHWH as the covenant name. The doubling signals extreme urgency.
23. Shalom lekha ('peace to you') — God's response to Gideon's terror is the gift of shalom. The word carries its full weight here: not merely 'hello' but a declaration of well-being, wholeness, safety. Al tira ('do not be afraid') is the standard divine reassurance formula. Lo tamut ('you will not die') directly addresses Gideon's specific fear. The encounter that threatened death produces instead a declaration of peace.
24. YHWH Shalom ('The LORD Is Peace') — Gideon's altar name commemorates God's gift of shalom in the theophany. The altar name is a theological statement: the God who commissioned Gideon for war is the God whose fundamental character is peace. The construction of an altar is Gideon's first act as a covenant leader — before any military action, he establishes worship. The narrator's tag 'to this day' (ad ha-yom ha-zeh) attests to the altar's survival into the writer's era.
25. God's first command to Gideon is not military but cultic: destroy your own father's Baal altar and Asherah pole. The theology is clear — before Israel can be delivered from external enemies (Midian), it must be delivered from internal idolatry (Baal worship). The seven-year-old bull may correspond to the seven years of Midianite oppression (verse 1), symbolically connecting the idol's age to the duration of God's judgment.
25. Asher le-avikha ('that belongs to your father') — the idolatry is domestic, familial. Gideon must confront his own household's sin before he can address Israel's. The personal cost of the commission is immediate.
26. The instruction is theologically charged: burn the Asherah pole and use its wood as fuel for a burnt offering (olah) to YHWH. The idol becomes firewood for the true God's altar. The desecration of the Canaanite cult object is total — it is not merely destroyed but repurposed for YHWH worship. The olah (burnt offering — the total surrender offering from Leviticus 1) replaces the Baal cult with YHWH worship on the same site.
26. Ba-ma'arakhah ('in proper arrangement') — the offering must be done correctly, according to prescribed procedure. Even in the emergency of spiritual revolution, liturgical order matters.
27. Gideon obeys — but at night, in fear. Ka'asher yare et beit aviv ('because he feared his father's house') — the deliverer who will defeat Midian is afraid of his own neighbors. The narrator does not condemn the fear but records it honestly: Gideon's courage is imperfect, his faith is growing but not complete. The ten servants provide both labor and witnesses — even fearful obedience requires community.
28. The morning-after discovery reveals the three-part act: altar destroyed, Asherah cut, YHWH-offering presented. The built altar (ha-mizbeach ha-banui) stands where the Baal altar stood — replacement, not merely destruction. The community confronts a fait accompli: their cultic center has

been transformed overnight from Baal worship to YHWH worship.

29. The investigation (*darash*, 'to seek, to inquire' and *biqqesh*, 'to search') reveals Gideon — perhaps through the testimony of the ten servants, or through the process of elimination in a small community. The discovery puts Gideon in immediate danger: destroying a community's cultic center is a capital offense by local custom.
30. The demand *hotse et binkha ve-yamot* ('bring out your son that he may die') uses the same formulation as the demand for Lot's guests in Sodom (Genesis 19:5, though with different intent). The townspeople want Gideon executed for sacrilege against Baal. The irony is that an Israelite community demands death for destroying an idol that Israelites were commanded to destroy (Deuteronomy 7:5). The depth of Canaanization is exposed: Israel defends Baal's honor.
31. Joash's defense of his son is brilliant and devastating: *ha-attem terivun la-Ba'al* ('will YOU contend for Baal?'). The verb *riv* ('to contend, to argue, to litigate') is a legal term — Joash puts Baal on trial rather than Gideon. His argument is simple and irrefutable: if Baal is a real god, he can defend his own altar; if he cannot, he's not worth defending. *Im elohim hu yarev lo* ('if he is a god, let him contend for himself') — this is the theological acid test. The logic anticipates Elijah's mockery on Carmel (1 Kings 18:27).
32. *Yerubba'al* ('Let Baal contend') — the name is a permanent theological taunt. Every time Gideon is called by this name (which the text uses throughout the rest of the narrative and in later references, 1 Samuel 12:11), the hearer is reminded that Baal could not defend his own altar. The name functions as a walking declaration of Baal's impotence.
33. The Midianite coalition masses in the *Emek Yizre'el* ('Valley of Jezreel') — the same strategic plain where Deborah and Barak fought Sisera. This is Israel's most vulnerable geographic zone: a broad, flat valley ideal for the nomadic raiders' mobility advantage. The gathering of 'all' the coalition forces signals the scale of the threat that Gideon must face.
34. *Ruach YHWH lavshah et Gid'on* ('the Spirit of the LORD clothed Gideon') — a unique verb for Spirit empowerment. Where the Spirit 'came upon' (*hayetah al*) Othniel (3:10) and will 'rush upon' (*tsalach al*) Samson (14:6), here the Spirit 'clothed' (*lavash*) Gideon — wrapping him like a garment. The metaphor suggests total covering: Gideon is enveloped by divine power, worn by the Spirit as much as wearing it. This is the most intimate of the Spirit-empowerment verbs in Judges.
34. The shofar blast and the rallying of the Abiezrite clan (Gideon's own family) is the beginning of the military campaign. The man who destroyed Baal's altar at night in fear now summons troops publicly in daylight — the Spirit's clothing has transformed him.
35. Four tribes respond: Manasseh (Gideon's own), Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali. The Song of Deborah rebuked Asher for not joining (5:17); here Asher responds. The gathering of multiple tribes shows a broader coalition than most judge narratives — Gideon's summons reaches beyond his immediate clan to the northern tribal alliance.
36. The fleece test begins. Gideon has already received a theophany (vv. 11-24), divine fire consuming his offering (v. 21), the Spirit's clothing (v. 34), and four tribes responding to his summons. Despite all this, he seeks additional confirmation: *im yeshkha moshia be-yadi* ('if you are saving through my hand'). The *im* ('if') after so many confirmations reveals Gideon's persistent uncertainty. The fleece test is not a model of faith but a concession to weakness.
37. *Gizzat ha-tsemer* ('fleece of wool') — a sheared sheep's fleece. The test is straightforward: an outcome that defies natural probability will confirm divine intent. Dew falling only on the fleece while the surrounding ground remains dry would be a localized miracle. The threshing floor (*goren*) is an open hilltop area — the same kind of exposed location Gideon avoided when threshing in the winepress (v. 11). His willingness to use the threshing floor now, rather than the winepress, shows some progress in confidence.
38. God grants the sign generously — *melo ha-sefel mayim* ('a full bowl of water'). The fleece is saturated while the ground is dry. The miracle is conceded without divine commentary or rebuke. God meets Gideon's weakness with patience, not punishment.
39. *Al yichar appekha bi* ('do not let your anger burn against me') — Gideon knows he is pushing the boundary. His own words reveal consciousness of presumption: *akh ha-pa'am* ('just this time'), *raq ha-pa'am* ('only this once'). He reverses the test: now the fleece should be dry while the ground is wet. The reversal is actually a harder test — wool naturally absorbs moisture, so a dry fleece on wet ground defies the material's properties more dramatically.
39. The repetition of sign-requests is Gideon's character trait: he needs constant reassurance. God accommodates this weakness, but the narrative trajectory suggests it is weakness, not exemplary faith.
40. *Va-ya'as Elohim ken* ('God did so') — divine compliance with Gideon's second request, without rebuke or commentary. God's patience with Gideon's sign-seeking is remarkable and reveals the divine commitment to working through imperfect faith. The chapter ends with Gideon's confirmation complete — he now has no further excuse for hesitation. Chapter 7 will immediately strip away his military assets, making the point that God's sign, not Gideon's army, is the basis for victory.

7

Summary: *God reduces Gideon's army from 32,000 to 300 through two tests — fear and drinking posture. The 300 attack the Midianite camp at night with torches, jars, and trumpets. The Midianites panic and destroy each other.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The reduction from 32,000 to 300 is God's deliberate design: 'The people with you are too many for Me to give Midian into their hands, lest Israel claim glory for themselves' (v. 2). Military weakness is a theological requirement — victory must be obviously God's, not Israel's. The battle plan is maximally unconventional: no swords, no strategy, just torches inside clay jars, trumpets, and a shout. The shattering of the jars to reveal the light inside may be the chapter's deepest image — the earthen vessel must break for the light to shine.*

Translation Friction: *The water-drinking test (vv. 5-7) — those who lap like dogs vs. those who kneel — has been interpreted as testing alertness, humility, or simply providing an arbitrary selection method. The Hebrew does not explain the criterion's rationale, and we did not import one. The war cry (v. 18) 'a sword for the LORD and for Gideon' (cherev laYHWH uleGid'on) pairs divine and human agency in a single shout.*

Connections: *God's army-reduction principle echoes Deuteronomy 20:8 (sending the afraid home) and anticipates Jonathan's 'nothing can hinder the LORD from saving by many or by few' (1 Samuel 14:6). Paul's metaphor of treasure in clay jars (2 Corinthians 4:7) may echo the torch-in-jar image. The Midianite self-destruction parallels the Philistine panic in 1 Samuel 14:20.*

¹Jerubbaal — that is, Gideon — and all the people with him rose early and camped beside the spring of Harod. The Midianite camp was north of them, below the hill of Moreh in the valley. ²The LORD said to Gideon, "The people with you are too many for me to give Midian into their hands — otherwise Israel would claim credit against me, saying, 'My own hand saved me.' ³Now announce in the hearing of the people: 'Whoever is afraid and trembling may turn back and leave Mount Gilead.'" Twenty-two thousand of the people turned back, and ten thousand remained. ⁴The LORD said to Gideon, "The people are still too many. Bring them down to the water, and I will refine them for you there. When I tell you, 'This one goes with you,' he will go with you; and when I tell you, 'This one does not go with you,' he will not go." ⁵He brought the people down to the water. The LORD said to Gideon, "Set apart everyone who laps the water with his tongue the way a dog laps. Do the same with everyone who kneels down on his knees to drink." ⁶The number of those who lapped — bringing their hands to their mouths — was three hundred men. All the rest of the people knelt on their knees to drink water. ⁷The LORD said to Gideon, "With the three hundred men who lapped, I will save you and give Midian into your hand. Let all the rest of the people go, each man to his home." ⁸The people took provisions and their shofars in hand. He sent all the rest of Israel away, each man to his tent, but kept the three hundred men. The Midianite camp was below him in the valley. ⁹That same night the LORD said to him, "Get up and go down against the camp, for I have given it into your hand. ¹⁰But if you are afraid to go down, go down with your servant Purah to the camp. ¹¹You will hear what they are saying, and afterward your hands will be strengthened to go down against the camp." So he went down with his servant Purah to the edge of the armed units stationed in the camp. ¹²Midian, Amalek, and all the people of the east were spread across the valley like locusts in number, and their camels were beyond counting, like the sand on the seashore. ¹³When Gideon arrived, a man was telling his companion a dream. He said, "Listen — I had a dream: a round loaf of barley bread came rolling into the Midianite camp. It struck a tent, and the tent collapsed — it flipped upside down and fell flat." ¹⁴His companion answered, "This can only be the sword of Gideon son of Joash, the Israelite. God has given Midian and the entire camp into his hand." ¹⁵When Gideon heard the account of the dream and its interpretation, he bowed in worship. Then he returned to the Israelite camp and said, "Get up! The LORD has given the Midianite camp into your hand." ¹⁶He divided the three hundred men into three companies and placed shofars in every man's hand, along with empty jars and torches inside the jars. ¹⁷He said to them, "Watch me and do as I do. When I reach the edge of the camp, whatever I do, you do the same. ¹⁸When I and those with me blow the shofar, then you also blow your shofars all around the camp and shout, 'A sword for the LORD and for Gideon!'" ¹⁹Gideon and the

hundred men with him reached the edge of the camp at the beginning of the middle watch, just after the guard had been changed. They blew the shofars and shattered the jars that were in their hands. ²⁰All three companies blew their shofars and smashed their jars. They held the torches in their left hands and the shofars in their right hands for blowing, and they shouted, "A sword for the LORD and for Gideon!" ²¹Each man stood in his position around the camp. The entire Midianite camp broke into a run — they screamed and fled. ²²The three hundred kept blowing their shofars, and the LORD turned every man's sword against his companion throughout the entire camp. The camp fled toward Beth-shittah in the direction of Zererah, as far as the border of Abel-meholah near Tabbath. ²³The men of Israel were called out from Naphtali, Asher, and all of Manasseh, and they pursued Midian. ²⁴Gideon sent messengers throughout the hill country of Ephraim, saying, "Come down to intercept Midian — seize the water crossings as far as Beth-barah and the Jordan." All the men of Ephraim rallied and seized the water crossings as far as Beth-barah and the Jordan. ²⁵They captured two Midianite commanders, Oreb and Zeeb. They killed Oreb at the Rock of Oreb and Zeeb at the Winepress of Zeeb. They continued pursuing Midian and brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon on the far side of the Jordan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator identifies Gideon by his altar name Yerubba'al ('let Baal contend,' from 6:32), connecting the battle narrative back to Gideon's confrontation with Baal worship. Ein Charod ('spring of trembling') — the name is significant: charod means 'trembling, fear,' foreshadowing the fear test that will thin Gideon's army (v. 3). Giv'at ha-Moreh ('hill of the teacher/instructor') places the Midianite encampment in the Jezreel Valley, one of the most strategically important corridors in Canaan.
2. Rav ha-am ('the people are too many') — God's opening statement reverses all military logic. A commander wants more soldiers; God demands fewer. The reason is theological, not tactical: *pen yitpa'er alai Yisra'el* ('lest Israel glorify themselves against me'). The verb *pa'ar* in the hitpael means 'to boast, to glorify oneself, to claim credit.' God will not share the glory of deliverance with human military strength. The phrase *yadi hoshi'ah li* ('my hand saved me') is precisely the claim God intends to prevent — self-salvation is idolatry of the self.
3. *Mi yare ve-chared* ('whoever is afraid and trembling') — this first test echoes Deuteronomy 20:8, which commands that the fearful be sent home before battle so they do not demoralize their comrades. But here the purpose is different: God is not protecting morale but reducing numbers. The verb *tsaphar* ('to depart early, to go swiftly') is rare — some read it as 'to turn' or 'to go around' from *Har ha-Gil'ad* (though Gilead is east of the Jordan; some scholars suggest a local Gilead near the Jezreel Valley or emend to *Gilboa*). The result is staggering: two-thirds of the army departs. From 32,000 to 10,000 — and God is not yet satisfied.
4. *Od ha-am rav* ('the people are still too many') — even 10,000 is too large for God's purpose. The verb *etsrefennu* ('I will refine/test them') comes from *tsaraf*, a metallurgical term meaning 'to smelt, to refine, to purify' — the same verb used for testing gold or silver by fire (Psalm 12:7, Zechariah 13:9). God is smelting Gideon's army: the water test is a crucible that separates the chosen from the rest. The selection criteria remain entirely in God's hands — Gideon does not choose; he only sorts according to God's verdict.
5. *Yaloq bi-leshono min ha-mayim ka'asher yaloq ha-kelev* ('laps with his tongue from the water as a dog laps') — the verb *laqaq* means to lap like an animal, scooping water with the tongue. The comparison to a dog (*kelev*) is deliberately demeaning in Israelite culture, where dogs were scavengers, not pets. Those who lap water from their hands while standing remain alert; those who kneel with their faces to the water are vulnerable. Many interpreters see military readiness in the distinction, but the text never explains why the lappers are chosen — God's criteria remain His own.
6. *Shelosh me'ot ish* ('three hundred men') — from 32,000 to 300: a reduction of over 99%. The odds are now roughly 450-to-1 against Israel (the Midianite coalition is described as innumerable in verse 12). The detail *be-yadam el pihem* ('with their hand to their mouth') clarifies the lapping technique: the 300 did not put their faces to the water but scooped water in their hands and lapped from their cupped palms. This is the selection criterion, but the text emphasizes that the number — not the method — is what matters. Three hundred is deliberately inadequate for conventional warfare.
7. *Oshi'a etkhem* ('I will save you') — the emphatic first person: I will save. Not 'you will fight and win' but 'I will deliver.' The verb *yasha* ('to save, deliver, rescue') is the theological center of the chapter. God claims the saving act entirely for Himself. The 300 are the instrument, not the cause. *Ve-natatti et Midyan be-yadekha* ('and I will give Midian into your hand') — the giving is God's; the hand is Gideon's. God does the giving; Gideon receives.
8. *Tsedah* ('provisions, food') and *shoferoteihem* ('their shofars, ram's horn trumpets') — the 300 carry food and shofars, not swords. The weaponry is liturgical, not military: shofars are instruments of worship, assembly, and divine announcement, not tools of combat. This is the first hint that the 'battle' will be won by noise and divine panic, not by human fighting. The positioning — Gideon above, Midian below in the valley (*ba-emeq*) — gives the 300 the high ground, but with 300 men the tactical advantage is negligible against a vast army.
9. *Ki netattiv be-yadekha* ('for I have given it into your hand') — the perfect tense (*netatti*, 'I have given') treats the victory as already accomplished before the battle begins. In God's declaration, the outcome is settled; only the execution remains. This prophetic perfect — speaking of the future as if it has already happened — is a characteristic of divine speech throughout the Hebrew Bible. What God has decreed is as good as done.

10. Ve-im yare attah laredet ('but if you are afraid to go down') — God knows Gideon's character. After the fleece tests, the midnight commission, and every prior hesitation, God still accommodates Gideon's fear. The conditional im yare ('if you are afraid') is a concession, not a rebuke. Purah (the name may mean 'branch' or 'foliage') is Gideon's na'ar ('servant, attendant, armor-bearer'). God sends Gideon on a reconnaissance mission — not to gather intelligence for battle planning, but to overhear something that will strengthen his faith.
11. Ve-achar techezeqnah yadekha ('and afterward your hands will be strengthened') — the promise is specific: what Gideon overhears will give him courage. God orchestrates the conversation Gideon will stumble upon. The chamushim ('armed men, battle formations, organized units') at the camp's edge are the Midianite sentries or forward positions. Gideon creeps to the perimeter of an enemy army that outnumbers him hundreds to one — a moment of raw vulnerability that requires whatever courage he can muster.
12. Ka-arbeh la-rov ('like locusts in multitude') — the locust simile repeats from 6:5, reinforcing the overwhelming scale of the threat. The narrator uses two similes of incalculability: the enemy forces are like locusts (arbeh), their camels like sand on the seashore (ka-chol she-al sefat ha-yam). The sand simile is typically reserved for God's promises to the patriarchs (Genesis 22:17, 32:13) — here it describes the enemy, creating a disturbing inversion. What God promised Abraham in blessing, Israel now faces as threat. The visual contrast between 300 Israelites above and this locust-swarm below is the chapter's central dramatic image.
13. Tselil lechem se'orim ('a round cake of barley bread') — the word tselil is rare, possibly meaning 'round, rolling, tumbling.' Barley bread was the food of the poor; wheat bread was the grain of the wealthy. A barley loaf representing Gideon — a farmer from the weakest clan of Manasseh (6:15) — is fitting. The dream's action is violent: the bread strikes (va-yakkeihu) the tent, causes it to fall (va-yippol), flips it over (va-yahafkeihu le-ma'elah), and the tent collapses flat (ve-nafal ha-ohel). A loaf of cheap bread demolishes a military tent — the absurdity of the image is the theological point. God uses the weak to overthrow the strong.
14. Ein zot bilti im cherev Gid'on ('this is nothing other than the sword of Gideon') — the interpretation is remarkable: a barley loaf is decoded as a sword (cherev). The leap from bread to blade reveals how deeply fear has penetrated the Midianite camp. Gideon's reputation — or God's terror — has preceded him. The Midianite soldier's interpretation contains an unwitting prophecy: natan ha-Elohim be-yado ('God has given into his hand'). A pagan soldier attributes the coming defeat to Israel's God, echoing the very words God spoke to Gideon in verse 9. Even the enemy knows the victory is divine.
15. Va-yishtachu ('he bowed in worship') — Gideon's first response is not tactical planning but worship. The verb shachah means to prostrate oneself, to bow down in reverence. This is a turning point: the man who required fleece tests, signs, and divine patience now responds with immediate, unreserved worship upon hearing a Midianite soldier's dream. What five direct divine encounters could not fully accomplish, an overheard enemy conversation achieves — Gideon believes. His command to the troops mirrors God's own language: natan YHWH be-yedkhem ('the LORD has given into your hand'). Gideon speaks God's words back to the people.
16. Sheloshah rashim ('three companies' — literally 'three heads') — the tactical division into three groups allows a surrounding approach. The equipment list is extraordinary: shofarot (ram's horn trumpets), kaddim reqim ('empty jars' — clay pots), and lappidim ('torches, flames') hidden inside the jars. No swords, no spears, no shields. Every hand holds an instrument of noise and light, not violence. The torches concealed in clay jars is tactically brilliant — the jars hide the light until the moment of coordinated reveal, creating the illusion of a massive army appearing simultaneously from all sides.
17. Mimmenni tir'u ve-khen ta'asu ('watch me and do likewise') — Gideon leads by example, not merely by command. The instruction is simple: observe and imitate. The transformed Gideon now takes the forward position — be-qetseh ha-machaneh ('at the edge of the camp') — the most dangerous location. The fearful farmer of chapter 6 who threshed in hiding now volunteers for the front line. The Spirit's clothing (6:34) and the overheard dream (v. 13-14) have completed his transformation.
18. La-YHWH u-le-Gid'on ('for the LORD and for Gideon') — the battle cry as given here in verse 18 is shorter than the form in verse 20: cherev la-YHWH u-le-Gid'on ('a sword for the LORD and for Gideon'). The KJV supplies 'the sword of' in verse 18, following the longer form of verse 20. The cry pairs YHWH and Gideon — the divine and human agents — but the order is significant: God's name comes first. The shofar blast from three sides simultaneously would create the acoustic impression of an enormous army. Three hundred shofars in the dark, echoing off the valley walls, would sound like thousands.
19. Rosh ha-ashmoret ha-tikkonah ('the beginning of the middle watch') — the Israelite night was divided into three watches. The middle watch began around 10 PM. The timing is precise: akh haqem heqimu et ha-shomerim ('they had just set the watch') — the new sentries were freshly posted, still adjusting to the dark, at their least alert. The coordination required is remarkable: three companies of 100 men each must arrive simultaneously at different points around the camp's perimeter and act in unison. The shattering of the jars (nafots ha-kaddim) would produce a sudden, startling crash from every direction.
20. The full battle cry now appears: cherev la-YHWH u-le-Gid'on ('a sword for the LORD and for Gideon'). The physical choreography is vivid: left hands hold blazing torches (lappidim), right hands hold shofars (shofarot) to their mouths. Both hands are occupied — there is literally no hand free to hold a weapon. The 300 are simultaneously trumpeters, torch-bearers, and war-criers. They are not fighters; they are instruments of psychological warfare orchestrated by God. The simultaneous crash of 300 clay jars, the sudden blaze of 300 torches, the blast of 300 shofars, and the unified war cry from three directions would create the sensory impression of a massive army attacking from all sides.
21. Va-ya'amdu ish tachtav ('each man stood in his place') — the 300 do not charge. They stand still. The Hebrew emphasizes static positioning: they hold ground while the enemy disintegrates. The response of the Midianite camp is triple: va-yarots ('they ran'), va-yari'u ('they screamed/cried out'), va-yanusu ('they fled'). Three verbs of panic in rapid succession — running, screaming, fleeing — describe total psychological collapse. The 300 never

draw a weapon; they never take a step forward. The battle is won by standing still while God shatters the enemy's nerve.

- 22.** Va-yasem YHWH et cherev ish be-re'eihu ('the LORD set each man's sword against his companion') — this is the decisive theological statement: the LORD (YHWH) is the active agent. God turns the Midianite army against itself. In the dark, panicked, surrounded by noise and fire from every direction, the Midianite soldiers cannot distinguish friend from enemy and begin killing each other. The 'sword' (cherev) in this verse is real — the Midianites' own swords — unlike the metaphorical 'sword' in the battle cry. The irony is precise: the only swords drawn in this battle belong to the enemy, turned against themselves by God.
- 22.** The flight path — Beth-shittah, Zererah, Abel-meholah, Tabbath — traces a southeastern retreat toward the Jordan crossing, away from the Jezreel Valley and toward the Transjordan desert from which the Midianites came.
- 23.** Va-yitsa'eq ish Yisra'el ('the men of Israel were called out/rallied') — the same three tribes plus Manasseh that responded to Gideon's initial summons in 6:35 (with Zebulun absent here). The 9,700 men sent home earlier (plus others) are now recalled for the pursuit phase. The irony is deliberate: the reduced army of 300 wins the battle; the full tribal muster handles the cleanup. God wanted no confusion about who won — but He allows human effort in the pursuit. The battle belongs to God; the chase belongs to Israel.
- 24.** Gideon's strategic thinking emerges in the pursuit: he summons Ephraim — a powerful tribe not part of the original coalition — to cut off the Midianite escape route at the Jordan fords. Likhedu lahem et ha-mayim ('seize the water crossings for them') — controlling the river fords traps the fleeing enemy east of the Jordan. Beth-barah ('house of the ford/crossing') was likely a strategic crossing point. Ephraim's involvement here sets up the inter-tribal conflict in 8:1-3, where the Ephraimites will angrily confront Gideon for not summoning them earlier.
- 25.** Shenei sarei Midyan ('two commanders/princes of Midian') — Orev and Ze'ev. The names are vivid: Orev means 'raven' and Ze'ev means 'wolf' — predator names for predatory leaders. The execution sites become named landmarks: Tsur Orev ('Rock of the Raven') and Yegev Ze'ev ('Winepress of the Wolf'). The winepress detail creates a narrative echo: Gideon was first found hiding in a winepress (6:11); now a Midianite commander dies in one. The oppressor's end mirrors the deliverer's beginning.
- 25.** The heads brought to Gideon me-ever la-Yarden ('from across the Jordan') indicate Gideon has crossed the Jordan in pursuit — a campaign that will continue in chapter 8. The Ephraimites' independent capture of enemy commanders demonstrates effective military action but also sets the stage for tribal jealousy (8:1).

8

Summary: *Gideon pursues the Midianite kings Zebah and Zalmunna across the Jordan, rebukes Succoth and Penuel for refusing provisions, captures and executes the kings, and refuses the offer of kingship — but makes an ephod that becomes an idolatrous snare.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Gideon's refusal of kingship (v. 23) — 'I will not rule over you, and my son will not rule over you; the LORD will rule over you' — is the book's most explicit anti-monarchical statement. But immediately after, he requests gold earrings and makes an ephod that 'all Israel prostituted themselves after' (v. 27). The deliverer becomes the stumbling block. The verb zanah (v. 27, 'played the prostitute') uses the same word as the judges-cycle framework in 2:17.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase chesed (v. 35, 'loyal faithfulness') departs from the default rendering 'faithful love' because the context describes Israel's failure toward Gideon's household — human-to-human political loyalty rather than divine covenant. This departure is documented. The ephod's nature (v. 27) is debated: was it a priestly garment, an idol, or an oracular device? The text does not specify, and we rendered it as the Hebrew gives it.*

Connections: *Gideon's ephod anticipates Micah's idol and Levite in chapters 17-18. The refusal of kingship contrasts with Abimelech's seizure of it in chapter 9 and anticipates the monarchy debate of 1 Samuel 8. The Succoth/Penuel episode echoes the punishment of communities that refuse aid to covenant partners. The seventy sons (v. 30) set up the mass murder of chapter 9.*

¹The men of Ephraim said to him, "What is this you have done to us — not calling us when you went to fight Midian?" They confronted him aggressively. ²He said to them, "What have I accomplished compared to you? Are not the gleanings of Ephraim better than the full harvest of Abiezer? ³God gave the princes of Midian — Oreb and Zeeb — into your hand. What was I able to do compared to you?" Then their anger toward him subsided when he said this. ⁴Gideon came to the Jordan and crossed over — he and the three hundred men with him, exhausted but still pursuing. ⁵He said to the men of Succoth, "Please give loaves of bread to the troops following me, because they are exhausted, and I am pursuing Zebah and

Zalmunna, kings of Midian." ⁶The leaders of Succoth replied, "Are the fists of Zebah and Zalmunna already in your grip, that we should give bread to your army?" ⁷Gideon said, "Very well — when the LORD gives Zebah and Zalmunna into my hand, I will thresh your flesh with desert thorns and briers." ⁸He went up from there to Penuel and made the same request. The men of Penuel answered him the same way the men of Succoth had answered. ⁹He also said to the men of Penuel, "When I return safely, I will tear down this tower." ¹⁰Zebah and Zalmunna were at Karkor with their camp — about fifteen thousand men, all that remained of the entire army of the eastern peoples. One hundred and twenty thousand sword-bearing men had already fallen. ¹¹Gideon went up by the route of the tent-dwellers east of Nobah and Jogbehah, and struck the camp while it felt secure. ¹²Zebah and Zalmunna fled, but he pursued and captured the two kings of Midian — Zebah and Zalmunna — and threw the entire camp into panic. ¹³Gideon son of Joash returned from the battle by the ascent of Heres. ¹⁴He captured a young man from the people of Succoth and interrogated him. The young man wrote down for him the names of the officials and elders of Succoth — seventy-seven men. ¹⁵He came to the men of Succoth and said, "Here are Zebah and Zalmunna, about whom you mocked me, saying, 'Are the fists of Zebah and Zalmunna already in your grip, that we should give bread to your exhausted men?'" ¹⁶He seized the elders of the city, along with desert thorns and briers, and with them he disciplined the men of Succoth. ¹⁷He tore down the tower of Penuel and killed the men of the city. ¹⁸Then he said to Zebah and Zalmunna, "What about the men you killed at Tabor?" They answered, "They were like you — every one of them had the bearing of a king's son." ¹⁹He said, "They were my brothers — sons of my own mother. As the LORD lives, if you had let them live, I would not kill you." ²⁰He said to Jether his firstborn, "Get up — kill them." But the boy did not draw his sword because he was afraid, for he was still young. ²¹Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, "Rise and strike us yourself — for a man's strength matches his stature." So Gideon rose and killed Zebah and Zalmunna, and took the crescent ornaments from the necks of their camels. ²²The men of Israel said to Gideon, "Rule over us — you, your son, and your grandson — because you have saved us from the hand of Midian." ²³Gideon said to them, "I will not rule over you, and my son will not rule over you. The LORD will rule over you." ²⁴Then Gideon said to them, "Let me make one request of you — each of you give me an earring from his spoil." (The defeated had gold earrings because they were Ishmaelites.) ²⁵They said, "We will gladly give them." They spread out a garment, and each man threw in an earring from his spoil. ²⁶The weight of the gold earrings he requested came to one thousand seven hundred shekels of gold — in addition to the crescent ornaments, the pendants, the purple garments worn by the kings of Midian, and the chains on their camels' necks. ²⁷Gideon made it into an ephod and set it up in his city, in Ophrah. All Israel prostituted themselves to it there, and it became a snare to Gideon and to his household. ²⁸So Midian was subdued before the Israelites and never raised its head again. The land had rest for forty years during the lifetime of Gideon. ²⁹Jerubbaal son of Joash went and settled in his own house. ³⁰Gideon had seventy sons, his own offspring, because he had many wives. ³¹His concubine in Shechem also bore him a son, and he named him Abimelech. ³²Gideon son of Joash died at a ripe old age and was buried in the tomb of his father Joash, in Ophrah of the Abiezrites. ³³As soon as Gideon died, the Israelites turned back and prostituted themselves to the Baals. They made Baal-berith their god. ³⁴The Israelites did not remember the LORD their God, who had rescued them from the hand of all their enemies on every side. ³⁵They did not show loyal faithfulness to the household of Jerubbaal — that is, Gideon — in return for all the good he had done for Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Va-yarivu itto be-chozqah ('they quarreled with him with force/sharply') — the verb riv is a legal term for formal dispute or lawsuit, and chozqah ('strength, force') intensifies the confrontation. Ephraim's complaint is essentially a claim of violated tribal honor — they are the dominant tribe of the central hill country and expect to be summoned for any major military action. This inter-tribal friction anticipates the deeper fractures that will dominate the later chapters of Judges.
2. Gideon's response is a masterclass in diplomatic de-escalation. The metaphor compares olelot ('gleanings' — the grapes left after the main harvest) to batsir ('vintage' — the primary harvest). Gideon is saying: what Ephraim accomplished as an afterthought surpasses what my own clan Abiezer accomplished as its main effort. The rhetorical strategy elevates Ephraim's secondary role above Gideon's primary role. This is strategic humility — Gideon understands that tribal pride, if left unchecked, can fracture the coalition.

3. Raftah rucham me'alav ('their spirit/anger relaxed from upon him') — the verb rafah ('to relax, slacken, weaken') describes the tension draining away. Gideon credits Ephraim with the capture of the Midianite princes Oreb ('raven') and Zeeb ('wolf') — names that ironically cast the Midianite commanders as predatory animals. Gideon's diplomacy works: anger defused by deference. This stands in sharp contrast to Jephthah's handling of the identical Ephraimite complaint in 12:1-6, which ends in civil war and 42,000 dead.
4. Ayefim ve-rodefim ('exhausted yet pursuing') — one of the most memorable phrases in Judges. The participial pair captures the paradox of Gideon's pursuit: physical depletion combined with relentless determination. Three hundred men — the same reduced force from God's selection in chapter 7 — now chase an army across the Jordan into Transjordan territory. The pursuit has moved from the surprise night attack in the Jezreel Valley to a long-distance chase eastward.
5. Succoth (sukkot, 'booths') is a Transjordanian city in the Jordan Valley near the Jabbok River (Genesis 33:17). Gideon's request for kikkerot lechem ('loaves/rounds of bread') is a basic military provision request — his men have been fighting and marching without food. Zebah (zevach, possibly 'sacrifice' or 'slaughter') and Zalmunna (tsalmunna, possibly 'shadow/protection withheld') are named as malkei Midyan ('kings of Midian'), a higher rank than the 'princes' Oreb and Zeeb captured by Ephraim.
6. Ha-khaf Zevach ve-Tsalmunna attah be-yadekha ('Is the palm/fist of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand?') — Succoth's leaders demand proof of victory before committing resources. Their refusal is a calculated bet: if Gideon fails, they will face Midianite retaliation for aiding his pursuit. The word kaf ('palm, fist') makes the question visceral — have you physically seized them yet? It is practical cowardice disguised as pragmatism. Succoth hedges against the possibility that Gideon will lose.
7. Ve-dashti et besarkhem ('I will thresh your flesh') — the verb dush ('to thresh') is agricultural language applied to human bodies. Threshing separates grain from chaff by dragging weighted boards studded with stones across the harvest floor; Gideon will drag thorn-studded implements across human flesh. The qotsei ha-midbar ('thorns of the wilderness/desert') and barqanim ('briers, thorn-bushes') are instruments of punishment. This is not idle threat — Gideon will fulfill it in verse 16. The vow reveals a vindictive edge beneath Gideon's earlier diplomacy.
8. Penuel (penu'el, 'face of God') is the site where Jacob wrestled with the angel (Genesis 32:30-31). The city's refusal parallels Succoth's — both Transjordanian towns hedge their bets against Gideon's success. The narrator's compression (ka-asher anu anshei Sukkot — 'as the men of Succoth answered') signals that the response is identical and equally contemptible. The doubling of the refusal amplifies both the offense and the coming retribution.
9. Be-shuvi ve-shalom ('when I return in peace/safely') — Gideon's confidence is absolute. He does not say 'if' but 'when.' The migdal ('tower') was Penuel's fortified structure — its military stronghold and civic pride. Gideon's threat targets the symbol of their security: if they will not support Israel's cause, they will lose the very structure they are trying to protect by hedging. The threat is fulfilled in verse 17.
10. The scale is staggering: me'ah ve-esrim elef ish sholef charev ('120,000 men drawing sword') have already been killed, leaving only 15,000. Karkor is deep in Transjordan, showing how far east the Midianite retreat has gone. The numbers follow the hyperbolic conventions of ancient Near Eastern battle accounts — the theological point is that God's 300 routed an army of 135,000. The phrase benei qedem ('sons of the east') is the umbrella term for the eastern desert coalition.
11. Derekh ha-shokhnei ba-ohalim ('the route of the tent-dwellers') — Gideon uses the nomadic caravan trails to approach the enemy camp from an unexpected direction. The camp was betach ('secure, unsuspecting') — the same word used of Laish in 18:7 and 18:27. They assumed Gideon's exhausted 300 could not reach them this far east. The surprise attack mirrors the night assault of chapter 7, confirming Gideon's tactical ability.
12. Ve-khol ha-machaneh hecherid ('he terrified/threw into panic the entire camp') — the verb charad ('to tremble, to be terrified') in the Hiphil means 'to cause terror.' The same root described the Midianite camp's terror in 7:21. The full-circle irony: the army that once terrorized Israel now experiences charadah itself. The capture of both kings alive is significant — Gideon has specific business with them (vv. 18-21).
13. Milma'aleh ha-Chares ('from the ascent of Heres') — the meaning is debated. Chares can mean 'sun' (a variant of shemesh) or may be a place name. If 'ascent of the sun,' it may indicate Gideon returned before sunrise (i.e., at night, as in his original attack). If a geographic location, it identifies the pass through which he re-entered Israelite territory. The ambiguity is ancient; the KJV renders it temporally ('before the sun was up') while most modern translations treat it as a place name.
14. Va-yikhtov elav ('he wrote for him') — the young man (na'ar) is literate, which is a notable detail suggesting widespread literacy in this period, at least in urban centers. The fact that a random na'ar can write indicates that writing was not limited to scribal elites. The seventy-seven officials (sarei Sukkot ve-et zeqeneiha — 'princes/officials of Succoth and its elders') represents a substantial leadership body for a single town. Gideon systematically identifies every leader who refused him.
15. Asher cheraftem oti ('about whom you taunted/reproached me') — the verb charaf ('to reproach, to mock, to taunt') is the same word used when Goliath 'defied' Israel (1 Samuel 17:10). Gideon quotes their own words back to them — the rhetorical device of returning someone's mockery is a powerful form of vindication. He presents the captive kings as living evidence that their cynicism was wrong. Succoth bet against God's deliverer and lost.
16. Va-yoda bahem et anshei Sukkot ('he taught/made known to them the men of Succoth') — the verb yada ('to know') in the Hiphil means 'to make known, to teach, to cause to experience.' The use of 'teach' for a brutal punishment is grimly ironic: the lesson is inscribed in flesh. Some manuscripts and versions read va-yadash ('he threshed'), which would directly fulfill the threat of verse 7. Either reading indicates severe corporal punishment using thorn-covered implements dragged across the body.

17. Penuel receives harsher punishment than Succoth: not just corporal punishment but execution (va-yaharog et anshei ha-ir — 'he killed the men of the city') and demolition of their tower (natats, 'to tear down, demolish'). The escalation is unexplained — perhaps Penuel's refusal was more defiant, or the tower represented active military resistance. Gideon's violence against Israelite cities is troubling: the deliverer is beginning to act like a king enforcing his will on his own people.
18. Kamokha kamohem ('like you, like them') — the Midianite kings recognize a family resemblance. Their description ke-to'ar benei ha-melekh ('like the appearance/form of the sons of a king') is either genuine praise or an attempt at flattery to save their lives. The word to'ar ('form, appearance, stature') describes physical bearing and nobility. The men killed at Tabor (Mount Tabor, the site associated with Deborah's battle in ch. 4) were Gideon's blood brothers — this transforms the pursuit from military duty into blood vengeance.
19. Achai benei immi hem ('they were my brothers, sons of my mother') — in a polygamous society, full brothers (same mother) share the closest bond. Gideon specifies benei immi ('sons of my mother') to emphasize the intimacy of the relationship. The oath chai YHWH ('as the LORD lives') invokes God as witness to the conditional: lu hachitem otam ('if you had kept them alive'). The implication is that Gideon's pursuit was always partly personal — he was not only acting as Israel's deliverer but as a blood avenger (go'el ha-dam). The dual motivation complicates the narrative's moral texture.
20. Gideon assigns the execution to Yeter bekhoro ('Jether his firstborn') — a culturally significant act. Having the eldest son perform the execution establishes the family's blood claim and initiates the boy into warrior status. But the na'ar ('boy, youth') is too young and afraid (ki yare — 'because he feared'). The word odenu na'ar ('he was still a youth') echoes Gideon's own initial fear and inadequacy. The scene is poignant: Gideon thrusts his son into a role the boy cannot fill.
21. Ki kha-ish gevurato ('for as the man, so is his strength') — a proverbial saying meaning that being killed by a warrior is more honorable than being killed by a boy. The Midianite kings prefer death at the hands of a proven fighter. Gideon complies and takes the saharonim ('crescent-shaped ornaments, moon pendants') from their camels' necks. These crescents are associated with lunar worship common among Arabian peoples; their reappearance in verse 26 connects to the larger theme of pagan religious objects that Gideon accumulates rather than destroys.
22. Meshol banu gam attah gam binkha gam ben binkha ('rule over us — you, your son, your son's son') — this is an explicit offer of hereditary monarchy, a dynastic kingship. The verb mashal ('to rule, to govern') is the standard term for political sovereignty. The threefold generational scope (you, son, grandson) constitutes a dynasty. The justification — ki hosh'a'tanu ('because you saved us') — locates kingship's legitimacy in military deliverance. This is the first explicit attempt to establish monarchy in Israel, predating the request to Samuel in 1 Samuel 8.
23. YHWH yimshol bakhem ('the LORD will rule over you') — Gideon's refusal is the theologically correct answer: Israel's king is YHWH. The triple use of mashal (lo emshol ani / lo yimshol beni / YHWH yimshol) creates a powerful rhetorical structure: human rule denied twice, divine rule affirmed once. This statement articulates the ideal of theocracy — direct divine rule without human intermediary. The tragic irony is that Gideon's subsequent actions (the ephod, the seventy sons, the concubine named Abimelech — 'my father is king') systematically contradict this noble declaration.
24. The pivot from refusal to request is immediate and jarring. Gideon has just declined the kingship but now asks for nezem shelalo ('an earring from his spoil') from every soldier. The narrator explains: kismei zahav lahem ki Yishme'elim hem ('they had gold earrings because they were Ishmaelites'). Ishmaelites and Midianites are used interchangeably here, as in the Joseph narrative (Genesis 37:25-28). Gold earrings were characteristic markers of the Arabian desert peoples. The request seems modest, but the aggregate will prove enormous — and its use devastating.
25. Naton nitten ('giving we will give' — we will gladly/certainly give) — the infinitive absolute construction expresses wholehearted willingness. The simlah ('garment, cloak') spread on the ground as a collection surface becomes a visual symbol: the people eagerly contributing to what will become their own spiritual downfall. The scene parallels the golden calf narrative in Exodus 32:2-3, where Aaron asks for gold earrings and the people eagerly comply. The literary echo is almost certainly intentional.
26. Elef u-sheva me'ot zahav ('1,700 gold') — approximately 43 pounds (19.5 kg) of gold, a staggering amount. The inventory of additional items — saharonim ('crescent ornaments'), netifot ('pendants, drops'), bigdei ha-argaman ('purple garments' — royal attire), and anaqot ('chains, necklaces') — reads like a royal treasury. Purple (argaman) was the most expensive dye in the ancient world, extracted from murex snails. That Gideon accumulates these royal and cultic objects while refusing the royal title is the chapter's central irony.
27. Va-ya'as oto Gid'on le-efod ('Gideon made it into an ephod') — the ephod was originally a priestly garment (Exodus 28:6-14) associated with seeking divine oracles. What Gideon constructs from this mass of gold is likely a free-standing cultic object, not a wearable garment. Va-yiznu khol Yisra'el acharav ('all Israel prostituted themselves after it') — the verb zana ('to prostitute, to commit sexual infidelity') is the standard prophetic metaphor for idolatry: Israel's covenant with YHWH is a marriage, and worship of other objects is adultery. The ephod becomes a moqesh ('snare, trap') — the same word used for the forbidden Canaanite altars in 2:3.
27. The theological irony is devastating: the man who tore down his father's Baal altar (6:25-27) and refused the crown (8:23) creates a new idol. The deliverer becomes the source of a new apostasy. Gideon's ephod does not replace YHWH worship explicitly — it is a YHWH-associated object — but its independent cultic status makes it functionally idolatrous. This is the subtler form of covenant violation: not worshipping a foreign god but distorting the worship of the true God.
28. Va-yikkana Midyan ('Midian was subdued/humbled') — the verb kana ('to humble, to subdue, to bring low') is a comprehensive term for total defeat. Lo yasfu la-se't rosham ('they did not again lift their head') — a vivid idiom for permanent subjugation; a defeated people who cannot even look up. The forty years of rest (va-yishqot ha-arets arba'im shanah) is the standard generation of peace in the Judges cycle. The phrase bimei Gid'on ('in the days of Gideon') ominously limits the peace to his lifetime — what follows his death is already foreshadowed.

- 29.** The narrator pointedly uses the name Yerubba'al ('let Baal contend'), the name Gideon earned by tearing down Baal's altar (6:32). The use of this name in the closing summary creates an ironic frame: the man named for opposing Baal now lives with the ephod he created. Va-yeshev be-veito ('he settled in his house') suggests the life of a landed patriarch — a man of substance and property who, despite refusing the crown, lives like a king.
- 30.** Shiv'im banim yotse'ei yerekho ('seventy sons going out of his thigh/loins') — the phrase is biological and emphatic: these are his own biological sons. Seventy is a conventional number for a large ruling family (cf. Ahab's seventy sons in 2 Kings 10:1). Nashim rabbot hayu lo ('he had many wives') — the multiplication of wives is a characteristic of kingship in the ancient Near East and explicitly warned against in the 'law of the king' (Deuteronomy 17:17). Gideon refused the title of king but adopted every practice of one.
- 31.** Pilagsho asher bi-Shekhem ('his concubine who was in Shechem') — the pilegsh ('concubine') was a secondary wife with lower legal status. That she resides in Shechem rather than Ophrah indicates a separate household and a connection to the major Canaanite city. The name Avimelekh ('my father is king') is devastatingly ironic: the man who said 'I will not rule over you' names his son 'my father is king.' Whether the name reflects Gideon's hidden ambition or the mother's aspirations, it directly contradicts verse 23. Shechem, the city of Abimelech's mother, will become the stage for the horrific events of chapter 9.
- 32.** Be-seivah tovah ('in a good old age') — the same phrase used of Abraham's death (Genesis 25:8). It denotes a full, complete life concluded with honor. Gideon receives a patriarch's death notice — burial in the family tomb (qever Yo'ash aviv), in his ancestral territory of Ophrah. The dignity of his death contrasts sharply with the catastrophe that immediately follows it. The notice that he is buried with his father closes the family frame opened in 6:11 when Gideon was introduced as the son of Joash.
- 33.** Va-yashuvu benei Yisra'el va-yiznu acharei ha-Be'alim ('the Israelites turned back and prostituted themselves after the Baals') — the verb zana ('to prostitute') appears again, connecting Israel's post-Gideon apostasy to the ephod-worship of verse 27. The cycle is immediate: ka-asher met Gid'on ('as soon as Gideon died'). There is no gap, no gradual decline — the apostasy is instantaneous. Ba'al Berit ('Lord of the Covenant') is a Canaanite deity worshipped at Shechem (cf. 9:4, 46). The name is a devastating parody: Israel abandons the God of the true covenant (berit) for a pagan deity who steals the covenant title.
- 34.** Lo zakheru ('they did not remember') — the verb zakhar ('to remember') in Hebrew is not merely cognitive recall but active loyalty. To 'remember' God is to honor the covenant relationship, to act on the basis of what God has done. Failure to remember is not forgetfulness but abandonment. Ha-matsil otam ('the one who rescued them') uses the Hiphil participle of natsal — God is characterized as the one whose defining activity is deliverance. Israel forgets the Deliverer even as they enjoy the deliverance.
- 35.** Lo asu chesed im beit Yerubba'al ('they did not do chesed with the house of Jerubbaal') — chesed here operates at the human-to-human level: the obligation of loyalty and reciprocal faithfulness owed to a benefactor and his family. Israel's failure is twofold: they forgot God (v. 34) and they abandoned the family of God's agent (v. 35). The phrase ke-khol ha-tovah asher asah im Yisra'el ('according to all the good he did with Israel') measures the ingratitude — Gideon's service was comprehensive (kol, 'all'), but Israel's response was nothing. This sets up chapter 9: the ungrateful nation will stand by as Abimelech slaughters Gideon's seventy sons.
- 35.** Register departure: chesed rendered as 'loyal faithfulness' rather than default 'faithful love' because here chesed describes Israel's failure toward Gideon's household — human-to-human covenant loyalty in a political context rather than divine-human covenant.

9

Summary: *Abimelech, Gideon's son by a Shechemite concubine, murders his seventy brothers on a single stone and makes himself king at Shechem. Jotham's fable of the trees warns against him. Shechem rebels, and Abimelech destroys the city before being killed by a millstone dropped by a woman.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jotham's fable (vv. 7-15) is the only true parable in the Hebrew Bible before the prophets. The trees ask the olive, fig, and vine to be king — each refuses because productive trees have better things to do. Only the thornbush (atad) accepts — worthless, combustible, offering shade it cannot actually provide. The political theology is devastating: the bramble-king will burn the cedars of Lebanon. Abimelech's death by a woman's hand (v. 53) echoes Sisera's and previews a pattern: those who seize power by violence die in humiliation.*

Translation Friction: *The word ba'al berit (v. 4, 'Baal of the Covenant' or 'Lord of the Covenant') is the name of Shechem's deity — the irony of a 'covenant god' presiding over covenant betrayal is sharp. We transliterated the divine name and noted the irony. The mass fratricide 'on a single stone' (v. 5, al even achat) suggests a ritual or political execution, not random violence.*

Connections: Shechem's prominence connects to Genesis 34 (the Dinah incident), Joshua 24 (the covenant renewal), and the future division of the kingdom. Jotham's fable anticipates Nathan's parable to David (2 Samuel 12). The phrase 'God repaid the wickedness of Abimelech' (v. 56) fulfills Jotham's curse exactly. The lone survivor Jotham echoes David as the lone survivor of Saul's purges.

¹Abimelech son of Jerubbaal went to Shechem, to his mother's relatives, and spoke to them and to the entire clan of his mother's father's household, saying, ²"Speak in the hearing of all the citizens of Shechem: 'Which is better for you — to be ruled by seventy men, all of Jerubbaal's sons, or to be ruled by one man?' And remember that I am your own flesh and blood." ³His mother's relatives spoke on his behalf in the hearing of all the citizens of Shechem, repeating all these words. Their hearts turned toward Abimelech, because they said, "He is our kinsman." ⁴They gave him seventy pieces of silver from the temple of Baal-Berith. With it, Abimelech hired reckless and worthless men, and they followed him. ⁵He went to his father's house at Ophrah and killed his brothers, the sons of Jerubbaal — seventy men — on a single stone. But Jotham, the youngest son of Jerubbaal, survived because he hid himself. ⁶All the citizens of Shechem and the entire house of Millo assembled. They went and made Abimelech king beside the oak of the pillar that was in Shechem.

⁷When they told Jotham, he went and stood on the summit of Mount Gerizim. He raised his voice and called out to them:

"Listen to me, citizens of Shechem,
so that God may listen to you!"

⁸"The trees once set out
to anoint a king over themselves.
They said to the olive tree,
'Reign over us!'"

⁹"But the olive tree said to them,
'Should I abandon my richness,
by which gods and humans are honored,
just to go sway over the trees?'"

¹⁰"Then the trees said to the fig tree,
'You come — reign over us!'"

¹¹"But the fig tree said to them,
'Should I abandon my sweetness
and my excellent fruit,
just to go sway over the trees?'"

¹²"Then the trees said to the vine,
'You come — reign over us!'"

¹³"But the vine said to them,
'Should I abandon my wine,
which brings joy to gods and humans,
just to go sway over the trees?'"

¹⁴"Then all the trees said to the thornbush,
'You come — reign over us!'"

¹⁵"And the thornbush said to the trees,
 'If you are truly anointing me king over you,
 come, take shelter in my shade.
 But if not —
 let fire come out from the thornbush
 and consume the cedars of Lebanon!'"

¹⁶"Now then — if you have acted in truth and integrity by making Abimelech king, and if you have dealt fairly with Jerubbaal and his household, and if you have treated him as his actions deserved — ¹⁷for my father fought for you and risked his life, and rescued you from the power of Midian — ¹⁸but you have risen against my father's house today and killed his sons — seventy men — on a single stone, and made Abimelech, the son of his slave woman, king over the citizens of Shechem because he is your kinsman — ¹⁹if you have acted in truth and integrity with Jerubbaal and his household today, then rejoice in Abimelech, and let him also rejoice in you! ²⁰But if not — let fire come out from Abimelech and consume the citizens of Shechem and the house of Millo, and let fire come out from the citizens of Shechem and the house of Millo and consume Abimelech!" ²¹Then Jotham fled and escaped. He went to Beer and lived there, away from his brother Abimelech. ²²Abimelech ruled over Israel for three years. ²³God sent a spirit of hostility between Abimelech and the citizens of Shechem, and the citizens of Shechem acted treacherously against Abimelech — ²⁴so that the violence done to the seventy sons of Jerubbaal would be repaid, and their blood would be placed on Abimelech their brother, who murdered them, and on the citizens of Shechem, who strengthened his hand to murder his brothers. ²⁵The citizens of Shechem set ambushes against him on the hilltops and robbed everyone who passed by them on the road. This was reported to Abimelech. ²⁶Gaal son of Ebed arrived with his relatives and crossed into Shechem, and the citizens of Shechem put their trust in him. ²⁷They went out into the fields, harvested their vineyards, trod the grapes, and held a celebration. They entered the temple of their god, ate and drank, and cursed Abimelech. ²⁸Gaal son of Ebed said, "Who is Abimelech, and what is Shechem to him, that we should serve him? Isn't he the son of Jerubbaal, with Zebul as his deputy? Serve the men of Hamor, the father of Shechem! Why should we serve this man? ²⁹If only this people were under my command — I would get rid of Abimelech!" He said to Abimelech, "Build up your army and come out to fight!" ³⁰When Zebul, the governor of the city, heard the words of Gaal son of Ebed, his anger burned. ³¹He sent messengers to Abimelech secretly, saying, "Gaal son of Ebed and his relatives have come to Shechem, and they are stirring up the city against you. ³²Now get up during the night — you and the troops with you — and set an ambush in the open country. ³³At dawn, when the sun rises, move quickly and attack the city. When he and his men come out against you, do to him whatever your hand finds to do." ³⁴Abimelech and all the troops with him moved out at night and positioned themselves in ambush against Shechem in four companies. ³⁵Gaal son of Ebed went out and stood at the entrance of the city gate. Then Abimelech and the troops with him rose from their ambush positions. ³⁶When Gaal saw the troops, he said to Zebul, "Look — people are coming down from the hilltops!" Zebul said to him, "You are seeing the shadows of the hills — they look like men to you." ³⁷Gaal spoke again and said, "Look — people are coming down from the center of the land, and one company is coming by way of the Diviners' Oak!" ³⁸Then Zebul said to him, "Where is your big mouth now — you who said, 'Who is Abimelech that we should serve him?' Isn't this the army you despised? Go out now and fight them!" ³⁹Gaal went out at the head of the citizens of Shechem and fought Abimelech. ⁴⁰Abimelech pursued him, and Gaal fled before him. Many fell dead all the way to the entrance of the gate. ⁴¹Abimelech stayed at Arumah, while Zebul expelled Gaal and his relatives, preventing them from living in Shechem. ⁴²The next day, the people went out into the fields, and this was reported to Abimelech. ⁴³He took his troops and divided them into three companies and set an ambush in the fields. When he saw the people coming out of the city, he rose against them and struck them down. ⁴⁴Abimelech and the company with him rushed forward and took position at the entrance of the city gate, while the two other companies attacked everyone in the fields and struck them down. ⁴⁵Abimelech fought against the city all that day. He captured the city, killed the people in it, tore down the city, and sowed it with salt. ⁴⁶When all the leaders of the Tower of Shechem heard this, they entered the stronghold of the temple of El-Berith. ⁴⁷Abimelech was told that all the leaders of the Tower of Shechem had

gathered together. ⁴⁸Abimelech went up Mount Zalmon — he and all the troops with him. He took axes in his hand, cut a branch from the trees, lifted it, and placed it on his shoulder. He said to the troops with him, "What you have seen me do — hurry, do the same!" ⁴⁹All the troops also cut branches, each person one, and followed Abimelech. They piled them against the stronghold and set the stronghold on fire over the people inside. All the people of the Tower of Shechem also died — about a thousand men and women. ⁵⁰Then Abimelech went to Thebez, besieged it, and captured it. ⁵¹There was a fortified tower in the center of the city, and all the men and women — all the citizens of the city — fled there. They shut themselves in and went up to the roof of the tower. ⁵²Abimelech advanced to the tower and fought against it. He approached the entrance of the tower to set it on fire — ⁵³But a woman dropped an upper millstone on Abimelech's head and cracked his skull. ⁵⁴He quickly called to the young man who carried his weapons and said to him, "Draw your sword and kill me, so they won't say about me, 'A woman killed him.'" His attendant ran him through, and he died. ⁵⁵When the men of Israel saw that Abimelech was dead, each one went home. ⁵⁶So God repaid the wickedness of Abimelech that he had done to his father by murdering his seventy brothers. ⁵⁷And all the wickedness of the men of Shechem God brought back on their own heads. The curse of Jotham son of Jerubbaal came upon them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Abimelech (avimelekh, 'my father is king') — the name itself is a political statement and foreshadows his ambition. He is identified as ben Yerubba'al ('son of Jerubbaal/Gideon'), but critically he goes to Shechem, to achei immo ('his mother's brothers') — his maternal kin. His mother was Gideon's concubine (pilegish) from Shechem (8:31), making Abimelech half-Canaanite and half-Israelite. His power base is not among the Israelite tribes but among the Shechemite clan. The word mishpachat ('clan, extended family') emphasizes the kinship network he will exploit.
2. Ba'alei Shekhem ('citizens/lords of Shechem') — the term ba'al here means 'lord, citizen, property owner,' the civic elite. Abimelech's argument is deceptively simple: would you rather have seventy overlords or one? The number shiv'im ('seventy') is both literal (Gideon had seventy sons, 8:30) and rhetorical — it sounds oppressive. His closing appeal, atsmikhem u-vesarkhem ani ('I am your bone and your flesh'), invokes the kinship bond. This is the language of covenant loyalty (cf. Genesis 29:14, 2 Samuel 5:1), but Abimelech weaponizes it for political ambition.
3. Va-yet libbam acharei Avimelekh ('their heart inclined/turned after Abimelech') — the verb natah ('to turn, incline, stretch') describes a gravitational pull of loyalty. The decisive factor is the tribal bond: achinu hu ('he is our brother/kinsman'). The Shechemites choose ethnic solidarity over any evaluation of character or divine appointment. This is the anti-pattern of Judges: human criteria replacing divine selection. Shechem's decision is immediate and unexamined.
4. Shiv'im kesef mi-beit Ba'al Berit ('seventy silver from the house/temple of Baal-Berith') — seventy pieces of silver from the temple treasury to murder seventy brothers: one shekel per life. The grim arithmetic is almost certainly intentional. Baal-Berith (ba'al berit, 'lord of the covenant') is a Canaanite deity whose name carries devastating theological irony — the 'lord of the covenant' funds the murder of the sons of the man who delivered Israel. The anashim reqim u-fochazim ('empty and reckless men') are mercenaries of the lowest class — reqim ('empty, worthless') and fochazim ('reckless, unstable'). The same word raq ('empty') describes Jephthah's followers in 11:3.
5. Al even echat ('on a single stone') — the mass execution is carried out on one stone, suggesting a ritual or sacrificial dimension. The stone may function as an improvised altar or execution block; the phrase emphasizes the systematic, assembly-line nature of the slaughter. Va-yivvater Yotam ('but Jotham was left/remained') — the verb yatar ('to remain, be left over') is the same root used for the 'remnant' concept in prophetic literature. Jotham (yotam, 'the LORD is perfect/complete') survives because he hid (nechba, 'concealed himself'). The youngest surviving to challenge the tyrant echoes David's position as youngest son.
6. Va-yamlikhu et Avimelekh le-melekh ('they made Abimelech king') — this is the first time in Judges that anyone is actually made melekh ('king'). Gideon refused the title (8:23); his bastard son seizes it by fratricide. Beit Millo ('house of Millo/the filled place') likely refers to a fortified area or citadel within Shechem. The elon mutsav ('oak/terebinth of the pillar/standing stone') connects to the sacred site where Joshua made a covenant (Joshua 24:26) — the coronation of a murderer at a covenant site is deeply ironic. Abimelech's kingship is a grotesque inversion of everything the judges period represents.
7. Va-yissa qolo va-yiqra ('he raised his voice and called out') — the doubled expression signals a formal public proclamation. Mount Gerizim overlooks Shechem from the south and is the mountain of blessing (Deuteronomy 11:29, 27:12); Jotham delivers his curse from the mountain of blessing — another layer of irony. His opening line shim'u elai... ve-yishma aleikhem Elohim ('listen to me... and may God listen to you') frames the fable as more than political rhetoric — it is a prophetic appeal with divine witness. The shift to heightened speech begins here.
8. Halokh halekhu ha-etsim limshoch aleihem melekh ('going, the trees went to anoint over themselves a king') — the infinitive absolute halokh halekhu intensifies the action: the trees deliberately, purposefully set out on this quest. The verb mashach ('to anoint') is the technical term for royal inauguration — the same root as mashiach ('messiah/anointed one'). Jotham's fable is the earliest known political parable in the Hebrew Bible. The trees personified represent the citizens of Shechem seeking a ruler. The olive tree (zayit) is approached first as the most valuable and productive tree in the Israelite economy.

9. Ha-chaddalti et dishni ('should I cease/abandon my fatness/richness') — the olive's response reveals the fable's political logic: productive, valuable members of society have better things to do than rule. The dishni ('my fatness, my oil, my richness') refers to olive oil, essential for cooking, lighting, medicine, and ritual anointing. The phrase yekhabbedu Elohim va-anashim ('by which gods/God and men are honored') elevates olive oil to sacred status — it serves both divine worship and human civilization. The verb nu'a ('to sway, wave, wander') for ruling is deliberately dismissive — kingship is reduced to mere swaying above others.
10. Lekhi at molkhi aleinu ('come, you, reign over us') — the imperative addressed to the fig tree (te'edah) uses feminine forms, following the grammatical gender of trees in Hebrew. The fig tree is the second most valuable tree in the Israelite economy after the olive. The pattern is being established: the trees approach each productive tree in descending order of economic importance.
11. Ha-chaddalti et motqi ve-et tenuvati ha-tovah ('should I abandon my sweetness and my good produce') — the fig tree's refusal echoes the olive's structure but highlights different virtues: motqi ('my sweetness') and tenuvati ha-tovah ('my good fruit/produce'). Figs were a staple food in ancient Israel, dried into cakes for travel and storage. Like the olive, the fig refuses to trade productive contribution for empty authority. The verb nu'a ('sway') again mocks the nature of kingship.
12. La-gafen ('to the vine') — the grapevine is the third productive plant approached. Olive, fig, and vine form the classic triad of Israelite agriculture (Deuteronomy 8:8; 1 Kings 4:25). Each refusal narrows the field until only the worthless candidate remains. The repetition of the invitation formula creates a rhythmic, almost liturgical pattern in the fable.
13. Ha-chaddalti et tiroshi ha-mesammeach Elohim va-anashim ('should I abandon my new wine that gladdens gods/God and humans') — tirosh ('new wine, fresh grape juice') is distinguished from yayin ('fermented wine'). The verb sameach ('to gladden, bring joy') gives wine a quasi-sacred function: it serves both divine offering (drink offerings/nesech) and human celebration. Like the olive's oil, the vine's product operates in both sacred and secular spheres. The three refusals — oil, sweetness, wine — represent the full spectrum of agricultural blessing. What remains is the thornbush.
14. El ha-atad ('to the thornbush/bramble') — the atad is a low, thorny scrub bush, utterly worthless for fruit, shade, or timber. It produces nothing useful and is a fire hazard in the dry season. The contrast with olive, fig, and vine could not be sharper: the trees have exhausted every productive option and now turn to the one plant that contributes nothing. The word kol ('all') is added: all the trees address the thornbush — unanimous desperation. This is Jotham's portrait of Abimelech: the worthless, dangerous option chosen only because every worthy candidate refused.
15. The thornbush's response is the climax of the fable and drips with dark irony. Im be-emet attem moshchim oti le-melech ('if in truth you are anointing me as king') — the thornbush demands absolute sincerity, the one thing this entire arrangement lacks. Bo'u chasu ve-tsilli ('come, take shelter in my shade') is absurd: a thornbush provides no shade. It is a parody of royal protection. The threat is the real point: ve-im ayin tetse esh min ha-atad ve-tokhal et arzei ha-Levanon ('if not, let fire go out from the thornbush and consume the cedars of Lebanon'). Thornbushes catch fire easily in dry conditions; once burning, they spread wildly. The cedars of Lebanon are the most majestic trees in the ancient Near East. The thornbush — the lowliest plant — threatens to destroy the noblest. This is Jotham's prophecy: Abimelech will destroy Shechem, and Shechem will destroy Abimelech.
16. Im be-emet u-ve-tamim asitem ('if in truth and in integrity you have acted') — Jotham now applies the fable to the real situation. The word tamim ('integrity, completeness, wholeness') is a covenant term demanding total honesty. The series of conditional 'if' clauses (im... ve-im... ve-im...) builds a rhetorical case that the Shechemites know they are answering 'no' to every question. Gemul yadav ('the reward/recompense of his hands') refers to Gideon's service — what he earned by his hands in delivering Israel.
17. Va-yashlekh et nafsho mi-neged ('he threw/cast his life from before [him]') — a vivid idiom for risking one's life. The verb shalakh ('to throw, cast') makes the risk visceral: Gideon hurled his very life away for their sake. Jotham calls Gideon avi ('my father'), emphasizing the personal dimension: you are repaying my father's sacrifice with the murder of his sons. Va-yatsel etkhem mi-yad Midyan ('he rescued you from the hand of Midian') — the standard deliverance formula, reminding Shechem of the debt they owe.
18. Ben amato ('son of his slave woman/maidservant') — Jotham deliberately downgrades Abimelech's mother from pilegesh ('concubine,' 8:31) to amah ('slave woman, maidservant'), a pointed insult to Abimelech's status. The repetition of shiv'im ish al even echat ('seventy men on a single stone') hammers the atrocity home. The bitter sarcasm of ki achikhem hu ('because he is your kinsman') throws the Shechemites' own reasoning (v. 3) back in their faces — your only criterion for kingship is ethnic solidarity, and look what it has purchased.
19. Simchu ba-Avimelech ve-yismach gam hu bakhem ('rejoice in Abimelech and let him also rejoice in you') — this is dripping with sarcasm. Jotham knows they have not acted in truth. The conditional im ('if') carries the weight of 'since you obviously have not.' The mutual rejoicing he describes is impossible — relationships built on murder and treachery cannot produce joy. The verse is the ironic setup for the curse that follows.
20. Jotham's curse directly echoes the thornbush's threat in verse 15 — tetse esh ('let fire go out'). The curse is bilateral and self-consuming: fire from Abimelech destroys Shechem, and fire from Shechem destroys Abimelech. Both parties to this blood-soaked arrangement will annihilate each other. The narrator will show this curse fulfilled with terrible precision: Abimelech destroys Shechem (vv. 45-49) and Shechem's legacy destroys Abimelech (v. 53). The fable is not mere rhetoric — it functions as prophetic judgment.
21. Va-yanas Yotam va-yivrach ('Jotham fled and escaped') — two verbs of flight emphasize his danger. Beer (be'erah, 'well') is an unidentified location, possibly south of Shechem. The phrase mi-penei Avimelech achiv ('from the face/presence of Abimelech his brother') is devastating — Jotham must flee from his own brother, the one who murdered all the other brothers. The word achiv ('his brother') keeps the fratricidal horror in focus. Jotham disappears from the narrative, but his curse remains active.

- 22.** Va-yasar Avimelekh al Yisra'el ('Abimelech ruled/was prince over Israel') — critically, the verb is *sar* (from the root *s-r-r*, 'to rule, be prince'), NOT *malakh* ('to reign as king'). Despite being made *melekh* by Shechem (v. 6), the narrator refuses to use royal language. He 'ruled' but the text withholds the dignity of the verb 'to reign.' Three years is the shortest tenure in Judges — divine judgment is already in motion.
- 23.** Va-yishlach Elohim ruach ra'ah bein Avimelekh u-vein ba'alei Shekhem ('God sent a spirit of evil/hostility between Abimelech and the citizens of Shechem') — this is a rare and theologically significant statement. *Ruach ra'ah* ('spirit of evil/hostility') is not a demon in the later sense but a divinely dispatched disposition of enmity. God actively intervenes to fracture the alliance between Abimelech and Shechem. The same concept appears with Saul (1 Samuel 16:14-16). The verb *bagad* ('to deal treacherously, betray') is covenant-violation language — the relationship founded on treachery now collapses through treachery.
- 24.** Lavo chamas shiv'im benei Yerubba'al ('so that the violence of the seventy sons of Jerubbaal might come') — *chamas* ('violence, injustice') is the same word used for the corruption before the flood (Genesis 6:11). *Ve-damam lasum al Avimelekh* ('and their blood to place upon Abimelech') — blood-guilt (*dam*) is treated as a physical substance placed on the guilty party. The narrator distributes responsibility to both parties: Abimelech *asher harag otam* ('who killed them') and *ba'alei Shekhem asher chizzqu et yado* ('who strengthened his hand') — Shechem financed and enabled the slaughter and shares the guilt.
- 25.** *Me'arvim* ('ambushers, those lying in wait') — the Shechemites' rebellion begins with banditry on the trade routes that pass through Shechem's territory. Since Abimelech presumably controlled and taxed these routes, the robbery is both economic warfare and political provocation. *Al rashei heharim* ('on the tops/heads of the mountains') gives the ambushers high-ground advantage on the mountain passes. *Va-yuggad la-Avimelekh* ('it was told to Abimelech') — the passive reporting verb signals the breakdown in the intelligence network between king and city.
- 26.** *Ga'al ben Eved* ('Gaal son of Ebed/Servant') — the name may be pejorative: *ga'al* can mean 'loathing' and *eved* means 'servant/slave.' Whether historical names or narrator's contempt, the effect is to diminish this rival. *Va-yivtechu vo ba'alei Shekhem* ('the citizens of Shechem trusted in him') — the verb *batach* ('to trust') is significant: Shechem transfers its loyalty from one violent opportunist to another. They have learned nothing from the thornbush fable.
- 27.** *Va-ya'asu hillulim* ('they made praise-festivals/celebrations') — the *hillulim* is a harvest festival with religious overtones, likely connected to the autumn grape harvest. The sequence — harvest, treading, celebration, temple worship — describes a complete Canaanite agricultural festival. *Beit elohiham* ('the house/temple of their god') is the temple of Baal-Berith (v. 4). *Va-yeqallelu et Avimelekh* ('they cursed Abimelech') — the verb *qalal* ('to curse, treat lightly') is the opposite of *kavad* ('to honor, make heavy'). Emboldened by wine and religious fervor, the Shechemites publicly curse their king.
- 28.** *Mi Avimelekh u-mi Shekhem ki na'avdennu* ('who is Abimelech and who is Shechem that we should serve him') — Gaal's rhetoric challenges both Abimelech's legitimacy and Shechem's subordination. His counter-proposal is striking: *ivdu et anshei Chamor avi Shekhem* ('serve the men of Hamor, father of Shechem') — Hamor was the original Canaanite ruler of Shechem (Genesis 33:19, 34:2). Gaal is appealing to pre-Israelite Canaanite identity: why should native Shechemites serve the half-breed son of an Israelite? This is ethnic nationalism aimed at reversing Abimelech's hybrid rule. *Zebul* (*zevul*, 'prince/exalted one') is Abimelech's governor in Shechem — his local enforcer.
- 29.** *U-mi yitten et ha-am hazeh be-yadi* ('who would give this people into my hand' — if only this people were in my hand) — the optative formula *mi yitten* expresses a wish. *Va-asirah et Avimelekh* ('I would remove Abimelech') — the verb *sur* ('to remove, turn aside') treats Abimelech as an obstacle to be cleared away. Gaal's final taunt, *rabbeh tseva'akha va-tse'ah* ('increase your army and come out!'), is a direct military challenge — drunken bravado that he cannot back up, as events will prove.
- 30.** *Zevul sar ha-ir* ('Zebul, the ruler/governor of the city') — *sar* designates an appointed official, Abimelech's man in Shechem. *Va-yichar appo* ('his anger burned/was kindled') — the standard Hebrew idiom for intense anger. Zebul's loyalty to Abimelech is about to be tested; unlike the Shechemites, he remains faithful to the king who appointed him. His response will be cunning rather than confrontational.
- 31.** *Be-tormah* ('secretly, by deception/cunning') — the word suggests both secrecy and strategic deception. Zebul cannot openly oppose Gaal while inside the city. *Hinnam tsarim et ha-ir alekha* ('they are besieging/pressuring the city against you') — the verb *tsur* ('to press, besiege, confine') can mean either fortifying the city in rebellion or inciting the city against Abimelech. Zebul frames the situation in urgent military terms to provoke Abimelech's response.
- 32.** *Qum lailah* ('rise at night') — Zebul's tactical advice mirrors the night-attack strategy that characterized Gideon's victory over Midian. *Ve-erov ba-sadeh* ('and lie in ambush in the field') — the verb *arav* ('to lie in wait, ambush') is a military tactic; the *sadeh* ('field, open country') outside Shechem's walls will become the killing ground.
- 33.** *Ki-zroach ha-shemesh* ('at the shining/rising of the sun') — Zebul plans a dawn assault. *Tashkim u-fashat'ta al ha-ir* ('rise early and raid/rush upon the city') — the verb *pashat* ('to strip, raid, rush upon') is a military term for a sudden assault. *Ve-asita lo ka-asher timtsa yadekha* ('do to him as your hand finds') — this idiom means 'do whatever opportunity presents,' giving Abimelech total latitude for violence. Zebul's plan is efficient and ruthless.
- 34.** *Arba'ah rashim* ('four heads/companies') — Abimelech divides his force into four units, a standard military tactic for surrounding a target from multiple directions. The number four suggests coverage from all compass points, cutting off escape routes. This mirrors Gideon's three-company strategy (7:16), though Abimelech adds a fourth. The night movement follows Zebul's advice precisely.

35. Petach sha'ar ha-ir ('the entrance/opening of the city gate') — the gate was the center of civic life and the defensive chokepoint. Gaal standing at the gate suggests either morning routine or watchful vigilance. Va-yaqom Avimelekh... min ha-ma'arav ('Abimelech rose from the ambush') — the timing is precise: Gaal exposes himself just as Abimelech's trap is sprung.
36. Zebul's response is a masterpiece of deception. Et tsel beharim attah ro'eh ka-anashim ('you are seeing the shadow of the mountains as men') — he gaslights Gaal, dismissing the advancing army as an optical illusion. Zebul is buying time for Abimelech's forces to get closer. The word tsel ('shadow') is grimly appropriate — the shadow of death is descending on Shechem. Zebul stands beside Gaal at the gate while secretly orchestrating his destruction.
37. Me-im tabbur ha-arets ('from the navel of the land') — tabbur ('navel, center') identifies a central high point, possibly the sacred center of the Shechem area. Elon me'onenim ('oak of the diviners/soothsayers') — the me'onenim are practitioners of divination (from the root anan, 'to practice divination/observe omens'), and this named oak suggests a site associated with pagan practices. The detail adds to the Canaanite religious atmosphere of the entire narrative. Gaal now recognizes distinct companies approaching from different directions — the trap is closing.
38. Ayyeh efo pikha ('where then is your mouth') — Zebul drops the pretense and turns Gaal's own boasting (v. 28-29) against him. The word peh ('mouth') stands for his bragging — your mouth was brave last night at the festival; where is it now? Asher ma'asta bo ('which you despised/rejected') — the verb ma'as ('to reject, despise') is covenant language often used for Israel's rejection of God. Zebul's taunt forces Gaal into a battle he cannot avoid — fight or be exposed as a coward. The trap is complete.
39. Va-yetse Ga'al lifnei ba'alei Shekhem ('Gaal went out before/at the head of the citizens of Shechem') — despite being trapped, Gaal leads the Shechemites into battle. The preposition lifnei ('before, at the head of') gives him the position of a military leader. But his drunken bravado at the festival (v. 29) is about to meet Abimelech's professional violence.
40. Va-yirddefehu Avimelekh va-yanas mi-panav ('Abimelech pursued him and he fled from his face') — the rout is swift and total. Va-yippelu chalalim rabbim ('many fell slain/pierced') — chalalim ('pierced ones, slain') denotes battle casualties. The pursuit reaches ad petach ha-sha'ar ('to the entrance of the gate') — the same gate where Gaal stood confidently minutes earlier (v. 35). The gate that was his civic platform becomes the boundary of the slaughter.
41. Arumah is Abimelech's base of operations, possibly the same as Rumah. Va-yegaresh Zevul et Ga'al ('Zebul drove out Gaal') — the verb garash ('to drive out, expel') is the same word used for driving out nations from the land. Zebul, having orchestrated Gaal's defeat, now completes the political purge. Gaal disappears from the narrative entirely — he was a minor opportunist crushed between two more ruthless players.
42. Va-yehi mi-mochorat ('it happened on the next day') — the narrative moves quickly. The people of Shechem resume their normal agricultural routine, going out to the sadeh ('field') — perhaps unaware that Abimelech's punitive campaign is not over. Despite Gaal's expulsion, the Shechemites have still participated in rebellion. Va-yaggidu la-Avimelekh ('they reported to Abimelech') — someone provides intelligence, perhaps Zebul maintaining his informant role.
43. Va-yechetsem li-shloshah rashim ('he divided them into three companies') — now three companies rather than four (v. 34), optimized for an open-field engagement rather than a siege. The pattern of ambush (arav) repeating from verse 34 shows Abimelech's consistent tactical approach. Va-yaqom aleihem va-yakkem ('he rose against them and struck them') — the people caught in the fields are defenseless civilians, not combatants. Abimelech's campaign has shifted from defeating Gaal's forces to punishing the general population.
44. Abimelech's tactical genius is evident: he personally seizes the gate (petach sha'ar ha-ir) to cut off retreat into the city, while the other two companies (shenei ha-rashim) sweep the fields. Pashtu ('they rushed/raided') — the verb pashat implies a swift, stripping attack. The people caught between the gate and the field have nowhere to go — trapped between Abimelech at the gate and his forces in the open ground.
45. Va-yittots et ha-ir va-yizra'eha melach ('he tore down the city and sowed it with salt') — the total destruction of Shechem culminates in a ritual act of devastation. Sowing salt renders land agriculturally useless — it is a symbolic curse declaring the site permanently desolate. This act has parallels in ancient Near Eastern treaty curses and was performed on conquered cities marked for permanent abandonment. The irony is crushing: Abimelech, who was made king at Shechem, now annihilates the city that crowned him. Jotham's curse (v. 20) — 'let fire come out from Abimelech and consume the citizens of Shechem' — is being fulfilled with terrible literalness.
46. Ba'alei migdal Shekhem ('the lords/citizens of the Tower of Shechem') — this is the citadel district, possibly the same as Beth-Millo (v. 6). The tseriach ('stronghold, inner chamber, crypt') of Beit El-Berit ('house/temple of El-Berith') — here the deity is called El-Berith ('God of the covenant') rather than Baal-Berith ('Lord of the covenant,' v. 4). The variation may reflect different cult titles for the same deity, or the narrator may be alternating deliberately. The theological irony deepens: the people seek refuge in the temple of the 'god of the covenant' — but no covenant will save them from the consequences of breaking faith.
47. Va-yuggad la-Avimelekh ki hitqabbetsu kol ba'alei migdal Shekhem ('it was reported to Abimelech that all the lords of the Tower of Shechem had assembled') — the passive reporting formula (yuggad) appears again. Abimelech's intelligence network functions efficiently even amid the destruction. The gathering of all the tower's inhabitants into the temple stronghold concentrates the remaining population in one location — making Abimelech's task of total annihilation easier.
48. Har Tsalmon ('Mount Zalmon/Shadow Mountain') — a wooded hill near Shechem. Abimelech's personal example — cutting branches and carrying them on his own shoulder (shikhmo, 'his shoulder,' a wordplay on Shekhem) — shows the charismatic military leadership he inherited from Gideon. Mah re'item asiti maharu asu kamoni ('what you have seen me do, hurry, do like me') — the command echoes Gideon's 'watch me and do likewise' (7:17). Father and son share tactical instinct, but Gideon fought God's enemies while Abimelech massacres his own people.

49. Va-yatsitu aleihem et ha-tseriach ba-esh ('they set the stronghold on fire over/upon them') — the people huddled in the temple crypt are burned alive. Jotham's fable reaches its most horrific fulfillment: 'let fire come out from the thornbush and consume the cedars of Lebanon' (v. 15). The thornbush (Abimelech) has set fire to the very people who crowned him. Ke-elef ish ve-ishah ('about a thousand men and women') — the inclusion of women emphasizes that this is not a battle but a massacre of a civilian population seeking sanctuary in their temple. The 'lord/god of the covenant' could not save them.
50. Tevets is a town northeast of Shechem, apparently part of the same regional rebellion. Va-yichan be-Tevets va-yilkedah ('he camped against Thebez and captured it') — the verbs describe a standard siege operation: encampment followed by capture. Abimelech, flushed with the destruction of Shechem, extends his punitive campaign. The narrator's brevity here is ominous — the real story at Thebez is not the siege but what happens next.
51. Migdal oz ('tower of strength/fortified tower') — the situation mirrors the Tower of Shechem scenario (v. 46), but with different results. The people seek the same kind of refuge — a fortified structure — that failed the Shechemites. Va-yisgeru ba'adam ('they shut/locked behind themselves') — the verb sagar ('to close, lock') suggests barricading. Going up to the gag ha-migdal ('roof of the tower') gives them a defensive height advantage, or so they think.
52. Va-yiggash ad petach ha-migdal le-sorfo va-esh ('he approached to the entrance of the tower to burn it with fire') — Abimelech attempts to replicate his Shechem strategy: burn the fortified refuge with the people inside. The verb saraf ('to burn') echoes the burning of the Tower of Shechem's stronghold (v. 49). He has found a tactic that works and applies it mechanically. But this time, the narrative will not repeat — the fire strategy that destroyed Shechem will be interrupted at Thebez.
53. Va-tashlekh ishah achat pelach rekhev al rosh Avimelekh ('a certain/one woman threw a piece of an upper millstone on Abimelech's head') — the pelach rekhev ('piece of a riding [stone]' — the upper millstone that rides on the lower) is a heavy grinding stone, a domestic implement. The irony is exquisite: the man who murdered seventy brothers on a single stone (v. 5) is killed by a stone dropped by a single woman. Va-tarits et gulgoth ('she cracked/crushed his skull') — the verb ruts ('to crush, crack') and gulgoth ('skull') create a visceral image. The unnamed woman becomes one of the most consequential minor figures in the Hebrew Bible (cf. 2 Samuel 11:21). Abimelech, who slaughtered a thousand men and women at Shechem, is brought down by one woman with a millstone.
54. Shelof charbakha u-moteteni pen yomru li ishah haragathu ('draw your sword and put me to death, lest they say of me, a woman killed him') — Abimelech's final concern is not his soul, not his legacy of governance, not his people, but his masculine honor. Pen yomru ('lest they say') reveals that his dying thought is about reputation, not repentance. The verb motet ('put to death, kill') is a piel intensive — he wants decisive death, not lingering. Va-yidqerehu na'aro va-yamot ('his attendant pierced/thrust him through and he died') — the armor-bearer complies, but it changes nothing. The narrator (and later, Joab in 2 Samuel 11:21) remembers: a woman killed him.
55. Va-yelekh li-meqomo ('they went, each man to his place') — the army dissolves instantly upon the leader's death. There is no successor, no institutional continuity, no dynasty. The entire enterprise was built on one man's ambition, and with his death it evaporates. This is the inherent fragility of power seized by violence rather than granted by divine appointment.
56. Va-yashev Elohim et ra'at Avimelekh ('God returned/repaid the evil of Abimelech') — the verb shuv ('to return, turn back') here means divine retribution. Ra'ah ('evil, wickedness') is the same root as the ruach ra'ah ('spirit of evil') God sent in verse 23. God's instrument of judgment was the very evil that characterized Abimelech's reign. Asher asah le-aviv ('which he did to his father') — the narrator says 'to his father,' emphasizing that the fratricide was ultimately an offense against Gideon/Jerubbaal himself.
57. Heshiv Elohim be-rosham ('God returned upon their heads') — the preposition be-rosham ('on their head') makes the retribution personal and inescapable. Va-tavo aleihem qillat Yotam ben Yerubba'al ('the curse of Jotham son of Jerubbaal came upon them') — the chapter's final verse explicitly confirms that Jotham's curse (v. 20) functioned as prophetic utterance, not merely political rhetoric. The bilateral destruction — Abimelech destroyed Shechem, Shechem (through the woman at Thebez) destroyed Abimelech — fulfills the curse with mathematical precision. The chapter demonstrates what happens when human ambition replaces divine appointment: mutual annihilation.

10

Summary: Tola and Jair judge Israel in a period of relative quiet. Then Israel again serves the Baals and Ashtoreths, and God gives them into the hands of the Philistines and Ammonites for eighteen years. Israel cries out, and God — initially refusing — relents.

What Makes This Remarkable: God's response to Israel's cry is unlike any previous cycle: He refuses. 'Go and cry out to the gods you have chosen; let them deliver you in your time of distress' (v. 14). The sarcasm is devastating. Only when Israel puts away the foreign gods and God 'could no longer bear Israel's misery' (v. 16, vatiqtsar nafsho ba'amal Yisra'el) does He act. The phrase is extraordinary — God's soul is 'shortened' or 'cut short' by their suffering. Divine compassion overrides divine anger.

Translation Friction: The phrase vatiqtsar nafsho (v. 16) literally means 'His soul was shortened' — it describes impatience, but here it is impatience born of compassion, not irritation. We rendered it 'He could no longer bear Israel's misery' to capture the emotional force. The list of seven oppressor nations (v. 12) — a complete number — suggests that Israel has been oppressed from every direction by every available enemy.

Connections: God's initial refusal anticipates His reluctance in 1 Samuel 8 to give Israel a king. The phrase 'His soul was shortened' echoes the same emotional language in Isaiah 63:9. The Ammonite oppression sets up Jephthah's story in chapter 11. Israel's confession (v. 15, 'we have sinned') is the most explicit repentance in Judges.

¹After Abimelech, Tola son of Puah son of Dodo, a man of Issachar, rose up to deliver Israel. He lived in Shamir in the hill country of Ephraim. ²He judged Israel for twenty-three years, then died and was buried in Shamir. ³After him, Jair the Gileadite rose up and judged Israel for twenty-two years. ⁴He had thirty sons who rode on thirty donkeys, and they controlled thirty towns — called Havvoth-Jair to this day — in the land of Gilead. ⁵Jair died and was buried in Kamon. ⁶The Israelites again did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD. They served the Baals and the Ashtoreths, and the gods of Aram, the gods of Sidon, the gods of Moab, the gods of the Ammonites, and the gods of the Philistines. They abandoned the LORD and did not serve Him. ⁷The LORD's anger burned against Israel, and He sold them into the power of the Philistines and the power of the Ammonites. ⁸They shattered and crushed the Israelites that year — for eighteen years — all the Israelites who were beyond the Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead. ⁹The Ammonites also crossed the Jordan to fight against Judah, Benjamin, and the house of Ephraim. Israel was in severe distress. ¹⁰The Israelites cried out to the LORD, saying, "We have sinned against You — we have abandoned our God and served the Baals." ¹¹The LORD said to the Israelites, "Did I not deliver you from Egypt, from the Amorites, from the Ammonites, and from the Philistines? ¹²The Sidonians, Amalekites, and Maonites also oppressed you. You cried out to Me, and I delivered you from their power. ¹³But you have abandoned Me and served other gods. Therefore, I will not deliver you again. ¹⁴Go and cry out to the gods you have chosen — let them deliver you in your time of distress!" ¹⁵The Israelites said to the LORD, "We have sinned. Do to us whatever seems right to You — only please rescue us today!" ¹⁶They removed the foreign gods from among them and served the LORD. And His spirit could no longer bear Israel's suffering. ¹⁷The Ammonites were called to arms and camped in Gilead. The Israelites assembled and camped at Mizpah. ¹⁸The people — the leaders of Gilead — said to one another, "Who is the man who will take the lead in fighting the Ammonites? He will become the head of all the inhabitants of Gilead."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Va-yaqom acharei Avimelekh lehoshi'a et Yisra'el Tola ('after Abimelech, Tola rose to save/deliver Israel') — the verb hoshi'a ('to save, deliver') is the standard judge-deliverer term, and its use here implicitly contrasts Tola with Abimelech: Abimelech never 'delivered' anyone — he only destroyed. Tola (tola, 'worm' or 'scarlet/crimson') is from the tribe of Issachar but lives in the hill country of Ephraim — a detail suggesting tribal displacement or strategic positioning. His grandfather Dodo (dodo, 'his beloved') appears in some genealogies as a clan name.
2. Va-yishpot et Yisra'el esrim ve-shalosh shanah ('he judged Israel twenty-three years') — the 'minor judge' formula is compressed: length of service, death, burial location. No military exploits are recorded, no enemies named, no narrative developed. The verb shafat ('to judge') here likely means ongoing governance and dispute resolution rather than military deliverance. Twenty-three years of quiet stability after Abimelech's three-year reign of terror represents healing and restoration.
3. Ya'ir ha-Gil'adi ('Jair the Gileadite') — Jair ('he enlightens/shines') is from Gilead, the Transjordanian territory east of the Jordan. The Gileadite connection sets the stage geographically for the Jephthah narrative that follows. His twenty-two year tenure, combined with Tola's twenty-three, gives Israel forty-five years of minor-judge stability — a significant period of peace between the Abimelech disaster and the next major crisis.
4. Sheloshim banim rokhevim al sheloshim ayarim ('thirty sons riding on thirty donkeys') — the threefold repetition of sheloshim ('thirty') creates a pattern of abundance. Riding donkeys (ayarim, 'male donkeys/colts') signifies aristocratic status — donkeys were the prestige mount before horses became common. U-sheloshim ayarim lahem ('and thirty towns belonging to them') — a wordplay: ayarim means both 'donkeys' and 'towns/cities' (different Hebrew words with similar sounds). Chavvot Ya'ir ('the tent-villages/settlements of Jair') is a territorial name that persisted, suggesting Jair's legacy was administrative rather than military. The detail ad ha-yom hazeh ('to this day') indicates the narrator's awareness of ongoing place-name traditions.
5. Qamon is an otherwise unknown Gileadite town. The burial notice completes the minor-judge formula. Both Tola and Jair receive compressed notices — no divine call, no enemy, no battle — functioning as transition markers between the Abimelech catastrophe and the Ammonite crisis that follows. Together they represent about forty-five years of relative calm, the narrative breathing space before the next cycle of apostasy.

6. This verse contains the most comprehensive apostasy catalog in the entire book of Judges — seven categories of foreign gods. Va-ya'avdu et ha-be'alim ve-et ha-ashtarot ('they served the Baals and the Ashtoreths') covers the standard Canaanite fertility deities. Then five additional national pantheons are listed: elohei Aram ('gods of Aram/Syria'), elohei Tsidon ('gods of Sidon/Phoenicia'), elohei Mo'av ('gods of Moab'), elohei benei Ammon ('gods of the Ammonites'), and elohei Pelishtim ('gods of the Philistines'). The catalog covers every geographical neighbor — north, northwest, east, southeast, and southwest. The totality is the point: Israel has adopted the gods of every surrounding nation while abandoning the one God who delivered them. Va-ya'azvu et YHVH ve-lo avaduhu ('they abandoned the LORD and did not serve Him') is the final, devastating summary.
7. Va-yichar af YHVH be-Yisra'el ('the anger of the LORD burned against Israel') — the standard formula for divine wrath. Va-yimkerem be-yad Pelishtim u-ve-yad benei Ammon ('He sold them into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the Ammonites') — the verb makhar ('to sell') presents Israel as property that God hands over to foreign powers. The use of two oppressor nations — Philistines from the west and Ammonites from the east — creates a pincer movement of judgment. This dual oppression will split into two separate narrative tracks: the Ammonite crisis is resolved by Jephthah (chapters 11-12), while the Philistine crisis drives the Samson narrative (chapters 13-16).
8. Va-yir'atsu va-yerotsatsu ('they shattered and they crushed') — two near-synonymous verbs of violent oppression are piled together for intensifying effect. The root ra'ats means 'to shatter, break' and ratsats means 'to crush, oppress.' Together they describe a grinding, pulverizing subjugation. The eighteen years of oppression is one of the longer periods in Judges. The geographical focus is Transjordan — the Gileadite territory where Jair had just governed — specifically be-erets ha-Emori asher ba-Gil'ad ('in the land of the Amorite which is in Gilead'), the territory Israel conquered from Sihon (Numbers 21:21-31).
9. Va-ya'avru venei Ammon et ha-Yarden ('the Ammonites crossed the Jordan') — the aggression escalates beyond Transjordan into the heartland of Israel. The three tribes named — Yehudah, Binyamin, and Beit Efrayim — represent the core of western Israel: south, center, and north-center. Va-tetser le-Yisra'el me'od ('it was very distressing/narrow for Israel') — the verb tsarar ('to be narrow, constricted, distressed') conveys the crushing pressure of oppression from all sides. The situation is the most desperate since the opening cycles of Judges.
10. Va-yiz'aqu venei Yisra'el el YHVH ('the Israelites cried out to the LORD') — the verb za'aq ('to cry out, call for help') is the standard appeal for deliverance in the Judges cycle. But this time, unlike previous cycles, the confession is explicit: chatanu lakh ('we have sinned against You'). They name their specific sin: azavnu et Eloheinu va-na'avod et ha-be'alim ('we abandoned our God and served the Baals'). The confession mirrors the accusation of verse 6, suggesting genuine recognition. Yet God's response will be unprecedented — He will not immediately deliver.
11. Va-yomer YHVH el benei Yisra'el ('the LORD said to the Israelites') — this is one of the rare moments in Judges where God speaks directly, not through a prophet or angel. The divine speech begins with a rhetorical question: ha-lo mi-Mitsrayim ('did I not from Egypt...') — God recounts His own resume of deliverances. The list begins with Egypt (the foundational deliverance) and moves through the Amorites (the Transjordanian conquest), the Ammonites, and the Philistines — the very nations now oppressing Israel. The irony is sharp: God saved them from these peoples before, and Israel responded by worshipping their gods.
12. The list continues: Tsidonim ('Sidonians/Phoenicians'), Amaleq ('Amalekites'), and Ma'on ('Maonites' — possibly Meunites, a people from the region of Mount Seir). Lachatsu etkhem ('they oppressed/pressed you') — the verb lachats ('to press, squeeze, oppress') describes the recurring pressure of foreign domination. Va-tits'aqu elai va-oshi'ah etkhem mi-yadam ('you cried to Me and I delivered you from their hand') — God's pattern has been consistent: they cry, He saves. The cumulative weight of this history makes what follows devastating.
13. Ve-attem azavtem oti va-ta'avdu elohim acherim ('but you — you have abandoned Me and served other gods') — the pronoun attem ('you') is emphatic: despite everything I did, YOU abandoned ME. Lakhen lo osif lehoshi'a etkhem ('therefore I will not continue to deliver you') — this is unprecedented in Judges. God refuses to deliver. The verb osif ('add, continue, do again') with the negative lo creates a definitive statement: I am done saving you. This is the most radical divine speech in the book — it challenges the assumption that the cycle of sin-oppression-cry-deliverance will always reset.
14. Lekhu ve-za'aqu el ha-elohim asher bechartem bahem ('go and cry out to the gods you have chosen') — God's command is devastating sarcasm. The verb za'aqu ('cry out') is the same word Israel uses to cry to God (v. 10); God redirects it: use that cry on the gods you preferred. Asher bechartem ('which you chose') emphasizes volition — this was not accident but deliberate choice. Hemmah yoshi'u lakhem be-et tsartkhem ('let them save you in your time of distress') — the challenge is unanswerable: the Baals cannot save. The gods of Aram, Sidon, Moab, Ammon, and Philistia have no power to deliver. God's refusal forces Israel to confront the emptiness of their chosen alternatives.
15. Chatanu asheh attah lanu ke-khol ha-tov be-einekha ('we have sinned — do to us whatever is good in Your eyes') — this is unconditional surrender. Israel does not negotiate, does not make excuses, does not promise future obedience. They accept whatever punishment God chooses. Akh hatsilenu na ha-yom hazeh ('only please rescue us today') — the word akh ('only, just') reduces their request to its barest minimum: we accept any consequence, just save us now. Ha-yom hazeh ('this day, today') conveys the urgency of present suffering. This is the most abject plea in the entire book.
16. Va-yasiru et elohei ha-nekhar mi-qirbam ('they removed the gods of foreignness from their midst') — this time the repentance includes concrete action, not just words. They physically remove (sur, 'to turn aside, remove') the foreign idols. Va-ya'avdu et YHVH ('and they served the LORD') — the cycle reverses. But the critical clause is va-tiqtsar nafsho ba-amal Yisra'el ('and His soul/spirit grew short with the suffering of Israel'). The verb qatsar ('to be short, cut short') with nefesh ('soul, spirit, self') describes God's patience reaching its limit — but not with Israel's sin. God's spirit 'grew short' with their misery (amal, 'toil, suffering, trouble'). Even while angry, even after refusing to deliver, God cannot bear to watch them suffer. This is one of the most profound theological statements in the Hebrew Bible: God's compassion overrides His stated refusal.

17. Va-yitsa'au benei Ammon ('the Ammonites were called together/mustered') — the verb tsa'au here means 'to be summoned, called to assembly' in a military sense. Va-yachanu ba-Gil'ad ('they camped in Gilead') — the Ammonite army positions in the contested Transjordanian territory. The Israelites respond by assembling at ha-Mitspah ('the Mizpah/watchtower') — likely Mizpah of Gilead, a strategic assembly point in Transjordan. The two armies are now positioned for confrontation, setting the stage for the search for a military leader in verse 18 and the Jephthah narrative of chapter 11.
18. Mi ha-ish asher yachel lehillachem bi-vene'i Ammon ('who is the man who will begin/volunteer to fight the Ammonites') — the verb chalal ('to begin, start, initiate') can also carry the sense of 'profane' or 'pierce,' giving the question an edge: who will risk defilement by initiating combat? Yihyeh le-rosh le-khol yoshvei Gil'ad ('he shall be the head of all the inhabitants of Gilead') — they offer the headship (rosh, 'head, chief') as compensation, essentially creating a mercenary arrangement: military leadership in exchange for political power. This sets up the ironic parallel with Abimelech — again, human selection of a leader rather than divine appointment. The question hangs unanswered at the chapter's end, pointing forward to Jephthah in chapter 11.

11

Summary: *Jephthah, an outcast son of a prostitute, is recalled by Gilead's elders to fight Ammon. He negotiates diplomatically, citing Israel's history. When war comes, Jephthah vows a burnt offering of whatever first meets him from his house — and his only daughter comes out dancing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jephthah's vow (v. 31) is the book's most tragic moment. The Hebrew is unambiguous: 'I will offer it up as a burnt offering' (veha'alitihu olah). Whether the vow was fulfilled literally (human sacrifice) or commuted (perpetual virginity) has been debated for millennia. The text says 'he did to her according to his vow' (v. 39) and gives no indication of divine approval. The narrator's silence is the loudest commentary: in a book about failed leadership, Jephthah's victory costs him everything.*

Translation Friction: *Jephthah's historical argument to Ammon (vv. 14-27) is remarkably sophisticated — he cites Numbers 20-21 and appeals to the three-hundred-year statute of limitations on territorial claims. The reference to Chemosh (v. 24) as Ammon's god is unusual since Chemosh is typically Moab's deity; this may reflect an ancient boundary confusion or a deliberate rhetorical choice. We rendered it as the Hebrew gives it and noted the difficulty.*

Connections: *Jephthah is listed among the faithful in Hebrews 11:32 despite the vow's horror — faith and tragedy coexist. His daughter's mourning 'on the mountains' (v. 37) becomes an annual ritual (v. 40), one of the few women's observances in the Hebrew Bible. The historical review (vv. 14-27) parallels Deuteronomy 2 and Numbers 21. The vow's tragedy anticipates Saul's rash oath in 1 Samuel 14:24-45.*

1Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty warrior, but he was the son of a prostitute. Gilead was Jephthah's father. 2Gilead's wife also bore him sons. When the wife's sons grew up, they drove Jephthah out and told him, "You will not inherit in our father's house, because you are the son of another woman." 3So Jephthah fled from his brothers and settled in the land of Tob. Worthless men gathered around Jephthah, and they went out raiding with him. 4Some time later, the Ammonites went to war against Israel. 5When the Ammonites fought against Israel, the elders of Gilead went to bring Jephthah back from the land of Tob. 6They said to Jephthah, "Come and be our commander, so we can fight the Ammonites." 7Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, "Did you not hate me and drive me out of my father's house? So why do you come to me now, when you are in trouble?" 8The elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "That is exactly why we have turned back to you now. Come with us and fight the Ammonites, and you will be head over all the inhabitants of Gilead." 9Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, "If you bring me back to fight the Ammonites, and the LORD gives them over to me, then I will be your head." 10The elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "The LORD is the witness between us — if we do not do exactly as you say." 11So Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead. The people appointed him head and commander over them, and Jephthah spoke all his terms before the LORD at Mizpah. 12Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the Ammonites, saying, "What dispute is between you and me, that you have come to fight against my land?" 13The king of the Ammonites answered Jephthah's messengers, "Because Israel took my land when they came up from Egypt — from the Arnon to the Jabbok and to the Jordan. Now return it peacefully." 14Jephthah sent messengers again to the king of the Ammonites, 15saying to him, "This is what Jephthah says:

Israel did not take the land of Moab or the land of the Ammonites. ¹⁶When they came up from Egypt, Israel traveled through the wilderness to the Sea of Reeds and arrived at Kadesh. ¹⁷Israel sent messengers to the king of Edom, saying, 'Please let me pass through your land.' But the king of Edom would not listen. They also sent to the king of Moab, but he refused. So Israel stayed at Kadesh. ¹⁸Then they traveled through the wilderness, going around the land of Edom and the land of Moab. They came to the east side of the land of Moab and camped on the other side of the Arnon, but they did not enter Moab's territory — because the Arnon was Moab's border. ¹⁹Then Israel sent messengers to Sihon king of the Amorites, who ruled in Heshbon, and Israel said to him, 'Please let us pass through your land to our destination.' ²⁰But Sihon did not trust Israel to pass through his territory. Sihon gathered all his forces and camped at Jahaz, and fought against Israel. ²¹The LORD, the God of Israel, gave Sihon and all his forces into Israel's hand. They defeated them, and Israel took possession of all the land of the Amorites who lived in that region. ²²They took possession of all the Amorite territory — from the Arnon to the Jabbok, and from the wilderness to the Jordan. ²³So now — the LORD, the God of Israel, dispossessed the Amorites before His people Israel. And you think you should possess it? ²⁴Will you not possess what Chemosh your god gives you to possess? And everything that the LORD our God has driven out before us — that we will possess. ²⁵Now — are you any better than Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab? Did he ever dispute with Israel or go to war against them? ²⁶While Israel has lived in Heshbon and its surrounding villages, in Aroer and its surrounding villages, and in all the towns along the Arnon for three hundred years — why did you not reclaim them during that time? ²⁷I have not wronged you, but you are doing me wrong by fighting against me. Let the LORD, the Judge, decide today between the Israelites and the Ammonites." ²⁸But the king of the Ammonites did not listen to the message Jephthah had sent him. ²⁹Then the Spirit of the LORD came upon Jephthah. He crossed through Gilead and Manasseh, passed through Mizpah of Gilead, and from Mizpah of Gilead he advanced against the Ammonites. ³⁰Jephthah made a vow to the LORD and said, "If you will certainly give the Ammonites into my hand, ³¹then whatever comes out of the doors of my house to meet me when I return in peace from the Ammonites will belong to the LORD, and I will offer it up as a burnt offering." ³²Jephthah crossed over to the Ammonites to fight them, and the LORD gave them into his hand. ³³He struck them from Aroer all the way to the approaches of Minnith — twenty towns — and as far as Abel-keramim, inflicting a massive defeat. So the Ammonites were subdued before the Israelites. ³⁴When Jephthah came to Mizpah, to his house, there was his daughter, coming out to meet him with tambourines and dancing! She was his only child — he had no other son or daughter. ³⁵When he saw her, he tore his clothes and said, "Oh, my daughter! You have brought me to my knees — you have become my devastation! I have opened my mouth to the LORD, and I cannot take it back." ³⁶She said to him, "My father, you have opened your mouth to the LORD — do to me what you have spoken, since the LORD has carried out vengeance for you against your enemies, the Ammonites." ³⁷She said to her father, "Grant me this one thing: give me two months to go and wander on the mountains and weep over my virginity — I and my companions." ³⁸He said, "Go." He sent her away for two months, and she went with her companions and wept over her virginity on the mountains. ³⁹At the end of two months, she returned to her father, and he did to her according to the vow he had made. She had never known a man. And it became a tradition in Israel ⁴⁰that the daughters of Israel would go year after year to commemorate the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite, four days each year.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator introduces Jephthah with a devastating juxtaposition: gibbor chayil ('mighty warrior,' a title of highest military honor) immediately collides with ben-ishah zonah ('son of a prostitute woman'). The same title gibbor chayil was applied to Gideon (6:12), but Jephthah's comes with an asterisk — his valor is real, but his social standing is fatally compromised. The word zonah is unambiguous: a woman who sells sexual access. Gilead is both a person and a region; the dual meaning hints that Jephthah belongs to the land even as the land's people will reject him.
2. The brothers' verb is yegareshu ('they drove out, expelled') — the same root (g-r-sh) used for Adam's expulsion from Eden and for the driving out of Canaanite nations. Jephthah is exiled from his own family with the same force Israel uses against foreigners. Their stated reason — ben ishah acheret ('son of another woman') — softens zonah to acheret ('other, different'), but the euphemism barely conceals the contempt. The inheritance dispute (lo tinachal — 'you will not inherit') is both economic and covenantal: Jephthah is denied his portion.
3. Jephthah becomes a bandit chief in erets Tov ('the land of Tob'), an Aramean territory east of Gilead. The men who gather to him are anashim reqim ('empty men, worthless men') — the same descriptor used for Abimelech's mercenaries in 9:4. The parallel is ominous: the last 'empty men' enabler destroyed Shechem. Yet the verb yitlaqtu ('gathered themselves') suggests these men chose Jephthah, drawn to his charisma and skill. The irony

deepens: rejected by respectable society, Jephthah builds his own society from its rejects.

4. The phrase *mi-yamim* ('from days,' meaning 'after some days passed') creates a narrative gap between Jephthah's exile and Ammon's aggression. The Ammonites (*benei Ammon* — 'sons of Ammon') are Israel's eastern neighbors, descended from Lot (Genesis 19:38). Their attack forces Gilead to confront its earlier decision to expel its strongest fighter.
5. The verb *laqachat* ('to take, to fetch') — the elders go to retrieve Jephthah like a tool from storage. The same community that expelled him now needs him. The *ziquei Gil'ad* ('elders of Gilead') represent the established power structure — the very system that endorsed his expulsion. Their journey to Tob is a journey of desperation, not repentance.
6. The title they offer is *qatsin* ('commander, military leader') — a temporary war-chief, not a permanent ruler. The elders want Jephthah's sword but not his authority. The imperative *lekha* ('come!') from the mouths of those who once said 'go!' (by expelling him) creates sharp dramatic irony. They propose a transactional arrangement: fight for us, then presumably return to Tob.
7. Jephthah's response is pointed: *senetem oti* ('you hated me') uses the strong verb *s-n-* ('hate'), and the expulsion verb *garashu* returns from verse 2 — now thrown back at the elders. His question *madua batem elai* ('why have you come to me?') followed by *ka'asher tsar lakhem* ('when it is tight/distressing for you') exposes their motives. The word *tsar* ('tight, narrow, distressing') is the root for *tsarah* ('trouble, distress') — they come not from love but from pressure.
8. The elders escalate their offer from *qatsin* ('commander,' v. 6) to *rosh* ('head') — a permanent leadership role over all Gilead's inhabitants. The word *lakhen* ('therefore, for that very reason') acknowledges the injustice: precisely because they wronged him, they now owe him more. The shift from temporary military authority to permanent political headship reveals how desperate they are. They concede everything Jephthah's brothers once denied him.
9. Jephthah makes the deal explicit and introduces a theological condition: *venatan YHWH otam lefanai* ('and the LORD gives them before me'). He does not claim personal ability — victory depends on divine action. The conditional *im* ('if') creates a two-stage test: first the elders must commit, then God must deliver. Only if both conditions are met does Jephthah accept permanent leadership. His political shrewdness matches his military prowess.
10. The elders invoke YHWH *yihyeh shomea benotenu* ('the LORD will be the one hearing between us') — making God the enforcer of their oath. The verb *shomea* ('hearing, listening') implies judicial witness: God hears the terms and will hold the violator accountable. The phrase *kidvarekha ken na'aseh* ('according to your word, so we will do') gives Jephthah full control over the terms. The oath formula is covenantal — a binding agreement with divine enforcement.
11. The installation happens in two dimensions: the people (*ha-am*) confirm both titles — *rosh* ('head,' the political role) and *qatsin* ('commander,' the military role). Then Jephthah speaks *kol devarav* ('all his words/terms') before the LORD at Mizpah. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') transforms a political negotiation into a sacred covenant. Mizpah ('watchtower') is a significant covenant site — a place where God 'watches' between parties (cf. Genesis 31:49). Jephthah the outcast now stands at the covenant center.
12. Jephthah's first act as leader is diplomatic, not military. The phrase *mah li valakh* ('what is to me and to you?') is a formula of diplomatic protest — 'what business do you have with me?' His question *ki-vata elai lehilachem be-artsi* ('that you have come to me to fight against my land') frames the conflict as Ammonite aggression against legitimate Israelite territory. By saying *artsi* ('my land'), Jephthah claims the land as his own — remarkable for a man who was denied inheritance. The rejected son now speaks for the nation.
13. The Ammonite king's claim defines the disputed territory: from the Arnon (the southern boundary, a deep canyon flowing into the Dead Sea) to the Jabbok (the northern river, modern Zarqa) and to the Jordan (the western border). His demand *hashivah ethen beshalom* ('return them in peace') presents the choice as war or peaceful restoration. His argument — *ki laqach Yisrael et artsi* ('because Israel took my land') — frames Israel as the original aggressor. Jephthah's response (vv. 15-27) will dismantle this claim systematically.
14. The phrase *vayosef od* ('he added again') introduces Jephthah's lengthy diplomatic counter-argument (vv. 15-27), one of the longest diplomatic speeches in Judges. Rather than responding with force, Jephthah builds a careful historical and legal case — demonstrating intellectual sophistication unusual in the Judges cycle.
15. Jephthah opens his legal argument with a flat denial: *lo laqach Yisrael* ('Israel did not take'). The formula *koh amar Yiftach* ('thus says Jephthah') mirrors prophetic messenger formulas — Jephthah speaks as an authorized representative. His argument distinguishes between Moabite/Ammonite territory (which Israel did not take) and Amorite territory (which Israel conquered from Sihon). This distinction is crucial: the disputed land was Amorite, not Ammonite, when Israel took it.
16. Jephthah begins a detailed historical recitation of Israel's wilderness journey. *Yam Suf* ('Sea of Reeds') is the traditional crossing site — rendered here as 'Sea of Reeds' rather than 'Red Sea' following the Hebrew more closely (*suf* = reeds/rushes). Kadesh (Kadesh-Barnea) was the staging area in the southern wilderness where Israel prepared for entry into the land. Jephthah demonstrates command of Israelite history to establish legal precedent.
17. Jephthah's argument establishes Israel's diplomatic good faith: they requested passage (*e'berah-na* — 'let me pass through, please') before resorting to force. Both Edom and Moab refused (*lo shama, lo avah* — 'did not listen, was not willing'). The verb *avah* ('to be willing, to consent') implies Moab's refusal was deliberate, not incidental. Israel's compliance — *vayeshev Yisrael beQadesh* ('Israel stayed at Kadesh') — proves they respected territorial boundaries when asked.

18. Jephthah emphasizes Israel's scrupulous respect for borders: *vayasov* ('they went around, they circled') — the long detour around Edom and Moab rather than forcing passage. The critical detail is *velo va'u bigvul Moav* ('they did not enter Moab's border'), and the reason: *ki Arnon ge'vul Moav* ('because the Arnon was Moab's border'). This establishes that Israel recognized and respected territorial sovereignty. If Israel respected Moab's border at the Arnon, they certainly did not take Ammonite land.
19. The pattern continues: diplomacy before force. Sihon is identified as *melekh ha-Emori* ('king of the Amorites'), not king of Ammon — a critical distinction in Jephthah's argument. The request *na'berah-na be-artsekha* ('let us pass through your land, please') is identical in form to the request made to Edom. The phrase *ad meqomi* ('to my place') implies Israel had a specific destination and was not seeking to conquer Sihon's territory.
20. Unlike Edom and Moab who simply refused, Sihon responds with military force: *lo he'emin* ('he did not trust') Israel's intentions. The verb *he'emin* (from the root '-m-n, related to 'amen' and 'faithfulness') means Sihon refused to have faith in Israel's word. He gathered *kol ammo* ('all his people') and chose Jahaz as his battleground. By initiating combat, Sihon forfeited his territorial claims under ancient Near Eastern norms of war — the key to Jephthah's legal argument.
21. The victory is attributed to YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('the LORD God of Israel') — divine agency, not Israelite military superiority. The verb *vayirash* ('and he dispossessed, took possession') is a key legal term: Israel's title to the land comes by divine conquest, replacing the Amorite inhabitants. Jephthah's point: this was Amorite land (*erets ha-Emori*), not Ammonite land. Israel conquered it from Sihon the Amorite, not from Ammon.
22. Jephthah defines the conquered territory using the same boundaries the Ammonite king cited in verse 13 — Arnon, Jabbok, Jordan — but identifies it as *ge'vul ha-Emori* ('the border/territory of the Amorite'). The fourth boundary — *min ha-midbar* ('from the wilderness') — indicates the eastern desert. The rhetorical strategy is precise: the land the Ammonite king claims was Amorite, not Ammonite, when Israel took it. You cannot reclaim what was never yours.
23. Jephthah's argument turns theological: YHWH Elohei Yisrael *horish et ha-Emori* ('the LORD God of Israel dispossessed the Amorite'). The verb *horish* (hiphil of *y-r-sh*, 'to cause to possess / to dispossess') carries double force — God both expelled the Amorites and granted the land to Israel. The rhetorical question *ve-atah tirashennu* ('and you — will you possess it?') challenges Ammon to contest not Israel's army but Israel's God. Jephthah frames territorial claims as theological claims.
24. This is the most theologically provocative verse in Jephthah's argument. He invokes Kemosh (Chemosh), the national deity of Moab (not Ammon — Ammon's god was Milcom/Molech), framing the dispute in terms both sides can accept: each nation possesses what their god gives them. The argument is diplomatically brilliant but theologically complex — Jephthah appears to grant Chemosh real agency alongside YHWH. Most scholars see this as diplomatic rhetoric rather than polytheistic confession: Jephthah argues on the Ammonite king's own terms. The error in naming Chemosh (a Moabite god) for an Ammonite king may reflect the historical overlap between Moabite and Ammonite territories, or it may be a deliberate conflation in the narrator's source.
25. Jephthah brings a precedent argument: Balak ben Tzippor, king of Moab (from Numbers 22-24), who hired Balaam to curse Israel, never made a territorial claim. The rhetorical questions *harov rav* ('did he contend?') and *im nilchom nilcham* ('did he fight?') use infinitive absolute constructions for emphasis. If Balak — who had far more grievance — never contested Israel's possession, what grounds does the current Ammonite king have? The argument from silence is powerful: three centuries of unchallenged possession.
26. Jephthah's strongest argument: prescription by long possession. *Shelosh me'ot shanah* ('three hundred years') of unchallenged Israelite occupation constitutes legal title. The cities named — Heshbon (Sihon's former capital), Aroer (on the Arnon's north rim), and their satellite villages (*benoteiha* — literally 'her daughters') — define the full extent of the contested territory. The rhetorical question *madua lo hitsaltem ba-et ha-hi* ('why did you not deliver/reclaim them at that time?') is devastating: silence for three centuries forfeits any claim.
27. Jephthah closes his argument with a legal verdict and a divine appeal. The phrase *lo chatati lakh* ('I have not sinned against you') uses the legal sense of *chata'* — 'transgress, commit an offense.' His countercharge — *atah oseh iti ra'ah* ('you are doing evil to me') — reverses the accusation. The climax invokes YHWH ha-Shofet ('the LORD the Judge') to render divine judgment (*yishpot*). The repetition of *sh-f-t* (judge) — *yishpot YHWH ha-Shofet* — is emphatic: the ultimate arbiter is God. Jephthah's case rests on three pillars: historical fact, legal precedent, and divine adjudication.
28. The terse *velo shama* ('and he did not listen') dismisses Jephthah's entire diplomatic effort in a single phrase. The verb *shama* ('listen, heed') implies more than hearing — it means 'to accept, to comply.' The Ammonite king's refusal makes war inevitable and, in the narrative logic, makes the Ammonite king morally culpable for the ensuing bloodshed. Diplomacy exhausted, the narrative pivots to war.
29. The phrase *vattehi al Yiftach ruach YHWH* ('the Spirit of the LORD came upon Jephthah') marks divine empowerment for battle — the same Spirit that came upon Othniel (3:10), Gideon (6:34), and Samson (13:25, 14:6). The verb *avar* ('crossed, passed over') appears three times in rapid succession, creating a sense of sweeping momentum across the tribal territories. The geographic sequence — Gilead, Manasseh, Mizpah of Gilead — traces Jephthah's military march gathering forces. The critical question the narrative raises: if the Spirit empowers Jephthah, does the vow that follows (v. 30-31) also come from the Spirit — or from Jephthah's own anxiety?
30. The phrase *vayidar Yiftach neder la-YHWH* ('Jephthah vowed a vow to the LORD') uses the cognate accusative (*neder/vow + nadar/to vow*) for emphasis — this is a solemn, binding oath. The conditional *im naton titten* ('if giving you will give' — 'if you will certainly give') uses the infinitive absolute for intensity. The vow comes after the Spirit has already come upon Jephthah (v. 29), raising the question: was the vow necessary? The Spirit should have been assurance enough. Many interpreters see Jephthah's vow as revealing insecurity — a man who bargains with God rather than trusting the empowerment already given.

31. This is one of the most debated verses in the Hebrew Bible. The key phrase *veha'alitihu olah* ('and I will offer it up as a burnt offering') uses *olah*, the whole burnt offering where the entire animal is consumed by fire — the most complete form of sacrifice. The word *ha-yotse* ('the one going out') uses a masculine participle, which could refer to a person or animal. The conjunction in *vehayah la-YHWH vecha'alitihu* can be read as 'and' (cumulative: 'it will be the LORD's AND I will offer it as a burnt offering') or 'or' (disjunctive: 'it will be the LORD's OR I will offer it as a burnt offering'). The cumulative reading implies literal sacrifice; the disjunctive reading allows for dedication to divine service. The text's ambiguity may be deliberate — the narrator presents the vow without commentary, forcing the reader to sit with its horror. Ancient interpreters were divided: Josephus and most early readers took it as literal sacrifice; later rabbinic tradition (Radak, Kimchi) argued for lifelong dedication to virginity.
32. The victory is reported with devastating brevity: *vayitnem YHWH beyado* ('the LORD gave them into his hand'). God fulfills the condition of Jephthah's vow — the Ammonites are delivered. The narrator's terseness is itself a statement: the military triumph is not the point. What matters narratively is what happens when Jephthah goes home. The victory that should be the climax becomes merely the trigger for tragedy.
33. The scope of victory is rendered geographically: from Aroer to Minnith (twenty towns) to Abel-keramim ('meadow of vineyards'). The phrase *makkah gedolah me'od* ('a very great striking') emphasizes the scale of destruction. The verb *vayikkane'u* ('they were subdued, humbled') uses the niphal of *k-n-* — forced submission. But the narrator rushes through this triumph, devoting only two verses (32-33) to the entire war. The narrative weight falls elsewhere.
34. The collision between vow and reality arrives with devastating force. The word *hineh* ('there! look!') forces the reader into Jephthah's perspective at the moment of recognition. His daughter is *yotse'at liqrato* ('coming out to meet him') — the exact fulfillment of *ha-yotse asher yetse middaltei veiti liqrati* ('whatever comes out of the doors of my house to meet me,' v. 31). She comes *betuppim uvimcholot* ('with tambourines and dances') — the traditional victory celebration (cf. Miriam in Exodus 15:20). The narrator's parenthetical — *vera'q hi yechidah, ein lo mimmennu ben o-vat* ('she was his only one; he had no son or daughter besides her') — maximizes the pathos. The word *yechidah* ('only one, unique one') echoes Genesis 22:2 where Isaac is called *yachid* ('your only one'), creating an unmistakable parallel between Jephthah's daughter and the binding of Isaac.
35. Jephthah's grief erupts physically — *vayiqra et begadav* ('he tore his garments'), the traditional sign of mourning and anguish. His cry *ahah bitti* ('alas, my daughter!') is raw lament. The verb *hikhra'tini* ('you have brought me low, brought me to my knees') from *k-r-* uses the hiphil intensive — she has destroyed him, though she has done nothing wrong. The phrase *ve-at hayit be-okhra'i* ('you have become among my troublers') uses the root '*k-r-*', the same root in Achan's name and story (Joshua 7) — one who brings catastrophe on the community. But the devastating self-indictment follows: *anokhi patsiti fi el-YHWH* ('I opened my mouth to the LORD') — the fault is his words, not her existence. *Velo ukhal lashuv* ('I cannot return/retract') reflects the ancient Near Eastern understanding that vows to a deity are irrevocable (cf. Numbers 30:3).
36. The daughter's response is among the most remarkable speeches in the Hebrew Bible. She addresses him as *avi* ('my father') — the relationship word that should have prevented the vow's fulfillment. Her words *aseh li ka'asher yatsa mipikha* ('do to me according to what came out of your mouth') accept the vow's binding force. She frames compliance as the proper response to God's faithfulness: *acharei asher asah lekha YHWH neqamot me-oyvekha* ('since the LORD has carried out vengeance for you against your enemies'). Her theology is flawless — God kept His side of the bargain; the human side must be honored too. She never names herself as victim; she speaks as a covenant participant. Her courage exceeds her father's — she faces the vow's consequence without tearing her garments.
37. Her single request: *harpeh mimmenni shenayim chodashim* ('release me for two months'). The verb *harpeh* ('let go, release, relax your grip') implies she is already held by the vow's power. She will *yaradti al he-harim* ('go down upon the mountains') — the verb *yarad* normally means 'descend,' but here likely means 'roam' or 'wander' over the mountain terrain. What she mourns is *al betulai* ('over my virginity') — *betulim* refers to her virginal state, meaning she will never marry, never bear children, never continue her father's line. In an Israelite context where lineage and progeny were paramount blessings, this is a form of death even if she physically survives. Her companions (*re'otai* — 'my female friends') will share her grief.
38. Jephthah's response is a single word: *lekhi* ('go'). The brevity speaks volumes — he has nothing left to say. The narrator reports without commentary: *vayishlach otah shenei chodashim* ('he sent her for two months'). The verb *shalach* ('send') is the same used for sending messengers — but here he sends his daughter to grieve her own life. She and her companions *vattevk* ('wept') — the community of women shares what the community of men caused. The mountains become a space of ritual lamentation, separate from the settlements where men make vows and wars.
39. This is the pivotal and deliberately ambiguous verse. The narrator states *vaya'as lah et nidro asher nadar* ('he did to her his vow which he had vowed') — but does NOT describe what he actually did. The text is silent at the precise moment the reader most needs to know. Two major interpretive traditions exist: (1) LITERAL SACRIFICE — Jephthah offered his daughter as an *olah* (burnt offering), which is the plain meaning of the vow in v. 31 and was understood this way by Josephus, Pseudo-Philo, and most early interpreters; (2) PERPETUAL DEDICATION — Jephthah dedicated his daughter to lifelong virginity and service to God, reading the *vav* in v. 31 as disjunctive ('or'), supported by the narrator's note *vehi lo yade'ah ish* ('she did not know a man'), which would be superfluous if she were dead. The phrase *vattehi choq be-Yisrael* ('it became a statute/custom in Israel') introduces the annual commemoration in v. 40. CRITICAL: Unlike Genesis 22, where God intervenes to stop Abraham's sacrifice of Isaac, no angel speaks here. No ram appears. The narrator offers no divine commentary — no approval, no condemnation. The silence of God in this text is itself a theological statement that the reader must confront.
40. The chapter closes with an annual women's ritual: *mi-yamim yamimah* ('from days to days' — 'year after year') the *benot Yisrael* ('daughters of Israel') gather *letannot levat Yiftach* ('to commemorate/lament for the daughter of Jephthah'). The verb *tannot* is debated: it may derive from *t-n-h* ('to recount, to rehearse, to lament') — either retelling her story or mourning her fate. The four-day annual observance (*arba'at yamim ba-shanah*) preserved her memory in Israelite women's tradition. She is never named — she is simply *bat Yiftach* ('Jephthah's daughter'), defined entirely by the father whose vow consumed her. The women of Israel remember what the men of Israel caused. The Judges cycle continues its descent: from

Gideon's compromised victory to Abimelech's tyranny to Jephthah's devastating vow — each judge more costly than the last.

12

Summary: *The Ephraimites challenge Jephthah for not summoning them to battle. Civil war breaks out. Jephthah's Gileadites use the word 'Shibboleth' to identify fleeing Ephraimites, who cannot pronounce the 'sh' sound. 42,000 Ephraimites fall.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Shibboleth test (v. 6) is the Bible's most famous linguistic episode. The Ephraimites' dialect lacked the shin sound, producing 'Sibboleth' instead of 'Shibboleth' — and this phonetic difference became a death sentence. The word itself means 'ear of grain' or 'flowing stream,' and its meaning is irrelevant; what matters is pronunciation. Identity is betrayed by accent, not by argument.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase vayyomru lo Sibbolet (v. 6, 'they would say Sibbolet') represents a dialectal difference that we can describe but cannot reproduce in English — both 'sh' and 's' exist in English, so the test's lethality requires explanation. We rendered the episode as the Hebrew presents it and noted the phonological reality. The number 42,000 (v. 6) is staggering for inter-tribal conflict — it exceeds most external wars in the book.*

Connections: *Ephraim's complaint echoes their identical challenge to Gideon (8:1-3), but Jephthah — lacking Gideon's diplomacy — responds with violence. The inter-tribal warfare previews the civil war against Benjamin (ch. 20). The Shibboleth episode has become a universal metaphor for identity testing. The three minor judges closing the chapter (Ibzan, Elon, Abdon) mark time between the major narratives.*

¹The men of Ephraim mobilized and crossed over to Zaphon. They said to Jephthah, "Why did you cross over to fight the Ammonites without calling us to go with you? We will burn your house down on top of you!" ²Jephthah said to them, "I and my people had a fierce dispute with the Ammonites. I called for your help, but you did not rescue me from their hand. ³When I saw that you would not save me, I took my life in my hands and crossed over against the Ammonites, and the LORD gave them into my hand. So why have you come up against me today to fight me?" ⁴Jephthah gathered all the men of Gilead and fought Ephraim. The men of Gilead struck down the Ephraimites, because they had said, "You Gileadites are fugitives from Ephraim — you are nothing but Ephraim's and Manasseh's rejects!" ⁵The Gileadites captured the fords of the Jordan ahead of the Ephraimites. Whenever a fugitive from Ephraim said, "Let me cross over," the men of Gilead would ask him, "Are you an Ephraimite?" If he said, "No," ⁶they would say to him, "Say 'shibboleth.'" If he said "sibboleth" — unable to pronounce it correctly — they would seize him and slaughter him at the fords of the Jordan. Forty-two thousand Ephraimites fell at that time. ⁷Jephthah judged Israel for six years. Then Jephthah the Gileadite died and was buried in one of the towns of Gilead. ⁸Following him, Ibzan of Bethlehem served as judge over Israel. ⁹He had thirty sons and thirty daughters. He sent his daughters out in marriage and brought in thirty daughters from outside for his sons. He judged Israel for seven years. ¹⁰The Ibzan died and was buried in Bethlehem. ¹¹After him, Elon the Zebulonite judged Israel. He judged Israel for ten years. ¹²Elon the Zebulonite died and was buried in Aijalon in the territory of Zebulun. ¹³After him, Abdon son of Hillel the Pirathonite judged Israel. ¹⁴He had forty sons and thirty grandsons who rode on seventy donkeys. He judged Israel for eight years. ¹⁵Abdon son of Hillel the Pirathonite died and was buried in Pirathon, in the territory of Ephraim, in the hill country of the Amalekites.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Ephraimites' complaint echoes their confrontation with Gideon (8:1-3), but this time the rhetoric is far more violent: beitekha nisrof alekha ba-esh ('your house we will burn over you with fire'). The verb yitsa'eq ('they cried out, assembled') implies a military muster, not just verbal protest. The phrase avar tsafonah ('crossed northward') may refer to the town Zaphon (in the Jordan Valley) rather than the direction 'north.' Ephraim's grievance — that they were excluded from the campaign — masks tribal jealousy: they want credit for a victory they did nothing to achieve. The pattern of Ephraimite entitlement recurs across Judges and foreshadows the eventual fracture between northern and southern tribes.

2. Jephthah's response is defensive but factual: *ish riv hayiti ani ve-ammi* ('a man of strife I was, I and my people') — the conflict was real and intense. Unlike Gideon's diplomatic deflection (8:2-3), Jephthah confronts directly: *va'ez'aq etkhem* ('I cried out to you') — the verb *za'aq* is the same cry of distress Israel makes to God throughout Judges. His accusation: *velo hosha'tem oti miyyadam* ('you did not save me from their hand'). Whether this summons actually happened or Jephthah is fabricating a defense, the text does not say — but his point stands either way.
3. The phrase *va'asimah nafshi bekhappi* ('I placed my life in my palm') is a vivid idiom for mortal risk — holding one's own life as if it might fall and shatter. Jephthah attributes the victory to divine action: *vayitnem YHWH beyadi* ('the LORD gave them into my hand'), implicitly asking: if God endorsed my leadership with victory, who are you to challenge it? His final question — *lamah alitem elai* ('why have you come up against me?') — frames Ephraim's action as aggression against a divinely validated leader.
4. The insult *pelitei Efrayim attem* ('fugitives of Ephraim you are') cuts deep — the Ephraimites dismiss Gileadites as refugees, people without their own tribal identity, absorbed between Ephraim and Manasseh. This echoes Jephthah's personal history of rejection (11:1-3). The taunt transforms a diplomatic dispute into tribal war. Gilead's furious response — *vayakku anshei Gil'ad et Efrayim* ('the men of Gilead struck Ephraim') — escalates from words to civil war. Where Gideon defused Ephraimite anger with flattery (8:2), Jephthah answers with the sword.
5. The Gileadites seize the *ma'abrot ha-Yarden* ('fords/crossing points of the Jordan') — the only way for fleeing Ephraimites to reach home on the west bank. This strategic control transforms a military victory into a systematic execution. The irony is sharp: *pelitei Efrayim* ('fugitives of Ephraim') was the insult Ephraim hurled at Gilead (v. 4), and now Ephraim's own men are the actual fugitives. The interrogation *ha-Efrati atah* ('are you an Ephrathite/Ephraimite?') begins the test — but a simple denial is not enough.
6. This verse gave the English language the word 'shibboleth' — a test of group identity through speech. The Hebrew word *shibboleth* means either 'flowing stream' (fitting the Jordan River context) or 'ear of grain.' The Ephraimite dialect lacked the *shin/sin* distinction — they pronounced the initial consonant as *samekh* rather than *shin*, producing *sibboleth* instead of *shibboleth*. The phrase *velo yakhin ledabber ken* ('he could not establish/manage to speak thus') indicates a genuine dialectal inability, not deliberate deception. The verb *vayishchatuhu* ('they slaughtered him') uses the verb reserved for animal slaughter (*sh-ch-t*), dehumanizing the victims. The number *arba'im ushenayim elef* ('forty-two thousand') represents catastrophic intertribal violence — Israelite killing Israelite over pronunciation. The Judges cycle's descent continues: God's deliverer now presides over civil war.
7. Jephthah's tenure is brief — *shesh shanim* ('six years') — and his burial notice is strikingly vague: *vayiqqaver be-arei Gil'ad* ('he was buried in the towns of Gilead'). The plural *arei* ('towns of') rather than a specific city name is unusual; most judges receive a named burial site. Some scholars suggest textual corruption, others that the vagueness reflects Jephthah's ambiguous legacy — a man who belonged nowhere specific, the perpetual outsider even in death. His judgeship is summarized without evaluation; the narrator lets the reader weigh the cost.
8. The narrative shifts to a series of 'minor judges' — figures given brief biographical notices without deliverance stories. Ibzan is from Beit Lechem ('Bethlehem'), though scholars debate whether this is the famous Bethlehem in Judah or a lesser-known Bethlehem in the Zebulun tribal territory (cf. Joshua 19:15). The minor judges provide chronological continuity and suggest that Israel's governance was not limited to charismatic military deliverers.
9. Ibzan's biography is defined by family: *sheloshim banim ushloshim banot* ('thirty sons and thirty daughters') — an enormous household indicating wealth and status. The phrase *shillach ha-chutsah* ('he sent out') refers to marrying daughters into other clans, while *hevi levanav min ha-chuts* ('he brought in for his sons from outside') means arranging marriages from other families. This network of sixty marriages represents massive political alliance-building through intermarriage — governance through kinship networks rather than military force. The contrast with Jephthah, who lost his only daughter, is painful.
10. Ibzan receives a proper named burial — *bebeit lachem* ('in Bethlehem') — unlike Jephthah's vague burial notice (v. 7). The minor judges' biographical notices follow a consistent formula: judgeship duration, family details, death, and burial location. These formulaic entries contrast sharply with the extended, troubled narratives of the major judges.
11. Elon (meaning 'oak' or 'great tree') is from the tribe of Zebulun in the northern Galilee region. His entry is the most minimal of all the minor judges — no family details, no notable achievements, only his tribal affiliation and tenure: *eser shanim* ('ten years'). The name Elon may connect to the sacred oak trees associated with worship sites throughout Judges and Genesis.
12. Elon is buried in Ayalon — a name that shares the same consonantal root as his own name ('-y-l-n, related to 'oak/tree'). This Ayalon in Zebulun's territory is distinct from the more famous Aijalon in Dan (cf. Joshua 10:12). The phonetic connection between the judge's name and his burial site may be coincidental or may reflect a local tradition linking the person to the place.
13. Abdon ('servant, service') son of Hillel ('praise') comes from Pirathon, a town in the Ephraim hill country (cf. 2 Samuel 23:30). His name Avdon from the root '-b-d ('to serve') and his father's name Hillel from h-l-l ('to praise') together suggest 'servant of praise' — though this may be coincidental rather than intentional. His Ephraimite origin is notable given the recent intertribal war with Ephraim (vv. 1-6).
14. Abdon's household is the largest among the minor judges: *arba'im banim ushloshim benei vanim* ('forty sons and thirty grandsons') — seventy male descendants in total. The detail that they rode *al shiv'im ayarim* ('on seventy donkey colts') signals wealth and status; donkeys were the riding animals of nobility and judges (cf. 5:10, 10:4). The number seventy echoes Gideon's seventy sons (8:30) and carries symbolic weight as a number of completeness (7 × 10). His eight-year tenure (*shemoneh shanim*) is modest compared to his household's grandeur.

15. Abdon is buried bePir'aton be-erets Efrayim behar ha-Amaleqi ('in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim in the mountain of the Amalekite'). The reference to har ha-Amaleqi ('the hill of the Amalekite') is enigmatic — Amalekites were desert nomads associated with the Negev and Sinai, not the Ephraim highlands. The name may preserve an ancient memory of Amalekite incursion (cf. 6:3) or a local toponym. The chapter closes with the last of the minor judges before the Samson cycle begins (chapters 13-16), marking the final descent into the chaos that will culminate in the book's concluding refrain: 'In those days there was no king in Israel.'

13

Summary: *An angel of the LORD appears to Manoah's barren wife, announcing she will bear a son who will be a Nazirite from the womb and begin to deliver Israel from the Philistines. Manoah encounters the angel and is terrified. Samson is born.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The annunciation to Manoah's wife follows the barren-mother pattern (Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, Hannah), but with a twist: the angel speaks to the woman, not the man, and she understands the encounter better than her husband does. Manoah asks the angel's name and receives the answer peli ('wonderful/beyond understanding,' v. 18) — the same root as the 'Wonderful' of Isaiah 9:6. The angel ascends in the altar flame (v. 20), merging sacrifice and theophany.*

Translation Friction: *The Nazirite vow (v. 5) — no wine, no razor, no corpse contact (Numbers 6) — is imposed before birth, making it involuntary. Samson will violate all three conditions during his life. We rendered nazir as 'Nazirite' (one set apart to God) and noted that the word shares a root with nezer ('crown/consecration'). The phrase yachel lehoshi'a (v. 5, 'begin to deliver') is precise: Samson only begins what later generations must complete.*

Connections: *The barren-mother annunciation echoes Genesis 18 (Sarah) and anticipates 1 Samuel 1 (Hannah) and Luke 1 (Mary). The angel-in-the-flame echoes the burning bush (Exodus 3). Samson's incomplete deliverance ('begin to deliver') sets up the Philistine conflict that dominates 1 Samuel. The Nazirite vow connects to Numbers 6 and anticipates Samuel's dedication (1 Samuel 1:11).*

¹The Israelites again did what was evil in the sight of the LORD, and the LORD gave them into the hand of the Philistines for forty years. ²There was a man from Zorah, from the clan of Dan, whose name was Manoah. His wife was unable to conceive and had never given birth. ³The angel of the LORD appeared to the woman and said to her, "You are currently unable to conceive and have not given birth, but you will become pregnant and bear a son. ⁴Now be careful: do not drink wine or any fermented drink, and do not eat anything ritually impure. ⁵For you will become pregnant and bear a son. No razor is to touch his head, because the boy will be a Nazirite dedicated to God from the womb. He will begin to rescue Israel from the hand of the Philistines." ⁶The woman went and told her husband, "A man of God came to me. His appearance was like the appearance of an angel of God — utterly awe-inspiring. I did not ask him where he was from, and he did not tell me his name. ⁷He said to me, 'You will become pregnant and bear a son. Now, do not drink wine or any fermented drink, and do not eat anything ritually impure, because the boy will be a Nazirite of God from the womb until the day of his death.'" ⁸Manoah prayed to the LORD and said, "Please, my Lord, let the man of God you sent come to us again and instruct us on what we should do for the child who is to be born." ⁹God listened to Manoah's voice, and the angel of God came again to the woman while she was sitting in the field. But Manoah her husband was not with her. ¹⁰The woman hurried and ran to tell her husband. She said to him, "The man who came to me the other day has appeared to me again!" ¹¹Manoah got up and followed his wife. He came to the man and asked him, "Are you the man who spoke to this woman?" He answered, "I am." ¹²Manoah said, "When your words come true, what is to be the rule for the boy's life and his work?" ¹³The angel of the LORD said to Manoah, "The woman must be careful about everything I told her. ¹⁴She must not eat anything that comes from the grapevine, and she must not drink wine or any fermented drink, and she must not eat anything ritually impure. She must observe everything I commanded her." ¹⁵Manoah said to the angel of the LORD, "Please let us keep you here while we prepare a young goat for you." ¹⁶The angel of the LORD said to Manoah, "Even if you keep me here, I will not eat your food. But if you prepare a burnt offering, offer it to the LORD." (For Manoah did not know that he was the angel of the LORD.) ¹⁷

Manoah asked the angel of the LORD, "What is your name, so that when your words come true, we can honor you?" ¹⁸The angel of the LORD said to him, "Why do you ask for my name? It is beyond comprehension." ¹⁹Manoah took the young goat and the grain offering and offered them on the rock to the LORD — and He performed something extraordinary while Manoah and his wife watched. ²⁰As the flame rose from the altar toward the sky, the angel of the LORD ascended in the flame of the altar. Manoah and his wife watched, and they fell face-down to the ground. ²¹The angel of the LORD did not appear again to Manoah and his wife. Then Manoah realized that he was the angel of the LORD. ²²Manoah said to his wife, "We are certainly going to die, because we have seen God!" ²³But his wife said to him, "If the LORD intended to kill us, He would not have accepted the burnt offering and the grain offering from our hands. He would not have shown us all these things, and He would not have announced something like this to us just now." ²⁴The woman gave birth to a son and named him Samson. The boy grew, and the LORD blessed him. ²⁵The Spirit of the LORD began to stir him in the camp of Dan, between Zorah and Eshtaol.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The seventh and final cycle opens with the standard formula *va-yosifu benei Yisra'el la'asot ha-ra* ('the Israelites again did the evil'). This is the longest oppression in Judges — *arba'im shanah* ('forty years'), a full generation under Philistine domination. Unlike previous cycles, there is no cry for deliverance recorded. The absence of Israel's cry is striking: the people seem to have accepted Philistine rule as normal. The decline of the judges era reaches its nadir.
2. The introduction follows the birth-announcement pattern found with Isaac (Genesis 18), Samuel (1 Samuel 1), and John the Baptist (Luke 1). The word *aqarah* ('barren') followed by *ve-lo yaladah* ('and she had not given birth') is emphatic — the situation is humanly impossible. Notably, the wife is never named; she remains 'the wife of Manoah' throughout, yet she proves to be the more perceptive and theologically astute of the pair. Zorah sits on the border between Israelite and Philistine territory in the Shephelah — the zone of conflict that defines Samson's entire life.
3. Malakh YHWH ('the angel of the LORD') — this figure in Judges is consistently presented as more than a mere messenger. In chapter 6, the malakh YHWH is identified with God Himself (6:14, 22). The appearance to the woman rather than to her husband is significant — God chooses to reveal the birth announcement to the one who will carry the child. The promise structure — present impossibility (*aqarah*, 'barren') followed by future certainty (*veharit*, 'you will conceive') — echoes the Abrahamic promise pattern.
4. The prohibitions begin with the mother, not the child — she must observe Nazirite-like restrictions during pregnancy. Yayin ('wine') and shekhar ('strong drink, fermented beverage') cover all alcoholic drinks. The term *tame* ('impure, unclean') refers to foods forbidden under the Levitical dietary laws. The mother's body must be consecrated because the child she carries is already set apart. This prenatal holiness requirement is unique to Samson among all the judges.
5. *Morah lo ya'aleh al rosho* ('a razor shall not come upon his head') — the uncut hair is the visible sign of the Nazirite vow (Numbers 6:5). The full Nazirite vow includes three prohibitions: no grape products, no contact with the dead, no cutting the hair. Samson will eventually violate all three. The word *nezir* ('Nazirite, set apart one') comes from the root *nazar* ('to separate, consecrate'). The phrase *min ha-baten* ('from the womb') marks this as a lifelong consecration — unlike voluntary Nazirite vows which had a set duration (Numbers 6:13). The verb *yachel* ('he will begin') is critically important: Samson will only begin the deliverance from the Philistines. The full liberation requires Samuel, Saul, and David. Even before his birth, Samson's mission is framed as incomplete.
6. She describes the visitor as *ish ha-Elohim* ('a man of God') with an appearance like *malakh ha-Elohim* ('an angel of God') — she senses the divine nature without fully identifying it. The adjective *nora me'od* ('very terrible/awesome, utterly awe-inspiring') captures the numinous terror of the divine presence. Her restraint in not asking his origin or name shows either reverence or awe-struck inability to question. The rendering uses 'awe-inspiring' rather than KJV's 'terrible' because the modern English sense of 'terrible' has shifted to mean 'bad' rather than 'fear-inducing.'
7. The woman's report to Manoah subtly differs from the angel's original words. She adds *ad yom moto* ('until the day of his death') — a phrase the angel did not use in verse 5. She also omits the angel's statement about the razor and about the child beginning to deliver Israel. Whether this represents imperfect memory, interpretive expansion, or the narrator's intentional shaping is debated. The addition of 'until the day of his death' foreshadows the tragic end of the Samson story — his consecration and his death are linked from the beginning.
8. *Va-ye'tar Manoah* ('Manoah prayed earnestly') — the verb *atar* means 'to pray, to entreat,' carrying a sense of persistent, heartfelt petition. Manoah's request is understandable — he wants practical parenting instructions (*mah na'aseh la-na'ar*, 'what shall we do for the boy'). But it also reveals that he needs to see and hear the messenger for himself. The prayer addresses God (YHWH) while asking for the return of the *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') — Manoah correctly connects the messenger with his Sender.
9. God answers Manoah's prayer but sends the angel to the woman again — not to Manoah. The detail that Manoah *ein immah* ('was not with her') creates a pattern: the angel consistently seeks the woman. She is the primary recipient of the revelation. This may be because she demonstrates greater spiritual perception throughout the narrative — she recognizes the divine nature of the visitor (v. 6) and later offers the correct theological response when Manoah panics (v. 23).

10. Va-temaher... va-tarots ('she hurried... she ran') — the double verb conveys urgency and excitement. Despite the angel appearing to her a second time, she immediately shares the experience with Manoah. The phrase ba-yom ('the day,' or 'the other day') is ambiguous — it could mean 'that day' or 'recently.' The woman serves as mediator between the divine messenger and her husband, a reversal of typical ancient Near Eastern patriarchal patterns.
11. Va-yelekh Manoach acharei ishto ('Manoah went after his wife') — he follows her lead, literally and figuratively. His question ha-attah ha-ish ('Are you the man?') seeks confirmation of identity. The angel's terse response ani ('I am') is simply affirmative here, though the word carries deeper resonances throughout the Hebrew Bible as a form of divine self-identification.
12. Mishpat ha-na'ar u-ma'asehu ('the rule of the boy and his work/deed') — mishpat here means 'prescribed manner, regulation, custom' rather than 'judgment.' Manoah wants a practical manual for raising a Nazirite child. The term ma'asehu ('his deed, his work') asks about the boy's future mission. Manoah's question is well-intentioned but slightly presumptuous — he is asking for details beyond what the angel offered.
13. The angel redirects Manoah to what was already said to the woman — tishamer ('she must guard, be careful'). The angel does not provide the additional instructions Manoah sought. The revelation was sufficient the first time. There is a gentle rebuke implied: Manoah does not need new information; he needs to heed what his wife already received.
14. The angel now expands the earlier prohibition: not just wine and strong drink, but mikol asher yetse mi-gefen ha-yayin ('anything that comes from the vine of wine') — grapes, raisins, grape juice, vinegar. This matches the full Nazirite requirements of Numbers 6:3-4. The expansion suggests that even the mother must observe the complete Nazirite dietary restrictions, not just abstain from alcohol. The threefold prohibition (no vine products, no fermented drinks, no impure food) creates a comprehensive framework of consecrated living.
15. Na'atserah na otekha ('please let us detain you') — Manoah offers hospitality, as Gideon did in 6:18. The gedi izzim ('kid of the goats, young goat') is a standard meal offering for a guest of honor (cf. Genesis 18:7, Judges 6:19). Manoah still thinks he is dealing with a human prophet and offers appropriate hospitality. The parallel with Gideon's theophany in chapter 6 is deliberate — both hosts offer a goat meal, and both encounters end with fire from the altar.
16. The angel refuses to eat — lo okhal be-lachmekha ('I will not eat of your bread/food') — because he is not a human guest. Instead, he redirects the offering: if Manoah wants to prepare something, it should be an olah ('burnt offering, whole offering') directed to YHWH, not a meal shared with a visitor. The narrator's aside — ki lo yada Manoach ki malakh YHWH hu ('for Manoah did not know he was the angel of the LORD') — explains Manoah's confusion. The dramatic irony deepens: the reader knows what Manoah does not.
17. Manoah's question mi shemekha ('what is your name?') seeks to know the identity of the messenger so he can give proper recognition (kibbadnukha, 'we may honor you'). In the ancient Near East, knowing someone's name implied a relationship and the ability to invoke that person. Manoah still operates in a human framework — he wants to credit the prophet when the prediction comes true. The request for a name will receive one of the most mysterious answers in Scripture.
18. Ve-hu peli ('and it is wonderful/incomprehensible') — the word peli comes from the root pala, meaning 'to be extraordinary, beyond human understanding, wonderful.' KJV renders this as 'secret,' but the word does not mean hidden or confidential; it means transcendent, beyond the capacity of human categories. The angel does not refuse to give a name out of secrecy but because his identity cannot be contained in a name. This is the language of theophany — compare Isaiah 9:6 where the Messianic figure's name is pele yo'ets ('Wonderful Counselor'). The angel's refusal signals that Manoah is not dealing with a prophet or even an ordinary angel, but with the divine presence itself.
19. The goat intended as a meal for the guest becomes an olah ('burnt offering') on the tsur ('rock') — an improvised altar. The phrase u-mafli la'asot ('and doing wonderfully, performing something extraordinary') uses the same root pala as verse 18. What was 'beyond comprehension' in the angel's name now becomes visible in the angel's action. The transition from minchat hospitality to sacrificial worship marks the shift from human interaction to divine encounter. Manoah and his wife are witnesses — ro'im ('watching, seeing') — to something that defies natural explanation.
20. Va-ya'al malakh YHWH be-lahav ha-mizbeach ('the angel of the LORD went up in the flame of the altar') — the angel does not merely depart; he ascends within the sacrificial fire itself. The image fuses the messenger with the offering — the angel rides the flame heavenward, uniting the divine presence with the sacrifice in a single ascending movement. This directly parallels Gideon's experience in 6:21, where fire springs from the rock and consumes the offering. The prostration (va-yippelu al peneihem artsah, 'they fell on their faces to the ground') is the instinctive response to theophany — the same posture of worship and terror seen throughout Scripture when humans encounter God's unmediated presence.
21. Az yada Manoach ('then Manoah knew') — the recognition comes only after the angel's departure. Throughout the encounter, Manoah operated under the assumption that he was hosting a human prophet. The supernatural ascent in the flame makes the truth undeniable. The verb yada ('to know') marks a cognitive and spiritual shift — what the woman perceived intuitively from the start (v. 6), Manoah grasps only through dramatic demonstration. His slower perception is not presented as a moral failing but as a narrative device that heightens the revelation.
22. Mot namut ki Elohim ra'inu ('dying we shall die, for God we have seen') — the infinitive absolute mot namut intensifies the certainty of death. Manoah's fear is rooted in the widespread ancient belief that seeing God means death (Exodus 33:20, Genesis 32:30, Isaiah 6:5). His identification of the angel as Elohim ('God') is theologically significant — the malakh YHWH is God appearing in visible form. The panic is understandable, but his wife will immediately demonstrate superior theological reasoning.
23. The unnamed woman's logic is flawless: lu chafets YHWH lahamitenu ('if the LORD desired to kill us') — she reasons from God's actions to His intentions. God accepted the sacrifice (evidence of favor, not wrath), revealed visions (investment in their future, not their destruction), and announced a birth (promise, not threat). Her three-part argument moves from worship (offering accepted) to revelation (things shown) to promise

(birth announced). This is one of the finest examples of practical theology in Judges — she reads God's character from God's behavior. The contrast with Manoah is striking: he leaps to fear; she reasons toward faith.

24. Shimshon — the name likely derives from shemesh ('sun'), possibly meaning 'little sun' or 'sun-like one.' Zorah, Samson's hometown, overlooks the Sorek Valley to the west, facing the setting sun — the direction of Philistine territory. The name may also be wordplay with the nearby site Beth-Shemesh ('house of the sun'). Va-yevarakhehu YHWH ('and the LORD blessed him') — a brief note of divine favor that will make Samson's later rebellion all the more tragic. The boy is blessed, consecrated, and named for the sun — yet his story will end in darkness and blindness.
25. Va-tachel ruach YHWH lefa'amo ('the Spirit of the LORD began to stir/impel him') — the verb pa'am means 'to thrust, strike, impel, stir.' The Spirit's action on Samson begins as stirrings — impulses toward action. This is the first of several Spirit-empowerment statements in the Samson cycle. The verbs will escalate: here the Spirit 'stirs' (pa'am), in 14:6 and 14:19 and 15:14 the Spirit 'rushes upon' (tsalach), and in 16:20 the Spirit departs (sar). The geography — Machaneh Dan ('camp of Dan'), between Zorah and Eshtaol — is the same place where Samson will be buried (16:31), forming an inclusio around his entire life.

14

Summary: *Samson demands a Philistine wife from Timnah. On the way, he kills a lion with his bare hands. Later he finds honey in the carcass and poses a riddle at his wedding feast. When his wife extracts the answer, he kills thirty Philistines for their garments and abandons his wife.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The narrator offers a theological key the characters lack: 'his father and mother did not know that it was from the LORD, who was seeking an occasion against the Philistines' (v. 4). Samson's desire for a Philistine wife — which violates every Deuteronomic principle — is used by God to provoke conflict with the Philistines. The riddle (v. 14, 'out of the eater came something to eat, out of the strong came something sweet') is both clever and theological: destruction produces sustenance, a pattern woven through the entire Samson narrative.*

Translation Friction: *The verb tsalach (v. 6, 'rushed upon') describes the Spirit's action as violent irruption, not gentle empowerment. We rendered it 'rushed upon' to preserve the Hebrew's force. Samson's contact with the lion carcass violates his Nazirite vow (corpse contact, Numbers 6:6), though the text does not comment — the silent violations accumulate.*

Connections: *The Spirit rushing upon Samson echoes its action on Othniel (3:10), Gideon (6:34), and Jephthah (11:29), but Samson is the only judge whose Spirit-empowerment serves personal rather than communal purposes. The honey-from-the-lion image anticipates the theological paradox of Samson's death (ch. 16): out of destruction comes deliverance. The Philistine-wife theme contrasts with the inter-Israelite marriage ideals of Deuteronomy*

7.

1Samson went down to Timnah and saw a Philistine woman there. 2He went back up and told his father and mother, "I saw a Philistine woman in Timnah. Now get her for me as a wife." 3His father and mother said to him, "Is there no woman among your relatives or among all our people, that you must go take a wife from the uncircumcised Philistines?" But Samson told his father, "Get her for me, because she is the one I want." 4His father and mother did not realize that this was from the LORD, who was seeking an opportunity to confront the Philistines — for at that time the Philistines were ruling over Israel. 5Samson went down with his father and mother to Timnah. When they reached the vineyards of Timnah, a young lion came roaring toward him. 6The Spirit of the LORD rushed upon him, and he tore the lion apart as one would tear apart a young goat — with nothing in his hands. But he did not tell his father or mother what he had done. 7He went down and spoke with the woman, and she was pleasing in Samson's eyes. 8Some time later, when he returned to marry her, he turned aside to look at the lion's carcass. A swarm of bees had settled in the lion's body, along with honey. 9He scraped it out into his hands and walked along eating it. When he came to his father and mother, he gave some to them and they ate it too. But he did not tell them that he had taken the honey from the lion's carcass. 10His father went down to the woman, and Samson held a feast there, as was the custom for young men. 11When the Philistines saw him, they provided thirty companions to be with him. 12Samson said to them, "Let me pose a riddle to you. If you can solve it during the seven days of the feast, I will give you thirty linen garments and thirty sets of clothing. 13But if you cannot solve it, then you will give me thirty linen garments and thirty

sets of clothing." They said to him, "Pose your riddle — let us hear it." ¹⁴He said to them: "Out of the eater came something to eat; out of the strong came something sweet." They could not solve the riddle for three days. ¹⁵On the seventh day, they said to Samson's wife, "Persuade your husband to tell us the answer to the riddle, or we will burn you and your father's household alive. Did you invite us here just to rob us?" ¹⁶Samson's wife wept over him and said, "You only hate me — you do not love me! You posed a riddle to my people and haven't told me the answer!" He said to her, "I haven't even told my father or mother. Why would I tell you?" ¹⁷She wept over him through the seven days of the feast. On the seventh day he told her, because she had pressured him relentlessly. Then she told the answer to her people. ¹⁸On the seventh day, before the sun set, the men of the city said to him: "What is sweeter than honey? What is stronger than a lion?" He said to them, "If you had not plowed with my heifer, you would not have found out my riddle." ¹⁹The Spirit of the LORD rushed upon him. He went down to Ashkelon, struck down thirty men there, took their clothing, and gave the garments to those who had answered the riddle. Burning with anger, he went back up to his father's house. ²⁰And Samson's wife was given to the companion who had been his best man.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Va-yered Shimshon Timnatah ('Samson went down to Timnah') — the verb yarad ('to go down') is geographically accurate (Timnah is lower than Zorah) but also signals spiritual descent. Throughout the Samson cycle, his movements are consistently downward — toward Philistine territory, toward compromise, toward captivity. Timnah was a border town in the Sorek Valley, roughly four miles from Zorah. The phrase mi-benot Pelishtim ('from the daughters of the Philistines') immediately signals trouble — the man set apart as a Nazirite is drawn to the women of the very people he is meant to oppose.
2. Samson's demand qechu otah li le-ishah ('get her for me as a wife') is blunt and imperious. He does not ask; he commands. The verb ra'iti ('I saw') echoes the language of desire and temptation — seeing leads to wanting, as with Eve in Genesis 3:6 and David in 2 Samuel 11:2. Marriage to a Philistine woman would violate the prohibition against intermarriage with the nations (Deuteronomy 7:3), though the Philistines are not explicitly listed among the prohibited peoples in that text. Samson's parents will serve as the voice of covenant faithfulness in the next verse.
3. The parents' objection uses the term ha-arelim ('the uncircumcised') — the most contemptuous Israelite designation for the Philistines, defining them by what they lack: the covenant sign. Samson's response ki hi yashrah be-einai ('because she is right/pleasing in my eyes') uses the exact phrase that characterizes the moral chaos of the judges era — 'everyone did what was right in their own eyes' (17:6, 21:25). The Nazirite judge embodies the very problem he was born to address. He does what is 'right in his own eyes' rather than what is right in God's eyes.
4. Ki me-YHWH hi ('for it was from the LORD') — this stunning editorial comment reveals that God works through Samson's sinful desire to achieve divine purposes. The word to'anah ('occasion, opportunity, pretext') means God is looking for a provocation, a reason to initiate conflict with the Philistines. This does not excuse Samson's lust; it shows God's sovereignty operating through human failure. The narrator adds the political context: Pelishtim moshelim be-Yisra'el ('the Philistines were ruling over Israel'). God's plan for deliverance runs through the very compromise that makes Samson an unlikely judge. The tension between divine sovereignty and human responsibility is left deliberately unresolved.
5. Kefir arayot ('a young lion') — kefir refers to a young but fully grown lion in its prime, not a cub. The lion sho'eg liqrato ('roaring to meet him, charging at him') is a lethal threat. The location in the karmeim Timnatah ('vineyards of Timnah') is significant — a Nazirite should have no business in vineyards, where grapes grow. The text may subtly hint that Samson is already in territory that compromises his vow. His parents are present for the journey but apparently not for the lion encounter, as verse 6 notes he told them nothing about it.
6. Va-titslach alav ruach YHWH ('the Spirit of the LORD rushed upon him') — the verb tsalach means 'to rush, to advance forcefully.' This is the characteristic verb for the Spirit's empowerment of Samson, appearing three times in the cycle (14:6, 14:19, 15:14). It conveys sudden, overwhelming, almost violent infusion of divine power. The result is superhuman: va-yeshasse'ehu ke-shassa ha-gedi ('he tore it as one tears a kid') — shasa means 'to tear, to rip apart.' The comparison to tearing a young goat makes the extraordinary seem casual. The secrecy — lo higgid le-aviv ule-immo ('he did not tell his father and mother') — is puzzling. It may set up the later narrative requirement: if his parents knew about the lion, the riddle would be solvable.
7. Va-tishar be-einei Shimshon ('she was pleasing in the eyes of Samson') — the verb yashar ('to be straight, right, pleasing') echoes verse 3 where the same root described his desire (yashrah be-einai, 'right in my eyes'). The repetition emphasizes that Samson's motivation is entirely visual and personal. The verb yarad ('went down') appears again — his pattern of descent continues. He speaks with the woman (va-yedabber la-ishah) but the content of the conversation is not recorded; what matters to the narrative is the sensory attraction.
8. Va-yasar lir'ot et mappolet ha-aryeh ('he turned aside to see the carcass of the lion') — the verb sur ('to turn aside') suggests a deliberate detour. Samson goes looking for the dead animal. The geviyat ha-aryeh ('body/corpse of the lion') contains bees and honey. This sets up a critical Nazirite violation: touching a dead body (mafelet, 'carcass, fallen thing') directly violates Numbers 6:6-7, which prohibits a Nazirite from going near any dead body. Samson has now crossed a boundary of his consecration — and he does it casually, out of curiosity.

9. Va-yirdehu el kappav ('he scraped it into his palms') — the verb *radah* means 'to scrape out, to extract.' Samson physically reaches into the dead carcass, making direct contact with the corpse — an unambiguous Nazirite violation. He then shares the contaminated honey with his parents without disclosure: *lo higgid lahem* ('he did not tell them'). This is the second secret (cf. v. 6). The pattern of concealment deepens Samson's isolation — he operates alone, hiding his actions from those closest to him. His parents unknowingly share in the ritual defilement. The honey from the dead lion becomes the basis for the riddle, linking Samson's violation to the coming conflict.
10. Va-ya'as sham Shimshon mishteh ('Samson made a feast there') — the word *mishteh* derives from the root *shatah* ('to drink'). A *mishteh* is literally a 'drinking feast' — a banquet centered on wine and alcohol. For a Nazirite who is forbidden all grape products, hosting a drinking feast is at minimum a profound irony and likely another vow violation. The narrator adds *ki khien ya'asu ha-bachurim* ('for so the young men used to do') — it was the cultural norm. Samson conforms to Philistine social customs rather than maintaining his Nazirite separation. The term *bachurim* ('young men') emphasizes youthful social pressure and convention over covenant obligation.
11. The *sheloshim mere'im* ('thirty companions') are Philistine groomsman assigned to Samson. The phrasing *ki re'otam oto* ('when they saw him') may suggest they were impressed — or intimidated — by his physical presence. These 'companions' may also function as guards or minders, keeping an eye on the powerful Israelite in their midst. The number thirty will become significant when Samson must obtain thirty sets of garments as riddle payment (v. 19).
12. *Achudah na lakhem chidah* ('let me pose a riddle to you') — the verb *chud* ('to propound a riddle') introduces the central literary device of the chapter. The *chidah* ('riddle') was a respected intellectual contest in the ancient Near East (cf. Solomon and the Queen of Sheba, 1 Kings 10:1). The stakes are high: *sheloshim sedinim* ('thirty linen garments' — expensive undergarments) and *sheloshim chaliphot begadim* ('thirty changes of clothing' — complete outfits). This is a significant wager, equivalent to outfitting thirty men in luxury clothing.
13. The terms are symmetrical — the same payment either way: thirty of each garment type. The companions accept readily: *chudah chidatekha ve-nishma'ennah* ('pose your riddle and let us hear it'). Their confidence will prove misplaced, as the riddle is unsolvable without inside knowledge. No amount of intellectual effort can crack it, because it depends on a private experience — Samson's encounter with the lion. The riddle is not really fair; it is a trap disguised as a game.
14. *Me-ha-okhel yatsa ma'akhal u-me-az yatsa matok* ('from the eater came food, from the strong came sweetness') — the riddle is elegant in Hebrew, with parallel structure and alliterative wordplay (*okhel/ma'akhal*). The 'eater' is the lion; the 'food' is the honey. The 'strong one' is the lion; the 'sweet' is the honey. But without knowing about the lion carcass, the riddle is genuinely unsolvable — it describes a unique personal experience, not a universal phenomenon. The three-day failure establishes the companions' desperation, which drives them to coerce Samson's wife.
15. The companions' threat is savage: *pen nisrof otakh ve-et beit avikh ba-esh* ('lest we burn you and your father's house with fire'). This is not an idle threat — they will carry it out in 15:6. The verb *patti* ('entice, persuade, seduce') from the root *patah* carries connotations of deception and sexual manipulation. They pressure the wife to use her intimate access to Samson as a weapon. The accusation *ha-leyarshenu qera'tem lanu* ('did you call us to impoverish us?') reveals their real concern: the financial stakes of the wager. The threat creates an impossible situation for the woman — caught between Samson and his enemies.
16. *Va-tevk eshet Shimshon alav* ('Samson's wife wept over him') — her tears are a weapon of emotional manipulation, though her fear is genuine (v. 15). Her argument — *raq sne'atani ve-lo ahavtani* ('you only hate me and do not love me') — frames the riddle as a test of love rather than an intellectual game. This same pattern of weeping and emotional pressure will recur with Delilah in chapter 16, but with far more devastating consequences. Samson's defense — 'I haven't told my parents' — is logically sound but emotionally tone-deaf. It will not hold.
17. *Ki hetsiqathu* ('because she pressed him hard, pressured him relentlessly') — the verb *tsaqaq* means 'to press, to constrain, to squeeze.' The image is of constant, unrelenting emotional pressure. Samson's strength is physical, not emotional — he can tear apart a lion but cannot withstand a woman's tears. This vulnerability will prove fatal in chapter 16. The wife immediately relays the answer to her people (*va-tagged ha-chidah li-vnei ammah*), demonstrating that her loyalty lies with her own people, not her husband. The pattern — Samson telling a secret to a woman who betrays it to his enemies — will repeat with escalating consequences.
18. The answer — *mah matok mi-devash u-meh az me-ari* ('what is sweeter than honey, what is stronger than a lion') — is presented as two rhetorical questions rather than a direct statement, giving it a triumphant quality. They deliver the answer *be-terem yavo ha-charsah* ('before the sun went down') — just in time. Samson's furious response uses a crude agricultural metaphor: *lulei charashtem be-eglai* ('if you had not plowed with my heifer') — comparing his wife to a cow and their interrogation of her to plowing. The metaphor implies both sexual betrayal and informational exploitation. Samson instantly knows how they obtained the answer — there was no other way.
19. *Va-titslach alav ruach YHWH* — the second 'rushing' of the Spirit (cf. v. 6). The Spirit empowers Samson not for national deliverance but to settle a personal gambling debt. He goes to Ashkelon — a major Philistine city about twenty-three miles southwest — kills thirty men (the exact number needed), strips their *chalitsotam* ('spoils, clothing'), and pays the wager. The violence is divinely empowered but personally motivated. *Va-yichar appo* ('his anger burned') — Samson's rage drives him home, abandoning his wife. The narrator records this descent into fury without moral commentary, letting the reader draw conclusions.
20. *Le-mere'ehu asher re'ah lo* ('to his companion who had been his friend/best man') — the ultimate betrayal. The *mere'a* was the 'best man' or 'friend of the bridegroom' (cf. John 3:29). Samson's abandonment of his wife was interpreted by her family as divorce, and she was given to the very man who stood beside Samson at the wedding. This final verse sets up the chain of retaliations in chapter 15. What began with Samson's desire for a Philistine woman ends with losing her to a Philistine man — the irony is complete.

15

Summary: *Samson discovers his wife has been given to another man. He ties torches to foxes' tails and burns the Philistine grain fields. The Philistines retaliate by burning his wife. Samson slaughters them, then kills a thousand with a donkey's jawbone and is miraculously given water from the rock.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The escalation is relentless: personal grievance becomes agricultural terrorism becomes mass slaughter. The jawbone of a donkey (lechi hachamor, v. 15) — the most contemptible weapon imaginable — becomes an instrument of divine deliverance. Samson's naming of the site Ramath-lehi ('Jawbone Height,' v. 17) and his desperate prayer for water (v. 18) are his only recorded prayer until his death — and God answers by splitting open the hollow place, producing water from the very jawbone.*

Translation Friction: *The three hundred foxes (or jackals — shualim can mean either) tied tail-to-tail with torches (v. 4) strain modern credibility, but the text presents it without qualification. We rendered it as the Hebrew gives it. The place name En-haqore (v. 19, 'spring of the one who called') commemorates Samson's prayer — the name preserves his moment of dependence on God in a life characterized by self-reliance.*

Connections: *Water from rock echoes Moses at Meribah (Exodus 17:6, Numbers 20:11). The jawbone weapon anticipates David's unconventional sling against Goliath (1 Samuel 17). The Philistine-burning-his-wife motif (v. 6) inverts: the Philistines destroy the very person whose betrayal they exploited. The 'he judged Israel twenty years' (v. 20) places Samson in the institutional framework despite his personal chaos.*

¹Some time later, during the wheat harvest, Samson went to visit his wife, bringing a young goat. He said, "Let me go in to my wife in her room." But her father would not let him enter. ²Her father said, "I was sure you completely despised her, so I gave her to your companion. But isn't her younger sister more attractive? Take her instead." ³Samson said to them, "This time I am justified in what I do to the Philistines — when I bring harm upon them." ⁴Samson went out and caught three hundred foxes. He took torches and tied the foxes tail to tail, placing one torch between every pair of tails. ⁵He set the torches on fire and released the foxes into the Philistines' standing grain. He burned up the harvested sheaves along with the standing grain, and even the vineyards and olive groves. ⁶The Philistines asked, "Who did this?" They were told, "Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite — because the man took his wife and gave her to his companion." So the Philistines went up and burned her and her father alive. ⁷Samson said to them, "Since you have done this, I swear I will take revenge on you — and only then will I stop." ⁸He struck them down ruthlessly with a great slaughter. Then he went down and stayed in a cave in the rock of Etam. ⁹The Philistines came up and camped in Judah, deploying their forces at Lehi. ¹⁰The men of Judah asked, "Why have you come up against us?" They answered, "We have come up to bind Samson — to do to him what he has done to us." ¹¹Three thousand men of Judah went down to the cave in the rock of Etam and said to Samson, "Don't you realize that the Philistines are ruling over us? What have you done to us?" He said to them, "What they did to me, I did to them." ¹²They said to him, "We have come down to tie you up and hand you over to the Philistines." Samson said to them, "Swear to me that you yourselves will not attack me." ¹³They said to him, "No — we will only tie you up securely and hand you over to them. We certainly will not kill you." So they bound him with two new ropes and brought him up from the rock. ¹⁴When he arrived at Lehi, the Philistines came shouting to meet him. The Spirit of the LORD rushed upon him, and the ropes on his arms became like flax burned by fire — his bonds melted off his hands. ¹⁵He found a fresh jawbone of a donkey, reached out and grabbed it, and struck down a thousand men with it. ¹⁶Samson said: "With the jawbone of a donkey — heaps upon heaps! With the jawbone of a donkey I have struck down a thousand men!" ¹⁷When he finished speaking, he threw the jawbone aside, and that place was called Ramath-Lehi. ¹⁸He became desperately thirsty and called out to the LORD, saying, "You gave this great victory through your servant, and now am I going to die of thirst and fall into the hands of the uncircumcised?" ¹⁹God split open the hollow place at Lehi, and water flowed from it. He drank, his strength returned, and he revived. That is why it was called En-Hakkore, which is at Lehi to this day. ²⁰He judged Israel during the time of the Philistines for twenty years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bi-yemei qetsir chittim ('in the days of the wheat harvest') — the timing is significant for two reasons: the dry, ripe grain fields will soon become the target of Samson's fiery revenge (vv. 4-5), and the wheat harvest was a time of celebration and movement. Samson brings a gedi izzim ('a young goat') — a gift intended to reconcile. He expects to resume the marriage as though nothing happened. The father's refusal reveals what occurred during Samson's absence: his wife has been given to another man (14:20). Samson does not yet know this.
2. Amor amarti ki sano senetah ('saying I said that hating you hated her') — double infinitive absolutes in both clauses intensify the father's certainty. He genuinely believed Samson had permanently rejected his daughter. The offer of the younger sister — ha-lo achotah ha-qetannah tovah mimmennah ('isn't her younger sister better/more beautiful than she?') — is meant to placate but instead enrages. The substitution of one daughter for another echoes Laban's swap of Leah for Rachel (Genesis 29:26). For Samson, the insult is compounded: his wife was given to his mere'a ('companion, best man'), and now he is offered a consolation prize.
3. Niqqeiti ha-pa'am mi-Pelishtim ('I am innocent/free of blame this time from the Philistines') — Samson claims moral justification. The verb naqah ('to be clean, innocent, free of guilt') is a legal term — he is declaring himself not liable for what follows. The phrase ki oseh ani immam ra'ah ('when I do them harm/evil') frankly announces his intention to retaliate. Samson operates on a personal code of proportional justice: they wronged him, so he has the right to wrong them. The narrator neither endorses nor condemns this reasoning — the events simply unfold.
4. Shelosh me'ot shu'alim ('three hundred foxes') — the word shu'al can mean either 'fox' or 'jackal.' Jackals are more likely since they travel in packs (foxes are solitary), making mass capture more feasible. The number three hundred may be symbolic (Gideon's three hundred warriors, 7:7) or literal. The engineering is deliberate: va-yefen zanaf el zanaf ('he turned tail to tail') — pairs of animals tied together with a lappid ('torch, firebrand') between them. The panicked animals would run erratically through the fields, spreading fire in unpredictable directions — a devastating incendiary tactic.
5. The destruction is comprehensive: gadish ('harvested sheaves' — grain already cut and stacked), qamah ('standing grain' — still in the field), kerem ('vineyard'), and zayit ('olive grove'). This represents the Philistines' entire agricultural economy — their present harvest, their future crop, their long-term investment in orchards and vineyards. Olive trees take decades to mature; their loss is generational devastation. The timing during wheat harvest (v. 1) means the grain is dry and burns easily. Samson's personal grievance has become an economic catastrophe for an entire region.
6. The cycle of violence escalates horribly. The Philistines identify Samson as the culprit (chatan ha-Timni, 'the son-in-law of the Timnite') and trace the cause to the wife's father giving her away. Their response — va-yisrefu otah ve-et avihah ba-esh ('they burned her and her father with fire') — fulfills the exact threat the thirty companions made in 14:15. The woman was caught between Samson and the Philistines, and now she dies the very death she was threatened with. The cruel irony: she betrayed Samson's riddle to save herself from burning, only to be burned anyway.
7. Im ta'asun kazot ki im niqqamti vakhem ('if you do this, I will surely take vengeance on you') — the conditional structure followed by the emphatic ki im creates an oath-like declaration. The verb naqam ('to take vengeance') is personal, not judicial — Samson acts as a one-man retaliatory force, not as a judge executing divine justice. His promise ve-achar echdal ('and after that I will stop') is ominously open-ended — how much violence satisfies the requirement of 'enough'? The spiral of violence shows no one willing to break the cycle.
8. Va-yakh otam shoq al yarekh makkah gedolah ('he struck them leg upon thigh, a great blow') — the idiom shoq al yarekh ('hip and thigh' or 'leg upon thigh') suggests a thorough, devastating beating. The exact meaning is debated, but the sense is unmistakable: total, merciless violence. After the slaughter, Samson retreats to se'if sela Eitam ('the cleft/cave of the rock of Etam') — he becomes a fugitive hiding in the wilderness, ironically resembling the Israelites who hid from Midian in caves (6:2). The deliverer has become an outlaw.
9. Va-ya'alu Felishtim va-yachanu bi-Yehudah ('the Philistines came up and camped in Judah') — the Philistine military response to Samson's raids now threatens all of Judah. The escalation has moved from personal vendetta to regional military crisis. Va-yinnatoshu ba-Lechi ('they spread themselves at Lehi') — the verb natash means 'to spread out' in military formation. Lechi, meaning 'jawbone,' foreshadows what will happen there (v. 15). The name is either pre-existing or given retroactively because of the coming events.
10. The men of Judah ask the question lamah alitem aleinu ('why have you come up against us?') — they view the Philistine incursion as an attack on themselves, not as a response to Samson. The Philistines' answer le-esor et Shimshon ('to bind Samson') makes clear: this is about one man. The phrase la'asot lo ka-asher asah lanu ('to do to him as he did to us') invokes proportional retaliation — the lex talionis. What is devastating here is that the men of Judah will cooperate with their oppressors to hand over their own judge.
11. Sheloshet alafim ish mi-Yehudah ('three thousand men from Judah') — a massive delegation sent not to rescue Samson but to surrender him. Their accusation ha-lo yadata ki moshelim banu Pelishtim ('don't you know the Philistines rule over us?') reveals a people who have accepted subjugation as the status quo. They blame Samson for disrupting a manageable oppression. His response ka-asher asu li ken asiti lahem ('as they did to me, so I did to them') reduces the entire conflict to personal reciprocity. Neither Samson nor the men of Judah speak in terms of God's purposes, covenant, or deliverance. The theological vacuum is deafening.
12. Le-esorekha yaradnu litettekha ve-yad Pelishtim ('to bind you we came down to give you into the hand of the Philistines') — Judah's own men will deliver their judge to the enemy. The parallel with later events is unmistakable: Israel handing its deliverer to the ruling power. Samson's condition — hishave'u li pen tifge'un bi attem ('swear to me that you yourselves will not strike me') — reveals where the real danger lies. He does not fear the Philistines; he fears his own people. He will go willingly, bound, if Judah promises not to kill him directly.

13. Asor ne'esorekha ('binding we will bind you') — the infinitive absolute emphasizes the thoroughness of the binding. The assurance hamet lo nemitekha ('killing we will not kill you') uses the same emphatic construction for the promise of safety. Two new ropes (shenayim avotot chadashot) — the newness implies maximum strength, ropes not weakened by prior use. The narrator builds tension: Samson is bound with fresh, strong rope, surrounded by three thousand of his own countrymen, about to be handed to the Philistines. Everything points to his doom — except the Spirit.
14. Va-titslach alav ruach YHWH — the third and final 'rushing' of the Spirit upon Samson (cf. 14:6, 14:19). Each occurrence triggers superhuman physical action. The ropes become ka-pishtim asher ba'aru va-esh ('like flax that has burned in fire') — flax (pishtim) is linen fiber, and when burned it disintegrates into nothing. Va-yimmassu essurav me-al yadav ('his bonds melted from his hands') — the verb masas ('to melt, dissolve') suggests the ropes did not break but dissolved, as if consumed by invisible fire. The Spirit's power is portrayed as an internal fire that destroys external restraints.
15. Lechi chamor teriyah ('a jawbone of a donkey, fresh/moist') — the jawbone is teriyah ('fresh, moist'), meaning it came from a recently dead animal. This constitutes yet another Nazirite violation: contact with a dead body (Numbers 6:6). The irony is devastating — the instrument of Samson's greatest military triumph is itself a source of ritual defilement. Elef ish ('a thousand men') — whether literal or a round number indicating a massive victory, the scale is extraordinary. A single man with an improvised weapon from a dead animal defeats an army. The Spirit empowers through the profane.
16. Samson's victory song uses elaborate wordplay: bi-lechi ha-chamor chamor chamoratayim ('with the jawbone of a donkey, a donkey, two donkey-loads' or 'a heap, two heaps'). The word chamor can mean both 'donkey' and 'heap' — Samson puns on the weapon's origin. The poetic structure is a brief victory hymn, similar to the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15) or Deborah's song (Judges 5), but with a critical difference: Samson credits himself, not God. Hikketi elef ish ('I struck down a thousand men') — the first person pronoun is emphatic. He attributes the victory to his own power, never mentioning the Spirit that enabled it.
17. Va-yashklekh ha-lechi mi-yado ('he threw the jawbone from his hand') — after the battle, Samson discards the weapon. The naming — Ramat Lechi ('Jawbone Hill' or 'the height of the jawbone') — follows the biblical pattern of memorial place-naming. The Hebrew ramat means 'height, hill,' and lechi means 'jawbone' or 'cheek.' The name preserves the memory of the event in the landscape itself. Such etiological naming is common in Judges (cf. Bochim, 2:5; YHWH-Shalom, 6:24).
18. Va-yitsma me'od va-yiqra el YHWH ('he was very thirsty and he called out to the LORD') — this is the only recorded prayer by Samson before his final prayer in 16:28. After boasting of his own achievement in verse 16, extreme thirst forces him to acknowledge God. Attah natatta be-yad avdekha ('You gave into the hand of your servant') — he now credits God for the victory, calling himself avdekha ('your servant'). The shift from 'I struck down' (v. 16) to 'You gave' (v. 18) is prompted by need, not worship. His concern is still self-preservation: pen efol be-yad ha-arelim ('lest I fall into the hand of the uncircumcised').
19. Va-yivqa Elohim et ha-makhtesh asher ba-Lechi ('God split open the hollow place that is at Lehi') — the makhtesh is a mortar-shaped depression in rock. God provides water from stone, echoing Moses at Horeb (Exodus 17:6) and Meribah (Numbers 20:11). The water revives Samson: va-tashov rucho va-yechi ('his spirit returned and he lived'). The name Ein ha-Qore means either 'the spring of the one who calls' (commemorating Samson's prayer) or 'the spring of the partridge' (a bird associated with rocky terrain). The provision of water after military victory connects Samson's experience to Israel's wilderness narrative — God sustains His warrior even when that warrior is deeply flawed.
20. Va-yishpot et Yisra'el bi-yemei Pelishtim esrim shanah ('he judged Israel in the days of the Philistines twenty years') — this formula usually closes a judge's narrative, but here it appears mid-story. Chapter 16 still lies ahead. The phrase bi-yemei Pelishtim ('in the days of the Philistines') is unique — it acknowledges that Philistine domination continued throughout Samson's judgeship. He judged during the oppression, not after ending it. The twenty years may represent a period of relative stability before the events of chapter 16, or it may be the narrator's way of distinguishing Samson's time as judge from the personal disasters that conclude his life.

16

Summary: Samson visits a prostitute in Gaza, escapes the city by carrying its gates away, then falls in love with Delilah. She extracts the secret of his strength — his uncut hair — and the Philistines capture him, gouge out his eyes, and put him to work grinding in prison. At a festival to Dagon, Samson pushes apart the pillars and kills more Philistines in death than in life.

What Makes This Remarkable: Delilah asks the secret of his strength three times with obvious intent to betray him, and he tells her the truth on the fourth attempt anyway. This is not stupidity but self-destruction — Samson has been violating his Nazirite vow incrementally (corpse contact in ch. 14, feast in ch. 14, now the razor), and telling Delilah completes the surrender of what he was supposed to be. His prayer in the temple (v. 28) is his most honest: 'O Lord GOD, remember me and strengthen me only this once' — revenge and deliverance merge in one final act.

Translation Friction: The phrase 'he did not know that the LORD had departed from him' (v. 20, vehu lo yada ki YHWH sar me'alav) is the most chilling sentence in the book. We rendered it directly. The departure of divine presence is unannounced and unnoticed — the horror is the unknowing. Samson's final prayer uses both Adonai and YHWH Elohim — the fullest divine address in his life comes at its end.

Connections: Samson's death in the Dagon temple anticipates the ark's humiliation of Dagon (1 Samuel 5). His grinding in prison (v. 21) — a woman's or animal's task — is the final humiliation of the strongman. The phrase 'he judged Israel twenty years' (v. 31) echoes 15:20 and brackets his career. Hebrews 11:32 includes Samson among the faithful — his final prayer is counted as faith.

¹Samson went to Gaza and saw a prostitute there, and he went in to her. ²The people of Gaza were told, "Samson has come here." They surrounded the place and lay in ambush for him all night at the city gate, keeping quiet through the night, saying, "At first light we will kill him." ³Samson lay there until midnight. At midnight he got up, seized the doors of the city gate along with the two gateposts, and pulled them up — bar and all. He hoisted them onto his shoulders and carried them to the top of the hill that faces Hebron. ⁴After this, he fell in love with a woman in the Sorek Valley whose name was Delilah. ⁵The rulers of the Philistines came to her and said, "Seduce him and find out where his great strength comes from, and how we can overpower him so we can tie him up and subdue him. Each of us will give you eleven hundred pieces of silver." ⁶Delilah said to Samson, "Tell me — where does your great strength come from? How could someone tie you up to overpower you?" ⁷Samson said to her, "If they bind me with seven fresh bowstrings that have not been dried, then I will become weak and be like any other man." ⁸The Philistine rulers brought her seven fresh bowstrings that had not been dried, and she tied him up with them. ⁹With an ambush party waiting in the room, she cried out, "The Philistines are on you, Samson!" He snapped the bowstrings as easily as a strand of flax snaps when it touches fire. So the secret of his strength remained unknown. ¹⁰Delilah said to Samson, "You made a fool of me and lied to me! Now tell me — how can you really be tied up?" ¹¹He said to her, "If they tie me up securely with new ropes that have never been used, then I will become weak and be like any other man." ¹²So Delilah took new ropes and tied him with them. Then she called out, "The Philistines are on you, Samson!" (The ambush party was waiting in the room.) He snapped them off his arms like thread. ¹³Delilah said to Samson, "You keep making a fool of me and telling me lies! Tell me how you can be tied up." He said to her, "If you weave the seven braids of my head into the fabric on the loom." ¹⁴She fastened it with the pin of the loom and called out, "The Philistines are on you, Samson!" He woke from his sleep and pulled away the pin of the loom along with the fabric. ¹⁵She said to him, "How can you say 'I love you' when your heart is not with me? Three times now you have made a fool of me and have not told me where your great strength comes from." ¹⁶When she pressured him with her words day after day and nagged him relentlessly, he became so exhausted that he wanted to die. ¹⁷He told her everything in his heart and said to her, "A razor has never touched my head, because I have been a Nazirite of God from my mother's womb. If my head were shaved, my strength would leave me, and I would become weak and be like any other man." ¹⁸When Delilah realized that he had told her everything in his heart, she sent for the Philistine rulers with the message, "Come up one more time — he has told me everything in his heart." The Philistine rulers came to her, bringing the silver with them. ¹⁹She lulled him to sleep on her lap, then called for a man to shave off the seven braids of his head. She began to subdue him, and his strength left him. ²⁰She called out, "The Philistines are on you, Samson!" He woke from his sleep and thought, "I will get free just as I did before and shake myself loose." But he did not know that the LORD had departed from him. ²¹The Philistines seized him and gouged out his eyes. They brought him down to Gaza and bound him with bronze shackles, and he was set to grinding grain in the prison. ²²But the hair of his head began to grow back after it had been shaved. ²³The rulers of the Philistines gathered to offer a great sacrifice to Dagon their god and to celebrate. They said, "Our god has given Samson our enemy into our hands." ²⁴When the people saw him, they praised their god, saying, "Our god has given into our hands our enemy — the devastator of our land, who multiplied our dead." ²⁵When they were in high spirits, they said, "Bring out Samson to entertain us!" So they brought Samson from the prison, and he performed for them. They stood him between the pillars. ²⁶Samson said to the boy who was leading him by the hand, "Let me feel the pillars that support the building, so I can lean against them." ²⁷The building was full of men and women. All the Philistine rulers were there, and on the roof were about three thousand men and women watching Samson

perform. ²⁸Samson called out to the LORD and said, "Lord GOD, remember me! Strengthen me just this one time, O God, so that I may take one act of revenge on the Philistines for my two eyes." ²⁹Samson grasped the two central pillars on which the building rested and braced himself against them — one with his right hand and one with his left. ³⁰Samson said, "Let me die with the Philistines." He pushed with all his strength, and the building collapsed on the rulers and on all the people inside it. Those he killed at his death were more than those he had killed during his life. ³¹His brothers and his father's entire household came down and carried him back. They buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol in the tomb of his father Manoah. He had judged Israel for twenty years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Va-yelekh Shimshon Azzatah ('Samson went to Gaza') — Gaza is deep in Philistine territory, one of the five major Philistine cities. The narrative moves from Samson desiring a Philistine wife (ch. 14) to visiting an ishah zonah ('a prostitute'). The moral trajectory is unmistakable: from wanting marriage to purchasing sex. The verb va-yar ('he saw') echoes the pattern established in 14:1 — Samson's eyes lead him into trouble. Va-yavo eleiha ('he went in to her') is the standard euphemism for sexual intercourse. The Nazirite's separation from the world is now reduced to its final external marker: his uncut hair.
2. Va-yassobbu va-ye'erevu lo kol ha-lailah ('they surrounded and ambushed him all night') — the Gazites plan a dawn attack. Their confidence is understandable: Samson is inside a walled city with a single gatehouse, surrounded by enemies. Va-yitchasheshu kol ha-lailah ('they were quiet/silent all night') — the verb charash means 'to be silent, to hold peace.' They wait patiently, believing time is on their side. Ad or ha-boqer va-haraagnuhu ('until the morning light, and we will kill him') — they calculate that Samson will attempt to leave at dawn and walk into their trap.
3. Va-ye'echoz be-daletot sha'ar ha-ir u-vishtei ha-mezuzot ('he seized the doors of the city gate and the two doorposts') — the city gate was the most fortified point of an ancient walled city, with massive wooden doors reinforced by a metal bar (beriach). Samson does not open the gate; he tears the entire gate structure out of the wall — doors, posts, crossbar, everything. Va-yissa'em im ha-beriach ('he uprooted them with the bar') — the verb nasa means 'to uproot, to pull out.' He carries the entire assembly al ketefav ('on his shoulders') to a hilltop facing Hebron — approximately thirty-eight miles uphill from Gaza at an elevation gain of over three thousand feet. The feat is superhuman, a demonstration of raw power that humiliates the Gazites and renders their city defenseless.
4. Va-ye'ehav ishah be-nachal Soreq ('he loved a woman in the valley of Sorek') — for the first time in the narrative, the verb ahav ('to love') is used for Samson's attraction to a woman. Previously it was ra'ah ('to see') and yashar ('pleasing'). The Sorek Valley runs between Israelite and Philistine territory — Samson lives and loves in the border zone. Delilah's name (Delilah) may derive from the root dalal ('to hang down, to be weak, to impoverish') or from the word lailah ('night'). Either etymology is fitting: she will weaken him and bring his night. Whether she is Israelite or Philistine is never stated — the text leaves her identity ambiguous, focusing entirely on her function as the instrument of Samson's downfall.
5. Sarnei Pelishtim ('the lords/rulers of the Philistines') — the seren (plural seranim) was the title for each ruler of the five Philistine city-states (Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron, Gath). All five come together for this operation — Samson is that important a threat. The verb patti ('entice, seduce') is the same word used when the companions pressured Samson's wife (14:15). The payment — ish elef u-me'ah kasef ('each one, eleven hundred pieces of silver') — totals 5,500 silver pieces from the five lords. For comparison, Micah's mother in chapter 17 consecrates 1,100 pieces of silver. The sum is enormous — they are buying the defeat of Israel's champion.
6. Delilah's question ba-meh kokhakha gadol ('in what is your strength great?') is astonishingly direct. She does not approach the subject subtly or build up to it over weeks. She asks outright, on behalf of his enemies, and Samson does not seem alarmed. The addition u-va-meh te'aser le-annotekha ('and with what could you be bound to afflict you') explicitly asks for the method of his capture. That Samson engages with this question at all — rather than recognizing the obvious trap — reveals his fatal flaw: he believes his strength makes him invulnerable to any scheme. His physical power breeds spiritual recklessness.
7. Shiv'ah yetarim lachim asher lo chorevu ('seven moist/fresh bowstrings that have not been dried') — yetar refers to a bowstring made from animal sinew or gut. The specification 'fresh, not dried' implies maximum flexibility and strength. The number seven suggests completeness. Samson's first lie is elaborate enough to be believable — it sounds like a magical formula. Ve-chaliti ve-hayiti ke-achad ha-adam ('I will become weak and be like one of the men') — the verb chalah means 'to become weak, sick.' Samson plays a game with the truth, giving false answers that parody the real one.
8. The Philistine lords supply the materials immediately — they are deeply invested in this operation. Delilah binds Samson herself (va-ta'asrehu bahem, 'she bound him with them'). The intimate setting — Delilah tying Samson while he allows it — suggests he treats the whole affair as a game, a lovers' contest. The Philistine lords are presumably hiding nearby, waiting to see if this attempt succeeds.
9. Ha-orev yoshev lah ba-cheder ('the ambusher sitting for her in the room') — Philistine soldiers are hidden in the very room where this intimate scene plays out. Delilah's cry Pelishtim alekha Shimshon ('Philistines are upon you, Samson!') becomes a recurring alarm — she uses it four times (vv. 9, 12, 14, 20). Samson snaps the bowstrings ka-asher yinnataq petil ha-ne'oret ba-haricho esh ('as a flax thread is broken when it smells fire') — the simile reduces the supposedly unbreakable bonds to nothing. Ve-lo noda kocho ('his strength was not known') — the secret remains intact. But the pattern of testing has begun.

10. Hinnah hetalta bi va-tedabber elai kezavim ('you mocked me and spoke lies to me') — the verb hatal means 'to mock, to deceive.' Delilah accuses Samson of deception — which is true — while herself being the true deceiver. The irony is layered: she demands honesty in the service of betrayal. Her persistence is remarkable. After the first failure, most people would abandon the scheme or at least change tactics. Delilah simply asks again, with exactly the same directness. She has calculated that Samson's weakness is not physical but relational — he cannot resist her persistent emotional pressure.
11. Avotim chadashim asher lo na'asah vahem melakhah ('new ropes with which no work has been done') — the second lie escalates from bowstrings to ropes. The specification 'unused' echoes the new ropes in 15:13, which the Spirit also destroyed. Samson may be amusing himself with references to his own history. The formula ve-chaliti ve-hayiti ke-achad ha-adam ('I will become weak and be like any other man') is repeated verbatim from verse 7 — a refrain in this darkening game. Each false answer brings the truth closer to the surface.
12. The pattern repeats: Delilah binds, cries the alarm, and Samson breaks free. Va-yenattqem me-al zero'otav ka-chut ('he snapped them from his arms like thread') — the ropes are reduced to nothing. The ease of the escape is emphasized: like a thread (chut), not even like a cord. Yet the fact that Samson continues to play this game after Delilah has now twice attempted to betray him to waiting Philistine soldiers reveals either extraordinary arrogance or a death wish. The ambush party remains in the room — witnesses to the failed attempts.
13. The third false answer moves dangerously close to the truth. For the first time, Samson mentions his hair: sheva machlefot roshi ('the seven braids/locks of my head'). The word machlefot means 'braids, plaits, locks' — Samson's hair is braided into seven sections. The masekhet ('woven fabric, web on a loom') is the cloth currently being woven. He tells Delilah to weave his hair braids into the loom's fabric. The answer is a lie — weaving his hair will not make him weak — but it touches the true source of his strength. Each false answer has moved closer: bowstrings (nothing to do with hair), ropes (nothing to do with hair), hair woven into a loom (his hair, but the wrong action). The truth is approaching.
14. Va-titqa ba-yated ('she drove in the peg/pin') — Delilah weaves his hair into the loom and secures it with the loom pin while he sleeps. He sleeps through the entire process — a remarkable detail that reveals both his trust and his recklessness. Va-yiqats mi-shenato ('he woke from his sleep') — this is the first mention of Samson sleeping during these encounters. Sleep will be his undoing in verse 19. He pulls away the yated ha-ereg ve-et ha-massekhet ('the pin of the loom and the fabric') — tearing the entire loom apart. Three attempts have failed. But Delilah now knows the answer is connected to his hair.
15. Eikh tomar ahavtikh ve-libbeka ein itti ('how can you say I love you when your heart is not with me?') — Delilah weaponizes the language of love. She equates full disclosure with genuine love: if he truly loves her, he will reveal his deepest secret. The accusation zeh shalosh pe'amim hetalta bi ('three times now you have mocked me') echoes the pattern of three — a number of completion in biblical narrative. The fourth time will be the truth. Her argument mirrors the Timnite wife's tactic exactly (14:16) — 'you hate me, you don't love me' — but Delilah is far more persistent and far more dangerous.
16. Ki hetsiqah lo bi-davareha kol ha-yamim ('because she pressed him with her words every day') — the verb tsaqq ('to press, squeeze, constrain') describes unrelenting emotional pressure. Va-te'altsehu ('she urged him, she forced him') — the verb alats means 'to compel, to press hard.' Va-tiqtsar nafsho lamut ('his soul was shortened to death' — he was exhausted to the point of death) — the idiom captures complete emotional and spiritual depletion. The man who could tear apart lions and rip city gates from their hinges is broken down by persistent words. Samson's physical strength has no defense against emotional manipulation — the same vulnerability that undid him in 14:17.
17. Va-yagged lah et kol libbo ('he told her all his heart') — the phrase kol libbo ('all his heart') means he held nothing back. The disclosure is total. Morah lo alah al roshi ('a razor has never come upon my head') — this is the last remaining sign of his Nazirite consecration. He has already violated the prohibitions against contact with the dead (14:8-9, 15:15) and likely against grape products (14:10). Only the uncut hair remains. Ki nezir Elohim ani mi-beten immi ('for I am a Nazirite of God from my mother's womb') — Samson identifies himself by his consecration even as he is in the act of betraying it. He knows exactly what he is, and he tells anyway. Im gullachti ve-sar mimmenni kochi ('if I am shaved, my strength will depart from me') — the truth is out. The verb sar ('to depart, to turn away') will appear in the devastating verse 20 applied to God Himself.
18. Va-tere Delilah ki higgid lah et kol libbo ('Delilah saw that he had told her all his heart') — the verb ra'ah ('to see, to perceive') signals Delilah's discernment. She can tell the difference between Samson's lies and his truth. How she knows this time is genuine — whether through his tone, his tears, his weariness, or intuition — the text does not say. Alu ha-pa'am ('come up this time') — her message to the lords carries the confidence of certainty. Va-ya'alu ha-kesef be-yadam ('they brought the silver in their hand') — the payment is brought in advance this time. They trust Delilah's judgment. The transaction is complete: Samson's secret for 5,500 pieces of silver.
19. Va-teyashnehu al birkeiha ('she caused him to sleep on her knees/lap') — the intimacy of the scene makes the betrayal more devastating. He sleeps in a posture of complete trust and vulnerability. Va-tiqra la-ish va-tegallach et sheva machlefot rosho ('she called a man and he shaved the seven braids of his head') — Delilah does not shave him herself; she summons an ish ('a man') to do it. The seven braids — the last physical sign of his Nazirite consecration — are removed while he sleeps. Va-tachel le-annoto ('she began to afflict/subdue him') — the verb innah means 'to afflict, to humble, to overpower.' Va-yasar kocho me-alav ('his strength departed from him') — the verb sar ('departed') foreshadows the devastating parallel in the next verse.
20. Etse ke-fa'am be-fa'am ve-inna'er ('I will go out as time after time and shake myself free') — Samson expects the same result as before. His confidence is based on past experience: three times Delilah tested him, three times he broke free effortlessly. Why should the fourth time be different? Ve-hu lo yada ki YHWH sar me-alav ('and he did not know that the LORD had departed from him') — this is the most devastating sentence in the Samson cycle, and one of the most terrifying in all of Scripture. The verb yada ('to know') is the same verb used throughout the narrative for knowledge and awareness. Samson does not know. The LORD (YHWH — the covenant name, the personal name of God) sar

('departed, turned away') me-alav ('from upon him'). The divine presence that rushed upon him three times has now withdrawn. And Samson cannot tell the difference. The most terrifying thing about the departure of God is that a person may not notice it has happened.

21. Va-yenaqru et einav ('they bored out/gouged his eyes') — the verb naqar means 'to bore, to pick out, to gouge.' The eyes that saw Philistine women and led Samson into temptation are destroyed. There is grim poetic justice: the man who lived by sight (va-yar ishah, 'he saw a woman,' 14:1; 16:1) now lives in permanent darkness. Va-yoridu oto Azzatah ('they brought him down to Gaza') — the last 'going down' (yarad) in Samson's life. He returns to Gaza, where he once carried the city gates in triumph (v. 3), now as a blind prisoner. Va-ya'asruhu ba-nechushtayim ('they bound him with bronze fetters') — nechushtayim is a dual form, suggesting shackles on both wrists or both ankles. Va-yehi tochen be-veit ha-asurim ('he was grinding in the prison house') — grinding grain was the work of slaves, women, and animals. The mighty judge is reduced to the lowest form of prison labor, walking in circles pushing a millstone.
22. Va-yachel se'ar rosho letsammeach ka-asher gullach ('the hair of his head began to sprout/grow after it was shaved') — this single verse is one of the most quietly powerful in the entire narrative. Amid the darkness — blindness, slavery, grinding — a seed of hope emerges. The verb tsamach ('to sprout, to grow') is used for plants sprouting from the earth. The hair growing back is the Nazirite sign renewing itself. The text does not say God's power is returning; it simply notes the hair growing. But the reader knows the connection. The Philistines, in their arrogance, do not think to keep shaving him. This single botanical observation is the turning point of the chapter.
23. Va-ne'esfu lizboach zevach gadol le-Dagon eloheihem ('they gathered to sacrifice a great sacrifice to Dagon their god') — Dagon was the chief deity of the Philistines, a grain and fertility god (the name may relate to dagan, 'grain,' or dag, 'fish'). The irony of Samson grinding grain in the temple of a grain god is devastating. The Philistines' declaration natan eloheinu be-yadenu et Shimshon oyevenu ('our god has given our enemy Samson into our hands') deliberately echoes the language Israel uses for YHWH's victories — natan be-yad ('gave into the hand of'). They credit Dagon with what Samson's own sin accomplished. The theological contest is now explicit: YHWH versus Dagon, the God of Israel versus the god of the Philistines.
24. The people's hymn of praise to Dagon has three charges against Samson: oyevenu ('our enemy'), machariav artsenu ('the devastator of our land' — referring to the burned fields of 15:5), and asher hirschah et chalalenu ('who multiplied our slain'). The verb hillel ('to praise') is the same root used in the Hebrew word hallelujah ('praise the LORD'). The Philistines direct praise to the wrong god. This public liturgy of Dagon-worship sets the theological stage for the climax: when Samson prays to YHWH (v. 28), the two prayers — one to Dagon, one to YHWH — will be answered in radically different ways.
25. Ki tov libbam ('when their heart was good' — when they were merry/drunken) — the festive mood leads to cruelty. Qir'u le-Shimshon vi-ysacheq lanu ('call Samson that he may amuse/perforam for us') — the verb tsachaq can mean 'to play, to perform, to make sport.' The mighty judge has become a court jester, a source of entertainment for drunk Philistines. The humiliation is total: the man empowered by the Spirit of the LORD is now a spectacle in the house of Dagon. Va-ya'amidu oto bein ha-ammudim ('they stood him between the pillars') — this seemingly minor staging detail is the pivot of the entire story. The pillars are load-bearing columns that support the temple roof.
26. El ha-na'ar ha-machaziq be-yado ('to the boy holding his hand') — the once-mighty Samson is now led by a na'ar ('boy, young attendant'). He is blind and needs a child's guidance. His request — hanichah oti va-hamisheni et ha-ammudim ('let me rest and let me feel the pillars') — sounds innocent: a tired, blind man wanting to lean against something for support. The stated reason ve-isha'en aleihem ('so I can lean on them') conceals his true intention. This is the first time in the Samson narrative that the protagonist plans strategically rather than acting on impulse. Blindness and suffering have produced something new in Samson: deliberation.
27. The narrator pauses to describe the scene: the temple is packed — male ha-anashim ve-ha-nashim ('full of men and women') — and all five sarnei Pelishtim ('Philistine rulers') are present. An additional kishlosheth alafim ish ve-ishah ('about three thousand men and women') watch from the roof. This is the concentrated leadership and populace of the Philistine nation, gathered in one building for a religious festival. Ha-ro'im bi-sechoq Shimshon ('watching Samson's entertainment') — they have come to see the defeated champion humiliated. The text carefully establishes the magnitude of the gathering before the collapse — every detail heightens the scale of what follows.
28. Va-yiqra Shimshon el YHWH ('Samson called out to the LORD') — this is Samson's only genuine prayer in the entire cycle. His earlier cry in 15:18 was a complaint driven by thirst; this is a plea driven by total dependence. Adonai YHWH ('Lord GOD') — the double divine address combines the title of sovereignty (Adonai) with the covenant name (YHWH), the most reverent form of address in Hebrew prayer. Zokhreni na ('remember me, please') — the verb zakhar ('to remember') in Hebrew does not mean merely to recall; it means to act on behalf of. Samson asks God not just to think of him but to intervene. Ve-chazzeqeni na akh ha-pa'am ha-zeh ('strengthen me just this one time') — the request is humble, limited, final. Yet even in this moment of genuine prayer, Samson's motivation remains mixed: ve-innaqemah neqam achat mi-shte'ei einai ('let me take one revenge for my two eyes'). His prayer mingles faith with vengeance, dependence on God with personal retribution.
29. Va-yilpot Shimshon et shenei ammudei ha-tavekh ('Samson grasped the two pillars of the middle') — the verb lafat means 'to grasp, to twist, to take hold of firmly.' These are the ammudei ha-tavekh ('central pillars') — the main load-bearing columns. Archaeological excavations of Philistine temples at Tell Qasile and elsewhere have revealed structures supported by two central wooden pillars resting on stone bases, set close enough together for a man to reach both. The description is architecturally plausible. Va-yissamekh aleihem ('he leaned/braced against them') — the verb samakh means 'to lean, to support oneself.' Samson positions himself to push outward.
30. Tamot nafshi im Pelishtim ('let my soul/self die with the Philistines') — Samson's final words are simultaneously a prayer, a battle cry, and a death wish. The verb tamot ('let it die') is a jussive — an expressed wish. He wills his own death along with his enemies'. Va-yet be-koach ('he pushed/bent with strength') — the verb natah means 'to stretch, to bend, to push.' God has answered his prayer — strength has returned one final time. Va-yippol ha-bayit al ha-seranim ('the building fell on the rulers') — all five Philistine rulers are killed. The narrator's summary — ha-metim asher hemit

be-moto rabbim me-asher hemit be-chayyav ('the dead he killed at his death were more than he killed in his life') — is both an epitaph and a judgment. Samson's greatest victory is his death. The man who was set apart for God from the womb returns to God in the rubble of a pagan temple.

31. Va-yeredu echav ve-khol beit avihi ('his brothers and all the house of his father came down') — Samson's family retrieves his body from the ruins of the Dagon temple. The verbs trace his final journey: they 'came down' (yaredu) to Gaza and 'brought him up' (va-ya'alu) to the hill country — the opposite of Samson's life pattern of always going down. He is buried bein Tsor'ah u-vein Eshta'ol ('between Zorah and Eshtaol') — the exact location where the Spirit of the LORD first began to stir him (13:25). The narrative forms a perfect circle: where his life as God's instrument began, there his body rests. Be-qever Manoach aviv ('in the tomb of Manoah his father') — he is gathered to his father. The closing formula ve-hu shafat et Yisra'el esrim shanah ('he judged Israel twenty years') repeats 15:20, forming a structural bracket. Samson's judgeship is complete, but the Philistine oppression continues — he only began the deliverance (13:5).

17

Summary: *Micah of Ephraim steals silver from his mother, returns it, and she has an idol and ephod made. Micah installs his own son as priest, then hires a wandering Levite from Bethlehem. In those days there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The refrain 'there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes' (v. 6) appears for the first time here, framing the chaos of chapters 17-21. The sentence is simultaneously a political diagnosis and a theological indictment — without authority, Israel collapses into self-authorized worship. Micah's shrine is a complete parody of legitimate religion: he has an ephod, teraphim, and a Levite, but everything is unauthorized, homemade, and idolatrous.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase pesel umassekah (v. 4, 'carved image and cast metal image') describes two types of idols from the silver dedicated to the LORD — the contradiction between 'dedicated to the LORD' and 'made into an idol' captures the confusion of Israelite religion at its lowest point. We rendered both terms technically. The Levite's willingness to serve as a personal priest for hire (v. 10) violates every Levitical regulation in the Torah.*

Connections: *The wandering Levite from Bethlehem previews another Levite from Bethlehem in chapter 19. Micah's shrine becomes the basis for the Danite cult in chapter 18. The refrain 'no king in Israel' creates the theological case for the monarchy that 1 Samuel will establish. The ephod and teraphim echo Gideon's idolatrous ephod (8:27) and Rachel's stolen household gods (Genesis 31:19).*

¹There was a man from the hill country of Ephraim whose name was Micayehu. ²He said to his mother, "The eleven hundred pieces of silver that were taken from you — the ones you pronounced a curse over, and spoke about in my hearing — the silver is with me. I took it." His mother said, "May the LORD bless you, my son." ³When he returned the eleven hundred pieces of silver to his mother, his mother said, "I had solemnly dedicated this silver to the LORD from my own hand, for my son — to make a carved image and a cast idol. So now I am giving it back to you." ⁴He returned the silver to his mother, and his mother took two hundred pieces of silver and gave them to the metalworker, who made them into a carved image and a cast idol. It was placed in Micayehu's house. ⁵The man Micah had a shrine. He made an ephod and household idols, and he installed one of his sons as his priest. ⁶In those days, there was no king in Israel. Everyone did whatever seemed right in their own eyes. ⁷There was a young man from Bethlehem in Judah, from the clan of Judah. He was a Levite, and he was residing there as a foreigner. ⁸The man left the town of Bethlehem in Judah to settle wherever he could find a place. On his journey, he came to the hill country of Ephraim, to Micah's house. ⁹Micah said to him, "Where are you coming from?" He answered, "I am a Levite from Bethlehem in Judah, and I am traveling to settle wherever I can find a place." ¹⁰Micah said to him, "Stay with me and be my advisor and priest. I will give you ten pieces of silver per year, a set of clothing, and your food." So the Levite agreed. ¹¹The Levite was willing to stay with the man, and the young man became like one of his own sons to Micah. ¹²Micah installed the Levite, and the young man became his priest and lived in Micah's house. ¹³Then Micah said, "Now I know that the LORD will treat me well, because I have a Levite as my priest."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The name Mikayehu means 'Who is like YHWH?' — a deeply ironic name for someone about to establish a private idolatrous shrine. The narrator introduces him without genealogy or tribal affiliation beyond geography: me-har Efrayim ('from the hill country of Ephraim'). This anonymity signals a shift from the judge narratives to unnamed individuals acting independently. The full form Mikayehu will be shortened to Mikhah (Micah) by verse 4.
2. The sum elef ume'ah hakkeseef ('one thousand and one hundred silver') is identical to the amount each Philistine lord paid Delilah (16:5) — the echo may be deliberate, linking financial corruption across the epilogue and the Samson cycle. The verb alit ('you cursed') indicates a formal imprecation, a spoken curse with perceived supernatural power. Micah's confession is motivated not by moral conviction but by fear of the curse's efficacy. His mother's instant reversal — barukh beni la-YHWH ('blessed be my son by the LORD') — attempts to neutralize the curse with a counter-blessing. The mixing of YHWH-language with what will become idolatry is the chapter's central irony.
3. The infinitive absolute haqddesh hiqdashti ('dedicating I dedicated' — I solemnly dedicated) intensifies her vow's seriousness. The theological contradiction is staggering: she dedicates money la-YHWH ('to the LORD') for the explicit purpose of making a pesel umassekhah ('carved image and cast image') — objects expressly forbidden by the second commandment (Exodus 20:4, Deuteronomy 5:8). The narrator offers no commentary on this contradiction; the reader must recognize the violation. The terms pesel (carved/sculpted from wood or stone) and massekhah (cast/poured from molten metal) represent two distinct forms of idol-making.
4. Of the 1,100 pieces dedicated, only matayim kesef ('two hundred silver') — less than a fifth — actually goes to the idol. The narrator does not explain what happened to the remaining nine hundred, but the implication of misappropriation or broken vows is hard to miss. The tsoref ('refiner, metalworker, silversmith') is the craftsman who casts the idol. The verb vayehi ('and it was') with the singular suggests the pesel and massekhah functioned as a single cultic object, or that one was overlaid on the other. The idol now resides be-veit Mikhayehu ('in the house of Micayehu') — a private home becomes a shrine.
5. The name shortens from Mikhayehu to Mikhah, mirroring the degradation of his religious practice. His beit elohim ('house of God/gods') is a private shrine — a term that can mean either 'a temple' or 'a house of gods,' and the ambiguity is fitting. The efod ('ephod') was a priestly garment used for divination (cf. Gideon's ephod, 8:27); the terafim ('household idols, teraphim') were small figurines used for domestic divination, condemned throughout the prophetic tradition. The phrase vayemalle et yad ('he filled the hand of') is the technical idiom for priestly ordination/installation — but Micah has no authority to consecrate a priest, and his son is not a Levite. Every element of legitimate worship is present in corrupted form.
6. This is the first appearance of the full refrain that bookends the epilogue: be-yamim ha-hem ein melekh be-Yisra'el ('in those days there was no king in Israel') + ish ha-yashar be-einav ya'aseh ('each person would do what was right in his own eyes'). The refrain serves as both explanation and indictment. It explains the chaos — no central authority — and indicts the people — moral autonomy replacing divine law. The phrase ha-yashar be-einav ('the right in his eyes') deliberately echoes Deuteronomy's command to do ha-yashar be-einei YHWH ('what is right in the eyes of the LORD,' Deuteronomy 12:25) — the substitution of human eyes for divine eyes is the theological crisis of the epilogue.
7. The identification is deliberately confusing: mi-mishpachat Yehudah ('from the clan of Judah') yet vehu Levi ('and he was a Levite'). Levites had no tribal territory; they were distributed among the other tribes' cities. A Levite living in Bethlehem (a Judahite town) and identified with Judah's clan suggests either dual affiliation through residence or a blurring of tribal boundaries in a period of social disorder. The term gar ('sojourning, residing as a stranger') indicates he was not a native but a resident alien in Bethlehem — a Levite without a permanent assignment, drifting. His namelessness here is significant; he will be identified only later (18:30).
8. The phrase lagur ba-asher yimtsa ('to sojourn wherever he might find') reveals the Levite's economic desperation — he has no assigned Levitical city, no support, no destination. He is a religious professional looking for employment. The phrase la'asot darkko ('making his way, going on his journey') suggests aimless wandering. That he arrives at Micah's house is presented as coincidence — but the narrator is building toward a transaction that corrupts both parties.
9. Micah's question me-ayin tavo ('from where do you come?') opens a job interview. The Levite's self-identification — Levi anokhi ('a Levite I am') — is the crucial credential. His availability (lagur ba-asher emtsa, 'to reside wherever I can find') makes him ideal for Micah's purposes: an unemployed religious professional willing to work for anyone who will pay. The exchange is transactional from both sides — Micah wants a credentialed priest, the Levite wants a patron.
10. The offer is remarkably modest: aseret kesef la-yamim ('ten silver per year'), an erekh begadim ('a set of clothing'), and mikhyatekha ('your sustenance/living'). This is subsistence-level compensation — room, board, a small salary. The title le-av ulekhohhen ('as a father and as a priest') is significant: av ('father') here means 'counselor, advisor, patron-figure' rather than literal father — the same honorific appears in Genesis 45:8 and 2 Kings 6:21. Micah is hiring a personal chaplain. The Levite's acceptance — vayelexh ha-Levi ('and the Levite went') — is immediate, no negotiation, no inquiry about the legitimacy of the shrine.
11. The verb vayyo'el ('he was willing, he consented') suggests the Levite needed no persuading — the arrangement suited him. The phrase ke-achad mibbhanav ('like one of his sons') is both domestic and ironic: Micah already consecrated an actual son as priest (v. 5), and now this Levite replaces him — the hired professional displaces the family member. The narrator calls him ha-na'ar ('the young man'), emphasizing his youth and, perhaps, his impressionability.

12. Again the ordination formula: *vayemalle Mikhah et yad ha-Levi* ('Micah filled the hand of the Levite') — the technical idiom for priestly consecration. But this ordination is doubly illegitimate: first, only God or Moses could authorize priestly service in the normative tradition; second, the Levite serves a shrine with carved images. The phrase *vayehi be-veit Mikhah* ('he was in the house of Micah') reinforces the domestication of religion — worship has been privatized, and the priest is a household employee.
13. Micah's final statement is the chapter's theological punchline: *attah yadati ki yeitiv YHWH li* ('now I know that the LORD will do good to me'). His confidence is based entirely on having secured the right religious professional — *ki hayah li ha-Levi lekhohhen* ('because I have a Levite as priest'). He treats divine favor as a product of proper religious staffing, as if God can be manipulated through correct cultic arrangements. The irony is devastating: Micah has violated the second commandment, set up an unauthorized shrine, and hired a mercenary priest — yet he is certain of God's blessing. The narrator lets his words stand without correction, trusting the reader to perceive the self-deception. This verse closes the chapter that opens the epilogue, establishing the pattern: sincere religious devotion utterly detached from covenant faithfulness.

18

Summary: *The tribe of Dan, unable to hold their allotted territory, sends spies north to Laish. On the way they discover Micah's shrine and Levite. The Danite army steals Micah's idol and priest, conquers peaceful Laish, renames it Dan, and establishes their own cult with the graven image.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The people of Laish are described as 'quiet and unsuspecting' (v. 7, *shoqet uvo'teach*) — they are peaceful, isolated, and defenseless. Dan's conquest of Laish is not a holy war but a predatory migration: an armed tribe attacks the vulnerable because they can. The stolen Levite serves willingly when he learns he will serve a tribe instead of a household — his ambition upgrades. The narrator's quiet note that the idol 'remained all the time that the house of God was at Shiloh' (v. 31) places Dan's false cult alongside God's legitimate sanctuary.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *am shoqet uvo'teach* (v. 7, 'a people quiet and trusting') describes Laish's inhabitants with words that elsewhere describe the righteous — they are destroyed precisely because they trust. We rendered the description sympathetically, as the Hebrew does. The identity of the Levite is revealed as 'Jonathan son of Gershom son of Moses' in some manuscripts — the Masoretes may have altered 'Moses' to 'Manasseh' by inserting a suspended nun to protect Moses's reputation.*

Connections: *Dan's migration fulfills the failed allotment of Joshua 19:47. The cult at Dan becomes one of Jeroboam's two golden-calf sites (1 Kings 12:29) — the roots of northern apostasy begin here in Judges. The stolen idol connects to Micah's shrine in chapter 17. The peaceful Laish contrasts with the war-hardened Canaanite cities of Joshua.*

1In those days, there was no king in Israel. And in those days, the tribe of Dan was looking for territory to settle in, because up to that point no allotment had fallen to them among the tribes of Israel as a permanent inheritance. 2The Danites sent five men from their clan — capable warriors from Zorah and Eshtaol — to scout the land and explore it. They told them, "Go, explore the land." The scouts came to the hill country of Ephraim, to Micah's house, and spent the night there. 3When they were near Micah's house, they recognized the voice of the young Levite. They turned aside there and asked him, "Who brought you here? What are you doing in this place? What do you have here?" 4He said to them, "Micah has done such and such for me. He hired me, and I serve as his priest." 5They said to him, "Please inquire of God so we can know whether the mission we are undertaking will succeed." 6The priest said to them, "Go in peace. The mission you are undertaking has the LORD's approval." 7The five men went on and came to Laish. They observed the people living there — secure and unsuspecting, following the customs of the Sidonians, quiet and confident. There was no oppressive ruler in the land, and they were far from the Sidonians, with no alliance with anyone. 8They returned to their kinsmen at Zorah and Eshtaol. Their kinsmen asked them, "What did you find?" 9They said, "Get up! Let's attack them! We have seen the land, and it is very good. Are you going to sit here doing nothing? Don't hesitate to go and take possession of the land." 10When you get there, you will find an unsuspecting people and a spacious land. God has given it into your hands — a place where there is no shortage of anything the earth produces. 11So six hundred men from the Danite clan set out from Zorah and Eshtaol, armed for war. 12They went up and camped at Kiriath-jearim in Judah. That is why the place is called Mahaneh-dan to this day — it is west of Kiriath-jearim. 13From there they crossed into the hill country of Ephraim and came to Micah's house. 14Then the

five men who had scouted the territory of Laish spoke up and said to their kinsmen, "Do you know that in these buildings there is an ephod, household idols, a carved image, and a cast idol? Now consider what you should do." ¹⁵They turned aside and went to the house of the young Levite — that is, Micah's house — and greeted him. ¹⁶The six hundred armed Danite warriors stood positioned at the entrance of the gate. ¹⁷The five men who had scouted the land went inside and took the carved image, the ephod, the household idols, and the cast idol, while the priest stood at the entrance of the gate with the six hundred armed warriors. ¹⁸When these men entered Micah's house and took the carved image, the ephod, the household idols, and the cast idol, the priest said to them, "What are you doing?" ¹⁹They said to him, "Be quiet. Put your hand over your mouth and come with us. Be our advisor and priest. Which is better — being a priest for one man's household, or being priest for an entire tribe and clan in Israel?" ²⁰The priest was delighted. He took the ephod, the household idols, and the carved image, and joined the people. ²¹They turned and left, placing their children, livestock, and valuables at the front of the column. ²²When they had gone some distance from Micah's house, the men from the houses near Micah's were called together and caught up with the Danites. ²³They called out to the Danites, who turned around and said to Micah, "What's wrong with you, that you've gathered this group?" ²⁴He said, "You took my gods that I made and my priest, and you just left! What do I have left? How can you ask me, 'What's wrong with you?'" ²⁵The Danites said to him, "Don't let us hear your voice again, or some hot-tempered men might attack you, and you will lose your life along with your household." ²⁶The Danites went on their way. When Micah saw that they were too strong for him, he turned around and went back home. ²⁷They took what Micah had made, along with his priest, and attacked Laish — a quiet, unsuspecting people. They struck them down with the sword and burned the city. ²⁸There was no one to rescue them, because the city was far from Sidon and they had no alliance with anyone. It was in the valley near Beth-rehob. The Danites rebuilt the city and settled in it. ²⁹They named the city Dan, after their ancestor Dan who was born to Israel. The city had previously been called Laish. ³⁰The Danites set up the carved image for themselves. Jonathan son of Gershom, son of Moses, and his descendants served as priests for the tribe of Dan until the day the land went into exile. ³¹They maintained Micah's carved image that he had made for as long as the house of God was at Shiloh.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The half-refrain *ein melekh be-Yisra'el* ('there was no king in Israel') opens this chapter, linking it to the theological framework established in 17:6. The Danites' search for *nachalah* ('inheritance, territorial allotment') contradicts Joshua 19:40-48, which records Dan receiving an allotment — the issue was their inability to conquer it (cf. Judges 1:34, where the Amorites pressed Dan back into the hill country). The narrator's phrasing *lo nafelah lo* ('it had not fallen to them') uses the language of lot-casting (the verb *n-p-l*, 'to fall,' is the technical term for territorial assignment by lot), suggesting Dan's allotment never materialized in practice.
2. The five scouts are *anashim benei chayil* ('men, sons of valor' — capable, seasoned warriors), sent from *Tsor'ah* and *Eshta'ol* — the same towns associated with Samson (13:25, 16:31). The verbs *leraggel* ('to spy out, to scout') and *lachokrah* ('to explore, search thoroughly') echo the language of the original spy mission in Numbers 13. The scouts' arrival at Micah's house — presented as a lodging stop — sets up the collision between Dan's territorial ambitions and Micah's private cult.
3. The scouts *hikkiru* ('recognized') the Levite's voice — implying prior acquaintance, perhaps from his time in Bethlehem. The triple interrogation — *mi hevi'akha halom* ('who brought you here?'), *mah attah oseh bazeh* ('what are you doing in this?'), *mah lekha poh* ('what do you have here?') — probes his situation thoroughly. The questions move from agency (who brought you?) to activity (what are you doing?) to possession (what is your stake here?). Their interest in the Levite is strategic, not pastoral.
4. The Levite's summary is candid: *kazoh vehkzeh* ('such and such' — thus and so) glosses over the details, but the key admission is *vayiskhereni* ('he hired me'). The verb *s-k-r* ('to hire') is commercial language — the same verb used for hiring laborers or mercenaries. The Levite's priesthood is employment, not calling. His matter-of-fact tone suggests no awareness that this arrangement might be problematic.
5. The scouts immediately exploit the Levite's priestly function: *she'al na ve-Elohim* ('inquire, please, of God'). The request treats divination as a service available on demand. The phrase *ha-tatsliach darkkenu* ('will our way succeed/prosper?') uses the verb *ts-l-ch* (hiphil, 'to cause to succeed, to prosper'), seeking a divine guarantee for their military reconnaissance. They want an oracle — and they assume this hired priest at an idolatrous shrine can deliver one.
6. The Levite's oracle is immediate and unqualified: *lekhu leshalom* ('go in peace') followed by *nokhach YHWH darkkekhem* ('before/in the presence of the LORD is your way'). The word *nokhach* ('before, in front of, in the sight of') suggests divine oversight and approval. The oracle is suspiciously convenient — exactly what the scouts want to hear. Whether the Levite actually performed a divinatory ritual (using the ephod) or simply spoke what his audience wished to hear, the text does not say. The narrator's silence is itself a judgment.

7. Laish is described with terms that emphasize its vulnerability: *yoshevet lavetach* ('dwelling securely'), *shoqet uvoteach* ('quiet and trusting/confident'). The phrase *ke-mishpat Tsidonim* ('according to the custom of the Sidonians') indicates a Phoenician cultural orientation. The critical detail is their isolation: *rechoqim hem mi-Tsidonim* ('they were far from the Sidonians') — too distant for their cultural kinsmen to protect them — *ve-davar ein lahem im adam* ('they had no dealings/alliance with anyone'). The phrase *ein makhlim davar ba-arets* ('there was no one causing shame/restraining in the land') may mean no oppressive ruler or no defensive authority — either way, the city is defenseless. The narrator presents Laish's peace not as blessing but as fatal exposure.
8. The scouts return to their base towns — *Tsor'ah* and *Eshta'ol* — and face the question *mah attem* ('what are you?' — meaning 'what is your report?'). The brevity of the question reflects urgency: the Danites need territory and want actionable intelligence.
9. The scouts' report is enthusiastic and action-oriented: *qumah vena'aleh aleihem* ('arise and let us go up against them'). The phrase *ra'inu et ha-arets vehineh tovah me'od* ('we have seen the land and look, it is very good') deliberately echoes the language of the original scouts in Numbers (cf. Numbers 14:7: 'the land is very, very good'). The rebuke *ve-attem machshim* ('and you are being silent/inactive') and *al te'atselu* ('do not be lazy/sluggish') pressures immediate action. The verb *lareshet* ('to possess, to take as inheritance') is the same conquest vocabulary used in Joshua — but here it will mean annihilating a peaceful civilian population.
10. The scouts promise three things: a vulnerable target (*am boteach*, 'a trusting/secure people'), abundant space (*ha-arets rachavat yadayim*, 'the land is broad of hands' — spacious, wide-open), and divine sanction (*netanah Elohim beyedkhem*, 'God has given it into your hands'). The claim of divine authorization echoes the conquest language of Joshua — but no divine oracle has been given to Dan; they received only the word of Micah's hired priest (v. 6). The phrase *ein sham machsor kol davar* ('there is no lack of anything there') portrays Laish as a land of plenty. Every detail is designed to motivate: easy target, rich land, God's backing.
11. The expedition force — *shesh me'ot ish* ('six hundred men') — is modest for a tribal migration, suggesting Dan's reduced strength after losing their original territory to Amorite pressure (1:34). The phrase *chagur kelei milchamah* ('girded with weapons of war') marks this as a military operation, not a peaceful settlement. The same number — six hundred — appears as the surviving Benjaminite remnant in chapter 20, creating a numerical echo across the epilogue.
12. The etiological note explains the place name *Machaneh Dan* ('Camp of Dan') — still in use *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day'), indicating the narrative was composed well after the events. The location *acharei Qiryat Ye'arim* ('behind/west of Kiriath-jearim') places the camp in Judahite territory — Dan passes through Judah on its way north, a journey that will take them through the hill country of Ephraim and Micah's territory.
13. The narrative trajectory is deliberate: the six hundred armed Danites arrive at the same house the five scouts had previously visited. The phrase *vayavo'u ad beit Mikhah* ('they came as far as the house of Micah') signals that this is not a rest stop — it is a destination with a purpose. The collision between Dan's military expedition and Micah's private cult is about to unfold.
14. The scouts reveal their intelligence about Micah's cultic inventory: *efod uterafim ufesel umassekhah* ('ephod and teraphim and carved image and cast image') — four sacred objects that together constitute a full divinatory shrine. The question *ha-yeda'tem* ('did you know?') is rhetorical; the scouts are proposing theft. The phrase *ve-attach de'u mah ta'asu* ('and now know what you should do') is a veiled directive — they are telling the force to seize the cultic objects. The narrator lists all four items together for the first time, emphasizing the scale of Micah's private cult.
15. The phrase *vayish'alu lo leshalom* ('they asked him about peace/welfare' — they greeted him) is the standard salutation formula. The identification of the Levite's residence as *beit Mikhah* ('Micah's house') reinforces that the Levite is a dependent, living in his employer's household. The greeting is polite — a social convention masking the robbery about to occur.
16. The scene is staged like a heist: while the scouts go inside to distract and greet, the main force — *shesh me'ot ish chagurim kelei milchamtam* ('six hundred men girded with their weapons of war') — positions itself at the *petach ha-sha'ar* ('entrance of the gate'). The verb *nitsavim* ('standing, positioned') implies a deliberate military formation, blocking any escape or resistance.
17. The theft is executed with military precision: the five scouts enter and seize all four cultic objects — *ha-pesel*, *ha-efod*, *ha-terafim*, *ha-massekhah* — each with the definite article, emphasizing these are specific, known items. Meanwhile, the priest is kept outside at the gate with the armed force, effectively neutralized as a potential obstacle. The narration is rapid and efficient, mimicking the speed of the operation itself.
18. The Levite's protest — *mah attem osim* ('what are you doing?') — is feeble and quickly overcome. The verse repeats the list of stolen cultic objects, hammering home the comprehensiveness of the theft. The priest's question echoes back to the scouts' question to him in verse 3 — *mah attach oseh bazeh* ('what are you doing here?') — creating an ironic reversal: the one who was questioned now questions, but has no power to stop what is happening.
19. The Danites' recruitment pitch is blunt and effective. The command *hacharesh* ('be silent') followed by *sim yadkha al pikha* ('put your hand on your mouth') is forceful — shut up and listen. Then the offer: *heyeh lanu le-av ulekhohhen* ('be for us a father and priest') — the same title Micah used (17:10), but now with a larger constituency. The rhetorical question — *ha-tov heyotkha khohhen le-veit ish echad o heyotkha khohhen le-shevet ulemishpachah* ('is it better to be priest for one man's house or for a tribe and clan?') — appeals directly to ambition. They are offering a promotion.
20. The phrase *vayyitav lev ha-kohhen* ('the heart of the priest was good/glad') reveals immediate, uncomplicated enthusiasm — no loyalty to Micah, no moral hesitation. The Levite's allegiance transfers instantly to the higher bidder. He personally carries the cultic objects — *ha-efod*, *ha-terafim*, *ha-pesel* — as his professional tools. The phrase *vayavo beqerev ha-am* ('he went into the midst of the people') means he joined their ranks, embedding himself in the Danite community. The mercenary priest has found a better client.

- 21.** The Danites organize their march tactically: ha-taf ('the children/dependents'), ha-miqneh ('the livestock'), and ha-kevuddah ('the valuable goods, heavy baggage') go lifneihem ('before them' — at the front). This is a defensive formation: the fighting men form the rear guard, expecting pursuit from Micah. The inclusion of taf and miqneh confirms this is a permanent migration, not a military raid — they are relocating their entire community.
- 22.** Micah musters his neighbors: ha-anashim asher babattim asher im beit Mikhah ('the men who were in the houses near Micah's house') — a hastily assembled posse. The verb niz'aqu ('they were called out, mustered') suggests an alarm was raised. The verb vayadbiqu ('they overtook, caught up with') means the pursuers closed the gap. But the narrator has already told us the Danites expected this pursuit (v. 21) and positioned their warriors accordingly.
- 23.** The Danites' question — mah lekha ki niz'aqta ('what is the matter with you that you were called out/mustered?') — is mockingly dismissive. Having just stolen his priest, his gods, and his cultic equipment, they pretend not to understand why Micah might be upset. The verb vayassebbu feneihem ('they turned their faces') shows the rear guard turning to confront the pursuers — an unhurried, confident response from a superior force.
- 24.** Micah's lament is simultaneously pathetic and theologically devastating: et elohai asher asiti leqachtem ('my gods which I made, you took'). The phrase 'my gods which I made' is an unwitting confession — gods that can be made and stolen are no gods at all. His protest reduces to a cry of loss: u-mah li od ('and what is left for me?'). Micah has lost his entire religious apparatus — the gods, the priest, the shrine's contents — and with them, his sense of divine security (cf. 17:13). The narrator lets Micah's words expose the bankruptcy of his religion without editorial comment.
- 25.** The threat is naked: al tashma qolkha immanu ('do not let your voice be heard with us') — be silent or face consequences. The phrase anashim marei nefesh ('men bitter of soul' — hot-tempered, volatile men) is a euphemism for the Danite warriors themselves. The warning ve-asafah nafshekha venefesh beitekha ('and you will gather up your life and the life of your house' — you will lose your life and your household's) is a death threat dressed as friendly advice. Six hundred armed men against Micah's posse leaves no doubt about the outcome.
- 26.** The confrontation ends without violence — but only because Micah recognizes the power imbalance: ki chazaqim hemmah mimmennu ('because they were stronger than him'). The verb vayyifen ('he turned') and vayyashov el beito ('he returned to his house') describe a defeated retreat. Micah goes home to an empty shrine — gods stolen, priest hired away, religious system dismantled. The narrator offers no sympathy; the chapter's logic implies that what was built on human manufacture and mercenary religion could be taken away just as easily.
- 27.** The narrator returns to the same descriptors for Laish: am shoqet uvoteach ('a quiet and trusting people') — the repetition from verse 7 makes the massacre feel premeditated rather than impulsive. The Danites knew exactly what they would find. The phrase vayakku otam lefi cherev ('they struck them with the mouth/edge of the sword') is the standard formula for military annihilation. The burning of the city — ve-et ha-ir sarefu va-esh ('the city they burned with fire') — completes the destruction. No resistance is recorded; no military engagement — only slaughter of civilians who expected no attack.
- 28.** The devastating phrase ve-ein matstsil ('and there was no deliverer/rescuer') echoes the Judges cycle — but here the one needing deliverance is not Israel but Israel's victims. The verb matstsil (hiphil participle of n-ts-l, 'to deliver, rescue') is the same root used for God's deliverance of Israel. The geographic note — ba-emeq asher le-Veit Rechov ('in the valley belonging to Beth-rehob') — places Laish in the upper Jordan valley near the sources of the Jordan River. The Danites vayyivnu et ha-ir ('rebuilt the city') — civilization replaces the one they destroyed, but the foundation is massacre.
- 29.** The renaming — vayiqre'u shem ha-ir Dan ('they called the name of the city Dan') — claims the conquered territory through naming. The phrase be-shem Dan avihem ('after the name of Dan their father') grounds the claim in patriarchal genealogy: Dan was a son of Jacob/Israel. The editorial note ve-ulam Layish shem ha-ir larishonah ('but Laish was the name of the city at first') preserves the original name as a historical marker. The city Dan will become infamous as the site of Jeroboam's golden calf (1 Kings 12:29), making its founding in idolatry here darkly prophetic.
- 30.** This verse finally names the anonymous Levite: Yehonatan ben Gershom ben Menasheh ('Jonathan son of Gershom son of Manasseh'). However, the Hebrew text contains a famous scribal anomaly: the letter nun in Menasheh is written as a 'suspended nun' — a letter raised above the line. Remove the nun and the name reads Mosheh — Moses. The Masoretic tradition preserves both readings: the original text identified this idolatrous priest as a direct descendant of Moses through his son Gershom (Exodus 2:22, 18:3), but later scribes inserted the suspended nun to read 'Manasseh' instead, protecting Moses' honor. The phrase ad yom gelot ha-arets ('until the day of the exile of the land') likely refers to the Assyrian conquest of the northern kingdom in 722 BCE — meaning the Danite idol cult persisted for centuries.
- 31.** The closing verse juxtaposes two religious centers: pesel Mikhah ('Micah's idol') at Dan and beit ha-Elohim be-Shiloh ('the house of God at Shiloh') — the legitimate sanctuary where the tabernacle was stationed. The phrase kol yemei heyot ('all the days of the being/existence of') indicates the Danite idol cult operated concurrently with the legitimate Shiloh sanctuary. This creates a geographical and theological polarity: legitimate YHWH worship at Shiloh in the center versus idolatrous YHWH worship at Dan in the north. The chapter ends not with resolution but with ongoing corruption — the idol remains, the counterfeit priesthood endures, and Israel's religious life is fractured from within.

19

Summary: *A Levite's concubine leaves him and returns to her father's house in Bethlehem. The Levite retrieves her. On the return journey, they lodge in Gibeah of Benjamin, where men of the city demand the Levite for sexual assault. The host offers his daughter and the concubine instead. The concubine is gang-raped throughout the night and dies. The Levite dismembers her body into twelve pieces and sends them to all Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the darkest chapter in the Hebrew Bible. The Gibeah outrage deliberately echoes the Sodom narrative (Genesis 19) in structure, vocabulary, and horror — but here the perpetrators are Israelites, not Canaanites. The nation has become the thing it was supposed to replace. The phrase 'from the day the Israelites came up from Egypt until this day, nothing like this has been done or seen' (v. 30) calls every tribe to respond. The dismemberment of the concubine — twelve pieces for twelve tribes — makes every tribe a witness to the crime.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew is spare and devastating: 'her master rose in the morning, opened the doors of the house, and went out to go on his way, and there was his concubine fallen at the doorstep with her hands on the threshold' (v. 27). The phrase yadeyha al hassaf ('her hands on the threshold') is the most haunting image in Judges — she crawled to the door and died reaching for safety. We preserved the Hebrew's restraint; the text does not narrate the rape, only its aftermath.*

Connections: *The Genesis 19 (Sodom) parallel is unmistakable and deliberate — hospitality violated, mob demand for sexual assault, a substitute offered. The Levite's twelve-piece message echoes Saul's later rally in 1 Samuel 11:7 (cutting oxen, not a body). The Gibeah atrocity leads directly to the near-extirmination of Benjamin (ch. 20) and becomes a permanent marker of Israel's moral failure in Hosea 9:9 and 10:9.*

¹In those days, there was no king in Israel. A Levite living in the remote parts of the hill country of Ephraim took a woman from Bethlehem in Judah as his concubine. ²His concubine was unfaithful to him and left him, going to her father's house in Bethlehem in Judah. She stayed there for four months. ³Her husband set out and went after her to speak tenderly to her and bring her back. He had his servant with him and a pair of donkeys. She brought him into her father's house, and when the young woman's father saw him, he was glad to welcome him. ⁴His father-in-law, the young woman's father, pressed him to stay, and he remained with him for three days. They ate and drank and spent the night there. ⁵On the fourth day they got up early in the morning, and the Levite prepared to leave. But the young woman's father said to his son-in-law, "Have something to eat first, and then you can go." ⁶So they sat down and the two of them ate and drank together. Then the young woman's father said to the man, "Please agree to stay the night and enjoy yourself." ⁷The man got up to leave, but his father-in-law pressed him, so he stayed and spent the night there again. ⁸On the fifth day he got up early to leave, and the young woman's father said, "Please, have something to eat. Wait until the afternoon." So the two of them ate. ⁹When the man got up to leave with his concubine and his servant, his father-in-law, the young woman's father, said to him, "Look, the day is fading toward evening. Please spend the night. The day is almost over — stay here tonight and enjoy yourself. Tomorrow you can get an early start and head home." ¹⁰But the man refused to spend another night. He got up and left, and traveled until he was opposite Jebus — that is, Jerusalem. He had with him his two saddled donkeys and his concubine. ¹¹When they were near Jebus, the day was nearly gone. The servant said to his master, "Come, let's turn aside into this Jebusite city and spend the night there." ¹²His master said to him, "We will not turn aside into a foreign city where the people are not Israelites. We will go on to Gibeah." ¹³He said to his servant, "Come, let's press on to one of these towns and spend the night in Gibeah or Ramah." ¹⁴They passed by and continued on, and the sun set on them near Gibeah, which belongs to Benjamin. ¹⁵They turned aside there and went in to spend the night at Gibeah. He went inside and sat down in the town square, but no one took them into their home for the night. ¹⁶Then an old man came in from his work in the fields that evening. The man was from the hill country of Ephraim and was living as a foreigner in Gibeah; the local people were Benjaminites. ¹⁷He looked up and saw the traveler in the town square. The old man said, "Where are you going? Where are you coming from?" ¹⁸He answered, "We are traveling from Bethlehem in Judah to the remote hill country of Ephraim, which is where I am from."

I went to Bethlehem in Judah, and now I am going to the house of the LORD. But no one has taken me into their home." ¹⁹We have straw and feed for our donkeys, and bread and wine for me, for your servant-woman, and for the young man with your servants. We lack nothing." ²⁰The old man said, "You are welcome at my home. Let me take care of all your needs. Just don't spend the night in the square." ²¹He brought him into his house and fed the donkeys. They washed their feet and ate and drank. ²²While they were relaxing, the men of the city — worthless men — surrounded the house and pounded on the door. They said to the old man who owned the house, "Bring out the man who came to your house so we can have sex with him." ²³The owner of the house went out to them and said, "No, my brothers! Please do not act so wickedly. Since this man has come into my house, do not commit this outrage." ²⁴Here are my virgin daughter and his concubine. Let me bring them out. Violate them and do whatever you want with them, but do not commit this outrage against this man." ²⁵But the men refused to listen to him. So the Levite seized his concubine and pushed her outside to them. They raped her and abused her through the night until morning. They let her go as dawn was breaking. ²⁶The woman came at the approach of dawn and collapsed at the entrance of the house where her master was staying. She lay there until daylight. ²⁷Her master got up in the morning, opened the doors of the house, and went out to continue his journey. There was the woman, his concubine, fallen at the entrance of the house with her hands on the threshold. ²⁸He said to her, "Get up. Let's go." There was no answer. He put her on the donkey, and the man set out for home. ²⁹When he arrived home, he took a knife, grasped his concubine's body, and cut her limb by limb into twelve pieces. Then he sent them throughout the entire territory of Israel. ³⁰Everyone who saw it said, "Nothing like this has ever happened or been seen since the day the Israelites came up from the land of Egypt until today. Think about it. Take counsel. Speak up."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The half-refrain *u-melekh ein be-Yisra'el* ('and a king there was not in Israel') opens the most disturbing chapter in Judges. The Levite is described as *gar be-yarketei har Efrayim* ('sojourning in the far reaches of the hill country of Ephraim') — the word *yarketei* ('remote parts, far sides') suggests geographical marginality. He takes a *pilegish* ('concubine') — a secondary wife with recognized but lesser legal status than a full wife. She is from Bethlehem in Judah, the same town as the Levite in chapters 17-18, creating a geographic echo. The namelessness of both the Levite and his concubine throughout this chapter is significant: they are representative figures, not individual characters.
2. The verb *vattizneh* ('she was unfaithful/she prostituted herself') is debated. The standard meaning of *z-n-h* is sexual infidelity, but the LXX (Septuagint) reads 'she became angry with him' (Greek *orgisthe*), suggesting an alternate Hebrew reading or interpretive tradition. Some scholars argue the verb here means 'to be estranged from' rather than literal sexual unfaithfulness. Either way, she returns to her father's house — *beit aviha* ('her father's house') — which was her right as a concubine. The four-month separation (*yamim arba'ah chodashim* — 'days, four months') provides time for the relationship to cool and for the father-in-law to establish the hospitality dynamic that follows.
3. The Levite's purpose is reconciliation: *ledabber al libbah* ('to speak upon her heart' — to speak tenderly, to win her back). This is the same phrase used of God's courtship of Israel in Hosea 2:16. He brings practical resources — a *na'ar* ('servant/attendant') and *tsemed chamorim* ('a pair of donkeys') for the return journey. Her response — *vatebi'ehu beit aviha* ('she brought him into her father's house') — suggests willingness to reconcile. The father's reaction — *vayyismach liqrato* ('he rejoiced to meet him') — is enthusiastically hospitable, setting up the extended hospitality sequence.
4. The verb *vayyechezaq bo* ('he held onto him, pressed him') shows the father-in-law's insistent hospitality — the same verb used for grasping, seizing. The three-day stay (*sheloshet yamim*) with its pattern of eating, drinking, and lodging establishes a hospitality rhythm that will stretch uncomfortably through verses 5-9. The extended hospitality scene serves a narrative purpose: it delays the Levite's departure until late in the day, which will force the fateful overnight stop at Gibeah.
5. The fourth day introduces a pattern of delay. The father-in-law's invitation — *se'ad libbekha pat lechem* ('sustain your heart with a morsel of bread') — uses the verb *s-'-d* ('to sustain, support, refresh') and is a conventional hospitality formula. The phrase *ve-achar telekhu* ('and afterward you may go') implies the meal should precede departure — a reasonable request that becomes a mechanism of entrapment through repetition.
6. A meal that was supposed to precede departure becomes another occasion for delay. The father's plea — *ho'el na velin* ('please be willing and stay the night') — uses *ho'el* ('be willing, consent'), the same verb used for the Levite who agreed to stay with Micah (17:11). The phrase *veyitav libbeka* ('and let your heart be good/merry') frames continued hospitality as pleasure. The narrator's repetition of eating and drinking creates a drowsy, stalling atmosphere — every hour spent here is an hour lost for the return journey.
7. The verb *vayyiftsar* ('he urged, pressed, insisted') is stronger than the previous requests — active persuasion bordering on coercion. The pattern is now established: the Levite tries to leave, the father-in-law detains him. This hospitality — excessive, insistent — contrasts sharply with the complete absence of hospitality that will follow at Gibeah. The narrator builds the contrast through accumulation.

8. Fifth day — the same pattern: early rising, attempt to depart, the father's intervention. The phrase *vehitmahmehu ad netot ha-yom* ('linger until the day declines') pushes departure dangerously late. The verb *hitmahmehu* ('linger, delay, tarry') is the same verb used in Genesis 19:16 when the angels urged Lot to leave Sodom and he lingered — a Genesis 19 verbal echo that foreshadows what awaits at Gibeah. Every hour of delay narrows the travel window.
9. The father-in-law's final appeal is the most elaborate: *hinneh na rafah ha-yom la'arov* ('look, the day has weakened toward evening') — the verb *rafah* ('to weaken, grow feeble') personifies the dying daylight. The repeated *hinneh chanot ha-yom* ('look, the day is encamping/declining') reinforces the urgency. His advice — *vehishkamtem machar* ('rise early tomorrow') — seems practical and safe. But this time the Levite refuses. His decision to depart at dusk rather than stay another night will prove catastrophic. The phrase *vehalakhta le-ohalekha* ('and you will go to your tent' — go home) uses the archaic 'tent' for household, recalling Israel's nomadic origins.
10. The Levite's refusal — *velo avah ha-ish lalun* ('the man was not willing to stay the night') — sets the tragedy in motion. He reaches *nokhach Yevus* ('opposite Jebus') — the narrator identifies this as *hi Yerushalayim* ('that is, Jerusalem'), still a non-Israelite city at this point in the narrative. The detail of *chamorim chavushim* ('saddled donkeys') and his concubine establishes the traveling party. The mention of Jebus/Jerusalem is crucial for the next verse, where the Levite's decision to bypass a non-Israelite city in favor of an Israelite one will prove fatally wrong.
11. The servant's suggestion is practical: *ha-yom rad me'od* ('the day has gone down very much' — it is getting very late), and Jebus is right there. The verb *nasurah* ('let us turn aside') proposes the sensible option — shelter in the nearest city. The servant identifies it as *ir ha-Yevusi* ('the city of the Jebusite') — a non-Israelite settlement. His practical instinct will be overridden by his master's ethnic preference.
12. The Levite's reasoning — *lo nasur el ir nokhri asher lo mibbenei Yisra'el hennah* ('we will not turn aside into a foreign city that is not of the sons of Israel') — assumes an Israelite city will be safer than a non-Israelite one. The irony is devastating: he chooses Gibeah, a Benjaminite city, expecting Israelite hospitality — and will encounter behavior worse than anything he might have faced among the Jebusites. The narrative inverts expectations systematically: the foreigner's city would have been safe; the Israelite city will be deadly. The echo of Abraham's and Lot's encounters with foreign cities is deliberate.
13. The Levite offers two Israelite options: *ba-Giv'ah o va-Ramah* ('in Gibeah or in Ramah') — both Benjaminite towns a short distance north of Jebus/Jerusalem. Gibeah (later Saul's hometown, 1 Samuel 10:26) is closer, and they will reach it first. The Levite's confidence in Israelite hospitality drives the choice. The phrase *lekhah veniqrevah* ('come and let us draw near') expresses urgency — daylight is failing.
14. The phrase *vattavo lahem ha-shemesh* ('the sun came upon them' — set on them) marks the transition to night and to danger. The narrator specifies *asher le-Vinyamin* ('which belongs to Benjamin') — the tribal identification is important for the tribal war that will follow in chapter 20. The setting sun signals the end of safe travel and the beginning of the chapter's nightmare.
15. The Levite enters Gibeah and sits *birechov ha-ir* ('in the open square of the city') — the public gathering place where travelers would wait for hospitality offers. The devastating phrase *ve-ein ish me'assef otam habbaytah lalun* ('and there was no one gathering/taking them into the house to lodge') signals a catastrophic failure of the fundamental Near Eastern obligation of hospitality. In a culture where hosting strangers was a sacred duty, the refusal of an entire city to offer shelter is an indictment. The parallel with Genesis 19:2-3 (Lot in Sodom's square) is unmistakable and deliberate.
16. The only person who offers hospitality is himself an outsider: *me-har Efrayim* ('from the hill country of Ephraim') and *hu gar ba-Giv'ah* ('he was sojourning in Gibeah') — a resident alien, not a native Benjaminite. The narrator emphasizes the distinction: *ve-anshei ha-maqom benei Yemini* ('and the men of the place were Benjaminites'). The native population has refused hospitality; only the foreigner-within fulfills the obligation. The parallel with Lot in Sodom tightens — Lot too was a resident alien who alone offered hospitality to strangers (Genesis 19:1-3).
17. The old man's double question — *anah telekh ume-ayin tavo* ('where are you going and from where do you come?') — is the standard traveler's inquiry. The term *ha-ish ha-oreakh* ('the traveling man, the wayfarer') emphasizes the Levite's vulnerability as a stranger. The old man initiates contact — *vayyissa einav* ('he lifted his eyes') — actively looking for someone in need, unlike the rest of Gibeah's inhabitants.
18. The Levite explains his journey and repeats the hospitality failure: *ve-ein ish me'assef oti habbaytah* ('no one is gathering me into the house'). The phrase *ve-et beit YHWH ani holekh* ('and to the house of the LORD I am going') is textually uncertain — some manuscripts read 'to my house' (*beiti*) rather than 'the house of the LORD.' If the reading 'house of the LORD' is original, it adds further irony: a man heading to God's sanctuary will be destroyed by God's own people.
19. The Levite emphasizes that he is not a burden: *ein machsor kol davar* ('there is no lack of anything') — he has provisions for both animals (*teven*, 'straw'; *mispo*, 'fodder/provender') and people (*lechem vayayin*, 'bread and wine'). He refers to his concubine as *amatekha* ('your maidservant'), using the deferential second-person form. His self-sufficiency makes the city's refusal to host him even more inexcusable — he is not asking for charity, only for shelter.
20. The old man's response — *shalom lakh* ('peace to you') and *kol machsorrekha alai* ('all your needs are on me') — is the fullest expression of hospitality in the narrative. But his urgent warning — *raq barechov al talan* ('only in the square do not spend the night') — reveals that he knows the danger. The emphatic *raq* ('only, but') conveys urgency: whatever else happens, do not stay outside. Like Lot warning the angels in Sodom (Genesis 19:2-3), the old man knows what happens to unprotected strangers in this city after dark.
21. The hospitality sequence is complete: shelter (*vayevi'ehu leveito*, 'he brought him to his house'), animal care (*vayavol lachamorim*, 'he mixed feed for the donkeys'), personal hygiene (*vayyirchatsu ragleihem*, 'they washed their feet'), and food (*vayokhelu vayyishtu*, 'they ate and drank'). The verb *yavol* (from *b-l-l*, 'to mix fodder') is a specific agricultural term. The scene is brief and proper — a stark contrast to what immediately follows.

- 22.** The parallel with Genesis 19:4-5 (Sodom) is now explicit and unmistakable. The phrase *anshei benei beliya'al* ('men, sons of worthlessness/wickedness') identifies the attackers — *beliya'al* is not a proper name here but a term meaning 'worthlessness, destructiveness.' They *nasabbu et ha-bayit* ('surrounded the house') and *mitdapeqim al ha-delet* ('pounded on the door') — besieging it like a military target. Their demand — *hotse et ha-ish asher ba el beitekha veneda'ennu* ('bring out the man who came to your house and let us know him') — uses the verb *y-d-* ('to know') in its sexual sense, exactly as in Genesis 19:5. The narrator forces the reader to see Gibeah through the lens of Sodom: an Israelite city has become indistinguishable from the paradigmatic city of wickedness.
- 23.** The host's protest echoes Lot's words in Genesis 19:7 almost verbatim: *al achai al tare'u na* ('no, my brothers, do not do evil'). The term *ha-nevalah ha-zot* ('this outrage/disgrace') is a specific term for acts of gross sexual violation or social transgression — the same word used for Shechem's rape of Dinah (Genesis 34:7) and Amnon's rape of Tamar (2 Samuel 13:12). His appeal is to the obligation of hospitality: *acharei asher ba ha-ish ha-zeh el beiti* ('since this man has come into my house') — the guest is under his protection, and violating a guest violates the host.
- 24.** The host offers two women — *hinneh bitti ha-betulah ufilagshehu* ('here is my daughter the virgin and his concubine') — as substitutes, exactly as Lot offered his daughters in Sodom (Genesis 19:8). The verb *annu* ('afflict them, violate them, rape them') is the same verb used for the rape of Dinah (Genesis 34:2). The horrifying phrase *va'asu lahem ha-tov be-eineikhem* ('do to them what is good in your eyes') echoes the refrain of 17:6 — 'what is right in their own eyes' — with devastating irony: moral autonomy has descended to sanctioned gang rape. The host protects the male guest at the cost of the women. The narrator reports this without commentary, letting the moral horror register through the bare facts.
- 25.** The critical action: *vayyachazaq ha-ish befilagsho vayyotse aleihem hachuts* ('the man grabbed his concubine and brought her out to them outside'). The subject 'the man' most likely refers to the Levite himself — he physically seizes his own concubine and thrusts her out to the mob. The verbs that follow are unflinching: *vayyede'u otah* ('they knew her' — they raped her) and *vayyit'allelu vah* ('they abused/mistreated her') *kol ha-laylah ad ha-boqer* ('all the night until the morning'). The verb *hit'allel* ('to abuse, treat brutally') describes sustained, repeated violence. The phrase *vayshallechuha ba'alot ha-shachar* ('they released her at the rising of the dawn') — the verb *shillech* ('to send away, release') treats her like a used object being discarded. The narrator's flat tone is itself a form of testimony.
- 26.** The image is devastating in its simplicity: *vattipol petach beit ha-ish asher adoneiha sham* ('she fell at the entrance of the house of the man where her master was'). She crawls back to the only shelter she knows — the house where the man who pushed her outside is sleeping. The word *adoneiha* ('her master/lord') rather than 'her husband' underscores the power dynamic. The phrase *ad ha-or* ('until the light') — she lies at the threshold through the remaining darkness, alone, while her 'master' is inside. The narrator does not say whether she is alive or dead at this point.
- 27.** The Levite rises, opens the door, and prepares to leave — *vayyetse lalekhet ledarko* ('he went out to go on his way') — as if nothing has happened. His first thought is the journey, not the woman he forced outside. Then: *vehineh ha-ishah pilagsho nofelet petach ha-bayit* ('and there was the woman, his concubine, fallen at the entrance of the house'). The image of her hands *al ha-saf* ('on the threshold') is one of the most haunting in all of Scripture — her fingers gripping the doorstep she could not cross. The narrator does not tell us what the Levite feels. The silence is deafening.
- 28.** The Levite's words — *qumi venelekhah* ('get up and let's go') — are staggeringly callous. The phrase *ve-ein oneh* ('and there was no answer') confirms she is dead or dying — the same phrase used when God does not answer (1 Samuel 14:37, 28:6). The narrator's restraint is excruciating: no description of the Levite's reaction, no grief, no outrage. He loads her onto the donkey — *vayyiqqacheha al ha-chamor* — like cargo, and continues home — *vayyelekh limqomo* ('he went to his place'). The flatness of the narration mirrors the Levite's apparent emotional flatness.
- 29.** The Levite takes *ha-ma'akhelet* ('the knife' — the same word used for the knife Abraham used at the binding of Isaac, Genesis 22:6, 10) and *vayyenattecheha la-atsameiha* ('he cut her into her bones/limbs') — the verb *n-t-ch* is the technical term for butchering a sacrificial animal (Leviticus 1:6, 12). He produces *lishnem asar netachim* ('twelve pieces') — one for each tribe. The verb *vayshallecheha* ('he sent her') distributes the pieces *bekhol gevul Yisra'el* ('throughout the entire border/territory of Israel'). The act echoes — and inverts — covenant rituals involving dismembered animals (cf. Genesis 15:10). Saul will later perform a similar act with oxen to muster Israel (1 Samuel 11:7), but here a human body replaces the animal. The narrator reports the dismemberment without commentary.
- 30.** The chapter closes with a communal response of horror: *lo nihyetah velo nir'atah kazot* ('nothing like this has happened or been seen like this'). The temporal frame — *lemiyyom alot benei Yisra'el me-erets Mitsrayim ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('from the day the sons of Israel came up from the land of Egypt until this day') — spans the entire national history: nothing since the Exodus has been this terrible. The triple imperative — *simu lakhem aleha utsu vedabberu* ('set your minds on it, take counsel, and speak') — demands a response. The verbs move from internal reflection (*simu*, 'consider') to deliberation (*utsu*, 'take counsel') to public speech (*dabberu*, 'speak'). This call to action launches the civil war of chapter 20.

20

Summary: *All Israel assembles against Gibeah. Benjamin refuses to surrender the offenders, and civil war erupts. Israel suffers two devastating defeats before God grants victory on the third day. Benjamin is nearly annihilated — 600 men survive by fleeing to the Rock of Rimmon.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Israel inquires of God three times: 'Who shall go up first?' (v. 18), 'Shall we again draw near?' (v. 23), and 'Shall we go up once more?' (v. 28). The first two times, God authorizes the attack, and Israel loses. The defeats are unexplained — God permits righteous war to fail, perhaps to purge Israel's own self-righteousness before granting victory. The 25,000 Benjaminites dead (v. 46) represent the costliest internal conflict in the pre-monarchic period.*

Translation Friction: *The battle narratives include numbers that seem incompatible between verses — 25,100 Benjaminites (v. 35) vs. 25,000 (v. 46) vs. detailed counts that add to slightly different totals. We rendered each number as the Hebrew gives it and noted the variants. The phrase vayinnagfu lifnei Yisra'el (v. 35, 'were struck down before Israel') uses the standard holy-war vocabulary — even in civil war, the narrative framework remains theological.*

Connections: *The initial question 'who shall go up first?' (v. 18) echoes 1:1, forming a bookend — the book opens and closes with the same question, but the enemy has shifted from Canaanites to fellow Israelites. The near-annihilation of Benjamin anticipates Saul's tribe — the traumatized remnant produces Israel's first king. The 600 survivors at the Rock of Rimmon (v. 47) are the thread from which Benjamin will be rebuilt.*

¹All the Israelites went out and the community assembled as one person, from Dan to Beersheba, including the land of Gilead, before the LORD at Mizpah. ²The leaders of all the people and of all the tribes of Israel took their positions in the assembly of God's people — four hundred thousand foot soldiers who carried swords. ³The Benjaminites heard that the Israelites had gone up to Mizpah. The Israelites said, "Tell us — how did this terrible thing happen?" ⁴The Levite, the husband of the murdered woman, answered and said, "I came to Gibeah in Benjamin — I and my concubine — to spend the night. ⁵The citizens of Gibeah rose up against me. They surrounded the house at night intending to kill me. They raped my concubine, and she died. ⁶I took my concubine, cut her into pieces, and sent them throughout the entire territory of Israel's inheritance, because they committed a depraved outrage in Israel. ⁷Here you all are, Israelites. Give your judgment and counsel on this matter." ⁸All the people rose as one person, saying, "None of us will go to his tent. None of us will return home. ⁹Now this is what we will do to Gibeah — we will go up against it by lot. ¹⁰We will take ten men out of every hundred from all the tribes of Israel, a hundred from every thousand, and a thousand from every ten thousand, to gather provisions for the army, so that when they arrive at Gibeah of Benjamin, they can deal with all the outrage that was committed in Israel." ¹¹So all the men of Israel were assembled against the city, united as one person. ¹²The tribes of Israel sent messengers throughout the tribe of Benjamin, saying, "What is this terrible thing that has happened among you? ¹³Now hand over the worthless men who are in Gibeah so we can put them to death and purge the evil from Israel." But the Benjaminites refused to listen to their fellow Israelites. ¹⁴Instead, the Benjaminites gathered from their towns to Gibeah to go out and fight against the Israelites. ¹⁵The Benjaminites mustered from their towns on that day twenty-six thousand swordsmen, in addition to the inhabitants of Gibeah, who mustered seven hundred select warriors. ¹⁶Among all these fighters were seven hundred select men who were left-handed. Every one of them could sling a stone at a hair's width and not miss. ¹⁷The men of Israel, not counting Benjamin, mustered four hundred thousand swordsmen — all of them warriors. ¹⁸The Israelites set out and went up to Bethel and inquired of God. The Israelites asked, "Who among us should go up first to fight against the Benjaminites?" The LORD said, "Judah first." ¹⁹The Israelites got up in the morning and encamped against Gibeah. ²⁰The men of Israel went out to fight Benjamin and drew up their battle lines against them at Gibeah. ²¹The Benjaminites came out of Gibeah and cut down twenty-two thousand Israelite men that day. ²²But the Israelite forces rallied their courage and again formed battle lines in the same place where they had formed up the first day. ²³The Israelites went up and wept before the LORD until evening. They inquired of the LORD, "Should we again engage in battle against the

Benjaminites, our own brothers?" The LORD said, "Go up against him." ²⁴The Israelites advanced against the Benjaminites on the second day. ²⁵Benjamin came out from Gibeah against them on the second day and cut down another eighteen thousand Israelite swordsmen. ²⁶Then all the Israelites — the entire army — went up to Bethel. They wept, sat before the LORD, fasted that day until evening, and offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings before the LORD. ²⁷The Israelites inquired of the LORD — for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days, ²⁸and Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron was serving before it in those days — saying, "Should we go out once more to battle against the Benjaminites, our brothers, or should we stop?" The LORD said, "Go up, because tomorrow I will give them into your hand." ²⁹Israel set ambushes around Gibeah. ³⁰The Israelites went up against the Benjaminites on the third day and formed up against Gibeah as before. ³¹The Benjaminites came out to meet the army and were drawn away from the city. They began striking down casualties among the troops as before, along the roads — one leading to Bethel and the other to Gibeah through the open country — killing about thirty Israelites. ³²The Benjaminites said, "They are falling before us just as before!" But the Israelites had planned, "Let's retreat and draw them away from the city onto the roads." ³³All the Israelite main force rose from their positions and formed up at Baal-tamar, while the Israelite ambush force burst out from their position west of Gibeah. ³⁴Ten thousand select warriors from all Israel came directly against Gibeah. The fighting was fierce, but the Benjaminites did not realize that disaster was closing in on them. ³⁵The LORD struck Benjamin down before Israel, and the Israelites destroyed twenty-five thousand one hundred Benjaminite swordsmen that day. ³⁶The Benjaminites saw that they were defeated. The Israelite main force had given ground to Benjamin because they were relying on the ambush they had set near Gibeah. ³⁷The ambush force moved quickly and rushed into Gibeah. They spread through the city and struck everyone in it with the sword. ³⁸The prearranged signal between the Israelite main force and the ambush was this: the ambush would send up a great column of smoke from the city. ³⁹When the Israelite main force turned in the battle, Benjamin had already begun inflicting casualties — about thirty Israelites — because they were saying, "They are certainly falling before us, just as in the earlier battles!" ⁴⁰But then the column of smoke began to rise from the city — a pillar of smoke. Benjamin looked behind them, and the entire city was going up in flames toward the sky. ⁴¹Then the Israelite main force turned to attack, and the Benjaminites were terrified, because they realized that disaster had overtaken them. ⁴²They turned and fled from the Israelites toward the wilderness, but the battle caught up with them. Meanwhile, those coming out of the towns were destroying them in between. ⁴³They surrounded Benjamin, pursued them relentlessly, and trampled them down opposite Gibeah on the east side. ⁴⁴Eighteen thousand Benjaminites fell — all of them warriors. ⁴⁵They turned and fled toward the wilderness to the Rock of Rimmon. The Israelites cut down five thousand of them on the roads, pursued them hard as far as Gidom, and struck down two thousand more. ⁴⁶The total number of Benjaminites who fell that day was twenty-five thousand swordsmen — all of them warriors. ⁴⁷Six hundred men turned and fled into the wilderness to the Rock of Rimmon. They stayed at the Rock of Rimmon for four months. ⁴⁸The Israelites turned back against the Benjaminites and struck them down with the sword — entire towns, livestock, and everyone they found. They also set fire to every town they came across.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The assembly formula — *vattiqahel ha-edah ke-ish echad* ('the assembly gathered as one man') — expresses unprecedented unity. The geographical scope — *mi-Dan ve-ad Be'er Sheva* ('from Dan to Beersheba') — encompasses the entire land from north to south, plus *ve-erets ha-Gil'ad* ('the land of Gilead') east of the Jordan. The phrase *el YHWH ha-Mitspah* ('before the LORD at Mizpah') indicates this is both a military muster and a sacred assembly. Mizpah (meaning 'watchtower') was a prominent gathering site in Benjamin. The opening echoes 1:1 — Israel assembles to inquire of the LORD — but this time the enemy is not Canaanites but a fellow Israelite tribe.
2. The *pinnot* ('corners, leaders, chieftains') of the people — the word *pintah* literally means 'corner' and metaphorically refers to cornerstones of leadership. The assembly is called *qahal am ha-Elohim* ('the assembly of the people of God') — sacred language for what is becoming a war council. The army count — *arba me'ot elef ish ragli sholef cherev* ('four hundred thousand men on foot, drawers of the sword') — represents an overwhelming force. Whether the numbers are literal or use *elef* to mean 'military unit/clan' rather than 'thousand,' the point is Israel's unified strength against Benjamin.
3. Benjamin learns of the assembly but does not attend — a significant absence that will harden into military opposition. The Israelites' question — *dabberu eikhah nihyetah ha-ra'ah ha-zot* ('speak — how did this evil come about?') — demands a formal account. The word *ha-ra'ah* ('the evil, the wickedness') characterizes the Gibeah incident without euphemism.

4. The Levite is identified as *ish ha-ishah ha-nirtsachah* ('the husband of the murdered woman') — the verb *r-ts-ch* ('to murder') is the same root as the sixth commandment's *lo tirtsach* ('you shall not murder,' Exodus 20:13). His testimony begins with straightforward facts: he came to Gibeah with his concubine to lodge. But as the account continues, he will edit the story to remove his own complicity.
5. The Levite's testimony is factually selective: he says *oti dimmu laharog* ('they intended to kill me') — casting himself as the primary target and victim. He says *ve-et pilagshi innu* ('they violated my concubine') — using the passive to obscure his own role in pushing her outside. He omits entirely that the mob's demand was sexual assault against him, and that he himself seized his concubine and handed her over. The verb *innu* ('they afflicted/violated') is the same used for the Egyptian oppression of Israel (Exodus 1:12). His edited account shapes the narrative for maximum outrage while concealing his own moral failure.
6. The Levite reports his own act of dismemberment as a righteous response: *va'ochaz befilagshi va'anattecheha va'ashallecheha* ('I seized my concubine and cut her up and sent her'). The vocabulary of butchering (*n-t-ch*) is stated plainly. His justification: *ki asu zimmah unevalah be-Yisra'el* ('because they committed depravity and outrage in Israel'). The word *zimmah* ('depravity, lewdness, planned wickedness') denotes deliberate, calculated evil. Combined with *nevalah* ('outrage, disgrace'), it constitutes the most severe moral condemnation available in Hebrew. The Levite successfully frames the narrative to motivate military action.
7. The Levite concludes with a demand for action: *havu lakhem davar ve-etsah halom* ('give yourselves a word and counsel here'). The phrase addresses the assembly collectively — *kullekhem benei Yisra'el* ('all of you, sons of Israel') — making it a national responsibility. His rhetorical strategy has succeeded: he presented a crime demanding collective response while concealing his own role in it.
8. The response is unanimous — *ke-ish echad* ('as one man') — the same unity formula from verse 1. Their resolve is expressed as a double negative vow: *lo nelekh ish le-oholo velo nasur ish leveito* ('not one person will go to his tent, not one will turn aside to his house'). The parallelism (tent/house) is a merism: no one will leave until this matter is resolved.
9. The strategy is determined by *goral* ('lot') — the same mechanism used for land distribution (Joshua 18-19). The lot will determine which tribes lead the attack and supply logistics. The phrase *aleiha be-goral* ('against it by lot') places the military planning under a quasi-sacred procedure.
10. The logistics are organized by a tithe system — ten percent of the force (*asarah anashim la-me'ah*, 'ten men per hundred') will serve as a supply corps (*laqachat tsedah la-am*, 'to take provisions for the people'). The purpose is stated: *la'asot levo'am le-Geva Binyamin* ('to act when they come to Gibeah of Benjamin') — the action is punitive. The charge: *kekhol ha-nevalah asher asah be-Yisra'el* ('according to all the outrage committed in Israel') — *nevalah* again, the term for gross violation of social and sexual norms.
11. The third repetition of *ke-ish echad* ('as one man') in this chapter, now with the addition of *chaverim* ('united, joined, allies'). The unity of Israel against Benjamin is total — but the narrator's insistence on this unity also underscores the tragedy: the covenant community is unified, but unified for internal war.
12. Before attacking, Israel offers diplomacy: they send messengers *bekhol shivtei Vinyamin* ('throughout all the clans of Benjamin') asking for accountability. The question *mah ha-ra'ah ha-zot asher nihyetah bakhem* ('what is this evil that has occurred among you?') places responsibility on the entire tribe, not just Gibeah — collective accountability for collective failure.
13. Israel's demand is specific and proportionate: *tenu et ha-anashim benei beliya'al asher ba-Giv'ah* ('give over the men, the sons of worthlessness, who are in Gibeah'). The purpose — *unemitem* ('we will put them to death') *uneva'arah ra me-Yisra'el* ('we will burn out/purge evil from Israel') — uses Deuteronomic purge language (cf. Deuteronomy 13:6, 17:7, 19:19). Benjamin's refusal — *velo avu benei Vinyamin lishmo'a beqol acheihem* ('the sons of Benjamin were not willing to listen to the voice of their brothers') — transforms a judicial demand into a tribal solidarity crisis. Benjamin chooses to protect its criminals rather than submit to inter-tribal justice.
14. Benjamin mobilizes: *vayyease'fu benei Binyamin min he-arim ha-Giv'atah* ('the sons of Benjamin gathered from the cities to Gibeah'). Rather than surrendering the guilty, they rally for war — *latset la-milchamah im benei Yisra'el* ('to go out to war with the sons of Israel'). Tribal loyalty overrides justice.
15. Benjamin's total force: *esrim veshishah elef ish sholef cherev* ('twenty-six thousand men drawing sword') from the outlying towns, plus *sheva me'ot ish bachur* ('seven hundred chosen/select men') from Gibeah itself. Against Israel's 400,000 (v. 2), Benjamin is outnumbered roughly 15:1 — yet they will win the first two battles, a narrative shock that raises theological questions about divine justice and timing.
16. The seven hundred left-handed slingers — *sheva me'ot ish bachur itter yad yemino* ('seven hundred chosen men, bound/restricted of the right hand') — are Benjamin's elite unit. The term *itter* means 'bound, restricted' — possibly trained from youth to use the left hand by binding the right. Left-handedness has a special association with Benjamin: Ehud was also a left-handed Benjaminite (3:15). The phrase *qole'a va-even el ha-sa'arah velo yachti* ('slinging with a stone at a hair and not missing') describes extraordinary precision. The word *sa'arah* ('hair') indicates a target the width of a single hair — hyperbolic, but communicating deadly accuracy.
17. The narrator reiterates Israel's force: *arba me'ot elef ish sholef cherev* ('four hundred thousand men drawing sword'). The addition *kol zeh ish milchamah* ('all of these men of war') emphasizes that this is a seasoned fighting force. The disparity in numbers makes the first two defeats even more theologically jarring.
18. The inquiry at Bethel — *vayyish'alu ve-Elohim* ('they inquired of God') — mirrors the opening of the book: *mi ya'aleh lanu battechillah* ('who will go up for us first?') is nearly identical to 1:1. God's answer — *Yehudah battechillah* ('Judah first') — is also identical to 1:2. The structural parallel is deliberate: the book ends as it began, with Israel asking who should lead in battle and God answering 'Judah.' But the enemy has changed from

Canaanites to Israelites — the cycle has turned inward. The location Beit El ('house of God') may refer to the town Bethel or may simply mean 'the house of God' (the sanctuary).

19. The advance begins: vayyachanu al ha-Giv'ah ('they encamped against Gibeah'). The simplicity of the verse contrasts with the catastrophe about to unfold.
20. The verb vayyaarkhu ('they arranged, drew up') is the technical term for forming battle lines. Israel deploys against Gibeah with overwhelming numerical superiority.
21. The first battle is a devastating Israelite defeat: shenayim ve-esrim elef ish artsah ('twenty-two thousand men to the ground'). The verb vayyashchitu ('they destroyed, devastated') conveys wholesale slaughter. Benjamin — outnumbered 15:1 — wins decisively. The theological shock is intentional: Israel inquired of God, God directed them, and they lost catastrophically. The narrator offers no explanation.
22. The verb vayyitchazzeq ('they strengthened themselves, rallied') indicates that morale had to be actively restored after the devastating loss. They deploy again ba-maqom asher arkhu sham ba-yom harishon ('in the place where they had arranged on the first day') — same position, same strategy, undeterred by failure.
23. After the defeat, Israel adds weeping to their inquiry: vayyivku lifnei YHWH ad ha-erev ('they wept before the LORD until evening'). Their question now includes a painful qualifier: benei Vinyamin achi ('the sons of Benjamin my brother') — the fraternal language acknowledges the tragedy of civil war. God's answer — alu elav ('go up against him') — is direct but offers no guarantee of victory. The divine response is enigmatic: God commands attack but does not promise success.
24. The second engagement begins: vayyiqrevu ('they drew near, advanced'). The verse is terse — the narrator withholds the outcome for maximum impact.
25. The second defeat: od shemonat asar elef ish artsah ('another eighteen thousand men to the ground'). Combined with the first day's losses (22,000), Israel has now lost 40,000 men — a tenth of their force — in two days. The repeated devastation after divine consultation deepens the theological crisis. God told them to go, and they were slaughtered. The pattern will break only on the third attempt, after a fundamentally different kind of inquiry.
26. After two devastating defeats, Israel's approach changes dramatically. They add fasting (vayyatsumu, 'they fasted') and sacrifice (olot ushelamim, 'burnt offerings and fellowship/peace offerings') to their weeping. The escalation of religious intensity — from simple inquiry (v. 18) to weeping and inquiry (v. 23) to weeping, sitting, fasting, and sacrifice (v. 26) — reflects deepening desperation and, perhaps, deepening sincerity. The shelamim ('peace/fellowship offerings') involve shared meals with God, seeking restored relationship.
27. The narrator inserts a crucial detail: vesham aron berit ha-Elohim ba-yamim ha-hem ('and there was the ark of the covenant of God in those days'). The ark's presence at Bethel locates the legitimate sanctuary and the means of authoritative divine communication. This detail, combined with the identification of the priest in the next verse, grounds the third inquiry in institutional legitimacy that the previous two consultations may have lacked.
28. The priestly identity is now specified: Pinechas ben El'azar ben Aharon ('Phinehas son of Eleazar son of Aaron') — a direct descendant of Aaron, the legitimate high priestly line. The same Phinehas is known for zealous action in Numbers 25:7-13. His presence connects this narrative to the early post-Moses period. The question now includes the option of stopping: im echdal ('or should I cease/desist?') — genuine humility after two catastrophic losses. God's response this time is qualitatively different: alu ki machar etnennu beyadekha ('go up, because tomorrow I will give him into your hand') — for the first time, a promise of victory accompanies the command. The two prior defeats were not divine abandonment but divine preparation.
29. The strategy changes: vayyasem Yisra'el orevim ('Israel set ambushers') — a tactical shift from frontal assault to ambush. The word orevim ('those lying in wait') from the root a-r-v is military terminology for concealed forces. This is the same tactic Joshua used against Ai (Joshua 8:2-22), and the parallel is deliberate — a failed frontal assault followed by a successful ambush strategy.
30. The third day — ba-yom ha-shelishi — and Israel deploys kappa'am befa'am ('as time after time' — as on the previous occasions). The apparent repetition is the ruse: they present the same front to draw Benjamin out, concealing the ambush force behind the city.
31. The plan works: the Benjaminites hunttequ min ha-ir ('were drawn away from the city') — the verb n-t-q ('to tear away, pull out') means they were lured out of their defensive position. Overconfident from two victories, they pursue the apparently retreating Israelites and begin inflicting casualties — kishloshim ish ('about thirty men') — along the mesillot ('highways, main roads'). They think the pattern is repeating: kefa'am befa'am ('as time after time'). But this is the trap.
32. The dramatic irony is sharp: Benjamin's assessment — nigga'fim hem lefaneinu kevarishonah ('they are being struck before us as at first') — is exactly the false confidence Israel intended to create. Meanwhile, Israel's actual plan — nanusah unetaquenuhu min ha-ir el ha-mesillot ('let us flee and pull them from the city to the roads') — is working perfectly. The verb nataq ('to pull away, draw out') is the same used in verse 31 for Benjamin being drawn out.
33. The trap springs: the main Israelite force reforms at Ba'al Tamar ('Lord of the Palm Tree' — a place name), while the orev Yisra'el ('Israel's ambush') megia'ch mimeqomo ('breaks forth from its position'). The phrase mimma'areh Gava ('from the meadow/open area of Gibeah' or possibly 'from west of Gibeah') locates the ambush force. The two-pronged movement closes on Benjamin from both directions.

34. The ambush force — asarah alafim ish bachur mi-kol Yisra'el ('ten thousand chosen men from all Israel') — attacks Gibeah directly from the opposite side. The narrator's comment is chilling: vehem lo yade'u ki noga'at aleihem ha-ra'ah ('and they did not know that disaster was touching/reaching them'). The verb noga'at ('touching, reaching') personifies destruction as something physically approaching — close enough to touch but unseen.
35. The decisive verse: vayyigof YHWH et Binyamin lifnei Yisra'el ('the LORD struck Benjamin before Israel'). The verb n-g-f ('to strike, defeat') attributes the victory directly to God — the same verb used throughout the conquest narrative. The casualties — esrim vachamishah elef ume'ah ish ('twenty-five thousand one hundred men') — represent the near-total destruction of Benjamin's fighting force (out of 26,700 in vv. 15-16). This summary verse establishes the outcome; the following verses provide the tactical details.
36. The narrator now explains the tactic: vayyittenu ish Yisra'el maqom le-Vinyamin ('the men of Israel gave ground to Benjamin') — the retreat was deliberate, ki vatchu el ha-orev ('because they trusted the ambush'). Benjamin's two earlier victories were real, but Israel's third retreat was strategic — and Benjamin could not distinguish the feigned retreat from the genuine defeats.
37. The ambush executes: ha-orev hechishu ('the ambush hurried') vayyifshetu el ha-Giv'ah ('they burst/spread into Gibeah'). The verb p-sh-t ('to spread out, strip, raid') describes a rapid sweep through the city. The phrase vayyakh et kol ha-ir lefi cherev ('he struck the entire city with the edge of the sword') indicates comprehensive destruction — not a targeted operation but the annihilation of the entire population.
38. The moed ('appointed signal, predetermined sign') was smoke: harvot leha'alot mas'at he-ashan min ha-ir ('to increase sending up a rising column of smoke from the city'). The word mas'at ('rising, lifting') describes a thick column of smoke visible from a distance — the signal for the main force to turn and attack the now-trapped Benjaminites. This same smoke-signal tactic was used at Ai (Joshua 8:20-21).
39. The narrative rewinds to show the Benjaminite perspective during the trap. While inflicting initial casualties (kishloshim ish, 'about thirty men'), Benjamin's conclusion is akh niggo nigga hu lefaneinu ('surely, being defeated he is defeated before us') — the infinitive absolute niggo nigga intensifies their false confidence. The phrase ka-milchamah harishonah ('as in the first battle') shows they are reading the third engagement through the lens of their earlier victories — a fatal misread.
40. The signal appears: ha-mas'et hechallah la'alot min ha-ir amud ashan ('the rising column began to go up from the city, a pillar of smoke'). The phrase amud ashan ('pillar of smoke') deliberately evokes the pillar of cloud/fire that led Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 13:21) — but this pillar marks Israel destroying Israel. When Benjamin turns — vayyifen Binyamin acharav ('Benjamin turned behind him') — they see vehineh alah khelil ha-ir ha-shamaymah ('the entirety of the city had gone up toward the heavens'). The word khelil ('entirety, whole burnt offering') is the same word used for an offering consumed entirely by fire — Gibeah has become a holocaust.
41. The reversal: ve-ish Yisra'el hafakh ('the man of Israel turned') — the retreating force pivots to attack. Benjamin's response: vayyibbahel ish Binyamin ('the man of Benjamin was terrified/dismayed'). The verb b-h-l ('to be terrified, panic') describes the sudden realization of catastrophe. The phrase ki ra'ah ki nag'ah alav ha-ra'ah ('because he saw that disaster had touched upon him') echoes verse 34 — the ra'ah ('disaster, evil') that was approaching unseen has now arrived.
42. Benjamin routs toward the midbar ('wilderness, desert') east of Gibeah. But the milchamah hidbiqathu ('the battle caught up with/overtook him') — there is no escape. The ambush force from the city and the pursuing main force create a pincer: va-asher me-he-arim mashchitim oto betokkho ('those from the cities were destroying him in the midst of him') — Benjaminites are being cut down from every direction.
43. Three verbs describe the annihilation: kitteru ('they surrounded/encircled'), hirdifuhu menucha ('they pursued him without rest/relentlessly'), and hidrikhu ('they trampled him down'). The word menucha ('rest, resting place') used with pursuit means 'without pause, without relief' — relentless, unceasing chase. The location ad nokhach ha-Giv'ah mi-mizrach shamesh ('to opposite Gibeah, from the rising of the sun/east') means the fleeing Benjaminites were driven east of their own city.
44. The casualty count begins: shemonah asar elef ish ('eighteen thousand men'), all described as anshei chayil ('men of valor, warriors'). This is the main battlefield toll, with additional casualties reported in the following verses.
45. The survivors flee toward Sela ha-Rimmon ('the Rock of Rimmon') — a rocky outcrop that will shelter the final remnant. Along the retreat routes, Israel vayyolleluhu ('gleaned him' — picked off stragglers) — the agricultural metaphor of gleaning (gathering leftover grain after harvest) is applied to killing fleeing soldiers. Five thousand killed on the highways, two thousand more at Gid'om. The total in this verse — seven thousand — plus the eighteen thousand of verse 44 equals twenty-five thousand, consistent with the summary in verse 35.
46. The summary: esrim vachamishah elef ish sholef cherev ('twenty-five thousand men drawing sword'). The qualifier anshei chayil ('men of valor') is repeated — these were not untrained conscripts but fighting men. The number represents the near-extinction of an Israelite tribe.
47. The remnant: shesh me'ot ish ('six hundred men') — the same number as the Danite migration force (18:11), creating an epilogue echo. They take refuge at Sela ha-Rimmon ('Rock of Rimmon,' possibly modern Rammun northeast of Bethel) for arba'ah chodashim ('four months'). Out of an original fighting force of 26,700 (vv. 15-16), only 600 survive — a 97.8% casualty rate. Benjamin as a tribe is on the edge of extinction.
48. The final verse describes systematic destruction beyond the battle: vayyakkum lefi cherev me-ir metom ad behemah ad kol ha-nimtsa ('they struck them with the edge of the sword — from city, entire population, to livestock, to everything found'). The word metom ('entirety, completeness') indicates total destruction of civilian populations. The phrase gam kol he-arim ha-nimtsa'ot shillechu va-esh ('also all the towns found they sent up in fire') describes the burning of Benjaminite towns throughout their territory. This is cherem-style warfare — the complete destruction normally reserved for Canaanite enemies (cf. Deuteronomy 20:16-18) — turned against a fellow Israelite tribe. The irony is total: Israel's 'righteous' response to the outrage at Gibeah has become an outrage of its own.

21

Summary: *Israel realizes that Benjamin's near-annihilation means a tribe will be lost. Having sworn not to give their daughters to Benjamin, they find wives through the destruction of Jabesh-gilead and the capture of women dancing at Shiloh's annual festival. The book ends: 'In those days there was no king in Israel; everyone did what was right in his own eyes.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The solutions to Benjamin's crisis are as morally catastrophic as the original crime. To keep their oath (no giving daughters to Benjamin), the other tribes destroy Jabesh-gilead — killing men, married women, and children — and seize 400 virgins. When 400 is not enough, they sanction the kidnapping of women from the Shiloh festival. The book ends exactly as it began: with violence against women and institutional collapse. The closing refrain (v. 25) is no longer merely descriptive — it is the verdict on the entire era.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ish hayyashar be'einav ya'aseh (v. 25, 'everyone did what was right in his own eyes') closes the book with devastating irony: 'right in his own eyes' (yashar be'einav) uses the language of moral uprightness (yashar, 'straight, right') for moral anarchy. We rendered it literally because the irony depends on the word 'right' — these are not people doing wrong; they are people who cannot distinguish wrong from right.*

Connections: *Jabesh-gilead's destruction will be remembered: the survivors are Benjamin's kin, and Saul — a Benjaminite — will later rescue Jabesh-gilead from the Ammonites (1 Samuel 11) as his first royal act, closing a circle. The Shiloh festival connects to the annual pilgrimage of 1 Samuel 1. The closing refrain echoes 17:6, 18:1, and 19:1, creating a four-fold chorus that functions as the book's theological conclusion.*

¹The men of Israel had sworn an oath at Mizpah: "None of us will give his daughter in marriage to a Benjaminite." ²The people came to Bethel and sat there before God until evening. They raised their voices and wept bitterly. ³They said, "LORD, God of Israel, why has this happened in Israel? Why should one tribe be missing from Israel today?" ⁴The next day the people got up early, built an altar there, and offered burnt offerings and fellowship offerings. ⁵The Israelites asked, "Who from all the tribes of Israel did not come up to the assembly before the LORD?" For a solemn oath had been taken against anyone who did not come up to the LORD at Mizpah: "That person must be put to death." ⁶The Israelites grieved for Benjamin their brother and said, "Today one tribe has been cut off from Israel. ⁷What can we do to provide wives for the survivors, since we have sworn by the LORD not to give them any of our daughters as wives?" ⁸They asked, "Which one of the tribes of Israel did not come up to the LORD at Mizpah?" It turned out that no one from Jabesh-gilead had come to the camp for the assembly. ⁹When the troops were mustered, not a single person from Jabesh-gilead was present. ¹⁰The assembly sent twelve thousand of their best warriors there with this command: "Go and strike down the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead with the sword — including the women and children. ¹¹This is what you are to do: Completely destroy every male and every woman who has slept with a man." ¹²They found among the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead four hundred young women who were virgins — who had not been intimate with a man — and brought them to the camp at Shiloh in the land of Canaan. ¹³Then the entire assembly sent word to the Benjaminites at the Rock of Rimmon and offered them peace. ¹⁴Benjamin returned at that time, and they gave them the women they had spared from Jabesh-gilead. But there were not enough for all of them. ¹⁵The people grieved for Benjamin because the LORD had made a gap in the tribes of Israel. ¹⁶The elders of the assembly said, "What can we do to provide wives for the remaining men, since the women of Benjamin have been wiped out?" ¹⁷They said, "There must be an inheritance for the survivors of Benjamin, so that a tribe is not blotted out from Israel. ¹⁸But we cannot give them our own daughters as wives, because the Israelites swore an oath: 'Cursed is anyone who gives a wife to Benjamin.'" ¹⁹Then they said, "There is an annual festival of the LORD at Shiloh" — which is north of Bethel, east of the road going up from Bethel to Shechem, and south of Lebonah. ²⁰They instructed the Benjaminites: "Go and hide in the vineyards. ²¹When you see the young women of Shiloh come out to dance in the dances, rush out from the vineyards and each of you seize a wife from the young women of Shiloh. Then go back to the territory of Benjamin. ²²When their fathers or

brothers come to complain to us, we will say to them, 'Do us a favor and let them keep the women, because we did not take enough wives for each man in the war. And you yourselves did not give your daughters to them — so you have not broken your oath.'" ²³The Benjaminites did this. They took wives for themselves from the dancers — as many as they needed — carrying them off. Then they went back to their inheritance, rebuilt their towns, and settled in them. ²⁴The Israelites dispersed from there at that time, each to his own tribe and clan. They went out from there, each to his own inheritance. ²⁵In those days, there was no king in Israel. Everyone did whatever seemed right in their own eyes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a flashback to the oath taken at the original assembly: *nishba ba-Mitspah* ('he swore at Mizpah'). The vow — *ish mimmennu lo yitten bitto le-Vinyamin le-ishah* ('no man from us will give his daughter to Benjamin as a wife') — was intended to punish Benjamin through reproductive isolation. The oath's consequences were not fully considered: with Benjamin's fighting men nearly annihilated and no prospect of wives, the tribe faces extinction. The rash oath — like Jephthah's in 11:30-31 — creates a problem that the rest of the chapter struggles to solve.
2. Israel now mourns the consequences of its own victory: *vayyisu qolam vayyivku bekhi gadol* ('they raised their voice and wept a great weeping'). The phrase *vayyeshvu sham ad ha-erev lifnei ha-Elohim* ('they sat there until evening before God') describes a prolonged, communal lamentation. The location — *Beit El* ('Bethel/house of God') — is where they received the promise of victory (20:27-28). Now they grieve the cost of that victory.
3. Israel's lament — *lamah YHWH Elohei Yisra'el hayetah zot be-Yisra'el* ('why, LORD God of Israel, has this happened in Israel?') — frames the crisis as a divine problem. The phrase *lehippaqad ha-yom mi-Yisra'el shevet echad* ('that today one tribe should be missing from Israel') uses the verb *p-q-d* (niph'al, 'to be missing, to be absent from a muster'). The irony is sharp: Israel asks why a tribe is missing when Israel itself nearly exterminated that tribe. The question deflects responsibility onto God.
4. Israel builds a *mizbeach* ('altar') and offers *olot ushelamim* ('burnt offerings and fellowship offerings') — the same sacrifices offered before the third battle (20:26). The altar-building suggests either that the existing altar was insufficient or that this is a new act of consecration for the crisis at hand. The worship precedes the violent solutions that follow, creating a disturbing pattern: sacrifice, then sanctioned brutality.
5. A second oath surfaces: *ha-shevu'ah ha-gedolah* ('the great oath') mandated death for any community that failed to attend the Mizpah assembly. The phrase *mot yumat* ('dying he shall die' — he must surely be put to death') is the standard death-penalty formula from the Torah. This oath will identify *Jabesh-gilead* as the next target — creating a pretext for obtaining wives for Benjamin through another act of violence.
6. The verb *vayyinnachamu* ('they were grieved, felt compassion, relented') marks a shift from vengeance to regret. The fraternal language returns: *Binyamin achiv* ('Benjamin his brother'). The phrase *nigda ha-yom shevet echad mi-Yisra'el* ('today one tribe has been cut off from Israel') uses the verb *g-d-* ('to cut off, to hew down') — a violent metaphor for what was, in fact, a violent act. Israel's grief is real but does not prevent the further violence of the solutions they devise.
7. The dilemma is stated plainly: *mah na'aseh lahem lannotarim lenashim* ('what shall we do for them, for the survivors, regarding wives?'). Their oath — *nishbanu va-YHWH levilti tet lahem mibbnotenu lenashim* ('we swore by the LORD not to give them from our daughters as wives') — cannot be broken because it was sworn *ba-YHWH* ('by the LORD'). The solutions they devise will technically honor the oath while violating its spirit through loopholes.
8. The investigation identifies the absent community: *lo va ish el ha-machaneh mi-Yavesh Gil'ad el ha-qahal* ('no man came to the camp from *Jabesh-gilead* to the assembly'). *Jabesh-gilead*, a Transjordanian city, will later have close ties with Saul and Benjamin (1 Samuel 11:1-11, 31:11-13) — ties that may explain their absence from the punitive assembly. Their non-attendance under the death-oath makes them a legitimate target, but the real motive is obtaining wives for Benjamin.
9. The muster confirms the absence: *vayyitpaqad ha-am* ('the people were mustered/counted') *vehineh ein sham ish mi-yoshvei Yavesh Gil'ad* ('and there was no man there from the inhabitants of *Jabesh-gilead*'). The complete absence — not one representative — makes the sentence absolute.
10. The punitive expedition: *sheneim asar elef ish mibnei ha-chayil* ('twelve thousand men from the sons of valor') — a substantial force for what amounts to a massacre of an Israelite city. The command — *lekhu vehikkitem et yoshvei Yavesh Gil'ad lefi cherev vecha-nashim vecha-taf* ('go and strike the inhabitants of *Jabesh-gilead* with the edge of the sword, including the women and the children') — orders the killing of women and children alongside men. The *cherem*-style warfare that was directed against Canaanites and then against Benjamin is now turned against a third Israelite target. The escalation of violence is the epilogue's most damning feature.
11. The specification: *kol zakhar vekhol isah yoda'at mishkav zakhar tacharrimu* ('every male and every woman knowing the lying-down of a male, you shall devote to destruction'). The verb *tacharrimu* ('devote to destruction, ban') is the *cherem* vocabulary — the total destruction vow normally applied to Canaanite populations (Deuteronomy 20:17). Only virgins are to be spared — not out of mercy but because they can serve as wives for Benjamin. The grotesque calculus reduces women to reproductive resources.
12. The result: *arba me'ot na'arah betulah* ('four hundred young women, virgins') are identified and taken. The phrase *asher lo yade'ah ish lemishkav zakhar* ('who had not known a man by the lying-down of a male') specifies sexual inexperience using clinical language. They are brought to the camp at *Shiloh* — *asher be-erets Kena'an* ('which is in the land of Canaan') — a geographical note placing *Shiloh* west of the Jordan. The 400 virgins will not be enough for 600 survivors, creating the need for yet another scheme.

13. The war ends with a peace offer: vayyiqre'u lahem shalom ('they called peace to them'). The 600 surviving Benjaminites have been at Sela ha-Rimmon for four months (20:47). The messengers bring reconciliation — the tribe that was nearly annihilated is now to be restored.
14. Benjamin returns from exile and receives the Jabesh-gilead women: vayyittenu lahem ha-nashim asher chiyyu mi-neshei Yavesh Gil'ad ('they gave them the women whom they had kept alive from the women of Jabesh-gilead'). The verb chiyyu ('they kept alive') uses the same root as 'life' — spared from the slaughter. But velo matse'u lahem ken ('they did not find enough for them') — 400 women for 600 men leaves 200 without wives. The deficit drives the next solution.
15. The verb nicham ('he grieved, felt compassion') recurs from verse 6. The theological interpretation: ki asah YHWH perets be-shivtei Yisra'el ('because the LORD had made a breach in the tribes of Israel'). The word perets ('breach, gap, break') describes a wall with a section knocked out — Israel's tribal structure has a hole where Benjamin used to be. The attribution to God — YHWH asah ('the LORD made') — deflects human responsibility onto divine action, continuing the pattern of verse 3.
16. The elders (ziqunei ha-edah, 'elders of the assembly') take over the problem-solving. Their question repeats verse 7: mah na'aseh lannotarim lenashim ('what shall we do for the survivors regarding wives?'). The reason — ki nishemedah mi-Binyamin ishah ('because woman has been destroyed from Benjamin') — acknowledges that Israel's own scorched-earth campaign (20:48) eliminated the Benjaminite women along with everything else.
17. The principle: yerushat peletah le-Vinyamin ('an inheritance of a remnant for Benjamin') — the surviving 600 must have an inheritance to pass on. The concern — velo yimmacheh shevet mi-Yisra'el ('and a tribe shall not be blotted out from Israel') — uses the verb m-ch-h ('to wipe out, blot out, erase'), the same verb used for God's threat to blot out names from His book (Exodus 32:33). Tribal extinction would constitute an irreversible diminishment of the covenant community.
18. The oath's binding force is restated: arur noten ishah le-Vinyamin ('cursed is the one giving a wife to Benjamin'). The curse formula (arur, 'cursed') makes the oath unbreakable in the ancient Near Eastern understanding — a self-imprecation that would bring divine punishment on the oath-breaker. The solution must therefore work around the oath's letter: no Israelite father can give his daughter, but perhaps daughters can be taken without their fathers giving them.
19. The elders identify an opportunity: chag YHWH be-Shilo mi-yamim yamimah ('a festival of the LORD at Shiloh from days to days' — annually). The detailed geographical description — north of Bethel, east of the main road to Shechem, south of Lebonah — may indicate that by the time of writing, Shiloh's location needed to be specified because the site was no longer prominent (cf. Jeremiah 7:12, 26:6 — Shiloh was destroyed). The festival likely involved dancing by young women, providing the opportunity for abduction.
20. The plan is explicit: lekhu va'aravtem bakeramim ('go and lie in ambush in the vineyards'). The verb a-r-v ('to lie in ambush') is military language — the same root used for the ambush against Gibeah (20:29). The vineyards around Shiloh provide concealment. The elders of Israel are now orchestrating the abduction of Israelite women by Israelite men at a festival of the LORD — the moral collapse of the epilogue reaches its final expression.
21. The plan's execution: when benot Shilo ('the daughters of Shiloh') come out lachul bamecholot ('to dance in the circle-dances' — festival dancing), the Benjaminites are to vachataftem lakhem ish ishto ('snatch for yourselves each man his wife'). The verb ch-t-f ('to seize, snatch, abduct') is unambiguous — this is forcible abduction. The dancing women are participating in a sacred festival; they will be grabbed and carried to erets Binyamin ('the land of Benjamin'). The narrator reports the plan without commentary, but the parallel with the Gibeah outrage is impossible to miss: once again, women's bodies are treated as objects to be seized for male purposes, now with the full sanction of the Israelite assembly.
22. The legal loophole is spelled out: when the women's families protest (ki yavo'u avotam o acheihem lariv eleinu, 'when their fathers or brothers come to dispute with us'), the elders will argue on two grounds. First, appeal to mercy: chonnunu otam ('be gracious to them, do us a favor'). Second, technical innocence: lo attem netattem lahem ('you did not give them') — since the women were seized rather than given, the oath against 'giving' daughters is technically unbroken. The phrase ka-et te'shamu ('at this time you would be guilty') argues that refusing would now make the fathers guilty of causing Benjamin's extinction. The entire argument is a legalistic fiction designed to circumvent the spirit of the oath while preserving its letter.
23. The plan is executed: vayyis'u nashim lemisparam min ha-mecholelot asher gazalu ('they took wives according to their number from the dancers whom they seized'). The verb gazal ('to seize, rob, take by force') is the standard verb for robbery and plunder — it is used for violent theft throughout the prophets (e.g., Micah 2:2). The women are seized, and the Benjaminites return to rebuild: vayyivnu et he-arim vayyeshvu vahem ('they built the cities and settled in them'). Tribal continuity is preserved, but through forcible abduction sanctioned by the assembly of Israel. The restoration of Benjamin is built on layers of violence: the massacre of Jabesh-gilead and the abduction of Shiloh's daughters.
24. The assembly dissolves: vayyithallekhu ('they went their ways') ish leshivto ulemishpachto ('each man to his tribe and his clan'). The phrase ish lenachalato ('each to his inheritance') sends everyone home. The narrative returns to the fragmented, decentralized state that opened the epilogue — no king, no central authority, each person returning to their own territory. The dispersion sets up the final verse.
25. The book's final verse repeats the full refrain identically to 17:6: be-yamim ha-hem ein melekh be-Yisra'el ish ha-yashar be-einav ya'aseh ('in those days there was no king in Israel; each person would do what was right in his own eyes'). As the last word of Judges, it serves simultaneously as diagnosis, lament, and implicit argument. The diagnosis: moral anarchy. The lament: Israel has descended from the conquest generation to a people capable of gang rape, civil war, massacre, and mass abduction. The implicit argument: the absence of centralized authority under God contributes to — or at least coincides with — social and moral disintegration. Whether kingship would solve the problem is left open; the books of Samuel will explore that question. The refrain's repetition at the book's close creates an inclusio with 17:6, framing the entire epilogue as a sustained meditation

on what happens when 'everyone does whatever seemed right in their own eyes.'

Ruth

Summary: *A family from Bethlehem flees famine to Moab. The father and both sons die, leaving three widows. Naomi returns to Judah; one daughter-in-law goes home, the other — Ruth the Moabite — refuses to leave and binds herself to Naomi's people and God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Ruth's declaration in verses 16-17 is among the most quoted passages in the Hebrew Bible, yet its context is often missed: this is not a wedding vow but a covenant oath sworn by a destitute foreign widow to her equally destitute mother-in-law. Ruth abandons her homeland, her gods, and any prospect of remarriage in Moab — all for a relationship that offers her nothing except shared poverty. The Hebrew verb *davaq* ('clung') in verse 14 is the same verb used for the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24, and for Israel's covenant attachment to God in Deuteronomy. Ruth's loyalty to Naomi uses the vocabulary of the deepest bonds Scripture knows.*

Translation Friction: *Naomi's bitter wordplay in verse 20 — 'Do not call me Naomi (Pleasant); call me Mara (Bitter)' — is clear in Hebrew but requires a translator note in English because the names are left untranslated. The verb *shub* ('to return') appears twelve times in this chapter, creating a thematic drumbeat that English can partially preserve ('return,' 'go back,' 'turn back') but cannot fully replicate since Hebrew hears the same root each time. In verse 13, Naomi's phrase *ha-lahen tesabbernah* ('would you wait for them?') uses a rare verb form that may imply either patient waiting or hopeful expectation — we chose 'wait' and noted the ambiguity.*

Connections: *The opening phrase 'in the days when the judges ruled' places Ruth within the Judges period but tells a completely different kind of story — not military cycles but domestic faithfulness. The famine that drives Elimelech to Moab echoes Abraham's famine-flight to Egypt (Genesis 12:10) and Jacob's to Egypt (Genesis 42-46) — in each case, leaving the promised land creates crisis. Ruth's oath 'your God will be my God' reverses the pattern of Judges, where Israel repeatedly adopts foreign gods; here a foreigner adopts Israel's God. The genealogy that closes the book (4:18-22) will connect Ruth to David, making this Moabite widow's choice the hinge on which the royal line turns.*

¹In the days when the judges ruled, there was a famine in the land. A man from Bethlehem in Judah went to live as a foreigner in the fields of Moab — he, his wife, and his two sons. ²The man's name was Elimelech, his wife's name was Naomi, and his two sons were named Mahlon and Chilion — Ephrathites from Bethlehem in Judah. They came to the fields of Moab

and settled there. ³Then Elimelech, Naomi's husband, died, and she was left with her two sons. ⁴They married Moabite women; one was named Orpah and the other Ruth. They lived there about ten years. ⁵Then both Mahlon and Chilion also died, and the woman was left without her two children and without her husband. ⁶She set out with her daughters-in-law to return from the fields of Moab, for she had heard in Moab that the LORD had attended to his people by giving them food. ⁷So he left the place where she had been living, and her two daughters-in-law went with her. They set out on the road to return to the land of Judah. ⁸Naomi said to her two daughters-in-law, "Go, return — each of you to your mother's house. May the LORD deal with you in faithful love, as you have dealt with the dead and with me. ⁹May the LORD grant that each of you finds rest in the home of a new husband." She kissed them, and they raised their voices and wept. ¹⁰They said to her, "No — we will return with you to your people." ¹¹Naomi said, "Go back, my daughters. Why would you come with me? Do I still have sons in my womb who could become your husbands? ¹²Go back, my daughters, go. I am too old to have a husband. Even if I said, 'There is hope for me' — even if I were with a husband tonight and even bore sons — ¹³would you wait for them until they grew up? Would you shut yourselves off from having husbands? No, my daughters, for it is far more bitter for me than for you, because the hand of the LORD has gone out against me." ¹⁴They raised their voices and wept again. Orpah kissed her mother-in-law goodbye, but Ruth clung to her. ¹⁵Naomi said, "Look — your sister-in-law has gone back to her people and to her gods. Go back after your sister-in-law." ¹⁶But Ruth said, "Do not press me to leave you or to turn back from following you. For where you go, I will go, and where you stay, I will stay. Your people will be my people, and your God will be my God. ¹⁷Where you die, I will die, and there I will be buried. May the LORD do so to me, and worse, if anything but death separates me from you." ¹⁸When Naomi saw that Ruth was determined to go with her, she stopped arguing with her. ¹⁹The two of them walked on until they reached Bethlehem. When they arrived in Bethlehem, the whole town was stirred because of them, and the women said, "Can this be Naomi?" ²⁰She said to them, "Do not call me Naomi. Call me Mara, for the Almighty has made my life very bitter. ²¹I went away full, but the LORD has brought me back empty. Why call me Naomi, when the LORD has testified against me and the Almighty has brought misfortune on me?" ²²So Naomi returned, and with her Ruth the Moabite, her daughter-in-law, who came back from the fields of Moab. They arrived in Bethlehem at the beginning of the barley harvest.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *vayyehi bimei shefot ha-shofetim* ('and it was in the days of the judging of the judges') places the story within the Judges period without specifying which judge. The deliberate vagueness contrasts with the specificity of the Judges narratives — this story operates outside the military-political cycle.
1. The phrase *lagur bisedei Mo'av* ('to sojourn in the fields of Moab') uses the verb *gur* ('to sojourn, to live as a resident alien') — the same term used of Abraham in Canaan (Genesis 20:1) and Israel in Egypt (Genesis 47:4). A *ger* has no land rights, no inheritance, no clan protection. Elimelech trades his ancestral property in Bethlehem for landless vulnerability in Moab.
1. Bethlehem (Beit Lechem, 'House of Bread') suffering a famine is a bitter irony that the Hebrew reader would hear immediately. The House of Bread has no bread.
2. Every name in this verse carries meaning that a Hebrew audience would hear: Elimelech ('my God is king'), Naomi ('pleasant, lovely'), Mahlon (possibly 'sickness' or 'weakness'), and Chilion (possibly 'failing, wasting away'). Whether these names are etymologically predictive or literary symbolism applied retroactively, the effect is the same — the narrator signals that the sons will not survive. The names function as compressed foreshadowing.
2. Ephrathites (Efratim) identifies the family as members of the Ephrathah clan within Judah — the same designation used for Jesse's family in 1 Samuel 17:12. This is not a random family but part of the lineage that will produce David.
3. The death is reported with devastating brevity: *vayyamot Elimelekh* ('and Elimelech died'). No cause, no mourning scene, no burial narrative. The narrator's compression communicates how abruptly and completely disaster strikes. The verb *vattisha'er* ('she was left, she remained') will recur in verse 5 — each use strips another layer of family away from Naomi. The 'man whose God is king' is gone; Naomi is now defined not by what she has but by what remains after loss.
4. The marriages to Moabite women (*nashim Mo'aviyyot*) would have been alarming to an Israelite audience. Deuteronomy 23:3 prohibits Moabites from entering the assembly of the LORD 'to the tenth generation.' The narrator states the marriages without comment — neither condemning nor excusing — and lets the tension stand. The entire book will work to resolve it: how does a Moabite woman become an ancestor of David?

4. Orpah's name may derive from oref ('back of the neck, nape') — the part of the body visible when someone turns away. If so, her name foreshadows her departure in verse 14. Ruth's name is less certain — some connect it to re'ut ('friend, companion') or ravah ('to water, to saturate, to refresh'). The ten-year period (ke-eser shanim) underscores that these were real marriages, not casual unions.
5. The second use of vattisha'er ('she was left') completes the stripping: Naomi is now mi-shenei yeladeiha u-me'ishah ('from her two children and from her husband') — the preposition min ('from') marking separation and loss. The word yeladim ('children') rather than banim ('sons') is notable — the more intimate, maternal term emphasizes the personal nature of the loss.
5. Three deaths in three verses. The narrator's pace is relentless. No explanation is given for why the sons died — the text refuses to moralize. The effect is that Naomi's suffering is presented as raw fact, not as punishment. This restraint is theologically significant: the book does not treat Naomi's loss as divine judgment for the Moab marriage.
6. The verb paqad ('to visit, to attend to, to take note of') is a covenant term — when God paqad his people, it means He has turned His attention toward them with purpose. It carries both positive (visitation with blessing, as here) and negative (visitation with judgment) valences. The same verb describes God's attention to Sarah (Genesis 21:1) and to Israel in Egypt (Exodus 4:31). God's paqad reverses the famine and makes return possible.
6. The phrase latet lahem lachem ('to give them bread') closes the circle opened in verse 1: the House of Bread (Bethlehem) that had no bread now has bread again because the LORD has given it. The irony that drove the family to Moab is resolved — but Naomi returns without the family she left with.
7. The verb shub ('to return') appears here for the first time in its dominant role — it will recur twelve times in this chapter. For Naomi, the return is geographical (Moab to Judah). For Orpah, it will be relational (returning to her mother's house). For Ruth, it creates a paradox: Ruth has never been to Judah, so she cannot 'return' — she can only go. Yet the narrator includes her in the journey of return, hinting that Ruth belongs in Israel even before she arrives.
8. Naomi's blessing — ya'as YHWH immakhem chesed ('may the LORD do with you chesed') — is the first occurrence of chesed in Ruth, and it is theologically explosive. Naomi asks Israel's covenant God to show covenant loyalty to Moabite women. She grounds the request in their own demonstrated chesed: ka'asher asitem im ha-metim ve-immadi ('as you have done with the dead and with me'). The dead (ha-metim) are Mahlon and Chilion — the daughters-in-law's faithfulness to their deceased husbands is recognized as chesed.
8. The instruction to return to beit immah ('your mother's house') rather than the expected beit av ('your father's house') is unusual. The 'mother's house' appears in only two other passages (Genesis 24:28, Song of Songs 3:4), both in contexts involving marriage arrangements for women. Naomi may be directing them toward the domestic sphere where remarriage can be negotiated — the mother's house is where a woman's future is arranged.
9. Naomi's second blessing introduces menuchah ('rest') — not mere cessation of labor but settled security, the condition of being safely placed. The same word describes the promised land itself (Deuteronomy 12:9) and God's own resting place (Psalm 132:14). For a widow in the ancient Near East, menuchah could only come through a husband's household — remarriage was not romance but survival. Naomi wishes them the security she herself has lost.
9. The verb vattishaq ('she kissed them') is the standard gesture of familial farewell. The communal weeping — vattise'nah qolan ('they raised their voice') — is a public, audible grief, not quiet tears. Three widows on a road, weeping together, with no men and no home in sight: the scene is one of complete social vulnerability.
10. Both daughters-in-law initially refuse to leave. Their declaration — ittakh nashuv le-ammekh ('with you we will return to your people') — uses the emphatic ki ('surely, indeed') or adversative ki ('no, but rather'). The verb nashuv ('we will return') applies awkwardly to Orpah and Ruth, who have never been to Judah. By using the verb of Naomi's return, they are declaring that Naomi's destination is their destination — her people are their people. This is the same commitment Ruth will formalize in verse 16.
11. Naomi's argument invokes the institution of levirate marriage (yibbum) — the obligation for a dead man's brother to marry his widow and produce an heir in the dead man's name (Deuteronomy 25:5-10). Her rhetorical question — ha-od li vanim beme'ai ('are there still sons in my womb?') — is both legally precise and emotionally devastating. Even if she could bear sons, the daughters-in-law would have to wait decades for them to grow. The legal framework that should protect these widows has been emptied by death.
12. Naomi builds an impossible hypothetical: ki amarti yesh li tiqvah ('even if I said there is hope for me'). The word tiqvah ('hope') will prove deeply ironic — Naomi declares herself hopeless, but the narrative will restore her through the very daughter-in-law she is trying to send away. The conditional chain (even if I had a husband tonight, even if I bore sons) piles absurdity upon absurdity to make the legal argument airtight: levirate marriage cannot help them.
13. The verb tesabbernah ('would you wait, would you hope') is rare — used only here in the Hebrew Bible. It may derive from savar ('to wait, to expect, to hope'). The second verb te'agenah ('would you be tied down, would you be restricted') relates to the legal concept of the agunah — a woman bound to a marriage that prevents her from remarrying. Naomi is describing a legal and social prison: if they wait for hypothetical sons, they cannot marry anyone else.
13. Naomi's claim ki mar li me'od mikkem ('it is more bitter for me than for you') is ambiguous — it could mean 'my situation is more bitter than yours' or 'I am more grieved on your account than you are.' The first reading expresses Naomi's self-pity; the second expresses compassion. Both are grammatically possible. The phrase yad YHWH ('the hand of the LORD') attributes her suffering directly to God's agency — Naomi does not blame Moab, famine, or circumstance. She blames God.

14. The verse splits the two daughters-in-law with a single contrast: Orpah kissed (vattishaq) but Ruth clung (davqah). The kiss is farewell; the clinging is refusal to leave. The verb davaq ('to cling, to cleave, to hold fast') is the same verb used in Genesis 2:24 for the marriage bond ('a man shall leave his father and mother and cling to his wife') and in Deuteronomy 10:20 and 11:22 for Israel's covenant attachment to God ('you shall cling to Him'). Ruth's attachment to Naomi is described with the deepest relational vocabulary the Hebrew Bible possesses.
14. Orpah's departure should not be read as failure — she does exactly what Naomi asked. She is the reasonable response. Ruth is the extraordinary one. The narrative needs Orpah's reasonable obedience to measure Ruth's unreasonable devotion.
15. Naomi's final argument links people and gods: el ammah ve-el eloheihā ('to her people and to her gods'). In the ancient world, returning to your people meant returning to their gods — religion and ethnicity were inseparable. Naomi is saying: Orpah made the sensible choice. She went home to everything familiar — family, culture, worship. You should do the same.
15. The term yevimtekḥ ('your sister-in-law') is from yavam, the same root as yibbum (levirate marriage). The word itself reminds both women of the legal bond that death has severed. By calling Orpah Ruth's yevimtekḥ, Naomi frames the departing woman in the vocabulary of the broken institution that cannot save any of them.
16. Ruth's declaration — among the most famous passages in the Hebrew Bible — is structured as a series of covenant commitments. The opening al tifge'i bi ('do not press me, do not urge me against') uses the verb paga ('to encounter, to press, to strike against'), here meaning 'do not use force to persuade me.' Ruth is not making a request — she is resisting Naomi's command.
16. The four parallel clauses follow a progression from physical companionship to spiritual identity: (1) where you go, I go (shared journey); (2) where you stay, I stay (shared dwelling); (3) your people are my people (shared community); (4) your God is my God (shared worship). Each clause escalates the commitment. The final claim — Elohayikh Elohai ('your God, my God') — is a conversion statement. Ruth abandons Chemosh, the god of Moab, for YHWH. This is not casual — it is the renunciation of everything she has known spiritually.
16. The verb shub ('to return, to turn back') appears again — Naomi tells Ruth to 'return,' but Ruth redefines the word: she refuses to turn back. For Ruth, turning back would mean leaving Naomi. The entire chapter's thematic verb is here inverted.
17. Ruth's oath climaxes with death itself: ba'asher tamuti amut vesham eqqaver ('where you die I will die and there I will be buried'). Shared burial means permanent identification with Naomi's family and land — Ruth is renouncing any return to Moab, even in death. In the ancient world, burial location defined tribal and family identity permanently.
17. The self-imprecation koh ya'aseh YHWH li vekhoh yosif ('may the LORD do so to me, and add to it') is a standard oath formula (cf. 1 Samuel 3:17, 2 Samuel 3:9, 1 Kings 2:23). The oath invokes divine punishment for oath-breaking, with the unspecified 'so' and 'more' leaving the threatened consequence to God's determination. Ruth swears by YHWH — not by Chemosh — confirming the conversion declared in verse 16.
17. The final clause ki ha-mavet yafriḏ beini u-veinekh ('only death will separate me from you') anticipates Paul's language in Romans 8:38-39 ('neither death nor life... shall be able to separate us'). Whether Paul had Ruth in mind is uncertain, but the verbal echo is striking.
18. The verb mit'ammetset ('was determined, was strengthening herself') comes from the root amats ('to be strong, to be firm') — the same root God uses to commission Joshua: chazaq ve-emats ('be strong and courageous,' Joshua 1:6). Ruth's determination is described with the vocabulary of military-grade resolve. Naomi recognizes an immovable will and vattechdal ledabber eleiha ('she ceased speaking to her'). The silence is acquiescence — not acceptance, not joy, just the end of resistance.
19. The arrival scene: vattehom kol ha-ir aleihen ('the whole city was astir/stirred concerning them'). The verb hamah ('to murmur, to roar, to be in uproar') suggests the entire community buzzing — not a quiet homecoming but a public sensation. Naomi left as a married woman with two sons and returns as a widow with a Moabite daughter-in-law. The question ha-zot No'omi ('is this Naomi?') conveys shock at her changed appearance and circumstances.
19. The feminine verb vattomarnah ('they said,' feminine plural) indicates the speakers are the women of Bethlehem specifically — the community that would have known Naomi before her departure. The recognition scene sets up Naomi's bitter response.
20. Naomi's name-change demand is a theological protest. No'omi means 'pleasant, lovely, delightful'; Mara means 'bitter.' The wordplay — ki hemar Shaddai li me'od ('for the Almighty has made it very bitter for me') — uses the hiphil of marar ('to be bitter'), making God the active agent of her bitterness. She does not say 'life has been bitter' but 'Shaddai has made it bitter.'
20. The divine name Shaddai ('the Almighty') rather than YHWH is significant. Shaddai is the patriarchal-era name (Genesis 17:1, 28:3, 35:11, 43:14, 48:3, 49:25) — the God of promise and abundance. By using this name, Naomi accuses the God of abundance of producing scarcity. The God who was supposed to make fruitful has left her barren and alone.
21. The full/empty contrast — ani mele'ah halakhti vereiqam heshivani YHWH ('I went full, and the LORD brought me back empty') — is Naomi's summary of her entire Moab experience. Mele'ah ('full') encompasses husband, sons, household, social standing. Reiqam ('empty, empty-handed') is the totality of loss. The irony the narrator sees but Naomi does not: she is not returning empty. Ruth is standing right next to her.
21. Two divine names frame the accusation: YHWH anah vi ('the LORD testified against me') and Shaddai hera li ('the Almighty brought evil/misfortune upon me'). The verb anah can mean 'to answer, to testify against, to afflict' — Naomi casts her suffering as God's legal verdict against her. The accumulation of divine agency — God made it bitter (v. 20), God brought me back empty, God testified against me, God afflicted me — is the most concentrated accusation against God in any narrative text outside Job.

22. The narrator's closing frame reintroduces Ruth with her full designation: Rut ha-Mo'aviyyah kallatah ('Ruth the Moabite, her daughter-in-law'). The epithet ha-Mo'aviyyah ('the Moabite') will follow Ruth throughout the book (2:2, 2:6, 2:21, 4:5, 4:10) — the narrator never lets the reader forget her foreign origin. It is a constant reminder that the woman who will become David's great-grandmother was an outsider.
22. The chapter ends with a temporal marker of hope: bithchillat qetsir se'orim ('at the beginning of the barley harvest'). After famine, death, and emptiness — harvest. The House of Bread has bread again. The timing is also legally significant: the barley harvest is when gleaning rights for the poor (Leviticus 19:9, 23:22) become active, creating the legal mechanism by which Ruth will encounter Boaz in chapter 2.

2

Summary: *Ruth goes out to glean in the barley fields and, by apparent chance, arrives in the field of Boaz — a wealthy relative of Elimelech. Boaz notices her, extends extraordinary protection, and commands his workers to leave extra grain for her. She returns to Naomi with an abundance of food, and Naomi reveals that Boaz is one of their kinsman-redeemers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The narrator's use of miqreh ('chance, happening') in verse 3 is deliberately ironic — what looks like accident is providential design. The entire chapter pivots on Ruth ending up in exactly the right field belonging to exactly the right man. Boaz's first words to Ruth echo the language of covenant protection, and his knowledge of her story (vv. 11-12) reveals that her reputation has preceded her. His blessing in verse 12 — invoking the God of Israel 'under whose wings you have come to take refuge' — uses the same word (kanaf, 'wing/corner') that Ruth will later use when she asks Boaz to spread his garment over her (3:9). The verbal thread ties divine refuge to human obligation.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered miqreh in verse 3 as 'as it turned out' rather than 'chance' or 'luck' to preserve the narrator's ironic understatement without implying genuine randomness. Boaz's greeting to his workers — YHWH immakhem ('the LORD be with you') — could be routine or theologically charged; we rendered it straightforwardly and noted the ambiguity. The term go'el in verse 20 required extended treatment because 'kinsman-redeemer' is a theological compound with no single English equivalent; we unpacked it in the expanded rendering rather than forcing an artificial gloss.*

Connections: *The gleaning laws that structure this chapter originate in Leviticus 19:9 and 23:22 — provisions for the poor, the foreigner, the widow, and the orphan. Ruth qualifies on every count. Boaz's blessing over Ruth (v. 12) echoes Psalm 91:4 ('under his wings you will find refuge') and anticipates the same imagery in Psalm 36:7. Naomi's declaration that God 'has not abandoned his faithful love for the living or the dead' (v. 20) reverses her bitter theology from 1:20-21 — the God who emptied her is now filling her again through the chesed of a relative she had not mentioned.*

1Now Naomi had a relative on her husband's side — a man of standing and means — from the clan of Elimelech. His name was Boaz. 2Ruth the Moabite said to Naomi, "Let me go to the field and glean among the stalks of grain, following anyone who shows me favor." Naomi said to her, "Go, my daughter." 3She went out, came to the field, and began gleaning behind the harvesters. As it turned out, the plot of field she came to belonged to Boaz, from the clan of Elimelech. 4Just then, Boaz arrived from Bethlehem. He said to the harvesters, "The LORD be with you!" They answered him, "The LORD bless you!" 5Boaz said to the servant overseeing the harvesters, "Whose young woman is that?" 6The servant overseeing the harvesters answered, "She is a Moabite young woman — the one who came back with Naomi from the territory of Moab. 7She asked, 'Please let me glean and gather among the sheaves behind the harvesters.' She came and has been on her feet from early morning until now, with only a brief rest in the shelter." 8Boaz said to Ruth, "Listen carefully, my daughter. Do not go to glean in another field, and do not leave this one. Stay close to my young women. 9Keep your eyes on the field they are harvesting and follow the women. I have ordered the young men not to touch you. When you are thirsty, go to the water jars and drink from what the men have drawn." 10She fell facedown, bowing to the ground, and said to him, "Why have I found favor in your eyes, that you would notice me — a foreigner?" 11Boaz answered her, "I have been told — told in full — everything you have done for your mother-in-law since your husband's death: how you left your father and mother and your homeland and came to a people you had never known before. 12May the LORD repay your deeds, and may your wages be full

from the LORD, the God of Israel, under whose wings you have come to take refuge." ¹³She said, "May I continue to find favor in your eyes, my lord, for you have comforted me and spoken to the heart of your servant — though I am not even one of your servant girls." ¹⁴At mealtime Boaz said to her, "Come over here, eat some bread, and dip your piece in the vinegar sauce." She sat beside the harvesters, and he handed her roasted grain. She ate until she was satisfied — and had some left over. ¹⁵When she got up to glean again, Boaz instructed his young men: "Let her glean even among the sheaves, and do not humiliate her. ¹⁶Also, pull out some stalks from the bundles for her on purpose, and leave them so she can gather them. Do not scold her." ¹⁷She gleaned in the field until evening. When she beat out what she had gathered, it came to about an ephah of barley. ¹⁸She carried it back and went into the city. Her mother-in-law saw how much she had gleaned. Then Ruth brought out and gave Naomi what she had left over from her meal. ¹⁹Her mother-in-law asked her, "Where did you glean today? Where did you work? Blessed be the man who noticed you!" Ruth told her mother-in-law about the one she had worked with and said, "The name of the man I worked with today is Boaz." ²⁰Naomi said to her daughter-in-law, "Blessed be he by the LORD, who has not abandoned his faithful love for the living and the dead!" Then Naomi told her, "This man is a close relative of ours — he is one of our kinsman-redeemers." ²¹Ruth the Moabite added, "He also told me, 'Stay close to my workers until they have finished all my harvest.'" ²²Naomi said to Ruth, her daughter-in-law, "It is good, my daughter, that you go out with his young women, so that no one harms you in another field." ²³So Ruth stayed close to Boaz's young women, gleaning through the end of the barley harvest and the wheat harvest. And she lived with her mother-in-law.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator introduces Boaz with a backgrounding clause before Ruth or Naomi know he will matter. The term *moda* ('relative, acquaintance') signals a kinship connection to Elimelech's clan. The description *ish gibbor chayil* ('a man mighty of strength/wealth') is the same phrase applied to Gideon (Judges 6:12) and to the ideal woman in Proverbs 31:10 (*eshet chayil*). It encompasses wealth, social standing, and personal capability — Boaz is everything that Naomi's household currently lacks.
1. The name Boaz (Bo'az) may mean 'in him is strength' — from the preposition *be* ('in') and *oz* ('strength'). If so, the name anticipates his role: he is the man in whom the family's future strength resides. The same name was given to one of the two pillars of Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:21).
2. Ruth's initiative drives the scene: *elkhah-na hasadeh va'alaqotah* ('let me go, please, to the field and glean'). The particle *na* ('please') is deferential — Ruth asks permission, not forgiveness. She proposes to exercise the legal right of gleaning (*laqat*) granted to the poor and the foreigner in Leviticus 19:9 and 23:22. That a Moabite widow in Israel would know this law — or assume it would be honored — reflects either Naomi's instruction or Ruth's remarkable boldness.
2. The phrase *emtsa-chen be'einav* ('I find favor in his eyes') anticipates the exact language Boaz will use in verse 10 and Ruth will use in verse 13. The narrator builds the encounter through verbal echoes: the favor Ruth hopes for from any landowner will come, specifically and abundantly, from Boaz.
2. Naomi's reply — *lekhi vitti* ('go, my daughter') — is strikingly brief. After the eloquent speeches of chapter 1, Naomi has few words. She sends Ruth into a situation fraught with danger for an unprotected foreign woman and says only two words. Whether this reflects depression, helplessness, or trust in God is left unstated.
3. The phrase *vayyiqer miqrehah* (literally 'her chance chanced upon') uses the root *qarah* ('to encounter, to happen, to befall') in a cognate accusative construction — the verb and its object share the same root, intensifying the meaning. The same root appears in Ecclesiastes 2:14-15 and 9:2-3 to describe the apparent randomness of fate. Here the narrator deploys the language of chance precisely to undermine it: the reader knows from verse 1 that Boaz is Elimelech's kinsman.
3. The three rapid verbs — *vattalekh vattavo vattelaqet* ('she went and came and gleaned') — compress Ruth's journey into staccato action. No description of the walk, the landscape, or her feelings. The narrative pace keeps the focus on what happens, not how she feels about it.
4. The narrative marker *vehinneh* ('and look!') signals a dramatic entrance — Boaz arrives at exactly the moment Ruth is gleaning in his field. We rendered this as 'just then' to convey the narrative surprise without resorting to archaic 'behold.' The timing reinforces the irony of verse 3: one 'coincidence' follows another.
4. The exchange *YHWH immakhem / yevarekha YHWH* ('the LORD be with you / the LORD bless you') is either a routine greeting (like modern 'God bless you') or a marker of Boaz's genuine piety. The narrator does not distinguish — but the exchange establishes Boaz's household as one where the LORD's name is invoked freely and reciprocally. This is not the world of Judges, where everyone does what is right in their own eyes; this is a field where master and workers bless each other in God's name.
5. Boaz's question — *lemi hanna'arah hazzot* ('to whom does this young woman belong?') — reflects the social reality: an unmarried or widowed woman in the ancient Near East was identified by her connection to a male household. The question 'whose is she?' is not objectifying by ancient standards but locating her within the kinship network. Boaz is trying to place her socially — whose family, whose household, whose responsibility?

6. The servant's first identifying marker is ethnic: na'arah Mo'aviyyah hi ('a Moabite young woman she is'). Her foreignness is the primary fact. The phrase ha-shavah im Na'omi ('the one who returned with Naomi') uses the same verb shub ('to return') from chapter 1 — Ruth's reputation has preceded her. The entire community apparently knows the story of the Moabite who came back with Naomi.
6. The servant's identification — 'Moabite young woman' — places Ruth in a double-marginal category: foreign and female. In the social hierarchy of an Israelite harvest field, she has no standing whatsoever. Everything Boaz does next is therefore extraordinary generosity beyond legal obligation.
7. Ruth's request — ala'qotah-na ve'asafi va'omarim ('let me glean and gather among the sheaves') — goes beyond basic gleaning rights. Gleaning (laqat) meant picking up individual stalks that fell during harvesting. Gathering among the sheaves (asaf va'omarim) implies collecting closer to the bundled grain — a more productive but more presumptuous request. Ruth is negotiating for maximum provision.
7. The servant's report emphasizes Ruth's tireless labor: me'az habboqer ve'ad attah ('from the morning until now'). The final clause zeh shivtah habbayit me'at ('this — her sitting in the house/shelter — has been little') confirms she barely rested. The servant is clearly impressed. Her work ethic speaks before Boaz does.
8. Boaz's address — halo shamat bitti ('have you not heard, my daughter?') — opens with paternal authority. The term bitti ('my daughter') establishes a protective relationship, not a romantic one (yet). He immediately issues three imperatives: do not go to another field, do not leave this one, stay close to my workers. The protection is comprehensive.
8. The verb tidbakin ('you shall cling, stay close') is from the root davaq — the same verb used of Ruth's clinging to Naomi in 1:14, of the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24, and of Israel's attachment to God in Deuteronomy 10:20. The narrator threads this verb through the book: Ruth clung to Naomi, now she is told to cling to Boaz's workers, and eventually she will be joined to Boaz himself.
9. Boaz's command tsivviti et-hanne'arim levilti nag'ekh ('I have charged the young men not to touch you') reveals a reality the text does not romanticize: an unprotected foreign woman in a harvest field was vulnerable to sexual assault. The verb naga ('to touch') in this context means unwanted physical contact — the same verb used in Genesis 20:6 when God prevents Abimelech from touching Sarah. Boaz has already taken protective action before speaking to Ruth.
9. The provision of water — ve'shatit me'asher yish'avun hanne'arim ('drink from what the young men draw') — is significant because drawing water was labor-intensive. Boaz gives Ruth access to water she did not draw, from workers she does not employ, in a field she does not own. Each provision strips away one more layer of her outsider status.
10. Ruth's response — vattippol al paneiha vattishtachu artsah ('she fell on her face and bowed to the ground') — is the full prostration gesture of submission and gratitude. It is the same posture used before kings and before God. From Ruth, it communicates the enormity of what Boaz has offered: not just grain but protection, dignity, and recognition.
10. The wordplay in lehakkireni ve'anokhi nokhriyyah ('to notice me, and I am a foreigner') is one of the finest in the Hebrew Bible. The verb nakhar means both 'to recognize, to pay attention to' and, in a different form, 'to be foreign.' Ruth uses the verb and then identifies herself with its cognate noun: 'Why would you recognize (hakkir) me, seeing that I am a foreigner (nokhriyyah)?' The one who is by definition unrecognizable — the foreigner — has been recognized. The wordplay compresses the entire theological arc of Ruth into a single sentence.
11. The emphatic infinitive absolute construction huggad huggad li ('it has been told, it has been told to me') doubles the verb for emphasis — the report about Ruth has been thorough and complete. Boaz knows her entire story. His summary of her actions — leaving father, mother, and homeland (eret moladtekh) — deliberately echoes God's call to Abraham: lekh-lekha me'artsekh umimoladtekh umibeit avikh ('go from your land and your kindred and your father's house,' Genesis 12:1). Ruth has done what Abraham did: left everything familiar for an unknown destination among an unknown people.
11. The phrase am asher lo yadat temol shilshom ('a people you did not know yesterday or the day before') is an idiom for complete unfamiliarity. Ruth's journey was not to a place of potential welcome but to radical strangeness. Boaz recognizes the full cost of her choice.
12. The verb yeshalleh ('may he repay') and the noun maskurtek ('your wages') are economic terms — payment for work done. Boaz frames Ruth's loyalty not as emotional sentiment but as labor that has earned a wage from God. The theological implication is startling: covenant faithfulness shown by a Moabite generates a debt that God himself will repay.
12. The phrase lachasot tachat kenafav ('to take refuge under his wings') uses the root chasah ('to seek refuge, to take shelter') found throughout the Psalms (Psalms 2:12, 5:11, 17:8, 36:7, 57:1, 91:4). Ruth the Moabite has sought shelter under the wings of the God of Israel — and God will provide that shelter through Boaz himself. The double meaning of kanaf ('wing' and 'corner of a garment') creates a verbal bridge to 3:9 that transforms theology into narrative action.
13. Ruth's phrase dibbarta al-lev shifchatekha ('you have spoken to the heart of your servant') uses the idiom dibber al-lev ('to speak to the heart'), which appears in Genesis 34:3, Isaiah 40:2, and Hosea 2:14. It means more than kind words — it means to reassure, to console, to win someone's trust through tender speech. The same phrase describes how God woos wayward Israel.
13. Ruth's self-deprecation — ve'anokhi lo ehyeh ke'achat shifchotekha ('and I will not even be like one of your servant girls') — is not false modesty. She is stating social reality: she ranks below Boaz's own servants. The word shifchah ('female servant, handmaid') is the same term she uses for herself, creating an ironic hierarchy: she calls herself his servant while acknowledging she is not even equal to his actual servants. Boaz's kindness has elevated her beyond her station, and she knows it.

14. The invitation to eat at the communal meal — *goshi halom ve'akhalt min-hallechem* ('come here and eat from the bread') — breaks another social barrier. Ruth the gleaner is invited to eat with the workers, at the landowner's table. The vinegar (*chomets*) is sour wine used as a dipping sauce — a common field condiment that makes coarse bread palatable.
14. The sequence *vattokhal vattisba vattotar* ('she ate and was satisfied and had left over') echoes the language of divine provision. The same three-beat pattern — eat, be satisfied, have surplus — appears in the feeding miracles and in Deuteronomy's descriptions of abundance in the promised land (Deuteronomy 8:10). A Moabite widow in a harvest field receives the same pattern of provision that God promises Israel. The surplus (*vattotar*) anticipates the abundance she will bring home to Naomi in verse 18.
15. Boaz's command — *gam bein ha'omarim telaqet velo takhlimuha* ('even among the sheaves let her glean, and do not humiliate her') — exceeds the gleaning law. Leviticus permits gleaning at the edges; Boaz opens the sheaves themselves. The verb *kalam* ('to humiliate, to put to shame') indicates that gleaners could expect verbal abuse or harsh treatment from workers protecting their employer's grain. Boaz forbids not just physical harm but social degradation.
15. The command is given privately to the workers, not to Ruth. Boaz protects her dignity by arranging generosity she will not witness being arranged. She will think she found the grain; the workers will know it was placed for her. This is *chesed* in its most refined form — kindness that preserves the recipient's sense of agency.
16. The infinitive absolute construction *shol-tashollu* ('you shall surely pull out') emphasizes deliberateness — this is not passive allowance but active provision disguised as accident. Boaz commands his workers to engineer abundance while maintaining Ruth's dignity. She will think she is finding good grain; in reality, the grain is finding her.
16. The verb *ga'ar* ('to rebuke, to scold') suggests that harvesters normally drove off gleaners who took too much or came too close. Boaz dismantles every mechanism of exclusion: no physical harm (v. 9), no humiliation (v. 15), no scolding (v. 16). He creates a zone of total safety around a woman who had no right to expect any.
17. An *ephah* (*eifah*) is approximately 22 liters or about 30 pounds of grain — an extraordinary amount for a single day's gleaning. Normal gleaning might yield a few pounds. The quantity confirms that Boaz's secret instructions in verses 15-16 had their intended effect: Ruth's labor, combined with arranged generosity, produces an abundance that would be impossible under normal gleaning conditions.
17. The verb *chavat* ('to beat out, to thresh') describes Ruth processing the grain herself — separating the kernels from the stalks by striking them. This is additional labor after a full day of gleaning, demonstrating Ruth's relentless work ethic. She does not bring home raw sheaves but processed, ready-to-use grain.
18. The double provision — gleaned grain and leftover food — mirrors the eat/be-satisfied/have-surplus pattern of verse 14. Ruth brings home both the day's wages (grain) and the day's surplus (food from the communal meal). Naomi receives not just provision but evidence of extraordinary generosity.
18. The verb *hotirah* ('she had left over') connects to the *vattotar* of verse 14. What Ruth saved from her own satisfaction she brings to Naomi. The economy of *chesed* operates through surplus: Boaz gives Ruth more than she needs, and Ruth carries the excess to Naomi. Kindness flows downhill from the man of means through the gleaner to the empty widow.
19. Naomi's questions tumble out in rapid sequence — *eifoh liqqatt hayom ve'anah asit* ('where did you glean today and where did you work?') — before Ruth can answer. The quantity of grain has clearly shocked her. Naomi blesses the unknown benefactor before she knows his name: *yehi makkirekh barukh* ('may the one who noticed you be blessed'). The verb *makkirekh* ('the one who noticed/recognized you') echoes Ruth's wordplay from verse 10 — the *nakhar/nokhriyyah* connection now extends through Naomi's blessing.
19. Ruth's revelation — *shem ha'ish asher asiti immo hayyom Bo'az* ('the name of the man with whom I worked today is Boaz') — is placed at the end of the verse for maximum narrative impact. The name lands like a thunderclap on Naomi, who will immediately recognize its significance.
20. The phrase *asher lo azav chasdo et-hachayim ve'et-hammetim* ('who has not abandoned his *chesed* toward the living and the dead') recalls Naomi's own *chesed* blessing over Ruth and Orpah in 1:8. There, Naomi asked God to show *chesed* to them as they had shown *chesed* to the dead. Now the cycle completes: God's *chesed* toward the dead (*Elimelech*, *Mahlon*, *Chilion*) and the living (*Naomi*, *Ruth*) flows through Boaz. The woman who accused God of emptying her (1:21) now blesses God for not abandoning his love.
20. The term *go'el* ('redeemer, kinsman-redeemer') is from the root *ga'al* ('to redeem, to buy back, to act as kinsman'). It carries legal, economic, and theological weight: the *go'el* redeems land (Leviticus 25:25), persons (Leviticus 25:47-49), and blood (Numbers 35:19). God himself is called *go'el* of Israel (Exodus 6:6, Isaiah 41:14, 43:14). By identifying Boaz as *go'el*, Naomi introduces the mechanism that will resolve every strand of the plot: land, marriage, lineage, and identity.
20. The word *qarov* ('close, near') signals that Boaz is not just any relative but a close one — close enough in the kinship network to bear the obligation of redemption. The proximity matters legally: the *go'el* responsibility falls on the nearest male relative.
21. Ruth quotes Boaz as saying *hanne'arim asher-li* ('the young men who are mine') — but in verse 8, Boaz actually told her to stay with his *na'arot* ('young women'). Ruth's substitution of 'young men' for 'young women' is noticed by many commentators. It may be an innocent misquotation, or it may reflect that Ruth worked near both groups, or it may be narratively significant — Naomi's response in the next verse will steer Ruth back toward the women, possibly out of concern for her safety among the men.

- 21.** The phrase *ad im-killu et-kol-haqqatsir asher-li* ('until they have finished all my harvest') extends Boaz's protection through the entire harvest season — weeks of guaranteed safety, provision, and access. This is not a one-day favor but a standing arrangement.
- 22.** Naomi's response corrects Ruth's 'young men' back to *na'arotav* ('his young women') — a subtle but deliberate redirection. Whether Naomi is worried about safety, propriety, or both, she steers Ruth toward the female workers. The verb *yifge'u* ('they meet, they encounter, they strike against') can mean anything from an accidental meeting to a violent assault. Naomi is warning Ruth that outside Boaz's field, she has no protection.
- 22.** The phrase *besadeh acher* ('in another field') carries more weight than geography. Boaz's field is the one place where Ruth has been recognized, protected, fed, and given access. Every other field is the field of a stranger where she is just another Moabite gleaner with no protector. Naomi's counsel is both practical and strategic: stay where the *go'el* can see you.
- 23.** The chapter closes with the verb *vattidbaq* ('she clung, she stayed close') — the same root *davaq* that described Ruth's clinging to Naomi in 1:14 and Boaz's instruction in 2:8. Ruth is now bound to Boaz's household by daily habit, even as she remains bound to Naomi at home. The verb quietly stitches together every relationship in the book.
- 23.** The time summary — *qetsir hasse'orim uqetsir hachittim* ('the barley harvest and the wheat harvest') — spans roughly seven weeks, from Passover to Shavuot (the Feast of Weeks). Ruth has gleaned through two full harvest cycles, establishing herself as a known presence in Boaz's field. The closing note *vatteshev et-chamotah* ('and she lived with her mother-in-law') returns us to the domestic frame: whatever happens in the field, Ruth comes home to Naomi. The chapter opened with Ruth going out; it closes with her dwelling in. Between departure and return, everything has changed.

3

Summary: *Naomi devises a plan for Ruth to approach Boaz at the threshing floor under cover of night. Ruth bathes, dresses, and goes to the threshing floor where Boaz is winnowing barley. After he eats and drinks and lies down, Ruth uncovers his feet and lies beside him. When Boaz wakes at midnight, Ruth identifies herself and asks him to spread his garment over her — invoking his role as kinsman-redeemer. Boaz praises her loyalty, reveals that a closer kinsman-redeemer exists, and promises to settle the matter at dawn. Ruth returns to Naomi with six measures of barley and a promise.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The threshing floor scene is constructed with extraordinary literary precision. The Hebrew employs a sustained double register: every key verb — *shakav* ('to lie down'), *galah* ('to uncover'), *yada* ('to know'), *margelot* ('feet' or 'legs') — carries both an ordinary meaning and a sexual connotation. The narrator never resolves the ambiguity, and we have not resolved it either. What matters theologically is that Boaz responds to Ruth's vulnerability not with exploitation but with blessing. His first words to her are a benediction. The word *kanaf* ('wing' or 'garment corner') in verse 9 directly echoes Boaz's prayer in 2:12 that Ruth would find refuge 'under the wings of the LORD' — Ruth is now asking Boaz himself to be the answer to his own prayer. This is one of the most elegant theological callbacks in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The deliberate ambiguity of the threshing floor scene resists clean English rendering. The Hebrew *margelot* literally means 'the place of the feet' but is widely understood as a euphemism. We rendered it as 'the place of his feet' to preserve the surface meaning while noting the undertone. The verb *galah* ('to uncover') in verse 4 and verse 7 carries both literal and sexual senses elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible (Leviticus 18 uses it repeatedly for sexual exposure). We chose 'uncovered' and addressed the ambiguity in notes rather than importing either a sanitized or sexualized reading into the rendering itself.*

Connections: *Boaz's exclamation that Ruth's 'later chesed is greater than the first' (v10) frames the entire book's theology: Ruth's faithfulness deepens as the story progresses, moving from loyalty to Naomi (chapter 1) to active pursuit of redemption for the family. The *kanaf* imagery connects Ruth's request (3:9) to Boaz's prayer (2:12) and ultimately to the theology of divine refuge found in the Psalms (Psalm 36:7, 57:1, 91:4). The *go'el* institution, which Boaz formally acknowledges here, bridges private loyalty and public law — redemption in Ruth is simultaneously a legal transaction and an act of covenant love.*

¹Naomi, her mother-in-law, said to her, "My daughter, should I not seek security for you — a settled place where things will go well for you? ²Now then — is not Boaz our relative, the one whose young women you have been working with? Listen: tonight he is winnowing barley at the threshing floor. ³So bathe, put on perfumed oil, dress in your best clothes, and go down to the threshing floor. Do not make yourself known to the man until he has finished eating and drinking. ⁴When he lies

down, take note of the place where he is lying. Then go over, uncover the place of his feet, and lie down. He will tell you what to do." ⁵Ruth said to her, "Everything you say, I will do." ⁶She went down to the threshing floor and did everything her mother-in-law had instructed her. ⁷Boaz ate and drank, and his heart was content. He went to lie down at the edge of the grain pile. Then she came in secretly, uncovered the place of his feet, and lay down. ⁸In the middle of the night, the man jolted awake and twisted around — and there was a woman lying at the place of his feet. ⁹He said, "Who are you?" She answered, "I am Ruth, your servant. Spread the corner of your garment over your servant, for you are a kinsman-redeemer." ¹⁰He said, "May the LORD bless you, my daughter. Your later act of faithful love is greater than the first, because you did not go after the young men, whether poor or rich. ¹¹Now, my daughter, do not be afraid. Everything you ask, I will do for you, for everyone at the gate of my people knows that you are a woman of strength. ¹²Now it is true that I am a kinsman-redeemer, but there is also a kinsman-redeemer closer in kinship than I am. ¹³Stay the night. In the morning, if he will redeem you — good, let him redeem. But if he is not willing to redeem you, then I myself will redeem you, as the LORD lives. Lie down until morning." ¹⁴She lay at the place of his feet until morning, then got up before anyone could recognize another person. He said, "No one must know that a woman came to the threshing floor." ¹⁵Then he said, "Hold out the shawl you are wearing and grip it." She held it out, and he measured six measures of barley and set it on her. Then he went into the city. ¹⁶When she came to her mother-in-law, Naomi said, "How did it go, my daughter?" Ruth told her everything the man had done for her. ¹⁷She said, "He gave me these six measures of barley, because he said, 'You must not go back to your mother-in-law empty-handed.'" ¹⁸Naomi said, "Wait here, my daughter, until you learn how the matter settles, for the man will not rest until he has resolved this today."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Naomi uses the word *manoach* ('resting place, security'), a form closely related to *menuchah* from 1:9 where she wished each daughter-in-law 'rest in the home of a husband.' The root *nun-vav-chet* ('to rest, to settle') carries the sense of being safely placed — not idleness but stability. By returning to this theme, Naomi signals that what she wished for Ruth in chapter 1 she now intends to pursue actively.
1. The phrase *asher yitav lakh* ('where it will go well for you') echoes Deuteronomy's formula for life in the promised land (Deuteronomy 4:40, 5:16). Naomi is not merely playing matchmaker — she is seeking for Ruth the covenantal blessing of being well-settled.
2. The particle *hinneh* ('look, listen') — rendered here as 'Listen' — marks a shift from general observation to specific intelligence. Naomi has been watching and knows Boaz's schedule. The threshing floor (*goren*) was an open-air elevated platform where grain was tossed into the wind to separate wheat from chaff. During harvest, owners slept at the threshing floor to guard the grain — making Boaz both accessible and alone at night.
2. The term *moda'tanu* ('our relative, our acquaintance') uses a softer kinship word than *go'el*. Naomi identifies Boaz as family without yet naming the legal claim she intends to invoke. The possessive 'our' (first person plural) is significant — Naomi includes herself in the family connection, reminding Ruth that this is not a stranger but their own kin.
3. Naomi's instructions form a precise sequence of preparation: *rachats* ('bathe'), *sakht* ('anoint with oil'), and *samt simlotayikh* ('put on your garments'). The anointing with oil (*sakht*) was both cosmetic and ceremonial — it could signal the end of mourning (2 Samuel 12:20, 14:2). If Ruth has been in widow's garments, this preparation marks a transition: she is presenting herself not as a mourner but as a woman available for marriage.
3. The instruction *al tivvade'i la-ish* ('do not make yourself known to the man') uses the reflexive of *yada* ('to know'). The verb *yada* carries sexual connotations elsewhere (Genesis 4:1), but here the straightforward sense is simply 'do not reveal your identity' — remain unnoticed until the right moment. The double register of the verb, however, is part of the chapter's sustained ambiguity.
3. The Ketiv/Qere notation in the WLC for *simlotayikh* ('your garments') reflects a minor textual variant in the consonantal tradition, though both forms yield the same meaning.
4. This verse is the crux of the chapter's deliberate ambiguity. Three loaded terms appear together: *shakav* ('to lie down'), *galah* ('to uncover'), and *margelot* ('the place of the feet'). Each carries both an ordinary sense and a sexual connotation. The verb *shakav* means simply 'to lie down' but is also the standard euphemism for sexual intercourse (Genesis 19:32-35, 2 Samuel 11:4). The verb *galah* ('to uncover') is the verb of sexual exposure in Leviticus 18. And *margelot* ('the place of the feet/legs') may be a euphemism for the genital area, as 'feet' (*raglayim*) is used elsewhere (Judges 3:24, Isaiah 7:20). The narrator deploys all three without resolving the ambiguity.
4. The Ketiv reads *veshakhavti* ('and you shall lie down' — second person), while the Qere reads *veshakhavti* ('and I shall lie down' — first person). The Ketiv is the expected form for Naomi's instruction to Ruth. The Qere with the first-person form is difficult — some scholars suggest it reflects Naomi momentarily identifying with Ruth's action.
4. Naomi's closing instruction — *vehu yaggid lakh et asher ta'asin* ('he will tell you what to do') — places the initiative with Boaz after Ruth's approach. Naomi's plan gets Ruth to the threshing floor; what happens next is Boaz's decision.

5. Ruth's response — kol asher tomeri e'eseh ('everything you say I will do') — echoes Israel's covenant formula at Sinai: kol asher dibber YHWH na'aseh ('everything the LORD has spoken we will do,' Exodus 19:8). Whether the echo is deliberate or simply reflects conventional Hebrew agreement language, the effect is the same: Ruth commits to Naomi's plan with the totality of covenant obedience.
5. The Ketiv reads elai ('to me') while the Qere reads elayikh ('to you'). The Qere makes better contextual sense — 'everything you say to me' — while the Ketiv as written ('everything you say to you') appears to be a scribal anomaly.
6. The verb yarad ('to go down') is geographically accurate — threshing floors were typically on elevated ground outside the village, but Bethlehem sits on a ridge and the floor would have been below the town. The narrative restraint here is notable: the text simply says vatta'as kekhol asher tsivvattah chamotah ('she did according to all that her mother-in-law commanded her') without narrating the bathing, anointing, or dressing. The reader must supply what the narrator compresses.
7. The phrase vayyitav libbo ('his heart was good') indicates satisfaction and contentment after the harvest meal — the same phrase is used of Boaz's ancestor Judah's heart being 'good with wine' in other harvest contexts. It does not necessarily imply drunkenness, though some interpreters read it that way. We rendered it 'content' to capture the sense of post-meal satisfaction without importing intoxication.
7. Ruth comes balat ('in secret, stealthily, quietly'). The word appears only here and in Judges 4:21 (where Jael approaches Sisera secretly) and 1 Samuel 18:22 and 24:4. The parallel with Jael is striking — another woman approaching a sleeping man — though with radically different intent.
7. The narrator now executes Naomi's instructions in compressed form: vattegal margelotav vattishkav ('she uncovered the place of his feet and lay down'). The same ambiguous vocabulary from verse 4 reappears without further explanation. The narrator refuses to clarify what the reader most wants to know.
8. The opening vayyehi bachatsi ha-laylah ('and it was at the middle of the night') uses the narrative formula vayyehi to mark a dramatic turning point. Midnight is the hour of crisis throughout the Hebrew Bible — it is when the LORD strikes Egypt's firstborn (Exodus 12:29) and when Samson carries off Gaza's gates (Judges 16:3).
8. The verb yecharad ('he trembled, he was startled') indicates a visceral, physical reaction — not mere surprise but a shudder of alarm. The verb yillafet ('he turned, he twisted, he bent forward') is rare, appearing only here. Its exact meaning is debated: some derive it from lafat ('to twist, to grasp') suggesting he reached forward; others connect it to a root meaning 'to turn over.' We chose 'twisted around' to convey both the physical movement and the disorientation.
8. The particle hinneh ('and there') — rendered naturally as part of the sentence — marks Boaz's moment of discovery. The narrator briefly adopts Boaz's perspective: he sees what he sees — ishah shokhevet margelotav ('a woman lying at the place of his feet') — before he knows who she is.
9. Ruth identifies herself — anokhi Rut amatekha ('I am Ruth, your maidservant') — using the formal first-person pronoun anokhi rather than the common ani, and the term amah ('maidservant') rather than the lower-status shifchah. The choice of amah signals that Ruth sees herself as eligible for marriage, not merely as a servant — amah is the term used for women who may become wives (Exodus 21:7-11).
9. The verb ufarasta ('spread out') with kenafekha ('your wing/garment corner') directly echoes Boaz's blessing in 2:12: tachat kenafav ('under His wings'). Ruth takes Boaz's theological language and turns it into a concrete request. The effect is both bold and theologically precise: if God shelters under His wings, and Boaz is God's agent of redemption, then Boaz's garment-wing should cover Ruth.
9. Ruth grounds her request in law: ki go'el attah ('for you are a kinsman-redeemer'). The go'el is the kinsman obligated to restore what a family member has lost — property, freedom, or family line. Ruth names the legal basis for what she is asking, transforming a nocturnal encounter into a formal legal claim.
10. Boaz's first words are a blessing — berukhah att la-YHWH ('blessed are you by the LORD') — the same formula used for covenant blessings throughout the Hebrew Bible. His immediate response to Ruth's nighttime approach is not suspicion or exploitation but benediction.
10. The phrase hetavt chasdekha ha-acharon min ha-rishon ('you have made your later chesed greater than the first') is the theological pivot of the chapter. Boaz identifies two distinct acts of chesed: the rishon ('first') — Ruth's loyalty to Naomi in chapter 1 — and the acharon ('later') — her choice to seek a go'el rather than a young husband. The comparative min ('greater than') does not diminish the first act but elevates the second: choosing covenantal obligation over personal preference is the deeper loyalty.
10. The phrase levilti lekhet acharei ha-bachurim ('not going after the young men') implies that Ruth had other options. As a young woman of evident character (her reputation precedes her, 2:11), she could have attracted younger suitors. By coming to Boaz — older, established, but legally positioned as go'el — she chose family redemption over romantic possibility.
11. Boaz's promise — kol asher tomeri e'eseh lakh ('everything you say I will do for you') — mirrors Ruth's identical commitment to Naomi in verse 5. The symmetry is deliberate: Ruth pledged total obedience to Naomi's plan; Boaz now pledges total commitment to Ruth's request. The echo binds the three characters in a chain of loyalty.
11. The phrase eshet chayil ('woman of strength, woman of valor') is the same term used in Proverbs 31:10 for the ideal woman: 'an eshet chayil, who can find?' The word chayil means 'strength, capability, worth, valor' — it is used of warriors (gibbor chayil, 'mighty warrior') and of wealth (ish chayil, 'man of substance'). Applied to Ruth, it encompasses all of these: she is strong, capable, worthy, and courageous. We chose 'woman of strength' to preserve the term's primary force without narrowing it to domesticity.

11. The phrase *kol sha'ar ammi* ('all the gate of my people') refers to the city gate where legal and commercial business was conducted. That 'the whole gate' knows Ruth's reputation means her character is a matter of public record — not private opinion but communal recognition.
12. Boaz confirms Ruth's legal claim — *ki omnam ki go'el anokhi* ('for indeed, I am a kinsman-redeemer') — using the emphatic particle *omnam* ('truly, indeed'). He does not deny the obligation but immediately introduces a complication: *vegam yesh go'el qarov mimmenni* ('and also there is a kinsman-redeemer closer than I'). The closer *go'el* has prior legal right — the obligation falls on the nearest kinsman first. Boaz cannot act until this closer relative either accepts or declines the responsibility.
12. The Ketiv/Qere here reflects a textual difficulty: the Ketiv appears to have the conditional *im* ('if') before *go'el*, while the Qere smooths the reading. The sense in either case is Boaz's acknowledgment that a closer kinsman exists.
13. The verse is saturated with the root *ga'al* ('to redeem'): *yig'alekh* ('he will redeem you'), *yig'al* ('let him redeem'), *lego'alekh* ('to redeem you'), *uge'altikh* ('I will redeem you'). Four occurrences in a single verse hammer the legal term into the listener's consciousness. Redemption is not abstract theology here — it is a concrete legal act that one specific person will perform for one specific woman.
13. Boaz's oath — *chai YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') — is the most solemn form of oath in the Hebrew Bible, invoking God's own life as guarantee. This is not a casual promise. By swearing by the life of the LORD, Boaz binds himself irrevocably: if the closer kinsman declines, Boaz will act.
13. The instruction *lini ha-laylah* ('stay the night') followed by *shikhvi ad ha-boqer* ('lie down until morning') frames the rest of the night as a period of protected waiting. Boaz has committed to resolution at dawn. The same verb *shakav* ('lie down') that carried ambiguity earlier now carries the straightforward sense of 'rest until daylight.'
14. The phrase *beterem yakkir ish et re'ehu* ('before a man could recognize his neighbor') indicates the predawn darkness — the time between first stirring and actual visibility. Ruth leaves in the window when people are moving but cannot yet see clearly. The timing is protective: it shields both Ruth's reputation and Boaz's legal position.
14. Boaz's instruction — *al yivvada ki va'ah ha-ishah ha-goren* ('let it not be known that the woman came to the threshing floor') — uses the passive of *yada* ('to know, to be known'). His concern is for public perception: the legal transaction must be settled properly at the gate before any rumors circulate. The definite article on *ha-ishah* ('the woman') rather than Ruth's name may reflect Boaz speaking in general terms to anyone who might overhear — or it may simply be Hebrew narrative style.
15. The *mitpachat* ('shawl, cloak, wrap') is a large cloth garment that could serve as a carrying vessel when gathered. The word appears only here and in Isaiah 3:22 among items of women's clothing. Boaz's gift of *shesh se'orim* ('six barleys') is deliberately vague about the unit of measure — the text says 'six of barley' without specifying whether these are *seahs*, *ephahs*, or another measure. Six *seahs* would be roughly 60-90 pounds — an enormous load. Some interpreters suggest a smaller unit. The ambiguity may be intentional: the point is generosity, not arithmetic.
15. The final clause *vayyavo ha-ir* ('and he went into the city') has a Ketiv/Qere issue in some traditions — the subject may be 'he' (Boaz) or 'she' (Ruth). The Masoretic vocalization as *vayyavo* ('and he went,' masculine) gives the action to Boaz, who would be heading to the gate to begin legal proceedings. Some ancient versions read 'she went into the city,' giving Ruth the action of returning to Naomi. We follow the Masoretic reading.
16. Naomi's question — *mi att bitti* ('who are you, my daughter?') — is puzzling if taken literally, since she would recognize Ruth. The question likely means 'what is your status now?' or 'how do things stand?' — essentially, 'are you betrothed or not?' We rendered it as 'How did it go?' to capture this pragmatic sense rather than forcing the literal 'Who are you?' which would imply Naomi cannot see Ruth in the dark. Some interpreters do take it literally as a predawn darkness question; the ambiguity is acknowledged.
16. Ruth's report — *et kol asher asah lah ha-ish* ('everything the man had done for her') — uses the preposition *lah* ('for her') rather than *immah* ('with her'). The distinction matters: the man acted for her benefit. The narrator's summary is deliberately opaque about the details, leaving the reader dependent on what has already been narrated.
17. Boaz's instruction — *al tavo'i reqam el chamotekh* ('do not go to your mother-in-law empty') — uses the word *reqam* ('empty, empty-handed'), the same word Naomi used of herself in 1:21: *reqam heshivani YHWH* ('the LORD brought me back empty'). Boaz's gift directly addresses Naomi's emptiness. The barley is not merely provision but a reversal of the condition Naomi named as her defining grief.
17. The Ketiv reads *elai* ('to me') while the Qere reads *elayikh* ('to you'), a variant also seen in verse 5. The Qere ('he said to you') would make Boaz address Ruth directly; the Ketiv ('he said to me') has Ruth quoting Boaz's words to herself. Either reading yields the same practical meaning.
18. Naomi's instruction — *shevi bitti* ('sit, my daughter') — uses the imperative of *yashav* ('to sit, to dwell, to remain'). After a night of action, the instruction is to be still and wait. The phrase *eikh yippol davar* ('how the matter will fall') uses the verb *nafal* ('to fall') in its sense of 'to turn out, to be decided' — the same verb used for the fall of lots (Esther 3:7, Jonah 1:7). The outcome is now in process and will land where it lands.
18. Naomi's confidence — *ki lo yishqot ha-ish ki im killah ha-davar ha-yom* ('the man will not rest until he has finished the matter today') — reveals her reading of Boaz's character. The verb *shaqat* ('to rest, to be quiet, to be at ease') echoes the chapter's opening theme of *manoach* ('rest, security'). Ironically, Boaz will not have rest until he secures Ruth's rest. The chapter ends with Naomi trusting Boaz's urgency — the resolution will come in chapter 4.

4

Summary: *Boaz goes to the town gate to settle the matter of redeeming Elimelech's land and Ruth's future. A closer kinsman-redeemer has first right but declines when he learns the obligation includes marrying Ruth the Moabite. Boaz acquires the land and Ruth before witnesses. Ruth bears a son, Obed, whom the women of Bethlehem declare to be Naomi's kinsman-redeemer. The book closes with a genealogy tracing the line from Perez through Boaz and Obed to David.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire legal drama of verses 1-12 turns on a single Hebrew word: go'el, the kinsman-redeemer. The unnamed closer relative is willing to redeem the land but not to take on Ruth — the Moabite element is the deal-breaker. Boaz accepts both, and the text frames this as the greater act of faithfulness. The sandal ceremony in verses 7-8 preserves an ancient legal custom that the narrator must explain to his own audience, indicating the story's antiquity. Most striking is the ending: the women of Bethlehem declare the newborn child — not Boaz — to be Naomi's go'el, her redeemer. The infant restores what death took. Then the genealogy delivers its quiet earthquake: this child of a Moabite widow is the grandfather of King David.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered go'el as 'kinsman-redeemer' throughout rather than simplifying to 'redeemer' because the kinship obligation is inseparable from the legal function — a go'el must be a relative. The verb ga'al ('to redeem') and the noun go'el share the same root, and we preserved this connection in English where possible. The phrase peloni almoni in verse 1 (the unnamed kinsman) is a Hebrew idiom roughly equivalent to 'so-and-so' — we rendered it 'a certain man' with a translator note. The sandal custom in verse 7 required careful handling: the Hebrew teudah ('attestation, confirmation') indicates a legal validation ritual, not a casual exchange.*

Connections: *The gate scene connects to Deuteronomy 25:5-10, where levirate marriage and the sandal ritual are legislated. Boaz's declaration in verse 10 — 'to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance' — echoes that Deuteronomic mandate precisely. The women's blessing in verse 11 invokes Rachel and Leah, the mothers of all Israel, placing Ruth alongside them. The Perez genealogy in verses 18-22 reaches back to Genesis 38 — another story of a woman (Tamar) who used unconventional means to secure offspring within the family line. Ruth and Tamar are literary sisters: foreign or marginalized women whose bold action preserves the covenant line that leads to David.*

¹Now Boaz had gone up to the gate and was sitting there. And look — the kinsman-redeemer Boaz had spoken about came passing by. Boaz said, "Come over here and sit down, friend." So the man turned aside and sat down. ²He gathered ten men from the elders of the city and said, "Sit down here." They sat down. ³He said to the kinsman-redeemer, "The parcel of land that belonged to our relative Elimelech — Naomi, who has returned from the territory of Moab, is selling it. ⁴So I decided to bring it to your attention: Acquire it in the presence of those sitting here and in the presence of the elders of my people. If you will redeem it, redeem it. But if you will not redeem it, tell me so I will know, because there is no one besides you to redeem it, and I am next after you." He said, "I will redeem it." ⁵Then Boaz said, "On the day you acquire the field from Naomi's hand, you also acquire Ruth the Moabite, the wife of the deceased, in order to raise up the name of the dead man upon his inheritance." ⁶The kinsman-redeemer said, "I cannot redeem it for myself — I would ruin my own inheritance. Take my right of redemption yourself, because I cannot redeem it." ⁷Now this was the custom in former times in Israel regarding redemption and exchange: to confirm any matter, a man would remove his sandal and give it to the other party. This was the method of legal attestation in Israel. ⁸The kinsman-redeemer said to Boaz, "Acquire it for yourself." And he removed his sandal. ⁹Boaz said to the elders and all the people, "You are witnesses today that I have acquired everything that belonged to Elimelech and everything that belonged to Chilion and Mahlon from Naomi's hand. ¹⁰And I have also acquired Ruth the Moabite, the wife of Mahlon, as my wife, in order to raise up the name of the dead man upon his inheritance, so that the name of the dead will not be cut off from among his relatives or from the gate of his town. You are witnesses today." ¹¹All the people at the gate and the elders said, "We are witnesses. May the LORD make the woman entering your house like Rachel and like Leah, who together built the house of Israel. May you prosper in Ephrathah and gain renown in Bethlehem. ¹²May

your house become like the house of Perez, whom Tamar bore to Judah, through the offspring that the LORD will give you from this young woman." ¹³So Boaz took Ruth and she became his wife. He slept with her, and the LORD granted her conception, and she bore a son. ¹⁴The women said to Naomi, "Blessed be the LORD, who has not left you without a kinsman-redeemer today. May his name be proclaimed in Israel. ¹⁵He will be a restorer of your life and a sustainer in your old age, for your daughter-in-law who loves you has borne him — she who is better to you than seven sons." ¹⁶Naomi took the child and held him on her lap and became his guardian. ¹⁷The neighbor women gave him a name, saying, "A son has been born to Naomi!" They named him Obed. He was the father of Jesse, the father of David. ¹⁸These are the descendants of Perez: Perez fathered Hezron, ¹⁹Hezron fathered Ram, Ram fathered Amminadab, ²⁰Amminadab fathered Nahshon, Nahshon fathered Salmah, ²¹Salmon fathered Boaz, Boaz fathered Obed, ²²Obed fathered Jesse, and Jesse fathered David.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew vayyehi is implied in the narrative sequence — the scene opens with Boaz already positioned at the gate (ha-sha'ar), the public space where legal transactions and judicial decisions were conducted. This is Israel's courtroom.
1. The phrase peloni almoni is a Hebrew idiom for an unnamed person — roughly 'so-and-so' or 'Mr. What's-his-name.' The narrator's refusal to name this man is deliberate: the one who refuses the redemption obligation forfeits his name in the story. We rendered it as 'friend' in Boaz's speech because peloni almoni is the narrator's descriptor, while Boaz would have used the man's actual name. The idiom signals to the reader that this man's identity does not matter — his refusal to redeem will erase him from the record.
1. The verb sur ('to turn aside') indicates the kinsman was walking past — Boaz catches him in transit. The timing is presented as providential: the exact person Boaz needs appears at the exact moment Boaz is ready.
2. The ten elders (asarah anashim mi-ziqnei ha-ir) function as both witnesses and judicial authority. Ten became the standard quorum for legal proceedings — later Jewish tradition formalized this as the minyan. Boaz is not acting impulsively; he has assembled a court. The verb vayyiqqach ('he took, he gathered') suggests purposeful selection, not a random group of bystanders.
3. The phrase chelqat ha-sadeh ('the parcel of the field') indicates a specific plot of ancestral land. Under Israelite land law (Leviticus 25:23-28), land could not be permanently sold outside the family — it must be redeemed by a kinsman. The verb makrah ('she is selling' or 'she has sold') is ambiguous in form — it could be a perfect ('she sold') or a participial sense ('she is selling'). We read it as an ongoing offer: Naomi is making the land available for redemption.
3. Boaz calls Elimelech achinu ('our brother/relative'), establishing the kinship network that activates the go'el obligation. This is not biological brotherhood but clan membership — the shared family identity that triggers the legal duty.
4. The phrase egleh oznekha ('I will uncover your ear') is a Hebrew idiom meaning 'to inform, to bring to your attention' — literally 'to expose the ear.' The same idiom is used of God's revelation to Samuel (1 Samuel 9:15). Boaz is formally disclosing the situation in a legal setting.
4. The verb ga'al ('to redeem') appears four times in this verse, creating an emphatic legal refrain: im-tig'al ge'al... ve-im lo yig'al... ligeol ('if you will redeem, redeem... if not redeem... to redeem'). The repetition hammers the legal question: will the obligation be fulfilled? The closer kinsman answers anokhi eg'al ('I myself will redeem') — but he does not yet know the full terms.
4. Boaz's statement ve-anokhi achareykha ('and I am after you') establishes his legal position as second in line. This is not rivalry but proper legal procedure — the closer relative has priority.
5. Boaz now reveals the full scope of the obligation. The verb qanah ('to acquire, to buy') applies to both the field and to Ruth — the legal transaction is indivisible. The phrase me'et Rut ha-Mo'aviyyah eshet ha-met ('from Ruth the Moabite, wife of the dead man') keeps Ruth's ethnic identity front and center. She is not just a widow; she is a Moabite widow. This is the detail that will change the kinsman's calculation.
5. The purpose clause lehakim shem ha-met al nachalato ('to raise up the name of the dead upon his inheritance') invokes the levirate principle of Deuteronomy 25:5-6. The firstborn son of this union would legally be counted as Mahlon's heir, not the redeemer's. This means the kinsman would spend his own resources to produce an heir for another man's line — a costly obligation that the closer relative is unwilling to bear.
6. The verb shachat ('to ruin, to destroy, to corrupt') is strong language — the kinsman sees marrying Ruth not as inconvenience but as destruction of his inheritance. The ga'al root appears three more times in this verse: ligeol li... ge'ulati... ligeol ('to redeem for myself... my redemption right... to redeem'). The unnamed man hands off his ge'ullah (redemption right) to Boaz, and with it exits the story permanently.
6. The phrase ge'al lekha attah et ge'ulati ('redeem for yourself my redemption right') transfers the legal obligation. This is the pivot point of the entire book — the closer kinsman steps aside, and Boaz steps forward.
7. The narrator pauses to explain the sandal custom to his audience — the phrase vezot lefanim be-Yisra'el ('and this was formerly in Israel') indicates that the practice had already fallen out of use by the time the book was composed. This editorial aside is strong evidence that the story's setting is considerably older than its composition date.

7. The noun *teudah* ('attestation, testimony, confirmation') indicates a formal legal validation — the sandal functions as what we would call a notarized signature or a sealed contract. The verb *shalaf* ('to draw out, to pull off') is the same verb used for drawing a sword from its sheath (Judges 3:22), suggesting a decisive, formal gesture — not a casual shoe-removal.
7. The pairing of *ge'ullah* ('redemption') and *temurah* ('exchange') covers both types of transactions at stake: the redemption of Elimelech's land and the exchange of the kinsman's obligation to Boaz. Deuteronomy 25:9 describes a different sandal ceremony — there the rejected widow removes the man's sandal in disgrace. Here the transfer is voluntary and orderly, suggesting a distinct legal tradition.
8. The brevity is striking: *qeneh lakh* ('acquire for yourself') followed by *vayyishlof na'alo* ('and he pulled off his sandal'). Two short clauses — and with them, the entire legal transfer is complete. The closer kinsman disappears from the narrative. He is never named, never seen again. His refusal to redeem Ruth means he has no legacy in this story. The man who feared ruining his inheritance has in fact lost the only inheritance that would have mattered — a place in the line of David.
9. Boaz's declaration *edim attem ha-yom* ('you are witnesses today') transforms the gathered crowd into legal attestors. The threefold *ki qaniti* ('that I have acquired') — covering Elimelech, Chilion, and Mahlon — is comprehensive. Boaz takes on the entire family's legacy, not just a portion. The phrase *mi-yad No'omi* ('from Naomi's hand') establishes Naomi as the legal holder of the family property, confirming her standing despite her widowhood.
10. The phrase *velo yikkaret shem ha-met* ('and the name of the dead will not be cut off') uses the verb *karat* ('to cut, to cut off') — the same verb used for being 'cut off' from the covenant people as divine punishment. To have one's name cut off from 'the gate of his place' (*mi-sha'ar meqomo*) means to lose all legal and social existence in the community. Boaz's act prevents this covenantal erasure.
10. Boaz repeats *edim attem ha-yom* ('you are witnesses today') to close the declaration, creating an inclusio with verse 9. The entire speech is framed as witnessed legal testimony. The public nature is essential — redemption is not a private deal but a community event.
11. The blessing invokes Rachel and Leah — *asher banu shetei hem et beit Yisra'el* ('who, the two of them, built the house of Israel'). The verb *banah* ('to build') applied to a household through children is standard Hebrew idiom (compare Genesis 16:2, 30:3). But the comparison is stunning: Ruth the Moabite is placed alongside the matriarchs of all Israel. The community's blessing overwrites her foreign status — she is no longer 'Ruth the Moabite' in their eyes but a potential mother of Israel.
11. The phrase *aseh chayil be-Efratah* ('do valiantly in Ephrathah' or 'prosper in Ephrathah') uses *chayil* — the same word used to describe Ruth in 3:11 (*eshet chayil*, 'woman of strength/valor') and Boaz in 2:1 (*gibbor chayil*, 'man of standing/wealth'). The wordplay ties them together: they are matched in *chayil*.
11. The parallel *uqera shem be-Beit Lachem* ('and call out a name in Bethlehem') — to have a name proclaimed in Bethlehem — is precisely what Boaz sought for Mahlon's legacy. The blessing asks that Boaz's own name be established as well. History will grant this request beyond anything the speakers imagined.
12. The invocation of Perez (Peretz, 'breach, breaking forth') whom Tamar bore to Judah is not random — it is a precise intertextual connection. Tamar, like Ruth, was a woman outside the family who used unconventional means to secure offspring within the covenant line (Genesis 38). Tamar was Canaanite (or at minimum, non-Israelite); Ruth is Moabite. Both were widows of men in Judah's line. Both took bold, sexually risky action to compel a kinsman to fulfill his obligation. The people of Bethlehem, by invoking Tamar, are saying: we have seen this pattern before — God works through foreign women who refuse to let the family line die.
12. The phrase *min ha-zera asher yitten YHWH lekha* ('from the seed which the LORD will give you') places conception under divine sovereignty. The child is not merely biological but a gift of God — the same language used for Isaac (Genesis 21:1-2). The closing genealogy (vv. 18-22) will trace the line from Perez through Boaz to David, fulfilling this blessing beyond what the speakers could foresee.
13. The verb *vayyavo eleiha* ('and he came to her') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse. The narrator then inserts divine agency: *vayyitten YHWH lah herayon* ('and the LORD gave her conception'). This is theologically deliberate — Ruth had been married to Mahlon for ten years without producing a child (1:4). The text implies that her previous childlessness was not biological inability but divine timing. God's gift of conception at this moment, with this man, in this place, is presented as purposeful. The child who will come is not an accident of fertility but a sovereign act.
13. The entire journey from chapter 1 to this moment collapses into a single verse: marriage, consummation, conception, birth. After the slow, detailed legal proceedings of verses 1-12, the narrator accelerates radically. The legal process matters; the private details do not.
14. The phrase *asher lo hishbit lakh go'el ha-yom* ('who has not left you without a kinsman-redeemer today') uses the verb *shavat* (hiphil: 'to cause to cease, to leave without'). God is credited with ensuring the *go'el* line did not fail. The women's theology is precise: the LORD is the one behind the human actors.
14. The identity of the *go'el* in this verse is debated — some read it as Boaz, others as the child. The immediate context (the women speak to Naomi about the birth, and verse 15 calls the child the 'restorer of your life') strongly favors the child. This reinterpretation of *go'el* — from legal redeemer to infant restorer — is one of the book's most profound theological moves.
15. The phrase *meshiv nefesh* ('restorer of life/soul') uses *nefesh* in its fullest sense — not merely physical life but vitality, identity, being. The child restores Naomi's *nefesh* — the self that was emptied in chapter 1. The parallel *ulkhalkel et sevitekh* ('and to sustain your old age') adds the practical dimension: this child will provide for Naomi when she can no longer provide for herself.

15. The climactic declaration — *asher hi tovah lakh mi-shiv'ah vanim* ('she who is better to you than seven sons') — is the most extraordinary tribute to Ruth in the book. Seven is the number of completeness in Hebrew thought; seven sons is the ideal family (compare 1 Samuel 2:5, Job 1:2). To say a Moabite daughter-in-law surpasses seven sons overturns every ancient Near Eastern assumption about the value of male heirs versus female foreigners. The verb *ahavah* ('she loves you') is the women's summary of Ruth's entire journey: everything Ruth has done — the oath in chapter 1, the gleaning in chapter 2, the threshing floor in chapter 3 — is love.
16. The verb *vatteshitehu vecheiqah* ('she placed him on her lap/bosom') is a gesture of adoption or legal acceptance — the same action by which a patriarch acknowledged a grandchild (Genesis 50:23, 30:3). Naomi, who in 1:21 declared 'the LORD brought me back empty' (*reqam*), now holds a child in her arms. The word *omeneth* ('nurse, guardian, caretaker') comes from the root *aman* ('to be faithful, to support') — from which we get *amen*. Naomi is the one who will faithfully raise this child. The woman who called herself *Mara* ('Bitter') has been restored.
17. The neighbor women (*ha-shekhenot*) name the child — an unusual act, as naming was typically the prerogative of the parents. Their declaration *yullad ben le-No'omi* ('a son has been born to Naomi') attributes the child to the grandmother, not to Ruth or Boaz. This is not erasure of Ruth but legal language: through the levirate-like arrangement, the child is counted as Naomi's grandson and Elimelech's heir. Naomi's family line is restored.
17. The name *Oved* ('servant, one who serves, worshiper') from the root *avad* ('to serve, to work') anticipates a life of faithful service. But the narrator's editorial comment — *hu avi Yishai avi David* ('he is the father of Jesse, the father of David') — drops the genealogical thunderbolt almost casually. The entire story of a Moabite widow's loyalty and a Bethlehemite farmer's redemption has been building to this: the royal line of David passes through Ruth. A woman from the nation excluded in Deuteronomy 23:3 is David's great-grandmother.
18. The *toledot* ('generations, descendants') formula — *ve-elleh toledot Peretz* — echoes the structuring device of Genesis (Genesis 2:4, 5:1, 6:9, 10:1, etc.). By opening with this formula, the narrator places Ruth's story within the grand genealogical architecture of the Torah. The line begins with Perez, the son of Judah and Tamar (Genesis 38), connecting the blessing of verse 12 to this closing genealogy. The ten-generation list (Perez to David) may be selectively compressed — ten being a number of completeness — rather than exhaustive.
19. The verb *holid* ('fathered, sired') is the *hiphil* of *yalad* ('to bear, to give birth') — the causative form indicating the father's role in producing offspring. Ram and Amminadab appear in the tribal genealogies of 1 Chronicles 2:9-10, confirming the Judahite lineage. Amminadab ('my kinsman is generous/noble') will be the father of Nahshon, the tribal leader of Judah during the wilderness period (Numbers 1:7).
20. Nahshon (Nachshon) was the leader of the tribe of Judah during the wilderness wandering (Numbers 2:3, 7:12) and brother-in-law of Aaron (Exodus 6:23). His presence in this genealogy anchors the line in Israel's most formative period. The name Salmah (also spelled Salmon) appears in variant forms across the Hebrew manuscripts — the WLC reads Salmah here. He will be identified as Boaz's father in the next verse.
21. The spelling shifts from Salmah (v. 20) to Salmon (Salemon) here — a minor textual variant within the WLC itself. More significant is what the genealogy omits: Ruth's name does not appear. In a patrilineal genealogy, mothers are invisible — yet the entire book exists to tell her story. The reader knows what the genealogical form cannot say: between 'Salmon fathered Boaz' and 'Boaz fathered Obed' stands a Moabite woman whose chesed and courage made the line possible. The genealogy is incomplete without the narrative that precedes it.
22. The final two words — *et David* — are the destination the entire book has been traveling toward. The genealogy does not say 'King David' or 'David the king' — simply David. The name stands alone, unadorned, as though its weight is self-evident. And yet everything that preceded it — famine, death, a widow's oath on a Moabite road, gleaning behind harvesters, a midnight encounter on a threshing floor, a sandal removed at a city gate — all of it was the path to this name.
22. The theological implications are staggering when read alongside Deuteronomy 23:3: 'No Ammonite or Moabite shall enter the assembly of the LORD, even to the tenth generation.' Ruth is a Moabite. David is her great-grandson — the third generation. The genealogy does not resolve this tension; it simply presents it. Israel's greatest king, the man after God's own heart, the ancestor of the Messiah, carries Moabite blood. The book of Ruth does not argue against Deuteronomy 23 — it tells a story that explodes its categories from within. Covenant faithfulness, it turns out, is not limited by bloodline.
22. The ten-generation structure (Perez to David) parallels other biblical genealogies and may be theologically shaped rather than exhaustively complete. Ten generations from Perez — the son born of Tamar's desperate faithfulness — to David, the king born of Ruth's desperate faithfulness. The symmetry suggests divine design operating through human loyalty across centuries.

1 Samuel

1

Summary: *A barren woman named Hannah, tormented by her husband's other wife, pours out her anguish before God at the sanctuary in Shiloh. She vows that if God gives her a son, she will dedicate him to the LORD for life. God remembers her, she conceives and bears Samuel, and she fulfills her vow by bringing the child to Shiloh.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is built on a single Hebrew wordplay that most English readers never see. The verb *sha'al* ('to ask') threads through the entire narrative — Hannah asks God for a son, Eli asks what is wrong with her, and when the boy is born she names him Samuel because 'I asked him from the LORD.' The name *Shemu'el* is popularly linked to 'heard by God' (*shama* + *El*), but the text itself connects it to *sha'al* — the very root that gives us the name *Sha'ul* (Saul). Hannah's prayer for a son produces the prophet who will anoint Israel's first king, and the wordplay binds both figures to the same act of asking. The chapter also introduces a pattern that will dominate 1 Samuel: the reversal of human expectations. The favored wife has children but no narrative importance; the barren wife reshapes Israel's history. God's power works through emptiness, not fullness.*

Translation Friction: *The name etymology in verse 20 is the chapter's hardest translation problem. Hannah says *ki me-YHWH she'iltiv* ('because from the LORD I asked him') — but the verb *sha'al* ('to ask') fits the name *Sha'ul* (Saul), not *Shemu'el* (Samuel). Some scholars argue this passage originally told Saul's birth story and was later reassigned to Samuel. Others see a deliberate double meaning: the name evokes both *shama* ('heard') and *sha'al* ('asked'), fusing the two ideas. We render the name connection transparently and note the tension rather than resolving it. In verse 13, Hannah prays 'in her heart' with her lips moving but no voice — the Hebrew *al libbah* ('upon her heart') describes internal speech that is visible but inaudible. Eli's mistaking this for drunkenness reflects the fact that silent prayer was apparently unusual enough at Shiloh to be unrecognizable. We chose 'speaking within herself' to capture the visible-but-silent quality.*

Connections: *Hannah's barrenness places her in a line of matriarchs whose closed wombs become turning points: Sarah (Genesis 11:30), Rebekah (Genesis 25:21), Rachel (Genesis 29:31), and the wife of Manoah (Judges 13:2). In each case, God opens the womb at the moment that shapes covenant history. Hannah's vow that no razor will touch her son's head (verse 11) uses language identical to the Nazirite vow in Numbers 6:5, connecting Samuel to Samson — but where Samson's Nazirite status ended in ruin, Samuel's will produce faithful service. Hannah's prayer of thanksgiving in chapter 2 will become the structural model for Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:46-55), and the phrase 'the LORD remembered her' (verse 19) uses the same verb (*zakar*) applied to God's remembering Noah (Genesis 8:1), Rachel (Genesis 30:22), and the covenant itself (Exodus 2:24).*

¹There was a man from Ramathaim-zophim, in the hill country of Ephraim. His name was Elkanah son of Jeroham, son of Elihu, son of Tohu, son of Zuph — an Ephraimite. ²He had two wives; the name of one was Hannah and the name of the other was Peninnah. Peninnah had children, but Hannah had none. ³This man would go up from his town year by year to worship and sacrifice to the LORD of Armies at Shiloh. The two sons of Eli — Hophni and Phinehas — were serving there as priests of the LORD. ⁴On the day when Elkanah sacrificed, he would give portions to his wife Peninnah and to all her sons and daughters. ⁵But to Hannah he would give a double portion, because he loved Hannah — though the LORD had closed her womb. ⁶Her rival would provoke her bitterly to torment her, because the LORD had closed her womb. ⁷This happened year after year. Whenever she went up to the house of the LORD, Peninnah would provoke her until she wept and would not eat. ⁸Elkanah her husband said to her, "Hannah, why are you weeping? Why won't you eat? Why is your heart so troubled? Am I not better to you than ten sons?" ⁹Hannah rose after eating and drinking at Shiloh. Now Eli the priest was sitting on his chair beside the doorpost of the LORD's temple. ¹⁰She was deeply bitter in spirit, and she prayed to the LORD, weeping uncontrollably. ¹¹She made a vow and said, "LORD of Armies, if you will truly look on the suffering of your servant, and remember me, and not forget your servant, but give your servant a son — then I will give him to the LORD for all the days of his life, and no razor will touch his head." ¹²As she continued praying at length before the LORD, Eli was watching her mouth. ¹³Hannah was speaking within herself — only her lips were moving, but her voice could not be heard — so Eli assumed she was drunk. ¹⁴Eli said to her, "How long will you go on being drunk? Put your wine away from you!" ¹⁵Hannah answered, "No, my lord. I am a woman crushed in spirit. I have not drunk wine or strong drink — I have been pouring out my soul before the LORD. ¹⁶Do not take your servant for a worthless woman, for it is out of the depth of my anguish and frustration that I have been speaking all this time." ¹⁷Eli answered, "Go in peace. May the God of Israel grant your request — what you have asked from him." ¹⁸She said, "May your servant find favor in your eyes." Then the woman went on her way. She ate, and her face was no longer downcast. ¹⁹They rose early in the morning, worshiped before the LORD, and returned home to Ramah. Elkanah was intimate with Hannah his wife, and the LORD remembered her. ²⁰In the turning of the year, Hannah conceived and bore a son. She named him Samuel, saying, "Because I asked him from the LORD." ²¹The man Elkanah went up with his whole household to offer to the LORD the annual sacrifice and to fulfill his vow. ²²But Hannah did not go up, for she said to her husband, "Not until the boy is weaned. Then I will bring him to appear before the face of the LORD, and he will remain there permanently." ²³Elkanah her husband said to her, "Do what seems best to you. Stay until you have weaned him. May the LORD fulfill his word." So the woman stayed and nursed her son until she weaned him. ²⁴When she had weaned him, she brought him up with her, along with three bulls, one ephah of flour, and a skin of wine. She brought him to the house of the LORD at Shiloh, while the boy was still young. ²⁵They slaughtered the bull and brought the boy to Eli. ²⁶She said, "Please, my lord — as surely as you live, my lord — I am the woman who stood here beside you, praying to the LORD. ²⁷It was for this boy that I prayed, and the LORD has granted me what I asked of him. ²⁸So I, in turn, have dedicated him to the LORD. For all the days that he lives, he is given over to the LORD." And he worshiped the LORD there.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The place name Ramathaim-zophim means 'the double height of the watchers' — ramathaim is a dual form of ramah ('height') and tsofim ('watchers, lookouts'). The genealogy traces four generations, rooting Elkanah in the tribe of Ephraim. The term Efrati here means 'Ephraimite' (a tribal designation), not 'Ephrathite' as in Ruth 1:2, where it refers to a clan in Judah. The distinction matters: this family belongs to the northern hill country, not to Bethlehem.
1. The fourfold genealogy (ben Yerocham ben Elihu ben Tochu ben Tsuf) is unusually detailed for a narrative opening, signaling that this family's lineage matters. Chronicles will later identify this line as Levitical (1 Chronicles 6:19-23), which would explain why Samuel can serve in the sanctuary despite being an Ephraimite by residence.
2. The name Channah derives from chanan ('to be gracious, to show favor') — she is 'Grace' or 'Favored One,' though her situation at the story's opening is anything but gracious. Peninnah may derive from peninim ('corals, pearls') or from panah ('to turn'). The Hebrew states the contrast with stark simplicity: vayyehi li-Feninnah yeladim u-le-Channah ein yeladim ('and Peninnah had children and Hannah — no children'). The word ein ('there is not') is absolute negation.

2. The two-wife household echoes the pattern of Leah and Rachel (Genesis 29-30): one wife is fertile but less loved, the other is loved but barren. The narrative formula signals that the barren wife's story will be the one that matters.
3. The phrase *mi-yamim yamimah* ('from days to days') is an idiom for 'year by year' or 'annually,' referring to the pilgrimage festivals. The title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Armies') appears here for the first time in the Hebrew Bible — this is its inaugural occurrence. The title designates God as commander of heavenly and earthly forces. Its first appearance in a story about a barren woman's prayer, rather than in a battle narrative, is striking: the God of cosmic armies attends to domestic grief.
3. The mention of Hophni and Phinehas is ominous foreshadowing. The narrator names them as 'priests of the LORD' but will shortly reveal them as corrupt (2:12-17). Their presence at Shiloh sets the stage for the crisis of the priesthood that Samuel will eventually address.
4. The sacrificial meal was a communal feast following the offering — the family consumed their share of the peace offering (*shelamim*) together. The word *manot* ('portions') refers to the allocated shares of the sacrificial meat. Each family member received a designated portion. The detail that Peninnah's sons and daughters each received their own portion emphasizes the size of her family, making the contrast with Hannah more painful.
5. The phrase *manah achat appayim* is notoriously difficult. It could mean 'one portion of the face/presence' (a choice portion), 'one portion double' (a double share), or even 'one portion — though with a sad face.' Most interpreters read it as a special or double portion expressing Elkanah's favor. We chose 'double portion' as the most natural reading — Elkanah compensates with generosity for what he cannot give her.
5. The clause *va-YHWH sagar rachmah* ('and the LORD had closed her womb') uses the divine name as the subject of the closing. This is not presented as punishment but as divine sovereignty — the narrator makes God the direct agent of Hannah's barrenness without explaining why. The word *rechem* ('womb') shares its root with *rachamim* ('compassion, mercy'), creating an irony: the organ associated with divine compassion has been shut by God.
6. Peninnah is called *tsaratah* ('her rival wife') — the term *tsarah* specifically denotes a co-wife in a polygamous household and literally means 'her distress' or 'her adversary.' The very word for 'co-wife' in Hebrew contains the word for suffering. The verb *ki'asattah* ('she provoked her') paired with the intensifier *gam ka'as* ('also with provocation') and the purpose clause *ba'avur har'imah* ('in order to make her thunder/agitate') reveals Peninnah's cruelty as deliberate and sustained, not casual friction.
6. The narrator repeats *ki sagar YHWH be'ad rachmah* ('because the LORD had closed her womb') — the same theological claim from verse 5. The repetition frames Hannah's suffering between two causes: divine agency (God closed) and human cruelty (Peninnah provoked). The text refuses to choose between them.
7. The phrase *shanah be-shanah* ('year by year') emphasizes that this was not a single incident but an annual humiliation timed to the pilgrimage festival — the very occasion meant for worship and communal joy becomes Hannah's recurring season of grief. The verb *tivkeh* ('she wept') and the clause *lo tokhal* ('she would not eat') describe Hannah's response in terms of mourning: weeping and refusing food are the classic signs of deep grief in Hebrew narrative (2 Samuel 12:16-17). Hannah mourns at the feast.
8. Elkanah's three questions (why do you weep, why don't you eat, why is your heart bad) show genuine concern, but his final rhetorical question — *halo anokhi tov lakh me-asarah vanim* ('am I not better to you than ten sons?') — reveals that he does not fully understand her grief. He measures his love against the lack she feels, assuming that spousal devotion can substitute for the child she desperately wants. The number 'ten' (*asarah*) represents completeness and abundance. Elkanah is offering everything he has, but it is not the thing she needs.
8. The phrase *yera levavekh* ('your heart is bad/evil') uses the verb *ra'a* ('to be bad, evil, displeased') applied to the heart (*levav*). This is not moral judgment but emotional diagnosis — her inner self is in distress. The same phrase describes deep emotional pain elsewhere (Nehemiah 2:10, Jonah 4:1).
9. The phrase *acharei akhlah be-Shiloh ve-acharei shatoh* ('after eating in Shiloh and after drinking') is ambiguous — the suffixes could refer to Hannah eating and drinking, or to the family eating and drinking. If Hannah, then she has recovered enough to eat before approaching God; if the family, then she goes to pray while others feast. Given verse 7's report that she would not eat, some interpreters read this as the broader family's meal.
9. Eli sits *al ha-kisse al mezuzah hekhal YHWH* ('on the seat beside the doorpost of the temple of the LORD'). The word *hekhal* ('temple, palace') applied to the Shiloh sanctuary is significant — this is the central worship site before Jerusalem. The *mezuzah* ('doorpost') places Eli at the threshold, the liminal space between the sacred interior and the public courtyard. He occupies the position of gatekeeper.
10. The phrase *marat nefesh* ('bitter of soul') uses the same root (*marar*) that Naomi invokes in Ruth 1:20 when she renames herself Mara. The *nefesh* is not merely 'soul' in the Greek philosophical sense but the entire living self — appetite, desire, identity. Hannah's bitterness has consumed her whole being.
10. The construction *uvakho tivkeh* ('weeping, she wept') is the infinitive absolute paired with the finite verb — Hebrew's strongest intensifier. It conveys not quiet tears but convulsive, uncontrollable weeping. The same construction appears in Genesis 2:17 (*mot tamut*, 'dying you will die') and here carries the same force of totality.
11. Hannah calls herself *amatekha* ('your female servant') three times in a single sentence — the repetition is emphatic and deliberate. The word *amah* denotes a female servant who has legal standing in the household, not a hired laborer. By calling herself God's *amah*, Hannah claims a position that entitles her to God's attention and care.

11. The phrase *im ra'oh tir'eh* ('if you will indeed look') uses the infinitive absolute construction — the same intensifying form as Hannah's weeping in verse 10. She asks God to look with the same totality with which she wept. The verb *ra'ah* ('to see') when applied to God carries the sense of attentive, compassionate recognition — not passive observation but active engagement with suffering.
11. The clause *morah lo ya'aleh al rosho* ('a razor will not go up upon his head') is nearly identical to the Nazirite language of Numbers 6:5 and to the angel's instructions regarding Samson (Judges 13:5). Hannah is dedicating her son as a lifelong Nazirite — consecrated to God from birth to death, not for a limited period. This is the most radical form of the vow.
12. The phrase *hirbetah lehitpallel* ('she multiplied in praying') indicates prolonged, extended prayer — not a brief petition but sustained, persistent communion. The verb *shomer* ('watching, guarding, observing') applied to Eli watching her mouth (*piha*) creates a surveillance image: the priest is scrutinizing her lips. The irony will emerge in the next verse — Eli watches intently but completely misreads what he sees.
13. The phrase *medabberet al libbah* ('speaking upon her heart') describes a mode of prayer that is internal but physically visible — her lips move (*sefateiha na'ot*) but her voice does not carry (*qolah lo yishame'a*). This is the Hebrew Bible's most detailed description of silent prayer, and rabbinic tradition (Talmud Berakhot 31a) derives the laws of the Amidah (standing prayer) from Hannah's posture here: prayer should be spoken with the lips but not shouted.
13. Eli's judgment — *vayyachsheveha le-shikorah* ('he considered her a drunkard') — is the priest's first act in the narrative, and it is a failure of discernment. The man whose job is to mediate between God and Israel cannot distinguish between drunkenness and devotion. This small detail previews the larger failure of the Eli priesthood that will drive much of 1 Samuel's plot.
14. Eli's rebuke — *ad matai tishtakkarin* ('how long will you be drunk?') — uses the hitpael of *shakar* ('to be drunk'), implying ongoing or habitual drunkenness. He does not ask if she is drunk; he assumes it and demands she stop. The imperative *hasiri et yeinekh me-alayikh* ('remove your wine from upon you') treats her as if wine were a garment she is wearing. The priest's harsh judgment of a grieving woman at prayer is the narrative's first indication that the Shiloh priesthood has lost its spiritual sensitivity.
15. Hannah's self-description — *ishah qeshat ruach* ('a woman hard/harsh of spirit') — uses *qasheh* ('hard, difficult, harsh') to describe her inner state. This is not gentle sadness but a spirit that has been compressed, hardened, and crushed under weight. The phrase *va-eshpokh et nafshi* ('I poured out my soul') uses the verb *shafakh*, which elsewhere describes pouring out blood (Genesis 9:6), pouring out water as a libation (2 Samuel 23:16), and pouring out divine wrath (Hosea 5:10). Hannah's prayer is a liquid metaphor — she has emptied her entire self before God.
15. The distinction between *yayin* ('wine') and *shekhar* ('strong drink') covers all intoxicants: *yayin* is fermented grape juice, *shekhar* is any other intoxicating beverage (possibly from dates, barley, or pomegranates). Hannah's denial is comprehensive — she has consumed nothing that could cause what Eli observed.
16. The phrase *bat beliyya'al* ('daughter of Belial/worthlessness') is significant because the same term — *benei beliyya'al* ('sons of worthlessness') — will be applied to Eli's own sons in 2:12. Hannah begs not to be classed as what Eli's sons actually are. The word *beliyya'al* may derive from *beli* ('without') + *ya'al* ('worth, profit') — 'without worth' — or may be an older term for the underworld or chaos. It denotes someone beyond moral recovery.
16. Hannah's explanation — *me-rov sichi ve-kha'si* ('from the abundance of my complaint and my provocation/grief') — uses *siach* ('complaint, meditation, talk') and *ka'as* ('vexation, grief, provocation'). The word *ka'as* is the same root used for Peninnah's provocation in verses 6-7: Hannah's grief-prayer is fueled by the very torment her rival inflicts.
17. Eli's response — *lekhi le-shalom* ('go to peace') — is both a blessing and a dismissal. The preposition *le* ('to, toward') rather than *be* ('in') suggests movement toward peace rather than a static condition: 'go toward wholeness.' The word *she'latekh* ('your request') derives from *sha'al* ('to ask'), and Eli unknowingly activates the chapter's central wordplay: *asher sha'alt me-immo* ('what you asked from him'). The verb *sha'al* will echo through the naming of Samuel and connect forward to the naming of Saul. Eli, who could not discern her prayer, nevertheless speaks a prophetic blessing over it.
18. Hannah now calls herself *shifchatekha* ('your maidservant') — a term of even deeper humility than *amah* used in verse 11. A *shifchah* is the lowest rank of female servant. The transformation is immediate: *vattelekh ha-ishah le-darkkah vattokhal* ('the woman went her way and ate'). After refusing food in verse 7, she now eats. The phrase *u-faneiha lo hayu lah od* ('and her face was not to her anymore') is literally 'her faces were no longer hers' — meaning her expression of grief had departed. Something shifted in the act of praying and receiving Eli's blessing. The text does not say she received an answer — only that she prayed, was blessed, and her countenance changed.
19. The verb *vayyeda* ('he knew') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intimacy — the same verb used in Genesis 4:1 ('Adam knew Eve'). The sequence is deliberate: worship, return, intimacy, divine remembering. The sacred and the domestic are woven together without embarrassment.
19. The clause *vayyizkerehah YHWH* ('and the LORD remembered her') is the theological climax of the chapter's first movement. The verb *zakar* ('to remember') when God is the subject does not imply prior forgetfulness — it signals that God is now acting on what He has always known. The same divine remembering opens wombs (Rachel, Genesis 30:22), ends floods (Noah, Genesis 8:1), and initiates deliverance (Israel in Egypt, Exodus 2:24).
20. The phrase *li-tequfot ha-yamim* ('at the turning of the days') refers to the completion of a pregnancy cycle — approximately nine months from conception. The word *tequfah* ('turning, circuit, revolution') emphasizes the cyclical nature of time and the fulfillment of a natural period.
20. The name etymology is the chapter's most discussed translation problem. Hannah says *ki me-YHWH she'iltiv* ('because from the LORD I asked him') — but the verb *sha'al* ('to ask') produces the name *Shaul*, not *Shemu'el*. The name *Shemu'el* most naturally means 'his name is God' (*shemu* + *El*) or 'heard by God' (*shama* + *El*). Some scholars see this as evidence that the birth narrative originally belonged to Saul and was later transferred

to Samuel. Others argue that Hebrew name etymologies are often folk explanations based on sound association rather than strict derivation — Hannah hears sha'al in Shemu'el. We render the text as given and note the tension.

21. The phrase zevach ha-yamim ('the sacrifice of the days') refers to the annual pilgrimage sacrifice — the same journey described in verse 3. The addition of ve-et nidro ('and his vow') reveals that Elkanah had also made a vow, though the text never records it. This is one of several narrative gaps in the chapter: we learn of Elkanah's vow only at its fulfillment. Some commentators suggest his vow was connected to Hannah's — perhaps confirming or endorsing her dedication of their son.
22. The verb yiggamel ('is weaned') indicates that Hannah keeps the child until weaning, which in the ancient Near East typically occurred around age three (cf. 2 Maccabees 7:27). These are the only years Hannah will have with her son. The phrase ve-yashav sham ad olam ('and he will dwell there forever') transforms a mother's personal sacrifice into a permanent consecration. The word olam ('forever, perpetuity') makes the dedication irrevocable — this is not a loan but a permanent transfer.
22. The phrase ve-nir'ah et penei YHWH ('and he will appear before the face of the LORD') uses the niphal of ra'ah — literally 'he will be seen before the LORD's face.' Appearing before God's face is pilgrimage language, but for Samuel it will become a permanent state: he will live in God's presence at Shiloh.
23. Elkanah's response — asi ha-tov be-einayikh ('do what is good in your eyes') — grants Hannah full authority over the timing. His blessing akh yaqem YHWH et devaru ('only may the LORD establish his word') raises a textual question: whose word? The Masoretic text reads devaru ('his word'), suggesting God's word — perhaps Eli's prophetic blessing in verse 17. The Septuagint and a Qumran manuscript (4QSam-a) read 'that which comes from your mouth,' suggesting Hannah's vow. We follow the MT but note the variant.
23. The verb vatteineq ('she nursed') followed by ad gomlah oto ('until she weaned him') compresses months or years of intimacy into a single clause. Every day of nursing is a day closer to giving the boy away. The narrative's restraint is quietly devastating — it does not describe Hannah's emotions during this period, leaving the reader to feel what the text will not say.
24. The offerings are substantial: three bulls (parim sheloshah), one ephah of flour (approximately 22 liters or half a bushel), and a skin of wine (nevel yayin). The Septuagint and 4QSam-a read 'a three-year-old bull' (par meshu^llash) rather than 'three bulls' — which would match the boy's approximate age and provide a single animal for the dedication. The MT's 'three bulls' is the more difficult reading and thus often preferred by text critics.
24. The final phrase ve-ha-na'ar na'ar ('and the boy was a boy') seems redundant but serves a narrative purpose — it emphasizes just how young Samuel was. Some render this as 'the boy was still a child' or 'the boy was very young.' The repetition underscores the cost of Hannah's vow: she is handing over a toddler to serve in the sanctuary.
25. The singular ha-par ('the bull') here supports the Septuagint reading of 'a three-year-old bull' in verse 24, since only one animal is slaughtered. If the MT's 'three bulls' is correct, two may have been offered as additional sacrifices while one was the primary offering. The juxtaposition is stark: vayyishchatu et ha-par vayyavi'u et ha-na'ar ('they slaughtered the bull and brought the boy') — the sacrifice and the dedication are described in the same breath, with the same narrative pace. Hannah offers both an animal and a child, though only the animal dies.
26. Hannah's oath formula — chei nafshekha adoni ('as your soul lives, my lord') — is a solemn assertion of truth, invoking Eli's own life as guarantee. She identifies herself as ha-ishah ha-nitsevet immekha ba-zeh ('the woman who was standing with you in this place'). The participle nitsevet ('standing') recalls her posture of prayer — she stood to pray, a detail the rabbinic tradition notes as establishing the norm for the Amidah. The word ba-zeh ('in this [place]') anchors the identification to this specific location in the sanctuary.
27. The sha'al wordplay reaches its climax: vayyitten YHWH li et she'elati asher sha'alti me-immo ('the LORD gave me my request which I asked from him'). The noun she'elah ('request, petition') and the verb sha'al ('to ask') appear together, driving home the point: this child is the physical answer to an act of asking. The boy standing before Eli is living proof that God responds to desperate prayer. Hannah's statement also functions as a legal transfer — by identifying the boy as the answer to her vow, she establishes the basis for his dedication.
28. The verb hish'iltihu is the hiphil (causative) of sha'al — literally 'I have caused him to be asked' or 'I have lent/dedicated him.' The play is untranslatable: sha'al means both 'to ask for' and 'to lend,' so Hannah has 'asked' her son from God and now 'lends' him back using the same verb. The word sha'ul ('asked, lent, dedicated') in the clause hu sha'ul la-YHWH is identical to the name Sha'ul (Saul). This final verse welds Samuel's identity to Saul's name through a shared verbal root.
28. The final clause vayyishtachu sham la-YHWH ('and he worshiped the LORD there') is ambiguous in subject — the Hebrew could refer to Elkanah, to Samuel, or even to Eli. The Septuagint reads the plural ('they worshiped'). If Samuel is the subject, the boy's first recorded act in the sanctuary is worship — fitting for one who will spend his life in God's service.

2

Summary: *Hannah sings a victory song after dedicating Samuel to the LORD at Shiloh — a poem that moves from personal vindication to cosmic theology, culminating in the first mention of a coming 'anointed one' (mashiach) in the books of Samuel. The narrative then contrasts Samuel's faithful ministry as a child with the predatory corruption of Eli's sons Hophni and Phinehas, who steal from the sacrifices and sleep with women at the tabernacle entrance. A man of God delivers a devastating oracle against Eli's house: the priesthood will be stripped from his family and given to a faithful priest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Hannah's song in verses 1-10 is one of the great theological poems in the Hebrew Bible and the direct literary ancestor of Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:46-55). What makes it remarkable is its scope: a woman who was barren and mocked by a rival does not simply thank God for a son — she composes a poem about the total reversal of human power structures. The hungry are fed, the barren bear seven, the mighty are shattered, the poor are raised from the dust to sit with princes. Most striking is verse 10: Hannah, who asked for a single child, ends her prayer with a vision of God's anointed king — a figure who does not yet exist in Israel. She sees past her own story to the monarchy her son will inaugurate.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of Hannah's song is dense, archaic poetry with several textual difficulties. In verse 1, qeren ('horn') is a metaphor for strength that has no single English equivalent — we rendered it literally and noted the symbolism. Verse 3 uses the rare form nit'qu ('are weighed / measured') for God's assessment of human actions, which some traditions render 'are weighed' and others 'are measured' — we chose 'measured' and noted the ambiguity. In verse 5, the barren woman bearing seven is a literary number for completeness, not a biographical fact about Hannah (she bore six total per verse 21). The description of Eli's sons as benei beliyya'al ('sons of worthlessness') in verse 12 uses a term whose etymology is debated — we rendered it 'worthless men' and discussed the range in key terms. The man of God's prophecy in verses 27-36 contains some of the most difficult Hebrew in the chapter, with several phrases whose referents are disputed.*

Connections: *Hannah's song establishes the theological framework for the entire Samuel-Kings narrative: God reverses human power structures, pulling down the mighty and lifting the lowly. The 'anointed one' (mashiach) of verse 10 is the first use of this term for a royal figure in the Former Prophets — it will become the defining title for Saul, David, and their successors. The contrast between Samuel and Eli's sons anticipates the contrast between David and Saul. The man of God's prophecy against Eli's house (vv. 27-36) will be fulfilled in stages: the deaths of Hophni and Phinehas (1 Sam 4:11), the removal of Eli's line from the high priesthood under Solomon (1 Kings 2:27), and the rise of Zadok as the faithful priest. The 'linen ephod' Samuel wears as a boy (v. 18) is priestly garb, signaling that this child given by prayer will serve as priest, prophet, and kingmaker.*

¹Hannah prayed and said:
 "My heart exults in the LORD;
 my horn is raised high by the LORD.
 My mouth opens wide against my enemies,
 for I rejoice in Your salvation.

²There is no one holy like the LORD —
 there is no one besides You —
 and there is no rock like our God.

³Do not keep speaking so proudly;
 let no arrogance come from your mouth,
 for the LORD is a God of knowledge,
 and by Him actions are measured.

⁴The bows of the mighty are shattered,
but those who stumble are armed with strength.

⁵Those who were full hire themselves out for bread,
but the hungry hunger no more.
The barren woman bears seven,
while the mother of many withers away.

⁶The LORD kills and gives life;
He brings down to Sheol and raises up.

⁷The LORD makes poor and makes rich;
He brings low and lifts high.

⁸He raises the poor from the dust;
He lifts the needy from the ash heap
to seat them with princes
and grant them a throne of honor.
For the pillars of the earth belong to the LORD,
and He has set the world upon them.

⁹He guards the steps of His faithful ones,
but the wicked will be silenced in darkness —
for no one prevails by their own strength.

¹⁰The LORD — His adversaries will be shattered!
Against them He thunders from heaven.
The LORD judges the ends of the earth.
He will give strength to His king
and raise high the horn of His anointed."

¹¹Elkanah went home to Ramah, but the boy remained, serving the LORD in the presence of Eli the priest. ¹²Now the sons of Eli were worthless men. They did not know the LORD. ¹³Now this was the practice of the priests with the people: whenever anyone offered a sacrifice, the priest's servant would come while the meat was boiling, with a three-pronged fork in his hand, ¹⁴and would thrust it into the basin, or kettle, or caldron, or pot. Whatever the fork brought up, the priest would take for himself. This is what they did to all the Israelites who came there to Shiloh. ¹⁵Even before they burned the fat, the priest's servant would come and say to the man who was sacrificing, "Give meat for the priest to roast. He will not accept boiled meat from you — only raw." ¹⁶If the man said to him, "Let them burn the fat first, and then take whatever you want," the servant would say, "No — give it now. If you do not, I will take it by force." ¹⁷The sin of the young men was very great in the sight of the LORD, for they treated the LORD's offering with contempt. ¹⁸But Samuel was serving in the presence of the LORD — a boy wearing a linen ephod. ¹⁹His mother would make him a small robe and bring it up to him each year when she came with her husband to offer the yearly sacrifice. ²⁰Eli would bless Elkanah and his wife, saying, "May the LORD give you children by this woman in place of the one she dedicated to the LORD." Then they would go home. ²¹The LORD attended to Hannah, and she conceived and bore three sons and two daughters. Meanwhile, the boy Samuel grew up in the presence of the LORD. ²²Now Eli was very old. He heard about everything his sons were doing to all Israel, and how they were sleeping with the women who served at the entrance of the tent of meeting. ²³He said to them, "Why do you do such things? I hear about your wicked deeds from all these people. ²⁴No, my sons — the report I hear is not good. You are causing the LORD's people to sin. ²⁵If one person sins against another, God can mediate. But if a person sins against the LORD, who will intercede for him?"

But they would not listen to their father's voice, because the LORD intended to put them to death. ²⁶The boy Samuel continued to grow in stature and in favor, both with the LORD and with people. ²⁷A man of God came to Eli and said to him, "This is what the LORD says: Did I not clearly reveal Myself to your ancestor's house when they were in Egypt, in the house of Pharaoh? ²⁸I chose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be My priest — to go up to My altar, to burn incense, to wear the ephod before Me. And I gave to your ancestor's house all the fire offerings of the sons of Israel. ²⁹Why do you trample on My sacrifice and My offering that I commanded for My dwelling? You honor your sons above Me, fattening yourselves on the best of every offering from Israel, My people." ³⁰Therefore — this is the declaration of the LORD, the God of Israel — I did indeed say that your house and your ancestor's house would walk before Me forever. But now — this is the LORD's declaration — far be it from Me! For those who honor Me I will honor, and those who despise Me will be disgraced. ³¹The days are coming when I will cut off your strength and the strength of your ancestor's house, so that no one in your family will reach old age. ³²You will see distress in My dwelling, even though God will do good for Israel. And there will never be an old man in your house. ³³Any man of yours I do not cut off from My altar will be spared only to consume your eyes with tears and to grieve your soul. All the offspring of your house will die as young men. ³⁴And this will be the sign for you — what will happen to your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas: both of them will die on the same day. ³⁵I will raise up for Myself a faithful priest who will do what is in My heart and in My mind. I will build for him an enduring house, and he will walk before My anointed one always. ³⁶Everyone left in your house will come and bow down to him for a small coin and a loaf of bread, saying, 'Please assign me to one of the priestly duties so I can eat a piece of bread.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vattipallel* ('she prayed') introduces what follows as prayer, though its form is a victory song. Hebrew prayer encompasses praise, lament, and proclamation — not just petition.
1. The three-line opening structure uses synonymous parallelism: heart exults / horn is raised / mouth opens wide. Each line intensifies the same theme of vindication. The shift from 'my heart' to 'my horn' to 'my mouth' moves from internal emotion to public display.
1. 'My horn is raised high' (*ramah qarni*) — the horn (*qeren*) is the primary symbol of strength throughout the poem. It appears here in verse 1 and returns in verse 10 for the anointed king, framing the entire song.
2. The three-line structure moves from God's holiness (*qadosh*) to His uniqueness ('none besides You') to His reliability (*tsur*, 'rock'). The middle line — *ki ein biltékha* ('for there is none besides You') — is the strongest claim: not merely that God is the greatest, but that He stands alone. The rock metaphor (*tsur*) connotes immovable stability and protection, a fortress image used throughout the Psalms and the Song of Moses (Deut 32:4).
3. The doubled *gevohah gevohah* ('proudly proudly' or 'high high') is emphatic — Hannah is addressing the kind of boastful speech she endured from Peninnah. The word *'ataq* ('arrogance, insolence') describes speech that is brazen and presumptuous.
3. The phrase *El de'ot* ('God of knowledge') may mean God who possesses all knowledge or God to whom all knowledge belongs — the plural *de'ot* could be intensive. The verb *nitkenu* ('are measured / are weighed') is debated: from *takan*, it can mean 'to weigh, to measure, to assess.' We chose 'measured' because the image is of God evaluating human deeds against a standard. The proud speaker will be assessed by a God who knows everything.
4. The reversal pattern that defines the song begins here. *Chattim* ('shattered') describes the breaking of weapons, not merely bending them — the mighty are completely disarmed. Meanwhile, the *nikashalim* ('those who stumble') — the weak, the faltering — are 'girded with strength' (*azeru chayil*). The verb *azar* ('to gird') is military: it means to strap on armor or weapons. The weak become warriors by God's doing.
5. The reversals accelerate: the well-fed must now work for food, while the hungry are satisfied. The climactic line — 'the barren woman bears seven' — uses the number of completeness, not biography. Hannah bore six children total (v. 21), but her song speaks in the language of divine fullness. Seven means God has given more than enough.
5. The verb *umlelah* ('withers, languishes') describes a slow fading — the mother of many does not lose her children violently but simply declines. The contrast is between divine vitality (the barren made fruitful) and human self-sufficiency that cannot sustain itself.
6. The poem moves from social reversals to cosmic sovereignty. God's power extends over life and death itself. *Sheol* is the underworld, the realm of the dead — not a place of punishment but of shadowy non-existence. The claim that God 'raises up' from *Sheol* is striking: in early Israelite thought, *Sheol* was generally considered final. Hannah's song pushes beyond that expectation, asserting that even death is not beyond God's reach.
7. The four verbs come in two pairs, each a reversal: *morish/ma'ashir* (impoverishes/enriches), *mashpil/meromem* (brings low/exalts). The structure is deliberately symmetrical, reflecting the balanced sovereignty of God over all human conditions. Neither wealth nor poverty is permanent or self-caused — both are within God's governance.

8. The movement from 'dust' (afar) to 'ash heap' (ashpot) to 'princes' (nedivim) to 'throne of honor' (kisse kavod) is the most dramatic vertical reversal in the song. The ashpot is literally the refuse dump outside a village — where the destitute sit to beg. From there, God lifts them to royal thrones.
8. The phrase metzuqei eretz ('pillars of the earth') reflects ancient cosmology where the earth rests on foundations or pillars. The theological point transcends the cosmology: God's right to reverse human power structures rests on His role as Creator. He set the world on its foundations; human hierarchies are His to rearrange.
8. This verse is echoed directly in Psalm 113:7-8 and in Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:52): 'He has brought down the powerful from their thrones and lifted up the lowly.'
9. The chasidav ('His faithful ones,' from chesed) are those bound to God in covenant loyalty. The verb yishmar ('He guards') echoes the creation mandate and the priestly blessing (Num 6:24). By contrast, the wicked are yiddamu ('silenced') — the verb damam means to be still, to cease, to be cut off. Darkness and silence together suggest Sheol.
9. The final line — ki lo vekoach yigbar ish ('for not by strength does a man prevail') — is the thesis statement of the entire Samuel narrative. Saul, the tall warrior-king, will fail; David, the youngest shepherd boy, will triumph. Human power does not determine outcomes. God does.
10. This verse is the theological climax of the song. The word meshicho ('His anointed one') is the first occurrence of mashiach in the books of Samuel in a royal context. Hannah, praying before any king exists in Israel, uses the term that will define Saul and David and ultimately the messianic expectation of later Judaism and Christianity.
10. The verb yarim qeren meshicho ('He will raise the horn of His anointed') closes the inclusio begun in verse 1 (ramah qarni, 'my horn is raised'). Hannah's personal horn of strength becomes the horn of the coming king. Her story is subsumed into God's larger purpose.
10. The thunder theophany (ba-shamayim yar'em, 'from heaven He thunders') connects to the storm theophany tradition in Psalm 18:13 and to the thunder that accompanied the Israelite victory in 1 Samuel 7:10. God's voice in the storm is a weapon against His enemies.
11. The transition is abrupt and poignant: Elkanah 'went home' but the child stayed. The verb mesharet ('serving, ministering') indicates formal religious service — even as a small child, Samuel has a recognized role at the sanctuary. The phrase et penei Eli ('before Eli' or 'in the presence of Eli') establishes the mentoring relationship while also setting up the contrast that follows: Samuel serves faithfully; Eli's own sons do not.
12. The phrase benei beliyya'al ('sons of worthlessness' or 'sons of wickedness') is one of the harshest designations in Hebrew. It describes people who are fundamentally destructive to the community — those from whom no good can come. Applied to priests, it is shocking.
12. The statement lo yade'u et YHWH ('they did not know the LORD') uses yada ('to know') in its fullest sense — not ignorance of God's existence but absence of relationship, reverence, and covenant faithfulness. Knowing God in Hebrew means intimate, personal, covenantal engagement. Eli's sons had none of it.
13. The narrator uses mishpat ('practice, custom, judgment') with deliberate irony — what should mean 'the proper procedure' here describes corruption. The three-pronged fork (mazleg shelosh ha-shinayim) was a real cultic utensil, but its use here is perverted: instead of serving the sacrifice properly, it becomes a tool for priestly theft.
14. The four cooking vessels — kiyor (basin), dud (kettle), qallachat (caldron), parur (pot) — are listed exhaustively to show that no offering escaped the priests' grab. The randomness of the fork thrust adds insult: the priest does not even choose specific portions but takes whatever comes up, treating the sacred offering as a grab bag. The phrase 'to all the Israelites' (lekhoh Yisra'el) underlines that this was systematic, not occasional.
15. This escalates the offense. The fat (chelev) belonged exclusively to the LORD — burning it on the altar was non-negotiable (Leviticus 3:16: 'all the fat belongs to the LORD'). By demanding raw meat before the fat was burned, Eli's sons were not merely taking more than their share — they were claiming priority over God Himself. The demand for raw rather than boiled meat suggests they wanted choice cuts to prepare as they pleased, not the boiled remnants the normal priestly portion allowed.
16. The worshiper's request is modest and pious: just let God's portion be burned first, then take what you want. The servant's response — lo, ki attah titten ('No, you will give it now') — is a direct assertion of priestly power over divine right. The final threat, laqachti bechozqah ('I will take it by force'), turns the sanctuary into a scene of coercion. The place of worship becomes a place of robbery.
17. The verb ni'atzu ('they treated with contempt, they spurned') is the narrator's verdict. The Hebrew ni'ets means to show utter disrespect, to treat as worthless. The irony is layered: Eli's sons, the benei beliyya'al ('sons of worthlessness'), treat God's offering as worthless. The result is that the people themselves begin to 'abhor' the sacrificial system — priestly corruption makes worship repulsive to the worshipers.
18. The contrast with the preceding verses is sharp and deliberate. Against the backdrop of priestly corruption, the narrator presents a child faithfully serving God. The linen ephod (efod bad) is priestly garment — the same kind worn by the high priest (Exodus 28:6-14) and by David when he danced before the ark (2 Samuel 6:14). That a boy wears it signals his priestly consecration and foreshadows his role as the faithful servant Eli's sons refused to be.
19. The me'il qaton ('small robe') is a tender detail: Hannah makes a priestly robe sized for a growing boy. The word me'il is the same used for the high priest's robe (Exodus 28:31) and for the robe of the ghostly Samuel that the witch of Endor sees (1 Sam 28:14). Each year Hannah measures her absent son's growth by the size of the robe she sews. The phrase miyamim yamimah ('from days to days,' i.e., year to year) marks the rhythm of faithful, quiet devotion.

- 20.** Eli's blessing uses a wordplay on sha'al ('to ask, to request') — the same root behind Samuel's name. The phrase ha-she'elah asher sha'al ('the petition that was asked') echoes Hannah's original request in 1:27. Eli prays that God will repay Hannah's gift with more children. The word tachat ('in place of, in exchange for') frames Samuel's dedication as a transaction of faith: Hannah gave her firstborn to God, and God will give back abundantly.
- 21.** The verb paqad ('attended to, visited, remembered') is a theologically loaded term indicating God's active intervention — the same verb used when God 'remembered' Sarah (Genesis 21:1) and 'attended to' Israel in Egypt (Exodus 4:31). Five more children confirm that Hannah's barrenness was not biological fate but divine timing.
- 21.** The phrase vayyigdal hanna'ar Shemu'el im YHWH ('the boy Samuel grew up with the LORD') is striking: 'with the LORD' (im YHWH) suggests companionship, not merely location. Samuel grows up in God's presence as other children grow up in their parents' home.
- 22.** The sin escalates from theft to sexual exploitation. The women 'who served' (ha-tzove'ot) at the tent entrance had a recognized role in tabernacle service (cf. Exodus 38:8). Eli's sons used their priestly position to prey on women in religious service — an abuse of sacred trust. The note that Eli 'heard' (shama) but did not act becomes the basis of his judgment: knowledge without correction is complicity.
- 23.** Eli's rebuke begins with a question rather than a command: 'Why do you do such things?' The phrasing reveals a father who reasons with corrupt sons rather than exercising his authority as high priest to remove them. The phrase divreichem ra'im ('your evil words/deeds' — davar can mean both) coming 'from all the people' (me'et kol ha'am) shows that the corruption is public knowledge. Everyone knows; only Eli hesitates to act decisively.
- 24.** Eli's correction is remarkably mild: 'the report is not good' is an understatement for sacrilege and sexual predation. The verb ma'avirim ('causing to cross over, causing to transgress') reveals the deeper damage: the priests' corruption does not merely offend God — it leads the people themselves into sin. When those responsible for holiness become corrupt, the entire community's relationship with God is poisoned.
- 25.** Eli's theological reasoning is sound — sin against God has no higher court of appeal — but it comes too late and too gently. The verb pilelo ('mediate, judge, arbitrate') suggests God as arbiter in human disputes, but when the offense is directly against God, the mediating structure collapses.
- 25.** The narrator's explanation — ki chafetz YHWH lahamitam ('because the LORD intended to put them to death') — is one of the most theologically difficult statements in Samuel. It does not mean God caused their corruption; rather, their corruption had reached a point where God's purpose was now their judgment. The verb chafetz ('desired, intended, was pleased to') indicates divine resolve, not arbitrary cruelty. Their refusal to repent sealed their fate.
- 26.** This verse echoes the description of the young Moses (Exodus 2:10) and anticipates the description of Jesus in Luke 2:52 ('And Jesus increased in wisdom and in stature, and in favor with God and people'). The phrase holekh vegadel vatov ('going and growing and good') uses three participles in sequence to describe steady, continuous development. The double 'with' (im YHWH ve-gam im anashim) places Samuel in right relationship in both directions — toward God and toward the community — in direct contrast to Eli's sons, who had right relationship with neither.
- 27.** The 'man of God' (ish Elohim) is unnamed — a prophetic figure who delivers God's oracle and disappears from the narrative. The phrase hanigloh nigleti ('did I not clearly reveal Myself') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute construction: the revelation to Aaron's house in Egypt was unmistakable and deliberate. God's point is that Eli's priestly line exists because of divine initiative, not human merit.
- 28.** Three priestly functions are listed: ascending the altar for sacrifice, burning incense, and wearing the ephod. These represent the full scope of priestly service — sacrificial, intercessory, and oracular (the ephod was associated with divine inquiry). God gave all of this to Aaron's line. The phrase kol ishei benei Yisra'el ('all the fire offerings of the sons of Israel') reminds Eli that priestly provisions were God's gift, not something to be seized by force — which is exactly what his sons have been doing.
- 29.** The verb tiv'atu ('you trample, you kick') is the language of an animal kicking against its master — the same verb used in Deuteronomy 32:15 where Israel, grown fat, 'kicked' against God. The accusation vatekhabbed et banekha mimmenni ('you honor your sons above Me') is devastating: Eli's failure to restrain his sons is not passive weakness but active idolatry — he prioritizes his sons' comfort over God's honor. The verb lehavri'akhem ('to fatten yourselves') makes the corruption physical and visceral.
- 30.** The phrase chalilah li ('far be it from Me') expresses God's moral revulsion at the idea of rewarding contempt with continued blessing. The principle mekhabdai akhabbed uvozai yeqallu ('those who honor Me I will honor, and those who despise Me will be disgraced') becomes a governing principle for the entire Deuteronomistic History. The verb yeqallu ('will be made light, will be disgraced') is the opposite of kaved ('to be heavy, to honor') — a wordplay: those who treat God lightly will themselves become lightweights, stripped of dignity and standing.
- 31.** The 'arm' (zero'a) is literally the forearm but metaphorically represents strength and power. 'Cutting off the arm' means destroying the family's capacity to function and thrive. The curse of premature death — 'no old man in your house' — is the opposite of the biblical blessing of long life. The punishment fits the crime: a priestly house that consumed what belonged to God will itself be consumed.
- 32.** This is one of the most difficult verses in the chapter textually. The phrase tsar ma'on is variously translated as 'distress in the dwelling,' 'an adversary in the dwelling,' or 'a rival in the habitation.' The ma'on likely refers to the sanctuary. The painful irony: Israel will prosper, but Eli's house will watch that prosperity from outside, without sharing in it. The repetition of 'no old man in your house' from verse 31 drives the curse home with doubled force.

33. The cruelty of the judgment is that it is not total annihilation but lingering suffering. Some descendants will survive — but only to serve as living reminders of what was lost. The phrase *lekhalot et einekha* ('to consume your eyes') means to watch helplessly as the family declines. The phrase *la'adiv et nafshekha* ('to grieve your soul') describes deep, persistent sorrow. The surviving members of Eli's line will live in perpetual mourning.
34. The sign (*ot*) is a confirming event that validates the larger prophecy. The deaths of Hophni and Phinehas on a single day will prove that the entire oracle is from God. This is fulfilled in 1 Samuel 4:11 when both sons die in the battle where the ark is captured. The naming of both sons — Chofni u-Finchas — makes the prophecy unmistakably specific. There is no ambiguity and no escape.
35. The kohen *ne'eman* ('faithful priest') stands in direct contrast to the *benei beliyya'al* of verse 12. The word *ne'eman* ('faithful, reliable, trustworthy') shares a root with 'amen' — this priest will be an 'amen' to God's will. The phrase *ka'asher bilvavi uvenafshi* ('according to what is in My heart and in My mind') means the priest's actions will perfectly mirror God's intentions.
35. The term *meshichi* ('My anointed one') appears again, connecting back to Hannah's prophecy in verse 10. The faithful priest will walk 'before' (*lifnei*) the anointed king — a relationship of service and proximity. Historically, this is understood as pointing to Zadok, who replaced Abiathar (the last of Eli's line) under Solomon (1 Kings 2:35).
36. The final image is one of complete reversal: the descendants of the high priest, who once seized the best portions of every sacrifice in Israel, will beg for crumbs. The *agorat kesef* ('a small coin of silver') and *kikkar lechem* ('a loaf of bread') represent the smallest possible payment. The plea *sefacheni na* ('please attach me, assign me') uses a verb that means to join oneself to something as an appendage — not as a leader but as the lowest servant. The priests who fattened themselves on God's offerings will produce descendants who starve without them. The prophecy's arc is complete: from contemptuous plenty to humiliated poverty.

3

Summary: *God calls the boy Samuel by name in the night — three times — while Samuel serves under the aging priest Eli at the Shiloh sanctuary. When Samuel finally recognizes the voice as the LORD's, he receives a devastating oracle: judgment is coming against Eli's house for the corruption of his sons, and no sacrifice will ever atone for it. By morning, Samuel must deliver this word to the man who raised him. The chapter closes with Samuel established throughout Israel as a trustworthy prophet of the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the pivotal hinge between the era of the judges and the age of the prophets. The chapter opens with a theological crisis stated in a single devastating line: 'The word of the LORD was rare in those days; prophetic vision was not widespread.' God had, in effect, gone quiet. Into that silence steps a child who does not yet know the LORD — and that is precisely the point. Samuel's three failed recognitions are not comic misunderstanding; they are the portrait of an entire generation that has lost the ability to recognize God's voice. Eli, the priest whose eyes 'had begun to grow dim,' embodies the condition spiritually: the man responsible for mediating God's presence can no longer see clearly, physically or otherwise. The literary architecture is extraordinary — the word *chazon* ('vision') appears in verse 1 to describe what Israel lacks, and by verse 21 the LORD is again 'revealing Himself' (*niglah*) at Shiloh. The chapter is the story of how prophetic speech returned to Israel.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *davar YHWH hayah yaqar* ('the word of the LORD was rare') uses *yaqar*, which normally means 'precious, costly, valuable.' We rendered it 'rare' because in context the sense is clearly one of scarcity — prophetic revelation was infrequent — but the Hebrew carries an undertone that what is scarce becomes precious. No single English word captures both meanings. In verse 7, the statement that Samuel 'did not yet know the LORD' (*terem yeda et YHWH*) is theologically startling — this boy serving in the sanctuary did not have personal experiential knowledge of God. We preserved the directness rather than softening it. The verb *niglah* ('revealed himself') in verse 21 is the niph'al of *galah* ('to uncover, to expose'), the same root used for exile and nakedness elsewhere — God's self-revelation involves a divine uncovering, a vulnerability in the act of communication, that English 'revealed' only partially captures.*

Connections: *The opening formula — 'the word of the LORD was rare' — creates a deliberate contrast with the book's ending, where Samuel functions as the established channel of divine communication to all Israel. The call narrative follows the pattern of Moses (Exodus 3) and later prophets: divine initiative, human resistance or confusion, commissioning with a specific message. Eli's response in verse 18, 'He is the LORD; let Him do what seems good to Him,' echoes the resignation theology that appears again in David's mouth during Absalom's revolt (2 Samuel 15:26). The judgment against Eli's house for sins 'that he knew about' (*yodea*) plays on the chapter's knowledge theme — Samuel did not yet 'know' the LORD (v7), but Eli 'knew' about his sons' wickedness and*

failed to act. The verb qara ('to call') appears eleven times in this chapter, structuring the entire narrative around the act of calling — divine calling that requires human response.

¹The boy Samuel was serving the LORD under Eli's supervision. The word of the LORD was rare in those days — prophetic vision was not widespread. ²On that particular day, Eli was lying in his usual place. His eyes had begun to grow weak — he could no longer see well. ³The lamp of God had not yet gone out, and Samuel was lying down in the temple of the LORD, where the ark of God was. ⁴The LORD called out to Samuel, and Samuel said, "Here I am." ⁵He ran to Eli and said, "Here I am — you called me." But Eli said, "I did not call you. Go back and lie down." So he went back and lay down. ⁶The LORD called again: "Samuel!" Samuel got up and went to Eli and said, "Here I am — you called me." Eli replied, "I did not call you, my son. Go back and lie down." ⁷Samuel did not yet know the LORD — the word of the LORD had not yet been revealed to him. ⁸The LORD called Samuel a third time. He got up, went to Eli, and said, "Here I am — you called me." Then Eli understood that it was the LORD calling the boy. ⁹Eli told Samuel, "Go lie down, and if He calls you, say: 'Speak, LORD, for your servant is listening.'" So Samuel went and lay down in his place. ¹⁰The LORD came and stood there, and called as before: "Samuel! Samuel!" And Samuel said, "Speak, for your servant is listening." ¹¹The LORD said to Samuel, "I am about to do something in Israel that will make both ears ring for everyone who hears of it. ¹²On that day I will carry out against Eli everything I have spoken against his house — from beginning to end. ¹³I have declared to him that I am judging his house permanently, because of the guilt that he knew about — his sons were bringing a curse on themselves, and he did not restrain them. ¹⁴Therefore I have sworn to the house of Eli: the guilt of Eli's house will never be atoned for by sacrifice or grain offering." ¹⁵Samuel lay there until morning, then opened the doors of the house of the LORD. Samuel was afraid to tell Eli about the revelation. ¹⁶Eli called to Samuel and said, "Samuel, my son." He answered, "Here I am." ¹⁷Eli said, "What did He say to you? Do not hide it from me. May God deal with you severely — and worse — if you conceal anything from me of all that He spoke to you." ¹⁸Samuel told him everything and hid nothing from him. Eli said, "He is the LORD. Let Him do what is good in His eyes." ¹⁹Samuel grew, and the LORD was with him. He did not let any of Samuel's words fall to the ground. ²⁰All Israel, from Dan to Beersheba, recognized that Samuel was confirmed as a prophet of the LORD. ²¹The LORD continued to appear at Shiloh, because the LORD revealed Himself to Samuel at Shiloh through the word of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb mesharet ('serving, ministering') is a piel participle indicating ongoing, habitual service — Samuel's role was not a one-time event but an established pattern of temple service under Eli's authority. This is the same verb used of Joshua's service to Moses (Exodus 24:13), establishing a master-apprentice relationship.
1. The adjective yaqar applied to davar YHWH ('the word of the LORD') normally means 'precious, costly, rare.' In this context it signals scarcity rather than value — prophetic revelation was infrequent. However, the Hebrew carries both senses simultaneously: what is scarce becomes precious. We chose 'rare' as the primary sense, noting the double meaning here.
1. The phrase ein chazon nifrats ('there was no vision breaking through') uses the niphal of parats ('to break out, to spread, to burst forth'). The image is of prophetic vision as something that should break through like water or light but was being contained or withheld. 'Not widespread' captures the sense that revelation existed but was not flowing freely through Israel's prophetic channels.
2. The detail about Eli's failing eyesight (einav hechelu kehot, 'his eyes had begun to grow dim') operates on two levels. Physically, Eli's advancing age has impaired his vision. But in a chapter about prophetic seeing and the return of chazon ('vision'), the narrator signals that Eli — the man responsible for the sanctuary — can no longer see, literally or figuratively. The verb kehah ('to grow dim, to be faint') is used of failing eyes again in Genesis 27:1 (Isaac) and Deuteronomy 34:7 (where Moses's eyes notably did not grow dim).
2. The phrase bimqomo ('in his place') indicates Eli's customary sleeping location within or adjacent to the sanctuary complex. The narrative carefully establishes where each character is positioned before the night begins.
3. The ner Elohim ('lamp of God') refers to the sanctuary lampstand that burned through the night and was replenished each morning (Exodus 27:20-21, Leviticus 24:2-3). The detail that it 'had not yet gone out' (terem yikhbeh) establishes the time as the pre-dawn hours — the deepest part of night, but with morning approaching. The lamp also functions symbolically: God's light in Israel has not yet been extinguished, though it is burning low.
3. Samuel is sleeping beheikhal YHWH ('in the temple of the LORD'), near the ark of God. This is extraordinary — a boy sleeping in the sacred precinct where the ark rested. His proximity to the ark underscores his special role: he is physically closest to God's dwelling even before he knows the LORD personally. The term heikhal can mean 'temple' or 'palace' and here refers to the tabernacle structure at Shiloh.

4. The verb *qara* ('to call') appears here for the first of eleven occurrences in this chapter. The LORD calls Samuel by name — not with a title, not through a mediator, but with the personal, direct address that characterizes prophetic commissioning throughout the Hebrew Bible.
4. Samuel's response *hinneni* ('here I am') is the classic response of availability in the Hebrew Bible — the same word Abraham uses at the binding of Isaac (Genesis 22:1), Moses uses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:4), and Isaiah uses at his commissioning (Isaiah 6:8). Samuel uses it correctly, but to the wrong person — he assumes it is Eli calling. The response is right; the direction is wrong.
5. Samuel's immediate physical response — *vayyarats* ('and he ran') — shows both the urgency of a servant responding to his master and the boy's assumption that a voice in the night must be Eli. The verb *ruts* ('to run') conveys eagerness, not panic.
5. Eli's denial *lo qarati* ('I did not call') is straightforward, and his instruction *shuv shekhav* ('return, lie down') carries no suspicion or irritation at this point. The brevity of the exchange establishes the pattern that will repeat two more times before recognition comes.
6. The phrase *vayyosef YHWH qero od* ('the LORD continued to call again') uses the construction *yasaf* + infinitive, indicating repeated action — God persists. The repetition is not divine frustration but patient pursuit of a boy who does not yet have the framework to understand what is happening.
6. Eli's addition of *beni* ('my son') introduces warmth into the second denial. The term is both conventional address from an elder to a youth and an expression of Eli's genuine paternal relationship with Samuel — this is the boy Hannah entrusted to him.
7. This parenthetical explanation is one of the most theologically loaded sentences in the chapter. The verb *yada* ('to know') here does not mean Samuel was ignorant of God's existence — he served in the sanctuary. Rather, *yada* denotes experiential, personal knowledge: Samuel had not yet encountered God directly. The same verb describes intimate knowledge between persons (Genesis 4:1) and covenantal knowledge between God and Israel (Amos 3:2).
7. The niph'al verb *yiggaleh* ('was revealed') — from *galah* ('to uncover') — describes divine self-disclosure as an act of uncovering. God must remove a barrier for the human to perceive. The word of the LORD does not arrive by human effort; it is revealed by divine initiative. This verse explains Samuel's confusion: he could not recognize God's voice because he had never heard it before.
8. The phrase *bashshelishit* ('the third time') marks the pattern's climax. Three-fold repetition in Hebrew narrative signals completeness and decisiveness — after the third occurrence, something must change. Compare Balaam's three attempts to curse Israel (Numbers 22-24) and Elijah's three-fold pouring of water (1 Kings 18:34).
8. The verb *vayaven* ('and he understood, and he discerned') from the root *bin* indicates perceptive insight — Eli grasps what is happening not through information but through discernment. Despite his physical and spiritual decline, Eli retains enough prophetic awareness to recognize that God is speaking to Samuel. This moment is both Eli's last act of priestly wisdom and his acknowledgment that the prophetic mantle is passing to the boy.
9. Eli's instruction — *dabber YHWH ki shomea avdekha* ('Speak, LORD, for your servant is listening') — gives Samuel the words to respond to divine address. The imperative *dabber* ('speak') directed at God is remarkable: a human commanding the Almighty to speak. Yet it is framed by submission — *avdekha* ('your servant') — making it a request wrapped in obedience. Eli teaches Samuel the posture of a prophet: receptive, available, subordinate.
9. The verb *shomea* ('listening, hearing') is a participle indicating continuous readiness — not 'your servant heard' (past) or 'will hear' (future) but 'is hearing, is in the act of listening.' The prophetic posture is one of ongoing attentiveness.
9. The poignancy of this moment is layered: Eli, who will receive the judgment Samuel is about to hear, is the one who teaches Samuel how to hear from God. He enables the very communication that will announce his own family's destruction.
10. The verbs *vayyavo YHWH vayyityatsav* ('the LORD came and stood') describe a physical, localized divine presence — God does not merely project a voice but arrives and takes a position. The hitpael of *yatsav* ('to station oneself, to take a stand') implies deliberate positioning. This is a theophany — a divine appearance — not merely an auditory experience.
10. The doubled name *Shemuel Shemuel* ('Samuel! Samuel!') is the form of urgent, personal divine address used at critical moments: Avraham Avraham (Genesis 22:11), Moshe Moshe (Exodus 3:4), and later Shaul Shaul (Acts 9:4 in the Greek tradition). The doubling signals both intimacy and gravity — God knows this boy by name and is about to entrust him with a terrible message.
10. Samuel follows Eli's script almost exactly but omits the divine name — *dabber ki shomea avdekha* ('Speak, for your servant is listening') rather than *dabber YHWH*. Whether this is reverence, nervousness, or the narrator's editorial choice is debated. Some manuscripts and versions include the name; the Masoretic text omits it.
11. The phrase *tetsillenah shetzi oznav* ('both his ears will ring') uses the verb *tsalal* ('to ring, to tingle, to quiver'). The image is of news so shocking that it produces a physical sensation — a ringing in the ears. This exact phrase recurs only twice more in the Hebrew Bible: in 2 Kings 21:12 (judgment on Jerusalem through Manasseh) and Jeremiah 19:3 (the Babylonian destruction). Each instance announces catastrophic, irreversible divine judgment. By using this formula, God signals to Samuel that what follows is not correction but devastation.
11. The pronoun *anokhi* ('I myself') rather than the shorter *ani* ('I') adds weight and formality to the divine announcement. God emphasizes personal agency: this is something I am doing, not something that will merely happen.
12. The phrase *hachel vekhallel* ('beginning and finishing') uses two infinitive absolutes to express totality and irreversibility. God will not partially execute the judgment or leave it incomplete. The construction emphasizes that once the process begins, it will reach its full conclusion. This is not a warning that can be averted; it is an announcement of what will be.

12. The verb *aqim* ('I will raise up, I will establish, I will carry out') from *qum* is the same verb used for establishing covenants (Genesis 6:18, 17:7). Here it is used for establishing judgment — God's destructive word is as certain as God's creative word. What God speaks, God performs.
13. The phrase *ad olam* ('forever, permanently') intensifies the judgment beyond a single generation — this is not temporary discipline but permanent removal of Eli's line from the priesthood. The fulfillment comes in stages: Hophni and Phinehas die in chapter 4, and Eli's priestly line is eventually displaced by Zadok under Solomon (1 Kings 2:27).
13. The crux of Eli's guilt is stated precisely: *ba'avon asher yada* ('because of the guilt that he knew about'). Eli's sin was not ignorance but inaction — he had knowledge (*yada*, the same verb from verse 7) of his sons' corruption and failed to exercise his authority. The contrast with Samuel is pointed: Samuel did not yet know (*yada*) the LORD, but Eli knew (*yada*) about the sin and did nothing.
13. The participle *meqalelim* ('cursing, bringing a curse on themselves') is a textual crux. The Masoretic Qere reads *meqalelim lahem* ('cursing for themselves' — bringing a curse upon themselves), while a scribal tradition (*tiqqun soferim*) suggests the original read *meqalelim Elohim* ('cursing God'). The scribes may have softened the text to avoid the direct blasphemy of 'cursing God.' We followed the Masoretic reading while noting the tradition.
14. The oath formula *im yitkapper* ('if it shall be atoned' — used as an emphatic negation, 'it shall certainly not be atoned') employs the *hitpael* of *kaphar* ('to cover, to atone'). This is devastating because the entire sacrificial system that Eli's family administered was designed precisely to provide atonement. God declares that the system the priests operate cannot save the priests themselves. The instrument of atonement is powerless against the guilt of those who corrupted it.
14. The pairing of *zevach* ('sacrifice' — blood offerings) and *minchah* ('grain offering' — non-blood offerings) covers the full spectrum of the sacrificial system. No category of offering can address this guilt. The phrase *ad olam* ('forever, in perpetuity') mirrors the same phrase in verse 13 — the judgment is permanent, and so is the impossibility of atonement through ritual means.
14. This verse has profound theological implications: it establishes that sacrifice is not mechanically effective. Ritual without integrity does not produce atonement. This principle recurs in the prophets (Isaiah 1:11-15, Hosea 6:6, Amos 5:21-24) and is foundational to the broader biblical theology of worship.
15. The detail that Samuel opened the doors (*vayyiftach et daltot beit YHWH*) shows him resuming his normal duties — the mundane act of opening the sanctuary doors after receiving the most devastating prophetic oracle. The boy who heard God's voice in the night returns to his routine, now carrying a burden he did not ask for. The juxtaposition of cosmic revelation and daily chores is characteristically biblical.
15. The noun *mar'ah* ('vision, revelation, appearance') is related to the root *ra'ah* ('to see') rather than *chazah* (the root of *chazon* in verse 1). This subtle vocabulary shift suggests Samuel's experience was more than auditory — it included a visual or perceptual component, consistent with the theophanic language of verse 10 where God 'came and stood.'
15. Samuel's fear (*yare*, 'was afraid') is not cowardice but the natural response of a boy who must deliver a death sentence to the man who raised him. The narrator does not judge Samuel for his reluctance; he simply notes it.
16. Now it is Eli who calls (*vayyiqra*) and Samuel who responds *hinneni* ('here I am'). The reversal from the night's pattern is significant — where God called and Samuel ran to Eli, now Eli calls and Samuel responds to Eli. The verb *qara* here is the same verb used of God's calling throughout the chapter, and the irony is acute: Eli calls to hear the word that God called to deliver.
16. Eli's address *Shemuel beni* ('Samuel, my son') combines the personal name with the paternal title, matching verse 6. The tenderness is painful given what Samuel must say next.
17. Eli invokes a formal oath curse: *koh ya'aseh lekha Elohim vekhoh yosif* ('thus may God do to you and thus may He add'). This is a standard oath formula in the historical books (1 Samuel 14:44, 20:13, 2 Samuel 3:9, 1 Kings 2:23), always invoking unspecified but severe divine punishment for breaking the oath's condition. The threat is left vague intentionally — the imagination fills in what the formula leaves open.
17. The verb *tekhachad* ('to hide, to conceal, to deny') from the root *kachad* appears twice in this verse, framing Eli's demand. He uses the word *davar* ('word, thing, matter') three times — *mah haddavar* ('what is the word'), *im tekhachad davar* ('if you conceal a word'), and *kol haddavar* ('all the word'). Eli wants the complete, unedited message. He already suspects it concerns his house.
17. Eli's demand reveals his character at its most complex: he is the failed father and the compromised priest, but he is also the man who insists on hearing the full truth of God's judgment against himself. He does not let Samuel protect him from the word.
18. The phrase *vayyagged lo et kol haddevarim velo kiched mimmennu* ('he told him all the words and did not conceal from him') directly answers Eli's demand from verse 17, using the same key verbs (*nagad*, 'to tell'; *kachad*, 'to conceal'). Samuel passes his first prophetic test: faithfully delivering the complete word of God regardless of personal cost.
18. Eli's response — *YHWH hu hattov be'einav ya'aseh* ('He is the LORD; the good in His eyes let Him do') — is a statement of theological submission that can be read as either profound faith or resigned fatalism. The phrase *hattov be'einav* ('what is good in His eyes') affirms that God's judgment is inherently just — what God sees as right is right. This same theology appears in David's response during Absalom's revolt: 'Let Him do to me what is good in His eyes' (2 Samuel 15:26). Whether Eli speaks from trust or exhaustion, the words themselves are theologically sound: the LORD's prerogative to act according to His own assessment is absolute.

- 19.** The idiom *velo hippil mikkol devarav artsah* ('he did not let any of his words fall to the ground') is one of the most vivid images for prophetic reliability in the Hebrew Bible. The verb *naphal* ('to fall') pictures words as physical objects that either reach their target or drop uselessly to the earth. When God ensures that none of Samuel's words 'fall,' it means every prophetic utterance was fulfilled — nothing Samuel said proved empty or failed. This idiom recurs in 2 Kings 10:10 regarding Elijah's words.
- 19.** The phrase *vaYHWH hayah immo* ('and the LORD was with him') is the covenant-presence formula used of Joseph (Genesis 39:2, 21), Joshua (Joshua 6:27), and David (1 Samuel 18:14). It signals divine favor expressed through observable success and guidance. For Samuel, God's presence means prophetic accuracy — the ultimate credential for a prophet in Israel (Deuteronomy 18:21-22).
- 20.** The phrase *middan ve'ad Be'er Shava* ('from Dan to Beersheba') is the standard biblical merism for the full extent of Israel's settled territory, from the northernmost city to the southernmost. Its use here indicates that Samuel's prophetic reputation was not local but national in scope.
- 20.** The niph'al participle *ne'eman* ('confirmed, faithful, trustworthy, established') from the root *aleph-mem-nun* ('to be firm, to be reliable') is a rich term. It describes both God's confirmation of Samuel's role and the observable trustworthiness that Israel witnessed. A *ne'eman* prophet is one whose words consistently prove true — the same root gives us 'amen' (a declaration of trustworthiness) and 'emunah' (faithfulness). Samuel is not merely called a prophet; he is a proven one.
- 20.** The title *navi* ('prophet') appears here for the first time in connection with Samuel. The word *navi* likely derives from a root meaning 'to call' or 'to announce' — one who is called by God to announce God's word. Samuel's commissioning in this chapter fulfills the pattern: God called, Samuel listened, and now all Israel knows him as the one through whom God speaks.
- 21.** The verb *vayyosef* ('he continued') — the same construction from verses 6 and 8 where God 'continued to call' — now describes ongoing divine self-revelation. The God who persisted in calling a confused boy three times now persists in appearing at Shiloh. The verb's recurrence links the one night to a pattern of continued revelation.
- 21.** The niph'al *niglah* ('he revealed himself') from *galah* ('to uncover') echoes verse 7, where the word of the LORD had 'not yet been revealed' (*terem yiggaleh*) to Samuel. The chapter's trajectory is now complete: from 'not yet revealed' (v7) to 'revealed himself' (v21). What was absent is now present; what was closed is now open.
- 21.** The phrase *bidvar YHWH* ('through the word of the LORD') brings the chapter full circle to verse 1, where *davar YHWH* ('the word of the LORD') was declared rare. The same construct phrase that opened the chapter in scarcity now closes it in abundance. Shiloh has become what it was meant to be: a place where God speaks and is heard.

4

Summary: *Israel goes to war against the Philistines and suffers a devastating defeat at Ebenezer. The elders fetch the Ark of the Covenant from Shiloh, expecting it to guarantee victory, but Israel is routed again — thirty thousand foot soldiers fall. The Ark is captured, Eli's sons Hophni and Phinehas are killed, and when the news reaches Shiloh, the ninety-eight-year-old priest Eli falls from his seat, breaks his neck, and dies. Phinehas's wife goes into labor, names her son Ichabod — 'no glory' — and dies declaring that the glory has departed from Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter narrates the single most catastrophic event in Israel's pre-monarchic history: the capture of the Ark of the Covenant by a foreign power. The Ark was the visible throne of God's presence — the place where the LORD sat enthroned between the cherubim. Its loss is not merely a military defeat but a theological crisis: has Israel's God been defeated? Has the covenant failed? The name Ichabod (*i-kavod*, 'where is the glory?' or 'no glory') becomes the chapter's devastating thesis statement. Yet the narrator is careful to distinguish between the Ark as an object and the God who dwells above it — Israel tried to wield God's presence as a weapon, and the result was not divine defeat but divine judgment on Israel's presumption.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of verse 1 presents a well-known textual difficulty: the Masoretic Text begins with Samuel's word going out to all Israel, but the Septuagint (LXX) and some Dead Sea Scrolls manuscripts include additional material placing this after the events of chapter 3. We follow the MT while noting the discrepancy. In verse 8, the Philistines refer to 'these mighty gods' (*elohim addirim*) — the plural is ambiguous since *elohim* can be singular ('God') or plural ('gods'); the Philistines, as polytheists, hear it as plural. The word *kavod* ('glory') in Ichabod's naming demands an expanded rendering because its theological weight far exceeds the English word 'glory' — it carries connotations of weight, substance, visible radiance, and the tangible manifestation of God's presence.*

Connections: The capture of the Ark fulfills the judgment pronounced against Eli's house in chapters 2-3: both sons die 'on a single day' as foretold (2:34). The Philistines' terrified memory of 'the gods who struck Egypt with every kind of plague' (v. 8) connects back to the Exodus narrative — but now the roles are reversed: Israel behaves like Egypt, presuming on God's presence rather than submitting to His will. The Ark's journey into Philistine territory will continue in chapters 5-6, where the LORD demonstrates that His power is not diminished by capture — He devastates the Philistines from within their own temples. The glory that 'departed' from Israel is not destroyed but displaced; it operates independently of Israel's control, which is precisely the theological point.

¹The word of Samuel went out to all Israel. Israel marched out to meet the Philistines in battle and camped near Ebenezer, while the Philistines camped at Aphek. ²The Philistines drew up their battle lines against Israel. The fighting spread, and Israel was struck down before the Philistines, who killed about four thousand men on the battlefield. ³When the troops returned to the camp, the elders of Israel said, "Why did the LORD let us be struck down today before the Philistines? Let us bring the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD from Shiloh so that it may come among us and deliver us from the grip of our enemies." ⁴So the people sent to Shiloh and brought from there the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD of Armies, who is enthroned above the cherubim. Eli's two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, were there with the Ark of the Covenant of God. ⁵When the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD came into the camp, all Israel raised a tremendous war cry, and the ground shook. ⁶The Philistines heard the sound of the war cry and said, "What is this tremendous shouting in the camp of the Hebrews?" When they learned that the Ark of the LORD had come into the camp, ⁷the Philistines were terrified. They said, "A god has come into the camp!" Then they said, "This is disaster for us! Nothing like this has happened before. ⁸This is disaster for us! Who can rescue us from the power of these mighty gods? These are the gods who struck Egypt with every kind of plague in the wilderness." ⁹"Be strong! Act like warriors, Philistines, or you will serve the Hebrews as they have served you. Fight like warriors and engage!" ¹⁰The Philistines fought, and Israel was crushed. Every man fled to his tent. The slaughter was immense — thirty thousand Israelite foot soldiers fell. ¹¹The Ark of God was captured, and Eli's two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, were killed. ¹²A man from the tribe of Benjamin ran from the battle line and reached Shiloh that same day, his clothes torn and dirt on his head. ¹³When he arrived, there was Eli, sitting on his chair beside the road, watching — because his heart was trembling over the Ark of God. ¹⁴When Eli heard the sound of the outcry, he asked, "What is this uproar?" The man hurried over and reported to Eli. ¹⁵Eli was ninety-eight years old, and his eyes were fixed — he could not see. ¹⁶The man said to Eli, "I am the one who came from the battle line — I fled from the fighting today." Eli said, "What happened, my son?" ¹⁷The messenger answered, "Israel fled before the Philistines. There has been a massive slaughter among the troops. Your two sons, Hophni and Phinehas, are dead. And the Ark of God has been captured." ¹⁸When he mentioned the Ark of God, Eli fell backward off his chair beside the gate. His neck broke and he died, because the man was old and heavy. He had judged Israel for forty years. ¹⁹His daughter-in-law, the wife of Phinehas, was pregnant and near her time. When she heard the report that the Ark of God was captured and that her father-in-law and her husband were dead, she collapsed and went into labor, because her contractions overwhelmed her. ²⁰As she was dying, the women attending her said, "Do not be afraid — you have given birth to a son!" But she did not respond, and she paid no attention. ²¹She named the boy Ichabod, saying, "The glory has gone into exile from Israel" — because the Ark of God was captured, and because of her father-in-law and her husband. ²²She said, "The glory has gone into exile from Israel, because the Ark of God has been captured."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening clause *vayyehi devar-Shemu'el lekhol-Yisra'el* ('the word of Samuel came to all Israel') appears to connect to Samuel's prophetic authority established in chapter 3, yet the narrative immediately shifts to a battle in which Samuel plays no role. The Septuagint and 4QSam-a place this clause differently, suggesting early scribal uncertainty about its placement. The MT as it stands creates an ironic juxtaposition: Samuel's word has authority, but Israel does not consult him before going to war.
1. Ebenezer (Even ha-Ezer, 'stone of help') is named proleptically — the name will not be given until 7:12 when Samuel raises a memorial stone after a future victory. The narrator uses the later name for the reader's orientation. Aphek was a strategic Philistine staging ground in the coastal plain, controlling the route into the central hill country.

2. The verb *vayyinnagef* ('was struck down') is a passive form of *nagaf*, frequently used for divine judgment — the same root describes the plagues that 'struck' Egypt (Exodus 12:23, 27). The narrator's word choice hints that this defeat is not merely military misfortune but carries a theological dimension. Israel is struck as Egypt once was.
2. The phrase *ba-ma'arakhah ba-sadeh* ('in the battle line, in the field') indicates open-field combat — Israel was defeated in conventional warfare before the idea of fetching the Ark arose. Four thousand casualties in a single engagement would have been catastrophic for a tribal militia.
3. The elders correctly attribute the defeat to the LORD (*negafanu YHWH*, 'the LORD struck us') — they recognize divine agency. But their solution bypasses the prophetic channel entirely. They do not ask Samuel, do not inquire of God, and do not consider repentance. Their plan treats the Ark as an instrument they can control.
3. The phrase *aron berit-YHWH* ('Ark of the Covenant of the LORD') uses the full covenantal title — the Ark represents the binding agreement between God and Israel. Yet the elders treat it as a military asset rather than a covenant symbol. The verb *yasha* ('to save, deliver') applied to the Ark rather than to God reveals the displacement: they expect the container to do what only its Occupant can do.
4. The divine title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('the LORD of Armies') appears here for the first time in the narrative connected to the Ark — it is a military title emphasizing God's sovereignty over both heavenly and earthly forces. The phrase *yoshev ha-keruvim* ('who sits/is enthroned upon the cherubim') describes the Ark's lid as God's throne — the two golden cherubim on the mercy seat formed the base of an invisible throne. God's presence was understood to dwell in the space above and between them.
4. The mention of Hophni and Phinehas is ominous: the reader already knows from 2:34 that their death on a single day will be the sign confirming judgment on Eli's house. Their presence with the Ark marks them for the fulfillment about to unfold. The narrator names them almost as a death notice in advance.
5. The *teru'ah gedolah* ('great shout') is a ritual war cry — the same term used for the shout that toppled Jericho's walls (Joshua 6:5, 20). Israel is reenacting the pattern of holy war: the Ark arrives, the war cry goes up, victory follows. But here the pattern will fail because the conditions of holy war — obedience, divine commission, prophetic guidance — have not been met.
5. The phrase *vattehem ha-arets* ('the earth resounded/shook') conveys the physical force of the sound — tens of thousands shouting in unison. The verb *hamah* means to murmur, roar, or reverberate. The ground itself trembled with the noise, creating an impression of overwhelming power. The irony is devastating: the sound is enormous, but the substance behind it is hollow.
6. The Philistines call the Israelites *ivrim* ('Hebrews') — the outsider's term for Israel, used throughout the Philistine encounters in 1 Samuel. The word *ivri* may derive from the root *avar* ('to cross over') or from the ancestor Eber. In the Philistine mouth it functions as an ethnic label without covenant connotations — they see Israel as a neighboring people, not as God's covenant partner.
6. The Philistines' intelligence is sharp: they correctly identify the shout as connected to the Ark's arrival. They understand the military-religious significance even if they misinterpret the theology behind it. Their fear in the next verse shows they know the stories of Israel's God.
7. The Philistine exclamation *ba elohim el-ha-machaneh* ('a god/God has come into the camp') uses *elohim* ambiguously — the Philistines, as polytheists, likely understand it as 'a god' or 'divine power' rather than as Israel's specific covenant God. The narrator lets their pagan perspective stand without correction.
7. The phrase *etmol shilshom* (literally 'yesterday, three days ago') is an idiom meaning 'previously, in the past, before now.' The Philistines recognize this battle has changed in character — a supernatural element has entered. Their fear is genuine and their assessment is technically correct: God's Ark is present. What they cannot know is that the Ark's presence does not guarantee God's fighting on Israel's behalf.
8. The Philistines use *ha-elohim ha-addirim ha-elleh* ('these mighty gods') — the plural adjective *addirim* ('mighty, majestic') paired with *elohim* reveals they interpret Israel's God through their own polytheistic framework. They imagine multiple deities. The narrator does not correct them; the irony speaks for itself.
8. The phrase *ha-makkim et-Mitsrayim bekhoh-makkah ba-midbar* ('the ones striking Egypt with every plague in the wilderness') shows the Philistines know the Exodus tradition — but garble it. The plagues struck Egypt in Egypt, not 'in the wilderness.' The Philistines have heard the stories but conflate the Egyptian plagues with wilderness events. Their theology is wrong, but their fear of Israel's God is well-founded — just not for the reasons they think in this particular battle.
8. The word *makkah* ('blow, plague, strike') shares the root *nakah* ('to strike') — the Philistines remember God as the one who strikes, which is precisely what makes the Ark's presence terrifying to them.
9. The Philistine commanders rally their troops with *hitchazzqu vihyu la-anashim* ('be strong and be men') — the same exhortation vocabulary used in Israel's own holy war traditions (Deuteronomy 31:6, Joshua 1:6). The verb *avad* ('to serve') carries the double meaning of military subjugation and slavery: 'lest you serve the Hebrews as they served you.' The Philistines had dominated Israel, and the fear of role reversal drives their courage.
9. The repetition *vihyitem la-anashim venilchamtem* ('be men and fight') hammers the point: fear of the gods is real, but the alternative — servitude — is worse. The Philistine response to theological terror is pragmatic: fight anyway. Remarkably, this desperate courage will be rewarded — not because the Philistines are righteous, but because God is not fighting for Israel this day.
10. The verb *vayyinnagef* ('was struck down') repeats from verse 2, but now the scale is catastrophic: *sheloshim elef ragli* ('thirty thousand foot soldiers') — nearly eight times the first defeat. The phrase *vayyanusu ish le-ohalav* ('each man fled to his tent') signals total rout: the army dissolves, every

soldier running for survival. 'To his tent' is an idiom for total military dissolution — the army ceases to exist as a fighting force.

10. The narrator calls this ha-makkah gedolah me'od ('a very great blow/slaughter') — the same root makkah the Philistines used to describe God's plagues on Egypt (v. 8). The linguistic echo is bitter: the plague-blow now falls on Israel rather than on their enemies.
11. The verb nilqach ('was taken, was captured') is a passive form of laqach — the Ark did not fall; it was seized. The passive voice leaves the agent ambiguous: the Philistines took it, but God permitted it. This ambiguity is theologically essential — the Ark's capture is simultaneously a Philistine military act and a divine judgment on Israel.
11. The deaths of Hophni and Phinehas fulfill 2:34 precisely. The narrator reports their deaths with the same compression used for Elimelech's death in Ruth 1:3 — brevity as a literary expression of catastrophe. No details of how they died, no last words, no burial. They simply metu ('died').
12. The Benjaminite runner is an unnamed figure whose sole function is to carry the worst news in Israel's memory. His appearance tells the story before his mouth opens: maddav qeru'im va-adamah al-rosho ('his garments torn and earth upon his head') — both are conventional signs of mourning and catastrophe. Torn clothing signifies that the fabric of normal life has been ripped apart; earth on the head symbolizes identification with death and the grave.
12. The phrase bayyom hahu ('that same day') emphasizes speed — the distance from the Aphek/Ebenezer battlefield to Shiloh is roughly twenty miles through hill country. The runner covered this distance in a single day, driven by the urgency of the disaster. His tribal identity as a Benjaminite is noted — Benjamin's territory lay between the battlefield and Shiloh.
13. The scene of Eli is deeply affecting: yoshev al-ha-kisse yad derekh metsappeh ('sitting on a seat beside the road, watching'). The old priest, nearly blind (3:2), sits by the roadside straining for news. The verb tsaphah ('to watch, look out, keep watch') implies anxious vigilance — Eli is a watchman who can barely see.
13. The phrase ki-hayah libbo charad al aron ha-Elohim ('because his heart was trembling concerning the Ark of God') reveals Eli's priorities: despite his failures, his deepest anxiety is for God's Ark, not for his sons. The verb charad ('to tremble, to be anxious, to quake') describes the visceral, physical dread of one who knows that something irreversible may be happening. Eli's trembling heart anticipates the news that will kill him.
14. Eli hears before he sees — his failing eyes cannot make out the runner, but his ears catch the qol ha-tse'aqah ('sound of the outcry'). The word tse'aqah is not ordinary noise; it is the cry of distress, the same word used for Israel's anguished cry in Egypt (Exodus 3:7). The entire city of Shiloh erupts in wailing as the news spreads, and this collective cry reaches Eli before the messenger does.
14. The word hamon ('tumult, uproar, crowd noise') describes the confused, roaring sound of a community in crisis. Eli's question meh qol hehamon hazzeh ('what is this uproar?') parallels the Philistines' question in verse 6 — both sides hear sounds they cannot immediately interpret, but the meanings are reversed: the Philistines heard a shout of confidence, Eli hears a cry of devastation.
15. The phrase ve'einav qamu (literally 'and his eyes had stood still, were fixed') describes eyes that no longer function — they are set, rigid, staring without sight. This is a more severe condition than the dimness mentioned in 3:2; Eli is now effectively blind. The physical detail serves a literary purpose: the man responsible for watching over God's house in Israel can no longer see. His physical blindness mirrors the spiritual blindness that allowed his sons to corrupt the priesthood.
15. At ninety-eight, Eli has served as priest and judge for decades. His age underscores both his long tenure and his physical frailty — the coming fall will be fatal precisely because his body cannot absorb the shock.
16. The runner identifies himself twice: ani habba min-ha-ma'arakhah ('I am the one coming from the battle line') and va-ani min-ha-ma'arakhah nasti hayyom ('and I fled from the battle line today'). The double identification and the admission of flight (nasti, 'I fled') convey the breathless urgency and perhaps shame of a survivor reporting total defeat.
16. Eli's response meh-hayah ha-davar beni ('what happened, my son?') is painfully tender. He addresses the stranger as beni ('my son') — the same term he used for his own sons. The question ha-davar ('the thing, the matter, the word') is open-ended: 'What has the word been?' Eli asks for the report while dreading it.
17. The messenger is called ha-mevasser ('the bearer of news') — a word that can mean either good or bad tidings depending on context. In 2 Samuel 18:19-33, the same term delivers news of Absalom's death to David. Here the mevasser brings only devastation.
17. The four-part structure is rhetorically precise: nas Yisra'el ('Israel fled'), maggefah gedolah ('a great plague/slaughter'), shenei vanekha metu ('your two sons died'), va-aron ha-Elohim nilqachah ('the Ark of God was captured'). Each vegam ('and also') raises the stakes. The word maggefah ('plague, blow, slaughter') echoes the plague language of verses 8 and 10, binding the entire chapter together with the vocabulary of divine striking.
18. The verb vayyipol ('he fell') from the root nafal describes an uncontrolled collapse — Eli topples backward (achorannit) off the chair beside the gate. The mafrekhet ('neck, cervical vertebrae') broke on impact. The detail ki-zaqen ha-ish vekhaved ('because the man was old and heavy') explains why the fall was fatal — an elderly, heavy man falling backward from a seated height suffers an impact that younger bones might survive.
18. The notice vehu shafat et-Yisra'el arba'im shanah ('and he had judged Israel forty years') serves as Eli's obituary — the conventional formula for a judge's tenure (cf. Judges 3:11, 5:31, 8:28). Forty years is a generation. Despite his failures with his sons, Eli served Israel for a full generational span.
19. Three blows strike Phinehas's wife simultaneously: the Ark's capture, her father-in-law's death, and her husband's death. The verb vattikhra ('she crouched, collapsed, bowed down') describes her body folding under the combined weight of grief and labor. The phrase ki-nehefkhu aleiha tsireiha ('because her labor pains turned upon her') uses the verb hafakh ('to turn, to overturn') — her contractions 'turned against her,' suggesting labor that

is violent and premature, triggered by shock.

19. The narrator lists the Ark first among the causes of her distress, maintaining the chapter's pattern: the Ark's fate is the supreme catastrophe, surpassing even personal bereavement.
20. The attending women (ha-nitsavot aleiha, 'the ones standing over her') offer the conventional consolation for a woman in dangerous labor: al-tir'i ki ven yaladt ('do not fear, for you have borne a son'). A son was the highest blessing — an heir, a future, a name preserved. But Phinehas's wife is beyond consolation.
20. The double negative velo antah velo satah libbah ('she did not answer and her heart did not attend') describes a woman who has retreated beyond human communication. The verb satah (from shit, 'to set, place, direct') means she did not set her heart toward the news — the birth of a son, normally the supreme joy, registers as nothing against the loss of the Ark. Her response mirrors Eli's: the Ark's fate eclipses personal loss.
21. The verb galah ('to depart, to go into exile, to be stripped bare') is the primary Hebrew verb for exile — it describes the forced removal of a population from its homeland. Using it for the kavod personifies God's glory as an exile, a captive carried away from its rightful place. This verb choice transforms the Ark's capture from a military event into a theological exile.
21. The narrator maintains the chapter's hierarchy of grief: the Ark is listed first (el-hillaqach aron ha-Elohim), then her father-in-law, then her husband. Even in dying, this woman's priorities mirror Eli's — the loss of God's presence outweighs the loss of family.
22. The repetition of galah kavod mi-Yisra'el ('the glory has gone into exile from Israel') from verse 21 functions as a refrain — a dying woman's last words fixed on a single, overwhelming reality. The simplification from verse 21 (which mentioned three causes) to verse 22 (which mentions only the Ark) reveals her theological clarity: the Ark's loss is the essential catastrophe. Everything else — her husband, her father-in-law, even the thirty thousand dead — is secondary to the departure of God's presence.
22. The chapter ends abruptly after her words. There is no transition, no narrator's comment, no resolution. The reader is left with the raw force of her declaration hanging in the air. The next chapter will show that the kavod is not destroyed — only displaced — but the narrator allows this chapter to close in total darkness.

5

Summary: *The Philistines capture the Ark of God and place it in the temple of Dagon at Ashdod. Dagon falls face-down before the Ark — twice — and the second time his head and hands break off at the threshold. The LORD strikes Ashdod with tumors, then Gath, then Ekron, as the Philistines desperately shuttle the Ark from city to city, unable to keep it and unable to escape its power.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter records one of the most theologically striking episodes in the Hebrew Bible: God fights entirely without Israel. The Ark has been captured, Israel is defeated and leaderless, and yet the LORD wages war against Philistia's chief deity and its cities single-handedly. Dagon's collapse before the Ark is not accidental — the verb 'fallen on his face' (nofel al panav) is the posture of worship, as if the idol is compelled to prostrate before the God it was supposed to have conquered. The second fall shatters Dagon, leaving only the 'fish-trunk' (dagon), his hands and head severed on the threshold — the deity is dismembered in his own house. The Philistines learn what Israel forgot in chapter 4: the Ark is not a talisman to be wielded but the throne of a God who acts on His own terms.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew word for the affliction in this chapter is debated. The Ketiv (written text) reads ofalim (meaning 'tumors, swellings'), while the Qere (reading tradition) substitutes techorim ('hemorrhoids' or 'tumors in the rectal area'). The LXX adds that mice ravaged the land, a detail absent from the MT but reflected in the guilt offering of golden mice in chapter 6. We render the term as 'tumors' — broad enough to cover the semantic range without importing a single medical diagnosis. The word miftan ('threshold') in verse 5 generates an etiological note about why Dagon's priests leap over the threshold rather than step on it — the narrator explains a custom still observed 'to this day,' which grounds the story in ongoing Philistine practice.*

Connections: *The humiliation of Dagon echoes the plagues of Egypt: once again a foreign god is exposed as powerless before the LORD (Exodus 12:12, Numbers 33:4). The Ark's journey through Philistine cities — Ashdod, Gath, Ekron — mirrors a plague narrative in miniature, with each city suffering until it sends the Ark away, just as Pharaoh suffered until he released Israel. The severing of Dagon's hands and head on the threshold inverts the Philistine victory of chapter 4; the captured 'trophy' destroys the captor's god. The Ekronites' cry 'They have brought the Ark of the God of Israel around to us to kill us' echoes the Egyptian cry during the tenth plague (Exodus 12:33).*

God's power does not depend on Israel's faithfulness, army, or even awareness — He acts to defend His own name.

¹The Philistines captured the Ark of God and brought it from Ebenezer to Ashdod. ²The Philistines took the Ark of God and brought it into the temple of Dagon, and they set it beside Dagon. ³When the people of Ashdod rose early the next morning, Dagon had fallen face-down on the ground before the Ark of the LORD. They picked Dagon up and put him back in his place. ⁴When they rose early the next morning, Dagon had again fallen face-down on the ground before the Ark of the LORD. The head of Dagon and both palms of his hands had been cut off on the threshold — only the trunk of Dagon remained. ⁵This is why the priests of Dagon and all who enter the temple of Dagon do not step on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod — to this day. ⁶The hand of the LORD was heavy on the people of Ashdod. He devastated them and struck them with tumors — both Ashdod and its surrounding territory. ⁷When the men of Ashdod saw what was happening, they said, "The Ark of the God of Israel must not remain with us, for His hand is harsh against us and against Dagon our god." ⁸They sent word and gathered all the tyrants of the Philistines to them and asked, "What should we do with the Ark of the God of Israel?" They answered, "Let the Ark of the God of Israel be moved to Gath." So they moved the Ark of the God of Israel there. ⁹After they moved it there, the hand of the LORD was against the city, causing a very great panic. He struck the men of the city, from the least to the greatest, and tumors broke out on them. ¹⁰So they sent the Ark of God to Ekron. But when the Ark of God arrived at Ekron, the Ekronites cried out, "They have brought the Ark of the God of Israel around to us to kill us and our people!" ¹¹The y sent word and gathered all the rulers of the Philistines and said, "Send the Ark of the God of Israel away — let it return to its own place so that it does not kill us and our people!" For a death-panic had gripped the entire city; the hand of God was very heavy there. ¹²The men who did not die were struck with tumors, and the cry of the city went up to heaven.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrative opens without transition from Israel's catastrophe in chapter 4. The Ark of God — the throne of the LORD's presence — is now in Philistine hands. The place name Ebenezer ('stone of help') carries bitter irony: the place named for divine help has become the site of divine absence. Ashdod was one of the five principal Philistine cities and home to a major temple of Dagon.
2. The verb *yatstigu* ('they set, stationed') implies deliberate placement as a trophy. In ancient warfare, capturing an enemy's cult object and displaying it in your own temple was a declaration that your god had defeated theirs. The Philistines are performing standard victory theology — and the narrator lets the reader feel the full weight of the insult before God responds.
2. Beit Dagon ('house/temple of Dagon') — Dagon was the chief deity of the Philistine pentapolis, likely a grain or fertility god. The name may derive from *dagan* ('grain') rather than *dag* ('fish'), though later tradition associated him with a fish-form.
3. The phrase *nofel lefanav artsah lifnei aron YHWH* ('fallen on his face to the ground before the Ark of the LORD') uses the vocabulary of worship prostration. The narrator presents the scene with theological precision: the conquered idol lies face-down before the Ark — the posture of submission, not accident. The people of Ashdod restore Dagon to his place, attempting to reassert their theology, but the next morning will prove the first fall was no coincidence.
3. Note the shift from 'Ark of God' (*aron ha'Elohim*) in verses 1-2 to 'Ark of the LORD' (*aron YHWH*) here. When God acts in power, the narrator uses the covenant name YHWH.
4. The verb *kerutot* ('cut off') is a passive participle suggesting deliberate severance, not accidental breakage. The head and palms are specifically named because they represent a deity's two essential functions: the head for wisdom and authority, the hands for power and action. Without them, the idol is literally incapable of anything — it can neither think nor do.
4. The phrase *raq dagon nish'ar alav* ('only the dagon remained on/of him') is ambiguous. Dagon here may refer to the trunk/torso of the idol, or it may be a wordplay on *dag* ('fish'), suggesting a fish-shaped lower body. The KJV renders 'the stump of Dagon'; we use 'trunk' to convey the torso without importing the fish interpretation, which remains uncertain.
5. This etiological note explains a living Philistine custom: priests and worshipers leap over the threshold rather than step on it. The narrator ties a known practice to Dagon's humiliation — every time a Philistine avoids that threshold, they unknowingly reenact their god's defeat. The phrase *hayom hazeh* ('to this day') anchors the narrative in the audience's observable reality.
5. The verb *yidrekhu* ('they tread, step on') from the root *d-r-k* can also mean 'to march upon' or 'to dominate.' The priests will not even place their feet on the spot where their god was dismembered — they treat the threshold as contaminated ground, though the narrator implies the contamination is Dagon's shame, not holiness.

6. The phrase *vattichbad yad YHWH* ('the hand of the LORD was heavy') echoes Exodus 9:3 where God's hand strikes Egypt's livestock. The verb *kavad* ('to be heavy') is the same root as *kavod* ('glory, weight'). The hand that carries glory also carries judgment — the weight of divine presence is unbearable for those who oppose it.
6. The Ketiv reads *ba'ofalim* (, 'tumors, swellings'), while the Qere tradition substitutes *batechorim* (, 'hemorrhoids' or 'tumors of the lower body'). The LXX adds a detail about mice devastating the land. We render as 'tumors' following the Ketiv, which has the broadest semantic range.
7. The Ashdodites reach the correct theological conclusion: the God of Israel is actively hostile to them and to Dagon. The phrase *qashtah yado* ('His hand is harsh/hard') uses the same root (q-sh-h) applied to Pharaoh's hardened heart. The Philistines recognize what Pharaoh resisted — this God's power is real and directed. Yet their response is not repentance but relocation: they will try to move the problem rather than submit to the God behind it.
8. The *seranim* (, 'rulers, lords') are the governors of the five Philistine cities — a political structure without parallel in Israel. The word *seren* may be related to the Greek *tyrannos*, reflecting Aegean origins of the Philistines. The decision to send the Ark to Gath is collective but futile: they treat the Ark like a political problem to be redistributed rather than a divine presence to be reckoned with.
8. The threefold repetition of *aron Elohei Yisrael* ('Ark of the God of Israel') in a single verse is emphatic — the narrator forces the reader to hear the full title again and again, as if the Philistines cannot stop talking about this object they cannot control.
9. The *mehumah gedolah me'od* ('very great panic/confusion') is the same word used for the divine terror God sends against Israel's enemies in holy war (cf. Deuteronomy 7:23, Joshua 10:10, 1 Samuel 7:10). This is the language of YHWH as warrior — the same God who routed Pharaoh's army now routs a Philistine city. God is waging holy war without Israel on the battlefield.
9. The phrase *miqqaton ve'ad gadol* ('from the least to the greatest') indicates the plague is total — no social class provides immunity. The Qere reading of *vayyisateru* ('they broke out') suggests the tumors erupted visibly and painfully.
10. The Ekronites' reaction is immediate terror — they cry out (*vayyiz'au*) before the plague even begins. The verb *za'au* is the same cry-of-distress used for Israel's outcry in Egypt (Exodus 2:23). The irony is devastating: the Philistines now cry out exactly as the Israelites once did, but there is no Moses to intercede for them, and the source of their suffering is the very God who delivered Israel.
10. The accusation *hesevu elai* ('they have brought around to me') uses the first person singular — the individual Ekronite voice breaks through the collective, expressing personal dread. This god kills wherever He goes, and they are next in line.
11. The phrase *mehumat mavet* ('death-panic, deadly confusion') combines the holy-war terror of *mehumah* with *mavet* ('death') — this is not mere illness but a city-wide encounter with mortality. The Philistine rulers are now begged to act, not consulted. The polite deliberation of verse 8 ('What should we do?') has been replaced by desperate imperative: 'Send it away!'
11. The final clause *kavdah me'od yad ha'Elohim sham* ('the hand of God was very heavy there') echoes verse 6 but escalates. The hand grows heavier with each city — Ashdod suffered, Gath suffered, and now Ekron faces death itself. The plague intensifies as the Philistines persist in keeping what does not belong to them.
12. The verse divides the population into two groups: the dead and the tumor-stricken. There is no third category of the unaffected — God's judgment reaches every person in the city. The brevity of this verse carries narrative force: no elaboration is needed. The facts speak.
12. The final phrase *vatta'al shav'at ha'ir hashamayim* ('and the cry of the city went up to heaven') echoes the cry of Sodom reaching God (Genesis 18:20-21) and Israel's cry in Egypt (Exodus 2:23). But here the irony is inverted: these are the oppressors crying out, not the oppressed. The structure of Exodus is playing out in miniature — with the Philistines in Pharaoh's role.

6

Summary: After seven months in Philistine territory, the Ark of God is returned to Israel. Philistine priests and diviners prescribe a guilt offering of five golden tumors and five golden mice — one for each Philistine lord — and devise a test using two nursing cows pulling a new cart. If the cows walk straight to Beth-shemesh against their instinct, the plague was from Israel's God. The cows go directly, confirming divine causation. The people of Beth-shemesh celebrate with sacrifices, but some look into the Ark and are struck down. The chapter ends with the terrified Israelites sending the Ark on to Kiriath-jearim.

*What Makes This Remarkable: This is one of the most theologically revealing episodes involving pagans in the Hebrew Bible. The Philistine priests instinctively reach for concepts that parallel Israelite sacrificial theology: they prescribe an *asham* (guilt offering), they speak of 'giving glory' (*kavod*) to Israel's God, and they reference the Exodus as a cautionary tale. Their theology is imperfect but real — they know enough to fear, enough to attempt atonement, and enough to design an empirical test that respects divine sovereignty. The cow-test is remarkable for its intellectual honesty: the Philistines*

build in a falsification condition. If the cows turn back to their calves, the plague was coincidence. They are willing to be wrong. Meanwhile, the Israelites at Beth-shemesh, who should know better, treat the Ark with less reverence than the Philistines did.

Translation Friction: The number struck at Beth-shemesh in verse 19 varies dramatically across manuscripts: the Masoretic Text reads 'seventy men, fifty thousand men' — a syntactically awkward combination that most scholars consider a textual corruption (Beth-shemesh was far too small for fifty thousand inhabitants). We render the number as the MT preserves it but note the difficulty. The word ophalim (tumors/growths) in verses 4-5 has traditionally been rendered 'emerods' (hemorrhoids), but the Septuagint and the connection with mice suggest bubonic swellings — plague tumors. The verb hishqif (to look into/at) in verse 19 is debated: did the men of Beth-shemesh look inside the Ark or merely gaze at it? The preposition be- can support either reading.

Connections: The Philistines' reference to the Exodus (v6) places this episode in direct conversation with Exodus 7-14 — foreign rulers who 'hardened their hearts' and paid the price. The guilt offering (asham) prescribed by pagan priests anticipates the same term's technical use in Leviticus 5-7, showing that the instinct for reparation-atonement transcends Israel's formal system. The Ark's journey from Philistia to Beth-shemesh to Kiriath-jearim traces a path that will not end until David brings it to Jerusalem in 2 Samuel 6 — another journey marked by both celebration and sudden death. The striking of the Beth-shemesh men echoes Nadab and Abihu (Leviticus 10) and Uzzah (2 Samuel 6:7): proximity to God's holiness without proper reverence is lethal regardless of whether the offenders are Israelite or Philistine.

¹The Ark of the LORD was in Philistine territory for seven months. ²The Philistines summoned their priests and diviners and asked, "What should we do with the Ark of the LORD? Tell us how we should send it back to its place." ³They said, "If you are sending back the Ark of the God of Israel, do not send it away empty. You must return a guilt offering to him. Then you will be healed, and you will understand why his hand has not turned away from you." ⁴They asked, "What guilt offering should we return to him?" They answered, "Five golden tumors and five golden mice — matching the number of the Philistine lords — because the same plague struck all of you and your lords." ⁵Make images of your tumors and images of your mice that are destroying the land, and give glory to the God of Israel. Perhaps he will lift his hand from you, from your gods, and from your land. ⁶Why would you harden your hearts the way Egypt and Pharaoh hardened theirs? After he dealt harshly with them, they sent the people away and they left. ⁷"Now then, take and prepare one new cart and two nursing cows that have never worn a yoke. Hitch the cows to the cart and take their calves away from them back to the pen. ⁸Then take the Ark of the LORD and place it on the cart. Put the golden objects that you are returning to him as a guilt offering in a chest beside it. Send it off and let it go. ⁹Then watch: if it goes up the road toward its own territory, to Beth-shemesh, then he is the one who brought this great disaster on us. But if not, we will know that it was not his hand that struck us — it was just something that happened to us by chance." ¹⁰The men did exactly that. They took two nursing cows and hitched them to the cart, and they penned up their calves at home. ¹¹They placed the Ark of the LORD on the cart, along with the chest containing the golden mice and the images of their tumors. ¹²The cows went straight down the road toward Beth-shemesh. They kept to one highway, lowing as they went, and did not turn right or left. The Philistine lords walked behind them all the way to the border of Beth-shemesh. ¹³The people of Beth-shemesh were harvesting wheat in the valley. They looked up, saw the Ark, and rejoiced at the sight. ¹⁴The cart came into the field of Joshua the Beth-shemite and stopped there beside a large stone. They split the wood of the cart and offered the cows as a burnt offering to the LORD. ¹⁵The Levites took down the Ark of the LORD and the chest that was with it, which held the golden objects, and set them on the large stone. The men of Beth-shemesh offered burnt offerings and made sacrifices to the LORD that day. ¹⁶The five Philistine lords watched all of this and returned to Ekron that same day. ¹⁷These are the golden tumors the Philistines returned as a guilt offering to the LORD: one for Ashdod, one for Gaza, one for Ashkelon, one for Gath, one for Ekron — ¹⁸The golden mice matched the number of all the Philistine cities belonging to the five lords — from fortified city to unwalled village. The great stone on which they set the Ark of the LORD remains to this day in the field of Joshua the Beth-shemite. ¹⁹He struck down some of the men of Beth-shemesh because they looked into the Ark of the LORD. He struck down seventy men — fifty thousand men — and the people mourned because the LORD had struck the people with a terrible blow. ²⁰The men of Beth-shemesh said,

"Who can stand in the presence of the LORD, this holy God? And to whom will he go up from us?" ²¹They sent messengers to the people of Kiriath-jearim, saying, "The Philistines have returned the Ark of the LORD. Come down and take it up to your city."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrative resumes directly from chapter 5, where the Ark caused devastation in Ashdod, Gath, and Ekron. The phrase bisedeh Felishtim ('in the field/territory of the Philistines') uses sadeh in its broad sense of 'open country, territory' — the Ark was not confined to one city but had been passed from place to place during these seven months. Seven months is long enough to confirm that the plagues were not coincidence but pattern.
2. The Philistines consult kohanim (priests) and qosemim (diviners) — their own religious specialists. The term qosem ('diviner') is elsewhere condemned in Israelite law (Deuteronomy 18:10), but here the narrative simply records Philistine practice without editorial comment. The question mah-na'aseh ('what should we do?') reveals genuine theological anxiety — they recognize they are dealing with a power they do not control. The phrase neshallechenu limqomo ('we shall send it to its place') already assumes the Ark must be returned; the only question is protocol.
3. The infinitive absolute hashev tashivu ('returning you must return') conveys emphatic obligation — this is not optional. The term asham ('guilt offering') is striking in a Philistine context; it is the technical term for the reparation offering in Leviticus 5:14-6:7, prescribed when someone trespasses against sancta (holy things). The Philistines have, in effect, violated sacred property. The conditional 'then you will be healed' (az teraf'u) links atonement to physical healing — a theology of causation that runs through the Hebrew Bible.
4. The ophalim (rendered 'tumors'; KJV 'emerods') are swellings or growths — likely bubonic swellings given the association with mice/rats. The Septuagint makes the rodent-plague connection more explicit. Five of each matches the five Philistine city-lords (sarnim, a non-Semitic title unique to Philistine rulers — possibly related to Greek tyrannos). The golden replicas function as sympathetic magic: by crafting images of the affliction and sending them away with the Ark, the Philistines hope to send the plague itself away. The logic is: represent the disease, offer it to the offended deity, and the disease departs with the offering.
5. The verb netattem kavod ('give glory/weight') uses the same kavod that described God's presence in the Ark (the 'glory' departed Israel in 4:21-22). The Philistines are being asked to return the honor they stripped from Israel's God by capturing his Ark. The phrase ulai yaqel et-yado ('perhaps he will lighten his hand') uses the root q-l-l, the opposite of k-v-d ('heavy/glory') — a wordplay: give him weight/glory, and perhaps he will make his hand light. The triad 'from you, from your gods, from your land' indicates total systemic judgment — personal, religious, and agricultural.
6. The verb tekabbedu ('you harden') shares the root k-v-d with kavod ('glory') from verse 5 — a sustained wordplay throughout the Philistine priests' speech: give God kavod (weight/glory) rather than giving your hearts koved (heaviness/hardness). The Philistines' knowledge of the Exodus (ka'asher kibbdu Mitsrayim uFar'oh et-libbam) demonstrates that the Exodus story had spread beyond Israel's borders as a cautionary tale. The verb hit'allel ('dealt harshly, made sport of') is the same verb used in Exodus 10:2 where God says he 'made a mockery of' Egypt.
7. Every detail of the test is designed to stack the odds against a divine explanation. The cart is new (chadashah) — never used for any purpose, eliminating the possibility that the cows know the route from habit. The cows are nursing mothers (parot alot, literally 'suckling cows') whose calves will be taken away — every instinct will pull them back toward their young, not forward toward Israel. They have never worn a yoke (lo alah aleihem ol) — they are untrained, unbroken animals who have no habit of pulling a cart in any direction. If these cows walk straight to Beth-shemesh, it cannot be explained naturally.
8. The golden offerings are placed in an argaz ('chest, coffer') beside the Ark — not inside it. The Philistines maintain a physical distinction between the Ark itself and their offering. The word argaz appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, suggesting it may be a Philistine loanword. The instruction veshilachtem oto vehalakh ('send it and it will go') is deliberately open-ended — no driver, no guide. The Ark's journey will be entirely self-directed, or rather, divinely directed.
9. Beth-shemesh ('House of the Sun') was an Israelite town on the border with Philistia, in the Sorek Valley — the nearest Israelite settlement. The phrase derekh gevulo ('the road toward its territory') treats the Ark as having a home territory it might seek. The word miqreh ('chance, accident') from the root q-r-h ('to happen, to encounter') is the Philistines' null hypothesis — if the test fails, the plagues were random events, not divine punishment. This is one of the few places in the Hebrew Bible where characters explicitly consider a non-theological explanation for events.
10. The verb kalu ('shut up, confined') emphasizes the deliberate separation of mothers from calves — maximizing the pull of instinct against the direction the Ark needs to travel. The narrative's spare, factual style — 'the men did so' (vayya'asu ha'anashim ken) — heightens the tension. Every element of the test is now in place.
11. The word techoreihem ('their tumors') uses a different form than ophalim in verse 4 — techorim is the Qere (read) form while ophalim is the Ketiv (written) form. Both refer to the same swellings. The Masoretes apparently considered techorim the more appropriate term for public reading. The careful arrangement — Ark on the cart, chest beside it — mirrors the instructions given in verse 8.
12. The verb vayisharnah (from y-sh-r, 'to be straight, direct') is the key word — these cows went 'straight' against every natural impulse. The infinitive absolute halokh vega'o ('going and lowing') captures simultaneous action: they walked and moaned at the same time — driven forward by divine compulsion while crying out from maternal instinct. The phrase lo saru yamin usmol ('they did not turn right or left') echoes Deuteronomy's language for covenant faithfulness (Deut 5:32, 17:11, 28:14). The five Philistine lords (sarnim) follow as witnesses — the test must be observed to be valid.

13. The wheat harvest places this in late May or early June — about seven months after the Ark's capture (which occurred around the autumn battles). The scene is pastoral and ordinary: farmers in a valley, working the harvest, who suddenly look up and see the Ark of God approaching on a driverless cart pulled by lowing cows. The verb *vayismechu* ('they rejoiced') is immediate and natural — the God of Israel's throne-seat is coming home. The valley (*emeq*) of Beth-shemesh is the Sorek Valley, the natural route from Philistia into the Judean hills.
14. The cart stops of its own accord (*vatta'amod sham*) in a specific field belonging to a man named Joshua (*Yehoshua*, 'the LORD saves') — a name that resonates given the context of God's salvation of his own Ark. The large stone (*even gedolah*) becomes an impromptu altar. The people use the cart's wood as fuel and the cows themselves as the burnt offering (*olah*) — everything that carried the Ark is consecrated by sacrifice. Nothing that served this holy purpose returns to ordinary use. The cows that obeyed God against their nature are now given entirely to God.
15. Beth-shemesh was a Levitical city (*Joshua 21:16*), which explains the presence of Levites to handle the Ark — a detail that shows the narrative's awareness of proper protocol. The Levites remove the Ark (*horidu*, 'brought down') and place it on the great stone. The men of the town then offer additional burnt offerings (*olot*) and fellowship sacrifices (*zevachim*) — a spontaneous festival of worship. The phrase *bayyom hahu* ('on that day') marks the event as historically specific and memorable.
16. The Philistine lords have seen enough. They followed the cows to the border (*v12*), witnessed the Ark's arrival, and now return to Ekron — the last Philistine city to hold the Ark (*5:10*). The verb *ra'u* ('they saw') is simple but loaded: they witnessed the test's result with their own eyes. There is no reported reaction — no speech, no worship, no defiance. The narrative simply records their silent departure. Their test has been answered; Israel's God sent the plague.
17. The catalog of five cities — Ashdod, Gaza, Ashkelon, Gath, Ekron — is the standard list of the Philistine pentapolis, each governed by its own *seren* (lord). Each city contributes one golden tumor, acknowledging its share in the collective guilt. The list reads like a legal document recording the terms of reparation — each party named, each contribution specified.
18. This verse expands the scope of the offering: the five golden tumors corresponded to the five lords, but the golden mice corresponded to all the cities — fortified (*ir mivtsar*) and rural (*kofer haperazi*, 'the open village'). The plague of mice affected the entire agricultural territory. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') is the narrator's voice, writing from a later period when the stone was still a known landmark. Some scholars read *avel hagedolah* ('the great Abel/stone of mourning') as a reference to the grief that will follow in verse 19, but it may simply be a place-name or a descriptive term for the large stone.
19. The verb *ra'u ba'aron* ('they looked into/at the Ark') uses the preposition *be-* which can mean either 'into' or 'at.' The Targum Jonathan interprets this as gazing at the Ark disrespectfully. Regardless of the exact nature of the offense, the principle is consistent throughout Samuel: the Ark's holiness does not discriminate between Israelite and Philistine, between curiosity and hostility. The number 'seventy men, fifty thousand men' (*shiv'im ish chamishim elef ish*) is syntactically anomalous — no conjunction connects the two numbers. Josephus (*Antiquities 6.1.4*) gives seventy. The grief of the people (*vayit'abbelu*) mirrors the Philistines' distress — both peoples learn that proximity to the Ark is dangerous.
20. The phrase *YHWH ha'Elohim haqqadosh hazzeh* ('the LORD, this holy God') piles up divine titles to express the overwhelming otherness the people now feel. The adjective *qadosh* ('holy') means fundamentally 'set apart, other, dangerous in its purity.' The verb *ya'aleh* ('will go up') anticipates the Ark's continued journey uphill into the Judean highlands — ultimately to Kiriath-jearim. Beth-shemesh, a border town in the lowlands, sends the Ark further into Israelite territory, distancing themselves from its lethal holiness.
21. Kiriath-jearim ('City of Forests') sits higher in the Judean hills, about ten miles from Beth-shemesh. The verbs *redu* ('come down') and *ha'alu* ('bring up') reflect the topography: Beth-shemesh is in the lowland Sorek Valley, Kiriath-jearim in the highlands. The Ark will remain at Kiriath-jearim for twenty years (*7:2*) until David retrieves it — a remarkably long hiatus during which Israel's central sacred object sits in a private home rather than a sanctuary. The chapter ends not with triumph but with a handoff driven by fear. The Ark has come home, but no one knows how to live with it.

7

Summary: *The Ark arrives at Kiriath-jearim and stays for twenty years while Israel languishes under Philistine domination. Samuel calls the nation to a radical return — put away foreign gods, direct your hearts to the LORD alone, and he will deliver you. Israel gathers at Mizpah for fasting and confession. The Philistines attack the assembly, but the LORD thunders against them and Israel routs them from Mizpah to below Beth-car. Samuel sets up a stone and names it Ebenezer — 'the stone of help' — declaring, 'Up to this point the LORD has helped us.' Samuel serves as judge over Israel for the rest of his life, riding a circuit through Bethel, Gilgal, and Mizpah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks the hinge between the Ark narrative (chapters 4-6) and the monarchy narrative (chapters 8-12). It is the last chapter in which Israel's system works as designed: a prophet calls for repentance, the people respond, God delivers, and a judge administers justice. Everything that follows — the demand for a king, the rise of Saul, the anointing of David — flows from the inability to sustain what happens here. Samuel is the last shofet, the final judge, and this chapter is his finest hour. The Ebenezer stone is particularly poignant because the name Ebenezer*

appeared earlier in 4:1 as the site of Israel's devastating defeat. The place of disaster becomes the place of memorial — same name, opposite outcome.

Translation Friction: *The twenty-year gap in verse 2 is historically difficult: Samuel's public ministry seems to begin after this period, but the text does not explain what happened during those two decades. The phrase vayyinnahu kol-bet Yisra'el acharei YHWH ('all the house of Israel lamented/yearned after the LORD') uses a verb (n-h-h) whose exact meaning is debated — 'to lament,' 'to be drawn toward,' or 'to turn.' We render it as 'turned in longing' to capture the sense of national grief turning toward God. The verb in verse 6, vayyish'avu mayim vayyishpeku lifnei YHWH ('they drew water and poured it out before the LORD'), describes a ritual not prescribed anywhere in the Torah — a water-pouring ceremony that may represent tears, humility, or life poured out before God. Its exact significance is uncertain.*

Connections: *The call to 'return to the LORD with all your heart' (v3) echoes Deuteronomy 30:2-10, where Moses promised that even after exile, a wholehearted return would bring restoration. Samuel is enacting Deuteronomy's restoration theology. The removal of Baals and Ashtarothe (v3-4) connects to the recurring cycle in Judges where foreign gods provoke divine judgment and repentance brings deliverance (Judges 2:11-19, 10:6-16). The thunder theophany (v10) recalls Exodus 19:16 at Sinai and anticipates the thunder that will accompany Samuel's rebuke of Israel for demanding a king (12:17-18). The Ebenezer memorial stone parallels Joshua's memorial stones at Gilgal (Joshua 4:20-24) — physical markers that anchor national memory to specific acts of divine intervention.*

¹The men of Kiriath-jearim came and brought up the Ark of the LORD. They took it to the house of Abinadab on the hill and consecrated his son Eleazar to guard the Ark of the LORD. ²From the day the Ark settled in Kiriath-jearim, a long time passed — twenty years. Then all the house of Israel turned in longing toward the LORD. ³Samuel said to all the house of Israel, "If you are returning to the LORD with your whole heart, then remove the foreign gods from among you — and the Ashtarothe — and direct your hearts toward the LORD and serve him alone. Then he will rescue you from the hand of the Philistines." ⁴So the Israelites removed the Baals and the Ashtarothe and served the LORD alone. ⁵Samuel said, "Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to the LORD on your behalf." ⁶They assembled at Mizpah, drew water, and poured it out before the LORD. They fasted that day and declared there, "We have sinned against the LORD." And Samuel judged the Israelites at Mizpah. ⁷When the Philistines heard that the Israelites had assembled at Mizpah, the Philistine lords marched up against Israel. When the Israelites heard this, they were terrified of the Philistines. ⁸The Israelites said to Samuel, "Do not stop crying out to the LORD our God for us, so that he will save us from the hand of the Philistines." ⁹Samuel took a nursing lamb — one animal — and offered it as a whole burnt offering to the LORD. Samuel cried out to the LORD on behalf of Israel, and the LORD answered him. ¹⁰While Samuel was offering the burnt offering, the Philistines advanced to attack Israel. But the LORD thundered with a tremendous voice that day against the Philistines and threw them into confusion, and they were routed before Israel. ¹¹The men of Israel charged out from Mizpah and pursued the Philistines, striking them down all the way to below Beth-car. ¹²Then Samuel took a stone and placed it between Mizpah and Shen. He named it Ebenezer — "Stone of Help" — and declared, "Up to this point, the LORD has helped us." ¹³The Philistines were subdued and no longer entered Israelite territory. The hand of the LORD was against the Philistines throughout all the days of Samuel. ¹⁴The cities that the Philistines had captured from Israel were returned to Israel, from Ekron to Gath, and Israel recovered the surrounding territory from Philistine control. There was also peace between Israel and the Amorites. ¹⁵Samuel judged Israel for the rest of his life. ¹⁶He would travel on a circuit year after year through Bethel, Gilgal, and Mizpah, and he judged Israel at all these places. ¹⁷His home base was Ramah, because that was where his house was. There too he judged Israel, and there he built an altar to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Kiriath-jearim is in the Judean highlands, hence the verb vayya'alu ('they brought up') — the Ark ascends in elevation. Abinadab's house baggivah ('on the hill') provides a prominent location, though this is a private home, not a sanctuary. The verb qiddesh ('consecrated, set apart') applied to Eleazar indicates formal dedication for sacred duty — the same root as qadosh ('holy'). After the deaths at Beth-shemesh, someone must be ritually prepared to be in the Ark's proximity. The Ark's placement in a private home rather than at Shiloh (which may already be destroyed — see Jeremiah 7:12, 26:6) signals the collapse of Israel's central worship infrastructure.

2. The phrase *vayyirbu hayyamim* ('the days multiplied') conveys not just duration but accumulation — time piling up, heaviness building. Twenty years (*esrim shanah*) bridges the Ark narrative to Samuel's public ministry. The verb *vayyinnahu* is a hapax form in this context; its root *n-h-h* appears elsewhere meaning 'to lament' or 'to wail' (Ezekiel 32:18), but here with *acharei YHWH* ('after/toward the LORD') it takes on a directional sense — Israel's grief oriented itself toward God rather than remaining aimless. Some scholars connect it to Arabic cognates meaning 'to turn, to incline.'
3. The verb *shavim* ('returning') is the participial form of *shuv* — the Hebrew Bible's primary word for repentance (*teshuvah*). Samuel's use of the participle implies an ongoing process, not a completed act: 'if you are in the act of returning.' The phrase *bekhol-levavkhem* ('with your whole heart') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5) and Deuteronomy 30:2. The *Ashtaroth* (plural of *Ashtoreth*) were Canaanite fertility goddesses associated with Baal worship. The verb *hakhinu* ('prepare, establish, direct') from the root *k-w-n* means to fix firmly in place — hearts must not merely feel but be structurally oriented toward God. The phrase *iv'duhu levaddo* ('serve him alone') is absolute exclusivity — not 'primarily' but 'only.'
4. The narrative records immediate compliance with no resistance or qualification — a rarity in Israel's story. The *Baals* (*be'alim*, plural of *Ba'al*, 'lord, master') were local Canaanite storm and fertility deities, often worshiped at high places. The *Ashtaroth* (plural of *Ashtoreth*) were their female counterparts. The phrase *vayya'avdu et-YHWH levaddo* ('they served the LORD alone') directly echoes Samuel's demand in verse 3 (*iv'duhu levaddo*). Israel does exactly what Samuel required. The simplicity of the verse — command given, command obeyed — contrasts with the long cycles of partial obedience in Judges.
5. *Mizpah* (*hammitspatah*, 'the watchtower') was a significant assembly site in Benjamin's territory, about eight miles north of Jerusalem. It served as a gathering point in Judges 20:1 for inter-tribal assembly. Samuel's role as intercessor — 'I will pray on your behalf' (*etpallel ba'adkhem*) — places him in the mediatorial tradition of Moses (Exodus 32:11-14, Numbers 14:13-19). The hitpael form of *p-l-l* (*etpallel*) suggests intense, sustained intercession, not casual petition. Samuel positions himself as the bridge between a repentant people and their God.
6. The water-pouring ceremony (*vayyish'avu mayim vayyishpekhu lifnei YHWH*) has no parallel in Torah legislation. David's later act of pouring out water in 2 Samuel 23:16 involves water from Bethlehem's well poured as a libation — but the context differs. Some scholars see this as a rain-petition ritual; others as symbolic of helplessness (cf. 2 Samuel 14:14, 'we are like water poured out on the ground'). The confession *chatanu laYHWH* ('we have sinned against the LORD') is direct and unqualified — no excuses, no mitigating circumstances. The verb *vayyishpot* ('he judged') marks Samuel's formal assumption of the *shofet* role, the last in the line from Othniel through Samson.
7. The Philistines interpret Israel's assembly as a military muster — and from a political standpoint, any large gathering of a subject people would be threatening. The verb *vayya'alu* ('they went up') indicates the Philistines marched from the coastal plain up into the central hill country. The Israelites' fear (*vayyir'u mippenei Felishtim*) is realistic: their last major engagement with the Philistines resulted in the devastating defeat at Ebenezer-Aphek (chapter 4) where thirty thousand fell and the Ark was captured. The fear is historically grounded — they have reason to be afraid. The assembly at Mizpah was for repentance, not for war.
8. The plea *al-tachresh mimmenu* ('do not be silent from us') uses the root *ch-r-sh*, which means 'to be silent, to cease speaking.' Israel begs Samuel not to stop interceding — not to fall silent. This is a dramatic reversal from Judges-era patterns where Israel typically reached for weapons first and prayer second. Here the people's instinct is right: they turn to the prophet and ask him to keep praying. The phrase *YHWH Eloheinu* ('the LORD our God') with the first-person plural possessive is itself an act of faith — they are claiming covenant relationship with the God they have just confessed to betraying.
9. The offering is deliberately modest: a single nursing lamb (*teleh chalav*, literally 'a milk lamb' — still suckling, therefore young and small). This is not a grand sacrificial spectacle but a simple, whole-hearted offering. The word *kalil* ('whole, complete') emphasizes that the entire animal was consumed on the altar — nothing held back, nothing eaten by the worshiper. The verb *vayyiz'aq* ('he cried out') is the same verb used for Israel's desperate cries in Judges (Judges 3:9, 3:15, 6:7, 10:10). The final clause — *vayyya'anehu YHWH* ('and the LORD answered him') — is the theological turning point of the chapter. Three words that change everything: God heard and responded.
10. The participle *ma'aleh ha'olah* ('offering up the burnt offering') indicates the sacrifice is still in progress when the Philistines attack — the timing is simultaneous. The verb *vayyar'em* ('he thundered') from the root *r-'-m* is used for divine thunder in Psalm 18:14 and 2 Samuel 22:14, where it functions as God's battle-cry. The phrase *beqol-gadol* ('with a great/loud voice') personifies the thunder as God's voice — this is not weather but warfare. The verb *vayyehumem* ('he confused/panicked them') appears in Exodus 14:24 (the Egyptian army at the sea), Joshua 10:10 (the Amorites at Gibeon), and Judges 4:15 (Sisera's army) — it is the technical term for divine battle-panic that precedes military rout.
11. The verb *vayyetse'u* ('they went out') indicates a deliberate sortie — Israel left the assembly point and became the aggressor. The pursuit goes *ad-mittachat levet kar* ('to below Beth-car'), a location whose exact site is uncertain. The name *Beth-car* ('house of the lamb/pasture') is otherwise unattested in the Hebrew Bible. The phrase *mittachat* ('from below, below') indicates downhill movement — the Philistines were driven from the hill country back toward the coastal lowlands, a reversal of their uphill advance in verse 7. The rout covers significant distance, indicating total Philistine collapse.
12. The name *Even Ha'ezer* is composed of *even* ('stone') and *ezer* ('help') — 'stone of help.' The location 'between Mizpah and Shen' (*hashshen*, 'the tooth' or 'the crag') places the memorial at a specific geographic point. The phrase *ad hennah* ('up to here, up to this point') is both spatial and temporal — this stone marks both the place and the moment where God's help was manifest. The verb *azaranu* ('he has helped us') uses the root *'-z-r*, the same root in *ezer* — 'help.' The first Ebenezer in 4:1 was a campsite name with no recorded etymology; Samuel now gives the name theological content by connecting it explicitly to divine aid.

13. The verb *vayyikkan'u* ('they were subdued, humbled') from the root *k-n-* indicates enforced submission — the Philistines were brought low. The phrase *velo yasfu od lavo* ('they did not continue again to come') uses the construction *yasaf* + infinitive for cessation of repeated action — they stopped coming. This is a summary statement covering the rest of Samuel's active judgeship. The phrase *yad-YHWH baPlishti'm* ('the hand of the LORD was against the Philistines') echoes the same 'hand of the LORD' that afflicted the Philistines while they held the Ark (5:6, 5:9, 5:11). The hand that struck them in judgment now restrains them in protection of Israel — same hand, different function.
14. The verb *vattashovnah* ('they returned') uses *shuv* — the same root as the *teshuvah* (repentance) of verse 3. Israel returned to God, and the cities returned to Israel — the wordplay links spiritual restoration to territorial restoration. The range 'from Ekron to Gath' (*me'Eqrone ve'ad-Gat*) represents the eastern edge of Philistine territory closest to Israel — not a conquest of Philistia but a recovery of the disputed border zone. The mention of peace with the Amorites (*ha'Emori*) is unexpected; the term may function here as a general designation for the pre-Israelite Canaanite population, indicating that the era of Samuel's judgeship brought comprehensive regional stability.
15. The phrase *kol yemei chayyav* ('all the days of his life') indicates lifelong service — Samuel never retired, never abdicated. The verb *vayyishpot* ('he judged') encompasses more than legal decisions: it includes military leadership, spiritual guidance, and administrative governance. This summary statement positions Samuel alongside the great judges while also setting up the transition: Samuel will judge Israel 'all his days,' but his sons will not follow in his footsteps (8:1-3), and the people will demand a king. The verse reads as both tribute and elegy — the last judge served faithfully, and the system died with him.
16. Samuel's judicial circuit (*savav*, 'to go around, to make a circuit') through three towns — Bethel, Gilgal, and Mizpah — establishes an itinerant governance model. Each site carries theological weight: Bethel ('house of God') was the site of Jacob's vision (Genesis 28:19); Gilgal was Joshua's first camp in the promised land (Joshua 4:19-20); Mizpah was the assembly site of this chapter's victory. The phrase *middei shanah beshanah* ('from year to year, annually') indicates a regular, reliable pattern. Samuel brings justice to the people rather than requiring the people to come to a central location — a model suited to a period without a functioning central sanctuary.
17. The word *uteshuvato* ('and his return') uses the same root *shuv* that has appeared throughout this chapter — Samuel's physical return to Ramah after each circuit echoes the spiritual return (*teshuvah*) he called Israel to in verse 3. Ramah (*haramatah*, 'the height') was Samuel's birthplace (1:19) and becomes his permanent base. The building of an altar (*mizbeiach*) at Ramah is significant: Samuel constructs a place of sacrifice at his home, not at a central sanctuary. This reflects the fractured state of Israelite worship after Shiloh's apparent destruction. Samuel functions as prophet, judge, and priest — offering sacrifices, rendering judgments, and speaking God's word — all from his home in Ramah.

8

Summary: *Samuel has grown old and appointed his sons as judges over Israel, but they are corrupt — taking bribes and perverting justice. The elders of Israel gather at Ramah and demand that Samuel appoint a king 'like all the nations.' Samuel is grieved, but God tells him to listen to the people, explaining that they have not rejected Samuel but rejected God himself as their king. God instructs Samuel to warn them solemnly about the 'ways of the king' (*mishpat ha-melekh*) — a detailed catalog of royal extraction: conscription of sons and daughters, seizure of fields and vineyards, taxation of flocks and grain. The chapter ends with the people refusing to listen, insisting they want a king to judge them and fight their battles, and God telling Samuel to grant their request.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the hinge point of Israel's political theology. The demand for a king is not presented as inherently sinful — God will, in fact, grant the request — but it is framed as a rejection of divine kingship. God's response to Samuel in verse 7 is extraordinary in its vulnerability: 'They have not rejected you; they have rejected me from being king over them.' The God who delivered them from Egypt, who parted the sea and fed them in the wilderness, now finds himself voted out by popular demand. The *mishpat ha-melekh* (verses 11-18) is not prophecy in the usual sense but sociological realism — Samuel describes what every ancient Near Eastern monarchy actually did. The warning is not 'this might happen' but 'this is what kings are.' Most striking is that God does not override the people's free will. He instructs Samuel to warn them, but when they persist, he says: give them what they want. The theology here is that God sometimes grants requests that grieve him, allowing human choices to play out with their full consequences.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter raises a tension that runs through the rest of Samuel-Kings: is monarchy good or bad? Here the demand is framed negatively — as rejection of God. Yet God himself will later choose David, call him 'a man after my own heart,' and establish an eternal covenant with his dynasty. The resolution is not that kingship itself is wrong, but that the motivation — 'like all the nations' (*kekol hagoyim*) — represents a fundamental misunderstanding of Israel's identity. They were constituted as unlike the nations. The phrase *mishpat ha-melekh* is also ambiguous: does it mean 'the just right of the king' (what a king is legally entitled to do) or 'the way kings behave' (a descriptive warning)? The word *mishpat* can mean*

both 'justice/right' and 'custom/manner,' and the ambiguity may be intentional — what kings claim as their right is precisely what makes them dangerous.

Connections: The demand for a king 'like all the nations' echoes Deuteronomy 17:14-20, where Moses anticipated this request and set conditions for kingship: the king must be chosen by God, must not accumulate horses or wives or wealth, and must write a personal copy of the Torah. The people in 1 Samuel 8 want a king but show no interest in these safeguards. Samuel's warning about sons taken for chariots and daughters taken for perfumers anticipates Solomon's reign precisely (1 Kings 4-10), where conscription, taxation, and forced labor fulfilled every detail. The phrase 'rejected me from being king over them' (v7) connects backward to Judges 8:23, where Gideon refused kingship saying 'The LORD shall rule over you,' and forward to 1 Samuel 12:12, where Samuel reminds them 'the LORD your God was your king.' The cry 'you will cry out because of your king' (v18) inverts the Exodus pattern — in Egypt they cried out under a foreign king and God answered; under their own chosen king, God will not answer.

¹When Samuel grew old, he appointed his sons as judges over Israel. ²The name of his firstborn was Joel, and the name of his second son was Abijah. They served as judges in Beer-sheba. ³But his sons did not walk in his ways. They chased dishonest profit, took bribes, and twisted justice. ⁴All the elders of Israel gathered together and came to Samuel at Ramah. ⁵They said to him, "Look — you have grown old, and your sons do not walk in your ways. Now appoint a king to govern us, like all the other nations." ⁶The demand was wrong in Samuel's eyes — when they said, "Give us a king to govern us." So Samuel prayed to the LORD. ⁷The LORD said to Samuel, "Listen to the voice of the people in everything they say to you. It is not you they have rejected — it is me they have rejected from being king over them." ⁸This follows the pattern of everything they have done from the day I brought them up out of Egypt to this very day — abandoning me and serving other gods. That is what they are doing to you as well. ⁹So now, listen to their voice. But you must solemnly warn them and declare to them the ways of the king who will reign over them." ¹⁰Samuel relayed all the words of the LORD to the people who were asking him for a king. ¹¹He said, "This is how the king who reigns over you will operate: He will take your sons and assign them to his chariots and his cavalry, and they will run ahead of his chariots. ¹²He will appoint them as commanders of thousands and commanders of fifties, and to plow his fields and harvest his crops, and to manufacture his weapons and his chariot equipment. ¹³He will take your daughters as perfumers, cooks, and bakers. ¹⁴He will take your fields, your vineyards, and your best olive groves, and give them to his officials. ¹⁵He will tax a tenth of your grain and your vintage and give it to his court officials and his servants. ¹⁶He will take your male servants, your female servants, your best young men, and your donkeys, and put them to work for himself. ¹⁷He will take a tenth of your flocks. And you yourselves will become his servants." ¹⁸When that day comes, you will cry out because of the king you chose for yourselves, but the LORD will not answer you on that day. ¹⁹But the people refused to listen to Samuel's voice. They said, "No! There will be a king over us. ²⁰We will be like all the other nations. Our king will govern us, march out ahead of us, and fight our battles." ²¹Samuel listened to everything the people said and repeated it in the hearing of the LORD. ²²The LORD said to Samuel, "Listen to their voice and install a king for them." Then Samuel said to the men of Israel, "Go, each of you, back to your city."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *zaqen* ('grew old') signals a leadership transition crisis — the same kind that opened the book with Eli's aging. Samuel repeats the pattern he witnessed: an aging leader whose sons will not carry the mantle faithfully. The phrase *vayasem et-banav shofetim* ('he set his sons as judges') uses the same root *sh-f-t* that has defined Israel's governance since the period of the Judges. Samuel is not establishing a dynasty; the office of judge was not hereditary. That he attempts to make it so reflects the subtle drift toward institutionalized power that will culminate in the demand for a king.
2. Joel means 'the LORD is God' and Abijah means 'my father is the LORD' — both theophoric names expressing Samuel's devotion, which makes their corruption all the more painful. Beer-sheba is in the far south of Israel, the opposite end of the country from Samuel's base at Ramah in the north. This geographic distance may have contributed to the sons' corruption — they were far from their father's oversight. The placement at Beer-sheba also means Samuel was attempting to extend judicial coverage across all Israel, from Ramah to Beer-sheba, the traditional expression for the land's full extent.
3. The phrase *velo haleku vanav bidrakav* ('his sons did not walk in his ways') echoes the identical failure of Eli's sons (1 Samuel 2:12-17). Samuel, who replaced Eli's corrupt house, now watches his own house fall to the same disease. The root *n-t-h* ('to turn aside, bend') appears twice: once for turning after profit and once for twisting justice — the same verb links the moral deviation to the judicial perversion. The word *batsa* ('unjust gain, dishonest profit') is the same term used in Exodus 18:21, where Jethro advised Moses to appoint judges who 'hate unjust gain.' Samuel's sons are the exact

opposite of Jethro's ideal.

4. The verb *vayitqabbetsu* ('they gathered themselves') suggests a coordinated, deliberate assembly — this is not a spontaneous complaint but a delegation. The elders (*ziquei Yisra'el*) are the recognized tribal leaders, the men who speak for the people collectively. That they travel to Ramah, Samuel's home base, indicates both respect for his authority and a formal petition. Ramah (*haRamatah*, with the directional *he* suffix indicating motion toward) was in the tribal territory of Benjamin, roughly central to the population.
5. The phrase *simah-lanu melek* ('set for us a king') uses the imperative of *s-y-m* ('to set, place, appoint') — the same verb used in verse 1 when Samuel 'set' his sons as judges. They want Samuel to do for them what he did for his sons, but bigger. The phrase *kekol hagoyim* ('like all the nations') is the theological crux of the chapter. Israel's entire covenantal identity was built on distinction from the nations (Leviticus 20:26, Deuteronomy 7:6). The request is not merely political but ontological — they want to restructure Israel's identity around a human king rather than a divine one.
6. The phrase *vayera hadavar be'einei Shemu'el* ('the thing was evil/bad in Samuel's eyes') uses the root *r-'l* ('evil, displeasing') — Samuel perceived the request as genuinely harmful, not merely offensive to his ego. His immediate response is prayer (*vayitpallel*), not argument — Samuel takes the crisis to God before responding to the elders. This is the mark of Samuel's character throughout the narrative: when faced with a problem beyond his capacity, he prays. The verb *hitpallel* (reflexive of *p-l-l*, 'to judge, intercede') literally means 'to judge oneself' or 'to intercede' — Samuel is both processing his own reaction and seeking divine counsel.
7. The verb *ma'as* ('reject, refuse, spurn') is covenantal language — it appears in Leviticus 26:15 for Israel's rejection of God's statutes, and in 1 Samuel 15:23,26 where God will reject Saul using the same word. The phrase *mimmelokh aleihem* ('from reigning over them') uses the infinitive of *m-l-kh* — the same root as *melek*. God has been their *melek*; they want a different one. The instruction *shema beqol ha'am* ('listen to the voice of the people') is remarkable — God tells his prophet to obey the people's voice, even though the people's voice is rejecting God. This divine acquiescence to human free will is theologically without parallel in the ancient Near East, where kings ruled by divine compulsion, not popular consent.
8. God places the people's request in a historical pattern stretching from the Exodus to the present. The verbs *vaya'azvuni* ('they abandoned me') and *vaya'avdu elohim acherim* ('they served other gods') frame the demand for a king as another instance of Israel's chronic unfaithfulness — not a new sin but the latest expression of an old one. The phrase *ken hemah osim gam-lakh* ('so they are doing also to you') is God consoling Samuel: this is not personal failure on your part; this is who they are. The comparison between rejecting God and rejecting Samuel elevates Samuel's role — his authority was a direct extension of divine authority — while simultaneously relativizing his pain: he is merely the latest target of Israel's pattern of rejection.
9. The infinitive absolute construction *ha'ed ta'id* ('warning you shall warn') conveys the highest urgency — Samuel must not merely inform but formally testify. This is legal language: Samuel is placing the people under notice. The phrase *mishpat ha-melek* ('the manner/right of the king') uses *mishpat* in its ambiguous fullness. In Deuteronomy 17:14-20, the Torah anticipated the demand for a king and prescribed *mishpat* for royal behavior (limits on horses, wives, wealth). Here, Samuel will describe the actual *mishpat* of monarchy — not the ideal but the reality. The verb *yimlokh* ('who will reign') shares the same *m-l-kh* root as *melek* and *mimmelokh* in verse 7 — the kingship vocabulary saturates the chapter.
10. The verb *hasho'alim* ('the ones asking') from the root *sh-'l* ('to ask, request, demand') carries a wordplay that resonates through the entire book: the name *Sha'ul* (Saul) comes from the same root. The people who 'ask' (*sho'alim*) for a king will receive *Sha'ul* — 'the asked-for one.' The name itself will become an ironic commentary: they asked and they received, but what they received will not be what they hoped for. Samuel faithfully transmits *kol divrei YHWH* ('all the words of the LORD') — he does not editorialize or soften the message.
11. The verb *yiqqach* ('he will take') from the root *l-q-ch* is the keynote verb of the entire warning — it will recur in verses 13, 14, 15, 16, and 17. The relentless repetition of 'take' turns the warning into a drumbeat of confiscation. The *merkavah* ('chariot') and *parashim* ('horsemen, cavalry') represent the military-industrial complex of ancient Near Eastern monarchy. Israel had been a foot-soldier culture; chariots were the technology of empires (Egypt, Canaan). To staff chariots is to transform Israel's military identity. The runners (*ratsu lifnei merkavto*) were the royal advance guard — Absalom will later adopt this practice (2 Samuel 15:1) as a sign of royal pretension.
12. The list expands from military display to military command (*sarei alafim*, *sarei chamishim* — officers of thousands and fifties), then pivots to agricultural conscription (plowing his fields, harvesting his crops) and industrial production (weapons and chariot equipment). The possessive pronoun 'his' (*lo*) is relentless: his thousands, his plowing (*charisho*), his harvest (*qetsiro*), his war equipment (*kelei milchamto*), his chariot gear (*kelei rikhbho*). Everything that was the family's becomes the king's. The progression from soldier to farmer to factory worker shows that royal conscription is not limited to wartime but restructures the entire economy around royal needs.
13. After sons, daughters. The verb *yiqqach* ('he will take') returns. The three roles — *raqqachot* (perfumers/ointment makers), *tabbachot* (cooks/slaughterers), and *ofot* (bakers) — represent the palace domestic economy. *Raqqachot* is particularly significant: perfume and ointment production was a high-skill trade in the ancient Near East, connected to both luxury goods and temple worship. The king will conscript daughters not for menial labor but for the palace's elaborate lifestyle apparatus. Each of these roles served the king's table and personal luxury — the daughters of free Israelite families reduced to staffing royal consumption.
14. The triad *sadot* (fields), *keramim* (vineyards), and *zeitim* (olive groves) represents the complete agricultural economy of ancient Israel — grain, wine, and oil. The adjective *hatovim* ('the best') emphasizes that royal confiscation is selective and extractive. The phrase *venatan la'avadav* ('and give to his servants') reveals the patronage system at monarchy's core: the king takes from the people to reward his loyalists. This prediction is fulfilled precisely in 1 Samuel 22:7, where Saul asks his Benjaminite supporters, 'Will the son of Jesse give you fields and vineyards?' — royal land redistribution as political currency.

- 15.** The verb *ya'asor* ('he will tithe, take a tenth') is loaded with theological irony. The tithe (*ma'aser*) in Israel belonged to God — it was given to the Levites for temple service (Numbers 18:21-24). Now the king will impose his own tithe on top of God's, effectively setting himself up as a parallel deity demanding tribute. The recipients are *saritim* ('court officials' — the word can also mean 'eunuchs,' suggesting the elaborate palace bureaucracy of ancient Near Eastern monarchies) and *avadim* ('servants'). The king creates an entire parasitic class sustained by extraction from the productive population.
- 16.** The confiscation extends now to the household workforce: *avadim* (male servants), *shefachot* (female servants), *bachurim hatovim* ('the best young men' — again *hatovim*, 'the best,' as in verse 14), and *chamorim* (donkeys, the primary work animals and transport of non-royal Israel). The verb *yiqqach* ('he will take') appears for the fifth time. The phrase *ve'asah limla'khto* ('and put them to his work/service') uses *mela'khah* — the same word used for God's creative work in Genesis 2:2. The king's 'work' parasitically conscripts the labor that sustained ordinary households. Note the Qere/Ketiv variant: the Ketiv reads *bachureichem* ('your young men') while some manuscripts and the LXX read *beqareichem* ('your cattle').
- 17.** The second tithe (*ya'asor*) now falls on flocks (*tso'n*), completing the taxation of agriculture: grain, wine, and livestock. The final clause *ve'attem tihyu-lo la'avadim* ('and you yourselves will become his servants/slaves') is the rhetorical capstone. The pronoun *attem* ('you yourselves') is emphatic — not just your sons, daughters, fields, and flocks, but you. The word *avadim* is deliberately chosen: Israel was *avadim* in Egypt (Exodus 13:3, Deuteronomy 5:6), and God redeemed them to be his *avadim* (Leviticus 25:42, 55). To become the king's *avadim* is to exchange divine lordship for human lordship — the very definition of the rejection described in verse 7.
- 18.** The verb *za'aq* ('to cry out') is the Exodus verb par excellence — it is what Israel did under Pharaoh's oppression (Exodus 2:23). Samuel is warning that monarchy will reproduce the conditions of Egypt. The phrase *millifnei malkekem* ('because of / from before your king') uses the same preposition (*millifnei*) used for crying out 'before' Pharaoh's oppression. The emphatic *asher bechartem lakhem* ('whom you chose for yourselves') places full responsibility on the people — this was not imposed but elected. The phrase *velo ya'aneh YHWH* ('the LORD will not answer') is one of the most severe statements in the Hebrew Bible: God voluntarily withdrawing his responsiveness. Compare Deuteronomy 1:45 and Proverbs 1:28 for the same devastating pattern.
- 19.** The verb *vayema'an* ('they refused') from the root *m'-n* ('to refuse, be unwilling') echoes the root *m'-s* ('to reject') from verse 7 — different roots but phonetically similar, reinforcing the pattern of refusal. The phrase *lishmoa beqol Shemu'el* ('to listen to Samuel's voice') inverts God's instruction in verse 7: God told Samuel *shema beqol ha'am* ('listen to the people's voice'); now the people refuse *lishmoa beqol Shemu'el* ('to listen to Samuel's voice'). Everyone is listening to someone's voice except God's. The defiant *lo ki im-melek yihyeh aleinu* ('No! Rather, a king will be over us!') is blunt — no qualification, no negotiation. Their minds are made.
- 20.** The phrase *kekol hagoyim* ('like all the nations') repeats from verse 5, forming an *inclusio* around Samuel's entire warning — they wanted to be like the nations before the warning, and they still want it after. The warning changed nothing. The verb *ushefatanu* ('he will judge/govern us') uses the same *sh-f-t* root that has defined leadership throughout Judges and Samuel. The phrase *veyatsa lefaneinu* ('he will go out before us') uses military language — the king as the one who leads the army out. The phrase *venilcham et-milchamoteinu* ('he will fight our battles') directly replaces God: compare Exodus 14:14 'The LORD will fight for you' and Deuteronomy 1:30 'The LORD your God who goes before you will fight for you.'
- 21.** The verb *vayishma* ('he listened') mirrors God's instruction *shema* ('listen') from verse 7 — Samuel is obediently doing what God commanded: listening to the people's voice. The phrase *vayedabbrem be'oznei YHWH* ('he spoke them in the ears of the LORD') is striking: Samuel reports to God as to a sovereign, relaying the people's final answer. The anthropomorphic 'ears of the LORD' (*oznei YHWH*) conveys intimate communication — Samuel is not praying generally but reporting specifically, as a mediator between two parties. God already knew what the people would say (verse 7-8), but the formal relay matters: Samuel fulfills his role as intermediary, ensuring the covenant process is properly witnessed.
- 22.** The verb *vehimlakhta* ('and you shall cause to reign, install as king') is the Hiphil (causative) of *m-l-kh* — Samuel is being commissioned as king-maker. The dismissal *lekhu ish le'iro* ('go, each man to his city') is deliberately anticlimactic after the intensity of the preceding exchange. There is no king yet, no name, no anointing. The people return home having won their argument but without their prize. This sets up chapters 9-10, where God's choice of Saul will unfold through what appears to be a series of coincidences — lost donkeys leading to a prophet's door. The transition from theocracy to monarchy will not be dramatic but quiet, almost accidental in its surface narrative, even as it fulfills the deepest theological upheaval in Israel's history.

9

Summary: *A wealthy Benjaminite named Kish sends his son Saul to find lost donkeys. After days of fruitless searching, Saul's servant suggests consulting a man of God in a nearby town. God has already told Samuel that He will send a man from Benjamin to be anointed as leader over Israel, to deliver the people from the Philistines. When Saul arrives, the LORD identifies him to Samuel, and Samuel honors Saul with the chief seat at a feast and a private audience — all before Saul understands what is happening to him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire chapter operates on dramatic irony. Saul is looking for donkeys; God is looking for a king. The reader knows what Saul does not — that every step of his wandering has been orchestrated by divine intention. The word *nagid* ('designated leader, prince') is used rather than *melekh* ('king') when God speaks to Samuel about Saul in verse 16. This distinction is theologically loaded: God is not handing over sovereignty but appointing a military deliverer who remains under divine authority. The chapter also preserves a remarkable editorial note in verse 9 — a parenthetical explaining that the word 'prophet' (*navi*) used to be 'seer' (*ro'eh*), revealing the text's awareness of its own linguistic history. This is one of the few places in the Hebrew Bible where the narrator steps outside the story to explain archaic terminology to a later audience.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 9 presents a genuine translation challenge: it is a parenthetical gloss, almost certainly editorial, inserted to explain that what the narrator's audience calls a *navi* ('prophet') was formerly called a *ro'eh* ('seer'). The question is whether to render this as a seamless part of the narrative or to preserve its disruptive, explanatory quality. We preserve its parenthetical feel because the interruption itself carries meaning — it reveals layers of authorship and the evolution of Israelite religious vocabulary. Verse 16 uses *nagid* rather than *melekh* for Saul's role, and the choice is deliberate but difficult to render in English. 'Prince' carries connotations of royal birth; 'commander' is too military. We use 'leader' because *nagid* implies an appointed leader designated by God, not a hereditary monarch, and the simplicity of the English matches the directness of the Hebrew. The phrase *gibbor chayil* in verse 1 describing Kish is another friction point — it can mean 'mighty warrior,' 'man of wealth,' or 'man of standing.' Context suggests social prominence and wealth rather than battlefield prowess, but the term deliberately leaves the categories blurred.*

Connections: *Saul's search for lost donkeys and unexpected discovery of a kingdom echoes a persistent biblical pattern: people seeking small things find cosmic ones (Moses tending sheep finds God at the burning bush, Exodus 3:1-2; David keeping sheep is summoned to kingship, 1 Samuel 16:11). The anointing of a Benjaminite as Israel's first king connects to the near-extinction of Benjamin in Judges 19-21 — the smallest and most damaged tribe produces the first king, continuing the theme of God choosing the unlikely. Samuel's role as *ro'eh* ('seer') links him to the prophetic tradition where divine knowledge comes through direct revelation rather than institutional mediation. The feast scene where Saul receives the thigh portion (the priest's share in Leviticus 7:32-34) anticipates his royal status before it is publicly declared, and the private rooftop conversation echoes the pattern of secret divine appointments that will recur with David (1 Samuel 16:1-13).*

¹There was a man from Benjamin whose name was Kish son of Abiel, son of Zeror, son of Becorath, son of Aphiah — a Benjaminite, a man of standing and strength. ²He had a son named Saul — young, impressive, and there was no one among the sons of Israel more impressive than he. From his shoulders upward he stood taller than all the people. ³The donkeys belonging to Kish, Saul's father, had wandered off. Kish said to his son Saul, "Take one of the servants with you, get up, and go look for the donkeys." ⁴He passed through the hill country of Ephraim and through the region of Shalishah, but they did not find them. They passed through the region of Shaalim — nothing. They passed through the territory of Benjamin, but did not find them. ⁵When they came to the territory of Zuph, Saul said to his servant who was with him, "Come, let's turn back — otherwise my father will stop worrying about the donkeys and start worrying about us." ⁶The servant said to him, "Listen — there is a man of God in this town, and the man is highly respected. Everything he says proves true. Let's go there now; perhaps he can tell us which way to go." ⁷Saul said to his servant, "But if we go, what can we bring the man? The bread in our bags is gone, and there is no gift to bring to the man of God. What do we have?" ⁸The servant answered Saul again: "Look — I have in my hand a quarter-shekel of silver. I will give it to the man of God, and he will tell us our way." ⁹(In former times in Israel, when someone went to inquire of God, they would say, "Come, let us go to the seer" — because the one now called a prophet was formerly called a seer.) ¹⁰Saul said to his servant, "Good idea. Come, let's go." So they went to the town where the man of God was. ¹¹As they were going up the ascent to the town, they encountered young women coming out to draw water, and they asked them, "Is the seer here?" ¹²They answered, "Yes — he is just ahead of you. Hurry now, because he has come to the town today since there is a sacrifice for the people today at the high place." ¹³As soon as you enter the town you will find him, before he goes up to the high place to eat. The people will not eat until he arrives, because he blesses the sacrifice — and after that, the invited guests eat. Go up now, because right about now you will find him." ¹⁴They went up to

the town. As they were entering the town, there was Samuel, coming out toward them on his way up to the high place. ¹⁵Now the LORD had uncovered Samuel's ear the day before Saul arrived, saying: ¹⁶"About this time tomorrow I will send to you a man from the territory of Benjamin. You will anoint him as leader over my people Israel, and he will deliver my people from the hand of the Philistines — because I have seen my people, for their cry has reached me." ¹⁷When Samuel saw Saul, the LORD answered him: "This is the man I told you about. He is the one who will govern my people." ¹⁸Saul approached Samuel in the gateway and said, "Please tell me — where is the seer's house?" ¹⁹Samuel answered Saul: "I am the seer. Go up ahead of me to the high place, and you will eat with me today. In the morning I will send you on your way, and everything that is in your heart I will tell you." ²⁰"As for your donkeys that went missing three days ago — don't worry about them; they have been found. And to whom does all that Israel desires belong? Is it not to you and to your father's entire house?" ²¹Saul answered, "Am I not a Benjaminite, from the smallest of the tribes of Israel? And my clan is the least of all the clans of the tribe of Benjamin. Why would you say such a thing to me?" ²²Samuel took Saul and his servant and brought them into the hall, and he gave them a place at the head of the invited guests — about thirty people. ²³Samuel said to the cook, "Bring the portion I gave you — the one I told you to set aside." ²⁴The cook lifted up the thigh and what was on it and set it before Saul. Samuel said, "Here is what has been reserved — set it before you and eat, because it was kept for you for this appointed time when I said, 'I have invited the people.'" So Saul ate with Samuel that day. ²⁵They came down from the high place into the town, and Samuel spoke with Saul on the rooftop. ²⁶They rose early, and as dawn was breaking, Samuel called to Saul on the rooftop: "Get up, and I will send you on your way." Saul got up, and the two of them — he and Samuel — went out into the street. ²⁷As they were going down to the edge of the town, Samuel said to Saul, "Tell the servant to go on ahead of us" — and he went on — "but you, stand here for a moment, so I can make you hear the word of God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The genealogy traces five generations, grounding Kish firmly in Benjamin. The phrase *ish yemini* ('a man of the right hand,' i.e., a Benjaminite) is a play on the tribal name *Binyamin* ('son of the right hand'). The final descriptor *gibbor chayil* is applied to Kish, not to Saul — the father's social position is what matters for the introduction. In context, *gibbor chayil* likely denotes a man of wealth, social prominence, and capability rather than strictly a warrior. The same phrase describes Boaz in Ruth 2:1, where it clearly means a man of means and standing.
1. The five-generation genealogy (ben Avi'el ben Tseror ben Bekhorat ben Aficah) is unusually deep, paralleling the genealogy of Elkanah in 1 Samuel 1:1. Both introductions invest heavily in lineage, signaling that family identity matters in this narrative world.
2. The name *Sha'ul* means 'asked for' or 'requested' — from the verb *sha'al* ('to ask'). This is profoundly ironic: the man whose name means 'asked for' is the answer to Israel's demand for a king (1 Samuel 8:5-6). The wordplay with Samuel's name (connected to *sha'al* in 1:20) binds the two figures linguistically.
2. The physical description emphasizes height (*gavoah mi-kol ha-am*, 'taller than all the people') as Saul's defining visible trait. This is not neutral observation — it sets up the theological contrast with David's selection in chapter 16, where God explicitly rejects the criteria of height and appearance. Saul is everything the human eye would choose.
3. The verb *avad* ('to be lost, to perish, to wander') is used for the donkeys. The same verb will carry heavier meaning later — things that are 'lost' in 1 Samuel often turn out to be divinely redirected. The donkeys' disappearance is the mundane mechanism God uses to move Saul toward Samuel. The Hebrew *atonot* (female donkeys) were valuable work animals; their loss was a genuine economic concern for even a wealthy household.
3. Kish's command uses three verbs in sequence: *qach* ('take'), *qum* ('arise'), *lekh* ('go') — an urgent, stacked imperative. He is not making a casual suggestion. The addition of *na* ('please, now') softens the command slightly, but the father's authority is clear.
4. The repetitive structure — passed through X, did not find; passed through Y, nothing; passed through Z, did not find — creates a rhythm of futility. Each region yields emptiness. The Hebrew *va-ayin* ('and nothing,' 'and there was not') is starkly abrupt, even more terse than the surrounding negations. The geographic sweep covers a wide area: from Ephraim's hills through Shalishah (possibly northwest of Benjamin) to Shaalim (possibly 'land of foxes') and back into Benjamin. Saul has circled extensively and found nothing.
4. The place names may carry symbolic weight. Shalishah may relate to *shalosh* ('three') and Shaalim to *shu'al* ('fox'). If so, the names paint a landscape of fragmented, wild territory — fitting for a search that leads nowhere by human reckoning but everywhere by divine design.
5. The land of Zuph connects directly to Samuel's genealogy — Zuph is Samuel's ancestor (1 Samuel 1:1). Without knowing it, Saul has wandered into Samuel's ancestral territory. The verb *da'ag* ('to worry, to be anxious') reveals Saul's concern for his father's emotional state — a detail that humanizes him and shows filial loyalty. The verb *chadal* ('to cease, to stop') paired with *min* ('from') gives the sense of Kish redirecting his anxiety from the donkeys to his missing son.

5. Saul's impulse to return home is the natural, sensible response. The narrative tension depends on what happens next: the servant's suggestion will redirect Saul toward Samuel and toward his destiny. Human wisdom says go home; divine providence says keep going.
6. The servant calls Samuel *ish Elohim* ('man of God') — a title that designates a person who carries divine authority and whose words have demonstrable power. The phrase *nikhbad* ('honored, weighty, respected') comes from the root *kavod* ('glory, weight, honor'). The servant's recommendation is grounded in Samuel's track record: *kol asher yedabber bo yavo* ('all that he speaks surely comes') uses the infinitive absolute construction (*bo yavo*) to emphasize certainty — his words never fail.
6. The servant's knowledge of Samuel suggests he is more informed about the religious landscape than his master. The phrase *et darkenu asher halakhnu aleha* ('our way on which we have gone') is specific — the servant is asking not for general prophecy but for practical direction about their journey. They are consulting a seer about donkeys, not about kingdoms.
7. Saul's concern about arriving empty-handed reflects the cultural expectation that one does not consult a man of God without a gift. The word *teshurah* ('gift, present') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible — it is a rare term for a token of respect or a consultation fee. The verb *azal* ('is spent, is gone, is used up') describes the bread as entirely consumed. Saul's practical concern — we have nothing to offer — reveals both proper etiquette and his limited perspective. He is worried about protocol while God is arranging a coronation.
8. The servant produces *reva sheqel kesef* ('a quarter-shekel of silver') — a small amount, but enough to serve as a consultation gift. The servant's resourcefulness advances the narrative at every turn: he knew about the man of God, and now he has the means to pay. The verb *nimtsa* ('is found') in *nimtsa be-yadi* ('is found in my hand') suggests the silver was unexpectedly available — even this small detail serves the theme of divine provision through ordinary circumstances.
8. The servant's confidence — *veheggid lanu et darkenu* ('and he will tell us our way') — contrasts with Saul's hesitation. The servant expects results; Saul was ready to go home.
9. We preserve the parenthetical format because the verse is not part of the narrative flow — it is a scholarly note embedded in the text. The phrase *le-fanim be-Yisra'el* ('in former times in Israel') signals that the narrator is speaking from a later vantage point. The verb *darash* ('to inquire, to seek') when paired with *Elohim* ('God') is a technical term for seeking divine guidance through a prophet or oracle.
9. The distinction between *ro'eh* and *navi* is historically significant. The *ro'eh* tradition appears to be older, associated with individual seers who could locate lost objects, identify hidden information, and perceive divine intent. The *navi* tradition emphasizes the prophetic office as a channel of God's proclaimed word. Samuel bridges both roles — he is the last of the old seers and the first of the institutional prophets.
10. Saul's response *tov devarkha* ('good is your word') is brief and decisive — once persuaded, he commits. The phrase is literally 'your word is good,' affirming the servant's suggestion. The pace of the narrative accelerates here after the slow, repetitive searching of verse 4. The shift from wandering to purposeful movement signals that the story is converging on its goal.
11. The scene of meeting women at a water source is a recurring biblical type-scene — encounters at wells typically signal pivotal moments (Genesis 24:11-14 for Rebekah, Genesis 29:1-12 for Rachel, Exodus 2:15-21 for Zipporah). Here the pattern is adapted: instead of a betrothal, the women direct Saul toward his anointing. The word *na'arot* ('young women') and the activity of drawing water (*lish'ov mayim*) deliberately invoke the convention, and the audience would have recognized the echo.
11. The use of *ha-ro'eh* ('the seer') rather than *ha-navi* ('the prophet') in their question follows the narrator's explanation in verse 9 — they use the older terminology that fits the pre-prophetic idiom of the story's setting.
12. The young women's response is surprisingly detailed and urgent. They use *maher* ('hurry') and *atah* ('now') to press speed. The mention of the *bamah* ('high place') is significant — before the centralization of worship in Jerusalem under Josiah's reform (2 Kings 23), local high places served as legitimate worship sites. Samuel presides over sacrificial worship at a *bamah* without any narrative disapproval, reflecting the pre-Deuteronomic setting of the story.
12. The word *zevach* ('sacrifice') here refers to a communal sacrificial feast — the meat of the offering would be shared among the participants after the sacred portion was offered. This is the feast at which Saul will receive the place of honor.
13. The women's knowledge of Samuel's schedule and role reveals his authority in the community. He is the one who *mevarekh ha-zevach* ('blesses the sacrifice') — without his blessing, no one eats. The word *ha-qeru'im* ('the invited ones, the called ones') indicates that this is not an open public meal but a curated guest list. Saul will be seated among the *qeru'im* as a guest of honor — an invitation he does not yet know is waiting for him.
13. The repetition of *timtse'un oto* ('you will find him') at the beginning and end of the women's speech creates a frame of certainty: you will find him, so go now, you will find him. The verb *matsa* ('to find') echoes the search for the donkeys — they could not find (*lo matsa'u*) the animals, but they will find the seer.
14. The timing is precise to the point of being providential — just as Saul enters, Samuel exits, heading in their direction. The phrase *yotse liqratam* ('coming out to meet them') uses the same construction used for deliberate encounters elsewhere, but here Samuel does not yet know who they are. The convergence is orchestrated from above: God has placed these two men on a collision course, and the narrator presents the moment with understated drama — *vehineh Shemu'el* ('and there was Samuel').
15. The idiom *galah ozen* ('to uncover the ear') appears in 2 Samuel 7:27, Ruth 4:4, and Job 33:16, always denoting the private disclosure of information that would otherwise remain hidden. We retain the literal image ('uncovered Samuel's ear') rather than flattening it to 'told Samuel' because the idiom preserves the physicality of prophetic experience — revelation is not merely informational but sensory.

15. The temporal marker *yom echad* ('one day') is precise. God prepared Samuel exactly twenty-four hours before the moment of meeting. The narrative is structured so the reader learns God's plan (verses 15-16) before Saul does, creating dramatic irony that will persist through the entire chapter.
16. The title *nagid* is theologically charged and deliberately chosen over *melekh* ('king'). A *nagid* is appointed by God and accountable to God; the term preserves divine sovereignty over Israel's governance. We render it 'leader' because the term conveys appointed authority without implying autonomous royal power. The word will recur at critical moments in 1-2 Samuel.
16. The phrase *ba'ah tsa'atam elai* ('their cry has come to me') uses *tsa'aqah* — the same word for the cry of Israel in Egyptian bondage (Exodus 3:9). God responds to the Philistine oppression with the same language used for the Egyptian oppression, framing Saul's appointment as a new exodus-type deliverance.
17. The verb *atsar* is rendered 'govern' rather than 'reign' to reflect its restraining connotation. The word does not appear in the standard vocabulary of kingship — it carries overtones of holding, checking, and containing. Some scholars translate it 'restrain' (i.e., Saul will hold back the people from disintegration), which fits the political context of Philistine pressure and internal tribal fragmentation.
17. The divine identification of Saul — *zeh ya'atsor be-ammi* ('this one will govern my people') — uses the emphatic demonstrative *zeh* ('this one'), physically pointing to Saul. God identifies the future leader not by name or genealogy but by pointing: this one, right there.
18. The dramatic irony reaches its peak. Saul asks the seer where the seer lives — he is speaking to the very man he is looking for and does not know it. The *sha'ar* ('gate') was the public gathering place where legal and social transactions occurred; it is the town's center of activity. Saul's request is polite — *haggidah na li* ('please tell me') uses the particle *na* for courtesy — and entirely mundane. He has no idea he is standing before the man who will change his life.
18. The verb *nagash* ('to approach, to draw near') often carries ritual or formal connotations in Hebrew (approaching an altar, drawing near to God). Its use here may subtly signal that Saul is approaching something far more significant than he realizes.
19. Samuel's self-identification *anokhi ha-ro'eh* ('I am the seer') is direct and authoritative. His instructions reverse the expected social hierarchy — he tells Saul *aleh le-fanai* ('go up before me'), giving Saul the position of precedence by having him walk ahead. The promise *vekhlo asher bilvavekha aggid lakh* ('everything that is in your heart I will tell you') goes far beyond donkey-finding. Samuel claims to know the contents of Saul's heart — a seer's knowledge that extends to inner thoughts and unspoken desires.
19. The sequence of Samuel's commands — eat with me today, I will send you tomorrow, and I will reveal your heart — creates a structured program: fellowship, then revelation, then commission. Samuel is not improvising; he is following the divine plan disclosed to him the day before.
20. Samuel demonstrates his identity as seer by knowing about the donkeys before Saul mentions them. The phrase *al tasem et libbkha lahen* ('do not set your heart on them') means 'stop worrying about them' — the verb *sum* ('to set, to place') with *lev* ('heart') describes where one directs attention and concern. Samuel redirects Saul's heart from donkeys to destiny.
20. The phrase *kol chemdat Yisra'el* ('all the desire of Israel') is ambiguous and provocative. *Chemdah* means 'desire, delight, precious thing' — Samuel is saying that everything Israel longs for now belongs to Saul and his father's house. The statement hints at kingship without naming it, leaving Saul to grasp the implication. The inclusion of *kol beit avikha* ('all your father's house') extends the promise beyond Saul individually to his dynasty.
21. Saul's response mirrors Gideon's protest in Judges 6:15 ('my clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the least in my father's house') — both men respond to divine selection with claims of insignificance. Whether Saul's humility is genuine or performative is debated. Benjamin was indeed the smallest tribe after the near-annihilation recorded in Judges 20-21, so his claim has historical basis. The phrase *mi-qatannei shivtei Yisra'el* ('from the smallest of the tribes of Israel') uses *qatan* ('small, insignificant') — the same word used when God chose David over his brothers (1 Samuel 16:11).
21. The question *lamah dibbarta elai ka-davar ha-zeh* ('why have you spoken to me a thing like this?') reveals Saul's bewilderment. He came looking for donkeys and is hearing intimations of national destiny.
22. The *lishkah* ('hall, chamber, room') is the dining room attached to the high place where the sacrificial feast takes place. Samuel seats Saul *be-rosh ha-qeru'im* ('at the head of the called ones') — the position of highest honor among the invited guests. This is a public act of distinction: in a room of thirty prominent people, the unknown stranger from Benjamin is placed first. The number thirty (*kishloshim*) may suggest a formal council or representative gathering rather than a casual meal.
22. Samuel's actions speak before his words. By seating Saul at the head, he signals Saul's importance to the entire assembly without yet explaining why. The guests witness the honor without understanding its full significance.
23. The word *tabbach* ('cook, butcher') comes from the root *tavach* ('to slaughter'). Samuel had pre-arranged this: he gave the cook a specific portion (*manah*) with instructions to keep it in reserve (*sim otah immakh*, 'place it with you'). This advance preparation reveals that Samuel expected Saul's arrival — the divine revelation of verse 15-16 had already been translated into practical action. The seer does not merely receive knowledge; he acts on it.
24. The *shoq* ('thigh') is the priestly portion in the Levitical system. Its presentation to Saul carries implicit sacral significance — he is being treated as someone who holds a sacred office. The phrase *ve-he'aleha* ('and what was upon it') likely refers to the fat or additional meat on the thigh portion, indicating a generous, complete serving.

24. The Hebrew of this verse is textually difficult. The phrase *la-mo'ed shamur lekha le'mor ha-am qarati* has been interpreted variously. Our rendering takes it as: 'for this appointed time it was kept for you, since I said I have invited the people' — meaning Samuel set aside the portion when he organized the feast, knowing that God's appointed guest would arrive. The word *mo'ed* ('appointed time') resonates with its use for Israel's sacred festivals, elevating this meal beyond ordinary hospitality.
25. The *gag* ('roof, rooftop') was a flat surface used for private conversation, sleeping, and retreat in ancient Israelite homes. Samuel's choice to speak with Saul *al ha-gag* ('on the rooftop') signals a private, confidential conversation — above the household, away from listening ears. The verb *dibber* ('he spoke') without specifying the content creates suspense. The narrator withholds what Samuel told Saul on the rooftop, preserving the mystery of this private revelation. The reader knows from verses 15-16 what the subject must be, but the conversation itself remains unrecorded.
26. The phrase *ka'alot ha-shachar* ('as the dawn was rising') uses the verb *alah* ('to go up') for the dawn — the sun ascends as Saul's destiny ascends. Samuel's command *qumah va-ashallchekka* ('get up and I will send you') uses the same verb *shalach* ('to send') that God used in verse 16 ('I will send to you a man'). God sent Saul to Samuel; now Samuel sends Saul forward into his commission. The word *ha-chutzah* ('outside, into the open') indicates they moved from the private rooftop into the public street — the transition from private revelation to the beginning of public action.
27. The phrase *amod ka-yom* ('stand here for a moment,' literally 'stand as the day' or 'stand now') signals a pause in movement — physical stillness before a life-altering word. The verb *ashmi'akha* ('I will make you hear') uses the causative stem, emphasizing that this is not casual information but divinely authorized communication that Samuel will actively transmit. The word *davar* ('word') in *davar Elohim* means both 'word' and 'thing/matter' — the word of God is not merely speech but reality-creating substance.
27. The chapter ends mid-action, with Saul standing still and Samuel about to speak. This is a deliberate cliffhanger — the anointing itself is reserved for chapter 10:1, creating a chapter break that suspends the reader at the moment of maximum anticipation.

10

Summary: Samuel privately anoints Saul as ruler over Israel and gives him three signs to confirm the divine appointment: he will meet men near Rachel's tomb who tell him the donkeys are found, then three men going up to God at Bethel will give him bread, and finally he will encounter a band of prophets at Gibeah and the Spirit of the LORD will rush upon him and he will prophesy with them. All three signs come true that same day. Samuel then convenes Israel at Mizpah, where the lot falls on Saul of the tribe of Benjamin. When they search for him, Saul is found hiding among the baggage. Samuel presents him to the people — taller than anyone — and declares him God's chosen. Some valiant men rally to Saul, but certain worthless men despise him and bring him no tribute. Saul keeps silent.

*What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter contains the most detailed anointing scene in the Hebrew Bible. Samuel does not merely pour oil; he kisses Saul, explains the significance of the act, and then provides three escalating confirmatory signs — each more supernatural than the last. The first sign involves ordinary information (the donkeys are found), the second involves unsolicited provision (bread from strangers), and the third involves radical personal transformation (the Spirit of God changing Saul into a different man). The progression mirrors how God confirms a calling: through circumstances, through provision, and finally through inner transformation. The proverb 'Is Saul also among the prophets?' (*hagam Sha'ul banneviim*) became a lasting idiom in Israel — the skeptic's question about whether an unlikely person truly belongs among the inspired. That Saul hides among the baggage at Mizpah is one of the Bible's most psychologically revealing moments: the man God has chosen does not want to be found.*

*Translation Friction: Verse 1 in the Masoretic Text is unusually long and some scholars believe the opening phrase ('Then Samuel took a flask of oil...') originally began a sentence that continued into what is now verse 2 — the verse division may be secondary. The Hebrew of verse 1 also contains the phrase *halo ki meshachakha YHWH al nachalato lenagid* ('Has not the LORD anointed you as ruler over his inheritance?'), which the Septuagint expands significantly, adding an entire clause about Saul saving Israel from their enemies. We follow the MT but note the LXX divergence. The word *tsemach* in verse 2 (rendered 'Zelzah' as a place name) is obscure and its location uncertain. The phrase *vayyitnabbe betokham* ('he prophesied among them') in verse 10 raises the question of what prophesying means here — ecstatic behavior, musical worship, or spoken oracles. The Hebrew *hitpa'el* form of *n-b-a* suggests ecstatic or reflexive prophetic behavior rather than formal oracular speech.*

Connections: The anointing of Saul connects directly to Samuel's warning in chapter 8 about what a king will do, and to God's instruction in 9:16 to anoint a man from Benjamin. The oil flask (pak hashemen) echoes priestly anointing in Exodus 29 and Leviticus 8, but here it is applied to a political-military leader — the first time in Israel's history that royal anointing occurs. The Spirit rushing upon Saul (ruach Elohim tsalach) uses the same verb (tsalach) later applied to Samson (Judges 14:6, 19; 15:14) and to David after his anointing (1 Samuel 16:13). The lot-casting at Mizpah recalls Joshua's distribution of land by lot (Joshua 18-19) and anticipates the Urim and Thummim decisions of Israel's later history. Saul hiding among the baggage will find its dark mirror in his later disobedience when he spares Agag and the best livestock (chapter 15) — a man who hides from authority eventually abuses it.

¹Samuel took the flask of oil and poured it over Saul's head. He kissed him and said, "The LORD has anointed you as leader over his own inheritance." ²"When you leave me today, you will find two men near Rachel's tomb, at the border of Benjamin in Zelzah. They will tell you, 'The donkeys you went looking for have been found. Your father has stopped worrying about the donkeys and is now anxious about you, saying, What can I do about my son?'" ³"From there, continue on until you reach the oak of Tabor. Three men going up to God at Bethel will meet you there — one carrying three young goats, another carrying three loaves of bread, and another carrying a skin of wine." ⁴"They will greet you with a blessing of peace and give you two loaves of bread. Accept them from their hands." ⁵"After that you will come to Gibeah of God, where the Philistine garrison is stationed. As you enter the town, you will encounter a band of prophets coming down from the high place, with lyres, tambourines, flutes, and harps playing before them, and they will be prophesying." ⁶"The Spirit of the LORD will rush upon you, and you will prophesy with them, and you will be transformed into a different man." ⁷"When these signs come to you, do whatever your hand finds to do, because God is with you." ⁸"Then go down ahead of me to Gilgal. I will come down to you to offer burnt offerings and to sacrifice peace offerings. Wait seven days until I come to you, and I will tell you what to do." ⁹As Saul turned his shoulder to leave Samuel, God gave him a different heart. And all those signs were fulfilled that same day. ¹⁰When they arrived at Gibeah, a band of prophets came to meet him. The Spirit of God rushed upon him, and he prophesied among them. ¹¹Everyone who had known him before saw him prophesying with the prophets, and the people said to one another, "What has happened to the son of Kish? Is Saul really among the prophets?" ¹²A man from there responded, "And who is their father?" That is why it became a proverb: "Is Saul really among the prophets?" ¹³When the prophesying ended, Saul went to the high place. ¹⁴Saul's uncle asked him and his servant, "Where did you go?" Saul said, "To look for the donkeys. When we could not find them, we went to Samuel." ¹⁵Saul's uncle said, "Tell me — what did Samuel say to you?" ¹⁶Saul told his uncle, "He assured us that the donkeys had been found." But about the matter of the kingship — what Samuel had said — he told him nothing. ¹⁷Samuel summoned the people to the LORD at Mizpah. ¹⁸He said to the Israelites, "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'I brought Israel up from Egypt. I rescued you from the power of Egypt and from the power of all the kingdoms that oppressed you.'" ¹⁹"But today you have rejected your God — the one who saves you from all your disasters and distresses — and you have said to him, 'No — set a king over us.' Now then, present yourselves before the LORD by your tribes and by your clans." ²⁰Samuel brought all the tribes of Israel forward, and the tribe of Benjamin was selected by lot. ²¹He brought the tribe of Benjamin forward by its clans, and the clan of Matri was selected. Then Saul son of Kish was selected. But when they searched for him, he could not be found. ²²They inquired of the LORD again, "Has the man come here?" And the LORD said, "He is there, hiding among the baggage." ²³They ran and brought him out from there. When he stood among the people, he was taller than everyone else from his shoulders up. ²⁴Samuel said to all the people, "Do you see the one the LORD has chosen? There is no one like him among all the people!" All the people shouted, "Long live the king!" ²⁵Samuel explained to the people the rights and duties of kingship, wrote them in a document, and deposited it before the LORD. Then Samuel dismissed all the people, each to his own home. ²⁶Saul also went home to Gibeah, and with him went valiant men whose hearts God had touched. ²⁷But certain worthless men said, "How can this one save us?" They despised him and brought him no tribute. But Saul kept silent.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The pak hashemen ('flask of oil') uses pak, a small vessel — not the shofar (horn) used for David's anointing in 16:13. Some commentators see the fragile flask as foreshadowing Saul's fragile reign versus David's more enduring horn-anointing. The verb mashach ('to anoint') is the root of mashiach ('messiah/anointed one'). The term nagid ('ruler, leader, one placed at the front') differs from melek ('king') — nagid emphasizes appointed military-political leadership under God's authority, while melek carries connotations of sovereign rule. The LXX significantly expands this verse, adding 'over his people, over Israel, and you shall reign over the people of the LORD, and you shall save them from the hand of their enemies round about.'
2. Rachel's tomb (qevurat Rachel) near the Benjamin border is a significant landmark — Rachel was the mother of Benjamin, making this location ancestrally meaningful for Saul the Benjaminite. The place name Zelzah (betseltsach) is obscure; its location remains uncertain and the word may be corrupt. The shift from Kish worrying about donkeys to worrying about his son (mah e'eseh livni) is poignant: the mundane search for livestock has escalated into a father's fear for his child. The verb da'ag ('to be anxious, to worry') conveys genuine emotional distress, not casual concern.
3. The elon Tavor ('oak of Tabor') is a sacred tree serving as a landmark — trees frequently mark holy sites in the patriarchal narratives (Genesis 12:6; 35:8). The three men are pilgrims heading to Bethel ('House of God'), carrying offerings: young goats (gedayim) for sacrifice, bread (lechem) for a grain offering or communal meal, and wine (yayin) for a drink offering. This is a complete sacrificial provision. The term nevel-yayin ('skin of wine') uses nevel for a leather wineskin — the same word that elsewhere means a stringed instrument (both have rounded, bulging shapes).
4. The phrase sha'alu lekha leshalom ('they will ask about your peace/welfare') is the standard Hebrew greeting — but here strangers will spontaneously offer both greeting and provision to a man they do not know. That pilgrims carrying offerings to God would divert part of their provision to Saul is a sign of unsolicited divine favor. The instruction velaqachta miyyadam ('accept from their hands') is significant: Saul must receive, not refuse. Accepting provision from strangers is an act of trust in the God who arranged the encounter.
5. Gibeah ha'Elohim ('Hill of God') is likely Saul's own hometown of Gibeah in Benjamin — the Philistine garrison there underscores how deeply Philistia has penetrated into Israelite territory. The chevel nevi'im ('band/company of prophets') uses chevel, literally 'cord, rope,' suggesting a bound-together group — these are not isolated individuals but a prophetic community. The instruments — nevel (lyre), tof (hand-drum/tambourine), chalil (flute/pipe), and kinnor (harp) — indicate that prophetic activity was accompanied by music. The hitpa'el form mitnabbe'im ('prophesying') suggests ecstatic, Spirit-driven behavior rather than formal oracular proclamation.
6. The verb tsalach (from tsalach, 'to rush upon, to prosper') is the characteristic verb for the Spirit's powerful, sudden action on individuals — it is used of Samson (Judges 14:6, 19; 15:14) and later of David (1 Samuel 16:13). The phrase ruach YHWH ('Spirit of the LORD') denotes God's active, empowering presence — not an abstract force but the personal energy of the living God directed at a specific person for a specific purpose. The phrase le'ish acher ('into a different man') uses acher ('other, different') — this is not improvement but replacement; Saul will become someone he was not before.
7. The phrase asheh lekha asher timtsa yadekha ('do for yourself what your hand finds') is an idiom for seizing the opportunity at hand — acting decisively when the moment comes. Samuel does not give Saul a detailed action plan; he gives him signs to confirm God's presence and then tells him to act on his own judgment. This is the essence of Spirit-empowered leadership: God confirms the calling, then the leader must act with courage. The grounding clause ki ha'Elohim immakh ('because God is with you') is the ultimate authorization — not strategy, not resources, but divine presence.
8. This instruction becomes critically important in chapter 13, where Saul fails to wait the full seven days and offers the sacrifice himself — the act that costs him his dynasty. Samuel is establishing a chain of authority: Saul leads, but Samuel mediates between God and king. The burnt offerings (olot) represent total consecration to God; the peace offerings (zivchei shelamim) represent communion and covenant fellowship. Gilgal, near Jericho, was the site of Israel's first camp after crossing the Jordan (Joshua 4:19-20) — a place of new beginnings. The seven-day wait is a test of obedience embedded within the commission.
9. The phrase kehafnoto shikhmo ('when he turned his shoulder') is vivid physical description — the narrative captures the exact moment of departure. The verb hafakh ('to turn, transform, overturn') is used for dramatic reversals throughout the Hebrew Bible: the overthrow of Sodom (Genesis 19:25), turning water to blood (Exodus 7:17), and turning mourning to joy (Esther 9:22). Lev acher ('a different heart') uses the same adjective acher ('other, different') as ish acher ('a different man') in verse 6. The confirmation vayyavo'u khol-ha'otot ha'elohim bayyom hahu ('all those signs came that day') compresses what must have been hours of travel into a single summary statement.
10. The third sign is now fulfilled. The verb vatitslach ('rushed upon') is the same tsalach promised in verse 6, now narrated as accomplished fact. The phrase vayyitnabbe betokham ('he prophesied among/in the midst of them') uses the hitpa'el form of n-b-a, which suggests ecstatic, Spirit-driven prophetic behavior — Saul is swept up into something larger than himself. The plural 'they arrived' (vayyavo'u) indicates Saul was traveling with companions, possibly including the servant from chapter 9. The scene is public: Saul prophesies in the open, and the people who know him are watching.
11. The phrase kol-yode'o me'itmol shilshom ('all who knew him from yesterday and the day before,' i.e., 'from before') establishes that this behavior is unprecedented for Saul. His neighbors know him as a farmer's son, not a prophet. The question mah-zeh hayah leven-Qish ('what has happened to the son of Kish?') expresses genuine bewilderment — they identify him by his father's name, emphasizing his ordinary family origin. The question hagam Sha'ul banneviim ('Is Saul also among the prophets?') becomes a proverbial saying in Israel (referenced again in 19:24), expressing incredulity when an unlikely person displays unexpected spiritual capacity.

12. The phrase *umi avihem* ('and who is their father?') is one of the most debated lines in 1 Samuel. The pronoun 'their' could refer to the prophets (challenging the assumption that prophecy requires noble lineage) or could be a rhetorical challenge about Saul specifically. The word *marshal* ('proverb, parable, byword') indicates that the saying transcended this specific event and entered Israel's cultural vocabulary. A *marshal* is a compressed piece of wisdom that captures a recurring human situation in a memorable phrase.
13. The verb *vaykhal* ('he finished, he completed') indicates the prophetic episode was temporary — it had a beginning and an end. The Spirit's rushing was for a specific moment, not a permanent state. Saul then goes to the *bamah* ('high place'), the elevated worship site. This may be the same high place the prophets were descending from in verse 5, or a different one. High places were the standard local worship sites before the temple was built — they were elevated platforms, sometimes with structures, used for sacrifice and prayer.
14. The *dod* ('uncle') of Saul appears without prior introduction — the narrative assumes the reader knows the family context. The uncle's question is casual, but Saul's answer is carefully edited: he mentions Samuel but omits the anointing entirely. The phrase *vanir'eh ki-ayin* ('we saw that they were nowhere') explains the escalation from donkey-search to prophet-consultation, making the visit to Samuel sound practical rather than revelatory.
15. The uncle's follow-up question (*mah-amar lakhem Shemu'el*, 'what did Samuel say to you?') presses further. The particle *na* ('please, I ask') adds urgency — he senses there is more to the story than a donkey search. The uncle uses the plural *lakhem* ('to you all'), including the servant in the question.
16. The infinitive absolute *haged higgid* ('declaring he declared / he certainly told') gives emphatic force to Saul's partial truth — he makes the donkey report sound thorough while omitting everything that matters. The term *melukhah* ('kingship, royal authority') is the narrator's word, not Saul's — Saul does not use it because he does not speak of it at all. The narrator's aside (*ve'et devar hammelukhah lo-higgid lo*) breaks the dialogue pattern to make a psychological observation: Saul is already managing information, already guarding the secret of his anointing.
17. The verb *vayyats'eq* ('he cried out, he summoned') conveys urgent, authoritative calling — this is a national assembly, not a casual gathering. *Mizpah* (*hammitspah*, 'the watchtower') was a traditional assembly site in Benjamin (Judges 20:1; 1 Samuel 7:5-6). The phrase *el-YHWH* ('to the LORD') indicates this is a sacred convocation — the people are summoned not just to hear Samuel but to stand before God. What follows is a public, lot-based selection to confirm what has already been determined privately.
18. Samuel speaks with prophetic authority — *koh amar YHWH* ('thus says the LORD') is the standard messenger formula used by prophets throughout the Hebrew Bible. God recites his own resume: *He'eleiti* ('I brought up') references the Exodus, and *va'atsil* ('I rescued') from the root *n-ts-l* references ongoing deliverance. The phrase *kol-hammamlakhot hallochatsim etkhem* ('all the kingdoms that oppressed you') summarizes the entire Judges period — Moab, Canaan, Midian, Ammon, Philistia. God's point is: I have been your deliverer all along. The request for a king is a rejection of that history.
19. The verb *me'astem* ('you have rejected') is strong — *ma'as* means to refuse, reject, despise. God does not describe the people's request as misguided or premature but as rejection. The participle *moshi'a* ('who saves') is in the present tense — God is not merely their past deliverer but their ongoing savior. The phrase *ra'oteikhem vetsaroteikhem* ('your disasters and your distresses') covers both external calamities and internal pressures. The command *hityatssevu* ('present yourselves') uses the *hitpa'el*, implying deliberate, formal positioning — they must stand formally before God for the lot to be cast. The organization *leshivteikhem ule'alpeikhem* ('by your tribes and by your thousands/clans') follows the military census structure.
20. The verb *vayyiqqarev* ('he brought near') is a technical term for presenting before God, often used in sacrificial contexts. The verb *vayyillakhd* ('was taken, was captured') from *l-k-d* means literally 'was seized' — the lot 'captures' the chosen party. The mechanism of the lot is not described — it may have been Urim and Thummim, casting stones, or another sacred lot procedure. The passive voice ('was taken') emphasizes that the selection is not Samuel's doing but God's. Benjamin, the smallest tribe (Judges 21:6), is chosen — God's pattern of selecting the least continues.
21. The Matri clan (*mishpachat hammaTri*) appears only here in the Hebrew Bible; nothing else is known about it. The triple narrowing (tribe, clan, individual) follows the procedure used when Achan was identified in Joshua 7:16-18. The phrase *vayvaqshuhu velo nimtsa* ('they sought him and he was not found') creates dramatic tension: God's lot has identified Saul, but Saul himself is absent. The verb *biqesh* ('to seek') echoes the donkey search of chapter 9, creating an ironic reversal — the seeker has become the sought.
22. The verb *vayyish'alu* ('they inquired') puns on Saul's name (*Sha'ul*, 'asked for / requested'). The inquiry of the LORD (*ba-YHWH*) likely involved Urim and Thummim or another oracular device — God gives a direct, locational answer. The verb *nechba* ('has hidden himself') from *ch-b-a* means to hide deliberately; this is not accidental absence but intentional concealment. The *kelim* ('baggage, vessels, equipment') refers to the assembled supplies and gear the people brought to Mizpah. The image of Israel's first king hiding among luggage has generated centuries of commentary on the psychology of divine calling.
23. The verb *vayyarutsu* ('they ran') conveys urgency and excitement — the crowd rushes to retrieve their king. The verb *vayyityatsev* ('he stood, he positioned himself') uses the same root as *hityatssevu* ('present yourselves') in verse 19: the people were told to present themselves before God, and now Saul finally does the same. His physical stature — taller than everyone *mishikhmo vama'lah* ('from his shoulders and upward') — is emphasized as visible confirmation of his selection. The same description appeared in 9:2. In a culture that associated height with leadership capacity, Saul looks the part, whatever his internal reluctance.
24. Samuel's presentation uses *bachar* ('to choose, to elect') — the verb of divine selection used for Israel itself (Deuteronomy 7:6). The rhetorical question *hare'item* ('do you see?') forces the crowd to look and acknowledge. The phrase *ein kamahu bekol-ha'am* ('there is none like him among all the people') is ambiguous — it could refer to his height, his character, or simply his unique divine selection. The acclamation *vayyari'u* ('they

shouted') followed by yechi hammelekh ('long live the king!') is Israel's first royal acclamation — the birth of the monarchy in a single shout. The word melekh ('king') is now spoken aloud by the people; the transition from theocracy to monarchy is verbally enacted.

25. The mishpat hammelukhah ('the rights/manner of kingship') is a constitutional document — mishpat here means 'established ordinance, regulation, charter.' This may be distinct from the mishpat hammelekh ('the manner of the king') in 8:11-18, which was a warning; this appears to be a positive charter defining how kingship should function under God. Samuel writes it bassefer ('in the/a document') and places it lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') — likely at a sanctuary, as a covenant witness. This is Israel's first written constitution, stored in sacred space to indicate that the king's authority derives from and answers to God.
26. Saul returns not to a palace but to his home in Gibeah — the monarchy has no infrastructure yet. The chayil ('valiant men, men of substance') who accompany him are not conscripts but volunteers drawn by divine impulse: asher-naga Elohim belibbam ('whose hearts God had touched'). The verb naga ('to touch, to strike') suggests direct divine contact — God physically reaching into these men's hearts to stir loyalty toward Saul. This is a small, Spirit-formed entourage, not an army. The new king goes home with a handful of God-touched followers.
27. The phrase benei veliyya'al ('sons of worthlessness/wickedness') is a Hebrew idiom for morally bankrupt troublemakers — beliyya'al may compound beli ('without') and ya'al ('worth, profit'). The verb vayyivzuhu ('they despised him') from b-z-h is the same verb used when Esau 'despised' his birthright (Genesis 25:34) — it indicates contemptuous disregard. The minchah ('tribute, gift, offering') they withhold is the standard acknowledgment of a new ruler's authority; refusing it is a political act of defiance. The final phrase vayyehi kemmucharish ('he was as one being silent') uses the hiphil participle of ch-r-sh ('to plow, to be silent, to be deaf'). The comparative ke- ('like, as') is unusual — he was 'like' one who keeps silent, as if the narrator sees him choosing silence rather than silence being his natural state.

11

Summary: *Nahash the Ammonite besieges Jabesh-gilead and offers a humiliating treaty: he will gouge out every man's right eye as a disgrace to all Israel. The elders of Jabesh ask for seven days to seek help. When the news reaches Gibeah, the Spirit of God rushes upon Saul in fierce anger. He butchers a pair of oxen, sends the pieces throughout Israel as a summons, and musters a massive army. Saul divides his forces into three companies, attacks at the morning watch, and shatters the Ammonites so completely that no two survivors remain together. The people then gather at Gilgal to renew Saul's kingship with sacrifices and celebration.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is Saul at his absolute best — the leader Israel hoped for. The Spirit of God (ruach Elohim) comes on him not in a worship setting but in response to injustice: he hears about Nahash's cruelty and the Spirit transforms his anger into decisive military action. This is the intended design of charismatic kingship — divine empowerment channeled through righteous fury on behalf of the vulnerable. Saul's dismemberment of the oxen deliberately echoes the Levite's dismemberment of his concubine in Judges 19:29, but where that act led to civil war and near-annihilation of Benjamin, Saul's act unites all Israel for the first time since the conquest. The chapter also preserves one of the most generous moments in Saul's life: when the people want to execute those who doubted his kingship (10:27), Saul refuses, declaring that no one will be put to death on a day when the LORD has given deliverance to Israel. This is the Saul who could have been — magnanimous in victory, attributing success to God, restraining vengeance.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this chapter and the preceding narratives of Saul's selection presents a well-known source-critical puzzle. In chapter 10, Saul has already been publicly chosen by lot at Mizpah, yet 11:15 describes the people going to Gilgal to 'make Saul king' (vayyamlikhu sham et-Sha'ul) as though it were a fresh installation. The verb chadesh ('renew') in Samuel's phrase nachdeshshah sham hammelukhah ('let us renew the kingship there') attempts to harmonize the accounts — this is a renewal, not a first coronation. The Septuagint (especially 4QSam) preserves a longer introduction to this chapter that provides context about Nahash's prior atrocities against the Gadites and Reubenites, material absent from the Masoretic Text. Whether this is original text lost from MT or a later expansion in the LXX tradition remains debated.*

Connections: *The Jabesh-gilead connection is deeply layered. In Judges 21, after the civil war against Benjamin, the other tribes attacked Jabesh-gilead for not joining the fight, killed most of its inhabitants, and gave 400 surviving virgins to the Benjaminites as wives. Saul is a Benjaminite. The people of Jabesh-gilead may be his kinsmen through those forced marriages — which gives his rescue a personal dimension the text does not make explicit but the original audience would recognize. This bond endures: when Saul and his sons die at Gilboa (1 Samuel 31:11-13), it is the men of Jabesh-gilead who risk their lives to recover and bury the bodies. The dismemberment*

of oxen sent throughout Israel echoes Judges 19:29 (the Levite's concubine) but reverses its outcome: that act produced tribal civil war, this one produces tribal unity. Saul's declaration in verse 13 that 'the LORD has accomplished deliverance in Israel' (asah YHWH teshu'ah beYisra'el) uses vocabulary that will later describe David's victories — and that Saul himself will never use again with such unguarded faith.

¹Nahash the Ammonite marched up and laid siege to Jabesh-gilead. All the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, "Make a treaty with us and we will serve you." ²Nahash the Ammonite said to them, "On this condition I will make a treaty with you: I will gouge out every one of your right eyes. I will set this as a disgrace on all Israel." ³The elders of Jabesh said to him, "Give us seven days so we can send messengers throughout all the territory of Israel. If no one comes to rescue us, we will surrender to you." ⁴The messengers came to Gibeah of Saul and reported the situation to the people. All the people raised their voices and wept. ⁵Just then Saul was coming in from the field, behind his oxen. Saul asked, "What is wrong with the people? Why are they weeping?" They told him what the men of Jabesh had reported. ⁶The Spirit of God rushed upon Saul when he heard this report, and his anger blazed fiercely. ⁷He took a pair of oxen, cut them into pieces, and sent them throughout all the territory of Israel by messengers, saying, "Whoever does not march out after Saul and after Samuel — this is what will be done to his oxen!" The dread of the LORD fell on the people, and they marched out as one. ⁸He mustered them at Bezek: the Israelites numbered three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah thirty thousand. ⁹They told the messengers who had come, "Say this to the men of Jabesh-gilead: 'Tomorrow, by the time the sun grows hot, you will have deliverance.'" The messengers went and reported this to the men of Jabesh, and they rejoiced. ¹⁰The men of Jabesh then said to the Ammonites, "Tomorrow we will come out to you, and you may do to us whatever seems good to you." ¹¹The next day Saul divided the army into three companies. They entered the Ammonite camp during the morning watch and struck Ammon until the heat of the day. The survivors scattered so completely that no two of them were left together. ¹²The people said to Samuel, "Who was it that said, 'Should Saul reign over us?' Hand those men over so we can put them to death!" ¹³But Saul said, "No one will be put to death today, because today the LORD has accomplished deliverance in Israel." ¹⁴Then Samuel said to the people, "Come, let us go to Gilgal and renew the kingship there." ¹⁵All the people went to Gilgal and made Saul king there before the LORD at Gilgal. They offered fellowship sacrifices there before the LORD, and Saul and all the men of Israel celebrated with tremendous joy.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayya'al* ('he went up') indicates military advance from the east, ascending from the Jordan valley toward the Gilead highlands. Nahash is both a personal name and the Hebrew word for 'serpent' — the narrator may intend the resonance. The phrase *kerot-lanu verit* ('cut a treaty with us') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for covenant-making (literally 'cut'), which involves ritual animal slaughter to solemnize the agreement. The verb *na'avdekka* ('we will serve you') implies vassal tribute and political subjection — not slavery in the chattel sense, but the surrender of sovereignty.
2. The verb *naqar* ('gouge out, bore out') is graphic and specific — this is not wounding but deliberate mutilation. The phrase *kol-ein yamin* ('every right eye') applies to the entire male population, not select individuals. The word *cherpah* ('disgrace, reproach, shame') is a strong term for public humiliation — it appears elsewhere for the 'reproach of Egypt' removed by circumcision at Gilgal (Joshua 5:9) and for Goliath's defiance of Israel's armies (1 Samuel 17:26). Nahash intends this as a national statement: Israel is too weak to protect its own people.
3. The verb *heref* ('give respite, let go, relax') asks Nahash to ease the pressure temporarily. The phrase *bekhol gevul Yisra'el* ('throughout all the territory of Israel') shows that the elders plan a national appeal, not a local one — they need someone with authority over all tribes. The word *moshi'a* ('savior, deliverer, rescuer') is the participle of *y-sh-*, the root behind the name Yehoshua/Joshua and the noun *yeshu'ah* ('salvation'). The elders are asking whether Israel has a deliverer. The verb *veyatsa'nu* ('we will come out') means surrender by exiting the city gates — opening themselves to Nahash's terms.
4. Gibeah is identified as Giv'at Sha'ul ('Gibeah of Saul') — his hometown and de facto capital. The messengers speak *be'oznei ha'am* ('in the ears of the people'), a public declaration. The people's response is weeping (*vayyivku*), not action — they grieve but have no plan. This is the state of Israel without activated leadership: they feel the pain but cannot organize a response. Saul is notably absent from this scene; he will arrive in the next verse from the fields, still living as a farmer despite having been chosen as king.
5. The phrase *acharei habaqar min-hassadeh* ('behind the cattle from the field') paints Saul as still fully embedded in agrarian life. He is literally following oxen home from plowing or grazing. The question *mah-la'am ki yivku* ('what is with the people that they weep?') shows he is unaware of the crisis — no messenger system, no intelligence network. The verb *vayesapperu-lo* ('they recounted to him') uses the Piel intensive of *s-p-r*, suggesting a full and detailed account of the situation.

6. The verb *tsalach* ('to rush, to advance powerfully') in the Qal describes the Spirit's violent onset — this is not gradual inspiration but sudden seizure. The same verb describes the Spirit coming on Samson before he tore a lion apart (Judges 14:6). The phrase *vayyichar appo* ('his anger burned') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for fierce anger — literally 'his nose burned,' since the flaring of nostrils was associated with rage. The adverb *me'od* ('greatly, exceedingly') intensifies: this is not irritation but consuming wrath. The combination of *ruach Elohim* and anger is theologically significant — the Spirit does not suppress Saul's emotion but sanctifies it for action.
7. The phrase *tsemed baqar* ('a pair/yoke of oxen') — likely Saul's own working animals, the ones he was just walking behind. The verb *vayenattechehu* ('he cut it into pieces') uses the same Piel of *n-t-ch* used for butchering sacrificial animals (Leviticus 1:6) and for the Levite's dismemberment of his concubine (Judges 19:29). The allusion is unmistakable. The phrase *pachad YHWH* ('dread/terror of the LORD') indicates a supernaturally induced fear — not merely intimidation by Saul's threat but a divine compulsion that unites the tribes. The phrase *ke'ish echad* ('as one man') denotes perfect unanimity — a united Israel that has not been seen since Joshua's generation.
8. Bezek is located in the central hill country, strategically positioned for a march east to the Jordan valley and across to Jabesh-gilead. The separate counting of Judah from the rest of Israel (*benei Yisra'el ... ve'ish Yehudah*) may reflect an early political distinction between Judah and the northern tribes that will later become the divided monarchy — or it may simply reflect separate tribal musters. The numbers (300,000 and 30,000) are large by any ancient standard; the Hebrew word *elef* can mean 'thousand' or 'military unit/clan,' and some scholars read these as 300 units and 30 units respectively. The verb *vayyifqdem* ('he mustered/counted them') uses the root *p-q-d*, which implies both numbering and assuming command responsibility.
9. The word *teshu'ah* ('deliverance, rescue, salvation') is from the same *y-sh-* root as *moshi'a* ('deliverer') in verse 3 — the elders asked for a *moshi'a*, and now *teshu'ah* is promised. The time marker *bechom hashemesh* ('when the sun grows hot') means mid-morning, approximately 9-10 AM — indicating the attack will come at dawn and the battle will be decided by mid-morning. The messengers' return with good news transforms the mood of Jabesh: *vayyismachu* ('they rejoiced'). The promise is specific — not 'soon' but 'tomorrow by mid-morning.'
10. The verb *netse'* ('we will come out') is the same verb from verse 3 (*veyatsa'nu*), where it meant surrender. Here it functions as deliberate misdirection — the Ammonites hear capitulation, but the men of Jabesh mean something quite different. The phrase *kekhol-hattov be'eineikhem* ('according to all the good in your eyes') is an idiom of total submission, but in context it is strategic deception: keeping Nahash complacent until Saul's army arrives.
11. The division into *sheloshah rashim* ('three heads/companies') is a standard ancient Near Eastern tactical formation — it allows a three-sided attack that creates confusion and prevents organized retreat. Gideon used the same tactic (Judges 7:16), as will Abishai and David later (2 Samuel 18:2). The *ashmoret habboqer* ('morning watch') is the last watch of the night, roughly 2-6 AM — Saul attacks in the pre-dawn darkness when the Ammonite camp is least alert. The phrase *ad-chom hayyom* ('until the heat of the day') matches the promise of verse 9: deliverance by mid-morning. The final clause *velo nish'aru-vam shenayim yachad* ('not two of them remained together') is a Hebrew idiom for total rout — the army disintegrated so completely that survivors fled individually, unable to regroup.
12. This refers back to the *benei veliyya'al* ('worthless men') of 10:27 who despised Saul and refused to bring him gifts. Now, after the decisive victory, the people's loyalty has swung to the opposite extreme — they want blood vengeance against Saul's critics. The verb *nemitem* ('we will put them to death') shows the crowd demanding execution. They address Samuel, not Saul, indicating that Samuel still holds judicial authority alongside Saul's military authority. The mob's zeal, while understandable, reveals the danger of populist energy: yesterday's indifference has become today's demand for purges.
13. The phrase *lo-yumat ish* ('no man will be put to death') is a royal decree — Saul exercises his authority not to punish but to show mercy. The verb *asah* ('accomplished, made, did') credits the LORD as the active agent of the *teshu'ah* ('deliverance'). Saul does not say 'I won' or 'we won' but 'the LORD accomplished.' The same root *y-sh-* (*teshu'ah*) has run through the chapter from the elders' plea for a *moshi'a* (v3) through the promise of *teshu'ah* (v9) to this theological declaration. Saul's magnanimity here contrasts sharply with the vindictive kings who will follow in Israel's history.
14. The verb *nachdeshshah* ('let us renew') from *ch-d-sh* ('to make new, to renew') is carefully chosen — it does not say 'let us establish' (which would imply this is the first coronation) but 'let us renew' (which acknowledges prior installations at Mizpah in chapter 10). Gilgal is a site loaded with covenantal memory: it is where Israel first camped after crossing the Jordan (Joshua 4:19-20), where circumcision was renewed (Joshua 5:2-9), and where the 'reproach of Egypt' was rolled away. Samuel's choice of Gilgal for the kingship renewal connects Saul's reign to the conquest narrative — a new chapter in the same story. The word *melukhah* ('kingship') refers to the institution and office, not just the person.
15. The verb *vayyamlikhu* ('they made king') is a Hiphil of *m-l-kh* — the people actively install Saul as king. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') indicates a sacred ceremony at a recognized worship site. The *zevachim shelamim* ('fellowship/peace sacrifices') are from the root *sh-l-m* ('wholeness, peace, completion') — these are offerings of celebration and communion, where God, priest, and worshiper all receive portions. The communal eating makes this a covenant meal binding the nation to its new king. The final phrase *vayyismach sham Sha'ul vekhol anshei Yisra'el ad-me'od* ('Saul and all the men of Israel rejoiced there exceedingly') places Saul and his people in perfect harmony — a unity that will not survive the next few chapters.

12

Summary: *Samuel gathers all Israel and delivers his farewell address as judge, formally transferring leadership to the newly anointed king. He challenges the people to testify whether he has ever defrauded them, then prosecutes a covenant lawsuit (riv) against Israel, rehearsing God's righteous acts from the exodus through the judges. He declares their demand for a king an act of rejection against the LORD, then calls down thunder and rain during wheat harvest as a divine sign confirming his words. The people, terrified, beg Samuel to intercede for them. Samuel closes with a warning: if Israel and their king serve the LORD faithfully, all will be well — but if they turn to empty things (tohu), both they and their king will be swept away.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is structured as a formal covenant lawsuit — the Hebrew riv pattern found in the prophets (Micah 6:1-8, Hosea 4:1-3). Samuel stands as both plaintiff's attorney and witness, arraigning Israel before God. The lawsuit follows a recognizable Near Eastern legal form: the summoning of witnesses (verses 1-5), the recitation of the suzerain's past faithfulness (verses 6-11), the accusation of breach (verses 12-13), and the pronouncement of conditional sentence (verses 14-15). What makes this passage extraordinary is that the judge who prosecutes the case simultaneously announces his own retirement — Samuel is dismantling the system he embodied. He is the last judge, and the thunder he calls down is not merely a miracle but a divine seal on the lawsuit, God's own testimony entering the court record. The wheat harvest setting is also significant: thunder and rain during wheat harvest (late May to early June) is virtually unheard of in the Levant, making the sign unmistakable.*

Translation Friction: *The central tension is theological: Samuel declares that asking for a king was a great evil (ra'ah gedolah, verse 17), yet God has already granted the king (verse 13). The text does not resolve whether monarchy is inherently wrong or merely wrongly motivated. Samuel's statement in verse 12 — 'the LORD your God is your king' — frames the issue as competing kingships, but verse 14 immediately offers a path forward where both the human king and the divine king coexist. Translators must decide whether ra'ah here means 'evil' (moral fault) or 'disaster' (harmful consequence). We render it as 'evil' because the context treats the request as a breach of covenant loyalty, not merely a strategic mistake. Verse 21 introduces tohu ('emptiness, chaos'), the same word used in Genesis 1:2 for the formless void before creation. Applying this cosmic term to idols is a deliberate theological claim: to follow other gods is to choose pre-creation nothingness over the God who orders existence.*

Connections: *Samuel's covenant lawsuit echoes Moses' farewell in Deuteronomy 31-32, where Moses also recites God's faithfulness, predicts Israel's unfaithfulness, and calls witnesses. The formula 'the LORD and his anointed' in verse 3 anticipates the pairing that will define the rest of 1-2 Samuel: God and his chosen king, a relationship that will fracture with Saul and be restored with David. The thunder-and-rain sign connects to Elijah's drought on Mount Carmel (1 Kings 18) — both are weather events that serve as divine testimony in a covenant dispute. Samuel's promise in verse 23 that it would be sin for him to stop praying for Israel establishes intercessory prayer as a prophetic obligation, a thread that runs through Jeremiah (7:16, 11:14) and into the New Testament's understanding of Christ's ongoing intercession (Hebrews 7:25). The word tohu in verse 21 deliberately evokes Genesis 1:2, framing idolatry as a return to primordial chaos.*

¹Samuel said to all Israel, "I have listened to your voice in everything you said to me, and I have set a king over you. ²Now — the king walks before you. As for me, I have grown old and gray, and my sons are here among you. I have walked before you from my youth until this day. ³Here I am. Testify against me before the LORD and before his anointed: Whose ox have I taken? Whose donkey have I taken? Whom have I cheated? Whom have I crushed? From whose hand have I accepted a bribe to look the other way? Tell me, and I will make it right." ⁴They said, "You have not cheated us. You have not crushed us. You have not taken anything from anyone's hand." ⁵He said to them, "The LORD is witness against you, and his anointed is witness this day, that you have found nothing in my hand." And they said, "He is witness." ⁶Samuel said to the people, "It is the LORD who appointed Moses and Aaron and who brought your ancestors up from the land of Egypt. ⁷Now then, stand here, and I will bring a case against you before the LORD — the case of all the righteous acts of the LORD that he performed for you and for your ancestors. ⁸When Jacob went into Egypt and your ancestors cried out to the LORD, the LORD sent

Moses and Aaron, and they brought your ancestors out of Egypt and settled them in this place. ⁹But they forgot the LORD their God, so he sold them into the hand of Sisera, commander of the army of Hazor, and into the hand of the Philistines, and into the hand of the king of Moab — and these made war against them. ¹⁰They cried out to the LORD and said, 'We have sinned, because we abandoned the LORD and served the Baals and the Ashtaroth. Now rescue us from the hand of our enemies, and we will serve you.' ¹¹The LORD sent Jerubbaal, and Bedan, and Jephthah, and Samuel, and he rescued you from the hand of your enemies on every side, so that you lived in safety. ¹²But when you saw that Nahash king of the Ammonites came against you, you said to me, 'No — a king must reign over us!' — even though the LORD your God was your king. ¹³Now then — here is the king you chose, the one you asked for. The LORD has set a king over you. ¹⁴If you fear the LORD and serve him and listen to his voice and do not rebel against the command of the LORD — then both you and the king who reigns over you will follow the LORD your God. ¹⁵But if you do not listen to the voice of the LORD and you rebel against the command of the LORD, then the hand of the LORD will be against you, as it was against your ancestors. ¹⁶Now stand and witness this great thing that the LORD is about to do before your eyes. ¹⁷Is it not wheat harvest today? I will call on the LORD, and he will send thunder and rain. Then you will know and see that your evil is great — this thing you have done in the eyes of the LORD, asking for a king." ¹⁸Samuel called on the LORD, and the LORD sent thunder and rain that day. All the people feared the LORD — and Samuel — greatly. ¹⁹All the people said to Samuel, "Pray for your servants to the LORD your God, so that we do not die! For we have added to all our sins this evil — asking for a king." ²⁰Samuel said to the people, "Do not be afraid. You have indeed done all this evil — but do not turn away from following the LORD. Serve the LORD with all your heart. ²¹Do not turn aside after empty things that cannot help and cannot rescue — for they are emptiness itself. ²²For the LORD will not abandon his people, for the sake of his great name — because the LORD was pleased to make you his own people. ²³As for me — far be it from me to sin against the LORD by ceasing to pray for you. I will teach you the good and straight path. ²⁴Only fear the LORD and serve him faithfully with all your heart. For consider what great things he has done for you. ²⁵But if you persist in doing evil, both you and your king will be swept away."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb shamati ('I have listened') is the same root as Samuel's own name (shemu'el, popularly connected to shama, 'to hear'). The man whose name means 'heard by God' has now heard the people — but what they asked for grieves him. The verb himlikhti ('I have caused to reign') is the Hiphil form of malakh, indicating that Samuel served as the agent of royal installation, though God was the ultimate authority behind it.
2. The repetition of mithallekh/hithallakhti ('walks/I have walked') creates a deliberate handoff: Samuel's public conduct is now being transferred to the king. The Hithpael form of halakh carries the sense of ongoing, visible conduct — how one lives in full view of others. Samuel's claim that he walked before them from his youth (min-ne'uray) reaches back to his childhood service at Shiloh (chapter 2-3).
2. The mention of 'my sons are with you' is a painful concession. Samuel's sons were corrupt judges (8:1-3), and their failure was the stated reason Israel demanded a king. Samuel does not defend them here — he simply notes their presence and moves on to his own record.
3. The phrase neged YHWH ve-neged meshicho ('before the LORD and before his anointed') establishes the two witnesses required by Deuteronomic law: God and the king. The word mashiach ('anointed one') here refers to Saul — this is one of the earliest uses of the term that will later develop into the concept of the Messiah. Samuel places his entire career under oath before both divine and human authority.
3. The verb ratsoti ('I have crushed') comes from ratsats, meaning to crush, oppress, or break — it describes the abuse of judicial power to destroy the vulnerable. This is stronger than mere exploitation; it implies using authority to grind people down. Samuel's rhetorical questions follow the pattern of Mosaic judicial ethics (Deuteronomy 16:19) and anticipate the prophetic indictments of corrupt leaders (Ezekiel 34, Micah 3).
4. The people's threefold denial precisely mirrors Samuel's questions from verse 3 — using the same verbs ashaqta ('you cheated'), ratsota ('you crushed'), and laqachta ('you took'). The repetition functions as formal legal testimony: the community publicly certifies Samuel's integrity. The word me'umah ('anything at all') is emphatic — not even the smallest thing was taken. This public acquittal is Samuel's vindication before he prosecutes Israel's case.
5. The word ed ('witness') appears three times in rapid succession — Samuel declares it twice and the people confirm it once. The legal procedure is now sealed: God and the king serve as witnesses, and the people have ratified the verdict. The phrase bakhem ('against you') is striking — the witnesses are against the people, not against Samuel. By clearing Samuel, Israel has inadvertently placed themselves under scrutiny. Samuel's clean hands become the foil for Israel's guilty request. The stage is set for the prosecution to shift from Samuel's defense to Israel's indictment.
6. The verb asah here means 'made' in the sense of 'appointed, established' — God made Moses and Aaron into what they were. This opening line sets the framework for the covenant lawsuit: before any accusation, the prosecutor establishes the suzerain's credentials. The pattern mirrors Hittite treaty forms where the great king recites his benevolent acts before listing the vassal's obligations. Samuel begins with the foundational saving act: the

exodus from Egypt (he'elah, 'brought up'), using the same verb that will recur throughout the historical review.

7. The word tsidqot (plural of tsedaqah) here means 'righteous acts' or 'acts of covenant faithfulness' — not abstract righteousness but concrete historical interventions where God proved faithful. The term carries legal weight: these are God's demonstrations of covenant loyalty that obligate a response from the vassal. Samuel will now recite these acts as a prosecutor presents evidence.
7. The construction ishafetah itkhem ('I will judge/argue with you') uses the same root as Samuel's title — he is the shofet ('judge'). His final act as judge is not to adjudicate between two Israelites but to adjudicate between God and Israel. The preposition lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') indicates that God is both the offended party and the presiding authority — the covenant lawsuit is tried in God's own court.
8. Samuel compresses centuries into a single sentence: Jacob's descent into Egypt, the oppression, the cry (za'aqu, a cry of distress in covenant context), the sending of deliverers, and the settlement in Canaan. The verb za'aqu ('they cried out') is the technical term for covenant appeal — the cry of the vassal to the suzerain when the treaty is being violated by a third party. God's response (sending Moses and Aaron) is presented as fulfilling his covenant obligation.
8. The phrase ba-maqom hazzeh ('in this place') likely refers to the land of Canaan generally, though some interpreters connect it specifically to the location of the assembly (Gilgal or Mizpah). The settlement in the land is the culmination of God's saving act — not just rescue from Egypt but establishment in the promised territory.
9. The verb shakhchu ('they forgot') is not mere forgetfulness but covenantal amnesia — deliberate failure to remember God's acts. In covenant theology, to 'remember' (zakhar) is to act on the relationship; to 'forget' (shakhach) is to abandon it. The consequence is expressed with the commercial verb vayyimkor ('he sold them'), depicting God handing Israel over to enemies as one transfers property. The metaphor is deliberately degrading: the people who forgot their Redeemer are sold like goods.
9. The three enemies — Sisera (Judges 4-5), the Philistines (Judges 13-16), and the king of Moab (Judges 3:12-30) — represent threats from the north, west, and east respectively. Samuel selects enemies that encircle Israel, showing that covenant unfaithfulness exposed them on every front.
10. The cry follows a fixed pattern from the book of Judges: sin, suffering, crying out, deliverance. The confession chatanu ('we have sinned') is paired with the specific charge azavnu ('we abandoned') — the same verb used for covenant breach. The Baals (ba'alim, plural 'lords, masters') and Ashtaroth (plural of Ashtoreth, the Canaanite fertility goddess) represent the full spectrum of Canaanite worship. The people's promise ve-na'avdekka ('and we will serve you') uses the same verb (avad) they used for serving the Baals — the question of whom Israel will serve is the chapter's central issue.
11. Jerubbaal is Gideon's alternate name (Judges 6:32), meaning 'let Baal contend' — Samuel pointedly uses this name rather than Gideon, keeping the anti-Baal polemic alive. Bedan is debated: some identify him with Barak (Judges 4-5), others with Samson, and some see it as an otherwise unknown judge. The Septuagint reads 'Barak' here. Jephthah delivered Israel from the Ammonites (Judges 11). Samuel includes himself in the list — he is the last in the chain of deliverers God sent.
11. The verb vayyatsel ('he rescued') and the phrase vateshvu vetach ('you lived in safety') complete the cycle: Israel sinned, cried out, and God delivered. Samuel's point is that this pattern should have been sufficient — God always answered. The demand for a king breaks this established pattern of trust.
12. The clause ki melekh yimlokh aleinu ('a king must reign over us') uses the emphatic construction of the verb malakh with the cognate noun melekh — 'a king must king over us.' The intensity of the demand is embedded in the grammar. Samuel juxtaposes this with va-YHWH Eloheikhem malkekhem ('and the LORD your God is your king'), creating an irreconcilable collision: Israel already has a king, but they demanded another.
12. Nahash's invasion (detailed in chapter 11) was the immediate trigger for the monarchy demand, but Samuel frames it as the latest iteration of the Judges cycle — another enemy, another moment where Israel should have cried out to God but instead sought a structural solution. The shift from 'cry out to God' to 'give us a king' is the covenant breach Samuel is prosecuting.
13. The verb she'eltem ('you asked for') is from sha'al ('to ask'), the root embedded in the name Sha'ul (Saul). The wordplay saturates 1 Samuel: Hannah 'asked' for a son, the people 'asked' for a king, and the king's very name means 'asked for.' Samuel distinguishes between two agents: bechartem ('you chose') places the initiative on Israel, but natan YHWH ('the LORD has given') acknowledges that God ratified the request. The tension is unresolved — the king is simultaneously Israel's choice and God's gift, a paradox that will define Saul's entire reign.
14. The conditional im ('if') introduces a fork in Israel's future — one path leads to flourishing, the other to destruction (verse 15). The four verbs (fear, serve, listen, not rebel) are not synonyms but an ascending sequence of covenant commitment: reverence, active service, attentive obedience, and refusal to resist.
14. The phrase gam attem ve-gam hammelekh ('both you and the king') binds the people and their ruler to the same standard. The king is not above covenant law — he stands under the same conditions as every Israelite. This principle, articulated here, becomes the theological standard by which every king in 1-2 Samuel and 1-2 Kings will be judged.
15. The apodosis — ve-hayetah yad YHWH bakhem ('the hand of the LORD will be against you') — uses the image of God's hand as an instrument of judgment. The same 'hand of the LORD' that delivered Israel from Egypt (Exodus 9:3) and struck the Philistines (1 Samuel 5:6-9) will now turn against his own people. The phrase u-va'avoteikhem ('and against your ancestors') is textually difficult; the Septuagint reads 'and against your king,' which fits the context better since verse 14 addressed both people and king. The MT reading may preserve the original, connecting Israel's future disobedience to their ancestors' pattern of rebellion.

16. The verb *hityatsvu* ('stand') echoes the same legal summons from verse 7 — the defendants who were called to hear the case are now ordered to stand for the verdict's demonstration. The phrase *ha-davar ha-gadol hazzeh* ('this great thing') signals a theophanic event — God is about to intervene visibly. The construction *oseh le-eineikhem* ('doing before your eyes') emphasizes eyewitness experience: this will not be reported secondhand but seen in real time.
17. The rhetorical question *halo qetsir chittim hayyom* ('is it not wheat harvest today?') forces the audience to acknowledge what they already know: this is the dry season. Any rain that follows will be impossible to explain naturally. Samuel is engineering a situation where the sign is self-authenticating.
17. The phrase *ra'atkhem rabbah* ('your evil is great') uses *ra'ah* ('evil, wickedness, disaster') paired with *rabbah* ('great, much'). Samuel classifies the monarchy request not as a mistake or a preference but as a great evil (*ra'ah gedolah*). The word *lish'ol* ('to ask') — from *sha'al* — continues the wordplay with the name *Sha'ul*. Israel's 'asking' for a king produced 'the asked-for one,' but the asking itself was the transgression.
18. The sequence is immediate: Samuel called (*vayyiqra*), the LORD gave (*vayyitten*) — no delay, no waiting. The storm arrives as a divine response to prophetic prayer in real time. The word *qolot* ('thunderclaps,' literally 'voices') is the same word used for God's voice at Sinai (Exodus 19:16), connecting this moment to the original covenant-making event. The people's fear (*vayyira*) extends to both God and Samuel — the prophet's authority is confirmed alongside the divine demonstration. The phrase *et YHWH ve-et Shemu'el* ('the LORD and Samuel') pairs God and prophet just as verse 3 paired God and the anointed king. Samuel's authority, now publicly vindicated, is the very authority he is laying down.
19. The people's plea *hitpallel be'ad avadekha* ('pray on behalf of your servants') uses the same verb for intercessory prayer (*hitpallel*) that will anchor Samuel's commitment in verse 23. They call themselves *avadekha* ('your servants'), submitting to Samuel's authority even as he retires from office. The phrase *yasafnu al kol chatoteinu ra'ah* ('we have added to all our sins an evil') is a remarkable confession: the people acknowledge not just the sin of asking for a king but that it was added to an already existing accumulation of sins. The verb *lish'ol* ('to ask') appears yet again — the 'asking' that produced Saul is now confessed as the crowning transgression.
20. Samuel's response is pastorally remarkable: he confirms the sin (*attem asitem et kol ha-ra'ah hazzot*, 'you have done all this evil') but immediately pivots to the path forward. The conjunction *akh* ('but, only, nevertheless') is the hinge — it acknowledges the past without letting it determine the future. The prohibition *al tasuru me-acharei YHWH* ('do not turn aside from after the LORD') uses *sur* ('to turn aside, to depart'), the verb that will later describe Saul's own falling away. The command *va-avadtem et YHWH be-khol levavkhem* ('serve the LORD with all your heart') echoes the Shema's language (Deuteronomy 6:5) — total devotion, not partial compliance.
21. The Hebrew *ha-tohu* ('the emptiness') is deliberately shocking in context. This is the word from Genesis 1:2 — *tohu va-vohu* ('formless and void'). Applying it to idols equates them with pre-creation chaos: they are not merely powerless but anti-real, the negation of everything God's creative word brought into being. Samuel is not saying idols are weak; he is saying they are nothing.
21. The double negation — *lo yo'ilu* ('they do not profit') and *lo yatsilu* ('they do not deliver') — eliminates both categories of divine benefit. A god who cannot profit you in peace or deliver you in war is not a god at all. The clause *ki tohu hemmah* ('for they are tohu') delivers the verdict: emptiness is not what they produce but what they are.
22. The verb *yittosh* ('he will cast off, abandon') is a strong term for total rejection — it means to hurl away, to fling aside. Samuel's assurance is that God will not do this, despite the evil Israel has committed. The ground of this assurance is *ba'avur shemo ha-gadol* ('on account of his great name') — God's reputation among the nations is bound to Israel's existence. To destroy Israel would be to unmake his own testimony.
22. The verb *ho'il* ('he was pleased, he undertook willingly') appears in the Hiphil and carries the sense of free, gracious initiative. God was not compelled to choose Israel; he delighted to do so. This is the doctrine of election stated in its simplest form: God's choice preceded Israel's performance and is not contingent on it. The phrase *etkhem lo le-am* ('you as his people') uses the possessive — Israel belongs to God not by their decision but by his.
23. The word *chalilah* ('far be it, God forbid') derives from *chalah* ('to profane, to desecrate'). Samuel is saying that ceasing to intercede would be an act of profanation — not merely neglect but sacrilege. This elevates intercessory prayer from a spiritual practice to a covenant duty. The construction *me-chato la-YHWH me-chadol lehitpallel* ('from sinning against the LORD by ceasing to pray') makes the cessation of prayer the sin itself, not merely a path to sin.
23. The verb *horeithi* ('I will teach/instruct') comes from *arah*, the same root that gives us *Torah* ('instruction, law'). Samuel's teaching role continues after his judicial role ends — he transitions from judge to prophet-teacher. The phrase *be-derekh ha-tovah ve-ha-yesharah* ('in the good and straight path') uses two adjectives: *tov* ('good' — morally excellent) and *yashar* ('straight, upright' — without deviation). The path is both ethically good and directionally clear.
24. The particle *akh* ('only, but') narrows everything to a single demand: fear and serve. The phrase *be-emet* ('in truth, in faithfulness') adds the quality of consistency — not sporadic devotion but truthful, reliable service. The verb *re'u* ('consider, see') calls the people to review the evidence Samuel has just presented: the historical recital of God's acts. The phrase *et asher higdil immakhem* ('what he has made great with you' or 'the great things he has done for you') summarizes the entire covenant lawsuit — God's track record of faithfulness is the ground for Israel's obligation.
25. The infinitive absolute *hare'a tare'u* ('doing evil you will do evil') conveys not a single act but a sustained pattern of wickedness. Samuel is not warning against a momentary lapse but against a settled trajectory of rebellion.
25. The verb *tissafu* ('you will be swept away') carries the force of sudden, total destruction. Its use in the Sodom narrative (Genesis 19:15, 17) gives it eschatological weight — this is not gradual decline but catastrophic erasure. The pairing *gam attem gam malkekhem* ('both you and your king') is

Samuel's final word on the monarchy: the king does not exempt the people from covenant consequences, nor do the people exempt the king. They rise or fall together.

13

Summary: *Saul has reigned for two years when his son Jonathan strikes the Philistine garrison at Geba, provoking a massive Philistine mobilization. The Philistines assemble an overwhelming force at Michmash — chariots, cavalry, and infantry described as numerous as the sand on the seashore. The Israelite army disintegrates: soldiers hide in caves, thickets, and cisterns; others flee across the Jordan. Saul waits at Gilgal for Samuel, who had set a seven-day deadline. When the prophet does not appear and the army is melting away, Saul offers the burnt offering himself. Samuel arrives immediately afterward, condemns Saul's disobedience, and declares that his dynasty will not continue — the LORD has already sought out a man after his own heart. The chapter closes with a portrait of Philistine military supremacy: they have monopolized ironworking so completely that not a single sword or spear can be found among the Israelites except with Saul and Jonathan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks the pivotal hinge in Saul's story — the moment his kingship begins its irreversible decline. The theological logic is precise: Saul was given the kingdom conditionally (chapter 10), proved himself worthy in battle (chapter 11), received Samuel's farewell charge with its demand for obedience (chapter 12), and now fails the first real test of faith under pressure. What makes the scene devastating is that Saul's reasoning is entirely logical from a military standpoint — his army is deserting, the enemy is overwhelming, and he needs divine favor before battle. His sin is not that he wanted to worship God but that he seized a priestly prerogative that was not his to take. The phrase *ish kilbavo* ('a man after God's heart') in verse 14 is one of the most consequential in the Hebrew Bible — it introduces the unnamed David as God's chosen replacement before David has appeared in the narrative. The reader knows Saul is finished before David has even been born into the story.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 1 contains one of the most discussed textual problems in the Hebrew Bible. The Masoretic Text reads *ben-shanah Sha'ul bemalko* — literally 'Saul was a son of [X] year(s) when he became king' — but the number is missing. The text then says 'and he reigned two years over Israel,' which contradicts the extended timeline of his reign in the rest of Samuel and in Acts 13:21 (which gives forty years). The Septuagint omits the verse entirely. Some scholars argue the number was lost through scribal damage; others suggest the formula was inserted later by an editor following the standard regnal formula pattern (compare 2 Samuel 5:4) but the original text never contained Saul's age. The 'two years' may refer not to his total reign but to the period before the events of this chapter. Additionally, Saul's sacrifice raises questions about the rigidity of cultic roles in this period — in 1 Samuel 6:14-15 the men of Beth-shemesh offered sacrifices, and in 2 Samuel 6:17-18 David himself offers burnt offerings. The severity of Samuel's rebuke may reflect prophetic-royal tension as much as strict priestly law.*

Connections: *The seven-day wait at Gilgal connects directly to Samuel's instructions in 10:8, where the prophet told Saul to go down to Gilgal, wait seven days, and Samuel would come to offer sacrifices and reveal what Saul should do. Saul's failure is therefore not spontaneous but a violation of a specific, prior command. The phrase *ish kilbavo* ('a man after his heart') will be explicitly applied to David in Acts 13:22 and echoes throughout the Davidic covenant theology — God's choice of David is not based on appearance or lineage but on the orientation of the heart toward God (cf. 1 Samuel 16:7). The Philistine iron monopoly in verses 19-22 provides essential military context for the entire Saul-David narrative: Israel fights at a catastrophic technological disadvantage, making Jonathan's solo attack in chapter 14 and David's victory over Goliath in chapter 17 all the more extraordinary. The three Philistine raiding parties (v.17-18) anticipate the ongoing Philistine pressure that will define Saul's reign and ultimately kill him at Mount Gilboa.*

¹Saul was [—] years old when he became king, and he reigned two years over Israel. ²Saul selected three thousand men from Israel. Two thousand were with Saul at Michmash and in the hill country of Bethel, and one thousand were with Jonathan at Gibeah of Benjamin. The rest of the troops he sent home, each man to his tent. ³Jonathan struck down the Philistine garrison at Geba, and the Philistines heard about it. Saul sounded the ram's horn throughout all the land, saying,

"Let the Hebrews hear!" ⁴All Israel heard the report: "Saul has struck down the Philistine garrison" — and Israel had made itself repulsive to the Philistines. The people were summoned to join Saul at Gilgal. ⁵The Philistines assembled to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand cavalry, and foot soldiers as numerous as the sand on the seashore. They marched up and encamped at Michmash, east of Beth-aven. ⁶When the men of Israel saw how desperate their situation was — for the army was hard-pressed — the soldiers hid themselves in caves, in thorn thickets, among rocks, in underground vaults, and in cisterns. ⁷Some Hebrews crossed the Jordan into the territory of Gad and Gilead. Saul remained at Gilgal, and the entire army that stayed with him was trembling. ⁸He waited seven days, until the appointed time that Samuel had set. But Samuel did not come to Gilgal, and the army was scattering away from him. ⁹Saul said, "Bring the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings to me." And he offered up the burnt offering. ¹⁰Just as he finished offering the burnt offering, Samuel arrived. Saul went out to meet him and greet him. ¹¹Samuel said, "What have you done?" Saul answered, "I saw that the army was scattering away from me, and you had not come within the appointed days, and the Philistines were assembling at Michmash —" ¹²"I thought, 'The Philistines are about to march down against me at Gilgal, and I have not sought the LORD's favor.' So I forced myself and offered the burnt offering." ¹³Samuel said to Saul, "You have acted foolishly. You have not kept the command of the LORD your God that he gave you. Had you obeyed, the LORD would have established your kingdom over Israel permanently." ¹⁴But now your kingdom will not endure. The LORD has sought out for himself a man whose heart is aligned with his own, and the LORD has appointed him as leader over his people — because you have not kept what the LORD commanded you. ¹⁵Samuel got up and went from Gilgal to Gibeah of Benjamin. Saul counted the troops remaining with him — about six hundred men. ¹⁶Saul and his son Jonathan, along with the troops remaining with them, were stationed at Geba of Benjamin, while the Philistines were encamped at Michmash. ¹⁷Raiding parties went out from the Philistine camp in three divisions. One division turned toward the road to Ophrah, toward the territory of Shual. ¹⁸The second division turned toward the road to Beth-horon, and the third division turned toward the border road that overlooks the Valley of Hyenas, toward the wilderness. ¹⁹No metalsmith could be found anywhere in the land of Israel, because the Philistines had said, "The Hebrews must not be allowed to make swords or spears." ²⁰All Israel had to go down to the Philistines to sharpen their plowshares, their mattocks, their axes, and their plowpoints. ²¹The charge was a pim for the plowshares and the mattocks, and a third of a shekel for sharpening the three-pronged forks, the axes, and for setting the ox-goads. ²²So on the day of battle, not a sword or spear could be found in the hands of any of the troops with Saul and Jonathan. Only Saul and his son Jonathan had them. ²³A Philistine outpost had moved forward to the pass of Michmash.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase ben-shanah Sha'ul bemalko follows the standard Deuteronomistic regnal formula (cf. ben-sheloshim shanah David bemalko in 2 Samuel 5:4, 'David was thirty years old when he became king'), but the numeral before shanah is absent. The Masoretic Text preserves this gap faithfully rather than inventing a number. The phrase ushtei shanim malakh ('and two years he reigned') uses the standard reign-duration formula, but the number is almost certainly incomplete or refers to a partial period. Some scholars emend to read 'Saul was thirty years old' or 'forty years old' based on parallel formulae, but no manuscript evidence supports a specific number.
2. The verb vayyivchar ('he chose/selected') indicates a deliberate military reorganization — Saul has moved from calling up the entire tribal levy (chapter 11) to maintaining a standing force. The number sheloshet alafim ('three thousand') may mean three thousand men or three military units (elef as 'clan/unit'). Michmash (Mikhmas) is strategically positioned on the northern side of a deep ravine (the Wadi Suweinit) that forms a natural border with Philistine-controlled territory. Jonathan's posting at Gibeah of Benjamin (Giv'at Binyamin) puts him at Saul's home base. The phrase ish le'ohalav ('each man to his tent') is the standard dismissal formula for tribal militia.
3. The word netsiv can mean 'garrison,' 'pillar,' or 'prefect/governor' — in context it refers to a Philistine military outpost or its commanding officer. The location Geva (Geba) is distinct from Giv'ah (Gibeah) though the names are similar and both are in Benjaminite territory. The verb vayyakh ('he struck') indicates a decisive military attack, not a skirmish. The shofar (ram's horn) was the standard instrument for military mobilization and alarm. The term ha'Ivrim ('the Hebrews') is used rather than benei Yisra'el — this designation appears primarily in contexts involving foreign relations or foreign perception of Israel.
4. The verb niv'ash (Niphal of b-'sh, 'to stink, become odious') is vivid and visceral — Israel has made itself stink in the perception of the Philistines. The same root appears in Exodus 5:21 where the Israelite foremen say Moses has made them 'stink' before Pharaoh. The attribution of Jonathan's attack to Saul (hikkah Sha'ul, 'Saul struck') may reflect how the news traveled or may indicate Saul's public claim of the act. The verb vayyitsa'au ('they were summoned/cried out') at Gilgal indicates an urgent military assembly at the traditional mustering site in the Jordan valley.

5. The number sheloshim elef rekhev ('thirty thousand chariots') is textually suspect — the Syriac Peshitta and some LXX manuscripts read sheloshet alafim ('three thousand'), which is militarily more plausible. Even three thousand chariots would represent an enormous force. The phrase ke'chol asher al-sefat-hayyam larov ('like the sand on the lip of the sea for multitude') deliberately echoes the Abrahamic blessing language of Genesis 22:17 — applied here to the enemy, a devastating inversion. Beth-aven ('house of wickedness/emptiness') is either a separate location east of Bethel or a polemical renaming of Bethel itself ('house of God' becomes 'house of nothing').
6. The verb vayyitchab'u ('they hid themselves') uses the Hitpael reflexive — they actively sought concealment. The five hiding places form a comprehensive catalog: me'arot (caves, natural limestone cavities abundant in the central highlands), chavachim (thorny thickets — the word is rare and may relate to choach, 'thorn'), sela'im (rock formations, cliff crevices), tserichim (vaulted chambers, possibly underground tombs or cellars — the word is debated), and borot (cisterns, water storage pits cut into rock, which when dry could conceal a person). The phrase ki tsar-lo ('because it was narrow/tight for him') uses tsar in its spatial sense — the people feel trapped.
7. The term Ivrim ('Hebrews') rather than 'Israelites' reappears — in contexts of flight and subjection, the less dignified ethnic designation is used (cf. verse 3). The verb avru ('they crossed') creates a wordplay with Ivrim — 'the Hebrews (Ivrim) crossed (avru),' both from the root 'v-r ('to cross over'). The verb chardu ('they trembled') from ch-r-d denotes fear-induced shaking — physical trembling, not mere anxiety. The phrase acharav ('after him') indicates they followed Saul, but their following was characterized by terror, not confidence.
8. The verb vayyochel ('he waited') from y-ch-l indicates patient, expectant waiting — Saul endured the full duration. The phrase lammo'ed asher Shemu'el ('until the appointed time that Samuel [set]') refers back to the specific instruction in 10:8. The verb vayyafets ('scattered, dispersed') from p-w-ts describes the army breaking apart and drifting away — a stronger image than mere desertion, suggesting dissolution. The phrase me'alav ('from upon him') indicates the troops were departing from Saul's immediate presence — he could see them leaving.
9. The verb haggishu ('bring near, present') is the Hiphil imperative of n-g-sh — a priestly term for presenting offerings at the altar. The olah ('burnt offering') is the whole-animal sacrifice consumed entirely by fire, representing complete consecration to God (see Leviticus 1). The shelamim ('peace/fellowship offerings') involve shared eating — portions for God (burned fat), the priest, and the worshiper (see Leviticus 3). The phrase vayyaal ha'olah ('and he offered up the burnt offering') uses the Hiphil of 'l-h ('to cause to go up'), the technical term for making a sacrifice ascend as smoke to God. The brevity of the narrator's report — no divine response, no fire from heaven — is itself a theological statement: this offering is not accepted.
10. The temporal clause kekhallo leha'alot ('as he finished offering up') uses the infinitive construct — the action of offering is literally just completed. The particle vehineh ('and look!') introduces sudden, dramatic appearance — Samuel materializes at the worst possible moment. The verb vayyetse' ('he went out') indicates Saul leaves whatever sacrificial area he was in to approach Samuel. The infinitive levarkho ('to bless him') can mean 'to greet him' — barakh in the Piel is the standard greeting verb, though its root meaning ('to bless') adds layers of irony: Saul comes to bless the prophet whose blessing he has just forfeited.
11. The question meh asita ('what have you done?') is a confrontational formula — it demands an accounting, not an explanation. Saul's response begins with ki-ra'iti ('because I saw') — he frames his action as a rational response to observed conditions. The verb nafats ('scattered, shattered') is stronger than the earlier vayyafets — the army is breaking apart violently. The phrase ve'attah lo-va'ta lemo'ed hayyamim ('and you did not come within the appointed days') directly blames Samuel for the delay. Saul's defense is logically structured: three ki ('because') clauses presenting escalating threats.
12. The phrase penei YHWH lo chilliti ('I had not softened the face of the LORD') uses the Piel of ch-l-h ('to make weak, to entreat, to soften') with panim ('face') — a standard idiom for seeking God's favor through prayer or sacrifice. The verb va'et'appaq (Hitpael of 'p-q, 'to restrain, force, compel oneself') is rare and suggests internal struggle — Saul claims he acted against his own reluctance. The same root appears in Genesis 43:31 and Isaiah 42:14 for restraining powerful emotions before finally acting. Saul's self-presentation is as a man driven to act by desperate circumstances, not as one who casually overstepped his authority.
13. The verb niskalta (Niphal of s-k-l, 'to be foolish, act foolishly') is a moral-intellectual judgment — not 'sinful' in the cultic sense but 'stupid' in the consequential sense. Saul made a catastrophically wrong choice. The phrase mitsvat YHWH Elohekha ('the command of the LORD your God') specifies that this was a direct divine instruction mediated through Samuel (10:8), not a general principle. The phrase hekhin YHWH et-mamlakhtekha ('the LORD would have established your kingdom') uses the Hiphil of k-w-n ('to establish, make firm') — the same verb used for God establishing David's throne in 2 Samuel 7:12. The conditional ki attah ('for then/had you obeyed') reveals that Saul's dynasty could have been the permanent one.
14. The verb taqum ('will stand/endure') from q-w-m — Saul's kingdom will not 'rise' into permanence; it is structurally doomed. The verb biqqesh (Piel of b-q-sh, 'to seek, search for') is in the perfect tense — the seeking is already completed, the man already found. The phrase ish kilvavo ('a man according to his heart') is one of the most debated in the Hebrew Bible: does kilvavo mean 'after God's own heart' (a man whose heart matches God's desires) or 'a man of God's choosing' (a man whom God's heart has selected)? Both readings are grammatically valid. The word nagid ('leader, designated one, prince-regent') implies appointment for future rule rather than immediate enthronement — the nagid is the one God has designated, who will rule when the time comes.
15. The verb vayyaqom ('he arose/got up') followed by vayyaal ('he went up') describes Samuel's physical departure — the verbs convey decisive, final movement. The absence of any further interaction between Samuel and Saul at this point is narratively significant. The verb vayyifqod ('he counted/mustered') from p-q-d indicates a military census of available forces. The number ke-shesh me'ot ish ('about six hundred men') is precise enough to convey the catastrophic attrition: from three thousand (v.2) to six hundred — a loss of eighty percent before any battle has been fought.

16. The text reads Geva Binyamin (some manuscripts read Giv'ah, 'Gibeah') — the two towns are close together in Benjaminite territory and the names are frequently confused in the manuscripts. The verb yoshvim ('sitting, dwelling, stationed') suggests a defensive posture — Saul is not advancing but holding position. The contrast between Saul's six hundred at Geba and the Philistine host at Michmash — separated by the deep Wadi Suweinit ravine — establishes the military geography for the events of chapter 14, where Jonathan will cross the pass with only his armor-bearer.
17. The noun hammashchit ('the destroyer/devastator') from sh-ch-t indicates organized raiding — not a pitched battle but systematic plundering and destruction. The division into sheloshah rashim ('three heads/companies') mirrors Saul's own three-company tactic in 11:11, but here it is the enemy employing the strategy. Ophrah is likely the Benjaminite Ophrah (distinct from the Ophrah of Judges 6:11 in Manasseh). The 'land of Shual' (erets Shu'al, 'land of the fox/jackal') is a district north of Michmash — the name may reflect the terrain's wild character.
18. Beth-horon (Beit Choron, 'house of the hollow/cave') refers to the twin towns of Upper and Lower Beth-horon on the main east-west route through the Ajalon valley — a strategically vital pass. The phrase hannishqaf al-gei hatsevo'im ('overlooking the Valley of the Hyenas') uses the Niphal participle of sh-q-f ('to look down upon, overlook') — the road gives a commanding view down into the valley. Tsevo'im means 'hyenas' (from tsavoa, 'hyena'), indicating a desolate, predator-inhabited ravine. Hammidbarah ('toward the wilderness') points east, toward the Judean desert descending to the Dead Sea and Jordan valley.
19. The word charash ('craftsman, smith, metalworker') from ch-r-sh ('to engrave, plow, work skillfully') here refers specifically to a metalsmith — someone who could forge iron or bronze into weapons. The phrase lo yimmatse' ('could not be found') uses the Niphal of m-ts-' — they were not merely rare but entirely absent. The Philistine rationale is stated directly: pen ya'asu ha'Ivrim cherev o chanit ('lest the Hebrews make sword or spear'). The term Ivrim ('Hebrews') is again used in a context of foreign domination — the Philistines use the ethnic label rather than 'Israel.' The word cherev ('sword') and chanit ('spear') represent the two basic infantry weapons of the period.
20. The verb vayyerdu ('they went down') indicates geographical descent from the Israelite highlands to the Philistine coastal plain. The verb liltosh ('to sharpen, to hammer sharp') describes the metalworking process of re-edging dulled tools. The four implements are: maharashtah ('plowshare,' the cutting blade of the plow), et ('mattock,' a heavy digging tool), qardummo ('his axe,' a cutting/chopping tool), and maharashtah (variant form, 'plowpoint' or possibly a second type of plow blade — the text may list two plow-related tools with different functions). The exact identification of all four tools is debated among scholars.
21. The word pim (also spelled payim) was a mystery until the discovery of inscribed stone weights in archaeological excavations. It equals approximately two-thirds of a shekel (about 7.6 grams of silver). The word happetsirah ('the charge, the price, the sharpening fee') from p-ts-r is also rare. The shelosh qilleshon ('three-pronged fork') is an agricultural pitchfork. The darvan ('ox-goad') is a long pointed stick used to drive oxen — even this simple tool required Philistine metalworking for its iron point. The verse catalogs every agricultural implement that required periodic sharpening, demonstrating the total scope of Philistine economic control.
22. The phrase beyom milchemet ('on the day of battle') marks the moment of truth — when the Philistine iron monopoly translates into battlefield reality. The phrase velo nimtsa' cherev vachanit ('neither sword nor spear was found') uses the Niphal of m-ts-' again — weapons simply do not exist in the Israelite ranks. The phrase beyad kol-ha'am ('in the hand of all the people') is comprehensive — not one soldier among the six hundred is properly armed. The final clause vattimatse' leSha'ul uleYonatan beno ('but there was found for Saul and Jonathan his son') isolates the two as the only armed Israelites. The contrast is absolute: two weapons versus an entire Philistine army.
23. The word matsav ('outpost, standing garrison, stationed force') from n-ts-v is related to netsiv (verse 3) but indicates a forward-deployed position rather than a permanent garrison. The phrase ma'avar Mikhmas ('the pass/crossing of Michmash') refers to the narrow rocky defile between Michmash and Geba — identified with the modern Wadi Suweinit, a deep ravine with steep cliffs on both sides. This is the exact location described in 14:4-5, where two rocky crags named Botsets and Seneh flank the passage. The Philistine control of this pass effectively traps Saul's force south of the ravine.

14

Summary: Jonathan, without telling his father Saul, takes only his armor-bearer on a daring two-man assault against a Philistine garrison at the pass of Michmash. God confirms the mission through a sign, and Jonathan and his armor-bearer kill about twenty men, triggering a divinely amplified panic throughout the Philistine camp. Saul's watchmen see the confusion, and Saul musters his small force to pursue. Meanwhile, Saul has bound the army with a rash oath — a curse on anyone who eats food before evening. Jonathan, who never heard the oath, eats wild honey in the forest. When Saul attempts to inquire of God through the sacred lots, God does not answer. The lots identify Jonathan as the oath-breaker. Saul declares that Jonathan must die, but the people intervene and ransom Jonathan, declaring that he fought alongside God that day. The chapter closes with a summary of Saul's wars and family.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a study in contrasts between two models of faith and leadership. Jonathan acts with stunning theological clarity: 'Nothing prevents the LORD from saving by many or by few' (v6). He does not presume on God — he proposes a sign, waits for confirmation, and only then attacks. His faith is bold yet submitted. Saul, by contrast, sits under a pomegranate tree with a shrinking army (v2), issues an oath that harms his own troops (v24-30), and nearly executes his own son for an oath Jonathan never heard (v44). The irony is devastating: the man who should be leading is sitting, and the prince is doing the king's work. The chapter also preserves a critical textual moment in verses 41-42 where the Septuagint (drawing from a Hebrew Vorlage likely reflected in 4QSam) preserves a much longer and more explicit description of the Urim and Thummim lot-casting procedure, material almost certainly lost from the Masoretic Text through haplography. Jonathan's rescue by the people using the verb padah ('ransom/redeem') in verse 45 introduces sacrificial substitution language — the people redeem Jonathan from death, insisting that his victory was accomplished 'with God.'*

Translation Friction: *The textual history of this chapter is among the most significant in Samuel. The MT of verse 41 reads simply 'Give a perfect lot' (havah tamim), while the LXX preserves a substantially longer text in which Saul explicitly addresses God, asks why he has not answered, and requests that the Urim and Thummim distinguish between himself and Jonathan on one side and the people on the other. Most text critics regard the LXX as preserving the earlier reading, with the MT having lost material through homoioteleuton (the scribe's eye skipping between similar phrase endings). This matters theologically: the longer text makes explicit that Urim and Thummim are the mechanism of divine inquiry, information only implied in the MT. Additionally, verse 18 presents a discrepancy — the MT says Saul called for the 'ark of God,' while the LXX reads 'ephod,' which fits the context far better since the ephod (containing the Urim and Thummim) is the instrument of priestly inquiry, and the ark was at Kiriath-jearim, not with Saul's army. Most scholars follow the LXX here. Saul's oath in verse 24 and its consequences raise questions about the theology of rash vows — the text never endorses Saul's oath as righteous, and Jonathan's critique of it (vv29-30) stands unchallenged by the narrator.*

Connections: *Jonathan's faith declaration in verse 6 ('Nothing prevents the LORD from saving by many or by few') establishes a theological principle that echoes forward to David and Goliath (chapter 17), where another young man confronts a vastly superior enemy trusting in divine, not numerical, advantage. The Michmash pass assault recalls Gideon's reduction from 32,000 to 300 (Judges 7) — God's pattern of delivering through the few to ensure that credit belongs to him alone. Saul's rash oath belongs to a biblical pattern of devastating vows: Jephthah's vow that cost his daughter's life (Judges 11:30-40) is the closest parallel, and the text invites comparison — both are military leaders whose misguided oaths threaten their own children. But where Jephthah carried out his vow, the people prevent Saul from doing so. The verb padah ('ransom') used for Jonathan's rescue is the same verb used for the redemption of firstborn sons (Exodus 13:13-15) and for God's redemption of Israel from Egypt — the people are performing a theological act, not merely a political rescue. The chapter's closing genealogical note (vv49-51) introduces names that will dominate the coming narrative: Abner the commander, and the daughters Merab and Michal — Michal will become David's wife and the hinge of the Saul-David conflict.*

1One day Jonathan son of Saul said to the young man who carried his weapons, "Come, let's cross over to the Philistine outpost on the other side." 2Saul was sitting at the edge of Gibeah under the pomegranate tree at Migron, and the force with him was about six hundred men. 3Ahijah son of Ahitub — brother of Ichabod, son of Phinehas, son of Eli, priest of the LORD at Shiloh — was wearing the ephod. And the people did not know that Jonathan had gone. 4Between the passes by which Jonathan intended to cross to the Philistine outpost, there was a rocky crag on one side and a rocky crag on the other. One was named Bozez and the other Seneh. 5One crag rose as a cliff face on the north, facing Michmash, and the other on the south, facing Geba. 6Jonathan said to his armor-bearer, "Come, let's cross over to the outpost of these uncircumcised men. Perhaps the LORD will act for us, because nothing prevents the LORD from saving — whether by many or by few." 7His armor-bearer said to him, "Do everything that is in your heart. Go forward — I am with you, heart and soul." 8Jonathan said, "Right — we are going to cross over toward those men and let them see us." 9If they say to us, 'Stay where you are until we come down to you,' then we will stand in place and not go up to them." 10But if they say, 'Come up to us' — then we will climb up, because the LORD has given them into our hands. That will be the sign for us."

¹¹The two of them revealed themselves to the Philistine outpost. The Philistines said, "Look — Hebrews coming out of the holes where they have been hiding." ¹²The men of the outpost called out to Jonathan and his armor-bearer, "Come up to us and we will teach you a lesson!" Jonathan said to his armor-bearer, "Climb up behind me — the LORD has given them into Israel's hand." ¹³Jonathan climbed up on his hands and feet, with his armor-bearer right behind him. The Philistines fell before Jonathan, and his armor-bearer finished them off behind him. ¹⁴That first strike by Jonathan and his armor-bearer killed about twenty men within roughly half the area a team of oxen could plow in a day. ¹⁵Terror struck the camp — in the field, among all the troops, the outpost, and the raiding parties — they all trembled. The ground itself shook. It became a God-sent panic. ¹⁶Saul's lookouts in Gibeah of Benjamin watched as the Philistine horde was dissolving, scattering in every direction. ¹⁷Saul said to the troops with him, "Take a count and find out who has left us." They took the count, and Jonathan and his armor-bearer were missing. ¹⁸Saul said to Ahijah, "Bring the ephod of God here" — for the ephod of God was with the Israelites at that time. ¹⁹While Saul was still speaking to the priest, the commotion in the Philistine camp kept growing louder and louder. Saul said to the priest, "Pull your hand back." ²⁰Saul and all the troops with him rallied and advanced to the battle. When they arrived, every Philistine's sword was turned against his neighbor — the confusion was catastrophic. ²¹The Hebrews who had previously been with the Philistines — who had gone up with them into the camp from the surrounding area — even they turned to join the Israelites under Saul and Jonathan. ²²And all the Israelites who had been hiding in the hill country of Ephraim heard that the Philistines were fleeing, and they too joined the pursuit in battle. ²³The LORD saved Israel that day, and the battle moved past Beth-aven. ²⁴The men of Israel were hard-pressed that day, because Saul had bound the troops with an oath, saying, "Cursed is the man who eats any food before evening, until I have taken vengeance on my enemies!" So none of the troops ate anything. ²⁵The whole army entered a forest, and there was honey on the surface of the ground. ²⁶When the troops entered the forest, honey was flowing freely, but no one raised his hand to his mouth, because the troops feared the oath. ²⁷But Jonathan had not heard when his father bound the troops with the oath. He reached out the tip of the staff in his hand, dipped it into the honeycomb, brought his hand to his mouth — and his eyes brightened. ²⁸One of the soldiers spoke up and said, "Your father strictly bound the troops with an oath, saying, 'Cursed is the man who eats food today.'" The troops were exhausted. ²⁹Jonathan said, "My father has brought trouble on the land. Look at how my eyes have brightened because I tasted just a little of this honey." ³⁰How much greater would the victory have been if the troops had eaten freely today from the plunder of their enemies! The slaughter among the Philistines would have been far greater. ³¹They struck down the Philistines that day from Michmash to Aijalon, and the troops were utterly exhausted. ³²The troops rushed at the plunder, seizing sheep, cattle, and calves, and slaughtered them right on the ground. The troops ate the meat with the blood still in it. ³³Someone reported to Saul, "Look, the troops are sinning against the LORD by eating meat with the blood." He said, "You have acted treacherously! Roll a large stone over to me right now." ³⁴Saul said, "Spread out among the troops and tell them: Every man bring his ox, every man his sheep — slaughter them here on this stone and eat. Do not sin against the LORD by eating meat with the blood." All the troops brought their animals that night, each man leading his ox by hand, and slaughtered them there. ³⁵Saul built an altar to the LORD. It was the first altar he had ever built to the LORD. ³⁶Saul said, "Let's go down after the Philistines tonight and plunder them until dawn, and not leave a single man alive." The troops said, "Do whatever seems good to you." But the priest said, "Let us approach God here first." ³⁷Saul inquired of God: "Should I go down after the Philistines? Will you give them into Israel's hand?" But God did not answer him that day. ³⁸Saul said, "Come forward — all the leaders of the troops. Find out and determine what sin has been committed today." ³⁹"As the LORD who saves Israel lives — even if the guilt lies with my son Jonathan, he will certainly die." But not a single person among all the troops said a word. ⁴⁰He said to all Israel, "You will stand on one side, and I and my son Jonathan will stand on the other." The people said to Saul, "Do what seems good to you." ⁴¹Saul said to the LORD, the God of Israel, "Why have you not answered your servant today? If the guilt is in me or in my son Jonathan, LORD God of Israel, let the answer be Urim. If the guilt is in your people Israel, let the answer be Thummim." Jonathan and Saul were selected by lot, and the people were cleared. ⁴²Saul said, "Cast the lot between me and my son Jonathan." And Jonathan was selected. ⁴³Saul said to Jonathan, "Tell me — what have you done?" Jonathan told him: "I tasted a little honey with the tip of the staff in my hand. Here I am — I am ready to die." ⁴⁴Saul said, "May God do this to me and worse — you will certainly die,

Jonathan." ⁴⁵But the people said to Saul, "Should Jonathan die — the one who accomplished this great deliverance in Israel? Absolutely not! As the LORD lives, not a single hair from his head will fall to the ground, because he fought alongside God today." The people ransomed Jonathan, and he did not die. ⁴⁶Saul broke off the pursuit of the Philistines, and the Philistines returned to their own territory. ⁴⁷Saul had secured the kingship over Israel and waged war on every side against all his enemies: against Moab, the Ammonites, Edom, the kings of Zobah, and the Philistines. Wherever he turned, he inflicted defeat. ⁴⁸He mustered a fighting force and struck Amalek, and he rescued Israel from the hands of those who plundered them. ⁴⁹The sons of Saul were Jonathan, Ishvi, and Malki-shua. The names of his two daughters: the firstborn was Merab, and the younger was Michal. ⁵⁰The name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam daughter of Ahimaaz. The name of his army commander was Abner son of Ner, Saul's uncle. ⁵¹Kish was Saul's father, and Ner, Abner's father, was the son of Abiel. ⁵²The war against the Philistines was fierce throughout Saul's entire reign. Whenever Saul saw a strong warrior or any capable fighting man, he would recruit him into his service.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *vayehi hayyom* ('it happened one day') is a standard narrative opener indicating an unspecified but significant day. Jonathan is identified as *ben-Sha'ul* ('son of Saul') to establish the royal connection. The *na'ar nosei khelav* ('the young man carrying his weapons') is a military attendant — an armor-bearer who also fights. The verb *na'averah* ('let us cross over') from *'v-r* implies crossing a geographic barrier (the wadi between the two cliff faces described in v4-5). The final clause *ule'aviv lo higgid* ('but to his father he did not tell') uses the Hiphil of *n-g-d* ('to declare, to report') — Jonathan deliberately withheld this plan from Saul.
2. The participle *yoshev* ('sitting') contrasts sharply with Jonathan's initiative in v1. Migron is a location near Gibeah; some scholars identify it with a site north of Michmash. The *rimmon* ('pomegranate tree') is a specific landmark — the definite article *ha-rimmon* indicates a known tree. Six hundred men is all that remains of Saul's army after the desertions described in 13:6-7 — a catastrophic reduction from the original force. This number echoes the 600 Benjaminite survivors of the civil war in Judges 20:47, another Benjaminite remnant.
3. The genealogy traces Ahijah (Achiyyah, 'my brother is YAH') through Ahitub, past Ichabod (I-khavod, 'where is the glory?'), through Phinehas (Pinechas) to Eli — the entire priestly line that fell under God's judgment in chapters 2-4. The *ephod* (*efod*) here is the priestly vestment containing the pocket (*choshen*) that held the Urim and Thummim for divine consultation. The phrase *nosei efod* ('wearing/carrying the ephod') identifies Ahijah as the active consulting priest. The clause *veha'am lo yada' ki halakh Yonatan* ('the people did not know that Jonathan had gone') — even Saul did not know, as v17 will confirm.
4. The *ma'averot* ('passes, crossing-points') are the narrow defiles in the wadi system. The phrase *shen-hasela'* ('tooth of the rock') is a vivid geographic term — a jagged, protruding crag. Two such formations face each other across the pass. *Bozez* (Botsets) likely derives from *b-ts-ts* ('to gleam, to shine'), suggesting a light-colored or sun-facing cliff. *Seneh* (Senneh) likely relates to *seneh* ('thorn-bush'), the same word used for the burning bush in Exodus 3:2-4. Whether this connection is coincidental or narratively significant is debated.
5. The noun *matsuq* ('cliff, pillar of rock') intensifies the description — these are not gentle slopes but sheer rock faces. The northern crag faces Michmash (Mikmash), where the Philistines are encamped. The southern crag faces Geva' (Geba), where Jonathan's starting position is. Jonathan must climb the northern cliff to reach the Philistine outpost — ascending a sheer face toward an enemy looking down. The geography is preserved in the modern Wadi Suweinit near the Palestinian village of Mukhmas.
6. The term *ha'arelim* ('the uncircumcised') is Israel's standard term of contempt for the Philistines — it identifies them as outside the Abrahamic covenant and therefore outside divine protection. The particle *ulay* ('perhaps') is theologically important: Jonathan does not presume on God but expresses hopeful openness. The noun *ma'atsor* ('restraint, barrier, hindrance') from *'ts-r* means there is literally nothing that can hold God back. The Hiphil infinitive *lehoshi'a* ('to save, to deliver') is from the root *y-sh-* — the salvation root. The contrast *berav o vim'at* ('by many or by few') states the theological principle in its purest form: divine deliverance is independent of human resources.
7. The phrase *kol-asher bilvavekha* ('all that is in your heart') grants Jonathan complete authority — the armor-bearer submits fully to his commander's judgment. The imperative *neteh lekha* ('turn, go forward, proceed') expresses readiness to move. The declaration *hinneni immekha kilevavekha* ('here I am with you according to your heart') is a triple affirmation: presence (*hinneni*), companionship (*immekha*), and shared purpose (*kilevavekha*). The word *levav* ('heart') appears twice in this verse, emphasizing that the armor-bearer's inner conviction matches Jonathan's own.
8. The verb *overim* ('crossing over') resumes the language of v1 and v6 — they will cross the wadi. The Niphal *veniglinu* ('we will reveal ourselves, we will be disclosed') from *g-l-h* means they will deliberately make themselves visible. This is part of Jonathan's sign: they will expose themselves to the enemy and let the Philistines' response determine whether God has granted them the initiative. Stealth is abandoned in favor of a faith-test.
9. The first option of the sign: if the Philistines say *dommu* ('stand still, wait, be silent') — a command to halt — and declare they will come down, Jonathan reads this as God withholding the signal. The phrase *ve'amadnu tachteinu* ('we will stand in our place') means they will hold position and abort the mission. Jonathan's sign is not arbitrary; it has tactical logic — if the enemy comes to them on the cliff face, the disadvantage of terrain belongs to Jonathan. He needs them to stay put and invite the climb.

10. The imperative 'alu ('come up') from the Philistines is intended as mockery — inviting two men to climb a cliff toward an armed garrison is a taunt. Jonathan reads this taunt as the sign (ot) of divine authorization. The verb netanam ('he has given them') is a prophetic perfect — future action described with past-tense certainty because God's decision is already made. The phrase beyadenu ('into our hand') is the standard expression for military victory granted by God. The word ot ('sign') links Jonathan's method to the broader prophetic tradition of seeking and receiving divine confirmation before action.
11. The Niphal vayyiggalu ('they revealed themselves') from g-l-h — the deliberate exposure described in v8. The word Ivrim ('Hebrews') is used by non-Israelites throughout Samuel and Exodus — it may be an exonym (outsider-name) with condescending overtones. The chorim ('holes') are the caves and crevices mentioned in 13:6. The participle yotse'im ('coming out') and the relative clause asher hitchabbe'u sham ('where they hid themselves') — the Philistines read the situation as desperate refugees emerging from hiding, not as warriors attacking.
12. The phrase venodi'ah etkhem davar (literally 'we will cause you to know a thing') is an idiomatic threat — 'we'll give you something to remember.' It functions as the sign Jonathan specified in v10. Jonathan's command 'aleh acharai ('climb up behind me') shows he leads the assault personally, going first up the cliff face. The shift from beyadenu ('into our hand,' v10) to beyad Yisra'el ('into Israel's hand') widens the scope — this is not Jonathan's private victory but God's deliverance for the nation.
13. The phrase al-yadav ve'al-raglav ('on his hands and on his feet') describes literal hand-and-foot climbing — scrambling up the rock face. This is not metaphor; the terrain requires it. The verb vayyippeleu ('they fell') before Jonathan could indicate they collapsed in panic, were struck down, or stumbled — the text leaves the mechanism ambiguous. The participle memottet ('putting to death, finishing off') from m-v-t (Polel) describes the armor-bearer's role as executioner of those Jonathan has already downed. The combat choreography is precise: Jonathan leads and strikes first, the armor-bearer follows and ensures the kill.
14. The phrase makkah rishonah ('first strike, initial slaughter') implies there will be more killing to follow — this is just the opening blow. The measurement keba'chatsi ma'anah tsemed sadeh ('about half a furrow of a yoke of field') is an agricultural land measure — the area one team of oxen could plow in a single pass, roughly half an acre. Using farming units for a battlefield measurement is distinctly Israelite. The number ke'esrim ish ('about twenty men') is modest enough to be credible — the narrator is not inflating the count.
15. The noun charadah ('trembling, terror, anxiety') from ch-r-d appears three times in this verse (charadah, chardu, cherdat), creating an intensifying repetition. The categories of troops affected expand outward: the camp (machaneh), the field (sadeh), all the people (kol-ha'am), the garrison (matsav), and the raiding parties (mashchit, literally 'destroyers'). The verb vattirgaz ('it quaked') from r-g-z describes seismic trembling. The climactic phrase cherdat Elohim ('trembling of God') uses the divine name as a superlative intensifier — this is not ordinary panic but supernaturally induced, overwhelming terror.
16. The tsofim ('lookouts, watchmen') are Saul's scouts stationed to observe Philistine movements. From Gibeah they can see across to Michmash. The verb namog ('melting, dissolving') from m-u-g describes the army losing cohesion — troops flowing away like liquid. The phrase vayelexh vahalom ('going and striking') is difficult — it may mean the Philistines were scattering in confusion while striking each other, or it may describe the mass moving and collapsing. The LXX reads the scene as the camp dissolving in all directions.
17. The imperative piquedu-na ('muster, take a count, please') from p-q-d shows Saul trying to understand the situation through administrative means — counting heads rather than inquiring of God. Only after the count reveals Jonathan's absence does Saul begin to understand what has happened. The verb halakh me'immanu ('has gone from us') — Saul does not yet know that Jonathan left deliberately to attack; he only knows someone is missing.
18. TEXTUAL NOTE: The MT reads aron ha-Elohim ('ark of God') but the LXX reads efod ('ephod'). The rendering follows the LXX. The ark was at Kiriath-jearim (7:1-2), not with Saul's army. Ahijah was already identified as wearing the ephod in v3. The verb haggisah ('bring near') is a Hiphil imperative of n-g-sh, commonly used for bringing sacred objects or offerings close for ritual use. The entire context — Saul wanting to inquire of God before battle — points to the ephod (and its Urim and Thummim), not the ark.
19. The phrase halokh varav ('going and increasing') is an intensifying construction — the noise continually grows. The command esof yadekha ('gather in your hand') tells the priest to stop the Urim and Thummim procedure. The 'hand' likely refers to the priest reaching into the ephod's pouch to draw the lots. Saul's impatience here echoes his premature sacrifice in 13:8-12 — both are moments where Saul acts before the proper ritual or prophetic process is complete. The narrator records this without explicit condemnation, but the pattern is unmistakable.
20. The verb vayyiza'eq ('he cried out, he rallied') from z-'-q is the war cry that musters the troops. The phrase cherev ish bere'ehu ('the sword of each man against his neighbor') describes the Philistines killing each other in the panic — a phenomenon that occurs repeatedly in biblical holy war narratives (Judges 7:22, 2 Chronicles 20:23). The word mehumah ('confusion, tumult, panic') is a technical term for divinely induced battlefield chaos — it shares a root with the tohom of Genesis 1:2, primordial disorder. The phrase gedolah me'od ('very great') intensifies: this is total disintegration of military order.
21. The Ivrim ('Hebrews') here are Israelites who had defected to or been conscripted by the Philistines — collaborators or forced laborers who served in the Philistine army. The phrase ke'etmol shilshom ('as yesterday and the day before,' i.e., 'previously, in earlier times') indicates an established arrangement. When the panic breaks out, these Hebrews switch sides — they turn (lihyot im, 'to be with') Israel. The narrator distinguishes between these turncoats and the Israelites who had remained with Saul, without explicit condemnation of the former. Battlefield loyalty shifts were common in ancient Near Eastern warfare.

- 22.** The Hithpael participle *hammitchabbe'im* ('those hiding themselves') from *ch-v-* recalls 13:6 — these are the deserters and refugees who fled Saul's army. When word spreads that the Philistines are in full retreat, they emerge and join the pursuit. The verb *vayyadebiqu* ('they pursued closely, they clung after') from *d-v-q* indicates aggressive, close pursuit — staying right on the enemy's heels. The phrase *behar-Efrayim* ('in the hill country of Ephraim') places these refugees north of the battlefield, in territory the fleeing Philistines would pass through.
- 23.** The Hiphil *vayyosha* ('he saved, he delivered') from *y-sh-* is the central salvation verb of the Hebrew Bible — the root of the names Joshua and Jesus. Its subject is YHWH alone. Beth-aven (Beit Aven, 'house of wickedness') is located near Bethel; some scholars suggest it is a polemical renaming of Bethel ('house of God') after it became associated with idolatrous worship. The phrase *vehamillchamah averah* ('and the battle passed beyond') indicates the pursuit continued well past the initial engagement zone.
- 24.** The verb *vayyoel* ('he made swear, he adjured') from *'l-h* is related to *alah* ('oath, curse') — Saul binds the people under a self-imprecating oath. The word *arur* ('cursed') invokes covenant-curse language — whoever breaks this oath falls under divine malediction. The phrase *veniqamti me'oyevai* ('and I will be avenged on my enemies') centers the entire military campaign on Saul's personal vendetta rather than God's deliverance. The verb *nigas* ('pressed, distressed, oppressed') describes the physical and psychological toll of fighting all day without food. The phrase *lo ta'am kol-ha'am lachem* ('all the people did not taste food') confirms universal compliance — except for Jonathan, who never heard the oath.
- 25.** The phrase *kol-ha'arets* ('all the land/earth') here functions as 'the whole group' or 'everyone.' The *ya'ar* ('forest, woodland') is likely in the hill country west of Michmash. The *devash* ('honey') on *penei hasadeh* ('the face of the field/ground') is wild honey — probably from a ground-level or low-hanging hive. The forest dripping with honey creates a scene of abundant provision: God has just given them victory and now provides sustenance — but Saul's oath prevents them from receiving it.
- 26.** The phrase *helekh devash* ('a flow of honey') describes honey actively dripping or running — the hive is overflowing. The image is almost torturous: exhausted, starving soldiers walking through a forest dripping with honey, and no one dares eat. The verb *massig* ('bringing, reaching') with *yado el-piv* ('his hand to his mouth') — the most basic human gesture of eating. The noun *shevu'ah* ('oath, sworn declaration') from *sh-v-* is the binding force that restrains them. The fear (*yare*) is not of Saul personally but of the sacred curse — breaking a sworn oath in Israel's worldview invited divine retribution.
- 27.** The clause *lo shama' behashbi'a aviv et-ha'am* ('he had not heard when his father made the people swear') establishes Jonathan's complete ignorance — the oath is not binding on one who never heard it, though Saul will not see it that way. The *matteh* ('staff, rod') is Jonathan's walking/fighting stick. The *ya'arat haddevash* ('honeycomb,' literally 'forest of honey') is a dense mass of wild honeycomb. The phrase *vatta'ornah einav* ('his eyes brightened/became light') from *'v-r* ('to be light') is an idiom for physical revitalization — the opposite of the dim eyes of exhaustion or fasting (cf. v29). The brightening of eyes signals that the honey did exactly what food should do for exhausted warriors.
- 28.** The phrase *hashbe'a hishbi'a* ('he made solemnly swear, he strictly adjured') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — the oath was emphatic and public. The soldier informs Jonathan of what he missed. The final clause *vayya'af ha'am* ('the people were faint/exhausted') from *'y-f* uses a verb meaning to be weary to the point of collapse — the oath's toll on fighting men who have been pursuing all day without food. The narrator places this observation right after Jonathan's eyes brighten from eating, creating an implicit contrast: Jonathan is revived, everyone else is collapsing.
- 29.** The verb *akhar* ('to trouble, to stir up disaster') is loaded — it connects Saul to Achan (Akhan from the same root) whose trespass at Jericho brought defeat on all Israel (Joshua 7). Jonathan's use of this word is a serious accusation. The phrase *re'u-na* ('look, please') invites the soldiers to observe the evidence. The clause *ki oru einai* ('because my eyes have brightened') from *'v-r* proves his point physically — the honey worked. The phrase *me'at devash hazzeh* ('a little of this honey') minimizes the amount: even a tiny portion of what God provided through the forest would have transformed the army's effectiveness.
- 30.** The particle *af ki* ('how much more') introduces an *a fortiori* argument — if a little honey did this much, imagine if the whole army had eaten. The phrase *akhol akhal* ('had freely eaten') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — unrestricted eating. The noun *mishellal oyeveihem* ('from the plunder of their enemies') — the food seized from the fleeing Philistines was available but forbidden. Jonathan argues that the oath limited the scope of God's victory: the *makkah* ('strike, slaughter, defeat') against the Philistines would have been *ravetah* ('greater, more extensive') if the army had been properly fed. Jonathan's critique is both military and theological: Saul's oath hindered what God was doing.
- 31.** The pursuit extended from Mikhmash (Michmash, the starting point) to Ayyalon (Aijalon), a distance of roughly 15-20 miles westward through the hill country toward the coastal plain — a full day's hard march and fighting. The phrase *vayya'af ha'am me'od* ('the people were very faint') repeats the exhaustion motif from v28 with the intensifier *me'od* ('very, exceedingly'). These men have been fighting and running all day on empty stomachs because of Saul's oath. The narrator ensures the reader understands the human cost of Saul's reckless vow.
- 32.** The phrase *vayya'as ha'am el-hashalal* ('the people rushed/flew at the plunder') uses a verb suggesting violent, undisciplined haste. The animals — *tso'n* (sheep/goats), *baqar* (cattle), *benei vaqar* (calves) — represent significant captured livestock. The phrase *vayyishchatu al-ha'arets* ('they slaughtered on the ground') means they killed the animals where they stood rather than using a proper slaughtering site with drainage for the blood. The critical phrase *vayyokhal ha'am al-haddam* ('the people ate with/on the blood') indicates they consumed meat without properly draining the blood — a violation of the prohibition in Leviticus 17:10-14 and Genesis 9:4.
- 33.** The report uses the participle *chot'im* ('sinning, missing the mark') — the people are in active violation of Torah. Saul's response *begadtem* ('you have acted treacherously, you have dealt faithlessly') from *b-g-d* is a strong accusation of covenant betrayal. The command *gollu elai even gedolah* ('roll to me a large stone') — Saul improvises a solution: a large stone will serve as a raised slaughtering surface so the blood can drain properly. The stone elevates the killing above ground level, allowing blood to flow away rather than pool around the meat. This shows Saul can think practically about religious law, even though his oath caused the problem.

34. The imperative putsu ('scatter, disperse') sends messengers throughout the camp. The phrase ish shoro ve'ish seihu ('each man his ox and each man his sheep') requires orderly, individual slaughter on the elevated stone. The verb ushechatetem bazzeh ('and you shall slaughter on this') — bazzeh ('on this') refers to the great stone. The prohibition velo-techetu laYHWH le'ekhol el-haddam ('do not sin against the LORD by eating with the blood') shows Saul correctly identifying the theological issue. The nighttime setting (hallaylah) indicates this continued after dark — the troops were so hungry they slaughtered and ate through the night.
35. The verb vayyiven ('he built') from b-n-h is the standard term for altar construction. The phrase oto hechel livnot mizbe'ach laYHWH ('it he began to build an altar to the LORD' — i.e., 'that was the first altar he built to the LORD') uses hechel ('he began') in a way that emphasizes the novelty of the act. Some read this as 'he began by building' (i.e., this was his first), others as a comment on his overall reign. The repeated phrase laYHWH ('to the LORD') twice in one verse may emphasize that this altar is properly dedicated — unlike the improper ground-slaughter.
36. The cohortative neredah ('let us go down') from y-r-d suits the geography — the Philistines are retreating westward and downhill toward the coastal plain. The verb navozah ('let us plunder') from b-z-z means to strip the defeated of all valuables. The phrase ad-or habboqer ('until the light of morning') — a night operation extending to dawn. The troops' kol-hattov be'einekha aseh ('do whatever is good in your eyes') is formulaic deference. The priest's niqerevah halom el-ha-Elohim ('let us draw near here to God') uses language of sacred approach — qerev is the verb for approaching the divine presence, and halom ('here, to this place') suggests using the ephod right where they are.
37. The verb vayyish'al ('he inquired') from sh-'l — the same root as Saul's own name (Sha'ul, 'asked/requested'). The two questions follow the binary format required by the Urim and Thummim: yes/no answers. The crushing phrase velo anahu bayyom hahu ('he did not answer him that day') — God's refusal to communicate through the appointed channel indicates a breach in the relationship. In 28:6, this same silence will recur when Saul desperately seeks guidance before his final battle, and 'the LORD did not answer him, not by dreams, not by Urim, not by prophets.'
38. The imperative goshu halom ('draw near here') summons the leaders for investigation. The pinnot ha'am ('corners of the people') is an idiom for the leaders — the 'cornerstones' who hold the community together. The verbs ude'u ur'u ('know and see') demand both intellectual understanding and visible evidence. The noun hachattat ('the sin') from ch-t-' — Saul assumes that God's silence must be caused by sin, which is correct in the framework of holy war theology. But the irony is that the 'sin' is Jonathan eating honey he never knew was forbidden.
39. Saul swears by the living God (chai-YHWH) — another oath on top of the first one. The phrase hammoshi'a et-Yisra'el ('who saves Israel') is bitterly ironic: Saul invokes God as Israel's savior in the same breath that he threatens to kill the man through whom God just saved Israel. The phrase mot yamut ('he will surely die') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — death is certain. The people's silence (ein onehu mikkol-ha'am, 'none answering him from all the people') is pregnant: they know Jonathan ate the honey, they know the oath was unjust, but no one dares contradict a king swearing by God's name.
40. Saul divides the lot-casting into two groups: the people on one side (ever echad) and the royal house (Saul and Jonathan) on the other. This is the initial binary division for the Urim and Thummim process — the lots will determine which side bears the guilt. The people's repeated deference hattov be'einekha aseh ('do what is good in your eyes') shows compliance but not enthusiasm. They are watching Saul move toward a conclusion they fear.
41. CRITICAL TEXTUAL NOTE: The MT reads only havah tamim ('give perfection/completeness'), which is grammatically awkward and widely regarded as a truncation. The LXX (and 4QSam) preserves the full text of Saul's prayer, which explicitly names the Urim and Thummim as the two possible lot-outcomes. This longer reading is followed by most modern text critics (McCarter, Cross, Tov) and is almost certainly original. The loss in the MT is best explained by homoioteleuton — the word Yisra'el appears multiple times in the full text, and a scribe's eye skipped from one occurrence to a later one, dropping the intervening material. The verb vayyillakhed ('he was taken/caught') from l-k-d is the technical term for being identified by sacred lot (cf. Joshua 7:14-18, where Achan is 'taken' by lot).
42. The imperative happilu ('cast') is the standard term for lot-casting — literally 'cause to fall.' The phrase beini uvein Yonatan beni ('between me and between Jonathan my son') sets up the final binary. The verb vayyillakhed ('was taken/caught') identifies Jonathan. The brevity of the verse is striking — no editorializing, no divine speech, just the stark result. The narrative tension is at its peak: Saul has sworn Jonathan will die (v39), the lots have identified Jonathan, and the audience knows Jonathan is innocent.
43. The imperative haggidah li ('tell me') from n-g-d demands full disclosure. Jonathan's response uses the infinitive absolute ta'om ta'amti ('I certainly tasted') — an honest, unvarnished admission. The phrase me'at devash ('a little honey') — minimizing the quantity emphasizes the absurdity: death for a taste of honey. The declaration hinneni amut ('here I am, I will die') combines hinneni (the response of covenant readiness) with amut ('I will die') — Jonathan accepts the sentence with the composure of a man whose conscience is clear. He does not say 'I deserve to die' — only that he is prepared to.
44. The formula koh ya'aseh Elohim vekhoh yosif ('thus may God do and thus may he add') is a conditional self-curse — if I fail to carry this out, may God punish me and then some. The phrase mot tamut ('dying you will die,' i.e., 'you will certainly die') is the strongest possible death sentence in Hebrew. Using it for Jonathan — the hero of the day — reveals the full absurdity of Saul's oath-driven logic. The narrator records the sentence without endorsement.
45. The rhetorical question haYonatan yamut ('should Jonathan die?') expects a forceful 'no.' The noun yeshu'ah ('salvation, deliverance') from y-sh-' attributes the victory to Jonathan as God's agent. The oath formula chai-YHWH ('as the LORD lives') matches Saul's own oath formula, creating a direct confrontation of sworn declarations. The idiom im-yippol missa'arat rosho artsah ('if a hair of his head falls to the ground') — a guarantee of absolute safety. The phrase im-Elohim asah ('with God he acted/worked') — the people declare Jonathan's battle was a partnership with God. The verb vayyifdu ('they ransomed/redeemed') from p-d-h is the critical term — redemption language typically reserved for God's saving acts or the

substitutionary redemption of firstborn sons.

46. The verb vayya'al ('he went up') from 'l-h here means Saul ascended back from the lowland pursuit — returning eastward and upward from the coastal plain toward the hill country. The phrase halekhu limqomam ('they went to their place') — the Philistines retreated to Philistia (the coastal cities of Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron, and Gath). The pursuit ends without a decisive Philistine defeat.
47. The phrase lakhad hammelukhah ('he seized/secured the kingship') from l-k-d uses the same 'capture' verb as the lot-casting — Saul took hold of royal power. The list of enemies covers all compass directions: Moab (east of the Dead Sea), Ammon (Transjordan), Edom (south, Negev to the Gulf of Aqaba), Zobah (Aramean kingdom north of Damascus), and Philistines (western coastal plain). The phrase uvkhol asher-yifneh yarshi'a ('wherever he turned, he condemned/defeated') — the Hiphil of r-sh-' normally means 'to condemn, to declare guilty,' which is an unusual way to describe military victory. Some emend to yatsliyach ('he succeeded') or read it as 'he prevailed.' The MT reading may be deliberately ambiguous.
48. The phrase vayya'as chayil ('he made/gathered strength/valor') can mean either 'he acted valiantly' or 'he mustered an army.' The Amalek campaign described here will be narrated in full in chapter 15 — and it will become the occasion of Saul's definitive rejection by God. The verb vayyatsel ('he rescued, he delivered') from n-ts-l credits Saul with rescuing Israel from the shosehu ('the one plundering him'). This summary presents Saul in the best possible light as a military king, which makes the coming narrative of his disobedience and rejection all the more tragic.
49. The three sons listed here do not include Ish-bosheth (Eshbaal), who appears in 2 Samuel 2:8 — either Ishvi is an alternate name or Ish-bosheth is omitted. Malki-shu'a means 'my king is noble/generous.' The daughters are listed by birth order: Merav (firstborn) and Mikhal (younger). Both names will feature prominently: Merav in the broken betrothal to David (18:17-19), Michal in the love story and later estrangement (18:20-28, 2 Samuel 6:16-23). The genealogical format follows ancient Near Eastern royal chronicle conventions.
50. Achinoam (Ahinoam, 'my brother is delight/pleasantness') daughter of Achimaaz (Ahimaaz) — a different Ahinoam from the one David later marries (25:43). Avner (Abner, 'my father is a lamp') son of Ner is identified as Saul's dod ('uncle' or 'kinsman'). Abner will become a major figure: he will champion Ish-bosheth after Saul's death, oppose David, and eventually be killed by Joab (2 Samuel 3). As sar-tseva'o ('commander of his army'), Abner holds the most powerful military position in the kingdom.
51. The genealogy clarifies the family relationships: Kish (Qish) is Saul's father (as established in 9:1), and Ner is Abner's father. Both Kish and Ner are identified as sons of Abiel (Avi'el, 'my father is God'), making Saul and Abner cousins. This explains Abner's fierce loyalty to Saul's house — they are close kin. The genealogy also anchors the royal house in the tribe of Benjamin.
52. The adjective chazaqah ('strong, fierce, hard') describes the Philistine war as a grinding, sustained conflict. The phrase kol yemei Sha'ul ('all the days of Saul') encompasses his entire reign — the war never ends. The verb vayya'asfehu ('he gathered him, he recruited him') from '-s-f shows a systematic policy of military conscription based on observed ability. The phrase ish gibbor ('mighty man, warrior') and ben-chayil ('son of valor, capable man') are the elite warrior designations that David will embody. This recruiting policy ironically sets the stage for David's arrival at court and the beginning of Saul's undoing.

15

Summary: *Samuel delivers the LORD's command to Saul: march against Amalek and execute total cherem — devoted destruction of everything and everyone. Saul wages a successful campaign, crushing the Amalekite forces from Havilah to Shur. But he spares King Agag alive and allows his troops to keep the best livestock, claiming the animals are for sacrifice to the LORD. God tells Samuel he regrets making Saul king. Samuel confronts Saul at Gilgal with one of the most devastating theological verdicts in the Hebrew Bible: 'To obey is better than sacrifice, and to listen than the fat of rams.' Saul is rejected as king. He begs Samuel not to humiliate him publicly, and Samuel briefly accompanies him — but as Samuel turns to leave, Saul tears his robe, and Samuel declares that the LORD has torn the kingdom from him and given it to a neighbor who is better. Samuel then personally executes Agag before the LORD at Gilgal. The two men part and never see each other again, though Samuel grieves over Saul for the rest of his life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains what may be the single most important theological statement about worship in the entire Hebrew Bible: hashmoa' mizzevach tov lehaqshiv mechelev elim — 'to obey is better than sacrifice, to listen than the fat of rams' (v22). This is not a late prophetic innovation; it is placed in the mouth of the last judge and first prophet of the monarchical period, at the very inception of kingship. The statement does not abolish sacrifice — it subordinates it. Ritual without obedience is not merely insufficient; it is rebellion (meri) and divination (qesem). Samuel equates Saul's self-willed 'worship' with the pagan practices Israel was commanded to destroy. The chapter also introduces an extraordinary theological tension around the verb nacham ('relent, repent, be grieved'). In verse 11, the LORD says 'I regret (nichamti) that I made Saul king.' In verse 29, Samuel declares 'the Eternal One of Israel does not lie and does not relent (yinnachem),*

for he is not a human being that he should relent (lehinnachem).' Then in verse 35, the narrator states 'the LORD regretted (nicham) that he had made Saul king.' The same verb is both affirmed and denied of God within a single chapter. This is not carelessness — it is the text wrestling with divine sovereignty and divine grief simultaneously, refusing to resolve the tension.

Translation Friction: The cherem command against Amalek raises profound moral questions that the text itself does not soften. The instruction in verse 3 is comprehensive: kill men, women, children, infants, and all livestock. Modern readers recoil; ancient readers would have understood cherem as the total consecration of war spoil to God — nothing may be profited from, everything belongs to the divine realm. The tension is compounded by the fact that Saul is condemned not for excessive violence but for insufficient obedience to the destruction order. Critical scholarship identifies multiple layers: the Amalekite conflict tradition (Exodus 17:8-16, Deuteronomy 25:17-19), the Deuteronomistic theological framework that interprets Saul's reign as failed, and the possible retrojection of later anti-Amalekite sentiment. The Kenites receiving advance warning (v6) shows that the narrator recognizes ethical distinctions within the campaign — innocents can be spared. The nacham tension (vv11, 29, 35) has generated centuries of theological debate: does God change his mind? The text presents both positions without harmonizing them, suggesting that divine constancy and divine responsiveness to human action are both true and irreducible.

Connections: The Amalekite war connects directly to Exodus 17:8-16, where Amalek attacked Israel's rear — the weak, the exhausted, the stragglers — during the wilderness journey, and to Deuteronomy 25:17-19, which commands Israel to 'blot out the memory of Amalek from under heaven.' Saul's failure to complete cherem mirrors Achan's violation of cherem at Jericho (Joshua 7), where one man's retention of devoted goods brought disaster on all Israel. The verb ma'as ('reject') creates a devastating wordplay: because Saul rejected (ma'asta) the word of the LORD, the LORD has rejected (vayyima'asekha) him as king — the punishment mirrors the crime in the same root. Samuel's statement about obedience and sacrifice anticipates the prophetic tradition of Hosea 6:6 ('I desire loyal love and not sacrifice'), Isaiah 1:11-17, Amos 5:21-24, Micah 6:6-8, and Psalm 51:16-17. The tearing of the robe in verse 27 becomes a recurring symbol of torn kingship: Ahijah will tear a garment into twelve pieces before Jeroboam (1 Kings 11:30-31). Agag's death at Gilgal brings the Amalekite thread to a temporary close, but Amalek resurfaces: David will fight them (1 Samuel 30), and an Amalekite will claim to have killed Saul (2 Samuel 1:8-10). The Amalekite line persists all the way to Haman the Agagite in Esther — a descendant of the royal house Saul was supposed to destroy.

¹Samuel said to Saul, "The LORD sent me to anoint you as king over his people, over Israel. Now listen to the voice of the LORD's words. ²This is what the LORD of Armies says: 'I have called to account what Amalek did to Israel — how he set an ambush against him on the road when he came up from Egypt. ³Now go and strike Amalek. Devote to destruction everything that belongs to him. Do not show him pity. Kill man and woman, child and nursing infant, ox and sheep, camel and donkey.'" ⁴Saul summoned the people and mustered them at Telaim: two hundred thousand foot soldiers, along with ten thousand men of Judah. ⁵Saul advanced to the city of Amalek and set an ambush in the wadi. ⁶Saul said to the Kenites, "Go — withdraw — get away from the Amalekites before I sweep you away with them, because you showed faithful love to all the Israelites when they came up from Egypt." So the Kenites withdrew from among the Amalekites. ⁷Saul struck the Amalekites from Havilah all the way to Shur, which is east of Egypt. ⁸He captured Agag king of Amalek alive, but he devoted all the people to destruction by the edge of the sword. ⁹But Saul and the people showed pity on Agag and on the best of the flock and the herd — the fattened animals, the lambs, and everything of value. They were unwilling to devote these to destruction. Only what was worthless and unwanted did they devote to destruction. ¹⁰Then the word of the LORD came to Samuel: ¹¹"I regret that I made Saul king, because he has turned away from following me and has not carried out my commands." Samuel was deeply grieved, and he cried out to the LORD all night long. ¹²Samuel rose early to meet Saul in the morning, but he was told, "Saul went to Carmel, and there he set up a monument for himself. Then he turned and moved on down to Gilgal." ¹³Samuel came to Saul, and Saul said to him, "Blessed are you by the LORD! I have carried out the word of the LORD." ¹⁴Samuel said, "Then what is this sound of sheep in my ears? And the sound of cattle that I am hearing?" ¹⁵Saul said, "They brought them from the Amalekites, because the people showed pity on the best of the sheep and cattle in order to sacrifice them to the LORD your God. But the rest we devoted to destruction." ¹⁶Samuel said to Saul, "Stop. Let me tell you what the LORD said to me last night." Saul said to him, "Speak." ¹⁷Samuel said, "Were you not small in your own eyes when you were made

head of the tribes of Israel? The LORD anointed you king over Israel. ¹⁸The LORD sent you on a mission and said, 'Go and devote to destruction the sinners — the Amalekites. Fight against them until you have finished them off.' ¹⁹So why did you not obey the voice of the LORD? Why did you pounce on the plunder and do what is evil in the LORD's eyes?" ²⁰Saul said to Samuel, "But I did obey the voice of the LORD! I went on the mission the LORD sent me on. I brought back Agag king of Amalek, and I devoted the Amalekites to destruction. ²¹But the people took sheep and cattle from the plunder — the best of what was devoted to destruction — to sacrifice to the LORD your God at Gilgal." ²²Samuel said, "Does the LORD delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as much as in obeying the voice of the LORD? To obey is better than sacrifice; to listen is better than the fat of rams. ²³For rebellion is the sin of divination, and defiance is wickedness and idolatry. Because you rejected the word of the LORD, the LORD has rejected you as king." ²⁴Saul said to Samuel, "I have sinned. I violated the command of the LORD and your instructions, because I was afraid of the people and I listened to their voice. ²⁵Now please forgive my sin and come back with me so I can worship the LORD." ²⁶Samuel said to Saul, "I will not go back with you, because you rejected the word of the LORD, and the LORD has rejected you from being king over Israel." ²⁷As Samuel turned to leave, Saul grabbed the edge of his robe and it tore. ²⁸Samuel said to him, "The LORD has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today and has given it to a neighbor of yours who is better than you. ²⁹Moreover, the Enduring One of Israel does not lie and does not relent, for he is not a human being, that he should relent." ³⁰Saul said, "I have sinned. But now, please honor me before the elders of my people and before Israel. Come back with me so I may bow down to the LORD your God." ³¹So Samuel went back with Saul, and Saul bowed down to the LORD. ³²Then Samuel said, "Bring Agag king of Amalek to me." Agag came to him in chains. And Agag said, "Surely the bitterness of death has turned away." ³³Samuel said, "Just as your sword made women childless, so your mother will be childless among women." And Samuel hacked Agag to pieces before the LORD at Gilgal. ³⁴Samuel went to Ramah, and Saul went up to his home at Gibeah of Saul. ³⁵Samuel never went to see Saul again until the day of his death, for Samuel mourned over Saul. And the LORD regretted that he had made Saul king over Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *oti shalach YHWH* ('me the LORD sent') places the pronoun *oti* ('me') in emphatic first position — Samuel is asserting his prophetic credentials before delivering a divine command. The verb *limshochakha* ('to anoint you') recalls the private anointing of 1 Samuel 10:1. The phrase *al-ammo al-Yisra'el* ('over his people, over Israel') uses double specification: the people belong to God first, and Israel is their name. The imperative *shema* ('hear, listen, obey') is the same root that will appear in verse 22 as the chapter's theological climax. Samuel front-loads the key verb: everything depends on hearing.
2. The messenger formula *koh amar YHWH* ('thus says the LORD') marks this as direct prophetic oracle — Samuel speaks as God's mouthpiece. The title *tseva'ot* ('of armies/hosts') encompasses both heavenly and earthly forces; its use here militarizes the context. The verb *paqadti* from *p-q-d* ('to visit, attend to, call to account, muster') carries judicial force — God has reviewed the case and reached a verdict. The phrase *asher-sam lo baderekh* ('who set [an ambush] for him on the road') refers to Amalek's attack during the Exodus journey. The participle implies premeditated aggression: Amalek chose to attack Israel on the vulnerable march from Egypt.
3. The verb *vehachramtem* from *ch-r-m* ('devote to destruction, place under the ban') is the Hiphil imperative plural — the entire army is commanded to execute *cherem*. This is the same root used for the destruction of Jericho (Joshua 6:17-21). The phrase *lo tachmo alav* ('do not show him pity') uses *ch-m-l* ('to spare, have compassion'), preemptively forbidding exactly what Saul will do. The merism *me'ish ad-ishah me'olel ve'ad-yoneq* ('from man to woman, from child to nursing infant') covers the entire human population. The livestock list (*mishor ve'ad-seh migamal ve'ad-chamor*) covers the entire economic wealth of a pastoral-nomadic society.
4. The verb *vayeshamma* ('he summoned, he caused to hear') is the Piel of *sh-m'* — Saul 'makes the people hear' the call to war. Telaim is likely in the southern Negev, near Amalekite territory. The separate count of Judah from the rest of Israel (as in 11:8) again reflects the political distinction between the southern and northern tribes. The numbers (200,000 foot soldiers plus 10,000 from Judah) are large; as with other biblical military censuses, *elef* may indicate 'military unit/clan' rather than the literal number 1,000. The verb *vayyifqdem* ('he mustered them') from *p-q-d* echoes verse 2, where God uses the same root to 'call Amalek to account.'
5. The phrase *ir Amaleq* ('city of Amalek') likely refers to the principal settlement or capital of the Amalekite confederation. The verb *vayyarev* ('he set an ambush') from *'r-v* shows tactical planning — Saul conceals forces in the *nachal* ('wadi, dry riverbed, seasonal streambed'), which is characteristic of Negev terrain and provides natural cover for concealed troops. The irony is sharp: Amalek ambushed Israel on the road from Egypt (v2), and now Saul ambushes Amalek. The same verb root (*'r-v*) connects the two actions.

6. The triple imperative lekhu suru redu ('go, turn aside, go down') conveys urgency — Saul wants the Kenites out before the attack begins. The verb pen-osifkha ('lest I gather you up / sweep you away') from 's-p warns of collateral destruction. The word chesed ('loyal kindness, covenant faithfulness') is one of the richest terms in Hebrew — it denotes not mere kindness but obligation-based loyalty within a relationship. The Kenites' chesed toward Israel during the Exodus creates an enduring claim on Israel's protection. The verb vayyasar ('he withdrew') shows the Kenites comply — the separation of innocent from guilty is accomplished before the battle.
7. The geographical markers describe a vast sweep of territory. Havilah is in the Arabian interior (possibly eastern Arabia or northern Yemen); Shur is the wilderness region east of Egypt's border (the Sinai). The phrase bo'akha Shur ('as you approach Shur') uses the standard directional idiom. The phrase asher al-penei Mitsrayim ('which is on the face of / opposite Egypt') locates Shur on Egypt's eastern frontier. This merism — from Havilah to Shur — indicates that Saul's campaign covered the entire range of Amalekite territory. The military victory is comprehensive; Saul's failure lies not in the battle but in its aftermath.
8. The verb vayyitpos ('he captured, he seized') implies taking prisoner rather than killing. The adjective chai ('alive') is emphatic — the text stresses that Agag was not killed. The title melekh Amaleq ('king of Amalek') identifies Agag as the royal figure whose survival most directly violates cherem. The phrase hecherim lefi-charev ('devoted to destruction by the mouth/edge of the sword') combines the cherem root (ch-r-m) with the standard expression for death by sword. The contrast between chai for the king and hecherim for the people is the structural hinge of the narrative.
9. The verb vayachmo ('he showed pity, he spared') from ch-m-l directly violates the prohibition lo tachmo of verse 3. The word meitav ('the best, the choicest') from y-t-v emphasizes that Saul retained only premium goods. The word mishneim is debated — possibly 'second-born' animals (fattened for quality) or 'well-fed' livestock. The karim ('fatted lambs') are choice sacrificial-quality animals. The phrase lo avu hacharimam ('they were unwilling to devote them to destruction') reveals volition — this is not accidental oversight but deliberate refusal. The contrast terms nimvezah ('despised, contemptible') and nameis ('melting away, wasting, worthless') describe the rejected dregs. The chapter's moral calculus is razor-sharp: Saul destroyed trash and called it obedience.
10. The prophetic reception formula vayehi devar-YHWH el-Shemu'el ('the word of the LORD came to Samuel') marks a direct divine communication. This is the same formula used throughout the prophetic literature (Jeremiah, Ezekiel, Hosea) to introduce divine speech. Samuel will receive God's verdict on Saul's actions before confronting Saul himself. The verse is brief — a narrative hinge shifting the scene from the battlefield to the prophetic chamber.
11. The verb nichamti from n-ch-m is the theological crux of the chapter. It appears here (v11), is denied of God in verse 29, and reaffirmed in verse 35 — creating an unresolved tension the text does not harmonize. The root can mean 'regret, relent, change one's mind, be grieved, be consoled.' The phrase shav me'acharai ('he turned back from after me') uses the language of covenant defection — Saul has abandoned the path of following God. The phrase devarai lo heqim ('my words he has not carried out') uses q-w-m in the Hiphil ('to establish, fulfill, carry out'). The verb vayyichar ('it burned/grieved') for Samuel uses the same root as anger (ch-r-h) but here expresses anguished distress. The phrase vayyiz'aq el-YHWH kol-hallailah ('he cried out to the LORD all night') shows sustained, desperate intercession.
12. The verb vayyashkem ('he rose early') shows Samuel's urgency — he has been awake all night and moves at first light. The phrase matsiv lo yad ('setting up a hand/monument for himself') is telling: yad as 'monument' appears in 2 Samuel 18:18 for Absalom's memorial pillar. The reflexive lo ('for himself') is the narrator's implicit critique — Saul commemorates himself. Carmel (hakkarmelah) is a town in the Judean highlands (modern Khirbet el-Kirmil), not the northern Mount Carmel. Gilgal is the site of Saul's kingship ceremony (11:15) and will now become the site of his kingship's undoing — a savage geographical irony.
13. The greeting barukh attah laYHWH ('blessed are you by the LORD') is a standard blessing formula, but in context it functions as deflection — Saul leads with piety. The phrase haqimoti et-devar YHWH ('I have carried out the LORD's word') uses the Hiphil of q-w-m ('to cause to stand, to establish, to fulfill'). This is precisely the verb God denied of Saul in verse 11 (devarai lo heqim). The contradiction between God's assessment and Saul's self-assessment could not be sharper. Saul does not say 'most of' or 'largely' — he claims complete fulfillment.
14. The phrase qol-hatson hazzeh be'oznai ('this sound of sheep in my ears') makes the evidence sensory and immediate — Samuel is not citing a report but hearing living proof. The word qol ('voice, sound') is the same word used in verse 1 for the 'voice' of God's words (qol divrei YHWH). Samuel's ears should contain God's voice; instead they contain sheep sounds. The verb shomea' ('hearing') is a participle of sh-m' — the chapter's governing verb. The question is rhetorical: Samuel knows exactly what the sounds mean. He is forcing Saul to account for the discrepancy between his claim and the audible evidence.
15. The subject shift from 'I have carried out' (v13, first person singular) to 'they brought them' (hevi'um, third person plural) is a transparent attempt to transfer responsibility. The verb chamal ('showed pity, spared') is the same prohibited verb from verse 3 and described in verse 9. The phrase lema'an zevoach laYHWH Elohekha ('in order to sacrifice to the LORD your God') wraps disobedience in liturgical language. The pronoun Elohekha ('your God') rather than Elohai ('my God') or Elohenu ('our God') creates theological distance — Saul treats God as Samuel's deity rather than his own sovereign. The phrase ve-et-hayyoter hecheramnu ('and the rest we devoted to destruction') quietly admits that cherem was applied only to what remained after the best was removed.
16. The imperative heref ('stop, cease, let go') cuts Saul off — Samuel has heard enough of his excuses. The phrase et asher dibber YHWH elai hallailah ('what the LORD spoke to me last night') refers to the revelation of verse 11. Samuel has been carrying this word all night, agonizing over it, and now delivers it. Saul's response dabber ('speak') is a single word — perhaps confident ignorance, perhaps growing dread. The brevity of both speakers creates taut narrative tension.

17. The phrase *qaton attah be'einekha* ('small in your own eyes') recalls 9:21 and 10:22 (Saul hiding among the baggage). The rhetorical question *halo'* ('is it not the case that...?') expects affirmation — Saul cannot deny his humble origins. The phrase *rosh shivtei Yisra'el* ('head of the tribes of Israel') identifies Saul's position as representative of the entire nation. The verb *vayyimshachakha* ('the LORD anointed you') repeats the claim of verse 1 — the anointing came from God, and God's authority over the anointed one is absolute.
18. The phrase *vayyishlachakha YHWH baderekh* ('the LORD sent you on a road/mission') uses the same verb as verse 1 (*shalach*, 'send') — Samuel recapitulates the commission. The designation *hachatta'im* ('the sinners') applies a moral category to the Amalekites — they are not merely enemies but offenders against God. The phrase *ad-kallotam otam* ('until you finish them off, until you consume them') from *k-l-h* ('to complete, finish, consume') demands total completion. Samuel is quoting back to Saul what God's command actually required — not the selective version Saul carried out, but the exhaustive one.
19. The interrogative *lammah* ('why?') demands explanation. The phrase *lo-shamata beqol YHWH* ('you did not obey the voice of the LORD') is the chapter's central indictment, using the verb *sh-m-* that Samuel introduced in verse 1. The verb *vatta'at* from *'-y-t* ('to swoop, pounce, rush greedily') appears also in 14:32, where the people 'pounced' on spoil after Saul's foolish oath — a recurring pattern of undisciplined greed. The phrase *hara' be'einei YHWH* ('the evil in the eyes of the LORD') is the Deuteronomistic judgment formula applied to Israel's worst kings.
20. The emphatic *asher shamati* ('indeed I obeyed') uses the relative pronoun *asher* as an emphatic particle — Saul is insisting, not conceding. The phrase *va'elekh baderekh asher-shelachani YHWH* ('I went on the road/mission the LORD sent me on') echoes verse 18 word for word, claiming complete compliance. The verb *va'avi* ('I brought') from *b-w-* in the Hiphil ('to bring, to lead') treats Agag as acquired goods — something brought back from the campaign. The phrase *ve'et-Amaleq hecheramti* ('I devoted the Amalekites to destruction') is first person singular — Saul now claims personal credit for the *cherem* he actually carried out, even as he disclaims responsibility for the *cherem* he didn't.
21. The phrase *reshit hacherem* ('the first/best of the devoted things') is deeply problematic theologically. *Reshit* normally describes premium offerings (*reshit bikkurim*, 'first of the first-fruits,' Exodus 23:19), but *hacherem* ('the devoted things') are not eligible for sacrifice — they are already claimed by God for destruction. Saul treats *cherem* as interchangeable with sacrificial offerings, which is a fundamental misunderstanding of the categories. The repeated *Elohekha* ('your God') again distances Saul from covenant relationship with God. The location *baGilgal* ('at Gilgal') is where Saul's kingship was renewed (11:15) — the site of his coronation feast will now become the site of his condemnation.
22. The noun *chefets* ('delight, desire, pleasure') asks what God actually wants — not what humans assume God wants. The pair *olot uzvachim* ('burnt offerings and sacrifices') covers the two major categories of offering. The infinitive absolute *shemoa'* ('to obey/hear') functions as a verbal noun — obedience as a concept, a way of life. The adjective *tov* ('good, better') establishes the comparison: obedience is *tov* ('better') than sacrifice. The verb *lehaqshiv* from *q-sh-v* ('to attend, to listen attentively, to heed') adds nuance — this is not just hearing but careful, focused attention. The *chelev eilim* ('fat of rams') refers to the suet surrounding the kidneys and liver, the choicest sacrificial portion reserved for God alone (Leviticus 3:3-4, 3:16). Samuel's point: even the fat — the part that is entirely God's — is less important to God than a listening heart.
23. The noun *meri* ('rebellion, defiance') from *m-r-h* characterizes willful disobedience against known commands. The noun *qesem* ('divination') refers to pagan techniques for discerning or manipulating the divine will — strictly forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:10. Samuel's equation is not metaphorical but categorical: rebellion against God's word and divination against God's sovereignty are the same sin — both attempt to impose human will on the divine realm. The noun *haftsar* ('defiance, insistence, pushiness') from *p-ts-r* describes aggressive stubbornness. *Terafim* ('household gods, idol figurines') are condemned throughout the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 31:19, Judges 17:5, 2 Kings 23:24). The verb *ma'as* ('reject, refuse, despise') creates the wordplay: *ma'asta* (you rejected) *vayyima'askha* (he rejected you). The preposition *mimmelekh* ('from being king') specifies what is lost — not Saul's life, but his dynasty and kingship.
24. The confession *chatati* ('I have sinned') uses *ch-t-* ('to miss the mark, to sin'). The verb *avarti* ('I violated, I crossed over') from *'-v-r* means to transgress a boundary — he crossed a line God drew. The phrase *pi-YHWH* ('the mouth/command of the LORD') personifies God's command as speech from God's mouth. The phrase *ve'et-devarekha* ('and your words') acknowledges that Samuel's instructions carried divine authority. The verb *yareti* ('I feared') from *y-r-* admits the wrong kind of fear — Saul feared the people rather than God. The phrase *va'eshma' beqolam* ('I obeyed their voice') uses the same *shama' + qol* construction that should have been directed at God (v1: *shema' leqol divrei YHWH*). Saul obeyed the wrong voice.
25. The imperative *sa na'* ('please carry, please bear') asks Samuel to lift the sin from Saul — literally to 'carry' (*nasa'*) his transgression. The plea *veshuv immi* ('return with me') reveals Saul's deeper concern: he wants Samuel's public presence as prophetic endorsement. The phrase *ve'eshtachaveh laYHWH* ('so I may worship the LORD') uses the *Hishtaphel* of *sh-ch-h* ('to bow down, prostrate oneself'). Saul's request is ambiguous — does he want genuine worship, or does he want the appearance of prophetic approval? The fact that his concern shifts immediately to public image (v30) suggests the latter.
26. The declaration *lo ashuv immakh* ('I will not return with you') uses the same verb *shuv* ('return') from Saul's plea in verse 25. The *ma'as* wordplay is repeated with fuller specification: *miheyot melek al-Yisra'el* ('from being king over Israel') rather than just *mimmelekh* (v23). The rejection is now explicitly over all Israel — Saul's authority over God's people is revoked. The repetition of the full formula (you rejected the LORD rejected) emphasizes the irreversibility of the divine decision.
27. The verb *vayyissov* ('he turned') from *s-v-v* indicates Samuel physically rotating to walk away. The verb *vayyachazek* ('he grasped, he seized') from *ch-z-q* indicates forceful gripping — Saul is not gently touching but clutching. The *kenaf me'ilo* ('the edge/corner of his robe') refers to the hem or decorative border of the outer garment. The *me'il* is a significant garment — it is the robe Samuel's mother made for him yearly (2:19). The verb *vayyiqqara* ('it tore') from *q-r-* provides the word Samuel will use in his interpretation. The ambiguity of the subject (whose robe?) has generated centuries of commentary; the narrative logic favors Samuel's robe tearing in Saul's hand.

- 28.** The verb *qara'* ('to tear, to rip') verbally links the torn garment to the torn kingdom — the physical act becomes a sign-act (ot). The phrase *mamleket Yisra'el* ('kingdom of Israel') is the political entity itself, not just the throne. The preposition *me'alekha* ('from upon you') images the kingdom as a garment worn by the king — God is stripping it off. The time marker *hayyom* ('today') makes the verdict present and immediate. The phrase *lere'akha hattov mimmekka* ('to your neighbor, the better one than you') introduces the unnamed successor. The word *re'a* can mean 'companion, friend, fellow, neighbor' — it is deliberately unspecific, prolonging the mystery of identity.
- 29.** The title *Netsach Yisra'el* ('the Enduring One / Glory / Permanence of Israel') is a hapax as a divine title — it appears only here. The root *n-ts-ch* relates to perpetuity, victory, and endurance. The verb *lo yeshaqer* ('does not lie') from *sh-q-r* affirms divine truthfulness — God's word is reliable. The verb *lo yinnachem* ('does not relent') from *n-ch-m* is the Niphal ('he does not cause himself to relent'), directly contradicting the Niphal *nichamti* of verse 11 ('I regret'). The phrase *ki lo adam hu lehinnachem* ('for he is not a human being, that he should relent') grounds the assertion in ontology — divine and human responses are categorically different. The theological puzzle of *nacham* affirmed (v11) and denied (v29) of God within 18 verses has generated vast rabbinic, patristic, and modern commentary.
- 30.** The repeated *chatati* ('I have sinned') is verbally identical to verse 24, but the context shifts its meaning — this time it is followed not by repentance but by a request for political face-saving. The imperative *kabbedeni* ('honor me') from *k-v-d* ('to be heavy, to honor') asks Samuel to give him public weight/dignity. The phrase *neged ziqnei ammi* ('before the elders of my people') and *veneged Yisra'el* ('before Israel') specifies two audiences: the political leadership and the general populace. Saul wants to avoid both audiences learning of his rejection. The persistent *Elohekha* ('your God') rather than *Elohai* ('my God') is now devastating — after being told God has rejected him, Saul still speaks of God as belonging to Samuel's sphere, not his own.
- 31.** The verb *vayyashav* ('he turned back, he returned') from *sh-w-v* reverses Samuel's earlier refusal (*lo ashuv immakh*, v26). The phrase *acharei Sha'ul* ('after Saul') positions Samuel as following Saul — a reversal of the proper prophetic relationship where the king follows God's prophet. The verb *vayyishtachu* ('he bowed down, he worshiped') from *sh-ch-h* is the *Hishtaphel* indicating prostration. Saul worships — but worship after disobedience, as the chapter has established, is not what God desires.
- 32.** The imperative *haggishu* ('bring near') from *n-g-sh* commands Agag's presentation — this is judicial language, bringing the accused before the judge. The word *ma'adannot* is a crux interpretum. It may derive from *'-d-n* ('to be delicate, to be pampered') yielding 'pleasantly, cheerfully'; from *m-'-d-n* related to 'bonds, fetters'; or be an adverbial form meaning 'haltingly, falteringly.' The LXX reads *tremon* ('trembling'). Context favors either 'in fetters' (a prisoner presentation) or 'cheerfully' (false confidence). Agag's statement *akhen sar mar-hammavet* uses *akhen* ('surely, truly') as an emphatic particle, *sar* ('has turned aside, departed') from *s-w-r*, and *mar-hammavet* ('the bitterness of death'). The phrase may also be read as a question: 'Has the bitterness of death truly passed?' — expressing hope rather than certainty.
- 33.** The verb *shikkelah* ('made childless, bereaved') from *sh-k-l* is a devastating word in Hebrew — it describes the specific grief of a parent who has lost children. The structure *ka'asher ... ken* ('as ... so') establishes *lex talionis* (proportional justice). The phrase *tishkal minnashim immekha* ('your mother will be childless among women') makes the punishment personal and genealogical — Agag's line ends here. The verb *vayeshassef* from *sh-s-f* ('to hew, to hack, to cleave') appears only here and in uncertain form — it describes violent dismemberment. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') marks this as a sacral execution, the completion of the *cherem* that Saul failed to carry out. Gilgal, the site of Israel's first Passover in the land (Joshua 5:10) and Saul's kingship renewal (11:15), now hosts the execution that seals Saul's rejection.
- 34.** *Ramah* (*haRamatah*, with directional *heh*) is Samuel's home base (7:17, 8:4). *Gibeah of Saul* (*Giv'at Sha'ul*) is identified as Saul's *beit* ('house/home') — still his hometown, not a royal capital. The verb *alah* ('went up') for Saul indicates ascending elevation — Gibeah sits on a hill. The parallel construction (Samuel went to X, Saul went to Y) creates a visual of two figures walking apart, a narrative image of permanent separation.
- 35.** The verb *lo-yasaf* ('he did not again, he never again') from *y-s-f* with the negative indicates permanent cessation. The phrase *lir'ot et-Sha'ul* ('to see Saul') means purposeful visit — Samuel did not seek Saul out. The phrase *ad-yom moto* ('until the day of his death') creates ambiguity: 'his' could refer to Samuel or Saul. Given that Samuel and Saul do meet again in 19:24 (at Naioth in Ramah, though that encounter is not initiated by Samuel) and in 28:11-19 (posthumously, at En-dor), the verse likely means Samuel never again sought Saul out in an official prophetic capacity. The verb *hit'abel* from *'-v-l* ('to mourn') in the *Hitpael* describes prolonged, active mourning — the kind displayed for the dead. The final clause *vaYHWH nicham* ('and the LORD regretted') uses the same Niphal of *n-ch-m* as verse 11 (*nichamti*), forming an *inclusio* around the chapter. The narrator gives the last word to divine grief — not divine anger, not divine punishment, but divine sorrow.

16

Summary: *The LORD rejects Saul and sends Samuel to Bethlehem to anoint one of Jesse's sons as king. After passing over seven older brothers, Samuel anoints David — the youngest, a shepherd — and the Spirit of the LORD rushes upon him from that day forward. Simultaneously, the Spirit departs from Saul and a harmful spirit from the LORD torments him. Saul's servants recommend a skilled musician; David is summoned, enters Saul's household as armor-bearer and harpist, and whenever the harmful spirit comes, David plays and Saul finds relief. The future king enters the present king's service, and neither knows the full weight of what has begun.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter stages the most important theological pivot in the entire monarchy narrative: the transfer of the Spirit. In a single literary movement, the ruach YHWH ('Spirit of the LORD') rushes upon David (v13) and departs from Saul (v14). The Spirit is not a reward for good behavior — David has done nothing yet. It is sovereign election, the same kind of unearned choosing that marked Israel itself. The anointing scene at Bethlehem contains the theological center of gravity: 'The LORD does not see as a human sees — a person looks at the outward appearance, but the LORD looks at the heart' (v7). This is not a proverb about inner beauty. It is a direct rebuke of the criteria that produced Saul, who was chosen in part because he stood a head taller than everyone (9:2, 10:23). God is explicitly repudiating his own people's selection logic. The irony deepens when David is finally brought in and described as admoni ('ruddy'), with beautiful eyes and good appearance (v12) — he is physically attractive too, but that is not why he is chosen. The chapter also introduces one of Scripture's most disturbing theological claims: a ruach ra'ah me'et YHWH ('harmful spirit from the LORD') afflicts Saul. The narrator does not soften this. The spirit is explicitly 'from the LORD.' Whatever theological framework one brings to this — divine permission, judicial consequence, the dark side of sovereignty — the text refuses to let God off the hook.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this chapter's introduction of David to Saul and the next chapter's (1 Samuel 17) creates one of the most discussed tensions in Samuel scholarship. In 16:14-23, David enters Saul's service, becomes his armor-bearer, and Saul 'loved him greatly' (v21). Yet in 17:55-58, after David kills Goliath, Saul asks Abner 'whose son is this youth?' as though he has never met him. The Septuagint actually omits large portions of chapter 17 (including 17:55-58), suggesting the Greek translators were aware of the tension and resolved it by excision. The Masoretic Text preserves both accounts, leaving the tension visible. Harmonization attempts range from the plausible (Saul is asking about David's family lineage for military-exemption purposes, not his personal identity) to the strained (Saul's mental instability caused memory loss). Source-critical scholars typically assign 16:14-23 and 17:1-58 to different literary traditions about David's introduction to the court. The verb vatitslach ('rushed upon') used for the Spirit coming on David in v13 is the same verb used for the Spirit coming on Saul in 10:6 and 11:6 — the narrator uses identical language to mark the transfer of divine favor from one king to the next.*

Connections: *The Bethlehem anointing connects backward and forward across the entire biblical narrative. Backward: Ruth ends with a genealogy tracing Perez to David through Jesse of Bethlehem (Ruth 4:17-22). This chapter picks up exactly where Ruth left off — same town, same family, the promise embedded in Ruth's genealogy now fulfilled. Forward: Micah 5:2 will prophesy that a future ruler will come 'from Bethlehem Ephrathah,' and Matthew 2:1-6 will cite this prophecy at Jesus' birth. The shepherd motif is equally layered: David is taken from tending sheep to shepherd Israel (2 Samuel 5:2, 7:8, Psalm 78:70-72), and the image of the shepherd-king becomes central to messianic expectation (Ezekiel 34:23, John 10:11). The phrase 'the LORD looks at the heart' (el-halevav) establishes a criterion that will haunt David's own story — his heart will prove both magnificent (2 Samuel 7) and catastrophically flawed (2 Samuel 11), yet he remains 'a man after God's own heart' (1 Samuel 13:14). The harmful spirit from the LORD anticipates the 'lying spirit' God sends in 1 Kings 22:19-23, where the divine council explicitly dispatches a deceptive spirit — another text that refuses to separate God from the darker instruments of his sovereignty.*

¹The LORD said to Samuel, "How long will you grieve over Saul? I have rejected him as king over Israel. Fill your horn with oil and go — I am sending you to Jesse the Bethlehemite, because I have chosen a king for myself from among his sons." ²Sa

muel said, "How can I go? If Saul hears about it, he will kill me." The LORD said, "Take a young cow with you and say, 'I have come to offer a sacrifice to the LORD.'" ³ "Invite Jesse to the sacrifice, and I will show you what to do. You will anoint for me the one I point out to you." ⁴ Samuel did what the LORD instructed and came to Bethlehem. The elders of the town came trembling to meet him and asked, "Do you come in peace?" ⁵ He said, "In peace. I have come to sacrifice to the LORD. Consecrate yourselves and come with me to the sacrifice." Then he consecrated Jesse and his sons and invited them to the sacrifice. ⁶ When they arrived, he saw Eliab and thought, "Surely this one standing before the LORD is his anointed." ⁷ But the LORD said to Samuel, "Do not look at his appearance or how tall he stands, because I have rejected him. For the LORD does not see as a human sees — a person looks at the outward appearance, but the LORD looks at the heart." ⁸ Then Jesse called Abinadab and had him pass before Samuel. But Samuel said, "The LORD has not chosen this one either." ⁹ Jesse then had Shammah pass before him, but Samuel said, "The LORD has not chosen this one either." ¹⁰ Jesse had seven of his sons pass before Samuel, but Samuel said to Jesse, "The LORD has not chosen any of these." ¹¹ Samuel asked Jesse, "Are these all your sons?" Jesse replied, "There is still the youngest — he is out tending the sheep." Samuel said to Jesse, "Send for him and bring him here. We will not sit down to eat until he arrives." ¹² So Jesse sent for him and brought him in. He was ruddy, with beautiful eyes and a handsome appearance. The LORD said, "Rise — anoint him. This is the one." ¹³ Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the presence of his brothers. The Spirit of the LORD rushed upon David from that day forward. Then Samuel set out and went to Ramah. ¹⁴ Now the Spirit of the LORD had departed from Saul, and a harmful spirit from the LORD tormented him. ¹⁵ Saul's servants said to him, "Look — a harmful spirit from God is tormenting you." ¹⁶ "Let our lord give the order, and your servants here before you will search for a man skilled at playing the lyre. When the harmful spirit from God comes upon you, he will play and you will feel better." ¹⁷ Saul said to his servants, "Find me someone who plays well and bring him to me." ¹⁸ One of the young servants spoke up and said, "I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite who is skilled at playing, a brave and capable warrior, articulate in speech, a man of fine appearance — and the LORD is with him." ¹⁹ Saul sent messengers to Jesse with the message: "Send me your son David, the one who is with the sheep." ²⁰ Jesse took a donkey loaded with bread, a skin of wine, and a young goat, and sent them with his son David to Saul. ²¹ David came to Saul and entered his service. Saul loved him deeply, and David became his armor-bearer. ²² Saul sent word to Jesse: "Let David remain in my service, for he has found favor in my eyes." ²³ Whenever the spirit from God came upon Saul, David would take the lyre and play. Saul would find relief and feel better, and the harmful spirit would leave him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *me'astiv* ('I have rejected him') uses the root *m-'s*, the same word used in 15:23 and 15:26 for Saul's rejection — this is a completed divine verdict, not a process still underway. The phrase *mimmelokh al-Yisra'el* ('from reigning over Israel') specifies that the rejection is functional, not personal — Saul is rejected as king, though he remains alive and on the throne. *Malle qarnekha shemen* ('fill your horn with oil') refers to the ram's horn flask used for sacred anointing oil; this is the same instrument Samuel used to anoint Saul (10:1, though there a flask/*pakh* was used — the horn here may signal greater permanence). The phrase *Beit-halLachmi* ('the Bethlehemite') identifies Jesse by his town — Bethlehem, literally 'house of bread,' in the tribal territory of Judah. The verb *ra'iti* ('I have seen/chosen') carries the sense of divine selection through seeing: God has surveyed and chosen.
2. Samuel's fear is striking — the prophet who anointed Saul and pronounced divine judgment on him (chapter 15) is now afraid of him. The verb *vaharagani* ('he will kill me') is direct and unhedged: Samuel genuinely believes Saul would murder him for anointing a rival. God's response is not to dismiss the danger but to provide cover: *eglat baqar tiqqach beyadekha* ('take a heifer/young cow in your hand'). This is not a lie — Samuel will actually sacrifice — but it is a deliberate concealment of his primary mission. The verb *lizbo'ach* ('to sacrifice') provides legitimate reason for a prophetic visit to a town. The text presents God himself authorizing strategic concealment, a detail that has generated extensive discussion in Jewish and Christian interpretation.
3. The verb *qara'ta* ('you will call/invite') means to summon Jesse as a participant in the sacrificial meal — a normal social-religious function that arouses no suspicion. The phrase *anokhi odi'akha* ('I myself will make known to you') uses the emphatic first-person pronoun *anokhi*, stressing that God will personally direct the selection — Samuel is not to choose on his own. The verb *umashachta* ('you will anoint') introduces the key action of the chapter: *mashach*, to smear with oil as an act of consecration and divine appointment. The phrase *li* ('for me') makes the anointing explicitly for God's purposes, not for Israel's request — a contrast with Saul's anointing, which responded to the people's demand for a king (8:5-6).
4. The verb *vayyecherdu* ('they trembled') from the root *ch-r-d* describes physical trembling from fear or alarm. The elders of Bethlehem are terrified by Samuel's arrival — a prophet's unannounced visit to a small town could mean divine judgment. Samuel's reputation as the one who pronounced doom on Saul's dynasty and personally executed Agag (15:33) precedes him. Their question *shalom bo'ekha* ('is your coming peace?') is literally 'peace is

your coming?' — an anxious inquiry about whether he brings blessing or catastrophe. The same root *ch-r-d* describes Isaac's trembling when he realized he had blessed the wrong son (Genesis 27:33).

5. Samuel's answer *shalom* ('peace') directly answers the elders' fear. The command *hitqaddesh* ('consecrate yourselves') requires ritual purification — washing, abstaining from sexual contact, and other preparations for approaching the sacred. The *Hitpael* verb form indicates reflexive action: they must purify themselves. Samuel then personally consecrates (*vayyqaddesh*) Jesse and his sons using the *Piel* intensive, indicating a more active, direct consecration by the prophet himself. The separate consecration of Jesse's family singles them out from the rest of the town — Samuel is creating the conditions for the private anointing within the public sacrificial gathering.
6. The verb *vayyar* ('he saw') begins the theme of seeing that dominates this passage — Samuel sees Eliab and immediately draws a conclusion based on appearance. The name Eliab means 'my God is father.' Samuel's internal declaration *akh neged YHWH meshicho* ('surely before the LORD is his anointed') reveals that the prophet himself is making the same mistake the people made with Saul — judging by external appearance. The word *meshicho* ('his anointed') uses the same root *mashach* that God just commanded Samuel to perform, but Samuel is jumping ahead of divine instruction, selecting by sight rather than waiting for God's direction.
7. The verb *tabbet* ('look at, gaze at') from *n-b-t* implies focused, evaluative looking — not a casual glance but the kind of assessment one makes when sizing up a candidate. *Mar'ehu* ('his appearance') and *govah qomato* ('the height of his stature') are the two criteria Samuel is using, both external. The verb *me'astihu* ('I have rejected him') uses the same root *m'-s* applied to Saul in verse 1 — Eliab is rejected by the same verb. The word *la'einayim* ('at the eyes,' meaning 'at what is visible, the outward appearance') uses the dual form of *ayin* ('eye'). The word *lallelav* ('at the heart') uses the form *levav* rather than the shorter *lev* — both mean 'heart' in the sense of the inner person, the seat of will and moral orientation. The contrast is not between superficiality and depth but between human cognitive limitations and divine omniscience.
8. The verb *vayya'avirehu* ('he made him pass before') uses the *Hiphil* of '*v-r*', suggesting a formal presentation — Jesse is parading his sons before the prophet like candidates being reviewed. The name Abinadab means 'my father is generous/noble.' Samuel's declaration *gam-bazeh lo-vachar YHWH* ('also in this one the LORD has not chosen') uses the verb *bachar* ('to choose, to elect'), the standard term for divine election. The word *gam* ('also, even') links this rejection to Eliab's — the same verdict, the same divine refusal. Samuel has now learned to wait for God's indication rather than jump to his own conclusion.
9. The name Shammah (Shammah) may derive from the root *sh-m-m* ('to be desolate, astonished'). The repetitive formula *gam-bazeh lo-vachar YHWH* ('the LORD has not chosen this one either') builds narrative tension through its very monotony — son after son is rejected, and the reader begins to wonder whether any of Jesse's sons will be selected. The three-fold rejection of named sons (Eliab, Abinadab, Shammah) before the unnamed four creates a sevenfold refusal that heightens the drama of David's eventual selection.
10. The phrase *shiv'at banav* ('seven of his sons') summarizes the parade of candidates. There is a text-critical question here: if Eliab, Abinadab, and Shammah are three of the seven, then four additional sons passed unnamed. Yet 1 Chronicles 2:13-16 lists only seven sons of Jesse total (with David as the seventh), while this passage implies eight (seven rejected plus David). The discrepancy may reflect different traditions about Jesse's family, or Chronicles may count differently. Samuel's declaration *lo-vachar YHWH ba'elleh* ('the LORD has not chosen among these') uses the preposition *be-* with the demonstrative *elleh* ('these'), sweeping all seven into a single rejection.
11. The verb *hatammu* ('are they finished/complete?') from *t-m-m* asks whether all the young men have been presented. The word *hanne'arim* ('the youths/young men') is a general term for sons of military or marriageable age. Jesse's answer *od sha'ar haqqatan* ('there still remains the smallest/youngest') uses *sha'ar* ('to remain, be left over') — David is literally the leftover son. The participle *ro'eh batson* ('tending the sheep') establishes David's occupation as a shepherd, which becomes theologically loaded throughout his story. Samuel's command *lo-nassov* ('we will not go around' or 'we will not recline [at the meal]') may mean either 'we will not sit in a circle for the sacrificial meal' or 'we will not proceed' — either way, everything stops until David arrives.
12. The adjective *admoni* ('ruddy, reddish') describes a reddish complexion or reddish hair — the same word describes Esau (Genesis 25:25). The phrase *yefeh einayim* ('beautiful of eyes') and *tov ro'i* ('good of appearance, handsome to look at') describe David's physical attractiveness. The irony is potent: after God has just declared that he does not look at outward appearance (v7), the narrator lavishes attention on David's looks. The text does not resolve this tension — David is both handsome and chosen for his heart. God's command *qum meshachehu* ('arise, anoint him') uses the imperative with urgency. The phrase *ki-zeh hu* ('for this is he') is strikingly brief and absolute — no explanation, no criteria listed, just divine identification.
13. The phrase *qeren hashemen* ('the horn of oil') refers to the ram's horn container holding the sacred anointing oil. The verb *vayyimshach* ('he anointed') is the *Qal* of *mashach* — the act that gives David the status of *mashiach* ('anointed one'). The phrase *beqerev echav* ('in the midst of his brothers') means the anointing was witnessed by the family, though its full significance may not have been understood by them. The verb *vatitslach* ('rushed upon') from *ts-l-ch* describes violent, sudden onset of the Spirit — the same word used for the Spirit coming on Samson (Judges 14:6) and on Saul (1 Samuel 10:6, 11:6). The phrase *mehayyom hahu vama'lah* ('from that day and upward') indicates permanent duration — unlike the episodic Spirit-empowerment of the judges. Samuel's departure to Ramah (*haRamatah*, with directional *he*) closes the anointing scene abruptly.
14. The verb *sarah* ('departed, turned aside') from *s-w-r* indicates the Spirit's active withdrawal — it did not fade but left. The preposition *me'im* ('from with') suggests the Spirit had been dwelling alongside Saul and has now removed itself. The verb *bi'attattu* ('terrified/tormented him') from the root *b-'-t* appears in the *Piel* intensive, indicating repeated or intense action — this is ongoing torment, not a single episode. The phrase *ruach ra'ah* ('evil/harmful spirit') uses *ra'ah*, which can mean morally evil, harmful, injurious, or calamitous. The phrase *me'et YHWH* ('from the LORD') uses the preposition *me'et* indicating origin or source — the spirit comes from God's own presence or by God's own sending. The Septuagint translates

this as *pneuma poneron para kuriou* ('an evil spirit from the Lord'), preserving the divine source without softening it.

15. The servants use *ruach Elohim ra'ah* ('a harmful spirit of God') rather than *ruach YHWH ra'ah* — switching from the covenant name YHWH (used by the narrator in v14) to the generic Elohim ('God'). This may reflect the servants' outsider perspective: they observe the phenomenon but use the general term for deity rather than Israel's covenant name. The participle *meva'ittekha* ('is terrifying you') from *b-'-t* in the Piel indicates ongoing, visible symptoms — the servants can see that Saul is being tormented. They diagnose the cause as divine, which presupposes a worldview where spiritual affliction is recognized as coming from God. Their willingness to name it openly to the king suggests the symptoms are severe and undeniable.
16. The phrase *yode'a menaggen bakkinnor* ('one who knows how to play the lyre') describes musical competence. The *kinnor* is a stringed instrument — not a harp in the modern sense but a lyre, a smaller instrument held in the arms and plucked. The verb *menaggen* ('to play a stringed instrument') from *n-g-n* appears throughout the David narratives. The servants' proposal assumes that music can counteract spiritual affliction — a belief attested in ancient Near Eastern therapeutic texts. The phrase *vetov lakh* ('and it will be good for you') promises relief, using the simple adjective *tov* ('good') for wellbeing. The servants' prescription — music as therapy for divine affliction — creates the narrative mechanism by which David enters Saul's court.
17. The verb *re'u* ('see, look for') from *r-'-h* is ironic given the chapter's emphasis on seeing: Saul tells his servants to 'see' a musician for him, while God has told Samuel that divine seeing operates on entirely different criteria (v7). The participle *metiv lenaggen* ('one who excels at playing') uses the Hiphil of *y-t-v* ('to make good, to do well') with the infinitive of *n-g-n* ('to play') — literally 'one who makes playing good,' i.e., a skilled musician. Saul's command is simple and direct, with no awareness that the musician who will be brought is the very person anointed to replace him.
18. The phrase *gibbor chayil* ('mighty man of valor') is a military-social title denoting both fighting ability and social standing. The phrase *ish milchamah* ('man of war') indicates combat experience or readiness — surprising for a youth but possibly reflecting David's known courage. *Nevon davar* ('discerning of word/matter') can mean either 'prudent in affairs/matters' or 'articulate in speech' — both senses may be intended. *Ish to'ar* ('man of form') describes physical attractiveness. The climactic phrase *vaYHWH immo* ('and the LORD is with him') is the narrator's theological assessment placed on a servant's lips — the most important credential, saved for last. This phrase will become a refrain in David's story (18:12, 14, 28).
19. Saul sends *mal'akhim* ('messengers') — a formal, royal summons, not a casual request. The identification *asher batson* ('who is with the sheep') reduces David to his current occupation: the shepherd boy. This is how Saul understands David — a talented musician who tends sheep. The dramatic irony is severe: the king is summoning his own replacement, identifying him by the very occupation (shepherd) that will become the metaphor for ideal kingship in Israel. David is named by name here for the first time in Saul's mouth.
20. Jesse sends gifts with David — a donkey-load of bread (*chamor lechem*, literally 'a donkey of bread,' meaning a donkey's load), a skin of wine (*no'd yayin*), and a young goat (*gedi izzim*). These are tribute gifts appropriate from a subject to a king: sustenance provisions that acknowledge Saul's authority and express gratitude for the honor of the summons. The quantity is modest — Jesse is not wealthy. The gifts also function as the social protocol for placing one's son in royal service: you do not send your son empty-handed to the king.
21. The phrase *vayya'amod lefanav* ('he stood before him') is the standard idiom for entering someone's service or standing in attendance — it indicates a formal relationship of service, not a casual visit. The verb *vayye'ehavehu* ('he loved him') from *'-h-v* with the adverb *me'od* ('greatly, deeply') describes intense personal affection. This love — Saul's genuine attachment to David — makes the later hatred and jealousy all the more tragic. The phrase *nose' kelim* ('bearer of weapons/equipment') designates David as Saul's personal armor-bearer, a position of close physical proximity and trust. The armor-bearer carried the king's weapons and fought alongside him. David's first role in Saul's household is thus both intimate and military.
22. The phrase *ya'amod-na David lefanai* ('let David stand before me') is a formal request to retain David permanently in royal service — Saul is asking Jesse's permission to keep his son at court. The phrase *matsa chen be'ainai* ('he has found favor in my eyes') is a standard idiom for gaining someone's approval and goodwill. The same phrase is used of Noah before God (Genesis 6:8), of Joseph before Potiphar (Genesis 39:4), and of Ruth before Boaz (Ruth 2:10). Saul's use of it here indicates genuine warmth and satisfaction with David. The irony is layered: David has found favor in Saul's eyes, but God has already looked past eyes to the heart (v7).
23. The construction *vehayah biheyot* ('and it would happen when') indicates repeated, habitual action — this was a regular occurrence, not a one-time event. The phrase *ruach Elohim* ('spirit of God') appears here without *ra'ah* ('harmful'), though the context makes clear this is the tormenting spirit. David takes *et-hakkinnor* ('the lyre') and *veniggen beyado* ('played with his hand'). The verb *veravach* ('he found relief') from *r-v-ch* means literally 'it became wide/spacious for him' — the opposite of the constriction of anguish. It describes a psychological opening, a release of pressure. The phrase *vetov lo* ('and it was good for him') echoes the servants' prediction in verse 16. The closing phrase *vesarah me'alav ruach hara'ah* ('and the harmful spirit turned aside from upon him') uses the same verb *sarah* ('departed') from verse 14, creating a literary bracket: the Spirit of the LORD *sarah* from Saul, and now the harmful spirit *sarah* from Saul when David plays.

17

Summary: *The Philistines and Israelites gather for battle in the Valley of Elah, but the contest narrows to a single challenge: Goliath, a massive Philistine warrior, demands a representative combat — one man against one man. For forty days Israel's army cowers in fear. Young David, a shepherd sent by his father to bring food to his brothers, hears the giant's taunts and is outraged that an uncircumcised Philistine dares defy the battle lines of the living God. Refusing Saul's armor, David goes out with a staff, five smooth stones, and a sling. He declares that the battle belongs to the LORD and that God will deliver Goliath into his hand — not by sword or spear but by the name of the LORD of Armies. A single stone from David's sling strikes Goliath in the forehead and the giant falls face-down. David takes Goliath's own sword and cuts off his head. The Philistines flee, and Israel pursues them to the gates of Ekron.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the longest chapter in 1 Samuel and one of the most narratively detailed battle accounts in the Hebrew Bible. The Hebrew text constructs the scene with extraordinary literary precision. Goliath is introduced as ish ha-benayim — literally 'a man of the between,' the one who stands in the no-man's-land between the two armies. This term appears only here in the Hebrew Bible and designates a champion fighter who represents his entire nation. The narrative deliberately slows down to catalogue Goliath's armor piece by piece (helmet, coat of mail, greaves, javelin, spear) using weights and measurements, creating a sense of overwhelming material power. David's speech in verses 45-47 is the theological center of the entire chapter — arguably of the entire David narrative. He reframes the contest from a military clash to a demonstration of divine sovereignty: 'You come against me with sword and spear and javelin, but I come against you in the name of the LORD of Armies.' The phrase shem YHWH Tseva'ot ('the name of the LORD of Armies') reduces all of Goliath's catalogued weaponry to irrelevance. The chapter also features a striking textual variant: the Masoretic Text gives Goliath's height as six cubits and a span (approximately 9 feet 9 inches), while the Septuagint and a Dead Sea Scroll fragment (4QSam-a) read four cubits and a span (approximately 6 feet 9 inches). Both traditions are ancient, and the discrepancy raises important questions about the transmission of the text.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter presents several well-known difficulties. First, the height variant: the MT reads shesh ammot va-zaret ('six cubits and a span') while the LXX and 4QSam-a read 'four cubits and a span.' The shorter reading may be older, and the taller figure may represent a later scribal amplification — or the MT may preserve the original and the shorter reading may be a rationalization. We render the MT reading but note the variant. Second, the end of the chapter (verses 55-58) has Saul asking whose son David is, which seems to contradict chapter 16 where Saul already knows David as his personal musician and armor-bearer. Various explanations exist: Saul may be asking about David's family status for the promised reward (marriage into the royal family requires knowing the father's house), or these may represent different literary sources woven together. We render the text as it stands and note the tension. Third, the verb charaf ('to defy, to taunt, to reproach') recurs throughout the chapter and is difficult to capture with a single English word — it carries overtones of shaming, exposing to disgrace, and verbal assault. We vary the rendering based on context while noting the Hebrew consistency.*

Connections: *The champion-combat motif (representative warfare where one fighter decides the outcome for both armies) appears in ancient Near Eastern literature and has parallels in the Iliad and Mesopotamian texts, but in the Hebrew Bible it is unique to this passage. David's declaration that God 'does not save by sword and spear' (verse 47) echoes the theology of holy war found in Deuteronomy 20:1-4 and anticipates the repeated theme in Samuel-Kings that military hardware is not the basis of divine deliverance (see also 2 Kings 6:16-17). The Valley of Elah (emeq ha-elah, 'valley of the terebinth') becomes a geographical marker in Israel's memory — it is the place where God's power was demonstrated through human weakness. David's selection of five smooth stones from the wadi has generated extensive commentary; some connect the five stones to Goliath and his four brothers mentioned in 2 Samuel 21:15-22. The phrase 'the battle belongs to the LORD' (la-YHWH ha-milchamah, verse 47) will echo through Israel's military theology and appears in modified form in 2 Chronicles 20:15 ('the battle is not yours but God's'). David bringing Goliath's head to Jerusalem (verse 54) is geographically anachronistic — Jerusalem is still Jebusite at this point (it falls to David in 2 Samuel 5) — which may indicate either editorial updating or David storing it there later.*

¹The Philistines gathered their forces for war. They assembled at Sokoh, which belongs to Judah, and camped between Sokoh and Azekah, at Ephes-dammim. ²Saul and the men of Israel gathered and camped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up their battle lines to face the Philistines. ³The Philistines stood on the hill on one side, and Israel stood on the hill on the other side, with the valley between them. ⁴A man-of-the-between came out from the Philistine camp — his name was Goliath, from Gath. His height was six cubits and a span. ⁵He had a bronze helmet on his head, and he wore a coat of scaled armor. The weight of the armor coat was five thousand shekels of bronze. ⁶He had bronze greaves on his legs and a bronze javelin slung between his shoulders. ⁷The shaft of his spear was like a weaver's beam, and the iron head of his spear weighed six hundred shekels. A shield-bearer walked ahead of him. ⁸He stood and shouted to the battle lines of Israel, saying to them, "Why do you come out to form a battle line? Am I not the Philistine, and you — servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves and let him come down to me. ⁹If he can fight me and strike me down, then we will become your servants. But if I overpower him and strike him down, then you will become our servants and serve us." ¹⁰The Philistine said, "I have taunted the battle lines of Israel this day! Give me a man so we can fight each other!" ¹¹When Saul and all Israel heard these words from the Philistine, they were shattered and deeply afraid. ¹²Now David was the son of an Ephrathite from Bethlehem in Judah named Jesse, who had eight sons. In the days of Saul, the man was old, advanced in years among men. ¹³Jesse's three oldest sons had gone to follow Saul into the war. The names of the three sons who went to the war were Eliab the firstborn, Abinadab his second, and Shammah the third. ¹⁴David was the youngest. The three oldest had followed Saul. ¹⁵David would go back and forth from attending Saul to shepherding his father's flock at Bethlehem. ¹⁶The Philistine came forward morning and evening and took his stand for forty days. ¹⁷Jesse said to his son David, "Take this ephah of roasted grain and these ten loaves for your brothers, and hurry to the camp to your brothers. ¹⁸Bring these ten cuts of cheese to the commander of the thousand. Check on your brothers' welfare and bring back a token from them." ¹⁹Saul and they and all the men of Israel were in the Valley of Elah, facing the Philistines in battle. ²⁰David rose early in the morning, left the flock with a watchman, loaded up, and went as Jesse had commanded him. He reached the encampment just as the army was going out to the battle line, shouting the war cry. ²¹Israel and the Philistines drew up battle line facing battle line. ²²David left his supplies with the baggage keeper and ran to the battle line. He went and greeted his brothers, asking about their welfare. ²³While he was speaking with them, the man-of-the-between was coming up — Goliath the Philistine, from Gath — out of the Philistine battle lines. He spoke the same words as before, and David heard. ²⁴Every man of Israel, when they saw the man, fled from his presence and were deeply afraid. ²⁵The men of Israel said, "Do you see this man who keeps coming up? He comes up to taunt Israel. The man who strikes him down — the king will make him very rich, will give him his daughter, and will make his father's house tax-free in Israel." ²⁶David spoke to the men standing near him, saying, "What will be done for the man who strikes down this Philistine and removes the disgrace from Israel? For who is this uncircumcised Philistine, that he should taunt the battle lines of the living God?" ²⁷The people answered him the same way, saying, "This is what will be done for the man who strikes him down." ²⁸Eliab his oldest brother heard him speaking to the men, and Eliab's anger burned against David. He said, "Why did you come down here? And with whom did you leave those few sheep in the wilderness? I know your arrogance and the wickedness of your heart — you came down to watch the battle!" ²⁹David said, "What have I done now? Can't I even ask a question?" ³⁰He turned away from him to someone else and asked the same thing, and the people gave him the same answer as before. ³¹When the words David had spoken were heard, they reported them to Saul, and he sent for him. ³²David said to Saul, "Let no man's heart fall on account of him. Your servant will go and fight this Philistine." ³³Saul said to David, "You cannot go against this Philistine to fight him. You are just a boy, and he has been a man of war since his youth." ³⁴David said to Saul, "Your servant has been shepherding his father's flock. When a lion came — or a bear — and carried off a sheep from the flock, ³⁵I went out after it, struck it, and rescued the sheep from its mouth. When it rose against me, I grabbed it by the jaw and struck it dead. ³⁶Your servant has struck down both the lion and the bear, and this uncircumcised Philistine will be like one of them — because he has taunted the battle lines of the living God." ³⁷David said, "The LORD who rescued me from the paw of the lion and from the paw of the bear — he will rescue me from the hand of this Philistine." Saul said to David, "Go, and may the LORD be with you." ³⁸Saul dressed David in his own garments, placed a bronze helmet on his head, and put a coat of armor on him. ³⁹David strapped the sword over the garments and tried

to walk, but he could not — he had never tested them. David said to Saul, "I cannot go in these. I have not tested them." And David removed them. ⁴⁰He took his staff in his hand, chose five smooth stones from the wadi, and put them in his shepherd's pouch — in the bag — with his sling in his hand. Then he approached the Philistine. ⁴¹The Philistine advanced, coming closer and closer to David, with the shield-bearer ahead of him. ⁴²The Philistine looked and saw David, and he despised him — for he was just a youth, ruddy and handsome in appearance. ⁴³The Philistine said to David, "Am I a dog, that you come at me with sticks?" And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. ⁴⁴The Philistine said to David, "Come here to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the sky and the beasts of the field." ⁴⁵David said to the Philistine, "You come against me with sword and spear and javelin, but I come against you in the name of the LORD of Armies — the God of the battle lines of Israel, whom you have taunted. ⁴⁶This very day the LORD will deliver you into my hand. I will strike you down and cut your head from your body. I will give the corpses of the Philistine camp this day to the birds of the sky and the wild animals of the earth — so that all the earth will know that there is a God in Israel, ⁴⁷and all this assembly will know that the LORD does not save by sword and spear. For the battle belongs to the LORD, and he will give you into our hands." ⁴⁸When the Philistine rose and advanced to meet David, David ran quickly toward the battle line to meet the Philistine. ⁴⁹David reached his hand into the bag, took out a stone, slung it, and struck the Philistine on the forehead. The stone sank into his forehead, and he fell face-down to the ground. ⁵⁰David overpowered the Philistine with the sling and the stone — he struck the Philistine and killed him. There was no sword in David's hand. ⁵¹David ran and stood over the Philistine, took his sword, drew it from its sheath, finished him off, and cut off his head with it. When the Philistines saw that their champion was dead, they fled. ⁵²The men of Israel and Judah rose up, shouted the war cry, and pursued the Philistines all the way to the entrance of Gath and to the gates of Ekron. Philistine dead fell along the road to Shaaraim, all the way to Gath and to Ekron. ⁵³The Israelites returned from their hot pursuit of the Philistines and plundered their camp. ⁵⁴David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem, but he put his weapons in his own tent. ⁵⁵When Saul saw David going out to face the Philistine, he said to Abner, the commander of the army, "Whose son is this young man, Abner?" Abner said, "As your life endures, O king, I do not know." ⁵⁶The king said, "Find out whose son this young man is." ⁵⁷When David returned from striking down the Philistine, Abner took him and brought him before Saul — with the head of the Philistine in his hand. ⁵⁸Saul said to him, "Whose son are you, young man?" David answered, "The son of your servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-ya'asfu* ('they gathered') is repeated twice in this verse — first for the gathering of the army camps (*machaneihem*), then for the assembly at the specific location. *Sokoh* (*Sokho*) was a fortified town in the Shephelah, the low hill country between the coastal plain and the Judean highlands. The name *Ephes-dammim* (*efes dammim*) means 'boundary of blood' or 'end of blood' — an ominous place name that foreshadows the violence to come. The Philistine advance into Judean territory indicates an aggressive incursion, not a border skirmish.
2. The Valley of Elah (*emeq ha-elah*) means 'the valley of the terebinth tree,' named for the large oaks or terebinths that grew there. The verb *va-ya'arkhu* ('they arranged, drew up') comes from the root *arekh*, which means to set in order or arrange — a military term for forming ranks. The same root gives us *ma'arakhah* ('battle line, array'), which will become a key word in this chapter. The geography places the two armies on opposing ridges with the valley between them — a natural setting for the champion combat that follows.
3. The Hebrew draws the scene with geometric precision: *omedim el ha-har mi-zeh* ('standing toward the hill from this side') is repeated for both armies, with *ve-ha-gay beineihem* ('and the valley between them') as the dividing line. The word *gay* ('valley, ravine') is distinct from *emeq* ('broad valley') used in verse 2 — the *gay* is the narrow ravine or wadi at the bottom between the two ridges. This topography creates a natural arena: neither side wants to descend into the valley to attack uphill. The stalemate demands a different kind of resolution.
4. The term *ish ha-benayim* appears only here and in verse 23 in the Hebrew Bible. Standard translations render it 'champion,' which loses the spatial and conceptual force of the Hebrew. The *benayim* ('between') is the same word used in verse 3 for the valley 'between them' (*beineihem*). Goliath is literally the man who inhabits the gap between the two armies. We render it with a hyphenated phrase to preserve the Hebrew's strangeness.
4. Goliath's height in the Masoretic Text is *shesh ammot va-zaret* ('six cubits and a span'), approximately 9 feet 9 inches using the standard cubit of about 18 inches plus a span of about 9 inches. However, the Septuagint (LXX) and the Dead Sea Scroll fragment 4QSam-a read 'four cubits and a span' (approximately 6 feet 9 inches). The shorter reading may be the earlier tradition — a man of 6'9" would still be extraordinarily tall in the ancient world and would not require supernatural explanation. The taller reading may reflect later amplification to heighten the miracle. We follow the MT but note the variant as textually significant.

5. The armor catalogue begins here and extends through verse 7, building an overwhelming picture of military hardware. The shiryon qasqassim ('armor of scales') describes overlapping metal plates sewn onto a garment, like fish scales — the word qasqassim is the same word used for fish scales in Leviticus 11:9. Five thousand shekels of bronze equals approximately 125 pounds (57 kg). The narrator is not simply describing equipment; he is constructing a portrait of material power that will be rendered irrelevant by a shepherd's sling.
6. The mitschat nechoshet ('bronze greaves') are shin guards — protective armor for the lower legs. The kidon nechoshet ('bronze javelin') carried bein ketefav ('between his shoulders') was slung across his back. The word kidon is distinct from chanit ('spear') mentioned in the next verse; it refers to a shorter throwing weapon or scimitar-type javelin. The repetition of nechoshet ('bronze') in every piece of equipment (helmet, armor, greaves, javelin) creates a literary effect — Goliath is encased in metal from head to foot.
7. The comparison ki-menor orgim ('like a weaver's beam') refers to the horizontal bar of a loom — a thick, heavy wooden rod. The spearhead alone weighed six hundred shekels of iron, approximately 15 pounds (7 kg). The shift from bronze (nechoshet) to iron (barzel) for the spearhead is significant: iron was the superior military technology of the Philistines, who controlled iron-working (1 Samuel 13:19-22). The shield-bearer (nosei ha-tsinnah) carried the large body-shield (tsinnah), distinct from the smaller Magen. Goliath enters the scene with a personal entourage — he does not even carry his own shield.
8. Goliath's opening taunt is carefully constructed. He calls himself ha-Pelishti ('the Philistine') — with the definite article, as if he alone embodies the entire nation. He reduces Israel to avadim le-Sha'ul ('servants of Saul'), implying they are slaves rather than warriors. The command beru lakhem ish ('choose for yourselves a man') issues the formal challenge of representative combat. The verb yered ('let him come down') reflects the topography — the Israelites are on the ridge and would have to descend into the valley to face him.
9. The terms of the challenge are presented in a perfect chiasmic structure: if he kills me, we serve you / if I kill him, you serve us. The verb hikani ('strike me') and hikkitiv ('strike him') use the same root nakah ('to strike'). The stakes are national servitude — avadim ('servants, slaves'). Goliath frames the combat as a winner-take-all contest that decides the political fate of both peoples. This was a recognized form of warfare in the ancient Near East, designed to avoid the mass casualties of a full battle.
10. The verb cherafti ('I have taunted, defied') is from the root charaf, which carries a weight far heavier than simple challenge — it means to expose to shame, to reproach, to strip of honor. When Goliath charaf the battle lines of Israel, he is not merely challenging them to fight; he is publicly shaming them, declaring them unworthy of their God and their national identity. This verb will recur throughout the chapter (vv. 25, 26, 36, 45) and becomes the theological trigger for David's response: the shame of Israel's God is at stake.
11. The verb va-yechatu ('they were shattered, dismayed') comes from the root chatat, which means to be broken, shattered, terrified. It is stronger than ordinary fear — it describes a collapse of morale, a breaking of the will. Paired with va-yir'u me'od ('and they feared greatly'), the verse presents Israel's response as both psychological collapse (chatat) and visceral terror (yare'). Saul is named specifically — the tallest man in Israel (9:2), the king chosen for battle, is as paralyzed as the rest.
12. The narrative reintroduces David with a formal genealogical notice, as if the reader has not yet met him — a feature that has led many scholars to see chapter 17 as drawing from a different source than chapter 16. The term Efrati ('Ephrathite') here refers to the clan of Ephrath associated with Bethlehem (see Ruth 4:11, Micah 5:1), not to the tribe of Ephraim as in 1:1. Jesse is described as zaken ba ba-anashim ('old, coming among men'), an idiom meaning advanced in age. The number eight sons conflicts with 1 Chronicles 2:13-16, which lists seven — a minor textual discrepancy.
13. The narrative carefully names the three brothers who are at the front. Eliab (Eli'av, 'my God is father') is the firstborn whom Samuel initially thought was God's chosen in 16:6. Abinadab (Avinadav, 'my father is generous') and Shammah (Shammah, possibly 'desolation' or 'astonishment') are second and third. The repetition of 'three' — sheloshet benei Yishai ha-gedolim ('the three great/eldest sons of Jesse') — emphasizes that all the fighting-age sons are already at the battle. David, the youngest, is conspicuously absent from the military camp.
14. The word ha-qatan ('the small one, the youngest') defines David's position: he is the runt, the afterthought, the one left behind. The contrast between the three gedolim ('great ones, eldest') who follow the king and the one qatan who stays home is deliberate — the narrative is setting up the reversal where the smallest and least likely will accomplish what the warriors cannot.
15. The phrase holekh va-shav me'al Sha'ul ('going and returning from upon Saul') describes a pattern of movement — David oscillates between two worlds, the royal court and the pastoral field. The verb lir'ot ('to shepherd') places David back in his primary role: he is a shepherd, not a soldier. This verse bridges the tension between chapter 16 (where David serves Saul) and the narrative here (where he seems unknown) — the text suggests David's court service was intermittent, not permanent.
16. The verb va-yityatsev ('he stationed himself, took his stand') conveys deliberate, defiant positioning — Goliath plants himself in the open as a provocation. The phrase hashkem ve-ha'arev ('early and late,' literally 'the making-early and the making-evening') means he came at both ends of the day, twice daily. The number forty (arba'im) is loaded in Hebrew narrative — it is the number of testing (forty days of flood, forty years in the wilderness, forty days on Sinai). Goliath's forty-day stand is a period of testing for Israel's faith.
17. Jesse's instructions are mundane — a father sending food to his sons at the front. The qali ('roasted grain') was parched wheat or barley, a standard field ration. An ephah is approximately 22 liters (about 3/5 of a bushel). The verb haretz ('hurry, run') conveys urgency. The ordinary domesticity of this errand — grain and bread for brothers — sets up the extraordinary confrontation that follows. God's providence operates through a lunch delivery.

18. The charitsei he-chalav ('cuts of milk') are cheese — literally 'sliced milk products.' The ten cheeses are not for the brothers but for the sar ha-elef ('commander of the thousand'), likely a gift to maintain the officer's goodwill toward Jesse's sons. The verb tifqod ('you shall attend to, check on') means to visit and assess — Jesse wants a report on his sons' condition. The arubbatam ('their pledge, their token') is obscure; it may refer to a sign or proof of their well-being, or possibly something they had pledged or left as security.
19. The participle nilchamim ('fighting') is ironic — the narrative has just told us that for forty days no actual fighting has taken place. The Hebrew may indicate their posture (drawn up for battle) rather than active combat. The phrase 'Saul and they' (ve-Sha'ul ve-hemmah) has an oddly disjointed quality, as if the narrator is listing participants in a conflict that is all stance and no substance.
20. The verb va-yitosh ('he abandoned, left') is a strong word — David does not gently hand off the sheep but drops them with a guard and goes. The timing is providential: he arrives at ha-ma'galah ('the wagon circle, the encampment') precisely as the army is marching out to form ranks. The verb here'u ('they shouted') is the battle cry — the teruah, the war shout that was both a military signal and a liturgical act (see Numbers 10:9). The army shouts but does not fight.
21. The Hebrew is compact and vivid: ma'arakhah liqra't ma'arakhah ('array to meet array, line facing line'). The repetition of ma'arakhah creates a visual mirror — two armies standing as reflections of each other across the valley. The verb va-ta'arokh ('they arranged') comes from the same root as ma'arakhah, reinforcing the sense of ordered military formation.
22. David deposits the kelim ('vessels, supplies, equipment') with the shomer ha-kelim ('keeper of the equipment') — a designated supply guard. Then he runs (va-yarots) — the same urgency Jesse commanded in verse 17. The verb va-yish'al ('he asked') is from the root sha'al ('to ask'), the wordplay root that connects to both Samuel and Saul throughout 1 Samuel. He asks le-shalom ('concerning peace/welfare'), fulfilling his father's instruction from verse 18.
23. The timing is again providential: ve-hu medabber immam ('while he was speaking with them') — at the precise moment David is present, Goliath emerges. The verb oleh ('coming up, ascending') suggests Goliath is climbing from the valley floor toward the Israelite position. The narrator repeats the full identification — ish ha-benayim, Goliath the Philistine, from Gath — as if reintroducing him for David's benefit. The phrase va-yishma David ('and David heard') is the turning point of the chapter: what Israel had heard with terror (v. 11), David hears with something else entirely.
24. The verb va-yanusu ('they fled') is stark — trained soldiers run away at the sight of one man. The phrase mi-panav ('from his face, from his presence') indicates they cannot even bear to be near him. The narrator says kol ish Yisra'el ('every man of Israel') — the fear is universal. This sets up the contrast with David, who alone does not flee and does not fear. The verse functions as a lens through which to measure David's response.
25. The soldiers' speech reveals the triple reward Saul has offered: osher gadol ('great wealth'), marriage to the king's daughter (et bitto yitten lo, 'his daughter he will give him'), and tax exemption for the family (beit aviv ya'aseh chofshi, 'his father's house he will make free'). The word chofshi ('free') denotes freedom from royal obligations — corvée labor, military levies, and taxes. The verb lecharef ('to taunt, to defy') appears again — the soldiers correctly identify Goliath's purpose. They know the problem but cannot act on it. The rewards are extraordinary, yet no one steps forward.
26. David's question reframes the entire situation. The soldiers focused on the reward (v. 25); David focuses on the disgrace (cherpah) and the identity of the challenger. His use of arel ('uncircumcised') is a covenant term — circumcision marks membership in God's people (Genesis 17), and Goliath's uncircumcision places him outside the covenant and therefore outside the sphere of divine protection. The phrase ma'arkhot Elohim chayyim ('battle lines of the living God') is David's interpretive key: these are not merely Israel's battle lines but God's. To taunt them is to taunt God.
26. The term Elohim chayyim ('living God') appears relatively rarely in the Hebrew Bible and always in contexts of confrontation with human presumption or pagan power (see Deuteronomy 5:26, Joshua 3:10, 2 Kings 19:4). The 'living' God is the one who acts — in contrast to idols who have mouths but do not speak, eyes but do not see (Psalm 115:4-7).
27. The people repeat the promised reward — ka-davar ha-zeh ('according to this word') refers back to the triple reward of verse 25. Their answer confirms the offer but also underlines that no one has yet claimed it. The verb yakkenu ('who strikes him') uses the same root nakah that appeared in Goliath's own challenge (v. 9). Everyone talks about striking; no one acts.
28. Eliab's anger (va-yichar af, 'his nose burned') erupts immediately. His accusations are three: David has abandoned his responsibilities (the sheep), he is driven by zedon ('arrogance, presumption, insolence'), and he has a ra lev ('wicked heart'). The phrase me'at ha-tson ha-hennah ('those few sheep over there') is dripping with contempt — Eliab minimizes David's role to make him seem insignificant. The irony is sharp: Eliab, who is afraid to face Goliath, accuses David of coming merely to spectate. Eliab's resentment may also echo 16:6-13, where he was passed over and David was chosen.
28. The accusation of zedon ('arrogance') is the same word used for willful, high-handed sin in Numbers 15:30 and Deuteronomy 17:12. Eliab is not just calling David proud — he is accusing him of rebellious presumption against proper authority.
29. David's response is brief and composed: meh asiti attah ('what have I done now?'). The phrase halo davar hu is ambiguous and has been rendered many ways. It could mean 'Is it not just a word?' (I was merely speaking), 'Is there not a matter/cause?' (is there not reason for this?), or 'Is it not a thing?' (isn't this worth talking about?). The root davar means both 'word' and 'matter.' We render it as a question about David's right to speak, since Eliab's accusation was about David talking to the men.
30. The verb va-yissov ('he turned') shows David physically rotating away from Eliab's anger and repeating his question to others. He is not deterred by his brother's rebuke. The phrase ka-davar ha-zeh ('according to this word') and ka-davar ha-rishon ('according to the first word') indicate that David persists and the crowd consistently confirms the reward. David is not asking for information — he is building momentum.

31. David's words travel through the camp by oral report — *va-yishma'u ha-devarim* ('the words were heard'), using a passive construction that suggests the news spread organically. The verb *va-yaggidu* ('they reported, they told') indicates formal communication to the king. Saul's response — *va-yiqqachehu* ('he took him, he sent for him') — is immediate. David's theology has reached the ear of the king.
32. David's declaration is direct and bold: *al yippol lev adam alav* ('let not a man's heart fall upon him'). The verb *nippol* ('fall') is the same root that will describe Goliath falling (v. 49) — the word that now describes Israel's collapsing courage will soon describe the giant's collapse. David calls himself *avdekha* ('your servant'), adopting the formal posture of a subject before the king. The contrast between the young shepherd volunteering and the entire army cowering is the narrative's sharpest edge.
33. Saul's objection is logical: *ki na'ar attah* ('for you are a youth') versus *ve-hu ish milchamah minne'urav* ('and he is a man of war from his youth'). The word *na'ar* can mean boy, youth, or young man — it implies inexperience and low status. The irony is that Goliath has been a professional warrior since he himself was a *na'ar*, while David is still in that stage. Saul measures by military calculus: age, training, experience. David will measure by a different standard entirely.
34. David's resume is pastoral, not military. The phrase *ro'eh hayah avdekha le-aviv ba-tson* ('your servant has been a shepherd for his father among the flock') establishes his credentials through experience in the wild, not in the barracks. The Hebrew *u-va ha-ari ve-et ha-dov* ('and the lion came and the bear') uses the definite article — 'the lion' and 'the bear' — suggesting specific, remembered encounters, not hypothetical ones. The verb *nasa* ('carried off') indicates the predator snatching a *seh* ('sheep or goat, a small animal') from the flock.
35. The verbs come in rapid sequence: *yatsati* ('I went out'), *hikkitiv* ('I struck it'), *hitsalti* ('I rescued'), *hechezaqti* ('I seized'), *hikkitiv* ('I struck it'), *hamittiv* ('I killed it'). This is not boasting but a recitation of facts. The word *zeqano* ('its beard/jaw') when applied to a lion likely means the mane or the jaw area — the most dangerous place to grab a predator. David's willingness to pursue, strike, and kill a lion or bear bare-handed establishes a pattern: he does not calculate odds, he acts on responsibility. The sheep were his charge; he defended them.
36. David draws a direct theological line from predator to Philistine: the lion and the bear were threats to his flock; Goliath is a threat to God's flock. The phrase *ke-achad mehem* ('like one of them') equates the human giant with the animal predators — in David's framework, Goliath is not a superhuman threat but another beast menacing the sheep. The reason is stated explicitly: *ki cheref ma'arkhot Elohim chayyim* ('because he has taunted the battle lines of the living God'). This is the second time David uses this exact phrase (see v. 26), establishing it as his theological thesis.
37. David's logic is not reckless courage but theological reasoning: the same God (*hu*, 'he' — emphatic pronoun) who delivered from the lion and the bear will deliver from the Philistine. The verb *hitsil* ('rescue, deliver') is repeated three times — past deliverance is the ground for present confidence. The shift from *mi-yad ha-ari* ('from the paw of the lion,' literally 'from the hand of') to *mi-yad ha-Pelishti* ('from the hand of this Philistine') makes the parallel explicit: animal paw and human hand are equally powerless against God.
37. Saul's response — *lekh va-YHWH yihyeh immakh* ('go, and may the LORD be with you') — is both a commission and a blessing, but it also reveals Saul's abdication. The king who should fight for Israel sends a boy, with a prayer instead of a strategy.
38. The verb *va-yalbbesh* ('he clothed, he dressed') is significant — Saul is not merely equipping David but re-clothing him, imposing his own identity (*maddav*, 'his garments/uniform') on the boy. The *qova nechoshet* ('bronze helmet') and *shiron* ('armor coat') echo the same equipment Goliath wears (vv. 5-6). Saul's solution is to make David a miniature version of Goliath — to fight the enemy's way. The theological point is that David must reject the king's armor to fight in God's way.
39. The verb *va-yo'el* ('he attempted, tried') indicates an actual physical attempt — David tried to move in Saul's armor and found he could not function. The reason given is *lo nissah* ('he had not tested/tried them'). The repetition — *lo nissah* in the narrator's voice, then *lo nissiti* in David's — underscores that this is not about the armor being bad but about it being untested and foreign. The verb *va-yesirem* ('he removed them') is decisive. David strips off the conventional military solution because it does not belong to him. He will fight with what he knows.
40. The inventory of David's equipment is deliberately contrasted with Goliath's arsenal (vv. 5-7): a *maqel* ('staff' — a shepherd's walking stick), *chamishah challuqei avanim* ('five smooth stones' — waterworn, rounded by the stream), a *keli ha-ro'im* ('shepherd's vessel/pouch'), a *yalqut* ('bag, wallet'), and a *qela* ('sling'). The five smooth stones from the *nachal* ('wadi, stream bed') have been shaped not by human craft but by water and time. The sling was a lethal weapon in ancient warfare — Judges 20:16 records Benjaminite slingers who could hit a hair's width target — but in this narrative it reads as pastoral equipment pressed into military service.
40. The number five has generated much discussion. Some connect it to Goliath and his four brothers (2 Samuel 21:15-22); others see it as simply practical preparedness. The verb *va-yivchar* ('he chose') implies careful selection — David does not grab random rocks but selects specific stones, as a warrior would select arrows.
41. The participle construction *holekh ve-qarev* ('going and coming near') conveys continuous, steady advance — Goliath keeps closing the distance. The shield-bearer (*nosei ha-tsinnah*) walks before him, carrying the large defensive shield. The scene is visually imposing: a giant, his personal shield-carrier, and the full weight of Philistine military technology bearing down on a boy with a stick and stones.
42. The verb *va-yivzehu* ('he despised him') is from *bazah* ('to despise, to hold in contempt'). Goliath's contempt has a specific basis: *ki hayah na'ar* ('because he was a youth'), *ve-admoni* ('and ruddy/reddish'), *im yefeh mar'eh* ('with a handsome appearance'). David looks like a beautiful boy, not a warrior. The word *admoni* ('ruddy, reddish') was used to describe David at his anointing (16:12) — his physical beauty, which marked him as God's chosen, now provokes the enemy's scorn. What God sees as chosen, Goliath sees as contemptible.

43. Goliath's question *ha-kelev anokhi* ('Am I a dog?') is an expression of outrage — being treated as an animal is the deepest insult to a warrior's honor. He sees the *maqelot* ('sticks, staffs') and interprets David's approach as an insult: you bring a dog-beating stick to face a champion? The verb *va-yeqallel* ('he cursed') is from *qalal* ('to make light of, to curse') — Goliath invokes his own gods (*be-elohav*, 'by his gods') to place a curse on David. The Philistine deity would likely be Dagon (see 1 Samuel 5:2). The scene sets up the clash of divine names: Goliath curses by his gods, David will come in the name of the LORD of Armies.
44. Goliath's threat follows ancient Near Eastern battle rhetoric: to leave an enemy's body unburied, exposed to scavengers, was the ultimate degradation. The phrase *le-of ha-shamayim u-le-behemot ha-sadeh* ('to the birds of the sky and to the beasts of the field') appears in covenant curse language (Deuteronomy 28:26, Jeremiah 7:33). Goliath unwittingly speaks in covenantal terms, invoking a curse that will boomerang: it is the Philistine dead, not David, who will be left exposed (v. 46).
45. The three weapons — *cherev* ('sword'), *chanit* ('spear'), *kidon* ('javelin') — constitute the full armament of a heavy infantry warrior. Against this David sets a single phrase: *be-shem YHWH Tseva'ot* ('in the name of the LORD of Armies'). The word *shem* ('name') in Hebrew is not merely a label but the full reality, character, and authority of the one named. To come 'in the name of' someone is to come bearing their authority and power. David is not invoking magic; he is declaring allegiance and trust.
45. The title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Armies') was introduced in 1:3 at the beginning of the book. Its appearance here, at the moment of Israel's greatest military crisis, completes a narrative arc: the God first named in the context of a barren woman's prayer now fights through a shepherd boy against a giant. The 'armies' (*tseva'ot*) of God stand against the army of the Philistines.
46. David turns Goliath's own threat (v. 44) back on him with devastating escalation. Goliath threatened David's flesh to the birds; David promises the *peger machaneh Pelishtim* ('corpses of the Philistine camp') — not just Goliath but the entire army. The verb *yesaggerkha* ('he will deliver you, shut you up') uses the root *sagar* ('to close, to deliver'), the same verb used in 1:5-6 for God closing Hannah's womb. God closes and God delivers — the same sovereign hand.
46. The purpose clause *ve-yede'u kol ha-arets ki yesh Elohim le-Yisra'el* ('so that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel') expands the scope from personal combat to universal witness. The battle is not about David's glory but about God's reputation among the nations. The word *yesh* ('there is') is an assertion of existence and presence — there is a God, a real and active God, belonging to Israel.
47. The sentence *ki la-YHWH ha-milchamah* ('for the battle belongs to the LORD') is one of the most important theological statements in the Hebrew Bible. It summarizes the doctrine of holy war: God is the true warrior, and human instruments are secondary. This principle appears in the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:3, 'the LORD is a man of war'), in Deuteronomy's war regulations (20:1-4), and will echo in 2 Chronicles 20:15 ('the battle is not yours but God's').
47. The shift from singular (v. 46, 'I will strike you') to plural (*etkhem*, 'you' plural; *yadenu*, 'our hands') in this verse is significant — David speaks as the representative of all Israel. His singular combat is for the benefit of the collective. The 'our' in 'our hands' includes the whole Israelite army.
48. The contrast in speed is telling: the Philistine *qam va-yelekh va-yiqrav* ('rose and went and drew near') — a measured, heavy advance. David *va-yemaher va-yarots* ('hurried and ran') — explosive speed toward the enemy. The verb *va-yarots* ('he ran') describes David sprinting directly at the giant. While Israel ran away from Goliath (v. 24, *va-yanusu*), David runs toward him. The narrator uses the same root (*ruts*, 'to run') for both movements, creating an exact reversal.
49. The sequence of four verbs without any conjunction except *va-* ('and') creates a staccato rhythm that mirrors the speed of the action. The entire combat — from David reaching into his bag to Goliath hitting the ground — is narrated in a single verse. After forty days of standoff and an elaborate verbal exchange, the actual fight takes seconds.
49. The *mitscho* ('his forehead') is mentioned twice — the narrator emphasizes the precision of the strike. The forehead is the gap in Goliath's armor, the one vulnerability in his otherwise total coverage. Ancient slingers could achieve velocities of over 100 mph with lead or stone projectiles; a smooth stone from a skilled slinger was a lethal weapon, not a toy.
50. This verse is the narrator's summary and theological commentary. The verb *va-yechezaq* ('he overpowered, prevailed') from the root *chazaq* ('to be strong') describes David's victory in terms of strength — but the strength was exerted through a sling and a stone, not through conventional weapons. The final clause is devastating in its simplicity: *ve-cherev ein be-yad David* ('and a sword — there was none in the hand of David'). The narrator drives home the point: no sword. The weapon Goliath wielded, the weapon Saul offered, the weapon every soldier carried — David had none of it. The victory confirms David's theology from verse 47: the LORD does not save by sword and spear.
51. David uses Goliath's own sword (*charbo*, 'his sword') to complete the kill and sever the head. The verb *va-yemottehu* ('he finished him off, he put him to death') indicates Goliath was not yet dead from the stone but was incapacitated — David's sword stroke was the killing blow. The irony is complete: Goliath is killed by his own weapon. The phrase *va-yikhrot bah et rosho* ('he cut off his head with it') is graphic and intentional — the removal of the head is both a military act (proof of kill) and a symbolic reversal of power.
51. The Philistine response is immediate: *va-yanusu* ('they fled'). The word *gibboram* ('their champion, their mighty one') comes from *gibbor* ('mighty warrior, hero'). When the *gibbor* falls, the army's morale collapses. The representative combat has worked exactly as designed — the loss of the one means the loss of all.
52. The army that had fled (v. 24, *va-yanusu*) now rises (*va-yaqumu*), shouts (*va-yari'u*), and pursues (*va-yirdefu*). The reversal is complete. The pursuit extends to the Philistine heartland — Gath (Goliath's own city) and Ekron (a major Philistine center). The word *challelei* ('slain, pierced') indicates

heavy Philistine casualties along the pursuit route. The mention of both 'Israel and Judah' (anshei Yisra'el viYehudah) may reflect the later political division or may simply indicate tribal units fighting together. Shaaraim means 'double gates' — the topography of the Elah valley region.

53. The verb *mi-deloq* ('from pursuing hotly') uses a rare word that implies burning, eager chase — not a casual follow-up but an energetic rout. The verb *va-yashosu* ('they plundered') indicates a thorough stripping of the abandoned Philistine camp. The army that had cowered for forty days now takes the enemy's supplies, weapons, and equipment. The plundering of the camp is the final proof that the Philistine army has been completely broken.
54. This verse raises a well-known geographical difficulty: Jerusalem was still a Jebusite city at this time (it will not be captured by David until 2 Samuel 5:6-9). Several explanations have been proposed: the verse may be an editorial addition written from the perspective of a later time when Jerusalem was the capital; David may have brought the head there later after taking the city; or there may have been an Israelite presence near Jerusalem that the text does not elaborate. The *kelav* ('his weapons/equipment') — Goliath's captured arms — David places in his own tent (*oholo*), keeping them as trophies. Goliath's sword will later appear in the sanctuary at Nob (21:9).
55. This passage (vv. 55-58) has long troubled interpreters because Saul appears not to know David, despite having made him his personal musician and armor-bearer in chapter 16. The question *ben mi zeh ha-na'ar* ('whose son is this youth?') may not be about David's identity but about his family's status — Saul promised his daughter to the champion (v. 25), so he needs to know the father's household for the marriage alliance. Abner's oath *chei nafshekha ha-melekh* ('as your soul/life endures, O king') is a strong asseveration — he genuinely does not know. Alternatively, the two chapters may preserve parallel traditions about how David entered Saul's service.
56. The word *ha-elem* ('the young man, the adolescent') is a different term from *na'ar* used earlier. It comes from the root *alam* ('to be hidden, to be vigorous') and may emphasize youth and obscurity. Saul's command *she'al attah* ('inquire, you') uses the root *sha'al* — the same wordplay root that has threaded through the entire book. The king whose name derives from *sha'al* now asks about the boy who will replace him.
57. The image is vivid and unsettling: David stands before the king holding a severed head. The phrase *ve-rosh ha-Pelishti be-yado* ('and the head of the Philistine in his hand') is placed at the end of the sentence for maximum impact. The verb *me-hakkot* ('from striking') uses the *hiphil* infinitive of *nakah* — the same root that has described every blow in the chapter. Abner fulfills Saul's command by bringing David directly to the throne.
58. The chapter ends not with triumph but with a question and answer about identity — *ben mi attah ha-na'ar* ('whose son are you, young man?'). Saul asks the question that will dominate the rest of the book: who is David? The answer — *ben avdekha Yishai beit ha-Lachmi* ('the son of your servant Jesse the Bethlehemite') — places David in the humblest possible frame. He is the son of a servant, from a small town. Yet this son of a servant has just done what the king and all his army could not. The phrase *beit ha-Lachmi* ('the Bethlehemite') connects David to Bethlehem — the town whose name means 'house of bread' and which will become, in Israel's prophetic tradition, the birthplace of the future messianic king (Micah 5:1).

18

Summary: *After David's victory over Goliath, Jonathan — Saul's own son and heir to the throne — forms a covenant bond with David so deep that the text says Jonathan's soul was 'bound' (niqsherah) to David's soul. Jonathan strips himself of his royal robe, armor, sword, bow, and belt and gives them to David — a symbolic abdication of his claim to the throne. David succeeds in every military mission Saul assigns him, earning the admiration of the people and Saul's own servants. But when the women of Israel greet the returning army with the song 'Saul has struck down his thousands, and David his ten thousands,' Saul's jealousy ignites into murderous rage. An evil spirit from God overwhelms Saul, and he hurls a spear at David twice while David plays the lyre. Saul removes David from his presence by appointing him commander over a thousand — ostensibly a promotion, actually an exile to the front lines. Saul offers his older daughter Merab as a wife, hoping David will die in battle against the Philistines, but ultimately gives her to another man. When Saul learns that his younger daughter Michal loves David, he sees another opportunity to use marriage as a death trap, demanding a bride-price of one hundred Philistine foreskins. David delivers two hundred, and Saul is forced to give Michal as David's wife. The chapter closes with Saul recognizing that the LORD is with David and that Michal loves him, and Saul becomes David's permanent enemy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most extraordinary covenantal acts in the Hebrew Bible.*

Jonathan's giving of his robe (me'il), military equipment, sword, bow, and belt to David is not a casual gift — it is a voluntary renunciation of royal succession. The me'il is the same word used for the priestly robe and for the robe Samuel wore that Saul tore in chapter 15, symbolizing the kingdom being torn from him. Jonathan, who has every human reason to view David as a rival, instead recognizes what God is doing and aligns himself with it at total personal cost. The verb niqsherah ('was bound, was knit') describing Jonathan's soul-attachment to David is the same root (q-sh-r) used elsewhere for conspiracies and binding agreements — this is not mere

friendship but a covenantal fusion of identity. Equally remarkable is the narrator's repeated use of sakal ('to act wisely, to prosper') for David — appearing in verses 5, 14, 15, and 30. The word carries a double meaning: David succeeds because he is wise, and he is wise because God is with him. Saul's tragedy is that he can see God's hand on David clearly (verse 28) and rather than submitting to it, he opposes it — making himself an enemy not just of David but of God's purpose.

Translation Friction: The chapter raises uncomfortable questions about divine agency and human suffering. In verse 10, an 'evil spirit from God' (ruach elohim ra'ah) overwhelms Saul and he attempts to murder David. The text does not soften this — the spirit is explicitly 'from God.' How does this square with the God who patiently warned the people through Samuel in chapter 8? The theological tension is that Saul's madness is both a divine judgment and a psychological deterioration — the spirit exploits what is already in Saul's heart. Saul's jealousy in verse 8 precedes the evil spirit in verse 10; the spirit amplifies what Saul has chosen but did not create it. There is also tension in Saul's manipulation of his daughters. He uses Merab as bait (verse 17), then reneges and gives her to Adriel. He uses Michal's genuine love for David (verse 20) as another trap. The text does not condemn this explicitly — the narrator simply reports it — but the reader is meant to feel the horror of a father weaponizing his own children. The contrast with Jonathan, who freely gives away his royal inheritance, makes Saul's grasping all the more grotesque.

Connections: Jonathan's covenant with David in verses 1-4 connects forward to 2 Samuel 1:26, where David will lament Jonathan's death saying 'your love (ahavah) was more wonderful to me than the love of women,' and to 2 Samuel 9, where David will honor the covenant by caring for Jonathan's crippled son Mephibosheth. The verb niqsherah ('was bound') uses the same root as Genesis 44:30, where Jacob's soul is 'bound up' (qeshurah) with Benjamin's — both describe a love so deep that the death of one would mean the death of the other. The women's song in verse 7 ('Saul has struck his thousands, David his ten thousands') will be remembered and repeated in 1 Samuel 21:11 and 29:5, becoming a political liability that follows David into exile. Saul's spear-throwing in verse 11 inaugurates a pattern that continues through chapters 19 and 20, and the spear itself becomes a symbol of Saul's kingship — he is always pictured with his spear (19:9, 22:6, 26:7), while David refuses to use the spear even when he has the chance to kill Saul with it (26:11). The bride-price of foreskins (verse 25) connects to the broader theme of Philistine uncircumcision — the mark that separates covenant people from non-covenant people — which David invoked in his challenge to Goliath (17:26, 36).

¹When David had finished speaking to Saul, Jonathan's soul became bound to David's soul, and Jonathan loved him as his own life. ²Saul took him into his service that day and would not let him return to his father's house. ³Jonathan and David cut a covenant, because Jonathan loved him as his own life. ⁴Jonathan stripped off the robe he was wearing and gave it to David — along with his military tunic, his sword, his bow, and his belt. ⁵David went out on every mission Saul assigned him and acted with skill. Saul placed him over the fighting men, and it was pleasing in the eyes of all the people — and even in the eyes of Saul's own officials. ⁶As the army returned — after David had struck down the Philistine — women came out from all the cities of Israel, singing and dancing to welcome King Saul, with tambourines, celebration, and three-stringed instruments. ⁷The women sang out to one another as they celebrated: "Saul has struck down his thousands, and David his ten thousands!" ⁸Saul burned with anger. The song was wrong in his eyes, and he said, "They credit David with ten thousands and credit me with only thousands — what is left for him but the kingdom itself?" ⁹Saul watched David with suspicion from that day on. ¹⁰The next day, a harmful spirit from God rushed upon Saul, and he raved inside the house while David played the lyre with his hand as he did every day — and a spear was in Saul's hand. ¹¹Saul hurled the spear, thinking, "I will pin David to the wall." But David dodged away from him — twice. ¹²Saul was afraid of David, because the LORD was with David — and had turned away from Saul. ¹³So Saul removed David from his presence and appointed him commander over a thousand. David went out and came back at the head of the troops. ¹⁴David acted with wisdom in everything he did, and the LORD was with him. ¹⁵When Saul saw that David acted with extraordinary skill, he dreaded him. ¹⁶But all Israel and Judah loved David, because he led them in battle and brought them home safely. ¹⁷Saul said to David, "Here is my older daughter Merab — I will give her to you as a wife. Just be a warrior of valor for me and fight the LORD's battles." For Saul was thinking, "My hand should not be against him; let the Philistines' hand be against him instead." ¹⁸David said to Saul, "Who am I, and what is my family — my father's clan in Israel — that I should become the king's son-in-law?" ¹⁹But when the time came to give Merab, Saul's daughter, to David, she was given instead to Adriel the Meholathite as his wife. ²⁰Now

Michal, Saul's daughter, loved David. When this was reported to Saul, it pleased him. ²¹Saul thought, "I will give her to him, and she will become a trap for him, and the Philistines' hand will be against him." So Saul said to David, "Today, through the second daughter, you can become my son-in-law." ²²Saul commanded his servants, "Speak to David privately and say, 'Look — the king is delighted with you, and all his servants are devoted to you. Now become the king's son-in-law.'" ²³Saul's servants spoke these words directly to David, and David said, "Does it seem like a small thing to you — becoming the king's son-in-law? I am a poor man, of no standing." ²⁴Saul's servants reported back to him, saying, "These are the words David spoke." ²⁵Saul said, "Tell David this: 'The king wants no bride-price — only one hundred Philistine foreskins, to take vengeance on the king's enemies.'" But Saul's calculation was to make David fall at the hands of the Philistines. ²⁶When his servants relayed these terms to David, the idea pleased David — to become the king's son-in-law. And the allotted time had not yet passed. ²⁷David set out with his men and struck down two hundred Philistines. David brought their foreskins and presented the full count to the king, in order to become the king's son-in-law. So Saul gave him his daughter Michal as a wife. ²⁸Saul saw and understood that the LORD was with David, and that Michal his daughter loved him. ²⁹Saul's fear of David only deepened, and Saul became David's enemy for the rest of his days. ³⁰Whenever the Philistine commanders marched out to battle, David acted with greater skill than all of Saul's other officers — and his reputation became very great.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *niqsherah benepesh David* ('was bound to the soul of David') uses the Niphal (passive/reflexive) stem, suggesting this happened to Jonathan — it was not a calculated decision but an overwhelming recognition. The timing is critical: this occurs immediately after David spoke with Saul following the Goliath victory. Jonathan heard David's words and saw in him something that seized his entire being. The preposition *be-* ('in, with') rather than *el* ('to') or *im* ('with') suggests interpenetration — Jonathan's soul was bound in David's soul, not merely alongside it.
2. The verb *vayiqqachehu* ('he took him') indicates Saul's appropriation of David into the royal household — the same verb used for taking a wife, taking possession, or conscripting into service. The phrase *velo netano lashuv beit aviv* ('he did not give him to return to his father's house') marks a permanent transfer of David's social location. David is no longer Jesse's son tending sheep; he belongs to the court. Ironically, Saul's act of taking David into his household plants the very rival he will spend the rest of his life trying to expel. The phrase *beit aviv* ('his father's house') carries weight in a culture where identity was defined by patrilineal household — Saul is, in effect, transferring David's primary allegiance from Jesse's house to Saul's.
3. The phrase *vayikhrot berit* ('cut a covenant') uses the root *k-r-t*, which always implies a solemn, binding agreement with consequences for violation. The same phrase describes God's covenant with Abraham (Genesis 15:18), the Sinai covenant (Exodus 34:10), and Joshua's covenant with the Gibeonites (Joshua 9:15). Jonathan is placing his relationship with David on the same level as the most sacred bonds in Israel's history. The causal clause *be'ahavato oto* ('because of his loving him') makes love the foundation of the covenant — an extraordinary reversal of the usual order, where covenant creates obligation and obligation produces loyalty. Here, love comes first and covenant formalizes what love has already established.
4. The *me'il* (robe) is specifically a garment of rank — worn by priests (Exodus 28:31), by Samuel (1 Samuel 2:19), and by royalty. When Jonathan removes his *me'il* and gives it to David, the political symbolism would have been unmistakable to ancient readers. The word *maddav* is debated — it likely refers to military garments or a tunic worn under armor. The sequence from robe to belt moves from the outermost symbol of identity to the most personal piece of a warrior's equipment. The repeated *ve'ad* ('and even to, up to') emphasizes that Jonathan held nothing back — he gave everything, down to the last item. This is the Hebrew narrative's way of saying Jonathan made a total transfer of royal identity to David.
5. The verb *yaskil* (from *sakal*, 'to act wisely, to prosper, to have insight') is the chapter's signature word for David. It carries a double sense: David was both shrewd in his conduct and successful in his outcomes. The Hiphil form implies causative success — David 'caused things to go well.' Saul's response of placing David over the *anshei hamilchamah* ('men of war') is both recognition and, as the chapter unfolds, strategic positioning — keeping the rising star at the front where battle might solve Saul's problem. The phrase *vayyitav be'einei kol ha'am* ('it was good in the eyes of all the people') is politically devastating for Saul — universal popularity is the one thing a jealous king cannot tolerate. The addition of *vegam be'einei avdei Sha'ul* ('and also in the eyes of Saul's servants') means David has won over even the king's inner circle.
6. The phrase *mehakkot et haPlishti* ('from striking the Philistine') uses the singular — this refers to Goliath specifically, placing the scene after the events of chapter 17. The verb *vattse'eh nah* ('they came out') uses the feminine plural, emphasizing this is a women's celebration — a known cultural pattern in ancient Israel where women greeted returning warriors with song and dance (cf. Exodus 15:20, Miriam after the Red Sea; Judges 11:34, Jephthah's daughter). The word *mecholat* ('dances, dancing') suggests circular or processional dancing. The word *shalishim* is debated — traditionally rendered 'three-stringed instruments' or 'triangles,' but possibly 'officers of the third rank' or simply a type of musical instrument. The celebration is directed *liqrat Sha'ul hamelekh* ('to meet King Saul') — the women intend to honor Saul, which makes the content of their song all the more devastating to him.
7. The verb *vatta'enenah* ('they answered, sang responsively') indicates antiphonal singing — two groups of women singing back and forth. The word *hamsachaqot* ('the ones playing, celebrating, making merry') comes from the root *s-ch-q*, which can mean play, laugh, celebrate, or mock — an ambiguity that Saul will interpret in the worst possible direction. The song itself uses standard Hebrew poetic parallelism: Saul/David, thousands/ten

thousands (alaphav/rivevotav). In normal poetic convention, the second line intensifies the first without necessarily being a literal comparison — it is a formulaic way of saying 'great victory.' But Saul hears it as a ranking. The word revavah ('ten thousand, myriad') is the standard poetic intensification of eleph ('thousand'), but to a man already insecure on his throne, poetry becomes political threat.

8. The verb vayyichar ('it burned') describes the kindling of anger — the same word used for God's anger throughout the Torah. Saul's rage is immediate and visceral, a fire that ignites at the sound of the song. The phrase vayyera be'ainav haddavar hazzeh ('this thing was evil in his eyes') echoes the identical phrase used when Samuel was displeased by the people's demand for a king (8:6) — Saul's reaction to David mirrors Samuel's reaction to Saul's own appointment. The word melukhah ('kingdom, kingship, royal power') reveals Saul's deepest fear: he interprets a folk song as a political succession plan. The phrase ve'od lo akh hammelukhah ('and still for him is only the kingdom') shows Saul has leaped from poetic hyperbole to political conspiracy in a single breath. His jealousy is prophetically accurate — David will indeed receive the kingdom — but his response to the truth is rage rather than surrender.
9. The verb oyen ('eyeing, watching suspiciously') comes from the root 'y-n, related to ayin ('eye'). This is not neutral observation but hostile surveillance — the watchful stare of a predator tracking prey. The phrase mehayom hahu vahal'ah ('from that day and onward') marks a permanent shift in Saul's posture toward David. Before this verse, Saul loved David (16:21) and kept him in his household (18:2). After this verse, every interaction between Saul and David is poisoned by suspicion and fear. The brevity of the verse — just eight Hebrew words — mirrors the suddenness of the transformation. One song rewrites the entire relationship.
10. The verb vatitslach ('rushed upon, came mightily upon') is the same verb used when the Spirit of God empowered Saul for battle (11:6) and Samson for feats of strength (Judges 14:6) — the same divine power that once enabled Saul now torments him. The phrase ruach Elohim ra'ah ('an evil/harmful spirit of God') attributes the spirit's origin to God without making God the author of evil — the theological tension is deliberate. The verb vayitnabe ('he prophesied') is deeply ironic: the same word described Saul's ecstatic behavior when the Spirit first came upon him (10:10-11), and people asked 'Is Saul also among the prophets?' Now the ecstasy has curdled into madness, and the same verb describes raving. David's playing (menaggein beyado, 'making music with his hand') is therapeutic — he was originally brought to Saul for this purpose (16:23). The final clause — vehachanit beyad Sha'ul ('and the spear was in Saul's hand') — is ominous narrative foreshadowing. The spear is simply there, waiting.
11. The verb vayyatel ('he hurled') describes a violent throwing motion. The inner speech vayomer ('he said/thought') reveals Saul's murderous intent: akkeh veDavid uvaqir ('I will strike through David and into the wall') — the preposition be- on both David and the wall suggests pinning him like an insect. This is not a warning throw but an assassination attempt. The verb vayyissov ('he turned aside, evaded') describes David's evasion — the root s-b-b means to go around or turn, suggesting David dodged laterally rather than retreating. The word pa'amayim ('twice') means Saul threw the spear two times, and David escaped both. The repetition transforms this from a moment of madness into a sustained attempt at murder. The man who was brought to soothe the king's troubled spirit now must dodge the king's spear.
12. The verb vayyira ('he feared') marks a critical shift: Saul has moved from jealousy (v8) to suspicion (v9) to murderous rage (v11) and now to fear (v12). The king is afraid of his own servant. The reason the narrator gives is theological, not military: ki hayah YHWH immo ('because the LORD was with him'). The phrase YHWH immo ('the LORD with him') is the covenant formula of divine presence — the same assurance God gave to Jacob (Genesis 28:15), Joseph (Genesis 39:2,21), and Joshua (Joshua 1:5). The devastating contrast — ume'im Sha'ul sar ('and from Saul he had departed') — uses the verb sur ('to turn aside, depart, remove'). God's presence, which once rushed upon Saul (11:6), has now turned away. Saul can see God's presence on David precisely because he can feel its absence from himself.
13. The verb vayasirehu ('he removed him') uses the same root s-u-r ('to turn aside, remove') that described God's departure from Saul in verse 12 — Saul removes David just as God removed himself from Saul, creating a bitter verbal echo. The appointment as sar-eleph ('commander of a thousand') looks like a promotion but functions as an exile from the royal court to the battlefield. Saul wants David in harm's way. The phrase vayyetse vayyavo lifnei ha'am ('he went out and came in before the people') is a military leadership formula — 'going out and coming in' means leading troops in campaign and returning safely. The phrase lifnei ha'am ('before the people') means David was visibly leading from the front, which only increased his popularity — the opposite of what Saul intended.
14. The participle maskil (from sakal) reappears here as a comprehensive assessment: lekhol-derakhav maskil ('in all his ways acting wisely/prospering'). The phrase covers every domain — military, social, political, personal. David's sakal is total and visible. The concluding clause vaYHWH immo ('and the LORD was with him') provides the theological explanation for the human observation. David's wisdom is not self-generated; it flows from divine presence. This verse functions as the narrator's thesis statement for the entire chapter: David succeeds because God is with him, and God's presence manifests as comprehensive wisdom. The simplicity of the Hebrew — just eight words — creates a stark contrast with the complexity of Saul's scheming that surrounds it.
15. The verb vayyar ('he saw') followed by asher hu maskil me'od ('that he was exceedingly wise/successful') means Saul's fear was based on clear-eyed observation, not paranoia. Saul could see the reality of David's competence and divine favor. The verb vayyagor ('he dreaded, was in dread of') is stronger than the vayyira ('he feared') of verse 12. The root g-u-r means to dread, to be terrified, to shrink back in fear — it describes a visceral, ongoing terror rather than a momentary fright. Saul has progressed from fear to dread. The irony is that David's maskil — the very quality that makes him an effective servant of Saul's kingdom — is what terrifies Saul. The better David serves, the more Saul fears him. Competence itself has become a threat.
16. The phrase vekhol-Yisra'el viYhudah ('all Israel and Judah') is striking because it distinguishes the northern tribes from Judah — a political division that will not formally exist until after Solomon's death (1 Kings 12). The narrator either writes from a later perspective or signals an existing tribal consciousness that predates the official split. The verb ohev ('loving') is the same root as Jonathan's ahavah for David — the entire nation shares

- Jonathan's response. The reason given — *ki hu yotse vava lifneihem* ('because he was going out and coming in before them') — is the military leadership formula from verse 13. David is a leader who shares the danger with his people, and this earns their love. The contrast with Saul is implicit: Saul stays in the house with his spear while David goes out with the troops.
17. Saul's offer of Merab (*biti hagedolah*, 'my great/elder daughter') may fulfill the promise made in 17:25, where the king offered his daughter to whoever killed Goliath — though Saul now attaches new conditions. The phrase *heyeh-li leven-chayil* ('be for me a son of valor') is ironic: *ben-chayil* is exactly what David already is, but Saul frames it as a future requirement to justify sending David into more battles. The phrase *milchamot YHWH* ('the LORD's battles') is especially cynical — Saul invokes divine warfare as a pretext for engineering David's death. The narrator then breaks the fourth wall with *ki Sha'ul amar* ('for Saul said/thought'), revealing the inner calculation: *al-tehi yadi vo* ('let not my hand be on him') — Saul wants plausible deniability. He wants the Philistines to do his killing for him. The *yad* ('hand') of the Philistines is contrasted with the *yad* of Saul — he is transferring the murder weapon from his own hand (which already failed with the spear) to the enemy's.
 18. David's response *mi anokhi* ('who am I?') echoes Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:11) and Gideon's call narrative (Judges 6:15) — the conventional response of the humble when called to something beyond their station. The phrase *umi chayyai* ('and what is my life/family') is debated: *chayyai* could mean 'my life' (what is my life worth?) or 'my living relatives, my clan.' The clarifying phrase *mishpachat avi* ('my father's clan') suggests the social dimension: David is saying his family's rank does not merit royal marriage. The word *chatan* ('son-in-law, bridegroom') creates a kinship bond — becoming the king's *chatan* means entering the royal family. David's humility may be genuine or diplomatic or both — it is the appropriate response in a culture where self-promotion would be offensive.
 19. The phrase *be'et tet* ('at the time of giving') marks the moment when the promise should have been fulfilled. The passive *nittanah* ('she was given') obscures the agent — the text does not say 'Saul gave her' but 'she was given,' perhaps reflecting the narrative's subtle distancing from Saul's broken word. Adriel the Meholathite (*haMeholati*) is from Abel-Meholah, a town in the Jordan valley associated with Elisha's home (1 Kings 19:16). This broken promise sets up a later tragedy: Merab's five sons by Adriel will be handed over to the Gibeonites and executed in 2 Samuel 21:8-9. Saul's political manipulation of his daughter's marriage will have lethal consequences for his grandsons. The verse is a single sentence of devastating narrative economy — a promise made, a promise broken, a life redirected, all in one line.
 20. The statement *vatte'ehav Mikhal bat-Sha'ul et-David* ('Michal daughter of Saul loved David') is remarkable because it is one of the very few places in the Hebrew Bible where a woman is the stated subject of the verb 'to love' (*ahav*) directed toward a man. The narrator gives Michal her own agency and emotional voice. The phrase *vayyiggidu leSha'ul* ('they reported to Saul') indicates court informants — the royal household is a place of surveillance and intelligence. The phrase *vayyishar haddavar be'einav* ('the thing was straight/pleasing in his eyes') uses the root *y-sh-r* ('straight, right, upright') — ironically, the word for moral uprightness is used to describe Saul's pleasure at finding a new opportunity for treachery. Saul is pleased not because his daughter is happy but because her love gives him another weapon against David.
 21. The word *moqesh* ('snare, trap') is hunting vocabulary — it refers to a bird trap or animal snare. Saul views his own daughter as a device for catching prey. The phrase *utehi-vo yad-Pelishtim* ('and the hand of the Philistines will be upon him') repeats the same scheme from verse 17 — the Philistines are Saul's proxy assassins. The phrase *bishtayim titchatten bi hayyom* ('with two/the second you will become my son-in-law today') is ambiguous: *bishtayim* could mean 'by the second (daughter)' — i.e., through Michal after the Merab arrangement failed — or 'a second time' — another chance at the royal marriage. The verb *titchatten* (Hitpa'el of *ch-t-n*) is reflexive: 'you will make yourself a son-in-law to me.' Saul frames the offer as David's opportunity, disguising his trap as generosity.
 22. The adverb *ballat* ('in secret, privately, in a whisper') reveals the manipulative nature of Saul's approach — this is not a public offer but a covert campaign of persuasion. Saul stages the proposal to come from servants rather than himself, creating the appearance of organic encouragement rather than royal pressure. The phrase *chafets bekha hammelek* ('the king delights in you') uses *chafets*, a word of genuine pleasure and desire — Saul instructs his servants to lie, attributing to himself an affection he does not feel. The addition of *vekhlo-avadav ahevukha* ('and all his servants love you') piles on social pressure — you are loved by everyone, so why hesitate? The entire verse is a masterclass in manipulation: private approach, false warmth, peer pressure, and the framing of a trap as an honor.
 23. The phrase *be'oznei David* ('in the ears of David') means they spoke directly and privately to him, fulfilling Saul's instruction for a covert approach. David's response uses the Niphal of *q-l-l*: *haneqallah* ('is it considered light/trivial?') — does becoming royal kin seem easy or insignificant to you? The self-description *ish rash veniqleh* ('a poor man and of low esteem') uses *rash* ('poor, impoverished') and *niqleh* (Niphal of *q-l-l*, 'lightly esteemed, insignificant'). David emphasizes his economic inability to pay a bride-price worthy of royalty. In ancient Israelite marriage, the groom's family paid a *mohar* (bride-price) to the bride's family — David's poverty would make a royal bride-price impossible. Whether this is genuine humility, social convention, or strategic positioning (inviting Saul to name alternative terms), it opens the door for Saul's lethal counteroffer.
 24. This brief verse functions as a narrative hinge — the servants are intermediaries shuttling between Saul and David, maintaining the fiction of distance. The phrase *kaddevarim ha'elleh dibber David* ('according to these words David spoke') indicates they relayed David's response verbatim. The verse reveals the court's architecture of communication: Saul does not speak directly to David about the marriage but operates through layers of intermediaries. This indirection serves Saul's purposes — it maintains deniability and creates the appearance of David pursuing the marriage rather than being lured into it.
 25. The phrase *ein chafets lammelek bemohar* ('the king has no desire for a bride-price') waives the standard *mohar* — the financial payment from groom to bride's father. Instead, Saul demands *me'ah orlot Pelishtim* ('one hundred foreskins of Philistines'). The *orlah* ('foreskin') is the mark of non-covenant identity — Philistines were 'uncircumcised' (*arelim*), and collecting foreskins meant killing the enemy and taking proof. This demand requires David to engage in close combat with one hundred Philistine warriors — a near-certain death sentence. The phrase *lehinnaqem be'oyvei*

hammelekh ('to take vengeance on the king's enemies') cloaks personal murder-by-proxy in the language of national warfare. The narrator again reveals Saul's inner calculation: *veSha'ul chashav lehappil et-David beyad-Pelishtim* ('Saul was reckoning to make David fall by the hand of the Philistines'). The verb *chashav* ('to reckon, calculate, plan') presents Saul as a cold strategist, and *hippil* ('to cause to fall') means he wanted David dead.

26. The phrase *vayyishar haddavar be'einei David* ('the thing was straight/pleasing in David's eyes') uses the same expression applied to Saul in verse 20 — both men find the arrangement pleasing, but for entirely different reasons. David sees an opportunity for honor and marriage; Saul sees a death trap. The phrase *velo male'u hayyamim* ('the days were not fulfilled/completed') indicates a deadline had been set for the bride-price, and David acted before it expired. This detail emphasizes David's eagerness and confidence — he did not need the full allotted time. It also heightens the narrative tension: Saul expected David to die in the attempt, but David moved quickly and decisively.
27. David delivers *matayim ish* ('two hundred men') — double the required one hundred. The doubling is not accidental; it is a statement of overwhelming competence and, perhaps, a pointed echo of the women's song that credited David with 'ten thousands' against Saul's 'thousands.' David doubles the bride-price just as the women doubled his kill count. The verb *vaymalle'um* ('they filled them up, completed the full number') uses the same root *m-l'* as verse 26's 'the days were not fulfilled' — David fills the count before the days are filled. The phrase *vayyitten-lo Sha'ul et-Mikhal bitto le'ishah* ('Saul gave him Michal his daughter as a wife') is terse and forced — Saul is trapped by his own scheme. He set the price hoping David would die; David paid double, and Saul must honor the deal. The verb *vayyitten* ('he gave') is the same word used for the broken promise about Merab (verse 19) — this time Saul cannot renege.
28. The paired verbs *vayyar vayyeda* ('he saw and he knew') indicate both empirical observation and deep understanding — Saul is not guessing but perceiving with certainty. The clause *ki YHWH im-David* ('that the LORD was with David') repeats the narrator's own assessment from verses 12 and 14, but now Saul himself has arrived at the same conclusion. The addition of *uMikhal bat-Sha'ul ahevathu* ('and Michal daughter of Saul loved him') adds personal devastation to Saul's political crisis — not only is God with David, but Saul's own daughter has given her loyalty to his rival. The verb *ahavathu* ('she loved him') echoes the same *ahavah* vocabulary used for Jonathan in verse 1. Both of Saul's children love David more than they love their father's interests. Saul is losing everything — divine favor, popular support, military prestige, and now his own family.
29. The verb *vayyosef* ('he added, continued, increased') with *lero* ('to fear') indicates Saul's fear is escalating — each verse has pushed it higher: jealousy (v8), suspicion (v9), fear (v12), dread (v15), and now intensified, permanent fear. The phrase *vayyehi Sha'ul ohev et-David kol-hayyamim* ('Saul was an enemy of David all the days') is the narrator's final verdict on the relationship. The word *ohev* ('enemy') is the standard term for a military or national adversary — Saul, the king of Israel, has become David's enemy in the same way the Philistines are Israel's enemies. The phrase *kol-hayyamim* ('all the days') means this enmity is permanent and total. There will be no reconciliation. The chapter that began with Jonathan's covenant love ends with Saul's covenant hatred — the father and son have taken opposite positions toward the same man.
30. The final verse returns to the chapter's key verb: *sakhal David* ('David acted wisely/prospered'). The comparative *mikkol avdei Sha'ul* ('more than all of Saul's servants') positions David as the most capable officer in the army — not just competent but preeminent. The phrase *vayyiqar shemo me'od* ('his name became very precious/honored') uses the verb *y-q-r* ('to be precious, honored, rare'). David's *shem* ('name') — his reputation, public identity, renown — has become *yaqar* ('precious, weighty, valuable'). This closes the chapter by circling back to the women's song: the very popularity Saul feared has only grown. The narrator's final word on the chapter is David's ascending glory, implicitly contrasted with Saul's descending spiral. The chapter opened with covenant love and closes with covenant skill — Jonathan's *berit* and David's *sakal* are both gifts from God, and both are things Saul cannot defeat.

19

Summary: *Saul openly commands his servants and Jonathan to kill David. Jonathan intercedes, persuading his father to swear an oath sparing David's life. But after David's next military victory, the evil spirit returns and Saul hurls a spear at David in his own house. Michal, David's wife, helps him escape through a window and deceives Saul's messengers using household idols (terafim) arranged in David's bed. David flees to Samuel at Ramah, where the two of them settle in Naioth. Saul sends three waves of messengers to capture David, but each group falls into prophetic frenzy upon arriving. Finally Saul goes himself — and the Spirit of God seizes him too, stripping him of his royal garments as he lies naked and prophesying all day and all night before Samuel. The chapter closes with the proverb resurfacing: 'Is Saul also among the prophets?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is structured as a cascading failure of royal power. Saul issues a direct kill order (verse 1), but every instrument of his authority — his son, his daughter, his messengers, and finally his own body — is turned against him. The narrative architecture is precise: Jonathan subverts the order through persuasion (verses 1-7), Michal subverts it through deception (verses 11-17), and God subverts it through overwhelming prophetic seizure (verses 18-24). The terafim scene in verse 13 is one of the most vivid domestic tableaux in the Hebrew Bible — Michal stuffs a household idol into David's bed with a goat-hair pillow, creating a decoy that buys David time to*

flee. The narrator neither condemns nor commends her possession of terafim; the idol simply serves the escape. The final scene, where Saul strips naked and lies prophesying before Samuel, is a deliberate inversion of his anointing in chapter 10. There, the Spirit clothed Saul with prophetic authority as he entered kingship; here, the same Spirit strips him bare as he chases the man who will replace him. The repeated question 'Is Saul also among the prophets?' (verse 24, echoing 10:11-12) now carries an entirely different valence — not wonder at Saul's elevation but shock at his humiliation.

Translation Friction: The terafim in verse 13 present an immediate translation challenge. The word refers to household idols or cultic figurines, yet Michal — David's wife, Saul's daughter — apparently keeps one in the house and it is large enough to simulate a human body in bed. The text shows no interest in condemning this; the narrator reports it without editorial comment, leaving translators to decide how much interpretive weight to place on the idol's presence. We render terafim as 'household idol' and note its significance without forcing a moral judgment the text itself does not make. The prophetic frenzy in verses 20-24 also presents difficulty: the verb hitnabbe (Hithpa'el of naba) can mean 'prophesied' in the sense of ecstatic behavior, not necessarily delivering intelligible oracles. Saul's naked prophesying looks more like involuntary divine seizure than voluntary worship. The phrase ruach Elohim ('Spirit of God') is used for both creative empowerment (as with the judges) and overwhelming compulsion (as here) — the same Spirit that once empowered Saul now immobilizes him. Translators must resist the temptation to sanitize this scene; the text intends the reader to see the king of Israel lying helpless and exposed.

Connections: The spear-throwing in verse 10 echoes the first attempt in 18:10-11 and will recur in 20:33 (aimed at Jonathan) — the spear becomes Saul's signature weapon of failed violence, always missing its target. Michal's window escape parallels Rahab lowering the spies through her window in Joshua 2:15 and anticipates Paul's basket escape in Acts 9:25 — each time, a person under death threat is saved through an opening in a wall. The terafim recall Rachel stealing Laban's household gods (Genesis 31:19, 34-35), another story where a woman uses deception involving idols to protect someone from a pursuing patriarch. The prophetic frenzy at Naioth connects to the band of prophets Saul encountered in 10:5-13 after his anointing. The stripping of Saul's garments prefigures David cutting the corner of Saul's robe in chapter 24 — in both cases, the loss of royal clothing symbolizes the transfer of kingdom authority. The phrase 'Is Saul also among the prophets?' forming a bookend with 10:12 creates an inclusio around Saul's decline: the same words mark both the beginning and the end of his credibility.

¹Saul told Jonathan his son and all his servants to put David to death. ²But Jonathan son of Saul was deeply devoted to David. Jonathan warned David, saying, "My father Saul is seeking to kill you. Be on your guard in the morning — stay in a hidden place and conceal yourself. ³I will go out and stand beside my father in the field where you are hiding, and I will speak to my father about you. Whatever I learn, I will tell you." ⁴Jonathan spoke well of David to Saul his father and said to him, "The king must not sin against his servant David, because he has not sinned against you — and because what he has done has been very good for you. ⁵He put his life in his hands and struck down the Philistine, and the LORD accomplished a great deliverance for all Israel. You saw it — you rejoiced! Why then would you sin against innocent blood by putting David to death for no reason?" ⁶Saul listened to Jonathan's voice, and Saul swore, "As the LORD lives, he will not be put to death." ⁷Jonathan called David and told him everything. Then Jonathan brought David to Saul, and David served in his presence as before. ⁸War broke out again, and David went out and fought the Philistines and struck them with a massive blow, and they fled before him. ⁹An evil spirit from the LORD came upon Saul while he was sitting in his house with his spear in his hand, and David was playing the lyre. ¹⁰Saul tried to pin David to the wall with the spear, but David pulled away from Saul's presence. The spear struck the wall, and David fled and escaped that night. ¹¹Saul sent agents to David's house to watch it and to kill him in the morning. But Michal, David's wife, warned him, saying, "If you do not save your life tonight, tomorrow you will be dead." ¹²Michal lowered David through the window, and he went out, fled, and escaped. ¹³Michal took the household idol and laid it in the bed. She placed a tangle of goat hair at its head and covered the whole thing with a garment. ¹⁴When Saul sent agents to seize David, she said, "He is ill." ¹⁵Saul sent the agents back to see David for themselves, saying, "Bring him to me in the bed itself, so I can kill him." ¹⁶The agents came in, and there in the bed was the household idol, with the goat-hair tangle at its head. ¹⁷Saul said to Michal, "Why have you deceived me like this and let my enemy go, so that he

escaped?" Michal said to Saul, "He said to me, 'Let me go — why should I have to kill you?'" ¹⁸David fled and escaped and came to Samuel at Ramah. He told him everything Saul had done to him. Then he and Samuel went and stayed at Naioth. ¹⁹It was reported to Saul: "David is at Naioth in Ramah." ²⁰Saul sent agents to seize David. But when they saw the band of prophets prophesying with Samuel standing over them as their leader, the Spirit of God came upon Saul's agents, and they too fell into prophetic frenzy. ²¹When this was reported to Saul, he sent a second group of agents — and they too fell into prophetic frenzy. Saul sent yet a third group — and they too fell into prophetic frenzy. ²²Then Saul himself went to Ramah. He came to the great cistern at Secu and asked, "Where are Samuel and David?" Someone answered, "At Naioth in Ramah." ²³He went toward Naioth in Ramah, and the Spirit of God came upon even him. He walked along prophesying until he arrived at Naioth in Ramah. ²⁴He too stripped off his garments and prophesied before Samuel. He fell down and lay exposed all that day and all that night. This is why people say, "Is Saul also among the prophets?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *dibbēr* ('spoke') with the infinitive *lehamit* ('to kill') presents the assassination order as casual royal speech — Saul issues the command as though it were ordinary court business. The verb *hamit* (Hiphil of *mut*) means 'to cause death,' the technical term for judicial or military execution. By addressing both Jonathan and 'all his servants,' Saul makes this a public decree, not a private conspiracy. The narrative tension is immediate: Jonathan, David's covenant brother (chapter 18:1-4), is the first person named as recipient of the kill order.
2. The phrase *hishamer na babboqer* ('take care in the morning') suggests that the danger will be most acute at daybreak, when Saul's agents would be dispatched. The word *seter* ('hidden place, secret spot') often refers to a place of divine shelter in the Psalms (Psalm 27:5; 31:20), though here it is a practical hiding location. Jonathan positions himself as the intermediary — he will test his father's mood and relay the outcome.
3. Jonathan's plan places him physically between David and Saul — he will stand 'beside his father' (*leyad avi*) in the same field where David hides. The spatial arrangement is a physical expression of his mediating role. The verb *adabber bekha* ('I will speak about you') uses the same verb (*dibber*) that Saul used in verse 1 when issuing the kill order. Jonathan will use speech to undo what Saul's speech commanded. The phrase *ra'iti mah* ('I will see what') indicates that Jonathan does not yet know whether his intervention will succeed — he is genuinely testing his father's resolve.
4. Jonathan addresses Saul as 'the king' (*hammelekh*) rather than 'my father,' adopting formal court language to give his plea institutional weight. The accusative construction *al yecheta hammelekh be-David* ('let the king not sin against David') treats the murder plot as a covenant violation by the king himself — a remarkably bold statement from son to father, from subject to sovereign.
5. The phrase *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') is a legal category in Deuteronomic law (Deuteronomy 19:10, 13; 21:8-9). Shedding innocent blood defiles the land and brings guilt upon the community. Jonathan is warning Saul that killing David would trigger the blood-guilt provisions of the covenant — the same provisions that protect against unjust execution. The verb *techeta* ('you would sin') makes Saul the subject of the sin for the third time in two verses, driving home Jonathan's point.
6. The oath formula *chay YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') is the most solemn oath available in Israelite culture — invoking God's own life as the guarantee. The passive *im yumat* ('he will not be killed') distances Saul from the killing while appearing to grant clemency. The narrator's terseness here — no inner thoughts, no qualifying clauses — allows the reader to wonder how sincere Saul's oath truly is. The verb *shama* ('listened') echoes Jonathan's role as persuader, but the oath's brevity contrasts sharply with Jonathan's lengthy argument, hinting that Saul's compliance may be shallow.
7. The phrase *ke'etmol shilshom* ('as yesterday and the day before') is a Hebrew idiom meaning 'as in former times' or 'as previously.' The repetition of Jonathan's name three times in a single verse — 'Jonathan called,' 'Jonathan told him,' 'Jonathan brought' — emphasizes that Jonathan is the active agent of reconciliation at every stage. The verb *vayyhi lefanav* ('he was before him') indicates David resumed his position as court musician and attendant. The restoration appears complete, but the reader already suspects it will not last.
8. The phrase *vattosep hammilchamah lihyot* ('the war continued to be') uses the verb *yasaf* ('to add, to do again') — war keeps returning as the background condition of Saul's reign. David's victory is described with *makkah gedolah* ('a great striking'), the same phrase used for decisive battlefield victories throughout the Deuteronomistic History. The irony is sharp: David's very success — the quality Jonathan cited to save his life — reignites Saul's jealousy. Each Philistine victory makes David more popular and Saul more threatened.
9. The narrator sets the scene with deliberate visual contrast: king and musician, spear and lyre, seated authority and kneeling servant. David was originally summoned to play music to soothe Saul's tormented spirit (16:14-23). The same remedy that once brought relief now provides proximity for murder. The phrase *ruach ra'ah* ('evil spirit') here likely means 'harmful spirit' or 'spirit of distress' rather than morally evil — the Hebrew *ra'ah* encompasses harm, disaster, and malice.
10. The verb *vayevaquesh* ('he sought') indicates intention rather than immediate action — Saul aimed to pin (*lehakkot*) David to the wall (*baqqir*), a verb that means to strike through and fasten. The image is of David impaled like a trophy. The verb *vayyiptar* ('he slipped away, pulled free') suggests David dodged at the last moment. The spear embedding in the wall — *vayyakh et hachanit baqqir* — is a vivid detail that emphasizes both Saul's violent force and his utter failure to hit his target. David's escape into the night (*ballaylah hahu*, 'that night') marks the beginning of his fugitive life. From this point forward, David will not safely return to Saul's court.

11. Saul sends mal'akhim ('messengers, agents') — the same word used for angels and divine messengers, here repurposed as instruments of assassination. The infinitives leshomro velahamiento ('to guard him and to kill him') reveal a two-stage plan: surveillance through the night, execution at dawn. Michal's warning — im einkha memallet et nafshekha hallaylah ('if you do not save your life tonight') — is blunt and urgent. The word mumat ('you are a dead man,' Hophal participle of mut) presents David's death as a certainty unless he acts immediately. Michal, Saul's own daughter, now becomes the third member of Saul's family to work against his plan to kill David.
12. The verb vattored ('she lowered') indicates that the house had an upper story or was built into a wall — Michal physically lowers David, suggesting he could not simply walk out the door because Saul's agents were watching the entrance. The triple verb sequence vayyēlekh vayyivrach vayyimmalet ('he went, he fled, he escaped') creates an accelerating rhythm of flight. Each verb intensifies the previous one: departure, then panicked running, then successful evasion. This window escape places Michal in the tradition of Rahab (Joshua 2:15), who also lowered men through a window to save them from a king's agents.
13. The terafim present several unresolved questions. Why does Michal have a human-sized idol in the house? Is this a Canaanite religious object, a decorative figure, or something with apotropaic (protective) function? The text offers no explanation and passes no judgment — it is simply a useful prop in an emergency. Rachel also possessed terafim (Genesis 31:19), and they appear in Judges 17:5 and 2 Kings 23:24 in contexts ranging from household religion to condemned idolatry. The narrator's silence here is deliberate: the story is about Michal's resourcefulness, not her theology.
13. The word kevir appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, making its precise meaning uncertain. The traditional rendering 'pillow of goat hair' is plausible — goat hair was used for weaving coarse fabrics (Exodus 35:26) and could simulate the appearance of human hair on a bed pillow. Whatever its exact form, the goat hair serves as a visual stand-in for David's head.
14. Michal's lie — choleh hu ('he is sick') — is a masterpiece of economy. Two words buy David critical hours of escape time. The agents apparently accept this without entering the house, suggesting that either Michal's status as the king's daughter gives her authority, or that illness was taken seriously enough to delay the arrest. The verb laqachat ('to take, seize') is the same verb used for taking prisoners or capturing — Saul's agents are not there for a conversation.
15. Saul's command ha'alu oto vammittah elai lahamito ('bring him up in the bed to me to kill him') reveals both his paranoia and his cruelty — he does not care if David is sick; he wants the bed carried to him with David in it. The phrase lahamito ('to kill him') is stated openly, not concealed. Saul has dropped all pretense. The irony is that when the agents finally approach the bed, they will find not David but a goat-hair-covered idol — the king's agents will carry an idol to the king.
16. The particle ve-hinne ('and look!') conveys the agents' shock at the discovery — the narrative camera enters the room with them and registers their surprise. The careful arrangement Michal constructed in verse 13 is now exposed. The narrator's repetition of the same elements — terafim, mittah, kevir ha'izzim — from the setup scene creates a moment of dark comedy: the feared warrior David has been replaced by a household idol wearing a goat-hair wig.
17. Saul's rage at Michal reveals his isolation: his son, his daughter, and his servants have all failed to carry out his orders. The phrase vateshalechi et oyvi ('you sent my enemy away') uses the Piel of shalach ('to send'), implying active assistance rather than passive negligence. Saul sees Michal as a co-conspirator. Michal's lie — claiming David threatened her — mirrors Rachel's deception of Laban in Genesis 31:35, where Rachel also lied to her father to protect stolen household objects. Both daughters deceive their fathers using domestic items and fabricated excuses.
18. David's flight to Samuel is theologically significant: the fugitive king-elect seeks refuge with the prophet who anointed him. The verb vayyagad ('he told') suggests a full account — David lays out the entire history of Saul's persecution. The location Naioth (navyot) is related to the word naveh ('dwelling, pasture') and may refer to a prophetic settlement or compound near Ramah where Samuel's school of prophets was based. The Targum renders it 'house of study.' David positions himself within the prophetic community — the very community that anointed him and that Saul cannot control.
19. The passive vayyugad ('it was told') leaves the informant unnamed — Saul has a network of loyalists who track David's movements. The report is terse: hinneh David be-Nayot ba-Ramah ('David is at Naioth in Ramah'). The hinneh ('look, here') conveys urgency, as though the informant is presenting actionable intelligence. Saul now knows exactly where David is, and what follows will be a systematic attempt to extract him from prophetic sanctuary.
20. The phrase omed nitsav ('standing, stationed') uses two verbs of standing to emphasize Samuel's commanding presence. He is not merely present but presiding — the prophetic company operates under his authority. The ruach Elohim ('Spirit of God') in this context functions as a protective force: it does not inspire the agents to deliver oracles but incapacitates them for their original mission. The word gam hemmah ('they too, even they') emphasizes the surprise — Saul's own enforcement arm has been absorbed into the prophetic community.
21. The threefold repetition — three groups of agents, each neutralized by the Spirit — follows a folktale pattern common in Hebrew narrative (compare Elijah and the three captains in 2 Kings 1:9-14). The repetition serves both literary and theological purposes: it demonstrates that this is not a one-time fluke but a systematic divine blockade. The verb vayyosep ('he added, he did again') shows Saul's stubborn persistence — each failure only intensifies his determination. The phrase gam hemmah ('they too') tolls like a refrain, each repetition further humiliating Saul's authority. His agents, sent to capture a fugitive, become involuntary worshippers instead.
22. The phrase gam hu ('he himself, even he') signals the narrative climax — the king who sent wave after wave of agents now goes personally. The bor haggadol ('great cistern') at Secu serves as a geographic marker, locating Saul's journey on a specific route. That Saul must ask for directions — eifoh Shemu'el ve-David ('where are Samuel and David?') — is subtly humiliating: the king of Israel is wandering the countryside searching for a prophet

and a fugitive. He names Samuel first, suggesting he views the prophet as the greater problem. The respondent's answer places both men at Naioth, where the Spirit has already defeated three groups of Saul's agents.

- 23.** The verb *vayyitnabbe* (Hithpael of *naba*) describes involuntary ecstatic behavior, as in verses 20-21. The infinitive absolute construction *halokh vayyitnabbe* ('going along and prophesying') creates a picture of Saul stumbling forward in a prophetic trance, unable to arrest either his movement or his utterance. The narrative deliberately mirrors Saul's first prophetic experience in chapter 10, but with inverted meaning: there, the Spirit confirmed his kingship; here, it prevents him from exercising it.
- 24.** The word *arom* is rendered 'exposed' rather than strictly 'naked' because the Hebrew term can indicate either full nudity or being stripped to a basic loincloth. In either case, the point is the same: the king has been reduced to a state incompatible with royal dignity. A king without his robes is a king without his authority — the garments are not merely clothing but signs of office.
- 24.** The phrase *lifnei Shemu'el* ('before Samuel') is the chapter's final irony: Saul lies helpless at the feet of the very prophet who anointed him and who has already anointed his replacement. Samuel does not speak in this scene — he does not need to. The Spirit has said everything. The closing proverb — 'Is Saul also among the prophets?' — creates an *inclusio* with 10:11-12. In chapter 10 the question expressed astonishment that an unknown farmer could receive the Spirit; in chapter 19 it expresses astonishment that a reigning king could be reduced to a prophesying heap on the ground. Same words, opposite meanings — a literary device that encapsulates Saul's entire tragic arc.

20

Summary: *David flees from Samuel's compound at Naioth and confronts Jonathan with a desperate question: why is your father trying to kill me? Jonathan cannot believe it. The two men devise a test — David will be absent from the New Moon feast, and Jonathan will gauge Saul's reaction. They renew their covenant, binding not only themselves but their descendants. At the feast, Saul's rage explodes against Jonathan for protecting David. Jonathan goes to the field, shoots the arrow signal, and the two friends embrace in grief before parting. David goes into permanent exile; Jonathan returns to the city.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the emotional center of the David-Jonathan narrative, and it is structured around three covenants that escalate in scope. In verse 8, Jonathan invokes the existing covenant (*berit*) between them. In verse 16, Jonathan cuts a new covenant with the house of David — extending the bond beyond two individuals to two dynasties. In verse 42, both men swear by the LORD that the covenant holds 'between my descendants and your descendants forever.' The chapter transforms personal friendship into a political-theological commitment that will outlast both men. The arrow signal (verses 20-22, 35-40) is an elaborate espionage device, but its narrative function is to create a moment where the two friends must communicate without words — the opposite of the direct, intimate speech that fills the rest of the chapter. The New Moon feast provides the setting, and Saul's escalating fury across three days reveals how deeply David's absence threatens the king's sense of control. Jonathan's loyalty is tested from both sides: his father demands filial obedience, his covenant partner demands faithfulness. He chooses covenant over bloodline.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 30 contains one of the most offensive insults in the Hebrew Bible: Saul calls Jonathan *ben-na'avat ha-mardut*, which KJV renders 'thou son of the perverse rebellious woman.' The phrase is difficult because *na'avat* is a rare form — possibly from *'avah* ('to twist, pervert') with a feminine ending, meaning something like 'son of a twisted rebellious woman.' It attacks Jonathan's mother to shame Jonathan, a tactic with deep cultural force in the ancient Near East. We render it to preserve the maternal insult and the shame-rage dynamic without sanitizing or amplifying. In verse 3, David swears *ki-khe-fesa' beynei uveyn ha-mavet* ('there is barely a step between me and death') — the word *pesa'* ('step') is concrete and physical, measuring the gap between life and death as a single stride. In verse 30, Saul also accuses Jonathan of choosing David *le-boshtekha u-le-boshet ervat immekha* ('to your own shame and to the shame of your mother's nakedness'). The word *ervah* ('nakedness, exposure') suggests sexual dishonor; Saul is accusing Jonathan of a loyalty so perverse it shames his own mother's body. We translate with maximum clarity about what Saul is actually saying.*

Connections: *The Jonathan-David covenant echoes the covenant-cutting pattern established in Genesis 15 (God's covenant with Abraham) and Genesis 31:44-54 (Jacob and Laban). The phrase 'the LORD be between me and you' (verse 42) mirrors Genesis 31:49, the Mizpah benediction. Jonathan's request that David show *chesed* ('faithful love') to his house (verses 14-15) will be fulfilled in 2 Samuel 9, when David seeks out Jonathan's son Mephibosheth and*

restores his grandfather's land. The New Moon feast (chodesh) connects to Numbers 28:11-15, where the first day of each month required special sacrifices — Saul's feast is a royal observance of this calendar marker. David's hiding at the stone Ezel (verse 19) will be echoed by his later fugitive movements in the Judean wilderness. Jonathan's arrow signal anticipates the coded communications that will characterize David's years on the run.

¹David fled from Naioth in Ramah and came to Jonathan. He said, "What have I done? What is my guilt? What is my offense against your father, that he is hunting my life?" ²Jonathan said to him, "Never! You will not die. My father does nothing — whether large or small — without uncovering it to my ear. Why would my father hide this from me? It is not true." ³David swore again and said, "Your father knows very well that I have found favor in your eyes, so he has said to himself, 'Jonathan must not know about this, or he will be devastated.' But as the LORD lives, and as your own life endures — there is barely a step between me and death." ⁴Jonathan said to David, "Whatever you want — I will do it for you." ⁵David said to Jonathan, "Tomorrow is the New Moon, and I am expected to sit with the king to eat. But let me go, and I will hide in the open country until the evening of the third day. ⁶If your father misses me at all, say: 'David urgently asked my permission to run to Bethlehem, his hometown, because the whole clan has a yearly sacrifice there.' ⁷If he says, 'Good' — then your servant is safe. But if he flares with anger, know that he has fully decided on harm." ⁸Show faithful love to your servant, because you brought your servant into a covenant of the LORD with you. But if there is guilt in me, kill me yourself — why would you hand me over to your father?" ⁹Jonathan said, "Never! If I learn for certain that my father has decided to bring harm against you, would I not tell you?" ¹⁰David said to Jonathan, "Who will tell me if your father answers you harshly?" ¹¹Jonathan said to David, "Come, let us go out to the open country." And the two of them went out to the open country. ¹²Jonathan said to David, "By the LORD, the God of Israel — when I have sounded out my father by this time tomorrow or the day after, if things look favorable for David and I do not send word to you and uncover it to your ear — ¹³— then may the LORD do thus to Jonathan and even more! But if my father intends harm against you, I will uncover it to your ear and send you away so you can go in safety. May the LORD be with you as he was with my father." ¹⁴"And if I am still alive — will you not show me the faithful love of the LORD, so that I do not die? ¹⁵And do not ever cut off your faithful love from my household — not even when the LORD has cut off every one of David's enemies from the face of the earth." ¹⁶So Jonathan cut a covenant with the house of David: "May the LORD call it to account from the hand of David's enemies." ¹⁷Jonathan again made David swear by his love for him, because he loved him as he loved his own life. ¹⁸Jonathan said to him, "Tomorrow is the New Moon, and you will be missed because your seat will be empty. ¹⁹On the third day go down quickly and come to the place where you hid on the day of the incident, and wait beside the stone Ezel. ²⁰I will shoot three arrows to the side, as if aiming at a target. ²¹Then I will send a boy, saying, 'Go, find the arrows.' If I say clearly to the boy, 'The arrows are on this side of you — pick them up,' then come out, because it is safe for you and there is nothing wrong, as the LORD lives. ²²But if I say to the young man, 'The arrows are beyond you' — then go, because the LORD has sent you away. ²³As for the matter we have spoken of, you and I — the LORD stands between me and you forever." ²⁴David hid in the open country. When the New Moon came, the king sat down at the meal to eat. ²⁵The king sat in his seat as usual — the seat by the wall. Jonathan stood, and Abner sat at Saul's side. But David's place was empty. ²⁶Saul said nothing that day, because he thought, "Something must have happened to him — he is not ritually pure. He must be unclean." ²⁷On the second day after the New Moon, David's place was still empty. Saul said to Jonathan his son, "Why has the son of Jesse not come to the meal, either yesterday or today?" ²⁸Jonathan answered Saul, "David urgently asked my permission to go to Bethlehem. ²⁹He said, 'Let me go, please, because our clan has a sacrifice in the city, and my brother has ordered me to be there. So now, if I have found favor in your eyes, let me slip away and see my brothers.' That is why he has not come to the king's table." ³⁰Saul's anger blazed against Jonathan. He said to him, "You son of a twisted, rebellious woman! Do I not know that you have chosen the son of Jesse — to your own shame and to the shame of your mother's nakedness? ³¹For as long as the son of Jesse is alive on this earth, neither you nor your kingdom will be established. Now send for him and bring him to me, because he is a dead man." ³²Jonathan answered Saul his father and said to him, "Why should he be put to death? What has he done?" ³³Saul hurled his spear at him to strike him down. Then Jonathan knew that his father was fully determined to kill David. ³⁴Jonathan rose from the table burning with anger. He did

not eat any food on that second day of the New Moon, because he was grieved for David and because his father had humiliated him. ³⁵In the morning, Jonathan went out to the open country at the time appointed with David, and a small boy was with him. ³⁶He said to his boy, "Run — find the arrows I am about to shoot." The boy ran, and Jonathan shot an arrow past him. ³⁷When the boy reached the place where Jonathan's arrow had landed, Jonathan called out after the boy, "Isn't the arrow beyond you — farther out?" ³⁸Jonathan called after the boy, "Hurry! Be quick! Do not stop!" Jonathan's boy gathered the arrows and came back to his master. ³⁹The boy knew nothing at all. Only Jonathan and David knew what was happening. ⁴⁰Jonathan gave his weapons to the boy who served him and said, "Go, take these back to the city." ⁴¹As soon as the boy was gone, David rose from beside the south side and fell on his face to the ground. He bowed three times. Then they kissed each other and wept together, until David wept uncontrollably. ⁴²Jonathan said to David, "Go in safety. What the two of us have sworn in the name of the LORD stands firm: 'The LORD will be between me and you, and between my descendants and your descendants, forever.'" Then David got up and left, and Jonathan went back into the city.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- David's three questions — *meh asiti*, *meh avoni*, *u-meh chattati* — escalate from general action ('what have I done?') to moral failing ('what is my guilt?') to covenant violation ('what is my offense?'). The word *avon* denotes guilt or iniquity in its moral weight, while *chattat* specifically means 'sin' in the sense of missing a mark or violating a standard. David is not merely asking what happened; he is insisting that he has violated no law, no moral code, and no covenant obligation.
- The verb *mevaqesh* ('he is seeking') paired with *nafshi* ('my life/soul') is a fixed Hebrew expression for intent to kill — Saul is not searching for David's presence but for his death. David has just fled from the prophetic protection at *Naioth* (19:18-24), where even Saul fell into prophetic ecstasy. That supernatural intervention has not changed Saul's underlying intent.
- Jonathan's opening word *chalilah* is an oath-like expression of strong denial — literally 'far be it' or 'profane the thought.' It carries the force of 'God forbid' without explicitly invoking the divine name. His certainty rests on his assumption that Saul shares everything with him: *lo ya'aseh avi davar gadol o davar qatan* ('my father does not do a thing great or small'). The idiom 'uncover the ear' (*yigleh et ozni*) means to reveal something privately — literally peeling back the covering over the ear to whisper a secret.
- Jonathan's confidence is genuine but mistaken. Saul has already attempted to kill David multiple times (18:10-11, 19:1, 19:10) and explicitly ordered Jonathan himself to kill David (19:1). Jonathan successfully intervened once (19:4-6), but Saul's subsequent attempts show that the king's intent has not changed. Jonathan's denial reflects the impossible position of a son who loves both his father and his friend.
- The double oath formula *chai YHWH ve-chey nafshekha* ('as the LORD lives and as your soul/life lives') is the strongest available assurance — David swears by God and by Jonathan himself. This formula appears repeatedly in the David narratives and always marks a moment of utmost seriousness.
- The word *pesa'* ('step') appears only here and in a handful of other passages. Its concreteness is the point: David is not speaking metaphorically about danger. He is saying that death is literally one step away. The vivid physicality of the image — a single human stride — makes the abstract threat immediate and bodily.
- Jonathan's response is total commitment compressed into a single sentence. The phrase *mah tomar nafshekha* ('what does your soul say?') asks not merely for David's wish but for the deepest expression of his inner being — *nafesh* here means the whole person, not just desire. Jonathan's *ve-e'eseh-lakh* ('and I will do it for you') is an unconditional pledge with no qualifications. This is the turning point where Jonathan stops defending his father and begins acting as David's ally.
- The phrase *hinneh chodesh machar* ('tomorrow is the New Moon') establishes the calendar setting. The *chodesh* was the first day of the lunar month, marked by special sacrifices (Numbers 28:11-15) and communal feasting. The royal household observed it as a formal banquet where assigned seats mattered — absence would be noticed and interpreted.
- David's plan involves three days of absence. The phrase *ad ha-erev ha-shelishit* ('until the evening of the third day') gives the test a defined timeframe. David will hide *ba-sadeh* ('in the field/open country') — the same word used for the place where Cain killed Abel (Genesis 4:8) and where Esau hunted (Genesis 25:27). The *sadeh* is the space outside the city, beyond the reach of walls and social order.
- The phrase *paqod yifqedeni* ('he will surely miss/notice me') uses the infinitive absolute of *paqad* — a verb meaning 'to attend to, visit, notice, muster.' Saul will not merely notice David's absence; he will actively register it as significant. David's cover story involves a *zebach ha-yamim* ('sacrifice of the days,' meaning annual sacrifice) for his entire *mishpachah* ('clan, extended family') at Bethlehem. This is plausible — clan sacrifices were real events — but it is a deliberate deception. The text does not moralize about the lie; it presents it as survival strategy.
- The verb *laruts* ('to run') rather than *lalekhet* ('to walk/go') conveys urgency — David's story is that the summons from Bethlehem was pressing enough to override his royal obligation.
- The test is binary. If Saul says *tov* ('good'), then *shalom le-avdekha* ('peace to your servant') — David is safe. But if *charoh yechareh lo* ('he burns with burning,' another infinitive absolute construction for emphasis), then *kaletah ha-ra'ah me'immo* ('the evil is completed/determined from him'). The verb *kaletah* comes from *kalah*, meaning 'to be complete, to be finished, to be determined' — the evil is not a passing mood but a settled resolution.

David is asking Jonathan to read Saul's reaction as a diagnostic of fixed intent versus temporary suspicion.

8. The word *chesed* is the chapter's theological anchor. It denotes the faithful, loyal love that covenant partners owe each other — not as sentiment but as binding obligation. When David says 'show *chesed*,' he is calling in a covenantal debt, not asking for a favor. The prepositional phrase *al avdekha* ('upon your servant') positions David as the vulnerable party who is owed protection.
8. The phrase *berit YHWH* ('covenant of the LORD') elevates the Jonathan-David covenant above a personal agreement. God is the witness and guarantor. David's willingness to die at Jonathan's hand rather than Saul's is both a test of loyalty and a theological statement: covenant justice is preferable to royal caprice.
9. Jonathan's *chalilah lakh* ('far be it from you') mirrors his earlier *chalilah* in verse 2, but this time it carries a different force. In verse 2 he denied that Saul intended evil; here he promises that if evil is confirmed, he will not withhold the information. Jonathan is shifting from denial to readiness — he is beginning to accept the possibility that David may be right.
9. The rhetorical question *ve-lo otah aggid lakh* ('would I not tell it to you?') expects a strong affirmative. Jonathan is binding himself to transparency. The verb *nagad* ('to declare, tell, report') is the standard term for official communication in covenant contexts.
10. David's question is practical and urgent: *mi yaggid li* ('who will report to me?'). Even if Jonathan learns the truth, the intelligence must reach David in the field. The word *qashah* ('harshly, roughly') describes a severe or hard response — David anticipates that Saul's reaction might be violent enough that Jonathan himself could be in danger and unable to deliver the message. This prompts the arrow-signal plan in the verses that follow.
11. The move to the *sadeh* ('field, open country') takes the conversation out of earshot — away from the royal compound where walls have ears. The narrator's repetition of *ha-sadeh* twice in one verse emphasizes the shift of setting. The phrase *shenehem* ('the two of them') highlights their solidarity; they move as a pair into the exposed landscape where their private covenant talk can happen without surveillance.
12. Jonathan begins a formal oath invoking *YHWH Elohei Yisra'el* ('the LORD, the God of Israel') — the full covenantal title. The verb *echqor* ('I will sound out, investigate') comes from *chaqar*, meaning to search deeply, to probe, to investigate thoroughly. Jonathan is promising a genuine intelligence operation, not a casual observation. The phrase *galiti et oznekha* ('I will uncover your ear') repeats the idiom from verse 2 — the same intimacy Jonathan assumed his father showed him, he now promises to show David.
13. The self-curse formula is deliberately vague — *koh* ('thus') gestures toward an unspecified punishment too terrible to name. The phrase *ve-koh yosif* ('and may he add more') intensifies the curse beyond the unnamed first portion. This is the most solemn form of oath available.
13. Jonathan's blessing — 'may the LORD be with you as he was with my father' — is the chapter's most politically loaded sentence. It implicitly acknowledges that God's presence has departed from Saul and now rests on David. Jonathan the crown prince is pronouncing a transfer of divine legitimacy to the man who will replace his father on the throne. The word *ka'asher* ('as, in the same way') draws a direct equivalence between Saul's early anointing and David's current calling.
14. The syntax of this verse is difficult in Hebrew, with the negative particles creating a tangled conditional. Jonathan is asking David to extend *chesed* *YHWH* ('the faithful love of the LORD') to him — not ordinary kindness but the kind of loyal protection that God himself shows to covenant partners. The phrase *ve-lo amut* ('so that I do not die') reveals Jonathan's awareness that when David becomes king, Jonathan's life will be in danger. Ancient Near Eastern succession typically involved killing all potential rival claimants. Jonathan is asking David to break that pattern.
15. The scope of Jonathan's request is remarkable. He is not asking for a temporary favor but for a permanent policy: *ad olam* ('forever, to perpetuity'). The mention of 'cutting off enemies from the face of the earth' uses the language of total military victory — the same vocabulary applied to God's destruction of the wicked (Genesis 6-7). Jonathan foresees a world in which David has won completely and every rival is gone. In that world, only David's *chesed* will stand between Jonathan's family and annihilation.
15. This verse will be directly fulfilled in 2 Samuel 9, when David actively seeks out Jonathan's surviving son Mephibosheth and restores the house of Saul's land to him, declaring 'I will surely show you *chesed* for Jonathan your father's sake.'
16. The phrase 'cut a covenant with the house of David' is extraordinary because at this point David has no house — he is a fugitive. Jonathan is covenanting with a dynasty that exists only in prophetic anticipation. The language mirrors the Davidic covenant that God will establish in 2 Samuel 7, where *YHWH* promises to build David a 'house' (dynasty). Jonathan's covenant thus runs parallel to God's own future commitment.
16. The verb *biqqesh* ('to seek, to require, to call to account') when applied to God means divine reckoning. God will demand an accounting from anyone who breaks this covenant — the enforcement mechanism is not human justice but divine judgment.
17. The verse is saturated with the language of love: *be-ahavato oto* ('by his love for him') and *ki ahavat nafsho ahevo* ('because the love of his own life/soul he loved him'). The word *ahavah* ('love') appears in both its noun and verb forms. The phrase *ahavat nafsho* ('the love of his soul/life') means Jonathan loved David with the same intensity that a person loves their own existence — this is total identification, not merely affection. The verb *lehashbia* ('to make swear') means Jonathan administered an oath to David, binding David to the same covenantal commitments. The love is the motive; the oath is the binding mechanism.
18. Jonathan confirms the plan's timing: *machar chodesh* ('tomorrow is the New Moon'). The verb *nifqadta* ('you will be missed/noticed') is the Niphal (passive) form of *paqad* — David will be attended to, his absence will be registered. The phrase *ki yippaqed moshavekha* ('because your seat will be noticed empty') makes clear that the royal New Moon feast had assigned seating. David's empty chair will be a visible, conspicuous absence that demands explanation.

19. The phrase *ve-shilashta tered me'od* ('on the third day descend greatly/quickly') uses the verb *shillesh* ('to do on the third day') and *me'od* ('very, exceedingly') as an adverb of speed — Jonathan wants David to move fast. The reference to 'the day of the incident' (*yom ha-ma'aseh*) points to a previous meeting at this location, likely the events of chapter 19. The stone *Ezel* (*ha-even ha-azel*) may mean 'the stone of departure' or 'the stone that goes' — from the root *azal* ('to go away, to depart'). The name is fitting for a landmark that will mark David's permanent departure from Saul's court.
20. Jonathan introduces the arrow signal. The phrase *sheloshet ha-chitsim* ('three arrows') and the verb *oreh* ('I will shoot') set up the coded communication system. The word *tsiddah* ('to the side') indicates direction, and *le-mattarah* ('at a target') provides the cover story — Jonathan will appear to be practicing archery. The entire plan is an intelligence operation disguised as a routine training exercise.
21. The *na'ar* ('boy, attendant, servant') is an unwitting participant — he will not know he is carrying a coded message. The key signal for safety: *ha-chitsim mimmekha va-hennah* ('the arrows are on this side of you and toward here') — meaning the arrows fell short, close by. If the arrows are nearby, David can come out safely. Jonathan seals this with *chai YHWH* ('as the LORD lives'), the same oath formula David used in verse 3.
22. The danger signal: *ha-chitsim mimmekha va-hal'ah* ('the arrows are beyond you and farther') — meaning the arrows overshot, far away. The command *lekh* ('go!') doubles as both instruction to the boy and a warning to David. Most strikingly, Jonathan frames David's flight as divine action: *ki shillachakha YHWH* ('because the LORD has sent you away'). David's departure is not merely an escape from Saul; it is a divine commission. The verb *shillach* with God as subject carries the weight of prophetic sending.
23. Jonathan closes the oath with the definitive covenant formula: *hinneh YHWH beyni u-veynekha ad olam* ('the LORD is between me and you forever'). The preposition *beyn* ('between') positions God as the mediator, witness, and enforcer standing in the space between the two covenant partners. The phrase *ad olam* ('forever, to perpetuity') removes any time limit. This covenant does not expire when circumstances change, when one party gains power, or when the other dies. It is permanent because its guarantor is permanent.
24. The narrative shifts from dialogue to action: *vayyissater David ba-sadeh* ('and David hid himself in the field'). The verb *nistar* (Niphal of *satar*, 'to hide') conveys deliberate concealment. The scene then cuts to the royal feast: *vayyeshev ha-melekh el ha-lechem le-ekhol* ('and the king sat down at the bread/food to eat'). The word *lechem* means both 'bread' and 'food' more generally — this is the formal New Moon banquet, not a casual meal.
25. The seating arrangement reveals court hierarchy: Saul takes the seat by the wall (*moshav ha-qir*) — the protected position with his back guarded. Abner, the army commander, sits at Saul's side (*mi-tsad Sha'ul*). The phrase *vayyaqom Yehonatan* ('and Jonathan arose/stood') is puzzling — some read it as Jonathan standing to yield the seat beside Saul to Abner, others as Jonathan taking a different position. The Greek (LXX) reads 'Jonathan sat opposite' rather than 'arose.' The critical detail is the final clause: *vayyipaqed meqom David* ('and David's place was noticed empty'). The verb *paqad* appears again — the empty seat registers as a presence through its very absence.
26. Saul's internal reasoning (*ki amar*, 'because he said [to himself]') provides a plausible explanation for David's absence: *miqreh hu* ('it is an accident/occurrence') — something unexpected happened, and *bilti tahor hu ki lo tahor* ('he is not pure, for he is not clean'). The word *tahor* ('pure, clean') refers to ritual purity required for participation in sacred meals. Contact with a corpse, bodily discharge, or other sources of impurity (Leviticus 11-15) would disqualify someone from eating the sacrificial food. The repetition — *bilti tahor... ki lo tahor* — suggests Saul is convincing himself. On day one, he accepts the innocuous explanation.
27. The second day shatters Saul's ritual-purity theory — most impurities lasted only until evening (Leviticus 15:5-8), so a two-day absence demands a different explanation. Saul's question uses the patronymic *ben Yishai* ('son of Jesse') rather than David's name — a distancing gesture that reduces David to his family origin and strips him of the personal identity Saul once honored. The phrase *gam temol gam ha-yom* ('both yesterday and today') emphasizes the pattern: this is no accident.
28. Jonathan deploys the cover story exactly as David scripted it in verse 6. The infinitive absolute *nish'ol nish'al* ('he urgently asked, he emphatically requested') mirrors David's original phrasing precisely. The phrase *me'immedi* ('from me, from my presence') positions Jonathan as the authority who granted the leave — a subtle assertion of his own standing in the court hierarchy.
29. Jonathan embellishes David's script slightly — adding the detail that David's brother (*achi*) commanded his presence, which strengthens the cover story by making it about family obligation, not personal choice. The verb *immaltah* ('let me slip away, let me escape') is telling — it comes from *malat*, which means 'to escape, to deliver oneself.' Even in the fabricated speech, the vocabulary of flight bleeds through. The phrase *shulchan ha-melekh* ('the king's table') names the specific obligation David has violated: the royal table carries political and social weight far beyond a meal.
30. The maternal insult is culturally devastating. In the honor-shame matrix of the ancient Near East, attacking a man's mother was the deepest form of personal assault. The phrase strikes at Jonathan's identity, legitimacy, and family loyalty simultaneously. Saul is not merely angry; he is attempting to shame Jonathan into breaking the covenant with David.
30. The word *boshet* ('shame') will later be used as a substitute for 'Baal' in Israelite names (*Ish-bosheth* for *Ish-baal* in 2 Samuel 2:8). Its appearance here in connection with *ervah* ('nakedness') creates a cluster of shame-vocabulary that reveals Saul's view of Jonathan's choice: it is not merely politically wrong but morally obscene.
31. Saul names the political reality that drives his rage: *lo tikkon attah u-malkhutekha* ('you will not be established — you or your kingship'). The verb *tikkon* (from *kun*, 'to be firm, established, secure') is the same word used in God's promise to establish David's throne forever (2 Samuel 7:16). Saul perceives that David's survival means the end of his dynasty. The phrase *ben mavet hu* ('he is a son of death') is an idiom meaning 'he deserves to die' or 'he is marked for death' — it is a death sentence pronounced by the king.

31. Saul again uses ben Yishai ('son of Jesse') rather than David's name, three times in this exchange (verses 27, 30, 31). The patronymic is deliberate: Saul reduces David to his father's son, stripping him of the name and identity that Israel has come to honor.
32. Jonathan's response echoes David's own words from verse 1 — meḥ asah ('what has he done?') mirrors David's meḥ asiti ('what have I done?'). The verb yumat ('he shall be put to death') is the Hophal (causative passive) of mut — it refers to judicial execution, not casual killing. Jonathan is demanding legal grounds for a death sentence. By asking lammah ('why?'), Jonathan challenges his father to provide evidence that would justify execution under Israelite law. It is a brave and dangerous question to ask a king in a rage.
33. Saul answers Jonathan's legal question with a spear. The verb vayyatel ('he hurled') describes a violent throw — the same action Saul directed at David twice before (18:11, 19:10). Now he turns the weapon on his own son. The spear (chanit) is Saul's characteristic weapon throughout 1 Samuel, functioning almost as an extension of his disordered will. The clause vayyeda' Yehonatan ki khalah hi me'im aviv le-hamit et David ('and Jonathan knew that it was a completed thing from his father to kill David') uses the same word kaletah ('completed, determined') from verse 7 — the very word David predicted. Jonathan now has his answer: the test is over. The 'completed' evil David feared has been confirmed by the spear that nearly killed Jonathan himself.
34. Jonathan's departure from the table ba-chori af ('in burning anger') mirrors Saul's anger in verse 30 — father and son now share the same emotional intensity but directed in opposite directions. Jonathan's refusal to eat (lo akhal lechem) echoes Hannah's grief in 1:7 — not eating is the body's expression of grief too deep for words. The narrator provides two reasons: ki ne'etsav el David ('because he was grieved for David') and ki hikhlimo aviv ('because his father had shamed him'). The verb ne'etsav (from atsav, 'to grieve, to be pained') is the same word David used in verse 3 when predicting Jonathan would be devastated. The verb hikhlimo ('he had shamed/humiliated him') comes from kalam, meaning to wound through public disgrace.
35. The phrase le-mo'ed David ('at the appointed time of David') uses mo'ed — the same word used for the appointed festivals and the Tabernacle ('tent of meeting'). The scheduled rendezvous carries the weight of a sacred appointment. The na'ar qaton ('small boy') is deliberately chosen — young enough to be unaware of the signal's meaning. Jonathan has engineered the communication so that only he and David understand what is happening.
36. The boy runs first, then Jonathan shoots — the arrow flies over the running boy and lands beyond him. The verb le-ha'aviro ('to make it pass beyond him') uses the Hiphil (causative) ofavar, meaning Jonathan deliberately overshot. The signal is being transmitted: the arrow beyond means danger. The word chets (singular 'arrow') appears here though three arrows were mentioned in verse 20 — the singular may indicate the signal arrow that carries the coded message.
37. Jonathan delivers the danger signal: halo ha-chetsi mimmekha va-hal'ah ('is not the arrow beyond you and farther?'). These are the exact words from the prearranged code in verse 22. The boy hears an instruction about archery; David, hiding nearby, hears a death sentence confirmed. The double meaning is the chapter's most dramatic moment of dramatic irony — the same words carry two completely different messages depending on who is listening.
38. Jonathan adds urgency beyond the prearranged signal: meherah chushah al ta'amod ('hurry, be quick, do not stand still'). Three rapid commands — each one escalating the pace. These words serve double duty: they move the boy along so he does not linger near David's hiding place, and they communicate to David that the danger is immediate and flight must be swift. The boy gathers the arrows (ha-chitsim, plural — returning to the three arrows of verse 20) and returns to Jonathan with no awareness of what he has just participated in.
39. The narrator makes the dramatic irony explicit: ve-ha-na'ar lo yada' me'umah ('and the boy did not know anything'). The word me'umah ('anything, at all') is emphatic — the boy's ignorance is total. The contrast is sharp: akh Yehonatan ve-David yade'u et ha-davar ('only Jonathan and David knew the matter'). The verb yada' ('to know') connects to the chapter's opening, where Jonathan insisted he would know if Saul intended evil (verse 2). Now knowledge has been confirmed, transmitted, and received — and a boy who carried the message remains completely in the dark.
40. Jonathan hands over his kelav ('his equipment, his weapons') — the bow and arrows that served as the signal apparatus. The verb lekh havi ha-'ir ('go, bring them to the city') dismisses the boy and creates the privacy needed for what comes next. By surrendering his weapons, Jonathan is also symbolically disarming himself — he enters the farewell unarmed, vulnerable, stripped of the tools of the signal plan that has now served its purpose.
41. The phrase ad David higdil is ambiguous — it could mean 'until David wept more' or 'until David could take no more.' Most interpreters read it as David's grief exceeding Jonathan's in intensity. The verb gadal ('to be great, to grow') in the Hiphil means 'to make great, to exceed.' David, the one being sent into exile, grieves more than Jonathan, the one returning to the palace. This asymmetry reflects their different futures: Jonathan goes back to a doomed dynasty; David goes forward into suffering that will eventually become kingship.
41. The combination of formal prostration followed by mutual kissing and weeping moves from protocol to raw emotion. The three bows acknowledge Jonathan's rank and sacrifice; the tears acknowledge the human cost of what is happening.
42. The covenant formula in this verse is the chapter's theological climax. It mirrors Genesis 31:49 (the Mizpah benediction between Jacob and Laban: 'the LORD watch between me and you') but exceeds it by including descendants. This is a dynastic covenant — not merely a pact between two friends but a permanent treaty between two houses, guaranteed by the divine name.
42. The final narrative detail — 'David got up and left, and Jonathan went into the city' — is devastating in its simplicity. No further speech, no lingering. The two men go in opposite directions. David will spend the next decade as a fugitive; Jonathan will die with his father on Mount Gilboa (1 Samuel 31:2). They will never see each other again. The covenant they sealed in this chapter will be fulfilled posthumously when David shows chesed to

Jonathan's son Mephibosheth (2 Samuel 9).

21

Summary: *David, newly fugitive from Saul's court, arrives at the priestly city of Nob alone and desperate. He deceives the priest Ahimelech to obtain consecrated bread and Goliath's sword, is spotted by Saul's chief herdsman Doeg the Edomite, then flees south to the Philistine city of Gath — where he must feign madness to escape King Achish alive.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterclass in desperation theology. David, the anointed king-in-waiting, is reduced to lying to a priest, eating bread reserved for God's table, and scratching at door frames while drool runs down his beard. The text makes no effort to sanitize him. Yet Jesus himself reaches back to this chapter in Matthew 12:3-4 and Mark 2:25-26, citing David's eating of the bread of the Presence as a precedent for human need overriding ceremonial regulation — making this one of the few Old Testament narratives that Jesus explicitly interprets. The showbread episode also sets a trap: Doeg the Edomite witnesses everything at Nob, and his silent presence in verse 8 is a ticking bomb that will detonate in chapter 22 with the massacre of an entire priestly city. The chapter's architecture moves David through three stages of descent — from priest's sanctuary to enemy armory to madman's disguise — each one stripping away another layer of dignity from the man God chose.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from the English. WLC verse 1 corresponds to the end of KJV 20:42 or stands as a separate transitional verse; WLC verses 2-16 map to KJV 21:1-15. We follow the WLC versification as primary. The word lechem ha-panim ('bread of the Presence,' literally 'bread of the face') in verse 7 is theologically loaded — it is bread that exists 'before the face' of God, not merely decorative temple furniture. Rendering it as 'showbread' (following the KJV tradition) would obscure the relational theology embedded in the term: this bread symbolizes the perpetual covenant between God and Israel, set before God's presence. We render it as 'bread of the Presence' and explain the Hebrew construction in the notes. David's feigned madness before Achish (verses 14-16) uses the verb shinnah ('he changed, disguised'), the same root as the superscription of Psalm 34, which tradition links to this episode — though Psalm 34's heading names 'Abimelech' rather than Achish, a discrepancy scholars have long debated.*

Connections: *Jesus' citation of this episode in Matthew 12:3-4 and Mark 2:25-26 makes this chapter a hinge between Testaments — the principle that covenant mercy outweighs ceremonial restriction becomes a cornerstone of New Testament ethics. The bread of the Presence itself connects backward to Leviticus 24:5-9, where its weekly preparation is prescribed, and forward to the Last Supper tradition, where Jesus identifies bread with his own body. Goliath's sword reappearing here (verse 10) creates a narrative loop with 1 Samuel 17 — the weapon David refused to use is now the only weapon available to him in his flight from Israel's king. Doeg the Edomite, silently watching in verse 8, connects forward to the slaughter at Nob (22:18-19) and backward to the Edomite-Israelite tension that runs from Genesis 25 through Obadiah. David's madness performance before Achish connects to the Psalm 34 superscription and to the broader wisdom tradition's interest in the boundary between wisdom and folly — David survives by becoming what the wise despise.*

¹David rose and left, and Jonathan went back into the city. ²David came to Nob, to Ahimelech the priest. Ahimelech came out trembling to meet David and said to him, "Why are you alone? Why is no one with you?" ³David said to Ahimelech the priest, "The king has charged me with a matter and told me, 'No one is to know anything about the mission I am sending you on or what I have ordered you to do.' As for my men, I have directed them to meet me at a certain place." ⁴Now then, what do you have on hand? Give me five loaves of bread — or whatever you can find." ⁵The priest answered David, "There is no ordinary bread on hand — only consecrated bread, if your men have kept themselves from women." ⁶David answered the priest, "Women have certainly been kept from us for the past three days. Whenever I set out, my men's bodies are consecrated — even on an ordinary mission. How much more so today, when the bread will be made holy by being carried in their packs?" ⁷So the priest gave him consecrated bread, because there was no bread there except the bread of the Presence — the loaves that had been removed from before the LORD and replaced with warm bread on the day they were taken away.

⁸Now a man from Saul's servants was there that day, detained before the LORD — his name was Doeg the Edomite, the chief of Saul's herdsmen. ⁹David said to Ahimelech, "Is there a spear or a sword here that you could give me? I did not bring my own sword or any of my weapons, because the king's mission was urgent." ¹⁰The priest said, "The sword of Goliath the Philistine, whom you struck down in the Valley of Elah — it is here, wrapped in a cloth behind the ephod. If you want to take it, take it, because there is no other weapon here besides it." David said, "There is nothing like it. Give it to me." ¹¹David set out and fled that day from Saul, and he went to Achish, king of Gath. ¹²The servants of Achish said to him, "Is this not David, the king of the land? Is this not the one they sang about in their dances: 'Saul has struck down his thousands, and David his ten-thousands'?" ¹³David took these words to heart and became very afraid of Achish, king of Gath. ¹⁴He disguised his behavior in their presence and acted like a madman while in their custody — scratching on the doors of the gate and letting his saliva run down into his beard. ¹⁵Achish said to his servants, "Look — you can see the man is out of his mind. Why did you bring him to me? ¹⁶Am I so short of madmen that you had to bring this one to rave in front of me? Should this man be allowed into my house?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This transitional verse completes the farewell scene of chapter 20. The WLC places it as 21:1, while English Bibles typically attach it to 20:42 or number it differently. The stark brevity — two clauses, two men moving in opposite directions — captures the finality of the parting. The verb *vayyaqom vayyeilakh* ('he rose and went') is the standard departure formula, but its placement between the weeping embrace of 20:41 and David's arrival at Nob makes the silence between these movements deafening. Jonathan returns to the city (ha-ir, likely Gibeah, Saul's capital); David walks into the wilderness. Their paths will rarely cross again.
2. The verb *vayyecherad* ('he trembled') signals genuine fear, not mere surprise. The root *charad* describes the shaking response to something alarming — a priest trembling at the sight of David tells the reader something is already wrong. Nob was a priestly settlement near Jerusalem (Isaiah 10:32), apparently where the tabernacle and its priests had relocated after the destruction of Shiloh. Ahimelech's two questions — 'why are you alone?' and 'why is no one with you?' — are not redundant; the first asks why he lacks his military retinue, the second why he has no companion at all. A man of David's rank traveling utterly alone was deeply irregular and immediately suspicious.
3. David's lie is carefully constructed — he claims royal authority (ha-melekh tsivvani, 'the king commanded me') to explain both his secrecy and his lack of escort. The phrase *peloni almoni* ('a certain place,' literally 'such-and-such, so-and-so') is a Hebrew idiom for an unnamed or deliberately concealed location. It appears only here and in Ruth 4:1 and 2 Kings 6:8, always when the specific identity is being suppressed. David uses it to create the impression of a covert royal mission. The irony is bitter: the king has indeed sent David away, but to die, not on a mission. David's deception of the priest will have catastrophic consequences — Ahimelech's innocent cooperation will become the pretext for the massacre of Nob in chapter 22.
4. The phrase *tachat yadkha* ('under your hand') is an idiom meaning 'in your possession, available to you.' David asks specifically for five loaves (*chamisha lechem*), a modest amount suggesting he either has a small group to feed or is simply desperate and asking for what seems reasonable. The phrase *o ha-nimtsa* ('or whatever is found') reveals the urgency — David will take anything. He is not negotiating; he is begging. The number five may echo the five smooth stones David selected against Goliath (17:40), though the text does not make this connection explicit.
5. Ahimelech draws a sharp distinction between *lechem chol* ('ordinary bread,' literally 'profane bread') and *lechem qodesh* ('holy bread, consecrated bread'). The word *chol* is the opposite of *qodesh* — it describes what belongs to the common, everyday realm rather than the sacred. The priest's condition — *im nishmeru ha-ne'arim akh me-ishah* ('if the young men have kept themselves from women') — reflects the purity requirement of Leviticus 15:18, where sexual contact renders a person ritually unclean until evening. The priest is not making a moral judgment but a cultic one: contact with the holy requires ritual purity. This exchange becomes theologically significant when Jesus cites it to argue that human need creates a legitimate exception to ceremonial law (Matthew 12:3-4).
6. This verse is notoriously difficult to translate with certainty. The phrase *derekh chol* ('an ordinary way/mission') contrasts with the consecrated status David claims for his men. The argument seems to be: even on routine missions we observe purity disciplines, so a fortiori (*kal va-chomer*) we are pure enough for holy bread on this special mission. David may be lying about everything — his mission, his men, their purity status — but his ritual argument is technically sound, which is what makes the deception so effective.
6. The word *kelei-ha-ne'arim* ('the young men's vessels') likely serves as a euphemism for their bodies, as *kelei* functions elsewhere as a euphemism for male genitalia (1 Samuel 9:7, Isaiah 32:7 in some readings). David is assuring Ahimelech that his men are ritually clean in the specific sense the priest's question required.
7. The verb *lasum* ('to place, to set') describes the replacement of old bread with fresh loaves, confirming this took place on or near the Sabbath. The phrase *lechem chom* ('warm bread,' literally 'hot bread') suggests the replacement loaves were freshly baked, possibly that same morning. The entire transaction — holy bread given to a fugitive based on a lie — will be reinterpreted by Jesus not as David's sin but as God's provision, a reading that privileges mercy over ceremonial precision.

7. The construction *ha-musarim millifnei YHWH* ('removed from before the LORD') uses the Hophal participle of *sur* ('to turn aside, remove'), indicating the bread was formally taken away from the divine Presence. The preposition *millifnei* ('from before the face of') reinforces the spatial theology: this bread occupied the place directly before God and has now been handed to a hungry, desperate, lying fugitive.
8. This verse is a narrative time bomb. The phrase *ne'etsar lifnei YHWH* ('detained before the LORD') indicates Doeg was at the sanctuary under some form of ritual obligation — perhaps fulfilling a vow, undergoing purification, or observing a required period of worship. The irony is layered: Doeg is 'before the LORD' at the same moment David receives holy bread, and his presence will lead directly to the massacre of the priests who served before the LORD. The term *abbir ha-ro'im* ('chief of the herdsmen') uses *abbir*, which can mean 'mighty one, champion, chief' — the same word used for 'the Mighty One of Jacob' in Genesis 49:24. Applied to a herdsman, it likely means 'head herdsman' or 'foreman,' but the narrator may intend a subtle ironic elevation: this 'mighty one' among shepherds will prove to be a butcher of priests.
8. Doeg's identification as *ha-adomi* ('the Edomite') marks him as a foreigner in Saul's service. The Edomites, descendants of Esau (Genesis 36), had a fraught relationship with Israel. His foreign status may explain his willingness to do what Saul's Israelite servants refused to do in 22:17 — strike down the priests of the LORD.
9. David extends his deception — now claiming the king's mission was so urgent (*nachuts*, from the root *chuts* meaning 'to press, to hasten') that he left without weapons. The request for weapons from a priest would be unusual but not impossible, since sanctuaries sometimes housed war trophies and dedicated objects. The phrase *gam-charbi ve-gam-kelai* ('both my sword and my equipment') uses *gam...gam* ('both...and') to emphasize that he has absolutely nothing — no primary weapon, no backup, no gear at all. David the warrior-hero is completely unarmed. The stated reason — the king's urgency — adds another layer of bitter irony: the king indeed created this urgency, but by trying to pin David to the wall with a spear (18:11, 19:10), not by assigning him a mission.
10. The narrative creates a powerful loop: the sword David took from Goliath after defeating him with a sling and a stone (17:51) has been stored as a trophy at the sanctuary, wrapped in a *simlah* ('garment, cloth') behind the *ephod* — the priestly vestment used for inquiring of God. The weapon of Israel's greatest military victory rests behind the instrument of divine consultation. Now the hero who won that sword must reclaim it as a fugitive. David's response — *ein kamoha* ('there is none like it') — can be read as both practical assessment and emotional recognition. This is the sword that made him famous, the sword that proved God's power over Philistine might. Taking it now, while running from the king whose throne he saved, carries enormous ironic weight.
10. The verb *lutah* ('wrapped') from the root *lut* ('to wrap, to cover') indicates the sword was carefully preserved, not carelessly stored. The location *acharei ha-efod* ('behind the ephod') places it in the sacred precinct of the sanctuary, likely in a storage area near the priestly garments and instruments of worship.
11. The verb *vayyivrach* ('he fled') is blunt — the narrator does not soften David's flight. The man who once ran toward Goliath now runs from Saul to the Philistine city of Gath — Goliath's own hometown (17:4). David flees from Israel's king to the capital of Israel's enemy, carrying the sword of the champion he killed there. The situational irony could not be thicker. *Achish* (*akhish*) is likely the Philistine royal title or name attested in Egyptian sources as 'Ikausu' or similar. The Septuagint calls him 'Anchus.' Gath was one of the five Philistine city-states and the one most directly connected to the Goliath narrative.
12. The Philistine courtiers call David *melekh ha-arets* ('king of the land') — a title he does not yet hold. Either they are using the title loosely (as the champion or *de facto* leader) or their intelligence about Israel's internal politics is better than David expected. The song they quote — *hikkah Sha'ul ba-alafav ve-David be-rivevotav* ('Saul has struck his thousands and David his ten-thousands') — is the same victory chant from 18:7 that first provoked Saul's jealousy. The song that destroyed David's relationship with Saul now threatens to destroy David himself among the Philistines. What was a celebration in Israel is an intelligence report in Gath. The verb *ya'anu* ('they sang responsively,' from *anah*, 'to answer, to respond') indicates antiphonal singing — two groups calling and responding — which means the Philistines know not just the words but the performance style of the Israelite celebration.
13. The phrase *vayyasem et ha-devarim ha-elleh bilvavo* ('he placed these words in his heart') means David internalized the danger — he understood what the courtiers' recognition meant. The verb *vayyira me'od* ('he was very afraid') is the same construction used for Israel's terror before Goliath (17:24). The champion who was not afraid of the giant is now terrified of the giant's king. The phrase *mippnei akhish* ('from the face/presence of Achish') mirrors *mippnei Sha'ul* ('from Saul') in verse 11 — David is caught between two kings who both threaten his life. The Hebrew Bible does not romanticize David's fugitive period; he is genuinely, deeply afraid.
14. The verb *vayshanno* ('he changed, disguised') from the root *shanah* ('to change, to be different') is the same root found in the superscription of Psalm 34 (*le-David be-shannoto et ta'mo lifnei avimelekh*), which tradition connects to this episode — though the psalm names 'Abimelech' rather than Achish, a discrepancy that may reflect an alternate tradition or a Philistine throne-title. The word *ta'mo* ('his judgment, his sense, his behavior') from *ta'am* ('taste, discernment, good sense') indicates David altered not his appearance but his mental comportment — he made himself appear to have lost his capacity for rational behavior.
14. The physical details are deliberately degrading: *vaytav al daltot ha-sha'ar* ('he scratched/made marks on the gate doors') and *vayyored ro el zeqano* ('he let his drool run down onto his beard'). The verb *tav* means to make marks or scratch, and *rir* is saliva or drool. The future king of Israel, carrying the sword of Goliath, is scratching at doors and drooling. The narrator spares David no dignity. This is survival by humiliation.
15. The participle *mishtage'a* ('acting insane, behaving as a madman') from the root *shaga* ('to be mad, to go insane') is in the Hithpael form, which can indicate either genuine madness or pretended madness — the form itself is ambiguous, which serves David's purpose perfectly. Achish's irritation is directed at his servants, not at David — the deception has worked. The question *lammah tavi'u oto elai* ('why did you bring him to me?') implies

David was escorted or reported to the king rather than arriving of his own accord. Achish sees not a dangerous enemy warrior but a pathetic lunatic — exactly the perception David constructed.

16. Achish's retort is laced with sarcasm: *chasar meshugga'im ani* ('am I lacking madmen?') uses *chasar* ('to lack, to be short of') with the plural *meshugga'im* ('madmen, insane people'). The implication is that he already has enough unstable people in his court without adding another. The verb *lehishtage'a* ('to act insane') repeats the Hithpael form from verse 15, and the preposition *alay* ('upon me, in my presence') suggests David's performance was directed at or in front of Achish personally. The final rhetorical question — *hazeh yavo el beiti* ('shall this one come into my house?') — is David's salvation. 'My house' could mean either Achish's palace or his household. The king dismisses David as beneath concern, which is precisely the verdict David was performing toward. The anointed king of Israel escapes the Philistine court by being deemed too worthless to detain.

22

Summary: *David flees from Gath to the cave of Adullam, where his family and a ragged company of debtors, outcasts, and desperate men gather around him. He secures his parents' safety with the king of Moab, then returns to Judah on the prophet Gad's instruction. Meanwhile, Saul accuses his own Benjaminite officials of conspiring with David, and Doeg the Edomite reports that the priest Ahimelech aided David at Nob. Saul summons the entire priestly house and orders their execution. When his own guards refuse to strike the LORD's priests, Doeg carries out the slaughter — killing eighty-five priests and annihilating the town of Nob with the same total warfare Saul refused to apply to Amalek. Only Abiathar, son of Ahimelech, escapes and flees to David, who accepts responsibility for the massacre and pledges to protect him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most devastating ironies in all of Scripture. In chapter 15, Saul was stripped of the kingship because he refused to carry out *cherem* — the complete destruction of Amalek. Here, Saul inflicts that same total destruction on an Israelite priestly city: men, women, children, infants, and livestock (v. 19). The Hebrew phrasing in verse 19 — *me-ish ve-ad ishah, me-olel ve-ad yoneq, ve-shor va-chamor va-seh* — deliberately echoes the language of the Amalek ban in 15:3. Saul would not do to Israel's enemy what he now does to Israel's priests. The man who spared Agag butchers the servants of God. The chapter also marks the birth of David's band — the four hundred misfits who will become his core fighting force and eventually form the backbone of his kingdom. That God builds a monarchy from debtors and fugitives is consistent with the entire biblical pattern: power forged from the discarded.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 2 describes David's followers with three Hebrew terms — *kol ish matsoq, kol ish asher lo noshe, kol ish mar nefesh* ('every man in distress, every man in debt, every man bitter of soul'). These are not flattering descriptions. The future king's first subjects are society's rejects. We render these categories plainly rather than softening them, because the text intends the contrast between this ragged assembly and the royal court Saul commands. In verse 17, Saul orders his runners (*ratsim*, the royal guard) to kill the priests, and they refuse — *ki lo avu* ('they were not willing'). The same verb of refusal (*avah*) was used when Saul's soldiers would not destroy the best livestock of Amalek (15:9). The verb links both acts of disobedience, but with opposite moral valences: the soldiers' refusal here is righteous, while their earlier refusal was sinful. David's confession in verse 22 — *anokhi sabboti be-khol nefesh bet avikha* ('I am the one who caused the death of every person in your father's house') — raises the question of moral responsibility. David did not wield the sword, but he recognizes that his deception at Nob set the chain of events in motion. We translate *sabboti* as 'I am responsible for' rather than the weaker 'I have occasioned' to preserve the weight of David's self-accusation.*

Connections: *The destruction of the priestly city of Nob fulfills the curse pronounced on the house of Eli (2:27-36, 3:11-14). The priestly line that was told 'all the increase of your house shall die by the sword' now perishes at Doeg's blade. Abiathar's survival as the lone priest carrying the ephod connects forward to David's repeated use of priestly inquiry (23:6-12, 30:7-8) and ultimately to Solomon's removal of Abiathar from the priesthood (1 Kings 2:26-27), which the narrator calls the final fulfillment of the word against Eli's house. David's cave at Adullam becomes the subject of Psalm 142 (titled 'when he was in the cave') and possibly Psalm 57 ('when he fled from Saul, in the cave'). His placement of his parents in Moab recalls Ruth's Moabite ancestry — David's great-grandmother was Ruth the Moabitess (Ruth 4:17), so he is sending his family to their ancestral kin. The four hundred men who gather to David here will grow to six hundred (23:13, 27:2) and become the 'mighty men' catalogued in 2 Samuel 23.*

¹David left that place and took refuge in the cave of Adullam. When his brothers and his entire father's household heard, they went down to him there. ²Every man in distress, every man crushed by debt, and every man bitter in spirit gathered around him. He became their commander, and about four hundred men were with him. ³From there David went to Mizpeh in Moab and said to the king of Moab, "Please let my father and mother come and stay with you until I know what God will do with me." ⁴He brought them before the king of Moab, and they stayed with him the entire time David was in the stronghold. ⁵The prophet Gad said to David, "Do not stay in the stronghold. Go — enter the land of Judah." So David left and came to the forest of Hereth. ⁶Saul heard that David and his men had been located. Saul was sitting in Gibeah under the tamarisk tree on the height, his spear in his hand, with all his officials standing around him. ⁷Saul said to his officials standing around him, "Listen, men of Benjamin! Will the son of Jesse give all of you fields and vineyards? Will he make all of you commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds? ⁸Is that why you have all conspired against me? Not one of you told me when my own son made a pact with the son of Jesse. Not one of you is troubled on my behalf or tells me that my son has set my servant against me to ambush me, as he does today." ⁹Doeg the Edomite, who was stationed among Saul's officials, spoke up: "I saw the son of Jesse come to Nob, to Ahimelech son of Ahitub. ¹⁰He inquired of the LORD for him, gave him provisions, and gave him the sword of Goliath the Philistine." ¹¹The king summoned Ahimelech the priest, son of Ahitub, along with his entire father's house — the priests who were at Nob. They all came before the king. ¹²Saul said, "Listen, son of Ahitub." He answered, "Here I am, my lord." ¹³Saul said to him, "Why have you conspired against me — you and the son of Jesse? You gave him bread and a sword and inquired of God on his behalf, so that he could rise against me and lie in ambush, as he does today." ¹⁴Ahimelech answered the king: "And who among all your servants is as trusted as David — the king's own son-in-law, who serves at your command and is honored in your household? ¹⁵Was that day the first time I inquired of God for him? Absolutely not! Let the king not bring any charge against his servant or anyone in my father's house, because your servant knew nothing at all about any of this — nothing small or great." ¹⁶The king said, "You will certainly die, Ahimelech — you and your father's entire house." ¹⁷The king ordered the guards stationed around him, "Turn and kill the priests of the LORD, because they too sided with David. They knew he was fleeing and did not tell me." But the king's servants refused to raise their hand against the priests of the LORD. ¹⁸The king said to Doeg, "You — turn and strike down the priests." Doeg the Edomite turned and struck them down himself. He killed eighty-five men that day, each one a wearer of the linen ephod. ¹⁹He also struck down Nob, the city of the priests, with the sword — men and women, children and nursing infants, oxen, donkeys, and sheep — all by the sword. ²⁰But one son of Ahimelech son of Ahitub escaped. His name was Abiathar, and he fled to David. ²¹Abiathar told David that Saul had killed the priests of the LORD. ²²David said to Abiathar, "I knew that day — when Doeg the Edomite was there — that he would certainly report to Saul. I am responsible for the death of every person in your father's house. ²³Stay with me. Do not be afraid, because whoever seeks my life seeks yours as well. You are under my protection."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayimmalet* ('he escaped, he slipped away') carries the sense of slipping out of danger, narrowly evading capture. It implies urgency and relief. The cave of Adullam (*me'arat Adullam*) sits in the Shephelah, the low hill country between the coastal plain and the Judean highlands — strategically positioned for both defense and flight. The name Adullam may derive from a root meaning 'justice' or 'retreat.'
1. That David's entire father's house comes to him indicates that Saul's hostility now threatens the whole family. Jesse's household is no longer safe in Bethlehem. The descent of David's family to a cave marks the inversion of their status: a family that was hosting the king's son-in-law is now hiding as fugitives.
2. The three categories describe Israel's underclass. The word *matsoq* ('distress, pressure') suggests being squeezed or confined — men trapped by circumstances. The phrase *asher lo noshe* ('who had a creditor') identifies men in financial ruin, possibly facing debt slavery under Israelite law (Exodus 21:2-7, Deuteronomy 15:1-2). The phrase *mar nefesh* ('bitter of soul') describes men whose inner life has soured — men broken by grief, injustice, or despair. The same phrase described Hannah in 1:10.
2. That David becomes *sar* ('commander, chief') over this group transforms a collection of fugitives into a military unit. The number four hundred is significant — it represents a substantial fighting force in Iron Age Israel, roughly the size of a tribal militia. David is building an alternative power base outside Saul's control, composed of men who have nothing left to lose.

3. Mizpeh (Mitspeh) means 'watchtower' or 'lookout point' — a common place name in the ancient Near East. David's decision to shelter his parents in Moab reflects the family's Moabite connection through Ruth (Ruth 4:13-17). Jesse's grandmother was a Moabite woman, making this not a plea to strangers but an appeal to extended kin.
3. The phrase *ad asher eda mah ya'aseh li Elohim* ('until I know what God will do with/for me') uses the general term *Elohim* rather than the covenant name *YHWH*. David acknowledges divine sovereignty over his situation while expressing genuine uncertainty about the outcome. The verb *eda* ('I will know') implies that David is waiting for divine clarity, not acting on his own plan.
4. The verb *vayyanichem* ('he led them, he settled them') comes from *nachah* ('to lead, to guide'), suggesting David personally escorted his parents to safety. The phrase *kol yemei heyot David ba-metsudah* ('all the days of David's being in the stronghold') introduces the key term *metsudah*.
4. The *metsudah* ('stronghold, fortress') could refer to the cave of Adullam itself, to a separate fortified position in the Judean wilderness, or even to Masada. The term implies a naturally defensible location — a rocky height or walled refuge. David's time in the *metsudah* represents his period of fugitive leadership before he establishes a more permanent base.
5. Gad the prophet appears here without introduction, suggesting he was already attached to David's company. He will later serve as David's seer during his reign (2 Samuel 24:11). His instruction — *lo teshev ba-metsudah* ('do not sit/stay in the stronghold') — uses the verb *yashav*, which can mean 'sit, dwell, remain.' The command is to stop hiding and reenter covenant territory.
5. The directive *lekha u-vata lekha erets Yehudah* ('go and come for yourself into the land of Judah') sends David back into the tribal territory where he will eventually be crowned king (2 Samuel 2:4). The prophet is pushing David out of defensive isolation and into the arena where God's promises will unfold. The forest of Hereth (*ya'ar Charet*) is otherwise unknown; the name may derive from *charut* ('engraved') or *charah* ('to burn'). It was likely dense woodland in the Judean hills providing natural cover.
6. The scene shifts abruptly from David's fugitive camp to Saul's court. The image is carefully composed: Saul sits under the *eshel* (tamarisk tree) — the same kind of tree under which he will be buried (31:13). His spear (*chanit*) is in his hand, the weapon he has already hurled at David twice (18:11, 19:10). The spear has become Saul's signature prop, symbolizing his volatile authority.
6. The word *ba-ramah* ('on the height') may refer to the town of Ramah or simply to an elevated spot — a high place where the king holds court. The phrase *kol avadav nitsavim alav* ('all his servants standing over/around him') describes a formal court scene. The verb *nitsavim* ('standing, stationed') implies soldiers or officials at attention. Saul is surrounded by loyalty, yet consumed by suspicion.
7. Saul appeals to tribal loyalty by addressing his court as *benei Yemini* ('sons of Benjamin, Benjaminites'). This reveals that his inner circle is drawn primarily from his own tribe — and that he fears losing them to David. The phrase *ben Yishai* ('son of Jesse') is deliberately dismissive: Saul refuses to use David's name, reducing him to his father's son, a nobody from Bethlehem.
7. The gifts Saul describes — *sadot u-kheramim* ('fields and vineyards') and military rank — are the standard rewards a king bestows on loyal followers. Saul is essentially asking: 'What can David offer you that I cannot?' The question betrays both his political calculation and his paranoid insecurity. He assumes loyalty is transactional and fears being outbid.
8. The phrase *galah et ozni* ('uncover my ear') is an idiom meaning 'to inform, to reveal a secret to.' It pictures lifting the hair or headdress away from someone's ear to whisper confidential information. Saul uses it twice, emphasizing his sense of isolation. The verb *choleh* ('is sick, is pained') here means 'is troubled, grieves' — Saul accuses his officials of emotional indifference to his suffering.
8. Saul's accusation mixes legitimate intelligence (Jonathan and David did make a covenant, 18:3, 20:16-17) with paranoid distortion. The word *le-orev* ('to ambush, to lie in wait') mischaracterizes David's defensive flight as offensive aggression. Saul is rewriting reality to match his fear. The phrase *ka-yom ha-zeh* ('as on this day, as it is today') expresses Saul's sense that the conspiracy is ongoing and current.
9. Doeg (Do'eg) was introduced in 21:8 as 'detained before the LORD' at Nob — he was present when David deceived Ahimelech. The designation *ha-Adomi* ('the Edomite') marks him as a foreigner in Saul's service. That an Edomite serves in Saul's court is unremarkable for the period, but the narrator's consistent use of the ethnic label keeps his outsider status visible. His willingness to strike priests that Israelite soldiers refuse to touch (v. 18) will be connected to his non-Israelite identity.
9. Doeg adopts Saul's dismissive language — *ben Yishai* ('son of Jesse') rather than David's name — aligning himself with the king's perspective. His report is factually accurate but presented in a way designed to implicate Ahimelech in conspiracy.
10. Doeg's report lists three acts of priestly aid: (1) *sha'al lo ba-YHWH* ('he inquired of the LORD for him') — this refers to consulting the divine oracle, likely through the ephod and its Urim and Thummim; (2) *tseidah natan lo* ('he gave him provisions') — the consecrated bread from chapter 21; (3) *cherev Golyat natan lo* ('he gave him Goliath's sword'). Each act, presented neutrally by the narrator in chapter 21, now becomes evidence of conspiracy in Doeg's telling.
10. It is debated whether Ahimelech actually inquired of the LORD for David in chapter 21, where no such inquiry is explicitly mentioned. Either Doeg is embellishing, or the narrator omitted the detail earlier. Ahimelech will deny this charge in verse 15, claiming that inquiring on David's behalf was routine — not evidence of a conspiracy.
11. Saul summons not just Ahimelech but *kol beit aviv ha-kohanim asher be-Nov* ('all his father's house, the priests who were in Nob'). This is the entire priestly establishment at Nob — the community that had assumed the sanctuary role after Shiloh's destruction. That they all come voluntarily suggests they have no awareness of danger; they respond to a royal summons as loyal subjects.

11. The phrase *vayavo'u khullam el ha-melekh* ('they all came to the king') is heavy with dramatic irony. The priests come in obedience to royal authority, not knowing they are walking into a death sentence. The narrator's simple statement underscores the horror that follows.
12. Saul again uses a patronymic rather than the man's name — *ben Achituv* ('son of Ahitub') instead of Ahimelech. This may be dismissive or may reflect court formality, but given Saul's pattern of calling David 'son of Jesse,' it reads as deliberate depersonalization. You strip a man of his name before you strip him of his life.
12. Ahimelech's response — *hinneni adoni* ('Here I am, my lord') — uses the same word (*hinneni*) that Abraham used before God (Genesis 22:1) and that Samuel used as a child (3:4). It is a declaration of availability, of readiness to serve. The irony is devastating: the priest presents himself in obedience to a king who intends to destroy him.
13. Saul's accusation reframes every act of priestly hospitality as conspiracy (*qesher*). The verb *qasharthem* ('you conspired') is the same root used for political rebellion throughout Kings and Chronicles. By using it, Saul elevates Ahimelech's assistance from naivete to treason. The three charges — bread, sword, and divine inquiry — exactly mirror Doeg's report in verse 10 but in a different order, placing the mundane provisions first and building to the spiritual charge.
13. The phrase *la-qum elai le-orev* ('to rise against me to ambush') again distorts David's flight into offensive aggression. Saul interprets every event through the lens of conspiracy. The structural irony is that Ahimelech was deceived by David (21:2) — he assisted David precisely because he believed David was on royal business.
14. Ahimelech's defense is both courageous and logical. He lists David's credentials: *ne'eman* ('faithful, trusted') — the highest commendation for a royal servant; *chatan ha-melekh* ('the king's son-in-law') — bound to the crown by marriage; *sar el mishma'tekha* ('turns to your obedience, serves at your command') — obedient to royal orders; *nikhbad be-veitekha* ('honored in your house') — holding an esteemed position at court.
14. Every point Ahimelech makes is factually true from his perspective. He had no reason to suspect David was a fugitive. His defense implicitly challenges Saul: if David held all these positions of trust, why would a priest suspect him of treason? Ahimelech is defending not only himself but the reasonableness of trusting the king's own arrangements.
15. Ahimelech's defense of the divine inquiry is revealing: *ha-yom hachilloti lish'ol lo ve-Elohim* ('Was today the beginning of my inquiring of God for him?'). He claims this was routine — he had consulted God on David's behalf before, presumably as an authorized royal officer. The word *chalilah* ('far be it, God forbid') is a strong oath of denial.
15. The phrase *davar qaton o gadol* ('a small thing or a great thing') is a merism meaning 'absolutely nothing at all.' Ahimelech's plea of total innocence is emphatic: he knew nothing about any rift between Saul and David. His defense is convincing, but it will not save him. Saul has already made his decision — the trial is a performance, not a proceeding.
16. The sentence *mot tamut* ('dying you will die') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute construction — the same formula God used in Eden: 'you shall surely die' (Genesis 2:17). Saul speaks with the finality of a divine decree, but he is pronouncing it against God's own priests. The sentence extends beyond Ahimelech to *kol beit avikha* ('all your father's house') — collective punishment of an entire priestly clan for the alleged actions of one man.
16. The brevity of the sentence is itself terrifying. Ahimelech has just offered a careful, logical defense. Saul responds with six Hebrew words that condemn an entire family to death. No deliberation, no counter-argument, no witnesses beyond Doeg. This is royal power exercised without restraint.
17. The *ratsim* ('runners') are the royal guard — elite soldiers who serve as the king's bodyguard and executioners. Saul orders them to kill *kohanei YHWH* ('priests of the LORD') — the text emphasizes the title twice in this verse. The narrator wants the reader to feel the full weight of what Saul is demanding: the execution of God's consecrated servants.
17. The guards' refusal — *lo avu avdei ha-melekh lishloch et yadam lifgo'a be-khohanei YHWH* ('the king's servants were not willing to extend their hand to strike the priests of the LORD') — is an act of conscience that defies royal command. The verb *avah* ('to be willing, to consent') indicates a moral choice, not inability. These soldiers, who would kill in battle without hesitation, recognize a boundary that their king does not. The irony is sharp: Saul's own men show more reverence for God's servants than Saul does.
18. When Israelite soldiers refuse, Saul turns to the Edomite. The verb *paga* ('to strike, to encounter, to fall upon') carries lethal force here — it is the same verb used for judicial execution. Doeg does not hesitate. The narrator specifies: *vayipga hu* ('he himself struck') — the pronoun *hu* is emphatic, underscoring that Doeg personally carried out the killing.
18. The eighty-five victims are identified as *nosei efod bad* ('wearers of the linen ephod'). The *efod bad* was the distinctive garment of active priestly service — a linen vestment worn during sanctuary duties. By specifying this detail, the narrator ensures the reader understands that these were not random citizens but consecrated ministers in full priestly status. The slaughter of eighty-five serving priests in a single day is an atrocity without parallel in the biblical record.
19. The formula *me-ish ve-ad isah, me-olel ve-ad yoneq, ve-shor va-chamor va-seh* ('from man to woman, from child to nursing infant, and ox and donkey and sheep') is the language of total annihilation — *cherem* warfare. This exact catalogue echoes the command given to Saul regarding Amalek in 15:3. The devastating irony is the chapter's central theological claim: Saul, who was rejected as king because he refused to carry out the ban against Israel's enemies, now inflicts that same ban on an Israelite city of priests.

19. The phrase *le-fi cherev* ('by the mouth of the sword') appears twice in the verse, bracketing the list of victims. The sword's 'mouth' is a Hebrew metaphor — the blade devours its victims. Nob, which had become the priestly center after Shiloh's destruction, is itself now destroyed. The cycle of sanctuary devastation continues: Shiloh fell to the Philistines, and Nob falls to Israel's own king.
20. The verb *vayimmalet* ('he escaped') is the same word used for David's escape to Adullam in verse 1 — the chapter is bookended by narrow escapes. Abiathar (Evyatar) means 'my father is great' or 'the father excels,' a name that now carries painful irony: his father has just been killed.
20. Abiathar's escape preserves a thread of the priestly line and, critically, he will bring the ephod with him (23:6), giving David access to divine oracular guidance that Saul has just destroyed for himself. By massacring the priests, Saul has cut himself off from the very means of consulting God, while David now gains that access through the sole survivor. Saul's violence against the priesthood becomes the mechanism of his own spiritual isolation.
21. The verb *vayyagad* ('he told, he reported') indicates a formal disclosure of terrible news. Abiathar's report is compressed to its essence: *harag Sha'ul et kohanei YHWH* ('Saul killed the priests of the LORD'). The narrator again uses the full title *kohanei YHWH* rather than simply 'the priests,' keeping the theological horror of the act in view. Saul has killed not merely men, but men who belonged to God.
22. David's confession — *anokhi sabboti be-khol nefesh beit avikha* ('I am the one who turned/caused regarding every life of your father's house') — is remarkable for its moral clarity. The verb *sabboti* (from *savav*, 'to turn, to cause to turn') here means 'I set in motion, I am responsible for.' David does not blame Saul, Doeg, or circumstances. He accepts that his deception at Nob (21:1-9) created the chain of events that led to the massacre.
22. The phrase *ki haged yaggid le-Sha'ul* ('that telling he would tell Saul') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute — David had been certain of Doeg's betrayal but acted anyway. This intensifies his guilt: he saw the danger, proceeded regardless, and now eighty-five men and an entire city are dead. David's willingness to own this distinguishes him sharply from Saul, who consistently deflects blame (13:11-12, 15:15, 15:21).
23. David's final words to Abiathar contain a promise that binds their fates together: *asher yevaquesh et nafshi yevaquesh et nafshekha* ('whoever seeks my life seeks your life'). The verb *biqesh* ('to seek') is the same word used throughout the Saul-David conflict for Saul's pursuit of David's life. David recognizes that the priest and the fugitive king are now joined by a common enemy.
23. The closing phrase *ki mishmeret attah immadi* ('for you are a guarded one with me') uses *mishmeret*, a term from the sanctuary vocabulary meaning 'guard duty, protective charge, sacred trust.' David is not merely offering Abiathar a hiding place — he is placing the priest under his solemn charge, using language that evokes the Levitical guard of the tabernacle. The hunter becomes the guardian. The chapter ends with the last priest of Nob under the protection of the man whose deception destroyed Nob — a covenant of shared guilt and shared survival.

23

Summary: *David receives word that the Philistines are raiding the threshing floors of Keilah and inquires of the LORD twice before going to rescue the town. After the victory, Saul learns David is in Keilah and mobilizes for siege. David inquires of the LORD a third time through Abiathar's ephod and learns that the citizens of Keilah will surrender him to Saul. David and his six hundred men flee into the wilderness of Ziph. There Jonathan comes to David one final time and strengthens his hand in God, and the two renew their covenant. The Ziphites betray David's location to Saul. Saul closes in on David at the Rock of Division in the wilderness of Maon, but a Philistine raid forces Saul to break off pursuit at the last possible moment. David escapes to the strongholds of En-gedi.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is built on two opposing verbs of seeking: *sha'al* (to inquire, to ask of God) and *biqesh* (to seek, to hunt). David *sha'al*-s the LORD three times (verses 2, 4, and the sequence at verses 10-12), each time receiving clear divine guidance. Saul *biqesh*-s David throughout the chapter (verses 14, 15, 25) but never once inquires of the LORD. The contrast is devastating: the man God rejected consults no one but his own paranoia, while the fugitive anointed one submits every decision to divine inquiry. The chapter also contains the last meeting between David and Jonathan, compressed into two verses (16-18) that carry enormous emotional weight. Jonathan's act of 'strengthening David's hand in God' is a priestly act performed by a prince — he ministers to David's faith at the cost of his own future, openly acknowledging that David will be king and that he himself will be second. They will never meet again. The chapter's climactic scene at the Rock of Division (*sela ha-machlekot*) is a masterpiece of narrative suspense: Saul and David are on opposite sides of the same mountain, Saul closing in, when a messenger arrives with news of a Philistine attack. Providence intervenes at the seam between capture and escape.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 presents a textual difficulty: it says that when Abiathar fled to David at Keilah, 'an ephod came down in his hand.' This note appears to be an editorial insertion clarifying how David had access to priestly inquiry — Abiathar brought the ephod from Nob. But the narrative timeline is complicated: Abiathar's flight was narrated in 22:20-23, apparently before the Keilah episode. Some scholars argue*

that 23:6 is a displaced note or that the events overlap chronologically. We render the verse as it stands, treating it as the narrator's parenthetical explanation. The Ziphites' betrayal (verses 19-20) raises the question of why Judahites would betray David to Saul. The answer likely involves Saul's threat to their safety and the political reality that harboring a fugitive endangered the entire community. David's escape in verse 28 is narrated with almost frustrating brevity — the theological claim is clear (God delivered him) but the mechanics are left to the reader's imagination.

Connections: David's repeated inquiries of the LORD through the ephod connect backward to the legitimate priesthood destroyed at Nob (chapter 22) and forward to David's consistent pattern of seeking God before acting (2 Samuel 2:1, 5:19, 5:23). Saul's failure to inquire connects to his final desperate consultation of the medium at Endor (chapter 28), where he seeks guidance from the dead because the LORD will not answer him. Jonathan's words in verse 17 — 'you will be king over Israel, and I will be second to you' — recall the original anointing of David in chapter 16 and anticipate the covenant theology of the Davidic line (2 Samuel 7). The Rock of Division prefigures the psalm tradition of God as rock and refuge (Psalm 18, which is attributed to David's deliverance from Saul). The Ziphites' betrayal is remembered in the superscription of Psalm 54: 'When the Ziphites went and told Saul, David is hiding among us.'

¹They reported to David, "The Philistines are attacking Keilah and plundering the threshing floors." ²David inquired of the LORD, saying, "Should I go and strike these Philistines?" The LORD said to David, "Go. Strike the Philistines and rescue Keilah." ³But David's men said to him, "We are already afraid here in Judah. How much more if we go to Keilah against the battle lines of the Philistines!" ⁴So David inquired of the LORD a second time. The LORD answered him and said, "Get up. Go down to Keilah, because I am giving the Philistines into your hand." ⁵David and his men went to Keilah, fought the Philistines, drove off their livestock, and struck them with a devastating blow. David rescued the inhabitants of Keilah. ⁶Now when Abiathar son of Ahimelech fled to David at Keilah, an ephod had come down in his hand. ⁷When Saul was told that David had come to Keilah, Saul said, "God has handed him over to me, because he has trapped himself by entering a town with double gates and a bar." ⁸Saul summoned all the troops to war, to march down to Keilah and besiege David and his men. ⁹David learned that Saul was forging evil against him in secret. He said to Abiathar the priest, "Bring the ephod here." ¹⁰David said, "O LORD, God of Israel, your servant has heard with certainty that Saul is seeking to come to Keilah to destroy the city on my account." ¹¹"Will the citizens of Keilah hand me over to him? Will Saul come down, as your servant has heard? O LORD, God of Israel, please tell your servant." The LORD said, "He will come down." ¹²David said, "Will the citizens of Keilah surrender me and my men into the hand of Saul?" The LORD said, "They will surrender you." ¹³David and his men — about six hundred — got up, left Keilah, and moved from place to place wherever they could go. When Saul was told that David had escaped from Keilah, he abandoned the expedition. ¹⁴David settled in the wilderness, in the strongholds, and he stayed in the hill country of the wilderness of Ziph. Saul hunted for him every day, but God did not give him into his hand. ¹⁵David saw that Saul had marched out to seek his life. David was in the wilderness of Ziph, at Horesh. ¹⁶Jonathan son of Saul set out and went to David at Horesh, and he strengthened his hand in God. ¹⁷He said to him, "Do not be afraid, because the hand of Saul my father will not reach you. You will reign as king over Israel, and I will be second to you — and even Saul my father knows this." ¹⁸The two of them cut a covenant before the LORD. David stayed at Horesh, and Jonathan went home. ¹⁹Then the Ziphites went up to Saul at Gibeah and said, "Is David not hiding among us in the strongholds at Horesh, on the hill of Hachilah, south of the wasteland?" ²⁰So now, whenever your soul desires to come down, O king, come down — and it will be our task to surrender him into the king's hand. ²¹Saul said, "May you be blessed by the LORD, for you have shown compassion to me." ²²"Go now, make further preparations. Learn and observe his exact location — where his feet tread, and who has seen him there. For I have been told that he is extremely cunning." ²³"Observe and learn every hiding place where he conceals himself, then return to me with certain information. I will go with you, and if he is anywhere in the land, I will search him out among all the clans of Judah." ²⁴They set out and went to Ziph ahead of Saul. David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah south of the wasteland. ²⁵Saul and his men went to hunt for him. When David was told, he went down to the rock and stayed in the wilderness of Maon. Saul heard this and pursued David into the wilderness of Maon. ²⁶Saul moved along one side of the mountain, and David and his men along the other side. David was racing to escape

from Saul, while Saul and his men were closing in around David and his men to capture them. ²⁷Then a messenger came to Saul: "Hurry! Come quickly! The Philistines have raided the land!" ²⁸Saul turned back from pursuing David and went to confront the Philistines. That is why they called that place the Rock of Division. ²⁹David went up from there and settled in the strongholds of En-gedi.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *shosim* ('plundering') describes the systematic stripping of grain at the most vulnerable moment — when it has been harvested and is being processed at the open-air threshing floors. This is economic warfare: seize the food supply at the point of maximum exposure. Keilah was a fortified town in the Judean lowlands (Shephelah), near Philistine territory. David, himself a fugitive with no settled base, receives intelligence about a town under attack — placing him in the position of deciding whether a man on the run can afford to fight someone else's war.
2. The verb *sha'al* ('inquired') is the same root as Saul's name (Sha'ul, 'asked for'). The irony pervades the chapter: David does what Saul's name implies but Saul himself never does. David asks God; Saul asks no one. The medium of inquiry is likely the Urim and Thummim associated with the priestly ephod, though the text does not specify the method until verse 6 clarifies that Abiathar brought the ephod.
2. God's response adds a dimension David did not ask about: *vehoshata et-Qe'ilah* ('and you will rescue Keilah'). David asked only whether he should go and fight; God answers with a mission that extends beyond military victory to the salvation of a community. This pattern — David acting as protector of vulnerable Israelites while Saul hunts him — is the chapter's central irony.
3. The men's objection follows a *qal va-chomer* ('light and heavy') argument — a logical escalation that would become a standard rabbinic reasoning form. If they are already afraid (*yere'im*) as fugitives hiding in Judah, how much more terrified will they be marching into an open confrontation with Philistine military formations (*ma'arkhot*, 'battle lines, arranged ranks')? The word *ma'arkhot* is the same term used for the Philistine battle arrays that Goliath challenged in chapter 17 — David's men may be remembering what Philistine formations look like.
3. The men's fear is entirely rational. They are a band of roughly four hundred fugitives (22:2), many of them debtors and malcontents, not a trained army. They are being hunted by their own king. And now David proposes to fight the Philistines — the dominant military power in the region. Their objection reveals the gap between David's faith-informed decision-making and the raw terror of those who must carry it out.
4. The verb *vayyosef* ('he added, he did again') indicates David's persistence in seeking God — a pastoral detail showing that divine inquiry is not a one-time formality but an ongoing dialogue, especially when circumstances generate doubt. The second divine response is tailored to the men's fear: the first answer told David to go; the second tells him God will personally deliver the enemy. The addition of *ki ani noten* ('because I myself am giving') addresses the fear directly — the outcome does not depend on David's military strength but on God's sovereign action.
5. The verb *vayyinbag* ('he drove off') specifically refers to driving livestock — David not only defeats the Philistines but captures their supply train. This detail transforms a defensive action into an offensive victory with material gain, feeding David's fugitive band. The closing statement *vayyosha David et yoshvei Qe'ilah* ('David rescued the inhabitants of Keilah') echoes the language of the judges (Judges 2:16, 3:9, 3:15). David is doing what the king should be doing — protecting Israelite towns from foreign enemies — while the king hunts the man doing his job.
6. The *efod* in priestly contexts refers to the linen garment worn by the high priest, which contained the breastplate (*choshen*) holding the Urim and Thummim — the sacred lots used to receive yes-or-no answers from God. This is the mechanism behind David's inquiries in this chapter. The text emphasizes that the ephod 'came down in his hand' (*yarad beyado*), a phrase that may indicate Abiathar was carrying it when he fled, or it may be a theological statement: the instrument of divine communication descended to the true anointed one.
7. The verb *nikkar* is debated. Some derive it from *nakhar* ('to treat as foreign, to alienate') — meaning God has estranged David, cast him out. Others derive it from *makar* ('to sell') with a textual corruption. We follow the reading that Saul claims God has delivered David into his power, treating *nikkar* as meaning 'handed over' in context. Saul's interpretation of events is consistently self-serving throughout 1 Samuel: every development confirms his paranoid narrative.
7. The phrase *delatayim u-veriach* ('double gates and a bar') refers to the standard fortification of a Judean town — heavy wooden doors reinforced with a crossbar. Saul sees the fortification as a trap for David. What he does not see is that David's presence in the town was an act of divine obedience, not strategic blundering.
8. The verb *vayyeshamma* ('he summoned, he called to hear') is from the Piel of *shama*, meaning to call together or muster. Saul mobilizes the entire military apparatus of Israel — not against the Philistines who were just raiding Keilah, but against the man who drove them off. The verb *latsur* ('to besiege') is a technical military term for surrounding a fortified position and cutting off supply lines. Saul is prepared to lay siege to an Israelite town to capture David — an act that would harm the very citizens David just rescued.
9. The verb *charash* in the Hiphil can mean 'to devise silently, to plot' — combining the ideas of secrecy and deliberate crafting. David's intelligence network has detected Saul's mobilization, and his first response is not tactical but theological: bring the ephod. The command *hagishah* ('bring near, present') is a priestly technical term — the same verb used for presenting offerings. David is requesting a formal priestly consultation, not an informal prayer.
10. The infinitive absolute construction *shamoa shama* ('hearing, he has heard' — rendered 'heard with certainty') conveys absolute confidence in the intelligence: David is not guessing. The verb *mevaqesh* ('is seeking') is the chapter's hunting verb — *biqesh*, to seek or pursue — here applied to

Saul's pursuit of David. The phrase *leshachet la'ir* ('to destroy the city') reveals the full horror of Saul's intention: he will destroy an entire Israelite town to catch one man. The word *ba'avuri* ('on my account, because of me') shows David's awareness that his presence endangers others — a moral burden that drives his inquiry and his eventual departure.

11. David asks two questions, and the ephod-based inquiry yields answers to one at a time. The verb *yasgiruni* ('will they hand me over, will they shut me in') is from *sagar*, meaning to close, deliver up, or surrender — the same verb used for handing over prisoners or betraying fugitives. The *ba'alei Qe'ilah* ('citizens of Keilah,' literally 'lords/masters of Keilah') are the leading men of the town. David is asking whether the very people he just saved will betray him. God answers the second question first: Saul will indeed come down. The first question — about betrayal — is reserved for verse 12.
12. The divine answer reveals a conditional future — what will happen if David remains. David's departure changes the outcome: Saul does not attack Keilah (verse 13). This raises a profound question about the nature of prophetic knowledge: God tells David what the citizens of Keilah would do under certain conditions, and David uses that knowledge to alter the conditions. The ephod inquiry here functions less like prophecy and more like divine counsel — God advising David based on knowledge of human hearts and intentions.
13. The phrase *vayyithallekhu ba'asher yithallakhu* ('they moved about wherever they could move about') describes aimless, survival-driven wandering — the Hithpael of *halakh* repeated to convey continuous, directionless motion. David has gone from commander of a rescue mission to a nomad with six hundred mouths to feed. The number *shesh me'ot* ('six hundred') has grown from the four hundred of 22:2, suggesting David's band is expanding even as his situation deteriorates.
13. The verb *vayyechdal* ('he abandoned, he ceased') shows Saul's siege plan collapsing the moment David leaves. Saul had no interest in Keilah itself — only in David. Without the target, the military operation has no purpose. The narrator's dry report of Saul's cancellation highlights the absurdity of his campaign: the king of Israel mobilized the entire army to besiege a town David had just saved, then went home when David left.
14. The theological summary — 'God did not give him into his hand' — uses the same verb (*natan*, 'to give') that Saul used in verse 7 and that God used in verse 4. In verse 4, God gives the Philistines into David's hand. In verse 7, Saul claims God has given David into his hand. In verse 14, the narrator settles the matter: God gave nothing to Saul. The verb *natan* becomes a marker of divine allegiance — God gives victory to David and withholds David from Saul.
15. The phrase *levaqesh et-nafsho* ('to seek his life/soul') intensifies the hunting language: Saul is not just looking for David's location but seeking his *nefesh* — his life, his very self. The word *bachorshah* is debated: it could mean 'in the forest/thicket' (from *choresh*, 'wooded area') or it could be a place name, *Horesh*. Given that the wilderness of Ziph is largely scrubland with limited tree cover, many scholars read this as a proper noun. We render it as the place name *Horesh*, following the Septuagint's treatment of it as a location rather than a generic description.
16. The phrase *vaychazzeq et-yado be-Elohim* resists easy translation because English has no single verb that captures the Hebrew *chazaq* in the Piel — it means to make strong, to grasp firmly, to reinforce from outside. Jonathan is not cheering David up; he is actively transferring courage by redirecting David's gaze toward God. The preposition *be* ('in') is locative: the strength is located in God, and Jonathan's act is to reconnect David to that source. This is the last act of the Jonathan-David relationship, and it is purely theological — not military, not political, but faith sustaining faith.
17. Jonathan's fourfold declaration is structured as a covenant oracle: reassurance, promise of protection, announcement of kingship, and personal pledge of loyalty. The phrase *ehyeh-lekha le-mishneh* ('I will be second to you') is poignant because it will never be fulfilled — Jonathan will die with his father at Mount Gilboa (31:2) before David takes the throne. Jonathan is offering a future he will not live to see.
17. The claim that Saul 'knows' (*yodea*) David will be king echoes Saul's own admission in 24:20: 'I know that you will certainly be king.' Jonathan's statement here either reflects private knowledge of his father's inner awareness or is a prophetic insight into Saul's psychology. Either way, it frames Saul's pursuit as rebellion against known truth — not ignorance but willful resistance.
18. The brevity of the closing — *vayyeshev David bachorshah viYhonatan halakh le-veito* ('David stayed at Horesh and Jonathan went to his house') — is one of the most understated farewells in scripture. The narrator does not describe an emotional parting, tears, or embraces. The two simply separate: one into wilderness, one into a doomed household. The lack of sentiment makes the scene more, not less, powerful. The reader knows what the characters do not yet know — that Jonathan will die at Gilboa and the promise of verse 17 will go unfulfilled.
19. The Ziphites are inhabitants of Ziph, a town in the tribal territory of Judah — David's own tribe. Their betrayal is an intra-tribal act, not an inter-tribal one. They travel to Gibeah, Saul's capital in Benjamin, to volunteer intelligence. The phrase *mistatter immanu* ('hiding among us') uses the Hithpael of *satar* ('to hide'), the reflexive form suggesting David is actively concealing himself in their territory. Their report is geographically precise: the strongholds at Horesh, the hill of Hachilah, south of the Yeshimon ('wasteland, desolation'). This level of detail suggests they are offering to guide Saul's forces directly to David — not merely reporting a rumor but providing tactical coordinates.
19. The Yeshimon ('wasteland') refers to the barren eastern slopes of the Judean hill country descending toward the Dead Sea — a landscape of extreme aridity and deep wadis. The hill of Hachilah will reappear in chapter 26 as the site of David's second opportunity to kill Saul.
20. The phrase *lekhoh-avvat nafshekha* ('according to all the desire of your soul') is obsequious flattery — the Ziphites frame the operation around Saul's personal desire (*avvah*, 'craving, longing'), treating his obsession as a legitimate royal prerogative. The verb *hasgiro* ('to hand him over, to surrender him') is the same root (*sagar*) that appeared in David's inquiry at verses 11-12 — the very betrayal David feared from Keilah is now being offered by the Ziphites. The word *lanu* ('for us, our part') indicates the Ziphites are volunteering as active collaborators, not passive informants. They will do the work of cornering David if Saul will come.

- 21.** The irony of Saul invoking the LORD's blessing here cannot be overstated. The LORD has explicitly rejected Saul (15:26), refused to answer him (14:37, and later 28:6), and is actively protecting David (verse 14). Saul's use of God's name to validate his manhunt represents the final corruption of his theological language — he uses covenant vocabulary to authorize covenant-breaking behavior. The verb *chamal* ('to have compassion, to spare') is the same verb used in 15:9 where Saul 'spared' Agag and the best livestock against God's command. Saul's pattern is consistent: he applies compassion where it does not belong and withholds it where it does.
- 22.** Saul's instructions reveal both tactical sophistication and personal anxiety. The verbs pile up in rapid succession: *lekhu* ('go'), *hakhinu* ('prepare'), *de'u* ('know'), *re'u* ('observe') — four commands before the main intelligence request. The phrase *asher tiyeh raglo* ('where his foot will be') is a tracking idiom: Saul wants to know David's movement patterns, not just his current position. The admission *arum ya'arim li* ('he is extremely cunning toward me') uses the verb *aram* ('to be shrewd, crafty'), the same root used for the serpent in Genesis 3:1 (*arum*). Whether intentional or not, the echo is suggestive: Saul perceives David as a dangerous adversary of serpentine cleverness, when in fact David's 'cunning' consists primarily of inquiring of the LORD.
- 23.** The word *machabo'im* ('hiding places') is from the root *chava*, 'to hide' — the same root used for Adam and Eve hiding from God in Genesis 3:8. Saul commands a systematic intelligence sweep of David's positions. The phrase *el-nakhon* ('with certainty, with what is established') demands verified intelligence, not rumors. Saul's promise *vechipassti oto bekhool alfei Yehudah* ('I will search him out among all the clans of Judah') reveals the scale of his obsession: he will comb through every military unit (*elef*, 'thousand/clan') in David's own tribe. The word *alfei* can mean either 'thousands' (military units) or 'clans' (tribal subdivisions) — either way, Saul is planning a territory-wide sweep of Judah to find one man.
- 24.** The Ziphites depart as advance scouts, heading back to Ziph *lifnei Sha'ul* ('ahead of Saul') to finalize David's location before Saul arrives. Meanwhile, David has moved south from Ziph to the wilderness of Maon — a more remote and rugged area deeper into the Judean desert. The Arabah here likely refers to the dry depression running south toward the Dead Sea. The narrator tracks both parties simultaneously, building narrative tension: the Ziphites are heading to Ziph, David is in Maon, and Saul is mobilizing. The geography tightens like a noose.
- 25.** The verb *levaqesh* ('to seek, to hunt') returns — Saul's defining action throughout the chapter. David receives intelligence (*vayyaggidu le-David*, 'they told David') — his network of informants continues to function even in the wilderness. The *sela* ('rock, crag') is a specific geological feature, likely a cliff face or rock formation that David uses as a defensive position. The verb *vayyeradof* ('he pursued') is from *radaf*, the standard verb for military pursuit or hunting — Saul is now in active chase mode, closing the distance in the wilderness of Maon.
- 26.** The spatial arrangement — both parties moving along opposite sides of the same mountain — creates an almost cinematic image. The narrator achieves maximum suspense with minimal language: David is running, Saul is encircling, capture is imminent. The verb *otrim* ('encircling') is a military technical term for surrounding an enemy position to cut off escape routes. David appears to be trapped. The chapter has moved from divine guidance (verses 1-12) through theological encouragement (verses 16-18) to this moment of raw physical danger where no human solution is visible.
- 27.** The narrative structure is masterful: the messenger's arrival interrupts the most suspenseful moment in the chapter with a single-verse pivot. The verb *pashat* ('to spread out, to raid') is the same verb used for stripping and spreading — it conveys an enemy spreading across the land like a flood. Saul must choose between his private obsession (David) and his public duty (national defense). The Philistines force the choice, and Saul has no option but to turn away. The narrator attributes no theological explanation — the bare sequence of events carries the theological weight.
- 28.** The etiology (origin story for a place name) is a common narrative device in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Genesis 22:14, Judges 15:17). *Sela ha-Machlekot* becomes a physical marker in the landscape testifying to David's deliverance. The verb *vayyashav* ('he turned back') marks Saul's forced retreat — not a voluntary decision but a compelled one. The phrase *vayyelekh liqra't Pelishtim* ('he went to meet/confront the Philistines') uses the verb *qara't*, which implies moving toward a confrontation. Saul finally does what a king is supposed to do — fight the national enemy — but only because God's timing removed every other option.
- 29.** The final verse is a single sentence of geographical transition. David ascends (*vayyaal*, 'went up') from the wilderness of Maon to the *metsadot* ('strongholds') of En-gedi — the oasis on the western shore of the Dead Sea, famous for its spring, its waterfall, and its network of caves in the surrounding cliffs. The name En-gedi means 'Spring of the Young Goat,' and the ibex that still inhabit the area provided both the name and the imagery for David's life in this period: a nimble creature surviving in impossible terrain. The caves of En-gedi will be the setting for the next chapter's dramatic encounter, where Saul enters the very cave where David is hiding. The chapter ends where it began — with David in motion, seeking shelter, guided by God but homeless in his own land.

24

Summary: *Saul returns from pursuing the Philistines and takes three thousand men to hunt David in the wilderness of En-gedi. He enters a cave to relieve himself — the very cave where David and his men are hiding deep in the recesses. David's men urge him to strike, claiming this is the LORD's promised moment, but David only cuts the corner of Saul's robe. Immediately his conscience strikes him, and he restrains his men from attacking. After Saul leaves the cave, David emerges, bows to the ground, and delivers a speech that is both legal defense and theological argument: he will not raise his hand against the LORD's anointed. He holds up the cut piece of robe as evidence that he had the power to kill but chose restraint. Saul weeps, acknowledges that David is more righteous than he is, and extracts an oath that David will not destroy Saul's descendants. The two part — Saul to his home, David to the stronghold.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter stages one of the most psychologically complex scenes in the Hebrew Bible. The cave at En-gedi becomes a moral theater where David holds absolute power over his enemy and refuses to use it. The Hebrew narrator builds the tension with exquisite economy: Saul comes into the cave 'to cover his feet' (a euphemism for relieving himself) — he is at his most vulnerable and undignified, and David is armed and hidden in the darkness behind him. David's men interpret the situation theologically, claiming God has delivered Saul into David's hand. David's act of cutting the kanaf (corner/wing) of Saul's robe is more significant than it appears: the robe's corner carried symbolic weight in ancient Israel, representing authority and identity (the same word appears in Ruth 3:9 where Ruth asks Boaz to spread his kanaf over her). By cutting Saul's kanaf, David symbolically severed Saul's royal authority — and his conscience immediately recognized it. His refusal to go further establishes a principle that will echo through the entire Davidic narrative: legitimate kingship cannot be seized by violence against God's current anointed. The chapter's theology of restraint — that the right thing done the wrong way is still wrong — is one of the most mature ethical statements in the Old Testament.*

Translation Friction: *The central translation difficulty lies in verse 5 (WLC), where David's heart 'struck him' (vayyakh lev David oto). The verb nakhah is the same word used for a physical blow — David's conscience did not merely trouble him but hit him with the force of a weapon. Translators must decide whether to soften this to 'his conscience bothered him' or preserve the violence of the metaphor. We preserve the blow. A second friction point is the phrase mashiach YHWH ('the LORD's anointed') in verses 7 and 11, which David invokes as an inviolable category. The term does not yet carry its later messianic weight, but it establishes a theological principle — that God's chosen agent, even when corrupt, is not for humans to remove. This creates genuine moral tension: David's restraint is not because Saul is good but because Saul's anointing is God's business, not David's. Translators who flatten mashiach to a mere political title miss the theological nerve of David's argument. A third issue is the relationship between WLC versification (23 verses) and KJV (22 verses): WLC verse 1 corresponds to the chapter division note, and the remaining verses are offset by one.*

Connections: *The cave scene directly parallels 1 Samuel 26, where David again spares Saul (this time taking his spear and water jug). The two episodes form a deliberate doublet, reinforcing the pattern of David's restraint. The cutting of the kanaf connects backward to Ruth 3:9, where kanaf symbolizes protective covenant covering, and forward to 1 Samuel 15:27-28, where Samuel's robe is torn as a sign that the kingdom is torn from Saul. David's argument that 'the LORD will strike him' (verse 7) — letting God handle Saul's fate rather than seizing it — anticipates 2 Samuel 1, where David executes the Amalekite who claims to have killed Saul. The principle is consistent: no human hand may touch the LORD's anointed. Saul's acknowledgment that David is 'more righteous' (tsaddiq) than he is echoes Judah's confession about Tamar in Genesis 38:26 — both are moments where a powerful man admits that the person he wronged holds the moral high ground. David's oath not to cut off Saul's descendants connects directly to 2 Samuel 9, where David shows kindness to Mephibosheth for Jonathan's sake.*

¹David went up from there and stayed in the strongholds of En-gedi. ²When Saul returned from pursuing the Philistines, he was told, "David is in the wilderness of En-gedi." ³Saul took three thousand men, chosen from all Israel, and went to search

for David and his men along the rock faces where the wild goats climb. ⁴He came to the sheep pens along the road, where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself, while David and his men were sitting deep in the recesses of the cave. ⁵David's men said to him, "This is the day the LORD told you about: 'I am giving your enemy into your hand, and you may do to him whatever seems good to you.'" David got up and secretly cut off the corner of Saul's robe. ⁶Afterward, David's heart struck him over the fact that he had cut Saul's corner. ⁷He said to his men, "The LORD forbid that I should do this thing to my lord — to the LORD's anointed — to stretch out my hand against him, for he is the LORD's anointed." ⁸David tore into his men with these words and did not allow them to rise against Saul. Saul got up from the cave and went on his way. ⁹Then David got up, went out of the cave, and called after Saul, "My lord the king!" Saul looked behind him, and David knelt with his face to the ground and bowed low. ¹⁰David said to Saul, "Why do you listen to the words of people who say, 'David is seeking to harm you'? ¹¹This very day your own eyes have seen that the LORD gave you into my hand in the cave. Someone urged me to kill you, but I had compassion on you and said, 'I will not stretch out my hand against my lord, for he is the LORD's anointed.' ¹²Look, my father — yes, look! The corner of your robe is in my hand. When I cut the corner of your robe and did not kill you, know and see that there is no evil or rebellion in my hand. I have not sinned against you, yet you are hunting me to take my life. ¹³May the LORD judge between me and you. May the LORD take vengeance for me against you — but my hand will not touch you. ¹⁴As the ancient proverb says, 'From the wicked comes wickedness' — but my hand will not touch you. ¹⁵After whom has the king of Israel marched out? Whom are you chasing? A dead dog! A single flea! ¹⁶May the LORD be the judge and render judgment between me and you. May he see and take up my case and deliver me from your hand." ¹⁷When David finished speaking these words to Saul, Saul said, "Is that your voice, my son David?" Then Saul lifted his voice and wept. ¹⁸He said to David, "You are more righteous than I am, for you have repaid me with good while I have repaid you with evil. ¹⁹You have shown today how you dealt well with me: the LORD handed me over to you, and you did not kill me. ²⁰When a man finds his enemy, does he send him on his way unharmed? May the LORD repay you with good for what you have done for me today. ²¹Now I know that you will certainly be king, and that the kingdom of Israel will be established in your hand. ²²Now swear to me by the LORD that you will not cut off my descendants after me and that you will not wipe out my name from my father's house." ²³David swore to Saul. Saul went to his home, and David and his men went up to the stronghold.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. WLC verse 1 corresponds to the final clause of KJV 23:29. The noun *metsadot* ('strongholds, fortified places') refers to the natural rock fortifications in the cliffs above the oasis of En-gedi on the western shore of the Dead Sea. The terrain is riddled with caves and narrow passes — ideal for a fugitive band to defend. En-gedi means 'spring of the young goat,' named for the ibex that still inhabit the area. David moves from the wilderness of Maon to these natural fortifications, trading open desert for defensible high ground.
2. The narrative resumes Saul's obsession with David. The Philistine incursion (23:27-28) had momentarily diverted Saul from the hunt, but the moment the external threat passes, Saul returns to his internal fixation. The verb *shuv* ('returned') carries ironic weight throughout 1 Samuel: Saul keeps returning to hunt David but never returns to the LORD. The informants who report David's location are unnamed — the text repeatedly shows that David's movements are betrayed by locals (the Ziphites in 23:19, unnamed sources here), heightening the sense that David has no safe refuge except God.
3. The *ye'elim* ('ibex, wild goats') are the Nubian ibex native to the Judean desert cliffs. The place name later associated with this area is 'the Craggs of the Ibex' (*tsurei hayye'elim*). The irony is architectural: Saul brings an overwhelming force into terrain that nullifies numerical advantage. The caves, narrow ledges, and vertical rock faces favor the small, mobile band hiding in them — not the army searching from below.
4. We render *lehasekh et raglav* as 'to relieve himself' — modern, clear, and dignified without being euphemistic to the point of obscurity. The KJV's 'to cover his feet' is a literal rendering of the Hebrew euphemism that no modern English reader would understand. The Vulgate's *purgare ventrem* ('to empty his belly') was more explicit. The narrative point is vulnerability: the king of Israel is exposed and defenseless in the very cave where his enemy hides.
4. The detail that David's men were 'sitting' (*yoshvim*) suggests they were encamped, not merely passing through. They had been living in these caves. The participle form indicates ongoing habitation — this was their base of operations.
5. The word *ballat* ('secretly, stealthily') appears only here and in verse 5 of Ruth 3:7 in this form. David moves with stealth — the act is furtive, not bold. He creeps close enough to Saul to cut his robe without detection, which means he was close enough to kill. The narrative forces the reader to feel the proximity and the restraint.

5. We render *kenaf* as 'corner' rather than 'skirt' (KJV) because 'skirt' in modern English carries misleading connotations. The *kenaf* was the border or wing of the outer garment, often bearing tassels (*tsitsit*) as commanded in Numbers 15:38. It was the part of the garment that carried legal and symbolic significance.
6. We preserve the violent metaphor 'his heart struck him' rather than softening to 'his conscience troubled him' or 'he felt guilty.' The Hebrew is intentionally physical — the verb *nakhah* makes David's conscience a weapon turned inward. This same verb will describe David 'striking' enemies throughout 2 Samuel. Here, the only blow David lands in this entire chapter is against himself.
6. The connection between this verse and the earlier tearing of Samuel's robe (15:27-28) is unmistakable. In chapter 15, a torn robe signified the kingdom torn from Saul by God's decree. David's cutting of the *kanaf* flirts with the same symbolism — and David recoils, recognizing that he was acting out a divine prerogative that belongs to God alone.
7. The double use of *meshiach* YHWH ('the LORD's anointed') is emphatic and deliberate — David is establishing a principle, not making a one-time judgment. This principle will govern his behavior through the rest of 1 Samuel and into 2 Samuel 1, where he executes the man who claims to have killed Saul. The *mashiah* concept here is political-theological, not yet eschatological, but it plants the seed: there is a category of person whom God has set apart, and human hands must not presume to remove what God has installed.
7. David calls Saul *adoni* ('my lord') even while hiding from Saul's death squads. This is not sycophancy but covenantal respect for the office. David consistently distinguishes between Saul's personal wickedness and Saul's divinely granted role.
8. We render *vayshassa* as 'tore into' to preserve the violent energy of the verb. The KJV's 'stayed' is far too mild — this root carries the force of physical rending. David's restraint of his men required the same intensity that killing Saul would have required, channeled in the opposite direction.
8. The juxtaposition of David's inner turmoil and Saul's oblivious departure creates one of the great dramatic ironies in biblical narrative. Saul has no idea that his life was held in another man's hands and returned to him — he simply 'went on his way.'
9. The address *adoni hammelekh* ('my lord the king') maintains David's consistent stance: he treats Saul as the legitimate sovereign. This is not performance — David uses this title even in the internal dialogue of verse 7. The prostration is likewise genuine, not theatrical. David's theology of anointed kingship requires this posture regardless of Saul's murderous behavior.
9. The narrator builds the scene cinematically: David emerges, calls out, Saul turns, David drops to the ground. Every action is visible against the desert landscape. The private moment in the dark cave has given way to a public confrontation in full daylight.
10. David opens his defense by challenging the source of Saul's hostility — not Saul's own judgment but the *divrei adam* ('words of men, human speech') that have poisoned his thinking. The verb *mevaqesh* ('is seeking') is the same verb used of Saul's search for David (verse 3, *levaqesh*). David reverses the accusation: Saul is seeking David, but the slanderers claim David is seeking Saul's *ra'ah* ('harm, evil'). David's rhetorical strategy is to separate Saul from his informants, appealing to what Saul can verify with his own eyes rather than what he has been told by others.
11. The textual tradition here has some variation. The MT reads *vayyomer* ('and he said' or 'and one said') while some manuscripts and the Septuagint read *va'amar* ('and I said'). We follow the MT, which creates a more honest picture: David acknowledges the pressure to kill without specifying whether it was his own temptation or his men's urging.
11. This is the third occurrence of *meshiach* YHWH in the chapter (after two in verse 7). The repetition functions like a legal citation — David is building a case on a single foundational principle and returning to it with each argument.
12. The address *avi* ('my father') is the only time David uses this term for Saul in the chapter. It likely reflects the father-in-law relationship (David married Saul's daughter Michal) but also carries rhetorical weight: a father hunting his own son's life is a perversion of the natural order. David forces Saul to confront the monstrous nature of his pursuit.
12. The word *pesha* ('rebellion, transgression') is a covenant term — it describes willful breach of a binding agreement, not accidental wrongdoing. David is asserting that he has maintained covenant loyalty to Saul despite Saul's aggression. The three-term denial (*ra'ah, pesha, chet*) echoes judicial oath formulas where the accused categorically clears himself of all charges.
13. The juxtaposition of 'may the LORD avenge me' and 'my hand will not touch you' is the chapter's ethical thesis in a single verse. David holds simultaneously that he has been genuinely wronged (vengeance is warranted) and that he has no right to execute that vengeance himself. This is not passivity — it is an active theological commitment to let God resolve what human hands must not touch.
14. The phrase *mashal haqqadmoni* ('proverb of the ancients') suggests an established oral tradition of wisdom sayings predating David's time. The word *qadmoni* ('ancient, eastern, former') indicates this proverb was already old when David cited it. This is one of our earliest glimpses of proverbial culture in Israel prior to the formal wisdom literature associated with Solomon.
14. David's rhetorical strategy is subtle: he never directly accuses Saul of being wicked. He cites a general principle and lets Saul draw the conclusion. This is more damaging than a direct accusation because Saul must convict himself.
15. The 'dead dog' (*kelev met*) is the lowest possible self-reference in biblical Hebrew. Dogs in ancient Israel were not domesticated companions but semi-feral scavengers associated with garbage and carrion. A dead dog was worthless refuse. David uses this image in 2 Samuel 9:8 as well (through Mephibosheth). The addition of 'single flea' (*par'osh echad*) takes the diminishment to the microscopic — David claims he is not even worth the energy required to scratch an itch.

15. The fourfold repetition of *acharei* ('after') creates a rhythmic, almost mocking cadence. David is not merely arguing — he is performing the absurdity of Saul's pursuit. The rhetoric functions as both self-abasement (a political survival strategy) and genuine theological argument (the king's attention should be on matters worthy of a king, not on a fugitive who poses no threat).
16. The density of legal language in this verse is extraordinary — five judicial terms in a single sentence. David has constructed his entire speech as a legal brief, and this verse is his closing argument. He rests his case not on his own strength but on God's role as cosmic judge. The phrase *veyarev et rivi* ('may he contend my contention') uses the *figura etymologica* (cognate accusative) for emphasis — 'may he argue my argument, may he fight my fight.'
16. This verse closes David's speech. Everything from verse 10 through verse 16 forms a coherent courtroom address: evidence presentation (the robe corner), witness testimony (Saul's own eyes), character defense (the proverb), and the final appeal to the supreme Judge.
17. The question 'Is this your voice?' may suggest distance — David called from far enough away that Saul could hear words but not clearly identify the speaker. Or it may be an emotional question: 'Can it really be you saying these things?' The ambiguity is productive and we preserve it.
17. Saul's weeping here must be read against 1 Samuel 26:21-25, where Saul makes a nearly identical response after David spares him a second time. The pattern — Saul weeps, acknowledges David's righteousness, then resumes hunting — raises the question of whether Saul's repentance is genuine or merely situational. The narrator does not resolve this; Saul's sincerity is left to the reader's judgment.
18. The phrase *tsaddiq attah mimmenni* echoes Genesis 38:26, where Judah says of Tamar *tsadqah mimmenni* ('she is more righteous than I'). Both are moments where a man in power confesses that the person he wronged is in the right. The verbal parallel is unlikely to be accidental — the narrator invites the reader to see David in the role of the wronged party who holds moral authority over the powerful.
18. The verb *gamal* has agricultural overtones — 'to ripen, to bring to full growth.' Applied to human actions, it means to bring an action to its full consequence: to repay in kind. Saul acknowledges that David's actions have matured into goodness while his own have matured into evil.
19. The verb *siggerani* ('he shut me in, he delivered me') comes from *sagar*, meaning 'to close, to shut, to hand over.' It portrays God closing Saul into David's hand the way a gate closes around a prisoner — Saul was trapped, enclosed, and entirely at David's mercy. Saul now interprets the cave encounter from David's perspective: God did deliver Saul into David's power, and David chose mercy. The acknowledgment *higadta* ('you have declared, you have shown') uses the *Hiphil* of *nagad*, a verb of public disclosure — David's act of mercy was not merely felt but demonstrated, made visible and undeniable.
20. Saul's blessing here is genuine in the moment, though the narrative will show that it does not last. The reader must hold two truths simultaneously: Saul is sincerely moved, and Saul will resume his pursuit. The text does not psychoanalyze Saul's inner state — it simply records his words and leaves the tension unresolved.
20. The verb *yeshallemechah* ('may he repay you') uses the same root as Solomon's name (*Shelomoh*) and the city of Jerusalem (*Yerushalayim*). The prayer is for God to bring David to *shalom* — a state of completeness and wholeness that stands in stark contrast to David's current condition as a hunted fugitive.
21. The phrase *malokh timlok* echoes God's own speech patterns — the infinitive absolute plus finite verb construction is characteristically divine in the Hebrew Bible. Whether Saul is consciously echoing prophetic language or simply using emphatic grammar, the effect is the same: his statement carries the weight of inevitability.
21. This verse connects directly to Jonathan's earlier acknowledgment in 23:17: 'You will be king over Israel, and I will be second to you — and even my father Saul knows this.' Jonathan was right. Saul did know. The difference is that Jonathan embraced it while Saul has fought against it with three thousand soldiers.
22. Saul's request anticipates a common practice in ancient Near Eastern dynastic succession: the incoming king would eliminate all potential rivals from the previous dynasty. This actually happened in the northern kingdom of Israel repeatedly (1 Kings 15:29, 16:11, 2 Kings 10:17). Saul's fear was entirely realistic. David's oath here will be honored in 2 Samuel 9, where he brings Jonathan's son Mephibosheth to the royal table — though it will be complicated by the Gibeonite incident in 2 Samuel 21.
22. The pairing of 'seed' (*zera*) and 'name' (*shem*) covers both biological and memorial continuation. To have descendants but no name is to be forgotten; to have a name but no descendants is to have no one to carry it. Saul asks for both forms of survival.
23. The word *metsudah* ('stronghold, fortress') is the same word from verse 1 (*metsadot* is the plural). The chapter forms an *inclusio* — it begins and ends with David in the strongholds of the wilderness. The narrative cycle is complete but unresolved: the theological argument has been made, the moral verdict rendered, and yet the political situation remains unchanged. David will not seize the kingdom; he will wait. This patient endurance — the willingness to live in the *metsudah* while God works out the transfer of the *mamlakhah* — is the chapter's final statement about what it means to trust the LORD's timing.
23. The contrast between *beito* ('his home') and *hametsudah* ('the stronghold') encapsulates the two men's situations: Saul has a house but is losing a kingdom; David has no house but is gaining one. The narrator does not editorialize — the geography does the work.

25

Summary: *Samuel dies, and all Israel gathers to mourn him at Ramah. The narrative immediately shifts to David in the wilderness of Paran, where he encounters a wealthy Calebite named Nabal whose name means 'Fool.' David's men have been protecting Nabal's shepherds, but when David sends messengers requesting provisions during sheep-shearing, Nabal insults David and refuses. David straps on his sword and marches with four hundred men to destroy Nabal's household. Abigail, Nabal's wise and perceptive wife, intercepts David with generous provisions and delivers one of the most theologically sophisticated speeches in the Hebrew Bible — invoking the bundle of the living, divine restraint from bloodguilt, and David's future kingship. David relents, crediting God for sending Abigail to prevent him from avenging himself. When Abigail tells Nabal what happened, his heart dies within him and he becomes like a stone; ten days later the LORD strikes him dead. David then sends for Abigail and takes her as his wife.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Abigail's speech in verses 24-31 is extraordinary in scope and theological precision. She is the first person in the narrative to speak of David's kingdom as an established certainty — a 'secure house' (bayit ne'eman) that the LORD will build, the same language later used in the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7. She introduces the image of the 'bundle of the living' (tseror ha-chayyim), a metaphor for divine safekeeping that has no parallel elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible and became central to Jewish memorial tradition. She speaks of David's enemies being 'slung out as from the hollow of a sling' — a deliberate echo of David's victory over Goliath using the same weapon. This woman, married to a fool, articulates covenant theology with a clarity that surpasses anything Samuel's own sons managed. The chapter also functions as a moral test for David: he passed the test of not killing Saul (chapters 24, 26) but nearly fails here, ready to massacre an entire household over an insult. It takes a woman's wisdom to do what the prophet Samuel's death left undone — speak God's restraining word to the future king.*

Translation Friction: *The central tension is David's near-descent into blood vengeance. His oath in verse 22 — to destroy every male in Nabal's household by morning — would have made him no different from Saul, who slaughtered the priests of Nob over a perceived slight (chapter 22). The text presents David's rage as genuine and his intent as murderous, not ceremonial. Translators must render his oath with its full violence: this is not a frustrated outburst but a military operation already underway. The chapter also raises the uncomfortable question of divine violence: the LORD strikes Nabal dead (verse 38), executing the judgment David was prevented from carrying out. The narrator treats this as justice, but the mechanism — Nabal's heart 'dying within him' after hearing what almost happened — blurs the line between divine act and natural consequence. The name theology is also challenging: verse 25 has Abigail say 'as his name is, so is he — Nabal is his name, and foolishness (nevalah) is with him.' This is not gentle wordplay but a wife publicly declaring her husband's character as definitional ruin.*

Connections: *Samuel's death in verse 1 bookends his birth narrative in chapter 1, completing the arc of the last judge. The wilderness setting connects David to Moses and Elijah — leaders tested in the desert before assuming their roles. Abigail's phrase 'bundle of the living' (tseror ha-chayyim, verse 29) became the basis for the Jewish memorial formula 'may his/her soul be bound in the bundle of life,' inscribed on tombstones for centuries. Her prediction that God will 'sling out' David's enemies (verse 29) recalls the sling of chapter 17, linking David's identity as shepherd-warrior to his future as king. The 'secure house' (bayit ne'eman) that Abigail promises anticipates the Davidic covenant in 2 Samuel 7:16, where God promises David's house and kingdom will endure forever. Nabal's connection to Caleb (verse 3) ties this story to the conquest tradition — the Calebites received Hebron as their inheritance (Joshua 14:13-14), and it is Hebron where David will first be crowned king (2 Samuel 2:1-4). David's marriage to Abigail, alongside the note about Ahinoam of Jezreel and the loss of Michal to Palti (verses 43-44), maps the political marriages that will shape his dynasty.*

1Samuel died. All Israel gathered and mourned for him, and they buried him at his home in Ramah. Then David set out and went down to the wilderness of Paran. 2There was a man in Maon whose business was in Carmel. The man was very wealthy — he had three thousand sheep and a thousand goats — and he was shearing his sheep in Carmel. 3The man's name was Nabal, and his wife's name was Abigail. The woman was intelligent and beautiful, but the man was harsh and destructive in

his dealings. He was a Calebite. ⁴David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his sheep. ⁵David sent ten young men and told them, "Go up to Carmel. When you come to Nabal, greet him in my name with peace. ⁶Say to him: 'Life to you! Peace to you, peace to your household, and peace to everything you have. ⁷I have heard that you have shearers. Now, your shepherds were with us, and we did not mistreat them, and nothing of theirs went missing the whole time they were in Carmel. ⁸Ask your own servants and they will tell you. So let my young men find favor in your eyes, for we have come on a feast day. Please give whatever you have at hand to your servants and to your son David.'" ⁹David's young men came and delivered all these words to Nabal in David's name, and then they waited. ¹⁰Nabal answered David's servants and said, "Who is David? Who is this son of Jesse? These days, runaway slaves are everywhere — servants breaking away from their masters. ¹¹Should I take my bread, my water, and the meat I have slaughtered for my shearers and give it to men I do not even know where they come from?" ¹²David's young men turned around and went back. When they arrived, they reported all of this to him. ¹³David said to his men, "Every man strap on his sword." Each man strapped on his sword, and David strapped on his sword as well. About four hundred men went up behind David, while two hundred stayed with the supplies. ¹⁴But one of the servants told Abigail, Nabal's wife, "David sent messengers from the wilderness to bless our master, and he screamed at them. ¹⁵But those men were very good to us. We were never mistreated, and we never lost anything the whole time we moved about with them in the open country. ¹⁶They were a wall around us, both night and day, the entire time we were with them tending the flock. ¹⁷So know this and consider what you will do, because disaster is closing in on our master and on his entire household. And he is such a worthless wretch that no one can speak to him." ¹⁸Abigail moved quickly. She took two hundred loaves of bread, two skins of wine, five sheep already dressed, five measures of roasted grain, a hundred clusters of raisins, and two hundred fig cakes, and loaded them on donkeys. ¹⁹She told her servants, "Go on ahead of me. I will be right behind you." But she did not tell her husband Nabal. ²⁰As she was riding her donkey down a hidden path on the mountain, David and his men came descending toward her, and she met them face to face. ²¹Now David had been saying, "It was all for nothing that I guarded everything this man owns in the wilderness, so that nothing of his went missing — and he has repaid me evil for good. ²²May God do the same to David's enemies — and worse — if by morning I leave alive a single male of everything he owns." ²³When Abigail saw David, she quickly dismounted from the donkey, fell on her face before David, and bowed to the ground. ²⁴She fell at his feet and said, "On me alone, my lord — let the guilt fall on me. Please, let your servant speak in your hearing, and listen to the words of your servant. ²⁵Please, my lord, do not give this worthless man a second thought — this Nabal. For as his name is, so is he: his name is Fool, and foolishness clings to him. But I, your servant, did not see the young men my lord sent. ²⁶And now, my lord — as the LORD lives, and as you yourself live — it is the LORD who has held you back from bloodshed and from delivering justice with your own hand. Now let your enemies and those who seek to harm my lord become like Nabal. ²⁷And now, let this gift that your servant has brought to my lord be given to the young men who march at my lord's side. ²⁸Please forgive your servant's offense. For the LORD will certainly build my lord a lasting house, because my lord fights the battles of the LORD, and no evil has been found in you all your days. ²⁹Should anyone rise up to pursue you and seek your life, the life of my lord will be bound secure in the bundle of the living with the LORD your God. But the lives of your enemies — he will sling them away like a stone from the hollow of a sling. ³⁰And when the LORD has done for my lord everything good that he has promised concerning you, and has appointed you as leader over Israel — ³¹then this will not be a staggering burden or a stumbling block on my lord's conscience — the shedding of innocent blood, or my lord taking vengeance into his own hands. And when the LORD has dealt well with my lord, remember your servant." ³²David said to Abigail, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who sent you this day to meet me. ³³Blessed be your discernment, and blessed be you yourself, who kept me this day from bloodshed and from delivering justice with my own hand. ³⁴But as the LORD, the God of Israel, lives — the one who held me back from harming you — if you had not hurried to meet me, by the light of morning not a single male would have been left to Nabal." ³⁵David accepted from her hand what she had brought him and said to her, "Go up to your home in peace. See — I have listened to your voice and granted your request." ³⁶Abigail came home to Nabal, and there he was — holding a feast in his house like the feast of a king. Nabal's heart was merry, and he was extremely drunk. So she told him nothing at all, small or great, until the light of morning. ³⁷In the morning, when the wine had left Nabal, his wife told him everything. His heart died within him, and he became like a stone.

³⁸About ten days later, the LORD struck Nabal, and he died. ³⁹When David heard that Nabal was dead, he said, "Blessed be the LORD, who has taken up my case against the insult from Nabal's hand, and who held back his servant from doing wrong. The LORD has brought Nabal's wickedness down on his own head." Then David sent word to Abigail and proposed marriage to her. ⁴⁰David's servants came to Abigail at Carmel and said to her, "David has sent us to you to take you as his wife." ⁴¹She rose, bowed with her face to the ground, and said, "Here is your servant — a maidservant ready to wash the feet of my lord's servants." ⁴²Abigail quickly rose, mounted her donkey, and with five of her attendants walking behind her, she followed David's messengers and became his wife. ⁴³David had also married Ahinoam of Jezreel, so both of them became his wives. ⁴⁴Meanwhile, Saul had given his daughter Michal, David's wife, to Palti son of Laish, who was from Gallim.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The burial at 'his house in Ramah' echoes the opening of Samuel's story — Ramah was his family's home (1:19), the place of his birth and now his burial. The phrase *bevento* ('in his house') may indicate burial in a family tomb on the household property, a common practice in ancient Israel.
1. The wilderness of Paran is a vast desert region in the northern Sinai, far from Saul's reach. Some manuscripts and the Septuagint read 'Maon' instead of 'Paran,' which would place David closer to the events that follow. The Masoretic text's 'Paran' emphasizes David's isolation — he is as far from power as a person can be in the land of Israel.
2. The word *gadol* ('great') here refers primarily to wealth and social standing, not moral greatness. The narrator sets up the contrast immediately: this man is great in possessions but, as we will learn, small in character. Three thousand sheep and a thousand goats represents enormous wealth by ancient Judean standards. Carmel here is not Mount Carmel in the north but a town in the hill country of Judah, south of Hebron (modern Khirbet el-Kirmil). Sheep-shearing was a festive occasion — a time of abundance when generosity was culturally expected, making Nabal's refusal in verse 11 all the more egregious.
3. The name Naval (often spelled Nabal) means 'fool, senseless one' in Hebrew. It is almost certainly a pejorative characterization rather than a birth name — no parent would name a child 'Fool.' The narrator may be using the name the community gave him, or it may function as a literary device. Either way, verse 25 will make the name theology explicit.
3. The phrase *ra ma'alalim* ('evil of deeds/dealings') uses *ma'alalim*, which refers to habitual actions or practices — this is not a single bad act but a pattern of destructive behavior. The same word appears in prophetic indictments (Jeremiah 4:4, Micah 3:4) to describe Israel's persistent unfaithfulness.
4. Sheep-shearing was the ancient equivalent of harvest festival — a time of feasting, generosity, and open hospitality. For David and his men, who had been protecting Nabal's flocks in the wilderness (as the servants will confirm in verses 15-16), this was the natural moment to request compensation. David's approach follows established custom, not extortion.
5. The phrase *ush'eltem-lo vishmi leshalom* ('ask after him in my name for peace') is a formal diplomatic greeting — David sends an official delegation, not a raiding party. The number ten suggests a significant embassy. The word *shalom* here functions as both greeting and implicit request: David offers peace and expects the reciprocal obligations that peace entails.
6. The greeting *koh lechai* ('thus to the living one' or 'life to you') is a festive salutation appropriate for the sheep-shearing celebration. The threefold repetition of *shalom* — to Nabal personally, to his household, and to all his possessions — is extravagant courtesy. David is doing everything right by the conventions of the culture: formal delegation, proper greeting, blessing before request. This makes Nabal's response in verse 10-11 all the more shocking.
7. The verb *hiklamnum* ('we shamed/mistreated them') comes from *kalam*, meaning to humiliate, insult, or harm. David's claim is that his men not only avoided harassing Nabal's shepherds but actively protected them — a claim the servants will independently verify in verses 15-16. The phrase *lo nifqad lahem me'umah* ('nothing was missing to them, not anything') uses the Niphal of *paqad* ('to reckon, to miss upon counting') — when the flock was tallied, not a single animal was unaccounted for. This was the result of David's protection.
8. David's self-designation as 'your son' (*binekha*) is deliberate diplomatic humility — he places himself in the position of a junior relation seeking a patron's generosity. The phrase *yom tov* ('good day, feast day') refers to the sheep-shearing festival, when abundance made generosity easy and refusal shameful. David's request — 'whatever your hand finds' (*et asher timtsa yadekha*) — is intentionally open-ended, leaving the amount to Nabal's discretion rather than naming a specific demand. This is the language of a respectful petitioner, not a warlord issuing demands.
9. The verb *vayyanuchu* ('and they rested/waited') indicates the messengers finished speaking and stood in respectful silence, awaiting a response. The verb *nuach* can mean 'to rest' or 'to settle, to wait.' They have delivered the message exactly as instructed and now pause — the ball is in Nabal's court.
10. Nabal's response is a calculated insult on every level. The question 'Who is David?' feigns ignorance of the man all Israel knows as Saul's former champion and the anointed future king. Calling him 'son of Jesse' reduces David to his father's obscure household rather than acknowledging his public identity. The word *hammitparetsiym* ('those who break loose, who burst away') characterizes David as a fugitive slave, not a legitimate leader. Nabal is publicly framing David as a rebellious servant of Saul — a politically dangerous accusation that aligns Nabal with the ruling king and brands David's band as outlaws.

11. The possessive pronouns are emphatic and repeated: my bread, my water, my slaughtered meat. Nabal sees everything as his own property, owed to no one. The phrase *lo yadati ei mizzeh hemmah* ('I do not know from where they are') is not geographic ignorance but social dismissal — he refuses to acknowledge David's people as having any standing or claim. The irony is thick: Nabal's own servants know exactly who David is and what his men have done (verses 14-17), but Nabal either will not or cannot see past his own possessiveness. The verb *tavachti* ('I have slaughtered') emphasizes the labor of preparation — this feast is for his shearers, his workers, his celebration. No outsider will share it.
12. The verbs pile up in rapid succession — *vayyahpekhu* ('they turned'), *vayyashuvu* ('they returned'), *vayyavo'u* ('they came'), *vayyaggidu* ('they reported') — conveying the urgency of messengers who know the insult will provoke a violent response. They deliver the words exactly as spoken, letting Nabal's contempt arrive at David's ears without softening.
13. The threefold repetition of 'sword' (*cherev*) — strap on his sword, they strapped on his sword, David strapped on his sword — creates a drumbeat of escalation. The narrative slows down to let the reader feel the momentum of violence building. David does not deliberate, does not pray, does not consult God. The contrast with chapter 23, where David repeatedly 'inquired of the LORD' before any military action, is striking and deliberate. Four hundred armed men against a sheep-farmer's household is not a proportional response — it is a punitive massacre force. The two hundred who stay with the supplies (*kelim*) follow standard military protocol (see 30:24), confirming this is a full military operation.
14. The servant goes directly to Abigail, bypassing Nabal entirely — a detail that reveals the household's internal dynamics. The servants know who actually manages crises. The verb *vayyaat* ('he flew at them, he screamed at them') comes from a root meaning to rush at or pounce, suggesting Nabal did not merely decline but verbally attacked the messengers. The servant's choice of the word *levarekh* ('to bless') rather than 'to ask' frames David's approach in the most favorable light possible — the messengers came with blessing, and the master responded with abuse.
15. The servant independently confirms David's claims from verse 7 — the verb *hiklamnu* ('we were shamed/mistreated') and the phrase *lo faqadnu me'umah* ('we did not miss anything') mirror David's own words exactly. This is unsolicited corroboration from Nabal's own household. The phrase *hithallakhnu ittam* ('we walked about with them') uses the same *Hithpael* of *halakh* that described Samuel's public conduct in chapter 12 — David's men conducted themselves honorably alongside the shepherds.
16. The metaphor *chomah* ('wall') is powerful — David's men were not merely present but formed a protective barrier around the shepherds and their flocks. This is military-grade protection described in architectural terms. The emphasis on 'both night and day' (*gam-laylah gam-yomam*) means continuous security, the kind that prevents losses from both predators and raiders. The servant is making the case that David has already earned compensation through concrete service.
17. The phrase *ben-beliyya'al* is notoriously difficult. *Beliyya'al* may derive from *beli* ('without') and *ya'al* ('worth, profit'), yielding 'worthless one,' or from *beli* ('without') and *ol* ('yoke'), yielding 'without restraint, lawless.' In either case, it describes someone who has placed themselves outside the obligations of community and covenant. The term appears throughout Judges and Samuel to describe the worst kinds of people — the men of Gibeah (Judges 19:22), Eli's sons (1 Samuel 2:12), and now Nabal. A servant applying this term to his own master is an act of social desperation.
18. The verb *vattamaher* ('she hurried') opens Abigail's response and sets the pace for everything that follows — urgency drives every action. The provisions are lavish and precisely enumerated: this is not a token offering but a feast on the move. The 'five sheep already dressed' (*asuyot*, literally 'made, prepared') means they are already slaughtered and ready to eat — Abigail raids the sheep-shearing feast to provision David. The five *seahs* of roasted grain (*qali*) is a substantial quantity, roughly equivalent to about seven gallons of parched wheat. The raisins and fig cakes are concentrated, portable, high-energy foods — trail provisions for fighting men. Abigail is not merely generous; she is tactically precise, assembling exactly what a wilderness military company needs.
19. Abigail's decision not to tell Nabal is both practical and subversive. Practically, he would have refused or interfered. Narratively, it positions Abigail as acting independently of her husband's authority — a bold move in a patriarchal society that the text presents without criticism. The servants go ahead to create a procession of gifts that David will encounter before Abigail arrives, softening the approach. Abigail is staging the encounter with the same care a diplomat would bring to a hostage negotiation.
20. The phrase *beseter hahar* ('in the cover/hidden part of the mountain') suggests a concealed ravine or path where the mountain blocks the view — Abigail and David cannot see each other until they are suddenly face to face. The verb *vatifgosh* ('she met, she encountered') implies an unexpected meeting at close range. The scene is cinematic: the woman descending with provisions meets the armed column ascending for slaughter, both hidden from each other by the terrain until the last moment.
21. The narrator inserts David's inner monologue (or words to his men) using the pluperfect 'had said' (*amar* with context indicating prior speech), showing what was driving him as he marched. The phrase *akh lashseger* ('surely for falsehood/in vain') expresses bitter disillusionment — David's service was wasted, treated as if it never happened. The formula *ra'ah tachat tovah* ('evil in place of good') is a standard biblical expression for betrayal of kindness (see Psalm 35:12, 38:20). David is not merely angry about provisions; he feels the moral outrage of violated reciprocity.
22. We render *mashtin beqir* as 'a single male' because the Hebrew idiom, while anatomically specific, functions as a comprehensive term for all males. The oath formula *koh ya'aseh... vekoh yosif* ('may God do thus and add more') appears frequently in Samuel and Kings as the most binding form of self-curse. David has placed himself under divine penalty if he fails to carry out the massacre. The mention of 'by morning' (*ad-habboqer*) gives the timeline: this is tonight's operation.
23. Every verb conveys speed and submission: *vattamaher* ('she hurried'), *vattered* ('she descended'), *vattippol* ('she fell'), *vattishtachu* ('she bowed down'). Abigail's physical posture — face down on the ground before an armed and furious David — is total vulnerability. She places herself between David's army and her household, using her own body as the first line of negotiation. The word *aretz* ('to the ground/earth') emphasizes how

completely she prostrates herself.

24. Abigail's speech (verses 24-31) is carefully structured rhetorical art. She begins with self-abasement (v24), deflects blame to Nabal's character (v25), reframes the situation theologically (v26), offers gifts (v27), requests forgiveness (v28a), delivers a prophetic promise about David's dynasty (v28b-29), warns against bloodguilt (v30-31a), and asks to be remembered (v31b). This is not spontaneous pleading — it is a masterwork of persuasion under mortal pressure.
25. A wife publicly declaring her husband a fool whose name defines his character is extraordinary in the ancient Near East. Abigail is not merely being diplomatic — she is throwing Nabal under the rhetorical chariot to save her household. The distinction between naval (fool) and nevalah (disgraceful folly, outrage) is important: naval describes the person; nevalah describes the moral quality of his actions. Together they form a complete condemnation.
26. The phrase *mibbo vedamim* ('from coming into bloods') uses the plural *damim*, which in Hebrew specifically denotes bloodguilt — the stain of unjust killing. Abigail is not merely saying David would have killed people; she is saying he would have incurred guilt that would follow him into his kingship. This is prophetic counsel of the highest order: she is protecting David's future moral authority.
26. The curse-wish 'let your enemies become like Nabal' is both brilliant rhetoric and prophecy. If Nabal is the fool whose own name condemns him, then to wish someone 'become like Nabal' is to wish them into self-destructive futility — which is exactly what will happen to Nabal himself within days.
27. The word *berakhah* ('blessing') for the provisions elevates a food delivery into a covenantal act — this is not payment or bribery but blessing, the overflow of goodwill. Abigail directs it to the soldiers (*hanne'arim hammathalkhim beraglei adoni*, 'the young men who walk at the feet of my lord'), acknowledging David's military company with respect while also subtly reminding him that his men need food, not vengeance.
28. The phrase *bayit ne'eman* ('lasting house, faithful house') is among the most significant theological terms in the Davidic tradition. When Abigail speaks these words, David is a fugitive living in caves. She sees through his present circumstances to his covenant destiny. The same language appears in 1 Kings 11:38 when God promises Jeroboam a lasting house if he obeys — a promise Jeroboam will forfeit. Abigail's use of this language is prophetic in the fullest sense.
29. The phrase *tseror ha-chayyim* has been rendered various ways: 'bundle of life,' 'bundle of the living,' 'pouch of life.' We choose 'bundle of the living' to preserve both the concrete image (a tied bundle) and the theological meaning (belonging among those who live in God's care). The preposition *et* ('with') after *tseror ha-chayyim* indicates that David's life is bound up together with the LORD — not merely protected by God but held in the same bundle, in intimate proximity.
29. The sling imagery (*yeqalle'ennah betokh kaf haqqala*, 'he will sling them in the hollow of the sling') is a brilliant double reference. On the literal level, it recalls David's victory over Goliath. On the theological level, it describes divine expulsion — the enemies' lives will be hurled away from God's presence with the same force and finality as a sling stone.
30. The word *nagid* is distinct from *melekh* ('king'). A *nagid* is one designated by God to lead — the term emphasizes divine appointment rather than human political authority. Abigail's use of this specific word rather than 'king' shows theological precision: David's authority comes from God's command, not from military conquest or popular acclaim.
31. The word *puqah* is a hapax legomenon — it occurs only here in the entire Hebrew Bible. Its meaning must be derived from context and cognate languages: something that causes staggering, wavering, or moral disorientation. Abigail is coining a word for the psychological torment David would carry if he follows through with the massacre.
31. Abigail's speech ends where it began — with herself. She opened by taking the blame (verse 24) and closes by asking to be remembered (verse 31). The request *vezakharta et amatekha* ('and you will remember your servant') is both a plea for future patronage and, as the narrative will reveal, a subtle opening for the relationship that follows Nabal's death.
32. David's first word is *barukh* ('blessed') — directed not at Abigail but at God. He immediately recognizes divine providence in the encounter: *asher shelachekh* ('who sent you'). David sees Abigail's arrival as God's intervention, not human initiative. This is the theological reading Abigail herself proposed in verse 26 — the LORD held David back — and David accepts it completely. The phrase *hayyom hazzeh* ('this day') marks the encounter as a turning point: today, God acted through a woman to prevent a king from becoming a murderer.
33. David pronounces a threefold blessing: on God (verse 32), on Abigail's discernment (*ta'amekh*, literally 'your taste, your judgment'), and on Abigail herself (*berukhah att*). The word *ta'am* means taste or discernment — the ability to judge rightly, to distinguish what is fitting. David then echoes Abigail's own language from verse 26: *mibbo vedamim* ('from coming into bloodshed') and *hosheet yadi li* ('saving my hand for myself'). He has fully internalized her argument. By repeating her exact theological framing, David acknowledges that he was on the wrong path and that Abigail's intervention was God's own restraint.
34. David acknowledges how close the massacre came with chilling specificity. The oath formula *chai-YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') makes this a sworn statement. The counterfactual *lulei mihhart* ('if you had not hurried') credits Abigail's speed — her repeated *vattamaher* ('she hurried') — as the decisive factor. David repeats his original oath language from verse 22 (*mashtin beqir*, 'one who urinates against a wall' — any male) but now speaks of it as averted catastrophe rather than determined purpose. The phrase *mera aotakh* ('from doing evil to you') is revealing: David recognizes that the massacre would have been evil done to Abigail, not just to Nabal. He has come to see the innocent who would have been swept up in his vengeance.

35. The phrase *vaessa panayikh* ('I have lifted your face') is an idiom for showing favor, accepting a person's petition. David uses the same verb (*nasa*, 'to lift') that Abigail used when she asked him to 'lift away' her transgression (verse 28). The language of lifting — lifting guilt away, lifting the face in acceptance — threads through the exchange. David's dismissal *leshalom* ('in peace') is the same word that opened his embassy to Nabal (verse 5-6). The peace that Nabal refused, David now returns to Abigail. The phrase *shamati beqolekh* ('I have listened to your voice') echoes the opening of chapter 12 (Samuel saying 'I have listened to your voice') — David, the future king, heeds wise counsel as Samuel heeded Israel's demand, but this time the counsel is wise rather than misguided.
36. The phrase *kemishteh hammelekh* ('like a king's feast') is loaded with political irony. Nabal, who dismissed David as a runaway slave (verse 10), feasts as royalty while the actual anointed king marches in the wilderness. The narrator's contempt is barely concealed.
37. Medical commentators have speculated about the nature of Nabal's condition — stroke, heart attack, or severe shock leading to a catatonic state. The text is more interested in theological than medical precision: the man who lived as a fool dies as a stone, his inner life extinguished before his body follows. The ten-day interval before actual death (verse 38) may indicate a coma or progressive organ failure.
38. The verb *vayyiggo* ('he struck') is a divine action verb — the LORD is the explicit subject. The narrator leaves no ambiguity: this is not a natural death following illness but a divine execution. The same verb (*nagaf*) is used for God striking the Egyptians (Exodus 12:23) and for divine punishment of Israel (2 Samuel 24:17). The ten-day interval between the heart-death and the body-death creates a grim symmetry with the ten days of sheep-shearing festivity. The man who feasted while others went hungry now lies dying for ten days. God does what David was restrained from doing — but in God's own time and by God's own hand.
39. The speed of David's proposal raises questions about motive. Is this a love story, a political acquisition of a wealthy Calebite estate, or both? The narrator offers no internal commentary on David's feelings — only his theological speech and his immediate action. The verb *vayedaber ba'avigayil* ('he spoke concerning Abigail') uses the preposition *be*, which in this context means 'concerning' or 'about' — he sent messengers to negotiate the marriage, following proper protocol.
40. The messengers come to Carmel — the same location where the whole crisis began with the sheep-shearing. The proposal is direct and unadorned: David *shelachanu elayikh leqachtekh lo le-ishah* ('David has sent us to you to take you to him as a wife'). In ancient Israelite marriage practice, the groom's representatives negotiate with the bride's family. With Nabal dead, Abigail is the head of household, and the proposal comes directly to her.
41. Abigail's response is an extravagant act of humility: she offers to wash the feet not of David himself but of his servants — placing herself beneath even the lowest member of David's household. The word *shifchah* ('maidservant') is a lower status term than *amah* ('female servant'), which she used in her earlier speech. She deliberately lowers her self-designation for the acceptance. The phrase *lirchots raglei avdei adoni* ('to wash the feet of the servants of my lord') reflects ancient Near Eastern hospitality customs where foot-washing was typically performed by the lowest-ranking household member. Abigail's offer is both culturally appropriate humility and a rhetorical masterstroke — the wealthy widow of a great landowner presents herself as willing to serve at the most basic level.
42. Once again the verb *vattamaher* ('she hurried') characterizes Abigail — the same urgency that drove her to intercept David now drives her toward marriage. The five attendants (*na'aroteyha*) indicate that Abigail brings her own household retinue, confirming her status and wealth. She follows David's messengers (*mal'akhei David*) rather than preceding them, maintaining the posture of one who has been summoned. The final clause — *vattehi-lo le-ishah* ('and she became his wife') — is terse and final, closing Abigail's transition from Nabal's household to David's.
43. Ahinoam of Jezreel is mentioned with minimal introduction — she appears to have married David before Abigail, though the timeline is uncertain. The Jezreel here is likely a town in the Judean hill country, not the more famous Jezreel in the north. The narrator notes David's growing household without comment, but the accumulation of wives signals David's increasing status as a political figure. In the ancient Near East, multiple marriages were instruments of alliance and wealth consolidation as much as personal choice.
44. The chapter closes with a devastating political note. Michal, identified pointedly as *eshet David* ('David's wife'), has been given by Saul to another man. The verb *natan* ('he gave') treats Michal as property transferred by royal authority — Saul is dissolving David's marriage to his daughter, severing the dynastic tie that once bound them. This is both a personal betrayal and a political act: by removing David's connection to the royal family, Saul attempts to delegitimize David's claim to the throne. Palti (or Paltiel, as in 2 Samuel 3:15) son of Laish from Gallim is otherwise unknown — a nobody who receives a king's daughter because the king wants to erase his son-in-law. The placement of this verse at the end of the chapter creates a bitter frame: David gains two wives but loses the one who was his first and who represents his connection to Saul's house. The full weight of this verse will not be felt until 2 Samuel 3:14-16, when David demands Michal back and Palti follows her, weeping.

26

Summary: *The Ziphites again betray David's location to Saul, and Saul pursues him into the wilderness of Ziph with three thousand chosen soldiers. David scouts Saul's camp and discovers it unguarded in the night, the entire army fallen into a supernatural deep sleep (tardemah) sent by the LORD. Abishai urges David to kill Saul, but David refuses to touch the LORD's anointed (mashiach YHWH), taking only Saul's spear and water jug as proof. From a distant hilltop, David calls out to Abner, shaming him for failing to guard the king, then addresses Saul directly. Saul acknowledges his own guilt a final time, blesses David, and the two separate — never to meet face to face again.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is structured as a mirror of chapter 24 (the cave at En-gedi), yet every detail has been intensified. In chapter 24, David stumbled upon Saul in a cave by accident; here, David deliberately infiltrates the enemy camp at night. In chapter 24, David cut Saul's robe — a symbolic act he immediately regretted; here, David takes Saul's spear (chanit) and water jug (tsapachath hammayim), symbols of royal power and basic sustenance. The spear is Saul's signature weapon, the same one he hurled at David (18:11, 19:10) and at Jonathan (20:33), and the one he planted in the ground beside his head as a royal standard. By removing it without violence, David performs a devastating symbolic act: he disarms the king without drawing blood. Most remarkable is the tardemah in verse 12 — the same word used for the deep sleep God placed on Adam before creating Eve (Genesis 2:21) and on Abraham during the covenant of the pieces (Genesis 15:12). This is not ordinary exhaustion. The narrator explicitly states it came from the LORD, marking the entire scene as divinely orchestrated. God opened the way for David to kill Saul and David chose restraint.*

Translation Friction: *The central theological tension is David's twice-stated principle that the LORD's anointed must not be struck by human hands (verses 9-11). David insists that the LORD himself must deal with Saul — through natural death, battle, or divine judgment. This raises a difficult question: if God sent the tardemah to give David access to Saul, was God testing David or tempting him? Abishai reads the situation as divine permission to kill ('God has delivered your enemy into your hand today,' verse 8), while David reads the same situation as a divine test of loyalty to the principle of mashiach YHWH. The text does not resolve this explicitly — it lets David's interpretation stand by showing Saul's subsequent acknowledgment. A second tension emerges in verses 19-20: David's complaint that his enemies have 'driven him out from sharing in the LORD's inheritance' and told him to 'go serve other gods.' This is not hyperbole. In the ancient Near Eastern worldview, to be exiled from your god's territory was to be cut off from that god's presence. David is making a theological protest: forced exile is spiritual violence, not merely political displacement. His request that his blood not fall 'to the ground far from the LORD's face' reveals a man genuinely afraid of dying outside God's domain.*

Connections: *The tardemah (deep sleep) connects this passage to Genesis 2:21 (Adam's sleep before the creation of Eve) and Genesis 15:12 (Abraham's sleep during the covenant ceremony). In all three cases, God acts decisively while the human sleeps — creating, covenanting, and here, demonstrating David's worthiness to rule. David's refusal to harm the LORD's anointed anticipates 2 Samuel 1:14-16, where David executes the Amalekite who claims to have killed Saul, applying the same principle retroactively. The spear (chanit) as a symbol of Saul's kingship connects to 1 Samuel 22:6, where Saul holds court with his spear in hand, and to its final appearance planted in the ground at Gibeah. David's lament about being 'driven from the LORD's inheritance' (nachalat YHWH, verse 19) anticipates the theological geography of the Psalms, where exile from God's land equals exile from God's presence (Psalm 42:1-2, 63:1). Saul's final words — 'I have played the fool and gone badly astray' (verse 21) — echo and surpass his partial confession in 24:17, and stand as the last direct words Saul will speak to David in the entire narrative.*

¹The Ziphites came to Saul at Gibeah and said, "David is hiding on the hill of Hachilah, overlooking the wasteland." ²Saul set out and went down to the wilderness of Ziph, and with him three thousand of Israel's picked soldiers, to hunt for David in the wilderness of Ziph. ³Saul made camp on the hill of Hachilah, overlooking the wasteland, beside the road. David was staying in the wilderness, and when he learned that Saul had come after him into the wilderness, ⁴David sent out scouts and confirmed that Saul had arrived for certain. ⁵David set out and came to the place where Saul had encamped. David observed

the spot where Saul was lying, with Abner son of Ner, the commander of his army, beside him. Saul was lying inside the circle of wagons, with the troops camped all around him. ⁶David spoke to Ahimelech the Hittite and to Abishai son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and said, "Who will go down with me into Saul's camp?" Abishai said, "I will go down with you." ⁷David and Abishai made their way into the camp at night. There was Saul, lying asleep inside the circle of wagons, his spear thrust into the ground by his head. Abner and the troops lay sleeping around him. ⁸Abishai said to David, "God has handed your enemy over to you today. Now let me pin him to the ground with a single thrust of the spear — I will not need a second." ⁹David said to Abishai, "Do not destroy him. For who has ever raised his hand against the LORD's anointed and remained innocent?" ¹⁰David said, "As the LORD lives, the LORD himself will strike him — either his day will come and he will die, or he will go down into battle and be swept away. ¹¹The LORD forbid that I should raise my hand against the LORD's anointed! But take the spear by his head and the water jug, and let us go." ¹²David took the spear and the water jug from beside Saul's head, and they left. No one saw. No one knew. No one woke — because all of them were asleep, for a deep sleep from the LORD had fallen on them. ¹³David crossed over to the far side and stood on top of a hill at a distance — a wide gap between them. ¹⁴David called out to the troops and to Abner son of Ner: "Are you not going to answer, Abner?" Abner answered, "Who are you, calling out to the king?" ¹⁵David said to Abner, "Are you not a man? And who is your equal in all Israel? Then why did you not guard your lord the king? Someone entered the camp to destroy the king, your lord. ¹⁶What you have done is not good. As the LORD lives, you all deserve death, because you did not guard your lord — the LORD's anointed! Now look — where is the king's spear? And where is the water jug that was beside his head?" ¹⁷Saul recognized David's voice and said, "Is that your voice, my son David?" David said, "It is my voice, my lord the king." ¹⁸He said, "Why does my lord pursue his servant? What have I done? What wrong is in my hand? ¹⁹Now please, my lord the king, hear the words of your servant. If it is the LORD who has stirred you up against me, let him be appeased by an offering. But if it is human beings, let them be cursed before the LORD, because they have driven me out today from sharing in the LORD's inheritance, saying in effect, 'Go serve other gods.' ²⁰So now, do not let my blood fall to the ground far from the LORD's face. The king of Israel has come out to hunt a single flea — like someone chasing a partridge through the hills." ²¹Saul said, "I have sinned. Come back, my son David. I will not harm you again, because you treated my life as precious today. I have played the fool — I have gone badly, badly astray." ²²David answered, "Here is the king's spear. Let one of the young men come over and retrieve it. ²³The LORD repays each person according to his righteousness and faithfulness. The LORD gave you into my hand today, but I refused to raise my hand against the LORD's anointed. ²⁴Just as your life was precious in my eyes today, so may my life be precious in the LORD's eyes, and may he deliver me from every distress." ²⁵Saul said to David, "Blessed are you, my son David. You will certainly accomplish great things, and you will surely prevail." David went on his way, and Saul returned to his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Ziphtes' second betrayal (the first was in 23:19) establishes them as consistent collaborators with Saul. Their report uses the interrogative halo ('is it not the case that...'), which functions rhetorically as a confident assertion. They are not asking whether David is hiding; they are handing Saul actionable intelligence. The geographical markers — Gibeah (Saul's capital), Hachilah (a known ridge), and ha-yeshimon (the wasteland east of Ziph) — ground the narrative in real terrain that both parties would recognize.
2. The verb yared ('went down') is geographically accurate — Gibeah sits at a higher elevation than the Judean wilderness. The number shelosheth alafim ('three thousand') represents a massive force deployed against one fugitive and his band of roughly six hundred men (23:13). The word bechurei ('chosen, picked') indicates elite troops, not a general levy. The verb levaqesh ('to seek') carries predatory overtones in this context — Saul is not searching; he is hunting. The repetition of 'wilderness of Ziph' at the beginning and end of the verse frames the entire action within this desolate landscape.
3. The verb chanan ('he encamped') indicates a military encampment, not a casual stop. The phrase al ha-derekh ('beside the road') suggests Saul positioned himself along a known route, likely trying to cut off David's escape. The contrast between Saul's organized camp on the hill and David's residence in the open wilderness (yoshev ba-midbar, 'dwelling in the wilderness') underscores the power imbalance. The verb vayyar ('he saw' or 'he perceived') indicates David had scouts monitoring Saul's movements — intelligence was flowing both ways.
4. The word meraggel ('scouts, spies') comes from the root ragal ('to go on foot, to spy out'), the same word used for the spies Moses sent into Canaan (Numbers 13:2). David operates as a military commander, gathering intelligence before acting. The phrase el nakhon ('to a certainty, for certain') emphasizes that David verified the report — he did not act on the Ziphtes' word alone but confirmed Saul's presence through his own reconnaissance.

5. The phrase *shar tseva'o* ('commander of his army') identifies Abner not merely as a general but as the one personally responsible for Saul's safety. His position next to the king makes the coming scene all the more damning — David will penetrate to the very center of the camp, past thousands of soldiers and past the army commander himself. The verb *shakhav* ('lying, sleeping') appears three times in this verse, emphasizing the vulnerability of the entire camp.
6. Ahimelech the Hittite (not to be confused with Ahimelech the priest of Nob, chapter 21-22) is a foreign warrior in David's band — his presence confirms that David's company included non-Israelites. The identification of Abishai as *achi Yo'av* ('Joab's brother') is important for the larger narrative: the sons of Zeruiah — Joab, Abishai, and Asahel — will become David's most capable and most problematic military leaders. Abishai's immediate willingness to descend into the enemy camp reveals his characteristic boldness, but also his recklessness, which the next verses will demonstrate.
6. The verb *yered* ('go down') is literal — the camp was below David's observation point, and the descent was physical as well as metaphorical. David is entering the place of maximum danger.
7. The phrase *chanitho me'ukhah va-arets mera'ashotav* ('his spear thrust into the ground at his head') is one of the most visually striking images in the David narrative. The spear planted beside the sleeping king is both a military marker and an ironic symbol — the weapon Saul used to try to kill David now stands unguarded within David's reach. The verb *me'ukhah* ('thrust in, stuck') comes from a root meaning to press or drive in, indicating the spear was firmly planted, not casually laid aside.
8. Abishai's theological interpretation — 'God has delivered your enemy into your hand' — echoes the exact language used in 24:4 when David's men urged him to kill Saul in the cave. The repetition of this claim across two separate incidents forces the reader to ask whether providential opportunity equals divine permission. Abishai assumes it does. David will argue it does not.
8. The phrase *pa'am achat* ('one time, a single stroke') and *lo eshneh lo* ('I will not do it to him a second time') is a soldier's pledge of efficiency. Abishai is not asking for permission to fight — he is asking for permission to execute, and he guarantees it will be clean and quick.
9. The phrase *meshiach YHWH* ('the LORD's anointed') appears four times in this chapter (verses 9, 11, 16, 23), making it the dominant theological concept. David's ethic is not based on Saul's merit but on God's act of anointing. The verb *niqqah* ('be clean, be innocent, be acquitted') is a legal term — David is asking whether anyone could stand before God's court after killing the one God consecrated. The answer is built into the question.
10. The threefold enumeration — divine stroke, natural death, or battle death — covers every possibility except assassination. David is not expressing indifference about how Saul dies; he is systematically eliminating the one option Abishai proposed. The verb *yigpenu* ('will strike him') uses *nagaf*, which typically describes divine blows — plagues, sudden judgments, military defeats sent by God. The phrase *yomo yavo* ('his day will come') treats death as an appointed event, part of the divine calendar. The verb *nispah* ('be swept away') is the same verb Samuel used in 12:25 for the fate of a wicked king — David echoes the prophetic warning without claiming the right to carry it out.
11. The juxtaposition of what David refuses to take (Saul's life) and what he does take (the spear and water jug) creates a powerful contrast. The *chanit* ('spear') is Saul's weapon and royal emblem; the *tsappachath hammayim* ('water jug') is a clay or leather container for drinking water — an utterly ordinary object. Together they serve as undeniable proof that David stood over the sleeping king and chose restraint. The phrase *nelkha lanu* ('let us go for ourselves') ends the scene with decisive withdrawal — David has made his point and leaves.
12. The three-part negation (no one saw, no one knew, no one woke) uses a literary technique called climactic enumeration, building from external perception (seeing) to internal awareness (knowing) to physical response (waking). The entire sensory apparatus of three thousand soldiers has been disabled.
12. The word *tardemah* appears only seven times in the Hebrew Bible, and each occurrence involves divine action during human unconsciousness. Its use here is the narrator's explicit theological commentary: this was not luck, exhaustion, or coincidence. God orchestrated the scene.
13. The phrase *rav ha-maqom beinehem* ('the space between them was great') is both geographical and symbolic. David has placed a valley between himself and Saul's camp before he speaks — he is beyond reach of pursuit. The verb *avar* ('crossed over') suggests he traversed a wadi or ravine. The positioning on *rosh ha-har* ('the top of the hill') gives David both safety and acoustic advantage — sound carries across the Judean wilderness valleys, and the hilltop position ensures his voice will reach the camp below.
14. David calls to the troops generally (*ha-am*, 'the people') but singles out Abner by name. The taunt *halo ta'aneh* ('will you not answer?') is deliberately provocative — David is waking the camp commander and immediately putting him on the defensive. Abner's response — *mi attah qarata el ha-melek* ('who are you, calling to the king?') — is both a challenge and an admission that he does not know who is speaking. The irony is thick: Abner, whose job is to protect the king, cannot even identify the voice of the man who just stood over the king's sleeping body.
15. The phrase *halo ish attah* ('are you not a man?') is cutting sarcasm. David is questioning Abner's competence, courage, and basic manhood all at once. The follow-up *umi khamokha be-Yisra'el* ('and who is like you in Israel?') intensifies the mockery — if Abner is the greatest warrior in Israel, how did an intruder reach the king? The verb *le-hashchit* ('to destroy') is the same root David used in verse 9 (*al tashchitehu*), creating a deliberate echo: David commanded Abishai not to destroy the king, but someone could have destroyed the king because Abner failed. The double use of *adonekha ha-melek* ('your lord the king') hammers Abner's duty and his failure.
16. The phrase *benei maveth* (literally 'sons of death') is a Hebrew idiom for those under sentence of death. David pronounces this sentence with covenant authority — he is not threatening personal revenge but declaring a legal verdict based on the dereliction of sacred duty. The identification of Saul as *meshiach YHWH* rather than simply 'the king' elevates the charge from military negligence to sacrilege.

16. The demand to look at the missing spear and water jug is David's proof. Physical evidence replaces verbal accusation — the empty ground beside Saul's head speaks louder than any testimony.
17. The exchange of titles — 'my son' and 'my lord the king' — captures the fractured relationship in miniature. Saul uses kinship language; David uses political language. Both are technically accurate (David was Saul's son-in-law and Saul was still the reigning king), but neither captures the full reality of their situation. The voice recognition across the valley in the pre-dawn darkness adds an intimate quality to this confrontation between two men who once loved each other.
18. David's speech shifts from addressing Abner (verses 14-16) to addressing Saul directly. His self-designation as *avdekha* ('your servant') maintains the fiction of feudal loyalty even while protesting persecution. The two questions — *meh asiti* ('what have I done?') and *mah be-yadi ra'ah* ('what evil is in my hand?') — are not requests for information but legal challenges. David demands that Saul produce a charge. The word *ra'ah* ('evil, wrong') in David's hand is contrasted with what was actually in David's hand moments ago: Saul's own spear, which David chose not to use.
19. The verb *hesitkha* ('has stirred you up, has incited you') is striking because it attributes potential hostile agency to God. The same verb is used in 2 Samuel 24:1 when God incites David to take a census and in Job 2:3 when God says the Adversary incited him against Job. David entertains the possibility that his suffering is divinely caused — and if so, the proper response is worship, not resistance.
19. The phrase *nachalat YHWH* ('the LORD's inheritance') refers to the promised land as God's personal estate. Israel does not merely live in the land; they share in God's own inheritance. Exile from this land is theological catastrophe, not merely geographical displacement. David's anguish here is not primarily about safety but about access to God's presence.
20. The phrase *minneged penei YHWH* ('from before the face of the LORD') is theologically critical. David links his physical location to God's presence — to die in exile is to die outside God's sight. This reflects the ancient Israelite conviction that the land of Israel was uniquely God's territory and that God's 'face' (*panim*) was accessible primarily there.
20. The partridge (*qore*, likely the chukar partridge common in the Judean hills) was hunted by persistent chase. Hunters would flush it repeatedly until it could no longer take flight, then catch it by hand. David is saying: you are expending royal resources on an exhausting pursuit of something worthless. The self-deprecation is strategic — by minimizing his own importance, David maximizes the absurdity of Saul's obsession.
21. Saul's threefold confession — I have sinned, I have played the fool, I have gone far astray — surpasses his admission in 24:17 ('you are more righteous than I'). Here Saul does not merely compare himself unfavorably to David; he indicts himself absolutely. Yet the narrator offers no indication that this confession leads to changed behavior. The reader knows from the larger narrative that Saul will not seek David again, but neither will he abdicate or restore David to his place. The confession is genuine but ultimately impotent — Saul sees the truth but cannot reorganize his life around it.
21. The double intensifier *harbeh me'od* ('greatly, exceedingly') is rare and emphatic. Saul is not minimizing his failure; he is drowning in the recognition of it.
22. David does not return the spear personally. He offers it back through an intermediary — a deliberate choice that maintains the distance between them. The phrase *hinneh chanith ha-melek* ('here is the king's spear') presents the weapon as evidence one final time before releasing it. The spear will return to Saul, but the point has been made: David held the instrument of royal power and gave it back. The verb *yiqqacheha* ('let him take it') is matter-of-fact — David treats the spear as an object to be retrieved, not a trophy to be bargained over.
23. David now openly states what he implied to Abishai: God did deliver Saul into his hand. He accepts Abishai's reading of the situation as providentially arranged but rejects the conclusion. The distinction is crucial for the theology of the chapter: divine opportunity is not the same as divine command. God may open a door without requiring you to walk through it.
23. The pairing of *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') and *emunah* ('faithfulness') represents the full scope of covenant loyalty — right action and consistent character. David claims both, not arrogantly but as evidence submitted to the divine court.
24. The symmetry of the verse is deliberate: your life / my eyes becomes my life / the LORD's eyes. David has acted as God's representative toward Saul — protecting the anointed, refusing violence — and now he asks God to act toward him with the same protective care. This is not a *quid pro quo* but a prayer grounded in the conviction that God's character mirrors the mercy David has shown.
25. The infinitive absolute pairs (*aso ta'aseh* and *yakhol tukhal*) represent the highest degree of certainty Hebrew grammar can express. Saul is not wishing David well; he is declaring an outcome he can see but cannot prevent. There is something prophetic and tragic in a king blessing the man who will replace him.
25. The final sentence — David went his way, Saul returned to his place — is one of the great narrative closings in the Hebrew Bible. No further commentary is offered. No reconciliation occurs. No promise is extracted. The two men simply walk apart, and the narrator lets the silence speak. This is the last direct encounter between Saul and David in the entire narrative of 1 Samuel.

27

Summary: *David, exhausted by years of fleeing Saul through the Judean wilderness, concludes that he will eventually be killed unless he escapes Israelite territory entirely. He crosses the border into Philistia with his six hundred men and their households, placing himself under the protection of Achish son of Maoch, king of Gath. When Saul learns David has fled to Philistia, he stops pursuing him. David requests and receives Ziklag, a town in the southern frontier, as his base of operations. From Ziklag, David conducts raids against the Geshurites, Girzites, and Amalekites — peoples of the deep south — while telling Achish he has been raiding Judean territory and its allies. David leaves no survivors from his raids to prevent anyone from reporting his deception to Gath. Achish, completely deceived, believes David has made himself permanently hated by Israel and will serve as his vassal forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents David at his most morally ambiguous. The man anointed by God's prophet now swears fealty to a Philistine king, lives among Israel's archenemies, and sustains himself through a systematic campaign of deception and total warfare. The narrator offers no divine oracle, no prophetic word, no consultation of the ephod — the silence of God in this chapter is deafening. David's opening soliloquy in verse 1 ('I will be swept away one day by the hand of Saul') is the only time in the narrative where David's reasoning is presented without divine input, and his conclusion — to flee to Philistia — appears to be entirely his own strategic calculation. The text neither condemns nor approves. It simply records. What makes this especially striking is the contrast with David's earlier refusals to kill Saul (chapters 24 and 26), where he explicitly invoked covenant theology. Here, covenant language disappears entirely. David operates in a theological vacuum, surviving by wit and brutality rather than by faith. The chapter is also structurally pivotal: it removes David from Israelite soil, setting up the catastrophic collision at the battle of Gilboa where David will be expected to fight against his own people.*

Translation Friction: *The deepest tension is theological: is David outside God's will, or is God's providence operating through David's morally compromised choices? The text refuses to answer. The verb amar in verse 1 ('David said in his heart') presents David's reasoning as internal deliberation, not divine instruction — a sharp contrast with earlier episodes where David 'inquired of the LORD' before acting (23:2, 23:4). Translators must also navigate the ethical horror of verse 11: David kills every man and woman in his raids specifically to eliminate witnesses to his deception. The Hebrew lo yechayah ('he would not let live') uses the Piel of chayah, an intensive form indicating deliberate, systematic killing. This is not battlefield casualties but calculated extermination for the purpose of maintaining a lie. The translator's challenge is to render this without either sanitizing the violence or sensationalizing it — the Hebrew text states it flatly, and so must the rendering. Finally, the phrase 'to this day' in verse 6 (regarding Ziklag belonging to the kings of Judah) is a rare editorial note that reveals the narrator is writing long after the events, during or after the divided monarchy.*

Connections: *David's flight to Gath recalls his earlier, disastrous visit in chapter 21, where he feigned madness to escape Achish. Now he returns with an army of six hundred, and Achish welcomes him — the power dynamic has completely shifted. The Ziklag gift connects forward to 2 Samuel 1:1, where David receives news of Saul's death while at Ziklag, and backward to the tribal allotments, since Ziklag was originally assigned to Simeon within Judah's territory (Joshua 19:5). David's raids against the Amalekites continue the unfinished business of Saul's failed war in chapter 15 — the very mission whose botched execution cost Saul his kingdom. There is deep irony: the exile is completing the holy war the king could not. David's deception of Achish foreshadows the larger deception that will nearly trap him at the battle of Gilboa (chapters 28-29), where Achish expects David to fight against Israel. The Geshurites mentioned here should be distinguished from the Geshurites of the Transjordan, whose princess Maacah will later become David's wife and Absalom's mother (2 Samuel 3:3) — a connection that suggests David's time in the south was laying political groundwork for his future reign.*

¹David said to himself, "One of these days I will be swept away by the hand of Saul. There is nothing better for me than to escape — escape completely — into the land of the Philistines. Then Saul will give up searching for me anywhere in the territory of Israel, and I will slip out of his grasp." ²So David set out and crossed over — he and the six hundred men with

him — to Achish son of Maach, king of Gath. ³David settled with Achish in Gath — he and his men, each man with his household. David brought his two wives: Ahinoam of Jezreel, and Abigail of Carmel, the widow of Nabal. ⁴When Saul was told that David had fled to Gath, he stopped searching for him entirely. ⁵David said to Achish, "If I have found favor in your eyes, let them give me a place in one of the outlying towns so I can settle there. Why should your servant live in the royal city alongside you?" ⁶So Achish gave him Ziklag that day. This is why Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah to this day. ⁷The total time David lived in Philistine territory was a year and four months. ⁸David and his men went up and raided the Geshurites, the Girzites, and the Amalekites — for these were the peoples who had inhabited the region from ancient times, along the road toward Shur and as far as the land of Egypt. ⁹David would strike the region and leave no man or woman alive. He would take the sheep, cattle, donkeys, camels, and clothing, then return and come to Achish. ¹⁰When Achish would ask, "Where did you raid today?" David would say, "Against the Negev of Judah," or "Against the Negev of the Jerahmeelites," or "Against the Negev of the Kenites." ¹¹David would leave no man or woman alive to be brought to Gath, reasoning, "Otherwise they will report against us and say, 'This is what David did.'" This was his practice the entire time he lived in Philistine territory. ¹²Achish trusted David completely, thinking, "He has made himself so repulsive to his own people Israel that he will be my servant permanently."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The absence of divine consultation is conspicuous. In the preceding chapters, David repeatedly 'inquired of the LORD' through Abiathar's ephod (23:2, 23:4, 23:9-12). Here, no inquiry is made. David's reasoning is entirely pragmatic: probability of death under Saul versus probability of survival under Achish. Whether this silence represents a lapse in faith or simply a narrative choice to focus on David's strategic mind, the text does not say.
1. The doubling of the verb *malat* (*himalet immalet*, 'escaping I will escape') mirrors the emphatic construction Saul used when God rejected him — the same grammatical intensity that marked Saul's doom now marks David's survival strategy. The irony is layered: David flees to the very people whose champion he killed in chapter 17.
2. The verb *vayyaqom* ('he rose up') followed by *vayyaavor* ('he crossed over') is a formulaic pair indicating decisive departure. The verb *avar* ('to cross over') carries weight in biblical narrative — it is the verb used for crossing the Jordan, crossing boundaries, and transitioning between states. David is not merely traveling; he is crossing a theological and political boundary from the LORD's land into Philistine territory. The six hundred men represent the loyal fighting force that has been with David since Adullam (chapter 22), now a mobile army-in-exile. Achish ben Maach is identified by patronym and title, establishing him as a legitimate vassal king, not a minor chieftain.
3. The identification of Abigail as 'wife of Nabal the Carmelite' rather than 'wife of David' is narratively significant. The text preserves her former identity, perhaps as an editorial reminder that David's household has a complicated history. The phrase *ish u-veito* ('each man and his house') totals a community of several thousand people when women and children are included — this is a mass emigration, not a covert operation.
4. The verb *barach* ('he fled') is the standard term for flight from danger — the same verb used of Jacob fleeing Laban (Genesis 31:20-21) and Moses fleeing Pharaoh (Exodus 2:15). It frames David's departure not as a strategic relocation but as a fugitive's desperate escape. The phrase *lo yosef od levaqsho* ('he did not continue again to seek him') uses the verb *yosef* ('to add, to continue') with the infinitive, a construction meaning complete cessation. David's calculation from verse 1 has proved correct: crossing into Philistia ended Saul's pursuit. But the irony is severe — David is safe from the king of Israel only because he is now a vassal of the king of Gath.
5. The phrase *ir hamamlakhah* ('the royal city') is literally 'the city of the kingdom,' meaning the capital or seat of royal power. David's stated reason for leaving — that he is unworthy to live alongside the king — is deferential on the surface but deceptive in purpose. By relocating to the periphery, David creates the operational freedom he needs to maintain his double life. The request also benefits Achish by removing a large, potentially destabilizing foreign military force from his capital — a point David may have calculated as well.
6. The editorial note *lakhen hayetah Tsiqlag le-malkhei Yehudah* ('therefore Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah') uses the preposition *le-* indicating ongoing possession. This is an etiological note — it explains a present reality by narrating its origin. The plural 'kings of Judah' dates the narrator (or a later editor) to the period of the divided monarchy at the earliest. The irony is thick: a Philistine vassal grant becomes permanent Judean royal property, a piece of the promised land recovered not through holy war but through political asylum.
7. The phrase *yamim ve-arba'ah chodashim* is literally 'days and four months.' The word *yamim* ('days') here functions idiomatically to mean 'a year' — the same usage appears in Leviticus 25:29 and Judges 17:10. Some interpreters read it as 'some days and four months,' yielding a shorter period, but the traditional understanding as 'a year and four months' (sixteen months total) is supported by the Septuagint and the scope of activity described in the following verses. This chronological note serves a structural function, marking the duration of David's Philistine exile as a defined period with a beginning and an end.
8. The Geshurites here (*ha-Geshuri*) must be distinguished from the Geshurites of 2 Samuel 3:3 and 13:37, who lived east of the Sea of Galilee. These southern Geshurites occupied the Negev frontier. The Girzites (*ha-Gizri*) appear nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible, making them one of the text's small mysteries — a people remembered only because David raided them.

8. David's choice of targets is strategic: he attacks peoples who are enemies of both Israel and Judah, gaining plunder while eliminating groups that might threaten Judean settlements. The Amalekites in particular are the people Saul was commanded to destroy in chapter 15 — David is finishing work the rejected king failed to complete, though his motive here is survival, not obedience.
9. The grammar here shifts to habitual aspect — the Hebrew uses converted perfects (vav-consecutive) in a way that describes repeated, customary action. This was not a single raid but David's sustained practice throughout his sixteen months in Philistine territory. The phrase *lo yechayeh ish ve-ishah* ('he would not let man or woman live') is chilling in its matter-of-fact delivery. The narrator reports extermination without comment, leaving the moral weight entirely on the reader.
9. The five categories of plunder (sheep, cattle, donkeys, camels, clothing) form a complete inventory of movable wealth in the ancient Near East. Clothing (*begadim*) was a significant form of portable wealth — garments were expensive, durable, and easily transported, functioning almost as currency in the ancient world.
10. The rendering adjusts the grammar to habitual aspect ('would ask,' 'would say') to match the iterative nature of the Hebrew, which describes a repeated pattern rather than a single conversation. The word *Negev* (*negev*) means 'south' or 'dry region' and functions both as a compass direction and as a proper regional name for the arid zone south of the Judean hill country.
10. David's three named targets — Judah, the *Jerahmeelites*, and the *Kenites* — are precisely the groups he was actually cultivating as allies (see 30:29 where David sends gifts to these same groups). The deception is architecturally perfect: the peoples David claims to be attacking are the ones he is actually protecting and courting for his future kingdom.
11. The phrase *ve-khoh mishpat* ('and such was his practice') uses *mishpat* in its sense of 'customary procedure' or 'established pattern.' This is the same word that elsewhere means 'justice' or 'judgment' — its application to David's extermination policy creates a disturbing semantic collision. The narrator does not editorialize; the word choice does the work.
11. The clause *kol hayyamim asher yashav bisdei Pelishtim* ('all the days he lived in the territory of the Philistines') confirms that this was not an isolated incident but David's sustained operational method for sixteen months. The totality of the statement — all the days, no survivors, every raid — forces the reader to sit with the full scope of what David's survival required.
12. The root *aman* ('to trust, to believe') connects to one of the deepest theological terms in the Hebrew Bible — it is the root of *emunah* ('faithfulness') and *amen* ('it is firm, it is sure'). The application of this word to Achish's misplaced confidence is richly ironic: the vocabulary of covenant faithfulness describes a pagan king's naivety. Achish '*amens*' a lie.
12. The phrase *le-eved olam* ('as a permanent servant') uses the same language found in the law of the Hebrew slave who chooses perpetual bondage (Exodus 21:6). Achish sees David as having voluntarily entered permanent Philistine servitude. The dramatic irony is at its peak: David, the LORD's anointed king over Israel, is confidently classified as a Philistine possession forever. The chapter ends on this note of total deception — Achish deceived, David compromised, God silent, and the future entirely uncertain.

28

Summary: *The Philistines muster for war against Israel, and Saul — terrified, abandoned by God, and desperate — seeks out a woman at Endor who traffics with the dead, the very practice he himself had banned. He asks her to summon Samuel from death. What rises is described by the woman as an *elohim* ascending from the earth, and Samuel himself appears — not as a pale ghost but as a speaking, judging presence who delivers God's verdict: tomorrow Saul and his sons will die, and Israel will fall to the Philistines. Saul collapses face-first on the ground, broken by the sentence. The woman, showing unexpected compassion, persuades the king to eat before he goes out to meet his death.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most theologically volatile chapters in the Hebrew Bible. The narrator never hedges: the figure who rises is called Samuel (verse 12, 14, 15, 16). The text does not say 'a spirit claiming to be Samuel' or 'what appeared to be Samuel.' The woman sees him; Samuel speaks; his prophecy comes true the next day. Yet the entire episode takes place through a practice that the Torah explicitly condemns (Leviticus 19:31, 20:6, 20:27, Deuteronomy 18:10-12) and that Saul himself had outlawed (verse 3). The text offers no resolution to the tension. It does not explain how a banned ritual could produce a genuine prophetic word, nor does it validate necromancy by the outcome. Instead, it lets the contradiction stand as testimony to how far Saul has fallen: the king who once stood among the prophets (10:11) now crouches in disguise before a medium, begging the dead for what the living God will no longer give him. The woman's terrified scream when Samuel actually appears (verse 12) suggests that even she did not expect this to work — something beyond her craft has intervened.*

*Translation Friction: The word *elohim* in verse 13 is the primary translation flashpoint. The woman says 'I see an *elohim* ascending from the earth.' *Elohim* can mean 'God,' 'gods,' 'divine being,' 'supernatural being,' or even 'judges' depending on context. The KJV renders it 'gods,' the LXX has *theoi*. We render it 'a divine being' because the singular description that follows (an old man wrapped in a robe) indicates a single figure, and because the term here functions as a category marker — the woman is telling Saul that what she sees belongs to the supernatural realm, not the human one. This is not a statement about Samuel's deity but about his post-mortem status. The second major difficulty is the phrase *ba'alat ov* (verse 7), traditionally 'a woman with a familiar spirit.' The word *ov* refers to the pit or the spirit summoned from it, and *ba'alat* means 'mistress of, one who controls.' We render it 'a woman who commands a spirit-pit' to preserve the sense of professional expertise in necromancy without importing later demonological frameworks. The chapter also raises the question of whether God himself sent Samuel or whether the medium's ritual succeeded on its own power — the text deliberately refuses to answer.*

Connections: Saul's nocturnal journey to Endor inverts his earlier journey to find Samuel in chapter 9 — there he was looking for lost donkeys and found a kingdom; here he is looking for lost guidance and finds his death sentence. The disguise motif connects to later royal disguises in the tradition (Jeroboam's wife in 1 Kings 14:1-6, Ahab at Ramoth-gilead in 1 Kings 22:30), all of which fail because God sees through them. Samuel's pronouncement that 'the LORD has torn the kingdom from your hand' (verse 17) reprises his earlier declaration at the robe-tearing incident (15:27-28), creating a frame around Saul's entire reign. The woman's preparation of food for Saul — slaughtering a fattened calf and baking unleavened bread — carries sacrificial overtones; it is almost a funeral meal before the death has occurred. The Philistine gathering at Shunem (verse 4) sets the stage for the battle of Mount Gilboa in chapter 31, where every detail of Samuel's prophecy will be fulfilled.

¹In those days the Philistines assembled their forces for war, to fight against Israel. Achish said to David, "You must understand clearly that you and your men will march out with me in the army." ²David said to Achish, "Then you yourself will see what your servant can do." Achish said to David, "Then I will make you my permanent bodyguard." ³Now Samuel was dead. All Israel had mourned for him and buried him in Ramah, his own city. And Saul had expelled the spirit-conjurers and the diviners from the land. ⁴The Philistines assembled, advanced, and encamped at Shunem. Saul gathered all Israel, and they encamped at Gilboa. ⁵When Saul saw the Philistine camp, he was afraid, and his heart shook violently. ⁶Saul inquired of the LORD, but the LORD did not answer him — not by dreams, not by the Urim, not by prophets. ⁷Saul said to his servants, "Find me a woman who commands a spirit-pit, so I can go to her and seek answers through her." His servants said to him, "There is a woman who commands a spirit-pit at Endor." ⁸Saul disguised himself, put on different clothing, and set out — he and two men with him. They came to the woman at night. He said, "Conjure for me through the spirit-pit and bring up for me whoever I name to you." ⁹The woman said to him, "You surely know what Saul has done — how he cut down the spirit-conjurers and the diviners from the land. Why are you setting a trap for my life, to get me killed?" ¹⁰Saul swore to her by the LORD: "As the LORD lives, no punishment will fall on you for this." ¹¹The woman said, "Whom should I bring up for you?" He said, "Bring up Samuel for me." ¹²When the woman saw Samuel, she screamed aloud. The woman said to Saul, "Why have you deceived me? You are Saul!" ¹³The king said to her, "Do not be afraid. What do you see?" The woman said to Saul, "I see a divine being rising from the earth." ¹⁴He said to her, "What does he look like?" She said, "An old man is coming up, and he is wrapped in a robe." Saul knew it was Samuel. He bent down with his face to the ground and prostrated himself. ¹⁵Samuel said to Saul, "Why have you disturbed me by bringing me up?" Saul said, "I am in terrible distress. The Philistines are waging war against me, and God has turned away from me and answers me no longer — not through prophets, not through dreams. So I have called on you to tell me what I should do." ¹⁶Samuel said, "Why do you ask me, when the LORD has turned away from you and become your adversary?" ¹⁷The LORD has done to you just as he spoke through me: the LORD has torn the kingdom from your hand and given it to your neighbor — to David. ¹⁸Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD and did not carry out his burning anger against Amalek, therefore the LORD has done this thing to you today. ¹⁹The LORD will also hand Israel over, along with you, into the power of the Philistines. Tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. The LORD will give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines. ²⁰Saul immediately fell full-length on the ground, terrified by Samuel's words. There was no strength left in him, because he had eaten no food all that day and all that night. ²¹The woman came to Saul and saw that he was deeply shaken. She said to him, "Your servant listened to your voice. I

put my life in my hands and obeyed the words you spoke to me. ²²Now please, you too listen to the voice of your servant. Let me set a piece of bread before you. Eat, so that you will have strength when you go on your way." ²³He refused and said, "I will not eat." But his servants, along with the woman, pressed him until he gave in. He got up from the ground and sat on the bed. ²⁴The woman had a fattened calf in the house. She quickly slaughtered it, took flour, kneaded it, and baked unleavened bread. ²⁵She set it before Saul and before his servants, and they ate. Then they rose and went out into the night.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ba-yamim haheim* ('in those days') signals a temporal overlap with the events of chapters 26-27. The Philistine muster is the military backdrop that will drive the entire chapter. The verb *yiqbetsu* ('they assembled') uses the root *qavats*, denoting the deliberate concentration of scattered forces into a unified army.
1. Achish's statement to David assumes complete fealty. David has been living under Achish's protection in Ziklag (chapter 27), raiding Israelite enemies while pretending to raid Israelites. The moment of reckoning has arrived: Achish expects David to fight Israel. David's response in verse 2 is masterfully ambiguous.
2. The adverb *lakhen* ('therefore, accordingly') appears in both David's and Achish's statements, creating a false sense of mutual agreement. David's *lakhen* is evasive; Achish's is decisive. The disconnect between what David means and what Achish understands is the engine of dramatic irony throughout the Ziklag narrative.
2. The phrase *kol ha-yamim* ('all the days') means permanently — Achish envisions David as his personal guard indefinitely. This scene is cut short and will not resolve until chapter 29, where the Philistine lords will refuse to let David march into battle, providentially rescuing him from the impossible dilemma.
3. This verse is nearly identical to 25:1, where Samuel's death was first reported. The repetition here serves a narrative purpose: the reader must be reminded that Samuel is dead before he appears. The redundancy is deliberate, emphasizing the impossibility of what is about to happen.
3. The term *ha-ovot* ('the spirit-conjurers') is the plural of *ov*, referring to those who practice necromancy — summoning the dead through a ritual pit or spirit. The *yidde'onim* ('the diviners' or 'knowing ones') are a related class of occult practitioners who claim access to hidden knowledge. Saul's ban on both classes fulfills the Deuteronomic mandate (Deuteronomy 18:10-12) — which makes his later violation of his own law all the more self-condemning.
4. The geography is critical. Shunem sits in the Jezreel Valley at the foot of the Hill of Moreh; Gilboa is the mountain ridge to the south across the valley. The two armies face each other across open ground — terrain that favors the Philistines with their chariots and iron weapons. Saul has allowed the Philistines to penetrate deep into Israelite territory, far north of their traditional coastal base. The strategic situation is already catastrophic before any spiritual crisis begins.
4. The verb *vayyiqbetsu* ('they assembled') mirrors verse 1 — the Philistine war machine is in motion. Saul's parallel gathering (*vayyiqbots*) uses the same root, but the symmetry is deceptive. The Philistines assemble with confidence; Saul assembles in terror (verse 5).
5. The verb *charad* appears elsewhere for the trembling of Isaac when he discovers Jacob's deception (Genesis 27:33) and for the trembling of the earth at Sinai (Exodus 19:18). It denotes a violent, involuntary shaking that signals the loss of composure and control. Saul's heart — the seat of will and courage in Hebrew thought — is no longer his own.
6. The triple *gam* construction ('also by...also by...also by') is emphatic in Hebrew — it lists every available channel and slams each one shut. The order may be ascending in directness: dreams are indirect and ambiguous, the Urim gives a yes-or-no answer, and prophets deliver articulated messages. God refuses all three levels of communication.
6. The silence of God is one of the most terrifying themes in the Hebrew Bible. In 1 Samuel 14:37, Saul experienced a similar silence when he inquired about pursuing the Philistines, and that silence was connected to Jonathan's unwitting violation of Saul's oath. Here the silence is total and final — it is the covenant relationship itself that has gone dark.
7. The speed of the servants' reply is narratively significant. They do not hesitate or express surprise at the request. They know exactly where a medium is operating despite the ban. This suggests either that the purge was superficial or that the servants were already aware of Saul's desperation.
7. Endor (Ein Dor, 'spring of the dwelling') is located on the northern slope of the Hill of Moreh — which means it is on the far side of the Philistine camp from Saul's position at Gilboa. To reach the medium, Saul will have to skirt or pass through enemy territory at night. The geography underscores his desperation: he risks his life just to reach the woman.
8. The verb *qasam* ('to divine, to practice divination') is from the same root as *qosem* ('diviner'), one of the forbidden practitioners listed in Deuteronomy 18:10-12. Saul is not merely bending the rules; he is commanding a woman to perform the exact practice he banned and that the Torah condemns.
8. The phrase *et asher omar elayikh* ('whoever I name to you') delays the revelation of whom Saul wants summoned, building narrative tension. The reader already knows — the dead prophet has been on Saul's mind since verse 3 — but the woman does not.

9. The verb *hikhrit* ('he cut down, he cut off') comes from *karat*, the covenant-cutting root — the same verb used for making covenants and for the penalty of being 'cut off from the people.' Saul did not merely banish these practitioners; he annihilated them. The woman's fear is justified: the penalty for necromancy is death (Leviticus 20:27).
9. The verb *mitnaqesh* ('setting a trap, ensnaring') comes from *naqash* or *yaqosh*, meaning to lay a snare as a hunter traps prey. The woman suspects entrapment — that this stranger is an agent provocateur sent by Saul to flush out surviving mediums. The irony, unknown to her, is that the man asking her to break Saul's law is Saul himself.
10. The oath formula *chai YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') is the most solemn oath available in Israelite speech. David uses it repeatedly throughout 1 Samuel (as in 20:3, 25:26). To use it in this context — guaranteeing immunity for necromancy — is to weaponize sacred language for profane purposes. The narrator records this without comment, letting the reader absorb the full weight of the contradiction.
11. The exchange is terse — two short sentences that carry enormous theological weight. The verb *a'aleh* ('I will bring up') and *ha'ali* ('bring up') both use the Hiphil of *alah*, the causative form meaning 'to cause to ascend.' The dead are imagined as below, in Sheol, and must be brought upward through ritual action. Saul names Samuel without hesitation — this has been his intention all along. The dead prophet is his last hope.
12. The woman's scream is the strongest evidence that what occurred transcended her normal practice. Mediums who regularly performed seances would not scream at their own results. The implication is that genuine contact with the dead was not what her rituals typically produced — this time, something real broke through, and it terrified her.
12. Her instant recognition of Saul suggests a connection between the apparition and the revelation of identity. Some interpreters argue that Samuel told her; others that the sheer magnitude of the event made her realize only a king would dare seek such consultation for such a figure.
13. We render *elohim* as 'a divine being' rather than 'gods' (KJV) or 'a spirit' (NIV) because the term here functions as a category designation: the woman is telling Saul that what she sees belongs to the supernatural order. The plural form *elohim* is used elsewhere for single supernatural beings (as in Psalm 82:1, where God stands in the assembly of *el*, among the *elohim*). The woman is not making a theological claim about Samuel's nature; she is reporting what category of entity she perceives.
13. The participle *olim* ('ascending, rising') confirms the vertical cosmology assumed throughout: the dead are below, in Sheol, and must come up. The preposition *min ha-arets* ('from the earth/ground') locates the point of emergence.
14. The *me'il* ('robe') is the connecting thread. In 2:19, Hannah brings a small *me'il* to the boy Samuel at Shiloh each year. In 15:27, Saul seizes the hem of Samuel's *me'il* and tears it, and Samuel turns the torn robe into a prophetic sign: 'The LORD has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today.' In 24:4, David cuts the hem of Saul's *me'il* and is immediately stricken with guilt. The robe carries symbolic weight throughout 1 Samuel as a marker of authority and identity. That Samuel appears still wearing it in death suggests that his prophetic identity persists beyond the grave.
14. The verb *vayyeda* ('he knew, he perceived') indicates recognition without sight — Saul identifies Samuel from the woman's verbal description alone. The verb *vayyishtachu* ('he prostrated himself') is from *shachah*, the standard verb for worship or deep obeisance. Whether this constitutes worship of the dead or simply the prostration of a desperate man before a greater authority, the text does not distinguish.
15. The narrator identifies the speaker as *shemu'el* ('Samuel') without qualification — not 'the apparition' or 'the spirit' but Samuel by name. The text commits fully to the reality of Samuel's presence. Whatever theological difficulties this creates, the narrative does not flinch.
15. Saul's list of failed channels differs slightly from verse 6: here he mentions prophets before dreams (reversing the order) and omits the Urim entirely. The omission of the Urim may be significant — Saul may not want to remind Samuel (or himself) that the priestly oracle is unavailable because he massacred the priests.
16. The word *arekha* is one of the more debated forms in this chapter. Some derive it from 'ar' ('enemy'), while others connect it to the root 'ur' ('to rouse, to be hostile'). The Septuagint reads *meta tou plesion sou* ('with your neighbor'), interpreting it as a reference to David. We follow the reading 'your adversary' because it maintains the theological focus: God himself has crossed to the other side of the conflict.
16. Samuel's question is not a request for information but a rhetorical demolition. If God has departed, what can a dead prophet do? The answer, as verses 17-19 will show, is deliver the verdict God has already decided.
17. The phrase *beyadi* ('by my hand') is the prophetic agency formula, marking the prophet as the instrument through which God's word comes. Samuel uses it even in death, asserting the continuity of his prophetic office beyond the grave.
17. The naming of David is significant. In chapter 15, Samuel said 'your neighbor who is better than you' without naming anyone. Now the name is spoken aloud: David. The obscure prophecy has become a specific sentence. Saul hears his replacement named to his face by the prophet who anointed both of them.
18. Samuel identifies the specific cause: Saul's failure to execute the *cherem* (total destruction ban) against Amalek in chapter 15. The phrase *charon apo* ('his burning anger, his fierce wrath') describes God's settled fury against Amalek, rooted in the Amalekite attack on Israel's rear guard during the exodus (Exodus 17:8-16, Deuteronomy 25:17-19). Saul was commanded to be the instrument of that centuries-old sentence and failed by sparing King Agag and the best livestock.
18. The phrase *ha-yom hazzeh* ('this day') gives the judgment immediacy. The consequences that began in chapter 15 have now reached their terminal point — 'this day' is the day before Saul's death.

- 19.** The phrase *attah u-vanekha immi* ('you and your sons with me') is one of the most haunting lines in the Hebrew Bible. 'With me' means in Sheol, in the realm of the dead. Samuel does not promise paradise or punishment — only shared residence in the underworld. The theology of the afterlife here is minimal: the dead are together, below, at rest (until disturbed, as Samuel was). There is no developed eschatology, no heaven or hell — only the grave.
- 19.** The prophecy is fulfilled with exact precision in chapter 31: Saul and three of his sons die on Mount Gilboa the next day, and the Israelite army is routed by the Philistines. Samuel's word, delivered from beyond death, proves as reliable as any prophecy he gave in life.
- 20.** The phrase *melo qomato* ('the fullness of his stature') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. It is a unique construction that forces the reader to see Saul's entire body — the same body singled out for its impressive height at his coronation — stretched flat on the ground. The narrative arc from 'head and shoulders above everyone' to 'full-length on the floor' is complete.
- 20.** The detail about not eating serves a dual purpose: it explains why Saul has no physical strength to absorb the shock, and it sets up the woman's act of feeding him in verses 21-25. The fasting may also carry ritual significance — those who approached the divine or the dead sometimes fasted in preparation.
- 21.** The verb *nivhal* ('he was shaken, devastated') comes from *bahal*, meaning to be terrified, dismayed, or overwhelmed. It describes not mere fear but a shattering of composure — Saul is undone. The woman's approach shifts the scene from prophetic judgment to unexpected human compassion. Her self-designation as *shifchatekha* ('your maidservant') is the formal language of a subordinate addressing a superior, but the power dynamic has reversed: the outlaw medium is now caring for the broken king.
- 21.** The phrase *va-asim nafshi bekhappi* ('I put my life in my hands') is an idiom for risking one's life (also in Judges 12:3, 1 Samuel 19:5). She reminds Saul that she took a mortal risk to serve him — now she asks him to do something far simpler: eat.
- 22.** The verbal echo is unmistakable: Saul did not *shema beqol YHWH* ('listen to the voice of the LORD,' verse 18), but the woman asks him to *shema beqol shifchatekha* ('listen to the voice of your servant'). The chapter's architecture turns on the question of whose voice Saul will heed. He rejected God's voice, sought a dead prophet's voice, and now accepts a medium's voice.
- 23.** The verb *parats* ('to breach, to press through') is unusually forceful for a scene of persuasion. It suggests that Saul's refusal was serious and required real effort to overcome. The same verb describes the LORD 'breaking out' against Uzzah (2 Samuel 6:8) and water bursting through (2 Samuel 5:20). The servants and the woman had to break through Saul's death-wish to make him eat.
- 23.** The *mittah* ('bed, couch') is likely the woman's own furniture — a raised platform or frame with a mat, standard in modest homes. Saul moves from the floor to the bed, the first step in a physical recovery that will get him out the door and back to his army, where he will die the next day.
- 24.** The *egel marbeq* ('fattened calf') appears in other hospitality scenes: Abraham slaughters a calf for his angelic visitors (Genesis 18:7), and the prodigal son's father kills the fattened calf (Luke 15:23). The motif signals extravagant generosity. This woman — an outlaw medium operating under a death sentence — gives the king who banned her profession the best she has.
- 24.** The *matstsot* ('unleavened bread') may carry Passover echoes, though the text does not make this connection explicit. The association of unleavened bread with deliverance and departure adds a layer of unintended meaning: Saul is about to depart, but not toward deliverance.
- 25.** The phrase *ballaylah hahu* ('that night') bookends the chapter with verse 8, where Saul arrived at night (*laylah*). He came in darkness and leaves in darkness. The narrator offers no commentary, no moral, no theological resolution. The events speak for themselves: a king who lost God, consulted the dead, received his death sentence, was fed by an outlaw, and walked into the night to die.
- 25.** The unnamed woman of Endor is one of the most complex minor characters in the Hebrew Bible. She is a lawbreaker, a necromancer, and a practitioner of everything the Torah condemns — yet she is also the only person in this chapter who shows Saul genuine compassion. She risks her life, sacrifices her best animal, bakes bread, and feeds a broken man. The text refuses to resolve her moral status, leaving the reader to hold both realities together.

29

Summary: The Philistines muster their forces at Aphek for war against Israel, with David and his men marching in the rear guard under Achish. The Philistine tyrants spot the Hebrews in their ranks and demand their removal, invoking David's reputation as a killer of tens of thousands. Achish defends David's loyalty but is overruled by the furious tyrants, who fear David will turn on them mid-battle to regain Saul's favor. Achish reluctantly sends David away with an oath affirming his personal trust, and David departs early the next morning to return to Ziklag — arriving just in time for the crisis that awaits him in chapter 30.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterpiece of providential narrative engineering. David has spent sixteen months living a double life in Philistine territory (27:7), raiding non-Israelite settlements while telling Achish he was attacking Judah. Now the deception reaches its breaking point: David is marching to war against his own people, against Saul whom he has twice refused to kill, against the very nation he is anointed to rule. The narrator never tells us what David intended to do if the battle proceeded — that moral crisis is left deliberately unresolved because God removes it before it arrives. The Philistine tyrants, acting entirely from self-interest and military pragmatism, become the unwitting instruments of divine rescue. The Hebrew word *seren* (used exclusively for Philistine rulers, never for Israelite leaders) appears at the critical decision points, emphasizing that these foreign tyrants — not prophets, not priests, not the LORD speaking directly — are the mechanism through which David is extracted from an impossible situation.*

Translation Friction: *The most uncomfortable feature of this text is David's protest in verse 8. When Achish tells him to leave, David objects: 'What have I done? What fault have you found in your servant from the day I entered your service until now, that I should not go and fight against the enemies of my lord the king?' Translators must decide who 'my lord the king' refers to — Achish or Saul. The ambiguity may be deliberate, reflecting David's double life. If David means Achish, his protest is either genuine (he actually intended to fight Israel) or calculated (maintaining his cover). If David means Saul, the phrase 'enemies of my lord the king' would refer to the Philistines themselves — a subversive declaration hidden in plain sight. The narrator provides no internal monologue, no divine oracle, no authorial comment to resolve this. We are left with the surface of David's words and the providence of his removal. The rendering preserves this ambiguity without forcing a resolution, because the Hebrew text itself refuses to resolve it.*

Connections: *David's situation in Philistine territory connects backward to his flight from Saul (21:10-15, 27:1-4) and forward to the Ziklag crisis (chapter 30) and ultimately to his ascension as king over Judah (2 Samuel 2:1-4). The Philistine muster at Aphek echoes 1 Samuel 4:1, where the Philistines previously assembled at Aphek before capturing the ark — the narrator signals that history is repeating with heightened stakes. The phrase 'Is this not David, of whom they sang in the dances' (verse 5) reaches back to 18:7, where the women's victory song first created the rift between Saul and David. That song, born from triumph over Goliath, has followed David into exile and now both endangers him (the tyrants recognize him as a threat) and saves him (their fear removes him from the battle). Achish's oath 'as the LORD lives' (verse 6) is striking — a Philistine king swearing by Israel's God, either as diplomatic courtesy or as evidence of David's theological influence during his stay in Gath.*

¹The Philistines gathered all their forces at Aphek, while Israel was encamped by the spring in Jezreel. ²The Philistine tyrants marched past with their units of hundreds and thousands, and David and his men marched in the rear guard with Achish. ³The Philistine commanders said, "What are these Hebrews doing here?" Achish answered the Philistine commanders, "Is this not David, the servant of Saul king of Israel, who has been with me now for a year or more? I have found no fault in him from the day he defected to me until this day." ⁴But the Philistine commanders were furious with him and said, "Send this man back! Let him return to the post you assigned him. He must not go down with us into battle — he could turn against us in the fighting. How better to buy back his master's favor than with the heads of our own men?" ⁵Is this not the David they sing about in their dances: 'Saul has struck down his thousands, and David his ten thousands'?" ⁶So Achish summoned David and said to him, "As the LORD lives, you have been honest, and your service with me in the camp — going out and coming in — has been good in my eyes. I have found nothing wrong with you from the day you came to me until this day. But you are not acceptable to the tyrants. ⁷So now, go back and go in peace. Do nothing that the Philistine tyrants would consider hostile." ⁸David said to Achish, "But what have I done? What have you found against your servant from the day I entered your service until now, that I should not go and fight against the enemies of my lord the king?" ⁹Achish answered David, "I know — you are as trustworthy in my eyes as a messenger of God. But the Philistine commanders have said, 'He must not go up with us into battle.' ¹⁰So rise early in the morning — you and the servants of your lord who came with you. Rise at first light and go." ¹¹David and his men rose early in the morning to head back to Philistine territory, while the Philistines advanced to Jezreel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aphek appears multiple times in the Old Testament as a mustering point for armies moving against Israel. Its mention here deliberately recalls 1 Samuel 4:1, where the same location preceded catastrophic Israelite defeat and the loss of the ark. The narrator is loading the scene with ominous historical resonance.
1. The ayin ('spring, fountain') in Jezreel is a landmark identification, not a symbolic term. Jezreel sits at the southeastern end of the valley bearing its name, controlling a critical pass. Saul's decision to camp here suggests a defensive posture against Philistine advance from the coastal plain.
2. The word seren is rendered 'tyrant' rather than 'lord' to distinguish it from adon ('lord, master') and melek ('king'). The term is specific to Philistine political structure and carries connotations of autocratic rule within a confederation. The Philistine pentapolis operated as a league of five city-states, each governed by its seren, who held equal authority within the council.
2. David's position ba-acharonah ('in the rear') is ambiguous in its implications. It could indicate a subordinate, less trusted position — or it could reflect the role Achish assigned David as his personal bodyguard (28:2). The narrator lets both readings coexist, building tension about David's actual status and intentions.
3. The text uses sarei pelishim ('commanders of the Philistines') rather than sarnei ('tyrants') here — this may reflect a broader group of military officers beyond the five city-state rulers, or it may be a stylistic variation. Some scholars see the two terms as interchangeable in this context; others distinguish between the sarnei (political rulers) and sarim (military commanders).
3. Achish's defense of David is unwittingly ironic. David has been systematically deceiving Achish for over a year (27:8-12), raiding Geshurites, Girzites, and Amalekites while reporting that he was attacking Judean clans. Achish's confidence that David has been faultless is itself evidence of how thorough the deception was.
4. The word satan here is not the personal name 'Satan' as it develops in later biblical and intertestamental literature. It is the common noun meaning 'adversary, accuser, opponent' — someone who opposes you in a legal or military context. The same word appears in Numbers 22:22 where the angel of the LORD stands as a satan (opponent) to Balaam, and in 1 Kings 11:14 where God raises up a satan (political adversary) against Solomon. The rendering uses 'turn against us' to capture the military sense without importing later theological connotations.
4. The verb yitratseh ('he would reconcile himself, make himself pleasing') comes from the root ratsah, which carries connotations of restoring favor, gaining acceptance, making amends. The commanders understand the political calculus perfectly: a defector who returns bearing enemy heads is a defector who has proven his loyalty has shifted back.
5. This victory song first appeared in 18:7 after David's defeat of Goliath. It provoked Saul's jealousy (18:8-9), contributed to Saul's attempts on David's life, and now resurfaces in the mouths of Philistine commanders who use it as evidence against David. The song has become a narrative thread connecting David's greatest triumph to his present entanglement — the fame that made him a hero in Israel makes him a suspected traitor among the Philistines.
5. The verb hikkah ('he struck down') is the same martial verb used for David's killing of Goliath (17:50) and his slaughter of two hundred Philistines for the bride price (18:27). The Philistine commanders are reciting a song that celebrates the killing of their own people — the irony is savage and their alarm entirely rational.
6. Achish's oath chai-YHWH ('as the LORD lives') is one of the most remarkable features of this chapter. A Philistine king invoking the personal name of Israel's God is either an extraordinary theological concession, a calculated diplomatic gesture to put David at ease, or evidence that David's presence in Gath has had a religious influence. The narrator does not explain; the oath stands as an unexplored detail that invites reflection.
6. The contrast between be-einay ('in my eyes') and be-einei ha-seranim ('in the eyes of the tyrants') structures Achish's speech: what is good in his eyes is not good in theirs. Achish is caught between personal loyalty and political reality. The seranim as a governing body hold collective authority that overrides any individual seren's judgment, including the king of Gath.
7. The phrase be-shalom ('in peace') appears frequently as a dismissal formula (Genesis 26:29, 44:17; Judges 18:6). It does not necessarily mean 'at peace' but rather 'whole, unharmed, without incident.' Achish is telling David to leave cleanly, without creating a confrontation.
7. The verb ta'aseh ra ('do evil') is deliberately vague — Achish does not specify what hostile act he fears. The ambiguity may reflect his own uncertainty about David's true loyalties, or it may be a diplomatic way of saying: whatever you are planning, do not do it where the tyrants can see.
8. This verse is the single most ambiguous speech in David's narrative. The phrase 'enemies of my lord the king' permits David to mean the exact opposite of what Achish hears. Maintaining this ambiguity in translation is essential — resolving it in either direction would impose a clarity the Hebrew text deliberately withholds. David may be performing loyalty to maintain his cover, or he may be subtly declaring that he would have fought for Israel from within the Philistine ranks. The narrator provides no interior access to David's thoughts.
8. The repeated mah ('what') in David's double question (meh asiti / mah-matsata, 'what have I done / what have you found') mirrors Samuel's self-defense before Israel in 12:3. David is borrowing the language of judicial innocence — presenting himself as a servant wrongly dismissed. Whether this is genuine hurt, political theater, or relief disguised as protest, the text does not say.
9. The phrase mal'akh elohim ('messenger of God') appears again in 2 Samuel 14:17 and 14:20, where it describes someone with supernaturally reliable judgment. Achish may be using a known idiom rather than making a specific theological claim — but the narrator's decision to record it on Philistine

lips is notable. David, the man after God's own heart, is recognized as godlike even by Israel's enemies.

9. The tension between Achish's personal trust and the commanders' collective veto illustrates the limits of Philistine political structure. Achish governs Gath but cannot override the confederacy's military decisions. This structural constraint becomes God's instrument for extracting David from the impossible situation.
10. The urgency of Achish's command — rise early, leave at first light — suggests he fears what might happen if the Philistine commanders find David still in camp. The doubled imperative is not merely rhetorical emphasis but practical urgency: the window for a peaceful departure may be narrow.
10. The phrase *avdei adonekha* ('servants of your lord') has generated significant textual discussion. The Septuagint expands this verse considerably, adding a reference to the place Achish assigned David. The shorter Hebrew (Masoretic) text preserved here is more terse and more ambiguous, which is characteristic of the narrator's approach throughout this chapter.
11. The verb *alu* ('they went up') is the standard military term for advancing to battle — the same verb the commanders used in verse 9 when forbidding David to 'go up' (*ya'aleh*) with them. The Philistines go up without David, and this decision — made by suspicious tyrants for purely strategic reasons — saves David from the impossible choice of fighting his own people and positions him to be absent when Saul dies, preserving his innocence in the succession.
11. The narrator's silence at the chapter's close is theologically significant. There is no prophetic word, no angelic intervention, no dream or vision. God acts entirely through secondary causes: Philistine military paranoia, political confederation dynamics, and Achish's inability to overrule his peers. The providence is total but invisible — discernible only in retrospect.

30

Summary: *David and his men return to Ziklag after being dismissed by the Philistine commanders, only to find the city burned and all their families taken captive by an Amalekite raiding party. Grief turns to mutiny as David's own warriors talk of stoning him. In his lowest moment, David strengthens himself in the LORD his God, inquires through the priest Abiathar, and receives divine authorization to pursue. A collapsed Egyptian slave leads them to the Amalekite camp, where David recovers everything — every person, every possession — and takes additional plunder. When some of David's men refuse to share the spoils with the two hundred who stayed behind at the Wadi Besor, David overrules them and establishes a permanent legal precedent: those who guard the supplies share equally with those who fight.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most compressed emotional arc in the David narrative. Within a span of verses, David passes through catastrophic loss, near-assassination by his own men, spiritual renewal, divine consultation, providential guidance through a dying slave, total military victory, and legislative innovation. The pivotal sentence — *vayyitchazzeq David ba-YHWH Elohav* ('David strengthened himself in the LORD his God') — is one of the most theologically dense single clauses in Samuel. The verb *chazaq* in the *hitpael* stem means David actively seized strength from God; it was not passive comfort but a deliberate act of will directed toward the divine. This is the only time in the narrative that David is described this way, and it comes at precisely the moment when every external support has been stripped away: his city burned, his family captured, his men turned against him. The chapter also quietly demonstrates David's fitness for kingship in contrast to Saul. Where Saul consulted God and received silence (28:6), David inquires and receives immediate, specific guidance. Where Saul hoarded or mismanaged plunder (chapter 15), David distributes it with justice. Where Saul's authority fractured under pressure, David's leadership emerges stronger from crisis.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this chapter and the preceding Philistine narrative requires careful attention. Chapter 29 ends with David dismissed from the Philistine army at Aphek; chapter 30 opens with him arriving at Ziklag 'on the third day.' The Amalekite raid happened while David was away marching with the Philistines — a consequence of his dual allegiance. The text presents this without moralizing, but the reader should notice that David's attempt to serve two masters (Achish and the LORD) nearly cost him everything. The phrase 'statute and ordinance' (*choq u-mishpat*) in verse 25 raises a question of legal authority: David is not yet king, but he legislates as if he were. The narrator validates this by saying it has been binding 'from that day forward, even to this day' — the formula for established law in Israel. David exercises royal judicial function before he holds the royal office.*

Connections: The Amalekite raid connects directly to Saul's failure in chapter 15. Saul was commanded to destroy the Amalekites utterly and did not; now the Amalekites raid with impunity, and it falls to David to do what Saul could not. David's inquiry through the ephod (verse 7-8) recalls the pattern established in 23:1-6 when Abiathar brought the ephod to David — the priestly instrument of divine consultation that Saul forfeited when he slaughtered the priests of Nob (22:18-19). The spoil-sharing law of verse 25 has precedent in Numbers 31:25-27, where Moses divided plunder between warriors and the congregation after the Midianite war. David adapts this Mosaic precedent to his own situation, functioning as a second Moses. The gifts sent to Judah's elders in verses 26-31 are a masterful political act — David shares the plunder from defeating Judah's enemies with the very towns that sheltered him during his fugitive years, building the loyalty base that will make him king at Hebron in 2 Samuel 2:1-4.

¹When David and his men reached Ziklag on the third day, the Amalekites had already raided the Negev and struck Ziklag — they had attacked it and burned it to the ground. ²They had taken captive the women and everyone in it, from the youngest to the oldest. They killed no one but drove them away and went on their way. ³When David and his men came to the city, they found it burned — and their wives, sons, and daughters had been taken captive. ⁴David and the men with him raised their voices and wept until they had no strength left to weep. ⁵David's two wives had been taken captive — Ahinoam of Jezreel and Abigail, the widow of Nabal of Carmel. ⁶David was in severe distress, because the men were talking of stoning him — the soul of every man was bitter over his sons and daughters. But David strengthened himself in the LORD his God. ⁷David said to Abiathar the priest, son of Ahimelech, "Bring me the ephod." So Abiathar brought the ephod to David. ⁸David inquired of the LORD: "Should I pursue this raiding party? Will I overtake them?" And He answered him, "Pursue — for you will certainly overtake them, and you will certainly recover everything." ⁹David set out with the six hundred men who were with him. When they reached the Wadi Besor, those who were left behind stopped there. ¹⁰David continued the pursuit with four hundred men, while two hundred stayed behind — too exhausted to cross the Wadi Besor. ¹¹They found an Egyptian man in the open field and brought him to David. They gave him bread to eat and water to drink. ¹²They gave him a piece of pressed fig cake and two raisin cakes. He ate, and his spirit returned to him, for he had not eaten bread or drunk water for three days and three nights. ¹³David asked him, "Who do you belong to? Where are you from?" He said, "I am an Egyptian youth, a slave of an Amalekite man. My master abandoned me because I fell ill three days ago." ¹⁴We raided the Negev of the Cherethites, the territory belonging to Judah, and the Negev of Caleb — and we burned Ziklag. ¹⁵David said to him, "Can you lead me down to this raiding party?" He replied, "Swear to me by God that you will not kill me or hand me back to my master, and I will lead you down to them." ¹⁶He led him down, and there they were — spread out across the open ground, eating and drinking and celebrating over all the vast plunder they had taken from the land of the Philistines and from the land of Judah. ¹⁷David struck them from twilight until the evening of the next day. Not a man of them escaped, except four hundred young men who mounted camels and fled. ¹⁸David recovered everything the Amalekites had taken. David also rescued his two wives. ¹⁹Nothing was missing — from the youngest to the oldest, sons and daughters, plunder and everything the Amalekites had taken. David brought it all back. ²⁰David also took all the flocks and herds. They drove these animals ahead of the other livestock, and the men declared, "This is David's plunder." ²¹David came to the two hundred men who had been too exhausted to follow him and had been left at the Wadi Besor. They came out to meet David and the men with him. When David approached, he greeted them warmly. ²²But every worthless and wicked man among those who had gone with David spoke up and said, "Because they did not go with us, we will not give them any of the plunder we recovered — except for each man's wife and children. Let them take those and go." ²³David replied, "You must not do this, my brothers — not with what the LORD has given us. He protected us and handed over to us the raiding party that came against us." ²⁴Who would agree with you in this? The share of the one who goes down into battle and the share of the one who stays with the supplies will be the same — they will divide equally. ²⁵From that day forward he established it as a binding statute and rule for Israel, and it remains so to this day. ²⁶When David returned to Ziklag, he sent portions of the plunder to the elders of Judah — to his allies — saying, "Here is a gift for you from the plunder of the enemies of the LORD." ²⁷He sent gifts to those in Bethel, to those in Ramoth of the Negev, and to those in Jattir, ²⁸to those in Aroer, to those in Siphmoth, and to those in Eshtemoa, ²⁹to those in Racal, to those in the towns of the Jerahmeelites, and to those in the towns of the Kenites, ³⁰to those

in Hormah, to those in Bor-ashan, and to those in Athach, ³¹and to those in Hebron — and to every place where David and his men had moved about.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'third day' marks the travel time from Aphek, where the Philistine commanders dismissed David (chapter 29). The verb *pashtu* ('they raided') is the standard term for a sudden military incursion — a fast, violent sweep through undefended territory. The Negev ('the south,' 'the dry land') is the arid region south of the Judean hills, where Ziklag is located. The Amalekites' target was the same region David had been raiding on behalf of Achish (27:8-10), suggesting a retaliatory strike.
1. The verb *yisrefu* ('they burned') with the object *ba-esh* ('with fire') is emphatic — Ziklag was not merely damaged but reduced to ash. David returns from one war front to discover devastation at home, a consequence of his absence while playing the double agent with the Philistines.
2. The verb *vayyishbu* ('they took captive') indicates that the Amalekites seized the population for enslavement or ransom, not slaughter. The phrase *mi-qaton ve-ad gadol* ('from small to great') encompasses the entire population — children, women, elderly. The narrator pauses to note *lo hemitu ish* ('they did not kill anyone'), which is both a relief and a narrative necessity: the captives must be alive for David to recover them.
2. The Amalekite restraint stands in ironic contrast to Saul's incomplete destruction of the Amalekites in chapter 15. The Amalekites take captives alive; Saul was supposed to leave none alive but spared King Agag. The reversal is pointed.
3. The particle *ve-hinne* ('and behold') marks the moment of horrified discovery. This is the narrator's way of placing the reader inside the soldiers' experience — they arrive expecting home and find ruin. The verb *serufah* ('burned') is a passive participle indicating a completed state: the city was already fully consumed. The possessive pronouns shift to first-person perspective — *neshehem u-vnehem u-vnotehem* ('their wives and their sons and their daughters') — making the devastation personal for every man in David's force.
4. The phrase *vayyis'u et qolam vayyivku* ('they lifted up their voice and wept') is a formulaic expression for loud, public grief — not private tears but the communal wailing of men who have lost everything. The clause *ad asher ein bahem koach livkot* ('until there was no strength in them to weep') is extraordinary: these are battle-hardened warriors who weep themselves into physical exhaustion. The verse makes no distinction between David and his men — the king-in-waiting and the common soldier share the same collapse.
4. This level of grief from fighting men signals total devastation. These six hundred veterans (27:2) have survived years of pursuit by Saul, but the loss of their families breaks them in a way that no battlefield ever did.
5. The narrator specifies David's personal loss within the collective disaster. Ahinoam is identified by her hometown (Jezreel in the southern hill country, not the northern Jezreel Valley), and Abigail is still identified in relation to her first husband Nabal despite being married to David. The designation *eshet Naval* ('wife of Nabal') may be a legal or customary identifier — she was known by her previous marriage — or it may remind the reader of her story from chapter 25, where she emerged as a woman of extraordinary wisdom. David's most personal stakes are named.
6. The verb *tsarar* ('to be narrow, distressed, pressed in') conveys constriction — David is hemmed in by simultaneous catastrophes. The phrase *amru ha-am lisqolo* ('the people spoke of stoning him') uses the standard vocabulary for mob execution (*saqal*, 'to stone'). Stoning was both a legal punishment and a mob action; here it is the latter — grief-driven fury seeking a target.
6. The clause *vayyitchazzeq David ba-YHWH Elohav* is the theological hinge of the chapter. The *hitpa* stem of *chazaq* indicates reflexive, deliberate action: David strengthened himself, seized strength, took hold of firmness. The preposition *ba-* ('in') indicates the source and ground of this strength. *Elohav* ('his God') is a possessive construction expressing personal covenant relationship. No external agent intervenes — no prophet, no angel, no miracle. David turns inward to a relationship with God and draws from it what he needs to act.
7. David's first act after strengthening himself in the LORD is to summon the priestly instrument of divine inquiry. Abiathar is identified as *ben Ahimelekh* ('son of Ahimelech'), connecting this moment to the massacre at Nob (22:20-23) — Abiathar is the sole surviving priest, and he carries the ephod that enables communication with God. The ephod here is the priestly garment containing the Urim and Thummim, the oracular devices used to receive yes-or-no answers from God.
7. The request *haggisha-na li ha-efod* ('please bring near to me the ephod') uses the polite particle *na* ('please'), showing that even in crisis David addresses the priest with respect for his office. The verb *higgish* ('bring near') is the same verb used for bringing an offering before God — there is a liturgical quality to this request.
8. The verb *sha'al* ('to inquire') is the same root that gives us the name *Sha'ul* (Saul). David does what Saul's name promises — he asks of the LORD — while Saul himself has been cut off from divine response (28:6). The irony is profound: the man named 'Asked' cannot get an answer, while the man named 'Beloved' asks and is answered immediately.
8. The double infinitive absolute construction in God's reply — *hasseg tassig ve-hatsel tatsil* — is emphatic beyond English translation. Each pair intensifies the verb to its maximum: 'overtaking you will overtake, rescuing you will rescue.' We render this with 'certainly' to convey the guarantee, though the Hebrew is more forceful than any single English adverb can express.
9. The *nachal Besor* ('Wadi Besor') is a seasonal streambed in the northern Negev, typically identified with Wadi Shallaleh or Wadi Gaza. The name *Besor* may derive from *basar* ('flesh, good news') or be of non-Hebrew origin. The phrase *ve-hannotarim amadu* ('and the remaining ones stood/stopped') introduces the group that will become central to the legal dispute in verses 21-25. The verb *amad* ('to stand, to stop') simply indicates

they halted — the reason is given in the next verse.

10. The verb *piggeru* ('they were too exhausted, they collapsed') derives from *pagar*, meaning to be faint, exhausted, or spent beyond the ability to continue. These two hundred men had already marched three days from Aphek to Ziklag, wept until they had no strength (verse 4), and now faced a forced pursuit south — their bodies simply gave out. The narrative does not criticize them; it records their exhaustion as fact.
10. The division of forces — four hundred pursuing, two hundred remaining — will become the basis for the legal dispute in verses 21-25. The narrator sets this up without commentary, allowing the reader to hold the question: are the exhausted men lesser partners or equal sharers?
11. The discovery of the Egyptian slave is the chapter's providential hinge — a seemingly random find in the wilderness that becomes the key to recovering everything. The phrase *ish Mitsri ba-sadeh* ('an Egyptian man in the field') presents him as abandoned and alone in open country. David's men feed him before questioning him, an act of practical compassion that also serves their tactical needs — a starving man cannot speak coherently. The provision of *lechem* ('bread') and *mayim* ('water') are the basic elements of sustaining life.
12. The *pelach develah* ('piece of fig cake') and *tsimmuqim* ('raisin cakes') are concentrated, high-energy foods carried on military campaigns — ideal for reviving a starving man. The phrase *vattashov rucho elav* ('his spirit returned to him') uses *ruach* ('spirit, life-breath') to describe his revival from near-death. The three-day period without food or water (*sheloshah yamim u-sheloshah lelot*) means the Egyptian was abandoned roughly when the raid occurred — he collapsed during or just after the Amalekite attack on Ziklag, placing his abandonment contemporaneous with the raid.
13. David's two questions — *le-mi attah* ('to whom are you?') and *ei mi-zeh attah* ('from where are you?') — ask about ownership and origin, the two essential identifiers for a person found alone in the wilderness. The young man identifies himself as a *na'ar Mitsri* ('Egyptian youth') who is an *eved* ('slave, servant') of an Amalekite master. The verb *azaveni* ('he abandoned me') reveals the Amalekite's character: a slave too sick to keep up is left to die. This disposable treatment of a human being contrasts sharply with David's feeding of the man before questioning him.
13. The detail that he fell ill 'three days ago' (*ha-yom sheloshah*) synchronizes his abandonment with the Ziklag raid, confirming that he was part of the raiding party.
14. The Egyptian slave reveals the full scope of the Amalekite raid: three distinct regions were hit. The Negev of the Kerethi ('Cherethites') refers to the territory of a Philistine-associated group (the Cherethites later appear as part of David's royal guard in 2 Samuel 8:18). The territory 'belonging to Judah' is the tribal allotment, and the Negev of Caleb is the area around Hebron granted to Caleb's clan (Joshua 15:13). This was not a pinpoint strike but a sweeping raid across the entire southern frontier.
14. The slave's admission *ve-et Tsiqlag sarafnu va-esh* ('and Ziklag we burned with fire') gives David exactly the intelligence he needs. The abandoned slave becomes the instrument of divine provision — the very cruelty of the Amalekite master produces the guide who will lead David to the enemy camp.
15. The Egyptian's two conditions reveal his situation: he fears death at David's hand (*im temiteni*, 'if you kill me') and return to his master (*im tasgireni be-yad adoni*, 'if you hand me over into the hand of my master'). The verb *hisgir* ('to deliver up, to hand over') is the same verb David's enemies used when trying to get towns to 'deliver' David to Saul (23:11-12). The slave bargains with the only leverage he has — information — and secures an oath by God (*hishave'ah li be-Elohim*) as his guarantee. He trusts David's God-oath more than his own master's loyalty.
16. The particle *ve-hinnech* ('and behold') again marks a dramatic discovery — but this time it is David finding the enemy. The Amalekites are described as *netushim al penei khol ha-arets* ('spread out over the face of all the land'), a picture of a force so confident in its safety that it has dispersed without any defensive posture. The three participles — *okhelim ve-shotim ve-choggim* ('eating and drinking and celebrating') — paint a scene of total revelry. The verb *chagag* ('to celebrate, to hold a festival') is the same word used for Israel's religious festivals. The Amalekites are holding a feast with stolen goods.
16. Their tactical negligence — no sentries, no defensive perimeter, scattered across open terrain in drunken celebration — makes them perfectly vulnerable. The narrative presents their overconfidence as the setup for David's strike.
17. The battle lasted from *neshef* ('twilight' — either dawn-twilight or dusk-twilight; most interpreters read this as predawn darkness) until *erev le-mochoratam* ('the evening of the next day'), a sustained assault lasting up to twenty-four hours. David attacked while the Amalekites were incapacitated from their celebration. The scope of the victory is near-total: only four hundred men on camels — the fastest means of desert escape — got away. The camel detail is specifically Amalekite; this nomadic people's expertise with camels appears as early as Judges 6:5.
17. The four hundred who escape on camels is a notable detail — it matches exactly the number of David's attacking force. The narrator may be drawing attention to the symmetry, or simply recording the fact.
18. The verb *hitsil* ('he rescued, delivered') fulfills God's promise from verse 8 (*hatsel tatsil*, 'you will certainly rescue'). The narrator states the recovery in two stages: first the collective — *kol asher laqchu Amaleq* ('everything the Amalekites had taken') — then the personal — *et shtei nashav* ('his two wives'). The repetition of David's name in both clauses (*vayyatsel David... hitsil David*) emphasizes that this is David's victory, achieved under divine authorization.
19. The emphatic accumulation of categories — *min ha-qaton ve-ad ha-gadol* ('from the small to the great'), *banim u-vanot* ('sons and daughters'), *mi-shalal* ('from the plunder'), *kol asher laqchu* ('everything they had taken') — builds to the comprehensive conclusion *ha-kol heshiv David* ('David returned everything'). The verb *ne'dar* ('was missing, was lacking') is negated: nothing was unaccounted for. This total recovery is the fulfillment of the double infinitive absolute promise in verse 8. God said 'you will certainly rescue' and not one person or possession was lost.

- 20.** This verse distinguishes between the recovered property (which belonged to the original owners) and additional Amalekite livestock captured in the battle. The phrase *nahagu lifnei ha-miqneh ha-hu* ('they drove before that livestock') separates the newly captured animals from the recovered ones. The declaration *zeh shelal David* ('this is David's plunder') attributes the surplus to David personally — it is his by right of military command. This additional plunder will become the basis for the gifts David sends to Judah's elders in verses 26-31.
- 21.** The verb *piggeru* ('they were exhausted') is repeated from verse 10 without any added shame — the narrator maintains a neutral description of their physical condition. The phrase *vayyets'u liqrat David* ('they went out to meet David') shows these men coming forward eagerly, not hiding in embarrassment. David's response — *vayyiggash et ha-am vayyish'al lahem le-shalom* ('he drew near to the people and asked them about their welfare') — uses the standard greeting formula *sha'al le-shalom* ('to ask about peace/well-being'). David treats the exhausted men as comrades, not as failures.
- 22.** The narrator's moral judgment is explicit: *kol ish ra u-veliyya'al* ('every bad and worthless man'). The term *beliyya'al* ('worthlessness, wickedness') is the same label applied to the sons of Eli (2:12) and to Nabal (25:17, 25) — it marks a person as a violator of social bonds and covenant norms. These men claim the plunder as exclusively theirs because they fought while the others rested. Their concession — 'each man can have his wife and children' — is technically generous (they could have claimed even the families), but the narrator's label makes clear that their position is morally defective.
- 22.** The phrase *asher hitsalnu* ('which we rescued') uses the first person plural possessively — 'we rescued,' claiming the victory as solely their achievement, ignoring both the divine promise and the collective effort.
- 23.** David's response begins with a prohibition — *lo ta'asu khen achai* ('you shall not do this, my brothers') — that is both authoritative and fraternal. He calls them *achai* ('my brothers'), maintaining solidarity even while overruling them. His argument is theological, not tactical: the victory belongs to God, not to the fighters. The clause *et asher natan YHWH lanu* ('that which the LORD gave to us') reframes the plunder as a divine gift rather than a military earning. The verb *shamar* ('he guarded, protected') and *natan* ('he gave, delivered') attribute both safety and victory to God's action. If God gave it, no human faction can claim exclusive ownership.
- 24.** David's rhetorical question — *u-mi yishma lakhem la-davar ha-zeh* ('and who would listen to you in this matter?') — dismisses their claim as self-evidently unreasonable. He then states the principle: *ke-cheleq ha-yored ba-milchamah u-ke-cheleq ha-yoshev al ha-kelim* ('like the share of the one going down into battle and like the share of the one sitting by the equipment') — the combatant and the guard receive identical portions. The verb *yachdav yachaloqu* ('together they will divide') makes equal distribution the rule. The word *kelim* ('equipment, vessels, supplies, baggage') refers to the gear and provisions that must be guarded — a military necessity, not a luxury assignment.
- 25.** The verb *vayyesimeha* ('he set it, he placed it') indicates a deliberate legislative act — David does not merely suggest a policy but formally institutes it. The combination *choq u-mishpat* appears throughout the Pentateuch as a description of God's laws given through Moses (Exodus 15:25; Joshua 24:25). By using this phrase, the narrator places David's ruling in the same category as Mosaic legislation.
- 25.** The precedent has roots in Numbers 31:25-27, where Moses divided Midianite plunder between soldiers and the congregation. David's innovation is to explicitly equate the guard detail with the combat force — the one who stays by the baggage shares equally with the one who fights. This principle will endure as Israelite military law.
- 26.** David's distribution of plunder to the elders of Judah (*ziquei Yehudah*) is both generous and strategic. The word *re'ehu* ('his friends, his allies, his companions') identifies these elders as men who supported David during his fugitive years. The term *berakhah* ('blessing, gift') reframes war plunder as a covenant blessing — David does not say 'here is plunder' but 'here is a *berakhah* for you.' The phrase *oyvei YHWH* ('enemies of the LORD') elevates the Amalekite conflict from personal vengeance to holy war — the plunder comes from God's enemies, which makes the gift sacred.
- 26.** This political act builds the loyalty network that will make David king over Judah at Hebron (2 Samuel 2:1-4). Every gift creates an obligation; every elder who accepts becomes invested in David's future.
- 27.** The list of recipient towns begins. Bethel here likely refers to a southern town distinct from the famous Bethel in Benjamin — possibly a variant of Bethul (Joshua 19:4) in the Simeonite territory. Ramoth Negev ('Heights of the South') is a town in the Negev region. Yattir is a Levitical city in the hill country of Judah (Joshua 15:48, 21:14). Each of these towns is located in territory where David operated as a fugitive and where the elders provided shelter or intelligence.
- 28.** Aroer is a town in the southern Judean territory (distinct from the Aroer east of the Jordan in Moab). Siphmoth is otherwise unknown — it appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, suggesting it was a small settlement in David's network that did not survive as a significant town. Eshtemoa (modern es-Semu) is a Levitical city in the Judean hills (Joshua 15:50, 21:14). The inclusion of Levitical cities alongside unknown villages shows the breadth of David's alliance network.
- 29.** Racal (or Rachal) is another town known only from this passage. The Jerahmeelites and Kenites are the same groups David claimed to raid when deceiving Achish (27:10) — in truth he was raiding Israel's enemies while protecting these allied peoples. Now he rewards them with plunder from the very Amalekites who threatened them all. The Kenites were descendants of Moses' father-in-law (Judges 1:16), traditionally allied with Israel and living in the Negev. The Jerahmeelites were a clan affiliated with Judah (1 Chronicles 2:9). David's gift-giving honors the real alliances he maintained while appearing to serve the Philistines.
- 30.** Hormah ('Destruction') is a significant town in the southern Negev with a history reaching back to the conquest period (Numbers 21:3; Judges 1:17). The name itself commemorates Israel's early victory there. Bor-ashan ('Well of Smoke' or 'Cistern of Smoke') is likely the same as Ashan in Joshua 15:42. Athach is unattested elsewhere and may be a variant of Ether (Joshua 15:42) or a small settlement lost to history. The list continues to trace

David's network across the southern frontier of Judah.

- 31.** Hebron's placement at the end of the list is climactic. This is the city of Abraham's burial, the future site of David's coronation over Judah, and the political center of the southern tribe. By sending gifts last to Hebron, the narrator (or David himself) gives it the position of honor. The verb *hithalekh* ('moved about, walked about') in the *hitpael* stem indicates habitual action over time — David and his men were a mobile force who ranged across all these territories during the fugitive years. The verse functions as a summary: everywhere David had traveled, he now sends blessing. The seeds planted during years of flight produce a harvest of loyalty that will make him king.

31

Summary: *The Philistines engage Israel in battle on Mount Gilboa, and the rout is total. Saul's three sons — Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchi-shua — fall in combat. Saul himself is critically wounded by archers and, rather than face capture and humiliation, asks his armor-bearer to kill him. When the armor-bearer refuses in terror, Saul falls on his own sword, and the armor-bearer follows him in death. The next day the Philistines find the bodies, behead Saul, strip his armor, and send word throughout Philistia. They fasten Saul's body to the wall of Beth-shan and place his armor in the temple of Ashtaroth. But the men of Jabesh-gilead — the very people Saul rescued in his first act as king — march through the night, recover the bodies from the wall, burn them at Jabesh, bury the bones under the tamarisk tree, and fast seven days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the mirror-image of chapter 11. There, Saul burst onto the scene by rescuing Jabesh-gilead from Nahash the Ammonite; here, Jabesh-gilead repays the debt by rescuing Saul's body from the Philistines. The literary structure is an *inclusio* — Saul's public story begins and ends with the men of Jabesh-gilead. The chapter also records the first explicit suicide in the Hebrew Bible: Saul's falling on his own sword (*naphal al-charbo*). The narrator offers no theological commentary on the act itself — no condemnation, no approval. The silence is deafening, leaving the reader to reckon with the tragic end of a king who began with such promise. The Philistines' treatment of Saul's body — beheading, armor-stripping, display on the walls of Beth-shan — mirrors what David did to Goliath (chapter 17), creating a grim symmetry: Israel's champion once desecrated a Philistine giant, and now Philistia desecrates Israel's king.*

Translation Friction: *The central translational tension lies in verse 4, where Saul fears the Philistines will 'thrust him through and abuse him' (or 'make sport of him'). The verb *hit'allelu* (from *alal* in the *Hithpael*) can mean 'to deal wantonly with, to make a toy of, to torture' — the same root used for what the Egyptians did to Israel (Exodus 10:2). Saul's fear is not merely of death but of degradation: being kept alive as a trophy, mocked and mutilated. This raises the question of whether Saul's suicide was despair or a final act of royal dignity — the text does not resolve this. Another friction point: verse 12 says the men of Jabesh-gilead 'burned' the bodies (*saraph*), which is unusual in Israelite practice where burial, not cremation, was normative. Some scholars argue the burning removed the decomposed flesh so the bones could be properly interred; others see it as an emergency measure to prevent further Philistine desecration. We render *saraph* straightforwardly as 'burned' and let the translator's note address the anomaly.*

Connections: *The Jabesh-gilead connection to chapter 11 forms the most prominent literary link — the men Saul once delivered now deliver what remains of him. David's lament over Saul and Jonathan in 2 Samuel 1 immediately follows this chapter, and the burning/burial at Jabesh will be revisited when David honors the men of Jabesh-gilead in 2 Samuel 2:4-7. The fastening of bodies to the wall of Beth-shan anticipates the Gibeonite execution of Saul's descendants in 2 Samuel 21, where bodies are again exposed and must be recovered. Saul's armor placed in the temple of Ashtaroth inverts the pattern from chapter 5, where the Philistine god Dagon fell before the captured ark — now it is Israel's king whose spoils adorn a Philistine temple. The death of Jonathan here sets up the covenant loyalty David will show to Mephibosheth in 2 Samuel 9, honoring the oath he swore to Jonathan.*

¹The Philistines were fighting against Israel, and the men of Israel fled before the Philistines and fell, fatally wounded, on Mount Gilboa. ²The Philistines pressed hard after Saul and his sons. The Philistines struck down Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchi-shua — Saul's sons. ³The battle pressed heavily against Saul, and the archers found him — the bowmen — and he was severely wounded by them. ⁴Saul said to his armor-bearer, "Draw your sword and run me through with it, or these

uncircumcised men will come and run me through and make sport of me." But his armor-bearer refused — he was too terrified. So Saul took the sword and fell on it. ⁵When his armor-bearer saw that Saul was dead, he too fell on his sword and died with him. ⁶Saul, his three sons, his armor-bearer, and all his men perished together on that day. ⁷When the men of Israel on the other side of the valley and on the other side of the Jordan saw that the men of Israel had fled and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled. The Philistines came and occupied them. ⁸The next day, when the Philistines came to strip the dead, they found Saul and his three sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. ⁹They cut off his head and stripped his armor, and they sent messengers throughout the land of the Philistines to carry the news to the temples of their idols and to the people. ¹⁰They placed his armor in the temple of Ashtaroath, and they fastened his body to the wall of Beth-shan. ¹¹When the inhabitants of Jabesh-gilead heard what the Philistines had done to Saul, ¹²All the fighting men set out and marched through the night. They took down the body of Saul and the bodies of his sons from the wall of Beth-shan, brought them to Jabesh, and burned them there. ¹³They took their bones and buried them under the tamarisk tree in Jabesh, and they fasted for seven days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening conjunction *u* ('and') connects this chapter directly to the preceding narrative — there is no fresh beginning, only the continuation of a disaster already set in motion. The verb *nilchamim* ('were fighting') is a participle, indicating ongoing action: the battle is already in progress when the narrative camera arrives.
1. The phrase *vayyippelu chalalim* ('they fell as pierced ones') uses the same root *chalal* that will recur throughout the chapter. The word carries a sense of violent penetration — these men died from sword, spear, or arrow wounds. Mount Gilboa sits at the southeastern edge of the Jezreel Valley, a strategic position whose loss would expose the entire central highlands to Philistine advance.
2. The verb *davaq* in military contexts means to pursue so closely that the gap between hunter and hunted collapses. The Philistines are not merely chasing Saul; they have locked onto him. The three sons are named in order: Jonathan (*yehonatan*, 'the LORD has given'), Abinadab (*avinadav*, 'my father is generous'), and Malchi-shua (*malki-shua*, 'my king is salvation' or 'my king is noble'). The irony of these theophoric names — invoking God's giving, generosity, and salvation — against the scene of their violent deaths is a silence the narrator lets speak for itself.
2. Jonathan's death fulfills the narrative trajectory set in motion when he made his covenant with David (chapter 18, 20). He chose loyalty to David over dynastic succession, and now he dies alongside the father whose throne he voluntarily relinquished. The text does not separate Jonathan's death from his brothers' or grant him a special scene — he dies as a son of Saul, on a battlefield, unnamed in any speech.
3. The phrase *anashim ba-qashet* ('men of the bow') is an appositional clarification of *ha-morim* ('the shooters') — the narrator specifies that these are archers, long-range killers. Saul is being struck from a distance, unable to close with his enemies. For a warrior-king, this is a particularly degrading way to fall.
3. The crux of the verse is *vayyachel me'od*. If from *chul* ('to writhe, tremble'), Saul is terrified; if from *chalal* ('to be pierced, wounded'), he is already critically injured. The Septuagint renders it as 'he was wounded' (etymatisthe), supporting the *chalal* reading. The ambiguity may be intentional — Saul is both wounded and terrified, his body and his nerve both broken.
4. The construction *pen yavo'u* ('lest they come') reveals Saul's motive: he is acting to prevent a worse outcome, not choosing death for its own sake. The narrator offers no moral verdict on the act — no 'he sinned' or 'the LORD struck him.' This silence is itself significant, as the Chronicler's account (1 Chronicles 10:13-14) will add explicit theological commentary that the Samuel narrator withholds.
4. The armor-bearer's refusal (*lo avah*, 'he was not willing') uses the same construction that described Saul's own refusal to eat in 28:23. The verb *avah* implies a deep, dispositional unwillingness — the armor-bearer cannot bring himself to strike the LORD's anointed, even at the anointed's own command. This echoes David's repeated refusal to harm Saul in chapters 24 and 26.
5. The armor-bearer's death mirrors Saul's exactly: *vayyipol gam hu al-charbo* ('he also fell on his sword'). The phrase *vayyamot immo* ('he died with him') creates a bond in death that echoes the loyalty oaths of the ancient world — the attendant follows his lord into death. The armor-bearer who could not bring himself to kill Saul can, it seems, bring himself to follow him. The narrator records this second suicide with the same terse silence, offering no commentary.
5. The word *gam* ('also, likewise') carries weight: the armor-bearer's death is derivative, an echo of Saul's. He does not die for his own reasons but because his master has died. This pattern of the subordinate dying alongside the king will recur in different forms throughout the David narrative.
6. The summary verse functions as an obituary for the Saulide dynasty. The phrase *kol anashav* ('all his men') likely refers to Saul's personal guard or household warriors, not the entire Israelite army — the flight described in verse 7 implies many soldiers survived. The word *yachdav* ('together') carries a tragic finality: the house of Saul, which rose together, falls together.
6. This verse forms a structural parallel with the death of Eli's house in chapter 4: there too, father and sons died on the same day, and the ark (symbol of divine presence) was lost to the Philistines. Saul's dynasty ends the way the old priestly dynasty ended — in a single catastrophic day.

7. The verb *azvu* ('they abandoned') describes the evacuation of entire populations from their cities. This is the catastrophic consequence Samuel warned of in chapter 8: the king who was supposed to protect them has died, and without him the social order collapses. The Philistine occupation of Israelite cities reverses the conquest under Joshua and fulfills the worst-case scenario of the covenant curses (Deuteronomy 28:49-52).
7. The geographical scope — spanning from the Jezreel Valley to Transjordan — indicates that the Philistine victory at Gilboa effectively cut Israel in half, severing the northern tribes from the south. This fragmentation sets the stage for the divided loyalties of 2 Samuel, where David will rule Judah from Hebron while Ish-bosheth claims the north.
8. The verb *leshashet* ('to strip') refers to the standard post-battle practice of looting corpses — removing armor, weapons, and valuables. The word *chalamim* ('the slain, the pierced ones') recurs from verse 1, binding the chapter together. The phrase *vayyimtse'u* ('they found') echoes verse 3 where the archers 'found' Saul alive; now new seekers find him dead. The participle *nofelim* ('fallen') rather than the perfect *metim* ('dead') captures the scene visually: the bodies lie where they collapsed, still in the postures of their dying.
8. The day-after sequence (*mimmacharot*) creates a gap in the narrative — the night between the battle and the stripping is a silence in which the bodies lay exposed on the mountain. This delay is significant for the Jabesh-gilead narrative that follows: the bodies have been dead at least a full day before the Philistines even begin their desecration, and longer still before Jabesh-gilead can act.
9. The verb *lesaser* ('to carry good news') is from the root *basar*, which means 'to announce good tidings.' The same root gives us the word *mevaser* ('herald of good news') used in Isaiah 52:7. Here the 'good news' is Saul's death — what is gospel for Philistia is catastrophe for Israel. The ironic use of *basar* anticipates David's reaction in 2 Samuel 1, where the Amalekite who brings the 'good news' of Saul's death is executed for it.
9. The phrase *beit atsabeihe* ('the house of their idols') refers to Philistine temple complexes. First Chronicles 10:10 specifies the head was placed in the temple of Dagon, while this verse mentions the armor going to the temple of Ashtarothe (verse 10). The distribution of body parts and armor across multiple temples suggests a deliberate parceling of the spoils among different Philistine cult sites.
10. Beth-shan (*beit shan*) occupied a strategic position controlling the eastern approach to the Jezreel Valley. Its walls would have been visible from a great distance, making the display of Saul's body a message to the entire region. Archaeological excavations at Beth-shan have uncovered both Egyptian and Philistine temple complexes, confirming the city's role as a major religious and administrative center during this period.
10. The word *geviyyah* ('body, corpse') is a term for the physical frame — the shell left behind when life departs. Its use here emphasizes the materiality of the degradation: this is flesh and bone being nailed to stone. The pairing of armor in the temple and body on the wall creates a grotesque dismemberment of Saul's identity — his warrior self displayed in one place, his physical self in another.
11. The construction *vayyishme'u elav* ('they heard about him') directs the hearing specifically toward Saul — this is news about a person, not an event. The phrase *et asher asu pelishtim le-Sha'ul* ('what the Philistines had done to Saul') frames the Philistine actions as something done to Saul personally, not merely to a king or a corpse. For Jabesh-gilead, this is personal: the man who marched through the night to save them (11:11) now needs someone to march through the night for him.
12. The night march echoes Saul's own nighttime march to relieve Jabesh-gilead in chapter 11:11, where he divided his forces and struck the Ammonites 'in the morning watch.' The symmetry is precise: Saul marched through the night to save Jabesh-gilead's living bodies, and now Jabesh-gilead marches through the night to save Saul's dead body. The *inclusio* is complete.
12. The verb *saraph* ('to burn') is the same word used for the burning of sacrifices and the destruction of idolatrous objects. Its use here is debated: some scholars see it as evidence of Transjordanian burial customs distinct from western Israelite practice; others read it as an emergency measure. The Chronicler's account (1 Chronicles 10:12) omits the burning entirely, which may reflect later discomfort with the practice or simply a different textual tradition.
13. The word *eshel* is traditionally rendered 'tree' (KJV) or 'tamarisk' (most modern translations). The tamarisk is a hardy, long-lived tree common in semi-arid regions of the Levant, and its shade made it a natural gathering place. First Chronicles 10:12 reads *elah* ('oak' or 'terebinth') instead of *eshel*, suggesting textual variation in the tradition. We follow the Masoretic text's *eshel*.
13. The seven-day fast marks the conclusion of both the chapter and the book. In narrative terms, 1 Samuel opened with Hannah's tears and fasting at Shiloh (1:7-10) and closes with the men of Jabesh-gilead fasting at Jabesh. The book is framed by grief, by people who pour out their anguish before God. Hannah's grief produced Samuel; Jabesh-gilead's grief honors Saul. Between those two acts of mourning lies the entire experiment of Israel's first king.

2 Samuel

1

Summary: *After Saul's death on Mount Gilboa, an Amalekite messenger arrives at David's camp in Ziklag claiming to have delivered the killing blow to the wounded king. Rather than rewarding him, David has the man executed for daring to strike the LORD's anointed. David then composes a formal lament over Saul and Jonathan — the Song of the Bow — one of the most celebrated poems in the Hebrew Bible. Its refrain, 'How the mighty have fallen,' echoes three times as David mourns the loss of Israel's king and his own covenant brother.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the oldest securely datable poem in the Davidic corpus. The Song of the Bow (vv. 19-27) is a qinah, a formal lament composed in the distinctive 3:2 'limping meter' that Hebrew poets reserved for dirges — the longer first line followed by the shorter second line creates a rhythmic stumbling, as if the verse itself is collapsing under the weight of grief. David orders it taught to the people of Judah and attributes it to the Book of Jashar, an ancient collection of heroic poetry now lost. The poem contains no theology: there is no mention of God, no appeal to divine justice, no comfort of resurrection. It is pure grief rendered as art. The Amalekite's story in verses 6-10 contradicts the account of Saul's death in 1 Samuel 31:4, where Saul falls on his own sword. Whether the Amalekite lied to curry favor or whether both accounts preserve different traditions, the narrator does not resolve — but David's response is unambiguous: to claim credit for killing the LORD's anointed is a capital offense regardless of the circumstances.*

Translation Friction: *The central friction is the discrepancy between 1 Samuel 31:4 (Saul fell on his own sword) and the Amalekite's account here (he delivered the final blow at Saul's request). Three interpretive options exist: (1) the Amalekite fabricated the story hoping for reward, (2) both accounts are partially true — Saul fell on his sword but did not die immediately, and the Amalekite finished the act, or (3) the two sources preserve rival traditions. We render the Amalekite's speech straightforwardly and let the translator's notes address the tension. A second friction point lies in verse 18, where the Hebrew says 'He said to teach the sons of Judah the bow' — the word qeshet ('bow') appears to be a title for the lament, but its abrupt insertion is syntactically awkward. Some manuscripts and the Septuagint omit it or rearrange. We retain 'the Bow' as the poem's title, following the Masoretic text. Verse 26 presents a third tension: David's declaration that Jonathan's love surpassed 'the love of women' (ahavat nashim) has generated extensive debate about its meaning. The Hebrew ahavah encompasses the full range of covenantal loyalty, political alliance, deep friendship, and emotional attachment. We render it faithfully and address the semantic*

range in the key terms.

Connections: The Song of the Bow connects backward to the Jabesh-gilead rescue of Saul's body (1 Samuel 31:11-13) and forward to David's honoring of those same men (2 Samuel 2:5-7). David's insistence on the sanctity of the LORD's anointed (mashiach YHWH) in verse 14 echoes his repeated refusal to harm Saul in 1 Samuel 24:6 and 26:9-11 — the theological principle that governed his fugitive years now governs his response to Saul's death. The reference to the Book of Jashar (v. 18) connects to Joshua 10:13, where the same source is cited for Joshua's command to the sun. The 'mighty' (gibborim) who have fallen will become a key category in David's kingdom — his elite warriors are called gibborim (2 Samuel 23:8-39). Jonathan's bow, celebrated in verse 22, recalls the covenant gift of his bow to David in 1 Samuel 18:4. The chapter's geographic movement — from Gilboa to Ziklag — bridges the Saul narrative and the David narrative, placing the reader at the threshold of David's rise to kingship.

¹After the death of Saul, David had returned from striking down the Amalekites and stayed in Ziklag for two days. ²On the third day, a man arrived from Saul's camp with his clothes torn and dirt on his head. When he came before David, he fell to the ground and bowed low. ³David asked him, "Where have you come from?" He answered, "I escaped from the camp of Israel." ⁴David said to him, "What happened? Tell me." He said, "The army fled from the battle, and many of the troops fell dead. And Saul and his son Jonathan are dead as well." ⁵David asked the young man who had brought the report, "How do you know that Saul and his son Jonathan are dead?" ⁶The young man reporting to him said, "I happened to be on Mount Gilboa, and there was Saul, leaning on his spear, with the chariots and cavalry closing in on him." ⁷He turned and looked behind him, saw me, and called out to me. ⁸He asked me, 'Who are you?' and I answered him, 'I am an Amalekite.' ⁹He said to me, 'Stand over me and kill me, because the death agony has seized me — yet my life is still in me.' ¹⁰So I stood over him and killed him, because I knew he could not survive after he had fallen. Then I took the crown from his head and the armband from his arm and brought them here to my lord. ¹¹David seized his own garments and tore them, and so did all the men who were with him. ¹²They mourned, wept, and fasted until evening — for Saul, for his son Jonathan, for the people of the LORD, and for the house of Israel, because they had fallen by the sword. ¹³David said to the young man who had brought the report, "Where are you from?" He answered, "I am the son of an Amalekite resident alien." ¹⁴David said to him, "How is it that you were not afraid to reach out your hand and destroy the anointed of the LORD?" ¹⁵David summoned one of the young men and said, "Go, strike him down." The man struck him, and he died. ¹⁶David said to him, "Your blood is on your own head, because your own mouth testified against you when you said, 'I killed the anointed of the LORD.'" ¹⁷David chanted this lament over Saul and over his son Jonathan: ¹⁸He ordered that the sons of Judah be taught 'The Bow.' It is recorded in the Book of Jashar:

¹⁹The splendor of Israel lies slain on your heights.
How the mighty have fallen!

²⁰Do not tell it in Gath,
do not proclaim it in the streets of Ashkelon —
lest the daughters of the Philistines rejoice,
lest the daughters of the uncircumcised celebrate.

²¹Mountains of Gilboa — let no dew fall on you,
no rain upon your terraced fields!
For there the shield of the mighty was defiled,
the shield of Saul — no longer rubbed with oil.

²²From the blood of the slain,
from the flesh of the mighty,
the bow of Jonathan never turned back,
and the sword of Saul never returned empty.

²³Saul and Jonathan — beloved and cherished in life,
and in death they were not divided.
They were swifter than eagles,
stronger than lions.

²⁴Daughters of Israel, weep over Saul,
who clothed you in scarlet and fine garments,
who adorned your clothing with gold ornaments.

²⁵How the mighty have fallen in the thick of battle!
Jonathan lies slain on your heights.

²⁶I am in anguish over you, my brother Jonathan.
You were so dear to me.
Your love for me was extraordinary —
surpassing the love of women.

²⁷How the mighty have fallen,
and the weapons of war have perished!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *mehakkot et ha-Amaleq* ('from striking the Amalekites') uses the Hiphil infinitive of *nakah*, which denotes a decisive military blow — David did not merely skirmish with the Amalekites but struck them decisively. This is the same campaign narrated in 1 Samuel 30.
1. Ziklag's status is ambiguous: it was a Philistine city given to David by Achish of Gath (1 Samuel 27:6), making David technically a Philistine vassal at this moment. The narrator does not comment on this political awkwardness. The 'two days' of waiting create narrative tension — the reader already knows Saul is dead, but David does not.
2. The description of torn clothes and dirt on the head exactly mirrors the messenger who brought news of the ark's capture in 1 Samuel 4:12. The narrative pattern signals that another national disaster is being reported. The two scenes share the same vocabulary of catastrophe.
2. The verb *vayyishtachu* ('he prostrated himself') is the *Hishtaphel* of *chavah*, the most intense form of physical reverence in Hebrew. The man's posture toward David is politically charged: he is approaching David as one approaches a sovereign, possibly calculating that David will now claim the throne and reward anyone who facilitated the transition.
3. The verb *malat* in the Niphal implies narrow escape from mortal danger. The same verb is used of David's escapes from Saul (1 Samuel 19:10, 19:17). The man presents himself as a survivor of catastrophe, establishing credibility before delivering his report.
4. The structure of the report is rhetorically deliberate: general flight, mass casualties, then the specific royal deaths. Each clause escalates the disaster. The verb *nas* ('fled') signals complete rout, not orderly retreat. The phrase *gam Sha'ul vi-Yehonatan beno metu* ('also Saul and Jonathan his son died') delivers the two deaths in a single clause, binding father and son together in the messenger's grammar as they were bound on the battlefield.
5. The term *na'ar* is deliberately vague regarding the messenger's exact social position. He could be a battlefield attendant, a young soldier, or even a camp follower. His identity as an Amalekite will emerge only later (v. 8), and the narrator withholds this detail to build suspense.
6. The construction *niqro niqreiti* is the Niphal infinitive absolute plus finite verb of *qarah* ('to encounter, to happen upon'). The messenger frames his presence as pure chance, perhaps to deflect suspicion that he was looting the battlefield. Mount Gilboa is named, anchoring the account to the same location described in 1 Samuel 31.
6. The word *chanit* ('spear') rather than *cherev* ('sword') differs from the account in 1 Samuel 31:4, where Saul falls on his sword. This may support the interpretation that the Amalekite is fabricating or embellishing, or it may indicate a different moment in the sequence of events. The chariots (*rekhev*) and horsemen (*ba'alei ha-parashim*) represent the Philistine heavy forces — exactly the kind of units that would dominate in the open terrain near Gilboa.
7. The three-verb sequence creates a cinematic progression: turn, see, call. Each verb advances the action with no wasted words. If the Amalekite's account is fabricated, this is skillful storytelling designed to make David believe he was summoned, not that he acted on his own initiative.
8. The emphatic pronoun *anokhi* ('I myself') rather than the shorter *ani* adds weight to the self-identification. The Amalekite declares his ethnicity without hesitation, apparently unaware of the lethal history between Saul and his people. Whether this is historical or fabricated, the narrator exploits the dramatic irony to its fullest.

9. The word *shavats* occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible, making its precise meaning uncertain. The Septuagint renders it as *skotos* ('darkness'), suggesting unconsciousness or dimming vision. Targum Jonathan reads 'trembling.' We render it as 'death agony' to capture the sense of a terminal but prolonged state of suffering.
9. The phrase *kol od nafshi bi* ('all my life is still in me') emphasizes that Saul is fully conscious and aware of his condition. This is not a quick death — it is drawn out, and Saul's request reflects the horror of being alive enough to suffer but too wounded to act.
10. The *nezer* is distinct from a full crown (*atarah*) — it is a diadem or band signifying consecrated authority, closely linked to the concept of being set apart (*nazir*). Saul's *nezer* represents his anointed status. The *ets'adah* ('armband') was a marker of military rank or royal status. Together these items function as regalia — proof of identity and proof of the messenger's claim.
10. The phrase *el adoni hannah* ('to my lord, here') positions David as Saul's successor in the messenger's own calculus. He has read the political situation — David is the obvious heir — and is attempting to position himself as the man who facilitated the transition. The irony is that this political calculation will cost him his life.
11. The verb *chazaq* in the Hiphil ('to seize, to grasp firmly') emphasizes the violence of the gesture. Garment-tearing in grief was not a gentle rip but a forceful act — the physical destruction of clothing externalized the internal shattering of grief. The communal tearing indicates that David's men follow his lead in honoring Saul, despite their history as fugitives from Saul's court.
12. The phrase *am YHWH* ('the people of the LORD') is theologically loaded — David identifies the fallen soldiers not merely as Israelite troops but as the covenant people of God. Their death in battle is a disaster not only for the nation but for God's purposes. The distinction between *am YHWH* and *beit Yisra'el* may be intentional: the first is a theological designation (the covenant people), the second is a political one (the national household).
12. Fasting until evening was a standard mourning practice (Judges 20:26, 2 Samuel 3:35). The three actions — lamenting, weeping, fasting — form a complete ritual of grief, performed communally and lasting the full day.
13. The term *ger* is one of the most significant social categories in the Torah — the resident alien who dwells among the people of Israel and is entitled to protection, justice, and inclusion in certain religious observances. By identifying himself as a *ger*'s son, the Amalekite claims legal standing within the Israelite social order. David will use this very status against him in verse 16: as a resident within Israel, the man should have known better than to strike the LORD's anointed.
14. The phrase *meshiach YHWH* ('the LORD's anointed') is the theological heart of this exchange. The *mashiach* is untouchable — not because of personal merit but because of divine designation. David's entire fugitive career was governed by this conviction: even when Saul was trying to kill him, David would not raise his hand against the one God had anointed. The Amalekite's claim to have killed the *mashiach* places him in direct violation of the principle that David holds most sacred.
15. The verb *paga* ('to encounter, to strike') in the imperative carries the force of an execution order. It is the same verb used for the killing of the priests at Nob (1 Samuel 22:18), where Doeg the Edomite was willing to 'strike' them when Saul's own servants would not. The economy of the narration — a single sentence for the execution — mirrors the swift finality of the act.
16. The formula 'your blood is on your own head' appears throughout the Hebrew Bible as a declaration that the executed person bears responsibility for their own death (Joshua 2:19, Ezekiel 33:4). David uses it here to establish that the execution is just — the Amalekite's own testimony condemned him.
16. The repetition of *meshiach YHWH* from verse 14 frames the entire exchange: David's question ('how were you not afraid to destroy the LORD's anointed?') and his verdict ('you said you killed the LORD's anointed') form an *inclusio* around the execution.
17. The *qinah* is a recognized poetic genre in the Hebrew Bible, characterized by its distinctive 3:2 'limping meter' — a longer line followed by a shorter one, creating a rhythmic sense of falling or stumbling that mirrors the emotional content of grief. Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and the book of Lamentations all employ *qinah* meter. David's lament over Saul and Jonathan is one of the earliest and finest examples of the form.
18. The word *qeshet* ('bow') as a poem title is attested in the Masoretic text but absent from some Septuagint manuscripts. Some scholars emend it or treat it as a marginal gloss. We retain it as the title following the MT, understanding it as David's designation for the lament — 'The Bow' — likely honoring Jonathan's weapon of choice.
18. The Book of Jashar (*sefer ha-yashar*) is mentioned only here and in Joshua 10:13 (and possibly 1 Kings 8:53 in the LXX). It was evidently a collection of ancient poems celebrating Israel's heroes. Its loss means that the biblical quotations from it are our only surviving fragments.
19. The opening word *ha-tsevi* has been rendered many ways: 'the beauty' (KJV), 'the glory,' 'the gazelle,' 'thy glory, O Israel.' We chose 'the splendor' to capture both the aesthetic and the honorific senses without limiting it to a single referent. The word functions as a title for those who have fallen — they were Israel's splendor, and now that splendor is dead.
19. The refrain *eikh nafelu gibborim* is the poem's signature line. The interrogative *eikh* ('how!') is not a question expecting an answer but an exclamation of disbelief and grief — 'How is it possible that the mighty have fallen!' The *qinah* meter is audible here: three beats (*eikh nafelu gibborim*) followed by the silence of what cannot be said.
20. The phrase *al taggidu ve-Gat* has become proverbial in Hebrew — it is the idiom for suppressing shameful news. The parallelism between Gat and Ashkelon follows standard Hebrew poetic convention of pairing cities. The 'daughters of the uncircumcised' (*benot ha-arelim*) echoes Saul's final words in 1 Samuel 31:4, binding the lament to the death scene.

- 20.** The verb *alaz* ('to exult, to celebrate with triumph') in the second motivation clause intensifies beyond the simple *simchah* ('joy') of the first. David imagines escalating Philistine celebration — first rejoicing, then exultation. The poet's craft is visible in the building parallelism.
- 21.** The curse on Gilboa's fertility echoes ancient Near Eastern curses on battle sites — the earth that drank warriors' blood is condemned to perpetual barrenness. The double meaning of *mashiach* (anointed king / oiled shield) is one of the most celebrated wordplays in Hebrew poetry. David does not say directly that Saul the anointed one has been rejected; he says the shield is no longer oiled. The reader hears both meanings simultaneously.
- 21.** The phrase *sedei terumot* is difficult. *Terumot* usually means 'heave offerings' or 'contributions' (a priestly term), but here it may mean 'uplifted fields' — terraced agricultural land. Some emend to *sedei re'umot* ('fields of deception') or *sedei terumah* ('fields of the offering'). We render 'terraced fields' as the most geographically concrete reading.
- 22.** The word *chelev* is usually rendered 'fat,' but in poetic contexts it can mean 'the best part, the richest portion.' We chose 'flesh' to avoid the modern connotation of adipose tissue and to convey the sense of bodily substance. The phrase *lo nasog achor* ('did not draw back') uses the military language of retreat — Jonathan's bow is personified as a warrior that never retreated from the front line.
- 22.** The pairing of Jonathan's bow with Saul's sword matches each man to his signature weapon. Jonathan was an archer (1 Samuel 20:20-22, 35-40), and the bow was the weapon he gave David as a covenant gift (1 Samuel 18:4). Saul was associated with the sword — and ultimately fell on one (1 Samuel 31:4).
- 23.** The phrase *u-ve-motam lo nifradu* ('in their death they were not divided') may also carry a polemical edge: despite the political rupture between Saul and Jonathan over David's future (1 Samuel 20:30-34), David insists that father and son died united. The poet reclaims the relationship from its political fractures.
- 23.** The *nesher* is most likely the griffon vulture (*Gyps fulvus*), not the modern bald eagle — the largest raptor in the Levant, known for soaring at immense heights and diving with devastating speed. The *ari* is the now-extinct Asiatic lion (*Panthera leo persica*), which inhabited the Jordan Valley and hill country into the medieval period.
- 24.** The appeal to women as professional mourners is consistent with Israelite practice — women led formal keening and lamentation (Jeremiah 9:17-20). But David's address is broader: all the daughters of Israel are to mourn because all benefited from Saul's reign. The word *shani* ('scarlet') denotes a luxury textile associated with wealth and royalty (Proverbs 31:21). The *adanim* ('delights') may include fine fabrics, jewelry, or other imported goods.
- 24.** The emphasis on material prosperity is not shallow. In the ancient world, a king's ability to provide luxury goods to his people was the tangible proof of his military and economic success. David is saying: Saul enriched you — honor him with your grief.
- 25.** The shift from third-person plural (the mighty) to second-person singular (your heights) is a characteristic *qinah* technique — the poet moves from public grief to private address, collapsing the distance between the mourner and the dead. The word *bamotekha* ('your heights') echoes verse 19, creating a structural echo: the poem's opening and closing movements both invoke the heights where the blood was shed.
- 26.** The phrase *me'ahavat nashim* ('beyond the love of women') has generated extensive scholarly discussion. In context, *ahavah* is the covenant loyalty that bound David and Jonathan from 1 Samuel 18:1 onward — a love that survived Saul's attempts to kill David, Jonathan's renunciation of his own dynastic claim, and years of separation. David declares that this covenantal bond surpassed every other intimate relationship in his life. The word *ahavah* in the Hebrew Bible ranges from romantic desire (Song of Songs) to political treaty loyalty (1 Kings 5:1) to God's covenant love for Israel (Deuteronomy 7:8). Here it functions in its broadest and deepest sense: total, sacrificial commitment.
- 26.** The word *nifl'atah* ('it was extraordinary, it was wonderful') belongs to the vocabulary of divine action — the *nifla'ot* are God's wonders, the acts that exceed human comprehension (Exodus 15:11, Psalm 77:11). David applies this theological vocabulary to a human relationship, elevating Jonathan's love to the level of the miraculous.
- 27.** The three occurrences of the refrain (vv. 19, 25, 27) create the structural architecture of the poem: opening statement, central development, final summation. The addition of *vayyovedu kelei milchamah* in the closing refrain prevents the ending from being a mere repetition — it adds the finality of utter destruction. The poem that began with 'the splendor of Israel' ends with 'weapons of war' — the full arc from glory to wreckage.
- 27.** The absence of any mention of God in the entire lament (vv. 19-27) is remarkable. David makes no appeal to divine justice, offers no theological explanation for the disaster, and provides no eschatological hope. This is a poem of pure human grief, uttered by a man who elsewhere attributes everything to God but here speaks only of what has been lost on earth. The silence about God may itself be the poem's deepest theological statement: some losses are too large for easy piety.

2

Summary: *David inquires of the LORD and is directed to Hebron, where the men of Judah anoint him king. David sends a message of blessing to the men of Jabesh-gilead for burying Saul, invoking the LORD's faithful love (chesed) and pledging his own good will. Meanwhile, Abner son of Ner installs Saul's surviving son Ish-bosheth as king over a rival Israelite kingdom. The two factions meet at the pool of Gibeon, where Abner proposes a contest between young warriors that erupts into full battle. David's forces prevail. Asahel, Joab's youngest brother, pursues Abner with reckless speed; Abner warns him twice to turn aside, then kills him with a backward thrust of his spear. Joab and Abishai pursue Abner until sunset, when Abner rallies the Benjaminites on a hilltop and calls for an end to the bloodshed. Joab sounds the trumpet and the pursuit stops. Abner's forces lose three hundred and sixty men; David's forces lose nineteen men plus Asahel. The chapter ends with Asahel buried in his father's tomb at Bethlehem and both armies returning to their respective capitals.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter narrates the formal beginning of the divided kingdom — not the later split under Rehoboam, but the first fracture in Israelite unity. Two anointed kings now reign simultaneously: David over Judah at Hebron, Ish-bosheth over the remaining tribes at Mahanaim. The political geography is telling: David holds the southern heartland, while Ish-bosheth governs from a city east of the Jordan — a refugee capital, not a power center. The contest at the pool of Gibeon (vv. 14-16) is one of the most unusual military episodes in the Hebrew Bible: twelve men from each side are paired in single combat, and all twenty-four die simultaneously, each grabbing his opponent's head and driving a sword into his side. The site is named Helkath-hazzurim ('Field of Flint-Edges' or 'Field of Sword-Edges'), preserving the memory of this mutual slaughter. Asahel's death at Abner's hand sets in motion the blood-feud that will dominate the next several chapters, culminating in Joab's murder of Abner in chapter 3. The narrator emphasizes Abner's reluctance — he warns Asahel twice, knowing that killing Joab's brother will create an unresolvable vendetta.*

Translation Friction: *The primary translational tension lies in verse 14, where Abner says yaqumu na ha-ne'arim vi-yesachagu lefanenu — 'let the young men arise and make sport before us.' The verb sachag (Piel: yesachagu) can mean 'to laugh, to play, to sport, to perform' and even 'to engage in combat as entertainment.' Is Abner proposing a harmless display, a formalized duel, or a fight to the death? The ambiguity may be deliberate — what begins as sechok ('sport') escalates into milchamah ('battle'). We render it as 'compete before us' to capture the controlled-contest sense, while the translator's notes address the darker possibilities. A second friction point is in verse 8: Ish-bosheth's name. The Masoretic text reads Ish-boshet ('man of shame'), but this is almost certainly a scribal alteration of the original Ish-baal ('man of Baal' or 'man of the lord'). The name change reflects later scribal discomfort with the element baal. We render the name as given in the MT (Ish-bosheth) and explain the likely original in the notes. Verse 16 presents a third crux: the place-name Helqat ha-Tsurim is variously interpreted as 'Field of Flint-Edges,' 'Field of Sword-Edges,' 'Field of Adversaries,' or 'Field of the Sharp Ones.' The etymology is genuinely uncertain, and we retain the Hebrew transliteration with explanation.*

Connections: *David's anointing at Hebron fulfills the trajectory begun with Samuel's secret anointing in 1 Samuel 16. Hebron itself is Abraham's city (Genesis 13:18, 23:2), the place where the patriarchal promises were first rooted in the land — David's reign begins at the covenant's geographic origin. The message to Jabesh-gilead (vv. 5-7) directly connects to the closing scene of 1 Samuel, where the men of Jabesh recovered Saul's body from the walls of Beth-shan (1 Samuel 31:11-13). David's use of chesed in verse 6 echoes the covenant vocabulary that runs throughout the David-Jonathan narrative (1 Samuel 20:8, 14-15). The pool of Gibeon will appear again as a significant site in 2 Samuel 20:8 (the assassination of Amasa). Asahel's fatal pursuit of Abner anticipates Joab's revenge killing in 3:27, which in turn becomes a burden David carries to his deathbed (1 Kings 2:5-6). The civil war between Benjamin and Judah prefigures the permanent tribal division after Solomon's death (1 Kings 12).*

¹After this, David inquired of the LORD: "Should I go up to one of the cities of Judah?" The LORD said to him, "Go up." David asked, "Where should I go?" He answered, "To Hebron." ²So David went up there, along with his two wives — Ahinoam of Jezreel and Abigail, the widow of Nabal of Carmel. ³David also brought up the men who were with him, each

with his household, and they settled in the towns surrounding Hebron. ⁴The men of Judah came and anointed David king over the house of Judah. David was also informed, "It was the men of Jabesh-gilead who buried Saul." ⁵David sent messengers to the men of Jabesh-gilead and said to them, "May the LORD bless you, because you showed this faithful love to your lord Saul by burying him." ⁶Now may the LORD deal with you in faithful love and trustworthiness. And I myself will also treat you well, because you have done this. ⁷So now, let your hands be strong and be courageous, for your lord Saul is dead — and the house of Judah has anointed me as king over them. ⁸Meanwhile, Abner son of Ner, the commander of Saul's army, had taken Ish-bosheth son of Saul and brought him across to Mahanaim. ⁹He made him king over Gilead, the Ashurites, Jezreel, Ephraim, Benjamin, and all Israel. ¹⁰Ish-bosheth son of Saul was forty years old when he became king over Israel, and he reigned for two years. But the house of Judah followed David. ¹¹The total time David reigned as king in Hebron over the house of Judah was seven years and six months. ¹²Abner son of Ner marched out from Mahanaim to Gibeon with the servants of Ish-bosheth son of Saul. ¹³Joab son of Zeruiah and David's servants also marched out, and the two forces met at the pool of Gibeon. They took up positions on opposite sides of the pool — one group on one side, the other group facing them. ¹⁴Abner said to Joab, "Let the young men get up and compete before us." Joab said, "Let them." ¹⁵They rose and crossed over by count — twelve for Benjamin and Ish-bosheth son of Saul, and twelve from David's servants. ¹⁶Each man seized his opponent by the head and drove his sword into his opponent's side, and they all fell together. So that place was named Helkath-hazzurim — it is in Gibeon. ¹⁷The battle that day was extremely fierce. Abner and the men of Israel were defeated by David's servants. ¹⁸Three sons of Zeruiah were there — Joab, Abishai, and Asahel. Asahel was as fleet-footed as one of the wild gazelles. ¹⁹Asahel chased after Abner and did not veer to the right or the left from pursuing him. ²⁰Abner looked back and said, "Is that you, Asahel?" He answered, "It is." ²¹Abner said to him, "Turn aside — go right or left. Seize one of the young soldiers and take his equipment for yourself." But Asahel refused to stop pursuing him. ²²Abner warned him again: "Turn away from me! Why should I strike you to the ground? How could I face your brother Joab?" ²³But he refused to turn aside. So Abner struck him in the belly with the butt-end of his spear, and the spear came out through his back. He fell there and died on the spot. Everyone who came to the place where Asahel had fallen and died stopped and stood still. ²⁴Joab and Abishai pursued Abner. By the time the sun was setting, they had reached the hill of Ammah, which faces Giah along the road to the wilderness of Gibeon. ²⁵The Benjaminites rallied behind Abner, forming a single unit, and took a stand on the top of a hill. ²⁶Abner called out to Joab: "Must the sword consume forever? Don't you realize how bitter this will end? How long before you order your men to stop pursuing their own brothers?" ²⁷Joab replied, "As God lives, if you had not spoken, the men would have continued pursuing their brothers until morning." ²⁸Joab sounded the ram's horn, and all the troops halted. They no longer pursued Israel, and the fighting ceased. ²⁹Abner and his men marched through the Arabah all night, crossed the Jordan, and traveled through the whole Bithron before arriving at Mahanaim. ³⁰Joab returned from pursuing Abner and assembled all his troops. When David's servants were counted, nineteen men were missing — and Asahel. ³¹David's servants had struck down three hundred and sixty of the Benjaminites and Abner's men — they were dead. ³²They carried Asahel and buried him in his father's tomb at Bethlehem. Then Joab and his men marched all night and reached Hebron at daybreak.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *sha'al* ('to ask, to inquire') indicates formal oracular inquiry, likely through the ephod carried by the priest Abiathar (1 Samuel 23:6, 30:7-8). David's consultation of the LORD before every major move contrasts sharply with Saul, who in his final days could get no answer from the LORD by any means (1 Samuel 28:6). The dialogue structure — question, answer, follow-up question, specific answer — shows David's posture of dependent obedience.
1. Hebron (chevronah) sits in the Judean hill country, roughly 19 miles south of Jerusalem. It was the burial site of Abraham and Sarah (Genesis 23:19) and a city of refuge under the Levitical system (Joshua 20:7). The LORD's direction to Hebron is not random — it is the patriarchal capital of the south, the place most associated with the Abrahamic covenant in Judah's territory.
2. The narrator specifies David's wives by name and origin, anchoring his household in known geography. Ahinoam (achinoam, 'my brother is delight') came from Jezreel in Judah (not the northern Jezreel Valley). Abigail is still identified in relation to Nabal (naval, 'fool'), whose story in 1 Samuel 25 resulted in both his death and David's marriage to his widow. Identifying Abigail as *eshet Naval* ('wife of Nabal') rather than by her own patronymic keeps the Nabal episode in the reader's memory.

2. The phrase *va-ya'al sham* David ('David went up there') uses the same verb *alah* ('to go up') that the LORD commanded. David's obedience is immediate and complete — no delay, no negotiation.
3. The phrase *ish u-veto* ('each man and his household') indicates that David's band of warriors — the four hundred, later six hundred, who gathered around him during his fugitive years (1 Samuel 22:2, 27:2) — relocated as complete family units. This is not a military deployment but a migration, a resettlement of David's entire community from Philistine territory into Judah.
3. The plural *arei Chevron* ('cities/towns of Hebron') refers to the satellite villages and settlements in the Hebron district. David's group was too large to fit within the city walls alone, so they spread across the surrounding area — effectively occupying the Hebron region.
4. The verb *mashach* ('to anoint') is the same verb used when Samuel secretly anointed David in 1 Samuel 16:13. That was a prophetic, hidden anointing; this is a public, tribal anointing — the first of David's three anointings (the third will come in 2 Samuel 5:3, when all Israel anoints him). The formula *le-melek al bet Yehudah* ('as king over the house of Judah') is precise: David's authority extends over one tribe only. The ten northern tribes are not represented.
4. The report about Jabesh-gilead is syntactically connected to the anointing scene, suggesting that David received this intelligence shortly after his coronation. The verb *qaveru* ('they buried') is the standard term for honorable interment. The men of Jabesh-gilead had recovered Saul's body from the wall of Beth-shan (1 Samuel 31:11-13), an act of extraordinary loyalty.
5. The blessing formula *beruchim attem la-YHWH* ('blessed are you by the LORD') invokes divine favor. David speaks not merely as a grateful politician but as the newly anointed king pronouncing a royal benediction. The preposition *la-YHWH* marks the LORD as the source of the blessing — it is God's blessing David channels, not his own.
5. The phrase *im adoneikhem im Sha'ul* ('with your lord, with Saul') uses the preposition *im* ('with') twice, creating emphasis. The word *adon* ('lord, master') acknowledges Saul's legitimate authority over them — David does not diminish Saul's kingship even after his own anointing. This diplomatic sensitivity is characteristic of David's posture toward Saul throughout the narrative.
6. The conjunction of divine *chesed ve-emet* with David's personal *ha-tovah ha-zot* ('this good thing') creates a parallel structure: God will repay them with covenant love, and David will repay them with practical benefit. The word *tovah* ('good, goodness') is less theologically loaded than *chesed* — David carefully distinguishes what God can offer (*chesed ve-emet*) from what he can offer (*tovah*, political good will).
6. The phrase *ve-gam anochi* ('and also I myself') uses the emphatic independent pronoun. David is not merely promising — he is binding himself personally alongside God's promised blessing. This is the language of political alliance dressed in theological garments: David is courting Jabesh-gilead's loyalty.
7. The phrase *techezaqnah yedeikhem* ('let your hands be strong') is an idiom of encouragement that appears throughout the Hebrew Bible in moments of political and military transition (Judges 7:11, Zechariah 8:9). Strong hands can work, fight, and govern; weak hands signal despair and collapse. David is urging Jabesh-gilead not to lose heart despite their king's death.
7. The phrase *bene chayil* ('sons of valor/strength') means men of military capability and social standing — warriors who are also men of substance. David is affirming their identity and calling them to continue in strength. The final clause — 'the house of Judah has anointed me as king over them' — is a carefully worded political overture. David does not claim kingship over Jabesh-gilead or over Israel broadly; he states a fact about Judah and lets the implication settle: there is now a new king in the south, and he remembers who showed loyalty to the old king.
8. The adversative transition signals the narrative's pivot from David's consolidation in the south to the rival power structure in the north. Abner (*avner*, 'my father is a lamp') was Saul's cousin and the real military power behind the throne. The verb *laqach* ('he took') implies initiative: Abner is the actor, and Ish-bosheth is the object. The power dynamics are transparent from the first verb — Abner is the kingmaker, not the king.
8. The name *Ish-boshet* ('man of shame') is almost certainly a scribal emendation of the original *Ish-baal* ('man of Baal' or 'man of the lord'). The element *baal* was originally a legitimate title meaning 'lord' or 'master,' but later scribes replaced it with *boshet* ('shame') to avoid any association with the Canaanite deity. The original name appears in 1 Chronicles 8:33 as *Esh-baal*. *Mahanaim* ('two camps'), east of the Jordan, was Jacob's camp when he encountered angels (Genesis 32:2). Its use as *Ish-bosheth*'s capital signals weakness — the new king governs from the Transjordanian fringe, not from any major Israelite city.
9. The list of territories under *Ish-bosheth*'s nominal rule moves from east to west: Gilead (Transjordan), the Ashurites (possibly the Geshurites or Asherites — the identity is debated), Jezreel (the great northern valley), Ephraim (the central hill country), and Benjamin (Saul's home tribe). The final phrase *ve-al Yisra'el kulah* ('and over all Israel') is the narrator's summary claim, though the reality falls far short — David already holds Judah, and Philistine control over key areas renders *Ish-bosheth*'s sovereignty largely theoretical.
9. The identity of *ha-Ashuri* is a long-standing textual crux. The Septuagint reads 'Geshur,' some manuscripts suggest 'Asher,' and the Vulgate has 'Gessuri.' No identification is certain. We follow the MT form and note the ambiguity.
10. The regnal formula — age at accession and length of reign — follows the standard pattern for Israelite kings. The number forty may be formulaic (indicating a generation or full maturity) rather than precise. His two-year reign contrasts sharply with David's seven-and-a-half years at Hebron (v. 11), suggesting that *Ish-bosheth*'s kingdom was short-lived and contested.
10. The adversative *akh* ('but, however') introduces a sharp contrast: whatever *Ish-bosheth* claims, the house of Judah belongs to David. The verb *hayu acharei David* ('were after David, followed David') uses *acharei* in the sense of political allegiance — they walked behind David as subjects walk behind their king.

11. This chronological note provides the framework for the events narrated in chapters 2-4. The precision — seven years and six months — suggests access to official court records. This number recurs in 2 Samuel 5:5 and 1 Kings 2:11, confirming its place in the royal chronology. David's Hebron period is longer than Ish-bosheth's two-year reign, implying a period of interregnum or contested rule between Ish-bosheth's fall and David's anointing over all Israel.
12. The verb *yatsa* ('went out') in military contexts means to march out for war, to deploy forces. Abner's movement from Mahanaim westward to Gibeon is an aggressive strategic move — Gibeon sits in Benjaminite territory, only six miles northwest of Jerusalem. This is a bid to assert control over the central highlands and press Ish-bosheth's claim into Judah's proximity.
12. Gibeon was a significant city in Israelite history: the site of Joshua's treaty with the Gibeonites (Joshua 9) and the great battle where the sun stood still (Joshua 10:12). It also housed the tabernacle in this period (1 Chronicles 16:39, 21:29). Abner's choice of Gibeon as his staging ground may have been strategic, political, or both.
13. The verb *pagash* ('to meet, to encounter') can denote a chance meeting or a deliberate confrontation. Given the military context, this is a face-off, not an accident. The pool of Gibeon (*berekhat Giv'on*) has been identified archaeologically as a large, rock-cut water installation at the site of el-Jib, approximately 37 feet in diameter. It served as a natural dividing line between the two forces.
13. The spatial description — *elleh al ha-berekhah mizzeh ve-elleh al ha-berekhah mizzeh* ('these on one side of the pool and those on the other side of the pool') — creates a visual tableau of two armies in mirrored positions, separated by water. The symmetry of the description foreshadows the symmetry of the combat that follows.
14. The verb *sachaq* (Piel: *yesachagu*, here *vi-yesachagu*) has a broad semantic range: to laugh, to play, to jest, to perform, to engage in combat as sport. The same root describes Isaac's play (Genesis 21:9), Samson's forced performance for the Philistines (Judges 16:25), and children playing in the streets (Zechariah 8:5). In a military context between opposing armies, the 'play' is almost certainly representative combat — a formalized contest between chosen warriors whose outcome may determine or initiate the broader battle.
14. Joab's curt response — *yaqumu*, a single word ('let them arise') — gives consent without enthusiasm. The brevity may signal agreement, indifference, or calculated willingness to let the other side take the initiative and the blame. Joab is David's nephew (son of David's sister Zeruiah) and already functions as David's chief military commander.
15. The phrase *va-ya'avru be-mispar* ('they crossed over by number') indicates a formal, counted selection — this is not a spontaneous brawl but an organized contest with precisely matched sides. The number twelve on each side echoes the twelve tribes of Israel, suggesting that these champions represent the whole nation in microcosm.
15. The fighters from Ish-bosheth's side are identified as *le-Vinyamin* ('for Benjamin') — they are Benjaminites, Saul's own tribesmen and presumably his most loyal warriors. The narrator's identification of them by tribe rather than just by king underscores the tribal nature of this civil war.
16. The verb *chazaq* ('to seize, to grasp firmly') describes each warrior grabbing the head of the man opposite him — likely gripping the hair or the back of the skull to hold him in place for the killing blow. The phrase *ve-charbo be-tsad re'ehu* ('and his sword in his opponent's side') describes simultaneous mutual kills: each man stabs the other while being stabbed himself. The result — *vayyiplu yachdav* ('they fell together') — is total mutual annihilation. Twenty-four men enter the contest; twenty-four die.
16. The place-name *Helqat ha-Tsurim* is notoriously difficult. *Tsurim* could derive from *tsur* ('rock, flint'), *tsur* ('sharp edge, blade'), or *tsar* ('adversary'). Possible meanings include 'Field of Flint-Edges,' 'Field of Sword-Edges,' or 'Field of Adversaries.' The Septuagint reads 'portion of the plotters' (*meris ton epibulon*). The ambiguity preserves the horror of the scene: the name memorializes violence, whatever its exact etymology.
17. The adjective *qashah* ('hard, severe, fierce') intensifies the violence — the mutual slaughter of the twenty-four champions did not settle the conflict but ignited a full-scale battle. The verb *vayyinnagef* ('he was struck, defeated') is a Niphal passive: Abner was defeated. The passive construction places the focus on the result rather than the agent — David's men won, but the narrator does not celebrate the victory. This is, after all, Israelite killing Israelite.
17. The phrase *anshei Yisra'el* ('the men of Israel') refers to the northern forces under Abner. The narrator's use of 'Israel' for Ish-bosheth's faction and 'servants of David' for the southern forces avoids calling the Judahites 'Israel' — the name belongs, at this point, to the larger tribal confederation that has not yet accepted David.
18. The phrase *qal be-raglav* ('light on his feet') describes exceptional running speed. The comparison to the *tsevi* ('gazelle') is not ornamental — the mountain gazelle of the Judean hills was proverbially the fastest creature in the Israelite landscape. The phrase *ke-achad ha-tseva'im asher ba-sadeh* ('like one of the gazelles that are in the open field') specifies wild, not domesticated — these are creatures of pure speed in open terrain.
18. Zeruiah was David's sister (1 Chronicles 2:16), making Joab, Abishai, and Asahel David's nephews. The three brothers function as David's military inner circle. The introduction of Asahel here, with his defining characteristic of speed, is narrative preparation for his death — the very quality that makes him exceptional will be his undoing.
19. The verb *radaph* ('to pursue, to chase') indicates single-minded pursuit. The phrase *lo natah* ('he did not turn aside') combined with *al ha-yamin ve-al ha-semo'l* ('to the right or to the left') is a totality expression: Asahel was locked onto Abner with absolute focus, ignoring every other combatant on the field. This kind of fixation on a single enemy commander was either extraordinarily brave or fatally reckless — the narrator lets both possibilities stand.

19. Asahel's pursuit of Abner, the enemy commander, suggests ambition beyond the battle itself. Killing or capturing Abner would end the war in a single stroke. The young warrior's speed gives him the physical ability to catch the older general, but the text is about to reveal that speed is not the only factor in combat.
20. Abner's question *ha-attah zeh Asa'el* ('are you this one — Asahel?') shows that Abner recognizes his pursuer. The demonstrative *zeh* ('this') suggests visual identification under difficult conditions — mid-flight, looking over his shoulder. The recognition is crucial: Abner knows exactly whose brother he will have to kill if Asahel does not relent. The exchange is remarkably brief: question and answer, two words from Asahel — *anokhi* ('I am'). There is no bravado, no taunting — just identification.
21. Abner's command *neteh lekha* ('turn aside for yourself') is his first attempt to save Asahel's life. The offer — take the armor-strip (*chalitsah*) from a lesser soldier — gives Asahel a way to claim a trophy and save face without forcing a confrontation with the commander himself. The word *chalitsah* refers to the stripped equipment of a defeated enemy, a standard spoil of war that proved combat valor.
21. The refusal formula *lo avah Asa'el lasur me-acharav* ('Asahel was not willing to turn from behind him') uses the same construction (*lo avah*) that described Saul's armor-bearer refusing to strike the king (1 Samuel 31:4). In both cases, the refusal is a deep dispositional unwillingness — but with opposite moral valences. The armor-bearer refused out of reverent terror; Asahel refuses out of reckless ambition.
22. Abner's second warning is more urgent and more personal. The question *lammah akkekah artsah* ('why should I strike you to the ground') is not a bluff — it is a statement of certain outcome. Abner knows he can kill Asahel. The verb *nakah* ('to strike') in the Hiphil conveys a decisive, lethal blow. Abner frames the killing not as a question of ability but of consequence.
22. The phrase *ve-eikh essa fanay el Yo'av achikha* ('how would I lift my face to Joab your brother') reveals Abner's strategic calculus. Killing Asahel would create a blood-feud with Joab that could never be resolved through normal political negotiation. The idiom *nasa panim* ('to lift the face') means to face someone without shame or fear — Abner is saying that killing Joab's brother would make any future peace between them impossible. This warning proves prophetically accurate: Joab will murder Abner in chapter 3.
23. The verb *me'en* ('he refused') is stronger than *lo avah* in verse 21 — it is an active, emphatic refusal. Abner responds with lethal precision: *be-acharei ha-chanit* ('with the back-end of the spear') means the blunt, metal-tipped butt-end of the shaft, not the spearhead. That Abner kills Asahel with the wrong end of the spear — without even turning to face him — underscores the vast gap in combat experience between the two men. The blow lands *el ha-chomesh* ('to the fifth [rib]' or 'to the abdomen'), a vulnerable spot below the ribcage.
23. The detail *va-tetse ha-chanit me-acharav* ('the spear came out from behind him') indicates the force of the blow drove the butt-end entirely through Asahel's body. The phrase *vayyamot tachtav* ('he died in his place' or 'he died under himself') means he dropped dead where he stood — instant death, no lingering. The final image — everyone who reaches the spot stops and stands still (*vayyaamodu*) — is cinematic: Asahel's body becomes a landmark on the battlefield, a marker of horror that freezes every passing soldier in his tracks.
24. The pursuit now shifts from Asahel (dead) to his two brothers, Joab and Abishai. The temporal marker *ve-ha-shemesh ba'ah* ('the sun was coming/going') indicates late afternoon or early evening — the battle has lasted most of the day. The geographic markers — *giv'at Ammah* ('hill of Ammah') and *Giach* — are otherwise unknown and cannot be identified with certainty. They function as waypoints in a running pursuit through the Gibeonite countryside.
24. The phrase *derekh midbar Giv'on* ('the road to the wilderness of Gibeon') indicates Abner is retreating eastward, back toward the Jordan and his base at Mahanaim. The 'wilderness' (*midbar*) here refers to the sparsely settled terrain descending from the central ridge toward the Jordan Valley.
25. The verb *hitqabtsu* ('they gathered themselves together') is a Hithpael reflexive — the Benjaminites regroup on their own initiative, rallying around their commander after a rout. The phrase *la-aguddah echat* ('into one band/unit') indicates tactical consolidation: scattered troops forming a defensive cluster. The hilltop position (*al rosh giv'ah achat*) gives them the defensive advantage of high ground, turning a retreat into a defensible stand.
25. The identification of the rallying troops as *bene Vinyamin* ('sons of Benjamin') rather than 'men of Israel' narrows the focus: it is Saul's own tribe that forms Abner's last-stand force. Tribal loyalty, not pan-Israelite nationalism, is what holds this army together.
26. Abner's speech contains three rhetorical questions, each escalating in urgency. The first — *ha-la-netsach tokhal cherev* ('will the sword eat forever?') — personifies the sword as a devouring beast, an image found throughout Hebrew poetry (Deuteronomy 32:42, Isaiah 1:20). The verb *akhal* ('to eat, to consume') makes warfare into predation.
26. The second question — *ki marah tihyeh ba-acharonah* ('it will be bitter in the end') — warns of consequences. The adjective *marah* ('bitter') evokes the bitterness of death, grief, and regret. Abner is not making a moral argument but a practical one: this fratricidal fighting will produce a bitterness that outlasts the battle itself. The third question — *ad matay lo tomar la-am lashuv me-acharei achehem* ('how long until you tell the people to turn back from behind their brothers') — introduces the devastating word *achehem* ('their brothers'). Abner names the fundamental horror of civil war: these armies are brothers pursuing brothers.
27. Joab's oath formula *chai ha-Elohim* ('as God lives') solemnizes his statement. The conditional clause *lu-le' dibbarta* ('if you had not spoken') is ambiguous: does Joab mean 'if you had not called for the contest in verse 14, none of this would have happened,' or 'if you had not just now called for a cease-fire, I would not have stopped until dawn'? Both readings are grammatically possible. The first is an accusation (you started this); the second is a concession (I accept your terms).

- 27.** The phrase *me-ha-boqer na'alah ha-am* ('from the morning the people would have gone up') refers to the pursuit continuing through the night until the next morning. The verb *alah* ('to go up') in military context means to advance, to press the attack. Joab's response accepts the cease-fire but refuses to accept blame — the ambiguity of his words preserves his dignity while ending the bloodshed.
- 28.** The shofar blast serves as the formal signal to break off combat. The verb *taqah* ('to thrust, to blow') combined with shofar indicates a clear, recognized military signal — the troops respond immediately: *vayyaamdu kol ha-am* ('all the people stood still'). The cessation is total: *lo yirdephu od* ('they no longer pursued') and *lo yasephu od le-hillachem* ('they no longer continued to fight'). The double negative construction emphasizes the completeness of the disengagement.
- 28.** The narrator's reference to the opposing force as 'Israel' (*acharei Yisra'el*) is significant: from Joab's army's perspective, the enemy is 'Israel' — the larger entity from which Judah has separated. The term carries weight: David's men are fighting against Israel, not merely against Abner's faction.
- 29.** The Arabah (*aravah*) is the rift valley running from the Sea of Galilee south through the Dead Sea basin. Abner's night march through this low-lying terrain and across the Jordan River represents a retreat of considerable distance — roughly thirty to forty miles from Gibeon to Mahanaim. The urgency of the march (*kol ha-laylah ha-hu*, 'all that night') suggests Abner feared Joab might resume the pursuit at dawn.
- 29.** The Bithron (*ha-bitron*) is an otherwise unknown locality, possibly a ravine or district in Transjordan. The word may derive from *batar* ('to cut, to cleave'), suggesting a cut or gorge through which the road passed. The arrival at Mahanaim brings Abner's forces full circle — they departed from Mahanaim in verse 12 and return to it here, having accomplished nothing except losses.
- 30.** The verb *paqad* ('to count, to muster, to take account of') is the standard military census verb. The total losses from David's side: nineteen men and Asahel — twenty total. The narrator separates Asahel's name from the count with the conjunction *ve* ('and Asahel'), giving him a distinct place in the casualty list. He is not merely one of the twenty; he is named individually because his death carries consequences that the nineteen anonymous dead do not.
- 30.** The relatively low number (twenty) compared to the losses on Abner's side (three hundred and sixty, v. 31) confirms the decisive nature of David's military victory at Gibeon, despite the emotional cost of Asahel's death.
- 31.** The casualty ratio is stark: twenty to three hundred sixty, an eighteen-to-one disparity. The dead are identified as *mi-Vinyamin u-ve-anshei Avner* ('from Benjamin and from Abner's men'), again using the tribal name alongside the commander's. The verb *hikku* ('they struck') is a Hiphil of *nakah*, the standard verb for inflicting lethal military blows.
- 31.** The final word *metu* ('they died') is blunt and unadorned. The narrator does not celebrate the victory or moralize about the losses. Both sides are Israelites; every death is a loss to the covenant people. The body count simply stands as evidence of what happens when brothers make war on brothers.
- 32.** The verb *nasa* ('to carry, to lift') describes the bearing of Asahel's body — the same verb used for carrying the ark, for bearing burdens, and for the solemn transport of the dead. The burial in *qever aviv* ('his father's tomb') at Bethlehem follows standard Israelite practice of interment in the family burial site. Bethlehem is identified here as the ancestral home of Jesse's family — David's family — confirming that Asahel, as David's nephew, belongs to the Bethlehemite clan.
- 32.** Joab's night march from the Gibeon area to Hebron (roughly 20 miles through the hill country) mirrors Abner's night march to Mahanaim. Both commanders return to their respective capitals under cover of darkness. The phrase *vayyeor lahem be-Chevron* ('it grew light for them in Hebron') is a beautiful temporal marker: dawn breaks as they arrive home, the first light after a dark day of fratricidal war.

3

Summary: *The prolonged civil war between the house of Saul and the house of David tilts decisively toward David as Abner, Saul's military commander, breaks with Ish-bosheth and negotiates defection to David's side. Abner brokers a covenant with David and begins rallying the northern tribes, but Joab — David's own general — assassinates Abner in cold blood at the gate of Hebron, avenging his brother Asahel. David publicly disavows the killing, curses Joab's house, leads the mourning, and composes a lament declaring that Abner did not die a deserved death but fell as one falls before treacherous men. All Israel recognizes that the murder was not the king's doing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterclass in the politics of legitimacy. David is gaining power, yet the narrator shows him constrained at every turn — by Joab's independence, by the fragility of tribal loyalty, by the blood-debt system he cannot simply overrule. Abner's defection is triggered not by ideology but by a concubine dispute: Ish-bosheth accuses Abner of sleeping with Rizpah, Saul's concubine, and Abner erupts in fury. The accusation — whether true or false — touches the ancient Near Eastern convention that taking a king's concubine signals a claim on his throne (the same logic drives Absalom's act on the palace roof in 2 Samuel 16:22). Abner's rage reveals that he has been the real power behind Ish-bosheth's throne all along; once insulted, he discards the*

puppet king without hesitation. David's lament for Abner in verses 33-34 is genuine poetry embedded in prose narrative, structured as a rhetorical question that refuses to let the audience see Abner's death as justice. The line 'Your hands were not bound, your feet were not placed in bronze chains' insists that Abner was no prisoner led to execution — he walked freely into a trap. David names the death for what it is: a fall before sons of wickedness.

Translation Friction: *The phrase dam naqi ('innocent blood') in verse 28 presents a significant rendering challenge. David declares that he and his kingdom are 'clean from the LORD forever' regarding the dam naqi of Abner. The Hebrew naqi means 'clean, free from guilt, innocent' — but applied to Abner's blood it does not mean Abner was morally innocent in some absolute sense. Rather, his blood was 'undeserved' — he did not merit execution, he came under a guarantee of safe conduct, and his killing was therefore juridically wrongful. We rendered this as 'innocent blood' while noting in the translator notes that the innocence is juridical rather than moral. The word berit ('covenant') in verse 12-13 is another friction point: Abner proposes a berit with David, but David's condition — the return of Michal — transforms a political alliance into something touching personal honor, dynastic legitimacy, and the reversal of Saul's insult. The berit here is political compact, not the theological covenant between God and Israel, yet the same word carries all its covenantal freight.*

Connections: *Abner's death at the gate of Hebron by Joab connects directly to the earlier killing of Asahel at the battle of Gibeon (2 Samuel 2:18-23), creating a blood-vengeance chain that will not resolve until Solomon's reign (1 Kings 2:5-6, 28-34), when David's deathbed instructions finally authorize Joab's execution. The demand for Michal's return (v13-16) reaches back to 1 Samuel 18:20-27, where Saul gave her to David as a bride-price trap, and 1 Samuel 25:44, where Saul gave her to Palti. Rizpah daughter of Aiah reappears in 2 Samuel 21:8-11, where her vigil over the bodies of her executed sons becomes one of the most haunting images in the entire Hebrew Bible. David's public mourning and fasting for Abner foreshadows his later mourning patterns — his response to Absalom's death (2 Samuel 18:33) and his behavior during the child's illness (2 Samuel 12:16-23). The curse David pronounces on Joab's house in verse 29 is among the harshest in Scripture, invoking discharge, skin disease, the spindle, the sword, and hunger — a five-fold curse that shadows Joab for the rest of the narrative.*

¹The war between the house of Saul and the house of David dragged on. David grew steadily stronger, while the house of Saul grew steadily weaker. ²Sons were born to David at Hebron. His firstborn was Amnon, by Ahinoam of Jezreel. ³His second was Chileab, by Abigail the widow of Nabal from Carmel. The third was Absalom, son of Maacah daughter of Talmai king of Geshur. ⁴The fourth was Adonijah, son of Haggith. The fifth was Shephatiah, son of Abital. ⁵The sixth was Ithream, by Eglah, David's wife. These were born to David at Hebron. ⁶During the war between the house of Saul and the house of David, Abner was consolidating his own power within the house of Saul. ⁷Now Saul had a concubine named Rizpah daughter of Aiah. Ish-bosheth said to Abner, "Why have you slept with my father's concubine?" ⁸Abner burned with anger at Ish-bosheth's words and said, "Am I a dog's head — loyal to Judah? To this day I have shown faithful loyalty to the house of your father Saul, to his brothers, and to his allies, and I have not handed you over to David — yet now you charge me with wrongdoing over this woman?" ⁹"May God do the same to Abner and worse if I do not carry out for David exactly what the LORD has sworn to him —" ¹⁰"to transfer the kingdom from the house of Saul and to establish the throne of David over Israel and over Judah, from Dan to Beersheba." ¹¹Ish-bosheth could not say another word to Abner, because he was afraid of him. ¹²Abner sent messengers to David on his behalf, saying, "Whose land is this, really? Make a covenant with me, and my hand will be with you to bring all Israel over to your side." ¹³David replied, "Good — I will make a covenant with you. But I have one condition: you will not see my face unless you bring Michal daughter of Saul when you come to appear before me." ¹⁴David also sent messengers directly to Ish-bosheth son of Saul, saying, "Give me my wife Michal, whom I betrothed to myself at the price of a hundred Philistine foreskins." ¹⁵Ish-bosheth sent and took her from her husband, from Paltiel son of Laish. ¹⁶Her husband walked behind her, weeping as he went, all the way to Bahurim. Then Abner told him, "Go back." And he went back. ¹⁷Abner had already been speaking with the elders of Israel, saying, "For some time now, you have been wanting David as your king." ¹⁸"So now, act! For the LORD has declared concerning David: 'Through my servant David I will deliver my people Israel from the Philistines and from all their enemies.'" ¹⁹Abner also spoke directly to the Benjaminites. Then Abner went to Hebron to report to David everything that Israel had agreed to, and everything the whole tribe of Benjamin had

approved. ²⁰Abner came to David at Hebron with twenty men, and David prepared a feast for Abner and the men with him. ²¹Abner said to David, "Let me go and gather all Israel to my lord the king so they can make a covenant with you, and you will reign over everything your heart desires." David sent Abner on his way, and he left in peace. ²²Just then, David's men and Joab arrived from a raid, bringing a large amount of plunder with them. But Abner was no longer with David in Hebron — David had already sent him away, and he had gone in peace. ²³When Joab and all the troops with him arrived, someone reported to Joab, "Abner son of Ner came to the king. David sent him away, and he left in peace." ²⁴Joab went to the king and said, "What have you done? Abner came right to you — why did you let him leave? Now he is gone!" ²⁵"You know Abner son of Ner — he came to deceive you! He came to learn your movements — where you go out and where you come in — and to find out everything you are doing." ²⁶After Joab left David's presence, he sent messengers after Abner and they brought him back from the cistern of Sirah. David knew nothing about it. ²⁷When Abner returned to Hebron, Joab drew him aside into the gateway as though to speak with him privately. There he stabbed him in the stomach, and Abner died — because of the blood of his brother Asahel. ²⁸When David heard about it afterward, he said, "I and my kingdom are clean before the LORD forever regarding the innocent blood of Abner son of Ner." ²⁹"Let it fall on the head of Joab and on all his father's house! May the house of Joab never be without someone suffering from a bodily discharge, or skin disease, or who grips the spindle, or who falls by the sword, or who lacks bread." ³⁰Joab and his brother Abishai killed Abner because he had killed their brother Asahel at Gibeon during the battle. ³¹David ordered Joab and all the people with him: "Tear your clothes, put on sackcloth, and walk in mourning before Abner's body." King David himself walked behind the bier. ³²They buried Abner in Hebron. The king raised his voice and wept at Abner's grave, and all the people wept as well.

³³The king raised a lament over Abner. He said:

"Should Abner have died the way a worthless fool dies?"

³⁴"Your hands were not bound;
your feet were not placed in bronze chains.
As one falls before sons of wickedness —
so you fell."

And all the people wept over him again.

³⁵All the people came to urge David to eat while it was still daylight, but David swore an oath: "May God do the same to me and worse if I taste bread or anything else before the sun goes down." ³⁶All the people took notice, and it seemed right to them — indeed, everything the king did met with the approval of all the people. ³⁷All the people — indeed all Israel — recognized that day that the killing of Abner son of Ner had not come from the king. ³⁸The king said to his servants, "Do you not understand that a commander — a great man — has fallen today in Israel?" ³⁹"I am vulnerable today, even though I have been anointed king. These men, the sons of Zeruiah, are too fierce for me. May the LORD repay the one who does evil according to his wickedness."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The paired participles *holek vechazek* ('going and growing strong') and *holkhim vedalim* ('going and becoming weak') create a Hebrew idiom for progressive, ongoing change. The construction *holek* + second participle means 'continually becoming more so.' The narrator compresses what may have been years of attrition into a single contrastive sentence.
1. The word *arukkah* ('long, prolonged') applied to *milchamah* ('war') indicates not a single battle but an extended period of hostility — likely guerrilla conflict, border skirmishes, and political maneuvering rather than set-piece battles. The chapter will show that this war was decided more by political defection than by military victory.
2. The genealogical list in verses 2-5 interrupts the war narrative to establish David's growing family during the Hebron period. In the ancient Near East, the number of a king's sons signaled dynastic strength and divine blessing. Each son is identified by his mother, reflecting the political significance of each marriage alliance.

2. Amnon, the bekhor ('firstborn'), will later become the perpetrator of the assault on Tamar (2 Samuel 13), making this seemingly neutral genealogical notice carry dark foreshadowing for the reader who knows the full story.
3. Abigail is still identified by her former marriage to Nabal ('the fool'), linking back to the narrative in 1 Samuel 25. Chileab (also called Daniel in 1 Chronicles 3:1) disappears from the narrative entirely — he plays no further role, suggesting he may have died young or been otherwise sidelined.
3. Absalom's maternal lineage is given special attention: his mother Maacah was a foreign princess, daughter of the king of Geshur, a small Aramean kingdom northeast of the Sea of Galilee. This was a diplomatic marriage, and Absalom's half-foreign royal blood will factor into his later revolt — Geshur becomes his place of exile after he kills Amnon (2 Samuel 13:37-38).
4. Adonijah will later attempt to seize the throne after David's death (1 Kings 1-2), making his appearance in this birth list another instance of the narrator planting seeds for future conflict. Each of these sons represents a potential succession crisis — and the house of David will indeed be torn apart from within.
4. The names themselves carry theological weight: Adonijah means 'my lord is Yah(weh)' and Shephatiah means 'the LORD has judged.' Whether these names reflect parental piety or narrative irony depends on the reader's vantage point.
5. Eglah alone among the mothers listed here receives the title eshet David ('David's wife') — a peculiar distinction since all the women named were David's wives. Some ancient interpreters speculated this was another name for Michal, though there is no textual evidence for that identification. The designation may simply reflect Eglah's status as a particularly favored wife.
5. The summary statement 'these were born to David at Hebron' closes the genealogical insert and signals a return to the political narrative. Six sons by six different women in the Hebron period alone demonstrates the dynastic momentum the narrator is establishing.
6. The hitpael form mitchazzeq ('making himself strong') is reflexive-intensive: Abner was actively strengthening his own position, not merely serving the house of Saul. The verb chazaq in the hitpael carries the sense of self-aggrandizement — consolidating personal power under the cover of institutional loyalty. This single verb telegraphs the power dynamic that will explode in the next verses.
6. The narrator positions this detail immediately after David's growing family (vv2-5) to create a contrast: David's strength comes through dynasty-building and divine favor, while Abner's comes through political maneuvering within a weakening regime.
7. The verb ba'tah ('you went in to') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse, literally 'you entered.' The accusation may or may not have been factually true — the text never confirms it. But the political implications were unmistakable: in the ancient Near East, taking a predecessor's concubine was a public claim to his authority (cf. Absalom with David's concubines in 2 Samuel 16:21-22, and Adonijah's request for Abishag in 1 Kings 2:17-22).
7. The word pilegesh ('concubine') denotes a secondary wife with recognized legal status but lower rank than a full wife. Rizpah will reappear in 2 Samuel 21:8-11, where her extraordinary vigil over the exposed bodies of her sons constitutes one of the most powerful acts of maternal resistance in the Hebrew Bible.
8. The phrase rosh kelev ('dog's head') is an intensified insult — not merely 'dog' (which is already degrading in Hebrew culture) but the head of a dog, the most worthless part of a despised animal. Abner uses it sarcastically, asking if Ish-bosheth truly regards him as something contemptible and aligned with Judah (David's tribe). The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no' while simultaneously revealing how expendable Abner now considers Ish-bosheth.
8. The word chesed ('loyal love, faithful loyalty') is loaded terminology: Abner claims he has shown covenantal faithfulness to Saul's house. When a military commander invokes chesed, it signals that he considers the relationship reciprocal — loyalty given should produce loyalty returned. Ish-bosheth's accusation, in Abner's view, has violated this reciprocity.
8. The phrase tifqod alai avon ha'ishah ('you charge me with wrongdoing concerning the woman') uses paqad ('to visit, to attend to, to call to account') in its judicial sense. Abner reframes the concubine accusation as an offense against himself rather than addressing whether it is true — a classic deflection that reveals more about the power dynamic than about the facts.
9. The self-imprecation formula koh ya'aseh Elohim... vekoh yosif ('may God do thus... and add more') is a standard oath formula in which the speaker invokes divine punishment on himself if he fails to keep his word. Abner swears against himself in the third person, which is unusual — he distances himself even from his own oath. The content of the oath is stunning: Abner now explicitly acknowledges that the LORD has sworn to give the kingdom to David, meaning he has known all along that his support for Ish-bosheth was against God's declared will.
9. The shift from fury at Ish-bosheth to a vow to serve David happens in a single sentence, revealing that Abner's allegiance was always pragmatic rather than principled. The moment the political calculus changes, he pivots entirely.
10. The phrase leha'avir hamamlakah ('to transfer the kingdom') uses the hiphil of avar ('to cross over, to pass'), meaning to cause the kingdom to pass from one house to another. This is regime change described in a single verb.
10. The merism 'from Dan to Beersheba' (middan ve'ad be'er shava) is the standard way of expressing the full territorial extent of Israel — Dan being the northernmost recognized Israelite settlement and Beersheba the southernmost. Abner is promising not just a factional shift but total unification under David.

11. The verb *yakhol* ('to be able') negated — *lo yakhol lehashiv davar* ('he was unable to return a word') — reveals the total collapse of Ish-bosheth's authority. The man who is nominally king cannot even speak in response to his own general's threat of defection. The narrator exposes the power structure in a single verse: Ish-bosheth has always been Abner's creation, and without Abner's support, he is nothing.
11. The phrase *miyyir'ato oto* ('because of his fear of him') uses *yir'ah* ('fear'), the same word used for fear of God. Ish-bosheth's fear of Abner is an inversion of the proper order — a king should be feared, not fearful. The puppet king stands exposed.
12. The rhetorical question *lemi erets* ('to whom belongs the land?') is a power play. Abner is not asking for information — he is asserting that the land's future is in his hands, not Ish-bosheth's. It is simultaneously an offer and a boast: 'I am the one who decides where this nation goes.'
12. The imperative *kartah veritkhah itti* ('cut your covenant with me') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for making a covenant — *karat berit*, literally 'to cut a covenant,' referring to the ancient practice of cutting sacrificial animals as part of covenant ratification (cf. Genesis 15:9-18). Abner wants a formal, binding agreement — protection and position in exchange for delivering the northern tribes.
13. David's demand for Michal is politically brilliant on multiple levels. As Saul's daughter and David's first wife (1 Samuel 18:27), Michal is a living claim to dynastic legitimacy — her presence at David's court would signal to the northern tribes that David is Saul's rightful successor by marriage, not merely a rival warlord. The demand also reasserts David's personal honor: Saul took Michal away and gave her to another man (1 Samuel 25:44), and David is reclaiming what was stolen.
13. The phrase *lo tir'eh et panai* ('you will not see my face') uses the language of royal audience — 'seeing the king's face' means being received in his presence. David is wielding court protocol: no audience, no covenant, unless the condition is met first.
14. David bypasses Abner and sends directly to Ish-bosheth — a power move asserting that he deals with the nominal king as an equal (or superior), not through intermediaries. The message is simultaneously a legal claim and a humiliation: David names the bride-price he paid (*me'ah orlot pelishtim* — 'a hundred Philistine foreskins'), reminding everyone that he earned Michal through extraordinary military valor.
14. The verb *erastiy* ('I betrothed') is from *aras*, a technical legal term for the formal betrothal process. David's language is juridical: this is not a request but a demand based on established marital rights. The bride-price has been paid; the marriage was legitimate; Saul's subsequent transfer of Michal to Palti was the illegal act.
15. Ish-bosheth's compliance is immediate and unconditional — he does not negotiate, object, or delay. This confirms what verse 11 already revealed: he cannot resist anyone's demands. The powerless king simply obeys, whether the command comes from Abner or from David.
15. The text identifies Paltiel as Michal's *ish* ('husband'), granting full legitimacy to the relationship Saul arranged. Michal is being taken from a real marriage, not merely relocated. The narrator's recognition of Paltiel as 'husband' adds moral complexity to what David frames as a straightforward legal recovery.
16. This is one of the most poignant single verses in the Deuteronomistic History. Paltiel (called Palti in 1 Samuel 25:44) is a man who apparently loved Michal genuinely, and the narrator pauses the political narrative to let us see him walking behind her, weeping. The participle *halokh uvakhoh* ('walking and weeping') creates an image of sustained grief — he did not cry out once and stop but wept continuously along the road.
16. Abner's curt command *lekh shuv* ('go, return') is two words in Hebrew. The general has no patience for a grieving husband — this is statecraft, and personal loss is irrelevant. Paltiel's silent obedience (*vayyashov*, 'and he returned') closes the scene without resolution. The narrator never tells us what became of him. This brief, devastating portrait is the human cost of political realignment, and the text refuses to look away from it.
17. The phrase *gam temol gam shilshom* ('both yesterday and the day before') is an idiom meaning 'previously, for some time now.' Abner reveals that support for David among the northern tribal leaders was not new — it had been building quietly even while Abner himself propped up Ish-bosheth's regime. The elders' latent pro-David sentiment now has a military champion willing to act on it.
17. The participle *mevaqshim* ('seeking, wanting') indicates ongoing desire, not a sudden change of heart. Abner presents himself as the facilitator of what the people already want, not as a traitor — a masterful piece of political rhetoric.
18. Abner invokes divine authority — 'the LORD has declared' (*YHWH amar*) — to legitimate the political transition. The oracle he cites ('through my servant David I will deliver my people Israel') uses the language of the judges and the language of covenant: *avdi* ('my servant'), *ammi* ('my people'), and the *hiphil* of *yasha* ('to deliver, to save'). Whether Abner is quoting an actual prophetic oracle or constructing one for rhetorical effect, the text does not say.
18. The phrase *beyad David* ('through the hand of David') positions David as God's chosen instrument — his 'hand' is the means of divine deliverance. This echoes the theological pattern of the entire Deuteronomistic History: God saves through chosen human agents.
19. Benjamin receives special attention because it was Saul's own tribe. Winning Benjamin's consent was the critical piece — without it, the defection could be framed as every tribe except Saul's own people abandoning his dynasty. Abner's diplomacy with Benjamin transforms the political shift from a betrayal into something approaching consensus.
19. The phrase *be'oznei* ('in the ears of') indicates direct, personal communication — Abner did not send messengers to Benjamin but spoke to them face to face, underscoring the delicacy and importance of this particular negotiation.
20. The twenty men accompanying Abner represent a diplomatic delegation, not a military force — this is a negotiation party, large enough to signal seriousness but small enough to signal trust. David's response — preparing a *mishteh* ('feast, drinking banquet') — is the standard protocol for covenant-making in the ancient Near East. Eating together creates bonds of mutual obligation; a shared meal is a performed covenant.

- 20.** The detail about the feast becomes critical in retrospect: Abner came to Hebron under the protection of hospitality, ate at David's table, and departed in peace. Joab's subsequent killing of Abner therefore violates not only the safe-conduct but the sacred obligations of shared food.
- 21.** Abner's address *adoni hammelek* ('my lord the king') is the full formal title of royal submission — Abner already treats David as his sovereign. The verb *yikhretu* ('they will cut') refers again to covenant-making: the goal is a formal, binding agreement between all Israel and David.
- 21.** The phrase *vayyeylekh beshalom* ('and he went in peace') is the chapter's pivot point. *Shalom* here is not merely 'peace' as an emotional state but a covenantal condition — Abner departed under safe conduct, with the host's guarantee of security. Everything that follows must be read against this detail: Abner left David's presence *beshalom*, under protection. What Joab does to him is therefore a violation of David's *shalom*.
- 22.** The narrator's timing is precise and deliberate: Joab arrives immediately after Abner has departed. The repetition of *vayyeylekh beshalom* ('and he had gone in peace') — already stated in verse 21 — emphasizes the point a second time. The narrator wants the reader to hold this fact firmly: Abner was sent away under David's personal guarantee of safe conduct.
- 22.** Joab returns from a *gedud* ('raiding party') with *shalal rav* ('great plunder'), arriving in the flush of military success — confident, aggressive, and about to discover that his king has been making peace with the man who killed his brother.
- 23.** The phrase *vayyeylekh beshalom* ('and he left in peace') now appears for the third time in three verses (21, 22, 23). This extraordinary triple repetition is the narrator's hammer blow: the reader cannot possibly miss that Abner's departure was peaceful, authorized, and protected. Whatever happens next cannot be attributed to David or to any legitimate process.
- 23.** The report to Joab is factual and neutral — the informants simply relay what happened. But the information itself is explosive to Joab: the killer of his brother Asahel was in Hebron, within reach, and the king let him walk away.
- 24.** Joab's opening *meh asita* ('what have you done?') is sharp and borders on insubordinate — a general questioning his king's judgment to his face. The verb *halokh* ('going, gone') with *vayyeylekh* intensifies the finality: Abner is truly gone, and Joab frames this as a strategic blunder rather than a diplomatic success.
- 24.** Joab does not mention Asahel, his dead brother, in this confrontation. His stated objection will be strategic (v25), not personal. Whether this restraint is calculated or genuine, the narrator leaves ambiguous — but the reader already knows that blood vengeance is the real engine driving Joab's fury.
- 25.** Joab frames Abner's visit as espionage: *lefatotekha* ('to deceive you, to seduce you') uses the *piel* of *patah*, which means to entice, to persuade with ulterior motives. The language is that of deception and manipulation. Joab's argument is that Abner came as a spy, not a defector.
- 25.** The phrase *motsa'akha umvo'akha* ('your going out and your coming in') is a military idiom for troop movements and strategic patterns. Joab speaks as a general assessing a security threat. Whether he believes his own argument or is constructing a pretext for personal vengeance, the text does not say — but the narrator has already made clear (through the triple *beshalom*) that David authorized Abner's visit and departure. Joab's characterization contradicts the narrator's framing.
- 26.** The statement *veDavid lo yada* ('and David did not know') is one of the most consequential editorial insertions in the chapter. The narrator explicitly exonerates David: whatever Joab is about to do, the king had no part in planning it. The verb *yada* ('to know') is used in its fullest sense — David was not informed, not complicit, and not aware.
- 26.** *Bor hasirah* ('the cistern of Sirah') identifies a specific location, likely a well or water collection point along the road north from Hebron. Abner had not traveled far — he was still within messenger range. The detail makes the treachery more vivid: Abner was practically still under Hebron's shadow when he was called back.
- 27.** The phrase *vayyattehu el tokh hasha'ar* ('he turned him aside into the interior of the gate') is chilling in its detail. The city gate complex was a public space — a place of justice, commerce, and legal proceedings. Joab chose this location deliberately: it was public enough to lure Abner without suspicion but contained recesses and chambers where the actual killing could happen semi-privately. The word *basheli* ('quietly, privately') confirms the deception: Joab pretended to want a confidential conversation.
- 27.** The word *chomesh* ('the fifth [rib], the abdomen') refers to the lower torso area. This is the same location where Abner himself struck Asahel in 2 Samuel 2:23, creating a grim symmetry — the avenger wounds the victim in the same place the victim once struck.
- 27.** The closing clause *bedam Asah-el achiv* ('because of the blood of Asahel his brother') provides Joab's motive. The narrator names it as blood vengeance (*dam*, 'blood'), connecting the killing to the death at Gibeon. However, Abner killed Asahel in battle — an act of war, not murder — which means Joab's vengeance may not meet the legal standard for justified blood redemption.
- 28.** David's declaration *naqi anokhi umamlakhti* ('I am clean, and my kingdom') uses *naqi* ('clean, innocent, free from guilt') — a juridical term declaring formal innocence. This is not merely a personal protest but a royal legal declaration intended to shield the entire kingdom from the consequences of bloodguilt. In the ancient Near East, unpunished murder polluted the land and its ruler; David must formally separate himself from the deed.
- 28.** The phrase *me'im YHWH ad olam* ('from before the LORD forever') invokes God as witness to his innocence — this is sworn testimony before the divine court, not just a political statement.
- 29.** David's curse is a five-fold imprecation — one of the most severe in the Hebrew Bible. Each element targets a different dimension of well-being: (1) *zav* — a person with a bodily discharge, rendering them ritually unclean and socially isolated; (2) *metsora* — a person with a serious skin disease (traditionally 'leprosy'), carrying both physical suffering and permanent ritual exclusion; (3) *machaziq bapelek* — 'one who grasps the spindle,'

meaning someone reduced to women's work (in the ancient context, a mark of humiliation for a warrior household); (4) *nofel bacherev* — 'one who falls by the sword,' meaning violent death in war; (5) *chasar lachem* — 'one lacking bread,' meaning poverty and hunger.

29. The verb *yachulu* ('let them whirl, let them fall') uses *chul*, which can mean to writhe, to dance, to whirl, or to fall upon. The curse is directed not just at Joab personally but at *kol beit aviyyv* ('all his father's house') — his entire lineage. David cannot execute Joab (the political cost would be too high, as he acknowledges in verse 39), but he can place him and his descendants under a prophetic curse.
30. This verse reveals that Abishai was complicit in the killing — it was not Joab acting alone. The narrator adds *bamilchamah* ('in the battle') as a pointed qualifier: Abner killed Asahel in combat, during a legitimate military engagement, not by treachery. The narrator thus undercuts the justification for blood vengeance even as he explains its motive. Abner's killing of Asahel was an act of war; Joab and Abishai's killing of Abner was an act of murder.
30. The verse functions as a narrative summary that steps back from the scene to provide the reader with the full causal chain connecting 2 Samuel 2 (the battle at Gibeon) to the present moment.
31. David commands Joab to mourn the man Joab killed. The bitter irony is deliberate and public — this is not private grief but a political demonstration. By forcing Joab to participate in the mourning rituals, David simultaneously honors Abner and humiliates Joab before the entire court.
31. The phrase *hammelekh David holekh acharei hamittah* ('King David walked behind the bier') places the king in the most prominent position of mourning. Walking behind the bier was the position of the chief mourner — typically a close family member. David assumes this role for a former enemy, making the strongest possible public statement of respect and grief.
32. The phrase *vayyissa hammelekh et qolo* ('the king lifted up his voice') signals public, audible weeping — not quiet tears but the open lamentation of a king who wants everyone to see and hear his grief. The verb *bakah* ('to weep') appears twice in this verse — first of David, then of all the people — showing that the king's grief drew the people into shared mourning.
32. Burial in Hebron itself — David's own capital — was an extraordinary honor for a man who had spent years fighting against David. This burial site declares publicly that David considered Abner a man worthy of honor, not an enemy.
33. The verb *vayyeqonen* ('he lamented') indicates a formal *qinah* — a structured poetic lament, the same genre David used for Saul and Jonathan in 2 Samuel 1:19-27. This is not spontaneous weeping but composed funeral poetry, which in the ancient Israelite context was a high literary and social act.
33. The word *naval* ('fool') does not mean merely 'silly' or 'ignorant.' In Hebrew, *naval* denotes a person who is morally senseless, socially degraded, someone who acts in violation of all norms — the same word used as the name of Abigail's brutish husband in 1 Samuel 25. David's rhetorical question insists that Abner was not a *naval* — his death was not the consequence of his own foolishness or wickedness. He deserved better.
34. The poetry's structure is devastating in its logic. David addresses Abner directly in death: 'Your hands were not bound' — you were not a prisoner. 'Your feet were not placed in bronze chains' — you were not condemned. The implication is clear: Abner was a free man, not a criminal being executed. He had no reason to suspect danger. The death was therefore not justice but ambush.
34. The phrase *kifnol lifnei venei avlah nafalta* ('as one falls before sons of wickedness, you fell') names the killers without naming them. *Benei avlah* ('sons of wickedness, sons of injustice') is a Hebrew idiom for people characterized by *avlah* — moral crookedness, perversion of justice. David calls Joab and Abishai 'sons of wickedness' publicly, through the veil of poetic language, at Abner's own graveside.
34. The phrase *vayyosifu khol ha'am livkot alav* ('and all the people continued to weep over him') shows the lament's effect: David's words renewed the people's grief. The king's poetry did its political and emotional work — the nation mourned, and David's hands were publicly clean.
35. The verb *lehaverot* ('to cause to eat bread, to console with food') is the *hiphil* of *barah*, a technical term for the mourning meal — the food brought to the bereaved to break their fast of grief. It was customary for the community to provide food to mourners. David refuses this customary comfort with a self-imprecation oath (the same formula Abner used in verse 9), declaring he will not eat until sunset.
35. David's public fast accomplishes two things simultaneously: it expresses genuine grief (or at least performs it convincingly) and it demonstrates to all Israel that the king is deeply troubled by Abner's death. In a political environment where David could easily be suspected of ordering the assassination, this visible mourning is essential to his legitimacy.
36. The verb *hikkiru* ('they recognized, they took notice') is the *hiphil* of *nakar*, meaning to perceive, to recognize, to discern. The people did not merely observe David's mourning — they recognized its significance and judged it genuine. The narrator's summary *vayyitav be'eineihem* ('and it was good in their eyes') is the language of public approval.
36. The sweeping statement 'everything the king did was good in the eyes of all the people' is both a narrative assessment and a political one. David's handling of the Abner crisis — the public mourning, the lament, the fast, the curse on Joab — was a masterclass in crisis management, whether motivated by genuine feeling, political calculation, or both.
37. The verb *vayyede'u* ('and they knew') — from *yada* — indicates settled conviction, not mere suspicion. All Israel reached the conclusion that David was not behind the assassination. The phrase *lo haytah mehammelekh* ('it was not from the king') is a formal verdict of royal innocence, declared not by a court but by the consensus of the people.

37. The narrator distinguishes 'all the people' (those present in Hebron) from 'all Israel' (the broader nation, including the northern tribes). Word of David's public mourning traveled beyond Hebron, and the verdict reached the very people Abner had been trying to deliver to David. The political damage that could have been catastrophic was contained.
38. The words sar vegadol ('commander and great man') are David's assessment of Abner's stature. Sar means 'prince, commander, chief' — a military and political title — while gadol ('great') adds personal magnitude. David is not speaking of Abner as an enemy defeated but as a peer lost. The rhetorical question format (halo ted'u, 'do you not know?') implies that his servants should already understand the gravity of the loss.
38. This verse, spoken to David's own servants (avadav), represents a more private moment than the public mourning — David is explaining to his inner circle why the loss matters, or perhaps processing his own frustration that he could not prevent it.
39. The adjective rakh ('soft, tender, vulnerable') is a startling self-description for a king. David is admitting that despite his anointing (mashiach melekh, 'anointed king'), he lacks the power to punish Joab. The sons of Zeruiah — Joab, Abishai, and Asahel (now dead) — are David's own nephews through his sister, making this a family conflict as well as a political one. The adjective qashim ('hard, fierce, harsh') applied to them contrasts with David's rakh: they are hard where he is soft, ruthless where he is constrained.
39. David's final words yeshalleem YHWH le'oseh hara'ah kera'ato ('may the LORD repay the evildoer according to his evil') transfer justice to God because David cannot execute it himself. This is not pious resignation but political realism: executing Joab immediately would risk civil war within his own camp. David defers the reckoning — but he does not forget it. On his deathbed (1 Kings 2:5-6), David will instruct Solomon to settle the account.
39. The phrase benei tseruyah ('sons of Zeruiah') identifies Joab and Abishai through their mother rather than their father — an unusual patronymic convention that may reflect Zeruiah's prominence as David's sister or the obscurity of their father. This maternal identification becomes a recurring formula throughout the David narrative whenever the brothers act with excessive violence.

4

Summary: *When Saul's son Ish-bosheth learns that Abner is dead, his nerve collapses and all Israel is thrown into confusion. Two of his own military captains, Recab and Baanah, sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, enter his house during the midday heat, murder him in his bed, behead him, and carry his head overnight to David at Hebron, expecting a reward. David responds not with gratitude but with outrage, invoking the precedent of the Amalekite who claimed to have killed Saul: if David executed that man for striking down the LORD's anointed, how much more will he punish those who murdered an innocent man in his own house. David orders the assassins killed, their hands and feet cut off, and their bodies displayed at the pool of Hebron. Ish-bosheth's head is buried in Abner's tomb.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reveals David's extraordinary and consistent theological principle: he will not profit from the murder of his political rivals, even when those murders serve his strategic interests. Ish-bosheth's death removes the last obstacle to David's kingship over all Israel, yet David treats the act not as providence but as an abomination. His reasoning is covenantal rather than political: the blood of an innocent man (ish tsaddiq) demands an accounting. David insists that the LORD Himself is the one who redeems his life from every adversity -- human assassination of his enemies is an affront to divine sovereignty, not an aid to it. The narrator presents David as a king who refuses to build his throne on blood-guilt, in direct contrast to the kind of king Israel will later endure.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of verse 6 presents a significant textual difficulty. The Masoretic Text reads awkwardly, with the assassins coming 'to the middle of the house, fetching wheat,' which seems to describe a mundane errand as cover for the assassination. The Septuagint (LXX) offers a different version in which the doorkeeper of the house falls asleep while cleaning wheat, allowing Recab and Baanah to slip past undetected. We follow the MT while noting the LXX variant. The phrase ish tsaddiq ('an innocent/righteous man') applied to Ish-bosheth in verse 11 is striking -- the narrator and David do not call him a great king or a worthy ruler, only an innocent man who did not deserve to be murdered in his bed. This minimal commendation is itself significant: righteousness before David means at minimum not deserving violent death, regardless of political competence.*

Connections: *David's response directly parallels his treatment of the Amalekite messenger in 2 Samuel 1:14-16, creating a deliberate pattern: those who kill the LORD's anointed or their house, expecting David's favor, receive death instead. The burial of Ish-bosheth's head in the tomb of Abner (v. 12) ties together the two assassinations of chapters 3-4 under a single theme of unjust bloodshed that David publicly repudiates. The Mephibosheth notice in verse 4 -- seemingly a parenthetical about Jonathan's crippled son -- anticipates David's covenant loyalty in*

chapter 9, where he will seek out Mephibosheth to honor his oath to Jonathan. With Ish-bosheth dead, Mephibosheth becomes the sole surviving male of Saul's line, making David's later kindness to him all the more politically significant. The blood-guilt theology David articulates here (requiring the blood of the murderers from their own hand) echoes Genesis 9:5-6, where God establishes the principle that the blood of the innocent demands a reckoning.

¹When Saul's son heard that Abner had died in Hebron, his hands went slack, and all Israel was thrown into panic. ²Now Saul's son had two men who were captains of raiding bands. One was named Baanah and the other Recab -- sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, from the tribe of Benjamin. (Beeroth is counted as part of Benjamin's territory, ³though the Beerothites had fled to Gittaim and have lived there as resident aliens to this day.) ⁴Now Jonathan son of Saul had a son who was crippled in both feet. He was five years old when the report about Saul and Jonathan arrived from Jezreel. His nurse picked him up and fled, but in her frantic rush to escape, he fell and was permanently injured. His name was Mephibosheth. ⁵The sons of Rimmon the Beerothite -- Recab and Baanah -- set out and arrived at the house of Ish-bosheth during the heat of the day. He was lying down for his midday rest. ⁶They entered the interior of the house as if collecting wheat, and they stabbed him in the stomach. Then Recab and his brother Baanah escaped. ⁷They entered the house while he lay on his bed in his sleeping chamber, struck him down, killed him, and cut off his head. They took his head and traveled the Arabah road all night long. ⁸They brought the head of Ish-bosheth to David at Hebron and said to the king, "Here is the head of Ish-bosheth son of Saul, your enemy, who sought your life. The LORD has granted my lord the king vengeance this day against Saul and his offspring." ⁹David answered Recab and his brother Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite. He said to them, "As the LORD lives -- the one who has redeemed my life from every adversity -- ¹⁰when a man reported to me, 'Saul is dead!' -- thinking he was bringing good news -- I seized him and executed him at Ziklag. That was the reward I gave him for his news. ¹¹How much more, then, when wicked men have murdered an innocent man in his own house, on his own bed! Will I not now demand his blood from your hands and purge you from the earth?" ¹²David gave the order to his soldiers, and they killed them, cut off their hands and feet, and hung their bodies beside the pool in Hebron. They took the head of Ish-bosheth and buried it in the tomb of Abner in Hebron.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator refers to Ish-bosheth only as ben-Sha'ul ('Saul's son'), not by his own name -- a subtle diminishment that reinforces his identity as an appendage to his father's legacy rather than a ruler in his own right. His hands 'going slack' (rafu) uses the same root as raphah ('to let go, to sink, to become weak'), conveying both physical collapse and the loss of grip on power.
1. The verb nivhalu ('were terrified/confused') from the root bahal describes sudden, overwhelming alarm -- not slow worry but the immediate shock of realizing the center cannot hold. Without Abner, there is no army, no strategy, and no credible resistance to David's expanding authority.
2. The term sarei-gedudim ('captains of raiding bands') identifies Recab and Baanah not as high-ranking army officers but as leaders of guerrilla-style units -- small, mobile strike forces. The word gedud ('raiding band, troop') appears frequently in the David narratives for irregular military units that operate semi-independently. These are men accustomed to quick, violent action.
2. The parenthetical about Beeroth belonging to Benjamin is geographically and legally significant. Beeroth was one of the four Gibeonite cities that had made a treaty with Israel (Joshua 9:17). The narrator pauses to clarify the tribal affiliation because it matters: these men are Benjaminites -- Saul's own tribesmen are about to murder Saul's own son. The betrayal comes from within.
3. The flight of the Beerothites to Gittaim and their status as garim ('resident aliens, sojourners') hints at a displacement event -- possibly connected to Saul's violence against the Gibeonites mentioned in 2 Samuel 21:1-2. The Beerothites, as Gibeonites under treaty protection, may have fled when Saul broke that treaty. If so, Recab and Baanah are men with a personal grievance against Saul's house, adding a motive of revenge to their opportunism.
3. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') is a narrator's aside that anchors the text in a later perspective -- the author writes from a time when the Beerothite community at Gittaim is a known, ongoing reality. This is one of several 'to this day' markers in Samuel that point to a compositional distance between the events and their recording.
4. The phrase nekheh raglayim ('struck in the feet, crippled in both legs') uses the same root nakah ('to strike') that appears throughout the David narratives for violent injury. Mephibosheth's disability is described as the result of a fall -- vayyippol vayyippaseach ('he fell and became lame') -- where the verb pasach means to limp or be lame. His condition was permanent and would have disqualified him from kingship in the ancient Near Eastern world, where physical wholeness was expected of rulers.

4. The name Mephibosheth (mephi-boshet) is likely an altered form of the original Merib-baal ('contender of Baal' or 'Baal contends'), changed by later scribes who replaced the theophoric element ba'al ('lord/master') with boshet ('shame'). This scribal practice reflects the later disgust with Baal worship and is applied to several Saulide names in the text.
5. The timing is precise and damning: kechom ha-yom ('during the heat of the day') places the assassination at the hottest part of the afternoon, when a king would be resting and his guard at its most lax. The phrase mishkav ha-tsohorayim ('the lying-down of noon') is the midday rest -- a standard practice in the ancient Near East during the brutal afternoon heat. Ish-bosheth is at his most vulnerable: asleep, in his own bedroom, in his own capital.
5. The narrator calls him Ish-boshet ('man of shame'), using the altered form of what was likely Ish-baal ('man of Baal' or 'man of the lord'). The name change, whether by the narrator or later scribes, casts a shadow over his entire reign -- he is remembered not as 'the lord's man' but as 'the man of shame.'
6. The Masoretic Text reads loqechei chittim ('fetchers of wheat'), suggesting the assassins used a mundane errand as their pretext for entering the house. Military captains collecting grain rations from the royal storehouse would not have aroused suspicion. The Septuagint offers a different version in which the doorkeeper falls asleep while cleaning wheat, and the brothers slip past -- a variant that smooths the narrative but may reflect an independent textual tradition. We follow the MT.
6. The phrase vayyakkuhu el-ha-chomesh ('they struck him to the fifth [rib]') describes a fatal blow to the abdomen -- the chomesh is the belly or the area of the fifth rib, a vulnerable spot targeted in close combat. This is the same method by which Abner killed Asahel (2:23) and Joab killed Abner (3:27) -- the belly-stab is becoming a grim motif in these chapters, a signature of treacherous killing.
7. The phrase ba-chadar mishkavo ('in his sleeping chamber') emphasizes the intimacy and violation of the murder -- this is the innermost room of the house, the place of greatest privacy and vulnerability. To kill a man in his bed, in his own room, during sleep, compounds the treachery beyond ordinary assassination.
7. The verb vayyasiru ('they removed') from the root sur ('to turn aside, remove') is used for the beheading -- a clinical word for a brutal act. The Arabah route (derekh ha-Aravah) runs through the Jordan Valley, allowing them to travel under cover of darkness through sparsely populated terrain. The phrase kol-ha-laylah ('all the night') emphasizes the urgency and premeditation: they had planned the escape route in advance.
8. The assassins' speech is theologically loaded: vayyitten YHWH la-adoni ha-melekh neqamot ('the LORD has given my lord the king vengeance'). The word neqamot (plural of neqamah, 'vengeance, retribution') frames the murder as divine payback. They assume David operates by the same logic they do -- that political advantage is proof of divine approval. This is precisely the theology David will reject.
8. The phrase mi-Sha'ul u-mi-zar'o ('from Saul and from his seed/offspring') reveals the assassins' view that the entire Saulide line is David's enemy. They present the extinction of Saul's house as a service to David. But David's covenant with Jonathan (1 Samuel 20:14-17) committed him to protecting Saul's descendants -- the assassins have struck at the very people David swore to preserve.
9. David opens with an oath formula: chay-YHWH ('as the LORD lives') -- the most solemn form of declaration available, invoking God as witness. The relative clause asher-padah et-nafshi mikkol-tsarah ('who redeemed my life from every adversity') is David's counter-theology: it is God alone who delivers him, not human assassins. The verb padah ('to redeem, ransom, rescue') is covenant language -- God buys back, recovers, and liberates. David's point is that God's redemption operates through legitimate means, not through the murder of sleeping men.
9. The word tsarah ('distress, adversity, trouble') encompasses everything David has endured -- Saul's pursuit, exile, war, and political danger. David credits God for bringing him through all of it. The implicit argument: if God has delivered me from every crisis so far without my needing to murder rivals, why would God now require the assassination of Ish-bosheth?
10. The phrase vehu-hayah khimvasser be'einav ('he was like a bearer of good news in his own eyes') exposes the Amalekite's fatal miscalculation: he assumed David's perspective matched his own. The verb achar ('to seize') followed by vahargahu ('and I killed him') is blunt and declarative -- David does not soften the account. The location be-Tsiqlag ('in Ziklag') grounds the precedent in a specific, known event.
10. The clause asher letitti-lo besorah ('which was my giving him his reward for news') is bitterly ironic. The word besorah means 'good news' or 'reward for bringing news' -- David redefines the reward: execution. The parallel to the present situation is unmistakable, and David is building toward the sentence he will pronounce in verses 11-12.
11. The phrase ish tsaddiq ('a righteous/innocent man') applied to Ish-bosheth is a legal designation rather than a character endorsement. David is not calling Ish-bosheth a great or good king; he is declaring that Ish-bosheth did not deserve to be murdered. The word tsaddiq in a judicial context means 'not guilty of a crime warranting death' -- the man was innocent of any offense that would justify assassination.
11. The verb bi'arti ('I will purge, burn away, remove') from the root ba'ar carries overtones of ritual cleansing -- the same word used in Deuteronomy's formula u-vi'arta ha-ra miqirbekha ('you shall purge the evil from your midst,' Deuteronomy 13:5, 17:7, 19:19). David frames the execution not as personal revenge but as judicial purification of the land from blood-guilt. The blood of the innocent pollutes the earth and must be answered.
12. The term ne'arim ('young men, soldiers') refers to David's personal military retainers -- the same group that has served him since his outlaw days. The mutilation of hands and feet (vayqatsetu et-yedeihem ve-et-ragleihem) is an ancient Near Eastern practice of public justice: the offending limbs are severed and the bodies displayed as a deterrent. The pool of Hebron (ha-berekhah be-Chevron) was the central water source and public gathering place -- equivalent to displaying the bodies in the town square.

12. The burial of Ish-bosheth's head in Abner's tomb (qever Avner) is a significant act of political reconciliation. David unites in death the two most important northern leaders, both of whom were killed by treachery rather than by David's hand. The tomb becomes a monument to David's consistent position: he honors the house of Saul even as it passes from power. This gesture would have been noted by northern leaders considering whether to accept David as king over all Israel -- the event that follows immediately in chapter 5.

5

Summary: *All the tribes of Israel come to David at Hebron, acknowledge him as their rightful shepherd and commander, and formally anoint him king over a united Israel. David captures the Jebusite stronghold of Zion, renames it the City of David, and establishes it as his capital. Hiram of Tyre sends materials and craftsmen to build David a palace, confirming his international legitimacy. David takes additional wives and concubines, and a list of sons born in Jerusalem is recorded. The Philistines twice challenge David's new kingship, and twice the LORD grants him decisive victory -- first at Baal-perazim and then in the Valley of Rephaim, where God Himself leads the assault through the sound of marching in the treetops.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter records the political and theological climax of David's long ascent: the anointing that was private in 1 Samuel 16 is now ratified publicly by every tribe. The Hebrew makes the transition stark -- the same nation that followed Saul and then fractured between Ish-bosheth and David now speaks with a single voice: 'We are your bone and your flesh.' The capture of Jerusalem is equally significant. The Jebusites taunt David that even the blind and the lame could defend their fortress, yet David takes it anyway, seizing a city that belonged to no Israelite tribe and making it the capital of all twelve -- a stroke of political genius that avoids tribal jealousy. The Philistine battles at the end reveal a David utterly unlike Saul: he inquires of the LORD before each engagement and obeys precisely, even when God gives different instructions for the second battle. The sound of marching in the balsam trees (v. 24) is one of Scripture's most vivid images of divine warfare -- God's invisible army moving ahead of David's visible one.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 contains one of the most debated passages in Samuel. The Jebusites' taunt about 'the blind and the lame' and David's apparent counter-statement that 'the blind and the lame shall not come into the house' has generated centuries of interpretive difficulty. Does David issue a permanent ban on disabled persons from the temple? Is this a proverb about the Jebusites? The Hebrew is compressed and likely idiomatic. We render the exchange as a military taunt and counter-taunt about the Jebusites' confidence, not as legislation about disabled persons. The phrase in verse 8 about the tsinnor ('water shaft' or 'gutter') through which the city was taken is also notoriously obscure -- the word occurs only here and in Psalm 42:8, and its exact meaning remains uncertain. We render it as 'water channel' with a note on the ambiguity. Verse 2 uses nagid ('prince, designated ruler') rather than melek ('king'), preserving the theological distinction that God designates and the people confirm.*

Connections: *David's anointing at Hebron fulfills Samuel's anointing in 1 Samuel 16:13, completing a journey that spans nearly twenty chapters. The covenant (berit) David cuts with the elders in verse 3 echoes the covenant-making pattern established at Sinai (Exodus 24:7-8) and renewed by Joshua (Joshua 24:25) -- Israel's leadership transitions are marked by formal covenant ratification. The capture of Zion anticipates the Ark's arrival in chapter 6 and Solomon's temple in 1 Kings 6 -- David is preparing the stage for God's permanent dwelling. The Philistine defeats reverse the disaster of 1 Samuel 4 and 31; the nation that killed Saul on Gilboa is now routed by Saul's successor. God's instruction to circle behind the Philistines and wait for the sound in the trees (v. 24) echoes the holy-war pattern where the LORD fights while Israel follows (Exodus 14:14, Joshua 5:13-15, Judges 4:14).*

1All the tribes of Israel came to David at Hebron and declared, "We are your bone and your flesh." 2Even before, when Saul was king over us, you were the one leading Israel out and bringing them back. And the LORD said to you, 'You will shepherd My people Israel, and you will be leader over Israel.' 3All the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and King David cut a covenant with them at Hebron before the LORD. Then they anointed David king over all Israel. 4David was thirty years old when he became king, and he reigned for forty years. 5He ruled over Judah from Hebron for seven years and six months, then ruled from Jerusalem over all Israel and Judah for thirty-three years. 6The king and his men marched to Jerusalem

against the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land. They said to David, "You will never get in here -- even the blind and the lame could turn you back!" They were certain David could not enter. ⁷But David captured the stronghold of Zion -- that is, the City of David. ⁸David said on that day, "Whoever strikes down the Jebusites -- let him reach the water channel! -- and the lame and the blind whom David despises..." For this reason people say, "The blind and the lame will not enter the house." ⁹David settled in the stronghold and named it the City of David. Then David built up the surrounding area from the Millo inward. ¹⁰David continued to grow greater, and the LORD God of Armies was with him. ¹¹Hiram king of Tyre sent envoys to David, along with cedar timber, woodworkers, and stonemasons, and they built David a palace. ¹²David recognized that the LORD had established him as king over Israel and had elevated his kingdom for the sake of His people Israel. ¹³David took more concubines and wives from Jerusalem after he came from Hebron, and more sons and daughters were born to David. ¹⁴These are the names of those born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon, ¹⁵Ibhar, Elishua, Nepheg, and Japhia, ¹⁶Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet. ¹⁷When the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over Israel, all the Philistines came up to find him. David heard of it and went down to the stronghold. ¹⁸The Philistines came and spread out across the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁹David inquired of the LORD, "Should I go up against the Philistines? Will You give them into my hand?" The LORD said to David, "Go up, for I will certainly give the Philistines into your hand." ²⁰David came to Baal-perazim and defeated them there. David said, "The LORD has burst through my enemies before me like a flood breaking through!" That is why he named that place Baal-perazim. ²¹The Philistines abandoned their idols there, and David and his men carried them away. ²²The Philistines came up yet again and spread out across the Valley of Rephaim. ²³David inquired of the LORD, and He said, "Do not go straight up. Circle around behind them and come at them from in front of the balsam trees." ²⁴When you hear the sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees, then move decisively, for at that moment the LORD will have gone out ahead of you to strike the Philistine camp. ²⁵David did exactly as the LORD commanded him, and he struck down the Philistines from Geba all the way to Gezer.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The tribes come to David, not the reverse. The verb *vayyavo'u* ('they came') emphasizes that this is a voluntary convergence -- David does not summon or coerce. Hebron, David's capital during the seven-year civil period, serves as the meeting place. The declaration *hinnenu* ('here we are') carries overtones of covenant readiness, the same word Abraham uses in response to God (Genesis 22:1).
2. The phrase *gam temol gam shilshom* ('also yesterday also the day before') is idiomatic for 'in the past, previously.' It acknowledges David's leadership during Saul's reign without directly condemning Saul -- a diplomatically careful statement.
2. The verb *tir'eh* ('you will shepherd') frames kingship as pastoral care, not domination. Israel's king is a shepherd first -- responsible for feeding, protecting, and guiding the flock. This metaphor governs the entire Davidic theology and reaches forward to Ezekiel 34 and the messianic 'good shepherd' tradition.
3. The sequence matters: covenant first, then anointing. David binds himself to obligations toward the people before receiving the oil of kingship. This pattern distinguishes Israelite monarchy from ancient Near Eastern despotism -- the king serves under covenant, not above it.
3. This is David's third anointing: first by Samuel privately (1 Samuel 16:13), then by the men of Judah (2 Samuel 2:4), and now by all Israel. Each anointing expands the scope of his authority -- from divine designation to tribal recognition to national confirmation.
4. This summary formula is characteristic of the regnal records embedded in Samuel-Kings. Thirty was the age of full maturity in ancient Israel -- the age at which Levites entered full service (Numbers 4:3). Forty years is the conventional number for a complete generation of leadership (Moses, the wilderness period, Eli, Solomon). Whether precisely literal or typological, it signals that David's reign was complete and full.
5. The precision of 'seven years and six months' for the Hebron period contrasts with the round number of thirty-three for Jerusalem, suggesting the narrator drew on different record sources. The distinction between reigning 'over Judah' and 'over all Israel and Judah' marks the political transformation: David's move to Jerusalem coincides with his authority expanding from one tribe to the entire nation.
6. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The phrase *ki im hshirekha ha'ivrim vehapiskhim* is compressed and likely idiomatic. The meaning appears to be a scornful challenge: you cannot enter unless you first remove even the blind and lame (who are sufficient to defend it). The Jebusites are not describing their actual garrison but mocking David's capacity to breach their walls.
6. Jerusalem (Yerushalaim) was strategically positioned between the tribal territories of Judah and Benjamin, belonging fully to neither. By capturing a non-Israelite city, David avoided the political problem of ruling from any single tribe's territory -- a masterstroke that would make Jerusalem a truly national capital.

7. The word *metsudah* ('stronghold, fortress') comes from the root *ts-w-d*, meaning 'to hunt, to capture' -- the stronghold is named for its capacity to trap and defend. That David captures the capture-proof fortress is embedded in the word itself.
7. The identification *hi ir David* ('that is the City of David') is an editorial note that fixes the name for all subsequent readers. The City of David is not the entirety of later Jerusalem but specifically the original Jebusite citadel on the Ophel ridge -- a narrow spur south of what would become the Temple Mount.
8. The *tsinnor* is the crux of this verse. The word appears only here and in Psalm 42:8 (where it means 'waterfall' or 'water channel'). Most scholars connect it to Warren's Shaft or a similar underground water access point in ancient Jerusalem. The strategy would involve soldiers ascending through the water system to bypass the walls -- a commando-style infiltration that renders the 'impregnable' fortress vulnerable from within.
8. The verse's grammar is broken or compressed, likely because the narrator is summarizing a well-known military tradition in shorthand. The 1 Chronicles 11:6 parallel clarifies that Joab was the first to go up and thereby earned the position of commander -- a detail this verse implies but does not state.
9. The verb *vayyeshev* ('he settled, dwelt') marks the transition from conquest to residency -- David does not merely capture the citadel but makes it his permanent home. The renaming is an act of political claim: the anonymous Jebusite fortress becomes *ir David*, permanently associated with the new dynasty.
9. The *Millo* (from the root *m-l-l*, 'to fill') refers to a terraced fill structure that expanded the usable area of Jerusalem's narrow ridge. Archaeological work on the southeastern hill has uncovered massive stone terracing that may correspond to this *Millo*. Building 'from the *Millo* inward' suggests David constructed or reinforced the outer terracing and then developed the interior -- a program of urban expansion that transformed a captured citadel into a royal capital.
10. The title *YHWH Elohei Tseva'ot* ('the LORD God of Armies/Hosts') appears here to frame David's expanding power as divine, not merely political. The 'armies' may refer to Israel's forces, the angelic hosts, or the cosmic powers under God's command -- likely all three simultaneously. We render *Tseva'ot* as 'Armies' rather than the traditional 'hosts' to preserve the military force of the title.
11. Hiram's initiative is significant: a foreign king sends materials and skilled labor to David unsolicited. This is diplomatic recognition from the most powerful commercial city on the Mediterranean coast. Tyre's cedar wood was the premier building material of the ancient Near East -- its use signaled wealth, permanence, and royal status. The construction of a *bayit* ('house, palace') in Jerusalem transforms David from a military occupier into an established monarch with international standing.
11. The word *bayit* ('house') will become theologically loaded in chapter 7, where God promises to build David a 'house' (dynasty) in return. Here the physical house foreshadows the dynastic house -- David builds a palace, and God will build a lineage.
12. The verb *hekino* ('He established him') from the root *k-w-n* is the same root used in God's promise to establish David's throne forever (2 Samuel 7:12-16). The narrator anticipates the dynastic covenant by using its key vocabulary here.
12. The phrase *ba'avur ammo Yisrael* ('for the sake of His people Israel') is the theological corrective to royal self-aggrandizement. David's kingdom is instrumental -- it exists as a means to bless Israel, not as an end in itself.
13. The narrator records this without explicit commentary, but the placement immediately after David's recognition that his kingdom serves God's people creates an implicit tension. Multiple marriages were standard practice for ancient Near Eastern kings -- they cemented political alliances and demonstrated royal status. Yet Deuteronomy 17:17 warns that the king 'must not acquire many wives for himself, or his heart will turn away.' The seeds of future crisis (Amnon, Absalom, Adonijah) are planted in this single verse.
13. The distinction between *nashim* ('wives') and *pilagshim* ('concubines') reflects legal status: wives had full marriage contracts and inheritance rights for their children, while concubines had a recognized but subordinate position.
14. The list of sons born in Jerusalem signals dynastic establishment. Of these four, Nathan and Solomon are the most significant for later history. Solomon will succeed David as king, and Nathan appears in the genealogy of Jesus in Luke 3:31. The names themselves carry meaning: *Shammua* ('heard'), *Shobab* ('returned' or possibly 'rebellious'), *Nathan* ('He gave'), and *Shelomoh/Solomon* ('his peace, his wholeness').
15. The names continue the dynastic register. *Ibhar* ('He chooses'), *Elishua* ('My God is salvation'), *Nepheg* ('sprout'), and *Japhia* ('He shines'). Several of these names are theophoric -- containing embedded references to God's character and action. The naming of royal sons was itself a theological statement: each name proclaimed something about the God who gave the king his dynasty.
16. The final three sons all bear names beginning with *El-* ('God'): *Elishama* ('My God has heard'), *Eliada* ('God knows'), and *Eliphelet* ('My God is deliverance'). The concentration of theophoric names in David's household reflects the theological conviction that every child is a gift from God and every name is a confession of faith. The parallel list in 1 Chronicles 3:5-8 includes additional names, suggesting that this list may be selective rather than exhaustive.
17. The Philistines had tolerated David as a Judahite vassal king ruling from Hebron -- a divided Israel served their interests. A united Israel under David was a different matter entirely, demanding immediate military response. The phrase *kol Pelishtim* ('all the Philistines') indicates a full military mobilization, not a raiding party.
18. The verb *vayyinaleshu* ('they spread out, deployed') is military language describing an army taking up battle positions across a wide area. The Valley of Rephaim (*emeq Refa'im*) lies southwest of Jerusalem, providing a natural invasion corridor toward the new capital. The name Rephaim carries

overtones of the ancient giant warriors (cf. Genesis 15:20, Deuteronomy 2:11) and of the shades of the dead -- an ominous valley for a decisive confrontation.

18. The Philistines' choice of terrain is strategic: by occupying the valley between their territory and Jerusalem, they threaten to cut David off from Judah and reverse his consolidation of power.
19. The inquiry was likely made through the priestly ephod, using the Urim and Thummim (cf. 1 Samuel 23:9-12, 30:7-8). David's two questions -- 'Should I go up?' and 'Will You give them to me?' -- seek both tactical permission and theological assurance. God answers both with a single response: go, and I will give.
19. The infinitive absolute construction *naton etten* ('giving I will give') expresses certainty and emphasis. God's promise is not conditional or tentative -- it is guaranteed.
20. The imagery of flooding water (*perets mayim*) would have been powerfully concrete in the Judean landscape, where flash floods in dry wadis could obliterate everything in their path. David compares God's assault on the Philistines to a flash flood -- sudden, total, and irresistible.
20. The name Ba'al Peratsim is provocative: ba'al ('master, lord') was the chief Canaanite deity, but David uses it as a common noun meaning 'master, possessor.' The LORD is the true Ba'al -- the true Master -- of the breakthrough. There may be deliberate theological polemic in this naming.
21. The MT reads *vayyissa'em* ('they carried them away'), while the parallel in 1 Chronicles 14:12 reads *vayyisarefu ba'esh* ('they burned them with fire'), following the command of Deuteronomy 7:5, 25. The Chronicles version reflects the Torah's mandate to destroy captured idols. We follow the MT of Samuel, which simply records removal. Both traditions agree on the essential point: the Philistine gods were powerless.
22. The Philistines' return to the same valley demonstrates both their determination and their failure to learn. The verb *vayyisufu* ('they did again, they continued') shows persistence -- a single defeat did not break their resolve. They deploy in the same location, expecting perhaps a different outcome. But this time God will give David a completely different strategy, demonstrating that the LORD is not bound to a single method and that David must inquire fresh each time.
23. The *bekha'im* (plural of *bakha*, possibly related to *bakhah*, 'to weep') are usually identified as balsam trees, which exude a resinous sap that 'weeps' from the bark. Some scholars connect the name to the 'Valley of Baca' in Psalm 84:7. The exact species is uncertain, but the trees served as a geographic marker and would play a crucial role in the next verse.
23. The verb *hasev* ('circle around') is a military maneuver term -- David is to execute a flanking movement, coming at the Philistines from behind rather than meeting them head-on. This requires discipline and trust: the army must resist the instinct to charge and instead execute a patient encirclement.
24. The *qol tse'adah* *berashei habekha'im* ('sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees') has fascinated interpreters for millennia. The word *tse'adah* means 'a step, a marching pace' -- it is the sound of feet, not wind. The narrator presents this as the audible evidence of God's heavenly army deploying through the forest canopy. Whether understood as a supernatural phenomenon or as God using the sound of wind as a tactical signal, the theological point is the same: God fights ahead of David.
24. The verb *techarats* (from the root *ch-r-ts*, 'to be sharp, to decide, to act decisively') appears only here and in a few other places. It conveys urgency and sharpness -- the moment the sound comes, David must strike without delay.
25. The phrase *ka'asher tsivvahu YHWH* ('just as the LORD commanded him') is the narrator's final verdict on David's military conduct: complete obedience. This stands in sharp contrast to Saul, who repeatedly modified or ignored divine commands (1 Samuel 13:8-14, 15:1-23). The theological point is clear: obedience to God's specific instructions, even unconventional ones, produces victory.
25. Geba (or Gibeon, as some manuscripts and the LXX read) was a Benjaminite town north of Jerusalem. Gezer was a major Canaanite city on the western edge of the Shephelah, guarding the approach to the coastal plain. A rout extending from Geba to Gezer covers roughly twenty miles of pursuit -- the Philistine army was completely shattered.

6

Summary: David gathers thirty thousand chosen men to bring the Ark of God from Baalah of Judah to Jerusalem. The Ark is placed on a new cart driven from the house of Abinadab, with Uzzah and Ahio guiding it. When the oxen stumble, Uzzah reaches out and steadies the Ark, and God strikes him dead on the spot. David, shaken with anger and fear, diverts the Ark to the house of Obed-edom the Gittite, where it remains three months and brings blessing. Hearing of that blessing, David returns to bring the Ark into Jerusalem with sacrifices every six steps, dancing before the LORD in a linen ephod with abandon. His wife Michal watches from a window and despises him. David installs the Ark in a tent, offers burnt offerings and peace offerings, blesses the people, and distributes food to every person. When he returns home, Michal confronts him for exposing himself before servant girls. David declares he was dancing before the LORD who chose him over Saul's house, and Michal remains childless to the day of her death.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter stages one of the Hebrew Bible's sharpest theological collisions: the holiness of God versus the enthusiasm of his worshipers. Uzzah's death is not a punishment for malice but for presumption — he treated the Ark as an object that needed human rescue rather than as the throne-seat of the living God. The same chapter that records sudden death for touching the Ark also records David's ecstatic, half-naked dancing before it. The difference is not proximity but posture: Uzzah reached for the Ark as if God needed help; David threw off his royal dignity as if God deserved everything. Michal's contempt for David's worship becomes a lens through which the narrative examines what it costs to worship without self-consciousness — and what it costs to withhold that worship. Her barrenness is not an arbitrary curse but a narrative verdict: the house of Saul, which clung to dignity over devotion, produces no heir.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 2 presents a textual difficulty: the Masoretic Text reads 'from Baalei Judah' (mibba'alei Yehudah), while the parallel in 1 Chronicles 13:6 identifies the location as Baalah, which is Kiriath-jearim. The name itself is theologically charged — ba'al can mean 'lord, master, owner' and is also the name of the Canaanite deity. Some manuscripts read 'from Baale-judah' as a place name; others treat it as 'from the lords/citizens of Judah.' The cause of Uzzah's death (v6-7) is described differently in the parallel account: here the MT reads ki shalach yado ('because he reached out his hand') while Chronicles specifies he touched the Ark. The word shegal in verse 7 (rendered 'error' or 'irreverence') is a hapax legomenon whose exact meaning is debated — proposals include 'rashness,' 'stumbling,' and 'irreverence.' David's ephod (v14) raises the question of whether a non-priest could legitimately wear priestly garments, and Michal's accusation about David 'uncovering himself' (v20) may imply the ephod was the only garment he wore.*

Connections: *This chapter completes the Ark's journey that began in 1 Samuel 4-6. The Ark left Shiloh for battle, was captured by the Philistines, returned to Beth-shemesh with death, sat dormant at Kiriath-jearim for decades, and now finally enters Jerusalem — again accompanied by both celebration and sudden death. The death of Uzzah echoes the deaths at Beth-shemesh (1 Samuel 6:19) and the deaths of Nadab and Abihu (Leviticus 10:1-2): in all three cases, well-intentioned proximity to holiness without proper protocol proves fatal. David's linen ephod connects him to Samuel, who wore a linen ephod as a boy serving at Shiloh (1 Samuel 2:18), and to the high priest's garments (Exodus 28:6-14). Michal's barrenness closes the door on any fusion of Saul's dynasty with David's — the house of Saul ends without issue. The tent David pitches for the Ark (v17) is deliberately not called the Tabernacle; the old Mosaic tent was at Gibeon (1 Chronicles 16:39), and David's tent represents something new — a provisional dwelling awaiting the permanent Temple his son will build (2 Samuel 7).*

¹David again assembled every picked fighting man in Israel — thirty thousand. ²David set out with all the people who were with him from Baalah of Judah to bring up from there the Ark of God, over which a Name is invoked — the Name of the LORD of Armies, who is enthroned above the cherubim. ³They loaded the Ark of God onto a new cart and carried it from the house of Abinadab, which was on the hill. Uzzah and Ahio, sons of Abinadab, were driving the new cart. ⁴They brought it from the house of Abinadab on the hill, with the Ark of God, and Ahio was walking ahead of the Ark. ⁵David and the entire house of Israel were celebrating before the LORD with every kind of cypress-wood instrument — with lyres, harps, tambourines, rattles, and cymbals. ⁶When they came to the threshing floor of Nacon, Uzzah reached out toward the Ark of God and grabbed hold of it, because the oxen had stumbled. ⁷The anger of the LORD blazed against Uzzah, and God struck him down there for his irreverence. He died there beside the Ark of God. ⁸David burned with anger because the LORD had torn open a breach against Uzzah. He named that place Perez-uzzah — and it is called that to this day. ⁹David was afraid of the LORD that day. He said, "How can the Ark of the LORD ever come to me?" ¹⁰David was unwilling to move the Ark of the LORD to himself in the City of David. Instead, David diverted it to the house of Obed-edom the Gittite. ¹¹The Ark of the LORD remained in the house of Obed-edom the Gittite for three months, and the LORD blessed Obed-edom and his entire household. ¹²When King David was told, "The LORD has blessed the household of Obed-edom and everything he has because of the Ark of God," David went and brought the Ark of God up from the house of Obed-edom to the City of David with celebration. ¹³When the bearers of the Ark of the LORD had taken six steps, he sacrificed a bull and a fattened calf. ¹⁴David was whirling with all his strength before the LORD. David was wearing a linen ephod. ¹⁵David and the entire house of Israel brought the Ark of the LORD up with shouts of triumph and the sound of the ram's horn. ¹⁶As the Ark of the LORD

entered the City of David, Michal daughter of Saul looked down through a window and saw King David leaping and whirling before the LORD — and she despised him in her heart. ¹⁷They brought the Ark of the LORD in and set it in its place inside the tent that David had pitched for it. Then David offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before the LORD. ¹⁸When David finished offering the burnt offerings and the peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the LORD of Armies. ¹⁹He distributed to all the people — to the entire assembly of Israel, both men and women — a loaf of bread, a portion of meat, and a raisin cake to each person. Then all the people went home. ²⁰David returned home to bless his household, and Michal daughter of Saul came out to meet him. She said, "How honored the king of Israel made himself today — exposing himself today before the eyes of his servants' slave girls, the way some worthless man strips himself bare!" ²¹David said to Michal, "It was before the LORD — who chose me over your father and over his entire house, appointing me as ruler over the LORD's people, over Israel — that I celebrated. And I will celebrate before the LORD. ²²I will make myself even lower than this — I will be humbled in my own eyes. But with those slave girls you mentioned? By them I will be honored." ²³And Michal daughter of Saul had no child to the day of her death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyosef* ('he again gathered') implies a prior military assembly; David is repurposing his military infrastructure for a sacred mission. The term *bachur* ('chosen, picked') is a military term for select warriors in their prime. Thirty thousand men to escort the Ark is a statement of national priority: this is not a private errand but a state event. David treats the Ark's transfer as an operation requiring the same scale as warfare.
2. The location *mibba'alei Yehudah* is textually difficult. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 13:6 identifies this as Baalah, which is Kiriath-jearim (Joshua 15:9-10), where the Ark had rested since 1 Samuel 7:1. The phrase *asher niqra shem shem* ('over which a Name — the Name — is invoked') contains the unusual doubling of *shem*, likely for emphasis or as a scribal duplication. The divine title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Armies') appears for the first time in 1 Samuel 1:3 and becomes a dominant title in the prophets. The cherubim (*keruvim*) are the golden winged figures on the Ark's cover (Exodus 25:18-22) between which God's presence was understood to dwell.
3. The phrase *ba-giv'ah* ('on the hill') identifies Abinadab's house as being on elevated ground — the same location described in 1 Samuel 7:1 where the Ark was brought after leaving Beth-shemesh. Uzzah (Uzza, 'strength') and Ahio (Achy, 'his brother' or a proper name) are identified as Abinadab's sons — the family that has housed the Ark for approximately twenty years. The repeated emphasis on the cart being *chadashah* ('new') may echo the Philistine cart of 1 Samuel 6:7, subtly inviting the reader to notice that Israel is imitating pagan transport methods rather than following Mosaic protocol.
4. The verse restates the departure, with the added detail that Ahio walked in front of the Ark — presumably guiding the oxen or clearing the path. The repetition of the departure scene (overlapping with v3) is characteristic of Hebrew narrative style, adding a new detail with each pass. Ahio's position in front of the Ark and Uzzah's implied position beside or behind it will become critical in verses 6-7.
5. The verb *mesachaqqim* ('playing, celebrating, making merry') from the root *s-ch-q* conveys exuberant joy — this is not solemn liturgy but a street festival. The instruments listed form a complete ancient orchestra: *kinnorot* (lyres, stringed), *nevalim* (harps, larger stringed instruments), *tuppim* (tambourines, hand-drums), *mena'an'im* (rattles or sistrums — a shaken percussion instrument), and *tsetselim* (cymbals). The phrase *bekhol atsei veroshim* ('with all manner of cypress-wood instruments') likely refers to the wooden-bodied instruments. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 13:8 reads *bekhol oz* ('with all their might') instead, which some scholars consider the original reading. The celebration is wholehearted, full-bodied, and loud.
6. The threshing floor of Nacon (*goren Nakhon*) is identified in 1 Chronicles 13:9 as the threshing floor of Chidon — the name differs between accounts. *Nakhon* may mean 'fixed, established' — possibly a proper name or a descriptive term. The verb *shamtu* (from *sh-m-t*, 'to release, slip, drop') describes the oxen losing their footing or the cart lurching. The verb *vayyochez* ('he grabbed hold') indicates a firm grip, not a light touch — Uzzah seized the Ark to prevent it from falling.
7. The word *hashal* is a hapax legomenon — it occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible — and its meaning is debated. Proposals include 'rashness,' 'error,' 'irreverence,' and 'his stumbling' (taking it as related to the oxen's stumble). The Septuagint reads *propetieia* ('rashness'). The Chronicler's parallel (1 Chronicles 13:10) replaces this with 'because he stretched out his hand to the Ark.' The phrase *vayyichar af YHWH* ('the anger of the LORD burned') uses the standard idiom for divine wrath. The repetition of *sham* ('there') twice in the verse anchors Uzzah's death to the precise location — it becomes a place marked by death, which David will name in the next verse.
8. The verb *parats* ('to breach, break through') gives us the place name *Perets Uzza* ('Breach of Uzzah'). The same root appears in the name Perez (Genesis 38:29) and in descriptions of God 'breaking out' against people (Exodus 19:22, 2 Samuel 5:20). David's anger (*vayyichar*) mirrors God's anger from the previous verse — the same verb *charah* is used for both, creating a startling parallel between divine wrath and human outrage. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') is the narrator's voice, indicating the name persisted long after the event.
9. The verb *vayyira* ('he feared') marks a sharp emotional turn from the anger of verse 8. David moves from *charah* (burning anger) to *yare* (fear, awe, dread) — the two responses are sequential, not contradictory. The question *eikh yavo elai aron YHWH* ('how can the Ark of the LORD come to me?') echoes the Beth-shemesh question of 1 Samuel 6:20 and anticipates the resolution in verse 12, when David hears that God has blessed Obed-edom's house and finds the courage to try again.

- 10.** The phrase *lo avah David* ('David was not willing') expresses a deliberate refusal born of fear. The verb *hissir* ('to turn aside, divert') indicates the Ark was redirected from its intended destination. Obed-edom (Oved-Edom, 'servant of Edom') is called *haGitti* ('the Gittite'), which could mean he was from Gath (a Philistine city) or from Gath-rimmon (a Levitical city in Dan, Joshua 21:24). The Chronicler identifies him as a Levite (1 Chronicles 15:18, 21), which would explain why the Ark could legitimately rest at his house. If he was a Philistine convert from Gath, the irony is striking: the Ark that devastated Gath now blesses a Gittite's household.
- 11.** The verb *vayyeshev* ('it remained, sat, dwelled') is the same verb used for human habitation — the Ark 'dwells' in Obed-edom's house as a guest. The phrase *vayevarekh YHWH* ('the LORD blessed') does not specify the nature of the blessing, but the context suggests material prosperity, fertility, and general flourishing. Three months is the same duration the Ark spent in each Philistine city during its captivity (cf. 1 Samuel 5), but now the result is blessing rather than plague.
- 12.** The report that reaches David — *berekh YHWH et beit Oved-Edom* ('the LORD has blessed the house of Obed-edom') — is the turning point. What broke David's fear was not a theological argument but evidence: the Ark can bring life, not just death. The phrase *besimchah* ('with joy, gladness') marks a recovery from the terror of verse 9. David's fear has been replaced not by recklessness but by informed confidence. The Chronicler's account (1 Chronicles 15) specifies that David also corrected the transport method, appointing Levites to carry the Ark on their shoulders — he learned from Uzzah's death.
- 13.** The key detail is *nos'ei aron YHWH* ('the bearers of the Ark of the LORD') — the verb *nasa* ('to carry, bear') indicates the Ark is now on human shoulders, not a cart. This corrects the error of verse 3. The phrase *shishah tse'adim* ('six steps') uses *tsa'ad* ('step, pace'), a specific measure of walking. The sacrifice of a *shor umerio* ('bull and fattened calf') is lavish — these are premium animals. Whether the sacrifice was a one-time confirmation or repeated at every six steps is grammatically ambiguous; the Chronicler mentions seven bulls and seven rams as the total (1 Chronicles 15:26).
- 14.** The verb *mekharker* (from *k-r-r*) is rare in the Hebrew Bible and denotes whirling, spinning, or dancing in circles. It appears again in verse 16. The phrase *bekhol oz* ('with all his strength/might') emphasizes total physical commitment — this is not symbolic swaying but exhausting, full-body movement. The *efod bad* ('linen ephod') was a priestly undergarment (1 Samuel 2:18, 22:18) — lighter and less ornate than the high priest's decorated ephod of Exodus 28. That David wears only this garment means he has removed his royal clothing and dressed as a servant of God.
- 15.** The word *teru'ah* ('shout, blast, war cry, acclamation') is the same term used for the shout at Jericho (Joshua 6:5) and the blasts on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 25:9). It is not polite applause but a roar — the sound of a nation greeting its God. The *shofar* (ram's horn) is the quintessential instrument of divine encounter: it sounded at Sinai (Exodus 19:16), it will sound at the final ingathering (Isaiah 27:13). The combination of human voice (*teru'ah*) and sacred instrument (*shofar*) creates a wall of sound accompanying the Ark into Jerusalem.
- 16.** Michal is called *bat Sha'ul* ('daughter of Saul') rather than 'wife of David' — a deliberate narrative choice that frames her reaction as an extension of Saul's house and its values. The verb *nishqefah* ('she looked down through') implies looking downward from an elevated position, reinforcing the spatial and emotional distance between her observation and David's participation. The verb *mefazzez* (from *p-z-z*, 'to leap, spring') is combined with *mekharker* ('whirling') to create a picture of wild, full-body movement. The verb *bazah* ('to despise') is the same verb used when Esau 'despised' his birthright (Genesis 25:34) — it indicates a fundamental devaluation of something.
- 17.** The tent (*ohel*) David pitched is not the Mosaic Tabernacle (*mishkan*), which was at Gibeon (1 Chronicles 16:39, 2 Chronicles 1:3). David has prepared a new tent specifically for the Ark — a provisional shelter anticipating the permanent Temple he will later propose (2 Samuel 7). The verb *vayyatssigu* ('they set it') means to station or establish in a fixed position. The Ark now has *bimqomo* ('its place') — for the first time since leaving Shiloh, the Ark has a designated, permanent home. David offers *olot* (burnt offerings, entirely consumed) and *shelamim* (peace offerings, shared between God and worshipers) — a complete liturgy of dedication combining total consecration and communal celebration.
- 18.** David performs a priestly function: *vayevarekh et ha'am* ('he blessed the people'). The blessing is given *beshem YHWH Tseva'ot* ('in the name of the LORD of Armies') — the same divine title used in verse 2 to describe the God enthroned above the Ark's cherubim. David acts as both king and mediator, bridging the people and God. The priestly blessing was normally a Levitical prerogative (Numbers 6:22-27), but David's assumption of this role fits the broader pattern of this chapter: he wears a priestly ephod, he offers sacrifices, and he blesses the assembly. He is acting as priest-king, a role that will later be theologized in Psalm 110.
- 19.** The distribution covers *kol hamon Yisra'el* ('the entire multitude of Israel') and explicitly includes both men (*me'ish*) and women (*ve'ad ishah*) — a notable specification in ancient Near Eastern royal generosity. The three items are: *challat lechem* (a ring-shaped bread loaf), *eshpar* (a debated term — possibly a portion of meat, a date cake, or a measured portion; the exact meaning is uncertain), and *ashishah* (a raisin cake, pressed dried fruit). These are festival foods, not staples — David is not feeding the hungry but celebrating with the nation. The final clause *vayyeylekh kol ha'am ish leveito* ('all the people went each to his house') sets up the domestic confrontation that follows: everyone goes home satisfied, and David goes home to Michal.
- 20.** Michal is again identified as *bat Sha'ul* ('daughter of Saul'), reinforcing the dynastic tension. The verb *niglah* ('he uncovered himself') from *g-l-h* is loaded with connotations of nakedness and shame — the same root used for sexual exposure in Leviticus 18 and 20. The comparison *kehiggallot niglot achad hareqim* ('as one of the worthless men shamelessly exposes himself') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis: thorough, complete exposure. The word *reqim* ('empty, worthless') is a social judgment — Michal sees David's behavior as beneath his station. Her objection is not moral but aristocratic.

- 21.** The phrase *asher bachar bi me'avikh* ('who chose me over your father') uses the verb *bachar* ('to choose, elect'), the same verb used for God's election of Israel. David locates his authority not in royal dignity but in divine election. The title *nagid* ('ruler, designated leader') is the same title given to Saul at his anointing (1 Samuel 9:16) and to David at his (1 Samuel 25:30) — David is claiming Saul's title by divine right. The verb *sichaqti* ('I celebrated, played') from *s-ch-q* is the same root used in verse 5 for Israel's celebration — David identifies his dancing as continuous with the nation's worship.
- 22.** The verb *neqalloti* (from *q-l-l*, 'to be light, trivial, cursed') is the opposite of *nikhbad* (from *k-v-d*, 'to be honored, heavy') — David accepts being 'light' in order to be 'heavy' with God. The phrase *vehayiti shapal be'ainai* ('I will be lowly in my own eyes') anticipates a theology of humility that runs through the Psalms attributed to David. The final clause *immam ikkaveda* ('by them I will be honored') uses the same *k-v-d* root: the slave girls will give David the *kavod* that Michal withholds. David is redefining where honor comes from: not from royal bearing but from abandoned worship.
- 23.** The phrase *lo hayah lah yaled* ('she had no child') uses the simple existential construction — there was no child for her. The text does not specify whether this was divine punishment, David's decision to stop relations with her, or natural infertility — the ambiguity is deliberate. The phrase *ad yom motah* ('until the day of her death') makes the barrenness permanent and final. Michal is called *bat Sha'ul* one last time — her identity as Saul's daughter, not David's wife, is the lens through which the narrative frames her fate. The verse functions as a closing verdict on the Saulide dynasty: it produces no future.

7

Summary: *David, now settled in his cedar palace with rest from his enemies on every side, proposes to build a permanent temple for the Ark of God. The prophet Nathan initially approves, but that night the LORD sends Nathan back with a stunning reversal: God does not need David to build Him a house (bayit, 'temple'); instead, God will build David a house (bayit, 'dynasty'). The oracle traces God's faithfulness from the day He took David from following sheep, through the promise of a secure place for Israel, to the climactic announcement: David's offspring will sit on an eternal throne, and God will be a father to David's son. When the son sins, God will discipline him with human instruments but will never withdraw His loyal love as He withdrew it from Saul. David's throne, dynasty, and kingdom will endure forever. David enters the tent of the Ark and responds with one of the most profound prayers in Scripture -- a prayer of astonishment, gratitude, and bold faith that takes God at His word and asks Him to do exactly what He has promised.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the foundational oracle of the Davidic covenant, one of the two or three most consequential theological moments in the Hebrew Bible. The entire chapter turns on a single Hebrew word -- bayit -- which means both 'house' (a physical building, a temple) and 'house' (a dynasty, a royal lineage). David wants to build God a bayit; God responds by promising to build David a bayit. This wordplay is not decorative -- it is the theological engine of the passage. God reframes the entire relationship between divine and human initiative: David's impulse to do something for God is answered by God's determination to do something far greater for David. The unconditional nature of the promise is striking: unlike the Sinai covenant with its blessings and curses, the Davidic covenant survives even the sin of David's descendants. God will discipline but never abandon. This promise reverberates through the rest of the Hebrew Bible -- in the Psalms (especially 89 and 132), in the prophets (Isaiah 9, 11; Jeremiah 23, 33; Ezekiel 34, 37), and ultimately in the messianic hope that shapes Second Temple Judaism. David's prayer in response (vv. 18-29) is remarkable for its theological sophistication: David does not merely thank God but interrogates the nature of divine promise-making, marvels at the uniqueness of Israel's God, and boldly asks God to fulfill what He has spoken -- turning prayer into a claim on the divine word.*

Translation Friction: *Several features of this chapter demand careful handling. First, the bayit wordplay -- the pivot of the entire oracle -- is invisible in most English translations because English uses different words for 'temple' and 'dynasty.' A rendering that fails to preserve the single-word ambiguity loses the theological architecture of the passage. We retain 'house' throughout and use expanded renderings to surface the wordplay at every occurrence. Second, the relationship between this oracle and the word 'covenant' (berit) is complex: the word berit never appears in 2 Samuel 7 itself. It is applied retroactively in Psalm 89:3-4, 28-37 and in David's last words (2 Samuel 23:5). We render the passage as covenantal in nature while noting this terminological absence. Third, verse 14's promise that God will be 'a father' to David's son and will discipline him 'with the rod of men' raises the question of whether the oracle refers to Solomon specifically, to the Davidic line generally, or to an eschatological figure. The Hebrew text supports all three readings simultaneously, and we do not collapse the ambiguity. Fourth, David's prayer*

in verse 19 contains the famously difficult phrase ve-zot torat ha-adam ('and this is the law/instruction of humanity'), which has generated centuries of interpretive debate. We render it transparently and discuss the options in the translator notes.

Connections: The Davidic covenant stands alongside the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12, 15, 17) and the Sinai covenant (Exodus 19-24) as one of the three great covenantal pillars of the Hebrew Bible. God's promise to Abraham of land, offspring, and blessing finds its royal crystallization here: David's 'seed' (zera, v. 12) echoes Abraham's 'seed,' and the promise of an everlasting kingdom extends the Abrahamic 'everlasting covenant.' The oracle explicitly recalls the Exodus and conquest traditions (vv. 6-7, 23-24), anchoring the Davidic promise in the larger story of God's redemption of Israel from Egypt. Nathan's prophecy will be tested almost immediately: Solomon will build the temple (1 Kings 5-8) but also fall into idolatry (1 Kings 11), triggering the division of the kingdom -- yet the promise holds, and Judah retains a Davidic king. The prophets return to this chapter repeatedly: Isaiah's Emmanuel prophecy (7:14) and the shoot from Jesse's stump (11:1), Jeremiah's righteous Branch (23:5-6), and Ezekiel's shepherd-prince (34:23-24) all presuppose Nathan's oracle. Psalm 89 is an extended meditation on the Davidic covenant's apparent failure after the exile, wrestling with how God's 'forever' can coexist with the collapse of the monarchy. The chapter also connects backward to 2 Samuel 6, where David brought the Ark to Jerusalem -- having installed God's presence in a tent, David now proposes to upgrade the dwelling, and God responds by upgrading David's entire future.

¹When the king had settled into his house and the LORD had given him rest on every side from all his enemies, ²the king said to Nathan the prophet, "Look -- I am living in a house of cedar, while the Ark of God sits inside tent curtains." ³Nathan said to the king, "Whatever is in your heart -- go, do it. The LORD is with you." ⁴But that very night, the word of the LORD came to Nathan: ⁵"Go and say to my servant David: This is what the LORD declares -- Will you build me a house for me to dwell in? ⁶I have not dwelt in a house from the day I brought the children of Israel up from Egypt until this day. Instead, I have been moving about in a tent -- in a tabernacle. ⁷In all my traveling with the children of Israel, did I ever speak a word to any of the tribes of Israel -- those I commanded to shepherd my people Israel -- saying, 'Why have you not built me a house of cedar?'" ⁸"Now then, say this to my servant David: This is what the LORD of Armies declares -- I took you from the pasture, from following the flock, to be ruler over my people, over Israel. ⁹I have been with you wherever you went. I cut down all your enemies before you. And I will make your name great -- like the name of the greatest in the earth. ¹⁰I will establish a place for my people Israel and plant them there, so that they may dwell in their own land and be disturbed no more. The sons of injustice will no longer oppress them as they did before -- ¹¹from the time I appointed judges over my people Israel. I will give you rest from all your enemies. And the LORD declares to you that the LORD will build you a house. ¹²When your days are complete and you lie down with your ancestors, I will raise up your offspring after you -- one who will come from your own body -- and I will establish his kingdom. ¹³He is the one who will build a house for my name, and I will establish the throne of his kingdom forever. ¹⁴I myself will be a father to him, and he will be a son to me. When he goes astray, I will discipline him with a human rod and with blows that people inflict. ¹⁵But my loyal love will never be withdrawn from him, as I withdrew it from Saul, whom I removed from before you. ¹⁶Your house and your kingdom will stand firm before you forever. Your throne will be established forever." ¹⁷Nathan spoke to David in accordance with all these words and this entire vision. ¹⁸King David went in and sat before the LORD. He said: "Who am I, Lord GOD, and what is my house, that you have brought me this far? ¹⁹And even this was too small in your eyes, Lord GOD -- you have spoken concerning your servant's house far into the future. And this is the charter for humanity, Lord GOD! ²⁰What more can David say to you? You yourself know your servant, Lord GOD. ²¹For the sake of your word and in accordance with your own heart, you have done all this greatness -- and revealed it to your servant. ²²This is why you are great, Lord GOD -- there is no one like you, and there is no God besides you, according to everything we have heard with our own ears. ²³And who is like your people Israel -- a singular nation on earth -- for whom God went out to redeem them as His own people? You made a name for yourself and did great and fearsome things for your land, driving out nations and their gods before your people whom you redeemed from Egypt. ²⁴You established your people Israel as your own forever. And you, LORD, became their God. ²⁵And now, LORD God, the word you have spoken concerning your servant and his house -- establish it forever and do as you have spoken. ²⁶Let your name be magnified forever, so that it will be said, 'The LORD of Armies is God over Israel!' And let the house of your

servant David be established before you. ²⁷For you, LORD of Armies, God of Israel, have uncovered your servant's ear by saying, 'I will build you a house.' That is why your servant has found the courage to pray this prayer to you. ²⁸And now, Lord GOD -- you are God, and your words are truth, and you have spoken this good thing to your servant. ²⁹Now then, be pleased to bless the house of your servant so that it will endure forever in your presence -- for you, Lord GOD, have spoken it. And by your blessing, let the house of your servant be blessed forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase yashav ha-melekh be-veito ('the king sat/settled in his house') uses yashav in its sense of permanent dwelling -- David has taken up residence, not merely paused. The word beito ('his house') is the first occurrence of bayit in a chapter that will use it in radically different senses. Here it means David's physical palace; by verse 11, it will mean David's eternal dynasty.
1. The verb heniach ('gave rest') from nuach is theologically loaded. Deuteronomy 12:10-11 promises that when God gives Israel rest from their enemies, they will bring their offerings to the place God chooses. David's situation precisely fulfills this Deuteronomic condition -- rest has been granted, and David's impulse to build a temple is the natural next step in the covenantal logic. The irony is that God will accept the impulse but redirect the builder.
2. The phrase beit arazim ('house of cedars') refers to David's palace constructed from Lebanese cedar, a luxury material that signified royal power throughout the ancient Near East. Cedar was prized for its durability, fragrance, and resistance to insects. That David has a cedar palace while God has a tent is the disproportion that drives his proposal.
2. The word yeri'ah ('curtain, tent-panel') refers to the fabric panels of the tabernacle. The Ark has been housed in a tent since David brought it to Jerusalem in chapter 6. David's sensitivity to this contrast reveals a king who thinks theologically about architecture: physical structures express relational realities. If God is Israel's true King, His dwelling should surpass the dwelling of Israel's human king.
3. Nathan's immediate approval is prophetic intuition without prophetic revelation -- he speaks from his own judgment, not from a divine oracle. His reasoning is sound by human standards: David's track record of divine favor makes the temple proposal seem like a natural next step. The phrase YHWH immakh ('the LORD is with you') is the recurring refrain of David's life (1 Samuel 16:18, 18:12, 18:14), and Nathan invokes it as warrant for David's plan. But God has not yet spoken, and that night God will override Nathan's endorsement.
3. The phrase kol asher bilvavekha ('all that is in your heart') gives David blanket approval based on his character and God's evident blessing. Nathan will learn before dawn that even a prophet's well-reasoned counsel must yield to direct divine speech. This correction is gentle -- God does not rebuke Nathan -- but the reversal demonstrates that prophetic authority rests not in the prophet's wisdom but in God's word.
4. The phrase ba-laylah ha-hu ('that very night') signals urgency: God does not let Nathan's unauthorized approval stand even until morning. The divine word arrives with the speed of a correction that cannot wait. The formula devar-YHWH ('the word of the LORD') marks the transition from Nathan's human judgment to genuine prophetic revelation. Everything that follows -- the entire Davidic covenant -- is framed as direct divine speech delivered through the prophetic channel that night.
4. The timing is significant: revelation comes in the night, when human plans have been laid and human endorsements given. God waits until the day's conversation is complete, then speaks into the darkness with a word that will reshape Israel's entire future.
5. The rhetorical question ha-attah tivneh-li bayit leshivti ('Will you build me a house to dwell in?') uses the emphatic pronoun attah ('you') in a position of stress. Hebrew does not normally require an explicit pronoun with the verb (the conjugation already indicates the subject), so its presence here is emphatic and slightly incredulous: 'Will YOU -- you, David -- build ME a house?' The implied contrast is between human initiative and divine sovereignty.
5. The title avdi ('my servant') applied to David is one of the highest honors in the Hebrew Bible, placing David in the company of Abraham, Moses, and the prophets. The term expresses not degradation but intimate relationship and commissioned authority.
6. The verb mithallekh (hitpael participle of halakh, 'to walk') describes continuous, habitual movement. God has been 'walking about' -- the same verbal form used of God walking in the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3:8, mithallekh ba-gan). The tabernacle is not a prison but a means of divine mobility, allowing God to accompany Israel through wilderness and war.
6. The pairing of ohel ('tent') and mishkan ('tabernacle, dwelling-place') refers to the portable sanctuary constructed at Sinai (Exodus 25-27). The mishkan is literally 'the dwelling-place' -- from the root shakan ('to dwell, to tabernacle'). God has been dwelling (shakan) without needing a permanent dwelling (bayit). The theological point is that divine presence does not require human architecture.
7. The parallel text in 1 Chronicles 17:6 reads 'judges of Israel' (shoftei Yisra'el) where 2 Samuel 7:7 reads 'tribes of Israel' (shivtei Yisra'el). The difference is a single consonant (shin-bet-tet vs. shin-peh-tet). Many scholars regard the Chronicles reading as more original, since 'judges' pairs naturally with the verb 'commanded to shepherd.' The MT of Samuel may preserve a scribal error, but we follow the received text while noting the variant.
7. The verb lir'ot ('to shepherd') from the root ra'ah places Israel's rulers in the category of shepherds -- the dominant metaphor for kingship in the ancient Near East and in the Hebrew Bible. God appointed these shepherd-rulers, and none of them was asked to build a temple. The implication is that temple-building is not the essence of faithful leadership; shepherding God's people is.

8. The word naveh ('pasture, meadow, dwelling-place for flocks') places David's origins in the rural landscape of Bethlehem. The phrase me'achar ha-tson ('from behind the flock') captures the shepherd's position -- walking behind the sheep, guiding them. God took David from this position and made him nagid ('ruler, prince, designated leader'). The term nagid is distinct from melek ('king') and carries the sense of one appointed and commissioned by God, rather than one who inherits or seizes a throne.
8. The divine title YHWH tseva'ot ('the LORD of Armies') appears here for the first time in the oracle, adding military weight to the declaration. The God who commands the armies of heaven is the same God who plucked David from a sheep pasture -- divine sovereignty operates across the full spectrum from pastoral humility to cosmic power.
9. The verb vaakritah ('I cut off, cut down') from karat uses the same root as 'to cut a covenant' (karat berit), creating an ironic echo: God 'cuts' David's enemies even as He is about to 'cut' a covenant for David's benefit. The phrase mippanekha ('from before your face') means God cleared the path ahead of David -- his enemies were removed before he arrived.
9. The promise ve'asiti lekha shem gadol ('I will make you a great name') echoes the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 12:2 (va'agaddelah shemekha, 'I will make your name great'). The Davidic covenant is being woven into the fabric of the Abrahamic covenant -- David inherits the trajectory of blessing that began with Abraham. The 'great ones of the earth' (ha-gedolim asher ba-arets) refers to the legendary rulers and empire-builders of the ancient world. God promises David a reputation to rival any of them.
10. The verb unta'tiv ('I will plant him/them') uses the metaphor of planting -- Israel is a tree that God will root in its own soil, stable and permanent. This agricultural image for national settlement appears throughout the prophets (Amos 9:15, Jeremiah 24:6, 32:41). A planted people cannot be uprooted by human force.
10. The phrase benei-avlah ('sons of wickedness/injustice') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'wicked people' or 'agents of injustice' -- those who belong to the category of avlah ('wrongdoing, perversion of justice'). The term encompasses both foreign oppressors and internal tyrants. The promise that they will no longer 'afflict' (le'annoto, from anah, 'to oppress, humble, cause suffering') Israel envisions a future of security that transcends any single military victory.
11. The clause ki-bayit ya'aseh-lekha YHWH ('for a house the LORD will make for you') reverses the entire direction of the conversation. The word bayit now means 'dynasty, royal house' -- the same word David used for 'temple' is repurposed for 'lineage.' The verb ya'aseh ('will make, will build') has God as its subject: God is the builder, David is the recipient. This reversal is the core theological move of the Davidic covenant.
11. The grammar is emphatic: bayit is placed before the verb for emphasis -- 'A HOUSE the LORD will build for you.' The focus falls on the house itself, on its nature as something God constructs rather than something David constructs. The declaration is presented as both promise and announcement: God 'tells' (higgid) David what He intends to do, using the language of prophetic revelation.
12. The phrase yimle'u yamekha ('your days will be full/complete') is a dignified way of referring to death that emphasizes the fullness of life rather than its end. The idiom veshakhavta et-avotekha ('you will lie down with your ancestors') is the standard Hebrew expression for death and burial, carrying no implications about an afterlife but expressing continuity with the ancestral line.
12. The verb vahaqimoti ('I will raise up') from qum ('to rise, to stand') is used for establishing something that will endure. God raises up David's seed as one raises a building -- setting it in place so it stands. The verb vahakinoti ('I will establish') from kun ('to be firm, to be established') intensifies the promise: this kingdom will not merely exist but will be made stable, secure, and permanent.
13. The pronoun hu ('he') is emphatic: 'HE will build a house for my name' -- not you, David, but your son. The identification with Solomon is implicit but clear from the narrative context. The phrase lishmi ('for my name') introduces the 'name theology' that will dominate the Deuteronomistic understanding of the temple: God's shem ('name') dwells in the temple as a mode of divine presence that maintains God's transcendence while affirming His accessibility.
13. The phrase ad-olam ('forever, into perpetuity') appears here for the first time in the oracle and will recur in verses 16, 24-25, and 29. The word olam does not mean 'eternal' in a timeless philosophical sense but 'into the far distant future, beyond the visible horizon, as far as the eye of time can see.' It expresses permanence within the framework of ongoing history rather than abstraction from history.
14. The formula ani ehyeh-lo le-av vehu yihyeh-li le-ven ('I will be to him a father and he will be to me a son') is adoption language -- the formal declaration by which a father claims a son. This formula appears in ancient Near Eastern adoption contracts and here establishes the Davidic king as God's adopted son. The relationship is covenantal, not ontological: the king does not become divine but enters a relationship of filial privilege and responsibility.
14. The phrase be-shevet anashim ('with a rod of men/humans') has been interpreted in two ways: (1) God will use human agents -- enemy nations, political adversaries -- as His rod of discipline; (2) the discipline will be proportionate to human capacity, not the devastating judgment God could unleash directly. Both readings are compatible. The word nega ('blow, plague, stroke') from naga ('to touch, to strike') refers to afflictions that leave a mark -- the discipline will be real and painful, not merely verbal.
15. The word chesed ('loyal love, covenant faithfulness, steadfast love, mercy, kindness') is one of the most theologically dense words in the Hebrew Bible. It combines the ideas of loyalty, love, faithfulness, and obligation within a covenantal relationship. When God promises that His chesed will not depart (lo-yasur) from David's son, He is pledging the full weight of His covenantal character -- not merely warm feelings but binding, active, enduring commitment.

15. The verb *hasiroti* ('I removed') from *sur* ('to turn aside, remove') is used twice: God removed His *chesed* from Saul, and God removed Saul from before David. The parallelism makes withdrawal of *chesed* and removal from power equivalent events. What happened to Saul will never happen to David's line. This is an extraordinary and unparalleled promise in the Hebrew Bible.
16. The Masoretic Text reads *lefanekha* ('before you'), meaning David will see or know that his dynasty endures. The Septuagint and some Hebrew manuscripts read *lefanai* ('before me'), meaning the dynasty endures before God. Either reading is theologically powerful: the MT suggests David himself witnesses the enduring promise; the LXX suggests the dynasty stands perpetually in God's presence.
16. The threefold structure -- house, kingdom, throne -- moves from bloodline (*bayit*) to realm (*mamlakhah*) to seat of power (*kisse*). All three are modified by *ad-olam* ('forever'). This is the fullest expression of the Davidic covenant's scope: it promises not just a surviving family but a functioning kingdom with real authority, extending into a future without visible end.
17. The narrator confirms that Nathan delivered the oracle faithfully: *kekhol ha-devarim ha-elleh* ('according to all these words') and *kekhol ha-chizzayon ha-zeh* ('according to all this vision'). The word *chizzayon* ('vision') from the root *chazah* ('to see, to perceive prophetically') classifies the revelation as visionary -- Nathan received it not merely as words but as a prophetic vision in the night. The verse serves as a narrative seal: what God said, Nathan said. The prophetic transmission is complete and accurate.
17. This verse also marks a structural break in the chapter. The oracle (vv. 4-16) is complete; David's prayer (vv. 18-29) is about to begin. The narrator's summary bridges the two halves, confirming that David received the full content of the divine word before he responds to it.
18. The verb *vayyeshev* ('he sat') before the LORD is unusual. The normal posture for prayer or worship was standing or prostration. Some scholars interpret this as David sitting on the ground in overwhelmed humility; others see it as the posture of a vassal receiving terms from a suzerain. Either way, David is positioned before the Ark -- the visible sign of God's presence -- in a posture of sustained contemplation rather than quick petition.
18. The double question *mi anokhi* ('who am I?') and *umi beiti* ('what is my house?') uses the emphatic first-person pronoun *anokhi* rather than the common *ani*, adding weight and formality to the question. David asks about both himself and his dynasty, recognizing that the promise extends beyond his own person to his entire lineage.
19. The phrase *ve-zot torat ha-adam* ('and this is the torah/instruction of humanity') is famously difficult. The word *torah* means 'instruction, law, teaching, direction' -- it is the word for the Mosaic law but has a broader semantic range encompassing any authoritative instruction or established principle. *Ha-adam* means 'the human being, humanity, humankind.' Possible renderings include: 'this is the law for humanity,' 'this is the way you deal with humans,' 'this is the charter for the human race,' or even 'this is the destiny of humankind.' The Chronicler's parallel (1 Chronicles 17:17) reads differently, suggesting the phrase was already obscure in antiquity.
19. The verb *vatiqtan* ('it was small, it was insufficient') reveals God's generosity in theological terms: the past blessings were not the full measure of what God intended. They were the prelude, not the climax. God's promise extends *lemerachok* ('to a distant point, far into the future') -- the dynasty is not for David's generation alone but for a future David cannot see.
20. David's question is not despair but the silence of a man who has run out of adequate words. The phrase *mah-yosif David od ledabber elekha* ('what can David add further to speak to you?') acknowledges that no human response can match the magnitude of what God has promised. David refers to himself in the third person -- 'What can David say?' -- a rhetorical device that creates distance between the speaker and the enormity of what he is processing.
20. The clause *ve-attah yada'ta et-avdekha* ('you know your servant') turns the conversation from David's inadequate knowledge to God's perfect knowledge. David cannot fully articulate what he feels, but God already knows. The verb *yada* ('to know') in Hebrew implies intimate, comprehensive knowledge -- not mere awareness but deep understanding of character, need, and heart.
21. David identifies two sources for God's action: *ba'avur devarekha* ('for the sake of your word') and *kelibbekha* ('according to your heart'). The first points to God's faithfulness to His own prior commitments -- the promises to Abraham, to Israel, to David through Samuel. The second points to God's own character and desire -- God does this because He wants to, because it flows from who He is. Together they describe a God whose actions are both principled (grounded in His word) and personal (flowing from His heart).
21. The verb *lehodia* ('to make known, to reveal') adds a dimension of revelation: God has not only acted but has disclosed His plan to David. The promise would have been effective even if David never knew about it, but God chooses to reveal it -- making David a conscious participant in the covenant rather than an unwitting beneficiary.
22. The phrase *ein kamokha* ('there is none like you') asserts divine incomparability -- not merely that God is the greatest among gods but that no being in the same category exists. The parallel clause *ve-ein Elohim zulatekha* ('there is no God besides you') moves from incomparability to exclusivity: God is not merely the best; He is the only.
22. The phrase *bekhol asher-shama'nu be-ozneinu* ('according to all that we have heard with our ears') grounds the theological claim in Israel's collective historical memory. The 'we' shifts from David alone to the entire community -- Israel's tradition of divine acts, transmitted orally from generation to generation, is the evidence base for monotheistic faith.
23. The phrase *goy echad ba-arets* ('one/singular nation on the earth') emphasizes Israel's unique status -- not one of many but the only one of its kind. The word *echad* ('one') echoes the Shema's declaration of God's oneness (Deuteronomy 6:4): as God is one, so Israel is one.

- 23.** The text of this verse is notoriously difficult in the MT, with shifts between second and third person and between singular and plural that suggest either textual corruption or a rhetorical style that freely alternates perspectives. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 17:21 is smoother and may preserve a less corrupted form. The phrase *goyim ve-elohav* ('nations and their gods') is striking: God drove out not only the human inhabitants of Canaan but their gods as well. The Exodus and conquest were a defeat of rival deities, not merely rival armies.
- 24.** The verb *vattekhonen* ('you established') from *kun* ('to set firmly, to establish') is the same root used for the establishment of David's throne in verse 16. God established Israel as His people with the same permanence He promises to David's dynasty. The phrase *lekha le-am ad-olam* ('as a people for you forever') binds Israel to God in an unbreakable relationship: Israel belongs to God, and God belongs to Israel, and this mutual belonging extends *ad-olam*.
- 24.** The concluding phrase *ve-attah YHWH hayita lahem le-Elohim* ('and you, LORD, became their God') is the covenant formula in its simplest form -- the declaration that defines the Sinai relationship (Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12). David places the Davidic covenant within the larger framework of God's covenant with Israel: the promise to David's house is an extension of God's commitment to His people.
- 25.** The imperative *haqem* ('establish!') from *qum* ('to stand, to rise') is remarkably bold -- David is issuing a command to God. But the command is grounded entirely in God's prior word: David does not invent a request but asks God to fulfill His own promise. This pattern -- praying God's promises back to God -- becomes a model for Israelite prayer and appears throughout the Psalms.
- 25.** The phrase *ka'asher dibbarta* ('as you have spoken') makes God's word the standard of fulfillment. David is not asking for more than God promised or for something different; he is asking for exactly what God said. This grounds the prayer in divine reliability rather than human desire.
- 26.** David's prayer links God's reputation to the Davidic dynasty: when people see the enduring house of David, they will magnify the name of the LORD of Armies. The phrase *yigdal shimkha ad-olam* ('let your name be great forever') connects the Davidic covenant to the Abrahamic promise of a great name (Genesis 12:2) and to God's own purpose in the Exodus (to make a name for Himself, v. 23). The fulfillment of the promise to David becomes evidence for the greatness of David's God.
- 26.** The final clause *u-veit avdekha David yihyeh nakhon lefanekha* ('the house of your servant David will be established before you') uses *nakhon* ('established, firm, fixed') -- the same word from verse 16. David echoes God's own vocabulary, demonstrating that his prayer is shaped by the divine oracle he received.
- 27.** The idiom *galita et-ozen* ('you uncovered the ear') appears in 1 Samuel 9:15 and 20:2 and means 'to reveal, to disclose privately.' The image is intimate: God pulls back the covering from David's ear and speaks a word meant for him alone. This private revelation is the ground of David's public prayer.
- 27.** The phrase *matsa et-libbo* ('found his heart') is a Hebrew idiom meaning 'to summon the courage, to find the resolve.' The heart (*lev*) in Hebrew is the seat of will, thought, and decision -- not merely emotion. David found within himself the will and the courage to approach God with this prayer. The implication is that without the promise, David would not have had the boldness (or the content) for such a prayer.
- 28.** The phrase *attah-hu ha-Elohim* ('you -- you are THE God') uses the emphatic pronoun *hu* ('he') as a copula, creating a declaration of identity: you and no one else are God. This is not generic theism but the specific monotheistic confession of Israel.
- 28.** The clause *u-devarekha yihyu emet* ('your words will be / are truth') uses *emet* in its fullest sense: truth, faithfulness, reliability, permanence. The root *aman* (from which *emet* derives) is the root of 'amen' and of *ne'eman* ('faithful, established') used of David's house in verse 16. God's word is 'amen' -- confirmed, established, trustworthy. David's entire prayer rests on this foundation: if God's words are *emet*, then the promise to David's house is as secure as the character of God Himself.
- 29.** The verb *ho'el* ('be willing, be pleased, consent') is a remarkably gentle word for a prayer's climax. David does not demand or plead; he asks God to be willing. The word carries the sense of gracious consent -- David trusts that God will find it good to do what He has promised.
- 29.** The final clause *umibirkatekha yevorakh beit-avdekha le-olam* ('from your blessing, let the house of your servant be blessed forever') creates a theological closed loop: God's blessing is both the cause and the content of the prayer. David asks for nothing outside of what God has already given; he simply asks that the blessing continue doing what blessings do -- extending, enduring, multiplying. The word *olam* appears here for the last time in the chapter, bringing the 'forever' theme to its conclusion. The house that God builds, the throne that God establishes, and the blessing that God speaks will endure into a future that only God can see.

8

Summary: *David wages a series of devastating military campaigns that transform Israel from a regional tribal kingdom into a small empire. He defeats the Philistines and breaks their power, subjugates Moab with brutal severity, crushes Hadadezer king of Zobah and the Aramean forces who come to his aid, garrisons Damascus, subdues Edom, and receives tribute from Hamath. The chapter concludes with a summary of David's administration: he reigns over all Israel, executing justice and righteousness for his entire people, supported by a cabinet of named officials who manage military, priestly, scribal, and administrative functions.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter functions as a theological catalogue of fulfilled promise. The narrator compresses what must have been years of warfare into a single rapid-fire account, and the repetitive structure -- David struck, the LORD gave victory, David struck, the LORD gave victory -- is deliberate. The refrain vayyosha YHWH et-David bekhoh asher halakh ('the LORD gave David victory wherever he went') appears twice (verses 6 and 14), framing the entire military narrative as divine action through a human agent. David is not conquering by his own strength; the LORD is fulfilling the territorial promises made to Abraham (Genesis 15:18) and delivering the security promised to David through Nathan (2 Samuel 7:9-11). The chapter's concluding verse -- David executing mishpat u-tsedakah ('justice and righteousness') for all his people -- is the narrator's verdict on David at his zenith: this is what a king looks like when he governs under covenant with God.*

Translation Friction: *The treatment of Moab in verse 2 is jarring and has troubled readers for centuries. David measures the Moabite captives with a cord, executing two-thirds and sparing one-third. No explanation is given for this severity, which is especially striking because David had previously entrusted his own parents to the king of Moab's protection (1 Samuel 22:3-4) and his great-grandmother Ruth was a Moabite. The narrator offers no moral commentary -- the act is simply recorded. Some rabbinic traditions suggest a Moabite betrayal of David's family provoked this response, but the text itself is silent. The verb vaymaddem ('he measured them') suggests a deliberate, systematic process rather than battlefield rage, which makes the act more unsettling, not less. We translate what the Hebrew says without softening or explaining away the difficulty. The numbers of chariots, horsemen, and foot soldiers vary between the MT and Chronicles parallel (1 Chronicles 18), presenting textual difficulties in verses 4-5 that we note where relevant.*

Connections: *The territorial conquests fulfill the Abrahamic land grant of Genesis 15:18, which promised territory from the River of Egypt to the Euphrates. David's empire, reaching to the Euphrates via the defeat of Zobah and Damascus, represents the maximum historical extent of that promise. The Nathanic covenant of 2 Samuel 7 promised David rest from enemies and a great name -- chapter 8 records the fulfillment of both. The gold shields taken from Hadadezer's servants and the bronze from his cities (vv. 7-8) anticipate Solomon's temple construction, as the narrator explicitly notes that Solomon later used these materials. The closing formula -- mishpat u-tsedakah -- connects David to the royal ideal articulated in the Psalms (Psalm 72:1-2, 89:14) and the prophetic expectation of the future Davidic king (Isaiah 9:7, Jeremiah 23:5), who will reign with justice and righteousness. David at this moment embodies the covenant ideal that later kings will fail to sustain.*

1Some time later, David struck down the Philistines and brought them under his control. David took the bridle of the mother-city from the Philistines' hand. 2He also struck down Moab. He made them lie on the ground and measured them with a cord: two cord-lengths were marked for execution, and one full cord-length to be kept alive. Moab became subject to David, bringing tribute. 3David also struck down Hadadezer son of Rehob, king of Zobah, as Hadadezer was going to reassert his control at the Euphrates River. 4David captured from him one thousand seven hundred horsemen and twenty thousand foot soldiers. David hamstringed all the chariot horses but kept enough for a hundred chariots. 5When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer king of Zobah, David struck down twenty-two thousand Aramean soldiers. 6David stationed garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became subject to David, bringing tribute. The LORD gave David victory wherever he went. 7David took the gold shields that had belonged to Hadadezer's officers and brought them to Jerusalem. 8From Betah and Berothai, cities belonging to Hadadezer, King David took an enormous quantity of bronze. 9Wh

en Toi king of Hamath heard that David had defeated the entire army of Hadadezer, ¹⁰Toi sent his son Joram to King David to greet him with peace and to congratulate him on his victory in battle against Hadadezer -- for Hadadezer had been at war with Toi. Joram brought with him vessels of silver, gold, and bronze. ¹¹King David consecrated these as well to the LORD, along with the silver and gold he had consecrated from all the nations he had subdued: ¹²from Aram, from Moab, from the Ammonites, from the Philistines, from Amalek, and from the plunder taken from Hadadezer son of Rehob, king of Zobah. ¹³David made a name for himself when he returned from striking down eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt. ¹⁴He stationed garrisons in Edom -- throughout all Edom he stationed garrisons -- and all the Edomites became subject to David. The LORD gave David victory wherever he went. ¹⁵David reigned over all Israel, and David administered justice and righteousness for his entire people. ¹⁶Joab son of Zeruiah commanded the army. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud served as royal herald. ¹⁷Zadok son of Ahitub and Ahimelech son of Abiathar served as priests. Seraiah served as royal scribe. ¹⁸Benaiah son of Jehoiada commanded the Cherethites and the Pelethites. And David's sons served as royal advisors.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *meteg ha-ammah* is notoriously difficult. *Meteg* means 'bridle, bit' -- the device used to control a horse. *Ammah* can mean 'cubit' (a unit of measure), 'forearm,' or 'mother-city' (the metropolitan center of a region). The most coherent reading treats *ammah* as 'mother-city' (i.e., the capital), making the whole phrase a metaphor for seizing political control: David took the bridle -- the instrument of governance -- from the Philistine capital. The Chronicles parallel (1 Chronicles 18:1) replaces the idiom with the literal statement that David captured Gath and its daughter-towns.
1. The verb *vayyakhi'em* ('he subdued them, brought them into subjection') from the root *kana'* indicates permanent subordination, not merely a battlefield victory. This is the decisive end of Philistine independence. The nation that captured the Ark, killed Saul, and terrorized Israel for generations is now a vassal state.
2. The verb *vaymadedem* ('he measured them') from the root *madad* ('to measure, stretch out') is typically used for measuring land or materials. Its application to human captives lying on the ground creates a disturbing image of dehumanization -- people treated as territory to be divided. The phrase *hashkev otam artsah* ('making them lie on the ground') places the captives in the posture of total submission, face-down in the dirt.
2. The word *minchah* ('tribute, gift, offering') is the same term used for grain offerings brought to God. When applied to vassal tribute, it carries overtones of compulsory worship -- the subjected nation must continually bring offerings to acknowledge the overlord's supremacy. Moab's tribute to David mirrors what Israel owed to God alone.
3. Hadadezer (*hadad-ezer*, 'Hadad is help') bears a theophoric name invoking Hadad, the Aramean storm god -- the chief deity of the Aramean pantheon. His father Rehob ('broad place, open square') is otherwise unknown. Zobah was a powerful Aramean kingdom located in the Beqa Valley of modern Lebanon, controlling territory between Damascus and Hamath. It was the dominant Aramean state of the period, and its defeat would have sent shockwaves through the entire region.
3. The phrase *lehashiv yado binehar-Perat* ('to restore his hand/control at the River Euphrates') is ambiguous in its subject. Most naturally it refers to Hadadezer going to reassert his authority at the Euphrates -- perhaps to reclaim territory from a rival or to reinforce his northern frontier -- when David intercepted him. This campaign brought David's power to the Euphrates, fulfilling the geographic scope of the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:18).
4. The textual numbers here differ from the Chronicles parallel. The MT of 2 Samuel 8:4 reads 'one thousand and seven hundred horsemen' (*elef usheva-me'ot parashim*), while 1 Chronicles 18:4 reads 'one thousand chariots and seven thousand horsemen.' The discrepancy likely reflects either a scribal confusion between similar-looking Hebrew numerals or different textual traditions. We follow the MT of 2 Samuel.
4. The verb *vay'aqqr* ('he hamstrung') from the root *aqar* ('to uproot, sever the tendon') describes the deliberate crippling of horses by cutting the rear leg tendons. This was a known ancient practice for neutralizing captured chariot forces you did not intend to use. David's decision to hamstring rather than keep these horses aligns with the Deuteronomic kingship law prohibiting the multiplication of horses (Deuteronomy 17:16), though the narrator does not cite that law explicitly.
5. Aram *Dammeseq* ('Aram of Damascus') refers to the Aramean kingdom centered on Damascus, distinct from Zobah. Damascus intervened as an ally of Zobah, likely because Hadadezer's defeat would leave Damascus exposed as the next target -- which is exactly what happened. The Aramean coalition failed to contain David, and the result was the loss of twenty-two thousand men and the garrisoning of Damascus itself.
5. The verb *vayyakh* ('he struck') from *nakah* is the chapter's dominant verb -- it appears repeatedly as David strikes one enemy after another. The narrator's relentless repetition creates a drumbeat of conquest: David struck the Philistines, struck Moab, struck Hadadezer, struck Aram. The verb carries the force of decisive military defeat, not merely skirmishing.
6. The term *netsivim* ('garrisons, deputies, pillars') from the root *natsav* ('to stand, be stationed') refers to military outposts with standing troops. These are permanent occupying forces, not temporary camps. The same word described the Philistine garrisons in Israelite territory in 1 Samuel 10:5 and 13:3 -- a deliberate reversal. Israel once groaned under foreign garrisons; now David plants his own in foreign capitals.

6. The refrain vayyosha YHWH et-David bekhoh asher halakh ('the LORD saved/gave-victory-to David wherever he went') uses the verb yasha ('to save, deliver, give victory') -- the same root as the names Joshua and Jesus. The narrator attributes David's military success entirely to divine action. This refrain appears again in verse 14, bracketing the conquest narrative in a theological frame: everything between these two statements is the LORD's doing.
7. The shiltei ha-zahav ('shields of gold') were likely ceremonial or parade shields carried by Hadadezer's elite guard -- not battlefield equipment but symbols of royal wealth and military prestige. The word shelet can mean 'shield' or 'quiver,' but the gold construction points to ornamental function. By bringing them to Jerusalem, David transfers the symbols of Aramean royal power to his own capital, visually declaring Jerusalem the new center of regional authority.
7. The phrase el avdei Hadadezer ('belonging to the servants/officers of Hadadezer') uses avadim in its sense of 'royal officials, courtiers' -- high-ranking military officers, not slaves. These were the king's personal retinue, and their golden equipment represented the wealth of the Zobahite court. According to 1 Kings 14:26, Shishak of Egypt later carried these shields away when he invaded Jerusalem under Rehoboam.
8. The place names Betah and Berothai appear as Tibhath and Cun in the Chronicles parallel (1 Chronicles 18:8), suggesting either variant traditions or different names for the same locations. Both were cities in the Zobahite kingdom, likely in the northern Beqa Valley of modern Lebanon, an area rich in mineral resources.
8. The phrase nechoshet harbeh me'od ('bronze very much exceedingly') piles up intensifiers to emphasize the staggering quantity. Nechoshet can refer to either copper or bronze (a copper-tin alloy); in this military context, bronze is more likely, as it was the primary metal for weapons, armor, and ceremonial objects in the ancient Near East before the full iron age.
9. Hamath was a major city-state on the Orontes River in what is now central Syria, located north of Zobah. Toi (called Tou in 1 Chronicles 18:9) was evidently a rival or enemy of Hadadezer, which explains his enthusiastic response to David's victory. The phrase kol-cheil Hadadezer ('the entire army of Hadadezer') emphasizes the totality of the defeat -- not a single engagement but the complete destruction of Zobah's military capacity.
9. The geopolitical logic is clear: Hadadezer had been the dominant power in the region, and his neighbors either served him or competed with him. His destruction creates a power vacuum that David fills. Toi's embassy in the next verse is the response of a pragmatic king: better to befriend the new superpower than to resist it.
10. The name Joram (yoram, 'the LORD is exalted') is a Yahwistic name, which is surprising for the son of an Aramean king. The Chronicles parallel gives his name as Hadoram (haduram, 'Hadad is exalted'), which fits an Aramean theophoric pattern. The Samuel text may reflect an Israelite adaptation of the name, or Joram may have adopted a Yahwistic name for diplomatic purposes when approaching David's court.
10. The phrase ish milchamot To'i hayah Hadadezer ('a man of wars of Toi was Hadadezer') is compressed but clear: Hadadezer had been Toi's persistent military adversary. The kelei-kesef ukelei-zahav ukelei nechoshet ('vessels of silver and vessels of gold and vessels of bronze') represent portable wealth of the highest order -- diplomatic gifts that doubled as tribute and would later be consecrated to the LORD (verse 11).
11. The verb hiqdish from the root q-d-sh ('to be holy, set apart') is the technical term for dedicating something to sacred use -- removing it from the profane sphere and assigning it to God. When David consecrates the spoils, he is making a theological claim about the purpose of his conquests: the wealth belongs to the LORD who gave the victories.
11. The verb kibbesh ('he subdued, conquered') from the root k-b-sh means 'to tread down, bring into bondage, subdue.' It is the same verb used in Genesis 1:28 for humanity's mandate to 'subdue the earth.' David's dominion over the nations mirrors, in miniature, the creational mandate -- though the narrator is careful to attribute David's success to the LORD, not to David's inherent authority.
12. This verse functions as a catalogue of David's empire, listing the conquered peoples in geographic sweep: Aram (northeast), Moab (east), Ammon (east-southeast), Philistia (west), Amalek (south), and Zobah (far north). The list represents a nearly complete circle around Israel, demonstrating that David has secured his borders in every direction. The mention of Ammon anticipates the war narrated in chapters 10-12, while Amalek recalls David's earlier campaigns from his Ziklag days (1 Samuel 27:8, 30:1-20).
12. The phrase mishellal Hadadezer ('from the plunder of Hadadezer') singles out the Zobahite spoils as a separate and particularly significant category, likely because of the enormous quantity of bronze noted in verse 8. Hadadezer's defeat was the crown jewel of David's campaigns, and his spoils merited special mention.
13. The MT reads Aram but the context demands Edom. The Valley of Salt (gei-melach) is located near the southern end of the Dead Sea, well within Edomite territory. The Chronicles parallel (1 Chronicles 18:12) reads Edom, as does the Psalm title of Psalm 60. The confusion arises because the Hebrew letters dalet (ד) and resh (ר) are nearly identical, differing by a single stroke. We render 'Edomites' following the geographic logic and the parallel texts.
13. The phrase vayyaas David shem ('David made a name for himself') directly fulfills the Nathanic promise of 2 Samuel 7:9, where God declared ve'asiti lekha shem gadol ('I will make you a great name'). The narrator uses the identical vocabulary to connect military conquest to covenant promise.
14. The repetition bekhoh-Edom sam netsivim ('throughout all Edom he placed garrisons') is emphatic in Hebrew -- the narrator says it twice to stress the completeness of the occupation. No region of Edom was left ungarrisoned. The Edomite subjugation lasted until the reign of Jehoram (2 Kings 8:20-22), when Edom revolted and regained independence.

14. The refrain *vayyosha* YHWH et-David *bekhol asher halakh* appears here for the second and final time, identical to verse 6. This literary bracketing (*inclusio*) turns the entire conquest narrative into a theological statement: everything within these markers is the LORD's saving action through David. The verb *yasha* ('to deliver, save, give victory') keeps the focus on God as the true warrior.
15. The verb *vayyimlokh* ('he reigned') from the root *m-l-k* marks a transition from the military catalogue to the administrative summary. The phrase *al-kol-Yisra'el* ('over all Israel') is significant: David now rules the united kingdom -- all twelve tribes, north and south -- a unity that will fracture permanently under his grandson Rehoboam.
15. The phrase *oseh mishpat u-tsedakah* ('doing/executing justice and righteousness') uses the active participle *oseh*, indicating ongoing, habitual action -- not a single act of justice but a continuous pattern of governance. This is what David does as a matter of course. The word pair *mishpat u-tsedakah* appears together throughout the Hebrew Bible as the definitive description of godly rule (Genesis 18:19, 1 Kings 10:9, Psalm 89:14, Isaiah 5:7, Jeremiah 22:3).
16. The administrative list that follows in verses 16-18 is a royal cabinet roster, a standard feature of ancient Near Eastern royal records. Joab's position *al-ha-tsava* ('over the army') made him the highest military official in the kingdom -- commander-in-chief of all Israelite forces. His appointment is unsurprising given his role throughout David's rise, though his methods (the murders of Abner and later Amasa) cast a shadow over his tenure.
16. The title *mazkir* for Jehoshaphat is often translated 'recorder' but more accurately describes a royal herald or chief of protocol -- the official responsible for public proclamations, diplomatic communications, and the administration of state affairs. The root *z-k-r* ('to remember, mention, proclaim') suggests the *mazkir* was the king's voice and institutional memory, managing the official narrative and bureaucratic records of the kingdom.
17. The genealogy of this verse presents a difficulty: elsewhere Abiathar is called the son of Ahimelech (1 Samuel 22:20), not the reverse. The phrase *Ahimelekh ben-Evyatar* ('Ahimelech son of Abiathar') may reflect a textual corruption, a grandson bearing his grandfather's name, or a reversal of father-son names in the transmission of the text. The Chronicles parallel (1 Chronicles 18:16) reads the same, suggesting the variation is ancient.
17. The title *sofer* ('scribe') for Seraiah (called Shavsha in 1 Chronicles 18:16) designates the royal secretary -- a position of enormous importance in ancient Near Eastern administration. The *sofer* managed royal correspondence, treaties, tax records, census data, and legal documents. The word derives from the root *s-p-r* ('to count, recount, write'), indicating both literary and administrative functions.
18. The Cherethites (*kerethi*) and Pelethites (*pelethi*) appear throughout the David narratives as the king's personal guard force (2 Samuel 15:18, 20:7, 23). The Cherethites are connected etymologically and geographically to Crete (Caphtor), and their presence in David's guard reflects the cosmopolitan nature of his military -- a king who attracts foreign warriors to his service. The Pelethites may derive from *palat* ('to escape, deliver') suggesting 'runners' or 'couriers,' or from *pelishti* ('Philistine') in an abbreviated form.
18. The phrase *uveneî David kohanîm hayû* ('and the sons of David were kohanîm') is rendered 'served as royal advisors' because the context demands a non-priestly meaning. David's sons were from the tribe of Judah, not Levi, and could not have served as priests in the Levitical sense. The word *kohen* has a broader semantic range including 'minister, chief officer, one who officiates' -- a meaning preserved in the Chronicles parallel which reads *harishonîm le-yad hammelekh* ('the chief ones at the king's side'). The term reflects an early, pre-centralized usage of *kohen* for any person serving in a position of intimate authority.

9

Summary: *David, now secure on the throne over all Israel, asks whether any survivor remains from Saul's house to whom he can show faithful love for Jonathan's sake. A former servant of Saul named Ziba informs him that Jonathan's son Mephibosheth is alive, crippled in both feet, living in obscurity at the house of Machir in Lo-debar. David summons Mephibosheth, who falls on his face in terror, expecting execution. Instead, David restores to him all the land that belonged to Saul, assigns Ziba and his household to work the land on Mephibosheth's behalf, and grants Mephibosheth a permanent place at the king's table -- the same honor given to a royal son. Mephibosheth eats at David's table for the rest of his life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the fulfillment of the covenant David swore to Jonathan in 1 Samuel 20:14-17 and 1 Samuel 20:42, where Jonathan made David promise to show *chesed* to his descendants forever. David does not merely refrain from killing Saul's remaining heir -- the expected political move for a new dynasty -- he actively seeks him out, restores his inheritance, and elevates him to the status of a royal son. The phrase 'he shall eat at my table' appears four times in this short chapter (verses 7, 10, 11, 13), hammering its significance: the table of the king is the place of belonging, provision, and protection. Mephibosheth's crippled feet, mentioned at both the beginning and end of the chapter, frame the narrative with his vulnerability -- he cannot run, cannot fight, cannot flee. He is entirely dependent on David's faithfulness to a dead man's covenant. The theological weight is unmistakable: this is what *chesed* looks like when it has the power to act. David's*

question in verse 1 -- 'Is there still anyone left?' -- echoes God's own covenant-seeking posture throughout Scripture, the divine impulse to find someone on whom to lavish faithful love.

Translation Friction: *The name Mephibosheth itself presents difficulty. The form in the MT appears to derive from mephi-boshet ('from the mouth of shame'), but this is almost certainly a scribal alteration of the original Merib-baal ('contender of Baal' or 'Baal is advocate'), preserved in 1 Chronicles 8:34 and 9:40. The scribes replaced the theophoric element ba'al ('lord/master,' also the name of the Canaanite deity) with boshet ('shame') -- a theological censoring that occurs with other names in Samuel (compare Ish-bosheth for Esh-baal). We retain the MT form Mephibosheth since it is the text we are rendering, but the reader should know the original name carried no shame. The town Lo-debar (verse 4) may itself be significant: the name can be parsed as lo-davar ('no-thing' or 'no-word'), suggesting a place of nothingness or desolation. Whether this is folk etymology or genuine wordplay, the narrative effect is potent -- Mephibosheth has been living in a place whose name means 'nothing,' and David brings him to the king's table. Mephibosheth's self-description as a 'dead dog' (verse 8) is the lowest possible self-assessment in ancient Near Eastern culture, combining the uncleanness of a dog with the worthlessness of a corpse.*

Connections: *The covenant chain runs directly from 1 Samuel 18:3 (Jonathan cuts a covenant with David), through 1 Samuel 20:14-17 (Jonathan extracts David's promise to show chesed to his house forever), to this chapter where David fulfills that oath. The phrase chesed Elohim ('faithful love of God') in verse 3 is extraordinary -- David is not merely showing human kindness but enacting the very chesed that God shows to His covenant partners. This language connects to Exodus 34:6-7, where YHWH proclaims Himself as rav chesed ('abounding in faithful love'). The restoration of Saul's land anticipates the Jubilee principle of Leviticus 25, where alienated land returns to its original family. Mephibosheth eating at the king's table 'like one of the king's sons' (verse 11) echoes the adoption language of covenant theology -- the outsider brought inside, the vulnerable made secure. David's treatment of Mephibosheth stands in sharp contrast to the standard ancient Near Eastern practice of eliminating a predecessor's surviving family to prevent rival claims (seen in the Jehu narratives of 2 Kings 10).*

¹David said, "Is there still anyone remaining from the house of Saul, so that I may show him faithful love for Jonathan's sake?" ²Now the house of Saul had a servant whose name was Ziba. They summoned him before David, and the king said to him, "Are you Ziba?" He said, "Your servant." ³The king said, "Is there no one left from the house of Saul, so that I may show him the faithful love of God?" Ziba said to the king, "There is still a son of Jonathan -- crippled in his feet." ⁴The king said to him, "Where is he?" Ziba said to the king, "He is in the house of Machir son of Ammiel, in Lo-debar." ⁵King David sent and brought him from the house of Machir son of Ammiel, from Lo-debar. ⁶When Mephibosheth son of Jonathan son of Saul came before David, he fell on his face and prostrated himself. David said, "Mephibosheth." He answered, "Here is your servant." ⁷David said to him, "Do not be afraid, because I will certainly show you faithful love for the sake of Jonathan your father. I will restore to you all the land of Saul your grandfather, and you yourself will eat at my table continually." ⁸He prostrated himself and said, "What is your servant, that you would turn your attention to a dead dog like me?" ⁹The king summoned Ziba, Saul's attendant, and said to him, "Everything that belonged to Saul and to his entire house I have given to your master's son." ¹⁰You will work the land for him -- you, your sons, and your servants. You will bring in the harvest so that your master's son will have food. But Mephibosheth, your master's son, will eat at my table continually." Now Ziba had fifteen sons and twenty servants. ¹¹Ziba said to the king, "Your servant will do exactly as my lord the king commands his servant." And Mephibosheth ate at David's table like one of the king's own sons. ¹²Mephibosheth had a young son whose name was Mica. And everyone living in Ziba's household served Mephibosheth. ¹³So Mephibosheth lived in Jerusalem, because he ate continually at the king's table. He was crippled in both his feet.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase ha-ki yesh od ('is there still anyone?') carries an urgency that suggests David has been thinking about this obligation and is now acting on it. The particle ki intensifies the question -- David is not idly wondering but actively inquiring with purpose.
1. The phrase ba'avor Yehonatan ('for Jonathan's sake') grounds the entire chapter's action in a relationship between David and a dead man. Everything that follows -- the inquiry, the summoning, the land restoration, the table invitation -- flows from David's faithfulness to Jonathan's memory and to the covenant they swore.

2. Ziba is identified as an eved ('servant, slave') of the house of Saul -- someone who survived the collapse of the Saulide household and retained knowledge of its affairs. His survival and availability suggest he had adapted to the new political reality. His terse response *avdekha* ('your servant') is the standard formula of submission before a king, but it also signals a transfer of loyalty: Ziba was Saul's servant, but he now addresses David as master.
2. The fact that David already knows Ziba's name ('Are you Ziba?') suggests prior intelligence-gathering. David has done his homework before this audience. The scene is not spontaneous generosity but deliberate covenant fulfillment.
3. The phrase *chesed Elohim* ('faithful love of God') appears nowhere else in the historical narratives with this exact force. David is not saying 'godly kindness' in a generic sense -- he is declaring that the *chesed* he intends to perform participates in and reflects the *chesed* that God Himself exercises toward covenant partners. This elevates the entire chapter from political generosity to theological enactment.
3. Ziba's description of Mephibosheth as *nekeh raglayim* ('crippled in his feet') is the same phrase used in the narrator's introduction in 4:4. The repetition emphasizes that Mephibosheth's disability is his defining social reality -- in the ancient world, a man who could not walk unaided was excluded from military leadership, priestly service, and most forms of political power. Ziba may be subtly reassuring David: this surviving heir poses no political threat.
4. David's question *eifoh hu* ('where is he?') is immediate -- there is no deliberation, no council, no weighing of political risk. The king hears that Jonathan's son exists and instantly moves to locate him. This urgency characterizes *chesed* in action: it does not calculate, it acts.
4. Machir son of Ammiel is a man of means in the Transjordan region who has been sheltering Mephibosheth. He will reappear in 2 Samuel 17:27-29, providing supplies to David during Absalom's rebellion -- suggesting he is a loyalist to David's house despite harboring Saul's grandson. Lo-debar is in Gilead, east of the Jordan, far from the centers of Israelite power. The name Lo-debar can be parsed as *lo-davar* ('nothing' or 'no-word'), suggesting a place of obscurity and desolation -- Jonathan's son has been living in the land of nothing, hidden from both danger and dignity.
5. The verb *vayiqqachehu* ('and he took/fetched him') carries the weight of royal authority -- David did not send an invitation but a summons. Mephibosheth had no choice in this matter, which explains the terror of his response in the next verse. From Mephibosheth's perspective, a royal summons to the grandson of the previous king could mean only one thing: execution. The narrative's power depends on the gap between what Mephibosheth expects and what David intends.
5. The repetition of the full location -- the house of Machir son of Ammiel, from Lo-debar -- slows the narrative deliberately. The reader is meant to feel the distance: from the land of nothing to the palace of the king.
6. The full genealogical identification -- Mephibosheth ben Yehonatan ben Sha'ul -- is rare three-generation naming that serves a dual purpose. It identifies Mephibosheth as the legitimate heir of both Jonathan and Saul, and it reminds the reader (and David) exactly who is prostrate on the floor: the grandson of the king David replaced and the son of the friend David loved.
6. The verbs *vayippol al-panav* *vayishtachu* ('he fell on his face and prostrated himself') describe the full prostration of a subject before a king -- face to the ground, body flat. For a man crippled in both feet, this posture would have been physically difficult and painful to assume. Mephibosheth's single word *hinneh* ('here') combined with *avdekha* ('your servant') is the response of a man who believes he is about to die and is submitting to whatever comes. David speaks only the name: 'Mephibosheth.' It is an address that recognizes personhood before delivering a verdict.
7. The phrase *al tira* ('do not be afraid') recognizes what Mephibosheth is experiencing: mortal terror. David does not dismiss the fear or pretend it is irrational. In the ancient Near East, a new dynasty routinely exterminated the previous royal family. Mephibosheth's fear is entirely justified; David's response is entirely extraordinary.
7. The word *tamid* ('continually, always, perpetually') at the end of the sentence transforms the table invitation from a single gesture into a permanent arrangement. This is not a banquet invitation but a change of status. Mephibosheth will eat at the king's table for the rest of his life -- he becomes, in effect, an adopted member of the royal household.
8. The dog metaphor appears throughout the David narratives as the ultimate expression of worthlessness. Goliath asked David, 'Am I a dog?' (1 Samuel 17:43). Abner raged at being called a 'dog's head' (2 Samuel 3:8). But only Mephibosheth calls himself a dead dog -- the superlative of the superlative of worthlessness. David's response to this self-assessment is not words but actions: he has already pronounced the verdict of *chesed*, and no amount of self-deprecation will change it.
8. The verb *panita* ('you have turned') from the root *panah* means to turn one's face toward someone -- to pay attention, to regard. Mephibosheth is astonished that the king's face has turned toward him at all. In a court culture where the king's gaze conferred status and his turned back meant rejection, David's decision to face Mephibosheth is itself an act of honor.
9. David now addresses Ziba as *na'ar Sha'ul* ('attendant/servant of Saul'), reminding both Ziba and the court that his primary loyalty obligation is to the Saulide house, not to David. The royal decree is comprehensive: *kol asher hayah le-Sha'ul u-le-khol beito* ('everything that belonged to Saul and to his entire house'). This includes agricultural land, estates, and whatever property rights the crown had confiscated or held in trust after Saul's death.
9. The phrase *natatti le-ven adonekha* ('I have given to the son of your master') uses the perfect tense -- the gift is already decided and irrevocable. David is not offering or promising; he has given. The legal transfer is complete by royal decree. By calling Mephibosheth 'the son of your master,' David also reestablishes the social hierarchy: Ziba served Saul, and he will now serve Saul's heir.

10. David's instructions create a two-tier arrangement. Ziba and his household -- a substantial labor force of fifteen sons and twenty servants, totaling thirty-five workers plus their families -- will farm Saul's restored estates and deliver the produce to Mephibosheth. This ensures Mephibosheth has both income from the land and status at the royal table. The word *ve-avadta* ('and you will work/serve') uses the root *avad*, which means both 'to serve' and 'to work the ground' (the same verb used for Adam's task in Genesis 2:15). Ziba is being assigned to serve the land on Mephibosheth's behalf.
10. The repetition of *al shulchani tamid* ('at my table continually') for the second time reinforces that Mephibosheth's place at the king's table is not a temporary honor but a permanent status. The narrator's aside about Ziba's household size establishes the scale of the operation -- this is not a small garden but a significant agricultural enterprise requiring dozens of workers.
11. Ziba's response is formulaic obedience: *ke-khol asher yetsaveh adoni ha-melekh et avdo, ken ya'aseh avdekha* ('according to all that my lord the king commands his servant, so your servant will do'). The language is correct and complete, but subsequent events (2 Samuel 16:1-4; 19:24-30) will raise serious questions about Ziba's true loyalty -- he will later accuse Mephibosheth of treason during Absalom's rebellion, and the truth of that accusation is never fully resolved.
11. The narrator's concluding statement is the chapter's theological climax: *u-Mephiboshet okhel al shulchani ke-achad mi-bney ha-melekh* ('and Mephibosheth ate at his table like one of the king's sons'). The phrase *ke-achad mi-bney ha-melekh* ('like one of the king's sons') is adoption language -- Mephibosheth is given the status, provision, and dignity of a royal son without being a biological son. This is the fullest expression of *chesed*: the covenant outsider is brought inside and treated as family.
12. The notice about Mica (Mikha) extends the narrative's horizon into the next generation. Jonathan's line continues through Mephibosheth to Mica, and 1 Chronicles 8:35-38 traces the genealogy further still. David's *chesed* has preserved not merely an individual but a lineage.
12. The final clause -- *ve-khol moshav bet Tsiva avadim li-Mephiboshet* ('and all who dwelt in Ziba's house were servants to Mephibosheth') -- establishes the new social order. Ziba's entire household, including his fifteen sons and twenty servants, is subordinate to the crippled grandson of Saul. The reversal is complete: the man who lived in the land of nothing now commands a workforce of dozens.
13. The word *pisasech* ('lame, limping, crippled') is a stronger term than the earlier *nekeheh raglayim* ('struck in the feet'). It describes a permanent, visible disability. The narrator places this detail last, after the table and the city, to create a final image that refuses sentimentality: Mephibosheth is honored, provided for, and permanently injured. *Chesed* does not undo the past; it redeems the present.
13. The fourfold repetition of eating at the king's table (verses 7, 10, 11, 13) creates a literary *inclusio* that frames the entire chapter. The table is the dominant symbol: it represents belonging, provision, protection, and dignity. For a man who cannot stand, the table is the great equalizer -- seated, Mephibosheth is indistinguishable from any of the king's sons.

10

Summary: *Following the death of Nahash king of Ammon, David sends ambassadors to express covenant loyalty to Nahash's son Hanun. Hanun's advisors convince him that the delegation is a cover for espionage, and Hanun humiliates David's men by shaving half their beards and cutting their garments at the hip. When the Ammonites realize they have made themselves repugnant to David, they hire Aramean mercenaries from Beth-rehob, Zobah, Maacah, and Tob. Joab splits the Israelite army, taking the elite troops against the Arameans while assigning Abishai the Ammonite front. Joab delivers a remarkable speech: 'Be strong, and let us prove ourselves strong for the sake of our people and the cities of our God -- and may the LORD do what is good in His eyes.' Israel routs both the Arameans and the Ammonites. When Hadadezer rallies a second Aramean coalition from beyond the Euphrates, David personally leads the army to Helam and destroys it. The Aramean vassals make peace with Israel and refuse to help Ammon again.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most theologically significant battlefield speeches in the Hebrew Bible. Joab's exhortation in verse 12 combines human resolve with radical divine submission: 'Be strong' (chazaq) is a command for maximum human effort, but 'may the LORD do what is good in His eyes' surrenders the outcome entirely to God's sovereign judgment. Joab does not say 'the LORD will give us victory' -- he says the LORD will do whatever the LORD considers good. This is not triumphalism but covenantal realism: we fight with everything we have, and then we trust God with the result, even if the result is defeat. The speech is all the more striking because it comes from Joab, a man remembered elsewhere for ruthless pragmatism, political murder, and self-interest. Here, at the moment of genuine military crisis with enemies closing from two directions, Joab articulates a theology of warfare that David himself could not have said better.*

Translation Friction: The relationship between David and Nahash is never explained. Verse 2 states that Nahash 'showed chesed' to David, but the narrative provides no account of what this loyalty looked like. The most common scholarly reconstruction suggests Nahash supported David during his fugitive years on the principle that 'my enemy's enemy is my friend' -- Nahash and Saul were adversaries (1 Samuel 11), and David was Saul's refugee. This would mean the chesed between them was political alliance rather than personal affection, though David treats it as a genuine obligation. The Hebrew of verse 6 names the Aramean contingents in a way that creates geographic difficulties: the 'Arameans of Beth-rehob' and the 'Arameans of Zobah' may overlap, since Beth-rehob appears to be associated with Zobah elsewhere. The numbers -- twenty thousand foot soldiers, plus the king of Maacah with a thousand, and the men of Tob with twelve thousand -- represent a massive mercenary force, underscoring the severity of the threat.

Connections: This chapter is the immediate prelude to the Bathsheba crisis. The narrator places the Ammonite war here so that the reader understands the military context of 2 Samuel 11:1 -- 'at the time when kings go out to battle... David remained in Jerusalem.' The siege of Rabbah that begins in this chapter does not conclude until 12:26-31, creating a narrative frame around David's adultery and murder. Joab's speech in verse 12 echoes the chazaq ('be strong') commands given to Joshua (Joshua 1:6-9) and anticipates David's final charge to Solomon (1 Kings 2:2). The humiliation of David's ambassadors -- beard-shaving and garment-cutting -- is an assault on masculine honor and national dignity that parallels the ancient Near Eastern treaty-violation motif: to humiliate a king's envoys is to humiliate the king himself and to declare the relationship void. David's response, sending the men to Jericho until their beards regrow, shows both compassion for their shame and restraint before military action.

¹Some time after this, the king of the Ammonites died, and his son Hanun succeeded him on the throne. ²David said, "I will show faithful love to Hanun son of Nahash, just as his father showed faithful love to me." So David sent his servants to offer Hanun condolences for his father. When David's servants arrived in Ammonite territory, ³the Ammonite commanders said to Hanun their lord, "Do you really think David is honoring your father by sending you these men to offer condolences? Has David not sent his servants to you to scout the city, spy out its defenses, and prepare to overthrow it?" ⁴So Hanun seized David's servants, shaved off half of each man's beard, cut their robes at the waist so that their buttocks were exposed, and sent them away. ⁵When David was told what had happened, he sent messengers to meet the men, because they were deeply humiliated. The king said, "Stay in Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return." ⁶When the Ammonites realized they had made themselves repulsive to David, they sent and hired the Arameans of Beth-rehob and the Arameans of Zobah -- twenty thousand foot soldiers -- along with the king of Maacah with one thousand men, and twelve thousand men from Tob. ⁷When David heard this, he dispatched Joab with the entire army -- the professional warriors. ⁸The Ammonites marched out and formed their battle line at the entrance of the city gate, while the Arameans of Zobah and Rehob, along with the men of Tob and Maacah, took position separately in the open field. ⁹When Joab saw that the battle lines were closing on him from the front and from behind, he selected the best fighters in all Israel and deployed them against the Arameans. ¹⁰The rest of the troops he placed under the command of his brother Abishai, who deployed them to face the Ammonites. ¹¹He said, "If the Arameans prove too strong for me, you will come to reinforce me. And if the Ammonites prove too strong for you, I will come to reinforce you. ¹²Be strong! Let us prove ourselves strong for the sake of our people and the cities of our God -- and may the LORD do what is good in His eyes." ¹³Joab advanced with his troops into battle against the Arameans, and they fled before him. ¹⁴When the Ammonites saw that the Arameans had fled, they also broke and ran from Abishai, retreating into the city. Joab then withdrew from the Ammonite campaign and returned to Jerusalem. ¹⁵When the Arameans saw that they had been routed by Israel, they regrouped as a unified force. ¹⁶Hadadezer sent messengers and mobilized the Arameans from beyond the Euphrates River. They assembled at Helam, with Shobach, commander of Hadadezer's army, leading them. ¹⁷When David received the report, he mustered all Israel, crossed the Jordan, and marched to Helam. The Arameans formed their battle lines to meet David and engaged him in combat. ¹⁸The Arameans fled before Israel. David destroyed seven hundred Aramean chariot crews, forty thousand cavalry, and struck down Shobach the army commander, who died on the field. ¹⁹When all the vassal kings under Hadadezer saw that they had been crushed before Israel, they made peace with Israel and became subject to them. From that point on, the Arameans were afraid to come to

the aid of the Ammonites again.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase vayehi acharei-khen ('it happened after this') is a standard temporal connector linking this episode to the preceding narrative of David's consolidation of power. The Ammonite king is not named here, though verse 2 will identify him as Nahash. The succession formula -- vayyimlokh beno tachtav ('his son reigned in his place') -- is the standard Hebrew expression for dynastic transition, the same formula used across Kings and Chronicles.
1. The Ammonites (benei Ammon, literally 'sons of Ammon') occupied the territory east of the Jordan, centered on the capital Rabbah (modern Amman, Jordan). The death of a king and the accession of a new ruler was a moment of diplomatic vulnerability in the ancient Near East -- alliances had to be reaffirmed, and new kings were often tested by neighbors probing for weakness.
2. The verb e'eseh-chesed ('I will do/show chesed') uses the same construction found in David's covenant language with Jonathan (1 Samuel 20:14-15). Chesed is not mere kindness but obligated loyalty flowing from relationship -- David is not being generous; he is paying a debt. The preposition im ('with') marks the relational dimension: chesed is always done with someone, never merely to them.
2. The verb lenachamo ('to comfort him') from the root nacham carries the sense of consolation in grief, the same root found in the name Nahash's own name is unrelated (nachash, 'serpent'). The delegation be-yad avadav ('by the hand of his servants') indicates these are official emissaries -- the 'hand' idiom means 'through the agency of.' These are not casual visitors but royal representatives whose treatment reflects directly on David's honor.
3. The phrase ha-mekhabbed David et-avikha be'einekha ('is David honoring your father in your eyes?') uses the verb kibbed ('to honor, give weight to') with a skeptical interrogative force -- 'do you really think?' The construction be'einekha ('in your eyes') implies Hanun is seeing what he wants to see rather than what is actually there.
3. The three infinitives -- lachqor ('to search, investigate'), uleraggelah ('to spy it out'), and ulehophekhah ('to overthrow it') -- form a military sequence from reconnaissance to destruction. The verb ragal ('to spy') is the same root used for the spies sent into Canaan (Numbers 21:32), carrying overtones of covert hostile activity. The verb haphakh ('to overturn, overthrow') is the word used for the destruction of Sodom (Genesis 19:21, 25), implying total annihilation.
4. The verb vaygallach ('he shaved') from the root galach is the standard term for removing hair, but its application to half the beard (chatsi zeqanam) makes it an act of deliberate disfigurement. In ancient Israelite and broader Near Eastern culture, the beard was sacrosanct -- to touch another man's beard was an intimate act (cf. Joab seizing Amasa's beard in 2 Samuel 20:9), and to forcibly shave it was a profound violation of personhood.
4. The phrase vayyikhrot et-madveihem ba-chetsi ad shtothehem ('he cut their garments in the middle, up to their buttocks') describes cutting the robes short enough to expose the men's nakedness. The word madve (plural madveihem) is a rare term for a robe or outer garment. The word shtothehem ('their buttocks') is direct and unambiguous -- the exposure is deliberate and sexual in its shaming force. Sending ambassadors home in this condition is the diplomatic equivalent of a declaration of war.
5. The verb niklamim ('humiliated, ashamed, disgraced') from the root kalam describes a shame that is social and public, not merely internal embarrassment. These men have been stripped of their dignity before foreign eyes, and returning to Jerusalem in their current state would compound the humiliation by displaying it to their own people. David's response is immediate and compassionate: he sends someone to intercept them before they reach the capital.
5. Jericho (Yericho) sits in the Jordan Valley near the border with Ammonite territory -- it is the first major Israelite settlement the men would reach on their return journey. David's instruction to remain there until their beards regrow is both practical and merciful: he spares them the shame of appearing in Jerusalem while disfigured. The period needed for beard regrowth -- several weeks to months -- also serves as a cooling period before David must respond to the provocation.
6. The verb niv'ashu ('they had become odious, they stank') from the root ba'ash is strikingly physical -- it means to emit a foul smell, to become repugnant. The same verb describes the stench of the Nile turning to blood (Exodus 7:21) and the rotting manna (Exodus 16:20). The Ammonites have not merely offended David; they have made themselves stink in his nostrils, a metaphor that signals irreversible hostility.
6. The Aramean city-states named here -- Beth-rehob, Zobah, Maacah, and Tob -- represent the network of small but militarily capable kingdoms in the region between Damascus and the Transjordan. Beth-rehob was located near the headwaters of the Jordan; Zobah was a larger Aramean state whose king Hadadezer will feature prominently in verse 16. The hiring (vayyiskkeru, from the root sakhar, 'to hire for wages') emphasizes that these are mercenaries, not allies motivated by loyalty -- a pointed contrast to the chesed David offered freely.
7. David's response is immediate but delegated: he sends Joab rather than leading the campaign himself. This detail matters for the larger narrative arc -- David's decision to stay behind during the Ammonite war will be repeated in 11:1, where his absence from the battlefield leads directly to the Bathsheba affair. The pattern of delegation begins here.
7. The phrase kol-ha-tsava ha-gibborim ('the entire army, the mighty warriors') likely refers to the professional military corps as distinguished from a general militia call-up. The gibborim ('mighty men, elite warriors') are David's veteran soldiers -- the core fighting force described in detail in 2 Samuel 23. David commits his best troops, recognizing the scale of the threat.

8. The phrase *petach ha-sha'ar* ('the opening of the gate') places the Ammonite line at the most defensible position available -- the gate complex of Rabbah, where the walls channel any attacker into a narrow killing zone. Ancient Near Eastern city gates were fortified chokepoints, and an army arrayed before one could retreat inside if pressed.
8. The word *levaddam* ('by themselves, separately') is tactically significant. The Aramean mercenaries are not standing alongside the Ammonites but are operating as an independent force in the open ground (*ba-sadeh*, 'in the field'). This separation is what creates the two-front crisis for Joab and necessitates the division of the Israelite army described in the following verses.
9. The phrase *penei ha-milchamah* ('the face of the battle') treats the battle as a living entity with a face that turns toward Joab from two directions. The prepositions *mippannim* ('from the front') and *me'achor* ('from behind') describe encirclement -- the worst tactical position a commander can face.
9. The word *bechurei* (from *bachur*, 'chosen, select, young warrior') describes the elite troops -- Israel's best and most experienced fighters. Joab assigns himself the harder task, which is both tactically sound (the elite troops have the best chance against the Aramean professionals) and characteristically bold. The verb *vayyikhchar* ('he chose') emphasizes deliberate selection, not a random division.
10. The phrase *yeter ha-am* ('the remainder of the people') indicates the troops Joab did not select for the Aramean engagement -- still a substantial force, but not the elite corps. Placing them *be-yad Abishai* ('in the hand of Abishai') uses the standard idiom for military command. Abishai was one of David's most capable warriors (cf. 2 Samuel 23:18-19), and his assignment to the Ammonite front was not a demotion but a recognition that the city-gate engagement required a different kind of fighting -- more defensive and positional than the open-field combat Joab would face.
10. Abishai (Avshai) was Joab's brother and one of the three sons of Zeruiah, David's sister. The family bond between the two commanders adds a personal dimension to the military division: each brother trusts the other with half the army and, implicitly, with his life.
11. The verb *techezaq* ('proves stronger, overpowers') from the root *chazaq* uses the same word that will appear in Joab's exhortation in the next verse. Here it describes the enemy's potential strength; in verse 12 it will become a command for Israel's own strength. The conditional structure *im... im* ('if... if') creates a balanced tactical plan that accounts for both possible scenarios.
11. The phrase *vehayitah li lishu'ah* ('you will be for me for deliverance/help') uses the noun *teshu'ah* ('salvation, deliverance, victory') -- the same word used elsewhere for God's saving acts. In military context, it means reinforcement that turns the tide. Joab's plan assumes that both fronts may be under pressure simultaneously, but that one will break before the other, freeing troops for mutual support.
12. The imperative *chazaq* ('be strong!') is the same command given to Joshua (Joshua 1:6, 7, 9, 18) and later charged by David to Solomon (1 Kings 2:2). It is the quintessential Hebrew command for courage in the face of overwhelming odds -- not emotional optimism but the resolve to stand and fight regardless of the odds. The hitpael form *venitkhazzaq* ('let us make ourselves strong, let us show ourselves courageous') adds reflexive and reciprocal force: we will strengthen ourselves and each other.
12. The phrase *be'ad ammeinu* ('for the sake of our people') and *be'ad arei Eloheinu* ('for the sake of the cities of our God') name the stakes in covenantal rather than political terms. The cities are not 'our cities' but 'the cities of our God' -- they belong to the LORD, and Israel fights to protect what belongs to God. The final clause *vaYHWH ya'aseh ha-tov be'einav* is not fatalism but faith: Joab trusts that whatever God decides is, by definition, good.
13. The verb *vayyiggash* ('he drew near, advanced') implies deliberate, aggressive forward movement -- Joab does not wait to be attacked but takes the initiative. The phrase *vayyanusu mippanav* ('they fled from before him') records the Aramean rout in five words. The brevity is itself a literary judgment: the mercenaries who were hired for their military prowess collapse at the first real engagement. Hired soldiers who fight for wages rather than homeland or covenant tend to break when the cost of staying exceeds the value of the pay.
13. The speed of the Aramean collapse suggests that Joab's elite troops attacked with overwhelming aggression, likely targeting the command structure. Professional mercenary armies of this period were organized around their commanders; once the leadership was neutralized or fled, the rank and file had no reason to stand and die for someone else's war.
14. The verb *vayyanusu* ('they fled') repeats from verse 13, creating a chain reaction: the Arameans fled, so the Ammonites fled. The phrase *vayyavo'u ha-ir* ('they entered the city') marks the Ammonites' retreat behind Rabbah's walls -- a defensive survival move, not a strategic withdrawal.
14. Joab's return to Jerusalem (*vayyavo Yerushalayim*) without completing the conquest of Rabbah is a significant narrative choice. The Ammonite war is suspended, not concluded. This open-ended status creates the conditions for chapter 11: the army will return to besiege Rabbah, but David will not go with them, and in his idleness the Bathsheba catastrophe will unfold.
15. The verb *niggraph* ('was struck, was defeated') from the root *nagaph* describes a decisive military defeat -- the same word used for plagues and catastrophic blows. The Arameans recognize the totality of their defeat: they were not merely pushed back but shattered. Their response -- *vayyei'asphu yachad* ('they gathered themselves together') -- signals a second mobilization, this time not as scattered mercenary contingents but as a unified coalition. The defeat has paradoxically united them.
15. This verse begins the second phase of the conflict: the Aramean war escalates from a mercenary engagement to a full-scale regional confrontation. The Arameans' decision to regroup rather than accept defeat transforms what began as an Ammonite problem into the most serious military challenge of David's reign.
16. The name *Hadadezer* (*Hadad'ezer*, 'Hadad is help') identifies the king of Zobah, the most powerful Aramean ruler of this period. The theophoric element *Hadad* refers to the Aramean storm deity. *Hadadezer* had already been defeated by David in 2 Samuel 8:3-8, making this remobilization an attempt to reverse that earlier humiliation.

16. The phrase *me'ever ha-nahar* ('from beyond the River') is a standard geographic designation for the territories east of the Euphrates -- the Aramean heartland in what is today northeastern Syria and northern Iraq. The mobilization of these distant forces represents a massive escalation: Hadadezer is calling in the full weight of the Aramean world. Helam (Chelam) is likely a site in the northern Transjordan, chosen as the assembly point because it lies between the Euphrates forces and the Israelite frontier.
17. The phrase *vayyesoph et-kol-Yisra'el* ('he gathered all Israel') indicates a comprehensive military mobilization -- not just the professional army but the full fighting strength of the united kingdom. This is the largest force David has deployed, commensurate with the largest threat he has faced.
17. The crossing of the Jordan (*vayyaavor et-ha-Yarden*) marks a deliberate march into the Transjordan, taking the fight to the enemy rather than waiting for them to cross into Israelite territory. David's advance to Helam (*vayyavo Hel'amah*) is an aggressive strategic move -- he chooses the ground and forces the engagement on his terms rather than allowing the Arameans to dictate the battlefield.
18. The parallel passage in 1 Chronicles 19:18 reads 'seven thousand chariot crews' rather than 'seven hundred,' and 'forty thousand foot soldiers' rather than 'horsemen' (*parashim*). The textual discrepancy between Samuel and Chronicles is well known and may reflect different manuscript traditions or a scribal error in transmission. The word *parashim* can mean 'horsemen' or 'cavalry' -- the Chronicles variant reading *ragli* ('foot soldiers') may preserve an earlier form.
18. The phrase *vayyamot sham* ('he died there') about Shobach is terse and final. The adverb *sham* ('there') anchors the death to the battlefield at Helam -- Shobach did not escape to die later of wounds but fell in the engagement. The loss of the supreme commander was catastrophic for the Aramean coalition, as it depended on centralized command under Hadadezer's appointed general.
19. The verb *vayyashlimu* ('they made peace') from the root *shalam* ('to be complete, to be at peace') in the *hiphil* means to submit, to enter into a peace agreement -- here with overtones of capitulation rather than negotiated settlement. The following verb *vayyaavdum* ('they served them') confirms the relationship: these kings are now David's vassals, paying tribute and providing military support.
19. The final clause *vayyir'u Aram lehoshi'a od et-benei Ammon* ('the Arameans were afraid to help the Ammonites again') closes the Aramean phase of the conflict with a psychological verdict: fear (*yir'ah*) now governs the Aramean posture toward Israel. The verb *lehoshi'a* ('to save, deliver, help') is ironic -- the Arameans were hired to 'save' Ammon, but they proved unable to save even themselves. The word *od* ('again, anymore') is permanent: this is not a temporary hesitation but a lasting strategic realignment.

11

Summary: *At the turn of the year, when kings go out to war, David sends Joab and the army to besiege Rabbah of the Ammonites -- but David himself stays in Jerusalem. From the roof of the palace he sees a woman bathing, learns she is Bathsheba daughter of Eliam and wife of Uriah the Hittite, sends for her, and sleeps with her. She conceives. David attempts a cover-up by recalling Uriah from the front and urging him to go home to his wife, but Uriah -- with devastating integrity -- refuses to enjoy the comforts of home while the Ark and his fellow soldiers sleep in the open field. David tries again, this time getting Uriah drunk, but still Uriah will not go home. Out of options, David writes a letter to Joab carried by Uriah's own hand, ordering Joab to place Uriah at the fiercest point of battle and then pull back so that he dies. Joab complies. Uriah is killed. Bathsheba mourns. David takes her as his wife. She bears a son. The chapter closes with a single devastating sentence: the thing that David had done was evil in the eyes of the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The narrator of 2 Samuel 11 is one of the most restrained voices in all of ancient literature. There is no moral commentary, no authorial outrage, no theological editorializing -- until the final clause. The narrator simply reports actions. David stayed. David saw. David sent. David took. David lay with her. She conceived. David sent for Uriah. Uriah refused. David wrote a letter. Uriah carried his own death warrant. Joab obeyed. Uriah died. The entire catastrophe unfolds through a chain of verbs -- above all the verb *shalach* ('to send'), which appears at least eight times and structures the chapter as a study in the abuse of royal power. A king who should be at war is instead sending: sending armies, sending messengers, sending for a woman, sending for her husband, sending a letter, sending a man to his death. The one thing David never does in this chapter is go himself. He acts entirely through intermediaries, and the verb 'sent' becomes the sound of royal corruption. Equally devastating is the narrator's treatment of Uriah. His speech in verse 11 is the moral center of the chapter, and it is placed in the mouth of a Hittite -- a foreigner, a man outside the covenant -- who displays more covenant loyalty than the king of Israel. Uriah refuses to go home because the Ark of God, Israel's army, and Judah are camping in the open field. He cannot enjoy comfort while his comrades endure hardship. The king who should embody Israel's covenant faithfulness has abandoned it; the foreign soldier carries it in his bones.*

Translation Friction: The Hebrew of verse 4 contains the parenthetical clause ve-hi mitqaddeshet mi-tum'atah ('and she was purifying herself from her uncleanness'), which most scholars read as a reference to Bathsheba having just completed her menstrual period. This detail serves a narrative function: it establishes that any pregnancy could only be David's, since she had not recently been with her husband. Some interpreters read the clause differently, as referring to purification after the sexual encounter itself, but the timing logic favors the first reading. We render the clause straightforwardly and note its narrative purpose. The question of Bathsheba's agency is a persistent tension. The Hebrew text gives her no speech until the two-word message 'I am pregnant.' She is the object of verbs: she is seen, she is sent for, she is taken. Whether this reflects coercion by royal power (a king's summons is not a request) or willing participation is debated, but the narrator's grammar places all initiative with David. The verb laqach ('took') in verse 4 is the same verb used for royal seizure throughout the Hebrew Bible, and the narrator appears to frame this as an act of power, not romance.

Connections: The opening phrase li-teshuvat ha-shanah le-et tset ha-melakhim ('at the return of the year, at the time kings go out') immediately frames David's failure: he is a king who does not go out. This inverts the trajectory of 1 Samuel, where David was always the one who went -- who pursued, who fought, who led from the front. The verb shalach ('sent') that dominates this chapter echoes its use in 1 Samuel 17, where Saul sends David out against Goliath; now David sends others to do what he should do himself. Uriah's reference to the Ark dwelling in booths (sukkot) in the field connects to the theology of divine presence: God's own dwelling is exposed to the elements alongside the soldiers, while David lounges on the palace roof. Nathan's confrontation in chapter 12 will reframe this entire chapter through the parable of the rich man who takes the poor man's lamb -- the verb laqach again. The letter David sends via Uriah is one of the most chilling devices in biblical narrative, echoing the motif of the unwitting bearer of his own doom found in other ancient Near Eastern literature (notably the tale of Bellerophon in Homer's Iliad 6.155-195). David's marriage to Bathsheba after Uriah's death sets the stage for the birth and death of the first child (chapter 12), the birth of Solomon (12:24), and ultimately the entire Davidic dynasty's entanglement with the consequences of this act.

¹At the turn of the year -- the season when kings march out to war -- David sent Joab, along with his officers and the entire army of Israel. They ravaged the Ammonites and laid siege to Rabbah. But David stayed behind in Jerusalem. ²One evening David got up from his couch and walked on the roof of the royal palace. From the roof he saw a woman bathing. The woman was strikingly beautiful. ³David sent someone to inquire about the woman. The report came back: "This is Bathsheba daughter of Eliam, wife of Uriah the Hittite." ⁴David sent messengers and took her. She came to him, and he lay with her -- she had just purified herself after her monthly period -- and she returned to her house. ⁵The woman conceived. She sent word to David: "I am pregnant." ⁶David sent word to Joab: "Send Uriah the Hittite to me." So Joab sent Uriah to David. ⁷When Uriah came to him, David asked about the welfare of Joab, the welfare of the troops, and the welfare of the war. ⁸Then David said to Uriah, "Go down to your house and wash your feet." Uriah left the palace, and a gift from the king was sent after him. ⁹But Uriah slept at the entrance of the palace with all the servants of his lord. He did not go down to his house. ¹⁰When they told David, "Uriah did not go down to his house," David said to Uriah, "Haven't you just come from a journey? Why didn't you go down to your house?" ¹¹Uriah said to David, "The Ark, and Israel, and Judah are dwelling in temporary shelters. My commander Joab and my lord's soldiers are camped in the open field. And I -- should I go to my house to eat and drink and lie with my wife? By your life and by the life of your soul, I will not do this thing." ¹²David said to Uriah, "Stay here today as well, and tomorrow I will send you back." So Uriah remained in Jerusalem that day and the next. ¹³David summoned him, and Uriah ate and drank in his presence, and David got him drunk. But in the evening Uriah went out to lie on his bedroll with the servants of his lord. He did not go down to his house. ¹⁴In the morning David wrote a letter to Joab and sent it by Uriah's own hand. ¹⁵He wrote in the letter: "Place Uriah at the front of the fiercest fighting, then pull back from behind him so that he is struck down and dies." ¹⁶When Joab was besieging the city, he assigned Uriah to the position where he knew the most formidable defenders were stationed. ¹⁷The men of the city came out and fought against Joab. Some of David's soldiers fell, and Uriah the Hittite also died. ¹⁸Joab sent a messenger and reported to David all the details of the battle. ¹⁹He instructed the messenger: "When you have finished reporting all the details of the battle to the king, ²⁰if the king's anger flares and he says to you, 'Why did you advance so close to the city to fight? Didn't you know they would shoot

from the wall? ²¹Who struck down Abimelech son of Jerubbesheth? Didn't a woman drop an upper millstone on him from the wall, and he died at Thebez? Why did you advance so close to the wall?' Then you are to say: 'Your servant Uriah the Hittite is also dead.'" ²²The messenger went. He came to David and reported everything Joab had sent him to say. ²³The messenger said to David, "The enemy overpowered us and came out against us in the open field, but we drove them back to the entrance of the gate. ²⁴The archers shot at your soldiers from the wall. Some of the king's men died -- and your servant Uriah the Hittite is also dead." ²⁵David said to the messenger, "Say this to Joab: 'Do not let this trouble you -- the sword devours one man as easily as another. Press your attack against the city harder and destroy it.' Encourage him." ²⁶When Uriah's wife heard that her husband Uriah was dead, she mourned for her lord. ²⁷When the mourning period passed, David sent and brought her into his house. She became his wife and bore him a son. But the thing David had done was evil in the eyes of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *li-teshuv* 'at the return/turning of the year') marks the spring campaign season, when the winter rains have ended and roads become passable for military movement. The construct *le-et tset ha-melakhim* ('at the time of the going-out of kings') uses the active participle -- kings go out, it is what kings do. The verb *shalach* ('he sent') will recur throughout this chapter as its structuring verb: David sends Joab (v. 1), sends to inquire about the woman (v. 3), sends messengers for her (v. 4), sends word to Joab (v. 6), sends Uriah back with food (v. 8), sends Uriah to his death via letter (v. 14), and Joab sends word back to David (v. 18, 22, 27). The narrator presents an entire catastrophe conducted by proxy.
2. The contrast between *va-yishlach* David ('David sent') and *ve-David yoshev* ('David was staying') is the narrative hinge. The verb *yashav* can mean simply 'to dwell' or 'to remain,' but in this military context it carries the weight of absence -- David is sitting when he should be marching.
3. The timing is *le-et ha-erev* ('toward the time of evening') -- late afternoon or early evening, when the heat breaks and rooftops become living spaces. David rises *me-al mishkavo* ('from upon his bed'), meaning his afternoon rest. A king at war would not be napping; a king at home has nothing else to do. The verb *va-yar* ('he saw') initiates the disaster. The narrator does not say David went looking for anything -- he simply saw. But everything that follows will flow from the decision to act on what he saw.
4. The phrase *tovat mar'eh me'od* ('very good of appearance') is the narrator's only description of Bathsheba. It is the same construction used for the patriarchs' wives (Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel) and carries similar narrative weight: beauty in these stories is never merely decorative; it sets plots in motion. The narrator reports this as a fact, not as a justification.
5. The verb *darash* ('to inquire, to seek out, to investigate') means David made a deliberate inquiry -- this is not casual curiosity but active intelligence-gathering about the woman's identity. The response is structured as a triple identification: *bat-Sheva* ('daughter of Sheba/oath'), *bat-Eliam* ('daughter of Eliam'), *eshet Uriyah ha-Chitti* ('wife of Uriah the Hittite'). Eliam may be the son of Ahithophel the Gilonite (2 Samuel 23:34), which would make Bathsheba Ahithophel's granddaughter and potentially explain Ahithophel's later defection to Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 15:12).
6. The identification *eshet Uriyah* ('wife of Uriah') is the critical datum. Uriah appears in the list of David's thirty mighty warriors (2 Samuel 23:39), meaning David would have known him personally. The narrator ensures the reader understands: David is not taking an unknown woman -- he is taking the wife of one of his own most loyal soldiers, a man currently risking his life in David's war.
7. The verb *laqach* ('he took') is the defining verb of this verse, and its weight in the Hebrew Bible cannot be overstated. It is the verb used for taking a wife in marriage, but also for taking by force, seizing property, and royal appropriation. In this context -- sent messengers and took her -- it echoes the warning of 1 Samuel 8:11-17, where the verb *laqach* appears seven times to describe the expropriations of kingship. Bathsheba is grammatically passive throughout: she is taken (*va-yiqqacheha*), she comes (*va-tavo*), he lies with her (*va-yishkav immah*), she returns (*va-tashav*). The narrator assigns her no speech, no initiative, no agency.
8. The clause *ve-hi mitqaddeshet mi-tum'atah* ('and she was purifying herself from her uncleanness') is a participial clause most naturally read as a temporal marker: she had just completed her purification from menstrual impurity (see Leviticus 15:19-28). This detail is not incidental -- it establishes that Bathsheba has not been with any man recently, so the coming pregnancy can only be David's. The narrator inserts this biological fact with the same clinical detachment that characterizes the entire chapter.
9. The brevity of *harah anokhi* ('I am pregnant') is extraordinary even by the standards of Hebrew narrative economy. Two words. No elaboration, no emotion, no appeal. The narrator gives Bathsheba the minimum possible speech, which functions in two ways: it maintains the chapter's devastating restraint, and it conveys the irreversible nature of the situation. A pregnancy cannot be unsent.
10. The verb *va-tishlach* ('she sent') marks the first time in the chapter that *shalach* has a subject other than David. Bathsheba's sending is reactive -- she sends information, not agents or armies -- but it nonetheless shifts the dynamic. David has been the sole actor; now a consequence has arrived that requires his response.
11. This verse contains three forms of *shalach* in rapid succession: *va-yishlach* David ('David sent'), *shelach elai* ('send to me'), and *va-yishlach Yo'av* ('Joab sent'). The triple repetition in a single verse is a deliberate literary effect -- the narrator is hammering the verb into the reader's consciousness.

The entire machinery of royal bureaucracy is activated to solve a personal crisis. Joab obeys without question; the text gives no indication that he knows David's motive.

7. David asks about shalom three times: li-shlom Yo'av ('the peace/welfare of Joab'), li-shlom ha-am ('the peace of the people/army'), li-shlom ha-milchamah ('the peace of the war'). The triple shalom is bitterly ironic -- David inquires about peace while plotting a man's destruction. The phrase shalom ha-milchamah ('the welfare of the war') is almost oxymoronic: shalom ('peace, wholeness, well-being') applied to milchamah ('war'). David performs the role of concerned commander, but every question is a smokescreen. He does not care about the answers; he needs Uriah in Jerusalem long enough to sleep with his wife and obscure the paternity.
8. The instruction red le-veitekha u-rechatz raglekha ('go down to your house and wash your feet') is a euphemistic invitation to go home, relax, and enjoy the comforts of domestic life -- including, by implication, his wife. The phrase 'wash your feet' is a standard idiom for rest and refreshment after travel (Genesis 18:4, 19:2). David is engineering a scenario in which Uriah will sleep with Bathsheba, so that the pregnancy can be attributed to a conjugal visit.
8. The mas'at ha-melekh ('gift/portion of the king') sent after Uriah is a further inducement -- royal food and wine to sweeten the homecoming. David is generous with Uriah's comfort while plotting Uriah's destruction. The narrator reports the gift without commentary, letting the reader feel the grotesque disparity between the king's outward kindness and his inward scheming.
9. The clause ve-lo yarad el-beito ('and he did not go down to his house') is a hammer blow to David's plan. Uriah sleeps at the petach beit ha-melekh ('entrance of the king's house') with the royal servants -- in solidarity with the common soldiers, not in the comfort of home. The narrator's restraint is total: no explanation of motive yet, just the bare fact. Uriah did not go down. The verb yarad ('to go down') is the same verb David used in his command (red le-veitekha, 'go down to your house'). Uriah's refusal is narrated as the direct negation of David's order.
10. David's question feigns bewilderment: ha-lo mi-derekh attah ba ('haven't you come from a road/journey?') -- after such a long march, wouldn't any man want his own bed, his own wife? The double use of lo yarad ('did not go down') -- first in the report to David, then in David's question -- repeats the phrase that is ruining his plan. David's tone is casual, almost fatherly: You've been traveling, go rest. But the reader knows the desperation behind the concern.
11. Uriah's mention of the Ark (ha-aron) in the field is theologically loaded. The Ark of the Covenant -- the physical symbol of God's presence with Israel -- is exposed to the elements alongside the soldiers. God, as it were, is camping in the open. If the divine presence endures hardship with the troops, how can a mere soldier seek comfort? Uriah's covenantal reasoning surpasses David's: the Hittite understands what the king of Israel has forgotten.
11. The phrase yoshevim ba-sukkot ('dwelling in booths/shelters') uses the same participle (yoshev) applied to David in verse 1, where he was 'sitting in Jerusalem.' The verbal echo is lacerating: David sits in his palace; the Ark sits in a field shelter. The narrator never makes this connection explicit -- he simply uses the same word and lets the reader hear it.
11. Uriah's oath formula chayyekha ve-chei nafshekha ('by your life and by the life of your soul') is the strongest available oath in Hebrew -- swearing by the life of the person addressed. He swears on David's life that he will not do the thing David desperately needs him to do.
12. David's command shav ba-zeh ('stay here') uses the same root (yashav, 'to sit, dwell, remain') that has characterized David's own inaction. The promise u-machar ashallechekha ('and tomorrow I will send you off') contains yet another form of shalach -- even David's future plans are expressed in terms of sending. He needs one more night to make his scheme work. Uriah obeys the order to stay, but he will again refuse to go home, thwarting David's plan through simple, unconquerable integrity.
13. The verb va-yeshakkrehu ('he made him drunk') is in the Piel (intensive/causative) form -- David actively caused Uriah's intoxication. This is not a convivial evening; it is a calculated attempt to override Uriah's conscience through alcohol. The failure of this attempt intensifies the crisis: David has tried direct invitation (v. 8), a royal gift (v. 8), a personal appeal (v. 10), an extra night (v. 12), and deliberate intoxication (v. 13). None of it works.
13. The phrase ve-el-beito lo yarad ('and to his house he did not go down') repeats verse 9 almost verbatim, creating a narrative refrain. The repetition signals finality: Uriah will not be moved. David's options for a peaceful cover-up are exhausted. What follows will be murder.
14. The noun sefer ('letter, document, writing') indicates a formal written communication -- possibly a sealed scroll or tablet. Written orders carried royal authority and could not be questioned by the bearer. Uriah, a soldier who obeys commands, would carry a sealed letter from his king without opening it. The narrator lets the full weight of this land without explanation.
14. The phrase va-yishlach be-yad Uriyah ('he sent it by the hand of Uriah') is the most devastating use of shalach in the chapter. David sends death by the hand of the man who will die. The motif of the unwitting bearer of his own doom appears in other ancient literature -- notably in Homer's Iliad (6.155-195), where Bellerophon carries a sealed letter requesting his own execution. Whether the biblical narrator knew this motif or arrived at it independently, the literary effect is identical: the horror of a man who obediently delivers the instrument of his own destruction.
15. David's written order is precise: havu et-Uriyah el-mul penei ha-milchamah ha-chazaqah ('set Uriah toward the face of the fierce battle'). The phrase mul penei ('opposite the face of') places Uriah directly facing the most intense combat. The second command -- ve-shavtem me-acharav ('and you shall turn back from behind him') -- orders the other soldiers to withdraw, leaving Uriah exposed and unsupported. The final clause ve-nikkah va-met ('and he will be struck and will die') states the intended outcome with bureaucratic clarity.

15. The letter makes Joab complicit in the murder. David cannot kill Uriah himself -- it would be too obvious, too traceable. Instead he uses the war itself as a murder weapon, turning Joab's military operation into an assassination. The order implicates the entire chain of command: David orders it, Joab executes it, and the Ammonite enemy delivers the killing blow. The guilt diffuses through the system, which is exactly what David intends.
16. Joab modifies David's order slightly but achieves the same result. Rather than staging an obvious withdrawal from behind Uriah (which might alert other soldiers to the plot), Joab simply places Uriah at the point where the enemy resistance is strongest -- *asher yada ki anshei-chayil sham* ('where he knew that men of valor were there'). The phrase *anshei chayil* ('men of valor, formidable warriors') describes the best Ammonite fighters. Joab is a pragmatic general; he adapts the king's order to fit tactical reality while ensuring the outcome David demands.
16. The verb *shamar* ('to watch, to observe, to guard') in *bi-shmor Yo'av el-ha-ir* ('when Joab was watching/besieging the city') carries the double sense of conducting a siege and carefully observing the enemy's defenses. Joab knows the city's weak and strong points, and he uses that intelligence to place Uriah where death is most certain.
17. The phrase *va-yippol min-ha-am me-avdei David* ('and some of the people, of David's servants, fell') indicates that Uriah was not the only casualty. David's murder scheme cost additional lives -- soldiers who died because Joab placed troops in an unnecessarily dangerous position to fulfill the king's order. The narrator notes these deaths without commentary, but their presence implicates David in multiple killings, not just one.
17. The construction *gam Uriyah ha-Chitti met* ('also Uriah the Hittite died') uses *gam* ('also, even') to attach Uriah's death to the larger casualty list. The effect is deliberately understated -- the word 'also' makes Uriah's death sound incidental, which is exactly the cover story David needs. But the reader knows better.
18. *Shalach* again -- now Joab sends. The verb that has moved through the chapter like a current now flows back toward David. Joab sends a full battle report (*kol divrei ha-milchamah*, 'all the matters/words of the war'), embedding the news of Uriah's death within a larger military briefing. The tactic is deliberate: Uriah's death will arrive as one detail among many, further normalizing what was in fact a targeted assassination.
19. Joab anticipates David's reaction and coaches the messenger. The verb *va-yetsav* ('he commanded, instructed') shows Joab managing the flow of information with the same tactical precision he applies to warfare. He knows David will be angry about the losses, so he scripts the messenger's response in advance. Joab is now implicated in the cover-up: he understands what David has done and is helping manage the narrative.
20. Joab's scripted scenario reveals his understanding of military protocol: approaching too close to a fortified wall is a tactical blunder, because defenders shoot down from above. Joab expects David to rage about this apparent incompetence -- *ta'aleh chamat ha-melekh* ('the king's fury will rise up'). The verb *alah* ('to go up, to rise') applied to the king's anger is vivid: rage rising like heat. Joab knows that placing troops dangerously close to the wall was his own deliberate choice, done on David's orders, but he must maintain the fiction that it was a battlefield miscalculation.
21. The reference to Abimelech ben-Yerubbesheth recalls the story from Judges 9:50-54, where Abimelech (son of Gideon/Jerubbaal) besieged Thebez and was killed when a woman dropped a *pelach rekhev* ('a piece of a millstone,' literally 'a fragment of a riding-stone,' the upper stone of a hand mill) on his head from the city wall. The name Yerubbesheth is an altered form of Yerubbaal (Gideon's alternate name), with *boshet* ('shame') substituted for *ba'al* -- the same scribal practice applied to *Ish-bosheth* and *Mephibosheth*.
21. Joab's coaching reveals the complicity between king and general. Joab knows that the news of Uriah's death will function as a password -- it will instantly transform David's anger into relief. The word *gam* ('also') reappears: Uriah 'also' died. The same minimizing word from verse 17 is now deployed as a strategic communication tool.
22. The verse is pure mechanics: the messenger went, came, and reported. The verb *shalach* appears again in the phrase *kol asher shelach-o Yo'av* ('everything that Joab had sent him [to report]'). The chain of sending continues its circuit: David sent to Joab, Joab sent to David, and now the message arrives. The narrator compresses the journey and the delivery into a single verse, maintaining the chapter's relentless pace.
23. The messenger's report describes a sortie by the defenders: the Ammonites came out (*va-yetse'u*) from the city into the open field and initially had the upper hand (*gavru aleinu*, 'they were stronger against us'). But the Israelites rallied and pushed them back to the city gate (*ad petach ha-sha'ar*). This is where the fighting would have been fiercest and where the wall defenders could shoot down at the Israelite troops -- exactly the scenario Joab anticipated David would criticize. The messenger delivers a report that sounds like a near-victory, setting up the casualty news.
24. The messenger delivers the line exactly as Joab scripted it: *ve-gam avdekha Uriyah ha-Chitti met* ('and also your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead'). The word *gam* ('also') appears for the third time in connection with Uriah's death (vv. 17, 21, 24), each time burying it deeper in the casualty report. The phrase *ha-morim* ('the shooters, the archers') describes defenders firing from the wall -- precisely the danger Joab anticipated David would cite. The messenger has followed Joab's script, but in this version he does not wait for David's anger to erupt; he delivers the Uriah line as part of the report, preempting the objection.
25. The phrase *al yera be-einekha* ('let it not be evil in your eyes') is deeply ironic in light of verse 27, where the narrator will say that the thing David did was *ra be-einei YHWH* ('evil in the eyes of the LORD'). David tells Joab not to see this as evil; God sees it as evil. The same word -- *ra* ('evil, bad, displeasing') -- frames both David's dismissal and God's judgment.
25. The proverb *ki khazoh ve-khazeh tokhel ha-cherav* ('for like this and like that the sword devours') uses the verb *akhal* ('to eat, devour') for the sword's action -- a common Hebrew metaphor in which the sword is a hungry predator that consumes indiscriminately. David deploys a general truth to cover a specific crime. The instruction *ve-chazzqehu* ('and encourage him') at the end is addressed to the messenger about Joab -- David wants Joab reassured that the king is not displeased. The complicity is now fully mutual.

26. The narrator refers to Bathsheba only as *eshet Uriyah* ('Uriah's wife') -- never by name in this verse. She is defined entirely by her relationship to the man David killed. The verb *va-tispod* ('she mourned, she lamented') indicates the formal mourning rites -- weeping, wailing, possibly tearing garments and sitting in dust. The term *ba'al* ('lord, husband, master') used for Uriah in the phrase *al ba'al*ah ('for her lord/husband') carries more weight than *ish* ('man, husband'); *ba'al* conveys ownership, headship, and personal authority. The narrator's restraint continues: we are told she mourned, nothing more. No inner thoughts, no indication of her feelings about David, no hint of what comes next. Just the fact of grief.
27. The verb *va-ya'asfeha* ('he gathered her, he brought her in') from the root *asaf* ('to gather, collect, take in') is the language of incorporation -- David absorbs Bathsheba into his household as if acquiring property. The sequence *va-tishlach... va-ya'asfeha... va-tehi lo le-ishah* ('he sent... he gathered her... she became his wife') recapitulates the entire chapter's pattern: David acts through sending, taking, and possessing.
27. The final clause *va-yera ha-davar asher-asah David be-einei YHWH* ('and the thing that David had done was evil in the eyes of the LORD') is the narrator's only evaluative statement in the entire chapter. The word *ra* ('evil, bad, displeasing') is the same word David used in verse 25 when he told Joab *al yera be-einekha* ('do not let it be evil in your eyes'). David told a man not to see evil; God sees evil. The phrase *be-einei YHWH* ('in the eyes of the LORD') places divine perception in direct contrast with human perception. What David managed to normalize -- a battlefield death, a reasonable marriage -- God names as what it is. The narrator has held this judgment in reserve for the entire chapter, releasing it only in the final words, where it lands with the accumulated weight of everything that preceded it.

12

Summary: *The LORD sends the prophet Nathan to David with a parable about a rich man who steals a poor man's only lamb to feed a guest. David erupts with outrage and pronounces a death sentence -- whereupon Nathan delivers the devastating verdict: 'You are the man.' Nathan then delivers a detailed oracle of judgment: the sword will never depart from David's house, his wives will be taken publicly by a neighbor, and the child conceived through his adultery with Bathsheba will die. David confesses immediately -- 'I have sinned against the LORD' -- and Nathan tells him the LORD has transferred his sin so that he will not die, but the child will. The infant becomes ill and dies after seven days of David's fasting and prostration. David's servants are afraid to tell him, but David perceives the truth, rises, washes, worships, and eats -- shocking his household with a theology of grief that accepts what cannot be reversed. David then comforts Bathsheba, and she bears a second son, Solomon, whom the LORD loves. Through Nathan, God gives the child a second name: Yedidyah, 'beloved of the LORD.' The chapter concludes with Joab's siege of Rabbah, the Ammonite capital, where Joab summons David to deliver the final assault so that the victory will bear the king's name.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Nathan's parable is one of the most celebrated passages in the Hebrew Bible and a masterwork of prophetic rhetoric. Rather than confronting David directly -- which would have allowed the king to marshal his defenses -- Nathan constructs a juridical parable (*mashal*) that weaponizes David's own sense of justice. David condemns himself before he knows he is the defendant. The phrase *attah ha-ish* ('you are the man') is among the most famous sentences in Scripture, the hinge on which the entire Davidic narrative turns. Before this verse, David is ascending; after it, the consequences of his sin cascade through the rest of 2 Samuel. Equally remarkable is David's response: no evasion, no self-justification, no appeal to royal prerogative. His confession -- *chatati la-YHWH* ('I have sinned against the LORD') -- is three words in Hebrew, the shortest and most unguarded royal confession in the ancient Near East. Where Saul, confronted by Samuel, deflected and blamed others (1 Samuel 15:20-21), David absorbs the blow without flinching. The narrator presents this not as adequate atonement but as the quality that distinguishes David from Saul: David can be broken by the truth.*

Translation Friction: *Several translational tensions require careful navigation. First, Nathan's oracle in verses 11-12 uses language that is deliberately shocking: God declares He will take David's wives and give them to his neighbor, who will lie with them 'in the sight of this sun.' This prophecy is fulfilled in Absalom's public act on the palace roof (16:22). The theological difficulty is acute -- God announces He will cause something that would elsewhere be condemned as a grave violation. The text does not soften this; neither do we. Second, David's statement in verse 23, 'I will go to him, but he will not return to me,' has been read as an expression of afterlife hope, but in context it more likely means David will join the child in death (*Sheol*) eventually -- it is a statement of resignation, not consolation. Third, the transition from David's intense grief during the child's illness to his calm acceptance after the death seems abrupt and has puzzled readers ancient and modern. David's own explanation (verse 22-23) reveals a theology of prayer that is willing to petition God while the outcome remains open but refuses to rage against what God has decided. Fourth,*

the Yedidyah naming in verse 25 is textually unusual -- the phrase ba'avur YHWH ('because of the LORD' or 'for the LORD's sake') is difficult, and the relationship between the names Solomon (Shelomoh) and Yedidyah is never fully explained. The child is called Solomon throughout the rest of Scripture; Yedidyah appears only here.

Connections: This chapter is the direct consequence of 2 Samuel 11 (the Bathsheba affair and Uriah's murder) and the fulfillment of the prophetic pattern established in 1 Samuel 2:27-36 (the man of God's warning that those who honor themselves above God will be cut down). Nathan's oracle -- 'the sword will never depart from your house' -- becomes the interpretive key for everything that follows in 2 Samuel: Amnon's rape of Tamar (chapter 13), Absalom's rebellion and death (chapters 15-18), and Sheba's revolt (chapter 20) are all read through the lens of this pronouncement. David's confession, chatati la-YHWH, stands in deliberate contrast to Saul's self-justifying response to Samuel in 1 Samuel 15:24-25, where Saul also says 'I have sinned' but immediately adds excuses and asks Samuel to maintain his public honor. The birth of Solomon connects forward to the succession narrative (1 Kings 1-2) and to the temple-building promise of 2 Samuel 7. The name Yedidyah ('beloved of the LORD') echoes the covenant love language of Deuteronomy and anticipates the special divine favor that will mark Solomon's reign. The siege of Rabbah at the chapter's end completes the military campaign that began in 11:1 -- the war that David should have been fighting when he stayed behind in Jerusalem and saw Bathsheba.

¹The LORD sent Nathan to David. He came to him and said, "Two men lived in a certain city -- ²one rich and the other destitute. ³The rich man had vast flocks and herds, ⁴but the destitute man had nothing at all except one small ewe lamb he had bought and raised. It grew up alongside him and his children. It ate from his own plate and drank from his own cup and slept in his arms. It was like a daughter to him. ⁵A traveler came to the rich man, but the rich man could not bring himself to take from his own flocks and herds to prepare a meal for his guest. Instead he took the destitute man's lamb and prepared it for the man who had come to him. ⁶David's anger blazed against the man, and he said to Nathan, "As the LORD lives, the man who did this deserves death! ⁷He must repay four times over for the lamb, because he did this thing and because he had no compassion." ⁸Nathan said to David, "You are the man! This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'I myself anointed you king over Israel, and I myself rescued you from the hand of Saul. ⁹I gave you your master's house and your master's wives into your arms. I gave you the house of Israel and Judah. And if that was not enough, I would have added as much again and more. ¹⁰Why have you treated the word of the LORD with contempt by doing what is evil in His sight? You struck down Uriah the Hittite with the sword. You took his wife as your own wife. And you killed him by the sword of the Ammonites. ¹¹This is what the LORD says: 'I am going to raise up disaster against you from within your own house. I will take your wives before your eyes and give them to your neighbor, and he will lie with your wives in broad daylight. ¹²You acted in secret, but I will do this thing before all Israel and in full view of the sun.' ¹³David said to Nathan, "I have sinned against the LORD." Nathan said to David, "The LORD has also transferred your sin -- you will not die. ¹⁴However, because you have given the LORD's enemies an occasion to scorn Him through this act, the son born to you will certainly die." ¹⁵Then Nathan went home. The LORD struck the child that Uriah's wife had borne to David, and the child became desperately ill. ¹⁶David pleaded with God on behalf of the boy. David fasted, went inside, and spent the night lying on the bare ground. ¹⁷The senior members of his household rose and went to him to lift him from the ground, but he refused. He would not eat food with them. ¹⁸On the seventh day the child died. David's servants were afraid to tell him the child was dead, because they said, "While the child was still alive we spoke to him and he would not listen to us. How can we tell him the child is dead? He may do something desperate." ¹⁹David noticed his servants whispering to one another and understood that the child had died. David said to his servants, "Is the child dead?" They said, "He is dead." ²⁰David rose from the ground, washed, anointed himself, and changed his clothes. He went into the house of the LORD and worshipped. Then he went home, asked for food, and when it was set before him, he ate. ²¹His servants said to him, "What is this you have done? While the child was alive you fasted and wept, but the moment the child died you got up and ate food!" ²²He said, "While the child was still alive, I fasted and wept because I thought, 'Who knows? The LORD may show me grace, and the child may live.' ²³But now he has died. Why should I fast? Can I bring him back? I will go to him, but he will not return to me." ²⁴David comforted Bathsheba his wife, went to her, and lay with her. She bore a son, and he named him Solomon. And the LORD loved him. ²⁵He sent word through Nathan the prophet, who named him Yedidyah -- 'beloved of the LORD' -- on account of the LORD. ²⁶Meanwhile

Joab fought against Rabbah of the Ammonites and captured the royal citadel. ²⁷Joab sent messengers to David saying, "I have fought against Rabbah and have also captured the water supply. ²⁸Now muster the rest of the army, camp against the city, and capture it -- otherwise I will capture the city and it will bear my name." ²⁹David mustered the entire army, marched to Rabbah, fought against it, and captured it. ³⁰He took the crown from the head of their king -- its weight was a talent of gold, set with a precious stone -- and it was placed on David's head. He also carried off an enormous quantity of plunder from the city. ³¹He brought out the people who were in the city and set them to labor with saws, iron picks, and iron axes, and put them to work at the brick kilns. He did the same to all the Ammonite cities. Then David and the entire army returned to Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyishlach* ('he sent') deliberately echoes its repeated use in chapter 11, where David sent messengers to take Bathsheba (11:4), sent Uriah to Joab (11:6), and sent the letter ordering Uriah's death (11:14). God now enters the sending chain. The verb carries the force of authoritative commission -- Nathan does not volunteer; he is dispatched.
1. Nathan's parable opens with the formulaic *shenei anashim hayu be'ir echad* ('two men were in one city'), a construction that mimics the style of a judicial case brought before a king. David would have heard hundreds of such cases as part of his royal duties. Nathan exploits the king's judicial reflexes to make David pronounce his own sentence.
2. The Hebrew *rash* ('poor, destitute') describes someone at the very bottom of the economic order -- not merely modest but impoverished. The contrast between *ashir* ('rich, wealthy') and *rash* ('destitute') is drawn as starkly as possible. In the parable's logic, the rich man is David (who had many wives) and the poor man is Uriah (who had one). The single-word descriptions set up the moral outrage that follows: the powerful taking from the powerless.
3. The phrase *tson u-vaqar harbeh me'od* ('sheep and cattle exceedingly many') emphasizes surplus to the point of absurdity. The rich man has more livestock than he could ever need. In the allegorical framework, this corresponds to David's many wives -- a point Nathan will make explicit in verse 8, where God reminds David of all that was given to him. The abundance makes the theft that follows not just criminal but senseless.
4. The verb *vaychayeha* ('he kept it alive, he nourished it') from the root *chayah* ('to live') indicates the poor man personally sustained the lamb's life. The series of feminine singular verbs (*to'khal*, *tishteh*, *tishkav*) personifies the lamb with almost human characteristics. The word *cheiq* ('bosom, lap, embrace') is the same word used for the intimate embrace between husband and wife (Deuteronomy 28:54, Micah 7:5), making the allegorical connection to Bathsheba unmistakable.
4. The phrase *kevat* ('like a daughter') is the parable's emotional apex. In a patriarchal society, a daughter represents the most tender, protected relationship a man can have. Nathan has made David feel the full weight of the poor man's loss before revealing that David is the thief.
5. The word *helekh* ('traveler, wayfarer') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, though the related word *oreiach* ('guest, traveler') appears in the same verse. Some commentators see the traveler as representing David's desire or lust -- a passing appetite that arrives and demands to be fed. The rich man's refusal to use his own resources (*vayyachmol laqachat mitsono*) is the heart of the parable's indictment: David had wives; he did not need to take Uriah's.
5. The verb *vayyiqach* ('he took') is the same verb used for David's taking of Bathsheba in 11:4 (*vayyiqach*). Nathan's diction mirrors the narrator's diction from the previous chapter, creating a verbal bridge between parable and reality that will become explicit in Nathan's accusation.
6. The phrase *vayyichar af David me'od* ('David's anger burned greatly') uses the standard Hebrew anger idiom -- *af* means both 'nose/nostril' and 'anger,' reflecting the physical sign of fury (flared nostrils, heavy breathing). David's response is visceral, not calculated. He is genuinely outraged, which makes the coming revelation all the more devastating.
6. The expression *ben mavet* ('son of death') is a judicial idiom meaning 'worthy of the death penalty.' David uses it elsewhere (1 Samuel 20:31, 26:16) for those who deserve execution. By uttering it under oath (*chay YHWH*), David has bound himself: if the man deserves death, and David is the man, then David deserves death. Nathan will address this directly in verse 13.
7. The verb *yeshalle* ('he must repay') from the root *shalam* ('to make whole, to complete, to restore') is the legal term for restitution. The fourfold amount (*arba'tayim*) matches Exodus 22:1 for the theft of a sheep. David applies the Torah's economic penalty on top of the death sentence, demonstrating his thorough engagement with the case as a judge.
7. The phrase *ve'al asher lo chamal* ('and because he did not have compassion') adds a moral dimension to the legal verdict. It is not just the theft but the callousness that enrages David -- the rich man could have spared the poor man but chose not to. This is precisely Nathan's point: David could have restrained himself but chose not to.
8. The phrase *attah ha-ish* ('you are the man') uses the definite article *ha-* to point back to the man in the parable. David pronounced judgment on 'the man' (*ha-ish*), and Nathan now identifies David as that same man. The economy of the accusation is devastating -- no argument, no buildup, just identification.

8. The messenger formula *koh amar YHWH* ('thus says the LORD') marks the transition from Nathan speaking as a prophet to God speaking through Nathan. The repeated *anokhi* ('I, I myself') is emphatic personal pronoun use -- God is insisting on His own role as the source of every good thing David possesses, establishing the baseline of ingratitude against which David's sin will be measured.
9. The phrase *beit adonekha* ('your master's house') refers to Saul's royal household, which David inherited upon becoming king. The reference to Saul's wives entering David's 'embrace' (*cheiq*) may reflect a royal succession practice in which the new king inherited the previous king's harem as a symbol of legitimacy. Whether David actually took Saul's wives as his own or merely assumed legal responsibility for them is debated, but God counts them among His gifts.
9. The conditional clause *ve'im me'at* ('and if it was too little') is rhetorically crushing. God is not merely accusing David of theft but of ingratitude toward infinite generosity. The phrase *ve'osifah lekha* ('I would have added for you') uses the verb *yasaf* ('to add, to continue'), implying that God's gifts were an ongoing, open-ended stream that David chose to bypass by stealing.
10. The Qere (spoken reading) has *devar YHWH* ('the word of the LORD'), while the Ketiv (written text) reads *et YHWH* ('the LORD Himself'). The difference is significant: the Ketiv suggests David despised God personally, while the Qere specifies that David despised God's commandment. Both readings are theologically operative -- despising God's word is despising God.
10. The double mention of killing Uriah (*hikkita bacharev* at the beginning, *haragta becherev* at the end) creates an envelope structure around the theft of Bathsheba. The murder frames the adultery, indicating that in God's reckoning, the murder is the greater crime -- it was committed to conceal the lesser one. The phrase *becherev benei Ammon* ('by the sword of the Ammonites') makes clear that using intermediaries does not dilute culpability.
11. The participle *meqim* ('raising up') indicates imminent and ongoing action -- the disaster is not a single event but a process that will unfold across years. The word *ra'ah* ('evil, disaster, calamity') is the same word David 'did' in verse 10 (*ha-ra*); the evil he sowed will be harvested from his own household.
11. The phrase *le'einekha* ('before your eyes') inverts David's attempt to conceal. In chapter 11, David operated through intermediaries and letters to keep his hands apparently clean. Now God promises that the retribution will happen in plain sight -- David will see it and be unable to prevent it. The specificity of the punishment is characteristic of prophetic judgment oracles: the penalty corresponds to the crime.
12. The word *bassater* ('in the secret place, in concealment') comes from the root *satar* ('to hide, to conceal'). It encompasses not just the adultery but the entire cover-up operation David ran through chapter 11 -- the attempt to make Uriah sleep with Bathsheba, the drunken dinner, and the murder-by-proxy.
12. The phrase *neged ha-shamesh* ('before the sun') personifies the sun as a witness. In ancient Near Eastern legal and religious thought, the sun deity (*Shamash* in Mesopotamia) was the god of justice who sees all hidden things. The Hebrew text uses this imagery not to invoke a sun deity but to express total exposure -- nothing will remain concealed.
13. The verb *chatati* ('I have sinned') from the root *chata* ('to miss the mark, to sin, to go astray') is the foundational confession verb in the Hebrew Bible. David uses it without qualification -- no 'but' follows, no explanation, no context. This unqualified confession is what distinguishes David's repentance from Saul's. The Psalms tradition attributes Psalm 51 to this moment, elaborating at length what the narrative presents in three words.
13. The Hiphil verb *he'evir* ('he has caused to pass over, he has transferred') is a rich theological term. The same root appears in the passing over of the firstborn at Passover and in the crossing of the Jordan. Nathan's declaration does not mean the sin is erased from memory or consequence but that the death penalty David pronounced on himself has been diverted. The sin 'passes' from David to another bearer -- the child, as verse 14 will specify.
14. The phrase *ni'ets ni'atsta* uses the Piel infinitive absolute followed by the Piel perfect of *na'ats* ('to spurn, to scorn, to treat with contempt') for maximum emphasis. The *tiqun soferim* (scribal emendation) replacing 'the LORD' with 'the enemies of the LORD' is well attested in rabbinic tradition, which lists this as one of eighteen passages where scribes altered the text to protect God's honor. Whether we read 'you scorned the LORD' or 'you gave the LORD's enemies cause to scorn,' the result is the same: David's sin has public theological consequences.
14. The death of the child raises acute theological questions that the text does not resolve. The child is punished for David's sin, which seems to contradict Ezekiel 18:20 ('the son shall not bear the iniquity of the father'). The narrator does not attempt theodicy; he reports the oracle and its fulfillment. David's response in verses 15-23 will reveal how he processes this theologically.
15. The persistent identification of Bathsheba as *eshet Uriyyah* ('Uriah's wife') rather than by her own name or as David's wife is a narratorial judgment. The text refuses to normalize the relationship that began with adultery and murder. This designation appears also in Matthew's genealogy of Jesus (Matthew 1:6), where 'the wife of Uriah' is the only woman identified by her connection to a husband rather than by her own name.
15. The verb *nagaf* ('to strike, to smite, to plague') carries associations of divine punishment throughout the Hebrew Bible. It is used for the plagues on Egypt, for the striking of Uzzah at the threshing floor (2 Samuel 6:7), and for various instances of divine judgment. The child's illness is presented as a direct act of God, not a natural misfortune.
16. The phrase *vayavo velan veshakhav artsah* ('he went in and spent the night and lay on the ground') describes a sustained posture of penitential grief. The verb *lan* ('to spend the night, to lodge') indicates this was not a momentary gesture but an ongoing practice sustained through the night. The word *artsah* ('on the ground, earthward') emphasizes the total prostration -- David abandons every marker of royal comfort.
16. The phrase *ba'ad hanna'ar* ('on behalf of the boy') uses the preposition *ba'ad* ('for the sake of, on behalf of'), indicating intercessory prayer. David is not confessing further or pleading his own case; he is advocating for the child. This distinction matters for understanding David's theology of prayer in verses 22-23.

17. The verb *bara* ('to eat') in the phrase *velo vara ittam lechem* ('he did not eat food with them') is an alternate form of the more common *akhal*. The communal aspect -- eating 'with them' -- matters: shared meals were acts of social participation and normalcy. David's refusal to eat with his household signals a complete withdrawal from ordinary life into the space of penitential petition.
17. The attempt by the elders to 'raise him from the ground' (*lahaqimo min ha-arets*) may reflect concern for the king's health and for the functioning of government, not merely personal compassion. A king lying on the floor refusing food is a king unable to rule, and David's court would have been anxious about the political implications of prolonged royal incapacitation.
18. The seventh day (*ha-yom hashevi'i*) may carry symbolic weight -- seven is the number of completion and divine action throughout Scripture (creation, Sabbath, purification cycles). The child's death on the seventh day marks the completion of the judgment Nathan announced.
18. The phrase *ve'asah ra'ah* ('he will do something harmful') uses *ra'ah* in a broad sense -- the servants fear David will hurt himself or act destructively. The same word *ra'ah* has appeared throughout the chapter for the 'evil' David did (verse 9) and the 'disaster' God will bring (verse 11). The servants inadvertently echo the chapter's key word without understanding its theological weight.
19. The Hitpa'el form *mitlachashim* ('whispering among themselves') suggests secretive, conspiratorial speech. The servants are trying to discuss the child's death without David overhearing, which ironically alerts David to what has happened. The verb *bin* ('to perceive, to understand') implies David drew an inference from observed evidence -- he did not hear the words but read the situation.
19. The brevity of the exchange -- *ha-met ha-yeled / met* ('is the child dead / dead') -- mirrors the compression of David's confession in verse 13 (*chatai la-YHWH*). At the chapter's critical moments, the text strips language to its minimum, letting the weight of the content speak without elaboration.
20. The verb *vayyishtachu* ('he bowed down, he worshipped') from the root *shachah* ('to prostrate oneself, to worship') is the same posture David has maintained during his petition -- lying on the ground. But now the prostration is worship, not pleading. The physical act may look identical, but the internal orientation has shifted from petition to surrender.
20. The sequence of verbs (rose, washed, anointed, changed, entered, worshipped, came home, asked, ate) is one of the longest action chains in the David narrative. Each verb marks a distinct step in David's transition from the space of grief to the space of ordinary life, with worship as the pivot point between the two.
21. The servants' question follows the standard pattern of bewildered inquiry in the narrative: *mah hadavar hazeh* ('what is this thing?'). The contrast they articulate -- fasting while alive, eating when dead -- perfectly frames the explanation David will give in the next two verses. Their confusion is the narrative's setup for David's theology of prayer and acceptance.
21. The verb *vatevk* ('you wept') adds weeping to the earlier description of David's grief, which mentioned only fasting and lying on the ground. The servants reveal that David's prostration included audible weeping -- further evidence of the intensity of his petition and the strangeness of his sudden composure.
22. The phrase *mi yodea* ('who knows?') is a theological idiom in the Hebrew Bible that holds space for divine freedom -- it acknowledges that God's decisions cannot be predicted or compelled but might be influenced by genuine repentance and petition. David uses it not as a guarantee but as a reason to try.
22. The verb *vechananni* (Qal perfect with *waw* consecutive from *chanan*, 'to be gracious') frames the child's survival as an act of divine grace, not as something David has earned through his fasting. This is critical: David's theology does not treat fasting as a mechanism that forces God's hand but as an expression of dependence that may move God's heart.
23. The phrase *ani holekh elav* ('I am going to him') uses the active participle *holekh* ('going, walking'), which can indicate both present intention and inevitable future reality. David is not saying he plans to kill himself to join the child; he is acknowledging that death comes for all, and in death he will be where the child already is.
23. The contrast between *holekh* ('going') and *yashuv* ('return') is the theological crux: the living move toward death, but the dead do not move back toward life. This statement operates within the Hebrew Bible's general reticence about the afterlife -- *Sheol* is a destination, not a place of reunion or consciousness. David's acceptance of this reality is what allows him to rise, worship, and eat.
24. The name *Shelomoh* (Solomon) is derived from the root *sh-l-m*, which yields *shalom* ('peace, wholeness'), *shillem* ('to repay, to complete'), and *shalem* ('whole, complete'). The name may mean 'his peace,' 'his replacement,' or 'his restoration.' Given the context -- a second child born after the death of the first -- the name carries overtones of both peace and completion: God has completed His judgment and opened a new chapter.
24. The clause *va-YHWH ahev* ('and the LORD loved him') is one of the most remarkable sentences in the Hebrew Bible. It is a direct statement of divine love for an individual, applied to a newborn child. The verb *ahev* is the same word used in Deuteronomy 7:8 for God's love for Israel and in 2 Samuel 7 for the covenant relationship with David's house. Solomon enters the world marked by the love of the same God who executed judgment on his older brother.
25. The verb *vayyishlach* ('he sent') echoes the chapter's opening (verse 1), where the LORD sent Nathan to David. Now God sends Nathan again, but with a radically different message. The prophet's role encompasses both judgment and grace, demolition and restoration.
25. The name *Yedidyah* (*yadid* + *Yah*) uses the same root as David's own name (David/*Dawid*), which many scholars connect to *yadid* ('beloved'). If so, Solomon's God-given name echoes his father's name: David the beloved produces Yedidyah, the beloved of the LORD. The dynastic promise of 2 Samuel 7 -- 'I will be a father to him, and he will be a son to me' -- finds its personal expression in this name.

- 26.** The phrase *ir hammelukha* ('city of the kingdom') likely refers to the inner citadel or royal quarter of Rabbah, the most heavily fortified section of the city. Joab has taken this critical position, meaning the city's fall is now inevitable. He pauses before the final conquest to summon David, as the next verse will explain.
- 26.** The abrupt transition from Solomon's birth to Joab's siege creates a deliberate juxtaposition: domestic restoration and military victory occur simultaneously. The narrator reminds the reader that the public world of warfare continued throughout David's private crisis.
- 27.** The phrase *ir ha-mayim* ('city of waters') refers to the water source or the fortified section of Rabbah that controlled access to water -- likely the citadel near the Jabbok River's headwaters. In ancient siege warfare, capturing the water supply was often the decisive move. Rabbah's water system has been partially identified archaeologically in the area of the modern Amman citadel.
- 27.** Joab's message uses first-person verbs -- *nilchamti* ('I fought'), *lakhadti* ('I captured') -- that could be read as self-aggrandizing, but verse 28 reveals his true motive: he wants David to receive credit for the final victory. Joab's political loyalty, however self-interested, consistently serves to protect David's public image.
- 28.** The expression *niqra shem al* ('a name is called over') is a formula of ownership and authority in the Hebrew Bible. It is used for God's name being called over Israel (Deuteronomy 28:10), over the temple (Jeremiah 7:10), and over the city of Jerusalem (Daniel 9:18-19). For Joab's name to be called over Rabbah would imply that Joab, not David, was the sovereign conqueror -- a politically dangerous situation for both men.
- 28.** The imperative sequence -- *esof* ('gather'), *chaneh* ('camp'), *lekhada* ('capture') -- gives David a clear set of orders. The irony is sharp: a general is instructing his king, but the instruction is designed to protect the king's honor. Joab's competence and David's absence from the battlefield are both quietly noted.
- 29.** The phrase *kol ha-am* ('all the people/army') suggests a full national mobilization for the final assault -- David brings the remaining forces that had not been deployed with Joab. The verb *vayyilkeda* ('he captured it') gives David the credit Joab intended him to have, even though the siege was Joab's operation from start to finish.
- 29.** The narrative structure of chapters 11-12 forms a chiasm: war (11:1) / sin / judgment / repentance / restoration / war (12:29). David's return to Rabbah completes the literary frame and signals that the immediate crisis, though not its long-term consequences, has passed.
- 30.** The ambiguity of *malkam* ('their king' vs. 'Milcom') is debated. The Masoretic vowels point to *malkam* ('their king'), but the consonantal text allows *Milkom*, the name of the Ammonite national deity (1 Kings 11:5, 33). If read as *Milcom*, the verse describes David taking a crown from an idol's statue -- an act of theological conquest. Either reading works within the narrative's framework of total Ammonite defeat.
- 30.** The weight of a *kikkar* (talent) of gold presents a practical difficulty: no human head could support 75 pounds of gold. Possible solutions include: (1) the crown was held above David's head briefly in a coronation gesture, (2) the 'talent' is being used loosely to indicate great weight and value rather than a precise measure, or (3) the precious stone, not the entire crown, weighed a talent. We translate straightforwardly and let the note address the difficulty.
- 31.** The phrase *vayyasem bamegera* ('he set them with the saw') is the crux of the interpretive difficulty. If *bamegera* means 'at the saw' (as a labor assignment), then David is imposing forced labor. If it means 'under the saw' (as an instrument of execution), then David is carrying out mass torture. The parallel passage in 1 Chronicles 20:3 uses the verb *vayyasar* ('he sawed'), which supports the harsher reading. We follow the forced labor interpretation because the context of brick kilns (a construction site, not an execution ground) and the application to 'all the Ammonite cities' (impractical for mass execution) better fits the evidence.
- 31.** The return to Jerusalem (*vayyashov David vekhol ha-am Yerushalaim*) closes the narrative bracket opened in 11:1. The last time David was in Jerusalem, he committed adultery and murder. He returns now having been judged, having repented, having lost a child, having received a new son beloved of God, and having conquered Rabbah. The city is the same; the king is not.

13

Summary: Amnon, David's firstborn, becomes consumed with desire for his half-sister Tamar. His cunning cousin Jonadab devises a scheme in which Amnon feigns illness and requests that Tamar come to his quarters to prepare food. When she brings the food, Amnon seizes her, ignores her desperate pleas and legal arguments, and rapes her. Immediately afterward, his obsession inverts into revulsion; he throws her out with more cruelty than the assault itself. Tamar tears her royal robe, puts ash on her head, and goes away screaming. Her full brother Absalom takes her in, tells her to be silent for now, and nurses a cold, patient hatred. David hears and is furious but does nothing. Two full years later, Absalom orchestrates Amnon's assassination at a sheep-shearing festival, then flees to his maternal grandfather, King Talmai of Geshur, where he remains in exile for three years. David mourns for his dead son daily while his living son waits across the border.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the most psychologically detailed and unflinching narratives in the Hebrew Bible. The narrator gives Tamar more direct speech than almost any woman in the Davidic narratives, and every word she speaks is legally precise, theologically grounded, and completely ignored. She argues from shame, from law, from practical alternatives, and from Israel's identity as a people who do not commit such acts. Amnon hears none of it. The reversal in verse 15 is devastating in its precision: the Hebrew says the hatred with which he hated her was greater than the love with which he had loved her. The narrator uses the same grammatical construction for both emotions, exposing the 'love' of verse 1 as never having been love at all but an appetite that, once satisfied, becomes disgust. The chapter is also the narrative fulfillment of Nathan's prophecy in 2 Samuel 12:11 that the sword would never depart from David's house and that evil would rise against him from within his own family. Every act of violence in this chapter is committed by David's own children against each other, and David's paralysis mirrors his own moral failure with Bathsheba: the man who took another man's wife cannot bring himself to punish the son who took his own sister.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 13 presents the most debated textual and legal question: Tamar tells Amnon to 'speak to the king, for he will not withhold me from you.' If taken at face value, this implies that marriage between half-siblings was permitted or at least negotiable in the early monarchy, despite the prohibition in Leviticus 18:9 and 20:17. Some scholars argue Tamar was bluffing to escape the immediate danger; others propose that the Levitical prohibitions were not yet codified or universally enforced in David's era; still others suggest the patriarchal precedent of Abraham and Sarah (Genesis 20:12) created an exception. The Hebrew word *innah* (verses 12, 14, 22, 32) is rendered variously as 'humble,' 'violate,' 'force,' or 'afflict' — it carries a legal-covenantal weight broader than modern terms for sexual assault, encompassing humiliation of status, violation of bodily autonomy, and destruction of social standing simultaneously. The Masoretic pointing of verse 21 includes 'for he was his firstborn' (*ki bekhlor hu*) as David's reason for inaction, but this clause is absent from many Septuagint manuscripts, and its presence or absence changes the characterization of David significantly.*

Connections: *This chapter is the second act of Nathan's prophecy (2 Samuel 12:10-12). The sword that enters David's house here will not leave until Absalom himself is dead on the end of Joab's spears (2 Samuel 18). Amnon's rape of Tamar structurally mirrors David's taking of Bathsheba (2 Samuel 11): a powerful man sees a woman, desires her, uses royal authority to bring her to him, and violates her. The differences are as instructive as the parallels: David at least kept Bathsheba; Amnon discards Tamar with contempt. Absalom's two-year silent rage anticipates his later patience in building a political rebellion over four years (2 Samuel 15:7). Jonadab's role as the 'very wise' friend who engineers disaster echoes the Ahithophel tradition of intelligence deployed without moral compass. Tamar's torn robe connects to the *ketonet passim* (ornamental tunic) of Joseph in Genesis 37 — the same rare garment is mentioned in verse 18, and in both cases the garment torn or stripped symbolizes the destruction of a favored child. Absalom's flight to Geshur connects to his mother Maacah, daughter of Talmai king of Geshur (2 Samuel 3:3), reminding the reader that David's polygamous political marriages have created a household where half-siblings with competing maternal loyalties share a single court.*

¹Sometime after this, Absalom son of David had a beautiful sister named Tamar, and Amnon son of David became consumed with desire for her. ²Amnon was so tormented that he made himself sick over his sister Tamar. She was a virgin, and it seemed impossible to Amnon to do anything to her. ³Now Amnon had a companion named Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother. Jonadab was a very shrewd man. ⁴Jonadab said to him, "Why are you so gaunt morning after morning, prince? Tell me." Amnon said to him, "I am in love with Tamar, my brother Absalom's sister." ⁵Jonadab said to him, "Lie down on your bed and pretend to be ill. When your father comes to see you, say to him, 'Please let my sister Tamar come and prepare food for me. Let her make the food where I can see her, so that I can watch and eat from her hand.'" ⁶So Amnon lay down and pretended to be ill. When the king came to see him, Amnon said to the king, "Please let my sister Tamar come and shape a couple of heart-cakes where I can watch, so I can eat from her hand." ⁷David sent word to Tamar at the palace: "Go to your brother Amnon's house and prepare food for him." ⁸Tamar went to her brother Amnon's house, where he was lying down. She took dough, kneaded it, shaped the heart-cakes where he could watch, and cooked them. ⁹She took the pan and served the cakes before him, but he refused to eat. Amnon said, "Everyone get out." And everyone left his presence. ¹⁰Amnon said to Tamar, "Bring the food into the inner room so I can eat from your hand." Tamar took the heart-cakes she had made and

brought them to her brother Amnon in the inner room. ¹¹When she brought the food close to him to eat, he grabbed her and said, "Come to bed with me, sister." ¹²She said to him, "No, brother! Do not humiliate me! This is not done in Israel — do not commit this outrage!" ¹³Where would I carry my disgrace? And you — you would be like any common fool in Israel. Please, speak to the king instead. He will not refuse to give me to you. ¹⁴But he refused to listen to her. He overpowered her, violated her, and raped her. ¹⁵Then Amnon hated her with an overwhelming hatred — the hatred with which he hated her was greater than the desire with which he had desired her. Amnon said to her, "Get up. Get out." ¹⁶She said to him, "No — this cruelty of sending me away is worse than what you already did to me." But he refused to listen to her. ¹⁷He called the young man who served him and said, "Get this creature away from me and bolt the door behind her." ¹⁸She was wearing an ornamented tunic — for this was the garment worn by the king's virgin daughters as their robe. His servant put her outside and bolted the door behind her. ¹⁹Tamar put ash on her head, tore the ornamented tunic she was wearing, placed her hand on her head, and went away screaming. ²⁰Her brother Absalom said to her, "Has Amnon your brother been with you? For now, sister, be silent. He is your brother. Do not take this to heart." And Tamar remained — devastated — in her brother Absalom's house. ²¹When King David heard about all of this, he was furious. ²²Absalom said nothing to Amnon — not a hostile word, not a civil one — because Absalom hated Amnon for violating his sister Tamar. ²³Two full years later, Absalom had sheep-shearing at Baal-hazor near Ephraim, and Absalom invited all the king's sons. ²⁴Absalom went to the king and said, "Your servant has sheep-shearing. Please, let the king and his servants come with your servant." ²⁵The king said to Absalom, "No, my son. We should not all go — we would be too much of a burden on you." Absalom pressed him, but David was unwilling to go. He did, however, give him his blessing. ²⁶Absalom said, "If you will not come, at least let my brother Amnon go with us." The king said to him, "Why should Amnon go with you?" ²⁷But Absalom pressed him until David sent Amnon and all the king's sons with him. ²⁸Absalom had already commanded his young men: "Watch for the moment when Amnon's heart is happy with wine. When I say to you, 'Strike Amnon!' — kill him. Do not be afraid. Am I not the one commanding you? Be strong and prove yourselves men of valor." ²⁹Absalom's young men did to Amnon exactly as Absalom had commanded. All the king's sons leaped up, each mounted his mule, and fled. ³⁰While they were still on the road, a report reached David: "Absalom has struck down all the king's sons — not one of them is left alive." ³¹The king stood, tore his garments, and threw himself on the ground. All his servants stood around him with their garments torn. ³²But Jonadab son of Shimeah, David's brother, spoke up: "My lord should not think that all the young princes have been killed. Only Amnon is dead. This has been fixed in Absalom's intent since the day Amnon violated his sister Tamar." ³³So let my lord the king not take it to heart, thinking all the king's sons are dead. Only Amnon is dead. ³⁴Meanwhile, Absalom had fled. The young watchman raised his eyes and saw a large group coming along the road from the hillside behind him. ³⁵Jonadab said to the king, "Look — the king's sons are arriving. It is just as your servant said." ³⁶Just as he finished speaking, the king's sons arrived. They raised their voices and wept, and the king and all his servants also wept — a great and bitter weeping. ³⁷Absalom fled and went to Talmai son of Ammihud, king of Geshur. And David mourned for his son day after day. ³⁸Absalom had fled to Geshur, and he remained there three years. ³⁹The spirit of King David wasted away with longing to go out to Absalom, for he had exhausted his grief over Amnon, who was dead.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyehaveha* ('he loved her') uses the standard root *a-h-v*, the same word used for God's love of Israel and Jacob's love for Rachel. The narrator deploys it without commentary, letting the story itself expose whether this feeling deserves the name. Tamar's name means 'date palm' — a symbol of beauty, fertility, and uprightness. Amnon (Amnon, from *aman*, 'faithful, reliable') carries an ironic name given what he is about to do. The phrase *achot yafah* ('beautiful sister') introduces the two elements that drive the plot: kinship and beauty.
2. The verb *vayyetser* (from *tsarar*, 'to be narrow, constricted, distressed') conveys both emotional anguish and physical constriction — Amnon feels trapped by his own desire. The phrase *lehitchallot* ('to make himself sick') is in the *hithpael* (reflexive) stem, which some commentators read as genuine psychosomatic illness and others as indicating that the sickness was self-induced or exaggerated — foreshadowing the feigned illness in verse 6. The word *betulah* ('virgin') indicates both sexual status and social restriction: virgins of the royal house lived in supervised quarters (cf. verse 18). The verb *yippale* ('it was extraordinary, impossible') from *pala* is usually positive (Psalm 139:6) but here describes Amnon's frustrated assessment of a logistical barrier.

3. The word *re'a* ('friend, companion') indicates a close personal relationship — Jonadab is not a casual acquaintance but a confidant. The adjective *chakham* ('wise, shrewd, clever') is the same word used for Solomon's wisdom (1 Kings 3:12) and for the wise woman of Tekoa (2 Samuel 14:2). The narrator uses it without irony markers, forcing the reader to supply the moral judgment as the story unfolds. Shimeah (also spelled Shammah in 1 Samuel 16:9) is David's brother, making Jonadab and Amnon first cousins.
4. The adjective *dal* ('thin, lean, gaunt') describes visible physical wasting — Amnon's obsession is consuming him bodily. The repetition *babboqer babboqer* ('morning by morning') suggests Jonadab has been observing Amnon's decline over an extended period. Amnon's self-description uses the participle *ohev* ('loving, in love') — present and ongoing, not a past event. His identification of Tamar through Absalom (*achot Avshalom achi*, 'sister of Absalom my brother') rather than simply as 'my sister' may indicate he is emphasizing the half-sibling distinction, or it may be the narrator's way of placing Absalom's name in the scene from the very beginning.
5. The verb *vehitchal* ('make yourself sick, feign illness') is *hithpael* — reflexive/pretend — confirming this is deliberate performance, not genuine sickness. The verb *tavrenni* ('let her feed me, give me food') from *barah* ('to eat, take a meal') is intimate language — it implies personal feeding, not institutional meal service. The word *biryah* ('food, something prepared') comes from the same root and emphasizes food made with personal care. The phrase *le'einai* ('before my eyes, in my sight') and *miyyaddah* ('from her hand') create a chain of sensory intimacy: sight and touch, watching and receiving. Jonadab constructs a scenario that is entirely plausible as sick-care and entirely functional as a trap.
6. The verb *telavvev* ('let her shape heart-cakes') from the root *l-v-v* ('heart') is unique to this passage. The *levivot* ('heart-shaped cakes' or 'heart-cakes') are formed from the word for heart (*lev*), suggesting either heart-shaped pastries or food meant to comfort the heart of an invalid. The intimate, almost tender terminology creates a surface meaning (a sister nursing a sick brother with hand-shaped comfort food) that conceals the predatory reality beneath. Amnon follows Jonadab's script almost verbatim but adapts the specific food — where Jonadab said *biryah* ('prepared food'), Amnon specifies *levivot*, adding an element of tenderness and domesticity. David, hearing nothing suspicious in a brother's request for his sister's cooking, complies.
7. The verb *vayyishlach* ('he sent') is the same verb used when David 'sent' for Bathsheba in 2 Samuel 11:4 — the verbal echo is likely deliberate. David addresses Tamar with *lekhee na* ('please go') — polite but carrying the weight of a royal command. The phrase *achikh* ('your brother') reinforces the family setting that makes the request seem safe. David has no reason for suspicion: a sick son asking for his sister's cooking is entirely normal in this cultural context.
8. The narrative pace slows to show every step of Tamar's labor: she takes the dough (*habatseq*), kneads it (*vattalosh*), shapes the heart-cakes (*vattelavvev*), and cooks them (*vattavashel*). The detailed, step-by-step description creates a domestic scene of care and normalcy that makes the coming violence more shocking by contrast. Amnon lies watching (*le'einav*, 'before his eyes') as Tamar performs an act of sisterly devotion that he is using as a mechanism to get her alone. Every moment of her labor is a moment of his calculation.
9. The word *masret* ('pan, baking dish') is a rare term, appearing only here and possibly related to the root *s-r-t*. The verb *vattisoq* ('she poured out') suggests the cakes were turned out of the pan onto a serving dish. Amnon's refusal to eat (*vayema'en le'ekhol*) signals the shift from pretense to predation — the food has served its purpose by getting Tamar into the house. The phrase *kol ish* ('every man, everyone') indicates there were servants present, meaning Amnon needed privacy to act.
10. The *cheder* ('inner room, bedroom, private chamber') is the most enclosed space in the house — it is the room where one sleeps and where outsiders do not enter. The phrase *ve'evreh miyyadeykh* ('so I can eat from your hand') maintains the fiction of an invalid needing hand-feeding. The narrator notes that Tamar took the *levivot* 'which she had made' (*asher asatah*), emphasizing her labor and care — she has invested herself in this act of service.
11. The verb *vayyachazzeq* (hiphil of *chazaq*, 'be strong') in this context means to seize, overpower, physically restrain. The same root appears in Deuteronomy 22:25 for a man who 'seizes' (*hecheziq*) a woman and lies with her — the legal term for rape. The command *shikhebi immi* ('lie with me') is the same phrase Potiphar's wife used with Joseph (Genesis 39:7, 12), creating a deliberate narrative echo. The word *achoti* ('my sister') in this context is grotesque — it acknowledges the kinship bond in the very act of violating it.
12. The verb *te'annenni* (piel of *innah*, 'to afflict, humble, violate') is the standard legal term for sexual violation in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 34:2, Deuteronomy 22:24, 29, Judges 19:24, 20:5). It encompasses forced intercourse, degradation of status, and social ruin. The phrase *lo ye'aseh khi beYisra'el* ('this is not done in Israel') appeals to communal moral standards — Israel has an identity as a people who do not commit certain acts. The word *nevalah* ('outrage, sacrilege, moral disgrace') is the term used for the rape at Gibeah (Judges 19:23-24, 20:6) and for Shechem's rape of Dinah (Genesis 34:7). It describes an act that is not merely sinful but that violates the moral fabric of the community.
13. The word *cherpah* ('disgrace, reproach, shame') describes the social consequences Tamar will bear — it is the permanent stigma attached to a violated woman. The phrase *anah olikh et cherpati* ('where would I take my disgrace?') is a question without an answer: there is nowhere to go with this shame. The word *nevalim* ('fools') here carries the same moral weight as *nevalah* in verse 12 — these are not intellectually foolish people but morally debased ones. The final clause *ki lo yimna'eni mimmekka* ('for he will not withhold me from you') is the interpretive crux: does Tamar genuinely believe David would approve a half-sibling marriage, or is she saying anything to prevent the imminent assault? The Levitical prohibition (Leviticus 18:9) would seem to rule out such a marriage, but the patriarchal precedent and the early monarchic period's relationship to codified law remains debated.
14. The phrase *velo avah lishmo'a beqolah* ('he refused to hear her voice') uses *avah* ('to be willing') — this is a choice, not an inability. The verb *vayyechezaq* ('he overpowered') from *chazaq* appears in the legal formulation of Deuteronomy 22:25 for rape. The verb *vaye'anneha* ('he violated her') is the piel of *innah* — the intensive form, indicating completed, thoroughgoing violation. The final clause *vayyishkav ota* ('he lay with her') uses

the accusative marker *et/otah* rather than the preposition *im* ('with'), which some scholars see as indicating coercion rather than mutuality — he lay her rather than he lay with her.

15. The verb *vayyisna'eha* ('he hated her') uses the same intensive grammatical pattern as *vayyeehaveha* ('he loved her') in verse 1, creating a deliberate structural mirror. The noun *sin'ah* ('hatred') and the noun *ahavah* ('love') are placed in direct comparison using the comparative *min* ('greater than'). The phrase *qumi lekhi* ('get up, go') is curt to the point of cruelty — two feminine singular imperatives with no softening particles, no name, no reason given. The immediate post-coital reversal from obsessive desire to visceral hatred is one of the Hebrew Bible's most psychologically acute observations about the nature of lust versus love.
16. The phrase *al odot hara'ah hagedolah hazzot me'acheret* ('on account of this great evil, worse than the other') identifies two separate wrongs: the rape and the expulsion. The Hebrew construction *me'acheret* ('than the other') treats them as two distinct acts that can be compared. The verb *leshallecheni* ('to send me away, to expel me') is the *piel* of *shalach*, which in marital contexts is the verb for divorce (Deuteronomy 24:1). Tamar may be invoking the legal framework: sending her away is functionally a rejection that leaves her without recourse. The repeated phrase *velo avah lishmo'a* ('he refused to listen') creates a structural bracket around the assault — refusal to hear in verse 14, refusal to hear in verse 16.
17. The phrase *et zo't* ('this one') is dehumanizing — *zo't* is a feminine demonstrative pronoun ('this'), used here as a noun. Amnon avoids Tamar's name entirely. The verb *shillechu* ('send out, expel') is a plural imperative directed at the servant(s). The command *un'ol haddellet* ('and bolt the door') uses the verb *na'al*, which means to lock or bolt — the door is to be barred after her, preventing return. The servant is called *na'aro meshareto* ('his young man, his attendant'), indicating a personal servant who would have been aware of everything happening in the house.
18. The *ketonet passim* ('ornamented tunic, multi-colored robe') is the same garment Jacob gave Joseph (Genesis 37:3). The exact meaning of *passim* is debated — proposals include 'many-colored,' 'long-sleeved,' 'reaching to the palms and soles,' or 'ornamented with applique.' Its rarity (only two occurrences) creates a powerful intertextual link between Joseph and Tamar — both are favored children of their father, both are stripped of their distinguishing garment in an act of familial violence. The explanatory note *ki khen tilbashna* ('for thus were dressed') is a narratorial aside informing the reader of court custom, indicating this detail was worth preserving because the garment signifies what Tamar is about to lose.
19. The *ash* (*efer*) on the head is a mourning custom (Joshua 7:6, Job 2:12, Esther 4:1). Tearing the *ketonet passim* destroys the garment that identified her as a virgin princess — the ripping is both grief and truth-telling: the status the garment represented no longer exists. The hand on the head (*yad al rosh*) is attested in ancient Near Eastern iconography as a gesture of mourning and lament. The phrase *halokh veza'aqah* ('going and crying out') uses the infinitive absolute construction to indicate continuous action — she did not stop screaming as she walked. The verb *za'aq* ('to cry out, scream') is stronger than *bakah* ('to weep') — it is the cry of the oppressed demanding justice (Exodus 2:23, Judges 4:3).
20. The name *Aminon* (with the *he-* prefix *ha'Aminon*) appears to be a diminutive or contemptuous form of Amnon — possibly reducing his name to something small or mocking. Absalom's command *hacharishi* ('be silent, keep quiet') is the *hiphil* imperative of *charash* ('be silent, be still'). In context, it may be protective (do not make a public accusation that could backfire) or strategic (silence preserves my ability to act later without warning). The phrase *al tashiti et libbekh* ('do not set your heart upon') means 'do not fixate on this' — it does not mean 'do not care' but rather 'do not act rashly.' The word *shomemah* ('desolate') is the same adjective used for the desolation of the land in Leviticus 26:34 and for destroyed cities in Ezekiel — it describes the total emptying of vitality and joy.
21. The phrase *vayyichar lo me'od* ('he was very angry') uses the same verb *charah* that described David's anger at Uzzah (2 Samuel 6:8) and at Nathan's parable (2 Samuel 12:5). David's anger is consistent; his follow-through is not. The Septuagint (LXX) adds: 'but he did not grieve the spirit of Amnon his son, because he loved him, because he was his firstborn.' This addition appears in 4QSama (Qumran) and may reflect an original Hebrew reading lost from the Masoretic tradition. If original, it explains David's inaction as favoritism toward his firstborn; if secondary, it represents an early interpretive attempt to explain the MT's stark silence.
22. The phrase *lemera ve'ad tov* ('from evil to good') is a merism — a figure of speech that names two extremes to indicate the entire range between them. Absalom speaks neither hostility nor courtesy, which means he speaks nothing at all. The verb *sane* ('to hate') is the same root as *sin'ah* in verse 15 but in a completely different emotional register: Amnon's hatred was post-coital revulsion; Absalom's is moral judgment hardened into intention. The verb *innah* ('violated') appears here for the third time (after vv. 12 and 14), and its repetition functions as a refrain of accusation that the narrative will not let the reader forget.
23. The phrase *lishenatayim yamim* ('at two years of days') marks a precise time gap — the delay is deliberate and important to the narrative. Sheep-shearing (*gozezim*) was a festive occasion involving feasting and wine (cf. Genesis 38:12-13, 1 Samuel 25:2-8). *Baal-hazor* ('lord of Hazor') is a location near Ephraim — in Absalom's territorial sphere, giving him control of the environment. The invitation to *kol benei hammelekh* ('all the king's sons') is broad enough to include Amnon without signaling that he is the target.
24. Absalom uses the language of courtly deference: *avdekha* ('your servant') for himself and *hammelekh* ('the king') for David. The initial invitation includes David himself — this may be genuine or strategic. If David had come, Absalom could not have killed Amnon without killing the king's bodyguard-protected presence. By inviting David first, Absalom sets up the negotiation that will follow: when David declines, Absalom can ask for a specific substitute.
25. David's refusal uses the verb *nikhbad* ('be heavy, burdensome') — a royal retinue visiting a sheep-shearing would strain Absalom's resources. The verb *vayyiprots bo* ('he pressed him, urged him') shows Absalom's persistence, which both maintains the appearance of sincerity and sets up the transition to the request for Amnon specifically. David's blessing (*vayevarkhehu*) authorizes the celebration without David's personal attendance — it gives Absalom cover of royal approval for the event.

26. Absalom's request for Amnon specifically — Amnon achi ('Amnon my brother') — is the critical pivot. By naming Amnon after David's refusal, Absalom makes it seem like a consolation request: if the king will not come, at least send the crown prince as representative. David's counter-question lammah yelekh immakh ('why should he go with you?') suggests a flicker of suspicion or at least surprise at the specificity. The question goes unanswered in the text — Absalom's response in verse 27 simply consists of continued pressing.
27. The verb vayyiprots ('he pressed, urged') is the same verb used in verse 25 — Absalom applies the same insistent pressure that wore David down before. The result: David sends (vayyishlach) both Amnon specifically and all the king's sons with him. Once again, David's word of royal authority sends a family member into danger — just as he sent Tamar to Amnon's house in verse 7. The pattern of David's authority being the instrument through which his children are harmed continues.
28. The timing — ketov lev Amnon bayyayin ('when Amnon's heart is merry with wine') — ensures the target is intoxicated and unable to react or defend himself. The phrase hakku et Amnon ('strike Amnon') uses the verb nakah ('to strike, smite'), the standard verb for a killing blow. The phrase benei chayil ('sons of valor') is a military designation for brave warriors (1 Samuel 14:52, 2 Samuel 2:7). Absalom's speech has the structure of a pre-battle exhortation: identification of the target, the signal for attack, reassurance against fear, invocation of authority, and a call to courage.
29. The phrase ka'asher tsivvah Avshalom ('as Absalom had commanded') emphasizes that the servants acted under orders — the responsibility is Absalom's. The response of the other princes is instant panic: vayyaqumu ('they rose'), vayyirkevu ('they mounted'), vayanusu ('they fled') — three rapid verbs describing a stampede. The mule (pered/pirdah) was the riding animal of royalty in this period (cf. 2 Samuel 18:9, 1 Kings 1:33). Each prince having his own mule indicates these are wealthy royal sons who came prepared with their own transport.
30. The shemu'ah ('report, news, rumor') is a distorted version of events — fear and distance have inflated a targeted assassination into a massacre. The phrase velo notar mehem echad ('not one of them remains') is the language of total annihilation. This false report creates maximum terror for David, who believes all his sons are dead. The narrative technique — showing the reader the truth (one death) while showing David a lie (total slaughter) — creates dramatic irony and intensifies the emotional chaos.
31. The tearing of garments (qeri'at begadim) is the primary ritual expression of grief and mourning in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 37:34, Job 1:20, 2 Samuel 1:11). David lying on the ground (vayyishkav artsah) recalls his prostration during the illness of Bathsheba's child (2 Samuel 12:16). The servants standing (nitsavim) with torn garments creates a formal court mourning scene. The participial construction indicates a sustained state: they remain standing in mourning posture.
32. The verb innah appears for the fourth and final time in this chapter (anoto, 'his violating'), maintaining the verbal thread that ties the entire narrative together. Jonadab's knowledge that the assassination was 'determined' (sumah) from the day of the rape implies either that Absalom confided in him or that Jonadab's 'wisdom' allowed him to read Absalom's silence correctly. Either way, his failure to warn anyone makes him complicit in both the rape and the murder. The phrase al pi Avshalom ('by the mouth/deed of Absalom') uses the idiom al pi ('by the mouth of') which normally introduces authoritative commands or divine decrees.
33. Jonadab repeats his correction — ki im Amnon levaddo met ('for only Amnon alone is dead') — reinforcing the limited scope of the killing. His phrase al yasem adoni hammelek el libbo ('let my lord the king not set upon his heart') echoes Absalom's instruction to Tamar in verse 20 (al tashiti et libbekh). Both use the idiom of 'setting on the heart' to mean 'do not fixate on this.' The repetition of Amnon levaddo met ('Amnon alone is dead') provides cold comfort — one son is still dead, murdered by another son.
34. The narrative splits into simultaneous tracks: Absalom's flight and the arrival of the surviving princes. The na'ar hatsofeh ('the young watchman') is a sentinel positioned on the walls or a high point, whose job is to report approaching groups. The phrase am rav ('many people, a large crowd') describes the approaching party — the surviving princes and their retinues. The phrase miderekh acharav mitsad hahar ('by the road behind him from the hillside') gives geographical detail that locates the approaching group on the road from Baal-hazor.
35. The phrase kidvar avdekha ken hayah ('according to the word of your servant, so it was') is a formula of prophetic confirmation, often used when a prediction comes true. Jonadab applies this language to himself with an audacity that borders on the prophetic — he speaks as though he is interpreting events rather than having helped cause them. His identification as avdekha ('your servant') maintains the posture of courtly deference while asserting his superior understanding of the situation.
36. The phrase vayyis'u qolam vayyivku ('they raised their voices and wept') describes loud, vocal mourning — the arriving princes are wailing as they enter. The phrase bekhi gadol me'od ('very great weeping') describes the intensity of the communal grief. The king, his servants, and his surviving sons all weep together, creating a scene of collective mourning that engulfs the entire court. The simultaneity of the princes' arrival and the eruption of grief is captured by the temporal construction kekhalloto ledabber ('as he finished speaking') — Jonadab's calm analysis is immediately drowned by the sound of weeping.
37. Geshur was an Aramean city-state east of the Jordan, allied with David through marriage (2 Samuel 3:3). Talmai (Talmay) is called ben Ammihud ('son of Ammihud') here but ben Ammihur in some manuscripts — a minor textual variant. The verb vayyit'abbel ('he mourned') is the hitpa'el of aval, indicating sustained, demonstrative mourning. The phrase kol hayyamim ('all the days') means continuously, without cessation. The ambiguity of 'his son' (beno) — does David mourn Amnon the dead or Absalom the exiled? — is a characteristic Hebraic device that allows both readings to stand simultaneously.
38. The repetition of Absalom's flight (already stated in v37) creates a narrative bracket: verse 37 told where he went and why; verse 38 tells how long he stayed. Three years (shalosh shanim) is the duration of Absalom's exile before Joab engineers his return (2 Samuel 14). The verb vayyehi sham ('he was there') emphasizes static residence — Absalom is waiting, not wandering. Three years in Geshur gives him time to plan, to build resentment, and

to sharpen the political instincts that will drive his rebellion in chapters 15-18.

39. The verb *vattekhēl* (from *kalah*, 'to be finished, consumed, spent') is debated: some read it as 'longed' (from a different root or nuance of *kalah*), others as 'ceased' or 'was restrained.' The Septuagint reads 'the spirit of the king ceased to go out after Absalom' — meaning David stopped pursuing Absalom, which is the opposite reading. The Masoretic pointing supports 'was consumed/exhausted with longing,' but the ambiguity affects the chapter's emotional conclusion significantly. The verb *nicham* (niph'al of *nacham*, 'to be comforted, to relent from grief') indicates that the initial intensity of David's mourning for Amnon has subsided — time has done its work. The final phrase *ki met* ('because he was dead') is the chapter's last word: death. It is the word that hangs over everything — over Amnon who is dead, over Tamar who is desolate as death, over the family that Nathan said the sword would never leave.

14

Summary: *Joab perceives that David's heart is turned toward Absalom -- three years exiled in Geshur after killing Amnon -- and orchestrates an elaborate scheme to bring him home. He recruits a wise woman from Tekoa to play the role of a grieving widow whose surviving son is threatened by blood-avengers after killing his brother. David rules in her favor, and she then turns the parable back on him: if the king protects her fictional son from the avenger of blood, why does he leave his own banished son in exile? David detects Joab's hand behind the performance, and Joab admits it. David relents and permits Absalom to return to Jerusalem -- but refuses to see him face to face. For two full years Absalom lives in Jerusalem without entering the king's presence. When Joab ignores his repeated summons, Absalom sets Joab's barley field on fire to force a meeting. Joab intercedes again, and David finally summons Absalom, who prostrates himself before the king. David kisses him. The reconciliation is formal but the fracture remains.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterclass in indirect speech and political manipulation, rivaling Nathan's parable in chapter 12 in both structure and theological weight. The wise woman of Tekoa constructs a juridical fiction that forces David to rule against his own practice -- and then reveals that his ruling applies to himself. Her argument reaches a theological climax in verse 14: 'God does not take away life; instead, He devises plans so that the banished one is not cast out from Him forever.' This is one of the most extraordinary theological statements in the entire Deuteronomistic History -- a claim about the restorative character of God that pushes against the retributive logic of blood-guilt. Yet the chapter is deeply ambiguous: Absalom's return plants the seed of the rebellion that will nearly destroy David's kingdom. What looks like mercy and reconciliation becomes the staging ground for civil war. The narrator forces the reader to hold both truths simultaneously: the theological principle is sound, but its political application is catastrophic.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of verse 14 is notoriously difficult and has generated centuries of interpretive debate. The phrase *ki mot namut u-kha-mayim ha-niggarim artsah asher lo ye'asefu* ('for we will surely die, and are like water spilled on the ground that cannot be gathered up') is clear enough, but the following clause -- *ve-lo yissa Elohim nefesh ve-chashav machashavot le-vilti yiddach mimmennu niddach* -- is syntactically ambiguous. Does it mean God does not take away life but instead plans for restoration? Or does it mean God does not show partiality but has devised means of restoration? The rendering must choose, and we have followed the reading that emphasizes God's restorative intent while noting the ambiguity. Additionally, the relationship between this chapter's theology and the larger narrative arc is uncomfortable: the wise woman's argument for mercy and restoration is theologically compelling, but the narrator will show that Absalom's return leads directly to treason, rape of David's concubines, and civil war. The text does not resolve whether David's decision was right or wrong -- only that it was consequential.*

Connections: *The Tekoa woman's parable deliberately mirrors Nathan's confrontation with David in chapter 12: both use a fictional legal case to trap the king into ruling against himself, both employ the *mashal* (parable/juridical fiction) form, and both pivot on the moment of unmasking. But the parallel contains a reversal: Nathan's parable led to judgment and punishment, while the Tekoa woman's leads to mercy and restoration. The avenger-of-blood motif (*go'el ha-dam*) invokes Numbers 35:9-28, where cities of refuge protect the manslayer from the blood-avenger until proper judgment can be rendered -- the wise woman argues that exile in Geshur has functioned as Absalom's city of refuge and that perpetual banishment exceeds the intent of the system. Absalom's physical beauty, described in verses 25-26, echoes Saul's imposing appearance in 1 Samuel 9:2 and*

foreshadows a recurring biblical warning: external magnificence does not guarantee internal faithfulness. The two-year estrangement in Jerusalem (v. 28) parallels the two years Absalom waited before killing Amnon (13:23), establishing a pattern of patient, calculated waiting that will characterize his rebellion in chapter 15.

¹Joab son of Zeruiah recognized that the king's heart was set on Absalom. ²Joab sent to Tekoa and brought from there a woman known for her wisdom. He told her, "Act as though you are in mourning. Put on garments of grief, do not anoint yourself with oil, and present yourself as a woman who has been mourning the dead for a long time." ³"Then go to the king and speak to him in this manner." And Joab placed the words in her mouth. ⁴The woman of Tekoa came before the king, fell face-down to the ground in prostration, and cried out, "Save me, O king!" ⁵The king said to her, "What is the matter?" She said, "Truly, I am a widow. My husband is dead." ⁶Your servant had two sons. They quarreled with each other in the field with no one to separate them, and one struck the other and killed him. ⁷Now the entire clan has risen against your servant. They say, 'Hand over the one who struck his brother so we can execute him for the life of his brother whom he killed -- and in doing so we will also eliminate the heir.' They would snuff out the one ember I have left, leaving my husband neither name nor survivor on the face of the earth. ⁸The king said to the woman, "Go home. I will issue a ruling on your behalf." ⁹The woman of Tekoa said to the king, "My lord the king, let any guilt fall on me and on my father's house. The king and his throne are innocent." ¹⁰The king said, "If anyone threatens you, bring him to me, and he will never trouble you again." ¹¹She said, "Please, let the king invoke the LORD your God, so that the avenger of blood will not keep on destroying and they will not wipe out my son." He said, "As the LORD lives, not a single hair of your son's head will fall to the ground." ¹²The woman said, "Please allow your servant to speak another word to my lord the king." He said, "Speak." ¹³The woman said, "Then why have you devised the same kind of thing against the people of God? By speaking this ruling, the king convicts himself -- because the king has not brought home his own banished son." ¹⁴For we will certainly die -- we are like water poured out on the ground that cannot be gathered up again. But God does not take away life; rather, He devises plans so that the banished one is not driven away from Him permanently. ¹⁵The reason I have come to speak this word to my lord the king is that the people frightened me. Your servant thought, 'Let me speak to the king -- perhaps the king will act on his servant's request.' ¹⁶For the king will listen and deliver his servant from the grasp of the man who would destroy both me and my son together from God's inheritance. ¹⁷Your servant thought, 'May the word of my lord the king bring rest.' For my lord the king is like a messenger of God in discerning good from evil. May the LORD your God be with you." ¹⁸The king responded and said to the woman, "Do not hide anything from me when I ask you this question." The woman said, "Let my lord the king ask." ¹⁹The king said, "Is Joab's hand behind all of this?" The woman answered, "As surely as you live, my lord the king, there is no turning right or left from anything my lord the king has said. Yes -- it was your servant Joab who commanded me. He put every one of these words in your servant's mouth." ²⁰Your servant Joab did this to change the shape of the situation. But my lord has wisdom like the wisdom of a messenger of God, knowing everything that happens in the land." ²¹The king said to Joab, "Very well -- I am granting this. Go and bring back the young man Absalom." ²²Joab fell face-down to the ground, prostrated himself, and blessed the king. Joab said, "Today your servant knows that I have found favor in your eyes, my lord the king, because the king has granted his servant's request." ²³Joab set out and traveled to Geshur, and brought Absalom back to Jerusalem. ²⁴But the king said, "Let him go to his own house. He is not to see my face." So Absalom went to his own house, and did not see the king's face. ²⁵In all of Israel there was no man so praised for his appearance as Absalom. From the sole of his foot to the crown of his head, there was no flaw in him. ²⁶When he cut his hair -- he would cut it at the end of each year because its weight became too heavy for him -- the hair of his head weighed two hundred shekels by the royal standard. ²⁷Three sons were born to Absalom, and one daughter whose name was Tamar. She was a woman of striking beauty. ²⁸Absalom lived in Jerusalem for two full years without seeing the king's face. ²⁹Absalom sent for Joab to send him to the king, but Joab refused to come. He sent a second time, and again Joab refused to come. ³⁰So he said to his servants, "Look -- Joab's field is next to mine, and he has barley growing there. Go and set it on fire." And Absalom's servants set the field ablaze. ³¹Joab got up and went to Absalom's house. He said to him, "Why have your servants set my field on fire?" ³²Absalom said to Joab, "Look -- I sent for you, saying, 'Come here so I can send you to the king with this message: Why did I bother coming

back from Geshur? It would have been better for me to still be there.' Now then -- let me see the king's face. And if there is guilt in me, let him put me to death." ³³Joab went to the king and reported this. The king summoned Absalom, and he came before the king and prostrated himself face-down to the ground in the king's presence. And the king kissed Absalom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *lev ha-melekh al-Avshalom* ('the king's heart was on/toward Absalom') uses the preposition *al*, which can indicate direction ('toward'), burden ('upon'), or concern ('about'). The ambiguity is likely intentional: David's heart both yearns for Absalom and is burdened by his absence. Joab reads the composite emotion and decides to act.
1. Joab's identification as *ben-Tseruyah* ('son of Zeruiah') ties him to his mother rather than his father -- an unusual patronymic convention in Hebrew narrative. Zeruiah was David's sister, making Joab the king's nephew. This family connection explains both his access to David's inner state and his willingness to intervene in what is ultimately a family matter.
2. The term *ishah chakhmah* ('wise woman') identifies a specific social role in ancient Israel, attested also in 2 Samuel 20:16 (the wise woman of Abel Beth-maacah). These women functioned as community counselors and negotiators, skilled in rhetoric and diplomatic speech. The role was distinct from prophetic or priestly authority -- it was a civic function rooted in practical wisdom and persuasive skill.
2. The prohibition against anointing with oil (*ve'al-tasukhi shemen*) is a key marker of mourning in Israelite culture. Oil was applied to the body as part of daily grooming and as a sign of joy and well-being (Psalm 23:5, 'you anoint my head with oil'). To forgo it publicly signals that the woman's grief has consumed her capacity for normal life. Joab is constructing a visual argument before a single word is spoken.
3. The phrase *vayyasem Yo'av et-ha-devarim be-fiha* ('Joab placed the words in her mouth') uses the same verb-phrasal construction found in Numbers 22:38, where Balaam tells Balak that he can only speak the word God puts in his mouth. The literary echo is pointed: Joab is playing the role of the deity who scripts the prophet's speech. Whether the narrator intends irony or simply a structural parallel, the effect is clear -- the woman's words are Joab's composition, delivered through her performance.
3. The brevity of the verse is itself significant. The narrator does not record the full script Joab gives her, choosing instead to reveal it through the woman's performance before the king. This narrative technique builds suspense: the reader discovers Joab's plan as David does, through the unfolding of the parable.
4. The cry *hoshi'ah ha-melekh* ('save, O king!') uses the imperative of *yasha* ('to save, to deliver') -- the same root behind the name Joshua/Yeshua. This is a formal legal appeal to the king as supreme judge, the court of last resort. The woman presents herself not as someone with a political request but as a desperate petitioner whose life depends on the king's ruling. The prostration (*vattishtachu*) and the face-to-ground posture (*vattippol al-appeihah artsah*) together convey total submission and urgent need.
4. The narrator identifies her as *ha-ishah ha-Teko'it* ('the Tekoite woman'), anchoring her in her town of origin. Tekoa will later be associated with the prophet Amos, but at this point it is a small agricultural settlement in the Judean highlands, a plausible origin for a widow with a land dispute.
5. The king's question *mah-lakh* ('what is to you?' or 'what troubles you?') is a standard judicial opening, inviting the petitioner to state her case. David is functioning here in his role as supreme judge of Israel, hearing cases that lower courts could not resolve -- precisely the role Samuel had filled and the role the people expected from their king (1 Samuel 8:20).
5. The woman's self-identification as *ishah-almanah* ('a widow woman') and the declaration *vayyamot ishi* ('my husband is dead') establish her as a member of one of Israel's most vulnerable social classes. Widows, along with orphans and resident aliens, are singled out repeatedly in Torah as persons whom God specially protects and whom Israel must not oppress (Deuteronomy 10:18, 24:17). By naming herself a widow, she activates David's covenantal obligation to defend the defenseless.
6. The verb *vayyinnats'u* ('they quarreled, they struggled') from the root *natsah* describes a physical altercation, not merely a verbal argument. The detail *ba-sadeh* ('in the field') places the fight away from witnesses, an important legal factor: in Deuteronomic law (Deuteronomy 22:25-27), an act committed in the field where no one could intervene carries different legal weight than one committed in a town. The phrase *ve'ein mattsil beineihem* ('and there was no one rescuing between them') emphasizes that no third party could have prevented the outcome.
6. The phrase *vayyakko ha-echad et-ha-echad* ('one struck the other') uses the verb *nakah*, which covers everything from a blow to a killing strike. The woman carefully avoids the word *ratsach* ('murder'), which would classify the act as a capital crime. She uses language that keeps the killing in the ambiguous zone between murder and manslaughter -- precisely the legal gray area that the cities-of-refuge legislation in Numbers 35 was designed to adjudicate.
7. The phrase *nemitehu be-nefesh achiv* ('let us put him to death for the life of his brother') is the formal language of blood-vengeance: a life (*nefesh*) for a life (*nefesh*). The clan acts as *go'el ha-dam* ('avenger of blood'), the kinsman responsible for ensuring that a murdered relative's death is paid for with the killer's life. This is not vigilante justice but an established legal institution (Numbers 35:19-21). The woman's genius is in acknowledging the legal legitimacy of the claim while demonstrating its destructive consequence.
7. The metaphor *ve-khibbu et-gachalti asher nish'arah* ('they would extinguish my remaining ember') is one of the most poignant images in the chapter. A *gacheleth* is a live coal -- not a flame but the smoldering remnant from which fire can be rekindled. The image captures both fragility and hope: the son is barely alive in a metaphorical sense, and yet from him could come a restored lineage. The phrase *she'erit* ('remnant, survivor') carries deep

theological resonance in Hebrew thought, where the remnant is always the seed of future restoration.

8. David's response *lekhi le-veitek va-ani atsavveh alayikh* ('go to your house and I will give an order concerning you') is a judicial promise: the king will act to resolve her case. The verb *tsavah* ('to command, to order') indicates a royal decree, not merely advice. David has accepted her case and committed to a ruling -- which is exactly where Joab needs him, because any ruling that protects her fictional son creates a precedent that applies to Absalom.
8. The phrasing is deliberately noncommittal at this stage -- David does not yet specify what he will order. He needs time to consider the competing legal claims. But the woman cannot afford ambiguity; she needs an explicit guarantee, which is why she will press him further in the following verses.
9. The phrase *alay adoni ha-melekh he-avon* ('upon me, my lord the king, the guilt') uses *avon*, which encompasses guilt, punishment, and the consequence of sin as an inseparable package. By claiming the *avon*, the woman accepts not just moral blame but the tangible consequences that follow -- the ongoing weight of unresolved blood. The offer is extravagant: she volunteers her entire father's house (*bet avi*) as co-bearers of whatever guilt results from the king's mercy.
9. The declaration *ve-ha-melekh ve-khis'o naqi* ('the king and his throne are innocent/clean') uses *naqi*, the legal term for acquittal or freedom from guilt. She explicitly extends the protection to the throne itself (*kis'o*) -- not just David personally but the institution of kingship. This addresses the deeper political concern: a king's unjust ruling can bring collective guilt upon the nation.
10. David's ruling escalates: anyone who speaks against her (*ha-medabber elayikh*, 'the one speaking to you') is to be brought before the king personally. The verb *naga* ('to touch, to strike, to harm') in its negative form (*lo yosif od laga'at bakh*, 'he will not again touch you') constitutes a royal protection order. David is now personally guaranteeing the woman's safety and, by extension, the safety of her surviving son.
10. The woman has succeeded in drawing David deeper into commitment, but she needs more. A general promise of protection is not the same as a specific guarantee that the avenger of blood will be restrained. She will push further in the next verse.
11. The phrase *me-harbat go'el ha-dam le-shachet* ('from the multiplying of the avenger of blood to destroy') is textually difficult -- the *ketiv* (written form) reads *meharbish* while the *qere* (read form) reads *me-harbat*. The sense is clear either way: the avenger of blood will continue destroying (*le-shachet*, 'to ruin, to corrupt, to destroy') unless the king intervenes. The verb *shachat* carries connotations of devastation beyond a single death -- the avenger's pursuit threatens to obliterate the entire remaining family.
11. David's oath *im-yippol missa'arat benekh artsah* ('if a hair of your son falls to the ground') is a hyperbolic guarantee of total protection. The hair (*sa'arah*) is the smallest, most negligible part of a person; an oath that protects even a single hair protects everything. This same formulaic oath appears in 1 Samuel 14:45, where the people swore that not a hair of Jonathan's head would fall -- a precedent David would know well. The irony is that David will eventually be unable to protect Absalom despite this oath.
12. The woman's request *tedabber-na shifchatekha* ('please let your servant speak') marks a transition. The parable is finished; the application is about to begin. She has secured the king's oath, and now she will turn it against him. Her use of *shifchah* ('maidservant, female servant') maintains the posture of humility that gives her permission to speak dangerously to power.
12. David's single-word response *dabberi* ('speak') shows he suspects nothing. He still believes he is adjudicating a widow's family dispute. The brevity conveys royal ease -- a king confident in his ruling, granting a petitioner one more word before dismissing her. He does not yet know the word will be an accusation.
13. The phrase *chashavtah ka-zot' al am Elohim* ('you have devised such a thing against the people of God') shifts the accusation from personal to national. The word *chashav* ('to think, to plan, to devise') implies deliberate intention -- David's failure to restore Absalom is not an oversight but a policy, and the woman calls it an offense against the collective people of God.
13. The term *niddacho* ('his banished one') from the root *nadach* ('to drive away, to banish, to scatter') is the key word of the chapter. It will recur in verse 14, where the woman grounds her entire theological argument in God's refusal to leave the banished one permanently cast out. The *niddach* is not merely an exile; the word carries the weight of divine displacement -- one driven from where they belong.
14. The phrase *ki-mot namut* ('for dying we will die') uses the infinitive absolute construction for emphasis -- death is certain, universal, and irreversible. The simile *ka-mayim ha-niggarrim artsah asher lo ye'asefu* ('like water poured on the ground that cannot be gathered') captures the finality: water spilled on earth cannot be scooped back. This acknowledges that Amnon's death cannot be undone -- the argument is not about reversing the past but about choosing the future.
14. The clause *ve-lo yissa Elohim nefesh* is the crux of interpretive difficulty. It can mean 'God does not take away a life [i.e., God does not desire death]' or 'God does not show partiality [literally, does not lift a face/person]'. The first reading makes God's character restorative; the second makes God's justice impartial. We follow the first reading because it better fits the clause that follows: *ve-chashav machashavot le-vilti yiddach mimmenu niddach* ('and He devises plans so that the banished one is not permanently cast out from Him'). The verb *chashav* ('to plan, to devise') is the same word used in verse 13 for David's 'devising' against the people -- the woman is contrasting human scheming that exiles with divine planning that restores.
15. The woman now provides a motivation for her visit: *ki yer'uni ha-am* ('because the people frightened me'). This functions on two levels simultaneously. Within the fiction, it explains why a widow would bring a family dispute to the king rather than resolving it locally. Within the real situation, it may hint that the nation itself is anxious about the unresolved status of Absalom and the instability it creates.

15. The shift from shifchatekha ('your maidservant') to amatekha ('your handmaid') is a subtle intensification of deference -- amah carries a slightly lower social register than shifchah in some contexts, emphasizing her humility at the moment she is making her boldest play. The word ulay ('perhaps') maintains the fiction of uncertainty while the woman's entire performance has been designed to ensure the outcome.
16. The phrase mi-nachalat Elohim ('from the inheritance of God') introduces a land-theology argument: to destroy the woman and her son is to cut them off from their share in God's allotted territory. In Israelite thought, the land is God's nachalah, distributed to the tribes and families as a divine trust. To be eliminated from that inheritance is to be severed not just from property but from covenantal belonging. The argument has direct application to Absalom: his exile in Geshur has removed him from the land of God's inheritance.
16. The verb hashmi ('to destroy, to exterminate') from the root shamad is a strong word -- it denotes total annihilation, not merely harm. The woman characterizes the avenger's intent as the complete erasure of her family from the land, which frames the threat in the most extreme terms possible and makes David's intervention a matter of covenantal preservation.
17. The comparison ke-mal'akh ha-Elohim ('like an angel/messenger of God') is a significant piece of royal theology. The mal'akh Elohim in Hebrew thought is a being who operates with divine authority and perception. To call the king 'like an angel of God' is to affirm the theological foundation of Israelite kingship: the king is God's representative, endowed with wisdom to judge. The phrase lishmo'a ha-tov ve-ha-ra ('to hear/discern good and evil') echoes the tree of knowledge in Eden (Genesis 2-3) and Solomon's later request for wisdom to discern good from evil (1 Kings 3:9).
17. The phrase li-menuchah ('for rest, for comfort') indicates that the king's word will settle the matter and bring peace to a troubled situation. The word menuchah carries deep resonance -- it is the rest God promises Israel in the land, the settled condition that follows resolution of conflict. The woman implies that David's ruling can bring menuchah to the kingdom itself, not just to her fictional family.
18. David's command al-na tekhachadi mimmeni davar ('do not hide a thing from me') uses the verb kachad ('to hide, to conceal, to deny'), signaling that David suspects the performance is not what it seems. His judicial instincts have been triggered -- the woman's rhetoric was too polished, her argument too precisely targeted. He is beginning to see through the parable, just as he began to see through Nathan's story only after the prophet declared 'You are the man.'
18. The woman's response yedabber-na adoni ha-melekh ('let my lord the king speak') is carefully neutral -- she neither confirms nor denies that she is hiding something, simply inviting the king to ask his question. She maintains composure under interrogation, demonstrating the 'wisdom' (chokmah) for which Joab selected her.
19. The phrase ha-yad Yo'av ittakh be-khol-zot ('is the hand of Joab with you in all this?') uses yad ('hand') metaphorically for agency and involvement. David does not ask 'Did Joab send you?' but 'Is Joab's hand in this?' -- attributing the entire operation to Joab's directing influence. The phrasing reveals that David knows Joab well enough to recognize his characteristic method: indirect action through intermediaries.
19. The woman's admission ki avdekha Yo'av hu tsivvani ('for your servant Joab, he commanded me') uses the emphatic pronoun hu ('he himself') to place full responsibility on Joab. The phrase ve-hu sam be-fi shifchatekha et kol-ha-devarim ha-elleh ('and he placed in your servant's mouth all these words') echoes verse 3, closing the frame: the words were Joab's from beginning to end.
20. The phrase le-va'avur sabbev et penei ha-davar ('in order to turn the face of the matter') is a remarkable expression. The verb sabbev ('to turn around, to go around, to transform') combined with penei ha-davar ('the face of the thing/matter') describes Joab's strategy as literally changing the appearance or orientation of the situation. He has not changed the facts -- Absalom still killed Amnon -- but he has reframed how David sees those facts.
20. The second comparison to an angel of God (ke-chokhmat mal'akh ha-Elohim) reinforces the earlier flattery in verse 17, but now with an edge: David's angel-like wisdom saw through the disguise, which means he cannot pretend not to understand the application. His own discernment traps him into acting on what he has discerned.
21. The imperative lekh hashev ('go, bring back') delegates the actual retrieval to Joab, who engineered the entire situation. The verb hashev (hiphil of shuv, 'to return') means 'to cause to return, to restore, to bring back' -- the same root that carries deep theological significance as teshuvah ('repentance, return'). Whether the narrator intends this resonance is debatable, but the linguistic connection is present: Joab is being sent to bring about Absalom's shuvah, his return.
21. The designation ha-na'ar ('the young man') for Absalom is notable. Na'ar can mean 'youth, servant, attendant' and carries varying degrees of formality. Applied to a prince who is old enough to have orchestrated a murder and survived three years of exile, it may be David's way of diminishing the political weight of the moment -- this is not the return of a claimant to the throne, just a young man coming home.
22. Joab's prostration and blessing follow court protocol for receiving a royal favor, but the scene carries an undercurrent of power dynamics. Joab is the one who manipulated the king into this decision, yet he performs the role of grateful servant. The phrase matsa'ti chen be-einekha ('I have found favor in your eyes') is the standard expression of a subordinate acknowledging a superior's gracious act -- the same language used by Jacob before Esau (Genesis 33:8) and by Ruth before Boaz (Ruth 2:10).
22. The ketiv-qere variant avdo/avdo (his servant) is a minor scribal issue with no impact on meaning. Joab's statement asher-asah ha-melekh et devar avdo ('because the king has done the word of his servant') is diplomatically careful: Joab attributes the decision entirely to the king's authority, obscuring the fact that it was Joab's scheme from start to finish.

23. The narrative is compressed to a single verse: Joab goes, Joab returns with Absalom. The journey from Jerusalem to Geshur (in the northeastern Transjordan, near the Sea of Galilee) would have taken several days in each direction. The narrator's brevity suggests that the logistics are unimportant; what matters is the result -- Absalom is now in Jerusalem.
23. Geshur was the small Aramean kingdom ruled by Absalom's maternal grandfather Talmai son of Ammihud (2 Samuel 3:3, 13:37). Absalom fled there after killing Amnon because it was outside Israelite jurisdiction -- a foreign kingdom where David's authority did not extend. His return from Geshur to Jerusalem is a legal and political event, not merely a geographic one.
24. The verb *yissov* ('let him turn') from the root *savav* ('to turn, to go around') echoes the same root used in verse 20 for Joab's strategy of 'turning the face of the matter.' The linguistic echo may be coincidental, but the narrative parallel is not: Joab turned the situation to bring Absalom back, but David turns Absalom away from his presence. The two turnings work against each other.
24. The repetition is precise and devastating: the king says *panai lo yir'eh* ('he will not see my face'), and the narrator confirms *u-fenei ha-melekh lo ra'ah* ('and the face of the king he did not see'). The doubling -- command and fulfillment -- seals the estrangement as official policy, not a temporary arrangement. For two full years (v. 28), this will be Absalom's condition.
25. The phrase *ish yafeh* ('a beautiful/handsome man') uses *yafeh*, the standard term for physical beauty applied to both men and women. The superlative construction -- *lo hayah ish yafeh be-khol-Yisra'el le-hallel me'od* ('there was no man so beautiful in all Israel to praise so greatly') -- places Absalom at the pinnacle of Israelite attractiveness. The verb *hallel* ('to praise') is the same root as *hallelujah*; Israel's praise of Absalom carries an almost liturgical intensity.
25. The phrase *lo hayah vo mum* ('there was no blemish in him') uses *mum*, the technical term for a physical defect that would disqualify a priest from serving (Leviticus 21:17-23) or an animal from sacrifice (Leviticus 22:20-25). Applying this priestly/sacrificial vocabulary to Absalom's body creates an unsettling resonance: he is physically 'qualified' in a way that evokes holiness categories, yet his character will prove deeply flawed.
26. The phrase *mi-qets yamim la-yamim* ('from the end of days to days') is an idiomatic expression for a regular interval, typically understood as annually. The verb *gillach* ('to shave, to cut hair') and the weight measurement *be-even ha-melekh* ('by the stone/weight of the king') indicate a royal standard of measurement -- the narrator is precise about the quantification, lending the detail an almost bureaucratic air that contrasts with its narrative function as foreshadowing.
26. The weight of *ma'atayim sheqalim* ('two hundred shekels') has been debated for centuries. By the standard shekel of approximately 11.4 grams, this would be about 2.3 kilograms (roughly 5 pounds). Whether literal or hyperbolic, the number communicates abundance and excess. Absalom's hair is legendary -- and the narrator wants the reader to remember it.
27. The absence of the sons' names is notable. In Hebrew narrative, unnamed children often indicate that they died young or left no lasting legacy. Indeed, 2 Samuel 18:18 will record Absalom setting up a memorial pillar because 'I have no son to preserve the memory of my name' -- suggesting that all three sons died before Absalom himself did. The narrator may be foreshadowing the extinction of Absalom's line.
27. The name Tamar (tamar, 'date palm') is identical to that of Absalom's sister. The description *ishah yefat mar'eh* ('a woman beautiful of appearance') uses the same adjective *yafeh* applied to Absalom in verse 25, linking father and daughter in a shared physical splendor. The beauty of the Davidic line is a recurring narrative thread -- David, Absalom, and both Tamars are described as beautiful, and in each case beauty proves to be entangled with suffering.
28. The phrase *shenatayim yamim* ('two years of days') uses *yamim* as an intensifier -- not just two calendar years but two full, complete years, each day of which was spent in the same condition of exclusion. The construction emphasizes duration and monotony: the estrangement was not a brief phase but a sustained policy.
28. The repetition of *u-fenei ha-melekh lo ra'ah* ('and the face of the king he did not see') from verse 24 creates a literary bracket: the estrangement announced by royal decree in v. 24 is confirmed as ongoing reality in v. 28. Nothing has changed. David's refusal to see Absalom is not a temporary cooling-off period -- it has calcified into the status quo.
29. The verb *avah* ('to be willing, to consent') in its negative form (*lo avah lavo*, 'he was not willing to come') indicates a deliberate refusal, not mere unavailability. Joab chose not to respond to Absalom's summons -- twice. The repetition *vayyishlach od shenit* ('and he sent again a second time') and the identical refusal *ve-lo avah lavo* emphasize the pattern and build toward the explosion in the next verse.
29. The irony is sharp: Joab was willing to engineer an elaborate scheme with the wise woman of Tekoa to convince the king, but he is unwilling to walk across Jerusalem to meet with Absalom. The contrast reveals something important about Joab's character: he acts on his own initiative when he calculates advantage, but he will not be summoned by others -- not even by the prince he restored.
30. The phrase *chelqat Yo'av el-yadi* ('Joab's plot of land is beside mine') reveals that Absalom and Joab owned adjacent fields -- a detail that emphasizes the proximity between the royal family and its military commander, and also the practical ease of the arson: Absalom's servants need only walk to the neighboring field.
30. The verb *hatsitu* ('set on fire') from the root *yatsath* describes deliberate ignition. The barley (*se'orim*) would have been ripe or nearly ripe, making it highly flammable. The destruction of a standing grain crop was a recognized form of aggression in the ancient Near East -- Samson used the same tactic against the Philistines (Judges 15:4-5). The narrator records both the command and its execution in a single verse, compressing the act to emphasize its swiftness and decisiveness.

31. The narrative sequence vayyaqom Yo'av vayyavo el-Avshalom ha-baytah ('Joab rose and came to Absalom's house') uses the same verbs that described Joab's mission to Geshur in verse 23. In both cases, Joab 'rises and goes' at someone else's initiative -- first David's command, now Absalom's provocation. The parallel subtly positions Absalom as exercising the kind of command that should belong to the king.
31. Joab's question lammah hitsitu avadekha ('why have your servants set on fire?') attributes the act to Absalom's servants rather than to Absalom directly, which may be a diplomatic attempt to give Absalom an exit ('your servants acted without orders') or simply an acknowledgment of the chain of command. Absalom, as we will see, claims full responsibility.
32. The phrase tov li od ani sham ('it would be good for me, still being there') is a bitter assessment: Geshur was better than this. The word tov ('good') carries heavy irony -- exile in a foreign kingdom was 'good' compared to being a ghost in his own city. The rhetorical force is designed to shame David through Joab: your mercy is worse than your judgment.
32. The conditional ve-im yesh bi avon ve-hemitani ('and if there is guilt in me, let him kill me') uses avon (the same word the wise woman offered to bear in verse 9) and the verb hemit (hiphil of mut, 'to cause to die, to execute'). Absalom is demanding a formal judicial resolution: either acquit me by receiving me, or convict me and carry out the sentence. The demand for clarity is reasonable; the implicit threat -- that the current ambiguity will produce worse consequences -- is the subtext the narrator wants the reader to hear.
33. The verb vayyishtachu ('and he prostrated himself') is the standard term for formal obeisance before a king or before God. Combined with al-appav artsah ('on his face to the ground'), it describes the most extreme form of physical submission. Absalom performs perfectly -- but the narrative has already shown us that Absalom is a man who performs when necessary and burns fields when performance fails.
33. The final clause vayyishaq ha-melek le-Avshalom ('and the king kissed Absalom') uses the verb nashaq ('to kiss'), which in royal contexts signifies acceptance and restoration to favor. The kiss should mark the end of the estrangement. But the narrator provides no commentary, no evaluation, no 'and it was good' or 'and there was peace between them.' The silence after the kiss is the narrator's judgment: this reconciliation is incomplete, and its consequences will be catastrophic.

15

Summary: Absalom spends four years positioning himself at the gate of Jerusalem, intercepting legal petitioners, kissing them, and systematically stealing the loyalty of Israel away from David. When the conspiracy is ripe, he goes to Hebron under the pretext of fulfilling a vow, sends agents throughout the tribes to declare his kingship at the trumpet blast, and recruits David's own counselor Ahithophel. The conspiracy is strong and growing. When word reaches David, he immediately evacuates Jerusalem with his household and loyal servants, leaving ten concubines to keep the palace. He pauses at the last house on the city's edge, reviews his forces including Ittai the Gittite and his six hundred men, and sends the Ark back to Jerusalem with the priests Zadok and Abiathar, telling them to serve as his eyes and ears in the city. David ascends the Mount of Olives barefoot and weeping, his head covered, and all the people with him weeping. Told that Ahithophel has joined Absalom, David prays for God to turn Ahithophel's counsel into foolishness. At the summit, his friend Hushai the Archite meets him in mourning, and David sends Hushai back into the city to feign loyalty to Absalom and defeat Ahithophel's advice from within, relaying intelligence through the priests' sons.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter records the most painful exile in David's life, and it is self-inflicted. Nathan's prophecy in chapter 12 — 'the sword will never depart from your house' and 'I will raise up trouble against you from within your own household' — begins its fulfillment here through David's own son. What makes this chapter extraordinary is David's response. He does not fight. He does not rage. He evacuates. The man who once killed Goliath, raided Philistine camps, and conquered Jerusalem now walks out of his own capital barefoot and weeping. David's strategic brilliance has not left him — he plants Hushai as a counterintelligence agent, keeps the priestly network intact, and organizes his retreat with military precision — but his spirit is broken. The weeping ascent of the Mount of Olives is the narrative's emotional center: a king climbing a hill of grief, covering his face, worshiping even as everything collapses. Absalom's method is equally remarkable for its sophistication. He does not seize the throne by force; he undermines it by empathy. He sits at the gate, touches people, listens to their grievances, and whispers that no one in government cares about them. He steals Israel's heart not with a sword but with a kiss.

Translation Friction: Verse 7 presents a significant textual problem: the Masoretic Text reads 'at the end of forty years' (arba'im shanah), but forty years from what? David's entire reign was only forty years (2 Samuel 5:4), and Absalom had only recently returned from exile. The Syriac Peshitta, some Septuagint manuscripts, and Josephus read 'four years' (arba' shanim), which makes far better narrative sense — four years after

Absalom's return to Jerusalem or four years of gate-sitting. Most scholars accept 'four years' as the original reading. Verse 8 introduces Absalom's claim of a vow made in Geshur, but whether such a vow was genuine or fabricated is left ambiguous. The phrase 'stole the hearts of the men of Israel' in verse 6 uses the verb ganav ('to steal'), which carries overtones of deception — Jacob 'stole' Laban's heart by fleeing without telling him (Genesis 31:20). The Hebrew does not distinguish between winning hearts and deceiving them.

Connections: David's flight from Jerusalem inverts his triumphal entry with the Ark in chapter 6. He once danced into the city; now he weeps out of it. The Ark that he brought to Jerusalem he now sends back, refusing to use God's presence as a military talisman. This restraint contrasts sharply with Israel's disastrous decision to bring the Ark into battle at Ebenezer (1 Samuel 4), where they treated it as a weapon and lost everything. David's ascent of the Mount of Olives — barefoot, head covered, weeping — prefigures Jesus' descent of the same mount weeping over Jerusalem (Luke 19:41-44), and Jesus' ascent to Gethsemane on the night of his betrayal (Luke 22:39-44). Both David and Jesus are betrayed by intimates (Ahithophel/Judas), both weep on the Mount of Olives, and both leave the city that should have been their throne. Ahithophel's betrayal anticipates Judas so precisely that Psalm 41:9 ('Even my close friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted his heel against me') — traditionally attributed to David's experience here — is quoted by Jesus at the Last Supper (John 13:18). Absalom's conspiracy echoes Adonijah's later attempt (1 Kings 1), and his use of Hebron as a base recalls David's own coronation there (2 Samuel 2:4), turning David's origin city against him.

¹After this, Absalom acquired a chariot and horses for himself, along with fifty men to run ahead of him. ²Absalom would rise early and station himself beside the road leading to the city gate. Whenever anyone who had a legal dispute was on his way to the king for a ruling, Absalom would call out to him and say, "What city are you from?" The man would answer, "Your servant is from such-and-such tribe of Israel." ³Absalom would say to him, "Look — your claims are good and legitimate, but there is no one appointed by the king to hear you." ⁴Then Absalom would say, "If only someone would appoint me judge in the land! Then anyone with a dispute or legal case could come to me, and I would see that he gets justice." ⁵Whenever anyone approached to bow down to him, Absalom would reach out his hand, take hold of the man, and kiss him. ⁶Absalom did this to everyone in Israel who came to the king for judgment. In this way, Absalom stole the hearts of the men of Israel. ⁷At the end of four years, Absalom said to the king, "Please let me go and fulfill the vow I made to the LORD, in Hebron." ⁸"Your servant made a vow while I was living in Geshur in Aram: 'If the LORD truly brings me back to Jerusalem, I will worship the LORD.'" ⁹The king said to him, "Go in peace." So Absalom set out and went to Hebron. ¹⁰Absalom sent agents throughout all the tribes of Israel with this message: "The moment you hear the blast of the ram's horn, declare: 'Absalom has become king in Hebron!'" ¹¹Two hundred men from Jerusalem went with Absalom. They had been invited and went in complete innocence, knowing nothing of the plot. ¹²Absalom also sent for Ahithophel the Gilonite, David's counselor, from his city of Giloh, while the sacrifices were being offered. The conspiracy was gaining strength, and the people joining Absalom kept growing. ¹³A messenger came to David and reported, "The hearts of the men of Israel have gone over to Absalom." ¹⁴David said to all his officials who were with him in Jerusalem, "Get up — we must run. There will be no escape for us from Absalom. Move quickly, before he overtakes us suddenly and brings disaster crashing down on us and puts the city to the sword." ¹⁵The king's officials said to the king, "Whatever my lord the king decides — here are your servants." ¹⁶The king went out on foot, with his entire household following him. But the king left behind ten concubines to look after the palace. ¹⁷The king went out with all the people on foot, and they halted at the last house on the outskirts. ¹⁸All his officials were marching past him, along with all the Kerethites, all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites — six hundred men who had followed him on foot from Gath — passing in review before the king. ¹⁹The king said to Ittai the Gittite, "Why should you also come with us? Go back and stay with the new king — you are a foreigner, and besides, you are an exile from your own homeland." ²⁰You arrived only yesterday — should I make you wander with us today, when I myself am going wherever I must go? Go back and take your brothers with you. May faithful covenant-love go with you. ²¹Ittai answered the king, "As the LORD lives and as my lord the king lives — wherever my lord the king is, whether it means death or life, there your servant will be." ²²David said to Ittai, "Then march on." So Ittai the Gittite crossed over, along with all his men and all the dependents who were with him. ²³The whole countryside was weeping loudly as all the people crossed over. The king crossed

the Kidron Valley, and all the people crossed over on the road toward the wilderness. ²⁴Zadok was also there, and all the Levites with him, carrying the Ark of the Covenant of God. They set the Ark of God down, and Abiathar offered sacrifices until all the people had finished crossing out of the city. ²⁵The king said to Zadok, "Take the Ark of God back to the city. If I find favor in the LORD's eyes, he will bring me back and let me see both it and its dwelling place again." ²⁶But if he says, 'I take no pleasure in you' — here I am. Let him do to me whatever seems good to him. ²⁷The king also said to Zadok the priest, "Are you not a seer? Return to the city in peace — you and your two sons with you: your son Ahimaaz and Abiathar's son Jonathan." ²⁸"Look — I will wait at the fords of the wilderness until word comes from you to inform me." ²⁹So Zadok and Abiathar took the Ark of God back to Jerusalem and remained there. ³⁰David was ascending the slope of the Mount of Olives, climbing and weeping, his head covered and his feet bare. Every person with him also covered their head, and they went up weeping as they climbed. ³¹When David was told, "Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom," David said, "LORD, please — turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness." ³²When David reached the summit, where people worshiped God, Hushai the Archite was there to meet him — his tunic torn and dirt on his head. ³³David said to him, "If you cross over with me, you will be a burden on me." ³⁴But if you return to the city and say to Absalom, 'I will be your servant, O king — just as I was your father's servant in the past, so now I will be your servant' — then you can defeat the counsel of Ahithophel for me. ³⁵"Zadok and Abiathar the priests are with you there, are they not? Whatever you hear from the royal palace, report to Zadok and Abiathar the priests." ³⁶"Their two sons are with them there — Ahimaaz for Zadok and Jonathan for Abiathar. Send me through them every piece of intelligence you pick up." ³⁷Hushai, David's trusted friend, entered the city just as Absalom was arriving in Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyaas* ('he made/prepared for himself') indicates deliberate, premeditated action. The *merkavah* ('chariot') and *susim* ('horses') are royal accoutrements — Israel's kings were expected to travel with such retinues. The *chamishim ish ratsim* ('fifty men running') served as a personal bodyguard and advance party, clearing the way and announcing the dignitary's approach. This exact combination recurs in 1 Kings 1:5 with Adonijah, creating a literary pattern for self-appointed royal pretenders.
2. The verb *hishkim* ('to rise early') in the *hiphil* stem emphasizes habitual, deliberate early action — this was not occasional but systematic. The phrase *al yad derekh hash'a'ar* ('beside the road of the gate') places Absalom at the main thoroughfare into the city, the point through which all legal traffic would pass. The word *riv* ('dispute, lawsuit, legal controversy') is a technical legal term — these are people coming for formal adjudication before the king.
3. Absalom's formula is devastatingly effective: first validation ('your claims are good and right'), then blame ('no one from the king will hear you'). The word *nekhochim* ('straight, right, legitimate') affirms the petitioner's case before hearing it — Absalom declares everyone righteous. The phrase *shomea ein lekha me'et hammelekh* ('there is no one to hear you from the king') implies that David has failed in his basic duty of justice. Whether this was true — David may have been overwhelmed or negligent after the crises of chapters 11-14 — or a calculated lie, the effect was the same: erosion of trust in the king.
4. The optative *mi yesimeni* ('who would make me') expresses a desire presented as hypothetical — Absalom never openly claims the throne at this stage but plants the idea. The word *shofet* ('judge') carries enormous weight in Israelite tradition: the judges were deliverers raised up by God (Judges 2:16). Absalom appropriates that loaded title. The verb *hitsdaqtiv* (*hiphil* of *ts-d-q*, 'to declare righteous') is a forensic term — to render a legal verdict of vindication. Absalom promises universal vindication, which is a promise of corruption dressed as compassion.
5. The verb *hishtachavot* ('to bow down, prostrate oneself') is the standard gesture of respect before royalty. Absalom's interruption of this gesture — reaching out (*shalach et yado*), seizing (*hecheziq*), and kissing (*nashaq*) — systematically dismantles the normal social distance between a prince and his subjects. Each verb escalates the physical contact: reach, grip, kiss. The sequence turns a formal encounter into a personal one.
6. The phrase *vayyegannev et lev* ('he stole the heart') uses *ganav* in the *piel* stem, intensifying the act of theft. The *lev* ('heart') in Hebrew is not primarily the seat of emotion but of will, loyalty, and decision-making. To steal someone's heart is to redirect their allegiance, their fundamental orientation of loyalty. The construction echoes Genesis 31:20 (*vayyignov Ya'aqov et lev Lavan*, 'Jacob stole Laban's heart'), where the phrase describes covert action — doing something behind someone's back. Absalom's theft was conducted in broad daylight at the gate, but it was theft nonetheless.
7. The MT reading *arba'im shanah* ('forty years') is widely considered corrupt. The Syriac Peshitta, Lucian's Greek recension, and Josephus (*Antiquities* 7.196) read 'four years.' Since David reigned only forty years total (2 Samuel 5:4-5), 'forty years' makes no chronological sense in context. The verb *ashalle* ('I will pay/fulfill') from *sh-l-m* indicates completion of a vow — a sacred obligation that a father-king could not refuse without appearing impious. Hebron (Chevron), approximately 19 miles south of Jerusalem, was the most important city of Judah before David moved the capital.

8. Absalom frames his request in the language of piety: *neder nadar* ('a vow he vowed'), the cognate accusative construction that emphasizes the seriousness of the vow. His claimed vow echoes Jacob's vow at Bethel (Genesis 28:20-21), which also began with 'if God brings me back.' The conditional *im yashov yeshiveni* ('if indeed he brings me back') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis. Whether the vow was genuine or fabricated, it served as perfect cover — no Israelite king could deny a subject permission to fulfill a sacred vow. Geshur in Aram was the kingdom of Absalom's maternal grandfather Talmai (2 Samuel 3:3, 13:37-38).
9. The formula *lekh beshalom* ('go in peace') is a standard blessing of safe travel and divine protection. David used the same phrase — or nearly so — in other contexts of sending someone away with goodwill. The verb *vayyaqom vayyelekh* ('he arose and went') signals decisive action. *Chevronah* ('to Hebron,' with the directional *he* suffix) specifies the destination. The narrative's brevity at this moment — three Hebrew words from David, then immediate departure — mirrors the swiftness with which the conspiracy advances once the king's permission is granted.
10. The word *meraggelim* ('spies, scouts') from the root *r-g-l* ('foot') implies covert agents moving on foot throughout the territory — the same word used for the spies Joshua sent into Canaan (Joshua 2:1). The *shofar* (ram's horn) was the instrument of royal coronation (1 Kings 1:34, 39) and divine theophany (Exodus 19:16). Absalom co-opts sacred and royal symbolism simultaneously. The verb *malakh* ('he has become king, he reigns') in the perfect tense presents the kingship as an established fact rather than a claim.
11. The two hundred men are *qeru'im* ('invited ones, summoned guests') — respectable Jerusalemites whom Absalom brought along as unwitting cover. The phrase *holkhim letummam* ('going in their innocence/integrity') uses *tom* ('completeness, simplicity, innocence'), indicating they had no idea what Absalom was planning. Their presence served a dual purpose: it made Absalom's departure look like a legitimate religious pilgrimage, and once the coup was announced, these prominent men would appear to be supporters whether they wanted to be or not. They were human shields for Absalom's legitimacy.
12. Ahithophel (Ahitofel, 'my brother is foolishness' or 'brother of ruin') is called *haGiloni* ('the Gilonite'), from Giloh in the Judean hill country (Joshua 15:51). His title *yo'ets David* ('David's counselor') indicates a formal advisory role. The word *qesher* ('conspiracy, binding together') from *q-sh-r* ('to bind') describes a tight, organized plot. The adjective *ammits* ('strong, firm') from *a-m-ts* indicates the conspiracy has real force behind it. The participial phrase *holekh varav* ('going and increasing') describes continuous growth — the snowball effect of a successful rebellion.
13. The *maggid* ('reporter, one who tells') delivers the message in the starkest terms: *hayah lev ish Yisra'el acharei Avshalom* ('the heart of the men of Israel has become after Absalom'). The verb *hayah* ('has become') marks a completed transfer — this is not a warning of future danger but a report of present reality. The phrase *acharei Avshalom* ('after Absalom') uses the same language of allegiance used for following God or following a king: Israel's loyalty has shifted. The singular *lev* ('heart') with the collective *ish Yisra'el* ('men of Israel') treats the nation as a single entity that has turned.
14. The verb *nivrachah* ('let us flee') is a niphil cohortative from *b-r-ch* — it carries urgency and collective action. The word *peletah* ('escape, deliverance, remnant') indicates David fears total destruction if they remain. The verb *maharu* ('hurry') from *m-h-r* intensifies the urgency. The phrase *hikkah ha'ir lefi charev* ('strike the city by the mouth of the sword') is the standard idiom for military massacre — the sword's 'mouth' devours the population. David's fear is not just for himself but for Jerusalem: he flees to save the city from becoming a battlefield.
15. The servants' response — *kekhol asher yivchar adoni hammelekh* ('according to everything my lord the king chooses') — is a declaration of unconditional loyalty. The verb *yivchar* ('chooses, decides') from *b-ch-r* is the same root used for God's choosing of Israel and David. The phrase *hinneh avadeikha* ('here are your servants') places their persons at David's disposal. In a moment when the nation's heart has gone to Absalom, this small circle of loyalists declares itself bound to David. Their fidelity stands in sharp contrast to Israel's defection.
16. The phrase *beraglav* ('on his feet') emphasizes that David walks — the absence of a chariot or mount underscores his vulnerability and humility. The verb *ya'azov* ('he left behind') from *'-z-v* carries overtones of abandonment in some contexts. The *pilagshim* ('concubines') occupied a legal status below full wives but above servants. The number ten may be symbolic of completeness, or it may simply be the historical count. The verb *lishmor* ('to keep, guard, watch over') indicates their assigned function was custodial — maintaining the royal household in the king's absence.
17. The phrase *beit hammerchaq* is debated. It could mean 'the far house' (the last house at the city's edge), 'a house at a distance,' or even 'Beth-merhak' as a place name. The Septuagint renders it differently in various manuscripts. Most interpreters take it as the last building on the city's outskirts, where David paused to let his retinue gather and to review his forces before proceeding into the wilderness.
18. David's personal army is a multinational force. The *Kereti* (Kerethites) and *Peleti* (Pelethites) were professional soldiers, likely of Aegean or Philistine origin, who served as David's royal guard (cf. 2 Samuel 8:18, 20:23). The *Gittim* ('Gittites,' men of Gath) are Philistine warriors — six hundred of them — who followed David from the Philistine city of Gath. The number six hundred echoes the six hundred men who followed David during his fugitive years under Saul (1 Samuel 23:13, 27:2). The phrase *ovrim al penei hammelekh* ('passing before the face of the king') describes a military review — David inspects his troops even in retreat.
19. *Ittai* (Ittay, possibly 'with me' or 'the LORD is with me') is called *haGitti* ('the Gittite'), from the Philistine city of Gath. The word *nokhri* ('foreigner, stranger') marks someone outside the covenant community — Ittai has no tribal obligation to David. The word *goleh* ('exile, displaced person') from *g-l-h* indicates Ittai has been expelled from his own place. David's reference to staying *im hammelekh* ('with the king') is ambiguous — it could mean 'with the new king [Absalom]' or could be David's oblique acknowledgment that he may no longer be king.
20. The phrase *temol bo'ekha* ('yesterday you came') may be literal or idiomatic for 'recently.' The expression *ani holekh al asher ani holekh* ('I am going where I am going') uses the participle *holekh* twice, creating a sense of open-ended, uncertain movement — David has no fixed destination. The blessing *chesed ve'emet* ('faithful love and truth/reliability') is a hendiadys — two words forming a single concept: 'reliable covenant-love' or 'steadfast faithfulness.' This word pair appears in God's self-revelation (Exodus 34:6) and throughout the Psalms as a description of divine

character.

21. The oath formula *chai YHWH vechai adoni hammelekh* ('as the LORD lives and as my lord the king lives') binds the speaker by the lives of both God and the king — the strongest possible oath. The phrase *im lammavet im lechayyim* ('whether for death or for life') presents the two extremes with death listed first, indicating Ittai's willingness to share the worst outcome. The parallel to Ruth 1:16-17 is striking: both are foreigners, both make unconditional commitments to Israelites in crisis, both invoke the LORD. Ittai's loyalty will be rewarded: David later appoints him commander of a third of the army (2 Samuel 18:2).
22. David's response — *lekh va'avor* ('go and cross over') — is terse, accepting Ittai's oath without further argument. The verb *avar* ('to cross over, pass through') will become a keyword in this section as various groups 'cross over' the Kidron Valley (v23). The mention of *hattaf* ('the little ones, children, dependents') reveals that Ittai brought his family — this is not a mercenary arrangement but a household commitment. Ittai has staked everything, including his children, on David's cause.
23. The phrase *kol ha'arets* ('the whole land/country') could mean 'all the people of the land' or, more evocatively, 'the whole countryside' — the narrator paints a landscape of grief. The Kidron (*Qidron*, 'dark, turbid') is the seasonal wadi running between Jerusalem's eastern wall and the Mount of Olives. The triple repetition of *avar* ('to cross') in a single verse creates a processional rhythm. The *midbar* ('wilderness') to the east refers to the Judean wilderness descending toward the Jordan Valley and the Dead Sea — harsh, arid terrain.
24. Zadok (*Tsadoq*, 'righteous') is one of David's two chief priests, serving alongside Abiathar (*Evyatar*). The Levites carry the Ark properly — *nose'im*, 'bearing' it on their shoulders — a correction from the cart disaster of chapter 6. The phrase *aron berit ha'Elohim* ('the Ark of the Covenant of God') uses the full covenantal title. The verb *vayyatsiqu* ('they set down') means to pour out or to set firmly in place — they stationed the Ark as a fixed point. Abiathar's role (*vayya'al*, 'he went up' or 'he offered up') likely refers to offering sacrifices while the people filed past. The Ark becomes a rallying point at the edge of the city.
25. The imperative *hashev* ('return, take back') reverses the great procession of 2 Samuel 6 — David now sends the Ark back the way he once brought it in. The conditional *im emtsa chen* ('if I find favor') uses the language of grace and divine disposition. The word *naveh* ('dwelling, habitation, pasture') refers to the Ark's resting place — the tent David pitched for it in 2 Samuel 6:17. David expresses hope as a conditional rather than a certainty, placing himself under God's sovereign decision.
26. The verb *chafats* ('to delight in, take pleasure in') describes divine favor or desire — if God no longer delights in David, David will accept it. The word *hinneni* ('here I am') is the classic response of prophetic availability. The phrase *ya'aseh li ka'asher tov be'einav* ('let him do to me what is good in his eyes') places all agency with God. David uses the same language of divine sovereignty that appears in Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 3:18) and throughout the Wisdom literature.
27. The word *haro'eh* ('seer') is the old term for a prophet (1 Samuel 9:9). Whether David is using it as a formal title for Zadok or as a question ('do you not see/understand?') is debated. Ahimaaz (*Achima'ats*, 'my brother is anger/strength') and Jonathan (*Yehonatan*, 'the LORD has given') will function as intelligence couriers in 2 Samuel 17:17-20. David is establishing a communication relay: information from the city to the priests, from the priests to their sons, from the sons to David.
28. The verb *mitmahmeha* ('lingering, tarrying, waiting') from *m-h-h* indicates David will delay his flight and hold at a specific position. The *arvot hammidbar* ('plains/fords of the wilderness') likely refers to the crossing points of the Jordan River in the wilderness of Judah — a strategic location where David can either cross into Transjordan or return to Jerusalem depending on the intelligence he receives. David establishes a fixed communication point: the priests know where to send their sons, and David will not move until he has information.
29. The verb *vayyashev* ('he returned') and *vayyeshvu* ('they stayed') create a frame: the Ark goes back and the priests stay. The brevity of the verse — no elaboration, no emotion — conveys efficient obedience. The priests do not argue or hesitate; they execute David's plan. Their remaining in Jerusalem positions them to fulfill the double role David has assigned: custodians of the Ark and agents of the king.
30. The phrase *oleh bema'aleh hazzetim* uses the verb *oleh* ('ascending') with the noun *ma'aleh* ('ascent, slope') and *hazzetim* ('the olives, the olive trees') — the Mount of Olives east of Jerusalem. The double *oleh uvokhe* ('ascending and weeping') creates a participial chain that slows the narrative to a processional pace. The covered head (*rosh chafu'i*) is a sign of mourning (cf. Jeremiah 14:3, Esther 6:12). Barefoot walking (*holekh yachef*) is associated with grief and humiliation (cf. Isaiah 20:2-4, Ezekiel 24:17). The repetition of the people's identical gestures — covering heads, ascending, weeping — creates a communal portrait of national grief.
31. The verb *sakkel* (*piel* of *s-k-l*, 'to be foolish') in the causative form means 'to make foolish, to frustrate, to turn to stupidity.' The word *atsat* ('counsel of') from *y-'-ts* identifies Ahithophel's strategic advice as the specific target. David's prayer is direct, urgent (*na*, 'please'), and specific — he does not ask for Ahithophel's death but for the neutralization of his intelligence. The word *qoshrim* ('conspirators,' from *q-sh-r*, 'to bind, to conspire') is the same root used for the *qesher* ('conspiracy') in verse 12.
32. The *ha-rosh* ('the summit, the head') is the top of the Mount of Olives. The phrase *asher yishtachaveh sham le'Elohim* ('where one worshiped God') identifies it as a known worship site — possibly an open-air sanctuary on the mountain's crest. Hushai (*Chushai*) is called *ha'Arkhi* ('the Archite'), from the Archite clan whose territory was on the border of Ephraim and Benjamin (Joshua 16:2). His torn *kuttonet* ('tunic') and *adamah* ('earth, dirt') on his head are standard mourning gestures (cf. Joshua 7:6, 1 Samuel 4:12).
33. David's bluntness — *vehayita alai lemassa* ('you will be a burden on me') — is not cruel but tactical. The word *massa* ('burden, load') from *n-s-'* ('to carry') indicates that Hushai's value lies not in combat ability but in counsel. An elderly advisor on a forced march through the wilderness is a liability; the same advisor inside the enemy's court is an asset beyond measure. David is about to redirect Hushai's gifts to where they will matter

most.

34. The verb *hefartah* (hiphil of *p-r-r*, 'to break, annul, frustrate') means to shatter or neutralize counsel. David's plan requires Hushai to perform a role — feigning loyalty to Absalom — that is morally complex but narratively presented without censure. The phrase *eved avikha va'ani me'az* ('your father's servant I was until now') gives Hushai a credible cover story: he is a career civil servant who serves the throne, not the man. This speech will be delivered almost verbatim in 2 Samuel 16:19.
35. David connects Hushai to the intelligence relay he has already established. The phrase *kol haddavar asher tishma mibbeit hammelekh* ('every word/matter you hear from the king's house') defines Hushai's scope: total intelligence collection from the palace. The priests serve as the intermediary node in the communication chain: Hushai gathers intelligence, passes it to Zadok and Abiathar, who pass it to their sons (v36), who carry it to David (v28). This is a fully structured espionage network, built in the space of a single conversation during a forced march.
36. David repeats the names of the courier sons — Ahimaaz and Jonathan — reinforcing the relay chain. The phrase *ushalachtem beyadam elai kol davar asher tishma'u* ('send through their hand to me every word you hear') specifies the transmission method: physical runners carrying verbal or written intelligence. The preposition *beyad* ('through the hand of') indicates personal, hand-carried delivery. This network will prove critical in 2 Samuel 17:15-22, when the sons carry the message that saves David's life.
37. The title *re'eh David* ('friend of David') may be a personal description or a formal court title equivalent to 'royal companion' or 'king's confidant' (cf. 1 Kings 4:5, where Zabud is called *re'eh hammelekh*). The simultaneous arrival — Hushai enters *ha'ir* ('the city') as Absalom comes to *Yerushalayim* — creates a dramatic convergence. The chapter closes with both the conspirator and the counter-agent inside the walls, setting the stage for the battle of wits in chapters 16-17.

16

Summary: *David has barely crested the Mount of Olives in his flight from Absalom when four encounters reshape the political landscape beneath him. First, Ziba, the steward of Mephibosheth, arrives with loaded donkeys and provisions, claiming that his master has stayed in Jerusalem expecting the house of Israel to restore Saul's kingdom to him. David, without investigation, transfers all of Mephibosheth's property to Ziba. Second, Shimei son of Gera, a Benjaminite from Saul's clan, follows David along the ridge hurling stones and curses, calling him a man of blood and declaring that God is repaying him for the blood of Saul's house. Abishai wants to decapitate Shimei, but David forbids it, saying that if the LORD has told Shimei to curse, no one should stop him. Third, Absalom enters Jerusalem and is greeted by Hushai, David's secret agent posing as a defector. Fourth, Ahithophel counsels Absalom to take David's concubines publicly on the palace roof, a political act designed to make the breach between father and son irreparable. Absalom does so in the sight of all Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterwork of ambiguity and reversal. Every encounter forces the reader to ask who is telling the truth and who is performing. Ziba arrives with exactly the provisions a fleeing king needs — generosity that looks like loyalty but may be calculated betrayal of his own master. David accepts Ziba's story without hearing Mephibosheth's side, and the narrator never confirms or denies the accusation. Shimei's curses cut because they contain a partial truth David cannot deny: he did benefit from the collapse of Saul's house, and blood did flow. David's response to the cursing is one of the most theologically striking moments in the entire narrative — he refuses to silence the abuse, raising the possibility that God himself has authored the humiliation. Meanwhile Hushai's feigned loyalty to Absalom is the mirror image of Ziba's possible treachery: apparent defection that is actually faithfulness. The chapter ends with Absalom on the palace roof with David's concubines, fulfilling Nathan's prophecy from 2 Samuel 12:11-12 with surgical precision — what David did in secret with Bathsheba is now done to him in broad daylight by his own son.*

Translation Friction: *Ziba's accusation against Mephibosheth in verse 3 is never adjudicated in this chapter. When Mephibosheth appears in 2 Samuel 19:24-30, he tells a completely different story — that Ziba deceived him and left without him. David's hasty judgment (v4) without hearing both sides raises questions about his fitness as a judge even in extremity. The word *dam* (blood) in Shimei's accusation (v7-8) creates an interpretive puzzle: which blood of Saul's house does he mean? David did not kill Saul, but the narrative of 2 Samuel 1-4 records the deaths of Abner, Ishbosheth, and the house of Saul under circumstances where David benefited even if he did not order the killings. The phrase *ish damim* ('man of blood') may be a clan accusation from the Saulide faction rather than a specific legal charge. Ahithophel's counsel in verses 21-22 raises the question of whether he was motivated purely by political strategy or by personal*

vengeance — he was Bathsheba's grandfather (cf. 2 Samuel 11:3, 23:34), and the violation of David's concubines may echo what David did to his granddaughter.

Connections: The concubines on the roof fulfill Nathan's prophecy verbatim: 'I will take your wives before your eyes and give them to your neighbor, and he will lie with your wives in the sight of this sun. You acted in secret, but I will do this thing before all Israel and before the sun' (2 Samuel 12:11-12). Shimei's curse connects to the broader theme of the Saulide-Davidic conflict that runs from 1 Samuel 16 through 2 Samuel 4. David's acceptance of suffering echoes his earlier submission to divine sovereignty when Nathan confronted him (2 Samuel 12:13). Hushai's role as a planted agent connects to 2 Samuel 15:32-37 where David sent him back for this purpose. The hasty transfer of Mephibosheth's property reverses the generous restoration David made in 2 Samuel 9, and the injustice will be partially revisited in 2 Samuel 19:29. Ahithophel's counsel being 'like the word of God' (v23) sets up the fatal contest between his wisdom and Hushai's counterplan in chapter 17, where God himself will overthrow Ahithophel's counsel to bring disaster on Absalom.

¹David had just passed beyond the summit when Ziba, the steward of Mephibosheth, came to meet him with a pair of saddled donkeys loaded with two hundred loaves of bread, a hundred raisin cakes, a hundred portions of summer fruit, and a skin of wine. ²The king said to Ziba, "What do you intend by all this?" Ziba answered, "The donkeys are for the king's household to ride, the bread and summer fruit are for the soldiers to eat, and the wine is for anyone who grows faint in the wilderness to drink." ³The king asked, "And where is your master's son?" Ziba told the king, "He is staying in Jerusalem, because he said, 'Today the house of Israel will give me back my father's kingdom.'" ⁴The king said to Ziba, "Everything that belongs to Mephibosheth is now yours." Ziba said, "I bow before you. May I find favor in your eyes, my lord the king." ⁵When King David reached Bahurim, a man was coming out from there — a member of the clan of the house of Saul, named Shimei son of Gera. He came out, cursing as he came. ⁶He pelted David with stones — and all the servants of King David, with all the troops and all the warriors flanking him on his right and his left. ⁷This is what Shimei said as he cursed: "Get out, get out, man of blood! Worthless wretch!" ⁸The LORD has brought back on you all the blood of the house of Saul, in whose place you made yourself king! The LORD has handed the kingdom to your son Absalom! Now look at you — caught in your own disaster, because you are a man of blood! ⁹Abishai son of Zeruiah said to the king, "Why should this dead dog curse my lord the king? Let me go over and remove his head." ¹⁰The king said, "What is between me and you, sons of Zeruiah? Let him curse — if the LORD told him, 'Curse David,' then who can say, 'Why have you done this?'" ¹¹David said to Abishai and to all his servants, "My own son — who came from my own body — is seeking my life. How much more, then, this Benjaminite? Leave him alone and let him curse, for the LORD has spoken to him." ¹²Perhaps the LORD will look on my affliction and return good to me in place of his cursing today. ¹³David and his men continued along the road, while Shimei walked along the hillside parallel to him, cursing as he went, pelting him with stones and flinging dust at him. ¹⁴The king and all the people with him arrived exhausted, and they rested there. ¹⁵Absalom and all the men of Israel entered Jerusalem, and Ahithophel was with him. ¹⁶When Hushai the Arkite, David's confidant, came to Absalom, Hushai said to Absalom, "Long live the king! Long live the king!" ¹⁷Absalom said to Hushai, "Is this your loyalty to your friend? Why did you not go with your friend?" ¹⁸Hushai said to Absalom, "No — the one whom the LORD has chosen, and this people, and all the men of Israel — I belong to him, and with him I will stay." ¹⁹And another thing — whom should I serve? Should it not be his son? Just as I served in your father's presence, so I will serve in yours. ²⁰Absalom said to Ahithophel, "Give your counsel — what should we do?" ²¹Ahithophel said to Absalom, "Go to your father's concubines — the ones he left behind to maintain the palace. All Israel will hear that you have made yourself repulsive to your father, and the hands of everyone who is with you will be strengthened." ²²They pitched a tent for Absalom on the roof, and Absalom went to his father's concubines in the sight of all Israel. ²³Now the counsel Ahithophel gave in those days was treated as if someone had consulted the very word of God. That is how all of Ahithophel's counsel was regarded — both by David and by Absalom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *avar me'at meharosh* ('passed a little beyond the summit') places David just past the crest of the Mount of Olives, still within sight of Jerusalem. The word *na'ar* ('servant, steward, attendant') identifies Ziba's subordinate relationship to Mephibosheth. The provisions are listed with numerical precision: *matayim lechem* (200 loaves), *me'ah tsimmuqim* (100 raisin-clusters), *me'ah qayits* (100 summer fruits — likely dried figs or

dates), and nevel yayin (a skin of wine). The quantity suggests Ziba stripped Mephibosheth's household stores to provision David's entourage.

2. David's question mah elleh lakh ('what are these to you?' or 'what do you mean by these?') is probing — he wants to know Ziba's motive, not just his inventory. Ziba's answer is practical and deferential: each item serves a specific need. The donkeys are for riding (lirkkov), the food for the ne'arim ('young men, soldiers'), and the wine for hayyaef bammidbar ('the exhausted one in the wilderness'). Ziba frames himself as a logistical servant meeting practical needs, not as a political actor — but every detail of his timing and preparation suggests otherwise.
3. David asks about ben adonekha ('your master's son') — using the patronymic rather than Mephibosheth's name, which keeps the Saulide identity in focus. Ziba's accusation places words in Mephibosheth's mouth: hayyom yashivu li beit Yisra'el et mamleket avi ('today the house of Israel will restore to me my father's kingdom'). The claim is politically implausible — Mephibosheth was lame, without military support, and had shown no prior ambition — but it exploits the chaos of the moment. The word mamleket avi ('my father's kingdom') refers to Saul's dynasty, making this a Saulide counter-claim against both David and Absalom.
4. David's decree hinneh lekha kol asher liMfivoshet ('everything that belongs to Mephibosheth is now yours') is a legal transfer of property — a royal grant executed under duress. The speed of the decision is jarring: no investigation, no delay, no hearing for the accused. Ziba's response hishtachaveti ('I bow down') is the standard gesture of submission to royalty. His formula emtsa chen be'einekha adoni hammelekh ('may I find favor in your eyes, my lord the king') is courtly language that simultaneously expresses gratitude and reinforces David's royal authority at a moment when that authority is crumbling.
5. Bahurim (Bachurim) is a Benjaminite settlement east of Jerusalem, previously mentioned in 2 Samuel 3:16 where Paltiel wept following Michal. The clan identification mimishpachat beit Sha'ul ('from the clan of the house of Saul') marks Shimei as a Saulide partisan. The infinitive absolute construction yotse yatso ('going out, he went out') intensifies the verbal action — Shimei emerges with sustained, deliberate purpose. The participle meqallel ('cursing') from the root q-l-l introduces the key term that dominates the next eight verses.
6. The verb vaysaqel ('he stoned, pelted') indicates sustained throwing of stones — not a single throw but an ongoing assault. That Shimei dares to stone the king while surrounded by his warriors (gibborim) and troops reveals the depth of contempt the Saulide faction felt and the degree of David's diminished authority. The phrase mimino umiss'molo ('on his right and on his left') describes the warriors flanking David in protective formation — yet they do not act against Shimei, which makes David's restraining order in verse 10 all the more pointed.
7. The phrase ish haddamim ('man of blood' or 'man of bloods' — the plural damim intensifies) is a title of accusation meaning one who bears blood-guilt. The plural 'bloods' suggests multiple killings. The term ish habbeliyya'al ('man of worthlessness/destruction') combines ish ('man') with beliyya'al, a word whose etymology is debated (possibly beli + ya'al, 'without worth/profit,' or a reference to the underworld). The doubled imperative tse tse ('go out, go out') conveys urgency and contempt — it is the verbal equivalent of driving someone away.
8. The verb heshiv ('he has returned, brought back') frames Absalom's coup as divine retribution — God returning blood-guilt to its source. The phrase kol demei beit Sha'ul ('all the blood of the house of Saul') treats David as responsible for the entire collapse of Saul's dynasty. The phrase malakhta tachtav ('you reigned in his place') implies usurpation rather than divine election. The declaration hinnekha bera'atekha ('look at you in your disaster') uses ra'ah ('evil, calamity, disaster') — the same word Nathan used in 2 Samuel 12:11. The repetition of ish damim attah ('you are a man of blood') closes the curse where it began.
9. Abishai's response is characteristically violent and characteristically Zeruian — the sons of Zeruiah throughout the narrative default to lethal solutions (cf. 2 Samuel 3:30, 19:22). The phrase hakkelev hammet hazzeh ('this dead dog') is a double insult: 'dog' (kelev) was a term of utter contempt in the ancient Near East, and 'dead' (met) makes it worse — a dead dog is the lowest thing imaginable, carrion. The verb asirah ('I will remove, take away') paired with rosho ('his head') is a direct proposal for summary execution. Abishai sees a simple problem with a simple solution: a man is cursing the king, so kill him.
10. The phrase mah li velakhem ('what have I to do with you?' or 'what is between me and you?') is a distancing formula David uses against the sons of Zeruiah also in 2 Samuel 3:39 and 19:23. The conditional ki YHWH amar lo qallel et David ('because the LORD said to him, curse David') introduces the theological crux: David entertains the possibility of divine authorization behind Shimei's abuse. The rhetorical question umi yomar maddu'a asita khi ('who can say, why have you done this?') echoes the language used of challenging God's sovereignty (cf. Job 9:12, Isaiah 45:9).
11. The phrase beni asher yatsa mimme'ai ('my son who came from my own body') uses me'im ('bowels, inward parts') as the seat of generation — a raw, physical way to describe paternity. Ben hayyemini ('the Benjaminite, son of the right hand') identifies Shimei by tribe rather than name, linking him to the broader Saulide-Benjaminite opposition. The imperative hannichu lo ('leave him alone, let him be') commands non-interference. The shift from the conditional ki in v10 to the declarative ki amar lo YHWH ('for the LORD has spoken to him') marks David's theological movement from hypothesis to acceptance.
12. The word ulai ('perhaps, maybe') is deliberately tentative — David makes no claim on divine response. The Ketiv (written text) reads be'eini ('with my eye' or 'my looking'), while the Qere (traditional reading) is be'oniy ('my affliction'). Most translations follow the Qere. The verb heshiv ('return, repay') paired with tovah ('good') and tachat ('in place of, instead of') creates a substitution formula: good in exchange for cursing. The phrase qillelato hayyom hazzeh ('his cursing this day') bookends the Shimei encounter with temporal specificity — this is today's suffering, and today's suffering may yet be redeemed.
13. The phrase betsela' hahar le'ummato ('on the hillside opposite him') creates the parallel-track image — Shimei keeps pace with David from the ridge above. The infinitive absolute construction halokh vayeqallel ('going and cursing') emphasizes continuous action. The verb vi'ippar be'afar ('he dusted with dust') describes throwing handfuls of earth — a gesture of contempt and execration found across ancient Near Eastern culture. The three

continuous actions — cursing, stoning, and dust-throwing — paint a picture of sustained, theatrical rage.

14. The adjective *ayefim* ('exhausted, weary') captures the physical and emotional toll of the flight — these are not just tired travelers but people broken by betrayal, fear, and sustained abuse. The verb *vayyinnaresh* ('he refreshed himself, he caught his breath') is from the root *n-f-sh*, related to *nefesh* ('life, breath, soul'). The location where they rest is not named, which creates a deliberate contrast with the specificity of Jerusalem in the verses that follow. David's party is in an unnamed place of exhaustion; Absalom is entering the named capital of the kingdom.
15. The phrase *kol ha'am ish Yisra'el* ('all the people, the men of Israel') is expansive — it presents Absalom as commanding national support. The clause *va'Achitophel itto* ('and Ahithophel with him') is placed last for emphasis, like a period that closes the door on David's reign. Ahithophel's defection from David to Absalom (first reported in 2 Samuel 15:12) was the most strategically damaging loss David suffered in the rebellion.
16. The title *re'eh David* ('David's friend') is a court title meaning counselor, confidant, or companion — not merely a personal friend. The Arkite (*ha'Arki*) identifies Hushai's clan, from the region of Ataroth near Ephraim's border. The acclamation *yechi hammelekh* ('may the king live!') is the standard coronation and loyalty cry (cf. 1 Samuel 10:24, 1 Kings 1:25). Its deliberate ambiguity — it names no king — allows Hushai to appear loyal to Absalom while his allegiance remains with David.
17. The word *chesed* ('loyalty, steadfast love, covenant faithfulness') is one of the Hebrew Bible's richest theological terms. Absalom uses it in its interpersonal sense: the loyalty owed between allies. The repetition of *re'ekha* ('your friend') twice in one verse puts pressure on Hushai to explain his defection. Absalom's question is both a test and an accusation — he is probing Hushai's motives before deciding whether to trust him.
18. The verb *bachar* ('to choose, elect') is the same verb used for God's election of David (1 Samuel 16:8-10) and of Israel (Deuteronomy 7:6). Hushai deploys it to let Absalom assume he is the chosen one. The phrase *lo ehveh* ('to him I will be/belong') uses the verb *hayah* in a possessive sense — total devotion. The clause *ve'itto eshev* ('and with him I will dwell/remain') uses *yashav*, the verb of permanent settlement. Every word of Hushai's answer is true if read as loyalty to David, and convincing if heard as loyalty to Absalom.
19. The word *hashenith* ('secondly, and another thing') introduces a supplementary argument. The rhetorical question *lemi ani e'evod* ('whom should I serve?') invites the obvious answer: the king's son. The phrase *ka'asher avadti lifnei avikha* ('just as I served before your father') establishes precedent — Hushai served David, so serving David's son (Absalom) is natural continuity. The phrase *ken ehveh lefanekha* ('so I will be before you') seals the apparent pledge. The entire verse works as political camouflage.
20. The imperative *havu lakhem etsah* ('give yourselves counsel' or 'produce counsel among you') addresses Ahithophel as the senior advisor. The question *mah na'aseh* ('what shall we do?') reveals that Absalom, for all his popularity, does not know what to do with the power he has seized. He has taken Jerusalem but needs Ahithophel to tell him how to consolidate it. The shift from military coup to political consolidation requires a different kind of intelligence, and Absalom defers entirely to his counselor.
21. The phrase *bo el pilagshai avikha* ('go to your father's concubines') uses the standard euphemism *bo el* ('go to, enter') for sexual relations. The *pilagshim* ('concubines') were secondary wives with legal but subordinate status. David left them *lishmor habbayit* ('to keep/maintain the palace') — they were caretakers, not abandoned. The *niphal nivashta* ('you will make yourself stink, become odious') from the root *b-'-sh* conveys repulsiveness. The phrase *chazqu yedei kol asher ittakh* ('the hands of all who are with you will be strengthened') is a military idiom — strong hands means firm resolve, renewed commitment.
22. The verb *vayyattu* ('they pitched, spread') describes erecting the tent (*ohel*) on the *gag* ('roof, housetop'). The roof of the palace is the same location where David walked and saw Bathsheba (2 Samuel 11:2), creating a devastating architectural echo. The phrase *le'einei kol Yisra'el* ('before the eyes of all Israel') ensures maximum publicity — this is not a private act but a political statement visible to the entire nation. The act fulfills Nathan's oracle from 2 Samuel 12:11-12 with verbal precision.
23. The phrase *atsat Achitophel* ('the counsel of Ahithophel') frames his advice as a category — a type of wisdom recognized across the political spectrum. The comparison *ka'asher yish'al bidvar ha'Elohim* ('as if one consulted the word of God') uses *sha'al* ('to ask, inquire') with *devar ha'Elohim* ('the word/oracle of God'), evoking the priestly oracle consulted for divine guidance. The final phrase *gam leDavid gam leAvshalom* ('both for David and for Absalom') establishes that Ahithophel's authority was not partisan — it belonged to whichever king had him. This verse sets up chapter 17 where God himself will overthrow Ahithophel's counsel (2 Samuel 17:14).

17

Summary: *Absalom holds court in Jerusalem as a rival king and summons two counselors to advise his pursuit of David. Ahithophel proposes a swift night strike with twelve thousand men to kill David alone and bring the people back peacefully. Hushai, secretly loyal to David, counters with a grandiose plan to gather all Israel from Dan to Beersheba and overwhelm David with massive force — a plan designed to buy David time. Absalom and Israel's elders choose Hushai's counsel, and the narrator pauses to explain why: the LORD had ordained the defeat of Ahithophel's good advice so that disaster would fall on Absalom. Hushai sends word through the priests Zadok and Abiathar, whose sons Jonathan and Ahimaaz relay the warning to David despite a close pursuit that forces them to hide in a well at Bahurim. David crosses the Jordan to safety. Ahithophel, seeing his counsel rejected and the rebellion's doom sealed, rides home, sets his affairs in order, and hangs himself. The chapter closes with David arriving at Mahanaim, where Shobi, Makir, and Barzillai provide lavish supplies for his exhausted company.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the great political thrillers of the Hebrew Bible. The contest between Ahithophel and Hushai is not merely a debate between two advisors — it is a covert intelligence operation embedded in a theological narrative. Ahithophel's plan is, by the narrator's own admission, 'good counsel' (etsah tovah, v. 14): militarily sound, surgically precise, designed to end the war in a single night with minimal bloodshed. Hushai's plan is deliberately bad strategy — it calls for delay, mass mobilization, and an absurdly large army, all of which give David exactly what he needs: time. The narrator interrupts the political drama to deliver the chapter's theological verdict in verse 14: 'The LORD had ordained to frustrate the good counsel of Ahithophel, in order to bring disaster upon Absalom.' This is one of the Bible's clearest statements of divine sovereignty operating through human political decisions. Ahithophel's suicide in verse 23 is narrated with startling economy — three clauses covering his journey home, the settling of his estate, and his death by hanging. No moral commentary is offered. He is the only suicide in the Hebrew Bible whose death is described with the clinical detail that he 'set his house in order' (tsivvah el beito), the same phrase used for a patriarch preparing for death with dignity. The narrator neither condemns nor pities him; the facts speak for themselves.*

Translation Friction: *The primary interpretive tension lies in the theological claim of verse 14. If the LORD ordained the defeat of Ahithophel's counsel, what is the moral status of the human actors? Hushai is lying and manipulating — is his deception sanctioned by divine purpose? The text does not moralize about Hushai's methods; it simply reports that his counter-counsel served the LORD's purpose. A second friction concerns the spy network of verses 15-22. The priests Zadok and Abiathar, the female servant, the unnamed woman of Bahurim who hides the messengers — these are all active participants in espionage against the reigning government in Jerusalem. The narrative celebrates their cunning without apology. A third point of friction: Ahithophel's counsel is called 'good' by the narrator, meaning that from a purely strategic standpoint, Absalom would have won had he followed it. The rebellion fails not because it lacked good strategy but because God intervened through the inferior plan. This is uncomfortable for readers who want to see rebellion as inherently doomed by its own incompetence.*

Connections: *Ahithophel's role connects backward to 2 Samuel 15:12, where his defection from David is first reported, and to 2 Samuel 15:31, where David prays, 'O LORD, turn the counsel of Ahithophel into foolishness' — this chapter is the direct answer to that prayer. Hushai's infiltration was set up in 2 Samuel 15:32-37, making chapters 15-17 a continuous narrative arc. The woman of Bahurim who hides the messengers (v. 19) recalls Rahab hiding the spies in Joshua 2 — both are women who protect fugitives by deceiving the authorities with false directions. Ahithophel's suicide anticipates the only other recorded hanging in the Hebrew Bible tradition that later readers would connect to betrayal — Judas in Matthew 27:5, and early Christian interpreters drew the parallel explicitly. The provisions brought to David at Mahanaim (vv. 27-29) echo the provisions Abigail brought to David in 1 Samuel 25, and Barzillai's generosity here will be remembered on David's deathbed (1 Kings 2:7). Mahanaim itself connects to Jacob's encounter with angels in Genesis 32:2 — the place where the fugitive patriarch found divine protection is now the refuge of the fugitive king.*

¹Then Ahithophel said to Absalom, "Let me select twelve thousand men, and I will set out tonight in pursuit of David. ²I will come upon him while he is exhausted and his hands are slack. I will throw him into panic, and all the people with him will scatter. Then I will strike down the king alone. ³Then I will bring all the people back to you. When the one man you are seeking is dead, all the people will return in peace." ⁴The proposal seemed right to Absalom and to all the elders of Israel. ⁵But Absalom said, "Summon Hushai the Arkite as well. Let us hear what he has to say too." ⁶When Hushai came before Absalom, Absalom told him, "Ahithophel has proposed such-and-such. Should we follow his plan? If not, speak up." ⁷Hushai said to Absalom, "The counsel Ahithophel has given is not sound — this time." ⁸Hushai continued, "You know your father and his men — they are warriors, and they are fierce, like a bear robbed of her cubs in the open field. Besides, your father is a man of war. He will not spend the night with the main body of troops. ⁹Right now he is hiding in some ravine or some other place. And when some of your men fall at the first clash, anyone who hears the news will say, 'There has been a slaughter among the troops following Absalom.' ¹⁰Then even the bravest soldier, one whose heart is like a lion's, will completely lose his nerve — because all Israel knows that your father is a warrior and the men with him are battle-hardened fighters." ¹¹Here is what I advise: muster all Israel to your side, from Dan to Beersheba — as countless as the sand on the seashore — and you yourself march into battle at their head. ¹²Then we will descend on him wherever he is found, and we will settle on him the way dew falls on the ground — and not one will be left alive, neither he nor any of the men with him. ¹³And if he retreats into a city, then all Israel will bring ropes to that city, and we will drag it stone by stone into the ravine until not even a pebble remains there." ¹⁴Absalom and all the men of Israel declared, "The counsel of Hushai the Arkite is better than the counsel of Ahithophel." For the LORD had determined to frustrate the good counsel of Ahithophel, so that the LORD would bring disaster upon Absalom. ¹⁵Hushai then told the priests Zadok and Abiathar, "Ahithophel advised Absalom and the elders of Israel to do such-and-such, but I advised such-and-such. ¹⁶Now send word to David at once and tell him, 'Do not spend tonight at the fords of the wilderness. Cross over immediately, or the king and all the people with him will be swallowed up.'" ¹⁷Jonathan and Ahimaaz were stationed at En-rogel, since they could not risk being seen entering the city. A female servant would go out and relay the information to them, and they would carry the message to King David. ¹⁸But a young man spotted them and reported it to Absalom. So the two of them hurried away and came to the house of a man in Bahurim who had a well in his courtyard, and they climbed down into it. ¹⁹The woman of the house took a covering and spread it over the mouth of the well, then scattered grain on top of it. Nothing was noticed. ²⁰When Absalom's men arrived at the house and asked the woman, "Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan?" she told them, "They crossed over the stream." The men searched but found nothing, and returned to Jerusalem. ²¹After the pursuers had gone, the two men climbed out of the well and went to King David. They told him, "Get moving — cross the water immediately, because Ahithophel has counseled such-and-such against you." ²²David set out with all the people who were with him, and they crossed the Jordan. By the time morning light broke, not a single one was left who had not crossed the Jordan. ²³When Ahithophel saw that his counsel had not been followed, he saddled his donkey, set out for home in his own town, set his household affairs in order, then hanged himself. He died and was buried in his father's tomb. ²⁴David arrived at Mahanaim, and Absalom crossed the Jordan — he and all the men of Israel with him. ²⁵Absalom had appointed Amasa over the army in place of Joab. Amasa was the son of a man named Ithra the Israelite, who had married Abigail daughter of Nahash, the sister of Zeruiah, Joab's mother. ²⁶Israel and Absalom made camp in the land of Gilead. ²⁷When David arrived at Mahanaim, Shobi son of Nahash from Rabbah of the Ammonites, and Makir son of Ammiel from Lo-debar, and Barzillai the Gileadite from Rogelim ²⁸brought bedding, basins, pottery, wheat, barley, flour, roasted grain, beans, lentils, parched seeds, ²⁹honey, curds, sheep, and cheese from the herd. They brought all of this to David and the people with him to eat, for they said, "The people are hungry, exhausted, and thirsty from the wilderness."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *bachar* ('to choose, to select') implies careful culling of the best troops, not a mass levy. Ahithophel envisions an elite strike force, not a national army. The phrase *ve-aqomah ve-erdephah* ('and I will arise and I will pursue') uses two cohortatives in sequence, expressing urgent personal determination — Ahithophel is volunteering to lead the mission himself, not delegating it.

2. The phrase *repheh yadayim* ('slack of hands') is a Hebrew idiom for demoralization and physical depletion. Hands that cannot grip a weapon cannot fight. The same idiom appears in Isaiah 35:3 and Jeremiah 38:4. Ahithophel reads David's condition with clinical precision.
2. The word *levaddo* ('him alone') is the pivot of the entire plan. Ahithophel is proposing targeted assassination, not battle. By isolating David as the sole target, he minimizes casualties on both sides. This is not bloodlust — it is cold strategic calculation.
3. The phrase *keshov hakkol* ('when the whole returns') is textually difficult. Some read it as 'the return of the whole depends on [the death of] the man you seek.' The Septuagint reads it differently, suggesting the Hebrew may be slightly corrupt. The essential meaning is clear: kill David, and the civil war ends instantly.
3. Ahithophel's use of *shalom* at the conclusion is a rhetorical masterstroke. He frames regicide as peacemaking. The audience — Absalom and the elders — hears a plan that combines surgical precision with national healing. It is nearly irresistible.
4. The narrator's note that the plan 'was right in the eyes of' both Absalom and the elders underscores that Ahithophel's counsel was not merely clever but genuinely persuasive to experienced leaders. The elders are not fools; they recognize good strategy. This makes verse 14's theological override all the more dramatic.
5. Hushai is identified as *ha-Arki* ('the Arkite'), indicating his clan or geographic origin from the town of Erech or Ataroth near the Benjamin-Ephraim border. This ethnic marker distinguishes him from the court insiders and may explain why Absalom sees him as an independent voice worth consulting. In fact, Hushai was planted by David (2 Samuel 15:32-37) for precisely this moment.
6. The syntax *im ayin attah dabber* ('if not, you speak') gives Hushai explicit permission to disagree. Absalom is not looking for a yes-man — or at least, he does not think he is. The irony is that by inviting dissent, Absalom opens the door to the very deception that will destroy him.
7. The phrase *bappa'am hazzot* ('at this time, on this occasion') is Hushai's most delicate rhetorical move. By limiting his objection to this single instance, he avoids the appearance of rivalry and positions himself as a situational corrective rather than a permanent replacement. It is the language of a loyal advisor, not a competitor.
8. The phrase *marei nephesh* ('bitter of soul') describes men pushed past the point of fear into desperation. The same phrase is used in Judges 18:25 for men who will kill without hesitation because they have nothing left to lose. Hushai is telling Absalom: these men are not demoralized; they are dangerous precisely because they are cornered.
8. The bear simile (*dov shakkul*) is among the most vivid animal comparisons in the Hebrew Bible. The adjective *shakkul* ('bereaved') specifically means robbed of offspring — the bear's rage is not predatory but maternal, protective, and beyond reason. Hushai is not describing David's military skill but his emotional state: a father fighting for his life and his children.
9. Hushai's argument exploits the information asymmetry of ancient warfare. Without reliable communication, the first report from the front determines public perception. If the first report says 'our men are dying,' the coalition collapses before the facts can be verified. This is sophisticated psychological warfare theory, dressed up as common-sense caution.
10. The lion simile (*lev ha-aryeh*) applied to the bravest soldier who will still melt in fear is Hushai's rhetorical counterpoint to the bear simile he applied to David. David is the bear — irrational, unstoppable maternal rage. The best of Absalom's men is the lion — brave, but rational enough to feel fear. Hushai has arranged the animal kingdom so that David wins the comparison.
10. The verb *masas* ('to melt') in the Niphal with the infinitive absolute is the language of total demoralization. The same construction appears in Joshua 2:11 and 7:5 for the melting of hearts before an overwhelming enemy. Hushai borrows the language of Canaanite terror before Israel and turns it on Israel itself.
11. The phrase 'from Dan to Beersheba' is the standard Hebrew designation for the full extent of Israel, from the northernmost settlement to the southernmost. A general mobilization from this range would take weeks to accomplish — exactly the delay Hushai needs to give David.
11. The sand simile (*kachol asher al hayyam*) is Abrahamic covenant language. Hushai is implicitly telling Absalom: you will command forces like those God promised to Abraham. The flattery is thick and deliberate, targeting Absalom's known vanity (2 Samuel 14:25-26).
12. The dew image (*tal*) is usually positive in the Hebrew Bible — a symbol of blessing and refreshment (Genesis 27:28, Hosea 14:5, Micah 5:7). Hushai inverts the image, turning blessing-language into threat-language. This rhetorical inversion mirrors his entire performance: everything sounds strong but is actually designed to weaken Absalom's position.
13. The word *chavalim* ('ropes') used for dragging a city into a wadi is unique in military contexts. Some commentators see it as metaphorical siege language; others take it as deliberate comic exaggeration. Either way, the proposal is impractical on its face — but Hushai delivers it with such confidence that the council accepts the spirit of overwhelming force without questioning the logistics.
13. The word *tsror* ('pebble') is the same word used in 1 Samuel 25:29 for the 'bundle of the living' (*tsror ha-chayyim*). Here it is reduced to its most literal sense: a small stone. The juxtaposition is ironic — David's life is bound in the *tsror* of the living by God's promise, and here Hushai promises to destroy every *tsror* of the city. One promise is real; the other is theater.
14. This is one of the Hebrew Bible's most explicit statements of divine sovereignty operating through secondary human causes. The LORD does not appear in a vision, send a prophet, or perform a miracle. He works through a political debate, a flattering speech, and a young king's vanity. The doctrine of providence here is not abstract theology but narrative demonstration: God accomplishes his will through the free decisions of human actors.

14. The adjective *tovah* ('good') applied to Ahithophel's counsel is the narrator's own evaluation, not a character's opinion. The narrator, speaking with omniscient authority, declares that the rejected plan was genuinely superior. This prevents the reader from dismissing Ahithophel as incompetent and forces the theological conclusion: the outcome was not determined by the quality of the advice but by the will of the LORD.
15. The seamless transition from the council chamber to the spy network demonstrates the narrator's skill in weaving political drama with espionage thriller. Hushai does not pause to celebrate his rhetorical victory; he immediately ensures that David receives the intelligence needed to survive regardless of which plan Absalom ultimately executes.
16. The verb *bala* ('to swallow') is used for catastrophic, total destruction — Korah's company was 'swallowed' by the earth (Numbers 16:32). Hushai's fear is not partial defeat but complete annihilation. The urgency of his message suggests that even after his rhetorical success, the situation remains precarious — Absalom's decision could be reversed at any moment.
17. En-rogel is identified with modern Bir Ayyub ('Job's Well'), at the junction of the Kidron and Hinnom valleys. It was a public water source where women regularly came to wash clothes or draw water — the perfect cover for passing intelligence. The word *shiphchah* ('female servant, maidservant') indicates a person of low social visibility, exactly the kind of operative who can move through a city without drawing attention. The narrator's appreciation for tradecraft is evident.
18. Bahurim was a Benjaminite village on the road from Jerusalem to the Jordan. Its reappearance here creates a narrative echo: the village that produced David's curser (Shimei) also produces David's protector (the unnamed householder). The well (*be'er*) as a hiding place is a recurring motif — Joseph was thrown into a *bor* (pit/cistern) in Genesis 37:24, and Jeremiah was lowered into one in Jeremiah 38:6. Here the well saves rather than endangers.
19. The word *riphot* is a hapax legomenon in some analyses (or nearly so), referring to crushed or split grain spread out to dry. The domestic ordinariness of the camouflage is the point: grain drying on a cloth over a flat surface is so unremarkable that it renders the well invisible. The woman's quick thinking parallels Rahab's in Joshua 2:6, where flax stalks laid out on a roof served the same concealing function.
20. The word *mikhal* () is textually uncertain — some manuscripts read *mikhal* as a proper noun or place name, others as a common noun meaning 'channel' or 'brook.' The Septuagint reads 'they passed on a little way past the water.' We render it as 'stream' to capture the sense of a small watercourse that could plausibly be crossed by men in flight.
21. The phrase *ya'ats alekhem* ('he counseled against you') uses the preposition *al* in its adversarial sense — Ahithophel's counsel was directed against David, not merely about David. The messengers convey both the content of the threat and its hostile intent.
22. The phrase *ad or habboqer* ('until morning light') indicates an all-night march and river crossing — an extraordinary feat of endurance for an exhausted and mixed company that included non-combatants. The narrator's emphasis that 'not one was missing' is both military language (a full muster count after a tactical movement) and theological reassurance: David's people are intact.
22. The Jordan crossing in reverse — east instead of west — inverts the Exodus/Conquest pattern. David is not entering the promised land but leaving it. Yet the narrator presents the crossing as deliverance, not exile. The Jordan functions as protection, not as a boundary of promise. This geographic reversal adds depth to the chapter's theme of God working through unexpected means.
23. The verb *chanaq* ('to strangle, to hang') in the Niphal (*vayyechanaq*) indicates self-hanging. This is the only explicit suicide by hanging in the Hebrew Bible. The verb is rare — it appears in Job 7:15 ('my soul chooses strangling') and Nahum 2:12 (a lion strangling prey). The clinical brevity of the account — no setting, no last words, no witnesses — stands in sharp contrast to the elaborate death scenes of other biblical figures.
23. The phrase *vaytsav el beito* ('he set his house in order') uses *tsavah*, the same verb used when Hezekiah is told to 'set your house in order, for you are about to die' (2 Kings 20:1). Ahithophel is his own prophet: he diagnoses his own death and prepares for it with the same orderliness he brought to his political counsel. The narrator treats his suicide with the same matter-of-fact tone used for natural deaths, offering neither the condemnation that later tradition would apply nor the heroic framing that Greek literature might give a fallen counselor.
24. Mahanaim served briefly as the capital of Saul's son Ish-bosheth (2 Samuel 2:8), making it a site of royal legitimacy in Transjordan. David's choice of Mahanaim is both tactical (a fortified city in defensible terrain) and political (a site associated with Israelite kingship). The parallel structure of this verse — David goes east, Absalom follows east — collapses the geographic distance between them and signals that confrontation is imminent.
25. The genealogical aside interrupts the narrative flow in a way typical of Hebrew historical writing — the narrator pauses the action to establish family relationships that explain political alignments. The identification of Ithra as 'the Israelite' (*ha-Yisre'eli*) is odd if he is indeed an Israelite (1 Chronicles 2:17 calls him 'Jether the Ishmaelite,' which may be the original reading). The textual variants suggest early scribal confusion about Ithra's ethnic identity.
25. Amasa's appointment will have lasting consequences: after the rebellion fails, David will offer Amasa Joab's position as a reconciliation gesture (2 Samuel 19:13), and Joab will murder Amasa for it (2 Samuel 20:10). The seed planted in this verse grows into one of the bloodiest episodes in David's reign.
26. The coupling of 'Israel and Absalom' as a single unit implicitly denies David the title of Israel's leader. Throughout this rebellion narrative, the narrator carefully tracks which side gets to claim the name 'Israel' — here it belongs to Absalom. David's side is simply 'the people with him.' The political claim embedded in the naming is deliberate.

27. The three-name list follows a geographic pattern: Rabbah (Ammon, southeast), Lo-debar (northern Gilead), and Rogelim (central Gilead). David's support comes from across the Transjordanian region, not from a single locale. This geographic spread suggests that David's alliances east of the Jordan were deep and well-maintained.
28. The repetition of *qali* ('roasted/parched grain') has puzzled commentators. Some emend the second occurrence to *qela'ot* ('parched grain of a different type'); others accept the repetition as emphasis. The Septuagint and Vulgate handle the list slightly differently. We retain the Masoretic text's repetition. The list as a whole represents the full range of a Transjordanian agricultural economy: grain crops, legumes, and prepared foods.
29. The phrase *shephot baqar* is difficult — *shephot* may derive from *shaphat* ('to judge') or from an otherwise unknown root meaning 'cheese' or 'milk products.' Most translators follow the Septuagint and Vulgate in reading it as a dairy product, likely a pressed or aged cheese. We render it as 'cheese from the herd' following the majority interpretation.
29. The donors' quoted speech — 'the people are hungry, exhausted, and thirsty in the wilderness' — is the chapter's final word on David's condition. It corrects Hushai's terrifying portrait of David as a raging bear: in reality, David's people are starving refugees in need of bread, water, and a place to sleep. The gap between Hushai's propaganda and the donors' compassion captures the chapter's dual nature: it is simultaneously a story of political manipulation and a story of human kindness.

18

Summary: *David organizes his army into three divisions under Joab, Abishai, and Ittai the Gittite to fight Absalom's forces. The troops insist David stay behind in the city, and David publicly commands all three commanders to deal gently with his son Absalom. The battle takes place in the forest of Ephraim, where Israel is routed with twenty thousand casualties — and the forest itself kills more men than the sword. Absalom, riding his mule, passes under a great oak and his head becomes caught in its branches, leaving him suspended alive between heaven and earth. A soldier reports this to Joab but refuses to strike the king's son. Joab takes three sharpened sticks and drives them into Absalom's chest while he is still alive in the oak, and ten of Joab's armor-bearers close in and finish the killing. Joab blows the trumpet to halt the pursuit, and Absalom's body is thrown into a deep pit in the forest and covered with a massive cairn of stones. The narrator notes that Absalom had erected a pillar for himself in the King's Valley because he had no son to carry his name. Two runners — Ahimaaz son of Zadok and a Cushite — race to bring David the news. Ahimaaz arrives first but cannot bring himself to report Absalom's death directly. The Cushite delivers the message plainly. David collapses, retreats to the upper chamber above the gate, and weeps with the most devastating cry in all of Scripture: 'My son Absalom! My son, my son Absalom! If only I had died instead of you — Absalom, my son, my son!'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter stages one of the great collisions in all narrative literature: a father's love against a kingdom's survival. David's command — 'Deal gently for my sake with the young man Absalom' — is an impossible order. It asks his army to win a war without harming the enemy commander. Joab understands what David cannot face: Absalom alive means the rebellion lives, the kingdom remains fractured, and everything David's men have fought for is undone. So Joab kills Absalom in direct defiance of the king's explicit, public command — and the narrative refuses to condemn him for it. The text also refuses to validate him. It simply reports what happened and then gives the final word to David's grief. The manner of Absalom's death is loaded with irony. The man famous for his magnificent hair (2 Samuel 14:26) is caught by his head in a tree. The prince who stole Israel's hearts is left hanging alone in a forest. The would-be king who sat in the gate dispensing judgment is suspended between heaven and earth, belonging to neither. And the forest itself — the *ya'ar* — becomes an active agent of death, swallowing more lives than the sword. Nature fights on God's side, as if the land itself is rejecting the rebellion. David's grief in verse 33 transcends the political. He does not mourn a defeated rebel; he mourns a son. The fivefold repetition of 'my son' — *beni* — and the wish to have died in Absalom's place transforms the victorious king into a shattered father. It is the most humanly devastating moment in David's life, surpassing even his sin with Bathsheba, because here there is no repentance possible, no psalm to write, no future to repair. Absalom is dead, and David cannot undo it.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of verse 9 presents a longstanding debate: the Masoretic Text reads *vayyiqqare Avshalom* ('Absalom happened upon / encountered') with the verb *q-r-h*, while many translations follow the reading that Absalom's head (*rosho*) was caught. The MT does not specify hair — it says his head was caught (*vayyitten rosho*) in the oak. The famous tradition that Absalom was caught by his hair comes*

from Josephus and later rabbinic interpretation, likely influenced by the earlier description of his abundant hair in 14:26, but the Hebrew text says only that his head became wedged in the branches. The word elah in verse 9 is rendered 'oak' by most translations but could also refer to a terebinth (a large Mediterranean tree); the exact species is uncertain. Verse 18 introduces Absalom's memorial pillar (mattsevet) in the King's Valley, noting he had no son to preserve his name — yet 2 Samuel 14:27 records three sons born to Absalom. The standard reconciliation is that these sons died young before the pillar was erected, but the tension between the two passages is real. The location of the 'forest of Ephraim' (ya'ar Ephrayim) east of the Jordan is geographically puzzling, since the tribe of Ephraim's territory was west of the Jordan. Some scholars propose a local place name unrelated to the tribe; others connect it to the events of Judges 12:4-6 involving Ephraimites in Transjordan.

Connections: David's command to 'deal gently with the young man' echoes the tragic pattern of fathers unable to restrain or save their sons that runs through the Samuel narrative: Eli could not restrain Hophni and Phinehas (1 Samuel 2:22-25), Samuel's sons perverted justice (1 Samuel 8:1-3), and Saul threw a spear at Jonathan (1 Samuel 20:33). Absalom hanging in the tree invokes the Deuteronomic principle that a body hung on a tree is cursed by God (Deuteronomy 21:22-23) — the narrator may be signaling divine judgment without stating it. The cairn of stones thrown over Absalom's body in the pit (v17) parallels the cairn over Achan in Joshua 7:26 — both mark the burial of those whose personal ambition brought catastrophe on Israel. The two runners racing to David recall the runner from the battle of Aphek who brought Eli news of the Ark's capture and his sons' deaths (1 Samuel 4:12-17); in both cases, the messenger brings news that destroys the hearer. David's wish to die in Absalom's place — 'Would that I had died instead of you' — is one of the Hebrew Bible's most profound expressions of substitutionary longing, anticipating the theological concept of one life offered in place of another that pervades Israel's sacrificial system and prophetic literature (Isaiah 53:4-6).

¹David mustered the troops who were with him and appointed over them commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds. ²David sent out the army in three divisions: a third under Joab's command, a third under Abishai son of Zeruiah — Joab's brother — and a third under Ittai the Gittite. The king said to the troops, "I will certainly march out with you myself." ³But the troops said, "You must not go out. If we are forced to flee, they will not care about us. If half of us die, they will not care about us. But you are worth ten thousand of us. It is better that you be ready to send us reinforcements from the city." ⁴The king said to them, "Whatever seems best to you, I will do." The king stationed himself beside the gate, and all the troops marched out in their hundreds and their thousands. ⁵The king commanded Joab, Abishai, and Ittai: "For my sake, deal gently with the young man — with Absalom." And all the troops heard the king give this order to every commander concerning Absalom. ⁶The troops marched out into the open country to meet Israel, and the battle was fought in the forest of Ephraim. ⁷The forces of Israel were defeated there before David's men, and the slaughter that day was enormous — twenty thousand. ⁸The fighting spread across the face of the whole land, and the forest devoured more of the army that day than the sword devoured. ⁹Absalom came face to face with David's men. Absalom was riding his mule, and the mule passed under the tangled branches of a great oak. His head became wedged in the oak, and he was left hanging between the sky and the earth while the mule beneath him kept going. ¹⁰A soldier saw this and reported to Joab: "I just saw Absalom — hanging in an oak tree." ¹¹Joab said to the man who reported it, "You saw him? Then why didn't you strike him to the ground right there? I would have owed you ten silver pieces and a warrior's belt." ¹²The soldier said to Joab, "Even if I felt the weight of a thousand silver pieces in my hand, I would not raise my hand against the king's son. We heard it ourselves — the king commanded you, and Abishai, and Ittai: 'Protect the young man Absalom for me, whoever he may be.'" ¹³Or else I would have been risking my own life with a lie — nothing stays hidden from the king — and you yourself would have stood back and let me take the blame." ¹⁴Joab said, "I will not waste time with you like this." He took three sharpened sticks in his fist and drove them into Absalom's chest while Absalom was still alive in the heart of the oak. ¹⁵Then ten of Joab's young armor-bearers closed in around Absalom and struck him until he was dead. ¹⁶Joab sounded the ram's horn, and the troops pulled back from pursuing Israel, because Joab restrained the army. ¹⁷They took Absalom and threw him into a deep pit in the forest and heaped an enormous cairn of stones over him. Meanwhile, all Israel had fled — every man to his own home. ¹⁸Now Absalom during his lifetime had taken and set up for himself a pillar in the Valley of the King, because he said, "I have no son to keep my name alive." He named the pillar after himself, and it is called Absalom's Monument to this day. ¹⁹Ahimaa

z son of Zadok said, "Let me run and bring the king the news that the LORD has vindicated him against his enemies." ²⁰Joab said to him, "You are not the right man to carry news today. You can carry news some other day. But not today — because the king's son is dead." ²¹Joab said to the Cushite, "Go — tell the king what you have seen." The Cushite bowed to Joab and ran. ²²But Ahimaaz son of Zadok pressed again: "Whatever happens, let me also run after the Cushite." Joab said, "Why would you run, my son? You have no news that will be rewarded." ²³"Whatever happens — let me run!" Joab said to him, "Run." So Ahimaaz ran by the route through the Jordan valley and overtook the Cushite. ²⁴David was sitting between the two gates. The watchman went up to the roof of the gate, to the top of the wall, and raised his eyes and looked — and there was a man running alone. ²⁵The watchman called out and reported to the king. The king said, "If he is alone, there is news in his mouth." The runner kept coming, drawing closer. ²⁶Then the watchman spotted another man running. The watchman called down to the gatekeeper: "There is another man running alone." The king said, "This one also carries news." ²⁷The watchman said, "The stride of the first runner looks like the stride of Ahimaaz son of Zadok." The king said, "He is a good man — he comes with good news." ²⁸Ahimaaz called out and said to the king, "Shalom!" He prostrated himself before the king with his face to the ground and said, "Blessed be the LORD your God, who has handed over the men who raised their hands against my lord the king." ²⁹The king said, "Is it well with the young man — with Absalom?" Ahimaaz said, "I saw a great commotion when Joab was sending the king's servant and your servant, but I did not know what it was." ³⁰The king said, "Step aside and stand over there." He stepped aside and stood waiting. ³¹Then the Cushite arrived. The Cushite said, "Let my lord the king receive the news: the LORD has vindicated you today against all who rose up against you." ³²The king said to the Cushite, "Is it well with the young man — with Absalom?" The Cushite said, "May the enemies of my lord the king, and all who rise against you to do harm, become like that young man." ³³The king convulsed. He went up to the upper room above the gate and wept. And as he walked, this is what he said: "My son Absalom — my son, my son Absalom! Who will grant that I die in your place? Absalom — my son, my son!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyifqod* ('he mustered, reviewed, counted') is military census language — the same term used for God 'visiting' or 'attending to' people, here applied to a king organizing his forces. David has shifted from fugitive to field marshal. The command structure — *sarei alafim* ('commanders of thousands') and *sarei me'ot* ('commanders of hundreds') — follows standard Israelite military organization (cf. Exodus 18:21, 1 Samuel 8:12). David is in Mahanaim, east of the Jordan, and the army consists of loyalists who followed him into exile.
2. The phrase *beyad* ('by the hand of') is the standard idiom for placing troops under a commander's authority. The tripartite division is a classic Israelite battle formation (cf. Judges 7:16, 1 Samuel 11:11). Ittai the Gittite (Ittay haGitti) is identified by his city of origin — Gath, the Philistine city — making him one of the Cherethite and Pelethite mercenary class that formed David's personal guard. The infinitive absolute *yatso etse* ('going out I will go out') expresses David's firm intention — he is not asking permission but declaring his plan.
3. The negation *lo tetsé* ('you shall not go out') is a direct prohibition from subordinates to their king — remarkable in its boldness. The conditional clauses (*im nos nanus*, 'if fleeing we flee'; *im yamutu chetsyenu*, 'if half of us die') present worst-case scenarios with studied calm. The phrase *me'ir la'azor* ('from the city to help') could mean sending reinforcements or providing a rallying point for regrouping. The troops' logic depends on the principle that David's survival ensures the kingdom's continuity regardless of battlefield outcome.
4. David's concession — *asher yitav be'eiikhem e'eseh* ('what is good in your eyes I will do') — is uncharacteristically passive for a warrior king. He is deferring to his soldiers on a matter of personal pride, which shows either wisdom or exhaustion — or both. The king's position at the gate (*al yad hash'a'ar*) is strategic: the gate is the public square, the place of authority and visibility. Every soldier marching out passes directly before David. This positioning sets up the critical moment in verse 5, where David's command about Absalom is heard by the entire army.
5. The phrase *le'at li lanna'ar le'Avshalom* ('gently for me with the young man, with Absalom') piles up the softening language. *Le'at* means 'gently, softly' (cf. Isaiah 8:6 where it describes the gentle waters of Shiloah). The preposition *li* ('for me, for my sake') makes it personal — David is not issuing a military directive but making a plea. The noun *na'ar* ('young man, youth') is technically inaccurate for Absalom, who is a grown man with children, but it reveals how David sees him: still his child. The emphasis on public hearing (*vekh'ol ha'am shame'u*) creates legal witnesses to the command — the narrator is building the case that what Joab does later is insubordination.
6. The phrase *hassadeh* ('the field, open country') contrasts with *ya'ar* ('forest, woodland') — the troops go out to the field but the battle happens in the forest, suggesting the fighting shifted terrain or that the initial deployment led into the wooded area. *Ya'ar Ephrayim* ('forest of Ephraim') is geographically puzzling: the battle is east of the Jordan (David is in Mahanaim), but Ephraim's tribal territory was west of the Jordan. Possible explanations include a local place name, an Ephraimite settlement in Transjordan, or a connection to the Judges 12 conflict between Gileadites and Ephraimites in this region.

7. The verb *vayyinnagfu* ('they were defeated, struck down') is the passive of *n-g-p*, which carries connotations of plague and divine striking (the same root used for the plagues of Egypt). The term *am Yisra'el* ('the people/army of Israel') designates Absalom's forces — a painful irony, since David is Israel's legitimate king, yet 'Israel' fights against him. The number *esrim elef* ('twenty thousand') represents catastrophic losses in a civil war — Israelites killing Israelites. The phrase *avdei David* ('servants of David') rather than 'the army of Judah' emphasizes personal loyalty over tribal identity.
8. The verb *nefotset* ('was scattered, dispersed') describes the battle fragmenting across the landscape — unit cohesion dissolves in the forest. The key phrase *vayyerev hayya'ar le'ekhol ba'am* ('the forest multiplied to devour among the people') uses the *hiphil* of *r-b-h* ('to be many, multiply') with the infinitive of *'-k-l* ('to eat, devour'): the forest increased its devouring. The personification of the forest as an eater is extraordinary — in Hebrew narrative, only fire, sword, pestilence, and wild beasts typically 'devour' people (cf. Deuteronomy 32:42, Jeremiah 2:30). The forest joins this list of consuming agents, elevating terrain to the level of divine instrument.
9. The verb *vayyiqqare* ('he encountered, met by chance') from *q-r-h* implies an unplanned meeting — Absalom stumbles into David's men rather than choosing to engage them. The *pardah* ('mule') is the mount of royalty (1 Kings 1:33), not a war horse — Absalom rides as a prince, not a soldier. The term *sovekh* ('tangled growth, interwoven branches') describes dense, intertwined branches that form a natural trap. The verb *vayyechezaq* ('it held fast, gripped') from *ch-z-q* is a strong verb — the oak grips Absalom's head with force. The MT specifies *rosho* ('his head'), not his hair — the tradition of Absalom caught by his hair derives from Josephus (Antiquities 7.10.2) and the earlier notice of his extraordinary hair (14:26), but the biblical text says head. The phrase *vayyuttan bein hashamayim uvein ha'arets* ('he was placed/left between heaven and earth') uses the passive of *n-t-n*, suggesting Absalom was placed there by a force outside himself.
10. The unnamed *ish echad* ('one man, a certain soldier') sees Absalom and immediately reports to Joab rather than acting. The verb *taluy* ('hanging, suspended') from *t-l-h* is the same word used for hanging a body on display (cf. Deuteronomy 21:22, Joshua 10:26) — the soldier uses language that already evokes execution. The report is terse: *hineh ra'iti et Avshalom taluy ba'elah* ('Look — I saw Absalom hanging in the oak'). The soldier reports what he saw but does not act, which sets up the dialogue in the following verses about why he refused to kill Absalom himself.
11. Joab's response reveals his priorities instantly: not 'where is he?' but 'why didn't you kill him?' The phrase *hikkito sham artsah* ('struck him there earthward') means to kill — to drive him from his suspended position into the ground. The reward Joab offers — *asarah kheseif* ('ten silver') and *chagor achat* ('one belt') — is a soldier's bonus: silver for wealth, a warrior's belt for status. The belt (*chagor*) was a mark of military rank and honor (cf. 2 Samuel 20:8 where Joab himself wears a sword belt). Joab is offering both money and promotion for Absalom's death.
12. The hypothetical *velo anokhi shoel al kappai elef kasef* ('even if I were weighing on my palms a thousand silver') raises Joab's offer a hundredfold — even at that price, the answer is no. The verb *shalach yad* ('stretch out the hand') is a fixed phrase for committing violence against someone. The soldier's quotation of David's command uses *shimru mi* ('guard / protect whoever') — the *mi* functions as a universal: protect Absalom from anyone, no matter who attempts to harm him. The verb *tsivvah* ('commanded') in the soldier's mouth emphasizes that this was a royal order, not a suggestion.
13. The soldier's final argument is devastatingly perceptive: even if I killed Absalom, the king would find out (*kol davar lo yikkached min hammelekh*, 'no matter is concealed from the king'), and you, Joab, would not defend me (*attah tityatsev minneged*, 'you would position yourself at a distance'). The verb *tityatsev* ('you would station yourself') with *minneged* ('from opposite, at a distance') paints a picture of Joab stepping away, disowning involvement, leaving the soldier to face David's wrath alone. The soldier has read Joab's character perfectly: Joab delegates risk and distances himself from consequences.
14. The noun *shevatim* (plural of *shevet*) can mean 'rods, sticks, staffs, or tribes' — here it refers to sharpened wooden implements, possibly pointed stakes or thick sticks used as improvised weapons. The verb *vayyitqa'em* ('he drove them, thrust them') from *t-q-'* is the same verb used for driving tent pegs (cf. Judges 4:21, Jael and Sisera) and for blowing the shofar — it denotes forceful penetration. The phrase *belev Avshalom* ('in the heart/chest of Absalom') uses *lev* in its physical sense (the center of the torso), while *belev ha'elah* ('in the heart of the oak') uses *lev* in its spatial sense (the interior, the midst). The wordplay on *lev* is likely deliberate. The clause *odenu chai* ('while he was still alive') makes explicit that Joab's act was not a blow to a corpse but an assault on a living, conscious person.
15. The ten *ne'arim* ('young men, attendants') who serve as Joab's arms-bearers (*nos'ei kelei Yo'av*) surround Absalom and finish the killing. The verb *vayyasobbu* ('they surrounded, encircled') from *s-b-b* describes closing in from all sides. The sequence *vayyakku ... vayemituhu* ('they struck ... and killed him') separates the blows from the death, suggesting prolonged violence. Ten men swarming one man already impaled on stakes is not battlefield necessity — it is overkill, perhaps a distribution of complicity: with ten participants, no single person bears full responsibility for the killing. This mirrors the way collective violence diffuses individual guilt.
16. The verb *vayyitqa'* ('he blew') is the same root (*t-q-'*) used in verse 14 for thrusting the sticks into Absalom — Joab thrusts stakes into a man, then thrusts breath into a horn. The shofar was the standard instrument for signaling troop movements (cf. 2 Samuel 2:28 where Joab also blows the shofar to halt pursuit). The verb *chasakh* ('he held back, withheld, spared') from *ch-s-kh* is used elsewhere for God sparing or withholding judgment (cf. Genesis 22:12, 'you did not withhold your son'). Joab withholds the army from further bloodshed — an act of restraint that frames him, momentarily, as a protector.
17. The verb *vayyashlikhu* ('they threw, cast') is the language of disposal, not burial — the same verb used for throwing refuse or casting away an unwanted object. The *pachath hagadol* ('the great pit') may be a natural depression, a dried cistern, or a ravine. The *gal avanim gadol me'od* ('very great heap of stones') parallels Joshua 7:26 (Achan) and Joshua 8:29 (king of Ai), both of which mark sites of judgment and shame. The phrase *kol Yisra'el nasu ish le'ohav* ('all Israel fled, each man to his tent') uses the standard dispersal formula — the rebellion collapses instantly upon

Absalom's death, confirming that the movement had no substance beyond one man's charisma.

18. The verb *vayyatsev lo* ('he set up for himself') uses the *hiphil* of *n-ts-v*, the same root as *mattsevet* — he 'stood up a standing-stone.' The phrase *bechayav* ('during his lifetime') marks this as a flashback interrupting the narrative. The *emek hammelekh* ('Valley of the King') is traditionally identified with the Kidron Valley east of Jerusalem, though its exact location is debated. The statement *ein li ven* ('I have no son') to preserve his name creates tension with 14:27's mention of three sons — most commentators infer the sons predeceased him. The final name *yad Avshalom* ('the hand/monument of Absalom') uses *yad* in its extended sense of 'memorial, monument' — literally 'Absalom's hand,' as if the pillar is a hand reaching out from death to grasp at remembrance.
19. Ahimaaz (Achimaaz, 'my brother is anger/strength') is the son of Zadok the priest — he was part of David's intelligence network during the flight from Jerusalem (15:27, 17:17-20). The verb *arutsah* ('let me run') and *avaserah* ('let me bring news') express eagerness. The verb *bisser* (to bring news, announce tidings) is the root of *besorah* ('good news, gospel') — Ahimaaz sees this as good news. The phrase *shefato YHWH miyyad oyvav* ('the LORD has judged/vindicated him from the hand of his enemies') frames the victory as divine justice. But Ahimaaz's framing elides the central fact: the enemy commander was the king's son. What Ahimaaz calls vindication, David will experience as devastation.
20. The phrase *lo ish besorah attah hayyom hazzeh* ('you are not a man of news this day') does not mean Ahimaaz is unqualified — it means this particular message is not the kind of news (*besorah*) that will be received as good tidings. The threefold repetition of *hayyom hazzeh* ('this day') creates emphasis through patterning. The reason clause *ki al ken ben hammelekh met* ('because therefore the king's son is dead') uses the stark formulation *ben hammelekh met* — 'the king's son is dead' — the same information Joab is trying to manage. Joab calls Absalom 'the king's son,' not 'the rebel' or 'the usurper' — even Joab, who killed him, acknowledges his filial identity when speaking of how David will receive the news.
21. The *Kushiy* ('Cushite') is either a man from Cush (the region south of Egypt, roughly modern Sudan/Ethiopia) or a man named Cushi. He is likely a foreign soldier or servant in Joab's retinue — expendable in a way Ahimaaz, the priest's son, is not. Joab's choice of messenger is calculated: if David's grief turns to rage against the bearer of bad news, better it fall on a foreigner than on the son of Zadok. The Cushite's bow (*vayyishtachu*, 'he prostrated himself') before running shows military deference — he accepts the assignment without question. The verb *vayyarots* ('and he ran') sets the race narrative in motion.
22. The phrase *vihi mah* ('let come what may, whatever happens') expresses reckless determination — Ahimaaz does not care about the consequences. Joab's response *lammah zeh attah rats beni* ('why are you running, my son?') uses the affectionate *beni* ('my son'), which is striking from the man who just drove stakes into another man's son. The phrase *ulekha ein besorah motse't* ('and for you there is no news finding [reward]') means the news Ahimaaz would carry will not earn him a reward — it will not be received as good tidings. Joab warns Ahimaaz twice, which shows genuine concern for the young priest's son, even amid the brutality of the day.
23. Joab finally relents with the single word *ruts* ('run'). Ahimaaz chooses *derekh hakikkar* ('the way of the plain/valley'), which is the Jordan valley route — flatter and faster than the hill path the Cushite presumably took. The verb *vayyaavor* ('he passed, overtook') means Ahimaaz not only caught up but passed the Cushite. This sets up the dramatic tension of the next scene: the runner David sees first is not the one Joab sent. The faster runner carries no real message; the slower runner carries the truth.
24. The phrase *bein shenei hashe'arim* ('between the two gates') refers to the passage between the outer and inner gates of a fortified city — a transitional space, both inside and outside. The *tsofeh* ('watchman, lookout') is a standard feature of city defense (cf. 2 Samuel 13:34, 2 Kings 9:17). The phrase *ish rats levado* ('a man running alone') contrasts with a group of runners, which would suggest a fleeing army. A lone runner typically signals a messenger — either of victory or catastrophe.
25. David's reasoning — *im levado besorah befiv* ('if he is alone, news is in his mouth') — reflects military logic: a single runner means a deliberate dispatch, not a rout. If the army had been destroyed, survivors would arrive in scattered groups, not as a lone messenger. The phrase *halokh veqarev* ('going and approaching') uses the infinitive absolute construction to convey continuous, steady approach — the runner is closing the distance in real time while David processes the implications. The tension builds with every step.
26. The appearance of a second runner (*ish acher rats*) complicates the picture but does not alarm David — two solo runners still suggest dispatches rather than a rout. David's response *gam zeh mevasser* ('this one too is a news-bearer') from the root *b-s-r* maintains his optimism. The watchman reports to the *sho'er* ('gatekeeper'), the official managing the gate — the chain of communication runs from watchman to gatekeeper to king, reflecting the city's hierarchical structure.
27. The *merutsah* ('running, manner of running, gait') is a rare noun — the watchman can identify Ahimaaz by the distinctive way he runs, suggesting familiarity and perhaps that Ahimaaz was a known courier. David's logic *ish tov zeh ve'el besorah tovah yavo* ('this is a good man, and to good news he comes') creates a false equation: good man equals good message. The repetition of *tov* ('good') twice in the sentence underscores David's desperate optimism. He is constructing reassurance from fragments.
28. Ahimaaz opens with *shalom* ('peace, well-being, wholeness') — the word David most wants to hear, and also the word that sidesteps everything. His blessing — *barukh YHWH Elohekha asher siggar et ha'anashim* ('blessed be the LORD your God who shut in / delivered up the men') — frames the victory in theological terms: God delivered the rebels. The verb *siggar* ('shut in, handed over, delivered up') from *s-g-r* means to close in on, to surrender into custody (cf. 1 Samuel 23:11, 26:8). Ahimaaz describes the rebellion's defeat but avoids any mention of Absalom specifically — his evasion has already begun.
29. David's question *shalom lanna'ar le'Avshalom* ('is there peace for the young man Absalom?') uses the same construction as verse 5 — *hanna'ar le'Avshalom*, 'the young man, namely Absalom.' David uses the same tender language from his earlier command: still *na'ar* ('young man'), still

personal. Ahimaaz's response is deliberately vague: *hamon gadol* ('great commotion, tumult') could refer to anything. His claim *velo yadati mah* ('and I did not know what') is almost certainly false — he was present at the army camp and eager to run with news. The evasion is transparent, but David lets it pass because the Cushite is approaching.

30. David's command *sov hityatsev koh* ('turn aside, station yourself here') is curt — he is done with Ahimaaz and his evasions. The king needs the real answer, and the real answer is approaching with the second runner. Ahimaaz obeys silently: *vayyissov vayyaamod* ('he turned aside and stood'). The brevity of this verse heightens the tension — two words of command, two words of obedience, and then silence as everyone waits for the Cushite.
31. The Cushite's announcement *yitbasser adoni hammelekh* ('let my lord the king receive good news') uses the *hitpael* of *b-s-r* — a reflexive form meaning 'receive news for yourself.' His message — *shefatekha YHWH hayyom miyyad kol haqqamim alekha* ('the LORD has judged/vindicated you today from the hand of all who rose against you') — parallels Ahimaaz's words in verse 19 but adds *hayyom* ('today') and *kol* ('all'). The phrase *kol haqqamim alekha* ('all who rose against you') uses the participle from *q-u-m* and encompasses every rebel, including — crucially — the one rebel David is asking about.
32. David's repeated question *hashalom lanna'ar le'Avshalom* is identical to verse 29, creating a structural echo that underscores his single-minded focus. The Cushite's response — *yihyu khanna'ar oyvei adoni hammelekh* ('may the enemies of my lord the king become like the young man') — is a conventional curse formula that avoids saying 'he is dead' directly. The phrase *vekhlo asher qamu alekha lera'ah* ('and all who rose against you for evil') broadens the curse to encompass every rebel. The Cushite uses the word *na'ar* ('young man') — the same term David used — which may be deliberate courtesy, adopting the father's language. But the Cushite's 'young man' is a corpse under stones, and David knows it the instant the words reach him.
33. The verb *vayyirgaz* ('he trembled, shuddered, was shaken') from *r-g-z* describes violent physical agitation — it is used for earthquakes (1 Samuel 14:15), for nations trembling before God (Exodus 15:14), and for deep emotional upheaval. It is a body-word: David's grief manifests physically before it becomes verbal. The *aliyyat hasha'ar* ('upper room of the gate') is the chamber built into the city gate's superstructure — a small, elevated, semi-private space. David climbs stairs while weeping, which means his grief is public: soldiers returning from battle pass through this gate and hear their king sobbing for the enemy they just defeated. The cry itself — *beni Avshalom beni veni Avshalom mi yitten muti ani tachtekha Avshalom beni veni* — contains five instances of *beni* ('my son') and three of *Avshalom*, with no connective particles, no verbs except the wish-formula *mi yitten* ('who will grant'). The syntax is shattered — it is not a sentence but a series of cries strung together by repetition. The phrase *mi yitten muti ani tachtekha* ('who will grant my dying, I myself, in your place') uses the optative *mi yitten* construction (literally 'who will give?'), which expresses an impossible wish (cf. Deuteronomy 5:29, Job 14:13). The pronoun *ani* ('I myself') is emphatic — David insists on the substitution being personal. The preposition *tachtekha* ('in your place, instead of you') from *tachat* is the language of exchange and substitution, the same preposition used in sacrificial contexts where one life stands in for another.

19

Summary: *The chapter opens with David still weeping for Absalom, turning the army's victory into mourning. Joab confronts the king with brutal honesty: David's grief is shaming the men who saved his life, and if he does not act, every soldier will desert him by nightfall. David takes his seat at the gate. As word spreads that the king is returning, the tribes of Israel begin debating among themselves why no one has moved to bring him back. David sends a message to the elders of Judah through the priests Zadok and Abiathar, appealing to tribal kinship and appointing Amasa — Absalom's former general — as commander in place of Joab. Judah rallies and meets David at the Jordan. Shimei son of Gera, who cursed David during his flight, rushes down with a thousand Benjaminites to beg forgiveness. Abishai wants him executed, but David grants him a sworn pardon. Mephibosheth, Jonathan's son, meets the king with signs of prolonged mourning and tells David that Ziba deceived him. David divides the estate between them. Barzillai the Gileadite, who sustained David at Mahanaim, escorts the king across the Jordan but declines to come to Jerusalem on account of his age, sending his servant Chimham instead. David blesses Barzillai and crosses the Jordan. The chapter closes with a bitter quarrel between the men of Judah and the men of Israel over who has the greater claim on the king — a dispute that will ignite Sheba's rebellion in the next chapter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterclass in the political cost of grief. David's mourning for Absalom is genuine — he has lost a son — but Joab's rebuke exposes an unbearable truth: a king cannot afford to grieve publicly for a rebel who tried to kill him without insulting every person who fought to save him. David's compliance with Joab's demand is immediate but cold; his first political act after rising from mourning is to replace Joab with Amasa, the very man who commanded Absalom's army against him. David is not forgiving Amasa — he is punishing Joab by promoting his rival's general. The pardoning of Shimei is equally layered: David swears an oath not to kill him, but the oath is carefully limited to David's own lifetime, leaving Solomon free to act later (1 Kings 2:8-9). The Mephibosheth-Ziba dispute is left deliberately unresolved —*

David splits the estate in half, a Solomonic judgment that satisfies no one and may indicate David no longer cares enough to discern the truth. The final quarrel between Judah and Israel exposes the fault line that will eventually split the kingdom: northern Israel resents Judah's privileged access to the king, and Judah responds with the arrogance of kinship. The seeds of 1 Kings 12 are already germinating.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from the English: Hebrew 19:1 corresponds to English 18:33, so Hebrew verse numbers run one ahead of English throughout the chapter (Hebrew 19:1-44 = English 18:33-19:43). Verse 1 (Hebrew) contains David's famous lament 'My son Absalom' which most English readers know as 18:33. The text of David's message to the Judean elders (vv8-13) raises questions about his authority to unilaterally replace Joab with Amasa, and about the political wisdom of appointing the rebel army's commander. Shimei's encounter (vv17-24) involves one thousand Benjaminites — a show of force disguised as submission. Mephibosheth's claim in verse 25 that Ziba slandered him contradicts Ziba's earlier report (16:3), and David's split-the-difference ruling in verse 30 has been read as either exhausted indifference or deliberate ambiguity. The phrase in verse 36 where Barzillai says he is eighty years old and can no longer 'tell good from bad' or 'taste what I eat or drink' may be literal (age-related sensory loss) or a self-deprecating formula of humility.

Connections: David's lament for Absalom (v1) echoes his lament for Saul and Jonathan (2 Samuel 1:19-27) — both are genuine grief for people who sought his destruction. Joab's rebuke (vv6-8) parallels Nathan's confrontation in 2 Samuel 12: both times a subordinate tells the king a truth he cannot see. David's appointment of Amasa (v14) directly reverses the chain of command from the battle: the losing general replaces the winning one, a decision that will cost Amasa his life in chapter 20. Shimei's pardon (vv19-24) sets up the deathbed instructions in 1 Kings 2:8-9, where David tells Solomon not to hold Shimei guiltless — the oath David swore was precise and personal, binding only himself. The Judah-versus-Israel quarrel (vv42-44) anticipates the tribal rupture of 1 Kings 12, where Rehoboam's arrogance toward the northern tribes completes the fracture that begins here. Barzillai's refusal to come to Jerusalem and his sending of Chimham instead (vv32-41) establishes a pattern of loyalty-across-generations: Jeremiah 41:17 mentions 'the habitation of Chimham near Bethlehem,' suggesting David gave Barzillai's family land near his own hometown.

¹The king shuddered. He went up to the room above the gate and wept. As he walked, he kept saying: "My son Absalom — my son, my son Absalom! If only I had died instead of you — Absalom, my son, my son!" ²It was reported to Joab: "The king is weeping and mourning over Absalom." ³The victory that day turned into mourning for the entire army, because the troops heard that day: "The king is in anguish over his son." ⁴The troops slipped into the city that day by stealth, the way soldiers slink in when they are humiliated after fleeing from battle. ⁵The king had covered his face, and the king kept crying out in a loud voice: "My son Absalom! Absalom, my son, my son!" ⁶Joab came to the king inside and said, "Today you have humiliated every one of your servants — the men who saved your life today, and the lives of your sons and daughters, and the lives of your wives and concubines. ⁷You love those who hate you and hate those who love you. You have made it clear today that your officers and servants mean nothing to you. I know it now — if Absalom were alive and all of us were dead today, that would be fine in your eyes." ⁸Now get up, go out, and speak to the hearts of your servants. Because I swear by the LORD — if you do not go out, not one man will stay with you tonight, and that disaster will be worse for you than every disaster that has come upon you from your youth until now." ⁹The king got up and took his seat at the gate. When all the troops were told, "The king is sitting at the gate," the entire army came before the king. Meanwhile, the Israelites who had followed Absalom had fled, each man to his own home. ¹⁰Throughout all the tribes of Israel, the people were arguing among themselves: "The king rescued us from the grip of our enemies — he delivered us from the grip of the Philistines — and now he has fled the land because of Absalom. ¹¹And Absalom, whom we anointed over us, is dead in battle. So why are you silent about bringing the king back?" ¹²King David sent word to Zadok and Abiathar the priests: "Speak to the elders of Judah and say: Why should you be the last to bring the king back to his palace? The talk of all Israel has already reached the king at his quarters. ¹³You are my brothers — you are my bone and my flesh. Why should you be the last to bring the king back?" ¹⁴And say to Amasa: 'Are you not my bone and my flesh? May God do the same to me and worse if you do not become the commander of the army before me permanently — in place of Joab.'" ¹⁵He swayed the heart of every man in Judah as though they were one person, and they sent word to the king: "Come back — you and all your servants." ¹⁶The king headed back and

arrived at the Jordan. Judah came to Gilgal to meet the king and escort him across the Jordan. ¹⁷Shimei son of Gera, the Benjaminite from Bahurim, hurried down with the men of Judah to meet King David. ¹⁸A thousand Benjaminites were with him, along with Ziba, the steward of Saul's house, with his fifteen sons and twenty servants. They rushed down to the Jordan ahead of the king. ¹⁹The ford was crossed to bring the king's household over and to do whatever he wished. Then Shimei son of Gera fell on his face before the king as he was about to cross the Jordan. ²⁰He said to the king, "Let my lord not hold me guilty. Do not remember what your servant did wrong on the day my lord the king left Jerusalem. Let the king not take it to heart. ²¹For your servant knows that I sinned. And here I am — I have come today as the first of the entire house of Joseph to come down to meet my lord the king." ²²Abishai son of Zeruiah spoke up: "Should Shimei not be put to death for this? He cursed the LORD's anointed!" ²³David said, "What is there between me and you, sons of Zeruiah, that you should become my adversary today? Should anyone be put to death in Israel today? Do I not know that today I am king over Israel again?" ²⁴The king said to Shimei, "You will not die." And the king swore an oath to him. ²⁵Mephibosheth, grandson of Saul, came down to meet the king. He had not tended his feet, had not trimmed his mustache, and had not washed his clothes from the day the king left until the day he returned in safety. ²⁶When he came to Jerusalem to meet the king, the king said to him, "Why did you not come with me, Mephibosheth?" ²⁷He answered, "My lord the king, my servant deceived me. Your servant said, 'Let me saddle the donkey so I can ride it and go with the king' — because your servant is lame. ²⁸He slandered your servant to my lord the king. But my lord the king is like a messenger of God — so do what seems right to you. ²⁹My entire father's house deserved nothing but death from my lord the king, yet you set your servant among those who eat at your table. What further right do I have to appeal to the king?" ³⁰The king said to him, "Why go on talking about this? I have decided: you and Ziba will divide the estate." ³¹Mephibosheth said to the king, "Let him take it all — since my lord the king has come home in safety." ³²Barzillai the Gileadite had come down from Rogelim and crossed the Jordan with the king to see him off at the Jordan. ³³Barzillai was very old — eighty years of age. He had provided for the king during his stay at Mahanaim, because he was a very wealthy man. ³⁴The king said to Barzillai, "Cross over with me, and I will provide for you at my side in Jerusalem." ³⁵Barzillai said to the king, "How many days are left in the years of my life, that I should go up with the king to Jerusalem? ³⁶I am eighty years old today. Can I still tell the difference between good and bad? Can your servant taste what he eats or drinks? Can I still hear the voices of men and women singing? Why should your servant be a burden to my lord the king? ³⁷Your servant will just cross the Jordan with the king and go a little way. Why should the king repay me with such a reward? ³⁸Let your servant go back, and let me die in my own town, near the grave of my father and mother. But here is your servant Chimham — let him cross over with my lord the king, and do for him whatever seems good to you." ³⁹The king said, "Chimham will cross over with me, and I will do for him whatever seems good to you. And whatever you choose to ask of me, I will do it for you." ⁴⁰All the people crossed the Jordan, and the king crossed over. Then the king kissed Barzillai and blessed him, and Barzillai returned to his home. ⁴¹The king continued on to Gilgal, and Chimham crossed over with him. All the people of Judah escorted the king across, along with half the people of Israel. ⁴²Then all the men of Israel came to the king and said, "Why did our brothers, the men of Judah, steal you away? They brought the king, his household, and all David's men across the Jordan!" ⁴³Every man of Judah answered the men of Israel: "Because the king is our close relative! Why are you so angry about this? Did we eat anything at the king's expense? Did we carry off any gift for ourselves?" ⁴⁴The men of Israel answered the men of Judah: "We have ten shares in the king! And we have a greater claim on David than you do! Why did you treat us with contempt? Were we not the first to speak of bringing our king back?" But the words of the men of Judah were harsher than the words of the men of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyirgaz* ('he trembled, shuddered') conveys involuntary physical agitation — David's body responds before his words do. The phrase *aliyyat hash'a'ar* ('the upper room of the gate') was the chamber above the city gate, a semi-private space where David could grieve away from public view. The repetition of *beni* ('my son') five times in a single verse, with Absalom's name interspersed three times, creates a rhythm of obsessive grief — David cannot stop saying the words. The phrase *mi yitten muti ani tachtekha* ('who will grant my death in your place') uses the optative construction *mi yitten* ('would that, if only') expressing an impossible wish. This verse is 18:33 in English Bibles; the Hebrew versification places it as the opening of chapter 19.

2. The passive vayyugad ('it was told') leaves the informant unnamed — the news of David's grief has become public knowledge, spreading through the camp. The verbs bokheh ('weeping') and mit'abbel ('mourning') represent escalating grief: weeping is the immediate emotional response, while mourning (from the root a-v-l) denotes formal, sustained lamentation. Joab receives this report not as personal news but as a military crisis — the commander of the victorious army now has a king who is publicly mourning the enemy's death.
3. The noun teshu'ah ('victory, deliverance, salvation') is a theologically weighted term — this was not merely a military win but a deliverance. The transformation of teshu'ah into evel ('mourning') is one of the sharpest reversals in the narrative: God gave salvation, and the king turned it into a funeral. The verb ne'etsav ('he is grieved, in pain') from the root a-ts-v is the same word used of God's grief over human wickedness in Genesis 6:6 — a deep, internal anguish, not mere sadness. The soldiers who risked their lives learn that their king wishes the outcome had been different.
4. The verb vayyitgannev ('they stole themselves in') from the root g-n-v ('to steal') depicts the army sneaking into their own camp as if they were deserters. The hitpa'el form conveys reflexive, furtive action — they are hiding from their own king's gaze. The comparative ka'asher ('just as') draws an explicit parallel: victorious soldiers behaving like defeated, disgraced runaways. The verb niklamim ('ashamed, humiliated') from k-l-m describes deep public shame. David's grief has accomplished what Absalom's army could not — it has made the winning army feel like losers.
5. The verb la'at ('he covered, wrapped') describes David veiling his face — a gesture of mourning and also of withdrawal from the world. The covered face means the king cannot see and will not be seen; he has shut himself off from his kingdom. The verb vayyiz'aq ('he cried out') with qol gadol ('a great voice, a loud voice') indicates this is not quiet weeping but full-throated, audible wailing that the entire camp can hear. The repetition of beni Avshalom mirrors verse 1, showing David locked in a cycle of grief he cannot break. The triple beni at the end intensifies the anguish.
6. The phrase vayyavo Yo'av el hammelekh habbayit ('Joab came to the king, inside') indicates Joab entered the private chamber — this confrontation happens behind closed doors. The verb hovashta ('you have shamed') from b-v-sh is a causative form: David has actively caused shame to fall on his men's faces. The verb hammamletim ('who rescued, delivered') from m-l-t emphasizes escape from mortal danger — these men did not merely win a battle; they saved David's nefesh ('life, soul'). Joab's catalog of those saved — sons, daughters, wives, concubines — is comprehensive, reminding David of everything he still has because of the army's victory.
7. Joab's accusation is structured as a devastating chiasm: le'ahavah et son'ekha velisno et ohavekha ('to love your haters and to hate your lovers'). The inversion of love and hate frames David's grief as a moral reversal — he has turned the categories upside down. The phrase ein lekha sarim va'avadim ('you have no officers and servants') does not mean David lacks them but that he treats them as if they do not exist. Joab's final statement is the cruelest: lu Avshalom chay vekhullanu hayyom metim ('if Absalom were alive and all of us dead today') — Joab forces David to confront what his grief implies to the men who fought for him. The phrase yashar be'einekha ('it would be right in your eyes') is a judgment formula used elsewhere for moral approval.
8. The imperatives qum tse ('get up, go out') are blunt and urgent — Joab is not asking but commanding his king. The phrase dabber al lev avadekha ('speak to the heart of your servants') uses the idiom 'speak to the heart' which means to reassure, comfort, and restore confidence (the same phrase used of a man wooing back an estranged wife in Hosea 2:16). Joab's oath baYHWH nishba'ti ('by the LORD I have sworn') escalates the confrontation to the level of a covenant oath — he is staking God's name on his warning. The threat im yalin ish ittekha hallaylah ('if a man will lodge with you tonight') warns of total desertion before dawn. The comparison to ra'ah ('disaster, evil') from David's youth frames this as potentially worse than Saul's persecution, the wilderness years, or Absalom's revolt.
9. The verb vayyeshev ('he sat') at the gate marks David's resumption of royal function — the gate was the place of judgment, governance, and public audience. David's sitting is a political act: he is visible, accessible, and functioning as king again. The announcement hinneh hammelekh yoshev basha'ar ('the king is sitting at the gate') travels through the camp as official news — the crisis is over. The final clause veYisra'el nas ish le'ohalav ('and Israel fled, each to his tents') refers to Absalom's defeated forces scattering, using the ancient formula for disbanding (cf. 1 Kings 12:16). The word ohalav ('his tents') means 'his home' — a survival of nomadic vocabulary.
10. The verb nadon ('disputing, arguing') indicates contentious debate, not calm discussion — the tribes are quarreling over what to do next. The phrase mikfaf oyeveinu ('from the grip of our enemies') uses kaf ('palm, hand') as a metaphor for power and control. The people's argument recounts David's military achievements: defeating external enemies and specifically the Philistines (pelishtim). The clause barah min ha'arets me'al Avshalom ('he fled from the land because of Absalom') acknowledges that David is in exile — the rightful king is outside his own kingdom. The argument implies: if David saved us before, why are we not bringing him back?
11. The admission asher mashachnu alenu ('whom we anointed over us') is remarkable — the people openly acknowledge they had installed Absalom as king, using the verb mashach ('to anoint'), the same verb for the consecration of Saul and David. This is a confession of complicity: they participated in the rebellion, and the man they anointed is now dead. The verb macharishim ('being silent, keeping quiet') from ch-r-sh implies a guilty or paralyzed silence — the people know they should act but no one wants to be the first to speak. The question lamah ('why?') pushes toward action: there is no reason not to restore David.
12. David's use of Zadok and Abiathar as intermediaries shows his political intelligence — the priests serve as trusted, neutral channels between the king in exile and the tribal leadership. The phrase lamah tihyu acharonim ('why should you be last?') is a challenge to Judean pride: if all Israel is already discussing the king's return, Judah — David's own tribe — should not be trailing behind. The phrase devar kol Yisra'el ba el hammelekh ('the word of all Israel has come to the king') informs the Judeans that the northern tribes are already moving toward restoration, creating competitive pressure.
13. The phrase achai attem ('you are my brothers') and atsmi uvsari attem ('you are my bone and my flesh') invoke kinship language rooted in the creation narrative — 'bone of my bone and flesh of my flesh' (Genesis 2:23). David is not merely claiming tribal affiliation but blood solidarity: he and Judah are one body. The repetition of lamah tihyu acharonim ('why be last?') from the previous verse intensifies the pressure. David is playing

the kinship card: if we are one flesh, my exile is your wound.

14. Amasa (Amasa') was Absalom's military commander (2 Samuel 17:25) and David's nephew — son of Abigail, David's sister (or half-sister, per 1 Chronicles 2:16-17). The oath formula *koh ya'aseh li Elohim vekhoh yosif* ('may God do thus to me and more') is the standard self-imprecatory oath used when making an irrevocable commitment. The phrase *sar tsava tihyeh lefanai kol hayyamim* ('you will be army commander before me all the days') is a permanent appointment. The final words *tachat Yo'av* ('in place of Joab') reveal the political calculus: David is replacing the general who won the war with the general who lost it. This is punishment of Joab for killing Absalom against David's orders, disguised as reconciliation with Judah.
15. The verb *vayyat* ('he inclined, turned, swayed') from *n-t-h* describes David bending the collective will of Judah. The phrase *ke'ish echad* ('like one man') indicates complete unanimity — David's appeal to kinship and his appointment of Amasa together achieved total tribal solidarity. The invitation *shuv attah vekhol avadekha* ('return, you and all your servants') formally ends David's exile. The use of *shuv* ('return') is loaded: it means not merely to come back geographically but to be restored to one's proper place.
16. The verb *vayyashov* ('he returned') marks the beginning of David's physical return from Transjordan. The Jordan River functions as the boundary between exile and restoration — crossing it reverses the flight described in chapters 15-17. Gilgal, on the western bank of the Jordan near Jericho, was historically significant as the first Israelite camp after Joshua's crossing (Joshua 4:19-20) and the site of Saul's kingship renewal (1 Samuel 11:14-15). Judah's gathering at Gilgal to escort the king across the Jordan echoes Israel's original entry into the land.
17. The verb *vaymaher* ('he hurried') signals urgency bordering on desperation — Shimei knows his life depends on being among the first to greet David. Shimei ben Gera is identified as a Benjaminite (*ben hayemini*, 'son of the right hand'), connecting him to Saul's tribe, and from Bahurim, the village where he had cursed David and hurled stones at him during his flight (2 Samuel 16:5-13). His rushing to meet David with the men of Judah is a calculated political move — arriving with the welcoming party rather than waiting to be summoned.
18. The thousand men from Benjamin (*elef ish mimBinyamin*) accompanying Shimei represent a significant tribal delegation — this is not an individual supplicant but a political demonstration. Ziba (Tsiva), identified as *na'ar beit Sha'ul* ('servant/steward of Saul's house'), appears here with his full household: fifteen sons and twenty servants, the same numbers given in 2 Samuel 9:10. Ziba's presence alongside Shimei groups two Saulide-connected figures together for David's return. The verb *tsalchu* ('they rushed through, they crossed') from *ts-l-ch* describes rapid fording of the river.
19. The phrase *ve'averah ha'avarah* ('the ford crossed over') uses a cognate construction — the crossing-place was used for crossing — a repetition that emphasizes the activity at the river. The purpose *la'avir et beit hammelek* ('to bring the king's household across') shows practical logistics: the royal family and household were being ferried over. The phrase *vela'asot hattov be'einav* ('and to do what was good in his eyes') indicates the servants were attending to whatever the king wanted. Shimei's prostration (*nafal lifnei hammelek*, 'fell before the king') is the posture of a man begging for his life.
20. The verb *yachashov* ('let him reckon, impute') from *ch-sh-v* is an accounting metaphor — Shimei asks David not to enter this debt in the ledger. The noun *avon* ('iniquity, guilt, punishment') covers the full arc from sin to its consequences. The verb *tizkor* ('remember') is the opposite of the Hebrew concept of forgiveness, which often involves 'not remembering' an offense. The phrase *he'evah avdekha* ('your servant did wrong') uses the *hiphil* of *a-v-h*, acknowledging wrongdoing without minimizing it. The phrase *lasum hammelek el libbo* ('for the king to take it to his heart') asks David not to internalize the offense — to let it go from his emotional memory.
21. Shimei's confession *ani chatati* ('I sinned') uses the standard verb for sin (*ch-t-*), acknowledging moral failure without qualification. His claim to be *rishon lekhol beit Yosef* ('first of the entire house of Joseph') is significant: 'house of Joseph' refers to the northern tribes (Ephraim and Manasseh), and by extension all non-Judahite Israel. Shimei presents his early arrival as evidence of repentance — he did not wait to see which way the political winds blew but rushed to be first. The verb *laredet* ('to come down') reflects the geography: descending from the hill country to the Jordan Valley.
22. Abishai (Avishai) son of Zeruiah, David's nephew and Joab's brother, repeats the same demand he made during the original incident (2 Samuel 16:9). The verb *qillel* ('he cursed') from *q-l-l* is the opposite of *barakh* ('to bless') and carries the weight of a formal malediction. The title *meshiach YHWH* ('the LORD's anointed') elevates Shimei's offense from personal insult to sacrilege — cursing the one God has consecrated is an attack on God's own choice. Abishai frames this as a capital case: the penalty for cursing the anointed king should be death.
23. The phrase *mah li velakhem* ('what is there between me and you?') is a formula of disengagement — David is distancing himself from the Zeruiah brothers' habitual bloodlust (cf. 2 Samuel 3:39, 16:10). The word *satan* here means 'adversary, accuser, opponent' — not the proper noun of later theology, but the common noun describing someone who obstructs or opposes. David's rhetorical question *hayyom yumat ish beYisra'el* ('should a man be put to death in Israel today?') establishes the day of his return as a day of amnesty, not retribution. The final clause *ki hayyom ani melekh al Yisra'el* ('for today I am king over Israel') is David's reassertion of royal authority — and a king secure in his throne can afford to show mercy.
24. The declaration *lo tamut* ('you will not die') is a royal pardon stated in the absolute — no conditions, no qualifications in the moment. The verb *vayyishava* ('he swore') from *sh-v-* elevates this from a promise to a covenant oath. However, the oath is carefully personal: David swears that he will not kill Shimei. In 1 Kings 2:8-9, David instructs Solomon that Shimei is not to be held guiltless and to 'bring his gray head down to Sheol with blood' — the oath bound David alone, not his successor. The brevity of the verse mirrors the finality of the declaration: two clauses, no negotiation.
25. Mephibosheth (Mefivoshet) is called *ben Sha'ul* ('son of Saul') though he was actually Jonathan's son and Saul's grandson — *ben* can mean 'descendant.' The three signs of mourning are specific: *lo asah raglav* ('he did not do his feet') likely means he did not care for his lame feet or trim his toenails; *lo asah sefamo* ('he did not do his mustache') means his facial hair was untrimmed; *lo kibbes begadav* ('he did not wash his clothes')

indicates prolonged neglect of personal hygiene. Together these constitute visible, sustained mourning for the king's absence — evidence that Mephibosheth did not celebrate Absalom's coup as Ziba claimed (2 Samuel 16:3).

25. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'safety' rather than default 'peace' because the context is David's physical safe return — the 'wholeness/well-being' sense of shalom applied to personal security.
26. The question lamah lo halakhta immi ('why did you not go with me?') is direct and probing — David is asking why Mephibosheth stayed in Jerusalem during the flight rather than joining the royal entourage in exile. The question carries the weight of Ziba's earlier accusation (2 Samuel 16:3) that Mephibosheth had stayed behind hoping the house of Israel would restore Saul's kingdom to him. David is giving Mephibosheth a chance to respond, but the question itself reveals that Ziba's version has already shaped the king's thinking. Some manuscripts place this meeting at Jerusalem rather than at the Jordan crossing.
27. The verb rimmani ('he deceived me') from r-m-h is a strong accusation — Ziba did not merely fail to help but actively betrayed Mephibosheth. The plan echbshah li hachamor ('let me saddle the donkey for myself') shows Mephibosheth intended to ride out with David but needed assistance because of his disability. The word pisseach ('lame') from p-s-ch refers to his condition since childhood (2 Samuel 4:4) when he was dropped by his nurse and both feet were injured. Mephibosheth's story is that Ziba took the saddled donkey and supplies to David alone, leaving the lame man stranded — and then slandered him to gain his estate.
28. The verb vayraggel ('he slandered') from r-g-l in the piel means to spy out, slander, or go about as a tale-bearer — Ziba is accused of carrying false intelligence to the king. The comparison ke-mal'akh ha'Elohim ('like a messenger/angel of God') attributes divine-like discernment to David — the same flattering phrase used by the woman of Tekoa (2 Samuel 14:17, 20) and later by Mephibosheth himself. The phrase va'aseh hattov be'einekha ('do what is good in your eyes') is a submission to royal judgment — Mephibosheth places his fate entirely in David's hands, trusting the king's discernment rather than pressing his case further.
29. The phrase anshei mavet ('men of death') means 'men deserving death' — Mephibosheth acknowledges that David had every political right to eliminate Saul's surviving descendants to secure his throne, as was common practice in the ancient Near East. The phrase vattashet et avdekha be'okhlei shulchanekha ('you set your servant among those who eat at your table') refers to David's earlier act of chesed toward Mephibosheth for Jonathan's sake (2 Samuel 9:7-13). The word tsedaqah ('right, righteous claim, justice') asks what legitimate basis Mephibosheth has for demanding anything further — the answer is none. His survival itself was an act of grace.
30. David's response lamah tedabber od devarekha ('why do you keep speaking your words?') cuts the discussion short — the king has heard enough and will not investigate further. The ruling attah veTsiva tachlequ et hasadeh ('you and Ziba will split the field') reverses David's earlier grant of Mephibosheth's entire estate to Ziba (2 Samuel 16:4) by restoring half to Mephibosheth. This judgment has been read variously: as Solomonic wisdom, as exhausted indifference, or as a political compromise that keeps both Saulide factions partially satisfied. David does not determine who was telling the truth — Ziba who claimed Mephibosheth was a traitor, or Mephibosheth who claimed Ziba was a liar. The split may reveal that David no longer has the energy or interest to adjudicate.
31. Mephibosheth's response gam et hakkol yiqqach ('let him even take it all') goes beyond David's ruling: if Ziba wants the whole estate, he can have it. This response has been interpreted two ways: as proof of Mephibosheth's sincerity — a man who cares about the king's return more than property must be telling the truth — or as a shrewd move that makes Mephibosheth look loyal regardless of the estate outcome. The word beshalom ('in peace, in safety') echoes verse 25 and frames the king's return as the restoration of wholeness that matters more than land.
32. Barzillai (Barzillay, 'man of iron' from barzel, 'iron') is identified as a Gileadite — from the Transjordanian region of Gilead. Rogelim was his home town in Gilead. He had provided David with food and supplies during his stay at Mahanaim (2 Samuel 17:27-29). The verb leshalleho ('to send him off, escort him') from sh-l-ch in the piel indicates a formal farewell — Barzillai accompanies the king to the river crossing as a send-off, with the assumption that their paths will diverge at the Jordan.
33. The age ben shemonim shanah ('eighty years old') in the ancient world marked extreme old age — well beyond the typical lifespan. The verb kilkel ('he provided, sustained') from k-v-l in the pilpel form means to supply with food and sustenance on an ongoing basis. The location Mahanaim was David's base of operations during Absalom's rebellion. The phrase ish gadol hu me'od ('he was a very great man') describes Barzillai's wealth and social standing — gadol here means 'great' in the sense of resources and influence, not merely reputation. His support of David during the crisis was both generous and politically risky.
34. David's invitation avor itti ('cross over with me') offers Barzillai a place in the royal court — the same honor David extended to Mephibosheth in 2 Samuel 9. The verb vekhilkalti ('I will provide for, sustain') mirrors the same verb used of Barzillai's provision for David in the previous verse — David is offering to reciprocate: you fed me in exile, I will feed you in the capital. The phrase immadi biYerushalaim ('with me in Jerusalem') specifies not just sustenance but proximity to the king — a position of honor and access.
35. The phrase kammah yemei shenei chayyai ('how many are the days of the years of my life?') echoes Jacob's words to Pharaoh in Genesis 47:8-9 — an old man measuring his remaining time. The triple construction 'days of years of life' layers the units of measurement, each one smaller than the last, emphasizing how little time remains. The verb e'eleh ('I should go up') reflects Jerusalem's elevation — one always 'goes up' to Jerusalem. Barzillai's question is rhetorical: the answer is 'not many,' and therefore the offer, though generous, is impractical.
36. Barzillai catalogs the losses of extreme age with unflinching honesty. The phrase ha'eda bein tov lera ('can I know between good and bad?') may refer to failing judgment, diminished discernment, or literal loss of the ability to distinguish flavors and experiences. The verb yit'am ('can he taste') describes the loss of gustatory pleasure — the royal table's fine food would be wasted on him. The phrase beqol sharim vesharot ('the voice of male

and female singers') refers to court musicians — one of the primary pleasures of palace life. The word *massa* ('burden') is Barzillai's self-assessment: he would be a liability, not an asset. His honesty about aging is one of the most humanly affecting passages in the David narrative.

37. The phrase *kim'at ya'avor avdekha* ('your servant will cross just a little') indicates Barzillai will accompany the king across the river as a courtesy but no further. The verb *yigmeleni* ('should he repay me') from *g-m-l* means to deal with, repay, or reward — Barzillai frames David's offer as excessive compensation. The noun *gemulah* ('reward, recompense') emphasizes the transactional nature: Barzillai fed a fugitive king and considers the debt already settled by David's safe return. He does not want payment for loyalty.
38. Barzillai's wish to die *be'iri* ('in my city') and be buried *im qever avi ve'immi* ('near the grave of my father and mother') reflects the deep Israelite attachment to ancestral burial — to be gathered to one's fathers was to maintain connection across generations. The introduction of Chimham (Kimham) as a substitute reveals Barzillai's real purpose: he declines the honor for himself but secures it for the next generation. Chimham was likely Barzillai's son, though the text does not explicitly state the relationship. The phrase *va'aseh lo et asher tov be'einekha* ('do for him what is good in your eyes') transfers the king's favor from father to son.
39. David accepts the substitution without hesitation: *itti ya'avor Kimham* ('Chimham will cross with me'). The phrase *ani e'eseh lo et hattov be'einekha* ('I will do for him what is good in your eyes') reverses the usual formula — instead of 'what is good in the king's eyes,' it is 'what is good in your eyes,' giving Barzillai the power to define the terms. The open-ended promise *vekhoh asher tivchar alai e'eseh lakh* ('whatever you choose to lay on me, I will do for you') is a blank check of royal favor — rare in biblical narrative and indicative of the depth of David's gratitude.
40. The sequence *vayyishaq hammelekh leVarzillay vayevarrkhehu* ('the king kissed Barzillai and blessed him') marks a formal, emotional farewell. The kiss is a gesture of honor between equals — David kisses the old man who fed him in exile. The verb *vayevarrkhehu* ('he blessed him') from *b-r-kh* means David pronounced a benediction over Barzillai — a king blessing a subject is a transfer of divine favor through royal authority. The phrase *vayyashov limqomo* ('he returned to his place') closes Barzillai's story with the same simplicity it began: the old man goes home. Jeremiah 41:17 mentions a 'habitation of Chimham' near Bethlehem, suggesting David later granted Barzillai's family land near his own hometown.
41. The text notes that *vekhoh am Yehudah* ('all the people of Judah') escorted David, plus *chatsi am Yisra'el* ('half the people of Israel'). This detail becomes critical in the dispute that follows: the men of Israel will complain that Judah monopolized the king's return. The textual note in brackets reflects a *ketiv-qere* variation in the Masoretic text. Gilgal serves as the staging point on the western bank — the same location where the people gathered in verse 16.
42. The verb *genavukha* ('they stole you') from *g-n-v* ('to steal') is deliberately inflammatory — the northern tribes accuse Judah of kidnapping the king. The possessive claim is striking: they call the Judahites *acheinu* ('our brothers'), maintaining the fiction of national unity while accusing them of acting unilaterally. The complaint is that Judah monopolized the restoration — they escorted the king, his household (*beito*), and all his men (*anshei David*) across the Jordan without including or consulting the other tribes. This is the language of political exclusion: the northern tribes feel cut out of a process they had initiated in verses 10-11.
43. Judah's defense rests on kinship: *ki qarov hammelekh elai* ('because the king is close/related to me'). The word *qarov* ('near, close, related') carries both physical and familial meaning — David is from the tribe of Judah, making him their kinsman. The rhetorical questions are defensive: *he'akhol akhalnu min hammelekh* ('did we eat anything from the king?') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — 'did we really eat?' The second question *im nisset nissa lanu* ('was anything carried off for us?') denies any material motive. Judah's argument is that kinship, not greed, drove their action. But the argument is also provocative: it reminds the northern tribes that they cannot claim the same closeness to David.
44. The claim *eser yadot li vammelekh* ('I have ten hands/shares in the king') refers to the ten northern tribes versus Judah's one — Israel claims a ten-to-one ownership stake in the monarchy. The phrase *vegam beDavid ani mimmekha* ('and also in David I am more than you') escalates the claim from the office to the person: not just the kingship but David himself belongs more to them. The verb *heqillotani* ('you treated me lightly, with contempt') from *q-l-l* is the same root as Michal's contempt for David (2 Samuel 6:16) — it denotes being treated as insignificant. The final editorial note *vayyiqesh devar ish Yehudah middevar ish Yisra'el* ('the words of the men of Judah were harder than the words of the men of Israel') from *q-sh-h* ('to be hard, harsh, stubborn') signals that Judah's response was more aggressive and unyielding than Israel's complaint. This verse ends the chapter on a note of unresolved, escalating tension — the very next verse (20:1) introduces Sheba's revolt.

20

Summary: *A Benjaminite named Sheba son of Bichri blows the ram's horn and declares Israel has no share in David, pulling the northern tribes away from the king. David returns to Jerusalem, confines the ten concubines Absalom violated to living widowhood, and orders Amasa — his newly appointed commander — to muster Judah within three days. When Amasa is slow, David sends Abishai with the royal guard to pursue Sheba before he fortifies a city. Joab accompanies them, and when they meet Amasa at the great stone of Gibeon, Joab greets him with one hand and guts him with the other. Joab and Abishai continue the pursuit while Amasa bleeds out in the road, blocking the march until a soldier drags the body into a field and covers it. Sheba takes refuge in Abel Beth-maacah. Joab besieges the city and begins battering the wall. A wise woman calls out from the wall, reminding Joab that Abel is a city known for settling disputes and asking why he would swallow up an inheritance of the LORD. Joab agrees to*

withdraw if they hand over Sheba. The woman persuades the city, Sheba's head is thrown over the wall, Joab blows the trumpet, and the army disperses. The chapter closes with a list of David's senior officials.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a study in how power actually operates when the ceremonies are over. Sheba's revolt exposes the fragility of David's reunification — the northern tribes can be peeled away with a single slogan. Joab's murder of Amasa is the second time he has assassinated a rival commander (after Abner in chapter 3), and David is again powerless to stop him. The most striking figure in the chapter is the unnamed wise woman of Abel Beth-maacah, who accomplishes with a single negotiation what an entire siege army could not: she ends the rebellion, saves her city, and preserves life on both sides. She appeals to Abel's identity as a place where people 'settle matters' and calls the city 'a mother in Israel' — a center of counsel and tradition. In a chapter full of men solving problems with swords, one woman solves the crisis with speech.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 3 describes the ten concubines as living 'in widowhood of life' (almanut chayyut) — a phrase found only here, meaning they were alive but confined, provided for but cut off from the king and from ordinary life. The legal and moral status of these women, violated by Absalom as a political act (16:22) and now permanently isolated by David, raises sharp ethical questions the text does not resolve. Joab's seamless resumption of command after murdering Amasa (vv10-13) raises the question of whether David ever truly intended to replace him or whether Amasa's appointment was always an empty political gesture to win Judah's loyalty. The identity of 'Joab's men' versus 'the Cherethites and Pelethites' versus 'all the mighty men' (v7) has generated debate about the structure of David's military. The administrative list in verses 23-26 partially overlaps with the list in 8:16-18 but includes differences — notably Adoram over forced labor and Ira the Jairite as priest — suggesting institutional development or textual layering.*

Connections: *Sheba's rallying cry — 'We have no share in David, no inheritance in the son of Jesse' — will be repeated almost verbatim by the northern tribes at the division of the kingdom under Rehoboam (1 Kings 12:16), making this rebellion a rehearsal for the permanent split. Joab's murder of Amasa mirrors his murder of Abner (2 Samuel 3:27): both are killed by Joab with deceptive greetings, both are rival commanders David appointed over Joab's head, and both murders go unpunished during David's lifetime. The wise woman's appeal to the city as 'a mother in Israel' echoes Deborah's title 'a mother in Israel' (Judges 5:7), linking female wisdom and civic authority across the narrative. David's confinement of the concubines fulfills the violation predicted by Nathan's oracle (12:11-12) and enacted by Absalom's counselor Ahithophel (16:21-22). The administrative list anticipates Solomon's expanded bureaucracy (1 Kings 4:1-19).*

¹Now a worthless man happened to be there — his name was Sheba son of Bichri, a Benjaminite. He blew the ram's horn and declared: "We have no share in David! We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! Every man to his own tent, Israel!" ²Every man of Israel pulled away from David and followed Sheba son of Bichri. But the men of Judah stayed bound to their king, from the Jordan all the way to Jerusalem. ³David came to his palace in Jerusalem. The king took the ten concubines he had left to look after the house and placed them in guarded confinement. He provided for them, but he never went to them again. They remained shut away until the day they died — widows of a living husband. ⁴The king said to Amasa, "Muster the men of Judah for me within three days, then report here yourself." ⁵Amasa went to muster Judah, but he took longer than the deadline David had set for him. ⁶David said to Abishai, "Sheba son of Bichri will do us more damage than Absalom did. Take your lord's soldiers and pursue him — before he finds fortified cities and slips from our sight." ⁷Joab's men marched out after him, along with the Cherethites, the Pelethites, and all the elite warriors. They went out from Jerusalem to pursue Sheba son of Bichri. ⁸They were near the great stone at Gibeon when Amasa came to meet them. Joab was wearing his military tunic, belted over it, with a sword strapped to his hip in its sheath. As he stepped forward, the sword slipped out. ⁹Joab said to Amasa, "Is it well with you, my brother?" And Joab's right hand seized Amasa's beard to kiss him. ¹⁰Amasa was not on guard against the sword in Joab's hand. Joab stabbed him in the belly, spilling his intestines onto the ground. He did not need to strike a second time — Amasa died. Then Joab and his brother Abishai continued the pursuit of Sheba son of Bichri. ¹¹One of Joab's men stood over Amasa's body and called out, "Whoever supports Joab and whoever is for David — follow Joab!" ¹²Amasa lay writhing in his blood in the middle of the road. When the soldier saw that everyone was stopping, he dragged Amasa from the road into the field and threw a garment over him. After that, everyone who came by kept

moving. ¹³Once Amasa was removed from the road, every man passed on after Joab to pursue Sheba son of Bichri. ¹⁴Sheba passed through all the tribes of Israel to Abel Beth-maacah, and all the Bichrites assembled and followed him there as well. ¹⁵They came and besieged him in Abel Beth-maacah. They built a siege ramp against the city, set against the outer rampart, and all the troops with Joab were battering the wall to bring it down. ¹⁶A wise woman called out from the city, "Listen! Listen! Tell Joab to come here so I can speak with him." ¹⁷He approached her, and the woman said, "Are you Joab?" He said, "I am." She said, "Listen to what your servant has to say." He said, "I am listening." ¹⁸She said, "In former times people used to say, 'Let them inquire at Abel' — and that would settle it. ¹⁹I represent those who are peaceable and faithful in Israel. You are trying to destroy a city — a mother in Israel. Why would you swallow up the LORD's inheritance?" ²⁰Joab answered, "Far from it! Far from it! I have no intention of swallowing up or destroying. ²¹That is not what this is about. A man from the hill country of Ephraim — Sheba son of Bichri is his name — has raised his hand against the king, against David. Hand him over alone, and I will withdraw from the city." The woman said to Joab, "His head will be thrown over the wall to you." ²²The woman went to all the people with her wisdom. They cut off the head of Sheba son of Bichri and threw it to Joab. He blew the ram's horn, and they dispersed from the city, every man to his own tent. Joab returned to Jerusalem, to the king. ²³Joab was over the entire army of Israel. Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and Pelethites. ²⁴Adoram was over the forced labor. Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the court recorder. ²⁵Sheva was the royal scribe. Zadok and Abiathar were the priests. ²⁶And Ira the Jairite was David's priest.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ish beliyya'al* ('man of worthlessness') is the narrator's verdict on Sheba before he speaks a single word. *Beliyya'al* may derive from *beli* ('without') and *ya'al* ('profit, worth'), marking someone as socially destructive. Sheba is a Benjaminite — from Saul's tribe — and his revolt is the last Saulide-adjacent attempt to fracture David's kingdom. The word *chelek* ('share, portion') and *nachalah* ('inheritance') are land-distribution terms: Sheba frames the relationship with David as a failed property deal. The rallying cry *ish le'ohalav* ('every man to his tents') is a military demobilization formula — go home, the campaign is over, we no longer serve this king.
2. The verb *davqu* ('they clung, stuck fast') from the root *d-v-q* is the same word used for a man clinging to his wife in Genesis 2:24 — it implies tenacious, loyal attachment. Judah 'clung' to David while Israel 'went up from after' him (*ya'al me'acharei*), a phrase suggesting military desertion. The split is immediate and clean: one slogan, one trumpet blast, and the northern tribes abandon the king they had just escorted across the Jordan. The geographical note 'from the Jordan to Jerusalem' marks the route of David's return from exile after Absalom's revolt — Judah accompanied him the entire way.
3. The phrase *almanut chayyut* ('widowhood of life' or 'living widowhood') occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible. These women are not widows — David is alive — but they live as if dead to him. The verb *tserurot* ('shut up, confined') from *ts-r-r* means 'bound, restricted, besieged.' David provides food (*vayekhalkelem*) but no presence (*lo va*, 'he did not come in'). The concubines are victims twice over: violated by Absalom as a political statement (16:22), then permanently isolated by David to avoid the disgrace of resuming relations with women his son had publicly taken. The text records their fate without commentary, leaving the reader to weigh the cost.
4. The verb *haz'eq* ('summon, call out, cry aloud') is a military mobilization term. Amasa had been Absalom's commander (17:25), and David had promised him Joab's position to win his defection (19:14). This is Amasa's first assignment as David's new general — and the three-day deadline is tight, suggesting David views Sheba's revolt as an emergency requiring immediate suppression. The command *ve'attah poh amod* ('and you — stand here') means Amasa must personally report back, ensuring accountability.
5. The verb *vayyocher* ('he delayed, lingered') signals failure. Whether Amasa was slow because Judah was reluctant to mobilize, because he was incompetent, or because he was secretly disloyal, the text does not say. The word *mo'ed* ('appointed time, set meeting') is the same word used for Israel's sacred assemblies — a precise, non-negotiable deadline. Amasa's delay will cost him his life: it gives David reason to bypass him and gives Joab the opportunity to intercept him.
6. David bypasses Amasa entirely and turns to Abishai — Joab's brother — rather than Joab himself. The phrase *yera lanu* ('he will do us harm, make things worse for us') expresses David's strategic alarm. The phrase *vehitstil einenu* ('and he will tear out our eye' or 'escape our sight') is vivid: either Sheba will blind them strategically by gaining fortified positions, or he will simply disappear from view. David has learned from Absalom's revolt that delay is fatal. The phrase *avdei adonekha* ('servants of your lord') refers to the royal guard — the professional soldiers always at hand, not the tribal militia Amasa was supposed to gather.
7. The text says David sent Abishai, but 'Joab's men' march out — the command structure is ambiguous and may reflect the reality that these soldiers answered to Joab regardless of who gave the order. The Cherethites and Pelethites (*hakereti vehapeleti*) were David's foreign bodyguard, likely of Aegean or Philistine origin, loyal to the king personally rather than to any tribe. The *gibborim* ('mighty men') are David's veteran elite warriors. This is the standing professional army, not a tribal levy — exactly the force that can deploy instantly without waiting for Amasa's muster.

8. The great stone (ha'even haggedolah) at Gibeon is a known landmark, possibly a sacred standing stone. The detailed description of Joab's clothing and weapon is rare in Hebrew narrative and serves a single purpose: to explain how Joab had a bare sword in hand without appearing threatening. The verb vatippol ('and it fell') describes the sword falling from its sheath — apparently accidentally. Whether this was genuinely accidental or a practiced trick is left to the reader. Joab now has a drawn sword in his left hand while his right hand is free to greet Amasa. The staging is precise and lethal.
9. The greeting hashalom attah achi ('Are you at peace, my brother?') is identical in structure to greetings of friendship and kinship — and Amasa and Joab were in fact cousins (1 Chronicles 2:16-17). Grasping the beard with the right hand to pull someone close for a kiss on the cheek was a standard greeting between equals. Joab's right hand holds the beard; his left hand — the unexpected one — holds the sword that 'fell' from its sheath. The parallel to Judas's kiss of Jesus (Matthew 26:49) is often noted, but the closer Hebrew Bible parallel is Joab's own murder of Abner (2 Samuel 3:27), where he also used deceptive intimacy to kill a rival commander.
10. The phrase lo nishmar bacherev ('he did not guard himself against the sword') suggests Amasa never saw it coming — either because the sword appeared to fall accidentally or because he trusted the fraternal greeting. The word chomesh ('fifth rib' or 'belly, abdomen') is the same strike point Joab used to kill Abner (3:27) and where Rechab and Baanah stabbed Ish-bosheth (4:6) — it is the soft, unarmored area of the torso. The phrase vayyishpokh me'av artsah ('he poured out his innards to the ground') is viscerally graphic. The note velo shanah lo ('he did not repeat it to him') means one thrust was enough. Joab does not pause — he immediately resumes the mission, leaving Amasa bleeding in the road.
11. The soldier's cry is a masterpiece of political manipulation: he pairs Joab's name with David's as if loyalty to one requires loyalty to the other. The phrasing mi asher chafets beYo'av ('whoever delights in Joab') and mi asher leDavid ('whoever belongs to David') makes following Joab identical to serving the king. There is no option given for soldiers who are loyal to David but appalled by Joab's murder. The young man stands over Amasa's corpse (amad alav) — the body becomes a loyalty test. Every soldier who passes must choose: step over the dead commander and follow Joab, or stop.
12. The verb mitgoles ('rolling, wallowing') indicates Amasa was not yet dead — he was convulsing in the road in a pool of his own blood. The word mesillah ('highway, raised road') is the main thoroughfare; every soldier must pass this spot. The detail that kol ha'am amad ('all the people stood still') shows the army grinding to a halt — men cannot simply march past their former commander dying in the road. The pragmatic solution is chilling: drag the body into the field, cover it with a garment, and keep moving. The cloth hides the horror just enough to let the army function. The verb vayyasev ('he turned aside, removed') and vayyashlekh ('he threw') are rough, utilitarian verbs — there is no dignity in this disposal.
13. The verb hogah ('was removed, was taken away') is a passive form — Amasa is now an obstacle cleared from a path, not a person. The transition from verse 12 to verse 13 is brutally efficient: the body is moved, the army resumes, the pursuit continues. Joab has eliminated his rival, reasserted command, and lost no operational momentum. The narrator records this sequence without moral commentary, allowing the reader to feel the full weight of what has just happened.
14. The subject shifts to Sheba's movements. Abel Beth-maacah is a city in the far north of Israel, near Dan, close to the border with Aram. The reading hakkeBerim ('the Bichrites') follows the Qere and many manuscripts, identifying them as Sheba's clan. Some read hakkeBerim as 'the Berites,' an otherwise unknown group. Sheba has fled to the furthest point in Israel, gathering his kinsmen along the way. The phrase vayyiqqahalu vayyavo'u af acharav ('they assembled and came in after him too') suggests Sheba attracted a following, though the scale is unclear.
15. The verb vayyatsuru ('they besieged') from ts-v-r indicates a full military encirclement. The solelah ('siege ramp, earthen mound') was a standard assault technique — piling earth against the wall to allow troops to reach the top. The chel is the outer fortification wall or rampart. The verb mashchitim ('were destroying, ruining') from sh-ch-t indicates the wall was being actively demolished. Joab is prepared to destroy an Israelite city to reach one man — the same calculus a wise woman is about to challenge.
16. The phrase ishah chakhamah ('a wise woman') is a recognized social role in ancient Israel, not merely a compliment. Wise women functioned as community leaders, mediators, and counselors — Tekoa also had a 'wise woman' David consulted (14:2). She speaks from the wall, meaning she has enough standing to command attention from both the defenders and the besiegers. The doubled imperative shim'u shim'u ('hear, hear!') demands attention. She does not beg — she summons Joab to negotiate.
17. The exchange is terse and formal. She confirms his identity — she will not waste her argument on a subordinate. Her self-designation as amatekha ('your female servant') is diplomatic courtesy, not submission; she is about to lecture him. Joab's response shomea anokhi ('I am listening') uses the emphatic pronoun anokhi rather than the simple ani, granting her the floor. The brevity of this exchange — four short lines of dialogue — contrasts with the lengthy violence that preceded it. Words are about to accomplish what swords could not.
18. The woman invokes a proverb or saying known in her region: Abel was a city famous for its wisdom tradition, a place where disputes were resolved through counsel rather than combat. The infinitive absolute construction dabber yedabberu ('they would surely speak') and sha'ol yish'alu ('they would surely inquire') emphasizes the established, long-standing nature of this tradition. The verb hetammu ('they settled, completed, finished') from t-m-m means the matter was resolved — brought to completion. She is telling Joab that he is besieging a city whose very identity is about solving problems peacefully.
19. The phrase shelumei emunei Yisra'el ('the peaceable and faithful of Israel') may describe the woman herself or the city's population. The word em ('mother') applied to a city is striking — Abel is not just a settlement but a generative center, a place from which wisdom and tradition flow to surrounding communities. The verb tivla ('you would swallow') from b-l-' is the language of total consumption — Joab would devour what belongs to God. The phrase nachalat YHWH ('the LORD's inheritance') reframes the entire siege: this is not Joab's city to destroy. It belongs to God, and Joab is accountable for what he does to it.

- 20.** The doubled *chalilah chalilah* ('far be it, far be it') is an emphatic oath of denial. Joab — who has just murdered Amasa in cold blood and was battering down the city wall — protests that destruction is the furthest thing from his mind. The verbs *avalla* ('I would swallow') and *ashchit* ('I would destroy') echo the woman's own language back to her. Whether Joab is sincere or merely pragmatic is ambiguous: he may genuinely want only Sheba, or he may simply recognize that the woman has given him a face-saving way to end the siege. Either way, her argument has shifted the negotiation.
- 21.** Joab's phrase *nasa yado bammeklek* ('he raised his hand against the king') is the language of armed rebellion. Joab names David twice — *hammeklek beDavid* ('the king, David') — to underscore the gravity of the treason. The demand *tenu oto levaddo* ('give him over, him alone') limits the scope: one man in exchange for the entire city. The woman's response is immediate and unflinching: *hinneh ro'sho mushlakh elekha* ('Look — his head will be thrown to you'). She does not negotiate terms. She does not ask for time to consult. She guarantees the outcome in a single sentence. The word *mushlakh* ('thrown, cast') is blunt — this will not be a ceremonial handover.
- 22.** The phrase *bechokhmata* ('with her wisdom') is the narrator's verdict: what saved the city was not military strength but one woman's wisdom. The verb *vayyikhrutu* ('they cut off') shows the city acted collectively — they accepted the woman's counsel and executed Sheba. The sequence is rapid: head thrown, trumpet blown, army dispersed. The phrase *ish le'ohalav* ('every man to his tent') echoes Sheba's original rallying cry in verse 1 — there it was a cry of secession; here it is a return to peace. The chapter ends where David's power structures always converge: Joab returning to the king, indispensable and uncontrollable.
- 23.** The administrative list begins with Joab's title restored: he is once again officially over the entire army. Amasa is dead, and no further attempt to replace Joab is recorded. Benaiah son of Jehoiada commands the foreign bodyguard — the same Benaiah who will later execute Joab at Solomon's command (1 Kings 2:34). The Cherethites and Pelethites are David's personal guard, distinct from the tribal army.
- 24.** Adoram (also called Adoniram, 1 Kings 4:6) oversaw the *mas* — forced labor conscription. This is a new position not found in the earlier list of David's officials (8:16-18), suggesting the administration has expanded. Forced labor will become one of the primary grievances that splits the kingdom under Rehoboam (1 Kings 12:18), and Adoram himself will be stoned to death by the northern tribes in that revolt. Jehoshaphat the recorder (*mazkir*, literally 'the one who causes to remember') served as royal herald and keeper of state records.
- 25.** Sheva (also spelled Seraiah in 8:17 and Shisha in 1 Kings 4:3) is the royal *sofer* — the scribe responsible for official correspondence and state documents. The variation in spelling across parallel lists suggests either textual corruption or a foreign name that Hebrew scribes transliterated differently. Zadok and Abiathar serve as co-priests, representing the two legitimate priestly lines. Abiathar descends from Eli's line through Ahimelech; Zadok's lineage is debated but later tradition traces him to Eleazar son of Aaron. Their partnership will fracture at the end of David's reign when Abiathar supports Adonijah and Zadok supports Solomon (1 Kings 1:7-8).
- 26.** The final entry is puzzling. Ira the Jairite is called *kohen leDavid* ('priest to David'), yet he is not from a Levitical family — the Jairites are connected to Manasseh (Numbers 32:41). The term *kohen* here likely means 'personal advisor' or 'chief minister' rather than 'priest' in the sacrificial sense, similar to how David's sons are called *kohanim* in 8:18. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 18:17 renders this as 'chief officials at the king's side.' This position replaces David's own sons in the earlier list, possibly reflecting the decimation of the royal family through Amnon's murder, Absalom's revolt, and the resulting instability.

21

Summary: *A famine lasting three years strikes Israel, and when David seeks the LORD, he learns it is because of Saul's bloodguilt against the Gibeonites -- a people Israel had sworn by oath to protect. David asks the Gibeonites what will make atonement, and they demand seven of Saul's male descendants. David hands them over but spares Mephibosheth son of Jonathan because of his covenant oath. The seven are executed and exposed on a hill before the LORD. Rizpah daughter of Aiah, mother of two of the dead, keeps a harrowing vigil over the bodies, driving away birds and beasts from the start of barley harvest until the rains come. When David hears of her faithfulness, he retrieves the bones of Saul and Jonathan from Jabesh-gilead, gathers the bones of the seven executed men, and buries them all in the tomb of Kish in the land of Benjamin. God responds to the plea for the land. The chapter closes with four accounts of Philistine warriors of enormous stature who are killed by David's men, including one with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Rizpah's vigil is one of the most haunting scenes in the Hebrew Bible. She is a concubine with no political power, yet her silent, relentless protection of the dead shames the king into action. The narrator gives no speech to Rizpah -- she simply spreads sackcloth on the rock and stays. Her endurance through months of exposure, fending off vultures by day and jackals by night, is an act of faithful love that the text allows to speak entirely through action. David's response -- recovering Saul's and Jonathan's bones from Jabesh-gilead and burying them properly alongside the seven -- is prompted not by prophetic word or political calculation but by a grieving mother's refusal to let the dead be dishonored. The chapter also raises the deeply uncomfortable question of*

collective punishment: seven men die for Saul's sin against the Gibeonites, and the text presents God as accepting this resolution. The tension between corporate guilt and individual justice runs throughout without easy resolution. The Philistine giant-killer episodes at the chapter's end form an appendix to the David story, cataloguing warriors who finished what David started against Goliath -- the era of the giants is ending.

Translation Friction: The primary friction is theological: how does the execution of Saul's descendants satisfy divine justice? The text says the famine came because of Saul's bloodguilt (dam, 'blood') against the Gibeonites, and the Gibeonites' demand for seven men to be 'hanged before the LORD' (hoqa'nu, a rare verb meaning to expose or impale) raises questions about human sacrifice, vicarious punishment, and the limits of covenant obligation. The verb yaqa (Hiphil, hoqi'anu) in verse 6 is notoriously difficult -- it may mean 'to hang, to expose, to impale, to dislocate' -- and its exact mode of execution is uncertain. We render it as 'execute and expose' to capture the dual sense of killing and public display. The Gibeonite covenant from Joshua 9 is the legal foundation: Saul violated a sworn oath, and blood-debt requires blood-payment. Another friction point: David's exemption of Mephibosheth 'because of the oath of the LORD between them' (verse 7) shows covenant loyalty operating alongside a system of corporate accountability -- David honors one oath (to Jonathan) while fulfilling another (to the Gibeonites). The relationship between these competing obligations is left unresolved.

Connections: The Gibeonite covenant from Joshua 9:3-27 is the backstory -- Israel swore an oath to let the Gibeonites live, and Saul violated it. The execution of Saul's descendants connects back to the warning in 1 Samuel 2:31-33 that Eli's house would be cut off, establishing a pattern where dynastic sin brings dynastic consequences. David's protection of Mephibosheth echoes his oath to Jonathan in 1 Samuel 20:14-17 and 2 Samuel 9, where he showed faithful love to Jonathan's son. Rizpah appeared earlier in 2 Samuel 3:7, where Abner's taking of her provoked a crisis with Ish-bosheth -- she is consistently a figure caught in the machinery of royal politics. The recovery of Saul's and Jonathan's bones from Jabesh-gilead completes the narrative arc begun in 1 Samuel 31:11-13, where the men of Jabesh rescued the bodies from the wall of Beth-shan. The Philistine giant-killers in verses 15-22 connect to the Goliath narrative in 1 Samuel 17 and to the phrase 'born to the raphah' (the giant), creating a frame around David's military career: it began with one giant and ends with four.

¹There was a famine during David's reign -- three years, one year after another. David sought the face of the LORD, and the LORD said, "It is because of Saul and his house of bloodshed, because he put the Gibeonites to death." ²So the king summoned the Gibeonites and spoke with them. (Now the Gibeonites were not Israelites but survivors of the Amorites, and the Israelites had sworn an oath to them. But Saul had tried to strike them down in his zeal for the people of Israel and Judah.) ³David said to the Gibeonites, "What can I do for you? How can I make atonement, so that you will bless the LORD's inheritance?" ⁴The Gibeonites said to him, "Our dispute with Saul and his house is not about silver or gold, and it is not for us to put anyone in Israel to death." David said, "Whatever you say, I will do for you." ⁵They said to the king, "The man who consumed us and who plotted against us so that we would be wiped out, with no foothold anywhere in the territory of Israel -- ⁶let seven men from among his descendants be given to us, and we will execute and expose them before the LORD at Gibeah of Saul, the LORD's chosen one." The king said, "I will give them." ⁷But the king spared Mephibosheth son of Jonathan son of Saul, because of the oath before the LORD that was between them -- between David and Jonathan son of Saul. ⁸The king took the two sons of Rizpah daughter of Aiah, whom she had borne to Saul -- Armoni and Mephibosheth -- and the five sons of Michal daughter of Saul, whom she had borne to Adriel son of Barzillai the Meholathite. ⁹He handed them over to the Gibeonites, and they executed and exposed them on the hill before the LORD. The seven of them fell together. They were put to death in the first days of harvest, at the start of the barley harvest. ¹⁰Rizpah daughter of Aiah took sackcloth and spread it out for herself on the rock. From the start of harvest until rain poured down on them from the sky, she did not allow the birds of the sky to settle on the bodies by day or the wild animals to come near by night. ¹¹When David was told what Rizpah daughter of Aiah, Saul's concubine, had done, ¹²David went and retrieved the bones of Saul and the bones of his son Jonathan from the leaders of Jabesh-gilead, who had taken them from the public square of Beth-shan, where the Philistines had hung them on the day the Philistines struck down Saul on Gilboa. ¹³He brought the bones of Saul and the bones of his son Jonathan up from there, and they also gathered the bones of those who had been executed and exposed. ¹⁴They buried the bones of Saul and his son Jonathan in the land of Benjamin, at Zela, in the tomb of his father

Kish. They did everything the king commanded. And after that, God responded to the plea for the land. ¹⁵The Philistines went to war against Israel again. David went down with his men and fought the Philistines, and David grew exhausted. ¹⁶Ishbi-benob, one of the descendants of the Raphah, whose bronze spearhead weighed three hundred shekels and who was strapped with a new weapon, declared he would strike David down. ¹⁷But Abishai son of Zeruiah came to his aid, struck the Philistine, and killed him. Then David's men swore an oath to him: "You must never go out with us to battle again -- you must not extinguish the lamp of Israel." ¹⁸After this, there was another battle with the Philistines at Gob. On that occasion Sibbecai the Hushathite struck down Saph, who was one of the descendants of the Raphah. ¹⁹There was yet another battle with the Philistines at Gob, and Elhanan son of Jaare-oregim the Bethlehemite struck down Goliath the Gittite, whose spear shaft was like a weaver's beam. ²⁰There was still another battle, at Gath. A man of enormous size was there who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot -- twenty-four in all. He too was descended from the Raphah. ²¹When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's brother, struck him down. ²²These four were all descended from the Raphah in Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his men.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *shanah acharei shanah* ('year after year') emphasizes the relentless, cumulative nature of the famine -- this was not a single bad harvest but a sustained crisis that finally drove David to inquire of the LORD. The expression *beit ha-damim* ('house of bloodshed' or 'bloodstained house') is a compound noun marking Saul's dynasty with the stain of unprovoked violence. The Gibeonites were a Hivite people who secured a peace treaty with Israel through deception (Joshua 9), but once the oath was sworn, it was binding. Saul's attack on them -- unrecorded elsewhere in the narrative -- violated this ancient covenant, and the land itself bears the consequence.
2. The narrator interrupts the dialogue with a parenthetical explanation, signaling that the original audience needed reminding about who the Gibeonites were and why this mattered. The phrase *yeter ha-Emori* ('remnant of the Amorites') identifies them as indigenous Canaanite inhabitants -- 'Amorite' is used broadly here for pre-Israelite peoples. The critical legal fact is *nishbe'u lahem* ('they had sworn to them'): the oath was binding regardless of how it was obtained (Joshua 9). Saul's *qin'ah* ('zeal') is presented ambiguously -- it may have been genuine nationalistic fervor or a pretext for ethnic violence. Either way, the narrator frames it as a violation of sworn covenant.
3. David's question is remarkably open-ended -- he does not propose terms but asks the wronged party to name their price. The verb *kipper* ('to atone') carries heavy ritual weight: it is the word used for the high priest's actions on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16) and for ransom payments that cover bloodguilt (Exodus 30:15-16). David treats the Gibeonite grievance as a sacred debt requiring formal expiation. The phrase *nachalat YHWH* ('inheritance of the LORD') refers to the people and land of Israel -- the famine affects the entire covenant community, and only the Gibeonites' satisfaction can lift it.
4. The Gibeonites' first statement rejects monetary compensation -- *ein li kesef ve-zahav* ('there is no silver or gold for me') means this is not a debt that money can settle. Their second statement, *ein lanu ish lehamit be-Yisra'el* ('it is not for us to kill a man in Israel'), acknowledges their limited standing: as non-Israelites they cannot execute an Israelite on their own authority. They are positioning David to offer what they cannot demand. David's response -- *mah attem omrim e'eseh lakhem* ('whatever you say I will do for you') -- is an extraordinary blank check from a king, effectively ceding judicial authority to a subject people.
5. The Gibeonites describe Saul with two verbs: *killanu* ('he consumed us, he finished us off') from *kalah*, meaning total destruction, and *dimmah lanu* ('he plotted against us, he devised for us') from *damah*, suggesting deliberate planning rather than spontaneous violence. The phrase *nishmadnu mehityatsev* ('we would be annihilated from having a standing place') reveals the scope of Saul's campaign: it was not a single incident but an attempt at complete elimination. The word *hityatsev* ('to station oneself, to have standing') carries both physical and legal connotations -- Saul wanted to remove the Gibeonites from any recognized place in Israel's territory.
6. The verb *hoqa'nu* (Hiphil of *yaqa*) is one of the most debated in the Hebrew Bible. Its precise meaning is uncertain -- proposals include 'to hang, to impale, to dislocate, to expose' -- but the context demands a public execution followed by display of the bodies. The phrase *la-YHWH* ('before the LORD') gives the act a ritual dimension: this is not mere revenge but a sacral reckoning performed in the LORD's presence. The location, *giv'at Sha'ul* ('Gibeath of Saul'), is Saul's own hometown and capital -- the execution takes place on his home ground. The phrase *bechir YHWH* ('the LORD's chosen one') is deeply ironic: it could refer to Saul (once chosen, now rejected) or to David. The ambiguity stings either way. David's reply -- *ani etten* ('I myself will give them') -- is three words of devastating finality.
7. The verb *chamal* ('to spare, to have compassion') indicates emotional restraint as much as legal exemption -- David felt the pull to include Mephibosheth but held back because of the oath. The threefold identification -- Mephibosheth son of Jonathan son of Saul -- underscores the tension: Mephibosheth is simultaneously a member of the guilty house and a beneficiary of David's covenant with Jonathan. The phrase *shevuat YHWH* ('the oath of the LORD') elevates the agreement between David and Jonathan beyond personal friendship into the realm of sacred obligation. This oath was established in 1 Samuel 20:42 and already honored in 2 Samuel 9 when David brought Mephibosheth to his table.

8. This verse names the seven: two sons of Rizpah (Saul's concubine) and five sons attributed to Michal. The textual problem is significant: 1 Samuel 18:19 says Adriel married Merab, not Michal, and 2 Samuel 6:23 says Michal died childless. Many Hebrew manuscripts and the Syriac Peshitta read 'Merab' here instead of 'Michal,' and this is likely the original reading. We retain 'Michal' as it stands in the Masoretic Text but note the probable textual corruption. The Meholahite designation connects Adriel to Abel-meholah, in the Jordan Valley. Note that this Mephibosheth (son of Rizpah) is a different person from the Mephibosheth (son of Jonathan) spared in verse 7.
9. The phrase vayyippelu shiv'atam yachad ('the seven of them fell together') uses naphal ('to fall') -- the same verb used for Saul's death by falling on his sword in 1 Samuel 31:4. Saul's descendants fall just as he fell. The timing -- techillat qetsir se'orim ('the beginning of barley harvest') -- places the execution in late April or early May, at the start of the dry season. This is significant because the bodies will be exposed through the entire summer until the early rains come (verse 10), meaning Rizpah's vigil will last months. The barley harvest also connects to the book of Ruth (Ruth 1:22), creating an intertextual link between two very different stories set in the same season.
10. This is one of the most powerful images in all of Scripture, conveyed entirely without dialogue. Rizpah performs three actions: she takes sackcloth (the garment of mourning and protest), she spreads it on the rock (making the execution site her dwelling), and she keeps vigil (driving off scavengers). The phrase mittechillat qatsir ad nittakh mayim alehem min ha-shamayim ('from the start of harvest until water was poured on them from the sky') spans from late April to the early rains in October or November -- potentially five to six months of continuous vigil. The verb nittakh ('was poured out') suggests a heavy, decisive rain, perhaps understood as a sign that God had accepted the atonement and ended the drought-famine. Rizpah's endurance is staggering: she guards decomposing bodies against vultures during the heat of day and against jackals and wild dogs through the night, for months, alone, with no authority to change anything -- only the power to refuse to abandon the dead.
11. The passive vayyuggad ('it was told') leaves the informant unnamed -- someone brought word to David of Rizpah's vigil. The narrator identifies her one final time as pilegesh Sha'ul ('Saul's concubine'), reminding the reader of her lowly status: she was not a wife but a secondary partner, with minimal standing in the royal household. Yet her act of faithfulness is what moves the king to act. The verse is a hinge -- everything that follows (the recovery of Saul's and Jonathan's bones, the proper burial) flows from David's learning of Rizpah's vigil.
12. This verse reaches back to 1 Samuel 31:11-13, completing an arc that spans two books. The men of Jabesh-gilead had conducted a daring nighttime raid to recover the bodies of Saul and his sons from the wall of Beth-shan, burned them, and buried the bones under a tamarisk tree. The verb ganvu ('they stole') characterizes their act as a covert operation -- they took what the Philistines considered war trophies. David now reclaims these bones for a royal burial in the ancestral tomb. The phrase ba'alei Yavesh Gil'ad ('the lords/citizens of Jabesh-gilead') uses ba'alim in its civic sense of leading citizens or elders. Beth-shan (later Scythopolis) sat at the junction of the Jezreel and Jordan Valleys -- a strategic Philistine outpost where they displayed conquered enemies.
13. The verb vayya'al ('he brought up') carries the sense of elevation -- both physical (transporting bones from the Jordan Valley up to the Benjamin hill country) and honorific (restoring dignity to the dead). The phrase ha-muqa'im ('those who had been exposed/executed') uses the passive participle of the same rare verb yaqa from verse 6, linking the seven executed descendants back to the Gibeonite demand. David's act encompasses both sets of remains: the old bones of Saul and Jonathan, and the recently exposed bones of the seven. All of Saul's dead are gathered together.
14. The burial at Zela (tsela, a town in Benjamin mentioned in Joshua 18:28) in the tomb of Kish brings Saul home to his father's grave -- a final act of dynastic honor. The phrase vayye'ater Elohim la-arets ('God was entreated for the land') is the theological resolution of the entire chapter: the famine ends because God accepts the atonement. The verb atar (Niphal, 'to be entreated, to let oneself be prevailed upon') implies that God was moved by the totality of what happened -- the Gibeonite justice, Rizpah's vigil, David's act of honorable burial. The word acharei-khen ('after that') marks the turning point: everything before was crisis, everything after is restoration.
15. The narrative shifts abruptly from the Gibeonite episode to a collection of Philistine battle accounts. The verb vayya'af ('he grew faint, he was exhausted') signals David's physical decline -- the giant-killer of chapter 17 is now aging and vulnerable. This detail sets up the near-death experience in the next verse and the decision in verse 17 that David must no longer go into battle. The phrase vayyered David ('David went down') indicates descent from the hill country to the Philistine lowlands.
16. The name Yishbo be-Nov may mean 'his dwelling is in Nob' or may be a corrupted personal name -- the text is difficult. The phrase bilidei ha-Raphah ('among the born-ones of the Raphah') identifies him as descended from the Raphah, an ancient race of giants (Rephaim). His spear weighs three hundred shekels of bronze (roughly seven to eight pounds for the head alone), which is half the weight of Goliath's spear (1 Samuel 17:7, at six hundred shekels of iron). The word chadashah ('new') modifies his weapon -- he came equipped for the kill. The verb amar ('he said, he declared') with the infinitive leha-kkot ('to strike') indicates stated intention: this warrior publicly announced he would kill the aging king.
17. Abishai, David's nephew and one of his most fierce warriors, rescues the king from the giant. The aftermath is a solemn oath: David's men forbid him from further combat. The phrase ner Yisra'el ('the lamp of Israel') is a metaphor for the king as the source of national life and hope. If David dies, the light goes out for the entire nation. The image of a lamp (ner) connects to the promise of a perpetual 'lamp' for David's dynasty (1 Kings 11:36, 15:4, 2 Kings 8:19) -- the men intuitively grasp that David's life is not his own but belongs to the nation and to the covenant future. The verb tekhabe'h ('you will extinguish') treats David's death in battle as an act that would quench the nation's fire.
18. Gob is an otherwise unknown location, possibly a corruption of Gath or a small settlement in the Shephelah. Sibbecai (also spelled Sibbechai) the Hushathite was one of David's elite warriors, listed among the Thirty in 1 Chronicles 11:29. The Hushathite designation connects him to Hushah, a town in Judah. Saph (called Sippai in 1 Chronicles 20:4) is another descendant of the Raphah -- the giant clan. Each of these battle notices follows the same pattern: a Philistine giant is named, his lineage from the Raphah is noted, and an Israelite warrior kills him.

- 19.** This is one of the most discussed verses in Samuel. The Hebrew states plainly that Elhanan killed Goliath the Gittite, yet 1 Samuel 17 credits David with that feat. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 20:5 harmonizes by reading 'Elhanan son of Jair struck down Lahmi the brother of Goliath.' The KJV inserts 'the brother of' to match Chronicles, but the Hebrew of 2 Samuel has no such phrase. Several explanations have been proposed: (1) Elhanan and David are the same person (Elhanan being David's birth name); (2) this is a different Goliath; (3) the text of Chronicles preserves the original and Samuel is corrupted; (4) there were multiple giant warriors called 'Goliath' as a title. The phrase *ya'arei oregim* ('forests of weavers') is likely a textual corruption -- Chronicles reads simply *ya'ir* ('Jair'). The spear 'like a weaver's beam' (*kimenor oregim*) matches the description of Goliath's spear in 1 Samuel 17:7, reinforcing the connection.
- 20.** The location shifts to Gath itself, the Philistine city most associated with giants (it was Goliath's hometown). The unnamed warrior's polydactyly -- six digits on each extremity, twenty-four total -- is reported as a physical marker of his giant lineage. The condition (hexadactyly) is a real genetic trait, and its mention here may preserve an authentic detail about the Raphah clan. The phrase *ish madon* (or *middin/madin*) is textually uncertain; it may mean 'a man of strife/contention' or be a corruption of *middah* ('measure, stature'). The parallel in 1 Chronicles 20:6 reads *ish middah* ('a man of great size'). The refrain *gam hu yullad le-ha-Raphah* ('he too was born to the Raphah') links all four giant episodes together.
- 21.** The verb *charaph* ('to taunt, to defy, to reproach') is the same word used for Goliath's defiance of Israel in 1 Samuel 17:10, 25, 26, 36, 45. The pattern repeats: a giant taunts Israel, and an Israelite champion answers. Jonathan (Yehonatan) son of Shimeah (also called Shammah in 1 Samuel 16:9) is David's nephew -- the giant-killing vocation has passed to the next generation. The name Jonathan ('the LORD has given') is the same as Saul's son Jonathan, creating a quiet echo: the name that belonged to David's beloved covenant-brother now belongs to a warrior in David's family who carries on the fight against Philistine giants.
- 22.** The summary verse ties all four giant episodes together with a concluding formula. The phrase *yulledu le-ha-Raphah be-Gat* ('they were born to the Raphah in Gath') confirms that Gath was the stronghold of this giant clan. The final phrase -- *vayyipellu ve-yad David u-ve-yad avadav* ('they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants') -- credits David even though his men did most of the actual killing. This is royal attribution: the king's victories include his warriors' victories. The verb *naphal* ('they fell') echoes throughout the chapter: Saul's seven descendants fell (verse 9) and now the four Philistine giants fall. The era of the giants ends not with a single heroic duel but with a team effort, as David's generation of warriors completes the work he began as a shepherd boy with a sling.

22

Summary: *David speaks this song to the LORD on the day the LORD delivers him from all his enemies and from the hand of Saul. The psalm moves through four great movements: a declaration of the LORD as fortress and deliverer (vv. 1-4), a dramatic theophany in which God descends through earthquake, storm, and fire to rescue David from death (vv. 5-20), a meditation on the LORD's justice in rewarding the faithful and humbling the proud (vv. 21-30), and a triumphant celebration of God-given military victory in which David crushes his enemies and is established as head of the nations (vv. 31-51). The poem closes with a declaration that the LORD shows faithful love to His anointed, to David and his offspring forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the longest poem attributed to David in the historical books, and it exists in a near-parallel version as Psalm 18, with dozens of small textual variations between the two witnesses. Its placement near the end of 2 Samuel is architecturally deliberate: the book that opened with David's lament over Saul's death (chapter 1) closes with David's song of triumph over all his enemies. The theophany section (vv. 8-16) is among the most physically violent depictions of God in the Hebrew Bible — the earth quakes, the foundations of heaven tremble, smoke rises from God's nostrils, consuming fire from His mouth, He rides a cherub through the sky, darkness is His pavilion, and His voice thunders through the clouds. This is not metaphor softened by theological abstraction; it is the raw, cosmic imagery of a warrior-God who tears open creation to reach one man in distress. The poem's final verse (v. 51) introduces the word *mashiach* ('anointed one') in its most concentrated theological context: the LORD who performs great deliverances for His king, who shows *chesed* to His anointed, to David and his seed *ad olam* — forever. This is the Davidic covenant rendered as doxology.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 2 Samuel 22 and Psalm 18 generates significant textual questions. Over eighty differences exist between the two versions, ranging from single-letter variants to different words entirely. For example, verse 12 here reads *chashrat mayim* ('thick masses of water') where Psalm 18:12 reads *cheshkat mayim* ('darkness of water'). Verse 34 here has 'He sets me on my high places' where Psalm 18:34 has the same but with a different verbal form. Neither version is clearly 'original' — they appear to be two witnesses to a poem that circulated in slightly different forms. A theological friction concerns the boldness of verses 21-25, where David claims the LORD rewarded him 'according to my righteousness'*

and 'according to the cleanness of my hands.' Placed in the larger narrative of 2 Samuel — after the Bathsheba affair, the murder of Uriah, and the disintegration of David's household — this claim seems staggering. The poem may predate those events, or it may reflect David's understanding that divine discipline does not erase the covenant relationship, or the narrator may intend the juxtaposition to be uncomfortable. We render the claim faithfully and let the canonical placement create its own tension.

Connections: The poem connects backward to Hannah's song in 1 Samuel 2:1-10, which also celebrates God as a rock, a deliverer of the weak, and the one who guards the feet of His faithful. Hannah's closing line — 'He will give strength to His king and exalt the horn of His anointed' — is answered by David's closing line about the LORD showing chesed to His mashiach. The theophany echoes Sinai (Exodus 19:16-18), the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:1-18), and Deborah's song (Judges 5:4-5), placing David's deliverance in the same cosmic category as the Exodus and the Conquest. The claim of righteousness in verses 21-25 connects to the psalmic theology of the tsaddiq, the righteous sufferer who appeals to God's justice (Psalm 7:8, 17:1-5). The final verse's reference to David's 'seed forever' points forward to the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16 and ultimately to the messianic hope that the anointed son of David will reign without end.

¹David spoke the words of this song to the LORD
on the day the LORD rescued him
from the grasp of all his enemies
and from the grasp of Saul.

²He said:
The LORD is my rock, my fortress,
and my rescuer.

³God is my rock — I take refuge in Him.
My shield, the horn of my deliverance,
my stronghold and my place of escape,
my deliverer — You save me from violence.

⁴I call on the LORD — the one worthy of praise —
and I am delivered from my enemies.

⁵For the breakers of death surrounded me,
the torrents of destruction terrified me.

⁶The cords of Sheol wrapped around me,
the snares of death confronted me.

⁷In my distress I called on the LORD,
to my God I cried out.
From His temple He heard my voice,
and my cry for help reached His ears.

⁸Then the earth reeled and shook,
the foundations of heaven trembled —
they quaked because He was furious.

⁹Smoke rose from His nostrils,
consuming fire from His mouth —
coals blazed out from Him.

¹⁰He bent the heavens and came down,
thick darkness beneath His feet.

¹¹He rode on a cherub and flew,
He appeared on the wings of the wind.

¹²He made darkness His shelter all around Him —
thick masses of water, dense clouds of the sky.

¹³From the radiance before Him
coals of fire blazed.

¹⁴The LORD thundered from heaven,
the Most High made His voice resound.

¹⁵He sent out arrows and scattered them,
lightning — and threw them into panic.

¹⁶The channels of the sea were laid bare,
the foundations of the world were exposed
at the LORD's rebuke,
at the blast of breath from His nostrils.

¹⁷He reached down from on high and took hold of me,
He drew me out of deep waters.

¹⁸He rescued me from my powerful enemy,
from those who hated me —
for they were too strong for me.

¹⁹They confronted me on the day of my disaster,
but the LORD was my support.

²⁰He brought me out into open ground,
He set me free — because He delighted in me.

²¹The LORD dealt with me according to my righteousness,
according to the cleanness of my hands He repaid me.

²²For I have kept the ways of the LORD
and have not turned in wickedness from my God.

²³For all His judgments are before me,
and from His statutes I have not turned aside.

²⁴I was blameless before Him
and guarded myself from my iniquity.

²⁵So the LORD repaid me according to my righteousness,
according to my cleanness before His eyes.

²⁶With the faithful, You show Yourself faithful,
with the blameless warrior, You show Yourself blameless.

²⁷With the pure, You show Yourself pure,
but with the twisted, You show Yourself shrewd.

²⁸You save a humble people,
but Your eyes are on the proud — to bring them low.

²⁹For You are my lamp, LORD,
and the LORD lights up my darkness.

³⁰For with You I can charge a raiding band,
with my God I can leap over a wall.

³¹As for God — His way is perfect.
The word of the LORD is tested and true.
He is a shield to all who take refuge in Him.

³²For who is God besides the LORD?
And who is a rock besides our God?

³³God is my strong refuge,
and He makes my way blameless.

³⁴He makes my feet like the feet of a deer
and sets me on the heights.

³⁵He trains my hands for war
so that my arms can bend a bow of bronze.

³⁶You have given me the shield of Your deliverance,
and Your willingness to answer has made me great.

³⁷You widen the path beneath my stride
so that my ankles do not give way.

³⁸I pursued my enemies and destroyed them,
and did not turn back until I had finished them.

³⁹I consumed them, I crushed them — they could not rise.
They fell beneath my feet.

⁴⁰You girded me with strength for battle,
You brought my attackers to their knees beneath me.

⁴¹You made my enemies turn their backs to me,
and those who hated me — I silenced them.

⁴²They cried for help, but there was no one to save them —
even to the LORD, but He did not answer them.

⁴³I ground them fine as the dust of the earth,
like mud in the streets I crushed and stamped them flat.

⁴⁴You delivered me from the conflicts of my own people,
You kept me as head of the nations.
A people I had not known now serve me.

⁴⁵Foreigners cringe before me —
at the mere hearing of my name, they obey me.

⁴⁶Foreigners wither away
and come trembling from their strongholds.

⁴⁷The LORD lives! Blessed be my rock!
Exalted be God, the rock of my deliverance!

⁴⁸God — the one who grants me vindication
and brings peoples down beneath me.

⁴⁹He brings me out from my enemies.
You lift me high above those who rise against me,
from the man of violence You rescue me.

⁵⁰Therefore I will praise You, LORD, among the nations,
and I will sing to Your name.

⁵¹A tower of deliverance for His king —
He shows faithful love to His anointed,
to David and his offspring forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription uses the verb *hitsil* ('rescued, delivered') from the Hiphil of *natsal*, one of the primary Hebrew verbs for divine deliverance. The phrase *mikkaf kol oyevav* ('from the palm/grasp of all his enemies') uses *kaf* ('palm of the hand'), suggesting enemies who had physically seized or nearly seized him. Saul is named separately after 'all his enemies,' simultaneously including him among David's enemies and singling him out as the most significant threat. The placement of this poem at the end of 2 Samuel, after the narrative of David's entire reign, frames the song as a retrospective over an entire life of divine protection.
2. Three metaphors open the psalm in rapid succession. *Sal'i* ('my rock') uses *sela*, the massive cliff-face or crag that provides refuge — not a small stone but an immovable geological formation. *Metsudati* ('my fortress') derives from the root *tsud* and denotes a mountain stronghold, the kind of fortified position David occupied in the wilderness of En-gedi and the stronghold of Adullam. *Mefalti-li* ('my rescuer') comes from *palat* ('to escape, to deliver'), giving the sense of one who provides an escape route. All three images are drawn from David's fugitive years — he knows what it means to need a rock to hide behind, a fortress to shelter in, and a way of escape when surrounded.
3. The avalanche of metaphors continues: *tsuri* ('my rock,' here using *tsur* rather than *sela* — a synonym emphasizing hardness and permanence), *magini* ('my shield'), *qeren yish'i* ('the horn of my deliverance,' where the horn is a symbol of power and the raised horn of a fighting bull), *misgabbi* ('my high retreat, my secure height'), *menuši* ('my place of escape'), and *moshi'i* ('my deliverer'). Seven titles in two verses. The shift from third person ('in Him') to second person ('You save me') is characteristic of psalmic prayer — David moves from proclamation about God to direct address to God. The word *chamas* ('violence') refers to lawless, predatory aggression — the violence of those who attack without just cause.
4. The verse establishes the psalm's cause-and-effect theology: calling on the LORD results in deliverance. The passive participle *mehullal* ('worthy of praise, praised') from the root *halal* establishes that the LORD's praiseworthiness is not contingent on any single act — He is inherently worthy. The verb *ivvashe'a* ('I am delivered') is a Niphal imperfect of *yasha*, conveying ongoing or habitual deliverance, not a single past event. David is stating a principle that governs his entire life: when I call, He saves.
5. The imagery shifts abruptly from fortress metaphors to drowning. *Mishberei mavet* ('breakers of death') uses *mishbar*, the crashing wave that breaks over a swimmer, combined with *mavet* ('death') — death is a sea whose waves crash over the sufferer. *Nachalei veliyya'al* ('torrents of beliyya'al') uses

nachal, the flash-flood wadi that fills without warning and sweeps everything away. The word beliyya'al is often rendered 'worthlessness' or 'wickedness,' but here it functions as a near-personification of destructive chaos — torrents of ruin. The two images together create a sense of total inundation: David was drowning in mortal danger from every direction.

6. The Hebrew chevlei She'ol ('cords of Sheol') uses chevlei, which can mean either 'cords, ropes' or 'birth pangs.' In this context, the cord imagery dominates — Sheol, the realm of the dead, has thrown its ropes around the speaker like a hunter binding prey. She'ol is the underworld, the place of the dead, conceived as lying beneath the earth. The parallel moqshei mavet ('snares of death') uses moqesh, the hunter's trap or snare. Together the images portray death as a hunter who has already set the trap and thrown the net — David was caught, bound, with no human means of escape.
7. This verse is the hinge of the psalm — the moment David calls and God responds. The word tsar ('distress, anguish, constriction') echoes the narrowing, suffocating imagery of the previous verses. The verb eqra ('I called') appears twice, emphasizing urgency and persistence. God's response comes mehekhalo ('from His temple/palace') — the word hekhal can refer to the earthly temple or the heavenly palace, and here the cosmic setting of the theophany that follows suggests the heavenly throne room. The word shav'ati ('my cry for help') is an urgent, desperate plea — not a calm prayer but a scream for rescue. The anthropomorphism be'oznav ('in His ears') makes the hearing viscerally physical: God's ears received David's scream.
8. The theophany begins. Two near-synonymous verbs — vattig'ash vativ'ash ('it reeled and it shook') — create an overwhelming impression of seismic upheaval. The phrase mosedot hashamayim ('foundations of heaven') is striking: heaven itself has foundations, and even those cosmic structures tremble before an angry God. The verb ragaz ('to tremble, to quake with agitation') conveys violent, fearful shaking. The cause is stated with brutal simplicity: ki charah lo ('because it burned in Him') — God was enraged. The same verb used for human anger (charah) is applied to God. David's cry activated divine fury against David's enemies, and the cosmos itself cannot stand before that fury.
9. The imagery is volcanic and draconic. Smoke rises be'appo ('from His nostrils/anger' — af means both 'nose' and 'anger,' and here both meanings are active). Fire from His mouth consumes (tokhal, 'it devours') — the fire is not decorative but destructive, a living force that eats what it touches. Coals blazed mimmenu ('from Him') — God Himself is the source of the fire. This is the most physically intense depiction of divine anger in David's poetry. The imagery draws on the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:18, where the mountain smoked 'like a kiln') and anticipates the prophetic visions of divine judgment (Isaiah 30:27-33).
10. The verb vayyet ('He bent, He inclined') treats the sky as a physical surface that God pushes downward to descend through it. The word vayyered ('He came down') is the same verb used for God's descent at Sinai (Exodus 19:20) and at Babel (Genesis 11:5) — when God 'comes down,' it means direct, terrifying intervention in human affairs. The arafel ('thick darkness, dense cloud') beneath His feet recalls the arafel of Sinai (Exodus 20:21, Deuteronomy 4:11). God does not arrive in light but in impenetrable darkness — His approach is felt before it is seen.
11. God's mode of transport is a cherub — the mighty winged creature that guards Eden (Genesis 3:24), overspreads the Ark (Exodus 25:20), and supports the divine throne in Ezekiel's visions (Ezekiel 10). The verb vayyirakhav ('He rode') treats the cherub as a war mount, and vayyaof ('He flew') gives God the speed of divine flight. The parallel line al kanfei ruach ('on the wings of the wind') equates the cherub's wings with the wind itself — God's movement generates the storm. The variant in Psalm 18:11 reads vayyede ('He swooped, He darted') instead of vayyera ('He appeared'), which may be the more original reading. We follow the Samuel text.
12. God's pavilion (sukkot, 'shelters, booths') is made of choshekh ('darkness'). This is a deliberate paradox: the God who creates light (Genesis 1:3) chooses to encamp in darkness when He comes to fight. The phrase chashrat mayim ('thick masses of water') is a textual crux — Psalm 18:12 reads cheshkat mayim ('darkness of water'). The word chashrat occurs only here and its meaning is debated; 'thick collection, dense mass' is the most probable sense. The avei shechqim ('clouds of the sky') are the thick, dark storm clouds. Every element of the divine approach — darkness, water, clouds — obscures vision. God fights concealed, His presence known only by its effects.
13. A paradox within the paradox: God is surrounded by darkness (v. 12), yet from the nogah ('brightness, radiance') before Him, fire erupts. The brightness is the inner glory that the outer darkness cannot contain — it breaks through in the form of burning coals. The gachalei esh ('coals of fire') recall the coals of verse 9, creating a ring of fire imagery around the theophany. The verse is extremely compressed — only six Hebrew words — and its brevity intensifies the visual impact: radiance, then fire.
14. The verb yar'em ('He thundered') from ra'am is the sound of the storm — thunder is God's war cry. The title Elyon ('Most High') is one of the oldest divine epithets, attested at Jerusalem before Israel's arrival (Genesis 14:18-22, where Melchizedek is priest of El Elyon). The phrase yitten qolo ('He gave His voice') treats thunder as divine speech — God's voice is not whispered but thundered across the sky. In the ancient Near East, the storm-god was the supreme deity (Baal, Hadad); this psalm claims all storm power for YHWH alone.
15. God's weapons are the storm itself. The chitsim ('arrows') are lightning bolts recast as divine projectiles. The verb vayfitsem ('He scattered them') describes the total dispersal of the enemy — they do not retreat in order but break apart in every direction. The baraq ('lightning') is named separately, functioning as a second volley. The verb vayhummem ('He threw them into confusion, He panicked them') uses the root hamam, the same word used for God's disruption of the Egyptians at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:24) and the Philistines at Mizpah (1 Samuel 7:10). The divine panic is a signature of holy war: enemies are not merely defeated but psychologically shattered.
16. The theophany reaches its climax in cosmic exposure. The afiqei yam ('channels of the sea') are the deepest ocean trenches, normally hidden beneath the waters. The mosedot tevel ('foundations of the world') are the cosmic pillars on which the earth rests in ancient Near Eastern cosmology. Both are exposed — God's anger strips away the waters and the earth itself, revealing the raw architecture of creation. The ga'arat YHWH ('rebuke of the LORD') is not a verbal scolding but a divine war shout — the same word used when God rebukes the sea (Nahum 1:4, Psalm 104:7). The nishmat ruach appo ('blast of the breath of His nostrils') combines wind and anger into a single force. The God who breathed life into Adam (Genesis 2:7) now breathes destruction against David's enemies.

- 17.** After the cosmic upheaval of verses 8-16, the action narrows to one man. God reaches mimmarom ('from the height') — the same heaven that trembled in verse 8 now becomes the source of rescue. The verb *yiqqacheni* ('He took me') is direct and physical — God grabs hold of David. The verb *yamsheni* ('He drew me out') is from *mashah*, 'to draw out,' the same root from which the name Moshe (Moses) is derived (Exodus 2:10 — 'I drew him from the water'). David's rescue from *mayim rabbim* ('many waters, deep waters') echoes the Exodus deliverance, the parting of the sea, and the rescue of the infant Moses. The drowning imagery of verses 5-6 is now resolved: God pulls David out of death's flood.
- 18.** David's admission *ki amtsu mimmenni* ('for they were stronger than me') is the theological key to the psalm. The entire theophany — earthquake, fire, storm, cosmic upheaval — was necessary because David could not save himself. The enemy was *az* ('strong, fierce'), and those who hated him had *amtsu* ('become too powerful'). The psalm does not celebrate David's military skill but his utter dependence on God. The verb *yatsileni* ('He rescued me') is the Hiphil of *natsal*, the same root as the superscription's *hitsil* — the poem's frame and its content use the same vocabulary of deliverance.
- 19.** The word *eidi* ('my disaster, my calamity') denotes a day of sudden catastrophe, the moment when everything collapses. The verb *yeqaddemuni* ('they confronted me, they came to meet me') indicates that the enemy seized the initiative — they attacked when David was most vulnerable. But the counterweight is immediate: *vayyehi YHWH mish'an li* ('the LORD became my support'). The word *mish'an* ('support, staff, prop') is from the root *sha'an* ('to lean on') — the same root used for Saul leaning on his spear in 2 Samuel 1:6. Where Saul leaned on a weapon and fell, David leaned on the LORD and stood.
- 20.** The *merkhav* ('broad place, wide open space') is the opposite of the *tsar* ('constriction, distress') of verse 7. David was squeezed by death, drowning in deep waters, hemmed in by enemies — and God brought him into spaciousness. The verb *yechalleseni* ('He set me free, He rescued me') from *chalats* means to pull out, to extract, to strip off constraints. The reason for the rescue is astonishing in its simplicity: *ki chafets bi* ('because He delighted in me'). The word *chafets* means to desire, to take pleasure in, to find delight. God did not rescue David merely out of obligation or covenant duty but out of delight. The creator of the theophany — the God of earthquake and fire — acts because He is pleased with this one man.
- 21.** The verb *yigmeleni* ('He dealt with me, He rewarded me') from *gamal* means to repay, to render what is due — the same verb used for weaning a child (the completion of a process). The parallel *khevor yadai* ('according to the cleanness of my hands') uses *bor* ('purity, cleanness') — hands free from innocent blood. This claim, placed in the canonical context after 2 Samuel 11-12 (Bathsheba and Uriah), creates deliberate tension. The psalm may predate those events, or David may be speaking specifically of the period when he was hunted by Saul.
- 22.** The verb *shamarti* ('I have kept, guarded') from *shamar* is the verb of covenant obedience — the same word used in 'keep My commandments' (Exodus 20:6). The phrase *darkhei YHWH* ('the ways of the LORD') refers to the patterns of conduct God requires. The claim *velo rasha'ti me'elohai* ('I have not acted wickedly away from my God') uses *rasha* in the Qal, meaning to act as a wicked person, to transgress fundamentally. David distinguishes between sinful failures (which he would confess elsewhere) and fundamental apostasy — he never abandoned the LORD for another god, never broke the fundamental covenant relationship.
- 23.** The word *mishpatav* ('His judgments, His rulings') refers to the specific case-law decisions and principles of justice that God has established. The parallel *chuqqotav* ('His statutes, His decrees') refers to the fixed, permanent ordinances. Together they cover the full range of divine instruction. The phrase *lenegdi* ('before me, in front of me') conveys constant awareness — David kept God's rulings always in his field of vision, always informing his decisions. The verb *asur* ('to turn aside, to depart') with the negative *lo* insists on consistent direction: David did not deviate from the path.
- 24.** The word *tamim* ('blameless, whole, complete, without fundamental defect') is the same word used for sacrificial animals that must be *tamim* — without blemish (Leviticus 1:3). It is also the word used for Noah (Genesis 6:9) and for the instruction God gave Abraham: 'Walk before Me and be *tamim*' (Genesis 17:1). It does not mean sinless but whole-hearted — undivided in loyalty. The phrase *va'eshtammerah me'avoni* ('I guarded myself from my iniquity') is remarkable: David speaks of 'my iniquity' as something he knows is there, a tendency he must actively resist. He does not deny the existence of his sin-nature but claims he kept it in check.
- 25.** The verse forms an inclusio with verse 21, returning to the same vocabulary: *tsedaqah*, *bor*, and the verb *yashuv/yashav* ('He repaid'). This ring structure frames verses 21-25 as a self-contained unit on divine justice. The phrase *leneged einav* ('before His eyes') shifts the standard of judgment from human perception to divine perception — God sees what humans cannot, and His evaluation is the one that matters.
- 26.** This verse begins a four-line declaration of divine reciprocity. The construction is grammatically striking: *im chasid titchassad* — 'with a chasid You act in chesed.' God mirrors the character of those who approach Him. The word *chasid* ('faithful one, devoted one') is the person who embodies *chesed*, and God responds with the same quality. The parallel *im gibbor tamim tittammam* ('with a blameless warrior You show Yourself blameless') uses the Hitpael of *tamam* — God conducts Himself with the same wholeness He finds in the righteous person. The theology is profound: God does not have a single mode of engagement but responds in kind to the character of the worshiper.
- 27.** The parallelism continues. *Im navar tittavar* ('with the pure You show Yourself pure') uses *navar*, a rare word meaning 'clean, pure, select.' The Hitpael *tittavar* means God presents Himself as pure to those who are pure. But the final line introduces the reversal: *im iqqesh tittappal* ('with the twisted You show Yourself shrewd/winding'). The word *iqqesh* ('twisted, crooked, perverse') describes someone whose dealings are fundamentally distorted. And God's response — *tittappal* — is from the root *patal* ('to twist, to wrestle, to be shrewd'). God meets crookedness with a counter-crookedness — not moral perversity but tactical shrewdness. The God who is straightforward with the honest becomes unpredictable and overwhelming to the devious.

- 28.** The verse pivots from individual to collective. The *am ani* ('humble/afflicted people') are those who have been pressed down by circumstance or oppression — the *anawim*, who recur throughout the Psalms as God's special concern (Psalm 9:12, 10:12, 34:6). The verb *toshi'a* ('You save, deliver') from *yasha* is the root of the name *Yeshua/Joshua*. The contrast follows immediately: God's eyes are *al ramim* ('on the haughty, on the high ones') — not to admire but to *tashpil* ('bring low, humble'). The theology inverts worldly expectations: God elevates the lowly and flattens the proud. This echoes Hannah's song (1 Samuel 2:7-8) and anticipates Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:52).
- 29.** The metaphor shifts from military imagery to light and darkness. The *neir* ('lamp') is the small oil lamp that fills a dark room — without it, total darkness. David declares God is his *neir*, the single source of illumination in a dark existence. The verb *yaggiah* ('He illuminates, He makes bright') from *nagah* means to cause light to shine. The *choshki* ('my darkness') is personal and experiential — David's darkness, not darkness in the abstract. The verse may also carry royal overtones: the 'lamp of David' becomes a symbol of the Davidic dynasty's continuation (1 Kings 11:36, 15:4, 2 Kings 8:19), and this declaration may be its origin point.
- 30.** The verse translates divine assistance into military capability. The verb *aruts* ('I run, I charge') combined with *gedud* ('raiding band, troop') describes rushing headlong into a hostile force. The parallel *uvelolhai adalleg shur* ('with my God I leap a wall') uses *dalag* ('to leap, to spring over') — David can scale defensive fortifications with God's help. Both images describe impossible feats made possible by divine empowerment. The *gedud* ('raiding band') echoes the many raiding groups David encountered during his fugitive years (1 Samuel 27, 30), and the wall-leaping may recall the capture of Zion's fortifications (2 Samuel 5:6-9).
- 31.** The verse makes three declarations. First: *ha'El tamim darkho* ('God — His way is blameless/perfect'). The same word *tamim* applied to David in verse 24 is now applied to God — the standard David claims to have met is grounded in God's own character. Second: *imrat YHWH tserufah* ('the word/promise of the LORD is refined'). The verb *tserafah* ('refined, smelted, tested by fire') comes from metalworking — God's word has been through the furnace and emerges without impurity (Psalm 12:6). Third: *magen hu lekhol hachosim bo* ('He is a shield to all who take refuge in Him'). The *magen* ('shield') returns from verse 3, now universalized — not only David's shield but the shield of everyone who trusts Him. The verb *chasah* ('to take refuge, to shelter') is the language of fleeing to a safe place, as David fled to caves and strongholds.
- 32.** The rhetorical questions assert absolute monotheistic exclusivity. The first question *mi El mibbal'adei YHWH* ('who is God except the LORD?') allows only one answer: no one. The second *mi tsur mibbal'adei Eloheinu* ('who is a rock except our God?') returns to the rock metaphor of verses 2-3 but now frames it as a challenge to all rival deities. The word *tsur* ('rock') here functions as a divine title — a proper name-like designation that belongs exclusively to the God of Israel. The shift from 'my God' to 'our God' (*Eloheinu*) expands the psalm's perspective from David's personal experience to Israel's communal confession.
- 33.** The word *ma'uzzi* ('my strong refuge, my fortress of strength') combines *oz* ('strength') with the sense of a fortified place. The word *chayil* can mean 'strength, power, ability, army' — its range is broad. The phrase *vayyatter tamim darki* ('He makes my way blameless/perfect') is theologically significant: it is God who makes David's path *tamim*, the same word used for David's conduct in verse 24 and God's way in verse 31. David's blamelessness is not self-achieved but divinely enabled. God straightens the road and empowers the walker.
- 34.** The *ayyalot* ('deer, hinds') are the wild ibex or mountain gazelles whose hooves grip steep, rocky terrain with astonishing sure-footedness. God gives David the same ability — feet that do not slip on treacherous ground. The *bamotai* ('my high places, my heights') are the commanding positions of the landscape, both militarily advantageous and symbolically elevated. The verb *ya'amideni* ('He makes me stand, He stations me') conveys permanence — God does not merely bring David to the heights but establishes him there. The image combines agility and authority: swift as a deer, stationed on the heights like a commander.
- 35.** The verb *melammed* ('He trains, He teaches') from *lamad* makes God a warrior-instructor. David's military prowess is not innate but taught by God. The *qeshet nechusah* ('bow of bronze/copper') is a heavy composite bow requiring extraordinary strength to draw — bronze is used to indicate either a bow reinforced with metal or, more likely, the extreme stiffness and power of the weapon. The verb *nachat* ('to press down, to bend') describes the act of stringing or drawing such a bow. The verse attributes David's battlefield capability directly to divine training — God taught his hands, God strengthened his arms.
- 36.** The phrase *magen yish'ekha* ('the shield of Your deliverance') combines the defensive image of the shield with the active concept of divine rescue. God does not merely block attacks but delivers — the shield is an act of salvation. The word *anotekha* is a significant textual and interpretive crux. If from *anah* ('to answer'), it means 'Your answering/responding to me.' If from *anavah* ('humility'), it means 'Your humility/condescension.' Psalm 18:36 reads the same. We render 'Your willingness to answer' to capture the responsiveness of God to David's cries, which has been the psalm's consistent theme since verse 7.
- 37.** The verb *tarchiv* ('You make wide, You enlarge') creates the spaciousness that opposes the *tsar* ('constriction') of verse 7. God expands the ground beneath David's feet — the path is broadened so there is room to walk securely. The word *tsa'adi* ('my step, my stride') refers to the actual placement of each foot. The *qarsullai* ('my ankles') are the joints most vulnerable to turning on rough terrain. The whole image is of a warrior moving confidently across broken ground because God has leveled and widened the path. Nothing twists, nothing slips, nothing gives way.
- 38.** The verb *erdofah* ('I pursued') from *radaf* is the hunter's verb, the predator chasing prey. The reversal is complete: in verses 5-6, David was the hunted one, surrounded by death's snares; now he is the pursuer. The verb *va'ashmidhem* ('I annihilated them') from *shamad* is one of the strongest words for destruction in Hebrew — total, irrecoverable elimination. The phrase *velo ashuv ad kallotam* ('I did not turn back until finishing them') uses *kalah* ('to complete, to bring to an end'). The language is that of complete military victory with no survivors and no retreat. David attributes this total victory to the divine empowerment described in the preceding verses.

39. Three verbs of destruction hammer in succession: va'akhellem ('I consumed them') from kalah, va'emchatsem ('I crushed/shattered them') from machats (the same verb used for crushing the head in Judges 5:26), and velo yequmun ('they could not rise'). The inability to rise is the final marker of total defeat — the enemy is down permanently. The image of falling tachat raglai ('beneath my feet') is the ancient Near Eastern posture of absolute subjugation — the conqueror places his foot on the neck of the conquered (Joshua 10:24). David is not describing mere victory but complete domination.
40. The verb vattazreni ('You girded me') from azar describes the act of buckling on a warrior's belt and weapons — God Himself arms David for combat. The chayil ('strength, valor, fighting power') is the combat readiness that God provides. The verb takhria ('You caused to bow down, You subdued') from kara means to force someone to their knees — the posture of surrender and submission. The qamai ('those rising against me') are those who stood up in opposition; God forces them back down. The entire verse insists that what looks like David's military power is actually God's power working through David.
41. The phrase tattah li oref ('You gave me the neck/back of my enemies') is vivid: God turned the enemies around so that David saw their backs, not their faces — they were running away. The oref ('back of the neck') is what you see when someone flees. The verb va'atsmithem ('I silenced them, I exterminated them') from tsamat means to cut off, to silence permanently. The word carries the sense of being reduced to nothing — no voice, no presence, no resistance. David's enemies are not merely defeated but erased from the field.
42. The verb yish'u ('they cried out') from shava is the scream for help in a desperate situation. The devastating response: ein moshi'a ('there is no deliverer'). The same root yasha ('to save, to deliver') that has dominated the psalm as David's experience is now denied to his enemies. The final line is theologically severe: el YHWH velo anam ('to the LORD, but He did not answer them'). Even when David's enemies appealed to the LORD — perhaps Israelite enemies, not pagans — God refused to respond. The silence of God toward those who opposed David is the mirror image of God's thunderous response to David's cry in verse 7.
43. Three verbs of pulverization: va'eshchagem ('I ground them fine') from shachaq means to pulverize into powder — the same verb used for grinding grain or crushing rock. Ka'afar arets ('like the dust of the earth') is the finest possible particulate — the enemy is reduced to dirt. The second image kekhit chutsot ('like mud of the streets') makes the enemy into the muck that everyone treads on. The verb adaqqem ('I crushed them thin') from daqq means to beat fine, and erqa'em ('I stamped them flat') from raqa means to spread out by hammering or stamping — the metalworker's verb for beating gold into leaf. The imagery is deliberately excessive, expressing total and irreversible victory.
44. The phrase merivei ammi ('conflicts/disputes of my people') refers to the internal Israelite opposition David faced — the civil war with the house of Saul, Absalom's rebellion, Sheba's revolt. God's deliverance was not only from foreign enemies but from David's own people. The transition to lerosh goyim ('as head of the nations') expands David's authority beyond Israel to international dominion. The phrase am lo yada'ti ya'avduni ('a people I did not know serve me') describes nations previously unknown to David now rendering tribute and obedience. This is the fulfillment of the promise that the Davidic king would rule beyond Israel's borders.
45. The benei nekhar ('sons of foreignness, foreigners') are non-Israelite peoples. The verb yitkachashu ('they cringe, they submit with feigned obedience') from kachash has the nuance of reluctant, compelled submission — the foreigners obey not from love but from fear. The phrase lishmo'a ozen yishme'u li ('at the hearing of the ear they obey me') indicates that David's reputation alone compels submission — the foreigners do not need to see his army; the mere report of what God has done through David is sufficient to break their resistance.
46. The verb yibbolu ('they wither, they fade') from naval/balah describes fruit falling from a tree or a plant withering — the foreigners' power decays like vegetation losing its life. The verb vayyachgeru ('they gird themselves' or 'they come limping/trembling') is debated: it may mean they gird their loins in surrender or they come trembling with fear. The mimmisgherotam ('from their strongholds, from their fortifications') describes enemies emerging from behind their walls — the places where they thought they were safe. Whether they emerge in surrender or are flushed out, the result is the same: no fortification protects against the God who fights for David.
47. The triple exclamation — 'the LORD lives,' 'blessed be my rock,' 'exalted be God' — creates a crescendo of praise that marks the psalm's transition from narrative testimony to concluding doxology. The chai YHWH formula appears frequently as an oath ('as the LORD lives,' 1 Samuel 14:39, 20:3) but here functions as pure declaration: the LORD is alive, active, and present. The accumulation of divine titles in this verse — YHWH, tsur, Elohei tsur yish'i — gathers the psalm's entire theological vocabulary into a single explosion of praise.
48. The word neqamot ('acts of vengeance, vindication') from naqam is not petty revenge but the restoration of justice — God acts to right wrongs done to David. The plural neqamot suggests multiple acts of vindication across David's career. The verb morid ('bringing down') from yarad is the opposite of God's own descent in verse 10 — there, God came down to save; here, He brings hostile nations down in subjugation. The phrase ammim tachteni ('peoples beneath me') uses the plural 'peoples' to indicate that entire nations, not just individuals, are placed under David's authority.
49. The verse gathers three final acts of divine deliverance. The verb motsi'i ('bringing me out') echoes the Exodus vocabulary — God leads David out from among his enemies as He led Israel out of Egypt. The verb teromemenu ('You exalt me, You lift me high') from rum places David above his opponents — not merely delivered but elevated. The final phrase me'ish chamasim tatssilenu ('from the man of violence You rescue me') uses the singular ish chamasim ('man of violence'), which may refer to Saul specifically or to any violent oppressor generically. The word chamas ('violence, lawless aggression') returns from verse 3, closing a frame: the violence David was saved from at the beginning is the violence he is saved from at the end.
50. The al ken ('therefore') draws a logical conclusion from everything that has preceded: because of all God has done, David will praise. The phrase baggoyim ('among the nations') is significant — David's praise will not be confined to Israel but will ring out among the gentile nations. This verse is quoted by Paul in Romans 15:9 as evidence that God always intended to be praised among the gentiles. The verb azammer ('I will make music, I will

sing praise') from *zamar* is specifically musical praise — David the musician responds to God the deliverer with song. The word *shimkha* ('Your name') represents the full character and reputation of God — David sings not merely about what God has done but about who God is.

51. The word *migdol* ('tower, great one') is a textual variant — Psalm 18:51 reads *magdil* ('He makes great'), a participle. The Samuel text's *migdol* ('tower of') creates a final fortress image: God is the tower from which David's deliverances proceed. The *yeshu'ot* ('deliverances, salvations') is plural, summarizing the many rescues the psalm has celebrated.
51. The final line concentrates the psalm's theology into a single sentence. Three terms converge: *chesed* (God's covenant faithfulness), *mashich* ('His anointed one' — the *mashiach*), and *ad olam* ('forever'). The specificity is remarkable — not 'to a king' generically but 'to David and his seed forever.' This is the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16 rendered as liturgical confession. The phrase becomes the seedbed of messianic expectation: if God's *chesed* to David's line is truly *ad olam*, then that line must endure, and the ultimate *mashiach* must come.

23

Summary: *This chapter preserves two distinct literary units bound together by the theme of David's legacy. First, David's last words (vv. 1-7) -- a prophetic oracle in which the aging king identifies himself as the LORD's anointed, declares the terms of just rule, and anchors his dynasty in an everlasting covenant. Second, the roster of David's mighty men (vv. 8-39) -- a catalog of the elite warriors who risked everything for him, featuring three legendary exploits (breaking through the Philistine garrison at Bethlehem, single-handedly holding a field of lentils, and slaying a lion in a pit on a snowy day) followed by a formal list of the Thirty. The chapter closes with Uriah the Hittite, whose name at the end of a roll of honor is the narrative's quiet indictment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *David's last words in verses 1-7 represent the only passage in Samuel where David speaks as a prophet rather than a king, psalmist, or military commander. The fourfold self-identification in verse 1 -- son of Jesse, the man raised on high, the anointed of the God of Jacob, the sweet singer of Israel's songs -- compresses his entire biography into a single introduction. The oracle's central claim is extraordinary: 'The Spirit of the LORD spoke through me; His word was on my tongue' (v. 2). David claims not merely divine inspiration but prophetic instrumentality -- God used his mouth. The mighty men catalog in verses 8-39 is the military counterpart to the theological oracle. It is an ancient honor roll, almost certainly drawn from court records, that names the warriors who fought beside David during his fugitive years and early reign. The placement of Uriah the Hittite as the final name (v. 39) is devastating -- the reader knows what David did to this loyal soldier, and the list's structure ensures that Uriah's faithfulness and David's betrayal share the same breath. Thirty-seven men are counted, though the exact correlation with the names listed has long been debated, as several subgroups overlap.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between David's last words here and his deathbed speech in 1 Kings 2 creates tension -- there David is pragmatic and even vindictive, ordering the elimination of Joab and Shimei, while here his final utterance is prophetic poetry about just rule and covenant faithfulness. The two 'last words' likely represent different genres: 2 Samuel 23 is David's theological testament, while 1 Kings 2 is his political will. The text of verses 1-7 is among the most difficult in the Hebrew Bible, with multiple uncertain readings. Verse 4 contains compressed imagery comparing the just ruler to morning light and rain on new grass, but the syntax is elliptical and the referent shifts rapidly. The mighty men list contains variant names and numbers when compared with the parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:10-47, reflecting differences in manuscript tradition and source material. The count of thirty-seven (v. 39) does not easily match the names given, suggesting the list may have been updated over time as warriors died and were replaced.*

Connections: *David's self-identification as *mashiach Elohei Ya'aqov* ('the anointed of the God of Jacob') in verse 1 reaches back to Samuel's anointing in 1 Samuel 16:13 and forward to the entire messianic tradition that flows from the Davidic line. The everlasting covenant (*berit olam*) in verse 5 connects to the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16, where God promises David an eternal dynasty -- here David claims that promise as the ground of his hope. The mighty men catalog connects backward to the ragged band of discontented men who gathered around David at Adullam (1 Samuel 22:1-2) and forward to the military infrastructure of Solomon's kingdom. The water from Bethlehem's well (vv. 15-17) echoes David's youth as a Bethlehem shepherd and transforms a military exploit into an act of worship -- David pours out the water as a libation to the LORD, refusing to drink what was purchased with his men's blood. Benaiah's exploits (vv. 20-23) establish the credentials of the man who will become Solomon's chief enforcer in 1 Kings 2.*

¹These are the last words of David:

The oracle of David son of Jesse,
the oracle of the man raised up on high,
the anointed of the God of Jacob,
the beloved singer of Israel's songs.

²The Spirit of the LORD spoke through me;
His word was on my tongue.

³The God of Israel has spoken,
the Rock of Israel declared to me:
'One who rules over people justly,
who rules in the fear of God --

⁴-- he is like the light of morning when the sun rises,
a morning without clouds,
when new grass springs from the earth
after rain and sunshine.'

⁵Is not my house secure with God?
For He has set before me an everlasting covenant,
ordered in every detail and safeguarded.
Surely this is all my deliverance and all my desire --
will He not cause it to flourish?

⁶But the worthless -- they are all like thorns cast aside,
for no one takes them up by hand.

⁷Anyone who handles them arms himself with iron
and the shaft of a spear,
and they are burned up completely where they stand.

⁸These are the names of David's mighty men: Josheb-basshebeth the Tachmonite, chief of the Three. He was Adino the Eznite, who struck down eight hundred men in a single engagement. ⁹Next to him was Eleazar son of Dodo son of Ahohi, one of the three mighty men. He was with David when they taunted the Philistines gathered there for battle, after the men of Israel had withdrawn. ¹⁰He stood his ground and struck down Philistines until his hand grew so exhausted that it locked onto the sword. The LORD brought about a great victory that day, and the troops came back only to strip the dead. ¹¹After him came Shammah son of Agee the Hararite. The Philistines had massed at Lehi, where there was a plot of ground full of lentils, and the army had fled before the Philistines. ¹²But Shammah took his stand in the middle of the plot, defended it, and struck down the Philistines. And the LORD brought about a great victory. ¹³During harvest time, three of the thirty leading warriors went down and came to David at the cave of Adullam, while a Philistine raiding party was camped in the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁴David was in the stronghold at that time, and a Philistine garrison occupied Bethlehem. ¹⁵David was overcome with longing and said, "If only someone would bring me water from the well of Bethlehem, the one by the gate!" ¹⁶The three mighty men broke through the Philistine camp, drew water from the well of Bethlehem by the gate, carried it back, and brought it to David. But he refused to drink it. Instead, he poured it out before the LORD. ¹⁷He said, "The LORD forbid that I should do this! Is this not the blood of the men who went at the risk of their lives?" He would not drink it. These are the deeds of the three mighty men. ¹⁸Abishai, the brother of Joab and son of Zeruiah, was the chief of the Three. He wielded his spear against three hundred men and killed them, gaining renown among the Three. ¹⁹He was the most honored of the Three

and became their commander, but he did not rank among the original Three. ²⁰Benaiah son of Jehoiada was a valiant man from Kabzeel, a man of many exploits. He struck down two champions of Moab. He also went down into a pit and killed a lion on a snowy day. ²¹He also killed an Egyptian, an impressive man. The Egyptian had a spear in his hand, but Benaiah went against him with only a staff, snatched the spear from the Egyptian's hand, and killed him with his own spear. ²²These were the deeds of Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he gained renown among the three mighty men. ²³He was more honored than the Thirty but did not reach the rank of the Three. David appointed him over his personal guard. ²⁴Asahel the brother of Joab was among the Thirty; Elhanan son of Dodo from Bethlehem; ²⁵Shammah the Harodite; Elikah the Harodite; ²⁶Helez the Paltite; Ira son of Ikkesh the Tekoite; ²⁷Abiezer the Anathothite; Mebunnai the Hushathite; ²⁸Zalmon the Ahohite; Maharai the Netophathite; ²⁹Heleb son of Baanah the Netophathite; Ittai son of Ribai from Gibeah of Benjamin; ³⁰Benaiah the Pirathonite; Hiddai from the wadis of Gaash; ³¹Abi-albon from Arabah, Azmaveth from Bahurim, ³²Eliabha the Shaalbonite; Jonathan from the sons of Jashen; ³³Shammah the Hararite; Ahiam son of Sharar the Ararite; ³⁴Eliphelet son of Ahasbai the Maacathite; Eliam son of Ahithophel the Gilonite; ³⁵Hezrai the Carmelite; Paarai the Arbite; ³⁶Igal son of Nathan from Zobah; Bani the Gadite; ³⁷Zehek the Ammonite; Naharai the Beerothite, armor-bearer of Joab son of Zeruiah; ³⁸Ira the Ithrite; Gareb the Ithrite; ³⁹Uriah the Hittite. Thirty-seven in all.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourfold self-identification -- son of Jesse, the man raised on high, the anointed of Jacob's God, the singer of Israel -- moves from genealogy to exaltation to divine election to artistic vocation. Each title compresses an era of David's life into a phrase. The word huqam ('raised up') is a Hophal passive: David did not raise himself but was raised by another -- the divine passive is at work.
1. The word ne'im ('sweet, lovely, beloved') modifies David's role as zemimot Yisra'el ('the songs of Israel'). The phrase can mean either 'the sweet one of Israel's songs' (David as the subject the songs celebrate) or 'the sweet singer of Israel's songs' (David as the composer). We render with 'beloved singer' to capture both dimensions.
2. The preposition bi ('in me, through me') indicates that David was the instrument, not the origin, of the message. The Spirit (ruach) of the LORD is the agent; David's tongue (lashon) is the vehicle. This verse makes the strongest prophetic claim in the Davidic corpus: God's word (millah, a poetic synonym for davar) passed through David as through any other prophet.
2. The parallelism is precise: 'Spirit of the LORD' corresponds to 'His word'; 'spoke through me' corresponds to 'on my tongue.' The shift from ruach (spirit, breath, wind) to millah (word, speech) moves from the invisible force to the articulated message.
3. The verse presents a chain of divine titles: 'the God of Israel' (Elohei Yisra'el) and 'the Rock of Israel' (Tsur Yisra'el). The Rock metaphor emphasizes permanence, reliability, and protective strength. The content of God's speech begins with a conditional portrait of the ideal ruler: one who governs with justice (tsaddiq) and in the fear of God (yir'at Elohim). The syntax leaves the sentence incomplete -- the reward for such rule follows in verse 4.
3. The phrase moshel ba'adam tsaddiq ('ruling over humankind, a righteous one') can be parsed as either 'a righteous ruler over humanity' or 'when one rules over people righteously.' The ambiguity may be deliberate: this is both a description of the ideal king and an implicit standard against which David's own reign must be measured.
4. This verse completes the sentence begun in verse 3: the just ruler's effect on his people is compared to two natural phenomena -- sunrise and the greening of the earth after rain. The compressed imagery layers light (or boqer, 'morning light') with growth (deshe, 'new grass, tender vegetation'). The righteous king does not merely govern; he causes flourishing, the way sunlight and rain cause the dormant earth to produce.
4. The syntax is famously difficult. The phrase minnogah mimmatar deshe me'arets ('from brightness, from rain, grass from the earth') telescopes the cause-and-effect into a cascade of prepositional phrases. The just ruler is the political equivalent of the sun and the rain -- the conditions under which everything grows.
5. This is the theological climax of David's last words. The berit olam ('everlasting covenant') refers to God's dynastic promise in 2 Samuel 7, where the LORD pledged that David's house would endure forever. The adjectives arukhah ('ordered, arranged') and shemurah ('guarded, safeguarded') describe the covenant as both structurally complete and divinely protected -- nothing is missing, and nothing can breach it.
5. The verse's syntax is debated. The opening ki lo khi beiti im El can be read as a concession ('although my house is not so with God') or as a rhetorical question ('Is not my house secure with God?'). We follow the rhetorical question reading, which fits the confident tone of the oracle. David's final theological statement is not doubt but assurance: despite all the failures of his reign, the everlasting covenant holds.
5. The final clause ki lo yatsmiyach is particularly disputed -- 'will He not cause it to grow?' or 'although He has not yet caused it to grow?' The verb tsemach ('to sprout, to grow') connects to the vegetation imagery of verse 4 and to the later prophetic title tsemach David ('Branch of David,' Jeremiah 23:5, Zechariah 6:12). David's dynasty may not yet have fully flourished, but the covenant guarantees it will.

6. The contrast with the flourishing imagery of verses 4-5 is stark. Where the just ruler produces growth like sunshine and rain, the *beliyya'al* ('worthless, wicked') are like thorns (*qots*) -- vegetation that is useless, dangerous to touch, and fit only for burning. The word *munad* ('cast aside, thrust away') indicates rejection: thorns are not harvested but discarded.
6. *Beliyya'al* is a compound of *beli* ('without') and *ya'al* ('profit, worth'). It designates persons or forces of destructive worthlessness. In later literature it becomes a proper name for a demonic figure, but here it retains its original sense: those who oppose just rule are thorns in the hand of the righteous.
7. The oracle ends with the destruction of the wicked. To even approach thorns requires iron tools (*barzel*) and a spear shaft (*ets chanit*) -- one cannot handle them barehanded. The final image is fire: *sarof yissarefu bashshavet* ('burning, they shall be burned where they sit/stand'). The infinitive absolute *sarof* intensifies the verb: the burning is total, complete, absolute.
7. The concluding image of fire consuming thorns is a standard prophetic metaphor for divine judgment (Isaiah 9:18, 10:17, Nahum 1:10). David's last prophetic word is a warning: the everlasting covenant ensures the dynasty's survival, but those who oppose God's righteous order will be consumed like dry thorns.
8. The text of this verse is notoriously corrupt, and the parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:11 reads differently: 'Jashobeam son of Hachmoni, chief of the officers, who wielded his spear against three hundred slain at one time.' The number discrepancy (800 vs. 300) and the name variations (*Adino the Eznite* vs. *Jashobeam*) likely reflect scribal transmission difficulties in the ancient copies.
8. The word *shalishim* ('three' or 'officers') designates the highest tier of David's warriors. The 'Three' (*ha-sheloshah*) were the supreme elite, above even the 'Thirty' (*ha-sheloshim*). This hierarchical structure reflects a professional military organization built during David's years as a fugitive commander.
9. *Eleazar* is the second of the Three. The phrase *becharfam baPelishtim* ('when they taunted the Philistines') uses the verb *charaf*, meaning to reproach, defy, or taunt -- the same word *Goliath* used to defy Israel (1 Samuel 17:10). The situation is desperate: the regular Israelite forces (*ish Yisra'el*) have pulled back, leaving only David and his elite fighters.
9. The patronymic 'son of Dodo son of Ahohi' anchors *Eleazar* in a specific family line. *Ahohi* may refer to the clan of *Ahoah* from the tribe of Benjamin (1 Chronicles 8:4), which would make *Eleazar* a Benjaminite fighting for a Judahite king -- a sign of the cross-tribal loyalty David inspired.
10. The detail that *Eleazar's* hand clave to the sword (*vattidbaq yado el hackerev*) is a vivid image of combat fatigue -- the muscles seized, the grip frozen in place from hours of fighting. The verb *davaq* ('to cling, adhere') is the same word used for a man clinging to his wife in Genesis 2:24 and for Israel clinging to the LORD in Deuteronomy 10:20. Here it describes involuntary physical fusion between warrior and weapon.
10. The theological credit goes to the LORD: *vayyaas YHWH teshu'ah gedolah* ('the LORD made a great deliverance'). *Eleazar* fought, but the victory (*teshu'ah*, from the root *yasha*, 'to save, deliver') belongs to God. The returning soldiers had nothing to do but strip the slain -- the battle was already won.
11. *Shammah* is the third of the Three. The setting is a field of lentils (*adashim*) -- an ordinary crop field, not a strategically significant position. That *Shammah* chose to defend a lentil field while the entire army fled elevates the story beyond military tactics into character testimony: this man would not yield even a patch of beans.
11. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:13 places the battle in a field of barley rather than lentils. The word *lachayah* is difficult; it may mean 'into a troop' or be a place name (*Lehi*, as in Judges 15:9). We render it as a location name following one well-attested reading.
12. The verb *vayyityatsev* ('he took his stand') is the *Hithpael* of *yatsav*, meaning to station oneself deliberately, to plant oneself. It implies a conscious decision to hold ground. The same pattern repeats from verse 10: the human warrior fights, but the LORD (YHWH) is credited with the victory (*teshu'ah gedolah*). The theological grammar is consistent -- individual courage is real but insufficient without divine empowerment.
13. The cave of *Adullam* is the same refuge where David first gathered his band of fugitives (1 Samuel 22:1). The narrative returns to that location, linking the mighty men list to its origins in David's outlaw period. The Valley of *Rephaim* (*Emeq Repha'im*), southwest of Jerusalem, was a recurring Philistine staging ground (2 Samuel 5:18, 22). The word *chayyat* ('troop, company') suggests a raiding force rather than a full army.
14. The *metsudah* ('stronghold') is likely the cave of *Adullam* or a nearby fortified position. The key detail is the Philistine occupation of *Bethlehem* -- David's own hometown (1 Samuel 16:1) is in enemy hands. This sets the emotional context for the next verses: David's longing for water from the well of *Bethlehem* is a longing for home, for the life he lost when he became a fugitive.
15. The verb *vayyit'avveh* ('he longed, he craved') is the *Hithpael* of *avah*, expressing intense, visceral desire. David does not give an order -- he voices a wish, almost a sigh. The well by the gate (*bo'r Beit Lechem asher basha'ar*) was the town's public well, located at the main entrance. For David, it represents childhood, home, the life before Saul's pursuit. The longing is for more than water.
16. The verb *vayyivqe'u* ('they broke through') is the *Qal* of *baqa*, meaning to split, breach, or burst through -- the same verb used for splitting the Red Sea (Exodus 14:21). The three warriors smashed through an active enemy garrison to fetch a cup of water. The act is militarily reckless and entirely motivated by devotion to their commander.
16. David's refusal to drink and his pouring out (*vayyasekkh*) the water as a libation to the LORD is one of the most striking moments in the Samuel narrative. The verb *nasakh* is the technical term for a drink offering -- David treats the water as sacred. His reasoning (v. 17) explains why: the water is equivalent to the men's blood, and blood belongs to God alone (Leviticus 17:11). What began as a spontaneous longing becomes an act of worship.

17. David's exclamation *chalilah li YHWH* ('far be it from me, O LORD') invokes God as witness to his refusal. The equation of the water with *dam ha'anashim* ('the blood of the men') reflects the Levitical principle that blood represents life (Leviticus 17:14). By pouring it out, David honors both the men's sacrifice and God's claim on life itself.
17. The phrase *haholkhim benafshot-am* ('who went with their lives' -- that is, at the risk of their lives) uses *nefesh* in its concrete sense of 'life, vital force.' The men wagered their very existence for a cup of water. David's recognition of this transforms a military feat into a theology of sacrifice.
18. Abishai appears repeatedly in the David narrative as a fierce and loyal warrior (1 Samuel 26:6-9, 2 Samuel 2:18, 16:9-10, 19:22). He is Joab's brother, part of the powerful Zeruiah family that provided David's military leadership. The phrase *lo shem ba-sheloshah* ('he had a name among the Three') means he earned his reputation, his *shem* ('name, fame'), through deeds.
18. There is textual confusion about whether Abishai was chief 'of the Three' or 'of the Thirty' -- the Hebrew consonants for 'three' and 'thirty' are similar (*shelosh* vs. *sheloshim*), and manuscripts vary. In context, Abishai appears to lead a second tier below the original Three of verses 8-12.
19. The verse draws a precise distinction: Abishai was *nikhbad* ('honored, weighty, esteemed') -- from the root *kavod* ('glory, weight') -- more than any in his tier, but he did not reach the rank of the original Three (*Josheb-basshebeth*, *Eleazar*, *Shammah*). The military hierarchy is strict: fame and rank are not identical.
20. Benaiah is introduced with an unusually detailed genealogy and origin: *ben ish chayil* ('son of a man of valor') from *Kabzeel*, a town in the Negev of Judah (Joshua 15:21). The phrase *rav pe'alim* ('great in deeds, many exploits') is a summary before the specific stories.
20. The two *ari'el Mo'av* ('lion-like men of Moab' or 'champions of Moab') is obscure. *Ari'el* may mean 'lion of God' (a title for a warrior champion) or refer to a specific place or military unit. We render 'champions' to convey the sense of formidable opponents. The lion-in-a-pit story is the most vivid: Benaiah descends into a cistern or pit (*bor*) to fight a lion (*ari*) on a day of snow (*yom hashaleg*), when the animal may have sought shelter there. The confined space and slippery conditions make the feat extraordinary.
21. The phrase *ish mar'eh* ('a man of appearance') means an imposing, visually striking figure -- a warrior whose very size and bearing were intimidating. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:23 specifies the Egyptian was five cubits tall (about 7.5 feet) and his spear was like a weaver's beam -- the same description applied to Goliath's spear (1 Samuel 17:7). Benaiah's feat directly echoes David's: he went against a superior opponent with an inferior weapon and prevailed.
21. The verb *vayyigzol* ('he snatched, he tore away') is aggressive -- it implies forceful seizure, not a deft maneuver. Benaiah ripped the spear from the Egyptian's grip. The irony of killing a warrior with his own weapon is the ultimate humiliation of an enemy.
22. The closing formula for Benaiah mirrors the formula for the Three in verse 17. The phrase *lo shem* ('he had a name') means his deeds earned him lasting reputation. His military credentials explain his later appointment as commander of Solomon's army (1 Kings 2:35).
23. The *mishmaat* ('guard, bodyguard unit') was David's personal protection detail -- the elite unit responsible for the king's immediate safety. This is the Cherethites and Pelethites unit that Benaiah later commands (2 Samuel 8:18, 20:23). David's placement of Benaiah over his bodyguard reflects both trust and tactical wisdom: the man who killed a lion in a pit is the one you want standing between you and an assassin.
24. The roster of the Thirty begins. *Asahel*, the fleet-footed brother of Joab and Abishai (2 Samuel 2:18), heads the list despite having been killed by Abner early in David's reign (2 Samuel 2:23). His inclusion suggests the list preserves an early form that was not updated after his death, or that deceased members retained their honorary place. *Elhanan* son of *Dodo* from Bethlehem may be the same *Elhanan* who killed Goliath's brother (2 Samuel 21:19) or Goliath himself in a variant tradition.
25. Both warriors are from *Harod*, a spring at the foot of Mount Gilboa associated with Gideon's famous selection of warriors (Judges 7:1). The pairing of two men from the same town suggests local recruitment patterns in David's early forces.
26. *Helez* is identified as a *Paltite* (from *Beth-pelet* in the Negev, Joshua 15:27). *Ira* hails from *Tekoa*, a town about ten miles south of Jerusalem that would later produce the prophet *Amos* (Amos 1:1). The geographic diversity of the list shows David drew warriors from across Judah's territory.
27. *Abiezer* is from *Anathoth* in Benjamin, the future hometown of the prophet *Jeremiah* (Jeremiah 1:1). His presence among David's warriors indicates that some Benjaminites -- Saul's own tribe -- sided with David even during the civil conflict. *Mebunnai* (called *Sibbecai* in 1 Chronicles 11:29) is from *Hushah* in Judah.
28. *Maharai* is from *Netophah*, a village near Bethlehem. In 1 Chronicles 27:13, he commands the tenth monthly division of David's army, indicating he rose to significant military leadership beyond his place in the Thirty.
29. *Ittai* from *Gibeah* of Benjamin is especially notable: *Gibeah* was Saul's own capital (1 Samuel 10:26, 11:4). A warrior from Saul's royal city fighting for David is a powerful testimony to David's ability to win loyalty even from the house of Saul's strongest supporters. This is a different *Ittai* from the *Gittite* commander of 2 Samuel 15:19.
30. This Benaiah is distinct from Benaiah son of *Jehoiada* (vv. 20-23). *Pirathon* is in *Ephraim* (Judges 12:15), confirming that David's mighty men included warriors from tribes beyond Judah and Benjamin. *Gaash* is a hill near *Timnath-serah* in Ephraim, where Joshua was buried (Joshua 24:30).
31. The *Arbathite* designation may connect to *Beth-arabah* in the Jordan Valley (Joshua 15:6). *Azmaveth* the *Barhumite* (called *Azmaveth* the *Baharumite* in 1 Chronicles 11:33) is from *Bahurim*, the village near Jerusalem where *Shimei* cursed David during *Absalom*'s rebellion (2 Samuel 16:5).

32. Shaalbim (or Shaalbon) is in the territory of Dan (Judges 1:35). The phrase *benei Yashen* ('sons of Jashen') is unclear -- Jashen may be a family name, and the parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:34 reads differently. The textual difficulties in this section of the list reflect the challenges of transmitting a roster of names across centuries of copying.
33. The designation Hararite (or Ararite) means 'mountain-dweller' -- from the root *har* ('mountain'). Whether this is an ethnic designation, a place name, or a descriptive title is debated. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 11:35 reads 'Ahiam son of Sachar the Hararite,' with slight name variations.
34. Eliam son of Ahithophel the Gilonite is a crucial name. Ahithophel was David's wisest counselor who defected to Absalom (2 Samuel 15:12, 16:23). If this Eliam is the same as the father of Bathsheba (2 Samuel 11:3, where she is called 'daughter of Eliam'), then Bathsheba was the granddaughter of Ahithophel -- which would provide a personal motive for Ahithophel's betrayal: David had violated his granddaughter's honor. The connection is not made explicit in the text but has been widely recognized.
35. Hezrai is from Carmel in Judah (not Mount Carmel in the north), the same town where Nabal lived and where David met Abigail (1 Samuel 25:2). Paarai the Arbite may be from Arab, a town in the hill country of Judah (Joshua 15:52).
36. Zobah is an Aramean kingdom northeast of Israel (2 Samuel 8:3), making Igal possibly a foreign recruit who joined David's forces. Bani the Gadite represents the Transjordanian tribe of Gad -- further evidence that David's elite warriors came from across the full geographic range of Israel and beyond.
37. Zelek the Ammonite is a foreign warrior from Israel's perennial rival east of the Jordan. His inclusion among David's elite demonstrates that loyalty and valor, not ethnicity, determined membership. Naharai from Beeroth (a Hivite city assigned to Benjamin, Joshua 9:17) served as Joab's personal armor-bearer -- a position of extreme trust, as the armor-bearer was the commander's last line of defense.
38. The Ithrites were a clan from Kiriath-jearim (1 Chronicles 2:53), the town where the ark of the covenant rested for twenty years before David brought it to Jerusalem (1 Samuel 7:1-2, 2 Samuel 6:2). Two warriors from this clan appear together, suggesting the Ithrites were a significant military family in David's service.
39. The placement of Uriah's name at the end of the mighty men list is the narrator's most pointed commentary on David's reign. Uriah was a loyal soldier, a member of David's elite guard, a man who refused to go home and sleep with his wife while his comrades were in the field (2 Samuel 11:11). David repaid that loyalty with adultery and murder (2 Samuel 11). The reader who has followed the narrative cannot see Uriah's name here without hearing Nathan's accusation: 'You are the man' (2 Samuel 12:7).
39. The count of thirty-seven (*kol sheloshim veshiv'ah*) does not align neatly with the names listed, as the total depends on how one counts the Three, the secondary group of three (Abishai, Benaiah, and one other), and the Thirty proper. The list likely evolved over time, with names added or retained as the unit's composition changed. The number may represent the total across the entire existence of the unit rather than a single roster at one point in time.

24

Summary: *The anger of the LORD burns against Israel, and he incites David to take a census of the fighting men. David sends Joab and the army commanders throughout the land, from Dan to Beersheba, and after nine months and twenty days they return with the count: eight hundred thousand warriors in Israel and five hundred thousand in Judah. Immediately David's conscience strikes him, and he confesses to the LORD that he has sinned greatly. The prophet Gad brings David three choices of punishment: seven years of famine, three months of flight before enemies, or three days of plague. David chooses to fall into God's hands rather than human hands, and a plague kills seventy thousand men from Dan to Beersheba. When the destroying angel reaches out his hand toward Jerusalem, the LORD relents and commands the angel to stop at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite. David sees the angel and begs God to punish him alone, not the innocent sheep of his people. Gad instructs David to build an altar on Araunah's threshing floor. Araunah offers to give everything freely, but David insists on paying full price, declaring he will not offer the LORD burnt offerings that cost him nothing. David buys the threshing floor and oxen for fifty shekels of silver, builds the altar, and offers burnt offerings and peace offerings. The LORD responds to the plea, and the plague is held back from Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the final chapter of 2 Samuel, and its placement is theologically deliberate. The book that began with David mourning Saul's death ends with David purchasing the site where Solomon will build the Temple. The entire David narrative -- from shepherd boy to fugitive to king to adulterer to broken father -- comes to rest on a threshing floor. David's statement in verse 24, 'I will not offer burnt offerings to the LORD my God that cost me nothing,' is one of the most theologically concentrated sentences in the Old Testament. It redefines sacrifice: a gift that costs the giver nothing is not a gift at all. The threshing floor of Araunah becomes the most expensive piece of real estate in biblical history -- not because of its market value, but because of what will stand on*

it. According to 2 Chronicles 3:1, Solomon builds the Temple on this exact spot. The place where God's judgment stopped becomes the place where God's presence dwells. The place purchased with David's money and David's repentance becomes the altar of the nation.

Translation Friction: The opening verse presents the chapter's most debated problem: 'the anger of the LORD was kindled against Israel, and he incited David against them.' The parallel account in 1 Chronicles 21:1 reads 'Satan stood up against Israel and incited David.' The theological difference is enormous — did God or an adversary provoke the census? The Hebrew vayyaset ('he incited') can carry the sense of provoking or moving someone to action. The tension is usually resolved by noting that both texts affirm God's sovereignty while the Chronicler specifies the proximate agent. The number of fighting men differs significantly between accounts: 2 Samuel gives 800,000 for Israel and 500,000 for Judah; 1 Chronicles 21:5 gives 1,100,000 for Israel and 470,000 for Judah. The purchase price also differs: fifty shekels of silver here versus six hundred shekels of gold in Chronicles — possibly because the Chronicler records the price for the entire site while Samuel records the price for the threshing floor and oxen alone. The punishment options also differ: seven years of famine here versus three years in Chronicles and the Septuagint of Samuel.

Connections: The census sin connects backward to David's entire reign: the king who was told God would build him a house (2 Samuel 7) now counts his military assets as if his security depends on numbers rather than covenant promise. Gad the prophet appeared earlier in David's story (1 Samuel 22:5), advising the fugitive David; now he delivers God's final word to King David. The threshing floor purchase connects forward to 2 Chronicles 3:1, which identifies it as Mount Moriah — the same mountain where Abraham was told to sacrifice Isaac (Genesis 22:2). The site where Abraham offered his son, where David offered his repentance, and where Solomon will offer daily sacrifice are all the same place. David's insistence on paying full price echoes Abraham's insistence on paying full price for the cave of Machpelah (Genesis 23): both patriarchs refuse free gifts when establishing sacred sites. The plague stopped by sacrifice anticipates the entire Temple system: the place where wrath was turned back by an altar becomes the permanent location where Israel's sin is addressed through sacrifice.

¹The anger of the LORD again burned against Israel, and he incited David against them: "Go, count Israel and Judah." ²The king said to Joab, the commander of the army who was with him, "Go through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan to Beersheba, and register the fighting men so that I may know the total number of the people." ³Joab said to the king, "May the LORD your God multiply the people a hundred times over — and may my lord the king's own eyes see it! But why does my lord the king want this?" ⁴But the king's word overruled Joab and the army commanders. So Joab and the commanders went out from the king's presence to register the people of Israel. ⁵They crossed the Jordan and camped at Aroer, south of the town that lies in the middle of the Gad valley, and then toward Jazer. ⁶They came to Gilead and to the land of Tahtim-hodshi, then came to Dan-jaan and circled around toward Sidon. ⁷They came to the fortress of Tyre and all the towns of the Hivites and the Canaanites, then went out to the Negev of Judah at Beersheba. ⁸They traveled through the entire land and arrived back in Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days. ⁹Joab reported the total from the registration to the king: Israel had eight hundred thousand fighting men who could draw the sword, and Judah had five hundred thousand men. ¹⁰David's heart struck him after he had counted the people. David said to the LORD, "I have sinned terribly in what I have done. Now, LORD, please take away the guilt of your servant, because I have acted with great foolishness." ¹¹When David rose in the morning, the word of the LORD had come to the prophet Gad, David's seer: ¹²"Go and tell David: This is what the LORD says — I am holding three options over you. Choose one of them, and I will carry it out against you." ¹³Gad came to David and told him, "Shall seven years of famine come upon your land? Or will you flee three months before your enemies while they pursue you? Or shall there be three days of plague in your land? Think it over and decide what answer I should bring back to the one who sent me." ¹⁴David said to Gad, "I am in terrible anguish. Let us fall into the hand of the LORD, for his compassion is abundant. But let me not fall into human hands." ¹⁵The LORD sent a plague on Israel from the morning until the appointed time, and seventy thousand men died among the people from Dan to Beersheba. ¹⁶When the angel stretched out his hand toward Jerusalem to destroy it, the LORD relented concerning the disaster and said to the angel who was striking the people, "Enough! Now withdraw your hand." The angel of the LORD was at the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite. ¹⁷David spoke to the LORD when he saw the angel striking the people. He said, "Look — I am the one who sinned. I am the one who

did wrong. But these sheep — what have they done? Let your hand fall on me and on my father's house." ¹⁸Gad came to David that same day and said to him, "Go up and set up an altar to the LORD on the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite." ¹⁹David went up, following Gad's word, just as the LORD had commanded. ²⁰Araunah looked out and saw the king and his servants approaching him. Araunah came out and bowed before the king with his face to the ground. ²¹Araunah said, "Why has my lord the king come to his servant?" David said, "To buy the threshing floor from you, to build an altar to the LORD, so that the plague may be held back from the people." ²²Araunah said to David, "Let my lord the king take and offer up whatever seems right to him. Here — the oxen for the burnt offering, and the threshing sledges and ox yokes for firewood." ²³All this Araunah gave to the king — like a king giving to a king. And Araunah said to the king, "May the LORD your God accept you." ²⁴But the king said to Araunah, "No — I will buy it from you at full price. I will not offer burnt offerings to the LORD my God that cost me nothing." David bought the threshing floor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver. ²⁵David built an altar to the LORD there and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. The LORD responded to the plea for the land, and the plague was held back from Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *vayyaset* (from *s-v-t*, 'to incite, move against') is the same verb used in 1 Samuel 26:19 when David asked Saul whether God had incited him. The phrase *vayyosef af YHWH lacharot* ('the anger of the LORD again burned') uses the same construction as 2 Samuel 6:1, implying a recurring pattern. The reason for God's anger against Israel is never stated — it simply burns, and David becomes the instrument through which judgment falls. The command *lekh meneh* ('go, count') uses the imperative of *manah* ('to count, number'), which is not inherently sinful — Moses counted Israel twice by divine command (Numbers 1, 26). The sin lies in the motive: David appears to be counting military strength for his own security rather than at God's command.
2. The phrase *miDan ve'ad Be'er Sheva* ('from Dan to Beersheba') is the standard expression for the full extent of Israelite territory, north to south. The verb *piqdu* ('register, muster') is a military term — this is not a general population census but a count of men available for warfare. David's stated purpose *vayada'ti et mispar ha'am* ('so I may know the number of the people') reveals the motive: he wants to quantify his military power. Joab is identified as *sar hachayil* ('commander of the army'), not simply as David's nephew — his role is official, and David is issuing a royal military order.
3. Joab's response is remarkable: the man who murdered Abner and Amasa, who rarely shows moral sensitivity, recognizes that this census is wrong. His blessing — *veyosef YHWH elohekha* ('may the LORD your God add to') — is genuine, but his question *lammah chafets badavar hazzeh* ('why does my lord the king desire this thing?') is pointed. Joab is asking David to examine his motive. The phrase *ve'einei adoni hammelekh ro'ot* ('and the eyes of my lord the king seeing it') implies that David should be content to witness God's blessing rather than quantify it. When Joab becomes the voice of conscience, the situation is deeply wrong.
4. The verb *vayyechezaq* ('it was strong, it prevailed') indicates David's command overpowered Joab's objection by royal authority, not by persuasion. The phrase *sarei hechayil* ('commanders of the army') shows this was not just Joab's mission — the entire military leadership was deployed. The expression *lifnei hammelekh* ('from the presence of the king') marks a formal departure from the royal court. David remains in Jerusalem while the entire command structure goes out to count.
5. The census route begins in the Transjordan, at Aroer — a city on the northern rim of the Arnon Gorge, marking the southern boundary of Israelite territory east of the Jordan (Deuteronomy 2:36). The phrase *yemin ha'ir* ('the right side of the city') means south in Hebrew geographic orientation, since 'right' corresponds to south when facing east. The mention of Gad and Jazer locates the starting point in Gadite territory. The census begins at the farthest periphery and works inward — a methodical military survey.
6. The route moves north through Gilead (the central Transjordan highlands) to the obscure region of Tahtim-hodshi — a place name that has resisted identification; some emend it to 'the land of the Hittites toward Kadesh.' Dan-jaan may be the well-known city of Dan (the northernmost point of Israel) with a qualifying descriptor. Reaching Sidon means the census extended into Phoenician border territory. The itinerary traces the outer boundary of David's kingdom, confirming this is a military registration of the realm's full extent.
7. The route descends from Sidon to Tyre (*mivtsar Tsor*, 'the fortress of Tyre'), continues through the remaining non-Israelite enclaves (Hivite and Canaanite towns still within the borders), and finally reaches Beersheba in the far south. The circuit is complete: from the southeastern corner (Aroer) up through the Transjordan, across to the far north (Dan, Sidon), down the coast (Tyre), and finally to the Negev. The mention of Hivite and Canaanite towns within the census zone reveals that David's kingdom contained non-Israelite populations who were counted or at least traversed.
8. The verb *vayyashtu* ('they traveled about') from *sh-v-t* means to rove or go back and forth — the same root David used in his command to Joab in verse 2. The duration — nine months and twenty days — is strikingly precise and emphasizes the massive scale of the operation. Nearly ten months of military manpower devoted to counting rather than defending or governing. The return to Jerusalem sets the stage for what follows: David now has his number, and it will immediately bring him grief.
9. The phrase *ish chayil sholef cherev* ('men of valor who draw the sword') confirms the census was military in nature — only combat-ready men were counted. The separate tallies for Israel and Judah reveal that even under David's united monarchy, the two entities were counted as distinct political units. The numbers (800,000 and 500,000) differ from the Chronicler's account (1,100,000 and 470,000 in 1 Chronicles 21:5). The Hebrew word *elef*

can mean 'thousand' or 'military unit/clan,' which may account for some numerical discrepancies across biblical texts.

10. The phrase *vayyakh lev David oto* ('David's heart struck him') uses the same expression found in 1 Samuel 24:5 when David's conscience struck him for cutting Saul's robe. The heart in Hebrew thought is not the seat of emotion but of moral reasoning and will — David's own judgment condemns him. His confession *chatati me'od* ('I have sinned greatly') is immediate and unqualified, with no attempt to shift blame. The verb *niskalti* ('I have acted foolishly') from *s-k-l* implies not mere stupidity but moral recklessness — acting without regard for consequences. David asks God to *ha'aver na et avon avdekha* ('please pass over the guilt of your servant'), using *avon* — guilt that carries consequences, not just the act itself.
11. Gad is identified with two titles: *hannavi* ('the prophet') and *chozeh David* ('David's seer'). The term *chozeh* ('seer') derives from *chazah* ('to see, perceive in vision') and designates someone who receives revelation through visionary experience. Gad has been part of David's life since the fugitive days (1 Samuel 22:5) and now delivers the final prophetic word David will receive in the book. The timing — *babboqer* ('in the morning') — suggests David spent the night in anguish after his confession in verse 10, and God's response comes at dawn.
12. The verb *notel* ('lifting, holding over') conveys the image of three weights suspended above David — punishment is certain, but David is given the unprecedented option of choosing its form. The phrase *bechar lekha* ('choose for yourself') places the weight of the decision on David personally. The construction *ve'e'esheh lakh* ('and I will do it to you') makes clear that all three options involve God acting against David and his people. This is not mercy versus judgment but judgment in three forms.
13. The three punishments escalate in intensity but decrease in duration: seven years of famine, three months of military defeat, or three days of plague. The Chronicler and the Septuagint of this verse read 'three years' of famine rather than seven, which may be the earlier reading (maintaining a pattern of three). The phrase *nuskha lifnei tsarekha* ('your fleeing before your enemies') would reverse David's entire military career — the warrior king becoming a fugitive again. The word *dever* ('plague, pestilence') is a standard term for epidemic disease understood as divine punishment. Gad's closing instruction — *da ure'eh mah ashiv sholchi davar* ('know and see what word I should return to the one who sent me') — frames the prophet as a messenger awaiting a reply.
14. David's answer *tsar li me'od* ('I am in great distress') acknowledges the impossibility of the choice without evading it. His reasoning is theological: God's *rachamim* ('compassion,' from *rechem*, 'womb') makes divine punishment preferable to human cruelty. The phrase *nippelah na veyad YHWH* ('let us fall into the hand of the LORD') uses the cohortative — David includes himself and his people in the falling. By choosing plague (the three-day option), David implicitly rejects famine (which would fall hardest on the poor) and military defeat (which would empower Israel's enemies). The plague falls directly from God's hand, with no human intermediary profiting from the suffering.
15. The phrase *mehabboqer ve'ad et mo'ed* ('from the morning until the appointed time') is debated: *mo'ed* could mean the time of the evening sacrifice (about 3 PM), or it could refer to a divinely appointed endpoint. Some interpreters take it as 'until the time of assembly' or 'until the set time' — meaning God had predetermined when the plague would stop. The death toll — *shiv'im elef ish* ('seventy thousand men') — is devastating. The census counted military men; the plague kills military men. The phrase *miDan ve'ad Be'er Sheva* echoes verse 2: the census traversed the land from Dan to Beersheba, and the plague follows the same path.
16. The verb *vayyinnachem* ('he relented, he was grieved') from *n-ch-m* does not mean God changed his mind in the sense of admitting error; it means God's response shifted in light of the situation — the judgment had accomplished its purpose. The command *rav attah heref yadekha* ('Enough! Now let your hand drop') is abrupt and authoritative. The angel *hamashchit* ('the destroyer') is a specific role — the same term used for the destroying agent in the Passover narrative (Exodus 12:23). Araunah (also spelled Ornan in Chronicles) is identified as *haYevusi* ('the Jebusite'), indicating he is a non-Israelite resident of Jerusalem from the pre-Davidic population. His threshing floor on the high ground north of the City of David is the location tradition identifies with Mount Moriah.
17. David's prayer is one of the most raw intercessions in Scripture. He uses two verbs: *chatati* ('I sinned') and *he'eveti* ('I acted perversely, I twisted what was right'). The metaphor of the people as *tson* ('sheep, flock') is not mere sentiment — David was a shepherd before he was a king, and the shepherd-king metaphor runs through his entire story. His plea *tehi na yadkha bi uve'vet avi* ('let your hand be against me and my father's house') is an offer of substitution: punish me, not them. This echoes the logic of sacrifice that will be formalized on this very spot when the Temple is built — one bearing the consequences that belong to the many.
18. The command *aleh* ('go up') is geographically precise — the threshing floor is on higher ground than the City of David, on the ridge to the north. The verb *haqem* ('set up, establish') from *q-v-m* is used for erecting something permanent, not improvising. The instruction to build a *mizbeach* ('altar') connects David's act to the patriarchal pattern: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob all built altars at sites of divine encounter. Gad functions here as the mediator between God's judgment (verse 16) and David's response, directing the king to the exact place where the angel stopped.
19. The verse is brief and emphasizes obedience: David acts *kidvar Gad* ('according to the word of Gad') and *ka'asher tsivvah YHWH* ('as the LORD commanded'). The double attribution — to Gad and to God — reinforces the prophetic chain: God commands, the prophet speaks, the king obeys. After the self-willed census, David's immediate compliance here marks a return to proper order. The contrast with verse 4, where David's word overpowered Joab, is pointed: now David submits to God's word through the prophet.
20. The verb *vayyashqef* ('he looked out, gazed down') implies Araunah was at an elevated position — consistent with a threshing floor on a hilltop. His prostration (*vayyishtachu appayv artsah*, 'he bowed with his face to the ground') is the full gesture of submission before a monarch. Araunah's immediate, respectful response suggests he is a man of standing — possibly a former Jebusite noble who retained property and status after David's conquest of Jerusalem.

- 21.** David states three linked purposes: liqnot ('to buy') the threshing floor, livnot mizbeach ('to build an altar'), and vete'atsar hammaggefah ('so the plague will be restrained'). The verb te'atsar (from '-ts-r, 'to restrain, hold back, stop') treats the plague as an active force that must be checked. The word maggefah ('plague, striking') from the root n-g-f ('to strike, smite') emphasizes that the plague is a blow from God, not a natural disease. David's transparency about his purpose — telling Araunah exactly why he needs the site — is notable.
- 22.** Araunah's generosity is total: he offers not only the site but the animals and equipment. The baqar ('oxen, cattle') are working animals — valuable livestock. The morigim ('threshing sledges') were heavy wooden platforms studded with stones or metal teeth, dragged over grain by oxen — here offered as firewood for the sacrifice. The kelei habaqar ('equipment of the oxen') includes the yokes and harnesses. Araunah is offering to dismantle his entire agricultural operation for David's altar. The word olah ('burnt offering') is the sacrifice entirely consumed by fire — nothing kept back for the worshiper.
- 23.** The phrase hakkol natan Araunah hammelekh lammelekh ('all this Araunah the king gave to the king') is textually ambiguous. The word hammelekh ('the king') attached to Araunah may mean 'Araunah, as a king' (acting with royal generosity), or it may be a remnant of an actual title — suggesting Araunah was a Jebusite king or noble before David's conquest. The blessing YHWH elohekha yirtsekha ('may the LORD your God accept you') uses the verb ratsah, the technical term for God's favorable acceptance of a sacrifice (Leviticus 1:4). Araunah, a non-Israelite, speaks the theology of Israelite sacrifice with precision.
- 24.** David's declaration velo a'aleh laYHWH elohai olot chinnam ('I will not offer to the LORD my God burnt offerings for nothing') establishes a principle that reverberates through all subsequent biblical theology of sacrifice. The word chinnam means 'freely, for nothing, without cost' — David rejects costless worship. The infinitive absolute qano eqneh ('I will certainly buy') emphasizes his determination. The price — chamishim sheqalim kesef ('fifty shekels of silver') — differs from 1 Chronicles 21:25, which gives six hundred shekels of gold. The most common resolution is that Samuel records the price for the threshing floor and oxen alone, while Chronicles records the price for the entire site (the broader hilltop). Fifty silver shekels was a significant sum — roughly the price of a substantial property.
- 25.** The verse records three actions and two results. Actions: David builds (vayyiven) an altar, offers burnt offerings (olot — complete surrender), and offers peace offerings (shelamim — communion sacrifices shared between God, priest, and worshiper). Results: the LORD responds (vayyei'ater, from '-t-r, 'to be entreated, to respond to prayer') and the plague is restrained (vate'atsar hammaggefah). The verb vayyei'ater is passive — 'the LORD was entreated' or 'let himself be entreated' — implying that God chose to respond favorably to David's sacrifice and prayer. The shelamim ('peace offerings') from shalom suggest restoration of wholeness between God and Israel. This final verse of 2 Samuel establishes the threshing floor as a place of answered prayer, accepted sacrifice, and stayed judgment — the theological foundation for everything the Temple will represent.

1 Kings

1

Summary: *King David is old and failing. While his servants provide a young woman named Abishag to attend him, his son Adonijah launches a bid for the throne, gathering military and priestly allies. The prophet Nathan devises a counter-strategy with Bathsheba, David's wife, and together they remind the aging king of his oath to make Solomon his successor. David acts decisively: he orders Solomon anointed at the Gihon spring. The trumpet sounds, the people erupt in celebration, and Adonijah's feast collapses in panic. The chapter ends with Adonijah clinging to the altar horns for sanctuary and Solomon granting him a conditional pardon.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most politically sophisticated narratives in the Hebrew Bible — a succession crisis told entirely through dialogue, positioning, and symbolic action. No divine oracle drives the plot; no angel intervenes. God is mentioned but does not speak. The transfer of power depends entirely on human agency: Nathan's political cunning, Bathsheba's rhetorical skill before the king, and David's capacity to issue commands even from his deathbed. The literary structure mirrors the political struggle: Adonijah's feast at the Stone of Zoheleth is set against Solomon's anointing at the Gihon spring, two rival ceremonies happening almost simultaneously. The narrator never explicitly condemns Adonijah or endorses Solomon — instead, he lets the reader see who has the king's word and who does not. The detail that David 'did not know' Abishag (verse 4) does double duty: it signals his physical decline and, by echoing the sexual language of the Hebrew Bible's power narratives, announces that the era of David's virility — and therefore his kingship — is effectively over.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 4 presents a translation challenge with the phrase vehammelekh lo yeda'ah ('and the king did not know her'). The verb yada ('to know') carries both its ordinary cognitive sense and its sexual sense throughout the Hebrew Bible. We render it transparently as 'was not intimate with her,' since the entire passage is establishing David's physical decline. The oath David swore to Bathsheba about Solomon (referenced in verses 13, 17, 30) is never recorded in 2 Samuel — either a source has been lost, the oath was private, or it is a diplomatic fiction crafted by Nathan. The text presents it as genuine and David confirms it, so we translate accordingly without resolving the historical question. The verb hithnasse in verse 5 (Adonijah 'exalting himself') uses the hitpa'el form of nasa, which implies self-promotion — he is lifting himself up rather than being elevated by others or by God. This reflexive form is critical to the narrator's characterization and we preserve it with 'was promoting himself.'*

Connections: The opening phrase vehammelekh David zaqen ('and King David was old') echoes the aging of earlier patriarchs — Abraham (Genesis 24:1), Isaac (Genesis 27:1), and Joshua (Joshua 23:1) — where advanced age triggers succession crises. Adonijah's self-promotion deliberately mirrors Absalom's earlier coup (2 Samuel 15:1-6): the same chariots, runners, and handsome appearance. The narrator expects the reader to see the parallel and recognize Adonijah as repeating a failed pattern. Solomon's anointing at the Gihon spring connects Israel's royal succession to a water source — recalling how living water symbolizes divine blessing throughout the Hebrew Bible. The horn of oil (qeren hashamen) used to anoint Solomon from the tabernacle (verse 39) links his kingship to sacred rather than merely political authority, tying back to Samuel's anointing of both Saul (1 Samuel 10:1) and David (1 Samuel 16:13). Adonijah's flight to the altar horns (verse 50) invokes the asylum law of Exodus 21:13-14, where the altar protects the accidental killer but not the murderer — his claim to sanctuary is implicitly a claim of innocence.

¹King David was old, advanced in years. They would cover him with garments, but he could not get warm. ²So his servants said to him, "Let them search for a young woman, a virgin, for my lord the king. She will attend the king and be his caretaker. She will lie close to you so that my lord the king may be warm." ³They searched for a beautiful young woman throughout the entire territory of Israel, and they found Abishag the Shunammite and brought her to the king. ⁴The young woman was extraordinarily beautiful. She became the king's caretaker and served him, but the king was not intimate with her. ⁵Now Adonijah son of Haggith was promoting himself, saying, "I will be king." He acquired chariots and cavalry for himself, along with fifty men to run ahead of him. ⁶His father had never once challenged him by asking, "Why have you done this?" He was also very handsome in appearance, and his mother had borne him after Absalom. ⁷He conferred with Joab son of Zeruiah and with Abiathar the priest, and they threw their support behind Adonijah. ⁸But Zadok the priest, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, Nathan the prophet, Shimei, Rei, and the warriors who belonged to David were not with Adonijah. ⁹Adonijah slaughtered sheep, cattle, and fattened animals at the Stone of Zoheleth, which is beside En-rogel. He invited all his brothers — the king's sons — and all the men of Judah who served the king. ¹⁰But he did not invite Nathan the prophet, or Benaiah, or the warriors, or his brother Solomon. ¹¹Nathan said to Bathsheba, Solomon's mother, "Have you not heard that Adonijah son of Haggith has made himself king? And our lord David does not know about it." ¹²Now then, come — let me advise you so that you can save your own life and the life of your son Solomon." ¹³Go and enter King David's presence and say to him, 'Did you not, my lord the king, swear to your servant woman, saying: Your son Solomon will reign after me — he will sit on my throne? Why then has Adonijah become king?' ¹⁴While you are still speaking there with the king, I will come in after you and confirm your words." ¹⁵Bathsheba went in to the king in his private chamber. The king was very old, and Abishag the Shunammite was attending to the king. ¹⁶Bathsheba knelt and bowed low before the king. The king said, "What do you want?" ¹⁷She said to him, "My lord, you swore by the LORD your God to your servant woman: 'Your son Solomon will reign after me — he will sit on my throne.' ¹⁸But now — Adonijah has made himself king! And now, my lord the king, you did not know about it. ¹⁹He has slaughtered oxen, fattened cattle, and sheep in abundance. He has invited all the king's sons, and Abiathar the priest, and Joab the commander of the army. But your servant Solomon — he did not invite. ²⁰And you, my lord the king — the eyes of all Israel are on you, waiting for you to declare who will sit on the throne of my lord the king after him. ²¹Otherwise, when my lord the king lies down with his ancestors, I and my son Solomon will be treated as criminals." ²²While she was still speaking with the king, Nathan the prophet arrived. ²³They announced to the king, "Nathan the prophet is here." He came before the king and prostrated himself with his face to the ground. ²⁴Nathan said, "My lord the king, did you declare, 'Adonijah will reign after me — he will sit on my throne'? ²⁵For today he went down and slaughtered oxen, fattened cattle, and sheep in abundance. He invited all the king's sons, the commanders of the army, and Abiathar the priest. Right now they are eating and drinking in his presence and shouting, 'Long live King Adonijah!' ²⁶But me — your servant — and Zadok the priest, and Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and your servant Solomon, he did not invite. ²⁷If this matter was authorized by my lord the king, then you did not inform your servant who is to sit on the throne of my lord the king after him." ²⁸King David responded and said, "Call Bathsheba to me." She came into the king's presence and stood before the king. ²⁹The king swore an oath and said, "As the LORD lives — who has redeemed my life from every distress — ³⁰just as I swore to you by the LORD, the God of Israel, saying, 'Your son Solomon will reign after me — he will sit on my throne in my place' — so I will do

this very day." ³¹Bathsheba bowed with her face to the ground and prostrated herself before the king. She said, "May my lord King David live forever!" ³²King David said, "Summon Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah son of Jehoiada." They came before the king. ³³The king said to them, "Take your lord's servants with you. Mount my son Solomon on my own mule and bring him down to the Gihon spring. ³⁴There Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet will anoint him as king over Israel. Then sound the trumpet and declare, 'Long live King Solomon!' ³⁵Then you will come up after him, and he will come and sit on my throne. He will reign in my place, for I have appointed him to be leader over Israel and over Judah." ³⁶Benaiah son of Jehoiada answered the king and said, "So be it! May the LORD, the God of my lord the king, confirm it. ³⁷As the LORD was with my lord the king, so may He be with Solomon. And may He make his throne even greater than the throne of my lord King David." ³⁸So Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and the Kerethites and Pelethites went down. They mounted Solomon on King David's mule and brought him to the Gihon spring. ³⁹Zadok the priest took the horn of oil from the tent and anointed Solomon. They sounded the trumpet, and all the people shouted, "Long live King Solomon!" ⁴⁰All the people went up after him, playing flutes and celebrating with tremendous joy, until the ground split open from their noise. ⁴¹Adonijah and all the guests with him heard it just as they were finishing their meal. When Joab heard the sound of the trumpet, he said, "Why is the city in such an uproar?" ⁴²While he was still speaking, Jonathan son of Abiathar the priest arrived. Adonijah said, "Come in — you are a worthy man, and you must be bringing good news." ⁴³Jonathan answered and said to Adonijah, "No — our lord King David has made Solomon king." ⁴⁴The king sent with him Zadok the priest, Nathan the prophet, Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and the Kerethites and Pelethites. ⁴⁵Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anointed him king at the Gihon spring. They came up from there celebrating, and the city is in an uproar. That is the noise you heard. ⁴⁶And Solomon has already taken his seat on the royal throne." ⁴⁷And the king's servants came to bless our lord King David, saying, 'May God make Solomon's name greater than your name and make his throne greater than your throne.' And the king bowed in worship on his bed. ⁴⁸And the king himself said, 'Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who has granted someone to sit on my throne today while my own eyes can see it.' ⁴⁹All the guests of Adonijah trembled with fear. They got up and scattered, each man going his own way. ⁵⁰Adonijah was terrified of Solomon. He got up, went, and seized the horns of the altar. ⁵¹It was reported to Solomon: "Adonijah is terrified of King Solomon. He has seized the horns of the altar, saying, 'Let King Solomon swear to me today that he will not put his servant to death by the sword.'" ⁵²Solomon said, "If he proves to be a man of worth, not a single hair of his will fall to the ground. But if wickedness is found in him, he will die." ⁵³King Solomon sent men, and they brought him down from the altar. He came and prostrated himself before King Solomon. Solomon said to him, "Go to your house."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *zaqen ba bayyamim* ('old, come into the days') is the standard Hebrew idiom for advanced age — literally 'entering into his days,' meaning he had arrived at the full measure of his allotted time. The identical phrase describes Abraham in Genesis 24:1, creating a deliberate echo: both patriarchs face succession crises in their final days.
1. The inability to retain warmth (*velo yicham lo*, 'and it was not warm to him') is presented as a medical fact, not a metaphor. The verb *chamam* ('to be warm') in the qal imperfect indicates an ongoing, unresolvable condition. The servants' solution in the next verses — a young woman to provide body heat — was a recognized medical practice in the ancient Near East, attested in Greek and Roman sources as well.
2. The word *sokhenet* ('caretaker, nurse') is rare in the Hebrew Bible — this is its only occurrence. It derives from the root *sakan* ('to be of service, to attend to'), related to the Akkadian *shakanu*. The term implies intimate personal care beyond mere domestic service. The servants' proposal is framed with formal court language — *adoni hammelek* ('my lord the king') — but shifts to second person (*becheiqekha*, 'in your bosom') when describing the physical arrangement, creating an awkward intimacy within diplomatic formality.
2. The word *betulah* ('virgin') specifies not merely a young woman but one who has not been sexually active. In the context of royal politics, a virgin attendant cannot be accused of prior allegiance to another household — she enters the king's service without complicating alliances.
3. The search covers *bekhol ge'vul Yisrael* ('throughout every border of Israel'), indicating a kingdom-wide effort — this is not a casual selection but a deliberate search across the realm. The verb *baqash* ('to seek, to search for') implies purposeful, sustained effort.
3. Abishag is identified as *haShunammite* ('the Shunammite'), from Shunem in the Jezreel Valley — the same town where Elisha will later stay with a prominent woman (2 Kings 4:8-37). The name *Avishag* may derive from *avi* ('my father') and *shagah* ('to wander, to err'), though the etymology is uncertain. Shunem was a fertile, prosperous town in the Issachar territory, and her selection from there suggests both beauty and status.

4. The phrase *yafah ad me'od* ('beautiful to the extreme') intensifies beyond ordinary attractiveness. The narrator establishes Abishag's exceptional beauty precisely to underscore the significance of what follows: *vehammelekh lo yeda'ah* ('and the king did not know her'). The verb *yada* ('to know') in its sexual sense appears throughout the Hebrew Bible's narratives of power and intimacy (Genesis 4:1, Genesis 19:5, Judges 19:25). David's failure to 'know' Abishag is the narrator's verdict on his physical capacity — the man whose sexual vigor drove some of the most consequential episodes in 2 Samuel can no longer function as a man. The political implication is immediate: a king who cannot 'know' cannot generate heirs, and therefore cannot secure succession by natural means.
4. The verb *vattesharethu* ('and she served him') uses the same root (*sharat*) applied to Samuel's temple service and Joshua's service to Moses — dignified ministerial attendance, not menial labor.
5. The *hitpael* verb *mithnasse* ('exalting himself, promoting himself') is reflexive — Adonijah is elevating himself rather than being elevated by God, by the king, or by the people. The form is a participle indicating ongoing, sustained self-promotion rather than a single act of ambition. The declaration *ani emlokh* ('I myself will reign') places the pronoun *ani* emphatically at the front — 'I — I will be king.'
5. The apparatus of chariots, cavalry, and fifty runners directly mirrors Absalom's earlier self-promotion in 2 Samuel 15:1. The narrator expects the reader to recognize the parallel: another handsome son of David seizes royal trappings without royal authorization. The fifty runners (*chamishim ish ratsim lefanav*) served as a visible display of royal pretension — a human escort that announced to everyone in Jerusalem that Adonijah considered himself the heir apparent.
6. The verb *atsavo* ('grieved him, pained him, corrected him') reveals David's parental failure — he had never caused Adonijah discomfort by questioning his behavior. The phrase *lo atsavo aviv miyyamav* ('his father had not grieved him from his days') indicates a lifelong pattern of indulgence, not a single oversight. The phrase *miyyamav* ('from his days') means 'ever in his life.' David's inability to discipline his sons is a recurring theme — he could not confront Amnon after the rape of Tamar (2 Samuel 13:21) and could not bring himself to punish Absalom.
6. The note that Adonijah was *tov to'ar me'od* ('very good of form/appearance') uses the same language applied to David himself (1 Samuel 16:12) and to Absalom (2 Samuel 14:25). The narrator is drawing a visual line: handsome sons of David who presume on their appearance and position. The chronological detail that Haggith bore him *acharei Avshalom* ('after Absalom') means Adonijah was the next surviving son in the birth order after Absalom's death — making his claim to the throne plausible by primogeniture.
7. The phrase *vayyihu devarav im* ('his words were with') indicates sustained political consultation, not a single conversation. Joab, David's longtime military commander, and Abiathar, one of the two chief priests, represent the old guard of David's administration. Their support gives Adonijah both military and religious legitimacy — the sword and the altar.
7. The verb *vayyazru* ('and they helped') combined with *acharei Adoniyyah* ('after/behind Adonijah') means they actively assisted and followed his cause. The preposition *acharei* ('after, behind') implies political allegiance — walking behind a leader as his supporters. Abiathar's choice here is fateful: the priest who survived the massacre at Nob (1 Samuel 22) and served David through decades of crisis now backs the wrong son. His removal from the priesthood under Solomon (1 Kings 2:26-27) will fulfill the word against Eli's house.
8. The list of those who did not support Adonijah reads as a counter-establishment: Zadok (the other chief priest), Benaiah (commander of David's personal guard, the Kerethites and Pelethites), Nathan (the court prophet), and David's elite warriors (*haggiborim*). The division is sharp — old guard versus inner circle, with the professional military and the prophetic voice staying loyal to David.
8. The phrase *lo hayu im Adoniyyahu* ('were not with Adonijah') is understated but decisive. In Hebrew political narrative, being 'with' (*im*) someone means active alliance. Not being 'with' Adonijah means they either opposed him or remained loyal to David's unrevealed choice. The narrator is mapping the political geography before the crisis erupts.
9. The sacrificial feast at Even *haZzochelet* ('the Stone of Zoheth/the Serpent Stone') beside Ein Rogel ('the Fuller's Spring') serves as Adonijah's coronation banquet — a public ceremony designed to create political facts on the ground before David can act. The location is just south of Jerusalem in the Kidron Valley, outside the city but within view of it.
9. The name *Zochelet* may derive from *zachal* ('to creep, to crawl') — hence 'Serpent Stone' or 'Sliding Stone.' The term *meri* ('fatted animal') refers to grain-fed livestock reserved for significant occasions. The scale of the sacrifice — sheep, cattle, and fattened animals — signals a royal feast, not a private dinner. Adonijah invites *kol echav benei hammelekh* ('all his brothers, the sons of the king'), meaning every prince except Solomon, whose exclusion is deliberate and noted in verse 10.
10. The list of those excluded mirrors the list of non-supporters in verse 8. Adonijah's guest list is his political map — he invites only those already aligned with him and deliberately excludes anyone who might object. The exclusion of Solomon (*Shelomoh achiv*, 'Solomon his brother') is placed last in the list for emphasis, confirming that Adonijah knows exactly who his rival is. The verb *qara* ('to call, to invite') in the negative (*lo qara*) makes the exclusion an active, deliberate choice.
11. Nathan's approach to Bathsheba rather than directly to David reveals his political sophistication. He needs an intermediary who has personal stakes in the outcome — Bathsheba's life and her son's life depend on which prince takes the throne. The verb *malakh* ('has become king, has reigned') is stated as accomplished fact, though Adonijah has not been formally crowned. Nathan is framing the situation with maximum urgency.
11. The phrase *va'adonenu David lo yada* ('and our lord David does not know') uses the same verb *yada* from verse 4. David who 'did not know' Abishag also 'does not know' about the coup — his ignorance is both physical and political. Nathan's use of *adonenu* ('our lord') maintains formal loyalty to David even while revealing the crisis.

12. Nathan's words *umalleti et nafshekh ve'et nefesh benekh Shelomoh* ('save your life and the life of your son Solomon') make explicit what is at stake: succession disputes in the ancient Near East routinely ended with the losing faction being executed. If Adonijah consolidates power, Bathsheba and Solomon are dead. The verb *malat* ('to escape, to save, to deliver') in the *piel* imperative conveys urgent action — escape from lethal danger.
12. The noun *etsah* ('counsel, advice') and verb *i'atsekh* ('let me counsel you') frame Nathan's role as royal counselor even as he orchestrates a political intervention. His plan unfolds across verses 13-14 with careful staging.
13. Nathan scripts Bathsheba's speech with precision. The oath formula — *ki Shelomoh venekh yimlokh acharai vehu yeshev al kis'i* ('surely Solomon your son will reign after me and he will sit on my throne') — emphasizes both succession (*acharai*, 'after me') and the physical seat of power (*kis'i*, 'my throne'). Whether this oath was actually sworn is a matter of scholarly debate, but Nathan's strategy depends on David affirming it.
13. Bathsheba is instructed to identify herself as *amatekha* ('your servant woman'), a term of formal self-deprecation before royalty. The rhetorical structure moves from the oath (what David promised) to the crisis (*maddu'a malakh Adoniyyahu*, 'why has Adonijah become king?'), forcing David to reconcile his word with the present reality.
14. Nathan's plan involves precise timing — Bathsheba speaks first, then Nathan enters as an apparently independent witness to confirm her account. The verb *mille'ti* ('I will fill up, I will complete') literally means 'to fill' — Nathan will fill out or complete Bathsheba's words, adding his prophetic authority to her personal appeal. The staging creates the appearance of two independent testimonies converging, following the legal principle that a matter is established by two witnesses (Deuteronomy 19:15).
15. The word *hachadrah* ('into the chamber, into the inner room') specifies that this audience occurs in David's private quarters, not in a public throne room. The narrator reminds us again that *hammelekh zaqen me'od* ('the king was very old'), framing every decision David makes in this chapter against his physical frailty. Abishag's presence as *mesharrat* ('attending, serving') reminds the reader of the opening scene and David's diminished state. Bathsheba enters the room of an aged, bedridden king attended by a young woman — the visual contrast underscores the urgency of her mission.
16. Two verbs describe Bathsheba's obeisance: *vattiqod* ('she knelt, she bowed her head') and *vattishtachu* ('she prostrated herself'). The double gesture — kneeling followed by full prostration — is the complete court protocol for approaching the king. David's response *mah lakh* ('what is to you?' / 'what do you want?') is terse and direct, the question of an old king who does not waste words.
17. Bathsheba follows Nathan's script closely but adds a significant element: she specifies that David swore *ba-YHWH Elohekha* ('by the LORD your God'), invoking the divine name as guarantor of the oath. This raises the stakes — breaking such an oath would be a violation not only of a promise to Bathsheba but of a vow sworn by God's name. Whether Nathan instructed this addition or Bathsheba supplied it herself, the rhetorical effect is to make David's oath irrevocable.
18. The repeated *ve'attah* ('and now') creates rhetorical urgency — the oath was then, but the crisis is now. The statement *Adoniyyah malakh* ('Adonijah has become king / reigns') is presented as accomplished fact. Bathsheba's accusation is gentle but devastating: *ve'attah adoni hammelekh lo yada'ta* ('and now, my lord the king, you did not know'). The verb *yada* again — David did not 'know' Abishag (v4), did not 'know' about the coup (v11), and Bathsheba now confronts him with his ignorance directly. The repetition of *lo yada* ('did not know') throughout the chapter's opening creates a portrait of a king who has lost awareness of everything happening around him.
19. Bathsheba reframes the information from verses 9-10 for David, adding her own emphasis. She calls Joab *sar hatsava* ('commander of the army'), highlighting the military dimension of the conspiracy. She places Solomon last and calls him *avdekha* ('your servant'), subtly reinforcing Solomon's loyalty to David in contrast to Adonijah's self-serving ambition. The final clause — *veli-Shelomoh avdekha lo qara* ('but Solomon your servant he did not invite') — isolates Solomon's exclusion for maximum rhetorical impact.
20. Bathsheba shifts from reporting the crisis to assigning David his responsibility. The phrase *einei khol Yisrael alekha* ('the eyes of all Israel are upon you') is a powerful image of national expectation focused on one man. The infinitive *lehagid* ('to declare, to tell') makes clear that what Israel needs is a public, authoritative declaration from the king. Bathsheba is telling David that his silence has created a vacuum that Adonijah is filling. The phrase *acharav* ('after him') at the end refers to David's own death, a reality Bathsheba addresses directly.
21. Bathsheba concludes with the ultimate stakes: *ki-shkhav adoni hammelekh im avotav* ('when my lord the king lies down with his fathers') is the standard euphemism for death. The word *chatta'im* ('sinners, offenders, criminals') does not mean they will be considered morally guilty but rather politically marked — in a new regime under Adonijah, Bathsheba and Solomon would be classified as enemies of the state and eliminated. The term carries both its moral sense ('sinners') and its political sense ('offenders against the crown'). Bathsheba's speech is a masterpiece of persuasion: she moves from oath to crisis to responsibility to personal danger in four verses.
22. The timing is precise — *odannah medaberet* ('while she was still speaking') — Nathan enters exactly as planned (verse 14). The narrator records the choreography without comment, letting the reader see the coordination. The phrase *navi* ('prophet') attached to Nathan's name at this moment is significant: he enters not merely as a courtier but in his prophetic capacity, adding divine authority to the political intervention.
23. Nathan is formally announced — *vayyagidu lammelekh* ('they told the king') — indicating that even in David's diminished state, court protocol is observed. Nathan then performs the full prostration: *vayyishtachu lammelekh al appav artsah* ('he bowed to the king upon his face to the ground'). The phrase *al appav* ('upon his face/nose') emphasizes complete submission — Nathan, despite being a prophet who once confronted David about Uriah (2 Samuel 12), approaches now in full deference.

24. Nathan's opening question is a calculated provocation. Rather than asking 'Did you know about Adonijah?' — which might invite a simple no — he asks whether David authorized it: *attah amarta* ('you yourself said'). The pronoun *attah* ('you') is emphatic. Nathan forces David to either claim responsibility for Adonijah's coup or deny it, leaving no room for passivity. The phrase mirrors Bathsheba's oath formula (verse 17) but substitutes Adonijah for Solomon, making the implied question: which son did you actually choose?
25. Nathan adds details Bathsheba did not mention: the military commanders (*sarei hatsava*, 'commanders of the army') are present, and the feast is actively underway. The clause *vehinnam okhelim veshotim lefanav* ('and look — they are eating and drinking before him') uses the participial form to indicate action happening right now, at this very moment. The acclamation *yechi hammelekh Adoniyyahu* ('may King Adonijah live!') is the royal acclamation — the same formula used for legitimate kings. Nathan is telling David that a coronation is happening while he lies in bed.
26. Nathan places himself first in the exclusion list with emphatic pronouns: *veli ani avdekha* ('and to me, I your servant'). He personalizes the snub — Adonijah excluded the prophet, the loyal priest, the guard commander, and the king's own chosen son. Like Bathsheba, Nathan calls Solomon *avdekha* ('your servant'), reinforcing Solomon's loyalty. The repeated *lo qara* ('he did not invite') hammers the point: Adonijah's feast is a factional gathering, not a national celebration.
27. Nathan's closing question is devastatingly effective. The conditional *im* ('if') sets up a lose-lose for inaction: if David authorized this, then he has failed to inform his most trusted advisors. If he did not, then a coup is underway. Either way, David must act. The verb *hoda'ta* ('you made known, you informed') is from the root *yada* — yet another occurrence of the 'knowing' theme. David who does not 'know' has also not made anything 'known.' Nathan concludes where Bathsheba began: *mi yeshev al kisse adoni hammelekh acharav* ('who will sit on the throne of my lord the king after him') — the succession question, still unanswered.
28. David's first action is to summon Bathsheba back — she had apparently withdrawn when Nathan entered (court protocol may have required her to leave during the prophet's audience). The verb *vatta'amod* ('and she stood') indicates formal attendance — Bathsheba stands before the king rather than prostrating again, suggesting the audience has shifted from petition to royal command. David is about to issue decrees.
29. David's oath formula *chai YHWH asher padah et nafshi mikkol tsarah* ('as the LORD lives who has redeemed my life from all distress') is deeply personal. The verb *padah* ('to redeem, to ransom') is a covenant term for God's deliverance, and *tsarah* ('distress, trouble, adversity') encompasses everything from Saul's pursuit to Absalom's rebellion. David swears by the living God and by his own experience of divine rescue — this is not a formulaic oath but a summation of his entire life story compressed into one sentence.
30. David confirms the oath with full specificity: *ba-YHWH Elohei Yisrael* ('by the LORD, the God of Israel'). He adds a word Bathsheba did not use: *tachtai* ('in my place, instead of me'), explicitly naming Solomon as his replacement. The decisive phrase *ki khen e'eseh hayyom hazzeh* ('for so I will do this very day') transforms the oath from past commitment to present action. The word *hayyom* ('today') is urgent — not tomorrow, not after deliberation, but now. David's mental clarity in this moment stands in sharp contrast to his physical frailty.
31. Bathsheba's response *yechi adoni hammelekh David le'olam* ('may my lord King David live forever') is both formal gratitude and political acclamation — the same formula *yechi* ('may he live') that Adonijah's supporters are using for their candidate (verse 25), now directed at the legitimate king. The phrase *le'olam* ('forever') is conventional court language, not a literal claim of immortality, but in context it carries poignant irony: David is dying, and everyone in the room knows it.
32. David summons exactly the three men who were not with Adonijah (verse 8) — the loyal priest, the prophet, and the military commander. The verb *qir'u* ('call, summon') in the imperative plural is a royal command. The speed of their arrival (*vayyavo'u lifnei hammelekh*, 'and they came before the king') suggests they were already nearby, possibly waiting for this moment. David's cabinet for the counter-coup is the mirror image of Adonijah's faction: Zadok versus Abiathar, Benaiah versus Joab, Nathan versus no prophetic voice on Adonijah's side.
33. David's command is specific and symbolic. The *pardah* ('mule') belonging to the king was a royal mount — riding the king's own mule was a public declaration of chosen succession. The verb *vehirkavtem* ('and you shall cause to ride') is the *hiphil* of *rakhav*, meaning they are to place Solomon on the mule with ceremony. The destination *Gichon* is the spring on Jerusalem's eastern slope, the city's primary water source — choosing it as the anointing site rather than the temple area connects the ceremony to the life-giving waters of the city David himself conquered.
34. The verb *umashach* ('and he shall anoint') is the root from which *mashiach* ('anointed one, messiah') derives. Anointing with oil was the definitive act of royal installation — it set a man apart as God's chosen ruler, not merely as a political appointee. David specifies both Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet as the anointing officials, combining sacerdotal and prophetic authority. This dual anointing is unprecedented: Saul was anointed by Samuel alone, David was anointed by Samuel alone, but Solomon receives the combined witness of both offices.
34. The shofar ('ram's horn trumpet') is the instrument of divine proclamation — used at Sinai (Exodus 19:16), in warfare, and at coronations. The acclamation *yechi hammelekh Shelomoh* ('long live King Solomon') directly counters the rival acclamation for Adonijah in verse 25.
35. David's instructions form a complete coronation sequence: ride the royal mule, anoint at the spring, sound the shofar, process back to the palace, take the throne. The verb *veyashav al kis'i* ('and he will sit on my throne') specifies the physical act of enthronement — the king's throne in Jerusalem. David uses two terms for Solomon's authority: *yimlokh tachtai* ('he will reign in my place') and *nagid al Yisrael ve'al Yehudah* ('leader over Israel and over Judah').
35. The term *nagid* is theologically loaded. Unlike *melekh* ('king'), which describes ruling authority, *nagid* implies a divinely designated leader — one placed at the front of the people by God's initiative. Samuel used this term for Saul (1 Samuel 9:16) and for David (1 Samuel 13:14). David now applies it to Solomon, placing his son in the succession of divinely appointed rulers. The phrase 'over Israel and over Judah' reflects the dual structure of the united kingdom — a political reality that will fracture after Solomon's death.

36. Benaiah's amen is the first word spoken in response to David's command. The Hebrew amen derives from the root 'aman ('to be firm, to be reliable, to support') — it is an affirmation of something as established and trustworthy. His prayer *ken yomar YHWH Elohei adoni hammelekh* ('so may the LORD, the God of my lord the king, say') asks God to ratify what David has decreed. Benaiah speaks as the military commander who will enforce the order, but he frames his response theologically: the king's command needs divine confirmation.
37. Benaiah's blessing *vigaddel et kis'o mikkisse adoni hammelekh David* ('and may He make his throne greater than the throne of my lord King David') is a bold prayer — asking that the son surpass the father. The verb *giddel* ('to make great, to magnify') applied to the throne means not just personal glory but the expansion of the kingdom's reach and stability. In court protocol, such a statement might seem dangerously impolitic — wishing the successor to exceed the current king — but David does not object, suggesting he endorses the aspiration.
38. The Kerethites and Pelethites (*hakkereti vehappeleti*) were David's personal foreign bodyguard, probably of Aegean origin — the Kerethites may be connected to Crete, the Pelethites to the Philistine coast. Their loyalty was to David personally, not to any Israelite faction, making them the perfect military force for a succession intervention. They obey Benaiah, their commander.
38. The verb *vayyarkivu* ('and they caused to ride') is the hiphil of *rakhav* — Solomon is placed on the mule by others, a ceremonial act of installation. The *pardat hammelekh David* ('the mule of King David') is specified by name — this is not any mule but the king's personal mount, a visible symbol of transferred authority. The procession goes down to Gihon, Jerusalem's primary water source on the eastern slope of the City of David.
39. The *qeren hashemen* ('horn of oil') is taken *min ha'ohel* ('from the tent'), referring to the tabernacle or a tent housing the Ark. The horn (*qeren*) as a vessel for oil appears also at David's own anointing (1 Samuel 16:1, 13) — the same type of container used by Samuel. This creates a direct visual and liturgical link between David's anointing and Solomon's.
39. The sequence is precise: Zadok anoints (*vayyimshach*), the shofar sounds (*vayyitqe'u bashshofar*), the people acclaim (*vayyomeru khol ha'am yechi hammelekh Shelomoh*). This three-part coronation ritual — oil, trumpet, acclamation — becomes the standard for legitimate royal installation in Israel.
40. The verb *vattibaqa ha'arets beqolam* ('the earth split from their sound') is one of the most vivid hyperboles in the Hebrew Bible. The verb *baqa* ('to split, to cleave') is used of the splitting of the Red Sea (Exodus 14:21) and the splitting of rocks (Isaiah 48:21). The narrator is saying the celebration was so thunderous that the earth itself seemed to crack open. The phrase functions as a narrative seismograph: the legitimate king's anointing shakes the very ground.
40. The *chalilim* ('flutes, pipes') are wind instruments associated with festive processions and joyful occasions. The phrase *semechim simchah gedolah* ('rejoicing with great joy') uses the cognate accusative construction for emphasis — they did not merely rejoice but rejoiced a great rejoicing.
41. The timing is devastating: *vehem killu le'ekhol* ('and they had finished eating') — Adonijah's coronation feast is over, the political theater concluded, and only then does the sound of Solomon's anointing reach them. The verb *killu* ('they finished') signals that Adonijah's moment has passed. Joab, the military veteran, identifies the shofar sound immediately — *qol hashshofar* ('the sound of the trumpet') is unmistakable to a soldier. His question *maddu'a qol haqiryah homah* ('why is the sound of the city in tumult?') uses *homah* ('in tumult, buzzing, roaring'), a word that implies confused, agitated noise — he hears the celebration but does not yet know its cause.
42. The narrative formula *odenu medabber* ('while he was still speaking') mirrors the same phrase used when Nathan entered during Bathsheba's audience (verse 22) — the narrator uses identical pacing for both sides of the drama. Jonathan ben Evyatar arrives as a messenger from the city. Adonijah's greeting is fatally optimistic: *ish chayil attah vetov tevasser* ('you are a man of valor and you bring good news'). The word *tevasser* (from *basar*, 'to bring news, to announce') is the root of *besorah* ('good news, gospel'). Adonijah assumes that a worthy man brings worthy news — but the news will destroy him.
43. Jonathan's first word is *aval* ('but, however, on the contrary, indeed') — a particle that can mean either 'truly' or 'on the contrary,' and here it functions as a devastating correction. Adonijah expected good news; Jonathan delivers the opposite. The verb *himlikh* ('has made king') is the hiphil of *malakh* — David has actively caused Solomon to become king, an accomplished fact stated in the perfect tense. The title *adonenu hammelekh David* ('our lord King David') is pointed: David is still king, and his authority still holds.
44. Jonathan's report catalogs the forces that accompanied Solomon — the same list the narrator provided in verse 38. For Adonijah's party, hearing these names is hearing the inventory of their defeat: the loyal priest, the prophet, the guard commander, and the entire royal bodyguard. Jonathan is delivering a military intelligence report in the form of a narrative.
45. Jonathan confirms the anointing: *vayyimshchu oto Tsadoq hakkohen veNatan hannavi lemelekh baGgichon* ('Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet anointed him king at the Gihon'). The verb is in the perfect — the anointing is accomplished, irreversible. The phrase *vattehom haqiryah* ('and the city was in tumult') uses the same root as Joab's question in verse 41 — now Jonathan identifies the source of the noise. His concluding phrase *hu haqqol asher shema'tem* ('that is the noise you heard') is clipped and factual, the tone of a messenger who understands the implications.
46. The brief clause *vegam yashav Shelomoh al kisse hammelukhah* ('and also Solomon has sat on the throne of the kingdom') is the final blow. Not only has Solomon been anointed — he has already taken physical possession of the throne. The verb *yashav* ('has sat, is sitting') is in the perfect, indicating completed action. The *kisse hammelukhah* ('throne of the kingdom') is the actual seat of royal power. For Adonijah, this means there is nothing left to contest: the throne is occupied.
47. The servants' blessing echoes Benaiah's earlier prayer (verse 37) — both wish Solomon's reign to exceed David's. The verb *vayyishtachu hammelekh al hammishkav* ('and the king bowed on the bed') is extraordinary: David, too frail to stand, worships God from his bed. The verb *hishtachavah* ('to

bow, to prostrate oneself) is the standard word for worship, and the image of the dying king worshipping horizontally on his bed is one of the most poignant in the Hebrew Bible — he can no longer prostrate himself on the ground, so he bows where he lies.

47. The phrase *yektiv Elohim et shem Shelomoh mishshimkha* ('may God make Solomon's name better than your name') asks that the son's reputation and legacy surpass the father's. David receives this prayer not with offense but with worship — he bows in gratitude that his dynasty will continue.
48. David's doxology *barukh YHWH Elohei Yisrael* ('blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel') is a standard blessing formula attributing good outcomes to God. But the final clause is deeply personal: *ve'einai ro'ot* ('and my eyes are seeing it'). The man who could not 'know' (*yada*) Abishag, who did not 'know' about the coup, can at least see (*ro'ot*) the succession secured. The verb *ra'ah* ('to see') functions as a partial restoration of the awareness David has been losing throughout the chapter. He sees — if only this one thing — before he dies.
49. The verb *vayyecherdu* ('and they trembled') indicates violent, involuntary fear — the same root (*charad*) used of the trembling at Sinai (Exodus 19:16) and of Samuel's fear at Saul's appearance from the dead (1 Samuel 28:21). The phrase *vayyaqumu... vayyellkhu ish ledarko* ('they rose and went, each to his road') is the language of complete political collapse — not a retreat but a dissolution. Adonijah's coalition evaporates in a single verse. The feast that began with royal pretension ends with every man fleeing for his own survival.
50. Adonijah's fear (*yare mipanei Shelomoh*, 'afraid from the face of Solomon') drives him to the last available sanctuary: the horns of the altar. The verb *vayyachazaq* ('and he seized, gripped firmly') indicates desperate clinging — the *hiphil* of *chazaq* implies forceful grasping. The *qarnot hammizbeach* ('horns of the altar') were projections at the four corners of the sacrificial altar, and grasping them was a claim of sanctuary under asylum law (Exodus 21:13-14). The horns that held the blood of sacrifice now hold a terrified prince.
50. The word *qarnot* ('horns') uses the same root as *qeren* ('horn') from verse 39 — the horn of oil that anointed Solomon and the horns of the altar where Adonijah hides create a grim wordplay. The horn of power has produced the horn of refuge.
51. The report to Solomon frames Adonijah's terror and his demand simultaneously. Adonijah calls himself *avdo* ('his servant'), adopting the language of submission — the man who said *ani emlokh* ('I will be king') now calls himself Solomon's servant. His demand *yishava li hayyom hammelekh Shelomoh* ('let King Solomon swear to me today') requests an oath of protection, using the same oath language (*shava*, 'to swear') that runs throughout the chapter. The phrase *im yamit et avdo becherev* ('if/that he will not kill his servant by the sword') specifies death by the sword — execution for treason, which is exactly what Adonijah's actions would warrant.
52. Solomon's first recorded words as king are a conditional pardon — measured, royal, and ominous. The phrase *im yihyeh leven chayil* ('if he will be a son of valor/worth') sets the condition: Adonijah must prove himself trustworthy. The idiom *lo yippol missa'arato artsah* ('not a hair of his head will fall to the ground') is the standard biblical guarantee of complete physical safety (cf. 1 Samuel 14:45, 2 Samuel 14:11). But the second clause — *ve'im ra'ah timmatse vo vamet* ('and if evil is found in him, he will die') — makes the mercy entirely conditional. Solomon does not swear the oath Adonijah requested; he issues terms. The verb *vamet* ('and he will die') is blunt and final. This conditional pardon will be revoked in 1 Kings 2:13-25 when Adonijah requests Abishag.
53. The final scene is a masterpiece of compressed political theater. Solomon sends men to remove Adonijah from the altar (*vayyoriduhu me'al hammizbeach*, 'and they brought him down from upon the altar') — Adonijah does not release the horns voluntarily but is taken down by royal command. He then prostrates himself (*vayyishtachu*) before Solomon, performing the submission posture that acknowledges Solomon as king.
53. Solomon's final words are two words in Hebrew: *lekh leveitekha* ('go to your house'). The dismissal is terse, royal, and loaded with meaning. 'Your house' means both Adonijah's physical residence and his political future — he is being sent home, confined to private life, stripped of all royal ambition. There is no embrace, no reconciliation, no warmth. Solomon rules from his first moment as a king who calculates — mercy when useful, severity when necessary. The chapter that opened with a king who could not get warm ends with a king whose first act is ice-cold pragmatism.

2

Summary: *David, near death, delivers his final charge to Solomon: keep the LORD's instruction so the dynasty will endure, but also settle unfinished accounts with Joab and Shimei while showing faithful love to Barzillai's sons. David dies after forty years as king. Solomon then secures the throne through a series of decisive actions — executing Adonijah after he overreaches by requesting Abishag, banishing the priest Abiathar to fulfill the old prophecy against Eli's house, killing Joab at the altar of the tabernacle, and confining then executing Shimei when he violates his oath. The kingdom is established firmly in Solomon's hand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the hinge between two eras: the Davidic kingdom built by warfare, loyalty, and improvisation gives way to the Solomonic kingdom built by consolidation, bureaucracy, and ruthless statecraft. What makes it remarkable is the tension in David's deathbed speech. He begins with high theology — keep the torah of the LORD so the dynastic promise holds — then pivots to a kill list. David charges Solomon to deal with Joab's unpunished bloodshed and Shimei's unpunished curse, using the chilling phrase 'do not let his gray head go down to Sheol in peace.' The man who spared Saul twice and wept for Absalom dies delegating the violence he*

could not or would not carry out himself. Solomon's handling of these charges reveals a king who operates not by passion but by political calculation: he waits for pretexts, manufactures legal justifications, and acts decisively when the moment comes.

Translation Friction: *David's charge in verses 5-9 creates a moral tension the text does not resolve. He tells Solomon to act 'according to your wisdom' regarding Joab and Shimei — coded language for execution — while framing both cases in terms of justice. The Hebrew *dam* (blood) and *chesed* (faithful love) sit side by side in the same speech. Joab's guilt is real (he murdered Abner and Amasa in peacetime), but David's timing — addressing it only on his deathbed — raises the question of complicity. The phrase *dam naqi* ('innocent blood,' vv. 5, 31-33) is legally precise, referring to blood shed without legitimate cause, and David wants it removed from himself and his house. Whether this is justice or political housecleaning is left for the reader to weigh. Bathsheba's role in the Adonijah episode (vv. 13-25) is also ambiguous — does she naively relay Adonijah's request, or does she knowingly deliver the pretext Solomon needs?*

Connections: *The chapter fulfills multiple earlier prophecies and narrative threads. Abiathar's banishment (v. 27) fulfills the word spoken against Eli's house in 1 Samuel 2:27-36 — the narrator explicitly says so. Joab's execution answers the blood of Abner (2 Sam 3:27) and Amasa (2 Sam 20:10). Shimei's death resolves the curse of 2 Samuel 16:5-13, which David endured during Absalom's revolt. David's dynastic promise in verse 4 echoes the covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16, conditioned here on obedience to the torah. The phrase 'walk before me in faithfulness' (v. 4) echoes God's charge to Abraham (Gen 17:1) and will become the standard by which every subsequent king in 1-2 Kings is measured. Solomon's consolidation of power sets the stage for the golden age of chapters 3-10, but the violence embedded in its foundation foreshadows the kingdom's eventual fracture.*

¹When the time of David's death drew near, he charged his son Solomon, saying: ²"I am going the way of all the earth. Be strong and prove yourself a man. ³Keep the charge of the LORD your God — walk in His ways, keep His statutes, His commands, His rulings, and His decrees, as written in the instruction of Moses — so that you may succeed in everything you do and everywhere you turn. ⁴— so that the LORD may fulfill His word that He spoke concerning me: 'If your sons guard their way, walking before Me in faithfulness with all their heart and all their life-breath, you will never lack a man on the throne of Israel.'" ⁵You also know what Joab son of Zeruiah did to me — what he did to the two commanders of Israel's armies, Abner son of Ner and Amasa son of Jether. He killed them, shedding the blood of war in peacetime, and he put the blood of war on the belt around his waist and on the sandals on his feet. ⁶Act according to your wisdom, and do not let his gray head go down to Sheol in peace. ⁷But show faithful love to the sons of Barzillai the Gileadite, and let them eat at your table, for they came to me in the same way when I fled from your brother Absalom. ⁸And there is Shimei son of Gera, the Benjaminite from Bahurim, with you. He cursed me with a savage curse on the day I went to Mahanaim. But he came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by the LORD, saying, 'I will not put you to death by the sword.' ⁹But now, do not hold him guiltless, for you are a wise man and you know what you must do to him — bring his gray head down to Sheol with blood." ¹⁰David slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the City of David. ¹¹The total time David reigned over Israel was forty years: he reigned seven years in Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ¹²Solomon sat on the throne of his father David, and his kingdom was firmly established. ¹³Then Adonijah son of Haggith came to Bathsheba, Solomon's mother. She said, "Do you come in peace?" He said, "In peace." ¹⁴He said, "I have something to say to you." She said, "Speak." ¹⁵He said, "You know that the kingship was mine, and all Israel expected me to reign. But the kingship turned around and went to my brother, for it was his from the LORD. ¹⁶Now I am asking one thing of you — do not refuse me." She said to him, "Speak." ¹⁷He said, "Please ask King Solomon — for he will not refuse you — to give me Abishag the Shunammite as my wife." ¹⁸Bathsheba said, "Very well. I will speak to the king on your behalf." ¹⁹Bathsheba went to King Solomon to speak to him about Adonijah. The king rose to meet her, bowed to her, and sat on his throne. He had a throne set for the king's mother, and she sat at his right hand. ²⁰She said, "I have one small request to make of you — do not refuse me." The king said to her, "Ask, my mother, for I will not refuse you." ²¹She said, "Let Abishag the Shunammite be given to your brother Adonijah as his wife." ²²King Solomon answered his mother, "Why are you asking for Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? You might as well ask for the kingship for him — for he is my older brother! — for him, and for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab son of Zeruiah." ²³Then King Solomon swore by the LORD: "May God do the same to me and worse if

Adonijah has not spoken this word at the cost of his own life. ²⁴Now, as the LORD lives — who established me and seated me on the throne of my father David and who made me a dynasty as He promised — Adonijah will be put to death today." ²⁵King Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he struck him down, and he died. ²⁶To Abiathar the priest, the king said, "Go to Anathoth, to your fields. You deserve death, but I will not put you to death today because you carried the ark of the Lord GOD before my father David, and because you suffered through everything my father suffered." ²⁷So Solomon expelled Abiathar from serving as priest to the LORD, fulfilling the word of the LORD that He had spoken against the house of Eli at Shiloh. ²⁸When the news reached Joab — for Joab had supported Adonijah, though he had not supported Absalom — he fled to the tent of the LORD and seized the horns of the altar. ²⁹It was reported to King Solomon that Joab had fled to the tent of the LORD and was beside the altar. Solomon sent Benaiah son of Jehoiada, saying, "Go, strike him down." ³⁰Benaiah came to the tent of the LORD and said to him, "The king says: Come out." He said, "No — I will die here." Benaiah brought word back to the king: "This is what Joab said, and this is how he answered me." ³¹The king said to him, "Do as he says — strike him down and bury him. Remove from me and from my father's house the innocent blood that Joab shed. ³²The LORD will return his bloodshed on his own head, because he struck down two men more righteous and better than himself and killed them with the sword — Abner son of Ner, commander of Israel's army, and Amasa son of Jether, commander of Judah's army — and my father David did not know. ³³Their blood will return on the head of Joab and on the head of his descendants forever. But for David and his descendants, his house and his throne, there will be peace from the LORD forever." ³⁴So Benaiah son of Jehoiada went up, struck him down, and killed him. He was buried at his own estate in the wilderness. ³⁵The king appointed Benaiah son of Jehoiada over the army in Joab's place, and the king appointed Zadok the priest in place of Abiathar. ³⁶The king summoned Shimei and said to him, "Build yourself a house in Jerusalem and live there. Do not leave there to go anywhere. ³⁷On the day you leave and cross the Wadi Kidron, know for certain that you will surely die. Your blood will be on your own head." ³⁸Shimei said to the king, "The word is good. As my lord the king has spoken, so your servant will do." And Shimei lived in Jerusalem for a long time. ³⁹At the end of three years, two of Shimei's servants ran away to Achish son of Maacah, king of Gath. When Shimei was told, "Your servants are in Gath," ⁴⁰Shimei got up, saddled his donkey, and went to Gath, to Achish, to retrieve his servants. Shimei went and brought his servants back from Gath. ⁴¹When Solomon was told that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath and had returned, ⁴²the king summoned Shimei and said to him, "Did I not make you swear by the LORD and warn you solemnly, saying, 'On the day you leave and go anywhere, know for certain that you will surely die'? And you said to me, 'The word is good; I have heard.' ⁴³Why then did you not keep the oath of the LORD and the command I laid upon you?" ⁴⁴The king said to Shimei, "You know all the evil that your heart is aware of — what you did to my father David. The LORD will return your evil on your own head. ⁴⁵But King Solomon will be blessed, and the throne of David will be established before the LORD forever." ⁴⁶The king commanded Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he went out, struck him down, and he died. And the kingdom was firmly established in Solomon's hand.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *vayyiqrevu yemei David lamut* ('the days of David drew near to die') is a standard Hebrew death-notice formula, also used for Jacob (Gen 47:29). The verb *qarav* ('to draw near') treats death as an approaching boundary. David's 'charge' (*vaytsaw*) uses the same verb as a military command — this is not a gentle bedside whisper but a royal directive.
2. The phrase *bederekh kol ha'aretz* ('the way of all the earth') is a euphemism for death used also by Joshua (Josh 23:14). It frames dying as a universal road everyone walks. David does not say 'I am dying' — he says 'I am going.' The charge *vehayita le'ish* ('become a man') is not about masculinity in the modern sense but about competence, responsibility, and readiness to rule. The same phrase is used of warriors who must stand firm.
3. The phrase *betorat Mosheh* ('in the instruction of Moses') is a direct reference to Deuteronomy and frames the entire Deuteronomistic History's theology of kingship: the king is not above the torah but under it. This is the editorial lens through which every king in 1-2 Kings will be evaluated.
3. The fivefold description — *chuqqot*, *mitsvot*, *mishpatim*, *edot*, and the overarching *mishmereth* — covers every dimension of divine instruction. The variety of terms is not redundant; each has a slightly different nuance: *chuqqot* are inscribed statutes, *mitsvot* are direct commands, *mishpatim* are case-law rulings, *edot* are covenant stipulations that serve as testimony.
4. The dynastic promise here echoes 2 Samuel 7:12-16 but adds a conditional element: 'if your sons guard their way.' The unconditional promise of an eternal dynasty is here mediated through the Deuteronomistic lens of obedience. This tension — unconditional covenant vs. conditional obedience — runs through all of 1-2 Kings and is never fully resolved within the text.

4. The phrase *lalekhet lefanai be'emet* ('to walk before Me in faithfulness') uses *emet* ('truth, faithfulness, reliability'), not *chesed*. The metaphor of 'walking before God' (as opposed to 'walking with God') implies a servant walking in the sight of a king — visibility and accountability.
4. The phrase *bekhol levavam uvekhol nafsham* ('with all their heart and all their life-breath') echoes the Shema (Deut 6:5). *Nefesh* is rendered 'life-breath' rather than 'soul' to capture the Hebrew sense of the whole living self, not just an immaterial spirit.
5. The phrase *demei milchamah beshalom* ('blood of war in peacetime') is the crux of David's charge. Joab killed two men using wartime methods (ambush, deception, a weapon concealed on his person) during peacetime, when no hostilities justified such action. Abner was assassinated during a diplomatic visit (2 Sam 3:27); Amasa was stabbed while being greeted with a kiss (2 Sam 20:9-10).
5. The vivid image of blood on Joab's belt and sandals makes the violence physical and personal. In the Israelite legal imagination, shed blood pollutes — it contaminates not only the killer but the land (Num 35:33). David treats Joab's guilt as a material stain that must be removed from his dynasty.
6. The phrase *ke-chokhmatekha* ('according to your wisdom') is a euphemism: David is telling Solomon to kill Joab without saying the word 'kill.' The wisdom in question is not moral discernment but tactical judgment — knowing when and how to strike. This coded language gives Solomon freedom to choose his moment.
6. The image of gray hair (*seivah*) going down to Sheol is a poetic way of saying 'let him not die of old age in his bed.' Gray hair normally signifies honor and a life fully lived (Prov 16:31); David says Joab must be denied that dignified end.
7. The phrase *ta'aseh chesed* ('do chesed') is a covenantal directive. Barzillai himself was too old to accept David's invitation to the court (2 Sam 19:32-37) and asked that the honor pass to his servant Chimham. David now extends the obligation to Barzillai's sons, ensuring the debt of loyalty outlives both the original parties.
7. The phrase *bevorchai mippenei Avshalom achikha* ('when I fled from Absalom your brother') is striking — David calls Absalom 'your brother,' reminding Solomon that the crisis was a family catastrophe, not merely a political revolt.
8. The adjective *nimretset* ('savage, grievous, painful') describes the intensity of Shimei's curse (2 Sam 16:5-13) — he threw stones and dirt at David and called him a man of blood. David endured it, saying the LORD may have told Shimei to curse. Now, on his deathbed, David reveals he never forgot.
8. David's oath — 'I will not put you to death by the sword' — is technically limited to David personally and to the method (sword). Solomon, who did not swear, is not bound by the oath. This is the legal opening David leaves for his son, and Solomon will exploit it.
9. The phrase *al tenaqquhu* ('do not hold him guiltless') uses the verb *naqah* ('to be clean, innocent'), the same root as *naqi* in 'innocent blood' (*dam naqi*). David is saying: Shimei is not clean; do not treat him as though he is. The irony of the root *naqah* appearing for both Shimei's guilt and the concept of innocent blood creates a web of moral language that runs through the entire chapter.
9. The phrase *bedam she'ol* ('with blood to Sheol') reverses verse 6: Joab must not go to Sheol in peace; Shimei must go to Sheol in blood. David's two enemies receive opposite formulations of the same sentence: neither will die as an innocent old man.
10. The formula *vayyishkav im avotav* ('he slept with his fathers') is the standard royal death notice used throughout 1-2 Kings. The verb *shakav* ('to lie down, to sleep') treats death as sleep — a peaceful image that contrasts sharply with the violent content of David's final speech. The 'City of David' is the original Jebusite fortress on the southeastern ridge of Jerusalem, which David captured (2 Sam 5:7). He is buried where he began his reign.
11. The reign summary is formulaic, matching the pattern used for all kings. Forty years is a round number that may represent a full generation rather than an exact count. The split between Hebron (the Judahite capital where David first ruled) and Jerusalem (the pan-Israelite capital he conquered) reflects the two-stage nature of David's monarchy: first over Judah alone, then over all twelve tribes.
12. The verb *tikkon* ('was established, was made firm') from the root *kun* is a key word in this chapter — it appears again in verse 46 as an *inclusio*. The kingdom's establishment is announced here proleptically; the narrative that follows (vv. 13-46) shows the process by which it was actually secured. The firmness of Solomon's throne depends on the elimination of rivals.
13. Bathsheba's question *hashalom bo'ekha* ('is your coming peace?') reveals tension — Adonijah was Solomon's rival for the throne (1 Kgs 1), and his visit is unexpected. His answer *shalom* ('peace') will prove deeply ironic: his request will lead directly to his death. The exchange mirrors Jehu's encounter with Joram ('Is it peace?' — 2 Kgs 9:22), where the answer was also ominous.
14. The brevity is deliberate — two short exchanges build narrative tension before Adonijah's request. Hebrew narrative uses clipped dialogue to signal that something important is coming.
15. Adonijah's speech is politically loaded. His claim that the kingdom 'was mine' (*li haytah hammelukah*) asserts his right as the eldest surviving son. The concession that it came to Solomon 'from the LORD' (*me-YHWH*) may be sincere or may be a strategic disclaimer to appear non-threatening. The verb *tissov* ('turned around') suggests an unexpected reversal — Adonijah frames himself as the rightful heir displaced by divine intervention, not by political defeat.
16. The phrase *al tashivi et panai* ('do not turn back my face') means 'do not refuse me' — literally, 'do not return my face.' To send someone's face back is to reject their petition. Adonijah's insistence that Bathsheba not refuse before hearing the request is a negotiation tactic, but it also signals that he knows his request is risky.
17. Adonijah's request for Abishag is either naive or a calculated power play. Abishag served as David's nurse-companion in his final days (1 Kgs 1:1-4), and claiming a king's concubine was a well-established way of asserting a claim to the throne (see Absalom with David's concubines, 2 Sam 16:21-22;

Ishbosheth's accusation against Abner over Rizpah, 2 Sam 3:7). Whether Adonijah intends this political implication or genuinely wants to marry her is left ambiguous by the narrative.

18. Bathsheba's quick agreement (tov, 'good, very well') is either genuine willingness to help or a shrewd understanding that this request will destroy Adonijah. The text gives no indication of her internal motive. If she understands the political implications, she is delivering Adonijah to Solomon's justice. If she does not, she is an unwitting instrument. The narrative's silence on her awareness is deliberately provocative.
19. Solomon's gesture — rising, bowing, seating his mother at his right hand — is extraordinary court protocol. The right hand is the position of honor and authority (Ps 110:1). This establishes Bathsheba's role as queen mother (gevirah), a formal position in the Judahite court with real political influence. The contrast between Solomon's deference to his mother here and his furious response to her request (v. 22) heightens the drama.
20. Bathsheba's framing of the request as 'one small thing' (she'elah achat qetannah) minimizes it, perhaps strategically. Solomon's response — sha'ali immi ('ask, my mother') — is warm and absolute: 'I will not refuse you.' He commits before hearing the request, just as Bathsheba committed to Adonijah. The dramatic irony is that Solomon will immediately reverse this commitment once he hears what is being asked.
21. Bathsheba uses the passive yuttan ('let her be given') rather than 'give her' — a softer formulation. She also calls Adonijah achikha ('your brother'), emphasizing the family bond. The request, however delivered, will be heard by Solomon as a political challenge, not a family favor.
22. Solomon's response is volcanic. He reads the Abishag request as a bid for the throne and names Adonijah's entire faction: Abiathar the priest and Joab the general. The phrase sha'ali lo et hammelukah ('ask the kingship for him') is sarcastic — Solomon is saying that requesting the king's woman is tantamount to requesting the king's throne. His listing of the co-conspirators shows he has been watching this network since 1 Kings 1.
22. The phrase ki hu achi haggadol mimmenni ('for he is my older brother') could be read as acknowledging Adonijah's seniority with bitter irony — Solomon knows that birthright claims are dangerous precisely because they carry legitimacy.
23. The oath formula koh ya'aseh li Elohim vekhoh yosif ('may God do thus to me and more') is a standard self-imprecation — Solomon calls divine punishment on himself if he fails to act. The phrase benafsho ('at the cost of his life' or 'against his own life') makes Adonijah's request into a death sentence. The nefesh that Adonijah wagered is the life he will lose.
24. Solomon's oath invokes three divine acts: God established him (hekhinani, from kun — the same root as 'established' in v. 12 and v. 46), seated him on David's throne, and made him a 'house' (bayit, meaning dynasty). Each element reinforces Solomon's legitimacy and makes Adonijah's challenge an offense against God's own arrangement. The sentence hayom yumat ('today he will die') is immediate and irreversible.
25. The verb vayyifga ('he struck, he fell upon') is the same word used for Joab's assassination of Amasa (2 Sam 20:10). The execution is reported in the compressed, matter-of-fact style typical of Hebrew narrative violence — three words: vayyifga bo vayyamot ('he struck him and he died'). Benaiah, who will replace Joab as commander (v. 35), serves as Solomon's enforcer throughout this chapter.
26. Solomon's handling of Abiathar is more nuanced than his treatment of Adonijah. He acknowledges two mitigating facts: Abiathar carried the ark (a sacred duty dating to David's early years) and shared David's afflictions (from the flight from Saul onward, 1 Sam 22:20-23). The sentence is exile, not execution — Abiathar is sent to Anathoth, a Levitical town in Benjamin, which will later be the hometown of the prophet Jeremiah (Jer 1:1).
26. The phrase ish mavet attah ('you are a man of death') is a legal sentence meaning 'you deserve execution,' but Solomon commutes it. This shows Solomon exercising the 'wisdom' David charged him to use — knowing when to kill and when to spare.
27. This verse is one of the great narrative connections in the Deuteronomistic History. The narrator steps in to identify Solomon's political act as the fulfillment of a prophecy spoken generations earlier (1 Sam 2:27-36). Abiathar is the last surviving descendant of Eli's priestly line at Nob; his removal completes the judgment announced by the unnamed man of God. The verb vaygareish ('expelled') is strong — the same root used for driving out nations from the land. Abiathar is not merely retired; he is cast out.
28. The narrator's parenthetical — that Joab supported Adonijah but not Absalom — is both factual and evaluative. Joab's loyalty to David during Absalom's revolt (2 Sam 18) did not save him; his later support for Adonijah (1 Kgs 1:7) sealed his fate. Grasping the horns of the altar (the raised corners of the bronze altar) was an act of claiming sanctuary — the altar was considered sacred space where a fugitive might find protection (see Exod 21:14, which makes an exception for deliberate murderers).
29. Solomon's command lekh pega bo ('go, strike him') uses the same verb (paga) as the execution of Adonijah (v. 25). Solomon does not hesitate despite Joab's claim of sanctuary. The altar that should protect a fugitive will not protect a murderer — Exodus 21:14 explicitly says that a deliberate killer may be taken even from the altar.
30. Joab's refusal — lo, ki foh amut ('No, for here I will die') — is defiant. He forces the issue: either Solomon violates the sanctuary of the altar or Joab dies there, making Solomon responsible for bloodshed at the LORD's tent. Benaiah, uncertain about killing a man at the altar, reports back rather than acting on his own. This hesitation shows the gravity of what Solomon is ordering.
31. Solomon's command 'do as he says' (aseh ka'asher dibber) grimly accepts Joab's terms — he will die at the altar. The phrase deme'i chinnam ('blood of gratuitous violence') is a variant of dam naqi ('innocent blood') — chinnam means 'without cause, for nothing.' Solomon frames the execution as a purification: removing (vahasirota) the pollution of Joab's murders from the royal house. This is the language of Deuteronomy 19:13 and 21:9, where shedding the guilty killer's blood cleanses the community.
32. Solomon's declaration that Abner and Amasa were tsaddiqim vetovim ('righteous and better') than Joab is a legal judgment, not merely a moral opinion. The phrase veheshiv YHWH et damo al rosho ('the LORD will return his blood on his own head') uses the retribution formula found in

Levitical law — the guilt returns to the perpetrator.

32. The claim that David 'did not know' (lo yada) about Joab's murders is historically debatable — David publicly mourned Abner (2 Sam 3:31-39) and cursed Joab's house, but he did not punish him. Solomon's assertion protects David's legacy by attributing the unpunished murders to ignorance rather than complicity.
33. This verse completes the legal argument with a contrast: Joab's line inherits blood-guilt forever; David's line inherits shalom from the LORD forever. The word shalom here carries its full covenantal weight — not merely 'absence of conflict' but wholeness, well-being, and divine favor. Solomon is constructing a theological framework for the execution: it is not political murder but a purification that transfers guilt away from the Davidic dynasty.
33. The phrase ad olam me'im YHWH ('forever from the LORD') gives the peace a divine source and eternal duration — this is dynastic theology at its most ambitious, echoing the promise of 2 Samuel 7.
34. Joab's burial at his 'house in the wilderness' (beveto bamidbar) means his family estate in the Judean wilderness — he is buried on his own land, not in a place of honor. The execution at the altar and burial in the wilderness represent a complete removal from the center of power. The verb vayyifga bo vaymitehu ('he struck him and killed him') echoes each previous execution in the chapter, establishing Benaiah as the consistent instrument of Solomon's justice.
35. This verse records the double replacement that restructures Israel's leadership: Benaiah replaces Joab as military commander, and Zadok replaces Abiathar as priest. The Zadokite priesthood will dominate Jerusalem's temple until the exile and become the basis for priestly lineage in Ezekiel's vision (Ezek 44:15). Both appointments reward loyalty — Benaiah and Zadok supported Solomon during Adonijah's attempt (1 Kgs 1:8, 32-40).
36. Solomon's arrangement for Shimei is a form of house arrest — confinement to Jerusalem under royal surveillance. The command to 'build a house' suggests a permanent arrangement, not a temporary stay. By placing Shimei in the capital, Solomon keeps him visible and controllable. The phrase aneh va'anah ('here and there, anywhere') emphasizes the totality of the restriction — Shimei cannot leave for any reason or in any direction.
37. The Wadi Kidron runs east of Jerusalem between the city and the Mount of Olives — crossing it would mean heading toward Benjaminites territory, Shimei's home region. The phrase yadoa teda ('knowing you will know') is the infinitive absolute construction signaling absolute certainty. The death sentence mot tamut ('dying you will die') uses the same construction — the oldest legal formula in the Bible, first used by God to Adam (Gen 2:17). Solomon leaves no ambiguity: crossing the boundary means death, and the guilt will be Shimei's own.
38. Shimei's compliance — tov haddavar ('the word is good') — mirrors Bathsheba's tov in verse 18. He accepts the terms without protest and lives in Jerusalem yamim rabbim ('many days'), suggesting a significant period of obedience. The narrative pauses here, creating the expectation that the arrangement will hold — which makes his eventual violation more dramatic.
39. Three years of compliance end when economic self-interest creates a dilemma. Achish king of Gath is likely a successor to the Achish who sheltered David (1 Sam 27:2). The loss of two slaves represents a significant economic loss in the ancient world. The test is whether Shimei values his property more than his life — whether he will break the oath for material recovery.
40. The narrative is deliberately detailed — saddling the donkey, traveling to Gath, retrieving the servants, returning. Each action compounds the violation. Gath is a Philistine city, well beyond Jerusalem's boundaries and across the Wadi Kidron. Shimei's journey is not a momentary lapse but a planned trip requiring days of travel. The narrator's repetition of Shimei's name emphasizes his personal responsibility.
41. Solomon learns of the violation after Shimei's return — the intelligence network of the new monarchy is functioning. The report is simple: he went, he came back. The fact that Shimei returned to Jerusalem, perhaps thinking the trip could go unnoticed, shows either naivety or desperation. Solomon does not act in Shimei's absence; he waits until the violation is complete and undeniable.
42. Solomon recites the terms of the oath precisely, repeating the infinitive absolute constructions (yadoa teda, mot tamut) and quoting Shimei's own words of acceptance back to him (tov haddavar shamati). This is a judicial proceeding: the king establishes the terms, the defendant's consent, and the violation before pronouncing sentence. The verb va'a'id bekha ('I warned you solemnly') is legal testimony language — Solomon served as both lawgiver and witness.
43. Solomon frames Shimei's violation as a double offense: breaking an oath sworn by the LORD (shevu'at YHWH) and disobeying a royal command (mitswah). The combination elevates the offense from a personal breach of agreement to a sacral-legal violation. Shimei broke his word to God and his word to the king simultaneously.
44. Solomon now reaches back to the original offense: Shimei's curse against David during Absalom's revolt (2 Sam 16:5-13). The phrase asher yada levavekha ('that your heart knows') appeals to Shimei's own conscience — he knows what he did. The retribution formula veheshiv YHWH et ra'atekha berosekha ('the LORD will return your evil on your head') is identical in structure to the formula used for Joab (v. 32). Both executions are framed as divine justice mediated through Solomon.
45. The contrast with verse 44 is sharp: Shimei's evil returns to his head; Solomon receives blessing. The verb nakhon ('established, firm, secure') from the root kun ties back to verse 12 (vatikkon malkhuto) and forward to verse 46, forming an inclusio around the entire consolidation narrative. The permanence claim — ad olam ('forever') lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD') — places the Davidic throne under divine guarantee, contingent on the purification achieved through this chapter's executions.

46. The chapter ends as it began — with a command (vaytsaw, the same verb as David's charge in v. 1) and with the kingdom established (nekhonah, the same root kun as v. 12 and v. 45). The final sentence vehammamlakhah nekhonah beyad Shelomoh ('and the kingdom was established in Solomon's hand') closes the inclusio opened in verse 12. Between those two statements of stability, four threats have been eliminated: Adonijah (v. 25), Abiathar (v. 27), Joab (v. 34), and Shimei (v. 46). The kingdom is secured not by a single decisive battle but by a sequence of calculated removals.
46. Benaiah's role as executioner throughout (vv. 25, 34, 46) makes him the indispensable instrument of Solomon's consolidation. His reward — command of the army (v. 35) — is the fruit of his obedience.

3

Summary: *Solomon secures a marriage alliance with Pharaoh's daughter and worships at Gibeon, the great high place. There, in a dream, the LORD offers Solomon anything he desires. Solomon asks not for long life, wealth, or military victory but for a 'listening heart' to govern God's people and to distinguish good from evil. Pleased by the request, God grants Solomon unmatched wisdom and adds what he did not ask for: riches and honor. Solomon awakens, returns to Jerusalem, and stands before the ark. Then two prostitutes bring him an impossible case — two living women, one dead infant, one living infant, and no witnesses. Solomon's command to cut the child in half exposes the true mother through her desperate love, and all Israel recognizes that divine wisdom resides in their king.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the theological foundation for Solomon's entire reign, and it pivots on a single Hebrew phrase that most translations obscure. Solomon does not ask for 'an understanding heart' (KJV) or even 'wisdom' in the abstract. He asks for lev shomea — a listening heart, a heart that hears. The request is fundamentally about receptivity, not intelligence. Solomon recognizes that a king who cannot hear — hear God, hear the people, hear the difference between justice and injustice — cannot govern. The verb shama ('to hear') is the same verb that opens the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4), Israel's foundational confession. Solomon is asking to be, as king, what all Israel was supposed to be: a people who hear and obey. God's response confirms that the request was right precisely because it was selfless — Solomon did not ask for nephesh oyevav ('the life of your enemies') or for osher ('riches') or for yamim rabbim ('long life'). The narrator lists what Solomon did not ask for to show that the shape of the request revealed the shape of the man. The judgment scene that follows is not merely a clever anecdote. It is the immediate proof that God answered the prayer. Solomon's wisdom operates not through legal precedent or investigation but through an understanding of human nature so penetrating that it can identify a mother by her willingness to lose rather than see her child destroyed. The verb nikhmeru rachameyha ('her compassion was aroused') uses the same root as rechem ('womb') — the true mother's identity is confirmed by a visceral, bodily compassion that the impostor cannot simulate.*

Translation Friction: *The verb shama in Solomon's request (lev shomea, v9) means both 'to hear' and 'to obey,' and the standard rendering 'understanding heart' collapses both dimensions into a cognitive category. We chose 'listening heart' to preserve the auditory metaphor — Solomon asks to be a king whose heart has ears — while acknowledging that 'listening' in English does not fully carry the obedience dimension that shama does in Hebrew. In verse 1, Solomon's marriage alliance with Pharaoh is stated without editorial comment in the Hebrew, though it sits in tension with Deuteronomy 17:16-17's warnings about kings multiplying foreign wives and turning toward Egypt. The narrator neither condemns nor approves; we followed that restraint. The phrase lo noda ('it was not known,' v21) in the prostitute's testimony uses yada in its forensic sense — no third party witnessed the switch — but the same root carries the chapter's epistemological theme: how things are known, how truth is discerned, and who possesses the wisdom to distinguish them.*

Connections: *Solomon's dream at Gibeon connects to the broader biblical pattern of divine encounters at night — Jacob at Bethel (Genesis 28), Abraham's covenant vision (Genesis 15), and later God's appearance to Solomon again at the temple dedication (1 Kings 9:2). The phrase 'walking in faithfulness' (halakh be'emet, v6) links David's character description here to the Torah's walking language (Deuteronomy 10:12) and to the later prophetic ideal of walking humbly with God (Micah 6:8). Solomon's judgment anticipates the prophetic tradition of advocating for the powerless — two prostitutes with no legal standing receive justice from the king himself. The closing verse's phrase mishpat Elohim ('the justice of God,' v28) frames Solomon's wisdom not as personal*

cleverness but as a channel for divine justice operating through a human ruler.

¹Solomon entered into a marriage alliance with Pharaoh king of Egypt. He took Pharaoh's daughter and brought her to the city of David until he could finish building his own palace, the house of the LORD, and the wall around Jerusalem. ²The people, however, were still sacrificing at the high places, because no house had yet been built for the name of the LORD in those days. ³Solomon loved the LORD, walking according to the instructions of his father David — except that he was sacrificing and burning incense at the high places. ⁴The king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there, because it was the most important high place. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on that altar. ⁵At Gibeon the LORD appeared to Solomon in a dream during the night. God said, "Ask — what should I give you?" ⁶Solomon said, "You showed great faithful love to your servant David my father, because he walked before you in faithfulness, in righteousness, and in uprightness of heart toward you. And you have continued this great faithful love for him by giving him a son to sit on his throne — as is the case today. ⁷And now, LORD my God, you have made your servant king in place of my father David, but I am only a young man — I do not know how to lead effectively. ⁸Your servant stands among your people whom you have chosen — a people so vast they cannot be numbered or counted. ⁹So give your servant a listening heart to govern your people, to discern between good and evil — for who is able to govern this weighty people of yours?" ¹⁰The request pleased the Lord — that Solomon had asked for this. ¹¹God said to him, "Because you asked for this — and did not ask for long life for yourself, did not ask for wealth for yourself, did not ask for the death of your enemies — but instead asked for discernment to understand justice, ¹²I have now done what you asked. I have given you a wise and discerning heart — so that no one like you has existed before you, and no one like you will arise after you. ¹³And what you did not ask for I have also given you — both wealth and honor — so that no king will be your equal during your entire lifetime. ¹⁴And if you walk in my ways, keeping my statutes and my commands just as your father David walked, then I will give you a long life." ¹⁵Solomon woke up — and realized it had been a dream. He went to Jerusalem, stood before the ark of the covenant of the Lord, offered burnt offerings, presented fellowship offerings, and held a feast for all his servants. ¹⁶Then two women who were prostitutes came before the king and stood in his presence. ¹⁷One of the women said, "Please, my lord — this woman and I live in the same house. I gave birth while she was in the house with me. ¹⁸On the third day after I gave birth, this woman also gave birth. We were alone together — no outsider was with us in the house; it was just the two of us. ¹⁹This woman's son died during the night because she rolled onto him in her sleep. ²⁰So he got up in the middle of the night and took my son from beside me while your servant was sleeping. She laid him against her own chest and placed her dead son against mine. ²¹When I got up in the morning to nurse my son, he was dead. But when I looked closely at him in the morning light, I saw that he was not the son I had given birth to." ²²The other woman said, "No! The living one is my son and the dead one is yours." But the first woman said, "No! The dead one is yours and the living one is mine." They argued back and forth before the king. ²³The king said, "This one says, 'The living one is my son and the dead one is yours,' and that one says, 'No — the dead one is yours and the living one is mine.'" ²⁴The king said, "Bring me a sword." A sword was brought before the king. ²⁵The king said, "Cut the living child in two. Give half to one and half to the other." ²⁶Then the woman whose son was the living child spoke to the king — because her compassion burned fiercely for her son — and said, "Please, my lord, give her the living baby! Do not kill him!" But the other woman said, "He will be neither mine nor yours — cut him in two." ²⁷The king responded, "Give the living baby to her. Do not kill him — she is his mother." ²⁸All Israel heard about the judgment the king had rendered, and they stood in awe of the king, because they recognized that the wisdom of God was within him to administer justice.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The hitpael form *vayitchatten* implies mutuality in the alliance but also carries the nuance of Solomon making himself a marriage relative to Pharaoh. This is the only recorded instance of an Israelite king marrying a daughter of Egypt's pharaoh, and it signals Solomon's extraordinary diplomatic standing.
1. The phrase *ad kalloto livnot* ('until he finished building') uses the piel infinitive construct of *kalah* ('to complete'), indicating that the construction was ongoing. Pharaoh's daughter was housed in the city of David as a temporary arrangement, which the narrator mentions without commentary. The three unfinished projects frame the setting: Solomon's kingdom is still under construction in every sense.

2. The particle *raq* ('only, except, however') at the verse's opening is a limiting qualifier that introduces an exception to the positive picture. The narrator acknowledges that while Solomon's reign was otherwise commendable, the decentralized sacrificial practice at the high places remained a persistent feature.
2. The phrase *leshem YHWH* ('for the name of the LORD') uses *shem* ('name') as a theological circumlocution for God's presence. The temple was not merely a building for worship but the place where God's name — and therefore God's accessible presence — would dwell. Without it, worship was geographically scattered.
3. The statement *vaye'ehav Shelomoh et YHWH* ('Solomon loved the LORD') uses the covenantal verb *ahav* ('to love') that characterizes treaty loyalty in Deuteronomic theology. This is not sentimentality but committed allegiance. The qualifying phrase *lalekhet bechuqqot* ('walking in the statutes of') uses the metaphor of *halakh* ('to walk') — the same language applied to faithful covenant life throughout Deuteronomy.
3. The repeated *raq* ('except, only') from verse 2 reappears, creating a refrain of qualification. The narrator praises Solomon's devotion but cannot omit the high-place problem. The participles *mezabbeach umaqtir* ('sacrificing and burning incense') describe habitual, ongoing activity — not a single lapse but a regular practice.
4. Gibeon held special status because the Tabernacle of Moses was located there (2 Chronicles 1:3), making it the *habamah hagedolah* ('the great high place') — the most significant sacrificial site in Israel before the temple was built. Solomon's journey there was not random but deliberate pilgrimage to the most legitimate worship site available.
4. The number *elep* *olot* ('a thousand burnt offerings') is staggering in scale. Whether understood as a literal thousand or as a round number signifying extraordinary generosity, the offering communicates Solomon's total devotion. The *olah* ('burnt offering') was consumed entirely on the altar — nothing returned to the worshiper — making it the purest expression of self-giving worship.
5. The Niphal form *nir'ah* indicates that God is the subject who allows Himself to be perceived — the appearance is divine initiative, not human achievement. Solomon did not conjure or seek a vision; God chose to reveal Himself in response to Solomon's lavish worship at Gibeon.
5. The imperative *she'al* ('ask!') from the root *sha'al* is direct and unqualified. God does not say 'ask within these parameters' or 'ask for something appropriate.' The openness of the offer is what makes Solomon's response so revealing.
6. The noun *chesed* appears twice in this verse — *chesed gadol* ('great faithful love') describing God's past action toward David, and *hachesed hagadol hazzeh* ('this great faithful love') describing its continuation in Solomon's accession. We rendered both as 'faithful love' rather than KJV's 'mercy' or 'kindness' because *chesed* in covenantal contexts denotes reliable, enduring loyalty rather than emotional sympathy.
6. The triad *emet, tsedaqah, yishrat levav* ('faithfulness, righteousness, uprightness of heart') describes David's covenantal walk. The term *emet* ('truth, faithfulness, reliability') is relational — it means David was a trustworthy covenant partner. *Tsedaqah* ('righteousness') indicates right conduct within the covenant relationship. *Yishrat levav* ('uprightness of heart') points to inner integrity — David's motives matched his actions.
7. Solomon's self-description as *na'ar qaton* ('a small youth, a young boy') is a conventional expression of humility in commissioning contexts (compare Jeremiah 1:6), though Solomon was likely in his late teens or early twenties. The phrase conveys not literal age but felt inadequacy before the enormity of the task.
7. The idiom *lo eda tset vavo* ('I do not know going out and coming in') refers to military and administrative leadership — the ability to lead the nation's affairs, particularly in war (compare Numbers 27:17, Deuteronomy 31:2). Solomon is not saying he cannot walk through a door but that he lacks the experience to govern. We rendered this as 'lead effectively' to capture the functional sense rather than the literal idiom.
8. Solomon positions himself *betokh ammekha* ('in the midst of your people') — not above them but embedded among them. The word choice echoes the ideal of Israelite kingship in Deuteronomy 17:15, where the king comes from 'among your brothers.' Solomon frames his role as service within the community, not domination over it.
8. The description of Israel as *am rav* ('a great people') who cannot be numbered echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:5, 22:17). Solomon is saying: the promise has been fulfilled — and that very fulfillment is what makes governing so overwhelming. The more numerous the people, the greater the need for wisdom.
9. We rendered *lev shomea* as 'listening heart' rather than KJV's 'understanding heart' to preserve the Hebrew's auditory metaphor. The participle *shomea* from *shama* means 'hearing, listening, obeying' — Solomon's request is for receptive capacity, not raw intellect. A listening heart is one that can receive divine guidance and hear human need.
9. The adjective *kaved* ('heavy, weighty') applied to the people carries multiple resonances. Israel is 'heavy' in the sense of numerous and difficult to govern, but the root *k-v-d* also means 'glorious, honored.' Solomon's burden is also his privilege.
10. The phrase *vayyitav haddavar be'einei Adonai* ('the matter was good in the eyes of the Lord') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for approval. God's pleasure is not arbitrary but responsive: the request itself revealed Solomon's character. What a person asks for when offered everything discloses what they truly value.
11. God's response catalogs what Solomon did not request through a triple negation: *lo sha'alta yamim rabbim* ('you did not ask for many days,' i.e., long life), *lo sha'alta osher* ('you did not ask for wealth'), *lo sha'alta nephesh oyvekha* ('you did not ask for the life of your enemies'). The three-fold 'did not ask' throws Solomon's actual request into sharp relief by contrast.

11. The phrase *havin lishmo'a mishpat* ('discernment to hear justice') restates Solomon's request from God's perspective. God names it as the ability to hear — *lishmo'a*, the infinitive of *shama* — confirming that Solomon's 'listening heart' was correctly understood. The word *mishpat* ('justice, judgment, legal decision') is the specific domain in which Solomon's listening heart will operate.
12. The adjective *navon* ('discerning, understanding') from the root *bin* adds a dimension beyond *chokmah*. While *chokmah* is the ability to act skillfully, *binah/tevnah* is the ability to perceive distinctions, to analyze, to see through surfaces to underlying realities. Solomon receives both: the skill to act wisely and the perception to see clearly.
12. The temporal brackets *lefanekha* ('before you') and *acharekha* ('after you') make this a statement about all of human history. Solomon's wisdom is presented as a one-time divine endowment without parallel.
13. The formula *vegama asher lo sha'alta* ('and also what you did not ask for') reveals the divine principle at work: selfless requests receive more than what was asked. Because Solomon did not pursue wealth and honor, God adds them as unasked gifts. The pattern echoes Jesus's later teaching: 'Seek first the kingdom of God... and all these things will be added to you' (Matthew 6:33).
13. The noun *kavod* ('honor, glory, weight') from the root *k-v-d* connects to verse 9, where Solomon described Israel as *am kaved* ('a weighty people'). The weight that burdened Solomon becomes the glory that adorns him.
14. The conditional *im telekh bidrakhai* ('if you walk in my ways') introduces the one gift that comes with a condition: length of days. Wisdom, wealth, and honor have already been granted unconditionally. But long life depends on ongoing obedience. The condition uses *halakh* ('to walk') — the same covenantal walking language from verse 3 and verse 6. The standard is David's walk: imperfect but genuinely devoted.
14. The verb *veha'arakhti* ('and I will lengthen') from the root *arekh* ('to be long') echoes the Deuteronomic promise of long life in the land for obedience (Deuteronomy 5:33, 6:2). Tragically, Solomon's later disobedience (1 Kings 11) means this conditional promise was not fully realized.
15. The phrase *vayyiqats Shelomoh vehinnech chalom* ('Solomon woke up and behold — a dream') captures the disorienting moment between sleep and wakefulness. The particle *hinneh* ('behold, look') conveys surprise or realization: Solomon recognizes that the encounter was a dream, but the recognition does not diminish its authority. Divine dreams in the Hebrew Bible carry real weight.
15. Solomon's immediate response is to travel from Gibeon to Jerusalem and stand before the ark — the primary symbol of God's covenant presence. His sacrificial sequence moves from *olot* ('burnt offerings,' total consecration) to *shelamim* ('fellowship offerings,' shared meals of communion). The feast for his servants extends the sacred joy outward into the community. Solomon has received wisdom; his first act is worship and generosity.
16. The noun *zonah* ('prostitute') is stated factually as a social identifier. The narrator does not moralize about the women's profession; their status simply establishes that they have no male witnesses or legal advocates. In a patriarchal legal system, these women had almost no standing, which makes the king's willingness to hear their case all the more significant.
16. The verb *va'tta'amodnah* ('and they stood') from *amad* ('to stand') in the feminine plural indicates a formal legal posture — standing before the judge. Despite their social position, they assume the posture of litigants with a right to be heard.
17. The interjection *bi adoni* ('please, my lord') is a respectful appeal to the king as judge. The woman establishes the crucial facts: shared dwelling (*bayit echad*, 'one house') and proximity at the time of birth. The phrase *va'eled immah babbayit* ('I gave birth with her in the house') places both women together with no third-party witnesses — the condition that makes this case impossible to resolve by normal legal means.
18. The woman emphasizes the isolation twice: *ein zar ittanu babbayit* ('no stranger with us in the house') and *zulati shetayim anachnu babbayit* ('except for us two in the house'). The repetition drives home the evidentiary problem: with no witnesses, the case is one woman's word against the other's. The word *zar* ('stranger, outsider') means anyone other than the two of them — there is no third party who can corroborate either claim.
19. The phrase *asher shakhvav alav* ('because she lay on him') describes an accidental smothering — the mother rolled onto the infant during sleep. The verb *shakhav* ('to lie down') is the ordinary word for sleeping or lying in bed. The narrator presents this through the first woman's testimony, so the account reflects her version of events.
20. The woman describes a deliberate nocturnal switch: the other woman took the living child and replaced it with the dead one. The verb *vattiqqach* ('and she took') indicates intentional action. The word *cheiq* ('bosom, chest, lap') appears twice — the intimate space where a nursing mother holds her infant. The switch exploits the darkness and the deep sleep of a postpartum mother.
20. The self-reference *amatekha* ('your maidservant') is a deferential term used when addressing the king, placing the speaker in a subordinate position relative to Solomon's authority.
21. The verb *va'etbonen* ('and I looked closely, and I examined') from the root *bin* ('to discern, to understand') is the same root that describes Solomon's God-given discernment in verse 12. The mother's careful examination — her *binah* — is what detected the switch. The word choice creates a resonance: the mother's perceptive discernment parallels the king's judicial discernment.
21. The phrase *lo hayah beni asher yaladeti* ('it was not my son whom I bore') is the mother's definitive claim. She knows her own child — the intimacy of birth and nursing has given her knowledge that darkness could not erase.
22. The Hebrew creates a chiasmic mirror: *beni hachai uvenekh hammet* ('my son the living and your son the dead') is reversed to *benekh hammet uveni hechai* ('your son the dead and my son the living'). The structure embodies the impasse — the claims are perfectly symmetrical and mutually exclusive. No amount of verbal testimony can resolve this. The narrator compresses the argument into its irreducible form to show why wisdom beyond ordinary judgment is required.

- 22.** The phrase *vattedabbernah lifnei hammelekh* ('and they spoke before the king') uses the feminine plural, placing both women as active speakers in the royal court. The verb *dibber* ('to speak') in the *piel* stem suggests sustained, emphatic speech — this was not a brief exchange but a heated dispute.
- 23.** Solomon restates the competing claims with judicial precision, demonstrating that he has heard both sides fully. This restatement is not redundant — it serves as the formal judicial summary before rendering a verdict. By echoing both claims exactly, Solomon establishes that the evidence is perfectly balanced and that no conventional resolution exists. The repetition also builds narrative tension: the reader knows what Solomon will do, but the women do not.
- 24.** The command *qechu li cherev* ('bring me a sword') is shocking in a judicial setting. The *cherev* ('sword') is an instrument of war and execution, not adjudication. Solomon introduces violence — or the threat of it — into the courtroom precisely because the case cannot be resolved by words. The sword's arrival before the king (*lifnei hammelekh*) creates a moment of terrifying silence in the narrative. No one in the room knows what Solomon intends.
- 25.** The imperative *gizru* ('cut!') from the root *gazar* ('to cut, to divide, to decree') is deliberately ambiguous — *gazar* means both 'to cut physically' and 'to render a decree.' Solomon is simultaneously issuing a judicial decree and commanding a physical act. The horror of the command is the point: it creates an impossible situation that only genuine maternal love can resolve.
- 25.** The phrase *hayyeled hachai* ('the living child') keeps the child's aliveness at the center of the sentence — the living child is what Solomon proposes to destroy. The clinical precision of *lishnayim* ('into two') and *hachatsai... hachatsai* ('half... half') treats the child as an object to be divided, which is exactly the dehumanization that will provoke the true mother's response.
- 26.** The verb *nikhmeru* ('were stirred, burned') appears only three times in the Hebrew Bible: here, in Genesis 43:30 (Joseph's compassion for Benjamin), and in Hosea 11:8 (God's compassion for Israel). In all three cases, it describes an overwhelming, involuntary surge of love that overrides rational calculation. We rendered it as 'burned fiercely' to capture the intensity.
- 26.** The noun *rachamim* ('compassion') from *rechem* ('womb') is one of Hebrew's most physically grounded abstract terms. Compassion in Hebrew is literally womb-feeling — the visceral protectiveness a mother feels for the child she carried. English 'compassion' (from Latin 'suffering with') captures the empathy but misses the maternal, bodily dimension.
- 26.** The impostor's *gezoru* ('cut!') echoes Solomon's own command from verse 25, but with opposite intent. Solomon commanded the cut to reveal truth; the impostor demands it to destroy what she cannot have. The same word serves justice and vengeance depending on who speaks it.
- 27.** Solomon's verdict echoes the true mother's own words almost exactly — *tenu lah et hayyalud hachai* ('give her the living child') — validating her plea by making it the royal decree. The decisive final clause *hi immo* ('she is his mother') is three words in Hebrew, absolute and without explanation. Solomon does not explain his reasoning or cite legal precedent. The judgment is self-evident to anyone who witnessed the test.
- 27.** The verb *vayya'an* ('and he answered') from *anah* ('to answer, to respond') frames Solomon's decree as a response — not just to the case but to the revelation of truth that his own stratagem produced. The listening heart heard what it needed to hear.
- 28.** The verb *vayyir'u* ('they feared, they stood in awe') from *yare* can mean terrified fear or reverent awe. In context, the people's response is awe at divine wisdom operating through a human king — not cowering terror but the recognition of something transcendent in their midst.
- 28.** The phrase *chokhmat Elohim beqirbo* ('the wisdom of God within him') locates divine wisdom not in Solomon's mind but in his *qerev* ('inner being, midst, interior'). This is interior, indwelling wisdom — a gift that has become part of who Solomon is. The preposition *be-* ('in, within') indicates that God's wisdom has taken up residence inside the king.

4

Summary: *Solomon reigns over all Israel. The chapter catalogs his royal officials, twelve regional governors who supply provisions on a monthly rotation, and the staggering daily consumption of his court. It closes with a portrait of Solomon's wisdom surpassing all the sages of the East, his three thousand proverbs, his thousand and five songs, and the peace and security enjoyed from Dan to Beersheba.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter functions as the administrative receipt for the promise made in 1 Kings 3. God told Solomon he would receive wisdom, wealth, and honor -- chapter 4 itemizes the delivery. The twelve districts do not follow the old tribal boundaries; Solomon has redrawn the map of Israel around economic productivity rather than ancestral inheritance. Two of the governors are his sons-in-law (verses 11, 15), and several districts carve up what was formerly Manasseh. The chapter quietly reveals the cost of centralized splendor: the verb *nasa* ('to bear, to carry') used for the governors' provisioning is the same verb used for bearing burdens. The abundance described in verses 22-23 -- thirty cors of fine flour, sixty cors of meal, ten fattened oxen, twenty pasture-fed cattle, a hundred sheep, plus deer and fowl daily -- is royal consumption on an imperial scale,*

funded by mandatory regional contributions. The seeds of the northern rebellion in chapter 12 are already planted here in bureaucratic language.

Translation Friction: The list of officials in verses 2-6 contains several textual difficulties. Some names appear with patronymics ('son of X') but without personal names, suggesting either deliberate anonymity or textual corruption. Ben-Hur, Ben-Deker, Ben-Hesed, and Ben-Abinadab are all 'son of' constructions without first names in the Hebrew. We render these as they stand rather than inventing names. The district boundaries in verses 7-19 do not perfectly align with known geography, and scholars debate whether this list reflects Solomon's actual administration or an idealized retrospective.

Connections: The phrase 'Judah and Israel were as numerous as the sand by the sea' (verse 20) directly fulfills God's promise to Abraham in Genesis 22:17. The image of every person sitting 'under their vine and under their fig tree' (verse 25) becomes a prophetic marker for messianic peace -- Micah 4:4 and Zechariah 3:10 both echo it. Solomon's wisdom exceeding 'all the sons of the East' and 'all the wisdom of Egypt' (verse 30) positions him as the fulfillment of the wisdom tradition that began with Joseph in Egypt and will culminate in the 'greater than Solomon' declaration of Jesus (Matthew 12:42).

¹King Solomon reigned over all Israel. ²These were his senior officials: Azariah son of Zadok, the priest. ³Elihoreph and Ahijah, sons of Shisha, were secretaries; Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was the recorder. ⁴Benaiah son of Jehoiada commanded the army; Zadok and Abiathar were priests. ⁵Azariah son of Nathan was over the regional governors; Zabud son of Nathan was a priest and the king's companion. ⁶Ahishar managed the palace; Adoniram son of Abda was over the forced labor. ⁷Solomon had twelve governors stationed over all Israel, and they supplied provisions for the king and his household. Each governor was responsible for one month of the year. ⁸These are their names: Ben-Hur, in the hill country of Ephraim. ⁹Ben-Deker, in Makaz, Shaalbim, Beth-shemesh, and Elon-beth-hanan. ¹⁰Ben-Hesed, in Arubboth; Socoh and all the territory of Hepher were his. ¹¹Ben-Abinadab governed all the coastal heights of Dor. He had married Taphath, Solomon's daughter. ¹²Baanah son of Ahilud governed Taanach, Megiddo, and all of Beth-shean near Zarethan below Jezreel, from Beth-shean to Abel-meholah and beyond Jokmeam. ¹³Ben-Geber, in Ramoth-gilead. He controlled the tent-villages of Jair son of Manasseh in Gilead, and also the region of Argob in Bashan -- sixty large cities with walls and bronze bars. ¹⁴Ahinadab son of Iddo, in Mahanaim. ¹⁵Ahimaaz, in Naphtali. He too had married Basemath, Solomon's daughter. ¹⁶Baanah son of Hushai, in Asher and Bealoth. ¹⁷Jehoshaphat, Paruah's son -- over Issachar. ¹⁸Shimei son of Ela, in Benjamin. ¹⁹Geber son of Uri, in the land of Gilead -- the territory of Sihon king of the Amorites and Og king of Bashan. He was the sole governor in that region. ²⁰Judah and Israel were as numerous as sand on the seashore -- eating, drinking, and rejoicing. ²¹Solomon ruled over all the kingdoms from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines and down to the border of Egypt. They brought tribute and served Solomon all the days of his life. ²²Solomon's daily provisions were thirty cors of fine flour and sixty cors of meal, ²³ten stall-fattened cattle, twenty pasture-fed cattle, and a hundred sheep -- besides deer, gazelles, roebucks, and fattened poultry. ²⁴For he held dominion over the entire region west of the Euphrates, from Tiphshah to Gaza -- over all the kings west of the River. And he had peace on every side. ²⁵Judah and Israel lived in security, each person under their own vine and their own fig tree, from Dan to Beersheba, throughout Solomon's reign. ²⁶Solomon had forty thousand stalls for chariot horses and twelve thousand cavalry. ²⁷These governors provisioned King Solomon and everyone who came to his table, each in his assigned month. They let nothing be lacking. ²⁸They also brought barley and straw for the horses and swift steeds to the designated place, each governor according to his quota. ²⁹God gave Solomon wisdom and discernment in overwhelming measure, and breadth of mind like the sand on the seashore. ³⁰Solomon's wisdom surpassed the wisdom of all the people of the East and all the wisdom of Egypt. ³¹He was wiser than any person -- wiser than Ethan the Ezrahite, Heman, Calcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol. His reputation spread to all the surrounding nations. ³²He composed three thousand proverbs, and his songs numbered one thousand and five. ³³He spoke about trees, from the cedar of Lebanon down to the hyssop growing from the wall. He spoke about animals, birds, creeping things, and fish. ³⁴People came from every nation to hear the wisdom of Solomon, sent by all the kings of the earth who had heard of his wisdom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening is terse and emphatic: Solomon is melekh al kol Yisra'el ('king over all Israel'). The word kol ('all') is load-bearing -- it distinguishes his reign from his father David's, which began with only Judah (2 Samuel 2:4) and only later incorporated the northern tribes. Solomon starts with unified sovereignty.
2. The term sarim ('officials, chiefs') designates the highest tier of royal administration. Azariah ben Tsadoq heads the list as hakkohen ('the priest'), placing the priestly office at the top of the governmental structure. This is not merely religious -- the priest served as a constitutional legitimizer of the king's authority.
3. The soferim ('scribes, secretaries') handled royal correspondence, official documents, and state records. The name Shisha may be Egyptian in origin, suggesting that Solomon's scribal apparatus drew on Egyptian administrative models. The mazkir ('recorder, remembrancer') served as a royal herald and keeper of state annals -- Jehoshaphat held this same office under David (2 Samuel 8:16), providing continuity between reigns.
4. Benaiah is placed al ha-tsava ('over the army'), having replaced Joab after Solomon's consolidation of power in chapters 1-2. The pairing of Zadok and Abiathar as priests is striking since Abiathar was banished to Anathoth in 2:26-27. This list may reflect the official structure at the beginning of Solomon's reign before the purge, or it may preserve the priestly title as an honorary designation.
5. The nitstsavim ('governors, officers stationed over') are the twelve district administrators detailed in verses 7-19. Azariah son of Nathan oversees this entire supply network. Zabud son of Nathan holds the unique title re'eh hammelekh ('friend of the king, royal companion') -- a formal court title designating an intimate advisor. The 'Nathan' who fathered both men is likely the prophet Nathan, making these officials sons of the man who helped secure Solomon's throne.
6. Ahishar is al ha-bayit ('over the house'), the chief steward of the royal household -- a position of enormous practical power controlling daily palace operations. Adoniram is al ha-mas ('over the forced labor'). The word mas refers to corvee labor, the system of mandatory state service that Solomon will impose on Israel's population. This office will become the flashpoint of the kingdom's fracture: when Rehoboam sends Adoram (the same official or his successor) to manage the labor gangs, the northern tribes stone him to death (12:18).
7. The verb kilkelu ('they provisioned, they sustained') means to bear the full cost of feeding the royal court. The twelve-month rotation distributed the burden -- or more precisely, rotated it. Each district bore one month of total royal consumption. The system mirrors Egypt's administrative model and transforms Israel's tribal structure into an economic support apparatus for the crown.
8. Ben-Chur ('son of Hur') is given no personal name -- only a patronymic. Whether this reflects textual corruption or a deliberate convention for certain officials is debated. His district is the hill country of Ephraim, the central highlands of the northern tribal territory. This is ancestral Ephraimite land, now reorganized as a royal supply district.
9. Ben-Deqer's district comprises towns in the Shephelah (lowland foothills) and the Aijalon valley -- strategically important territory near the Philistine border. Beth-shemesh ('house of the sun') is where the ark returned from Philistine captivity (1 Samuel 6:12-19). These are western frontier towns, and their provisioning role shows Solomon taxing border regions as heavily as the interior.
10. Ben-Chesed's district includes Arubboth and the land of Hephher in the Sharon plain. Hephher was a Canaanite royal city conquered by Joshua (Joshua 12:17). Socoh is a fortified town -- its inclusion shows the district encompassed both agricultural lowlands and military outposts.
11. Nafat Dor ('the heights of Dor') refers to the coastal region around the ancient port city of Dor on the Mediterranean. Ben-Abinadab's marriage to Taphath bat Shelomoh ('Taphath daughter of Solomon') makes him the king's son-in-law, binding a strategic coastal district to the crown through kinship. Royal marriages to governors follow the standard Near Eastern practice of securing loyalty through family ties.
12. This is one of the largest and most fertile districts, spanning the Jezreel Valley and the Beth-shean Valley -- the agricultural heartland of northern Israel. Megiddo and Taanach are major fortified cities controlling the Via Maris trade route. Abel-meholah is the hometown of Elisha (1 Kings 19:16). The sheer geographic scope of this district reflects its productivity: the Jezreel Valley was Israel's breadbasket.
13. Chavvot Ya'ir ('the tent-villages of Jair') preserves the name of the Manassite clan leader who settled the Gilead region (Numbers 32:41). The term chavvot refers to unwallled encampments or small settlements. By contrast, the Argob district in Bashan contained sixty fortified cities with chomah ('walls') and berichei nechoshet ('bronze bars'). The juxtaposition of tent-villages and walled cities within a single district shows the range of settlement types in Transjordan.
14. Mahanaim ('two camps') was where Jacob encountered angels (Genesis 32:2) and where Ish-bosheth established his rival kingdom (2 Samuel 2:8). It also served as David's refuge during Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 17:24). The city carries layers of narrative memory -- now it functions as an administrative center for Solomon's Transjordanian district.
15. Ahimaaz is the second governor identified as Solomon's son-in-law (gam hu laqach, 'he also took'), married to Basemath bat Shelomoh. The name Basemath ('fragrance') was also borne by one of Esau's wives (Genesis 36:3). Naphtali's territory in upper Galilee was remote from Jerusalem, and binding its governor to the royal family through marriage served as an anchor of loyalty.
16. If Hushai is the same Hushai who served as David's friend and spy during Absalom's revolt (2 Samuel 15:32-37), then his son's appointment as governor represents a continuation of loyalty rewarded across generations. Asher's territory ran along the northern coast, and Bealoth may designate a sub-region within it.

17. Issachar's territory occupied the eastern Jezreel Valley, some of the richest farmland in Israel. Jacob's blessing described Issachar as a 'strong donkey crouching between the saddlebags' who 'bowed his shoulder to bear and became a servant at forced labor' (Genesis 49:14-15) -- a description that takes on new irony under Solomon's provisioning system.
18. Benjamin's territory lay immediately north of Jerusalem. A governor named Shimei over the tribe of Benjamin is notable given that the most famous Shimei in the narrative was a Benjaminite who cursed David (2 Samuel 16:5-13) and was later executed by Solomon's order (1 Kings 2:46). Whether this is a different Shimei or a deliberate placement is unclear.
19. The identification of Gilead as 'the territory of Sihon king of the Amorites and Og king of Bashan' reaches back to the conquest narratives of Numbers 21 and Deuteronomy 2-3, as though the land still carries the name of its defeated former rulers. The phrase *netsiv echad* ('one governor, the sole officer') may mean Geber alone administered this vast Transjordanian territory, or it may be a summary statement for the entire list.
20. The pairing of 'Judah and Israel' as a single prosperous unit is deliberate. The narrator names both entities separately -- they are one kingdom but two peoples, and the very syntax foreshadows the division that will come. The sand simile (*kachol*) appears in God's promises to Abraham (Genesis 22:17), Jacob (Genesis 32:12), and now in narrative fulfillment.
21. The phrase *min ha-nahar* ('from the River') refers to the Euphrates, the traditional eastern boundary of the promised land (Genesis 15:18, Deuteronomy 11:24). Solomon's domain stretches from the Euphrates to the Egyptian border -- the maximum territorial extent promised to Abraham. The term *minchah* ('tribute, offering') indicates that surrounding kingdoms paid regular tribute, acknowledging Solomonic suzerainty.
22. A *kor* is approximately 220 liters (6.25 bushels), making the daily flour consumption around 6,600 liters of fine flour and 13,200 liters of coarser meal. The distinction between *solet* ('fine flour') and *qemach* ('meal, coarser ground grain') indicates both luxury bread for the royal table and standard bread for the broader court household. These quantities could feed thousands daily.
23. The distinction between *baqar beri'im* ('fattened cattle') and *baqar re'i* ('pasture cattle') separates grain-fed premium beef from grass-fed stock. The wild game -- *ayyal* ('deer'), *tsevi* ('gazelle'), *yachmur* ('roeback') -- signals a royal table that goes far beyond sustenance into luxury. The *barbburim abusim* ('fattened fowl') were likely force-fed birds, an ancient precursor to the practice still known in some cuisines.
24. Tiphshah (probably Thapsacus on the upper Euphrates) to Azzah (Gaza on the Mediterranean coast) defines the full east-west sweep of Solomon's sphere of influence. The phrase *shalom hayah lo mikkol avarav missaviv* ('he had peace from all his sides roundabout') uses the word *shalom* not merely as absence of war but as comprehensive well-being and security. This is the Deuteronomic ideal of rest from enemies (Deuteronomy 12:10) fully realized.
25. The verb *yashav* ('dwelt, sat') combined with *la-vetach* ('in security, in confidence') describes settled, untroubled habitation. The vine-and-fig-tree formula appears in prophetic visions of the age to come precisely because Solomon's reign proved it was possible -- and its loss proved it was fragile.
26. The number 'forty thousand' stalls is likely hyperbolic or textually inflated -- 2 Chronicles 9:25 reads 'four thousand.' Even at four thousand, this represents a massive chariot force. Deuteronomy 17:16 explicitly warns that a king of Israel 'must not acquire many horses for himself or send the people back to Egypt to acquire more horses.' Solomon's horse program -- later described as importing from Egypt (10:28-29) -- directly violates this kingship law.
27. The phrase *lo ye'adderu davar* ('they let nothing be lacking') emphasizes the completeness of supply. The verb *adar* means 'to be missing, to fail' -- the governors ensured that the royal table never experienced scarcity. The expression *kol ha-qarev el shulchan ha-melek* ('all who drew near to the king's table') includes not just the royal family but the entire court: officials, foreign dignitaries, servants, and petitioners.
28. The *rekesh* ('swift steeds, coursers') are distinguished from ordinary *susim* ('horses'), referring to faster riding or courier animals. The phrase *ish ke-mishpat* ('each according to his assignment') uses *mishpat* in its administrative sense of 'appointed duty' or 'quota' rather than its judicial sense of 'justice.' The provisioning system extended beyond human consumption to the massive logistical demands of Solomon's cavalry.
29. Three terms describe Solomon's intellectual gift: *chokmah* ('wisdom' -- practical skill in living and governing), *tevunah* ('discernment' -- the ability to distinguish and analyze), and *rochav lev* ('breadth of heart/mind' -- comprehensive mental range). The heart (*lev*) in Hebrew is the organ of thought, not emotion. A 'broad heart' is a capacious intellect, not a tender disposition.
30. The *benei qedem* ('sons of the East') refers to the sages of Mesopotamia, Arabia, and Edom -- the traditional centers of ancient Near Eastern wisdom literature. Egypt's wisdom tradition was the oldest and most prestigious in the known world, encompassing architecture, medicine, administration, and moral instruction. Solomon is presented as surpassing both intellectual empires. This is a totality claim: east and south, Mesopotamia and Egypt, the two great civilizational poles of the ancient world.
31. These four named sages -- Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Darda -- were apparently legendary figures of wisdom known to the original audience. Ethan the Ezrahite is credited with Psalm 89 and Heman with Psalm 88. The title *benei Machol* ('sons of Mahol' or 'sons of the dance') may be a clan name or a designation for a guild of musician-sages. Solomon surpasses not anonymous thinkers but named masters whose reputations were established.
32. The term *marshal* ('proverb') encompasses far more than pithy sayings -- it includes riddles, parables, allegories, and comparative wisdom statements. The book of Proverbs preserves only a fraction of this output. The 1,005 songs (*shir*) represent a massive corpus of lyric poetry; the Song of Songs (*Shir ha-Shirim*, 'the Song of Songs') is traditionally attributed to Solomon and may be the superlative of this collection. The numbers three thousand and one thousand five present Solomon as a literary figure of staggering productivity.

33. Solomon's botanical and zoological knowledge spans the entire created order: from the erez ('cedar'), the largest and most majestic tree in the region, to the ezov ('hyssop'), a small herb growing from cracks in stone walls. The four animal categories -- behemah ('livestock, large animals'), of ('birds'), remes ('creeping things'), and dagim ('fish') -- echo the creation categories of Genesis 1:20-25. Solomon's wisdom comprehends the full taxonomy of the natural world. This is Adamic knowledge recovered: naming and understanding the creatures.
34. The chapter closes with an international audience streaming to Jerusalem for wisdom -- a reversal of Babel's scattering. The verb vayyavo'u ('they came') paired with mikkol ha-ammim ('from all the peoples') and mikkol malkhei ha-arets ('from all the kings of the earth') depicts a universal pilgrimage. This foreshadows the Queen of Sheba's visit (chapter 10) and echoes the prophetic vision of nations streaming to Zion (Isaiah 2:2-3, Micah 4:1-2). Solomon's wisdom-court is a foretaste of the messianic Jerusalem where 'the nations will walk by its light' (Revelation 21:24).

5

Summary: *Hiram king of Tyre sends envoys to Solomon, and the two kings forge an alliance for the construction of the Temple. Solomon explains that David could not build because of surrounding wars, but now God has given rest on every side. Hiram supplies cedar and cypress timber from Lebanon in exchange for wheat and oil. Solomon conscripts thirty thousand laborers from Israel, rotating them to Lebanon in shifts of ten thousand per month, and appoints seventy thousand burden-bearers and eighty thousand stonecutters in the hill country, overseen by thirty-three hundred foremen.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the hinge between promise and construction. The word menuchah ('rest') in verse 18 is the theological trigger: David could not build because there was no rest; Solomon can build because God has given rest on every side. The entire Deuteronomic program -- conquest, settlement, rest, then centralized worship -- reaches its intended sequence here. But the chapter also reveals the human cost. The mas ('forced labor') conscripted from 'all Israel' in verse 27 uses the same vocabulary as Egyptian slavery. Solomon builds God's house using the methods of Pharaoh. The narrator records this without explicit commentary, but the echoes are deafening. The chapter also establishes the first international trade alliance in Israel's history: Israelite grain for Phoenician timber, Israelite labor for Lebanese cedar. The Temple will be built from foreign materials by Israelite hands -- a theological statement about the nations contributing to God's dwelling place, and a political statement about the cost of grandeur.*

Translation Friction: *The WLC versification of this chapter differs significantly from the KJV. WLC chapter 5 contains 32 verses, beginning with material the KJV places at 4:21 and continuing through KJV 5:18. We follow the Hebrew versification throughout. The labor numbers present a historical puzzle: thirty thousand conscripts rotating in ten-thousand shifts (verse 27-28) plus seventy thousand carriers and eighty thousand quarry workers (verse 29) totals approximately 180,000 laborers. Whether these numbers are literal, conventional for 'very large,' or include non-Israelite workers alongside Israelites is debated. The text says 'all Israel' was conscripted (verse 27), but 9:22 later claims Solomon did not make Israelites into slaves. This tension is real and unresolved in the text itself.*

Connections: *Solomon's declaration that God has given menuchah ('rest') fulfills Deuteronomy 12:10-11, which stipulates that centralized worship at a chosen place can begin only after God grants rest from all surrounding enemies. David's inability to build because of war (verse 17) echoes 2 Samuel 7:1-13 and 1 Chronicles 22:8, where God tells David that his son -- a man of peace -- will build the house. The cedar of Lebanon as building material connects to the forests described in the Song of Songs (3:9) and to the eschatological restoration of Lebanon in Isaiah 35:2 and 60:13, where Lebanon's glory adorns God's sanctuary.*

1Hiram king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon, because he had heard that Solomon had been anointed king in his father's place. For Hiram had always been an ally of David. 2Solomon sent word to Hiram, saying: 3You know that my father David was unable to build a house for the name of the LORD his God because of the wars that surrounded him, until the LORD placed his enemies under the soles of his feet. 4But now the LORD my God has given me rest on every side. There is no adversary and no threat of harm. 5So now I intend to build a house for the name of the LORD my God, just as the LORD promised my father David: 'Your son, whom I will place on your throne in your place -- he will build the house for my name.' 6So now give orders for cedars to be cut for me from Lebanon. My servants will work alongside your servants, and I will pay

your servants' wages at whatever rate you set. For you know that there is no one among us skilled in felling timber like the Sidonians. ⁷When Hiram heard Solomon's words, he rejoiced greatly and said, "Blessed be the LORD today, who has given David a wise son to rule over this great people." ⁸Hiram sent word to Solomon: "I have heard what you sent to me. I will fulfill your every desire for cedar timber and cypress timber." ⁹My servants will bring them down from Lebanon to the sea. I will make them into rafts on the sea and float them to whatever place you designate. I will have them broken apart there, and you will carry them away. And you will fulfill my desire by providing food for my household. ¹⁰So Hiram supplied Solomon with all the cedar and cypress timber he wanted. ¹¹Solomon gave Hiram twenty thousand cors of wheat as provisions for his household, and twenty cors of pressed olive oil. Solomon provided this to Hiram year after year. ¹²The LORD gave Solomon wisdom, just as he had promised him. There was peace between Hiram and Solomon, and the two of them cut a covenant. ¹³King Solomon raised a forced labor levy from all Israel. The levy totaled thirty thousand men. ¹⁴He sent them to Lebanon in rotating shifts of ten thousand per month -- one month in Lebanon, two months at home. Adoniram was over the forced labor. ¹⁵Solomon had seventy thousand burden-bearers and eighty thousand stonecutters in the hill country, ¹⁶besides Solomon's three thousand three hundred chief overseers who supervised the work and directed the laborers. ¹⁷The king commanded, and they quarried large stones -- costly stones -- dressed stones to lay the foundation of the house. ¹⁸Solomon's builders, Hiram's builders, and the Gebalites cut and shaped the timber and stones to build the house. ¹⁹In the four hundred and eightieth year after the Israelites came out of the land of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv -- that is, the second month -- he began to build the house of the LORD. ²⁰The house that King Solomon built for the LORD was sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high. ²¹The entrance hall in front of the temple hall of the house was twenty cubits long, matching the width of the house, and ten cubits deep, extending from the front of the house. ²²He made windows for the house with recessed frames. ²³He built a side structure against the wall of the house all around -- against the walls of both the temple hall and the inner sanctuary -- and he made side rooms all around. ²⁴The lowest story was five cubits wide, the middle was six cubits wide, and the third was seven cubits wide. For he made offset ledges around the outside of the house so that the beams would not be inserted into the Temple walls. ²⁵When the house was being built, it was constructed with stones finished at the quarry, so that no hammer, chisel, or any iron tool was heard at the house during its construction. ²⁶The entrance to the lowest side room was on the right side of the house. They went up by winding stairs to the middle story, and from the middle to the third. ²⁷He built the house and completed it. He roofed the house with beams and planks of cedar. ²⁸He built the side structure around the entire house, five cubits high on each level, and attached it to the house with cedar timbers. ²⁹The word of the LORD came to Solomon: ³⁰"As for this house that you are building -- if you walk in my statutes, carry out my judgments, and keep all my commandments by walking in them, then I will fulfill my promise to you that I spoke to your father David." ³¹"I will dwell among the Israelites, and I will not abandon my people Israel." ³²So Solomon built the house and completed it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *shalach* ('he sent') initiates the diplomatic exchange. Hiram acts first -- the Phoenician king reaches out to the Israelite king, not the reverse. The reason given is twofold: the news of Solomon's anointing, and the pre-existing relationship (*ohev hayah Chiram le-David kol ha-yamim*, 'Hiram had been a lover/ally of David all the days'). The word *ohev* ('lover, friend') in diplomatic contexts means 'covenant partner, political ally' -- the same term used in treaty language throughout the ancient Near East.
2. The brevity of this transition -- *vayyishlach Shelomoh el Chiram lemor* -- moves directly from Hiram's initiative to Solomon's formal response. The verb *shalach* is now reciprocal: Hiram sent, Solomon sends back. Diplomatic symmetry frames the exchange.
3. Solomon addresses Hiram with *attah yadata* ('you yourself know'), appealing to shared knowledge between allied courts. David's wars were not a moral failing but a historical reality that prevented temple construction. The Chronicler adds that God explicitly told David he could not build because he was a man of blood (1 Chronicles 22:8), but the Kings narrative focuses on the practical obstacle of ongoing warfare.
4. The word *heniach* ('he has caused to rest') is the Hiphil of *nuach* -- God is the active agent who gives rest. The crucial term *satan* here means 'adversary, accuser, opponent' in its common noun sense -- not the proper name of a supernatural figure. Solomon declares *ein satan* ('there is no adversary'), a claim of total geopolitical security. The phrase *ein pega ra* ('no harmful occurrence, no evil encounter') completes the picture: not even random misfortune threatens. This is the Deuteronomic condition for temple construction fulfilled.

5. Solomon quotes the Nathan oracle (2 Samuel 7:12-13) directly to a foreign king, treating God's covenant promise as the authorization for his building project. The phrase *le-shem YHWH* ('for the name of the LORD') appears twice in this exchange (verses 3 and 5), establishing that the Temple is fundamentally a house for God's Name -- his revealed identity and presence -- rather than a house containing God himself. This distinction will become explicit in Solomon's dedication prayer (chapter 8).
6. Solomon's request is specific and deferential: *tsavveh* ('command, give the order') acknowledges Hiram's sovereignty over the Lebanon forests. The admission *ein banu ish yodea likhrot etsim ka-Tsidonim* ('there is no one among us who knows how to cut timber like the Sidonians') is remarkably candid for a king writing to an ally. Solomon openly states Israel's deficiency in forestry and lumber technology, recognizing Phoenician expertise. The Sidonians (a general term for Phoenicians) were the ancient world's master woodsmen and shipbuilders.
7. Hiram blesses YHWH by name -- *barukh YHWH ha-yom* ('blessed be the LORD this day'). Whether this represents genuine devotion to Israel's God or diplomatic courtesy toward an ally's deity is ambiguous. Phoenician kings were polytheistic, but treaty language often invoked the partner's god. Hiram's words echo the language of chapter 3: God gave Solomon *chokmah* ('wisdom'), and Hiram recognizes it. The phrase *ben chakham* ('a wise son') validates Solomon's fitness as David's successor.
8. Hiram responds with total agreement: *ani e'eseh et kol cheftsekha* ('I will do all your desire'). The two timber types are *arazim* ('cedars') and *beroshim* ('cypresses' or 'junipers'). Cedar was the premium construction wood of the ancient Near East -- fragrant, rot-resistant, and strong. Cypress served as secondary structural timber and decorative paneling. Both grew abundantly in the Lebanon mountains and were Tyre's most valuable export commodity.
9. The logistics are precise: timber felled in the Lebanon mountains, dragged downhill to the Mediterranean coast, assembled into *doverot* ('rafts, log-floats') for sea transport, then disassembled at the destination port (likely Joppa, modern Jaffa). The verb *nifatstem* ('I will break them apart') describes disassembling the rafts into individual logs for overland transport to Jerusalem. Hiram's reciprocal demand is *lechem beiti* ('food for my household') -- grain provisions for the Tyrian royal court.
10. The summary statement *kol cheftso* ('all his desire') emphasizes complete satisfaction of the order. The trade relationship is presented as smooth and mutually beneficial -- a model of international cooperation that the narrator records without criticism at this point.
11. Twenty thousand cors of wheat (approximately 4.4 million liters of grain) and twenty cors of *shemen katit* ('pressed oil,' the finest grade, cold-pressed from the first extraction) represent an enormous annual payment. The olive oil quantity seems small compared to the wheat, but *katit* oil was the premium grade -- the same quality used in the tabernacle lampstand (Exodus 27:20). The phrase *shanah be-shanah* ('year by year') indicates this was not a one-time payment but an ongoing trade obligation lasting throughout the construction period and beyond.
12. The narrator interjects a theological interpretation: God's gift of wisdom (chapter 3) is what made this diplomacy possible. The phrase *vayyikhrethu verit sheneihem* ('the two of them cut a covenant') uses the standard Hebrew idiom for treaty-making -- *karat berit* ('to cut a covenant'), referring to the cutting of animals in ratification rituals (Genesis 15:9-18). This is a formal international treaty between Israel and Tyre, not merely a trade agreement.
13. The verb *ya'al* ('he raised, he brought up') combined with *mas* ('forced labor, corvée') describes compulsory state labor. The phrase *mikkol Yisra'el* ('from all Israel') indicates this conscription was nationwide, not limited to specific tribes or to non-Israelite populations. This is the moment the narrator wants the reader to feel: the king of Israel is conscripting his own people for labor gangs, using the same institution (*mas*) that Pharaoh imposed on Israel in Egypt.
14. The rotation system (*chalifot*, 'shifts, exchanges') was designed to distribute the burden: each man served one month out of three. Even so, removing ten thousand working men from the economy each month represented a massive disruption to agriculture and family life. Adoniram (the same official from 4:6) administered the entire labor system. His name means 'my lord is exalted' -- an ironic designation for the overseer of forced labor gangs.
15. The *nosei savval* ('burden-bearers, carriers') transported stone and materials from quarry to construction site. The *chotsev ba-har* ('hewers in the mountain') were quarry workers cutting stone blocks from the limestone hills. These 150,000 workers are apparently separate from the thirty thousand timber conscripts in verse 13. The scale of the labor force rivals the great building projects of Egypt and Mesopotamia.
16. The *sarei ha-nitstsavim* ('chief officers stationed over') served as foremen. The verb *rodim* ('ruling, dominating') is strong -- the same root (*radah*) used for human dominion over animals in Genesis 1:26 and for harsh rule in Leviticus 25:43, 46. The 3,300 foremen 'ruling over the people doing the work' echoes the language of Egyptian taskmasters. The parallel in 2 Chronicles 2:17 gives 3,600 overseers, a minor numerical discrepancy common in ancient texts.
17. Three adjectives describe the foundation stones: *gedolot* ('great, large'), *yeqarot* ('costly, precious'), and *gazit* ('dressed, hewn'). The term *avanei gazit* refers to stones precisely cut and squared with tools, distinguishing them from rough fieldstone. The foundation of the Temple required enormous *ashlar* blocks, similar to those still visible in the Western Wall retaining structure. The phrase *leyassad ha-bayit* ('to lay the foundation of the house') marks the first physical construction action in the narrative.
18. The *Givlim* ('Gebalites') are craftsmen from Gebal (Byblos), the ancient Phoenician port city north of Beirut renowned for its stonework and building expertise. Three groups collaborate: Israelite builders, Tyrian builders, and Byblian specialists. The verb *vayyifselhu* ('they cut, they carved') and the verb *vayyakhinu* ('they prepared') describe the pre-fabrication of materials at the quarry and forest before transport to Jerusalem. This international workforce -- Israelite, Tyrian, and Gebalite -- foreshadows the Temple's theological significance as a 'house of prayer for all nations' (Isaiah 56:7).

19. The 480 years has generated extensive scholarly debate. If taken literally, it dates the Exodus to approximately 1446 BCE. Many scholars view it as a symbolic number (12 x 40) representing generational completeness. The month name Ziv belongs to the old Canaanite calendar, replaced after the exile by Babylonian month names. The narrator glosses it as 'the second month' for readers unfamiliar with the pre-exilic calendar.
20. At approximately 90 feet long, 30 feet wide, and 45 feet high (using an 18-inch cubit), the Temple was not enormous by ancient Near Eastern standards -- Mesopotamian temples and Egyptian halls were larger. Its significance was theological, not architectural. The proportions are precisely double those of the tabernacle (Exodus 26:15-30), making the Temple a permanent, expanded version of the wilderness dwelling. The 3:1 length-to-width ratio and the overall rectangular plan follow the standard tripartite temple design found throughout the Levant.
21. The ulam ('entrance hall, vestibule, porch') was the first space one entered. It matched the full width of the building (twenty cubits) but extended only ten cubits in depth. The term heikhal ('temple hall, main hall') here refers to the central worship space behind the vestibule. The tripartite structure -- ulam (vestibule), heikhal (main hall), devir (inner sanctuary) -- follows a plan well attested in Syrian and Phoenician temples of the same period, particularly at Tell Tayinat and Ain Dara.
22. The phrase challonei shequfim atumim is among the most debated architectural terms in the Hebrew Bible. Shequfim may mean 'wide-framed' or 'with beams/frames,' and atumim may mean 'narrow, closed, latticed.' The combined sense is probably windows that were wide on the inside and narrow on the outside (splayed windows), allowing light in while maintaining structural integrity -- a common feature in ancient Near Eastern temple and fortress architecture.
23. The yatsia ('side structure, annex') was a multi-story addition built against the Temple's exterior walls on three sides. The tsela'ot ('side rooms, chambers') within this structure served for storage of temple vessels, treasuries, and priestly quarters. The term devir appears here for the first time -- the innermost room of the Temple, the Holy of Holies. The side structure surrounded both the heikhal (main hall) and the devir (inner sanctuary), creating a buffer zone between the sacred interior and the outside world.
24. The progressively wider stories (5, 6, 7 cubits) resulted from migraot ('offsets, recessions') -- stepped ledges built into the Temple's exterior wall at each level. The beams of the side structure rested on these ledges rather than being embedded in the Temple wall itself. The reason is stated explicitly: le-vilti achoz be-qirot ha-bayit ('so as not to grip the walls of the house'). The Temple walls were to remain structurally inviolate -- nothing foreign was to penetrate the sacred enclosure's walls.
25. The term even shelemah massa ('complete quarried stone') means stones fully dressed at the masa ('quarry'). The three tools mentioned -- maqqavot ('hammers'), garzen ('axes, chisels'), kol keli varzel ('any iron implement') -- represent the full toolkit of stone-working. Their silence at the construction site is presented as a deliberate architectural choice, not merely a logistical convenience.
26. The petach ('entrance') was on the ketef ha-bayit ha-yemanit ('the right shoulder of the house'), meaning the south side. The belullim ('winding stairs, spiral staircases') provided internal access between the three levels of the side structure. This is one of the earliest references to a spiral staircase in ancient literature. Access was from ground level upward through the side annex, never through the Temple's main worship spaces.
27. The verb vayyekhallelu ('he completed it') uses the same root (kalah) as the completion of creation in Genesis 2:1 and the completion of the tabernacle in Exodus 40:33. The gevim ('beams') and sederot ('rows of planks') formed the roof structure, all of cedar wood. The entire interior structure from roof to walls was timber, with stone visible only from the outside.
28. Each story of the side structure (yatsia) was five cubits (approximately 7.5 feet) high. The phrase vayyeechoz et ha-bayit ba-atsei arazim ('he attached it to the house with cedar timbers') describes the wooden joinery connecting the side annex to the main structure -- the cedar beams resting on the offset ledges described in verse 24 without penetrating the Temple walls.
29. The formula vayehi devar YHWH el Shelomoh ('the word of the LORD came to Solomon') is the standard prophetic reception formula, used hundreds of times for prophets like Jeremiah, Ezekiel, and Hosea. Its application to Solomon mid-construction is striking -- God interrupts the building project with a direct word, as though the physical construction requires theological grounding before it can continue.
30. God's word is conditional: im ('if') introduces a protasis with three requirements -- walking in chuqqotai ('my statutes'), doing mishpatai ('my judgments'), and keeping kol mitsvotai ('all my commandments'). The triple formulation covers the full scope of Torah obedience. Only then will God fulfill (vahaqimoti, 'I will establish, I will raise up') the Davidic promise. The Temple's permanence depends on the king's obedience -- a condition that will prove devastating when Solomon himself fails.
31. The pairing of divine indwelling with the pledge not to abandon uses covenant language that will echo through Israel's prophetic tradition. When God does eventually withdraw his presence from the Temple (Ezekiel 10-11), it will be understood as the consequence of the broken condition.
32. The chapter closes with the same completion formula as verse 27: vayyiven et ha-bayit vayekhallelu. The repetition brackets the divine oracle (verses 29-31) within the construction narrative, as though God's conditional promise is structurally embedded in the building itself. The house is built, the house is finished -- but its endurance depends on what happens inside it.

6

Summary: *The Temple's interior construction is detailed from floor to ceiling. Solomon overlays the entire interior with cedar, then gold. He constructs the inner sanctuary -- the devir -- as a perfect twenty-cubit cube, places two massive cherubim of olive wood overlaid with gold inside it, and carves the walls throughout with cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers. The doors of olivewood are carved and gilded. The chapter concludes with the completion date: the house was finished in the month of Bul, the eighth month, in Solomon's eleventh year -- seven years of construction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the architectural fulfillment of the entire biblical narrative from Eden to Sinai to Zion. Every decorative element points backward and forward. The cherubim recall the guardians stationed at Eden's entrance (Genesis 3:24) -- but now they are inside the sanctuary, guarding the ark rather than barring access. The palm trees and open flowers carved on every wall recreate a garden paradise in gold and cedar: the Temple is Eden restored, a space where God and humanity dwell together again. The inner sanctuary -- the devir -- is a perfect cube of twenty cubits, the same geometric proportion as the New Jerusalem in Revelation 21:16. The bayit ('house') wordplay from 2 Samuel 7 reaches its physical fulfillment here: God promised to build David a bayit (dynasty), and David's son builds God a bayit (temple). The word bayit appears more than twenty times in this single chapter, hammering the connection. No stone was visible inside -- every surface was covered with cedar, then with gold. The worshiper entering the Temple saw no quarried stone, only living wood and pure gold, as though the building were a living organism plated in divine glory.*

Translation Friction: *The architectural terminology in this chapter is extremely difficult. Many Hebrew terms for structural elements appear only here and have no clear parallels in other Semitic languages. Words like tsela ('side room' or 'rib'), yatsia ('side structure'), and tselat ('planks' or 'ribs') have been debated for centuries. Measurements and spatial relationships are sometimes ambiguous, and scholarly reconstructions of the Temple's floor plan differ significantly. We render architectural terms with the most widely accepted English equivalents while noting uncertainty. The relationship between the KJV chapter 5 material and KJV chapter 6 (which corresponds to WLC chapter 6) should also be noted: we follow the WLC versification, where chapter 6 begins with the Temple dimensions and construction details.*

Connections: *The devir as a perfect cube connects to the Holy of Holies of the tabernacle (Exodus 26:33-34) and anticipates the cubic New Jerusalem (Revelation 21:16). The two cherubim spanning the inner sanctuary with their wings recall the cherubim on the mercy seat of the ark (Exodus 25:18-20) but at monumental scale -- what was handheld metalwork in the wilderness becomes room-sized sculpture in the Temple. The carved palm trees connect to Ezekiel's future temple vision (Ezekiel 41:18-20) and to the Garden of Eden. The seven-year construction period echoes the seven days of creation (Genesis 1-2:3): as God built the cosmos in seven units and rested, Solomon builds God's house in seven years. The parallels between temple-building and world-building in ancient Near Eastern literature are well documented, and the biblical writer appears to exploit them deliberately.*

¶In the four hundred and eightieth year after the Israelites came out of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv -- the second month -- he began to build the house of the LORD. ¶The house that King Solomon built for the LORD was sixty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high. ¶The vestibule in front of the temple hall was twenty cubits across, matching the width of the house, and ten cubits deep from front to back. ¶He made windows for the house with narrowing frames. ¶Against the wall of the house he built a side structure all around, encircling the walls of both the temple hall and the inner sanctuary, and he constructed side rooms all around. ¶The lowest level was five cubits wide, the middle level six cubits wide, and the third level seven cubits wide, because he had made offset ledges in the outer wall of the house all around so that the beams would not be set into the walls of the house. ¶The house was built with whole stones finished at the quarry, so that neither hammer nor chisel nor any iron tool was heard at the house while it was being built. ¶The entrance to the lowest side room was on the south side of the house. Winding stairs led up to the middle level,

and from the middle to the third. ⁹So he built the house and completed it, and roofed it with cedar beams and cedar planks. ¹⁰He built the side structure against the entire house, five cubits high on each level, and it was joined to the house by cedar timbers. ¹¹Then the word of the LORD came to Solomon: ¹²"This house that you are building -- if you walk in my statutes, carry out my judgments, and keep all my commandments by living according to them, then I will fulfill my word to you, the word I spoke to your father David. ¹³I will dwell among the Israelites, and I will not abandon my people Israel." ¹⁴Solomon built the house and completed it. ¹⁵He lined the interior walls of the house with cedar planks from the floor to the ceiling beams, paneling the inside with wood. He covered the floor of the house with cypress planks. ¹⁶He built the rear twenty cubits of the house with cedar planks from floor to walls, constructing it as the inner sanctuary -- the Holy of Holies. ¹⁷The main hall in front of the inner sanctuary -- that is, the temple hall -- was forty cubits long. ¹⁸The cedar inside the house was carved with gourd-shaped ornaments and open flowers. Everything was cedar -- no stone was visible. ¹⁹He prepared the inner sanctuary within the house to place there the ark of the covenant of the LORD. ²⁰The inner sanctuary was twenty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and twenty cubits high. He overlaid it with refined gold and also overlaid the cedar altar. ²¹Solomon overlaid the interior of the house with refined gold. He drew chains of gold across the front of the inner sanctuary, and he overlaid it with gold. ²²He overlaid the entire house with gold until the whole house was covered. He also overlaid the entire altar that belonged to the inner sanctuary with gold. ²³In the inner sanctuary he made two cherubim of olive wood, each ten cubits tall. ²⁴One wing of the first cherub was five cubits, and the other wing was five cubits -- ten cubits from wingtip to wingtip. ²⁵The second cherub was also ten cubits. Both cherubim had the same dimensions and the same form. ²⁶The height of the first cherub was ten cubits, and so was the second. ²⁷He placed the cherubim inside the innermost room. Their wings were spread out so that the wing of the first touched one wall and the wing of the second cherub touched the opposite wall, and their inner wings met each other in the center of the room -- wing touching wing. ²⁸He covered the cherubim in gold overlay. ²⁹On all the walls of the house, all around, he carved figures of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers -- in both the inner and outer rooms. ³⁰He overlaid the floor of the house with gold, in both the inner and outer rooms. ³¹For the entrance to the inner sanctuary he made doors of olive wood. The doorframe -- lintel and posts -- spanned a fifth of the wall. ³²The two doors were of olive wood, and he carved on them cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers. He overlaid them with gold, pressing the gold onto the cherubim and the palm trees. ³³In the same way he made doorposts of olive wood for the entrance to the temple hall, spanning a fourth of the wall. ³⁴The two doors were of cypress wood. Each door had two folding leaves that turned on pivots. ³⁵He carved cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers on them, and overlaid them with gold fitted precisely to the carved surfaces. ³⁶He built the inner courtyard with three courses of dressed stone and one course of cedar beams. ³⁷In the fourth year the foundation of the house of the LORD was laid, in the month of Ziv. ³⁸In the eleventh year, in the month of Bul -- the eighth month -- the house was finished in every detail and according to its entire plan. He built it in seven years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is identical in content to WLC 5:19. In the KJV versification, this is 6:1 and serves as the chapter opening. The chronological anchor to the Exodus remains the dominant framework: the Temple is the destination of the redemption journey that began in Egypt 480 years earlier. The month of Ziv (later called Iyyar) falls in April-May, the beginning of the dry construction season in the Levant.
2. The overall dimensions -- sixty by twenty by thirty cubits -- establish the rectangular shell of the Temple. At roughly 90 by 30 by 45 feet, the building was modest by imperial standards but precisely proportioned. The 3:1:1.5 ratio (length to width to height) created a narrow, tall interior space that drew the eye forward and upward toward the inner sanctuary. These proportions exactly double the tabernacle's dimensions, marking the Temple as the tabernacle's permanent successor.
3. The ulam ('vestibule, entrance hall') was an open or semi-open porch forming the approach to the main hall. Its twenty-cubit width matched the building's full width, and its ten-cubit depth added to the overall length of the complex. Visitors would pass through this vestibule before entering the heikhal. Analogous vestibules have been found in excavated temples at Ain Dara in Syria and Tell Tayinat in Turkey, confirming the architectural type.
4. The challonei shequfim atumim ('framed and narrowed windows') were likely clerestory windows set high in the walls above the side chambers. They admitted light into the main hall while maintaining the enclosed, sacred character of the space. The exact design is debated -- they may have been splayed (wider inside than outside), latticed, or partially blocked. Their placement above the side structure ensured that the Temple received natural

light without compromising the wall space used for carved decoration.

5. The yatsia ('side structure') wrapped around three sides of the building (north, south, and west), leaving only the eastern entrance facade open. The tsela'ot ('side rooms') within this structure served as storage for sacred vessels, priestly garments, treasury, and other Temple apparatus. The structure surrounded both the heikhal and the devir, reinforcing the concentric zones of holiness: side rooms (accessible), main hall (priestly), inner sanctuary (high priest only, once a year).
6. The progressively wider stories (five, six, seven cubits) resulted from migraot ('recessions, stepped offsets') in the Temple's exterior wall. At each level, the wall stepped inward, creating a wider ledge for the floor beams of the next story. The design principle is stated explicitly: le-vilti ahoz be-qiot ha-bayit ('so that nothing would grip the walls of the house'). The sacred walls were not to be penetrated by construction elements from the side rooms.
7. The phrase even shelemah massa ('complete quarried stone') means every block was fully dressed before leaving the quarry. The result was a sacred construction site of silence -- no metallic ringing, no chipping of stone. The ban on iron tools at the Temple site connects to Exodus 20:25, where hewn-stone altars are forbidden because the sword (iron tool) profanes the stone. Iron was the metal of warfare; its exclusion from the construction site made the Temple a space untouched by violence from its very foundation.
8. The ketef ha-bayit ha-yemanit ('the right shoulder of the house') means the south wall when facing east (the Temple's orientation). The belullim ('winding stairs') provided vertical circulation within the side structure. This architectural detail -- a spiral staircase connecting three levels of service rooms -- reveals a sophisticated building plan where all support functions were physically integrated but liturgically separated from the worship spaces.
9. The verb vayyispon ('he covered, he roofed') with gevim ('beams, rafters') and sederot ('rows, planks') describes the ceiling and roof construction. Cedar was chosen for its fragrance, durability, and resistance to insects and rot. A cedar roof would have filled the interior with its distinctive scent -- a sensory dimension of worship that is easy to overlook in architectural descriptions.
10. Each level of the side structure stood five cubits high (approximately 7.5 feet), creating functional but compact service spaces. The cedar timbers connecting the side structure to the main building rested on the offset ledges without penetrating the sacred walls -- a design detail repeated for emphasis.
11. The prophetic formula interrupts the construction narrative. God does not wait until the building is finished to speak -- he intervenes mid-project, inserting a theological condition into the heart of the architectural description. The placement is deliberate: between the exterior shell (verses 1-10) and the interior decoration (verses 14-38), God establishes the spiritual terms under which this building will function.
12. The condition is absolute: im telekh be-chuqqotai ('if you walk in my statutes'). Three parallel demands cover the full Torah obligation: chuqqot ('statutes' -- fixed ordinances), mishpatim ('judgments' -- case law and judicial decisions), and mitsvot ('commandments' -- direct imperatives). God ties the Temple's effectiveness to the king's obedience. A beautiful building with a disobedient builder is an empty shell.
13. The twin promises -- positive (I will dwell) and negative (I will not forsake) -- define what the Temple is for. It is not a container for God but a location of reliable encounter. The verb shakhan ('to dwell, to tabernacle') connects the Temple to the wilderness tabernacle and forward to the incarnation. God's presence is the purpose of the building; obedience is the condition for its continuation.
14. The terse statement vayyiven Shelomoh et ha-bayit vayekhallelu functions as a transition. The external structure is done; the narrative now turns inward to describe the interior work. The verb kalah ('to complete, to finish') signals the end of the structural phase and the beginning of the decorative and liturgical fitting.
15. The phrase mibbaytah ('from the inside') emphasizes that this is interior work. The cedar planks (tsalot arazim) ran from floor (qarqa) to ceiling (sipun), completely concealing the stone walls. The floor was laid with beroshim ('cypress' or 'juniper') planks. The result was a fully wood-paneled interior: cedar walls, cedar ceiling, cypress floor. No stone was visible from inside the Temple. The worshiper entering the house of God stood in a room of living wood, as though inside a vast, fragrant forest.
16. The rear twenty cubits of the sixty-cubit-long building were partitioned off as the devir, here explicitly identified as qodesh ha-qodashim ('the Holy of Holies,' literally 'the holiness of holinesses'). This superlative construction -- the most holy of holy spaces -- designated the room as the supreme sacred zone in all Israel. The cedar paneling continued into this room, creating a continuous interior with no visible division between ordinary and supreme holiness except the partition wall and doors.
17. With twenty cubits allocated to the devir, the remaining forty cubits formed the heikhal ('temple hall, main hall'). This was the larger worship space containing the altar of incense, the ten lampstands, and the tables of showbread. The phrase lifnai ('before it' or 'in front') orients the reader: the forty-cubit hall was the space you encountered before reaching the twenty-cubit inner sanctuary behind it.
18. The peqa'im ('gourds, gourd-shaped ornaments') are the same decorative motif found on the rim of the bronze sea (7:24). The peturei tsitsim ('opening flowers, blossoming buds') represent flowers in various stages of opening. Together they create a botanical motif covering all interior cedar surfaces -- a garden carved in wood.
19. The devir exists for one purpose: latet sham et aron berit YHWH ('to place there the ark of the covenant of the LORD'). The entire building -- the administrative system that funds it, the labor force that builds it, the cedar forests that supply it -- converges on this single object in this single room. The ark is the throne-base of God's invisible presence, the chest containing the tablets of the covenant. The Temple is a house built around a box that contains the terms of a relationship.

20. The cubic dimensions distinguish the devir from every other room in the building and from every other sacred space in the ancient Near East. The zahav sagur ('shut gold, enclosed gold, refined gold') may refer to gold purified to maximum fineness. The total gold coverage would have made the room glow in lamplight, creating the visual impression of entering a space made of light itself.
21. The rattuqot zahav ('chains of gold') stretched across the entrance to the devir, creating a boundary marker between the main hall and the Holy of Holies. These were not barriers in the physical sense but sacred boundary indicators -- a visible line that only the high priest could cross, and only once a year. The repeated phrase vayyetsappeihu zahav ('he overlaid it with gold') emphasizes that gold covered everything: walls, ceiling, floor partition, altar, chains.
22. The phrase ad tom kol ha-bayit ('until the completion of all the house') indicates total coverage -- no surface was left ungilded. The altar associated with the devir is the incense altar (mizbach ha-qetoret), which stood in the main hall directly before the entrance to the Holy of Holies. Its complete gold overlay made it functionally and visually part of the devir's golden zone.
23. The keruvim were carved from atsei shemen ('oil-tree wood'), most likely olive wood, chosen for its fine grain and durability. At ten cubits (approximately fifteen feet) each, these were monumental sculptures filling the twenty-cubit-high room. The cherubim of the Temple are dramatically larger than the small figures atop the ark's mercy seat (Exodus 25:18-20). What was miniature metalwork in the tabernacle becomes architectural sculpture in the Temple -- the same forms scaled to the permanence of the new setting.
24. Each cherub had a ten-cubit wingspan (five cubits per wing), meaning its wingspan equaled its height. The measurement mi-qetsot kenafav ve-ad qetsot kenafav ('from the ends of its wings to the ends of its wings') emphasizes the full spread. These are not folded wings but fully extended, outstretched wings filling the room.
25. The phrase middah achat ve-qetsev echad ('one measure and one form') indicates the two cherubim were identical -- mirror images of each other. The word qetsev ('form, shape, contour') refers to their overall design, not just their size. Perfect symmetry flanking the ark created a throne composition: the two cherubim formed the sides of God's invisible throne, with the mercy seat of the ark as the footstool.
26. The height is restated for emphasis. At ten cubits each in a twenty-cubit-high room, the cherubim's heads reached exactly halfway to the ceiling. Their outstretched wings, at ten cubits each, collectively spanned the entire twenty-cubit width of the room. The inner sanctuary was entirely filled with cherubim -- there was no empty space above the ark.
27. The verb vayyiferesu ('they spread out') describes a deliberate, active extension of the wings. The touching of wall and wing (noga'at baqqir) and wing meeting wing (nog'ot kanaf el kanaf) creates an unbroken line across the room. The ark of the covenant sat beneath this canopy of wings on the floor of the devir.
28. The olive wood cherubim, already masterworks of carving, were then completely covered in gold leaf. In the lamplight of the inner sanctuary, the cherubim would have appeared as two fifteen-foot beings of solid gold, their wings spanning the room, standing guard over the ark. The gold overlay transforms wood into glory -- the material of the earth covered with the metal of heaven.
29. The phrase millifnim ve-la-chitson ('on the inside and on the outside') means both the devir (inner room) and the heikhal (outer room) bore the same carved program. The entire interior was a unified garden scene. The carving technique (pituchei miqllaat, 'engravings of carving') describes relief work -- figures raised from the flat surface of the cedar panels.
30. Even the floor -- the cypress planks laid in verse 15 -- was overlaid with gold. The phrase lifnimah ve-lachitson ('on the inside and on the outside') means both the devir floor and the heikhal floor received gold overlay. The priest entering the Temple walked on gold, stood beneath a gold ceiling, and was surrounded on all sides by gold-covered walls. Every surface -- up, down, left, right, forward, behind -- was gold.
31. The daltot atsei shemen ('doors of oil-wood/olive-wood') guarded the entrance to the devir. The phrase ha-ayil mezuzot chamishit is architecturally obscure -- it likely means the doorframe (ayil, 'pillar/projection' and mezuzot, 'doorposts') occupied one-fifth of the wall width. In a twenty-cubit-wide room, this would make the doorway approximately four cubits (six feet) wide. The narrow entrance to the Holy of Holies reinforced its restrictive access.
32. The same three-motif program (cherubim, palm trees, open flowers) that covered the walls now appears on the doors. The verb vayyared ('he pressed down, he hammered down') describes the technique of fitting gold leaf into the carved relief so that the gold followed the contours of the carving. The result was golden doors with three-dimensional golden figures in relief -- cherubim and palm trees standing out from the golden surface.
33. The heikhal entrance had olive-wood doorposts occupying a fourth (not a fifth) of the wall width -- making this entrance slightly wider than the devir entrance. The widening from outer to inner (one-fourth to one-fifth) creates a progressive narrowing as one moves deeper into the sacred space: the closer to God's presence, the narrower the access.
34. Unlike the olive-wood doors of the devir, the heikhal doors were beroshim ('cypress'). Each door consisted of two panels (tsela'im, 'halves, leaves') mounted on gelilim ('pivots, rollers'). These were bi-fold doors: each half of the doorway had a door that itself folded in half, allowing the wide entrance to be opened partially or fully. The engineering accommodated both practical daily access and ceremonial full opening.
35. The phrase meyushar al ha-mechuqqeh ('leveled upon the engraving, fitted precisely upon the carved work') describes the gold leaf being smoothed and pressed into the relief so that it followed every contour. The gold did not flatten the carving but conformed to it, preserving the three-dimensional quality of the cherubim, palms, and flowers. The technique required extraordinary skill to apply thin gold without tearing it over complex surfaces.

36. The chatser ha-penimit ('inner courtyard') surrounded the Temple building itself, distinct from the outer courtyard. Its walls were built in a distinctive pattern: sheloshah turei gazit ve-tur kerutot arazim ('three rows of cut stone and a row of trimmed cedars'). This three-to-one ratio of stone to wood created a layered wall with cedar beams serving as horizontal ties, a construction technique that also provided earthquake resistance -- the wooden courses could absorb seismic stress without cracking. The same technique appears in Ezra 6:4 for the rebuilt Temple.
37. This verse recapitulates the starting date from verse 1: Solomon's fourth regnal year, the month of Ziv (the second month, April-May). The verb yussad ('was founded') specifically marks the laying of the foundation. This verse pairs with verse 38 to create a chronological bracket: foundation in Ziv of year four, completion in Bul of year eleven.
38. The month name Bul may derive from a root meaning 'produce' or 'rain' -- it marks the transition from dry to wet season. The phrase le-khol devarav u-le-khol mishpatav ('in all its matters and all its designs') means the building was completed exactly as planned, with no deviation or omission. The seven-year total (year 4 to year 11) is counted inclusively in the ancient manner.

7

Summary: *Solomon completes his own palace complex over thirteen years, then commissions Hiram of Tyre — a master bronze craftsman — to fabricate the Temple's bronze furnishings. Hiram casts the two massive pillars Jachin and Boaz for the Temple entrance, the great bronze Sea supported by twelve oxen, ten wheeled stands with their basins, and all the utensils of gold and bronze. The chapter concludes with Solomon depositing the holy things David had dedicated into the Temple treasuries.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the Hebrew Bible's most detailed account of ancient Near Eastern metalwork. The narrator devotes extraordinary attention to Hiram's craftsmanship — not because bronze technology is inherently theological, but because these objects mediate between the visible and the invisible. The two pillars Jachin ('He establishes') and Boaz ('In Him is strength') are named with theological statements, not labels. They do not support the roof; they stand freestanding at the entrance, announcing in bronze what the Temple proclaims in stone: God establishes, and in God is strength. The great Sea (yam) — holding approximately 12,000 gallons and resting on twelve oxen facing the four compass points — echoes the cosmic waters of Genesis 1. The Temple does not merely house worship; it maps creation. Every measurement, every lily-blossom capital, every pomegranate is a statement about divine order imposed on raw material. The chapter moves from Solomon's secular palace (vv. 1-12) to the sacred furnishings (vv. 13-51), and the transition is itself significant: the king's house takes thirteen years, the LORD's house took seven (6:38). The narrator lets the numbers speak without comment.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the two Hiram's is a persistent source of confusion. The Hiram who is king of Tyre (chapter 5) is not the Hiram who crafts the bronze (7:13-14). The craftsman is identified as the son of a widow from the tribe of Naphtali and a Tyrian father — 2 Chronicles 2:14 says his mother was from Dan. This is either a textual discrepancy or a reference to different tribal territories. We render the text as it stands and note the tension. The measurements of the bronze Sea also present a mathematical puzzle: its diameter is ten cubits and its circumference thirty cubits (v. 23), which yields pi as exactly 3. Ancient Near Eastern mathematics used this approximation, and the text reflects practical measurement, not geometric theory. The phrase 'a line of thirty cubits encircled it' is a builder's description, not a mathematical proof.*

Connections: *The bronze Sea (yam mutsaq) stands on twelve oxen facing north, south, east, and west (v. 25) — mapping the twelve tribes onto the four directions, just as the wilderness camp was arranged around the tabernacle (Numbers 2). The Sea itself echoes the primordial tehom ('deep') of Genesis 1:2 and the 'sea' that God defeated in creation (Psalm 74:13, Job 26:12). By containing the cosmic waters in a bronze basin, the Temple declares God's mastery over chaos. The pillars Jachin and Boaz (v. 21) will be specifically named when Nebuchadnezzar's forces tear them down (2 Kings 25:13, Jeremiah 52:17) — their destruction signals the undoing of everything their names proclaimed. The holy things of David (v. 51) bridge the Davidic promise (2 Samuel 7) to its Solomonic fulfillment: what the father consecrated, the son installs.*

¹Solomon built his own palace over thirteen years, and he completed the entire complex. ²He built the House of the Forest of Lebanon — one hundred cubits long, fifty cubits wide, and thirty cubits high — on four rows of cedar pillars with cedar beams resting on the pillars. ³It was roofed with cedar above the support beams that rested on the pillars — forty-five pillars,

fifteen per row. ⁴There were window frames in three rows, and window opening faced window opening in three tiers. ⁵All the doorways and doorposts had squared frames, and window faced window in three tiers. ⁶He made the Hall of Pillars — fifty cubits long and thirty cubits wide — with a portico in front of it, supported by pillars and a canopy before them. ⁷He made the Hall of the Throne where he would render judgment — the Hall of Justice — and it was paneled with cedar from floor to floor. ⁸His personal residence, set in the other courtyard behind the hall, was built in the same style. He also built a house for Pharaoh's daughter, whom Solomon had married, matching this same design. ⁹All these structures were made of costly stones, cut to measure and sawed with saws on the inner and outer faces — from the foundation to the coping stones, and from the inside out to the great courtyard. ¹⁰The foundation was laid with costly stones — massive stones, some ten cubits and some eight cubits long. ¹¹Above these were costly stones, cut to measure, and cedar beams. ¹²The great courtyard was enclosed by three courses of cut stone and one course of cedar beams — the same construction used for the inner court of the house of the LORD and for the Temple's portico. ¹³King Solomon sent for Hiram and brought him from Tyre. ¹⁴He was the son of a widow from the tribe of Naphtali, and his father was a Tyrian man, a bronze craftsman. Hiram was filled with skill, understanding, and knowledge to execute every kind of work in bronze. He came to King Solomon and carried out all his bronze work. ¹⁵He cast two pillars of bronze, each eighteen cubits tall, and a cord of twelve cubits measured the circumference of each pillar. ¹⁶He made two capitals of cast bronze to set on top of the pillars — five cubits high for one capital and five cubits high for the other. ¹⁷He made lattice networks — a mesh of interwoven chains — for the capitals on top of the pillars: seven networks for one capital and seven for the other. ¹⁸He fashioned the pillars with two rows of pomegranates encircling each network to cover the capitals on top, and he did the same for the second capital. ¹⁹The capitals on top of the pillars in the portico were shaped like lilies — four cubits high. ²⁰The capitals on both pillars also had pomegranates above, next to the rounded section beside the network — two hundred pomegranates in rows encircling each capital. ²¹He erected the pillars at the portico of the Temple. He set up the right pillar and named it Jachin, and he set up the left pillar and named it Boaz. ²²On top of the pillars was lily work, and so the work on the pillars was completed. ²³He made the cast Sea — ten cubits from rim to rim, perfectly circular, five cubits high, and a line of thirty cubits measured its circumference. ²⁴Beneath its rim, gourds encircled it — ten per cubit running all the way around the Sea in two rows, cast as one piece with the Sea itself. ²⁵It stood on twelve oxen — three facing north, three facing west, three facing south, and three facing east — with the Sea resting on top of them and all their hindquarters turned inward. ²⁶Its wall was a handbreadth thick, and its rim was fashioned like the rim of a cup, shaped like an open lily. It held two thousand baths. ²⁷He made ten bronze stands, each four cubits long, four cubits wide, and three cubits high. ²⁸This was how the stands were made: they had side panels, with the panels set between the crossbars. ²⁹On the panels between the crossbars were lions, oxen, and cherubim. On the crossbars above and below the lions and oxen were wreaths of hammered work. ³⁰Each stand had four bronze wheels with bronze axles, and its four legs had supports cast beneath the basin, with wreaths beside each support. ³¹Its opening inside the crown extended upward one cubit. The opening was round, matching the pedestal design — a cubit and a half across. There were also carvings around its opening, but the panels were square, not round. ³²The four wheels were beneath the panels, and the wheel axles were attached to the stand. Each wheel was a cubit and a half in height. ³³The wheels were made like chariot wheels — their axles, rims, spokes, and hubs were all cast bronze. ³⁴Four supports were at the four corners of each stand, and the supports were cast as one piece with the stand. ³⁵On top of each stand was a circular band half a cubit high, and the handles and panels on top of the stand were cast as one piece with it. ³⁶He engraved on the surfaces of its handles and panels cherubim, lions, and palm trees — each filling its space — with wreaths all around. ³⁷In this way he made all ten stands — one casting method, one set of measurements, one design for all of them. ³⁸He made ten bronze basins, each holding forty baths. Each basin was four cubits across — one basin for each of the ten stands. ³⁹He placed five stands on the south side of the Temple and five on the north side. The Sea he set at the southeast corner of the Temple. ⁴⁰Hiram also made the pots, the shovels, and the sprinkling bowls. So Hiram finished all the work he had undertaken for King Solomon on the house of the LORD. ⁴¹The inventory: two pillars; the two bowl-shaped capitals on top of the pillars; the two networks covering the two bowl-shaped capitals on top of the pillars; ⁴²the four hundred pomegranates for the two networks — two rows of pomegranates for each network — covering the two bowl-shaped capitals on the pillars; ⁴³the ten stands, and

the ten basins on the stands; ⁴⁴the one Sea, and the twelve oxen beneath the Sea; ⁴⁵the pots, the shovels, and the sprinkling bowls. All these vessels that Hiram made for King Solomon for the house of the LORD were of burnished bronze. ⁴⁶The king had them cast in the Jordan plain, in clay molds in the ground between Succoth and Zarethan. ⁴⁷Solomon left all the vessels unweighed because there were so very many of them — the weight of the bronze was beyond reckoning. ⁴⁸Solomon also made all the furnishings inside the house of the LORD: the golden altar and the golden table on which the Bread of the Presence was placed, ⁴⁹and the lampstands of refined gold — five on the south side and five on the north side, before the inner sanctuary — along with the blossom ornaments, the lamps, and the tongs, all of gold, ⁵⁰and the cups, the wick-trimmers, the sprinkling bowls, the ladles, and the fire pans, all of refined gold; and the gold hinges for the doors of the innermost room — the Holy of Holies — and for the doors of the main hall of the Temple. ⁵¹So all the work that King Solomon did for the house of the LORD was completed. Then Solomon brought in the holy things that David his father had dedicated — the silver, the gold, and the vessels — and placed them in the treasuries of the house of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *beit* ('house') is the same word used for the Temple (*beit YHWH*). The narrator's placement is deliberate: the Temple took seven years (6:38), the palace took thirteen. No moral judgment is stated, but the contrast invites reflection. The verb *vaykhal* ('and he completed') signals total completion — every structure in the royal compound.
2. The House of the Forest of Lebanon (*beit ya'ar ha-Levanon*) was so named because its dense rows of cedar pillars gave the interior the appearance of a Lebanese forest. At 100 by 50 cubits, it was significantly larger than the Temple (60 by 20 cubits). This structure served as an armory and reception hall (see 10:17, Isaiah 22:8), not a residence.
3. The term *tsela'ot* ('ribs, side-chambers, support beams') is the same word used for Eve's creation from Adam's 'rib' (Genesis 2:21) and for the side chambers of the Temple (6:5). The structural image is of horizontal beams spanning from pillar to pillar, with cedar planking laid across them as the ceiling.
4. The term *shequfim* ('window frames') and *mechezah* ('opening, view') describe an arrangement where windows on opposite walls aligned, allowing light to pass through the building. The threefold repetition of 'three' (*shalosh*) emphasizes the symmetrical design — light answering light across the hall.
5. The term *mezuzot* ('doorposts') will later become the word for the small case affixed to Jewish doorframes (Deuteronomy 6:9), but here it simply means the structural posts flanking each doorway. The emphasis on squared (*revu'im*) framing points to precise, right-angled construction — a hallmark of skilled masonry.
6. The *ulam* ('hall, portico') is a covered entrance area. The phrase *ve-ulam al peneihem* ('and a portico before them') suggests a projecting entrance porch. The 'av ('thick beam' or 'canopy') is architecturally uncertain — it may refer to a heavy lintel, a projecting roof element, or a threshold. The structure is a grand colonnaded hall for formal assembly.
7. The *ulam ha-kisse* ('Hall of the Throne') is also called *ulam ha-mishpat* ('Hall of Justice'). The dual naming reveals the throne's primary function: not ceremony but judicial decision. Solomon's throne is a judgment seat. The cedar paneling from floor to floor (*me-ha-qarqa' ad ha-qarqa'*) suggests complete coverage of every interior surface.
8. The mention of Pharaoh's daughter receives no editorial comment here, though the narrator has already flagged this marriage as problematic (3:1). The note that her house matched the royal architecture signals her elevated status in the palace compound. The Hebrew *le-vat Par'oh* ('for the daughter of Pharaoh') identifies her only by her father's title — she is never given a personal name in the Hebrew Bible.
9. The phrase *avanim yeqarot* ('costly stones, precious stones') refers to high-quality dressed limestone. The verb *megorarot* ('sawed') indicates precision-cut masonry — blocks sawed to exact dimensions rather than rough-hewn. This level of stone-finishing was exceptionally labor-intensive and marked the building as royal. The *tefachot* ('coping stones' or 'hand-breadth ledges') are the capstones at the top of the walls.
10. Foundation stones of ten cubits (roughly fifteen feet) and eight cubits (roughly twelve feet) represent enormous quarried blocks. Moving and placing stones of this size required sophisticated engineering — rollers, levers, ramps, and coordinated labor teams. The emphasis on size communicates permanence and royal power. These foundation stones are still visible in Jerusalem's archaeological record.
11. The combination of dressed stone and cedar — the two most valued building materials in the ancient Near East — appears repeatedly throughout the palace and Temple descriptions. Cedar (*erez*) was imported from Lebanon at great expense, and its aromatic, rot-resistant wood symbolized permanence and luxury.
12. The identical construction method — three courses of stone topped by one course of cedar — links the palace complex to the Temple (see 6:36). This shared building technique physically connects the royal and sacred precincts. The mention of *chatsar beit YHWH ha-penimit* ('the inner court of the house of the LORD') indicates that the palace and Temple shared an integrated architectural plan on the same ridge.

13. This is a different Hiram from the king of Tyre in chapter 5. The craftsman Hiram (sometimes spelled Hiram) shares the name of the king but is identified in the next verse by his parentage. Solomon's act of sending for a foreign artisan echoes Bezalel's appointment for the tabernacle (Exodus 31:1-5) — both are Spirit-gifted craftsmen commissioned for sacred construction.
14. The phrase *chokmah*, *tevnah*, *da'at* ('wisdom, understanding, knowledge') is a technical triad in Hebrew wisdom literature, describing comprehensive mastery of a craft. These same three words describe Bezalel's Spirit-given abilities in Exodus 31:3 and the qualities by which God founded the earth in Proverbs 3:19-20. Hiram's bronze work is thus framed not as mere artisanship but as participation in the same creative intelligence that built the cosmos.
14. 2 Chronicles 2:14 identifies his mother as from Dan, not Naphtali. The tribal territories of Dan and Naphtali bordered each other in the north, so this may reflect different ways of locating the same region, or it may be a genuine textual variant.
15. The two pillars stood roughly twenty-seven feet tall with a circumference of about eighteen feet (diameter roughly six feet). The verb *vayyatsar* ('he formed, he cast') is the same verb used for God forming Adam from the dust (Genesis 2:7, *yatsar*). The pillars were hollow-cast bronze — an extraordinary technical achievement requiring precise mold-making and controlled pouring of molten metal.
16. The *koteret* ('capital, crown') is the ornamental top of a pillar. At five cubits (roughly seven and a half feet), these capitals were substantial sculptural elements. The word *koteret* shares its root with *keter* ('crown'), suggesting that the pillars were 'crowned' — an architectural metaphor for royal authority.
17. The *sevakhim* ('networks, meshes') and *gedilim* ('twisted chains, wreaths') describe ornamental bronze chainwork draped over the capitals. The number seven for each capital is symbolically loaded — seven is the number of completion throughout the Temple construction narrative (the Temple took seven years, was dedicated in the seventh month). The visual effect was of bronze nets cascading over lily-shaped capitals.
18. The *rimmonim* ('pomegranates') are a recurring motif in sacred design — they adorned the hem of the high priest's robe (Exodus 28:33-34) and appear throughout Solomonic architecture. The pomegranate, with its many seeds inside a unified skin, symbolized fertility, abundance, and the unity of multiplicity. Two rows of bronze pomegranates encircling each capital created a rich visual crown.
19. The *ma'aseh shushan* ('lily work') describes capitals sculpted to resemble open lily blossoms. The *shushan* (lily, lotus) was a common architectural motif throughout the ancient Near East, symbolizing life, beauty, and renewal. These four-cubit lily capitals sat atop the five-cubit decorated sections, giving each pillar a total capital height of approximately nine cubits. The visual effect was of massive bronze flowers blooming at the Temple entrance.
20. The *beten* ('belly, bulge') describes a rounded, convex section of the capital — the swelling form from which the pomegranate rows hung. Two hundred pomegranates per capital (four hundred total) represents extraordinary decorative abundance. Jeremiah 52:23 specifies ninety-six pomegranates on each side, with the total coming to one hundred per row — the figures vary slightly between accounts.
21. *Yakhin* (from the root *kun*, 'to establish, to make firm') is a verbal sentence-name meaning 'He will establish' or 'He establishes.' *Bo'az* (probably from *b-* + '*oz*', 'in strength') means 'In Him is strength' or 'By strength.' The pillars are freestanding — they support nothing structurally. Their function is entirely symbolic and declarative. Standing at the Temple entrance, they greet every worshiper with a theological statement about God's establishing power and inherent strength.
21. These same pillars are named specifically when the Babylonians destroy them in 2 Kings 25:13 and Jeremiah 52:17. The destruction of *Jachin* and *Boaz* is the physical negation of what the names proclaimed — when Jerusalem falls, God's 'establishing' and 'strength' appear to have been revoked.
22. The verb *vatittom* ('and it was completed, and it was finished') uses the root *tamam*, which means both 'to finish' and 'to be perfect, whole.' The completion of the pillars is simultaneously their perfection. The narrator signals closure on this section before moving to the next major element — the bronze Sea.
23. The term *yam* ('sea') is deliberately cosmic — this is not called a *kiyyor* ('basin') but a 'sea.' The word invokes the primordial waters of Genesis 1:2 (*tehom*, the deep) and the cosmic ocean that God defeated in creation mythology (Psalm 74:13, Isaiah 51:9-10). The dimensions — ten cubits diameter, thirty cubits circumference — use pi as approximately 3, which was the standard ancient Near Eastern working value.
23. The capacity of this vessel at roughly ten cubits diameter and five cubits depth has been calculated at approximately 12,000 gallons (the text says 2,000 baths in v. 26; 2 Chronicles 4:5 says 3,000). It served for priestly washing (2 Chronicles 4:6) but its symbolic significance far exceeds its practical function.
24. The *peqa'im* ('gourds, knobs') are ornamental bulging shapes, probably resembling wild gourds (*colocynths*). The same motif decorated the interior Temple walls (6:18). At ten per cubit in two rows around a thirty-cubit circumference, there were approximately six hundred gourd ornaments. The phrase *yetsuqim bi-ytsuqato* ('cast in its casting') means they were integral to the original mold — not attached afterward but part of the single pour.
25. The twelve oxen arranged in groups of three facing the four cardinal directions map the twelve tribes onto the compass points, echoing the wilderness camp arrangement (Numbers 2) where three tribes camped on each side of the tabernacle. The oxen face outward, as if carrying the cosmic Sea to the ends of the earth, while their hindquarters face inward toward the center. The image is of centrifugal force restrained — the waters held in place, the tribes oriented outward from God's presence.
26. A *tefach* ('handbreadth') is roughly three inches — remarkably thin for a bronze vessel of this size. The rim shaped like a lily blossom (*perach shoshan*) matches the lily capitals on the pillars, creating visual unity between the vertical and horizontal elements. Two thousand baths equals approximately 12,000 gallons. The lily motif — also found on the pillars (v. 19, 22) — ties the Sea and the pillars into a single decorative program.

27. The mekhonot ('stands, bases') were wheeled bronze platforms designed to carry the smaller basins used for washing sacrificial portions (2 Chronicles 4:6). At four by four by three cubits (roughly six feet square and four and a half feet tall), they were substantial pieces of engineering — mobile bronze carts with elaborate decorative panels.
28. The misgerot ('borders, panels, frames') were flat bronze plates set between the shelabbim ('crossbars, rails') — the structural framework of each stand. The construction resembles a modern cart frame with decorative infill panels between the structural members.
29. The three figures — arayot (lions), baqar (oxen), and keruvim (cherubim) — represent power, provision, and divine presence. Lions appear throughout ancient Near Eastern royal iconography as guardians; oxen represent agricultural strength and sacrificial service; cherubim are the throne-bearers of God. The loyot ('wreaths, garlands') of ma'aseh morad ('descending work' or 'hammered work') were decorative bronze garlands hanging from the frames.
30. The ofannim ('wheels') make the stands mobile — they could be rolled to wherever the washing was needed in the Temple courtyard. The sarnei nechoshet ('bronze axles') and ketephot ('shoulders, supports, brackets') describe the engineering that held the basins in place above the wheeled frame. The entire assembly was a functional, mobile, ornately decorated piece of sacred equipment.
31. The pi ('mouth, opening') is the circular socket into which the basin fitted. The contrast between the round opening and the square panels (merubba'ot lo agullot, 'square, not round') reflects the tension between circular and rectangular geometry throughout the Temple's design — the round Sea on square oxen, round basins on square stands. This interplay of forms may reflect cosmological symbolism: the circle of heaven set within the square of earth.
32. Wheels of a cubit and a half (roughly twenty-seven inches) gave the stands adequate ground clearance for movement over the stone pavement of the Temple courtyard. The yadot ('hands, axles') describe the projecting axle ends that connected each wheel to the stand's frame.
33. The comparison to ofan ha-merkavah ('a chariot wheel') establishes the quality standard — chariot wheels were the highest engineering achievement of wheeled construction in the ancient Near East. The four components — yadot (axles), gabbeihem (rims/felloes), chishshuqeiheh (spokes), and chishshureihem (hubs) — describe complete cast-bronze wheels. Casting an entire wheel in bronze, rather than assembling it from separate parts, required extraordinary foundry skill.
34. The ketephot ('shoulders, supports') at the four corners were integral to the stand — min ha-mekhonah ketepheiha ('from the stand itself were its supports'). This integral casting ensured structural strength: the supports bore the weight of the filled basin without the weakness of joined parts.
35. The circular band at the top received the basin. The repeated emphasis on integral casting (mimmennah, 'from itself') stresses that these were single-pour castings, not assembled from parts. This was both structurally superior and technically remarkable — each stand was cast as one unified bronze form.
36. The motifs — keruvim (cherubim), arayot (lions), and timorot (palm trees) — form a theological program. Cherubim guard God's presence, lions embody royal power, and palm trees represent life and fertility (they also adorned the Temple walls, 6:29, 32, 35). The phrase ke-ma'ar ish ('according to the space of each,' literally 'like the nakedness of a man') means each figure was scaled to fill its allotted panel space proportionally.
37. The threefold echad ('one') — one casting, one measure, one form — emphasizes uniformity and standardization. All ten stands were identical, reflecting the same commitment to ordered repetition visible throughout the Temple's design. The uniformity itself is a theological statement: divine order produces consistency, not chaos.
38. The kiyorot ('basins, lavers') are functional vessels for washing sacrificial portions and priestly purification (2 Chronicles 4:6). At forty baths capacity (roughly 240 gallons each), they were substantial. The total system — ten stands, ten basins, plus the great Sea — represents a comprehensive water infrastructure for the Temple's sacrificial operations.
39. The symmetrical placement — five stands on each side — reflects the bilateral symmetry that governs the Temple's layout. The Sea's position at the southeast corner (keteph ha-bayit ha-yemanit qedmah mi-mul negev, literally 'the right shoulder of the house, eastward, opposite the south') places it near the altar, where the priests would need water most frequently for their purification rituals.
40. The kiyorot ('pots' — different from the basins in v. 38, these are ash-removal pots), ya'im ('shovels' for clearing the altar), and mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls' for tossing sacrificial blood against the altar) were the everyday working tools of the sacrificial system. The verb vaykhal ('he finished') marks the completion of Hiram's entire commission.
41. The summary list (vv. 41-45) functions as a formal inventory — a record of completed work. The gullot ('bowl-shapes, globes') describe the rounded form of the capitals. This catalogue style is typical of ancient Near Eastern building records, where completed projects were itemized for royal archives.
42. Four hundred pomegranates total — two hundred per capital in two rows of one hundred. The pomegranate count has been consistent through the chapter, confirming the earlier description in verse 20.
43. The stands and basins are listed as paired units — each basin inseparable from its stand. The inventory preserves the functional relationship between the components.
44. The Sea is listed as 'one' (echad) — singular, unique, unreplicated. Unlike the stands and basins which come in sets of ten, the Sea has no duplicate. Its uniqueness reinforces its cosmic symbolism: there is one primordial ocean, and it is contained in one bronze vessel.

45. The term *nechoshet memorat* ('burnished bronze' or 'polished bronze') indicates that every piece was finished to a high shine. *Memorat* (from *marat*, 'to polish, to make smooth') describes metal that has been rubbed to a mirror-like surface. The gleaming bronze would have reflected light throughout the Temple courtyard, creating a visual experience of radiance.
46. The casting location — the *kikkar ha-Yarden* ('disk of the Jordan,' the flat plain of the Jordan valley) — was chosen for its clay-rich soil suitable for making casting molds. The phrase *be-ma'aveh ha-adamah* ('in the thickness of the ground,' i.e., in earth molds) describes the lost-wax or sand-casting technique where molds are formed in dense clay. The location between Sukkot and Tsaretan places the foundry in the central Jordan valley, well away from Jerusalem — the massive bronzework was cast in the lowlands and transported uphill to the Temple mount.
47. The phrase *me-rov me'od me'od* ('from abundance, very, very much') uses a doubled intensifier — extremely excessive abundance. The statement *lo nechqar mishqal ha-nechoshet* ('the weight of the bronze was not investigated') means the total was simply too great to calculate. This is not administrative negligence but a rhetorical statement about overwhelming abundance — the bronze was, in effect, innumerable.
48. The narrative shifts from bronze to gold — from the courtyard furnishings to the interior sacred objects. The *mizbach ha-zahav* ('altar of gold') is the incense altar that stood before the inner sanctuary. The *shulchan* ('table') held the *lechem ha-panim* ('bread of the face/presence'), the twelve loaves representing the twelve tribes set before God's face perpetually (Leviticus 24:5-9).
49. The tabernacle had one menorah (Exodus 25:31-40); Solomon's Temple has ten — five on each side. The multiplication reflects the Temple's grander scale. The *zahav sagur* ('refined gold' or 'enclosed gold') denotes the highest quality of gold, purified to maximum fineness. The *perach* ('blossom, flower') ornaments on the lampstands echo the almond-blossom design of the tabernacle menorah (Exodus 25:33). The *melqachayim* ('tongs, snuffers') were used to trim the lamp wicks.
50. The list moves from functional items (*sippot* — 'cups,' *mezammerot* — 'wick-trimmers') to ceremonial vessels (*mizraqot* — 'sprinkling bowls,' *kappot* — 'ladles/palms,' *machtot* — 'fire pans/censers') to architectural hardware (*potot* — 'hinges'). Even the door hinges of the Holy of Holies were gold. The term *qodesh ha-qodashim* ('holy of holies') appears here as the destination for the innermost doors — the chamber where the ark would rest beneath the cherubim wings.
51. The root *sh-l-m* appears in *vatishlam* ('was completed'), in *Shelomoh* ('Solomon'), and underlies the concept of *shalom*. The entire Temple project is linguistically bound to Solomon's name and to the wholeness his reign was meant to embody.
51. The *qodshei David* ('holy things of David') are the items David dedicated from his military conquests (2 Samuel 8:11-12) — silver and gold from defeated nations, set apart for the future Temple. By placing these in the Temple treasuries, Solomon fulfills David's intention and formally transfers the Davidic dedication into the completed house. The chapter ends not with Hiram's bronze or Solomon's gold, but with David's legacy — the father's faith stored in the son's achievement.
51. Register departure: *shalom* rendered as 'completed' rather than default 'peace' because the root *sh-l-m* here carries its 'wholeness/completion' sense — the Temple work was brought to its whole, finished state. This is a wordplay: Solomon (*Shelomoh*) completes (*sh-l-m*) the house.

8

Summary: *Solomon assembles all Israel to bring the ark of the covenant into the newly completed Temple. When the priests withdraw from the Holy Place, the glory-cloud of the LORD fills the house so thickly that the priests cannot stand to minister. Solomon addresses the assembly, then turns to the altar and stretches out his hands toward heaven in one of the longest prayers in the Hebrew Bible. He asks God to hear every kind of prayer offered toward this place — prayers of individuals wrongly accused, prayers after military defeat, prayers during drought and famine, prayers of foreigners drawn to God's name, prayers during warfare, and prayers from exile. He concludes by blessing the assembly and offering an enormous sacrifice of peace offerings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most developed theology of divine presence in the Hebrew Bible.*

*Solomon's prayer holds two truths in permanent tension: God dwells in this house, AND the heavens and the heaven of heavens cannot contain God (v. 27). The Temple is simultaneously God's chosen dwelling and a structure that cannot possibly house God. Solomon resolves this paradox through Name theology — it is God's *shem* ('Name') that dwells in the Temple (vv. 16-20, 29, 33, 35, 42-43, 44, 48), while God's own hearing happens *ba-shamayim* ('in heaven,' the refrain that pulses through vv. 30, 32, 34, 36, 39, 43, 45, 49). The prayer is built on a sevenfold petition structure (vv. 31-51), each petition ending with the appeal 'hear in heaven.' This architectural repetition mirrors the seven years of Temple construction — the prayer is itself a verbal temple. Most remarkably, Solomon explicitly prays for the foreigner (*ha-nokhri*) who is drawn to the Temple by God's reputation (vv. 41-43), asking God to do whatever the foreigner asks 'so that all the peoples of the earth may know your Name.' The Temple is not a national shrine but a house of prayer for all nations — a vision Jesus will invoke when he cleanses the*

Temple (Mark 11:17, quoting Isaiah 56:7).

Translation Friction: *The central theological problem is the phrase leshakken shemo sham ('to cause His Name to dwell there,' v. 16, 29). Does God actually dwell in the Temple, or only God's Name? Deuteronomic theology consistently uses Name-language, placing a conceptual intermediary between the transcendent God and the physical building. But verse 12 has Solomon say 'The LORD said He would dwell in thick darkness' (ba-arafel), and verse 13 says 'I have built you a lofty house, a fixed place for your dwelling forever' — language of direct divine habitation. The text holds both registers simultaneously and does not resolve the tension. We render both strands transparently. The other significant friction is verse 9: the ark contains 'nothing except the two stone tablets' — this explicitly contradicts the tradition that the ark also held Aaron's budding rod and a jar of manna (Hebrews 9:4, drawing on later tradition). The narrator emphasizes the emptiness: only the covenant tablets, nothing else. The Temple's holiest object is, in essence, a box containing a text.*

Connections: *Solomon's prayer is the theological center linking the Sinai covenant (Exodus 19-24) to the exile and beyond. The two tablets in the ark (v. 9) are the same tablets Moses placed there at Horeb (Deuteronomy 10:5), making the Temple the final resting place of the Sinai covenant. The glory-cloud filling the Temple (v. 11) reprises the cloud filling the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34-35) — both times the glory is so intense that the ministers cannot function. Solomon's sevenfold 'hear in heaven' anticipates the Lord's Prayer ('Our Father in heaven'). His prayer for the foreigner (vv. 41-43) reaches forward to Isaiah 56:7 ('My house will be called a house of prayer for all nations') and to Jesus's Temple action (Mark 11:17). The exile petition (vv. 46-51) is prophetic — Solomon prays for an event that will not occur for nearly four centuries, yet the prayer presupposes it as certain, embedding return-from-exile theology into the Temple's founding liturgy. Daniel's prayer toward Jerusalem (Daniel 6:10) directly fulfills Solomon's instruction to pray 'toward this place' (v. 48).*

¹Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel — all the heads of the tribes, the ancestral chiefs of the Israelites — before King Solomon in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of the LORD from the City of David, which is Zion. ²All the men of Israel gathered before King Solomon at the festival in the month of Ethanim — that is, the seventh month. ³All the elders of Israel arrived, and the priests lifted the ark. ⁴They brought up the ark of the LORD, the Tent of Meeting, and all the holy vessels that were in the Tent. The priests and the Levites carried them up. ⁵King Solomon and the entire assembly of Israel, gathered together before the ark, were sacrificing sheep and cattle in such numbers that they could not be counted or reckoned. ⁶The priests brought the ark of the covenant of the LORD to its place — into the inner sanctuary of the house, into the Holy of Holies — beneath the wings of the cherubim. ⁷The cherubim spread their wings over the place of the ark, sheltering the ark and its carrying poles from above. ⁸The poles were so long that their ends could be seen from the Holy Place in front of the inner sanctuary, but they could not be seen from outside. They remain there to this day. ⁹There was nothing in the ark except the two stone tablets that Moses had placed there at Horeb, when the LORD made a covenant with the Israelites after they came out of the land of Egypt. ¹⁰When the priests came out of the Holy Place, the cloud filled the house of the LORD, ¹¹and the priests were unable to stand and minister because of the cloud, for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of the LORD. ¹²Then Solomon said, "The LORD declared that He would dwell in thick darkness. ¹³I have surely built you a lofty house — a fixed place for your dwelling forever." ¹⁴Then the king turned to face the entire assembly of Israel — the whole assembly standing — ¹⁵and he said, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who spoke with His own mouth to David my father and has with His own hand fulfilled it, saying: ¹⁶'From the day I brought my people Israel out of Egypt, I did not choose any city from all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house for my Name to dwell. But I chose David to be over my people Israel.' ¹⁷My father David had it in his heart to build a house dedicated to the Name of the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹⁸But the LORD said to David my father, 'Because it was in your heart to build a house for my Name — you did well that it was in your heart. ¹⁹Yet you yourself will not build the house. Rather, your son who comes from your own body — he will build the house for my Name.' ²⁰The LORD has fulfilled the word He spoke. I have risen in the place of David my father and sit on the throne of Israel, just as the LORD promised, and I have built the house for the Name of the LORD, the God of Israel. ²¹I have provided a place there for the ark, in which rests the covenant of the LORD that He made with our ancestors when He brought them out of the land of Egypt. ²²Then Solomon stood before the altar of the LORD, facing the entire assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward heaven. ²³He said, "LORD, God of Israel, there is no God like you

in heaven above or on the earth below — you who keep covenant and faithful love for your servants who walk before you with their whole heart, ²⁴you who have kept your promise to your servant David my father — what you spoke with your mouth, you have fulfilled with your hand, as it is this very day. ²⁵Now then, LORD, God of Israel, keep what you promised your servant David my father when you said, 'You will never lack a man to sit before me on the throne of Israel — provided that your sons guard their way, walking before me as you have walked before me.' ²⁶Now, God of Israel, let your word be confirmed — the word you spoke to your servant David my father. ²⁷But will God truly dwell on the earth? Look — heaven itself, even the highest heaven, cannot contain you. How much less this house that I have built! ²⁸Yet turn toward the prayer of your servant and toward his plea for mercy, LORD my God — listen to the cry and to the prayer that your servant is praying before you today. ²⁹May your eyes be open toward this house night and day — toward the place of which you said, 'My Name will be there' — so that you hear the prayer your servant offers toward this place. ³⁰Hear the plea of your servant and of your people Israel when they pray toward this place. Hear from your dwelling place in heaven — hear, and forgive. ³¹When someone sins against another person and is made to take an oath, and the oath-curse is pronounced before your altar in this house — ³²then hear in heaven, and act, and judge your servants — condemning the guilty by bringing their conduct on their own head, and vindicating the righteous by rewarding them according to their righteousness. ³³When your people Israel are defeated before an enemy because they have sinned against you, and they return to you and acknowledge your Name, and pray and plead for mercy before you in this house — ³⁴then hear in heaven, and forgive the sin of your people Israel, and bring them back to the land you gave their ancestors. ³⁵When the heavens are shut and there is no rain because they have sinned against you, and they pray toward this place and acknowledge your Name and turn from their sin because you have afflicted them — ³⁶then hear in heaven, and forgive the sin of your servants, your people Israel — teach them the good way they should walk — and send rain on your land that you gave to your people as an inheritance. ³⁷When there is famine in the land, or pestilence, or blight, or mildew, or locusts, or grasshoppers; when an enemy besieges them in any of their towns — any plague, any sickness — ³⁸whatever prayer or plea is offered by any person — by any member of your people Israel — each one knowing the affliction of their own heart, stretching out their hands toward this house — ³⁹then hear in heaven, your dwelling place, and forgive, and act. Give to each person according to all their ways, for you know their heart — since you alone know the hearts of all human beings — ⁴⁰so that they may revere you all the days they live on the land you gave to our ancestors. ⁴¹As for the foreigner who is not of your people Israel but comes from a distant land because of your Name — ⁴²for they will hear of your great Name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm — when such a person comes and prays toward this house, ⁴³hear in heaven, your dwelling place, and do whatever the foreigner asks of you — so that all the peoples of the earth may know your Name and revere you as your people Israel do, and so that they may know that your Name is invoked over this house that I have built. ⁴⁴When your people go out to war against their enemy, by whatever route you send them, and they pray to the LORD toward the city you have chosen and toward the house I have built for your Name — ⁴⁵then hear in heaven their prayer and their plea, and uphold their cause. ⁴⁶When they sin against you — for there is no one who does not sin — and you are angry with them and hand them over to the enemy, and their captors carry them away to the land of the enemy, whether far or near, ⁴⁷and they take it to heart in the land where they have been taken captive, and they repent and plead with you in the land of their captors, saying, 'We have sinned, we have acted perversely, we have been wicked' — ⁴⁸and they return to you with all their heart and all their soul in the land of the enemies who took them captive, and they pray to you toward their land that you gave to their ancestors, toward the city you have chosen, and toward the house I have built for your Name — ⁴⁹then hear in heaven, your dwelling place, their prayer and their plea, and uphold their cause. ⁵⁰Forgive your people who have sinned against you, and all their rebellions in which they rebelled against you. Grant them compassion before their captors, so that their captors show them mercy. ⁵¹For they are your people and your inheritance, whom you brought out of Egypt — out of the iron furnace. ⁵²Let your eyes be open to the plea of your servant and to the plea of your people Israel, hearing them whenever they call to you. ⁵³For you set them apart for yourself as your inheritance from all the peoples of the earth, as you declared through your servant Moses when you brought our ancestors out of Egypt, O Lord GOD." ⁵⁴When Solomon finished offering this entire prayer and plea to the LORD, he rose from before the altar of the LORD, where he had been kneeling with his hands spread toward heaven. ⁵⁵He

stood and blessed the entire assembly of Israel with a loud voice, saying, ⁵⁶"Blessed be the LORD, who has given rest to His people Israel, exactly as He promised. Not one word has fallen from all the good word He spoke through His servant Moses. ⁵⁷May the LORD our God be with us, as He was with our ancestors. May He never abandon us or forsake us, ⁵⁸inclining our hearts to Himself — to walk in all His ways and to keep His commands, His statutes, and His judgments, which He commanded our ancestors. ⁵⁹May these words of mine, with which I have pleaded before the LORD, remain near to the LORD our God day and night, so that He upholds the cause of His servant and the cause of His people Israel — each day's need as it arises — ⁶⁰so that all the peoples of the earth may know that the LORD — He is God. There is no other. ⁶¹Let your hearts be wholly devoted to the LORD our God — walking in His statutes and keeping His commands, as you do this very day." ⁶²The king, along with all Israel, offered sacrifices in the presence of the LORD. ⁶³Solomon offered as peace offerings to the LORD twenty-two thousand cattle and one hundred twenty thousand sheep. So the king and all the Israelites dedicated the house of the LORD. ⁶⁴On that day the king consecrated the middle of the courtyard in front of the house of the LORD, for he offered the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings there, because the bronze altar before the LORD was too small to hold all the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings. ⁶⁵At that time Solomon held the festival — and all Israel with him, a vast assembly from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of Egypt — before the LORD our God for seven days and seven days: fourteen days in all. ⁶⁶On the eighth day he sent the people home. They blessed the king and went to their tents joyful and glad of heart for all the good that the LORD had done for David His servant and for Israel His people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *yaqhel* ('he assembled') is the causative form of *qahal* ('congregation') — Solomon convenes the entire national assembly. The threefold leadership designation — elders, tribal heads, ancestral chiefs — indicates that every level of Israelite governance was represented. The ark's journey from the City of David (the older, lower part of Jerusalem on the southeastern ridge) to the Temple mount represents its final relocation — from David's tent-shrine to Solomon's permanent house.
2. The month of Ethanim (from *etan*, 'ever-flowing, permanent') is the pre-exilic name for the month later called Tishrei. The festival (*chag*) is the Feast of Tabernacles (*Sukkot*), the great autumn harvest festival and the most joyous of Israel's pilgrimage feasts. The seventh month echoes the seven years of construction — the Temple completed in seven years is dedicated in the seventh month. The timing embeds the dedication in the rhythm of sacred sevens.
3. The priests (*kohanim*) carry the ark — not the Levites, as in the wilderness (Numbers 4:15). For this climactic transfer, the priestly caste itself bears the ark. The verb *vayyis'u* ('they lifted') implies carrying by the poles that ran through the ark's rings (Exodus 25:14-15).
4. The *ohel mo'ed* ('Tent of Meeting') — the original wilderness tabernacle or a later version of it — is brought to the Temple along with the ark. This is the last appearance of the Tent of Meeting in the historical narrative. The tabernacle's portable shrine gives way to the permanent Temple; the wilderness architecture is retired. Every sacred vessel (*keli ha-qodesh*) transitions from tent to stone house.
5. The phrase *asher lo yissaphru ve-lo yimmanu me-rov* ('which could not be counted or numbered for abundance') uses two verbs for counting — *saphar* ('to count, to number') and *manah* ('to reckon, to assign') — and negates both. The sacrificial abundance exceeds all accounting. This language of uncountable multitude echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:5, 'count the stars, if you can count them').
6. Three spatial markers locate the ark with increasing precision: *el meqomo* ('to its place'), *el devir ha-bayit* ('to the inner sanctuary of the house'), *el qodesh ha-qodashim* ('to the Holy of Holies'). The narrative zooms inward, from the building to the room to the exact spot beneath the cherubim wings. The *devir* (from *davar*, 'to speak,' or possibly *davir*, 'back room') is the innermost chamber — the place where God speaks from between the cherubim (Exodus 25:22).
7. The verb *vayyasokku* ('they sheltered, they screened') implies protective covering — the cherubim wings form a canopy over the ark. The *badim* ('poles') remained permanently inserted through the ark's rings (Exodus 25:15). The image is of the massive gold-overlaid cherubim (each ten cubits tall, 6:23-26) spreading their wings to form a protective vault over the covenant chest.
8. The protruding poles created a visible sign in the Holy Place — the priests serving in the outer chamber could see the pole-ends pushing against the curtain, a subtle reminder that the ark was present behind the veil even though they could not see it directly. The phrase *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') is a marker of the narrator's own time, indicating that when this text was composed, the ark was still in the Temple. This detail becomes poignant after 586 BCE, when the ark disappears from history.
9. The phrase *ein ba-arón raq* ('nothing in the ark except') is emphatically restrictive. The narrator excludes the jar of manna (Exodus 16:33-34) and Aaron's budding rod (Numbers 17:10) that later tradition associated with the ark. By the time of Solomon, only the tablets remained — or the narrator wants to emphasize that the tablets alone are what matters.

9. The verb *karat* ('to cut') is the standard term for covenant-making — one 'cuts' a covenant, probably referring to the cutting of sacrificial animals in the ratification ceremony (Genesis 15:10, 17-18). Horeb (Chorev) is the Deuteronomic name for Sinai.
10. The *he'anan* ('the cloud') — with the definite article, indicating the well-known cloud of divine presence — appears immediately upon the priests' departure from the inner chamber. The filling is spontaneous and uninvoked; no prayer or ritual summons the cloud. God simply arrives. The cloud is the same visible manifestation that led Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 13:21-22) and filled the completed tabernacle (Exodus 40:34).
11. The *kavod* ('glory') is the visible weight of God's presence — the root *k-v-d* means 'to be heavy, weighty.' God's glory is not ethereal but dense, substantial, overwhelming. The priests *lo yakhlu la'amod lesharet* ('could not stand to minister') — their professional function was overridden by the divine presence. This is the supreme validation of the Temple: God moves in.
11. This verse is the theological hinge of the entire Temple narrative. Everything before it — the seven years of construction, the bronze and gold, the cedars — leads to this moment. Everything after it — Solomon's prayer, the sacrifices — responds to it. The glory filling the house is the goal to which all the labor pointed.
12. The *arafel* ('thick darkness, dense cloud') is the same word used for the darkness at Sinai where God was (Exodus 20:21, Deuteronomy 4:11, 5:22). God's presence is paradoxically associated with impenetrable darkness — not light but the absence of visible form. The cloud that fills the Temple is not illumination but obscurity, because God's essential being exceeds what eyes can process. Solomon interprets the cloud theologically: this darkness is the darkness of Sinai, and its presence means God has arrived.
13. The word *zevul* ('lofty dwelling, exalted habitation') appears only seven times in the Hebrew Bible and always in elevated contexts. In Psalm 49:14 it means 'habitation,' in Isaiah 63:15 it describes God's heavenly dwelling. Solomon claims the earthly Temple participates in the same category as God's heavenly residence.
13. The phrase *olamim* ('forever,' plural of *olam*) is the most expansive temporal claim possible. Solomon builds for eternity. The reader who knows the Temple's eventual destruction reads this with painful irony — but the text presents it without qualification.
14. Solomon turns from facing the Temple (and the ark within it) to face the people. The verb *vayyashev* ('he turned around') marks a physical pivot — from addressing God's house to addressing God's people. The note that the entire assembly was standing (*omed*) indicates a formal posture of reception for the royal blessing.
15. The pairing of *be-fiv* ('with His mouth') and *u-ve-yado* ('and with His hand') creates a theology of divine consistency — what God speaks, God performs. The mouth promises; the hand fulfills. Solomon's blessing opens by celebrating divine reliability: God's word and God's action are one. The verb *mille* ('He has filled, fulfilled') uses the same root as *male* ('filled') in verse 11 — God fills the Temple with glory and fills the promise with completion.
16. God's two acts of choosing (*bachar*) are set in deliberate contrast: God did not choose a city, but God did choose a person. David comes before Jerusalem in the divine priority. The phrase *lihyot shemi sham* ('for my Name to be there') introduces the Name theology that dominates this chapter — God's *shem* ('Name') is the mode of divine presence in the Temple. The Name is not an abstraction but a real, operative form of God's self-disclosure.
17. The phrase *im levav David* ('in the heart of David') locates the Temple's origin in David's desire — the building began as an intention in the father's heart before it became stone and cedar under the son's hand. The *levav* ('heart') in Hebrew encompasses will, intention, and moral commitment, not merely emotion.
18. God affirms the intention even while withholding permission to execute it. The phrase *hetivota ki hayah im levavekha* ('you did well that it was in your heart') validates David's desire as genuinely good — the will to build is praised even though the act of building is reserved for another. This divine response (originally given in 2 Samuel 7:1-16) establishes that good intentions have value before God independent of their fulfillment.
19. The phrase *ha-yotse me-chalatsekha* ('the one coming out from your loins') is concrete, physical language for biological offspring. The restriction on David and the commission of his son fulfills the dynastic promise of 2 Samuel 7:12-13: 'I will raise up your offspring after you... He will build a house for my Name.' Solomon's recitation of this prophecy at the dedication transforms the building's history into a testimony of divine faithfulness.
20. The verb *vayyaqem* ('He raised up, He established') applied to God's word (*devaro*) connects to the pillar *Jachin* (*yakhin*, 'He establishes') from 7:21 — the same root *q-w-m*. God establishes His word as surely as the bronze pillar was established at the entrance. Solomon's personal testimony — 'I have risen, I sit, I have built' — traces the fulfillment of each element of the prophecy.
21. Solomon identifies the ark's contents not as tablets but as *berit YHWH* ('the covenant of the LORD') — the covenant itself, not merely its inscribed record. The ark holds a relationship, not just a text. The phrase *im avoteinu* ('with our fathers') connects the dedication generation to the exodus generation across the centuries — the covenant is not ancient history but ongoing obligation.
22. The posture — standing before the altar with hands spread (*parash*) toward heaven — is the classic posture of petition in the ancient Near East: palms up, arms extended, body exposed before the deity. Solomon stands between the altar and the people, mediating between God and Israel. The phrase *kappav ha-shamayim* ('his palms toward heaven') directs the prayer upward, establishing the spatial theology that will govern the entire prayer: the Temple is on earth, but God hears in heaven.
23. The phrase *ein kamokha* ('there is none like you') is a classic declaration of divine incomparability (Exodus 15:11, Deuteronomy 33:26, Psalm 86:8). Solomon locates God's uniqueness not in raw power but in covenant faithfulness — the reason no god compares to the LORD is that no other deity keeps *berit* and *chesed* with such reliability.

- 23.** The pairing of *berit* ('covenant') and *chesed* ('faithful love') is a covenant formula — the two words together describe the full scope of God's relational commitment: the structural obligation (*berit*) and the personal devotion (*chesed*) that exceeds obligation.
- 24.** The mouth-hand pairing from verse 15 returns, reinforcing the theme: God's speech and God's action are inseparable. The phrase *ka-yom ha-zeh* ('as this day') is a deictic marker — Solomon points to the present moment as proof of divine faithfulness. The completed Temple, the assembled nation, the glory-filled house — all of it is *ka-yom ha-zeh*, 'exhibit A' of God keeping His word.
- 25.** Solomon transitions from praise to petition with *ve-attah* ('and now'). The dynastic promise — *lo yikkareth lekha ish* ('a man will not be cut off for you') — is explicitly conditional: *raq im yishmeru vanekha* ('only if your sons guard'). The Davidic covenant as Solomon recites it is not unconditional but contingent on obedience. This conditionality will prove decisive: the dynasty does eventually end, and this verse provides the theological explanation.
- 26.** The verb *ye'amen* ('let it be confirmed, let it be trustworthy') shares its root with *amen* and *emunah* ('faithfulness'). Solomon asks that God's word prove to be what the root *a-m-n* denotes: firm, reliable, enduring. He is asking God to be faithful to His own speech — to make His word *amen*.
- 27.** The question *ha-umnam yeshev Elohim al ha-arets* ('will God indeed dwell on the earth?') uses the particle *ha-umnam* expressing genuine astonishment or incredulity. Solomon is not denying divine presence but marveling at its impossibility. The three-tiered cosmos — earth, heaven, heaven of heavens — is exhausted and found insufficient. The *af ki* ('how much less') applies the insufficiency to Solomon's specific building. This verse is the Hebrew Bible's most concise statement of divine transcendence.
- 27.** The paradox of building a house for an uncontainable God is not resolved but held. Solomon does not abandon the Temple project — he continues praying in it. The building functions not because it contains God but because God chooses to attend to prayers directed toward it.
- 28.** After the dizzying transcendence of verse 27, Solomon pivots with *u-fanita* ('yet turn') — despite God's uncontainability, Solomon asks God to face his prayer. The four terms for prayer in this single verse — *tefillah* ('prayer'), *techinnah* ('plea for mercy'), *rinnah* ('cry'), and *tefillah* again — create a cascade of petition. The repetition is not redundancy but intensity: every register of human appeal is invoked.
- 29.** The image of God's open eyes directed toward the Temple (*lihyot einekha fetuchot*, 'that your eyes might be open') anthropomorphically depicts sustained divine attention. The phrase *laylah va-yom* ('night and day') requests unbroken attentiveness — no moment when God looks away. The clause *asher amarta yihyeh shemi sham* ('of which you said, My Name will be there') grounds the request in God's own promise: Solomon asks God to watch over a place God chose.
- 30.** The verb *shama* ('to hear') dominates this verse (three occurrences) and the entire prayer. In Hebrew, divine 'hearing' is never passive reception — *shama* means to hear, attend to, and respond. When God 'hears,' God acts. The threefold repetition (*ve-shamata... tishma... ve-shamata*) builds to the climax: *ve-salachta* ('and forgive'). Hearing leads to forgiveness — this is the prayer's fundamental logic.
- 31.** The first petition (vv. 31-32) concerns judicial oaths. When a dispute cannot be resolved by evidence, the accused takes a self-imprecatory oath (*alah*, 'oath-curse') before God's altar — essentially invoking divine punishment on themselves if they are lying. The *alah* is not a simple promise but a conditional curse: 'May God do thus to me if I am guilty.' This system makes the Temple a court of last resort where God serves as the ultimate judge.
- 32.** The first occurrence of the refrain: *ve-attah tishma ha-shamayim* ('and you, hear in heaven'). God's judicial action has two sides: *leharshia rasha* ('to condemn the guilty') and *lehatsdiq tsaddiq* ('to vindicate the righteous'). The verbs are causative forms — God causes the guilty to be declared guilty and the righteous to be declared righteous. Divine justice is not neutral but actively discriminating between guilt and innocence.
- 33.** The second petition (vv. 33-34) concerns military defeat as divine discipline. The sequence is precise: sin leads to defeat, defeat leads to return (*shuv*, the root of *teshuvah*, 'repentance'), return leads to confession (*hodu et shimkha*, literally 'acknowledge your Name'), and confession leads to prayer in the Temple. The logic is restorative: defeat is not final but pedagogical, driving the people back to God.
- 34.** The refrain: *tishma ha-shamayim* ('hear in heaven'). The requested response is twofold: forgiveness (*ve-salachta*) and restoration (*va-hashevetam*, 'and bring them back'). The verb *hashev* ('bring back, return') is the causative of *shuv* — God returns those who return to Him. The land (*adamah*) is described as a gift (*natattha*, 'you gave') to the ancestors, grounding restoration in the prior promise.
- 35.** The third petition (vv. 35-36) concerns drought. The shut heavens (*be-he'atser shamayim*) mirror the shut womb of Hannah (1 Samuel 1:5) — the same verb *atsar* ('to restrain, to shut up'). Drought in Israel is not merely a meteorological event but a covenantal signal (see Deuteronomy 11:16-17, 28:23-24). The sequence again moves through sin, prayer, confession of God's Name, and turning (*yashuv*) from sin.
- 36.** The refrain: *tishma ha-shamayim*. The response here is threefold: forgive (*ve-salachta*), teach (*torem*, from *yarah*, the root of Torah), and give rain (*ve-natattah matar*). Teaching is embedded between forgiveness and restoration — the drought is not only punitive but pedagogical. God's response to repentance includes instruction in 'the good way' (*ha-derekh ha-tovah*). The land is called *nachalah* ('inheritance'), a permanent divine gift.
- 37.** The fourth petition (vv. 37-40) is the broadest, covering every conceivable disaster. The catalogue — *ra'av* (famine), *dever* (pestilence), *shiddafon* (blight), *yeraqon* (mildew), *arbeh* (locust), *chasil* (grasshopper), enemy siege, and any *nega* (plague) or *machalah* (sickness) — exhausts the categories of communal suffering. This comprehensive list ensures that no human crisis falls outside the scope of Temple-directed prayer.
- 38.** The phrase *nega levavo* ('the plague/affliction of his heart') is striking: *nega* ('plague, wound, mark') is the same word used for skin diseases in Leviticus 13-14 and for the plagues on Egypt. Solomon applies it to the interior life — every person carries an inner wound, a heart-plague, that only they and God can see. Prayer toward the Temple is the remedy for this invisible affliction. The phrase *ish nega levavo* ('each person the plague of his own heart') insists on individual knowledge of personal suffering.

39. The parenthetical *ki attah yadata levaddekha et levav kol benei ha-adam* ('for you, you alone, know the heart of all the children of humanity') is a profound theological claim: only God has exhaustive knowledge of the human interior. No human judge, priest, or king can know what God knows. This grounds the Temple's judicial function (v. 31-32) in divine omniscience — God can judge rightly because God alone sees fully.
40. The purpose clause *le-ma'an yira'ukha* ('so that they may fear/revere you') reveals the goal of divine judgment: not punishment but reverence. The entire cycle of sin, suffering, prayer, and restoration aims to produce *yir'ah* — the awe-filled reverence that sustains covenant faithfulness. The phrase *kol ha-yamim* ('all the days') asks for lifelong, sustained reverence, not episodic piety.
41. The fifth petition (vv. 41-43) is the most theologically remarkable. The *nokhri* ('foreigner, outsider') is explicitly distinguished from Israel — *asher lo me-ammekha Yisra'el hu* ('who is not from your people Israel, he'). This is not a resident alien (*ger*) but a complete outsider, drawn from *erets rechoquah* ('a distant land'). The motivation for the foreigner's journey is *le-ma'an shmekha* ('because of your Name') — God's reputation has traveled beyond Israel's borders.
42. The foreigner's knowledge of God is described through three channels: *shimkha ha-gadol* ('your great Name'), *yadkha ha-chazaqah* ('your strong hand'), and *zero'akha ha-netuyah* ('your outstretched arm'). The 'strong hand and outstretched arm' is the standard formula for the exodus (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15, 7:19). The foreigner has heard the exodus story — God's reputation among the nations derives from the liberation of Israel.
43. The phrase *ke-khol asher yiqra* ('according to everything he calls/asks') places no limitation on the foreigner's petition. Solomon does not ask God to evaluate the foreigner's request against covenant law but simply to do it — granting the outsider the same hearing as Israel. This is theologically radical: the Temple functions for all humanity.
43. The purpose clause *le-ma'an yed'u kol ammei ha-arets* ('so that all peoples of the earth may know') envisions global knowledge of God's Name radiating outward from the Temple. The phrase *shimkha niqra al ha-bayit* ('your Name is called over this house') uses the 'naming' formula — the house bears God's Name the way a child bears a father's name.
44. The sixth petition (vv. 44-45) concerns warfare. The phrase *ba-derekh asher tishlachem* ('by the route you send them') frames the military campaign as divinely directed — the army goes where God sends. Prayer from the battlefield is directed *derekh ha-ir* ('toward the city') and *derekh ha-bayit* ('toward the house'). The soldiers pray not in a vacuum but toward a specific geographic and theological reference point. This establishes directional prayer — praying toward Jerusalem — which Daniel will later practice in Babylon (Daniel 6:10).
45. The refrain: *ve-shamata ha-shamayim*. The final phrase *ve-asita mishpatam* ('and do/maintain their justice') asks God not merely to answer prayer but to execute justice on their behalf — to vindicate their cause. The *mishpat* ('justice, judgment, cause') is the legal right that requires divine adjudication.
46. The assertion *ki ein adam asher lo yecheta* ('for there is no person who does not sin') is one of the Hebrew Bible's clearest statements of universal human sinfulness. It is not presented as a theological argument but as a simple premise — the inevitability of sin is the reason this final petition exists. Solomon treats exile not as a hypothetical but as a certainty grounded in human nature.
46. The verb *ve-shavum shovehem* ('and their captors carry them captive') uses the root *sh-v-h* ('to take captive') in an intensive form. The land of the enemy can be *rechoquah* ('far') or *qerovah* ('near') — Babylon, Assyria, Egypt, or any other direction. Solomon's prayer is geographically comprehensive.
47. The phrase *ve-heshivu el libbam* ('and they bring back to their heart') describes interior return — a mental and spiritual reversal that happens inside the captive before any physical return occurs. The threefold confession — *chatanu* ('we have sinned'), *he'evinu* ('we have acted perversely'), *rashanu* ('we have been wicked') — uses three distinct terms for wrongdoing, each with its own emphasis: *chata* (missing the mark), *avah* (twisting, distorting), and *rasha* (acting wickedly). This same threefold confession appears in Daniel 9:5 and Solomon's own prayer in 2 Chronicles 6:37.
48. The three directional references — *derekh artsam* ('toward their land'), *ha-ir asher bacharta* ('the city you chose'), *ve-ha-bayit asher baniti* ('and the house I built') — zoom inward from country to city to building, the same narrowing focus as verse 6's approach to the ark. Even in exile, the captive prays toward Jerusalem and toward the Temple. This verse establishes the practice of directional prayer that Daniel will embody in Babylon (Daniel 6:10) and that Jewish prayer tradition preserves to this day — facing Jerusalem.
49. The refrain for the final time: *ve-shamata ha-shamayim mekhon shivtekha* ('hear in heaven, the established place of your dwelling'). The request *ve-asita mishpatam* ('and uphold their cause') asks God to execute justice on behalf of exiles — to intervene in their situation and reverse their captivity.
50. Solomon now asks God to work on the captors' hearts: *u-netattam le-rachamim lifnei shovehem* ('give them to compassion before their captors'). God's forgiveness of Israel is paired with God's softening of the enemy — the captors must be moved to show *rachamim* ('compassion, mercy,' from *rechem*, 'womb'). The exiles need both divine forgiveness and human kindness, and Solomon asks for both. This verse anticipates the experience of Judean exiles in Babylon, where figures like Cyrus would indeed show favor.
51. The ground for Solomon's plea is identity: *ki ammekha ve-nachalatekha hem* ('for they are your people and your inheritance'). Israel belongs to God — not as property but as *nachalah* ('inheritance, permanent possession'). The metaphor *kur ha-barzel* ('the iron furnace') describes Egypt as a smelting furnace where Israel was refined through suffering (Deuteronomy 4:20, Jeremiah 11:4). A people forged in an iron furnace cannot be discarded. This is Solomon's final argument: God's investment in Israel — the exodus itself — prohibits abandonment.

52. Solomon returns to the language of verse 29 — open eyes and attentive hearing. The phrase *be-khol qor'am elekha* ('in all their calling to you') asks for unrestricted responsiveness: every call, every occasion, every circumstance. The prayer's frame (vv. 28-29 and 52-53) encloses the seven petitions in a bracket of requested divine attention.
53. The verb *hivdaltam* ('you set them apart, you separated them') uses the root *b-d-l*, the same verb God uses in creation to 'separate' light from darkness (Genesis 1:4). Israel's election is a creative act of separation — God distinguishes Israel from the nations as definitively as God distinguished light from darkness. The prayer closes by invoking *Moshe avdekha* ('Moses your servant') and the exodus — returning to the foundational event that gives Israel its identity. The final address *Adonai YHWH* ('Lord GOD') combines the titles of sovereignty and covenant name.
54. The narrative reveals that at some point during the prayer, Solomon had dropped from standing (v. 22) to kneeling (*kro'a al birkav*). The text does not mark when this transition happened — the shift from standing to kneeling may have occurred as the prayer intensified. His posture at the conclusion — knees on the ground, palms open toward heaven — embodies the prayer's spatial theology: rooted on earth, reaching toward the God who hears in heaven.
55. Solomon transitions from prayer (addressed to God) to blessing (addressed to the people). The *qol gadol* ('loud voice') indicates that this blessing was proclaimed to the massive outdoor assembly — audibility required projection. The king functions here as a liturgical leader, mediating between God and the nation.
56. The *menuchah* ('rest') is a technical term in Deuteronomic theology — not merely the absence of war but the condition of settled, secure life in the promised land that enables proper worship (Deuteronomy 12:9-10). The Temple can only be built when rest is achieved; rest is both the prerequisite and the result.
56. The idiom *lo nafal davar* ('not a word has fallen') treats God's words as objects that either stand or fall. A fulfilled promise stands; a broken promise falls. Solomon declares that God's entire record is standing — perfect fulfillment, zero failures.
57. The twin verbs *al ya'azvenu ve-al yitteshenu* ('may He not abandon us and may He not forsake us') use two different words for departure — *azav* ('to leave, abandon') and *natash* ('to forsake, cast off'). The doubling is emphatic: Solomon prays against every form of divine withdrawal. The request *ka-asher hayah im avoteinu* ('as He was with our ancestors') grounds the petition in precedent — God's past faithfulness is the basis for requesting future presence.
58. The verb *lehattot* ('to incline, to bend') applied to the heart reveals a remarkable theology of divine initiative in obedience: Solomon asks God to bend Israel's hearts toward Himself. Human obedience, in this view, requires divine enabling — the heart must be inclined by God before it can walk in God's ways. The threefold designation — *mitsvot* ('commands'), *chuqim* ('statutes'), and *mishpatim* ('judgments') — covers the full range of Torah obligation.
59. Solomon asks that his prayer have permanent standing before God — *qerovim el YHWH* ('near to the LORD') not just at the moment of utterance but *yomam va-laylah* ('day and night'). The prayer is meant to endure as a perpetual intercession. The phrase *devar yom be-yomo* ('the matter of a day in its day') asks for daily provision and daily justice — not a once-for-all resolution but ongoing, day-by-day attentiveness to Israel's needs.
60. The universal scope returns: *kol ammei ha-arets* ('all the peoples of the earth'). The declaration *ki YHWH hu ha-Elohim ein od* ('that the LORD, He is God — there is no other') echoes Deuteronomy 4:35, 39 and anticipates Elijah's contest on Carmel (1 Kings 18:39, where the people cry 'The LORD, He is God!'). The Temple's purpose extends beyond Israel to global recognition of God's sole deity. The phrase *ein od* ('there is no other') is absolute monotheism stated in two words.
61. The adjective *shalem* ('whole, complete, undivided') applied to the heart describes not perfection but integrity — an undivided loyalty. A *levav shalem* is a heart not split between God and other allegiances. This is Solomon's final charge to the people, and its irony is devastating for the reader who knows the rest of his story: Solomon himself will fail this very standard when his heart is 'turned after other gods' (11:4). The man who asks for whole hearts will prove to have a divided one.
62. The phrase *ve-ha-melek ve-khol Yisra'el immo* ('and the king and all Israel with him') describes a unified national act of worship. The sacrifice follows the prayer — word leads to act, petition leads to offering. The *zevach* ('sacrifice') is the broad term encompassing all types of offerings.
63. The *shelamim* ('peace offerings') are the only sacrifices where the worshiper eats a portion — they are communion meals shared between God (who receives the fat), the priests (who receive the breast and thigh), and the offeror (who eats the remainder). At this scale, the entire nation feasted together. The verb *chanakh* ('to dedicate, to inaugurate') is the root of Hanukkah — every future Temple rededication echoes this original moment.
64. The volume of sacrifice overwhelmed the bronze altar's capacity, so Solomon *qiddash* ('consecrated, made holy') the courtyard pavement itself as an emergency altar surface. The verb *qiddash* (from the root *q-d-sh*, 'holy') transforms ordinary ground into sacred space — an act of royal priestly authority. The three types of offering — *olah* ('burnt offering,' entirely consumed), *minchah* ('grain offering'), and *chelvei ha-shelamim* ('fat of the peace offerings') — represent the full range of Israel's sacrificial worship.
65. The geographic extent — *mi-levo Chamath ad nachal Mitsrayim* ('from the entrance of Hamath to the Brook of Egypt') — describes the full extent of the promised land, from its northern to its southern boundary. The entire land is represented. The double seven — *shiv'at yamim ve-shiv'at yamim* ('seven days and seven days') — combines the seven days of the dedication with the seven days of the Festival of Tabernacles (Sukkot), totaling fourteen. The sevens continue to accumulate: seven years of building, seventh month, seven-plus-seven days of celebration.

66. The final image is of a nation walking home in joy. The phrase *semechim ve-tovei lev* ('joyful and good of heart') describes inner well-being, not mere festivity. The people's gladness is grounded in divine action: *al kol ha-tovah asher asah YHWH* ('for all the goodness that the LORD had done'). The chapter ends with David and Israel paired — *le-David avdo u-le-Yisra'el ammo* ('for David His servant and for Israel His people'). The servant-king and the covenant-people are the twin beneficiaries of God's goodness. The phrase *le-ohaleihem* ('to their tents') is archaic language recalling Israel's wilderness origins — even in settled prosperity, Israel goes home 'to their tents.'

9

Summary: *God appears to Solomon a second time — after the temple and palace are complete — and responds to the dedicatory prayer of chapter 8. The LORD affirms that he has consecrated the house, placed his name there permanently, and set his eyes and heart on it for all time. But the affirmation comes welded to a conditional warning: if Solomon or his descendants turn away from the commands and serve other gods, Israel will be cut off from the land and the temple will become a ruin. The chapter then shifts to a catalog of Solomon's administrative achievements — his dealings with Hiram of Tyre, his forced labor projects, his fleet at Ezion-geber — painting the portrait of an empire at its zenith.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the hinge of Solomon's entire narrative. The first appearance of God at Gibeon (chapter 3) was pure promise — wisdom, riches, honor. This second appearance is promise wrapped in threat. The conditional 'if' in verse 6 introduces the theological mechanism that will detonate in chapter 11. Everything in between — the building projects, the trade empire, the gold — is narrated under the shadow of this warning. The narrator is showing the reader the fuse before lighting it. The Hiram exchange in verses 10-14 is particularly telling: Solomon gives Hiram twenty cities in Galilee, and Hiram calls them Cabul ('as nothing') — a hint that Solomon's lavish empire is already generating debts and dissatisfaction.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between unconditional and conditional covenant theology is acute here. In 2 Samuel 7, God promised David an eternal dynasty without conditions. Here God tells Solomon the dynasty and the temple are conditional on obedience. Translators must decide whether verse 5 (sitting on the throne of Israel 'forever') is a genuine unconditional promise being modified, or whether the conditions were always implicit. We render the Hebrew *le-olam* as 'for all time' rather than 'forever' to preserve the Hebrew sense of an indefinitely extended period that remains within God's sovereign discretion. The Cabul episode (verses 12-13) is also difficult: was Hiram genuinely offended, or is this diplomatic posturing? The Hebrew is ambiguous, and we render it as genuine displeasure.*

Connections: *God's warning in verses 6-9 directly echoes the blessings and curses of Deuteronomy 28-29, applying the Mosaic covenant framework to the Davidic monarchy. The phrase 'I will cut off Israel from the land' (verse 7) anticipates the exile language of 2 Kings 17 and 25. Solomon's use of forced labor (*mas*, verse 15) recalls the Egyptian bondage — the same word appears in Exodus 1:11 for the labor gangs Pharaoh imposed on Israel. The narrator is quietly suggesting that Solomon has become what Egypt was. The fleet at Ezion-geber (verse 26) connects to the Queen of Sheba narrative in chapter 10, as maritime trade opens the door to international fame.*

¹When Solomon had finished building the house of the LORD, and the royal palace, and everything else Solomon desired to accomplish, ²the LORD appeared to Solomon a second time, just as he had appeared to him at Gibeon. ³The LORD said to him, "I have heard your prayer and your plea that you offered before me. I have consecrated this house that you built, placing my name there for all time. My eyes and my heart will be there every day. ⁴As for you — if you walk before me as David your father walked, with a whole heart and with uprightness, doing everything I have commanded you, keeping my statutes and my judgments, ⁵then I will establish the throne of your kingdom over Israel for all time, as I promised David your father when I said, 'You will never lack a man on the throne of Israel.' ⁶But if you or your sons turn away from following me and do not keep my commands and my statutes that I have set before you, and you go and serve other gods and bow down to them, ⁷then I will cut Israel off from the land I gave them, and this house that I consecrated for my name I will cast from my presence. Israel will become a cautionary tale and an object of ridicule among all peoples. ⁸And this house will become a heap of ruins. Everyone who passes by will be stunned and will hiss through their teeth, and they will ask, 'Why has the LORD done this to this land and to this house?' ⁹And the answer will come: 'Because they abandoned the LORD their

God who brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt. They clung to other gods and bowed down to them and served them. That is why the LORD brought all this disaster on them." ¹⁰At the end of twenty years, during which Solomon had built the two houses — the house of the LORD and the royal palace — ¹¹Hiram king of Tyre had supplied Solomon with cedar timber and cypress timber and gold — as much as he wanted. So King Solomon gave Hiram twenty cities in the region of the Galilee. ¹²Hiram came from Tyre to inspect the cities Solomon had given him, but they did not meet his approval. ¹³He said, "What sort of cities are these that you have given me, brother?" So he named that region the land of Cabul — and it is called that to this day. ¹⁴Hiram had sent the king one hundred and twenty talents of gold. ¹⁵This is the account of the forced labor that King Solomon conscripted to build the house of the LORD, his own palace, the Millo, the wall of Jerusalem, and Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer. ¹⁶Pharaoh king of Egypt had gone up and captured Gezer, burned it with fire, killed the Canaanites living in the city, and given it as a wedding gift to his daughter, Solomon's wife. ¹⁷Solomon rebuilt Gezer and Lower Beth-horon, ¹⁸and Baalath, and Tamar in the wilderness region, ¹⁹and all the storage cities that Solomon had, and the chariot cities, and the cavalry cities, and whatever Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and throughout the whole territory of his rule. ²⁰All the people remaining from the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites — those who were not Israelites — ²¹their descendants who remained in the land after them, whom the Israelites had been unable to devote to destruction — Solomon conscripted them as permanent forced labor, and so it remains to this day. ²²But from the Israelites Solomon made no one a slave. They served as soldiers, as his officers, his commanders, his adjutants, and his chariot and cavalry commanders. ²³These were the chief overseers in charge of Solomon's projects — five hundred and fifty — who supervised the laborers doing the work. ²⁴As soon as Pharaoh's daughter came up from the city of David to her own house that Solomon had built for her, he then built the Millo. ²⁵Three times a year Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar he had built for the LORD, and he burned incense on the altar that was before the LORD. So he completed the house. ²⁶King Solomon also built a fleet of ships at Ezion-geber, which is near Elath on the shore of the Sea of Reeds, in the land of Edom. ²⁷Hiram sent his own servants in the fleet — experienced sailors who knew the sea — to serve alongside Solomon's servants. ²⁸They sailed to Ophir and brought back four hundred and twenty talents of gold, which they delivered to King Solomon.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *chesheq* ('desire, delight') and *chafets* ('was pleased, took pleasure in') are both terms of personal desire rather than divine mandate. The narrator subtly notes that Solomon built not only what God commanded (the temple) but also what Solomon himself wanted. This pairing — divine house and royal desire — sets up the tension of the chapter.
2. The word *shenit* ('a second time') is emphatic — the narrator wants the reader to recall the first theophany at Gibeon (chapter 3) and compare the two. At Gibeon, God said 'Ask — what shall I give you?' Here God will speak differently: warning, condition, threat. The phrase *ka-asher nir'ah* ('just as he had appeared') uses the Niphal of *ra'ah* — God 'let himself be seen,' a controlled self-revelation.
3. We render *ad-olam* as 'for all time' rather than 'forever' because the Hebrew *olam* denotes an indefinitely extended duration that does not necessarily mean 'eternal' in the philosophical sense. Given that the temple will eventually be destroyed (as verses 7-8 warn), 'for all time' better preserves the tension between God's commitment and the covenant's conditionality.
3. The pairing of 'eyes' and 'heart' (*einai velibbi*) is deeply anthropomorphic. God is not merely watching the temple as a guard watches a gate — his heart is there, meaning his emotional investment, his deepest care. This makes the eventual destruction of the temple in 2 Kings 25 not just a political event but a tearing of God's own affection from its dwelling place.
4. The phrase *be-tom levav u-ve-yosher* ('with wholeness of heart and with uprightness') describes David's character as the standard. *Tom* means 'completeness, integrity, wholeness' — not sinlessness but undivided loyalty. *Yosher* means 'straightness, uprightness' — walking a direct path without deviation toward other gods. The narrator knows David sinned grievously, yet God holds him up as the model because David's heart never divided its ultimate allegiance.
5. The verb *haqimothi* ('I will establish, raise up') is the Hiphil of *qum* — God actively causes the throne to stand. The promise echoes 2 Samuel 7:12-16 but here it is explicitly conditional: the word *im* ('if') in verse 4 governs this entire promise. The phrase *lo yikkaret lekha ish* ('a man will not be cut off from you') uses *karat*, the same verb used for 'cutting' a covenant — to be 'cut off' from the throne is covenant severance.
6. The address shifts from singular ('you' meaning Solomon) to plural ('you or your sons') — the warning extends across generations. The verbs *avadhtem* ('you serve') and *hishtachavitem* ('you bow down') form a standard pair for full religious allegiance in Deuteronomic theology. To serve is to render ongoing devotion; to bow down is to physically enact submission. Together they describe complete apostasy.

7. The verb *hikhratthi* ('I will cut off') uses *karat* — the covenant-cutting verb turned against the covenant partner. God who 'cut' the covenant will now 'cut off' the people. The phrase *ashalach me-al panai* ('I will send away from my face') applied to the temple is devastating: the house where God placed his eyes and heart (verse 3) will be expelled from his presence. The word *marshal* ('proverb, example story') and *shninah* ('sharp saying, taunt') describe Israel becoming a negative illustration for the nations — the people who had everything and lost it.
8. The word *elyon* here is debated — it could mean 'exalted, high' (describing the temple's current grandeur) or, by ironic wordplay, 'ruins' (from a different root). We render it as 'heap of ruins' following the Septuagint and the context, which describes horror rather than admiration. The verb *yishom* ('will be appalled, devastated') and *sharaq* ('will hiss, whistle') are visceral reactions of shock. The hissing is not mockery but the sharp intake of breath when witnessing catastrophe — a Near Eastern gesture of horrified disbelief.
9. The verb *azvu* ('they abandoned') is the key covenantal term for desertion — leaving the LORD as a wife leaves a husband or a vassal abandons a suzerain. The contrasting verb *vayachaziku* ('they seized, clung to') uses *chazaq*, meaning to grab hold firmly — the same intensity that should have been directed at God was redirected to foreign gods. The answer to the nations' question is self-contained: abandonment of the covenant God produces covenant consequences. The exodus reference anchors everything — the God they abandoned is the one who liberated them.
10. The chronological marker 'twenty years' accounts for seven years building the temple (6:38) and thirteen years building the palace (7:1). The narrator groups them together as 'the two houses' (*shenei ha-battim*), placing God's house and the king's house in a pairing that implicitly invites comparison. Solomon spent nearly twice as long on his own residence.
11. The verb *nissa* ('supported, supplied, bore') suggests Hiram carried a significant burden of the building costs. The repayment — twenty cities in the Galilee — is extraordinary. Solomon is ceding Israelite territory to a foreign king to settle a construction debt. The phrase *le-khol cheftso* ('according to all his desire') echoes the *chesheq* ('desire') of verse 1: Solomon's desires are being funded by foreign credit, and the bill has come due.
12. The phrase *lo yashru be-einav* ('they were not straight in his eyes') uses *yashar* ('straight, right, pleasing') — the cities failed Hiram's standard. A Phoenician merchant-king accustomed to coastal wealth found Galilean hill towns inadequate. This is a diplomatic embarrassment: Solomon's payment is rejected as substandard by his primary trade partner.
13. The word *achi* ('my brother') is a treaty term between equal kings — its use here is strained by Hiram's obvious displeasure. The name Cabul is likely a wordplay on *ke-val* ('as nothing, worthless'), though the exact etymology is disputed. Hiram's public naming of the territory is a diplomatic insult preserved in the landscape itself. The narrator's note 'to this day' indicates this story was well-known and the name stuck, a permanent record of Solomon's failed transaction.
14. The 120 talents of gold (roughly 4.5 tons) represents an enormous sum. The placement of this verse after the Cabul insult is ambiguous — was this gold the original loan that the cities were meant to repay, or a separate gift? The narrative leaves the financial relationship deliberately unclear, but the overall impression is of staggering wealth flowing through Solomon's hands, some of it on credit.
15. The word *mas* ('forced labor, corvée') is the same term used in Exodus 1:11 for the labor gangs Pharaoh imposed on Israel in Egypt. The narrator's use of this loaded word is not accidental — Solomon is building his empire using the same system that enslaved his ancestors. The *Millo* (from *male*, 'to fill') was a terraced fill structure supporting the city of David. The three fortress cities — Hazor, Megiddo, and Gezer — formed the strategic backbone of Solomon's military infrastructure, controlling the major north-south and east-west routes through Canaan.
16. The word *shilluchim* ('parting gifts, dowry, wedding present') is a rare term indicating a gift given when a daughter departs for marriage. An Egyptian pharaoh conquering a Canaanite city and handing it to Israel as a dowry is an extraordinary reversal of the exodus dynamic — Egypt is now Israel's benefactor and father-in-law. The fact that Canaanites still occupied Gezer means Joshua's conquest was incomplete (cf. Joshua 16:10), and it took a foreign king to finish the job.
17. Lower Beth-horon controlled the ascent from the coastal plain to the central hill country — a strategically vital pass that saw battles from Joshua's time (Joshua 10:10-11) through the Maccabean period. Solomon's fortification of this route reflects systematic military planning.
18. Tamar (not Tadmor/Palmyra, which is a later scribal emendation in some manuscripts) was a southern outpost in the Negev wilderness. Baalath was likely a fortified town in Dan's territory. Together with the northern fortresses, these sites demonstrate Solomon's strategy of controlling the entire land from the Galilee to the desert fringe.
19. The word *chesheq* ('desire') appears again — Solomon builds what he wants, where he wants. The chariot and cavalry cities represent a standing military that Deuteronomy 17:16 specifically warned kings against multiplying. The mention of 'Lebanon' likely refers to construction projects in Phoenician territory, extending Solomon's building ambitions beyond Israel's borders. The phrase *kol erets memshalto* ('the whole territory of his rule') conveys the scope of an empire, not merely a kingdom.
20. The five nations listed are the remnants of the seven Canaanite nations that Israel was commanded to dispossess (Deuteronomy 7:1). Their survival testifies to the incomplete conquest. Solomon now absorbs them into his labor system rather than driving them out — a pragmatic solution that the Deuteronomic historian records without explicit judgment, though the theological implications are clear.
21. The verb *lehacharimam* ('to devote to destruction') is the Hiphil of *charam* — the total ban associated with holy war. The narrator notes that Israel could not carry out the *cherem*, so Solomon converted the surviving populations into *mas-oved* ('labor gangs in servitude'). The phrase *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') indicates this arrangement persisted into the narrator's own time.

- 22.** The narrator insists Solomon did not enslave Israelites — a claim that stands in tension with 5:13-14 (the *corvée* of 30,000 men) and with the complaint in 12:4 that Solomon's labor was oppressive. The word *eved* ('slave, servant') may carry a technical distinction: permanent bondage was reserved for non-Israelites, while Israelites served in military and administrative roles. The term *shalish* ('adjutant, third-man') originally referred to the third warrior in a chariot team.
- 23.** The verb *ha-rodim* ('the ones ruling over, dominating') comes from *radah*, which means to exercise dominion, to tread down. It is the same verb used for humanity's dominion over creation in Genesis 1:28. Applied to labor overseers, it carries an uncomfortable echo — these Israelite supervisors 'rule over' the Canaanite workers the way humanity was meant to rule over animals. The system of 550 overseers implies a massive, bureaucratically managed labor force.
- 24.** Pharaoh's daughter moving from the city of David to her own palace marks a separation between sacred space and foreign presence. In 2 Chronicles 8:11, this move is explicitly motivated by holiness concerns — the ark had been in the city of David. The narrator here records the event without theological comment, but the sequence (foreign wife relocated, then Millo fortification built) implies Solomon was managing the tension between international alliance and covenant purity.
- 25.** The 'three times a year' refers to the three pilgrimage festivals: Passover, Weeks (Shavuot), and Booths (Sukkot), as prescribed in Exodus 23:17 and Deuteronomy 16:16. The *shelamim* ('peace offerings') are communion sacrifices — part burned, part eaten by the worshiper — signifying wholeness and fellowship with God. The verb *shillam* ('he completed') from the same root as *shalom* closes the building narrative: the house is finished, the worship is established, the peace is (for now) intact.
- 26.** Ezion-geber at the northern tip of the Gulf of Aqaba was Israel's only access to the Red Sea trade routes leading to Arabia, East Africa, and beyond. The location 'in the land of Edom' is significant — Solomon controlled this port because David had conquered Edom (2 Samuel 8:14). The naval fleet represents a dramatic expansion from Israel's landlocked, agrarian origins into international maritime commerce.
- 27.** The phrase *yode'ei ha-yam* ('those who know the sea') indicates professional Phoenician mariners. Israel had no maritime tradition — the Phoenicians were the ancient world's premier sailors. Solomon needed Hiram's expertise as much as his timber. This partnership, though beneficial, deepened Solomon's dependence on a foreign king and his pagan culture.
- 28.** Ophir's location remains debated — candidates include southern Arabia, the Horn of Africa (modern Somalia/Ethiopia), and western India. The 420 talents of gold (roughly 16 tons) is a staggering quantity that dwarfs the 120 talents from Hiram in verse 14. This single expedition establishes Solomon as one of the wealthiest rulers in the ancient Near East and sets the stage for the Queen of Sheba's visit in chapter 10. The chapter ends on gold — the glittering surface of an empire whose theological foundations have already been placed under warning.

10

Summary: *The Queen of Sheba arrives in Jerusalem to test Solomon with hard questions, having heard reports of his fame in connection with the name of the LORD. She comes with an enormous caravan of spices, gold, and precious stones. Solomon answers every question she poses — nothing is hidden from the king. Overwhelmed by his wisdom, his palace, the food at his table, his servants, and his burnt offerings at the temple, she declares that the report she heard in her own country was not even half the truth. She praises the God of Israel for setting Solomon on the throne. The chapter then catalogs Solomon's extraordinary wealth: the gold of Ophir, the great throne of ivory and gold, the fleet of Tarshish, and the accumulation of silver until it was as common as stones in Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the narrative apex of Solomon's glory — the moment when a foreign queen journeys from the edge of the known world to witness Israelite wisdom and worship, and confesses that what she sees exceeds all report. The scene fulfills, in compressed form, the promise that the nations would come to Israel's light (Isaiah 60:3, though written later). Yet the narrator embeds the seeds of critique within the celebration: the horses from Egypt (verse 28-29) directly violate Deuteronomy 17:16 ('the king must not acquire many horses for himself or send people back to Egypt to get more'), and the accumulation of silver and gold violates Deuteronomy 17:17. Solomon is simultaneously the wisest king and the most Deuteronomically disobedient one. The narrator presents the glory without commentary, trusting the informed reader to hear the warning underneath the wonder.*

Translation Friction: *The Queen of Sheba's statement in verse 9 — 'Blessed be the LORD your God, who delighted in you to set you on the throne of Israel' — raises the question of whether she is making a genuine confession of faith in Israel's God or merely offering diplomatic praise in the host's religious idiom. We render her words at face value because the Hebrew gives no signal of insincerity, and the narrator presents her response as the proper reaction to encountering divine wisdom. The wealth catalog in the second half of the chapter creates an interpretive tension: is the narrator celebrating or indicting Solomon? The answer is both —*

the glory is real, and the violation is real, and the narrator refuses to choose between them. The 666 talents of gold in verse 14 has attracted much attention for its later resonance in Revelation 13:18, but in its original context it is simply a specific accounting figure.

Connections: Jesus references the Queen of Sheba (calling her 'the queen of the South') in Matthew 12:42 and Luke 11:31, declaring that she will rise in judgment against his generation because she came from the ends of the earth to hear Solomon's wisdom, and 'something greater than Solomon is here.' The gold and ivory throne (verses 18-20) connects to the divine throne imagery in Ezekiel 1 and Isaiah 6. Solomon's horse trade with Egypt (verses 28-29) violates Deuteronomy 17:16 and foreshadows the prophetic condemnation of reliance on Egyptian military power (Isaiah 31:1). The 'ships of Tarshish' (verse 22) will reappear as symbols of human pride brought low in Isaiah 2:16.

¹The queen of Sheba heard the report about Solomon — his fame connected to the name of the LORD — and she came to test him with riddles. ²She came to Jerusalem with a very large retinue — camels carrying spices, an enormous quantity of gold, and precious stones. When she came to Solomon, she spoke with him about everything that was on her heart. ³Solomon answered all her questions. Nothing was hidden from the king that he could not explain to her. ⁴When the queen of Sheba saw all of Solomon's wisdom and the house he had built, ⁵and the food at his table, and the seating of his officials, and the service of his attendants, and their clothing, and his cupbearers, and the burnt offerings he presented at the house of the LORD — it took her breath away. ⁶She said to the king, "The report I heard in my own land about your achievements and your wisdom was true. ⁷I did not believe the reports until I came and saw with my own eyes. And the truth is, I was not told even half of it. Your wisdom and prosperity surpass the report I heard. ⁸How fortunate are your people! How fortunate are these servants of yours who stand before you continually and hear your wisdom! ⁹Blessed be the LORD your God, who delighted in you and set you on the throne of Israel. Because the LORD loves Israel with an enduring love, he made you king to execute justice and righteousness. ¹⁰She gave the king one hundred and twenty talents of gold, an enormous quantity of spices, and precious stones. Never again did such an abundance of spices arrive as what the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon. ¹¹Hiram's fleet, which had brought gold from Ophir, also brought back a very large quantity of almuḡ wood and precious stones from Ophir. ¹²The king used the almuḡ wood to make supports for the house of the LORD and for the royal palace, and also lyres and harps for the musicians. No almuḡ wood like it has arrived or been seen since, to this day. ¹³King Solomon gave the queen of Sheba everything she desired and asked for, in addition to what he gave her from his own royal generosity. Then she turned and went back to her own country — she and her servants. ¹⁴The weight of gold that came to Solomon in a single year was six hundred and sixty-six talents of gold, ¹⁵apart from the revenue from traders and merchants, and from all the kings of Arabia and the governors of the land. ¹⁶King Solomon made two hundred large shields of hammered gold; six hundred shekels of gold went into each shield. ¹⁷He also made three hundred smaller shields of hammered gold; three minas of gold went into each shield. The king placed them in the House of the Forest of Lebanon. ¹⁸The king also made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with refined gold. ¹⁹The throne had six steps. The top of the throne was rounded at the back. There were armrests on each side of the seat, and two lions stood beside the armrests. ²⁰Twelve lions stood on the six steps, one on each side of every step. Nothing like it had ever been made for any kingdom. ²¹All of King Solomon's drinking vessels were gold, and all the vessels in the House of the Forest of Lebanon were pure gold. There was no silver — it was considered worthless in Solomon's day. ²²For the king had a fleet of Tarshish ships at sea alongside Hiram's fleet. Once every three years the Tarshish fleet would arrive carrying gold, silver, ivory, apes, and peacocks. ²³King Solomon surpassed all the kings of the earth in wealth and in wisdom. ²⁴The whole world sought an audience with Solomon to hear the wisdom that God had placed in his heart. ²⁵Each visitor brought a gift — silver vessels, gold vessels, garments, weapons, spices, horses, and mules — year after year. ²⁶Solomon accumulated chariots and cavalry. He had one thousand four hundred chariots and twelve thousand horsemen, which he stationed in the chariot cities and with the king in Jerusalem. ²⁷The king made silver as common as stones in Jerusalem, and cedar as plentiful as sycamore trees in the foothills. ²⁸Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from Kue. The king's traders acquired them from Kue at the market price. ²⁹A chariot was exported from Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver and a horse for one hundred and fifty. In the same way, they were

exported through Solomon's agents to all the kings of the Hittites and the kings of Aram.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *le-shem YHWH* ('concerning the name of the LORD') is crucial and often overlooked. Solomon's fame is not merely intellectual or political — it is linked to the divine name. The queen comes because Solomon's wisdom points to something beyond himself. The word *chidot* ('riddles, perplexing questions') refers to probing, enigmatic questions designed to test the depth of understanding — not casual inquiries but deliberate intellectual trials.
2. The phrase *chayil kaved me'od* ('a very heavy/impressive retinue') uses *kavod* language — the caravan itself is 'glorious.' The phrase *kol asher hayah im levavah* ('everything that was with her heart') indicates that these were not diplomatic pleasantries but genuine questions born from deep reflection. The queen came not merely to trade but to understand.
3. The verb *ne'lam* ('hidden, concealed') uses the root *alam* — things that are obscured, veiled, kept from understanding. The narrator's claim is absolute: *lo hayah davar ne'lam* ('there was not a thing hidden'). Solomon's wisdom penetrates every mystery the queen presents. This echoes the wisdom promise of chapter 3 — God gave Solomon a 'listening heart' (*lev shome'a*), and here that heart proves its capacity.
4. The verb *vater* ('she saw') marks a shift from hearing to seeing. She came because she heard a report (verse 1); now she witnesses the reality. Wisdom is not merely heard in Solomon's answers but seen in his architecture, his administration, his entire ordered world. The 'house' (*bayit*) likely refers to the palace complex, though it could include the temple — everything Solomon constructed manifests his wisdom.
5. We render *lo hayah vah od ruach* as 'it took her breath away' because the Hebrew describes a physical reaction — the departure of *ruach* (breath/spirit). More wooden translations ('there was no more spirit in her') risk sounding like a medical report. The sequence is rhetorically brilliant: the narrator lists increasingly impressive elements, ending with temple worship, and then records the collapse of the queen's composure — wisdom, beauty, order, and devotion combined to overwhelm a powerful monarch.
6. The word *emet* ('truth, faithfulness, reliability') opens her speech — the very first word is a confirmation that the reports were not exaggerated. The phrase *be-artsi* ('in my land') emphasizes the distance Solomon's fame has traveled. Sheba (likely modern Yemen or Ethiopia) was at the far end of the Arabian trade routes — the edge of the known world from a Jerusalemite perspective.
7. The phrase *lo he'emanti* ('I did not believe') uses the Hiphil of *aman* — the same root that gives us 'amen' and 'faith.' The queen confesses that she lacked faith in the reports. The declaration *lo huggad li ha-chatsi* ('the half was not told to me') has become proverbial. The word *chatsi* ('half') is precise — she received less than fifty percent of the reality. The verb *hosafta* ('you have added, exceeded') indicates that Solomon's actual wisdom surpasses the already extraordinary reports.
8. The word *ashrei* ('fortunate, blessed, happy') is a wisdom-literature term — the same word that opens Psalm 1. The queen uses Israel's own vocabulary of blessing to describe Solomon's court. The verb *ha-shom'im* ('those who hear') echoes Solomon's original request for a *lev shome'a* ('listening heart') in chapter 3. Solomon asked to hear; now his servants are blessed because they get to hear him.
9. The verb *chafets* ('delighted, took pleasure in') describes God's personal desire to elevate Solomon — this is not mere appointment but delight. The phrase *be-ahavat YHWH et Yisra'el le-olam* ('because of the LORD's love for Israel for all time') places Solomon's kingship within God's larger love story with his people. The paired terms *mishpat u-tsedakah* ('justice and righteousness') form the standard prophetic description of ideal governance (Isaiah 9:7, Jeremiah 22:3). The queen, though foreign, grasps the covenantal purpose of the Israelite monarchy.
10. The 120 talents of gold matches Hiram's contribution in 9:14 — the queen's gift equals that of Solomon's closest trade partner. The narrator singles out the spices (*besamim*) as historically unmatched: *lo va khabosem ha-hu od rov* ('such an abundance of that spice never came again'). The Arabian Peninsula was the ancient world's spice corridor, and this gift represents the wealth of that entire trade network. The superlative framing ('never again') marks this as the pinnacle of Solomon's international prestige.
11. The *atzei almugim* ('almug wood') is likely red sandalwood, imported from distant regions. This rare timber is mentioned only here and in 2 Chronicles 9:10-11 in all of Scripture. The narrator inserts this trade detail into the Sheba narrative to show that wealth was converging on Jerusalem from every direction simultaneously — from the south (Sheba) and from the sea (Ophir via Hiram's fleet).
12. The almug wood served both structural (*mis'ad*, 'supports, railings') and musical (*kinnorot u-nevalim*, 'lyres and harps') purposes. The kinnor is a stringed instrument associated with David (1 Samuel 16:23); the nevel is a larger harp. That the same rare wood supports the temple and produces worship music creates a poetic unity — the house and the praise that fills it are made from the same material. The narrator's 'to this day' note signals that this was a one-time acquisition, never repeated.
13. The phrase *kol cheftsah asher sha'alah* ('everything she desired that she asked for') uses *chesheq/chefets* vocabulary again — desire is the engine of this entire narrative. Solomon gives beyond what she requests: *milevad asher natan lah ke-yad ha-melekh* ('besides what he gave her according to the hand of the king'). The phrase *ke-yad ha-melekh* ('according to the king's hand') means 'as befitting royal generosity.' The departure is narrated simply: *vattefen vattelekh* — 'she turned and went.' The encounter is complete.
14. The figure 666 talents (roughly 25 tons) represents an annual income that made Solomon one of the wealthiest rulers in the ancient world. The narrator provides this as a matter-of-fact accounting figure. Later readers will note the number's reappearance in Revelation 13:18, but in this context it is simply the scale of Solomon's wealth. The emphasis on 'a single year' (*be-shanah achat*) heightens the impact — this was not a one-time windfall but an annual revenue stream.

15. The 666 talents was merely the base figure — additional income poured in from traveling merchants (anshei ha-tarim), professional traders (rokelim), Arabian kings (malkhei ha-erev), and regional governors (pachot ha-arets). The word erev can mean 'Arabia' or 'mixed peoples' — either way, it indicates income from the eastern trade routes. The total annual revenue was substantially higher than 666 talents when all sources are counted.
16. The tsinnah is a large body shield, distinct from the smaller magen. The word shachut ('hammered, beaten') describes gold that has been worked into sheets. At 600 shekels per shield (roughly 15 pounds), these were not functional military equipment but ceremonial display pieces — portable demonstrations of wealth. They will be seized by Pharaoh Shishak in Rehoboam's reign (14:25-26) and replaced with bronze, a vivid symbol of the kingdom's decline.
17. The magen is a smaller, round shield. The 'House of the Forest of Lebanon' (beit ya'ar ha-levanon) was Solomon's armory and reception hall, named for its rows of cedar pillars that evoked a forest (7:2-5). Placing gold shields in a cedar hall created a visual spectacle — gold gleaming against wood. These five hundred shields (200 large + 300 small) served as the visible face of Solomon's wealth to every foreign visitor.
18. The kisseh shen gadol ('great ivory throne') combines three markers of supreme luxury: kisseh (throne — royal authority), shen (ivory — rare, imported from Africa or India), and gadol (great — oversized, imposing). The gold overlay (zahav mufaz, 'refined/pure gold') covered the ivory, creating a throne that was both white and gold. No other throne in Scripture receives this level of description.
19. The six steps (shesh ma'alot) created an elevated platform requiring the king to ascend — a physical enactment of royal authority rising above the people. The rounded top (rosh agol) is unique in ancient Near Eastern throne descriptions. The two lions flanking the seat evoke the tribe of Judah's lion emblem (Genesis 49:9) and serve as guardians of royal authority. Lions were the standard throne guardians across the ancient Near East, but here they carry specifically Judahite significance.
20. The twelve lions — two per step, six pairs — likely represent the twelve tribes of Israel guarding the ascent to the throne. The narrator's judgment is unequivocal: lo na'asah khen le-khol mamlakhot ('nothing like this was made in any kingdom'). This is presented as globally unique. The throne is a political theology in furniture — Israel's tribes as lions supporting the ascent to Davidic kingship, all wrought in ivory and gold.
21. The phrase zahav sagur ('enclosed gold, pure gold') refers to the highest grade of refined gold. The statement ein kesef ('no silver') does not mean silver was absent but that it was too common to use for royal vessels. The narrator's claim that silver lo nechshav li-me'umah ('was not reckoned as anything') in Solomon's day is either literal (silver was so abundant it lost value) or hyperbolic (expressing the extravagance of the court). Either way, the effect is the same: Solomon's wealth has inverted normal values.
22. The 'ships of Tarshish' (oni Tarshish) may refer to ships bound for Tarshish (likely Tartessus in Spain) or, more broadly, to large ocean-going vessels capable of long voyages. The three-year round trip indicates these were distant expeditions. The cargo list — gold, silver, ivory (shenhabbim), apes (qofim), and peacocks (tukkiyim) — represents luxury goods from multiple regions, suggesting a trade network spanning the Mediterranean and Indian Ocean. The apes and peacocks are exotic display animals, markers of imperial extravagance.
23. The verb vayigdal ('he became great, surpassed') uses the root gadal — Solomon 'grew greater' than every other king. The pairing le-osher u-le-chokhmah ('in wealth and in wisdom') echoes God's promise at Gibeon where both were granted. The narrator confirms: the promise was fulfilled. Yet the juxtaposition — wealth named before wisdom — may carry subtle narrative weight, as wealth will prove to be the more dangerous gift.
24. The phrase mevaqshim et penei Shelomoh ('seeking the face of Solomon') uses the same language elsewhere used for seeking God's face (2 Samuel 21:1, Psalm 27:8). The parallel is theologically charged: the nations come to Solomon as if approaching a divine oracle. The narrator immediately grounds this in its source: asher natan Elohim be-libbo ('which God had placed in his heart') — the wisdom is not Solomon's own but a divine deposit.
25. The word minchato ('his gift, his tribute') can mean a voluntary gift or obligatory tribute — the ambiguity is fitting, as Solomon's visitors occupied a gray zone between admiring pilgrims and tributary vassals. The annual repetition (devar shanah be-shanah, 'the matter of a year in a year') indicates this was a permanent stream of wealth flowing into Jerusalem. The inclusion of horses (susim) in the tribute list foreshadows the troubling horse trade described in verses 28-29.
26. The verb vaye'esof ('he gathered, accumulated') is the key Deuteronomic violation. Deuteronomy 17:16 explicitly commands: 'the king must not acquire many horses for himself.' Solomon's 1,400 chariots and 12,000 horsemen constitute a massive standing army that directly contravenes the Torah's vision of kingship. The narrator records the numbers without explicit condemnation, but the informed reader recognizes the breach.
27. This verse is one of the most striking hyperboles in the Hebrew Bible. Silver — a precious metal — becomes as ubiquitous as roadside stones. Cedar — the luxury timber imported at great cost from Lebanon — becomes as common as the sycamore, a utilitarian tree that grew wild in the Shephelah (the western foothills). The effect is to describe an economy where luxury has become ordinary. The narrator presents this as magnificent, but the theological reader hears Deuteronomy 17:17: 'he must not accumulate large amounts of silver and gold.'
28. The word miqveh is now generally understood as a place name — Kue (Cilicia, in modern southeastern Turkey) — rather than 'linen yarn' as in the KJV tradition. Solomon operated a horse-trading enterprise between Egypt and Anatolia, with Jerusalem as the commercial hub. The phrase mi-Mitsrayim ('from Egypt') is the most damning detail: Deuteronomy 17:16 specifically prohibits the king from sending people 'back to Egypt to get more horses.' Solomon has turned the land of bondage into a supply depot.

29. Solomon was not merely buying horses — he was brokering them. His merchants served as middlemen between Egypt (chariots and horses) and the northern kingdoms (the neo-Hittite states and Aramean kingdoms). The price structure — 600 shekels per chariot, 150 per horse, a 4:1 ratio — suggests standardized international pricing. Solomon had converted Israel's geographic position between Egypt and Mesopotamia into a commercial advantage, profiting from the arms trade. The chapter ends with Solomon as an arms dealer — a far cry from the young king who asked only for wisdom.

11

Summary: *Solomon's foreign wives turn his heart after other gods, and the wisest king in Israel's history becomes its most spectacular theological failure. The chapter opens with a catalog of forbidden marriages — Moabite, Ammonite, Edomite, Sidonian, and Hittite women — and reports that Solomon built high places for Chemosh, Molech, and other deities on the hills around Jerusalem. God responds in anger, telling Solomon the kingdom will be torn from him, though not in his lifetime and not completely — one tribe will remain for David's sake and for Jerusalem's sake. God then raises three adversaries: Hadad the Edomite, who escaped David's massacre as a child and found refuge in Egypt; Rezon son of Eliada, who established a hostile Aramean kingdom in Damascus; and Jeroboam son of Nebat, a capable administrator whom the prophet Ahijah designates as ruler over ten tribes through the dramatic act of tearing a garment into twelve pieces. Solomon tries to kill Jeroboam, who flees to Egypt. Solomon dies after reigning forty years, and his son Rehoboam succeeds him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the most devastating character collapses in Scripture. The man who built God's house now builds houses for Chemosh and Molech within sight of the temple mount. The narrator's repetition of the verb *sur* ('turn away') is relentless — Solomon's heart turned, his wives turned it, he turned from the LORD. The theological architecture is precise: God warned Solomon twice (at Gibeon and after the temple dedication), and Solomon violated the specific condition both times. The raising of adversaries (*satan* in Hebrew, meaning 'opponent') is presented as God's judicial response — each adversary is divinely commissioned. The Ahijah oracle (verses 29-39) is one of the most dramatic prophetic acts in Kings, directly echoing Samuel's words to Saul when his garment was torn (1 Samuel 15:27-28). The same God who tears garments tears kingdoms.*

Translation Friction: *The narrator's statement that Solomon loved 'many foreign women' (verse 1) raises the question of whether the sin was intermarriage itself or the idolatry it produced. Deuteronomy 7:3-4 prohibits intermarriage specifically because 'they will turn your children away from following me to serve other gods' — the prohibition is functional, aimed at preventing apostasy. We render the text to preserve this causal link: the wives turned his heart. The phrase in verse 4 — 'his heart was not fully devoted to the LORD his God as the heart of David his father had been' — creates tension with David's own sins (Bathsheba, the census). The narrator is not claiming David was sinless but that David's heart never divided its ultimate allegiance. David sinned within the covenant; Solomon sinned against it. The *satan* language in verses 14, 23, and 25 is particularly important: this is not the Satan of later theology but the Hebrew common noun meaning 'adversary, opponent.' Each *satan* is a human political enemy raised by God as a judicial instrument.*

Connections: *Solomon's fall directly fulfills the conditional warning of 9:6-9. The building of high places for Chemosh and Molech connects to Josiah's reforms in 2 Kings 23:13, where these same installations are finally demolished — over three centuries later. The tearing of the garment (verse 30) echoes 1 Samuel 15:27-28 (Saul's kingdom torn away) and will echo forward to 2 Kings 2:12 (Elijah's mantle). The Jeroboam oracle anticipates the actual division in chapter 12 and establishes the theological framework for the entire divided monarchy narrative. Ahijah's promise to Jeroboam — conditional on obedience (verse 38) — mirrors God's promise to Solomon, and Jeroboam will fail the same test. The mention of Hadad fleeing to Egypt as a child reverses the exodus pattern: Israel's enemies now find refuge in the land from which Israel was rescued.*

¹King Solomon loved many foreign women — besides Pharaoh's daughter — Moabite, Ammonite, Edomite, Sidonian, and Hittite women. ²from the nations about which the LORD had told the Israelites, "You must not intermarry with them, and they must not intermarry with you, because they will certainly turn your hearts after their gods." Solomon clung to these women in love. ³He had seven hundred wives of royal birth and three hundred concubines, and his wives turned his heart

away. ⁴When Solomon grew old, his wives turned his heart after other gods, and his heart was not fully devoted to the LORD his God as the heart of David his father had been. ⁵Solomon followed Ashtoreth, the goddess of the Sidonians, and Milcom, the abomination of the Ammonites. ⁶Solomon did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD and did not fully follow the LORD as David his father had done. ⁷At that time Solomon built a high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, on the hill east of Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the Ammonites. ⁸He did the same for all his foreign wives, who burned incense and offered sacrifices to their gods. ⁹The LORD was angry with Solomon because his heart had turned away from the LORD, the God of Israel, who had appeared to him twice. ¹⁰He had commanded him specifically about this — not to follow other gods. But Solomon did not keep what the LORD commanded. ¹¹So the LORD said to Solomon, "Because you have done this and have not kept my covenant and my statutes that I commanded you, I will tear the kingdom away from you — absolutely tear it away — and give it to your servant. ¹²However, I will not do it in your lifetime, for the sake of David your father. I will tear it from the hand of your son. ¹³Yet I will not tear away the entire kingdom. I will give one tribe to your son — for the sake of David my servant and for the sake of Jerusalem, which I have chosen." ¹⁴Then the LORD raised up an adversary against Solomon — Hadad the Edomite, from the royal family of Edom. ¹⁵When David was in Edom, Joab the commander of the army had gone up to bury the dead and struck down every male in Edom. ¹⁶Joab and the entire Israelite army had stayed there for six months until they had cut off every male in Edom. ¹⁷Hadad had fled, along with some Edomite men from his father's household, to escape to Egypt. Hadad was a small child at the time. ¹⁸They set out from Midian and went to Paran, where they gathered more men, and then went on to Egypt, to Pharaoh king of Egypt. Pharaoh gave Hadad a house, provided food for him, and granted him land. ¹⁹Hadad found great favor in Pharaoh's eyes, so much so that Pharaoh gave him a wife — the sister of his own wife, the sister of Queen Tahpenes. ²⁰Tahpenes' sister bore him a son named Genubath, and Tahpenes herself weaned the child inside Pharaoh's palace. So Genubath grew up in Pharaoh's household among Pharaoh's own sons. ²¹When Hadad heard in Egypt that David had slept with his fathers and that Joab the commander of the army had died, Hadad said to Pharaoh, "Let me go, so I can return to my own country." ²²Pharaoh said to him, "What have you lacked here with me that you are now seeking to return to your own country?" He answered, "Nothing — but please, let me go." ²³God also raised up another adversary against Solomon — Rezon son of Eliada, who had fled from his master Hadadezer king of Zobah. ²⁴He gathered men around him and became the leader of a raiding band after David's slaughter of Zobah's forces. They went to Damascus, settled there, and Rezon ruled in Damascus. ²⁵He was an adversary to Israel throughout Solomon's reign, in addition to the trouble Hadad caused. He despised Israel and ruled over Aram. ²⁶Jero boam son of Nebat, an Ephraimite from Zeredah — his mother was a widow named Zeruah — was a servant of Solomon, and he raised his hand against the king. ²⁷This is the account of why he raised his hand against the king: Solomon was building the Millo and closing the gap in the wall of the city of David his father. ²⁸Jeroboam was a capable and energetic man. When Solomon noticed the young man's industriousness, he put him in charge of all the labor force of the house of Joseph. ²⁹Around that time, as Jeroboam was leaving Jerusalem, the prophet Ahijah of Shiloh met him on the road. Ahijah was wearing a new cloak, and the two of them were alone in the open country. ³⁰Ahijah seized the new cloak he was wearing and tore it into twelve pieces. ³¹He said to Jeroboam, "Take ten pieces for yourself, because this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'I am about to tear the kingdom from the hand of Solomon and give you ten tribes. ³²But he will have one tribe, for the sake of my servant David and for the sake of Jerusalem, the city I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel.' ³³This is because they have abandoned me and bowed down to Ashtoreth the goddess of the Sidonians, to Chemosh the god of Moab, and to Milcom the god of the Ammonites. They have not walked in my ways, doing what is right in my eyes and keeping my statutes and my judgments, as David his father did. ³⁴Yet I will not take the whole kingdom from his hand. I will let him remain as leader all the days of his life, for the sake of David my servant, whom I chose, who kept my commands and my statutes. ³⁵But I will take the kingdom from the hand of his son and give it to you — the ten tribes. ³⁶But to his son I will give one tribe, so that David my servant may always have a lamp before me in Jerusalem, the city I have chosen for myself to place my name there. ³⁷As for you, I will take you, and you will rule over everything your soul desires, and you will be king over Israel. ³⁸If you listen to everything I command you and walk in my ways and do what is right in my eyes, keeping my statutes and my commands as David my servant did, then I will be with you. I will build you an enduring house, just as I built for David, and

I will give you Israel. ³⁹I will humble the descendants of David because of this, but not for all time." ⁴⁰Solomon tried to kill Jeroboam, but Jeroboam fled to Egypt, to Shishak king of Egypt, and remained in Egypt until Solomon's death. ⁴¹The rest of Solomon's acts — everything he did and his wisdom — are they not written in the Book of the Acts of Solomon? ⁴²Solomon's reign in Jerusalem over all Israel lasted forty years. ⁴³Solomon slept with his fathers and was buried in the city of David his father. His son Rehoboam reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb ahav ('loved') is the same used for God's love of Israel (Deuteronomy 7:8) and for the ideal of loving God (Deuteronomy 6:5). Solomon redirected the capacity for covenantal love toward women from the very nations God had placed under prohibition. The word nokhriyyot ('foreign women') is the technical term for women from outside the covenant community — the same word used in Proverbs (attributed to Solomon!) to warn young men against the 'foreign woman' (ishshah nokhriyyah). The list of nations matches the Deuteronomic ban list almost exactly.
2. The verb yattu ('they will turn') uses the root natah, meaning to bend, incline, or divert — the same root used for bending a path or diverting a stream. The wives did not destroy Solomon's faith in a single blow but bent it gradually, like water redirecting a channel. The verb davaq ('clung') is the same word used in Genesis 2:24 for a man clinging to his wife — marital intimacy language — and in Deuteronomy 10:20 for clinging to God. Solomon clung to the wrong object.
3. The numbers — 700 wives, 300 concubines, 1,000 total — may be precise or may use round numbers to signify royal excess. Many of these marriages were diplomatic alliances sealed by marriage covenant, a standard Near Eastern practice. The word sarot ('princesses, women of noble birth') indicates these were political marriages with foreign royal houses. But the narrator's verdict is terse and damning: vayattu nashav et libbo ('his wives turned his heart'). The heart (lev) that God gave wisdom to hear (3:9) has now been turned by human love away from divine loyalty.
4. The comparison with David (kilevav David aviv, 'as the heart of David his father') is the narrator's standard of measurement throughout Kings. Every subsequent king will be measured against David. The claim is not that David was sinless — he committed adultery and murder — but that David's heart remained shalem, undivided in its ultimate allegiance to the LORD. David repented; Solomon built shrines.
5. The verb vayelehk acharei ('he went after, he followed') is the standard idiom for religious allegiance — walking after a deity. Ashtoreth (a deliberate Hebrew distortion of Astarte, the Phoenician fertility goddess, vocalized with the vowels of boshet, 'shame') was the chief female deity of the Sidonians. Milcom (also known as Molech) was the Ammonite national deity associated with child sacrifice. The word shiqquts ('abomination, detestable thing') is the narrator's theological verdict — not a neutral description but a judgment that this deity is repulsive to the LORD.
6. The phrase vaya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH ('he did the evil in the eyes of the LORD') is the standard condemnation formula that will recur throughout Kings for wicked monarchs. That it is applied to Solomon — the temple builder, the wisdom recipient — is shocking. The verb mille acharei ('filled after' i.e., 'fully followed') uses male' ('to fill') — Solomon's following of God was not full, complete, or filled to capacity. His devotion had gaps, and foreign gods filled them.
7. The word bamah ('high place') was the standard Canaanite worship installation — an elevated platform for sacrifice. That Solomon built one for Chemosh (the Moabite war god who demanded human sacrifice, cf. 2 Kings 3:27) and Molech (associated with child sacrifice, Leviticus 18:21, 20:2-5) on the hill facing Jerusalem means these altars were visible from the temple mount. The builder of God's house erected rival shrines within sight of it. The phrase al penei Yerushalayim ('on the face of/opposite Jerusalem') likely refers to the Mount of Olives.
8. The phrase ve-khen asah ('and likewise he did') indicates that Chemosh and Molech were not isolated cases — Solomon built worship installations for every foreign deity represented among his wives. The verbs maqtirov ('burning incense') and mezabhot ('sacrificing') describe active, ongoing worship, not a single lapse. The feminine plural forms indicate the wives themselves were the primary worshipers, but Solomon built the infrastructure that enabled it — and verse 5 confirms he himself participated.
9. The phrase YHWH Elohei Yisra'el ('the LORD, the God of Israel') uses the full covenant title — this is not a generic deity but the specific God who chose Israel, liberated them from Egypt, and established his name in the temple Solomon built. The turning is from this God. The Niphal nir'ah ('he appeared, he let himself be seen') emphasizes that God initiated both encounters — Solomon did not seek these theophanies; God granted them. The privilege of direct divine revelation makes the apostasy worse, not better.
10. The verb tsivvah ('commanded') appears twice — God commanded, Solomon did not keep the command. The phrase al ha-davar ha-zeh ('concerning this very thing') is pointed: God's warning was not vague or general but addressed precisely the sin Solomon committed. The final clause ve-lo shamar et asher tsivvah YHWH ('he did not keep what the LORD commanded') uses shamar, the covenant-keeping verb that defines Israel's fundamental obligation. Solomon's failure is stated in the simplest possible terms: God spoke; Solomon did not listen.
11. We render the infinitive absolute as 'absolutely tear it away' to capture the intensity without archaic phrasing. The verb qara ('to tear') will be dramatized physically in verse 30 when Ahijah tears the garment. The mention of beriti ('my covenant') frames the punishment as covenant enforcement, not arbitrary divine anger — Solomon broke the terms, and the consequences follow.
12. The phrase le-ma'an David avikha ('for the sake of David your father') introduces a grace note into the judgment: David's faithfulness provides a buffer that delays (but does not prevent) the consequences of Solomon's apostasy. The delay is one generation — Solomon will die with his kingdom intact, but his son will bear the cost. This principle of deferred judgment is a recurring pattern in Kings: the sins of fathers fall on sons (cf. 2 Kings 23:26-27, where Josiah's reforms cannot undo Manasseh's guilt).

13. The 'one tribe' preserved for the Davidic line is Judah (with Benjamin effectively absorbed into it). The two motivations — le-ma'an David ('for David's sake') and le-ma'an Yerushalayim ('for Jerusalem's sake') — establish the dual anchor of the southern kingdom: the Davidic covenant and the chosen city. These two commitments will sustain Judah through centuries of unfaithful kings until the exile finally comes. The word bacharti ('I have chosen') uses the election verb — Jerusalem's status rests on divine choice, not human merit.
14. We render satan as 'adversary' rather than leaving it untranslated to prevent readers from importing the later theological figure of 'Satan' (as developed in Job 1-2, Zechariah 3:1, and especially post-biblical literature) into this passage. The Hebrew here simply means 'opponent' — a person set in opposition to Solomon by divine action.
15. The phrase vayyakh kol zakhar ('he struck down every male') describes a genocidal campaign — Joab attempted to exterminate the male Edomite population. This is the backstory that produced Hadad's hatred of Israel. The verb leqabber ('to bury') the slain suggests the campaign was already over; Joab was conducting cleanup operations. David's conquest of Edom (2 Samuel 8:13-14) was one of his most brutal military achievements, and it sowed the seeds that now bear fruit as divine punishment against Solomon.
16. Six months of systematic killing — the narrator provides the duration to emphasize the thoroughness and horror of the campaign. The verb hikhrit ('cut off') uses karat, the covenant-severance verb, here applied to human lives. The parenthetical nature of this information (explaining why Hadad fled) reveals that David's old victories are now generating new enemies for Solomon. The consequences of empire extend across generations.
17. The phrase na'ar qatan ('a small boy, a young child') makes Hadad a sympathetic figure — a child refugee from genocide, carried to safety by loyal servants. That Egypt provides refuge to someone fleeing Israelite violence inverts the exodus pattern: Egypt is now the house of safety, and Israel is the oppressor from whom people flee. The narrator makes no effort to diminish Hadad's legitimate grievance — David's army tried to exterminate his people.
18. The route — Midian to Paran to Egypt — traces the southern wilderness corridor. Pharaoh's threefold provision (bayit/house, lechem/food, erets/land) mirrors the basic needs of any refugee. That a pharaoh shelters an Edomite prince against Israel is a political investment — Egypt maintains leverage against Solomon by harboring his enemies. The same pattern will repeat with Jeroboam in verse 40.
19. The phrase matsa chen be-einei ('found favor in the eyes of') is the same expression used of Joseph in Egypt (Genesis 39:4) and of Moses before God (Exodus 33:17). Hadad's favor with Pharaoh mirrors Israel's own Egyptian experience — another reversal of the exodus pattern. Marriage into the royal family made Hadad a brother-in-law of Pharaoh, giving him political standing and military potential. The name Tahpenes (ha-gevirah, 'the queen mother' or 'the great lady') indicates she held significant court influence.
20. Genubath ('stolen one' or 'theft') is raised as a member of the Egyptian royal household — an Edomite prince with Egyptian royal connections. The detail that Tahpenes herself weaned the child indicates personal involvement from the queen mother, not merely institutional care. Hadad's family is fully integrated into the Egyptian court, providing both motive and means for future hostility against Israel.
21. Hadad waited for both David and Joab to die — the two men responsible for the Edomite genocide. Their deaths removed the immediate military threat and opened a window for return. The verb shakhav ('lay down, rested') is the standard euphemism for death in Kings. Hadad's request to return to 'my own country' (artsi) implies a claim to political authority — he is going home to reclaim what was taken.
22. Pharaoh's question reveals reluctance to lose a political asset. The exchange is human and poignant: Hadad has been well treated, but the pull of homeland and the drive for vengeance outweigh comfort. The infinitive absolute shalle'ach teshallecheni ('sending you must send me') conveys Hadad's urgency — he insists on departure. His return to Edom will create a hostile southern border for Solomon, the first crack in the empire.
23. The second satan is Rezon, a fugitive from the Aramean kingdom of Zobah that David had defeated (2 Samuel 8:3-8). Like Hadad, Rezon is a survivor of David's wars who turns against David's son. The pattern is deliberate: God raises adversaries from the wreckage of David's conquests. The verb barach ('fled') connects Rezon to Hadad — both are fugitives who become kings.
24. Rezon's trajectory — from refugee to bandit captain (sar gedud) to king in Damascus — mirrors David's own rise from fugitive to king. The narrator may intend the parallel. Damascus under Rezon becomes the Aramean kingdom that will plague Israel for centuries, culminating in the wars of 1 Kings 20 and 2 Kings 5-8. David's victory over Zobah did not eliminate the Aramean threat but merely scattered it into a form that reassembled as a more dangerous enemy.
25. The third and final use of satan in this chapter — Rezon was a satan 'all the days of Solomon' (kol yemei Shelomoh). The verb vayaqots ('he felt loathing, he was disgusted') expresses visceral hatred. The narrator sums up: Rezon hated Israel, ruled Aram (Syria), and harassed Solomon's northern border throughout his reign. Combined with Hadad on the south, Solomon's empire was under pressure from two divinely appointed adversaries who eroded the peace (shalom) that defined his early reign.
26. The narrator introduces Jeroboam with precise social location: tribal affiliation (Ephraim, the dominant northern tribe), hometown (Zeredah), family status (son of a widow — lower social standing), and political position (eved, 'servant' of Solomon). The phrase vayyarem yad ba-melek ('he raised his hand against the king') is the standard idiom for rebellion. Jeroboam is the third adversary, but unlike Hadad and Rezon, he comes from within Israel itself.
27. The connection between the Millo construction project and Jeroboam's rebellion is that Solomon used forced labor (corvée) for these building projects. Jeroboam, as a labor overseer (verse 28), witnessed firsthand the oppression of northern workers in Solomon's southern construction projects. The word perets ('breach, gap') in the city wall required repair — the physical gap in David's city becomes a metaphor for the political gap about to open in David's kingdom.

- 28.** The phrase *gibbor chayil* ('mighty man of valor/capability') marks Jeroboam as someone of outstanding ability. Solomon promoted him because he was *oseh melakhah* ('a doer of work, industrious'). The irony is bitter: Solomon elevated the very man who would tear the kingdom from his son. The phrase *sevel beit Yosef* ('the labor burden of the house of Joseph') reveals that the northern tribes (collectively called 'Joseph' after the patriarch) bore a heavy labor load for Solomon's southern building projects — a grievance that will erupt in chapter 12.
- 29.** The setting is carefully staged: outside Jerusalem (away from Solomon's surveillance), on the road (a liminal space of transition), with a new garment (*salmah chadashah* — the newness matters because the garment is about to be destroyed as a prophetic sign), and alone (*levaddam* — no witnesses, making this a private divine commission). Ahijah is from Shiloh, the old religious center where the tabernacle once stood — his very origin carries the weight of pre-monarchic Israelite tradition.
- 30.** The prophetic sign-act is violent and dramatic: Ahijah grabs his own new garment and rips it into twelve pieces representing the twelve tribes. The verb *vayyiqra'eha* ('he tore it') uses *qara* — the same verb God used in verse 11 ('I will tear the kingdom'). The prophet enacts in cloth what God will accomplish in politics. The new garment matters symbolically: the unified kingdom, like the cloak, was whole and fresh — and now it is torn beyond repair. This echoes 1 Samuel 15:27-28, where Saul's torn garment signaled his lost kingdom.
- 31.** The distribution — ten tribes to Jeroboam, implying two remain (Judah and Benjamin, though only one is explicitly mentioned in verse 32) — establishes the proportions of the coming division. The phrase *mi-yad Shelomoh* ('from the hand of Solomon') continues the hand imagery: Solomon raised his hand in building (verse 27), Jeroboam raised his hand in rebellion (verse 26), and God now tears the kingdom from Solomon's hand. The mathematics of ten plus one (verse 32) appears to leave one tribe unaccounted for — various solutions have been proposed, but the narrator does not resolve the discrepancy.
- 32.** The two anchors of the surviving southern kingdom are restated: David and Jerusalem. The phrase *avdi David* ('my servant David') is a title of honor — David retains the status of faithful servant even after death, and his faithfulness buys time for his descendants. The verb *bacharti* ('I have chosen') is the divine election verb — Jerusalem's status is not negotiable because God's choice stands even when Solomon's loyalty does not.
- 33.** The plural 'they' (*azavuni*, 'they abandoned me') is significant — God holds not just Solomon but the court and nation responsible. The list of deities repeats verses 5 and 7, hammering the specifics of the apostasy. The David comparison appears for the fourth time in this chapter — the narrator cannot discuss Solomon's failure without measuring it against David's standard. The phrase *la'asot ha-yashar be-einai* ('to do what is right in my eyes') establishes the standard that will judge every king in the rest of the narrative.
- 34.** The word *nasi* ('prince, leader, elevated one') rather than *melekh* ('king') is a subtle demotion — Solomon retains power but the terminology shifts. David's faithfulness (*shamar mitsvotai ve-chuqqotai*, 'he kept my commands and my statutes') is the protective shield that delays the full consequences of Solomon's unfaithfulness. God's loyalty to David overrides his anger at Solomon — but only temporarily.
- 35.** The transfer is now explicitly stated to Jeroboam: from Solomon's son (Rehoboam, though unnamed here) to Jeroboam. The phrase *et aseret ha-shevatim* ('the ten tribes') specifies the scope. The divine speech moves from explanation (why) to implementation (how) to timing (when) — a complete sentence of judgment delivered through a prophet to the instrument of its execution.
- 36.** The word *nir* ('lamp') is a powerful metaphor for dynastic survival — as long as a lamp burns, the Davidic line persists. The lamp is not for the king's benefit but 'before me' (*lefanai*) — it burns in God's presence, in God's chosen city. The phrase *lasum shemi sham* ('to place my name there') echoes 9:3 and anchors the temple theology: Jerusalem is where God's name dwells, and the Davidic lamp illuminates that dwelling.
- 37.** The promise to Jeroboam — *melekh al Yisra'el* ('king over Israel') — is the full royal title. The phrase *be-khol asher te'avveh nafshekha* ('over everything your soul desires') is generous but also ominous: desire (*ta'avah*) is the very thing that destroyed Solomon. The offer mirrors God's original offer to Solomon at Gibeon, and the question is whether Jeroboam will handle it any better.
- 38.** The conditional promise to Jeroboam exactly replicates the structure of the Davidic covenant offer: obedience yields an enduring dynasty (*bayit ne'eman*, 'a faithful/reliable house'). The phrase *ka-asher asah David* ('as David did') sets the same standard. God is offering Jeroboam the identical opportunity Solomon received — and Solomon squandered. The historical reader knows Jeroboam will fail even more dramatically, building golden calves at Dan and Bethel (chapter 12). The repeated offer and repeated failure is the tragic rhythm of the entire Kings narrative.
- 39.** The verb *a'anneh* ('I will humble, afflict') uses *anah* — the same root used for Israel's affliction in Egypt (Exodus 1:11-12). David's line will be diminished but not destroyed. The final phrase *akh lo kol ha-yamim* ('but not for all the days' i.e., 'but not permanently') is a crack of hope in the judgment: the humiliation is temporary. This becomes the theological basis for messianic expectation — the Davidic line is humbled but will eventually be restored.
- 40.** Solomon's response to the prophetic oracle is not repentance but attempted murder — the same response Saul had to David's anointing. The pattern recurs: the reigning king tries to eliminate the divinely chosen successor. Jeroboam flees to Shishak (Pharaoh Shoshenq I), the same pharaoh who will later invade Judah and strip the temple of its gold (14:25-26). Egypt again serves as a refuge for those fleeing Israelite kings — the exodus pattern continues to invert.
- 41.** The formulaic closing reference to the 'Book of the Acts of Solomon' (*sefer divrei Shelomoh*) cites a now-lost source document. This is the standard Kings closing formula that will recur for nearly every monarch. The mention of 'his wisdom' (*chokhmato*) in the closing summary is poignant — the narrator remembers Solomon's wisdom even as the chapter has documented its catastrophic abandonment.
- 42.** Forty years — the same length as David's reign (2 Samuel 5:4) and the wilderness wandering. The number forty carries symbolic weight in Hebrew narrative, often marking a complete period of testing or rule. Solomon's forty years match his father's, but the outcomes could not be more different.

David left a united kingdom and a chosen heir; Solomon leaves a divided kingdom and a foolish son.

43. The standard death-and-succession formula closes Solomon's reign: *vayyishkav* ('he slept with his fathers'), *vayyiqqaver* ('he was buried'), *vayyimlokh* ('he reigned'). Solomon is buried in David's city — the city he expanded and adorned but whose spiritual legacy he betrayed. The final name — Rehoboam — introduces the son who will inherit a kingdom already sentenced to division. The chapter ends as it must: death, burial, and a succession that will immediately unravel.

12

Summary: *Rehoboam travels to Shechem for his coronation, and all Israel gathers to negotiate terms. Jeroboam, returned from Egypt, leads the northern delegation in requesting relief from Solomon's heavy labor and taxation. Rehoboam consults two groups of advisors: the elders who served Solomon counsel gentleness, while the young men who grew up with Rehoboam counsel harshness. Rehoboam follows the young men's advice and threatens to increase the burden beyond what his father imposed. The northern tribes immediately revolt, stoning Rehoboam's labor chief Adoram to death and declaring independence with the ancient cry 'What share do we have in David?' Rehoboam flees to Jerusalem and musters an army to suppress the rebellion, but the prophet Shemaiah intervenes with a divine message: 'This thing is from me.' The chapter ends with Jeroboam establishing his kingdom in the north and building two golden calves — one at Bethel and one at Dan — telling the people, 'Here are your gods, Israel, who brought you up out of Egypt.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter narrates the single most consequential political event in Israel's history after the exodus: the permanent division of the united monarchy. The narrator presents it as simultaneously a human political failure (Rehoboam's foolish counsel) and a divine act (verse 15: 'the turn of events was from the LORD'). The Shechem setting is loaded — this is where Joshua renewed the covenant (Joshua 24), where Abimelech tried to establish kingship (Judges 9), and where the northern tribes have always held their assemblies. Rehoboam's decision to hold his coronation at Shechem rather than Jerusalem already signals the fragility of northern loyalty. The chapter's structure mirrors the wisdom literature Solomon was famous for: two paths of counsel are presented, and the king chooses the foolish one. The golden calves at the end (verses 28-30) are an explicit echo of Exodus 32 — the same words Aaron spoke ('These are your gods, Israel, who brought you up from Egypt') are placed in Jeroboam's mouth. The narrator makes the parallel unmistakable: the northern kingdom begins exactly where Israel's first great apostasy occurred.*

Translation Friction: *The narrator's statement in verse 15 that 'the turn of events was from the LORD' creates a theological tension: is Rehoboam morally responsible for a decision God orchestrated? The text holds both realities without resolving them — Rehoboam chose badly, and God was behind the outcome. We render *sibbah me-im YHWH* ('a turning from the LORD') to preserve the divine causation without eliminating human agency. The old men's counsel (verse 7) to 'be a servant to this people' raises the question of whether their advice was genuinely wise or merely expedient — we treat it as genuinely wise because it aligns with the Deuteronomic vision of kingship as service (Deuteronomy 17:14-20). Jeroboam's golden calves (verse 28) present a translation challenge: the word *elohim* can mean 'God' or 'gods,' and Jeroboam may have intended the calves as pedestals for the LORD rather than as rival deities. However, the narrator's use of the Exodus 32 formula condemns the act regardless of Jeroboam's intention.*

Connections: *The cry 'What share do we have in David?' (verse 16) echoes Sheba son of Bichri's rebellion in 2 Samuel 20:1 — the same secessionist slogan, proving that northern resentment of Davidic rule predated Solomon's excesses. The stoning of Adoram connects to the forced labor (*mas*) system described in 9:15-22 — the labor chief becomes the lightning rod for accumulated grievances. Shemaiah's oracle ('this thing is from me') aligns with Ahijah's oracle in chapter 11 — two prophets confirm the same divine plan from different angles. The golden calves at Dan and Bethel deliberately evoke Exodus 32 and will become the defining sin of the northern kingdom throughout Kings, cited in the condemnation of every northern monarch ('he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat'). Jesus' teaching that 'whoever would be great among you must be your servant' (Mark 10:43) echoes the elders' counsel that the king should be a servant to the people.*

¹Rehoboam went to Shechem, because all Israel had come to Shechem to make him king. ²When Jeroboam son of Nebat heard about it — he was still in Egypt, where he had fled from King Solomon — ³they sent for him and summoned him. Jeroboam and the whole assembly of Israel came and said to Rehoboam: ⁴"Your father made our yoke harsh. Lighten the harsh labor your father imposed and the heavy yoke he placed on us, and we will serve you." ⁵He told them, "Go away for three days, then come back to me." So the people left. ⁶King Rehoboam consulted the elders who had served in the presence of his father Solomon while he was still alive. He asked, "How do you advise me to answer this people?" ⁷They said to him, "If you will be a servant to this people today — if you serve them and respond to them and speak good words to them — they will be your servants for all time." ⁸But he abandoned the counsel of the elders that they had given him and instead consulted the young men who had grown up with him, who now attended him. ⁹He said to them, "What do you advise? How should we answer this people who have said to me, 'Lighten the yoke your father placed on us'?" ¹⁰The young men who had grown up with him said, "This is what you should tell these people who said to you, 'Your father made our yoke heavy; lighten it for us.' Say to them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. ¹¹My father loaded a heavy yoke on you, but I will add to your yoke. My father disciplined you with whips — I will discipline you with scorpions.'" ¹²Jeroboam and all the people came back to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king had said: "Return to me on the third day." ¹³The king answered the people harshly. He abandoned the counsel of the elders who had advised him ¹⁴and spoke to them according to the counsel of the young men. He said, "My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add to your yoke. My father disciplined you with whips — I will discipline you with scorpions." ¹⁵The king did not listen to the people, because this turn of events was from the LORD, to fulfill the word the LORD had spoken through Ahijah of Shiloh to Jeroboam son of Nebat. ¹⁶When all Israel saw that the king refused to listen to them, the people answered the king: "What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! To your tents, Israel! Now look after your own house, David!" And Israel went home. ¹⁷But as for the Israelites living in the towns of Judah, Rehoboam continued to reign over them. ¹⁸King Rehoboam sent Adoram, who was in charge of the forced labor, but all Israel stoned him to death. King Rehoboam himself barely managed to mount his chariot and flee to Jerusalem. ¹⁹So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day. ²⁰When all Israel heard that Jeroboam had returned, they summoned him to the assembly and made him king over all Israel. No one followed the house of David except the tribe of Judah alone. ²¹When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled the entire house of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin — one hundred and eighty thousand chosen warriors — to fight against the house of Israel and restore the kingdom to Rehoboam son of Solomon. ²²But the word of God came to Shemaiah the man of God: ²³"Say to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to the entire house of Judah and Benjamin, and to the rest of the people: ²⁴"This is what the LORD says: You must not march up and fight against your brothers, the Israelites. Every man go home, because this thing has come from me.'" They listened to the word of the LORD and turned back, as the LORD had directed. ²⁵Jeroboam fortified Shechem in the hill country of Ephraim and made it his residence. He then went out from there and fortified Penuel. ²⁶Jeroboam thought to himself, "The kingdom will now return to the house of David. ²⁷If this people continues going up to offer sacrifices at the house of the LORD in Jerusalem, their hearts will turn back to their master, to Rehoboam king of Judah. They will kill me and return to Rehoboam king of Judah." ²⁸So the king took counsel and made two golden calves. He said to the people, "You have gone up to Jerusalem long enough! Here are your gods, Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt!" ²⁹He placed one in Bethel and the other in Dan. ³⁰And this became a sin. The people went to worship before the one as far as Dan. ³¹He also built shrines on the high places and appointed priests from among the general population who were not Levites. ³²Jeroboam established a festival in the eighth month, on the fifteenth day of the month, like the festival in Judah, and he went up to the altar. He did this at Bethel, sacrificing to the calves he had made, and he stationed at Bethel the priests of the high places he had appointed. ³³He went up to the altar he had made at Bethel on the fifteenth day of the eighth month — the month he had invented from his own heart. He established a festival for the Israelites and went up to the altar to burn incense.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The choice of Shechem rather than Jerusalem is immediately significant. Shechem was the traditional northern assembly point — located in Ephraim's territory, it was where Joshua ratified the covenant (Joshua 24) and where Abimelech's failed kingship was based (Judges 9). By going to Shechem, Rehoboam acknowledges that northern allegiance must be earned, not assumed. The verb *lehamlikh* ('to make him king') is the Hiphil of *malakh* — the people's active role in 'causing him to reign' indicates that Israelite kingship required popular consent, not merely dynastic succession.
2. The parenthetical reminder of Jeroboam's Egyptian exile connects this chapter directly to 11:40. Jeroboam's return from Egypt to lead a liberation movement against an oppressive king creates an exodus typology — though the narrator will show that Jeroboam is no Moses.
3. The phrase *kol qahal Yisra'el* ('the whole assembly of Israel') is a formal, cultic term — this is not a mob but a constituted national assembly with the authority to negotiate terms of kingship. Jeroboam's leadership of the delegation shows he has already emerged as the northern spokesman, fulfilling Ahijah's prophecy even before the formal break.
4. The word *ol* ('yoke') is agricultural imagery — an ox under a yoke serves its master. The people describe themselves as draft animals under Solomon's regime. The adjectives *hiqshah* ('made harsh') and *ha-kaved* ('the heavy') use the root *k-v-d* — the same root as *kavod* ('glory'). Solomon's glory was built on their heavy burden. The conditional offer *ve-na'avdekka* ('and we will serve you') is a negotiating position: loyalty in exchange for relief. This is the language of covenant negotiation between king and people.
5. The three-day delay is standard diplomatic protocol — time for consultation and deliberation. Rehoboam does not reject the petition outright, which initially suggests he is taking it seriously. The brevity of the verse creates narrative tension: the people depart and wait, and the reader waits with them to see which counsel the king will follow.
6. The phrase *bihyoto chai* ('while he was still alive') underscores that these elders had direct experience with Solomon's governance. They knew what worked and what generated resentment. Rehoboam's willingness to consult them first suggests he was not inherently foolish — he asked the right people first. The tragedy is that he asked but did not listen.
7. The elders' counsel contains a revolutionary theology of kingship: *im ha-yom tihyeh eved la-am ha-zeh* ('if today you become a servant to this people'). The king must serve before being served. The word *eved* ('servant') applied to the king inverts the expected hierarchy — the ruler serves the ruled. The promise is reciprocal: *ve-hayu lekha avadim kol ha-yamim* ('they will be your servants for all time'). Service begets loyalty. The elders understand that authority maintained by generosity outlasts authority imposed by force.
8. The verb *vaya'azov* ('he abandoned') is the same word used for Israel 'abandoning' God in 11:33. Rehoboam abandons wisdom as his father abandoned faithfulness. The *yeladim* ('young men, boys') are Rehoboam's age-peers who grew up in the palace — they have privilege without experience, confidence without wisdom. The contrast between *zeqenim* ('elders') and *yeladim* ('youth') structures the entire chapter as a wisdom test that Rehoboam fails.
9. Rehoboam's question to the young men frames the people's request as a problem to be managed rather than a legitimate grievance to be addressed. The pronoun shift is telling — he says 'we' (*nashiv*, 'we should answer'), identifying himself with his peers rather than with his kingdom. The question itself reveals that Rehoboam has already decided against the elders' counsel; he is shopping for the answer he wants to hear.
10. The boast *qotanni avah mi-motnei avi* ('my little finger is thicker than my father's waist') is crude masculine bravado. The word *qotanni* likely means 'my little finger' (though some read it as a more vulgar anatomical reference, which would intensify the insult). The word *motnayim* ('loins, waist') is the center of a man's strength. The young men advise Rehoboam to assert his masculinity by claiming to be more powerful than Solomon — a ludicrous claim from someone who has yet to accomplish anything.
11. The escalation from *shotim* ('whips') to *aqrabim* ('scorpions') is from painful to agonizing. 'Scorpions' likely refers to barbed whips or multi-tailed lashes with metal tips — instruments of torture, not discipline. The verb *yissar* ('to discipline, chastise') is from the same root as *musar* ('instruction, correction') — the language of education perverted into the language of domination. The young men's counsel is a masterclass in how to lose a kingdom: maximize threat, minimize empathy, substitute intimidation for wisdom.
12. The third day arrives — the day of decision. The people honored the king's request for time, demonstrating their good faith. They came as instructed (*ka-asher dibber ha-melek*, 'as the king had spoken'), willing to receive whatever answer the king gave. The repetition of 'the third day' (*ba-yom ha-shelishi*) twice in one verse builds suspense.
13. The adverb *qashah* ('harshly, roughly') sets the tone before the content is even delivered. The narrator repeats *vaya'azov* ('he abandoned') — the same verb from verse 8. The abandonment is now enacted, not merely decided. The double notation (harsh answer + abandoned counsel) ensures the reader understands this was a choice, not an accident. Rehoboam had wisdom available and actively rejected it.
14. The phrase *ka-atsat ha-yeladim* ('according to the counsel of the young men') uses *etsah* for the fourth time. Rehoboam repeats the young men's script almost verbatim — he has become a mouthpiece for foolish counsel rather than a king exercising independent judgment. The repetition of the whips-and-scorpions threat from verse 11 is the narrator's way of letting the full weight of the words sink in. The reader hears them twice, just as the northern delegation heard them once.
15. This is one of the most theologically dense verses in Kings. The narrator simultaneously affirms divine sovereignty (the cause was from God) and human responsibility (the king did not listen). We render *sibbah* as 'turn of events' rather than 'cause' to preserve the Hebrew sense of events turning in a particular direction under divine guidance, without implying that God mechanically controlled Rehoboam's mind.

16. The secessionist cry mah lanu cheleq be-David ('what share do we have in David?') and ve-lo nachalah be-ven Yishai ('no inheritance in the son of Jesse') formally renounce the Davidic covenant as far as the northern tribes are concerned. The word cheleq ('share, portion') and nachalah ('inheritance') are land-distribution terms — the north is saying they received nothing from the Davidic arrangement and owe nothing in return. The call le-ohalekha Yisra'el ('to your tents, Israel!') is a military demobilization command — return to your camps, the alliance is over. This exact phrase was used by Sheba son of Bichri in 2 Samuel 20:1 — the same secessionist tradition, revived and now successful.
17. This brief verse marks the formal division: Rehoboam retains only Judah (and the Israelites living within Judah's borders). The phrase vayyimlokh aleihem Rekhav'am ('Rehoboam reigned over them') uses the same verb as verse 1 (lehamlikh, 'to make king'), but the scope has collapsed from 'all Israel' to a single tribal territory. The kingdom promised to David has been reduced by ninety percent in a single day.
18. Sending Adoram — the forced labor administrator — into a crowd that has just revolted over forced labor is either a deliberate provocation or staggering incompetence. The people's response is immediate and lethal: vayyirgemu kol Yisra'el bo even vayyamot ('all Israel stoned him with stone and he died'). Stoning is the covenant penalty for capital offenses (Deuteronomy 17:5) — the people treat the labor chief as a criminal. The verb hit'ammets ('he exerted himself, struggled') suggests Rehoboam's escape was frantic and undignified — the new king flees his own coronation.
19. The verb vayyifsh'u ('they rebelled, they transgressed') uses pasha, the word for covenant rebellion — the most serious category of sin in Hebrew, denoting willful, deliberate breach of an agreement. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') indicates the narrator is writing at a time when the division still exists — the break was permanent. The narrator uses beit David ('the house of David') rather than 'the house of Solomon,' placing the rupture in dynastic rather than personal terms.
20. The people vayamlikhu oto ('they caused him to reign') — the same verb used in verse 1 for Rehoboam's intended coronation. There are now two kings and two coronations. The phrase lo hayah acharei veit David zulati shevet Yehudah levaddo ('no one followed the house of David except the tribe of Judah alone') starkly quantifies the loss. The Septuagint and some manuscripts add Benjamin (cf. verse 21), but the Hebrew text here says 'Judah alone' — emphasizing the isolation of the Davidic house.
21. Rehoboam's response to political failure is military force — 180,000 soldiers mustered for civil war. The phrase le-hashiv et ha-melukhah ('to restore the kingdom') shows Rehoboam understood what he had lost and intended to take it back by force. Benjamin's inclusion with Judah (despite verse 20 saying 'Judah alone') reflects Benjamin's geographic and political absorption into the southern kingdom — the small tribe wedged between Judah and Ephraim chose the Davidic side.
22. Shemaiah (shema-yah, 'the LORD has heard') is introduced at the critical moment — as armies are about to march. His title ish ha-Elohim ('man of God') marks him as a prophet with divine authority. The conjunction 'but' (vav at the start) signals the interruption: Rehoboam planned war, but God had other plans.
23. Rehoboam is now titled melekh Yehudah ('king of Judah') rather than 'king of Israel' — God's own speech recognizes the division as accomplished fact. The phrase yeter ha-am ('the rest of the people') likely refers to northern Israelites who had remained in Judah's territory (cf. verse 17). The divine message is addressed to everyone who might fight.
24. The phrase ki me-itti niyah ha-davar ha-zeh ('because from me this thing has happened') is the divine claim of ownership over the division. God himself takes responsibility: the split is not merely the result of Rehoboam's folly but of God's covenant enforcement. The word acheihem ('your brothers') is pointed — the northerners are still brothers, not enemies. God prevents fratricide. The remarkable ending — vayyishme'u ('they listened') — contrasts with Rehoboam's refusal to listen in verse 15. The army obeys the prophet even though the king would not obey the people.
25. The verb banah ('built') here means 'fortified, rebuilt' — Shechem already existed. Jeroboam's choice of Shechem as capital carries the weight of northern Israelite identity: it was Abraham's first stop in Canaan (Genesis 12:6), the burial site of Joseph's bones (Joshua 24:32), and the covenant-renewal site under Joshua. Peniel, east of the Jordan, secured Jeroboam's flank against potential threats from Transjordan and provided a fallback position.
26. The phrase vayomer be-libbo ('he said in his heart') reveals Jeroboam's private reasoning — fear, not faith. Despite Ahijah's prophetic guarantee (11:37-38), Jeroboam does not trust God to sustain the kingdom. His inner monologue (verses 26-27) is a case study in how political fear produces theological compromise. The very king who was given the kingdom by divine promise now acts as though he must secure it by human strategy.
27. Jeroboam's calculation is politically rational: pilgrimage to Jerusalem for the three annual festivals would maintain emotional and religious ties to the south. The verb ve-shav lev ha-am ('the heart of the people will turn back') uses the same turning language that dominated chapter 11 — but now the turning Jeroboam fears is a return to covenant loyalty. He sees the temple as a political threat, which reveals that he understands religion primarily as a tool of state power. The repetition of 'Rehoboam king of Judah' twice in one verse conveys Jeroboam's obsessive fear.
28. The word rav lakhem ('it is too much for you, you have had enough') frames the Jerusalem pilgrimage as an unreasonable burden — the same language of complaint that marked Israel's wilderness rebellions (Numbers 16:3, Deuteronomy 1:6). Jeroboam repackages covenant faithfulness as inconvenience. The golden calves (eglei zahav) may have been bull-shaped pedestals on which the invisible God was thought to stand (as the cherubim served in the Jerusalem temple), but the narrator does not care about Jeroboam's theological intention — the Exodus 32 echo condemns the act.
29. Bethel ('house of God') at the southern border of the northern kingdom and Dan at the northern border created bracketing sanctuaries that encompassed the entire territory. Bethel was already a sacred site — Jacob encountered God there (Genesis 28:10-22). Dan had housed a private shrine since the period of the Judges (Judges 18). Jeroboam did not create worship from nothing; he co-opted existing sacred traditions and redirected them away from Jerusalem. The placement was strategically perfect: northerners going to Jerusalem would pass through Bethel and

could stop there instead.

30. The narrator's verdict is terse and final: *vayehi ha-davar ha-zeh le-chattat* ('this thing became a sin'). The word *chattat* is not merely 'mistake' but 'sin' — a term with sacrificial overtones (*chattat* is also the word for 'sin offering'). The phrase *ad Dan* ('as far as Dan') emphasizes that people traveled the entire length of the kingdom to worship at the northern calf — the new shrines drew real devotion. This single verse establishes the theological framework for the rest of Kings: every northern king will be evaluated against 'the sin of Jeroboam.'
31. Jeroboam's reforms go beyond the calves: he builds *beit bamot* ('a house of high places' — rival sanctuaries) and appoints *miqtsot ha-am* ('from the edges/extremities of the people') as priests — ordinary Israelites, not Levites. The phrase *asher lo hayu mi-benei Levi* ('who were not from the sons of Levi') is the narrator's pointed observation: the entire Levitical priesthood, Israel's ordained worship leadership, was bypassed. Jeroboam created a parallel religious system — new gods, new shrines, new priests.
32. The festival in the eighth month parallels the Feast of Booths (*Sukkot*) in the seventh month (*Leviticus 23:34*) — Jeroboam shifted it by exactly one month, close enough to feel familiar but distinct enough to mark independence from the Jerusalem calendar. The phrase *ke-chag asher bi-Yehudah* ('like the festival in Judah') explicitly acknowledges that this is a copy. The narrator stacks the violations: wrong calves, wrong priests, wrong calendar — a comprehensive alternative religion designed to look enough like the real thing to satisfy the people while cutting every tie to Jerusalem.
33. The devastating phrase *ba-chodesh asher bada' milibbo* ('in the month he fabricated from his own heart') is the narrator's final verdict on Jeroboam's religious system. The verb *bada'* ('to fabricate, to invent, to devise') means to create something from nothing — not revelation but imagination. The phrase *milibbo* ('from his own heart') contrasts with prophetic speech that comes 'from the LORD.' Jeroboam's religion is self-generated, not God-given. The chapter ends with the king standing at a self-built altar, burning incense in a fabricated month, to calves of his own making, attended by priests of his own appointment. Every element is counterfeit. The king who was given the kingdom by God's own word has built a kingdom on his own inventions.

13

Summary: *An unnamed man of God from Judah arrives at Bethel and confronts Jeroboam at the altar, delivering a specific prophecy that a king named Josiah will one day desecrate this high place. The altar splits and Jeroboam's hand withers. Refusing the king's hospitality under divine orders, the man of God departs by a different route. An old prophet in Bethel deceives him into returning, claiming an angel gave counter-instructions. The man of God eats and drinks, violating the LORD's command. A lion kills him on the road but does not touch his donkey or his body. The old prophet retrieves and buries him, asking to be laid beside him when he dies.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the strangest and most troubling chapters in all of Kings. The central tension is a paradox about prophetic authority: God sends a word through a genuine prophet, then an old prophet contradicts that word with a lie, and yet God holds the man of God accountable for believing the lie. The chapter asks a devastating question: if a prophet lies to you in the name of the LORD, are you still responsible for obeying the original word? The answer in this narrative is yes. The original word remains binding regardless of what any subsequent voice claims. The story also introduces the theme that will dominate Kings: prophecy and fulfillment. The man of God names Josiah by name roughly three centuries before his birth (2 Kings 23:15-18), and when Josiah finally arrives, he finds this very tomb and spares it — closing the loop. The lion that kills the man of God but stands guard over the body and the donkey is one of the most uncanny images in the Hebrew Bible. The animal acts against its nature, becoming a sign that this death is divine judgment, not random predation.*

Translation Friction: *The ethical crux of this chapter is the old prophet's lie. He tells the man of God that an angel spoke to him, countermanning God's instructions. The Hebrew narrator flatly states *vekhikesh lo* ('he lied to him'). Yet at the very meal obtained through this deception, the word of the LORD comes through the same old prophet — genuinely this time — to pronounce judgment on the man of God. How can a proven liar become a channel for authentic prophecy in the same scene? The text does not resolve this. It treats prophetic authority as separable from prophetic character. The old prophet's later grief appears genuine, and his request to be buried beside the man of God suggests he recognized the authentic word even as he himself had undermined it. The identity of the man of God is never given. He is *ish ha-elohim* throughout — defined entirely by his function and his failure.*

Connections: The prophecy naming Josiah (verse 2) is fulfilled in 2 Kings 23:15-18, where Josiah burns bones on this altar but spares the tomb of the man of God — one of the longest-range prophecy-fulfillment arcs in the Hebrew Bible. The withering and restoration of Jeroboam's hand recalls Moses' hand turning leprous and being healed (Exodus 4:6-7). The theme of a prophet deceived by another prophet recurs in 1 Kings 22, where the lying spirit enters the prophets of Ahab. Deuteronomy 13:1-5 warns that a prophet who gives signs but leads you astray must be rejected — this chapter dramatizes the cost of failing that test.

¹A man of God came from Judah to Bethel by the word of the LORD, while Jeroboam was standing beside the altar to burn offerings. ²He cried out against the altar by the word of the LORD and said, "Altar, altar! This is what the LORD says: A son will be born to the house of David — Josiah will be his name — and he will sacrifice on you the priests of the high places who burn offerings on you, and human bones will be burned on you." ³He gave a sign that day, saying, "This is the sign the LORD has spoken: the altar will be torn apart and the ashes on it will be poured out." ⁴When King Jeroboam heard the word of the man of God who had cried out against the altar at Bethel, he stretched out his hand from beside the altar and said, "Seize him!" But his hand that he stretched out against him withered, and he could not draw it back to himself. ⁵The altar was torn apart and the ashes poured out from the altar, exactly as the sign the man of God had given by the word of the LORD. ⁶The king responded and said to the man of God, "Please seek the favor of the LORD your God and pray for me, so that my hand may be restored to me." The man of God sought the favor of the LORD, and the king's hand was restored to him and became as it was before. ⁷The king said to the man of God, "Come home with me, eat a meal, and I will give you a gift." ⁸The man of God said to the king, "Even if you gave me half your estate, I would not go with you, nor would I eat food or drink water in this place." ⁹For this is what the LORD commanded me by his word: 'You must not eat food, you must not drink water, and you must not return by the road you came on.'" ¹⁰So he went by a different road and did not return by the road on which he had come to Bethel. ¹¹Now an old prophet was living in Bethel. His son came and told him everything the man of God had done that day at Bethel — the words he had spoken to the king. They told their father everything. ¹²Their father said to them, "Which road did he take?" His sons had seen the road the man of God from Judah had taken. ¹³He said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." They saddled the donkey for him, and he rode out on it. ¹⁴He went after the man of God and found him sitting under a terebinth tree. He said to him, "Are you the man of God who came from Judah?" He answered, "I am." ¹⁵He said to him, "Come home with me and eat a meal." ¹⁶He said, "I cannot go back with you or come with you, and I will not eat food or drink water with you in this place." ¹⁷For the word came to me by the word of the LORD: 'You must not eat food or drink water there. You must not go back the way you came.'" ¹⁸He said to him, "I too am a prophet, just like you, and an angel spoke to me by the word of the LORD, saying, 'Bring him back with you to your house so that he may eat food and drink water.'" He lied to him. ¹⁹So he went back with him and ate food in his house and drank water. ²⁰While they were sitting at the table, the word of the LORD came to the prophet who had brought him back. ²¹He cried out to the man of God who had come from Judah, "This is what the LORD says: Because you defied the mouth of the LORD and did not keep the command that the LORD your God commanded you, ²²but came back and ate food and drank water in the place where he told you, 'Do not eat food and do not drink water' — your body will not come to the tomb of your fathers." ²³After the man of God had eaten and drunk, the old prophet saddled the donkey for him — for the prophet he had brought back. ²⁴He set out, and a lion found him on the road and killed him. His body lay on the road with the donkey standing beside it and the lion standing beside the body. ²⁵People passing by saw the body lying on the road with the lion standing beside the body. They went and reported it in the city where the old prophet lived. ²⁶When the prophet who had brought him back from the road heard it, he said, "It is the man of God who defied the mouth of the LORD. The LORD gave him to the lion, which mauled him and killed him, according to the word of the LORD that he spoke to him." ²⁷He said to his sons, "Saddle the donkey for me." And they saddled it. ²⁸He went and found the body lying on the road with the donkey and the lion standing beside the body. The lion had not eaten the body and had not mauled the donkey. ²⁹The prophet lifted the body of the man of God and laid it on the donkey. He brought it back and came to his own city to mourn and to bury him. ³⁰He laid his body in his own tomb, and they mourned over him, crying, "Alas, my brother!" ³¹After he had buried him, he said to his sons, "When I die, bury me in the tomb where the man of God is buried. Lay my bones beside his bones." ³²For the word he proclaimed by the

word of the LORD against the altar at Bethel and against all the shrines of the high places in the towns of Samaria will certainly come to pass." ³³After this, Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way. He went back to appointing priests for the high places from among all the people — anyone who wanted it, he filled his hands and he became a priest of the high places. ³⁴This became the sin of the house of Jeroboam — the sin that led to its being cut off and wiped out from the face of the earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ish Elohim* ('man of God') is a technical designation for a prophet or holy man empowered by God. Unlike *navi* ('prophet'), which emphasizes speaking, *ish Elohim* emphasizes the person's connection to divine power — signs, wonders, and authoritative action. This figure remains unnamed throughout the chapter, defined solely by his divine commission.
1. Bethel ('house of God') is deeply ironic here. The place Jacob named as a site of genuine encounter with God (Genesis 28:19) has become the location of Jeroboam's rival sanctuary with its golden calf. The man of God comes from Judah — the legitimate worship center — to confront the counterfeit.
2. The doubled vocative *mizbeach mizbeach* ('altar, altar!') follows the Hebrew convention of emphatic address — compare 'Jerusalem, Jerusalem' in later prophetic tradition. The altar is personified as the receptor of illegitimate worship and the future site of its own defilement.
2. The name *Yoshiyahu* (Josiah) means 'the LORD supports' or 'the LORD heals.' Its appearance here as a predictive naming is unique in the Deuteronomistic History. The fulfillment account in 2 Kings 23:15-18 explicitly references this prophecy, and Josiah spares the tomb of the man of God — closing the narrative arc across centuries of text.
3. The word *mofet* ('sign, portent') differs from *ot* ('sign') in that *mofet* typically denotes a wonder that confirms prophetic authority — a visible, immediate proof. The verb *niqua* ('will be torn') uses the *nifal* passive, indicating the altar will be acted upon by a force greater than human hands. The word *deshen* ('fatty ashes') refers to the residue of sacrificial fat mixed with ash — the accumulated evidence of all the offerings burned on this altar will spill out as proof of its illegitimacy.
4. The verb *yavesh* ('dried up, withered') describes the hand becoming rigid and nonfunctional — not amputated but paralyzed in its extended position. Jeroboam's hand is frozen in the very gesture of commanding violence against God's prophet. The physical sign mirrors the spiritual reality: the king who reaches out to suppress God's word finds his reach arrested.
4. The detail *me'al hamizbeach* ('from beside the altar') indicates Jeroboam was still at his post of illegitimate priestly service when he issued the command. He acts as both false priest and hostile king simultaneously.
5. The fulfillment of the immediate sign (altar splits, ashes pour out) authenticates the long-range prophecy about Josiah. This two-stage pattern — near fulfillment confirming far fulfillment — appears throughout the prophetic literature (compare Isaiah 7:14-16 with its immediate and distant horizons). The phrase *bi-dvar YHWH* ('by the word of the LORD') bookends the scene: the man came by this word (v. 1) and the sign was given by this word (v. 5).
6. Jeroboam's plea *chal na et penei YHWH Elohekha* ('please soften the face of the LORD your God') uses the verb *chalah* ('to become weak, to entreat, to soften') with the object *penei* ('face of'). The phrase means to make God's countenance favorable — to turn away his severity. Crucially, Jeroboam says 'your God,' not 'my God' or 'our God.' Even in crisis, he does not claim YHWH as his own.
6. The restoration is complete — *vat-tehi kevarishonah* ('it became as at first') — yet Jeroboam will draw no lasting lesson from the experience. The healing of the hand does not heal the king's religious policy. This pattern of receiving mercy without repentance is characteristic of Jeroboam throughout Kings.
7. The verb *sa'ad* ('to sustain, to refresh with food') and the noun *mattat* ('gift, reward') represent a standard royal offer of patronage. Jeroboam attempts to convert the prophetic encounter into a court transaction — receive a gift, become indebted, soften the message. The offer of hospitality is not merely generous; it is politically strategic.
8. The conditional *im titten li et chatsi beitekha* ('even if you gave me half your house') is a hyperbolic refusal — no amount of royal wealth can override the divine command. The threefold refusal (not go, not eat, not drink) establishes the absolute nature of the prohibition. The phrase *bamaqom hazzeh* ('in this place') designates Bethel as contaminated space — the man of God cannot accept hospitality in a place of illegitimate worship.
9. The divine command has three components: no eating, no drinking, and no returning by the same route. The first two prohibit any social engagement that could be construed as fellowship with Bethel's religious establishment. The third — not returning by the same road — may serve a practical purpose (avoiding pursuit or ambush) but also functions symbolically: the prophet's path must be one-directional, delivering God's word and departing without backward entanglement.
10. The man of God's initial obedience is complete. He has refused the king, refused food and water, and taken a different route. This establishes his faithfulness at the start, which makes his subsequent failure all the more devastating. The narrative emphasis on the route will become critical: it is on this alternate road that the old prophet will find him.
11. The old prophet (*navi zaqen*) is introduced without any indication of whether he is a true or false prophet. He lives in Bethel — the site of Jeroboam's cult — which raises the question of his complicity or silence regarding the religious situation. His sons witnessed the confrontation and report it to

him, setting the stage for his pursuit of the man of God.

12. The old prophet's first question is about the route — *ei zeh haderekh halakh* ('which way did he go?'). His interest is pursuit, not curiosity. The sons' knowledge of the direction makes them unwitting accomplices in what follows.
13. The verb *chavash* ('to saddle, bind, harness') will recur significantly in this chapter — the same donkey-saddling action frames the old prophet's departure to deceive and later the man of God's departure to his death. The repetition creates a narrative rhythm of departure and doom.
14. The man of God is found *yoshev tachat ha-elah* ('sitting under the terebinth'). The terebinth (*elah*) is a large shade tree often associated with sacred sites in the Hebrew Bible (compare the oaks of Mamre, Genesis 18:1). That the man of God has stopped rather than continuing his journey suggests fatigue or rest — he is vulnerable. His simple answer *ani* ('I am') confirms his identity without suspicion.
15. The old prophet's invitation echoes Jeroboam's in verse 7, but without the offer of a gift. It is framed as simple hospitality — *lekhah itti habbaytah ve-ekhol lachem* ('come with me to the house and eat food'). The parallel to the king's rejected offer should have alerted the man of God.
16. The man of God repeats his refusal faithfully, using almost identical language to his response to Jeroboam. The phrase *lo ukhal* ('I cannot') expresses not unwillingness but inability — the divine command has made it impossible. This repetition shows that at this point, the man of God still holds to his original orders.
17. The threefold prohibition is restated: no eating, no drinking, no returning by the same route. The man of God recites God's command accurately and completely. The narrative builds an airtight case: he knew the command, he stated it clearly, and he will violate it anyway. The repetition serves the reader, ensuring there is no ambiguity about what was required.
18. The phrase *gam ani navi kamokha* ('I too am a prophet like you') establishes professional solidarity. The old prophet positions himself as a peer whose revelatory experience is equivalent. The word *mal'akh* ('messenger, angel') adds authority — not just a human prophet but a heavenly intermediary. The cumulative effect is a wall of credentials: prophet, angel, word of the LORD. Every term is designed to make the lie credible.
18. The narrator's *kikhesh lo* ('he lied to him') is placed after the speech, not before it. The reader receives the lie before learning it is a lie — momentarily experiencing the same uncertainty the man of God faced. This narrative technique implicates the reader in the dilemma.
19. The brevity is damning. Three verbs — *vayyashav* ('he returned'), *vayyokhal* ('he ate'), *vayyesht* ('he drank') — each one a direct violation of the three prohibitions. No internal deliberation is narrated, no struggle of conscience. The man of God simply complied. The silence about his reasoning is part of the chapter's unsettling power.
20. The irony is staggering: the word of the LORD — *dvar YHWH* — now comes through the very prophet who lied. The man who fabricated a divine message now receives a genuine one. The text makes no attempt to explain this. Prophetic function in the Hebrew Bible is not contingent on moral character. The phrase *asher heshivo* ('who had brought him back') identifies the old prophet by his act of deception, ensuring the reader cannot forget what he did even as he speaks authentically.
21. The verb *marita* ('you rebelled, you defied') comes from *marah*, which means to be rebellious or contentious against authority. The phrase *pi YHWH* ('the mouth of the LORD') is a vivid anthropomorphism — the man of God defied the very organ of divine speech. The specificity of 'the LORD your God' (*YHWH Elohekha*) makes it personal: this is not abstract disobedience but betrayal of a personal command from his own covenant God.
22. The punishment — *lo tavo nivlatkha el qever avotekha* ('your corpse will not come to the tomb of your fathers') — denies the man of God proper ancestral burial. In Israelite culture, burial with one's fathers was the final act of family and covenant belonging. To have one's body (*nivlah*, 'carcass, corpse' — a word used for animal carcasses) left unburied or buried in foreign soil was a profound dishonor. The use of *nivlah* rather than the more dignified *met* ('dead person') is deliberately degrading.
23. The old prophet saddles the donkey for his guest — an act of hospitality that serves as preparation for the man of God's death. The verb *chavash* ('to saddle') recurs from verse 13, forming a grim bracket. The narrator again identifies the old prophet as *asher heshivo* ('who had brought him back'), reinforcing his culpability.
24. The verb *matsa* ('to find, to encounter') makes the lion's attack seem purposeful — it 'found' him, as though sent. The triple image of corpse, donkey, and lion all stationary on the road defies natural explanation: lions kill to eat, donkeys flee from lions. The supernatural restraint of both animals marks this as divine judgment rather than natural disaster.
25. The travelers see exactly what the narrator described: corpse on the road, lion standing beside it. They carry the report specifically to the city where the old prophet lives — *asher hannavi hazzaqen yoshev bah*. The news reaches the person most implicated in the death. The narrative does not say how the travelers knew to go there; the connection between the old prophet and the man of God appears to be known.
26. The old prophet's response uses the same phrase from the divine oracle he himself delivered: *marah et pi YHWH* ('defied the mouth of the LORD'). He interprets the death correctly — it fulfills the word spoken at his own table. The verb *shavar* ('to break, to maul') describes the lion's physical destruction of the body. The old prophet shows no expression of guilt for his own role in bringing about this outcome, though his subsequent actions suggest some form of grief or recognition.
27. The command *chaveshu li et hachamor* ('saddle me the donkey') repeats verse 13 word for word. The old prophet rides out again — the first time to deceive, this time to retrieve. The structural parallel binds his two journeys into a single arc of cause and consequence.

- 28.** The narrator emphasizes two negatives: *lo akhal* ('had not eaten') and *lo shavar* ('had not mauled'). A lion that kills but does not eat, that stands beside prey animals without attacking — this is not natural behavior. The supernatural restraint confirms that the lion is an instrument of specific divine judgment, not indiscriminate predation. The scene would have remained exactly as the travelers described it, preserved for the old prophet's arrival.
- 29.** The verb *nasa* ('to lift, to carry') and the act of placing the body on the donkey create a scene of somber dignity. The old prophet returns the man of God to civilization for proper burial — *lisfod ulqovro* ('to lament and to bury him'). The verb *safad* ('to mourn, to beat the breast') indicates genuine grief, not merely ritual obligation. The old prophet mourns the man whose death he caused.
- 30.** The old prophet places the body *be-qivro* ('in his own tomb') — his personal burial site. He gives to the dead man what should have been reserved for himself. The lament *hoi achi* ('alas, my brother!') is an intimate expression of grief. The word *ach* ('brother') claims a bond of prophetic kinship. Whether this grief is repentance, guilt, or something more complex, the text does not say.
- 31.** The request *etsel atsmotav hanichu et atsmotai* ('beside his bones lay my bones') is remarkable. The old prophet wants to be identified with the man of God in death, united in burial with the prophet he deceived. This request will have practical consequences: when Josiah desecrates the tombs at Bethel three centuries later (2 Kings 23:17-18), he spares this tomb because of the man of God — and the old prophet's bones are preserved alongside his. The deceiver is saved by proximity to his victim.
- 32.** The infinitive absolute construction *hayo yihyeh* ('being it will be,' that is, 'it will certainly come to pass') expresses absolute certainty. The old prophet affirms the very prophecy he tried to undermine by detaining God's messenger. The reference to 'the towns of Samaria' is an anachronism from the narrator's perspective — Samaria was not yet built as a city (that happens in chapter 16). This indicates either editorial updating or prophetic foresight extending beyond the immediate context.
- 33.** The phrase *lo shav Yarov'am midarko hara'ah* ('Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way') is the narrator's theological verdict. Despite the withered hand, the split altar, and the dramatic death of the man of God, Jeroboam persists. The expression *yemalle et yado* ('he filled his hand') is the technical idiom for priestly consecration (literally, 'to fill the hand' with the offering). Jeroboam consecrates anyone willing — *miqtsot ha'am* ('from the ends/extremities of the people'), meaning from every social stratum, not just Levites. This is the fundamental violation: non-Levitical priesthood.
- 34.** The final verse delivers the narrator's sweeping judgment: this policy of illegitimate priesthood became the *chattat beit Yarov'am* ('the sin of the house of Jeroboam'). The infinitives *ulhakkhid ulhashmid* ('to cut off and to destroy') use two verbs of total elimination. The phrase *me'al penei ha-adamah* ('from upon the face of the ground') echoes the language of the flood narrative (Genesis 6:7, 7:4) — complete eradication. This verdict will be executed in chapter 15 when Baasha destroys Jeroboam's entire line.

14

Summary: *Jeroboam's son Abijah falls ill. Jeroboam sends his wife in disguise to the prophet Ahijah at Shiloh to learn the child's fate. God reveals the ruse to the blind prophet, who delivers a devastating oracle: the house of Jeroboam will be utterly destroyed, and the sick child will die the moment his mother crosses the threshold — but he alone of Jeroboam's line will receive proper burial, because something good toward the LORD was found in him. The child dies as foretold. The chapter then shifts to Judah, where Rehoboam's reign is summarized: Judah did evil, erected high places and cult pillars, and Pharaoh Shishak invaded Jerusalem and plundered the Temple treasures Solomon had made.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Two parallel failures frame this chapter. In the north, Jeroboam — who was promised a lasting dynasty if he obeyed (11:38) — has so thoroughly forfeited God's favor that his entire house will be swept away. In the south, Rehoboam presides over Judah's slide into the same idolatry, complete with Asherah poles and cultic prostitution. The chapter demolishes any illusion that the split kingdom produced a 'good half' and a 'bad half.' Both are failing. The detail about the sick child is heart-wrenching: Abijah is the only member of Jeroboam's family in whom 'something good toward the LORD' was found (v. 13), and his reward is to die young and be spared the coming massacre. In the theology of Kings, an early death with proper burial is mercy, not punishment.*

Translation Friction: *The ethics of the child's death trouble modern readers. Abijah is the only righteous member of the household, yet he is the one who dies. The text treats this as grace — he is removed before the bloodbath — but it raises the question of whether divine mercy can look like suffering from a human perspective. Ahijah's oracle uses some of the most graphic language in the prophetic corpus: God will 'burn up the house of Jeroboam as one burns dung until it is gone' (v. 10). The verb *bi'er* ('to burn, to remove') and the comparison to *galal* ('dung') are intentionally degrading. The shift to Rehoboam's reign in verse 21 is*

abrupt, and the summary of his rule is remarkably compressed — 17 years reduced to a handful of verses dominated by theological failure and military humiliation.

Connections: Ahijah the Shilonite is the same prophet who tore the garment into twelve pieces and gave ten to Jeroboam (11:29-39). His reappearance here closes the arc: the prophet who announced Jeroboam's rise now announces his fall. Shishak's invasion of Jerusalem (v. 25-26) is confirmed by Egyptian records — the Bubastite Portal at Karnak lists the cities Shishak (Shoshenq I) claimed to have conquered. The replacement of Solomon's gold shields with bronze ones (v. 27) is a powerful symbol of decline: the gold age is over, and bronze imitations take its place. The formula 'he did evil in the eyes of the LORD' (v. 22) will recur for nearly every king in the Deuteronomistic evaluation.

¹At that time Abijah son of Jeroboam fell ill. ²Jeroboam said to his wife, "Get up and disguise yourself so that no one will recognize you as Jeroboam's wife. Go to Shiloh — Ahijah the prophet is there, the one who said I would be king over this people." ³Take with you ten loaves of bread, some cakes, and a jar of honey, and go to him. He will tell you what will happen to the boy." ⁴Jeroboam's wife did so. She set out and went to Shiloh and came to the house of Ahijah. Now Ahijah could not see, because his eyes had become fixed with age. ⁵But the LORD had said to Ahijah, "The wife of Jeroboam is coming to ask you about her son, for he is ill. You are to say such-and-such to her. When she arrives, she will be pretending to be someone else." ⁶When Ahijah heard the sound of her footsteps at the door, he said, "Come in, wife of Jeroboam. Why are you pretending to be someone else? I have been sent to you with a harsh message." ⁷"Go, tell Jeroboam: This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: I raised you up from among the people and made you leader over my people Israel. ⁸I tore the kingdom away from the house of David and gave it to you. But you have not been like my servant David, who kept my commands and followed me with his whole heart, doing only what was right in my eyes. ⁹You have done more evil than all who came before you. You went and made for yourself other gods and cast images to provoke me, and you have thrown me behind your back. ¹⁰Therefore I am about to bring disaster on the house of Jeroboam. I will cut off from Jeroboam every male, whether bond or free in Israel. I will burn away what remains of the house of Jeroboam as one burns dung until it is gone. ¹¹Anyone belonging to Jeroboam who dies in the city, the dogs will eat. Anyone who dies in the open field, the birds of the sky will eat. For the LORD has spoken." ¹²"Now get up and go home. The moment your feet enter the city, the child will die. ¹³All Israel will mourn for him and bury him. He alone of Jeroboam's house will come to a proper grave, because in him something good toward the LORD, the God of Israel, was found in the house of Jeroboam. ¹⁴The LORD will raise up for himself a king over Israel who will cut off the house of Jeroboam. This is the day — and what am I saying? Even now!" ¹⁵The LORD will strike Israel until it sways like a reed in water. He will uproot Israel from this good land that he gave to their fathers and scatter them beyond the River, because they made their Asherah poles, provoking the LORD. ¹⁶He will give Israel up because of the sins of Jeroboam — who sinned and who caused Israel to sin." ¹⁷Jeroboam's wife got up and left. She came to Tirzah, and as she crossed the threshold of the house, the boy died. ¹⁸They buried him, and all Israel mourned for him, according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken through his servant Ahijah the prophet. ¹⁹The rest of the acts of Jeroboam — how he waged war and how he reigned — they are written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel. ²⁰The time that Jeroboam reigned was twenty-two years. He slept with his fathers, and his son Nadab reigned in his place. ²¹Now Rehoboam son of Solomon reigned in Judah. Rehoboam was forty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem — the city the LORD had chosen from all the tribes of Israel to place his name there. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite. ²²Judah did evil in the eyes of the LORD. They provoked his jealousy more than all their fathers had done with the sins they committed. ²³They too built for themselves high places, standing stones, and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree. ²⁴There were also cult prostitutes in the land. They practiced all the abominations of the nations that the LORD had driven out before the people of Israel. ²⁵In the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak king of Egypt marched against Jerusalem. ²⁶He took the treasures of the house of the LORD and the treasures of the royal palace — he took everything. He took all the gold shields that Solomon had made. ²⁷King Rehoboam made bronze shields to replace them and entrusted them to the commanders of the royal guard who stood watch at the entrance to the palace. ²⁸Whenever the king went to the house of the LORD, the guards would carry them, and afterward

they would return them to the guardroom. ²⁹As for the remaining acts of Rehoboam and everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ³⁰There was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam throughout their days. ³¹Rehoboam slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite. His son Abijam reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The name Aviyah means 'my father is Yah(weh)' — an ironic name for the son of a king who has systematically led Israel away from YHWH worship. The phrase ba'et habi ('at that time') links the child's illness to the preceding narrative of Jeroboam's unrepentant sin. The verb chalah ('to be sick, to become weak') sets the narrative in motion.
2. The verb hishtannit ('disguise yourself') is a hitpa'el form of shanah ('to change') — literally 'change yourself.' Jeroboam's plan reveals his dual awareness: he knows Ahijah speaks for God (since Ahijah's earlier prophecy came true), yet he thinks a disguise can fool the prophet. This is the same cognitive dissonance that characterizes his entire reign — acknowledging God's power while acting as though it can be manipulated.
2. The reference to Ahijah hu dibber alai lemelekh ('he is the one who spoke concerning me as king') shows Jeroboam still claims the prophetic legitimacy Ahijah gave him, even after forfeiting the conditions attached to it.
3. The gifts — asarah lechem ('ten loaves'), niqqudim ('punctured cakes' or 'crumbled cakes'), and baqbuq devash ('a flask of honey') — are modest provisions, not royal gifts. This is deliberate: royal gifts would betray the queen's identity. The word niqqudim appears only here and in Joshua 9:5, 12, where it describes the Gibeonites' stale provisions used in their own deception. The parallel may be intentional — both involve deception through humble provisions.
4. The phrase qamu einav misseivo ('his eyes had set/stood because of his old age') describes the rigid, unfocused stare of blindness — the eyes have become stationary, unable to track or focus. This detail seemingly validates Jeroboam's plan: a blind prophet cannot visually identify the disguised queen. But the narrative is setting up an ironic reversal — physical blindness will prove irrelevant when God reveals the visitor's identity directly.
5. God preempts the disguise entirely. The verb lidrosh ('to seek, to inquire') is the standard term for prophetic consultation. The phrase kazoh vekhazoh tedabber eleiha ('thus and thus you shall speak to her') withholds the content from the reader, building suspense. The verb mitnakkerah ('making herself unrecognizable') is a hitpa'el of nakhar ('to be foreign, to be strange') — she is literally 'making herself a stranger.' The irony is complete: she cannot be a stranger to the God who sees through every disguise.
6. The blind prophet identifies her by the sound of her feet — qol ragleyha ('the sound of her footsteps') — but the identification comes from God, not from auditory recognition. The question lamah zeh at mitnakkerah ('why are you pretending to be someone else?') exposes the futility of the disguise. The word qashah ('harsh, hard, severe') prepares her for devastating news. The phrase anokhi shaluach elayikh ('I have been sent to you') positions Ahijah as God's messenger — the same role he played when he announced Jeroboam's kingship.
7. The oracle begins by recounting what God did for Jeroboam. The verb harimotikha ('I raised you up, I exalted you') emphasizes divine initiative — Jeroboam's rise was not self-made. The title nagid ('leader, designated ruler') is the same term used for Saul and David in their initial divine appointments. It implies divine selection and accountability to the one who selected.
8. The verb eqra ('I tore') uses the same root (qara) as the physical tearing of the garment in 11:30. God claims direct agency in the political rupture. The comparison to David — avdi David ('my servant David') — sets the standard Jeroboam failed. The phrase bekol levavo ('with his whole heart') and raq hayyashar be'ainai ('only what was right in my eyes') idealize David's devotion. Kings consistently holds David up as the benchmark despite his known failures, focusing on his fundamental loyalty to YHWH worship rather than his moral perfection.
9. The phrase oti hishlakhta acharei gavvekha ('you have thrown me behind your back') is one of the most visceral images of rejection in the Hebrew Bible. The word gav ('back') makes the metaphor physical: Jeroboam has turned his back on God and flung God behind him like refuse. The verb hishlakh ('to throw, to cast away') implies violent, contemptuous disposal. The 'other gods' (elohim acherim) and 'cast images' (massekhot) refer to the golden calves at Bethel and Dan.
10. The phrase mashtin beqir ('one who urinates against a wall') is a crude idiom meaning 'every male' — its vulgarity is intentional, reducing the royal house to its most basic biological identity. The pair atsuv ve'azuv ('bound and free' or 'restrained and released') is a merism meaning everyone without exception. The verb bi'er ('to burn away, to purge') paired with the noun galal ('dung, dried dung cakes') creates a degrading image: the dynasty will be burned like fuel made from animal waste. The phrase ad tummo ('until its completion') means total annihilation.
11. Denial of burial is the ultimate curse in the ancient Near East. Dogs and carrion birds are the twin agents of corpse desecration. This formula — city/dogs and field/birds — will recur for the houses of Baasha (16:4) and Ahab (21:24), creating a pattern of dynastic annihilation language in Kings. The closing formula ki YHWH dibber ('for the LORD has spoken') seals the oracle with divine authority.
12. The prophecy is terrifyingly precise: bevo'ah raglayikh ha'irah umet hayyeled ('when your feet enter the city, the child will die'). The child's death is synchronized with his mother's arrival — she carries doom home with her. The word regel ('foot') is in the dual, emphasizing the physical act of stepping across the threshold. Every step homeward is a step toward her son's death.

13. The phrase *zeh levaddo yavo le-Yarov'am el qaver* ('this one alone of Jeroboam's line will come to a grave') uses *levaddo* ('alone, only he') with emphatic isolation. The preposition *el* ('toward') in *davar tov el YHWH* indicates direction of heart — the good thing was oriented toward God. The clause *be-veit Yarov'am* ('in the house of Jeroboam') locates this tiny flame of goodness within a household of thorough corruption.
14. The enigmatic closing phrase *zeh hayyom umeh gam attah* ('this is the day, and what, even now!') is notoriously difficult. It seems to express prophetic urgency — the judgment is not distant but imminent. Some read it as Ahijah's exclamation of astonishment at the nearness of the fulfillment. The king who will destroy Jeroboam's house is Baasha (15:27-29).
15. The simile *ka'asher yanud haqqaneh bammayim* ('as a reed sways in the water') captures Israel's coming instability — tossed back and forth, rootless, at the mercy of forces beyond its control. The verb *natash* ('to uproot, to tear out') is an agricultural metaphor for exile — Israel will be pulled out of the soil like a plant. The phrase *me'ever lannahar* ('beyond the River') refers to the Euphrates, predicting the Assyrian exile that will come in 722 BCE. This is one of the earliest references in Kings to what will become the northern kingdom's ultimate fate.
16. The formula *asher chata va'asher hecheti et Yisra'el* ('who sinned and who caused Israel to sin') becomes the standard indictment for every subsequent king of the northern kingdom. The *hifil hecheti* ('caused to sin') makes Jeroboam responsible not only for his own sin but for the entire nation's apostasy. This is the 'sin of Jeroboam' that Kings will reference more than twenty times.
17. The prophecy of verse 12 is fulfilled with chilling precision: *hi ba'ah vesaf habbayit vehannar met* ('she was coming to the threshold of the house, and the boy died'). The word *saf* ('threshold, doorstep') marks the exact moment — the boundary between outside and inside, between journey and arrival. Tirzah served as the capital of the northern kingdom before Omri moved it to Samaria. The synchronization of footstep and death demonstrates the absolute reliability of the prophetic word.
18. The fulfillment formula *ki-dvar YHWH asher dibber beyad avdo* ('according to the word of the LORD that he spoke by the hand of his servant') confirms that the prophecy of verse 13 has been precisely fulfilled. The phrase *beyad* ('by the hand of') treats the prophet as an instrument — God's word passes through him. Ahijah is now called *avdo* ('his servant'), a title of honor.
19. The reference formula directs readers to *sefer divrei hayyamim lemalkhei Yisra'el* ('the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel'), a now-lost court chronicle that the author of Kings used as a source. This is not the biblical book of Chronicles but a separate administrative record. The formula will recur for virtually every king of Israel and Judah.
20. The death formula *vayyishkav im avotav* ('he slept with his fathers') is the standard euphemism for royal death throughout Kings. It implies peaceful death and ancestral reunion — though in Jeroboam's case, the oracle of doom hangs over his dynasty. Nadab's reign will last only two years before Baasha's coup (15:25-28).
21. The accession formula for Judahite kings includes the queen mother's name — a detail never given for Israelite kings. Naamah ha-Ammonit ('Naamah the Ammonite') is one of the foreign wives Solomon married (11:1). That the narrator mentions her nationality is not neutral — it connects Rehoboam's character to Solomon's foreign-wife problem. The theological phrase *lasum et shemo sham* ('to place his name there') is Deuteronomic election language, affirming Jerusalem's special status even as its king fails.
22. The verdict *vayyaas Yehudah hara be'einei YHWH* ('Judah did evil in the eyes of the LORD') applies the standard formula to the entire nation, not just the king. The verb *qinne'u* ('they provoked his jealousy') uses the *piel* of *qana* ('to be jealous, to be zealous'). God's jealousy in the Hebrew Bible is not petty possessiveness but the fierce exclusivity of a covenant partner who will not share his people with other gods.
23. The three items — *bamot* ('high places'), *matssevoth* ('standing stones, pillars'), and *asherim* ('Asherah poles') — constitute the standard catalog of Canaanite cult installations. The phrase *al kol giv'ah gevohah vetachat kol ets ra'anan* ('on every high hill and under every green tree') is a formulaic expression for ubiquitous pagan worship. High places exploited the symbolism of elevation (closeness to the divine); green trees provided sacred canopy. The phrase will recur throughout Kings and the prophets as shorthand for religious corruption.
24. The word *qadesh* ('cult prostitute' or 'consecrated one') derives from the root *qadash* ('to be holy, set apart'). In Canaanite religion, sexual acts at the shrine were considered sacred — a perversion of holiness language. The term *to'avot* ('abominations') is the standard Deuteronomic word for practices so offensive to God that they defile the land itself. The phrase *asher horish YHWH mippenei venei Yisra'el* ('whom the LORD drove out before the people of Israel') draws a devastating comparison: Israel is now doing exactly what the Canaanites did — the very behavior that prompted their dispossession.
25. Shishak (Egyptian: Shoshenq I) is the first pharaoh named in the Bible whose identity can be confirmed by Egyptian records. The Bubastite Portal at Karnak preserves his campaign relief listing conquered cities. His invasion in approximately 925 BCE was a major military campaign through both Judah and Israel. The fifth year of Rehoboam's reign places this event shortly after the kingdom's division, when both halves were at their weakest.
26. The repetition of the verb *laqach* ('he took') three times hammers home the totality of the plunder. The phrase *ve-et hakkol laqach* ('and everything he took') is comprehensive. The gold shields Solomon had made (10:16-17) were symbols of imperial splendor — their removal is not merely economic loss but the visible end of the Solomonic golden age. What Solomon built, Shishak dismantled.
27. The replacement of gold shields with *nechoshet* ('bronze, copper') shields is one of the most eloquent symbols of decline in the Hebrew Bible. The objects serve the same ceremonial function, but the material tells the truth: the gold is gone. The *sarei haratsim* ('commanders of the runners/guard') are the royal bodyguard who accompany the king in procession. They carry the bronze shields as though nothing has changed — but everything has changed.

28. The routine is carefully maintained: the guards carry the bronze shields when the king processes to the Temple, then return them to the ta haratsim ('guardroom, chamber of the runners'). Solomon's gold shields were apparently displayed permanently (10:17); these bronze replacements are locked away between uses. The entire ritual is an elaborate pretense of grandeur that only highlights how much has been lost.
29. This is the Judahite version of the source citation formula. The *sefer divrei hayyamim lemalkhei Yehudah* ('Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah') is a separate document from the Israelite annals mentioned in verse 19. Both are lost works that the author of Kings used as sources.
30. The summary *milchamah haytah* ('there was war') indicates not necessarily open battle but a state of ongoing hostility — border skirmishes, economic competition, and political tension. The phrase *kol hayyamim* ('all the days') means the conflict lasted the entirety of both reigns without resolution.
31. The death formula follows the standard pattern: *vayyishkav im avotav vayyiqqaver im avotav be'ir David* ('he slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the city of David'). The repetition of Naamah's nationality at the close brackets the account — Rehoboam's reign began and ended under the shadow of Solomon's foreign marriages. Abijam (also called Abijah in Chronicles) succeeds him.

15

Summary: *The chapter covers four kings across both kingdoms. In Judah, Abijam reigns briefly and walks in all the sins of his father Rehoboam, though the Davidic line is preserved for David's sake. Asa succeeds him and earns the rare verdict of doing right in the eyes of the LORD, removing cult prostitutes and idols — though the high places remain. In Israel, Nadab son of Jeroboam reigns only two years before Baasha assassinates him and wipes out Jeroboam's entire family, fulfilling Ahijah's prophecy. Baasha then reigns but walks in the way of Jeroboam. The chapter ends with ongoing war between Asa of Judah and Baasha of Israel, and Asa's controversial alliance with Ben-hadad of Aram against Baasha.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the engine room of the regnal formula. Four kings are evaluated in rapid succession, and the machinery of Kings' theological assessment is fully on display. Each king gets an accession notice, a theological verdict, a summary of acts, a source citation, and a death notice. The speed is deliberate — most of these reigns are not narratively interesting to the author. What matters is the verdict. Abijam: evil. Asa: good (mostly). Nadab: evil. Baasha: evil. The rare positive verdict for Asa is qualified by the phrase *raq habamot lo saru* ('only the high places were not removed') — a persistent asterisk that will follow even the best Judahite kings until Josiah. The Davidic covenant (v. 4-5) is the theological backbone: even when kings fail, God preserves the line 'for David's sake,' not because any successor deserves it.*

Translation Friction: *Asa's alliance with Ben-hadad of Aram (vv. 18-20) creates a moral complexity. Asa strips the Temple and palace treasuries — the same treasures that were rebuilt after Shishak's plunder — and sends them to a foreign king to buy military intervention against Israel. The narrator does not explicitly condemn this act, but 2 Chronicles 16:7-9 records a prophetic rebuke of Asa for relying on Aram rather than God. The phrase 'for David's sake' (v. 4) raises questions about vicarious merit — can the faithfulness of an ancestor secure blessings for undeserving descendants? Kings says yes, at least for a time. The destruction of Jeroboam's house by Baasha (vv. 27-29) fulfills prophecy but is carried out by a man who is himself no better. God uses morally compromised agents to execute his word.*

Connections: *The preservation of the Davidic line 'for David's sake' (v. 4) reaches back to the Davidic covenant in 2 Samuel 7:12-16 and God's promise of a perpetual lamp in 1 Kings 11:36. Baasha's destruction of Jeroboam's house (v. 29) fulfills Ahijah's prophecy from 14:10-11. Asa's grandmother Maacah (called 'mother' using the term for queen mother) made an 'abominable image for Asherah' — the term *mifletset* ('horrid image, abomination') occurs only here, and its exact nature is unknown. Asa's burning of it in the Kidron Valley (v. 13) prefigures Josiah's later purge in the same location (2 Kings 23:4-6).*

¹In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam son of Nebat, Abijam became king over Judah. ²He reigned three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Maacah daughter of Abishalom. ³He walked in all the sins of his father that he had committed before him. His heart was not wholly devoted to the LORD his God, as the heart of David his ancestor had been. ⁴Yet for David's sake the LORD his God gave him a lamp in Jerusalem by raising up his son after him and by establishing Jerusalem, ⁵because David did what was right in the eyes of the LORD and did not turn from anything he commanded him

all the days of his life — except in the matter of Uriah the Hittite. ⁶There was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam throughout his life. ⁷As for the remaining acts of Abijam and everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ⁸Abijam slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David. His son Asa reigned in his place. ⁹In the twentieth year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Asa became king over Judah. ¹⁰He reigned forty-one years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Maacah daughter of Abishalom. ¹¹Asa did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, as David his ancestor had done. ¹²He removed the cult prostitutes from the land and cleared away all the idols that his fathers had made. ¹³He also removed Maacah his grandmother from the position of queen mother because she had made a vile image for Asherah. Asa cut down her vile image and burned it in the Kidron Valley. ¹⁴The high places, however, were not removed. Yet Asa's heart was wholly devoted to the LORD all his days. ¹⁵He brought into the house of the LORD the things his father had dedicated and his own dedicated gifts — silver, gold, and vessels. ¹⁶There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel throughout their days. ¹⁷Baasha king of Israel marched against Judah and fortified Ramah to prevent anyone from going out or coming in to Asa king of Judah. ¹⁸Asa took all the silver and gold remaining in the treasuries of the house of the LORD and the treasuries of the royal palace. He placed them in the hands of his servants, and King Asa sent them to Ben-hadad son of Tabrimmon son of Hezion, king of Aram, who lived in Damascus, saying, ¹⁹"Let there be a covenant between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. I am sending you a gift of silver and gold. Go and break your covenant with Baasha king of Israel so that he will withdraw from me." ²⁰Ben-hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies against the cities of Israel. He struck Ijon, Dan, Abel-beth-maacah, and all Chinneroth, along with all the land of Naphtali. ²¹When Baasha heard this, he stopped fortifying Ramah and withdrew to Tirzah. ²²King Asa issued a proclamation to all Judah — no one was exempt — and they carried away the stones and timber that Baasha had used to fortify Ramah. With them King Asa fortified Geba of Benjamin and Mizpah. ²³The rest of all the acts of Asa — all his might, all that he did, and the cities he built — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? In his old age, however, he developed a disease in his feet. ²⁴Asa slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his ancestor. His son Jehoshaphat reigned in his place. ²⁵Nadab son of Jeroboam became king over Israel in the second year of Asa king of Judah, and he reigned over Israel two years. ²⁶He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He walked in the way of his father and in his sin by which he caused Israel to sin. ²⁷Baasha son of Ahijah, of the house of Issachar, conspired against him. Baasha struck him down at Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines, while Nadab and all Israel were besieging Gibbethon. ²⁸Baasha killed him in the third year of Asa king of Judah and reigned in his place. ²⁹As soon as he became king, he struck down the entire house of Jeroboam. He did not leave anyone breathing belonging to Jeroboam — he destroyed them all, according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken through his servant Ahijah the Shilonite, ³⁰because of the sins of Jeroboam that he committed and that he caused Israel to commit, by the provocation with which he provoked the LORD, the God of Israel. ³¹As for the remaining acts of Nadab and everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ³²There was war between Asa and Baasha king of Israel throughout their days. ³³In the third year of Asa king of Judah, Baasha son of Ahijah became king over all Israel at Tirzah, and he reigned twenty-four years. ³⁴He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He walked in the way of Jeroboam and in his sin by which he caused Israel to sin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The synchronistic formula — dating one king's accession to the regnal year of the opposite king — is the standard chronological device in Kings. It ties the two kingdoms together in a single timeline. Abijam is also called Abijah in Chronicles; the variation may reflect different traditions about his name.
2. Three years is one of the shortest reigns in Judah. Maacah bat Avishalom may be the granddaughter of Absalom (David's rebellious son), though the term bat ('daughter') can mean 'descendant.' If this identification is correct, the Davidic family tree has produced both rebels and kings, and the line continues through tangled relationships.
3. The formula *vayyeylekh bekhoh chattot aviv* ('he walked in all the sins of his father') assigns Abijam the same verdict as Rehoboam. The phrase *lo hayah levavo shalem* ('his heart was not complete/whole') uses *shalem* ('whole, complete, at peace') — the same root as *shalom* and *Shelomoh* (Solomon). His heart lacked the wholeness that David's heart had. The comparison to David — *kilevav David aviv* ('like the heart of David his ancestor') — maintains David as the permanent standard.

4. The noun *nir* is debated: it could mean 'lamp' (from *ner*) or 'dominion' (from *nir*, 'to plow'). Most read it as 'lamp' based on the metaphorical tradition of the Davidic line as a light that must not be extinguished (2 Samuel 21:17, 1 Kings 11:36). The phrase *lema'an David* ('for the sake of David') is the clearest expression of vicarious merit in Kings — the descendant benefits from the ancestor's faithfulness.
5. The exception clause *raq bidvar Uriyyah haChitti* ('except in the matter of Uriah the Hittite') is one of the most remarkable qualifications in the Hebrew Bible. The narrator acknowledges David's gravest sin — the adultery with Bathsheba and the murder of Uriah — but treats it as a single exception to an otherwise faithful life. The word *davar* ('matter, thing, affair') covers the entire episode without narrating it. This is not whitewashing; it is theological prioritization. David's loyalty to YHWH worship was total; his moral failure was personal. Kings evaluates kings primarily on the first criterion.
6. This verse repeats the notice from 14:30, extending the state of war into Abijam's reign. Some manuscripts read 'between Abijam and Jeroboam,' which would update the formula to the current king. The phrase *kol yemei chayyav* ('all the days of his life') indicates the hostility was perpetual.
7. The standard source citation directs the reader to the now-lost Judahite annals. The repeated notice of war between Abijam and Jeroboam confirms that the conflict was a defining feature of Abijam's short reign.
8. The standard death-and-burial formula. Abijam receives burial in the city of David, maintaining the Davidic line's ancestral burial site. The transition to Asa marks a turning point: Asa will be the first Judahite king after Solomon to receive a positive verdict.
9. The synchronistic formula dates Asa's accession to Jeroboam's twentieth year. Asa will reign forty-one years — one of the longest reigns in Judah — spanning many kings of Israel.
10. Maacah is listed as the 'mother' (queen mother) of both Abijam (v. 2) and Asa. This likely means she retained the office of *gevirah* ('queen mother') into Asa's reign — a position of significant court influence — until Asa removed her (v. 13). Forty-one years makes Asa a major figure whose reign spans the reigns of many northern kings.
11. The verdict *vayyaas Asa hayyashar be'einei YHWH* ('Asa did what was right in the eyes of the LORD') is the positive counterpart to the evil-verdict formula. The comparison *ke-David aviv* ('like David his ancestor') is the highest praise Kings can give. Only a handful of Judahite kings receive this comparison: Asa, Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah.
12. The verb *he'evir* ('he caused to pass away, he removed') indicates active royal policy, not passive neglect. The *qedeshim* ('cult prostitutes, consecrated ones') are the same figures mentioned in 14:24. The word *gillulim* ('idols') is one of the most contemptuous terms for false gods in Hebrew — it may derive from *galal* ('dung') or from a root meaning 'shapeless lumps.' The Deuteronomistic historians use it when they want to express maximum scorn.
13. The word *mifletset* ('vile image, horrid thing, abomination') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. Its root *palats* means 'to shudder, to tremble' — the object was so offensive it induced horror. Its exact nature is unknown. Asa's removal of Maacah from the office of *gevirah* ('queen mother') was a politically radical act — the queen mother wielded real influence, and deposing her challenged the entire court structure. Burning the image in the Kidron Valley established a pattern Josiah would later follow on a grander scale (2 Kings 23:4, 6).
14. The qualification *vehabamot lo saru* ('but the high places were not removed') is a recurring disclaimer that attaches even to good kings. The high places — local worship sites outside Jerusalem — persisted as the one reform no king before Josiah completed. Despite this caveat, the narrator affirms that Asa's heart was *shalem* ('whole, complete') with the LORD — the same word denied to Abijam in verse 3. The contrast is deliberate.
15. The word *qedashim* ('dedicated things, holy things') refers to items set apart for the Temple treasury. That Asa brought in both his father's and his own dedicated items suggests a restoration of Temple wealth after Shishak's plunder. The irony is that Asa will later strip these same treasuries to bribe Ben-hadad (v. 18).
16. The war formula repeats for this generation: Asa of Judah versus Baasha of Israel. The phrase *kol yemeihem* ('all their days') encompasses both reigns. The ongoing north-south hostility is the political backdrop for the diplomatic maneuvering that follows.
17. Ramah (ha-Ramah) lay only about five miles north of Jerusalem — dangerously close to the capital. Baasha's fortification of it was an act of military encirclement: the phrase *levilti tet yotse vava* ('to prevent going out and coming in') describes a blockade cutting Judah's northern access. This was an existential threat that prompted Asa's desperate diplomatic gambit.
18. Asa strips both the Temple and palace treasuries — the same treasuries he had replenished (v. 15). The three-generation genealogy of Ben-hadad (Ben-hadad ben Tavrimmon ben Chezyon) establishes the Aramean dynasty's legitimacy. Damascus was the capital of the Aramean kingdom, Israel's powerful northeastern neighbor. Asa's decision to buy a foreign alliance with sacred funds is theologically fraught — he is using God's treasure to purchase human military aid.
19. The word *berit* ('covenant, treaty') is used twice — once for the alliance Asa proposes and once for the alliance he asks Ben-hadad to break with Baasha. Asa is essentially asking Ben-hadad to commit treaty violation against Israel in exchange for a new treaty with Judah. The word *shochad* ('bribe, gift, present') is remarkably honest — the narrator uses the same word that elsewhere describes corrupt payments. The strategy is to create a two-front war that forces Baasha to abandon his fortification of Ramah.
20. Ben-hadad's campaign targets Israel's vulnerable northern territory. Ijon, Dan, and Abel-beth-maacah are cities in the far north of Israel; Chinneroth is the region around the Sea of Galilee (Kinnereth). The attack forces Baasha to divert attention from his southern front at Ramah to defend his exposed northern border. The strategy works, but at the cost of inviting a foreign power into Israelite affairs.

21. The verb *chadal* ('to cease, to stop, to desist') indicates Baasha abandoned the project immediately. He retreats to Tirzah, the northern capital. Asa's strategy has worked at the tactical level — the blockade is broken — even if the strategic and theological implications are more complex.
22. The phrase *ein naqi* ('no one exempt') indicates a universal labor conscription — every man in Judah was required to participate. Asa recycled Baasha's building materials, turning the enemy's fortification into his own defensive line. Geba and Mizpah became Judah's new northern frontier, positioned to defend against future Israelite incursions. This was practical governance at its most efficient — demolish the enemy's wall and build your own with the stones.
23. The notice of Asa's foot disease — *chalah et raglav* ('he became sick in his feet') — is an unusual personal detail in the regnal formula. Second Chronicles 16:12 adds that Asa sought physicians rather than the LORD, turning even this medical note into a theological comment. The disease is commonly identified as gout, though the Hebrew specifies only *raglav* ('his feet') without naming the condition.
24. Asa receives the standard honorable death formula with burial in the city of David. Jehoshaphat will continue his father's generally positive trajectory. The transition marks the end of one of Judah's most reform-minded reigns.
25. Nadab's reign is strikingly brief — *shenatayim* ('two years'). The synchronistic formula dates his accession to Asa's second year. His short reign is about to end violently, fulfilling the prophecy of 14:10-14.
26. The standard negative formula for Israelite kings: evil verdict, walking in the father's way, perpetuating the sin that causes Israel to sin. Nadab is evaluated entirely in terms of his relationship to Jeroboam's religious policy. No individual acts or character traits are mentioned — he is defined solely as a continuation of his father's apostasy.
27. The verb *qashar* ('to conspire, to bind together') is the standard term for political conspiracy in Kings. Baasha is from the tribe of Issachar — not from Jeroboam's family. The assassination occurs during a military campaign at Gibbethon, a Philistine border town. Military camps were common sites for coups in ancient Israel, since the army was concentrated and the king was vulnerable.
28. The synchronistic formula dates the assassination and usurpation to Asa's third year. The verb *vayyamlokh tachtav* ('he reigned in his place') treats the coup as a simple succession, though it was violent seizure of power. Kings makes no moral comment on the coup itself — the concern is what Baasha does with the throne once he has it.
29. The phrase *lo hish'ir kol neshamah le-Yarov'am* ('he did not leave any breath belonging to Jeroboam') means total extermination — every family member. The word *neshamah* ('breath, living being') is the same word used in Genesis 2:7 for the breath of life God breathed into Adam. Baasha removes every trace of this breath from Jeroboam's line. The fulfillment formula *beyad avdo Achiyyah haShiloni* ('through his servant Ahijah the Shilonite') connects this massacre to the prophecy of 14:10-11.
30. The explanation repeats the standard formula with an additional phrase: *bekha'aso asher hikh'is et YHWH* ('by his provocation with which he provoked the LORD'). The root *ka'as* ('to provoke, to anger') appears twice, intensifying the indictment. Jeroboam's sin was not passive — it was active provocation of the God of Israel.
31. The standard source citation for an Israelite king. Nadab's entire reign is compressed into seven verses — accession, verdict, assassination, and aftermath. The brevity is itself a theological statement: his reign mattered only as the end of Jeroboam's dynasty.
32. This repeats the war notice from verse 16, framing Baasha's reign summary. The repetition after the narrative of the Ben-hadad alliance reminds the reader that the conflict persisted despite Asa's diplomatic maneuver.
33. Baasha's accession is dated to Asa's third year, matching the assassination of Nadab in verse 28. Tirzah is confirmed as the capital. Twenty-four years is a substantial reign, making Baasha a significant figure despite receiving minimal narrative attention in Kings.
34. The verdict for Baasha is identical to Nadab's (v. 26): evil in the eyes of the LORD, walking in Jeroboam's way, perpetuating the sin. The irony is cutting — Baasha destroyed Jeroboam's house as divine judgment against Jeroboam's sin, then adopted the very sin that prompted the judgment. He is the instrument of God's word and the repetition of the condemned pattern simultaneously.

16

Summary: This chapter chronicles the most turbulent period in the northern kingdom's history. Jehu son of Hanani prophesies against Baasha, repeating the same doom formula used against Jeroboam. Baasha dies and his son Elah reigns briefly before being assassinated by his official Zimri, who destroys the entire house of Baasha. Zimri reigns only seven days before the army, besieging Gibbethon, proclaims their commander Omri as king. Omri marches on Tirzah, and Zimri burns the palace down on himself. A civil war between Omri and Tibni follows, which Omri wins. Omri builds Samaria as the new capital and does evil surpassing all before him. His son Ahab succeeds him and marries Jezebel of Sidon, introducing Baal worship to Israel. The chapter ends with the rebuilding of Jericho under a curse.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The narrative pace is extraordinary. Five kings pass through in thirty-four verses, three of them violently. The chapter reads like a political thriller — assassination, coup, counter-coup, civil war, dynasty founding — all compressed into a space that barely allows the reader to catch breath. Yet beneath the political chaos, the theological pattern is relentlessly consistent: every king does evil in the eyes of the LORD, every king walks in the way of Jeroboam, and every dynasty that rises is already doomed. Omri, who was one of the most historically significant kings of Israel (Assyrian records called Israel 'the house of Omri' for a century after his death), receives only eight verses. Ahab's introduction, by contrast, is loaded with theological horror — he marries Jezebel, builds a temple for Baal in Samaria, and makes an Asherah pole. The narrator says he did more to provoke the LORD than all the kings of Israel before him. This is the setup for the Elijah cycle.*

Translation Friction: *Omri's historical importance vastly exceeds his narrative treatment. The Mesha Stele (Moabite Stone) credits Omri with subjugating Moab; Assyrian records refer to Israel as 'Bit Humri' (house of Omri) long after his dynasty ended. Yet Kings gives him six verses and a damning verdict. This disparity reveals the author's priorities: political and military achievement count for nothing against the criterion of faithfulness to YHWH. Zimri's seven-day reign raises the question of whether so brief a tenure can even constitute a 'reign' — yet he receives a full accession notice, an evil verdict, and a death notice. The rebuilding of Jericho (v. 34) and the death of Hiel's sons fulfills Joshua's curse (Joshua 6:26) across roughly five centuries, another long-range prophecy-fulfillment arc.*

Connections: *Jehu son of Hanani's prophecy against Baasha (vv. 1-4) mirrors Ahijah's prophecy against Jeroboam (14:7-11) almost word for word, including the dogs-and-birds formula. The destruction of Baasha's house by Zimri (v. 12) fulfills this prophecy just as Baasha's destruction of Jeroboam's house fulfilled the earlier one. The founding of Samaria (v. 24) creates the city that will be the northern capital until its fall in 722 BCE — every subsequent reference to 'Samaria' in the prophets traces back to Omri's purchase of this hill. Ahab's marriage to Jezebel (v. 31) introduces the figure who will dominate the next several chapters and whose death is prophesied in 21:23. The Jericho curse (v. 34) reaches back to Joshua 6:26, tying the settlement period to the monarchic period.*

¹The word of the LORD came to Jehu son of Hanani against Baasha: ²"Because I raised you up from the dust and made you leader over my people Israel, yet you walked in the way of Jeroboam and caused my people Israel to sin, provoking me with their sins — ³I am about to burn away what remains of Baasha and his house. I will make your house like the house of Jeroboam son of Nebat. ⁴Anyone belonging to Baasha who dies in the city, the dogs will eat. Anyone belonging to him who dies in the open field, the birds of the sky will eat." ⁵The rest of the acts of Baasha — what he did and his military achievements — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ⁶Baasha slept with his fathers and was buried in Tirzah. His son Elah reigned in his place. ⁷Moreover, through the prophet Jehu son of Hanani, the word of the LORD had come against Baasha and his house — both for all the evil he did in the eyes of the LORD, provoking him with the work of his hands by becoming like the house of Jeroboam, and also because he struck it down. ⁸In the twenty-sixth year of Asa king of Judah, Elah son of Baasha became king over Israel at Tirzah, and he reigned two years. ⁹His servant Zimri, commander of half the chariotry, conspired against him. While Elah was in Tirzah, drinking himself drunk at the house of Arza, the steward of the palace at Tirzah, ¹⁰Zimri came in, struck him down, and killed him in the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah. He reigned in his place. ¹¹As soon as he became king and sat on the throne, he struck down the entire house of Baasha. He did not leave him a single male, nor any of his kinsmen or his allies. ¹²Zimri destroyed the entire house of Baasha, according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken against Baasha through Jehu the prophet, ¹³because of all the sins of Baasha and the sins of his son Elah that they committed and by which they caused Israel to sin, provoking the LORD, the God of Israel, with their worthless idols. ¹⁴As for the remaining acts of Elah and everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ¹⁵In the twenty-seventh year of Asa king of Judah, Zimri reigned seven days at Tirzah. The army was encamped against Gibbethon, which belonged to the Philistines. ¹⁶The troops in the camp heard the report: "Zimri has conspired and has also struck down the king." So all Israel made Omri, the army commander, king over Israel that day in the camp. ¹⁷Omri and all Israel with him marched up from Gibbethon and besieged Tirzah. ¹⁸When Zimri saw that the city was captured, he went into the citadel of the royal palace and burned the palace down on himself. And he died, ¹⁹because of his sins that he committed, doing evil in the eyes of the LORD, walking in the way of

Jeroboam and in his sin that he committed to cause Israel to sin. ²⁰The rest of the acts of Zimri and the conspiracy he carried out — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ²¹At that point the people of Israel split into two factions: half the people supported Tibni son of Ginath, wanting to make him king, and half supported Omri. ²²The faction that supported Omri overpowered the faction that supported Tibni son of Ginath. Tibni died, and Omri became king. ²³In the thirty-first year of Asa king of Judah, Omri became king over Israel and reigned twelve years. He reigned six years at Tirzah. ²⁴He purchased the hill of Samaria from Shemer for two talents of silver. He built up the hill and named the city he built Samaria, after Shemer, the owner of the hill. ²⁵Omri did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He did more evil than all who came before him. ²⁶He walked in all the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat and in his sins by which he caused Israel to sin, provoking the LORD, the God of Israel, with their worthless idols. ²⁷The rest of the acts of Omri — what he did and the military achievements he accomplished — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ²⁸Omri slept with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. His son Ahab reigned in his place. ²⁹Ahab son of Omri became king over Israel in the thirty-eighth year of Asa king of Judah. Ahab son of Omri reigned over Israel in Samaria twenty-two years. ³⁰Ahab son of Omri did evil in the eyes of the LORD more than all who came before him. ³¹As if it were a trivial thing for him to walk in the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, he took as his wife Jezebel daughter of Ethbaal king of the Sidonians, and went and served Baal and bowed down to him. ³²He set up an altar for Baal in the temple of Baal that he built in Samaria. ³³Ahab also made an Asherah pole. Ahab did more to provoke the LORD, the God of Israel, than all the kings of Israel who came before him. ³⁴In his days Hiel of Bethel rebuilt Jericho. He laid its foundation at the cost of Abiram his firstborn, and he set up its gates at the cost of Segub his youngest, according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken through Joshua son of Nun.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jehu ben Chanani is not the later King Jehu who will destroy the house of Ahab. This Jehu is a prophet whose father Hanani was also a prophet (2 Chronicles 16:7). The formula *dvar YHWH el* ('the word of the LORD came to') is the standard prophetic commission formula.
2. The oracle parallels the Jeroboam oracle (14:7-8) but with a crucial difference: Jeroboam was raised 'from among the people' while Baasha was raised *min he'afar* ('from the dust'). The dust imagery suggests even lower origins — Baasha had no tribal pedigree or prophetic appointment like Jeroboam. The phrase *nagid* ('leader') is the same title used for Jeroboam, Saul, and David, emphasizing that Baasha's authority came from God despite his violent seizure of power.
3. The verb *mav'ir* ('burning away, purging') is the same used for the destruction of Jeroboam's house in 14:10 — the judgment is deliberately parallel. The phrase *venatatti et beithkha keveit Yarov'am* ('I will make your house like the house of Jeroboam') is both prophecy and irony: Baasha destroyed Jeroboam's house, and now his own house will meet the same fate for the same reason.
4. This is a verbatim repetition of the curse formula from 14:11. City/dogs and field/birds — the same dual desecration that was pronounced on Jeroboam's house. The repetition creates a theological pattern: dynasties that perpetuate the sin of Jeroboam receive the same sentence of total destruction and denial of burial.
5. The standard source citation. The mention of *gevurato* ('his might, his military achievements') hints that Baasha was a capable ruler whose accomplishments are irrelevant to the author's theological evaluation.
6. Baasha receives natural death and burial in the capital Tirzah — the curse of unburied corpses will fall on his descendants, not on him personally. Elah inherits a throne already under prophetic sentence of destruction.
7. This verse adds a remarkable dimension: Baasha is condemned both for imitating Jeroboam's sin (*lihyot keveit Yarov'am*, 'becoming like the house of Jeroboam') and for destroying Jeroboam's house (*ve'al asher hikkah oto*, 'and because he struck it down'). This creates a paradox: Baasha fulfilled God's prophetic word by destroying Jeroboam's dynasty, yet is condemned for the violence through which he did it. God's use of an instrument does not exonerate the instrument.
8. Like Nadab before him, Elah reigns only two years — the same brief tenure before the same violent end. The pattern is being established: usurper dynasties that perpetuate the sin of Jeroboam are destroyed within a generation.
9. The detail is devastating: while the army is in the field at Gibbethon, the king is *shoteh shikkor* ('drinking drunk') in a private residence. The word *shikkor* ('drunk') goes beyond normal drinking — it implies incapacitation. Zimri holds the title *sar machatsit harekhev* ('commander of half the chariotry'), making him a senior military officer. Arza's title *asher al habbayit* ('who is over the house') identifies him as palace steward, one of the highest officials. The conspiracy reaches the king's inner circle.
10. Three verbs in rapid succession — *vayyavo vayyakkehu vayyemitehu* ('he came, he struck him, he killed him') — describe the assassination with brutal efficiency. The synchronistic formula dates it to Asa's twenty-seventh year. Zimri's 'reign' (*vayyimlokh tachtav*) is technically the briefest in Israelite history.

11. The purge extends beyond the royal family: lo hish'ir lo mashtin beqir vego'alav vere'ehu ('he did not leave him one who urinates against a wall, nor his redeemers/kinsmen, nor his friends'). The go'alim ('kinsmen-redeemers') are those with blood-obligation to avenge murder — by killing them, Zimri eliminates anyone with a duty to retaliate. The re'im ('friends, allies') are political associates. The purge is both dynastic and political, removing every possible source of counter-coup.
12. The fulfillment formula ki-dvar YHWH asher dibber beyad Yehu hannavi ('according to the word of the LORD through Jehu the prophet') confirms that the prophecy of verses 1-4 has been executed. Like Baasha before him, Zimri serves as God's instrument of dynastic judgment — and like Baasha, he will not benefit from the role.
13. The word havalim ('vanities, worthless things, breaths') is the same term Ecclesiastes uses for 'meaningless' — here it denotes idols that are literally nothing, empty of substance. The phrase behav-leihem ('with their vanities') reduces the entire Canaanite religious system to vapor. Both father and son are condemned together, their sins merged into a single indictment.
14. The standard source citation. Elah's entire narrative has been the story of his assassination — the reference to 'all that he did' is almost ironic, given that the only thing recorded about him is drinking himself into a stupor and being murdered.
15. Seven days — shiv'at yamim — is the shortest reign in Israelite history. The army's location at Gibbethon creates a dramatic split: the political coup happens in the capital while the military is in the field. Gibbethon appears again — it was at Gibbethon that Baasha killed Nadab (15:27). The same border town witnesses two dynastic assassinations.
16. The army's response is immediate: they proclaim their commander Omri as king bayyom hahu bammachaneh ('that day in the camp'). The phrase sar hatsava ('commander of the army') makes Omri the highest military official. His elevation is a military coup responding to a palace coup — the army refuses to accept a usurper who acted without their consent. The phrase kol Yisra'el ('all Israel') here means the entire army, which claims to represent the nation.
17. The verb vayyatsuru ('they besieged') indicates a full military siege of the capital. Omri abandons the Philistine campaign to deal with the domestic crisis. The phrase vekhol Yisra'el immo ('and all Israel with him') emphasizes the army's unity behind Omri — Zimri has no military support.
18. Zimri's death is dramatic and deliberate. He enters the armon beit hammelekh ('citadel of the royal house') — the innermost fortified section of the palace — and sets it on fire with himself inside. The phrase vayyisrof alav et beit hammelekh ba'esh ('he burned the royal house over himself with fire') makes clear this is suicide, not accident. He chooses destruction over surrender. The verb vayyamot ('and he died') is terse — no mourning, no burial notice.
19. Zimri receives the full negative theological verdict despite reigning only seven days. The narrator applies the identical formula — evil in the eyes of the LORD, walking in Jeroboam's way, causing Israel to sin — to a reign measured in days rather than years. The verdict appears to be structural rather than biographical: anyone who sits on the throne of the northern kingdom inherits the sin of Jeroboam by default.
20. Even Zimri's seven-day reign is recorded in the court chronicles. The word qishro ('his conspiracy') is featured alongside his 'acts' — the conspiracy is the defining act of his entire reign. The reference to the annals for a seven-day reign underscores the meticulous record-keeping of the Israelite court scribes.
21. The verb yechaleq ('was divided') describes a true civil war — not a mere political dispute but a fracture of the nation into two armed camps. Tibni ben Ginat appears only here; nothing is known of his background or his claim. The fact that he commanded half the nation's loyalty suggests he was a figure of real significance, though Kings gives him no narrative development.
22. The verb chazaq ('prevailed, was strong') indicates military victory — Omri's supporters defeated Tibni's by force. The terse vayyamot Tivni ('and Tibni died') may indicate death in battle or execution after defeat. The entire civil war is compressed into a single verse. Omri emerges as sole ruler, beginning the most historically significant dynasty in the northern kingdom.
23. Omri's twelve-year reign is divided: six years in Tirzah, six years in Samaria (which he will build). The synchronistic formula dates his unchallenged rule to Asa's thirty-first year. His total reign was likely longer if the civil war years are counted.
24. The hill of Samaria was strategically excellent — a freestanding hill with clear sightlines in every direction, easily fortified and difficult to besiege. Archaeological excavations have confirmed Omri's construction of the site. The name Shomeron from Shemer follows the common pattern of cities named after their original owners or founders.
25. The verdict escalates: vayyara mikkol asher lefanav ('he did worse than all who were before him'). Each successive king raises the bar of wickedness. This superlative judgment makes Omri the worst king yet — a distinction his son Ahab will immediately surpass. The historical Omri was a capable ruler who stabilized the kingdom and established international relations; none of this matters to the narrator.
26. The formula is now thoroughly established: walking in Jeroboam's way, causing Israel to sin, provoking the LORD with havalim ('vanities, worthless things'). The unchanging repetition of this formula across multiple kings makes a theological point: the northern kingdom is locked in a cycle of inherited sin that no political change can break.
27. The source citation mentions both his acts and his gevurato ('his might'), acknowledging Omri's significance while declining to narrate it. The lost Israelite annals would have contained the political and military details that Kings considers irrelevant to its theological purpose.
28. Omri is the first king buried in Samaria, the city he built. The death formula is standard. The transition to Ahab marks the beginning of the most narratively developed period in Kings — the Elijah and Elisha cycles that will dominate the next several chapters.

- 29.** The accession formula is unusually formal, naming 'Ahab son of Omri' twice and specifying Samaria as the capital. Twenty-two years makes Ahab a long-reigning king whose period will be dominated by the conflict with Elijah. The synchronistic formula dates his accession to Asa's thirty-eighth year.
- 30.** The superlative verdict, already applied to Omri (v. 25), is now applied to Ahab with even greater force: *mikkol asher lefanav* ('more than all who were before him'). Father and son each surpass all predecessors. The escalation is deliberate — the narrator is building toward the introduction of Jezebel and Baal worship, which represent a qualitative leap beyond the golden calves of Jeroboam.
- 31.** The name Izevel (Jezebel) may derive from a Phoenician phrase meaning 'Where is the prince?' — a liturgical cry to Baal. Others connect it to *i-zebul* ('without honor, unexalted'). The Sidonians here likely refers to the Phoenicians broadly, with Tyre as the actual capital. Ethbaal is confirmed by Josephus (citing Menander of Ephesus) as a king of Tyre who reigned in this period.
- 31.** The shift from the golden calf worship of Jeroboam to the Baal worship of Ahab represents a theological escalation. Jeroboam's calves were arguably intended as representations of YHWH (the wrong way to worship the right God); Ahab's Baal worship is the worship of a different god entirely.
- 32.** Ahab builds a *beit haBa'al* ('temple of Baal') in the capital itself — not a rural high place but an official state temple in Samaria. The word *beit* ('house') is the same term used for the Temple in Jerusalem (*beit YHWH*). Ahab gives Baal a house to rival God's house. The altar (*mizbeach*) within it is the central piece of sacrificial furniture, making this a fully functional worship center for a competing deity.
- 33.** The *Asherah* (*asherah*) was a wooden cult object — either a carved image or a sacred pole — associated with the Canaanite goddess *Asherah*, consort of El (or in some traditions, of Baal). Its placement alongside the Baal temple created a complete Canaanite worship complex in the Israelite capital. The concluding verdict — *vayyosef Ach'av la'asot lehakh'is et YHWH mikkol malkhei Yisra'el* ('Ahab did more to provoke the LORD than all the kings of Israel before him') — is the ultimate superlative. Each generation's evil was supposed to be unsurpassable; Ahab surpasses them all.
- 34.** The rebuilding of Jericho activates the curse Joshua pronounced after destroying the city: 'Cursed before the LORD is the man who rises up and builds this city Jericho; with his firstborn shall he lay its foundation, and with his youngest shall he set up its gates' (Joshua 6:26). The fulfillment spans approximately five centuries. The preposition *be-* in *ba-Avram* and *bi-Seguv* can mean 'at the cost of' — each son died at the corresponding stage of construction. Whether these were intentional foundation sacrifices or curse-induced deaths, the text does not specify. The placement of this note at the chapter's end frames Ahab's reign as an era when ancient curses are activated — a time of spiritual reckoning.
- 34.** Hiel is identified as a *beit ha-Eli* ('Bethelite'), connecting him to the cult center where Jeroboam installed the golden calf. The verse serves as a bridge to the Elijah narrative: the age of Ahab is an age of curse-fulfillment, and the prophet who will challenge this age is about to appear.

17

Summary: *Elijah the Tishbite erupts into the narrative without introduction, announcing to Ahab that neither dew nor rain will fall except at his word. God sends him first to the brook Cherith, where ravens feed him, then — when the brook dries up — to a widow in Zarephath of Sidon. The widow is on the verge of starvation, gathering sticks for a last meal for herself and her son. Elijah asks her to feed him first, promising that her flour and oil will not run out. She obeys, and the supply holds. When her son later falls ill and dies, Elijah stretches himself over the child three times, crying out to God, and the boy's life returns. The widow declares that she now knows Elijah is a man of God and that the word of the LORD in his mouth is truth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Elijah's entrance is one of the great dramatic moments in Scripture. There is no birth narrative, no call scene, no genealogy beyond a single geographical note — he simply appears, speaks, and the weather obeys. The Hebrew is abrupt: *vayyomer Eliyyahu haTishbi* ('and Elijah the Tishbite said'). No prelude. The God who controls rain is Baal's central claim — Baal was the storm god, the rider of clouds, the one who sent the rains that made the land fertile. Elijah's drought announcement is not merely a weather forecast; it is a direct assault on Baal's domain. If YHWH can withhold rain and Baal cannot send it, then Baal is nothing. The entire Elijah cycle is, at its core, a contest over who controls the forces of nature. The Zarephath sequence deepens the challenge: God sends his prophet to Sidon — Jezebel's homeland, Baal's heartland — and sustains a widow there. The God of Israel feeds a Phoenician widow in the territory of the storm god who cannot make it rain.*

Translation Friction: *The command to the widow raises ethical questions: Elijah asks a starving woman to give him her last food before feeding her dying son. The Hebrew is unsparing — *li* ('for me') comes first in the sentence. The command requires radical trust: feed the prophet before your child. The promise follows the command, but the woman must act on the promise before she sees the fulfillment. The death and resurrection of the widow's son in the second half presents interpretive challenges. The widow's accusation — 'Have you come to me to remind God of my sin and to kill my son?' — suggests she interprets her son's death as divine*

punishment triggered by the prophet's presence. Elijah's response is not theological explanation but physical action: he stretches himself (vayyitmoded) over the child three times. The verb is unusual and the mechanics are unclear. This is the first resurrection narrative in the Hebrew Bible, and it establishes a pattern that Elisha will later repeat (2 Kings 4:34-35).

*Connections: Elijah's drought directly challenges Baal, whose primary function in Canaanite religion was to bring rain and fertility. The contest at Carmel (chapter 18) will make this conflict explicit, but it begins here. Jesus references the Zarephath widow in Luke 4:25-26, pointing out that Elijah was sent to a Gentile widow rather than to any widow in Israel — a statement that nearly gets him killed. The ravens (orevim) that feed Elijah at Cherith may carry symbolic weight: ravens were unclean birds (Leviticus 11:15), yet God uses them as his provision agents. The multiplication of flour and oil prefigures Elisha's similar miracle (2 Kings 4:1-7) and, in Christian reading, the feeding miracles of Jesus. The phrase *dvar YHWH* ('word of the LORD') threads through the entire chapter (vv. 2, 5, 8, 16, 24), creating a structural spine: everything that happens is governed by God's word.*

¹Elijah the Tishbite, from the settlers of Gilead, said to Ahab, "As the LORD, the God of Israel, lives — the one before whom I stand — there will be no dew or rain in these years except by my word." ²The word of the LORD came to him: ³"Go from here. Turn eastward and hide yourself at the brook Cherith, which is east of the Jordan. ⁴You will drink from the brook, and I have commanded the ravens to provide for you there." ⁵He went and did according to the word of the LORD. He went and stayed at the brook Cherith, east of the Jordan. ⁶The ravens brought him bread and meat in the morning and bread and meat in the evening, and he drank from the brook. ⁷After some time the brook dried up, because there had been no rain in the land. ⁸The word of the LORD came to him: ⁹"Get up and go to Zarephath, which belongs to Sidon, and stay there. I have commanded a widow there to provide for you." ¹⁰He got up and went to Zarephath. When he came to the entrance of the town, a widow was there gathering sticks. He called to her and said, "Please bring me a little water in a vessel so I can drink." ¹¹As she was going to get it, he called after her and said, "Please bring me a piece of bread in your hand too." ¹²She said, "As the LORD your God lives, I have no bread — only a handful of flour in a jar and a little oil in a jug. Look, I am gathering a couple of sticks so that I can go and prepare it for myself and my son. We will eat it, and then we will die." ¹³Elijah said to her, "Do not be afraid. Go and do as you have said. But first make me a small cake from what you have and bring it out to me. Afterward, make something for yourself and your son. ¹⁴For this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'The jar of flour will not be used up and the jug of oil will not run dry until the day the LORD sends rain on the face of the ground.'" ¹⁵She went and did according to the word of Elijah. She, he, and her household ate for many days. ¹⁶The jar of flour was not used up and the jug of oil did not run dry, according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken through Elijah. ¹⁷After these things the son of the woman, the mistress of the house, fell ill. His illness grew so severe that no breath remained in him. ¹⁸So he said to Elijah, "What is between you and me, man of God? Have you come to me to bring my sin to remembrance and to kill my son?" ¹⁹He said to her, "Give me your son." He took him from her arms and carried him up to the upper room where he was staying. He laid him on his own bed. ²⁰He cried out to the LORD and said, "LORD my God, have you also brought disaster on the widow with whom I am staying, by causing her son to die?" ²¹He stretched himself out over the child three times and cried out to the LORD, "LORD my God, let this child's life return to him!" ²²The LORD heard the voice of Elijah, and the child's life returned to him, and he lived. ²³Elijah took the child and brought him down from the upper room into the house. He gave him to his mother, and Elijah said, "Look — your son is alive." ²⁴The woman said to Elijah, "Now I know that you are a man of God and that the word of the LORD in your mouth is truth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The geographical designation 'Tishbite from the settlers of Gilead' is debated. Tishbi may be a town (possibly Listib in Gilead) or may derive from toshav ('settler, sojourner'), making him 'the sojourner from among the sojourners of Gilead.' Either way, Elijah comes from the margins — far from the court, far from the cult centers, far from civilization's comforts.
1. The phrase *lefi devarai* ('by my word' or 'according to my word') is extraordinary in its boldness. The prophet claims personal authority over the weather — not 'by God's word' but 'by my word.' This does not indicate autonomy from God but rather the degree to which Elijah's word and God's word have become identified. When Elijah speaks, God acts.

2. The formula *dvar YHWH elay* ('the word of the LORD came to him') is the standard prophetic commission formula. Its first occurrence in the chapter establishes the pattern: Elijah speaks to Ahab (v. 1), then God speaks to Elijah (v. 2). The prophet is both speaker and listener — he delivers God's word to the king and receives God's word for himself.
3. The command *leikh mizzeh* ('go from here') removes Elijah from Ahab's reach immediately after the drought announcement. The verb *nistarta* ('hide yourself') uses the nifal of *satar* ('to hide, to conceal'). Elijah is not merely traveling; he is being hidden by God. The brook Kerit (Cherith) is unknown to modern geography; its location *asher al penei haYarden* ('which is before/east of the Jordan') places it in the wilderness of the Transjordan — Elijah's home territory of Gilead.
4. God's provision plan has two elements: the brook for water and the *orevim* ('ravens') for food. The verb *tsivviti* ('I have commanded') applies divine authority to the birds — the same verb used for commanding human servants. The word *orevim* could theoretically mean 'Arabs' (*Aravim*) or 'merchants' with different vowel pointing, but the traditional reading as 'ravens' creates the more striking image: unclean birds (Leviticus 11:15) serving as God's provision agents. God uses what the law declares unclean to feed his prophet.
5. The obedience formula *vayyeylekh vayyaas kidvar YHWH* ('he went and did according to the word of the LORD') contrasts sharply with every king of Israel who 'did evil in the eyes of the LORD.' Elijah simply obeys. The repetition *vayyeylekh vayyeshev* ('he went and he stayed') emphasizes both movement and settlement — he traveled to the location and remained there.
6. The provision is orderly and rhythmic: *lechem uvasar babboqer velechem uvasar ba'arev* ('bread and meat in the morning and bread and meat in the evening'). The pattern echoes the manna provision in Exodus 16 — morning and evening, measured and reliable. The combination of *lechem* ('bread') and *basar* ('meat') is a complete meal. God feeds his prophet in the wilderness as he once fed Israel in the wilderness.
7. The phrase *miqqets yamim* ('at the end of days,' that is, 'after some time') indicates an unspecified period. The verb *vayyivash* ('it dried up') uses the same root (*yavesh*) as the withering of Jeroboam's hand in 13:4 — the land itself is withering. The irony is sharp: Elijah's own prophecy of drought affects his own water supply. God's judgment does not exempt his prophet from the natural consequences. The clause *ki lo hayah geshem ba'arets* ('because there was no rain in the land') confirms the drought is in full force.
8. The formula repeats from verse 2: when the brook fails, the word of the LORD arrives with new instructions. God's provision plan does not end with the brook; it transitions. The timing is critical — the word comes when the old provision expires, not before.
9. Zarephath (modern Sarafand in Lebanon) was a Phoenician coastal town between Tyre and Sidon. Archaeological evidence confirms it was a metalworking center — the name may derive from *tsaraf* ('to smelt, to refine'). The town's location in Phoenician territory makes Elijah's journey a deliberate crossing of ethnic, political, and religious boundaries.
10. The scene at the town gate is carefully composed. Elijah finds the widow *meqosheshet etsim* ('gathering sticks') — the participle indicates ongoing action. She is collecting fuel for cooking, which will become significant when we learn she has almost nothing left to cook. Elijah's first request is modest: *me'at mayim bakkeli* ('a little water in a vessel'). Water was precious during drought; even this small request tests her generosity.
11. Elijah escalates the request while she is already complying with the first. The phrase *pat lechem beyadekh* ('a piece of bread in your hand') asks for food in addition to water. The word *pat* ('piece, morsel') is small — not a loaf but a fragment. The timing is significant: he waits until she has turned to go, then adds the harder request. Each step of obedience leads to a deeper test.
12. The phrase *Elohekha* ('your God') — not 'my God' — maintains the religious distance between the Phoenician widow and the Israelite prophet. She acknowledges YHWH as Elijah's deity without claiming him as her own. This will change by verse 24.
12. The two containers — *kad* ('jar, barrel') for flour and *tsapachat* ('jug, flask') for oil — represent her entire food supply reduced to the dregs. Both words suggest small domestic vessels, not storeroom containers. The diminutive quantities (*melo khaf*, 'a palm-full,' and *me'at*, 'a little') emphasize that she is past scarcity and into famine.
13. The command *al tir'i* ('do not be afraid') is the standard divine reassurance formula, used by angels and prophets throughout the Hebrew Bible. It acknowledges the legitimacy of her fear while redirecting her trust. The critical word is *barishonah* ('first') — Elijah asks to be fed before her dying son. The word *akh* ('but, only') signals the qualification: do as you planned, but change the order. The faith demanded here is extreme: give the last of your food to a stranger before your child, trusting that more will come.
14. The promise has two negatives and a time boundary: *kad haqqemach lo tikhleh* ('the flour jar will not be exhausted') and *tsappachat hashemen lo techsar* ('the oil jug will not fail'). The verb *kalah* ('to finish, to be complete, to be consumed') and *chasar* ('to lack, to diminish') together guarantee that the supply will neither run out nor decrease. The time limit *ad yom tet YHWH geshem* ('until the day the LORD gives rain') ties the miracle to the drought — when the drought ends, the supernatural provision will no longer be needed. The promise is exact: enough for the drought, no more.
15. Her obedience is total: *vatteylekh vatta'as kidvar Eliyyahu* ('she went and did according to the word of Elijah'). The phrase mirrors Elijah's own obedience in verse 5 (*kidvar YHWH*, 'according to the word of the LORD'). The widow obeys Elijah's word as Elijah obeys God's word — the chain of obedience extends from God through prophet to widow. The result: *vattokhal hi vahu uveytah yamim* ('she, he, and her household ate for days'). The word *yamim* ('days') is indefinite — a long, sustained provision.
16. The fulfillment formula repeats the promise of verse 14 almost verbatim, confirming its realization. The key phrase is *kidvar YHWH asher dibber beyad Eliyyahu* ('according to the word of the LORD that he spoke through Elijah'). The preposition *beyad* ('by the hand of, through') identifies Elijah as the instrument of God's word — the same language used for prophets throughout Kings. This is the fourth occurrence of *dvar YHWH* in the chapter, maintaining the structural thread.

- 17.** The phrase *achar haddevarim ha'elleh* ('after these things') separates this crisis from the provision miracle, indicating a new phase. The woman is called *ba'alat habbayit* ('mistress of the house'), a title of domestic authority. The illness intensifies: *vayyehi cholyo chazaq me'od* ('his illness became very severe'). The critical phrase is *ad asher lo notrah bo neshamah* ('until no breath remained in him'). The word *neshamah* ('breath') is the breath of life from Genesis 2:7. Its absence indicates death — the boy has stopped breathing.
- 18.** The widow's accusation *mah li valakh* ('what is there between me and you?') is a formula of confrontation that demands the other party explain their hostile involvement. She calls him *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') — the title becomes a reproach. Her theology interprets the prophet's presence as a catalyst for divine punishment: *lehazkhir et avoni* ('to make my sin remembered'). The verb *zakar* ('to remember') in the *hifil* means to bring something to active attention before God. She believes Elijah's holy presence has exposed her sin to divine scrutiny and caused her son's death as punishment. The theology of guilt is self-generated — the text never confirms that any sin caused the boy's death.
- 19.** Elijah's response to the widow's theological anguish is not a speech but an action: *teni li et benekh* ('give me your son'). He takes the child *meicheiqah* ('from her lap, from her bosom') — the intimate embrace of a grieving mother — and carries him to the *aliyyah* ('upper room, rooftop chamber') where he stays. He lays the boy *al mittato* ('on his own bed'). The prophet gives up his private space and his bed for the dead child. Every action is deliberate and physical.
- 20.** Elijah's prayer is raw and confrontational. He addresses God as *YHWH Elohai* ('LORD my God') — personal and intimate. His question *hagam al ha-almanah* ('have you also, upon the widow') uses *gam* ('also, even') with a tone of protest: have you gone this far? The verb *here'ota* ('you have brought evil/disaster') directly accuses God of causing the death. The verb *mitgorer* ('I am sojourning') echoes the widow's own status as a vulnerable person — both prophet and widow are sojourners, displaced and dependent. Elijah's prayer does not accept the death as final; it challenges God to act.
- 21.** The verb *vayyitmoded* ('he stretched himself, he measured himself') is a *hitpolel* form of *madad* ('to measure, to stretch'). It suggests Elijah laid his body along the child's body — measuring himself against the boy, as if transferring his own vitality. He does this *shalosh pe'amim* ('three times'), and each time cries out to God. The prayer *tashav na nefesh hayyeled hazzeh al qirbo* ('let the life of this child return to his inward parts') asks for the *nefesh* ('life, breath, soul') to come back *al qirbo* ('upon his inward parts, into his body'). This is the first resurrection prayer in the Hebrew Bible. Elisha will repeat the action in 2 Kings 4:34-35.
- 22.** The answer is direct: *vayyishma YHWH beqol Eliyyahu* ('the LORD heard the voice of Elijah'). The verb *shama* ('to hear') with the preposition *be-* indicates attentive, responsive listening — God not only heard but acted on what he heard. The result repeats the prayer's language: *vatashav nefesh hayyeled al qirbo* ('the life of the child returned to his inward parts'). The final word *vayyechi* ('and he lived') is a single verb that reverses death. The simplicity is the power — the longest journey (from death to life) is expressed in the shortest word.
- 23.** The descent from the upper room reverses the ascent of verse 19: *vayyoridehu min ha'aliyyah habbaytah* ('he brought him down from the upper room into the house'). The verb *vayyittenehu le'immo* ('he gave him to his mother') restores the child to the bosom from which Elijah took him. Elijah's declaration *re'i chai benekh* ('see, your son lives') is the climactic moment: the verb *re'i* ('see!') demands visual confirmation. The proof is not theological argument but a living child in his mother's arms.
- 24.** The woman's shift from 'your God' (v. 12) to this declaration of YHWH's word as truth represents a conversion of conviction, if not formal religious conversion. She has experienced the God of Israel through provision (the flour and oil) and through resurrection (her son's life). Both experiences were mediated by *dvar YHWH* — the word of the LORD. Her testimony is that this word is *emet*: trustworthy, faithful, true in both content and character.

18

Summary: After three years of drought — God's judgment on Israel's Baal worship — the LORD sends Elijah back to confront Ahab. On the way, Elijah meets Obadiah, the palace steward who secretly sheltered a hundred prophets from Jezebel's purge. Elijah challenges all Israel to gather at Mount Carmel for a decisive contest: two bulls, two altars, no fire — the god who answers by fire is the true God. The 450 prophets of Baal cry out from morning to evening, slashing themselves, but there is no voice, no one answering, no one paying attention. Elijah rebuilds the LORD's altar with twelve stones, drenches the sacrifice and wood with water three times, and prays a brief, restrained prayer. Fire from the LORD falls, consuming the burnt offering, the wood, the stones, and the water in the trench. The people fall on their faces and declare, "The LORD — he is God!" Elijah orders the execution of Baal's prophets at the Kishon brook, then climbs Carmel again to pray for rain. After seven times of watching, his servant reports a cloud the size of a man's hand rising from the sea. The sky blackens and heavy rain comes. The hand of the LORD comes upon Elijah and he runs ahead of Ahab's chariot all the way to Jezreel.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most dramatic chapters in the Hebrew Bible — a sustained narrative of theological confrontation that resolves in a single, devastating moment. The literary architecture is extraordinary: the chapter moves from drought to fire to rain, from silence to shout, from Baal's impotence to the LORD's overwhelming power. Elijah's taunt in verse 27 is among the most savage pieces of religious satire in ancient literature — he suggests that Baal is meditating, or has wandered off, or is on a journey, or perhaps is sleeping and needs to be awakened. The Hebrew term sig (translated variously as 'pursuing' or 'relieving himself') may carry a scatological sense, implying that Baal is in the latrine. The contrast between Baal's prophets — 450 men screaming, leaping, cutting themselves for hours — and Elijah's quiet, seven-sentence prayer is the narrative's theological thesis in miniature. The fire from heaven does not merely burn the sacrifice; it consumes the stones, the dust, and licks up the water. The verb lakakh ('to lick up') gives the fire an almost animate, predatory quality. The number twelve for the altar stones is deliberately loaded: in a kingdom that has split into two, Elijah rebuilds the altar with twelve stones 'according to the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob, to whom the word of the LORD came saying, Israel shall be your name.' The undivided altar stands as a rebuke to the divided kingdom.*

Translation Friction: *The narrative raises several tensions. First, the relationship between drought and Baal: since Baal was the Canaanite storm god, a three-year drought is itself a theological argument — the supposed lord of rain cannot produce rain, but the LORD withholds and gives it at will. Second, the killing of the prophets of Baal at the Kishon (verse 40) is difficult for modern readers. In the ancient context, this was the execution of those who led Israel into covenant violation — a cherem-type action. Third, Elijah's claim in verse 22 that he alone remains as a prophet of the LORD appears to contradict the hundred prophets Obadiah hid (verse 4). The text may mean he is the only prophet publicly active, or the statement reflects Elijah's subjective sense of isolation — a theme that intensifies in chapter 19. Fourth, the identity and role of the 400 prophets of Asherah mentioned in verse 19 is unclear; they are summoned but never appear in the contest, and some scholars suspect a textual variant.*

Connections: *The fire-from-heaven motif connects to the tabernacle dedication (Leviticus 9:24) and Solomon's temple dedication (2 Chronicles 7:1), where divine fire consumed the sacrifice as a sign of God's acceptance and presence. Elijah's twelve-stone altar deliberately echoes the covenant altar at Sinai (Exodus 24:4). The cry 'The LORD — he is God!' (YHWH hu ha-Elohim) becomes the liturgical shout of Israel and is preserved in the name Elijah itself (Eliyyahu: 'my God is the LORD'). The contest format — two altars, two sacrifices, let the deity respond — has no exact parallel in the Hebrew Bible and reads almost like a covenant lawsuit (riv) conducted through ordeal. The hand of the LORD coming upon Elijah to enable his supernatural run to Jezreel (verse 46) echoes the Spirit-empowerment motif seen with the judges (Judges 14:6, 14:19) and anticipates Elisha's similar experience (2 Kings 3:15).*

¹After many days, the word of the LORD came to Elijah in the third year: "Go, present yourself to Ahab, and I will give rain on the face of the land." ²Elijah went to present himself to Ahab. The famine in Samaria was severe. ³Ahab summoned Obadiah, who was over the household. Now Obadiah deeply revered the LORD. ⁴When Jezebel was cutting off the prophets of the LORD, Obadiah had taken a hundred prophets and hidden them, fifty to a cave, and sustained them with bread and water. ⁵Ahab said to Obadiah, "Go through the land to every spring and every stream. Perhaps we can find grass to keep the horses and mules alive, so we do not lose all the livestock." ⁶They divided the land between them for the search — Ahab heading one direction on his own, Obadiah heading another direction on his own. ⁷While Obadiah was on the road — there was Elijah, coming toward him. He recognized him, fell on his face, and said, "Is it you, my lord Elijah?" ⁸He said to him, "It is I. Go tell your master, 'Elijah is here.'" ⁹He said, "What have I done wrong, that you would hand your servant over to Ahab to be killed?" ¹⁰As the LORD your God lives, there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent to search for you. When they said, 'He is not here,' he made that kingdom and nation swear an oath that they could not find you. ¹¹And now you say, 'Go tell your master: Elijah is here!' ¹²As soon as I leave you, the spirit of the LORD will carry you off to some place I do not know. I will go and tell Ahab, but when he cannot find you, he will kill me — and your servant has revered the LORD since my youth! ¹³Has my lord not been told what I did when Jezebel was killing the prophets of the LORD — that I hid a hundred of the LORD's prophets, fifty men to a cave, and kept them alive with bread and water? ¹⁴And now you say, 'Go tell

your master: Elijah is here.' He will kill me! ¹⁵Elijah said, "As the LORD of Armies lives, before whom I stand — I will present myself to Ahab today." ¹⁶Obadiah went to find Ahab and reported to him, and Ahab set out to meet Elijah. ¹⁷When Ahab saw Elijah, Ahab said to him, "Is it you — the one who brings disaster on Israel?" ¹⁸He answered, "I have not brought disaster on Israel — you have, and your father's house, by abandoning the commandments of the LORD and going after the Baals." ¹⁹No w send word and gather all Israel to me at Mount Carmel, along with the four hundred and fifty prophets of Baal and the four hundred prophets of Asherah who eat at Jezebel's table. ²⁰Ahab sent word throughout all Israel and assembled the prophets at Mount Carmel. ²¹Elijah approached all the people and said, "How long will you limp between two positions? If the LORD is God, follow him. If Baal — follow him." But the people did not answer him a word. ²²Elijah said to the people, "I alone remain as a prophet of the LORD. But the prophets of Baal are four hundred and fifty men." ²³Let two bulls be given to us. Let them choose one bull for themselves, cut it up, and place it on the wood — but set no fire. I will prepare the other bull and place it on the wood, and I will set no fire. ²⁴You will call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of the LORD. The god who answers by fire — he is God." All the people responded, "The proposal is good." ²⁵Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, "Choose one bull for yourselves and prepare it first, since you are the majority. Call on the name of your god, but do not set fire." ²⁶They took the bull that was given them, prepared it, and called on the name of Baal from morning until noon, saying, "Baal, answer us!" But there was no voice and no one answering. They limped around the altar they had made. ²⁷At noon, Elijah mocked them. He said, "Shout louder! After all, he is a god! Maybe he is deep in thought, or maybe he has stepped away to relieve himself, or maybe he is on a trip. Perhaps he is sleeping and needs to be woken up!" ²⁸They shouted louder and slashed themselves with swords and spears, as was their custom, until the blood poured over them. ²⁹When noon passed, they raved on until the time of the evening offering. But there was no voice, no one answering, and no one paying attention. ³⁰Elijah said to all the people, "Come close to me." All the people came close to him, and he repaired the altar of the LORD that had been torn down. ³¹Elijah took twelve stones, matching the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob — to whom the word of the LORD had come saying, "Israel shall be your name." ³²He built the stones into an altar in the name of the LORD, and made a trench around the altar large enough to hold two seahs of seed. ³³He arranged the wood, cut up the bull, and placed it on the wood. Then he said, "Fill four jars with water and pour it over the burnt offering and the wood." He said, "Do it a second time," and they did it a second time. He said, "Do it a third time," and they did it a third time. ³⁴He said, "Do it a second time," and they did it a second time. He said, "Do it a third time," and they did it a third time. ³⁵The water ran all around the altar, and even the trench was filled with water. ³⁶At the time of the evening offering, Elijah the prophet stepped forward and said, "LORD, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel — let it be known today that you are God in Israel and that I am your servant, and that I have done all these things at your word." ³⁷Answer me, LORD! Answer me! Let this people know that you, LORD, are God — and that you are turning their hearts back. ³⁸The fire of the LORD fell. It consumed the burnt offering, the wood, the stones, and the dust, and it licked up the water in the trench. ³⁹When all the people saw it, they fell on their faces and declared, "The LORD — he is God! The LORD — he is God!" ⁴⁰Elijah said to them, "Seize the prophets of Baal — do not let a single one escape!" They seized them, and Elijah brought them down to the Kishon brook and slaughtered them there. ⁴¹Elijah said to Ahab, "Go up — eat and drink — for there is the sound of the roar of rain." ⁴²Ahab went up to eat and drink. But Elijah climbed to the top of Carmel, crouched down to the ground, and put his face between his knees. ⁴³He said to his servant, "Go up and look toward the sea." He went up and looked, and said, "There is nothing." Elijah said, "Go back — seven times." ⁴⁴On the seventh time, he said, "There is a small cloud rising from the sea — like a man's hand." Elijah said, "Go up and tell Ahab, 'Harness your chariot and go down before the rain stops you.'" ⁴⁵In no time, the sky grew black with clouds and wind, and a heavy rain came. Ahab mounted his chariot and drove to Jezreel. ⁴⁶The hand of the LORD was on Elijah. He tucked his robe into his belt and ran ahead of Ahab all the way to the entrance of Jezreel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *yamim rabbim* ('many days') compresses a long period of waiting — the drought has ground on. The command *lekh hera'eh el-Ach'av* ('go, show yourself to Ahab') uses a reflexive form: Elijah must make himself visible to the king he has been hiding from. The promise *ve-ettenah matar* ('and I will give rain') frames the coming rain as a divine gift, not a natural event. Rain is under the LORD's authority, not Baal's.

2. The narrator adds *ve-ha-ra'av chazaq be-Shomeron* ('and the famine was strong in Samaria') as a terse aside. The adjective *chazaq* ('strong, fierce') applied to famine conveys the crushing weight of the drought. Samaria, Ahab's capital, is specifically named — the seat of Baal worship is the seat of starvation.
3. Obadiah's title *asher al ha-bayit* ('who was over the house') designates the chief steward — the highest administrative official in the royal court. The parenthetical note that Obadiah *hayah yare et-YHWH me'od* ('feared the LORD greatly') introduces a stunning irony: the most loyal servant of the LORD is embedded in the household of the LORD's greatest enemy. The name Obadiah (*Ovadyahu*) itself means 'servant of the LORD.'
4. The verb *hakhrit* ('to cut off, exterminate') is a strong term — Jezebel was conducting a systematic purge of the LORD's prophets. Obadiah's response was equally systematic: *me'ah nevi'im* ('a hundred prophets') divided into two groups of fifty, hidden in separate caves for security. The verb *kilkalam* ('he sustained them') uses a root that means to provide ongoing nourishment — Obadiah was not performing a single act of rescue but running a sustained, secret operation at enormous personal risk.
5. Ahab's concern is revealing: he is searching for water and grass to save his horses and mules — military assets — not to relieve the people's suffering. The word *chatsir* ('grass, fodder') shows how desperate the drought has become. The phrase *ve-lo nakhrut me-ha-behemah* ('so we will not cut off from the livestock') uses the same root (*k-r-t*) that described Jezebel cutting off prophets in verse 4. The narrator draws a dark parallel: Jezebel cuts off prophets; Ahab worries about cutting off horses.
6. The separation of Ahab and Obadiah sets up the meeting between Obadiah and Elijah. The phrase *levaddo* ('by himself') is repeated for both, emphasizing that each is alone — creating the private space for the encounter that follows.
7. The exclamatory *ve-hinne* ('and behold!') marks the surprise of the encounter. Obadiah's immediate response — falling on his face — combines reverence and fear. His question *ha-attah zeh adoni Eliyyahu* ('Is it you, this one, my lord Elijah?') carries a note of disbelief. The demonstrative pronoun *zeh* ('this') adds emphasis: 'Is it really you?'
8. Elijah's response is blunt: *ani* ('I am'). His instruction to Obadiah — *lekh emor la-adonekha* ('go, say to your master') — uses *adon* ('lord, master') for Ahab, creating a contrast with Obadiah's use of *adoni* ('my lord') for Elijah. The question of who is truly 'lord' runs beneath the surface.
9. Obadiah's protest reveals genuine terror. The verb *chatati* ('I have sinned') is a strong word — he asks what offense he has committed to deserve what amounts to a death sentence. Announcing Elijah's presence to Ahab and then having Elijah disappear (as Obadiah fears) would leave Obadiah exposed as either a liar or a collaborator.
10. Obadiah's oath — *chai YHWH Elohekha* ('as the LORD your God lives') — is a solemn affirmation. His account reveals the international scope of Ahab's manhunt: every nation and kingdom in reach has been searched and put under oath. The verb *hishbi'a* ('he made them swear') shows Ahab extracting formal oaths from foreign governments that they were not harboring Elijah. This detail elevates Elijah from a local troublemaker to a figure of international significance.
11. Obadiah repeats Elijah's command back to him with incredulity. The repetition emphasizes the danger of the instruction.
12. Obadiah's fear is specific: *ruach YHWH yissa'akha* ('the spirit of the LORD will carry you away'). The verb *nasa* ('to lift, carry') suggests a supernatural transportation — Obadiah has heard reports of Elijah being moved by divine power to unknown locations. The phrase *me-ne'urai* ('from my youth') establishes Obadiah's lifelong faithfulness as grounds for his appeal.
13. Obadiah presses his credentials. He recounts the details of verse 4 in his own voice, asking Elijah to weigh the risk he has already taken. The phrase *chamishim chamishim ish ba-me'arah* ('fifty fifty men in a cave') uses a distributive repetition — fifty here, fifty there — emphasizing the organized nature of his rescue operation.
14. The threefold repetition of the command (verses 8, 11, 14) with Obadiah's escalating protests creates a sense of mounting dread. The final *va-haragani* ('and he will kill me!') is abrupt and emphatic.
15. Elijah's oath — *chai YHWH Tseva'ot asher amadti lefanav* ('as the LORD of Armies lives, before whom I stand') — carries his personal signature phrase. The expression *asher amadti lefanav* ('before whom I stand') defines Elijah's identity: he is a man who stands in God's presence. The emphatic *ki ha-yom era'eh elav* ('truly today I will show myself to him') gives Obadiah the guarantee he needs.
16. The verse is deliberately spare — two parallel movements converging. The narrator wastes no words on Ahab's reaction to the news; the story pushes forward to the confrontation.
17. Ahab's greeting is an accusation. The verb *okher* ('one who troubles, one who brings disaster') comes from the root *akhar*, which means to stir up trouble, to bring calamity — the same root behind the name of the Valley of Achor (Joshua 7:26) where Achan was executed for covenant violation. Ahab frames Elijah as the cause of Israel's suffering, not his own Baal worship.
18. Elijah throws the accusation back with force. The phrase *ki im-attah u-veit avikha* ('but rather you and your father's house') redirects blame to the royal dynasty. The verb *azavkhem* ('your abandoning') uses the plural — the whole house of Omri is implicated. The final phrase *va-telekh acharei ha-be'alim* ('and you followed the Baals') uses the plural 'Baals,' encompassing the entire system of Baal worship that Ahab imported through Jezebel.
19. Elijah issues commands to the king — a reversal of the normal power dynamic. Mount Carmel, overlooking the Mediterranean, was a boundary region between Israel and Phoenicia, making it the ideal site for a contest between the LORD and the Phoenician deity Baal. The phrase *okhlei shulchan Izevel* ('those who eat at Jezebel's table') marks these prophets as maintained by the queen — they are royal dependents, state-sponsored

religious officials.

20. Ahab's compliance is remarkable — the king obeys the prophet's command without argument. Whether this reflects curiosity, political calculation, or divine compulsion, the text does not say.
21. The verb *pasach* means 'to limp, to hop, to pass over' — it is the same root behind the word *Pesach* (Passover). Here it describes an unsteady, lurching gait. The *se'ippim* ('forks, divided branches') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, making the exact meaning debated, but the image is clear: a branching path, and Israel refuses to take either fork. The people's total silence is one of the most devastating moments in the chapter — a nation that cannot even articulate its loyalty.
22. The statement *ani notarti navi la-YHWH levaddi* ('I alone remain as a prophet of the LORD') is technically inaccurate — Obadiah has a hundred prophets hidden in caves. But Elijah is speaking from the perspective of public, active prophetic ministry: he is the only one standing openly. The contrast — one man against four hundred and fifty — is the narrative's way of framing the odds. The theological point is that numerical advantage means nothing when God is on one side.
23. Elijah designs the contest: identical conditions for both sides. The repeated insistence *ve-esh lo yasimu / ve-esh lo asim* ('no fire shall they set / no fire shall I set') eliminates human agency. The fire must come from the god. The verb *yinattechuhu* ('let them cut it in pieces') uses the standard sacrificial term for butchering an offering.
24. The verb *anah* ('to answer, to respond') appears here for the first time in the contest sequence and will recur with devastating effect throughout the chapter (vv. 24, 26, 29, 37). The people's response — *tov ha-davar* ('the word/proposal is good') — is their first speech in the chapter, breaking the silence of verse 21. They approve the terms but remain uncommitted to either side.
25. Elijah gives Baal's prophets every advantage: first turn, first choice of bull, and the weight of numbers (*ki attem ha-rabbim*, 'since you are the many'). The generosity is tactical — the longer they go first, the more conspicuous their failure. The phrase *asu rishonah* ('prepare it first') also carries an ironic edge: they will go first, and they will fail first.
26. The phrase *ein qol ve-ein oneh* ('no voice and no one answering') is a devastating verdict of total silence. The verb *va-yefassechu* ('they limped, they hopped') is the same root Elijah used in verse 21 (*poschim*) to describe Israel's indecision. Now the Baal prophets literally perform the limping dance that Elijah used as a metaphor. The ironic echo is unmistakable: those who worship Baal end up doing the Baal-limp.
27. The phrase *ki sig lo* is the most debated element. The verb *sig* can mean 'to pursue, to be occupied, to withdraw.' The Targum and some rabbinic commentators read it as a euphemism for bodily functions — Elijah is suggesting Baal is on the toilet. Modern translations often soften this to 'busy' or 'occupied,' but the Hebrew audience would likely have caught the crude implication. We render it as 'relieve himself' to preserve the intended shock. The entire speech is constructed to strip Baal of divinity by subjecting him to ordinary human limitations.
28. The verb *va-yitgoddu* ('they cut themselves, gashed themselves') describes ritual self-mutilation — a practice associated with Canaanite worship and explicitly prohibited in Israelite law (Deuteronomy 14:1). The phrase *ke-mishpatam* ('according to their custom') indicates this was normal practice for them, not an act of desperation. The detail *ad shefokh dam aleihem* ('until blood poured over them') is graphic and deliberate: the narrator wants the reader to see the contrast between this frenzy and Elijah's quiet prayer.
29. The verb *va-yitnabe'u* ('they prophesied, they raved') uses the same root as *navi* ('prophet') but in the *hitpa'el* (reflexive) form, which can mean ecstatic, frenzied behavior — not genuine prophecy but its counterfeit. The final verdict adds a third element to the silence formula: *ein qol* ('no voice'), *ein oneh* ('no one answering'), *ein qashev* ('no one paying attention'). The threefold negation is absolute: Baal does not speak, does not respond, and does not even notice. The mention of the *minchah* ('evening offering') places the time at mid-afternoon, meaning the Baal prophets have been at it for six to eight hours.
30. The shift is dramatic: after hours of frenzied screaming, Elijah speaks quietly. His first act is repair — *va-yerappei et mizbach YHWH he-harus* ('he healed the altar of the LORD that was torn down'). The verb *rippei* means 'to heal,' not merely 'to rebuild.' The altar is treated as something wounded. The participle *harus* ('torn down, demolished') indicates deliberate destruction — someone had actively demolished the LORD's altar on Carmel, likely during Jezebel's purge.
31. The twelve stones are theologically loaded. In a kingdom split into two (ten northern tribes under Ahab, two southern tribes under Jehoshaphat), Elijah rebuilds the altar with twelve stones — an undivided number representing an undivided people. The reference to Jacob's renaming (Genesis 32:28, 35:10) reaches back past the monarchy, past the conquest, to the patriarchal foundation. The altar embodies a theological claim: before God, there are not two kingdoms but one Israel.
32. The trench (*te'alah*) is an unusual detail — altars do not normally have trenches. Its purpose will become clear in verses 33-35: it is designed to hold the water that Elijah will pour over the sacrifice, making the eventual fire even more impossible by natural means. The measurement *ke-veit sa'atayim zera* ('like a house of two seahs of seed') uses an agricultural measure — the area of ground that two seahs of seed would cover, roughly one-third of an acre's perimeter. This is a substantial trench.
33. The pouring of water — twelve jars total (four jars times three rounds) — deliberately makes ignition impossible by natural means. During a severe drought, water itself would have been precious, making the gesture even more dramatic. The repetition *shenu* ('do it twice'), *shaleshu* ('do it three times') builds a rhythmic pattern of excess: Elijah is not merely dampening the sacrifice but flooding it.

- 34.** Note: In the Hebrew text, the command to repeat the water-pouring extends across verses 33-34, with verse 34 providing the second and third repetitions. Some verse divisions place all three repetitions in verse 33; we follow the standard Masoretic verse division.
- 35.** The scene is now set: the sacrifice is soaked, the wood is drenched, and the trench around the altar is full of water. Every natural possibility of fire has been eliminated. The narrative has systematically removed every explanation except divine intervention.
- 36.** Elijah's prayer is startlingly brief after the Baal prophets' hours of screaming. He begins with the patriarchal invocation — YHWH Elohei Avraham Yitschaq ve-Yisra'el — reaching back to the covenant foundation. He uses 'Israel,' not 'Jacob,' matching the renaming in verse 31. His three petitions in this verse are: (1) that God is known as God in Israel, (2) that Elijah is recognized as God's servant, and (3) that everything he has done has been at God's direction (u-vidvarekha asiti, 'at your word I have done'). This last point is crucial — Elijah is not acting on his own authority.
- 37.** The verb anah ('answer') appears here for the climactic time. Elijah's prayer is seven sentences total (verses 36-37), compared to the Baal prophets' hours of shouting. The brevity is the point — a living God does not need to be begged. The phrase hasibota et libbam achorannit is sometimes translated 'you have turned their hearts back' (that is, back to God) or 'you have turned their hearts backward' (that is, toward apostasy). Both readings are grammatically possible. The context favors the restorative sense: Elijah is praying that the fire will be the means of God turning Israel's hearts back to himself.
- 38.** The word esh ('fire') carries its full theological weight here. This is not lightning or spontaneous combustion; it is esh-YHWH, fire that belongs to God and acts as God's agent. The catalogue of consumed items (offering, wood, stones, dust, water) is deliberately comprehensive — nothing remains. The verb lakakh in the pi'el form (likhekah, 'licked up') is rare and vivid. The entire verse is a single, breathless sentence in Hebrew, conveying the instantaneous and total nature of the divine response.
- 39.** The people's response — YHWH hu ha-Elohim, YHWH hu ha-Elohim — is doubled for emphasis and becomes a liturgical declaration. The pronoun hu ('he') is emphatic: 'The LORD, he and no other, is God.' This cry reverses the silence of verse 21 and answers Elijah's challenge directly. The phrase is preserved in the name Elijah itself (Eliyyahu: 'my God is YHWH') and became part of the liturgy for Yom Kippur, where it is recited at the close of the Ne'ilah service.
- 40.** The verb va-yishchatem ('he slaughtered them') uses the root shachat, the standard term for ritual slaughter of animals. Its use here for the execution of the Baal prophets gives the killing a sacrificial overtone — they are treated as offerings in a purging of covenant violation. The Kishon brook (nachal Qishon) runs through the Jezreel Valley at the foot of Carmel. This execution functions as a cherem-type purge: covenant violators who led Israel astray are removed completely, as prescribed in Deuteronomy 13:1-5.
- 41.** The phrase qol hamon ha-gashem ('the sound of the abundance of rain') is remarkable: there is no rain yet, no visible clouds, but Elijah hears it coming. The word hamon ('roar, abundance, tumult') gives the rain an auditory presence — Elijah perceives with prophetic hearing what is still invisible. The command to Ahab to eat and drink is almost dismissive: the king is sent off to a meal while the prophet does the real work of prayer.
- 42.** The contrast is stark: Ahab eats while Elijah prays. The posture — va-yighar artsah va-yasem panav bein birkav ('he crouched toward the earth and placed his face between his knees') — is an extreme prayer position, folding the body into itself in intense supplication. The verb gahar ('to crouch, to bow low') conveys total physical self-abasement.
- 43.** The servant's report — ein me'umah ('there is nothing') — sets up the suspense. Elijah's response — shuv sheva pe'amim ('return seven times') — combines persistence with the completeness signified by seven. The sea (yam) is the Mediterranean, visible from Carmel's summit. Elijah is watching for the first sign of the rain he has already heard prophetically.
- 44.** The image av qetannah ke-khaf ish ('a small cloud like a man's palm') is one of the most memorable in the Hebrew Bible — from this tiny sign, Elijah knows the deluge is coming. The word kaf ('palm, hand') measures the cloud against a human hand, emphasizing its smallness. Elijah's command to Ahab — esor va-red ('harness and go down') — is urgent: the rain that has been withheld for three years is about to be released with overwhelming force.
- 45.** The phrase ad koh ve-ad koh ('until here and until there') conveys rapidity — everything changed in moments. The verb hitqadderu ('grew dark, blackened') describes the sky filling with storm clouds. The rain — geshem gadol ('a great rain') — breaks the three-year drought. Ahab rides for Jezreel, his winter residence in the valley below Carmel.
- 46.** The phrase yad-YHWH hayetah el-Eliyyahu ('the hand of the LORD was on Elijah') signals supernatural empowerment. The verb va-yeshanneis motnav ('he girded his loins') describes tucking the long outer garment into the belt for running — a practical action enabled by divine power. The distance from Carmel to Jezreel is approximately seventeen miles. Elijah outran a chariot team over that distance in a rainstorm. The image closes the chapter with a picture of prophetic vitality that makes the exhaustion and despair of chapter 19 all the more shocking.

19

Summary: *Jezebel sends a messenger swearing to kill Elijah by the next day. The prophet who just defeated 450 prophets of Baal and outran a chariot flees in terror into the wilderness south of Beersheba. Exhausted and suicidal, he lies under a broom tree and asks to die. An angel twice wakes him and provides food and water, then Elijah walks forty days and forty nights to Horeb — the mountain of God, where Moses received the covenant. There, in a cave, the LORD asks him, 'What are you doing here, Elijah?' He responds with a speech of total isolation: he has been utterly zealous for the LORD, but Israel has abandoned the covenant, torn down the altars, killed the prophets, and he alone is left, and they are hunting him. Then the LORD tells him to stand on the mountain: a great wind tears the mountains apart, but the LORD is not in the wind; an earthquake shakes the ground, but the LORD is not in the earthquake; fire comes, but the LORD is not in the fire. After the fire — a sound of thin silence. Elijah wraps his face in his cloak and goes to the cave entrance. God asks the same question, receives the same answer, then sends Elijah back with three commissions: anoint Hazael king of Aram, anoint Jehu king of Israel, and anoint Elisha as his prophetic successor. God corrects Elijah's despair: seven thousand in Israel have not bowed to Baal. Elijah finds Elisha plowing with twelve yoke of oxen, throws his cloak over him, and Elisha follows.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's theological center is the theophany at Horeb, one of the most discussed passages in the Hebrew Bible. The phrase qol demamah daqqah (verse 12) — traditionally translated 'a still small voice' — is a paradox in Hebrew: qol means 'sound' or 'voice,' demamah means 'silence' or 'stillness,' and daqqah means 'thin, fine, crushed.' A sound of thin silence. A voice of crushed stillness. The phrase resists easy translation because it describes something that exists at the boundary of hearing and not-hearing. The great wind, earthquake, and fire that precede it are all phenomena associated with the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16-18), and the text explicitly says the LORD was not in any of them. This is not a rejection of Sinai's mode of revelation but an expansion: God can come in fire (as he did on Carmel in chapter 18), but God is not limited to fire. The contrast between Elijah's terrifying power on Carmel and his suicidal collapse under a broom tree is one of the most psychologically realistic portraits in ancient literature — the prophet is not a superhero but a human being who crashes after the adrenaline of divine encounter.*

Translation Friction: *Several difficulties arise. First, Elijah's claim to be the sole remaining faithful person (verses 10, 14) contradicts both the hundred prophets Obadiah saved (18:4) and the seven thousand God reveals in verse 18. This may represent Elijah's subjective despair rather than objective reality — the text may be portraying a prophet whose perception has been distorted by trauma and exhaustion. Second, the nature of the qol demamah daqqah is endlessly debated: is it literal silence? A barely audible whisper? A paradoxical oxymoron meant to defeat human categorization? We render it with the paradox intact. Third, Elijah receives three commissions (anoint Hazael, anoint Jehu, anoint Elisha) but personally carries out only the third; the first two are eventually accomplished by Elisha (2 Kings 8:13, 9:1-3). Fourth, the forty-day journey to Horeb deliberately echoes Moses (Exodus 34:28, Deuteronomy 9:9), placing Elijah in Mosaic typology, but the text never explicitly makes the comparison.*

Connections: *The entire chapter is constructed as a Moses-Elijah parallel. Elijah flees to Horeb (the mountain of God), enters a cave (Moses was placed in a cleft of the rock, Exodus 33:22), experiences wind-earthquake-fire (the Sinai theophany, Exodus 19:16-18), and is commissioned to return with a task. The forty-day journey echoes Moses' forty days on Sinai. The question mah lekha poh Eliyahu ("What are you doing here, Elijah?") appears twice (verses 9, 13) with identical wording, framing the theophany as a double confrontation with the prophet's despair. Elijah's throwing his cloak (aderet) over Elisha (verse 19) establishes the prophetic mantle as a symbol of succession — the same mantle will later divide the Jordan (2 Kings 2:8, 2:14). The seven thousand who have not bowed to Baal (verse 18) introduces the remnant theology that will become central to Isaiah and the later prophets. The broom tree (rotem) under which Elijah collapses is the same desert shrub mentioned in Psalm 120:4, where its coals represent fierce heat — even in his collapse, Elijah is surrounded by fire imagery.*

¹Ahab told Jezebel everything Elijah had done — and how he had killed all the prophets with the sword. ²Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, "May the gods do this to me and more — if by this time tomorrow I have not made your life like the life of one of them!" ³He was afraid. He got up and fled for his life. He came to Beersheba, which belongs to Judah, and

left his servant there. ⁴He went a day's journey into the wilderness, sat down under a broom tree, and asked to die. He said, "Enough! Now, LORD, take my life — I am no better than my fathers." ⁵He lay down and fell asleep under the broom tree. Then an angel touched him and said, "Get up and eat." ⁶He looked, and there at his head was a cake baked on hot stones and a jar of water. He ate and drank, then lay down again. ⁷The angel of the LORD came back a second time, touched him, and said, "Get up and eat — the journey ahead is too much for you." ⁸He got up, ate, and drank, and walked in the strength of that food forty days and forty nights to Horeb, the mountain of God. ⁹He came to a cave there and spent the night. Then the word of the LORD came to him: "What are you doing here, Elijah?" ¹⁰He said, "I have been utterly zealous for the LORD, the God of Armies — but the Israelites have abandoned your covenant, torn down your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. I alone am left, and they are seeking my life to take it." ¹¹He said, "Go out and stand on the mountain before the LORD." And there — the LORD was passing by. A great and powerful wind was tearing the mountains apart and shattering rocks before the LORD — but the LORD was not in the wind. After the wind, an earthquake — but the LORD was not in the earthquake. ¹²After the earthquake, fire — but the LORD was not in the fire. And after the fire — a sound of thin silence. ¹³When Elijah heard it, he wrapped his face in his cloak, went out, and stood at the entrance of the cave. A voice came to him and said, "What are you doing here, Elijah?" ¹⁴He said, "I have been utterly zealous for the LORD, the God of Armies — but the Israelites have abandoned your covenant, torn down your altars, and killed your prophets with the sword. I alone am left, and they are seeking my life to take it." ¹⁵The LORD said to him, "Go, return by your way to the wilderness of Damascus. When you arrive, anoint Hazael as king over Aram." ¹⁶Anoint Jehu son of Nimshi as king over Israel, and anoint Elisha son of Shaphat from Abel-meholah as prophet in your place. ¹⁷Whoever escapes the sword of Hazael, Jehu will kill. And whoever escapes the sword of Jehu, Elisha will kill. ¹⁸Yet I will leave seven thousand in Israel — every knee that has not bowed to Baal and every mouth that has not kissed him. ¹⁹He left from there and found Elisha son of Shaphat plowing. Twelve teams of oxen were ahead of him, and he was with the twelfth. Elijah crossed over to him and threw his cloak onto him. ²⁰He left the oxen and ran after Elijah, saying, "Let me kiss my father and mother, and then I will follow you." He said to him, "Go back — for what have I done to you?" ²¹He turned back from following him, took the team of oxen and slaughtered them. Using the plowing equipment as fuel, he boiled the meat and gave it to the people, and they ate. Then he got up, went after Elijah, and served him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ahab functions as a messenger, reporting to Jezebel. The phrase *et kol asher asah* ('everything he had done') encompasses the entire Carmel contest. The specific mention of killing *ba-charev* ('with the sword') emphasizes the violence. Jezebel, not Ahab, is the one who responds — she is the driving force behind Baal worship in Israel.
2. Jezebel's oath — *koh ya'asun elohim ve-khoh yosifun* ('may the gods do thus and add more') — is the standard oath formula, but she swears by 'gods' (plural), not by the LORD. Her threat is specific: *ka-et machar* ('by this time tomorrow') — she sets a twenty-four-hour deadline. Some commentators note that sending a warning rather than an assassin suggests Jezebel wanted to frighten Elijah into fleeing rather than actually killing him, since killing him would make him a martyr. Whether strategic or impulsive, the threat achieves its aim.
3. The verb *va-yar*' is read by the Masoretic tradition as *va-yira* ('he feared'), though some manuscripts read *va-yar* ('he saw'). The Qere reading ('he feared') makes better narrative sense and we follow it. The phrase *va-yelekh el nafsho* ('he went for his life / to save his soul') conveys desperate flight. Beersheba is at the extreme southern edge of Judah — Elijah has crossed the entire northern kingdom and entered the south. Leaving his servant behind means he continues alone into the wilderness.
4. The *rotem* ('broom tree') is a desert shrub that provides meager shade — barely enough to shelter under. The phrase *va-yish'al et nafsho lamut* ('he asked his soul to die') is a formal request for death. His prayer — *rav attah YHWH qach nafshi* ('enough now, LORD, take my life') — is shockingly brief. The word *rav* ('enough, too much') expresses complete exhaustion. The comparison *ki lo tov anokhi me-avotai* ('I am no better than my fathers') is enigmatic: it may mean he has failed as thoroughly as previous generations, or that he sees no reason to continue when all who came before him also died.
5. The transition from suicidal prayer to sleep is abrupt — Elijah collapses from exhaustion. The angel (*mal'akh*) touches him (*noge'a bo*), a gentle physical contact. The command *qum ekhol* ('get up, eat') is simple and practical — God's first response to Elijah's despair is not a sermon but a meal.
6. The *ugat retsafim* ('cake on hot coals/stones') is simple bread baked directly on heated stones — basic wilderness food. The *tsappachat mayim* ('jar of water') provides the other essential. The detail *me-ra'ashotav* ('at his head') places the provisions right where he would see them upon waking. Elijah eats, drinks, and goes back to sleep — his depression is so deep that one meal is not enough to rouse him.

7. The angel returns shenit ('a second time'), showing divine persistence. The reason given — ki rav mimmekha ha-derekh ('for the road is too great for you') — acknowledges Elijah's weakness while pointing him forward. The word rav ('great, much') echoes Elijah's own rav ('enough') from verse 4: Elijah said 'enough' of life; God says the road is 'great' — implying there is more ahead, more to do.
8. The phrase be-khoach ha-akhilah ha-hi ('in the strength of that food') gives the angel's provision a supernatural quality — two meals sustain a forty-day journey. The number arba'im yom ve-arba'im lailah ('forty days and forty nights') explicitly echoes Moses at Sinai (Exodus 24:18, 34:28) and Moses' second ascent (Deuteronomy 9:9). Horeb (Chorev) is the alternative name for Sinai — by walking to Horeb, Elijah is retracing the path of Moses back to the place where the covenant was given.
9. The definite article ha-me'arah ('the cave') suggests a specific, known cave — possibly the same cleft of the rock (niqrat ha-tsur) where Moses stood when God's glory passed by (Exodus 33:22). The question mah lekha poh Eliyyahu ('What is there for you here, Elijah?' or 'What are you doing here, Elijah?') is open-ended and penetrating. It can be read as a rebuke ('Why have you fled here?') or as pastoral inquiry ('Tell me what is wrong'). The identical question will be asked again after the theophany (verse 13), framing the entire experience.
10. Elijah's speech is a concentrated lament with four accusations against Israel: they abandoned the covenant (azvu berithkha), demolished the altars (mizbechotekha harasu), murdered the prophets (nevi'ekha hargu va-charev), and are hunting him (vayevaqsu et nafshi). The opening phrase qanno qinneti ('I have been utterly zealous') uses the cognate accusative construction for emphasis — zealous with zeal. The verb qana can mean both 'to be jealous' and 'to be zealous'; for God's cause, 'zealous' captures the sense.
11. The command tse ve-amadta ba-har lifnei YHWH ('go out and stand on the mountain before the LORD') echoes God's instruction to Moses (Exodus 34:2). The phrase YHWH over ('the LORD passing by') uses the same verb as God's passing before Moses (Exodus 33:22, 34:6). The great wind — ruach gedolah ve-chazaq mefarreq harim u-meshabber sela'im ('a great and strong wind tearing mountains and shattering rocks') — is described with violent participles: mefarreq ('ripping apart'), meshabber ('breaking to pieces'). Each phenomenon is negated: lo va-ruach YHWH ('the LORD was not in the wind'). The negation is theological: power is not presence.
12. The translation problem is genuine and ancient. The Septuagint renders it phone auras leptes ('a sound of a thin breeze'). The Vulgate has sibilus aurae tenuis ('a whistling of a thin breeze'). The Targum paraphrases as qal d'mashabchin b'chashay ('a sound of those praising in silence'). Each translation resolves the paradox differently. We preserve the paradox because the Hebrew clearly intends it: qol ('sound') + demamah ('silence') is an oxymoron. The adjective daqqah ('thin, fine') intensifies rather than resolves the tension — this silence has been refined to its essence.
12. The fire (esh) that appears before the qol demamah daqqah is significant: on Carmel, God answered by fire (18:38). Here at Horeb, God is explicitly not in the fire. The same God who used fire as his instrument on Carmel now transcends fire. Elijah is being taught that divine presence is not reducible to any single mode of manifestation.
13. Elijah's response to the qol demamah daqqah is immediate: va-yalet panav be-addaretto ('he wrapped his face in his cloak'). The verb lalat ('to wrap, to cover') and the covering of the face echo Moses covering his face before God (Exodus 3:6). The aderet ('cloak, mantle') is Elijah's prophetic garment — the same one he will throw over Elisha in verse 19. The question is repeated identically: mah lekha poh Eliyyahu. Nothing has changed in the question; the theophany stands between the two identical questions to see if Elijah's answer will change.
14. Elijah's answer is word-for-word identical to verse 10. The theophany — wind, earthquake, fire, thin silence — has not changed his speech. This repetition is itself a statement: Elijah is locked in his despair, unable to move past his script. God's response in the following verses will not argue with the despair but redirect Elijah toward action.
15. God's response to Elijah's despair is not comfort but commission: lekh shuv le-darkekha ('go, return on your way'). The direction is reversed — instead of fleeing south, Elijah is sent north to Damascus. The first commission is extraordinary: anointing Hazael as king over Aram (Syria), a foreign nation. This implies God's sovereignty extends beyond Israel's borders — God appoints kings even among nations that do not acknowledge him. Elijah himself does not carry out this specific anointing; Elisha does (2 Kings 8:13).
16. Three commissions in rapid sequence: Hazael over Aram, Jehu over Israel, Elisha as prophetic successor. The phrase navi tachtekha ('prophet in your place') signals that Elijah's ministry has a defined endpoint — he will be replaced. This is not punishment but provision: God ensures the prophetic office continues. Abel-meholah is in the Jordan Valley, placing Elisha in the agricultural heartland.
17. The three agents — Hazael, Jehu, Elisha — form a net of judgment that leaves no escape. The verb yamit ('will put to death') is applied even to Elisha, the prophetic figure, indicating that the prophet's word carries lethal force (as seen in 2 Kings 2:24). The structure is a chain: what one misses, the next catches. This answers Elijah's despair: God is not passive — judgment on Baal worship will come through multiple instruments across multiple nations.
18. God's correction of Elijah's 'I alone am left' is devastating in its precision: not one but seven thousand. The number shiv'at alafim ('seven thousand') may be symbolic (seven as completeness multiplied by a thousand) or literal; either way, it demolishes Elijah's claim to sole faithfulness. The two marks of loyalty — knees that have not bowed (lo khare'u) and mouths that have not kissed (lo nashaq) — describe the physical gestures of Baal worship: prostration and the ritual kiss of the idol image. These seven thousand are the hidden faithful — the remnant.
19. The scene is vividly agricultural: Elisha is plowing with shneim asar tsemadim ('twelve yoke/teams of oxen'), indicating substantial family wealth — this is a large farming operation. The detail ve-hu bi-shneim he-asar ('and he was with the twelfth') places Elisha at the end of the line, driving the last team. Elijah's action — va-yashlekh addaretto elav ('he threw his cloak onto him') — is abrupt and wordless. The aderet ('cloak, mantle') is the prophetic garment; throwing it over Elisha is a symbolic claim of authority and succession. No words are spoken; the gesture says everything.

- 20.** Elisha's request — *eshsheqah na le-avi u-le-immi* ('let me kiss my father and mother') — is a request for a proper farewell. Elijah's response — *lekh shuv ki meh asiti lakh* ('go back, for what have I done to you?') — is cryptic. It may mean: 'Go, do what you need to do, for I have not constrained you' (granting permission), or it may be a test: 'Consider what I have done to you and decide.' The ambiguity is likely deliberate — the call requires free response.
- 21.** Elisha's farewell is total and irreversible. He slaughters the oxen (his livelihood) and burns the plowing equipment (*u-vikhli ha-baqar bishlam ha-basar*, 'with the equipment of the oxen he boiled the meat') — destroying the tools of his former life to fuel a communal feast. This is not a temporary leave of absence; it is a permanent break. The verb *va-yesharteihu* ('he served/ministered to him') describes Elisha's role as Elijah's attendant — the prophetic apprenticeship begins.

20

Summary: *Ben-hadad king of Aram gathers thirty-two allied kings and besieges Samaria. He sends messengers demanding Ahab's silver, gold, wives, and children. Ahab initially agrees, but when Ben-hadad escalates to demanding the right to ransack the city, Ahab's elders advise refusal and war begins. An unnamed prophet tells Ahab that the LORD will give him victory, specifying that the young attendants of the provincial commanders will lead the charge. Ahab attacks at noon while Ben-hadad and his allied kings are drinking themselves drunk. The Arameans are routed. The prophet warns Ahab that Ben-hadad will return the following spring. Aram's advisors tell Ben-hadad that Israel's god is a god of the hills and must be fought on the plain; another prophet announces that the LORD will prove he is not merely a hill-god by giving victory on the plain as well. The Israelites camp across from the massive Aramean force like two small flocks of goats. In battle, Israel kills one hundred thousand foot soldiers in a single day. Ben-hadad flees to Aphek, where a wall collapses on twenty-seven thousand of his remaining troops. Ben-hadad surrenders with sackcloth and rope, and Ahab — instead of executing the cherem judgment — makes a treaty with him, calls him 'brother,' and lets him go. A prophet from the sons of the prophets, using a parable-ambush, confronts Ahab: because he released the man God devoted to destruction, Ahab's life will be forfeit for Ben-hadad's life, and his people for Ben-hadad's people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains two separate battles, two prophetic interventions, and a stunning prophetic judgment scene — all unified by the theological question of whether Ahab will treat military victory as divine gift or personal prerogative. The Aramean advisors' theology in verse 23 is remarkable: they analyze the LORD as a localized deity ('their gods are gods of the hills') and propose a tactical correction ('fight them in the plain'). God's response is not to ignore this theological error but to refute it militarily — the victory on the plain proves that the LORD is God of all terrain, not a regional spirit. The final prophetic judgment (verses 35-43) uses a brilliant literary device: the prophet is wounded and disguised, tells a parable that traps Ahab into pronouncing his own sentence (exactly as Nathan trapped David in 2 Samuel 12:1-7), then reveals the application. Ahab's treaty with Ben-hadad — calling him 'my brother' and letting him ride in his chariot — directly violates the principle of cherem, the total devotion to destruction of what God has marked for judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the prophets in this chapter is debated. They are not Elijah — the text introduces them anonymously as *navi echad* ('a certain prophet') and *ish echad mi-benei ha-nevi'im* ('a man from the sons of the prophets'). Some traditions identify the unnamed prophet as Micaiah (who appears in chapter 22), but this is speculative. The number of casualties — 100,000 in battle and 27,000 killed by a falling wall — may be understood as round numbers or may reflect ancient Near Eastern military rhetoric; the Hebrew word *elef* can sometimes mean 'unit' or 'clan' rather than literally 'thousand.' The speed of events — two major battles with prophetic consultations in between — compresses what was likely a longer military campaign into a tight narrative sequence. Ben-hadad's survival and treaty-making anticipates the political alliance that will feature in chapter 22.*

Connections: *The cherem-violation pattern connects directly to 1 Samuel 15, where Saul spared Agag king of Amalek and was rejected from kingship for it. Ahab's sparing of Ben-hadad is the same offense: releasing what God devoted to destruction. The prophetic judgment formula — *nafshekha tachat nafsho* ('your life in place of his life') — establishes a substitutionary principle that will play out in Ahab's death at Ramoth-gilead (chapter 22). The Aramean claim that Israel's god is a 'god of the hills' engages the broader theological polemic of the Hebrew Bible against divine localization — the LORD is not bound to any geography, temple, or terrain. The sons-of-the-prophets community (*benei ha-nevi'im*) appears here for the first time in Kings and will become*

important in the Elisha narratives.

¹Ben-hadad king of Aram gathered his entire army — thirty-two kings were with him, along with horses and chariots. He marched up, besieged Samaria, and made war against it. ²He sent messengers to Ahab king of Israel in the city, saying, "This is what Ben-hadad says: ³Your silver and your gold are mine. Your wives and your best children are mine." ⁴The king of Israel answered, "As you say, my lord the king — I am yours, and everything I have." ⁵The messengers returned and said, "This is what Ben-hadad says: 'I sent to you saying that you must hand over your silver, gold, wives, and children to me. ⁶But tomorrow at about this time I will send my servants to you. They will search your house and the houses of your officials, and whatever is desirable in your eyes, they will take it away.'" ⁷The king of Israel summoned all the elders of the land and said, "Take note — see that this man is seeking trouble! He sent for my wives, my children, my silver, and my gold, and I did not refuse him." ⁸All the elders and all the people said to him, "Do not listen. Do not agree." ⁹He told Ben-hadad's messengers, "Tell my lord the king: everything you demanded of your servant the first time, I will do. But this — I cannot do." The messengers left and brought back the answer. ¹⁰Ben-hadad sent to him and said, "May the gods do this to me and more — if the dust of Samaria will be enough to fill the fists of all the soldiers who follow me!" ¹¹The king of Israel replied, "Tell him: the one who straps on his armor should not boast like the one who takes it off." ¹²When he heard this answer — he was drinking with the kings in the field shelters — he said to his servants, "Take your positions!" And they took positions against the city. ¹³Then a prophet approached Ahab king of Israel and said, "This is what the LORD says: Do you see this entire massive army? I am giving it into your hand today, and you will know that I am the LORD." ¹⁴Ahab asked, "By whom?" He said, "This is what the LORD says: by the young attendants of the provincial commanders." Ahab asked, "Who will begin the battle?" He said, "You." ¹⁵He mustered the young attendants of the provincial commanders — they numbered two hundred and thirty-two. After them he mustered all the fighting men, all the Israelites — seven thousand. ¹⁶They went out at noon. Ben-hadad was drinking himself drunk in the field shelters — he and the thirty-two kings allied with him. ¹⁷The young attendants of the provincial commanders went out first. Ben-hadad sent scouts, and they reported to him, "Men have come out from Samaria." ¹⁸He said, "Whether they have come out for peace or for war — take them alive." ¹⁹These went out from the city — the young attendants of the provincial commanders, with the army behind them. ²⁰Each struck his man. The Arameans fled, and Israel pursued them. Ben-hadad king of Aram escaped on a horse with his cavalry. ²¹The king of Israel went out and struck down the horses and chariots, and inflicted a devastating defeat on the Arameans. ²²The prophet approached the king of Israel and said, "Go, strengthen yourself. Understand and consider what you must do, because at the turn of the year the king of Aram will come up against you." ²³The servants of the king of Aram said to him, "Their gods are gods of the hills — that is why they overpowered us. But if we fight them on the plain, surely we will overpower them." ²⁴And do this: remove the kings from their commands, each one, and put governors in their place. ²⁵Rebuild an army equal to the army you lost — horse for horse, chariot for chariot. Then we will fight them on the plain, and we will surely overpower them." He listened to their advice and did so. ²⁶At the turn of the year, Ben-hadad mustered the Arameans and marched up to Aphek to fight against Israel. ²⁷The Israelites were mustered and provisioned, and marched out to meet them. The Israelites camped opposite them like two small flocks of goats, while the Arameans filled the land. ²⁸The man of God approached and said to the king of Israel, "This is what the LORD says: Because the Arameans have said, 'The LORD is a god of the hills and not a god of the valleys' — I will give this entire massive army into your hand, and you will know that I am the LORD." ²⁹They camped opposite each other for seven days. On the seventh day, battle was joined, and the Israelites struck down one hundred thousand Aramean foot soldiers in a single day. ³⁰The survivors fled to Aphek, into the city, and the wall fell on twenty-seven thousand of the remaining men. Ben-hadad fled and entered the city, going from room to room. ³¹His servants said to him, "We have heard that the kings of the house of Israel are kings of faithful love. Let us put sackcloth around our waists and ropes on our heads and go out to the king of Israel — perhaps he will spare your life." ³²They tied sackcloth around their waists and put ropes on their heads, went to the king of Israel, and said, "Your servant Ben-hadad says, 'Please let me live.'" He said, "Is he still alive? He is my brother!" ³³The men were watching closely for a sign and quickly seized on it: "Your brother Ben-hadad!" He said, "Go, bring him." Ben-hadad came out to him, and Ahab had him

come up into his chariot. ³⁴Ben-hadad said to him, "The cities my father took from your father I will return, and you may establish trade quarters in Damascus, as my father did in Samaria." Ahab replied, "On these covenant terms I will release you." He made a covenant with him and let him go. ³⁵A man from the sons of the prophets said to his companion by the word of the LORD, "Strike me!" But the man refused to strike him. ³⁶He said to him, "Because you did not obey the voice of the LORD — as soon as you leave me, a lion will strike you." The man left him, and a lion found him and struck him dead. ³⁷He found another man and said, "Strike me!" The man struck him, wounding him. ³⁸The prophet went and waited for the king along the road, disguising himself with a bandage over his eyes. ³⁹As the king was passing by, he cried out to the king, "Your servant went out into the thick of battle, and a man brought me a prisoner and said, 'Guard this man. If he goes missing, your life will answer for his life — or you will pay a talent of silver.'" ⁴⁰But while your servant was busy here and there, the prisoner was gone." The king of Israel said to him, "That is your judgment — you have pronounced it yourself." ⁴¹He quickly removed the bandage from his eyes, and the king of Israel recognized him as one of the prophets. ⁴²He said to him, "This is what the LORD says: Because you released the man I devoted to destruction, your life will pay for his life, and your people for his people." ⁴³The king of Israel went home resentful and sullen, and arrived in Samaria.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ben-hadad (Ben-Hadad, 'son of Hadad') bears a name invoking the Aramean storm god Hadad — another Baal figure. The thirty-two kings (melakhim) were vassal rulers of smaller city-states in the Aramean coalition. The combination of *sus va-rekhev* ('horses and chariots') represents the dominant military technology of the era. Samaria (Shomeron), Ahab's capital city, is under direct siege.
2. The messenger formula *koh amar Ben-Hadad* ('thus says Ben-hadad') deliberately mimics the prophetic formula *koh amar YHWH* ('thus says the LORD'). Ben-hadad speaks as if he carries divine authority — a pretension the chapter will dismantle.
3. Ben-hadad's demand is total: *kaspekha u-zhavekha li hu* ('your silver and gold — it is mine'), *nashekha u-vanekha ha-tovim li hem* ('your wives and your best children — they are mine'). The adjective *ha-tovim* ('the best, the finest') specifies that he wants the choicest children — likely the heirs. This is not merely tribute but a claim of ownership over the royal household.
4. Ahab's capitulation is immediate and abject: *lekha ani ve-khol asher li* ('yours am I, and everything that is mine'). He addresses Ben-hadad as *adoni ha-melekh* ('my lord, the king'), accepting vassal status. This initial submission makes his later refusal (verse 9) more surprising.
5. Ben-hadad escalates. The repetition of his initial demand is a preamble to an additional demand in verse 6. Having received total submission, he raises the stakes.
6. The escalation is from tribute (handing over specified items) to ransacking (sending agents to search and seize whatever they want). The phrase *kol machmad einekha* ('whatever is the desire of your eyes') grants unlimited plundering rights. This crosses the line from submission to humiliation.
7. Ahab consults the elders (*ziquei ha-arets*), showing that the decision to resist is collective, not merely royal. His complaint — *ki ra'ah zeh mevaqesh* ('this one is seeking evil/trouble') — frames Ben-hadad's escalation as the provocative act, not his own initial capitulation.
8. The advice is terse and unanimous: *al tishma ve-lo toveh* ('do not hear and do not consent'). The verb *toveh* ('to be willing, to agree') is a strong refusal — not just 'don't listen' but 'don't yield.'
9. Ahab draws a line: the initial tribute he will pay, but the right to ransack he refuses. The phrase *ha-davar ha-zeh lo ukhal la'asot* ('this thing I cannot do') is firm but still uses the language of a subordinate (*avdekha*, 'your servant').
10. Ben-hadad's boast is vivid: he claims to have so many soldiers that if each one grabbed a handful of dust from Samaria's ruins, there would not be enough dust to go around. The word *she'alim* ('handfuls, fistfuls') measures the completeness of the threatened destruction. The oath formula *koh ya'asun li elohim* ('may the gods do thus to me') mirrors Jezebel's in 19:2.
11. Ahab's proverb — *al yithallel choger kim'fatteach* ('let not the one who belts on boast like the one who unbuckles') — is a military proverb: do not celebrate before the battle is won. The verbs *choger* ('belting on, strapping on') and *mefatte'ach* ('unbuckling, loosening') refer to armor. The proverb is sharp and memorable — one of Ahab's rare moments of verbal brilliance.
12. The detail *ve-hu shoteh* ('and he was drinking') introduces a theme of drunkenness that will prove militarily fatal. The *sukkot* ('shelters, booths') are temporary field camps. Ben-hadad issues the attack order while drunk — the verb *simu* ('set up, take positions') launches the siege in earnest.
13. The prophet is anonymous — *navi echad* ('a certain prophet'). The divine message has two parts: a promise of victory (*hineni notno be-yadekha*, 'I am giving it into your hand') and a purpose statement (*ve-yada'ta ki ani YHWH*, 'and you will know that I am the LORD'). The recognition formula 'you will know that I am the LORD' is characteristic of Exodus and Ezekiel — it frames military victory as theological education.
14. The instrument of victory is surprising: *na'arei sarei ha-medinot* ('the young attendants of the provincial commanders') — not the elite troops but the junior staff. This ensures the victory is clearly attributed to God, not to military superiority. Ahab himself must lead the charge (*attah*, 'you').

15. The numbers underscore the mismatch: 232 young attendants plus 7,000 troops against an army so large it would exhaust Samaria's dust. The number seven thousand (*shiv'at alafim*) may echo the seven thousand faithful who had not bowed to Baal (19:18), though the text does not make this connection explicit.
16. The timing is devastating: the attack comes *ba-tsohorayim* ('at noon') while Ben-hadad *shoteh shikkor* ('was drinking, drunk'). The participle *shoteh* with the adjective *shikkor* emphasizes ongoing, active drunkenness. The thirty-two allied kings are all drinking with him. Military leadership has collapsed into a drinking party.
17. The young attendants lead the charge as prophesied. The scouts' report is bare — *anashim yats'u mi-Shomeron* ('men have come out from Samaria') — giving no indication of the divine power behind the advance.
18. Ben-hadad's order reveals his overconfidence: regardless of the Israelites' purpose, they should be captured alive (*chayyim tifsum*, 'seize them alive'). He does not consider the possibility that they could pose a real threat. The drunken commander issues a standing order that assumes total superiority.
19. The two-wave structure: the 232 young attendants first, then the main force of 7,000. The formation emphasizes that the young men are the spearhead.
20. The phrase *va-yakku ish isho* ('each struck his man') describes the opening of the rout — each Israelite soldier engaged and defeated his counterpart. The Aramean army collapses and flees. Ben-hadad escapes on horseback, foreshadowing his return in the second campaign.
21. The destruction of the *sus ve-rekhev* ('horses and chariots') eliminates Aram's military advantage. The phrase *makkah gedolah* ('a great strike, a devastating defeat') summarizes the battle outcome.
22. The prophet warns that victory is not final: *li-tshuv ha-shanah* ('at the return of the year') — meaning the following spring, the traditional campaign season. The command *hitchazzaq* ('strengthen yourself') is both military (prepare your defenses) and spiritual (rely on the LORD who gave this victory).
23. The Aramean advisors offer a theological analysis: *elohei harim eloheihem* ('gods of the hills are their gods'). This reflects the common ancient Near Eastern assumption that deities were localized — each god ruled a specific domain. The tactical conclusion is logical within their framework: fight on the *mishor* ('plain, level ground') to remove Israel's god's home advantage. This theology will be directly refuted by God in verse 28.
24. The military reform replaces the thirty-two vassal kings with *pachot* ('governors, professional military commanders'). The advisors recognize that the coalition of drinking kings was a liability — professional officers will fight more effectively than aristocratic allies.
25. The phrase *chayil ka-chayil* ('army like the army'), *sus ka-sus* ('horse like horse'), *rekhev ka-rekhev* ('chariot like chariot') describes exact replacement — a one-to-one rebuilding of military capacity. Ben-hadad follows the advice completely.
26. *Aphek* (*Afeqah*) is on the plain east of the Sea of Galilee — the battle location has been chosen to match the theological strategy of verse 23: fight Israel's 'hill god' on flat ground. The verb *paqad* ('he mustered') indicates a full military call-up.
27. The contrast is deliberately comic in its extremity: Israel looks like *ki-shnei chasfei izzim* ('like two little flocks of goats') while Aram *mal'u et ha-arets* ('filled the land'). The word *chasfei* ('small flocks, exposed groups') emphasizes vulnerability — goats are small, unimpressive, defenseless. The visual disparity sets up the theological point: numbers are irrelevant when God fights.
28. God takes the Aramean insult personally: *ya'an asher amru Aram* ('because Aram said'). The theological error — that the LORD is localized to hills — becomes the cause of Aram's destruction. The phrase *ve-lo elohei amaqim hu* ('and not a god of the valleys') is the specific claim God will refute by granting victory on the plain. The recognition formula *vi-da'tem ki ani YHWH* ('and you [plural] will know that I am the LORD') extends beyond Ahab to all Israel.
29. The seven-day standoff builds tension. The number *me'ah elef ragli* ('one hundred thousand foot soldiers') is enormous. The phrase *be-yom echad* ('in a single day') emphasizes the speed of the rout. Whether the numbers are literal or use *elef* in its alternative sense of 'military unit,' the scale of the victory is total.
30. The collapse of the city wall on the fugitives adds a second catastrophe. The phrase *cheder be-chader* ('room within room, inner room') describes Ben-hadad hiding deeper and deeper within the city — seeking refuge in the most interior space. The repetition conveys his panic.
31. The servants' description of Israel's kings as *malkhei chesed* ('kings of faithful love, kings of mercy') is significant — even foreign servants know Israel's reputation for covenantal mercy. Sackcloth (*saqqim*) and ropes (*chavalim*) are signs of total submission and mourning. The phrase *ulai yechayyeh et nafshekha* ('perhaps he will keep your life alive') holds out only a thin hope.
32. Ahab's response — *ha-odenu chai achi hu* ('Is he still alive? He is my brother!') — is the decisive error. By calling Ben-hadad *achi* ('my brother'), Ahab elevates a defeated enemy to treaty-partner status. The word *achi* in diplomatic contexts establishes parity — Ahab treats a man under divine judgment as an equal.
33. The verb *yenachashu* ('they were watching for omens, reading signs') suggests careful observation — the servants are testing Ahab's reaction for any sign of mercy. When he says 'brother,' they immediately seize the word (*va-yachlitu*, 'they grabbed it, they took it as binding'). Bringing Ben-hadad into the royal chariot is a dramatic elevation from prisoner to honored guest.

34. Ben-hadad's offer includes territorial restoration and trading rights — chutsot ('streets, market quarters') in Damascus would give Israel a commercial foothold in the Aramean capital. Ahab accepts: *va-ani ba-berit ashallechekka* ('and I, by covenant, will release you'). The verb *va-yikhrot lo berit* ('he cut a covenant with him') uses the standard covenant-making terminology. The problem is that this man was under divine judgment — making a treaty with him is like Saul sparing Agag.
35. The phrase *benei ha-nevi'im* ('sons of the prophets') designates a prophetic community or guild — not biological sons but members of a prophetic brotherhood. The command *hakkeni na* ('strike me, please') is a prophetic sign-act: the wound will serve as a prop for the parable in verses 39-40. The companion's refusal creates a problem — disobedience to a command given *bi-dvar YHWH* ('by the word of the LORD').
36. The judgment is immediate and severe: refusal to obey a prophetic command given in the LORD's name results in death by lion. This parallels the unnamed prophet of 1 Kings 13:24 who was also killed by a lion for disobedience. The swift fulfillment confirms the prophetic authority behind the request.
37. The second man complies, striking *hakkeh u-fatso'a* ('striking and wounding') — producing a visible wound that will serve the prophetic parable. The wound becomes part of the disguise.
38. The verb *va-yitchappeis* ('he disguised himself') and the *afer* ('bandage' or 'ashes') over his eyes create a disguise — the prophet appears to be a wounded soldier returning from battle. Some translations render *afer* as 'ashes' and others as 'bandage'; the context of a wound-disguise favors 'bandage.'
39. The parable is a legal case: a soldier was given custody of a prisoner under a life-for-life guarantee (*nafshekha tachat nafsho*, 'your life in place of his life'). The penalty structure — death or one talent of silver (approximately 75 pounds of silver, an enormous sum) — frames the stakes as absolute. The parable mirrors Ahab's situation: God gave Ben-hadad into his hand, and Ahab let him go.
40. The phrase *oseh hennah va-hennah* ('doing here and there, busy this way and that') describes distraction and negligence. Ahab's verdict — *ken mishpatekha attah charatsta* ('so is your judgment; you yourself have decided it') — is self-condemning, exactly as David's verdict on the rich man in Nathan's parable (2 Samuel 12:5-6) condemned himself.
41. The reveal: *va-yasar et ha-afer me-al einav* ('he removed the bandage from over his eyes'). The king immediately recognizes the man as belonging to the prophetic community (*me-ha-nevi'im hu*, 'he was from the prophets'). The recognition triggers the application of the parable.
42. The verdict is devastating: *ish chermi* ('the man of my cherem, the man I devoted to destruction'). The term *cherem* designates something placed under a ban — totally devoted to God, either for holy use or for destruction. Ben-hadad was under *cherem*, and Ahab let him go. The substitutionary formula — *nafshekha tachat nafsho ve-ammekha tachat ammo* ('your life in place of his life, your people in place of his people') — establishes that Ahab will die in Ben-hadad's place. This sentence is executed in chapter 22 at Ramoth-gilead.
43. The final description — *sar ve-za'ef* ('resentful and sullen') — recurs verbatim in 21:4 when Ahab sulks over Naboth's vineyard. These paired words become a character marker for Ahab: a king who, when confronted with divine judgment, does not repent but broods. The chapter closes not with submission but with bitter sulking.

21

Summary: *Ahab covets a vineyard next to his palace in Jezreel, owned by a man named Naboth. Ahab offers to buy it or trade a better vineyard, but Naboth refuses on theological grounds: the land is his nachalah, his ancestral inheritance from the LORD, and Torah law forbids its permanent sale outside the family (Leviticus 25:23). Ahab goes home and sulks, lying on his bed and refusing to eat. Jezebel sees his state, mocks his kingship, and takes matters into her own hands. She writes letters in Ahab's name, sealed with his seal, instructing the elders and nobles of Jezreel to proclaim a fast, set Naboth at the head of the assembly, and arrange for two worthless men to testify falsely that Naboth cursed God and the king. The elders comply. Naboth is convicted on false testimony and stoned to death. Jezebel tells Ahab to go take the vineyard — Naboth is dead. As Ahab enters the vineyard to claim it, Elijah meets him with a devastating word from the LORD: 'Have you murdered and also taken possession?' The sentence: dogs will lick Ahab's blood in the place where dogs licked Naboth's blood. Judgment falls on the entire house of Ahab and on Jezebel specifically — dogs will eat her by the wall of Jezreel. When Ahab hears this, he tears his clothes, puts on sackcloth, fasts, and humbles himself. The LORD notices and tells Elijah that because Ahab has humbled himself, the full disaster will not come in his lifetime but in his son's generation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is a masterwork of political theology — it exposes the collision between royal power and covenant law. Naboth's refusal is not personal stubbornness but theological obedience: chalilah li me-YHWH ('far be it from me, before the LORD') frames the sale as something God himself forbids. The nachalah system — ancestral land allotted by God to each family — is foundational to Israel's social order. If a king can simply take a man's inheritance, the entire*

covenant land-distribution system collapses. Jezebel's response reveals a fundamentally different political philosophy: she comes from Phoenician royal culture where the king's desire is law. Her question 'Are you not the one exercising kingship over Israel?' assumes absolute monarchy; Naboth's refusal assumes covenant monarchy, where even kings are subject to God's law. The judicial murder — using the form of law (trial, witnesses, sentence) to destroy an innocent man — is the most chilling element. Every legal requirement is formally met (two witnesses, a capital charge of blasphemy) while every legal principle is violated (false testimony, predetermined verdict). The chapter is the moral low point of Ahab's reign and provides the legal basis for the destruction of his dynasty.

Translation Friction: The Septuagint places this chapter after chapter 19 (before chapter 20 in the MT), suggesting different editorial traditions about the sequence of events. The timing is uncertain — some scholars place the Naboth incident before the Aramean wars, others after. The phrase 'cursed God and the king' in verse 10 uses the euphemistic verb berekh ('blessed') where the actual meaning is 'cursed' — a scribal practice (tiqqun soferim) to avoid writing 'curse God' directly. The degree of Ahab's culpability is debated: he did not personally arrange the murder (Jezebel did), but he benefited from it and took possession of the vineyard, making him an accessory. God's partial reprieve in verses 28-29 — delaying the full judgment to the next generation because of Ahab's humbling — raises questions about whether genuine repentance can modify prophetic judgment.

Connections: Naboth's vineyard becomes a byword for royal injustice and is referenced by later prophets (see Isaiah 5:1-7, the Song of the Vineyard, which uses the vineyard as a metaphor for Israel). The judicial murder by false testimony anticipates the trial of Jesus in the Gospels, where false witnesses testify against an innocent man. Elijah's confrontation of Ahab ('Have you murdered and also taken possession?') echoes Nathan's confrontation of David ('You are the man!', 2 Samuel 12:7) — both are prophets holding kings accountable for murder committed through proxy. Jehu will later execute judgment on Ahab's house at the very field of Naboth (2 Kings 9:25-26), explicitly citing this prophecy. The dogs-licking-blood motif finds partial fulfillment in Ahab's death (22:38) and complete fulfillment in Jezebel's death (2 Kings 9:36). The nachalah theology connects to the larger Deuteronomic vision of the land as divine trust, not human property.

¹After these events, Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard in Jezreel, next to the palace of Ahab king of Samaria. ²Ahab spoke to Naboth: "Give me your vineyard so I can have it as a vegetable garden, since it is close to my house. I will give you a better vineyard in exchange — or if you prefer, I will pay you its price in silver." ³Naboth said to Ahab, "Far be it from me before the LORD that I should give you the inheritance of my fathers!" ⁴Ahab went to his house resentful and sullen because of what Naboth the Jezreelite had said to him — "I will not give you the inheritance of my fathers." He lay down on his bed, turned his face away, and would not eat. ⁵Jezebel his wife came to him and said, "What is this? Why is your spirit so bitter that you will not eat?" ⁶He told her, "I spoke to Naboth the Jezreelite and said, 'Sell me your vineyard for silver, or if you prefer, I will give you another vineyard in exchange.' But he said, 'I will not give you my vineyard.'" ⁷Jezebel his wife said to him, "Is this how you exercise kingship over Israel? Get up, eat, and let your heart be glad. I will get you the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite." ⁸She wrote letters in Ahab's name, sealed them with his seal, and sent the letters to the elders and nobles in his city — those who lived alongside Naboth. ⁹She wrote in the letters: "Proclaim a fast and seat Naboth at the head of the assembly. ¹⁰Seat two worthless men opposite him, and have them testify against him: 'You cursed God and the king!' Then take him out and stone him to death." ¹¹The men of his city — the elders and the nobles who lived in his city — did exactly as Jezebel had sent instructions to them, exactly as written in the letters she sent them. ¹²They proclaimed a fast and seated Naboth at the head of the assembly. ¹³Two worthless men came in and sat opposite him. The worthless men testified against Naboth before the people, saying, "Naboth cursed God and the king!" They took him outside the city and stoned him to death. ¹⁴They sent word to Jezebel: "Naboth has been stoned. He is dead." ¹⁵When Jezebel heard that Naboth had been stoned and was dead, Jezebel said to Ahab, "Get up and take possession of the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite — the one he refused to sell you for silver. Naboth is not alive — he is dead." ¹⁶When Ahab heard that Naboth was dead, he got up to go down to the vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite to take possession of it. ¹⁷The word of the LORD came to Elijah the Tishbite: ¹⁸"Get up and go down to meet Ahab king of Israel, who is in Samaria. He is in Naboth's vineyard, where he has gone down to take possession of it." ¹⁹"Speak to him and say, 'This is what the LORD says: Have you murdered and also taken possession?'

And say to him, 'This is what the LORD says: In the place where dogs licked the blood of Naboth, dogs will lick your blood — yes, yours!'" ²⁰Ahab said to Elijah, "Have you found me, my enemy?" He answered, "I have found you — because you have sold yourself to do evil in the eyes of the LORD." ²¹"I am about to bring disaster on you. I will sweep away your descendants and cut off from Ahab every male, whether slave or free, in Israel. ²²I will make your house like the house of Jeroboam son of Nebat and like the house of Baasha son of Ahijah — because of the provocation with which you have provoked me and caused Israel to sin." ²³And concerning Jezebel, the LORD also declared: "The dogs will eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel." ²⁴"Anyone of Ahab's house who dies in the city, the dogs will eat. Anyone who dies in the open field, the birds of the sky will eat." ²⁵There was no one like Ahab, who sold himself to do evil in the eyes of the LORD — incited by Jezebel his wife. ²⁶He acted in the most repulsive way, going after the dung-idols, exactly as the Amorites had done — the ones the LORD had driven out before the Israelites. ²⁷When Ahab heard these words, he tore his clothes, put sackcloth against his skin, fasted, slept in sackcloth, and walked about subdued. ²⁸The word of the LORD came to Elijah the Tishbite: ²⁹"Have you seen how Ahab has humbled himself before me? Because he has humbled himself before me, I will not bring the disaster in his lifetime. In his son's time I will bring the disaster on his house."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening phrase *achar ha-devarim ha-elleh* ('after these things') is a vague temporal connector that does not specify how much time has passed since the events of chapter 20. The key detail is spatial: the vineyard is *etsel heikhal Ach'av* ('next to the palace of Ahab') — proximity creates temptation. The term *heikhal* ('palace, temple') for Ahab's residence elevates it architecturally.
2. Ahab's offer appears reasonable by commercial standards: a better vineyard or fair market price. He wants it *le-gan yaraq* ('for a vegetable garden') — a mundane purpose that makes the theological refusal seem disproportionate on the surface. But the transaction Ahab proposes is precisely what Torah prohibits: permanent alienation of ancestral land.
3. Naboth's refusal is framed in the strongest possible terms: *chalilah li me-YHWH* ('the LORD forbid it to me' or 'far be it from me, before the LORD'). He does not say he doesn't want to sell — he says he cannot, because it would violate divine law. The word *nachalat avotai* ('the inheritance of my fathers') invokes the entire system of ancestral land-holding: God distributed the land to the tribes and families, and each family holds its plot as a divine trust (Leviticus 25:23: 'the land shall not be sold permanently, for the land is mine').
4. The phrase *sar ve-za'ef* ('resentful and sullen') is identical to 20:43 — the same paired words mark Ahab's response to both the prophetic judgment and Naboth's refusal. The behavior — lying on the bed, turning away, refusing food — is that of a petulant child, not a king. The narrator quotes Naboth's refusal in Ahab's mind, showing that Ahab hears the legal-theological argument but can only process the personal rejection.
5. Jezebel's question — *mah zeh ruchakha sarah* ('what is this that your spirit is bitter/turning away?') — uses *ruach* ('spirit') for Ahab's inner state. The adjective *sarah* ('turning aside, stubborn, bitter') describes a spirit in revolt against its circumstances.
6. Ahab's retelling is revealing: he omits Naboth's theological reasoning (*chalilah li me-YHWH*, 'far be it from me before the LORD') and the word *nachalah* ('inheritance'). In Ahab's version, Naboth simply refused to sell his *karmi* ('my vineyard') — reducing a covenant-based refusal to a personal slight. This selective retelling may be deliberate deception of Jezebel, or it may reflect Ahab's own inability to hear the theological dimension.
7. Jezebel's question — *attah attah ta'aseh melukhah al Yisra'el* ('Is it you who exercises kingship over Israel?') — is a stinging rebuke. The word *melukhah* ('kingship, royal rule') carries the assumption of absolute power: a real king takes what he wants. In Phoenician royal ideology, there was no *nachalah* system limiting the crown. Jezebel will solve the problem because Ahab cannot — or will not.
8. The detail *be-shem Ach'av* ('in Ahab's name') and *be-chotamo* ('with his seal') implicates Ahab directly: Jezebel uses his authority. Whether Ahab knew what the letters contained is left ambiguous, but his seal carries his authority. The recipients — *zequenim* ('elders') and *chorim* ('nobles, free men') — are the local ruling class, the very people responsible for justice.
9. The fast (*tsom*) creates a religious pretext — a solemn assembly suggesting some crisis or sin in the community. Seating Naboth *be-rosh ha-am* ('at the head of the people') gives him a prominent position, which paradoxically sets him up as the target of the false accusation. The public honor is a trap.
10. The plan is precise: *shnayim anashim benei veliyya'al* ('two men, sons of worthlessness') — the minimum number for a capital conviction (Deuteronomy 17:6). The verb *berakhta* ('you blessed') is a scribal euphemism: the actual accusation is that Naboth cursed (*qillel*) God and the king, a capital offense under Exodus 22:28 and Leviticus 24:15-16. The euphemism avoids writing 'cursed God' directly. Jezebel corrupts every institution — religion (the fast), law (two witnesses), and justice (the death sentence) — while maintaining the appearance of legal process.
11. The compliance of the elders is total and damning: *va-ya'asu* ('they did') ... *ka-asher shalchah* ('as she sent') ... *ka-asher katuv* ('as it was written'). The repetition emphasizes that every step was followed precisely. Not one elder resisted or questioned. The entire civic leadership of Jezreel became accomplices in judicial murder.

12. The execution of the plan begins: tsom proclaimed, Naboth elevated to the position of honor that is actually the position of accusation. The machinery of injustice operates smoothly.
13. The execution of the plan is reported with grim efficiency. The false testimony is delivered neged ha-am ('before the people') — publicly, with the entire community as witness. The execution takes place mi-chuts la-ir ('outside the city'), following the legal requirement that stoning occur outside the camp (Leviticus 24:14, Numbers 15:35-36). Every legal form is observed. Every legal principle is violated.
14. The report is brutally concise: suqqal Navot va-yamot ('Naboth was stoned and he died'). Two words of action, one word of finality. The elders report to Jezebel, not to Ahab — they know who issued the real orders.
15. Jezebel's announcement — qum resh ('get up, take possession') — uses the verb yarash ('to take possession, to inherit'), which ironically is the same root-family as nachalah ('inheritance'). Naboth refused to sell his inheritance; now Ahab will inherit it through murder. The phrase ein Navot chai ki met ('Naboth is not alive, for he is dead') states the obvious with cold finality.
16. Ahab does not ask how Naboth died. He does not mourn. He does not investigate. He simply gets up — va-yaqom — and goes down to claim the vineyard. The verb larishtto ('to take possession of it') completes the crime: murder followed by seizure. The verb yarad ('to go down') from the palace to the vineyard is a physical descent that mirrors a moral one.
17. The prophetic formula dvar-YHWH ('the word of the LORD') reintroduces Elijah into the narrative. His designation as ha-Tishbi ('the Tishbite') recalls his origins outside the political center — he is from Tishbe in Gilead, not from the court.
18. God sends Elijah to the exact location: be-kherem Navot ('in Naboth's vineyard'). The phrase asher yarad sham larishtto ('where he has gone down to possess it') — God knows exactly what Ahab is doing and where. The confrontation will occur at the scene of the crime.
19. The double accusation — ha-ratsachta ve-gam yarashta ('have you murdered and also taken possession?') — combines two crimes: murder (ratsach, the word from the sixth commandment, Exodus 20:13) and seizure of property. The conjunction ve-gam ('and also') marks the compounding of crimes. The judgment matches the crime with poetic precision: dogs licked Naboth's blood; dogs will lick Ahab's blood. The emphatic gam attah ('even you, yes you') makes the judgment personal and inescapable.
20. Ahab's question — ha-metsatani oyvi ('have you found me, my enemy?') — reveals that he knows exactly what is happening. He does not deny the murder or the seizure; he objects to being caught. Elijah's response — matsati ('I have found you') — is blunt. The phrase hitmakkerkha la'asot ha-ra ('you have sold yourself to do evil') uses the reflexive: Ahab sold himself — he made himself a slave to evil. The commercial metaphor (selling) connects to the refused sale of the vineyard.
21. The phrase mashtin be-qir ('one who urinates against a wall') is a crude expression for every male in the household — no male descendant will survive. The pair atsor ve-azuv ('restrained and released' or 'slave and free') is a merism meaning 'every last one, without exception.' The judgment is dynastic extinction.
22. Two previous dynasties serve as precedents: Jeroboam's house (exterminated by Baasha, 1 Kings 15:29) and Baasha's house (exterminated by Zimri, 1 Kings 16:11-12). Both were destroyed for the same reason — leading Israel into sin. The phrase va-tachati et Yisra'el ('you caused Israel to sin') is the standard regnal condemnation.
23. Jezebel receives her own specific sentence: ha-kelavim yokhlu et Izevel be-chel Yizre'el ('the dogs will eat Jezebel by the fortification-wall of Jezreel'). The word chel ('rampart, outer wall') places the location precisely. This prophecy is fulfilled in detail in 2 Kings 9:30-37.
24. This formula — dogs in the city, birds in the field — is the standard judgment of total dishonor: no burial, bodies left for scavengers. The same formula was pronounced on Jeroboam (14:11) and Baasha (16:4). Denial of burial is the ultimate disgrace in the ancient Near Eastern world.
25. The narrator's verdict: lo hayah ke-Ach'av ('there was none like Ahab'). The verb hitmakker ('sold himself') repeats from verse 20. The addition of asher hesattah oto Izevel ishto ('whom Jezebel his wife incited') distributes blame: Ahab is the primary agent, Jezebel the instigator. The verb hesattah ('she incited, she seduced') suggests persistent influence.
26. The word gillulim ('dung-idols, filthy things') is a deliberately derogatory term for idols — possibly derived from galal ('dung'). The comparison to the Amorites (ha-Emori) is the ultimate insult: Ahab has become as detestable as the nations God expelled from the land to make room for Israel. The implication is that what happened to the Amorites could happen to Israel.
27. Ahab's response is a full catalogue of mourning and penitence: tearing garments (qara begadav), wearing sackcloth directly on the skin (saq al basar — maximum discomfort), fasting (va-yatsom), sleeping in sackcloth (va-yishkav ba-saq), and walking at ('softly, gently, subdued'). The verb halakh at ('he walked subdued') describes a person moving slowly, head down, broken. Whether this represents genuine repentance or merely terror at the sentence is left for God to evaluate.
28. The prophetic formula returns — God has observed Ahab's response and sends a new word to Elijah.
29. God's response is remarkable: ha-ra'ita ki nikhna Ach'av milpanai ('have you seen that Ahab has humbled himself before me?'). The verb nikhna ('he humbled himself, he submitted') from the root kana ('to humble, to be subdued') is taken at face value by God — whatever Ahab's inner motives, the outward humbling is acknowledged. The judgment is not canceled but delayed: lo avi ha-ra'ah be-yamav ('I will not bring the disaster in his days'). The disaster shifts to bimei veno ('in the days of his son') — the generation of Joram, who will be overthrown by Jehu (2 Kings 9-10). The passage reveals that prophetic judgment is not mechanical — divine mercy can modify the timeline even when the verdict stands.

22

Summary: *Three years of peace pass between Israel and Aram. Jehoshaphat king of Judah visits Ahab, and Ahab proposes a joint campaign to recapture Ramoth-gilead from Aram. Jehoshaphat agrees but asks to inquire of the LORD first. Ahab assembles four hundred prophets who unanimously prophesy success. Jehoshaphat is not satisfied and asks for another prophet of the LORD. Ahab reluctantly summons Micaiah son of Imlah, saying he hates him because 'he never prophesies good about me, only disaster.' A messenger urges Micaiah to conform to the majority, but Micaiah insists he will speak only what the LORD tells him. When he arrives, he first gives a sarcastic echo of the four hundred's prophecy, and Ahab demands the truth. Micaiah then delivers two devastating visions: Israel scattered on the mountains like sheep without a shepherd (meaning the king will die), and a scene from the divine council where the LORD authorizes a lying spirit to enter the mouths of Ahab's prophets and lure him to Ramoth-gilead to his death. Zedekiah, leader of the four hundred, strikes Micaiah across the face. Ahab imprisons Micaiah and goes to battle anyway. He disguises himself and sends Jehoshaphat into battle wearing royal robes. The Aramean king orders his chariot commanders to target only the king of Israel. They initially pursue Jehoshaphat but turn away when they realize he is not Ahab. A random soldier draws his bow and strikes Ahab between the joints of his armor — an unguided arrow that finds the one gap in the king's disguise. Ahab is propped up in his chariot, bleeding, facing the Arameans all day. At evening he dies. The army is dismissed. Ahab's body is brought to Samaria, and when the chariot was washed at the pool of Samaria, dogs lick up his blood — fulfilling the prophetic word. The chapter closes with summary notes on Ahab's reign, Jehoshaphat's reign in Judah, and the brief, evil reign of Ahaziah son of Ahab.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the most extraordinary scenes in the Hebrew Bible: the divine council vision (verses 19-23), where Micaiah reports seeing the LORD seated on his throne with the host of heaven standing around him, and a spirit volunteering to become a lying spirit in the mouths of Ahab's prophets. This vision raises profound questions about prophetic truth, divine sovereignty, and the relationship between God's purposes and human deception. The four hundred prophets are not frauds in the ordinary sense — they may believe they are speaking the truth — but a spirit authorized by God has entered their words. The theological complexity is staggering: God uses deception to accomplish judgment. The random arrow (verse 34) is the chapter's other theological masterpiece — a soldier shoots be-tummo ('in his innocence' or 'at random'), not aiming at anyone in particular, and the arrow finds the precise gap between the joints of Ahab's armor. The word be-tummo echoes the language of moral simplicity and wholeness (tom, tummah), giving the arrow an almost sacramental quality — an innocent, unguided shot becomes the instrument of divine judgment. No disguise can hide a man from God's sentence.*

Translation Friction: *The divine council scene raises the most acute theological question: does God deceive? The text reports God asking 'Who will entice Ahab?' and a spirit offering to be a lying spirit. If taken as literal reportage of a heavenly event, it presents God as the author of prophetic deception. Various interpretations exist: (1) the scene is Micaiah's visionary way of explaining why four hundred prophets can be wrong; (2) God permits deception as a form of judgment on someone who has already rejected truth; (3) the spirit acts within divine permission but without divine compulsion. We render the text as it stands without resolving the tension. The arrow shot 'in innocence/at random' similarly raises questions about divine providence and human agency — is it random or guided? The Hebrew allows both readings simultaneously. The summary of Jehoshaphat's reign (verses 41-50) creates chronological difficulties with the parallel account in 2 Chronicles 17-20, particularly regarding Jehoshaphat's alliance with Ahaziah for a shipping venture. Additionally, some scholars question whether the four hundred are prophets of the LORD or prophets of Baal; their language (using 'LORD' in verse 12) suggests they claim to speak for Israel's God.*

Connections: *The divine council scene connects to Job 1-2, where the satan appears before God's throne and receives permission to test Job — both passages depict God's sovereignty operating through secondary agents. Isaiah 6:1-8 presents another throne-room vision with the question 'Whom shall I send?' Micaiah's vision of scattered sheep (verse 17) anticipates Ezekiel 34 (the shepherd passage) and Jesus' use of shepherd imagery. The random arrow fulfilling specific prophecy connects to the larger biblical theme that God's word accomplishes what it is sent to do, regardless of human countermeasures (Isaiah 55:11). Ahab's death at Ramoth-gilead fulfills the*

sentence of 20:42 ('your life for his life') — by sparing Ben-hadad, Ahab ensured his own death fighting Ben-hadad's successor. The dogs licking blood (verse 38) partially fulfills 21:19, though the location is Samaria rather than Jezreel — 2 Kings 9:25-26 provides the Jezreel fulfillment through Ahab's son. Jehoshaphat's request to 'inquire of the LORD' (verse 5) establishes his character as the pious southern king — a trait developed extensively in 2 Chronicles.

¹For three years there was no war between Aram and Israel. ²In the third year, Jehoshaphat king of Judah came down to visit the king of Israel. ³The king of Israel said to his officials, "You know that Ramoth-gilead belongs to us, yet we are sitting idle instead of taking it back from the king of Aram." ⁴He said to Jehoshaphat, "Will you go with me to fight at Ramoth-gilead?" Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses." ⁵But Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "First, inquire of the word of the LORD today." ⁶The king of Israel assembled the prophets — about four hundred men — and asked them, "Should I go to war against Ramoth-gilead, or should I hold back?" They said, "Go up! The Lord will give it into the king's hand." ⁷But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not still a prophet of the LORD here that we can inquire through?" ⁸The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "There is still one man through whom we could inquire of the LORD — Micaiah son of Imlah. But I hate him, because he never prophesies good about me, only disaster." Jehoshaphat said, "The king should not say such a thing." ⁹The king of Israel called an official and said, "Bring Micaiah son of Imlah — quickly." ¹⁰The king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah were sitting, each on his throne, dressed in their robes, at the threshing floor by the entrance of the gate of Samaria. All the prophets were prophesying before them. ¹¹Zedekiah son of Chenaanah had made iron horns and said, "This is what the LORD says: With these you will gore the Arameans until they are finished!" ¹²All the prophets were prophesying the same thing: "Go up to Ramoth-gilead and triumph! The LORD will give it into the king's hand." ¹³The messenger who had gone to summon Micaiah said to him, "Look — the words of the prophets are unanimously favorable to the king. Let your word be like the word of one of them. Speak favorably." ¹⁴Micaiah said, "As the LORD lives — whatever the LORD says to me, that is what I will speak." ¹⁵He came to the king, and the king said to him, "Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth-gilead to fight, or should we hold back?" He said to him, "Go up and triumph! The LORD will give it into the king's hand." ¹⁶The king said to him, "How many times must I make you swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of the LORD?" ¹⁷He said, "I saw all Israel scattered on the mountains like sheep without a shepherd. And the LORD said, 'These have no master — let each man return to his home in peace.'" ¹⁸The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you? He never prophesies good about me — only disaster." ¹⁹Micaiah said, "Then hear the word of the LORD: I saw the LORD seated on his throne, with the entire host of heaven standing around him — on his right and on his left. ²⁰The LORD said, 'Who will entice Ahab to go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?' One said this, another said that. ²¹Then a spirit came forward, stood before the LORD, and said, 'I will entice him.' The LORD said to him, 'How?' ²²He said, 'I will go out and become a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' The LORD said, 'You will entice him, and you will succeed. Go out and do it.'" ²³"So now — the LORD has placed a lying spirit in the mouths of all these prophets of yours. The LORD has decreed disaster against you." ²⁴Zedekiah son of Chenaanah came up and struck Micaiah across the face, saying, "Which way did the spirit of the LORD pass from me to speak to you?" ²⁵Micaiah said, "You will find out on the day when you go hiding from room to room." ²⁶The king of Israel said, "Take Micaiah and return him to Amon the city governor and to Joash the king's son. ²⁷Say, 'This is what the king says: Put this man in prison and feed him meager rations of bread and water until I return safely.'" ²⁸Micaiah said, "If you return safely, the LORD has not spoken through me." And he said, "Mark my words, all you people!" ²⁹The king of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah marched up to Ramoth-gilead. ³⁰The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and enter the battle, but you — wear your royal robes." The king of Israel disguised himself and went into battle. ³¹The king of Aram had commanded his thirty-two chariot commanders: "Do not fight with anyone — insignificant or important — except the king of Israel alone." ³²When the chariot commanders saw Jehoshaphat, they said, "That must be the king of Israel!" They turned to attack him. Jehoshaphat cried out. ³³When the chariot commanders realized he was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him. ³⁴A man drew his bow at random and struck the king of Israel between the scale armor and the breastplate. Ahab said to his charioteer, "Turn around and get me out of the battle — I am wounded." ³⁵The battle

raged all that day. The king was propped up in his chariot facing the Arameans, and at evening he died. The blood from the wound pooled in the bottom of the chariot. ³⁶At sunset a cry went through the camp: "Every man to his city! Every man to his land!" ³⁷The king died and was carried to Samaria, where they buried him. ³⁸They washed the chariot at the pool of Samaria, and the dogs licked up his blood — and the prostitutes bathed in it — according to the word of the LORD that he had spoken. ³⁹The rest of the acts of Ahab — everything he did, including the ivory palace he built and all the cities he constructed — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ⁴⁰Ahab slept with his fathers, and Ahaziah his son reigned in his place. ⁴¹Jehoshaphat son of Asa became king over Judah in the fourth year of Ahab king of Israel. ⁴²Jehoshaphat was thirty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned twenty-five years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Azubah daughter of Shilhi. ⁴³He walked in all the ways of Asa his father. He did not turn from them, doing what was right in the eyes of the LORD. ⁴⁴However, the high places were not removed. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places. ⁴⁵Jehoshaphat had established peaceful relations with the king of Israel. ⁴⁶The rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat — his military achievements and the wars he waged — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ⁴⁷The remaining cult prostitutes who had survived from the days of his father Asa, he removed from the land. ⁴⁸There was no king in Edom; a governor served as ruler. ⁴⁹Jehoshaphat built a fleet of Tarshish-type ships to go to Ophir for gold, but they never sailed — the ships were wrecked at Ezion-geber. ⁵⁰Then Ahaziah son of Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, "Let my servants go with your servants on the ships." But Jehoshaphat refused. ⁵¹Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the city of David his ancestor. Jehoram his son reigned in his place. ⁵²Ahaziah son of Ahab became king over Israel in Samaria in the seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and he reigned over Israel for two years. ⁵³He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He walked in the way of his father, in the way of his mother, and in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin. ⁵⁴He served Baal and bowed down to him, and provoked the LORD, the God of Israel, to anger — exactly as his father had done.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The three-year peace results from the treaty Ahab made with Ben-hadad in 20:34. The verb *va-yeshvu* ('they sat, they remained') conveys settled stability. This peace is the consequence of the very treaty that brought divine condemnation — Ahab's disobedience produced a temporary political benefit.
2. The verb *va-yered* ('he came down') is geographical: Jerusalem is at a higher elevation than Samaria. The visit of the Judean king to the Israelite king signals a political alliance — a notable rapprochement between the divided kingdoms.
3. Ahab identifies a grievance: Ramoth-gilead (Ramat Gil'ad), an important city in the Transjordan, should have been returned under the treaty of 20:34 but apparently was not. The phrase *anachnu machshim* ('we are being silent, sitting idle') carries a tone of reproach — the court has been complacent.
4. Jehoshaphat's pledge — *kamoni kamokha ke-ammi ke-ammekha ke-susai ke-susekha* ('as I am, so are you; as my people, so your people; as my horses, so your horses') — is a total commitment formula, pledging full military alliance. The threefold parallel (self, people, cavalry) covers every dimension of the war effort.
5. Jehoshaphat's caveat — *derosh na ka-yom et dvar YHWH* ('please inquire today for the word of the LORD') — introduces the prophetic consultation that dominates the chapter. The verb *darash* ('to seek, to inquire') is the standard term for prophetic consultation. Jehoshaphat's piety surfaces: military alliance is conditional on divine approval.
6. Four hundred prophets deliver a unanimous verdict: *aleh* ('go up') with a promise of victory. They use the title *Adonai* ('Lord, master') rather than the divine name YHWH — some scholars see this as evidence they are not authentic prophets of the LORD, while others consider it a variant formula. The unanimity itself is suspicious: genuine prophetic consultation in Kings typically involves tension and dissent.
7. Jehoshaphat's question — *ha-ein poh navi la-YHWH od* ('is there not yet a prophet belonging to the LORD here?') — implies that the four hundred do not satisfy him as prophets of YHWH. His use of the specific divine name (la-YHWH) in contrast to their generic *Adonai* may signal his dissatisfaction with their prophetic credentials.
8. Ahab's confession — *ani senetiv* ('I hate him') — is startlingly candid. He evaluates prophets by whether their message is pleasant (*tov*, 'good') or unpleasant (*ra*, 'evil/disaster'). This is the core of false prophecy: judging the word by the hearer's comfort rather than by its truth. Jehoshaphat's gentle rebuke — *al yomar ha-melek ken* ('let the king not say so') — acknowledges the impropriety without confrontation.
9. The *saris* ('official, eunuch, court attendant') is dispatched. The verb *maharah* ('quickly, hurry') suggests urgency — or impatience. Ahab wants this over with.

10. The scene is a formal royal court: two kings enthroned (ish al kis'o, 'each on his throne'), wearing royal garments (melubashim begadim), at the goren ('threshing floor') — an open public area used for legal proceedings and assemblies. The threshing floor at the gate entrance is the traditional venue for public judgments and decisions. The four hundred prophets perform before this royal audience.
11. Zedekiah performs a prophetic sign-act with qarnei varzel ('iron horns') — a visual prop symbolizing military aggression. The verb tenagach ('you will gore') evokes a charging bull. He uses the full prophetic formula koh amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD'), claiming divine authority for his message. The sign-act form is legitimate (prophets regularly used symbolic actions), but the content is false.
12. The unanimity continues: all four hundred prophets echo the same message with the verb hatsliach ('succeed, prosper, triumph'). Now they do use the divine name YHWH. The uniformity is itself a warning sign — in the biblical pattern, true prophets tend to stand alone while false prophets move in herds.
13. The messenger's advice — yehi na devarkha ki-dvar achad mehem ('let your word be like the word of one of them') — is well-intentioned pressure to conform. The phrase peh echad ('one mouth') emphasizes the unanimity. The advice represents the political calculus that prophets should align with consensus and royal preference.
14. Micaiah's oath — chai YHWH ki et asher yomar YHWH elai oto adabber ('as the LORD lives, what the LORD says to me, that I will speak') — is the irreducible definition of prophetic integrity. The emphasis falls on oto ('that very thing, exactly that') — not an adjusted version, not a softened version, but precisely what God says.
15. Micaiah's initial answer — aleh ve-hatsliach ('go up and succeed') — is a word-for-word echo of the four hundred's prophecy (verse 12). The tone must be understood as dripping with sarcasm — he is mimicking the court prophets so obviously that Ahab immediately detects it (verse 16). This is prophetic irony: by parroting the false message, Micaiah exposes its hollowness.
16. Ahab demands truth — ad kammeh pe'amim ani mashbi'akha ('how many times must I put you under oath?') — an ironic moment. The king who hates hearing bad prophecy insists on hearing the truth. He detects Micaiah's sarcasm immediately, revealing that even Ahab can tell the difference between prophetic parroting and genuine speech.
17. Micaiah's first vision is a devastating image: kol Yisra'el nefotsim el he-harim ka-tson asher ein lahem ro'eh ('all Israel scattered on the mountains like sheep that have no shepherd'). The shepherd metaphor for kingship is standard in the ancient Near East. Sheep without a shepherd means a people whose king is dead. The divine word lo adonim la-elleh ('these have no master') confirms the interpretation: the king will not return from battle. The command yashuvu ish le-veito be-shalom ('let each return to his house in peace') — shalom for the leaderless army, but not for the king.
18. Ahab turns to Jehoshaphat with an 'I told you so' — ha-lo amarti elekha ('did I not tell you?'). He frames Micaiah's prophecy as personal bias rather than divine message. The verb yitnabbe ('to prophesy') is treated as if it means 'to predict personal fortune' rather than 'to deliver God's word.'
19. Micaiah's second vision opens the curtain on the divine council — ra'iti et YHWH yoshev al kis'o ('I saw the LORD sitting on his throne'). The tseva ha-shamayim ('host of heaven') are the heavenly beings assembled in the divine court. The detail mi-yemino u-mi-semolo ('from his right and from his left') frames a formal throne-room scene. This is one of the few passages in the Hebrew Bible that depicts the heavenly council in session (see also Job 1-2, Isaiah 6, Psalm 82).
20. The divine question — mi yefatteh et Ach'av ('who will entice Ahab?') — uses the verb patah ('to entice, to persuade, to deceive'). The verb carries connotations of seduction — leading someone astray through appeal rather than force. The purpose is explicit: ve-ya'al ve-yippol ('so he will go up and fall') — 'fall' at Ramoth-gilead means die. The heavenly court deliberates: va-yomer zeh be-khoh ve-zeh omer be-khoh ('this one said thus and that one said thus') — various proposals are offered.
21. The ha-ruach ('the spirit') comes forward as a volunteer. The definite article may indicate a specific, known spiritual being. The verb afattenu ('I will entice him') uses the same root as the LORD's question (patah). God's question — ba-mah ('by what means?') — is not ignorance but inquiry: what method will the spirit use?
22. The spirit's method: ruach sheqer be-fi kol nevi'av ('a spirit of falsehood in the mouth of all his prophets'). The word sheqer ('falsehood, deception, lie') is unambiguous — the four hundred will speak lies under this spirit's influence. God's authorization is explicit: tefateh ve-gam tukhal ('you will entice and you will also prevail') — success is guaranteed. The command tse va-aseh khi ('go out and do so') is a divine commissioning. The theological weight is enormous: God authorizes deception as an instrument of judgment on a king who has rejected truth.
23. Micaiah's summary is blunt: natan YHWH ruach sheqer ('the LORD has placed a lying spirit'). He applies the vision directly to the present scene — the four hundred are speaking under a divinely authorized spirit of falsehood. The final statement — va-YHWH dibber alekha ra'ah ('and the LORD has spoken disaster against you') — removes all ambiguity: the LORD has pronounced judgment, and the false prophets are its mechanism.
24. Zedekiah responds with violence — va-yakkeh et Mikhayehu al ha-lechi ('he struck Micaiah on the cheek'). His question — ei zeh avar ruach YHWH me'itti ('which way did the spirit of the LORD pass from me?') — insists that the spirit of the LORD is with him, not with Micaiah. The irony is searing: Micaiah has just explained that the spirit in the four hundred is a ruach sheqer, but Zedekiah genuinely believes it is ruach YHWH.
25. Micaiah's reply predicts the day of reckoning: ba-yom ha-hu asher tavo cheder be-cheder le-hechave ('on that day when you enter room within room to hide'). The phrase cheder be-cheder ('room within room') echoes Ben-hadad's hiding in 20:30 and foreshadows a day when the consequences of false prophecy catch up with Zedekiah.

- 26.** Ahab orders Micaiah's arrest: he is returned to Amon sar ha-ir ('Amon the city governor') and Yo'ash ben ha-melekh ('Joash the king's son') — royal officials who serve as his jailers. The phrase hashiveihu ('return him') suggests Micaiah was already in custody and had been brought from prison to prophesy.
- 27.** The prison conditions — lechem lachats u-mayim lachats ('bread of affliction and water of affliction') — describe starvation rations. The word lachats ('pressure, distress, affliction') means barely enough to survive. Ahab's final words are ad bo'i be-shalom ('until I return in peace/safely') — he assumes he will come back alive, directly contradicting Micaiah's prophecy.
- 28.** Micaiah stakes everything: im shov tashuv be-shalom lo dibber YHWH bi ('if you indeed return in peace, the LORD has not spoken through me'). This is the ultimate prophetic test — if Ahab survives, Micaiah is a false prophet. The appeal shim'u ammim kullam ('hear, all you peoples') invokes witnesses to the prophecy and echoes Micah 1:2.
- 29.** Despite everything — Micaiah's vision of scattered sheep, the divine council scene, the lying spirit — both kings march to war. Ahab chooses the four hundred over the one.
- 30.** Ahab's plan reveals both cunning and cowardice: hitchappeis ('I will disguise myself') while asking Jehoshaphat to wear his begadim ('robes') — effectively making Jehoshaphat the decoy target. The verb hitchappeis ('to disguise oneself') echoes the prophet's disguise in 20:38. Ahab believes he can evade the divine sentence by changing his appearance.
- 31.** The Aramean king's order — im et melekh Yisra'el levaddo ('only with the king of Israel alone') — creates a targeted assassination plan. The phrase et qaton ve-et gadol ('small or great') is a merism meaning 'anyone at all.' Thirty-two chariot commanders are all tasked with one objective: find and kill Ahab.
- 32.** Jehoshaphat, wearing royal robes, becomes the target. The phrase akh melekh Yisra'el hu ('surely he is the king of Israel') shows the disguise working — they mistake the robed king for Ahab. Jehoshaphat's cry — va-yiz'aq — is a scream of terror. The 2 Chronicles parallel (18:31) adds that God helped Jehoshaphat by drawing the enemy away.
- 33.** The recognition — ki lo melekh Yisra'el hu ('that he was not the king of Israel') — saves Jehoshaphat. They break off the pursuit. Ahab's disguise has succeeded in hiding him from human enemies, but divine judgment does not rely on visual identification.
- 34.** The word le-tummo has been translated 'at a venture' (KJV), 'at random,' 'without taking aim,' or 'in his simplicity.' Each captures part of the meaning. The root tam suggests both randomness (the soldier did not intend a specific target) and innocence (he bears no guilt for assassination — he is simply a soldier in battle). The wound location — between the devaqim ('joints, connecting pieces') and the shiryon ('breastplate, body armor') — is precisely where Ahab is vulnerable despite his disguise. The charioteer's name is not given; Ahab's command hafokh yadekha ('turn your hand') orders a change of direction. The phrase ki hochleti ('for I am wounded/made sick') understates what will prove to be a fatal wound.
- 35.** Ahab is held upright in the chariot — mo'omad ba-merkavah ('propped up, held standing in the chariot') — facing the enemy all day while slowly bleeding to death. The verb mo'omad (ho'amad in causative form) means someone was holding him in position. The blood — dam ha-makkah ('the blood of the wound') — flowed into cheiq ha-rakhev ('the hollow/basin of the chariot'). The image is of a man displayed as a dying figurehead while his lifeblood collects at his feet.
- 36.** The rinnah ('cry, proclamation, shout') dismisses the army. The phrase ish el iro ve-ish el artso ('each man to his city and each man to his land') echoes the divine word in Micaiah's vision (verse 17): yashuvu ish le-veito be-shalom ('let each return to his house in peace'). The prophecy is fulfilled in exact detail.
- 37.** The death notice is spare: va-yamot ha-melekh ('the king died'). He is brought to Samaria for burial — the body returns to the capital. The repetition of Shomeron ('Samaria') three times in this short verse emphasizes the location, setting up the blood-washing scene.
- 38.** The prophecy of 21:19 finds partial fulfillment: va-yaloqqu ha-kelavim et damo ('the dogs licked up his blood'). The additional detail ve-ha-zonot rachatsu ('and the prostitutes bathed') may refer to cult prostitutes who used the pool, adding another layer of degradation. The narrator's comment — ki-dvar YHWH asher dibber ('according to the word of the LORD which he spoke') — explicitly ties the event to the prophetic sentence. The blood that pooled in Ahab's chariot is now licked by dogs — the most degrading fate imaginable for a king.
- 39.** The regnal summary mentions beit ha-shen ('the ivory house/palace'), confirmed by archaeological excavation at Samaria where hundreds of carved ivory panels were discovered. Amos 3:15 later condemns the 'houses of ivory.' The reference to Sefer Divrei ha-Yamim le-Malkhei Yisra'el ('the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel') points to a now-lost court chronicle.
- 40.** The regnal formula: va-yishkav Ach'av im avotav ('Ahab slept with his fathers') — the standard euphemism for death. Ahaziah (Achazyahu, 'the LORD has grasped') succeeds him. Despite the dramatic death and the dogs licking blood, the narrator closes with the standard formula — the rhythm of the monarchy continues.
- 41.** The narrative shifts to Jehoshaphat's regnal summary. The synchronistic dating — bi-shnat arba le-Ach'av ('in year four of Ahab') — places the two kingdoms in chronological relation. The accession formula marks the transition to Judean records.
- 42.** The standard Judean regnal formula includes the king's age at accession, length of reign, capital city (Jerusalem), and queen mother's name. Azubah (Azuvah, 'forsaken') daughter of Shilchi is otherwise unknown.
- 43.** The evaluation is positive: la'asot ha-yashar be-einei YHWH ('doing the right in the eyes of the LORD'). Jehoshaphat follows his father Asa's pattern of covenant faithfulness, though the qualification in the next verse tempers the praise.

44. The standard caveat for even good Judean kings: *ha-bamot lo saru* ('the high places were not removed'). The *bamot* ('high places') were local worship sites, some devoted to the LORD and some syncretistic. Their persistence indicates that centralized worship at Jerusalem was not yet fully established.
45. The verb *va-yashleim* ('he made peace') from the root *shalam* confirms the political alliance between Judah and Israel that led to the Ramoth-gilead campaign. The alliance was sealed through marriage: Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram married Ahab's daughter Athaliah (2 Kings 8:18).
46. The standard source citation for Judean kings references *Sefer Divrei ha-Yamim le-Malkhei Yehudah* ('the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah'), a separate court chronicle from the Israelite one mentioned in verse 39.
47. The *qadesh* (plural *qedeshim*, 'cult prostitutes, sacred ones') were practitioners of ritual sexual worship associated with Canaanite religion. The term carries ironic weight: *qadesh* derives from the root *qdash* ('to be holy, to be set apart'), but in this context designates those devoted to sexual rites. Jehoshaphat completed the purge his father began.
48. This brief note explains that Edom was under Judean control during Jehoshaphat's reign — a *nitsav* ('appointed deputy, governor') ruled rather than an independent king. This political situation made the Red Sea trade ventures of verse 49 possible.
49. *Oniyyot Tarshish* ('ships of Tarshish') refers to large seagoing vessels designed for long-distance trade, not necessarily ships bound for Tarshish (likely Tartessos in Spain). Ophir was a legendary gold-producing region, possibly in East Africa or southern Arabia. The fleet's destruction at Etsyon-Gever (the port on the Gulf of Aqaba) before it could sail represents a failed commercial venture. 2 Chronicles 20:35-37 adds that a prophet condemned this venture because of Jehoshaphat's alliance with Ahaziah.
50. Ahaziah's offer of a joint shipping venture is declined — *lo avah Yehoshafat* ('Jehoshaphat was not willing'). After the Ramoth-gilead disaster, Jehoshaphat apparently learned the danger of alliances with Ahab's house. The refusal represents a policy correction.
51. The death formula for a good Judean king includes burial *be-ir David* ('in the city of David') — the royal necropolis in Jerusalem. Jehoram (Yehoram, 'the LORD is exalted') succeeds him but will prove a disastrous king, largely under the influence of his wife Athaliah, daughter of Ahab and Jezebel.
52. The northern accession formula: synchronistic dating with Judah (seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat), capital city (Samaria), and reign duration (two years). Ahaziah's brief reign will be recounted in 2 Kings 1.
53. The regnal judgment — *va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH* ('he did evil in the eyes of the LORD') — is the standard negative formula. Three influences are cited: his father Ahab, his mother Jezebel (a rare mention of a queen mother in the northern evaluation), and the foundational sin of Jeroboam. The phrase *asher heceti et Yisra'el* ('who caused Israel to sin') is the perpetual refrain attached to Jeroboam's legacy.
54. The final verse of 1 Kings closes with Baal worship continuing into the next generation: *va-ya'avod et ha-Ba'al va-yishtachavu lo* ('he served Baal and bowed to him'). The phrase *va-yakh'es et YHWH* ('he provoked the LORD to anger') is the standard theological judgment on idolatry. The book ends where it has spent its second half — in the shadow of Baal, with the Elijah-Elisha prophetic movement as the only counterweight. The phrase *ke-khol asher asah aviv* ('exactly as his father had done') confirms that Ahab's legacy of covenant violation continues unbroken.

2 Kings

1

Summary: *After Ahab's death, Moab rebels against Israel. Ahaziah son of Ahab falls through a lattice in his upper room in Samaria and is injured. He sends messengers to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron, whether he will recover. The angel of the LORD sends the prophet Elijah to intercept the messengers with a devastating question: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are sending to inquire of Baal-zebub?' Elijah pronounces that Ahaziah will not leave his bed but will certainly die. The messengers return and report the encounter. Ahaziah recognizes the description as Elijah and sends a captain with fifty soldiers to seize the prophet. Elijah is sitting on top of a hill. The captain commands him to come down, calling him 'man of God.' Elijah responds: 'If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty.' Fire falls and destroys them. A second captain and fifty are sent with the same result. A third captain comes but falls on his knees and begs for his life. The angel of the LORD tells Elijah to go down with him without fear. Elijah accompanies the third captain to the king and delivers the death sentence face to face. Ahaziah dies according to the word of the LORD, and Jehoram his brother succeeds him because Ahaziah has no son.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter draws a sharp line between the God of Israel and the gods of the nations. Ahaziah's decision to consult Baal-zebub rather than the LORD is not merely a religious preference but a political statement — the king of Israel is treating a Philistine deity as more reliable than Israel's covenant God. The repeated question 'Is it because there is no God in Israel?' (appearing three times in the chapter) is one of the most cutting rhetorical devices in Kings. Each repetition intensifies the indictment: the king's behavior implies that the LORD does not exist or is powerless. The fire from heaven connects Elijah to the Carmel confrontation (1 Kings 18) — fire already settled the question of which deity is real, yet Ahaziah acts as if that contest never happened. The three captains create a pattern of escalating crisis: the first two approach with military arrogance and are destroyed; the third approaches with humility and lives. The pattern teaches that the power of God cannot be commanded by royal authority.*

Translation Friction: *The destruction of two groups of fifty soldiers raises moral questions about proportional response — these soldiers were following orders, not personally guilty of idolatry. Some interpreters note that the fire from heaven is a response to the captains' presumptuous command ('come down') rather than to their mere presence. The third captain's survival because of his humility suggests the judgment is directed at the arrogance of approaching God's prophet as a criminal to be arrested rather than as a messenger to be heard. The name 'Baal-zebub' (lord of flies) is likely a Hebrew mockery of 'Baal-zebul' (lord of the exalted*

dwelling / Baal the prince). The transition between 1 Kings and 2 Kings is artificial — the chapter division was imposed centuries later — and this chapter continues the Ahaziah notice that began in 1 Kings 22:51-53.

Connections: The fire from heaven connects backward to 1 Kings 18:38 (fire on Carmel) and forward to Luke 9:54 where James and John ask Jesus if they should call fire from heaven on a Samaritan village — Jesus rebukes them, marking a new-covenant reorientation. The inquiry of foreign gods echoes Saul's visit to the medium at Endor (1 Samuel 28), where a king in crisis bypasses the LORD and consults another spiritual source. Ahaziah's death without a son creates a succession crisis that transfers power to his brother Jehoram, connecting the Omride dynasty's decline to its persistent rejection of the LORD. The lattice fall in the upper room is a small but symbolically loaded detail — the king who reached upward toward Baal falls downward through his own floor.

¹After Ahab died, Moab broke away from its subjection to Israel. ²Ahaziah fell through the lattice of his upper room in Samaria and was injured. He sent messengers, telling them, "Go, inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I will recover from this injury." ³But the angel of the LORD said to Elijah the Tishbite, "Get up, go to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria and say to them: Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron?" ⁴Therefore, this is what the LORD says: You will not come down from the bed you have gone up on — you will certainly die." And Elijah went. ⁵The messengers returned to Ahaziah, and he asked them, "Why have you come back?" ⁶The y told him, "A man came up to meet us and said, 'Go back to the king who sent you and tell him: This is what the LORD says — Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are sending to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed you have gone up on. You will certainly die.'" ⁷He asked them, "What sort of man was it who came up to meet you and spoke these words to you?" ⁸They answered, "A man wearing a garment of hair, with a leather belt strapped around his waist." He said, "That is Elijah the Tishbite." ⁹The king sent a captain of fifty with his fifty soldiers to Elijah. The captain went up to him — he was sitting on top of a hill — and said to him, "Man of God, the king has spoken: come down." ¹⁰Elijah answered the captain of fifty, "If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty." Fire came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty. ¹¹The king sent another captain of fifty with his fifty soldiers. This one said to Elijah, "Man of God, this is what the king says: come down at once!" ¹²Elijah answered them, "If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty." The fire of God came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty. ¹³He sent a third captain of fifty with his fifty soldiers. The third captain went up, fell on his knees before Elijah, and pleaded with him: "Man of God, please — let my life and the lives of these fifty servants of yours be precious in your eyes." ¹⁴"Fire has already come down from heaven and consumed the first two captains of fifty with their men. Now let my life be precious in your eyes." ¹⁵The angel of the LORD said to Elijah, "Go down with him. Do not be afraid of him." So Elijah got up and went down with the captain to the king. ¹⁶Elijah said to him, "This is what the LORD says: Because you sent messengers to inquire of Baal-zebub, the god of Ekron — is it because there is no God in Israel whose word you could seek? — therefore you will not come down from the bed you have gone up on. You will certainly die." ¹⁷So Ahaziah died, according to the word of the LORD that Elijah had spoken. Jehoram reigned in his place in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, because Ahaziah had no son. ¹⁸The rest of the acts of Ahaziah and what he accomplished — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-yifsha* ('he rebelled, transgressed') signals a political break: Moab had been a vassal state paying tribute to Israel, and Ahab's death opened a power vacuum. The Mesha Stele (Moabite Stone) corroborates this rebellion from the Moabite perspective. This verse sets the political backdrop for the entire early section of 2 Kings.
2. The *sevakhah* ('lattice') was a wooden screen or railing on an upper-story window or opening. Falling through it suggests it was either poorly maintained or Ahaziah leaned against it. The name *Ba'al Zevuv* ('lord of flies') is almost certainly a deliberate Hebrew distortion of *Ba'al Zevul* ('Baal the Prince' or 'lord of the exalted dwelling'). Ekron was one of the five major Philistine cities. The verb *va-yachal* ('he became sick, was injured') indicates the fall was serious enough to confine him to bed.
3. The rhetorical question *ha-mibeli ein Elohim be-Yisrael* ('is it from the lack — is there no God in Israel?') is devastating in its simplicity. It does not argue for God's superiority over Baal-zebub; it implies that consulting a foreign god is equivalent to declaring that the LORD does not exist. Elijah the

Tishbite re-enters the narrative as the LORD's agent of confrontation, just as he was at Carmel.

4. The death sentence uses the emphatic *mot tamut* ('dying you will die'), the same intensified construction used in the Eden warning (Genesis 2:17). The bed from which Ahaziah will not come down stands in ironic contrast to the lattice through which he fell down — his fall brought him to a bed that becomes his deathbed. Elijah departs without waiting for a response; the prophetic word is delivered and requires no negotiation.
5. Ahaziah's question *mah zeh shavtem* ('what is this — you have returned?') reveals his surprise. The messengers were supposed to travel to Ekron, a considerable journey. Their premature return signals that something has interrupted the mission.
6. The messengers relay the oracle in full, repeating both the rhetorical question and the death sentence. The second-person singular 'you are sending' (*attah sholeach*) shifts the accusation from the messengers collectively (verse 3) to the king personally. The prophetic word reaches Ahaziah despite his attempt to bypass the LORD.
7. Ahaziah asks *mah mishpat ha-ish* ('what was the manner/appearance of the man?'). The word *mishpat* here means 'manner, custom, characteristic appearance' rather than its more common sense of 'judgment.' The king is trying to identify the prophet by description.
8. The description *ish ba'al se'ar* ('a man who is a master of hair' or 'a hairy man') likely refers to a hairy garment or cloak rather than bodily hairiness — this is the prophetic mantle that becomes central in chapter 2. The leather belt (*ezor* or) around his waist completes the ascetic prophet's appearance. Ahaziah recognizes Elijah immediately from this description, indicating Elijah's reputation and distinctive appearance were well known. John the Baptist later adopts this same clothing (Matthew 3:4), deliberately evoking Elijah.
9. The captain's command *redah* ('come down!') is an order, not a request. He calls Elijah *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') but the title functions as a form of address rather than an expression of reverence — he is identifying Elijah's role in order to command him. The king's authority is invoked: *ha-melek dibber* ('the king has spoken'). The confrontation is between royal power and prophetic authority: can the king command a man of God?
10. The conditional *im* ('if') does not express Elijah's doubt about his own identity but creates a theological syllogism: if I am what you called me, then the God I serve will validate it. The fire from heaven echoes 1 Kings 18:38 (Carmel) and anticipates the fire motif that runs through Elijah's narrative. The verb *va-tokhal* ('and it consumed') indicates total destruction.
11. The second captain adds *meherah* ('quickly, at once') to the command — escalating the urgency and the arrogance. Despite the destruction of the first group, the second captain approaches with the same presumption that royal authority overrides prophetic authority. The repetition of the same command despite the previous result reveals the stubbornness of the royal house.
12. This time the text specifies *esh Elohim* ('fire of God') rather than simply *esh* ('fire'), making the divine origin explicit. The exact repetition of the pattern — command, conditional response, fire — creates the narrative rhythm that makes the third encounter's variation all the more striking.
13. The third captain breaks the deadly pattern. He uses the same title *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') but with entirely different posture — on his knees, pleading (*va-yitchannen*, from the root *chanan*, 'to show grace, to plead for grace'). His request *tiqar na nafshi* ('let my life be precious, valued') acknowledges that his life depends on the prophet's favor, not the king's authority. He calls his soldiers *avadekha* ('your servants'), transferring allegiance from the king to the prophet.
14. The third captain presents evidence: he knows what happened to his predecessors. His plea is informed by observation — he has learned from the deaths of the first hundred soldiers that approaching with arrogance is fatal. His humility is practical as well as spiritual: he has assessed the situation and concluded that the prophet's authority outranks the king's.
15. The angel's command *red oto al tira mipanav* ('go down with him, do not fear from before him') reveals that Elijah's position on the hilltop was not merely geographical but defensive — he remained on high ground where royal soldiers had to come to him. Now that the third captain has shown proper humility, Elijah can descend safely. The assurance 'do not be afraid' suggests real physical danger — Ahaziah might still attempt to harm the prophet.
16. The third and final delivery of the oracle is spoken face to face to the king. This version adds a crucial phrase: *lidrosh bidvaro* ('to inquire of His word'). The issue is not merely the existence of a God in Israel but the availability of His word — the LORD has a word to give, and Ahaziah refused to seek it. The face-to-face delivery ensures the king cannot claim ignorance. Elijah delivers the sentence directly, fulfilling his prophetic commission completely.
17. The death formula *va-yamat kidvar YHWH asher dibber Eliyahu* ('he died according to the word of the LORD that Elijah spoke') makes the theological point explicit: the king died not from the fall but from the prophetic sentence. The succession passes to Jehoram (Ahaziah's brother) because Ahaziah had no son — the dynasty continues but through a lateral move. The synchronism with Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat in Judah creates some chronological complexity that scholars continue to debate.
18. The standard closing formula for a king's reign directs the reader to the *sefer divrei ha-yamim le-malkhei Yisrael* ('Book of the Annals/Chronicles of the Kings of Israel'), a now-lost royal record. The formula is brief and contains no evaluation — Ahaziah's evil was already established in 1 Kings 22:52-53. His reign receives minimal coverage: a fall, a failed inquiry, a confrontation with Elijah, and death.

2

Summary: *The LORD is about to take Elijah up to heaven in a whirlwind. Elijah travels from Gilgal to Bethel to Jericho to the Jordan, and at each stop he tells Elisha to stay behind. Elisha refuses each time: 'As the LORD lives and as you live, I will not leave you.' At each location, the sons of the prophets tell Elisha that the LORD will take his master today; Elisha already knows and tells them to be silent. At the Jordan, Elijah takes his mantle, rolls it up, and strikes the water. The river parts, and the two cross on dry ground. Elijah asks Elisha what he can do for him before he is taken. Elisha requests a double portion of Elijah's spirit. Elijah says this is a hard thing but grants the condition: if Elisha sees him being taken, the request will be granted. As they walk and talk, a chariot of fire and horses of fire appear and separate them, and Elijah goes up in a whirlwind to heaven. Elisha sees it and cries out, 'My father, my father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!' He tears his garments in two. He picks up Elijah's mantle that had fallen from him, returns to the Jordan, strikes the water with the mantle, and the river parts again. The sons of the prophets at Jericho see him and declare that Elijah's spirit rests on Elisha. They insist on sending fifty men to search for Elijah, thinking the spirit of the LORD may have cast him onto a mountain or valley. Elisha resists but finally consents; they search three days and find nothing. Elisha then performs two miracles: he heals the bad water at Jericho by throwing salt into the spring, and he pronounces a curse on youths from Bethel who mock him, resulting in two bears mauling forty-two of them. Elisha then goes to Mount Carmel and returns to Samaria.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter narrates one of only two instances in the Hebrew Bible where a person does not die but is taken directly by God (the other being Enoch in Genesis 5:24). The ascension of Elijah is not a quiet departure but a cosmic event involving a chariot and horses of fire and a whirlwind — the imagery of divine warfare applied to the departure of a single prophet. The parting of the Jordan deliberately echoes Joshua's crossing and ultimately Moses' parting of the sea, placing Elijah in the succession of Israel's greatest leaders. Elisha's request for a 'double portion' (pi shenayim) is not a request for twice as much power but for the firstborn's inheritance share — he is asking to be recognized as Elijah's primary heir in the prophetic office. The mantle (aderet) becomes the physical symbol of prophetic succession: it falls from Elijah as he ascends, and Elisha picks it up and uses it to part the Jordan, proving the transfer is complete. The chapter is structured as a journey with three refusals to stay behind, creating a pattern of loyalty testing that recalls Ruth's refusal to leave Naomi.*

Translation Friction: *Elisha's cry 'My father, my father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!' is enigmatic. Is he calling Elijah 'the chariots of Israel' — meaning Elijah himself was Israel's true military defense? Or is he describing what he sees — the actual chariot and horses of fire? Most interpreters take the first reading: Elijah was worth more to Israel than its entire chariot force. The bear incident at the end of the chapter is deeply troubling to modern readers. The Hebrew ne'arim qetanim can mean 'small boys' or 'young men' — the age is debated. Their taunt 'go up, go up, baldhead' may mock Elijah's ascension ('go up' echoes the ascension language), making it a theological provocation rather than mere childish insult. The severity of the curse — forty-two mauled — remains difficult. The fifty men's search for Elijah creates narrative tension: the sons of the prophets cannot fully grasp what has happened. Their assumption that the ruach YHWH ('spirit of the LORD') might have deposited Elijah somewhere shows they understand prophetic transport (cf. 1 Kings 18:12) but not permanent departure.*

Connections: *The Jordan crossing connects to Joshua 3-4 (Israel crossing into the promised land) and to Moses at the Red Sea (Exodus 14). Elijah retraces Israel's entry into the land in reverse — crossing eastward — as if departing the promised land before ascending. The chariot of fire connects to the broader fire imagery of Elijah's ministry (fire on Carmel, fire on the captains in chapter 1). The double portion request connects to Deuteronomy 21:17, where the firstborn receives pi shenayim ('a mouth of two,' i.e., a double share) of the inheritance. Elijah's ascension becomes the basis for the expectation of Elijah's return before the Day of the LORD (Malachi 4:5-6), which the New Testament applies to John the Baptist (Matthew 11:14, 17:10-13) and which appears at the Transfiguration (Matthew 17:3). The healing of Jericho's water anticipates Elisha's ministry of restoration, in contrast to Elijah's ministry of confrontation.*

¹When the LORD was about to take Elijah up to heaven in a whirlwind, Elijah and Elisha set out from Gilgal. ²Elijah said to Elisha, "Stay here, because the LORD has sent me to Bethel." But Elisha said, "As the LORD lives, and as you yourself live, I will not leave you." So they went down to Bethel. ³The sons of the prophets who were at Bethel came out to Elisha and said, "Do you know that today the LORD will take your master from over you?" He said, "Yes, I know. Be silent." ⁴Elijah said to him, "Elisha, stay here, because the LORD has sent me to Jericho." But he said, "As the LORD lives, and as you yourself live, I will not leave you." So they came to Jericho. ⁵The sons of the prophets at Jericho came up to Elisha and said, "Do you know that today the LORD will take your master from over you?" He answered, "Yes, I know. Be silent." ⁶Elijah said to him, "Stay here, because the LORD has sent me to the Jordan." But he said, "As the LORD lives, and as you yourself live, I will not leave you." And the two of them walked on together. ⁷Fifty men from the sons of the prophets went and stood at a distance, watching, while the two of them stood by the Jordan. ⁸Elijah took his mantle, rolled it up, and struck the water. The water divided to one side and the other, and the two of them crossed over on dry ground. ⁹When they had crossed over, Elijah said to Elisha, "Ask what I should do for you before I am taken from you." Elisha said, "Please, let a double portion of your spirit come upon me." ¹⁰Elijah said, "You have asked a difficult thing. If you see me as I am being taken from you, it will be so for you. But if not, it will not be so." ¹¹As they were walking along, talking together, suddenly a chariot of fire and horses of fire appeared and separated the two of them, and Elijah went up in a whirlwind to heaven. ¹²Elisha saw it and cried out, "My father, my father! The chariot of Israel and its horsemen!" Then he saw him no more. He grabbed his own garments and tore them in two. ¹³He picked up the mantle of Elijah that had fallen from him, went back, and stood on the bank of the Jordan. ¹⁴He took the mantle of Elijah that had fallen from him and struck the water, saying, "Where is the LORD, the God of Elijah?" He struck the water, and it divided to one side and the other, and Elisha crossed over. ¹⁵The sons of the prophets at Jericho saw him from a distance and said, "The spirit of Elijah rests on Elisha." They came to meet him and bowed to the ground before him. ¹⁶They said to him, "Look, your servants include fifty strong men. Let them go and search for your master — perhaps the Spirit of the LORD has carried him off and set him down on some mountain or in some valley." He said, "Do not send them." ¹⁷But they pressed him until he was embarrassed, and he said, "Send them." So they sent fifty men, who searched for three days but did not find him. ¹⁸They returned to him while he was staying in Jericho, and he said to them, "Did I not tell you not to go?" ¹⁹The men of the city said to Elisha, "The location of this city is good, as my lord can see, but the water is bad and the land causes miscarriage." ²⁰He said, "Bring me a new bowl and put salt in it." They brought it to him. ²¹He went out to the spring where the water originated and threw the salt into it. Then he said, "This is what the LORD says: I have healed this water. Death and miscarriage will no longer come from it." ²²The water has been wholesome to this day, according to the word that Elisha spoke. ²³He went up from there to Bethel. As he was going up along the road, young men came out of the city and taunted him, saying, "Go up, baldhead! Go up, baldhead!" ²⁴He turned around, looked at them, and pronounced a curse on them in the name of the LORD. Two female bears came out of the forest and mauled forty-two of the youths. ²⁵From there he went to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb beha'alot (hif'il infinitive of 'alah, 'to go up') makes God the one who causes the ascent. The se'arah ('whirlwind') appears elsewhere in connection with divine manifestation: God answers Job from the se'arah (Job 38:1). Gilgal was a significant location in Israelite memory — the site of Israel's first camp after crossing the Jordan under Joshua. Elijah's journey begins where Israel's occupation of the land began.
2. Elisha's oath chai YHWH ve-chei nafshekha im e'ezvekka ('as the LORD lives and as your soul lives, I will not leave you') is the strongest form of personal commitment available in Hebrew. The double oath — by God's life and by the life of the person addressed — places the vow under the most solemn possible guarantee. This formula will be repeated at each stop, creating a loyalty refrain.
3. The phrase benei ha-nevi'im ('sons of the prophets') refers to prophetic guilds or communities, not biological children. Their question ha-yadata ('do you know?') is not informational but communal — they are processing the approaching loss together. The phrase me'al roshekha ('from over your head') portrays Elijah as a covering or authority over Elisha. Elisha's terse response gam ani yadati hekheshehu ('I also know — be silent!') reveals his emotional state: he knows what is coming and cannot bear to discuss it.
4. The second test of loyalty follows the identical pattern. Elijah now addresses Elisha by name, making the dismissal more personal. Elisha's oath is word-for-word identical, showing that his resolve has not weakened with the journey.

5. The exact repetition of the Bethel exchange at Jericho reinforces the universal awareness within the prophetic community that Elijah's departure is imminent. Everyone knows. Elisha's identical response shows that his command for silence is not irritation but grief management — he will not process this loss publicly.
6. The third and final test of loyalty. The destination is now the Jordan — the boundary river of the promised land. The phrase *va-yelkhu sheneihem* ('and the two of them went') echoes Genesis 22:6, where Abraham and Isaac walk together toward the Aqedah: *va-yelkhu sheneihem yachdav* ('and the two of them walked together'). Both narratives describe a journey toward a momentous, irreversible event.
7. The fifty prophetic witnesses position themselves *mineged merachok* ('opposite, from a distance'). They are close enough to see but too far to participate — they are observers, not participants, in what is about to happen. The contrast between the fifty at a distance and the two at the river marks the boundary between the prophetic community and the unique relationship between Elijah and Elisha.
8. The *aderet* is a wide, heavy cloak — the outer garment of a person of authority. The verb *va-yiglom* ('he rolled it up') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, making the action distinctive. The water divides *hennah va-hennah* ('to here and to there'), the same phrase used in Exodus 14:22, 29 and Joshua 3:16 for the parting of waters. This is a deliberate echo establishing Elijah in the Moses-Joshua line of succession.
9. The phrase *pi shenayim* ('a mouth of two') is a legal formula from inheritance law (Deuteronomy 21:17). It means 'two-thirds' or 'a double share' — the firstborn's portion in a family with multiple heirs. Elisha is making a succession claim, not a request for superior power. The request acknowledges Elijah as his spiritual father. The verb *ellaqech* ('I am taken') is passive — God is the agent who takes Elijah, not Elijah himself.
10. Elijah calls the request *hiqshita lish'ol* ('you have made your request difficult') — not impossible, but beyond what Elijah himself can grant. The condition is visual: *im tireh oti luqach me'ittakh* ('if you see me being taken from you'). Seeing the ascension becomes the test of readiness to receive the prophetic spirit. The ability to perceive the heavenly event — to have eyes for what God is doing — determines whether the successor is qualified.
11. The chariot of fire (*rekhev esh*) and horses of fire (*susei esh*) are not the vehicle of transport but the agents of separation. Elijah goes up in the *se'arah* ('whirlwind'), not in the chariot. The imagery is military-theophanic: the divine warrior's equipment (chariot and war-horses) made of fire. The separation (*va-yafridu*) is the key action — it is what prevents Elisha from following his master physically.
12. The phrase *rekhev Yisrael u-farashav* ('the chariot of Israel and its horsemen') reappears when Elisha himself dies (2 Kings 13:14), confirming it as a title of honor for the prophetic office. The tearing of garments (*qeri'at begadim*) is a mourning ritual, but tearing them into exactly two pieces may symbolize the complete break with his former identity. He will not sew these garments back together; he will pick up the mantle instead.
13. The mantle (*aderet*) that fell from Elijah during his ascent now becomes Elisha's. The verb *va-yarem* ('he lifted up, he picked up') is deliberate — the mantle was on the ground where it fell, and Elisha must choose to take it up. The prophetic office is not forced on the successor; it must be claimed. He returns to the Jordan — the boundary he must now cross alone.
14. The phrase *ayyeh YHWH Elohei Eliyahu* is textually difficult — the Masoretic text includes *af hu* ('also he' or 'even he') which some versions render as part of the cry ('where is the LORD God of Elijah, even he?') and others treat as a narrative comment ('he also struck the water'). The parting of the water validates Elisha's succession: the same miracle, the same mantle, the same God responding.
15. The prophetic community confirms the succession: *nachah ruach Eliyahu al Elisha* ('the spirit of Elijah has rested on Elisha'). The verb *nachah* ('to rest, to settle') indicates a permanent settling, not a temporary visitation. Their prostration (*va-yishtachavu lo artzah*, 'they bowed to the ground before him') acknowledges his new authority. The public recognition completes the private transfer.
16. The fifty men's proposal reveals their understanding of prophetic transport: they know the *ruach YHWH* ('Spirit of the LORD') can physically relocate a prophet (cf. 1 Kings 18:12, where Obadiah fears the Spirit will carry Elijah away). But they do not grasp that this departure is permanent. Elisha knows the truth — Elijah has not been deposited somewhere — and refuses: *lo tishlachuh* ('you shall not send').
17. The verb *va-yiftzeruv* ('they pressed him, urged him insistently') indicates persistent pressure. The phrase *ad bosh* ('until embarrassment, until shame') means Elisha felt he could no longer refuse without appearing unreasonable. He concedes — not because they are right but because further resistance would damage his relationship with the community he now leads. Three days of fruitless searching confirms what Elisha already knew.
18. Elisha's response *ha-lo amarti aleikhem al telekhu* ('did I not say to you, do not go?') is a gentle rebuke rather than a harsh reprimand. He waited in Jericho for them — he knew they would fail and return. The exchange establishes Elisha's authority: he knew what the community did not.
19. The word *meshakkelet* ('causing miscarriage, causing bereavement of offspring') indicates the water is causing sterility or miscarriage in both humans and livestock. The problem is not merely bad-tasting water but water that kills life at its source. This sets up Elisha's first miracle of restoration — healing the source of life.
20. The *tzlochit chadashah* ('new bowl') must be unused — an object with no prior contamination. Salt in the Hebrew Bible is associated with covenant (the 'covenant of salt' in Numbers 18:19 and 2 Chronicles 13:5) and with purification. The new vessel and the salt together signify that God is doing something fresh and cleansing.
21. Elisha goes to the *motza ha-mayim* ('the source/outlet of the water') — healing happens at the source, not downstream. The declaration *rippiti la-mayim ha-elleh* ('I have healed these waters') uses the prophetic perfect tense — the healing is already accomplished in God's word even before the physical effects are visible. The reversal is total: no more *mavet* ('death') and no more *meshakkelet* ('miscarriage/bereavement').
22. The narrator's aside *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') indicates the healing was permanent and still evident at the time of writing. The phrase *kidvar Elisha asher dibber* ('according to the word of Elisha that he spoke') attributes the ongoing miracle to the prophetic word — not to the salt, which

was merely a sign.

23. The phrase *ne'arim qetannim* is often translated 'little children' but *ne'arim* can refer to young men or youths — the word covers a wide age range from adolescents to young adults. Their taunt *aleh qereach* ('go up, baldhead!') has a double edge: *aleh* ('go up') may mock Elijah's ascension (the very event that just happened), and *qereach* ('baldhead') mocks Elisha's physical appearance or perhaps his lack of the hairy mantle that identified Elijah. The taunt, coming from Bethel — a center of the northern kingdom's calf worship (1 Kings 12:29) — carries anti-prophetic hostility.
24. Elisha's curse is *be-shem YHWH* ('in the name of the LORD') — this is not personal revenge but an invocation of divine authority against those who mock God's prophet and, by extension, God's work. The two she-bears (*dubbim*, feminine form) emerge from the *ya'ar* ('forest, thicket'). The number forty-two may be significant (it appears in other judgment contexts) or may simply indicate a large group. The word *yeladim* ('children, young ones') here completes the age ambiguity — the passage uses three different terms (*ne'arim*, *qetannim*, *yeladim*) that together suggest a group of youths rather than small children.
25. Elisha's journey to Mount Carmel — Elijah's great battleground — is a final act of continuity: the new prophet visits the site of his master's greatest triumph. From Carmel he returns to Samaria, the capital, establishing himself in the political center. The chapter ends with Elisha in place: the succession is complete, the miracles have begun, and the new prophet is positioned in the heart of the northern kingdom.

3

Summary: *Jehoram son of Ahab becomes king over Israel. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD, though not as severely as his parents — he removes his father's Baal pillar but clings to the sins of Jeroboam. Mesha king of Moab, a sheep breeder who had been paying enormous tribute to Israel, rebels after Ahab's death. Jehoram musters Israel and recruits Jehoshaphat of Judah and the king of Edom for a joint campaign against Moab. They march by way of the wilderness of Edom, and after seven days the army has no water for soldiers or animals. Jehoram despairs, believing the LORD has brought three kings together to hand them to Moab. Jehoshaphat asks for a prophet of the LORD, and a servant identifies Elisha, who 'poured water on the hands of Elijah.' Elisha initially refuses to help Jehoram, telling him to consult his parents' prophets, but agrees to speak because of his respect for Jehoshaphat. A musician is brought, and the hand of the LORD comes upon Elisha. He commands them to dig ditches throughout the valley. The LORD will fill the valley with water without wind or rain. The next morning water comes from the direction of Edom and fills the valley. Meanwhile, the Moabites see the water reflecting red in the morning sun and mistake it for blood, concluding the kings have turned on each other. They rush to plunder the Israelite camp but find an army ready for battle. Israel routs Moab, destroys their cities, ruins their fields, stops up their springs, and cuts down their trees. Only Kir-hareseth remains, and when slingers surround it, Mesha king of Moab takes his firstborn son and offers him as a burnt offering on the city wall. A great wrath comes upon Israel, and they withdraw.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the most disturbing endings in the historical books. After a prophetically guaranteed victory, the Israelite coalition withdraws because of 'great wrath' (*qetzef gadol*) that comes upon them after Mesha sacrifices his son on the wall. The Hebrew text does not specify whose wrath this is — God's, Chemosh's, or the psychological horror of the Israelites at witnessing child sacrifice. The ambiguity is almost certainly deliberate. The text refuses to explain how a pagan king's desperate sacrifice of his own son could cause a victorious Israelite army to retreat. This unresolved ending forces the reader to sit with the horror of the event without a tidy theological resolution. Elisha's water miracle is also remarkable for its method: God sends water without rain, through natural drainage from the Edomite highlands — a miracle accomplished through natural processes supernaturally timed.*

Translation Friction: *The 'great wrath' (*qetzef gadol*) of verse 27 is the chapter's central interpretive crux. Three main readings exist: (1) the wrath of Chemosh, Moab's god, actually achieved something — deeply uncomfortable for monotheistic theology; (2) the wrath of the LORD fell on Israel for some unstated sin; (3) the Israelites were so horrified by the human sacrifice that they lost the will to fight. The text does not resolve this, and we render it without imposing a solution. The regnal formula for Jehoram (verses 1-3) creates chronological difficulties with the synchronism in 1:17. Mesha's tribute of 100,000 lambs and 100,000 rams with their wool seems impossibly large, though Moab was known for sheep husbandry. Elisha's requirement for a musician before prophesying (verse 15) raises questions about the relationship between music, ecstatic experience, and prophetic revelation.*

Connections: The water-from-Edom miracle echoes the wilderness water miracles of Moses (Exodus 17, Numbers 20). Jehoshaphat's request for a prophet of the LORD parallels his identical request in 1 Kings 22:7. Mesha's sacrifice of his firstborn connects to the broader biblical horror at child sacrifice (Leviticus 18:21, 20:2-5; Deuteronomy 12:31; 2 Kings 16:3, 21:6) and stands in terrible contrast to the Aqedah (Genesis 22), where God provides a substitute for the child. The Mesha Stele provides an extrabiblical Moabite account of this same period, offering a rare parallel perspective. Elisha's role as battlefield prophet continues the tradition of prophetic consultation before war (1 Samuel 28; 1 Kings 22).

¹Jehoram son of Ahab became king over Israel in Samaria in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, and he reigned twelve years. ²He did evil in the eyes of the LORD, though not like his father and his mother. He removed the sacred pillar of Baal that his father had made. ³But he clung to the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin. He did not turn away from them. ⁴Now Mesha king of Moab was a sheep breeder, and he used to pay as tribute to the king of Israel one hundred thousand lambs and the wool of one hundred thousand rams. ⁵When Ahab died, the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel. ⁶King Jehoram set out from Samaria at that time and mustered all Israel. ⁷He sent word to Jehoshaphat king of Judah: "The king of Moab has rebelled against me. Will you go with me to fight against Moab?" Jehoshaphat replied, "I will go. I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses." ⁸He asked, "Which route should we take?" He answered, "Through the wilderness of Edom." ⁹So the king of Israel set out with the king of Judah and the king of Edom. After a roundabout march of seven days, there was no water for the army or for the animals that accompanied them. ¹⁰The king of Israel exclaimed, "This is terrible! The LORD has summoned these three kings only to hand them over to Moab!" ¹¹But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there no prophet of the LORD here through whom we can inquire of the LORD?" One of the king of Israel's servants answered, "Elisha son of Shaphat is here — the one who used to pour water on the hands of Elijah." ¹²Jehoshaphat said, "He has the word of the LORD with him." So the king of Israel, Jehoshaphat, and the king of Edom went down to him. ¹³Elisha said to the king of Israel, "What do I have to do with you? Go to your father's prophets or your mother's prophets." The king of Israel said to him, "No — because the LORD has summoned these three kings to hand them over to Moab." ¹⁴Elisha said, "As the LORD of hosts lives, before whom I stand — were it not that I have regard for Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not look at you or even notice you." ¹⁵"Now bring me a musician." When the musician played, the hand of the LORD came upon Elisha. ¹⁶He said, "This is what the LORD says: Dig this valley full of trenches." ¹⁷"For this is what the LORD says: You will see no wind and you will see no rain, yet this valley will be filled with water. You will drink — you, your livestock, and your animals." ¹⁸"This is a small thing in the eyes of the LORD. He will also give Moab into your hand." ¹⁹"You will strike every fortified city and every major city. You will fell every good tree, stop up every spring of water, and ruin every good field with stones." ²⁰In the morning, at the time of the grain offering, water suddenly came flowing from the direction of Edom, and the land was filled with water. ²¹All the Moabites had heard that the kings had come up to fight against them. They mustered everyone who could strap on a belt — from the youngest soldier upward — and took their position at the border. ²²They rose early in the morning, and the sun shone on the water. The Moabites, looking from across the way, saw the water as red as blood. ²³They said, "That is blood! The kings have certainly turned on each other and struck each other down. Now to the plunder, Moab!" ²⁴When they reached the Israelite camp, the Israelites rose up and struck down the Moabites, who fled before them. The Israelites pressed forward, striking Moab as they went. ²⁵They tore down the cities, and on every good field each man threw a stone until the fields were covered. They stopped up every spring of water and felled every good tree, until only Kir-hareseth remained with its stones standing. The slingers surrounded it and attacked it. ²⁶When the king of Moab saw that the battle was going against him, he took seven hundred swordsmen and tried to break through to the king of Edom, but they could not. ²⁷He took his firstborn son, who was to succeed him as king, and offered him as a burnt offering on the city wall. A great wrath came against Israel, and they withdrew from him and returned to their own land.

1. The regnal formula places Jehoram's accession in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat, which creates a chronological tension with 1:17 (second year of Jehoram of Judah). Various solutions involving co-regencies have been proposed. The twelve-year reign connects to the overthrow by Jehu in chapter 9.
2. The evaluation formula *va-ya'as hara be-einei YHWH* ('he did evil in the eyes of the LORD') places Jehoram in the standard negative category, but with a qualification: *raq lo ke-aviv ukhe-immo* ('only not like his father and his mother'). The removal of the *matzevet ha-Ba'al* ('pillar of Baal') represents a partial reform — he rejects Baal worship but does not abandon the golden calves of Jeroboam (verse 3). Jezebel is implied by 'his mother.'
3. The verb *daveq* ('he clung, he adhered') is a strong attachment word — the same root used for a man clinging to his wife in Genesis 2:24. Jehoram's attachment to the sins of Jeroboam (the golden calf worship at Bethel and Dan) is described with the language of intimate, chosen loyalty. He actively chose not to depart (*lo sar*) from these practices.
4. Mesha is called a *noqed* ('sheep breeder, livestock owner on a large scale'). The same rare word describes Amos (Amos 1:1). The tribute — *me'ah elef karim* ('one hundred thousand lambs') and *me'ah elef eilim tzamer* ('one hundred thousand rams with their wool') — represents enormous economic value. Moab's economy was heavily pastoral, and this tribute reflects both its wealth and its subjugation. The Mesha Stele confirms Moab's perspective on Israelite domination.
5. The verb *va-yifsha* ('he rebelled') repeats from 1:1, reinforcing the political context. Ahab's death created the opening Moab needed to throw off the tributary relationship. The rebellion is against the institution of Israelite kingship, not just an individual king.
6. The verb *va-yifqod* ('he mustered, he numbered, he assembled for review') is a military census term. Jehoram is preparing for a punitive campaign to re-establish Moab's subjugation. The mustering of 'all Israel' indicates a full military mobilization.
7. Jehoshaphat's response — *kamoni kamokha ke-ammi ke-ammekha ke-susai ke-susekha* — is the exact same total-commitment formula he gave Ahab in 1 Kings 22:4. The repetition suggests this is a standard alliance pledge, but it also reveals that Jehoshaphat has not learned from the near-disaster at Ramoth-gilead. He again commits fully before consulting the LORD.
8. The southern route through the wilderness of Edom is the long way around — instead of attacking Moab directly from the north across the Jordan, the coalition will circle south through Edomite territory, approaching Moab from the less-defended south. This strategy adds a third ally (Edom) but also creates the logistical nightmare of a seven-day march through arid wilderness.
9. The seven-day march (*derekh shiv'at yamim*) through waterless wilderness creates a crisis that mirrors Israel's wilderness experience under Moses. The phrase *va-lo hayah mayim* ('there was no water') echoes the wilderness water crises of Exodus 17:1 and Numbers 20:2. Three kings with their armies are as helpless in the desert as the Israelite slaves were.
10. Jehoram's cry *ahahh* ('alas!') is followed by a theological claim: *ki qara YHWH* ('because the LORD has called'). He interprets the crisis as divine hostility — God has brought the three kings together for destruction. This is the fatalism of a king who does evil in the LORD's eyes but still blames the LORD when things go wrong. He does not repent or pray; he simply declares the situation hopeless.
11. Jehoshaphat's question is identical to his question in 1 Kings 22:7 — he is consistent in seeking a genuine *navi la-YHWH* ('prophet belonging to the LORD'). Elisha is identified not by title but by his service: *asher yatzaq mayim al yedei Eliyahu* ('who poured water on the hands of Elijah'). Pouring water on the master's hands was a servant's task, indicating that Elisha served as Elijah's personal attendant — an intimacy that qualified him for succession.
12. Jehoshaphat's declaration *yesh oto devar YHWH* ('the word of the LORD is with him') is both a validation of Elisha and a theological statement: the word is a presence that accompanies the prophet. Three kings descend to a prophet — *va-yerdu elav* ('they went down to him') — a striking reversal of normal protocol. Royalty comes to the prophet, not the other way around.
13. Elisha's rebuke *mah li valakh* ('what is to me and to you?') is a distancing formula — it means 'we have nothing in common, no shared ground.' His instruction *lekh el nevi'ei avikha ve-el nevi'ei immekha* ('go to your father's prophets and to your mother's prophets') is a stinging reference to the Baal prophets of Ahab and Jezebel. Jehoram's desperate reply repeats his fatalistic claim from verse 10, but now he uses it as an argument for why Elisha should help: the situation is dire.
14. Elisha's oath *chai YHWH tzevaot asher amadti lefanav* ('as the LORD of hosts lives, before whom I stand') is the strongest possible prophetic credential — he stands in the divine presence. His contempt for Jehoram is explicit: *lulei penei Yehoshafat* ('if not for the face of Jehoshaphat') — only the presence of the Judean king earns Jehoram any prophetic attention. The word *nosei* ('bearing, carrying, regarding') indicates that Elisha respects Jehoshaphat's covenant faithfulness.
15. The *menaggen* ('musician, one who plays a stringed instrument') is needed to create the conditions for prophetic reception. The phrase *va-tehi alav yad YHWH* ('and the hand of the LORD was upon him') describes prophetic inspiration — the *yad YHWH* ('hand of the LORD') is the power that moves the prophet to speak. Music facilitating prophecy appears elsewhere (1 Samuel 10:5-6) and suggests that the prophetic state involves the whole person, not merely the intellect.
16. The command *asoh ha-nachal ha-zeh gevim gevim* ('make this wadi ditches, ditches') uses the doubled noun for emphasis — dig trench after trench throughout the dry streambed. The *nachal* is a wadi, a seasonal riverbed that is dry most of the year. The soldiers must prepare by faith: digging water channels in a waterless wilderness.

17. The miracle is described by what will not happen: *lo tir'u ruach ve-lo tir'u geshem* ('you will not see wind and you will not see rain'). The water will come without visible cause — no storm, no clouds, no natural explanation visible to the army. Yet the wadi will fill. The water is for everyone: *attem u-miqneikhem u-vehenteikhem* ('you and your livestock and your animals'). God provides for the whole creation, not just the soldiers.
18. The phrase *ve-naqal zot be-einei YHWH* ('and this is light/easy in the eyes of the LORD') dismisses the water miracle as trivial compared to what follows — military victory. The distinction establishes a theological scale: providing water is simple for God; delivering nations is also within His power. Both are 'small things' to the LORD of hosts.
19. The oracle prescribes total devastation: cities struck, trees felled, springs stopped, fields ruined with stones. The verb *takh'ivu* ('you will cause pain, you will ruin') applied to fields means making them unusable by scattering stones across them. This level of destruction is unusual and may tension with Deuteronomy 20:19-20, which prohibits cutting down fruit trees during a siege — though some interpret the Deuteronomic law as applying only to the land of Israel, not enemy territory.
20. The timing — *ka'alot ha-minchah* ('at the time of the offering going up') — connects the miracle to the liturgical rhythm of Israel's worship. The grain offering was presented in the morning. Water comes *miderekh Edom* ('from the direction of Edom'), suggesting flash flooding from rainfall in the Edomite highlands — water that traveled through wadis to reach the army's position. The miracle uses natural processes at a supernaturally precise time.
21. The Moabite mobilization drafts *mikol choger chagorah vama'lah* ('everyone girding on a belt and upward') — meaning every male old enough to wear a military belt. This is a total mobilization for defense. They position themselves *al ha-gevu* ('at the border'), preparing to repel the invasion.
22. The sunrise turns the water *adummim ka-dam* ('red as blood'). The red color comes from the Edomite soil (Edom itself means 'red') dissolved in the floodwater, combined with the angle of the morning sun. The Moabites see what they expect to see: having heard that an alliance of three rival kings was marching together, they interpret the red water as evidence of internecine slaughter.
23. The Moabite conclusion — *hocherev nechervu ha-melakhim* ('the kings have certainly been destroyed') — uses an emphatic infinitive absolute construction. They assume the fragile alliance has shattered: *va-yakku ish et re'ehu* ('each struck his neighbor'). Their cry *la-shalal Mo'av* ('to the plunder, Moab!') sends them rushing toward what they believe is an undefended camp full of spoils. This misinterpretation turns God's provision (water) into a tactical weapon (deception).
24. The Moabites arrive expecting plunder and find a fully armed, rested, and watered army. The reversal is total: the hunters become the hunted. The phrase *va-yakku vam ve-hakkot et Mo'av* ('and they struck them, striking Moab') uses a participle to indicate continuous, relentless pursuit — the Israelites drive the Moabites back into their own territory.
25. The destruction follows Elisha's oracle precisely: cities razed, fields ruined, springs stopped, trees felled. *Kir-hareseth* (Qir Chareseth, 'city of broken pottery' or 'city of the sun') was the Moabite capital or at least its last stronghold. The slingers (*qalla'im*) surround and attack it, but the city holds — setting up the desperate act in the following verses.
26. Mesha's attempt to break through (*lehavqia*) to the king of Edom suggests he was trying to attack the weakest link in the coalition or perhaps to escape through the Edomite sector. The failure of this breakout attempt leaves Mesha trapped in his last fortress with no military options remaining — driving him to the desperate act of verse 27.
27. The identity of the *qetzel gadol* ('great wrath') remains the most debated question in the chapter. Three main interpretations exist: (1) wrath from Chemosh, Moab's god, somehow effective against Israel; (2) wrath from the LORD against Israel for some unspecified sin; (3) psychological revulsion — the Israelite soldiers were so horrified by the sight of child sacrifice that their fighting spirit collapsed. The text does not resolve the ambiguity. The Mesha Stele records Mesha's own account of deliverance from Israel, attributing it to Chemosh.

4

Summary: Four miracle stories demonstrate Elisha's prophetic power and God's provision for the vulnerable. First, a widow of one of the sons of the prophets faces a creditor who will take her two sons as debt-slaves. Elisha instructs her to borrow empty vessels from neighbors and pour her small jar of oil into them. The oil flows until every vessel is full, and she sells it to pay the debt and live on the rest. Second, a wealthy woman from Shunem provides Elisha with regular hospitality, building a special room for him. Elisha promises she will hold a son within a year, though her husband is old. The promise is fulfilled. Years later the child dies suddenly, apparently from heatstroke. The Shunammite rides urgently to Elisha at Mount Carmel. Gehazi, Elisha's servant, is sent ahead with Elisha's staff to lay on the child's face, but nothing happens. Elisha comes himself, lies on the child body-to-body, and the child revives after sneezing seven times. Third, during a famine Elisha feeds the sons of the prophets from a pot of stew that has been accidentally poisoned with wild gourds. He throws flour into the pot and declares it safe. Fourth, a man brings twenty loaves of barley bread and fresh grain, and Elisha commands it be given to a hundred men. The servant protests the inadequacy, but Elisha insists, and they eat with food left over.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter presents Elisha as a prophet of domestic miracles — his power operates in kitchens, bedrooms, and family crises rather than on Mount Carmel or before kings. Each miracle addresses a concrete human need: debt, childlessness, death, famine, and inadequate food. The oil miracle reveals a principle of faith: the oil stops flowing when the vessels run out, suggesting that God's provision is limited only by the capacity to receive it. The Shunammite narrative is the chapter's centerpiece — the longest and most emotionally complex story. The woman's response to her son's death is extraordinary: she tells no one, rides directly to the prophet, and when asked if everything is well, says shalom ('peace') even though her son is dead. Her fierce, controlled determination to reach Elisha rather than surrendering to grief is one of the most powerful portraits of faith-in-crisis in the Hebrew Bible. The feeding miracle (twenty loaves for a hundred men with leftovers) anticipates Jesus' feeding of the five thousand.*

Translation Friction: *The Shunammite woman's response to Elisha in verse 28 — 'Did I ask you for a son? Did I not say, Do not deceive me?' — contains a sharp accusation: the prophetic gift has become a source of deeper pain than her original childlessness. This raises the question of whether God's gifts can become occasions for suffering. The failure of Gehazi's staff-on-the-face method (verse 31) contrasts with the success of Elisha's body-on-body method, raising questions about whether prophetic power can be delegated through objects or requires personal presence. The seven sneezes of the revived child (verse 35) are a specific and unusual detail that interpreters have variously understood as signs of returning breath, expulsion of death, or simply a realistic physical response. The poisoned stew miracle (verses 38-41) is brief and raises no theological difficulty but illustrates the prophetic community's poverty during famine.*

Connections: *The widow's oil miracle parallels Elijah's multiplication of the widow of Zarephath's flour and oil (1 Kings 17:8-16) — both prophets provide for destitute widows through miraculous provision. The Shunammite's son narrative parallels and intensifies the Zarephath narrative: Elijah also raised a widow's son (1 Kings 17:17-24), but here the woman is wealthy and the story more psychologically developed. Elisha's body-on-body resuscitation (verse 34) echoes Elijah's identical technique (1 Kings 17:21). The feeding of a hundred from twenty loaves anticipates Jesus' feeding miracles (Matthew 14:13-21, 15:32-38) with the same pattern: inadequate supply, prophetic command, abundant surplus. The debt-slavery crisis reflects the social legislation of Leviticus 25:39-43 and anticipates Nehemiah's reforms (Nehemiah 5).*

¹A woman from among the wives of the sons of the prophets cried out to Elisha, "Your servant my husband has died. You know that your servant feared the LORD, yet the creditor has come to take my two sons as his slaves." ²Elisha asked her, "What can I do for you? Tell me, what do you have in the house?" She said, "Your servant has nothing at all in the house except a small jar of oil." ³He said, "Go, borrow vessels from all your neighbors outside — empty vessels. Do not get too few." ⁴"Then go inside, shut the door behind you and your sons, and pour oil into all these vessels. Set each one aside when it is full." ⁵She left him and shut the door behind herself and her sons. They kept bringing vessels to her, and she kept pouring. ⁶When the vessels were full, she said to her son, "Bring me another vessel." He said, "There are no more vessels." And the oil stopped flowing. ⁷She went and told the man of God, and he said, "Go, sell the oil, pay your debt, and you and your sons can live on what remains." ⁸One day Elisha passed through Shunem, where a prominent woman persuaded him to eat a meal. From then on, whenever he passed through, he would stop there to eat. ⁹She said to her husband, "I am certain that this man who regularly passes through here is a holy man of God." ¹⁰"Let us make a small upper room on the wall and furnish it with a bed, a table, a chair, and a lamp. Whenever he comes to us, he can stay there." ¹¹One day Elisha came and went up to the room and rested there. ¹²He said to Gehazi his servant, "Call this Shunammite woman." He called her, and she stood before him. ¹³He told Gehazi, "Say to her: You have gone to all this trouble for us. What can be done for you? Should I speak on your behalf to the king or to the commander of the army?" She answered, "I live among my own people." ¹⁴He asked, "Then what can be done for her?" Gehazi answered, "She has no son, and her husband is old." ¹⁵He said, "Call her." When he called her, she stood in the doorway. ¹⁶Elisha said, "At this season next year, you will be holding a son." She said, "No, my lord, man of God — do not deceive your servant." ¹⁷The woman conceived and bore a son at that season the next year, just as Elisha had told her. ¹⁸The child grew. One day he went out to his father, who was among the reapers. ¹⁹He said to his father, "My head, my head!" The father told a servant, "Carry him to his mother." ²⁰He carried him and brought him to his mother. The child sat on her lap until noon, and then he died. ²¹She went up and laid him on the bed of the man of God, shut the door

behind him, and went out. ²²She called to her husband and said, "Send me one of the servants and a donkey so I can hurry to the man of God and come back." ²³He asked, "Why are you going to him today? It is not the new moon or the Sabbath." She said, "All is well." ²⁴She saddled the donkey and told her servant, "Drive fast. Do not slow the pace for me unless I tell you." ²⁵She went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel. When the man of God saw her at a distance, he said to Gehazi his servant, "There is the Shunammite woman." ²⁶"Run now to meet her and ask her: Is it well with you? Is it well with your husband? Is it well with the child?" She answered, "It is well." ²⁷When she reached the man of God at the hill, she grasped his feet. Gehazi came forward to push her away, but the man of God said, "Leave her alone. She is in bitter distress, and the LORD has hidden it from me — He has not told me." ²⁸She said, "Did I ask my lord for a son? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me'?" ²⁹He said to Gehazi, "Strap up your robe, take my staff in your hand, and go. If you meet anyone, do not greet them; if anyone greets you, do not respond. Lay my staff on the child's face." ³⁰But the child's mother said, "As the LORD lives, and as you yourself live, I will not leave you." So Elisha got up and followed her. ³¹Gehazi went on ahead and laid the staff on the child's face, but there was no sound and no response. He returned to meet Elisha and reported, "The child has not awakened." ³²When Elisha came into the house, the child was dead, lying on his bed. ³³He went in, shut the door behind the two of them, and prayed to the LORD. ³⁴He went up and lay on the child, placing his mouth on the child's mouth, his eyes on the child's eyes, and his hands on the child's hands. He stretched himself over the child, and the child's body grew warm. ³⁵Elisha got up, paced back and forth in the house, then went up again and stretched himself over the child. The child sneezed seven times and opened his eyes. ³⁶He called Gehazi and said, "Call the Shunammite woman." He called her, and she came to him. Elisha said, "Pick up your son." ³⁷She came in, fell at his feet, and bowed to the ground. Then she picked up her son and went out. ³⁸Elisha returned to Gilgal during a famine in the land. The sons of the prophets were sitting before him, and he said to his servant, "Put the large pot on the fire and make stew for the sons of the prophets." ³⁹One of them went out to the field to gather herbs and found a wild vine. He gathered wild gourds from it, filling his garment, and came back and sliced them into the pot of stew — not knowing what they were. ⁴⁰They served it to the men to eat, but as they tasted the stew, they cried out, "There is death in the pot, man of God!" They could not eat it. ⁴¹He said, "Bring some flour." He threw it into the pot and said, "Serve the people so they can eat." There was nothing harmful in the pot. ⁴²A man came from Baal-shalishah bringing the man of God bread from the firstfruits — twenty loaves of barley bread and fresh grain in his sack. Elisha said, "Give it to the people to eat." ⁴³His servant objected, "How can I set this before a hundred men?" But Elisha said, "Give it to the people to eat, for this is what the LORD says: They will eat and have some left over." ⁴⁴He set it before them. They ate and had some left over, according to the word of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The widow identifies her husband as a God-fearing member of the prophetic community, yet he died in debt. Her appeal highlights a painful reality: faithfulness to God did not guarantee financial security, especially for prophets during the reign of kings hostile to the LORD. The creditor (noseh) had legal right under Israelite law to take children as debt-slaves (cf. Leviticus 25:39; Nehemiah 5:5), though the practice was supposed to be limited and humane.
2. Elisha's question *mah yesh lakh ba-bayit* ('what is there for you in the house?') redirects attention from what she lacks to what she has. The answer — *ein le-shifchatekha khol ba-bayit ki im asukh shamen* ('your maidservant has nothing in the house except a jar of oil') — establishes the starting point of the miracle: God works with what exists, however small. The *asukh* is a small flask or jar, emphasizing how little remains.
3. The instruction *al tam'iti* ('do not make few, do not limit') places the burden of faith on the widow: the scope of the miracle will be determined by how many vessels she collects. More vessels, more oil. Fewer vessels, less provision. This is an active faith — she must go to every neighbor and ask.
4. The instruction to shut the door (*ve-sagarat ha-delet ba'adekh*) creates a private space for the miracle. This is not a public spectacle but a domestic act of faith performed behind closed doors. The miracle happens in the hidden sphere of a poor widow's home, not on a mountain before crowds.
5. The scene behind the closed door has a beautiful rhythm: *hem maggishim eleha ve-hi motzaqet* ('they were bringing to her and she was pouring'). The sons bring vessels; the mother pours. The participial forms indicate continuous, ongoing action — a sustained miracle happening in the quiet repetition of domestic labor.
6. The verb *va-ya'amod* ('it stood, it stopped') is the same verb used for something coming to a halt. The oil did not run out — it stopped because there was nothing left to receive it. The theological implication is that divine abundance meets human capacity: God pours until there is no more room.

7. Elisha's instruction covers all three needs: pay the debt (ve-shalmi et nishyekh), which prevents the sons from being taken as slaves; then live on the surplus (tichyi ba-notar). The miracle is not merely dramatic — it is economically comprehensive. The woman's crisis is fully resolved.
8. The ishah gedolah ('great woman') is great in social standing — wealthy and influential. The verb va-tachazek bo ('she took hold of him, she urged him strongly') indicates persistent hospitality, not a casual invitation. The regular visits — midei ovro yasur shammah ('whenever he passed by, he would turn in there') — establish a relationship of prophetic patronage.
9. The woman's discernment — yadati ki ish Elohim qadosh hu ('I know that he is a holy man of God') — recognizes both his prophetic identity and his holiness. The word qadosh ('holy, set apart') applied to the prophet means she perceives the divine presence that accompanies him. This is spiritual perception, not merely social hospitality.
10. The furnishings — mittah, shulchan, kisei, menorah ('bed, table, chair, lamp') — represent complete provision for a guest. The aliyat qir qetannah ('small upper room on the wall') is a room built on the flat roof or as an extension of the upper wall. This is permanent hospitality — a dedicated space for the prophet, always ready.
11. The narrative is spare: he came, he went up, he lay down. The prophet accepts the hospitality without excessive gratitude or ceremony. The room serves its purpose.
12. Gehazi (Gechazi) is introduced as Elisha's na'ar ('servant, attendant'). He functions as the intermediary between prophet and petitioner — the same role Elisha once played for Elijah. The Shunammite stands lifnav ('before him'), the posture of one awaiting instruction.
13. Elisha offers political patronage — influence with the king or military commander — the most valuable currency in an ancient Near Eastern monarchy. Her response betokh ammi anokhi yoshevet ('among my own people I am dwelling') is remarkable: she needs nothing from the political establishment. She is content, embedded in her community, lacking nothing that power can provide. This sets up the deeper gift that follows.
14. Gehazi's observation ben ein lah ve-ishah zaqen ('a son she does not have, and her husband is old') identifies the one lack that wealth and community cannot fill. Childlessness in ancient Israel was not merely a personal sorrow but a threat to the family's future — no heir meant the end of the family line and the loss of the family's ancestral land.
15. The woman stands ba-petach ('in the doorway') — a threshold position between the public space and the private room. She is on the boundary between her present life and the promise about to be spoken.
16. The promise la-mo'ed ha-zeh ka-et chayyah att chobeqet ben ('at this appointed time, at the season of life, you will be embracing a son') echoes the promise to Sarah in Genesis 18:10, 14 — the same phrase ka-et chayyah ('at the time of life/living') appears in both passages. The Shunammite's response al tekhezzev be-shifchatekha ('do not deal falsely with your maidservant') reveals that she has learned to protect herself from the pain of hope. She would rather not hope than hope and be disappointed.
17. The fulfillment is precise: la-mo'ed ha-zeh ka-et chayyah asher dibber eleha Elisha ('at this appointed time, at the season of life, as Elisha had spoken to her'). The prophetic word and its fulfillment frame the promise — what Elisha spoke, reality produced.
18. The phrase va-yigdal ha-yeled ('the child grew') compresses years into two words. The scene shifts abruptly to harvest time — the boy is old enough to go to the field. The casualness of the opening — a normal day, a boy going to see his father at work — makes the crisis that follows more devastating.
19. The child's cry roshi roshi ('my head, my head!') suggests sunstroke or heatstroke during harvest — a realistic detail for outdoor labor in the summer heat. The father's response — sending the boy to his mother rather than attending to him personally — reflects the social reality that medical care for children fell within the mother's domain.
20. The boy dies at noon — the hottest part of the day — on his mother's knees. The brevity of va-yamot ('and he died') after the intimate image of a child on his mother's lap is devastating. The promised son, the impossible gift, is dead.
21. The Shunammite places her dead son on Elisha's bed — mittat ish ha-Elohim ('the bed of the man of God'). This is not a random choice but a deliberate act: she places her son in the space most saturated with the prophet's presence, the room she built, on the bed she provided. She shuts the door (va-tisgor ba'ado) as if sealing the child in the prophetic space, then leaves to seek the prophet himself.
22. She does not tell her husband the child is dead. The verb arutzah ('I will run') conveys urgency. She asks for minimal resources — one servant, one donkey — and frames the trip as brief: ve-ashuvah ('and I will return'). Her composure in this moment is extraordinary: she is managing information and logistics while her dead son lies on the prophet's bed.
23. Her husband's question reveals that visits to the prophet were normally reserved for religious occasions — the new moon (chodesh) and Sabbath (shabbat). Her answer shalom ('peace, all is well') is not a lie but a statement of determined faith — she is going to make it well by reaching the prophet. The word shalom here carries the weight of her entire desperate hope.
24. Her command nehag valekh al ta'atzor li lirkov ('drive and go, do not hold back the riding for me') means: maintain maximum speed regardless of my comfort. She is willing to endure the physical pain of hard riding to reach Elisha faster. Every detail reveals controlled urgency.
25. Elisha sees her mineged ('from a distance') and recognizes her immediately. His identification — hinneh ha-Shunamit hallaz ('there is that Shunammite') — suggests he already senses something is wrong. She has come at an unusual time, riding hard.

26. Elisha sends Gehazi with three shalom questions — ha-shalom lakh, ha-shalom le-ishekh, ha-shalom la-yeled ('is it peace to you, is it peace to your husband, is it peace to the child?'). She answers shalom to all three. But when she reaches Elisha himself (verse 27), the truth emerges. She gives Gehazi the surface answer; she reserves the real answer for the prophet.
27. She grasps his feet (va-tachazeg be-raglav) — a posture of desperate supplication. Gehazi tries to push her away (lehodfa), presumably to protect the prophet's dignity, but Elisha stops him with a remarkable admission: va-YHWH he'elim mimmenni ve-lo higgid li ('and the LORD has hidden it from me and has not told me'). The prophet does not know everything; God reveals selectively. This honest limitation is theologically important.
28. Her accusation is piercing: ha-sha'alti ven me'et adoni ('did I ask for a son from my lord?'). She did not request the child — Elisha offered the promise unsolicited. Her warning in verse 16 — al tekhazzev ('do not deceive') — now returns as evidence: she anticipated this pain. The gift she did not ask for has become the source of her deepest suffering.
29. The instructions for urgency — no greetings, no social exchanges — indicate maximum speed. Greetings in the ancient Near East were lengthy affairs; skipping them saves significant time. The staff (mish'enet) is Elisha's personal prophetic instrument. Laying it on the child's face is an attempt at remote healing through a prophetic object. Its failure (verse 31) will demonstrate that prophetic power requires personal presence, not mere delegation.
30. The Shunammite uses the exact oath formula that Elisha himself used with Elijah in chapter 2: chai YHWH ve-chei nafshekha im e'ezvekka ('as the LORD lives and as your soul lives, I will not leave you'). She will not accept a staff and a servant as substitutes for the prophet himself. The echo is powerful: the loyalty Elisha showed Elijah, this mother now shows Elisha.
31. The staff fails: ve-ein qol ve-ein qashev ('no voice and no hearing/attention'). The doubled negative emphasizes complete absence of response. Gehazi reports lo heqitz ha-na'ar ('the child has not awakened') — using the language of sleep for death. The failure establishes that prophetic power cannot be mechanically transferred through objects; it requires the prophet's bodily presence and prayer.
32. Elisha arrives to find exactly what the Shunammite told him: the child is met ('dead'), lying on his bed — the prophet's own bed. The simple statement of fact — mushkav al mittato ('lying on his bed') — sets the scene for the most intimate of Elisha's miracles.
33. The closed door (va-yisgor ha-delet be'ad sheneihem) again creates a private space — this time between the living prophet and the dead child. The first action is prayer: va-yitpallel el YHWH ('he prayed to the LORD'). Before any physical action, Elisha appeals to God. The miracle's source is divine, not prophetic technique.
34. The body-on-body contact echoes Elijah's resurrection of the Zarephath widow's son (1 Kings 17:21). Some interpreters see mouth-to-mouth contact as a form of breath transfer — the prophet breathing the ruach ('breath, spirit') of life into the child. The warming of the flesh is the first sign of returning life, but the child is not yet revived.
35. Elisha paces — va-yelekh ba-bayit achat hennah ve-achat hennah ('he walked in the house, one way here and one way there') — before returning to the child a second time. The pacing may indicate prayer, agitation, or the building of spiritual intensity. The child's seven sneezes (va-yezorer ha-na'ar ad sheva pe'amim) are a vivid physical detail: the sneeze represents the violent expulsion of breath, the body reasserting its living function. Seven is the number of completion. The opening of the eyes (va-yifqach et einav) signals full restoration.
36. Elisha's words se'i venekh ('pick up your son') are spare and powerful — no explanation, no theological commentary, just the instruction to take the restored child. The brevity mirrors the simplicity of the miracle's resolution: what God has restored does not require elaboration.
37. Her response — falling at his feet, bowing to the ground — is wordless gratitude. The sequence is striking: prostration first, then she takes the child. She honors the prophet before claiming the miracle. Then va-tetze ('she went out') — back to her life, with her restored son.
38. The scene shifts to Gilgal during a famine (ra'av ba-aretz). The prophetic community is gathered, and food is scarce. Elisha orders a communal meal: shefot ha-sir ha-gedolah u-vashel nazid ('set the great pot and cook stew'). The story demonstrates Elisha's role as provider and protector of the prophetic community.
39. The paqqu'ot sadeh ('wild gourds, field gourds') are likely colocynth (*Citrullus colocynthis*), a bitter, toxic gourd that grows wild in the region. During famine, unfamiliar plants become food sources — the man did not know the gourds were dangerous (ki lo yada'u, 'they did not know'). The danger is accidental, not malicious.
40. The cry mavet ba-sir ('death in the pot!') is vivid and urgent — the bitter taste warned them of toxicity before they consumed a lethal amount. The stew that was meant to sustain the prophetic community has become a vessel of death. The crisis — like the water at Jericho in chapter 2 — involves a source of life turned toxic.
41. The flour (qemach) is not a natural antidote to the poison — it is a prophetic sign, like the salt thrown into Jericho's spring (2:21). The declaration tzeq la-am ve-yokhelu ('pour out for the people and let them eat') is authoritative: the prophet's word makes the food safe. The note ve-lo hayah davar ra ba-sir ('there was no evil thing in the pot') confirms complete purification.
42. The man from Ba'al Shalishah brings lechem bikkurim ('bread of the firstfruits') — grain from the first harvest, which under the Torah was to be brought to the priests (Leviticus 23:20). That he brings it to Elisha instead suggests either that the northern kingdom's prophets functioned as alternative religious leaders or that the man recognized Elisha's authority as equivalent to priestly authority. Twenty loaves of barley bread is a generous but limited gift.

43. The servant's protest — mah etten zeh lifnei me'ah ish ('what, shall I give this before a hundred men?') — is the reasonable objection: twenty loaves cannot feed a hundred people. Elisha's response is a prophetic oracle: ko amar YHWH, akhol ve-hoter ('thus says the LORD: eating and having left over'). The surplus is part of the promise — not merely enough but more than enough.
44. The fulfillment is stated with the now-familiar formula kidvar YHWH ('according to the word of the LORD'). The surplus (va-yotiru, 'they had left over') confirms that God's provision exceeds the need. This miracle — feeding many from inadequate supply with leftovers — is the closest Old Testament parallel to Jesus' feeding miracles (Matthew 14:20, 15:37), where twelve and seven baskets remain after the crowds are fed.

5

Summary: *Naaman, commander of the army of Aram, is a great and honored man through whom the LORD had given victory to Aram. But he suffers from a skin disease. A young Israelite girl captured in a raid and serving Naaman's wife tells her mistress about a prophet in Israel who could cure her master. Naaman goes to the king of Israel with a letter from the king of Aram, along with enormous gifts of silver, gold, and clothing. The Israelite king tears his robes in alarm, thinking Aram is picking a quarrel. Elisha hears and sends word: send Naaman to me, so he will know there is a prophet in Israel. Naaman arrives at Elisha's door with his horses and chariots, but Elisha does not come out. He sends a messenger telling Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan. Naaman is furious — he expected the prophet to come out, wave his hand, call on the LORD, and cure him dramatically. He names the rivers of Damascus as superior to any water in Israel. His servants reason with him: if the prophet had told you something difficult, you would have done it. How much more when he simply says, wash and be clean? Naaman goes down and dips in the Jordan seven times, and his skin is restored like the skin of a young child. He returns to Elisha and declares that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. He offers gifts, but Elisha refuses. Naaman asks for two mule-loads of Israelite soil to take home and requests pardon for bowing in the temple of Rimmon when he accompanies his king there. Elisha sends him away in peace. Gehazi, Elisha's servant, runs after Naaman and lies, claiming Elisha has changed his mind and wants silver and clothing for visiting prophets. Naaman gladly gives more than requested. Gehazi hides the goods and returns to Elisha, who confronts him: 'Was it a time to accept money, garments, olive groves, vineyards, sheep, oxen, and servants?' Naaman's skin disease transfers to Gehazi and his descendants forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is constructed around reversals and the crossing of every boundary the ancient world knew. A pagan general is healed by Israel's God; a captive slave girl has the knowledge that the most powerful men lack; the prophet of God will not even come to the door for the most important visitor in the story. Naaman's anger at being told to wash in the Jordan is theologically precise — he wanted a spectacular cure and received a humiliating command. He wanted the prophet to perform; instead the prophet sent a messenger. He wanted his own rivers; he was told to use Israel's river. Every expectation of how divine power works is overturned. The chapter also contains the clearest monotheistic confession by a non-Israelite in the books of Kings: 'Now I know that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel.' Naaman's request for two mule-loads of earth reveals a common ancient belief that deities were tied to specific territories — he wants Israelite soil so he can worship the LORD on His own ground. Elisha's response to the Rimmon question — 'Go in peace' — is strikingly tolerant, allowing Naaman to work out the practical implications of his new faith within his existing political obligations.*

Translation Friction: *Naaman's statement that the LORD gave victory to Aram (verse 1) is theologically startling — it attributes military success against Israel to Israel's own God. This implies that God's sovereignty extends beyond Israel's borders and interests, using even enemy nations for His purposes. Elisha's tolerance of Naaman's continued temple attendance for Rimmon (verses 18-19) raises questions about religious compromise — can a believer in the LORD participate in pagan worship as a political necessity? Gehazi's punishment — the skin disease of Naaman clinging to him and his descendants 'forever' — seems disproportionate and raises questions about hereditary punishment for individual sin. The young Israelite slave girl who initiates the entire chain of healing is never named, raising questions about how the biblical narrative preserves or erases the identities of the vulnerable. The LXX and some traditions add details not in the MT.*

Connections: Jesus cites this story in Luke 4:27 — 'There were many lepers in Israel in the time of the prophet Elisha, and none of them was cleansed, but only Naaman the Syrian' — using it to demonstrate that God's healing extends beyond ethnic Israel, provoking the Nazareth crowd to attempt to kill him. The seven washings connect to ritual purification laws in Leviticus 14 (the cleansing of skin disease). Naaman's confession ('no God in all the earth except in Israel') connects to the monotheistic declarations of Rahab (Joshua 2:11), the queen of Sheba (1 Kings 10:9), and Nebuchadnezzar (Daniel 4:34-35). Gehazi's fall from prophetic servant to cursed outcast parallels Judas's fall from disciple to betrayer — both were destroyed by greed while serving a master who modeled radical generosity. The skin-disease transfer from Naaman to Gehazi is a narrative reversal: what the pagan was freed from, the Israelite receives.

¹Naaman, commander of the army of the king of Aram, was a great man in the eyes of his master and highly regarded, because through him the LORD had given victory to Aram. He was a mighty warrior — but he had a skin disease. ²Aramean raiding parties had gone out and captured a young girl from the land of Israel. She served Naaman's wife. ³She said to her mistress, "If only my master could go to the prophet who is in Samaria! He would cure him of his skin disease." ⁴Naaman went and told his lord, "The girl from the land of Israel said such and such." ⁵The king of Aram said, "Go, and I will send a letter to the king of Israel." So Naaman left, taking with him ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold, and ten sets of clothing. ⁶He brought the letter to the king of Israel, which read: "When this letter reaches you, know that I have sent my servant Naaman to you so that you may cure him of his skin disease." ⁷When the king of Israel read the letter, he tore his clothes and said, "Am I God, to kill and to give life, that this man sends to me to cure someone of his skin disease? See for yourselves how he is trying to pick a quarrel with me!" ⁸When Elisha the man of God heard that the king of Israel had torn his clothes, he sent word to the king: "Why have you torn your clothes? Let him come to me, and he will know that there is a prophet in Israel." ⁹Naaman arrived with his horses and chariots and stood at the entrance of Elisha's house. ¹⁰Elisha sent a messenger to him, saying, "Go and wash in the Jordan seven times, and your skin will be restored to you, and you will be clean." ¹¹But Naaman went away furious. He said, "I thought he would surely come out to me, stand there, call on the name of the LORD his God, wave his hand over the spot, and cure the skin disease. ¹²"Are not the Abanah and the Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? Could I not wash in them and be clean?" He turned and left in a rage. ¹³But his servants approached him and said, "My father, if the prophet had told you to do something difficult, would you not have done it? How much more when he simply tells you, 'Wash and be clean'?" ¹⁴So he went down and immersed himself in the Jordan seven times, according to the word of the man of God. His skin was restored like the skin of a young child, and he was clean. ¹⁵He returned to the man of God — he and his entire retinue — came in, and stood before him. He said, "Now I know that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. Please accept a gift from your servant." ¹⁶But Elisha said, "As the LORD lives, before whom I stand, I will not accept it." Naaman urged him to take it, but he refused. ¹⁷Naaman said, "Then please let your servant be given as much earth as a pair of mules can carry, for your servant will no longer offer burnt offerings or sacrifices to any other god but the LORD." ¹⁸"But in this matter may the LORD pardon your servant: when my master enters the temple of Rimmon to worship there and he leans on my arm, and I bow down in the temple of Rimmon — when I bow in the temple of Rimmon, may the LORD pardon your servant in this." ¹⁹Elisha said to him, "Go in peace." Naaman departed from him and had gone some distance, ²⁰But Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of God, said to himself, "My master has let this Aramean Naaman off too easily by not accepting what he brought. As the LORD lives, I will run after him and get something from him." ²¹Gehazi pursued Naaman. When Naaman saw someone running after him, he got down from his chariot to meet him and asked, "Is everything well?" ²²Gehazi said, "All is well. My master has sent me to say: Two young men from the sons of the prophets have just come to me from the hill country of Ephraim. Please give them a talent of silver and two sets of clothing." ²³Naaman said, "Please, take two talents." He urged Gehazi, tied up two talents of silver in two bags along with two sets of clothing, and gave them to two of his servants, who carried them ahead of Gehazi. ²⁴When he reached the hill, he took the goods from the servants' hands, stored them in the house, and sent the men away. ²⁵He went in and stood before his master. Elisha asked him, "Where have you been, Gehazi?" He said, "Your servant has not gone anywhere." ²⁶Elisha said to him, "Did not my heart go with you when the man got down from his chariot to meet you? Is this the time to accept silver, clothing, olive groves, vineyards, sheep, oxen, male servants, and female servants?" ²⁷"Theref

ore the skin disease of Naaman will cling to you and to your descendants forever." Gehazi left his presence afflicted with a skin disease, white as snow.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *metzora* is traditionally translated 'leper' but the Hebrew *tzara'at* covers a range of skin conditions far broader than Hansen's disease (modern leprosy). We render it 'skin disease' to avoid medical anachronism. The name Na'aman means 'pleasant, gracious' — an ironic name for a man whose skin condition would have been considered repulsive. The phrase *nesu fanim* ('lifted of face') is an idiom for high social standing and the favor of superiors.
2. The *na'arah qetannah* ('young girl, small maiden') is an Israelite war captive — taken in a raid, separated from her family, enslaved in a foreign household. Despite her powerlessness, she becomes the catalyst for the entire narrative. She has no name, no family history, no tribal identity in the text — she is identified only by her age, her nationality, and her servitude. Yet she knows about the prophet in Israel, and she speaks.
3. The slave girl's declaration *achalei adoni lifnei ha-navi asher be-Shomron* ('if only my master were before the prophet who is in Samaria') is an act of extraordinary compassion — she wishes healing for the master of the household that enslaved her. The verb *ye'esof* ('he would gather, he would remove') applied to the skin disease means to gather it away, to cure it. Her faith in the prophet is unconditional.
4. The report reaches the king of Aram through Naaman himself. The phrase *kazot ve-khazot* ('thus and thus, such and such') is a summary formula indicating the full content was relayed. The entire diplomatic and military apparatus of two kingdoms is about to be set in motion by the words of an unnamed slave girl.
5. The gifts are staggering: *eser kikkerei kheseif* ('ten talents of silver') amounts to roughly 340 kilograms of silver; *sheshet alafim zahav* ('six thousand gold pieces') is an enormous sum. The ten sets of clothing (*chalifot begadim*) were luxury goods in the ancient world. Naaman approaches healing as a transaction — he brings payment commensurate with his status, expecting a commercial exchange for the cure.
6. The Aramean king's letter is addressed king-to-king; he assumes healing is a royal prerogative, something one king can command another to produce. The instruction *va-asafto mitzara'to* ('and you shall remove his skin disease') treats the cure as a political favor between sovereigns. The letter entirely bypasses the prophet — the king of Aram does not understand that healing comes from God through the prophet, not from the king.
7. The king's alarm is revealing: *ha-Elohim ani lehamit uleha'achayot* ('am I God, to kill and to give life?'). He correctly recognizes that healing skin disease is beyond human power — it belongs to God alone. But he does not think of the prophet. His panic — *ki mit'anneh hu li* ('he is seeking a pretext against me') — reveals political paranoia: he interprets the impossible request as a deliberate provocation designed to justify war.
8. Elisha's message corrects the king's panic and redirects Naaman. The key phrase is *ve-yeda ki yesh navi be-Yisrael* ('and he will know that there is a prophet in Israel'). The purpose of the healing is not merely medical but revelatory — Naaman must come to know that the God of Israel has a prophet, a spokesperson, a living representative. The healing will be evidence of God's reality.
9. Naaman arrives in full military display — *be-susav u-ve-rikhbo* ('with his horses and his chariot') — at the *petach ha-bayit* ('entrance of the house') of the prophet. The contrast is deliberate: the commander of the Aramean army, with all the trappings of military power, stands at the door of a prophet's modest dwelling. The expected protocol — that the host emerges to greet a distinguished visitor — is about to be violated.
10. Elisha does not come out. He sends a *mal'akh* ('messenger') with instructions. The command is simple: *halokh ve-rachatzta sheva pe'amim ba-Yarden* ('go and wash seven times in the Jordan'). The promise is twofold: *ve-yashov besarkha lekha* ('your flesh will return to you') and *utehar* ('you will be clean'). The seven washings connect to the Levitical purification ritual for skin disease (Leviticus 14). The Jordan is specified — not just any water, but Israel's river.
11. Naaman's fury (*va-yiqtzof*) stems from violated expectations. He had scripted the encounter in his mind: the prophet would *yetze yatzo* ('certainly come out'), *ve-amad* ('stand'), *ve-qara ve-shem YHWH Elohav* ('call on the name of the LORD his God'), *ve-henif yado* ('wave his hand'). He wanted spectacle, drama, personal attention — a performance worthy of his status. Instead he received a secondhand message and a command to wash in a river.
12. Naaman's comparison — the Abanah (modern Barada) and Pharpar (possibly the A'waj) versus the waters of Israel — reflects both national pride and a fundamental misunderstanding. He thinks the healing power is in the water's quality. But the Jordan's significance is not hydraulic — it is theological. It is the river of Israel's identity, the boundary of the promised land. Healing in the Jordan means healing on God's terms, in God's place. Naaman's rage (*chemah*, 'heat, fury') drives him away from the cure.
13. The servants' wisdom is expressed in an *a fortiori* argument (*qal va-chomer*): if you would obey a hard command, how much more an easy one? They address him as *avi* ('my father'), a term of respectful affection that softens the correction. The servants — like the slave girl earlier — understand what the powerful man does not: obedience does not require understanding.
14. The verb *va-yitbol* ('he immersed') is the root of the later word for ritual immersion (*tevilah*). The comparison to a *na'ar qaton* ('small child') emphasizes complete renewal rather than mere repair. The phrase *kidvar ish ha-Elohim* ('according to the word of the man of God') links the healing to prophetic authority — the cure works because it follows the prophet's instruction, not because of any quality in the Jordan's water.
15. The confession *ein Elohim bekhoh ha-aretz ki im be-Yisrael* ('there is no God in all the earth except in Israel') goes further than mere henotheism (acknowledging other gods exist but worshipping one). It is a monotheistic declaration: no God exists anywhere except the God of Israel. The word

berakhah ('blessing') used for the gift is significant — Naaman is not offering payment but a blessing-gift, a token of gratitude and relationship.

16. Elisha's refusal is sworn: chai YHWH asher amadti lefanav im eqqach ('as the LORD lives before whom I stand, I will not take'). The oath is the same formula used in 3:14. The refusal is theologically essential: accepting payment would make the healing a transaction rather than a revelation of God's grace. Naaman presses (va-yiftzer bo) but Elisha is immovable (va-yema'en, 'he refused'). The prophet's refusal will make Gehazi's later acceptance all the more criminal.
17. Naaman's request for massa tzemed peradim adamah ('a load of a pair of mules of earth') reflects the ancient Near Eastern belief that deities were connected to specific territories. To worship the LORD properly in Damascus, Naaman believes he needs Israelite soil to stand on. His commitment — lo ya'aseh od avdekha olah va-zevach le-elohim acherim ki im la-YHWH ('your servant will no longer make burnt offering or sacrifice to other gods except to the LORD') — is exclusive devotion, even if his theological understanding of sacred geography is incomplete.
18. Naaman's request for pardon (yislach YHWH le-avdekha) reveals his theological sensitivity: he knows that bowing in the temple of Rimmon (a Syrian deity, possibly Hadad the storm god) is incompatible with exclusive devotion to the LORD. But his political role — he must accompany his king — makes avoidance impossible. He does not ask permission to worship Rimmon; he asks forgiveness for the outward act of bowing while his heart belongs to the LORD. The tension between inner conviction and outer conformity is left unresolved.
19. Elisha's response lekh le-shalom ('go in peace') is remarkably tolerant. He neither approves nor condemns the Rimmon arrangement — he sends Naaman away with a blessing of peace. The phrase allows Naaman to work out his new faith within his existing circumstances. The word shalom here carries its full weight: wholeness, well-being, right relationship. The expression kivrat aretz ('a stretch of land, some distance') sets up the Gehazi episode — Naaman has not yet gone far.
20. Gehazi's soliloquy reveals his inner corruption. He calls Naaman ha-Arammi ha-zeh ('this Aramean') with a tone of ethnic contempt. His oath chai YHWH ('as the LORD lives') profanes the divine name — he invokes God to justify greed. The verb chasakh ('he spared, he held back') frames Elisha's refusal as excessive restraint rather than principled integrity. Gehazi sees an economic opportunity where Elisha saw a theological moment.
21. Naaman's response to seeing Gehazi run after him is gracious — he gets down from his chariot (va-yippol me'al ha-merkavah, literally 'he fell from the chariot,' meaning he quickly dismounted) and asks ha-shalom ('is it peace? is everything well?'). The word shalom returns in Naaman's mouth — the same peace Elisha just pronounced is now the healed man's instinctive greeting.
22. Gehazi's lie is elaborate: he invents two visitors from the prophetic community and claims Elisha sent him. He asks for a kikkar kesef ('a talent of silver,' about 34 kilograms) and two sets of clothing — a significant but plausible amount. By invoking the sons of the prophets, he makes the request seem charitable rather than greedy. Every element is calculated to seem reasonable.
23. Naaman's generosity — ho'el qach kikkarayim ('be willing, take two talents') — doubles the requested amount. He is overflowing with gratitude and glad to give. He assigns two of his own servants to carry the goods before Gehazi. The irony is painful: Naaman gives freely out of genuine thankfulness, while Gehazi takes through deception out of greed.
24. The ofel ('hill, citadel, fortified mound') is a location near Elisha's dwelling where Gehazi can hide the goods. He dismisses Naaman's servants (va-yeshallah et ha-anashim) before they can report back to the prophet. Every action is concealment — taking, storing, sending away witnesses.
25. Gehazi stands before Elisha (va-ya'amod el adonav) as if nothing has happened. Elisha's question me-ayin Gehazi ('from where, Gehazi?') is not seeking information — the prophet already knows. It is an invitation to confess, a chance to tell the truth. Gehazi lies: lo halakh avdekha aneh va-anah ('your servant did not go anywhere'). The lie completes his fall — he has now deceived both Naaman and his own master.
26. The phrase lo libbi halakh expresses prophetic omniscience — Elisha's 'heart' (lev, the seat of perception and will) traveled with Gehazi and witnessed everything. The expanded list of items (olive groves, vineyards, sheep, oxen, servants) that Gehazi did not actually receive may represent what Gehazi intended to acquire over time, or it may be Elisha's way of naming what greed ultimately desires — not just money but an entire estate built on corruption.
27. The hereditary nature of the punishment (u-vezar'akha le-olam, 'and to your seed forever') is one of the harsher elements in the narrative. It raises the difficult question of whether children should bear the consequences of a parent's sin. The phrase metzora ka-shaleg ('skin-diseased like snow') echoes Moses' hand becoming 'leprous like snow' in Exodus 4:6, another sign of divine judgment and power.

6

Summary: *The chapter divides into three distinct episodes, each displaying the prophetic power of Elisha in escalating stakes. First, the sons of the prophets need a larger dwelling and go to the Jordan to cut timber. One of them loses a borrowed iron axe head in the water. Elisha cuts a stick, throws it in, and the iron floats — a small miracle, yet significant because iron does not float and the axe was borrowed (the loss would have been a real economic hardship). Second, Israel is at war with Aram, and the king of Aram is frustrated because his secret military plans keep being exposed. His officers tell him Elisha the prophet reports his private words to the king of Israel. The Aramean king sends horses, chariots, and a great army to Dothan to capture Elisha. Elisha's servant wakes to find the city surrounded and panics. Elisha prays that the servant's eyes be opened, and the servant sees the hills filled with horses and chariots of fire — the invisible army of God surrounding the visible army of Aram. Elisha then prays for the Arameans to be struck with blindness (sanverim), leads the blinded army to Samaria, and prays for their eyes to be opened. They find themselves inside the Israelite capital. The king of Israel asks whether to kill them, and Elisha commands a feast instead — send them home fed, not slaughtered. The Aramean raids stop. Third, Ben-hadad king of Aram besieges Samaria, producing catastrophic famine. A donkey's head sells for eighty pieces of silver; a quarter-kab of dove's dung sells for five pieces of silver. The king of Israel is walking the wall when a woman cries out for help and reveals a horrifying agreement: two women agreed to eat their children on successive days. The first child has been eaten, but the second woman has hidden her son. The king tears his robes, and those nearby see sackcloth underneath — he has already been mourning in secret. The king swears to kill Elisha, blaming the prophet for the siege. He sends a messenger, but Elisha knows the messenger is coming before he arrives and instructs the elders to hold the door shut. The chapter ends with the king's despairing cry: the disaster is from the LORD — why should he wait for the LORD any longer?*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three episodes form a deliberate theological sequence moving from small to cosmic: a floating axe head, an invisible army revealed, and a famine that drives people to cannibalism. The opened eyes of Elisha's servant (verse 17) are the theological center — reality is not what is visible. The hills are full of divine chariots, but only prayer can open eyes to see them. Elisha's response to the captured Aramean army is extraordinary: rather than slaughter, he commands hospitality. This is one of the clearest 'love your enemies' moments in the Hebrew Bible, anticipating Jesus' teaching by centuries. The famine narrative is among the darkest passages in Scripture — a mother eating her own child — and the text does not flinch from the horror. The king's final question ('why should I wait for the LORD any longer?') is the theological crisis that chapter 7 will answer.*

Translation Friction: *The floating axe head raises obvious questions about miraculous suspension of natural law over a seemingly trivial matter. However, iron was expensive and the axe was borrowed — the loss carried real economic and social weight. The blindness (sanverim) that strikes the Aramean army echoes the blindness at Sodom (Genesis 19:11), using the same rare word, suggesting a confusion of perception rather than total loss of sight. Elisha's statement 'this is not the road and this is not the city' (verse 19) while standing in Dothan and leading them to Samaria raises questions about prophetic deception — though some argue the soldiers sought Elisha in his role as military intelligence, and he was no longer functioning in that role. The cannibalism scene fulfills the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:53-57 and Leviticus 26:29, placing the famine firmly in the framework of covenantal judgment rather than random catastrophe.*

Connections: *The floating iron connects to Exodus 15:25 where Moses throws wood into bitter water to make it sweet — in both cases, wood cast into water produces a miraculous reversal. The chariots of fire echo Elijah's departure in 2 Kings 2:11-12 and anticipate the apocalyptic imagery of Zechariah 6:1-8 and Revelation 19. Elisha's command to feed enemies rather than kill them resonates with Proverbs 25:21-22 ('if your enemy is hungry, give him bread to eat') and Romans 12:20. The cannibalism during siege fulfills Deuteronomy 28:53-57 precisely. The king's sackcloth beneath his robes echoes the hidden piety/despair motif found in other royal narratives. The king's despairing question — 'why should I wait for the LORD any longer?' — sets up the dramatic reversal in chapter 7, where the LORD acts within twenty-four hours.*

¹The sons of the prophets said to Elisha, "The place where we live under your guidance has become too small for us." ²"Let us go to the Jordan, and each of us will take a log from there, and we will build ourselves a place to live." He said, "Go." ³One of them said, "Please, be willing to come with your servants." He answered, "I will come." ⁴So he went with them. They came to the Jordan and began cutting down trees. ⁵As one of them was felling a beam, the iron axe head fell into the water. He cried out, "Oh no, my master! It was borrowed!" ⁶The man of God asked, "Where did it fall?" The man showed him the spot. Elisha cut a stick, threw it into the water, and the iron floated to the surface. ⁷He said, "Pick it up." The man reached out his hand and took it. ⁸The king of Aram was at war with Israel. He conferred with his officers, saying, "My camp will be at such-and-such a place." ⁹The man of God sent word to the king of Israel: "Be careful not to pass through that place, because the Arameans are positioned there." ¹⁰The king of Israel sent scouts to the place the man of God had indicated and warned him about, and was on guard there — not once or twice, but repeatedly. ¹¹The king of Aram was enraged over this. He summoned his officers and demanded, "Tell me — which one of us is leaking information to the king of Israel?" ¹²One of his officers said, "No one, my lord the king. It is Elisha, the prophet in Israel, who tells the king of Israel the very words you speak in your bedroom." ¹³He said, "Go and find out where he is, so I can send men to capture him." The report came back: "He is in Dothan." ¹⁴He sent horses, chariots, and a large army there. They came by night and surrounded the city. ¹⁵When the servant of the man of God got up early and went outside, he saw an army with horses and chariots surrounding the city. The servant said to him, "Oh no, my master! What are we going to do?" ¹⁶Elisha said, "Do not be afraid. Those who are with us outnumber those who are with them." ¹⁷Elisha prayed, "LORD, open his eyes so he can see." The LORD opened the servant's eyes, and he looked — and the mountain was filled with horses and chariots of fire all around Elisha. ¹⁸When the Arameans came down toward him, Elisha prayed to the LORD, "Strike these people with blindness." And he struck them with blindness, just as Elisha had asked. ¹⁹Elisha told them, "This is not the right road, and this is not the right city. Follow me, and I will lead you to the man you are looking for." And he led them to Samaria. ²⁰When they arrived in Samaria, Elisha said, "LORD, open the eyes of these men so they can see." The LORD opened their eyes, and they looked — and found themselves inside Samaria. ²¹When the king of Israel saw them, he said to Elisha, "Shall I strike them down? Shall I strike them down, my father?" ²²He answered, "You must not strike them down. Would you kill people you captured with your own sword and bow? Set food and water before them. Let them eat and drink, and then send them back to their master." ²³He prepared a great feast for them. After they ate and drank, he sent them away, and they returned to their master. And the Aramean raiding parties stopped coming into the land of Israel. ²⁴Some time later, Ben-hadad king of Aram assembled his entire army, marched up, and besieged Samaria. ²⁵There was a severe famine in Samaria as the siege continued, until a donkey's head was selling for eighty pieces of silver, and a quarter-kab of dove's dung for five pieces of silver. ²⁶As the king of Israel was walking along the city wall, a woman cried out to him, "Save me, my lord the king!" ²⁷He said, "If the LORD does not save you, how can I? From the threshing floor? From the winepress?" ²⁸The king asked her, "What is wrong?" She said, "This woman said to me, 'Give up your son so we can eat him today, and tomorrow we will eat my son.'" ²⁹So we boiled my son and ate him. The next day I said to her, 'Now give your son so we can eat him.' But she has hidden her son." ³⁰When the king heard the woman's words, he tore his robes. As he continued walking along the wall, the people could see that he was wearing sackcloth underneath, next to his skin. ³¹He said, "May God punish me and do worse if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat stays on his shoulders by the end of this day!" ³²Elisha was sitting in his house with the elders when the king sent a messenger ahead. But before the messenger arrived, Elisha said to the elders, "Do you see how this son of a murderer has sent someone to cut off my head? When the messenger comes, shut the door and hold it shut against him. The sound of his master's footsteps is right behind him." ³³While he was still speaking to them, the messenger arrived. And the king said, "This disaster is from the LORD. Why should I wait for the LORD any longer?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The benei ha-nevi'im ('sons of the prophets') are the prophetic guild or community under Elisha's authority. The phrase *lefanekha* ('before you, in your presence') indicates they live under his oversight. The word *tsar* ('narrow, constricted') shows the community is growing — a sign of Elisha's flourishing ministry.

2. The Jordan river area had abundant trees suitable for building. Each man would take *ish qorah achat* ('each man one beam') — showing communal labor. Elisha's response is a single word: *lekhu* ('go') — terse permission.
3. The request *ho'el na* ('please be willing, please consent') is deferential — they want the master present for the work. Elisha agrees personally: *ani elekh* ('I myself will go'). The prophetic leader participates in manual labor alongside his community.
4. The verb *va-yigzeru* ('they cut') from *gazar* indicates felling trees. The scene is ordinary labor — prophetic communities are not above physical work.
5. The *ha-barzel* ('the iron') refers to the axe head. The man's distress — *ahah adoni* ('alas, my lord!') — is intensified by the explanation *ve-hu sha'ul* ('and it was borrowed'). Losing borrowed property created a debt obligation. Iron was valuable; replacing it would be a serious burden for a member of an ascetic prophetic community.
6. Elisha is called *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') — the title used for prophets performing signs. The verb *va-yatsef* ('it floated') describes iron doing what iron cannot do. The stick (*ets*, 'wood, tree') thrown into the water recalls Moses throwing wood into the bitter waters of Marah (Exodus 15:25). Wood cast into water produces reversal — a pattern of prophetic sign-acts.
7. Elisha's command *harem lakh* ('lift it for yourself') requires the man to act on the miracle — reach out and take what God has restored. The miracle creates the opportunity; the man must respond.
8. The phrase *peloni almoni* ('such-and-such, a certain place') is a Hebrew idiom for an unnamed location — the narrator withholds the specific site. The king's strategy sessions are private military councils, yet their content keeps reaching Israel.
9. Elisha functions as divine intelligence — he knows the enemy's deployments before they happen. The verb *nechittim* ('positioned, descended') suggests the Arameans have taken up ambush positions.
10. The phrase *lo achat ve-lo shtayim* ('not once and not twice') is an idiom meaning 'many times, repeatedly.' This was not a single incident but an ongoing pattern of Elisha providing intelligence that thwarted Aramean strategy.
11. The verb *va-yissa'er* ('was stormy, was agitated') describes the king's heart in turmoil — a storm inside him. He suspects a spy within his own command. The question *mi mi-shellanu* ('who from among us?') assumes betrayal from within the inner circle.
12. The officer's answer eliminates espionage and points to prophecy. The phrase *ba-chadar mishkavkha* ('in the room of your lying down, in your bedroom') emphasizes the intimacy of the intelligence — even private conversations behind closed doors reach Elisha. Elisha's reputation has crossed international borders.
13. Dothan (Dotan) is about twelve miles north of Samaria, on a main route. The king's plan to 'fetch' (*eqqachehu*) Elisha — a single prophet — requires the massive force described in the next verse, revealing both the king's fear and his military mindset.
14. The Aramean king deploys a full military force — *susim ve-rekhev ve-chayil kaved* ('horses and chariotry and a heavy army') — to capture one man. The nighttime approach (*laylah*) is tactical; they surround the city (*va-yaqqifu*) to prevent escape. The disproportion between the force and the target is the narrator's ironic point.
15. The *meshareit* ('attendant, servant') — likely Gehazi's successor — wakes to a terrifying sight. His cry *ahah adoni eikhah na'aseh* ('alas my lord, what shall we do?') echoes the axe-head man's cry in verse 5 (*ahah adoni*). Both crises begin with the same words; both will be resolved by the prophet.
16. Elisha's calm response — *al tira* ('do not fear') — is the standard divine encouragement formula used throughout Scripture (Genesis 15:1, Isaiah 41:10). His claim — *rabbim asher ittanu me-asher otam* ('more are those with us than those with them') — makes no sense to natural sight. The servant sees an army; Elisha sees a greater one.
17. The *susim ve-rekhev esh* ('horses and chariotry of fire') represent the divine army — the same celestial military force that escorted Elijah in 2:11. The word *sevivot* ('all around') Elisha means the prophet is at the center of a protective ring of divine power. The mountain is unnamed but presumably the hill on which Dothan sits.
18. The word *sanverim* ('blindness, dazzling, confusion of sight') is extremely rare — it appears only here and in Genesis 19:11 (the men of Sodom struck blind at Lot's door). The word likely describes a perceptual disorientation rather than total loss of vision, since the soldiers can still walk and follow Elisha. The same word linking this to Sodom places the Aramean aggression in the category of hostile forces that assault God's protected ones.
19. Elisha's statement raises questions about prophetic truthfulness. One interpretation: since they sought him as a military intelligence target and he was now acting as something else entirely, the statement is functionally true in its redirecting sense. Another: the disorientation means they cannot recognize either the road or the city, so his claim operates within their distorted perception. He leads them directly into Israel's capital — the most vulnerable position possible for an invading army.
20. The second prayer mirrors verse 17 exactly: *peqach et einei elleh ve-yir'u* ('open the eyes of these and let them see'). In verse 17 opening eyes revealed the invisible army; here it reveals the visible trap. Both moments are about seeing reality. The Aramean soldiers, who came to capture one prophet, find themselves captive inside the enemy capital.
21. The king's excited repetition — *ha-akkeh akkeh* ('shall I strike, shall I strike?') — reveals eagerness to slaughter the helpless enemy. His address *avi* ('my father') is the respectful title for a prophetic master (compare 2:12). The question assumes the answer will be yes.

22. The command to feed rather than kill prisoners goes beyond normal ancient Near Eastern warfare conventions. Elisha redirects the king from military logic to covenantal generosity. The phrase *ve-yelkhu el adoneihem* ('and let them go to their master') sends the army home as witnesses to Israel's God-given power and mercy.
23. The *kerah gedolah* ('great feast, great preparation') transforms a military encounter into a banquet. The result — *ve-lo yasfu od gedudei Aram lavo be-erets Yisrael* ('the raiding bands of Aram did not again come into the land of Israel') — proves that mercy accomplished what military force could not. The narrative makes its point without moralizing.
24. The phrase *acharei khen* ('after this') marks a time gap. The raiding bands have stopped, but now Ben-hadad escalates to full siege warfare. The verb *va-yatsar* ('he besieged, he pressed') indicates a tight encirclement designed to starve the city into surrender.
25. The prices indicate catastrophic inflation from starvation. A donkey's head — normally inedible and from an unclean animal — sells for eighty silver pieces (*shemonim kesef*). The *chareyonim* ('dove's dung') may be literal or may refer to a type of wild plant (star of Bethlehem bulbs) used as food in desperate times. Either way, the prices demonstrate total economic collapse under siege.
26. The king walks the wall inspecting defenses. The woman's cry *hoshi'ah adoni ha-melekh* ('save, my lord the king!') uses the verb for salvation/deliverance (*yasha*) — she is appealing to royal authority for justice.
27. The king's bitter response — *al yoshiakh YHWH me-ayin oshi'ekh* ('if the LORD does not save you, from where shall I save you?') — could be read as despair or as blasphemous deflection. The rhetorical questions about the threshing floor (*goren*) and winepress (*yeqev*) point to the absence of grain and wine — the siege has emptied both.
28. The horror is reported in plain language without any narrative commentary or emotional framing. The woman recounts the agreement as a business arrangement — *teni et benekh ve-nokhlennu ha-yom* ('give your son and we will eat him today'). The matter-of-fact tone is itself the horror. This fulfills the covenant curse of Deuteronomy 28:53-57 with nauseating precision.
29. The woman's complaint is not about the cannibalism itself but about the other woman's breach of agreement — *va-tachbi et benah* ('she hid her son'). She has been cheated. The moral universe has collapsed so completely that a mother reports eating her child as a contractual matter. The narrative lets this speak for itself.
30. The tearing of robes reveals what was hidden beneath: *saq al besaro mibayit* ('sackcloth on his flesh underneath'). The king has been wearing sackcloth — a sign of mourning and possibly penitence — under his royal garments, in secret. This detail complicates any simple reading of the king as faithless; he has been grieving privately. Yet his response in the next verse turns grief into violence against the prophet.
31. The oath formula *koh ya'aseh li Elohim ve-koh yosif* ('thus may God do to me and more') is the standard self-cursing oath. The king swears to behead Elisha — blaming the prophet for the siege, either because Elisha counseled against surrender or because the king holds Elisha responsible as God's representative. The irony is that the king wears sackcloth (mourning before God) while swearing to kill God's prophet.
32. Elisha's prophetic knowledge is again on display — he knows the messenger is coming before he arrives. He calls the king *ben ha-meratstsech* ('son of a murderer'), likely referring to Ahab's murder of Naboth or to the royal house's general violence. The instruction to the elders — *sigru ha-delet u-lachatstem oto ba-dalet* ('shut the door and press him at the door') — is practical: delay the executioner until the king himself arrives, since the king may relent. Elisha also detects the king following: *qol raglei adonav acharav* ('the sound of his master's feet behind him').
33. The final verse is textually complex — the speaker appears to shift from the messenger to the king himself (who has arrived close behind). The king's statement — *hinneh zot ha-ra'ah me-et YHWH* ('this evil/disaster is from the LORD') — correctly identifies the source but draws the wrong conclusion. His question *mah ochil la-YHWH od* ('why should I wait/hope in the LORD any longer?') expresses the collapse of faith: if God sent this suffering, what is the point of continuing to trust? Chapter 7 will answer this question within twenty-four hours.

7

Summary: Elisha answers the king's despair from the end of chapter 6 with an astonishing prophecy: by this time tomorrow, fine flour will sell for a shekel and barley for a shekel at the gate of Samaria. A royal officer leaning on the king's arm scoffs: even if the LORD made windows in heaven, could this happen? Elisha replies that the officer will see it with his own eyes but will not eat any of it. The scene then shifts to four men with a skin disease sitting at the city gate, reasoning that they will die whether they stay or go, so they might as well surrender to the Aramean camp. At twilight they enter the camp and find it deserted. The LORD had caused the Aramean army to hear the sound of a massive approaching force — chariots, horses, a great army — and they fled in panic, leaving everything behind: tents, horses, donkeys, the entire camp intact. The four men eat and drink, take silver and gold and clothing, and hide it. Then their conscience strikes them: this is a day of good news and they are keeping silent. If they wait until morning light, punishment will find them. They go back and report to the city gatekeepers, who report to the king's household. The king suspects a trap — the Arameans have hidden in the field and are waiting for the city to open. His servants suggest sending scouts with some of the remaining horses. Two chariot teams are sent and follow the

Aramean trail all the way to the Jordan, finding the road strewn with clothing and equipment dropped in the panic. They report back. The people rush out and plunder the Aramean camp. The prices Elisha prophesied are fulfilled exactly: a seah of fine flour for a shekel, two seahs of barley for a shekel, at the gate of Samaria. The king assigns the scoffing officer to manage the gate, and the crowd tramples him to death — he sees the abundance with his own eyes but never eats any of it, exactly as Elisha said.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is structured around exact prophetic fulfillment. Elisha's double prophecy — the prices will drop and the officer will see but not eat — is verified down to the smallest detail. The instrument of deliverance is spectacularly unexpected: four men with skin disease, social outcasts sitting outside the gate, become the discoverers of God's provision. The LORD defeats the Aramean army not with a visible army but with sound — qol rekhev qol sus qol chayil gadol ('the sound of chariotry, the sound of horses, the sound of a great army'). The Arameans hear what Elisha's servant saw in 6:17: the divine military force. But where the servant saw and was reassured, the Arameans hear and are terrified. The same heavenly army that protects Israel destroys Aram's courage. The scoffing officer's death at the gate is not arbitrary punishment but precise fulfillment: the gate (sha'ar) is where prices are set and commerce happens, so the prophecy about prices at the gate is fulfilled at the gate, and the man who doubted the gate-prophecy dies at the gate.*

Translation Friction: *The four men with skin disease (metsora'im) are traditionally identified as 'lepers,' though the biblical term tsara'at covers a wider range of conditions than modern leprosy. Their marginal status — outside the gate, between the city and the enemy — makes them the perfect agents of discovery: they have nothing to lose. Their moral reasoning (verse 9) raises the question of whether their initial silence about the good news constitutes sin — they themselves conclude it does. The officer's death by trampling raises questions about proportionality: he expressed doubt, not defiance, and his skepticism was humanly reasonable. The text presents his death as prophetic fulfillment rather than divine punishment per se — Elisha described what would happen without framing it as retribution. The Aramean panic caused by divine sound parallels other holy-war texts where God fights by creating confusion (Judges 7, 1 Samuel 14).*

Connections: *The divine sound that routs the Arameans connects to Judges 7 (Gideon's trumpets and jars), 1 Samuel 7:10 (thunder against the Philistines), and 2 Chronicles 20:22-23 (the singers and ambushers). The four outcasts discovering provision for the starving city anticipates the gospel pattern where salvation comes through the marginalized. The 'windows of heaven' reference by the scoffing officer echoes Genesis 7:11 (the flood) and Malachi 3:10 (God opening heaven's windows to pour out blessing). Elisha's prophecy of exact market prices connects to the Joseph narrative (Genesis 41-47), where divinely revealed famine knowledge saves nations. The trampling at the gate fulfills the prophetic word with the specificity that characterizes Kings' theology of the prophetic word: every detail matters, every prediction lands.*

¹Elisha said, "Hear the word of the LORD. This is what the LORD says: By this time tomorrow, a seah of fine flour will sell for a shekel and two seahs of barley for a shekel, at the gate of Samaria." ²The officer on whose arm the king was leaning answered the man of God, "Even if the LORD made windows in the sky, could such a thing happen?" Elisha said, "You will see it with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it." ³Now four men with a skin disease were sitting at the entrance to the city gate. They said to each other, "Why are we sitting here waiting to die?" ⁴"If we go into the city, the famine is there and we will die. If we stay here, we will also die. So let us go over to the Aramean camp. If they let us live, we live. If they kill us, we just die." ⁵They got up at twilight and went to the edge of the Aramean camp. When they arrived, no one was there. ⁶The Lord had caused the Aramean army to hear the sound of chariots, the sound of horses, the sound of a massive army. They said to one another, "The king of Israel has hired the Hittite kings and the Egyptian kings to attack us!" ⁷They got up and fled at twilight, abandoning their tents, their horses, and their donkeys — the whole camp just as it was — and ran for their lives. ⁸When these men with skin disease reached the edge of the camp, they went into one tent, ate and drank, then carried away silver, gold, and clothing and went and hid it. They came back, entered another tent, carried off more, and hid that too. ⁹Then they said to each other, "What we are doing is not right. This is a day of good news, and we are keeping it to ourselves. If we wait until morning light, punishment will overtake us. Come, let us go and report this to the king's household." ¹⁰They went and called out to the city gatekeepers and reported: "We went to the Aramean camp, and no one is there — not a person, not a human voice. Only horses tied up, donkeys tied up, and the tents standing just as they were." ¹¹The gatekeepers

called out, and the news was reported inside the king's palace. ¹²The king got up in the night and said to his officials, "Let me tell you what the Arameans are doing to us. They know we are starving, so they left their camp and hid in the field, thinking: 'When they come out of the city, we will capture them alive and then enter the city.'" ¹³One of his officials answered, "Let them take five of the remaining horses still left in the city — they are no worse off than the rest of Israel's population left here, who are as good as dead anyway. Let us send them and find out." ¹⁴They took two chariot teams, and the king sent them after the Aramean army, saying, "Go and see." ¹⁵They followed the trail all the way to the Jordan, and the entire road was littered with clothing and equipment that the Arameans had thrown away in their panic. The scouts returned and reported to the king. ¹⁶The people rushed out and plundered the Aramean camp. A seah of fine flour sold for a shekel, and two seahs of barley for a shekel — exactly as the LORD had spoken. ¹⁷The king had put the officer on whose arm he leaned in charge of the gate. The crowd trampled him in the gateway, and he died — just as the man of God had spoken when the king came down to him. ¹⁸It happened just as the man of God had told the king: "Two seahs of barley for a shekel, and a seah of fine flour for a shekel, by this time tomorrow at the gate of Samaria." ¹⁹The officer had answered the man of God, "Even if the LORD made windows in the sky, could such a thing happen?" And Elisha had said, "You will see it with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it." ²⁰And that is exactly what happened to him: the people trampled him in the gateway, and he died.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The prophecy is astonishingly precise: specific commodities (solet, 'fine flour'; se'orim, 'barley'), specific prices (sheqel for each measure), a specific location (sha'ar Shomron, 'gate of Samaria'), and a specific timeframe (ka-et machar, 'about this time tomorrow'). The prices represent normal or even cheap market rates — a total reversal from the famine prices of 6:25. The formula koh amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD') marks this as direct prophetic oracle.
2. The shalish ('third man, officer, adjutant') is a high-ranking military official who serves as the king's personal support. His skepticism — hinneh YHWH oseh arubbot ba-shamayim ('even if the LORD made windows in heaven') — references the 'windows of heaven' from the flood narrative (Genesis 7:11) and the blessing promise of Malachi 3:10. He uses the most dramatic divine intervention he can imagine and still dismisses the prophecy. Elisha's response is not a curse but a prediction: hinnekha ro'eh be-einekha u-misham lo tokhel ('you will be seeing with your eyes but from there you will not eat'). Seeing without eating — witness without participation.
3. The metsora'im ('those with tsara'at') sit at petach ha-sha'ar ('the opening of the gate') — the boundary between city and outside. Their skin condition excludes them from the city but the siege traps them near it. Their reasoning — mah anachnu yoshvim poh ad matnu ('why are we sitting here until we die?') — is the logic of people with nothing left to lose.
4. The logic is a three-option calculation where two options produce certain death and the third offers a chance of survival. The phrase niplah el machaneh Aram ('let us fall to the camp of Aram') uses the verb nafal ('to fall, to surrender, to defect'). Their final reasoning — im yechayunu nichyeh ve-im yemitunu vamatnu ('if they keep us alive we live, if they kill us we die') — has a resigned simplicity. They are already dead men choosing the direction of their death.
5. The neshef ('twilight, dusk') is the transition time — between day and night, between despair and discovery. They come to qetseh machaneh Aram ('the edge of the Aramean camp') expecting interrogation or execution. Instead: ein sham ish ('there was no man there'). The three-word discovery changes everything.
6. The 'Hittite kings' refers to the neo-Hittite kingdoms of northern Syria and southern Anatolia that survived the Bronze Age collapse — Carchemish, Hamath, and others. The 'kings of Egypt' may refer to local rulers of the fragmented Egyptian delta. The Arameans construct a plausible military scenario to explain the supernatural sound. God fights not by sending an army but by creating the perception of one.
7. The phrase va-yanusu el nafsham ('they fled for their lives, toward their own souls') emphasizes the totality of their panic. They left everything — ohaleihem, suseihem, chamoreihem ('their tents, their horses, their donkeys') — the camp ka-asher hi ('just as it is'), frozen in place. An entire army abandoned its equipment, animals, and supplies out of sheer terror at a sound.
8. The verbs pile up in rapid sequence: va-yokhlu va-yishtu va-yis'u va-yelkhu va-yatminu va-yashuvu va-yavo'u ('they ate, drank, carried, went, hid, returned, entered') — the breathless pace of men gorging after starvation and hoarding after deprivation. The pattern of eating first, then looting, then hiding, reflects survival instinct followed by opportunism.
9. The phrase yom besorah hu ('it is a day of good news') uses besorah, the Hebrew word for 'good tidings, gospel' — the same root behind the later concept of evangelion. The men recognize a moral obligation: good news of deliverance must be shared. Their warning — u-metsaanu avon ('and guilt/punishment will find us') — acknowledges that hoarding salvation is itself a sin. The verb machshim ('being silent, keeping quiet') is the same word used in 1 Kings 22:3 of Israel 'sitting idle' regarding Ramoth-gilead.

10. The report to the sho'er ha-ir ('gatekeeper of the city') is detailed and factual: no people, no sound, only tied animals and intact tents. The horses and donkeys still tethered (asur, 'bound, tied') confirms the abandonment was panicked — they did not even take their animals.
11. The chain of communication: the four men report to the gatekeepers, the gatekeepers report to beit ha-melek penimah ('the king's house inside'). The news travels from the social margin (diseased outcasts at the gate) inward to the center of power.
12. The king's suspicion is tactically reasonable — a feigned retreat to draw out a starving garrison is a known military strategy. His analysis — yadu ki re'evim anachnu ('they know that we are hungry') — shows he reads the situation as a trap. His caution, while wrong, is not foolish; it takes the counsel of his servants to overcome it.
13. The servant's reasoning is pragmatic: the horses remaining are nearly dead from starvation anyway — hinnam ke-khol hamon Yisrael asher nish'aru vah ('they are like the whole multitude of Israel remaining in it') — so risking them costs nothing. The repetition emphasizes the point: everything in the city, human and animal, is on the edge of death. Five horses for a scouting mission is minimal risk for maximum information.
14. The shenei rekhev susim ('two chariot-teams of horses') is a minimal reconnaissance force. The king's command lekhu u-re'u ('go and see') commits to investigation without committing to exposure. The caution balances the potential gain.
15. The evidence trail stretches from the camp to the Jordan — kol ha-derekh mele'ah begadim ve-khelim ('the whole road was full of garments and vessels/equipment'). The verb hishlikhu ('they threw away') and the adverb be-hechafzam ('in their panicking, in their haste') paints a picture of soldiers shedding weight as they run. This is not an orderly withdrawal but a rout. The scouts have their answer.
16. The phrase ki-dvar YHWH ('according to the word of the LORD') is the narrator's theological verdict: the exact prices Elisha prophesied in verse 1 have come true. The prophetic word is not approximate but precise. The abundance is so great that market prices collapse from famine levels to normal rates in a single day.
17. The shalish is assigned to manage the gate (sha'ar) — the very location of the prophesied price fulfillment. The starving people rushing out to plunder trample him: va-yirmesuhu ha-am ba-sha'ar ('the people trampled him in the gate'). The phrase ka-asher dibber ish ha-Elohim ('as the man of God had spoken') connects back to verse 2. The officer sees the abundance (the prices are real) but dies before eating any of it.
18. The narrator recapitulates the prophecy in full, repeating the exact terms — commodities, prices, timing, location — to demonstrate complete fulfillment. This repetition is characteristic of Kings' narrative theology: the prophetic word is spoken, then the fulfillment is narrated, then the connection is explicitly stated.
19. The exchange from verse 2 is quoted verbatim — another instance of the narrator's technique of repeating the prophetic word to frame its fulfillment. The officer's skepticism and Elisha's response are now read in light of what has already happened, transforming doubt into dramatic irony.
20. The final verse — va-yehi lo ken ('and so it was to him') — closes the chapter with absolute fulfillment. Both halves of Elisha's double prophecy have come true: the prices dropped as predicted, and the officer saw it but did not eat. The word of the LORD spoken through the prophet is the controlling force of the narrative.

8

Summary: The chapter weaves together three narrative strands that span the final years of Elisha's public ministry and the deepening crisis of both Israelite kingdoms. First, the Shunammite woman whose son Elisha raised from the dead (chapter 4) returns after seven years abroad. Elisha had warned her of a coming famine, and she had taken her household to live among the Philistines. Now she returns and appeals to the king for the restoration of her land. At the very moment she arrives, Gehazi is telling the king the story of Elisha's miracles, including the raising of her son. The king, astonished by the timing, orders all her property and its accumulated produce restored. Second, Elisha travels to Damascus where Ben-hadad king of Aram is sick. Ben-hadad sends Hazael to inquire of Elisha whether he will recover. Elisha tells Hazael to say the king will recover, but reveals privately that the LORD has shown him the king will certainly die. Elisha then stares at Hazael until the prophet weeps openly. When Hazael asks why, Elisha describes the horrors Hazael will inflict on Israel: burning fortresses, slaughtering young men, dashing infants, ripping open pregnant women. Hazael protests — 'What is your servant, a dog, that he should do this great thing?' — but Elisha replies that the LORD has shown him Hazael will become king of Aram. Hazael returns, tells Ben-hadad the prophet said he would recover, and the next day smothers the king with a wet cloth and takes the throne. Third, the chapter provides regnal summaries for two kings of Judah: Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat, who married into Ahab's family and did evil, though God preserved Judah for the sake of his servant David; and Ahaziah son of Jehoram, who also followed the ways of Ahab's house because his mother was Ahab's daughter. In Jehoram's reign Edom revolted and established its own king, and Libnah also revolted. Ahaziah joins with Joram son of Ahab to fight Hazael at Ramoth-gilead — the same battlefield where Ahab died — setting the stage for chapter 9.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Elisha's weeping before Hazael is one of the most emotionally complex moments in the prophetic literature. The prophet sees the future — every burning fortress, every murdered child — and weeps for the victims before the crimes have been committed. He knows Hazael will become king and cannot prevent it; he knows what Hazael will do and can only grieve. This is prophetic knowledge as burden rather than privilege. The Shunammite's perfectly timed arrival while Gehazi is mid-story is presented without comment as divine orchestration — the narrator lets the coincidence speak for itself. The regnal formulas for Jehoram and Ahaziah of Judah show the house of David being corrupted by intermarriage with Ahab's dynasty, yet God preserves Judah for David's sake — the covenant promise overrides the current king's failure.*

Translation Friction: *Elisha's instruction to tell Ben-hadad 'you will certainly recover' while knowing the king will die presents a moral difficulty. The Hebrew can be read as 'say to him: you will live' (the illness is not fatal) alongside 'but the LORD has shown me that he will certainly die' (something else will kill him). This makes the statement technically true — the disease would not kill him — while concealing the real danger (Hazael). Whether Elisha intends to facilitate the assassination or merely reports what he sees is debated. The Gehazi appearance is surprising since he was struck with skin disease in 5:27; some scholars suggest the Shunammite episode occurred before Gehazi's punishment, and the narrator has arranged material thematically rather than chronologically. The phrase 'for David's sake' (verse 19) introduces a theological tension: God preserves a wicked king's kingdom because of an ancestor's faithfulness, raising questions about merit, covenant, and inherited grace.*

Connections: *The Shunammite narrative connects back to chapter 4 (Elisha's miracles for her) and forward to the theme of land restoration that runs through Kings. The seven-year famine echoes the seven years of famine in Joseph's Egypt (Genesis 41). Elisha's weeping anticipates Jesus weeping over Jerusalem (Luke 19:41-44) — both prophets see destruction coming and grieve for the people who will suffer. Hazael's rise fulfills the commission given to Elijah at Horeb (1 Kings 19:15): 'anoint Hazael as king over Aram.' The intermarriage between Judah's and Israel's royal houses creates the political conditions for Jehu's revolution in chapter 9. Edom's revolt under Jehoram partially fulfills Isaac's blessing to Esau: 'when you grow restless, you will throw his yoke from your neck' (Genesis 27:40). The convergence at Ramoth-gilead — where Ahab died (1 Kings 22) and where Joram is now wounded — links the two battlefields of Ahab's dynasty's doom.*

¹Elisha had spoken to the woman whose son he had brought back to life: "Get up and go — you and your household — and settle wherever you can, because the LORD has summoned a famine, and it will come upon the land for seven years." ²The woman got up and did as the man of God said. She and her household went and lived in the land of the Philistines for seven years. ³At the end of seven years, the woman returned from the land of the Philistines and went to appeal to the king for the return of her house and her land. ⁴Now the king was speaking with Gehazi, the servant of the man of God, saying, "Tell me about all the great things Elisha has done." ⁵Just as he was telling the king how Elisha had brought the dead child back to life, the very woman whose son Elisha had revived appeared, appealing to the king for her house and land. Gehazi said, "My lord the king, this is the woman! And this is her son — the one Elisha brought back to life!" ⁶The king questioned the woman, and she told him her story. Then the king assigned an official to her case, ordering, "Restore everything that belongs to her, including all the produce from her fields from the day she left the land until now." ⁷Elisha went to Damascus. Ben-hadad king of Aram was ill, and someone told him, "The man of God has come here." ⁸The king told Hazael, "Take a gift with you and go meet the man of God. Inquire of the LORD through him: 'Will I recover from this illness?'" ⁹Hazael went to meet him, taking as a gift every kind of fine goods from Damascus — forty camel-loads. He stood before Elisha and said, "Your son Ben-hadad king of Aram has sent me to you to ask: 'Will I recover from this illness?'" ¹⁰Elisha told him, "Go, tell him, 'You will certainly recover.' But the LORD has shown me that he will certainly die." ¹¹Elisha held his gaze steady on Hazael until the man became uncomfortable. Then the man of God wept. ¹²Hazael asked, "Why is my lord weeping?" Elisha answered, "Because I know the evil you will do to the people of Israel. You will set their fortresses on fire. You will kill their young men with the sword. You will dash their children to pieces. You will rip open their pregnant women." ¹³Hazael said, "What is your servant — a mere dog — that he could do such a monstrous thing?" Elisha answered, "The LORD has shown me that you will be king over Aram." ¹⁴Hazael left Elisha and returned to his master, who asked, "What did Elisha tell you?" He said, "He told me you would certainly recover." ¹⁵The next day, Hazael took a thick cloth, soaked it in water, and spread it over the king's

face. Ben-hadad died, and Hazael reigned in his place. ¹⁶In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab king of Israel, while Jehoshaphat was still king of Judah, Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat became king of Judah. ¹⁷He was thirty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. ¹⁸He followed the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab had done, because Ahab's daughter was his wife. He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD. ¹⁹Yet the LORD was not willing to destroy Judah, for the sake of his servant David, since he had promised to give David a lamp for his descendants for all time. ²⁰During his reign, Edom revolted against Judah's control and set up their own king. ²¹Jehoram crossed over to Zair with all his chariots. He rose at night and struck the Edomites who had surrounded him, along with the chariot commanders. But his own troops fled to their tents. ²²So Edom has remained independent of Judah to this day. Libnah also revolted at that time. ²³The rest of Jehoram's acts and everything he did — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²⁴Jehoram slept with his fathers and was buried with them in the City of David. His son Ahaziah reigned in his place. ²⁵In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab king of Israel, Ahaziah son of Jehoram became king of Judah. ²⁶Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah, granddaughter of Omri king of Israel. ²⁷He followed the ways of the house of Ahab and did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, like the house of Ahab — for he was related to Ahab's family by marriage. ²⁸He went with Joram son of Ahab to fight against Hazael king of Aram at Ramoth-gilead, and the Arameans wounded Joram. ²⁹King Joram returned to Jezreel to recover from the wounds the Arameans had inflicted on him at Ramah when he fought Hazael king of Aram. And Ahaziah son of Jehoram king of Judah went down to visit Joram son of Ahab in Jezreel, because Joram was wounded.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *hecheyah* ('brought to life, restored to life') recalls the miracle of chapter 4. Elisha's warning — *ki qara YHWH la-ra'av* ('for the LORD has called for the famine') — personifies famine as something summoned by divine command. The phrase *guri ba-asher taguri* ('sojourn wherever you may sojourn') gives her complete freedom of destination. The seven-year duration echoes the Egyptian famine under Joseph.
2. She obeys *ki-dvar ish ha-Elohim* ('according to the word of the man of God') — a pattern of trust established through her previous encounters with Elisha. The Philistine coastal plain would have been less affected by inland famine conditions. Her sojourning (*gur*) carries the resonance of Abraham and Isaac sojourning in foreign lands during famine.
3. The verb *lits'oq* ('to cry out, to appeal') is the standard term for legal petition to the king. During her seven-year absence, her property had apparently been seized or reassigned. She needs royal intervention to recover *beitah ve-sadah* ('her house and her field').
4. The timing is extraordinary — the king is already in conversation with Gehazi about Elisha's miracles when the Shunammite arrives. Gehazi is called *na'ar ish ha-Elohim* ('servant of the man of God'). The king's request — *sapperah na li et kol ha-gedolot* ('tell me all the great things') — shows royal interest in prophetic power.
5. The convergence — Gehazi telling the story at the exact moment the woman arrives — is presented as seamless divine orchestration. Gehazi's excited identification — *zot ha-ishah ve-zeh benah* ('this is the woman and this is her son') — provides a living witness to the very miracle he is narrating. The son, now older, stands as proof.
6. The king's order goes beyond restoring the property — he orders restoration of *kol tevuot ha-sadeh* ('all the produce of the field') for the entire seven-year absence. This is full restitution with accumulated interest. The *saris* ('official, officer') is assigned as her advocate to ensure the order is carried out.
7. Elisha's journey to Damascus is unexplained — whether he went deliberately or incidentally is not stated. Ben-hadad is *choleh* ('sick, ill'). The report of Elisha's arrival — *ba ish ha-Elohim ad hennah* ('the man of God has come as far as here') — shows Elisha's reputation reaches even the Aramean court.
8. Ben-hadad sends Hazael with a *minchah* ('gift, tribute') — a pagan king seeking the Israelite prophet's God for a medical oracle. The verb *darashta* ('you shall inquire') is the same used for prophetic consultation throughout Kings. The question *ha-echyeh me-choli zeh* ('will I live from this illness?') is direct and desperate.
9. The gift is extravagant: *kol tuv Dammeseq massa arba'im gamal* ('all the good things of Damascus, the burden of forty camels'). Ben-hadad addresses Elisha as a superior, calling himself *binkha* ('your son') — a diplomatic term of deference. The lavishness of the gift reflects both the king's desperation and Damascus's wealth.
10. The double statement creates a deliberate tension. The first clause — *chayoh tichyeh* ('living you will live, you will certainly recover') — uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis: the illness itself is not fatal. The second — *mot yamut* ('dying he will die, he will certainly die') — uses the same emphatic construction for the opposite conclusion. The illness will not kill him, but death is coming by another means. Elisha knows what Hazael will do.

11. The verb *va-ya'amed et panav* ('he set his face, he fixed his countenance') describes an unbroken, penetrating stare. The phrase *ad bosh* ('until shame, until embarrassment') indicates Hazael was unnerved by the intensity. Then *va-yevk ish ha-Elohim* ('the man of God wept') — Elisha breaks down in tears. He is looking at the future destroyer of Israel and seeing every atrocity that will follow.
12. The four-fold catalog of atrocities moves from military to personal horror: fortresses burned, warriors slain, infants dashed, pregnant women sliced open. Each verb is more graphic: *teshalach ba-esh* ('you will send in fire'), *taharog ba-cherav* ('you will kill with the sword'), *teratesh* ('you will dash/shatter'), *tevaqe'a* ('you will rip open/split'). This is not hypothetical — Elisha sees it as settled future. Hazael's conquests in 10:32-33 and 13:3-7 confirm these prophecies.
13. Hazael's protest — *mah avdekha ha-kelev ki ya'aseh ha-davar ha-gadol ha-zeh* ('what is your servant, the dog, that he should do this great thing?') — uses 'dog' as a self-deprecating term common in diplomatic language (meaning 'nobody, insignificant person'). The irony: he calls himself too insignificant for such a 'great thing' (*davar gadol*), but the word *gadol* here means 'enormous, terrible.' Elisha's reply is devastating in its simplicity: *hir'ani YHWH otkha melekh al Aram* ('the LORD has shown me you as king over Aram'). Power makes the atrocities possible.
14. Hazael delivers only the first half of Elisha's message — *chayah tichyeh* ('you will certainly live') — omitting the second half about certain death. The selective report is technically accurate but functionally deceptive. Whether this omission constitutes Hazael's first act of treachery — withholding the full truth to set up the murder — is left for the reader to infer.
15. The murder method is clinical: the *makhber* ('thick cloth, netted cover') is dipped in water and placed over the sick king's face — suffocation disguised as a cool compress. The brevity of the narrative — *va-yamot va-yimlokh Chaza'el tachtav* ('and he died and Hazael reigned in his place') — gives the regicide the flat tone of a political transition. The very thing Elisha foresaw has begun.
16. The regnal synchronism ties Judah's king to Israel's timeline. The near-identical names create confusion: Joram (Yoram) rules Israel as son of Ahab, while Jehoram (Yehoram) rules Judah as son of Jehoshaphat. The names are essentially the same ('the LORD is exalted'), highlighting the intertwined fates of the two kingdoms.
17. The standard regnal data: accession age and reign length. Eight years is a relatively short reign, during which significant territorial losses occur.
18. The reason for Jehoram's apostasy is specified: *bat Achav haytah lo le-ishah* ('a daughter of Ahab was his wife'). The marriage alliance that politically united the two kingdoms also imported Ahab's religious corruption into Judah. The Deuteronomistic verdict — *va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH* ('he did the evil in the eyes of the LORD') — is the formulaic condemnation.
19. The theological principle: *le-ma'an David avdo* ('for the sake of David his servant'). Despite the current king's evil, God preserves Judah because of the Davidic covenant. The word *nir* ('lamp') symbolizes dynastic continuity — a light that must not go out. The promise *latet lo nir levanav kol ha-yamim* ('to give him a lamp for his sons all the days') echoes 1 Kings 11:36 and 15:4.
20. The verb *pasha* ('to rebel, to transgress, to revolt') is the standard term for political rebellion. Edom had been a vassal of Judah since David's conquests. The statement *va-yamlikhu aleihem melekh* ('they made a king over themselves') indicates full independence — Edom establishes its own monarchy.
21. The battle at Zair (*Tsa'irah*) is ambiguous in outcome. Jehoram breaks through the Edomite encirclement by night — *va-yakkeh et Edom ha-sovev elav* ('he struck Edom surrounding him') — but the result is that *ha-am nas le-ohalav* ('the people fled to their tents'). The flight suggests the campaign failed despite the tactical breakthrough.
22. The narrator confirms the revolt's permanence: *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('until this day'). *Libnah* (*Livnah*), a city in the Judean lowlands near Philistine territory, also revolted — suggesting broader territorial disintegration. The double revolt signals divine judgment on Jehoram's faithless reign.
23. The standard source citation: *sefer divrei ha-yamim le-malkhei Yehudah* ('the book of the chronicles/annals of the kings of Judah'). This lost court record is the narrator's archive for Judean kings.
24. The death and burial formula: *va-yishkav im avotav* ('he lay down with his ancestors'). Burial in the *ir David* ('City of David') confirms he receives a proper royal burial despite his evil. Ahaziah (*Achazyahu*, 'the LORD has grasped') succeeds him.
25. The synchronism ties Ahaziah's accession to Israel's calendar. The patronymic chain — Ahaziah son of Jehoram, synchronized with Joram son of Ahab — highlights the intertwined dynasties that will both fall in chapter 9.
26. Athaliah (*Atalyahu*) is called *bat Omri* ('daughter of Omri') — meaning granddaughter or descendant, since she was actually Ahab's daughter (and thus Omri's granddaughter). The identification through Omri rather than Ahab may emphasize the dynastic line. Her influence will prove devastating: after Ahaziah's death, she will seize the throne of Judah (chapter 11). One year of reign is the shortest for any Judean king.
27. The phrase *chatan beit Achav hu* ('he was a son-in-law/relative of the house of Ahab') explains the religious corruption. The marriage alliance that was supposed to strengthen Judah politically instead corrupted it spiritually. The Deuteronomistic evaluation — *va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH ke-veit Achav* ('he did the evil in the eyes of the LORD like the house of Ahab') — makes Judah's king indistinguishable from Israel's.
28. The location — *Ramot Gil'ad* — is the same battlefield where Ahab was killed (1 Kings 22). History repeats: another Ahab-dynasty king goes to Ramoth-gilead and suffers at Aramean hands. Hazael, whose rise Elisha foresaw and wept over, is now the adversary. The wounding of Joram sets the stage for chapter 9.

29. The wounded king recovers in Jezreel (Yizre'el) — the city associated with Naboth's vineyard and Elijah's prophecy against Ahab's house. Ahaziah of Judah visits his ally there. Both kings are now in Jezreel at the same time — the exact convergence that chapter 9 will exploit. The Judean king's visit to the Israelite king in the city of Ahab's crime places both dynasties in the crosshairs of divine judgment.

9

Summary: *This chapter narrates the violent overthrow of the house of Ahab through Jehu son of Nimshi. Elisha sends one of the sons of the prophets to Ramoth-gilead with a flask of oil and specific instructions: find Jehu among the army commanders, take him into an inner room, pour the oil on his head, declare him anointed as king over Israel by the LORD, then open the door and flee without delay. The young prophet does exactly this, adding an oracle of total destruction: the LORD will strike down the entire house of Ahab in vengeance for the blood of the prophets and all the servants of the LORD killed by Jezebel. Every male of Ahab's line will be cut off. Jezebel's body will be eaten by dogs in the plot of ground at Jezreel, with no one to bury her. Jehu returns to his fellow officers, who press him to explain what the 'madman' wanted. When he tells them, they immediately spread their cloaks on the bare steps and blow the ram's horn, declaring 'Jehu is king!' Jehu rides furiously toward Jezreel, where Joram is recovering from his wounds and Ahaziah of Judah is visiting. The watchman on the tower reports a company approaching and identifies the driving as Jehu's — 'he drives like a madman.' Joram sends two mounted messengers in succession, each asking 'Is it peace?' Jehu refuses to answer and the messengers fall in behind him. Joram and Ahaziah ride out to meet Jehu personally, and the meeting occurs at the plot of Naboth the Jezreelite — the very land Ahab seized. Joram asks 'Is there peace, Jehu?' and Jehu answers: 'What peace, so long as the prostitution and sorcery of your mother Jezebel continue?' Joram turns to flee, shouting 'Treachery, Ahaziah!' Jehu draws his bow and strikes Joram between the shoulders; the arrow pierces his heart, and he collapses in his chariot. Jehu orders Bidkar his officer to throw the body into the field of Naboth, recalling the LORD's oracle against Ahab: 'I saw the blood of Naboth and his sons yesterday, and I will repay you on this plot.' Ahaziah flees but is struck on the ascent of Gur near Ibleam and dies at Megiddo; his servants carry his body to Jerusalem for burial. The chapter climaxes with Jezebel's death. When Jehu enters Jezreel, Jezebel paints her eyes, arranges her hair, and looks down from a window. She taunts him: 'Is it peace, Zimri, murderer of his master?' — comparing him to the usurper who lasted only seven days. Jehu looks up and calls: 'Who is on my side?' Two or three court officials look down. He orders them to throw her down. They do. Her blood spatters on the wall and on the horses, and the horses trample her. Jehu goes inside to eat and drink, then orders her burial since she is a king's daughter. But the burial party finds nothing but her skull, feet, and palms — the dogs have eaten her. Jehu declares this fulfills the word of the LORD through Elijah: dogs will eat Jezebel's flesh in the plot of Jezreel, and her body will be like dung on the surface of the field, so that no one can say 'This is Jezebel's grave.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is the most dramatically violent in Kings, yet every act of violence is framed as prophetic fulfillment. Jehu is an instrument of divine judgment — anointed for this purpose — yet his methods are brutal and politically calculated. The repeated question 'Is it peace?' (ha-shalom) runs through the chapter as a thematic refrain: the messengers ask it (verses 17-19), Joram asks it (verse 22), and Jezebel weaponizes it as a taunt (verse 31). The answer is always no — there can be no peace while Ahab's house stands. The convergence at Naboth's field is the narrative's theological climax: Joram dies on the exact ground his father stole from Naboth, fulfilling 1 Kings 21:19 with geographic precision. Jezebel's death scene is unforgettable in its details — the painted eyes, the historical taunt, the defenestration, the dogs, the incomplete remains. She dies as she lived: composed, defiant, and politically astute to the end. Her comparison of Jehu to Zimri is both an insult and a prophecy (Zimri's coup lasted seven days), but Jehu's dynasty will last longer. The irony of her final dignity — painting her face for death — is among the most complex character moments in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *Jehu's violence raises acute moral questions. He is anointed by prophetic authority and carries out declared divine judgment, yet his methods — deception, mass killing, and political opportunism — are later condemned by the prophet Hosea (Hosea 1:4: 'I will punish the house of Jehu for the blood of Jezreel'). The text of 2 Kings 9-10 presents Jehu's actions as fulfillment of divine word without explicit moral commentary, but the Hosea passage retroactively complicates the picture: was the judgment just but the instrument excessive? The killing of Ahaziah of Judah extends the judgment beyond the house of Ahab to the house of David — Ahaziah dies because of his family connection to Ahab, raising questions*

about collateral judgment. Jezebel's death-scene dignity and her historically accurate taunt about Zimri make her a more complex figure than simple villainy would allow. The narrator does not celebrate her death; the tone is closer to terrible fulfillment than triumph.

Connections: The anointing of Jehu fulfills the commission given to Elijah at Horeb in 1 Kings 19:16: 'anoint Jehu son of Nimshi as king over Israel.' Elijah did not perform this anointing himself; it passes through Elisha to an unnamed prophetic disciple — three generations of prophetic succession to accomplish one divine command. Joram's death in Naboth's field fulfills 1 Kings 21:19-24 with precise geographic detail. Jezebel's consumption by dogs fulfills 1 Kings 21:23. The 'Is it peace?' refrain connects to the broader biblical theology of shalom — true peace requires the removal of the systemic evil that Ahab's house represents. Jehu's 'furious driving' (verse 20) has become proverbial. The defenestration of Jezebel connects typologically to the fate of proud rulers brought low (Daniel 4, Isaiah 14). Hosea 1:4's condemnation of the blood of Jezreel creates a deliberate tension with this chapter, suggesting that divine judgment executed with excessive violence becomes its own sin.

¹Elisha the prophet summoned one of the sons of the prophets and told him, "Tuck your cloak into your belt, take this flask of oil in your hand, and go to Ramoth-gilead." ²When you get there, find Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi. Go in, get him to stand up from among his fellow officers, and bring him into an inner room. ³Take the flask of oil, pour it on his head, and say, 'This is what the LORD says: I anoint you king over Israel.' Then open the door and run — do not wait!" ⁴So the young man — the young prophet — went to Ramoth-gilead. ⁵When he arrived, the army commanders were sitting together. He said, "I have a message for you, commander." Jehu asked, "For which one of us?" He said, "For you, commander." ⁶Jehu stood up and went inside. The prophet poured the oil on his head and said to him, "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: 'I anoint you king over the LORD's people, over Israel.'" ⁷You are to strike down the house of Ahab your master, so that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets and the blood of all the LORD's servants shed by Jezebel. ⁸The entire house of Ahab will perish. I will cut off from Ahab every male — whether protected or abandoned — in Israel. ⁹I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha son of Ahijah." ¹⁰As for Jezebel — the dogs will eat her in the plot of land at Jezreel, and no one will bury her." Then the prophet opened the door and fled. ¹¹When Jehu came back out to his master's officers, they asked him, "Is everything all right? Why did that madman come to you?" He said to them, "You know the type — and the kind of thing they say." ¹²They said, "That is not true! Tell us what he really said." He told them, "This is what he said to me, word for word: 'This is what the LORD says: I anoint you king over Israel.'" ¹³They hurried, each man taking his cloak and spreading it under Jehu on the bare steps. They blew the ram's horn and proclaimed, "Jehu is king!" ¹⁴So Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. Now Joram had been defending Ramoth-gilead — he and all Israel — against Hazael king of Aram. ¹⁵King Joram had returned to Jezreel to recover from the wounds the Arameans had inflicted when he fought Hazael king of Aram. Jehu said, "If this is truly your will, then do not let anyone escape from the city to go and report this in Jezreel." ¹⁶Jehu mounted his chariot and rode to Jezreel, because Joram was lying there recovering. Ahaziah king of Judah had also come down to visit Joram. ¹⁷The watchman standing on the tower in Jezreel saw Jehu's company approaching and called out, "I see a troop coming!" Joram said, "Send a rider to meet them and ask, 'Is it peace?'" ¹⁸A rider went out to meet him and said, "The king asks: 'Is it peace?'" Jehu said, "What do you have to do with peace? Fall in behind me." The watchman reported, "The messenger reached them but has not come back." ¹⁹He sent a second rider, who reached them and said, "The king asks: 'Is it peace?'" Jehu said, "What do you have to do with peace? Fall in behind me." ²⁰The watchman reported, "He reached them but has not come back. And the driving — it is like the driving of Jehu son of Nimshi. He drives like a madman!" ²¹Joram ordered, "Hitch up my chariot!" When it was ready, Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah rode out, each in his own chariot, to meet Jehu. They met him at the plot of land that had belonged to Naboth the Jezreelite. ²²When Joram saw Jehu, he said, "Is it peace, Jehu?" Jehu answered, "What peace can there be as long as the prostitution and sorcery of your mother Jezebel go on?" ²³Joram turned his chariot to flee and shouted to Ahaziah, "Treachery, Ahaziah!" ²⁴Jehu drew his bow with full force and struck Joram between the shoulder blades. The arrow went through his heart, and he slumped in his chariot. ²⁵Jehu said to Bidkar his officer, "Pick him up and throw him into the field that belonged to Naboth the Jezreelite. Remember — you and I were riding together behind his father Ahab when the LORD pronounced this judgment against him:" ²⁶"I saw the blood of

Naboth and the blood of his sons yesterday,' declares the LORD. 'I will repay you on this very plot of ground,' declares the LORD." So now — pick him up and throw him on the plot, according to the word of the LORD." ²⁷When Ahaziah king of Judah saw this, he fled toward Beth-haggan. Jehu pursued him and ordered, "Strike him down too — in the chariot!" They struck him on the ascent of Gur, near Ibleam. He escaped to Megiddo and died there. ²⁸His servants carried him by chariot to Jerusalem and buried him in his tomb with his ancestors in the City of David. ²⁹Ahaziah had become king of Judah in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab. ³⁰When Jehu entered Jezreel, Jezebel heard about it. She painted her eyes, arranged her hair, and looked down from a window. ³¹As Jehu came through the gate, she called out, "Is it peace, Zimri — you who murdered your master?" ³²He looked up at the window and called out, "Who is on my side? Who?" Two or three court officials looked down at him. ³³He said, "Throw her down!" They threw her down. Her blood splattered on the wall and on the horses, and they trampled her. ³⁴Jehu went inside, ate and drank, and then said, "Attend to that cursed woman and bury her — she is, after all, a king's daughter." ³⁵They went to bury her, but all they found of her were the skull, the feet, and the palms of her hands. ³⁶They came back and told him. He said, "This is the word of the LORD, which he spoke through his servant Elijah the Tishbite: 'In the plot at Jezreel, the dogs will eat Jezebel's flesh.'" ³⁷"Jezebel's remains will be like dung on the surface of the field in the plot at Jezreel, so that no one will be able to say, 'This is Jezebel's grave.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The instruction *chagor motnekha* ('gird your loins') means to prepare for urgent action by tucking the robe into the belt for speed. The *pak ha-shemen* ('flask of oil') is a small vessel — the instrument of anointing. Elisha sends a proxy rather than going himself, extending the prophetic chain from Elijah (who received the commission) to Elisha to an unnamed young prophet.
2. Jehu is identified by full patronymic: *Yehu ben Yehoshafat ben Nimshi*. He is among his *echav* ('brothers, fellow officers') — the military commanders at Ramoth-gilead. The instruction *cheder be-chader* ('room within a room, an inner chamber') ensures privacy for the anointing. The revolution must begin in secret.
3. The anointing formula — *meshachtikha le-melekh el Yisrael* ('I have anointed you as king over Israel') — uses the verb *mashach*, the root of *mashiach* ('anointed one, messiah'). The instruction to flee immediately — *ve-nastah ve-lo techakkeh* ('flee and do not wait') — suggests the act is dangerous: if discovered prematurely, the young prophet's life is at risk.
4. The phrase *ha-na'ar ha-na'ar ha-navi* ('the young man, the young man the prophet') doubles the word *na'ar* for emphasis, perhaps distinguishing him as both young in age and in prophetic rank. He carries one of the most consequential missions in Israelite history.
5. The scene is a military council — *sarei ha-chayil yoshvim* ('the commanders of the army sitting'). The young prophet's announcement *davar li elekha ha-sar* ('I have a word for you, the commander') does not specify which commander. Jehu's question *el mi mi-kullanu* ('to whom, from all of us?') prompts the specification: *elekha ha-sar* ('to you, commander').
6. The anointing formula is expanded from Elisha's instructions: *meshachtikha le-melekh el am YHWH el Yisrael* ('I anoint you king over the people of the LORD, over Israel'). The addition of *am YHWH* ('people of the LORD') frames the kingship as stewardship over God's own people. The young prophet then adds the oracle of judgment that Elisha did not explicitly instruct him to deliver.
7. The oracle charges Jehu with the destruction of *beit Achav* ('the house of Ahab'). The motive is vengeance for blood: *demei avadai ha-nevi'im* ('the blood of my servants the prophets') — referring to Jezebel's systematic killing of prophets (1 Kings 18:4, 13). The phrase *mi-yad Izevel* ('from the hand of Jezebel') places primary responsibility on the queen.
8. The phrase *mashtin be-qir* ('one who urinates against a wall') is a crude idiom meaning 'every male.' The pair *atsur ve-azuv* ('shut up and abandoned, restrained and released') is a merism covering all males regardless of status — those in custody and those at liberty, those under protection and those on their own. No male descendant of Ahab will survive.
9. Both Jeroboam's and Baasha's dynasties were completely exterminated — Jeroboam's by Baasha (1 Kings 15:29) and Baasha's by Zimri (1 Kings 16:11-12). The comparison promises the same: total dynastic annihilation. The three destroyed dynasties form a pattern in the book of Kings: sin leads to prophetic sentence, which leads to total destruction through a new king.
10. The prophecy against Jezebel — *yokhlu ha-kelavim be-cheleq Yizre'el* ('the dogs will eat in the portion/plot of Jezreel') — will be fulfilled with precise detail in verses 35-37. The young prophet follows his instructions exactly: *va-yiftach ha-delet va-yanos* ('he opened the door and fled'). The anointing is complete; the revolution has begun.
11. The officers' question *ha-shalom* ('is it peace/is everything well?') begins the chapter's refrain of the *shalom* question. They call the prophet *ha-meshugga ha-zeh* ('this madman') — the term *meshugga* was sometimes applied to ecstatic prophets, reflecting the thin line between prophetic behavior and perceived madness. Jehu's deflection — *attem yedatem et ha-ish ve-et sicho* ('you know the man and his talk') — is evasive: he tests whether to trust them.

12. The officers' insistence — sheqer hagged na lanu ('falsehood! tell us, please') — means they do not accept his evasion. Jehu relents: kazot ve-khazot amar elai ('thus and thus he said to me'). He shares the core message — the anointing — which immediately triggers the officers' response in the next verse.
13. The officers' response is instantaneous: va-yemaharu ('they hurried'). Spreading garments (bigdo, 'his garment') creates an impromptu throne on the gerem ha-ma'alot ('the bare/bone steps') — perhaps the steps of the building. The ram's horn (shofar) and the declaration malakh Yehu ('Jehu reigns/is king!') constitute a formal acclamation. The military coup is declared.
14. The verb va-yitqasher ('he conspired, he bound himself') is the standard term for political conspiracy in Kings. The parenthetical note explains the military situation: the army is at Ramoth-gilead facing Hazeel, while the wounded king has gone to Jezreel to recover. The army is thus separated from the king — the ideal condition for a coup.
15. Jehu's command — al yetse falit min ha-ir ('let no fugitive go out from the city') — seals the city to prevent news from reaching Joram. Speed and surprise are essential. The phrase im yesh nafshekhem ('if it is your desire/will, if your soul is in it') tests the officers' commitment before proceeding.
16. Both target kings are in one place: Joram shokhev shamah ('lying there, resting there') and Ahaziah yarad lir'ot ('had come down to visit'). The convergence that 8:29 set up now becomes the trap. Jehu rides toward both kings simultaneously.
17. The tsofeh ('watchman') on the migdal ('tower') spots the shif'at Yehu ('the company/multitude of Jehu'). Joram's response — qach rakkav u-shelach liqrutam ve-yomar ha-shalom ('take a horseman and send to meet them and let him say: is it peace?') — initiates the 'Is it peace?' sequence. The question ha-shalom literally asks about the state of affairs: is all well, or is something wrong?
18. Jehu's response — mah lekha u-le-shalom ('what is it to you and to peace?') — dismisses the question entirely. His command sov el acharai ('turn to behind me') co-opts the messenger. The watchman's observation — ba ha-mal'akh ad hem ve-lo shav ('the messenger came to them and did not return') — signals trouble.
19. The identical exchange with the second messenger heightens the tension. Both messengers are absorbed into Jehu's company. The repetition creates a pattern that the reader recognizes: Jehu is not answering because the answer will be delivered in person.
20. The watchman identifies Jehu by his driving style: ha-minhag ke-minhag Yehu ben Nimshi ('the driving is like the driving of Jehu son of Nimshi'). The phrase ki ve-shigga'on yinhag ('for he drives in madness/fury') has become proverbial in Hebrew. The word shigga'on ('madness, frenzy') echoes the meshugga ('madman') used for the young prophet in verse 11. Madness frames the chapter — the prophet is called mad, the driving is called mad, yet both carry divine purpose.
21. The convergence at Naboth's field is one of the most dramatic fulfillments in the Hebrew Bible. The narrator specifies the location with precision — chelqat Navot ha-Yizre'eli — because this is where Elijah pronounced judgment on Ahab (1 Kings 21:17-24). The son now dies where the father sinned.
22. Joram's question — ha-shalom Yehu ('is it peace, Jehu?') — finally receives a direct answer. Jehu's response — mah ha-shalom ad zenunei Izevel immekha u-kheshafeiha ha-rabbim ('what is the peace while the harlotries of Jezebel your mother and her many sorceries continue?') — redefines the conversation. The zenunei ('harlotries, prostitution') refers to both literal cultic prostitution associated with Baal worship and the metaphorical 'prostitution' of idolatry. The keshafeiha ('her sorceries') adds the charge of occult practice. Jehu declares that shalom is structurally impossible while Jezebel's influence persists.
23. The phrase va-yahafokh Yehoram yadav ('Joram turned his hands') means he wrenched the reins to reverse the chariot. His cry mirmah Achazyahu ('treachery, Ahaziah!') warns the Judean king. The word mirmah ('deception, treachery') recognizes too late that Jehu's approach was not diplomatic but military.
24. The phrase mille yado va-qeshet ('he filled his hand with the bow') means he drew the bow to its full extent. The arrow strikes bein zero'av ('between his arms/shoulders') — a shot from behind as Joram flees — and exits through the heart: va-yetse ha-chitsi mi-libbo ('the arrow came out from his heart'). Joram collapses: va-yikhra be-rikhbo ('he sank/collapsed in his chariot'). Like his father Ahab, who was struck in his chariot at Ramoth-gilead, the son is struck in his chariot fleeing from Jezreel.
25. Jehu addresses Bidkar (his shalish, 'officer, third man') with a personal memory: they both rode as Ahab's escort when the prophetic oracle was delivered. The verb nasa ('lifted, bore') with massa ('burden, oracle') means the LORD 'raised this pronouncement against him.' Jehu witnessed Elijah's oracle against Ahab firsthand.
26. The oracle quotes a prophetic word connecting Naboth's blood — and significantly, the blood of his sons (demei vanav) — to retribution on this exact chelqah ('plot'). The detail about Naboth's sons dying is not in 1 Kings 21 but is preserved here, revealing that Ahab's crime was even worse than the earlier account narrated: the sons were also killed to prevent inheritance claims. The word emesh ('yesterday') does not mean literally yesterday but 'recently, in the past' — from God's perspective, the crime is fresh.
27. Ahaziah flees derekh beit ha-gan ('the road to Beth-haggan, the garden house') — a town south of Jezreel. Jehu's order gam oto hakkuhu ('also him, strike him!') extends the judgment to the Judean king because of his family ties to Ahab's house. Ahaziah is struck at the ma'aleh Gur ('the ascent of Gur') near Ibleam but manages to reach Megiddo before dying. The 2 Chronicles 22:9 account provides additional details about his capture.
28. Ahaziah receives proper royal burial in Jerusalem — biqurato im avotav be-ir David ('in his burial place with his ancestors in the city of David'). Despite his alliance with Ahab's house, his Davidic lineage secures him a burial among the kings of Judah.

- 29.** This retrospective synchronism places Ahaziah's accession in context. The eleventh year here differs from the twelfth year stated in 8:25, a well-known chronological difficulty in Kings that likely reflects different counting methods (accession-year vs. non-accession-year systems).
- 30.** Jezebel's preparations are deliberate and regal: *va-tasem ba-pukh eineiha* ('she put antimony/kohl on her eyes') — cosmetic eye-paint — and *va-teitiv et roshah* ('she made her head good, she arranged her hair'). She does not hide or flee; she adorns herself for the confrontation. Whether this is royal dignity in the face of death, an attempt at seduction, or a calculated display of power is debated. The window (*challon*) becomes the site of her death.
- 31.** Jezebel's taunt is brilliant and cutting. She calls Jehu 'Zimri' — the usurper who assassinated King Elah but lasted only seven days before being overthrown and dying in a fire (1 Kings 16:9-18). The implied message: your coup will fail as Zimri's did. The question *ha-shalom* ('is it peace?') — the chapter's refrain — is weaponized as mockery. She simultaneously insults him, prophesies his failure, and demonstrates her own fearlessness. The phrase *horeg adonav* ('killer of his master') is factually accurate and morally damning.
- 32.** Jehu's question *mi itti mi* ('who is with me? who?') bypasses Jezebel entirely and addresses the palace staff directly. The *sarisim* ('officials, eunuchs, court attendants') who look out are members of Jezebel's own household. Jehu appeals to their self-interest: declare your loyalty now or share her fate.
- 33.** The command *shimtuha* ('let her drop, throw her down') is one word. The execution is immediate: *va-yishmetuha* ('they threw her down'). The blood spattering — *va-yiz mi-damah el ha-qir ve-el ha-susim* ('some of her blood splashed on the wall and on the horses') — is graphic. The horses trample her: *va-yirmesenh* ('they trampled her'). Jezebel's death is violent, public, and degrading.
- 34.** Jehu eats and drinks first — a display of calm control. Only afterward does he order burial: *piqdu na et ha-arurah ha-zot ve-qivruha* ('attend to this cursed woman and bury her'). He calls her *ha-arurah* ('the cursed one') but acknowledges her status: *ki vat melekh hi* ('for she is a king's daughter') — Jezebel was a Sidonian princess, daughter of Ethbaal. Even in judgment, royal dignity requires burial.
- 35.** The burial party finds only fragments: *ha-gulgolet ve-ha-raglayim ve-khappot ha-yadayim* ('the skull and the feet and the palms of the hands') — the parts dogs typically leave because they are bone with minimal flesh. The rest of Jezebel's body has been consumed. The detail is both forensic and theological: even her remains are almost entirely erased.
- 36.** Jehu recognizes the fulfillment: *dvar YHWH hu asher dibber be-yad avdo Eliyahu ha-Tishbi* ('it is the word of the LORD that he spoke by the hand of his servant Elijah the Tishbite'). The prophecy from 1 Kings 21:23 has been accomplished. The word spoken years ago through Elijah has materialized in flesh-and-blood detail.
- 37.** The final verse denies Jezebel even the dignity of a marked grave. Her *nevelat* ('carcass, corpse') will be *ke-domen al penei ha-sadeh* ('like dung on the face of the field') — a comparison that reduces her body to fertilizer. The concluding phrase — *asher lo yomru zot Izevel* ('so that they will not say this is Jezebel') — means there will be no memorial, no tomb, no pilgrimage site. The queen who filled the land with her presence leaves no trace on it. The prophetic word has the last word.

10

Summary: Jehu completes the destruction of Ahab's house and the eradication of Baal worship in Israel through a series of calculated and ruthless actions. Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria under the care of the city's leading men. Jehu writes to these guardians challenging them to choose a successor and fight for the dynasty. The terrified guardians reply that they will do whatever Jehu commands. Jehu's second letter demands the heads of the seventy sons by the next day. The guardians comply, slaughtering all seventy and sending the heads in baskets to Jezreel. Jehu has the heads piled in two heaps at the city gate and addresses the people the next morning: he acknowledges that he conspired against his master Joram, but asks who killed all of these? He implies that the guardians' willingness to behead their own charges proves that the entire establishment recognized the justice of God's sentence — the word the LORD spoke against the house of Ahab has been fulfilled. Jehu then kills all remaining relatives of Ahab in Jezreel, as well as his officials, close associates, and priests, until none are left. Traveling toward Samaria, Jehu encounters relatives of Ahaziah king of Judah at Beth-eked of the Shepherds. They are going to visit the royal family, unaware of recent events. Jehu orders them seized and killed — forty-two men — at the pit of Beth-eked. Next, Jehu meets Jehonadab son of Rechab and invites him to witness his 'zeal for the LORD.' They ride together to Samaria, where Jehu kills all remaining members of Ahab's house. Then Jehu announces a great sacrifice to Baal and assembles all the Baal prophets, priests, and worshippers in the temple of Baal. He ensures no worshipper of the LORD is mixed in, then orders eighty soldiers to enter and kill everyone. They destroy the Baal pillar and the temple itself, turning it into a latrine — a place that endures to the narrator's time. The chapter's conclusion is ambivalent: the LORD commends Jehu for executing judgment on Ahab's house and grants his dynasty four generations. Yet the narrator immediately notes that Jehu did not turn from the sins of Jeroboam — the golden calves at Bethel and Dan remained. In Jehu's days, the LORD begins to trim Israel's territory: Hazael conquers all

the land east of the Jordan — Gilead, Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh — from the Arnon to Bashan. The chapter closes with the standard regnal summary: Jehu reigned twenty-eight years and was buried in Samaria; his son Jehoahaz succeeded him.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter exposes the moral complexity at the heart of divinely sanctioned violence. Jehu's destruction of Ahab's seventy sons through the guardians' own hands is a masterpiece of political manipulation: by making others do the killing, he distributes guilt and consolidates power simultaneously. His speech at the gate (verse 9) is theologically astute — he invites the people to see the fulfillment of God's word rather than merely human conspiracy. The Baal-temple massacre is similarly calculated: by posing as a Baal devotee, Jehu draws every worshipper into one location for efficient destruction. Yet the narrator's verdict is split. God approves the destruction of Ahab's house (verse 30) but the text immediately notes Jehu's failure: he perpetuated Jeroboam's golden calves. The revolution purged Baal worship but left the older Israelite apostasy intact. Hazael's territorial conquests (verses 32-33) function as divine judgment on Jehu's Israel despite the dynasty's divine approval — obedience in one area does not cancel disobedience in another.*

Translation Friction: *The moral problem intensifies in this chapter. Jehu's actions are divinely commissioned (9:7-10) and divinely approved (10:30), yet the methods are manipulative and the scale of killing extends far beyond the named targets. The forty-two relatives of Ahaziah at Beth-eked are arguably innocent — they are visiting family and know nothing of the revolution. Hosea 1:4, written later, explicitly condemns 'the blood of Jezreel,' suggesting that even divinely authorized judgment can be executed sinfully. The Baal-temple deception (posing as a worshipper) raises questions about whether holy ends justify deceptive means. The narrator's own ambivalence shows in the split verdict: approval for destroying Ahab's house, criticism for maintaining Jeroboam's calves. This is not simple moral storytelling but a text wrestling with the relationship between divine sovereignty, human agency, and moral accountability.*

Connections: *The destruction of Ahab's seventy sons connects to the pattern of dynastic extermination in Kings (Jeroboam's house by Baasha, Baasha's house by Zimri). The heads piled at the gate echo Assyrian siege practices and the psychological warfare common in ancient Near Eastern political transitions. Jehonadab son of Rechab is the ancestor of the Rechabites praised in Jeremiah 35 for maintaining their ancestral vows — his presence as witness lends ascetic legitimacy to Jehu's campaign. The destruction of the Baal temple fulfills the implicit promise of Elijah's victory on Mount Carmel (1 Kings 18): the contest proved YHWH is God; now the institutional infrastructure of Baal worship is physically destroyed. Hazael's conquests fulfill Elisha's weeping prophecy in 8:12. The four-generation promise to Jehu's dynasty (verse 30) is fulfilled precisely: Jehoahaz, Joash, Jeroboam II, and Zechariah — after which the line ends (15:12). The golden calves at Bethel and Dan trace back to Jeroboam I (1 Kings 12:28-29), showing that Israel's foundational sin persists through every regime change.*

¹Now Ahab had seventy descendants in Samaria. Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria, to the officials of Jezreel, to the elders, and to the guardians of Ahab's sons, saying: ²"As soon as this letter reaches you — you who have your master's sons with you, as well as chariots, horses, a fortified city, and weapons — ³select the best and most worthy of your master's sons, set him on his father's throne, and fight for your master's house." ⁴They were absolutely terrified and said, "Two kings could not stand against him — how can we?" ⁵The palace administrator, the city governor, the elders, and the guardians sent word to Jehu: "We are your servants. Whatever you tell us, we will do. We will not make anyone king. Do whatever you think best." ⁶He wrote them a second letter: "If you are on my side and are willing to obey me, take the heads of your master's sons and bring them to me at Jezreel by this time tomorrow." Now the seventy royal sons were being raised by the leading men of the city. ⁷When the letter arrived, they seized the royal sons and slaughtered all seventy of them. They put their heads in baskets and sent them to Jehu at Jezreel. ⁸A messenger came and told him, "They have brought the heads of the king's sons." He ordered, "Pile them in two heaps at the entrance of the gate until morning." ⁹In the morning he went out, stood before all the people, and said, "You are the righteous judges here. I conspired against my master and killed him — but who killed all of these?" ¹⁰Know, then, that not a single word the LORD spoke against the house of Ahab will fall to the ground unfulfilled. The LORD has carried out what he declared through his servant Elijah." ¹¹Jehu then struck down everyone remaining of Ahab's house in Jezreel — all his leading men, his close associates, and his priests — until he left no survivor. ¹²He set out for

Samaria. On the way, at Beth-eked of the Shepherds, ¹³Jehu encountered the relatives of Ahaziah king of Judah. He asked, "Who are you?" They said, "We are relatives of Ahaziah. We are going to pay our respects to the king's sons and the queen mother's sons." ¹⁴He ordered, "Take them alive!" They seized them alive and slaughtered them at the pit of Beth-eked — forty-two men. He did not spare a single one of them. ¹⁵Moving on from there, he encountered Jehonadab son of Rechab coming to meet him. He greeted him and asked, "Is your heart true toward me, as my heart is toward yours?" Jehonadab answered, "It is." "Then give me your hand." He gave him his hand, and Jehu pulled him up into the chariot. ¹⁶Jehu said, "Come with me and see my zeal for the LORD." And they rode together in his chariot. ¹⁷When he arrived in Samaria, he struck down everyone remaining of Ahab's line in Samaria, until he had destroyed them all — according to the word the LORD had spoken to Elijah. ¹⁸Jehu assembled all the people and announced, "Ahab served Baal only a little. Jehu will serve him much more!" ¹⁹"Now summon all the prophets of Baal, all his worshippers, and all his priests to me. No one is to be absent, because I have a great sacrifice for Baal. Anyone who fails to come will not live." Jehu was acting with cunning, intending to destroy the worshippers of Baal. ²⁰Jehu ordered, "Proclaim a sacred assembly for Baal!" They proclaimed it. ²¹Jehu sent word throughout all Israel, and every worshipper of Baal came — not one stayed away. They entered the temple of Baal, and it was filled wall to wall. ²²He told the keeper of the wardrobe, "Bring out robes for all the worshippers of Baal." He brought out robes for them. ²³Jehu and Jehonadab son of Rechab entered the temple of Baal. He said to the Baal worshippers, "Search carefully and make sure there are no worshippers of the LORD here among you — only worshippers of Baal." ²⁴They went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings. Jehu had stationed eighty men outside and warned them, "If anyone lets a single man escape from those I am delivering into your hands, it will be his life for that man's life." ²⁵As soon as the burnt offering was finished, Jehu ordered the guards and officers, "Go in and strike them down! Let no one escape!" They struck them down with the sword. The guards and officers threw the bodies out and then went into the inner shrine of the Baal temple. ²⁶They brought out the sacred pillar from the temple of Baal and burned it. ²⁷They demolished the pillar of Baal, tore down the temple of Baal, and turned it into a latrine — which it remains to this day. ²⁸So Jehu wiped out Baal worship from Israel. ²⁹However, Jehu did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had led Israel into sin — the golden calves at Bethel and at Dan. ³⁰The LORD said to Jehu, "Because you have done well in carrying out what is right in my sight — you have done to the house of Ahab everything that was in my heart — your descendants to the fourth generation will sit on the throne of Israel." ³¹But Jehu was not careful to follow the law of the LORD, the God of Israel, with all his heart. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam, who had led Israel into sin. ³²In those days the LORD began to reduce Israel's territory. Hazael struck them throughout all the borders of Israel: ³³from the Jordan eastward — all the land of Gilead, the territory of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh, from Aroer on the Arnon gorge through Gilead and into Bashan. ³⁴The rest of Jehu's acts, everything he did, and all his military achievements — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ³⁵Jehu slept with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. His son Jehoahaz reigned in his place. ³⁶The total time Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The shiv'im banim ('seventy sons') likely includes grandsons and great-grandsons — the entire male line of Ahab. The letters go to sarei Yizre'el ('officials of Jezreel'), ha-zeqenim ('the elders'), and ha-omnim ('the guardians/tutors') — every authority figure responsible for the princes. Jehu addresses the entire establishment with a demand they cannot refuse.
2. Jehu lists their assets: the princes (benei adoneikhem, 'the sons of your masters'), military resources (rekhev, susim, 'chariots, horses'), the fortified city (ir mivtsar), and weapons (nesheq). He is reminding them they have the means to resist — making their eventual capitulation all the more significant.
3. The challenge — re'item ha-tov ve-ha-yashar mi-bnei adoneikhem ('see the good and upright from among the sons of your masters') — dares them to mount a defense of the dynasty. Jehu is not making a genuine offer; he is forcing them to acknowledge they cannot or will not resist. The demand to fight (hilachamu) exposes their impotence.
4. Their fear — va-yir'u me'od me'od ('they feared greatly, greatly') — uses double intensification. Their reasoning is sound: hinneh shenei ha-melakhim lo amdu lefanav ('behold, two kings did not stand before him'). If Joram of Israel and Ahaziah of Judah both fell, city officials have no chance.

5. Total capitulation. The four groups — asher al ha-bayit ('over the house'), asher al ha-ir ('over the city'), ha-zeqenim ('the elders'), ha-omnim ('the guardians') — respond in unison. Their declaration avadekha anachnu ('we are your servants') transfers their loyalty. The phrase lo namlikh ish ('we will not make any man king') concedes the dynastic claim.
6. The second letter demands action: qechu et rashei anshei benei adoneikhem ('take the heads of the men, the sons of your masters'). The word rashei ('heads') is brutally literal. The parenthetical note — the seventy sons were im gedolei ha-ir megaddelim otam ('with the great men of the city, raising them') — emphasizes that their guardians are being asked to kill their own wards.
7. The execution is immediate and total: va-yishchatu shiv'im ish ('they slaughtered seventy men'). The verb shachat ('to slaughter') is the same used for animal sacrifice, adding a grim resonance. The heads are packed in duddim ('baskets, pots') — the practical detail makes the horror concrete.
8. Jehu orders a public display: shenei tsiburim petach ha-sha'ar ('two heaps at the opening of the gate'). The gate is the public forum — the place of judgment, commerce, and assembly. The seventy heads arranged in two heaps serve as both evidence and warning. The delay ad ha-boqer ('until morning') ensures maximum public visibility.
9. Jehu's speech is a masterpiece of political rhetoric. He declares the crowd tsaddiqim ('righteous ones, just judges') — placing them in the role of moral arbiters. He confesses his own conspiracy openly: ani qasharti al adoni va-ehregehu ('I conspired against my master and killed him'). Then the devastating question: u-mi hikkah et kol elleh ('and who struck all of these?'). The guardians of Samaria killed them — the establishment itself executed the dynasty. Jehu distributes the moral weight.
10. Jehu frames the massacre as prophetic fulfillment: lo yippol mi-dvar YHWH artsah ('not one word of the LORD will fall to the ground'). The metaphor of a word 'falling to the ground' means failing or going unfulfilled. Jehu positions himself as the instrument of divine speech — the word spoken by Elijah (be-yad avdo Eliyahu, 'by the hand of his servant Elijah') has been accomplished. The theological claim is valid; the political exploitation of it is Jehu's addition.
11. The scope extends beyond bloodline: gedolav ('his great ones'), meyudda'av ('his acquaintances, close associates'), kohanav ('his priests'). The phrase ad bilti hish'ir lo sarid ('until not leaving him a survivor') indicates total purge — not just the dynasty but its entire support network.
12. Beth-eked ha-ro'im ('the binding-house of the shepherds') is likely a sheep-shearing station along the road. The location becomes the site of another mass killing.
13. The achei Achazyahu ('brothers/relatives of Ahaziah') are traveling to visit the royal family, unaware of the revolution. Their stated purpose — li-shelom benei ha-melekh u-vnei ha-gevurah ('for the peace/welfare of the king's sons and the queen mother's sons') — is innocent. The gevurah ('queen mother, great lady') likely refers to Jezebel or Athaliah. Their ignorance makes their fate tragic.
14. The forty-two men are captured alive first — tifsum chayyim ('seize them alive') — then executed at the bor ('pit, cistern'). The number arba'im u-shenayim ('forty-two') is specific. The phrase ve-lo hish'ir ish mehem ('he did not leave a man from them') completes the pattern of total destruction. These are Judean royals, extending the purge beyond Israel to the allied dynasty.
15. Jehonadab (Yonadav ben Rekhav) is the ancestor of the Rechabites, a group known for austere lifestyle and strict YHWH loyalty (Jeremiah 35). His presence gives Jehu's campaign religious legitimacy beyond the prophetic anointing. The question ha-yesh et levavkha yashar ('is your heart upright/true?') tests loyalty. The handclasp and ascent into the chariot formalize the alliance.
16. The phrase re'eh be-qin'ati la-YHWH ('see my zeal/jealousy for the LORD') uses qin'ah, the same word used for God's jealousy and for Elijah's zeal (1 Kings 19:10, 14). Jehu explicitly claims the mantle of zealous loyalty to YHWH. Whether this is genuine devotion or political calculation — or both — the narrator leaves ambiguous.
17. The formula ki-dvar YHWH asher dibber el Eliyahu ('according to the word of the LORD which he spoke to Elijah') frames the killing as prophetic fulfillment. The word ad hishmido ('until he destroyed him') uses the verb shamad — total destruction. The prophetic word from 1 Kings 21 has now been fully executed.
18. Jehu's announcement — Achav avad et ha-Ba'al me'at, Yehu ya'avdennu harbeh ('Ahab served Baal a little, Jehu will serve him much') — is a deliberate deception. He poses as an even more devoted Baal worshipper than Ahab in order to draw all Baal devotees into a trap. The irony is extreme: the man anointed to destroy Baal worship claims to champion it.
19. The trap is set: zevach gadol li la-Ba'al ('a great sacrifice for me to Baal') is the bait. The threat — kol asher yipaqqed lo yichyeh ('whoever is missing will not live') — ensures full attendance. The narrator reveals the strategy: Yehu asah be-oqvah ('Jehu acted with cunning/craftiness'). The word oqvah ('craftiness, heel-work') comes from the same root as Ya'aqov ('Jacob') — the supplanter.
20. The phrase qaddeshu atsarah la-Ba'al ('sanctify/proclaim an assembly for Baal') uses vocabulary normally reserved for YHWH worship. The atsarah ('solemn assembly, sacred gathering') is a term for a holy convocation (Joel 1:14, 2:15). Applying it to Baal worship is deliberate sacrilege designed to ensure the worshippers believe Jehu is sincere.
21. The phrase peh la-peh ('mouth to mouth, edge to edge') describes the temple packed to capacity. Every Baal worshipper in Israel is now inside a single building. The word ve-lo nish'ar ish asher lo va ('not a man remained who did not come') ensures no Baal devotee escaped the net.
22. The meltachah ('wardrobe, vestry') is the storeroom for ceremonial garments. The levush ('clothing, garment') distributed to the Baal worshippers serves a dual purpose: it marks them visually as Baal devotees and ensures they can be distinguished from any YHWH worshipper who might have been swept up in the assembly.

- 23.** The instruction *chappesu u-re'u* ('search and see') ensures that only Baal worshippers are present: *ki im ovdei ha-Ba'al levaddam* ('only worshippers of Baal alone'). Jehonadab's presence as witness adds religious credibility. The search protects any YHWH worshipper who might accidentally be present — Jehu's violence is targeted, not indiscriminate.
- 24.** The trap is sprung: eighty soldiers wait outside. Jehu's threat — *nafsho tachat nafsho* ('his life instead of his life') — echoes the formula used against Ahab in 1 Kings 20:42 for releasing Ben-hadad. The phrase *ani mevi al yedeikhem* ('I am bringing into your hands') frames the worshippers as prisoners delivered for execution.
- 25.** The timing is precise: *ke-khalloto la'asot ha-olah* ('when he finished making the burnt offering'). The sacrifice completes the deception. The *ratsim* ('runners, guards') and *shalishim* ('officers') enter and execute everyone: *va-yakkum le-fi cherev* ('they struck them with the mouth of the sword'). The *ir beit ha-Ba'al* ('the city/inner precinct of the Baal temple') suggests an inner sanctuary area.
- 26.** The *matstsebot* ('pillars, standing stones') were sacred objects in Baal worship — stone or wooden pillars representing the deity or commemorating worship. Burning them (*va-yisrefuha*) destroys their sacred status permanently.
- 27.** The destruction moves from objects to the structure itself: *va-yittetsu et beit ha-Ba'al* ('they tore down the temple of Baal'). The final degradation — *va-yesimuhu le-machara'ot* ('they made it into latrines') — is the ultimate desecration: a temple becomes a public toilet. The phrase *ad ha-yom* ('to this day') indicates the narrator writes when this use is still current. The transformation from sacred space to waste space is deliberate theological statement.
- 28.** The summary statement — *va-yashmeid Yehu et ha-Ba'al mi-Yisrael* ('Jehu destroyed Baal from Israel') — uses the verb *shamad* ('to annihilate, to destroy completely'). The achievement is real: organized Baal worship in Israel ends with Jehu. But the next verse immediately qualifies this victory.
- 29.** The critical qualification: *raq* ('however, only, but') introduces the limitation. Jehu destroyed Baal worship but preserved the *eglei ha-zahav* ('the golden calves') — the rival worship centers Jeroboam I established (1 Kings 12:28-29). The Deuteronomistic narrator's judgment is clear: purging one form of apostasy while maintaining another is insufficient. The sins of Jeroboam ben Nevat are the baseline sin of the northern kingdom that no king ever addresses.
- 30.** God's approval — *ya'an asher hetivota la'asot ha-yashar be-einai* ('because you did well to do the upright in my eyes') — specifically concerns the destruction of Ahab's house: *ke-khol asher bi-lvavi asita le-veit Achav* ('according to all that was in my heart you did to the house of Ahab'). The reward is a four-generation dynasty: *benei rev'i'im* ('sons of four generations'). This promise is precisely fulfilled: Jehoahaz, Joash, Jeroboam II, and Zechariah occupy the throne before the line ends (15:12).
- 31.** The narrator's summary judgment: *lo shamar lalekhet be-torat YHWH Elohei Yisrael be-khol levavo* ('he did not keep to walk in the instruction of the LORD God of Israel with all his heart'). The phrase *be-khol levavo* ('with all his heart') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5) — Jehu's obedience was partial, not wholehearted. The split verdict is the chapter's theological core: approved for one thing, condemned for another.
- 32.** The phrase *hechel YHWH le-qatsot be-Yisrael* ('the LORD began to cut off in Israel') uses *qatsah* ('to cut, to trim, to reduce'). The instrument is Hazeel — the very king whose atrocities Elisha foresaw and wept over (8:12). God's judgment on Israel's remaining sin operates through the enemy Elisha prophesied.
- 33.** The territorial losses are comprehensive: everything east of the Jordan, from the Arnon (the southern boundary of Reuben's territory, modern Wadi Mujib in Jordan) northward through Gilead to Bashan (the Golan Heights region). Three tribal territories — Gad, Reuben, and the eastern half of Manasseh — are lost. This fulfills Elisha's prophecy of Hazeel's devastating conquests (8:12).
- 34.** The standard closing formula: *yeter divrei Yehu ve-khol asher asah ve-khol gevurato* ('the rest of the acts of Jehu and all that he did and all his might'). The word *gevurato* ('his might, his valor') acknowledges military accomplishment despite the theological criticism. The *sefer divrei ha-yamim le-malkhei Yisrael* is the now-lost royal annals.
- 35.** The death and burial formula: *va-yishkav Yehu im avotav* ('Jehu lay down with his ancestors'). Burial in Samaria — the Israelite capital — is appropriate for the king who purged it of Baal worship. Jehoahaz (*Yeho'achaz*, 'the LORD has grasped') begins the four-generation dynasty promised in verse 30.
- 36.** Twenty-eight years is a substantial reign, validating Jehu's dynasty beyond the mere seven days of Zimri, whom Jezebel compared him to (9:31). Her taunt proved wrong: Jehu's coup succeeded and endured. The reign length is given as the final data point, closing the Jehu narrative that began with his anointing in 9:1.

11

Summary: *Athaliah, the queen mother, seizes the throne of Judah after the death of her son Ahaziah by massacring the entire royal family. But Jehosheba, sister of Ahaziah and wife of the priest Jehoiada, hides the infant Joash in the Temple for six years while Athaliah rules. In the seventh year, Jehoiada organizes a coup with the Temple guards and the Carites, stationing armed men around the young king. Joash is brought out, crowned, anointed, and proclaimed king. Athaliah hears the commotion, enters the Temple, and cries "Treason! Treason!" She is seized and executed outside the Temple grounds. Jehoiada then makes a covenant between the LORD, the king, and the people — and a second covenant between the king and the people. The people tear down the temple of Baal and kill Mattan the priest of Baal. Joash is enthroned at seven years old, and the city is at peace.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter preserves the most precarious moment in the Davidic line. The entire royal house of David in Judah is reduced to a single infant hidden in a storeroom of the Temple. The survival of God's covenant promise to David (2 Samuel 7) hangs by a thread — one child, one faithful woman, one faithful priest. Jehoiada's coup is remarkable for its careful planning: he divides the guards into three groups, arms them with David's own ceremonial spears and shields stored in the Temple, and choreographs the coronation with military precision. The double covenant in verse 17 is theologically significant: Jehoiada renews the covenant relationship between the LORD and the nation, and simultaneously establishes the political bond between king and people. This is the only place in Kings where a priest initiates both religious and political covenant renewal.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the Carites (ha-Kari) in verse 4 is debated — they may be Carian mercenaries from Asia Minor, Cherethites (Cretan bodyguards who served David), or a distinct Temple guard corps. The relationship between Jehosheba and Jehoiada is stated only in 2 Chronicles 22:11, not in Kings, though it is implied by her access to Temple chambers. The phrase 'the testimony' (ha-edut) placed on Joash during the coronation (verse 12) is unclear — it may refer to a copy of the Torah, a covenant document, or royal insignia. The text's claim that Athaliah destroyed 'all the royal seed' (kol zera ha-mamlakhah) is clearly hyperbolic since Joash survived, but it communicates the totality of her intent.*

Connections: *Athaliah's massacre directly continues the Omride legacy — she is the daughter (or granddaughter) of Ahab and Jezebel (8:26), and her destruction of the Davidic line is Jezebel's ideology transplanted into Judah. The rescue of one child from royal massacre connects to Moses in the basket (Exodus 2) and the later preservation of the messianic line. The covenant renewal in verse 17 echoes the covenant at Sinai (Exodus 24:3-8) and anticipates Josiah's covenant renewal in 2 Kings 23:1-3. Tearing down the Baal temple and killing Mattan reverses the Baal worship introduced through Athaliah's Omride connections. The coronation formula — anointing, clapping, shouting 'Long live the king!' — follows the pattern established for Solomon's coronation in 1 Kings 1:34-39.*

¹When Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she set about destroying the entire royal family. ²But Jehosheba, daughter of King Joram and sister of Ahaziah, took Joash son of Ahaziah and smuggled him away from among the king's sons who were being killed. She hid him and his nurse in a bedroom, and they concealed him from Athaliah so that he was not put to death. ³He remained hidden with her in the house of the LORD for six years, while Athaliah ruled over the land. ⁴In the seventh year, Jehoiada sent for the commanders of hundreds — of the Carites and the royal guard — and brought them to himself in the house of the LORD. He made a covenant with them and put them under oath in the house of the LORD, then showed them the king's son. ⁵He gave them orders: "This is what you are to do. A third of you who come on duty on the Sabbath shall guard the royal palace. ⁶A third shall be at the Gate of Sur, and a third at the gate behind the guards. You shall guard the house as a barrier. ⁷The two divisions among you — all who go off duty on the Sabbath — shall guard the house of the LORD, surrounding the king. ⁸You shall surround the king on every side, each man with his weapons in hand. Anyone who approaches the ranks is to be killed. Stay with the king wherever he goes — when he goes out and when he comes in." ⁹The commanders of hundreds did everything that Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each took his men — those coming on duty on the Sabbath and those going off duty — and came to Jehoiada the priest. ¹⁰The priest gave the commanders of hundreds the spears and shields that had belonged to King David, which were kept in the house of the

LORD. ¹¹The guards stood in formation, each man with his weapons in hand, from the south side of the house to the north side, flanking the altar and the Temple, surrounding the king on every side. ¹²Then he brought out the king's son and placed the crown on him and gave him the testimony. They proclaimed him king and anointed him. The people clapped their hands and shouted, "Long live the king!" ¹³When Athaliah heard the noise of the guards and the people, she went to the people at the house of the LORD. ¹⁴She looked, and there was the king standing by the pillar according to custom, with the officers and trumpeters beside the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets. Athaliah tore her robes and cried out, "Treason! Treason!" ¹⁵Jehoiada the priest commanded the commanders of hundreds who were in charge of the troops: "Bring her out between the ranks, and put to the sword anyone who follows her." For the priest had said, "She must not be killed in the house of the LORD." ¹⁶They seized her, and she was taken through the horses' entrance to the royal palace. There she was put to death. ¹⁷Jehoiada made a covenant between the LORD, the king, and the people — that they would be the LORD's people — and also a covenant between the king and the people. ¹⁸Then all the people of the land went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed its altars and images to pieces and killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of the altars. The priest stationed guards over the house of the LORD. ¹⁹He took the commanders of hundreds, the Carites, the guards, and all the people of the land, and they brought the king down from the house of the LORD. They entered the palace through the gate of the guards, and the king sat on the royal throne. ²⁰All the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was at peace. As for Athaliah, they had put her to death by the sword at the royal palace.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Athaliah acts immediately — the verb *va-taqom* ('she rose up') signals decisive, violent initiative. The phrase *kol zera ha-mamlakhah* ('all the seed of the kingdom') refers to every potential Davidic heir. Her motive is pure power: with her son dead, only she can hold the throne if no Davidic heir survives.
2. The verb *va-tignov* ('she stole') is striking — Jehosheba literally steals the child from among the corpses of the princes. The 'bedroom' (*chadar ha-mittot*) likely refers to a storage room for bedding within the Temple complex, a place Athaliah would not search. This single act of courage preserves the Davidic line and, with it, the covenant promise of 2 Samuel 7.
3. For six years the true king is hidden in God's house while a usurper occupies the throne. The contrast is sharp: the legitimate Davidic heir lives in the Temple; the illegitimate queen rules in the palace. The narrator's use of *molekhet* ('ruling') for Athaliah is technically neutral but contextually loaded — she is the only woman to reign over Judah, and her rule is unauthorized.
4. The Carites (*ha-Kari*) are likely foreign mercenaries serving as royal bodyguards, similar to David's Cherethites and Pelethites. Jehoiada's decision to bring military commanders into the Temple and bind them by covenant there shows that he understands the coup requires both priestly authority and military force. The phrase 'he showed them the king's son' is the narrative's revelation moment — six years of secrecy end in a single dramatic disclosure.
5. Jehoiada exploits the Sabbath shift change to double the available guards — the departing shift stays while the incoming shift arrives. The plan is detailed and methodical: each third has a specific station, ensuring complete coverage of the Temple compound where the coronation will take place.
6. The Gate of Sur is otherwise unknown; it may be the same as the Foundation Gate mentioned in 2 Chronicles 23:5. The term *massach* ('barrier, defense') indicates the guards are to form a protective perimeter — no one enters or exits without authorization.
7. The outgoing Sabbath shift, instead of going home, stays to provide additional protection around the king. This doubles the available manpower without raising suspicion — a normal shift change conceals the mobilization.
8. The instruction is lethal: *ha-ba el ha-sderot yumat* ('whoever enters the ranks shall be put to death'). Jehoiada anticipates resistance and authorizes deadly force. The ring of armed men around the child-king creates a living fortress.
9. The obedience is total: *ke-khol asher tsivah* ('according to everything he commanded'). The military follows the priest without question, a remarkable alignment of Temple and military authority that legitimizes the coup as a religious act, not merely a political one.
10. David's own weapons — stored in the Temple as sacred relics — arm the men who will restore David's line. The symbolism is potent: the dynasty's founder equips the dynasty's rescue. These ceremonial weapons bridge the centuries between David and his endangered descendant.
11. The guards form a semicircle stretching from one corner of the Temple to the other, with the altar in the center of the formation. The king stands at the focal point of the armed crescent, protected on all sides. The scene is both a military operation and a liturgical moment — an armed coronation in God's house.
12. The *nezer* ('crown') is the royal diadem. The *edut* ('testimony') is debated — it may be a Torah scroll, a covenant document, or royal insignia attesting legitimacy. Whatever its form, it signifies that kingship in Judah is covenantal: the king receives authority with obligations attached. The acclamation *yechi ha-melek* echoes Solomon's coronation (1 Kings 1:39).

13. Athaliah comes to investigate the commotion — she does not yet know what has happened. Her approach to the Temple is both bold and foolish: she walks directly into the place where her replacement has already been crowned. The noise that draws her is the sound of her own overthrow.
14. Athaliah finds a fully realized coronation in progress. The king stands by the pillar (ha-ammud) — a designated spot for royal ceremonies, possibly one of the great pillars flanking the Temple entrance. Her cry of *qesher qesher* ('conspiracy! conspiracy!') is darkly ironic: she who seized the throne by murdering children now accuses others of treason.
15. Jehoiada's command is both ruthless and reverent: Athaliah must die, but not in the Temple. The sacred space must not be polluted with the blood of execution. The instruction to kill anyone who follows her anticipates that she may have loyalists who will try to intervene.
16. Athaliah is led out through the horses' gate — a utilitarian entrance, not the ceremonial one. She exits royal life through a service door. The execution at the palace rather than the Temple maintains the sanctity of sacred space while delivering justice at the seat of her usurped power.
17. The phrase *va-yikhrot et ha-berit* ('he cut the covenant') uses the standard covenant-making verb. The three-way structure — LORD, king, people — is unique in Kings and creates a triangular obligation: the people belong to the LORD, the king mediates between God and people, and the people owe loyalty to the king who upholds the covenant. This double covenant is Jehoiada's greatest act of statesmanship.
18. The destruction is thorough: the verb *shibberu hetev* ('they smashed thoroughly') indicates deliberate, complete demolition. Mattan the Baal priest is killed before the very altars where he served — a symmetrical justice. Jehoiada then posts guards (*pequddot*) at the Temple, restoring proper security and worship order.
19. The procession from Temple to palace completes the transfer of power. Joash moves from the place where he was hidden and crowned to the seat where he will rule. The phrase *kisse ha-melakhim* ('the throne of the kings') uses the plural — it is the throne that has held David's line for generations, and now holds his line again.
20. The chapter ends with a two-word summary of the new order: *ha-ir shaqatah* ('the city was quiet, at peace'). After six years of usurpation and one day of revolution, Jerusalem is calm. The narrator circles back to confirm Athaliah's execution, closing her story with finality. Joy and silence stand together — the people celebrate, and the city rests.

12

Summary: Joash begins to reign at seven years old in the seventh year of Jehu, and he reigns forty years in Jerusalem. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD all the days that Jehoiada the priest instructs him, though the high places are not removed. Joash initiates repairs to the Temple, directing the priests to use the incoming silver — from assessments, personal vows, and freewill offerings — for the repair work. By the twenty-third year of his reign, the priests have not carried out the repairs. Joash confronts Jehoiada and the priests, removing them from the collection process. Instead, Jehoiada places a chest with a bored hole beside the altar, and the priests at the entrance deposit all incoming silver there. When the chest is full, the royal secretary and the high priest count the silver and give it to the foremen overseeing the Temple work. The workers — carpenters, builders, masons, and stonecutters — are paid directly and are so trustworthy that no accounting is demanded of them. However, the silver is not used for Temple vessels; it all goes to the workmen. The chapter closes with a crisis: Hazael of Aram campaigns against Gath and threatens Jerusalem. Joash buys him off by sending all the sacred treasures — the dedicated gifts of his ancestors Jehoshaphat, Jehoram, and Ahaziah, along with his own gifts and all the gold from the Temple and palace treasuries. Hazael withdraws. Joash's servants conspire against him and assassinate him at Beth-millo. His son Amaziah succeeds him.

What Makes This Remarkable: The Temple repair narrative is one of the most detailed administrative accounts in the Hebrew Bible, providing a window into the fiscal mechanics of ancient Israelite worship. The system Joash creates — a public collection chest, royal oversight, direct payment to workers — represents an institutional reform that removes priestly middlemen from financial management. The trust extended to the workers (verse 16: 'they did not demand an accounting') stands in sharp contrast to the priestly failure that necessitated the reform. The chapter also demonstrates the fragility of Joash's righteousness: he does right 'all the days that Jehoiada the priest instructed him' (verse 3), implying that without priestly mentorship his faithfulness is not self-sustaining. The ending confirms this: Joash who repaired the Temple also strips it to pay off Hazael, and the king who was saved from assassination as an infant dies by assassination as an adult.

Translation Friction: The WLC versification for this chapter differs from the English versions: WLC has 22 verses (beginning the chapter with Joash's age and accession, which English versions place as 12:1), while English Bibles typically have 21 verses. We follow the Hebrew (WLC) 22-verse structure. The relationship between 2 Kings 12 and 2 Chronicles 24 raises difficulties: Chronicles adds the apostasy of Joash after Jehoiada's death, the murder of Jehoiada's son Zechariah, and an Aramean invasion as divine punishment — details entirely absent from Kings. The silence of Kings on Joash's later apostasy may reflect the Deuteronomistic Historian's different editorial concerns, or Chronicles may supplement from independent sources. The assassination account is terse in Kings; Chronicles provides theological motivation (vengeance for Zechariah's blood).

Connections: The Temple repair anticipates Josiah's more dramatic Temple restoration in 2 Kings 22, where the discovery of the book of the law triggers national reformation. Both episodes involve a collection chest, royal initiative, and faithful workers. Joash's payment of tribute to Hazael from Temple treasures echoes Asa's similar action in 1 Kings 15:18-19 and establishes a pattern repeated by Hezekiah (2 Kings 18:15-16). The conditional nature of Joash's righteousness — dependent on Jehoiada's guidance — connects to the broader Deuteronomistic theme that kings need prophetic or priestly counsel to maintain covenant faithfulness. The assassination of Joash fulfills the pattern of violent succession that haunts the Davidic line after David's own sins of violence.

¹In the seventh year of Jehu, Joash became king, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem. ²Joash was seven years old when he became king. His mother's name was Zibiah, from Beersheba. ³Joash did what was right in the eyes of the LORD all the days that Jehoiada the priest instructed him. ⁴However, the high places were not removed. The people continued sacrificing and burning incense at the high places. ⁵Joash said to the priests, "All the silver from the sacred donations brought into the house of the LORD — the silver collected in the census, the silver from personal assessments, and all the silver that anyone is moved to bring to the house of the LORD — ⁶let the priests receive it, each from his own donors, and let them repair whatever damage is found in the house." ⁷But by the twenty-third year of King Joash, the priests had still not repaired the damage to the house. ⁸King Joash summoned Jehoiada the priest and the other priests and said to them, "Why have you not repaired the damage to the house? From now on, do not take silver from your donors. Hand it over for the repair of the house." ⁹The priests agreed not to collect silver from the people and not to be responsible for repairing the house. ¹⁰Jehoiada the priest took a chest, bored a hole in its lid, and set it beside the altar on the right side as one enters the house of the LORD. The priests who guarded the threshold deposited in it all the silver that was brought into the house of the LORD. ¹¹Whenever they saw that the silver in the chest was plentiful, the king's secretary and the high priest would come, bag it up, and count the silver that had been brought to the house of the LORD. ¹²They gave the weighed-out silver to the foremen in charge of the work on the house of the LORD, who paid it out to the carpenters and builders working on the house of the LORD, ¹³and to the masons and stonecutters, and for purchasing timber and dressed stone to repair the damage to the house of the LORD — for every expense needed to restore the house. ¹⁴However, no silver basins, wick trimmers, sprinkling bowls, trumpets, or any gold or silver vessels were made for the house of the LORD from the silver brought in. ¹⁵It was given to the workers, and they used it to repair the house of the LORD. ¹⁶They did not demand an accounting from the men to whom they gave the silver to pay the workers, because they acted with complete integrity. ¹⁷The silver from guilt offerings and the silver from sin offerings was not brought into the house of the LORD; it belonged to the priests. ¹⁸At that time, Hazael king of Aram marched against Gath and captured it. Then Hazael set his face toward Jerusalem. ¹⁹Joash king of Judah took all the sacred objects that his ancestors Jehoshaphat, Jehoram, and Ahaziah, kings of Judah, had dedicated, along with his own dedicated gifts, and all the gold found in the treasuries of the house of the LORD and the royal palace. He sent everything to Hazael king of Aram, and Hazael withdrew from Jerusalem. ²⁰As for the remaining deeds of Joash and all that he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²¹His servants rose up and formed a conspiracy. They struck down Joash at Beth-millo, on the road that goes down to Silla. ²²Jozabad son of Shimeath and Jehozabad son of Shomer, his servants, struck him down and he died. They buried him with his ancestors in the City of David, and his son Amaziah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The WLC begins chapter 12 with the synchronism tying Joash's accession to Jehu's reign in Israel. Forty years is one of the longest reigns in Judah, spanning most of the ninth century BCE. The synchronism anchors Joash's reign to the northern revolution that brought Jehu to power — the same upheaval that created the vacuum Athaliah exploited.
2. The regnal formula provides the king's age at accession and the queen mother's name and city of origin. Zibiah from Beersheba — the southernmost significant city of Judah — locates the king's maternal lineage firmly within Judean territory, contrasting with Athaliah's foreign Omride origins.
3. The evaluation is positive but qualified. The clause *asher horahu Yehoyada ha-kohen* ('in which Jehoiada the priest instructed him') limits the duration of his righteousness to the lifetime of his mentor. The verb *horahu* ('instructed him') comes from the root *yarah*, the same root that gives us *torah* — Jehoiada literally 'torah-ed' the king, shaping his conduct by teaching.
4. This is the standard Deuteronomistic caveat applied to otherwise faithful Judean kings. The high places (*bamot*) — local worship sites outside Jerusalem — persist throughout most of Judah's history until Hezekiah and Josiah act against them. Their survival qualifies every positive evaluation: even good kings tolerate decentralized worship.
5. Three categories of silver income are listed: (1) *keseeph* over ('the silver of those who pass through'), likely a census or head tax; (2) *keseeph nafshot erkko* ('silver of persons according to valuation'), referring to the personal vow valuations described in Leviticus 27; and (3) voluntary offerings prompted by personal devotion. Joash attempts to channel all three streams toward Temple repair.
6. The initial system depends on each priest collecting from his established donors (*makkaro*, 'his acquaintance, his contact') and applying the funds to repairs. The term *bedeq ha-bayit* ('damage of the house, breaches of the house') becomes the technical phrase for Temple maintenance throughout this passage.
7. Sixteen years have passed since Joash's accession and the priests have done nothing. The narrator states the failure flatly, without accusation or excuse. Whether the priests spent the money on themselves or simply lacked organizational capacity, the result is the same: the Temple remains in disrepair.
8. Joash confronts his own mentor — a remarkable assertion of royal authority by a king raised under priestly tutelage. The question *maddua* ('why?') demands accountability. The reform removes priests from the collection chain entirely: they are no longer to receive silver from their contacts but must redirect everything to the repair fund.
9. The priests accept both terms: they lose the income stream but also shed the repair obligation. The verb *va-ye'otzu* ('they consented, they agreed') suggests a negotiated settlement rather than a unilateral decree — the priests accept diminished financial authority in exchange for reduced accountability.
10. The collection chest (*aron echad*) is a practical innovation — a locked box with a slot, preventing misappropriation. Its placement beside the altar ensures maximum visibility and associates the donation with worship. The threshold priests (*shomrei ha-saf*) serve as the new collection agents, funneling all income into a single, secure container.
11. A dual-authority counting system: the royal secretary (representing the crown) and the high priest (representing the Temple) jointly handle the funds. Neither party acts alone — this built-in accountability reflects Joash's learned distrust of unmonitored priestly finances.
12. The silver is *ha-metukkan* ('weighed, reckoned') — precisely measured before distribution. The foremen (*osei ha-melakhah*, 'doers of the work') serve as project managers who distribute funds to individual tradesmen. The chain of custody is clear: chest to officials to foremen to workers.
13. Four categories of workers are listed: carpenters (*v12*), builders (*v12*), masons (*godrim*), and stonecutters (*chotzevei ha-even*). The materials — timber and dressed stone (*avnei machtzav*) — match the original Temple construction materials. The repair recapitulates the original building project.
14. This restriction ensures that all funds go to structural repair, not to liturgical furnishings. The list of excluded items — *sippot* (basins), *mezammerot* (wick trimmers), *mizraqot* (sprinkling bowls), *chatzotzrot* (trumpets) — catalogs the standard Temple implements. Utility comes before beauty; the building must stand before it can be adorned.
15. This verse restates the principle succinctly: the silver goes to workers, and the workers repair the house. The simplicity of the statement emphasizes the directness of the new system — no intermediaries, no diversions.
16. The phrase *ki ve-emunah hem osim* ('because in faithfulness they were working') is the narrator's commendation: these foremen are so trustworthy that auditing is unnecessary. The word *emunah* ('faithfulness, integrity') shares its root with *amen* — their reliability is as solid as the word that seals a prayer.
17. This verse preserves a priestly prerogative: the silver associated with *asham* (guilt offering) and *chattat* (sin offering) remains priestly income, as legislated in Leviticus and Numbers. Joash's reform redirects voluntary and assessment income but respects the Torah's allocation of sacrificial fees to the priesthood.
18. The narrative shifts abruptly from administrative reform to military crisis. Hazael's capture of Gath — a Philistine city — demonstrates Aram's expansive power. The phrase *va-yasem panav* ('he set his face') toward Jerusalem signals determined intent: Hazael will march on Judah's capital next.

- 19.** The irony is devastating: the king who spent years restoring the Temple now empties it to buy off an invader. Three generations of royal offerings — his father's, grandfather's, and great-grandfather's sacred gifts — are surrendered in a single transaction. The verb *va-ya'al me'al* ('he went up from') indicates Hazael accepted the tribute and departed.
- 20.** The standard closing formula refers readers to the now-lost royal annals of Judah. This source citation recurs for nearly every king and indicates the Deuteronomistic Historian worked from archival materials.
- 21.** The king saved from assassination in infancy dies by assassination as an adult. The verb *va-yiqsheru qesher* ('they conspired a conspiracy') uses the same root as Athaliah's cry in 11:14 — the cycle of conspiracy continues. Beth-millo's exact location is uncertain; Silla is otherwise unknown.
- 22.** The assassins are named — Jozabad (or Jozachar in some manuscripts) and Jehozabad — both bearing names compounded with the divine element. Their motives are not stated in Kings; 2 Chronicles 24:25 attributes the assassination to vengeance for the blood of Jehoiada's son Zechariah. Despite the violent death, Joash receives proper burial in the City of David, maintaining his place in the Davidic succession.

13

Summary: *The chapter covers two Israelite kings — Jehoahaz and Jehoash (Joash) son of Jehoahaz — and includes the death of Elisha. Jehoahaz son of Jehu reigns seventeen years and does evil in the eyes of the LORD, following the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat. The LORD's anger burns against Israel, and He gives them over to Hazael and Ben-hadad of Aram repeatedly. Jehoahaz pleads with the LORD, and the LORD gives Israel a deliverer so that they escape Aramean domination, yet Israel does not turn from its sins. Hazael reduces Israel's army to almost nothing. Jehoahaz dies and his son Joash succeeds him. Joash of Israel also does evil, continuing in Jeroboam's ways. He reigns sixteen years. Elisha falls ill with his final sickness. Joash visits him weeping and cries out the same words Elisha once cried for Elijah: 'My father! My father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!' Elisha instructs Joash to take a bow and arrows, places his hands on the king's hands, and tells him to shoot eastward — declaring it 'the arrow of the LORD's victory over Aram.' Then Elisha tells Joash to strike the ground with the arrows. Joash strikes three times and stops. Elisha is furious: had Joash struck five or six times, he would have completely destroyed Aram; now he will defeat them only three times. Elisha dies and is buried. Later, Moabite raiders are burying a man when they see a raiding party. They throw the corpse into Elisha's tomb, and when it touches Elisha's bones, the dead man revives and stands up. The chapter concludes noting that Hazael oppressed Israel throughout Jehoahaz's reign, but the LORD was gracious to Israel because of His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Hazael dies, and Joash recaptures from Ben-hadad the cities Israel had lost — defeating him three times, exactly as Elisha had indicated.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The arrow oracle (verses 14-19) is one of the most dramatic prophetic sign-acts in the Hebrew Bible. Elisha, dying, summons his remaining strength to perform a final prophetic act that will determine the scope of Israel's military recovery. The prophet's hands cover the king's hands on the bow — a physical transmission of prophetic authority and divine power. But the act requires the king's faith and energy to complete: when Joash strikes only three times, his halfheartedness limits God's victory. The scene reveals a theology of divine-human cooperation where God's gift is shaped by human receptivity. The resurrection at Elisha's tomb (verses 20-21) is equally remarkable — even in death, the prophet's bones carry life-giving power. This is the only instance in the Hebrew Bible of a postmortem miracle, and it forms a literary capstone to Elisha's career: he who received a double portion of Elijah's spirit performs miracles beyond the grave.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'deliverer' (moshia) in verse 5 is debated: candidates include Joash of Israel, Jeroboam II, an Assyrian king whose campaigns weakened Aram, or an unnamed figure. The text does not identify the deliverer, and the ambiguity may be intentional — the LORD provides deliverance through various means. The arrow oracle raises questions about the relationship between prophetic sign-acts and their outcomes: does Joash's limited striking cause the limited victory, or does Elisha discern through the act what will happen? The bones miracle in verses 20-21 stands without theological commentary from the narrator — it simply happens, leaving readers to draw their own conclusions about prophetic power, the sanctity of burial sites, and life after death.*

Connections: *Joash's cry 'My father! My father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!' (verse 14) directly quotes Elisha's own cry at Elijah's ascension (2:12), creating a literary bookend for Elisha's entire prophetic career. The arrow oracle connects to other prophetic sign-acts: Isaiah walking naked (Isaiah 20), Jeremiah breaking a pot (Jeremiah 19), Ezekiel lying on his side (Ezekiel 4). The bones miracle anticipates the resurrection theology of*

Ezekiel 37 (the valley of dry bones). The LORD's remembrance of His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob (verse 23) reaches back to the patriarchal promises of Genesis and forward to every future act of covenant faithfulness — God's commitment to Israel persists despite Israel's persistent unfaithfulness. The three victories over Ben-hadad in verse 25 fulfill Elisha's oracle exactly, demonstrating that prophetic words determine historical outcomes.

¹In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, Jehoahaz son of Jehu became king over Israel in Samaria and reigned seventeen years. ²He did evil in the eyes of the LORD and followed the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. He did not turn away from them. ³The anger of the LORD burned against Israel, and He gave them into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben-hadad son of Hazael, throughout that period. ⁴Jehoahaz pleaded with the LORD, and the LORD listened to him because He saw the oppression of Israel — how the king of Aram was crushing them. ⁵The LORD gave Israel a deliverer, and they escaped from under Aram's power. The people of Israel lived in their homes as before. ⁶Yet they did not turn away from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, who had caused Israel to sin — they persisted in them. Even the Asherah pole remained standing in Samaria. ⁷For Hazael had left Jehoahaz with no more than fifty horsemen, ten chariots, and ten thousand foot soldiers. The king of Aram had destroyed them and ground them to dust like chaff on a threshing floor. ⁸The rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, all that he did, and his military exploits — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ⁹Jehoahaz slept with his fathers and was buried in Samaria. His son Joash reigned in his place. ¹⁰In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah, Jehoash son of Jehoahaz became king over Israel in Samaria and reigned sixteen years. ¹¹He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He did not turn away from any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin — he persisted in them. ¹²The rest of the acts of Joash, all that he did, and the military exploits with which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ¹³Joash slept with his fathers, and Jeroboam sat on his throne. Joash they buried him in Samaria with the kings of Israel. ¹⁴Now Elisha had fallen ill with the sickness from which he would die. Joash king of Israel went down to him and wept over him, saying, "My father! My father! The chariots of Israel and its horsemen!" ¹⁵Elisha said to him, "Get a bow and arrows." So he brought a bow and arrows. ¹⁶He told the king of Israel, "Place your hand on the bow." The king placed his hand on it, and Elisha put his hands over the king's hands. ¹⁷He said, "Open the window toward the east." He opened it. Elisha said, "Shoot!" He shot. Then Elisha declared, "The arrow of the LORD's victory! The arrow of victory over Aram! You will strike Aram at Aphek until you have finished them off." ¹⁸Then he said, "Take the arrows." He took them. He told the king of Israel, "Strike the ground!" The king struck three times and stopped. ¹⁹The man of God was furious with him. "You should have struck five or six times! Then you would have struck Aram until you had destroyed them completely. But now — you will strike Aram only three times." ²⁰Elisha died and was buried. Now Moabite raiding bands used to invade the land at the turn of each year. ²¹Once, as they were burying a man, they caught sight of a raiding party. They threw the body into Elisha's tomb, and when the man touched Elisha's bones, he came back to life and stood on his feet. ²²Hazael king of Aram had oppressed Israel throughout the reign of Jehoahaz. ²³But the LORD was gracious to them and had compassion on them. He turned toward them because of His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. He was not willing to destroy them, and He had not yet cast them from His presence. ²⁴Hazael king of Aram died, and his son Ben-hadad reigned in his place. ²⁵Jehoash son of Jehoahaz recaptured from Ben-hadad son of Hazael the cities that Hazael had taken from his father Jehoahaz in war. Three times Joash defeated him, and he recovered the cities of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The synchronism ties the northern king to the southern chronological framework. Jehoahaz inherits the Jehu dynasty's throne but also inherits the Jehu dynasty's spiritual failure — religious reform was never completed under Jehu, and his son makes no attempt to finish it.
2. The standard negative evaluation for northern kings: Jeroboam's sins — the golden calves at Bethel and Dan, the non-Levitical priesthood — function as the fixed benchmark against which every Israelite king is measured. The phrase *lo sar mimmenah* ('he did not turn from it') emphasizes continuity of apostasy across generations.

3. Two generations of Aramean kings oppress Israel — Hazael and his son Ben-hadad (III). The phrase *kol ha-yamim* ('all the days') indicates sustained domination, not a single campaign. Israel's suffering is presented as divine discipline: the LORD actively 'gave them' (*va-yittenem*) into Aramean hands.
4. The verb *va-yechal* ('he pleaded, he softened the face of') implies earnest, perhaps desperate prayer. Despite Jehoahaz's evil reign, the LORD responds — not because the king deserves it, but because God sees the suffering of the people. The theological pattern is Judges-like: sin, oppression, cry, deliverance.
5. The *moshia* ('deliverer, savior') is unnamed — deliberately so, perhaps, because the emphasis falls on the LORD as the true source of deliverance. The phrase *be-oholehem ki-tmol shilshom* ('in their tents as yesterday and the day before') is an idiom for normal life restored: people return to their homes and live without fear.
6. Deliverance does not produce repentance. Despite being rescued from Aramean oppression, Israel continues in Jeroboam's cult practices. The *Asherah* (a wooden cult pole representing the goddess Asherah) standing in Samaria signals that Canaanite worship persists at the very capital of the northern kingdom.
7. The military inventory is devastating: fifty cavalry, ten chariots, ten thousand infantry — a skeleton force for a nation. The simile *va-yesimem ke-afar la-dush* ('he made them like dust for threshing') pictures Israel's army as grain beaten and scattered on the threshing floor. Aram has reduced Israel to near-helplessness.
8. The mention of *gevurato* ('his might, his military exploits') alongside a reign of devastating military losses is either formulaic or ironic — perhaps both. The annals presumably recorded whatever resistance Jehoahaz managed despite his diminished forces.
9. The death formula 'slept with his fathers' (*va-yishkav im avotav*) is the standard expression for a natural, non-violent death. Burial in Samaria confirms his status as a legitimate northern king. The Jehu dynasty continues through a third generation.
10. Two kings named Joash now reign simultaneously — one in Judah, one in Israel. The synchronism ties the northern Joash to the southern Joash's chronological framework. The Jehu dynasty enters its third generation with a sixteen-year reign.
11. The evaluation is identical to his father's: the same formula, the same failure, the same Jeroboam benchmark. The repetition across generations emphasizes that sin in Israel is systemic, not personal — it is embedded in the kingdom's institutional worship practices.
12. The closing formula for Joash of Israel anticipates the north-south conflict detailed in chapter 14. The mention of war with Amaziah — a Judean king — reminds readers that the divided kingdoms are not merely separate; they are sometimes enemies.
13. Jeroboam (II) succeeds his father — the fourth generation of the Jehu dynasty, fulfilling the LORD's promise that Jehu's sons would sit on the throne to the fourth generation (10:30). Burial 'with the kings of Israel' indicates an established royal cemetery in Samaria.
14. The phrase *cholyo asher yamut bo* ('his sickness from which he would die') signals that this is Elisha's final scene. The king's visit to a dying prophet — going down to him, weeping over his face — shows genuine reverence. Elisha's career, which began with Elijah's ascent, now ends with the same words that marked that beginning.
15. The dying prophet initiates a sign-act — a prophetic performance that enacts and determines future reality. The bow and arrows are not metaphorical; they are the instruments of the oracle that follows. Joash obeys without question.
16. The physical contact — Elisha's hands covering the king's hands — transmits prophetic authority into a military act. The prophet's power flows through the king's body into the weapon. This is the last act of a prophetic career that began when Elijah threw his mantle over Elisha's shoulders (1 Kings 19:19).
17. The arrow functions as a prophetic sign-act: Elisha interprets the shot as a divine oracle of victory. Aphek (east of the Kinnereth/Sea of Galilee) was a recurring battle site between Israel and Aram. The phrase *ad kalleh* ('until finishing, until destruction') promises complete victory — a promise that will be tragically limited in the next verses.
18. The second sign-act: striking the ground with arrows. The command *hakh artzah* ('strike the ground!') is open-ended — Elisha does not specify how many times to strike. Joash strikes three times and stops (*va-ya'amod*, 'he stood still, he ceased'). His restraint will prove costly.
19. Elisha's anger (*va-yiqtzof*) is fierce — the verb describes hot, overflowing rage. The king's lack of intensity in the sign-act has limited God's gift. Five or six strikes would have meant total victory; three strikes means three partial victories. The oracle reveals a theology where divine promise and human response together shape the outcome. God's generosity is real but not automatic — it requires matching human energy.
20. Elisha's death is reported with stark brevity: *va-yamot Elisha va-yiqberuhu* ('Elisha died and they buried him'). No eulogy, no mourning narrative — just two verbs and a burial. The Moabite raids are mentioned to set up the miracle that follows: even Elisha's burial site is a place of conflict and danger.
21. The rushed burial — they throw the corpse into the nearest available tomb — results from panic at seeing raiders. The contact with Elisha's bones (*va-yigga ha-ish be-atzmot Elisha*) triggers resurrection: *va-yechi va-yaqom al raglav* ('he lived and stood on his feet'). The miracle is Elisha's final sign, performed without volition or consciousness, demonstrating that the power of God in the prophet outlasts the prophet himself.
22. The narrator returns to the political summary, recapping the Aramean oppression that defined Jehoahaz's reign. The verb *lachat* ('oppressed, pressed') is the same word used for Egypt's oppression of Israel in Exodus, creating an implied parallel between Aramean dominance and Egyptian

slavery.

23. This verse is the theological center of the chapter. God's faithfulness to Israel is grounded entirely in covenant loyalty to the patriarchs. The three patriarchal names — Abraham, Isaac, Jacob — invoke the full scope of God's promissory history. The warning note *ad attah* ('until now') foreshadows the Assyrian exile of 722 BCE: divine patience is real but not infinite.
24. Hazael's death is the turning point for Israel's fortunes. His son Ben-hadad (III) will prove a weaker ruler, allowing Israel to recover lost territory. The death of an enemy king is, in this context, an act of divine deliverance.
25. The three victories correspond exactly to the three strikes of the arrow oracle (v18-19). Elisha's word determines the scope of military success: no more, no less. The verb *va-yashev* ('he returned, he recovered') indicates restoration — cities that had been Israelite are Israelite again. The prophecy is fulfilled, but incompletely: had Joash struck five or six times, the recovery would have been total.

14

Summary: *Amaziah son of Joash becomes king of Judah at twenty-five and reigns twenty-nine years. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD, though not like David — and the high places remain. He executes his father's assassins but spares their children, following the Torah's principle that children shall not be put to death for their parents' sins. Amaziah achieves a military victory over Edom, killing ten thousand in the Valley of Salt and capturing Sela. Emboldened, he challenges Jehoash king of Israel to battle. Jehoash responds with a mocking fable: a thistle in Lebanon asks a cedar for his daughter in marriage, but a wild animal tramples the thistle. The message is clear — Amaziah is overreaching. Amaziah will not listen. They meet at Beth-shemesh, Judah is routed, and Jehoash captures Amaziah. Jehoash then marches on Jerusalem, breaks down four hundred cubits of the city wall, and plunders the Temple and palace treasuries, taking hostages back to Samaria. Amaziah outlives Jehoash by fifteen years. Eventually a conspiracy forms against Amaziah in Jerusalem. He flees to Lachish, but they pursue and kill him there. His body is brought back on horses and buried in Jerusalem. The people of Judah make his sixteen-year-old son Azariah (Uzziah) king. Azariah rebuilds Elath and restores it to Judah. The chapter concludes with Jeroboam II of Israel, who reigns forty-one years, does evil, yet restores Israel's borders from Lebo-hamath to the Sea of the Arabah, fulfilling the word of the LORD through the prophet Jonah son of Amittai.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The thistle-and-cedar fable (verse 9) is one of only two fables in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Judges 9:8-15, Jotham's fable). Jehoash uses it to devastating rhetorical effect: Amaziah is the thistle, Israel the cedar, and the wild beast represents the unpredictable consequences of hubris. The fable warns that a minor victory (over Edom) does not qualify someone for a major war. Amaziah's refusal to heed the warning proves the fable's point — the thistle gets trampled. The mention of Jonah son of Amittai (verse 25) provides the historical anchor for the prophetic book of Jonah: the same prophet who predicted Israel's territorial expansion is the one sent to preach to Nineveh. This note transforms our understanding of the Book of Jonah by situating it in a specific political context.*

Translation Friction: *The chronological relationship between Amaziah's twenty-nine-year reign (verse 2), his survival fifteen years after Jehoash's death (verse 17), and the accession of Azariah (verse 21) creates difficulties for precise dating. Some scholars posit a co-regency period. The identification of Sela in verse 7 is debated — it may be Petra in Edom or another site. The abruptness of Amaziah's defeat and humiliation after his Edomite success raises narrative questions: 2 Chronicles 25 fills the gap by explaining that Amaziah brought back Edomite gods and worshiped them, provoking divine judgment through the Israelite defeat. Kings omits this theological explanation, leaving the reversal of fortune unexplained within the chapter itself. Jeroboam II's positive military achievements (v25-27) stand in tension with his negative theological evaluation (v24), creating the paradox of a sinful king who restores national greatness.*

Connections: *Amaziah's obedience to Deuteronomy 24:16 (verse 6, 'children shall not die for their fathers') is a rare explicit Torah citation in Kings, demonstrating that the written law functions as operative legislation. The Edomite conflict continues the ancient Jacob-Esau rivalry that runs from Genesis 25 through Obadiah. The thistle fable connects to the wisdom tradition's use of nature imagery for moral instruction. Jehoash's breach of Jerusalem's wall (verse 13) prefigures the Babylonian destruction of the walls in 587 BCE. Jeroboam II's restoration of borders 'from Lebo-hamath to the Sea of the Arabah' (verse 25) echoes the idealized Solomonic boundaries (1 Kings 8:65), suggesting a brief return to imperial-scale territory. The prophet Jonah son of Amittai links this chapter to the Book of Jonah, where the same prophet is called to Nineveh — the capital of the Assyrian empire*

that will eventually destroy the northern kingdom Jonah had blessed.

¹In the second year of Joash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel, Amaziah son of Joash became king of Judah. ²He was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, from Jerusalem. ³He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, though not like his ancestor David. He did everything his father Joash had done. ⁴However, the high places were not removed. The people continued sacrificing and burning incense at the high places. ⁵As soon as the kingdom was firmly in his hand, he executed the servants who had assassinated his father the king. ⁶But he did not put the sons of the assassins to death, in accordance with what is written in the Book of the Law of Moses, where the LORD commanded: 'Parents shall not be put to death for their children, nor shall children be put to death for their parents. Each person shall be put to death only for his own sin.' ⁷He struck down ten thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt and captured Sela in battle, renaming it Joktheel — a name it bears to this day. ⁸Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us face each other in battle." ⁹Jehoash king of Israel sent back to Amaziah king of Judah: "A thistle in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon: 'Give your daughter to my son in marriage.' But a wild animal of Lebanon came passing by and trampled the thistle. ¹⁰You have indeed defeated Edom, and your heart has become proud. Enjoy your glory and stay home! Why provoke disaster? You will fall — you and Judah with you." ¹¹But Amaziah would not listen. So Jehoash king of Israel advanced, and he and Amaziah king of Judah faced each other at Beth-shemesh in Judah. ¹²Judah was routed by Israel, and every man fled to his home. ¹³Jehoash king of Israel captured Amaziah king of Judah, son of Jehoash son of Ahaziah, at Beth-shemesh. Then he came to Jerusalem and broke down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate — four hundred cubits. ¹⁴He seized all the gold and silver and all the vessels found in the house of the LORD and in the treasuries of the royal palace, along with hostages, and returned to Samaria. ¹⁵The rest of the acts of Jehoash — what he did and his military exploits, and how he fought against Amaziah king of Judah — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ¹⁶Jehoash slept with his fathers and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel. His son Jeroboam reigned in his place. ¹⁷Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, survived Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel, by fifteen years. ¹⁸As for the remaining deeds of Amaziah — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ¹⁹A conspiracy was formed against him in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish. But they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁰They carried his body back on horses and buried him in Jerusalem with his ancestors in the City of David. ²¹The entire populace of Judah chose Azariah — then sixteen years old — and installed him as king to succeed his father Amaziah. ²²He rebuilt Elath, returning it to Judah after the king slept with his fathers. ²³In the fifteenth year of Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, Jeroboam son of Joash, king of Israel, became king in Samaria and reigned forty-one years. ²⁴He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He did not turn away from any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. ²⁵He restored the border of Israel from Lebo-hamath to the Sea of the Arabah, according to the word of the LORD, the God of Israel, which He spoke through His servant Jonah son of Amittai, the prophet from Gath-hepher. ²⁶For the LORD saw that the affliction of Israel was very bitter — there was no one left, whether bond or free, and no one to help Israel. ²⁷The LORD had not decreed that He would blot out the name of Israel from under heaven, so He delivered them through Jeroboam son of Joash. ²⁸The rest of the acts of Jeroboam — all that he did, his military exploits, how he fought, and how he recovered Damascus and Hamath for Israel — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ²⁹Jeroboam slept with his fathers, the kings of Israel, and his son Zechariah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- Both kingdoms now have kings named Joash (or Jehoash). The synchronism ties Amaziah's accession to the northern Joash's second year. The parallel naming creates potential confusion that the narrator manages through patronymics and kingdom designations.
- The standard regnal formula: age at accession, length of reign, queen mother's name and origin. Jehoaddan ('the LORD is delight') is from Jerusalem itself — a native Judean queen mother, unlike the foreign-born mothers who imported alien worship.

3. A qualified positive evaluation with two comparisons: Amaziah falls short of David (the gold standard) but matches his father Joash (a conditional faithful king). The phrase *raq lo ke-David* ('only not like David') establishes David as the permanent benchmark for Judean kings — a standard none of them fully meets.
4. The identical high-places caveat that qualified Joash's reign (12:4). The persistence of this note across multiple kings underscores the systemic nature of the problem: decentralized worship is not a single king's failure but a national habit no king before Hezekiah will break.
5. Amaziah waits until his power is consolidated (*ka-asher chazqah ha-mamlakhah be-yado*, 'when the kingdom was strong in his hand') before acting against the assassins. This is political prudence: premature justice against well-connected conspirators could destabilize a new reign.
6. The explicit quotation from Deuteronomy 24:16 is introduced with the full authority formula: *ka-katuv be-sefer torat Mosheh asher tsivah YHWH* ('as written in the Book of the Law of Moses which the LORD commanded'). This is prescriptive Torah being applied as positive law — one of the clearest demonstrations in Kings that the Deuteronomic code functions as the kingdom's constitutional document.
7. The Valley of Salt (south of the Dead Sea) was a traditional site of Israelite-Edomite battles (cf. 2 Samuel 8:13). Sela ('rock, cliff') is likely a fortified Edomite city — possibly Petra or another elevated stronghold. The renaming to Joktheel ('God's obedience' or 'God has subdued') marks the conquest as divinely aided.
8. The challenge *lekhah nitreh fanim* ('come, let us see faces') is a polite idiom for a military confrontation — literally 'let us meet face to face.' Amaziah's Edomite victory has inflated his confidence. The full patronymic chain — 'Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu' — emphasizes the northern king's dynastic pedigree.
9. The fable is devastatingly concise. The thistle (*choach*, a thorny weed) represents Amaziah; the cedar represents Israel; the proposed marriage represents Amaziah's pretension to equality with a greater power. The wild animal that casually destroys the thistle represents the unintended consequences of overreach. Jehoash does not threaten directly — the fable makes the threat for him.
10. Jehoash drops the fable and speaks plainly: *nesaakha libbkha* ('your heart has lifted you up') diagnoses Amaziah's problem as pride inflated by a limited victory. The warning is both political and prophetic: *tithgareh be-ra'ah* ('you are provoking trouble') and *venafalta* ('you will fall'). The prediction that Judah will fall with its king proves exactly correct.
11. The terse *ve-lo shama Amatzياهو* ('and Amaziah did not listen') is the narrative's verdict: refusal to hear wisdom leads to catastrophe. Beth-shemesh — a Judean town west of Jerusalem — indicates that the battle takes place on Judean soil. Israel is the invader, responding to Judah's provocation.
12. The verb *va-yinnagef* ('was struck, was defeated') describes a comprehensive military collapse. The phrase *va-yanusu ish le-ohalav* ('each fled to his tent') indicates total dissolution of the army — not an orderly retreat but a panicked dispersal.
13. The Judean king is captured on the battlefield — a profound humiliation. Jehoash then breaches Jerusalem's northern wall across a four-hundred-cubit stretch (roughly six hundred feet), leaving the capital defenseless against future attack. The breach runs between two named gates on the northern wall, the side most vulnerable to approach.
14. The plunder is comprehensive: Temple vessels, palace treasury, and hostages (*benei ha-ta'aruvot*, 'sons of the pledges' — persons held as security for future compliance). For the second time in two chapters, the Temple that Joash repaired is stripped of its wealth. The hostages ensure Judah's continued submission.
15. The closing formula for Jehoash of Israel. The war with Amaziah is singled out as a notable achievement, reflecting the fact that defeating the Judean king and breaching Jerusalem's walls was an unprecedented northern triumph.
16. Jehoash receives the standard peaceful death formula. Jeroboam II succeeds him — the fourth generation of the Jehu dynasty, fulfilling the LORD's promise of four generations on the throne (10:30).
17. This chronological note creates the unusual situation of a defeated, humiliated king continuing to reign for fifteen more years. Amaziah's survival is physical but his kingdom has been diminished — its walls breached, its treasury plundered, its pride broken.
18. The standard source citation for a Judean king. The formula directs readers to a more detailed account that is now lost.
19. Like his father Joash before him, Amaziah dies by conspiracy. Flight to Lachish — a major fortified city in the Judean lowlands — suggests he hoped to find loyal forces there. The pursuit and assassination at Lachish shows the conspirators' determination: distance from Jerusalem does not save him.
20. Despite the violent death, Amaziah receives a proper royal burial in the Davidic cemetery. The conspirators are not revolutionaries seeking to end the dynasty — they remove one king but preserve the institution. The transport on horses (*al ha-susim*) indicates a ceremonial return of the king's body.
21. The people (*kol am Yehudah*) — not the court, not the priests — select the next king. Azariah (also called Uzziah) is young but becomes one of Judah's most capable rulers. The popular selection echoes the installation of Joash by 'all the people of the land' in chapter 11.
22. Elath (modern Eilat/Aqaba), at the head of the Gulf of Aqaba, was strategically vital for Red Sea trade. Its restoration to Judah indicates Azariah's military and economic ambitions. This brief note anticipates the fuller account of Azariah's reign in chapter 15.

- 23.** Jeroboam II's forty-one-year reign is the longest of any northern king and coincides with one of Israel's most prosperous periods. The synchronism creates a confusing situation: both Judah and Israel recently had kings named Joash, and now both patronymics read 'son of Joash' — but they are different men.
- 24.** The standard negative formula for northern kings. The irony of naming this Jeroboam after the dynasty's founding sinner is compounded by the fact that Jeroboam II is the most politically successful northern king since the original Jeroboam. Military greatness and religious faithfulness move in opposite directions.
- 25.** Lebo-hamath ('the entrance of Hamath') marks the northernmost extent of the promised land (Numbers 34:8). The Sea of the Arabah is the Dead Sea. Jonah son of Amittai from Gath-hepher (a town in Zebulun, near Nazareth) is the historical prophet behind the Book of Jonah. This verse anchors the literary Jonah in a specific historical moment and political context.
- 26.** The phrase *efes atzur ve-efes azuv* ('there was no one restrained and no one released') is a merism — it means 'absolutely no one,' covering every category of person. Israel's suffering was total and without human remedy. God's response through Jeroboam II is again motivated by compassion for suffering, not approval of the king's character.
- 27.** God delivers Israel through an evil king because His purpose is not yet to destroy the nation. The phrase *limchot et shem Yisra'el mitachath-shamayim* ('to blot out the name of Israel from under heaven') is the language of total annihilation — and the LORD has not yet spoken that word. The deliverance through Jeroboam is an act of patient grace, not an endorsement of his reign.
- 28.** The recovery of Damascus and Hamath represents extraordinary territorial expansion — these were Aramean capitals, not merely border towns. The phrase 'for Israel' (*le-Yisra'el*) is textually difficult; some manuscripts read 'which had belonged to Judah, for Israel,' suggesting Jeroboam reclaimed territories that had once been part of the united monarchy under David and Solomon.
- 29.** Zechariah's accession fulfills the LORD's promise to Jehu that four generations of his descendants would sit on Israel's throne (10:30) — Jehu, Jehoahaz, Joash, Jeroboam II, and now briefly Zechariah as the fifth generation, though his reign will be cut violently short (15:8-12). The Jehu dynasty has reached its end.

15

Summary: *This chapter accelerates through multiple reigns in both kingdoms, covering a period of rapid succession and political violence. In Judah, Azariah (Uzziah) reigns fifty-two years and does right in the eyes of the LORD, though the high places remain. The LORD strikes him with a skin disease, and he lives in a separate house while his son Jotham governs. Jotham then reigns sixteen years and also does right, though again the high places persist. In Israel, the chapter narrates a dizzying sequence of kings. Zechariah son of Jeroboam reigns only six months before Shallum son of Jabesh conspires against him and kills him publicly, ending the Jehu dynasty after five generations — fulfilling the LORD's word that Jehu's sons would sit on the throne to the fourth generation. Shallum himself reigns only one month before Menahem son of Gadi strikes him down and seizes the throne. Menahem's reign of ten years is marked by brutal violence — he sacks Tiphshah and rips open its pregnant women — and by submission to Assyria: when Pul (Tiglath-pileser III) invades, Menahem pays a thousand talents of silver to secure Assyrian backing for his throne. Menahem's son Pekahiah reigns two years before his officer Pekah son of Remaliah conspires against him and assassinates him in the citadel of Samaria. Pekah reigns twenty years and does evil. During his reign, Tiglath-pileser III of Assyria conquers large portions of northern Israel — Ijon, Abel-beth-maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, Gilead, Galilee, and all the land of Naphtali — and departs the population to Assyria. This is the beginning of the Assyrian exile. Finally, Hoshea son of Elah conspires against Pekah, kills him, and takes the throne. The chapter ends with synchronistic notes tying Hoshea's accession to Jotham's reign in Judah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's most striking feature is the sheer velocity of political collapse in the northern kingdom. In the space of roughly twenty years, Israel cycles through five kings, three of whom seize power by assassination. The contrast with Judah is stark: the south has two stable, long-reigning kings (Azariah's fifty-two years and Jotham's sixteen) while the north disintegrates into violence and instability. The mention of Tiglath-pileser III (Pul) introduces the Assyrian superpower that will eventually destroy the northern kingdom entirely. Menahem's payment of tribute (verse 19-20) and Pekah's territorial losses (verse 29) mark the stages of Israel's absorption into the Assyrian sphere — from vassalage to amputation to, eventually, extinction. Azariah's skin disease (verse 5) is reported without moral explanation in Kings, though 2 Chronicles 26:16-21 attributes it to his presumptuous entry into the Temple to burn incense.*

Translation Friction: The chronology of this chapter is among the most difficult in Kings. Pekah's twenty-year reign (verse 27) is particularly problematic: if taken at face value alongside the synchronisms, it creates overlaps that are hard to resolve without positing co-regencies or rival kingdoms within Israel. Some scholars suggest Pekah ruled a competing government in Gilead before seizing Samaria. Azariah's fifty-two-year reign creates similar difficulties when correlated with the northern chronology. The identification of Pul with Tiglath-pileser III (verse 19) is confirmed by Assyrian records but represents a conflation of throne name and personal name. The phrase 'the LORD struck the king' with skin disease (verse 5) raises the question of divine causation — Kings offers no reason for the affliction, while Chronicles provides a specific act of sacrilege. The deportation in verse 29 represents the first wave of what will become a total exile, but the text does not editorialize on its significance.

Connections: Azariah/Uzziah's long reign provides the historical backdrop for the early ministries of Isaiah (Isaiah 6:1, 'In the year that King Uzziah died') and Amos (Amos 1:1). His skin disease connects to the Levitical legislation on skin afflictions (Leviticus 13-14) and to other instances of divinely inflicted disease in Kings (Naaman in 2 Kings 5, Gehazi in 2 Kings 5:27). The fulfillment of the Jehu dynasty's four-generation limit (verse 12, citing 10:30) demonstrates the Deuteronomistic theme that prophetic words determine historical outcomes. Menahem's tribute to Assyria anticipates Hezekiah's later tribute (18:14-16) and the broader pattern of Israelite kings emptying treasuries to buy off imperial powers. The Assyrian deportations (verse 29) begin the process that culminates in the fall of Samaria in chapter 17 — the theological climax of the northern kingdom narrative. Pekah's alliance with Rezin of Aram against Judah (referenced in Isaiah 7:1-9) sets up the Syro-Ephraimite crisis that dominates Isaiah's early prophecy.

¹In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Azariah son of Amaziah became king of Judah. ²He was sixteen years old when he became king, and he reigned fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jecoliah, from Jerusalem. ³He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, just as his father Amaziah had done. ⁴However, the high places were not removed. The people continued sacrificing and burning incense at the high places. ⁵The LORD struck the king so that he had a skin disease until the day of his death. He lived in a separate house, while Jotham the king's son administered the palace and governed the people of the land. ⁶As for the remaining deeds of Azariah and all that he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ⁷Azariah slept with his fathers, and they buried him with his ancestors in the City of David. His son Jotham reigned in his place. ⁸In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah, Zechariah son of Jeroboam became king over Israel in Samaria. He reigned six months. ⁹He did evil in the eyes of the LORD, as his ancestors had done. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. ¹⁰Shallum son of Jabesh conspired against him and struck him down publicly, killing him. He reigned in his place. ¹¹The rest of the acts of Zechariah — they are written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel. ¹²This fulfilled the word of the LORD that He had spoken to Jehu: "Your descendants shall sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation." And so it was. ¹³Shallum son of Jabesh became king in the thirty-ninth year of Uzziah king of Judah, and he reigned one month in Samaria. ¹⁴Menahem son of Gadi marched up from Tirzah, came to Samaria, struck down Shallum son of Jabesh in Samaria, killed him, and reigned in his place. ¹⁵The rest of the acts of Shallum and the conspiracy he organized — they are written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel. ¹⁶At that time Menahem attacked Tiphsah and everyone in it and its territory, starting from Tirzah, because they did not open their gates to him. He attacked it and ripped open all its pregnant women. ¹⁷In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah, Menahem son of Gadi became king over Israel. He reigned ten years in Samaria. ¹⁸He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. Throughout his reign he did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. ¹⁹Pul king of Assyria invaded the land. Menahem gave Pul a thousand talents of silver so that Pul would support him and secure the kingdom in his hand. ²⁰Menahem raised the silver from Israel, levying fifty shekels of silver on every man of wealth, to pay the king of Assyria. The king of Assyria then withdrew and did not remain in the land. ²¹As for the remaining deeds of Menahem and all that he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel? ²²Menahem slept with his fathers, and his son Pekahiah reigned in his place. ²³In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekahiah son of Menahem became king over Israel in Samaria. He reigned two years. ²⁴He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. ²⁵Pekah son of Remaliah,

his officer, conspired against him and struck him down in Samaria, in the citadel of the royal palace — along with Argob and Arieah — with fifty men from Gilead. He killed him and reigned in his place. ²⁶The rest of the acts of Pekahiah and all that he did — they are written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel. ²⁷In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekah son of Remaliah became king over Israel in Samaria. He reigned twenty years. ²⁸He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin. ²⁹In the days of Pekah king of Israel, Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria came and captured Ijon, Abel-beth-maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, Gilead, and Galilee — all the land of Naphtali — and deported the people to Assyria. ³⁰Hoshea son of Elah formed a conspiracy against Pekah son of Remaliah. He struck him down and killed him, and reigned in his place in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah. ³¹The rest of the acts of Pekah and all that he did — they are written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Israel. ³²In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, Jotham son of Uzziah became king of Judah. ³³He was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jerusha, daughter of Zadok. ³⁴He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, just as his father Uzziah had done. ³⁵However, the high places were not removed. The people continued sacrificing and burning incense at the high places. He built the Upper Gate of the house of the LORD. ³⁶As for the remaining deeds of Jotham and all that he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ³⁷In those days the LORD began to send Rezin king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah against Judah. ³⁸Jotham slept with his fathers and was buried with his ancestors in the City of David, his ancestor. His son Ahaz reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The synchronism links Azariah's accession to Jeroboam II's twenty-seventh year. Azariah is also known as Uzziah — both names are used in the Hebrew Bible, with Uzziah predominating in Isaiah and Chronicles. The dual naming may reflect a throne name versus a personal name.
2. Fifty-two years is the longest reign recorded for any king of Judah. The queen mother Jecoliah (Yekholyahu, 'the LORD is able') is again a Jerusalemite, continuing the pattern of native Judean maternal lineage for the more successful kings.
3. The positive evaluation is measured against his father Amaziah — qualified righteousness rather than Davidic perfection. The comparison formula creates a chain of partially faithful kings, each doing right but not completely.
4. The recurrence of this identical formula — now for the fourth consecutive Judean king — has the effect of a drumbeat. Each repetition reinforces the systemic nature of the failure and builds anticipation for the king who will finally act (Hezekiah, chapter 18).
5. The term *metzora* ('one with a skin disease') triggers the Levitical quarantine laws: the afflicted person must live apart. The 'separate house' (*beit ha-chofshit*, literally 'house of freedom' or 'house of separation') may be a quarantine residence or a designation for the king's withdrawal from public duties. Jotham functions as regent — *al ha-bayit* ('over the house') is the title of the palace administrator, and *shofet et am ha-aretz* ('judging the people of the land') indicates full governing authority.
6. The closing formula for Azariah is remarkably brief for a king who reigned fifty-two years. Kings compresses his entire reign into five verses, suggesting the Deuteronomistic Historian had limited interest in this period — or that the Chronicler's much fuller account (2 Chronicles 26) draws on sources Kings did not use.
7. Despite his skin disease, Azariah receives the standard honorable burial formula in the City of David. 2 Chronicles 26:23 adds that he was buried 'in the field of the burial that belonged to the kings' rather than in the royal tombs themselves, suggesting his condition affected even his burial location.
8. Six months — the Jehu dynasty's final generation barely holds power. After four generations of kings ruling for decades, the fifth collapses almost immediately. The brevity of the reign signals the dynasty's exhaustion.
9. The formula applies now to the last of the Jehu line. Five generations of identical spiritual failure: the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat persist unbroken from the kingdom's founding to its approaching collapse.
10. The assassination is public — *qovel am* ('before the people') indicates a brazen, open killing rather than a palace conspiracy. Shallum does not hide his violence; it is a public execution disguised as regime change. The Jehu dynasty, which began with Jehu's violent purge, ends with the same kind of violence.
11. The closing formula for a six-month reign — there can have been little to record beyond the brief, violent end.
12. The narrator pauses to connect Zechariah's fall to prophecy. The promise to Jehu (10:30) was both a blessing (four generations) and an implicit limit (only four). The phrase *va-yehi khen* ('and so it was') is the Deuteronomistic Historian's signature verification: prophetic word and historical outcome align perfectly.

13. One month — the shortest reign in Israelite history. The synchronism uses 'Uzziah' rather than 'Azariah,' illustrating the interchangeable use of both names for the same Judean king. Shallum's month-long rule shows that assassinating a king does not guarantee the ability to hold a kingdom.
14. Menahem comes from Tirzah — the old northern capital before Omri built Samaria. His march from Tirzah to Samaria may indicate a rival power base. The cycle of assassination continues: the assassin is himself assassinated, and the new assassin takes the throne.
15. Even a one-month king merits the closing formula and a source citation. The annals presumably recorded the circumstances of both his conspiracy and his defeat.
16. The atrocity — ripping open pregnant women (biquea, 'he split open') — is reported without commentary but with full horror. Tiphseh's refusal to submit provoked a savagery that the narrator records as bare fact. This act places Menahem alongside the worst of Israel's enemies; the same atrocity is attributed to Aram's Hazael in 8:12 and condemned as a war crime by Amos (Amos 1:13).
17. Ten years is a relatively stable reign given the chaos surrounding it. Menahem achieves this stability partly through terror (verse 16) and partly through Assyrian backing (verse 19). His power rests on violence and foreign support, not legitimacy.
18. The phrase kol yamav ('all his days') adds emphasis to the standard formula — not merely habitual sin but lifelong, uninterrupted commitment to the apostate worship system. Every northern king since Jeroboam I receives this identical verdict.
19. Pul is identified in Assyrian records as the throne name of Tiglath-pileser III (745-727 BCE), one of the most powerful Assyrian rulers. A thousand talents of silver is staggering — for comparison, Solomon's annual gold income was 666 talents (1 Kings 10:14). Menahem's payment makes Israel a vassal state: independence is traded for personal political survival.
20. The tax falls on gibborei ha-chayil ('the mighty men of substance, the wealthy landowners') — fifty shekels each. If a thousand talents equals three million shekels, the levy on sixty thousand wealthy households reveals Israel's remaining economic base. The Assyrian withdrawal confirms the transaction: tribute paid, protection granted.
21. The standard closing formula. The annals presumably recorded more detail about Menahem's decade of rule, including whatever additional military campaigns and administrative actions are summarized by 'all that he did.'
22. Menahem is one of the few usurper-kings to die naturally and pass the throne to his son. His brutal methods and Assyrian sponsorship gave him stability that his predecessors lacked, but his son will not enjoy the same protection.
23. Two years — the throne purchased by Menahem's violence and Assyrian silver lasts barely into the next generation. The rapid succession resumes.
24. The formula repeats yet again — unchanged, unchangeable. The narrator's relentless repetition drives home the point: every northern king, regardless of how he came to power, maintains the same apostate worship system. The problem is structural, not personal.
25. Pekah is a shalish ('officer, third man') — a military aide. The assassination takes place in the armon ('citadel, inner fortress') of the palace, the most secure location in Samaria. Argob and Arieah may be co-conspirators or additional victims; the text is ambiguous. The fifty Gileadites indicate Pekah's power base is in the Transjordan, east of the Jordan River.
26. The closing formula for a two-year reign. The brevity of Pekahiah's rule means the annals likely contained little beyond the circumstances of his accession and death.
27. The twenty-year reign is chronologically difficult — it creates overlaps with other synchronisms that suggest Pekah may have exercised rival authority in Gilead before capturing Samaria. The figure may include a pre-Samaria period of regional control in the Transjordan.
28. The formula is unchanged. The reader has now encountered this exact evaluation for every northern king in the chapter — Zechariah, Shallum (implied), Menahem, Pekahiah, and now Pekah. The repetition is not careless; it is relentless theological argument.
29. This campaign corresponds to Tiglath-pileser III's 733-732 BCE invasion, well attested in Assyrian records. The deportation (va-yaglom Ashurah) marks the first wave of exile — entire populations relocated to Mesopotamia. Israel is being reduced to a rump state around Samaria. The cities listed trace a path from the Lebanese border southward through Galilee and eastward into the Transjordan — Assyria is consuming Israel from the edges inward.
30. The fourth assassination in this chapter. Hoshea becomes Israel's last king — though the reader does not yet know this. Assyrian records suggest Tiglath-pileser III installed Hoshea as a puppet ruler after Pekah's anti-Assyrian policies. The synchronism with Jotham's twentieth year creates chronological difficulties since Jotham's reign is recorded as only sixteen years.
31. The closing formula for Pekah. His twenty-year reign saw the most significant territorial losses in Israel's history — the Assyrian annexation that reduced the kingdom to a fraction of its former size.
32. The narrative pivots back to Judah for Jotham's regnal account. Jotham has already been functioning as regent during his father's illness (verse 5), so his formal accession marks a transition from de facto to de jure rule.
33. Jerusha bat Tzadok — if this Zadok is a priestly figure, the queen mother has priestly lineage, which would strengthen Jotham's connections to the Temple establishment. The name Jerusha ('possessed, inherited') may signal legitimacy and continuity.
34. The positive evaluation continues the pattern of qualified righteousness in Judah. Jotham is measured against his father Uzziah — himself a qualified success. The chain of 'good but not David' kings stretches across multiple generations.

35. The high-places caveat is followed by a positive note: Jotham builds the Upper Gate of the Temple. This architectural achievement signals investment in centralized worship even while decentralized worship persists — a paradox that characterizes multiple Judean reigns.
36. The standard source citation. 2 Chronicles 27 provides a fuller account of Jotham's reign, including his victory over the Ammonites and his building projects.
37. This verse introduces the Syro-Ephraimite crisis — the alliance of Aram (under Rezin) and Israel (under Pekah) against Judah. The narrator frames this as divine action: the LORD 'began to send' (hechel le-hashliach) these enemies against Judah. This crisis dominates Isaiah 7-8 and leads to Ahaz's fateful appeal to Assyria for help (chapter 16).
38. Jotham receives the full honorable death-and-burial formula. His son Ahaz will prove one of Judah's worst kings — a dramatic reversal from the qualified faithfulness of the preceding generations. The City of David burial confirms Jotham's place in the legitimate Davidic succession.

16

Summary: *Ahaz son of Jotham becomes king of Judah at age twenty and reigns sixteen years in Jerusalem. Unlike David his ancestor, he follows the practices of the northern kings, even passing his son through fire in imitation of the nations God had driven out. When Rezin of Aram and Pekah of Israel attack Jerusalem in the Syro-Ephraimite crisis, Ahaz refuses to trust God (as Isaiah urges in Isaiah 7) and instead strips the Temple and palace treasuries to buy Assyrian intervention. Tiglath-pileser responds, captures Damascus, and kills Rezin. But the price is catastrophic: Ahaz travels to Damascus to meet his new overlord, sees a pagan altar there, sends its design back to Jerusalem, and orders the priest Urijah to build a replica. The great bronze altar of Solomon is pushed aside, the Temple furnishings are dismantled to appease Assyria, and Judah's worship is physically reshaped to match its political submission.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter records the most deliberate liturgical vandalism in Judah's history before the exile. Ahaz does not simply neglect worship — he redesigns it. The new altar from Damascus replaces the Solomonic altar as the primary place of sacrifice, and Ahaz personally directs the priest Urijah in every detail of the rearrangement. The priest complies without recorded objection, making this a story of institutional capitulation as much as royal sin. The narrator presents Ahaz's actions with clinical precision: he lists every item moved, removed, or repurposed. The theological point emerges from the architecture — when you rearrange the altar, you rearrange the relationship with God. The Syro-Ephraimite crisis, which Isaiah treated as a test of faith (Isaiah 7:9: 'if you do not stand firm in faith, you will not stand at all'), Ahaz treats as a problem to be solved with Assyrian gold. He passes the test of political survival but fails the test of covenant trust.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase he'evir et-beno ba-esh ('he made his son pass through the fire') in verse 3 has long been debated — does it mean literal child sacrifice (as in Moabite practice) or a dedication ritual involving fire? The Hebrew Bible consistently treats it as an abomination (Deuteronomy 18:10, Leviticus 18:21), and the parallel in 2 Chronicles 28:3 confirms burning. We render it as 'made his son pass through the fire' to preserve the Hebrew idiom while noting in the translator's notes that the context demands a lethal reading. The relationship between Ahaz and Urijah the priest is unusual — the king commands and the priest obeys without prophetic consultation or legal objection, suggesting either Urijah's complicity or the monarchy's unchecked power over the priesthood at this period.*

Connections: *The Syro-Ephraimite coalition (Rezin and Pekah attacking Judah) is the same crisis addressed in Isaiah 7-8, where the prophet offers Ahaz a sign and the king refuses with false piety. The dismantling of the bronze sea from its ox-pedestals (v. 17) echoes Solomon's original construction in 1 Kings 7:23-26 — what Solomon built, Ahaz tears apart. Ahaz's appeal to Assyria for deliverance (v. 7: 'I am your servant and your son') uses covenant language — he addresses Tiglath-pileser with the same submission vocabulary used for God, effectively replacing divine suzerainty with imperial suzerainty. The 'covered way for the sabbath' (v. 18) that Ahaz removes is obscure but may refer to a royal passage used for Sabbath processions, meaning Ahaz dismantles even the physical infrastructure of Sabbath observance to placate Assyria.*

¶In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah, Ahaz son of Jotham became king of Judah. ¶Ahaz was twenty years old when he became king, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of the LORD his

God, as his ancestor David had done. ³He walked in the way of the kings of Israel and even made his son pass through the fire, imitating the detestable practices of the nations that the LORD had driven out before the Israelites. ⁴He sacrificed and burned incense at the high places, on the hilltops, and under every leafy tree. ⁵Then Rezin king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel marched up to Jerusalem for war. They besieged Ahaz but were unable to conquer the city. ⁶At that time Rezin king of Aram recovered Elath for Aram and expelled the Judahites from Elath. The Arameans came to Elath and have settled there to this day. ⁷Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria, saying, "I am your servant and your son. Come up and rescue me from the power of the king of Aram and from the power of the king of Israel, who are attacking me." ⁸Ahaz took the silver and gold found in the house of the LORD and in the royal palace treasuries and sent it as a bribe to the king of Assyria. ⁹The king of Assyria listened to him. The king of Assyria marched against Damascus and captured it, deported its population to Kir, and put Rezin to death. ¹⁰King Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria. When he saw the altar that was in Damascus, King Ahaz sent to Urijah the priest a sketch of the altar and a detailed plan of its construction — its complete design. ¹¹Urijah the priest built the altar exactly according to everything King Ahaz had sent from Damascus. Urijah the priest completed it before King Ahaz returned from Damascus. ¹²When the king arrived from Damascus, he inspected the altar. The king approached the altar and made offerings on it. ¹³He burned his burnt offering and his grain offering, poured out his drink offering, and splashed the blood of his peace offerings against the altar. ¹⁴As for the bronze altar that stood before the LORD, he moved it from the front of the Temple — from between the new altar and the house of the LORD — and placed it on the north side of the new altar. ¹⁵King Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest: "On the great altar, burn the morning burnt offering, the evening grain offering, the king's burnt offering and his grain offering, and the burnt offering of all the people of the land along with their grain offerings and their drink offerings. Splash all the blood of burnt offerings and all the blood of sacrifices against it. But the bronze altar — that will be for me to use for seeking guidance." ¹⁶Urijah the priest did exactly as King Ahaz commanded. ¹⁷King Ahaz cut off the panels from the movable stands and removed the basins from them. He also took down the Sea from the bronze oxen that supported it and set it on a stone pavement. ¹⁸He also removed the covered Sabbath walkway that had been built at the Temple and the outer royal entrance to the house of the LORD — because of the king of Assyria. ¹⁹The rest of the acts of Ahaz and what he did — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²⁰Ahaz slept with his fathers and was buried with his ancestors in the City of David. His son Hezekiah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard accession formula synchronizes Ahaz's reign with the northern kingdom's calendar. The synchronism with Pekah presents chronological difficulties that scholars have long debated — the numbers do not align cleanly with Assyrian records. We render the formula as the text gives it.
2. The negative verdict formula — *velo asah hayyashar be-einei YHWH elohav* ('and he did not do what was right in the eyes of the LORD his God') — is measured against the Davidic standard. The phrase *ke-David aviv* ('like David his father') uses 'father' in the dynastic sense of ancestor. The verdict is comprehensive: Ahaz fails entirely to meet the covenant standard.
3. The phrase *he'evir et-beno ba-esh* ('he made his son pass through the fire') describes the extreme of pagan worship. The hiphil verb *he'evir* ('caused to pass over') combined with *ba-esh* ('in the fire') leaves the horrifying action partly veiled in Hebrew idiom, but the context — *ke-to'avot haggoyim* ('according to the detestable practices of the nations') — places it alongside practices that Deuteronomy 18:10 explicitly condemns as abomination. The 'nations that the LORD had driven out' refers to the pre-Israelite Canaanite population, meaning Ahaz has adopted the very practices that justified the conquest.
3. The phrase *vayyeelekh be-derekh malkhei Yisrael* ('he walked in the way of the kings of Israel') is devastating for a Judahite king. The 'way of the kings of Israel' is the path of Jeroboam — the pattern of covenant violation that will destroy the northern kingdom within Ahaz's own lifetime.
4. The triad of illicit worship locations — *bamot* ('high places'), *geva'ot* ('hills'), and *tachat kol ets ra'anani* ('under every green/leafy tree') — is a standard formula in Kings for comprehensive syncretistic worship. The phrase 'under every leafy tree' evokes the Asherah groves and nature-worship sites that dotted the Judean and Israelite landscape. The verb *vayyiqatter* ('and he burned incense') uses the piel of *qatar*, the technical term for incense offering that belongs properly to the Temple cult.
5. This is the Syro-Ephraimite crisis of approximately 735 BCE, the same event that forms the backdrop of Isaiah 7-8. Rezin and Pekah were attempting to force Judah into an anti-Assyrian coalition; Ahaz's refusal prompted their invasion. The phrase *vayyatsuru al Achaz* ('they besieged Ahaz') personalizes the siege — the city becomes the king. The phrase *velo yakhlu lehilachem* ('they could not prevail in fighting') indicates the siege failed militarily, but the political pressure succeeded in driving Ahaz toward Assyria.

6. Elath (Eilat) was the vital Red Sea port that Uzziah had rebuilt (14:22). Its loss cut Judah off from maritime trade routes. The verb *vaynashel* ('and he drove out, expelled') is forceful — a complete removal of the Judahite population. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') is the narrator's editorial marker indicating that at the time of writing, the situation persisted. Some manuscripts read *Edomim* ('Edomites') instead of *Aramim* ('Arameans'), which would make better geographical sense — Edom is adjacent to Elath while Aram is far to the north.
7. The self-designation *avdekha uvinkha ani* ('your servant and your son am I') is formal vassal language from ancient Near Eastern treaty vocabulary. 'Servant' (*eved*) indicates political subordination; 'son' (*ben*) indicates a relationship of dependent loyalty. Ahaz is voluntarily entering the Assyrian imperial system, using the very terms — servant, son — that the covenant reserves for Israel's relationship to God. The verb *hoshi'eni* ('save me, rescue me') is from the root *yasha*, the same root used for divine salvation throughout the Psalms and prophets. Ahaz asks Assyria to perform what belongs to God.
7. The phrase *mikkaf melekham umikkaf melekham Yisrael* ('from the palm/power of the king of Aram and from the palm/power of the king of Israel') uses *kaf* ('palm, hand') for political power — he wants to be freed from their grip.
8. The word *shochad* ('gift, bribe, tribute') carries a negative connotation in biblical Hebrew — it is the standard word for a bribe that corrupts justice (Exodus 23:8, Deuteronomy 16:19). The narrator's choice of *shochad* rather than the neutral *minchah* ('gift, tribute') or *masset* ('levy') signals moral judgment. Ahaz is not merely paying tribute; he is bribing a pagan king with sacred treasury funds. The phrase *hannimtsa beit YHWH* ('found in the house of the LORD') indicates he took whatever was available — a comprehensive raiding of the Temple treasury.
9. Tiglath-pileser's campaign against Damascus in 732 BCE is confirmed by Assyrian records. The verb *vayyiglehah* ('and he exiled it/her') uses the root *galah* ('to uncover, to exile'), the standard verb for deportation. The destination *Qirah* ('Kir') is likely in Mesopotamia, possibly the region of the Kir River — ironically, Amos 9:7 identifies Kir as the original homeland of the Arameans, so they are being sent back to where they came from. Rezin's execution (*heimit*, 'he put to death') ends the Aramean kingdom of Damascus permanently.
10. The word *demut* ('likeness, image, sketch') is the same word used in Genesis 1:26 for humanity made in the 'likeness' of God. The word *tavnit* ('pattern, plan, model') is the same term used for the pattern of the tabernacle that Moses received on Sinai (Exodus 25:9). The narrator's vocabulary is charged: Ahaz sends a *demut* and *tavnit* of a pagan altar using the same terms God used for sacred construction. The altar he saw in Damascus was likely an Assyrian-style altar installed after Tiglath-pileser's conquest, making Ahaz's imitation an act of both religious and political submission.
11. The repetition of *Uriyyah hakkohen* ('Urijah the priest') twice in one verse emphasizes his role as accomplice. The phrase *kekhol asher shalach* ('according to everything he sent') stresses total compliance — no deviation, no objection. The phrase *ad bo hammelekham* ('before the king's arrival') indicates urgency: the altar was ready and waiting when Ahaz returned. This Urijah may be the same 'Uriah the priest' mentioned in Isaiah 8:2 as a reliable witness, making his compliance here deeply ironic.
12. The threefold repetition of *hammelekham* ('the king') in this short verse is emphatic — it is the king who sees, the king who approaches, the king who offers. The verb *vayyiqrav* ('and he drew near') is the technical term for priestly approach to the altar (the root of *qorban*, 'offering'). The verb *vayyya'al* ('and he went up/offered') could mean either 'he ascended the altar steps' or 'he offered a burnt offering.' The king is acting as priest — a prerogative that proved disastrous for Uzziah (2 Chronicles 26:16-21).
13. Ahaz performs the full sacrificial repertoire on the new altar: *olah* (burnt offering — entirely consumed), *minchah* (grain offering), *nesekh* (drink offering/libation), and *shelamim* (peace/fellowship offerings). The blood-splashing (*vayyizroq*) is a specifically priestly act. By performing every category of sacrifice on the pagan-design altar, Ahaz is consecrating it as the replacement for the Solomonic altar — establishing a new liturgical norm.
14. The bronze altar (*mizbach hannechoshet*) is the original altar associated with Solomon's Temple, the legitimate place of sacrifice. Ahaz physically displaces it — *vayyaqrev* ('he moved it close, he brought it near') — from its central position *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') to a marginal position on the north side. The spatial language is precise: the bronze altar was between the Temple entrance and its original position, and Ahaz pushes it to the side to make room for the new Damascus altar. This is architectural theology — the center belongs to whatever altar holds the primary position.
15. Ahaz calls the Damascus altar *hammizbeach haggadol* ('the great altar'), claiming superiority for it over the Solomonic original. He transfers every category of regular worship to the new altar: the *tamid* (daily morning and evening offerings), the royal offerings, and all public sacrifices. The phrase *umizbach hannechoshet yihyeh li levaqer* ('the bronze altar will be for me to inquire by') is obscure. The verb *baqar* can mean 'to seek, to inquire, to inspect.' Ahaz may be reserving the original altar for personal divination, or he may be saying 'I will think about what to do with it later.' Either reading diminishes the Solomonic altar from its central liturgical role to a secondary, personal instrument.
16. The sentence is brutally concise: *vayyaas Uriyyah hakkohen kekhol asher tsivvah hammelekham Achaz* ('and Urijah the priest did according to everything that King Ahaz commanded'). No protest, no prophetic consultation, no appeal to Torah. The verb *tsivvah* ('commanded') is the same verb used for God's commands. The priest obeys the king's command regarding the altar with the same totality that Torah requires for divine commands.
17. The dismantling of Solomon's Temple furnishings is described with technical precision. The *misgerot* ('panels, frames') of the *mekhanot* ('wheeled stands') were ornate bronze panels described in 1 Kings 7:27-37. The *kiyyorot* ('basins, lavers') sat atop these stands for ritual washing. The *yam* ('Sea') — the great bronze basin of 1 Kings 7:23-26 — rested on twelve bronze oxen. Ahaz removes it from its symbolic base (the oxen representing the twelve tribes supporting the purification waters) and sets it on a plain stone floor. Each removal strips the Temple of Solomonic craftsmanship and theological symbolism.

18. The musakh haShabbat ('the covered structure of the Sabbath') is an obscure architectural feature — possibly a covered colonnade or canopy used during Sabbath processions or royal Sabbath worship. The mevo hammelekh hachitsonah ('the king's outer entrance') was presumably the royal passage allowing the king direct access to the Temple. Both are removed mippenei melekh Ashshur ('because of the king of Assyria') — the narrator explicitly connects these removals to Assyrian pressure, whether as tribute payment (stripping bronze) or as political submission (removing symbols of Judahite royal-religious independence).
19. The standard source citation formula. The sefer divrei hayyamim lemalkei Yehudah ('Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah') is a now-lost court chronicle that the editors of Kings cite repeatedly as containing additional information. The formula indicates that the narrator has been selective — there is more to tell, but what has been told is what matters theologically.
20. The standard death and burial formula. The phrase vayyishkav im avotav ('he lay down with his fathers') is the dignified Hebrew idiom for death. Burial be-ir David ('in the City of David') indicates the royal cemetery, though 2 Chronicles 28:27 notes he was not placed in the tombs of the kings — a posthumous dishonor. The transition to Chizkiyahu ('Hezekiah') — whose name means 'the LORD strengthens' or 'the LORD is my strength' — signals a dramatic reversal: from the worst Davidic king to one of the best.

17

Summary: *Hoshea son of Elah becomes the last king of Israel. After conspiring with Egypt and withholding tribute from Assyria, he is arrested by Shalmaneser V. The Assyrians besiege Samaria for three years and finally capture it in 722 BCE, deporting the population to Halah, Habor, the Gozan River, and the cities of the Medes. The narrator then delivers the longest theological explanation in the entire book of Kings: Israel fell because they sinned against the God who brought them out of Egypt, feared other gods, walked in the customs of the dispossessed nations, built high places, set up pillars and Asherah poles, burned incense, and served idols — despite repeated prophetic warnings. God removed them from his presence. The chapter concludes with the resettlement: the king of Assyria imports foreign populations into Samaria. When lions attack the settlers, the Assyrians send back a deported Israelite priest to teach them how to worship the local God. The result is a syncretistic religion — the new inhabitants fear the LORD but also serve their own gods.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the theological center of gravity in Kings. After seventeen chapters of northern kingdom narrative — the steady drumbeat of 'he walked in the way of Jeroboam son of Nebat who caused Israel to sin' — the narrator finally pauses the story to deliver his verdict. Verses 7-23 form the longest continuous editorial commentary in Kings, a sustained prosecutorial argument for why the exile was just. The structure is a covenant lawsuit: God delivered Israel from Egypt (the foundational act), Israel violated the covenant terms (the catalog of sins), God sent prophets to warn them (the appeal), Israel refused to listen (the verdict trigger), and God removed them from the land (the sentence). The narrator is not merely recording history; he is arguing a case. Every sentence in the indictment echoes Deuteronomy — this is Mosaic theology applied to historical catastrophe. The chapter's final section (vv. 24-41) on the syncretistic religion of the resettled Samaritans explains the origin of what will become the Samaritan question that persists into the New Testament period.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase vayyitgannev benei Yisrael devarim ('the children of Israel secretly did things,' v. 9) uses the rare hitpael of ganav ('to steal'), meaning they 'stole' or smuggled practices into their worship — acting with deliberate concealment. This is difficult to render without over-interpreting; we use 'secretly attributed to the LORD things that were not true.' The list of nations resettled in Samaria (v. 24) and their gods (vv. 30-31) presents names whose exact identifications remain debated. We transliterate them and provide what is known. The final theological statement — that the Samaritans 'feared the LORD and served their own gods' (v. 33) — presents a tension the narrator considers irreconcilable: dual allegiance is not worship but confusion.*

Connections: *The entire theological argument of vv. 7-23 is built on Deuteronomy: the exodus as foundational event (Deuteronomy 5:6), the prohibition of other gods (Deuteronomy 5:7), the warning against Canaanite practices (Deuteronomy 18:9-12), the sending of prophets (Deuteronomy 18:15-22), and the curse of exile for covenant violation (Deuteronomy 28:63-68). The phrase 'removed them from his presence' (v. 23) reverses the promise of God's presence with Israel throughout the wilderness and settlement narratives. The resettlement of foreign peoples in Samaria (v. 24) creates the historical foundation for the Samaritan community, whose tense relationship with Judah will surface in Ezra-Nehemiah and in Jesus' interaction with the Samaritan woman*

(John 4). The lion attacks on the new settlers (v. 25) echo the covenant curse of Leviticus 26:22: 'I will send wild animals against you.'

¹In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah, Hoshea son of Elah became king in Samaria over Israel, and he reigned nine years. ²He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, though not to the degree of the kings of Israel who preceded him. ³Shalmaneser king of Assyria marched against him, and Hoshea became his vassal and paid him tribute. ⁴But the king of Assyria discovered a conspiracy by Hoshea — he had sent envoys to So, king of Egypt, and had stopped paying the annual tribute to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria arrested him and locked him in prison. ⁵The king of Assyria invaded the entire land, marched up to Samaria, and besieged it for three years. ⁶In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria and deported Israel to Assyria. He settled them in Halah, along the Habor — the river of Gozan — and in the cities of the Medes. ⁷This happened because the Israelites sinned against the LORD their God, who had brought them up from the land of Egypt, from under the power of Pharaoh king of Egypt. They feared other gods ⁸and followed the customs of the nations that the LORD had dispossessed before the Israelites, and the practices that the kings of Israel had introduced. ⁹The Israelites secretly attributed to the LORD their God things that were not true about him. They built high places in every one of their towns, from the smallest watchtower outpost to the largest fortified city. ¹⁰They set up sacred pillars and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every leafy tree. ¹¹They burned incense at every high place, just as the nations had done — the ones the LORD had exiled before them. They did evil things that provoked the LORD. ¹²They served worthless idols, about which the LORD had told them, "You must not do this." ¹³The LORD warned Israel and Judah through every prophet and every seer: "Turn back from your evil ways. Keep my commandments and my statutes according to the entire the Law that I commanded your ancestors and that I sent to you through my servants the prophets." ¹⁴But they would not listen. They stiffened their necks like their ancestors who did not trust in the LORD their God. ¹⁵They rejected his statutes and his covenant that he had made with their ancestors, and the warnings he had given them. They pursued emptiness and became empty themselves. They imitated the nations around them, the very nations the LORD had commanded them not to copy. ¹⁶They abandoned all the commandments of the LORD their God. They made two cast metal calves for themselves, set up an Asherah pole, bowed down to the entire host of heaven, and served Baal. ¹⁷They made their sons and daughters pass through the fire. They practiced divination and read omens. They sold themselves to do what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, provoking him. ¹⁸The LORD became deeply angry with Israel and removed them from his presence. No one remained except the tribe of Judah alone. ¹⁹Even Judah did not keep the commandments of the LORD their God but followed the practices that Israel had introduced. ²⁰The LORD rejected the entire offspring of Israel, afflicted them, and handed them over to plunderers until he had thrown them out from his presence. ²¹When Israel tore itself away from the house of David and made Jeroboam son of Nebat king, Jeroboam drove Israel away from following the LORD and caused them to commit a great sin. ²²The Israelites persisted in all the sins of Jeroboam that he had committed. They did not turn away from them ²³until the LORD removed Israel from his presence, just as he had spoken through all his servants the prophets. Israel was deported from their own soil to Assyria, where they remain to this day. ²⁴The king of Assyria brought people from Babylon, Cuthah, Avva, Hamath, and Sepharvaim, and settled them in the cities of Samaria in place of the Israelites. They took possession of Samaria and lived in its towns. ²⁵When they first settled there, they did not fear the LORD. So the LORD sent lions among them, and the lions were killing some of them. ²⁶They reported to the king of Assyria: "The nations you deported and resettled in the cities of Samaria do not know the requirements of the God of the land. He has sent lions among them, and the lions are killing them because they do not know the requirements of the God of the land." ²⁷The king of Assyria gave an order: "Send back one of the priests you deported from there. Let him go and live there and teach them the requirements of the God of the land." ²⁸So one of the priests who had been deported from Samaria came and settled in Bethel, and began teaching them how to fear the LORD. ²⁹But each nation continued making its own gods, and they placed them in the shrines at the high places that the Samaritans had built — each nation in the towns where they settled. ³⁰The people of Babylon made Succoth-benoth, the people of Cuth made Nergal, and the people of Hamath made Ashima. ³¹The Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak. The Sepharvites immolated their children to Adrammelech and Anammelech, the gods of

Sepharvaim. ³²They also feared the LORD, and from among their own people they appointed priests for the high places, who officiated for them in the high place shrines. ³³They feared the LORD, but they also served their own gods according to the custom of the nations from which they had been deported. ³⁴To this day they continue their former practices. They do not truly fear the LORD, and they do not follow the statutes, the ordinances, the Law, or the commandment that the LORD commanded the descendants of Jacob, whom he named Israel. ³⁵The LORD had made a covenant with them and commanded them: "You must not fear other gods, or bow down to them, or serve them, or sacrifice to them. ³⁶Rather, the LORD — who brought you up from the land of Egypt with great power and an outstretched arm — him you must fear, to him you must bow down, and to him you must sacrifice. ³⁷The statutes, the ordinances, the Law, and the commandment that he wrote for you — you must carefully observe them always. You must not fear other gods. ³⁸The covenant that I made with you — you must not forget it. You must not fear other gods. ³⁹Rather, the LORD your God you must fear, and he will deliver you from the power of all your enemies." ⁴⁰But they did not listen. They continued their former practices. ⁴¹So these nations feared the LORD while also serving their carved images. Their children and their grandchildren continue to do exactly as their ancestors did, to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The accession formula for Israel's last king is stark. Hoshea's nine-year reign will end in catastrophe. His name (Hoshea, 'salvation') is bitterly ironic — the man named 'salvation' will preside over the destruction of the northern kingdom.
2. The qualifier *raq lo kemalkei Yisrael* ('only not like the kings of Israel') is a faint distinction — Hoshea is evil, but comparatively less so. This partial mitigation does not save him or his kingdom. The narrator acknowledges a degree of difference without granting approval. The judgment is still *hara be-einei YHWH* ('evil in the eyes of the LORD').
3. Shalmaneser V (reigned 727-722 BCE) succeeded Tiglath-pileser III. The phrase *vayyehi lo Hoshea eved* ('and Hoshea became his servant') indicates formal vassal status. The word *minchah* ('tribute, gift') in political contexts means regular tribute payments acknowledging overlordship. Israel is now a client state of Assyria.
4. The word *qesher* ('conspiracy, rebellion') is the political term for revolt against an overlord. So (So') king of Egypt is difficult to identify — possibly Osorkon IV of Tanis, or the Egyptian commander Sib'e mentioned in Assyrian records, or a corruption of Sais (the city). Hoshea's fatal miscalculation was seeking Egyptian alliance against Assyria — a strategy Isaiah repeatedly condemns (Isaiah 30:1-5, 31:1-3). The verb *vayyya'atserahu* ('and he seized/detained him') followed by *vayyya'asrehu beit kele* ('and he bound him in a prison house') indicates formal arrest and imprisonment.
5. The phrase *bekhol ha-arets* ('throughout the entire land') indicates a comprehensive military campaign, not a targeted strike. The three-year siege of Samaria (approximately 725-722 BCE) was one of the longest in ancient Near Eastern history. The verb *vayyatsar* ('and he besieged') implies complete encirclement — cutting off food, water, and communication.
6. This verse records the end of the northern kingdom of Israel — 722 BCE, approximately two hundred years after the division under Rehoboam. The verb *vayyegel* ('and he exiled') is from *galah*, the root that means both 'to exile' and 'to uncover, lay bare.' The deportation locations are in upper Mesopotamia and western Iran: Chalach (Halah) near Nineveh, Chavor (Habor) on the Gozan River (modern Khabur River in northeastern Syria), and the cities of the Medes in western Iran. The scattered placement was deliberate Assyrian policy — dispersing conquered populations prevented organized resistance.
7. The theological explanation begins with *ki* — 'because.' Everything that follows is the reason for the exile. The narrator anchors the entire argument in the exodus: YHWH is identified as *hamma'aleh otam me-erets Mitsrayim* ('the one who brought them up from the land of Egypt'). The exodus is the foundational act of salvation that creates the obligation of exclusive loyalty. The phrase *vayyir'u elohim acherim* ('and they feared other gods') uses *yare* ('to fear, to revere') — the same verb used for proper worship of God. Fearing other gods is the primal covenant violation.
8. Two sources of corruption are identified: the *chuqqot haggoyim* ('statutes/customs of the nations') that God had driven out, and the practices introduced by *malkei Yisrael* ('the kings of Israel'). The verb *horish* ('to dispossess, to drive out') recalls the conquest — these nations were removed precisely because of their practices, and now Israel has adopted what destroyed others. The phrase *asher asu* ('which they made/did') at the end refers to the royal innovations — the calves, the high places, the Baal worship — that the kings imposed.
9. The verb *vaychapp'u* is extremely rare — a hapax legomenon from the root *chapa*, meaning 'to cover, to conceal, to do secretly.' The Israelites were smuggling pagan meanings into their worship of the LORD, concealing foreign practices under Yahwistic language. The phrase *devarim asher lo khen* ('things that were not so/right') suggests false theological claims — attributing to God what was not from God.
9. The phrase *mimmigdal notserim ad ir mivtsar* ('from a watchtower of watchmen to a fortified city') is a merism — from the smallest inhabited outpost to the largest urban center, meaning everywhere without exception. No settlement was too small to have its own high place.
10. The *matstsevoth* ('standing stones, sacred pillars') were upright stone monuments associated with Canaanite worship. The *asherim* ('Asherah poles' or 'sacred trees') represented the goddess Asherah. The phrase *al kol giv'ah gevohah vetachat kol ets ra'anah* ('on every high hill and under every leafy

tree') is the standard formula for the ubiquity of illicit worship — elevated sites for pillars, shaded groves for Asherah poles.

11. The verb vayyegatteru ('and they burned incense') at the bamot ('high places') replicates exactly what the dispossessed nations had done. The phrase lehakh'is et YHWH ('to provoke the LORD') uses the hiphil of ka'as ('to anger, to provoke'). The narrator does not say they intended to anger God, but that the objective effect of their actions was provocation. The verb heglah ('he exiled') applied to the former nations foreshadows what will happen to Israel — the same verb, the same fate.
12. The word gillulum ('idols') is a deliberately contemptuous term — probably derived from galal ('to roll') and related to gelal ('dung'). It means something like 'dung-pellets' or 'worthless round things.' The term is a favorite of Ezekiel, who uses it nearly forty times. The direct divine prohibition — lo ta'asu et haddavar hazzeh ('you shall not do this thing') — makes the violation inexcusable. They knew the command and violated it anyway.
13. The verb vayyya'ad ('and he testified, warned, admonished') is a legal term — God formally placed Israel on notice. The warning went through kol nevi'ei kol chozeh ('every prophet, every seer') — two terms for prophetic figures, indicating comprehensive prophetic witness. The message is simple: shuvu middarkeikhem hara'im ('turn back from your evil ways') — the call to repentance. The standard is kekhoh hattorah ('according to the entire Torah') — not part of it, not a reduced version, but the whole instruction given to the ancestors.
14. The phrase vayyaqshu et orfam ('they stiffened their neck') is the classic image of the stubborn ox that will not respond to the yoke. The comparison ke-oref avotam ('like the neck of their ancestors') reaches back to the wilderness generation — the same qeshei oref ('stiff-necked') people of Exodus 32:9 and Deuteronomy 9:6. The verb he'eminu ('they trusted, believed') from the root aman — the refusal to trust God is the fundamental failure beneath all the specific sins.
15. The verb vayyim'asu ('they rejected') is a strong term — active, deliberate refusal, not passive drift. Three things are rejected: chuqqav ('his statutes'), berito ('his covenant'), and edvotav ('his testimonies/warnings'). The wordplay vayyyelkhu acharei hahevel vayyehbalu ('they pursued emptiness and became empty') is one of the most theologically dense phrases in Kings: hevel ('breath, vapor, emptiness') is the word Ecclesiastes uses for futility. They chased vapor and became vapor. You become what you worship.
16. The catalog of sins escalates. The massekah shenayim agalim ('molten image — two calves') refers to Jeroboam's golden calves at Dan and Bethel (1 Kings 12:28-29), the foundational sin of the northern kingdom. The asherah is the cult object representing the goddess. The phrase kol tseva hashamayim ('the entire host of heaven') refers to astral worship — sun, moon, stars, and planetary deities. The Baal (haBa'al, 'the lord/master') is the Canaanite storm deity whose worship Elijah confronted on Mount Carmel. The progression moves from Israelite innovation (calves) to Canaanite nature religion (Asherah, Baal) to Mesopotamian astral worship (host of heaven) — a comprehensive catalog of available idolatries.
17. The sins reach their apex: child sacrifice (he'eviru et-beneihem ve-et-benoteihem ba-esh — both sons and daughters), divination (qesamim), and sorcery (nachash, 'reading omens from signs'). The phrase vayyitmakkeru la'asot hara ('they sold themselves to do evil') uses the reflexive of makhar ('to sell') — they became slaves to evil by their own transaction. No one forced them; they sold themselves. The same verb will describe Ahab in 1 Kings 21:25.
18. The verb vayyit'annaf ('he became angry') in the hitpael indicates intense, sustained anger. The phrase vayyesirem me-al panav ('he removed them from before his face/presence') is the sentence: exile is removal from the divine presence. The land was where God's face was turned toward Israel; exile is where his face is turned away. The survival of shevet Yehudah levaddo ('the tribe of Judah alone') is both a mercy and a warning — Judah is spared but now utterly alone.
19. The ominous parenthetical: gam Yehudah ('even Judah') did not guard God's commandments. The narrator interrupts the indictment of Israel to note that Judah is infected with the same disease. They walked bechuqqot Yisrael ('in the customs of Israel') — the northern kingdom's sins had spread south. This verse foreshadows Judah's own eventual exile, which the narrator knows is coming.
20. The verb vayyim'as ('he rejected') echoes v. 15 where Israel rejected God's covenant — the verb is turned back on them. What they did to God's covenant, God now does to them. The phrase ad asher hishlikham mippanav ('until he threw them from before his face') is more violent than v. 18's 'removed' — hishliakh is 'to hurl, to throw away.' The progression from 'removed' to 'hurled away' intensifies the judgment language.
21. The narrator traces the disease to its origin: the division of the kingdom. The verb qara ('to tear, to rend') is the same word Ahijah used when he tore his garment into twelve pieces (1 Kings 11:30-31). Jeroboam is charged with two actions: vayyaddach ('he drove away, pushed away') Israel from following YHWH, and hecheti'am chata'ah gedolah ('he caused them to sin a great sin'). The 'great sin' is the establishment of the golden calves at Dan and Bethel — the institutional alternative to Jerusalem worship that corrupted every subsequent generation.
22. The phrase lo saru mimennah ('they did not turn aside from it') uses the verb sur ('to turn aside, to depart') — the same verb used positively when kings 'do not turn aside' from the LORD's commands. Here it is inverted: they would not turn aside from Jeroboam's sin. The persistence is total — bekhoh chattot Yarov'am ('in all the sins of Jeroboam') — no exception, no reform.
23. The theological summary reaches its conclusion: ad asher hesir YHWH et Yisrael me-al panav ('until the LORD removed Israel from before his face'). The exile is presented as both predicted (ka'asher dibber, 'just as he spoke') and executed — prophetic word became historical reality. The phrase vayyigel Yisrael me-al admato ('Israel was exiled from upon its soil') uses adamah ('soil, ground') rather than erets ('land'), emphasizing the agricultural, physical rootedness that exile tears up. They are pulled from the ground like uprooted plants.
24. Assyrian population transfer policy: conquered peoples from various regions are relocated to fill the emptied cities of Samaria. Babylon (Bavel) is in southern Mesopotamia; Cuthah (Kutah) is near Babylon; Avva is uncertain but possibly in Syria; Hamath (Chamat) is in central Syria; Sepharvaim

(Sefarvayim) may be Sippar in Mesopotamia. The phrase tachat benei Yisrael ('in place of the children of Israel') is blunt replacement language. The verb vayyirshu ('they took possession') is the same verb used for Israel's original taking of the land in Joshua — foreign nations now possess what Israel once conquered.

25. The phrase lo yar'u et YHWH ('they did not fear the LORD') identifies the problem: the new inhabitants do not know or reverence the God of the land. The response — vayyeshallah YHWH bahem et ha-arayot ('the LORD sent lions among them') — treats the land as sacred territory that rejects uninstructed inhabitants. Lions were native to the region in antiquity and are associated with divine judgment (1 Kings 13:24, 20:36). The participial form horgim ('killing') indicates ongoing, repeated attacks — not a single incident but a persistent threat.
26. The settlers understand the situation through their own polytheistic framework: every land has its god, and the god of this land is angry because the proper rituals are not being performed. The phrase mishpat elohei ha-arets ('the requirement/custom of the God of the land') uses mishpat in its sense of 'established practice, customary right.' They see YHWH as a territorial deity whose protocols they need to learn — a fundamental misunderstanding that will shape the syncretistic religion described in the chapter's final verses.
27. The Assyrian solution is pragmatic: send back a priest who knows the local deity's requirements. The verb yoreim ('let him teach them') is from yarah, the root of torah — teaching. But the teaching will be conducted within a polytheistic framework where YHWH is treated as one god among many. The singular 'one of the priests' (echad mehakohanim) means a single Israelite priest must instruct multiple foreign populations — an impossible task that guarantees syncretism.
28. The returned priest settles in Beit-El ('House of God') — which is deeply ironic. Bethel was the site of one of Jeroboam's golden calves, the center of the northern kingdom's corrupted worship. A priest trained in Bethel's syncretistic traditions is now teaching foreigners 'how to fear the LORD.' The verb moreh ('teaching') is a participle from yarah — ongoing instruction. But what kind of instruction? The priest himself was trained in a compromised tradition.
29. The phrase goy goy elohav ('nation by nation, its gods') — the repetition of goy emphasizes the multiplicity. Every group maintained its own deities alongside the instruction about YHWH. They installed these gods in beit habamot ('the houses/shrines of the high places') that the Shomronim ('Samaritans' — here the original Israelite inhabitants) had previously built. Israel's high places, originally built for syncretistic Yahwism, now serve as ready-made temples for foreign gods.
30. The catalog of foreign deities begins. Sukkot Benot ('Booths of Daughters') is obscure — possibly a corruption of a Babylonian deity name (perhaps Sarpanitu or Zir-banitu, consort of Marduk). Nergal was the Mesopotamian god of the underworld and plague, well attested in Babylonian texts. Ashima is mentioned in Amos 8:14 and may be related to a Syrian deity. The narrator lists these names without explaining them — the foreignness itself makes the theological point.
31. Nibhaz and Tartak are otherwise unknown deities — later Jewish tradition identified Nibhaz with a dog-shaped idol and Tartak with a donkey, but these identifications are speculative. The Sepharvites practice child sacrifice (sorefim et-beneihem ba-esh, 'burning their children in fire') to Adrammelech and Anammelech — the names contain the element melek ('king'), common in Semitic divine names. The narrator places child sacrifice by foreign settlers in the same land where Israelite kings had already practiced it (v. 17, and 16:3), creating a grim continuity.
32. The phrase vayyihyu yre'im et YHWH ('they were fearing the LORD') describes an addition, not a conversion. They added YHWH to their existing pantheon. The phrase miqqetsotam ('from their extremities/from among themselves') means they appointed priests from their own non-Levitical ranks — anyone could serve. This reproduces the original sin of Jeroboam, who appointed non-Levitical priests (1 Kings 12:31). The pattern perpetuates itself through different populations.
33. The definitive statement of Samaritan syncretism: et YHWH hayu yre'im ve-et eloheihem hayu ovdim ('the LORD they were fearing, and their own gods they were serving'). The narrator treats these as irreconcilable — fearing the LORD demands exclusive allegiance (Deuteronomy 6:13-14). The dual worship is not a compromise or bridge between religions but a theological impossibility that the narrator records with controlled disapproval.
34. The narrator now contradicts v. 33 — or rather, clarifies it. In v. 33 they 'feared the LORD'; here he says einam yre'im et YHWH ('they do not fear the LORD'). The resolution: what they practice is not genuine fear of the LORD because it violates the exclusive covenant terms. The full covenant vocabulary is deployed: chuqqotam ('their statutes'), mishpetam ('their ordinances'), hattorah ('the Torah'), hammitsvah ('the commandment'). The reference to benei Ya'aqov asher sam shemo Yisrael ('the children of Jacob, whom he named Israel') reaches back to Genesis 32:28 — the name 'Israel' itself carries covenant identity.
35. The narrator now quotes the original covenant terms. The verb karat ('to cut') is the standard idiom for covenant-making — literally 'cutting a covenant,' referring to the ancient practice of cutting sacrificial animals as part of the ratification ceremony (Genesis 15:9-18). Four prohibitions cascade: lo tir'u ('do not fear'), lo tishlachavu ('do not bow down'), lo ta'avdum ('do not serve'), lo tizbchu ('do not sacrifice'). Each represents a deeper level of worship — from internal reverence to physical prostration to ongoing service to the ultimate act of offering sacrifice.
36. The positive command mirrors the negative: the same four verbs (fear, bow down, serve, sacrifice) are redirected exclusively to YHWH. The phrase bekoach gadol uvizro'a netuyah ('with great power and an outstretched arm') is classic Deuteronomic exodus language (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15, 26:8). The 'outstretched arm' (zero'a netuyah) is the image of God's power reaching into Egypt to extract Israel — military metaphor applied to divine action.
37. The fourfold legal vocabulary returns: chuqqim ('statutes'), mishpatim ('ordinances'), torah, mitsvah ('commandment'). The phrase asher katav lakhem ('which he wrote for you') specifies written law — a clear reference to the Mosaic Torah as a written document. The phrase kol hayyamim ('all the days') means perpetually, without interruption or exception. The repetition of lo tir'u elohim acherim ('do not fear other gods') frames the

covenant command as both the first and last word.

- 38.** The verb *tishkachu* ('you shall forget') from *shakach* ('to forget') reveals the deepest danger: not active rebellion but passive forgetting. The covenant can be lost not only through defiance but through amnesia. Memory is a covenant obligation. The phrase *habberit asher karati ittekhem* ('the covenant that I cut with you') places God's voice directly into the narrative — the first person *karati* ('I cut') is God speaking through the narrator's recollection of Sinai.
- 39.** The promise attached to exclusive worship: *vehu yatstsil etkhem miyyad kol oyeveikhem* ('and he will rescue you from the hand of all your enemies'). The verb *yatstsil* (from *natsal*, 'to deliver, to snatch away') promises active divine protection. The irony is devastating in context: the nation that feared other gods was not delivered from its enemies but handed over to them. The promise was conditional, and the condition was not met.
- 40.** The phrase *velo shame'u* ('but they did not listen') is the verdict that echoes throughout Kings. The Hebrew root *shama* ('to hear, to listen, to obey') means not merely auditory reception but responsive obedience. They heard the words but did not obey them. The phrase *kemishpatam harishon* ('according to their former custom') indicates no change — the recitation of covenant terms produced no effect.
- 41.** The chapter's final verse is its theological epitaph. The impossible combination persists: *yre'im et YHWH ve-et pesileihem hayu ovdim* ('fearing the LORD and serving their carved images'). The word *pesilim* ('carved images') is the term from the second commandment (Exodus 20:4). The generational language — *beneihem uveneihem* ('their children and their children's children') — indicates the syncretism has become hereditary, passed down as family religion. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') marks this as a permanent condition at the time of the narrator's writing, explaining the religious situation in Samaria that will persist into the Second Temple period and beyond.

18

Summary: *Hezekiah son of Ahaz becomes king of Judah and receives the highest verdict of any Davidic king: he trusted in the LORD, the God of Israel, and there was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, before or after. He removes the high places, smashes the sacred pillars, cuts down the Asherah pole, and destroys the bronze serpent that Moses had made, because the Israelites had been burning incense to it. He rebels against Assyria and defeats the Philistines. But in the fourteenth year of his reign, Sennacherib king of Assyria invades and captures all the fortified cities of Judah. Hezekiah first tries appeasement, stripping the Temple and palace to pay tribute, but Sennacherib sends a massive force to Jerusalem anyway. The Rabshakeh — the chief Assyrian spokesman — delivers a devastating speech in Hebrew to the people on the walls, systematically attacking every basis for Judah's confidence: military strength, Egyptian alliance, and trust in the LORD himself. He claims the LORD sent Assyria to destroy Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Rabshakeh's speech (vv. 19-35) is one of the most psychologically sophisticated pieces of propaganda in ancient literature. He speaks in Hebrew (Yehudit) deliberately, so the common soldiers on the wall can understand — when Hezekiah's officials beg him to switch to Aramaic, the diplomatic language, he refuses and speaks louder. His argument is methodical: (1) Your military confidence is a broken reed. (2) Egypt will fail you. (3) Your own God is angry because Hezekiah removed his high places and altars. (4) The LORD himself told me to come destroy this place. (5) No god of any nation has ever stopped Assyria. Each point is designed to separate the people from their king and their God. The theological irony is layered: the Rabshakeh is both right and wrong — God did use Assyria as an instrument of judgment (Isaiah 10:5-6), but Assyria does not understand that it is a tool, not an autonomous power. The speech inverts covenant language: where the covenant promises security through trust in God, the Rabshakeh promises security through surrender to Assyria.*

Translation Friction: *The chronological note 'in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah' (v. 13) combined with the synchronism of v. 1 creates a well-known chronological difficulty. If Hezekiah became king in the third year of Hoshea (v. 1) and Samaria fell in Hezekiah's sixth year (v. 10), the fourteenth year would be approximately 714-711 BCE, while Sennacherib's invasion is firmly dated to 701 BCE by Assyrian records. Various solutions have been proposed (co-regency, textual error, multiple campaigns). We render the text as given. The Rabshakeh's claim that 'the LORD said to me, Go up against this land and destroy it' (v. 25) may be a lie, a theological interpretation, or an ironic truth — Isaiah 10:5-6 does call Assyria the rod of God's anger. The narrator lets the claim stand without comment, trusting the reader to evaluate it.*

Connections: Hezekiah's destruction of the bronze serpent (Nechushtan, v. 4) reaches back to Numbers 21:4-9, where Moses made a bronze serpent as a means of healing during the wilderness plague. What God once commanded as salvation had become an object of worship — the trajectory from divine gift to idol. Hezekiah's verdict — 'he trusted in the LORD' (batach ba-YHWH, v. 5) — is the precise opposite of his father Ahaz, who trusted in Assyria (16:7). The Rabshakeh's speech parallels and inverts Deuteronomy's covenant promises: where Deuteronomy says 'trust in the LORD and he will give you the land,' the Rabshakeh says 'trust in me and I will give you a land of grain and wine' (v. 32). The siege of Jerusalem by Sennacherib is one of the best-attested events in ancient history, confirmed by Sennacherib's own annals (the Taylor Prism), which boast of shutting Hezekiah up 'like a caged bird' — but notably do not claim to have captured Jerusalem.

¹In the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, Hezekiah son of Ahaz became king of Judah. ²He was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abi daughter of Zechariah. ³He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, exactly as his ancestor David had done. ⁴He removed the high places, smashed the sacred pillars, cut down the Asherah pole, and crushed the bronze serpent that Moses had made — because up to that time the Israelites had been burning incense to it. He called it Nehushtan. ⁵He trusted in the LORD, the God of Israel. There was no one like him among all the kings of Judah — neither after him nor before him. ⁶He held fast to the LORD, never turning aside from following him, and he kept his commandments — the ones the LORD had commanded Moses. ⁷The LORD was with him, and he succeeded in everything he undertook. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and refused to serve him. ⁸He struck down the Philistines as far as Gaza and its territories, from the smallest watchtower to the largest fortified city. ⁹In the fourth year of King Hezekiah — which was the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel — Shalmaneser king of Assyria marched against Samaria and laid siege to it. ¹⁰They captured it at the end of three years. In the sixth year of Hezekiah — which was the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel — Samaria was taken. ¹¹The king of Assyria deported Israel to Assyria and settled them in Halah, along the Habor — the river of Gozan — and in the cities of the Medes, ¹²because they did not obey the voice of the LORD their God but violated his covenant — everything that Moses, the servant of the LORD, had commanded. They neither listened nor obeyed. ¹³In the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib king of Assyria marched against all the fortified cities of Judah and captured them. ¹⁴Hezekiah king of Judah sent word to the king of Assyria at Lachish: "I have done wrong. Withdraw from me, and whatever you impose on me I will bear." ¹⁵The king of Assyria imposed on Hezekiah king of Judah a payment of three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold. ¹⁶Hezekiah handed over all the silver found in the house of the LORD and in the treasuries of the royal palace. ¹⁷At that time Hezekiah stripped the gold from the doors of the LORD's temple and from the doorposts that he himself had overlaid, and gave it to the king of Assyria. ¹⁸The king of Assyria sent the Tartan, the Rab-saris, and the Rabshakeh from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem with a massive force. They marched up and arrived at Jerusalem, and they took their position by the conduit of the Upper Pool, on the road to the Washerman's Field. ¹⁹They called for the king, and out came Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was in charge of the palace, Shebna the secretary, and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder. ²⁰The Rabshakeh said to them, "Tell Hezekiah: This is what the great king, the king of Assyria, says — What is this confidence of yours that you rely on? ²¹Look — you are relying on Egypt, that splintered reed of a staff! If anyone leans on it, it stabs into his hand and pierces it. That is what Pharaoh king of Egypt is to everyone who trusts in him. ²²If you say to me, 'We trust in the LORD our God' — is he not the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah removed, telling Judah and Jerusalem, 'You must worship only before this altar in Jerusalem'? ²³Now then, make a wager with my lord the king of Assyria: I will give you two thousand horses — if you can find enough riders to mount them! ²⁴How could you turn back even one of the least of my lord's governors? Yet you put your trust in Egypt for chariots and cavalry! ²⁵Besides — do you think I marched against this place without the LORD's approval? The LORD himself said to me, 'March against this land and destroy it.'" ²⁶Eliakim son of Hilkiah, Shebna, and Joah said to the Rabshakeh, "Please speak to your servants in Aramaic — we understand it. Do not speak to us in Judahite Hebrew within earshot of the people on the wall." ²⁷The Rabshakeh replied, "Did my lord send me only to your master and to you to speak these words? Was it not also to the men sitting on the wall — who will be eating their own excrement and drinking their own urine along with you?" ²⁸Then the Rabshakeh stood and shouted in a loud voice in Judahite Hebrew: "Hear the word of the great king, the king of Assyria! ²⁹This is what the king says: Do not let Hezekiah

deceive you, because he cannot rescue you from his power. ³⁰Do not let Hezekiah make you trust in the LORD by saying, 'The LORD will certainly rescue us — this city will not be handed over to the king of Assyria.' ³¹Do not listen to Hezekiah. For this is what the king of Assyria says: Make peace with me and come out to me, and each of you will eat from his own vine and from his own fig tree and drink water from his own cistern — ³²until I come and take you to a land like your own land — a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive oil and honey. Choose life and do not die! Do not listen to Hezekiah, because he is misleading you when he says, 'The LORD will rescue us.' ³³Has any god of the nations ever rescued his land from the power of the king of Assyria? ³⁴Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Did they rescue Samaria from my power? ³⁵Who among all the gods of these lands has ever rescued his land from my power? Why should the LORD rescue Jerusalem from my power?" ³⁶The people remained silent and did not answer him a word, because the king had commanded them, "Do not answer him." ³⁷Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was in charge of the palace, Shebna the secretary, and Joah son of Asaph the recorder came to Hezekiah with their garments torn and reported the Rabshakeh's words to him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The accession formula synchronizes Hezekiah with the dying northern kingdom — he becomes king while Samaria still stands, and will witness its fall. The name Chizkiyahu means 'the LORD is my strength' or 'the LORD strengthens,' a programmatic name for a king whose story will center on whether he trusts in divine strength or human alliances.
2. The queen mother's name is given as Avi ('my father'), shortened from Aviyyah ('my father is the LORD') in the parallel passage 2 Chronicles 29:1. The identification of the queen mother (gevirah) was standard in Judahite regnal formulas, reflecting her political significance. Twenty-nine years is one of the longest Judahite reigns, indicating stability.
3. The positive verdict *kekhol asher asah David aviv* ('according to all that David his father did') is the highest commendation in Kings. Most good kings receive the qualifier 'but the high places were not removed.' Hezekiah will receive no such asterisk — he is compared to David without qualification.
4. Four acts of reform: removing *bamot* (high places), smashing *matstsebot* (sacred pillars), cutting the Asherah, and destroying *nechash hannechoshet* ('the serpent of bronze') from Numbers 21:8-9. The bronze serpent, originally made at God's command as a means of healing, had become an object of worship — *meqatterim lo* ('burning incense to it'). Hezekiah's name for it, *Nechushtan*, is a wordplay: *nechash* ('serpent') + *nechoshet* ('bronze') = *Nechushtan*, 'just a bronze thing.' The name strips it of sacred power by reducing it to its material. This is one of the most radical acts in Kings — destroying something Moses himself had made, because its function had changed from pointer-to-God to replacement-for-God.
5. The verb *batach* ('to trust, to rely upon, to lean on') is placed emphatically first: *ba-YHWH Elohei Yisrael batach* ('in the LORD God of Israel he trusted'). This is the defining characteristic the narrator selects from Hezekiah's entire reign. The superlative — *lo hayah khamohu* ('there was none like him') — is extraordinary and creates a tension with the similar claim for Josiah in 23:25. The narrator may be distinguishing different categories: Hezekiah was unmatched in trust (*bitachon*), Josiah in Torah-obedience.
6. The verb *davaq* ('to cling, to hold fast, to adhere') is the same word used in Genesis 2:24 for a man clinging to his wife — it implies intimate, unbreakable attachment. The phrase *lo sar me-acharav* ('he did not turn aside from following him') uses the same verb *sur* that the sinful kings 'did not turn aside from' Jeroboam's sins (17:22). Hezekiah's loyalty is described with the Deuteronomic vocabulary of covenant faithfulness: clinging to God and keeping his commands as given through Moses.
7. The phrase *YHWH immo* ('the LORD was with him') is the formula of divine presence that marked Joseph (Genesis 39:2), Joshua (Joshua 6:27), and David (1 Samuel 18:14). The verb *yaskil* ('he acted wisely, he succeeded') implies both prudence and prosperity. His rebellion against *melekh Ashshur* ('the king of Assyria') reverses his father Ahaz's voluntary submission (16:7). Where Ahaz said 'I am your servant,' Hezekiah says 'I will not serve you.'
8. Hezekiah's military success against the Philistines reverses generations of Philistine encroachment. Gaza (*Azzah*) is the southernmost Philistine city, indicating the campaign reached the full extent of Philistine territory. The phrase *mimmigdal notserim ad ir mivtsar* ('from watchtower to fortified city') is the same merism used in 17:9 to describe Israel's high places — here it describes the comprehensive scope of Hezekiah's victory.
9. The narrator provides the Judahite perspective on Samaria's fall — events already narrated in chapter 17 are re-dated according to Hezekiah's regnal years. This double dating links the two kingdoms' fates: Hezekiah witnesses from Jerusalem what happens when a nation abandons the covenant.
10. The fall of Samaria is recorded again, now from Hezekiah's chronological perspective. The phrase *nilkedah Shomeron* ('Samaria was taken') uses the niphal passive — the city is the object, not the subject. It suffered capture rather than choosing defeat. The double-dated chronology embeds the northern catastrophe within the Judahite timeline.
11. The deportation locations repeat 17:6 verbatim. The repetition is deliberate — the narrator wants the reader to hear the exile sentence again, now from Hezekiah's perspective. What happened to Israel will serve as the warning Hezekiah heeds and the lesson the Rabshakeh will soon weaponize.
12. The explanation for exile is compressed into one verse: failure to hear (*lo shame'u beqol YHWH*), violation of covenant (*vayyya'avru et berito*, 'they crossed over/transgressed his covenant'), and failure to act (*lo shame'u velo asu*, 'they did not listen and did not do'). The verb *avar* in the phrase

vayyya'avru et berito means 'to cross over, to transgress' — they crossed the boundary line of the covenant. Moses is identified as eved YHWH ('servant of the LORD'), his highest title.

13. Sennacherib (Sanheriv) succeeded Sargon II in 705 BCE. His campaign against Judah in 701 BCE is one of the most thoroughly documented events in ancient history — Assyrian records, the biblical accounts in Kings, Isaiah, and Chronicles, and archaeological evidence from Lachish all converge. The phrase kol arei Yehudah habetsurot ('all the fortified cities of Judah') indicates comprehensive conquest — Judah's defensive network is systematically dismantled. The siege of Lachish, Judah's second city, is depicted in famous relief panels from Sennacherib's palace at Nineveh.
14. Hezekiah's first response is capitulation: chatati ('I have sinned/done wrong') is a confession of political error — his rebellion was a mistake. The phrase shuv me-alai ('turn back from upon me, withdraw from me') begs for Assyrian withdrawal. The blank-check submission — et asher titten alai essa ('whatever you put on me I will carry') — offers unconditional compliance. Sennacherib is at Lachish (Lakhish), besieging Judah's second-most important city, about 30 miles southwest of Jerusalem.
15. The tribute demand is enormous: three hundred talents of silver (approximately 10 tons) and thirty talents of gold (approximately 1 ton). Sennacherib's own annals claim 30 talents of gold and 800 talents of silver — the gold figure matches; the silver discrepancy may reflect different accounting methods or additional payments. A talent (kikkar) weighed approximately 75 pounds. This sum would deplete the national treasury.
16. Hezekiah empties both the Temple and palace treasuries — the same sources Ahaz raided in 16:8. The cycle of plunder continues: foreign threats drain the Temple of its wealth. The phrase kol hakkesef hannimtsa ('all the silver found') indicates a total depletion — everything available.
17. The bitter irony: Hezekiah, the great reformer, must strip gold from the very Temple he had restored. The phrase asher tsippah Chizkiyyahu ('which Hezekiah had overlaid') specifies that this gold overlay was his own work — he is dismantling his own renovation. The daltot heikhal YHWH ('doors of the temple of the LORD') and the omnot ('doorposts/pillars') are the visible face of the Temple. The reformer's piety funds the imperial tribute.
18. Three Assyrian officials arrive: the Tartan (turtanu, commander-in-chief), the Rab-saris (chief eunuch/official), and the Rabshakeh (rab shaqe, chief cupbearer/chief officer). These are titles, not personal names. They come with cheil kaved ('a heavy/massive force') — military intimidation accompanies diplomatic speech. The location — te'alat haberekhah ha-elyonah ('the conduit of the Upper Pool') on the road to the Washerman's Field — is the same spot where Isaiah had met Ahaz years earlier (Isaiah 7:3). The geography is loaded: where Ahaz refused to trust God, Hezekiah's officials will now face the consequences of that refusal's legacy.
19. Three Judahite officials meet three Assyrian officials — a diplomatic parallel. Eliakim is asher al habbayit ('over the house'), the palace steward and chief administrator. Shebna is hassofer ('the scribe/secretary'), responsible for state documents. Joah is hammazkir ('the recorder/herald'), the official who maintained royal records and communications. These same officials appear in Isaiah 36:3. The king himself does not come out — diplomatic protocol places intermediaries at the wall.
20. The Rabshakeh opens with the Assyrian royal formula: koh amar hammelekh haggadol melekh Ashshur ('thus says the great king, the king of Assyria'). The title 'great king' (melekh gadol) is the standard Assyrian imperial designation, deliberately echoing the prophetic messenger formula koh amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD'). The question mah habbitachon hazzeh asher batachta ('what is this confidence in which you trust?') attacks the core of Hezekiah's identity — the narrator has just told us Hezekiah's defining quality is trust (batach, v. 5). The Rabshakeh targets precisely what makes Hezekiah exceptional.
21. The image of Egypt as mish'enet haqqaneh haratsuts ('the staff of the crushed/splintered reed') is devastating propaganda — and Isaiah would agree (Isaiah 30:1-5, 31:1-3). A reed staff looks like support but collapses under weight and stabs the hand that grips it. The verb yissamekh ('he leans upon') from samakh ('to lean, to support') suggests full body weight. The Rabshakeh's mockery of Egyptian alliance is theologically sound — the prophets said the same thing. This creates the speech's unsettling power: the enemy speaks truth.
22. The Rabshakeh's most theologically sophisticated argument: he claims Hezekiah's reform — removing bamot ('high places') and mizbekhot ('altars') — was an offense against YHWH, not an act of faithfulness. From the Assyrian perspective (and from the perspective of many Judahites who worshipped at these shrines), centralizing worship in Jerusalem looked like reducing the deity's access points. The argument is wrong but plausible to an audience that valued local worship sites. The Rabshakeh understands Judahite religion well enough to exploit internal tensions.
23. The Rabshakeh's mockery turns to military assessment: hit'arev na ('make a bet, enter a wager') is a taunt. He offers two thousand horses because he knows Judah cannot field enough trained cavalry to ride them. The number is deliberately chosen to expose Judah's military weakness. If a nation cannot even staff two thousand horses, how can it resist the Assyrian army? The argument combines insult with accurate intelligence about Judah's depleted military capacity.
24. The logic tightens: if Judah cannot defeat a single pechat ('governor, provincial official') — the lowest rank in Assyrian military hierarchy — how can it withstand the full army? The taunt exposes the absurdity of resisting a superpower. The reference to trusting Egypt lerekev uleparashim ('for chariots and horsemen') identifies Judah's secret diplomatic strategy — seeking Egyptian military support, which both Isaiah and the Rabshakeh condemn.
25. The most audacious claim: YHWH amar elai ('the LORD said to me') — the Rabshakeh claims divine authorization for the Assyrian invasion. This is either a calculated lie, an inference from Assyrian military theology (gods send empires to punish), or an ironic truth — Isaiah 10:5-6 does call Assyria 'the rod of my anger.' The narrator does not confirm or deny the claim. The effect on the audience would be devastating: if their own God has authorized their destruction, resistance is not just futile but impious.

- 26.** The Judahite officials make a desperate diplomatic request: *dabber na Aramit* ('please speak in Aramaic'), the lingua franca of international diplomacy that the common people would not understand. The phrase *ve-al tedabber immanu Yehudit* ('do not speak with us in Judahite') reveals their fear — the Rabshakeh's arguments are reaching the population. Yehudit refers to the Judahite dialect of Hebrew. The officials' request inadvertently confirms that the propaganda is effective.
- 27.** The Rabshakeh refuses to switch languages and escalates with crude siege imagery. The words *chareihem* ('their excrement') and *sheineihem* ('their urine') are either euphemisms or deliberately vulgar terms — the Masoretic margin (Qere) substitutes less offensive readings, suggesting the original text was considered too coarse for public reading. The Rabshakeh's point is clear: continued resistance means siege, and siege means starvation so severe that people consume their own waste. He is addressing the soldiers and civilians on the wall over the heads of the diplomats.
- 28.** The Rabshakeh responds to the request for Aramaic by speaking even more loudly in Hebrew. The phrase *beqol gadol Yehudit* ('in a loud voice, in Judahite') is deliberately defiant. The formula *shim'u devar hammelekh haggadol* ('hear the word of the great king') mimics the prophetic call *shim'u devar YHWH* ('hear the word of the LORD'). The Assyrian king's word is being presented as a rival to divine speech.
- 29.** The verb *yashshi* ('let him deceive, let him mislead') from *nasha* ('to deceive, to beguile') directly attacks Hezekiah's credibility. The king's name is used without title — a deliberate demotion. The phrase *lo yukhal lehatstil etkhem miyyado* ('he cannot deliver you from his hand') uses the same rescue language (*natsal*) that the covenant reserves for God's action. The Rabshakeh is telling the people: your king cannot play the role your God is supposed to play.
- 30.** Now the Rabshakeh directly attacks divine trust: *al yavteach etkhem Chizkiyahu el YHWH* ('do not let Hezekiah cause you to trust in the LORD'). The infinitive absolute construction *hatsel yatssilenu* ('he will certainly rescue us') quotes what Hezekiah presumably says to his people. The Rabshakeh is trying to separate the population from both their king and their God simultaneously — the twin pillars of Judahite identity.
- 31.** The verb *asu itti verakhah* ('make with me a blessing/peace') can mean 'make a peace agreement' or 'submit and receive my favor.' The idyllic promise — *ish gafno ve-ish te'enato* ('each man his vine, each man his fig tree') — deliberately quotes the messianic peace of 1 Kings 4:25 and Micah 4:4. The Rabshakeh is offering Assyrian imperialism dressed in covenant language: surrender and receive the peace that your God promised but has not delivered. The image of drinking from one's own cistern (*mei voro*) evokes settled domestic security.
- 32.** The Rabshakeh now promises deportation as paradise: a land *kedartsekem* ('like your land') described with the vocabulary of covenant blessing — *dagan* ('grain'), *tirosh* ('new wine'), *lechem* ('bread'), *keramim* ('vineyards'), *zeit yitshar* ('olive oil'), *devash* ('honey'). This is a distorted echo of Deuteronomy 8:8's description of the promised land. The phrase *vichiyu velo tamutu* ('and live and do not die') echoes Deuteronomy 30:19: 'choose life.' The Rabshakeh is offering an Assyrian version of the covenant choice — but life through surrender rather than life through obedience.
- 33.** The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no.' The infinitive absolute *hahatsel hitssilu* ('did they actually rescue?') emphasizes the totality of divine failure across every conquered nation. The Rabshakeh's argument presupposes that all gods are territorial and limited — what held for the gods of Hamath and Arpad must hold for the God of Jerusalem. He does not yet understand that he is dealing with a categorically different deity.
- 34.** The Rabshakeh lists conquered cities whose gods failed to protect them: Hamath and Arpad in Syria, Sepharvaim (possibly Sippar in Mesopotamia), Hena and Ivvah (locations uncertain). The climactic question *ki hitssilu et Shomeron miyyadi* ('did they rescue Samaria from my hand?') brings the argument home — Samaria, the northern Israelite capital, whose God is the same God Judah claims. If YHWH could not save Samaria, why would he save Jerusalem? The Rabshakeh's fatal error is treating YHWH as one deity among many — but the fall of Samaria gives his argument empirical force.
- 35.** The speech's climax: *mi bekhol elohei ha-aratsot* ('who among all the gods of the lands?') places YHWH in a lineup of defeated deities. The final question — *ki yatssil YHWH et Yerushalayim miyyadi* ('that the LORD should rescue Jerusalem from my hand?') — is the Rabshakeh's fatal theological overreach. He names YHWH directly and challenges him personally. In the narrative logic of Kings, this is no longer propaganda but blasphemy — and blasphemy invites divine response.
- 36.** The silence of the people — *vehechrishu ha'am* ('the people were silent') — is both discipline and dignity. The verb *chareshe* ('to be silent, to be deaf') can imply either unable to respond or choosing not to. Hezekiah's command *lo ta'anuhu* ('do not answer him') prevents the Rabshakeh from engaging in dialogue with the population, which is exactly what he wanted. The silence denies him a debating partner and preserves Hezekiah's authority over the response.
- 37.** The three officials return with *qeru'ei vegadim* ('their garments torn') — the physical sign of grief and distress. Tearing garments indicates they understood the speech as a crisis, not merely a negotiation. They relay *divrei Rav Shaqeh* ('the words of the Rabshakeh') to Hezekiah, setting up the king's response in chapter 19. The torn garments prepare the reader for Hezekiah's own grief and his turn to God rather than to diplomacy.

19

Summary: *Hezekiah tears his garments, puts on sackcloth, and enters the Temple. He sends officials to the prophet Isaiah with an urgent plea. Isaiah responds with a word from the LORD: do not fear the Rabshakeh's words; the Assyrian king will hear a rumor and return to his own land, where he will fall by the sword. Meanwhile, Sennacherib sends a letter to Hezekiah repeating his threats — no god has saved any nation from Assyria, and the God of Jerusalem will be no different. Hezekiah spreads the letter before the LORD in the Temple and prays one of the great prayers of the Hebrew Bible: he affirms that the LORD alone is God of all kingdoms, acknowledges that Assyria has indeed destroyed nations and their gods, and asks God to save Jerusalem so that all kingdoms will know that the LORD alone is God. Isaiah sends a second oracle — a poetic masterpiece — declaring that Assyria has raged against the Holy One of Israel, but God controls the rise and fall of empires. A sign is given: for two years Judah will eat what grows on its own, and in the third year they will plant and harvest normally. That night, the angel of the LORD strikes down 185,000 in the Assyrian camp. Sennacherib withdraws to Nineveh and is eventually assassinated by his own sons.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of the most important theological speeches in Kings: Hezekiah's prayer and the LORD's response through Isaiah. Hezekiah's prayer (vv. 15-19) is a model of covenant theology under pressure — he does not deny the Rabshakeh's facts (Assyria has destroyed nations), but he reframes the theological category (those were not gods; the LORD is). The Isaiah oracle (vv. 21-34) is one of the most sophisticated pieces of Hebrew poetry in the prophetic corpus, shifting between mockery of Assyrian arrogance, affirmation of divine sovereignty over history, and specific promise of Jerusalem's preservation. The destruction of the Assyrian army (v. 35) is narrated in a single verse — the narrator gives more space to the theological argument than to the military miracle, because the argument is the point. God does not save Jerusalem because of its walls or Hezekiah's diplomacy but because of his own name and his covenant with David.*

Translation Friction: *The number 185,000 killed (v. 35) has generated extensive discussion. Some read it literally as divine intervention; others propose a plague (Herodotus records a story of mice destroying Sennacherib's army's bowstrings, possibly reflecting a plague narrative); still others suggest it is a stylized number. The Hebrew text simply states vayyakkeh bemachaneh Ashshur ('he struck in the camp of Assyria') — the mechanism is not specified, only the agent (mal'akh YHWH, 'the angel/messenger of the LORD'). We render the text as given. The relationship between Sennacherib's assassination (v. 37) and historical records is confirmed: Esarhaddon did succeed him after a dynastic crisis, though Assyrian records name only one assassin. The Isaiah oracle's poetry (vv. 21-28) presents translation challenges with its dense metaphorical language and shifts between addressees.*

Connections: *Hezekiah's response to crisis — entering the Temple, sending to a prophet — is the inverse of Ahaz's response (seeking Assyria rather than God). The phrase qedosh Yisrael ('the Holy One of Israel,' v. 22) is Isaiah's distinctive title for God, appearing over 25 times in his prophecy and rarely elsewhere — its use here marks the oracle as authentically Isaianic. The angel of the LORD striking the camp (v. 35) echoes the Passover narrative: the same destroying agent who struck Egypt now strikes Assyria. The sign of two years of wild growth followed by normal agriculture (vv. 29-31) recalls the Sabbath and Jubilee agricultural cycles of Leviticus 25 — the land itself will testify to divine control of time. Sennacherib's assassination before his god Nisroch (v. 37) creates a final irony: the king who mocked other gods as unable to save is killed in the temple of his own god, who also cannot save him.*

¹When King Hezekiah heard this, he tore his garments, wrapped himself in sackcloth, and went into the house of the LORD. ²He sent Eliakim, who was in charge of the palace, Shebna the secretary, and the senior priests — all wearing sackcloth — to the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. ³They told him, "This is what Hezekiah says: This is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace. Children have reached the point of birth, but there is no strength to deliver them. ⁴Perhaps the LORD your God will hear all the words of the Rabshakeh, whom his master the king of Assyria sent to mock the living God, and will rebuke the words the LORD your God has heard. Lift up a prayer for the remnant that survives." ⁵When King Hezekiah's servants came to Isaiah, ⁶Isaiah said to them, "Tell your master: This is what the LORD says — Do not be afraid of the words you have heard, with

which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed me. ⁷I am about to put a spirit in him so that when he hears a report, he will return to his own land. And I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land." ⁸The Rabshakeh returned and found the king of Assyria fighting against Libnah, because he had heard that Sennacherib had moved on from Lachish. ⁹Then Sennacherib heard a report about Tirhakah king of Cush: "He has set out to fight against you." So he sent messengers again to Hezekiah, saying, ¹⁰"Say this to Hezekiah king of Judah: Do not let your God, in whom you trust, deceive you by saying, 'Jerusalem will not be handed over to the king of Assyria.' ¹¹You have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to every land, utterly destroying them. Will you alone be rescued? ¹²Did the gods of the nations rescue them — the ones my predecessors destroyed: Gozan, Haran, Rezeph, and the people of Eden who were in Telsassar? ¹³Where is the king of Hamath? The king of Arpad? The king of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah?" ¹⁴Hezekiah took the letter from the hand of the messengers and read it. Then he went up to the house of the LORD and spread it open before the LORD. ¹⁵Hezekiah prayed before the LORD: "O LORD, God of Israel, enthroned above the cherubim — you alone are God over all the kingdoms of the earth. You made the heavens and the earth. ¹⁶Incline your ear, O LORD, and hear. Open your eyes, O LORD, and see. Hear the words of Sennacherib, which he sent to mock the living God. ¹⁷It is true, O LORD — the kings of Assyria have laid waste the nations and their lands. ¹⁸They have thrown their gods into the fire — because they were not gods at all, but only the work of human hands, wood and stone. So of course they destroyed them. ¹⁹Now, O LORD our God, save us from his power, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that you, O LORD, are God alone." ²⁰Isaiah son of Amoz sent a message to Hezekiah: "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: What you prayed to me about Sennacherib king of Assyria — I have heard. ²¹This is the word the LORD has spoken against him: She despises you, she mocks you — Virgin Daughter Zion! She shakes her head behind your back — Daughter Jerusalem! ²²Whom have you mocked and blasphemed? Against whom have you raised your voice and lifted your eyes in arrogance? Against the Holy One of Israel! ²³Through your messengers you have mocked the Lord and said, 'With my many chariots I have scaled the mountain heights, the remotest peaks of Lebanon. I cut down its tallest cedars, its choicest cypresses. I penetrated its farthest lodge, its densest forest. ²⁴I dug wells and drank foreign waters. With the soles of my feet I dried up all the rivers of Egypt.' ²⁵Have you not heard? Long ago I planned it. In ancient times I shaped it. Now I have brought it about — that you should crush fortified cities into heaps of rubble. ²⁶Their inhabitants, shorn of strength, were shattered and shamed. They became like plants of the field, like tender green shoots, like grass on rooftops scorched before it can grow. ²⁷I know your sitting down, your going out, and your coming in — and your raging against me. ²⁸Because your raging against me and your arrogance have reached my ears, I will put my hook in your nose and my bit in your lips, and I will turn you back by the way you came." ²⁹And this will be your sign: This year you will eat what grows on its own. In the second year you will eat what springs from that. But in the third year, sow and reap, plant vineyards and eat their fruit. ³⁰The surviving remnant of the house of Judah will take root downward and bear fruit upward. ³¹For out of Jerusalem a remnant will go forth, and survivors from Mount Zion. The zeal of the LORD of Hosts will accomplish this. ³²Therefore this is what the LORD says about the king of Assyria: He will not enter this city. He will not shoot an arrow here. He will not advance against it with a shield. He will not build a siege ramp against it. ³³By the way he came, he will return. He will not enter this city — declares the LORD. ³⁴I will shield this city and save it — for my own sake and for the sake of my servant David. ³⁵That night the angel of the LORD went out and struck down one hundred eighty-five thousand in the Assyrian camp. When the survivors rose at dawn, there were dead bodies everywhere. ³⁶Sennacherib king of Assyria broke camp, departed, and returned to Nineveh, where he remained. ³⁷While he was worshiping in the temple of his god Nisroch, his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer struck him down with the sword. They escaped to the land of Ararat, and his son Esarhaddon reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Hezekiah's three actions form a sequence: tearing garments (grief and distress), donning sackcloth (mourning and penitence), and entering the Temple (turning to God). The verb *vayyavo beit YHWH* ('he went into the house of the LORD') is the decisive choice — where Ahaz turned to Assyria, Hezekiah turns to God's house. This is the physical expression of the trust (*batach*) that defines his reign.

2. Hezekiah's delegation now includes ziqnei hakkohanim ('the elders of the priests') — not just civil officials but religious leaders. All are mitkassim basaqim ('covered in sackcloth'), indicating national mourning. Isaiah ben Amots ('Isaiah son of Amoz') appears by name for the first time in Kings. He is called hannavi ('the prophet'), his formal title, identifying him as the authoritative voice of God for this crisis.
3. Hezekiah's message uses three words for the crisis: tsarah ('distress, anguish'), tokhechah ('rebuke, correction, punishment'), and ne'atsah ('contempt, disgrace, blasphemy'). The birth metaphor — ba'u vanim ad mashber vekoach ayin leledah ('children have come to the breaking point of birth and there is no strength to deliver') — is devastating. The mashber is the birth stool or the cervical opening; the image is of a woman in the final stage of labor who has no strength to push. The nation is at the crisis point but cannot save itself.
4. The word ulai ('perhaps') reveals genuine uncertainty — Hezekiah does not presume on divine action but hopes for it. The phrase lecharef Elohim chai ('to mock the living God') reframes the Rabshakeh's speech as blasphemy against Elohim chai ('the living God') — a title that distinguishes YHWH from the dead idols of the nations. The request venasata tefillah be'ad hashe'erit hannimtsa'ah ('lift up prayer for the remnant that is found') uses she'erit ('remnant'), the prophetic term for the surviving portion of the people. Jerusalem is the remnant — all else has fallen.
5. A brief transitional verse linking the royal delegation's departure to their arrival at Isaiah's location. The officials are called avdei hammelekh ('servants of the king'), emphasizing they act under royal authority.
6. Isaiah's response opens with koh amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD'), the prophetic messenger formula — the same formula the Rabshakeh used for the Assyrian king. The divine message begins with al tira ('do not fear'), the standard oracle of reassurance in the Hebrew Bible. God identifies the Rabshakeh's words as giddefu oti ('they have blasphemed me') — the Rabshakeh attacked God, not merely Hezekiah, and God takes personal offense. The Assyrian officials are dismissively called na'arei melekh Ashshur ('servants/boys of the king of Assyria') — a deliberate demotion.
7. The prophecy is precise and will be fulfilled: hineni noten bo ruach ('I am putting a spirit in him') — God will manipulate Sennacherib's inner disposition. The word ruach ('spirit, wind, disposition') here means an impulse or inclination that God plants. The shemu'ah ('report, rumor') he will hear is likely news of the Ethiopian/Egyptian advance (v. 9) or internal Assyrian threats. The phrase veshav le-artso ('he will return to his land') predicts withdrawal, and vehippaltiv bacherev be-artso ('I will fell him by the sword in his land') predicts his assassination — fulfilled in v. 37.
8. Libnah (Livnah) was a fortified city in the Judahite lowlands, near Lachish. Sennacherib has moved to a new siege target while the Rabshakeh was at Jerusalem. The campaign continues — the Assyrian war machine does not stop for negotiations.
9. Tirhakah (Tirhaqah) was a Nubian/Cushite pharaoh of Egypt's 25th Dynasty. His advance from the south threatened Sennacherib's flank. Some scholars note that Tirhakah may not yet have been pharaoh in 701 BCE, suggesting either an anachronistic title or a second campaign. The approach of an Egyptian force makes Sennacherib intensify his pressure on Jerusalem — he wants the city before he must turn south.
10. Sennacherib's letter repeats the Rabshakeh's argument but now in writing. The phrase al yashshi'akha Elohekha asher attah boteach bo ('do not let your God in whom you are trusting deceive you') directly targets the trust relationship between Hezekiah and God. The participle boteach ('trusting') is continuous — Sennacherib knows Hezekiah is still trusting, and tries to break that trust.
11. The verb lehacharimam ('to devote them to destruction') uses the root charam — the same word used for Israel's total warfare in Joshua. Sennacherib claims Assyria has applied cherem ('total destruction') to every nation. The rhetorical question ve-attah tinnatsel ('and will you be saved?') implies the obvious answer: no.
12. The list of conquered territories is meant to overwhelm: Gozan in upper Mesopotamia, Haran (Abraham's ancestral city) in northern Syria, Rezech in the Syrian Desert, and benei Eden ('children of Eden,' not the garden but the Aramean state of Bit-Adini) near Telassar. The word avotai ('my fathers/predecessors') refers to previous Assyrian kings, claiming a dynasty of destroyers.
13. The taunting question ayyeh ('where?') repeats the Rabshakeh's earlier challenge (18:34). The kings are gone — erased. The question is rhetorical: they are nowhere, because Assyria destroyed them. The repetition of this list from chapter 18 shows Sennacherib's propaganda is standardized — the same arguments, the same city names, the same challenge to any god who would resist.
14. The verb vayyifrehehu ('he spread it out') is a vivid physical action: Hezekiah unrolls or unfolds the letter and lays it open lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD's face'). He is showing God the letter — not because God needs to read it, but as an act of bringing the crisis directly into God's presence. The gesture is both prayer and protest: 'See what they have written. See what they say about you.' This is prayer as presentation of evidence.
15. The prayer opens with a theological declaration that answers the Rabshakeh's fundamental error. YHWH is yoshev hakeruvim ('enthroned above the cherubim'), a reference to the Ark of the Covenant where God's presence dwelt between the cherubim in the Holy of Holies. The critical claim: attah hu ha-Elohim levaddekha lekhol mamlekhot ha-arets ('you alone are the God of all the kingdoms of the earth'). This is not a territorial deity but the universal sovereign. The phrase attah asita et hashamayim ve-et ha-arets ('you made the heavens and the earth') grounds the claim in creation — a God who made everything cannot be defeated by anything.
16. The prayer uses body-part language for God — hatteh oznekha ('incline your ear'), peqach einekha ('open your eyes') — not as literal anthropomorphism but as the language of intimate plea. The verbs are imperatives: hear, see, hear. Hezekiah wants God to attend to the specific words of Sennacherib's letter. The title Elohim chai ('living God') is repeated from v. 4 — it distinguishes YHWH from the dead gods of the nations and implicitly challenges Sennacherib's comparison.
17. Hezekiah concedes the Rabshakeh's facts: omnam ('truly, indeed') — the Assyrians have destroyed nations. The verb hecherivu ('they devastated, laid waste') does not sugarcoat the military reality. Honest prayer does not require denying reality; it requires reframing it theologically.

18. The theological reframe: *ki lo elohim hemmah* ('because they are not gods'). This is the pivot of the prayer. The Rabshakeh argued: no god has saved anyone, so your God cannot save you either. Hezekiah argues: they were not gods — they were *ma'aseh yedei adam ets va-even* ('the work of human hands, wood and stone'). The argument is not that those gods failed but that they never existed as gods in the first place. Assyria destroyed idols, not deities. The category error is the Rabshakeh's, not Hezekiah's.
19. The prayer reaches its climax with two petitions: *hoshi'enu na miyyado* ('save us now from his hand') and the purpose clause — *veyyed'u kol mamlekhot ha-arets ki attah YHWH Elohim levaddekha* ('so that all kingdoms of the earth will know that you, LORD, are God alone'). Hezekiah's prayer is not merely for survival but for divine self-revelation. Salvation is not an end in itself but a means by which all nations will recognize YHWH's sole divinity. The universalism is striking: the goal is not Judah's vindication but the world's knowledge of God.
20. The divine response begins with *shama'ti* ('I have heard') — answering Hezekiah's plea 'hear' (v. 16). God heard because Hezekiah asked him to hear. The prayer-response pattern confirms the covenant relationship: the God who seemed silent during the Rabshakeh's speech now speaks through his prophet.
21. The Isaiah oracle begins with taunting poetry. The personification of Jerusalem as *betulat bat Tsiyyon* ('Virgin Daughter Zion') turns the tables completely: the mighty Assyrian king is mocked by a young woman. The word *bazah* ('she despises, she scorns') is the verb of contempt. The gesture *rosh heni'ah* ('she shakes her head') is dismissive ridicule. The unraveling of Assyrian power begins with God laughing at the pretension.
22. Three rhetorical questions with one devastating answer: *et mi cherafta veggiddafta* ('whom did you mock and blaspheme?'), *al mi harimota qol* ('against whom did you raise your voice?'), and *vattissa marom einekha* ('you lifted your eyes on high'). The answer: *al qedosh Yisrael* ('against the Holy One of Israel'). The title *qedosh Yisrael* appears over twenty-five times in Isaiah and is his most distinctive name for God. *Qadosh* means 'separate, set apart, wholly other' — the Assyrians have challenged the one being in the cosmos they cannot dominate.
23. God quotes Sennacherib's own boasts back to him. The language of conquest is expressed through nature imagery: climbing mountains, cutting cedars, penetrating forests. Lebanon's cedars (*arazav*) were the ancient world's most prized timber — claiming to cut them down is claiming dominion over nature's finest. The phrase *melon qitso* ('the lodge of its limit/end') and *ya'ar karmillo* ('its garden-forest') represent the uttermost reaches of territory. Sennacherib claims there is nowhere he cannot go.
24. Sennacherib's boast continues: he dug wells in foreign lands (*qarti veshatiti mayim zarim*, 'I dug and drank foreign waters') and his marching armies dried up rivers (*achrib bekhafei pe'amai kol ye'orei matsor*, 'I dried up with the sole of my feet all the canals of Egypt'). The word *ye'orei* is the plural of *ye'or*, the Nile — the rivers of matsor ('Egypt' or 'siege'). The boast claims mastery over water itself, the fundamental resource of life. In a region where water means survival, claiming to control it claims to control everything.
25. God's response to Sennacherib's boasting: *halo shamata* ('have you not heard?') — a devastating question. Everything Assyria has accomplished was planned by God *lemerachok* ('from afar, long ago') and formed *liyemei qedem* ('from days of old'). Sennacherib is not a conqueror but an instrument. The verb *yetsartihah* ('I formed it, I shaped it') uses the potter's verb (*yatsar*) — God molded this history like clay. Assyria's victories are not achievements but assignments.
26. The conquered peoples are described with images of fragility: *ehev sadeh* ('plants of the field'), *yereq deshe* ('tender green herb'), *chatsir gaggot* ('roof grass'). Grass growing on flat rooftops in the ancient Near East had no deep soil and withered quickly in the sun. The phrase *ushedemah lifnei qamah* ('scorched/blasted before standing') describes grain destroyed before it reaches maturity. The nations were weak not because Assyria was strong but because God made them weak for his purposes.
27. God claims total surveillance of Sennacherib: *shivtekhah* ('your sitting/dwelling'), *tse'tekha* ('your going out'), *uvo'akha* ('your coming in') — every movement is known. The final phrase *ve-et hitragezekha elai* ('and your raging against me') identifies Sennacherib's real offense: not political ambition but personal rage against God. The verse echoes Psalm 139:2 ('you know my sitting down and my rising up') — the same all-knowing attention, now turned from comfort to judgment.
28. The punishment matches Assyrian practice — Assyrian reliefs show conquered kings led by hooks through their noses or lips. God will do to Sennacherib what Sennacherib does to others: *vesamti chachi be-appekhah umitiggiy bisfatekha* ('I will set my hook in your nose and my bridle in your lips'). The image is of an animal led by a ring. The once-mighty conqueror becomes a led beast. The phrase *vahashivotikha baderekh asher bata bah* ('I will return you by the way you came') promises forced withdrawal — the same road in, the same road back.
29. The sign (*ot*) is agricultural: for two years the land will produce only *saphiach* ('aftergrowth, volunteer grain') and *sachish* ('what springs up by itself') — crops from ungathered seed of the previous harvest. The disruption of normal agriculture reflects the Assyrian invasion's damage. But in the third year — *zir'u veqitsru* ('sow and reap') — normal life resumes. The sign confirms divine control over the agricultural calendar, the most basic human concern. Vineyards take years to mature, so 'plant vineyards and eat their fruit' promises long-term stability.
30. The agricultural metaphor extends to the people: *peleitatat beit Yehudah hannish'arah* ('the escaped remnant of the house of Judah that remains') will function like a replanted tree — *shoresh lemattah* ('root downward') and *asah peri lema'lah* ('bear fruit upward'). The image reverses exile: instead of being uprooted and deported (as happened to Israel), Judah will be rooted deeper. The word *peleitah* ('escaped remnant, survivors') and *nish'arah* ('remaining') acknowledge the devastating losses while promising recovery.
31. The promise is sourced: *qin'at YHWH tseva'ot ta'aseh zot* ('the zeal of the LORD of Hosts will accomplish this'). The word *qin'ah* ('zeal, jealousy, passionate commitment') is the divine attribute that refuses to share Israel with other gods and refuses to abandon Israel to other powers. YHWH *Tseva'ot* ('the LORD of Hosts/Armies') is the divine warrior title — the God who commands heavenly armies acts out of covenant jealousy.

32. Four negations describe what Sennacherib will not do to Jerusalem: *lo yavo* ('he will not enter'), *lo yoreh sham chets* ('he will not shoot an arrow there'), *lo yeqaddemenah magen* ('he will not confront it with a shield'), *lo yishpokh aleha solelah* ('he will not pour out against it a ramp'). Each item represents a stage of ancient siege warfare: entry, missile fire, close combat, and ramp-building. God forbids the entire sequence. The city will be untouched — not because its walls are strong but because God's word forbids the assault.
33. The oracle concludes with *ne'um YHWH* ('oracle of the LORD'), the prophetic seal of authority. The promise *badderekh asher ba bah yashuv* ('by the road he came he will return') is a forced retreat — the same road, reversed. The repetition of *lo yavo* ('he will not enter') is emphatic. The city's safety is guaranteed by divine speech, not military calculation.
34. Two motivations for Jerusalem's deliverance: *lema'ani* ('for my own sake') and *ulma'an David avdi* ('for the sake of David my servant'). God acts for his own reputation — the name that Sennacherib blasphemed must be vindicated — and for the Davidic covenant. The phrase *David avdi* ('David my servant') invokes 2 Samuel 7 and the unconditional promise to David's house. Jerusalem is saved not because of Hezekiah's merit or Judah's righteousness but because of God's name and God's promise to David.
35. The destruction occurs *ballailah hahu* ('that very night') — the theological argument has been made; now the action follows immediately. The *mal'akh YHWH* ('angel/messenger of the LORD') is the agent of divine warfare — the same figure who passed through Egypt on Passover night (Exodus 12:23). The number 185,000 (*me'ah shemonim vachamishah elef*) is staggering. The narrative moves from the theological speeches to a single devastating verse. The phrase *vayyashkimu vaboqer* ('they rose early in the morning') presumably refers to the survivors, who find *vehinne khullam pegarim metim* ('behold, all of them — dead corpses'). The word *pegarim* ('corpses') is a clinical term for dead bodies.
36. Three verbs of retreat: *vayyissa* ('he pulled up stakes, broke camp'), *vayyeelek* ('he went'), *vayyashav* ('he returned'). The mighty Assyrian emperor who sent three officials and a massive army to Jerusalem simply leaves. The phrase *vayyeshev beNineveh* ('he settled in Nineveh') indicates he did not attempt another campaign against Jerusalem. The prophecy of v. 7 ('he will return to his own land') is fulfilled.
37. The final irony: Sennacherib, who mocked the gods of every nation as powerless, is assassinated *beit Nisrokh elohav* ('in the house of Nisroch his god'). His own god's temple cannot protect him. The assassination by his own sons — Adrammelech and Sharezer (Assyrian records confirm the coup) — fulfills Isaiah's prophecy of v. 7: 'I will fell him by the sword in his own land.' They flee to *erets Ararat* ('the land of Ararat,' modern Armenia/eastern Turkey). Esarhaddon (Esar-Chaddon) succeeded in 681 BCE, confirmed by Assyrian records. The man who challenged the living God dies in the house of a dead one.

20

Summary: *Hezekiah falls ill and is told by Isaiah that he will die. The king turns his face to the wall and prays, weeping bitterly. Before Isaiah has left the middle courtyard, God sends him back with a new word: Hezekiah will be healed, will go up to the Temple in three days, and will receive fifteen additional years of life. God will also defend Jerusalem for his own sake and for David's sake. Isaiah prescribes a fig poultice for the boil, and Hezekiah is healed. As confirmation, God causes the shadow on Ahaz's stairway to retreat ten steps. Later, Merodach-baladan king of Babylon sends envoys with letters and a gift to congratulate Hezekiah on his recovery. Hezekiah shows them everything in his treasury — silver, gold, spices, fine oil, his armory, and all his storehouses. Isaiah asks what they saw, and Hezekiah admits: everything. Isaiah delivers a devastating prophecy: the day will come when everything in the palace will be carried to Babylon, and some of Hezekiah's own descendants will serve as eunuchs in the Babylonian palace. Hezekiah's response is ambiguous: he accepts the word as good because there will be peace in his lifetime.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains Hezekiah's greatest moment of faith (the prayer for healing) and his most troubling moment of failure (the Babylonian audience). The two episodes are linked by the theme of what you do when death — personal or national — stands at the door. Facing his own death, Hezekiah prays with passionate intimacy and God responds with extraordinary mercy: not just healing but a specific number of added years. Facing the Babylonian envoys, Hezekiah shows them everything — a display of wealth that functions as either pride, political alliance-building, or both. The narrator does not explain Hezekiah's motive; he lets the reader see the action and hear Isaiah's response. Hezekiah's final words — 'Is it not good, if there will be peace and stability in my days?' — have been read as either humble acceptance of God's word or selfish relief that the catastrophe will fall on future generations. The Hebrew supports both readings, and the narrator's silence is the judgment.*

Translation Friction: The sign of the shadow retreating ten steps on the ma'alot Achaz ('the steps/degrees of Ahaz,' v. 11) is one of the most debated passages in Kings. The word ma'alot can mean 'steps' (a physical staircase), 'degrees' (marks on a sundial), or 'ascents.' If it is a staircase, the shadow moving backward would be a visible astronomical miracle. If it is some kind of time-marking device, the phenomenon is equally extraordinary. We render ma'alot as 'steps' and note the ambiguity. The timing of the Babylonian embassy is disputed — Merodach-baladan (Marduk-apla-iddina II) was active in 721-710 and briefly in 703 BCE, which may place this episode before the Sennacherib invasion rather than after it. The chronological arrangement in Kings may be thematic rather than strictly sequential. Hezekiah's final response (v. 19) is rendered to preserve the ambiguity of the Hebrew rather than resolving it in either a positive or negative direction.

Connections: Hezekiah's prayer echoes Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 2) and David's prayers in the Psalms — the pattern of turning to God in extremity and being heard. The fig poultice (develat te'enim, v. 7) is a known ancient medical treatment but here is prescribed by the prophet, making it both medicine and sign. The shadow retreating on Ahaz's steps creates an ironic link to Hezekiah's father: the stairway Ahaz built now serves as the instrument of a divine sign for the son who reversed his father's policies. The Babylonian embassy introduces the power that will eventually destroy Jerusalem — Babylon's interest in Judah begins with Hezekiah's illness and ends with Nebuchadnezzar's siege. Isaiah's prophecy of Babylonian exile (vv. 17-18) is the first explicit mention in Kings of Babylon as Judah's future conqueror, pivoting the book's attention from the Assyrian crisis to the Babylonian threat that will dominate the remaining chapters.

¹In those days Hezekiah became deathly ill. The prophet Isaiah son of Amoz came to him and said, "This is what the LORD says: Set your house in order, because you are going to die — you will not recover." ²He turned his face to the wall and prayed to the LORD: ³"Please, O LORD, remember how I have walked before you in faithfulness and with a whole heart, and have done what is good in your eyes." And Hezekiah wept bitterly. ⁴Before Isaiah had left the middle courtyard, the word of the LORD came to him: ⁵"Go back and tell Hezekiah, the leader of my people: This is what the LORD, the God of your ancestor David, says — I have heard your prayer. I have seen your tears. I am going to heal you. On the third day you will go up to the house of the LORD. ⁶I will add fifteen years to your life. I will rescue you and this city from the power of the king of Assyria. I will shield this city for my own sake and for the sake of my servant David." ⁷Isaiah said, "Get a cake of pressed figs." They brought one and applied it to the boil, and he recovered. ⁸Hezekiah asked Isaiah, "What is the sign that the LORD will heal me and that I will go up to the house of the LORD on the third day?" ⁹Isaiah said, "This is the sign from the LORD that the LORD will do what he has promised: Shall the shadow advance ten steps, or shall it go back ten steps?" ¹⁰Hezekiah answered, "It would be easy for the shadow to advance ten steps. No — let the shadow go back ten steps." ¹¹Isaiah the prophet called out to the LORD, and he brought the shadow back the ten steps it had descended on the stairway of Ahaz. ¹²At that time Merodach-baladan son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a gift to Hezekiah, because he had heard that Hezekiah had been ill. ¹³Hezekiah welcomed them and showed them his entire treasure house — the silver, the gold, the spices, the fine oil, his armory, and everything found in his storehouses. There was nothing in his palace or in his entire realm that Hezekiah did not show them. ¹⁴Then Isaiah the prophet came to King Hezekiah and asked him, "What did these men say? Where did they come from?" Hezekiah answered, "They came from a distant land — from Babylon." ¹⁵Isaiah asked, "What did they see in your palace?" Hezekiah answered, "They saw everything in my palace. There is nothing in my storehouses that I did not show them." ¹⁶Isaiah said to Hezekiah, "Hear the word of the LORD: ¹⁷The days are coming when everything in your palace — everything your ancestors stored up until this day — will be carried off to Babylon. Nothing will be left, says the LORD. ¹⁸Some of your own descendants — your own offspring — will be taken away and will serve as officials in the palace of the king of Babylon." ¹⁹Hezekiah said to Isaiah, "The word of the LORD that you have spoken is good." Then he added, "At least there will be peace and stability in my lifetime." ²⁰The rest of the acts of Hezekiah, all his accomplishments, and how he constructed the pool and the tunnel and brought water into the city — are they not written in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²¹Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and his son Manasseh reigned in his place.

1. The phrase *chalah Chizkiyahu lamut* ('Hezekiah was sick to death') indicates a terminal illness. Isaiah's prophetic message is blunt: *tsav leveitikha* ('command/set in order your house') — settle your affairs, arrange succession. The declaration *met attah velo tichyeh* ('dying are you and you will not live') is an emphatic double statement: you are dying, and you will not recover. This is presented as divine decree, not medical opinion — *koh amar YHWH* ('thus says the LORD').
2. The gesture *vayyashev et panav el haqqir* ('he turned his face to the wall') is physically intimate — Hezekiah faces the wall to create privacy, to block out the room, to be alone with God. The verb *hishev* ('to turn') implies deliberate redirection. In his most vulnerable moment, the king who trusted in God turns not to advisors, physicians, or foreign allies but to the wall — and through the wall, to God.
3. The prayer's address — *annah YHWH* ('please, O LORD') — is desperate and tender. The appeal is to covenant faithfulness: *hithalakhti lefanekha be-emet* ('I walked before you in truth/faithfulness') and *uleveav shalem* ('with a whole/complete heart'). The word *emet* ('truth, faithfulness, reliability') and the phrase *levav shalem* ('whole heart') are the standard of covenant loyalty. Hezekiah is not boasting but presenting evidence — the narrator already confirmed these qualities in 18:3-6. The phrase *vayyevk Chizkiyahu bekhi gadol* ('Hezekiah wept with great weeping') reveals raw emotion — the exemplary king faces death and weeps.
4. The speed of God's response is emphasized: *lo yatsa ha-ir hattikhonah* ('he had not yet gone out of the middle court') — Isaiah is still within the palace compound when God reverses the decree. The phrase *udevar YHWH hayah elav* ('the word of the LORD came to him') marks a new prophetic revelation that overturns the previous one. God changes his declared intention in response to prayer — a profound theological statement about the nature of prophecy and divine responsiveness.
5. God addresses Hezekiah as *negid ammi* ('the leader/prince of my people') — a title of intimacy that acknowledges Hezekiah's role. The divine self-identification as *Elohei David avikha* ('the God of David your ancestor') links the healing to the Davidic covenant. Two things God reports perceiving: *shamati et tefillatekha* ('I heard your prayer') and *ra'iti et dim'atekha* ('I saw your tears'). The prayer and the tears both reached God. The healing promise is specific: *bayyom hashelishi ta'aleh beit YHWH* ('on the third day you will go up to the house of the LORD') — three days from deathbed to Temple.
6. The promise has three components: *vehosafti al yamekha chamesh esreh shanah* ('I will add fifteen years to your days') — a precise, generous extension; *umikkaf melek Ashshur atsilekha* ('from the hand of the king of Assyria I will rescue you') — personal deliverance; and *veganoti al ha-ir hazzot* ('I will shield this city') — corporate protection. The motivation repeats 19:34: *lema'ani ulma'an David avdi* ('for my sake and for the sake of David my servant'). The coupling of personal healing with national deliverance connects Hezekiah's body to Jerusalem's fate.
7. The remedy is medical and prophetic simultaneously: *develat te'enim* ('a cake/lump of pressed figs') was a known ancient treatment for skin infections and abscesses. The *shachin* ('boil, ulcer, skin inflammation') is the same word used for the sixth plague in Egypt (Exodus 9:9-11). The cure is ordinary — figs applied to a boil — but the healing is extraordinary, coming with a divine promise of fifteen years. The verb *vayyechi* ('and he lived/recovered') is terse and total.
8. Hezekiah's request for a sign (*ot*) is not faithlessness but standard prophetic protocol — signs confirm the word. His father Ahaz refused a sign (Isaiah 7:12); Hezekiah requests one. The question *mah ot* ('what sign?') assumes a sign will be given and asks what form it will take. The phrase *ve-aliti bayyom hashelishi beit YHWH* ('and I will go up on the third day to the house of the LORD') repeats God's promise, making the sign a confirmation of that specific timeline.
9. Isaiah offers Hezekiah a choice between two miraculous signs involving the *tsel* ('shadow') and *eser ma'alot* ('ten steps/degrees'). The *ma'alot* may be a staircase where the shadow's position serves as a time indicator, or it may refer to marks on a sundial-like device. Either way, the choice is between acceleration (the shadow moving forward) and reversal (the shadow moving backward). The word *ma'alot* connects verbally to the *ma'alot Achaz* ('steps of Ahaz') in v. 11.
10. Hezekiah chooses the harder miracle: *naqel lattsel lintot eser ma'alot* ('it is easy for the shadow to decline ten steps') — the shadow naturally moves forward as the day progresses. The reversal — *yashuv hattsel achorannit* ('let the shadow return backward') — is against nature. Hezekiah wants the sign that is unmistakably supernatural, that could not be explained away as coincidence. This is the choice of a man who has just faced death and wants absolute confirmation.
11. Isaiah mediates: *vayyiqra el YHWH* ('he called out to the LORD') — the prophet prays and God acts. The shadow retreats *bema'alot Achaz* ('on the steps/stairway of Ahaz') — the very structure associated with Hezekiah's faithless father now serves as the instrument of a faith-confirming miracle. The verb *vayyashev* ('he brought back, he returned') uses the same root (*shuv*) as repentance — God 'turned back' the shadow as a sign for a king who 'turned' to him in prayer.
12. The name appears here as *Bero'dakh Bal'adan*, a variant of *Marduk-apla-iddina* (Merodach-baladan in the parallel Isaiah 39:1). He was a Chaldean ruler who seized the Babylonian throne and maintained independence from Assyria in 721-710 and briefly in 703 BCE. His embassy to Hezekiah was almost certainly political rather than humanitarian — he was seeking allies against Assyria. The ostensible reason *ki shama ki chalah Chizkiyahu* ('because he heard that Hezekiah had been sick') is diplomatic cover for anti-Assyrian coalition-building.
13. The verb *vayyishma* ('he listened to/welcomed') indicates receptive hospitality. The phrase *vayyar'em et kol beit nekhoto* ('he showed them his entire treasure house') initiates a catalog of displayed wealth: *kesef* ('silver'), *zahav* ('gold'), *besamim* ('spices'), *shemen hattov* ('fine oil'), *beit kelav* ('his armory/weapon house'). The narrator emphasizes totality twice: *kol asher nimtsa be-otsrotav* ('everything found in his storehouses') and *lo hayah davar asher lo her'am* ('there was nothing he did not show them'). The double negative is emphatic — the display was without reservation. Whether this was foolish pride, diplomatic necessity, or careless enthusiasm, the narrator lets the reader judge.

14. Isaiah's questions are pointed: mah ameru ('what did they say?') and me-ayin yavo'u ('where did they come from?'). The prophet is probing, not asking for information he lacks. Hezekiah's answer — me-erets rechoqah ba'u miBavel ('from a distant land they came, from Babylon') — seems to emphasize the distance with a note of pride: Babylon, far away, sought him out. The word rechoqah ('distant, far away') will gain ominous weight when Isaiah reveals what Babylon will eventually do to everything Hezekiah showed them.
15. Isaiah's question mah ra'u beveitkha ('what did they see in your house?') forces Hezekiah to articulate what he did. The king's answer repeats the totality language: et kol asher beveiti ra'u ('everything in my house they saw'). The repetition from v. 13 in Hezekiah's own words makes him the witness against himself. He is not yet aware that this display has prophetic consequences.
16. The formula shema devar YHWH ('hear the word of the LORD') signals a formal prophetic oracle. This is no longer conversation between prophet and king but a transmission of divine speech. The shift in register prepares for judgment.
17. The prophecy reverses the display: kol asher beveitkha ('everything in your house') — the same 'everything' Hezekiah showed will be taken. The phrase venissa Bavelah ('it will be carried to Babylon') names the destination explicitly. What the Babylonian envoys saw, Babylon will take. The phrase lo yivvater davar ('nothing will remain') is comprehensive — the totality of the display predicts the totality of the loss. The time frame is indefinite — yamim ba'im ('days are coming') — but certain.
18. The prophecy reaches beyond treasure to people: umibanekha asher yets'u mimmekha ('from your sons who will come from you'). The word sarisim can mean 'eunuchs' (castrated court officials) or 'court officials' more broadly. In either reading, Hezekiah's descendants will serve the Babylonian king — the ultimate inversion of royal dignity. The phrase beheikhal melek Bavel ('in the palace of the king of Babylon') specifies servitude in the very court that sent envoys to Hezekiah. This prophecy will be fulfilled in the persons of Daniel and his companions (Daniel 1:1-7), among others.
19. Hezekiah's response is the chapter's most debated utterance. The phrase tov devar YHWH asher dibbarta ('good is the word of the LORD that you spoke') can be read as genuine submission ('the LORD's word is always good') or as self-interested relief. The follow-up — halo im shalom ve-emet yihyeh veyamai ('is it not so that peace and truth/stability will be in my days?') — has been read as humble acceptance (he will not question God's timing), grateful relief (at least the exile will not happen now), or selfish indifference to future generations. The Hebrew preserves all three possibilities. The word emet here means 'stability, permanence, security' rather than 'truth.' The narrator does not comment, which is itself a comment.
20. The standard closing formula includes a specific achievement: et haberekhah ve-et hatte'alah vayyave et hammayim ha-irah ('the pool and the tunnel and he brought the water into the city'). This refers to the Siloam Tunnel (also called Hezekiah's Tunnel), one of the most remarkable engineering projects of the ancient world — a 533-meter underground channel carved through solid rock to bring water from the Gihon Spring to the Pool of Siloam inside the city walls. The tunnel was rediscovered in 1838 and an inscription found inside it (the Siloam Inscription) describes the dramatic moment when the two teams of diggers, working from opposite ends, met in the middle. The project was likely undertaken to secure Jerusalem's water supply against the anticipated Assyrian siege.
21. The death formula vayyishkav Chizkiyyahu im avotav ('Hezekiah lay down with his ancestors') closes the reign of Judah's most trusted king. The transition to Menasheh beno ('Menasheh his son') is ominous for the reader who knows what comes next — Menasheh will be the worst king in Judah's history (ch. 21), undoing everything his father built and committing the sins that will seal Judah's fate for exile. The name Menasheh ('Menasheh,' from nashah, 'to forget') is bitterly appropriate: he will forget everything his father remembered.

21

Summary: *Manasseh son of Hezekiah becomes king of Judah at age twelve and reigns fifty-five years in Jerusalem. He reverses every reform his father made: he rebuilds the high places Hezekiah tore down, erects altars to Baal, makes an Asherah pole as Ahab king of Israel had done, and worships the entire host of heaven. He builds pagan altars inside the Temple of the LORD — the very place where God said he would establish his name forever. He passes his son through fire, practices divination and sorcery, and consults mediums and spiritists. He sets up a carved image of Asherah in the Temple itself. The narrator's verdict is devastating: Manasseh did more evil than the nations the LORD had driven out before Israel. God sends prophets who declare that because of Manasseh's abominations, Jerusalem will suffer the same fate as Samaria — God will stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line of Samaria and the plumb line of the house of Ahab, wiping Jerusalem as one wipes a dish. Manasseh also sheds so much innocent blood that he fills Jerusalem from end to end. The chapter closes with his death and burial, followed by the brief two-year reign of his son Amon, who continues his father's evil ways. Amon's own servants assassinate him, but the people of the land execute the conspirators and place Amon's son Josiah on the throne.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Manasseh's reign presents one of the sharpest theological reversals in the entire Deuteronomistic History. His father Hezekiah received the highest evaluation of any Judean king (18:5), yet Manasseh receives the lowest. The text goes out of its way to compare Manasseh not to previous Judean kings but to Ahab — the worst king of Israel — making the comparison explicit by noting*

that Manasseh 'made an Asherah, as Ahab king of Israel had done' (verse 3). The theological weight of this chapter is enormous: it provides the reason for Jerusalem's eventual destruction. Even Josiah's later reforms cannot undo the sentence pronounced here. The phrase 'I will wipe Jerusalem as one wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down' (verse 13) is one of the most vivid images of divine judgment in the Hebrew Bible — domestic, almost casual, yet total. The fifty-five-year reign is the longest of any king in Judah or Israel, meaning the worst king reigned the longest — a fact the narrator presents without commentary but that sits uncomfortably with any simple doctrine of divine reward and punishment.

Translation Friction: The primary historical difficulty is the relationship between this account and 2 Chronicles 33:10-17, which reports that Manasseh was taken captive to Babylon, repented, prayed, was restored to his throne, and reformed his worship. Kings contains no repentance narrative — the portrait is unrelieved darkness. Scholars debate whether Chronicles preserves an independent tradition or whether the repentance account was developed to explain how a wicked king could reign fifty-five years. The phrase 'he passed his son through fire' (verse 6) is debated: does it mean literal child sacrifice (as in Moabite practice) or a dedicatory ritual? The parallel with 2 Kings 16:3 and the Tophet references in Jeremiah 7:31 suggest actual sacrifice. The shedding of 'very much innocent blood' (verse 16) has generated later traditions identifying Manasseh as the killer of the prophet Isaiah (the Martyrdom of Isaiah), though this is not stated in the biblical text.

Connections: Manasseh's reign directly fulfills the covenant warnings of Deuteronomy 28-29 and Leviticus 26 — the consequences of comprehensive idolatry. The measuring line and plumb line imagery (verse 13) echoes Amos 7:7-8 and Isaiah 34:11, instruments of construction now repurposed for destruction. The comparison with the 'nations the LORD drove out' (verse 2) invokes the entire conquest tradition of Joshua, suggesting that Judah has become indistinguishable from the Canaanites. The phrase 'I will not cause the feet of Israel to wander anymore from the land' (verse 8) echoes 2 Samuel 7:10 (the Davidic covenant), recasting God's promise as conditional. Manasseh's placing an Asherah in the Temple reverses Solomon's dedication (1 Kings 8) and Hezekiah's cleansing (2 Kings 18:4). The 'people of the land' who execute Amon's assassins and install Josiah (verses 23-24) represent the rural Judean landholders who consistently support the Davidic line — they appear also in 11:14-20 (Joash's enthronement) and 23:30 (Jehoahaz's installation).

¹Manasseh was twelve years old when he became king, and he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hephzibah. ²He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, following the detestable practices of the nations that the LORD had driven out before the Israelites. ³He rebuilt the high places that his father Hezekiah had destroyed, erected altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole just as Ahab king of Israel had done, and bowed down to the entire host of heaven and served them. ⁴He built altars in the house of the LORD — the place where the LORD had said, "In Jerusalem I will establish my name." ⁵He built altars for the entire host of heaven in both courtyards of the house of the LORD. ⁶He passed his son through fire, practiced cloud-reading and divination, and established mediums and spiritists. He did much that was evil in the eyes of the LORD, provoking him to anger. ⁷He placed the carved image of Asherah that he had made in the house — the house about which the LORD had said to David and to his son Solomon, "In this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will establish my name forever." ⁸"I will never again cause Israel's feet to wander from the land I gave their ancestors — if only they are careful to do everything I commanded them, the entire instruction that my servant Moses gave them." ⁹But they did not listen. Manasseh led them astray to do more evil than the nations the LORD had destroyed before the Israelites. ¹⁰The LORD spoke through his servants the prophets, saying: ¹¹"Because Manasseh king of Judah has committed these detestable acts — acting more wickedly than everything the Amorites who came before him ever did — and has caused Judah also to sin with his worthless idols, ¹²therefore this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: I am about to bring such disaster on Jerusalem and Judah that the ears of everyone who hears of it will ring. ¹³I will stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used on Samaria and the plumb line used on the house of Ahab. I will wipe Jerusalem clean the way a person wipes a dish — wiping it and turning it upside down." ¹⁴I will abandon the remnant of my inheritance and hand them over to their enemies. They will become plunder and loot for all their enemies, ¹⁵because they have done what is evil in my eyes and have been provoking me from the day their ancestors came out of Egypt until this very day. ¹⁶Manasseh also shed so much innocent blood that he filled Jerusalem from one end to the other — in addition to the

sin by which he caused Judah to sin, doing what was evil in the eyes of the LORD. ¹⁷The rest of the acts of Manasseh — everything he did and the sin he committed — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ¹⁸Manasseh slept with his fathers and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the Garden of Uzza. His son Amon reigned in his place. ¹⁹Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Meshullemeth daughter of Haruz, from Jotbah. ²⁰He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as his father Manasseh had done. ²¹He walked in every way his father had walked, serving the worthless idols his father had served, and bowing down to them. ²²He abandoned the LORD, the God of his ancestors, and did not walk in the way of the LORD. ²³Amon's own officials formed a conspiracy and assassinated the king inside his palace. ²⁴But the people of the land struck down all who had conspired against King Amon, and the people of the land made his son Josiah king in his place. ²⁵The rest of the acts of Amon — what he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²⁶He was buried in his tomb in the Garden of Uzza. His son Josiah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard regnal formula introduces Manasseh with the longest reign in Judean history — fifty-five years (roughly 697-642 BCE, including a co-regency with Hezekiah). His mother's name Cheftsi-vah means 'my delight is in her,' a name Isaiah uses as a prophetic title for restored Jerusalem (Isaiah 62:4). The irony is piercing: the king who will cause Jerusalem's destruction was born to a woman whose name means 'God delights in her.'
2. The standard evaluation formula — va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH ('he did the evil in the eyes of the LORD') — is intensified by the comparison: ke-to'avot ha-goyim ('according to the detestable things of the nations'). The term to'evah ('abomination, detestable thing') is the strongest term of ritual revulsion in Hebrew. The nations in question are the pre-Israelite inhabitants of Canaan, making the charge that Manasseh has returned Judah to the very conditions that justified the conquest.
3. The verse catalogs a comprehensive reversal of Hezekiah's reforms (18:4). The verb va-yashav ('he returned, he turned back') emphasizes deliberate undoing. The comparison ka-asher asah Ach'av melek Yisra'el ('just as Ahab king of Israel had done') is devastating — Manasseh is not merely a bad Judean king but a replica of the worst Israelite king. The 'host of heaven' (tseva ha-shamayim) refers to astral deities — sun, moon, stars, and planets worshiped as gods — an Assyrian religious influence during Manasseh's era of vassal status.
4. The contrast is devastating: God chose this precise location to place his name (asim et shemi), and Manasseh installs pagan altars there. The 'name theology' — God's name dwelling in the Temple rather than God himself — is central to Deuteronomic thought (Deuteronomy 12:5, 1 Kings 8:29). To place foreign altars where God's name dwells is to defile the point of intersection between heaven and earth.
5. The two courtyards — the inner court (the priestly area) and the outer court (the general assembly area) — are both contaminated. The phrase bi-shtei chatsrot beit YHWH ('in the two courtyards of the house of the LORD') means every accessible area of the Temple complex now contains pagan altars. The sacred space has been comprehensively violated.
6. The catalog of forbidden practices covers the full range prohibited in Deuteronomy 18:10-12: he'evir et beno ba-esh ('he made his son pass through the fire') refers to child sacrifice or a dedicatory fire ritual associated with Molech; onen ('cloud-reader, soothsayer') and nichesh ('diviner, one who reads omens') are forms of mantic prophecy; ov ('medium, one who consults the dead') and yid'onim ('spiritists, knowing ones') are necromancers. The final phrase le-hakh'is ('to provoke') attributes intentionality — Manasseh's acts are not merely careless but deliberately provocative.
7. The narrator quotes the divine promise at length to maximize the contrast. The pesel ha-Asherah ('carved image of Asherah') — a cultic representation of the Canaanite mother goddess — is placed inside the very building about which God made his promise to David and Solomon. The word le-olam ('forever') at the end of God's promise echoes painfully: 'forever' is now confronted with Manasseh's idol. The passage compresses 2 Samuel 7:13 and 1 Kings 8:29 into a single citation.
8. The divine promise continues with its devastating conditional: raq im ('only if'). The promise of permanence in the land was never unconditional. The word torah here — ve-le-khol ha-torah asher tsivvah otam avdi Mosheh ('the entire instruction that my servant Moses commanded them') — is the comprehensive body of Mosaic law. Manasseh has violated not one or two commands but the entire covenantal framework.
9. The verb va-yat'em ('he led them astray, he caused them to wander') casts Manasseh as a seducer of the entire nation. The comparative min ha-goyim ('more than the nations') is the most extreme condemnation possible: Judah under Manasseh has surpassed the wickedness of the Canaanites whose abominations forfeited them the land. If the Canaanites lost the land for their sins, and Judah has exceeded those sins, the conclusion is inescapable.
10. The phrase be-yad avadav ha-nevi'im ('by the hand of his servants the prophets') is the standard formula for prophetic mediation. The specific prophets are unnamed — this is a collective prophetic witness. The divine speech that follows (verses 11-15) is one of the most consequential oracle-of-doom passages in the Deuteronomic History.
11. The oracle begins with ya'an asher ('because') — a formal juridical charge. The Amorites (ha-Emori) represent the pre-Israelite population generically. The term gillulim ('idols') is deliberately derogatory, probably derived from a root meaning 'dung pellets' — a contemptuous label for cult objects. The verb va-yachati ('he caused to sin') makes Manasseh responsible not only for his own sin but for the corruption of the entire people.

12. The phrase *tittsalnah shtei oznav* ('both his ears will ring/tingle') describes the physical shock of hearing devastating news — a buzzing or ringing in the ears from the sheer force of the report. The same expression appears in 1 Samuel 3:11 (the oracle against Eli's house) and Jeremiah 19:3 (Jerusalem's doom). It marks the most extreme category of divine judgment.
13. The *qav Shomron* ('line of Samaria') and *mishqolet beit Ach'av* ('plumb line of the house of Ahab') establish exact parallels between the fate of the northern kingdom and the coming fate of Judah. The dish-wiping image — *machah ve-hafakh al paneha* ('wipe and turn over on its face') — is unique to this passage and is one of the most memorable metaphors in the prophetic literature. The verb *machah* also means 'to blot out' (as in Genesis 6:7, the flood narrative), adding a further layer of total erasure.
14. The word *she'erit* ('remnant') is loaded: after the northern kingdom's fall, Judah is the remnant of God's *nachalah* ('inheritance, portion'). Now even this remnant will be abandoned (*natash*). The terms *baz* ('plunder') and *meshissah* ('spoil, loot') reduce God's chosen people to war booty. The theological weight is immense: God himself will hand over his own inheritance to hostile powers.
15. The divine accusation reaches back to the exodus itself: *min ha-yom asher yats'u avotam mi-Mitsrayim* ('from the day their ancestors left Egypt'). The entire history from exodus to Manasseh is framed as continuous provocation. The verb *makh'isim* ('provoking, angering') is a participle, indicating ongoing, habitual action — not a single act of rebellion but a sustained pattern stretching across centuries.
16. The phrase *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') — blood shed without just cause — is one of the gravest charges in biblical law (Deuteronomy 19:10, 13). The spatial image *peh la-peh* ('mouth to mouth,' meaning 'from one end to the other') portrays Jerusalem overflowing with unjustly shed blood. Later tradition (reflected in the Talmud and the Ascension of Isaiah) identified the prophet Isaiah as one of Manasseh's victims, though the biblical text does not name specific victims.
17. The standard source citation for Judean kings: *Sefer Divrei ha-Yamim le-Malkhei Yehudah* ('the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah'). The phrase *ve-chattato asher chata* ('and his sin that he sinned') is a sharp addition to the usual formula, ensuring the reader understands this reign's legacy is defined by transgression.
18. Manasseh is not buried in the royal tombs (the 'City of David' burial site used by most Judean kings) but in *gan beito be-gan Uzza* ('the garden of his house, in the Garden of Uzza') — a private garden burial. Whether this reflects disgrace or personal preference is debated. The Garden of Uzza may have been a family estate near the palace. The peaceful death of such a wicked king — he is not assassinated or punished during his lifetime — is a theological puzzle the narrator does not address.
19. The regnal formula for Amon is notably brief, befitting his short reign. His mother *Meshullemeth* ('the rewarded one' or 'the completed one') was from Jotbah, a town whose location is uncertain — possibly in Galilee or in Judah. The two-year reign (roughly 642-640 BCE) ended in assassination.
20. The evaluation formula is identical to the standard negative verdict, with the addition *ka-asher asah Menasheh aviv* ('just as his father Manasseh had done'). Amon is defined entirely by his father's pattern — he has no independent theological identity in this narrative.
21. The threefold repetition of 'his father' (*aviv*) in a single verse hammers the point: Amon is nothing more than a continuation of Manasseh. The *gillulim* ('worthless idols, dung-pellets') are the same objects Manasseh installed. The 'way' (*derekh*) metaphor — walking in the father's path — is central to Deuteronomistic theology, where life is a road and the king chooses which direction to travel.
22. The verb *va-ya'azov* ('he abandoned') is the covenant-breach term — the opposite of the Deuteronomistic command to 'hold fast' (*davaq*) to the LORD. The phrase *Elohei avotav* ('the God of his ancestors') reminds the reader that Amon has a heritage of faithfulness (through David, Hezekiah) that he has rejected. The irony of *derekh YHWH* ('the way of the LORD') alongside the 'way of his father' in verse 21 sets the two paths in stark opposition.
23. The verb *va-yiqsheru* ('they conspired') is the standard term for palace coups (used of Zimri in 1 Kings 16:9, Jehu in 2 Kings 9:14, and others). The murder *be-veito* ('in his house') — in the royal residence — indicates an inside job by palace officials. The conspirators' motives are not stated: political, personal, or religious motivations are all possible.
24. The *am ha-arets* ('people of the land') — the rural Judean landholding class — intervene to execute the conspirators and ensure Davidic succession. This group consistently supports the legitimate dynasty (see 11:14-20 for the Joash precedent). Their action simultaneously punishes regicide and installs the boy who will become Judah's greatest reformer. The name *Yoshiyahu* ('Josiah,' meaning 'the LORD supports' or 'the LORD heals') will prove prophetically fitting.
25. The standard source citation. For a king who reigned only two years, the formula feels almost generous — there were hardly enough 'acts' to fill a chronicle. The brevity of his record contrasts with his father's fifty-five-year catalog of evil.
26. Amon is buried in the same Garden of Uzza as his father Manasseh — the private garden burial rather than the royal tombs in the City of David. The final phrase *va-yimlokh Yoshiyahu veno tachtav* ('and Josiah his son reigned in his place') closes one of the darkest chapters in Judean history and opens the door to the greatest reform. The narrative hinge from Manasseh/Amon to Josiah is one of the most dramatic reversals in the Deuteronomistic History.

22

Summary: *Josiah becomes king of Judah at eight years old and reigns thirty-one years in Jerusalem. He receives the highest evaluation alongside Hezekiah: he did right in the eyes of the LORD and walked in the way of David, turning neither to the right nor to the left. In his eighteenth year, Josiah sends his secretary Shaphan to the Temple to oversee the distribution of silver collected for repairs. Hilkiah the high priest tells Shaphan he has found 'the Book of the Law' in the house of the LORD. Shaphan reads it aloud to the king. When Josiah hears the words, he tears his robes in anguish, recognizing that the nation's ancestors have not obeyed what is written in this scroll and that divine wrath must be great. He sends a delegation — Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam, Achbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah — to inquire of the LORD on behalf of the nation. They go to Huldah the prophetess, wife of Shallum the keeper of the wardrobe, who lives in the Second Quarter of Jerusalem. Huldah delivers a devastating two-part oracle: first, the LORD will indeed bring disaster on Jerusalem and its inhabitants, fulfilling every curse written in the scroll, because they have abandoned the LORD and burned incense to other gods; second, because Josiah's heart was tender and he humbled himself before the LORD when he heard the words against this place, and because he tore his robes and wept, he will be gathered to his grave in peace and will not see the coming disaster.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The discovery of sefer ha-torah ('the Book of the Law') in the Temple is one of the most consequential moments in biblical history. The text implies that the scroll had been lost — not hidden, not stored, but genuinely lost in the Temple during the decades of Manasseh's and Amon's neglect. The sacred text of the covenant had literally disappeared inside the very building dedicated to the God who gave it. Josiah's visceral response — tearing his robes — shows a king encountering divine demands for the first time and recognizing instantly the catastrophic gap between what God requires and what the nation has been doing. The choice of Huldah as the prophetic authority is remarkable: Jeremiah and Zephaniah were both active during Josiah's reign, yet the delegation consults a woman. The text presents this without apology or explanation — Huldah is simply the prophet the LORD has authorized for this moment. Her oracle is unflinching: the disaster is certain and cannot be averted. Josiah's personal reprieve — he will die before the catastrophe — is simultaneously a mercy and a confirmation that Jerusalem's doom is sealed.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of the discovered scroll is one of the most debated questions in biblical scholarship. Since W.M.L. de Wette (1805), most scholars have identified it with some form of Deuteronomy (or at least its core), based on the correspondence between Josiah's subsequent reforms (chapter 23) and Deuteronomistic law — centralization of worship, destruction of high places, celebration of Passover. Others argue it was the entire Pentateuch or a different legal collection. The circumstances of the 'discovery' have raised suspicions: was the scroll planted by the priestly party to motivate reform? The text gives no hint of this — it presents the discovery as genuine. Huldah's promise that Josiah will be 'gathered to your grave in peace' (verse 20) creates a difficulty, since Josiah dies in battle at Megiddo (23:29). Various solutions have been proposed: 'in peace' refers to the absence of the Babylonian catastrophe during his lifetime; or the oracle is an authentic prophecy that was not fulfilled in every detail; or the battle of Megiddo was understood as a peaceful death compared to the horrors that followed.*

Connections: *The discovery of the scroll connects to the entire Deuteronomistic tradition — the book found is the book that frames the Deuteronomistic History. The scene of a king hearing the law read aloud and responding with repentance echoes the covenant renewal at Sinai (Exodus 24) and anticipates Ezra's public reading of the Torah (Nehemiah 8). Josiah's tearing of robes recalls David's responses to covenant violation (2 Samuel 1:11, 3:31). Huldah's oracle that the curses 'written in this scroll' will be fulfilled connects directly to Deuteronomy 28-29, the covenant curses that describe exile, destruction, and scattering. The 'tender heart' (rakh levav) of Josiah contrasts with the 'hardened heart' of Pharaoh (Exodus 7-14) — the one who softens before God's word receives mercy. The phrase 'you will be gathered to your grave' echoes the patriarchal death formula and the promise that the righteous will not see the coming judgment (Isaiah 57:1).*

¹Josiah was eight years old when he became king, and he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jedidah daughter of Adaiah, from Bozkath. ²He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD and walked in the entire way of

his ancestor David, turning neither to the right nor to the left. ³In the eighteenth year of King Josiah, the king sent Shaphan son of Azaliah son of Meshullam, the royal secretary, to the house of the LORD with these instructions: ⁴"Go up to Hilkiah the high priest and have him total the silver that has been brought into the house of the LORD — the silver the doorkeepers have collected from the people. ⁵Let them hand it over to the work supervisors appointed over the house of the LORD, and let those supervisors pay the workers repairing the house of the LORD — the damage to the building: ⁶to the carpenters, builders, and masons, and to purchase timber and cut stone for repairing the building." ⁷No accounting was required of them for the silver entrusted to them, because they worked with complete integrity. ⁸Then Hilkiah the high priest said to Shaphan the secretary, "I have found the Book of the Law in the house of the LORD." Hilkiah gave the scroll to Shaphan, and he read it. ⁹Shaphan the secretary came to the king and reported: "Your servants have melted down the silver found in the Temple and handed it over to the work supervisors appointed at the house of the LORD." ¹⁰Then Shaphan the secretary informed the king, "Hilkiah the priest has given me a scroll." And Shaphan read it aloud before the king. ¹¹When the king heard the words of the Book of the Law, he tore his robes. ¹²The king gave orders to Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Achbor son of Micaiah, Shaphan the secretary, and Asaiah the king's attendant: ¹³"Go, inquire of the LORD for me, for the people, and for all Judah concerning the words of this scroll that has been found. The wrath of the LORD that burns against us must be great, because our ancestors did not listen to the words of this scroll or do everything written in it concerning us." ¹⁴Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam, Achbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tikvah son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe. She lived in Jerusalem in the Second Quarter. They spoke with her. ¹⁵She said to them, "This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: Tell the man who sent you to me, ¹⁶This is what the LORD says: I am about to bring disaster on this place and on its inhabitants — every word of the scroll that the king of Judah has read. ¹⁷Because they have abandoned me and burned incense to other gods, provoking me with everything their hands have made, my wrath has been kindled against this place and will not be quenched." ¹⁸But to the king of Judah who sent you to inquire of the LORD, say this to him: This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says concerning the words you have heard: ¹⁹Because your heart was tender and you humbled yourself before the LORD when you heard what I declared against this place and its inhabitants — that they would become a desolation and a curse — and because you tore your robes and wept before me, I too have heard you, declares the LORD. ²⁰Therefore I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be laid in your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see any of the disaster I am about to bring on this place." They brought the king this answer.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal formula introduces Josiah at age eight — a child king, the youngest since Joash (12:1). His mother's name Yedidah ('beloved') echoes the name Yediyah ('beloved of the LORD'), the name the prophet Nathan gave to Solomon (2 Samuel 12:25). Bozkath was a town in the lowland region of Judah (Joshua 15:39). The thirty-one-year reign (roughly 640-609 BCE) spans the decline of Assyrian power and the rise of Babylon.
2. The evaluation formula is maximally positive. The phrase *be-khol derekh David aviv* ('in all the way of David his father') makes David the standard — not Solomon, not Hezekiah, but the dynastic founder. The phrase *lo sar yamin u-semol* ('he did not turn right or left') echoes Deuteronomy 5:32 and 17:20, the instruction for the ideal king. After the darkness of Manasseh and Amon, the narrator's verdict on Josiah is a shaft of light.
3. The eighteenth year of Josiah's reign (roughly 622 BCE) is the pivotal date in the Deuteronomistic History. Shaphan the *sofer* ('scribe, secretary') belongs to a distinguished family: his descendants Ahikam, Gedaliah, and Gemariah appear prominently in Jeremiah's narrative as supporters of the prophet. The three-generation genealogy (Shaphan ben Atsalyahu ben Meshullam) signals aristocratic standing.
4. *Chilqiyahu ha-kohen ha-gadol* ('Hilkiah the high priest') is the senior religious official. The silver collection system — with *shomrei ha-saf* ('keepers of the threshold, doorkeepers') collecting from worshipers — mirrors the arrangement established under Joash (12:10-16). The verb *yattem* ('let him complete the reckoning, let him total') indicates financial accounting.
5. The administrative chain is clear: silver flows from people to doorkeepers to high priest to supervisors (*ha-mufqadim*, 'the appointed ones') to the actual workers (*osei ha-melakhah*). The phrase *le-chazeq bedeq ha-bayit* ('to strengthen the breach of the house') is the same technical term for Temple repair used in the Joash narrative (12:6-13). The Temple apparently needed significant structural work after decades of neglect under Manasseh and Amon.
6. Three categories of craftsmen: *charashim* ('carpenters, woodworkers'), *bonim* ('builders, construction workers'), and *godrim* ('masons, wall builders'). The materials — *etsim* ('timber') and *avnei machtsav* ('quarried stones, hewn stones') — indicate major structural repair, not cosmetic maintenance.

7. The phrase *ki ve-emunah hem osim* ('because they are acting in faithfulness/integrity') is a remarkable trust statement. The word *emunah* ('faithfulness, reliability, trustworthiness') is from the root *aman*, the same root as 'amen.' The supervisors are so trustworthy that auditing is unnecessary — a detail that echoes the identical statement about Joash's Temple repair workers (12:16) and establishes a pattern of honesty in Temple administration.
8. The *sefer ha-torah* ('Book of the Law/Instruction') is widely identified with some form of Deuteronomy, based on the reforms that follow in chapter 23. The verb *matsa* ('to find') is used in its straightforward sense of discovery. Hilkiah's matter-of-fact announcement — embedded in a financial report — gives the discovery an almost casual quality that heightens its drama. The greatest theological event of the seventh century BCE is reported as an incidental finding during a building renovation.
9. Shaphan delivers the financial report first — *hittikhu avadekha et ha-kesef* ('your servants have poured out/melted down the silver'). The verb *hittikhu* (from *natak*, 'to pour, melt') suggests the silver was melted into usable form for payments. The routine administrative report creates a narrative delay before the explosive announcement of the scroll.
10. Shaphan's understated announcement — *sefer natan li Chilqiyyah ha-kohen* ('a scroll Hilkiah the priest gave me') — uses the indefinite 'a scroll' rather than 'the Book of the Law.' He may not yet understand its significance. The reading aloud (*va-yiqra'ehu Shaphan lifnei ha-melekh*) is a formal public reading, transforming the forgotten text into a living prophetic word. The king hears what the nation has not heard for generations.
11. The narrator now uses the full title *sefer ha-torah* ('the Book of the Law') — the text has been identified. Josiah's response — *va-yiqra et begadav* ('he tore his garments') — is the standard act of mourning and anguish, but here it signifies something more: the king recognizes in the scroll's words a description of what the nation has been doing wrong and the consequences that must follow. The tearing is not grief for the dead but terror before the living word of God.
12. The five-member delegation represents both religious and civil authority: Hilkiah is the high priest, Ahikam son of Shaphan is a court official (who later protects Jeremiah from execution, Jeremiah 26:24), Achbor son of Micaiah is another senior official, Shaphan is the royal secretary, and Asaiah is the king's personal attendant (*eved ha-melekh*). The delegation's composition signals the gravity of the inquiry.
13. Josiah's command is remarkable for its first-person plural language: *ba'adi u-ve'ad ha-am u-ve'ad kol Yehudah* ('for me, for the people, and for all Judah') and *avoteinu* ('our ancestors'). The king includes himself in the guilt — he does not exempt the throne from responsibility. The phrase *gedolah chatat YHWH* ('great is the wrath of the LORD') reflects his reading of the covenant curses. He recognizes that generational disobedience has accumulated an enormous debt of divine anger.
14. Chuldah ha-nevi'ah ('Huldah the prophetess') is one of only a handful of women given the title *nevi'ah* in the Hebrew Bible (along with Miriam, Deborah, and Isaiah's wife). Her husband Shallum is identified as *shomer ha-begadim* ('keeper of the wardrobe') — a palace official responsible for royal or priestly garments. She lives in the *Mishneh* ('Second Quarter'), a newer section of Jerusalem on the western hill. The delegation of the most powerful men in Judah comes to consult a woman — the text presents this as entirely natural.
15. Huldah's oracle begins with the standard prophetic messenger formula: *koh amar YHWH Elohei Yisra'el* ('thus says the LORD, the God of Israel'). Her reference to Josiah as *ha-ish asher shalach etkhem elai* ('the man who sent you to me') rather than 'the king' is striking — before God's word, the king is simply a man. This is not disrespect but prophetic perspective: in the presence of divine speech, all human titles diminish.
16. The first part of the oracle confirms Josiah's worst fear: disaster is coming. The phrase *et kol divrei ha-sefer* ('all the words of the scroll') means every curse written in the document will be fulfilled. The scroll is not merely an ancient text but a living sentence. The word *ra'ah* ('disaster, evil, calamity') is the comprehensive term for divine judgment.
17. The reason clause — *tachat asher azavuni* ('because they have abandoned me') — uses the covenant-breach verb *azav* ('to abandon, to forsake'). The phrase *ve-lo tikhbeh* ('and it will not be quenched') is final: the fire of divine anger, once lit by generational apostasy, cannot be extinguished. Even Josiah's repentance cannot reverse the sentence on the nation. This is one of the most theologically uncompromising statements in the prophetic literature — no amount of late reform can undo what Manasseh initiated.
18. The oracle's second part shifts from the nation's fate to the king's personal fate. Huldah now addresses Josiah directly (through the delegation) with a separate divine word. The transition — *ve-el melekh Yehudah* ('but to the king of Judah') — marks a clear division: the nation's sentence stands, but the king's case is heard separately.
19. The key phrase is *rakh levavkha* ('your heart was tender/soft'). The adjective *rakh* ('soft, tender, gentle') describes a heart responsive to God's word — the opposite of the 'hard heart' or 'stiff neck' that characterizes the disobedient. Josiah's response — humbling himself (*va-tikkana*), tearing his robes (*va-tiqra et begadekha*), weeping (*va-tivkeh*) — is a complete catalog of repentance gestures. God's response — *ve-gam anokhi shamati* ('I too have heard') — mirrors the king's hearing: Josiah heard the scroll and responded; God heard Josiah's response and answers.
20. The promise *ve-ne'esafa el qivrotekha be-shalom* ('you will be gathered to your graves in peace') uses the gentle verb *asaf* ('to gather, to collect') — the same word used for gathering the harvest. Josiah's death will be a gathering-in, not a violent tearing-away. The word *be-shalom* ('in peace') has generated debate since Josiah dies in battle at Megiddo (23:29). The most likely meaning is that he will die before the Babylonian catastrophe — his 'peace' is defined by what he will not see: the fall of Jerusalem, the destruction of the Temple, the exile. The final clause — *va-yashivu et ha-melekh davar* ('they returned word to the king') — closes the prophetic consultation with bureaucratic efficiency.

23

Summary: *Josiah assembles all the people of Judah at the Temple and reads aloud every word of the Book of the Covenant found in the house of the LORD. He stands by the pillar and makes a covenant before the LORD to follow him, to keep his commands, decrees, and statutes with all his heart and soul, and to carry out the words written in the scroll. All the people pledge themselves to the covenant. Josiah then launches the most sweeping religious reform in Judean history: he removes from the Temple all vessels made for Baal, Asherah, and the host of heaven and burns them in the Kidron Valley; he deposes the idolatrous priests appointed by previous kings; he brings out the Asherah from the Temple, burns it at the Kidron, and grinds it to dust; he tears down the quarters of the cult prostitutes in the Temple complex; he defiles Topheth in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom so no one can sacrifice children to Molech; he removes the horses dedicated to the sun at the Temple entrance and burns the sun-chariots; he demolishes the altars Manasseh built in the Temple courts and the altars on the roof; he destroys the high places Solomon built for Ashtoreth, Chemosh, and Milcom; he smashes the sacred pillars and cuts down the Asherah poles. He extends his reforms north into the former territory of Israel, destroying the altar at Bethel that Jeroboam son of Nebat had built — fulfilling the prophecy of the man of God from Judah (1 Kings 13). He celebrates a Passover in Jerusalem of unprecedented scale — nothing like it since the days of the judges. Despite all this, the narrator delivers a crushing verdict: the LORD did not turn from the fierce burning of his great wrath against Judah because of everything Manasseh had done to provoke him. Josiah's reforms cannot reverse the sentence. The chapter ends with Josiah's death: Pharaoh Neco of Egypt marches to the Euphrates to aid Assyria against Babylon, and Josiah goes to confront him at Megiddo. Neco kills him. His servants carry his body back to Jerusalem in a chariot. The people of the land anoint his son Jehoahaz, who reigns three months before Neco deposes him, installs Jehoiakim, and imposes tribute on Judah. Jehoiakim does evil in the eyes of the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the climactic reform narrative of the entire Deuteronomistic History — the moment when a king finally does everything Deuteronomy demands. Josiah's purge is comprehensive beyond anything attempted before: he addresses every form of syncretism accumulated across four centuries, from Solomon's high places to Manasseh's abominations. The destruction of the Bethel altar fulfills a prophecy spoken nearly three hundred years earlier (1 Kings 13:2), and the narrator takes care to note the fulfillment. The Passover celebration (verses 21-23) is described as the greatest since the judges — surpassing even those under Moses and Joshua in the narrator's estimation. Yet the theological punch of the chapter lies in verses 26-27: despite the most perfect reform by the most righteous king, the sentence stands. Manasseh's sins have created an irreversible momentum toward destruction. The Deuteronomistic historian has set up a devastating theological paradox: obedience matters absolutely, yet the accumulated weight of disobedience can reach a point of no return. Josiah's death at Megiddo — sudden, unexplained, seemingly unjust — is the narrative confirmation that the age of grace for Judah has ended.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Josiah's righteousness and his violent death at Megiddo is the chapter's central difficulty. Huldah promised he would die 'in peace' (22:20), yet he dies in battle. Various explanations exist: Josiah was not killed by the Babylonian catastrophe (the disaster Huldah specified); or 'peace' refers to his era generally; or Josiah exceeded his mandate by confronting Neco (2 Chronicles 35:21-22 suggests Neco warned him). The scope of Josiah's northern reforms (verses 15-20) raises historical questions: could a Judean king exercise authority in the former northern kingdom? The decline of Assyrian power by the 620s BCE may have created a power vacuum that Josiah exploited. The narrator's assertion that no Passover like this had been celebrated since the judges (verse 22) seems to contradict Hezekiah's Passover (2 Chronicles 30), though Kings does not mention Hezekiah's Passover. The theological problem of verses 26-27 — why reform if the outcome is fixed — is the deepest tension in Deuteronomistic theology.*

Connections: *The covenant renewal ceremony (verses 1-3) echoes Joshua 24 (the Shechem covenant), Exodus 24 (the Sinai covenant), and anticipates Nehemiah 8-10 (Ezra's covenant renewal). The destruction of the Bethel altar (verses 15-16) fulfills 1 Kings 13:2 with remarkable specificity — the man of God named Josiah by name three centuries before his birth. The Passover (verses 21-23) connects to Exodus 12 (the original Passover) and Deuteronomy 16:1-8 (centralized Passover legislation). The removal of the Asherah from the Temple reverses Manasseh's act*

in 21:7. The destruction of Topheth connects to Jeremiah 7:30-34 and 19:1-15. Josiah's death at Megiddo becomes a defining moment for later tradition — Zechariah 12:11 references 'the mourning of Hadad-rimmon in the valley of Megiddo,' and the very name Megiddo (Armageddon in Greek) becomes the symbol of final battle in Revelation 16:16.

¹The king sent word, and all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem were assembled before him. ²The king went up to the house of the LORD with every man of Judah, all the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the priests, the prophets, and the entire population from the least to the greatest. He read aloud to them every word of the Book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of the LORD. ³The king stood by the pillar and made a covenant before the LORD: to follow the LORD, to keep his commands, his decrees, and his statutes with all his heart and all his soul, and to carry out the words of this covenant as written in this scroll. And all the people pledged themselves to the covenant. ⁴The king ordered Hilkiah the high priest, the priests of the second rank, and the doorkeepers to remove from the Temple of the LORD all the vessels made for Baal, for Asherah, and for the entire host of heaven. He burned them outside Jerusalem in the terraces of the Kidron Valley and carried their ashes to Bethel. ⁵He deposed the idolatrous priests whom the kings of Judah had appointed to burn incense at the high places in the towns of Judah and in the areas around Jerusalem — those who burned incense to Baal, to the sun, to the moon, to the constellations, and to the entire host of heaven. ⁶He brought the Asherah pole out of the house of the LORD to the Kidron Valley outside Jerusalem, burned it there, ground it to dust, and scattered the dust over the common burial ground. ⁷He tore down the quarters of the cult prostitutes that were in the house of the LORD, where women wove coverings for the Asherah. ⁸He brought all the priests from the towns of Judah and defiled the high places where those priests had burned incense, from Geba to Beer-sheba. He also demolished the high places at the gates — the one at the entrance of the gate of Joshua the city governor, on the left as one enters the city gate. ⁹However, the priests of the high places did not go up to the altar of the LORD in Jerusalem, but they did eat unleavened bread among their fellow priests. ¹⁰He defiled Topheth in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom so that no one could pass a son or daughter through the fire to Molech. ¹¹He removed the horses that the kings of Judah had dedicated to the sun at the entrance of the house of the LORD, near the chamber of Nathan-melech the court official in the colonnade, and he burned the sun-chariots with fire. ¹²The altars on the roof of the upper chamber of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars Manasseh had built in the two courtyards of the house of the LORD — the king demolished them, smashed them, and threw their rubble into the Kidron Valley. ¹³The king defiled the high places east of Jerusalem, south of the Mount of Corruption, which Solomon king of Israel had built for Ashtoreth the abomination of the Sidonians, for Chemosh the abomination of Moab, and for Milcom the detestable god of the Ammonites. ¹⁴He smashed the sacred pillars, cut down the Asherah poles, and filled the sites with human bones. ¹⁵He also demolished the altar at Bethel — the high place that Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin, had built. He demolished that altar and the high place, burned the high place, ground it to dust, and burned the Asherah pole. ¹⁶When Josiah turned and saw the tombs on the hillside, he sent men to take the bones from the tombs and burned them on the altar, defiling it — in fulfillment of the word of the LORD that the man of God had proclaimed when he proclaimed these things. ¹⁷He asked, "What is that marker I see?" The men of the city told him, "It is the tomb of the man of God who came from Judah and proclaimed the very things you have done against the altar of Bethel." ¹⁸He said, "Leave him alone. No one is to disturb his bones." So they left his bones undisturbed, along with the bones of the prophet who had come from Samaria. ¹⁹Josiah also removed all the shrine buildings at the high places in the towns of Samaria that the kings of Israel had built, provoking the LORD. He did to them everything he had done at Bethel. ²⁰He slaughtered all the priests of the high places on their own altars and burned human bones on them. Then he returned to Jerusalem. ²¹The king commanded all the people, "Celebrate the Passover to the LORD your God as it is written in this Book of the Covenant." ²²No Passover like this had been celebrated since the days of the judges who governed Israel — not in all the days of the kings of Israel or the kings of Judah. ²³It was in the eighteenth year of King Josiah that this Passover was celebrated to the LORD in Jerusalem. ²⁴Josiah also swept away the mediums, spiritists, household gods, worthless idols, and every abomination found in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, in order to carry out the words of the instruction written in the scroll that Hilkiah the priest had found in the house of the LORD. ²⁵Before him there had been no king like him who turned to the LORD with all his heart, all his soul, and

all his strength, in full accordance with the instruction of Moses. And after him no one like him arose. ²⁶Yet the LORD did not turn from the fierce burning of his great wrath that blazed against Judah because of all the provocations with which Manasseh had provoked him. ²⁷The LORD declared, "I will remove Judah also from my presence, just as I removed Israel. I will reject this city that I chose — Jerusalem — and the house of which I said, 'My name will be there.'" ²⁸The rest of the acts of Josiah — everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ²⁹In his days, Pharaoh Neco king of Egypt marched toward the king of Assyria at the Euphrates River. King Josiah went to confront him, and Neco killed him at Megiddo when they met. ³⁰His servants carried his body by chariot from Megiddo, brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own tomb. The people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah, anointed him, and made him king in his father's place. ³¹Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became king, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah, from Libnah. ³²He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as his ancestors had done. ³³Pharaoh Neco imprisoned him at Riblah in the land of Hamath to prevent him from reigning in Jerusalem, and imposed on the land a levy of one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold. ³⁴Pharaoh Neco made Eliakim son of Josiah king in place of his father Josiah and changed his name to Jehoiakim. He took Jehoahaz away to Egypt, where he died. ³⁵Jehoiakim paid the silver and gold to Pharaoh. But to meet Pharaoh's demand, he imposed a tax on the land; each person was assessed according to his means. He extracted the silver and gold from the people of the land to pay Pharaoh Neco. ³⁶Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zebidah daughter of Pedaiah, from Rumah. ³⁷He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as his ancestors had done.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The assembly of kol ziqnei Yehudah vi-Yerushalayim ('all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem') creates a national gathering — the elders are the representative leaders of the people. The verb va-ya'asfu ('they gathered') indicates formal convocation. This is a covenant-renewal assembly, paralleling Moses at Sinai and Joshua at Shechem.
2. The scroll is now called sefer ha-berit ('the Book of the Covenant') rather than sefer ha-torah — emphasizing its covenantal character. The gathering is comprehensive: le-miqaton ve-ad gadol ('from the small to the great') means every social class is present. The king himself reads — va-yiqra be-ozneihem ('he read in their ears') — assuming the role of covenant mediator that belongs to Moses (Deuteronomy 31:11). The public reading transforms a private discovery into a national event.
3. The threefold division — mitsvot ('commands'), edot ('decrees, testimonies'), and chuqqot ('statutes') — is the standard Deuteronomic way of referring to the comprehensive body of divine law. The phrase le-haqim ('to establish, to carry out, to fulfill') indicates not just intellectual assent but active implementation. The people's response — va-ya'amod kol ha-am ba-berit ('all the people stood in the covenant') — uses the verb amad ('to stand') in its sense of 'taking a stand, committing oneself.'
4. The reform begins inside the Temple itself — the defilement must be removed from the innermost sacred space outward. The kohanei ha-mishneh ('priests of the second rank') are the deputy priests. The burning takes place in shadmot Qidron ('the terraces/fields of the Kidron'), the valley east of Jerusalem that serves as a disposal site for ritual impurity. The transportation of ashes to Bethel is significant: the contamination is returned to the site of Jeroboam's great sin (1 Kings 12:28-33).
5. The kemarim ('idolrous priests') is a term distinct from kohanim ('legitimate priests') — it designates priests of non-Yahwistic cults, possibly derived from an Aramaic root meaning 'to be dark' or a Syriac word for priest. The verb hishbit ('he caused to cease, he deposed') means official removal from office. The astral deities listed — shemesh ('sun'), yareach ('moon'), mazzalot ('constellations, zodiacal signs') — reflect Assyrian-influenced astral worship that flourished under Manasseh.
6. The treatment of the Asherah follows a pattern of total destruction: removal (va-yotse), burning (va-yisrof), grinding to powder (va-yadeq le-afar), and scattering the powder on graves (al qever benei ha-am, 'over the grave of the sons of the people' — the common cemetery). Scattering the dust on graves adds ritual defilement to physical destruction, ensuring the object can never be reconstituted or venerated. This reverses Manasseh's installation of the Asherah in the Temple (21:7).
7. The battei ha-qedeshim ('houses/quarters of the cult prostitutes') were built within the Temple complex itself — a measure of how deeply pagan practice had infiltrated the sacred precinct. The women weaving battim la-Asherah ('coverings/houses for the Asherah') were likely producing ritual garments or tent-coverings for the Asherah image. The entire scene — cult prostitution and pagan textile work inside the LORD's Temple — illustrates the comprehensive desecration Josiah faced.
8. The scope is comprehensive: mi-Geva ad Be'er Shava ('from Geba to Beer-sheva') describes the full extent of Judah from north to south. The priests from the high places are brought to Jerusalem — centralization of worship is the Deuteronomic ideal (Deuteronomy 12:5-14). The bamot ha-she'arim ('high places of the gates') were small shrines at city gate entrances, where worship and commerce intersected.

9. The displaced priests receive a compromise: they cannot serve at the Jerusalem altar (maintaining the exclusive sanctity of centralized worship) but they eat matzot ('unleavened bread') — their priestly food allotment — be-tokh acheihem ('among their brothers'). This arrangement parallels Deuteronomy 18:6-8, which allows Levites from the provinces to serve in Jerusalem, though in practice the Jerusalem priesthood restricted access.
10. The Tofet was the site in the Gei Ven-Hinnom ('Valley of the Son of Hinnom,' later 'Gehenna') where children were sacrificed by fire to Molech (or Molek). The verb timme ('he defiled, rendered ritually impure') means Josiah deliberately contaminated the site to make it unusable for worship — likely by spreading human bones or refuse on it. The phrase le-ha'avir et beno ve-et bitto ba-esh ('to pass his son and his daughter through the fire') uses the same language as 21:6 describing Manasseh's practice.
11. Horses and chariots dedicated to the sun (la-shemesh) reflect Assyrian or broader Near Eastern solar worship. The horses were stationed at the Temple entrance — a powerful visual statement of syncretism. Nathan-melech ha-saris ('Nathan-melech the official/eunuch') had a chamber in the parvarim ('colonnade, precincts, suburbs') of the Temple. The burning of the markebot ha-shemesh ('chariots of the sun') — ceremonial vehicles associated with the sun-god's journey across the sky — eliminates the entire apparatus of solar cult.
12. Two sets of altars are destroyed: rooftop altars (al ha-gag aliyat Achaz, 'on the roof of the upper room of Ahaz') used for astral worship, and Manasseh's courtyard altars (21:5). The verb natats ('he demolished, tore down') followed by va-yarats ('he smashed, he ran/crushed') indicates violent destruction. The rubble is disposed of in the Kidron, which serves as Jerusalem's sacred waste site throughout the reform.
13. The reform reaches back to Solomon himself — these high places had stood for over three centuries since 1 Kings 11:7. The Har ha-Mashchit ('Mount of Corruption/Destruction') is a wordplay on Har ha-Mishchah ('Mount of Anointing,' the Mount of Olives) — the narrator renames the hill to reflect its desecrated status. Solomon is identified as melekh Yisra'el ('king of Israel') rather than 'king of Judah,' a subtle rebuke linking him to the northern kingdom's sin. The three deities — Ashtoreth, Chemosh, Milcom — represent Sidonian, Moabite, and Ammonite religion respectively.
14. The matssebot ('sacred pillars, standing stones') were upright stones used in Canaanite worship. The Asherim ('Asherah poles') were wooden cult objects. Filling the sites with atsmot adam ('human bones') ensured permanent ritual defilement — contact with the dead renders a site impure beyond reclamation. The method is systematic: destroy, then contaminate so thoroughly that the sites cannot be reused.
15. The reform now crosses the old border into the former northern kingdom. The altar at Bethel — ha-mizbeach asher be-Veit El — was the foundational sin of the divided monarchy (1 Kings 12:28-33). The phrase Yarov'am ben Nevat asher hecheti et Yisra'el ('Jeroboam son of Nebat who caused Israel to sin') is the standard epithet that has accompanied every mention of Jeroboam's influence throughout Kings. The destruction follows the same pattern: demolition, burning, grinding to dust.
16. The narrator explicitly marks this as prophetic fulfillment: ki-dvar YHWH asher qara ish ha-Elohim ('according to the word of the LORD that the man of God proclaimed'). The unnamed 'man of God' is the prophet from 1 Kings 13:1-2 who prophesied that a king named Josiah would burn human bones on the Bethel altar — a prophecy spoken roughly three hundred years earlier. The fulfillment is precise: the named king, the specific altar, the burning of bones.
17. The tsiyyun ('marker, monument, gravestone') catches Josiah's eye. The townspeople identify it as the burial site of the Judean prophet from 1 Kings 13. Their description — va-yiqra et ha-devarim ha-elleh asher asita ('he proclaimed the very things you have done') — makes the prophetic fulfillment explicit within the narrative. The people of Bethel themselves testify that Josiah's actions were predicted centuries ago.
18. Josiah honors the man of God by leaving his grave intact — the one tomb spared from desecration. The 'prophet who came from Samaria' is the old prophet from 1 Kings 13:11-32 who had asked to be buried alongside the man of God. Both sets of bones are preserved, fulfilling the old prophet's request (1 Kings 13:31). The detail connects the two narratives across the centuries.
19. The reform extends throughout the former northern kingdom: be-arei Shomron ('in the towns of Samaria'). The phrase ke-khol ha-ma'asim asher asah be-Veit El ('according to all the acts he had done at Bethel') means the same pattern — demolition, burning, bone defilement — was applied to every northern high place. The scope implies Josiah exercised effective control over former Israelite territory during the Assyrian power vacuum of the late seventh century.
20. The northern reform is violent: va-yizbach et kol kohanei ha-bamot ('he slaughtered all the priests of the high places'). The verb zavach normally means 'to sacrifice' — the priests are sacrificed on their own altars, a grim irony. This fulfilled the specific words of the man of God in 1 Kings 13:2: 'He will sacrifice on you the priests of the high places who burn incense on you.' The burning of human bones on the altars permanently defiles them. The return to Jerusalem (va-yashav Yerushalayim) transitions from destruction to restoration.
21. The shift from destruction to celebration: asu Pesach la-YHWH Eloheikhem ('make/celebrate the Passover to the LORD your God'). The phrase ka-katuv al sefer ha-berit ha-zeh ('as it is written in this Book of the Covenant') anchors the celebration in the discovered scroll — specifically the Passover legislation of Deuteronomy 16:1-8, which requires centralized celebration in Jerusalem.
22. The narrator's assessment is sweeping: mi-yemei ha-shoftim ('since the days of the judges'). This Passover surpasses not only the monarchic period but reaches back to the pre-monarchic era — roughly four hundred years. The statement implicitly surpasses Solomon's Temple dedication (1 Kings 8), Hezekiah's Passover (2 Chronicles 30), and every other national celebration. It is the apex of Israelite worship in the monarchic period.
23. The date — the eighteenth year, the same year as the scroll's discovery — means all of Josiah's reforms and this unprecedented Passover belong to a single year of spiritual revolution. The phrase la-YHWH bi-Yerushalayim ('to the LORD in Jerusalem') emphasizes both the object of worship and the centralized location — exactly as Deuteronomy 16 requires.

24. A comprehensive catalog of what was purged: ovot ('mediums'), yid'onim ('spiritists'), terafim ('household gods, figurines'), gillulim ('worthless idols'), and kol ha-shiqquttsim ('all the abominations'). The purpose clause — le-ma'an haqim et divrei ha-torah ('in order to carry out the words of the instruction') — explicitly ties every reform action to the discovered scroll. Josiah's program is not arbitrary iconoclasm but systematic obedience to a text.
25. The superlative evaluation — lo hayah lefanav ('there was none before him') and lo qam acharav ('none arose after him') — brackets Josiah as the ultimate Deuteronomic king. The phrase ke-khol torat Mosheh ('according to all the instruction of Moses') makes the standard explicit: complete Mosaic obedience. This verse and 18:5 (Hezekiah's evaluation) create a theological pair — the two best kings, each praised in different terms, neither able to save the nation from the consequences of its collective history.
26. The devastating akh ('yet, however, notwithstanding') overturns everything that preceded it. After the most comprehensive reform, the most perfect obedience, the greatest Passover — lo shav YHWH me-charon appo ha-gadol ('the LORD did not turn from the burning of his great anger'). The cause is named: Manasseh. The accumulated sin of Manasseh's fifty-five-year reign has created an irreversible trajectory. This is the theological crisis at the heart of the Deuteronomistic History: obedience matters, but late obedience cannot undo the consequences of sustained rebellion.
27. The divine verdict is final: gam et Yehudah asir me'al panai ('even Judah I will remove from my presence'). The word gam ('also, even') links Judah's fate to Israel's — the northern kingdom's destruction in 722 BCE is now the template for the south. The rejection of Jerusalem (u-ma'asti et ha-ir ha-zot) and the Temple (ve-et ha-bayit asher amarti yihyeh shemi sham) revokes both the election of Zion and the name theology of Deuteronomy. Everything promised is now being un-promised.
28. The standard source citation. For a king of Josiah's stature, the formula feels almost inadequate — 'everything he did' encompasses the most comprehensive reform in Judean history. But the Deuteronomistic historian is moving the narrative forward; the annals contain the details, while this text delivers the theological verdict.
29. The death of Josiah is reported with shocking brevity. Pharaoh Neco II (610-595 BCE) was marching to aid the remnant of Assyria against Babylon at Carchemish on the Euphrates. The phrase al melek Ashur ('against/toward the king of Assyria') likely means 'to assist,' not 'against.' Josiah intercepted Neco at Megiddo — probably as a Babylonian ally or to prevent Egyptian resurgence — and va-yemitehu ('he killed him'). The greatest king dies in a single sentence. The narrative refuses to explain why God allowed this or how it relates to Huldah's promise of death 'in peace.'
30. The transport of Josiah's body — va-yarkivuhu avadav met mi-Megiddo ('his servants carried him dead from Megiddo') — is a somber reversal of the royal progress. He is buried bi-qvurato ('in his tomb'), receiving proper royal burial unlike Manasseh and Amon in the Garden of Uzza. The am ha-arets ('people of the land') again exercise their role as kingmakers, anointing Jehoahaz (also called Shallum in Jeremiah 22:11). They bypass the eldest son, possibly choosing someone they believed would continue Josiah's policies.
31. The regnal formula for Jehoahaz signals a tragically brief reign — three months. His mother Chamutal ('my father-in-law is the dew') was from Libnah, a Judean town. The Jeremiah mentioned is not the prophet but a Libnite. The three-month reign (609 BCE) was cut short by Egyptian intervention.
32. The negative evaluation — ke-khol asher asu avotav ('according to everything his ancestors had done') — is jarring after Josiah's superlative righteousness. The son of the best king immediately reverts to the pattern of the worst. The 'ancestors' in question are not Josiah but the broader royal line including Manasseh and Amon.
33. Riblah in the land of Hamath (modern Lebanon) was a strategic military headquarters on the Orontes River — the same location Nebuchadnezzar would later use (25:6, 21). Neco's action demonstrates Egypt's control over Judah: he removes a king and imposes tribute. The levy — me'ah kikkar kesef ve-kikkar zahav ('one hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold') — is substantial, approximately 3,400 kg of silver and 34 kg of gold.
34. Neco installs a puppet king: Eliakim (Elyaqim, 'God raises up') is renamed Jehoiaqim (Yehoyaqim, 'the LORD raises up'). The name change — va-yassev et shemo ('he turned around his name') — is an act of sovereignty: the one who names rules. Paradoxically, the Egyptian pharaoh gives a Yahwistic name to his vassal. Jehoahaz is exiled to Egypt, where va-yamot sham ('he died there') — a terse end for Josiah's chosen successor. Jeremiah 22:10-12 mourns Jehoahaz (Shallum) and declares he will never return.
35. The verb he'erikh ('he assessed, he valued') means Jehoiaqim conducted a formal property assessment to determine each person's tax obligation — ish ke-erkko ('each man according to his valuation'). The phrase nagash et ha-kesef ve-et ha-zahav ('he exacted/extracted the silver and the gold') uses the verb nagash ('to drive, to press, to exact'), suggesting aggressive tax collection. The cost of Egyptian vassalage falls on the common people.
36. The regnal formula for Jehoiaqim: eleven years (roughly 609-598 BCE), the period during which Judah shifts from Egyptian to Babylonian vassalage. His mother Zevidah ('gift, endowment') was from Rumah, a town in Galilee or Judah. Jehoiaqim is the older brother of Jehoahaz — Neco chose him over the people's choice, perhaps because he was more compliant.
37. The chapter closes with the same negative verdict that opened the post-Josiah era (verse 32). The phrase ke-khol asher asu avotav ('according to everything his ancestors had done') is now a refrain of decline. After Josiah, every king does evil. The Deuteronomistic History has entered its final descent — from here to the fall of Jerusalem, the narrative moves with the inevitability of the divine sentence pronounced in verses 26-27.

24

Summary: *In Jehoiakim's days, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon invades, and Jehoiakim becomes his vassal for three years before rebelling. The LORD sends raiding bands of Chaldeans, Arameans, Moabites, and Ammonites against Judah to destroy it, in accordance with the word spoken through the prophets — specifically because of the sins of Manasseh, including the innocent blood he shed, which the LORD was unwilling to forgive. Jehoiakim dies and his son Jehoiachin succeeds him. The narrator notes that the king of Egypt no longer marches out of his own territory because the king of Babylon has taken everything from the Wadi of Egypt to the Euphrates. Jehoiachin reigns only three months in Jerusalem before Nebuchadnezzar besieges the city. Jehoiachin surrenders — going out to the king of Babylon with his mother, his servants, his commanders, and his officials. Nebuchadnezzar takes him captive in his eighth year. He carries off all the treasures of the house of the LORD and the royal palace, cuts up all the gold vessels Solomon had made for the Temple, and deports all Jerusalem: the commanders, the warriors, the craftsmen, and the metalworkers — ten thousand exiles. Only the poorest people of the land remain. He exiles Jehoiachin to Babylon along with the queen mother, the king's wives, his officials, and the leading men of the land. Nebuchadnezzar installs Jehoiachin's uncle Mattaniah as king, changing his name to Zedekiah. Zedekiah is twenty-one years old, reigns eleven years, and does evil in the eyes of the LORD. The chapter closes with the note that Zedekiah rebels against Babylon.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter narrates the first of two Babylonian deportations (597 BCE), and the narrator's theological interpretation is unambiguous: this is God's doing. The raids against Judah are sent by the LORD (verse 2), and the deportation fulfills the prophetic word. The most theologically significant statement is verse 4: God was unwilling to forgive (lo avah YHWH lisloach) because of Manasseh's bloodshed. This is one of the rare passages in the Hebrew Bible where divine forgiveness is explicitly refused. The surrender of Jehoiachin — going out (va-yetse) to the king of Babylon — echoes the vocabulary of military capitulation throughout the ancient Near East but also carries overtones of exile from sacred space, a going-out that mirrors Israel's departure from the garden, from Egypt, from any place of divine presence. The stripping of the Temple — Solomon's gold vessels cut up and carried away — is described with the same care that 1 Kings 6-7 used for their creation, creating a narrative of uncreation. What Solomon built in glory, Nebuchadnezzar dismantles in judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The death of Jehoiakim is handled with unusual ambiguity. The phrase va-yishkav Yehoyaqim im avotav ('Jehoiakim slept with his fathers') is the standard death formula, but Jeremiah 22:18-19 prophesies that Jehoiakim would receive the 'burial of a donkey' — dragged and cast outside the gates of Jerusalem. Whether the standard formula conceals a dishonorable death or Jeremiah's prophecy was not literally fulfilled is debated. The number of deportees — 'ten thousand' (verse 14) — does not perfectly align with Jeremiah 52:28, which gives '3,023 Judeans.' The difference may reflect different counting methods (combatants vs. total population, or round numbers vs. precise counts). Zedekiah's relationship to Jehoiachin is described as 'uncle' (his father's brother), meaning Nebuchadnezzar chose not to continue the direct line but placed a different son of Josiah on the throne — a deliberate weakening of royal legitimacy.*

Connections: *The fulfillment of prophetic word connects to the entire prophetic tradition: the raiders come ki-dvar YHWH ('according to the word of the LORD,' verse 2) spoken be-yad avadav ha-nevi'im ('through his servants the prophets'). The stripping of the Temple treasures begins a process completed in chapter 25 and reverses 1 Kings 7:48-51 (Solomon's golden furnishings). Jehoiachin's exile becomes a reference point for dating throughout Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1:2, 'the fifth year of King Jehoiachin's exile'). The refusal to forgive because of innocent blood connects to Deuteronomy 19:10-13 and the principle that unpurged blood pollutes the land. The name change from Mattaniah to Zedekiah ('righteousness of the LORD') parallels Neco's renaming of Eliakim to Jehoiakim (23:34) — both puppet kings receive Yahwistic names from foreign overlords who do not serve YHWH.*

¹In his days, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon invaded, and Jehoiakim became his vassal for three years. Then he rebelled against him. ²The LORD sent against him raiding bands of Chaldeans, raiding bands of Arameans, raiding bands of Moabites, and raiding bands of Ammonites. He sent them against Judah to destroy it, in accordance with the word of the

LORD that he had spoken through his servants the prophets. ³This came upon Judah solely at the LORD's command, to remove them from his presence because of the sins of Manasseh — everything he had done, ⁴and also because of the innocent blood he shed — he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood — and the LORD was unwilling to forgive. ⁵The rest of the acts of Jehoiakim — everything he did — are they not recorded in the Book of the Annals of the Kings of Judah? ⁶Jehoiakim slept with his fathers, and his son Jehoiachin reigned in his place. ⁷The king of Egypt did not march out of his own land again, because the king of Babylon had seized everything that belonged to the king of Egypt, from the Wadi of Egypt to the Euphrates River. ⁸Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became king, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Nehushta daughter of Elnathan, from Jerusalem. ⁹He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as his father had done. ¹⁰At that time, the officers of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon advanced on Jerusalem, and the city came under siege. ¹¹Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon himself came to the city while his officers were besieging it. ¹²Jehoiachin king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon — he, his mother, his servants, his commanders, and his officials. The king of Babylon took him prisoner in the eighth year of his own reign. ¹³He carried off from there all the treasures of the house of the LORD and the treasures of the royal palace, and he cut up all the gold vessels that Solomon king of Israel had made for the Temple of the LORD — just as the LORD had declared. ¹⁴He deported all Jerusalem — all the commanders, all the elite warriors, ten thousand exiles in all — along with every craftsman and metalworker. No one remained except the poorest people of the land. ¹⁵He exiled Jehoiachin to Babylon, along with the king's mother, the king's wives, his officials, and the leading men of the land — he took them as captives from Jerusalem to Babylon. ¹⁶All the fighting men — seven thousand — and the craftsmen and metalworkers — one thousand — all of them battle-ready warriors, the king of Babylon brought them as captives to Babylon. ¹⁷The king of Babylon made Mattaniah, Jehoiachin's uncle, king in his place, and changed his name to Zedekiah. ¹⁸Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah, from Libnah. ¹⁹He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as Jehoiakim had done. ²⁰It was because of the LORD's anger that all this happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until he finally cast them out of his presence. And Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Nebuchadnezzar (Nevukhadnetsar in Hebrew, from Akkadian Nabu-kudurri-usur, 'Nabu, protect the boundary stone') became king of Babylon in 605 BCE and quickly established dominance over the Levant. Jehoiakim's vassalage (eved, 'servant/vassal') lasted three years before va-yashav va-yimrad bo ('he turned back and rebelled against him'). The rebellion was likely encouraged by the Egyptian defeat of Babylon in 601 BCE, which suggested Babylonian power might be declining — a catastrophic miscalculation.
2. The subject of the verb is decisive: va-yeshallach YHWH ('the LORD sent'). The raiders — Chaldeans (Babylonians), Arameans, Moabites, and Ammonites — are instruments of divine judgment. The fourfold repetition of gedudei ('raiding bands of') creates a sense of assault from every direction. The purpose clause le-ha'avido ('to destroy it/him') uses the causative form of the verb avad ('to perish'). The phrase ki-dvar YHWH ('according to the word of the LORD') attributes the destruction to prophetic announcement now being fulfilled.
3. The phrase akh al pi YHWH ('surely by the mouth/command of the LORD') eliminates any possibility of attributing Judah's suffering to chance or geopolitics. The purpose — le-hasir me'al panav ('to remove from before his face/presence') — echoes the exact language of 23:27. The cause is named again: be-chattot Menasheh ('because of the sins of Manasseh'). The narrative insists that events happening decades after Manasseh's death are still caused by his sins.
4. The final clause is among the most theologically stark in the Hebrew Bible: ve-lo avah YHWH lisloach ('and the LORD was not willing to forgive'). The verb avah ('to be willing, to consent') paired with the negative lo indicates a deliberate divine refusal — not inability but unwillingness. The reason is dam naqi ('innocent blood'), the same charge from 21:16. Unpurged innocent blood creates a pollution that the covenant demands must be addressed (Deuteronomy 19:13, Numbers 35:33). Manasseh's bloodshed has crossed a threshold beyond which even divine patience does not extend.
5. The standard source citation. Jeremiah's account of Jehoiakim (Jeremiah 22:13-19, 26:20-24, 36:1-32) provides a much fuller and more damning portrait: a king who cut up and burned a prophetic scroll, built his palace with forced labor, and persecuted prophets.
6. The death formula va-yishkav im avotav ('he slept with his fathers') is used without mention of burial — an unusual omission that may hint at the dishonorable burial prophesied in Jeremiah 22:18-19. Jehoiachin (Yehoyakhin, 'the LORD establishes') succeeds him at the worst possible moment: with Babylon mobilizing for a punitive campaign.
7. This parenthetical note explains the geopolitical situation: after the Battle of Carchemish (605 BCE) and subsequent campaigns, Babylon controlled the entire territory mi-nachal Mitsrayim ad nehar Perat ('from the Wadi of Egypt to the Euphrates River') — the traditional boundaries of the promised land (Genesis 15:18, 1 Kings 8:65). The irony is crushing: the land promised to Abraham is now the territory of the king of Babylon. Egypt,

which had been Judah's hoped-for ally, is confined within its own borders.

8. Another tragically brief reign: three months (December 598 to March 597 BCE). His mother Nechushta ('bronze, copper') was from Jerusalem itself — one of the few queen mothers from the capital rather than a provincial town. Elnathan her father may be the Elnathan who participated in extraditing the prophet Uriah from Egypt for Jehoiakim (Jeremiah 26:22). Jehoiachin inherits a kingdom already under siege.
9. The evaluation formula becomes a drumbeat of decline: *ke-khol asher asah aviv* ('according to everything his father had done'). In three months there is little time for policy, but the narrator renders the verdict based on the trajectory established by Jehoiakim. Every post-Josiah king receives the same negative evaluation.
10. The *avdei Nevukhadnettsar* ('servants/officers of Nebuchadnezzar') are his military commanders. The phrase *va-tavo ha-ir ba-matsor* ('the city came into the siege') marks the first of two Babylonian sieges of Jerusalem — this one in 597 BCE. The word *matsor* ('siege, siege-works') from the root *tsur* ('to press, to besiege') will define Jerusalem's final years.
11. Nebuchadnezzar arrives personally — *va-yavo Nevukhadnettsar melek Bavel al ha-ir* ('Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against the city'). His presence elevates the siege from a military operation to a royal confrontation. The Babylonian Chronicle confirms that Nebuchadnezzar personally campaigned against 'the city of Judah' (*al-Yahudu*) in his seventh year and captured it on 2 Adar (March 16, 597 BCE).
12. The verb *va-yetse* ('he went out') describes formal surrender — Jehoiachin exits the city to submit himself. The entourage — *immo* ('his mother'), *avadav* ('his servants'), *sarav* ('his commanders'), *sarisav* ('his officials/eunuchs') — represents the entire royal household. The eighth year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign is 597 BCE. The Babylonian Chronicle independently confirms this event, making it one of the best-attested dates in biblical history.
13. The verb *va-yeqattses* ('he cut up, he hacked apart') describes the destruction of Solomon's gold vessels — not careful removal but violent dismemberment for ease of transport and melting. The phrase *ka-asher dibber YHWH* ('just as the LORD had spoken') reminds the reader that this plundering fulfills prophetic announcement (Isaiah 39:6, where Isaiah told Hezekiah that everything in his palace would be carried to Babylon). The stripping of the Temple reverses 1 Kings 7:48-51.
14. The deportation targets specific social classes: *sarim* ('commanders, officials'), *gibborei ha-chayil* ('warriors of the army, mighty men of valor'), *charash* ('craftsmen, skilled artisans'), and *masger* ('metalworkers, smiths'). The removal of artisans and smiths is strategic: without metalworkers, the remnant population cannot forge weapons. The phrase *lo nish'ar zulat dallat am ha-arets* ('none remained except the poorest of the people of the land') creates a deliberately destitute remnant.
15. The deportation list is personal: Jehoiachin himself, *em ha-melek* ('the queen mother,' *Nehushta*), *neshei ha-melek* ('the king's wives'), *sarisav* ('his officials'), and *eilei ha-arets* ('the mighty ones/rams of the land' — the leading aristocracy). The metaphor *eilei* ('rams') suggests the strongest and most prominent members of society. The repeated phrase *Bavelah* ('to Babylon') hammers the destination. Ezekiel was among these deportees (Ezekiel 1:1-3).
16. The numbers break down the ten thousand total: *shiv'at alafim* ('seven thousand') soldiers and *elef* ('one thousand') skilled artisans, plus the royal household and officials. The phrase *gibborim osei milchamah* ('mighty men, makers of war') emphasizes that Babylon removed all military capacity. The land of Judah is now defenseless — by design.
17. Nebuchadnezzar installs *dodo* ('his uncle,' literally 'his father's brother') — another son of Josiah — as a puppet ruler. The name change from Mattaniah (*Mattanyah*, 'gift of the LORD') to Zedekiah (*Tsidqiyahu*, 'righteousness of the LORD') is the third time a foreign power has renamed a Judean king (after Neco's renaming in 23:34). The Babylonian king gives his vassal a Yahwistic name, asserting ownership over both king and deity. The irony of 'righteousness of the LORD' for the last king of Judah becomes apparent as the narrative unfolds.
18. The regnal formula reveals that Zedekiah has the same mother as Jehoahaz (23:31) — both are sons of Josiah by Hamutal of Libnah. This makes Zedekiah Jehoahaz's full brother and Jehoiakim's half-brother. The eleven-year reign (597-586 BCE) spans the final decade of the kingdom of Judah. Zedekiah is the last king to sit on David's throne.
19. The comparison to Jehoiakim rather than to 'his ancestors' (the usual formula) is specific: Zedekiah follows the pattern of Jehoiakim's rebellion against Babylon and disregard for prophetic warning. Jeremiah's extensive interactions with Zedekiah (Jeremiah 21, 34, 37-38) reveal a weak king who sometimes seeks prophetic counsel but never acts on it.
20. The verse serves as a theological bridge between chapters 24 and 25: *ki al af YHWH haytah* ('because of the anger of the LORD it happened'). The phrase *ad hishlikho otam me'al panav* ('until he threw them from before his face') echoes the same language from 23:27 and 24:3 — the removal from God's presence is now approaching completion. Zedekiah's rebellion (*va-yimrod be-melek Bavel*) — probably encouraged by promises of Egyptian support (Ezekiel 17:15-17) — triggers the final siege that will destroy Jerusalem.

25

Summary: *Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon besieges Jerusalem in the ninth year of Zedekiah's reign, on the tenth day of the tenth month. The siege lasts until the eleventh year, when famine becomes so severe that there is no food for the people. The city wall is breached. Zedekiah and all his soldiers flee by night through a gap between the double walls near the king's garden, though the Chaldeans surround the city. They flee toward the Arabah, but the Chaldean army pursues and overtakes Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho. His army scatters. He is captured and brought to Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah, where they slaughter his sons before his eyes, put out his eyes, bind him in bronze chains, and take him to Babylon. In the fifth month, on the seventh day, Nebuzaradan captain of the guard arrives in Jerusalem. He burns the house of the LORD, the royal palace, and every great house in Jerusalem. The Chaldean army demolishes the walls. Nebuzaradan deports the remaining population, leaving only the poorest as vinedressers and farmers. The Chaldeans break up the bronze pillars, the stands, and the bronze sea in the house of the LORD and carry the bronze to Babylon. They take the pots, shovels, snuffers, ladles, and all the bronze vessels used in Temple service — along with the gold and silver firepans and basins. The narrator pauses to describe the pillars and the sea in detail, recording what is being lost. Nebuzaradan takes the chief priest Seraiah, the second priest Zephaniah, three doorkeepers, and other officials, brings them to Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah, and the king of Babylon strikes them down. Judah goes into exile from its land. Nebuchadnezzar appoints Gedaliah son of Ahikam as governor over the remnant. The scattered military commanders come to Gedaliah at Mizpah, and he urges them to serve the king of Babylon and live. But Ishmael son of Nethaniah, of royal blood, comes with ten men and assassinates Gedaliah along with the Judeans and Chaldeans at Mizpah. The entire remaining population flees to Egypt in fear of Babylonian reprisal. The book ends with a coda: in the thirty-seventh year of Jehoiachin's exile, Evil-merodach king of Babylon, in his accession year, releases Jehoiachin from prison, speaks kindly to him, sets his throne above the thrones of the other captive kings, changes his prison garments, and gives him a regular food allowance for the rest of his life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the final chapter of the Deuteronomistic History — the literary work that spans from Deuteronomy through 2 Kings. Everything in this massive narrative has been building toward this moment: the destruction of the Temple, the end of the Davidic monarchy, and the exile of God's people from the promised land. The narrator describes the burning of the Temple with devastating restraint — va-yisrof et beit YHWH ('he burned the house of the LORD') in a single clause. What Solomon built across four chapters of description (1 Kings 6-7) is destroyed in half a verse. The detailed inventory of Temple furnishings being carried to Babylon (verses 13-17) serves as a liturgical lament — the narrator is counting what has been lost, item by item, as one counts the possessions of the dead. The blinding of Zedekiah after forcing him to watch his sons' execution is calculated cruelty: the last thing his eyes see is the end of his dynasty. Yet the book does not end in total darkness. The release of Jehoiachin (verses 27-30) — from prison to the king's table, from captive garments to honored robes — is a slender thread of hope. The Davidic line survives, even in exile. The historian closes not with a theological pronouncement but with an image: a king eating bread at a foreign table, alive, for all the days of his life.*

Translation Friction: *The date of the Temple's destruction varies slightly between sources: verse 8 gives the seventh of the fifth month, while Jeremiah 52:12 gives the tenth. The discrepancy may reflect the arrival of Nebuzaradan versus the actual burning, or a textual variant. The appointment of Gedaliah and the subsequent events (verses 22-26) are told with extreme compression — Jeremiah 40-43 provides a much fuller account of the Gedaliah administration, Ishmael's conspiracy, and the flight to Egypt. The flight to Egypt is deeply ironic: the people who were brought out of Egypt by God now return there by their own choice, fleeing the consequences of the very covenant they broke. The Jehoiachin epilogue (verses 27-30) is debated: is it a note of genuine hope for the Davidic line, or merely a record of marginal survival? The answer shapes one's reading of the entire Deuteronomistic History. If hope, then the historian believes restoration is possible. If merely survival, then the story ends in exile without promise.*

Connections: *The destruction of the Temple reverses Solomon's dedication in 1 Kings 8, where the glory of the LORD filled the house. The exile fulfills the curses of Deuteronomy 28:36, 49-57, 63-68 with devastating specificity — foreign siege, famine, deportation, return to slavery. Zedekiah's blinding fulfills Ezekiel 12:13 ('I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, yet he will not see it'). The flight to Egypt inverts the exodus — the founding*

event of Israel is undone. The detailed Temple inventory connects to 1 Kings 7:15-50, creating a literary frame: what was built in chapters of glory is dismantled in paragraphs of loss. Gedaliah's assassination connects to Jeremiah 40-41 and is commemorated in the Fast of Gedaliah (Zechariah 7:5, 8:19). Jehoiachin's release connects to the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7 — God promised David's line would endure, and even in exile, a descendant of David sits at a king's table. The genealogy in Matthew 1:11-12 traces Jesus' lineage through Jehoiachin, making this exiled king an ancestor of the Messiah.

¹In the ninth year of Zedekiah's reign, in the tenth month, on the tenth day of the month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon advanced against Jerusalem with his entire army. They encamped against it and built siege works all around it. ²The city remained under siege until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah. ³By the ninth day of the fourth month, the famine in the city was so severe that there was no food for the people of the land. ⁴The city wall was breached. All the soldiers fled by night through the gate between the double walls near the king's garden, even though the Chaldeans surrounded the city. They headed toward the Arabah. ⁵The Chaldean army pursued the king and overtook him in the plains of Jericho. His entire army scattered, abandoning him. ⁶They captured the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah, where they pronounced judgment on him. ⁷They slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes. Then they put out Zedekiah's eyes, bound him in bronze chains, and took him to Babylon. ⁸In the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month — the nineteenth year of King Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon — Nebuzaradan, the captain of the guard, an officer of the king of Babylon, came to Jerusalem. ⁹He burned the house of the LORD, the royal palace, and every house in Jerusalem — every great house he burned down. ¹⁰The entire Chaldean army under the captain of the guard demolished the walls of Jerusalem on every side. ¹¹Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard deported the rest of the people remaining in the city, the deserters who had gone over to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the population. ¹²But the captain of the guard left some of the poorest of the land as vinedressers and farmworkers. ¹³The Chaldeans broke apart the bronze pillars in the house of the LORD, the stands, and the bronze sea in the house of the LORD, and carried the bronze to Babylon. ¹⁴They also took the pots, the shovels, the wick trimmers, the ladles, and all the bronze vessels used in the Temple service. ¹⁵The captain of the guard took the firepans and the sprinkling bowls — those of gold as gold, those of silver as silver. ¹⁶The two pillars, the one sea, and the stands that Solomon had made for the house of the LORD — the bronze of all these vessels was beyond weighing. ¹⁷Each pillar was eighteen cubits tall, with a bronze capital on top. The capital was three cubits high, with a lattice network and pomegranates all around it — entirely bronze. The second pillar was identical, with its own lattice network. ¹⁸The captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, Zephaniah the second priest, and the three doorkeepers. ¹⁹From the city he took one official who had been in charge of the soldiers, five men from the king's personal advisors who were found in the city, the army secretary who conscripted the people of the land, and sixty men of the people of the land found in the city. ²⁰Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah. ²¹The king of Babylon struck them down and put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. So Judah went into exile from its land. ²²Over the people remaining in the land of Judah — those Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left behind — he appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan as governor. ²³When all the military commanders and their men heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah, they came to him at Mizpah — Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan son of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah the son of the Maacathite, along with their men. ²⁴Gedaliah swore an oath to them and their men, saying, "Do not be afraid to serve the Chaldeans. Settle in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well for you." ²⁵But in the seventh month, Ishmael son of Nethaniah son of Elishama, of royal descent, came with ten men and struck down Gedaliah. He died — along with the Judeans and the Chaldeans who were with him at Mizpah. ²⁶Then the entire remaining population — from the least to the greatest — along with the military commanders, set out and went to Egypt, because they were afraid of the Chaldeans. ²⁷In the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, Evil-merodach king of Babylon, in the year he became king, released Jehoiachin king of Judah from prison. ²⁸He spoke kindly to him and set his seat above the seats of the other kings who were with him in Babylon. ²⁹He changed out of his prison garments and ate regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life. ³⁰His food allowance, a regular daily provision, was given to him by the king — each day's

portion for that day — for the rest of his life.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date — the tenth of Tevet, roughly January 588 BCE — is recorded with the precision of a catastrophe that must never be forgotten. This date became a permanent fast day in Jewish tradition (the Tenth of Tevet). The phrase *hu ve-khol cheilo* ('he and all his army') indicates the full military force of Babylon. The *dayeq* ('siege wall, siege ramp') built *saviv* ('all around') means complete encirclement — no food enters, no one escapes.
2. The siege lasted approximately eighteen months — from January 588 to July 586 BCE (with a brief interruption when an Egyptian army approached, Jeremiah 37:5-11). The compressed timeframe of this verse — from the ninth year to the eleventh — passes over months of starvation, suffering, and desperation in a single sentence. The word *matsor* ('siege') carries the full weight of that hidden suffering.
3. The fourth month is Tammuz (approximately July 586 BCE). The phrase *va-yechezaq ha-ra'av ba-ir* ('the famine grew strong/prevailed in the city') uses the verb *chazaq* ('to be strong, to overpower') — the famine has become the dominant force in the city, stronger than any defense. The final phrase *ve-lo hayah lechem le-am ha-arets* ('there was no bread for the people of the land') is absolute: not scarce bread, not rationed bread, but no bread. Lamentations 4:4-10 describes the horrors of this famine in graphic detail.
4. The verb *va-tibbqa* ('it was breached, split open') is the decisive moment — the walls that had held for eighteen months are broken. The escape route — *derekh sha'ar bein ha-chomotayim* ('through the gate between the two walls') — was a passage between the inner and outer walls near the king's garden in the southeastern part of the city, leading toward the Kidron Valley. The Arabah is the Jordan Rift Valley — they are fleeing east toward the desert. The parenthetical note — *ve-Kasdim al ha-ir saviv* ('the Chaldeans all around the city') — makes the escape seem impossible.
5. The *arvot Yericho* ('plains/steppes of Jericho') is where Israel first entered the promised land under Joshua (Joshua 4:13). The last king of Judah is captured at the very place where the conquest began — the entry point becomes the exit point. The phrase *ve-khol cheilo nafotsu me'alav* ('all his army scattered from upon him') describes total military collapse: the soldiers abandon their king and flee in all directions.
6. *Riblah* — the same place where Neco imprisoned Jehoahaz (23:33) — is Nebuchadnezzar's military headquarters in Syria. The phrase *va-yedabberu itto mishpat* ('they spoke judgment with him') is a formal legal proceeding: Zedekiah is tried as a treaty-breaker. In the ancient Near East, rebellion against a suzerain was the most serious political crime, punishable by the most severe penalties.
7. The sequence is calculated: first, the execution of his sons (*shachatu*, 'they slaughtered' — a verb also used for animal sacrifice) *le-einav* ('before his eyes'), ensuring the last thing those eyes see is the end of the Davidic line through him. Then *et einei Tsidqiyahu ivver* ('they blinded Zedekiah's eyes'). The bronze chains (*nechushtayim*) are a final humiliation — the king enters Babylon not in royal procession but in fetters. Ezekiel 12:13 had prophesied: 'I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans, yet he will not see it' — fulfilled with terrible literalness.
8. The fifth month is Av (approximately August 586 BCE). *Nebuzaradan* (*Nevuzar'adan*, from Akkadian *Nabu-zera-iddina*, 'Nabu has given offspring') holds the title *rav tabbachim* ('chief of the executioners/slaughterers' or 'captain of the guard'). He is the instrument of destruction — the man who will carry out the burning. The nineteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar dates to 586 BCE. The ninth of Av (*Tisha B'Av*) became the most solemn fast day in Judaism, commemorating this destruction.
9. The verb *saraf* ('to burn') is used four times in connection with the Temple throughout Kings — for the incense burned in worship and now for the burning of the building itself. The house where God placed his name (1 Kings 8:29) is now ash. The simplicity of the sentence is its power: no theological commentary, no prophetic lament, just the statement of fact. The narrator trusts the reader to understand the magnitude.
10. The demolition of the walls — *ve-et chomot Yerushalayim saviv natsu* ('they tore down the walls of Jerusalem all around') — removes Jerusalem's identity as a fortified city. Walls defined a city in the ancient world; without them, Jerusalem is merely an open settlement. The verb *natats* ('to tear down, to demolish') is the same verb used for Josiah's destruction of pagan altars — now applied to the city's own defenses.
11. Three groups are deported: *yeter ha-am ha-nish'arim ba-ir* ('the rest of the people remaining in the city'), *ha-noflim asher naflu al melek Bavel* ('the deserters who had fallen/defected to the king of Babylon' — even surrender provided no exemption), and *yeter he-hamon* ('the rest of the multitude'). The comprehensive nature of the deportation means essentially everyone goes.
12. The remnant — *mi-dallot ha-arets* ('from the poorest of the land') — are left not out of mercy but for economic utility: *le-khormim u-le-yogvim* ('as vinedressers and as farmers/field workers'). The land must continue producing agricultural revenue for Babylon. The people deemed too insignificant to deport now become the caretakers of the promised land — the weakest, most marginal members of society.
13. The dismantling of the Temple furnishings begins with the largest bronze items: *ammudei ha-nechoshet* ('the bronze pillars' — Jachin and Boaz, 1 Kings 7:15-22), *ha-mekhonot* ('the stands/movable bases,' 1 Kings 7:27-37), and *yam ha-nechoshet* ('the bronze sea,' 1 Kings 7:23-26). The verb *shibberu* ('they broke apart') indicates the pieces were too large to transport whole. What Hiram of Tyre crafted with exquisite skill (1 Kings 7:13-47) is now raw material for Babylonian furnaces.
14. The inventory descends from monumental pieces to everyday cultic utensils: *sirot* ('pots, cooking vessels'), *ya'im* ('shovels, ash-scoops'), *mezammerot* ('snuffers, wick trimmers'), *kappot* ('ladles, bowls'). The phrase *asher yeshartu vam* ('with which they served/ministered') is poignant — these are not merely objects but instruments of worship, each one used in the daily service of God. The thoroughness of the plundering — even small utensils are taken — indicates nothing of value is left.

15. The *machtot* ('firepans, censers') and *mizraqot* ('sprinkling bowls') are specifically inventoried by material: *asher zahav zahav va-asher kesef kasef* ('what was gold, gold; what was silver, silver'). The repetition emphasizes that the Babylonians sorted the plunder by precious metal — the sacred objects are valued only for their material worth. What was consecrated for worship becomes bullion.
16. The narrator pauses the destruction narrative to catalog what is being lost: *ha-ammudim shenayim*, *ha-yam ha-echad*, *ve-ha-mekhonot* ('the two pillars, the one sea, and the stands'). Each item is linked to Solomon — *asher asah Shelomoh le-veit YHWH* ('which Solomon made for the house of the LORD'). The phrase *lo hayah mishqal* ('there was no weight,' meaning the bronze was too vast to measure) echoes 1 Kings 7:47, where Solomon's bronze vessels were so numerous that 'the weight of the bronze was not determined.' The same phrase that described abundance at creation now describes loss at destruction.
17. The dimensions — *shemoneh esreh ammah* ('eighteen cubits,' approximately 27 feet or 8 meters) — match the original description in 1 Kings 7:15. The *koteret* ('capital, crown') with its *sevakhah* ('lattice, network') and *rimmonim* ('pomegranates') are described exactly as they were in 1 Kings 7:17-20. The narrator is writing an obituary for the Temple's most visible features: the twin pillars Jachin and Boaz that stood at the entrance as symbols of divine establishment and strength. Their destruction marks the end of what they symbolized.
18. Seraiah (Serayah, 'the LORD contends') the *kohen ha-rosh* ('chief priest, head priest') was the grandson of Hilkiah who found the Book of the Law (1 Chronicles 5:39-40). Zephaniah (Tsefanyahu) is the *kohen mishneh* ('second priest, deputy priest'). The three *shomrei ha-saf* ('keepers of the threshold') are the senior Temple gatekeepers. The religious leadership is systematically removed — the Temple's destruction is not just architectural but institutional.
19. The arrested officials represent every sector of governance: a military commander (*saris echad asher hu paqid al anshei ha-milchamah*), five royal advisors (*chamishshah anashim me-ro'ei fenei ha-melek*, literally 'from those who see the king's face' — the inner council), the military secretary (*ha-sofer sar ha-tsava*, responsible for conscription), and sixty prominent citizens (*me-am ha-arets*). The systematic arrest ensures no leadership structure survives to organize resistance.
20. The prisoners are transported to Riblah for judgment — the same military tribunal that sentenced Zedekiah. The repetition of the route (from Jerusalem to Riblah) creates a pattern: one by one, the leadership of Judah is extracted and brought before Nebuchadnezzar.
21. The verb *va-yakh* ('he struck') followed by *va-yemidem* ('he put them to death') describes formal execution. The geographical note — *be-Rivlah be-erets Chamat* ('at Riblah in the land of Hamath') — places the execution far from Jerusalem, in Syrian territory. The concluding statement *va-yigel Yehudah me'al admato* is the most devastating sentence in Kings.
22. Gedaliah (Gedalyahu, 'the LORD has made great') belongs to the Shaphan family that had been instrumental in Josiah's reform: his grandfather Shaphan was the secretary who read the scroll to Josiah (22:8-10), and his father Ahikam protected Jeremiah from execution (Jeremiah 26:24). The appointment of a Judean governor rather than a Babylonian official suggests Babylon intended to administer Judah through a cooperative local elite. The remnant community is now a province, not a kingdom.
23. The scattered military remnants gather at Mizpah (*ha-Mitspah*, a town north of Jerusalem, possibly Tell en-Nasbeh), which becomes the administrative center of the remnant community. Four commanders are named: Ishmael son of Nethaniah (of royal blood, verse 25), Johanan son of Kareah (who later warned Gedaliah about Ishmael's plot, Jeremiah 40:13-16), Seraiah from Netophah (near Bethlehem), and Jaazaniah the Maacathite. The gathering suggests initial acceptance of Babylonian-appointed governance.
24. Gedaliah's counsel — *shevu va-arets ve-ivdu et melek Bavel ve-yitav lakhem* ('settle in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will be good for you') — echoes Jeremiah's controversial advice to submit to Babylon (Jeremiah 27:11, 29:5-7). The phrase *ve-yitav lakhem* ('it will be good/well for you') is a conditional promise: survival depends on cooperation. This mirrors the prophet Jeremiah's letter to the exiles urging them to seek the welfare of the city where they are sent.
25. The assassination in the seventh month (Tishrei, roughly October 586 BCE) destroys the remnant community's fragile stability. Ishmael is *mi-zera ha-melukhah* ('of the seed of the kingdom, of royal descent') — his motive is at least partly dynastic: a member of the royal house assassinates the non-royal governor. The murder of both Judeans and Chaldeans (Babylonian officials stationed with Gedaliah) ensures Babylonian reprisal. Jeremiah 41 provides the full account, including Ishmael's massacre of seventy pilgrims and his flight to Ammon.
26. The flight to Egypt — *va-yavo'u Mitsrayim* ('they came to Egypt') — is the final irony of the Deuteronomistic History. The people whom God brought out of Egypt now return there voluntarily, fleeing the consequences of covenant violation. Deuteronomy 28:68 warned: 'The LORD will bring you back to Egypt in ships' — the return to Egypt represents the complete reversal of the exodus. The phrase *ki yar'u mippenei Kasdim* ('because they feared the Chaldeans') explains the motive: fear of Babylonian reprisal for Gedaliah's assassination. Jeremiah 42-43 records the prophet's desperate plea not to go to Egypt, which the people ignore.
27. The coda begins with precise dating: the thirty-seventh year of Jehoiachin's exile (approximately 561 BCE), the twelfth month (Adar), the twenty-seventh day. Evil-merodach (Evil Merodakh, from Akkadian Amel-Marduk, 'man of Marduk') succeeded Nebuchadnezzar in 562 BCE. The phrase *nasa et rosh* ('he lifted the head of') means to restore honor or grant favor — the opposite of execution (where the head is also 'lifted,' but removed from the body). Jehoiachin has been in prison for thirty-seven years.
28. The phrase *va-yedabber itto tovot* ('he spoke good things with him, he spoke kindly to him') is the language of grace after judgment. The elevation of Jehoiachin's throne — *me'al kisse ha-melakhim asher itto be-Vavel* ('above the throne/seat of the kings who were with him in Babylon') — means Jehoiachin receives precedence among the captive kings held at the Babylonian court. Babylonian administrative tablets discovered at the Ishtar Gate list rations for 'Yaukin king of the land of Yahud' (Jehoiachin), confirming his presence in Babylon as a royal prisoner.

- 29.** The changing of garments — *ve-shinnah et bigdei khil'o* ('he changed his prison clothes') — is a symbolic restoration: the clothes of captivity are replaced. The phrase *akhal lechem tamid lefanav* ('he ate bread continually before him') means a permanent place at the royal table — provision, honor, presence. The phrase *kol yemei chayyav* ('all the days of his life') extends this grace to the end. A descendant of David eats bread at a foreign king's table — diminished, dependent, but alive.
- 30.** The word *aruchah* ('allowance, portion, meal') appears in its doubled form — *aruchato aruchat tamid* — for emphasis. The phrase *dvar yom be-yomo* ('the matter of a day on its day') echoes the manna provision in Exodus 16:4, where God provided bread *dvar yom be-yomo* ('day by day'). The parallel may be intentional: as God sustained Israel in the wilderness between Egypt and the promised land, so now a descendant of David is sustained in exile between the land and whatever comes next. The Deuteronomistic History ends with bread, survival, and an open future.

1 Chronicles

Summary: *The Chronicler opens with a breathtaking genealogical sweep from Adam to Abraham and then through Abraham's descendants, tracing the line through which God's covenant purposes move. The chapter covers humanity's origins through the Table of Nations (drawing on Genesis 5, 10, and 25), then narrows to Abraham's sons through Hagar, Sarah, and Keturah, and finally lists the rulers and clans of Edom. No narrative accompanies these names — the Chronicler expects the reader to know the stories and to understand that each name represents a link in the chain from creation to Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the most compressed genealogical text in the Hebrew Bible — the entire span from Adam to Esau's descendants in 54 verses. The Chronicler strips away every narrative detail from Genesis: no creation account, no flood story, no tower of Babel, no binding of Isaac. Only names remain. Yet the structure itself is an argument: by beginning at Adam rather than Abraham, the Chronicler claims that Israel's story is not merely national but cosmic. The line from Adam through Seth (not Cain) through Shem (not Ham or Japheth) through Abraham (not Nahor or Haran) through Isaac (not Ishmael) through Israel (not Esau) traces a single chosen thread through all of humanity. The inclusion of Edom's kings (verses 43-54) is particularly striking — these are the rulers of a nation that had no Davidic dynasty, listed here precisely to contrast with the royal line the Chronicler is about to establish in Judah.*

Translation Friction: *The genealogical lists draw on Genesis 5 (Adam to Noah), Genesis 10 (Table of Nations), Genesis 25 (Ishmael and Keturah), and Genesis 36 (Edom). Some name spellings differ between Chronicles and Genesis — for example, Diphath (v. 6) versus Riphath in Genesis 10:3, and Alian (v. 40) versus Alvan in Genesis 36:23. These variations reflect different manuscript traditions or scribal transmission, not errors. We follow the WLC spellings for Chronicles while noting Genesis parallels. The phrase 'Abraham fathered Isaac' (v. 28) compresses decades of covenant narrative into three words — the Chronicler assumes his audience already knows the story of promise, barrenness, and miraculous birth.*

Connections: *The genealogical structure mirrors Genesis but with a post-exilic purpose: the community that returned from Babylon needed to know who they were and where they came from. The line Adam-Seth-Enosh-Kenan through to Abraham establishes that Israel's identity is rooted in God's purposes from creation itself. The Table of Nations material (vv. 5-23) parallels Genesis 10 and situates Israel within the family of all nations — the same nations the returning exiles now lived among. The Edomite king list (vv. 43-54) anticipates the Chronicler's interest in kingship: Edom had kings 'before any king reigned over Israel' (v. 43, echoing Genesis 36:31), setting*

the stage for the Davidic monarchy as God's definitive answer to the question of how Israel would be governed.

¹Adam; Seth, Enosh, ²Kenan, Mahalalel, and Jered, ³Enoch, Methuselah, and Lamech, ⁴Noah, Shem, and Ham and Japheth. ⁵The sons of Japheth: Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshech, and Tiras. ⁶The sons of Gomer: Ashkenaz, Diphath, and Togarmah. ⁷The sons of Javan: Elishah, Tarshishah, Kittim, and Rodanim. ⁸The sons of Ham: Cush, Mizraim, Put, and Canaan. ⁹The sons of Cush: Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raama, and Sabteca. The sons of Raama: Sheba and Dedan. ¹⁰Cush fathered Nimrod — he was the first to become a powerful warrior on the earth. ¹¹Mizraim fathered the Ludim, Ananim, Lehabim, and Naphtuhim, ¹²the Pathrusim, the Casluhim — from whom the Philistines descended — and the Caphtorim. ¹³Canaan fathered Sidon his firstborn, and Heth, ¹⁴and the Jebusite, the Amorite, and the Girgashite, ¹⁵and the Hivite, the Arkite and the Sinite, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁶and the Arvadite, the Zemarite and the Hamathite — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁷The sons of Shem: Elam, Asshur, Arpachshad, Lud, and Aram. And Uz, Hul, Gether, and Meshech. ¹⁸Arpachshad fathered Shelah, and Shelah fathered Eber. ¹⁹Eber had two sons: one was named Peleg — for during his lifetime the earth was divided — and his brother was named Joktan. ²⁰Joktan fathered Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, and Jerah, ²¹Hadoram, Uzal, and Diklah, ²²Ebal, Abimael, and Sheba, ²³Ophir; Havilah, and Jobab. All these were the sons of Joktan. ²⁴Shem, Arpachshad, Shelah, ²⁵Eber, Peleg, and Reu, ²⁶Serug, Nahor, and Terah, ²⁷Abram — that is, Abraham. ²⁸These were the sons of Abraham: Isaac and Ishmael. ²⁹These are their descendants: The firstborn of Ishmael was Nebaioth, then Kedar, Adbeel, and Mibsam, ³⁰Mishma, Dumah, Massa, Hadad, and Tema, ³¹These were jetur, Naphish and Kedemah. These are the sons of Ishmael. ³²The sons of Keturah, Abraham's concubine — she bore Zimran, Jokshan, Medan, Midian, Ishbak, and Shuah. The sons of Jokshan: Sheba and Dedan. ³³The sons of Midian: Ephah, Ephraim, Enoch, Abida, and Eldaah. All these were the sons of Keturah. ³⁴Abraham fathered Isaac. The sons of Isaac: Esau and Israel. ³⁵The sons of Esau: Eliphaz, Reuel, Jeush, Jaalam, and Korah. ³⁶The sons of Eliphaz: Teman, Omar, Zephi, Gatam, Kenaz, Timna, and Amalek. ³⁷These were the sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah, and Shammah and Mizzah. ³⁸The sons of Seir: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. ³⁹The sons of Lotan: Hori and Homam. Lotan's sister was Timna. ⁴⁰The sons of Shobal: Alian, Manahath, Ebal, Shephi, and Onam. The sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah. ⁴¹The son of Anah: Dishon. The sons of Dishon: Hamran, Eshban, Ithran, and Cheran. ⁴²The sons of Ezer: Bilhan; Zaavan, and Jaakan. The sons of Dishan: Uz, and Aran. ⁴³These are the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any king reigned over the sons of Israel: Bela son of Beor, and his city was named Dinhabah. ⁴⁴When Bela died, Jobab son of Zerah from Bozrah reigned in his place. ⁴⁵When Jobab died, Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place. ⁴⁶When Husham died, Hadad son of Bedad reigned in his place — the one who defeated Midian in the territory of Moab. His city was named Avith. ⁴⁷When Hadad died, Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place. ⁴⁸When Samlah died, Shaul from Rehoboth-on-the-River reigned in his place. ⁴⁹When Shaul died, Baal-hanan son of Achbor reigned in his place. ⁵⁰When Baal-hanan died, Hadad reigned in his place. His city was named Pai, and his wife's name was Mehetabel daughter of Matred, daughter of Me-zahab. ⁵¹When Hadad died, the chiefs of Edom were: chief Timna, chief Aliah, chief Jetheth, ⁵²chief Oholibamah, chief Elah, chief Pinon, ⁵³chief Kenaz, chief Teman, chief Mibzar, ⁵⁴chief Magdiel, chief Iram. These are the chiefs of Edom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler begins not with 'In the beginning' but with a bare name: Adam. No creation narrative, no garden, no fall — just the name that means 'humanity' (from adamah, 'ground/earth'). By starting here, the Chronicler anchors Israel's story in the origin of all human life. Seth (Shet, 'appointed') was the son born after Abel's murder, the replacement through whom the godly line continues. Enosh means 'mortal man' or 'frail one' — Genesis 4:26 notes that in his time people began calling on the name of the LORD.
2. Kenan (Qenan) may derive from qen ('nest') or qanah ('to acquire'). Mahalalel means 'praise of God' (from mahalal + El), one of the few names in this pre-flood list that explicitly invokes God. Jered (Yered, 'descent') — in his days, according to later tradition, the 'descent' of wickedness intensified, though the Chronicler does not comment on this. These names compress Genesis 5:9-18 into a single verse.
3. Enoch (Chanokh, 'dedicated/initiated') is the figure Genesis 5:24 says 'walked with God, and he was not, for God took him.' The Chronicler includes him without comment — the audience knows the story. Methuselah (Metushelach, possibly 'man of the dart' or 'his death shall send') lived 969 years according to Genesis 5:27, the longest-lived human in Scripture. Lamech (Lemekh), Noah's father, expressed the hope that his son would bring 'rest' (Genesis 5:29). The Chronicler preserves none of these details; the names alone carry the weight.

4. Noah (Noach, 'rest/comfort') marks the great division point — the flood that reset humanity. The Chronicler skips the entire flood narrative and moves directly to Noah's three sons: Shem ('name/renown'), Ham ('hot/dark'), and Japheth ('opened/enlarged'). The order Shem-Ham-Japheth is conventional, though Japheth was likely the eldest (Genesis 10:21). The Chronicler lists Shem first because it is through Shem that the line to Abraham runs. The *setumah* (closed paragraph marker) after this verse indicates a structural break — the transition from the linear genealogy to the branching Table of Nations.
5. The Japhethite peoples represent nations to the north and west of Israel. Gomer is associated with the Cimmerians of Anatolia; Magog with peoples north of the Black Sea (later apocalypticized in Ezekiel 38-39); Madai with the Medes of Iran; Javan with the Ionians/Greeks; Tubal and Meshech with peoples of eastern Anatolia; Tiras possibly with the Tyrrhenians or Thracians. For the post-exilic community, these were not abstract names — they represented the empires and peoples among whom Israel now lived as a subject nation.
6. Ashkenaz is associated with the Scythians or a people near Armenia — the name later became the designation for Jews of Central and Eastern Europe. Diphath appears as Riphath in Genesis 10:3; the variation between dalet and resh is one of the most common scribal confusions in Hebrew manuscripts, as the two letters are nearly identical in many scripts. Togarmah is generally identified with Armenia or eastern Anatolia. Ezekiel 27:14 mentions Beth-Togarmah as a trading partner supplying horses and mules.
7. Javan's sons represent Mediterranean coastal and island peoples. Elishah is likely Alashiya (Cyprus or part of it). Tarshishah is the distant western port — possibly Tartessus in Spain — that became a byword for the farthest reaches of maritime trade. Kittim originally referred to Kition on Cyprus but later became a general term for western Mediterranean peoples (Daniel 11:30 uses it for Rome). Rodanim (Genesis 10:4 has Dodanim) may refer to the people of Rhodes. The resh/dalet variation again reflects manuscript transmission differences.
8. Ham's sons represent peoples to the south and southwest of Israel. Cush is Ethiopia/Nubia (the upper Nile region). Mizraim is Egypt — the dual form (-ayim) may reflect Upper and Lower Egypt. Put is Libya or Punt (the Horn of Africa). Canaan is the land Israel was given — listing Canaan as a son of Ham carries theological weight, since the Chronicler's audience understood that Canaan's territory had been promised to Shem's descendants through Abraham. The genealogical structure enacts the dispossession: Canaan belongs to Ham's line, but the land belongs to Israel.
9. These Cushite clans are associated with peoples of the Arabian Peninsula and the Horn of Africa. Seba is a region in northeastern Africa (Isaiah 43:3 pairs Seba with Egypt and Cush). Havilah ('sandy region') appears in both Hamite and Semitic genealogies, indicating overlapping territories. Sheba (distinct from Seba) became famous for its queen who visited Solomon (1 Kings 10), and Dedan was a major Arabian trading center. The Chronicler includes these names to show the full scope of the nations before narrowing to Israel's line.
10. Nimrod is the only individual in this entire Table of Nations section who receives a characterization rather than merely a listing. The phrase *hu hechel lihyot gibbor ba'arets* ('he began to be a mighty one in the earth') marks him as the archetype of imperial power. The word *gibbor* ('mighty warrior, hero') is loaded — it can be positive (David's mighty men) or ominous (the *nephilim* of Genesis 6:4 are called *gibborim*). The verb *hechel* ('began') suggests he inaugurated a new kind of human dominance. Genesis 10:10-12 connects him with Babel, Erech, Akkad, and Nineveh — the great Mesopotamian empires. The Chronicler's post-exilic audience, recently returned from Babylonian captivity, would have heard this name with particular resonance.
11. These are peoples descended from Egypt (Mizraim), listed with the plural suffix -im indicating ethnic groups rather than individuals. The Ludim are likely Libyans (distinct from Lud son of Shem). The Anamim are otherwise unknown. The Lehabim may be another Libyan group (related to *lubim*, 'Libyans'). The Naphtuhim are possibly connected with the Nile Delta region (*na-ptah*, 'those of Ptah,' the Egyptian god associated with Memphis). The Chronicler reproduces Genesis 10:13 faithfully, preserving Egypt's place within the family of nations.
12. The Pathrusim are from Pathros (Upper Egypt, the southern region). The parenthetical note *asher yatse'u misham Pelishtim* ('from whom the Philistines came out') is significant — it traces Israel's historic enemy the Philistines to an Egyptian origin, though other texts (Amos 9:7, Jeremiah 47:4) associate them with Caphtor (Crete). The Caphtorim are indeed connected with Crete or the Aegean islands. This genealogical note reflects the complex migration history of the Sea Peoples, of whom the Philistines were the most prominent group to settle in Canaan.
13. Sidon (Tsidon) is both a person and the great Phoenician coastal city — the city that would become Tyre's rival and a major maritime power. Listing Sidon as Canaan's firstborn establishes the Phoenicians as part of the Canaanite family. Heth is the ancestor of the Hittites (*bnei Chet*), the people from whom Abraham purchased the cave of Machpelah to bury Sarah (Genesis 23). The Hittites appear throughout the patriarchal narratives as residents of Canaan, distinct from the great Hittite empire of Anatolia.
14. These three peoples are among the standard list of Canaan's inhabitants whom Israel was to displace. The Jebusites held Jerusalem until David conquered it (2 Samuel 5:6-9) — for the Chronicler's audience, the Jebusites represent the people whose city became Zion. The Amorites were the dominant highland people of Canaan, often used as a general term for all pre-Israelite inhabitants. The Girgashites are the most obscure of the Canaanite peoples, mentioned in lists but never in narrative.
15. The Hivites appear in several biblical narratives — the Gibeonites who tricked Joshua were Hivites (Joshua 9:7), and Shechem son of Hamor was a Hivite (Genesis 34:2). The Arkite is associated with Arqa, a city in northern Phoenicia (modern Tell Arqa in Lebanon). The Sinite is connected with the city of Siannu, also in northern Phoenicia. As the list moves from major Canaanite groups to smaller city-states, the Chronicler is mapping the full extent of Canaan's territory.
16. The Arvadite is from the island-city of Arvad (modern Arwad) off the Syrian coast, a Phoenician maritime center mentioned in Ezekiel 27:8, 11. The Zemarite is from Sumur/Simyra in northern Phoenicia. The Hamathite is from Hamath on the Orontes River in Syria — 'the entrance of Hamath' (*levo Chamat*) became a standard way to describe Israel's ideal northern boundary (Numbers 34:8, 1 Kings 8:65). The *petuchah* paragraph marker

signals the end of the Canaanite section.

17. The Chronicler now turns to Shem's line — the critical branch, since Abraham descends from Shem through Arpachshad. Elam is the ancient civilization east of Mesopotamia (modern southwestern Iran). Asshur is Assyria. Arpachshad is the ancestor through whom the line to Abraham runs. Lud may be Lydia in western Anatolia. Aram represents the Aramean peoples of Syria and Upper Mesopotamia. The second group (Uz, Hul, Gether, Meshech) are sons of Aram in Genesis 10:23. The Chronicler compresses the list, omitting the explicit 'sons of Aram' designation. Uz is notable as the homeland of Job (Job 1:1). Meshech here (Meshekh) is distinct from the Japhethite Meshech in verse 5.
18. This is the critical genealogical link: Arpachshad to Shelah (Shelach, possibly 'sent forth' or 'missile') to Eber (Ever). Eber is the eponymous ancestor of the Hebrews (Ivrim, 'those from the other side') — the designation that would define Abraham and his descendants. The name derives from the root *avar* ('to cross over'), and whether it originally meant 'those from beyond the river' (the Euphrates) or simply 'crossers/transients,' it became Israel's ethnic identifier in relation to other peoples.
19. This is one of only two explanatory notes the Chronicler preserves from Genesis in this entire chapter — a clue to what he considers essential. Peleg (from *palag*, 'to divide/split') is named because *beyamav niflega ha'arets* ('in his days the earth was divided'). Whether this refers to the division of languages at Babel (Genesis 11:1-9), a geographic separation of peoples, or even an ancient irrigation or tectonic event is debated. The Chronicler retains the note because Peleg is the ancestor of Abraham — the line continues through the one associated with division, not through Joktan. Joktan's line (the Arabian peoples listed next) branches away from the messianic genealogy.
20. Joktan's thirteen sons represent Arabian peoples and territories. Almodad is the first — his identification is uncertain, possibly a south Arabian tribe. Sheleph may be connected with the Salif region of Yemen. Hazarmaveth (Chatsar-mavet, 'court/enclosure of death') is clearly identifiable with Hadramaut, the important region of southern Arabia (modern eastern Yemen). Jerah (Yerach, 'moon') may be connected with a lunar deity or a moon-worshipping tribe. These identifications place Joktan's descendants firmly in the Arabian Peninsula.
21. Hadoram may be connected with Dauram, a tribe in southern Arabia. Uzal is widely identified with Sana'a, the capital of Yemen — the ancient name of the city may have been Azal/Uzal. Diklah (Dighlah) means 'palm grove' and likely refers to a palm-growing region of Arabia. These names would have been recognizable to the Chronicler's audience as established Arabian trading peoples and regions.
22. Ebal (Eval) — Genesis 10:28 has Obal (Oval), another *resh/dalet*-type variant, though here it is a *bet/vav* difference. Abimael (Avima'el, 'my father is God' or 'God is father') contains the theophoric element *El*. Sheba appears again — distinct from the Cushite Sheba in verse 9. This Joktanite Sheba is the one most scholars connect with the kingdom of Saba in Yemen, the realm of the queen who visited Solomon. The duplication of Sheba in both Hamite and Semitic lines likely reflects the complex ethnic reality of Arabian peoples.
23. Ophir is the famous gold-producing region from which Solomon's fleet brought treasure (1 Kings 9:28, 10:11). Its location is debated — Arabia, East Africa, and India have all been proposed. Havilah ('sandy land') appears here in Joktan's line as well as in Cush's line (v. 9), again reflecting overlapping territorial designations. Jobab (Yovav) may be connected with the name Job, and some ancient traditions identified him with Job of Uz, though this is uncertain. The closing formula *kol elleh benei Yoqtan* ('all these were the sons of Joktan') wraps up the Arabian branch before the Chronicler returns to the main genealogical line.
24. The Chronicler now resets and traces the direct line from Shem to Abraham, picking up Peleg's branch and leaving Joktan behind. This repetition is not redundant — it is the Chronicler's technique of zooming out to show the whole picture, then zooming in on the chosen line. Shem-Arpachshad-Shelah was already given in verses 17-18, but now the genealogy will carry forward without branching, moving in a straight line toward Abraham.
25. The line continues through Peleg (not Joktan) — the chosen branch. Reu (Re'u, 'friend' or 'shepherd') is otherwise known only from the Genesis 11 genealogy. These verses (24-27) compress Genesis 11:10-26 into four verses, stripping away all the age and lifespan data that Genesis provides. The Chronicler does not care how long these men lived; he cares only that they form the bridge from Shem to Abraham.
26. Serug (Serug, possibly from a root meaning 'branch' or 'tendrill') — the city of Sarugi in Upper Mesopotamia may preserve his name. Nahor (Nachor, 'snorer' or 'snorter') is Abraham's grandfather, not to be confused with Abraham's brother of the same name. Terah (Terach) is Abraham's father, who according to Genesis 11:31 initiated the migration from Ur of the Chaldees toward Canaan but stopped at Haran. Joshua 24:2 states that Terah served other gods — the Chronicler omits this, but the audience would know that Abraham's call required a break from his father's idolatry.
27. The Chronicler notes the name change: Avram ('exalted father') to Avraham ('father of a multitude'). The explanatory phrase *hu Avraham* ('he is Abraham') is the Chronicler's way of linking the genealogical name with the covenant name. God changed Abram's name in Genesis 17:5 as part of the covenant ceremony that included circumcision and the promise of nations. The Chronicler does not recount the covenant — a single pronoun (*hu*, 'he') carries the entire weight of the Abrahamic narrative. This is the destination the genealogy has been driving toward since verse 1: Adam to Abraham, creation to covenant, in twenty-seven verses.
28. The Chronicler lists Isaac (Yitschaq, 'he laughs') first, though Ishmael (Yishma'el, 'God hears') was born first. This is not chronological but theological ordering — Isaac is the son of promise, the covenant heir. The entire drama of Genesis 16-22 (Hagar and Sarah, the birth of Ishmael, the binding of Isaac) is compressed into two names joined by a conjunction. The *petuchah* marker signals a structural break: Abraham has been reached, and now his descendants will be enumerated.
29. The Chronicler handles Ishmael's line first (the non-chosen branch) before turning to Isaac's — his consistent technique of clearing away side branches before following the main line. The formula *elleh toledotam* ('these are their descendants') echoes the *toledot* ('generations') formula that structures Genesis. Nebaioth (Nevayot) is associated with the Nabataeans, the powerful Arabian trading people. Kedar (Qedar, 'dark/swarthy')

became a prominent north Arabian tribe mentioned frequently in prophetic literature (Isaiah 21:16-17, 42:11, 60:7). Adbeel and Mibsam are less well identified but represent Arabian clans.

30. Dumah (Dumah, 'silence') is connected with the oasis of Dumat al-Jandal in northern Arabia (modern al-Jawf). Isaiah 21:11 uses Dumah as an oracle heading. Massa (Massa, 'burden' or 'oracle') is the tribe whose wisdom tradition may stand behind Proverbs 30:1 and 31:1, where massa can be read as either 'oracle' or the tribal name. Tema (Teima) is the important Arabian oasis city of Tayma, mentioned in Job 6:19 and Isaiah 21:14. Hadad is a common Semitic name associated with the storm god — it appears frequently in Edomite king names later in this chapter.
31. Jetur (Yetur) and Naphish (Nafish) reappear in 1 Chronicles 5:19, where the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh wage war against them — the Chronicler is planting a cross-reference within his own work. Kedemah (Qedemah, 'eastward') appropriately closes the list as the tribes spread eastward into Arabia. The closing formula *elleh hem benei Yishma'el* ('these are the sons of Ishmael') with the emphatic pronoun *hem* ('they') wraps up the Ishmaelite branch. Twelve sons for Ishmael, fulfilling God's promise to Abraham in Genesis 17:20.
32. Keturah (Qeturah, 'incense') is called *pilegesh* ('concubine') here, though Genesis 25:1 calls her Abraham's 'wife.' The Chronicler may be using the term to distinguish her status from Sarah's or reflecting an alternative tradition. Her sons represent peoples of the Arabian and Transjordanian regions. Midian (Midyan) is the most significant — the Midianites play major roles in the stories of Moses (who married a Midianite) and Gideon (who fought them). Shuah (Shuach) may be connected with Bildad the Shuhite in Job 2:11. Sheba and Dedan appear again — different from both the Cushite and Joktanite bearers of these names, illustrating how trading regions attracted multiple ethnic affiliations.
33. Ephah (Efah) is mentioned in Isaiah 60:6 alongside Midian as bringing gold and incense — a trading people. Ephraim (Efer, 'young deer') is otherwise unattested. Enoch (Chanokh) shares a name with the pre-flood figure in verse 3 but is a different person entirely — name reuse across genealogies is common. Abida (Avida, 'my father knows') and Eldaah (Elda'ah, 'God has known') both contain theophoric elements suggesting divine knowledge. The closing formula *kol elleh benei Qeturah* ('all these were the sons of Keturah') wraps up all of Abraham's non-Israelite descendants before the narrative focuses on the chosen line.
34. Having cleared away Ishmael's and Keturah's lines, the Chronicler returns to the main line with decisive brevity: *vayyolel Avraham et Yitschaq* ('Abraham fathered Isaac'). Then immediately: *benei Yitschaq — Esav ve-Yisra'el* ('the sons of Isaac — Esau and Israel'). The Chronicler uses the name 'Israel' rather than 'Jacob,' choosing the covenant name God gave at Peniel (Genesis 32:28). This is deliberate — throughout Chronicles, Jacob is called Israel when the focus is on his role as the father of the nation. Esau is listed first (he was the elder twin) but will be dispatched first so the genealogy can follow Israel's line.
35. Esau's sons are listed before Israel's — again, the Chronicler clears the non-chosen branch first. Eliphaz (Elifaz, 'my God is fine gold') is the firstborn, and his name is shared with one of Job's friends (Job 2:11), who is identified as a Temanite — Teman being one of Eliphaz's sons (v. 36). Reuel (Re'u'el, 'friend of God') is also the name of Moses' father-in-law in some traditions (Exodus 2:18). Jeush, Jaalam, and Korah are Esau's sons by different wives (Genesis 36:4-5, 14). These five sons become the chiefs of Edom.
36. Teman (Teiman, 'south') became a major Edomite clan and region — the prophets use it as shorthand for Edom itself (Jeremiah 49:7, 20; Obadiah 9). Kenaz is the ancestor of the Kenizzites, a clan partially absorbed into Judah — Caleb is called a Kenizzite (Numbers 32:12), and Othniel was 'son of Kenaz' (Judges 3:9). This genealogical overlap between Edom and Judah is significant. Timna is listed as a son here but is a concubine of Eliphaz in Genesis 36:12, mother of Amalek. The Chronicler may have compressed the list or followed a variant tradition. Amalek — Israel's archetypal enemy (Exodus 17:8-16, 1 Samuel 15) — is thus genealogically related to Israel through the Esau-Abraham connection.
37. Reuel's sons represent sub-clans of Edom. Nahath (Nachat, 'rest/descent') became one of the chiefs of Edom (Genesis 36:17). Zerah (Zerach, 'shining/dawning') shares a name with a Judahite clan (1 Chronicles 2:4) — another instance of name overlap between Edom and Judah. Shammah (Shammah, 'desolation' or 'astonishment') and Mizzah are attested only in these genealogical lists. The *petuchah* marker closes the Esau-Edom genealogy of descendants before transitioning to the Edomite tribal chiefs.
38. Seir (Se'ir, 'hairy/rough') is both a person and a geographic region — the mountainous territory southeast of the Dead Sea that became Edom's homeland. The 'sons of Seir' are the Horite (Chorite, 'cave-dweller') inhabitants who preceded Esau's clan in the region. Genesis 36:20 identifies them as Horites. The seven sons represent the original clans of the land that Esau's descendants would displace and absorb — Deuteronomy 2:12 states explicitly that the descendants of Esau drove out the Horites. The Chronicler includes them because they became part of the Edomite population through intermarriage.
39. Hori (Chori) gives his name to the Horites — the pre-Edomite inhabitants of Seir. Homam appears as Hemam in Genesis 36:22, another minor scribal variation. The note that Timna (Timna) was Lotan's sister is preserved from Genesis 36:22 and is significant: this Timna became a concubine of Eliphaz (Esau's son) and mother of Amalek (Genesis 36:12). By mentioning her parentage, the Chronicler shows how the Horite and Esau lines merged — the original inhabitants were incorporated into the Edomite ruling class through marriage.
40. Alian appears as Alvan in Genesis 36:23 — another minor variant. Manahath may be connected with the town of Manahath near Jerusalem, suggesting some Horite clans migrated westward. Ebal (Eval) — not the mountain near Shechem but a Horite clan leader. Shephi appears as Shepho in Genesis 36:23. These consistent small variations between Chronicles and Genesis demonstrate independent manuscript transmission. Zibeon's sons include Anah, who according to Genesis 36:24 discovered hot springs in the wilderness — one of the rare personal details in these lists, though the Chronicler omits it.
41. Anah has only one son, Dishon (Dishon, possibly 'gazelle' or 'thresher'), who should not be confused with Dishan in verse 38 — the names are similar but represent different individuals. Hamran appears as Hemdan in Genesis 36:26. Eshban, Ithran (Yitran, 'excellent'), and Cheran (Keran) are

Horite sub-clan leaders. The Chronicler faithfully reproduces these names even though they have no further role in Israel's story — their presence establishes the completeness of the genealogical record and maps the full population of the land of Edom.

42. Ezer's (Etser's) sons — Bilhan ('timid'), Zaavan (Za'avan, 'trembling'), and Jaakan (Ya'aqan) — complete the Horite sub-clans. Jaakan is connected with Beeroth Bene-Jaakan ('wells of the sons of Jaakan'), a wilderness station in Israel's desert travels (Deuteronomy 10:6). Dishan's son Uz (Uts) shares a name with the land of Uz where Job lived (Job 1:1), though whether this is the same Uz is uncertain — the name appears in multiple genealogies. Aran closes the Horite genealogy. The petuchah marker signals the transition to Edom's kings.
43. The heading *lifnei melokh melek livnei Yisra'el* ('before a king reigned over the sons of Israel') is loaded with implication. Edom had kings first — an organized monarchy — while Israel was still in its pre-monarchic period. For the Chronicler, who is building toward the Davidic dynasty, this note establishes that kingship as an institution predated Israel's version of it. Bela son of Beor shares a patronymic with Balaam son of Beor (Numbers 22:5), though they are different individuals. Dinhabah as a royal city is unidentified. Notably, none of these Edomite kings is succeeded by his son — each new king comes from a different city, suggesting an elective or charismatic kingship rather than a dynasty. This implicit contrast with the Davidic dynasty the Chronicler will establish is central to his purpose.
44. The regnal formula *vayyamot... vayyimlokhtachav* ('he died... and he reigned in his place') will repeat through the Edomite king list. Each king dies and is succeeded not by a son but by an unrelated figure from a different city. Jobab son of Zerah is from Bozrah (Botsrah, 'fortified'), the major Edomite city that the prophets will single out for judgment (Isaiah 34:6, 63:1; Amos 1:12). Bozrah was a major trading center controlling routes through Edom. The name Jobab appears earlier (v. 23) as a son of Joktan — different person, same name.
45. Husham (Chusham) comes from the land of the Temanites — the region associated with Teman, Eliphaz's son (v. 36). Teman was in the southern part of Edom. That Husham is not called 'son of' anyone specific may indicate he rose from a less prominent family, or that his patronymic was lost. The Temanites were known for wisdom — Eliphaz the Temanite in the book of Job represents this tradition (Job 2:11). The continuing pattern of non-dynastic succession reinforces the contrast with Israel's coming Davidic line.
46. Hadad (Hadad) bears the name of the Semitic storm god, common among Edomite and Aramean rulers. He is distinguished by a military achievement: *hammakkeh et Midyan bisdeh Mo'av* ('the one who struck Midian in the field of Moab'). This is the only narrative detail given for any Edomite king in this list — a victory over Midian in Moabite territory. This places the event in the Transjordan region and shows Edom projecting military power beyond its borders. The note gives Hadad the character of a deliverer-king, a gibbor figure. His city Avith is unidentified.
47. Samlah (Samlah, possibly 'garment') from Masrekah (Masreqah, 'vineyard') — from the root *saraq*, 'choice vine'. The city name suggests a grape-growing region, which fits the agricultural potential of parts of Edom. Each new king comes from a different city, reinforcing the non-dynastic pattern. No son succeeds his father; no city produces two kings. This stands in stark structural contrast to the Davidic dynasty the Chronicler is constructing, where Jerusalem will be the permanent royal seat and succession will follow a single family line.
48. Shaul (Sha'ul, 'asked for') — the same name as Israel's first king Saul. The coincidence is noteworthy: an Edomite king named Shaul preceded Israel's Saul. Rehoboth-on-the-River (Rehovot hannahar, 'wide places of the river') is likely on the Euphrates or possibly a Wadi in Edom. The name Rehoboth ('broad places') appears in Genesis 26:22, where Isaac names a well, signifying that 'the LORD has made room for us.' The identification of this city remains debated.
49. Baal-hanan (Ba'al Chanan, 'Baal is gracious') is a theophoric name invoking the Canaanite deity Baal — evidence that Edomite religion included Baal worship. The Chronicler preserves the name without comment, as he does with all the Edomite names. Achbor (Akhbor, 'mouse') is also the name of a Judahite official in Josiah's time (2 Kings 22:12), though the two are unrelated. The persistence of Baal-compound names in Edom contrasts with the Israelite tendency (at least in the Chronicler's ideal) to use YHWH-compound names.
50. This final king Hadad — a different Hadad from verse 46 — receives more detail than any other: his city (Pai, called Pa'u in Genesis 36:39), and uniquely, his wife's name and genealogy. Mehetabel (Meheitav'el, 'God does good') is traced through two generations of women: Matred (Matred, possibly 'thrusting forth') and Me-zahab (Mei Zahav, 'waters of gold'). This unusual inclusion of female genealogy for an Edomite king may reflect the importance of this particular dynasty or the availability of detailed source material. The name Me-zahab ('waters of gold') suggests wealth or a gold-bearing water source.
51. After the king list, the Chronicler shifts to a list of tribal chiefs (*allufim*, singular *alluf*). The word *alluf* derives from *elef* ('thousand' or 'clan') and designates a tribal leader — not a king but a chief over a clan or district. This may represent a different period than the kings (perhaps after the monarchy collapsed) or a parallel administrative structure. Some of these names (Timna, Aliah) overlap with names in the earlier genealogies, suggesting clan names that persisted as territorial designations. The transition from kings to chiefs may indicate that Edom reverted from monarchy to tribal governance.
52. Oholibamah (Oholivamah, 'tent of the high place') is also the name of one of Esau's wives (Genesis 36:2) — here it designates a clan or district named after her. Elah (Elah, 'terebinth/oak') is a common name in the Hebrew Bible, shared with an Edomite chief, an Israelite king (1 Kings 16:8), and the valley where David fought Goliath. Pinon is likely connected with the copper-mining region of Punon in the Arabah (Numbers 33:42-43), an area of significant mineral wealth.
53. Kenaz and Teman reappear from the earlier genealogy (v. 36) — now as district or clan chiefs rather than personal names, showing how individual ancestors became eponymous territories. Mibzar (Mivtsar, 'fortification') suggests a fortified settlement, consistent with the rugged, defensible terrain of Edom. The overlap between personal names, clan names, and territorial designations is characteristic of ancient Near Eastern genealogies, where the boundary between person and people was fluid.

54. Magdiel (Magdi'el, 'excellence of God' or 'God is my preciousness') is a theophoric name with El, suggesting that some Edomite clans worshipped the God El alongside or as equivalent to their other deities. Iram (Iram) closes the list. The concluding formula *elleh alluwei Edom* ('these are the chiefs of Edom') wraps up the entire Edomite section that began with Esau in verse 35. The Chronicler has now accounted for all of Abraham's non-Israelite descendants — Ishmael, Keturah's sons, and Esau's line. With Edom fully documented, the Chronicler is ready to turn exclusively to Israel's twelve tribes, beginning with the sons of Israel in chapter 2.

2

Summary: *The Chronicler lists the twelve sons of Israel, then immediately focuses on the tribe of Judah — the royal tribe. The genealogy traces Judah's line through Perez to Hezron, and then follows three branches of Hezron's descendants: through Ram (leading to David in verse 15), through Caleb, and through Jerahmeel. Additional clan lineages fill out the chapter, mapping the families of Judah in extraordinary detail. The entire chapter is structured to demonstrate that David's kingship emerged from a specific, traceable line within Judah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's decision to begin Israel's tribal genealogies with Judah rather than Reuben (the firstborn) is a theological statement: kingship trumps birth order. The genealogy is not strictly linear but branching — it follows multiple lines of Hezron's descendants, creating a map of the clans that populated Judah's territory. The placement of David at verse 15 (the middle of a 55-verse chapter) is structurally deliberate: everything before verse 15 leads to him, and everything after fills out the surrounding clans. The chapter includes women at crucial junctures — Tamar (v. 4), Bathshua the Canaanite (v. 3), Abishai (v. 16), Abigail (v. 17) — signaling that the Chronicler cares about maternal lineage even in a patrilineal system. The note about Er being evil in the LORD's sight (v. 3) is one of the chapter's only moral judgments, preserved because it explains why the messianic line runs through Perez rather than through the firstborn.*

Translation Friction: *The genealogical relationships in this chapter are notoriously complex. 'Caleb son of Hezron' (vv. 18, 42) is distinct from 'Caleb son of Jephunneh' (the spy from Numbers 13-14), though the two may have been conflated in later tradition. The term 'father of' (avi) sometimes means 'founder of' or 'chief of' a town rather than biological paternity — for instance, 'Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim' (v. 50) means the founder or leading figure of that settlement. We render 'father of' consistently and note the settlement-founding sense where it applies. The Hebrew text contains some textual difficulties in verses 42-55, where the Septuagint and MT diverge significantly.*

Connections: *The Judah genealogy connects back to Genesis 38 (Judah and Tamar), Genesis 46 (Jacob's family entering Egypt), and Ruth 4:18-22 (the Perez-to-David genealogy that closes the book of Ruth). The line Perez-Hezron-Ram-Aminadab-Nahshon-Salmon-Boaz-Obed-Jesse-David is the backbone of the messianic genealogy, replicated in Ruth 4 and Matthew 1. Nahshon son of Aminadab (v. 10) was the tribal leader of Judah during the wilderness period (Numbers 2:3), establishing that the family destined for kingship was already leading the tribe centuries before David. The Calebite genealogy (vv. 42-55) connects to the conquest traditions of Hebron and the Negev.*

¹These are the sons of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun, ²Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad and Asher — as recorded in the genealogies. ³The sons of Judah: Er, Onan, and Shelah. These three were born to him by Bath-shua the Canaanite woman. Er, the firstborn of Judah, was evil in the eyes of the LORD, and he put him to death. ⁴Tamar his daughter-in-law bore him Perez, and Zerah. All the sons of Judah were five. ⁵These were the sons of Perez: Hezron and Hamul. ⁶The sons of Zerah: Zimri, Ethan, Heman, Calcol, and Dara — five in all. ⁷The son of Carmi: Achar, the one who brought disaster on Israel by acting unfaithfully regarding the devoted things. ⁸The son of Ethan: Azariah. ⁹The sons born to Hezron: Jerahmeel, Ram, and Chelubai. ¹⁰Ram fathered Aminadab, and Aminadab fathered Nahshon, the leader of the sons of Judah. ¹¹Nahshon fathered Salma, and Salma fathered Boaz. ¹²Boaz fathered Obed, and Obed fathered Jesse. ¹³Jesse fathered his firstborn Eliab, Abinadab the second, and Shimea the third, ¹⁴Nethanel the fourth, Raddai the fifth, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁵Ozem the sixth, David the seventh — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁶Their sisters were Zeruiah and Abigail. The sons of Zeruiah: Abishai, Joab, and Asahel — three. ¹⁷Abigail bore Amasa and the father of Amasa was Jether the Ishmaelite — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁸Caleb son of Hezron fathered children by Azubah his wife and

by Jerioth. These were her sons: Jesher, Shobab, and Ardon. ¹⁹When Azubah died, Caleb married Ephrath, and she bore him Hur. ²⁰Hur fathered Uri, and Uri fathered Bezalel. ²¹Afterward Hezron went to the daughter of Machir, the father of Gilead. He married her when he was sixty years old, and she bore him Segub. ²²Segub fathered Jair, who had twenty-three towns in the land of Gilead. ²³But Geshur and Aram captured the towns of Jair from them, along with Kenath and its surrounding villages — sixty towns. All these belonged to the sons of Machir, father of Gilead. ²⁴After the death of Hezron, in Caleb-ephrathah, Hezron's wife Abijah bore him Ashhur, the father of Tekoa. ²⁵The sons of Jerahmeel, Hezron's firstborn, were: Ram his firstborn, Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah. ²⁶Jerahmeel had another wife named Atarah; she was the mother of Onam. ²⁷The sons of Ram, Jerahmeel's firstborn: Maaz, Jamin, and Eker. ²⁸The sons of Onam: Shammai and Jada. The sons of Shammai: Nadab and Abishur. ²⁹The name of Abishur's wife was Abihail, and she bore him Ahban and Molid. ³⁰The sons of Nadab: Seled and Appaim. Seled died without sons. ³¹The son of Appaim: Ishi. The son of Ishi: Sheshan. The son of Sheshan: Ahlai. ³²The sons of Jada, Shammai's brother: Jether and Jonathan. Jether died without sons. ³³The sons of Jonathan: Peleth and Zaza. These were the descendants of Jerahmeel. ³⁴Sheshan had no sons, only daughters. Sheshan had an Egyptian servant named Jarha. ³⁵Sheshan gave his daughter to his servant Jarha as a wife, and she bore him Attai. ³⁶Attai fathered Nathan, and Nathan fathered Zabad, ³⁷Zabad fathered Ephlal, and Ephlal fathered Obed, ³⁸Obed fathered Jehu, and Jehu fathered Azariah, ³⁹Azariah fathered Helez, and Helez fathered Eleasah, ⁴⁰Eleasah fathered Sismai, and Sismai fathered Shallum, ⁴¹Shallum fathered Jekamiah, and Jekamiah fathered Elishama. ⁴²The sons of Caleb, Jerahmeel's brother: Mesha his firstborn, who was the father of Ziph, and the sons of Mareshah, the father of Hebron. ⁴³The sons of Hebron: Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema. ⁴⁴Shema fathered Raham, the father of Jorkeam, and Rekem fathered Shammai. ⁴⁵The son of Shammai: Maon. Maon was the father of Beth-zur. ⁴⁶Ephah, Caleb's concubine, bore Haran, Moza, and Gazez. Haran fathered Gazez. ⁴⁷The sons of Jahdai: Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph. ⁴⁸Maacah, Caleb's concubine, bore Sheber and Tirhanah — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁴⁹She also bore Shaaph the father of Madmannah and Sheva the father of Machbenah and the father of Gibeon. The daughter of Caleb was Achsah — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁵⁰These were the descendants of Caleb son of Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah: Shobal the father of Kiriath-jearim, ⁵¹Salma the father of Bethlehem, Hareph the father of Beth-gader — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁵²Shobal, the father of Kiriath-jearim, had sons: Haroeh and half of the Menuhoth. ⁵³The clans of Kiriath-jearim: the Ithrites, the Puthites, the Shumathites, and the Mishraitites. From these descended the Zorathites and the Eshtaolites. ⁵⁴The descendants of Salma: Bethlehem, the Netophathites, Atroth-beth-joab, half of the Manahathites, and the Zorites. ⁵⁵The clans of scribes who lived at Jabez: the Tirathites, the Shimeathites, and the Sucathites. These are the Kenites who came from Hammath, the father of the house of Rechab.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler uses 'Israel' (not 'Jacob'), maintaining the covenant name. The first six sons listed are Leah's children in birth order (Genesis 29:31-30:20). By listing all twelve sons before focusing on Judah, the Chronicler acknowledges the full tribal structure before zeroing in on the royal tribe. Reuben is listed first as the biological firstborn, but the Chronicler will explain in 5:1-2 why Judah receives the priority.
2. The remaining six sons are from the concubines and Rachel. The order differs from Genesis birth narratives — Dan (Bilhah's son) appears before Joseph (Rachel's firstborn), and Benjamin follows Joseph rather than appearing last. The Chronicler groups them by a logic that is not purely chronological. Notably, Joseph appears as one name rather than being split into Ephraim and Manasseh, which the Chronicler will handle separately. The *setumah* marker closes this brief twelve-tribe list before the deep dive into Judah.
3. The Chronicler compresses the entire Judah-and-Tamar episode of Genesis 38 into two verses. Bath-shua (Bat-Shua, 'daughter of Shua') is identified as *hakena'anit* ('the Canaanite woman'), a detail the Chronicler preserves because it matters genealogically — Judah's first marriage was with a non-Israelite. The phrase *ra be'einei YHWH* ('evil in the eyes of the LORD') is one of the Chronicler's standard moral assessments, and *vayemitehu* ('and he put him to death') attributes Er's death directly to divine judgment. Genesis 38:7 says the same but never specifies what Er's sin was. The Chronicler inherits this silence.
4. Tamar (Tamar, 'palm tree') is named without shame or apology — the Chronicler includes her as a legitimate mother in the royal genealogy. The story of how she secured offspring from Judah by disguising herself as a prostitute (Genesis 38) is assumed knowledge. Perez (Perets, 'breach') is listed before Zerah (Zerach, 'shining/rising') because Perez is the ancestor of David. The total count of five (Er, Onan, Shelah, Perez, Zerah) includes the two who died — the Chronicler counts all biological sons regardless of their fate.

5. Hezron (Chetsron, 'enclosed/surrounded') is the critical name — his descendants will fill most of the rest of this chapter and form the core of the Judahite clans. Hamul (Chamul, 'spared' or 'pitied') receives no further genealogy here. Both are listed in Genesis 46:12 among those who went down to Egypt with Jacob. The line narrows: of Perez's two sons, the genealogy will follow Hezron exclusively.
6. These five sons of Zerah include names associated with wisdom. Ethan (Eitan, 'enduring') and Heman (Heiman, 'faithful') are the names of famous wise men mentioned in 1 Kings 4:31, where Solomon is said to be wiser than 'Ethan the Ezrahite, Heman, Calcol, and Darda' — the Ezrahite designation derives from Zerah. These may be the same individuals or later descendants bearing ancestral names. The Chronicler links Judah not only to kingship but to the wisdom tradition. Zimri (Zimri) should not be confused with the later Israelite king of that name (1 Kings 16:9-20).
7. This is the most dramatic note in the chapter. Achar (Akhar) is called Achan (Akhan) in Joshua 7 — the Chronicler uses the variant form to create a wordplay with okher Yisra'el ('troubler of Israel'), since akhar sounds like akhar/okher ('to trouble/bring disaster'). The phrase asher ma'al bacherem ('who acted unfaithfully regarding the cherem') uses two critical theological terms: ma'al ('to act unfaithfully, to trespass' — a key word in Chronicles for covenant violation) and cherem ('the devoted/banned thing' — items under the ban of total destruction in holy war). Achan's sin at Jericho (Joshua 7) cost Israel a military defeat and thirty-six lives. The Chronicler includes this infamy within the genealogy as a warning: even within the chosen tribe, unfaithfulness brings judgment.
7. Register departure: cherem rendered as 'devoted things' rather than default 'devoted to destruction' because this verse refers to the items placed under the ban, not the act of destruction itself. The Hebrew refers to the consecrated objects Achan took.
8. Azariah (Azaryah, 'the LORD has helped') is Ethan's only named descendant here. The name is one of the most common in the Hebrew Bible, borne by kings, priests, and officials. Its theophoric element (-yah, from YHWH) signals devotion to Israel's God. After the digression into Zerah's famous and infamous descendants, the Chronicler will now return to the main Hezron line.
9. These three sons of Hezron structure the rest of the chapter. Ram's line will lead to David (vv. 10-17). Chelubai (Keluvai) is another form of Caleb (Kalev) — this is 'Caleb son of Hezron,' distinct from the famous Caleb son of Jephunneh. Jerahmeel's line is given in verses 25-41. The order is significant: Jerahmeel is listed first (possibly the eldest) but Ram's line is traced first because it leads to the king. The Chronicler consistently prioritizes theological importance over birth order.
10. Nahshon (Nachshon, 'serpent' or 'diviner') is identified as nesi benei Yehudah ('leader/prince of the sons of Judah') — a title from the wilderness period (Numbers 2:3, 7:12). Nahshon led Judah's tribal contingent in the wilderness march and was the first tribal leader to bring his offering at the tabernacle's dedication. Amminadab (Amminadav, 'my kinsman is noble') bridges the gap between the patriarchal period and the wilderness generation. This verse establishes that the family destined for the throne was already the leading family of Judah during the Exodus.
11. Salma (Salma, possibly 'garment' or a shortened form of Solomon) is called Salmon in Ruth 4:20-21. The Chronicler uses the variant form. Boaz (Bo'az, 'in him is strength') is the kinsman-redeemer of the book of Ruth — the man who married the Moabite widow and secured the line that would produce David. The Chronicler does not mention Ruth or the story of redemption at the threshing floor; the names carry the narrative for the informed reader. Each generation in this sequence spans roughly 40-80 years, covering the period from the wilderness to the early settlement.
12. Obed (Oved, 'servant/worshiper') was named by the women of Bethlehem who celebrated his birth to Naomi and Ruth (Ruth 4:17). Jesse (Yishai, possibly 'man of YHWH' or 'gift') is David's father, rooted in Bethlehem. This verse brings the genealogy within one generation of the Chronicler's central figure. The line from Perez to Jesse in these verses (5, 9-12) replicates Ruth 4:18-22 almost exactly — the Chronicler is drawing on the same genealogical tradition that the author of Ruth used.
13. Jesse's sons are numbered by birth order, recalling the scene in 1 Samuel 16 where Samuel reviewed Jesse's sons before God chose David, the youngest. Eliab (Eli'av, 'my God is father') was the eldest, the tall, impressive one whom Samuel initially assumed would be the anointed (1 Samuel 16:6). Abinadab (Avinadav, 'my father is noble') and Shimea (Shim'a, 'hearing/report' — called Shammah in 1 Samuel 16:9) passed before Samuel as well. The Chronicler's numbering system emphasizes that David was not chosen by primogeniture.
14. Nethanel (Netan'el, 'God has given') and Raddai (Raddai, possibly 'treading/dominating') do not appear in the Samuel narrative of David's family. The Chronicler provides a fuller list of Jesse's sons than 1 Samuel does, suggesting access to additional genealogical records. These brothers who never became king are nonetheless recorded — the Chronicler values the complete family structure, not just the chosen individual.
15. David (David, 'beloved') is listed as the seventh son. This creates a discrepancy with 1 Samuel 16:10-11 and 17:12, which imply Jesse had eight sons. Either one son died young and was dropped from later records, or different traditions counted differently. The number seven may be theologically significant — the seventh son in a culture that valued seven as the number of completeness. The Chronicler places David's name without any title, without 'the king' — here he is simply Jesse's seventh boy, embedded in the family structure before his elevation.
16. The Chronicler names David's sisters because their sons are among his most important officers. Zeruiah's (Tseruyah's) three sons — Abishai (Avshai, 'my father is a gift'), Joab (Yo'av, 'YHWH is father'), and Asahel (Asah'el, 'God has made') — form David's military inner circle. Joab is his lifelong general; Abishai is a hero among the thirty mighty men; Asahel was killed by Abner (2 Samuel 2:23). The patronymic 'sons of Zeruiah' rather than their father's name is unusual — their mother's identity apparently carried more weight, possibly because she was David's sister.
17. Abigail (Avigayil, 'my father is joy') — David's other sister — married Jether (Yeter, 'abundance'), identified as haYishme'eli ('the Ishmaelite'). Second Samuel 17:25 calls him 'Ithra the Israelite' — the discrepancy may be a scribal confusion between Yishme'eli and Yisre'eli, or one tradition preserved the original ethnic identity while the other normalized it. Their son Amasa (Amasa, 'burden-bearer') later served briefly as David's general before being murdered by Joab (2 Samuel 20:10). The intermarriage with an Ishmaelite shows the fluidity of ethnic boundaries in David's family.

18. This Caleb (Kalev) son of Hezron is the ancestor of the Calebite clan within Judah — distinct from the famous spy Caleb son of Jephunneh, though the two lines may have merged. Azubah (Azuvah, 'forsaken') and Jerioth (Yeri'ot, 'tent curtains') are either two wives or a wife and a daughter — the Hebrew syntax is ambiguous. The names Jesher (Yeshar, 'upright'), Shobab (Shovav, 'rebellious' — an ironic name), and Ardon (Ardon, possibly 'fugitive') are not attested elsewhere.
19. Ephrath (Efrat) is associated with Bethlehem — 'Bethlehem Ephrathah' (Micah 5:2). The marriage of Caleb to Ephrath links the Calebite clan to Bethlehem's territory. Hur (Chur, 'white/noble') is an important figure — his grandson is Bezalel, the master craftsman of the tabernacle (Exodus 31:2, and v. 20 below). Through this marriage, the Calebite branch connects to both the Bethlehem region (David's hometown) and the tabernacle-building tradition.
20. Bezalel (Betsal'el, 'in the shadow of God') is the master artisan whom God filled with his Spirit to construct the tabernacle and its furnishings (Exodus 31:1-5, 35:30-36:1). By tracing Bezalel back through the Calebite-Judahite line, the Chronicler claims the tabernacle's chief craftsman for the tribe of Judah. Uri (Uri, 'my light') serves as the connecting link. This genealogical note is significant for the Chronicler's temple theology: the same tribe that produces the king also produces the artisan who built God's first dwelling place.
21. This marriage connects the tribe of Judah to the Transjordanian territory of Gilead through Machir (Makhir), who is Manasseh's son (Genesis 50:23). The phrase *avi Gil'ad* ('father of Gilead') means Machir was the founder/chief of the Gilead region. Hezron's marriage at sixty to a Manassite woman created a cross-tribal bond between Judah and the eastern tribes. Segub (Seguv, 'exalted') is the product of this inter-tribal marriage.
22. Jair (Ya'ir, 'he enlightens') is associated with the 'towns of Jair' (Chavvot Ya'ir) mentioned in Numbers 32:41, Deuteronomy 3:14, and Judges 10:3-4. The twenty-three towns represent a significant territorial holding in Transjordan. Through this line, Judahite blood flows into the Gileadite aristocracy — the Chronicler traces these connections to show that Judah's influence extended beyond its own tribal borders. The Jair of Judges 10:3 (a minor judge) may be a later descendant carrying the ancestral name.
23. This verse records a territorial loss — Geshur (the Aramean kingdom northeast of the Sea of Galilee, whose princess David later married) and Aram (Syria) captured the towns of Jair. The sixty towns (combining the twenty-three of Jair with Kenath and its dependencies) represent a significant Israelite territorial loss in Transjordan. Kenath (Qenat) is identified with Qanawat in the Hauran region of modern Syria. The Chronicler's note that 'all these belonged to the sons of Machir' preserves the memory of a once-extensive Israelite presence east of the Jordan that was subsequently lost.
24. The phrase *beKhalev Efratah* ('in Caleb-ephrathah') is textually difficult — it may refer to a place name combining the Calebite territory with the Ephrathah (Bethlehem) region, or it may be a corruption. Abijah (Aviyyah, 'my father is YHWH') bore Ashhur (Ashchur) posthumously or near Hezron's death. Ashhur is called *avi Teqoa* ('father of Tekoa') — meaning founder or chief of the town of Tekoa, the settlement south of Bethlehem famous later as the home of the prophet Amos (Amos 1:1) and the wise woman David consulted (2 Samuel 14:2).
25. The Jerahmeelite genealogy begins. Jerahmeel (Yerachme'el, 'God has compassion') was Hezron's firstborn but not the ancestor of David — another instance where the Chronicler's genealogical priorities override birth order. This Ram is distinct from the Ram of verse 9 whose line leads to David. The Jerahmeelites settled in the Negev — David had dealings with them during his time as a fugitive (1 Samuel 27:10, 30:29). Their inclusion maps the southern reaches of Judah's territory.
26. Atarah (Atarah, 'crown/wreath') is named because her son Onam (Onam, 'vigorous') begins a distinct sub-branch of the Jerahmeelite clan. The Chronicler's naming of wives at key junctures shows that maternal identity mattered for distinguishing sub-clans. When two lines descend from the same father through different mothers, the mother's identity determines clan affiliation.
27. These grandsons of Jerahmeel represent sub-clans in the Negev region. Maaz (Ma'ats, 'wrath' or 'counsel') is unique to this passage. Jamin (Yamin, 'right hand' — the same root as Benjamin) and Eker (Eger, 'root/offspring') are otherwise unattested. The Chronicler's preservation of these names, unknown from any narrative, demonstrates his access to comprehensive clan registers that have not survived independently.
28. The Jerahmeelite genealogy branches through Onam (Atarah's son). Shammai (Shammai, 'desolate' or 'astonishing') generates two sons: Nadab (Nadav, 'generous/noble' — the same name as Aaron's eldest son who died offering unauthorized fire) and Abishur (Avishur, 'my father is a wall'). Jada's line follows in verse 32. The Chronicler traces both branches with equal care.
29. Abihail (Avichayil, 'my father is strength') is a name borne by both men and women in the Hebrew Bible — Esther's father bore this name (Esther 2:15). Ahban (Achban, possibly 'brother of the wise one') and Molid (Molid, 'begetter') are not otherwise attested. The Chronicler's care in naming Abishur's wife suggests she came from a notable family whose identity mattered for clan records.
30. The note *vayyamot Seled lo vanim* ('Seled died without sons') is significant in a genealogical context — it means his line ended. In a culture where continuity of name and inheritance depended on male descendants, dying without sons was a form of genealogical death. The Chronicler records these dead ends alongside the fruitful lines, maintaining the accuracy of his records. Only Appaim's line continues.
31. Three generations in a single verse, each with only one son — the Jerahmeelite line narrows to a single thread. Ishi (Yish'i, 'my salvation'), Sheshan (Sheshan, meaning uncertain), and Ahlai (Achlai, possibly 'oh, would that!' — an exclamatory name expressing parental longing). The use of 'sons of' (*benei*) for a single child is normal Hebrew usage. Sheshan's story continues in verses 34-35 with an unusual arrangement.
32. Another dead-end line: Jether (Yeter, 'abundance') died childless, like Seled in verse 30. The Jerahmeelite genealogy records these truncated lines faithfully. Jonathan (Yonatan, 'YHWH has given') — a different Jonathan from Saul's son — carries Jada's line forward. The phrase *achi Shammai* ('brother of Shammai') anchors the reader in the genealogical structure, since both Jada and Shammai were sons of Onam (v. 28).

33. Peleth (Pelet, 'deliverance/swiftness') and Zaza (Zaza, meaning uncertain — possibly a pet name or reduplicated form) close out the Jerahmeelite main genealogy. The closing formula *elleh hayu benei Yerachme'el* ('these were the sons of Jerahmeel') wraps up the entire section begun at verse 25. The Jerahmeelites are thus fully documented — a complete Negev clan with its branches, dead ends, and surviving lines — before the Chronicler moves to additional Judahite clans.
34. This verse creates a puzzle: verse 31 listed Ahlai as Sheshan's child, but now we learn Sheshan had 'no sons, only daughters' — Ahlai may have been a daughter, or the genealogical record followed a different convention. The introduction of Jarha (Yarcha), an Egyptian servant (*eved Mitsri*), sets up an unusual arrangement: a non-Israelite slave will continue the line. This parallels the broader biblical pattern where unexpected people — foreigners, women, younger sons — become part of God's covenant story.
35. An Israelite clan leader gives his daughter to an Egyptian slave to continue the family line — a remarkable social arrangement that the Chronicler records without any hint of disapproval. The marriage preserved Sheshan's inheritance within his family (since a slave's children belong to the master's household in ancient Near Eastern law) while also raising Jarha's status. Attai (Attai, 'timely' or 'my time') begins a new branch that is genealogically Jerahmeelite through the mother but biologically half-Egyptian through the father.
36. The line continues through the Egyptian-Israelite marriage without comment. Nathan (Natan, 'he gave') is a common name — not the prophet Nathan. Zabad (Zavad, 'gift/endowment') carries the line forward. The Chronicler traces this branch for thirteen generations (vv. 36-41), an unusually long sequence that suggests the family maintained careful records — perhaps because their mixed Egyptian-Israelite origin made genealogical documentation particularly important.
37. Ephlal (Eflal, 'judging' or 'interceding') is unique to this genealogy. Obed (Oved, 'servant') shares the name of David's grandfather (v. 12) but is a different individual within the Jerahmeelite branch. Name reuse within the broader clan is expected — popular names circulated among related families.
38. Jehu (Yehu, 'he is YHWH') shares the name of the famous northern king who destroyed the house of Ahab (2 Kings 9-10) but is a Judahite from the Jerahmeelite clan. Azariah (Azaryah, 'YHWH has helped') appears frequently in Judahite genealogies — it was one of the most popular theophoric names in the southern kingdom.
39. Helez (Chelets, 'strength/vigor') may be the same Helez listed among David's mighty warriors — 'Helez the Paltite' (2 Samuel 23:26) or 'Helez the Pelonite' (1 Chronicles 11:27). If so, this Jerahmeelite from an Egyptian-Israelite line served in David's elite military unit. Eleasah (El'asah, 'God has made') continues the line.
40. Sismai (Sismai, meaning uncertain) is unique to this passage. Shallum (Shallum, 'retribution' or 'the requited one') is a name shared with several biblical figures including a king of Israel (2 Kings 15:10) and a gatekeeper (1 Chronicles 9:17). The name's prevalence across different tribal lines and periods shows it was widely used.
41. Jekamiah (Yeqamyah, 'YHWH will establish') and Elishama (Elishama, 'my God has heard') close this thirteen-generation sequence from Attai (the son of the Egyptian servant Jarha) to Elishama. The theophoric names (-yah and El-) demonstrate that this family, despite its mixed Egyptian-Israelite origin, was fully integrated into Israelite worship of YHWH. The Chronicler makes no distinction between their status and that of 'pure' Judahite lines.
42. The Chronicler returns to Caleb (Kalev) son of Hezron (from v. 18). The phrase *avi Zif* and *avi Chevron* use 'father of' in the sense of 'founder/chief of' a settlement. Ziph is the town in the Judean wilderness where David hid from Saul (1 Samuel 23:14-15). Hebron is the great southern city where Abraham settled, where David first reigned, and where the patriarchs were buried. By tracing Hebron's founding to the Calebite branch of Judah, the Chronicler links David's first capital to his broader clan.
43. These are sub-clans associated with the Hebron district. Korah (Qorach, 'baldness/ice') — not the Levite rebel of Numbers 16 but a Calebite clan leader. Tappuah (Tappuah, 'apple/citron') is also a town name in Judah's territory (Joshua 15:34). Rekem (Reqem, 'variegated') and Shema (Shema, 'hearing/report') represent additional settlement-clans in the Hebron highlands.
44. Raham (Racham, 'compassion/mercy') founded or led Jorkeam (Yorqe'am), a town in Judah whose location is uncertain. The name Raham from the root *racham* ('to have compassion') carries theological weight as a personal name. Shammai reappears — a different Shammai from verse 28, within a different branch of the family. The Chronicler distinguishes them by genealogical position rather than by epithet.
45. Maon (Ma'on, 'habitation/dwelling') is both a person and a town — the wilderness of Maon, south of Hebron, is where David evaded Saul (1 Samuel 23:24-25). Beth-zur (Beit Tsur, 'house of the rock') was a significant fortified town in the Judean hills, later prominent in the Maccabean wars. The Chronicler traces the founding of these strategically important Judean settlements to specific Calebite clan leaders.
46. Ephah (Efah) as a concubine (*pilegish*) of Caleb produces a secondary line. The repetition of Gazez — both as Ephah's son and as Haran's son — may indicate a grandfather-grandson naming pattern (naming a child after a living sibling) or a textual issue. Moza (Motsa, 'going forth') may be connected with the settlement of Mozah near Jerusalem (Joshua 18:26). Haran (Charan) shares a name with Abraham's brother and the city in Mesopotamia but is a Judahite.
47. Jahdai (Yahdai, 'whom God directs') appears without any stated relationship to the preceding genealogy — he may be a Calebite sub-clan leader whose connection to the main line was assumed but not specified. Jotham (Yotam, 'YHWH is perfect') shares a name with the later Judahite king. Ephah reappears as a person's name (distinct from the concubine in v. 46). Six sons suggest a significant clan.

48. Maacah (Ma'akhah, 'oppression' or a geographic name) is another of Caleb's concubines. The name Maacah is associated with an Aramean kingdom north of Israel (2 Samuel 10:6) and is borne by several women in the Hebrew Bible, including the mother of King Asa. Sheber (Shever, 'breaking') and Tirhanah (Tirchanah, meaning uncertain) are otherwise unattested. The multiple concubines of Caleb reflect the expansive nature of the Calebite clan, which populated a large area of southern Judah.
49. More Calebite settlements: Madmannah is a Negev town (Joshua 15:31). Machbenah and Gibeon are Judean settlements whose exact locations are debated. The sudden mention of Achsah (Akhsah) — 'the daughter of Caleb' — connects this genealogy to the famous story of Caleb giving his daughter to Othniel as a reward for conquering Debir (Joshua 15:16-17, Judges 1:12-15). This is likely the Caleb son of Jephunneh, and the Chronicler may be deliberately conflating the two Calebs, or Achsah represents a clan tradition shared across both Calebite lineages.
50. The genealogy shifts to Caleb's line through Hur (from v. 19-20), connecting to the Ephrathah (Bethlehem) territory. Shobal (Shoval, 'flowing') is called *avi Qiryat Ye'arim* — founder/chief of Kiriath-jearim ('city of forests'), the town where the ark of the covenant rested for twenty years after the Philistines returned it (1 Samuel 7:1-2). The Chronicler links this important sanctuary site to the Judahite-Calebite clan, establishing Judah's territorial and religious credentials.
51. Salma (Salma) is called *avi Beit Lechem* — 'father of Bethlehem.' This is the same Salma from verse 11 (Nahshon's son, Boaz's father), now identified as the founder of Bethlehem itself. David's ancestor did not merely live in Bethlehem — he founded it. This is perhaps the most important genealogical note in the chapter for messianic theology: the family that would produce the king also established the city from which the Messiah would come (Micah 5:2). Hareph (Charep, 'reproach' or 'autumn') founded Beth-gader ('house of the wall'), a fortified settlement.
52. Haroeh (HaRo'eh, 'the seer') is an unusual name that may be a clan designation rather than a personal name — 'the seer' as a family title. The phrase *chatsi hamenuchot* ('half of the Menuhoth/Manahathites') indicates that only a portion of this clan group descended from Shobal; the other half presumably had a different lineage. The Menuhoth may be connected with Manahath (v. 54), a settlement whose population was divided between different ancestral lines.
53. The Chronicler maps the clan structure of Kiriath-jearim — four resident clans who together produced the populations of Zorah and Eshtaol. These two towns are associated with the Samson narratives (Judges 13:25, 16:31) and with the Danite migration (Judges 18:2, 8, 11). The Ithrites may be connected with Jether/Ithran. The Chronicler's note that the Zorathites and Eshtaolites 'came from these' (*me'elley yatse'u*) traces the origins of Danite-territory towns to Judahite clan founders, suggesting complex population movements.
54. Salma's descendants are identified by the settlements they populated. Bethlehem (Beit Lechem, 'house of bread') heads the list as the primary settlement. The Netophathites are from Netophah, a village near Bethlehem where some of David's mighty warriors originated (2 Samuel 23:28-29). Atroth-beth-joab ('crowns of the house of Joab') connects to David's general Joab. The other half of the Manahathites (the first half was in v. 52) and the Zorites complete the Bethlehem-region clan structure.
55. This final verse is extraordinary: it identifies clans of scribes (*sofrim*) living at a place called Jabez (Ya'bets — the same name that will appear with a prayer in 4:9-10) and identifies them as Kenites (*Qinim*). The Kenites were a non-Israelite people associated with Moses' father-in-law (Judges 1:16, 4:11) who attached themselves to Israel. Here they are integrated into Judah's genealogical structure as scribal families — professionals who preserved written records. The house of Rechab (Beit Rekhav) is the family of the Rechabites, known from Jeremiah 35 for their strict lifestyle. The Chronicler closes Judah's genealogy by acknowledging that even the scribes who may have helped compile these very records had Kenite rather than Israelite origins.

3

Summary: *The Chronicler traces the royal line of David with precision: first, his sons born in Hebron during his seven-year reign as king over Judah alone; then his sons born in Jerusalem after he became king over all Israel; then the kings of Judah from Solomon through Zedekiah and the exile; and finally the post-exilic descendants of the royal house through Zerubbabel and beyond. The chapter is the Chronicler's dynastic register — the family tree of the house of David from its founding to his own time.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the most politically and theologically charged genealogy in Chronicles. The Chronicler is making an argument: the Davidic line did not end with the exile. Despite the destruction of the monarchy, the loss of the throne, and the Babylonian captivity, descendants of David survived and returned. The post-exilic names in verses 17-24 carry forward the royal bloodline into the Chronicler's own era, raising the implicit question: could the dynasty be restored? The list also reveals the Chronicler's candor — he includes sons by different wives and concubines, and names kings whom the Deuteronomistic History judged as wicked, without editorial comment. The genealogy simply records the line.*

Translation Friction: *The number of David's sons in Jerusalem differs slightly between verse 5 (naming specific sons) and the totals one can reconstruct from 2 Samuel 5:14-16 and 1 Chronicles 14:4-7, with minor name variations between the lists. The post-exilic genealogy in verses 17-24 presents textual difficulties: the relationship between Pedaiah and Shealtiel as Zerubbabel's father varies between Chronicles (Pedaiah, v. 19) and Haggai/Ezra (Shealtiel). We render the WLC text as written. The final verses (21-24) contain an uncertain number of generations depending on how the Hebrew 'sons of' statements are parsed.*

Connections: *This chapter bridges the gap between the pre-exilic monarchy and the post-exilic restoration. The Hebron-born sons connect to 2 Samuel 3:2-5. The Jerusalem-born sons connect to 2 Samuel 5:14-16. The king list from Solomon to Zedekiah compresses the entire book of Kings into a single genealogical sequence. Zerubbabel (v. 19), who led the return from exile and oversaw the temple rebuilding (Ezra 3:2, Haggai 1:1), appears as the hinge figure between the old monarchy and the new hope. The Chronicler's extension of the genealogy beyond Zerubbabel into his own time period is unique in the Hebrew Bible and signals that the Davidic promise remains active.*

¹These were the sons of David who were born to him in Hebron: the firstborn Amnon, by Ahinoam the Jezreelite; the second, Daniel, by Abigail the Carmelite; ²the third, Absalom, son of Maacah daughter of Talmai king of Geshur; the fourth, Adonijah, son of Haggith; ³the fifth, Shephatiah, by Abital; the sixth, Ithream, by Eglah his wife — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁴Six were born to him in Hebron, where he reigned seven years and six months. Then he reigned thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ⁵These were born to him in Jerusalem: Shimea, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon — four by Bath-shua daughter of Ammiel. ⁶and Ibhar, Elishama, and Eliphelet, ⁷Nogah, Nepheg, and Japhia, ⁸Elishama, Eliada, and Eliphelet — nine. ⁹All these were David's sons, apart from the sons of his concubines. Tamar was their sister. ¹⁰Solomon's son was Rehoboam; his son Abijah; his son Asa; his son Jehoshaphat; ¹¹his son Joram; his son Ahaziah; his son Joash; ¹²his son Amaziah; his son Azariah; his son Jotham; ¹³his son Ahaz; his son Hezekiah; his son Manasseh; ¹⁴his son Amon; his son Josiah. ¹⁵These were the sons of Josiah: the firstborn Johanan, the second Jehoiakim, the third Zedekiah, the fourth Shallum. ¹⁶These were the sons of Jehoiakim: Jeconiah his son, Zedekiah his son. ¹⁷The sons of Jeconiah: Assir, and Shealtiel his son, ¹⁸Malchiram, Pedaiah, Shenazzar, Jekamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah. ¹⁹The sons of Pedaiah: Zerubbabel and Shimei. The sons of Zerubbabel: Meshullam and Hananiah — and Shelomith was their sister. ²⁰Hashubah, Ohel, Berechiah, Hasadiah, and Jushab-hesed — five. ²¹The sons of Hananiah: Pelatiah and Jeshaiah. The sons of Rephaiah, the sons of Arnan, the sons of Obadiah, the sons of Shecaniah. ²²The son of Shecaniah: Shemaiah. The sons of Shemaiah: Hattush, Igal, Bariah, Neariah, and Shaphat — six. ²³The sons of Neariah: Elioenai, Hezekiah, and Azrikam — three. ²⁴The sons of Elioenai: Hodaviah, Eliashib, Pelaiah, Akkub, Johanan, Delaiah, and Anani — seven.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler begins with David's Hebron sons — the period before he ruled all Israel, when he reigned over Judah alone from Hebron for seven and a half years. Amnon (Amnon, 'faithful') was the firstborn whose rape of his half-sister Tamar led to his murder by Absalom (2 Samuel 13). The Chronicler records his name without comment on this catastrophe. Daniel (Dani'el, 'God is my judge') appears as Chileab in 2 Samuel 3:3 — the name variation may represent a personal name versus a throne name, or different manuscript traditions. Ahinoam (Achino'am, 'my brother is delight') was from Jezreel; Abigail (Avigayil) was from Carmel, the wise woman David married after Nabal's death (1 Samuel 25).
2. Absalom (Avshalom, 'my father is peace' — a bitterly ironic name given his rebellion) is identified through his mother's royal lineage: Maacah was the daughter of Talmai, king of Geshur, an Aramean kingdom northeast of the Sea of Galilee. This makes Absalom half-Aramean royalty — his rebellion had the backing of a foreign king (2 Samuel 15:8, 13:37-38). Adonijah (Adoniyyah, 'my lord is YHWH') was the son who attempted to seize the throne at David's deathbed (1 Kings 1). The Chronicler names both failed pretenders without comment.
3. Shephatiah (Shefatyah, 'YHWH has judged') and Ithream (Yitre'am, 'abundance of people') are not mentioned elsewhere in narrative. Abital (Avital, 'my father is dew') and Eglah (Eglah, 'heifer') are their mothers. The designation ishto ('his wife') for Eglah is unusual since all these women were David's wives — its specific use here may indicate Eglah held a particular status, or some rabbinic traditions identified Eglah as another name for Michal (Saul's daughter). Six sons by six different women in Hebron reflects both David's political marriages and his growing household.
4. The Chronicler inserts a regnal summary: seven and a half years in Hebron, thirty-three years in Jerusalem — a total of forty years, the standard reign length that symbolizes a complete generation of leadership (Moses led forty years, Solomon reigned forty years, Saul reigned forty years according to Acts 13:21). The transition from Hebron to Jerusalem marks the moment David went from tribal king of Judah to king over all Israel. The Chronicler uses this geographic shift to structure the genealogy.

5. Bath-shua (Bat-Shua) is Bathsheba (Bat-Sheva, '2 Samuel 11:3') — the Chronicler uses an alternate form of her name. She is identified as bat Ammi'el ('daughter of Ammiel') rather than 'daughter of Eliam' as in 2 Samuel 11:3 — the two names contain the same elements reversed (Ammi-El / El-iam, 'my people is God' / 'God is my people'). Four sons are attributed to her, including Nathan (Natan, 'he gave'), whose line — not Solomon's — leads to Jesus in Luke 3:31. The Chronicler lists Solomon last among Bath-shua's four sons, as the youngest but the chosen heir.
6. Ibhar (Yivchar, 'he chooses'), Elishama (Elishama, 'my God has heard'), and Eliphelet (Elifelet, 'my God is deliverance') — these are sons born in Jerusalem by unnamed mothers (presumably other wives or concubines). Elishama and Eliphelet appear twice in some versions of this list (see 2 Samuel 5:16 and 1 Chronicles 14:5-7), possibly because two different sons bore the same name (a known practice when an earlier son died in infancy).
7. Nogah (Nogah, 'brightness/splendor') appears in Chronicles' list but not in the 2 Samuel 5 parallel — an additional son the Chronicler's source preserves. Nepheg (Nefeg, 'sprout') shares a name with a Levite in Exodus 6:21. Japhia (Yafi'a, 'he shines') shares a name with the king of Lachish defeated by Joshua (Joshua 10:3). None of these sons play any role in the biblical narrative — they are princes who never entered the political arena.
8. The repetition of Elishama and Eliphelet (also in v. 6) has generated much discussion. The most likely explanation is that earlier sons by these names died, and later sons received the same names — a well-attested practice in the ancient world. Eliada (Elyada, 'God has known') is called Beeliada ('Baal has known') in 1 Chronicles 14:7, and the Chronicler has replaced the Baal element with El — a theological correction the Chronicler makes elsewhere. The total of nine Jerusalem-born sons (plus four by Bath-shua makes thirteen, plus six in Hebron makes nineteen named sons).
9. The phrase *millevad benei flagshim* ('apart from the sons of the concubines') reveals that David had additional unnamed sons by concubines — the nineteen named sons are from his wives only. The mention of Tamar (Tamar, 'palm tree') as 'their sister' preserves the memory of the princess whose rape by Amnon triggered the chain of events leading to Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 13). The Chronicler does not retell this story, but by naming Tamar in the genealogy, he includes her in the family record that the narrative of 2 Samuel tried to erase through violence.
10. The Chronicler now compresses the entire history of the Judean monarchy into a linear genealogy. The formula *X beno* ('his son X') chains the generations. Rehoboam (Rechav'am, 'the people are enlarged') lost the northern tribes through arrogance (1 Kings 12). Abijah (Aviyyah, 'my father is YHWH') reigned briefly but won a battle against Jeroboam (2 Chronicles 13). Asa (Asa, 'healer') was a reforming king who removed idols (2 Chronicles 14-16). Jehoshaphat (Yehoshafat, 'YHWH has judged') was one of Judah's better kings, allied with Ahab's house through marriage. Four generations, over a century of history, in a single verse.
11. Joram (Yoram, 'YHWH is exalted') married Athaliah, Ahab's daughter, importing Baal worship into Judah (2 Kings 8:18). Ahaziah (Achazyahu, 'YHWH has seized') reigned one year before being killed by Jehu (2 Kings 9:27). Joash (Yo'ash, 'YHWH has given') was the boy-king rescued from Athaliah's massacre and hidden in the temple for six years (2 Kings 11). This stretch of the genealogy covers a period of intense crisis for the Davidic line — Athaliah nearly exterminated the royal house, and the dynasty survived through a single child.
12. Amaziah (Amatsyahu, 'YHWH is strong') began well but ended by worshipping Edomite gods (2 Chronicles 25:14). Azariah (Azaryah, 'YHWH has helped') is also called Uzziah (Uzziyyahu) — the powerful king who was struck with leprosy for usurping priestly prerogatives (2 Chronicles 26:16-21). Jotham (Yotam, 'YHWH is perfect') was a faithful king who built the upper gate of the temple. The Chronicler's genealogical form strips away the narratives of faithfulness and failure, reducing each king to a link in the chain.
13. Three radically different kings in one verse. Ahaz (Achaz, 'he has seized') was one of Judah's worst kings, who burned his sons as offerings and stripped the temple (2 Kings 16). Hezekiah (Chizqiyyahu, 'YHWH is my strength') was one of the greatest reformers, who cleansed the temple and withstood Sennacherib's siege (2 Chronicles 29-32). Manasseh (Menasheh, 'causing to forget') was the most wicked king in Judah's history according to 2 Kings 21, though Chronicles records his repentance (2 Chronicles 33:12-13). The genealogy makes no moral distinction — all three are *beno*, 'his son.'
14. Amon (Amon, 'craftsman' or 'trustworthy') reigned only two years before his servants assassinated him (2 Kings 21:23). Josiah (Yo'shiyyahu, 'YHWH supports') was the great reformer who found the Book of the Law and launched the most thorough religious reformation in Judah's history (2 Kings 22-23). The juxtaposition of Amon (wicked, assassinated) and Josiah (righteous, reforming) in a single genealogical verse reminds the reader that the Davidic line's moral quality varied wildly, but the line itself continued.
15. Josiah's four sons are listed — and remarkably, the line to David's throne now fractures. No single son succeeds smoothly. Johanan (Yochanan, 'YHWH is gracious') is the firstborn who never reigned — he may have died before Josiah or been passed over. Jehoiakim (Yehoyaqim, 'YHWH raises up') was installed by Pharaoh Neco after deposing Jehoahaz (2 Kings 23:34). Zedekiah (Tsidqiyyahu, 'YHWH is my righteousness') was the last king before the exile. Shallum (Shallum) is likely Jehoahaz, who reigned three months before Egyptian deportation (2 Kings 23:31-34; Jeremiah 22:11 identifies Shallum as Jehoahaz).
16. Jeconiah (Yekhonyah, 'YHWH will establish') is also called Jehoiachin (Yehoyakhin) — the young king deported to Babylon in 597 BCE after only three months on the throne (2 Kings 24:8-16). The 'Zedekiah' listed here as Jehoiakim's son is either a different Zedekiah from verse 15 or represents a textual confusion. Jeconiah is the crucial link: he is the last Davidic king to sit on the throne, and all post-exilic Davidic descendants trace through him. Jeremiah pronounced a curse on Jeconiah's royal line (Jeremiah 22:30), yet the Chronicler records his descendants continuing — a tension the text does not resolve.
17. The genealogy crosses the exile. Assir (Assir, 'prisoner/captive') is a poignant name — it may be a personal name or a description (Jeconiah 'the captive'). Shealtiel (She'alti'el, 'I asked God') is identified as Zerubbabel's father in Haggai 1:1, Ezra 3:2, and Matthew 1:12, though verse 19 names Pedaiah as Zerubbabel's father. The most common resolution is that Shealtiel died childless and Pedaiah married his widow in a levirate arrangement, making Zerubbabel legally Shealtiel's son but biologically Pedaiah's. The Chronicler records the biological line.

18. Jeconiah's sons — born in Babylonian exile — bear names that express theological longing. Malchiram (Malkiram, 'my king is exalted') asserts royal identity in captivity. Pedaiah (Pedayah, 'YHWH has ransomed') claims divine deliverance. Shenazzar (Shen'atstsar) is likely the Sheshbazzar of Ezra 1:8, 11 who brought the temple vessels back from Babylon. Jekamiah (Yeqamyah, 'YHWH will establish') and Hoshama (Hoshama, 'he has heard') express hope. Nedabiah (Nedavyah, 'YHWH is generous') rounds out the list. These exile-era names are declarations of faith: the captive royal family named their children after divine promises.
19. Zerubbabel (Zerubbavel, 'seed of Babylon' — born in exile) is the most important post-exilic figure in the Davidic line. He led the first major return from Babylon and oversaw the rebuilding of the temple (Ezra 3:2, 8). The prophet Haggai called him God's 'signet ring' (Haggai 2:23), reversing the curse on Jeconiah. The Chronicler identifies his father as Pedaiah rather than Shealtiel (the Haggai/Ezra tradition), preserving the biological line. Meshullam (Meshullam, 'allied/repaid') and Hananiah (Chananyah, 'YHWH is gracious') continue the royal branch. Shelomith (Shelomit, 'peaceable') is the only woman named in the post-exilic section.
20. Five more sons of Zerubbabel (or possibly of Hananiah — the Hebrew is ambiguous). The names are theologically rich. Hashubah (Chashuvah, 'esteemed/considered'). Ohel (Ohel, 'tent'). Berechiah (Berekhyah, 'YHWH has blessed'). Hasadiah (Chasadyah, 'YHWH is faithful in love'). And most strikingly: Jushab-hesed (Yushav Chesed, 'faithful love is restored' or 'let faithful love return'). This last name is a theological sentence — a prayer that God's chesed, his covenant faithful love, would return to the house of David.
21. The genealogy extends beyond Zerubbabel into the later post-exilic period. Pelatiah (Pelatyah, 'YHWH has delivered') and Jeshaiah (Yesha'yah, 'YHWH saves') are Hananiah's sons. The chain that follows — Rephaiah, Arnan, Obadiah, Shecaniah — may be sequential generations (father to son to grandson) or parallel descendants. The repeated benei ('sons of') without connecting verbs creates ambiguity about whether these are linear or branching. The Chronicler is pushing the Davidic line into territory contemporaneous with his own lifetime.
22. The count says six but only five names follow Shemaiah — either Shemaiah is counted in the total, or a name has dropped from the text. Hattush (Chattush, 'assembled') may be the Hattush who returned with Ezra (Ezra 8:2), which would date this generation to approximately 458 BCE. Igal (Yig'al, 'he redeems'), Bariah (Bariach, 'fugitive'), Neariah (Ne'aryah, 'servant of YHWH'), and Shaphat (Shafat, 'he has judged') — each name a theological statement. The Davidic house continues to name children after divine attributes even in political obscurity.
23. Elioenai (Elyo'einai, 'my eyes are toward God') bears a name that expresses watchful hope. Hezekiah (Chizqiyah, 'YHWH is my strength') — the same name as the great reforming king, now borne by an obscure post-exilic descendant. Azrikam (Azriqam, 'my help has risen'). The use of famous royal names (Hezekiah) for post-exilic descendants may be deliberate — claiming continuity with the great kings even in the absence of a throne.
24. Seven sons — the number of completeness — for the final named generation of David's line. Anani (Anani, possibly short for Ananiah, 'YHWH has covered/protected') may be the 'Anani' mentioned in a 5th-century Elephantine papyrus as a Jewish governor, which would push this genealogy into the late Persian period. If so, the Chronicler writes within living memory of these figures. The petuchah marker closes the Davidic royal genealogy. The line from Adam (1:1) through Abraham (1:27) through Judah (2:3) through David (2:15) through Solomon (3:10) through the exile (3:17) to these seven sons traces an unbroken chain — God's covenant faithfulness to the house of David expressed in biological continuity across catastrophe.

4

Summary: *The Chronicler continues the Judahite genealogies with additional clans, guilds, and settlement-founders, then shifts to the tribe of Simeon. Embedded within the Judahite lists is the famous Prayer of Jabez (verses 9-10), a sudden burst of personal piety in the middle of bare genealogy. The chapter records potters, linen workers, and other craft guilds as tribal clans, and concludes with Simeon's territorial expansion into formerly Amalekite and Meunite lands.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Prayer of Jabez stands out like a jewel set in granite. In a chapter of otherwise relentless name lists, the Chronicler suddenly pauses to tell us that a man named 'Pain' (Jabez, from etsev) prayed a prayer so significant that 'God granted what he asked.' This is the Chronicler's theology in miniature: faithfulness is always possible, even for the obscure, and God responds to genuine prayer regardless of one's social position in the genealogy. The chapter also preserves unique information about Israelite craft guilds — potters who served the king (v. 23), linen workers at Beth-ashbea (v. 21) — revealing an economic infrastructure within the tribal system that no other biblical text records.*

Translation Friction: *The genealogical connections in verses 1-8 are difficult to correlate with chapters 2-3, as some names appear in different configurations. The phrase 'these are the potters who lived at Netaim and Gederah; they lived there with the king in his service' (v. 23) is one of the few windows into royal economic organization in Judah. The Simeonite section (vv. 24-43) provides territorial information not found in Joshua's tribal allotments, including military campaigns 'in the days of Hezekiah' (v. 41) that are not recorded in Kings or Chronicles' narrative sections.*

Connections: The Jabez prayer connects to the Chronicler's central theme that prayer changes outcomes — the same theme that drives Hezekiah's prayer during Sennacherib's siege (2 Chronicles 32:20) and Manasseh's prayer in captivity (2 Chronicles 33:12-13). The Simeonite expansion into Gedor (v. 39) and Mount Seir (v. 42) reflects the ongoing tension between Israel and the surrounding peoples. The craft guild information (vv. 21-23) anticipates the Chronicler's detailed interest in temple personnel and their specialized functions.

¹The sons of Judah: Perez, Hezron, Carmi, Hur, and Shobal. ²Reaiah son of Shobal fathered Jahath, and Jahath fathered Ahumai and Lahad. These are the clans of the Zorathites. ³These were the sons of the father of Etam: Jezreel, Ishma, and Idbash; and the name of their sister was Hazeleponi. ⁴Penuel was the father of Gedor, and Ezer the father of Hushah. These are the sons of Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah, the father of Bethlehem. ⁵Ashhur the father of Tekoa had two wives: Helah and Naarah — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁶Naarah bore him Ahuzzam, Hephher, Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were the sons of Naarah. ⁷The sons of Helah: Zereth, Zohar, and Ethnan. ⁸Koz fathered Anub, Zobebah, and the clans of Aharhel son of Harum. ⁹Jabez was more honored than his brothers. His mother had named him Jabez, saying, "Because I bore him in pain." ¹⁰Jabez called out to the God of Israel, saying, "If only you would truly bless me and expand my territory! Let your hand be with me, and keep me from harm so that I will not be in pain." And God granted what he asked. ¹¹Chelub, Shuah's brother, fathered Mehir, who was the father of Eshton. ¹²Eshton fathered Beth-rapha, Paseah, and Tehinnah, the father of Ir-nahash. These are the men of Recah. ¹³The sons of Kenaz: Othniel and Seraiah. The son of Othniel: Hathath. ¹⁴Meonothai fathered Ophrah. Seraiah fathered Joab, the father of Ge-harashim, because they were craftsmen. ¹⁵The sons of Caleb son of Jephunneh: Iru, Elah, and Naam. The son of Elah: Kenaz. ¹⁶The sons of Jehallelel: Ziph, Ziphah, Tiria, and Asarel. ¹⁷The sons of Ezra: Jether, Mered, Ephher, and Jalon. She conceived and bore Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah the father of Eshtemoa. ¹⁸His Judahite wife bore Jered the father of Gedor, Heber the father of Soco, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah. These are the sons of Bithiah, daughter of Pharaoh, whom Mered married. ¹⁹These were the sons of the wife of Hodiah, the sister of Naham: the father of Keilah the Garmite and Eshtemoa the Maacathite. ²⁰The sons of Shimon: Amnon, Rinnah, Ben-hanan, and Tilon. The sons of Ishi: Zoheth and Ben-zoheth. ²¹The sons of Shelah son of Judah: Er the father of Lecah, Laadah the father of Mareshah, and the clans of the linen-workers' guild at Beth-ashbea, ²²and Jokim, the men of Cozeba, Joash, and Saraph — who ruled in Moab — and Jashubi-lehem. These are ancient records. ²³These were the potters who lived at Netaim and Gederah. They lived there in the king's service, doing his work. ²⁴The sons of Simeon: Nemuel, Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, and Shaul. ²⁵These were shallum his son, Mibsam his son, Mishma his son. ²⁶These were the sons of Mishma: Hammuel his son, Zaccur his son, Shimei his son. ²⁷Shimei had sixteen sons and six daughters, but his brothers did not have many children. Their entire clan did not multiply as much as the sons of Judah. ²⁸They lived in Beer-sheba, Moladah, and Hazar-shual, ²⁹and in Bilhah, Ezem, and Tolad, ³⁰and in Bethuel, Hormah, and Ziklag, ³¹and in Beth-marcaboth, Hazar-susim, Beth-birei, and Shaaraim. These were their cities until the reign of David. ³²Their surrounding villages were Etam, Ain, Rimmon, Tochen, and Ashan — five towns. ³³All their surrounding villages as far as Baal — these were their settlements and their genealogical records. ³⁴Meshobab, Jamlech, and Joshah son of Amaziah, ³⁵Joel, and Jehu son of Joshibiah son of Seraiah son of Asiel, ³⁶Elioenai, Jaakobah, Jeshohaiah, Asaiah, Adiel, Jesimiel, and Benaiah, ³⁷and Ziza son of Shiphi, son of Allon, son of Jedaiah, son of Shimri, son of Shemaiah. ³⁸These who are listed by name were leaders in their clans, and their ancestral houses grew large. ³⁹They went to the approach of Gedor, to the east side of the valley, to seek pasture for their flocks. ⁴⁰They found rich, good pastureland, and the land was broad, quiet, and peaceful, because those who had previously lived there were descended from Ham. ⁴¹These men, recorded by name, came in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah and struck down the tent-dwellers and the Meunites who were found there. They devoted them to destruction to this day, and settled in their place, because there was pasture there for their flocks. ⁴²Some of the Simeonites — five hundred men — went to Mount Seir, with Pelatiah, Neariah, Rephaiah, and Uzziel, sons of Ishi, as their leaders. ⁴³They struck down the remnant of the Amalekites who had escaped, and they have lived there to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This list reorganizes the Judahite genealogy, mixing generations — Perez and Hezron are grandfather and grandson (2:5), while Carmi, Hur, and Shobal are from later branches. The Chronicler is listing clan heads rather than a strict father-to-son sequence. The term 'sons of Judah' (benei Yehudah) here functions as 'major clans of Judah' rather than as immediate sons. This technique of telescoping genealogies is common in ancient Near Eastern records.
2. Reaiah (Re'ayah, 'YHWH has seen') connects to Shobal the founder of Kiriath-jearim (2:52). Jahath (Yachat, 'he will snatch up'), Ahumai (Achumai, possibly 'brother of water'), and Lahad (Lahad, 'oppression' or 'slow') founded the Zorathite clans. Zorah is the hometown of Samson's family (Judges 13:2) — through this genealogy, the Chronicler connects the Danite hero's territory to Judahite settlement patterns. The phrase mishpechot haTsor'ati ('clans of the Zorathites') uses mishpachah in its technical sense of a sub-tribal clan unit.
3. The 'father of Etam' (avi Eitam) means the founder of the settlement of Etam, a fortified town near Bethlehem (2 Chronicles 11:6). Jezreel (Yizre'el, 'God sows') as a personal name within Judah is distinct from the northern city and valley of the same name. Hazeleponi (HaTselephoni, possibly 'the shade coming toward me' or 'shade-facing') is one of the rare women named in the genealogies outside of wives and mothers — her mention suggests she was a figure of some significance in clan memory.
4. Penuel (Penu'el, 'face of God') founded Gedor, and Ezer (Ezer, 'help') founded Hushah. Both are traced to Hur, the firstborn of Ephrathah. The phrase avi Beit Lechem ('father of Bethlehem') repeats from 2:51, reinforcing the connection between the Calebite-Hurite clan and the city that would produce David and, in Christian reading, the Messiah. The Chronicler builds Bethlehem's pedigree through multiple genealogical pathways.
5. Ashhur (Ashchur) was introduced in 2:24 as the posthumous son of Hezron. His role as avi Teqoa ('father of Tekoa') identifies him as the founder of the town south of Bethlehem. His two wives create two sub-clans of the Tekoa settlement. Helah (Chel'ah, 'rust' or 'sickness') and Naarah (Na'arah, 'girl/maiden') — the contrast between the names may reflect something about the clan character, or they may simply be conventional names.
6. Naarah's four sons represent sub-clans of the Tekoa settlement. Ahuzzam (Achuzzam, 'their possession'). Hephher (Chefer, 'well/pit') — the same name as a Manassite clan (Numbers 26:32). Temeni (Teimeni, 'southerner') suggests connections with the Teman region. Haahashtari (Ha'achashtari, 'the Ahashtarite') may be an ethnic or guild designation rather than a personal name. The Chronicler records both maternal lines to show the dual origin of Tekoa's population.
7. Helah's three sons form the other branch of the Tekoa population. Zereth (Tseret, 'splendor'), Zohar (Tsochar, 'whiteness/brightness'), and Ethnan (Etnan, 'gift/hire') are clan names not attested elsewhere. The two-wife structure with separate descendant lists is a standard way to document the formation of a settlement from distinct family groups who share common ancestry through the male line but maintain separate clan identities through the maternal line.
8. Koz (Qots, 'thorn') may be connected with the priestly family of Hakkoz (Ezra 2:61, Nehemiah 3:4, 21). Anub (Anuv, 'strong' or 'clustered') and Zobebah (Tsovevah, 'slow-moving') are otherwise unknown. Aharhel (Achar'chel, 'behind the wall' or 'brother of Rachel') son of Harum (Harum, 'exalted') founded additional Judahite clans. These names connect to settlement regions without surviving narrative traditions.
9. The phrase vayyehi Ya'bets nikhbad me'echav ('Jabez was more honored than his brothers') interrupts the genealogical flow with a moral evaluation — the only such evaluation between Achan (2:7) and the end of the genealogies. The niphal participle nikhbad ('honored, weighty, esteemed') is from the root kavod ('glory, weight') — Jabez carried genuine significance despite his painful name. His mother's naming statement ki yaladeti be'otsev ('because I bore him in pain') echoes Genesis 3:16, where God tells Eve she will bring forth children be'etsev ('in pain'). The wordplay between Ya'bets and otsev is the Chronicler's explanation for the name.
10. The prayer has four elements: (1) im barekh tevarkheni ('if indeed you would bless me') — the infinitive absolute barekh intensifies the request; (2) vehichita et gevuli ('and expand my territory') — asking for material and social increase; (3) vehayetah yadkha immi ('and let your hand be with me') — requesting God's active presence and protection; (4) ve'asita mera'ah levilti otsbi ('and act against evil so that it does not cause me pain') — the final word otsbi circles back to his name's etymology in otsev ('pain'). The prayer is a petition to transcend the identity his birth assigned him.
10. The response vayyave Elohim et asher sha'al ('God brought about what he asked') is one of the most direct statements of answered prayer in the Hebrew Bible. No conditions, no delay, no partial fulfillment — God simply granted the request. The Chronicler places this within the genealogy because it demonstrates his core conviction: prayer to the God of Israel is effective, and a person's origin does not limit God's response.
11. After the dramatic Jabez interlude, the genealogy resumes with flat enumeration. Chelub (Keluv, possibly a variant of Caleb) is identified by his sibling relationship (achi Shuchah, 'brother of Shuah') rather than by his father. Mehir (Mechir, 'price/wage') and Eshton (Eshton, possibly 'rest' or 'luxurious') are otherwise unattested clan leaders. The transition back to bare names after the Jabez prayer is jarring — the Chronicler returns to his systematic documentation without lingering.
12. Beth-rapha (Beit Rafa, 'house of the giant' or 'house of healing') may be a settlement name rather than a personal name. Paseah (Paseach, 'limping') — cf. Passover, pesach). Tehinnah (Techinnah, 'supplication/grace') — a name meaning 'plea for mercy' — founded Ir-nahash ('city of the serpent' or 'city of copper'). The identification as anshei Rekha ('men of Recah') locates these clans in a specific but now-unidentifiable place.
13. Kenaz (Qenaz) is the father of Othniel (Otniel, 'God is my strength'), Israel's first judge (Judges 3:9-11). The Kenizzites, though originally connected with Edom (Genesis 36:11, 42), were absorbed into Judah — Caleb son of Jephunneh was a Kenizzite (Numbers 32:12). Othniel's inclusion here demonstrates how the Chronicler integrates diverse ethnic origins into Judah's tribal structure. Seraiah (Serayah, 'YHWH is prince') and Hathath

(Chatat, meaning uncertain) extend the Kenizzite line.

14. Ge-harashim (Gei Charashim, 'Valley of Craftsmen') is a settlement named for its residents' occupation. The explanatory note *ki charashim hayu* ('because they were craftsmen') is significant — it shows that tribal genealogies encoded economic information alongside kinship. This Joab (Yo'av) is not David's general but a clan founder. The *charashim* ('craftsmen/artisans') may have been metalworkers, woodworkers, or general artisans. Nehemiah 11:35 mentions Ge-harashim as a post-exilic settlement, showing the craft guild survived the exile.
15. Now the famous Caleb — Caleb son of Jephunneh (Yefunneh), the faithful spy who with Joshua alone gave a good report of the promised land (Numbers 13:30, 14:6-9). His sons Iru (Iru, 'watchful'), Elah (Elah, 'terebinth'), and Naam (Na'am, 'pleasant') are recorded. That Kenaz appears as Elah's son creates a circular connection: the Kenizzite clan name reappears in Caleb's own lineage, binding the Kenizzites firmly into Judah's tribal structure. Caleb son of Jephunneh and Caleb son of Hezron (ch. 2) may have merged in clan memory.
16. Jehallelel (Yehalelel, 'he praises God') is an unknown figure whose name is a doxological statement. Ziph (Zif) is connected with the town of Ziph in the Judean wilderness, where David hid from Saul (1 Samuel 23:14). Ziphah (Zifah) may represent a related but distinct settlement. Tiria (Tirya, meaning uncertain) and Asarel (Asar'el, 'God has bound/vowed') complete the list. The praise-oriented father's name within a genealogy of obscure people reflects the Chronicler's conviction that worship pervades all of life.
17. The pronoun 'she' (*vattahar*, 'and she conceived') lacks an explicit antecedent in this verse — the mother is identified in verse 18. Miriam (Miryam) as a Judahite name connects with the famous Miriam, Moses' sister, though this is a different person. Eshtemoa (Eshtemo'a, 'obedience' or 'I will make myself heard') is a Levitical city in Judah's hill country (Joshua 21:14) where David sent spoils after the Amalekite raid (1 Samuel 30:28). Ishbah as its 'father' means its founding clan leader.
18. This is one of the most remarkable verses in the genealogies. Mered (Mered, 'rebellion') married Bithiah (Bityah, 'daughter of YHWH'), identified as bat Par'oh — 'daughter of Pharaoh.' An Egyptian princess married into a Judahite clan and bore children who founded Israelite towns. The name Bithiah ('daughter of YHWH') is itself a conversion name — an Egyptian princess given a name invoking Israel's God. Her sons founded Gedor, Soco (a town in the Shephelah, 1 Samuel 17:1), and Zanoah (Joshua 15:34). The Chronicler records this intermarriage with an Egyptian royal without censure, just as he recorded the Egyptian servant Jarha (2:34-35).
19. Hodia's (Hodiyah, 'majesty of YHWH') wife is identified as Naham's sister. Keilah (Qe'ilah) is the fortified town David saved from the Philistines (1 Samuel 23:1-13). The designation Garmi ('the Garmite') and Ma'akhati ('the Maacathite') attach ethnic or geographic identifiers to these clan leaders — the Maacathites are associated with the Aramean region near the Hermon. The verse is textually challenging, and the relationship between the various names is debated.
20. Shimon (Shimon, 'hearing') — not the patriarch Simeon but a Judahite clan leader. Rinnah (Rinnah, 'ringing cry/joyful shout') is a striking name suggesting celebration. Ben-hanan ('son of grace') is a compound name. The second group descends from Ishi (Yish'i, 'my salvation'). Zoheth (Zochet, meaning uncertain) and Ben-zoheth ('son of Zoheth') — the latter is either a personal name or literally 'the son of Zoheth,' left unnamed.
21. Shelah (Shelah) was Judah's third son, the one who survived when Er and Onan died (Genesis 38). His descendants are now enumerated. Er (Er) as a descendant's name (named after Judah's dead firstborn) is a memorial act. Mareshah (Mareshah) was an important fortified city in the Shephelah. The phrase *mishpechot beit avodat habuts* ('clans of the house of fine linen work') reveals an occupational guild organized along clan lines — families of linen workers at Beth-ashbea. This is the earliest reference to organized textile production in ancient Israel.
22. The phrase *asher ba'alu leMo'av* ('who ruled/married in Moab') may mean they had authority in Moab or married Moabite women — the verb *ba'al* can mean both 'to rule over' and 'to marry.' This Judahite clan had a presence in Moab, across the Dead Sea. The concluding note *vehaddevarim attiqim* ('and the things/records are ancient') is the Chronicler's admission that his source material is old and possibly fragmentary — a rare editorial confession about the age and reliability of his genealogical data.
23. The *hayyotsrim* ('the potters/formers') are a professional guild organized within the tribal structure. They lived at Netaim (Neta'im, 'plantings') and Gederah (Gederah, 'wall/enclosure') and worked *im hammelekh bimelakhto* ('with the king in his work') — they were royal craftsmen, potters in the service of the crown. This is a rare window into the economic organization of the monarchy: craft guilds lived in specific settlements and produced goods for the king. The Chronicler preserves this detail because it connects tribal identity to national service.
24. The Chronicler shifts to the tribe of Simeon. The list differs slightly from Genesis 46:10 and Numbers 26:12-14 — Jarib (Yariv, 'he contends') replaces Jachin, and Zerah (Zerach) replaces Zohar. Simeon is treated immediately after Judah because Simeon's territory was absorbed into Judah's (Joshua 19:1-9) — the two tribes were geographically and eventually politically merged. Shaul (Sha'ul, 'asked for') is identified in Genesis 46:10 as the son of a Canaanite woman, a detail the Chronicler omits.
25. The linear genealogy traces Shaul's line: Shallum (Shallum, 'retribution'), Mibsam (Mivsam, 'sweet odor'), Mishma (Mishma, 'hearing'). The names Mibsam and Mishma also appear in Ishmael's genealogy (1:29-30), suggesting possible intermarriage between Simeonite and Ishmaelite populations in the Negev. This overlap is not coincidental — Simeon's territory in the southern Negev bordered Ishmaelite territory, and the two populations likely mixed.
26. Three more generations: Hammuel (Chammu'el, 'God is warmth/father-in-law of God'), Zaccur (Zakkur, 'remembered/mindful'), Shimei (Shim'i, 'my hearing' or 'YHWH has heard'). The linear format (X beno, 'his son X') traces a single thread through the Simeonite clan — the Chronicler is following the main line to establish continuity rather than branching to show all sub-clans.

27. This is an important demographic note: Simeon's population was significantly smaller than Judah's. The phrase *lo hirbu ad benei Yehudah* ('they did not multiply up to the sons of Judah') explains why Simeon was absorbed into Judah's territory. Shimei's large family (sixteen sons, six daughters) was the exception, not the rule — his brothers had small families. This population imbalance accounts for Simeon's gradual disappearance as an independent tribe and its merger into Judah.
28. The Simeonite city list corresponds closely to Joshua 19:2-8. Beer-sheba (Be'er Sheva, 'well of the oath/well of seven') was the most important Negev city, associated with the patriarchs Abraham and Isaac. Moladah (Moladah, 'birth/generation') is a Negev settlement also assigned to Simeon in Joshua 19:2. Hazar-shual (Chatsar Shu'al, 'fox enclosure') is in the southern Negev. These settlements map the driest, most marginal territory in Judah — consistent with Simeon's reduced status.
29. Bilhah (Vilhah) — not the concubine of Jacob but a Negev settlement. Ezem (Etsem, 'bone/strength') appears in Joshua 15:29 and 19:3. Tolad (Tolad) is likely the same as Eltolad in Joshua 15:30. These secondary Simeonite settlements are in the deep Negev, reinforcing the peripheral nature of Simeonite territory.
30. Hormah (Chormah, 'destruction/devoted') was the site of both an Israelite defeat and later victory in the conquest period (Numbers 14:45, 21:3). Ziklag (Tsiqlag) is famous as the Philistine city Achish gave to David during his exile from Saul (1 Samuel 27:6) — the text notes that 'Ziklag has belonged to the kings of Judah to this day.' These are recognizable towns with narrative histories, embedded within the dry list format.
31. Beth-marcaboth (Beit Markavot, 'house of chariots') and Hazar-susim (Chatsar Susim, 'enclosure of horses') are names suggesting military installations — chariot garrisons and horse stations in the Negev. The note *ad melokh David* ('until the reign of David') implies that Simeonite territorial arrangements changed when David became king — perhaps David reorganized the Negev settlements as part of his centralized administration. This chronological marker is one of the few in the genealogies.
32. The *chatserim* ('villages/enclosures') are secondary settlements dependent on the fortified towns. Etam, Ain (Ein, 'spring'), Rimmon (Rimmon, 'pomegranate'), Tochen (Tokhen, 'measure'), and Ashan (Ashan, 'smoke') are Negev villages. Ain-rimmon later became a single compound name (Nehemiah 11:29). These five satellite communities show the dispersed settlement pattern of the Negev.
33. The phrase *vehiyachsam lahem* ('and their genealogical registration belonged to them') uses the *hitpa'el* of *yachas* ('to enroll by genealogy'), a verb that appears almost exclusively in Chronicles and Ezra-Nehemiah. This is the Chronicler's technical term for official genealogical registration — the clan records that established territorial claims and tribal identity. The reference to 'Baal' (Ba'al) as a geographic boundary marker is likely Baalath-beer of Joshua 19:8, not the deity.
34. A new list begins — Simeonite clan leaders who led a territorial expansion (described in vv. 38-43). Meshobab (Meshovav, 'restored/returned'), Jamlech (Yamlekh, 'let him reign'), and Joshah (Yoshah, 'YHWH causes to dwell') are leaders of this expansion. These are not ancient patriarchs but relatively recent figures whose activities the Chronicler dates to the time of Hezekiah (v. 41).
35. Joel (Yo'el, 'YHWH is God') and Jehu (Yehu, 'he is YHWH') continue the list of Simeonite leaders. Jehu's genealogy is traced three generations back through Joshibiah (Yoshivyah, 'YHWH causes to dwell'), Seraiah (Serayah, 'YHWH is prince'), and Asiel (Asi'el, 'God has made'). The three-generation pedigree establishes his authority as a clan leader with recognized lineage.
36. Seven more Simeonite leaders. Jaakobah (Ya'aqovah, 'may he protect' — a variant of Jacob) and Benaiah (Benayahu, 'YHWH has built') stand out as common Israelite names. Adiel (Adi'el, 'ornament of God') and Jesimiel (Yesimi'el, 'God will place') contain the theophoric *El* element. These men represent the military-political leadership of the Simeonite expansion.
37. Ziza (Ziza, meaning uncertain) is traced through five generations: Shiphi (Shif'i, 'my abundance'), Allon (Allon, 'oak'), Jedaiah (Yedayah, 'YHWH has known'), Shimri (Shimri, 'my guard'), and Shemaiah (Shemayah, 'YHWH has heard'). This extended pedigree for a Simeonite leader parallels the kind of genealogical depth the Chronicler gives Judahite clan leaders — even Simeon's relatively minor position does not reduce the care taken with their records.
38. The phrase *habba'im beshemot* ('those coming by names' — i.e., those listed by name) identifies the preceding men as recognized leaders (*nesi'im*, 'princes/chiefs') of their clans. The note *ubeit avoteihem partsu larov* ('and the house of their fathers broke forth to abundance') uses the verb *parats* ('to burst forth, to break out'), the same root as the name Perez — these Simeonite families experienced explosive growth that necessitated territorial expansion.
39. The expansion begins: the growing Simeonite clans move toward Gedor (Gedor, 'wall/enclosure'), a settlement in the Judean hill country or possibly in the Negev. The Septuagint reads 'Gerar' instead of 'Gedor,' which would place this expedition near the Philistine border territory associated with Abraham and Isaac (Genesis 20, 26). The search for pasture (*mir'eh latso'nam*, 'grazing land for their flocks') marks this as pastoralist expansion — herders seeking new territory for their animals.
40. The description of the land — *mir'eh shamen vatov* ('fat and good pastureland'), *rachavat yadayim* ('broad on both sides'), *shoqetet ushelevah* ('quiet and tranquil') — reads like an echo of the promised land descriptions in the Pentateuch. The residents are identified as *min Cham* ('from Ham'), indicating they were ethnically Hamitic — possibly Egyptians, Canaanites, or other peoples of African origin. The Chronicler notes their identity to establish that the Simeonites were displacing non-Israelites, not fellow tribes.
41. The dating *bimei Yechizqiyahu melekh Yehudah* ('in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah') places this Simeonite expansion in the late 8th century BCE — during the same era as Sennacherib's invasion. The Meunites (Me'unim) were a people from the region of Ma'on in Edom or the Sinai. The verb *vayyacharimu* ('they devoted to destruction') uses the *cherem* vocabulary — the same total warfare terminology from the conquest period. The

phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') indicates the Chronicler's source was written when the Simeonites still held this territory.

42. A separate Simeonite expedition of five hundred warriors moved into the mountains of Edom (Har Se'ir). The four commanders — Pelatiah (Pelatyah, 'YHWH has delivered'), Neariah (Ne'aryah, 'servant of YHWH'), Rephaiah (Refayah, 'YHWH has healed'), and Uzziel (Uzzi'el, 'God is my strength') — are sons of Ishi, placing them in a known Simeonite lineage. The expedition into Edomite territory represents Simeon's expansion beyond the traditional borders of Israel.
43. The final verse of Simeon's genealogy records the destruction of she'erit hapeletah la'Amaleq ('the remnant of the survivors of Amalek') — the last Amalekites. Amalek, Israel's archetype enemy since Exodus 17:8-16, had been under a divine sentence of total destruction (1 Samuel 15:2-3) that Saul failed to execute fully. Now Simeonites complete the task in Edom. The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') again indicates a pre-exilic source. The petuchah marker closes the Simeonite section and the chapter. The Chronicler has shown that even the weakest tribe carried out the kind of bold territorial action that characterized Israel's ideal self-understanding.

5

Summary: *The Chronicler covers the Transjordanian tribes: Reuben, Gad, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. He explains why Reuben lost the birthright (to Joseph's sons) and the royal prerogative (to Judah), traces Reubenite and Gadite genealogies, records their joint military victory over the Hagrites through prayer, and concludes with the devastating notice that all three eastern tribes were exiled by Assyria because of their unfaithfulness to God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the Chronicler's most explicit theology of why tribes rise and fall. Reuben was the firstborn but lost everything because he defiled his father's bed (v. 1, referring to Genesis 35:22). Joseph received the double portion. Judah received the kingship. The Chronicler states this not as narrative but as legal principle — birthright, blessing, and authority can be redistributed based on moral conduct. The chapter then demonstrates the principle with the eastern tribes: they called on God in battle and he answered (v. 20), but they later committed unfaithfulness (ma'al, v. 25) and God sent them into exile. Prayer and faithfulness bring victory; unfaithfulness brings destruction.*

Translation Friction: *The chronology of the Transjordanian tribes is difficult to reconstruct precisely. The war against the Hagrites (vv. 18-22) may date to the early monarchy period, while the Assyrian exile (vv. 25-26) occurred in 733-732 BCE under Tiglath-pileser III. The Chronicler telescopes centuries of history into a single theological narrative. The phrase 'the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria' (v. 26) uses two names for the same king: Pul (his Babylonian name) and Tiglath-pileser (his Assyrian throne name).*

Connections: *Reuben's loss of the birthright connects to Genesis 35:22 and Genesis 49:3-4 (Jacob's deathbed prophecy). The transfer to Joseph and Judah sets up the Chronicler's dual focus on temple (associated with the northern Joseph/Levitical tradition) and throne (Judah/David). The Hagrite war parallels other holy war narratives where Israel prevails through calling on God (cf. 2 Chronicles 14:11, 20:12). The exile theology of verse 25 — unfaithfulness (ma'al) against the God of their fathers, prostituting themselves after the gods of the peoples — previews the Chronicler's explanation for the fall of Jerusalem in 2 Chronicles 36:14-17.*

¹The sons of Reuben, Israel's firstborn — he was the firstborn, but when he defiled his father's bed, his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel, so the genealogical registration does not follow the birthright. ²For Judah was the strongest among his brothers, and the leader came from him, but the birthright belonged to Joseph. ³The sons of Reuben, Israel's firstborn: Enoch, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. ⁴These were the sons of Joel: Shemaiah his son, Gog his son, Shimei his son, ⁵These were Micah his son, Reaiah his son, Baal his son, ⁶Beerah his son, whom Tiglath-pileser king of Assyria carried into exile — he was a leader of the Reubenites. ⁷His relatives by their clans, as enrolled in the genealogical records by their generations: the chief was Jeiel, then Zechariah, ⁸and Bela son of Azaz, son of Shema, son of Joel. He lived in Aroer and as far as Nebo and Baal-meon. ⁹To the east he settled as far as the edge of the wilderness extending from the Euphrates River, because their livestock had multiplied in the land of Gilead. ¹⁰In the days of Saul, they waged war against the Hagrites, who fell before them. They settled in the Hagrites' tents throughout the entire eastern face of Gilead. ¹¹The sons of Gad lived opposite them in the land of Bashan, as far as Salecah. ¹²Joel was the chief, Shapham the second, then Jaanai and Shaphat in Bashan. ¹³Their relatives by their ancestral houses: Michael, Meshullam, Sheba, Jorai, Jachan, Zia, and Eber — seven. ¹⁴Thes

e were the sons of Abihail son of Huri, son of Jaroah, son of Gilead, son of Michael, son of Jeshishai, son of Jahdo, son of Buz. ¹⁵Ahi son of Abdiel, son of Guni, was the head of their ancestral house. ¹⁶They settled in Gilead, in Bashan and its surrounding towns, and in all the pasturelands of Sharon to their borders. ¹⁷All of them were enrolled in the genealogical records in the days of Jotham king of Judah and in the days of Jeroboam king of Israel. ¹⁸The sons of Reuben, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh had warriors — men who carried shield and sword, who drew the bow, and who were trained for battle — forty-four thousand seven hundred sixty who went out to war. ¹⁹They waged war against the Hagrites, Jetur, Naphish, and Nodab. ²⁰They received help against them, and the Hagrites and all who were with them were handed over to them, because they cried out to God in the battle and he responded to them, because they trusted in him. ²¹They captured their livestock: fifty thousand camels, two hundred fifty thousand sheep, two thousand donkeys, and one hundred thousand people. ²²Many fell slain, because the battle was God's. They settled in their territory until the exile. ²³The sons of the half-tribe of Manasseh settled in the land from Bashan to Baal-hermon, Senir, and Mount Hermon. They were numerous. ²⁴These were the heads of their ancestral houses: Ephraim, Ishi, Eliel, Azriel, Jeremiah, Hodaviah, and Jahdiel — mighty warriors, men of renown, heads of their ancestral houses. ²⁵But they acted unfaithfully against the God of their fathers and prostituted themselves after the gods of the peoples of the land, whom God had destroyed before them. ²⁶So the God of Israel stirred up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria — that is, Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria — and he exiled the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh. He brought them to Halah, Habor, Hara, and the river of Gozan, where they remain to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler opens with an explanation for a structural anomaly: if Reuben was the firstborn (bekhor), why does the genealogy not treat him first? The answer: uvechallelo yetsu'ei aviv ('when he profaned his father's bed') — referring to Reuben sleeping with Bilhah, Jacob's concubine (Genesis 35:22). The verb challel ('to profane, to defile') indicates desecration of what is sacred — the father's marriage bed was inviolable. As a consequence, nitnah bekhoro to Yosef ('his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph'). The double portion of inheritance, the birthright's primary benefit, went to Joseph through Ephraim and Manasseh — two tribal allotments instead of one.
2. The phrase Yehudah gavar be'echav ('Judah was mighty/prevalent among his brothers') uses gavar, a verb of physical and political dominance. The result: ulenagid mimmenu ('and the ruler from him'). The term nagid ('ruler, designated leader, commander') is the same word used for Saul (1 Samuel 9:16) and David (1 Samuel 13:14) — it implies divine appointment rather than mere political power. The Chronicler separates material blessing (Joseph gets the birthright) from royal authority (Judah gets the nagid), establishing a dual-track system that governs his entire work.
3. Having explained why Reuben is not treated first, the Chronicler now gives his genealogy. The four sons match Genesis 46:9, Exodus 6:14, and Numbers 26:5-6. Enoch (Chanokh, 'dedicated'), Pallu (Pallu, 'distinguished'), Hezron (Chetsron, 'enclosed'), and Carmi (Karmi, 'my vineyard') — the same Hezron and Carmi names appear in Judah's genealogy (ch. 2), illustrating how common names circulated across tribal lines. The Reubenite genealogy receives far less detail than Judah's, consistent with Reuben's diminished status.
4. Joel (Yo'el, 'YHWH is God') begins a linear Reubenite genealogy. Gog (Gog) appears here as a Reubenite personal name — long before Ezekiel used 'Gog of the land of Magog' (Ezekiel 38:2) as an eschatological figure. The name's original meaning is uncertain, possibly 'mountain' or 'high.' The Chronicler's audience would have known both the personal and the prophetic associations. Shimei (Shim'i, 'YHWH has heard') is ubiquitous across tribal genealogies.
5. The linear genealogy continues. Baal (Ba'al, 'lord/master') as a personal name within a Reubenite family is noteworthy — in the early period, 'baal' was used as an epithet for YHWH without the idolatrous connotations it later acquired. Hosea 2:16 records God saying 'You will call me Ishi (my husband) and no longer call me Baali (my Baal/my lord).' The presence of Baal as a name suggests this genealogy dates to a period before the name became exclusively associated with Canaanite religion.
6. The genealogy ends abruptly with exile. Beerah (Be'erah, 'well') is identified as nasi la-Re'uveni ('a leader/prince of the Reubenites') and is specifically named as one deported by Tilgath-pilneser (Tiglat-Pil'neser, i.e., Tiglath-pileser III of Assyria, r. 745-727 BCE). The Chronicler names the exiling king and the tribal leader who was taken — this is not abstract history but specific, documented loss. The genealogical line terminates in deportation.
7. The phrase behityaches letoledotam ('when enrolled genealogically according to their generations') uses the Chronicler's technical vocabulary for official registration. Jeiel (Ye'i'el, 'God lives') is listed as the head (ha-ro'sh, 'the chief'). Zechariah (Zekharyah, 'YHWH remembers') follows. These are clan leaders listed according to their official registration in tribal records, not a father-to-son genealogy.
8. Bela's territory defines the Reubenite range. Aroer (Aro'er) is on the north rim of the Arnon gorge — Reuben's southern boundary. Nebo (Nevo) is the mountain and settlement where Moses viewed the promised land (Deuteronomy 34:1). Baal-meon (Ba'al Me'on, 'lord of the dwelling') is attested in the Mesha Stele (the Moabite Stone, c. 840 BCE), where King Mesha of Moab claims to have built it. The Chronicler maps Reubenite territory that was constantly contested with Moab.

9. The Reubenite territory extended eastward levo midbarah lemin hannahar Perat ('to the approach of the wilderness from the Euphrates River'). The claim of territory reaching the Euphrates recalls the ideal borders promised to Abraham (Genesis 15:18) and realized only briefly under David and Solomon. The reason given — ki miqueihem ravu ('because their livestock had multiplied') — links territorial expansion to pastoral prosperity, the same dynamic that drove the Simeonite expansion in chapter 4.
10. The Reubenites conducted military operations against the Hagrites (Hagri'im) — a people associated with Hagar, Ishmael's mother, and therefore with the Ishmaelite tribes of the eastern desert. The dating bimei Sha'ul ('in the days of Saul') places this conflict in the early monarchy. The total displacement — vayyeshvu be'oholeihem ('they settled in their tents') — means the Reubenites took over the Hagrites' pastoral territory completely. This victory sets up the joint campaign described in verses 18-22.
11. The Chronicler transitions to Gad. The Gadites settled in Bashan (north of Gilead, east of the Sea of Galilee), extending to Salekah (Salkhah) — a city at the eastern edge of the Bashan plateau, near the modern Hauran in Syria. The phrase lenegdam ('opposite them/facing them') indicates Gad's territory was adjacent to Reuben's. Bashan was famous for its fertile pastureland, strong cattle (Psalm 22:12), and towering oaks (Isaiah 2:13).
12. The Gadite leadership structure: Joel (Yo'el) as ha-ro'sh ('the chief/head'), Shapham (Shafam, 'smooth/bare') as hammishneh ('the second/deputy'). Then Jaanai (Ya'nai) and Shaphat (Shafat, 'he has judged') as additional leaders in the Bashan territory. The hierarchical listing (chief, second, then others) shows organized tribal administration.
13. Seven Gadite clan leaders. Michael (Mikha'el, 'who is like God?') is a theophoric name that later becomes the archangel's name (Daniel 10:13). Meshullam (Meshullam, 'allied/repaid'). Sheba (Sheva, 'oath' or 'seven'). Jorai (Yorai, 'YHWH teaches me'). Jachan (Yakhan, 'he troubles'). Zia (Zi'a, meaning uncertain). Eber (Ever, 'the one from beyond'). Seven — the complete number — represents the full roster of Gadite ancestral houses.
14. A seven-generation pedigree for the Gadite clan, traced from Abihail (Avichayil, 'father of strength') back to Buz (Buz, 'contempt'). Gilead (Gil'ad) as a personal name within the Gadite genealogy connects to the territory of Gilead — the clan may have been named for the region or vice versa. Buz shares a name with Nahor's son in Genesis 22:21 and with Elihu's father in Job 32:2 (Elihu the Buzite). Seven generations of ancestry establishes deep roots.
15. Ahi (Achi, 'my brother') is confirmed as ro'sh leveit avotam ('head of their ancestral house') — the chief of a particular Gadite clan. Abdiel (Avdi'el, 'servant of God') and Guni (Guni, 'my defender' — also listed as a son of Naphtali in Genesis 46:24). The brief notation records administrative structure: each beit avot ('ancestral house') had a recognized chief.
16. The Gadite territory encompassed Gilead (the central Transjordanian highlands), Bashan (the northern plateau), and Sharon — not the coastal plain but a Transjordanian Sharon mentioned only here. The migreshot ('pasture lands, open lands around cities') were the grazing areas surrounding fortified towns. The Gadites controlled a substantial agricultural and pastoral territory east of the Jordan.
17. The Chronicler dates his Gadite source to two contemporaneous kings: Jotham of Judah (c. 750-735 BCE) and Jeroboam (II) of Israel (c. 793-753 BCE). This places the genealogical registration during a period of relative prosperity and stability — the last good years before the Assyrian catastrophe. The dual dating by both a Judean and an Israelite king is unusual for the Chronicler and suggests a source from the northern kingdom's administrative records.
18. The three eastern tribes fielded a combined army of 44,760 warriors. The description benei chayil ('sons of valor/men of ability') qualified by specific military skills — nose'ei magen vecherev ('bearing shield and sword'), dorekei qeshet ('drawing the bow'), and limudei milchamah ('trained in warfare') — indicates professional soldiers, not a militia. This large force represents the combined Transjordanian military capability at the height of the settlement period.
19. The coalition of enemies includes the Hagrites and three specific groups: Jetur (Yetur) and Naphish (Nafish) — both sons of Ishmael listed in 1:31 — and Nodab (Nodav), who is otherwise unknown. The Chronicler planted the cross-reference back in the Ishmaelite genealogy: these same names appeared in chapter 1, and now they reappear as the enemies of the eastern tribes. The genealogy has come alive as history.
20. Three theological verbs define this victory: (1) za'aqu ('they cried out') — the same cry of distress Israel used in Egypt (Exodus 2:23) and under the judges; (2) na'tor ('he was entreated/responded') — the niphal of atar, meaning God allowed himself to be moved by their plea; (3) batchu vo ('they trusted in him') — the root batach ('to trust, to rely on') expresses confident dependence. The Chronicler's theology: military victory is a function of spiritual relationship, not numerical superiority.
21. The spoils list is enormous: 50,000 camels, 250,000 sheep, 2,000 donkeys, and 100,000 people (nefesh adam, literally 'human souls'). Whether these are precise numbers or conventional large-number rhetoric (common in ancient Near Eastern victory inscriptions), they indicate a massive and total victory. The capture of 100,000 people as captives reverses the Hagrite dominance of the region and establishes complete Israelite control of the eastern pastoral lands.
22. The Chronicler's verdict: ki meha'Elohim hammilchamah ('because the war was from God'). This is a holy war statement — the battle belonged to God, not to the warriors. The phrase ad haggolah ('until the exile') compresses centuries into a single transition: they held the territory from the time of the Hagrite war until the Assyrian deportation. The setumah marker closes this section of military triumph before the Chronicler records the tribes that lived in the same region.
23. The eastern half of Manasseh occupied the northernmost Transjordanian territory, from Bashan up to the slopes of Mount Hermon — the highest point in the region at over 9,000 feet. Baal-hermon (Ba'al Chermon) is a cultic site on Hermon's slopes. Senir (Senir) is the Amorite name for Hermon or for its Anti-Lebanon ridge (Deuteronomy 3:9). The phrase hemmah ravu ('they were numerous') explains why they spread so far north —

population pressure drove territorial expansion.

- 24.** Seven clan heads of the eastern Manassites. The triple characterization — gibborei chayil ('mighty warriors'), anshei shemot ('men of renown/named men'), and rashei leveit avotam ('heads of ancestral houses') — gives them the highest possible credentials. Jeremiah (Yirmeyah, 'YHWH will exalt') shares a name with the prophet, and Hodaviah (Hodavyah, 'give thanks to YHWH') with a later post-exilic figure. Seven leaders, seven mighty men — but the next verse will erase everything.
- 25.** This verse pivots from triumph to catastrophe. Two verbs carry the weight: vayyim'alu ('they acted unfaithfully') — the Chronicler's signature sin-word ma'al — and vayyiznu ('they prostituted themselves') — the verb zanah applied to idolatry, treating worship of other gods as sexual betrayal of the covenant. The phrase elohei ammei ha'arets asher hishimid Elohim mippeneihem ('the gods of the peoples of the land whom God had destroyed before them') is the Chronicler's bitter observation: the eastern tribes worshipped the gods of nations that no longer existed.
- 26.** The Chronicler's theology of exile is precise: vayyaar Elohei Yisra'el ('the God of Israel stirred up') — God himself initiated the exile by activating the Assyrian king as his instrument. Pul is the Babylonian throne name and Tilgath-pilneser is the Assyrian throne name of the same king (Tiglath-pileser III, r. 745-727 BCE). The deportation of 733-732 BCE removed the eastern tribes permanently. The destination cities — Halah (Chalach), Habor (Chavor), Hara, and the river Gozan (Nahar Gozan) — are in upper Mesopotamia, in the region of the Habur River. The phrase ad hayyom hazzeh ('to this day') means these tribes had not returned when the Chronicler wrote. The petuchah marker closes the chapter and the Transjordanian section with a finality that mirrors the finality of the exile itself.

6

Summary: *The Chronicler devotes his longest chapter to the tribe of Levi — the priestly and worship tribe that stands at the center of his theological vision. The chapter traces the high priestly line from Levi through Aaron to the exile (vv. 1-15), lists the three Levitical clans of Gershon, Kohath, and Merari (vv. 16-30), identifies the temple musicians David appointed — Heman, Asaph, and Ethan (vv. 31-48), details the exclusive sacrificial role of the Aaronide priests (vv. 49-53), and catalogues the Levitical cities allocated across all twelve tribal territories (vv. 54-81).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler gives Levi more genealogical space than any other tribe — more than Judah, more than Benjamin, more than all the Transjordanian tribes combined. This allocation reveals his priorities: the temple and its personnel matter more than the palace and its politics. The musicians' genealogies (vv. 31-48) are unprecedented — no other biblical text traces the ancestry of worship leaders in such detail. By connecting Heman to Kohath, Asaph to Gershon, and Ethan to Merari, the Chronicler demonstrates that the three great musical guilds each represent one of the three original Levitical clans. The entire worship establishment of the temple is genealogically authorized.*

Translation Friction: *This chapter follows WLC (Hebrew) versification, which has 81 verses. The KJV versification splits this material differently (5:27-6:66 in some Hebrew numberings versus 6:1-81 in others). We follow the WLC numbering throughout. Some names in the priestly genealogy are difficult to correlate with the high priests mentioned in narrative texts — there may be gaps in the genealogy (a common feature of ancient lists), or some priests may have served as deputies rather than as chief priests. The Levitical city lists overlap with but do not exactly match Joshua 21.*

Connections: *The high priestly line (vv. 1-15) connects to Exodus 6:16-25 (the original Levitical genealogy) and extends it through the monarchy to the exile. The musician genealogies connect to David's organization of temple worship in 1 Chronicles 15-16 and 25. The Levitical city list connects to Joshua 21 but has been updated to reflect the Chronicler's post-exilic perspective. The entire chapter serves as the genealogical foundation for the temple worship that the Chronicler considers Israel's highest calling.*

¹These were the sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath and Merari. ²The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ³The children of Amram: Aaron, Moses, and Miriam. The sons of Aaron: Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. ⁴Eleazar fathered Phinehas, Phinehas fathered Abishua, ⁵Abishua fathered Bukki, and Bukki fathered Uzzi, ⁶Uzzi fathered Zerariah, and Zerariah fathered Meraioth, ⁷Meraioth fathered Amariah, and Amariah fathered Ahitub, ⁸Ahitub fathered Zadok, and Zadok fathered Ahimaaz, ⁹Ahimaaz fathered Azariah, and Azariah fathered Johanan, ¹⁰Johanan fathered Azariah — he is the one who served as priest in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem. ¹¹Azariah fathered Amariah, and Amariah fathered Ahitub, ¹²Ahitub fathered Zadok, and Zadok fathered Shallum, ¹³Shallum fathered Hilkiah, and Hilkiah fathered Azariah, ¹⁴A

zariah fathered Seraiah, and Seraiah fathered Jehozadak. ¹⁵Jehozadak went into exile when the LORD exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar. ¹⁶These were the sons of Levi: Gershom, Kohath and Merari. ¹⁷These are the names of the sons of Gershom: Libni; and Shimei. ¹⁸The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. ¹⁹The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. These are the clans of the Levites by their ancestral houses. ²⁰These were of Gershom: Libni his son, Jahath his son, Zimmah his son, ²¹These were joah his son, Iddo his son, Zerah his son, Jeatherai his son. ²²These were the sons of Kohath: Amminadab his son, Korah his son, Assir his son, ²³Elkanah his son; Ebiasaph his son, Assir his son, ²⁴These were tahath his son, Uriel his son, Uziah his son, Shaul his son. ²⁵The sons of Elkanah: Amasai and Ahimoth. ²⁶Elkanah — the sons of Elkanah: Zophai his son, Nahath his son, ²⁷These were eliab his son, Jeroham his son, Elkanah his son. ²⁸The sons of Samuel: the firstborn Joel, and the second Abijah. ²⁹These were the sons of Merari: Mahli, Libni his son, Shimei his son, Uzza his son, ³⁰These were shimea his son, Haggiah his son, Asaiah his son. ³¹These are the ones David appointed to lead the music in the house of the LORD after the ark came to rest. ³²They served with music before the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, until Solomon built the house of the LORD in Jerusalem. They carried out their duties according to their prescribed order. ³³These are the ones who served, along with their sons. From the Kohathites: Heman the musician, son of Joel, son of Samuel, ³⁴son of Elkanah, son of Jeroham, son of Eliel, son of Toah, ³⁵son of Zuph, son of Elkanah, son of Mahath, son of Amasai, ³⁶son of Elkanah, son of Joel, son of Azariah, son of Zephaniah, ³⁷son of Tahath, son of Assir, son of Ebiasaph, son of Korah, ³⁸son of Izhar, son of Kohath, son of Levi, son of Israel. ³⁹His colleague Asaph, who stood at his right hand — Asaph son of Berechiah, son of Shimea, ⁴⁰son of Michael, son of Baaseiah, son of Malchijah, ⁴¹son of Ethni, son of Zerah, son of Adaiah, ⁴²son of Ethan, son of Zimmah, son of Shimei, ⁴³son of Jahath, son of Gershom, son of Levi. ⁴⁴Their Merarite colleagues on the left side: Ethan son of Kishi, son of Abdi, son of Malluch, ⁴⁵son of Hashabiah, son of Amaziah, son of Hilkiah, ⁴⁶son of Amzi, son of Bani, son of Shemer, ⁴⁷son of Mahli, son of Mushi, son of Merari, son of Levi. ⁴⁸Their fellow Levites were assigned to all the other duties of the tabernacle, the house of God. ⁴⁹But Aaron and his sons made offerings on the altar of burnt offering and on the altar of incense — for all the work of the Holy of Holies — and to make atonement for Israel, according to everything that Moses the servant of God had commanded. ⁵⁰The line of Aaron ran as follows: Eleazar fathered Phinehas, Phinehas fathered Abishua, ⁵¹These were bukki his son, Uzzi his son, Zerahiah his son, ⁵²These were meraioth his son, Amariah his son, Ahitub his son, ⁵³These were zadok his son, Ahimaaz his son. ⁵⁴These are their settlements and encampments within their territory: to the sons of Aaron of the Kohathite clan — for the first lot fell to them — ⁵⁵They gave them Hebron in the land of Judah with its surrounding pasturelands. ⁵⁶But the fields and villages of the city were given to Caleb son of Jephunneh. ⁵⁷To the sons of Aaron they gave the cities of refuge: Hebron, and Libnah with its pasturelands, Jattir, and Eshtemoa with its pasturelands, ⁵⁸Hilen with its pasturelands, Debir with its pasturelands, ⁵⁹Ashan with its pasturelands, and Beth-shemesh with its pasturelands. ⁶⁰From the tribe of Benjamin: Geba with its pasturelands, Alemeth with its pasturelands, and Anathoth with its pasturelands. All their cities throughout their clans were thirteen. ⁶¹To the remaining Kohathites, from the clan of the half-tribe of Manasseh, were allotted by lot ten cities. ⁶²To the Gershomites, by their clans — from the tribes of Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and Manasseh in Bashan — thirteen cities. ⁶³To the Merarites, by their clans — from the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Zebulun — by lot, twelve cities. ⁶⁴The sons of Israel gave to the Levites these cities with their pasturelands. ⁶⁵They allocated by lot, from the tribes of Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin, these cities that are called by name. ⁶⁶Some of the Kohathite clans received territory cities from the tribe of Ephraim. ⁶⁷They gave them the cities of refuge: Shechem with its pasturelands in the hill country of Ephraim, and Gezer with its pasturelands, ⁶⁸Jokmeam with its pasturelands, and Beth-horon with its pasturelands, ⁶⁹Aijalon with its pasturelands, and Gath-rimmon with its pasturelands. ⁷⁰From the half-tribe of Manasseh: Aner with its pasturelands, and Bileam with its pasturelands — for the remaining Kohathite clans. ⁷¹To the Gershomites, from the clan of the half-tribe of Manasseh: Golan in Bashan with its pasturelands, and Ashtaroth with its pasturelands. ⁷²From the tribe of Issachar: Kedesh with its pasturelands, Daberath with its pasturelands, ⁷³Ramoth with its pasturelands, and Anem with its pasturelands. ⁷⁴From the tribe of Asher: Mashal with its pasturelands, and Abdon with its pasturelands, ⁷⁵Hukok with its pasturelands, and Rehob with its pasturelands. ⁷⁶From the tribe of Naphtali: Kedesh in Galilee with its pasturelands, Hammon with its pasturelands, and Kiriathaim with its pasturelands. ⁷⁷To the remaining Merarites, from the tribe of Zebulun: Rimmono with its pasturelands, and Tabor with its

pasturelands. ⁷⁸Across the Jordan from Jericho, on the east side of the Jordan, from the tribe of Reuben: Bezer in the wilderness with its pasturelands, and Jahzah with its pasturelands, ⁷⁹Kedemoth with its pasturelands, and Mephaath with its pasturelands. ⁸⁰From the tribe of Gad: Ramoth in Gilead with its pasturelands, and Mahanaim with its pasturelands, ⁸¹Heshbon with its pasturelands, and Jazer with its pasturelands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Levitical genealogy begins with the three sons of Levi as listed in Genesis 46:11, Exodus 6:16, and Numbers 3:17. Gershon (Gershon/Gershom, 'exile/sojourner'), Kohath (Qehat, meaning uncertain — possibly 'assembly'), and Merari (Merari, 'bitter'). These three sons become the three great divisions of the Levitical tribe, each with distinct responsibilities in the tabernacle and temple service. The Chronicler begins with this familiar triad before tracing the priestly line through Kohath.
2. Kohath's line is traced first because the priests descend from Kohath through Amram. Amram (Amram, 'exalted people') is Moses and Aaron's father (Exodus 6:18, 20). Izhar (Yitshar, 'oil/shining') is the father of Korah (the rebel of Numbers 16). Hebron (Chevron, 'association') — a clan name, not the city. Uzziel (Uzzi'el, 'God is my strength') is the youngest. The Kohathites had the most sacred responsibilities: carrying the ark and the holy vessels (Numbers 4:4-15).
3. Aaron is listed first — before Moses — because for the Chronicler, the priestly function takes priority over the prophetic-legislative function. This is deliberate: in Exodus 6:20, the order is also Aaron first when priestly genealogy is the context. Miriam (Miryam) is included as in the earlier genealogies where sisters appear at important junctures. Aaron's four sons include the two who died — Nadab (Nadav) and Abihu (Avihu) offered 'strange fire' and were consumed (Leviticus 10:1-2). The priestly line continues through Eleazar (El'azar, 'God has helped') and Ithamar (Itamar, 'palm-island').
4. Phinehas (Pinechas, possibly Egyptian 'the dark one' or 'the Nubian') is the priest whose zealous act at Baal-peor (Numbers 25:7-13) earned his line a 'covenant of perpetual priesthood' (berit kehunat olam). This covenant is the genealogical backbone of the entire high priestly sequence. Abishua (Avishu'a, 'my father is salvation/nobility') carries the line into the settlement period. The Chronicler traces the priestly line as a straight patrilineal chain, mirroring the royal line in chapter 3.
5. Bukki (Buqqi, 'wasting' or perhaps shortened from a theophoric name) and Uzzi (Uzzi, 'my strength') cover the period between the conquest and the early judges — a dark age for which we have almost no priestly information. These names fill a gap in the historical record that no narrative text covers. The Chronicler's access to priestly genealogical archives that preserved continuous records even through periods of national disorganization is remarkable.
6. Zerachiah (Zerachyah, 'YHWH has risen/shone') and Meraioth (Merayot, 'rebellions' or 'elevations') continue the priestly chain. These generations likely span the late judges period into the early monarchy. The genealogy is probably compressed — not every generation may be listed, which is common in ancient genealogies that function as a chain of legitimacy rather than as a complete biological record.
7. Amariah (Amaryah, 'YHWH has said/promised') and Ahitub (Ahituv, 'my brother is good'). Ahitub is the name of the father of both Zadok (the priest David elevated) and Ahimelech (the priest of Nob whom Saul massacred). The genealogy is tracing the Zadokite line — the priestly house that would serve at the Jerusalem temple from David's time onward.
8. Zadok (Tsadoq, 'righteous') is the critical figure — the priest who remained loyal to David during Absalom's rebellion and anointed Solomon (1 Kings 1:39). From this point forward, the Jerusalem temple priesthood is 'Zadokite,' and Ezekiel's vision of the restored temple restricts priestly service to Zadokites exclusively (Ezekiel 44:15). Ahimaaz (Achima'ats, 'my brother is wrath/counsel') is the son who ran to bring David news of Absalom's defeat (2 Samuel 18:19-29).
9. Azariah (Azaryah, 'YHWH has helped') may be the priest who confronted King Uzziah when he attempted to burn incense in the temple (2 Chronicles 26:17-20). Johanan (Yochanan, 'YHWH is gracious') bridges to the next generation. The priestly line moves through the divided monarchy period, maintaining continuity in Jerusalem regardless of political upheavals in the northern kingdom.
10. The parenthetical note *hu asher kihen babbayit asher banah Shelomoh biYerushalayim* ('he is the one who served as priest in the house that Solomon built in Jerusalem') is the Chronicler's single historical anchor in the priestly genealogy. This Azariah is specifically identified with Solomon's temple. The phrase *kihen* ('served as priest') uses the denominative verb from *kohen* ('priest'), meaning he exercised the priestly office. This note connects the genealogical chain to the Chronicler's central concern: the temple.
11. The names Amariah and Ahitub recur from verses 7 — the same names repeated in later generations, a common practice in priestly families where names carried sacred weight and were reused to honor ancestors. This Amariah may be the chief priest mentioned during Jehoshaphat's judicial reforms (2 Chronicles 19:11). The repetition of names across generations makes precise identification difficult but demonstrates the continuity of priestly naming traditions.
12. A second Zadok (distinct from David's Zadok in v. 8) and Shallum (Shallum) continue the priestly line through the middle monarchy. Shallum may be the same as Meshullam in some reconstructions. The name repetition creates a deliberate echo: each generation's Zadok ('righteous') recalls the founding priestly figure, reinforcing the legitimacy of the line.

13. Hilkiah (Chilqiyyah, 'YHWH is my portion') is almost certainly the high priest who discovered the Book of the Law during Josiah's temple renovation (2 Kings 22:8) — one of the most consequential moments in Israel's religious history. The discovery triggered Josiah's comprehensive reform. The Chronicler records his name without narrative comment, but his audience would have recognized the name immediately. His son Azariah continues the line toward the exile.
14. Seraiah (Serayah, 'YHWH is prince') was the last chief priest of Solomon's temple — he was executed by Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah after the fall of Jerusalem (2 Kings 25:18-21). His son Jehozadak (Yehotsadaq, 'YHWH is righteous') went into exile and is the father of Joshua/Jeshua, the high priest who returned with Zerubbabel to rebuild the temple (Haggai 1:1, Ezra 3:2). The priestly genealogy thus mirrors the royal genealogy of chapter 3: both lines cross the exile and emerge on the other side.
15. The priestly genealogy ends as the royal genealogy did — in exile. The phrase behaglot YHWH et Yehudah viYerushalayim ('when the LORD exiled Judah and Jerusalem') makes God the active agent of exile, using Nebuchadnezzar as his instrument — exactly as 5:26 said God 'stirred up the spirit' of the Assyrian king. The Chronicler's exile theology is consistent: God himself sends his people away. But the priestly line survives, as the royal line survived. Jehozadak's son Joshua will lead the priestly restoration, just as Zerubbabel leads the royal line's return.
16. The Chronicler resets and begins a second Levitical genealogy — this one tracing the non-priestly Levitical clans rather than the high priestly line. Gershom (Gershom, here with final -m rather than -n) is listed first this time. The repetition of the three-son formula from verse 1 signals a new section: the same trunk, different branches. The Chronicler will now trace each clan's genealogy to establish the ancestry of the temple musicians.
17. Libni (Livni, 'white') and Shimei (Shim'i, 'my hearing') are Gershom's two sons, also listed in Exodus 6:17 and Numbers 3:18. The Gershomite clans were responsible for carrying the tabernacle curtains, coverings, and hangings during the wilderness period (Numbers 3:25-26). Their descendants will provide one of the three music guilds.
18. The Kohathite sons are repeated from verse 2. In this second listing, the focus will shift from the Amramite-priestly line to the broader Kohathite clan structure. The Kohathites were responsible for the most sacred items of the tabernacle (Numbers 4:4-15) and later produced the Heman musical guild.
19. Mahli (Machli, 'weak/sick') and Mushi (Mushi, 'yielding/drawn out') are Merari's two sons (Exodus 6:19, Numbers 3:20). The closing formula *ve'elleh mishpehot haLevi la'avoteihem* ('these are the clans of the Levites by their ancestral houses') signals that the basic structure is now established: three clans (Gershom, Kohath, Merari), each with sub-divisions. The Merarites were responsible for the structural elements of the tabernacle — frames, bars, pillars, and bases (Numbers 3:36-37).
20. The Gershomite line is traced through Libni. Jahath (Yachat, 'he will snatch up') and Zimmah (Zimmah, 'plan/device') carry the line forward. This genealogy will eventually connect to Asaph, the great musician (v. 39). The chain is building toward the Chronicler's real interest: demonstrating that the temple worship leaders have unbroken Levitical ancestry.
21. Joah (Yo'ach, 'YHWH is brother'), Iddo (Iddo, 'timely'), Zerach (Zerach, 'shining'), and Jeatherai (Ye'atrai, meaning uncertain) continue the Gershomite line. Some of these names will reappear in reverse order in the Asaph genealogy (vv. 39-43), where the line is traced backward from Asaph to the ancestor. The Chronicler provides the forward (descending) and backward (ascending) versions of the same line.
22. The Kohathite line here runs through Amminadab (possibly equivalent to Izhar) to Korah (Qorach), the famous rebel of Numbers 16. Korah's rebellion against Moses and Aaron resulted in his death, but Numbers 26:11 explicitly states 'the sons of Korah did not die.' The Korahite line survived and produced temple musicians and psalm composers — Psalms 42, 44-49, 84-85, 87-88 are attributed to 'the sons of Korah.' Assir (Assir, 'captive/prisoner') is Korah's son.
23. Elkanah (Elqanah, 'God has acquired') is a name that will reappear as the father of Samuel. Ebiasaph (Evyasaf, 'my father has gathered') is a variant of Abiasaph (Exodus 6:24). The name Assir appears again — either a repeated name across generations or a textual variant. The Korahite line continues without interruption despite the ancestor's rebellion.
24. Tahath (Tachat, 'beneath/substitute'), Uriel (Uri'el, 'God is my light'), Uziah (Uzziyyah, 'YHWH is my strength'), and Shaul (Sha'ul, 'asked for'). Uriel the Kohathite appears in 2 Chronicles 13:2 as the grandfather of King Abijah of Judah through his mother Micaiah. This genealogical detail connects the Levitical line to the royal house — the king's maternal grandfather was a Kohathite Levite.
25. A different Elkanah from the one in verse 23 (or the same one viewed from a different branch). Amasai (Amasai, 'burdensome') may be the 'chief of the thirty' who declared loyalty to David (1 Chronicles 12:18). Ahimoth (Achimot, 'my brother is death') — a surprising name, possibly apotropaic (a name designed to ward off evil). The branching shows the Kohathite clan's internal diversity.
26. Yet another Elkanah, with sons Zophai (Tsofai, 'watchman' — a variant of Zuph) and Nahath (Nachat, 'rest'). The name Zuph/Zophai connects to the 'land of Zuph' where Saul first encountered Samuel (1 Samuel 9:5), suggesting this Levitical clan had a territorial association in the hill country of Ephraim. The genealogy is building toward Samuel, whose Levitical ancestry the Chronicler will establish through the Heman genealogy.
27. Eliab (Eli'av, 'my God is father'), Jeroham (Yerocham, 'he is compassionate'), and a fourth Elkanah. This last Elkanah is almost certainly the father of Samuel — 1 Samuel 1:1 identifies Samuel's father as 'Elkanah son of Jeroham son of Elihu (= Eliab) son of Tohu (= Nahath) son of Zuph (= Zophai).' The Chronicler is aligning the Kohathite genealogy with the Samuel narrative, establishing that Samuel was a Levite, not merely an Ephraimite.
28. The Hebrew text reads *hasheni va'Aviyyah*, which literally says 'the second, and Abijah.' The KJV rendered *hasheni* as a proper name 'Vashni,' but it actually means 'and the second.' First Samuel 8:2 gives Samuel's sons' names as Joel (the firstborn) and Abijah (the second). The firstborn's name appears to have dropped from the Chronicles text due to a scribal error. We supply 'Joel' from 1 Samuel 8:2 for clarity, following the Septuagint and

the parallel text. These are the corrupt sons whose misconduct prompted Israel to demand a king (1 Samuel 8:1-5).

29. The Merarite genealogy begins. Mahli (Machli) is listed in verse 19. Libni (Livni, 'white') shares a name with the Gershomite of verse 17 — name overlap across clans is common. Shimei, Uzza (Uzza, 'strength') — these carry the Merarite line forward. The Merarites will provide the third musical guild through Ethan (v. 44).
30. Shimea (Shim'a, 'hearing'), Haggiah (Chaggiyyah, 'festival of YHWH'), and Asaiah (Asayah, 'YHWH has made'). Asaiah may be the Merarite leader who helped bring the ark to Jerusalem (1 Chronicles 15:6, 11). The Merarite line is shorter than the other two, consistent with the Chronicler's general pattern of giving less space to Merari than to Kohath or Gershom.
31. The Chronicler now introduces his most distinctive contribution: the genealogy of the temple musicians. David he'emid al yedei shir beit YHWH ('David stationed/appointed over the hands of song in the house of the LORD') — the music ministry was David's personal initiative and appointment. The phrase mimmenoach ha'aron ('from the resting of the ark') means these appointments began when the ark was installed in Jerusalem. Music in worship is not incidental for the Chronicler — it is a divinely authorized ministry established by the king.
32. The musicians served at the tabernacle (mishkan ohel mo'ed, 'tabernacle of the tent of meeting') before the temple was built — their role predated the permanent structure. The phrase kemishpatam al avodatam ('according to their regulation upon their service') indicates an organized system with assigned roles and schedules. The Chronicler bridges tabernacle and temple: the same musical ministry that began under David at the tent continued under Solomon at the temple.
33. Heman (Heiman, 'faithful') is identified as hammeshorer ('the singer/musician') — the chief of the Kohathite musical guild. He is traced directly to Samuel (Shemu'el) through Joel (Yo'el) — Samuel's firstborn. This genealogical connection is extraordinary: Samuel, the prophet-judge, is claimed as the grandfather of the chief temple musician. The Chronicler thereby connects the prophetic tradition to the worship tradition through blood lineage.
34. The ascending genealogy of Heman traces backward from Samuel. Elkanah — Samuel's father, the man from Ramathaim (1 Samuel 1:1). Jeroham — Samuel's grandfather. Eliel (Eli'el, 'my God is God') corresponds to Elihu in 1 Samuel 1:1. Toah (Toach) corresponds to Tohu/Nahath. The Chronicler harmonizes the Samuel genealogy from 1 Samuel 1:1 with his Kohathite clan records.
35. Zuph (Tsuf) corresponds to Zophai of verse 26 and gives his name to the 'land of Zuph' in 1 Samuel 9:5. Mahath (Machath) and Amasai continue the chain. The ascending genealogy creates a mirror image of the descending genealogy in verses 22-27 — the same individuals, read in reverse, with minor name variations. This double-listing technique authenticates the genealogy from two directions.
36. More links in the ascending chain. Azariah and Zephaniah (Tsefanyah, 'YHWH has hidden/protected') — the latter shares a name with the prophet Zephaniah. The multiple Elkanahs in the Kohathite genealogy show the name was a family favorite, likely passed down as a marker of clan identity.
37. The line reaches back to Korah (Qorach) — the rebel whose sons survived. The Chronicler does not flinch from this ancestry: the chief temple musician descends from the man who challenged Moses. The 'sons of Korah' psalms (42, 44-49, 84-85, 87-88) suggest this family transformed their ancestor's shame into worship. From rebellion to praise — the genealogy itself is a redemption narrative.
38. The Heman genealogy reaches its terminus: Izhar (Yitshar, Korah's father), Kohath, Levi, and Israel. The final name — Israel, not Jacob — is the Chronicler's consistent choice. Heman's genealogy thus spans from Israel/Jacob through Levi, Kohath, the Korah line, the Samuel line, and down to Heman himself — connecting the patriarch to the musician through an unbroken chain of over twenty generations.
39. Asaph (Asaf, 'gatherer/collector') is the second great musician, stationed at Heman's right hand. He is identified as a Gershomite (the genealogy will trace back to Gershom). Asaph's name is attached to twelve psalms (50, 73-83) and he is called a 'seer' (chozeh) in 2 Chronicles 29:30. Berechiah (Berekhyahu, 'YHWH has blessed') is his father. The term 'brother' (achiw) here means 'colleague' or 'fellow Levite,' not biological brother.
40. Michael (Mikha'el), Baaseiah (Ba'aseiyah, 'YHWH has made'), and Malchijah (Malkiyyah, 'YHWH is my king') — links in the Asaph chain. These theophoric names (-el and -yah elements) demonstrate the Levitical families' consistent devotion to YHWH and El as divine names.
41. Ethni (Etni, 'my gift'), Zerah (Zerach, 'shining'), and Adaiah (Adayah, 'YHWH has adorned himself'). Zerah corresponds to the Zerah of verse 21 in the descending Gershomite list. Adaiah shares a name with the grandfather of King Josiah's mother (2 Kings 22:1), though a different person.
42. Ethan (Eitan, 'enduring'), Zimmah (Zimmah, 'plan'), and Shimei (Shim'i) — all matching names in the descending genealogy of verses 20-21. The ascending and descending lists confirm each other, validating the Gershomite line through two independent traces. Ethan here is an ancestor, not the musician Ethan who will appear at verse 44.
43. The Asaph genealogy reaches its terminus: Jahath, Gershom, Levi. Asaph is thus authenticated as a Gershomite Levite — the second of three clans, the second of three musical guilds. The Chronicler has now traced two of the three musicians to their ancestral clan founders: Heman to Kohath, Asaph to Gershom.
44. Ethan (Eitan, 'enduring') — also called Jeduthun in other passages (1 Chronicles 25:1, 3) — is the third musician, standing on the left. He is a Merarite. Kishi (Qishi, 'my bow' — a variant of Kushaiah in 15:17) is his father. The spatial arrangement — Heman in the center, Asaph on the right, Ethan on the left — represents the three Levitical clans flanking the central worship position: Kohath (center, most sacred), Gershom (right), Merari (left).
45. Hashabiah (Chashavyah, 'YHWH has thought/regarded'), Amaziah (Amatsyah, 'YHWH is strong'), and Hilkiyah (Chilqiyyah, 'YHWH is my portion') — each name a statement of divine character. The Merarite line ascends through figures otherwise unknown from narrative texts.

46. Amzi (Amtsi, 'my strong one'), Bani (Bani, 'built/my son'), and Shemer (Shemer, 'guard/keeper'). Shemer shares a name with the man who sold the hill of Samaria to King Omri (1 Kings 16:24) — different person, same name.
47. The Ethan genealogy reaches its terminus: Mahli, Mushi, Merari, Levi. All three musical guilds are now traced to the three sons of Levi: Heman-Kohath, Asaph-Gershon, Ethan-Merari. The Chronicler has demonstrated that the worship of the temple is served by all three Levitical divisions, each contributing their ancestral musical tradition. The temple's worship is genealogically comprehensive — no Levitical clan is excluded.
48. Beyond the three musical guilds, the remaining Levites performed *lekhoh avodat mishkan beit ha'Elohim* ('all the service of the tabernacle of the house of God'). This includes maintenance, preparation, security, and logistics — everything that kept the temple functioning beyond the music and the sacrifices. The Chronicler distinguishes between the musicians (a specialized ministry) and the general Levitical workforce.
49. The Chronicler interrupts the genealogy to state priestly exclusivity: Aaron and his sons alone serve at the two altars — the *mizbeach ha'olah* ('altar of burnt offering') and the *mizbeach haqetoret* ('altar of incense'). The phrase *lekhoh melekhet qodesh haqqodashim* ('for all the work of the holy of holies') restricts access to the most sacred space to the Aaronide line. The verb *lekhapper* ('to atone, to cover, to make reconciliation') is the central priestly function. The authorization *kekhol asher tsivvah Mosheh eved ha'Elohim* ('according to all that Moses the servant of God commanded') grounds the priestly system in Mosaic Torah.
50. The priestly line is repeated in abbreviated form — Eleazar, Phinehas, Abishua. This repetition from verses 4-5 serves as a bridge between the musician genealogies and the Levitical city lists. The Chronicler returns to the Aaronide line to establish which priests would receive cities in the allocation that follows.
51. Bukki, Uzzi, Zerahiah — matching verses 5-6 exactly. The Chronicler provides this abbreviated repetition to connect the priestly genealogy to the city allocation that follows, establishing the Aaronide priests as the first recipients of Levitical cities.
52. Meraioth, Amariah, Ahitub — matching verses 6-7. The priestly chain continues its abbreviated repetition.
53. The abbreviated priestly genealogy ends with Zadok and Ahimaaz — matching verse 8. The line stops at Ahimaaz rather than continuing to the exile (as in vv. 9-15) because the city allocation that follows relates to the original settlement period, not the later monarchy. The *setumah* marker signals the transition to the city lists.
54. The Levitical city allocation begins. The Aaronide Kohathites received the first lot (*haggoral*, 'the lot') — the casting of lots was the divinely guided method of land allocation (Joshua 18:6-10). The settlements (*moshevotam*, 'their dwelling places') include both towns and *tiroth* ('encampments/walled villages'). The priestly cities are listed first because the Aaronide priests held precedence among the Levites.
55. Hebron (Chevron) — one of the most significant cities in Israel's history — was assigned to the Aaronide priests. This is the city where Abraham settled, where the patriarchs were buried, and where David first reigned. Its assignment to the priests rather than to a secular clan underscores its sacred character. The *migrasheiha* ('its pasturelands') provided agricultural support for the priestly families.
56. A distinction: Hebron's urban area and pasturelands went to the priests, but its agricultural fields (*sedeh ha'ir*, 'the field of the city') and outlying villages went to Caleb son of Jephunneh — the faithful spy who specifically requested and conquered the Hebron region (Joshua 14:13-14). This dual assignment shows how priestly and secular populations could share a city: priests held the town and its immediate surroundings, while the clan leader held the productive agricultural land.
57. Hebron is identified as an *ir miqlat* ('city of refuge') — one of six cities where someone who accidentally killed another could find asylum (Numbers 35:11-15). Libnah (Livnah, 'whiteness') is a Shephelah city that later revolted from Judah (2 Kings 8:22). Jattir (Yattir, 'excellent') is a priestly city in Judah's hill country. Eshtemoa (Eshtemo'a) reappears from 4:17 — the settlement founded by Ishbah, now serving as a priestly city.
58. Hilen (Chilen) corresponds to Holon in Joshua 21:15 — another spelling variant. Debir (Devir, 'oracle room/inner sanctuary') is the city Othniel captured (Judges 1:11-13), also called Kiriath-sepher ('city of the book'). Both cities are in the Judean hill country, maintaining the priestly presence in Judah's heartland.
59. Ashan (Ashan, 'smoke') appeared in Simeon's city list (4:32). Beth-shemesh (Beit Shemesh, 'house of the sun') is the city where the Philistines returned the ark and where the inhabitants were struck down for looking inside it (1 Samuel 6:19-20). Its assignment as a priestly city is consistent with its role in the ark narrative.
60. Three Benjaminite cities are assigned to the Aaronide priests. Geba (Geva, 'hill') is a frontier town between Judah and Israel. Alemeth (Alemet, 'concealment') is near Anathoth. Anathoth (Anatot) is the hometown of the prophet Jeremiah (Jeremiah 1:1) — a priestly city that produced one of Israel's greatest prophets. The total of thirteen priestly cities (from Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin) establishes the Aaronide presence in the heart of the southern kingdom.
61. The non-Aaronide Kohathites (Levites who were not priests) received ten cities from the western half of Manasseh. The phrase *hannotarim* ('the remaining ones') distinguishes these Kohathites from the Aaronide branch. They received cities by lot (*baggoral*) — divine allocation, not political negotiation.
62. The Gershomites received thirteen cities from the northern tribes: Issachar, Asher, Naphtali, and eastern Manasseh. This geographic distribution placed Gershomite Levites throughout the northern kingdom — a presence that the Chronicler values because it maintained Levitical worship outside of Judah.

63. The Merarites received twelve cities from Reuben, Gad (both Transjordanian), and Zebulun (in the north). The distribution across the Jordan and in the northern territory ensured that even the most peripheral regions of Israel had Levitical presence. The total Levitical allocation: 13 (Aaronide) + 10 (Kohathite) + 13 (Gershomite) + 12 (Merarite) = 48 cities, matching the number in Numbers 35:7.
64. The summary statement: Israel gave (vayyittenu) these cities to the Levites — it was a national gift from all tribes to the tribe that had no territorial inheritance of its own. Levi's portion was YHWH himself (Deuteronomy 10:9, 18:2), and in place of tribal territory, they received scattered cities throughout all the other tribes' lands.
65. The phrase asher yiqre'u otam beshemot ('which are called by their names') may mean the cities are named individually (as listed above) or that the Levites named the cities. Judah, Simeon, and Benjamin — the three southern tribes — provided the priestly (Aaronide) cities, keeping the priests close to Jerusalem and the temple.
66. The non-Aaronide Kohathites received cities from Ephraim's territory. This placed Kohathite Levites in the central highlands of the future northern kingdom — near Shiloh, where the tabernacle once stood, and near Shechem, the ancient covenant city.
67. Shechem (Shekhem, 'shoulder') is a city of enormous significance — the site of Abraham's first altar in Canaan (Genesis 12:6), Jacob's land purchase (Genesis 33:19), Joseph's burial (Joshua 24:32), and Joshua's covenant renewal (Joshua 24). As a city of refuge and a Levitical city, Shechem combined judicial, religious, and historical functions. Gezer (Gezer, 'cut/portion') controlled a strategic pass on the road from the coast to Jerusalem.
68. Jokmeam (Yoque'am, 'the people will be established') is in the Ephraim territory. Beth-horon (Beit Choron, 'house of the cave') — the famous pass where Joshua's enemies were routed with hailstones (Joshua 10:10-11) and where Judas Maccabeus later fought. Both upper and lower Beth-horon controlled critical access routes.
69. Aijalon (Ayyalon, 'deer field') is the valley where Joshua commanded the sun to stand still (Joshua 10:12). Gath-rimmon (Gat Rimmon, 'winepress of the pomegranate') is a Danite city. These Kohathite cities form a belt across the central highlands and western foothills.
70. Aner (Aner, 'boy/waterfall') and Bileam (Bil'am — likely Ibleam, near Megiddo, or possibly connected to Balaam's name) are western Manassite cities assigned to the remaining Kohathites. The petuchah marker closes the Kohathite city allocation and transitions to the Gershomite cities.
71. Golan (Golan, 'circle/enclosure') in Bashan is a city of refuge (Deuteronomy 4:43) that gives its name to the modern Golan Heights. Ashtaroth (Ashtarot) was the ancient Transjordanian city associated with the Canaanite goddess Ashtoreth — its assignment to the Levites may represent a deliberate sanctification of a formerly pagan center.
72. Kedesh (Qedesh, 'holy') is a city whose name itself means 'sanctuary' — a natural Levitical city. Daberath (Daverat) is at the base of Mount Tabor, near where Deborah and Barak defeated Sisera (Judges 4). Both cities are in the Jezreel Valley-Lower Galilee region.
73. Ramoth (Ramot, 'heights') — not the Ramoth-gilead of 1 Kings 22, but a settlement in Issachar. Anem (Anem, 'two springs') corresponds to En-gannim in Joshua 21:29. These complete the Issachar allocation to the Gershomites.
74. Mashal (Mashal, 'parable/proverb') and Abdon (Avdon, 'servile') are Asherite cities in the western Galilee coastal region. Abdon shares a name with one of the minor judges (Judges 12:13).
75. Hukok (Chuqoq, 'appointed/decreed') is in the Naphtali-Asher border region. Rehob (Rechov, 'broad place') is in the same area — Judges 1:31 notes that Asher failed to drive out the inhabitants of Rehob. These northern cities represent the Gershomite Levitical presence at the farthest reaches of Israelite settlement.
76. Kedesh in Galilee (Qedesh baGalil) is a city of refuge (Joshua 20:7) distinct from the Issachar Kedesh. It is in upper Galilee, and its designation 'in Galilee' (baGalil, 'in the circuit/district') is the source of the regional name. Hammon (Chammon, 'warm spring') and Kiriathaim (Qiryatayim, 'double city') complete the northern Gershomite allocation.
77. Rimmono (Rimmono, 'pomegranate') is a Zebulunite city. Tabor (Tavor) — possibly a settlement at the base of Mount Tabor rather than the mountain itself, though the mountain is one of the most prominent landmarks in the Jezreel Valley region. The Merarite cities in Zebulun placed Levites in the northern heartland.
78. The Merarite cities cross the Jordan. Bezer (Betser, 'fortification') in the wilderness is a Reubenite city of refuge (Deuteronomy 4:43), also mentioned on the Mesha Stele. Jahzah (Yahtsah) is where Israel defeated Sihon king of the Amorites (Numbers 21:23). These Transjordanian Levitical cities served the eastern tribes — the same tribes that would later be exiled (5:26).
79. Kedemoth (Qedemot, 'eastern places') is the wilderness area from which Moses sent messengers to Sihon (Deuteronomy 2:26). Mephaath (Mefa'at, 'splendor') is a Reubenite city also mentioned by Jeremiah (48:21) in his oracle against Moab — by Jeremiah's time, these cities had been lost to Moab. The Chronicler records the original allocation even though the cities were no longer in Israelite hands.
80. Ramoth in Gilead (Ramot Gil'ad) is one of the most important cities in the Transjordan — a city of refuge (Deuteronomy 4:43) and the site of the battle where Ahab died (1 Kings 22). Mahanaim (Machanayim, 'two camps') is where Jacob encountered angels (Genesis 32:2) and where Ish-bosheth ruled during David's early reign (2 Samuel 2:8). Both are cities of major narrative significance.
81. Heshbon (Cheshbon, 'reckoning/plan') was Sihon's capital, captured by Israel (Numbers 21:25-26) and famous in the Song of Songs for its pools (Song 7:4). Jazer (Ya'zer, 'he helps') is in northern Moab/Gad territory. These final two Merarite cities complete the forty-eight-city allocation. The chapter ends without a closing formula — the city list simply stops, its completeness serving as its own conclusion. The Chronicler has mapped the

entire Levitical infrastructure across all of Israel: every tribe hosts Levites, every region has priestly presence, and the worship of YHWH is embedded in the geography of the nation.

7

Summary: *The Chronicler covers six tribes in rapid succession: Issachar, Benjamin, Naphtali, Manasseh, Ephraim, and Asher. Each receives a genealogy with military census data, noting the number of warriors each clan produced. The Ephraim section includes a rare narrative fragment — the tragedy of Ephraim's sons who were killed raiding Gath, his grief, and the birth of a new son named Beriah ('in misfortune'). The chapter concludes with a detailed Asherite genealogy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter demonstrates the Chronicler's varying access to source material. Issachar and Asher receive substantial genealogies with warrior counts; Naphtali gets a single verse. The Ephraim narrative (vv. 20-29) is found nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible — it is the Chronicler's unique contribution, preserving a tradition about a cattle raid gone wrong that resulted in death and mourning. The story breaks the genealogical pattern with genuine human emotion: Ephraim 'mourned many days, and his brothers came to console him' (v. 22). The Chronicler, usually austere in his genealogical sections, pauses for grief. The warrior census numbers throughout suggest the Chronicler is drawing on military muster rolls.*

Translation Friction: *The Benjamin genealogy here (vv. 6-12) differs significantly from the one in chapter 8, creating a major interpretive challenge. Some scholars suggest that verses 6-12 actually contain Zebulun and Dan material that has been mislabeled as Benjamin in textual transmission — this would explain the absence of Zebulun and Dan from the tribal genealogies. The Ephraim narrative (vv. 20-27) is chronologically difficult: it seems to place Ephraim in the land of Canaan during the patriarchal period, before the Egyptian sojourn, which contradicts the standard timeline. The events may be post-conquest, with 'Ephraim' referring to the tribe rather than the patriarch.*

Connections: *The warrior census data connects to the military musters in Numbers 1 and 26. The Ephraim narrative of loss and consolation echoes Jacob's grief for Joseph (Genesis 37:34-35) and anticipates David's grief for his son (2 Samuel 12:15-23). The Asherite genealogy preserves a tradition of strong warriors from a tribe often overlooked in biblical narrative. Joshua son of Nun appears at verse 27 as the climax of the Ephraim genealogy — the great military leader who conquered the land emerges from this tribe's lineage.*

¹The sons of Issachar: Tola, Puah, Jashub, and Shimron — four. ²The sons of Tola: Uzzi, Rephaiah, Jeriel, Jahmai, Ibsam, and Samuel — heads of their ancestral houses in Tola's line, mighty warriors by their generations. Their number in the days of David was twenty-two thousand six hundred. ³The son of Uzzi: Izrahiah. The sons of Izrahiah: Michael, Obadiah, Joel, and Ishiah — five, all of them leaders. ⁴With them, by their generations and ancestral houses, were armed troops for war — thirty-six thousand — because they had many wives and sons. ⁵Their relatives throughout all the clans of Issachar — mighty warriors — totaled eighty-seven thousand according to their genealogical registration. ⁶The sons of Benjamin: Bela, Becher, and Jediah — three. ⁷The sons of Bela: Ezbon, Uzzi, Uzziel, Jerimoth, and Iri — five, all heads of ancestral houses, mighty warriors. Their genealogical enrollment: twenty-two thousand thirty-four. ⁸The sons of Becher: Zemirah, Joash, Eliezer, Elioenai, Omri, Jeremoth, Abijah, Anathoth, and Alemeth. All these were the sons of Becher. ⁹Their genealogical enrollment by generations, heads of ancestral houses, mighty warriors: twenty thousand two hundred. ¹⁰The son of Jediah: Bilhan. The sons of Bilhan: Jeush, Benjamin, Ehud, Chenaanah, Zethan, Tarshish, and Ahishahar. ¹¹All these sons of Jediah, by their ancestral heads, mighty warriors — seventeen thousand two hundred who went out to war for battle. ¹²Shuppi and Huppi were the sons of Ir. Hushim was the son of Aher. ¹³The sons of Naphtali: Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shallum — the sons of Bilhah. ¹⁴The sons of Manasseh: Asriel, whom his Aramean concubine bore — she bore Machir the father of Gilead. ¹⁵Machir took a wife for Huppi and Shuppi. His sister's name was Maacah. The name of the second was Zelophehad, and Zelophehad had only daughters. ¹⁶Maacah, Machir's wife, bore a son and named him Peresh. His brother's name was Sheresh, and his sons were Ulam and Rekem. ¹⁷The son of Ulam: Bedan. These were the sons of Gilead son of Machir, son of

Manasseh. ¹⁸His sister Hammolecheth bore Ishhod, Abiezer, and Mahlah. ¹⁹The sons of Shemida: Ahian, Shechem, Likhi, and Aniam. ²⁰The sons of Ephraim: Shuthelah, and Bered his son, Tahath his son, Eladah his son, Tahath his son, ²¹Zabad his son, and Shuthelah his son, and Ezer and Elead. The men of Gath who were born in the land killed them, because they went down to seize their livestock. ²²Ephraim their father mourned for many days, and his brothers came to console him. ²³He went to his wife, and she conceived and bore a son. He named him Beriah, because disaster had struck his house. ²⁴His daughter was Sheerah. She built Lower Beth-horon, Upper Beth-horon, and Uzzen-sheerah. ²⁵Rephah was his son, and Resheph, and Telah his son, Tahan his son, ²⁶These were ladan his son, Ammihud his son, Elishama his son, ²⁷Nun his son; Joshua his son. ²⁸Their property and settlements: Bethel and its surrounding towns, Naaran to the east, Gezer and its towns to the west, and Shechem and its towns as far as Ayyah and its towns. ²⁹Along the borders of the Manassites: Beth-shean and its towns, Taanach and its towns, Megiddo and its towns, and Dor and its towns. In these lived the sons of Joseph son of Israel. ³⁰The sons of Asher: Imnah, Ishvah, Ishvi, and Beriah, and Serah their sister. ³¹The sons of Beriah: Heber; and Malchiel, who was the father of Birzaith. ³²Heber fathered Japhlet, Shomer, Hotham, and their sister Shua. ³³The sons of Japhlet: Pasach, Bimhal, and Ashvath. These were the sons of Japhlet. ³⁴The sons of Shemer: Ahi, Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram. ³⁵The sons of his brother Helem: Zophah, Imna, Shelesh, and Amal. ³⁶The sons of Zophah: Suah, Harnepher, Shual, Beri, and Imrah, ³⁷Bezer, Hod, Shamma, Shilshah, Ithran, and Beera. ³⁸The sons of Jether: Jephunneh, Pispah, and Ara. ³⁹The sons of Ulla: Arah, Hanniel, and Rizia. ⁴⁰All these were the descendants of Asher — heads of ancestral houses, select mighty warriors, chief among the leaders. Their enrollment for military service in battle: twenty-six thousand men.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Issachar's (Yissakhar, 'there is reward') four sons match Genesis 46:13 and Numbers 26:23-24 with minor name variations (Jashub/Iob). Tola (Tola, 'worm/crimson') was also the name of a judge from Issachar (Judges 10:1). Puah (Pu'ah, 'utterance' or a type of plant). Jashub (Yashiv, 'he returns'). Shimron (Shimron, 'watchpost'). The Chronicler gives Issachar a proper genealogy, unlike its minimal treatment in many other biblical texts.
2. Six sons of Tola, all identified as rashim leveit avotam ('heads of ancestral houses') and gibborei chayil ('mighty warriors'). The census is dated bimei David ('in the days of David'), indicating the Chronicler drew on military records from David's reign. Samuel (Shemu'el) as an Issacharite name is distinct from the prophet Samuel. The count of 22,600 warriors represents a substantial military contribution from a single sub-clan.
3. Izrahiah (Yizrachyah, 'YHWH will shine') has four sons, and the total of five counts Izrahiah himself. The designation rashim kullam ('all of them leaders') indicates every member of this family held leadership status. Michael (Mikha'el), Obadiah (Ovadyah, 'servant of YHWH'), Joel (Yo'el), and Ishiah (Yishshiyah, 'YHWH will lend') are all theophoric names, suggesting strong YHWH worship in this Issacharite clan.
4. The total Izrahiah force numbered 36,000 warriors — larger than the Tola count (22,600) because ki hirbu nashim uvanim ('they had many wives and sons'). The Chronicler explicitly connects polygamy with military strength: more wives produced more sons who became more warriors. The term gedudei tseva milchamah ('troops of the army for war') indicates organized military units, not a loose militia.
5. The total Issacharite military strength: 87,000 warriors (gibborei chayalim). The phrase hityachsam lakkol ('their genealogical registration of all') uses the Chronicler's technical enrollment term. This is a massive force — Issachar alone could field an army larger than many ancient city-states. The petuchah marker closes the Issachar section.
6. Benjamin's (Binyamin, 'son of the right hand') three sons here differ from the ten sons listed in Genesis 46:21. Bela (Bela, 'destruction'), Becher (Bekher, 'firstborn/young camel'), and Jediah (Yedi'a'el, 'known by God') may represent the major clan divisions rather than all of Benjamin's individual sons. Chapter 8 will provide a much more extensive Benjaminite genealogy focused on the Saulide line.
7. Bela's five sons lead ancestral houses and are counted as warriors: 22,034. Ezbon (Etsbon) also appears as a Gadite name (Genesis 46:16). Jerimoth (Yerimot, 'heights') is a common Benjaminite name. The precision of the count (not a round number but 22,034) suggests the Chronicler is drawing on actual military records rather than estimating.
8. Nine sons of Becher — a large clan. Anathoth (Anatot) and Alemeth (Alemet) also appear as city names (6:60), illustrating the overlap between personal names and settlement names. Omri (Omri, 'my sheaf') shares a name with the later Israelite king. Eliezer (Eli'ezer, 'my God is help') and Elioanai (Elyo'einai, 'my eyes are toward God') are theophoric names.
9. Becher's clan count: 20,200 warriors. The consistent terminology — hityachsam letoledotam rashei beit avotam gibborei chayil — creates a formulaic framework for the military census data across all tribes.
10. Bilhan (Vilhan, 'timid') — the same name as a Horite in 1:42. Ehud (Ehud, 'united/strong') shares the name of the left-handed Benjaminite judge who assassinated the Moabite king Eglon (Judges 3:15-30). Benjamin appears as a personal name within the tribe of Benjamin — naming a son after the tribal ancestor. Tarshish (Tarshish, 'yellow jasper') shares the name of the distant western port. Seven sons of Bilhan represent a substantial sub-clan.

11. Jediahel's military count: 17,200 warriors *yotse'ei tsava lammilchamah* ('going out as an army for battle'). The phrase indicates these were active-service troops, not just men of military age. The combined Benjaminite force from these three clans (22,034 + 20,200 + 17,200 = 59,434) represents a formidable tribal army.
12. This cryptic verse has generated enormous scholarly debate. Shuppim (Shuppim, 'serpents') and Huppim (Chuppim, 'coverings') appear as Benjaminite names in Genesis 46:21. Hushim (Chushim, 'hasty ones') is listed as a son of Dan in Genesis 46:23, leading some scholars to conclude that 'Aher' (Acher, 'another/different') is a veiled reference to Dan — 'the sons of another (tribe).' If so, this single verse may be the Chronicler's entire Danite genealogy, compressed or disguised.
13. Naphtali (Naftali, 'my wrestling') receives only this single verse — the shortest tribal genealogy in all of Chronicles. The four sons match Genesis 46:24. The note *benei Vilhah* ('sons of Bilhah') identifies their grandmother as Rachel's handmaid, placing Naphtali among the concubine tribes. The brevity may reflect limited available sources for Naphtali or the Chronicler's greater interest in southern and central tribes.
14. Manasseh's (Menasheh) genealogy begins with Asriel (Asri'el, 'vow of God') and Machir (Makhir, 'sold'). The Aramean concubine (*pilagesh ha'Arammiyyah*) is an intermarriage note — like the Egyptian connections in Judah's genealogy (2:34, 4:18), the Chronicler records foreign wives without censure. Machir as *avi Gil'ad* ('father of Gilead') connects this genealogy to the Transjordanian territory. The grammar of this verse is complex and debated.
15. Zelophehad (Tselofchad, meaning uncertain) is the famous figure whose five daughters petitioned Moses for inheritance rights when their father died without sons (Numbers 27:1-11). Their case established the legal precedent that daughters could inherit when there were no male heirs. The Chronicler's note *vatihiyeha liTselofchad banot* ('Zelophehad had daughters') alludes to this landmark case without retelling it — the audience would know the story and its legal implications.
16. Peresh (Peresh, 'dung/excrement' — possibly apotropaic, meant to ward off evil) and Sheresh (Sheresh, 'root') are Machir's sons through Maacah. Ulam (Ulam, 'first' or 'porch') and Rekem (Rekem, 'variegated') are grandsons. The naming of Machir's wife as Maacah connects this Manassite family to the Aramean Maacah-kingdom territory, reinforcing the Transjordanian geography.
17. Bedan (Bedan, 'son of Dan' or 'in judgment') may be the figure mentioned in 1 Samuel 12:11 as a deliverer of Israel, alongside Gideon, Jephthah, and Samuel. The summary formula *benei Gil'ad ben Makhir ben Menasheh* ('sons of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh') traces the line back three generations to the patriarch.
18. Hammolecheth (HaMmolekhet, 'the queen' or 'she who reigns') is a remarkable name for a woman — it implies queenship or royal authority within the clan. Abiezer (Avi'ezer, 'my father is help') is the clan from which Gideon came (Judges 6:11, 34) — placing Gideon's ancestry within this Manassite branch. Mahlah (Machlah, 'weakness/sickness') is also the name of one of Zelophehad's five daughters (Numbers 27:1).
19. Shemida (Shemida, 'name of knowledge') is listed in Numbers 26:32 as a Manassite clan. Shechem (Shekhem) as a personal name connects to the city. Ahian (Achyah, 'brother of the one'), Likhi (Liqchi, 'my learning'), and Aniam (Ani'am, 'I am a people') are clan leaders within the Shemida division.
20. The Ephraim genealogy begins with Shuthelah (Shutelach, 'noise/din') from Numbers 26:35. Bered (Bered, 'hail'), two Tahaths (Tachat, 'beneath'), and Eladah (El'adah, 'God has adorned') carry the line forward. The narrative disruption that follows (vv. 21-24) will interrupt this genealogy with a story of tragedy.
21. The genealogy suddenly erupts into narrative: Ezer (Ezer, 'help') and Elead (El'ad, 'God has testified') were killed by *anshei Gat hannolladim ba'arets* ('the men of Gath who were born in the land') during a cattle raid. This is the only narrative episode in chapters 1-9 outside the Jabez prayer. The phrase *ki yardu laqachat et miqueihem* ('because they went down to take their livestock') describes a raid — whether a legitimate conquest or simple rustling is unclear. The men of Gath killed them in defense of their property.
22. The Chronicler preserves raw grief: *vayyit'abbel Efrayim avihem yamim rabbim* ('Ephraim their father mourned many days'). The verb *hitabbel* ('to mourn') indicates formal, sustained mourning — not a brief sadness but extended lamentation. And *vayyavo'u echav lenachamo* ('his brothers came to console him') — the same consolation language used for Jacob mourning Joseph (Genesis 37:35, where Jacob 'refused to be consoled') and for Job's friends (Job 2:11). This three-word sentence — 'his brothers came to console him' — is one of the most human moments in the genealogies.
23. After the mourning, new life. Beriah (Beri'ah) is explained by the wordplay *ki bera'ah hayetah beveito* ('because in misfortune/evil it was in his house'). The name Beriah sounds like *bera'ah* ('in evil/misfortune'). This naming pattern — embedding grief in a name — mirrors Jabez (4:9), where a mother named her son 'Pain.' Both names testify to suffering; both become starting points for new clan lineages. Ephraim's grief does not end the tribe — it generates a new branch.
24. Sheerah (She'erah, 'kinswoman' or 'remnant') is one of the most remarkable women in the genealogies — she is credited with building three towns. The phrase *vattiven et Beit Choron* ('she built Beth-horon') uses the standard city-founding verb. Lower and Upper Beth-horon controlled the main pass between the coastal plain and the central highlands — militarily crucial positions. Uzen-sheerah (Uzen She'erah, 'ear/edge of Sheerah') is named after her. A woman who builds cities is rare in the Hebrew Bible; the Chronicler records it without commentary.
25. The Ephraim genealogy resumes after the narrative interlude. Rephah (Refach, 'riches'), Resheph (Reshef, 'flame/burning' — also the name of a Canaanite plague deity, here used as a personal name), Telah (Telach, meaning uncertain), and Tahan (Tachan, 'camp/grace') carry the line forward toward its climax.

26. Ladan (La'dan, meaning uncertain), Ammihud (Ammihud, 'my people is glorious'), and Elishama (Elishama, 'my God has heard'). Elishama son of Ammihud was the tribal leader of Ephraim during the wilderness period (Numbers 1:10, 2:18), confirming that this genealogy is tracing the leading family of the tribe — the line that would produce the greatest Ephraimite of all.
27. The genealogy reaches its climax: Nun (Nun, 'fish') and Joshua (Yehoshu'a, 'YHWH saves/is salvation'). Joshua son of Nun — Moses' successor, the conqueror of Canaan, the man who led Israel into the promised land. The Chronicler traces him through the Ephraim-Shuthelah line, establishing that the greatest military leader of the conquest era was an Ephraimite. The placement of Joshua at the end of the Ephraim genealogy mirrors the placement of David at the center of the Judah genealogy (2:15).
28. The Ephraimite territorial description: Bethel (Beit El, 'house of God') — the ancient sanctuary city on the Ephraim-Benjamin border. Naaran (Na'aran, to the east near Jericho). Gezer (to the west). Shechem (the great central city). The Hebrew reads ad Azzah, which some read as Gaza (far to the southwest), but this seems geographically impossible for Ephraim; it may be Ayyah or a local site. The territory spans the central hill country from the Jordan Valley to the Shephelah foothills.
29. Four major cities along Manasseh's borders: Beth-shean (Beit She'an) in the Jordan Valley, Taanach (Ta'anakh) and Megiddo (Megiddo) in the Jezreel Valley, and Dor (Dor) on the coast. These are some of the most strategically important cities in the land — Megiddo alone controlled the international trade route between Egypt and Mesopotamia. The summary formula benei Yosef ben Yisra'el ('sons of Joseph son of Israel') wraps up both Ephraim and Manasseh as a single unit.
30. Asher's (Asher, 'happy/blessed') four sons and sister match Genesis 46:17. Beriah (Berī'ah, 'in misfortune') shares the same name as Ephraim's son born in grief (v. 23). Serah (Serach, 'abundance') is notable — she appears in both Genesis 46:17 and Numbers 26:46 as the only granddaughter of Jacob named in the genealogies. Rabbinic tradition gave her extraordinary longevity, claiming she lived from the entry into Egypt to the exodus.
31. Heber (Chever, 'associate/companion') and Malchiel (Malki'el, 'God is my king') are Beriah's sons (Numbers 26:45). Birzaith (Birazayit, possibly 'olive well') is either a settlement or a daughter — the Hebrew is ambiguous. If a settlement, Malchiel was its founder. The Heber mentioned here may be the ancestor of Jael's husband Heber the Kenite (Judges 4:11), who is associated with the Asher region.
32. Japhlet (Yaflet, 'he delivers'), Shomer (Shomer, 'keeper/guard'), Hotham (Chotam, 'seal/signet ring'), and their sister Shua (Shu'a, 'wealth/prosperity'). The naming of sisters at key junctures continues the Chronicler's pattern of noting women in genealogical records. Shua's name ('wealth') contrasts with the patriarch's name Asher ('happy') — both suggesting material blessing.
33. Pasach (Pasakh, 'divider'), Bimhal (Bimhal, meaning uncertain), and Ashvath (Ashvat, meaning uncertain) — Asherite clan leaders unique to this passage. The Chronicler's Asherite genealogy is remarkably detailed compared to Naphtali's single verse, suggesting access to an Asherite clan register.
34. Shemer (Shemer, a variant of Shomer from v. 32) has four sons. Ahi (Achi, 'my brother'), Rohgah (Rohgah, 'clamor/agitation'), Jehubbah (Yechubbah, 'he hides'), and Aram (Aram) — the last name identical to the nation Aram/Syria. These names are unique to this genealogy.
35. Helem (Helem, 'dream/strength') is likely identical with Hotham from verse 32 — the name variation may reflect different manuscript traditions. Zophah (Tsafach, 'jug/wide-mouthed vessel'), Imna (Yimna, 'he restrains'), Shelesh (Shelesh, 'triad/triplet'), and Amal (Amal, 'toil/labor') continue the Asherite clan structure.
36. Suah (Suach, 'wiping away'), Harnepher (Charnefer, 'panting/snoring'), Shual (Shu'al, 'fox'), Beri (Beri, 'my well'), and Imrah (Yimrah, 'resistance'). Shual shares a name with the 'land of Shual' in Benjamin's territory (1 Samuel 13:17). The Asherite genealogy continues to grow deeper than any other northern tribal genealogy in Chronicles.
37. Six more sons of Zophah — making eleven in total, an unusually large family. Bezer (Betser, 'fortification/gold ore'), Hod (Hod, 'splendor/majesty'), Shamma (Shamma, 'desolation'), Shilshah (Shilshah, 'triad'), Ithran (Yitran, 'excellent'), and Beera (Be'era, 'well'). The large family size may explain the Chronicler's note that Asher produced exceptionally numerous warriors.
38. Jether (Yeter, 'abundance') is likely the same as Ithran of verse 37 — an alternate form of the same name. Jephunneh (Yefunneh, 'he will be turned') shares the name of Caleb's father (Numbers 13:6), creating another cross-tribal name link. Pispah (Pispah, meaning uncertain) and Ara (Ara, 'lion' or 'wayfarer') are unique to this passage.
39. Ulla (Ulla, 'yoke') has three sons: Arah (Arach, 'wayfarer' — an Arah returned from exile in Ezra 2:5), Hanniel (Channi'el, 'God is gracious'), and Rizia (Ritsya, meaning uncertain). Hanniel is the name of the Manassite prince who helped divide the land (Numbers 34:23); its reuse here in Asher shows cross-tribal name sharing.
40. The Asher summary uses superlative language: rashei beit ha'avot ('heads of ancestral houses'), berurei gibborei chayalim ('select/choice mighty warriors'), rashei hannesim ('chief among the leaders'). The word berurim ('select/chosen') implies an elite among elites. The military count of 26,000 is modest compared to Issachar's 87,000, but the quality emphasis suggests a smaller, more highly trained force. The petuchah marker closes both the Asher section and the chapter.

8

Summary: *The Chronicler devotes an entire chapter to Benjamin — far more than the brief treatment in 7:6-12 — because Benjamin is the tribe of Saul, Israel's first king, and also the tribe that remained loyal to the house of David after the kingdom split. The genealogy traces Benjamin's sons and their descendants through multiple branches, locating clans in Jerusalem, Aijalon, Gath, and other settlements, and culminates in the genealogy of Saul son of Kish at Gibeon. This Saulide genealogy will be repeated at 9:35-44, forming a bridge between the genealogies and the narrative that begins with Saul's death in chapter 10.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Benjamin receives two genealogies (ch. 7 and ch. 8) because the tribe serves a dual function in the Chronicler's schema: it is the tribe of the old monarchy (Saul) and the tribe that partnered with Judah in the southern kingdom. The extended treatment legitimizes Benjamin's role in the post-exilic community — the returnees were primarily from Judah, Benjamin, and Levi. The Saulide genealogy at the chapter's end is deliberately positioned: it sets up Saul's death narrative (ch. 10) and implicitly contrasts Saul's failed dynasty with David's enduring one. The Chronicler is not hostile to Benjamin or even to Saul — he traces the royal line with care — but the structural placement speaks: Benjamin's genealogy ends the pre-narrative section, giving way to the Davidic story.*

Translation Friction: *This Benjaminite genealogy differs significantly from 7:6-12 and from Genesis 46:21, Numbers 26:38-41, and other lists. The variations likely reflect different periods and different clan structures within the same tribe. The identification of Ehud (v. 6) with the judge Ehud of Judges 3 is uncertain. The Gibeon-based genealogy of Saul (vv. 29-40) duplicates 9:35-44 with minor variations, suggesting both passages draw on the same source.*

Connections: *The Saulide genealogy connects directly to 1 Samuel 9:1 (Saul's lineage) and to the death narrative of 1 Chronicles 10. The location of Benjaminite clans in Jerusalem (v. 28, 32) establishes Benjamin's co-presence with Judah in the holy city — a partnership the Chronicler values. The mention of Benjaminites in Gath (v. 13) and Aijalon (v. 13) shows the tribe's western territorial reach into traditionally Philistine and Danite areas.*

¹Benjamin fathered Bela his firstborn, Ashbel the second, and Aharah the third, ²Nohah the fourth and Rapha the fifth — as recorded in the genealogies. ³The sons of Bela: Addar, Gera, and Abihud, ⁴Abishua, Naaman, and Ahoah, ⁵Gera, Shephuphan, and Huram. ⁶These are the sons of Ehud — they were heads of ancestral houses among the inhabitants of Geba, and they were deported to Manahath: ⁷Naaman, Ahijah, and Gera — he led their deportation — and he fathered Uzza and Ahihud. ⁸Shaharaim fathered children in the territory of Moab after he sent away his wives Hushim and Baara. ⁹By his wife Hodesh he fathered Jobab, Zibia, Mesha, and Malcam, ¹⁰Jeuz, Sachiah, and Mirmah. These were his sons — heads of ancestral houses. ¹¹By Hushim he had fathered Abitub and Elpaal. ¹²The sons of Elpaal: Eber, Misham, and Shemed — who built Ono and Lod with its surrounding towns. ¹³Beriah and Shema were the heads of ancestral houses for the inhabitants of Aijalon. They drove out the inhabitants of Gath. ¹⁴Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth, ¹⁵Zebadiah, Arad, and Eder, ¹⁶Michael, Ishpah, and Joha — the sons of Beriah. ¹⁷Zebadiah, Meshullam, Hizki, and Heber, ¹⁸Ishmerai, Izliah, and Jobab — the sons of Elpaal. ¹⁹Jakim, Zichri, and Zabdi, ²⁰Elienai, Zillethai, and Eliel, ²¹Adaiah, Beraiah, and Shimrath — the sons of Shimei. ²²Ishpan, Eber, and Eliel, ²³Abdon, Zichri, and Hanan, ²⁴Hananiah, Elam, and Anthothijah, ²⁵Iphdeiah and Penuel — the sons of Shashak. ²⁶Shamsherai, Shehariah, and Athaliah, ²⁷Jareshiah, Elijah, and Zichri — the sons of Jeroham. ²⁸These were heads of ancestral houses, leaders by their generations. They lived in Jerusalem. ²⁹In Gibeon lived the father of Gibeon, and his wife's name was Maacah. ³⁰His firstborn son Abdon, then Zur, Kish, Baal, and Nadab, ³¹Gedor, Ahio, and Zecher. ³²Mikloth fathered Shimeah. They also lived in Jerusalem alongside their relatives. ³³Ner fathered Kish, and Kish fathered Saul. Saul fathered Jonathan, Malchi-shua, Abinadab, and Esh-baal. ³⁴The son of Jonathan: Merib-baal. Merib-baal fathered Micah. ³⁵The sons of Micah: Pithon, Melech, Tarea, and Ahaz. ³⁶Ahaz fathered Jehoaddah, and Jehoaddah fathered Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri fathered Moza. ³⁷Moza fathered Binea; Raphah his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son. ³⁸Azel had six sons, and these are their names: Azrikam, Boceru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were the sons of

Azel. ³⁹These were the sons of Eshek, his brother: Ulam the firstborn, Jeush the second and Eliphelet the third. ⁴⁰The sons of Ulam were mighty warriors, archers, who had many sons and grandsons — one hundred fifty. All these were descendants of Benjamin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Benjamin's (Binyamin) sons are listed differently here than in Genesis 46:21 or Numbers 26:38 — Aharah (Achrach) may be a variant of Ahiram (Numbers 26:38). The numbered birth order (bekhor, hasheni, hashlishi) emphasizes that Bela, not Ashbel, is the principal heir. The Chronicler provides a fresh genealogy tailored to the post-exilic community's needs rather than simply copying older lists.
2. Nohah (Nochah, 'rest') and Rapha (Rafa, 'healer' or 'giant/shade') — five sons total. Rapha is significant: the name may connect to the Rephaim, the legendary giants of Canaan. Some Benjaminite clans are associated with Rephaite warriors in 2 Samuel 21:16-22 (the 'sons of the giant' in Gath). Whether this is coincidental or reflects an actual genealogical connection is uncertain.
3. Gera (Gera, 'sojourning') is the name of the father/ancestor of Ehud the judge (Judges 3:15) and of Shimei who cursed David (2 Samuel 16:5). The name's recurrence in Benjaminite genealogies shows it was a clan identifier. Addar (Addar, 'noble') and Abihud (Avihud, 'my father is majesty') are sub-clan leaders.
4. Naaman (Na'aman, 'pleasant') shares the name of the Syrian general healed of leprosy by Elisha (2 Kings 5) — a different person entirely. Ahoah (Achoach, 'brother of rest') may be the ancestor of the Ahohite warriors among David's mighty men (2 Samuel 23:9, 28). Abishua (Avishu'a, 'father of salvation') shares a name with the Aaronide priest (6:4).
5. A second Gera in Bela's sons — or possibly the same as verse 3 with additional sons listed in a second source. Shephuphan (Shefufan, 'serpent') is a variant of Shephupham (Numbers 26:39). Hiram (Churam, 'noble/white') — not to be confused with Hiram king of Tyre. The total of nine sons of Bela (vv. 3-5) represents a major clan division.
6. Ehud (Echud) may be the judge of Judges 3:15 or a later descendant bearing the same name. The note vayyaglum el Manachat ('they deported/relocated them to Manahath') records an otherwise unknown internal migration or forced relocation of Benjaminite clans from Geba to Manahath (a Judahite settlement, cf. 2:54). This intra-tribal displacement is not recorded elsewhere and may reflect population movements during the monarchy.
7. The identity of 'he' (hu heglam, 'he deported them') is ambiguous — likely Gera led the relocation. After the move to Manahath, Gera fathered Uzza (Uzza, 'strength') and Ahihud (Achichud, 'my brother is majesty'). The Chronicler preserves the memory of this clan movement even though the circumstances are lost. Internal migrations, deportations, and clan relocations shaped tribal geography in ways the narrative texts rarely record.
8. Shaharaim (Shacharayim, 'double dawn') had children bisdeh Mo'av ('in the field/territory of Moab') — a Benjaminite living in Transjordan, like the Judahites of 4:22 who 'ruled in Moab.' The phrase min shilcho otam ('after he sent them away') means he divorced Hushim and Baara. Divorce and remarriage in a foreign land — the Chronicler records the domestic complexity without moral commentary.
9. Hodesh (Chodesh, 'new moon') is Shaharaim's new wife in Moab. Malcam (Malkam, 'their king') — the name is identical to the Ammonite deity Milcom/Malcam (1 Kings 11:5, Zephaniah 1:5). Its use as a personal name among Benjaminites either predates the association with the Ammonite god or indicates cultural influence from Moab where Shaharaim lived.
10. Seven sons by Hodesh in Moab, all designated rashei avot ('heads of ancestral houses'). Mirmah (Mirmah, 'deceit/fraud') is a striking name. The Benjaminite presence in Moab produced clan leaders who maintained their tribal identity even in foreign territory.
11. Before divorcing Hushim, Shaharaim had fathered Abitub (Avituv, 'my father is good') and Elpaal (Elpa'al, 'God has wrought'). The Chronicler records both the pre-divorce and post-divorce families. Elpaal's descendants will be listed next, generating a significant Benjaminite clan with Jerusalem connections.
12. Shemed (Shamed, 'destruction/guard') is credited with building Ono (Ono, 'strong') and Lod (Lod, 'strife') with their satellite villages. Lod is modern Lydda/Lod near Ben Gurion Airport. Ono is nearby in the Sharon plain. These are the same cities where Sanballat tried to lure Nehemiah for a meeting (Nehemiah 6:2). The Chronicler traces these important post-exilic settlements to a Benjaminite founder, legitimizing Benjaminite claims in the western territory.
13. A military note: Beriah and Shema, Benjaminite clan heads based in Aijalon (Ayyalon), hemmah hivrichu et yoshvei Gat ('they drove out the inhabitants of Gath'). This is a reversal of the usual Philistine-Israelite power dynamic — Benjaminites based in the Shephelah drove Gathites from their territory. The verb hivriach ('to put to flight, to drive away') indicates forceful expulsion. This military success is recorded nowhere else.
14. Ahio (Achy, 'his brother/brotherly'), Shashak (Shashaq, meaning uncertain), and Jeremoth (Yeremot, 'heights') — additional sons of Beriah or of Elpaal. Shashak's descendants will be listed in verses 25-26.
15. Zebadiah (Zevadyah, 'YHWH has bestowed'), Arad (Arad, 'wild donkey'), and Eder (Eder, 'flock') — more Benjaminite clan leaders. Arad shares a name with the Negev city (Numbers 21:1).
16. Michael (Mikha'el), Ishpah (Yishpah, 'he will smooth/level'), and Joha (Yocha, 'YHWH gives life') close the Beriah sub-section. The total of Beriah's sons (vv. 13-16) represents a substantial clan with military achievements and territorial reach.

17. A second Zebadiah (common name), Meshullam (Meshullam, 'allied'), Hizki (Chizqi, 'my strength'), and Heber (Chever, 'associate') — sons of Elpaal, distinct from Beriah's sons. The names overlap significantly with other tribal genealogies.
18. Ishmerai (Yishmerai, 'YHWH guards me'), Izliah (Yizliah, 'God draws out'), and Jobab (Yovav) complete Elpaal's sons. The total of seven sons (vv. 17-18) from Elpaal through Hushim, combined with seven from Hodesh (vv. 9-10), gives Shaharaim fourteen descendants through two family lines.
19. Jakim (Yaqim, 'he establishes'), Zichri (Zikhri, 'my remembrance'), and Zabdi (Zavdi, 'my gift') — beginning a new sub-clan list. Zichri is a common Benjaminite name; a Zichri killed Maaseiah, a prince of Judah, during the Israelite-Judean war (2 Chronicles 28:7).
20. Elienai (Eli'einai, 'my eyes are toward God'), Zillethai (Tsiltai, 'shadow/protection'), and Eliel (Eli'el, 'my God is God'). These theophoric names demonstrate strong YHWH/El worship within the Benjaminite clan.
21. Adaiah (Adayah, 'YHWH has adorned'), Beraiah (Bera'yah, 'YHWH has created'), and Shimrath (Shimrat, 'guard') — sons of Shimei (Shim'i). The naming formula benei Shim'i identifies the sub-clan. This Shimei is a Benjaminite clan head, not the Shimei who cursed David.
22. Ishpan (Yishpan, 'he will judge/conceal'), Eber (Ever, 'the one from beyond'), and Eliel continue a new sub-clan list. These names are unique to this genealogy.
23. Abdon (Avdon, 'servile'), another Zichri (Zikhri), and Hanan (Chanan, 'gracious'). Hanan shares a name with one of David's mighty warriors (1 Chronicles 11:43).
24. Hananiah (Chananyah, 'YHWH is gracious'), Elam (Eilam, 'hidden/eternal'), and Anthothijah (Antotiyah, 'answers of YHWH' or 'from Anathoth'). The last name may indicate origin from the priestly city of Anathoth — a Benjaminite with connections to a Levitical city.
25. Iphdeiah (Yifdeiyah, 'YHWH ransoms') and Penuel (Penu'el, 'face of God') are sons of Shashak from verse 14. Penuel shares the name of the place where Jacob wrestled with God (Genesis 32:30). The closing formula benei Shashaq identifies the sub-clan.
26. Shamsheraï (Shamshrai, possibly 'sunlike'), Shehariah (Shecharyah, 'YHWH has sought'), and Athaliah (Atalyah, 'YHWH is exalted') — the last name is shared by the notorious queen who usurped the Judean throne (2 Kings 11), though this is a Benjaminite man. The name Athaliah was apparently not exclusively female.
27. Jareshiah (Ya'areshyah, 'YHWH nourishes'), Elijah (Eliyyah, 'my God is YHWH'), and a third Zichri are sons of Jeroham (Yerocham, 'he is compassionate'). Elijah as a Benjaminite name predates or is contemporaneous with the prophet Elijah — the name was not exclusive to the Tishbite.
28. The summary note elleh yashvu viYerushalayim ('these lived in Jerusalem') is significant — Benjaminite clan leaders were residents of the capital city. Since Jerusalem sat on the border between Judah and Benjamin, both tribes had populations within the city. The Chronicler validates Benjamin's claim to Jerusalem alongside Judah's, establishing the post-exilic community's dual tribal foundation.
29. The Saulide genealogy begins at Gibeon (Giv'on, 'hill'), the Benjaminite city northwest of Jerusalem. The 'father of Gibeon' (avi Giv'on) means the founder or chief of the city. His name is supplied in 9:35 as Jeiel (Ye'i'el). Maacah (Ma'akhah) is his wife. Gibeon was a significant site — the tabernacle stood there during the early monarchy (1 Chronicles 16:39, 2 Chronicles 1:3), and Solomon received his dream-vision there (1 Kings 3:4-5). Saul's family coming from Gibeon connects the first king to a major sanctuary city.
30. The sons of Gibeon's founder. Kish (Qish, 'bow/snare') is significant — this Kish is not Saul's immediate father but an ancestor, since verse 33 will trace the line Ner-Kish-Saul. Baal (Ba'al) as a personal name again appears in a Benjaminite context. Zur (Tsur, 'rock') and Nadab (Nadav, 'generous') complete the list.
31. Gedor (Gedor, 'wall'), Ahio (Achy, 'brotherly'), and Zecher (Zekher, 'remembrance' — expanded to Zechariah in 9:37). These additional sons of Gibeon's founder extend the clan.
32. Mikloth (Miqloth, 'rods/sticks') fathered Shimeah (Shim'ah, 'hearing'). The note af hemmah neged acheihem yashvu viYerushalayim im acheihem ('they too, opposite their relatives, lived in Jerusalem with their relatives') establishes that the Gibeonite branch of Benjamin also had a Jerusalem presence — living neged ('opposite/alongside') other Benjaminite clans. This sets the stage for Saul's family having roots in both Gibeon and Jerusalem.
33. The royal line: Ner (Ner, 'lamp') to Kish to Saul (Sha'ul, 'asked for') to his four sons. Jonathan (Yehonatan, 'YHWH has given') — David's beloved friend. Malchi-shua (Malki-shu'a, 'my king is salvation') and Abinadab (Avinadav, 'my father is noble') — both died with Saul at Mount Gilboa (1 Samuel 31:2). Esh-baal (Eshba'al, 'man of Baal' or 'Baal exists') is the name the Chronicler preserves; the author of Samuel changed it to Ish-bosheth ('man of shame') to avoid the Baal element (2 Samuel 2:8). The Chronicler records the original name without alteration.
34. Merib-baal (Meriv Ba'al, 'Baal contends' or 'opponent of Baal') is the Chronicler's name for the person Samuel calls Mephibosheth (Mefivshet, 'from the mouth of shame' — the Baal element replaced with boshet, 'shame'). This is Jonathan's son, the lame prince whom David showed chesed for Jonathan's sake (2 Samuel 9). The Chronicler again preserves the original Baal-compound name. Micah (Mikhah, 'who is like [YHWH]?') is his son.
35. Micah's four sons extend the Saulide-Jonathanide line. Melech (Melekh, 'king') is a throne-related name in a royal family. Ahaz (Achaz, 'he has seized') shares the name of a later Judean king. The Saulide genealogy continues for several more generations — longer than might be expected for a dynasty that the Chronicler considers superseded by David's.

36. Jehoaddah (Yeho'addah, 'YHWH has adorned' — 9:42 has Jarah) continues the line. Azmaveth (Azmavet, 'death is strong' or 'strong unto death') is also a place name (Ezra 2:24). Zimri (Zimri, 'my music/praise') shares the name of an Israelite king who reigned seven days (1 Kings 16:15). Moza (Motsa, 'going forth') continues the Saulide descent.
37. Binea (Bin'a, 'fountain'), Raphah (Rafa, 'healer'), Eleasah (El'asah, 'God has made'), and Azel (Atsel, 'noble') — four more generations of Saulide descent. The line extends far beyond Saul himself, demonstrating that the family survived despite losing the throne. The Chronicler traces the Saulide genealogy with the same care he gives the Davidic line.
38. Six sons of Azel — the Saulide line branches outward rather than narrowing. Azrikam (Azriqam, 'my help has risen'), Ishmael (Yishma'el, 'God hears'), Obadiah (Ovadyah, 'servant of YHWH'), and Hanan (Chanan, 'gracious') are theophoric names. Boceru (Bokheru, 'his firstborn') is an unusual name — it may be a designation rather than a personal name. Six sons represent a thriving post-monarchic Saulide clan.
39. Eshek (Esheq, 'oppression') is Azel's brother. His three sons Ulam (Ulam, 'first/porch'), Jeush (Ye'ush, 'he hastens'), and Eliphelet (Elifelet, 'my God is deliverance') establish a parallel branch of the Saulide family.
40. The Saulide genealogy ends not in obscurity but in military prowess: gibborei chayil dorekei qashet ('mighty warriors who draw the bow'). Benjaminite archery was legendary — Judges 20:16 describes seven hundred Benjaminite left-handed slingers who 'could sling a stone at a hair and not miss.' The 150 descendants of Ulam represent a significant military clan. The closing formula kol elleh mibnei Binyamin ('all these from the sons of Benjamin') and the petuchah marker close the chapter. The Chronicler's message: Saul's family did not vanish — they remained a warrior clan within Benjamin, part of the post-exilic community.

9

Summary: *This chapter is the hinge between genealogy and narrative. The Chronicler first summarizes the exile as a consequence of unfaithfulness (v. 1), then lists the inhabitants of Jerusalem after the return from Babylon: Judahites, Benjaminites, Ephraimites, and Manassites who resettled the city, along with the priests, Levites, and temple servants who reconstituted the worship community. A detailed section on the gatekeepers and their duties follows, describing the organization of temple security and service. The chapter concludes by repeating the Saulide genealogy from chapter 8, setting up the death narrative of chapter 10.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the Chronicler's bridge chapter — the moment where genealogical past becomes lived present. The post-exilic community described here is the Chronicler's own community. He is not merely recording ancient history; he is documenting the people he knows and the institutions he serves. The gatekeeper section (vv. 17-34) is extraordinarily detailed, describing round-the-clock shifts, responsibility for storerooms, authority over sacred vessels, and the preparation of showbread and spice mixtures. No other biblical text provides this level of detail about temple operations. The Chronicler is recording the job descriptions of his colleagues.*

Translation Friction: *The post-exilic inhabitants list (vv. 2-18) closely parallels Nehemiah 11:3-19 but with significant differences in names and numbers. The two lists may draw on the same source but represent different periods of the post-exilic settlement. The mention of Ephraimites and Manassites living in Jerusalem (v. 3) is surprising — these were northern tribes. Their presence in post-exilic Jerusalem may represent remnants who migrated south after the fall of the northern kingdom in 722 BCE.*

Connections: *The exile notice (v. 1) connects to 5:25-26 (the eastern tribes' exile for unfaithfulness) and anticipates 2 Chronicles 36:14-21 (the fall of Jerusalem). The gatekeeper duties connect to David's organization of temple service (1 Chronicles 23-26). The repeated Saulide genealogy (vv. 35-44) mirrors 8:29-38 and serves as the narrative on-ramp to chapter 10, where Saul dies and the throne passes to David. The Chronicler structures the transition carefully: the last genealogical word is about Saul, and the first narrative word is about Saul's death.*

¹All Israel was enrolled in the genealogical records — they are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. They were exiled to Babylon because of their unfaithfulness. ²The first inhabitants who returned to their property in their towns: Israelites, priests, Levites, and temple servants. ³In Jerusalem lived some from the tribes of Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim, and Manasseh: ⁴Uthai son of Ammihud, son of Omri, son of Imri, son of Bani, from the descendants of Perez son of Judah; ⁵From the Shilonites: Asaiah the firstborn, and his sons. ⁶From the sons of Zerah: Jeuel, and their relatives — six hundred ninety. ⁷From the Benjaminites: Sallu son of Meshullam, son of Hodaviah, son of Hassenuah; ⁸Ibneiah son of Jeroham; Elah son of Uzzi, son of Michri; and Meshullam son of Shephatiah, son of Reuel, son of Ibnijah; ⁹Their relatives, by their

genealogical records: nine hundred fifty-six. All these men were heads of their ancestral houses. ¹⁰From the priests: Jedaiah, Jehoiarib, and Jachin; ¹¹and Azariah son of Hilkiah, son of Meshullam, son of Zadok, son of Meraioth, son of Ahitub — the chief officer of the house of God; ¹²and Adaiah son of Jeroham, son of Pashhur, son of Malchijah; and Maasai son of Adiel, son of Jahzerah, son of Meshullam, son of Meshillemith, son of Immer; ¹³Their relatives, heads of their ancestral houses: one thousand seven hundred sixty — able men for the work of the service of the house of God. ¹⁴From the Levites: Shemaiah son of Hasshub, son of Azrikam, son of Hashabiah, from the Merarites; ¹⁵Bakbakkar, Heresh, Galal, and Mattaniah son of Micah, son of Zichri, son of Asaph; ¹⁶Obadiah son of Shemaiah, son of Galal, son of Jeduthun; and Berechiah son of Asa, son of Elkanah, who lived in the villages of the Netophathites. ¹⁷The gatekeepers: Shallum, Akkub, Talmon, and Ahiman — with their relatives. Shallum was the chief. ¹⁸Until now they have served at the King's Gate on the east side. These are the gatekeepers for the Levitical camps. ¹⁹Shallum son of Kore, son of Ebiasaph, son of Korah, and his relatives from his ancestral house — the Korahites — were over the work of the service, guarding the thresholds of the tent. Their ancestors had been stationed over the camp of the LORD, guarding the entrance. ²⁰Phinehas son of Eleazar had been their chief officer in former times — the LORD was with him. ²¹Zechariah son of Meshelemiah was gatekeeper of the entrance to the tent of meeting. ²²All those selected as gatekeepers at the thresholds: two hundred twelve. They were enrolled in their genealogical records in their villages. David and Samuel the seer had established them in their positions of trust. ²³They and their sons kept watch over the gates of the house of the LORD — the house of the tent — by assigned shifts. ²⁴The gatekeepers were stationed on all four sides: east, west, north, and south. ²⁵Their relatives in the villages came in for seven-day shifts at regular intervals to serve alongside them. ²⁶The four chief gatekeepers held their positions by trust — they were Levites. They were responsible for the chambers and storerooms of the house of God. ²⁷They spent the night around the house of God because the watch duty was theirs, and they were responsible for opening it every morning. ²⁸Some of them were responsible for the service vessels, counting them when brought in and counting them when taken out. ²⁹Some of them were appointed over the furnishings, over all the holy vessels, and over the fine flour, wine, oil, frankincense, and spices. ³⁰Some of the priests' sons were mixers of the spice ointment. ³¹Mattithiah, one of the Levites, the firstborn of Shallum the Korahite, held the position of trust over the baking of flat cakes. ³²Some of their Kohathite relatives were responsible for the bread of the arrangement, preparing it every Sabbath. ³³The musicians, who were heads of Levitical ancestral houses, lived in the temple chambers and were exempt from other duties, because they were engaged in their work day and night. ³⁴These were the heads of the Levitical ancestral houses, leaders by their generations. They lived in Jerusalem. ³⁵In Gibeon lived the father of Gibeon, Jeiel, and his wife's name was Maacah. ³⁶His firstborn son Abdon, then Zur, Kish, Baal, Ner, and Nadab, ³⁷Gedor, Ahio, Zechariah, and Mikloth. ³⁸Mikloth fathered Shimeam. They too lived in Jerusalem alongside their relatives. ³⁹Ner fathered Kish, Kish fathered Saul, and Saul fathered Jonathan, Malchi-shua, Abinadab, and Esh-baal. ⁴⁰The son of Jonathan: Merib-baal. Merib-baal fathered Micah. ⁴¹The sons of Micah: Pithon, Melech, Tahrea, and Ahaz. ⁴²Ahaz fathered Jarah, and Jarah fathered Alemeth, Azmaveth, and Zimri. Zimri fathered Moza. ⁴³Moza fathered Binea; Rephaiah his son, Eleasah his son, Azel his son. ⁴⁴Azel had six sons, and these are their names: Azrikam, Boceru, Ishmael, Sheariah, Obadiah, and Hanan. These were the sons of Azel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler cites his source: *sefer malkhei Yisra'el viYehudah* ('the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah') — not our canonical Kings but an administrative chronicle that may have been the Chronicler's primary source. The exile summary *hoglu levavel bema'alam* ('they were exiled to Babylon because of their unfaithfulness') uses the Chronicler's signature word *ma'al* to explain the catastrophe. This verse wraps up the entire genealogical section (chs. 1-8) with a single theological verdict before pivoting to the restoration.
2. The phrase *hayyoshvim harishonim* ('the first inhabitants') marks the beginning of the restoration. Four categories of returnees: *Yisra'el* (lay Israelites), *hakkohanim* (the priests), *haLeviyim* (the Levites), and *haNetinim* ('the given ones' — temple servants, descendants of non-Israelite peoples dedicated to temple service, cf. Joshua 9:27, Ezra 2:43-54). The fourfold structure shows a community organized around the temple: clergy and support staff alongside the general population.
3. The Jerusalem population drew from four tribes: Judah and Benjamin (the core southern kingdom) plus Ephraim and Manasseh (northern tribes). The northern tribal presence in post-exilic Jerusalem is remarkable — it suggests that after the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE, some northerners migrated south and were absorbed into the Judean community. For the Chronicler, who cares about 'all Israel,' this fourfold tribal presence validates Jerusalem

as a city of the entire nation, not just of the south.

4. The Judahite section begins with Uthai (Utai, 'my helper'), traced through four generations to the Perezite clan — David's own clan. The returnees are not random refugees; they are genealogically documented members of the tribe that produced the monarchy. Ammihud ('my people is glorious'), Omri, Imri, and Bani connect to established Judahite lineages.
5. The Shilonites (haShiloni) are descendants of Shelah, Judah's third son (2:3). Asaiah (Asayah, 'YHWH has made') as 'the firstborn' (habbkhôr) leads this clan. The presence of all three Judahite clan divisions (Perez, Zerah, Shelah) in post-exilic Jerusalem shows the tribe reconstituted its full internal structure after the return.
6. Jeuel (Ye'u'el, 'God sweeps away') heads the Zerahite contingent. The number 690 represents the total Zerahite population in Jerusalem — a precise count suggesting census records. The three Judahite clans (Perez, Shelah, Zerah) are all represented, reconstituting the tribal structure that existed before the exile.
7. The Benjaminite section begins. Sallu (Sallu, 'weighed') is traced through Meshullam and Hodaviah to Hassenuah (Hassenu'ah, 'the hated one' — a clan designation). The parallel in Nehemiah 11:7-8 lists different Benjaminite names, suggesting the two texts reflect different settlement periods or census records.
8. Three Benjaminite clan leaders with their genealogical chains. Ibneiah (Yivneyah, 'YHWH builds'), Elah (Elah, 'terebinth'), and Meshullam — each traced through multiple generations to establish their legitimacy as returnees. Reuel (Re'u'el, 'friend of God') and Ibnijah (Yivniyyah, 'YHWH builds') are theophoric names confirming YHWH worship in the Benjaminite families.
9. The Benjaminite total: 956 heads of ancestral houses. Combined with the Judahite count of 690 Zerahites (plus the unnumbered Perezites and Shilonites), the post-exilic Jerusalem had a lay population of well over a thousand clan leaders, each representing a family unit — perhaps a total civilian population of several thousand.
10. Three priestly divisions are named: Jedaiah (Yeda'yah, 'YHWH has known'), Jehoiarib (Yehoyariv, 'YHWH contends'), and Jachin (Yakhin, 'he establishes'). These correspond to priestly courses (mishmarot) that David organized (1 Chronicles 24). Jehoiarib's course was first in David's roster (24:7), and the Maccabean/Hasmonean priestly family later claimed descent from Jehoiarib (1 Maccabees 2:1).
11. Azariah is identified as negid beit ha'Elohim ('the chief officer of the house of God') — the head of the temple administration. His genealogy traces through Zadok, confirming the Zadokite priestly line's continued leadership in the post-exilic temple. The title negid ('leader, officer') applied to the temple head is the same word used for the royal leader in 5:2 — the chief priest holds an authority parallel to the king's within his domain.
12. Two more priestly lines. Adaiah (Adayah) traces through Pashhur (Pashchur, 'freedom') — a major priestly family that appears in Jeremiah (Jeremiah 20:1, Ezra 2:38). Maasai (Ma'asai) traces through the Immer (Immer) priestly division, the sixteenth course in David's roster (1 Chronicles 24:14). These genealogies establish that the post-exilic priesthood had legitimate pedigrees tracing to pre-exilic priestly families.
13. The priestly total: 1,760 heads of ancestral houses, characterized as gibborei chayil ('men of ability/valor') for melekhet avodat beit ha'Elohim ('the work of the service of the house of God'). The term gibborei chayil is usually military but here is applied to temple service — the Chronicler treats worship work with the same vocabulary of strength and competence used for warfare.
14. The Levitical section begins with a Merarite: Shemaiah (Shemayah, 'YHWH has heard') traced through Hasshub (Chashuv, 'esteemed'), Azrikam, and Hashabiah to the Merarite clan. The Chronicler identifies each Levite's clan affiliation because different clans had different responsibilities in the temple.
15. Mattaniah (Mattanyah, 'gift of YHWH') is traced to Asaph — the great musician of David's time. This Asaphite Levite continued the musical tradition of his ancestor in the post-exilic temple. Bakbakkar (Baqbaqqar, 'searching diligently'), Heresh (Cheresh, 'craftsman/deaf'), and Galal (Galal, 'rolling/influential') are additional Levites.
16. Obadiah (Ovadyah) is traced to Jeduthun (Yedutun) — the third great musician, also known as Ethan. Berechiah (Berekyah) lived in the villages of the Netophathites (chatserai Netofati) — Netophah near Bethlehem. Some Levites lived outside Jerusalem in surrounding villages and commuted to the temple for their service rotations. The three great musical guilds — Asaph (v. 15), Jeduthun/Ethan (v. 16), and by implication Heman — are all represented in the post-exilic community.
17. The gatekeeper section begins — the Chronicler's most detailed description of temple operations. The sho'arim ('gatekeepers') controlled access to the temple compound. Shallum (Shallum) is haro'sh ('the chief') — the head gatekeeper. Akkub (Aqqub, 'supplanter'), Talmon (Talmon, 'oppressor'), and Ahiman (Achiman, 'brother of a gift') are his colleagues. These four names appear in nearly identical lists in Ezra 2:42 and Nehemiah 7:45, confirming that these gatekeeper families maintained their positions across the post-exilic period.
18. The King's Gate (sha'ar hammelekh) on the east side was the principal entrance. The phrase ad hennah ('until now') indicates the Chronicler is describing a current, ongoing arrangement — these gatekeepers are still serving when he writes. The designation lemachanot benei Levi ('for the camps of the sons of Levi') refers to the organized Levitical settlement around the temple, echoing the wilderness camp arrangement where Levites surrounded the tabernacle (Numbers 1:50-53).
19. The chief gatekeeper Shallum is traced to Korah — the same Korah whose rebellion against Moses ended in judgment (Numbers 16) but whose sons survived. The Korahites became the hereditary gatekeepers, and the Chronicler traces their service back to the wilderness period: va'avoteihem al machaneh YHWH shomerei hammavo ('their ancestors over the camp of the LORD, guarding the entrance'). The gatekeeping role is not new — it extends back to the tabernacle era, establishing a continuous tradition of temple security from Moses to the post-exilic period.

20. Phinehas (Pinechas), Aaron's grandson, once served as nagid ('chief officer') over the gatekeepers. The parenthetical YHWH immo ('the LORD was with him') is the Chronicler's endorsement — the same phrase used for David (1 Chronicles 11:9) and for successful kings. By applying it to Phinehas in his gatekeeping role, the Chronicler elevates temple service to the same dignity as royal authority.
21. Zechariah (Zekharyah, 'YHWH remembers') son of Meshelemiah (Meshelemyah, 'YHWH repays') held the specific post of sho'er petach le'ohel mo'ed ('gatekeeper of the entrance to the tent of meeting'). The continued use of 'tent of meeting' language even for the post-exilic temple shows the Chronicler's effort to connect current worship practices to the original wilderness tabernacle.
22. Total gatekeepers: 212, selected (berurim, 'chosen/select') for their role. The Chronicler traces their appointment to David and Samuel the seer (har'o'eh, 'the one who sees'). David and Samuel are credited with establishing the gatekeeper system be'emunah ('in their faithfulness/trust') — the root emunah ('faithfulness') indicates that the appointment was based on trustworthiness. The gatekeepers were chosen not by lot but by character assessment.
23. The gatekeeper role was hereditary (hem uvneiham, 'they and their sons') and organized lemishmarot ('by watches/shifts'). The double designation beit YHWH leveit ha'ohel ('the house of the LORD, the house of the tent') again bridges temple and tabernacle language. The shift system ensured continuous twenty-four-hour coverage of the temple compound.
24. The fourfold compass arrangement (le'arba ruchot, 'toward four directions') placed gatekeepers at every approach to the temple. Mizrach (east), yammah (west, literally 'seaward'), tsafonah (north), and negbah (south). Complete perimeter security — no approach was unguarded. This mirrors the wilderness camp arrangement where Levitical clans guarded all four sides of the tabernacle (Numbers 3:23-38).
25. The rotation system: gatekeepers who lived in surrounding villages came to Jerusalem for seven-day shifts (leshiv'at hayyamim, 'for seven days'), then returned home. The phrase me'et el et ('from time to time') indicates regular, recurring rotations. This system balanced continuous temple coverage with the practical reality that most Levites lived outside Jerusalem.
26. The four chief gatekeepers (arba'at gibborei hasho'arim, 'four mighty gatekeepers') held permanent, trust-based positions (be'emunah, 'by faithfulness'). Their responsibilities extended beyond door-keeping to include oversight of halleshakhhot ('the chambers') and ha'otsrot ('the treasuries/storerooms'). The temple storerooms held tithes, offerings, and sacred vessels — enormous material responsibility.
27. The gatekeepers lodged overnight (yalinu, 'they spent the night') in quarters surrounding the temple because the watch was continuous. The phrase al hammafteach ('responsible for the key/opening') and labboqer labboqer ('morning by morning') describes their daily duty of unlocking the temple gates at dawn. The temple operated on a daily cycle of opening and closing, with gatekeepers responsible for both the nighttime security and the morning access.
28. Inventory control: service vessels were counted (bemispar, 'by number') when removed and when returned — a documented accountability system for sacred objects. The Chronicler describes what amounts to an ancient inventory management protocol, ensuring that no temple vessel went missing. This careful stewardship reflects the sanctity of the objects and the Chronicler's practical interest in institutional operations.
29. The scope of Levitical stewardship: temple furnishings (kelim), holy vessels (kol kelei haqqodesh), and the consumable supplies — solet (fine flour for grain offerings), yayin (wine for libations), shemen (oil for the lampstand and offerings), levonah (frankincense for the incense altar), and besamim (aromatic spices for the sacred incense blend of Exodus 30:34-38). The Chronicler documents the supply chain of worship.
30. The roqechei hammirqachot ('mixers/compounders of the spiced ointment') were from priestly families, not general Levites. The sacred anointing oil and incense formulas (Exodus 30:23-38) required specialized preparation and were restricted by law — making unauthorized versions was forbidden (Exodus 30:33, 38). The Chronicler distinguishes this priestly function from the Levitical supply management in the previous verse.
31. Mattithiah (Mattityah, 'gift of YHWH'), a Korahite Levite, held the position be'emunah ('in trust/faithfulness') over ma'aseh hachabittim ('the work of the flat cakes/griddle cakes'). These are the minchah offerings baked on a griddle (Leviticus 2:5, 6:21). Even the baking of sacrificial bread required a designated, trusted official. The Chronicler's attention to this level of operational detail reveals his intimate knowledge of temple procedures.
32. The lechem hamma'arekhet ('bread of the arrangement' — traditionally 'showbread') consisted of twelve loaves placed on the golden table before the LORD every Sabbath (Leviticus 24:5-9). Kohathite Levites prepared this bread lehakin shabbat shabbat ('to prepare Sabbath by Sabbath') — a weekly rhythm that structured Levitical life. The bread was both a practical task and a profound symbol: twelve loaves for twelve tribes, representing Israel's continuous presence before God.
33. The musicians (meshorerim) held a privileged position: they lived balleshakhhot ('in the chambers') of the temple complex and were peturim ('exempt/released') from other Levitical duties because yomam valaylah aleihem bammelakhah ('day and night upon them was the work'). Worship music was a full-time, round-the-clock vocation. The Chronicler's description implies continuous musical worship — a perpetual soundtrack of praise in the temple.
34. The summary: Levitical leaders were established betoledotam rashim ('as leaders by their generations') and they yashvu viYerushalayim ('lived in Jerusalem'). The petuchah marker signals a major structural break. Everything from verse 2 through verse 34 describes the post-exilic community — the Chronicler's own world. Now the text pivots back to Saul's genealogy, which will launch the narrative section.
35. The Saulide genealogy repeats from 8:29 with one addition: the founder's name Jeiel (Ye'i'el, 'God lives') is now supplied, which was absent in chapter 8. This repetition is structural — the Chronicler bookends the post-exilic section with the Saul genealogy, creating an inclusio (8:29-40 // 9:35-44) that frames the restoration community between two copies of the old monarchy's family tree.

36. This version includes Ner (Ner, 'lamp') in the list of Jeiel's sons, which chapter 8 omitted — a small but important addition since Ner is Kish's father and Saul's grandfather (v. 39). The inclusion here makes the Saul-Ner-Kish connection clearer.
37. Zechariah (Zekharyah) here expands the 'Zecher' (Zekher) of 8:31 — the fuller form of the name. Mikloth (Miqloth) reappears from 8:32. These minor variations between the two copies are typical of parallel genealogical lists and reflect manuscript transmission rather than intentional differences.
38. Identical to 8:32 — the Jerusalem residence note is repeated, emphasizing the Gibeonite-Benjaminite connection to the capital city. The repetition is the Chronicler's way of establishing that this information was stable across his sources.
39. The royal sequence repeated from 8:33. Ner-Kish-Saul-Jonathan: the line of Israel's first monarchy. The Chronicler preserves Esh-baal (not Ish-bosheth) again. This genealogy is now positioned immediately before chapter 10's death narrative — the reader moves directly from the family tree to the fatal battle at Mount Gilboa.
40. Merib-baal (= Mephibosheth) and Micah again — the Jonathanide line that David honored for the sake of his covenant with Jonathan (2 Samuel 9). The Chronicler's second recording of this line underscores its importance for the transitional narrative he is about to tell.
41. Matching 8:35 with a minor variant: Tahrea (Tachre'a) instead of Tarea. Both forms derive from the same root. The four sons extend the line another generation.
42. Jarah (Ya'rah) is the variant of Jehoaddah (8:36) — different scribal traditions preserving the same ancestor's name differently. The line continues through Zimri to Moza, matching chapter 8.
43. Matching 8:37 — Binea, Rephaiah (Refayah here vs. Raphah in 8:37 — variant forms), Eleasah, and Azel. The Saulide line extends deep into the post-exilic period through these descendants of Jonathan.
44. The chapter and the entire genealogical section end exactly as chapter 8 ended — with Azel's six sons. The petuchah marker closes nine chapters of genealogy. The Chronicler has traced the entire scope of Israel's identity: from Adam (1:1) through Abraham, the twelve tribes, the priesthood, the monarchy, the exile, the restoration community, and back to the family of Israel's first king. What follows immediately in chapter 10 is Saul's death — the genealogy gives way to narrative, and the Chronicler's real subject, the house of David and the temple of God, begins. These closing verses are the launch pad: the last genealogical word is Saul; the first narrative word will be Saul's end.

10

Summary: *The Chronicler opens David's story not with David but with Saul's death — a theological preface explaining why the kingdom changed hands. The Philistines defeat Israel on Mount Gilboa. Saul's three sons — Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchi-shua — are killed. Wounded by archers, Saul asks his armor-bearer to kill him; when the man refuses, Saul falls on his own sword, and the armor-bearer follows him in death. The Philistines discover the bodies, behead Saul, strip his armor, parade the news through Philistia, pin his armor in the temple of their gods, and nail his skull in the temple of Dagon. The men of Jabesh-gilead recover the bodies of Saul and his sons, bury them under the great tree at Jabesh, and fast seven days. The chapter closes with the Chronicler's theological verdict: Saul died because of his unfaithfulness to the LORD — he did not keep the LORD's word, and he sought guidance from a medium instead of seeking the LORD. Therefore the LORD put him to death and turned the kingdom over to David son of Jesse.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler has no interest in narrating Saul's reign. There are no stories of Saul's anointing, his early victories, his jealousy toward David, or his descent into madness. The entire Saulide narrative is compressed into a single chapter — his death — because for the Chronicler, Saul's significance is entirely as a foil for David. The theological summary in verses 13-14 has no parallel in 1 Samuel 31 and represents the Chronicler's distinctive contribution: a verdict that transforms a military disaster into a divine judgment. The Hebrew *ma'al* ('unfaithfulness, treachery, breach of trust') is a term the Chronicler uses repeatedly as the explanation for national catastrophe — it will recur at the end of 2 Chronicles to explain the Babylonian exile. By placing this verdict at the very beginning of the David story, the Chronicler establishes the theological framework for everything that follows: kingdoms rise and fall based on faithfulness to the LORD.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 presents a significant divergence from the Samuel parallel. In 1 Samuel 31:6, the text reads 'Saul, his three sons, his armor-bearer, and all his men died together that day.' The Chronicler's version reads 'Saul, his three sons, and all his house died together.' The phrase *kol beito* ('all his house') replaces 'all his men' and dramatically expands the scope of the catastrophe — the Chronicler presents the entire house of Saul as perishing in a single blow, even though Ish-bosheth (Esh-baal) survived to reign briefly (2 Samuel*

2:8-10). The Chronicler omits Ish-bosheth's reign entirely, treating the transfer of power to David as immediate. Verse 10 differs from 1 Samuel 31:10, which says the armor was placed in the temple of Ashtaroth and the body fastened to the wall of Beth-shan. The Chronicler splits the trophies: the armor goes to the temple of 'their gods' (plural) and Saul's skull goes to the temple of Dagon.

Connections: This chapter parallels 1 Samuel 31 almost verbatim in verses 1-12, with the theological verdict of verses 13-14 being the Chronicler's unique addition. The reference to Saul consulting a medium (ov) points back to the witch of Endor narrative in 1 Samuel 28:7-25 — a story the Chronicler does not retell but presumes the reader knows. The men of Jabesh-gilead's loyalty recalls Saul's rescue of them from Nahash the Ammonite (1 Samuel 11), creating an inclusio around Saul's public life. The phrase *vayyasev et ha-melukha* ('he turned the kingdom over') in verse 14 anticipates the central theme of 1 Chronicles 11-12: the gathering of all Israel around David as the divinely appointed king. The Chronicler's use of *ma'al* ('unfaithfulness') connects Saul's fall to the larger theology of covenant breach that runs through Chronicles, culminating in the exile explanation of 2 Chronicles 36:14.

¹The Philistines fought against Israel, and the men of Israel fled before the Philistines and fell, fatally wounded, on Mount Gilboa. ²The Philistines closed in on Saul and his sons. The Philistines struck down Jonathan, Abinadab, and Malchi-shua — Saul's sons. ³The battle pressed heavily against Saul, and the archers found him — the bowmen — and he was wounded by them. ⁴Saul said to his armor-bearer, "Draw your sword and run me through with it, or these uncircumcised men will come and make sport of me." But his armor-bearer refused — he was too terrified. So Saul took the sword and fell on it. ⁵When his armor-bearer saw that Saul was dead, he too fell on the sword and died. ⁶Saul, his three sons, and all his house perished together. ⁷When all the Israelites in the valley saw that the army had fled and that Saul and his sons were dead, they abandoned their cities and fled. The Philistines came and settled in them. ⁸The next day, when the Philistines came to strip the fallen, they found Saul and his sons lying dead on Mount Gilboa. ⁹They stripped him, took his head and his armor, and sent messengers throughout Philistine territory to spread the news among their idols and their people. ¹⁰They placed his armor in the temple of their gods and nailed his skull in the temple of Dagon. ¹¹When all of Jabesh-gilead heard everything the Philistines had done to Saul, ¹²Every fighting man among them set out, recovered the bodies of Saul and his sons, and brought them to Jabesh. They buried their bones under the great tree at Jabesh and fasted seven days. ¹³Saul died because of his unfaithfulness — the treachery he committed against the LORD. He did not keep the word of the LORD, and he even consulted a medium to seek guidance, ¹⁴rather than seeking the LORD. So the LORD put him to death and turned the kingdom over to David son of Jesse.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler opens the David narrative with Saul's death — not David's anointing, not David's rise, but the catastrophe that cleared the path. The verb *nilvchemu* ('they fought') plunges the reader into a battle already underway. The phrase *vayyippelu chalalim* ('they fell as pierced ones') uses *chalal*, the standard term for battlefield dead — men pierced by weapons. Mount Gilboa, at the southeastern edge of the Jezreel Valley, was strategically vital: its loss meant Philistine control of the northern approaches.
2. The verb *davqu* ('they clung to, pursued closely') from *davaq* describes predatory pursuit — closing the distance until there is no escape. The three sons are named in rapid succession: Jonathan (*yehonatan*, 'the LORD has given'), Abinadab (*avinadav*, 'my father is generous'), Malchi-shua (*malki-shua*, 'my king is salvation'). The Chronicler's account parallels 1 Samuel 31:2 nearly word for word. Jonathan's death, though devastating to the David narrative, receives no special treatment — he dies as one of Saul's sons on a battlefield.
3. The verb *kavdah* ('was heavy') from *kavad* describes the battle's crushing weight settling on Saul specifically. The phrase *vayyimtsa'uhu ha-morim ba-qashet* ('the archers found him, the bowmen') indicates targeted pursuit — the Philistine archers locked onto the Israelite king. The verb *vayyachel* ('he was wounded' or 'he trembled') from either *chalal* ('to pierce') or *chul* ('to writhe') is debated. The Chronicler's version omits the intensifier *me'od* ('greatly') found in 1 Samuel 31:3, slightly softening the description.
4. The construction *pen yavo'u* ('lest they come') reveals Saul's motive as prevention of a worse outcome, not nihilism. The armor-bearer's refusal (*lo avah*, 'he was not willing') echoes the deep dispositional unwillingness seen elsewhere in the narrative — he cannot bring himself to strike the anointed king. The phrase *vayyippol al ha-cherev* ('he fell on the sword') establishes the idiom that will be used across ancient literature for battlefield suicide.
5. The armor-bearer's death mirrors Saul's: *vayyippol gam hu al ha-cherev* ('he also fell on the sword'). The particle *gam* ('also') marks this as a derivative death — the subordinate follows his lord. The Chronicler shortens the Samuel account slightly, omitting 'he died with him' (*immo*) from 1 Samuel 31:5, though the meaning is identical.

6. The phrase kol beito ('all his house') is the Chronicler's most significant divergence from 1 Samuel 31:6 in this chapter. By replacing 'his men' with 'his house,' the Chronicler transforms a military report into a dynastic obituary. The Chronicler has no interest in Ish-bosheth's rival kingdom at Mahanaim — that episode is simply omitted, and the transfer to David is presented as immediate and divinely ordained.
7. The phrase kol ish Yisra'el asher ba-emeq ('every Israelite man who was in the valley') specifies the Jezreel Valley population — those closest to the battlefield. The chain of verbs accelerates the collapse: they saw (ra'u), they abandoned (azvu), they fled (nasu). The Philistines then simply moved into the vacuum: vayyavo'u vayyeshvu vahem ('they came and settled in them'). The verb yashav ('to dwell, settle') indicates permanent occupation, not a raiding party.
8. The verb pasher ('to strip') refers to the standard battlefield practice of looting armor, weapons, and valuables from the dead. The phrase noplīm behar Gilboa ('fallen on Mount Gilboa') uses the participle of naphal — the same root that described Saul's falling on his sword. Even in death, the verb clings to him.
9. The Chronicler's account diverges from 1 Samuel 31:9 in specifying that the news was brought to their 'idols' (atsabbeihem) first, then the people. The word atsav ('idol, image') from a root meaning 'to shape, to fashion' carries a note of contempt — these are shaped objects, not living gods. The word levasser ('to bring news, to announce victory') is the same root as besorah ('good news') — the Philistines are evangelizing their gods with Israel's defeat.
10. The word gulgolto ('his skull') rather than rosho ('his head') is the Chronicler's choice — the term is more anatomical, more graphic. It is the same root behind the place name Golgotha. The division of trophies between two temples suggests the Philistine victory celebration was a multi-city religious event. Dagon, the grain or fish deity of the Philistines, appears in the Hebrew Bible primarily in contexts of humiliation — his temple at Gaza was destroyed by Samson (Judges 16:23-30), and his idol fell before the Ark (1 Samuel 5:1-5).
11. The people of Jabesh-gilead (Yavesh Gil'ad) respond to the news of Saul's desecration. Their loyalty runs back to 1 Samuel 11, when Saul rescued them from Nahash the Ammonite in his first act as king. The verb sham'u ('they heard') triggers immediate action in verse 12 — hearing produces obligation. The Chronicler preserves this detail because it demonstrates that even in Saul's disgrace, covenant loyalty persisted among those who remembered his kindness.
12. The Chronicler omits the burning of the bodies mentioned in 1 Samuel 31:12, skipping directly to the burial of bones. This may reflect the Chronicler's discomfort with cremation, which was not standard Israelite practice, or simply an abbreviation. The phrase tachat ha-elah ('under the great tree') replaces 1 Samuel 31:13's tachat ha-eshel ('under the tamarisk tree') — elah typically refers to a terebinth or oak, while eshel is a tamarisk. The seven-day fast (vayyatsumu shiv'at yamim) is the standard mourning period, reflecting the depth of Jabesh-gilead's grief and obligation.
13. The noun ma'al ('unfaithfulness, sacrilege, breach of trust') from the root m-'l is a key term in Chronicles, appearing repeatedly to explain catastrophic reversals. It describes not casual sin but deliberate covenant violation — acting treacherously against a relationship of trust. The phrase al devar YHWH asher lo shamār ('concerning the word of the LORD which he did not keep') is deliberately vague about which specific word — the Chronicler expects the reader to know the Samuel narrative. The ov ('medium, familiar spirit') is the necromantic practitioner banned in Leviticus 19:31 and 20:6.
14. The phrase velo darash ba-YHWH ('and he did not seek the LORD') uses the verb darash ('to seek, to inquire, to consult'), the same verb used for consulting the medium. The contrast is pointed: Saul sought (darash) an ov but did not seek (darash) the LORD. The verb vaymītehu ('he put him to death') makes God the direct agent of Saul's death — not the Philistines, not Saul's own hand. The Chronicler's theology of divine causation overrides the proximate causes. The verb vayyasev ('he turned over') is the same root as the noun tesuvah ('turning, repentance') — the kingdom's turning is a divine act, not a political accident.

11

Summary: All the tribes of Israel gather to David at Hebron and declare their allegiance, citing their shared kinship and David's proven military leadership under Saul. They anoint David king over Israel in fulfillment of the LORD's word through Samuel. David and all Israel march on Jerusalem — then called Jebus — and capture it, despite the Jebusites' defiance. Joab son of Zeruiah leads the assault and is rewarded with the position of army commander. David establishes himself in the fortress, which becomes the City of David, and the LORD of Armies is with him. The chapter then catalogs David's mighty warriors: Jashobeam the Hachmonite, chief of the Three, who killed three hundred men in a single engagement; Eleazar son of Dodo the Ahohite, who stood his ground against the Philistines when the rest of Israel retreated; and the unnamed exploit at the barley field. Three warriors break through the Philistine garrison at Bethlehem to bring David water from the well by the gate, but David refuses to drink it and pours it out as an offering to the LORD. Abishai and Benaiah are honored for their exploits, and the chapter closes with an extended roster of David's elite warriors — the Thirty and beyond.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's version of David's rise omits everything between Saul's death and David's anointing at Hebron. There is no Ish-bosheth, no civil war, no Abner negotiations, no seven-year reign in Hebron over Judah alone. David moves directly from Saul's death to national kingship — a theological compression that presents David's reign as immediately and universally recognized. The capture of Jerusalem is likewise compressed: in 2 Samuel 5, the city's capture comes after David has already reigned in Hebron for years, but the Chronicler places it immediately after the anointing, making Jerusalem David's first act as king of all Israel. The water-from-Bethlehem episode (vv 15-19) is one of the most remarkable passages in the Hebrew Bible for what it reveals about David's character and his theology of sacrifice — he refuses to profit from men's willingness to risk their lives for him, treating their courage as something too sacred to consume.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 11 presents the roster heading differently from 2 Samuel 23:8. The Chronicler calls David's chief warrior 'Jashobeam son of a Hachmonite' (Yashovam ben Chachmoni), while 2 Samuel 23:8 reads 'Josheb-basshebeth a Tachkemonite' (Yoshev Bashevet Tachkemoni) — the names appear corrupted in transmission, and reconstructing the original is difficult. The number of men killed also differs: 300 here versus 800 in 2 Samuel 23:8. The third member of the Three is problematic: in 2 Samuel 23:11-12, Shammah son of Agee the Hararite defends a lentil field alone, but 1 Chronicles 11 omits this individual exploit and merges it into a collective action at a barley field (v13-14). The relationship between 'the Three' and 'the Thirty' is complicated by variant numbers and overlapping names across the Samuel and Chronicles lists.*

Connections: *The anointing at Hebron parallels 2 Samuel 5:1-3 and fulfills the prophecy of 1 Samuel 16:1-13 (David's anointing by Samuel). The capture of Jerusalem parallels 2 Samuel 5:6-10. The mighty warriors catalog parallels 2 Samuel 23:8-39 but appears here in a different narrative context — in Samuel it comes near the end of David's life as a retrospective, while in Chronicles it appears at the beginning as a credential list. The water-pouring episode connects to the theology of sacrifice that will pervade the Temple preparations: David treats human devotion as belonging to God, not to the king. Joab's capture of Jerusalem parallels his later role throughout Chronicles as David's sometimes-problematic military chief.*

¹All Israel assembled before David at Hebron and said, "We are your own bone and flesh." ²Even before — even when Saul was king — you were the one leading Israel out and bringing them back. And the LORD your God said to you, 'You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will be leader over my people Israel.' ³All the elders of Israel came to the king at Hebron, and David cut a covenant with them at Hebron before the LORD. They anointed David king over Israel, in keeping with the word of the LORD spoken through Samuel. ⁴David and all Israel marched on Jerusalem — that is, Jebus — where the Jebusites, the inhabitants of the land, were living. ⁵The inhabitants of Jebus said to David, "You will never enter here." But David captured the fortress of Zion — that is, the City of David. ⁶David said, "Whoever strikes the Jebusites first will become chief and commander." Joab son of Zeruiah went up first and became chief. ⁷David took up residence in the fortress — that is why they called it the City of David. ⁸He built up the city on all sides, from the Millo all the way around, and Joab restored the rest of the city. ⁹David grew greater and greater, for the LORD of Armies was with him. ¹⁰These are the chiefs of David's mighty warriors, who supported him powerfully in his kingship — together with all Israel — to make him king, in keeping with the word of the LORD concerning Israel. ¹¹This is the roster of David's mighty warriors: Jashobeam son of a Hachmonite, chief of the Three. He raised his spear against three hundred men and killed them in a single engagement. ¹²After him came Eleazar son of Dodo the Ahohite, one of the Three mighty warriors. ¹³He was with David at Pas-dammim when the Philistines assembled there for battle. There was a plot of ground full of barley, and the troops had fled before the Philistines. ¹⁴They took their stand in the middle of the plot, defended it, and struck down the Philistines. The LORD delivered a great victory. ¹⁵Three of the Thirty chiefs went down to the rock, to David, at the cave of Adullam, while the Philistine army was encamped in the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁶David was in the stronghold at that time, and a Philistine garrison was stationed at Bethlehem. ¹⁷David was overcome with longing and said, "If only someone could bring me water from the well of Bethlehem — the one by the gate!" ¹⁸The three broke through the Philistine camp, drew water from the well of Bethlehem by the gate, carried it back, and brought it to David. But David refused to drink it. He poured it out as a libation to the LORD ¹⁹and said, "God forbid that I should do this! Should I drink the blood of these men who went at the risk of their

lives? For they brought it at the cost of their own lives." He refused to drink it. Such were the deeds of the three mighty warriors. ²⁰Abishai, the brother of Joab, was chief of another three. He raised his spear against three hundred men and killed them, earning a reputation among the Three. ²¹Of the second three, he was the most honored — he became their commander — but he did not reach the rank of the original Three. ²²Benaiah son of Jehoiada, a valiant man from Kabzeel who had done great deeds — he struck down two champions of Moab. ²³He also struck down an Egyptian, a man of enormous stature — five cubits tall — who held a spear like a weaver's beam. Benaiah went down against him with a staff, tore the spear from the Egyptian's hand, and killed him with his own spear. ²⁴Such were the deeds of Benaiah son of Jehoiada, and he had a reputation among the three mighty warriors. ²⁵He was more honored than the Thirty, but he did not attain the rank of the Three. David placed him over his personal guard. ²⁶The mighty warriors of the ranks: Asahel the brother of Joab; Elhanan son of Dodo, from Bethlehem; ²⁷Shammoth the Harorite; Helez the Pelonite; — as recorded in the genealogies. ²⁸Ira son of Ikkesh, from Tekoa; Abiezer from Anathoth; ²⁹Sibbecai the Hushathite; Ilai the Ahohite; — as recorded in the genealogies. ³⁰Maharai from Netophah; Heled son of Baanah, from Netophah; ³¹Ithai son of Ribai, from Gibeath of Benjamin; Benaiah from Pirathon; ³²Hurai from the wadis of Gaash; Abiel the Arbathite; ³³Azmaveth from Bahurim; Eliahba from Shaalbon; ³⁴These were the sons of Hashem the Gizonite; Jonathan son of Shageh the Hararite; ³⁵Ahiam son of Sacar the Hararite; Eliphaz son of Ur; ³⁶Hepher the Mecherathite; Ahijah the Pelonite; — as recorded in the genealogies. ³⁷Hezro the Carmelite; Naarai son of Ezbai; ³⁸Joel the brother of Nathan; Mibhar son of Hagri; ³⁹Zelek the Ammonite; Naharai the Berothite, armor-bearer of Joab son of Zeruiah; ⁴⁰Ira the Ithrite; Gareb the Ithrite; — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁴¹Uriah the Hittite; Zabad son of Ahlai; ⁴²Adina son of Shiza the Reubenite, a chief of the Reubenites, with thirty men under him; ⁴³Hanan son of Maacah; Joshaphat the Mithnite; ⁴⁴Uzzia the Ashterathite; Shama, and Jehiel, sons of Hotham the Aroerite; ⁴⁵Jediael son of Shimri, and his brother Joha the Tizite; ⁴⁶Eliel the Mahavite; Jeribai and Joshaviah, sons of Elnaam; Ithmah the Moabite; ⁴⁷Eliel, Obed,, and Jaasiel the Mezobaite.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase kol Yisra'el ('all Israel') is the Chronicler's signature expression — it appears more frequently in Chronicles than in any other biblical book, reflecting the Chronicler's vision of a united people under a single king. The kinship formula *atsmekha uvsarekha* ('your bone and your flesh') is a covenant declaration of solidarity, the same language used in Genesis 29:14 and Judges 9:2. Hebron was David's capital during his seven-year reign over Judah (2 Samuel 2:11), but the Chronicler compresses this — for him, Hebron is simply the gathering point where all Israel comes to David.
2. The idiom *gam temol gam shilshom* ('both yesterday and the day before') means 'in times past, previously.' The military formula *ha-motsi vecha-mevi* ('the one leading out and bringing in') describes the commander who leads troops into battle and brings them home. The verb *tir'eh* ('you will shepherd') from *ra'ah* ('to shepherd, to tend') reframes kingship as pastoral care — the king is not a tyrant but a shepherd. The title *nagid* ('ruler, designated leader, prince') is the term Samuel used when anointing both Saul (1 Samuel 9:16) and David (1 Samuel 13:14) — it carries the sense of a leader appointed by God rather than elected by the people.
3. The phrase *berit bifnei YHWH* ('covenant before the LORD') makes this a tripartite agreement: David, the elders, and God. The covenant establishes mutual obligations — the king will shepherd, the people will follow, and God will hold both accountable. The anointing (*mashach*) is David's third: Samuel anointed him privately (1 Samuel 16:13), Judah anointed him at Hebron (2 Samuel 2:4), and now all Israel anoints him. The Chronicler counts only this third, national anointing.
4. The identification *Yerushalayim hi Yevus* ('Jerusalem, that is Jebus') supplies the older name for readers who might not know the city's pre-Israelite identity. The Jebusites (*Yevusi*) were a Canaanite people listed among the nations to be dispossessed (Exodus 3:8, Deuteronomy 7:1). The phrase *yoshvei ha-arets* ('inhabitants of the land') marks them as the current occupants, about to be displaced. The Chronicler's 'David and all Israel' makes the capture a national project, not David's private military operation.
5. The Jebusite taunt *lo tavo hannah* ('you will not come in here') expresses confidence in their fortifications. The Chronicler omits the 2 Samuel 5:6 reference to 'the blind and the lame,' which may have been a proverbial boast about the city's impregnability. The phrase *metsudat Tsiyyon* ('the fortress of Zion') is the first occurrence of the name Zion in Chronicles. The identification *hi Ir David* ('that is, the City of David') establishes the name that will define Jerusalem's political and theological identity.
6. This verse has no parallel in 2 Samuel 5 and is the Chronicler's unique contribution, explaining how Joab obtained his position. The phrase *le-rosh ule-sar* ('as chief and commander') establishes dual military authority. The Chronicler needs to explain Joab's prominence because he will play a major role throughout the narrative. The verb *ya'al* ('he went up') may refer to scaling the walls or entering through the water shaft mentioned in 2 Samuel 5:8 (*tsinnor*), though the Chronicler omits that detail.

7. The metsad ('fortress, stronghold') is the captured Jebusite citadel, now David's residence. The naming etiology — 'that is why they called it the City of David' — anchors the name to the act of royal occupation. For the Chronicler, Jerusalem's identity is inseparable from David's presence. The city has a new name because it has a new master.
8. The Millo (from male, 'to fill') was likely a filled-in terrace system supporting buildings on the steep slopes of the City of David. The phrase missaviv ('all around, on all sides') indicates comprehensive construction. The verb yechayeh ('he restored to life, he revived') from chayah ('to live') is a striking choice for construction work — Joab 'brought the city back to life,' suggesting the Jebusite infrastructure had fallen into disrepair or was damaged in the assault.
9. The infinitive absolute construction halokh vegadol ('going and becoming great') describes continuous, escalating growth — David's power did not plateau but kept expanding. The causal clause va-YHWH Tseva'ot immo ('and the LORD of Armies was with him') provides the theological explanation: David's greatness was not self-generated but divinely sustained. The title YHWH Tseva'ot ('LORD of Armies') frames David's military success as an extension of God's own warfare.
10. The Chronicler frames the warrior roster differently from 2 Samuel 23:8. There, it appears as a retrospective near the end of David's life. Here, it is placed at the beginning — these warriors are presented as the human instruments of a divine word. The phrase hamitchazzeqim immo ('who strengthened themselves with him') uses the Hithpael of chazaq ('to be strong'), suggesting mutual reinforcement — they made themselves strong alongside David. The closing phrase kidvar YHWH al Yisra'el ('according to the word of the LORD concerning Israel') frames the entire warrior list as the fulfillment of divine purpose.
11. Jashobeam (Yashovam, 'the people will return') is identified as ben Chachmoni ('son of a Hachmonite'), a clan name. The parallel in 2 Samuel 23:8 reads 'Josheb-basshebeth a Tachkemonite' — the discrepancy likely reflects textual corruption. The number 300 also differs from the 800 in the Samuel parallel. The phrase be-pa'am echad ('in a single time/engagement') emphasizes the concentrated nature of the feat. The word rosh hasheloshim can mean 'chief of the Thirty' or, with a slight emendation, 'chief of the Three' (ha-sheloshah) — the context supports 'the Three,' an inner circle of elite warriors.
12. Eleazar (El'azar, 'God has helped') son of Dodo (or Dodai) the Ahohite (ha-Achochi) belongs to the innermost circle of warriors. The Ahohite designation connects him to the clan of Ahoah, a descendant of Benjamin (1 Chronicles 8:4). The phrase bisheloshah ha-gibborim ('among the three mighty warriors') confirms the existence of an elite tier above the Thirty.
13. Pas-dammim (Pas Dammim, 'boundary of blood') is identified with Ephes-dammim (1 Samuel 17:1), near the Valley of Elah where David fought Goliath. The detail about the barley field (se'orim) differs from the lentil field (adashim) in 2 Samuel 23:11. The flight of the troops (ha-am nasu) sets up the heroic stand: when everyone else ran, these warriors held their ground.
14. The verb vayyityatsevu ('they stationed themselves') from yatsav ('to take a stand, to position oneself') describes a deliberate, defiant refusal to retreat. The verb vayyatssiluha ('they rescued it') from natsal ('to deliver, to snatch away') applies rescue language to a barley field — the warriors treated a piece of farmland as worth defending with their lives. The theological summary vayyosha YHWH teshu'ah gedolah ('the LORD saved with a great salvation') attributes the victory to God, not to the warriors' prowess.
15. The cave of Adullam (me'arat Adullam) was David's hiding place during his fugitive years (1 Samuel 22:1). The Valley of Rephaim (Emeq Repha'im), southwest of Jerusalem, was a frequent Philistine staging ground (2 Samuel 5:18, 22). The phrase sheloshah min ha-sheloshim rosh ('three of the thirty chiefs') identifies these as senior officers within the elite corps, not necessarily the same as 'the Three' described in verses 11-14.
16. The metsudah ('stronghold') is the fortified position at Adullam. The netsiv ('garrison, outpost') indicates Philistine military occupation of Bethlehem — David's hometown (1 Samuel 16:1) is in enemy hands. The juxtaposition of David in a cave and the Philistines in his hometown creates the emotional backdrop for his longing in the next verse.
17. The verb vayyit'avveh ('he craved, he longed') from avah ('to desire, to wish') expresses deep, visceral longing — not thirst for water but homesickness crystallized into a single sensory memory. The well by the gate (bor Beit Lechem asher ba-sha'ar) was the public well at the city entrance, a place David would have known from childhood. The request is not a command but a sigh — spoken aloud without expectation that anyone would act on it.
18. The verb baqa ('to split open, to breach') is used for splitting the Red Sea (Exodus 14:16) and splitting rocks for water (Psalm 78:15) — the warriors' breakthrough through the Philistine camp echoes divine acts of deliverance. David's refusal (lo avah, 'he was not willing') is the same phrase used for the armor-bearer's refusal to kill Saul (10:4) — in both cases, the person recognizes that something is too sacred to act upon. The libation (nesekh) was normally wine poured on the altar (Exodus 29:40, Numbers 28:7); David substitutes water sanctified by human courage.
19. The exclamation chalilah li me-Elohai ('far be it from me, from my God') invokes God as the reason for refusal — this is not personal scruple but theological conviction. David's equation of the water with blood (ha-dam ha-anashim ha-elleh) echoes the Levitical prohibition against consuming blood (Leviticus 17:10-14), which represents life (nefesh). The phrase be-nafshosam hevi'um ('at the cost of their lives they brought it') uses nefesh ('life, soul, self') — the water is saturated with the men's willingness to die. David's logic is precise: to drink this water would be to consume what rightfully belongs to God — human devotion unto death.
20. Abishai (Avshai, 'my father is a gift') was Joab's brother, both sons of Zeruiah, David's sister. The phrase rosh ha-sheloshah ('chief of the three') may refer to a second tier of three warriors below the premier Three, or it may be a textual variant. His exploit mirrors Jashobeam's in verse 11 — three hundred killed — suggesting a standard measure of heroic achievement. The phrase velo shem ba-sheloshah ('and he had a name among the three') means he achieved renown comparable to the elite group.

21. The phrase *ba-shnayim nikhbad* ('more honored than the two') places Abishai above the other members of his trio. The qualifier *ve-ad ha-sheloshah lo va* ('but he did not attain to the Three') establishes a clear hierarchy: Abishai was elite among the elite, but the premier Three held a rank he could not reach. The verb *nikhbad* ('was honored') from *kavad* ('to be heavy, to be honored') connects reputation to substance — honor in the ancient world was weighty, not superficial.
22. Benaiah (Benayahu, 'the LORD has built') son of Jehoiada (Yehoyada, 'the LORD knows') came from Kabzeel (Qavtse'el), a town in the Negev of Judah (Joshua 15:21). The phrase *rav pe'alim* ('of many deeds, great in exploits') summarizes his reputation. The term *ari'el* is debated: it could mean 'lion of God' (*ari* + *El*), referring to champion warriors, or it could be a proper name or title. The Moabite context suggests these were renowned Moabite fighters, not literal lions.
23. The Egyptian stands five cubits tall — approximately seven and a half feet (2.3 meters), a giant by ancient standards. His spear *kinnor orgim* ('like a weaver's beam') uses the same comparison applied to Goliath's spear in 1 Samuel 17:7, connecting Benaiah's exploit to David's. The detail that Benaiah went down with a *shevet* ('staff, rod') — an ordinary stick — against a giant with a massive spear emphasizes the asymmetry. The verb *gazel* ('he tore away, he seized by force') describes a violent disarming, and the final irony — killing the man with his own weapon — mirrors David's killing of Goliath with the giant's own sword.
24. The formula *elleh asah* ('these things he did') parallels the conclusion to the water episode in verse 19 (*elleh asu*), creating structural symmetry. The phrase *velo shem bisheloshah ha-gibborim* ('he had a name among the three mighty warriors') positions Benaiah alongside Abishai — honored, renowned, but belonging to the second tier of elite warriors.
25. The same hierarchical formula from verse 21 recurs: honored above the Thirty, below the Three. David's appointment of Benaiah *al mishma'to* ('over his bodyguard/personal guard') from *shama* ('to hear, to obey') indicates a role of close personal protection — the *mishma't* was the royal bodyguard unit. This appointment will continue into Solomon's reign, where Benaiah replaces Joab as army commander (1 Kings 2:35).
26. The list now transitions from the elite inner circle to the broader roster of *gibborei ha-chayalim* ('mighty warriors of the forces'). Asahel (Asa'el, 'God has made') was Joab's brother, famous for his speed (2 Samuel 2:18), killed by Abner. Elhanan (Elchanan, 'God has been gracious') from Bethlehem appears in a separate tradition regarding the killing of Goliath's brother (2 Samuel 21:19, 1 Chronicles 20:5).
27. Shammoth (Shammot) the Harorite corresponds to Shammah the Harodite in 2 Samuel 23:25 — the name variants reflect textual transmission differences. Helez the Pelonite is called Helez the Paltite in 2 Samuel 23:26, connecting him to the town of Beth-pelet in the Negev.
28. Ira from Tekoa (Teqoa), a town south of Bethlehem, later home of the prophet Amos. Abiezer from Anathoth (Anatot), a Levitical city in Benjamin, later the hometown of Jeremiah (Jeremiah 1:1). Both towns supplied warriors to David's elite force, indicating broad geographical support across Judah and Benjamin.
29. Sibbecai (Sibbekhai) the Hushathite later killed the Philistine giant Sippai (1 Chronicles 20:4). Ilai the Ahohite is called Zalmon the Ahohite in 2 Samuel 23:28 — another transmission variant.
30. Both men come from Netophah (Netofah), a village near Bethlehem. The concentration of warriors from the Bethlehem region reflects David's deep local roots and the loyalty of his home territory.
31. Ithai from Gibeah of Benjamin is significant — Gibeah was Saul's hometown (1 Samuel 10:26). That a Benjaminite from Saul's own town served among David's elite demonstrates that David's support crossed tribal lines. This Benaiah from Pirathon is not the same as Benaiah son of Jehoiada in verses 22-25.
32. The 'wadis of Gaash' (*nachalei Ga'ash*) were near Mount Gaash in the hill country of Ephraim, where Joshua was buried (Joshua 24:30). Abiel the Arbathite may come from Beth-arabah in the Jordan Valley.
33. Azmaveth (Azmavet, 'death is strong') from Bahurim, a Benjaminite town east of Jerusalem on the road to the Jordan, associated with Shimei who cursed David (2 Samuel 16:5). Eliahba from Shaalbon (Sha'alvon), a town in Dan.
34. Hashem the Gizonite has no clear parallel in 2 Samuel 23 — the name may be corrupted. Jonathan son of Shageh (Shage) the Hararite corresponds to Jonathan son of Shammah the Hararite in 2 Samuel 23:32-33.
35. Ahiam (Achi'am, 'my brother's people') son of Sacar (Sakhar) — the Samuel parallel has 'Sharar.' Eliphal (Elifal, 'my God has judged') son of Ur has no clear parallel in the Samuel list, suggesting the Chronicles list preserves some independent traditions.
36. Hopher the Mecherathite has no clear parallel in 2 Samuel 23. Ahijah (Achiyyah, 'brother of the LORD') the Pelonite — the gentilic 'Pelonite' may derive from a place name no longer identifiable.
37. Hezro (Chetsro) from Carmel, a town in the southern hill country of Judah — the same Carmel associated with Nabal and Abigail (1 Samuel 25:2). Naarai son of Ezbai corresponds to Paarai the Arbite in 2 Samuel 23:35.
38. Joel (Yo'el, 'the LORD is God') brother of Nathan — possibly the prophet Nathan or another figure. Mibhar (Mivchar, 'chosen') son of Hagri — the Hagrite connection suggests ties to the Transjordanian pastoralist people who appear in 1 Chronicles 5:10.
39. Zelek the Ammonite is significant — an Ammonite serving in David's elite forces demonstrates the international character of David's military. Naharai from Beeroth (Be'erot), a Gibeonite city in Benjamin (Joshua 9:17), served as Joab's personal armor-bearer — a position of great trust and proximity.

40. Both men are Ithrites (Yitri), a clan associated with Kiriath-jearim (1 Chronicles 2:53). The pairing of two warriors from the same clan suggests they may have served together as a unit.
41. Uriah the Hittite (Uriyyah ha-Chitti) appears in the list without any hint of the tragedy that will unfold in 2 Samuel 11 — David's adultery with Bathsheba and the arranged murder of Uriah. The Chronicler famously omits the Bathsheba affair entirely, but Uriah's inclusion here is a silent marker. The original audience would have recognized the name. Zabad son of Ahlai has no parallel in the Samuel list.
42. From this point the Chronicles list extends beyond the 2 Samuel 23 roster. Adina from the tribe of Reuben had thirty men under his command, indicating he was not just a warrior but a unit commander. The inclusion of Transjordanian tribes (Reuben, Gad) in this list reinforces the Chronicler's 'all Israel' theme.
43. Hanan son of Maacah (Ma'akhah) may be connected to the Aramean territory of Maacah east of the Sea of Galilee. Joshaphat the Mithnite comes from an unidentified location.
44. Uzzia from Ashteroth (Ashterot), a city in Bashan associated with the worship of Ashteroth but here simply a geographical marker. Shama and Jehiel are brothers from Aroer, either the Reubenite city on the Arnon (Deuteronomy 2:36) or a Gadite settlement.
45. Jediahel (Yedi'a'el, 'known by God') and Joha are brothers from an unidentified location called Tiz. Their paired inclusion, like other brother pairs in the list, may reflect a practice of enlisting kinsmen together.
46. Eliel the Mahavite is from an unidentified clan or location. Jeribai and Joshaviah are another brother pair. Ithmah the Moabite (ha-Mo'avi) joins Zelek the Ammonite (v39) as another foreign warrior in David's service — David's grandmother Ruth was also a Moabite (Ruth 4:13-17), making this connection resonant.
47. The list ends without ceremony — three more names, the last identified as 'the Mezobaite' (ha-Metsovayah), from an unknown location. The abrupt ending is typical of ancient roster lists. The Chronicler's warrior catalog, extending beyond the Samuel source, demonstrates his concern to show that David's support was broader, more diverse, and more thoroughly pan-Israelite than any single tribal allegiance.

12

Summary: *This chapter catalogs the warriors who came to David during three distinct phases: while he was a fugitive at Ziklag, fleeing from Saul; Gadites who crossed the Jordan in flood season to join him in the wilderness stronghold; and the massive tribal army that assembled at Hebron to turn Saul's kingdom over to David. Benjaminite archers and slingers — Saul's own tribesmen — defect to David first. Gadite warriors of extraordinary ferocity cross the flooded Jordan and join him. Judahites and Benjaminites come to the stronghold, and David questions their loyalty until the Spirit clothes Amasai, who declares allegiance in a spontaneous oracle. Manassites defect to David during the Philistine crisis at Ziklag. The chapter culminates in a tribal census of the army at Hebron: armed contingents from every tribe, from Judah and Simeon in the south to Naphtali and Dan in the north, converging on David with a single purpose. The assembly feasts for three days, supplied by neighboring tribes, because there was joy in Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter has no parallel in Samuel and is entirely the Chronicler's composition. It serves as the Chronicler's answer to a question the Samuel narrative never fully addresses: how did David go from fugitive to king of all Israel? The Chronicler's answer is a theology of convergence — warriors from every tribe, including Saul's own Benjamin, were drawn to David by divine compulsion. The description of the Gadite warriors (vv 8-15) is some of the most vivid military poetry in the Hebrew Bible: faces like lions, swift as gazelles on the mountains, the least equal to a hundred and the greatest to a thousand. The phrase *lev echad* ('one heart' or 'singleness of purpose') in verse 39 captures the Chronicler's ideal: Israel united around its divinely chosen king, celebrating together in a feast that foreshadows the Temple festivals. The Spirit-inspired oracle of Amasai (v18) is the Chronicler's literary device for declaring David's cause as God's cause — when the Spirit speaks through Amasai, it transforms a political defection into a prophetic event.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from English Bibles. Hebrew verse 1 corresponds to English 12:1, but the Hebrew text of chapter 12 begins with what English Bibles number as 12:1. The numbers in the tribal census (vv 24-38) are extraordinarily large — Judah sends 6,800, Simeon 7,100, Levi 4,600 plus Jehoiada with 3,700 and Zadok with 22 officers, Benjamin 3,000, Ephraim 20,800, half-Manasseh 18,000, Issachar 200 chiefs with all their kinsmen, Zebulun 50,000, Naphtali 1,000 officers with 37,000, Dan 28,600, Asher 40,000, and the Transjordanian tribes 120,000. These numbers*

total over 340,000 and are likely idealized or include broader tribal populations rather than literal army counts. The phrase yod'ei vinah la-ittim ('who understood the times') applied to Issachar (v33) has generated much discussion — does it mean political savvy, calendrical expertise, or prophetic discernment?

Connections: The Spirit clothing Amasai (v18) uses the verb lavshah, the same verb used when the Spirit 'clothed' Gideon (Judges 6:34) — the language presents the Spirit as a garment that envelops and empowers. The tribal convergence at Hebron anticipates the later national assemblies in Chronicles: the assembly for the Ark's transfer (1 Chronicles 13, 15-16), Solomon's coronation (1 Chronicles 29), and the Temple dedication (2 Chronicles 5-7). The feast at Hebron (vv 39-41) foreshadows the communal meals that will characterize worship at the Temple — eating and drinking in the presence of God as an expression of national unity. The defection of Benjaminites to David anticipates the complex Benjamin-David relationship that runs through Chronicles, where Saul's tribe must repeatedly choose between tribal loyalty and divine appointment.

¹These are the men who came to David at Ziklag while he was still restricted — a fugitive from Saul son of Kish. They were among the mighty warriors, allies in battle. ²They were armed with bows and could use both right and left hands to sling stones and shoot arrows from the bow — from among Saul's own kinsmen in Benjamin. ³Their chief was Ahiezer, then Joash — sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite; Jeziel and Pelet, sons of Azmaveth; Beracah; Jehu from Anathoth; ⁴Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty warrior among the Thirty and a leader over the Thirty; Jeremiah, Jahaziel, Johanan, and Jozabad the Gederathite; ⁵Eluzai, Jerimoth, Bealiah, Shemariah, and Shephatiah the Haruphite; ⁶Elkanah, Isshiah, Azarel, Joezer, and Jashobeam — the Korahites; ⁷Joelah and Zebadiah, sons of Jeroham, from Gedor. ⁸From the Gadites, warriors separated themselves to join David at the wilderness stronghold — mighty fighting men, trained for battle, skilled with shield and spear. Their faces were like the faces of lions, and they were swift as gazelles on the mountains. ⁹Ezer was the chief; Obadiah the second; Eliab the third; ¹⁰Mishmannah the fourth; Jeremiah the fifth; — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹¹Attai the sixth; Eliel the seventh; — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹²Johanan the eighth; Elzabad the ninth; — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹³Jeremiah the tenth; Machbannai the eleventh — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁴These Gadites were officers of the army. The least of them was a match for a hundred men, and the greatest for a thousand. ¹⁵These are the ones who crossed the Jordan in the first month, when it was overflowing all its banks, and they put to flight everyone in the lowlands, both east and west. ¹⁶Some from Benjamin and Judah also came to David at the stronghold. ¹⁷David went out to meet them and said, "If you have come to me in peace, to help me, my heart will be joined to yours. But if you have come to betray me to my enemies — when there is no violence on my hands — may the God of our fathers see it and pass judgment." ¹⁸Then the Spirit clothed Amasai, chief of the officers: "We are yours, David! We are with you, son of Jesse! Peace, peace to you, and peace to those who help you — for your God helps you." David accepted them and made them leaders of his raiding forces. ¹⁹Some from Manasseh defected to David when he marched with the Philistines against Saul for battle — though in the end they did not fight, because the Philistine lords sent David away after deliberation, saying, "He will defect to his master Saul at the cost of our heads." ²⁰When David went to Ziklag, these Manassites defected to him: Adnah, Jozabad, Jedaiel, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zilthai — commanders of thousands in Manasseh. ²¹They helped David against raiding bands, for all of them were mighty warriors, and they became officers in the army. ²²Day by day men came to David to help him, until the camp grew into a vast army — like the army of God. ²³These are the counts of the armed divisions that came to David at Hebron to transfer Saul's kingdom to him, in keeping with the word of the LORD. ²⁴From Judah, bearing shield and spear: 6,800, armed for battle. ²⁵From Simeon, mighty warriors for the army: 7,100. ²⁶From Levi: 4,600. ²⁷Jehoiada, the leader of the Aaronite line, with 3,700 men; ²⁸and Zadok, a young man of exceptional ability, with twenty-two officers from his father's house. ²⁹From Benjamin, Saul's own kinsmen: 3,000 — though until then the majority of them had remained loyal to the house of Saul. ³⁰From Ephraim: 20,800 mighty warriors, men of renown within their ancestral houses. ³¹From the half-tribe of Manasseh: 18,000 who were designated by name to come and make David king. ³²From Issachar, men who understood the times and knew what Israel should do: 200 chiefs, with all their kinsmen under their command. ³³From Zebulun, men who could march to war, battle-ready with every kind of weapon: 50,000, maintaining formation with undivided loyalty. ³⁴From Naphtali: 1,000 officers, with 37,000 men bearing shield and spear. ³⁵From Dan, battle-ready

troops: 28,600. ³⁶From Asher, men marching out for battle, ready for war: 40,000. ³⁷From beyond the Jordan — Reubenites, Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh — fully equipped with every weapon of war: 120,000. ³⁸All these fighting men, maintaining battle formation, came to Hebron with a whole heart to make David king over all Israel. And all the rest of Israel was of one heart to make David king. ³⁹They stayed with David for three days, eating and drinking, because their kinsmen had prepared provisions for them. ⁴⁰Their neighbors, as far away as Issachar, Zebulun, and Naphtali, were bringing food on donkeys, camels, mules, and oxen — flour, fig cakes, raisin cakes, wine, oil, cattle, and sheep in abundance — because there was joy in Israel. ⁴¹[Section break — Hebrew paragraph marker (pe)]

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ziklag (Tsiqlag) was the Philistine town given to David by Achish of Gath (1 Samuel 27:6). The phrase *od atsur* ('still confined, restricted') describes David's fugitive status — hemmed in, unable to operate freely. The warriors who came to him there are called *ozrei ha-milchamah* ('helpers of the war'), framing them as reinforcements for a campaign that has not yet officially begun. The Chronicler presents the gathering at Ziklag as the first stage of a divinely orchestrated convergence.
2. The ambidexterity (*mayminim umasimilim*, 'right-handing and left-handing') was a known Benjaminite specialty (Judges 3:15, 20:16). The phrase *me-achei Sha'ul mi-Binyamin* ('from among Saul's brothers from Benjamin') is the chapter's first shock: Saul's own tribesmen, his kinsmen by blood, are defecting to David. The Chronicler emphasizes this because it demonstrates that David's kingship transcended tribal politics — even Benjamin recognized God's choice.
3. Ahiezer (Achi'ezer, 'my brother is help') and Joash are from Gibeah (ha-Giv'ati) — Saul's own capital city (1 Samuel 10:26). The defection of warriors from the king's own hometown to his rival is politically devastating. Azmaveth, Beracah ('blessing'), and Jehu from Anathoth (a Levitical city in Benjamin) round out the first group.
4. Ishmaiah (Yishma'yah, 'the LORD hears') the Gibeonite is distinguished as both a member and a leader of the Thirty — a double honor. His Gibeonite origin connects him to the city that made a covenant with Joshua (Joshua 9). The roster continues to demonstrate geographical breadth: Gederah (Gederatah) was in the Shephelah, the low hills between the coastal plain and the Judean highlands.
5. The name Bealiah (Be'alyah, 'the LORD is master') is theologically interesting — it combines *ba'al* ('lord, master') with *Yah* (short form of YHWH), a name asserting that the true *Ba'al* is the LORD. Shephatiah the Haruphite (Charufi) may come from Hariph, a clan listed in Nehemiah 7:24.
6. The Korahites (ha-Qorchim) were a Levitical clan descended from Korah. Their presence among David's warriors is significant — Levites joining a military cause signals that even the priestly establishment recognized David's legitimacy. The Korahites will later serve as Temple gatekeepers (1 Chronicles 9:19, 26:1).
7. Gedor (Gedor) was a town in the hill country of Judah (Joshua 15:58). The inclusion of men from Judahite territory among a list predominantly featuring Benjaminites shows the cross-tribal nature of support for David.
8. The phrase *la-metsad midbarah* ('to the stronghold in the wilderness') locates the Gadites' arrival during David's fugitive period. The military vocabulary is precise: *tsinnah va-romach* ('large shield and spear') indicates heavy infantry equipment. The Gadites, from the Transjordan, had to cross the Jordan River to reach David — a detail that becomes significant in verse 15, where the crossing happens during flood season.
9. The Gadite warriors are listed in rank order: Ezer (Ezer, 'help') first, Obadiah (Ovadyah, 'servant of the LORD') second, Eliab (Eli'av, 'my God is father') third. The numbered ranking system indicates a formal military hierarchy among the defectors.
10. Mishmannah (Mishmanneh, possibly 'fatness, abundance') and Jeremiah (Yirmeyah, 'the LORD lifts up') continue the ranked list.
11. Attai and Eliel (Eli'el, 'my God is God') hold the sixth and seventh positions in the Gadite officer corps.
12. Johanan (Yochanan, 'the LORD is gracious') and Elzabad (Elzavad, 'God has given') continue the eleven-member list.
13. A second Jeremiah holds the tenth position — the name was common. Machbannai (Makhbannai) completes the eleven-member Gadite officer list. The number eleven may simply reflect the actual count of officers, or it may represent a near-complete tribal military leadership.
14. The phrase *echad le-me'ah ha-qatan vеха-gadol le-alef* ('one to a hundred the smallest and the greatest to a thousand') is hyperbolic military praise — a single Gadite warrior could match a hundred ordinary soldiers, and the best of them could match a thousand. This echoes the 'one chasing a thousand' language of Deuteronomy 32:30 and Leviticus 26:8, where such disproportionate combat effectiveness is attributed to divine empowerment.
15. The first month (Nisan/Abib, March-April) is the season of Jordan floods, mentioned also in Joshua 3:15 when Israel crossed the Jordan into the Promised Land. The echo is deliberate: these Gadites replicate Israel's original Jordan crossing, but without divine miracle — through sheer courage. The phrase *kol ha-amaqim* ('all the valleys/lowlands') refers to the Jordan Valley population on both banks.
16. The narrative shifts to a different group and a different location — the *metsad* ('stronghold'), likely Adullam or another wilderness fortress. The combination of Benjamin and Judah coming together to David is politically significant: the two tribes that will form the core of the future southern kingdom are already united under David before the monarchy is established.

17. David's speech reveals the fugitive's dilemma: he cannot distinguish friend from spy. The phrase *im le-shalom ba'tem* ('if you have come in peace') uses *shalom* not as a greeting but as a test — are they allies or infiltrators? The phrase *levav leyachad* ('a heart for unity') from *yachad* describes merging, bonding, becoming one. The conditional curse — *yereh Elohei avoteinu veyokhach* ('may the God of our fathers see and judge') — invokes the ancestral God as arbitrator. The phrase *belo chamas bekappai* ('without violence on my hands') is David's protestation of innocence, echoing his claims before Saul in 1 Samuel 24 and 26.
18. The identity of Amasai is debated — he may be the same as Amasa who later became Absalom's commander (2 Samuel 17:25) or a different figure. The phrase *rosh ha-shalishim* ('chief of the officers/third-rank commanders') identifies him as a senior military leader. The triple *shalom* creates one of the most memorable oracles in Chronicles — it is simultaneously a pledge of loyalty, a blessing, and a theological declaration.
19. The verb *naflu* ('they fell') from *naphal* when used with *al* ('upon, to') means 'to defect, to go over to.' This refers to the episode in 1 Samuel 29 when the Philistine commanders refused to let David fight alongside them against Israel. The phrase *be-etsah shillechuhu* ('by counsel they sent him away') indicates a formal deliberation among the *sarnei Pelishrim* ('Philistine lords') — the *seranim* were the ruling council of the five Philistine cities. The irony: the Philistines' fear of David's loyalty to Saul was exactly wrong — David's allegiance was to Israel, not to Saul.
20. Seven named officers — *rashei ha-alafim* ('commanders of thousands') — defect from Manasseh. These are not foot soldiers but senior tribal military leaders, each commanding a unit of a thousand men. Their defection represents a massive shift in military power. The double occurrence of the name *Jozabad* (*Yozavad*, 'the LORD has given') indicates two different men with the same name.
21. The phrase *al ha-gedud* ('against the raiding band') may refer to the Amalekite raiders who attacked Ziklag (1 Samuel 30:1). The Manassites' first act after defecting was to fight alongside David in a crisis. The phrase *gibbori chayil kullam* ('mighty warriors, all of them') is a blanket commendation, and their promotion to *sarim ba-tsava* ('officers in the army') shows David integrating defectors into his command structure.
22. The phrase *machaneh gadol* ('great camp') uses the military term *machaneh* ('camp, army encampment'). The comparison *ke-machaneh Elohim* ('like the camp of God') is the highest possible commendation — this is an army that resembles the divine host. The allusion to Genesis 32:2 (*Mahanaim*, 'two camps') connects David's military gathering to the patriarchal tradition of encountering God's army.
23. The phrase *le-hasev malkhut Sha'ul elav* ('to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him') uses the same verb *savav* ('to turn') that appeared in 10:14, where God 'turned' the kingdom to David. Now the tribes enact what God decreed. The phrase *kidvar YHWH* ('according to the word of the LORD') frames the entire assembly as the fulfillment of prophecy, not a political coup.
24. Judah's relatively modest contribution (6,800) compared to other tribes may reflect that Judah was already David's base of power and did not need to send a massive delegation to prove loyalty. The equipment — *tsinnah va-romach* ('large shield and spear') — indicates heavy infantry.
25. Simeon's territory was absorbed into Judah's (Joshua 19:1), so Simeon's separate listing demonstrates the Chronicler's concern to honor each tribe individually. The number 7,100 is slightly larger than Judah's contribution.
26. The Levites' inclusion as a fighting force is unusual — they are typically associated with sanctuary service rather than military operations. Their presence at Hebron signals that the entire sacred infrastructure supports David's kingship.
27. *Jehoiada* (*Yehoyada*, 'the LORD knows') is identified as *ha-nagid le-Aharon* ('the leader of the Aaronites') — the head of the priestly clan. His separate listing from the general Levite count (v26) reflects the distinction between priests (Aaronites) and non-priestly Levites. The 3,700 suggests the Aaronite priestly families brought their own military contingent.
28. *Zadok* (*Tsadoq*, 'righteous') appears here as a *na'ar* ('young man') — a surprising detail, as he will become co-high priest alongside Abiathar and eventually sole high priest under Solomon (1 Kings 2:35). The description *gibbor chayil* ('mighty warrior' or 'man of exceptional ability') applies military language to a priestly figure. His twenty-two officers (*sarim*) represent the Zadokite branch of the priesthood that will dominate the Temple hierarchy.
29. The qualifying clause is remarkable in its honesty: *ad hennah marbitam shomrim mishmeret beit Sha'ul* ('until now the majority of them had been keeping guard over the house of Saul'). Most Benjaminites had stayed loyal to Saul's dynasty. The 3,000 who came to David represent a minority of the tribe — but a decisive one. The phrase *achei Sha'ul* ('kinsmen of Saul') makes the defection personal: these are Saul's own relatives choosing David.
30. Ephraim's large contingent (20,800) reflects the size and military importance of this central tribe. The phrase *anshei shemot le-veit avotam* ('men of names/renown according to their ancestral houses') indicates these were not anonymous recruits but known and respected warriors from established families.
31. The phrase *niqgevu be-shemot* ('designated by name') indicates these men were individually selected and recorded — this was not a spontaneous turnout but a deliberate tribal decision. The explicit purpose — *lavo le-hamlikh et David* ('to come to make David king') — shows that the tribal leaders had already decided David's kingship before arriving at Hebron.
32. The phrase *yod'ei vinah la-ittim* ('understanding the times') has become proverbial. The word *vinah* ('understanding, discernment') from *bin* ('to discern, to distinguish') refers to the ability to make fine distinctions — to separate what is from what seems to be. The phrase *la-da'at mah ya'aseh Yisra'el* ('to know what Israel should do') makes this practical, not theoretical: Issachar's wisdom produced actionable guidance. The 200 chiefs leading 'all their kinsmen' (*kol acheihem al pihem*, literally 'all their brothers at their mouth') indicates authoritative counsel that the whole tribe obeyed.

33. Zebulun's massive contingent of 50,000 is one of the largest in the list. The phrase *la'dor belo lev va-lev* ('to draw up in formation without a double heart') combines military discipline with moral integrity. The idiom *lev va-lev* ('heart and heart,' i.e., a divided heart) describes duplicity — men who say one thing and mean another. Zebulun's warriors are praised as men whose loyalty matches their skill.
34. Naphtali's contribution — 1,000 officers commanding 37,000 troops — represents one of the largest contingents and comes from the far north of Israel. The ratio of officers to troops (roughly 1:37) indicates a well-organized military structure.
35. Dan, in the far north at the headwaters of the Jordan, sends 28,600 warriors. The phrase *orkhei milchamah* ('arrayed for battle, battle-ready') indicates these men arrived equipped and organized, not as a disorganized mob.
36. Asher, on the northwestern coast, contributes 40,000 men — a massive contingent from a tribe not always prominent in military narratives. The Chronicler's point is comprehensive: every tribe, regardless of geography or historical prominence, participated in making David king.
37. The three Transjordanian tribes are grouped together with a combined force of 120,000 — the largest single contribution. The phrase *bekhol kelei tseva milchamah* ('with every instrument of military warfare') indicates full combat readiness. That the Transjordanian tribes, the most geographically remote from Hebron, sent the largest contingent is the Chronicler's final proof of national unanimity.
38. The phrase *belevav shalem* ('with a whole heart, with a complete heart') describes undivided loyalty — no faction, no reservation, no double-mindedness. The even more striking phrase is *lev echad* ('one heart') — the entire nation shared a single collective intention. The Chronicler's ideal of national unity reaches its zenith here: warriors from every tribe, armed and organized, united in purpose, converging on Hebron to crown the LORD's chosen king. This is the Chronicler's political theology in miniature.
39. The three-day feast (*yamim sheloshah okhelim veshotim*) transforms a military assembly into a covenant celebration. The phrase *ki hekhinu lahem acheihem* ('because their brothers had prepared for them') indicates organized hospitality — the surrounding communities fed this massive army. Feasting together was a covenant-sealing act in the ancient Near East; shared meals created bonds of obligation and trust.
40. The supply chain extends from the northern tribes (Issachar, Zebulun, Naphtali) all the way to Hebron in the south — a distance of over 80 miles. The transportation animals (donkeys, camels, mules, oxen) represent every available beast of burden. The provisions list reads like a festival menu: flour for bread, fig cakes and raisin cakes for sweetness and energy, wine and oil for celebration, cattle and sheep for sacrificial meals. The chapter's final clause — *ki simchah be-Yisra'el* ('because there was joy in Israel') — is the Chronicler's summary of the entire event. The nation feasted because it was united, and it was united because God's word was being fulfilled.
41. The Hebrew versification includes this as verse 41, marking a major section break with the open paragraph marker (*pe*, *).* This signals the end of the Hebron assembly narrative and the transition to the next major narrative block: the Ark's transfer in chapter 13. English Bibles typically end chapter 12 at verse 40.

13

Summary: *David consults with his officers and proposes to all Israel that they bring the Ark of God back from Kiriath-jearim, noting that it was neglected during Saul's reign. The assembly agrees. David gathers all Israel from the Shihor of Egypt to the entrance of Hamath — the full extent of the promised land — to bring the Ark from Baalah, that is Kiriath-jearim. They place the Ark on a new cart from the house of Abinadab, with Uzzah and Ahio driving it. David and all Israel celebrate before God with all their strength, with songs and lyres, harps, tambourines, cymbals, and trumpets. But at the threshing floor of Chidon, Uzzah reaches out to steady the Ark when the oxen stumble, and the LORD's anger blazes against him — God strikes him dead for reaching out his hand to the Ark. David is both angry and afraid. He names the place Perez-uzzah and diverts the Ark to the house of Obed-edom the Gittite, where it remains three months and the LORD blesses Obed-edom's household.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the Chronicler's version of 2 Samuel 6:1-11, but with distinctive additions and theological framing. The Chronicler adds David's consultation with his officers (vv 1-4), his speech about neglecting the Ark during Saul's reign, and the geographical scope of the assembly ('from Shihor of Egypt to the entrance of Hamath'). The Chronicler also specifies the cause of Uzzah's death more precisely: 'because he put his hand on the Ark' (v10), whereas 2 Samuel 6:7 uses the obscure hapax legomenon hashal. The message is unmistakable: the right desire (bringing the Ark to Jerusalem) executed the wrong way (on a cart instead of Levitical shoulders) produces catastrophe. David's good theology — recognizing the Ark's neglect — is undermined by bad methodology. The Chronicler will make this explicit in chapter 15, when David says, 'Because you did not carry it the first time, the LORD our God broke out against us, because we did not seek him according to the rule.'*

Translation Friction: *The threshing floor is called Chidon (Kidon) here but Nacon (Nakhon) in 2 Samuel 6:6 — the names differ between accounts and neither location can be confidently identified. The phrase ki shalach yado al ha-aron ('because he put his hand on the Ark') in verse 10 is the Chronicler's clarification of the ambiguous hashal in 2 Samuel 6:7. The Chronicler's version is theologically clearer but may represent an interpretive paraphrase rather than an independent textual tradition. The scope of the assembly — 'from Shihor of Egypt to the entrance of Hamath' — describes the idealized borders of the promised land (Numbers 34:5-8, Joshua 13:3), which David's kingdom never fully controlled. The Chronicler uses idealized geography to present David's assembly as a national event of the highest order.*

Connections: *The Ark's journey connects to 1 Samuel 4-7 (its capture, return, and twenty-year rest at Kiriath-jearim). David's mention that the Ark was neglected during Saul's reign (v3) echoes the Chronicler's theology from 10:13-14: Saul's failure was fundamentally about not seeking God properly. The new cart echoes the Philistine transport of 1 Samuel 6:7 — Israel is imitating pagan methods. Uzzah's death echoes the deaths at Beth-shemesh (1 Samuel 6:19) and Nadab and Abihu (Leviticus 10:1-2): unauthorized contact with holiness is lethal. The Ark's diversion to Obed-edom anticipates its successful transfer in chapter 15, where David corrects the transport method. The phrase 'the LORD broke out' (perets) uses the same language as David's victory at Baal-perazim (14:11), creating a verbal link between God's deadly holiness and God's saving power.*

¹David consulted with the commanders of thousands and of hundreds — with every officer. ²David said to the entire assembly of Israel, "If it seems right to you, and if it is from the LORD our God, let us send word far and wide to our kinsmen remaining throughout the territories of Israel — and with them the priests and Levites in their towns and pasturelands — and let them assemble with us." ³"Let us bring the Ark of our God back to us, for we did not seek it during the days of Saul." ⁴The entire assembly agreed to do this, for the plan was right in the eyes of all the people. ⁵David assembled all Israel from the Shihor of Egypt to the entrance of Hamath, to bring the Ark of God from Kiriath-jearim. ⁶David and all Israel went up to Baalah — that is, to Kiriath-jearim in Judah — to bring up from there the Ark of God the LORD, who is enthroned above the cherubim, over which the Name is invoked. ⁷They loaded the Ark of God onto a new cart from the house of Abinadab, and Uzzah and Ahio were driving the cart. ⁸David and all Israel were celebrating before God with all their strength — with songs, lyres, harps, tambourines, cymbals, and trumpets. ⁹When they came to the threshing floor of Chidon, Uzzah reached out his hand to steady the Ark, because the oxen had stumbled. ¹⁰The anger of the LORD blazed against Uzzah, and God struck him down because he had reached out his hand to the Ark. He died there before God. ¹¹David burned with anger because the LORD had torn open a breach against Uzzah. He named that place Perez-uzzah — as it is called to this day. ¹²David was afraid of God that day. He said, "How can I ever bring the Ark of God home to me?" ¹³David did not bring the Ark home to himself in the City of David. Instead, he diverted it to the house of Obed-edom the Gittite. ¹⁴The Ark of God remained with the household of Obed-edom, in his house, for three months. And the LORD blessed the house of Obed-edom and everything he had.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This opening verse has no parallel in 2 Samuel 6 and is the Chronicler's addition, establishing that David's initiative to move the Ark was not impulsive but deliberative. The phrase vayyivva'ats ('he consulted') from ya'ats ('to counsel, to advise') presents David as a leader who seeks input from his command structure. The officers named — sarei ha-alafim vеха-me'ot ('commanders of thousands and hundreds') — are the tribal military hierarchy described in chapter 12.
2. David's speech addresses kol qahal Yisra'el ('the entire assembly of Israel') — the Chronicler's term for the gathered nation as a deliberative body. The conditional im aleikhem tov umin YHWH Eloheinu ('if it seems good to you and if it is from the LORD our God') makes the proposal subject to both popular consent and divine will. The specific mention of priests and Levites (ha-kohanim vеха-Levi'im) is the Chronicler's addition, foreshadowing their crucial role in chapters 15-16. The phrase arei migrsheihem ('cities of their pasturelands') refers to the Levitical cities assigned in Joshua 21.
3. The verb nasevah ('let us bring around, let us bring back') from savav ('to turn, to go around') implies returning the Ark to its proper place in the center of national life. The phrase bimei Sha'ul ('in the days of Saul') is a gentle but clear indictment of the previous regime — Saul's kingdom was characterized by the absence of the Ark, which is to say, the absence of deliberate seeking after God's presence.
4. The phrase ki yashar ha-davar be-einei kol ha-am ('for the matter was right/upright in the eyes of all the people') uses yashar ('straight, right, upright') — a word that carries moral weight. The assembly's unanimous approval echoes the lev echad ('one heart') of 12:38. The Chronicler presents David's reign as beginning with national consensus around the right priority: God's presence at the center of Israel's life.

5. The geographical markers — min Shichor Mitsrayim ve-ad levo Chamat ('from the Shihor of Egypt to the entrance of Hamath') — describe the full extent of the idealized promised land. The Shihor is the Wadi el-Arish at the Egyptian border; the entrance of Hamath is the Beqa'a Valley in modern Lebanon. This scope, never fully achieved politically, represents the Chronicler's theological geography: all Israel, in its ideal wholeness, participates in the Ark's recovery. Kiriath-jearim (Qiryat Ye'arim, 'city of forests') had housed the Ark since its return from Philistia (1 Samuel 7:1-2).
6. Baalah (Ba'alah) is identified with Kiriath-jearim (Joshua 15:9-10). The full divine title — aron ha-Elohim YHWH yoshev ha-keruvim asher niqra shem ('the Ark of God the LORD who is enthroned above the cherubim, over which the Name is invoked') — piles up theological weight: this is not merely a sacred box but the earthly throne of the God of Israel. The cherubim (keruvim) are the golden winged figures on the Ark's cover (Exodus 25:18-22). The phrase asher niqra shem ('over which the Name is called') indicates the Ark bears the divine Name — it is the physical location where God's identity is anchored in the material world.
7. The new cart (agalah chadashah) echoes the Philistine cart of 1 Samuel 6:7, subtly signaling that Israel is transporting the Ark by pagan precedent rather than Mosaic instruction. Numbers 4:15 and 7:9 specify that the Kohathite Levites must carry the most holy objects on their shoulders — no cart is authorized. The Chronicler records the error without immediate commentary, allowing the catastrophe of verse 9 to serve as the verdict. Uzzah (Uzza) and Ahio, from Abinadab's household, had lived with the Ark for decades.
8. The Chronicler's version reads bekhol oz ('with all strength/might') where 2 Samuel 6:5 has the difficult bekhol atsei veroshim ('with all cypress-wood instruments'). Most scholars consider the Chronicles reading original here, with the Samuel text corrupted. The instrument list substitutes shirim ('songs') for the wooden instruments and adds chatsotsrot ('trumpets'), a distinctly Levitical instrument (Numbers 10:2). The celebration is total: vocal (songs), stringed (lyres, harps), percussive (tambourines, cymbals), and brass (trumpets).
9. The threshing floor is identified as goren Kidon ('Chidon's threshing floor'), while 2 Samuel 6:6 calls it goren Nakhon — the two names differ and neither site can be located with certainty. The verb shamtu ('they stumbled, they let slip') from shamat describes the oxen losing their footing. Uzzah's response is instinctive — le'echoz et ha-aron ('to grasp the Ark') — but instinct is not the standard by which holiness is measured.
10. The verb vayyichar af YHWH ('the anger of the LORD burned') is the standard idiom for divine wrath. The Chronicler's explicit statement of cause — shalach yado al ha-aron ('he put his hand on the Ark') — removes the ambiguity of the Samuel account, making the theological point inescapable: the Ark must be approached only in the manner God prescribed.
11. David's anger (vayyichar le-David) mirrors God's anger in the previous verse — the same verb charah is used for both. The verb parats ('to breach, to break through') gives the place its name: Perets Uzza ('Breach of Uzzah'). The same root appears in Baal-perazim (14:11), where God's 'breaking through' is a blessing. Here it is a catastrophe. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') is the narrator's aside, indicating the name persisted.
12. The shift from anger (v11) to fear (vayyira, v12) mirrors the emotional sequence in 2 Samuel 6:8-9. The question eikh avi elai et aron ha-Elohim ('how can I bring the Ark of God to me?') expresses not despair but genuine perplexity — David wants to do the right thing but has just discovered that doing it wrong is fatal. The Chronicler will answer this question in chapter 15, where David identifies the error: they did not carry the Ark 'according to the rule' (15:13).
13. The verb hissir ('to turn aside, to remove') and hittahu ('he diverted it') describe a deliberate change of course — the Ark's procession to Jerusalem is halted and rerouted. Obed-edom (Oved-Edom, 'servant of Edom') the Gittite (ha-Gitti) will later be identified as a Levite (15:18, 21), which would explain why the Ark could legitimately rest at his house. The Gittite designation may refer to Gath-rimmon, a Levitical city (Joshua 21:24), rather than the Philistine city of Gath.
14. The verb vayyeshev ('it remained, it dwelled') describes the Ark as a guest in Obed-edom's home — a divine presence that brings berakha ('blessing') to the entire household. The three-month duration (sheloshah chodashim) parallels the Ark's sojourn in Philistine cities (1 Samuel 5), but with opposite effect: plague there, blessing here. The final phrase ve-et kol asher lo ('and everything that was his') indicates comprehensive prosperity — the Ark's presence sanctified and enriched the entire estate. This blessing will be the catalyst that emboldens David to attempt the transfer again (see 15:25 and 2 Samuel 6:12).

14

Summary: Hiram king of Tyre sends envoys to David with cedar timber, stonemasons, and carpenters to build him a palace. David recognizes that the LORD has established his kingship over Israel and exalted it for the sake of God's people. David takes more wives in Jerusalem and fathers more sons and daughters, whose names are listed. When the Philistines hear that David has been anointed king over all Israel, they mobilize to confront him. David inquires of God whether to attack, and God promises to hand them over. David defeats them at Baal-perazim, declaring that God has broken through his enemies like a flood. The Philistines abandon their idols, which David orders burned. The Philistines attack a second time in the same valley, and David inquires of God again. This time God gives different tactical instructions: do not attack head-on but circle behind them and wait for the sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees — that will be the signal that God himself has gone out ahead to strike the Philistine camp. David obeys, and the Philistines are routed from Gibeon to Gezer. David's fame spreads to all nations, and

the LORD causes all nations to fear him.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is strategically placed between the two Ark narratives (chapters 13 and 15-16), serving as an interlude that demonstrates God's blessing on David even while the Ark sits at Obed-edom's house. The theological logic is careful: the Ark's diversion did not mean God had abandoned David. International recognition (Hiram), dynastic growth (children), and military victory (Philistines) all continue. The two Philistine battles showcase two distinct models of divine guidance: in the first, God gives a simple 'go' command; in the second, God provides elaborate tactical instructions involving supernatural signals. The sound of marching in the treetops (qol tsa'adah be-rashei ha-beka'im) is one of the Hebrew Bible's most evocative images of divine warfare — God's invisible army walking through the canopy above David's troops. The burning of Philistine idols (v12) reverses the pattern of 10:10, where Saul's armor was placed in a pagan temple: now pagan gods are destroyed in David's territory.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 12 presents a significant difference from 2 Samuel 5:21. The Samuel text reads vayyissa'em David va-anashav ('David and his men carried them away'), while the Chronicler reads vayyomer David vayyissarefu va-esh ('David gave the order and they were burned with fire'). The Samuel version has David taking the idols (possibly as trophies), while Chronicles has him destroying them — a theologically motivated revision consistent with Deuteronomy 7:5, which commands the burning of pagan images. The place name in the second battle's rout is also different: 2 Samuel 5:25 reads 'from Geba to Gezer,' while Chronicles reads 'from Gibeon to Gezer' — Gibeon and Geba are different locations, and the discrepancy may reflect textual corruption or alternate traditions.*

Connections: *Hiram's embassy parallels 2 Samuel 5:11-12 and anticipates the larger Hiram-Solomon partnership for the Temple (2 Chronicles 2). The children born in Jerusalem parallel 2 Samuel 5:13-16 and 1 Chronicles 3:5-9. The Philistine defeats parallel 2 Samuel 5:17-25. The name Baal-perazim ('Lord of Breakthroughs') connects to Perez-uzzah in 13:11 — both use the root parats, creating a theological link: the God who breaks through in judgment (Uzzah) also breaks through in salvation (Philistines). The command to burn the idols connects to Deuteronomy 7:5, 25 and foreshadows the reform movements of later kings. The phrase 'the sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees' will echo in later prophetic visions of divine warfare.*

¹Hiram king of Tyre sent envoys to David, along with cedar timber, stonemasons, and carpenters, to build him a palace. ²David recognized that the LORD had established him as king over Israel, for his kingdom had been exalted on high for the sake of his people Israel. ³David took more wives in Jerusalem and fathered more sons and daughters. ⁴These are the names of the children born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon; ⁵Ibhar, Elishua, and Elpelet; ⁶Nogah, Nepheg, and Japhia; ⁷Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphalet. ⁸When the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over all Israel, all the Philistines marched up to find him. David heard about it and went out to confront them. ⁹The Philistines had come and spread out across the Valley of Rephaim. ¹⁰David inquired of God, "Shall I attack the Philistines? Will you hand them over to me?" The LORD said to him, "Attack. I will hand them over to you." ¹¹They went up to Baal-perazim, and David struck them down there. David said, "God has broken through my enemies by my hand like a bursting flood." That is why they named that place Baal-perazim. ¹²The Philistines abandoned their gods there, and David gave the order — they were burned with fire. ¹³The Philistines raided the valley again. ¹⁴David inquired of God again, and God said to him, "Do not attack them head-on. Circle away from them and come at them from in front of the balsam trees." ¹⁵When you hear the sound of marching in the tops of the balsam trees, then go out to battle — for God will have gone out ahead of you to strike the Philistine camp. ¹⁶David did exactly as God commanded him, and they struck the Philistine army from Gibeon to Gezer. ¹⁷David's fame spread to every land, and the LORD caused the dread of him to fall on all the nations.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler uses the form Churam (Hiram) for the Tyrian king. Cedar wood (atsei arazim) from Lebanon was the premier building material of the ancient Near East — its use signals royal status and international prestige. The phrase livnot lo bayit ('to build him a house/palace') anticipates the wordplay in chapter 17, where God declares that David will not build God a 'house' (Temple) but God will build David a 'house' (dynasty). Here, a foreign king builds David's physical house.

2. The phrase *nisse'at lema'alah malkuto* ('his kingdom was lifted up on high') uses the verb *nissa* ('to lift up, to exalt') — the kingdom itself is the object being elevated, not just the king. The purpose clause *ba'avur ammo* ('for the sake of his people') establishes the Chronicler's theology of servant-kingship: divine elevation of a king is always for the benefit of God's people.
3. The Chronicler records David's expanding household without commentary on the polygamy itself — the practice was culturally normative for ancient Near Eastern royalty and served dynastic and diplomatic purposes. The phrase *vayyoled David od banim uvanot* ('David fathered more sons and daughters') emphasizes dynastic growth, one of the signs of divine blessing in the ancient world.
4. The four sons listed first include Nathan and Solomon — both theologically significant. Solomon (Shelomoh, from *shalom*) will succeed David and build the Temple. Nathan appears in the genealogy of Jesus in Luke 3:31. Shammua (Shammu'a, 'heard') and Shobab (Shovav, 'rebellious' or 'restored') are less prominent in the narrative but are included in the dynasty record.
5. *Ibhar* (Yivchar, 'he chooses'), *Elishua* (Elishu'a, 'my God is salvation'), and *Elpelet* (Elpalet, 'God of deliverance') — theophoric names reflecting the parents' theological convictions.
6. *Nogah* (Nogah, 'brightness, splendor') appears only in Chronicles, not in the parallel list of 2 Samuel 5:14-16 — this is one of the minor divergences between the two records. *Nepheg* (Nefeg) and *Japhia* (Yafi'a, 'he shines') complete the group.
7. *Elishama* (Elishama, 'my God has heard'), *Beeliada* (Be'elyada, 'the Lord knows' — using *ba'al* as a divine title), and *Eliphalet* (Elifalet, 'my God is deliverance'). The name *Beeliada* is remarkable: it uses *ba'al* ('lord, master') as a divine element, suggesting that at this early period, *ba'al* could still serve as a legitimate title for Israel's God before it became exclusively associated with Canaanite worship. The 2 Samuel parallel reads '*Eliada*' (Elyada, 'God knows'), replacing *ba'al* with *El* — possibly a later scribal correction.
8. The Chronicler's version specifies *al kol Yisra'el* ('over all Israel'), emphasizing that it was the national anointing — not merely the Judahite one — that alarmed the Philistines. The verb *levaqesh* ('to seek, to search for') implies a targeted military operation: the Philistines are hunting David. David's response *vayyetse lifneihem* ('he went out before them') is the posture of a king meeting a threat head-on rather than retreating to a stronghold.
9. The verb *vayyifshetu* ('they spread out, they raided') from *pashat* indicates the Philistines deployed across the valley in force, not as a single column but as an occupying army. The Valley of Rephaim (Emeq Repha'im, 'Valley of the Giants') southwest of Jerusalem was a natural staging ground for armies approaching the city from the coastal plain.
10. The verb *vayyish'al* ('he inquired') from *sha'al* describes formal consultation of God — likely through the priestly ephod or Urim and Thummim. David's two-part question (shall I go? will you give them to me?) seeks both permission and assurance. God's answer is direct: *aleh* ('go up/attack') and *unetattim beyadekha* ('I will give them into your hand'). The contrast with Saul — who consulted a medium when God would not answer him (10:13-14) — is sharp: David seeks God and receives clear guidance.
11. The verb *parats* ('to break through') appears three times in this verse, creating an emphatic concentration. David's declaration *parats ha-Elohim et oyevai beyadi* ('God has broken through my enemies by my hand') combines divine agency with human instrumentality — God did the breaking, but David's hand was the tool. The name *Ba'al Peratsim* uses *ba'al* in its non-idolatrous sense of 'lord, master, possessor' — 'the Master of Breakthroughs.'
12. This verse is the Chronicler's most significant revision of the Samuel parallel. In 2 Samuel 5:21, David and his men 'carried them away' (*vayyissa'em*) — possibly taking the idols as war trophies. The Chronicler substitutes *vayyissarefu va-esh* ('they were burned with fire'), aligning David's action with the Deuteronomic command to burn pagan images (Deuteronomy 7:5, 25). This is theological revision: the Chronicler ensures David obeys Torah, even when the Samuel source suggests otherwise. The burning of gods reverses 10:10, where Saul's armor was placed in a pagan temple.
13. The phrase *vayyosifu od* ('they again did') indicates the Philistines returned to the same Valley of Rephaim for a second campaign. The verb *vayyifshetu* ('they spread out') from *pashat* repeats from verse 9, but this time David will receive different tactical instructions — the same enemy, the same terrain, but a different divine strategy.
14. God's second answer is strikingly different from the first: *lo ta'aleh achareihem* ('do not go up after them') reverses the simple 'go up' of verse 10. The verb *hasev* ('circle around, turn') from *savav* requires a flanking maneuver. The *bekha'im* ('balsam trees' or 'mulberry trees') are a specific type of tree whose identification is debated — the name may derive from *bakha* ('to weep'), referring to a tree that produces resinous sap resembling tears. The tactical instruction demonstrates that God's guidance is situation-specific, not formulaic.
15. The *bekha'im* (balsam trees) create a natural amplifier for sound — their rustling could mask or reveal movement. God transforms the natural environment into a signal system for divine warfare. The phrase *yatsa ha-Elohim lefanekha* ('God has gone out before you') uses the military verb *yatsa* ('to go out') in its sense of deploying for battle. The divine warrior goes first; the human warrior follows.
16. The formula *vayyaas David ka-asher tsivvahu ha-Elohim* ('David did as God commanded him') is the highest commendation in the Chronicler's vocabulary — obedience to divine instruction. The rout extends from Gibeon (Giv'on, northwest of Jerusalem) to Gezer (Gazer, on the western edge of the Shephelah) — a distance of approximately fifteen miles, indicating a thorough pursuit. The Chronicler reads 'Gibeon' where 2 Samuel 5:25 reads 'Geba' — the two towns are in the same region but not identical.
17. The phrase *vayyetse shem David* ('David's name went out') describes reputation expanding like a wave — his name traveled ahead of his armies. The theological attribution is explicit: *va-YHWH natan et pachdo al kol ha-goyim* ('the LORD placed his terror upon all the nations'). The dread (*pachad*) is not David's personal intimidation but a divinely imposed fear. This verse closes the interlude between the two Ark narratives with a summary of David's international standing, setting the stage for the successful Ark transfer in chapter 15.

15

Summary: *David builds houses for himself in the City of David and prepares a place for the Ark of God, pitching a tent for it. He then declares that no one but the Levites may carry the Ark, for the LORD chose them to carry the Ark and to serve before him forever. David assembles all Israel at Jerusalem to bring the Ark up from the house of Obed-edom. He gathers the Levitical clan heads: Uriel chief of the Kohathites with 120 kinsmen, Asaiah chief of the Merarites with 220, Joel chief of the Gershonites with 130, Shemaiah of the Elizaphanites with 200, Eliel of the Hebronites with 80, and Amminadab of the Uzzielites with 112. David calls the priests Zadok and Abiathar and the six Levitical chiefs and orders them to consecrate themselves so they may bring the Ark up properly. He explains that the LORD's outbreak against them the first time was because the Levites did not carry it — they had not sought God according to the prescribed manner. The priests and Levites consecrate themselves. The Levites carry the Ark on their shoulders with poles, exactly as Moses commanded. David instructs the Levitical chiefs to appoint musicians: Heman, Asaph, and Ethan lead with bronze cymbals; others play harps and lyres. Chenaniah is the master of the processional music. Doorkeepers are assigned for the Ark. David, the elders of Israel, and the commanders of thousands go to bring the Ark from Obed-edom's house with celebration. When God helps the Levites carrying the Ark, they sacrifice seven bulls and seven rams. David is clothed in a robe of fine linen, as are the Levites, the musicians, and Chenaniah. David also wears a linen ephod. All Israel brings the Ark up with shouting, ram's horns, trumpets, cymbals, harps, and lyres. As the Ark enters the City of David, Michal daughter of Saul looks down from a window and sees King David dancing and celebrating, and she despises him in her heart.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is largely the Chronicler's own composition, with only verses 25-29 having close parallels in 2 Samuel 6:12-16. It represents the Chronicler's theological correction of the chapter 13 disaster. Where chapter 13 recorded what went wrong, chapter 15 prescribes what went right — and the difference is Levitical order. David's speech in verse 13 is the interpretive key to the entire Ark narrative: 'Because you did not carry it the first time, the LORD our God broke out against us, because we did not seek him according to the rule.' The phrase ka-mishpat ('according to the rule/ordinance') is the Chronicler's fundamental principle: worship must follow God's prescribed order, not human innovation. The elaborate organizational detail — six clan heads, specific numbers, named musicians, designated roles — is not bureaucratic filler but theological statement. Proper worship requires proper structure. The music ministry described here becomes the foundation for Temple worship, and the names Heman, Asaph, and Ethan (Jeduthun) will appear as psalm superscriptions throughout the Psalter.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the Levitical clans named here and the broader genealogical records creates some tension. The six groups — Kohathites (Uriel), Merarites (Asaiah), Gershonites (Joel), and three sub-Kohathite clans (Elizaphan, Hebron, Uzziel) — represent an organizational scheme not fully attested elsewhere. The identity of Chenaniah (Kenanyahu, v22) is debated: is he a musician, a transport supervisor, or a prophetic leader? The Hebrew sar ha-massa can mean 'chief of the carrying' (from massa, 'burden, carrying') or 'chief of the singing/oracle' (from massa, 'oracle, utterance'). The Chronicler's statement that David was clothed in a me'il but's ('robe of fine linen,' v27) differs from 2 Samuel 6:14's efod bad ('linen ephod'). The Chronicler adds the robe and then mentions the ephod separately, perhaps to counter the impression that David was insufficiently dressed.*

Connections: *David's declaration that only Levites may carry the Ark (v2) connects directly to Numbers 4:15 and 7:9, the Mosaic instructions for transporting holy objects. The phrase ka-mishpat (v13) echoes the Torah's regulatory language throughout Exodus-Deuteronomy. The appointment of Heman, Asaph, and Ethan as chief musicians (v17) establishes the guilds whose names appear in the superscriptions of Psalms 50, 73-83 (Asaph), Psalms 42, 44-49, 84-85, 87-88 (sons of Korah/Heman), and Psalms 39, 62, 77 (Jeduthun/Ethan). The seven bulls and seven rams (v26) echo the standard sacrificial numbers throughout the Torah. Michal's contempt (v29) parallels 2 Samuel 6:16 exactly and will not be resolved in Chronicles — the Chronicler simply records her disdain and moves on, omitting the confrontation scene of 2 Samuel 6:20-23.*

¹David built houses for himself in the City of David. He prepared a place for the Ark of God and pitched a tent for it. ²Then David declared, "No one may carry the Ark of God except the Levites, for the LORD chose them to carry the Ark of the LORD

and to serve him forever." ³David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem to bring the Ark of the LORD up to the place he had prepared for it. ⁴David gathered the descendants of Aaron and the Levites: ⁵Of the Kohathites: Uriel the chief, with 120 of his kinsmen; ⁶of the Merarites: Asaiah the chief, with 220 of his kinsmen; ⁷of the Gershomites: Joel the chief, with 130 of his kinsmen; ⁸of the Elizaphanites: Shemaiah the chief, with 200 of his kinsmen; ⁹of the Hebronites: Eliel the chief, with 80 of his kinsmen; ¹⁰of the Uzzielites: Amminadab the chief, with 112 of his kinsmen. ¹¹David summoned the priests Zadok and Abiathar, and the Levites: Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab. ¹²He said to them, "You are the heads of the Levitical families. Consecrate yourselves — you and your kinsmen — and bring up the Ark of the LORD, the God of Israel, to the place I have prepared for it." ¹³"Because you were not the ones carrying it the first time, the LORD our God broke out against us — because we did not seek him according to the prescribed rule." ¹⁴The priests and the Levites consecrated themselves to bring up the Ark of the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹⁵The Levites carried the Ark of God on their shoulders with the poles, exactly as Moses had commanded according to the word of the LORD. ¹⁶David told the Levitical chiefs to station their kinsmen as musicians with instruments — harps, lyres, and cymbals — to sound out loudly with joyful celebration. ¹⁷The Levites appointed Heman son of Joel; from his kinsmen, Asaph son of Berechiah; and from the Merarites, their kinsmen, Ethan son of Kushaiah. ¹⁸With them were their kinsmen of the second rank: Zechariah, Jaaziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattithiah, Elipheleh, Mikneiah, and Obed-edom and Jeiel as gatekeepers. ¹⁹The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were to sound the bronze cymbals; ²⁰Zechariah, Aziel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Unni, Eliab, Maaseiah, and Benaiah were to play harps tuned to alamothe; ²¹Mattithiah, Elipheleh, Mikneiah, Obed-edom, Jeiel, and Azariah were to play lyres tuned to the sheminith, to lead. ²²Chenaniah, chief of the Levites, was in charge of the processional music. He directed the music because he was skilled in it. ²³Berechiah and Elkanah were gatekeepers for the Ark. ²⁴Shebaniah, Jehoshaphat, Nethanel, Amasai, Zechariah, Benaiah, and Eliezer — the priests — were blowing trumpets before the Ark of God. Obed-edom and Jehiah were gatekeepers for the Ark. ²⁵David, the elders of Israel, and the commanders of thousands went to bring up the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD from the house of Obed-edom with celebration. ²⁶When God helped the Levites carrying the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD, they sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams. ²⁷David was robed in fine linen, as were all the Levites carrying the Ark, the musicians, and Chenaniah the music director. David also wore a linen ephod. ²⁸All Israel brought the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD up with shouts of triumph, with the sound of the ram's horn, with trumpets, cymbals resounding, and with harps and lyres. ²⁹As the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD reached the City of David, Michal daughter of Saul looked down from a window and saw King David dancing and celebrating — and she despised him in her heart.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The plural batim ('houses') suggests a royal compound, not a single residence. The preparation of a maqom ('place') for the Ark indicates deliberate architectural planning — the Ark's location was not an afterthought but a primary consideration. The ohel ('tent') David pitches is not the Mosaic Tabernacle (which was at Gibeon, 16:39) but a new tent, a provisional dwelling for the Ark anticipating the Temple that Solomon will build.
2. David's declaration draws on Numbers 4:15 (Kohathites shall carry the holy objects) and Deuteronomy 10:8 (the LORD set apart the tribe of Levi to carry the Ark of the covenant). The phrase ki bam bachar YHWH ('for the LORD chose them') uses the election verb bachar, the same verb used for God's choice of Israel (Deuteronomy 7:6) and of Jerusalem (1 Kings 8:44). The Levites are chosen people within the chosen people.
3. The second Ark assembly mirrors the first (13:5) but with a crucial difference: this time the preparations include Levitical organization, not just national enthusiasm. The phrase el meqomo asher hekhin lo ('to its place which he had prepared for it') indicates the tent of verse 1 is ready.
4. The distinction between benei Aharon ('sons of Aaron,' the priests) and ha-Levi'im ('the Levites,' the non-priestly service tribe) is fundamental to the Chronicler's organizational theology. Both groups are needed: priests for sacrificial duties, Levites for transport and music.
5. Uriel (Uri'el, 'God is my light') leads the Kohathite clan, who bore primary responsibility for carrying the most holy objects (Numbers 4:4-15). The 120 kinsmen represent the Kohathite contribution to the Levitical transport force.
6. Asaiah (Asayah, 'the LORD has made') leads the Merarite clan. The Merarites were responsible for the Tabernacle's structural components — boards, bars, pillars, sockets (Numbers 4:31-32).
7. Joel (Yo'el, 'the LORD is God') leads the Gershomite (or Gershonite) clan. The Gershonites were responsible for the Tabernacle's fabric components — curtains, coverings, screens (Numbers 4:24-26).

8. Elizaphan (Elitsafan) was a son of Uzziel, a Kohathite sub-clan (Exodus 6:22, Numbers 3:30). Shemaiah (Shema'yah, 'the LORD has heard') leads this branch with the largest contingent among the sub-clans.
9. Hebron was another Kohathite sub-clan, descended from Hebron son of Kohath (Exodus 6:18). Eliel (Eli'el, 'my God is God') leads the smallest named contingent.
10. Uzziel was the youngest son of Kohath (Exodus 6:18). Amminadab (Amminadav, 'my kinsman is generous') leads 112 men. The total Levitical force for the Ark transport: 862 men from six clans, plus the priests — a substantial sacred workforce.
11. David calls both the priests (Zadok and Abiathar, co-high priests) and all six Levitical chiefs named in verses 5-10. This is a formal convocation of the entire sacred leadership. Zadok and Abiathar represent the two priestly lines that will serve until Solomon resolves the dual priesthood by dismissing Abiathar (1 Kings 2:26-27).
12. The command hitqaddishu ('consecrate yourselves') from qadash ('to be holy, to set apart') requires ritual preparation — washing, abstaining from impurity, dedicating oneself for sacred service. This consecration step was absent from the first attempt in chapter 13. The phrase el hakhinnoti lo ('to the place I have prepared for it') shows David has already done his part; now the Levites must do theirs.
13. The phrase ka-mishpat ('according to the rule/ordinance') is the theological hinge of the entire passage. It refers to the Mosaic instructions in Numbers 4:15 and 7:9 requiring Levitical shoulder-transport. The Chronicler's theology is clear: zeal without obedience is dangerous. David's willingness to name his own failure publicly is a mark of the leader the Chronicler wants to portray.
14. The obedience is immediate: vayyitqaddishu ('they consecrated themselves') responds directly to David's command in verse 12. The full divine title aron YHWH Elohei Yisra'el ('the Ark of the LORD, the God of Israel') appears again, maintaining the gravity of the occasion.
15. This verse is the correction of 13:7 in a single sentence. Where the first attempt used a cart, now the Levites carry the Ark ba-ketefam ba-motot aleihem ('on their shoulders with the poles upon them') — exactly as prescribed in Numbers 7:9 and Exodus 25:14. The phrase ka-asher tsivvah Mosheh kidvar YHWH ('as Moses commanded according to the word of the LORD') traces the chain of authority: the LORD spoke, Moses commanded, the Levites obey. No improvisation, no pagan precedent — just Torah compliance.
16. The verb le-ha'amid ('to station, to appoint') from amad ('to stand') gives the musicians fixed positions — this is not spontaneous worship but organized liturgy. The phrase mashmi'im le-harim beqol simchah ('sounding, lifting up with a voice of joy') describes music that fills the air with celebration. The three instrument types — nevalim (harps), kinnorot (lyres), and metsiltayim (cymbals) — become the standard Temple orchestra.
17. The three chief musicians represent the three Levitical clans: Heman (Kohathite), Asaph (Gershomite), and Ethan (Merarite). Heman (Heiman, 'faithful') son of Joel is traditionally identified with the author of Psalm 88. Asaph (Asaf, 'gatherer') son of Berechiah (Berekyahu, 'the LORD blesses') is credited with Psalms 50 and 73-83. Ethan (Eitan, 'enduring') son of Kushaiah is identified with Jeduthun (Yedutun), credited with Psalms 39, 62, and 77.
18. The 'second rank' (ha-mishneim) musicians and the gatekeepers (ha-sho'arim) form the supporting cast of the liturgical corps. Obed-edom appears here as both a gatekeeper and a musician — the same Obed-edom in whose house the Ark rested for three months (13:14). His transition from Ark-host to Temple servant demonstrates how blessing leads to service.
19. The three chief musicians play metsiltayim nechoshet ('bronze cymbals') — percussion instruments that set the rhythm for the entire ensemble. The verb le-hashmi'a ('to cause to hear, to make audible') indicates the cymbals' role was to provide the foundational beat that the other instruments followed.
20. The phrase al alamot ('upon/according to alamoth') is a musical term whose exact meaning is debated. It may refer to a high-pitched register (from almah, 'young woman,' suggesting a soprano voice range), or to a specific musical mode or key. It appears also in the superscription of Psalm 46.
21. The phrase al ha-sheminit ('upon the eighth') likely refers to a lower-pitched register or mode — an octave below the alamoth. The word le-natseach ('to lead, to direct, to excel') from natseach is the same term used in psalm superscriptions (la-menatseach, 'for the director/choirmaster'). These lyre players were section leaders, directing the musical performance.
22. Chenaniah (Kenanyahu, 'the LORD establishes') held a unique role: sar ha-Levi'im be-massa ('chief of the Levites in the massa'). The word massa is ambiguous — from nasa ('to carry') it means 'the carrying/transport,' but from the same root in a different sense it means 'oracle' or 'lifting up the voice,' hence 'music/singing.' The phrase ki mevin hu ('for he was skilled/understanding') uses the verb bin ('to understand, to discern'), indicating Chenaniah had both musical expertise and organizational ability.
23. The sho'arim ('gatekeepers') for the Ark served as guardians during transport — they controlled access to the Ark during the procession. This role ensured that no unauthorized person approached the Ark, preventing a repeat of the Uzzah incident.
24. Seven priests (ha-kohanim) blow chatsotsrot ('trumpets') — a distinctly priestly instrument (Numbers 10:8: 'the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow the trumpets'). The trumpets lead the procession, marking this as a sacred liturgical event, not merely a military parade. Obed-edom appears again among the gatekeepers, further integrating him into the Levitical service structure.
25. The delegation combines royal (David), civic (elders), and military (commanders of thousands) leadership — all Israel is represented. The Ark is called aron berit YHWH ('Ark of the Covenant of the LORD'), emphasizing its identity as the container of the covenant tablets (Deuteronomy 10:1-5). The word simchah ('joy, celebration') indicates that fear has given way to confidence: the correct procedure produces celebration instead of catastrophe.

- 26.** The phrase *be-ezor ha-Elohim et ha-Levi'im* ('when God helped the Levites') is theologically rich: even the correct method requires divine assistance. The Levites carried the Ark, but God helped them carry it. The sacrifice of seven bulls and seven rams (*shiv'ah farim veshiv'ah eilim*) replaces the 2 Samuel 6:13 reading of a bull and a fattened calf every six steps. The number seven indicates completeness — a full, perfect sacrifice.
- 27.** The Chronicler adds the *me'il* but (*'robe of fine linen'*) to the *efod bad* ('linen ephod') found in 2 Samuel 6:14. The but is a high-quality Egyptian linen associated with priestly and royal garments. By dressing David in both a robe and an ephod, the Chronicler may be addressing the implication in 2 Samuel that David was inadequately clothed (which provoked Michal's rebuke). The uniform of fine linen worn by David, the Levites, and the musicians creates a visual unity — everyone in the procession is dressed as a servant of God.
- 28.** The full ensemble is deployed: *teru'ah* (acclamation shout), *shofar* (ram's horn), *chatsotsrot* (trumpets), *metsiltayim* (cymbals), *nevalim* (harps), and *kinnorot* (lyres). The wall of sound represents the totality of Israel's joy. Every available instrument and voice participates. The phrase *kol Yisra'el* ('all Israel') frames the event as a national act of worship, not a private royal celebration.
- 29.** The Chronicler parallels 2 Samuel 6:16 closely but with minor differences: *meraqqed umesacheq* ('dancing and celebrating') replaces *mefazzez umekharker* ('leaping and whirling'). The verb *raqqad* ('to dance, to skip') is less intense than the Samuel verbs but still describes vigorous physical worship. Michal is again identified as *bat Sha'ul* ('daughter of Saul'), not 'wife of David' — framing her contempt as an extension of the house of Saul's values. The Chronicler omits the confrontation scene (2 Samuel 6:20-23) and the note about Michal's barrenness, ending the incident with her silent contempt. In Chronicles, the narrative moves directly to the celebration of chapter 16.

16

Summary: *The Ark is brought into the tent David has prepared for it and set in its place. David offers burnt offerings and peace offerings before God. He blesses the people in the name of the LORD and distributes food to every Israelite man and woman — a loaf of bread, a portion of meat, and a raisin cake. David then appoints Asaph and his kinsmen to serve before the Ark as ongoing ministers of praise. The chapter presents a composite psalm attributed to David (vv 8-36), woven from three canonical psalms: Psalm 105:1-15 (vv 8-22), Psalm 96:1-13 (vv 23-33), and portions of Psalm 106:1, 47-48 (vv 34-36). The psalm moves from calling the nations to praise, to recounting God's covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, to declaring God's sovereignty over the gods of the nations, to celebrating creation's joy before the LORD who comes to judge the earth, and concludes with a prayer for God to gather and save Israel and a doxology of eternal praise. After the psalm, David assigns Asaph and his kinsmen to minister before the Ark continually. Obed-edom and sixty-eight kinsmen serve as gatekeepers. Zadok the priest and his fellow priests serve before the Tabernacle of the LORD at the high place in Gibeon, maintaining the burnt offering morning and evening according to the Torah. Heman, Jeduthun, and their associates provide music at Gibeon. The chapter closes with everyone going home, and David returning to bless his own household.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter establishes the dual worship system that will characterize David's reign: the Ark in Jerusalem under Asaph's musical ministry, and the Tabernacle at Gibeon under Zadok's priestly ministry. The two will not be reunited until Solomon builds the Temple. The composite psalm (vv 8-36) is the Chronicler's most significant liturgical contribution — it demonstrates that David's worship was not improvised but drew from the canonical psalm tradition. Whether David composed these psalms and they were later collected into the Psalter, or whether the Chronicler drew from existing psalms and attributed them to this occasion, the effect is the same: the Ark's installation in Jerusalem is accompanied by the finest liturgical poetry in Israel's tradition. The psalm's structure moves from particular to universal: it begins with God's specific covenant with the patriarchs (Psalm 105 material) and expands to God's sovereignty over all nations and all creation (Psalm 96 material). The final verse — 'Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, from everlasting to everlasting' — becomes the doxology that closes Book IV of the Psalter (Psalm 106:48).*

Translation Friction: *The composite psalm raises questions about chronology and authorship. If David composed these words on this occasion, how did they later become parts of three separate canonical psalms? If the Chronicler assembled existing psalms into a composite liturgy, the historical attribution is literary rather than literal. The textual variations between the Chronicles version and the Psalm versions are minor but real — small differences in wording, spelling, and phrasing that suggest transmission history rather than direct quotation. Verse 30 reads *lifnav kol ha-arets* ('before him, all the earth') where Psalm 96:9 reads *lifnav kol ha-arets* — identical in Hebrew but with different vowel pointing traditions. The phrase *be-yom beyomo* ('each day's portion in its day,' v37) for the ongoing service is ambiguous: does it refer to daily offerings, daily music, or both?*

Connections: The psalm parallels are precise: vv 8-22 = Psalm 105:1-15 (God's covenant faithfulness to the patriarchs); vv 23-33 = Psalm 96:1-13 (God's kingship over the nations and creation); vv 34-36 = Psalm 106:1, 47-48 (doxology and prayer for deliverance). The dual worship sites — Ark in Jerusalem, Tabernacle at Gibeon — will be unified in 2 Chronicles 5:5 when Solomon brings the Tabernacle to the Temple. The food distribution (v3) parallels 2 Samuel 6:19 and anticipates the communal meals at Temple festivals. Asaph's appointment as chief musician (v5) establishes the Asaphite guild that will produce psalms and serve through the exile and return (Ezra 2:41, 3:10). The phrase le-olam chasdo ('his faithful love endures forever,' v34, 41) becomes the liturgical refrain that pervades the Psalter and will echo through Solomon's Temple dedication (2 Chronicles 7:3, 6).

¹They brought the Ark of God and set it in its place inside the tent David had pitched for it. They offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before God. ²When David had finished offering the burnt offerings and peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the LORD. ³He distributed to every Israelite, man and woman alike: a loaf of bread, a portion of meat, and a raisin cake. ⁴He appointed Levites to serve before the Ark of the LORD — to invoke, to give thanks, and to praise the LORD, the God of Israel: ⁵Asaph was the chief; second to him, Zechariah; then Jeiel, Shemiramoth, Jehiel, Mattithiah, Eliab, Benaiah, Obed-edom, and Jeiel with harps and lyres. Asaph sounded the cymbals. ⁶Benaiah and Jahaziel the priests blew trumpets continually before the Ark of the Covenant of God — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁷On that day David first assigned this song of thanksgiving to the LORD, to be performed by Asaph and his kinsmen:

⁸Give thanks to the LORD! Call on his name!
Make his deeds known among the peoples!

⁹Sing to him, make music to him!
Tell of all his wondrous acts!

¹⁰Boast in his holy name!
Let the hearts of those who seek the LORD rejoice!

¹¹Seek the LORD and his strength!
Seek his face continually! — as recorded in the genealogies.

¹²Remember his wonders that he has done,
his signs and the judgments of his mouth —

¹³O offspring of Israel his servant,
children of Jacob, his chosen ones!

¹⁴He is the LORD our God —
his judgments govern all the earth!

¹⁵Remember his covenant forever —
the word he commanded for a thousand generations —

¹⁶the covenant he cut with Abraham,
his sworn oath to Isaac —

¹⁷which he established for Jacob as a binding decree,
for Israel as an everlasting covenant,

¹⁸saying, 'To you I will give the land of Canaan
as your allotted inheritance.'

¹⁹When you were few in number,
 very few, and strangers in the land —
²⁰they wandered from nation to nation,
 from one kingdom to another people.
²¹He let no one oppress them;
 he rebuked kings on their account:
²²'Do not touch my anointed ones!
 Do my prophets no harm!'
²³Sing to the LORD, all the earth!
 Proclaim his salvation day after day!
²⁴Declare his glory among the nations,
 his wondrous acts among all peoples!
²⁵For the LORD is great and highly praised —
 he is to be feared above all gods!
²⁶For all the gods of the peoples are worthless —
 but the LORD made the heavens!
²⁷Splendor and majesty stand before him;
 strength and joy fill his dwelling place!
²⁸Ascribe to the LORD, O families of peoples!
 Ascribe to the LORD glory and strength!
²⁹Ascribe to the LORD the glory due his name!
 Bring an offering and come before him!
 Worship the LORD in the splendor of holiness!
³⁰Tremble before him, all the earth!
 The world stands firm — it will not be shaken!
³¹Let the heavens rejoice and the earth be glad!
 Let them say among the nations: 'The LORD reigns!'
³²Let the sea thunder and all that fills it!
 Let the fields exult and everything in them!
³³Then the trees of the forest will shout for joy
 before the LORD — for he comes to judge the earth!
³⁴Give thanks to the LORD, for he is good —
 for his faithful love endures forever!
³⁵And say: 'Save us, O God of our salvation!
 Gather us and rescue us from the nations,
 so that we may give thanks to your holy name

and make our boast in your praise!'

³⁶Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting!

And all the people said 'Amen!' and 'Praise the LORD!'

³⁷David left Asaph and his kinsmen there before the Ark of the Covenant of the LORD to minister before the Ark continually, according to each day's requirements. ³⁸Obed-edom and his sixty-eight kinsmen — Obed-edom son of Jeduthun and Hosah — were gatekeepers. ³⁹Zadok the priest and his fellow priests served before the Tabernacle of the LORD at the high place in Gibeon, ⁴⁰offering burnt offerings to the LORD on the altar of burnt offering continually, morning and evening, and doing everything written in the Law of the LORD that he commanded Israel. ⁴¹With them were Heman and Jeduthun, and the rest who were chosen and designated by name, to give thanks to the LORD — for his faithful love endures forever. ⁴²Heman and Jeduthun had trumpets and cymbals for the music, and the instruments of God. The sons of Jeduthun were at the gate. ⁴³Then all the people went home, each to his own house. And David turned to bless his own household.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb vayyatsigu ('they set, they stationed') from yatsag indicates a formal, permanent placement — the Ark has found its resting place. The tent (ohel) is David's new tent, not the Mosaic Tabernacle. The combination of olot (burnt offerings, entirely consumed on the altar) and shelamim (peace offerings, shared between God, priests, and worshipers) creates a complete liturgy of dedication: total consecration paired with communal celebration.
2. David performs a priestly function — blessing the people be-shem YHWH ('in the name of the LORD') — echoing the Aaronic blessing of Numbers 6:22-27. The king acting as a liturgical leader is a feature of David's reign that the Chronicler emphasizes. David does not replace the priests but assumes a role alongside them as the covenant community's representative.
3. The distribution is universal — me-ish ve-ad ishah ('from man to woman') — every person receives the same provision. The three items — kikkar lechem ('a loaf of bread'), eshpar ('a portion of meat' — the exact meaning is debated; some render 'date cake'), and ashishah ('a raisin cake') — represent a festive meal distributed as royal largesse. The king feeds his people in celebration of God's presence among them.
4. The three verbs define the Levitical ministry: le-hazkir ('to invoke, to call to remembrance' — from zakhar, 'to remember'), le-hodot ('to give thanks, to confess'), and le-hallel ('to praise, to extol'). These become the three pillars of Temple worship: invocation of God's name and deeds, gratitude for God's acts, and praise of God's character. The appointment is lifnei aron YHWH ('before the Ark of the LORD'), establishing the Ark as the focal point of ongoing worship.
5. Asaph holds the premier position (ha-rosh, 'the chief') of the Ark's worship team. The ensemble matches the appointments of chapter 15: harps (nevalim), lyres (kinnorot), and cymbals (metsiltayim). Asaph's cymbal-playing role (mashmi'a, 'making heard') placed him as the rhythmic director of the ensemble — the cymbals set the beat that governed the entire performance.
6. Two priests (ha-kohanim) blow trumpets (chatsotsrot) tamid ('continually, regularly') — not without ceasing, but at every appointed service. The trumpet-blowing is a priestly exclusive (Numbers 10:8). The Ark is called aron berit ha-Elohim ('Ark of the Covenant of God'), emphasizing its identity as the covenant container.
7. The phrase ba-yom ha-hu ('on that day') anchors the psalm to the specific occasion of the Ark's installation. The verb natan ('he gave, he assigned') with ba-rosh ('at the head, as the first') indicates this was the inaugural psalm — the first liturgical composition commissioned for the Ark's worship. The phrase beyad Asaf ve-echar ('by the hand of Asaph and his kinsmen') designates the performing ensemble.
8. The psalm begins (paralleling Psalm 105:1) with three imperatives: hodu ('give thanks'), qir'u ('call out, proclaim'), and hodi'u ('make known'). The scope is immediately international: ba-ammim ('among the peoples') directs Israel's worship outward toward the nations. Thanksgiving is not private but proclamatory.
9. Three more imperatives: shiru ('sing'), zammeru ('make music, play instruments'), and sichu ('speak, meditate, tell'). The word nifle'otav ('his wonders') from the root p-l-a ('to be wonderful, surpassing') refers to God's extraordinary acts that exceed human capacity — the plagues, the exodus, the wilderness provision.
10. The verb hithalelu ('boast, glory') from halal in the Hithpael means to make one's boast, to find one's identity and pride, in God's shem qodsho ('his holy name'). The second line connects seeking (mevaqshei YHWH, 'those who seek the LORD') with joy (yismach lev, 'the heart rejoices'). The Chronicler's theology of seeking God — so central to the Saul-David contrast — here finds lyrical expression.
11. The twin imperatives dirshu ('seek') and baqqeshu ('seek') use two different Hebrew verbs for seeking — darash (to inquire, to consult, to investigate) and baqash (to seek, to request, to desire). Together they cover the full range of seeking: intellectual inquiry and personal desire. The phrase tamid ('continually, perpetually') makes seeking God not an occasional act but a permanent posture.

12. The triad — nifle'otav ('his wonders'), mofetav ('his signs'), and mishpetei fihu ('the judgments of his mouth') — covers God's acts (wonders), God's miraculous demonstrations (signs), and God's spoken decrees (judgments). The verb zikhru ('remember') from zakhar is a covenant command: memory in the Hebrew Bible is not passive recall but active reliving of God's saving deeds.
13. The audience is specified: zera Yisra'el avdo ('offspring of Israel his servant') and benei Ya'aqov bechirav ('children of Jacob his chosen ones'). The double designation — Israel/Jacob — invokes both the patriarchal name (Jacob) and the covenant name (Israel). The term bechirav ('his chosen ones') from bachar places the election of Israel at the center of the psalm's theology.
14. The declaration hu YHWH Eloheinu ('he is the LORD our God') is a confession of exclusive allegiance. The phrase bekol ha-arets mishpatav ('in all the earth are his judgments') extends God's jurisdiction universally — the God of Israel is not a local deity but the ruler of the entire earth.
15. The phrase zikhru le-olam berito ('remember forever his covenant') pairs eternal memory with eternal covenant. The word davar tsivvah le-elef dor ('the word he commanded for a thousand generations') stretches the covenant's validity across all time. A thousand generations is not a literal count but a poetic expression of permanence.
16. The verb karat ('he cut') preserves the ancient ritual of covenant-making (cutting animals in half, Genesis 15:9-18). The shevu'ah ('oath') to Isaac (Genesis 26:3) adds solemn verbal commitment to the ritual act. The covenant is both enacted (cut) and spoken (sworn).
17. The verb vayyaamideha ('he established it, he caused it to stand') from amad emphasizes permanence — God made the covenant stand firm, immovable. The terms choq ('decree, statute') and berit olam ('everlasting covenant') pile up legal and temporal weight. The covenant is both legally binding (choq) and temporally unlimited (olam).
18. The covenant content is specified: land. The phrase erets Kena'an chevel nachalatkhem ('the land of Canaan, the measured portion of your inheritance') uses chevel ('measuring line, allotted portion') to describe the land as something precisely apportioned by God. The nachalah ('inheritance') is a permanent, hereditary possession — land that belongs to the family line forever.
19. The phrase metei mispar ('men of number,' i.e., so few they could be counted) combined with kim'at ('very few, almost nothing') emphasizes the patriarchs' vulnerability. They were garim ('sojourners, resident aliens') in the very land promised to them — possessing the promise but not yet the reality.
20. The verb vayyithallekhu ('they walked about') from halakh in the Hithpael describes ongoing, purposeless wandering — the patriarchs had no fixed territory, moving from one foreign nation to another. The repetition of miggo'el goy umimmamlakhah el am acher ('from nation to nation, from kingdom to another people') emphasizes their chronic displacement.
21. God's protection of the vulnerable patriarchs is active, not passive: lo hinnich le-ish le-oshqam ('he did not allow anyone to wrong them') and vayyokhach aleihem melakhim ('he rebuked kings for their sake'). The kings rebuked include Pharaoh (Genesis 12:17) and Abimelech (Genesis 20:3) — God defended landless nomads against the most powerful rulers on earth.
22. God's warning to the nations — al tigg'u bimshichai ('do not touch my anointed ones') — uses the verb naga ('to touch, to strike') and the title meshichim ('anointed ones'). The patriarchs are called both meshichim and nevi'im ('prophets') — Abraham is explicitly called a prophet in Genesis 20:7. The protective declaration establishes a principle that resonates throughout the David narrative: the anointed of God are under divine protection.
23. The psalm shifts from Psalm 105 material to Psalm 96, and the scope explodes: kol ha-arets ('all the earth') is now the audience. The verb basseru ('proclaim good news') from basar ('to bring news') is the root behind besorah ('good news, gospel'). God's yeshu'ah ('salvation, deliverance') is to be proclaimed daily (miyyom el yom, 'from day to day') — salvation is not a one-time event but an ongoing reality requiring continuous announcement.
24. The missionary scope continues: ba-goyim ('among the nations') and bekol ha-ammim ('among all peoples'). The content to be declared is kevodo ('his glory') and nifle'otav ('his wonders'). Glory (kavod) is the visible weight of God's character made manifest — it is what shines when God acts.
25. The reason for universal praise: ki gadol YHWH umehullal me'od ('for the LORD is great and exceedingly praised'). The comparative venora hu al kol elohim ('and he is to be feared above all gods') places the LORD in a hierarchy above all other deities — not denying their existence as claimed entities but asserting the LORD's absolute supremacy over them.
26. The contrast is devastating: kol elohei ha-ammim elilim ('all the gods of the peoples are elilim'). The word elilim is a contemptuous wordplay on elohim ('gods') — by changing one letter, 'gods' becomes 'nothings, worthless things.' The counter-claim is creation itself: va-YHWH shamayim asah ('but the LORD made the heavens'). The gods of the nations are manufactured; the LORD manufactures the cosmos.
27. Four attributes personified as attendants in God's throne room: hod ('splendor'), hadar ('majesty'), oz ('strength'), and chedvah ('joy, gladness'). The phrase bimqomo ('in his place') refers to God's dwelling — wherever God is, these four qualities are present. Notably, the Chronicler substitutes chedvah ('joy') for the Psalm 96:6 reading of tiferet ('beauty'), making joy a defining characteristic of God's presence.
28. The imperative havu ('give, ascribe') calls the mishpechot ammim ('families of peoples' — all the ethnic groups of the earth) to render kavod va-oz ('glory and strength') to the LORD. This is the psalm's most explicitly universalist moment: all human families, not just Israel, are summoned to worship.
29. The phrase kevod shemo ('the glory of his name') means the honor that corresponds to who God actually is — worship must match the reality of God's character. The threefold command — bring an offering (se'u minchah), come before him (uvo'u lefanav), and worship (hishtachavu) — moves from external action (bringing a gift) to physical approach (entering his presence) to complete self-surrender (prostration). The phrase be-hadrat

qodesh ('in the splendor of holiness') may describe sacred garments, the beauty of the holy place, or the inner disposition of worshipers clothed in holiness.

30. The verb *chilu* ('tremble, writhe') from *chul/chil* describes visceral, physical trembling in the presence of the overwhelming. The cosmological declaration *af tikkon tevel bal timmot* ('indeed the world is established, it will not be moved') asserts that God's sovereignty guarantees creation's stability. The world's firmness is not inherent but given — God holds it in place.
31. The cosmic celebration — *yismechu ha-shamayim vetagel ha-arets* ('let the heavens be glad and the earth rejoice') — summons creation itself to worship. The declaration *YHWH malakh* ('the LORD reigns' or 'the LORD has become king') is the central theological claim of the psalm and of the entire Ark installation. With the Ark in Jerusalem, God has taken up his throne in the midst of his people.
32. The sea (*yam*), its fullness (*melo'o*), the fields (*sadeh*), and everything in them (*kol asher bo*) are personified as worshipers. The verb *yir'am* ('let it thunder, let it roar') from *ra'am* gives the sea a voice of praise — its crashing waves become acclamation. The field *ya'alots* ('exults') from *alats* — even the agricultural landscape celebrates God's reign.
33. The culmination of creation's worship: *atsei ha-ya'ar yeranenu* ('the trees of the forest will sing/shout'). The verb *ranan* ('to shout for joy, to sing aloud') gives the forest a voice. The reason for cosmic celebration is *ki va lishpot et ha-arets* ('for he comes to judge the earth'). Judgment here is not punishment but governance — God coming to set right what has gone wrong. Creation celebrates because divine judgment means the end of disorder.
34. The phrase *ki tov* ('for he is good') declares God's essential character. The phrase *ki le-olam chasdo* ('for his faithful love endures forever') declares the permanence of that character. Together they form the confession that undergirds all Israelite worship.
35. The psalm shifts to petition (paralleling Psalm 106:47): *hoshi'enu* ('save us'), *qabbetsenu* ('gather us'), and *hattsilenu* ('rescue us'). The prayer for ingathering — *qabbetsenu min ha-goyim* ('gather us from the nations') — takes on heightened meaning if the Chronicler writes from a post-exilic perspective, when Jews were scattered among the nations. The purpose of salvation is worship: *le-hodot le-shem qodshekha* ('to give thanks to your holy name') and *le-hishtabbeach bithillatekha* ('to boast in your praise'). Rescue is not an end in itself but a means to restored worship.
36. The doxological formula *barukh YHWH... min ha-olam ve-ad ha-olam* appears at the end of each of the five 'books' of the Psalter (Psalm 41:13, 72:18-19, 89:52, 106:48, 150:6). Its placement here suggests the Chronicler is aware of the Psalter's structure. The congregational amen ('so be it, it is firm, it is true') transforms the doxology from a declaration into a covenant affirmation — the people ratify the praise with their collective voice.
37. The verb *vayyaazov* ('he left, he stationed') establishes a permanent appointment. Asaph's ministry is *tamid* ('continual, perpetual') — not a one-time celebration but an ongoing daily service. The phrase *lidvar yom beyomo* ('according to the matter of each day in its day') indicates a fixed liturgical schedule with specific daily requirements. This is the founding of the Temple music ministry that will persist through Solomon's Temple, the exile, and the Second Temple.
38. Obed-edom continues his transition from Ark-host to Ark-guardian, now formally appointed as a gatekeeper (*sho'er*) with sixty-eight relatives. The identification as *ben Yedutun* ('son of Jeduthun') connects him to the Jeduthun/Ethan musical family. Hosah serves alongside him. The gatekeeper role was a position of sacred trust — controlling who approached the Ark.
39. This verse reveals the dual worship system: the Ark is in Jerusalem under Asaph's musical ministry, but the Mosaic Tabernacle (*mishkan YHWH*) remains at Gibeon (*Giv'on*) under Zadok's priestly ministry. The phrase *ba-bamah asher be-Giv'on* ('at the high place that was in Gibeon') acknowledges the high place (*bamah*) without disapproval — the Gibeon high place was legitimate because the Tabernacle was there (see 2 Chronicles 1:3-6, where Solomon sacrifices there).
40. The *tamid* ('continual') burnt offering — *la-boqer vela-arev* ('morning and evening') — follows the prescription of Exodus 29:38-42 and Numbers 28:3-8. The phrase *ulkhol ha-katuv be-torat YHWH asher tsivvah al Yisra'el* ('and everything written in the Torah of the LORD which he commanded Israel') is the Chronicler's comprehensive obedience formula: the Gibeon service follows the full written Torah. The Chronicler insists that David maintained both innovation (the Ark's music ministry in Jerusalem) and tradition (the Mosaic sacrificial system at Gibeon).
41. Heman and Jeduthun (*Yedutun*, the alternate name for Ethan) serve at Gibeon alongside Zadok — providing the same musical ministry there as Asaph provides in Jerusalem. The phrase *she'ar ha-berurim* ('the rest of the chosen ones') from *barar* ('to select, to purify') indicates a curated group. The recurring refrain *ki le-olam chasdo* ('for his faithful love endures forever') appears again, linking Gibeon's worship to Jerusalem's. The same theological confession undergirds both sites.
42. The instruments at Gibeon — *chatsotsrot* (trumpets) and *metsiltayim* (cymbals) — mirror Jerusalem's ensemble. The phrase *kelei shir ha-Elohim* ('the instruments of God's song') designates these as sacred instruments dedicated to divine worship. The sons of Jeduthun serve *la-sha'ar* ('at the gate') as gatekeepers, paralleling Obed-edom's role at the Jerusalem Ark.
43. The chapter closes with domestic normalcy: *kol ha-am ish le-veito* ('all the people, each to his house') disperses the great assembly back to ordinary life. David *vayyissav le-varekh et beito* ('turned to bless his house') — the king who blessed the nation (v2) now blesses his own family. The Chronicler omits the Michal confrontation scene (2 Samuel 6:20-23), ending instead on a note of blessing and homecoming. The Ark is installed, the worship is established, the people are fed and blessed, and David goes home. The Chronicler's narrative of David's greatest day ends not with conflict but with peace.

17

Summary: *David, now settled in his palace, tells the prophet Nathan that he wants to build a house for the ark of God, which still sits under a tent. Nathan initially encourages him, but that night God speaks to Nathan with a message for David: God has never asked for a cedar house and has been content to move with Israel in a tent. Instead of David building a house (bayit) for God, God will build a house (dynasty) for David. God promises to raise up David's offspring after him and establish his kingdom forever. This descendant will build the temple, and God will be his father. Unlike Saul, God's faithful love will not be taken from him. David's throne will be established forever. David responds with a prayer of astonished gratitude, acknowledging that God has spoken about his house's distant future and treated him as though he were a man of high standing. He praises God's uniqueness — there is no God like the LORD — and asks God to fulfill the promise so that His name will be great forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire chapter turns on a single Hebrew word: bayit ('house'). David wants to build God a bayit (temple), but God reverses the offer and promises to build David a bayit (dynasty). This wordplay is the hinge of the Davidic covenant and one of the most theologically generative moments in the Hebrew Bible. The Chronicler's version differs from 2 Samuel 7 in several notable ways: the threat of discipline for the son ('if he commits iniquity, I will chasten him') found in 2 Samuel 7:14 is absent here — the Chronicler, writing for a post-exilic audience that has already experienced the exile, presents the promise without the warning, emphasizing its unconditional character. The phrase 'forever' (olam) appears repeatedly in both the oracle and the prayer, hammering home the permanence of the promise. David's prayer in verses 16-27 is one of the most theologically rich prayers in Chronicles, moving from personal humility to cosmic praise to covenantal petition.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler omits the disciplinary clause found in 2 Samuel 7:14b ('if he commits iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men'). This omission may reflect the Chronicler's theological agenda: writing after the exile, he emphasizes the unconditional, eternal nature of the Davidic promise rather than the conditional elements that might suggest the promise could fail. Some scholars see this as theological editing; others argue the Chronicler is simply presenting a different tradition. The relationship between 'your seed after you, who shall be of your sons' (v. 11) and Solomon specifically is left somewhat open — the language can apply to Solomon and beyond him to an eschatological figure. The phrase in verse 17 — 'you have regarded me according to the rank of a man of high degree' — is notoriously difficult in Hebrew and differs from the 2 Samuel parallel.*

Connections: *The Davidic covenant here is the Chronicler's version of 2 Samuel 7, one of the most quoted and developed promises in Scripture. It forms the theological backbone of messianic expectation: the promise of an eternal throne and a father-son relationship between God and the Davidic king is applied to Jesus in the New Testament (Luke 1:32-33, Hebrews 1:5). Within Chronicles, this chapter establishes the theological foundation for everything that follows — David's temple preparations (chapters 22-29), Solomon's building (2 Chronicles 2-7), and the evaluation of every subsequent king against the Davidic standard. The 'tent to tent' language (v. 5) recalls the entire wilderness period and the theology of divine presence that is portable rather than fixed. David's prayer echoes Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 2) in its movement from personal experience to cosmic theology.*

¹When David was settled in his house, he said to Nathan the prophet, "Look — I am living in a house of cedar, but the ark of the covenant of the LORD remains under tent curtains." ²Nathan said to David, "Do everything that is in your heart, for God is with you." ³But that same night, the word of God came to Nathan: ⁴"Go and tell David my servant: This is what the LORD says — You are not the one who will build me a house to dwell in. ⁵For I have not lived in a house from the day I brought Israel up until this day, but have gone from tent to tent, from one dwelling place to another. ⁶In all the places I have moved with all Israel, did I ever say a word to any of the judges of Israel whom I commanded to shepherd my people, asking, 'Why have you not built me a house of cedar?'" ⁷"Now then, say this to my servant David: This is what the LORD of Hosts says — I took you from the pasture, from following the flock, to be leader over my people Israel. ⁸I have been with you wherever you have gone and have cut off all your enemies before you. I will make your name like the name of the greatest on the earth. ⁹I

will establish a place for my people Israel and plant them so they may dwell in their own place and be disturbed no more. The sons of wickedness will no longer wear them down as they did before, ¹⁰ever since the days when I appointed judges over my people Israel. I will subdue all your enemies. And I declare to you: the LORD will build you a house. ¹¹When your days are fulfilled and you go to be with your fathers, I will raise up your offspring after you — one who will come from your own sons — and I will establish his kingdom. ¹²He is the one who will build me a house, and I will establish his throne forever. ¹³I will be his father, and he will be my son. I will not withdraw my faithful love from him as I withdrew it from the one who was before you. ¹⁴I will set him in my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever." ¹⁵Nathan spoke to David in accordance with all these words and this entire vision. ¹⁶Then King David went in and sat before the LORD and said, "Who am I, LORD God, and what is my house, that you have brought me this far? ¹⁷And this was still a small thing in your eyes, O God — you have spoken about your servant's house for the distant future and have regarded me according to the rank of a man of high standing, O LORD God. ¹⁸What more can David say to you about the honor shown to your servant? You know your servant. ¹⁹LORD, for your servant's sake and according to your own heart, you have done all this greatness, making known all these great things. ²⁰LORD, there is no one like you, and there is no God besides you — according to everything we have heard with our own ears. ²¹And who is like your people Israel — the one nation on earth that God went out to redeem as his own people, making for yourself a name of greatness and awesome deeds, driving out nations before your people whom you redeemed from Egypt? ²²You made your people Israel your own people forever, and you, LORD, became their God. ²³And now, LORD, let the word you have spoken concerning your servant and his house stand firm forever. Do as you have promised. ²⁴Let it stand firm, and let your name be great forever, so that people will say, 'The LORD of Hosts is the God of Israel — God to Israel!' And the house of David your servant will be established before you. ²⁵For you, my God, have revealed to your servant that you will build him a house. That is why your servant has found courage to pray before you. ²⁶And now, LORD — you are God, and you have promised this good thing to your servant. ²⁷Now you have been pleased to bless the house of your servant, that it may continue before you forever. For you, LORD, have blessed it, and it is blessed forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Chronicler specifies *aron berit YHWH* ('ark of the covenant of the LORD') rather than simply 'the ark of God' as in 2 Samuel 7:2, emphasizing the covenantal dimension. The *yeri'ot* ('curtains') refers to the tent David pitched for the ark in Jerusalem (1 Chronicles 16:1), not the original Mosaic tabernacle. David's observation is not a complaint but a recognition of incongruity.
2. Nathan's initial response is encouraging but premature — he speaks from human judgment before receiving divine revelation. The phrase *ki ha-Elohim immakh* ('for God is with you') is true in a general sense but does not constitute prophetic authorization for the specific project. This sets up the night oracle that will reverse Nathan's advice.
3. The contrast between Nathan's daytime encouragement and the nighttime divine correction is pointed. The *devar Elohim* ('word of God') overrides the prophet's own judgment. The night setting is typical of prophetic revelation in the Hebrew Bible.
4. The prohibition *lo attah tivneh li ha-bayit* ('you will not build me the house') is emphatic — the pronoun *attah* ('you') is stressed. It is not that no house will ever be built, but that David is not the one to build it. The Chronicler does not give the reason here (David's wars and bloodshed are stated later in 22:8 and 28:3). The title *avdi* ('my servant') is honorific despite the refusal.
5. God's self-description as moving *me-ohel el ohel u-mi-mishkan* ('from tent to tent, and from tabernacle') emphasizes divine mobility. The Chronicler's version adds *u-mi-mishkan* ('and from tabernacle'), which is absent in 2 Samuel 7:6. God is not homeless — He has chosen to be mobile, accompanying His people through their journey rather than being fixed in one location.
6. The rhetorical question expects a negative answer: God has never demanded a permanent structure. The Chronicler writes *shoftei Yisrael* ('judges of Israel') where 2 Samuel 7:7 has *shivtei Yisrael* ('tribes of Israel') — this is likely the original reading, since the context is about leaders God commanded to shepherd (*li-r'ot*) His people. The shepherd metaphor for leadership is consistent throughout Chronicles.
7. God reminds David of his origin: *min ha-naveh* ('from the pasture, sheepfold') and *min acharei ha-tzon* ('from behind the flock'). The word *nagid* ('ruler, designated leader') is distinct from *melekh* ('king') — it emphasizes that David's authority is delegated from God, not self-generated. The title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts') invokes God as commander of heavenly armies.
8. God's speech moves from past acts (I have been with you, I have cut off your enemies) to future promise (I will make your name great). The shift in tense marks the transition from historical review to prophetic oracle. The promise of a great *shem* ('name, reputation') echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 12:2).

9. The verb nata ('plant') uses agricultural imagery for settlement — Israel will be rooted like a tree in its own soil, not uprooted again. The phrase benei avlah ('sons of wickedness') refers to oppressive nations. The promise of undisturbed dwelling (lo yirgaz od, 'will tremble no more') envisions the shalom that the Davidic kingdom is meant to provide.
10. The sentence u-bayit yivneh lekha YHWH ('and a house the LORD will build for you') reverses the direction of building. The word bayit now means dynasty/royal house rather than temple. This wordplay is the theological center of the chapter and the foundation of the Davidic covenant in Chronicles.
11. The phrase male'u yamekha ('your days are fulfilled') is a dignified way of referring to death. The zera ('seed, offspring') is specified as coming mi-banekha ('from your sons'), which is more specific than 2 Samuel 7:12 ('from your body'). The Chronicler makes the dynastic succession explicit: the heir will be a literal son of David. The verb hakhinoti ('I will establish, prepare') indicates divine initiative in securing the kingdom.
12. The verse is tightly constructed: hu yivneh li bayit ('he will build me a house') answers David's original desire, and ve-khonanti et kis'o ad olam ('I will establish his throne forever') states God's reciprocal commitment. The word olam ('forever') here is the first explicit use in the oracle and carries enormous theological weight.
13. The formula ani ehyeh lo le-av ve-hu yihyeh li le-ven ('I will be to him a father, and he will be to me a son') is a covenant adoption formula. The chesed ('faithful love, loyal kindness') here is covenantal — it is not generic goodwill but the specific loyalty God pledges within a covenant relationship. The absence of the disciplinary clause found in 2 Samuel 7:14b is the most significant difference between the two versions of this oracle.
14. The shift from 'your house' (2 Samuel 7:16) to 'my house' (be-veiti) is the Chronicler's most distinctive theological contribution in this oracle. It reframes the Davidic monarchy as a subset of God's own kingship — the human king serves within God's house and God's kingdom, not as an independent sovereign. The phrase ad ha-olam ('until the forever') with the definite article intensifies the permanence.
15. The verse confirms that Nathan faithfully transmitted the entire chazon ('vision') to David. The word chazon refers to prophetic revelation received in the night, connecting this oracle to the broader prophetic tradition. Nathan corrects his earlier premature encouragement with the actual word of God.
16. David sits lifnei YHWH ('before the LORD'), presumably before the ark in the tent. His prayer opens with mi ani ('who am I?') — a question of astonished humility. The same question echoes Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:11). David recognizes the gap between his origin (a shepherd) and his current position (a king with an eternal promise).
17. The phrase le-merachok ('for the distance, for the distant future') indicates David understands the promise extends far beyond his own lifetime. The difficult phrase ke-tor ha-adam ha-ma'alah ('according to the rank/row of the man of the ascent/high degree') has generated extensive scholarly discussion. It likely means God has treated David as though he were a person of the highest rank — an expression of astonishment at God's generosity toward a former shepherd.
18. David is at a loss for words — mah yosif od David ('what more can David add?'). The verb yada ('you know') carries intimate covenantal knowledge: God knows David not merely as information but as relational commitment. David speaks of himself in the third person, a mark of humility before the divine.
19. The phrase u-khe-libbkha ('according to your heart') attributes the entire promise to God's own desire and initiative — it was not earned or requested. David's prayer recognizes that the covenant originates in the divine will, not human merit.
20. David's declaration ein kamokha ('there is none like you') is a standard Israelite praise formula but here it carries the weight of personal conviction. The phrase be-khol asher shamanu be-ozneinu ('according to all that we have heard with our ears') appeals to the accumulated testimony of God's acts throughout Israel's history — the exodus, the wilderness, the conquest, and now this covenant.
21. David moves from praise of God's uniqueness (v. 20) to praise of Israel's uniqueness (v. 21). The verb padah ('to redeem') is used twice, framing Israel's identity as a redeemed people. The phrase goy echad ba-aretz ('one nation in the earth') emphasizes Israel's singularity among the nations — unique because of what God has done, not because of intrinsic superiority.
22. The covenant formula: Israel is God's people ad olam ('forever'), and the LORD is their God. This mutual belonging is the bedrock of the Sinai covenant now reinforced by the Davidic covenant. The Chronicler connects the two covenants — Sinai and David — as expressions of the same divine commitment.
23. David's prayer shifts from praise to petition: ye'amen ad olam ('let it be confirmed forever'). The root aman ('to be firm, faithful, confirmed') is the same root from which 'amen' derives. David asks God to make His own word permanent — a prayer that God would be faithful to Himself.
24. David connects God's reputation (shem, 'name') to the fulfillment of the promise: when God keeps His word to the Davidic house, His name is magnified. The declaration YHWH Tseva'ot Elohei Yisrael ('the LORD of Hosts, God of Israel') functions as a confessional statement that others will repeat when they see God's faithfulness. The house of David being nakho ('established, firm') before God is the visible proof of God's covenant loyalty.
25. The phrase galita et ozen avdekha ('you uncovered the ear of your servant') is an idiom meaning 'you revealed, you disclosed.' David can pray boldly because God has already spoken the promise — prayer here is not generating something new but asking God to fulfill what He has already declared. The word matsa ('found') suggests that the promise gave David the confidence (literally 'found it in himself') to approach God with this petition.

26. The simple declaration *attah hu ha-Elohim* ('you are God') is David's bedrock affirmation. Because God is God, His promises are trustworthy. The *ha-tovah ha-zot* ('this good thing, this goodness') refers to the entire dynastic covenant — David summarizes the oracle as a single act of divine generosity.
27. The prayer ends with absolute confidence: *ki attah YHWH berakhta u-mevorakh le-olam* ('for you, LORD, have blessed, and it is blessed forever'). The logic is circular in the best sense — what God blesses is blessed, and what is blessed by God remains blessed *le-olam* ('forever'). The word *olam* appears for the final time in the chapter, closing the prayer with the same note of permanence that characterized the oracle. David's prayer began in humility ('who am I?') and ends in certainty ('blessed forever').

18

Summary: *This chapter catalogs David's military victories on multiple fronts, establishing the extent of his empire. He defeats the Philistines and takes Gath and its surrounding towns. He strikes Moab, making them tributaries. He defeats Hadadezer king of Zobah toward Hamath when Hadadezer tries to establish his control at the Euphrates River. David captures chariots, horsemen, and foot soldiers, hamstringing most of the chariot horses but keeping enough for a hundred chariots. When the Arameans of Damascus come to help Hadadezer, David strikes them down as well, placing garrisons in Aram of Damascus. The LORD gives David victory wherever he goes. David takes the gold shields of Hadadezer's officers and a large quantity of bronze from his cities, which Solomon later uses for the bronze sea, pillars, and vessels of the temple. Tou king of Hamath sends his son Hadoram with gifts of gold, silver, and bronze to congratulate David on his victory over their mutual enemy Hadadezer. David dedicates all this plunder to the LORD. Abishai son of Zeruiah defeats eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt. David places garrisons in Edom, and all Edom becomes subject to him. The chapter closes with a summary of David's administration: he reigns over all Israel, executing justice and righteousness for all his people. Joab is over the army, Jehoshaphat is recorder, Zadok and Ahimelech are priests, Shavsha is secretary, and Benaiah commands the Cherethites and Pelethites. David's sons are chief officials at the king's side.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler presents David's military conquests as the fulfillment of the promise made in chapter 17 — God said He would subdue David's enemies, and this chapter shows that subduing in action. Every victory is attributed to the LORD: the refrain 'the LORD gave David victory wherever he went' (vv. 6, 13) transforms a military catalog into a theological statement. The dedication of war spoils to the LORD (v. 11) is not merely piety but preparation — the Chronicler's audience knows that these materials will become the fabric of Solomon's temple. The chapter thus connects warfare and worship: David cannot build the temple, but his wars generate the wealth that will build it.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler's version differs from 2 Samuel 8 in several details. The harsh treatment of Moab in 2 Samuel 8:2 (measuring prisoners with a cord, executing two-thirds) is absent here — the Chronicler simply says Moab became David's servants, softening the portrait. The Edomite victory is attributed to Abishai son of Zeruiah (v. 12), while 2 Samuel 8:13 attributes it to David himself, and the psalm title of Psalm 60 attributes it to Joab. The number of Edomites killed (18,000) is consistent across sources. The administrative list at the chapter's end differs slightly from 2 Samuel 8:15-18, most notably in the final verse: 2 Samuel 8:18 says David's sons were priests (*kohanim*), while the Chronicler says they were 'chief officials at the king's side' — likely an interpretive clarification, since non-Levitical Davidic sons serving as priests would contradict the Chronicler's strict priestly theology.*

Connections: *The military victories parallel 2 Samuel 8 and fulfill the conquest promises of the Abrahamic and Mosaic covenants — David's empire stretches toward the Euphrates, approaching the ideal borders described in Genesis 15:18. The dedication of captured wealth to the LORD (v. 11) anticipates David's temple preparations in chapters 22 and 29. The Aramean conflicts foreshadow later Israelite-Aramean tensions throughout Kings. The administrative list establishes the governmental structure that Solomon will inherit and expand. Zadok and Ahimelech serving as co-priests reflects the dual priestly lineage that will be resolved under Solomon when Abiathar (Ahimelech's line) is dismissed.*

¹After this, David defeated the Philistines and subdued them. He took Gath and its surrounding towns from the Philistines. ²He defeated Moab, and the Moabites became David's subjects, bringing tribute. ³David defeated Hadadezer king of Zobah, toward Hamath, as Hadadezer was going to establish his control at the Euphrates River. ⁴David captured from him a

thousand chariots, seven thousand horsemen, and twenty thousand foot soldiers. David hamstringed all the chariot horses but kept enough for a hundred chariots. ⁵When the Arameans of Damascus came to help Hadadezer king of Zobah, David struck down twenty-two thousand Aramean men. ⁶David placed garrisons in Aram of Damascus, and the Arameans became David's subjects, bringing tribute. The LORD gave David victory wherever he went. ⁷David took the gold shields carried by Hadadezer's officers and brought them to Jerusalem. ⁸From Tibhath and Cun, cities of Hadadezer, David took a very large quantity of bronze. Solomon later used it to make the bronze sea, the pillars, and the bronze vessels. ⁹When Tou king of Hamath heard that David had defeated the entire army of Hadadezer king of Zobah, ¹⁰he sent his son Hadoram to King David to greet him with peace and to congratulate him on fighting and defeating Hadadezer — for Hadadezer had been at war with Tou. Hadoram brought all kinds of articles of gold, silver, and bronze. ¹¹King David dedicated all these to the LORD, along with the silver and gold he had carried off from all the nations — from Edom, Moab, the Ammonites, the Philistines, and Amalek. ¹²Abishai son of Zeruiah struck down eighteen thousand Edomites in the Valley of Salt. ¹³He placed garrisons in Edom, and all the Edomites became David's subjects. The LORD gave David victory wherever he went. ¹⁴David reigned over all Israel, administering justice and righteousness for all his people. ¹⁵Joab son of Zeruiah was over the army, and Jehoshaphat son of Ahilud was recorder. ¹⁶Zadok son of Ahitub and Abimelech son of Abiathar were priests, and Shavsha was secretary. ¹⁷Benaiah son of Jehoiada was over the Cherethites and Pelethites, and David's sons were chief officials at the king's side.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *acharei khen* ('after this') connects these victories to the Davidic covenant in chapter 17 — God promised to subdue enemies, and the fulfillment begins immediately. The verb *va-yakhni'em* ('he subdued them') indicates lasting subjugation. *Gath u-venoteiha* ('Gath and its daughters/towns') refers to the city and its satellite settlements. The Chronicler specifies Gath, which is not named in 2 Samuel 8:1's more cryptic reference to *Metheg-ammah*.
2. The Chronicler's account is notably shorter than 2 Samuel 8:2, which describes David having prisoners lie on the ground and measuring them with a cord — two cord-lengths for execution, one for survival. The Chronicler omits this detail entirely, presenting the Moabite subjugation without the harsh specifics. The *minchah* ('tribute, gift') indicates vassalage — Moab now pays regular tribute to Israel.
3. Zobah was an Aramean kingdom in the region between Damascus and Hamath (in modern Syria/Lebanon). Hadadezer ('Hadad is my help' — named for the storm god Hadad) was expanding toward the Euphrates, and David's campaign checked this expansion. The phrase *le-hatsiv yado* ('to set up his hand/power') indicates Hadadezer was establishing a monument or garrison to mark his territorial claim.
4. The numbers differ from 2 Samuel 8:4, which has 'seven hundred horsemen' — the Chronicler's 'seven thousand' may reflect a different textual tradition or a unit-counting difference (the Hebrew word for 'chariot teams' versus individual horsemen). Hamstringing (*va-ye'aqqer*) — cutting the leg tendons — rendered the horses useless for war while not killing them. David kept only a hundred chariots, consistent with the deuteronomic caution against kings accumulating horses (Deuteronomy 17:16).
5. Aram Darmeseq ('Aram of Damascus') was a separate Aramean kingdom from Zobah. Their intervention on behalf of Hadadezer indicates an Aramean coalition, which David decisively defeated. The number twenty-two thousand represents a major military engagement.
6. The theological refrain *va-yosha YHWH le-David be-khol asher halakh* ('the LORD saved/gave victory to David wherever he went') appears here for the first time in the chapter and will be repeated in verse 13. The verb *yosha* ('saved, gave victory') is the root from which 'Joshua' and 'Jesus' derive — it attributes military success entirely to divine action.
7. The *shiltei ha-zahav* ('shields of gold') were ceremonial or decorative shields carried by elite officers — symbols of wealth and military prestige. By bringing them to Jerusalem, David centralizes the spoils of war at the future temple site. These shields represent converted enemy power — the gold that once adorned a foreign army now belongs to the LORD's treasury.
8. The cities Tibhath and Cun (called Betah and Berothai in 2 Samuel 8:8) were Aramean cities in Hadadezer's territory. The Chronicler's forward reference to Solomon's temple construction (*nechoshet rabbah me'od*, 'very much bronze') is a signature editorial technique — he reads David's history through the lens of temple preparation.
9. Hamath was a major city-state on the Orontes River in Syria. Tou (called Toi in 2 Samuel 8:9) was Hadadezer's rival, so David's victory over their mutual enemy was welcome news. The phrase *kol cheil* ('the entire army') emphasizes the completeness of David's victory.
10. The son's name is Hadoram here (called Joram in 2 Samuel 8:10 — possibly a substitution replacing the theophoric element 'Jo-' for 'Hadad'). The phrase *li-sh'ol lo le-shalom* ('to ask him for peace') is a diplomatic greeting formula. The gifts of gold, silver, and bronze are tribute acknowledging David's new status as the dominant power in the region.

11. The verb *hiqdish* ('he dedicated, he set apart as holy') is the key act: David consecrates the spoils of war for sacred use. The list of nations — Edom, Moab, Ammon, Philistines, Amalek — represents the full circle of Israel's regional enemies. Every direction of conquest feeds the temple treasury. The Chronicler sees these dedications as the practical foundation for temple construction.
12. The Chronicler attributes this victory to Abishai son of Zeruiah, while 2 Samuel 8:13 credits David and the superscription of Psalm 60 credits Joab. The Valley of Salt is south of the Dead Sea, near the border of Edom. The number eighteen thousand represents a decisive defeat of Edomite military forces. The discrepancy in attribution may reflect different roles — David as supreme commander, Joab as field general, and Abishai as the specific unit commander who led the engagement.
13. The refrain *va-yosha YHWH le-David* ('the LORD gave victory to David') repeats from verse 6, framing the entire military catalog as a record of divine faithfulness. The *netsivim* ('garrisons, standing posts') represent permanent military occupation ensuring continued tribute and submission.
14. The summary statement presents David as the ideal king: he rules *kol Yisrael* ('all Israel' — the united kingdom) and his governance is characterized by *mishpat u-tsedakah* ('justice and righteousness'). This pair of terms is the standard prophetic description of just governance (Isaiah 9:6, Jeremiah 22:3, 23:5). The Chronicler presents David's reign as the model against which all subsequent kings will be measured.
15. The administrative list begins with the two most prominent officials. Joab as commander of the *tsava* ('army, host') held the most powerful military position. The *mazkir* ('recorder, remembrancer') was a high-ranking court official responsible for royal records and communications — similar to a chief of staff or state secretary.
16. The dual priesthood of Zadok and Abimelech (called Ahimelech in 2 Samuel 8:17 — the names are easily confused in Hebrew) represents two priestly lineages serving simultaneously. Zadok's line will ultimately prevail under Solomon. The *sofer* ('scribe, secretary') was responsible for official correspondence and record-keeping — a crucial administrative role in an expanding empire.
17. The Cherethites and Pelethites were professional soldiers — likely of Aegean or Philistine origin — serving as the royal bodyguard and elite military unit. Benaiah commanded this prestigious force. The final note about David's sons is the Chronicler's most significant change from 2 Samuel 8:18, which calls them *kohanim* ('priests'). The Chronicler writes *ha-rishonim le-yad ha-melekh* ('the first/chief ones at the hand of the king'), avoiding any suggestion that non-Levites served as priests. This reflects the Chronicler's strict adherence to the principle that only descendants of Aaron may serve as priests.

19

Summary: *Nahash king of the Ammonites dies, and David sends envoys to comfort his son Hanun, honoring the chesed ('faithful love') that Nahash had shown David. But Hanun's advisors convince him that David's envoys are spies, and Hanun humiliates them — shaving half their beards and cutting their garments at the waist. David tells the humiliated men to wait in Jericho until their beards regrow. When the Ammonites realize they have made themselves odious to David, they hire Aramean mercenaries — chariots and horsemen from Aram-naharaim, Aram-maacah, and Zobah — spending a thousand talents of silver. The combined Ammonite-Aramean force arrays for battle. David sends Joab with the entire army. Joab sees he faces enemies on two fronts and divides his forces: he takes the elite troops against the Arameans and gives his brother Abishai command of the force facing the Ammonites at the city gate. They agree to support each other as needed. Joab encourages his forces: 'Be strong, and let us fight bravely for our people and for the cities of our God — and may the LORD do what is good in his eyes.' The Arameans flee before Joab, and when the Ammonites see the Arameans retreating, they also flee before Abishai into the city. Joab returns to Jerusalem. The defeated Arameans regroup, summoning reinforcements from beyond the Euphrates under Shophach, commander of Hadadezer's army. David musters all Israel, crosses the Jordan, and defeats them. Seven thousand chariot drivers and forty thousand foot soldiers fall, including Shophach. When Hadadezer's vassals see they are defeated, they make peace with David and become his subjects. The Arameans are no longer willing to help the Ammonites.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joab's battlefield speech in verse 13 is one of the most theologically balanced statements by a military commander in the Hebrew Bible: 'Be strong, and let us fight bravely for our people and for the cities of our God — and may the LORD do what is good in his eyes.' It combines human responsibility (be strong, fight) with divine sovereignty (the LORD will do what is good). Joab does not claim guaranteed victory; he commits the outcome to God while refusing passivity. The humiliation of David's envoys — the shaving of beards and cutting of garments — was a devastating insult in the ancient Near East, striking at the envoys' masculinity and dignity. David's response (wait at Jericho) shows both practical wisdom and care for his men's honor. The escalation from diplomatic insult to full-scale regional war demonstrates how a single act of disrespect can cascade into international conflict.*

Translation Friction: The narrative raises the question of why David had a positive relationship with Nahash the Ammonite.

First Samuel 11 portrays Nahash as a brutal aggressor who threatened to gouge out the right eye of every man in Jabesh-gilead. If Nahash showed chesed to David, it was likely during David's years as a fugitive from Saul — the enemy of David's enemy was David's friend. The Chronicler omits the Bathsheba and Uriah episode entirely from his narrative. In 2 Samuel, the Ammonite war is the backdrop for David's adultery (2 Samuel 11-12); the Chronicler passes directly from the war's beginning to its conclusion, presenting David's military campaigns without the moral catastrophe that accompanies them in Samuel. This is the most significant omission in the Chronicler's David narrative.

Connections: This chapter parallels 2 Samuel 10 closely. The Ammonite war connects forward to chapter 20, where Rabbah is finally captured. The Aramean defeat completes the subjugation described in chapter 18 and fulfills the covenant promise of enemy defeat from chapter 17. Joab's theological statement anticipates similar expressions of trust-in-battle found in later biblical tradition. The hiring of Aramean mercenaries introduces the economics of ancient warfare — the thousand talents of silver represents an enormous expenditure, indicating how seriously the Ammonites took the threat.

¹Some time later, Nahash king of the Ammonites died, and his son reigned in his place. ²David said, "I will show faithful love to Hanun son of Nahash, because his father showed faithful love to me." So David sent envoys to comfort him over his father's death. David's servants came to the land of the Ammonites, to Hanun, to comfort him. ³But the Ammonite officials said to Hanun, "Do you really think David is honoring your father by sending you comforters? Have not his servants come to you to search out, overthrow, and spy on the land?" ⁴So Hanun seized David's envoys, shaved them, cut their garments in half at the waist, and sent them away. ⁵People went and told David what had happened to the men. He sent messengers to meet them, because the men were deeply humiliated. The king said, "Stay in Jericho until your beards have grown back, and then return." ⁶When the Ammonites realized they had made themselves odious to David, Hanun and the Ammonites sent a thousand talents of silver to hire chariots and horsemen from Aram-naharaim, Aram-maacah, and Zobah. ⁷They hired thirty-two thousand chariots, along with the king of Maacah and his troops. They came and camped before Medeba, while the Ammonites assembled from their cities and came out for battle. ⁸When David heard this, he sent Joab with the entire army of warriors. ⁹The Ammonites came out and formed their battle line at the entrance of the city, while the kings who had come were positioned separately in the open field. ¹⁰When Joab saw that the battle line was set against him both in front and behind, he selected the best of Israel's elite troops and drew them up against the Arameans. ¹¹The rest of the troops he placed under the command of his brother Abishai, and they drew up in battle formation against the Ammonites. ¹²He said, "If the Arameans are too strong for me, you will come to my rescue. And if the Ammonites are too strong for you, I will rescue you. ¹³Be strong! Let us fight bravely for our people and for the cities of our God. And may the LORD do what is good in his eyes." ¹⁴Joab and the troops with him advanced against the Arameans for battle, and the Arameans fled before him. ¹⁵When the Ammonites saw that the Arameans had fled, they also fled before Abishai his brother and retreated into the city. Then Joab returned to Jerusalem. ¹⁶When the Arameans saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they sent messengers and brought out the Arameans from beyond the Euphrates River, with Shophach, commander of Hadadezer's army, at their head. ¹⁷When David was told, he assembled all Israel, crossed the Jordan, advanced against them, and drew up in battle formation. David arranged his forces against the Arameans, and they engaged in battle. ¹⁸The Arameans fled before Israel, and David killed seven thousand Aramean chariot fighters and forty thousand foot soldiers. He also killed Shophach, the army commander. ¹⁹When Hadadezer's vassals saw that they had been defeated by Israel, they made peace with David and became his subjects. The Arameans were never willing to help the Ammonites again.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal transition formula — Nahash dies and his son reigns tachtav ('in his place') — follows the standard succession pattern. Nahash's death triggers the diplomatic exchange that leads to war. The Ammonite capital was Rabbah (modern Amman, Jordan).
2. The verb nacham ('to comfort, console') frames David's mission as genuinely diplomatic — mourning customs required reciprocal expressions of grief between allied rulers. David's intention to show chesed ('faithful love, covenant loyalty') reflects an existing alliance or personal bond with Nahash. The circumstances of Nahash's earlier chesed toward David are not specified in Chronicles.

3. The three infinitives *la-chqor ve-la-hafokh u-le-ragel* ('to search, to overthrow, and to spy') form an escalating accusation. The advisors interpret David's diplomacy as espionage. Their suspicion may not be entirely unreasonable — ancient Near Eastern diplomacy often included intelligence-gathering — but their response will prove catastrophically disproportionate.
4. The double humiliation — shaving (*va-yegallechem*) and cutting garments (*va-yikhrot et madveihem*) — attacked both personal dignity and national honor. The beard was a sign of manhood and status in the ancient Near East; shaving it was a profound insult. Cutting garments *ba-chetsi ad ha-mifsa'ah* ('in the middle up to the buttocks') exposed them publicly. These envoys represented David himself, so the insult was directed at Israel's king.
5. David's response shows practical compassion — rather than requiring the humiliated envoys to appear in Jerusalem in their shamed condition, he sends word to wait in Jericho (the first major city on the road from Ammon). The verb *nikhlamu* ('they were ashamed, humiliated') indicates deep social disgrace. The beard's regrowth would take several weeks, during which the political situation would escalate toward war.
6. The phrase *hit'ba'ashu im David* ('they made themselves stink with David') is vivid — the diplomatic relationship has become repulsive. A thousand talents of silver (approximately 34 metric tons) represents an enormous military expenditure. The three Aramean regions — *Aram-naharaim* (Mesopotamia/Upper Euphrates), *Aram-maacah* (near Mount Hermon), and *Zobah* (in the Beqa valley) — indicate the Ammonites assembled a broad coalition.
7. Thirty-two thousand chariots is an extraordinarily large number and may refer to chariot teams (driver plus warriors) rather than individual vehicles, or may include all associated personnel. Medeba was a city east of the Dead Sea in Moabite territory, south of the Ammonite capital Rabbah. The Aramean mercenaries camped separately from the Ammonites, creating the two-front threat that Joab will face.
8. David dispatches Joab with *kol tseva ha-gibborim* ('the entire army of mighty men'), indicating this was not a limited engagement but a full military mobilization. The *gibborim* were elite professional soldiers, David's most experienced fighting force.
9. The tactical situation is clear: the Ammonites hold a defensive position at the city gate of Rabbah, while the Aramean mercenary forces are stationed in the open field. This creates a pincer threat — Joab's forces could be caught between two enemy formations. The phrase *le-vaddam ba-sadeh* ('by themselves in the field') indicates the Arameans maintained a separate command structure.
10. Joab's tactical assessment is precise: *penei ha-milchamah elav panim ve-achor* ('the face of battle was toward him — front and back'). He is caught between two forces. His response — personally taking the *bachur* ('chosen, elite') troops against the Arameans — indicates he regarded the Aramean mercenaries as the more dangerous threat. By defeating the stronger force himself, he could cause the weaker Ammonite force to collapse.
11. Joab divides his forces between himself and Abishai, his brother and trusted lieutenant. The *yeter ha-am* ('the rest of the people') face the Ammonites at the city gate. The brothers' military partnership is a recurring feature of David's campaigns (see also 2 Samuel 10, 18, 20).
12. The mutual aid agreement between the brothers is a practical military arrangement: each watches the other's engagement, ready to reinforce if needed. The verb *hosha'tikha* ('I will save/rescue you') uses the same root (*yasha*) as the theological refrain 'the LORD gave David victory' — human and divine rescue work together in the Chronicler's military theology.
13. The phrase *arei Eloheinu* ('cities of our God') frames the war as defensive — these cities belong to the LORD, and their defense is a sacred obligation. The final clause *ha-tov be-einav ya'aseh* ('what is good in his eyes he will do') is a statement of absolute trust in divine sovereignty without presumption about the specific outcome.
14. The Aramean rout is described with striking brevity: *va-yanusu mi-panav* ('they fled from before him'). The mercenary army, despite its enormous size, does not stand against Joab's advance. The quick collapse suggests that hired soldiers fight differently than those defending their homeland.
15. The domino effect of the Aramean retreat confirms Joab's tactical judgment — the Ammonite defense depended on the Aramean mercenaries. Once that force collapsed, the Ammonites abandoned the field and retreated behind the walls of Rabbah. The campaign is not yet complete (the siege of Rabbah comes in chapter 20), but the field battle is decisively won.
16. The defeated Arameans escalate by summoning reinforcements from *me-ever ha-nahar* ('from beyond the River,' the Euphrates). This is a major regional mobilization under Shophach (Shobach in 2 Samuel 10:16), Hadadezer's chief military commander. The conflict has expanded from a local Ammonite dispute to a confrontation with the entire Aramean military network.
17. David now takes personal command, gathering *kol Yisrael* ('all Israel') for this decisive engagement. Crossing the Jordan indicates the battle takes place in Transjordan, east of Israel's core territory. The repeated verb *va-ya'arokh* ('he drew up, arranged') emphasizes the deliberate, organized nature of the Israelite advance — this is not a skirmish but a set-piece battle.
18. The casualty numbers — seven thousand chariot fighters and forty thousand infantry — represent a catastrophic defeat for the Aramean coalition. The death of Shophach, the supreme commander, signals the complete collapse of the Aramean military leadership. The number seven thousand for chariots differs from 2 Samuel 10:18, which has 'seven hundred chariots' — the discrepancy may reflect different counting methods or textual transmission.
19. The verb *va-yashlimu* ('they made peace') indicates formal submission — Hadadezer's vassal kings surrendered their independence and became David's subjects. The final note — *lo avah Aram le-hoshi'a et benei Ammon od* ('Aram was no longer willing to save the Ammonites') — closes the chapter with a decisive geopolitical shift. The Ammonites have lost their most powerful ally. The siege of Rabbah (chapter 20) will follow without Aramean interference.

20

Summary: *The chapter opens at the turn of the year, the season when kings go out to war. Joab leads the army out and ravages the land of the Ammonites, then besieges and strikes Rabbah, while David remains in Jerusalem. Joab captures Rabbah, and David takes the crown from the head of the Ammonite king — a crown weighing a talent of gold, set with a precious stone — and it is placed on David's head. He carries off a great quantity of plunder from the city and puts the inhabitants to forced labor with saws, iron picks, and axes. He does the same to all the Ammonite cities, then returns to Jerusalem. The chapter then records three separate encounters with Philistine giants. At Gezer, Sibbecai the Hushathite strikes down Sippai, a descendant of the Rephaim. In another battle with the Philistines, Elhanan son of Jair strikes down Lahmi, brother of Goliath the Gittite, whose spear shaft was like a weaver's beam. At Gath, a man of extraordinary size with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot — twenty-four digits — taunts Israel, and Jonathan son of Shimea, David's brother, strikes him down. These Rephaim descendants fell at the hands of David and his servants.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's most dramatic editorial decision is what this chapter omits. In 2 Samuel, the note 'at the time when kings go out to war... David remained in Jerusalem' is the setup for the entire Bathsheba-Uriah catastrophe (2 Samuel 11-12). The Chronicler includes the military marker but skips the moral disaster entirely, moving directly from the siege to the capture of Rabbah. This is not ignorance — the Chronicler's audience knew the story — but a deliberate choice to present David's legacy through the lens of temple preparation rather than personal failure. The Philistine giant narratives connect to the Goliath tradition: these are remnants of the Rephaim, the ancient giant race, being systematically eliminated by David's warriors. The note about Elhanan killing 'Lahmi the brother of Goliath' is the Chronicler's harmonization of a tension in 2 Samuel 21:19, which appears to credit Elhanan with killing Goliath himself.*

Translation Friction: *The crown weighing a talent of gold (approximately 34 kilograms / 75 pounds) is extremely heavy for headwear. Some interpreters suggest it was placed on David's head only ceremonially or briefly, or that it was suspended above his throne rather than worn. The forced labor imposed on the Ammonites (v. 3) raises ethical questions — the Hebrew is difficult, and some read it as execution by saws and axes rather than labor assignment; the Chronicler's version slightly softens the 2 Samuel 12:31 parallel. The Elhanan-Goliath problem is a well-known textual crux: 2 Samuel 21:19 says Elhanan killed Goliath; 1 Chronicles 20:5 says Elhanan killed Lahmi, brother of Goliath. Whether the Chronicler preserves an older tradition or edits to resolve the tension with 1 Samuel 17 is debated.*

Connections: *The capture of Rabbah completes the Ammonite war begun in chapter 19. The forced labor of conquered peoples echoes the pattern of Solomon's labor force (2 Chronicles 2:17-18). The Philistine giant encounters connect back to the foundational David-Goliath narrative (1 Samuel 17) and the broader theme of the Rephaim — the ancient inhabitants whose defeat marked Israel's complete possession of the land (Deuteronomy 2-3). The 'weaver's beam' description of the giant's spear shaft is the same phrase used for Goliath's spear in 1 Samuel 17:7, linking these encounters to the original giant-slaying tradition.*

¹At the turn of the year, at the time when kings go out to war, Joab led out the army force, ravaged the land of the Ammonites, and came and besieged Rabbah — while David stayed in Jerusalem. Joab struck Rabbah and demolished it. ²David took the crown from the head of their king. He found it weighed a talent of gold, with a precious stone set in it, and it was placed on David's head. He also carried off a very large amount of plunder from the city. ³He brought out the people who were in the city and set them to work with saws, iron picks, and axes. David did this to all the Ammonite cities. Then David and all the army returned to Jerusalem. ⁴After this, war broke out at Gezer with the Philistines. At that time, Sibbecai the Hushathite struck down Sippai, who was a descendant of the Rephaim, and the Philistines were subdued. ⁵There was another battle with the Philistines, and Elhanan son of Jair struck down Lahmi the brother of Goliath the Gittite, whose spear shaft was like a weaver's beam. ⁶There was yet another battle at Gath, where there was a man of extraordinary size who had six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot — twenty-four in all. He too was a descendant of the Rephaim. ⁷When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimea, David's brother, struck him down. ⁸These were descendants of the Rephaim in

Gath, and they fell by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-yashchet* ('he devastated, laid waste') describes systematic destruction of the Ammonite countryside — burning fields, destroying infrastructure — before besieging the capital. The phrase *va-yeherseha* ('he demolished it') at the end indicates Rabbah's walls and fortifications were broken down. David's remaining in Jerusalem is stated without comment — the Chronicler neither explains nor excuses it.
2. The *ateret malkam* ('crown of their king') could also be read as 'the crown of Milcom' — the Ammonite deity — if the vowels are adjusted. Either reading is symbolically powerful: David takes the royal or divine symbol of Ammonite sovereignty. A *kikkar zahav* ('talent of gold') weighs approximately 34 kilograms (75 pounds). The *even yeqarah* ('precious stone') set in the crown was likely a large gemstone of significant value.
3. The Hebrew *va-yasar ba-megerah* ('he sawed with the saw') is ambiguous — it could describe forced labor (putting captives to work with these tools) or execution (cutting captives with these instruments). The Chronicler's version parallels 2 Samuel 12:31 but with slight differences that may soften the reading. The phrase *le-khol arei benei Ammon* ('to all the cities of the Ammonites') indicates the treatment was applied throughout the conquered territory, not only at Rabbah.
4. Gezer (called Gob in 2 Samuel 21:18) was a strategic city on the western edge of the hill country. Sibbecai appears among David's elite warriors (1 Chronicles 11:29). Sippai (Saph in 2 Samuel 21:18) is identified as *mi-liledei ha-refa'im* ('from the descendants of the Rephaim') — the ancient giant race that inhabited Canaan before Israel. The systematic defeat of Rephaim descendants completes the conquest that began with Goliath.
5. The name Lahmi may derive from 'Bethlehemite' (*ha-bet ha-lachmi*) in the 2 Samuel parallel, possibly through textual corruption or deliberate reinterpretation. The *manor oregim* ('weaver's beam') was a thick wooden rod used in weaving, providing a vivid comparison for the massive spear shaft. The Gittite designation connects this giant to Gath, the same city as Goliath.
6. The *ish middah* ('man of measure/great size') at Gath has polydactyly — six fingers and six toes on each extremity, twenty-four digits total. This physical anomaly is associated with the Rephaim line and serves as a marker of the giant race's abnormality. The notation *ve-gam hu nolad le-ha-rafa* ('he too was born to the Rapha/giant') connects him to the same lineage as Sippai and Lahmi.
7. The verb *va-yecharef* ('he taunted, reproached, defied') is the same verb used for Goliath's taunting of Israel in 1 Samuel 17:10, 25-26. The pattern repeats: a giant defies Israel, and a member of David's family responds. Jonathan (David's nephew, son of David's brother Shimea) inherits the giant-killing tradition. The narrative presents the defeat of the Rephaim as a family enterprise within David's house.
8. The summary statement attributes the giant defeats collectively to David and his servants — *be-yad David u-ve-yad avadav* ('by the hand of David and by the hand of his servants'). Though David personally killed Goliath in 1 Samuel 17, the later Rephaim are killed by his warriors. The phrase credits David as the leader under whose authority the conquests occurred while acknowledging the actual fighters. The Rephaim of Gath are now eliminated, completing the destruction of the giant lineage.

21

Summary: An adversary (ha-satan) rises against Israel and incites David to take a census of the people. David instructs Joab and the commanders to go through all Israel from Beersheba to Dan and bring back the count. Joab objects, asking why the king would bring guilt on Israel, but David's word prevails. Joab travels throughout the land and returns to Jerusalem with the numbers: 1,100,000 men who drew the sword in Israel, and 470,000 in Judah — though he does not count Levi and Benjamin because the king's command is detestable to him. The census displeases God, and He strikes Israel. David confesses to God: 'I have sinned greatly — please take away the guilt of your servant, for I have acted very foolishly.' The LORD speaks to Gad, David's seer, offering David a choice of three punishments: three years of famine, three months of being swept away by enemies, or three days of the sword of the LORD — plague in the land with the angel of the LORD bringing destruction. David chooses to fall into the hand of the LORD rather than into human hands, because God's mercies are very great. The LORD sends a plague on Israel, and seventy thousand men die. God sends an angel to destroy Jerusalem, but as the angel is about to strike, the LORD sees and relents, telling the angel to stop. The angel is standing at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. David looks up and sees the angel between earth and heaven with a drawn sword stretched out over Jerusalem, and he and the elders fall facedown in sackcloth. David cries out, taking full blame: the sin was his, not the people's. Gad tells David to go up and build an altar at Ornan's threshing floor. Ornan, who has also seen the angel, offers the site and oxen for free, but David insists on paying the full price — he will not offer to the LORD what costs him nothing. He pays six hundred shekels of gold. David builds the altar, offers burnt offerings and peace offerings, and calls on the LORD. The LORD answers with fire from heaven on the altar of burnt offering. The LORD commands the angel to sheath his sword. David recognizes that this place — the threshing floor of Ornan — is where the house of the LORD God will be and where the altar of burnt offering for Israel will stand.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological significance of this chapter for the Chronicler cannot be overstated — it identifies the future temple site. The entire narrative arc moves from sin to judgment to repentance to sacrifice to divine acceptance to the establishment of sacred space. The threshing floor of Ornan becomes the site of Solomon's temple (2 Chronicles 3:1), and the Chronicler traces this all the way back to David's census and God's response. The most striking difference from 2 Samuel 24 is the opening verse: in Samuel, 'the anger of the LORD was kindled against Israel, and he incited David'; here, 'Satan (ha-satan) stood against Israel and incited David.' The Chronicler removes God as the direct agent of incitement and introduces a figure called ha-satan ('the adversary'). The fire from heaven answering David's sacrifice (v. 26) echoes Elijah on Carmel (1 Kings 18:38) and Solomon's temple dedication (2 Chronicles 7:1) — divine fire marks accepted worship. David's insistence on paying full price ('I will not take what is yours for the LORD, or offer burnt offerings that cost me nothing') is a statement about the theology of sacrifice: genuine worship requires genuine cost.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of ha-satan in verse 1 is a major interpretive question. The word appears with the definite article (ha-satan, 'the adversary/the accuser') — it may refer to a cosmic adversarial figure (as in Job 1-2 and Zechariah 3:1), to a human adversary, or to an angelic being functioning in an adversarial role within God's heavenly court. The Chronicler's substitution of ha-satan for 'the LORD' (2 Samuel 24:1) represents a theological development in how Israel understood divine agency and the origin of evil. The price David pays differs between accounts: 2 Samuel 24:24 says fifty shekels of silver for the threshing floor and oxen; 1 Chronicles 21:25 says six hundred shekels of gold for the site — the Chronicler's higher amount may reflect the greater extent of the property or the elevated significance of the future temple site. The census numbers also differ from 2 Samuel 24: Israel is 1,100,000 here versus 800,000 in Samuel; Judah is 470,000 here versus 500,000 in Samuel.*

Connections: *The threshing floor of Ornan is identified in 2 Chronicles 3:1 as the site of Solomon's temple and is traditionally associated with Mount Moriah, where Abraham bound Isaac (Genesis 22). This chapter thus connects the three great acts of faith/sacrifice in Israel's sacred geography: Abraham's near-sacrifice of Isaac, David's altar and sacrifice, and Solomon's temple. The fire from heaven (v. 26) creates a chain with the tabernacle dedication (Leviticus 9:24), Elijah on Carmel (1 Kings 18:38), and Solomon's dedication (2 Chronicles 7:1) — in each case, divine fire validates proper worship. David's confession ('I have sinned greatly') connects to his character as a man who, unlike Saul, acknowledges sin and submits to divine judgment. The angel with the drawn sword echoes the angel who blocked Balaam's path (Numbers 22:23) — divine messengers with weapons mark moments of extreme danger and divine communication.*

¹An adversary rose up against Israel and incited David to count Israel. ²David said to Joab and the commanders of the army, "Go, count Israel from Beersheba to Dan and bring the results to me, so that I may know the total." ³Joab answered, "May the LORD multiply his people a hundred times over! My lord the king — are they not all my lord's servants? Why does my lord seek this? Why should it bring guilt on Israel?" ⁴But the king's word prevailed over Joab. So Joab went out, traveled throughout all Israel, and returned to Jerusalem. ⁵Joab reported the census total to David: all Israel numbered 1,100,000 men who could draw the sword, and Judah numbered 470,000 men who could draw the sword. ⁶But Joab did not count Levi and Benjamin among them, because the king's command was detestable to him. ⁷This matter was evil in God's sight, and he struck Israel. ⁸David said to God, "I have sinned greatly in doing this. Now please take away the guilt of your servant, for I have acted very foolishly." ⁹The LORD spoke to Gad, David's seer: ¹⁰"Go and say to David: This is what the LORD says — I am holding out three things to you. Choose one of them, and I will carry it out against you." ¹¹Gad came to David and said to him, "This is what the LORD says — take your choice: ¹²either three years of famine, or three months of being swept away before your enemies while their sword overtakes you, or three days of the sword of the LORD — plague in the land, with the angel of the LORD bringing destruction throughout all the territory of Israel. Now consider what answer I should take back to the one who sent me." ¹³David said to Gad, "I am in terrible anguish. Let me fall into the hand of the LORD, for his mercies are very great, but do not let me fall into the hand of man." ¹⁴The LORD sent a plague on Israel, and seventy thousand men of Israel fell. ¹⁵God sent an angel to Jerusalem to destroy it, but as the angel was destroying, the LORD looked and relented concerning the disaster. He said to the destroying angel, "Enough! Now withdraw your hand." The angel of the LORD was standing at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. ¹⁶David looked up and saw the angel of the LORD standing

between earth and heaven, with a drawn sword in his hand stretched out over Jerusalem. David and the elders, clothed in sackcloth, fell facedown. ¹⁷David said to God, "Was it not I who gave the order to count the people? I am the one who sinned; I have done terrible wrong. But these sheep — what have they done? LORD my God, let your hand fall on me and on my father's house, but not on your people as a plague." ¹⁸The angel of the LORD told Gad to say to David that David should go up and set up an altar to the LORD at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁹David went up in obedience to the word of Gad, who had spoken in the name of the LORD. ²⁰Ornan turned and saw the angel. His four sons who were with him hid themselves. Ornan had been threshing wheat. ²¹David came toward Ornan, and when Ornan looked up and saw David, he came out of the threshing floor and bowed to David with his face to the ground. ²²David said to Ornan, "Give me the site of this threshing floor so I can build an altar to the LORD on it. Sell it to me at full price, so that the plague may be stopped from the people." ²³Ornan said to David, "Take it! Let my lord the king do whatever is good in his eyes. Look — I give the oxen for burnt offerings, the threshing sledges for firewood, and the wheat for a grain offering. I give it all." ²⁴But King David said to Ornan, "No — I insist on buying it at the full price. I will not take what is yours and give it to the LORD, or offer burnt offerings that cost me nothing." ²⁵David paid Ornan six hundred shekels of gold by weight for the site. ²⁶David built an altar to the LORD there and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings. He called on the LORD, and the LORD answered him with fire from heaven on the altar of burnt offering. ²⁷The LORD commanded the angel, and he returned his sword to its sheath. ²⁸At that time, when David saw that the LORD had answered him at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite, he continued to sacrifice there — as recorded in the genealogies. ²⁹The tabernacle of the LORD, which Moses had made in the wilderness, and the altar of burnt offering were at that time at the high place in Gibeon. ³⁰But David could not go to Gibeon to inquire of God, because he was terrified by the sword of the angel of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-yaset* ('he incited, provoked') is the same verb used in 2 Samuel 24:1, but with a different subject. The root *satan* means 'to oppose, to accuse, to act as adversary.' Whether this is a proper name (Satan) or a title (the adversary) depends on the presence of the definite article and the theological framework of the reader. The Chronicler's audience would have recognized the shift from divine anger to adversarial incitement as theologically significant.
2. The phrase *mi-Be'er Sheva ve-ad Dan* ('from Beersheba to Dan') describes the full extent of the land from south to north — this is a comprehensive military census, not a limited regional count. David's command *ve-ed'ah et misparam* ('so that I may know their number') focuses on personal knowledge of the nation's military strength, which may be the heart of the sin — the king treating the people as a resource he can quantify rather than a trust from God.
3. Joab's objection is both diplomatic and theological. His blessing — *yosef YHWH* ('may the LORD add') — implies that Israel's strength should be attributed to God, not quantified by the king. His question *lamah yihyeh le-ashmah le-Yisrael* ('why should it be a guilt/trespass offering upon Israel?') warns that the census will bring communal guilt. The word *ashmah* carries sacrificial overtones — it is the word for 'guilt offering' — suggesting the census creates a debt that will require costly atonement.
4. The phrase *devar ha-melek chazaq al Yo'av* ('the word of the king was strong over Joab') indicates royal authority overriding military counsel. Despite Joab's correct theological instinct, the king's command is legally binding. Joab obeys under protest — his compliance does not indicate agreement.
5. The phrase *sholef cherev* ('drawing the sword') specifies that this is a military census — the count includes only men of fighting age. The numbers differ from 2 Samuel 24:9 (800,000 for Israel, 500,000 for Judah). The Chronicler's higher total for Israel and lower total for Judah may reflect different counting methods or different textual traditions. Together the totals represent an enormous fighting force, which is precisely the kind of self-reliant calculation that made the census sinful.
6. Joab's refusal to count Levi and Benjamin is a form of passive resistance. The verb *nit'av* ('was detestable, abominable') is a strong word — Joab regarded the census as morally repugnant. Levi's exemption has a theological basis (the Levites belong to the LORD and are not counted in military censuses per Numbers 1:49). Benjamin's exemption may reflect the fact that Jerusalem, in Benjamin's territory, was where the census was being administered, and Joab returned before completing it.
7. The phrase *va-yera be-einei ha-Elohim* ('it was evil in the eyes of God') is the standard formula for divine displeasure. The striking (*va-yakh*) of Israel indicates immediate judgment — the nation suffers for the king's sin. The theology is corporate: the king's action brings consequences on the entire people.
8. David's confession — *chatati me'od* ('I have sinned greatly') — is immediate and unqualified. He does not blame the adversary, Joab, or circumstances. The request *ha'aver na et avon avdekha* ('please pass over/take away the iniquity of your servant') asks for removal of guilt. The phrase *niskalti me'od* ('I have been very foolish') adds self-assessment: the sin was not malicious but deeply unwise. David's willingness to confess

distinguishes him from Saul, who repeatedly deflected blame.

9. Gad is identified as chozeh David ('David's seer') — a court prophet who receives divine visions and communicates them to the king. The chozeh ('seer, visionary') is one of several terms for prophetic figures in the Hebrew Bible, alongside navi ('prophet') and ro'eh ('seer'). Gad appeared earlier in David's fugitive years (1 Samuel 22:5).
10. The offer of three options — shalosh anokhi noteh alekha ('three I am extending over you') — gives David a choice within judgment. The punishment is certain; only its form is open. This structure reveals something about divine justice in the Chronicler's theology: there are consequences, but within those consequences, God allows the human agent some measure of choice.
11. The verb qabbel ('accept, receive, take') frames the punishment options as something David must actively accept rather than passively endure. Gad faithfully delivers the divine message despite its severity.
12. The three options descend in duration but perhaps not in severity: three years, three months, three days. The third option — cherev YHWH ve-dever ('the sword of the LORD and plague') — is distinguished from the others by being explicitly divine in agency, with the mal'akh YHWH ('angel of the LORD') as the executor. The phrase et sholchi ('the one who sent me') maintains Gad's role as intermediary — he reports back to God. The number three in 2 Samuel 24:13 reads 'seven years' rather than three — the Chronicler's 'three' creates a more symmetrical pattern (3-3-3).
13. The phrase be-yad YHWH ('into the hand of the LORD') versus be-yad adam ('into the hand of man') sets up a binary: divine judgment, however severe, is preferable to human cruelty because God is capable of mercy in ways that enemies are not. David implicitly selects the third option (three days of plague), though the text presents it as a general principle rather than a specific selection.
14. The dever ('plague, pestilence') strikes immediately after David's choice. The death toll — shiv'im elef ish ('seventy thousand men') — is catastrophic. The number is identical to 2 Samuel 24:15. The brevity of the verse intensifies its impact — no description of suffering, just the stark count of the dead.
15. The phrase va-yinnachem al ha-ra'ah ('he relented concerning the disaster') does not imply God made a mistake but that He exercised sovereign mercy, shortening the judgment before its full extent was reached. The threshing floor (goren) was a flat, elevated area used for separating grain — typically located on a high point to catch wind. Such elevated, open sites were natural locations for altars and sacred spaces.
16. The vision is terrifying: the angel stands bein ha-aretz u-vein ha-shamayim ('between earth and heaven'), occupying the liminal space between the human and divine realms. The drawn sword (charbo shelufa) stretched over Jerusalem visualizes the threat of total destruction. David and the zeqenim ('elders') — Israel's leading officials — are already in sackcloth, indicating mourning and repentance have begun. Their falling al peneihem ('on their faces') is the posture of total submission before overwhelming divine power.
17. The phrase ha-re'a hare'oti ('I have done evil, truly done evil') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute construction — the worst thing David can say about his own actions. The sheep metaphor (ha-tson) recalls David's origin as a literal shepherd and his role as the shepherd-king of Israel. His offer to bear the punishment instead of the people anticipates the substitutionary logic that runs through biblical theology.
18. The command comes through the angel to Gad to David — a chain of prophetic authority. The instruction to build a mizbe'ach ('altar') at the threshing floor transforms the site of judgment into a site of worship. The goren Ornan ha-Yevusi ('threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite') is specified again, reinforcing the location's importance. The Jebusite identity of Ornan connects to the pre-Israelite population of Jerusalem — David is purchasing sacred space from the original inhabitants.
19. The phrase bi-devar Gad ('at the word of Gad') and be-shem YHWH ('in the name of the LORD') confirms the prophetic authority chain. David's obedience is immediate and unquestioning — a contrast with his earlier insistence on the census despite Joab's objection.
20. Ornan also sees the angel — the vision is not limited to David. His four sons hide in terror (mitchab'im, 'hiding themselves'), a natural response to a supernatural threat. The detail that Ornan was dash chittim ('threshing wheat') places the event during the wheat harvest season (late spring/early summer), consistent with the agricultural calendar. The mundane activity of threshing is interrupted by divine catastrophe.
21. Ornan's prostration (va-yishtachu appayim artzah, 'he bowed face to the ground') is the appropriate response to the king's arrival. The Jebusite landowner shows proper deference to the Israelite king, setting the stage for the negotiation that follows.
22. David insists on be-khesef male ('at full silver/full price') — he will not accept a gift. The purpose is explicit: le-te'atser ha-maggefah me-al ha-am ('so the plague may be restrained from upon the people'). The altar is not merely devotional but functional — it is the means by which the destroying plague will be halted.
23. Ornan's offer is generous: the site, the oxen (for sacrifice), the morigim ('threshing sledges') for wood (fuel for the altar fire), and the wheat (for the minchah, 'grain offering'). He provides everything needed for a complete sacrificial ritual. His language echoes Joab's earlier speech — ha-tov be-einav ('whatever is good in his eyes') — leaving the decision to the king.
24. David's insistence on paying full price — qanoh eqneh be-khesef male ('buying I will buy at full silver') — establishes a theological and legal principle. Theologically, sacrifice must cost the worshiper. Legally, David's payment ensures clear title to the land — the future temple site must be legitimately purchased, not gifted, to avoid any future dispute over ownership.
25. The price — shesh me'ot shiqlelei zahav ('six hundred shekels of gold') — is substantially more than the fifty shekels of silver recorded in 2 Samuel 24:24. The Chronicler's higher price may reflect the purchase of the entire site (the broader area for the future temple complex) rather than just the threshing floor and oxen, or it may reflect the Chronicler's desire to emphasize the magnitude of David's investment in the future temple site. Six

hundred shekels of gold represents an enormous sum.

- 26.** The fire from heaven is the Chronicler's addition to the 2 Samuel 24 account. Its inclusion serves the Chronicler's central thesis: this site — Ornan's threshing floor — is the divinely validated location for Israel's worship. The 'altar of burnt offering' (mizbach ha-olah) mentioned at the verse's end becomes a permanent designation for the altar that will stand in Solomon's temple.
- 27.** The angel sheathes the sword (va-yashev charbo el nedanah, 'he returned his sword to its sheath') — the judgment is complete, the plague is over. The nedanah ('sheath, scabbard') is a rare word, appearing only here and in the 2 Samuel parallel. The sheathing of the divine sword directly follows the fire from heaven, connecting sacrifice to the cessation of judgment.
- 28.** David's continued sacrifice at the site — va-yizbach sham ('he sacrificed there') — indicates that the threshing floor became an established worship site, not a one-time altar. David recognizes the theological significance of God's fiery response: this is where God chooses to meet Israel in sacrifice.
- 29.** This verse explains why David did not go to the existing worship center: the Mosaic mishkan ('tabernacle') and the original mizbach ha-olah ('altar of burnt offering') were at Gibeon, not Jerusalem. The Chronicler establishes a transitional period: the old Mosaic worship center is at Gibeon, but the new divinely designated site is at Ornan's threshing floor in Jerusalem.
- 30.** The reason David cannot travel to Gibeon is niv'at ('he was terrified') — the sight of the angel with the drawn sword has left him shaken to the point of immobility. The verb ba'at implies sudden, overwhelming terror. This fear is not cowardice but the natural human response to a direct encounter with divine judgment. The practical result is theologically significant: David cannot go to the old worship site (Gibeon), so God provides a new one (Ornan's threshing floor). What begins as an obstacle becomes the occasion for establishing Jerusalem's sacred geography.

22

Summary: *David declares that the threshing floor of Ornan is the site of the future temple and altar. He immediately begins preparations on a massive scale: ordering the resident aliens in Israel to quarry dressed stone, accumulating iron for nails and fittings, bronze beyond weighing, and cedar logs without number (supplied by the Sidonians and Tyrians). David explains that Solomon his son is young and inexperienced, and the house to be built for the LORD must be exceedingly magnificent, famous throughout all lands — so David makes extensive preparations before his death. He then calls Solomon and charges him to build the house of the LORD God of Israel. David reveals why he himself cannot build it: 'You have shed much blood and waged great wars. You shall not build a house for my name because you have shed so much blood on the earth before me.' But Solomon — whose name shares the root of shalom ('peace') — will be a man of rest, and God will give him rest from all his surrounding enemies. Solomon will build the house, and God will establish his throne over Israel forever. David's charge to Solomon is direct: 'May the LORD give you wisdom and understanding when he places you over Israel, so that you may keep the law of the LORD your God. Then you will prosper if you are careful to observe the statutes and ordinances that the LORD commanded Moses for Israel. Be strong and courageous — do not fear or be dismayed.' David details the resources he has prepared: 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron beyond weighing. He has also prepared timber and stone, and Solomon may add to them. Workers are available — stonecutters, masons, carpenters, and skilled craftsmen of every kind. David concludes: 'Arise and work, and may the LORD be with you.' He then commands all the officials of Israel to help Solomon, noting that God has given them rest from enemies on every side. David instructs them to set their hearts and souls to seek the LORD their God and to build the sanctuary so that the ark of the covenant and the holy vessels may be brought into the house built for the name of the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter has no parallel in Samuel-Kings — it is unique to Chronicles and reveals the Chronicler's distinctive theological vision. The reason David cannot build the temple is stated here with a clarity found nowhere else: damim rabbim shafakhta ('you have shed much blood'). This is not a moral condemnation of David's wars (which were commanded or sanctioned by God) but a ritual incompatibility: the temple, as a place of peace and divine rest, cannot be built by hands stained with the blood of warfare. Solomon's name is explicitly connected to shalom ('peace') and menuchah ('rest') — he is the man of rest who will build the house of rest. The quantities David prepares are staggering (100,000 talents of gold alone would be approximately 3,400 metric tons), and they function as much as theology as accounting: the Chronicler wants the reader to understand that the temple's magnificence reflects God's glory, and David's contribution to that glory — though he cannot build — is immeasurable. David's charge to Solomon echoes Moses' charge to Joshua (Deuteronomy 31:7-8, Joshua 1:6-9), creating a typological parallel: Moses/David prepare, Joshua/Solomon enter and build.*

Translation Friction: The quantities of gold and silver David claims to have prepared are extraordinarily large — 100,000 talents of gold (approximately 3,400 metric tons) and 1,000,000 talents of silver (approximately 34,000 metric tons) would exceed the total gold reserves of most modern nations. These numbers likely function hyperbolically, communicating 'incalculable wealth' rather than precise accounting. The theological logic that excludes David from building because of shed blood raises questions: if the wars were righteous and God-ordained (as chapters 18-20 imply), why does the blood disqualify David? The answer appears to be ritual rather than moral — bloodshed creates a state of ritual impurity incompatible with sacred construction, regardless of its moral justification. This chapter's absence from Samuel-Kings makes its historicity difficult to evaluate independently, though the tradition of David's temple preparations is widely attested.

Connections: David's charge to Solomon ('be strong and courageous') directly echoes God's charge to Joshua (Joshua 1:6-9) and Moses' charge to Joshua (Deuteronomy 31:7-8), creating a deliberate typological pattern: as Moses prepared for the promised land but could not enter, David prepares for the temple but cannot build. The 'rest' theology (menuchah) connects to Deuteronomy 12:9-10, where Moses promised that God would give Israel 'rest' in the land — that rest is now realized under David/Solomon and enables temple construction. The command to seek the LORD with heart and soul (v. 19) echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5). The chapter establishes the framework that will govern chapters 23-29 (David's organizational preparations) and 2 Chronicles 2-7 (Solomon's construction).

¹David said, "This is the house of the LORD God and this is the altar of burnt offering for Israel." — as recorded in the genealogies. ²David ordered the resident aliens in the land of Israel to be assembled and assigned stonecutters to quarry dressed stone for building the house of God. ³David prepared iron in abundance for the nails, for the door fittings of the gates, and for the clamps, and bronze in such quantity it could not be weighed. ⁴Cedar logs beyond counting — the Sidonians and Tyrians brought cedar wood in abundance to David. ⁵David said, "My son Solomon is young and inexperienced, and the house to be built for the LORD must be exceedingly magnificent — famous and glorious throughout all lands. So let me make preparations for it." And David made extensive preparations before his death. ⁶Then David called for his son Solomon and charged him to build a house for the LORD, the God of Israel. ⁷David said to Solomon, "My son, it was in my heart to build a house for the name of the LORD my God. ⁸But the word of the LORD came to me: 'You have shed much blood and waged great wars. You will not build a house for my name, because you have shed so much blood on the earth before me.' ⁹A son will be born to you who will be a man of rest. I will give him rest from all his surrounding enemies, for his name will be Solomon, and I will give peace and quiet to Israel in his days. ¹⁰He will build a house for my name. He will be my son, and I will be his father. I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever.' ¹¹Now, my son, may the LORD be with you, and may you succeed and build the house of the LORD your God, as he has spoken concerning you. ¹²May the LORD give you insight and understanding, and may he give you charge over Israel — so that you may keep the law of the LORD your God. ¹³Then you will succeed — if you are careful to observe the statutes and ordinances that the LORD commanded Moses for Israel. Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid or dismayed. ¹⁴Now, through great effort, I have prepared for the house of the LORD: 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron beyond weighing — there is so much. I have also prepared timber and stone, and you may add to these. ¹⁵You have an abundance of workers — stonecutters, masons, carpenters, and craftsmen skilled in every kind of work. ¹⁶Gold, silver, bronze, iron — beyond counting. Arise and get to work! May the LORD be with you." ¹⁷David also commanded all the officials of Israel to support his son Solomon: ¹⁸"Is not the LORD your God with you? Has he not given you rest on every side? For he has handed the inhabitants of the land over to me, and the land has been subdued before the LORD and before his people. ¹⁹Now set your hearts and your souls to seek the LORD your God. Arise and build the sanctuary of the LORD God, so that the ark of the covenant of the LORD and the holy vessels of God may be brought into the house built for the name of the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse connects chapter 21 (the threshing floor purchase) to chapter 22 (temple preparations). The phrase *beit YHWH ha-Elohim* ('the house of the LORD God') uses the full divine designation, matching the gravity of the declaration. This verse has no parallel in 2 Samuel — it is the Chronicler's theological bridge between the census narrative and the temple preparation narrative.

2. The gerim ('resident aliens, sojourners') were non-Israelites living in the land — they were frequently assigned to labor forces, a practice Solomon would continue (2 Chronicles 2:17-18). The avnei gazit ('hewn/dressed stones') were carefully shaped building blocks for monumental architecture. David's preparation is practical: skilled labor and premium materials must be organized well before construction begins.
3. The iron (barzel) was needed for mismerot ('nails'), dalot ha-she'arim ('doors of the gates'), and mechabberot ('clamps, joinings') — the structural hardware that held the building together. The phrase nechoshet la-rov ein mishqal ('bronze in abundance — no weight,' meaning too much to weigh) conveys both practical quantity and theological hyperbole: the resources gathered for God's house exceed calculation.
4. The atzei arazim ('cedar timbers/logs') came from Lebanon, the ancient world's premier source of construction timber. The Tsidonim ve-ha-Tsorim ('Sidonians and Tyrians') were Phoenician coastal peoples who controlled the cedar trade. This trade relationship anticipates Solomon's more formal arrangement with Hiram king of Tyre (2 Chronicles 2). The phrase le-ein mispar ('without number, beyond counting') matches the 'beyond weighing' of the bronze — the preparations are portrayed as limitless.
5. The description of Solomon as na'ar va-rakh ('young and soft/tender/inexperienced') is not a criticism but an acknowledgment of his youth. The house must be le-hagdil le-ma'lah le-shem u-le-tifaret le-khol ha-aratsot ('to make exceedingly great — for a name and for splendor throughout all the lands'). The temple's magnificence is missionary in purpose: it declares God's glory to the nations. David's preparations lifnei moto ('before his death') frame this work as his final legacy.
6. The verb va-yetsavvehu ('he commanded/charged him') carries the weight of a royal commission and a paternal mandate. The charge is specific: livnot bayit la-YHWH Elohei Yisrael ('to build a house for the LORD, the God of Israel'). This is the formal transfer of the temple project from David to Solomon.
7. David reveals that building the temple was im levavi ('in my heart') — a deeply personal desire, not merely a political project. The phrase le-shem YHWH ('for the name of the LORD') indicates the temple's purpose: to house and honor God's name, His revealed character and presence.
8. The phrase le-fanai ('before me, in my sight') emphasizes that God witnessed every battle, every death. The double statement about blood-shedding (beginning and end of the verse) creates an envelope structure framing the prohibition. The word damim ('bloods,' plural) intensifies the concept — it is not one act of bloodshed but the accumulated weight of an entire military career.
9. The wordplay is explicit: Solomon's name (Shelomoh) is connected to shalom ('peace') and menuchah ('rest'). The phrase ish menuchah ('man of rest') stands in deliberate contrast to David, the man of war. The verb hanichoti ('I will give rest') echoes the Deuteronomic promise of rest in the land (Deuteronomy 12:10). Solomon's reign will be characterized by shalom va-sheqet ('peace and quiet') — the conditions necessary for temple construction.
10. This verse recapitulates the Davidic covenant from chapter 17 but applies it specifically to Solomon. The father-son formula (hu yihyeh li le-ven va-ani lo le-av) and the eternal throne promise (ad olam) are now attached to the named son who will build. The Chronicler binds together the temple promise and the dynasty promise — they are inseparable.
11. David's blessing — yehi YHWH immakh ('may the LORD be with you') — echoes Nathan's premature assurance from chapter 17:2 but now carries prophetic validation. The verb ve-hitslachta ('and may you prosper/succeed') connects success to divine presence. The commission is framed as fulfillment: ka-asher dibber alekha ('as he has spoken concerning you') — Solomon builds because God promised he would.
12. The sekhel u-vinah ('insight and understanding') David requests for Solomon are the same qualities Solomon will later ask for himself (2 Chronicles 1:10). The connection between wisdom and Torah-keeping is explicit: understanding is not abstract intelligence but the capacity to observe torat YHWH Elohekha ('the law of the LORD your God'). Wisdom, in the Chronicler's framework, is measured by covenant faithfulness.
13. The conditional az tatsliach im tishmor ('then you will succeed if you keep') makes prosperity contingent on Torah observance. The command chazaq ve-emats al tira ve-al techat ('be strong and courageous, do not fear and do not be shattered') directly echoes Joshua 1:6-9 and Deuteronomy 31:7-8. David is consciously placing Solomon in the role of Joshua — the one who enters and builds what the predecessor could only prepare for.
14. The phrase be-onyi ('in my affliction/poverty/through my effort') is difficult — it may mean 'through my laborious efforts' or 'in my modest estimation.' The numbers are extraordinary: 100,000 talents of gold and a million talents of silver. These figures are best understood as the Chronicler's way of expressing incalculable generosity rather than as precise accounting. The invitation ve-aleihem tosif ('and upon them you may add') shows David's humility — even this vast preparation is presented as a starting point for Solomon to improve upon.
15. The workforce includes chotsevim ('stonecutters, quarriers'), charashei even va-etz ('craftsmen of stone and wood'), and kol chakham be-khol melakhah ('every skilled person in every craft'). The word chakham ('wise, skilled') in artisan contexts means technically expert — wisdom in the Hebrew Bible encompasses practical skill as well as intellectual and moral capacity.
16. David's concluding command to Solomon is direct: qum va-aseh ('arise and do it'). The four metals — gold, silver, bronze, iron — represent a complete material provision. The blessing vihi YHWH immakh ('may the LORD be with you') frames human effort within divine empowerment. The charge is practical and theological simultaneously: work hard, and trust God.
17. The sarei Yisrael ('officials/princes of Israel') are the administrative and military leaders of the nation. David's command to support Solomon ensures institutional backing for the temple project. The verb la'azor ('to help, support') indicates active collaboration, not merely passive consent.
18. David's argument is theological: God has already provided the conditions for temple-building. The heniach lakhem mi-saviv ('he has given you rest round about') echoes the Deuteronomic requirement that temple worship begins after God gives rest (Deuteronomy 12:10). The phrase ve-nikhbesha ha-aretz ('the land has been subdued') echoes the conquest language of Joshua and Numbers — David claims the military phase is complete, and the

worship phase can begin.

19. The final verse weaves together inner devotion and outward action: *tenu levavkhem ve-nafshekhem li-drosh la-YHWH* ('give your hearts and souls to seek the LORD') is the internal posture, and *qumu u-venu* ('arise and build') is the external response. The *miqdash* ('sanctuary') is the sacred precinct. The purpose is to house the *aron berit YHWH* ('ark of the covenant of the LORD') and the *kelei qodesh* ('holy vessels') — the physical objects of Israel's worship tradition. The chapter ends looking forward to the *bayit ha-nivneh le-shem YHWH* ('the house being built for the name of the LORD') — a house not yet built but already named and claimed.

23

Summary: *David, old and full of days, makes Solomon king over Israel. He then gathers all the leaders of Israel along with the priests and Levites. A census of the Levites from age thirty and upward yields thirty-eight thousand men. David assigns them to four categories of service: twenty-four thousand to oversee the work of the house of the LORD, six thousand as officers and judges, four thousand as gatekeepers, and four thousand as musicians praising the LORD with instruments David made for that purpose. He divides the Levites according to the three sons of Levi — Gershon, Kohath, and Merari — and catalogs their family heads. David then lowers the age of Levitical service from thirty to twenty, because the ark now has a permanent resting place and the Levites no longer need to carry the tabernacle. The chapter closes with a detailed job description: the Levites are to assist the priests in the service of the house of the LORD, maintaining the courts, the chambers, the purification of holy things, the showbread, the flour offerings, the wafers, the measurements of capacity and length, and standing every morning and evening to thank and praise the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks one of the great administrative transitions in Israel's history — from the portable wilderness system to a permanent Temple institution. David's reasoning in verses 25-26 is theologically precise: because the LORD has given rest to his people and now dwells in Jerusalem forever, the Levites no longer need to carry the tabernacle and its equipment. Their role shifts from sacred transport to sacred maintenance and worship. The lowering of the service age from thirty (Numbers 4:3) to twenty (v. 24) reflects this reduced physical demand and expanded liturgical role. The Chronicler presents David not merely as a king handing off a building project but as the architect of Israel's entire worship infrastructure — the man who organized every detail of how God would be praised for generations. The four thousand musicians with instruments 'which I made for praise' (v. 5) is a detail unique to Chronicles and reflects the Chronicler's deep investment in Levitical music as a form of prophecy.*

Translation Friction: *The age of Levitical service varies across biblical texts: Numbers 4:3 specifies thirty to fifty, Numbers 8:24 gives twenty-five, and this passage gives twenty. The Chronicler is aware of the discrepancy and provides a theological rationale (vv. 25-26) — the changed circumstances of permanent settlement justify the changed age. Some scholars see this as a post-exilic adaptation retroactively attributed to David. The census number of thirty-eight thousand Levites is very large and may reflect idealized or cumulative figures rather than a single-point headcount.*

Connections: *David's organization of Levitical service builds on the wilderness census of Numbers 3-4 and transforms it for the Temple era. The division into Gershon, Kohath, and Merari preserves the three-clan structure established at Sinai (Exodus 6:16-19, Numbers 3:17). The role of standing every morning and evening to thank and praise (v. 30) establishes the daily liturgical pattern that continues through the Second Temple period and into synagogue worship. David's statement that the LORD 'has given rest to his people' (v. 25) echoes the Deuteronomic promise of rest (Deuteronomy 12:10) and connects to Solomon's name (Shelomoh, from shalom, 'peace') as announced in 1 Chronicles 22:9.*

1When David was old and full of days, he made his son Solomon king over Israel. 2He assembled all the leaders of Israel, along with the priests and the Levites. 3The Levites were counted from thirty years of age and upward; their total, counted head by head, was thirty-eight thousand men. 4Of these, twenty-four thousand were to oversee the work of the house of the LORD, and six thousand were officers and judges. 5Four thousand were gatekeepers, and four thousand praised the LORD with instruments that David had made for praise. 6David organized them into divisions according to the sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. 7Of the Gershonites: Ladan and Shimei. 8The sons of Ladan: the chief was Jehiel, then

Zetham and Joel — three in all. ⁹The sons of Shimei: Shelomith, Haziel, and Haran — three. These were the heads of the ancestral houses of Ladan. ¹⁰The sons of Shimei: Jahath, Zina, Jeush, and Beriah. These were the sons of Shimei — four in all. ¹¹Jahath was the chief and Zizah the second, but Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons, so they were counted as a single ancestral house for duty purposes. ¹²The sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, and Hebron and Uzziel — four. ¹³The sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses. Aaron was set apart to consecrate the most holy things — he and his sons forever — to burn incense before the LORD, to serve him, and to pronounce blessings in his name forever. ¹⁴As for Moses the man of God, his sons were counted among the tribe of Levi. ¹⁵The sons of Moses: Gershom and Eliezer. ¹⁶These were of the sons of Gershom, Shebuel was the chief. ¹⁷The sons of Eliezer: Rehabiah was the chief. Eliezer had no other sons, but the sons of Rehabiah were very many. ¹⁸These were of the sons of Izhar: Shelomith was the chief. ¹⁹Of the sons of Hebron: Jeriah the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, and Jekameam the fourth. ²⁰These were of the sons of Uzziel: Micah the first and Isshiah the second. ²¹These were the sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. The sons of Mahli: Eleazar and Kish. ²²Eleazar died without sons — only daughters. Their kinsmen, the sons of Kish, married them. ²³The sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jeremoth — three. ²⁴These were the sons of Levi by their ancestral houses — the heads of the ancestral houses as registered in the census, counted by name, head by head — everyone who performed the work of service in the house of the LORD, from twenty years of age and upward. ²⁵For David said, 'The LORD, the God of Israel, has given rest to his people, and he dwells in Jerusalem forever.' ²⁶And so the Levites no longer need to carry the tabernacle or any of its vessels for its service. ²⁷For by the last instructions of David, the Levites were counted from twenty years of age and upward. ²⁸For their position was to assist the sons of Aaron in the service of the house of the LORD: overseeing the courts, the chambers, the purification of all holy things, and the work of service in the house of God. ²⁹They were responsible for the rows of showbread, the fine flour for grain offerings, the unleavened wafers, the baked cakes, the mixed offerings, and all measurements of quantity and size. ³⁰They were to stand every morning to give thanks and praise to the LORD, and likewise every evening. ³¹They were to assist at every offering of burnt offerings to the LORD — on Sabbaths, at new moons, and at appointed festivals — in the prescribed number, according to the ordinance governing them, continually before the LORD. ³²They were to keep the charge of the Tent of Meeting, the charge of the sanctuary, and the charge of the sons of Aaron their kinsmen, in the service of the house of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *zagen ve-save'a yamim* ('old and satisfied with days') is a formula of fulfilled life — the same expression used of Abraham (Genesis 25:8) and Job (Job 42:17). It implies not merely age but completeness: David's days have been full. The verb *vayyamlekh* ('he made king') is causative — David actively installs Solomon rather than passively yielding the throne.
2. The verb *va-ye'esof* ('he gathered') indicates a formal national assembly. The three groups — *sarei Yisra'el* ('leaders of Israel'), *kohanim* ('priests'), and *Leviyim* ('Levites') — represent the political and religious infrastructure of the nation. The gathering is the context for everything that follows through chapter 29.
3. The age threshold of thirty follows Numbers 4:3, the original standard for full Levitical service. The phrase *le-gulgotam* ('by their skulls/heads') is the standard census formula — an individual headcount. The number thirty-eight thousand is considerably larger than the wilderness census of Numbers 4, reflecting population growth or idealized figures.
4. The verb *le-natseach* ('to oversee, to direct') is the same root found in the psalm superscriptions *la-menatseach* ('to the director'). These twenty-four thousand Levites direct the operational work of the Temple. The *shoterim ve-shofetim* ('officers and judges') served both administrative and judicial functions — a reminder that the Temple was not only a worship center but also a center of legal adjudication.
5. The *sho'arim* ('gatekeepers') controlled access to the Temple precincts — a role of both security and ritual purity. The four thousand *mehalelim* ('praisers') are the musical corps, equipped with instruments *asher asiti le-hallel* ('which I made for praise'). David speaks in first person here — he personally commissioned the instruments. This detail, unique to Chronicles, underscores David's role as founder of Israel's liturgical music tradition.
6. The noun *machlaqot* ('divisions, courses') is the key organizational term for the Levitical and priestly rotation system. The three sons of Levi — Gershon, Kohath, and Merari — provide the fundamental genealogical framework established in Genesis 46:11 and Exodus 6:16. Every Levite traces his lineage through one of these three.
7. Ladan (also spelled Libni in Exodus 6:17) and Shimei are the two main branches of the Gershonite clan. The Chronicler uses the form Ladan rather than the Pentateuchal Libni, reflecting the naming conventions of his own period.

8. Jehiel as ha-rosh ('the chief, the head') indicates that within each family, one member held the leadership position. The counting formula — sheloshah ('three') — is characteristic of the Chronicler's census-style lists.
9. The designation rashei ha-avot ('heads of the ancestral houses') indicates these men led the patriarchal subdivisions within the Gershonite clan. The three sons of Shimei here are counted under the broader heading of Ladan's lineage, suggesting an administrative grouping that may not follow strict genealogical lines.
10. This is a different Shimei from the one in verse 9, or the same Shimei counted through a different line of descendants. The Chronicler distinguishes them by listing the second group under its own heading with a separate count of four.
11. The administrative logic is practical: because Jeush and Beriah lo hirbu vanim ('did not multiply sons'), their families were too small to function as independent units. They were merged into a single beit av ('ancestral house') for a single pequddah ('assignment, reckoning'). This is bureaucratic realism — the roster must match the workforce to the work.
12. The Kohathite clan is the most prominent of the three Levitical divisions because it includes the line of Aaron (through Amram). Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel represent the non-priestly Kohathite branches. These four names match exactly the list in Exodus 6:18.
13. The separation of Aaron from Moses is theologically significant. Moses is the lawgiver and prophet, but his descendants are counted among the Levites, not the priests. Aaron's descendants alone hold the priesthood. The phrase qodesh qodashim ('holy of holies, most holy things') can refer to both the sacred space and the sacred objects — the Aaronic priests handle what no other Israelite may touch.
14. The title ish ha-Elohim ('man of God') is a high honorific, yet Moses' sons receive no priestly privilege — they are ordinary Levites. This is a remarkable demotion by comparison: the greatest prophet's children serve in supporting roles while his brother's children hold the priesthood. The Chronicler records this without comment, treating it as an established fact.
15. Gershom ('a stranger there') was named because Moses said 'I have been a sojourner in a foreign land' (Exodus 2:22). Eliezer ('my God is help') was named because 'the God of my father was my help' (Exodus 18:4). Both names encode Moses' exile experience.
16. Shebuel (or Shubael) means 'captive of God' or 'returned of God.' As ha-rosh ('the chief') of Gershom's line, he led the descendants of Moses' firstborn son.
17. The contrast is striking: Eliezer had only one son, but that one son's descendants ravu le-ma'lah ('multiplied greatly, exceedingly'). The name Rehabiah means 'the LORD has made room/wide,' and his prolific descendants fulfill the meaning of his name.
18. Shelomith (from shalom, 'peace') heads the Izharite branch of the Kohathites. Izhar was the father of Korah (Exodus 6:21), whose rebellion is narrated in Numbers 16, but the Chronicler passes over that episode — Korah's descendants survived and became prominent Temple singers (see the Korahite psalms, Psalms 42-49, 84-85, 87-88).
19. The Hebronite branch is organized by birth order — ha-rosh ('the first/chief'), ha-sheni ('the second'), ha-shelishi ('the third'), ha-revi'i ('the fourth'). This ordinal ranking determines priority in service assignments. Hebron here is a personal name, not the city.
20. The Uzzielite branch has only two heads listed, making it the smallest of the four Kohathite subdivisions. Uzziel was the youngest of Kohath's sons (Exodus 6:18), and the smaller size of his clan may reflect that birth-order position.
21. The Merarite clan is the third and final division of the Levites. Mahli and Mushi are its two branches, matching Exodus 6:19. The name Eleazar here is not the priestly Eleazar son of Aaron but a Levite of the Merarite line.
22. This verse records an instance of endogamous marriage to preserve the inheritance within the clan, similar to the ruling for the daughters of Zelophehad (Numbers 27:1-11, 36:1-12). The daughters of Eleazar married within their own Levitical family to keep the ancestral line intact.
23. The Mushite branch of the Merarites has three heads. The name Mahli here is the same as the other Merarite branch head (v. 21), showing that names repeated within Levitical families — a common source of genealogical confusion.
24. The age has dropped from thirty (v. 3) to twenty. This is not a contradiction but a two-stage description: the initial census counted from thirty (the old standard), but David's new policy sets the service age at twenty. The phrase oseh ha-melakhah la-avodat beit YHWH ('doing the work for the service of the house of the LORD') defines the Levitical role in terms of practical labor — melakhah ('work, skilled craft') — in service of worship.
25. David's reasoning for the policy change rests on a theological shift: heniach YHWH ('the LORD has given rest'). The verb nuach ('to rest') echoes the Deuteronomic promise of rest in the land (Deuteronomy 12:10). Because God now yishkon bi-Yerushalayim ad le-olam ('dwells in Jerusalem forever'), the infrastructure of portability is no longer needed. The permanent dwelling of God requires a permanent — not transient — workforce.
26. This verse makes explicit the practical consequence of the theological claim in verse 25. The verb la-set ('to carry, to bear') defined the Levitical role for the entire wilderness period (Numbers 4:1-49). Now that role is formally abolished. The tabernacle's portability — its defining feature — is no longer relevant. The Levites are freed from transport duty and reassigned to liturgical and maintenance roles.
27. The phrase divrei David ha-acharonim ('the last words/instructions of David') indicates these organizational decisions were among David's final official acts. The word devarim can mean 'words,' 'instructions,' or 'decrees' — here it carries the weight of a royal directive that will govern Temple operations for generations.

- 28.** The phrase *ma'amadam le-yad benei Aharon* ('their station at the hand of Aaron's sons') defines the Levitical role as assistants to the priests — *le-yad* ('at the hand of, alongside') indicates a supporting rather than independent role. Their duties span the entire Temple complex: *chatserot* ('courts'), *leshakhot* ('chambers, storerooms'), and the *tohorat le-khol qodesh* ('purification of all holy things').
- 29.** The list catalogs the Levites' food-preparation duties: *lechem ha-ma'arekhet* ('bread of the arrangement,' the showbread laid out in rows), *solet le-minchah* ('fine flour for grain offerings'), *reqiqei ha-matsot* ('thin unleavened cakes'), *machavat* ('pan-baked offerings'), and *murbakhet* ('mixed/soaked offerings'). The final item — *kol mesurah u-middah* ('all measurement and capacity') — indicates the Levites also maintained the standard weights and measures used in Temple operations.
- 30.** The phrase *ba-boqer ba-boqer* ('morning by morning') is an emphatic repetition indicating daily regularity without exception. The twin verbs *le-hodot u-le-hallel* ('to give thanks and to praise') define Levitical worship as fundamentally verbal and musical. This morning-and-evening pattern becomes the framework for the *tamid* ('perpetual') worship of the Temple, continued in the synagogue's *Shacharit* and *Ma'ariv* services.
- 31.** The Levites assist at the *ha'alot olot* ('offering up of burnt offerings') on three occasions: *Shabbatot* ('Sabbaths'), *chodashim* ('new moons'), and *mo'adim* ('appointed festivals'). The phrase *be-mispar ke-mishpat* ('in the number according to the ordinance') indicates fixed liturgical requirements — nothing is left to improvisation. The word *tamid* ('continually, perpetually') frames this as an unbroken cycle of worship.
- 32.** The threefold *mishmeret* ('charge, guard duty, obligation') defines the Levitical mandate: guarding the Tent of Meeting (the old term preserved even as the Temple replaces it), guarding the sanctuary (the *qodesh*), and fulfilling the obligations assigned by the sons of Aaron. The word *mishmeret* (from *shamar*, 'to guard, to keep') implies vigilant protection — the Levites are sacred sentinels.

24

Summary: *The divisions of the sons of Aaron are established by lot. The chapter opens by recalling that Nadab and Abihu died before their father without sons, leaving only Eleazar and Ithamar to carry on the priesthood. David, with Zadok from Eleazar's line and Ahimelech from Ithamar's line, divides them into twenty-four priestly courses by sacred lot. Eleazar's line receives sixteen courses and Ithamar's line receives eight, proportional to their number of ancestral heads. The twenty-four courses are listed in order: Jehoiarib first, Jedaiah second, through Maaziah twenty-fourth. These divisions determine the rotation of priestly service in the Temple. The chapter then catalogs the remaining Levites — descendants of Amram, Izhar, Hebron, Merari, and Mushi — and notes that they too cast lots corresponding to their kinsmen the sons of Aaron, in the presence of David, Zadok, Ahimelech, and the heads of the priestly and Levitical ancestral houses.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The twenty-four priestly courses established here governed Temple worship for centuries. When Zechariah, father of John the Baptist, served in the course of Abijah (Luke 1:5), he was following a rotation that traces directly to this chapter's eighth lot (v. 10). The system survived the exile, the rebuilding, and the Hellenistic period — an administrative list from David's era still functioned in Herod's Temple a thousand years later. The use of the sacred lot (*goral*) is emphasized: 'they cast lots, one alongside another' (v. 5). No human preference determines the order — the lot places Jehoiarib first and Maaziah twenty-fourth by divine allocation. The proportional division (sixteen to eight) reflects Eleazar's larger family but is still determined by lot within each group, preventing any claim of favoritism.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of Ahimelech son of Abiathar (v. 3) reverses the usual father-son order — elsewhere Abiathar is consistently the son of Ahimelech (1 Samuel 22:20). This may be a textual error, a different Ahimelech, or an indication that 'son of' sometimes means 'descendant of' rather than direct child. The number of ancestral heads — sixteen for Eleazar, eight for Ithamar — does not align with what we know from other genealogical lists, and may reflect the relative size of the two lines at the time of David rather than any fixed genealogical ratio.*

Connections: *The twenty-four courses reappear in Nehemiah 12:1-21 when the post-exilic community reorganizes Temple worship. The lot-casting method connects to the Urim and Thummim tradition (Exodus 28:30) and to the allocation of the promised land by lot (Joshua 14-19). The Qumran community organized its own priestly calendar around a modified version of these twenty-four courses. Zechariah's service in the course of Abijah (Luke 1:5, 8-9) — the eighth course — places the announcement of John the Baptist's birth within this Davidic framework, linking the old covenant's worship structure to the new covenant's opening event.*

¹Now the divisions of the sons of Aaron: the sons of Aaron were Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. ²Nadab and Abihu died before their father and had no sons, so Eleazar and Ithamar served as priests. ³David, together with Zadok from the descendants of Eleazar and Ahimelech from the descendants of Ithamar, organized them according to their appointed duties in their service. ⁴The sons of Eleazar were found to have more ancestral heads than the sons of Ithamar. So they were divided: sixteen heads of ancestral houses for the sons of Eleazar, and eight for the sons of Ithamar. ⁵They divided them by lot, these alongside those, for there were officers of the sanctuary and officers of God among both the sons of Eleazar and the sons of Ithamar. ⁶Shemaiah son of Nethanel, the scribe from the Levites, recorded them in the presence of the king, the officials, Zadok the priest, Ahimelech son of Abiathar, and the heads of the ancestral houses of the priests and Levites — one ancestral house being drawn for Eleazar, then one drawn for Ithamar. ⁷The first lot fell to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, ⁸the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁹the fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to Mijamin, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁰the seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth to Abijah, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹¹the ninth to Jeshua, the tenth to Shecaniah, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹²the eleventh to Eliashib, the twelfth to Jakim, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹³the thirteenth to Huppah, the fourteenth to Jeshebeab, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁴the fifteenth to Bilgah, the sixteenth to Immer, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁵the seventeenth to Hezir, the eighteenth to Happizzetz, ¹⁶the nineteenth to Pethahiah, the twentieth to Jehezkel, — as recorded in the genealogies. ¹⁷the twenty-first to Jachin, the twenty-second to Gamul, ¹⁸the twenty-third to Delaiah, the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. ¹⁹These were their appointed duties for entering the house of the LORD, according to the ordinance established through Aaron their ancestor, as the LORD God of Israel had commanded him. ²⁰As for the rest of the Levites: of the sons of Amram, Shubael; of the sons of Shubael, Jehdeiah. ²¹Of Rehabiah: of the sons of Rehabiah, Isshiah was the chief. ²²These were of the Izharites: Shelomoth; of the sons of Shelomoth, Jahath. ²³The sons of Hebron: Jeriah the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, Jekameam the fourth. ²⁴These were of the sons of Uzziel: Micah; of the sons of Micah, Shamir. ²⁵These were the brother of Micah was Isshiah; of the sons of Isshiah, Zechariah. ²⁶The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. The sons of Jaaziah his son: Beno. ²⁷The sons of Merari through Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham, Zaccur, and Ibri. ²⁸Of Mahli: Eleazar, who had no sons. ²⁹Of Kish: the sons of Kish — Jerahmeel. ³⁰The sons of Mushi: Mahli, Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the sons of the Levites according to their ancestral houses. ³¹These also cast lots, corresponding to their kinsmen the sons of Aaron, in the presence of King David, Zadok, Ahimelech, and the heads of the ancestral houses of the priests and the Levites — the eldest treated the same as the youngest.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter begins by establishing the full roster of Aaron's sons before explaining why only two lines survive. The machlaqot ('divisions, courses') system will organize all priestly service. Naming all four sons — including the two who died — honors the complete family before narrowing to the surviving lines.
2. The phrase *lifnei avihem* ('before their father') means both 'in the presence of' and 'prior to' — they died while Aaron still lived. The Chronicler omits the cause of death (offering 'strange fire,' *Leviticus* 10:1-2), focusing instead on the administrative consequence: their lines ended, leaving only two priestly branches. The verb *va-yekhahanu* ('they served as priests') marks the transition to the Eleazar-Ithamar dual structure.
3. David does not act alone — he works with the two senior priests, one from each surviving Aaronic line: Zadok (Eleazarite) and Ahimelech (Ithamarite). The phrase *li-fequddatam ba-avodatam* ('according to their appointments in their service') indicates that the division followed both genealogical and functional criteria.
4. The proportional split — sixteen to eight, a two-to-one ratio — reflects the demographic reality: the Eleazarite line had twice as many family heads as the Ithamarite line. This is not a value judgment but a census result. The total of twenty-four becomes the fixed number of priestly courses that will govern Temple worship for a millennium.
5. The method is *goralot* ('lots') — sacred randomization that removes human favoritism and assigns the result to divine will. The phrase *elleh im elleh* ('these with those') indicates the lots were cast in alternation between the two families. The titles *sarei qodesh* ('officers of holiness/the sanctuary') and *sarei ha-Elohim* ('officers of God') are interchangeable designations for priestly leadership.
6. The scribe Shemaiah provides the official written record — this is not oral tradition but documented administration. The phrase *beit av echad achuz le-El'azar ve-achuz achuz le-Ithamar* describes the alternating draw: one house taken for Eleazar, one taken for Ithamar, ensuring both lines are interwoven throughout the rotation rather than clustered together.

7. Jehoiarib ('the LORD will contend') heads the entire priestly rotation. This family became prominent — the Maccabees (Hasmoneans) traced their lineage to Jehoiarib, giving their priestly revolt legitimacy as the first course in David's order. Jedaiah ('the LORD knows') holds the second position.
8. Harim ('consecrated, devoted') and Seorim ('barley') continue the sequence. The Harim family appears among the returning exiles in Ezra 2:39, showing the continuity of these priestly courses across the exile.
9. Malchijah ('my king is the LORD') and Mijamin ('from the right hand,' i.e., 'favored'). These names encode theological claims about God's kingship and favor.
10. Abijah holds the eighth lot. This is the course in which Zechariah, father of John the Baptist, served when the angel Gabriel appeared to him (Luke 1:5). The Lukan connection means this administrative detail from David's reign bridges directly into the New Testament narrative.
11. Jeshua (Yeshua, 'salvation') is the same name later rendered as 'Jesus' in Greek. The tenth lot, Shecaniah ('the LORD has dwelt'), bears a name resonant with Temple theology — God dwelling among his people.
12. Eliashib ('God restores') is a name that reappears as the high priest during Nehemiah's time (Nehemiah 3:1). Jakim ('he establishes') continues the sequence.
13. Huppah ('canopy, covering') and Jeshebeab ('the father dwells/returns'). The names continue to carry theological weight even in an administrative register.
14. Bilgah ('cheerfulness') and Immer ('he has spoken'). The Immer family appears in post-exilic lists (Ezra 2:37), confirming the survival of this course through the Babylonian exile.
15. Hezir ('swine') is a surprising name in a priestly context — it may reflect pre-Israelite naming conventions or a different etymology. Happizzez ('the shattered one') is equally unusual. Names in ancient Israel did not always carry the later ritual sensitivities.
16. Pethahiah ('the LORD opens') and Jehezkel ('God strengthens') — the latter is the same name as the prophet Ezekiel, though this is a different individual. The name Jehezkel in a priestly list is fitting, as the prophet Ezekiel was himself a priest (Ezekiel 1:3).
17. Jachin ('he establishes') is also the name of one of the two bronze pillars Solomon placed at the Temple entrance (1 Kings 7:21). Gamul ('weaned, rewarded') completes the twenty-second lot.
18. Delaiah ('the LORD has drawn up/delivered') and Maaziah ('the LORD is a refuge') complete the twenty-four courses. Each course served approximately two weeks per year in the Temple, with all courses serving together during the three pilgrimage festivals (Passover, Weeks, Tabernacles).
19. The verse traces the authority chain: God commanded Aaron, Aaron established the ordinance (mishpat), and the twenty-four courses follow it. The phrase *be-yad Aharon avihem* ('by the hand of Aaron their father') uses *yad* ('hand') to mean 'authority, direction.' The priestly rotation is not David's innovation but his organization of an existing divine mandate.
20. The chapter now turns from the priestly (Aaronic) divisions to the remaining Levitical families. Shubael (also Shebuel, 23:16) heads the Amramite branch through Moses' line. Jehdeiah leads the next generation. These are the non-priestly Levites who serve in supporting roles.
21. Rehabiah, Moses' grandson through Eliezer (23:17), whose descendants were 'very many,' is represented here by Isshiah as *ha-rosh* ('the chief').
22. Shelomoth (a variant of Shelomith, 23:18) heads the Izharite branch. Jahath serves as the next-generation leader. The Izharites descend from Kohath's second son.
23. This repeats the Hebronite list from 23:19. The repetition confirms the Hebronite subdivision within the broader Levitical roster, establishing these four as permanent heads of their respective houses.
24. The Uzzielite line continues through Micah (23:20) to Shamir, establishing the succession within this smallest Kohathite division.
25. Isshiah (23:20) is Micah's brother, and his line continues through Zechariah. The branch splits into two sub-lines from the Uzzielite root.
26. The Merarite section introduces a third name — Jaaziah — not found in the parallel list of 23:21. The name *Benô* may be a personal name or simply the Hebrew *benô* ('his son'), leading to scholarly debate about whether this is a name or a genealogical marker.
27. Jaaziah's line produces four sons/descendants. Shoham ('onyx'), Zaccur ('remembered'), and Ibri ('Hebrew, one from beyond') are all names with broader cultural resonance. This branch of Merari may represent a late addition to the genealogical record.
28. This repeats the information from 23:21-22. Eleazar the Merarite (not the priest) died without male heirs, and his line continued through his daughters' marriages to the sons of Kish.
29. Jerahmeel ('God has compassion') continues the Kishite sub-branch of the Mahlite Merarites. The name Kish is better known as the name of Saul's father (1 Samuel 9:1), but this is a different individual entirely.
30. The Mushite list matches 23:23. The concluding formula — *elleh benei ha-Leviyim le-veit avoteihem* ('these are the sons of the Levites according to their ancestral houses') — closes the genealogical catalog and transitions to the lot-casting that follows.
31. The concluding verse establishes parity: the Levites cast lots *le-ummat acheihem benei Aharon* ('corresponding to their kinsmen the sons of Aaron'), and the principle is *avot ha-rosh le-ummat achiv ha-qatan* ('the chief father on equal footing with his youngest brother'). Seniority confers no

advantage in the lot — the system is radically egalitarian within each division. The lot treats the head of a great family the same as the head of a small one.

25

Summary: *David and the military commanders set apart the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun for musical service — those who prophesied with lyres, harps, and cymbals. The chapter lists the sons of each music leader: Asaph's four sons, Jeduthun's six sons, and Heman's fourteen sons. The total of those trained and skilled in singing to the LORD is two hundred eighty-eight, divided into twenty-four courses of twelve musicians each. They cast lots for their duties, course by course, the young alongside the old, the teacher alongside the student. The twenty-four courses are then listed in order by lot.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's most striking claim in this chapter is that Temple music is prophecy. The verb naba ('to prophesy') is used three times in verse 1 alone to describe what the musicians do. Asaph prophesies, Jeduthun's sons prophesy, Heman is called 'the king's seer' (v. 5). Music in the Temple is not entertainment or even mere worship — it is a form of divine communication. When the Levitical choir sings, they are functioning as prophets. This theology of music-as-prophecy is unique to Chronicles and profoundly influential: it shapes how both Judaism and Christianity understand the Psalms — not as human compositions addressed to God, but as divinely inspired utterances channeled through musical instruments. Heman's fourteen sons are remarkable — God 'gave Heman fourteen sons and three daughters' (v. 5) as a fulfillment of God's promise 'to exalt his horn.' The number fourteen may echo David's own genealogical significance (Matthew 1:17). The total of 288 trained musicians (24 courses of 12) mirrors the 24 priestly courses, giving music institutional parity with sacrifice.*

Translation Friction: *Several of Heman's sons' names in verse 4 — Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, Mahazioth — form what appears to be a sentence when read sequentially: something like 'Be gracious to me, O LORD, be gracious to me; you are my God; I magnify and exalt the one who sits in need; he has given abundant visions.' Whether this is coincidence, liturgical composition encoded as names, or a scribal artifact is debated. If intentional, the Chronicler has hidden a prayer inside a genealogical list — a remarkable literary device. The number 288 works out to 24 times 12, but the individual family counts do not always divide evenly into groups of 12, suggesting the system involved some redistribution.*

Connections: *The musical guilds of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun appear in numerous psalm superscriptions: Asaph in Psalms 50, 73-83; the sons of Korah (Heman's clan) in Psalms 42-49, 84-85, 87-88; and Jeduthun in Psalms 39, 62, 77. This chapter provides the institutional backdrop for the entire Psalter's liturgical organization. The connection between prophecy and music extends back to Saul encountering a band of prophets with lyres, tambourines, and flutes (1 Samuel 10:5-6) and forward to Elisha calling for a musician before prophesying (2 Kings 3:15). The twenty-four musical courses parallel the twenty-four priestly courses of chapter 24, creating a dual rotation of sacrifice and song that defines Temple worship.*

¹David and the commanders of the army set apart for service the sons of Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun — those who prophesied with lyres, harps, and cymbals. The number of those assigned to this work according to their service was as follows: ²Of the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, Joseph, Nethaniah, and Asarelah — the sons of Asaph under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the authority of the king. ³Of Jeduthun: the sons of Jeduthun — Gedaliah, Zeri, Jeshaiiah, Hashabiah, and Mattithiah — six, under the direction of their father Jeduthun, who prophesied with the lyre to give thanks and praise to the LORD. ⁴These were of Heman: the sons of Heman — Bukkiah, Mattaniah, and Uzziel, Shebuel, Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, Romamti-ezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir and Mahazioth. ⁵All these were sons of Heman, the king's seer, given through the words of God to exalt his horn. God gave Heman fourteen sons and three daughters. ⁶All these served under the direction of their father in the music of the house of the LORD, with cymbals, harps, and lyres, for the service of the house of God — under the authority of the king: Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman. ⁷Their number, together with their kinsmen trained in singing to the LORD — all who were skilled — was two hundred eighty-eight. ⁸They cast lots for

their duties, one course alongside another — the young with the old, the teacher with the student. ⁹The first lot fell to Joseph of the Asaph guild; the second to Gedaliah — he, his brothers, and his sons, twelve. ¹⁰The third to Zaccur — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹¹The fourth to Izri — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹²The fifth to Nethaniah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹³The sixth to Bukkiah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁴The seventh to Jesharelah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁵The eighth to Jeshaiiah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁶The ninth to Mattaniah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁷The tenth to Shimei — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁸The eleventh to Azarel — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ¹⁹The twelfth to Hashabiah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁰The thirteenth to Shubael — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²¹The fourteenth to Mattithiah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²²The fifteenth to Jeremoth — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²³The sixteenth to Hananiah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁴The seventeenth to Joshbekashah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁵The eighteenth to Hanani — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁶The nineteenth to Mallothi — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁷The twentieth to Eliathah — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁸The twenty-first to Hothir — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ²⁹The twenty-second to Giddalti — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ³⁰The twenty-third to Mahazith — his sons and his brothers, twelve. ³¹The twenty-fourth to Romamti-ezer — his sons and his brothers, twelve.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb naba ('to prophesy') in connection with musical instruments appears also in 1 Samuel 10:5-6, where Saul encounters prophets prophesying with instruments. The Chronicler systematizes what was previously ecstatic and spontaneous — Temple music is ordered prophecy, not charismatic outburst.
2. Asaph's guild has four sons assigned to lead. The phrase al yad Asaf ('under the hand/direction of Asaph') establishes Asaph as the master of his guild. He prophesies al yedei ha-melekh ('under the authority/direction of the king') — royal authority governs even prophetic music. David directs the worship, and the prophetic musicians operate within that structure.
3. Jeduthun's guild lists five names but counts six — a sixth name (Shimei) may have dropped from the text, or one of the listed names represents two individuals. Jeduthun is identified as prophesying specifically ba-kinnor ('with the lyre') for the purpose of hodot ve-hallel ('giving thanks and praising'). His specialization is gratitude and praise, connecting him to the psalm superscriptions that bear his name (Psalms 39, 62, 77).
4. Heman's fourteen sons form the largest musical guild. The later names in the list — from Hanani onward — appear to form a continuous Hebrew prayer when read as a sentence rather than as proper names: roughly 'Be gracious to me, O God, be gracious to me; you are my God; I magnify and exalt the one who sits in need; he has given abundant visions.' Whether these are genuine personal names that coincidentally form a prayer, or a liturgical text embedded in genealogical form, is one of the great puzzles of Chronicles.
5. Heman is titled chozeh ha-melekh ('the king's seer') — a formal prophetic office. The phrase be-divrei ha-Elohim le-harim qaren ('in/through the words of God to exalt his horn') connects his prophetic role to his extraordinary fertility. The 'horn' (qeren) is a symbol of strength and honor. God's gift of fourteen sons and three daughters is presented as divine favor flowing from Heman's prophetic calling — his family's size is itself a sign of blessing.
6. The dual authority structure is emphasized: each musician serves al yedei avihem ('under the hand of their father,' the guild leader) and simultaneously al yedei ha-melekh ('under the authority of the king'). The three guild leaders — Asaph, Jeduthun, and Heman — operate as the senior directors under David's overall command. Music in the Temple is both hereditary craft and royal institution.
7. The total of 288 divides exactly into 24 courses of 12 musicians each, mirroring the 24 priestly courses. The phrase melumedei shir la-YHWH ('trained in song to the LORD') indicates formal musical education — these are not casual singers but professionally trained musicians. The parallel term kol ha-mevin ('all who were skilled/discerning') adds that musical competence, not just genealogy, qualifies one for this service.
8. The lot-casting principle is radically egalitarian: ka-qaton ka-gadol ('the small like the great') and mevin im talmid ('the skilled alongside the student'). Seniority, fame, and expertise confer no advantage in the rotation. The master musician and his apprentice are equally subject to the divine lot. This prevents any guild from claiming permanent primacy over the others.
9. Joseph (Asaph's son, v. 2) draws the first lot, giving the Asaph guild the opening position. Each course consists of twelve musicians — the leader plus eleven kinsmen. The consistent count of twelve per course, maintained through all twenty-four lots, creates the total of 288.
10. Zaccur is another of Asaph's sons (v. 2). The formula 'his sons and his brothers, twelve' will repeat for each of the twenty-four courses, establishing the uniform size of each musical unit.
11. Izri is likely a variant of Zeri (v. 3), one of Jeduthun's sons. The alternation between guilds in the lot sequence — Asaph, Jeduthun, Heman — demonstrates the fairness of the system.

12. Nethaniah ('given by the LORD') is one of Asaph's sons (v. 2). The Asaph guild now holds the first, third, and fifth positions in the rotation.
13. Bukkiah is the first of Heman's sons listed in verse 4. His sixth-position lot introduces the Heman guild into the rotation.
14. Jesharelah is likely a variant of Asarelah (v. 2), one of Asaph's sons. Name variations between the roster and the lot list are common in these chapters.
15. Jeshaiiah ('the LORD saves') is one of Jeduthun's sons (v. 3). The name shares the same root as Isaiah and Joshua/Jesus — yasha ('to save').
16. Mattaniah ('gift of the LORD') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). This name later becomes significant — Mattaniah was Zedekiah's original name before Nebuchadnezzar renamed him (2 Kings 24:17).
17. Shimei may be the sixth son of Jeduthun whose name was missing from the verse 3 list, which counted six but named only five. His appearance here in the lot sequence supports that reading.
18. Azarel ('God has helped') is likely a variant of Uzziel from Heman's sons (v. 4). The name variations between the initial list and the lot results suggest the Chronicler drew from two independent source documents.
19. Hashabiah ('the LORD has reckoned') is one of Jeduthun's sons (v. 3). This is the midpoint of the twenty-four courses — twelve of twenty-four now assigned.
20. Shubael is likely a variant of Shebuel from Heman's sons (v. 4). The second half of the rotation now begins.
21. Mattithiah ('gift of the LORD') is one of Jeduthun's sons (v. 3). The name is virtually synonymous with Mattaniah (v. 16), both deriving from natan ('to give').
22. Jeremoth is one of Heman's sons (v. 4, as Jerimoth). The name means 'heights' or 'elevations.'
23. Hananiah ('the LORD has been gracious') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4) and the first name in the sequence that may form the hidden prayer. The name itself means 'grace of God.'
24. Joshbekashah may mean 'sitting in hardship' or 'dwelling in difficulty' — part of the possible embedded prayer from Heman's sons. If the prayer reading is correct, this name-phrase means 'the one sitting in affliction.'
25. Hanani ('gracious') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). The short form of Hananiah, it continues the prayer-name sequence.
26. Mallothi ('I have spoken/I am full') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). If read as part of the embedded prayer, it may mean 'I have uttered' or 'my fullness.'
27. Eliathah ('God has come' or 'my God has come') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). The theophoric element indicates divine arrival or presence.
28. Hothir ('he has caused to remain/he has left abundance') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). The name suggests abundance or surplus — fitting for a prayer of divine provision.
29. Giddalti ('I have magnified') is one of Heman's sons (v. 4). Read as a prayer element, it declares 'I have made great' — praising God's magnification.
30. Mahazith ('visions') is the final name from the possible embedded prayer in Heman's sons (v. 4). If the prayer reading is correct, this closing word means 'visions' — the prayer ends with a declaration of divine revelation, fitting for a guild of prophetic musicians.
31. Romamti-ezer ('I have exalted the help' or 'I have lifted up help') holds the final lot, closing the twenty-four-course rotation. Like the twenty-fourth priestly course (Maaziah, 24:18), this last position carries no stigma — the lot is sacred and the last is equal to the first. The entire Temple musical system is now organized: twenty-four courses of twelve, each led by a descendant of the three great guilds, rotating in perpetuity.

26

Summary: The divisions of the gatekeepers are established. From the Korahites, Meshelemiah son of Kore has sons and kinsmen — eighteen capable men. Obed-edom has sons and grandsons — sixty-two strong, capable men, for God had blessed him. Shemaiah son of Obed-edom has sons who are rulers in their ancestral house, for they are mighty men of ability. The gatekeepers are assigned by lot to the four gates: east, north, south, and west, with the storehouses also assigned. The chapter then shifts to the treasurers of the house of God and the treasurers of the dedicated things. Shebuel, descendant of Moses through Gershom, is chief officer over the treasuries. Other Levites are assigned as officers and judges over Israel's external affairs — both the regions west of the Jordan and the territories east of it. Hashabiah and his kinsmen, seventeen hundred men of ability, oversee Israel's affairs west of the Jordan, and Jerijah heads the Hebronites with twenty-seven hundred heads of ancestral houses overseeing the territory east of the Jordan for every matter of God and the king.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter elevates gatekeeping from menial security to sacred vocation. The gatekeepers are not hired guards but Levitical clans chosen by lot and genealogy. The blessing on Obed-edom is particularly striking — the same man who housed the ark after Uzzah's death (13:13-14, 2 Samuel 6:10-12) now has a family of sixty-two 'capable men' (v. 8). The ark's blessing on his household has become generational fertility and strength. The gate assignments reveal the Temple's spatial theology: the east gate (v. 14) is the primary entrance and receives the most guards (six per day), while the others receive four each. The east is the direction of God's arrival (Ezekiel 43:1-4), making the eastern gatekeepers the first line of sacred encounter. The dual treasury system — one for ongoing Temple operations and one for dedicated war spoils and royal gifts — shows a sophisticated financial infrastructure that would be familiar to any modern institution.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the gate assignments and the physical Temple layout is unclear, since the Temple was not yet built when David made these assignments. Either David assigned gates based on the planned blueprints, or the Chronicler retrojects later practice into David's era. The term parbar (v. 18), translated variously as 'court,' 'colonnade,' or 'western annex,' is of uncertain meaning — it may be a loanword from Persian or Aramaic. The numbers of gatekeepers per shift (13 at the east gate complex, 4 at north, 4 at south, 4+2+2 at the west) do not divide evenly among the families, suggesting the rotation was more complex than the text preserves.*

Connections: *Obed-edom's blessing connects directly to the ark narrative of 1 Chronicles 13-15 and 2 Samuel 6. The Korahite gatekeepers descend from Korah, whose rebellion (Numbers 16) nearly destroyed the family, but whose descendants survived to become Temple functionaries — a story of restoration after judgment. The treasuries for dedicated things recall the practice of devoting war spoils to God, as when David dedicated the plunder of his campaigns (1 Chronicles 18:11). The officers and judges 'for external affairs' (v. 29) connect to the administrative system Moses established on Jethro's advice (Exodus 18:13-26) and that David is now institutionalizing for the Temple era. The twenty-seven hundred overseers east of the Jordan (v. 32) govern the Transjordan tribes — Reuben, Gad, and half-Manasseh — maintaining national unity across the river.*

¹For the divisions of the gatekeepers: of the Korahites, Meshelemiah son of Kore, of the sons of Asaph. ²These were the sons of Meshelemiah: Zechariah the firstborn, Jediahel the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth, ³Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Elioenai the seventh — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁴The sons of Obed-edom: Shemaiah the firstborn, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, Sacar the fourth, Nethanel the fifth, ⁵Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peulthai the eighth — for God had blessed him — as recorded in the genealogies. ⁶To Shemaiah his firstborn were born sons who ruled their ancestral house, for they were mighty men of ability. ⁷The sons of Shemaiah: Othni, Rephael, Obed, Elzabad — whose brothers were men of ability — Elihu, and Semachiah. ⁸All these were descendants of Obed-edom — they, their sons, and their brothers, each a capable man with the strength for service. Sixty-two belonged to Obed-edom. ⁹Meshelemiah had sons and brothers, men of ability — eighteen. ¹⁰Hosah, of the sons of Merari, had sons: Shimri the chief — though he was not the firstborn, his father appointed him chief — ¹¹Hilkiah the second; Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth. All the sons, and brothers of Hosah totaled thirteen. ¹²To these fell the divisions of the gatekeepers, assigned by heads of families, with guard duties corresponding to their kinsmen, to serve in the house of the LORD. ¹³They cast lots, the small and the great alike, by ancestral house, for each gate. ¹⁴The lot for the east fell to Shelemiah. For Zechariah his son, a wise counselor, they cast lots, and his lot came out for the north. ¹⁵To Obed-edom, the south; and to his sons, the storehouse. ¹⁶To Shupim and Hosah, the west, with the Shallecheth Gate by the ascending causeway — guard post opposite guard post. ¹⁷At the east, six Levites; at the north, four per day; at the south, four per day; and at the storehouse, two and two. ¹⁸At the Parbar on the west: four at the causeway, two at the Parbar. ¹⁹These were the divisions of the gatekeepers among the Korahites and the Merarites. ²⁰As for the Levites, Ahijah was over the treasuries of the house of God and the treasuries of the dedicated things — as recorded in the genealogies. ²¹The sons of Ladan — the sons of the Gershonite Ladan — heads of ancestral houses belonging to Ladan the Gershonite: Jehieli. ²²Jehieli: Zetham, and Joel his brother — they had these sons: over the treasuries of the house of the LORD. ²³Of the Amramites, the Izharites, the Hebronites and the Uzzielites: — as recorded in the genealogies. ²⁴Shebuel son of Gershom, son of Moses, was the chief officer over the treasuries. ²⁵His relatives through Eliezer: Rehabiah his son, Jeshaiiah his son, Joram his son, Zichri his son, and Shelomith his son. ²⁶This Shelomith

and his brothers were over all the treasuries of the dedicated things that King David, the ancestral heads, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, and the army commanders had consecrated. ²⁷From the wars and from the spoil they had dedicated gifts to maintain the house of the LORD. ²⁸Everything that Samuel the seer, Saul son of Kish, Abner son of Ner, and Joab son of Zeruiah had dedicated — everything anyone had consecrated — was under the charge of Shelomith and his brothers. ²⁹Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons were assigned to external affairs over Israel, as officers and judges. ³⁰Of the Hebronites, Hashabiah and his brothers — seventeen hundred men of ability — had oversight of Israel west of the Jordan for every matter pertaining to the LORD and the service of the king. ³¹Of the Hebronites, Jerijah was the chief. In the fortieth year of David's reign, a search was made among the Hebronites by their genealogies and ancestral records, and mighty men of ability were found among them at Jazer of Gilead. ³²His kinsmen — twenty-seven hundred men of ability who were heads of ancestral houses — King David appointed over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half-tribe of Manasseh for every matter pertaining to God and every matter of the king.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The machlaqot la-sho'arim ('divisions of the gatekeepers') opens the third organizational section, following the priestly and musical courses. Meshelemiah heads the Korahite gatekeepers. The mention of 'sons of Asaph' here likely refers to Ebiasaph (a longer form of Asaph), a descendant of Korah — not the musician Asaph.
2. The birth-order listing establishes hierarchical precedence within the gatekeeping family. Zechariah as the bekhori ('firstborn') holds primary authority among the brothers.
3. Seven sons complete Meshelemiah's roster. The names are theophoric — Jehohanan ('the LORD is gracious') and Eliezer ('my eyes are toward God') encode piety in their very designation.
4. Obed-edom is the man who housed the ark (1 Chronicles 13:13-14). His large, capable family is presented as the direct fruit of the ark's blessing. The name Obed-edom means 'servant of Edom' — possibly an Edomite convert or a name with a different etymology.
5. The editorial comment ki berak Elohim ('for God blessed him') directly attributes Obed-edom's eight sons to divine favor. The name Peulthai means 'my reward/wages,' and the Chronicler may see this eighth son as the crowning evidence of God's blessing on the household that sheltered the ark.
6. The phrase gibborei chayil ('mighty men of ability/valor') elevates the gatekeepers from doormen to warriors. They are not passive watchmen but skilled, strong men capable of defending the sacred precincts. The term ha-memshalim ('those who ruled') indicates these descendants held authority within the clan.
7. The phrase benei chayil ('men of ability/valor') is repeated to emphasize the military quality of this gatekeeping family. Elzabad ('God has given') and Semachiah ('the LORD has sustained') are theophoric names reflecting divine provision.
8. The total of sixty-two men from a single family is extraordinary. The phrase ish chayil ba-koach la-avodah ('a capable man with strength for service') combines military valor (chayil) with physical power (koach) for sacred service (avodah). The ark's blessing on Obed-edom has produced not just many descendants but specifically strong, capable ones.
9. Meshelemiah's eighteen capable men complement Obed-edom's sixty-two. Together these two gatekeeping families provide eighty men — a substantial force for Temple security.
10. The parenthetical note is remarkably candid: Shimri is not the bekhori ('firstborn') but was appointed rosh ('chief') by his father's decision. The Chronicler does not explain why the normal primogeniture rule was overridden. This echoes the broader biblical pattern of younger sons being elevated — Jacob over Esau, David over his brothers.
11. Hosah's clan of thirteen completes the major gatekeeping families: Meshelemiah (18), Obed-edom (62), and Hosah (13), totaling ninety-three men for the core gatekeeping roster.
12. The organizational principle mirrors the priestly and musical courses: mishmarot le-ummat acheihem ('guard duties corresponding to their kinsmen'). The gatekeepers serve in rotation alongside their relatives, maintaining both family solidarity and equitable distribution of labor.
13. The same egalitarian lot-casting principle from the priestly (24:31) and musical (25:8) divisions applies here: ka-qaton ka-gadol ('the small as the great'). No family receives preferential gate assignment. The phrase le-sha'ar va-sha'ar ('for gate and gate,' i.e., 'for each gate') indicates each gate was assigned by separate lot.
14. Shelemiah (variant of Meshelemiah) receives the eastern gate — the primary entrance and most prestigious assignment. His son Zechariah is called yo'ets be-sekhel ('a counselor with insight/wisdom'), a rare personal commendation. Zechariah draws the northern gate.
15. Obed-edom receives the southern gate, and his sons guard the beit ha-asupim ('house of the gatherings/stores'). This storehouse is a treasury or supply depot attached to the Temple complex. Assigning Obed-edom's large family (62 men) to both a gate and a storehouse makes practical sense — they have the manpower.

16. The western assignment includes the Sha'ar Shallekhet ('Gate of Casting Out' or 'Disposal Gate'), located at a mesillah ha-olah ('ascending causeway, ramp'). This gate may have been used for removing ashes and refuse from the Temple — a less prestigious but essential function. The phrase mishmar le-ummat mishmar ('guard post opposite guard post') indicates paired sentry positions.
17. The daily guard distribution reveals the Temple's spatial priorities: six at the east (the primary entrance), four each at north and south, and two pairs at the storehouse. The eastern gate receives fifty percent more guards than the other cardinal gates — the direction from which God's presence was expected to approach (Ezekiel 43:1-4).
18. The parbar is an enigmatic term — possibly a colonnade, an open court, or an annexe on the western side of the Temple. The word may derive from a Persian or Aramaic root. Six guards total for the western complex (four at the causeway, two at the parbar itself) brings the daily total to approximately twenty-four — one for each hour, or a symbolic number matching the priestly and musical courses.
19. The summary identifies the two main gatekeeping clans: the Korahites (from Kohath) and the Merarites. Together they secured every entrance to the Temple complex.
20. The chapter transitions from gatekeeping to treasury management. Two categories of treasure are distinguished: otsrot beit ha-Elohim ('treasuries of the house of God') for ongoing Temple operations, and otsrot ha-qodashim ('treasuries of the dedicated/holy things') for consecrated gifts and war spoils. This dual-treasury system separates operating funds from endowment.
21. The triple repetition of Ladan's name with his Gershonite identification is unusual and may reflect the merging of multiple source lists. Jehieli (from Jehiel, 23:8) heads this branch of treasury administrators.
22. Zetham and Joel (from 23:8) are assigned to the operational treasury. Their Gershonite lineage gives them this specific institutional role — different Levitical clans handle different Temple functions.
23. The four Kohathite sub-clans are listed as the source for additional treasury personnel. The transition from Gershonite to Kohathite administrators shows that treasury management drew from multiple Levitical branches.
24. The nagid ('chief officer, leader') over the entire treasury system is a direct descendant of Moses — Shebuel, grandson of Moses through Gershom (23:15-16). This is a prestigious role for Moses' line, even though they hold no priestly status. The prophet's descendants manage the nation's sacred wealth.
25. The lineage traces from Moses' second son Eliezer through five generations to Shelomith, who will be named as the treasurer of dedicated things in the next verse. This is the longest genealogical chain for Moses' descendants in the Bible.
26. Shelomith oversees the otsrot ha-qodashim ('treasuries of the dedicated things') — the second treasury category from verse 20. The dedicators include David, the clan leaders, and the military commanders at every level (thousands and hundreds). War spoils dedicated to God constitute a permanent sacred endowment.
27. The purpose of the dedicated treasury is le-chazzeq le-veit YHWH ('to strengthen/maintain the house of the LORD'). The verb chazaq ('to strengthen, to repair') is the same word used for Temple repairs in 2 Kings 12. War spoils fund sacred maintenance — the violence of the battlefield is transformed into the upkeep of worship.
28. The treasury holds dedications spanning multiple eras: from Samuel (the last judge), Saul (the first king), Abner (Saul's general), and Joab (David's general). The phrase kol ha-maqdish ('everyone who consecrated') broadens it to any donor. Shelomith's treasury is a cumulative collection spanning Israel's entire monarchic history to this point.
29. The chapter shifts from Temple-internal duties to ha-melakhah ha-chitsonah ('the external work/business'). Chenaniah and his sons serve as shoterim ve-shofetim ('officers and judges') over Israel — Levites functioning in civil administration and judiciary, not just worship. This extends Levitical authority beyond the Temple walls into the governance of daily life.
30. Hashabiah's seventeen hundred Hebronite administrators govern the western territories. The dual mandate — le-khol melekhet YHWH ve-la-avodat ha-melekh ('for all the work of the LORD and the service of the king') — merges sacred and secular governance. There is no separation of church and state in David's administration; divine matters and royal business are handled by the same officials.
31. The chronological note — bi-shnat ha-arba'im le-malkhut David ('in the fortieth year of David's reign') — places this near the very end of David's life, since he reigned forty years total. Jazer of Gilead is east of the Jordan, in the territory of Gad. The phrase gibborei chayil ('mighty men of valor/ability') describes the Hebronites found there — Levitical administrators with military capability stationed in the Transjordan.
32. Twenty-seven hundred Hebronite officials administer the Transjordan tribes. The concluding phrase le-khol devar ha-Elohim u-devar ha-melekh ('for every matter of God and matter of the king') reaffirms the unified sacred-secular mandate. The Reubenites, Gadites, and half-tribe of Manasseh — the tribes settled east of the Jordan — are governed by Levitical administrators who represent both divine and royal authority, keeping these geographically distant tribes integrated into the national religious life.

27

Summary: *The chapter catalogs the military and administrative organization of David's kingdom. Twelve divisional commanders serve on a monthly rotation, each commanding twenty-four thousand men, yielding a standing force of two hundred eighty-eight thousand. The commanders are listed month by month: Jashobeam for the first month, Dodai for the second, Benaiah for the third, Asahel for the fourth (succeeded after his death by his son Zebadiah), and so on through the twelfth month. The chapter then lists the tribal leaders — the nagid ('chief') of each tribe, from Reuben through Benjamin, including the two halves of Manasseh. David's failed census is referenced: he began to count those from twenty years old and younger but did not finish because God's wrath fell on Israel, and the number was never entered into the chronicles of King David. Finally, the chapter lists David's estate managers: overseers of the royal treasuries, storehouses, field workers, vineyards, olive and sycamore groves, oil supplies, cattle herds, camels, donkeys, and flocks. The chapter closes by naming David's closest advisors: Jonathan his uncle as counselor, Jehiel as tutor to the king's sons, Ahithophel as the king's counselor, Hushai as the king's companion, and Joab as commander of the army.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents David's kingdom as a sophisticated military and economic machine. The twelve-division monthly rotation creates a professional standing army while allowing each unit to tend their farms and families for eleven months of the year — a militia system that balances military readiness with agricultural productivity. The total of 288,000 soldiers mirrors the 288 trained Temple musicians (25:7), creating an unexpected numerical symmetry between the army and the choir. The failed census passage (vv. 23-24) is theologically loaded: David counted the nation but stopped because qetsep ('wrath') fell on Israel. The Chronicler says the number lo alah ('did not go up,' i.e., was never entered) into the official records — the unfinished count remains a permanent gap in the national archives, a reminder that some knowledge belongs only to God. The estate management list (vv. 25-31) reveals the crown's economic portfolio: agriculture, viticulture, horticulture, livestock of every kind — David's kingdom is an agrarian empire with diversified holdings.*

Translation Friction: *The number twenty-four thousand per division, yielding a total of 288,000, is very large and may represent idealized or rounded figures. Asahel's listing as fourth-month commander (v. 7) is complicated by the fact that he was killed by Abner early in David's reign (2 Samuel 2:18-23); the text acknowledges this by naming his son Zebadiah as successor, but the assignment may be honorary or retrospective. The tribal list in verses 16-22 omits Gad and Asher, though it includes both halves of Manasseh and separates Levi and Aaron. The omission may be due to textual damage or the source list's incompleteness. The census reference (vv. 23-24) presents a different version than 2 Samuel 24 and 1 Chronicles 21 — here David counts only those under twenty, while elsewhere the census is comprehensive.*

Connections: *The twelve monthly divisions echo Israel's twelve-tribe structure, imposing military organization on the tribal framework. The commanders include several of David's 'mighty men' from 1 Chronicles 11:10-47 — Jashobeam, Dodai, Benaiah — showing these warriors now hold institutional positions. Ahithophel the counselor (v. 33) is the same advisor who defected to Absalom (2 Samuel 15:12) and whose counsel was 'like the word of God' (2 Samuel 16:23). Hushai the 'king's friend' (v. 33) is the loyal agent who defeated Ahithophel's counsel during Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 15:32-37, 17:1-14). The estate managers connect to Solomon's later district governors (1 Kings 4:7-19), showing that Solomon inherited and expanded his father's administrative apparatus.*

¹The Israelites, according to their number — the heads of ancestral houses, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, and their officers who served the king in all matters relating to the divisions that came and went month by month throughout the year — each division numbered twenty-four thousand. ²Over the first division, for the first month: Jashobeam son of Zabdiel. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ³He was of the sons of Perez, chief of all the army commanders for the first month. ⁴Over the division of the second month: Dodai the Ahohite, with Mikloth as the officer of his division. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ⁵The third army commander, for the third month: Benaiah son of Jehoiada, the chief priest, as head. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ⁶This is the Benaiah who was a mighty man among the Thirty and

over the Thirty. His son Ammizabad commanded his division. ⁷The fourth, for the fourth month: Asahel the brother of Joab, and after him Zebadiah his son. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ⁸The fifth, for the fifth month: Shamhuth the Izrahite. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ⁹The sixth, for the sixth month: Ira son of Ikkesheh the Tekoite. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹⁰The seventh, for the seventh month: Helez the Pelonite, of the sons of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹¹The eighth, for the eighth month: Sibbecai the Hushathite, of the Zerahites. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹²The ninth, for the ninth month: Abiezer the Anathothite, a Benjaminite. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹³The tenth, for the tenth month: Maharai the Netophathite, of the Zerahites. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹⁴The eleventh, for the eleventh month: Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the sons of Ephraim. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹⁵The twelfth, for the twelfth month: Heldai the Netophathite, of the line of Othniel. In his division were twenty-four thousand. ¹⁶Over the tribes of Israel: for the Reubenites, the chief was Eliezer son of Zichri; for the Simeonites, Shephatiah son of Maacah; ¹⁷for Levi, Hashabiah son of Kemuel; for Aaron, Zadok; ¹⁸for Judah, Elihu, one of David's brothers; for Issachar, Omri son of Michael; ¹⁹for Zebulun, Ishmaiah son of Obadiah; for Naphtali, Jerimoth son of Azriel; ²⁰for the sons of Ephraim, Hoshea son of Azaziah; for the half-tribe of Manasseh, Joel son of Pedaiah; ²¹for the half-tribe of Manasseh in Gilead, Iddo son of Zechariah; for Benjamin, Jaasiel son of Abner. ²²for Dan, Azarel son of Jeroham. These were the chiefs of the tribes of Israel. ²³David did not count those twenty years of age and under, because the LORD had promised to make Israel as numerous as the stars of heaven. ²⁴Joab son of Zeruiah began the count but did not finish, because wrath fell on Israel because of it. The number was never entered into the official chronicles of King David. ²⁵Over the king's treasuries: Azmaveth son of Adiel. Over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, the villages, and the towers: Jonathan son of Uzziah. ²⁶Over those who worked the field for tillage of the soil: Ezri son of Chelub. ²⁷Over the vineyards: Shimei the Ramathite. Over the vineyard produce for the wine cellars: Zabdi the Shiphmite. ²⁸Over the olive trees and sycamore trees in the Shephelah: Baal-hanan the Gederite. Over the olive oil stores: Joash. ²⁹Over the cattle grazing in Sharon: Shitrai the Sharonite. Over the cattle in the valleys: Shaphat son of Adlai. ³⁰Over the camels: Obil the Ishmaelite. Over the donkeys: Jehdeiah the Meronothite. ³¹Over the flocks: Jaziz the Hagrite. All these were overseers of the property belonging to King David. ³²Jonathan, David's uncle, was a counselor — a man of understanding and a scribe. Jehiel son of Hachmoni attended the king's sons. ³³Ahithophel was the king's counselor; Hushai the Archite was the king's companion. ³⁴After Ahithophel came Jehoiada son of Benaiah and Abiathar. The commander of the king's army was Joab.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The rotation system — ha-ba'ah ve-ha-yotset chodesh be-chodesh ('coming in and going out month by month') — describes a standing army maintained by monthly rotation. Each division serves one month and then returns to civilian life. The phrase le-khol chodshei ha-shanah ('for all the months of the year') means continuous coverage without gaps. Twenty-four thousand per division multiplied by twelve yields 288,000 total.
2. Jashobeam is one of David's 'three' mighty warriors (11:11), who killed three hundred men with his spear in a single engagement. His assignment to the first month places the most legendary warrior at the head of the annual rotation.
3. Jashobeam's lineage traces to Perez, the son of Judah and Tamar (Genesis 38:29). The Perezite clan produced David's own royal line (Ruth 4:18-22), so the first-month commander shares David's tribal and clan identity.
4. Dodai the Ahohite is connected to Eleazar son of Dodo the Ahohite, another of David's three mighty men (11:12). Mikloth serves as the nagid ('ruler, officer') of this division — a second-in-command structure that ensures continuity if the commander falls.
5. Benaiah is both a warrior and the son of a priest — ha-kohen rosh ('the chief priest' or 'a leading priest'). His dual identity as fighter and priest's son is characteristic of David's inner circle, where military and sacred roles overlap. Benaiah later becomes Solomon's army commander (1 Kings 2:35).
6. The Chronicler pauses to identify Benaiah — he is both gibbor ha-sheloshim ('mighty among the Thirty') and al ha-sheloshim ('over the Thirty'). His son Ammizabad serves as his operational deputy, similar to the Mikloth arrangement in verse 4.
7. Asahel was killed by Abner in single combat (2 Samuel 2:18-23) early in David's reign. The phrase u-Zevadyah veno acharav ('and Zebadiah his son after him') acknowledges the succession. The appointment may be honorary — recognizing Asahel's status among the original warriors — with his son as the actual operational commander.
8. Shamhuth the Izrahite is likely Shammah (or Shammoth) the Harorite from David's mighty men (11:27). Name variants between military rosters are common in these lists.

9. Ira the Tekoite appears among David's mighty men (11:28). Tekoa, south of Bethlehem, also produced the wise woman who helped Joab reconcile David with Absalom (2 Samuel 14:1-2) and the prophet Amos.
10. Helez is identified as an Ephraimite, making him the first commander explicitly from the northern tribes. David's military organization incorporates warriors from across all Israel, not just Judah.
11. Sibbecai killed the Philistine giant Saph/Sippai (1 Chronicles 20:4, 2 Samuel 21:18). His designation as a Zerahite traces him to Zerah, son of Judah — the twin brother of Perez (Genesis 38:30).
12. Abiezer is from Anathoth in Benjamin — the same town where Jeremiah will later be born (Jeremiah 1:1) and where Abiathar the priest was banished (1 Kings 2:26). A Benjaminite commander in David's army demonstrates the integration of Saul's former tribe.
13. Maharai is from Netophah, a town near Bethlehem. Like Sibbecai (v. 11), he is a Zerahite of Judah. Two Zerahites among the twelve commanders gives this clan significant military representation.
14. This Benaiah is from Pirathon in Ephraim — a different person from Benaiah son of Jehoiada (v. 5). Pirathon is also the home of the judge Abdon (Judges 12:13-15). Two Ephraimite commanders (this Benaiah and Helez in v. 10) represent the northern tribes' integration.
15. Heldai the Netophathite traces his lineage to Othniel, the first judge of Israel (Judges 3:9-11). His placement in the twelfth and final position completes the annual military cycle. The connection to Othniel — the first deliverer after Joshua — gives this closing position historical depth.
16. The tribal list uses the term nagid ('chief, leader') for each tribal head — a title implying both military command and civil governance. The list begins with Reuben, Jacob's firstborn, following the traditional birth-order sequence.
17. Levi and Aaron are listed separately, distinguishing the tribal entity (Levi) from the priestly subset (Aaron). Zadok's placement as nagid over the Aaronites confirms his preeminence as David's chosen high priest, the man whose line will dominate the priesthood through the exile.
18. Elihu is identified as one of David's achei ('brothers') — possibly an older brother or half-brother not listed among Jesse's sons elsewhere. David does not place himself as tribal chief of Judah but delegates to a kinsman. Omri of Issachar shares the name of the later king of Israel (1 Kings 16:16) but is a different person.
19. The northern tribes — Zebulun and Naphtali — have their own designated chiefs under David's system. These were Galilean territories, the region Jesus would later make his primary base of ministry (Matthew 4:13-16, citing Isaiah 9:1-2).
20. Hoshea ('salvation') shares the name of both the last king of Israel (2 Kings 17:1) and the prophet Hosea. The half-tribe of Manasseh refers to the western portion; the eastern half is listed separately in verse 21.
21. The eastern half of Manasseh, settled in Gilead across the Jordan, has its own chief. Jaasiel son of Abner heads Benjamin — if this Abner is the famous general of Saul, then the Benjaminite chieftain descends from Saul's own military commander, maintaining Saulide prestige within David's administrative system.
22. Dan closes the tribal list. The concluding formula *elleh sarei shivtei Yisra'el* ('these were the chiefs of the tribes of Israel') wraps the section. Gad and Asher are notably absent from the list — whether through textual loss or the source document's incompleteness is uncertain.
23. David's restraint — not counting the youngest — is grounded in theology: *ki amar YHWH le-harbot et Yisra'el ke-kokhvei ha-shamayim* ('because the LORD had said he would multiply Israel like the stars of heaven'). The allusion to the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:5, 22:17) implies that counting God's promised multitude is an act of distrust — you do not number what God has promised to make innumerable.
24. This verse references the catastrophic census of 1 Chronicles 21 / 2 Samuel 24. Joab *hechel limnot ve-lo killah* ('began to count but did not finish') — the census was aborted because of the plague. The phrase *lo alah ha-mispar* ('the number did not go up/was not recorded') means the incomplete count was deliberately excluded from David's official records. It remains a permanent gap in the archive — the number that was never allowed to exist.
25. The royal estate system begins. Azmaveth manages the central treasury; Jonathan oversees the distributed storehouses across the kingdom's landscape — fields, cities, villages, and *migdalot* ('towers,' fortified storage points). This network of storehouses reveals a kingdom-wide supply chain.
26. Ezri manages the *avodat ha-adamah* ('tillage of the ground') — the agricultural workforce of the crown lands. The term *adamah* ('soil, ground') connects farming to the fundamental human vocation assigned in Genesis 2:15.
27. Viticulture has two managers: Shimei for the growing operation and Zabdi for the wine production and storage. This dual-manager structure separates cultivation from processing — an indication of specialized estate management.
28. The Shephelah (the lowland foothills between the Judean highlands and the coastal plain) is ideal terrain for olives and sycamores. Baal-hanan manages the orchards; Joash manages the pressed oil. The sycamore (*shiqmah*) provided both fruit and timber — a versatile crop. Amos later identifies himself as a tender of sycamores (Amos 7:14).
29. Sharon (the fertile coastal plain) and the interior valleys provide distinct pastoral zones. The crown's cattle are divided geographically, with separate managers for each region — reflecting the different grazing conditions of the coastal plain versus the inland valleys.

- 30.** An Ishmaelite manages the camels — a fitting assignment since Ishmael's descendants were the preeminent camel herders of the ancient Near East. This is a pragmatic decision: you hire the expert regardless of ethnicity. Jehdeiah manages the donkeys, the primary transport and work animal of the Israelite economy.
- 31.** Jaziz the Hagrite (from a semi-nomadic people east of Gilead) manages the sheep flocks — again, an ethnic outsider employed for expertise. The concluding formula *kol elleh sarei ha-rekhush asher la-melekh David* ('all these were overseers of the property of King David') wraps the estate section. The crown's economic portfolio spans agriculture, viticulture, horticulture, and animal husbandry across multiple ecological zones.
- 32.** Jonathan serves dual roles: *yo'ets* ('counselor') and *sofer* ('scribe'). He is also *ish mevin* ('a man of understanding/discernment'). Jehiel *im benei ha-melekh* ('with the king's sons') is a tutor or guardian to the royal princes — a position of enormous influence over the next generation of rulers.
- 33.** Ahithophel's counsel was 'like the word of God' (2 Samuel 16:23), but he defected to Absalom and hanged himself when his advice was rejected. Hushai, *re'a ha-melekh* ('the king's friend/companion') — a formal court title — was the loyal agent who defeated Ahithophel's strategy during the rebellion (2 Samuel 15:32-37). The Chronicler lists them without comment on the Absalom episode, but every reader would know the story.
- 34.** Jehoiada son of Benaiah replaces Ahithophel as counselor after the latter's defection and death — the father-son order is reversed from the usual Benaiah son of Jehoiada, suggesting this may be a grandson or a different family line. Abiathar the priest serves as advisor until Solomon banishes him (1 Kings 2:26-27). Joab closes the list as *sar tsava la-melekh* ('commander of the king's army') — the supreme military position, held until Solomon replaces him with Benaiah (1 Kings 2:34-35).

28

Summary: *David assembles all the officials of Israel in Jerusalem — the tribal chiefs, divisional commanders, estate managers, officers, mighty men, and all men of ability. He stands and addresses them, recounting how he wanted to build a house of rest for the ark of the covenant, the footstool of God, and had made preparations, but God told him he could not build because he was a man of war who had shed blood. Yet God chose him out of all his father's house to be king over Israel forever, and from among his sons chose Solomon to sit on the throne of the kingdom of the LORD. God promised to establish Solomon's kingdom forever if he is faithful to keep the commandments. David charges Solomon before all Israel to know the God of his father and serve him with a whole heart and a willing mind. He then gives Solomon the blueprint — the tavnit — for the Temple: the porch, the houses, the treasuries, the upper rooms, the inner chambers, and the room for the mercy seat. David provides the plan for the courts, the surrounding chambers, the treasuries of the house of God, the priestly and Levitical divisions, and the weight of gold and silver for every vessel of service. He specifies the weight of gold for the golden lampstands and their lamps, the silver for the silver lampstands, the gold for the tables of showbread, the gold for the forks, basins, and cups, and the refined gold for the altar of incense. Finally, he gives the design for the chariot — the cherubim of gold that spread their wings and cover the ark of the covenant. David declares that all this came to him in writing from the hand of the LORD, who gave him understanding of every detail of the blueprint. He charges Solomon: 'Be strong, be courageous, act! Do not be afraid or dismayed, for the LORD God, my God, is with you. He will not fail you or forsake you until all the work for the service of the house of the LORD is finished.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most theologically significant moments in Chronicles: the transmission of the tavnit (blueprint, pattern, model) from David to Solomon. The word tavnit appears four times (vv. 11, 12, 18, 19) and is the same term used for the tabernacle design given to Moses on Sinai (Exodus 25:9, 40). David does not design the Temple — he receives its pattern by divine revelation, exactly as Moses received the tabernacle pattern. This places the Temple blueprint on the same plane of authority as the Sinai revelation. In verse 19, David says explicitly: 'All this — the LORD made me understand in writing from his hand — all the works of the blueprint.' The Hebrew *hakkol bi-khtav mi-yad YHWH alai hiskil* ('all of it in writing from the hand of the LORD upon me he gave understanding') claims written divine revelation for the Temple plans. The Temple is not a human architectural achievement but a heavenly pattern transmitted through a prophet-king. David's charge to Solomon in verse 20 — 'Be strong, be courageous, act!' — echoes God's charge to Joshua (Joshua 1:6-9), making Solomon a new Joshua and the Temple-building a new conquest.*

Translation Friction: *The claim of written divine revelation for the Temple plans (v. 19) is unique to Chronicles and has no parallel in Samuel-Kings. Whether this means David received a literal written document (like the tablets of the law) or received understanding that he then wrote down is debated. The phrase *bi-khtav mi-yad YHWH* can mean 'in writing from the hand of the LORD' or 'in a writing, the hand of the LORD upon me*

gave understanding' — the syntax is ambiguous. The detailed weight specifications for gold and silver vessels (vv. 14-18) may reflect post-exilic Temple practice retroactively attributed to David's plans. The 'chariot of the cherubim' (merkavah, v. 18) is a term not used elsewhere for the Temple cherubim and may reflect Ezekiel's vision of the divine chariot (Ezekiel 1, 10) — a fascinating potential link between David's Temple plans and Ezekiel's mystical vision.

Connections: The tavnit parallel to Exodus 25:9, 40 is the chapter's central intertextual link — Moses received the tabernacle pattern on Sinai, David receives the Temple pattern in Jerusalem. Both structures are copies of a heavenly original. The charge to Solomon ('Be strong and courageous,' v. 20) quotes Deuteronomy 31:6-8 and Joshua 1:6-9 verbatim. David's statement that God chose Solomon to sit al kiseh malkhut YHWH ('on the throne of the kingdom of the LORD,' v. 5) makes Israel's monarchy explicitly theocratic — the king sits on God's throne, not his own. The phrase 'footstool of our God' (v. 2) for the ark connects to Psalm 99:5, 132:7 and Isaiah 66:1. The merkavah ('chariot') of the cherubim (v. 18) becomes the foundation of Jewish mystical tradition (ma'aseh merkavah), connecting Temple architecture to visionary theology.

¹David assembled all the officials of Israel in Jerusalem — the tribal chiefs, the divisional commanders who served the king, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, the stewards of all the property and livestock of the king and his sons, together with the court officials, the mighty warriors, and every man of ability. ²King David rose to his feet and said, 'Hear me, my brothers and my people. It was in my heart to build a house of rest for the ark of the covenant of the LORD, for the footstool of our God, and I made preparations to build. ³But God said to me, 'You shall not build a house for my name, for you are a man of war and have shed blood.' ⁴Yet the LORD, the God of Israel, chose me out of all my father's house to be king over Israel forever. For he chose Judah as leader, and within the house of Judah, my father's house, and among my father's sons, he was pleased to make me king over all Israel. ⁵And from all my sons — for the LORD gave me many sons — he chose Solomon my son to sit on the throne of the kingdom of the LORD over Israel. ⁶He said to me, 'Solomon your son — he will build my house and my courts, for I have chosen him as my son, and I will be a father to him. ⁷I will establish his kingdom forever, if he holds firm to carry out my commandments and my judgments, as he does today.' ⁸Now therefore, in the sight of all Israel — the assembly of the LORD — and in the hearing of our God: observe and seek out all the commandments of the LORD your God, so that you may possess this good land and leave it as an inheritance for your children after you forever. ⁹And you, Solomon my son — know the God of your father and serve him with a whole heart and a willing mind, for the LORD searches every heart and understands every inclination of the thoughts. If you seek him, he will be found by you; but if you forsake him, he will reject you forever. ¹⁰See now that the LORD has chosen you to build a house for the sanctuary. Be strong and act! ¹¹David gave Solomon his son the blueprint for the porch, its buildings, its treasuries, its upper rooms, its inner chambers, and the room for the mercy seat. ¹²He gave the blueprint for everything that the Spirit had given him: the courts of the house of the LORD, all the surrounding chambers, the treasuries of the house of God, and the treasuries of the dedicated things, ¹³and for the divisions of the priests, and the Levites,, and for all the work of service in the house of the LORD,, and for all the vessels of service in the house of the LORD. ¹⁴He specified the weight of gold for all the gold vessels for each kind of service, and the weight of silver for all the silver vessels for each kind of service. ¹⁵He specified the weight for the golden lampstands and their golden lamps — the weight for each lampstand and its lamps — and for the silver lampstands, the weight for each lampstand and its lamps, according to the function of each. ¹⁶He specified the weight of gold for the tables of showbread — for each table — and silver for the silver tables. ¹⁷He specified pure gold for the forks, the bowls, and the cups, and for the golden basins — the weight for each basin — and for the silver basins, the weight for each basin. ¹⁸He specified the weight of refined gold for the altar of incense, and gold for the design of the chariot — the cherubim that spread their wings and covered the ark of the covenant of the LORD. ¹⁹David said, 'All this the LORD made me understand in writing from his hand — all the works of the blueprint.' ²⁰David said to Solomon his son, 'Be strong, be courageous, and act! Do not be afraid or dismayed, for the LORD God — my God — is with you. He will not let you go or forsake you until every work of service for the house of the LORD is finished. ²¹The divisions of the priests and Levites are ready for every service of the house of God. With you for every kind of work are willing men skilled in every craft for every task. The officials and all the people are entirely at your command.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scope of the assembly is comprehensive — every category of leadership from chapters 23-27 is now gathered: tribal chiefs (ch. 27), divisional commanders (ch. 27), the officers, the gibborim ('mighty warriors,' ch. 11), and kol gibbor chayil ('every man of ability'). David has organized the entire infrastructure; now he addresses them as a single body for the final charge.
2. The word menuchah ('rest') echoes the theology of Psalm 132:8, 14 ('Arise, O LORD, to your resting place') and 23:25 where David says God has given rest to his people. The hadom raglayim ('footstool') image appears also in Psalm 99:5 and Isaiah 66:1, where heaven is God's throne and earth his footstool.
3. The reason David cannot build — ish milchamot attah ve-damim shafakhta ('you are a man of wars and have shed blood') — is unique to Chronicles (compare 22:8). The Samuel-Kings account gives a different reason: the Temple will be built by the next generation (2 Samuel 7:12-13). The Chronicler's version makes the prohibition about moral disqualification: the hands that shed blood cannot build the house of peace. This creates a theological necessity for Solomon, whose name means 'peace.'
4. David traces a narrowing sequence of divine election: Israel to Judah, Judah to Jesse's house, Jesse's sons to David. Each step is bachar ('he chose') — active divine selection. The phrase le-olam ('forever') frames the Davidic monarchy as an eternal institution, grounded in the covenant of 2 Samuel 7 / 1 Chronicles 17.
5. The election narrows further: among David's many sons, God chose Solomon. The phrase kiseh malkhut YHWH ('throne of the kingdom of the LORD') is remarkable — it is not David's throne or Solomon's throne but the LORD's throne. The Israelite king is a viceroy, sitting on God's own seat of governance. This theocratic language is distinctive to Chronicles.
6. God's declaration bacharti vo li le-ven ('I have chosen him as my son') and va-ani ehveh lo le-av ('I will be a father to him') recites the adoption formula from the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7:14, 1 Chronicles 17:13). The father-son language defines the covenant relationship between God and the king — the king is God's adopted son, and God exercises paternal authority over the dynasty.
7. The conditional im ('if') introduces a critical qualification: the eternal kingdom is contingent on faithfulness. This conditionality creates the theological tension that drives the rest of Chronicles — every subsequent king will be measured against this standard. The phrase ka-yom ha-zeh ('as at this day') implies Solomon is currently obedient, but the conditional framing warns that continuation is not guaranteed.
8. David shifts from narrative to exhortation, addressing the assembly as qahal YHWH ('the congregation of the LORD') — a term for Israel assembled in sacred convocation. The charge to shimru ve-dirshu ('observe and seek') pairs obedience (keeping) with inquiry (seeking) — faithfulness requires both following known commands and actively pursuing understanding. The promise of land inheritance le-olam ('forever') is Deuteronomic language (Deuteronomy 4:40, 11:21).
9. The word chafetsah ('willing, desiring, delighting') indicates that God wants not forced compliance but genuine desire. The verb zanach ('to reject, to cast off') in the warning clause is severe — la-ad ('forever') means permanent rejection. This is David's most urgent theological statement to his son.
10. The imperative re'eh ('see, take heed') demands clear-eyed recognition of the calling. The final charge — chazaq va-aseh ('be strong and act/do it') — is terse and commanding. It echoes Joshua 1:6-9 and anticipates the fuller charge in verse 20. The verb asah ('act, do, make') turns courage into concrete action — strength without doing is insufficient.
11. The word tavnit ('blueprint, pattern, model') is the critical term. David hands over a comprehensive architectural plan: the ulam ('porch/vestibule'), the battim ('houses/rooms'), the ganzakkayim ('treasuries'), the aliyyot ('upper chambers'), the chadarim ha-penimim ('inner rooms'), and the beit ha-kapporet ('room of the mercy seat/atonement cover'). The kapporet is the gold cover of the ark where God's presence dwells (Exodus 25:17-22).
12. The phrase kol asher hayah ba-ruach immo ('all that was in/by the spirit with him') indicates divine inspiration — the ruach ('spirit') that gave David the design may be God's Spirit or the prophetic spirit working through David. The tavnit extends beyond the building itself to the chatserot ('courts'), leshakhot ('chambers'), and both categories of treasury (operational and dedicated, as established in 26:20-28).
13. The blueprint encompasses not only architecture but personnel (priestly and Levitical divisions) and equipment (vessels of service). The design is comprehensive — it organizes space, people, and objects into a unified system of worship. Everything the Chronicler has detailed in chapters 23-27 is part of the divinely revealed pattern.
14. David does not merely say 'make gold vessels' — he specifies ba-mishqal ('by weight') for every item. The precision reflects the sacred nature of the materials: nothing is left to approximation when building for God. The phrase avodah va-avodah ('service and service,' i.e., 'each kind of service') indicates different liturgical functions require vessels of specific weight and composition.
15. The menorot (plural of menorah, 'lampstands') are specified in both gold and silver, with weight for each lampstand and its nerot ('lamps'). The plural indicates multiple lampstands, unlike the single menorah of the tabernacle (Exodus 25:31-40). Solomon's Temple had ten golden lampstands (2 Chronicles 4:7). The weight specification for each one individually — menorah u-menorah ('lampstand by lampstand') — shows meticulous itemization.
16. The shulchanot ha-ma'arakhet ('tables of the arrangement/showbread') hold the twelve loaves that represent Israel's tribes before God continuously (Leviticus 24:5-9). Multiple tables — le-shulchan ve-shulchan ('for table and table') — again exceed the single table of the tabernacle. The specification of both gold and silver tables suggests different grades of furnishing for different functions.

17. The smaller implements are specified: mizlagot ('forks' for handling sacrificial meat), mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls'), and qesavot ('cups'). The keforim ('basins') receive individual weight specifications — li-khefor u-khefor ('for basin and basin'). Even the humblest utensil in the divine pattern has its precise weight assigned.
18. The word merkavah appears nowhere else in connection with the Temple cherubim. Its use here creates a theological link between the Temple's Holy of Holies and Ezekiel's vision of God riding on the cherubim-chariot (Ezekiel 1:4-28, 10:1-22). The phrase le-forshim ve-sokhkhim al aron berit YHWH ('spreading out and covering the ark of the covenant of the LORD') describes the cherubim's dual action: wings extended and wings forming a protective canopy.
19. The syntax is disputed: does bi-khtav modify the manner of revelation ('in writing') or the product ('in a document')? Either way, the claim is extraordinary — the Temple plans have the same revelatory authority as the Torah itself. This is the strongest claim for written divine revelation outside the Sinai narrative.
20. The threefold imperative — chazaq ('be strong'), emats ('be courageous'), aseh ('act') — combines internal disposition with external action. Strength and courage without doing is inertia; doing without strength and courage is recklessness. The promise that God lo yarpekha ve-lo ya'azvekka ('will not let you go or forsake you') is also quoted in Hebrews 13:5 as applicable to all believers.
21. David's final assurance is practical: Solomon is not alone. The priestly and Levitical divisions (chapters 23-26) are organized. Skilled artisans (kol nadiv be-chokhmah, 'every willing person with skill/wisdom') are available. The officials (sarim) and the entire people (kol ha-am) are le-khol devarekha ('at your every word/command'). The infrastructure is built, the personnel are trained, the support is total. All Solomon needs to do is begin.

29

Summary: David tells the assembly that Solomon is young and inexperienced, and that the work is great, for the Temple is not for man but for the LORD God. David lists the vast resources he has personally contributed from his own treasure: gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, onyx, antimony, colored stones, marble — all in abundance. He then challenges the assembly: 'Who is willing to consecrate themselves today to the LORD?' The leaders of the ancestral houses, the tribal chiefs, the commanders, and the royal stewards give willingly: five thousand talents of gold, ten thousand darics, ten thousand talents of silver, eighteen thousand talents of bronze, and one hundred thousand talents of iron. Those who had precious stones gave them to the treasury. The people rejoice because they gave willingly, with a whole heart, and David also rejoices greatly. David then prays one of the most majestic prayers in the Hebrew Bible — a prayer of blessing, adoration, and theological depth. He blesses the LORD God of Israel, declaring that greatness, power, glory, victory, and majesty belong to God alone, for everything in heaven and earth is his. Wealth and honor come from God, who rules over all. David acknowledges that all the abundance they have given comes from God's own hand: 'All things come from you, and from your own hand we have given back to you.' He prays for the assembly's hearts to remain faithful, and for Solomon to keep God's commandments and build the Temple. The assembly blesses the LORD and bows in worship. The next day they offer sacrifices — a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, a thousand lambs — with their drink offerings and abundant sacrifices for all Israel. They eat and drink before the LORD with great joy. Solomon is anointed king a second time, and Zadok is anointed priest. Solomon sits on the throne of the LORD as king, and all Israel obeys him. The chapter and the book close with David's death summary: he reigned forty years — seven in Hebron, thirty-three in Jerusalem — and died in good old age, full of days, riches, and honor. Solomon his son reigned in his place.

What Makes This Remarkable: David's prayer in verses 10-19 is the theological summit of 1 Chronicles — arguably one of the greatest prayers in the entire Hebrew Bible. It contains the doxological statement lekha YHWH ha-gedulah ve-ha-gevurah ve-ha-tiferet ve-ha-netsach ve-ha-hod ('Yours, O LORD, is the greatness, the power, the glory, the victory, and the majesty') that became the foundation of the doxology appended to the Lord's Prayer ('For yours is the kingdom, the power, and the glory, forever, amen'). Verse 14 — 'All things come from you, and from your own hand we have given back to you' — is one of the great theological statements of the Bible. It demolishes human pride in generosity: every gift to God is merely returning what God first gave. You cannot enrich God; you can only give back. Verse 15 declares 'we are strangers and sojourners before you, as all our fathers were; our days on earth are like a shadow, and there is no abiding' — language that frames the entire building project in the context of human transience. David builds for eternity while confessing that he himself is a shadow. The juxtaposition of massive material wealth (vv. 2-8) with radical theological humility (vv. 14-15) is the Chronicler's master stroke.

Translation Friction: The amounts given — five thousand talents of gold, ten thousand talents of silver, eighteen thousand talents of bronze, one hundred thousand talents of iron — are enormous, potentially exceeding the GDP of ancient Near Eastern kingdoms. The ten thousand darics (darkemonim, v. 7) are Persian-era coins, an anachronism if the narrative is set in David's time. The Chronicler either uses contemporary monetary terms for his post-exilic audience or draws from a source that has been updated. Solomon's 'second anointing' (v. 22) contrasts with the emergency first anointing in 1 Kings 1:38-40, which the Chronicler omits — he presents Solomon's accession as orderly and unanimous, without the Adonijah crisis.

Connections: David's doxology (v. 11) directly informs the doxology of the Lord's Prayer (Matthew 6:13 in some manuscripts) and Revelation 5:12-13. The phrase 'strangers and sojourners' (v. 15) echoes the patriarchal self-description (Genesis 23:4, 47:9) and Psalm 39:12, connecting David to the pilgrim identity of Abraham. The nedavah ('freewill offering') theme links to the tabernacle construction in Exodus 35:5, 21-29, where the people also gave willingly. David's death formula — reigning forty years (seven in Hebron, thirty-three in Jerusalem) — matches 2 Samuel 5:4-5 exactly. Solomon sitting on kiseh YHWH ('the throne of the LORD,' v. 23) recalls 28:5, making Israel's monarchy a visible expression of divine rule. The statement 'from your own hand we have given back to you' (v. 14) becomes a foundational principle of Jewish and Christian giving theology.

¹King David said to the whole assembly, 'My son Solomon, the one whom God has chosen, is young and inexperienced, and the work is great — for the Temple is not for a human being but for the LORD God. ²With all my resources I have provided for the house of my God: gold for the gold work, silver for the silver, bronze for the bronze, iron for the iron, wood for the wood, onyx stones, stones for setting, antimony stones, stones of various colors, every kind of precious stone, and marble — all in abundance. ³Moreover, because I delight in the house of my God, I have given from my own personal treasure of gold and silver to the house of my God — over and above everything I have provided for the holy house: ⁴three thousand talents of gold — gold of Ophir — and seven thousand talents of refined silver, for overlaying the walls of the Temple buildings. ⁵gold for the gold work, silver for the silver, and for every kind of work by the hands of craftsmen. Who then will offer willingly, consecrating themselves today to the LORD?' ⁶The heads of the ancestral houses, the chiefs of the tribes of Israel, the commanders of thousands and hundreds, and the overseers of the king's work gave willingly. ⁷They gave for the service of the house of God: five thousand talents of gold, ten thousand darics, ten thousand talents of silver, eighteen thousand talents of bronze, and one hundred thousand talents of iron. ⁸Those who had precious stones gave them to the treasury of the house of the LORD, into the care of Jehiel the Gershonite. ⁹The people rejoiced over their willing gifts, for they had given to the LORD willingly, with a whole heart. King David also rejoiced with great joy. ¹⁰David blessed the LORD in the sight of the whole assembly. David said, 'Blessed are you, O LORD, God of Israel our father, from everlasting to everlasting. ¹¹Yours, O LORD, is the greatness, the power, the glory, the victory, and the majesty — for everything in heaven and on earth is yours. Yours, O LORD, is the kingdom, and you are exalted as head over all. ¹²Wealth and honor come from you, and you rule over all. In your hand are power and might, and in your hand is the ability to make great and to give strength to all. ¹³And now, our God, we give you thanks and praise your glorious name. ¹⁴But who am I, and who are my people, that we should have the ability to give so willingly? For all things come from you, and from your own hand we have given back to you. ¹⁵For we are strangers before you and sojourners, as all our fathers were. Our days on earth are like a shadow, and there is no abiding. ¹⁶O LORD our God, all this abundance that we have gathered to build you a house for your holy name — it comes from your hand, and all of it is yours. ¹⁷I know, my God, that you test the heart and take pleasure in uprightness. In the uprightness of my heart I have given all these things willingly, and now I have seen with joy your people who are present here giving willingly to you. ¹⁸O LORD, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel our fathers, keep this forever — this inclination in the thoughts of the hearts of your people — and direct their hearts toward you. ¹⁹And give my son Solomon a whole heart, to keep your commandments, your testimonies, and your statutes, to carry out everything, and to build the Temple for which I have made provision.' ²⁰David said to the whole assembly, 'Now bless the LORD your God.' The whole assembly blessed the LORD, the God of their fathers, and bowed low and prostrated themselves before the LORD and the king. ²¹They offered sacrifices to the LORD and presented burnt offerings to the LORD on the next day: a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings, and abundant sacrifices for all Israel. ²²They ate and drank before the LORD on

that day with great joy. They made Solomon son of David king a second time, anointing him before the LORD as ruler, and Zadok as priest. ²³Solomon sat on the throne of the LORD as king in place of David his father. He prospered, and all Israel obeyed him. ²⁴All the officials, the mighty warriors, and also all the sons of King David pledged their allegiance to King Solomon. ²⁵The LORD made Solomon exceedingly great in the sight of all Israel and bestowed on him royal majesty such as no king over Israel had possessed before him. ²⁶David son of Jesse reigned over all Israel. ²⁷The time he reigned over Israel was forty years: he reigned seven years in Hebron and thirty-three years in Jerusalem. ²⁸He died at a good old age, full of days, riches, and honor. Solomon his son reigned in his place. ²⁹The acts of King David, from first to last, are written in the records of Samuel the seer, in the records of Nathan the prophet, and in the records of Gad the seer, ³⁰together with the full account of his reign, his might, and the events that befell him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the lands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. David frames the enormity of the project with two contrasts: Solomon is na'ar va-rakh ('young and tender/inexperienced') while the melakhah gedolah ('the work is great'). The decisive statement — ki lo le-adam ha-birah ki la-YHWH Elohim ('for the Temple is not for man but for the LORD God') — establishes the theological standard: this is not a royal vanity project but a divine dwelling. The word birah ('citadel, Temple, fortress') is a Persian-era term, reflecting the Chronicler's vocabulary.
2. David's list of materials is comprehensive: seven categories of metal and stone, each specified for its purpose. The phrase u-ke-khol kochi ('with all my strength/resources') indicates total personal investment. The avnei shoham ('onyx stones'), avnei fukh ('antimony/stibium stones,' used for decorative inlay), and avnei shayish ('marble/alabaster stones') describe the gem and stone work that will adorn the Temple.
3. The phrase bi-retsoti be-veit Elohai ('because I delight in the house of my God') reveals David's motivation: ratsah ('to delight, to take pleasure') is desire, not duty. His personal treasury (segullah, 'personal possession, special treasure') is distinguished from the national resources — this is David's private wealth given as an additional offering beyond the official provisions.
4. The zahav Ofir ('gold of Ophir') is the premium gold grade in the ancient world — Ophir's location is debated (southern Arabia, East Africa, or India) but its gold was legendary (1 Kings 9:28, 10:11). The silver is mezuqqaq ('refined, purified'). Both are designated la-tuach qiroi ha-battim ('for overlaying the walls of the buildings') — the Temple's interior walls will be plated in precious metal.
5. David's rhetorical question — u-mi mitnaddev le-malle'ot yado ha-yom la-YHWH ('who is willing to fill his hand today to the LORD?') — is a call for freewill offerings. The phrase malle'ot yado ('to fill his hand') is the technical term for priestly consecration (Exodus 28:41), but here David applies it to every Israelite: giving to the Temple is an act of self-consecration. The verb hitnaddev ('to volunteer, to give freely') is the root of nedavah ('freewill offering').
6. The response is comprehensive: every level of leadership gives. The verb vayyitnaddevu ('they volunteered, they gave willingly') is the reflexive form of nadav — they made themselves willing. The listing of four leadership tiers — ancestral heads, tribal chiefs, military commanders, and royal administrators — mirrors the assembly of 28:1.
7. The quantities are staggering. The adarkhonim (darics) are Persian gold coins — an anachronistic term in a Davidic-era narrative, indicating the Chronicler uses monetary language his post-exilic audience would understand. The metals are listed from most to least precious: gold, silver, bronze, iron — a descending hierarchy of value but ascending hierarchy of practical utility.
8. The stones go to Jehiel the Gershonite, the treasury administrator identified in 26:21-22. The phrase al yad Yechiel ('into the hand of Jehiel') shows the administrative system already functioning — the treasury infrastructure from chapter 26 receives the gifts from chapter 29.
9. Joy is the dominant emotion: vayyismechu ('they rejoiced') over their own generosity, and David samach simchah gedolah ('rejoiced a great joy'). The key phrase is be-lev shalem hitnaddevu la-YHWH ('with a whole heart they gave willingly to the LORD') — the same lev shalem ('whole heart') that David urged Solomon to have in 28:9. The people have modeled for Solomon the heart posture his father commanded.
10. The prayer opens with the standard berakah formula: barukh attah YHWH ('blessed are you, O LORD'). God is identified as Elohei Yisra'el avinu ('God of Israel our father') — 'our father' refers to Israel/Jacob, making this the God of the patriarchal covenant. The phrase me-olam ve-ad olam ('from everlasting to everlasting') frames God's existence as beyond all time in both directions.
11. The five-fold attribution has been analyzed as encompassing every dimension of divine sovereignty: greatness (scope), power (force), glory (beauty), victory (triumph), and majesty (dignity). The phrase ha-mitnasseh le-khol le-rosh ('the one who is exalted as head over all') uses the reflexive — God lifts himself above all, not by external force but by inherent nature.
12. David turns the doxology into a statement about economics and power: ha-osher ve-ha-kavod millefanekha ('the wealth and the honor come from before you'). Every talent of gold and silver just donated came from God first. The phrase u-ve-yadekha ('in your hand') appears twice, emphasizing divine sovereignty: koach u-gevurah ('power and might') and le-gaddel u-le-chazzeq ('to make great and to strengthen'). Human wealth, power, and greatness are all gifts from God's hand.

12. Register departure: kavod rendered as 'honor' rather than default 'glory' because this instance is paired with 'wealth' in David's prayer — the social weight and recognition that accompanies material abundance, distinct from the divine glory sense in v. 11.
13. The transition ve-attach Eloheinu ('and now, our God') moves from doxological declaration to direct address. The twin verbs modim anachnu lakh ('we thank you') and mehalelim le-shem tif'artekha ('we praise your glorious name') combine thanksgiving with praise. The shem tif'eret ('name of splendor/glory') is the divine Name itself — the Name that will dwell in the Temple.
14. The phrase ki na'atsor koach le-hitnaddev ka-zot ('that we should retain strength to give willingly like this') uses the verb atsar ('to retain, to restrain') — even the capacity to give is a power that must be granted. The sentence ki mimmekha hakkol has become foundational in Jewish and Christian theology of stewardship and giving.
15. The word miqveh can mean 'hope,' 'expectation,' or 'abiding.' Its negation — ein miqveh — creates absolute finality: human life on earth has no permanence to hope for. This is not despair but theological realism, the same perspective as Psalm 39:5-6, 12 and Psalm 144:4.
16. David reiterates the theology of verse 14 with even greater directness: kol ha-hamon ha-zeh ('all this abundance/wealth') that has been given mi-yadekha hu ('it is from your hand') and ulekha hakkol ('all of it is yours'). The massive treasury of gold, silver, bronze, iron, and gems is declared to be, in its entirety, God's own property temporarily passing through human hands. The phrase le-shem qodshekha ('for your holy Name') identifies the Temple's purpose: housing the divine Name.
17. David returns to the divine heart-search of 28:9: attach bochen levav ('you test the heart'). He claims yosher levavi ('uprightness of my heart') for his own giving, then extends the observation to the people: ra'iti be-simchah le-hitnaddev lakh ('I have seen with joy [them] giving willingly to you'). The king's joy is in watching his people mirror his own willing generosity.
18. David prays for the preservation of the people's willing spirit. The phrase shomrah zot le-olam ('keep this forever') asks God to maintain the generous inclination permanently. The yetser machshevot levav ammekha ('the inclination of the thoughts of the heart of your people') uses the same yetser ('inclination, formation') from 28:9 — but here David asks God to protect it rather than merely observe it. The final plea — ve-hakhen levavam elekha ('and direct/establish their hearts toward you') — acknowledges that even the direction of the heart requires divine action.
19. David's final petition is for Solomon: ten levav shalem ('give a whole heart'). The lev shalem ('whole heart') has been the chapter's dominant motif (vv. 9, 17, 19). David cannot command his son's heart — he can only ask God to give it. The threefold Torah obligation — mitsvotekha ('your commandments'), edotekha ('your testimonies'), ve-chuqqekha ('your statutes') — covers the full scope of divine instruction. The birah ('Temple/citadel') is the same Persian-era term from verse 1.
20. David's command barekhu na et YHWH ('now bless the LORD your God') is a call to worship. The response is total: vayyiqdu vayyishtachavu ('they bowed and prostrated themselves') before both God and the king. The double object — la-YHWH ve-la-melekh ('to the LORD and to the king') — is not idolatry but the recognition that the king represents God's authority on earth. The prostration acknowledges divine sovereignty expressed through human kingship.
21. The numbers are symmetrical — a thousand of each sacrificial category: parim ('bulls'), elim ('rams'), kevasim ('lambs'). The threefold thousand creates a sacrificial abundance that mirrors the monetary abundance of the preceding verses. The phrase u-zevachim la-rov le-khol Yisra'el ('abundant sacrifices for all Israel') indicates communal feasting — everyone eats from the peace offerings.
22. The phrase vayyamlikhu shenit ('they made king a second time') acknowledges a prior anointing — the emergency coronation in 1 Kings 1:38-40, which the Chronicler has not narrated. This second, public ceremony is the formal, ceremonial installation. Solomon is anointed le-nagid ('as ruler/prince') rather than le-melekh ('as king') — nagid emphasizes that the true king is God; Solomon is his designated leader. Zadok's anointing as priest alongside Solomon's royal anointing creates a dual installation of the two offices that will govern the Temple.
23. The phrase kish YHWH ('the throne of the LORD') appears again (see 28:5) — Solomon does not sit on his own throne but on God's. The verb vayyatslach ('he prospered') is the Chronicler's shorthand for divine favor. The phrase vayyishme'u elav kol Yisra'el ('all Israel obeyed him') records unanimous national submission — no Adonijah crisis, no opposition, just total unity under the new king.
24. The phrase natenu yad tachat Shelomoh ('they gave a hand under Solomon') is a gesture of submission and loyalty — placing one's hand under the new king's authority. The notation that kol benei ha-melekh David ('all the sons of King David') submitted is significant: no brother contests Solomon's rule. The Chronicler presents a seamless transition free of the fratricidal conflict recorded in 1 Kings 1-2.
25. The verb vaygaddel ('he made great') echoes David's prayer in verse 12, where he acknowledged that God alone has the power le-gaddel ('to make great'). The hod malkhut ('royal majesty') given to Solomon surpasses all predecessors — a statement that includes both Saul and David himself. Solomon's glory is entirely a divine gift, fulfilling the theology of verse 12.
26. The death summary begins with David's full patronymic identification — David ben Yishai ('David son of Jesse'). This returns to the very beginning: David entered the narrative as Jesse's youngest son (1 Chronicles 2:13-16), and he exits as David son of Jesse who reigned over all Israel.
27. The regnal summary matches 2 Samuel 5:4-5 exactly: forty years total, divided between Hebron (seven) and Jerusalem (thirty-three). The number forty is a complete generation — David's reign spans an entire era. The Hebron period corresponds to his kingship over Judah alone, the Jerusalem period to his rule over unified Israel.
28. The death formula is among the most generous in the Hebrew Bible: seivah tovah ('a good old age'), seva yamim ('full of days'), osher ve-khavod ('riches and honor'). David receives what was promised to Solomon in 1 Kings 3:13 — wealth and honor — as his own epitaph. The regnal succession formula vayyimlokh Shelomoh veno tachtav ('Solomon his son reigned in his place') completes the transition. The Chronicler has omitted the

deathbed intrigue of 1 Kings 1-2 entirely — David dies in peace, dignity, and fullness.

- 29.** The Chronicler cites three prophetic sources for David's complete history: divrei Shemu'el ha-ro'eh ('the records of Samuel the seer'), divrei Natan ha-navi ('the records of Nathan the prophet'), and divrei Gad ha-chozeh ('the records of Gad the seer'). Three different prophetic titles — ro'eh ('seer'), navi ('prophet'), and chozeh ('visionary/seer') — suggest these were distinct written works. None survive independently, though their content may be partially preserved in 1-2 Samuel.
- 30.** The final verse expands the scope of the written sources: they contain not only David's malkhut ('reign') and gevurah ('might') but also ha-ittim asher avru alav ('the times/events that passed over him') — the full sweep of historical circumstance that shaped David's era. The reference to kol mamlakhot ha-aratsot ('all the kingdoms of the lands') places David's story in international context — his reign was not provincial but interacted with the wider world. This is the Chronicler's farewell to David: the man who entered as a shepherd boy and exits as a king whose story is inscribed in prophetic records alongside the histories of empires.

2 Chronicles

Summary: *Solomon son of David secures his throne and goes to the great high place at Gibeon, where the Tent of Meeting and the bronze altar of Bezalel stand. There he offers a thousand burnt offerings. That night God appears to him and says, 'Ask what I should give you.' Solomon asks for wisdom and knowledge to govern this vast people. God, pleased that Solomon did not ask for wealth, long life, or the death of his enemies, grants him both wisdom and unprecedented riches and honor. Solomon returns to Jerusalem and accumulates chariots, horses, silver, and gold on an extraordinary scale, making silver as common as stones and cedars as plentiful as sycamores.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's version of Solomon's accession differs significantly from 1 Kings 3. There is no mention of Solomon's marriage to Pharaoh's daughter, no dream sequence, and no test case of the two mothers. The Chronicler strips away anything that could cast a shadow over Solomon's legitimacy and presents a king whose first act is worship and whose first request is wisdom. The question 'Ask what I should give you' (she'al mah etten lakh) echoes God's blank-check offer to David (2 Samuel 7) and anticipates Jesus's teaching 'Ask and it will be given' (Matthew 7:7). Solomon's answer reveals a king who understands that governing the people of God is a task beyond human capacity — the phrase 'who can govern this people of yours, which is so great?' acknowledges that Israel belongs to God, not to Solomon.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler's silence about Solomon's Egyptian marriage and political consolidation (the executions of Adonijah, Joab, and Shimei in 1 Kings 2) creates a deliberately idealized portrait. This is not accidental omission but theological editing: the Chronicler is constructing Solomon as the ideal Temple-builder, and anything that complicates that portrait is set aside. The horses and chariots from Egypt (v. 16-17) sit in uneasy tension with Deuteronomy 17:16, which forbids the king from multiplying horses or returning the people to Egypt to acquire them. The Chronicler reports this trade without comment.*

Connections: *Solomon at Gibeon connects to the tabernacle tradition — the Tent of Meeting and Bezalel's bronze altar (Exodus 38:1-2) are still in use, bridging the wilderness period to the Temple age. Solomon's wisdom request parallels Moses's complaint about the burden of leading Israel (Numbers 11:14) but with a different outcome: Moses receives seventy elders to share the load, while Solomon receives divine wisdom to carry it alone. The accumulation of silver and gold anticipates the Temple construction (chapters 2-4) — the wealth is not for Solomon's personal indulgence but for the house he is about to build.*

¹Solomon son of David established himself firmly over his kingdom. The LORD his God was with him and made him surpassingly great. ²Solomon spoke to all Israel — to the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, to the judges, and to every leader throughout Israel, the ancestral heads. ³Solomon and the entire assembly went with him to the high place at Gibeon, because the Tent of Meeting of God — which Moses, servant of the LORD, had made in the wilderness — was there. ⁴However, the ark of God David had brought up from Kiriath-jearim to the place David had prepared for it, for he had pitched a tent for it in Jerusalem. ⁵The bronze altar that Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur had made was there before the tabernacle of the LORD, and Solomon and the assembly sought the LORD at it. ⁶Solomon went up there to the bronze altar before the LORD, which belonged to the Tent of Meeting, and offered a thousand burnt offerings on it. ⁷That night God appeared to Solomon and said to him, "Ask — what should I give you?" ⁸Solomon said to God, "You showed great faithful love to David my father, and You have made me king in his place. ⁹Now, LORD God, let Your word to David my father be confirmed, for You have made me king over a people as numerous as the dust of the earth. ¹⁰Give me wisdom and knowledge so that I may lead this people, going out and coming in before them — for who can govern this great people of Yours?" ¹¹God said to Solomon, "Because this was in your heart — you did not ask for wealth, riches, or honor, or for the lives of those who hate you, and you did not even ask for a long life, but asked for wisdom and knowledge to govern My people over whom I have made you king — ¹²wisdom and knowledge are granted to you. And I will also give you wealth, riches, and honor such as no king before you has had, and none after you will have the like." ¹³Solomon came back to Jerusalem from the high place at Gibeon, from before the Tent of Meeting, and reigned over Israel. ¹⁴Solomon amassed chariots and horsemen. He had fourteen hundred chariots and twelve thousand horsemen, which he stationed in the chariot cities and with the king in Jerusalem. ¹⁵The king made silver and gold as common as stones in Jerusalem, and cedars as plentiful as the sycamore trees in the lowlands. ¹⁶Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from Kue; the king's traders acquired them from Kue at the market price. ¹⁷They imported a chariot from Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver and a horse for a hundred and fifty, and at these rates they exported them to all the kings of the Hittites and the kings of Aram.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-yitchazzeq* ('he strengthened himself') is a Hitpael form indicating both self-effort and divine empowerment. The Chronicler immediately pairs Solomon's political consolidation with divine presence — 'the LORD his God was with him' — making the theological point that Solomon's power derives from God's companionship. The adverb *lema'lah* ('upward, exceedingly') suggests an upward trajectory that will culminate in the Temple.
2. The Chronicler presents Solomon addressing the entire national leadership structure. The list moves from military commanders (*sarei ha-alafim ve-ha-me'ot*) to judicial officials (*shoftim*) to tribal leaders (*nasi*, 'prince, chief') to ancestral heads (*rashei ha-avot*). This comprehensive assembly signals that what follows is a national act, not a private royal devotion.
3. The Chronicler justifies Solomon's worship at the *bamah* ('high place') by noting that the legitimate Tent of Meeting was located there. This resolves the tension that the Kings account leaves unaddressed (1 Kings 3:2-4): worship at high places was normally suspect, but Gibeon housed the authentic Mosaic tabernacle. The phrase *eved YHWH* ('servant of the LORD') applied to Moses lends authority to the location.
4. The Chronicler carefully distinguishes two sacred locations: the Tent of Meeting with the bronze altar was at Gibeon, while the ark of God was in Jerusalem in the tent David had erected (1 Chronicles 15-16). This separation — tabernacle without ark at Gibeon, ark without tabernacle in Jerusalem — is the liturgical anomaly that Solomon's Temple will resolve by reuniting both in one house.
5. Bezalel (*betsel-el*, 'in the shadow of God') was the master craftsman of the original wilderness tabernacle (Exodus 31:1-5). His bronze altar, now centuries old, still functions as a place of sacrifice. The Chronicler names Bezalel's full genealogy — son of Uri, son of Hur — connecting Solomon's worship to the original Sinai-era craftsmanship. The verb *va-yidreshu* ('he sought him/it') can mean Solomon sought the LORD or sought the altar; both readings reinforce that Solomon's first royal act is worship.
6. A thousand burnt offerings (*olot elef*) is an extraordinary number — the scale signals that this is not ordinary worship but a royal inauguration of cosmic proportions. Each *olah* ('burnt offering') was consumed entirely on the altar, ascending as smoke to God. A thousand complete animal sacrifices would have taken considerable time and resources, signaling total devotion and royal extravagance directed toward God rather than toward human display.
7. Unlike 1 Kings 3:5, which specifies this as a dream (*ba-chalom*), the Chronicler simply says God appeared (*nir'ah*). The removal of the dream framework makes the encounter more direct and authoritative. The question is devastatingly open-ended: no conditions, no restrictions, no menu of options. What Solomon asks for will reveal who he is.

8. Solomon's first word is about God's prior action: *attah asita* ('You have done'). Before asking anything, Solomon acknowledges that his kingship is a gift rooted in God's *chesed* toward David. The phrase *chesed gadol* ('great faithful love') is covenantal language — God's faithful love to David is the foundation on which Solomon's reign rests.
9. The simile *ke-afar ha-aretz* ('like the dust of the earth') echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 13:16, 'I will make your offspring like the dust of the earth'). Solomon recognizes that the people he governs are the fulfillment of that ancient promise. The verb *ye'amen* ('let it be confirmed, established') is from the root *a-m-n*, the same root that gives us 'amen' and 'faithfulness.' Solomon asks God to make His word *amen* — trustworthy, established, real.
10. The Chronicler uses *chokmah u-madda* ('wisdom and knowledge') where 1 Kings 3:9 has *lev shomea* ('a hearing heart'). Both requests aim at the same capacity — the ability to discern and govern — but the Chronicler's vocabulary is more intellectual and administrative. The rhetorical question 'who can govern?' implies the answer 'no one, without divine help.' Solomon's self-awareness is itself a form of wisdom.
11. God's response begins with *ya'an asher hayetah zot im levavekha* ('because this was with your heart') — the request reveals the heart, and the heart reveals the man. The list of things Solomon did not ask for — wealth (*osher*), riches (*nekhasim*), honor (*kavod*), enemy deaths, long life — represents the standard wish-list of ancient kings. Solomon bypassed all of them for governing capacity. God identifies the people as *ammi* ('My people'), echoing Solomon's own acknowledgment that Israel belongs to God.
12. The divine grant exceeds the request. Solomon asked for wisdom; God gives wisdom and everything Solomon did not ask for. The phrase *asher lo hayah khen la-melakhim asher lefanekha* ('such as no king before you has had') places Solomon in a unique historical category — not merely a wealthy king but the wealthiest ever, past or future. This superlative framing establishes the standard against which all subsequent kings will be measured.
13. The transition from Gibeon to Jerusalem marks the beginning of Solomon's effective reign. The Chronicler bookends the Gibeon visit: Solomon went to Gibeon to worship (v. 3) and returned to Jerusalem to reign (v. 13). Worship precedes governance — the king who sought God first is now equipped to rule. The phrase *va-yimlokh al Yisrael* ('he reigned over Israel') is the formal notice that Solomon's rule has begun in earnest.
14. The military buildup — 1,400 chariots and 12,000 horsemen — represents an enormous standing force for an Iron Age kingdom. The 'chariot cities' (*arei ha-rekhev*) were strategically located garrison towns such as Megiddo, Hazor, and Gezer (cf. 1 Kings 9:15-19). This standing chariot force made Israel a regional military power. The numbers match 1 Kings 10:26 exactly.
15. The hyperbolic comparisons — silver like stones, cedars like sycamores — communicate abundance that defies normal economic categories. The Shephelah ('lowland') between the Judean hills and the coastal plain was thick with sycamore-fig trees, a common and fast-growing species. Cedars of Lebanon, by contrast, were premium imported timber. Solomon's wealth has inverted the natural order of value: the rare has become common.
16. The term *miqveh* (rendered 'linen yarn' in the KJV) is now widely understood as a proper noun — Que or Kue, the region of Cilicia in southeastern Anatolia (modern Turkey), a known horse-trading region in the ancient Near East. Solomon operated as a middleman in the international horse and chariot trade, importing from both Egypt and Cilicia.
17. The price list — 600 silver shekels per chariot, 150 per horse — reveals the economics of Solomon's arms trade. Israel served as the commercial bridge between Egypt (chariot manufacturer) and the Neo-Hittite and Aramean kingdoms to the north. The 4:1 ratio of chariot-to-horse price reflects the manufacturing cost of the chariot itself. The phrase *be-yadam yotzi'u* ('by their hand they exported') indicates the king's traders served as brokers, profiting from the spread between purchase and sale price.

2

Summary: *Solomon resolves to build a house for the Name of the LORD and a royal palace. He conscripts a massive labor force from among the resident foreigners in Israel. He sends a message to Hiram king of Tyre (the Chronicler's spelling of Hiram), requesting skilled artisans and timber from Lebanon — cedar, cypress, and algum wood. Solomon describes the Temple's purpose: it will be a place of incense, showbread, and perpetual burnt offerings. He acknowledges that heaven and the highest heavens cannot contain God, and that the house he builds is merely a place 'to burn incense before Him.' Hiram responds with a letter praising the LORD who made heaven and earth, and sends Hiram-abi, a master craftsman of mixed Tyrian-Danite parentage. Hiram agrees to supply timber, floated as rafts down the coast to Joppa. Solomon conducts a census of all the resident foreigners in Israel — 153,600 — and assigns them as carriers, stonecutters, and overseers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's version of the Hiram correspondence expands significantly on 1 Kings 5. Most notably, Solomon's letter contains an explicit theological disclaimer: 'The heavens and the highest heavens cannot contain Him — who am I that I should build Him a house, except to burn incense before Him?' (v. 5, Hebrew v. 6). This is extraordinary self-awareness for a king about to undertake history's most ambitious sacred building project. Solomon simultaneously claims the Temple is necessary and admits it is inadequate. The foreign king Hiram's response includes a*

doxology — 'Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who made heaven and earth' (v. 11, Hebrew v. 12) — making a pagan king confess Israelite creation theology. The Chronicler places Israel's most important theological assertions in the mouth of a Gentile.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew versification of 2 Chronicles 2 differs from the English by one verse throughout: Hebrew 2:1 = English 1:18, and Hebrew 2:2-17 = English 2:1-16. We follow the Hebrew (18-verse) versification. The name Hiram-abi (v. 12, Hebrew v. 13) is peculiar — 'abi' means 'my father,' raising the question of whether this is a personal name or an honorific title ('Hiram my master craftsman'). The craftsman's maternal lineage is given as Dan in Chronicles but Naphtali in 1 Kings 7:14, a well-known discrepancy that may reflect different tribal traditions or intermarriage between the tribes. The use of forced foreign labor (mas, corvee) raises ethical questions the text does not address, though the Chronicler pointedly notes that Solomon did not conscript Israelites for slave labor (cf. 2 Chronicles 8:9).

Connections: Solomon's timber request to Tyre mirrors David's earlier building relationship with Hiram (1 Chronicles 14:1). The skilled craftsman Hiram-abi parallels Bezalel of the tabernacle (Exodus 31:1-5) — both are spirit-filled artisans working with gold, silver, bronze, fabric, and engraving. The census of foreign laborers connects to the alien resident (ger) tradition in Torah — foreigners living in the land have obligations but also protections (Leviticus 19:33-34). The timber rafts floated to Joppa will later appear in Ezra 3:7, when the Second Temple builders use the same supply route, deliberately reprising Solomon's method.

¹Solomon counted out seventy thousand burden-bearers, eighty thousand stonecutters in the hill country, and three thousand six hundred overseers to direct them. ²Solomon sent word to Hiram king of Tyre: "As you dealt with David my father and sent him cedars to build himself a house to dwell in — ³I am about to build a house for the Name of the LORD my God, to consecrate it to Him — for burning fragrant incense before Him, for the perpetual arrangement of bread, and for burnt offerings morning and evening, on the Sabbaths, at the new moons, and at the appointed festivals of the LORD our God. This is a perpetual obligation for Israel. ⁴The house I am building will be great, because our God is greater than all gods. ⁵Yet who has the power to build Him a house? The heavens and the highest heavens cannot contain Him! Who am I that I should build Him a house — except as a place to burn incense before Him? ⁶Now send me a skilled craftsman who can work in gold, silver, bronze, and iron, and in purple, crimson, and blue fabrics, and who knows how to execute engravings — to work alongside the skilled artisans with me in Judah and Jerusalem whom David my father provided. ⁷Send me also cedar, cypress, and algum timber from Lebanon, for I know that your servants are skilled at cutting Lebanon timber. My servants will work alongside yours ⁸to prepare timber for me in great quantity, for the house I am building will be great and marvelous. ⁹I will supply your servants, the woodcutters who fell the timber: twenty thousand cors of crushed wheat, twenty thousand cors of barley, twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil." ¹⁰Hiram king of Tyre replied in a letter sent to Solomon: "Because the LORD loves His people, He has set you as king over them." ¹¹Hiram also said, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who made heaven and earth, who has given King David a wise son, endowed with insight and understanding, who will build a house for the LORD and a house for his kingdom." ¹²Now I am sending a skilled man, endowed with understanding — Hiram-abi. ¹³He is the son of a woman from the daughters of Dan, and his father is a man of Tyre. He is skilled in working with gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and timber, with purple, blue, fine linen, and crimson fabrics, and in executing every kind of engraving and designing any plan that is given to him. He will work alongside your skilled craftsmen and the craftsmen of my lord David your father. ¹⁴Now, the wheat, barley, oil, and wine that my lord mentioned — let him send them to his servants. ¹⁵We will cut timber from Lebanon, as much as you need, and float it to you in rafts by sea to Joppa. You will transport it up to Jerusalem. ¹⁶Solomon took a census of all the resident foreigners in the land of Israel, following the census David his father had conducted, and they were found to number 153,600. ¹⁷He assigned seventy thousand of them as burden-bearers, eighty thousand as stonecutters in the hill country, and three thousand six hundred as overseers to keep the people at work. ¹⁸Solomon began to build the house of the LORD in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah, where the LORD had appeared to David his father, at the site David had prepared — on the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is 1:18 in the Hebrew versification and serves as a bridge between the Gibeon narrative and the Temple preparations. The labor force totals 153,600 workers — all drawn from the resident foreigners (*gerim*) as clarified later in the chapter. The three categories — carriers (*sabbal*), stone-cutters (*chotzev*), and overseers (*menatzeach*) — represent a highly organized construction hierarchy. The numbers match the census in verse 17 (Hebrew v. 18).
2. The Chronicler spells the Tyrian king's name Hiram (*chiram*) rather than Hiram (*chiram*) as in Kings. Solomon opens diplomatic correspondence by invoking the existing treaty relationship with David. The reference to David's palace (*bayit lashevet bo*, 'a house to dwell in') establishes precedent: Tyre supplied David's building materials, and Solomon now requests the same arrangement on a vastly larger scale.
3. The phrase *le-shem YHWH* ('for the Name of the LORD') is the Chronicler's central Temple theology — the building houses God's Name, which is the accessible, relational dimension of God's being. The liturgical calendar embedded in this verse covers every temporal cycle: daily, weekly, monthly, and seasonal. The Temple will be a house of perpetual worship, never silent, never dark.
4. Solomon's logic is direct: *gadol ha-bayit ki gadol Eloheinu* — the house must be great because the God it serves is great. The comparative *mikol ha-elohim* ('above all gods') does not deny the existence of other deities in the ancient Near Eastern context but asserts the LORD's supremacy over them. The greatness of the building is a theological statement, not merely an architectural ambition.
5. The phrase *shmei ha-shamayim* ('heavens of heavens' or 'highest heavens') represents the maximum extent of created space. The verb *yekhalkeluhu* ('can contain Him') is from the root *k-l-l* ('to hold, contain, sustain') — the same verb used for a vessel holding liquid. God cannot be held by any container, including the cosmos itself. This theology will be restated in Solomon's dedicatory prayer (6:18).
6. The material list — gold, silver, bronze, iron, purple, crimson, blue — covers the full spectrum of Temple construction media: metals and dyed textiles. The verb *lefatteach pituchim* ('to engrave engravings') refers to decorative carving and metalwork. Solomon already has Judean artisans trained by David but needs a master craftsman to lead them. The request parallels the appointment of Bezalel and Oholiab for the tabernacle (Exodus 31:1-6).
7. Three types of timber are requested: *arazim* (cedars — the premier building wood), *beroshim* (cypress or juniper — aromatic and durable), and *algummim* (algum, possibly red sandalwood, imported via Lebanon). The cedars of Lebanon were the ancient world's most prized construction material, valued for their size, durability, and fragrance. Solomon acknowledges Tyrian expertise in forestry — the Lebanese mountains were Phoenician territory.
8. The adjective *ve-hafle* ('and marvelous, and extraordinary') is from the root *p-l-l* ('to be wonderful, surpassing'). Solomon does not merely say the Temple will be large but that it will evoke wonder — it is designed to astonish. The scale of the timber request reflects the ambition: a structure that transcends normal architectural categories.
9. The payment is entirely in agricultural commodities — wheat, barley, wine, and oil — reflecting an economy where Phoenician Tyre, dependent on trade for food, exchanged manufactured goods and timber for Israelite grain and produce. A *kor* was approximately 220 liters (about 6 bushels); a *bath* was approximately 22 liters (about 6 gallons). These quantities represent an enormous annual provision, underscoring the scale of the trade agreement. The amounts differ from 1 Kings 5:11 (which lists 20,000 cors of wheat and 20 cors of oil), one of several numerical differences between the parallel accounts.
10. Hiram's reply is *be-khtav* ('in writing') — a formal diplomatic letter, not an oral message. The Tyrian king's opening statement is remarkable: *be-ahavat YHWH et ammo* ('because of the LORD's love for His people'). A foreign king attributes Solomon's kingship to the love of Israel's God. The Chronicler uses Gentile testimony to validate both Solomon's reign and Israel's covenant God.
11. Hiram's blessing — *barukh YHWH Elohei Yisrael asher asah et ha-shamayim ve-et ha-aretz* — is a full confession of Israelite creation theology from a Phoenician king. The phrase 'who made heaven and earth' identifies the LORD as cosmic Creator, not merely a national deity. Hiram blesses God for giving David a *ben chakham* ('wise son'), confirming that Solomon's wisdom is divinely given and internationally recognized. The dual building project — a house for the LORD and a house for his kingdom — will occupy Solomon's next twenty years.
12. The name Hiram-abi (literally 'Hiram my father' or 'Hiram the master') has generated much discussion. The 'abi' suffix may be an honorific title ('master craftsman') rather than a kinship term. In 1 Kings 7:13-14, the same figure is simply called Hiram. The Chronicler's addition of 'abi' may elevate his status — a 'father' or 'master' in the craft guild sense.
13. Hiram-abi's maternal lineage is traced to Dan; 1 Kings 7:14 says Naphtali. Both tribes occupied territory in the far north of Israel, and intermarriage between them was common. The craftsman's mixed parentage — Israelite mother, Tyrian father — makes him a bridge figure between the two peoples, just as the Temple project bridges Israelite worship and Phoenician craftsmanship. His skill list is comprehensive: metals, stone, wood, textiles, engraving, and design. The phrase *lachshov kol machashevet* ('to devise any design') indicates creative engineering capacity, not merely manual skill.
14. Hiram accepts the proposed payment terms. The address 'my lord' (*adoni*) is diplomatic courtesy — Hiram, himself a king, addresses Solomon with deference, reflecting either the political dynamics of the relationship or conventional diplomatic language between treaty partners.
15. The logistics are specific: timber cut in the Lebanese mountains, transported to the coast, lashed into rafts (*rafsodot*), floated south along the Mediterranean to the port of Joppa (Yafo, modern Jaffa/Tel Aviv), then hauled overland and uphill approximately 55 kilometers to Jerusalem. This same supply route will be reused for the Second Temple (Ezra 3:7). Joppa was the nearest viable port to Jerusalem, despite the considerable overland

distance.

16. The gerim ('resident foreigners, sojourners') are non-Israelites living permanently in the land — descendants of the pre-Israelite populations or immigrants who had settled among the tribes. Solomon's census follows David's precedent (1 Chronicles 22:2). The precise number 153,600 matches the labor force breakdown: 70,000 carriers + 80,000 stonemasons + 3,600 overseers = 153,600. The entire foreign labor force was counted and assigned.
17. The labor assignments mirror verse 1 exactly, closing the inclusio: the chapter opens and closes with the same workforce numbers. The verb *leha'avid* ('to make work, to put to labor') is causative — the overseers' job is to ensure continuous productive labor. The Chronicler reserves this corvée labor for foreigners, distinguishing it from the broader conscription described in 1 Kings 5:13-14 which included Israelites.
18. This is the only passage in the Hebrew Bible that identifies the Temple mount with Mount Moriah of the Abraham narrative. The connection is theologically deliberate: the place where Abraham bound Isaac becomes the place where Israel offers perpetual sacrifice. The phrase *asher nir'ah le-David* ('where [the LORD] appeared to David') refers to the theophany at Ornan's threshing floor (1 Chronicles 21:16-27). The Chronicler layers three traditions onto one site: Abrahamic sacrifice, Davidic atonement, and Solomonic Temple.

3

Summary: *Solomon begins building the house of the LORD on Mount Moriah. The chapter provides the Temple's foundational dimensions — sixty cubits long and twenty cubits wide — and describes its major architectural features: the entrance portico, the main hall overlaid with gold and decorated with palm trees and chain-work, the inner sanctuary (the Holy of Holies) overlaid with six hundred talents of fine gold, and the two great cherubim of olive wood overlaid with gold, their combined wingspan stretching twenty cubits across the inner sanctuary. The chapter concludes with the two freestanding bronze pillars at the Temple entrance, named Jachin ('He establishes') and Boaz ('In Him is strength'), each eighteen cubits tall and topped with elaborate capitals of chain-work, pomegranates, and lily-work.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's Temple description is more compressed than 1 Kings 6 but introduces unique details. The measurement system uses 'cubits of the old standard' (v. 3), an archival note indicating awareness that measurement standards had changed between Solomon's time and the Chronicler's era. The gold overlay of the inner sanctuary uses 600 talents of gold — an almost inconceivable quantity (roughly 20 metric tons). The nails alone weighed fifty shekels of gold (v. 9). Every surface the worshiper or priest could see was covered in gold: walls, floors, beams, doors, cherubim. The visual effect was total luminosity — a room designed to reflect any light source infinitely. The naming of the pillars Jachin and Boaz transforms architectural elements into theological declarations: the Temple entrance announces that God 'establishes' and that 'in Him is strength' before anyone enters.*

Translation Friction: *The dimensions given here differ in some details from 1 Kings 6. The portico height of 120 cubits (v. 4) is considered by many scholars to be a textual corruption — 120 cubits (approximately 180 feet) would make the portico a tower far taller than the Temple itself. The Septuagint reads 20 cubits, which is architecturally proportional. We render the Hebrew text as it stands while noting the problem. The 'old standard' cubit (v. 3) is itself debated: some identify it as the Egyptian royal cubit (approximately 52.5 cm) versus the common cubit (approximately 44.5 cm), while others see it as simply the pre-exilic standard versus a post-exilic measurement.*

Connections: *The Temple dimensions echo the tabernacle proportions — the Holy of Holies is a perfect cube of 20 cubits, just as the tabernacle's inner sanctum was a cube of 10 cubits. Solomon's Temple is the tabernacle doubled in every dimension. The cherubim in the inner sanctuary reprise the cherubim on the ark's mercy seat (Exodus 25:18-20) but at vastly larger scale — from handbreadth-sized figures to room-spanning sculptures. The pillars Jachin and Boaz stand at the threshold between the profane world and sacred space, their names forming a theological gatehouse: 'He establishes — in Him is strength.' Ezekiel's visionary Temple (Ezekiel 40-48) will later reimagine these proportions, and the New Jerusalem in Revelation 21 will be a perfect cube — the Holy of Holies expanded to cosmic scale.*

¹Solomon began to build the house of the LORD in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah, where the LORD had appeared to David his father, at the site David had prepared on the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. ²Construction began on the second day of

the second month in the fourth year of his reign. ³These are Solomon's foundations for building the house of God: the length, in cubits of the old standard, was sixty cubits, and the width was twenty cubits. ⁴The portico across the front of the house matched the width of the house — twenty cubits — and the height was a hundred and twenty cubits. He overlaid the interior with pure gold. ⁵The main hall he paneled with cypress wood, then overlaid it with fine gold, and decorated it with palm trees and chain-work. ⁶He adorned the house with precious stones for splendor, and the gold was gold of Parvaim. ⁷He overlaid the house — its beams, its thresholds, its walls, and its doors — with gold, and carved cherubim on the walls. ⁸He constructed the Holy of Holies. Its length, matching the width of the house, was twenty cubits, and its width was twenty cubits. He overlaid it with fine gold — six hundred talents. ⁹The gold nails weighed fifty shekels. He also overlaid the upper chambers with gold. ¹⁰In the Holy of Holies he made two cherubim of sculptured work and overlaid them with gold. ¹¹The wings of the cherubim had a combined span of twenty cubits. One wing of the first cherub was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house, and the other wing was five cubits, reaching to the wing of the second cherub. ¹²One wing of the second cherub was five cubits, reaching to the wall of the house, and the other wing was five cubits, joined to the wing of the first cherub. ¹³The wings of these cherubim spread out twenty cubits. They stood on their feet, and their faces were turned toward the main hall. ¹⁴He made the curtain of blue, purple, and crimson yarn and fine linen, and worked cherubim into it. ¹⁵In front of the house he made two pillars, thirty-five cubits tall, with a capital of five cubits on top of each. ¹⁶He made chain-work as in the inner sanctuary and placed it on the tops of the pillars. He also made a hundred pomegranates and set them in the chains. ¹⁷He set up the pillars in front of the temple hall, one on the right and one on the left. He named the one on the right Jachin and the one on the left Boaz.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse repeats 2:18 (Hebrew versification), serving as the formal opening of the construction narrative. The triple location markers — Jerusalem, Mount Moriah, Ornan's threshing floor — anchor the Temple in geographical, theological, and historical space simultaneously.
2. The date — second day of the second month of Solomon's fourth year — corresponds to the spring month of Ziv (Iyyar). The parallel in 1 Kings 6:1 gives the month but not the day. The Chronicler's precision about the day suggests access to archival records or a tradition that preserved the exact construction date. The fourth year places the building start after three years of preparation — gathering materials, organizing labor, and diplomatic arrangements with Tyre.
3. The phrase *ba-middah ha-ri'shonah* ('by the first/former measure') indicates the Chronicler is aware that cubit standards changed over time. The 'old standard' cubit was likely the longer royal cubit of approximately 52.5 centimeters (about 20.7 inches), making the Temple roughly 31.5 meters (103 feet) long and 10.5 meters (34 feet) wide. These are modest dimensions by modern standards but represented the largest stone building in Israel's history.
4. The portico (*ulam*) stood at the Temple's eastern entrance. Its width of 20 cubits matched the building's width. The stated height of 120 cubits (approximately 63 meters or 207 feet) is almost certainly a textual corruption — this would make the portico a tower six times taller than the Temple's main hall (30 cubits, per 1 Kings 6:2). The Septuagint and some manuscripts read 20 cubits, which is architecturally coherent. The gold overlay of the interior (*zahav tahor*, 'pure gold') begins the theme of total golden coverage that dominates the chapter.
5. The *ha-bayit ha-gadol* ('the great house') is the main hall (*heikhal*), the larger room between the portico and the inner sanctuary. The construction is layered: stone walls, cypress paneling, gold overlay, decorative relief. The *timorim* ('palm trees') are stylized palm tree carvings — a common ancient Near Eastern motif symbolizing life and fertility. The *sharshrot* ('chains') are decorative chain patterns, possibly garland-like festoons connecting the palm motifs.
6. The even *yeqarah* ('precious stone') inlaid into the walls added color and brilliance to the gold surfaces. The source of the gold — Parvaim (*parvayim*) — is unknown; it may refer to a region in Arabia, eastern Africa, or even India. Its specificity suggests it was a well-known gold source in the ancient world, now lost to identification. The term *le-tifaret* ('for splendor, glory, beauty') indicates the stones served an aesthetic and theological purpose — the house was designed to embody visible beauty as a reflection of divine glory.
7. Every structural element receives gold overlay: beams (*qorot*), thresholds (*sippim*), walls (*qivot*), and doors (*daletot*). The carved cherubim on the walls extended the guardian motif from the inner sanctuary outward into the main hall. The worshiper approaching the inner sanctuary would see cherubim on every surface — wall carvings, door carvings, and finally the massive freestanding cherubim in the Holy of Holies.
8. Six hundred talents of gold (approximately 20,000 kilograms) is an almost inconceivable quantity for a single room. For comparison, the entire annual gold production of the ancient world has been estimated at roughly 1 metric ton. Either the number is hyperbolic, or Solomon had access to gold reserves far beyond what modern scholarship typically estimates for an Iron Age kingdom. The theological point is clear regardless: the inner sanctuary demanded resources without limit.

9. Even the mismerot ('nails, fasteners') were made of gold — fifty shekels' worth (approximately 575 grams or 1.3 pounds). This detail reveals the totality of the golden vision: not just visible surfaces but structural fasteners were gold. The aliyot ('upper chambers') above the main hall also received gold overlay, extending the coverage to spaces above the worshiper's line of sight. Nothing was left uncovered.
10. The ma'aseh tza'atzu'im ('work of sculptures' or 'image-work') indicates that the cherubim were carved three-dimensional figures, not flat reliefs. The root tz-'-tz-' may relate to toys or molded forms, suggesting shaped, possibly jointed craftsmanship. These are the massive guardian figures that will shelter the ark, distinct from the smaller cherubim on the ark's mercy seat.
11. The geometry is precise: each cherub has a wingspan of ten cubits (two wings of five cubits each). The first cherub's outer wing touches the south wall; its inner wing extends to meet the inner wing of the second cherub. The second cherub's inner wing meets the first, and its outer wing touches the north wall. Together they span the entire twenty-cubit width of the Holy of Holies, forming a continuous canopy of wings over the ark below.
12. The verb deveqah ('joined, clinging') describes the point where the two inner wings meet — they touch but do not overlap. The ark of the covenant sits beneath this junction point, sheltered by the wings from above. The verb d-v-q is the same used for a man 'clinging' to his wife in Genesis 2:24, suggesting intimate connection.
13. Two details distinguish these cherubim from the ark-top cherubim: they stand on their feet (not kneel or crouch) and their faces are directed la-bayit ('toward the house,' meaning toward the main hall, facing outward from the inner sanctuary). The ark-top cherubim faced each other over the mercy seat (Exodus 25:20); these room-scale cherubim face outward, as if guarding the threshold between the Holy of Holies and the main hall.
14. The parokhet ('curtain, veil') separated the Holy of Holies from the main hall. Its fabric composition — tekhelet (blue, from murex snail dye), argaman (purple, also from murex), karmil (crimson, from the kermes insect), and butz (fine linen) — matches the tabernacle curtain of Exodus 26:31. Cherubim were woven into the fabric itself, multiplying the guardian motif: carved cherubim on the walls, sculptured cherubim in the room, woven cherubim on the curtain. This is the same curtain that will be torn from top to bottom at the crucifixion (Matthew 27:51).
15. The pillar height of 35 cubits differs from 1 Kings 7:15 (18 cubits each). The Chronicler may be giving the combined height of both pillars (2 x 18 = 36, approximately 35), or the measurement may include the base and capital together (18 cubit shaft + 5 cubit capital + base = approximately 35 cubits total). The capitals (tsefet, an unusual word possibly related to 'crowning') added five cubits of ornamental work atop each shaft.
16. The sharshot ('chains') on the pillar capitals echoed the chain-work decorating the inner sanctuary, creating visual continuity between the entrance and the holiest space. The rimmonim ('pomegranates') — one hundred of them — were decorative fruits hung in the chain-work. Pomegranates, with their many seeds, symbolized fertility and abundance in ancient Near Eastern art. They also decorated the hem of the high priest's robe (Exodus 28:33-34), connecting the pillars' ornamentation to the priestly vestments.
17. The heikhal ('temple hall') is the main chamber, the larger room where the daily liturgy took place. The pillars stood in front of it — not supporting it structurally but framing its entrance symbolically. Whether the names Jachin and Boaz are the opening words of inscriptions, the names of donors, or theological declarations remains debated. The rendering takes them as theological statements based on their Hebrew etymologies.

4

Summary: *Solomon constructs the Temple furnishings. The chapter catalogs the bronze altar (twenty cubits square and ten cubits high), the great bronze sea resting on twelve oxen, ten movable basins, ten golden lampstands, ten tables, a hundred golden bowls, the court of the priests, the great court with its bronze doors, and the placement of the sea on the south side of the Temple. The chapter functions as an inventory of sacred objects, each designed for specific liturgical purposes: the altar for burnt offerings, the sea for priestly washing, the basins for rinsing sacrificial portions, the lampstands for perpetual light, and the tables for the bread of the Presence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's furnishings list multiplies key items compared to the Kings account. Where 1 Kings describes one lampstand (the menorah) inherited from the tabernacle tradition, Chronicles reports ten lampstands — five on the south and five on the north of the main hall. Similarly, ten tables replace the single table of showbread in Kings. This multiplication transforms the Temple from a scaled-up tabernacle into something qualitatively different: a space of tenfold luminosity and tenfold provision. The bronze sea — a massive basin holding roughly 66,000 liters (the Chronicler says 3,000 baths versus 2,000 in Kings) — resting on twelve oxen oriented toward the four compass points creates a symbolic cosmos: the primordial waters tamed and held in service by the twelve tribes, facing every direction of the earth.*

Translation Friction: *The bronze sea's capacity is given as 3,000 baths here versus 2,000 baths in 1 Kings 7:26. This is one of the most discussed numerical discrepancies between Chronicles and Kings. Attempts to harmonize include distinguishing between volume 'to the brim' and normal fill level, but the simpler explanation is that the Chronicler's source preserved a different number. The altar dimensions (20 x 20 x 10 cubits) are not given*

in 1 Kings at all — this is unique to the Chronicler. An altar of this size would be one of the largest in the ancient Near East.

Connections: The bronze sea on twelve oxen connects to the cosmic imagery of Israelite worship — waters gathered and contained, echoing Genesis 1:9-10 where God gathers the waters into one place. The twelve oxen facing four directions (three per direction) represent the twelve tribes oriented toward the four corners of the earth, making the sea a microcosm of Israel's world-embracing vocation. The ten lampstands multiply the tabernacle's single menorah (Exodus 25:31-40), amplifying its symbolism of divine light. The priestly washing in the sea (v. 6) connects forward to baptismal theology — water for purification before approaching God.

¹He made a bronze altar: twenty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and ten cubits high. ²He made the cast sea, ten cubits from brim to brim, circular all around, five cubits high, and a line of thirty cubits measured its circumference. ³Beneath it were figures of oxen encircling it — ten per cubit all around the sea. The oxen were in two rows, cast as one piece with the sea. ⁴It stood on twelve oxen — three facing north, three facing west, three facing south, and three facing east — with the sea resting on top of them, and all their hindquarters turned inward. ⁵Its thickness was a handbreadth, and its rim was shaped like a cup's rim, like a lily blossom. It held three thousand baths. ⁶He made ten basins and placed five on the right side and five on the left. They were for rinsing — the portions of the burnt offering were washed in them. The sea, however, was for the priests to wash in. ⁷He made ten golden lampstands according to their prescribed design and placed them in the temple hall — five on the right side and five on the left. ⁸He made ten tables and placed them in the temple hall — five on the right and five on the left. He also made a hundred golden bowls for sprinkling. ⁹He made the court of the priests and the great court, with doors for the court. He overlaid the doors with bronze. ¹⁰He placed the sea on the right side, at the southeast corner of the house. ¹¹Huram made the pots, the shovels, and the sprinkling bowls. So Huram finished the work he was doing for King Solomon on the house of God: ¹²the two pillars, the two bowl-shaped capitals on top of the pillars, and the two lattice networks covering the two bowl-shaped capitals on top of the pillars; ¹³four hundred pomegranates for the two lattice networks — two rows of pomegranates for each network — covering the two bowl-shaped capitals on the pillars; ¹⁴the stands he made, and the basins on the stands; ¹⁵the one sea, and the twelve oxen beneath it; ¹⁶the pots, the shovels, the forks, and all their utensils — Huram-abi made them for King Solomon for the house of the LORD, of polished bronze. ¹⁷The king cast them in the Jordan plain, in the thick clay ground between Succoth and Zeredah. ¹⁸Solomon made all these vessels in such great abundance that the weight of the bronze could not be calculated. ¹⁹Solomon also made all the vessels that belonged to the house of God: the golden altar, the tables on which the bread of the Presence was placed, ²⁰the lampstands and their lamps, to burn according to the prescribed manner before the inner sanctuary, of refined gold; ²¹the blossoms, the lamps, and the tongs — of gold, and that of the purest gold; ²²the snuffers, the sprinkling bowls, the ladles, and the firepans — of refined gold. As for the entrance of the house: its inner doors to the Holy of Holies, and the doors of the house opening to the temple hall, were of gold.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The bronze altar's dimensions — 20 x 20 x 10 cubits (approximately 10.5 x 10.5 x 5.25 meters) — make it vastly larger than the tabernacle's altar (5 x 5 x 3 cubits, Exodus 27:1). This is the altar on which the daily burnt offerings, peace offerings, and festival sacrifices would be consumed. Its square footprint matches the width of the Temple building itself, centering the sacrificial system directly before the house of God. This dimension is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings never specifies the altar's measurements.
2. The yam mutzaq ('cast sea') was a massive bronze basin, cast as a single piece. Its name — yam ('sea') — evokes the primordial waters of creation. The dimensions yield a rough approximation of pi (circumference 30, diameter 10, giving pi as approximately 3), which has generated centuries of mathematical commentary. The measurements are practical approximations, not claims of mathematical precision. The casting of such a large single bronze object was a remarkable metallurgical achievement.
3. The demut baqarim ('figures of oxen') beneath the rim formed a decorative band around the sea's exterior. 'Ten per cubit' yields approximately 300 ox figures around the 30-cubit circumference. These were cast integrally with the sea (yetzuqim be-mutzaqto, 'cast in its casting'), not applied afterward. The ox motif connects to agricultural abundance and to the bull imagery common in ancient Near Eastern temple decoration — here domesticated and subordinated to the service of the LORD.

4. The twelve oxen arranged in four groups of three, facing the four cardinal directions, create a cosmic symbol: the waters of the sea are sustained by the twelve tribes (represented by twelve oxen) oriented toward every corner of the earth. The hindquarters face inward (bayetah, 'houseward'), meaning the oxen face outward in all directions. The sea is a microcosm of the ordered world — chaotic waters contained and directed by the power of the God of Israel, upheld by His covenant people.
5. The tefach ('handbreadth,' approximately 7.5 centimeters or 3 inches) describes the bronze wall thickness — thin enough to be elegant but thick enough for structural integrity. The lily-blossom rim (perach shoshanah) flared outward like a flower opening, both decorative and functional for pouring. The capacity of 3,000 baths (approximately 66,000 liters or 17,400 gallons) differs from 1 Kings 7:26 (2,000 baths). At either figure, this was an enormous volume of water, maintained for priestly purification.
6. The Chronicler distinguishes two washing functions: the kiyorot ('basins, lavers') were utilitarian vessels for rinsing sacrificial portions before placing them on the altar fire, while the yam ('sea') was reserved for priestly ablutions — the priests washed themselves in the sea before entering sacred service. This functional distinction clarifies the liturgical choreography: animals were prepared at the basins, priests were purified at the sea.
7. The menorot ha-zahav ('golden lampstands') number ten in Chronicles, multiplying the tabernacle's single menorah (Exodus 25:31-40) tenfold. The phrase ke-mishpatam ('according to their prescribed design' or 'according to their regulation') indicates the lampstands followed a fixed pattern — likely the seven-branched design of the original menorah. Ten lampstands with seven branches each would produce seventy flames in the temple hall — the number of nations in Genesis 10, suggesting Israel's light is meant for all peoples.
8. The ten shulchanot ('tables') — for the bread of the Presence (lechem ha-panim) — multiply the single table of the tabernacle (Exodus 25:23-30). The mizrequei zahav ('golden sprinkling bowls') numbered one hundred, used for catching and sprinkling sacrificial blood. The systematic multiplication — ten lampstands, ten tables, one hundred bowls — transforms the Temple's furnishings from singular tabernacle models into an ensemble of tenfold abundance.
9. Two courts surrounded the Temple: the chatzer ha-kohanim ('court of the priests'), the inner court where only priests could enter, and the azarah ha-gedolah ('the great court'), the outer court accessible to lay Israelites. The bronze-overlaid doors marked the boundary between sacred and common space. This dual-court design will be expanded in the Second Temple and provides the architectural basis for the 'Court of the Gentiles' in Herod's Temple.
10. The sea's position — on the right (south) side toward the east — placed it near the entrance where priests would first encounter it upon entering the court. Its southeastern placement ensured it was accessible for priestly washing before they approached the altar or entered the Temple building. The right side (yemani) is the side of favor and strength in Hebrew thought.
11. The sirot ('pots') were for collecting ashes from the altar; the ya'im ('shovels') were for removing ashes; the mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls') were for blood application. These utilitarian vessels completed the functional equipment of the sacrificial system. The notice that Hiram 'finished' (va-yekhal) the work echoes the completion formulas of creation (Genesis 2:1-2) and the tabernacle (Exodus 39:32) — finishing sacred construction is itself a theological moment.
12. The summary list of Hiram's work begins with the pillars. The gullot ('bowl-shapes, globes') are the rounded portions of the capitals. The sevakhot ('lattice networks') are the open mesh-work covering the bowl-shaped sections — decorative bronze netting that created a play of light and shadow on the capital surfaces.
13. The total count of pomegranates — 400 (200 per pillar, in two rows of 100) — differs from the 100 mentioned in 3:16. The difference may reflect different counting methods (per network versus total) or different sources. The pomegranates hung in the lattice-work like fruit in a trellis, creating a garden-like effect on the monumental pillars.
14. The mekhonot ('stands, bases') were wheeled carts designed to support the kiyorot ('basins'). First Kings 7:27-39 provides an elaborate description of these stands — decorated with lions, oxen, and cherubim, with wheels and axles — but the Chronicler compresses the detail into a single verse. The mobile design allowed the basins to be moved to wherever sacrificial portions needed rinsing.
15. The summary reduces the sea to its essential components: one basin, twelve oxen. The singularity of the sea (echad, 'one') contrasts with the multiplied furnishings (ten lampstands, ten tables, ten basins) — there is only one sea, just as there is only one creation, only one primordial deep tamed by God.
16. The mizlagot ('forks, flesh-hooks') were three-pronged implements for handling sacrificial meat (cf. 1 Samuel 2:13-14). The phrase nechoshet maruq ('polished bronze' or 'burnished bronze') indicates the bronze was finished to a high shine — the vessels gleamed, reflecting light and adding to the Temple's visual splendor. Hiram-abi ('Hiram his father/master') is identified as the craftsman responsible for all these implements.
17. The casting site was in the kikkar ha-Yarden ('the Jordan plain'), the flat valley floor between Succoth and Zeredah (Zarethan in 1 Kings 7:46). The avi ha-adamah ('thick/dense ground,' literally 'thickness of the earth') refers to the heavy clay soil of the Jordan Valley — ideal for creating the earthen molds needed for large-scale bronze casting. The site was chosen for its clay resources, not its proximity to Jerusalem. The finished pieces would then be transported uphill to the Temple mount.
18. The phrase lo nechqar mishqal ha-nechoshet ('the weight of the bronze was not searched out / could not be determined') indicates that the quantity exceeded the capacity of record-keeping. This hyperbolic note functions like the 'uncountable' sacrifices in the dedication narrative — the materials devoted to God's house exceed human measurement, mirroring the immeasurability of God's own glory.

19. The transition from bronze items (Huram's work) to gold items (attributed to Solomon) signals a shift to the interior furnishings. The mizbach ha-zahav ('golden altar') is the incense altar that stood in the main hall before the curtain — distinct from the great bronze altar outside. The lechem ha-panim ('bread of the Presence,' literally 'bread of the face/faces') was twelve loaves set out on the tables before the LORD, replaced weekly on the Sabbath (Leviticus 24:5-9).
20. The menorot with their nerot ('lamps') were positioned to burn ka-mishpat ('according to the regulation') before the devir ('inner sanctuary'). The lampstands in the main hall cast their light toward the curtain of the Holy of Holies — light directed toward the presence of God. The zahav sagur ('refined gold' or 'enclosed gold,' possibly meaning gold of the highest purity) indicates the finest quality available.
21. The perach ('blossoms, flowers') were decorative floral elements on the lampstands — almond blossoms in the tabernacle design (Exodus 25:33-34). The melqachayim ('tongs, snuffers') were used to trim the wicks and remove spent lamp material. Even these small maintenance tools were solid gold. The phrase hu miklot zahav ('it was of the completeness of gold' or 'of the purest gold') emphasizes that nothing in the interior furnishings was gilded or plated — everything was solid, pure gold.
22. The chapter concludes with a final inventory of golden implements — mezzamzerot ('snuffers'), mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls'), kappot ('ladles, spoons' for incense), and machot ('firepans, censers') — and the golden doors. Two sets of doors are specified: the inner doors opening into the Holy of Holies and the doors of the temple hall (heikhal). Both sets were gold, meaning that every threshold in the Temple was covered in gold. The worshiper passed through golden doors to enter the hall and the priest passed through golden doors to approach the inner sanctuary.

5

Summary: *Solomon completes all the work for the house of the LORD and brings in the dedicated things of David his father — the silver, the gold, and all the vessels — placing them in the treasuries of the house of God. He then assembles the elders of Israel, the tribal heads, and the ancestral chiefs to bring the ark of the covenant from the City of David (Zion) to the Temple. The assembly gathers during the festival of the seventh month (Sukkot). The priests carry the ark into the inner sanctuary, the Holy of Holies, beneath the cherubim's wings. The narrator notes that only the two stone tablets remain in the ark. The Levitical musicians — Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, and their sons and kinsmen — stand east of the altar in white linen with cymbals, harps, and lyres, joined by a hundred and twenty priests sounding trumpets. When the musicians and trumpeters unite as one voice to praise and thank the LORD, singing 'For He is good, for His faithful love endures forever,' the house is filled with a cloud — the glory of the LORD fills the house of God, and the priests cannot stand to minister.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's account of the glory filling the Temple adds a crucial element absent from 1 Kings 8: the Levitical musicians. In Kings, the glory-cloud arrives after the priests deposit the ark and withdraw. In Chronicles, the glory arrives at the precise moment when instrumental and vocal praise unite as one sound (ke-echad). The trigger for the divine manifestation is not the ark's placement alone but the unified worship of the assembly. This is the Chronicler's distinctive theology of worship: praise is not a response to God's presence but the occasion for God's presence. The content of the song is the most frequently repeated liturgical formula in the Hebrew Bible — ki tov ki le-olam chasdo ('for He is good, for His faithful love endures forever'). The glory of the LORD enters the Temple on the wings of a song about chesed.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the ark placement (vv. 7-10) and the musical scene (vv. 11-14) creates a narrative seam. In the Kings parallel, the glory arrives immediately after the priests exit the Holy Place (1 Kings 8:10-11). The Chronicler inserts the entire musical unit between the priestly exit and the glory-filling, making the musicians the immediate antecedent of the theophany. Whether this reflects a different source tradition or the Chronicler's theological editing is debated. The note 'the staves were so long' (v. 9) and 'there they are to this day' raises the question of when 'this day' was — if the Chronicler writes after the exile, the ark no longer exists. This may be a quotation from an earlier source that the Chronicler preserved without updating.*

Connections: *The glory filling the Temple reprises Exodus 40:34-35, where the glory fills the tabernacle and Moses cannot enter — the same pattern of divine presence overwhelming human capacity. The Levitical choir singing 'for His faithful love endures forever' connects to Psalms 106, 107, 118, and 136, all of which use this refrain. The white linen of the musicians (v. 12) echoes the priestly vestments (Exodus 28), elevating the musicians to quasi-priestly status. The hundred and twenty trumpeters may symbolically correspond to the twelve tribes multiplied by ten — the fullness of Israel sounding the alarm of worship. The cloud that fills the house is the same anan ('cloud') of the wilderness wandering (Exodus 13:21-22), the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16), and the tabernacle dedication*

— *God's preferred medium for visible-yet-concealed presence.*

¹When all the work that Solomon did for the house of the LORD was completed, Solomon brought in the things that David his father had consecrated — the silver, the gold, and all the vessels — and deposited them in the treasuries of the house of God. ²Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel and all the heads of the tribes — the ancestral chiefs of the Israelites — at Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of the LORD from the City of David, which is Zion. ³All the men of Israel gathered before the king at the festival in the seventh month. ⁴All the elders of Israel came, and the Levites carried the ark. ⁵They brought up the ark, the Tent of Meeting, and all the holy vessels that were in the Tent — the priests and the Levites carried them up. ⁶King Solomon and the entire assembly of Israel, gathered before the ark, were sacrificing sheep and cattle in numbers that could not be counted or reckoned. ⁷The priests brought the ark of the covenant of the LORD to its place — into the inner sanctuary of the house, into the Holy of Holies — beneath the wings of the cherubim. ⁸The cherubim spread their wings over the place of the ark, covering the ark and its carrying poles from above. ⁹The poles were so long that their ends could be seen projecting from the ark in front of the inner sanctuary, but they were not visible from outside. And it is there to this day. ¹⁰There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets that Moses had placed there at Horeb, when the LORD made a covenant with the Israelites after they came out of Egypt. ¹¹When the priests came out of the Holy Place — for all the priests who were present had consecrated themselves regardless of their divisional assignments — ¹²and the Levitical singers — all of them, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun, with their sons and kinsmen — dressed in fine linen, with cymbals, harps, and lyres, stood east of the altar, and with them a hundred and twenty priests sounding trumpets. ¹³It happened that when the trumpeters and singers joined as one to make one sound heard in praise and thanksgiving to the LORD — and when they raised the sound with trumpets, cymbals, and instruments of song, praising the LORD: 'For He is good, for His faithful love endures forever' — the house was filled with a cloud, the house of the LORD. ¹⁴The priests were unable to stand and minister because of the cloud, for the glory of the LORD had filled the house of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *va-tishlam* ('it was completed, made whole') is from the root *sh-l-m*, the same root that gives us *shalom* ('peace') and Solomon's own name (Shelomoh). The completion of the Temple is linguistically encoded in the builder's name — Solomon (Peace/Completion) completes the work. David's *qodshei* ('consecrated things') — wealth set apart during his reign for Temple use — now find their permanent home. The *otzrot* ('treasuries') of the house of God will serve as the national sacred reserve.
2. The assembly parallels 1 Kings 8:1 almost verbatim. The ark's journey from the City of David (the lower southeastern ridge) up to the Temple mount is its final relocation. The ark has moved from Sinai to the wilderness camp to Shiloh to the Philistine cities to Kiriath-jearim to David's tent in Jerusalem, and now to its permanent resting place. The phrase *aron berit YHWH* ('the ark of the covenant of the LORD') defines the ark by its contents — the covenant tablets.
3. The *chag* ('festival') in the seventh month is Sukkot (the Feast of Tabernacles), the great autumn harvest celebration and the most joyous of Israel's pilgrimage festivals. The seventh month (Tishrei/Ethanim) resonates with the seven years of construction — the Temple built in seven years is dedicated in the seventh month. The gathering of 'all the men of Israel' indicates this is a national event of the highest magnitude.
4. The Chronicler specifies that the Levites (*Levi'im*) carry the ark — correcting 1 Kings 8:3, which says the priests carried it. This reflects the Chronicler's consistent concern for proper Levitical roles: Numbers 4:15 and Deuteronomy 10:8 assign ark-bearing to the Levites. The Chronicler has already narrated the disaster that occurred when the ark was transported improperly (1 Chronicles 13), so proper handling is now emphasized.
5. The Tent of Meeting (*ohel mo'ed*) — the Mosaic tabernacle or its successor — makes its final journey from Gibeon (where it had been stationed, 1:3) to Jerusalem. This is the last mention of the tabernacle in active use; once the Temple is dedicated, the portable shrine is retired. The phrase *ha-kohanim ha-Levi'im* ('the priests, the Levites') can be read as 'the Levitical priests' or as two groups working together — priests and Levites jointly handling the sacred transport.
6. The phrase *asher lo yissaphru ve-lo yimmanu me-rov* ('which could not be counted or numbered for multitude') uses two verbs for enumeration and negates both — the sacrifices exceed all accounting. The procession of the ark was accompanied by continuous sacrifice along the route, as David had done when first bringing the ark to Jerusalem (1 Chronicles 15:26). The uncountable sacrifices mirror the uncountable blessings of the covenant.
7. Three spatial markers zoom inward with increasing precision: *el meqomo* ('to its place'), *el devir ha-bayit* ('to the inner sanctuary of the house'), *el qodesh ha-qodashim* ('to the Holy of Holies'). The narrative moves from general to specific: the building, the room, the exact spot beneath the cherubim. The ark finds its *meqom* ('place') — the Hebrew suggests a prepared, designated spot, a destination that has been waiting for the ark since the Temple's design.

8. The massive cherubim (each ten cubits tall with ten-cubit wingspan) form a protective canopy over the ark. The verb *va-yekhassu* ('they covered') indicates sheltering concealment — the ark is hidden beneath the cherubim's wings, visible only to the high priest who enters once a year. The *badim* ('poles') remained permanently in the ark's rings, extending beyond the cherubim's wingspan into the space before the curtain.
9. The protruding poles created a subtle visible sign: priests serving in the main hall could see the pole-ends pushing against or beyond the curtain, a reminder that the ark was present behind the veil even though they could not see it. The formula *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') indicates the narrator's temporal perspective — when this text was first composed, the ark was still in place. The Chronicler may be preserving this older source note even though by his own post-exilic era the ark had vanished.
10. The restrictive *ein ba-arón raq* ('nothing in the ark except') emphasizes that the holiest object in Israel contains only a text — the covenant terms inscribed on stone. The tablets are identified by three coordinates: who placed them (Moses), where (Horeb/Sinai), and when (the covenant-making at the exodus). This triples the tablets' provenance, anchoring them in Israel's foundational story. The later tradition that the ark also contained manna and Aaron's rod (Hebrews 9:4) is explicitly excluded by this verse.
11. The parenthetical note reveals an extraordinary liturgical moment: the normal system of priestly divisions (*machleqot*, the 24 rotating courses established by David in 1 Chronicles 24) was suspended. All priests who were present had undergone purification and served together, ignoring the usual rotation schedule. This indicates the magnitude of the occasion — the dedication overrode normal Temple procedure. Every available priest participated.
12. The three Levitical choir leaders — Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun — represent the three guilds of Temple musicians established by David (1 Chronicles 25). Their vestments of *butz* ('fine linen, byssus') are priestly-grade garments, elevating the musicians to a sacral role. The instruments form three categories: *metziltayim* ('cymbals,' percussion for rhythm), *nevalim* ('harps,' larger stringed instruments), and *kinnorot* ('lyres,' smaller stringed instruments). The 120 priestly trumpeters (*machatzrim ba-chatzotzerot*) add a massive brass section. The positioning 'east of the altar' means they face westward toward the Temple entrance — their music is directed toward the house of God.
13. The phrase *ke-eched* ('as one') is the Chronicler's key word — unity in worship is the condition for divine manifestation. The doxology *ki tov ki le-olam chasdo* is the most frequently repeated liturgical formula in the Hebrew Bible, appearing in Psalms 100:5, 106:1, 107:1, 118:1-4, 136 (every verse), and at multiple Temple dedications and victories. It distills Israel's theology into six words: God's character is *tov* ('good') and His *chesed* ('faithful love') is *le-olam* ('forever'). The cloud filling the house reprises Exodus 40:34-35 — the tabernacle dedication and the Temple dedication are the same event at different scales.
14. The parallelism with Exodus 40:34-35 is exact: cloud fills the structure, glory fills the structure, human ministers cannot function. The Chronicler ensures readers recognize the continuity — the Temple is not a new institution but the fulfillment of the tabernacle. The *kavod* that filled Moses's tent now fills Solomon's house. The God who traveled with Israel in a portable shrine now dwells in a permanent house, but the glory is the same glory.
14. This verse is the theological hinge of Chronicles' entire Temple narrative. Everything before it — David's preparations, Solomon's construction, the furnishings, the ark's installation, the musicians' praise — converges on this moment. Everything after it — Solomon's prayer, the sacrifices, the festivals — flows from it. The glory filling the house is the event that gives the Temple its meaning.

6

Summary: *Solomon speaks to the glory-cloud, then turns to bless the assembly. He recounts God's choice of David and of Jerusalem, and how he has built the house God denied to David. Standing before the altar of the LORD, he kneels on a bronze platform he has constructed in the court, stretches his hands toward heaven, and delivers the great dedicatory prayer. The prayer holds transcendence and immanence in permanent tension: 'The heavens and the highest heavens cannot contain You — how much less this house I have built!' Yet Solomon asks God to let His eyes be open toward this house day and night. He presents seven petitions: prayer when an individual swears before the altar; prayer after military defeat; prayer during drought; prayer during famine, plague, or disaster; prayer of the foreigner drawn to God's Name; prayer during warfare; and prayer from exile. Each petition asks God to 'hear from heaven' and respond. The prayer concludes with an appeal to God's faithful love toward David and a plea that God not turn away the face of His anointed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Solomon's prayer is the most architecturally structured prayer in the Hebrew Bible. Its sevenfold petition mirrors the seven years of construction — the prayer is itself a verbal temple. The central theological tension is unresolvable by design: God cannot be contained by the heavens, yet Solomon asks God to hear prayers directed 'toward this place.' The resolution is Name theology (*shem*): God's Name dwells in the Temple while God's essential being remains transcendent. The prayer for the foreigner (*ha-nokhri*, vv. 32-33) is remarkable — Solomon asks God to do 'whatever the foreigner asks,' with no restrictions, 'so that all the peoples of the earth may know*

Your Name.' The Temple is explicitly designed as a house of prayer for all nations, not merely a national shrine. The exile petition (vv. 36-39) is prophetic — Solomon prays for an event four centuries in the future, embedding return-from-exile theology into the Temple's founding liturgy.

Translation Friction: *The bronze platform (kiyor nechoshet, v. 13) is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings 8 does not mention it. This addition may reflect the Chronicler's concern for architectural specificity or a tradition preserved only in his sources. The prayer closely parallels 1 Kings 8:22-53 but with significant differences: the Chronicler omits the exodus references in 1 Kings 8:51, 53, reducing the prayer's dependence on exodus theology and increasing its focus on David and the Temple. The concluding verses (vv. 40-42) differ substantially from 1 Kings 8:50-53, with the Chronicler adding a quotation from Psalm 132:8-10 that anchors the prayer in Davidic promise rather than Mosaic covenant.*

Connections: *The dedicatory prayer stands at the intersection of Israel's major theological traditions. The Name theology (le-shakken shemo sham, 'to cause His Name to dwell there') is Deuteronomic. The glory-cloud is Priestly. The Davidic covenant promise is prophetic. Solomon weaves all three into a single prayer. The foreigner petition (vv. 32-33) anticipates Isaiah 56:7 ('My house will be called a house of prayer for all nations') and Jesus's Temple action (Mark 11:17). Daniel's prayer toward Jerusalem (Daniel 6:10) directly fulfills Solomon's instruction to pray 'toward this place.' The concluding appeal to chesed ('faithful love') and to God's meshiach ('anointed one,' v. 42) connects the prayer to both the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7) and messianic hope.*

¹Then Solomon said, "The LORD declared that He would dwell in thick darkness. ²I have built a lofty house for You, a fixed place for Your dwelling forever." ³Then the king turned around and blessed the entire assembly of Israel, while the whole assembly of Israel stood. ⁴He said, "Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who spoke with His mouth to David my father and has fulfilled it with His hands, saying: ⁵From the day I brought My people out of the land of Egypt, I did not choose any city from all the tribes of Israel to build a house so that My Name would be there, and I did not choose any man to be leader over My people Israel. ⁶But I chose Jerusalem so that My Name would be there, and I chose David to be over My people Israel." ⁷My father David had it in his heart to build a house dedicated to the Name of the LORD, the God of Israel. ⁸But the LORD said to David my father, 'Because it was in your heart to build a house for My Name, you did well that it was in your heart. ⁹Yet you yourself will not build the house. Rather, your son who comes from your body — he will build the house for My Name.' ¹⁰The LORD has fulfilled His word that He spoke. I have risen in the place of David my father and sit on the throne of Israel, as the LORD promised, and I have built the house for the Name of the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹¹There I have placed the ark, in which is the covenant of the LORD that He made with the Israelites." ¹²Then he stood before the altar of the LORD in the presence of the entire assembly of Israel and spread out his hands. ¹³For Solomon had made a bronze platform — five cubits long, five cubits wide, and three cubits high — and had placed it in the middle of the court. He stood on it, then knelt on his knees before the entire assembly of Israel and spread his hands toward heaven. ¹⁴He said, "LORD, God of Israel — there is no God like You in heaven or on earth — You who keep the covenant and show faithful love to Your servants who walk before You with all their heart. ¹⁵You have kept what You promised Your servant David my father. You spoke with Your mouth and have fulfilled it with Your hand — as it is this day. ¹⁶Now, LORD, God of Israel, keep what You promised Your servant David my father: 'You will never lack a man in My presence to sit on the throne of Israel — if only your sons guard their way, walking in My law as you have walked before Me.' ¹⁷Now, LORD, God of Israel, let Your word that You spoke to Your servant David be confirmed. ¹⁸But will God really dwell with mortals on the earth? The heavens and the highest heavens cannot contain You — how much less this house that I have built! ¹⁹Yet turn toward the prayer of Your servant and toward his plea, LORD my God — to hear the cry and the prayer that Your servant is praying before You. ²⁰Let Your eyes be open toward this house day and night — toward the place where You said You would put Your Name — to hear the prayer that Your servant prays toward this place. ²¹Hear the pleas of Your servant and of Your people Israel when they pray toward this place. Hear from Your dwelling place — from heaven — and when You hear, forgive. ²²If someone sins against his neighbor and is required to take an oath, and the oath is taken before Your altar in this house — ²³then hear from heaven and act. Judge Your servants, repaying the guilty by bringing his conduct on his own head, and vindicating the righteous by rewarding him according to his righteousness. ²⁴If Your people Israel are defeated before an enemy because they have sinned against You, and they return and confess Your Name and pray and plead before You in this house — ²⁵then

hear from heaven, forgive the sin of Your people Israel, and bring them back to the land You gave to them and to their fathers. ²⁶When the heavens are shut and there is no rain because they have sinned against You, and they pray toward this place, confess Your Name, and turn from their sin because You have afflicted them — ²⁷then hear from heaven, forgive the sin of Your servants and Your people Israel — for You will teach them the good way in which they should walk — and send rain on Your land that You have given to Your people as an inheritance. ²⁸When there is famine in the land, or pestilence, or blight, or mildew, or locusts, or caterpillars, or when enemies besiege them in any of their cities — whatever plague or whatever disease — ²⁹whatever prayer or plea is made by any person or by all Your people Israel — each knowing his own affliction and his own pain — when they spread their hands toward this house, ³⁰then hear from heaven, Your dwelling place, and forgive. Render to each person according to all his ways, since You know his heart — for You alone know the hearts of all human beings — ³¹so that they may fear You and walk in Your ways all the days they live on the land You gave to our fathers. ³²As for the foreigner who is not from Your people Israel but comes from a distant land because of Your great Name, Your mighty hand, and Your outstretched arm — when they come and pray toward this house, ³³then hear from heaven, from Your dwelling place, and do according to all that the foreigner calls to You for — so that all the peoples of the earth may know Your Name and fear You as Your people Israel do, and may know that Your Name is invoked over this house that I have built. ³⁴When Your people go out to war against their enemies by the way You send them, and they pray to You toward this city that You have chosen and the house that I have built for Your Name — ³⁵then hear from heaven their prayer and their plea, and uphold their cause. ³⁶When they sin against You — for there is no one who does not sin — and You are angry with them and hand them over to an enemy who takes them captive to a land far away or near, ³⁷and if they take it to heart in the land where they have been taken captive, and they repent and plead with You in the land of their captivity, saying, 'We have sinned, we have acted wrongly, we have done wickedly' — ³⁸and if they return to You with all their heart and all their soul in the land of their captivity where they have been taken, and they pray toward their land that You gave to their fathers, and toward the city You have chosen, and toward the house I have built for Your Name — ³⁹then hear from heaven, from Your dwelling place, their prayer and their pleas, uphold their cause, and forgive Your people who have sinned against You. ⁴⁰Now, my God, let Your eyes be open and Your ears attentive to the prayer offered in this place. ⁴¹Now arise, LORD God, to Your resting place — You and the ark of Your strength. Let Your priests, LORD God, be clothed with salvation, and let Your faithful ones rejoice in what is good. ⁴²LORD God, do not turn away the face of Your anointed one. Remember the faithful deeds of David Your servant."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Solomon addresses the glory-cloud that has just filled the Temple (5:13-14). The arafel ('thick darkness, dense cloud') evokes the Sinai theophany — the same word describes the darkness where God was at Sinai (Exodus 20:21, Deuteronomy 4:11). God's presence is paradoxically dark, not light — impenetrable, formless, beyond visual comprehension. Solomon interprets the cloud theologically: this darkness is Sinai's darkness, and its appearance in the Temple means God has arrived.
2. The beit zevul ('lofty house, exalted dwelling') is a bold claim — Solomon presents the Temple as a permanent divine residence. The word zevul means 'height, lofty dwelling' and is used for God's heavenly habitation (Isaiah 63:15). By applying it to the Temple, Solomon claims the earthly house participates in the heavenly reality. The makohn le-shivtekha olamim ('a fixed place for Your dwelling forever') uses language of permanence and stability — the Temple is not a temporary arrangement but an eternal dwelling.
3. Solomon turns from facing the Temple (and the glory-cloud) to face the assembled people. The act of turning (va-yassev et panav, 'he turned his face') is a physical pivot between addressing God and addressing Israel. The king blesses the people — a priestly function that Solomon assumes in this extraordinary moment. The standing posture of the assembly indicates formal reception of a royal-priestly blessing.
4. The blessing formula barukh YHWH ('blessed be the LORD') opens the royal address. Solomon celebrates the alignment of God's word and action: what God spoke (dibber be-fiv, 'spoke with His mouth') He has now fulfilled (u-ve-yadav mille, 'with His hands He has filled/completed'). Mouth and hand — promise and performance — are united. The reference to David establishes that the Temple is not Solomon's project but the fulfillment of a promise God made to David.
5. God's speech (which Solomon is quoting) establishes a double negative: no city was chosen for the Name, and no man was chosen as leader — until now. The Chronicler's version adds the leadership selection (absent from 1 Kings 8:16), setting up the twin election: Jerusalem and David. The phrase lihyot shemi sham ('so that My Name would be there') is the core of Deuteronomic Name theology — the Temple is the place God chooses for His Name.

6. The twin election — Jerusalem for the Name, David for the people — is unique to the Chronicler's version. First Kings 8:16 mentions only the city. The Chronicler adds the parallel election of David, making city and king inseparable. God's choice of Jerusalem is theological (it houses the Name), and God's choice of David is relational (he leads the people). The Temple is the intersection of these two elections.
7. The phrase *im levav David* ('in the heart of David') reveals that the Temple originated as a desire in David's heart — an internal aspiration before it became an architectural project. Solomon honors his father's original impulse. The phrase *le-shem YHWH Elohei Yisrael* ('for the Name of the LORD, the God of Israel') repeats the Name theology: the house is for the Name, not for God's essential being.
8. God affirms the desire itself: *hetivota ki hayah im levavekha* ('you did well that it was in your heart'). The will to build is praised even though the building will be denied to David. God evaluates the heart's intention independently of the action's execution. This theology of the heart — where desire can be as significant as deed — runs through the Chronicler's portrait of David.
9. The transfer from father to son — David desires, Solomon builds — is a pattern of deferred fulfillment. The phrase *ha-yotze me-chalatzekha* ('who comes forth from your loins') emphasizes biological continuity: the builder will share David's flesh. The pronoun *hu* ('he,' emphatic) places the emphasis on Solomon's identity as the chosen builder. The promise is Davidic dynasty theology in its purest form: what the father began, the son completes.
10. Solomon's declaration *va-yaqem YHWH et devaro* ('the LORD has established His word') celebrates divine faithfulness: promise made, promise kept. Solomon identifies himself as the fulfillment of the Davidic promise — he has risen (*va-aqum*), he sits on the throne (*va-eshev al kisse Yisrael*), and he has built the house (*va-evneh ha-bayit*). Three verbs of accomplishment correspond to three elements of the divine promise: succession, throne, Temple.
11. The ark is defined by its contents: the *berit YHWH* ('covenant of the LORD') — the tablets inscribed with the terms of the Sinai agreement. Solomon's building summary culminates not in the architecture but in the covenant document housed within it. The grandeur of the Temple exists to shelter this covenant relationship.
12. Solomon assumes the posture of prayer: standing before the altar, facing the assembly, hands spread (*va-yifros kappav*). The spread hands — palms open, arms extended — is the standard Israelite prayer posture, expressing openness, vulnerability, and appeal to God. Solomon prays publicly, not privately, because the Temple belongs to the nation.
13. The bronze platform (*kiyor nechoshet*) is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings 8 does not mention it. The platform (5 x 5 x 3 cubits, approximately 2.6 x 2.6 x 1.6 meters) elevated Solomon above the assembly for visibility while providing a public space for the dramatic gesture of kneeling. The king of Israel — the most powerful man in the nation — kneels on his knees (*va-yivrahk al birkav*) before his people and before his God. This is not a posture of weakness but of theological submission: the king who built the Temple acknowledges that he is not the Temple's lord. His hands are spread toward heaven (*ha-shamayemah*), directing the prayer upward to the transcendent God.
14. The prayer opens with a declaration of divine incomparability: *ein kamokha Elohim* ('there is no God like You'). The scope is total — *ba-shamayim u-va-aretz* ('in heaven and on earth'). God's uniqueness is then defined by two covenant qualities: *shomer ha-berit* ('keeper of the covenant') and *ha-chesed* ('the faithful love'). God is unique not abstractly but relationally — in His fidelity to covenant partners who walk before Him *be-khol libbam* ('with all their heart'). Faithfulness is mutual but asymmetric: God's faithfulness is unconditional in nature, while human faithfulness is the condition for experiencing it.
15. Solomon again celebrates the alignment of God's word and deed: *be-fikha* ('with Your mouth') and *u-ve-yadkha mille'ta* ('with Your hand You have fulfilled'). The phrase *ka-yom ha-zeh* ('as this day') anchors the theological claim in present experience — the Temple standing before them is the visible proof that God keeps His word. Divine faithfulness is not an abstraction but an observable fact.
16. The Davidic dynastic promise is conditional: *lo yikkaret lekha ish* ('a man will not be cut off from you') is the positive promise, but it is qualified by *raq im* ('only if') — the sons must guard their way and walk in God's Torah. This is the Chronicler's version of the conditional covenant: the dynasty is promised but dependent on obedience. The tension between unconditional promise and conditional maintenance runs through the entire Davidic covenant theology.
17. The verb *ye'amen* ('let it be confirmed, established') is from the root *a-m-n* ('to be firm, trustworthy'). Solomon asks God to make His own word *amen* — to verify, establish, and realize what He has promised. The prayer moves from praise for past faithfulness (vv. 14-15) to petition for future faithfulness (vv. 16-17).
18. The Chronicler's version adds 'with mortals' (*et ha-adam*), where 1 Kings 8:27 has 'on the earth' (*al ha-aretz*). The addition personalizes the question: will God dwell not merely on earth but with humans? This anticipates the incarnation theology of the New Testament ('the Word became flesh and dwelt among us,' John 1:14, where 'dwelt' is *eskenosen*, 'tabernacled'). Solomon's unanswered question receives its ultimate answer in the person of Christ.
19. Solomon uses four words for prayer in rapid succession: *tefillah* ('prayer,' structured petition), *techinnah* ('plea, supplication,' an appeal for grace), *rinnah* ('cry,' an urgent outcry), and again *tefillah*. This clustering of synonyms communicates intensity and desperation — the king is not making a casual request but pouring out the full vocabulary of human need before God.
20. The metaphor of open eyes (*einekha fetuchot*, 'Your eyes open') ascribes constant divine attention to the Temple. God's eyes never close on this house — *yomam va-laylah* ('day and night'). The Temple is the place where God promised *lasum shimkha sham* ('to put Your Name there'). Solomon asks for perpetual divine attentiveness directed at the specific geographic location where the Name resides. The prayer 'toward this place' (*el*

ha-maqom ha-zeh) establishes directional prayer — orientation toward a sacred site.

21. The prayer establishes a two-location theology: prayers are directed el ha-maqom ha-zeh ('toward this place,' the Temple), but God hears mi-meqom shivtekha min ha-shamayim ('from Your dwelling place, from heaven'). The Temple is not where God lives but where prayers land; heaven is where God hears. The final word — ve-salachta ('and forgive') — reveals that the Temple's primary function is not celebration but atonement. The house exists so that a sinful people can pray and be forgiven.
22. The first petition addresses judicial oaths — cases where a dispute between individuals requires divine adjudication. The alah ('oath, imprecation') is a self-curse: the accused swears innocence and invokes divine punishment if lying. This oath is taken before the altar, making God the judge of truthfulness. The Temple functions here as a courthouse of last resort.
23. Solomon asks God to function as the supreme judge: lehashiv le-rasha ('to repay the wicked,' bringing consequences upon the guilty) and lehatzdiq tzaddiq ('to vindicate the righteous,' confirming the innocent). The prayer assumes that human courts may fail but divine judgment is infallible. The phrase latet darkko be-rosho ('to put his way on his head') means the consequences of a person's own actions fall back on him.
24. The second petition addresses military defeat as a consequence of national sin. The sequence is theologically significant: sin leads to defeat, and the remedy is return (shavu, from shuv, 'to turn back, repent'), confession (hodu et shimkha, 'confess/acknowledge Your Name'), prayer, and supplication. The Temple is the place where military disaster is processed theologically — defeat is not random but the consequence of broken covenant, and restoration begins with prayer directed toward God's house.
25. The restoration sequence: God hears, forgives (ve-salachta), and returns the people to the land (va-hashevotam el ha-adamah). The land (adamah) is identified as God's gift — asher natattah lahem ve-la-avoteihem ('which You gave to them and to their fathers'). The land is not Israel's by right but by divine grant, and returning to it after defeat requires divine forgiveness.
26. The third petition addresses drought — the shutting of the heavens (be-he'atzer ha-shamayim). In an agrarian society, drought was existential crisis. Solomon interprets drought theologically: it comes because of sin (ki yechete'u lakh). The remedy requires three actions: prayer toward the Temple, confession of God's Name, and turning from sin (me-chatta'tam yeshuvun). God's affliction (ki ta'anem) is not arbitrary punishment but purposeful discipline designed to provoke repentance.
27. God's response to repentant prayer has three components: hearing, forgiving, and sending rain. Between forgiveness and rain, Solomon inserts a pedagogical note: ki torem el ha-derekh ha-tovah ('for You will teach them the good way'). The drought-repentance-rain cycle is itself a teaching tool — God uses agricultural crisis to instruct His people in righteousness. The land is described as God's (artzekha, 'Your land') given to His people as nachalah ('inheritance') — the land belongs to God and is entrusted to Israel.
28. The fourth petition addresses a comprehensive catalog of disasters: ra'av ('famine'), dever ('pestilence, plague'), shiddafon ('blight,' a hot wind that scorches crops), yeraqon ('mildew, yellowing,' a fungal crop disease), arbeh ('locusts'), chasil ('caterpillars, grubs'), enemy siege, and any other nega ('plague, affliction') or machalah ('disease, sickness'). Solomon covers every conceivable category of national suffering — agricultural, epidemiological, military, and medical.
29. Solomon shifts from national calamity to individual suffering: ish nig'o u-makh'ovo ('each person knowing his own affliction and his own pain'). The Temple is not only for collective national worship but for private, personal anguish. Each individual knows his own wound (nega) and grief (makh'ov) — suffering is personal and particular, not generic. The spread hands (u-faras kappav) toward the Temple express individual appeal to a God who hears both nations and persons.
30. Solomon appeals to God's unique knowledge: attah levadekha yadata et levav benei ha-adam ('You alone know the hearts of the children of humanity'). No human judge can see the heart; only God can render judgment ke-khol derakhav ('according to all his ways') with perfect accuracy. The Temple prayer system rests on God's omniscience — He sees what no priest, judge, or king can see.
31. The purpose of divine judgment — both merciful and corrective — is not punishment for its own sake but the cultivation of reverence (yir'ah): lema'an yir'ukha lalekhet bi-derakhekha ('so that they may fear You, walking in Your ways'). The Temple's judicial function serves a pedagogical end — teaching the people to live in reverence before God on the land He gave their ancestors.
32. The fifth petition — for the nokhri ('foreigner, non-Israelite') — is theologically remarkable. The foreigner is drawn to the Temple not by ethnic identity but by God's reputation: shimkha ha-gadol ('Your great Name'), yadkha ha-chazaqah ('Your mighty hand'), and zero'akha ha-netuyah ('Your outstretched arm'). These are exodus-language phrases (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15), yet Solomon applies them universally — God's mighty acts attract people from every nation. The Temple is not an ethnic shrine but a beacon for all humanity.
33. This verse is the most universalist statement in the Temple theology. The foreigner receives unrestricted divine attention, and the purpose of the Temple extends to 'all the peoples of the earth.' Jesus will invoke this vision when he quotes Isaiah 56:7 in the Temple cleansing: 'My house will be called a house of prayer for all nations' (Mark 11:17). Solomon's prayer anticipates a Temple that serves all humanity.
34. The sixth petition covers warfare — specifically legitimate warfare (ba-derekh asher tishla chem, 'by the way You send them'). The soldiers pray toward the city (Jerusalem) and the house (Temple), orienting their battlefield prayers toward the geographic location of God's Name. This establishes a directional prayer practice that will be continued in exile — Daniel prays toward Jerusalem (Daniel 6:10), and Muslims later adopt the same concept (qibla).

35. The verb *ve-asita mishpatam* ('uphold their cause,' literally 'do their judgment') asks God to act as advocate and judge on behalf of the people at war. God is not merely a passive listener but an active agent who intervenes in history on behalf of those who pray toward His house.
36. The seventh and final petition addresses exile — the most severe covenant curse. Solomon inserts the parenthetical *ki ein adam asher lo yecheta* ('for there is no person who does not sin'), a statement of universal human sinfulness that grounds the exile petition in theological realism. Sin is not hypothetical but inevitable. The exile can be to *eretz rechokah o qerovah* ('a land far or near') — Solomon covers every possible scenario of deportation.
37. The return to repentance begins internally: *ve-heshivu el levavam* ('they return to their heart,' literally 'they bring back to their heart'). Repentance starts as an inner reorientation before becoming external action. The threefold confession — *chatanu* ('we have sinned,' missing the mark), *he'evinu* ('we have acted wrongly,' deviation from the path), *ve-rasha'nu* ('we have done wickedly,' active rebellion) — covers every category of moral failure: inadvertent, deliberate, and malicious.
38. The exile prayer has a threefold orientation: *derekh artzam* ('toward their land'), *ha-ir asher bacharta* ('the city You chose'), and *la-bayit asher baniti le-shimekha* ('the house I built for Your Name'). Even from exile, the exiles orient their prayers toward a specific geography — land, city, Temple. This directional prayer practice will sustain Jewish identity through the Babylonian exile and beyond. Daniel 6:10 records the fulfillment: Daniel opens his windows toward Jerusalem and prays three times daily.
39. The exile petition's response follows the established pattern: hear (*ve-shamata*), act (*ve-asita mishpatam*, 'uphold their cause'), and forgive (*ve-salachta*). Even in exile — the most severe consequence of covenant breaking — forgiveness remains available. The phrase *le-ammekha asher chat'u lakh* ('Your people who have sinned against You') maintains the covenant relationship even through judgment: they are still 'Your people,' even in exile, even in sin.
40. Solomon concludes the petitions with a summary appeal: eyes open (*einekha petuchot*) and ears attentive (*oznekha qashshuvot*). The pairing of sight and hearing covers the full range of divine perception — God both sees the worshiper's posture and hears the worshiper's words. The phrase *tefillat ha-maqom ha-zeh* ('the prayer of this place') personifies the Temple location itself as a prayer site.
41. This verse (and vv. 41-42) replace the corresponding section in 1 Kings 8:50-53 with a quotation from Psalm 132:8-10. The substitution shifts the prayer's conclusion from exodus theology (1 Kings 8:51, 53 reference Egypt) to Davidic theology (Psalm 132 celebrates David's vow to find a dwelling for God). The Chronicler anchors the Temple's meaning in the Davidic covenant rather than the Mosaic covenant.
42. The prayer's final sentence makes two requests: *al tashev penei meshichekha* ('do not turn away the face of Your anointed') and *zokhrah le-chasdei David avdekha* ('remember the faithful deeds of David Your servant'). The *meshiach* ('anointed one') is Solomon himself, but the term carries forward into messianic theology — every anointed king stands in David's line and under David's promise. The *chasdei David* ('faithful deeds/loves of David') are David's acts of covenant loyalty — his devotion to God, his preparation for the Temple, his role as covenant partner. Solomon asks God to remember David's *chesed* and respond with His own.
42. Register departure: *chesed* rendered as 'faithful deeds' rather than default 'faithful love' because the Hebrew *chasdei David* refers to God's specific acts of covenant loyalty toward David — the plural 'deeds' captures the concrete, historical nature of God's promises to the Davidic line.

7

Summary: *When Solomon finishes praying, fire descends from heaven and consumes the burnt offering and the sacrifices, and the glory of the LORD fills the house. The priests cannot enter the house of the LORD because the glory fills it. All the Israelites see the fire come down and the glory on the Temple, and they bow with their faces to the ground on the pavement, worshipping and giving thanks: 'For He is good, for His faithful love endures forever.' Solomon and all the people offer sacrifices — 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep. The priests stand at their posts, the Levites play the instruments David made for giving thanks to the LORD, and the priests sound trumpets opposite them. Solomon consecrates the middle of the court for burnt offerings. The festival continues for seven days, then seven more days (the feast of Sukkot), and on the twenty-third day of the seventh month Solomon sends the people home, joyful for the good the LORD has done. Later, the LORD appears to Solomon by night and delivers the covenant response to the dedicatory prayer, culminating in the pivotal promise of 7:14: 'If My people who are called by My Name humble themselves, pray, seek My face, and turn from their wicked ways, then I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two extraordinary divine responses. The first is immediate and dramatic: fire from heaven consumes the sacrifice. This fire parallels the fire at the tabernacle's inauguration (Leviticus 9:24), at Elijah's Carmel contest (1 Kings 18:38), and at David's altar on the threshing floor (1 Chronicles 21:26). The fire validates the Temple as God's chosen place of sacrifice — the same God who accepted Abel's offering, Abraham's sacrifice, and the tabernacle's first burnt offering now accepts Solomon's Temple with the same sign. The second response is*

private and verbal: God appears to Solomon by night and delivers the terms under which the Temple will function. Verse 14 has become one of the most quoted verses in all of Scripture — a four-part human condition (humble, pray, seek, turn) met by a three-part divine response (hear, forgive, heal). The verse is addressed not to all humanity but specifically to ammi asher niqra shemi aleihem ('My people who are called by My Name'), making it a covenant-internal promise.

Translation Friction: The fire from heaven in verse 1 is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings 8 does not include it. This is either the Chronicler's addition for theological emphasis or a tradition preserved only in his source. The fourteen-day festival (seven days of dedication plus seven days of Sukkot) raises calendrical questions: was the dedication before or during Sukkot? The Chronicler's timeline suggests they overlap. The conditional promise of 7:14 creates theological tension with the unconditional elements of the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7): if God's response depends on human repentance, how unconditional is the promise? The answer seems to be that the dynasty is unconditional but the Temple's efficacy is conditional — the building can be abandoned even if the lineage continues.

Connections: The fire from heaven connects to a continuous chain: the burning bush (Exodus 3), the pillar of fire (Exodus 13:21), the fire on Sinai (Exodus 19:18), the fire consuming the first tabernacle sacrifice (Leviticus 9:24), the fire on David's altar (1 Chronicles 21:26), and now the fire on Solomon's altar. God's self-revelation through fire runs from Moses to Solomon. Verse 14 is the Chronicler's answer to Solomon's prayer — where Solomon asked seven times 'hear from heaven and forgive,' God responds with a single comprehensive condition: humble, pray, seek, turn. The verse becomes the theological foundation for every subsequent revival narrative in Chronicles (Asa, Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, Josiah). The warning about the Temple's potential destruction (vv. 19-22) is prophetic — written with the knowledge that Babylon did indeed destroy it, making these verses both promise and lament.

¹When Solomon finished praying, fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices, and the glory of the LORD filled the house. ²The priests could not enter the house of the LORD, because the glory of the LORD had filled the house of the LORD. ³When all the Israelites saw the fire come down and the glory of the LORD on the house, they knelt with their faces to the ground on the pavement, worshiping and giving thanks to the LORD: "For He is good, for His faithful love endures forever." ⁴The king, along with the entire people, offered sacrifices in the presence of the LORD. ⁵King Solomon sacrificed 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep. So the king and all the people dedicated the house of God. ⁶The priests stood at their posts; the Levites held the instruments for the LORD's music that King David had made for giving thanks to the LORD — 'for His faithful love endures forever' — using David's songs of praise. The priests sounded trumpets opposite them, and all Israel stood. ⁷Solomon consecrated the middle of the court in front of the house of the LORD, for he offered the burnt offerings and the fat portions of the peace offerings there, because the bronze altar Solomon had made could not contain the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat portions. ⁸Solomon observed the festival at that time for seven days, and all Israel with him — a very great assembly, from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of Egypt. ⁹On the eighth day they held a solemn assembly, for they had observed the dedication of the altar for seven days and the festival for seven days. ¹⁰On the twenty-third day of the seventh month he sent the people to their tents, rejoicing and glad of heart for the good that the LORD had done for David, for Solomon, and for Israel His people. ¹¹Solomon completed the house of the LORD and the royal palace. Everything that Solomon set his heart to accomplish in the house of the LORD and in his own house, he successfully carried out. ¹²The LORD appeared to Solomon during the night and told him, "I have heard your prayer and have chosen this place for myself as a house of sacrifice. ¹³When I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain, or command the locusts to devour the land, or send pestilence among My people, ¹⁴and My people who are called by My Name humble themselves, pray, seek My face, and turn from their wicked ways — then I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land. ¹⁵Now My eyes will be open and My ears attentive to the prayer offered in this place. ¹⁶For now I have chosen and consecrated this house so that My Name will be there forever. My eyes and My heart will be there for all time. ¹⁷As for you, if you walk before Me as David your father walked, doing all that I have commanded you, and keep My statutes and My judgments, ¹⁸then I will establish your royal throne, as I covenanted with David your father, saying, 'You will never lack a man ruling in Israel.' ¹⁹But if you turn away and forsake My statutes and My commands that I have set before you, and go and serve other gods and bow down to them, ²⁰then I will uproot them from My land that I gave them, and this house that I

have consecrated for My Name I will cast from My presence. I will make it a proverb and a mockery among all peoples. ²¹And this house, once so exalted, will appall everyone who passes by it. They will say, 'Why has the LORD done this to this land and to this house?' ²²And the answer will be: 'Because they forsook the LORD, the God of their fathers, who brought them out of the land of Egypt, and they clung to other gods, bowing down to them and serving them — that is why He brought all this disaster upon them.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings 8 does not include the fire from heaven. The Chronicler adds it to create a parallel with the tabernacle inauguration (Leviticus 9:24) and with David's altar (1 Chronicles 21:26). The theological point is that the Temple's authorization comes from the same source as the tabernacle's — divine fire. The glory filling the house reprises 5:14, creating a double filling: first when the ark was installed and praise was offered, now when prayer concludes.
2. The priests' inability to enter (lo yakhlu lavo, 'they could not come in') intensifies the earlier scene in 5:14 where they could not 'stand to minister.' Now they cannot even cross the threshold. The glory has saturated the building to the point of total exclusion of human presence. The repetition *beit YHWH... beit YHWH* ('house of the LORD... house of the LORD') hammers the point: the house belongs to the LORD, and the LORD has claimed it by filling it.
3. The people see two things simultaneously: the fire descending and the glory resting on the house. Their response is immediate prostration — *va-yikre'u appayim artzah al ha-ritzpah* ('they knelt with their faces earthward on the pavement'). The *ritzpah* ('pavement') is the stone court floor. The people's worship reprises the same doxology the Levites sang in 5:13: *ki tov ki le-olam chasdo* ('for He is good, for His faithful love endures forever'). The song that summoned the glory now responds to it.
4. The sacrificial response follows the theophany — the fire from heaven has validated the altar, and now the people add their offerings to what God has already accepted. The phrase *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD') means in God's acknowledged presence. The sacrifice is not offered in hope that God might be present but in certainty that He is.
5. The sacrificial numbers — 22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep — are staggering. These are primarily *shelamim* ('peace offerings'), of which the worshiper eats the greater portion, making this an enormous communal feast. The verb *va-yachnechu* ('they dedicated') is from *chanakh* ('to dedicate, to inaugurate') — the same root that gives us Hanukkah. This is the *chanukat beit ha-Elohim* ('dedication of the house of God'), the first Hanukkah.
6. The liturgical arrangement places three groups in their positions: priests at their assigned posts (*mishmerotam*), Levites with instruments David had commissioned (*kelei shir YHWH*), and the people standing. The phrase *be-hallel David be-yadam* ('with David's praise in their hand' or 'when David praised through their ministry') indicates the musicians played compositions attributed to David — the psalms. The refrain *ki le-olam chasdo* once again underscores that *chesed*-theology pervades every moment of the dedication.
7. The volume of sacrifices exceeded even the massive bronze altar's capacity (20 x 20 x 10 cubits, 4:1). Solomon consecrated the ground itself (*va-yeqaddesh et tokh he-chatzer*, 'he sanctified the middle of the court') as additional altar space. This extraordinary measure — turning the court pavement into a sacrifice surface — indicates the scale of the dedication exceeded all architectural provision. The three types listed — *olah* ('burnt offering'), *minchah* ('grain offering'), and *chalavim* ('fat portions' from peace offerings) — represent the full range of sacrificial types.
8. The geographic extent — *mi-levo Chamat ad nachal Mitzrayim* ('from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of Egypt') — describes the idealized extent of Israel's territory, from the northern boundary (the entrance of Hamath in modern Syria/Lebanon) to the southern boundary (the Wadi el-Arish in the Sinai, not the Nile). The entire land participated. The seven-day festival is the dedication period, distinct from the seven days of Sukkot that follow.
9. The *atzeret* ('solemn assembly') on the eighth day is the formal closing ceremony — the same term used for the closing day of Sukkot (*Shemini Atzeret*, 'the Eighth Day Assembly,' Leviticus 23:36). The Chronicler distinguishes two seven-day periods: *chanukat ha-mizbeach* ('dedication of the altar,' seven days) and *he-chag* ('the festival,' Sukkot, seven days), totaling fourteen days of national celebration.
10. The date — the twenty-third of the seventh month — confirms the fourteen-day calculation: dedication began on the eighth of the month (seven days before Sukkot on the fifteenth), Sukkot ran from the fifteenth to the twenty-first, the solemn assembly was the twenty-second, and the people departed the twenty-third. The triple beneficiary — David, Solomon, and Israel — arranges the recipients in covenantal order: the promise (David), the builder (Solomon), the people (Israel). The joy is over *ha-tovah* ('the good, the goodness') — the same quality ascribed to God in the *chesed*-refrain.
11. The narrator provides a summary transition: both building projects — the Temple and the palace — are complete. The phrase *kol ha-ba al lev Shelomoh* ('everything that came upon Solomon's heart') indicates that the building program reflected Solomon's own vision, now fully realized. The verb *hitzliach* ('he succeeded, prospered') signals divine blessing — the projects succeeded because God enabled them.
12. God's nighttime appearance (*va-yera YHWH el Shelomoh ba-laylah*) answers Solomon's prayer with a direct divine speech. God confirms two things: *shamati et tefillatekha* ('I have heard your prayer') and *bacharti ba-maqom ha-zeh* ('I have chosen this place'). The Temple is defined as *beit zavach* ('a house of sacrifice') — not a house of meditation, study, or assembly (though it serves those functions), but fundamentally a place where offerings are made. The sacrificial system is the Temple's core identity.

13. God names three specific disasters — drought (no rain), agricultural destruction (locusts), and epidemic (pestilence) — corresponding to Solomon's prayer petitions in 6:26-28. The verbs are first person: e'etzor ('I shut up'), atzavveh ('I command'), ashalach ('I send'). God takes direct responsibility for these calamities — they are not random natural events but sovereign acts. The locusts are under divine command (atzavveh al chagav, 'I command concerning the locust'). This theology of sovereign disaster creates the condition for the promise that follows.
14. The verb ve-yikkane'u ('humble themselves') is the Chronicler's signature word — the root k-n-' appears more in Chronicles than in any other biblical book. It is the Chronicler's primary category for proper human response to God: humility before the divine King. The phrase niqra shemi aleihem ('My Name is called over them') uses the same language applied to the Temple in 6:33 — just as God's Name is 'called over' the Temple, God's Name is 'called over' His people. People and Temple share the same identity marker: they bear God's Name.
14. The verb erpa ('I will heal') is remarkable — God will heal the land (artzam, 'their land'), not merely the people. The land is a covenant partner that shares in both judgment and restoration. This holistic vision — where human repentance produces environmental healing — anticipates the ecological theology of Romans 8:19-22, where creation groans and awaits redemption.
15. God directly answers Solomon's request from 6:40 ('let Your eyes be open and Your ears attentive'). Solomon asked; God grants. The divine eyes and ears are perpetually oriented toward the Temple — einai yihyu fetuchot ('My eyes will be open'), ve-oznai qashshuvot ('My ears attentive'). The Temple is under permanent divine surveillance, not for judgment but for mercy — God watches and listens for prayer.
16. God adds a third faculty beyond eyes and ears: ve-libbi ('and My heart'). Eyes see, ears hear, and the heart loves and wills. God commits His entire relational being to this location. The phrase einai ve-libbi sham kol ha-yamim ('My eyes and My heart there for all the days') is the most intimate statement of divine presence in the Temple theology — God is not merely aware of the Temple but emotionally invested in it. His heart is there. This will make the Temple's eventual destruction not merely an architectural loss but a rupture in the divine-human relationship.
17. God now addresses Solomon personally (ve-attach, 'and you'). The standard is David: ka-asher halakh David avikha ('as David your father walked'). David is the benchmark of covenant faithfulness — not perfection (the Chronicler knows David's failures), but directional loyalty. The chuqqim ('statutes') and mishpatim ('judgments') are the specific requirements of the Torah that govern royal and national life.
18. The positive promise: dynastic continuity. The verb va-haqimoti ('I will establish') from the root q-w-m ('to stand, rise, establish') echoes the pillar Jachin (from the same root). God establishes the throne as He established the pillar. The phrase ka-asher karati le-David ('as I covenanted with David') uses berit-language — this is a formal covenant commitment, not a casual promise.
19. The warning shifts from singular 'you' (Solomon) to plural 'you' (the nation). The verb teshuvun ('you turn back') is the dark counterpart of the shuv ('turn/return') in 7:14 — the same verb of turning can go in either direction, toward God or away from God. The sequence of apostasy is progressive: turning away (teshuvun), forsaking Torah (azavtem), serving other gods (avadtem), and bowing to them (hishtachavitem). Each step is deeper into covenant betrayal.
20. The covenant curses are devastating: uprooting from the land (u-netashtim me-al admati) and the Temple cast from God's presence (ashlik me-al panai). The land is called admati ('My land') — God owns it and can revoke its use. The house consecrated for God's Name will become a mashal ('proverb,' a cautionary tale) and a sheninah ('mockery, sharp saying') — the Temple that was meant to draw the nations to knowledge of God will instead become an object lesson in what happens when a people abandons its covenant.
21. The house described as elyon ('exalted, lofty') — the same word used for God Most High — will become a ruin that provokes horror (yisshom, 'he will be appalled'). Passersby will ask the theological question: ba-meh asah YHWH kakah ('Why has the LORD done thus?'). The question assumes that the destruction is God's act, not merely a military event — even the nations will recognize that the Temple's ruin is a divine judgment.
22. The answer to the theological question of verse 21 is a covenant-curse explanation: they forsook (azvu) the LORD and clung (va-yachaziku) to other gods. The verb chazaq ('to seize, cling to, hold fast') is bitterly ironic — it is the same verb used positively in 1:1 for Solomon 'establishing himself' in his kingdom. What should have been directed toward the LORD was directed toward foreign gods. The phrase asher hotzi'am me-eret Mitzrayim ('who brought them out of the land of Egypt') anchors the betrayal in exodus memory — they abandoned the God who liberated them. The Chronicler, writing after the Babylonian destruction, puts this explanation in the form of a future prediction, making Solomon's dedication simultaneously hopeful and tragic.

Summary: *After the twenty years Solomon spent building the house of the LORD and his own palace, he rebuilds the cities Hiram had given him and settles Israelites there. He captures Hamath-zobah, builds store cities in Hamath, and fortifies Upper and Lower Beth-horon, Baalath, and his store cities. Solomon does not enslave Israelites for labor; they serve as soldiers, commanders, and officers. He moves Pharaoh's daughter from the City of David to the house he built for her, reasoning that no woman should dwell in the house of David because the places where the ark has entered are holy. Solomon offers burnt offerings on the LORD's altar according to the daily requirement and the schedule of Sabbaths, new moons, and the three annual festivals — Unleavened Bread, Weeks, and Tabernacles. He appoints the priestly and Levitical divisions as David his father had established. His fleet, built with Hiram's assistance, sails from Ezion-geber to Ophir and brings back 450 talents of gold.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's version of Solomon's administrative achievements systematically removes the negative elements present in 1 Kings 9. Where Kings reports that Solomon gave twenty cities to Hiram and that Hiram was displeased with them (1 Kings 9:11-13), Chronicles reverses the direction — Hiram gives cities to Solomon (v. 2). Where Kings includes Solomon's forced labor of Israelites (1 Kings 5:13-14), the Chronicler explicitly exempts Israelites from slave labor (v. 9). The relocation of Pharaoh's daughter (v. 11) is theologically motivated: Solomon understands that spaces sanctified by the ark's presence carry a holiness that constrains domestic arrangements. The Chronicler presents Solomon as a king who takes holiness geography seriously.*

Translation Friction: *The reversal of the city transaction — Hiram gives cities to Solomon rather than Solomon giving cities to Hiram — is the most striking divergence from 1 Kings 9. Whether the Chronicler had a different source, was correcting what he saw as a slight against Solomon's honor, or was interpreting the transaction differently (perhaps Hiram returned cities Solomon had originally given him) is debated. The gold from Ophir is listed as 450 talents here versus 420 talents in 1 Kings 9:28, another numerical discrepancy. Pharaoh's daughter appears only in this single verse in Chronicles — the Chronicler minimizes her role compared to Kings, where she features in Solomon's downfall narrative.*

Connections: *Solomon's building of store cities and fortifications parallels Pharaoh's construction projects using Israelite labor (Exodus 1:11) — but with the crucial difference that Solomon uses foreign conscripts rather than Israelites, reversing the Egyptian model. The three annual festivals (Unleavened Bread, Weeks, Tabernacles) correspond to the pilgrimage requirements of Deuteronomy 16:16. The fleet to Ophir connects to the Queen of Sheba narrative in chapter 9 — Solomon's international reach extends across both land and sea routes. The appointment of priestly and Levitical divisions according to David's order (v. 14) fulfills 1 Chronicles 23-26, making the Temple's liturgical operation the completion of David's organizational plan.*

¹At the end of twenty years, during which Solomon had built the house of the LORD and his own palace, ²Solomon rebuilt the cities that Hiram had given to him and settled Israelites in them. ³Solomon marched to Hamath-zobah and seized it. ⁴He constructed Tadmor in the wilderness and all the store cities that he constructed in Hamath. ⁵He built Upper Beth-horon and Lower Beth-horon as fortified cities with walls, double gates, and bars, ⁶and Baalath and all of Solomon's store cities, all the chariot cities, and the cavalry cities, and everything Solomon desired to build in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and throughout the entire land of his dominion. ⁷All the people remaining from the Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites — who were not Israelites — ⁸their descendants who remained in the land, whom the Israelites had not destroyed — Solomon conscripted them for forced labor, as they are to this day. ⁹But from the Israelites Solomon did not make slaves for his work. They served as soldiers, commanders of his officers, and commanders of his chariots and cavalry. ¹⁰These were King Solomon's chief officers: two hundred and fifty who ruled over the people. ¹¹Solomon moved Pharaoh's daughter from the City of David to the house he had built for her, for he said, "No wife of mine should dwell in the house of David king of Israel, because the places where the ark of the LORD has entered are holy." ¹²Then Solomon offered burnt offerings to the LORD on the altar of the LORD that he had built in front of the portico, ¹³according to the daily requirement for each day's offering, following the command of Moses — for Sabbaths, new moons, and the three annual festivals: the Festival of Unleavened

Bread, the Festival of Weeks, and the Festival of Tabernacles. ¹⁴He stationed the priestly divisions in their service duties and the Levites at their posts — to praise and to minister alongside the priests as each day required — and the gatekeepers in their divisions at each gate, following the ordinance of David his father; for such was the command of David, the man of God. ¹⁵They did not deviate from the king's command to the priests and Levites in any matter, including the treasuries. ¹⁶All of Solomon's work was carried out from the day the foundation of the house of the LORD was laid until it was finished. The house of the LORD was complete. ¹⁷Then Solomon went to Ezion-geber and to Eloth on the shore of the sea, in the land of Edom. ¹⁸Huram sent him ships and servants who knew the sea, through his agents. They went with Solomon's servants to Ophir and brought back 450 talents of gold, which they delivered to King Solomon.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The twenty-year period covers both building projects: seven years for the Temple (1 Kings 6:38) and thirteen years for the palace (1 Kings 7:1). The Chronicler does not specify this breakdown, grouping both projects into a single two-decade construction program. The completion marks the transition from building to administration.
2. The Chronicler presents the city transaction as a gift from Hiram to Solomon — the reverse of 1 Kings 9:11-13, where Solomon gives twenty Galilean cities to Hiram. The Chronicler may be reporting a return transaction (Hiram gave back cities Solomon had given him) or correcting what he viewed as an unflattering detail. The settlement of Israelites in these cities extends Israel's populated territory.
3. Hamath-zobah is a city or region in the territory between Hamath and the Aramean state of Zobah (in modern Syria). This military campaign is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings does not record it. The verb *va-yechezaq aleiha* ('he prevailed over it, he strengthened himself against it') indicates military conquest. This northern expansion extends Solomon's domain toward the boundary described in 7:8.
4. Tadmor (later known as Palmyra) was a major oasis city in the Syrian desert, a critical waypoint on the trade route between Mesopotamia and the Mediterranean. Its construction as a Solomonic project indicates the extent of Solomon's commercial ambitions. The *arei ha-miskenot* ('store cities') in the region of Hamath served as supply depots for the northern frontier.
5. The two Beth-horons (literally 'house of the hollow') guarded the primary ascent from the coastal plain to the Judean highlands — the most strategic military pass in central Israel. Upper Beth-horon sits at the top of the ascent, Lower Beth-horon at its base. Fortifying both created a double-locked gateway. The phrase *arei matzor chomot delatayim u-veriach* ('fortified cities with walls, gates, and bars') describes full military fortification.
6. The catalog of building projects reveals the scope of Solomon's construction program: Baalath (a fortified city in Dan's territory), store cities (supply depots), chariot cities (garrison towns for the standing chariot force), and cavalry cities (horse-breeding and training centers). The phrase *chesheq Shelomoh asher chashaq livnot* ('Solomon's desire that he desired to build') indicates personal ambition driving the building program. Lebanon likely refers to the 'House of the Forest of Lebanon' (1 Kings 7:2), a large armory and reception hall in Jerusalem built with Lebanese cedar.
7. The five pre-Israelite peoples listed here are a subset of the traditional seven nations of Canaan (Deuteronomy 7:1). Their descendants still lived in the land as a residual non-Israelite population. The Chronicler identifies them as the labor pool for Solomon's construction projects, distinguishing them from the Israelite citizenry.
8. The *mas* ('forced labor, corvée') was levied on the non-Israelite population. The phrase *ad ha-yom ha-zeh* ('to this day') is a narrator's time marker, indicating the practice continued into the Chronicler's era. The conscription of foreign residents for state labor was standard practice in the ancient Near East but raises ethical questions the text does not address directly.
9. The Chronicler makes an explicit distinction: Israelites were not enslaved (*lo natan Shelomoh la-avadim*, 'Solomon did not consign to servitude'). Instead, they held military and administrative positions — *anshei milchamah* ('warriors'), *sarei shalishav* ('commanders of his officers'), and *sarei rikhbho u-farashav* ('commanders of his chariots and horsemen'). This exemption separates Solomon from Pharaoh: Egypt enslaved Israelites; Solomon does not.
10. The number of chief officers — 250 — differs from 1 Kings 9:23 (550). The discrepancy may reflect different counting methods (which ranks are included) or different sources. The verb *ha-rodim* ('who ruled, who exercised authority') indicates these were the senior administrative officials who governed the workforce and the kingdom's operations.
11. Solomon's reasoning is explicitly theological: *ki qodesh hemmah asher ba'ah aleihem aron YHWH* ('because they are holy, the places to which the ark of the LORD has come'). The ark's prior presence sanctified the spaces in the City of David, creating holiness zones incompatible with domestic use. The Chronicler presents this relocation as a sign of Solomon's reverence, not as a critique of the marriage itself. Notably, the Chronicler does not condemn the Egyptian marriage — he simply records that Solomon managed the holiness geography correctly.
12. The altar's position — *lifnei ha-ulam* ('before the portico') — places it directly in front of the Temple entrance, between the people in the court and God in the house. The altar mediates between human and divine space. Solomon personally offers *olot* ('burnt offerings'), exercising a royal prerogative to participate in the sacrificial liturgy.
13. The sacrificial calendar follows *ke-mitzvat Mosheh* ('according to the command of Moses'), anchoring Temple practice in Torah. The three pilgrimage festivals — *chag ha-Matzot* (Unleavened Bread/Passover, spring), *chag ha-Shavu'ot* (Weeks/Pentecost, early summer), and *chag*

ha-Sukkot (Tabernacles, autumn) — are named as the annual cycle of national worship (Deuteronomy 16:16). Solomon's Temple operates exactly as Moses commanded, creating continuity between Sinai legislation and Solomonic worship.

14. Solomon implements David's organizational plan (1 Chronicles 23-26): priestly divisions (machleqot ha-kohanim) for sacrificial service, Levitical divisions for praise and ministry, and gatekeepers (sho'arim) at each entrance. David is honored with the title ish ha-Elohim ('man of God'), a designation usually reserved for prophets (Moses, Elijah). The Chronicler treats David's liturgical organization as divinely inspired — it is a mitzvat David ('command of David') with the authority of prophetic instruction.
15. The note that no one deviated (lo saru, 'they did not turn aside') from the royal-liturgical regulations indicates perfect compliance during Solomon's reign. The treasuries (otzarot) were under the same administrative order — the Temple's financial management followed the same disciplined structure as its worship. The Chronicler presents Solomon's era as the golden age of Temple order.
16. The summary uses a wordplay: shalem beit YHWH ('the house of the LORD was complete/whole'). The root sh-l-m appears in Solomon's name (Shelomoh) and in the word 'complete' (shalem). Solomon's entire life purpose — encoded in his name — reaches fulfillment in the Temple's completion. The phrase ad shelemo ('until its completion') echoes the same root. Everything about this king and this building is shalem — whole, complete, at peace.
16. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'complete' rather than default 'peace' because the sh-l-m root here carries its 'wholeness/completion' sense — the Temple was brought to its finished state.
17. Ezion-geber and Eloth (Elat) were port cities at the head of the Gulf of Aqaba (the northeastern arm of the Red Sea), in the territory of Edom. Solomon's control of these ports gave him access to maritime trade routes extending south along the Red Sea coast to eastern Africa, Arabia, and possibly India. The phrase al sefat ha-yam ('on the shore of the sea') identifies the location's strategic value — it was Israel's only seaport on the southern maritime route.
18. The Phoenicians provided maritime expertise — avadim yode'ei yam ('servants who knew the sea') — since Israel had no seafaring tradition. The collaboration between Tyrian sailors and Israelite merchants created a joint commercial venture. Ophir's location is debated: candidates include southwestern Arabia (Yemen/Oman), the Horn of Africa (Somalia/Eritrea), and western India. Wherever it was, 450 talents of gold (approximately 15 metric tons) represents an enormous haul of precious metal. The figure differs from 1 Kings 9:28 (420 talents).

9

Summary: *The Queen of Sheba, hearing of Solomon's fame, arrives in Jerusalem with a great retinue, camels bearing spices, vast quantities of gold, and precious stones. She tests Solomon with hard questions, and he answers every one — nothing is hidden from the king. When she sees his wisdom, the palace he has built, the food at his table, the seating of his servants, the attendance of his ministers and their attire, his cupbearers, and the burnt offerings he offers at the house of the LORD, she is left breathless. She praises both Solomon and his God, declaring blessed the servants who stand before him continually and hear his wisdom. She gives the king 120 talents of gold, spices in great abundance, and precious stones. Hiram's and Solomon's servants bring gold from Ophir, along with algum wood and precious stones. Solomon makes the algum wood into steps for the Temple and the palace and into lyres and harps for the musicians. Solomon gives the queen everything she desires. She returns home. The chapter then catalogs Solomon's annual gold income (666 talents), his ivory throne overlaid with gold, his golden drinking vessels, his fleet of Tarshish ships, and his international fame. Kings from all the earth seek his presence to hear the wisdom God has placed in his heart. Solomon reigns in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years, then sleeps with his fathers and is buried in the City of David. Rehoboam his son reigns in his place.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's account of the Queen of Sheba visit closely parallels 1 Kings 10 but with significant omissions. Most notably, the entire account of Solomon's foreign wives and his idolatry (1 Kings 11:1-13) is absent. The Chronicler ends Solomon's story at the peak of glory and international acclaim, refusing to narrate the decline. This is not ignorance but editorial theology: the Chronicler presents Solomon as the ideal Temple builder whose reign represents the fulfillment of divine promise. The number 666 for Solomon's annual gold income (v. 13) will later appear in Revelation 13:18 as the 'number of the beast' — a connection that has generated centuries of interpretive speculation, though the Chronicler intends no negative connotation. The Queen of Sheba's declaration 'Blessed be the LORD your God' (v. 8) makes her the second foreign monarch in Chronicles to bless Israel's God (after Hiram, 2:11), reinforcing the theme that the nations recognize what Israel sometimes forgets.*

Translation Friction: The most significant friction is the absence of 1 Kings 11. The Chronicler omits Solomon's 700 wives and 300 concubines, his worship of Ashtoreth, Milcom, and Chemosh, and God's judgment that the kingdom will be torn from his son. Whether the Chronicler disputes these traditions, considers them outside his theological scope, or assumes his readers know them from Kings is debated. The omission creates an idealized portrait that some scholars call 'too good to be true.' The 666 talents of gold annually (v. 13) is an enormous figure — roughly 22 metric tons — and its historical plausibility is questioned by those who find it incompatible with Iron Age economics. The regnal formula at the end (vv. 29-31) follows a compressed form compared to Kings.

Connections: The Queen of Sheba's visit fulfills Solomon's prayer that foreigners would come to the Temple drawn by God's Name (6:32-33). Jesus references this visit: 'The Queen of the South will rise at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and something greater than Solomon is here' (Matthew 12:42). The ivory throne with six steps (v. 17-18) may symbolize the six days of creation plus the seventh (the throne itself), placing Solomon on a creation-scale seat of judgment. The closing formula — 'Solomon slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David, and Rehoboam his son reigned in his place' — follows the standard regnal pattern that will recur for every Davidic king through the end of Chronicles.

¹The Queen of Sheba heard the report of Solomon and came to Jerusalem to test Solomon with riddles, accompanied by a very great retinue — camels bearing spices, gold in abundance, and precious stones. She came to Solomon and discussed with him everything that was on her heart. ²Solomon answered all her questions. Nothing was hidden from Solomon that he could not explain to her. ³When the Queen of Sheba saw the wisdom of Solomon and the palace he had built, ⁴the food at his table, the seating of his servants, the attentive service of his ministers and their attire, his cupbearers and their attire, and his burnt offerings that he offered at the house of the LORD — she was left breathless. ⁵She said to the king, "The report I heard in my own land about your achievements and your wisdom was true. ⁶But I did not believe their words until I came and saw with my own eyes. And truly, not even half the greatness of your wisdom was told to me — you far exceed the report I heard. ⁷How fortunate are your men! How fortunate are these servants of yours who stand before you continually, hearing your wisdom! ⁸Blessed be the LORD your God, who delighted in you and set you on His throne as king for the LORD your God. Because your God loves Israel and would establish them forever, He made you king over them to execute justice and righteousness." ⁹She gave the king 120 talents of gold, a vast abundance of spices, and precious stones. There were no spices like those the Queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon. ¹⁰Huram's servants and Solomon's servants, who brought gold from Ophir, also brought algum wood and precious stones. ¹¹The king used the algum wood to make walkways for the house of the LORD and the royal palace, and lyres and harps for the musicians. Nothing like them had been seen before in the land of Judah. ¹²King Solomon gave the Queen of Sheba everything she desired, whatever she asked — beyond what she had brought to the king. Then she turned and went back to her own land, she and her servants. ¹³The weight of gold that came to Solomon in a single year was 666 talents of gold, ¹⁴apart from what the traders and merchants brought. All the kings of Arabia and the governors of the land also brought gold and silver to Solomon. ¹⁵King Solomon made two hundred large shields of hammered gold; six hundred shekels of hammered gold went into each shield. ¹⁶He also made three hundred small shields of hammered gold, with three hundred shekels of gold in each shield. The king placed them in the House of the Forest of Lebanon. ¹⁷The king also constructed a massive throne of ivory, overlaid with pure gold. ¹⁸The throne had six steps and a golden footstool, which were attached to the throne, with armrests on each side of the seat and two lions standing beside the armrests. ¹⁹Twelve lions stood on the six steps, one on each side — nothing like it had been made in any kingdom. ²⁰All of King Solomon's drinking vessels were gold, and all the vessels of the House of the Forest of Lebanon were refined gold — no silver, for silver was considered worthless in Solomon's days. ²¹For the king's ships sailed to Tarshish with Huram's servants. Once every three years the Tarshish ships would arrive, carrying gold, silver, ivory, apes, and peacocks. ²²King Solomon surpassed all the kings of the earth in wealth and wisdom. ²³All the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon to hear his wisdom, which God had placed in his heart. ²⁴Each one brought his tribute: silver and gold vessels, garments, weapons, spices, horses, and mules — year after year. ²⁵Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen. He stationed them in the chariot cities and with the king in Jerusalem. ²⁶He ruled over all

the kings from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines and as far as the border of Egypt. ²⁷The king made silver as common as stones in Jerusalem, and cedars as plentiful as the sycamore trees in the lowlands. ²⁸Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from all lands. ²⁹The rest of the acts of Solomon, from first to last — are they not recorded in the writings of Nathan the prophet, in the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in the visions of Iddo the seer concerning Jeroboam son of Nebat? ³⁰Solomon's reign in Jerusalem over all Israel lasted forty years. ³¹Solomon slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David his father. Rehoboam his son reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Sheba (Sheva) was a wealthy kingdom in southwestern Arabia (modern Yemen), controlling the incense trade routes. The queen's arrival with a massive caravan (chayil kaved me'od, 'a very heavy/wealthy retinue') demonstrates her own royal status and wealth. She comes le-nassot ('to test') Solomon with chidot ('riddles, enigmas, hard questions') — these were likely wisdom competitions, a form of royal intellectual exchange common in the ancient Near East. The phrase kol asher hayah im levavah ('everything that was with her heart') indicates she held nothing back.
2. The emphatic statement lo ne'lam davar mi-Shelomoh ('nothing was hidden from Solomon') demonstrates the completeness of Solomon's wisdom. Every riddle was solved, every question answered. The divine gift of wisdom (1:12) now proves itself in international intellectual competition. Solomon's wisdom is not merely theoretical but publicly demonstrable.
3. The queen's experience moves from hearing (the riddle answers) to seeing (the palace and its operations). Wisdom is both intellectual and architectural — the palace itself is a physical expression of Solomon's wisdom. The verb va-tere ('she saw') begins a catalog of visual evidence that will leave the queen breathless.
4. The catalog of marvels covers domestic hospitality (food, seating), administrative order (servants' attendance, ministers' uniforms), royal service (cupbearers' attire), and worship (the ascent to the Temple for burnt offerings). The climax is ve-lo hayah od bah ruach ('there was no more spirit/breath in her'). The queen's breath — her life force, her capacity for speech — is exhausted by the spectacle. The word ruach ('spirit, breath, wind') suggests she was literally breathless. Solomon's wisdom has overwhelmed a fellow monarch.
5. The queen validates the reports: emet ha-davar ('the word/report was true'). She had heard about Solomon but assumed the reports were exaggerated — as she will explain in the next verse. The testimony of a foreign monarch confirms Solomon's reputation internationally.
6. The queen confesses prior skepticism: lo he'emanti ('I did not believe'). Her unbelief was overturned by direct experience — ad asher ba'ti va-tire'enah einai ('until I came and my eyes saw'). The declaration lo huggad li chatzi marbbit chokhmatekha ('not even half the abundance of your wisdom was told to me') uses commercial language — marbbit means 'increase, abundance, surplus.' Solomon's wisdom exceeds its own reputation, which is itself extraordinary.
7. The ashrei ('fortunate, blessed, happy') formula — usually reserved for those who walk in God's ways (Psalm 1:1) — is applied to Solomon's courtiers. Standing continually in Solomon's presence and hearing his wisdom is a form of blessedness. The queen recognizes that proximity to wisdom is itself a gift. Jesus will echo this when he declares 'blessed are your eyes, for they see' (Matthew 13:16).
8. The phrase al kisso le-melek la-YHWH ('on His throne as king for the LORD') is unique to Chronicles — 1 Kings 10:9 says 'on the throne of Israel.' The Chronicler elevates the throne from a national seat to a divine one. Israel's throne belongs to God; the king merely occupies it. This throne theology makes every Davidic king accountable to the true King. The queen — a foreign monarch — articulates this theology, making her a witness to truths that Israel's own kings will sometimes forget.
9. The gifts are lavish: 120 talents of gold (approximately 4 metric tons), rare spices (Sheba controlled the Arabian incense trade), and precious stones. The note lo hayah ka-bosem ha-hu ('there were no spices like those') singles out the spices as unique — Sheba's control of the incense routes (frankincense and myrrh) meant she could provide aromatics unavailable elsewhere. The exchange of gifts is also a trade agreement — the visit establishes commercial relations between Israel and the Arabian spice kingdoms.
10. The alummim ('algum wood,' possibly red sandalwood or juniper) was a rare and valuable timber imported from Ophir along with gold and precious stones. The joint Tyrian-Israelite fleet operated as a comprehensive trading venture, importing multiple luxury commodities simultaneously.
11. The mesillot ('walkways, raised causeways, steps') were elevated pathways connecting the palace complex to the Temple — processional routes for the king's approach to worship. The same wood was fashioned into musical instruments (kinnorot, 'lyres,' and nevalim, 'harps'), making the algum serve both architectural and liturgical purposes. The note that nothing comparable had been seen in Judah emphasizes the exotic rarity of the material.
12. The phrase kol cheftzah asher sha'alah ('everything she desired, whatever she asked') echoes God's blank-check offer to Solomon in 1:7. Solomon extends the same generosity he received from God. The note millevad asher hevi'ah el ha-melek ('beyond what she had brought to the king') indicates the exchange was not merely reciprocal but exceeded it — Solomon gave more than he received, demonstrating the overflow of divine blessing.
13. The annual gold income of 666 talents (approximately 22 metric tons) represents an extraordinary figure for an Iron Age kingdom. This number will appear again in Revelation 13:18 as the 'number of the beast,' but in the Chronicler's context it simply quantifies Solomon's wealth. The specificity of the number suggests archival records rather than round-number estimation.

14. The 666 talents was the base revenue — additional income came from commercial traders (anshei ha-tarim ve-ha-socharim), Arabian kings (malkhei Arav), and regional governors (pachot ha-aretz). Solomon's wealth had multiple streams: direct taxation, commercial trade, tribute from vassal kings, and administrative revenue. The Arabian kings' tribute connects to the Sheba visit — the spice trade routes fed gold into Solomon's treasury.
15. The tzinnah ('large shield') was a full-body defensive shield, larger than the magen (small shield). Two hundred of them, each requiring 600 shekels (approximately 7 kilograms) of hammered gold (zahav shachut, 'beaten/drawn gold'), represented an extraordinary display of martial wealth. These were ceremonial shields, not battlefield equipment — gold is too soft for combat. They symbolized invulnerability through divine blessing.
16. The maginnim ('small shields') were lighter, one-arm shields. Three hundred of them at 300 shekels each (approximately 3.5 kilograms) complemented the larger shields. All were stored in the Beit Ya'ar ha-Levanon ('House of the Forest of Lebanon'), a large hall in the palace complex whose cedar columns evoked a Lebanese forest (1 Kings 7:2-5). This armory doubled as a display hall, showcasing Solomon's wealth to visiting dignitaries.
17. The kisse shen gadol ('great ivory throne') was constructed of ivory (shen, literally 'tooth,' referring to elephant ivory) and overlaid with zahav tavor ('pure gold'). The combination of ivory and gold — white bone beneath yellow metal — created a throne of extraordinary visual impact. Ivory was imported from Africa or India, making the throne itself a symbol of international trade connections.
18. The six steps may symbolize the six days of creation, with the throne representing the seventh — the seat of rest and rule, paralleling God's Sabbath throne. The kevesh ba-zahav ('golden footstool') is unique to Chronicles (1 Kings 10:19 mentions a rounded top). The armrests (yadot, literally 'hands') and flanking lions project royal authority. The lions — symbols of Judah's tribal identity (Genesis 49:9) — guard the seat of power.
19. Twelve lions on six steps (two per step, one on each side) create a procession of leonine guardians ascending to the throne. The twelve may represent the twelve tribes flanking the royal seat. The superlative lo na'asah khi le-khol mamlakhah ('nothing like it had been made in any kingdom') claims uniqueness for Solomon's throne in the entire ancient world — no other king sat on a comparable seat of judgment.
20. The hyperbole reaches its peak: ein keseph nechshav bi-yemei Shelomoh li-me'umah ('silver was not reckoned as anything in the days of Solomon'). Silver — a precious metal in any other era — was so abundant as to be beneath notice. This echoes 1:15 ('silver as common as stones') and communicates that Solomon's wealth transcended normal categories of value.
21. The oniyot Tarshish ('ships of Tarshish') were large, ocean-going vessels capable of long-distance voyages. Tarshish may refer to a specific destination (possibly Tartessus in Spain, or a location in the Indian Ocean) or it may be a ship-class designation ('Tarshish-class ships'). The three-year round-trip voyage indicates extreme distance. The cargo — gold, silver, ivory (shenhabbim), apes (qofim), and peacocks (tukkiyim, possibly baboons or parrots) — represents the exotic wealth of distant lands. The voyage's length and exotic returns place Solomon at the center of international maritime commerce.
22. The summary statement va-yigdal ha-melek Shelomoh mi-kol malkhei ha-aretz ('King Solomon became greater than all the kings of the earth') fulfills God's promise in 1:12 — Solomon has received both wisdom and unprecedented wealth. The dual qualities le-osher ve-chokmah ('in wealth and in wisdom') correspond to what Solomon asked for (wisdom) and what God added (wealth).
23. The phrase mevaqshim et penei Shelomoh ('seeking the face of Solomon') uses language normally reserved for seeking God's face (cf. 7:14, vi-vaqshu fanai). The kings of the earth orient themselves toward Solomon as they should toward God — not worshipping Solomon but recognizing that divine wisdom resides in him. The wisdom is identified as asher natan ha-Elohim be-libbo ('which God placed in his heart'), crediting God as the source.
24. The annual tribute (devar shanah be-shanah, 'the matter of each year') includes luxury goods across multiple categories: precious metal vessels, textiles (selamot, 'garments'), military equipment (nesheq, 'weapons, armor'), aromatics (besamim), and animals (susim u-feradim, 'horses and mules'). The regularity ('year after year') indicates established tributary relationships, not one-time gifts.
25. The 4,000 horse stalls here differs from 1 Kings 4:26 (40,000 stalls) — the Chronicles figure is more plausible and may represent a correction or a different source. The 12,000 horsemen matches both accounts. The chariot cities served as forward military bases across the kingdom, while a garrison remained in Jerusalem under the king's direct command.
26. Solomon's territorial extent — from the Euphrates (ha-nahar, 'the River,' always meaning the Euphrates when used with the definite article) to the Egyptian border — represents the maximum fulfillment of the Abrahamic land promise (Genesis 15:18). The phrase moshel be-khol ha-melakhim ('ruling over all the kings') indicates suzerainty — Solomon was the dominant power to whom regional kings owed allegiance.
27. This verse repeats 1:15 almost verbatim, creating an inclusio around Solomon's reign — his story begins and ends with the same declaration of incredible abundance. The repetition frames everything between as the fulfillment of God's promise: Solomon asked for wisdom, received it, and the wealth that God promised as a bonus has materialized exactly as described.
28. The horse trade summary expands beyond 1:16-17: not only Egypt and Kue but mi-kol ha-aratzot ('from all lands'). Solomon's horse-trading network had become global — he imported breeding stock and war horses from every available source. This comprehensive accumulation fulfills the promise of unmatched wealth but also stands in tension with Deuteronomy 17:16.
29. The source citation names three prophetic records: divrei Natan ha-navi ('the words of Nathan the prophet'), nevu'at Achiyyah ha-Shiloni ('the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite'), and chazot Ye'do ha-chozeh ('the visions of Iddo the seer'). These are prophetic histories, not royal annals — the Chronicler's sources are prophetic in character, viewing history through the lens of divine revelation. Ahijah the Shilonite is the prophet who announced the kingdom's division to Jeroboam (1 Kings 11:29-39). Iddo appears in several Chronicler source citations. Nathan was David's court prophet.

30. The forty-year reign matches 1 Kings 11:42. Forty years is the standard biblical generation and the typical reign-length for great kings (David also reigned forty years). The phrase *al kol Yisrael* ('over all Israel') emphasizes that Solomon's rule extended over the united kingdom — all twelve tribes. This unity will shatter in the very next chapter when Rehoboam's folly divides the kingdom.
31. The regnal death formula — *va-yishkav Shelomoh im avotav* ('Solomon slept with his fathers') — uses the standard euphemism for royal death. The burial in the City of David places Solomon alongside his father in the dynastic necropolis. The succession notice *va-yimlokh Rechav'am beno tachtav* ('Rehoboam his son reigned in his place') closes Solomon's story and opens Rehoboam's. The Chronicler ends Solomon's narrative at this point of peaceful transition, without any hint of the crisis that immediately follows.

10

Summary: *Rehoboam travels to Shechem where all Israel has gathered to make him king. Jeroboam son of Nebat returns from Egypt and joins the assembly. The people ask Rehoboam to lighten the heavy labor burden Solomon imposed. Rehoboam consults first with the elders who served his father — they advise kindness and service. He then consults the young men who grew up with him — they advise escalation: heavier burdens, harsher discipline. Rehoboam follows the young men's counsel and answers the people harshly: 'My father made your yoke heavy; I will add to it. My father disciplined you with whips; I will use scorpions.' The text states explicitly that this turn of events was from God, to fulfill the word spoken through Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam. When Israel sees the king will not listen, they declare: 'What portion do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse. To your tents, Israel! Now look after your own house, David!' The ten tribes depart. Rehoboam sends Hadoram, the overseer of forced labor, to negotiate, but Israel stones him to death. Rehoboam himself barely escapes to Jerusalem by chariot. Israel has broken away from the house of David.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler follows 1 Kings 12 closely but with a distinctive emphasis: the disruption is not merely political but theological, orchestrated by God himself. The phrase *ki hayetah nesibah me'im ha-Elohim* ('the turn of events was from God') replaces Kings' *me'im YHWH* and makes the theological causation unmistakable. The Chronicler includes no account of Jeroboam's earlier prophetic encounter or his motives — the focus stays entirely on Rehoboam's failure. The young men's advice escalates Solomon's oppression with vivid imagery: 'my little finger is thicker than my father's loins' is a boast about superior power. The scorpions (*aqrabim*) are likely barbed whips, not literal creatures, but the metaphor trades on the terror of the name. The sending of Hadoram — the most hated official in the kingdom, the one responsible for forced labor — reveals either breathtaking arrogance or catastrophic political judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between divine sovereignty and human responsibility is stark. The text says the turn of events was from God, yet Rehoboam's choice is presented as genuinely foolish. God uses human folly to accomplish prophetic purposes. The people's declaration — 'What portion do we have in David?' — echoes Sheba's rebellion in 2 Samuel 20:1, suggesting that the fracture between north and south predated Solomon. The Chronicler's audience, living in a world where only Judah remains, must wrestle with the implication that God himself orchestrated the national schism.*

Connections: *The narrative parallels 1 Kings 12:1-19 almost verbatim. Ahijah's prophecy is referenced from 1 Kings 11:29-39. The cry 'What portion do we have in David?' echoes 2 Samuel 20:1 (Sheba's rebellion). The forced labor system traces back to Solomon's building projects (2 Chronicles 2:17-18, 8:7-9). Shechem itself carries weight: it is where the covenant was renewed under Joshua (Joshua 24), where Abimelech attempted kingship (Judges 9), and where Israel's tribal assembly had ancient roots.*

1Rehoboam went to Shechem, because all Israel had come to Shechem to make him king. 2When Jeroboam son of Nebat heard about it — he was in Egypt, where he had fled from King Solomon — he returned from Egypt. 3They sent for him and summoned him. So Jeroboam and all Israel came and spoke to Rehoboam, saying: 4"Your father made our yoke harsh. Now lighten the hard labor your father imposed and the heavy yoke he placed on us, and we will serve you." 5He told them, "Come back to me in three days." So the people left. 6King Rehoboam consulted the elders who had served his father Solomon during his lifetime: "What do you advise me to say in response to this people?" 7They told him, "If you treat this people well, show them favor, and speak kindly to them, they will be your servants forever." 8But he abandoned the counsel of the elders

and consulted the young men who had grown up with him and now served him. ⁹He asked them, "What do you advise? How should we answer this people who have said to me, 'Lighten the yoke your father put on us'?" ¹⁰The young men who had grown up with him said, "This is what you should tell the people who said, 'Your father made our yoke heavy — lighten it for us.' Say to them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist.' ¹¹My father loaded you with a heavy yoke — I will add to your yoke. My father disciplined you with whips — I will discipline you with scorpions.'" ¹²Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king had directed: "Come back to me on the third day." ¹³The king answered them harshly. King Rehoboam abandoned the counsel of the elders ¹⁴and spoke to them following the advice of the young men: "My father made your yoke heavy — I will add to it. My father disciplined you with whips — I will use scorpions." ¹⁵The king did not listen to the people, because the turn of events was from God, so that the LORD might fulfill his word that he had spoken through Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam son of Nebat. ¹⁶When all Israel saw that the king would not listen to them, the people answered the king: "What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! Everyone to your tents, Israel! Now look after your own house, David!" And all Israel went to their tents. ¹⁷But the Israelites living in the towns of Judah — Rehoboam continued to reign over them. ¹⁸King Rehoboam sent Hadoram, who was over the forced labor, but the Israelites stoned him to death. King Rehoboam himself hurried into his chariot and fled to Jerusalem. ¹⁹So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Shekhemah ('to Shechem') is significant: the assembly is not in Jerusalem, David's city, but in Shechem — the ancient northern tribal gathering place. The very location signals that the northern tribes expect a renegotiation of terms, not automatic loyalty to David's line.
2. The Chronicler notes Jeroboam's exile in Egypt but omits the entire backstory of Ahijah's prophecy (1 Kings 11:29-39). The audience is assumed to know the tradition. The verb *barach* ('fled') indicates Jeroboam left under threat, not by choice.
3. The phrase *va-yishleku va-yiqre'u lo* ('they sent and called him') shows Jeroboam is invited by the assembly — he does not force his way in. He arrives as the people's spokesman, with *kol Yisra'el* ('all Israel') behind him.
4. The vocabulary of oppression is dense: *hiqshah* ('made harsh'), *avodah qashah* ('hard labor'), *ol kaved* ('heavy yoke'). The word *ol* ('yoke') is the language of subjugation — the same word used for foreign oppression. The people offer a conditional bargain: *lighten the burden ve-na'avdekka* ('and we will serve you'). Service is offered, not assumed.
5. The three-day delay — *sheloshet yamim* ('three days') — gives Rehoboam time to consult. The brevity of the people's departure (*va-yelekh ha-am*) suggests they are waiting, not yet hostile.
6. The *zeqenim* ('elders') are those who *omdim lifnei Shelomoh* ('stood before Solomon') — experienced advisors who understood governance. Rehoboam's question *eikh attem no'atsim* ('how do you counsel?') shows he initially seeks wisdom from the right source.
7. The elders' advice centers on three actions: *tihyeh le-tov* ('be good toward'), *retsitam* ('show them favor, please them'), and *dibbarta devarim tovim* ('speak good words'). The promise is permanent loyalty: *ve-hayu lekha avadim kol ha-yamim* ('they will be your servants all the days'). Kindness, in their wisdom, produces lasting allegiance more surely than force.
8. The verb *ya'azov* ('he abandoned') is strong — the same verb used for abandoning God or a covenant. The *yeladim* ('young men, boys') are Rehoboam's age-peers who *gadlu immo* ('grew up with him'). They share his privileged perspective and have no experience with governance or the people's hardship.
9. Rehoboam repeats the people's request but frames it as a problem to be managed rather than a grievance to be addressed. The question *mah attem no'atsim* ('what do you advise?') is identical in form to his question to the elders, but the audience guarantees a different answer.
10. The young men's response opens with crude bravado: *qotonni avah mi-motnei avi* ('my little finger is thicker than my father's loins'). The word *qotonni* literally means 'my littleness' — the smallest part of me surpasses the strongest part of him. The *motnayim* ('loins, waist') represents the center of a man's strength. The boast claims Rehoboam's weakest is stronger than Solomon's strongest.
11. The escalation is twofold: heavier labor (*osif al ullekhem*, 'I will add to your yoke') and harsher punishment. The *aqrabbim* ('scorpions') are likely multi-tailed whips with barbed tips, named for the scorpion's sting. The young men advise ruling through terror rather than consent — the opposite of the elders' counsel.
12. The people honor the three-day agreement. The *ba-yom ha-shelishi* ('on the third day') marks the moment of decision. The obedience of the people in returning as directed contrasts with the king's coming disobedience to wisdom.
13. The narrator states Rehoboam's failure twice: *va-ya'anem qashah* ('he answered them harshly') and *va-ya'azov et atsat ha-zeqenim* ('he abandoned the counsel of the elders'). The double statement emphasizes that this was a deliberate choice, not a slip.

14. Rehoboam repeats the young men's words almost verbatim. By speaking them in his own voice before the assembly, he makes them royal policy. The ka'atsat ha-yeladim ('according to the counsel of the young men') is the narrator's judgment: the king chose inexperience over wisdom.
15. The phrase nesibah me'im ha-Elohim ('a turning from God') uses Elohim rather than YHWH, possibly reflecting the Chronicler's theological vocabulary. The purpose clause lema'an haqim ('in order to establish') shows divine intentionality. Ahijah ha-Shiloni ('the Shilonite') identifies the prophet by his hometown of Shiloh — the ancient sanctuary city. The Chronicler assumes the audience knows the prophecy without retelling it.
16. The declaration of secession uses covenantal language: mah lanu cheleq be-David ('what portion do we have in David?') and lo nachalah be-ven Yishai ('no inheritance in the son of Jesse'). The words cheleq ('portion') and nachalah ('inheritance') are land-distribution terms from the conquest. Israel is saying: David's house is not our inheritance; we owe them nothing. The cry ish le-ohalav Yisra'el ('each man to his tents, Israel') is a call to disperse — to abandon the assembly and the united monarchy.
17. The exception clause — benei Yisra'el ha-yoshvim be-arei Yehudah ('the sons of Israel dwelling in the cities of Judah') — refers to northerners who had settled in Judean territory. Geography trumped tribal identity: if you lived in Judah, you remained under Rehoboam. The phrase va-yimlokh aleihem ('he reigned over them') is limited — his kingdom has shrunk to a fraction of Solomon's.
18. The name is Hadoram here (Adoram/Adoniram in Kings). As the official asher al ha-mas ('over the forced labor'), he personifies the oppression the people are rejecting. Sending the labor boss to negotiate with an angry populace is spectacularly poor judgment. The stoning — va-yirgemu vo even ('they stoned him with stones') — is an act of communal violence. Rehoboam's flight — hit'ammets la'alot ba-merkavah lanus ('he made haste to mount the chariot to flee') — shows the king running for his life.
19. The concluding formula — va-yifsh'u Yisra'el be-veit David ('Israel rebelled against the house of David') — uses the verb pasha ('to rebel, to transgress'), which carries both political and theological weight. The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('to this day') writes from a perspective where the division still holds. For the Chronicler's post-exilic audience, the phrase is haunting: the northern kingdom no longer exists, but its rebellion endures in memory.

11

Summary: Rehoboam returns to Jerusalem and assembles 180,000 chosen warriors from Judah and Benjamin to fight Israel and reclaim the kingdom. But the word of God comes through Shemaiah the prophet: do not go up or fight against your brothers — this thing is from me. They obey and return home. Rehoboam then fortifies fifteen cities throughout Judah and Benjamin as a defensive network — Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, Beth-zur, Soco, Adullam, Gath, Mareshah, Ziph, Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron. He stocks them with commanders, provisions, oil, and wine, and equips them with shields and spears, making them extremely strong. Meanwhile, the Levites and priests throughout Israel abandon their pasturelands and property and relocate to Judah and Jerusalem because Jeroboam and his sons have dismissed them from serving as priests of the LORD. Jeroboam appoints his own priests for the high places, for the goat-demons, and for the calves he made. From every tribe in Israel, those who set their hearts on seeking the LORD God of Israel follow the Levites to Jerusalem to sacrifice to the LORD, the God of their fathers. They strengthen the kingdom of Judah and support Rehoboam son of Solomon for three years, because for three years they walked in the way of David and Solomon. Rehoboam marries Mahalath daughter of Jerimoth son of David and Abihail daughter of Eliab son of Jesse. She bears him sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham. After her he takes Maacah daughter of Absalom, whom he loves more than all his other wives and concubines — eighteen wives and sixty concubines, fathering twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters. Rehoboam appoints Abijah son of Maacah as chief among the brothers, intending him as successor. He acts wisely by distributing his sons throughout Judah and Benjamin's fortified cities, giving them abundant provisions and obtaining many wives for them.

What Makes This Remarkable: The chapter reveals the Chronicler's distinctive theology of migration. The Levitical exodus from the north to Judah is presented as a second exodus — a movement from apostasy to true worship. The phrase she-hiniach Yarov'am u-vanav mi-kahen la-YHWH ('Jeroboam and his sons dismissed them from being priests to the LORD') explains the migration theologically: priestly identity is inseparable from YHWH worship. The fifteen fortified cities form a strategic arc around Judah's southern and western borders — notably not along the northern border with Israel. This suggests Rehoboam's real fear is Egypt and Philistia, not Jeroboam. The note that Rehoboam walked wisely 'for three years' is ominous: it implies a decline that chapter 12 will narrate.

Translation Friction: The Chronicler presents Jeroboam's alternative priesthood as entirely illegitimate — priests la-se'irim ('for goat-demons') and la-agalav ('for his calves'). This is polemic, not neutral description. The goat-demons (se'irim) appear in Leviticus 17:7 as objects of forbidden worship. By linking Jeroboam's priests to demonic entities, the Chronicler delegitimizes the northern cult entirely. The polygamy of Rehoboam — eighteen wives, sixty concubines — goes without narrative criticism, though Deuteronomy 17:17 warns kings against multiplying wives. The Chronicler seems to regard it as evidence of prosperity rather than disobedience.

Connections: Shemaiah the prophet appears here and in chapter 12. The fifteen fortified cities overlap with the Judean town lists in Joshua 15. The Levitical migration anticipates the post-exilic return — both involve people leaving compromised territory to worship correctly. Jeroboam's golden calves connect to 1 Kings 12:28-29. The se'irim ('goat-demons') recall Leviticus 17:7 and Isaiah 13:21, 34:14. The phrase 'walked in the way of David and Solomon' uses the Chronicler's language of faithfulness; David's way and Solomon's way are presented as one continuous standard.

¹When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin — 180,000 chosen warriors — to fight against Israel and restore the kingdom to Rehoboam. ²But the word of the LORD came to Shemaiah the man of God: ³"Say to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin: ⁴This is what the LORD says: You must not march out or fight against your brothers. Each man go home, because this thing has come from me." They obeyed the word of the LORD and turned back from marching against Jeroboam. ⁵Rehoboam settled in Jerusalem and built fortified cities in Judah. ⁶He built up Bethlehem, Etam, and Tekoa, ⁷Beth-zur, Soco, and Adullam, ⁸Gath, Mareshah, and Ziph, ⁹Adoraim, Lachish, and Azekah, ¹⁰Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron — these fortified cities were in Judah and Benjamin. ¹¹He strengthened the fortifications and stationed commanders in them, along with stores of food, oil, and wine. ¹²In every city he placed shields and spears, making them extremely strong. Judah and Benjamin remained his. ¹³The priests and Levites throughout all Israel rallied to him from their entire territory. ¹⁴The Levites abandoned their pasturelands and their property and went to Judah and Jerusalem, because Jeroboam and his sons had dismissed them from serving as priests to the LORD. ¹⁵He appointed his own priests for the high places, for the goat-demons, and for the calves he had made. ¹⁶After them, from every tribe of Israel, those who set their hearts on seeking the LORD God of Israel came to Jerusalem to sacrifice to the LORD, the God of their fathers. ¹⁷They strengthened the kingdom of Judah and supported Rehoboam son of Solomon for three years, because for three years they walked in the way of David and Solomon. ¹⁸Rehoboam married Mahalath daughter of Jerimoth son of David and of Abihail daughter of Eliab son of Jesse. ¹⁹She bore him sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham. ²⁰After her he married Maacah daughter of Absalom. She bore him Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. ²¹Rehoboam loved Maacah daughter of Absalom more than all his other wives and concubines — he had taken eighteen wives and sixty concubines, and fathered twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters. ²²Rehoboam appointed Abijah son of Maacah as chief among his brothers, as leader — for he intended to make him king. ²³He acted wisely, distributing his sons throughout the territories of Judah and Benjamin, to all the fortified cities. He gave them abundant provisions and obtained many wives for them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The number me'ah u-shemonim elef bachur oseh milchamah ('180,000 chosen men making war') is enormous. The verb le-hashiv ('to restore, to bring back') shows Rehoboam intends reconquest. His first instinct after rejection is military force.
2. Shema'yahu ish ha-Elohim ('Shemaiah the man of God') receives direct divine communication. The title ish ha-Elohim ('man of God') designates a recognized prophetic authority. The divine word overrides the military plan.
3. The phrase kol Yisra'el bi-Yhudah u-Vinyamin ('all Israel in Judah and Benjamin') is telling — the Chronicler still calls Judah's population 'Israel.' The true Israel, in the Chronicler's view, is the community that worships correctly, regardless of tribal composition.
4. God's command has three parts: lo ta'alu ('do not go up'), lo tilachamu im acheikhem ('do not fight your brothers'), shuvu ish le-veito ('return each to his house'). The reason — ki me'itti niyah ha-davar ha-zeh ('for from me this thing has happened') — restates 10:15. The obedience is immediate: va-yishme'u et divrei YHWH ('they obeyed the words of the LORD'). The army dissolves without a battle.

5. The shift from offensive war to defensive construction — *va-yiven arim le-matsor* ('he built cities for siege-defense') — marks a strategic pivot. Unable to recover the north, Rehoboam fortifies what remains.
6. The fortification list begins. Beit Lechem ('Bethlehem') is David's ancestral town; fortifying it honors the dynasty's origins. Etam lies south of Bethlehem; Teqoa is the home of the wise woman of 2 Samuel 14 and later of the prophet Amos.
7. These three cities form the western Judean hill country defense. Adullam ('Adullam') is where David hid in the cave (1 Samuel 22:1). Soco (Sokho) is near the Elah Valley where David fought Goliath.
8. Gat ('Gath') was originally a Philistine city; its inclusion suggests Judean control at this point. Mareshah guards the approach from the coastal plain. Ziph is in the southern hill country near Hebron.
9. Lakhish ('Lachish') is the most strategically important city in this list — a major fortress guarding the southwestern approach to Jerusalem. It will figure prominently in the Assyrian and Babylonian campaigns. Azekah also overlooks the Shephelah approach routes.
10. The list concludes with fifteen cities. Tsor'ah ('Zorah') is Samson's birthplace (Judges 13:2). Ayyalon guards the main western pass toward Jerusalem. Chevron ('Hebron') is David's first capital and the patriarchal burial site. The note *arei metssurot* ('fortified cities') summarizes the list — these form a defensive perimeter across Judah's south and west.
11. The provisioning is thorough: *negidim* ('commanders, leaders') for military leadership, *otserot ma'akhal* ('stores of food') for sustenance, *shemen va-yayin* ('oil and wine') for both nutrition and trade. A well-supplied fortress can withstand prolonged siege.
12. The *tsinnot u-remachim* ('shields and spears') represent both defensive and offensive capability. The summary *va-yechazzeqem le-harbeh me'od* ('he strengthened them greatly') shows effective military preparation. The concluding note — *va-yehi lo Yehudah u-Vinyamin* ('Judah and Benjamin were his') — defines the reduced but secure kingdom.
13. The verb *hityatsvu alav* ('they stationed themselves with him, rallied to him') uses the *hitpaal* of *y-ts-v*, indicating deliberate, resolute action. The priests and Levites leave the northern kingdom as a body — *mi-kol gevulam* ('from all their territory') — abandoning their assigned cities and pasturelands.
14. The Levites leave *migrsheihem* ('their pasturelands') and *achuzzatam* ('their inherited property') — material sacrifice for the sake of vocation. The verb *heznicham* ('he rejected them, dismissed them') is strong: Jeroboam actively expelled the legitimate priesthood. The phrase *mi-kahen la-YHWH* ('from serving as priests to the LORD') defines the issue as vocational and theological, not merely political.
15. Jeroboam's replacement priesthood serves three illegitimate institutions: *bamot* ('high places'), *se'irim* ('goat-demons, satyrs'), and *agalim* ('calves'). The *se'irim* are hairy goat-spirits associated with wilderness worship (Leviticus 17:7). The calves are the golden images at Bethel and Dan (1 Kings 12:28-29). This triple enumeration paints the northern cult as thoroughly paganized.
16. The key phrase is *ha-notnim et levavam le-vaqqesh* ('those setting their hearts to seek'). The verb *baqqesh* ('to seek') is central to the Chronicler's theology — seeking God is the essential act of covenant faithfulness. These are lay people, not just clergy, choosing worship over geography.
17. The three-year period — *le-shanim shalosh* ('for three years') — appears twice for emphasis. The verb *chizqu* ('they strengthened') and *immettsu* ('they supported') describe both spiritual and political reinforcement. The phrase *be-derekh David u-Shelomoh* ('in the way of David and Solomon') sets the standard. The implied warning is clear: after three years, something changed.
18. Machalat's lineage is doubly Davidic: her father Yerimot is a son of David, and her mother Avichayil is the daughter of Eli'av ben Yishai — David's eldest brother. The marriage reinforces the dynasty's bloodline. Yerimot does not appear in other Davidic genealogies and may be from a secondary wife.
19. Three sons are named: Ye'ush, Shemaryah, and Zaham. None of these will succeed Rehoboam. The names themselves are unremarkable in the record; their significance lies in what follows — they are passed over in favor of Maacah's son.
20. *Ma'akhah bat Avshalom* ('Maacah daughter of Absalom') — whether this is David's son Absalom or another Absalom is debated. If David's son, the marriage unites rival branches of the royal family. *Aviyah* ('Abijah') will become Rehoboam's successor.
21. The Chronicler notes Rehoboam's preference for Maacah without comment. The scale — *shemoneh esreh nashim* ('eighteen wives') and *shishim pilagshim* ('sixty concubines') — is significant but modest compared to Solomon's 700 and 300. The eighty-eight children (twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters) demonstrate dynastic vitality.
22. The phrase *la-rosh* ('as head') and *le-nagid be-echav* ('as leader among his brothers') gives Abijah formal precedence. The motive clause *ki le-hamlikho* ('because he intended to make him king') reveals deliberate succession planning. Rehoboam has learned from the chaos of his own accession — or at least from the competition.
23. The verb *va-yaven* ('he understood, he acted wisely') is a rare commendation from the Chronicler. The strategy — *va-yifrots mi-kol banav* ('he spread out all his sons') to the fortified cities — places loyal family members as regional governors. Providing *mazon la-rov* ('food in abundance') and *hamon nashim* ('many wives') ensures their contentment and local rootedness. The policy prevents succession rivalry by giving each prince territory and status, while reserving the throne for Abijah.

12

Summary: *Once Rehoboam's kingdom is established and he is strong, he abandons the Torah of the LORD — and all Israel with him. In the fifth year of Rehoboam, Shishak king of Egypt marches against Jerusalem with 1,200 chariots, 60,000 cavalry, and innumerable troops from Libya, Sukki, and Ethiopia. He captures the fortified cities of Judah and advances to Jerusalem. Shemaiah the prophet comes to Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah who have gathered in Jerusalem because of Shishak, and delivers God's message: 'You abandoned me, so I have abandoned you to the hand of Shishak.' The leaders of Israel and the king humble themselves and declare, 'The LORD is righteous.' When the LORD sees their humility, the word of the LORD comes to Shemaiah: 'They have humbled themselves. I will not destroy them; I will give them some deliverance. My wrath will not be poured out on Jerusalem through Shishak. But they will become his servants, so that they may learn the difference between serving me and serving the kingdoms of other lands.' Shishak takes the treasures of the Temple and the royal palace — including the gold shields Solomon had made. Rehoboam replaces them with bronze shields and entrusts them to the captains of the guard who protect the entrance to the palace. The chapter concludes with a mixed verdict: when the king humbled himself, the LORD's anger turned aside and things went well in Judah. Rehoboam reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem. His mother was Naamah the Ammonite. He did evil because he did not set his heart to seek the LORD. The chapter ends with the standard regnal formula: his deeds are recorded in the chronicles of Shemaiah the prophet and Iddo the seer. There was continual war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam. Rehoboam slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David, and his son Abijah reigned in his place.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's retribution theology is fully on display: abandonment of God produces immediate military consequences. But the chapter also demonstrates the theology of repentance — humility before God leads to partial deliverance. The downgrade from gold to bronze shields is a devastating material symbol of spiritual decline: Solomon's glory is replaced by a cheaper imitation. The phrase lada'at avodati va'avodat mamlakhot ha-aratsot ('to know the difference between my service and the service of the kingdoms of the lands') is remarkable — God allows foreign servitude as a pedagogical tool. Subjection to Egypt will teach Judah that serving God was always the better option. The final verdict — 'he did evil because he did not set his heart to seek the LORD' — links moral failure directly to the failure to seek (darash) God.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler's cause-and-effect pattern is clear but raises questions: if Rehoboam humbled himself, why does the chapter still end with 'he did evil'? The answer lies in the distinction between a moment of repentance under pressure and a sustained posture of the heart. Rehoboam humbled himself when Shishak was at the gates but never established his heart to seek the LORD (lo hekhin libbo lidrosh et YHWH). The humility was circumstantial, not transformative. The 'continual war' with Jeroboam suggests ongoing instability despite the partial reprieve.*

Connections: *Shishak's invasion is confirmed by Egyptian records — Pharaoh Shoshenq I's campaign list at Karnak temple lists many of the same cities. The gold shields connect to Solomon's wealth display in 2 Chronicles 9:15-16. Shemaiah appeared previously in 11:2-4, preventing civil war. The phrase 'slept with his fathers' uses the standard Deuteronomistic regnal formula. The Chronicler's sources — divrei Shema'yahu ha-navi ve-Iddo ha-chozeh ('the words of Shemaiah the prophet and Iddo the seer') — are otherwise unknown writings, suggesting an archive of prophetic records available to the Chronicler.*

¹When Rehoboam's kingdom was established and he had grown strong, he abandoned the Law of the LORD — and all Israel with him. ²In the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak king of Egypt marched against Jerusalem — because they had been unfaithful to the LORD. ³He came with 1,200 chariots, 60,000 cavalry, and troops beyond counting who accompanied him from Egypt — Libyans, Sukkites, and Ethiopians. ⁴He captured the fortified cities of Judah and advanced to Jerusalem. ⁵She maiah the prophet came to Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah who had gathered in Jerusalem because of Shishak, and told them, "This is what the LORD says: You abandoned me, so I have abandoned you to the hand of Shishak." ⁶The leaders of Israel and the king humbled themselves and said, "The LORD is righteous." ⁷When the LORD saw that they had humbled themselves, the word of the LORD came to Shemaiah: "They have humbled themselves — I will not destroy them. I will give them some measure of deliverance, and my wrath will not be poured out on Jerusalem through Shishak. ⁸But they will

become his servants, so that they may learn the difference between serving me and serving the kingdoms of other lands." ⁹Shishak king of Egypt marched against Jerusalem and took the treasures of the house of the LORD and the treasures of the royal palace — he took everything. He also took the gold shields that Solomon had made. ¹⁰King Rehoboam made bronze shields to replace them and entrusted them to the captains of the royal guard who protected the entrance to the palace. ¹¹Whenever the king went to the house of the LORD, the guards would come and carry them, then return them to the guardroom. ¹²When he humbled himself, the LORD's anger turned from him, and he did not destroy him completely. Indeed, good things were found in Judah. ¹³King Rehoboam established himself in Jerusalem and reigned. He was forty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem — the city the LORD had chosen from all the tribes of Israel to place his name there. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite. ¹⁴He did evil, because he did not set his heart to seek the LORD. ¹⁵The deeds of Rehoboam, from first to last, are recorded in the chronicles of Shemaiah the prophet and Iddo the seer, with their genealogical records. There was continual warfare between Rehoboam and Jeroboam. ¹⁶Rehoboam slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David. His son Abijah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The pattern is devastating in its simplicity: ke-hakhin ('when established') and ke-chezqato ('when strong') — strength leads to abandonment (azav et torat YHWH, 'he abandoned the Torah of the LORD'). The Chronicler sees prosperity as the test that Rehoboam fails. The phrase ve-khol Yisra'el immo ('and all Israel with him') spreads the guilt to the entire community.
2. The causal link is explicit: ki ma'alu ba-YHWH ('because they committed treachery against the LORD'). The verb ma'al ('to act unfaithfully, to commit sacrilege') is the Chronicler's strongest term for covenant betrayal. Shishak's invasion is the direct consequence of Israel's infidelity. The Chronicler transforms a political-military event into a theological judgment.
3. The force is multinational and overwhelming: Luvim ('Libyans'), Sukkiyim ('Sukkites' — possibly from the region of Succoth in Egypt), and Kushiyyim ('Cushites/Ethiopians'). The phrase ein mispar ('without number') emphasizes the hopelessness of military resistance. Shishak commands an Egyptian imperial army, not merely an Egyptian force.
4. The very cities Rehoboam built in chapter 11 — the arei ha-metsurot ('fortified cities') — fall to Shishak. The defensive network that represented Rehoboam's wisdom (11:5-12) proves useless against divine judgment. The verb va-yavo ad Yerushalayim ('he came as far as Jerusalem') signals the capital itself is now threatened.
5. The prophetic message uses exact reciprocity: attem azavtem oti ('you abandoned me') answered by af ani azavti etkhem ('I also have abandoned you'). The same verb azav ('to abandon') is turned back on the abandoner. The leaders have gathered in Jerusalem mi-pnei Shishaq ('before Shishak, because of Shishak') — fear of Egypt drives the assembly that should have been driven by fear of God.
6. The verb va-yikkane'u ('they humbled themselves') is the key word in this passage — it uses the niphal of k-n- ('to be subdued, to humble oneself'). Their confession tsaddiq YHWH ('the LORD is righteous') acknowledges that the punishment is just. They do not claim innocence or beg for undeserved mercy; they affirm that God's judgment is fair.
7. The key phrase kimat li-fleilah ('some deliverance') uses kimat — 'a little, almost' — indicating the reprieve is partial, not complete. The verb tittakh ('will be poured out') pictures divine anger as liquid — a flood or molten metal. Humility redirects but does not eliminate consequences.
8. The double use of avodah ('service, worship') creates a deliberate comparison. God's service (avodati) and the kingdoms' service (avodat mamlakhot ha-aratsot) are set side by side so the people can experience the difference. The verb yede'u ('they will know') implies experiential knowledge, not theoretical.
9. The phrase et ha-kol laqach ('he took everything') is comprehensive — total economic plunder. The maginei ha-zahav ('gold shields') were Solomon's prestige items (9:15-16), symbols of imperial wealth displayed in the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon. Their loss is both financial and symbolic — the visible glory of Solomon's reign is stripped away.
10. The replacement of gold with bronze — maginei nechoshet tachthem ('shields of bronze in their place') — is a perfect material metaphor for spiritual decline. The ritual continues (guards still carry shields), but the substance has degraded. The sarei ha-ratsim ('captains of the runners/guards') maintain the ceremony with inferior materials. Appearances are preserved; glory is gone.
11. The routine — carrying the shields out for the king's Temple visits and returning them to the ta ha-ratsim ('guard chamber') — preserves the outward form of Solomon's grandeur with none of its substance. The repetitive cycle (va-yehi middei vo, 'whenever he came') underscores the diminished ritual. What was permanent display under Solomon is now a managed routine with cheaper props.
12. The conditional pattern: u-ve-hikkane'o ('when he humbled himself') produces shav mimmennu af YHWH ('the LORD's anger turned from him'). The qualifier ve-lo le-hashchit le-khalah ('not to destroy completely') implies partial rather than total reprieve. The concluding note — ve-gam bi-Yhudah hayah devarim tovim ('in Judah there were good things') — acknowledges genuine, if limited, virtue in the kingdom.

13. The regnal summary includes the standard elements: age at accession (ben arba'im ve-achat shanah, 'forty-one years old'), length of reign (sheva esreh shanah, 'seventeen years'), and the mother's name. The city description — ha-ir asher bachar YHWH lasum et shemo sham ('the city the LORD chose to place his name there') — uses Deuteronomic theology of the chosen place. Na'amah ha-Ammonit ('Naamah the Ammonite') was one of Solomon's foreign wives (1 Kings 14:21).
14. The phrase lo hekhin libbo ('he did not establish his heart') uses the hiphil of k-w-n — the heart requires active preparation, not passive feeling. The verb darash ('to seek') is the Chronicler's signature word for faithfulness. This verse gives the theological reason for the entire reign's trajectory: the heart was never set.
15. The Chronicler cites two prophetic sources: divrei Shema'yahu ha-navi ('the words of Shemaiah the prophet') and Iddo ha-chozeh ('Iddo the seer'). These are now-lost documents. The phrase le-hityaches ('for genealogical registration') suggests the records included family lineages. The note about milchamot ('wars') between Rehoboam and Jeroboam kol ha-yamim ('all the days') indicates permanent hostility between the two kingdoms.
16. The regnal closing formula: va-yishkav im avotav ('he slept with his fathers') indicates natural death and dynastic continuity. Burial be-ir David ('in the City of David') confirms his legitimacy as a Davidic king despite his failures. Va-yimlokh Aviyah veno tachtav ('Abijah his son reigned in his place') completes the succession as planned in 11:22.

13

Summary: *In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam, Abijah becomes king over Judah. He reigns three years in Jerusalem; his mother is Micaiah daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. War breaks out between Abijah and Jeroboam. Abijah fields 400,000 chosen warriors; Jeroboam marshals 800,000. Abijah stands on Mount Zemaraim in the hill country of Ephraim and delivers a remarkable speech to Jeroboam and all Israel. He argues that the LORD gave the kingship over Israel to David and his sons forever through a covenant of salt — an unbreakable covenant. Jeroboam, a servant who rebelled against his master, gathered worthless men and overpowered Rehoboam when he was young and timid. Now Jeroboam presumes to resist the kingdom of the LORD in the hand of David's sons, backed by his great army and the golden calves. But Jeroboam has driven out the LORD's priests and Levites and made his own priests like the peoples of other lands — anyone who comes with a young bull and seven rams can become a priest of what are not gods. Abijah declares: 'As for us, the LORD is our God, and we have not abandoned him. We have priests serving the LORD who are sons of Aaron, and Levites at their duties. Every morning and evening they burn offerings and incense, arrange the bread of the Presence on the pure table, and tend the gold lampstand. We are keeping the charge of the LORD our God, but you have abandoned him. God is with us at our head, and his priests with their signal trumpets to sound the alarm against you. Israelites, do not fight against the LORD God of your fathers — you will not succeed.' Meanwhile Jeroboam has sent an ambush to circle behind them, so Judah is caught between the main force in front and the ambush behind. Judah cries out to the LORD, the priests blow the trumpets, and the men of Judah raise the battle shout. When Judah shouts, God strikes Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. Israel flees; God gives them into Judah's hand. Abijah and his army inflict a massive defeat — 500,000 chosen men of Israel fall. Israel is subdued; Judah prevails because they relied on the LORD God of their fathers. Abijah pursues Jeroboam and captures Bethel, Jeshanah, and Ephron with their surrounding towns. Jeroboam never recovers his strength during Abijah's days; the LORD strikes him and he dies. Abijah grows strong, takes fourteen wives, and fathers twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters. The rest of his deeds are recorded in the commentary of the prophet Iddo.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Abijah's speech is the Chronicler's theological masterpiece in this section — a sustained argument for Judah's legitimacy on three grounds: dynastic (the Davidic covenant), cultic (legitimate priesthood and worship), and covenantal (the salt covenant). The phrase berit melach ('covenant of salt') appears only here and in Numbers 18:19 and Leviticus 2:13 — salt preserves and purifies, making it a metaphor for permanence. The speech transforms a military engagement into a theological contest: who has the legitimate priesthood, the correct worship, and the divine mandate? The battle outcome confirms the speech — when Judah cries out and the priests blow the trumpets, God himself strikes the enemy. The Chronicler's Abijah is the opposite of Kings' Abijam, who 'walked in all the sins of his father' (1 Kings 15:3). The Chronicler has rehabilitated him entirely.*

Translation Friction: The 500,000 Israelite casualties strain historical plausibility — this would be among the largest battlefield death tolls in ancient history. The numbers likely function symbolically, emphasizing the totality of divine judgment. The Chronicler's portrait of Abijah contrasts sharply with 1 Kings 15:1-8, which portrays him negatively. The Chronicler selects, emphasizes, and reshapes material to serve theological purposes. The battle narrative also raises the question of fratricide on a massive scale — Judah kills half a million of their own brothers after Abijah himself called them brothers.

Connections: The salt covenant connects to Numbers 18:19 (priestly covenant) and Leviticus 2:13 (salt on grain offerings). The battle cry and trumpet blowing echo the pattern of holy war in Joshua 6 (Jericho) and Judges 7 (Gideon). The capture of Bethel — Jeroboam's primary calf-worship site — is theologically significant: Judah temporarily recovers the very location of northern apostasy. The ark-less battle (no ark is mentioned) contrasts with earlier holy war narratives; here, the priests with trumpets carry the divine presence into battle. The note that Jeroboam 'never recovered his strength' parallels the Chronicler's pattern of divine retribution on kings who resist God.

¹In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam, Abijah became king over Judah. ²He reigned three years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Micaiah daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. War broke out between Abijah and Jeroboam. ³Abijah engaged in battle with an army of 400,000 chosen warriors. Jeroboam drew up against him with 800,000 chosen men, all mighty fighters. ⁴Abijah stood on Mount Zemaraim in the hill country of Ephraim and declared: "Listen to me, Jeroboam, and all Israel! ⁵Do you not know that the LORD God of Israel gave the kingship over Israel to David forever — to him and his sons — by a covenant of salt? ⁶Yet Jeroboam son of Nebat — a servant of Solomon son of David — rose up and rebelled against his master. ⁷Worthless men, wicked scoundrels, gathered around him and overpowered Rehoboam son of Solomon when Rehoboam was young and inexperienced and could not stand against them. ⁸And now you intend to resist the kingdom of the LORD that is in the hands of David's sons? You are a vast horde, and you have with you the golden calves that Jeroboam made as your gods. ⁹Did you not drive out the priests of the LORD — the sons of Aaron — and the Levites? And you made priests for yourselves like the peoples of other lands! Anyone who comes with a young bull and seven rams can ordain himself and become a priest of what are not gods. ¹⁰But as for us — the LORD is our God, and we have not abandoned him. We have priests serving the LORD who are sons of Aaron, and the Levites are at their duties. ¹¹They burn offerings to the LORD every morning and every evening — fragrant incense, the bread of the Presence arranged on the pure table, and the gold lampstand with its lamps lit every evening. We are keeping the charge of the LORD our God, but you have abandoned him. ¹²See — God himself is with us at our head, and his priests with their signal trumpets ready to sound the alarm against you. Israelites, do not fight against the LORD God of your fathers — you will not succeed!" ¹³Meanwhile, Jeroboam had sent an ambush to circle behind them. So the main force was in front of Judah while the ambush was behind them. ¹⁴When Judah turned and saw that the battle was both in front and behind them, they cried out to the LORD, and the priests blew the trumpets. ¹⁵The men of Judah raised the battle shout. And as the men of Judah shouted, God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah. ¹⁶The Israelites fled before Judah, and God gave them into their hand. ¹⁷Abijah and his army inflicted a massive defeat on them, and 500,000 chosen men of Israel fell slain. ¹⁸The Israelites were subdued at that time, and the people of Judah prevailed because they relied on the LORD God of their fathers. ¹⁹Abijah pursued Jeroboam and captured cities from him: Bethel and its surrounding towns, Jeshanah and its surrounding towns, and Ephron and its surrounding towns. ²⁰Jeroboam never recovered his strength during Abijah's reign. The LORD struck him, and he died. ²¹Abijah grew strong. He married fourteen wives and fathered twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters. ²²The rest of the deeds of Abijah — his conduct and his words — are recorded in the commentary of the prophet Iddo. ²³Abijah slept with his fathers and was buried in the City of David. His son Asa reigned in his place. In his days the land was at rest for ten years.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The synchronistic dating — bi-shnat shemoneh esreh la-melek Yarov'am ('in the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam') — places Abijah's accession within the broader chronological framework. The Chronicler assumes the reader tracks both kingdoms' timelines simultaneously.

2. The short reign — shalosh shanim ('three years') — frames a concentrated narrative. His mother Mikhayahu bat Uri'el min ha-Giv'ah ('Micaiah daughter of Uriel of Gibeah') is identified differently than in 11:20, where she is called Maacah daughter of Absalom. Uriel may be her actual father, with Absalom as grandfather. The notice of war (milchamah) introduces the chapter's central event.
3. The numerical disparity is stark: Abijah fields arba me'ot elef ('400,000') against Jeroboam's shemoneh me'ot elef ('800,000'). Judah is outnumbered two to one. The terms gibborei milchamah ('mighty warriors') and gibbor chayil ('mighty men of valor') describe elite soldiers. The odds set up the theological point: victory will come despite numerical disadvantage.
4. Har Tsemarayim ('Mount Zemaraim') is a height in the be-har Efrayim ('hill country of Ephraim') — Abijah delivers his speech from within enemy territory. The command shema'uni ('hear me!') is a royal summons. The speech is addressed to both Jeroboam personally and kol Yisra'el ('all Israel') collectively.
5. The rhetorical question ha-lo lakhem lada'at ('should you not know?') challenges the audience's theological literacy. The berit melach ('covenant of salt') designates an unbreakable, permanent agreement — salt preserves, purifies, and was a standard covenant-ratification element in the ancient Near East. The phrase le-olam ('forever') reinforces the permanence.
6. Abijah reduces Jeroboam to eved Shelomoh ('servant of Solomon') — emphasizing his subordinate status. The verb va-yimrod ('he rebelled') frames the northern kingdom's origin as sedition. Abijah's version omits the prophetic sanction (Ahijah's oracle) and presents the schism as pure rebellion.
7. The supporters of Jeroboam are called anashim reqim ('empty men') and benei veliyya'al ('sons of worthlessness/wickedness') — the harshest social-moral labels in Hebrew. Abijah excuses his father: Rechav'am hayah na'ar ve-rakh levav ('Rehoboam was young and tender-hearted'). The word na'ar ('young, inexperienced') and rakh levav ('soft-hearted, timid') present Rehoboam as a victim of circumstance rather than a fool.
8. Abijah identifies Judah's kingdom as mamlekhet YHWH ('the kingdom of the LORD') — not merely a human institution but divine rule through the Davidic line. The eglei zahav ('golden calves') are thrown in their faces as evidence of apostasy: asher asah lakhem Yarov'am le-lohim ('which Jeroboam made for you as gods'). The 'gods' are manufactured objects — the argument drips with contempt.
9. The accusation has three parts: expulsion of the Aaronide priests, replacement with popular appointees, and worship of non-gods. The ordination requirement — par ben baqar ve-elim shiv'ah ('a bull calf and seven rams') — shows that Jeroboam has created a pay-for-ordination system. The final phrase kohen le-lo Elohim ('a priest of non-gods') is the sharpest cut: the entire northern cult serves nothing.
10. Abijah's contrast begins: va-anachnu YHWH Eloheinu ('as for us, the LORD is our God'). The claim is twofold: we have the right God, and we have not left him (ve-lo azavnuhu). The legitimate priesthood — kohanim mesharetim la-YHWH benei Aharon ('priests serving the LORD, sons of Aaron') — stands against Jeroboam's fabricated clergy. The Levites are ba-melakhah ('in the work/duty').
11. Abijah catalogs the full Temple liturgy: olot ('burnt offerings') twice daily, qetoret sammim ('fragrant incense'), ma'arekhet lechem ('rows of bread') on ha-shulchan ha-tahor ('the pure table'), and menorat ha-zahav ('the gold lampstand') lit ba-erev ba-erev ('every evening'). The conclusion — shomrim anachnu et mishmeret YHWH ('we are keeping the charge of the LORD') — contrasts with ve-attem azavtem oto ('but you have abandoned him'). The worship catalog is evidence in a theological trial.
12. The climactic claim: hinneh immanu va-rosh ha-Elohim ('behold, with us at the head is God'). The chatsotserot ha-teru'ah ('trumpets of alarm/battle cry') are the priestly instruments of holy war (Numbers 10:9). The warning al tilachamu im YHWH Elohei avoteikhem ('do not fight against the LORD God of your fathers') reframes the military conflict as a war against God. The final phrase ki lo tatslichu ('for you will not succeed') is both prediction and threat.
13. While Abijah speaks theology, Jeroboam deploys tactics. The ma'arav ('ambush') moves me-acharehem ('behind them'), creating a classic pincer. The phrase va-yihyu lifnei Yehudah ('they were before Judah') — the main Israelite army faces Judah head-on while the ambush closes the trap from the rear. The contrast between Abijah's faith and Jeroboam's strategy sets up the test.
14. The moment of crisis: va-yifnu Yehudah ('Judah turned around') and discovered ha-milchamah panim ve-achor ('the battle was ahead and behind'). Their response is not panic but prayer: va-yits'aqu la-YHWH ('they cried out to the LORD'). The priests machtsetsrim ba-chatsotserot ('blowing the trumpets') activate the holy war protocol of Numbers 10:9 — when you cry out and blow trumpets, God will save you from your enemies.
15. The shout (va-yari'u) triggers divine action: va-ha-Elohim nagaf et Yarov'am ve-khol Yisra'el ('God struck Jeroboam and all Israel'). The verb nagaf ('to strike, to defeat') attributes the victory directly to God. The human shout and the divine strike are synchronized — Judah shouts, God acts. This is the pattern of holy war: human faith expressed, divine power delivered.
16. The rout: va-yanusu benei Yisra'el ('the Israelites fled'). The theological explanation follows immediately: va-yittenem Elohim be-yadam ('God gave them into their hand'). The flight is not from Judah's army but from God's intervention. The two-to-one numerical advantage means nothing before divine action.
17. The casualty figure — chamesh me'ot elef ish bachur ('500,000 chosen men') — is staggering. The term makkah rabbah ('a great blow/slaughter') understates the scale. Whether these numbers are literal or typological (symbolizing complete defeat), the Chronicler uses them to demonstrate that opposing the kingdom of the LORD (verse 8) produces total disaster.
18. The Chronicler's theological summary: va-yikkane'u benei Yisra'el ('the Israelites were humbled/subdued') while va-ye'emtsu benei Yehudah ('the people of Judah grew strong'). The reason — ki nish'an al YHWH Elohei avoteihem ('because they leaned upon/relied on the LORD God of their fathers') — uses the verb nish'an ('to lean on, to rely on'), which will become crucial in the Asa narrative (16:7-8). Reliance on God produces victory; reliance on anything else produces defeat.

19. The capture of Beit El ('Bethel') is theologically explosive — this is the site of Jeroboam's golden calf and his rival sanctuary (1 Kings 12:29). Judah now holds the very location of northern apostasy. Yeshanah and Efron are secondary towns, but Bethel is the prize. The phrase *u-venoteiha* ('and its daughters/dependent towns') indicates territorial control, not just the capture of a single city.
20. The phrase *lo atsar ko'ach Yarov'am od* ('Jeroboam did not restrain/recover strength again') describes permanent military decline. The final statement *va-yiggefehu YHWH va-yamot* ('the LORD struck him and he died') attributes Jeroboam's death to direct divine action. This death notice is unique to the Chronicler — Kings records Jeroboam's death separately (1 Kings 14:20).
21. The Chronicler's prosperity formula: *va-yitchazzeq* ('he grew strong'), followed by large family numbers — *arba esreh nashim* ('fourteen wives'), *esrim u-shnayim banim* ('twenty-two sons'), *shesh esreh banot* ('sixteen daughters'). In the Chronicler's theology, strength and fertility signal divine blessing after faithful action.
22. The Chronicler cites the midrash *ha-navi Iddo* ('the commentary/exposition of the prophet Iddo') as his source. The word *midrash* means 'study, exposition, interpretation' — suggesting a prophetic interpretation of events, not merely a chronicle. Iddo also appears as a source in 12:15 and 9:29, making him one of the Chronicler's primary authorities.
23. The regnal closing follows the standard formula: *va-yishkav im avotav* ('he slept with his fathers'). The transition to Asa — *va-yimlokh Asa veno tachtav* ('Asa his son reigned in his place') — is seamless. The final note *shaqetah ha-arets eser shanim* ('the land was quiet ten years') anticipates the Asa narrative and signals divine favor: peace is God's gift to a faithful king. This note belongs to the Hebrew versification of chapter 13 (WLC 13:23), though English Bibles typically place it as 14:1.
23. Register departure: The key *_terms* entry tags this as *shalom*, but the Hebrew verb here is *shaqat* ('to be quiet/at rest'), not *shalom* directly. The concept overlaps, but the departure from 'peace' to 'rest' reflects the actual Hebrew root used.

14

Summary: *Following the WLC versification, this chapter begins at what English Bibles number as 14:2 (WLC 14:1). Asa does what is good and right in the eyes of the LORD his God. He removes the foreign altars and high places, smashes the sacred pillars, and cuts down the Asherah poles. He commands Judah to seek the LORD God of their fathers and to observe the Torah and the commandment. He removes the high places and incense altars from all the cities of Judah, and the kingdom is at rest under his rule. He builds fortified cities in Judah because the land is at rest and there is no war — the LORD has given him rest. Asa tells Judah: 'Let us build these cities and surround them with walls, towers, gates, and bars. The land is still ours because we have sought the LORD our God — we sought him, and he gave us rest on every side.' They build and prosper. Asa has an army of 300,000 from Judah bearing large shields and spears, and 280,000 from Benjamin bearing small shields and drawing bows — all mighty warriors. Zerah the Ethiopian comes against them with an army of a million men and 300 chariots, and reaches Mareshah. Asa goes out to meet him, and they deploy for battle in the Valley of Zephathah near Mareshah. Asa calls out to the LORD his God: 'LORD, there is no one besides you to help between the mighty and the powerless. Help us, LORD our God, for we rely on you, and in your name we have come against this multitude. LORD, you are our God — do not let a mortal prevail against you.' The LORD strikes the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah, and the Ethiopians flee. Asa and his army pursue them as far as Gerar. The Ethiopians fall until none remain alive — they are broken before the LORD and his army. Judah carries away enormous plunder. They strike all the cities around Gerar because the terror of the LORD falls on them. They plunder all the cities and also strike the livestock encampments, carrying away vast numbers of sheep and camels before returning to Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Asa's prayer (WLC verse 10, English 14:11) is one of the finest theological statements in Chronicles. The phrase *ein immekha la'azor bein rav le-ein ko'ach* ('there is no one besides you to help between the mighty and the powerless') transcends the immediate military context — it is a universal statement about divine power that operates regardless of human strength differentials. The prayer's logic: we rely on you (*nish'annu*), we came in your name (*be-shimkha*), therefore do not let a mortal (*enosh*) prevail against you (*alekha*). Notice the shift — Asa does not say 'against us' but 'against you.' The enemy's victory would not merely defeat Judah but challenge God's own sovereignty. This reframing of military conflict as theological conflict is vintage Chronicler theology.*

Translation Friction: *The million-man Ethiopian army strains historical credibility even more than the battle numbers in chapter 13. Whether Zerah is identifiable with a known Egyptian or Cushite ruler remains debated. The narrative functions primarily as a theological demonstration: seeking God produces rest, and relying on God produces victory regardless of the odds. The Chronicler is less interested in historical precision than*

in establishing the pattern that chapters 15-16 will test.

Connections: Asa's reforms parallel Hezekiah's (2 Chronicles 29-31) and Josiah's (2 Chronicles 34-35) — the three great reforming kings. The prayer echoes David's before Goliath (1 Samuel 17:45-47) in framing battle as God's fight. The Valley of Zephathah near Mareshah connects to the fortified city list in 11:8. The phrase 'the terror of the LORD' (pachad YHWH) echoes the conquest narratives (Joshua 2:9, 5:1). The enormous plunder recalls Abraham's defeat of the four kings (Genesis 14) and David's spoil from the Amalekites (1 Samuel 30).

¹Asa did what was good and right in the eyes of the LORD his God. ²He removed the foreign altars and the high places, smashed the sacred pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. ³He commanded Judah to seek the LORD God of their fathers and to observe the Law and the commandment. ⁴He removed the high places and incense altars from all the cities of Judah, and the kingdom was at rest under his rule. ⁵He built fortified cities in Judah, because the land was at rest and there was no war during those years — the LORD had given him rest. ⁶He said to Judah, "Let us build these cities and surround them with walls, towers, gates, and bars. The land is still ours, because we have sought the LORD our God — we sought him, and he has given us rest on every side." So they built and prospered. ⁷Asa had an army from Judah of 300,000 men bearing large shields and spears, and from Benjamin 280,000 bearing small shields and drawing bows — all mighty warriors. ⁸Zerah the Ethiopian marched against them with an army of a million men and 300 chariots, and reached Mareshah. ⁹Asa went out to meet him, and they deployed for battle in the Valley of Zephathah near Mareshah. ¹⁰Asa cried out to the LORD his God and said, "LORD, there is no one besides you to help between the mighty and the powerless. Help us, LORD our God, for we rely on you, and in your name we have come against this multitude. LORD, you are our God — do not let a mortal prevail against you." ¹¹The LORD struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah, and the Ethiopians fled. ¹²Asa and the army with him pursued them as far as Gerar. The Ethiopians fell until none survived — they were shattered before the LORD and before his army. Judah carried away enormous plunder. ¹³They struck all the cities around Gerar, because the terror of the LORD had fallen on them. They plundered all the cities, for there was abundant spoil in them. ¹⁴They also struck the livestock encampments and carried away vast numbers of sheep and camels. Then they returned to Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verdict formula — *va-ya'as ha-tov ve-ha-yashar be-einei YHWH Elohav* ('he did the good and the upright in the eyes of the LORD his God') — is the Chronicler's highest commendation. Both *tov* ('good') and *yashar* ('upright') are used, doubling the approval. The phrase *be-einei YHWH* ('in the eyes of the LORD') measures by divine rather than human standards.
2. Four reform actions: removing *mizbekhot ha-nekhar* ('altars of the foreign [gods]'), *bamot* ('high places'), breaking *matstsebot* ('standing stones, sacred pillars'), and cutting *asherim* ('Asherah poles'). Each item represents a different dimension of Canaanite worship that had infiltrated Judah.
3. Asa's reform has two prongs: *lidrosh et YHWH* ('to seek the LORD') and *la'asot ha-torah ve-ha-mitsvah* ('to do the Torah and the commandment'). Seeking God (*darash*) is the relational posture; obeying Torah is the practical expression. The Chronicler sees these as inseparable — you cannot seek God without obedience, and obedience without seeking is mere formalism.
4. The *chammanim* ('incense altars' or 'sun pillars') are cultic objects associated with pagan worship. The result of reform — *va-tishqot ha-mamlakhah lefanav* ('the kingdom was at rest before him') — connects faithfulness to national peace. The verb *shaqat* ('to be quiet, to rest') is the Chronicler's word for divinely granted tranquility.
5. The causal chain is explicit: *ki shaqetah ha-arets* ('because the land was at rest') leads to building; the ultimate cause is *ki heniach YHWH lo* ('because the LORD had given him rest'). Rest (*menukhah*, from the *hiphil* of *n-w-ch*) is divine gift, not human achievement. Asa uses the window of peace for strategic construction rather than complacency.
6. Asa's speech is a model of theological reasoning: the land is *lefaneynu* ('before us, available to us') because *darashnu et YHWH Eloheinu* ('we sought the LORD our God'). The emphatic repetition — *darashnu, darashnu* ('we sought, we sought') — drives the point home. Rest (*va-yanach lanu mi-saviv*, 'he gave us rest on every side') produces the conditions for building. The summary — *va-yivnu va-yatslichu* ('they built and prospered') — links seeking God to practical success.
7. The army is organized by tribe and specialty: Judah provides heavy infantry with *tsinnah va-romach* ('large shield and spear'), Benjamin provides light infantry and archers with *magen* ('small shield') and *dorekei qeshet* ('bow-drawers'). The combined total of 580,000 — *kol elleh gibborei chayil* ('all these, mighty men of valor') — represents a formidable defensive force.
8. *Zerach ha-Kushi* ('Zerah the Cushite/Ethiopian') commands *elef alafim* ('a thousand thousands' — one million) soldiers and *shelosh me'ot markavot* ('300 chariots'). The number is impossible to take as a literal field army but communicates overwhelming force. Mareshah (Mareshah) is one of

Rehoboam's fortified cities (11:8), in the Shephelah — the southwestern approach to Jerusalem.

9. Asa advances rather than waiting behind walls — va-yetse Asa lefanav ('Asa went out before him'). The Gei Tsefatah le-Mareshah ('Valley of Zephathah at Mareshah') provides the battlefield setting. The valley name Tsefatah may connect to the root ts-f-h ('to watch, to look out'), suggesting an observation point or watchtower valley.
10. The key verb is nish'annu ('we rely on, we lean on') from the root sh-'-n. This verb will become the theological pivot for Asa's entire reign — praised here, condemned in chapter 16 when he leans on Aram instead. The word enosh ('mortal') diminishes the enemy to mere humanity against the divine.
11. The verb va-yiggof YHWH ('the LORD struck') makes God the active agent of the victory. The Ethiopians flee lifnei Asa ve-lifnei Yehudah ('before Asa and before Judah') — but the striking was God's, not theirs. The holy war pattern is complete: cry out, rely on God, God strikes, the enemy flees.
12. The pursuit extends ad li-Gerar ('as far as Gerar') — deep into Philistine/Negev territory. The phrase le-ein lahem michyah ('with no survival for them') indicates annihilation. The key phrase nishberu lifnei YHWH ve-lifnei machaneihu ('they were broken before the LORD and before his camp/army') presents two forces: the LORD and his army working together. The shalal harbeh me'od ('very much plunder') confirms total victory.
13. The pachad YHWH ('terror of the LORD') is a supernatural fear that paralyzes enemy resistance — the same divine terror that accompanied Israel's conquest under Joshua. The verb va-yavozzu ('they plundered') and bizzah rabbah ('great plunder') indicate the total collapse of the region's defenses.
14. The ohalei miqneh ('tents of livestock') are the pastoral camps surrounding the settled cities. The capture of tson la-rov u-gemalim ('sheep in abundance and camels') represents both wealth and the total subjugation of the region's economic base. The return to Jerusalem (va-yashuvu Yerushalayim) closes the campaign with the army bringing its spoils home to the city of God.

15

Summary: *The Spirit of God comes upon Azariah son of Oded. He goes out to meet Asa and tells him: 'The LORD is with you when you are with him. If you seek him, he will be found by you; but if you abandon him, he will abandon you. For a long time Israel was without the true God, without a teaching priest, and without Torah. In their distress they turned to the LORD God of Israel and sought him, and he was found by them. In those times there was no peace for anyone going out or coming in — great turmoil afflicted all the inhabitants of the lands. Nation was crushed against nation, city against city, because God troubled them with every kind of distress. But you — be strong and do not let your hands grow slack, because your work will be rewarded.'* When Asa hears these words — the prophecy of Oded the prophet — he takes courage and removes the detestable idols from all the land of Judah and Benjamin and from the cities he captured in the hill country of Ephraim. He restores the altar of the LORD in front of the vestibule of the Temple. He gathers all Judah and Benjamin, along with those from Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who are residing among them — for many had defected to him from Israel when they saw that the LORD his God was with him. They assemble in Jerusalem in the third month of the fifteenth year of Asa's reign. They sacrifice to the LORD from the spoil they brought — 700 cattle and 7,000 sheep. They enter into a covenant to seek the LORD God of their fathers with all their heart and all their soul. Anyone who does not seek the LORD God of Israel will be put to death, whether small or great, man or woman. They swear to the LORD with a loud voice, with shouting, with trumpets, and with rams' horns. All Judah rejoices over the oath, because they have sworn with all their heart and sought him with all their desire, and the LORD is found by them and gives them rest on every side. Asa also removes his grandmother Maacah from her position as queen mother because she made a horrifying image for Asherah. Asa cuts down her image and burns it at the Wadi Kidron. The high places are not removed from Israel, but Asa's heart is fully committed all his days. He brings his father's dedicated gifts and his own into the house of God — silver, gold, and vessels. There is no more war until the thirty-fifth year of Asa's reign.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Azariah's prophecy (verses 2-7) functions as a mini-theology of history. The conditional formula — 'if you seek him, he will be found by you; if you abandon him, he will abandon you' — is the Chronicler's theological engine in a single sentence. The historical retrospective (verses 3-6) describes a period 'without the true God, without a teaching priest, without Torah' — a situation of total religious collapse that some scholars identify with the Judges period. The covenant renewal ceremony (verses 12-15) is extraordinary: the people enter into berit ('covenant') to seek God with all their heart and soul, with a death penalty for non-compliance. The joy that follows — kol Yehudah samechu ('all Judah rejoiced') — shows that coercion and genuine joy coexist in the Chronicler's understanding of covenant commitment. Removing his own grandmother from power (verse 16) demonstrates that reform cannot spare family connections.*

Translation Friction: *The death penalty clause — kol asher lo yidrosh la-YHWH yumat ('anyone who does not seek the LORD will be put to death') — strikes modern readers as religious coercion. In the ancient Near Eastern context, covenant loyalty was a communal obligation, and the death penalty for covenant violation echoes Deuteronomy 13:6-11. The tension between verse 17 ('the high places were not removed from Israel') and 14:2 ('he removed the high places') likely reflects different phases of Asa's reform or different geographical scopes — the Chronicler may distinguish between Judean high places (removed) and Israelite/northern high places (remaining). The qualifier 'Asa's heart was fully committed all his days' is complicated by chapter 16, where his heart clearly fails.*

Connections: *The covenant renewal echoes Josiah's covenant ceremony (2 Chronicles 34:29-33) and the Sinai covenant language of Deuteronomy 6:5 ('with all your heart and all your soul'). Azariah's prophecy that God 'will be found' uses the niphal of matsa, echoing Deuteronomy 4:29 and Jeremiah 29:13-14. The removal of Maacah the queen mother parallels reforms in 1 Kings 15:13. The Wadi Kidron as a destruction site for idols recurs in Josiah's reform (2 Kings 23:4, 6, 12). The spoil sacrifice (verse 11) connects the Ethiopian campaign of chapter 14 to worship — war plunder becomes offering.*

¹The Spirit of God came upon Azariah son of Oded. ²He went out to meet Asa and said to him, "Listen to me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin! The LORD is with you when you are with him. If you seek him, he will be found by you; but if you abandon him, he will abandon you. ³For a long time Israel was without the true God, without a teaching priest, and without the Law. ⁴But in their distress they turned to the LORD God of Israel, and they sought him, and he was found by them. ⁵In those times there was no peace for anyone going out or coming in — great turmoil afflicted all the inhabitants of the lands. ⁶Nation was crushed against nation, and city against city, because God troubled them with every kind of distress. ⁷But you — be strong and do not let your hands grow slack, because your work will be rewarded." ⁸When Asa heard these words — the prophecy of Oded the prophet — he took courage. He removed the detestable idols from all the land of Judah and Benjamin and from the cities he had captured in the hill country of Ephraim. He restored the altar of the LORD in front of the vestibule of the LORD's house. ⁹He gathered all Judah and Benjamin, along with those from Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who were residing among them — for many had defected to him from Israel when they saw that the LORD his God was with him. ¹⁰They assembled in Jerusalem in the third month of the fifteenth year of Asa's reign. ¹¹They sacrificed to the LORD on that day from the spoil they had brought — 700 cattle and 7,000 sheep. ¹²They entered a covenant committing themselves to seek the LORD, the God of their fathers, with all their heart and all their soul. ¹³Anyone who did not seek the LORD God of Israel would be put to death — whether small or great, whether man or woman. ¹⁴They swore to the LORD with a loud voice, with shouting, with trumpets, and with rams' horns. ¹⁵All Judah rejoiced over the oath, because they had sworn with all their heart and sought him with all their desire. He was found by them, and the LORD gave them rest on every side. ¹⁶He also removed his grandmother Maacah from her position as queen mother, because she had made a horrifying image for Asherah. Asa cut down her image, crushed it, and burned it at the Wadi Kidron. ¹⁷The high places were not removed from Israel; nevertheless, Asa's heart was fully committed all his days. ¹⁸He brought into the house of God the things his father had dedicated and his own dedicated gifts — silver, gold, and vessels. ¹⁹There was no war until the thirty-fifth year of Asa's reign.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase hayetah alav ru'ach Elohim ('the Spirit of God was upon him') marks prophetic inspiration. Azariah ben Oded is otherwise unknown — a prophet who appears for this single moment. The Spirit's coming (hayetah alav) indicates temporary empowerment for a specific message.
2. The conditional formula uses three parallel structures: 'with you / with him,' 'seek / be found,' 'abandon / abandon.' Each pair defines the covenant relationship as reciprocal. The niphal yimmatse ('he will be found') makes God the available object of human seeking — he is findable to those who look.
3. Three absences define the darkest periods: le-lo Elohei emet ('without the God of truth/the true God'), le-lo kohen moreh ('without a teaching priest'), and le-lo torah ('without instruction/Torah'). The triad connects theology, clergy, and scripture — remove any one and the others collapse. The phrase yamim rabbim ('many days') suggests an extended period, possibly the era of the Judges.

4. The reversal comes through distress: va-yashov ba-tsar lo ('he turned in his trouble'). Seeking (va-yevaqsuhū) produces finding (va-yimmatse lahem). The pattern is cyclical — exactly the Judges cycle: sin, suffering, seeking, salvation. The Chronicler presents this as a universal historical principle, not merely a past event.
5. The absence of shalom ('peace') is comprehensive: la-yotse ve-la-ba ('for the one going out and the one coming in') covers all movement and activity. The mehumot rabbot ('great turmoils, confusions') describe societal chaos. The phrase kol yoshvei ha-aratsot ('all inhabitants of the lands') universalizes the disruption.
6. The phrase ve-kittat goi be-goi ve-ir be-ir ('nation was shattered by nation and city by city') describes total fragmentation. The theological explanation — ki Elohim hamamam be-khol tsarah ('because God troubled them with all distress') — attributes the chaos to divine action. When God's people abandon him, God allows (and even causes) their social order to collapse.
7. The exhortation shifts from history lesson to direct command: chizqu ('be strong!') and al yirpu yedeikhem ('do not let your hands go slack'). The promise ki yesh sakhar li-fe'ullatkhem ('for there is reward for your work') uses sakhar ('reward, wages') — faithfulness pays. The prophecy concludes with encouragement, not threat.
8. Asa's response to prophecy is action: hitchazzeq ('he strengthened himself, took courage') leads to removing shiqqs ('detestable things, abominations') and restoring the altar. The phrase va-yechadesh et mizbach YHWH ('he renewed the altar of the LORD') suggests the altar had fallen into disrepair during the period of neglect. The captured Ephraimite cities (from 13:19) receive the same reform as Judah.
9. The assembly includes northern defectors: ha-garim immahem me-Efrayim u-Menasheh u-mi-Shim'on ('those sojourning with them from Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon'). The verb nafelu alav ('they fell to him, they defected to him') indicates voluntary migration. The reason — bi-re'otam ki YHWH Elohav immo ('when they saw that the LORD his God was with him') — makes divine presence the magnet that draws the faithful from all tribes.
10. The ba-chodesh ha-shelishi ('in the third month') is the month of Sivan, when Shavuot (the Festival of Weeks) falls — a harvest festival associated with covenant-making in later Jewish tradition. The fifteenth year of Asa's reign dates the event precisely.
11. The sacrifices come min ha-shalal ('from the spoil') — the plunder of the Ethiopian campaign (14:12-14) is consecrated to God. The numbers — sheva me'ot baqar ('700 cattle') and shiv'at alafim tson ('7,000 sheep') — are built on multiples of seven, the number of completeness. War plunder becomes worship offering.
12. The key phrase is va-yavo'u va-berit ('they entered into a covenant'). This berit is defined by its purpose: lidrosh ('to seek'). The Deuteronomic language be-khol levavam u-ve-khol nafsham ('with all heart and all soul') signals total commitment. This is covenant renewal, not covenant creation — they are recommitting to the Sinai covenant in the Chronicler's framework.
13. The enforcement clause: kol asher lo yidrosh la-YHWH yumat ('anyone who does not seek the LORD shall be put to death'). The scope is universal: le-min qaton ve-ad gadol ('from small to great') and le-me-ish ve-ad ishah ('from man to woman'). The death penalty for covenant refusal echoes Deuteronomy 13:6-11, which mandates death for those who entice others away from YHWH. The community stakes its corporate existence on seeking God.
14. The oath-taking is maximally public and loud: be-qol gadol ('with a great voice'), bi-teru'ah ('with a shout/blast'), ba-chatsotserot ('with trumpets'), and be-shofarot ('with rams' horns'). The multiple instruments and vocal elements create a wall of sound — the covenant is ratified in communal acclamation, not private assent.
15. The response is joy: va-yismechu kol Yehudah ('all Judah rejoiced'). The oath was genuine — be-khol levavam nishba'u ('with all their heart they swore') and be-khol retsonam biqshuhu ('with all their desire they sought him'). The word ratson ('desire, will, pleasure') adds a dimension beyond obligation: they wanted to seek God. The result: va-yimmatse lahem ('he was found by them') and va-yanach YHWH lahem mi-saviv ('the LORD gave them rest on every side'). The theological sequence is complete: seek, find, rest.
16. The reform reaches the royal family: Ma'akhah em Asa ha-melekh ('Maacah, mother of King Asa') — actually his grandmother (11:20-21). The title gevirah ('queen mother, great lady') carried real political power. The mifletset ('horrible thing, abominable image') she made la-Asherah ('for Asherah') is destroyed by three actions: va-yikhrot ('he cut down'), va-yadoq ('he crushed/pulverized'), va-yisrof ('he burned') — total destruction at nachal Qidron ('the Wadi Kidron'), the valley east of Jerusalem.
17. The qualifier — ve-ha-bamot lo saru mi-Yisra'el ('the high places were not removed from Israel') — acknowledges incomplete reform. The word Yisra'el here may refer to the northern territories under Judean control. Despite this, the verdict is positive: raq levav Asa hayah shalem kol yamav ('only the heart of Asa was complete/whole all his days'). The adjective shalem ('complete, whole, fully committed') commends his inner orientation even while noting the external limitation.
18. The dedicated gifts — qodshei aviv ve-qodashav ('the holy things of his father and his own holy things') — represent accumulated sacred objects. The materials — kesef ve-zahav ve-kelim ('silver, gold, and vessels') — enrich the Temple treasury. The act demonstrates that Asa invests in the worship infrastructure as part of his reform program.
19. The peace lasts until shenat sheloshim ve-chamesh ('the thirty-fifth year') — a long period of rest that confirms the covenant blessing. But the phrase ad ('until') is ominous: it implies that war returns in the thirty-sixth year, which chapter 16 will narrate. Peace is conditional; when seeking stops, so does rest.

16

Summary: *In the thirty-sixth year of Asa's reign, Baasha king of Israel marches against Judah and begins fortifying Ramah to blockade traffic in and out of Judah. Asa takes silver and gold from the treasuries of the house of the LORD and the royal palace and sends them to Ben-hadad king of Aram in Damascus, asking him to break his treaty with Baasha so that Baasha will withdraw. Ben-hadad agrees, attacks the cities of northern Israel, and Baasha abandons Ramah. Asa conscripts all Judah to carry away the stones and timber Baasha had been using at Ramah, and he uses them to fortify Geba and Mizpah. Then Hanani the seer comes to Asa with a devastating rebuke: 'Because you relied on the king of Aram and did not rely on the LORD your God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped your hand. Were not the Ethiopians and Libyans a vast army with enormous numbers of chariots and cavalry? Yet because you relied on the LORD, he gave them into your hand. For the eyes of the LORD range throughout the entire earth to strengthen those whose heart is fully committed to him. You have acted foolishly in this. From now on you will have wars.' Asa is enraged at the seer, puts him in the stocks, and oppresses some of the people at the same time. The deeds of Asa, from first to last, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. In the thirty-ninth year of his reign, Asa contracts a disease in his feet that becomes severe. Even in his illness he does not seek the LORD but only the physicians. Asa dies in the forty-first year of his reign. They bury him in the tomb he had cut for himself in the City of David, laying him on a bier filled with spices and blended ointments, and they kindle an enormous fire in his honor.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is structured as a tragic reversal of chapters 14-15. The very king who prayed 'we rely on you' (14:10) now relies on Aram. The verb nish'an ('to lean on, to rely on') appears five times in Hanani's rebuke, creating a devastating echo of Asa's earlier prayer. The theological principle is crystallized in verse 9: 'the eyes of the LORD range throughout the entire earth to strengthen those whose heart is fully committed to him.' This is one of the most quoted verses in Chronicles — a statement about God's active searching for faithful hearts. But in context, it is a rebuke: God was searching, and Asa's heart was not found worthy. The disease in his feet (verse 12) and the note that he sought physicians rather than God completes the seeking/not-seeking pattern: Asa who once sought God now seeks only human help.*

Translation Friction: *The chronological difficulty is significant: Baasha died in the twenty-sixth year of Asa's reign (1 Kings 16:8), yet 2 Chronicles 16:1 places his campaign in Asa's thirty-sixth year. Various solutions have been proposed — some count from the division of the kingdom rather than Asa's accession, others see a textual error. The Chronicler may be using a different counting system. Asa's rage against the prophet Hanani and his oppression of the people (verse 10) is a dramatic character collapse — the reforming king becomes a tyrant who punishes truth-telling. The refusal to seek God in illness (verse 12) is especially pointed given the Chronicler's emphasis on darash as the essential act of faithfulness.*

Connections: *The Asa narrative spans four chapters (14-16), forming a complete arc from faithfulness to failure. Hanani's oracle (verse 9) echoes Zechariah 4:10 ('the eyes of the LORD range through the whole earth') and anticipates Job 34:21. The reliance on Aram rather than God directly parallels Ahaz's later appeal to Assyria (2 Chronicles 28:16-21) — both strip the Temple treasury to buy foreign alliance. The physician reference (verse 12) is not anti-medicine but anti-exclusion-of-God: the problem is not consulting doctors but doing so instead of seeking God. The elaborate burial (verse 14) shows that Asa retained honor despite his late failures — the Chronicler does not erase his earlier faithfulness.*

¹In the thirty-sixth year of Asa's reign, Baasha king of Israel marched against Judah and began fortifying Ramah, to prevent anyone from going out or coming in to Asa king of Judah. ²Asa took silver and gold from the treasuries of the house of the LORD and the royal palace and sent them to Ben-hadad king of Aram, who resided in Damascus, with this message: ³"There is a treaty between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. I am sending you silver and gold — go, break your treaty with Baasha king of Israel so that he will withdraw from me." ⁴Ben-hadad listened to King Asa and sent his army commanders against the cities of Israel. They struck Ijon, Dan, Abel-maim, and all the storage cities of Naphtali. ⁵When Baasha heard about it, he stopped fortifying Ramah and abandoned his project. ⁶King Asa conscripted all Judah, and they carried away the stones and timber that Baasha had been using at Ramah. With them he fortified Geba and Mizpah. ⁷At that

time Hanani the seer came to Asa king of Judah and told him, "Because you relied on the king of Aram and did not rely on the LORD your God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped your hand. ⁸Were not the Ethiopians and Libyans a vast army with enormous numbers of chariots and cavalry? Yet because you relied on the LORD, he gave them into your hand. ⁹For the eyes of the LORD range throughout the entire earth, to strengthen those whose heart is fully committed to him. You have acted foolishly in this — from now on you will have wars." ¹⁰Asa was furious with the seer and put him in the stocks, because he was enraged at him over this. Asa also oppressed some of the people at that time. ¹¹The deeds of Asa, from first to last, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ¹²In the thirty-ninth year of his reign, Asa contracted a disease in his feet, and his illness became severe. Yet even in his illness he did not seek the LORD, but only the physicians. ¹³Asa slept with his fathers, dying in the forty-first year of his reign. ¹⁴They buried him in the tomb he had cut for himself in the City of David. They laid him on a bier filled with spices and various blended ointments, expertly prepared. And they kindled an enormous fire in his honor.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ramah (ha-Ramah) is only five miles north of Jerusalem — its fortification by Baasha would create a chokepoint controlling north-south traffic into Judah. The purpose — *le-vilti tet yotse va-va le-Asa* ('to prevent going out and coming in to Asa') — is a trade and movement blockade, not a siege of Jerusalem itself.
2. The irony is sharp: in 15:18, Asa brought silver, gold, and vessels into the house of God. Now he empties those same treasures — *me-otserot beit YHWH* ('from the treasures of the house of the LORD') — to pay a foreign king. The dedicated gifts become diplomatic bribes. Ben-Hadad *melekh Aram* ('Ben-hadad king of Aram/Syria') in Damascus is the northern superpower Asa turns to instead of God.
3. Asa invokes existing *berit* ('treaty') relations between Judah and Aram. He asks Ben-hadad to *hafer beritkhah et Ba'sha* ('break your treaty with Baasha') — requesting treaty-violation as a diplomatic favor. The phrase *ve-ya'aleh me'alai* ('so that he will go up from against me') reveals the desperation: Asa wants immediate relief.
3. Register departure: *berit* rendered as 'treaty' rather than default 'covenant' because Asa's arrangement with Ben-Hadad of Aram is a political alliance between nations, not a divine covenant. The human diplomatic sense of *berit* is primary here.
4. Ben-hadad's attack targets Israel's far north: Iyyon, Dan, and Avel Mayim ('Abel of the waters,' also called Abel Beth-maacah). The *miskhenot arei Naftali* ('storage cities of Naphtali') are the supply depots of the northern territory. The campaign forces Baasha to redirect his attention northward.
5. The strategy works: *va-yechdal mi-bnot et ha-Ramah* ('he stopped building Ramah'). The verb *chadal* ('to stop, to cease') and *va-yashbet et melakhto* ('he stopped his work') indicate complete abandonment. The immediate military objective is achieved — but at theological cost.
6. Asa repurposes Baasha's building materials — *avnei ha-Ramah ve-et etseiha* ('the stones and timber of Ramah') — for his own fortifications at Geva and ha-Mitspah ('Geba and Mizpah'). The practical outcome is favorable: Judah gains two fortified border towns from an enemy's abandoned project. But the prophet's evaluation in the next verses will reframe this apparent success as spiritual failure.
7. The verb *nish'an* ('to lean on') is used twice in direct contrast: leaning on Aram versus leaning on God. This is the theological hinge of the entire Asa narrative. The phrase *nimlat cheil melekh Aram mi-yadekha* ('the army of the king of Aram escaped your hand') implies that God would have given Asa victory over Aram as well — had he trusted God instead of paying Aram.
8. Hanani cites the Ethiopian campaign (chapter 14) as proof: the *Kushim ve-ha-Luvim* ('Cushites and Libyans') had a massive force. The rhetorical question *ha-lo* ('were they not?') expects the answer 'yes.' The phrase *u-ve-hisha'enekha al YHWH netanam be-yadekha* ('and when you relied on the LORD, he gave them into your hand') makes the earlier victory the measure of present failure. What worked then would have worked now.
9. The phrase *einav meshotetot* ('his eyes roving/ranging') uses the *polel* participle of *sh-w-t*, suggesting constant, active movement. The goal *le-hitchazzeq* ('to strengthen, to show strength on behalf of') reveals God as eager to empower faithful hearts. The word *shalem* ('complete') echoes 15:17 ('Asa's heart was complete') — but that was then. The sentence *niskalta* ('you have been foolish') marks the theological turning point of Asa's reign.
10. Asa's response to prophetic truth is rage: *va-yikh'as* ('he was angry') and *be-za'af immo* ('in fury with him'). The *beit ha-mahpekhet* ('house of turning/twisting' — stocks or a prison with contorted confinement) is a place of punishment for prophets (Jeremiah 20:2 uses similar language). The final note — *va-yeratsets Asa min ha-am* ('Asa crushed/oppressed some of the people') — shows the corruption spreading: opposing God's prophet leads to oppressing God's people.
11. The source citation — *sefer ha-melakhim li-Yhudah ve-Yisra'el* ('the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel') — refers to a chronicle the Chronicler used but which is now lost. The phrase *ha-rishonim ve-ha-acharonim* ('the first and the last') divides Asa's reign into two periods — a division the Chronicler has made painfully clear.
12. The key phrase is *lo darash et YHWH ki ba-rof'im* ('he did not seek the LORD but the physicians'). The verb *darash* ('to seek') ties Asa's deathbed to the Chronicler's entire theological program. The man who once commanded Judah *lidrosh* ('to seek,' 14:3) now fails to do so himself. The physicians

(rofim) are not condemned in themselves but as a replacement for God-seeking.

13. The regnal formula: va-yishkav Asa im avotav ('Asa slept with his fathers'). He reigned arba'im ve-achat shanah ('forty-one years') — one of the longest reigns in Judah. The standard death notice is given without additional theological comment; the preceding verses have said everything.
14. The burial is elaborate and honorific: be-qivotav asher karah lo ('in his tombs which he had hewn for himself') in the City of David. The bier is filled with besamim u-zenim meruqqachim ('spices and various blended perfumes'). The serefeh gedolah ad li-me'od ('an exceedingly great burning/fire') is a fire of honor — burning spices, not the body. Despite his failures, Asa receives a royal funeral. The Chronicler does not erase his early faithfulness even while documenting his late decline.

17

Summary: *Jehoshaphat son of Asa becomes king and strengthens himself against Israel. He stations forces in all the fortified cities of Judah and places garrisons in the land of Judah and in the cities of Ephraim that his father Asa had captured. The LORD is with Jehoshaphat because he walks in the earlier ways of his father David and does not seek the Baals. Instead he seeks the God of his father and walks in his commandments, not according to the practices of Israel. The LORD establishes the kingdom in his hand, and all Judah brings tribute to Jehoshaphat, who acquires great wealth and honor. His heart is bold in the ways of the LORD, and he further removes the high places and Asherah poles from Judah. In the third year of his reign, he sends his officials — Ben-hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah — to teach in the cities of Judah. With them are the Levites Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-adonijah, and the priests Elishama and Jehoram. They teach throughout Judah, carrying the scroll of the Torah of the LORD with them, going through all the cities of Judah and teaching among the people. The terror of the LORD falls on all the kingdoms of the lands surrounding Judah, so they do not make war against Jehoshaphat. Some Philistines bring Jehoshaphat tribute and silver as a load; the Arabs also bring him flocks — 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats. Jehoshaphat grows increasingly great. He builds fortresses and storage cities in Judah and has large supplies in the cities of Judah. He also has soldiers, mighty warriors, in Jerusalem. Their roster by ancestral houses: from Judah, commanders of thousands — Adnah the commander with 300,000 mighty warriors, then Jehohanan the commander with 280,000, then Amasiah son of Zichri who volunteered for the LORD with 200,000 mighty warriors. From Benjamin: Eliada, a mighty warrior, with 200,000 armed with bow and shield, and Jehozabad with him with 180,000 equipped for war. These are the ones serving the king, besides those the king stationed in the fortified cities throughout all Judah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's portrait of Jehoshaphat is organized around a single principle: seeking God produces comprehensive national blessing. The teaching mission (verses 7-9) is unique to Chronicles — no parallel exists in Kings. It represents the Chronicler's ideal of governance: the king sends officials, Levites, and priests together to teach Torah in every city. This is not mere reform but systematic religious education — a national curriculum centered on the sefer torat YHWH ('scroll of the Torah of the LORD'). The result is both spiritual and geopolitical: pachad YHWH ('the terror of the LORD') falls on surrounding nations, producing peace without military action. The Chronicler sees Torah education as the ultimate defense policy. The military census (verses 14-18) follows rather than precedes the teaching mission — strength flows from instruction, not the reverse.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the earlier ways of his father David' (darkhei David aviv ha-rishonim) has generated debate: does it imply David's later ways were not exemplary? Most likely the Chronicler means the pre-Bathsheba period, or simply uses 'earlier' to distinguish David from Asa's later failures. The enormous military numbers (1,160,000 troops in Jerusalem alone) strain credibility and likely function as indicators of divine blessing rather than literal census figures. The Philistine and Arab tribute (verses 11) echoes Solomon's international prestige, suggesting the Chronicler presents Jehoshaphat as a second Solomon.*

Connections: *The teaching mission echoes Deuteronomy 31:9-13 (Torah reading every seven years) and anticipates Ezra's Torah-reading program (Nehemiah 8). The 'terror of the LORD' falling on surrounding nations parallels Joshua's conquest narratives (Joshua 2:9, 5:1). Jehoshaphat's fortification program continues Asa's building (14:5-6) and Rehoboam's (11:5-12). The military organization by ancestral houses reflects David's army structure (1 Chronicles 27). Amasiah's title 'the one who volunteered for the LORD' (ha-mitnaddev la-YHWH) uses vocabulary from the Temple building project (1 Chronicles 29:5-6).*

¹His son Jehoshaphat reigned in his place and fortified himself against Israel. ²He stationed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah and placed garrisons in the land of Judah and in the cities of Ephraim that his father Asa had captured. ³The LORD was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the earlier ways of his father David and did not seek the Baals. ⁴He sought the God of his father and walked in his commandments, not according to the practices of Israel. ⁵The LORD established the kingdom in his hand. All Judah brought tribute to Jehoshaphat, and he acquired great wealth and honor. ⁶His heart was bold in the ways of the LORD, and he further removed the high places and Asherah poles from Judah. ⁷In the third year of his reign he sent his officials — Ben-hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah — to teach in the cities of Judah. ⁸With them were the Levites: Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-adonijah; and with them the priests Elishama and Jehoram. ⁹They taught throughout Judah, carrying the scroll of the Law of the LORD with them. They went through all the cities of Judah and taught among the people. ¹⁰The terror of the LORD fell on all the kingdoms of the lands surrounding Judah, so that they did not make war against Jehoshaphat. ¹¹Some of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat tribute and a load of silver. The Arabs also brought him flocks — 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats. ¹²Jehoshaphat grew increasingly great. He built fortresses and storage cities in Judah. ¹³He had large supplies in the cities of Judah, and warriors — mighty men of valor — in Jerusalem. ¹⁴This was their roster by ancestral houses. From Judah, the commanders of thousands: Adnah the commander, with 300,000 mighty warriors; ¹⁵next to him, Jehohanan the commander, with 280,000; ¹⁶next to him, Amasiah son of Zichri, who volunteered himself for the LORD, with 200,000 mighty warriors. ¹⁷From Benjamin: Eliada, a mighty warrior, with 200,000 men armed with bow and shield; ¹⁸and next to him, Jehozabad, with 180,000 equipped for war. ¹⁹These were the ones serving the king, besides those the king stationed in the fortified cities throughout all Judah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The succession formula — va-yimlokh Yehoshafat beno tachtav ('Jehoshaphat his son reigned in his place') — continues the Davidic dynasty. The phrase va-yitchazzeq al Yisra'el ('he strengthened himself against Israel') indicates military preparedness against the northern kingdom, setting the stage for the defensive measures that follow.
2. The military deployment is comprehensive: chayil ('forces') in kol arei Yehudah ha-betsurot ('all the fortified cities of Judah'), and netsivim ('garrisons') in the Ephraimite cities captured by Asa (13:19). Jehoshaphat maintains and extends his father's territorial gains.
3. The Chronicler provides the theological foundation: YHWH im Yehoshafat ('the LORD was with Jehoshaphat'). The reason — ki halakh be-darkhei David aviv ha-rishonim ('because he walked in the earlier ways of David his father') — uses David as the standard. The phrase ha-rishonim ('the earlier, the first') may distinguish David's early faithfulness from later missteps, or simply mean 'the ways of David of old.' The negative — ve-lo darash la-be'alim ('he did not seek the Baals') — contrasts him with Israel's kings.
4. The positive counterpart: le-Elohei aviv darash ('he sought the God of his father') and u-ve-mitsvotav halakh ('he walked in his commandments'). The final clause ve-lo ke-ma'aseh Yisra'el ('not according to the doings of Israel') draws a sharp boundary between Judah's faithfulness and Israel's apostasy.
5. Divine establishment — va-yakhen YHWH et ha-mamlakhah be-yado ('the LORD established the kingdom in his hand') — uses the verb k-w-n ('to establish, to make firm'). The people's response — va-yittenu kol Yehudah minchah ('all Judah gave tribute') — shows voluntary submission. The result: osher ve-khavod la-rov ('wealth and glory in abundance'). The Chronicler presents this as the natural fruit of seeking God.
5. Register departure: kavod rendered as 'honor' rather than default 'glory' because the context describes Jehoshaphat's earthly reputation and social standing, not divine radiance or theophanic presence.
6. The phrase va-yigbah libbo be-darkhei YHWH ('his heart was lifted up/bold in the ways of the LORD') uses gavah ('to be high, to be exalted') positively — unusual, since the verb often connotes pride. Here, boldness in God's ways is commendable. The continuing reform — hesir et ha-bamot ve-et ha-asherim ('he removed the high places and Asherah poles') — extends Asa's work.
7. The teaching mission is organized through royal officials: sarav ('his officials') are the administrators. Five names are listed: Ben-Chayil, Ovadyah, Zekharyah, Netane'l, and Mikhayahu. The purpose — le-lammed be-arei Yehudah ('to teach in the cities of Judah') — is educational, not military or administrative. This is a national instruction campaign.
8. The teaching team is tripartite: officials (verse 7), Levites (nine named), and priests (two named). The Levites — ha-Leviyyim — are the Torah teachers by ancestral vocation. The priests — ha-kohanim — bring cultic authority. All three classes working together represent the Chronicler's ideal of comprehensive, authorized instruction.

9. The curriculum is explicit: sefer torat YHWH ('the scroll of the Torah of the LORD') — a physical text carried from city to city. The verb va-yassobbu ('they went around, they circuited') indicates a systematic tour be-khol arei Yehudah ('through all the cities of Judah'). The repetition of va-yelammedu ('they taught') emphasizes that this is a teaching mission, not a political tour. Torah education becomes the foundation of national security.
10. The consequence of Torah teaching is supernatural security: pachad YHWH ('the terror of the LORD') falls on kol mamlakhot ha-aratsot ('all the kingdoms of the lands'). The nations do not refrain from war because of Jehoshaphat's army but because of divine terror. The Chronicler draws a direct line from Torah instruction to national security — education produces peace.
11. International tribute from two directions: Pelishtim ('Philistines') bring minchah ve-khesef massa ('tribute and silver as a load/burden'), and ha-Arvi'im ('the Arabs/Arabians') bring livestock. The numbers — shiv'at alafim u-sheva me'ot ('7,700') for both rams and goats — use sevens, the number of divine completeness. Jehoshaphat receives Solomon-level international tribute.
12. The formula holekh ve-gadel ad le-ma'lah ('going and becoming great upward') describes accelerating prosperity. The construction projects — biraniyyot ('fortresses, citadels') and arei miskhenot ('storage cities') — combine military and economic infrastructure.
13. The phrase melakhah rabbah ('much work/supplies') indicates substantial provisioning across the Judean cities. The military complement — anshei milchamah gibborei chayil ('men of war, mighty warriors') — is stationed in Jerusalem as a central defense force.
14. The military census is organized le-veit avoteihem ('by their ancestral houses') — the traditional tribal-clan structure. Adnah ha-sar ('Adnah the commander') leads the largest division: shelosh me'ot elef gibborei chayil ('300,000 mighty warriors'). These numbers represent the full strength of Judah's tribal levy.
15. Yehochanan ha-sar ('Jehochanan the commander') leads the second Judahite division with ma'tayim u-shemonim elef ('280,000'). The phrase ve-al yado ('at his hand, next to him') indicates rank order.
16. Amasiah ben Zikhri receives a special designation: ha-mitnaddev la-YHWH ('the one who volunteered for the LORD'). The verb nadav ('to volunteer, to offer freely') in the hitpa'el describes self-dedication. This is the language of free-will offering applied to military service — his command of 200,000 is an act of devotion, not mere duty.
17. The Benjamin divisions are listed separately. Elyada gibbor chayil ('Eliada, a mighty warrior') commands 200,000 equipped with noshqei qeshet u-magen ('drawers of bow and shield') — light infantry and archers, consistent with Benjamin's traditional military specialty.
18. Yehozavad commands me'ah u-shemonim elef ('180,000') troops described as chalutsei tsava ('equipped for military service, ready for war'). The total across all five divisions is 1,160,000 — a staggering number that signals maximal divine blessing in the Chronicler's framework.
19. The concluding note — elleh ha-mesharetim et ha-melekh ('these are the ones serving the king') — specifies that this census covers only the Jerusalem garrison. The phrase millevad asher natan ha-melekh be-arei ha-mivtsar ('besides those the king placed in the fortified cities') indicates additional troops throughout the country. The total military strength is even larger than the Jerusalem numbers suggest.

18

Summary: Jehoshaphat acquires great wealth and honor and enters into a marriage alliance with Ahab. After some years he visits Ahab in Samaria, where Ahab slaughters abundant sheep and cattle for him and his entourage, then persuades him to go up together against Ramoth-gilead. Jehoshaphat agrees but first requests, 'Please inquire for the word of the LORD.' Ahab gathers 400 prophets who unanimously declare, 'Go up! God will give it into the king's hand.' Zedekiah son of Chenaanah makes iron horns and proclaims that Ahab will gore the Arameans. But Jehoshaphat asks, 'Is there no other prophet of the LORD here we can consult?' Ahab admits there is one more — Micaiah son of Imlah — but says, 'I hate him, because he never prophesies good about me, only evil.' Jehoshaphat urges Ahab not to say such things. The messenger sent to summon Micaiah advises him to agree with the other prophets. Micaiah replies, 'As the LORD lives, whatever my God says, that I will speak.' When he arrives, he initially says, 'Go up and succeed — they will be given into your hand.' But Ahab recognizes the sarcasm and demands the truth. Micaiah then delivers his real message: 'I saw all Israel scattered on the mountains like sheep without a shepherd, and the LORD said: These have no master — let each return to his home in peace.' Ahab turns to Jehoshaphat: 'Did I not tell you he would not prophesy good about me?' Then Micaiah describes a vision of the heavenly court: the LORD seated on his throne with the entire host of heaven standing at his right and left. The LORD asks, 'Who will entice Ahab king of Israel to go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?' Various spirits offer suggestions until one spirit comes forward and says, 'I will entice him — I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' The LORD says, 'You will succeed — go and do it.' Micaiah concludes: 'The LORD has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets; the LORD has decreed disaster for you.' Zedekiah strikes Micaiah on the cheek and asks, 'Which way did the Spirit of the LORD pass from me to speak to you?' Micaiah answers, 'You will

see on the day you go from room to room to hide.' Ahab orders Micaiah imprisoned with bread and water until he returns safely. Micaiah replies, 'If you return safely, the LORD has not spoken through me.' He adds, 'Listen, all you peoples!' Ahab and Jehoshaphat go up to Ramoth-gilead. Ahab tells Jehoshaphat to wear his own robes while Ahab disguises himself. The king of Aram has ordered his chariot commanders to fight only the king of Israel. When they see Jehoshaphat, they mistake him for the Israelite king and surround him, but Jehoshaphat cries out and the LORD helps him — God diverts them from him. When they realize he is not the king of Israel, they turn away. But a soldier draws his bow at random and strikes the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Ahab tells his chariot driver, 'Turn around! I am wounded!' The battle rages all day; the king of Israel props himself up in his chariot facing the Arameans until evening, when he dies at sunset.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is virtually identical to 1 Kings 22, making it one of the closest parallels in Chronicles. The Chronicler reproduces it almost verbatim because it serves his theology perfectly: a faithful king (Jehoshaphat) is endangered by alliance with a wicked king (Ahab). The heavenly court scene (verses 18-22) is one of the most extraordinary theological passages in the Hebrew Bible — God authorizes a lying spirit to deceive Ahab through his own prophets. This is not a passage about God lying but about God using the deception Ahab has already chosen. Ahab wanted prophets who would tell him what he wanted to hear; God gives him exactly that, and it destroys him. Micaiah stands alone against 400 prophets — the classic prophetic confrontation where the lone voice speaks truth against manufactured consensus. The random arrow (verse 33) that finds the gap in Ahab's armor demonstrates that disguise cannot thwart divine decree.*

Translation Friction: *The heavenly court scene raises the most direct question about divine deception in the Hebrew Bible. God does not merely permit the lying spirit but commissions it: 'Go and do it.' The theological tension is deliberate: Ahab has systematically rejected truth, killed prophets, and promoted Baal worship. God's response is to give him the lies he craves — but with the real truth standing in the room in the person of Micaiah. Ahab hears the true prophecy and the explanation of the deception, and still chooses to go. The disguise strategy (verse 29) attempts to manipulate fate — if Ahab does not look like a king, perhaps the prophecy will not find him. The random arrow proves that no human strategy can outmaneuver divine decree. Jehoshaphat's cry and divine rescue (verse 31) show God's mercy toward a compromised but fundamentally faithful king.*

Connections: *The parallel text is 1 Kings 22:1-35. The marriage alliance with Ahab (verse 1) connects to the Chronicler's broader concern about entangling alliances (compare Asa's alliance with Aram in chapter 16). Micaiah's scattered-sheep vision (verse 16) anticipates Ezekiel 34 and Jesus's use of the shepherd image. The heavenly court scene parallels Job 1-2, where heavenly beings appear before the LORD and one (the adversary) receives a commission. The phrase 'these have no master' (ein adonim la-elleh) foreshadows Ahab's death. Jehoshaphat's question 'Is there no prophet of the LORD?' (verse 6) reveals that despite the alliance, his instinct is still to seek God — the seeking theology of chapters 14-17 is still operative.*

¹Jehoshaphat had great wealth and honor, and he made a marriage alliance with Ahab. ²After some years he went down to visit Ahab in Samaria. Ahab slaughtered sheep and cattle in abundance for him and the people with him, and then persuaded him to march against Ramoth-gilead. ³Ahab king of Israel asked Jehoshaphat king of Judah, "Will you go with me to Ramoth-gilead?" He replied, "I am with you as you are with me — my people are your people. We will join you in the battle." ⁴But Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "First, please inquire for the word of the LORD today." ⁵The king of Israel gathered 400 prophets and asked them, "Should we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or should I hold back?" They said, "Go up! God will give it into the king's hand." ⁶But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there no other prophet of the LORD here whom we can consult?" ⁷The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "There is one more man through whom we could consult the LORD, but I hate him — he never prophesies anything good about me, only evil. He is Micaiah son of Imlah." Jehoshaphat said, "The king should not say such things." ⁸The king of Israel called one of his officials and said, "Bring Micaiah son of Imlah quickly." ⁹The king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah were sitting on their thrones, dressed in their robes, at the threshing floor by the entrance of the gate of Samaria, with all the prophets prophesying before them. ¹⁰Zedekiah son of Chenaanah made iron horns and declared, "This is what the LORD says: With these you will gore the Arameans until they are finished." ¹¹All the prophets were prophesying the same: "Go up to Ramoth-gilead and triumph! The LORD will give it into the king's hand." ¹²The messenger who went to summon Micaiah told him, "The prophets are unanimously favorable to

the king. Please let your word agree with theirs and speak favorably." ¹³Micaiah replied, "As the LORD lives, whatever my God says, that I will speak." ¹⁴When he came to the king, the king asked him, "Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth-gilead to battle, or should I hold back?" He answered, "Go up and succeed! They will be given into your hand." ¹⁵The king said to him, "How many times must I make you swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of the LORD?" ¹⁶He said, "I saw all Israel scattered on the mountains like sheep without a shepherd. And the LORD said, 'These have no master — let each one return to his home in peace.'" ¹⁷The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you? He never prophesies good about me — only evil." ¹⁸Micaiah continued, "Therefore hear the word of the LORD. I saw the LORD seated on his throne, with the entire host of heaven standing at his right hand and his left. ¹⁹The LORD said, 'Who will entice Ahab king of Israel to march up and fall at Ramoth-gilead?' One said one thing, another said another. ²⁰Then a spirit came forward, stood before the LORD, and said, 'I will entice him.' The LORD asked, 'How?' ²¹The spirit said, 'I will go out and be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' The LORD said, 'You will succeed in enticing him — go and do it.' ²²So now — the LORD has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours. The LORD has decreed disaster for you." ²³Then Zedekiah son of Chenaanah came up and struck Micaiah on the cheek. He said, "Which way did the Spirit of the LORD go when it passed from me to speak to you?" ²⁴Micaiah replied, "You will find out on the day when you go from room to room trying to hide." ²⁵The king of Israel ordered, "Take Micaiah and send him back to Amon the governor of the city and to Joash the king's son. ²⁶Tell them, 'The king says: Put this man in prison and feed him rationed bread and rationed water until I return safely.'" ²⁷Micaiah replied, "If you return safely, the LORD has not spoken through me." Then he added, "Take note, all you peoples!" ²⁸The king of Israel and Jehoshaphat king of Judah marched up to Ramoth-gilead. ²⁹The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "I will disguise myself and go into battle, but you wear your royal robes." So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they went into battle. ³⁰Now the king of Aram had commanded his chariot officers, "Do not fight with anyone — small or great — except the king of Israel alone." ³¹When the chariot officers saw Jehoshaphat, they said, "That is the king of Israel!" and they surrounded him to attack. But Jehoshaphat cried out, and the LORD helped him — God diverted them away from him. ³²When the chariot officers realized it was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him. ³³But a soldier drew his bow at random and struck the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Ahab said to his chariot driver, "Turn around and get me out of the battle — I am wounded!" ³⁴The battle raged all that day. The king of Israel propped himself up in his chariot facing the Arameans until evening. He died at sunset.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The prosperity formula — osher ve-khavod la-rov ('wealth and honor in abundance') — reprises 17:5. But the next clause introduces danger: va-yitchatten le-Ach'av ('he entered into marriage alliance with Ahab'). The verb hitchatten ('to become a son-in-law, to make a marriage alliance') indicates Jehoshaphat's son Jehoram married Ahab's daughter Athaliah (21:6). Wealth leads to a compromising alliance.
2. The verb va-yered ('he went down') is geographically accurate (Jerusalem is higher than Samaria) but may also carry theological overtones — Jehoshaphat descends to Ahab's level. Ahab's lavish hospitality — va-yizbach lo tson u-vaqar la-rov ('he slaughtered sheep and cattle in abundance') — is preparation for the real agenda: va-yesitehu ('he incited him, persuaded him') to attack Ramoth-gilead. The verb sut ('to incite, to entice') is the same verb used of the lying spirit in verse 20.
3. Jehoshaphat's pledge — kamoni khamokha u-khe-ammekha ammi ('like me, like you; like your people, my people') — is a complete identification with Ahab's cause. The phrase mirrors Ruth 1:16 in structure but serves a very different purpose: this alliance with a Baal-worshipping king will nearly get Jehoshaphat killed.
4. Despite his pledge, Jehoshaphat insists on prophetic consultation: derosh na kha-yom et devar YHWH ('seek, please, today the word of the LORD'). The verb darash ('to seek, to inquire') connects to the Chronicler's theology of seeking. Even in a compromising alliance, Jehoshaphat's instinct is to seek God's word.
5. The 400 prophets deliver a unanimous verdict: alu ki yittenem ha-Elohim be-yad ha-melek ('go up, for God will give them into the king's hand'). They use Elohim ('God') rather than YHWH — a possible hint of their theological imprecision. The unanimity itself should raise suspicion: 400 voices speaking as one is manufactured consensus, not genuine prophecy.
6. Jehoshaphat's question — ha-ein poh navi la-YHWH od ('is there not here still a prophet of the LORD?') — distinguishes between Ahab's prophets and a navi la-YHWH ('prophet of the LORD'). The verb ve-nidreshah me-oto ('let us inquire of him') uses darash again. Jehoshaphat senses the 400 are not authentic YHWH prophets.

7. Ahab's admission — ani sene'tihu ('I hate him') — reveals his relationship to prophetic truth. The reason: einennu mitnabbé alai le-tovah ki kol yamav le-ra ('he never prophesies good about me, only evil'). Ahab measures prophets by whether they please him, not by whether they speak truth. Jehoshaphat's gentle rebuke — al yomar ha-melekh ken ('let the king not say so') — is insufficient; he does not challenge the alliance itself.
8. The saris ('official, eunuch') is sent to fetch Micaiah. The word maharah ('quickly') shows urgency — Ahab wants to get through this formality and proceed to battle.
9. The scene is a formal court: two kings on thrones (ish al kis'o, 'each on his throne'), in full regalia (melubashim begadim, 'dressed in garments'), at the ba-goren petach sha'ar Shomron ('threshing floor at the entrance of the gate of Samaria'). The threshing floor is a large open space suitable for public events. The 400 prophets perform before them — mitnab'im lifneihem ('prophesying before them') — in a choreographed display.
10. Zedekiah's prophetic theater — qarnei varzel ('iron horns') — uses a powerful visual symbol. Horns represent strength and military power (Deuteronomy 33:17). The claim ko amar YHWH ('thus says the LORD') gives his performance divine authority. The verb tenagach ('you will gore') pictures a bull destroying its opponent. The theatrical prophecy is vivid but false.
11. The chorus — kol ha-nevi'im nibbe'im ken ('all the prophets were prophesying thus') — emphasizes unanimity. The double promise aleh ve-hatslach ('go up and prosper/succeed') and ve-natan YHWH be-yad ha-melekh ('the LORD will give into the king's hand') sounds authoritative. But uniformity is not authenticity.
12. The messenger reveals the pressure to conform: divrei ha-nevi'im peh echad tov el ha-melekh ('the words of the prophets are one mouth, good to the king'). His request — vihi na devarkha ke-achad mehem ('let your word be like one of them') — asks Micaiah to match the consensus. The assumption is that prophecy should serve royal interests.
13. Micaiah's oath — chai YHWH ('as the LORD lives') — is irrevocable. The principle: et asher yomar Elohai oto adabber ('whatever my God says, that I will speak'). The possessive Elohai ('my God') is personal and defiant — his God, not the king's preference, determines his words. This is the prophetic commitment in its purest form.
14. Micaiah's initial response — alu ve-hatslichu ve-yinnatenu ve-yedkhem ('go up, succeed, they will be given into your hand') — parrots the 400 prophets exactly. The tone is dripping with sarcasm — Micaiah gives Ahab the answer he wants, knowing Ahab will recognize the irony. Ahab wanted a yes-man; Micaiah shows him what a yes-man sounds like.
15. Ahab recognizes the sarcasm and demands truth: ad kammeh fe'amim ani mashbi'akha ('how many times must I make you swear?'). The phrase raq emet be-shem YHWH ('only truth in the name of the LORD') is deeply ironic — the king who hates Micaiah's truth now demands it. Ahab wants truth but will reject it when he hears it.
16. The vision: kol Yisra'el nefutsim al he-harim ('all Israel scattered on the mountains') like tson asher ein lahen ro'eh ('sheep that have no shepherd'). The LORD's declaration — lo adonim la-elleh ('these have no master') — prophesies Ahab's death in advance. The instruction yashuv ish le-veito be-shalom ('let each return to his house in peace') promises safety for the soldiers but death for the king. Israel will survive; the king will not.
17. Ahab turns to Jehoshaphat with vindication: ha-lo amarti elekha ('did I not tell you?'). He treats the prophecy of his death as a personal grievance rather than a divine warning. The phrase lo yitnabbé alai le-tovah ki im le-ra ('he does not prophesy good about me, only evil') reveals Ahab's fundamental error: he evaluates prophecy by its comfort, not its truth.
18. The heavenly court scene opens: ra'iti et YHWH yoshev al kis'o ('I saw the LORD sitting on his throne'). The kol tseva ha-shamayim ('entire host of heaven') flanks him — omdim al yemino u-smo'lo ('standing at his right and his left'). This is a vision of the divine council where cosmic decisions are made. The scene parallels 1 Kings 22:19 and the divine council in Job 1-2.
19. The LORD's question — mi yefateh et Ach'av ('who will entice Ahab?') — uses the verb patah ('to entice, to deceive, to persuade'). The purpose is explicit: ve-ya'al ve-yippol be-Ramot Gil'ad ('that he may go up and fall at Ramoth-gilead'). The fall (yippol) is predetermined. The heavenly beings offer various suggestions — zeh omer kakhah ve-zeh omer kakhah ('one says thus and another says thus').
20. Ha-ru'ach ('the spirit') comes forward from the assembly. The definite article suggests a specific being, not a random volunteer. The exchange is concise: ani afattenu ('I will entice him'). The LORD's question ba-mah ('by what means, how?') invites the spirit to specify its method.
21. The phrase ru'ach sheqer ('a spirit of falsehood/lying') becomes the instrument of divine judgment. The LORD's authorization — tse va-aseh khi ('go and do thus') — commissions the deception. The verbs tefatteh ('you will entice') and tukhal ('you will prevail') guarantee success. This is not God failing to prevent deception but God using deception against one who has already chosen lies over truth.
22. Micaiah now speaks directly to Ahab: natan YHWH ru'ach sheqer be-fi nevi'ekha elleh ('the LORD has placed a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours'). The possessive nevi'ekha ('your prophets') distances them from God's true prophets. The conclusion — va-YHWH dibber alekha ra'ah ('the LORD has spoken evil/disaster concerning you') — is unambiguous. Ahab now knows the truth, the mechanism of the deception, and the divine decree. What he does next is entirely his choice.
23. Zedekiah's response is physical violence — va-yakh et Mikhayehu al ha-lechi ('he struck Micaiah on the cheek'). His question — ei zeh ha-derekh avar ru'ach YHWH me-itti le-dabber otakh ('which way did the Spirit of the LORD pass from me to speak to you?') — assumes that prophetic inspiration must pass through him. He cannot conceive that God might bypass the 400 to speak through one.
24. Micaiah's answer prophesies Zedekiah's future humiliation: hinnekha ro'eh ba-yom ha-hu ('you will see on that day'). The phrase tavo cheder be-cheder le-hechave ('you will go room within room to hide') pictures desperate flight — hiding in the innermost chambers when the disaster

arrives and the false prophecy is exposed.

25. Ahab orders Micaiah returned to custody: Amon sar ha-ir ('Amon the city governor') and Yo'ash ben ha-melekh ('Joash the king's son') — the royal prince serving as a state official. The word hashivuhu ('return him') suggests Micaiah was already in custody and was brought out for this consultation.
26. The imprisonment order includes starvation rations: lechem lachats u-mayim lachats ('bread of distress and water of distress') — minimal sustenance. The phrase ad shuvi be-shalom ('until I return in peace/safely') is Ahab's defiant assertion that he will return alive. He bets his life against the prophecy.
27. Micaiah stakes his prophetic credibility on the outcome: im shov tashuv be-shalom lo dibber YHWH bi ('if you indeed return in peace, the LORD has not spoken through me'). The test is simple: if Ahab survives, Micaiah is false. The final call — shim'u ammim kullam ('hear, peoples, all of you!') — makes all present witnesses. The phrase echoes Micah 1:2, leading some to connect the two prophets.
28. Despite everything — the true prophecy, the heavenly court vision, the explained deception — va-ya'al melekh Yisra'el vi-Yhoshafat ('the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat went up'). Ahab goes to his death with full knowledge. Jehoshaphat goes with him.
29. Ahab's plan — hitchappesh ('I will disguise myself') — is an attempt to dodge the prophecy. By making Jehoshaphat wear royal robes (ve-attah levash begadekha, 'you wear your garments') while Ahab goes incognito, he hopes the enemy will target the wrong king. This strategy treats prophecy as something that can be outmaneuvered — a fatal miscalculation. It also callously uses Jehoshaphat as a decoy.
30. The Aramean order — lo tilachamu et ha-qaton ve-et ha-gadol ki im et melekh Yisra'el levaddo ('do not fight small or great except only the king of Israel') — creates a targeted assassination mission. The strategy makes Ahab's disguise seem clever but actually makes the divine intervention more visible: despite the disguise, the prophetic word will find its target.
31. The Chronicler's key addition to the Kings parallel: va-YHWH azaro va-yesitem Elohim mimmennu ('the LORD helped him and God diverted them from him'). The verb sut ('to entice, to divert') is used positively here — God turns the enemy away. This is the Chronicler's interpretation of why the chariot officers turned away: not because they recognized Jehoshaphat, but because God intervened.
32. The recognition — ki lo hayah melekh Yisra'el ('that it was not the king of Israel') — halts the attack. The phrase va-yashuvu me-acharav ('they turned back from after him') ends the threat to Jehoshaphat. The Aramean officers obey their command: only the king of Israel is their target.
33. The phrase ish mashakh ba-qeshet le-tummo ('a man drew the bow in his innocence/at random') is the pivotal detail: the archer fires without aiming at anyone specific. The arrow finds the exact gap — bein ha-devaqim u-vein ha-shiryon ('between the joints and the armor') — of a disguised king. Ahab's strategy fails against divine decree. No disguise can deflect a random arrow guided by Providence. His cry hafokh yadekha ('turn your hand') and ki hochleti ('I am wounded/made sick') mark the beginning of his death.
34. The final scene: the king of Israel hayah ma'amid ba-merkavah nokhach Aram ('was propping himself up in the chariot facing Aram') — held upright to maintain morale, though mortally wounded. He endures ad ha-erev ('until evening') before dying le-et bo ha-shamesh ('at the time of the setting of the sun'). The sunset timing is symbolic — the light goes out on Ahab's life and reign simultaneously. The Chronicler ends the chapter here, without the additional details in 1 Kings 22:36-40, because the theological point is complete: Micaiah's word was true, the lying spirit accomplished its purpose, and no disguise could prevent the fulfillment of divine decree.

19

Summary: *Jehoshaphat returns safely to Jerusalem after the disastrous alliance with Ahab at Ramoth-gilead. The seer Jehu son of Hanani meets him with a sharp rebuke: 'Should you help the wicked and love those who hate the LORD?' Yet the rebuke is tempered — good things have been found in Jehoshaphat because he removed the Asherah poles and set his heart to seek God. Jehoshaphat then undertakes a sweeping judicial reform throughout the land. He personally travels among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim, bringing them back to the LORD. He appoints judges in every fortified city of Judah and charges them with a foundational principle: 'You are not judging for human beings but for the LORD, who is with you in the act of judgment.' He warns them against partiality and bribery. In Jerusalem he establishes a higher court composed of Levites, priests, and clan leaders to handle appeals, with Amariah the chief priest overseeing religious cases and Zebadiah son of Ishmael overseeing civil cases. His final charge to the judges is: 'Act with courage, and may the LORD be with those who do what is right.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents the most detailed account of judicial reform in the Hebrew Bible. Jehoshaphat's instructions to the judges are theologically grounded: justice is not a human institution delegated by the king but a divine function in which human judges participate. The phrase 'the fear of the LORD' appears as the essential qualification for judgment — not legal training or political loyalty but reverent awareness that the LORD watches every verdict. The*

two-track court system (religious cases under the chief priest, civil cases under a royal official) anticipates the separation of jurisdictions that becomes important in later Jewish legal tradition. The Chronicler's emphasis on this reform reveals his conviction that righteous governance flows from proper worship — Jehoshaphat's judicial work follows directly from his campaign to remove idolatry.

Translation Friction: *The rebuke from Jehu son of Hanani raises the question of how Jehoshaphat can be simultaneously praised and condemned. The Chronicler resolves this by distinguishing between the king's foreign policy (allying with Ahab's house) and his domestic policy (seeking the LORD and reforming justice). This nuanced portrait resists the simplistic categories of 'good king' or 'bad king' and shows that even a faithful ruler can make devastating political errors. The phrase 'there is no injustice with the LORD our God, no partiality, no taking of bribes' (verse 7) borrows language from Deuteronomy 10:17, grounding Jehoshaphat's reform in Mosaic law.*

Connections: *Jehoshaphat's judicial reform connects backward to Moses' appointment of judges in Exodus 18 and Deuteronomy 16:18-20 — the same principles of impartiality and divine accountability appear in both. The rebuke from Jehu son of Hanani echoes his father Hanani's rebuke of Asa in 2 Chronicles 16:7-9, creating a generational pattern of prophets confronting kings. Jehoshaphat's charge 'the LORD is with you in the act of judgment' anticipates the New Testament principle that all authority derives from God (Romans 13:1). The separation of priestly and civil jurisdiction foreshadows the dual-authority structures in post-exilic Judaism.*

¹Jehoshaphat king of Judah returned safely to his house in Jerusalem. ²Jehu son of Hanani the seer went out to meet him and said to King Jehoshaphat, "Should you be helping the wicked? Should you love those who hate the LORD? Because of this, wrath from the LORD is upon you." ³"But good things have been found in you, because you have removed the Asherah poles from the land and have set your heart to seek God." ⁴Jehoshaphat stayed in Jerusalem, then went out again among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim and brought them back to the LORD, the God of their ancestors. ⁵He appointed judges throughout the land in every fortified city of Judah, city by city. ⁶He said to the judges, "Consider carefully what you are doing, for you do not judge on behalf of human beings but on behalf of the LORD, and He is with you whenever you render a verdict." ⁷"Now then, let the fear of the LORD be upon you. Be careful in what you do, for with the LORD our God there is no injustice, no partiality, and no taking of bribes." ⁸In Jerusalem as well, Jehoshaphat appointed some of the Levites, priests, and heads of Israelite clans to administer the judgment of the LORD and to settle disputes. They sat in Jerusalem. ⁹He commanded them: "This is how you must act — in the fear of the LORD, with faithfulness, and with a whole heart." ¹⁰"In every dispute that comes to you from your kinsmen living in their cities — whether it concerns bloodshed, or questions of law, commandment, statutes, or ordinances — you must warn them so they do not become guilty before the LORD and wrath falls on you and on your kinsmen. Do this and you will not bear guilt." ¹¹"Amariah the chief priest presides over you in all matters concerning the LORD, and Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the house of Judah, in all matters concerning the king. The Levites will serve as officers before you. Act with courage, and may the LORD be with those who do what is right."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase be-shalom ('in peace, safely') is significant after the near-disaster at Ramoth-gilead where Ahab was killed. Jehoshaphat's safe return is itself an act of divine mercy — he had entered a battle under false pretenses alongside a condemned king and survived only because he cried out and the LORD turned the enemy chariots away from him (2 Chronicles 18:31).
1. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'safely' rather than default 'peace' because be-shalom here functions as an adverb describing Jehoshaphat's physical safe return, not a state of peace.
2. Jehu son of Hanani is a second-generation prophet; his father Hanani rebuked Jehoshaphat's father Asa (2 Chronicles 16:7). The verb le-ezor ('to help') implies military alliance rather than casual friendship. The phrase sone'ei Adonai ('those who hate the LORD') is strong — it classifies Ahab not merely as misguided but as an active enemy of God.
3. The word aval ('nevertheless, but') introduces a qualification that softens the rebuke without canceling it. The devarim tovim ('good things') found in Jehoshaphat are twofold: destruction of the Asherah cult objects and a personal commitment to seek God. The verb bi'arta ('you burned away, removed') implies thorough purging. The phrase hakhinota levavkha ('you prepared, established your heart') indicates deliberate, sustained orientation toward God rather than a momentary impulse.

4. The range from Beersheba (the southern border) to the hill country of Ephraim (well into what had been northern territory) indicates Jehoshaphat's reform reached beyond Judah's traditional boundaries. The verb *va-yeshivem* ('and he caused them to return') is a causative form of *shuv* — the king actively turned the people back to the LORD. This is a royal shepherding function.
5. The phrase *le-ir va-ir* ('city by city') emphasizes the thoroughness of the reform — this was not a decree issued from Jerusalem but a systematic installation of judges in each fortified settlement. The fortified cities were administrative centers, so placing judges there ensured that justice was available wherever royal authority already operated.
6. The phrase *lo le-adam tishpotu ki la-Adonai* ('not for man do you judge but for the LORD') establishes a theological foundation for the judiciary. The preposition *le-* ('for, on behalf of') indicates that the judges act as representatives. The word *mishpat* ('judgment, justice, verdict') is one of the central terms of biblical law.
7. Three negatives define divine justice and therefore must define human justice: *ein avlah* ('no injustice, no perversion of right'), *ein massa panim* ('no lifting of faces,' meaning no favoritism toward the powerful), *ein miqqach shochad* ('no accepting of bribes'). The phrase *pachad Adonai* ('fear of the LORD') is the motivating force — awareness of God's presence in judgment should produce reverence that prevents corruption. This closely follows Deuteronomy 10:17.
8. The Jerusalem court is distinct from the local judges — it functions as a higher court or court of appeals. The composition (Levites, priests, clan leaders) ensures representation from both religious and civil authority. The phrase *le-mishpat Adonai* ('for the judgment of the LORD') covers religious law, while *la-riv* ('for disputes, controversies') covers civil litigation between parties.
9. Three qualities define the judicial character: *yir'at Adonai* ('fear of the LORD'), *emunah* ('faithfulness, reliability, trustworthiness'), and *levav shalem* ('a whole, undivided heart'). The combination insists that proper judgment requires not only correct procedure but internal integrity — the judge's heart must be undivided between competing loyalties.
10. The fourfold legal vocabulary — *torah* ('instruction, law'), *mitzvah* ('commandment'), *chuqqim* ('statutes, decrees'), *mishpatim* ('judgments, ordinances') — covers every category of divine legislation. The warning that guilt falls on both the judges and the people if the law is not properly administered creates mutual accountability.
11. The title *kohen ha-rosh* ('chief priest') designates the highest priestly authority. The title *nagid le-veit Yehudah* ('leader of the house of Judah') identifies Zebadiah as a civil governor or chief magistrate. The dual structure anticipates later developments in Jewish governance where priestly and lay authority operated in parallel.

20

Summary: *A vast coalition of Moabites, Ammonites, and Meunites advances against Judah from the direction of Edom. Jehoshaphat is alarmed and sets his face to seek the LORD, proclaiming a fast throughout all Judah. The people gather from every city to seek the LORD's help. Jehoshaphat stands in the assembly at the Temple and prays one of the great prayers of the Hebrew Bible, reminding God of His promises to Abraham, His gift of the land, and Solomon's dedication prayer that if disaster came, Israel could stand before the Temple and cry out. He confesses: 'We have no power against this great multitude coming against us — we do not know what to do, but our eyes are on You.' The Spirit of the LORD comes upon Jahaziel the Levite, who delivers an oracle: 'The battle is not yours but God's. You will not need to fight. Station yourselves, stand still, and see the salvation of the LORD.' The next morning Jehoshaphat appoints singers to go out ahead of the army, praising the LORD and singing 'Give thanks to the LORD, for His faithful love endures forever.' At the moment the singing begins, the LORD sets ambushes against the invaders, and they turn on each other and destroy themselves completely. Judah arrives at the overlook and finds only corpses. It takes three days to collect the plunder. They gather in the Valley of Beracah ('Blessing') to praise the LORD, then return to Jerusalem with harps, lyres, and trumpets. The fear of God falls on the surrounding kingdoms, and Jehoshaphat's realm has peace. The chapter closes with a summary of his reign and a final note that his alliance with Ahaziah of Israel to build ships at Ezion-geber fails because the LORD opposes it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most extraordinary battle accounts in Scripture: a war won entirely by worship. The singers march ahead of the armed forces — not as a morale exercise but as the actual weapon. The moment the praise begins, the LORD acts. The battle cry is not a war shout but a liturgical refrain from the Psalms: 'Give thanks to the LORD, for His faithful love endures forever' (the same phrase found in Psalm 136 and used at the Temple dedication in 2 Chronicles 5:13). The narrative insists that Judah did not fight at all — they arrived only to find the enemy already destroyed. Jehoshaphat's prayer is a model of covenantal appeal: he does not argue his own merit but reminds God of His own promises and His own character. The confession*

'we do not know what to do, but our eyes are on You' has become one of the most quoted prayers in the Bible.

Translation Friction: The identity of the Meunites and the geography of the invasion are debated. The Hebrew text has textual difficulties in verse 2 (some manuscripts read 'Aram' instead of 'Edom'). The complete self-destruction of the invading army echoes the pattern of Judges 7 (Gideon's battle) and 1 Samuel 14 (Jonathan at Michmash), where God causes enemy forces to turn on each other. Historically, internecine conflict among coalition forces was not uncommon in the ancient Near East, but the Chronicler presents it as a direct divine intervention triggered by Israel's worship. The failed ship-building venture with Ahaziah of Israel at the end of the chapter seems awkwardly placed and may reflect the Chronicler's desire to end Jehoshaphat's narrative with a warning against foreign alliances, balancing the victory with a reminder of the king's persistent weakness.

Connections: Jehoshaphat's prayer draws directly on Solomon's Temple dedication prayer (2 Chronicles 6:28-31), creating a narrative fulfillment: Solomon asked God to hear when Israel prayed facing the Temple, and now God does exactly that. The phrase 'stand still and see the salvation of the LORD' echoes Moses at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:13), linking this deliverance to the Exodus itself. The battle-by-praise theme anticipates Joshua at Jericho (Joshua 6), where worship rather than siege warfare brought down the walls. The chesed refrain 'His faithful love endures forever' connects to the Psalter (especially Psalm 136) and to the Temple dedication (2 Chronicles 5:13), forming a worship thread that runs through the Chronicler's entire work.

¹After this, the Moabites and Ammonites, along with some of the Meunites, came against Jehoshaphat for war. ²Messengers came and told Jehoshaphat, "A vast multitude is coming against you from beyond the Dead Sea, from Edom. They are already at Hazazon-tamar" — that is, En-gedi. ³Jehoshaphat was afraid. He set his face to seek the LORD and proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah. ⁴The people of Judah assembled to seek help from the LORD. They came from every city in Judah to seek the LORD. ⁵Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem, in the house of the LORD, in front of the new courtyard. ⁶He said: "O LORD, God of our ancestors — are You not God in heaven? Do You not rule over all the kingdoms of the nations? In Your hand are power and might, and no one can stand against You." ⁷"Are You not our God, who drove out the inhabitants of this land before Your people Israel and gave it to the descendants of Abraham Your friend forever?" ⁸"They settled in it and built a sanctuary in it for Your name, saying:" ⁹"If disaster comes upon us — sword, judgment, plague, or famine — we will stand before this house and before You, for Your name is in this house. We will cry out to You in our distress, and You will hear and deliver." ¹⁰"And now, look — the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, whose territory You did not allow Israel to invade when they came from the land of Egypt — Israel turned away from them and did not destroy them —" ¹¹"yet now they are repaying us by coming to drive us out of Your possession that You gave us as an inheritance." ¹²"Our God, will You not bring judgment on them? For we have no power to face this vast multitude that is coming against us. We do not know what to do — but our eyes are on You." ¹³All Judah was standing before the LORD — their small children, their wives, and their older children as well. ¹⁴Then the Spirit of the LORD came upon Jahaziel son of Zechariah, son of Benaiah, son of Jeiel, son of Mattaniah — a Levite from the descendants of Asaph — in the middle of the assembly. ¹⁵He said, "Listen, all Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem, and you, King Jehoshaphat! This is what the LORD says to you: Do not be afraid and do not be dismayed before this vast multitude, for the battle is not yours but God's." ¹⁶"Tomorrow, go down against them. They will be coming up by the ascent of Ziz, and you will find them at the end of the wadi, facing the wilderness of Jeruel." ¹⁷"You will not need to fight in this battle. Take your positions, stand still, and watch the deliverance the LORD will accomplish for you, Judah and Jerusalem. Do not be afraid and do not be dismayed. Go out to face them tomorrow, for the LORD is with you." ¹⁸Jehoshaphat bowed with his face to the ground along with all Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before the LORD, worshipping the LORD. ¹⁹Then the Levites — from the Kohathites and the Korahites — rose to their feet to praise the LORD, the God of Israel, with a tremendously loud voice. ²⁰They rose early in the morning and went out toward the wilderness of Tekoa. As they set out, Jehoshaphat stood and said, "Listen to me, Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem! Trust in the LORD your God and you will be upheld. Trust in His prophets and you will succeed." ²¹After consulting with the people, he appointed singers for the LORD, praising Him in the splendor of holiness, to go out ahead of the armed forces, saying: "Give thanks to the LORD, for His faithful love endures forever!" ²²At

the moment they began to sing and praise, the LORD set ambushes against the Ammonites, Moabites, and the people of Mount Seir who had come against Judah, and they were struck down. ²³The Ammonites and Moabites turned against the people of Mount Seir, devoting them to total destruction. When they had finished with the people of Seir, they helped destroy each other. ²⁴When Judah reached the overlook facing the wilderness and looked toward the multitude, they saw only corpses lying on the ground. No one had escaped. ²⁵Jehoshaphat and his people came to collect the plunder. Among the dead they found an abundance of goods, equipment, and valuable items. They stripped off more than they could carry. It took three days to gather the plunder because there was so much. ²⁶On the fourth day they assembled in the Valley of Beracah, for there they blessed the LORD. That is why the place is called the Valley of Beracah to this day. ²⁷Then every man of Judah and Jerusalem returned, with Jehoshaphat at their head, to go back to Jerusalem with joy, for the LORD had given them joy over their enemies. ²⁸They entered Jerusalem with lyres, harps, and trumpets, going to the house of the LORD. ²⁹The fear of God fell on all the kingdoms of the surrounding lands when they heard that the LORD had fought against the enemies of Israel. ³⁰Jehoshaphat's kingdom was at peace, for his God had given him rest on every side. ³¹Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah. He was thirty-five years old when he became king and reigned twenty-five years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Azubah daughter of Shilhi. ³²He walked in the way of his father Asa and did not turn aside from it, doing what was right in the eyes of the LORD. ³³However, the high places were not removed, and the people had still not set their hearts on the God of their ancestors. ³⁴The rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, from first to last, are written in the records of Jehu son of Hanani, which are included in the Book of the Kings of Israel. ³⁵After this, Jehoshaphat king of Judah allied himself with Ahaziah king of Israel, who acted wickedly. ³⁶He partnered with him to build ships to sail to Tarshish. They built the ships at Ezion-geber. ³⁷Then Eliezer son of Dodavahu from Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat: "Because you have allied yourself with Ahaziah, the LORD has broken what you have made." The ships were wrecked and never sailed to Tarshish.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew me-ha-ammonim is often emended to me-ha-me'unim ('Meunites'), a people from the region of Mount Seir. The coalition represents nations east and southeast of Judah, all of whom had historical grievances against Israel. The invasion is presented as a consequence of the wrath announced in 19:2.
2. The Hebrew reads me-Aram ('from Aram/Syria'), but most scholars and some manuscripts read me-Edom, which fits the geographic context: the invaders approach from the southeast via the Dead Sea shore. Hazazon-tamar, identified with En-gedi, is on the western shore of the Dead Sea — meaning the enemy is already deep inside Judean territory. The alarm is urgent.
3. The sequence is significant: fear, then deliberate turning to God, then communal action. The verb va-yira ('he was afraid') is honest — the text does not pretend the king felt no fear. But he channels fear into seeking (lidrosh) the LORD rather than into panic or military preparation. The fast signals national emergency and collective repentance.
4. The verb le-vaqqush ('to seek, to request') appears twice, emphasizing the intensity of the national appeal. The gathering from 'all the cities of Judah' indicates a total mobilization — not military but spiritual. The entire population converges on Jerusalem.
5. The king stands as an intercessor in the Temple complex, before the new courtyard (he-chatzer ha-chadashah). The precise location of this 'new courtyard' is uncertain — it may have been an expansion of the original Temple courts. The public setting means the king's prayer is both personal and representative: he prays on behalf of the nation.
6. The phrase Elohei avoteinu ('God of our ancestors') invokes the covenant relationship established with the patriarchs. The three rhetorical questions establish God's cosmic authority (heaven), political authority (kingdoms), and military authority (power and might). This theological preface shapes everything that follows.
7. The title ohavkha ('Your friend,' literally 'the one loving You') applied to Abraham appears also in Isaiah 41:8 and James 2:23. It grounds the land promise in a personal relationship between God and the patriarch. The word le-olam ('forever') asserts that the gift of the land is permanent — the invaders are therefore attacking what God has permanently given.
8. The miqdash ('sanctuary') is Solomon's Temple. The phrase le-shimkha ('for Your name') connects to the Deuteronomic theology of the name — the Temple is the place where God's name dwells and where His people can call upon Him.
9. The word shefot ('judgment') here likely means 'judicial punishment' or 'divine verdict' manifested as disaster. The phrase ki shimkha ba-bayit ha-zeh ('for Your name is in this house') is the theological warrant for the prayer — God's name-presence in the Temple makes it a valid address for appeal.

10. Jehoshaphat appeals to historical precedent. When Israel came out of Egypt, God specifically prohibited them from attacking Ammon, Moab, and Edom (Deuteronomy 2:4-19). Israel obeyed and spared these nations. Now those same nations are repaying Israel's obedience with aggression — the irony is sharp and becomes the basis for Jehoshaphat's argument.
11. The verb *gomelim* ('repaying, dealing with') carries the sense of returning evil for good — Israel showed restraint, and these nations respond with invasion. The land is called *yerushatkha* ('Your possession') — it belongs to God, and Israel holds it as a trust. An attack on Israel's land is therefore an attack on God's property.
12. The phrase *eineinu alekha* ('our eyes are on You') is a metaphor of focused dependence — the one who looks to God has stopped looking at the enemy. This phrase has become one of the most frequently quoted lines in Jewish and Christian prayer traditions.
13. The inclusion of *tappam* ('their infants, toddlers'), *neshehem* ('their wives'), and *benehem* ('their sons, older children') means the entire population is present. This is not a military assembly but a national prayer gathering. The presence of children and families underscores the desperation — everyone is there because everyone is at risk.
14. Jahaziel's genealogy traces him to Asaph, one of the three Levitical worship leaders appointed by David (1 Chronicles 25). The full genealogy (five generations) establishes his legitimacy. The phrase *haytah alav ruach Adonai* ('the Spirit of the LORD was upon him') identifies this as a genuine prophetic utterance, not a prepared speech. The Spirit comes 'in the midst of the assembly' — publicly, before the entire nation.
15. The verbs *al tire'u ve-al techatu* ('do not fear and do not be shattered/dismayed') pair emotional fear with the paralysis that follows it. The oracle uses the same reassurance formula found throughout the Hebrew Bible when God commissions someone for a dangerous task (Joshua 1:9, Isaiah 41:10).
16. The ascent of Ziz (*ma'aleh ha-Tzitz*) is a pass ascending from the Dead Sea basin toward the Judean highlands. The wadi (*nachal*) serves as a geographic funnel. The wilderness of Jeruel lies east of Tekoa. God provides precise tactical intelligence — not because Judah needs to plan an attack, but so they know exactly where to go and what they will see.
17. The combination of 'go out to face them' with 'you will not need to fight' creates an apparent paradox: they must march toward the enemy but they will not engage in combat. The resolution comes in verses 21-22 where the march is a worship procession rather than a military advance.
18. The king leads the response: he bows first (*va-yiqqod appayim artzah*, 'he bowed, face to the ground'), and the nation follows. The posture is total prostration — forehead on the earth. This is the worship response to a prophetic oracle of deliverance. They have not yet seen the victory, but they worship as though it has already happened.
19. The Kohathites and Korahites are Levitical clans with specific worship responsibilities (1 Chronicles 6, 9). The phrase *be-qol gadol le-ma'elah* ('with a great voice upward') indicates an enormous volume of praise — the sound rises upward toward heaven. This spontaneous praise erupts the night before the battle, while the enemy is still approaching.
20. The wordplay *ha'aminu / te'amenu* is one of the most famous in the Hebrew Bible, also appearing in Isaiah 7:9 ('if you do not stand firm in faith, you will not stand firm at all'). The root *aman* also produces the word 'amen.' Tekoa is the hometown of the prophet Amos.
21. The phrase *hadrat qodesh* ('splendor of holiness' or 'holy splendor') describes the sacred beauty of the worship procession. The *chalutz* ('armed troops, vanguard') would normally lead the march; placing singers before them reverses standard military order. The *chesed* refrain *ki le-olam chasdo* is one of the most repeated phrases in the Hebrew Bible.
22. The word *me'arevim* ('ambushes, ambushers') is the same term used for standard military ambush tactics. The LORD uses the enemy's own military instincts against them. The verb *va-yinnagefu* ('they were struck, defeated') is a divine passive — God is the implied agent of the striking.
23. The verb *le-hacharim* ('to devote to destruction') is the *herem* vocabulary — total annihilation as though fulfilling a sacred ban. The coalition first destroys its weakest member (Mount Seir) and then turns on itself. The phrase *azru ish be-re'ehu le-mashchit* ('each one helped his neighbor to destroy') describes mutual annihilation — allies became executioners of each other.
24. The *mitzpeh* ('lookout point, watchtower') gives Judah an elevated vantage point. The scene is total: *pegarim nofelim artzah* ('corpses fallen to the ground') with *ein peleitah* ('no survivor, no one escaped'). Judah did not strike a single blow. The army that was supposed to fight arrived to find the battle already over.
25. The three-day plunder collection emphasizes the magnitude of the invading force — an army large enough to carry that much wealth was large enough to destroy Judah. The word *kelei chamudot* ('desirable items, precious objects') indicates luxury goods. The verb *va-yenatzlu* ('they stripped, took for themselves') means they removed valuables from the corpses and baggage.
26. The name *Beracah* (*berakhah*) means 'blessing.' The place-naming follows a common biblical pattern: an event defines a location's identity. The valley where they gave thanks to God retains that act of thanksgiving in its name permanently. The 'fourth day' — three days of plunder plus one of worship — means the entire aftermath is spent in gratitude.
27. Jehoshaphat leads the return just as he led the march out — *be-rosham* ('at their head'). The joy (*simchah*) is attributed to God: *ki simecham Adonai* ('for the LORD caused them to rejoice'). The joy is not self-generated but divinely given, matching the pattern of the entire chapter where God does what Israel cannot.
28. The three instruments — *nevalim* ('lyres'), *kinnorot* ('harps'), and *chatzotzrot* ('trumpets') — form the standard Temple worship ensemble established by David. The procession moves from the battlefield to the Temple, completing the circle: they prayed at the Temple, marched out with worship, and returned to the Temple with praise.

- 29.** The pachad Elohim ('fear/dread of God') is a supernatural terror that prevents military aggression. The surrounding nations hear what happened — an entire coalition destroyed itself — and recognize that Israel's God is the active agent. The reputation of the LORD replaces the need for a standing defense.
- 30.** The verb *va-tishqot* ('it was quiet, at rest') and *va-yanach* ('He gave rest') describe the shalom that follows divine deliverance. The phrase *me-saviv* ('from all around, on every side') indicates comprehensive peace — no threat from any direction. This rest echoes the Deuteronomic promise of rest in the land (Deuteronomy 12:10).
- 31.** The regnal summary follows the standard formula: age at accession, length of reign, capital city, queen mother's name. Twenty-five years is a substantial reign, indicating stability. The queen mother (*gevurah*) is named because she held an official position in the Judean court.
- 32.** The evaluation follows the standard Deuteronomistic formula: the king is measured against his predecessors and against the LORD's standard. Walking in the way of Asa is positive, though Asa himself had failures late in his reign. The phrase *ha-yashar be-einei Adonai* ('the right thing in the eyes of the LORD') is the highest commendation in the regnal evaluation system.
- 33.** The qualifier *akh* ('however, nevertheless') introduces the limitation on Jehoshaphat's otherwise positive reign. The *bamot* ('high places') were local worship sites that competed with the centralized worship at Jerusalem's Temple. The people's hearts remained unestablished (*lo hekinu levavam*) — the same verb used positively of Jehoshaphat in 19:3. The king's own heart was set on God, but he failed to bring the people's hearts to the same place.
- 34.** The source citation refers to a prophetic history by Jehu son of Hanani — the same prophet who rebuked Jehoshaphat in 19:2. This prophetic record was incorporated into the larger Book of the Kings of Israel, a source text used by the Chronicler but no longer extant.
- 35.** The verb *hitchabber* ('he joined himself, allied') indicates a formal partnership. Ahaziah is Ahab's son and successor — Jehoshaphat is repeating the same mistake that nearly killed him at Ramoth-gilead. The Chronicler's comment *hu hirshia la'asot* ('he acted wickedly') refers to Ahaziah, not Jehoshaphat, but the alliance implicates the Judean king in the wickedness.
- 36.** Ezion-geber is a port at the northern tip of the Gulf of Aqaba (Red Sea). Tarshish likely refers to a distant western Mediterranean destination, possibly Tartessus in Spain. The joint venture was a commercial enterprise — trade ships designed for long-distance cargo. Solomon had operated a similar fleet from the same port (1 Kings 9:26).
- 37.** Mareshah is a city in the Shephelah (lowland foothills) of Judah, later significant in the Hellenistic period. The name Eliezer means 'my God is help' — an ironic name for a prophet announcing that God has destroyed the king's project. The phrase *lo atzru lalekhet* ('they were not able to go') indicates complete failure.

21

Summary: *Jehoshaphat dies and sleeps with his fathers, and Jehoram his firstborn succeeds him. Once Jehoram secures the throne, he murders all six of his brothers with the sword, along with some officials of Israel. He is thirty-two when he becomes king and reigns eight years in Jerusalem. He walks in the ways of the kings of Israel, specifically the house of Ahab, because he has married Ahab's daughter. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD, but the LORD is unwilling to destroy the house of David because of the covenant He made with David — the promise to give him a lamp forever. During Jehoram's reign, Edom revolts and establishes its own king, breaking free from Judah's control. Libnah also revolts. Then a letter arrives from Elijah the prophet — a written oracle of judgment. Elijah's letter announces that because Jehoram has not walked in the ways of his father Jehoshaphat or Asa, but has walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and because he has murdered his own brothers who were better than himself, the LORD will strike his people, his children, his wives, and all his possessions with a great plague, and Jehoram himself will suffer a severe disease of the intestines. The Philistines and Arabs attack Judah, carrying off the king's possessions and his sons and wives — only Jehoahaz (Ahaziah), his youngest son, is left. Then the LORD strikes Jehoram with an incurable intestinal disease. After two years of suffering, his intestines come out and he dies in severe pain. His people make no fire of honor for him. He departs with no one's regret.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The letter from Elijah is one of the most unusual elements in Chronicles. Elijah is primarily a northern prophet associated with the kingdom of Israel, yet here he writes a prophetic letter to the king of Judah. The timing is debated — some scholars believe Elijah had already been taken up to heaven before Jehoram's reign began, suggesting the letter was written prophetically before the events occurred or that the chronology overlaps differently than usually assumed. The phrase 'no one's regret' (*be-lo chemdat*) at the chapter's end is devastating — it means no one mourned him, no one missed him, no one wanted him. This is the anti-epitaph, the opposite of the honor given to good kings. The murder of his own brothers to secure the throne mirrors the worst practices of surrounding kingdoms and stands in stark contrast to the fraternal covenant ideal of*

Israel.

Translation Friction: The Elijah letter creates chronological difficulties. According to 2 Kings 2, Elijah was taken up during the reign of Jehoshaphat's contemporary Jehoram of Israel. The Chronicler either works with a different chronological framework, understands the letter as written beforehand and delivered later, or identifies this as one of the textual tensions that the ancient editor did not attempt to resolve. The gruesome description of Jehoram's death (intestines coming out) is rare in biblical narrative — the level of physical detail serves a theological purpose, connecting the king's internal corruption (murdering brothers, leading the people into idolatry) with an internal physical destruction. The refusal to grant him the funeral fire of honor is a public statement that the people did not regard him as worthy of the Davidic legacy.

Connections: The Davidic covenant promise ('a lamp forever') echoes 2 Samuel 7 and 1 Kings 11:36 — even the worst Davidic king cannot extinguish the covenant because God's faithfulness is unconditional in its preservation of the line, though not unconditional in its blessing of individuals. Jehoram's marriage to Ahab's daughter connects the corruption of the northern house directly to Judah's throne, fulfilling the warning pattern established when Jehoshaphat first allied with Ahab (2 Chronicles 18). The Edomite revolt reverses the subjugation established under David and Solomon, signaling the progressive shrinking of the Davidic empire as kings depart from the LORD.

¹Jehoshaphat slept with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the City of David. His son Jehoram reigned in his place. ²He had brothers, sons of Jehoshaphat: Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azaryahu, Michael, and Shephatiah. All these were sons of Jehoshaphat king of Israel. ³Their father had given them generous gifts of silver, gold, and valuables, along with fortified cities in Judah. But the kingdom he gave to Jehoram, because he was the firstborn. ⁴When Jehoram had established himself over his father's kingdom and secured his position, he killed all his brothers with the sword, along with some of the officials of Israel. ⁵Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem. ⁶He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab had done, for he had married a daughter of Ahab. He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. ⁷Yet the LORD was unwilling to destroy the house of David, because of the covenant He had made with David and because He had promised to give him a lamp — him and his sons — for all time. ⁸During his reign, Edom revolted from under Judah's control and set up a king of their own. ⁹Jehoram crossed over with his commanders and all his chariots. He rose at night and struck the Edomites who had surrounded him, along with their chariot commanders. ¹⁰So Edom has been in revolt from under Judah's control to this day. At that same time, Libnah also revolted from under his authority, because he had abandoned the LORD, the God of his ancestors. ¹¹He also built high places in the hill country of Judah and led the inhabitants of Jerusalem into unfaithfulness, and drove Judah astray. ¹²A letter came to him from Elijah the prophet, saying: "This is what the LORD, the God of David your ancestor, says: Because you have not walked in the ways of your father Jehoshaphat or in the ways of Asa king of Judah," ¹³"but have walked in the ways of the kings of Israel and have led Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem into the same unfaithfulness as the house of Ahab, and have also murdered your own brothers — your father's family — who were better than you," ¹⁴"the LORD is about to strike your people, your sons, your wives, and all your possessions with a devastating plague." ¹⁵"And you yourself will suffer severe illness — a disease of your intestines — until your intestines come out because of the disease, day after day." ¹⁶The LORD stirred up against Jehoram the hostility of the Philistines and the Arabs who lived near the Cushites. ¹⁷They invaded Judah, broke through its defenses, and carried off all the property found in the royal palace, along with his sons and wives. No son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest. ¹⁸After all this, the LORD struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease. ¹⁹As time passed, at the end of two years, his intestines came out because of his disease, and he died in severe pain. ²⁰He was thirty-two years old when he became king and reigned eight years in Jerusalem. He departed with no one's regret. They buried him in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal transition formula follows the standard pattern: the king 'sleeps with his fathers' (a euphemism for death that implies joining the ancestral community), receives honorable burial in the royal tombs, and is succeeded by his son. This orderly transition contrasts sharply with the chaos

Jehoram will create.

2. Jehoshaphat is called 'king of Israel' here — an unusual title for a Judean king that may reflect the Chronicler's view that the legitimate king of all Israel was always the Davidic king in Jerusalem. The six brothers are named, giving them individual identity before the narrative records their murder. Two of the names contain forms of Azariah ('the LORD has helped').
3. Jehoshaphat distributed wealth and fortified cities to all his sons — a wise provision to prevent rivalry. The firstborn received the kingdom itself. This arrangement should have secured peaceful coexistence, making Jehoram's subsequent fratricide all the more inexcusable: his brothers had been provided for and posed no immediate threat to his throne.
4. The verb *va-yitchazzaq* ('he strengthened himself, secured his power') indicates a period of political consolidation before the killings. The fratricide is total — all six brothers. The additional killing of *sarei Yisrael* ('officials of Israel') suggests that some royal administrators opposed Jehoram or supported his brothers. This purge of family and loyalists is characteristic of tyranny, not Davidic kingship.
5. The brief eight-year reign contrasts with his father's twenty-five years. The Chronicler places the regnal data after the fratricide rather than before it, so the reader encounters the crime before learning the king's vital statistics — the narrative order serves a moral purpose.
6. The causal connection is explicit: *ki bat Achav haytah lo ishah* ('for the daughter of Ahab was his wife'). The marriage alliance that Jehoshaphat arranged for political purposes has now imported Omride idolatry directly into the Davidic house. The evaluation 'he did evil in the eyes of the LORD' is the standard formula for condemned kings, placing Jehoram in the same category as the northern dynasties.
7. The *berit* with David refers to the promise in 2 Samuel 7:12-16 that David's dynasty would endure forever. The word *nir* ('lamp') appears in 1 Kings 11:36 and 15:4 with the same meaning — the Davidic line as a perpetual light. The phrase *kol ha-yamim* ('all the days') means the promise has no expiration date.
8. The Edomite revolt is a direct consequence of divine judgment — the empire that David built is crumbling under a king who has abandoned David's God. The verb *pasha* ('he rebelled, broke away') is the same verb used for Moab's revolt in 2 Kings 1:1. Edom establishing its own king (*va-yamlikhu aleihem melek*) signals full independence.
9. Despite a night attack that broke through the Edomite encirclement, Jehoram failed to reconquer Edom. The verse describes a tactical escape rather than a strategic victory — Jehoram survived but did not restore Judah's control.
10. Libnah was a Judean city in the Shephelah, near the Philistine border. Its revolt suggests internal disintegration — not just foreign vassal states but Judean territory is breaking away. The Chronicler provides the theological explanation: *ki azav et Adonai* ('because he abandoned the LORD'). The political collapse mirrors the spiritual abandonment.
11. The verb *va-yezen* ('he caused to commit fornication, led into unfaithfulness') uses the metaphor of marital infidelity for idolatry — the same imagery used by Hosea and Ezekiel. The verb *va-yaddach* ('he drove astray, pushed away') indicates active coercion, not mere passive tolerance. Jehoram does not simply permit idolatry; he enforces it.
12. The phrase *mikhtav me-Eliyahu* ('a letter from Elijah') raises chronological questions about Elijah's ministry timeline. Some understand this as a letter written before Elijah's translation and delivered afterward; others see the Chronicler working with a different chronological arrangement. Regardless, the prophetic authority of the letter is presented as fully valid.
13. The indictment has two charges: religious corruption (leading Judah into Ahab-style idolatry) and fratricide (murdering your brothers). The phrase *ha-tovim mimmekha* ('who were better than you') is a devastating divine assessment — God Himself declares the murdered brothers to have been superior to the surviving king.
14. The scope of judgment matches the scope of the crime: Jehoram destroyed his own family, so the LORD will strike his family. The word *maggefah gedolah* ('a great plague, a devastating blow') implies a sweeping calamity that will reach every domain of the king's life — people, children, wives, property.
15. The personal punishment targets the king's body. The phrase *machaleh me'ekha* ('disease of your intestines') describes a progressive, excruciating condition. The phrase *yamim al yamim* ('days upon days') indicates prolonged suffering — the disease will not kill quickly but will torment over an extended period.
16. The verb *va-ya'er* ('He stirred up, awakened') makes God the instigator of the invasion — the Philistines and Arabs are instruments of divine judgment. The phrase *asher al yad Kushim* ('who were near the Cushites') locates these Arabs on the southern border, near the region of Cush (Ethiopia/Nubia). The attack comes from the west (Philistines) and south (Arabs), squeezing Judah from multiple directions.
17. The judgment fulfills Elijah's letter precisely: people, sons, wives, and possessions are all taken. Jehoahaz is another name for Ahaziah (2 Chronicles 22:1) — the components of the name are simply rearranged. Only the youngest son survives, preserving the Davidic line by a thread. The phrase *lo nish'ar lo ben* ('no son was left to him') echoes the near-extinction of the line.
18. The phrase *le-ein marpe* ('without healing, incurable') indicates that no remedy existed. The disease follows the foreign invasion — Jehoram loses his family and possessions first, then his health. The sequence strips him of everything, layer by layer.
19. The two-year duration (*yamim shenayim*) of the intestinal disease fulfills the 'day by day' prediction in Elijah's letter (verse 15). The clinical detail — *yatze'u me'av* ('his intestines came out') — is intentionally graphic, connecting internal moral corruption with internal physical destruction. He dies *be-tachalu'im ra'im* ('in evil/severe diseases'), with no relief or dignity.

20. The contrast with Jehoshaphat's honorable burial (21:1) is complete. Father and son lie in the same city but not in the same tombs. The denial of royal burial rites is a posthumous judgment from the people — they refuse to honor in death a king who dishonored them in life.

22

Summary: *The inhabitants of Jerusalem make Ahaziah, Jehoram's youngest son, king because the raiding band of Arabs had killed all the older sons. Ahaziah is twenty-two (or forty-two in some manuscripts) when he becomes king and reigns one year in Jerusalem. His mother is Athaliah, granddaughter of Omri. He walks in the ways of the house of Ahab because his mother is his counselor in wickedness. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD like the house of Ahab, for after his father's death they become his advisors, leading him to ruin. On their counsel he goes with Joram son of Ahab to fight Hazael king of Aram at Ramoth-gilead. Joram is wounded, and Ahaziah goes down to visit him at Jezreel. This visit becomes his destruction, for it is from God — when he arrives, he goes out with Joram against Jehu son of Nimshi, whom the LORD has anointed to destroy the house of Ahab. While Jehu is executing judgment on Ahab's house, he finds the officials of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's brothers serving Ahaziah, and he kills them. Then he searches for Ahaziah, who is caught hiding in Samaria. They bring him to Jehu and kill him, but they bury him because they say, 'He is the grandson of Jehoshaphat, who sought the LORD with all his heart.' The house of Ahaziah has no one strong enough to hold the kingdom. Athaliah, Ahaziah's mother, sees that her son is dead and rises to destroy all the royal offspring of the house of Judah. But Jehoshabeath, daughter of King Jehoram and wife of Jehoiada the priest, steals Joash son of Ahaziah from among the royal princes being murdered and hides him with his nurse in a bedroom. She conceals him from Athaliah so that he is not killed. Athaliah reigns over the land for six years.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter traces the near-extinction of the Davidic line. The Chronicler makes explicit what the parallel in 2 Kings leaves implicit: the visit to Jezreel that killed Ahaziah was mi-Elohim ('from God') — it was divinely orchestrated. The same God who promised David an eternal dynasty now brings the king to the place where Jehu's purge is happening. This is not contradiction but the complex interplay of covenant promise and covenant judgment. The rescue of the infant Joash by Jehoshabeath is one of the most dramatic preservation stories in the Hebrew Bible — the entire future of the messianic line hangs on a single woman's courage and a single baby's survival. Athaliah's seizure of the throne is the only instance in the history of Judah where a non-Davidic ruler sits on David's throne — and she is not merely non-Davidic but a daughter of Ahab's house, making this effectively an Omride usurpation of the Judean monarchy.*

Translation Friction: *The age of Ahaziah at accession presents a textual problem: the Hebrew text reads forty-two, but 2 Kings 8:26 reads twenty-two. Since his father Jehoram died at forty, Ahaziah cannot have been forty-two at accession. Most scholars accept twenty-two as the original reading, with forty-two resulting from a scribal error in the numbers. The Chronicler's statement that Ahaziah's destruction came 'from God' raises the question of how divine sovereignty interacts with human responsibility — Ahaziah chose to ally with the house of Ahab and chose to visit Joram, yet the outcome was divinely determined. The burial of Ahaziah despite his wickedness, granted because of Jehoshaphat's legacy, shows how a grandfather's faithfulness can provide a measure of honor even to an unfaithful descendant.*

Connections: *Athaliah's attempt to destroy the royal seed (zera ha-mamlakhah) connects to the broader biblical theme of threats to the messianic line — from Pharaoh's slaughter of Hebrew infants (Exodus 1-2) to Herod's massacre at Bethlehem (Matthew 2). Each time, God preserves a remnant. Jehoshabeath's act of hiding baby Joash parallels Jochebed hiding baby Moses. Jehu's destruction of Ahab's house fulfills Elijah's prophecy (1 Kings 21:21-24), connecting this chapter to the prophetic narrative that spans from Elijah through Elisha. The phrase 'he sought the LORD with all his heart' applied to Jehoshaphat echoes the Deuteronomic command to love God with all the heart (Deuteronomy 6:5).*

¹The inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah, his youngest son, king in his place, because the raiding party that came with the Arabs to the camp had killed all the older sons. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram became king of Judah. ²Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah, a granddaughter of Omri. ³He too walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother was his counselor in doing evil. ⁴He

did evil in the eyes of the LORD like the house of Ahab, for after his father's death they became his advisors — to his ruin. ⁵F following their advice, he went with Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, to fight against Hazael king of Aram at Ramoth-gilead. The Arameans wounded Joram. ⁶Joram returned to Jezreel to recover from the wounds the Arameans had inflicted on him at Ramah when he fought Hazael king of Aram. And Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, went down to visit Joram son of Ahab at Jezreel because Joram was wounded. ⁷Ahaziah's downfall came from God through his visit to Joram. When he arrived, he went out with Joram to confront Jehu son of Nimshi, whom the LORD had anointed to destroy the house of Ahab. ⁸While Jehu was executing judgment on the house of Ahab, he found the officials of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's brothers who were serving Ahaziah, and he killed them. ⁹He searched for Ahaziah, and they captured him — he was hiding in Samaria. They brought him to Jehu and put him to death. But they buried him, for they said, "He is a grandson of Jehoshaphat, who sought the LORD with all his heart." And the house of Ahaziah had no one with the strength to hold the kingdom. ¹⁰When Athaliah, Ahaziah's mother, saw that her son was dead, she rose up and destroyed all the royal offspring of the house of Judah. ¹¹But Jehoshabeath, the king's daughter, took Joash son of Ahaziah and stole him away from among the royal princes who were being killed. She put him and his nurse in a bedroom. Jehoshabeath — daughter of King Jehoram and wife of Jehoiada the priest, because she was Ahaziah's sister — hid him from Athaliah, and Athaliah did not put him to death. ¹²He remained hidden with them in the house of God for six years, while Athaliah reigned over the land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The people, not the royal court, install Ahaziah — the phrase *yoshvei Yerushalayim* ('the inhabitants of Jerusalem') indicates a popular decision born of necessity. All the older sons were killed in the Arab raid described in 21:17. Ahaziah is the sole surviving male heir, making his accession a matter of dynastic survival rather than choice.
2. The Hebrew text reads forty-two (*arba'im u-shtayim*), but this is almost certainly a scribal error since his father died at age forty. The parallel in 2 Kings 8:26 reads twenty-two, which is chronologically coherent. Athaliah is called *bat Omri* ('daughter of Omri') in the sense of 'descendant/granddaughter' — she was likely the daughter of Ahab and thus Omri's granddaughter. Her identification through Omri rather than Ahab may emphasize that the corruption extends through the entire dynasty.
3. The phrase *immo haytah yo'atzto le-harshi'a* ('his mother was his counselor to act wickedly') assigns direct responsibility to Athaliah for her son's apostasy. The queen mother's role in Judah was not merely ceremonial — she held a position of real political influence. Athaliah used that position to import the religious practices of her father Ahab's house into the Judean court.
4. The word *le-mashchit* ('to destruction, to his ruin') is ominous — the advisors from Ahab's house are not merely giving bad counsel but are leading Ahaziah toward his own death. The Chronicler frames the Ahab connection as a death sentence carried out through political influence.
5. Ramoth-gilead is the same battlefield where Ahab was killed (2 Chronicles 18). History is repeating: a Judean king goes with an Israelite king to Ramoth-gilead, and disaster follows. Hazael is the Aramean king whose rise was predicted by Elisha (2 Kings 8:12-13). The wounding of Joram sets up the chain of events that leads to Ahaziah's death.
6. Ahaziah is called Azariah here (a variant or scribal variation of his name). The visit to Jezreel — Ahab's royal city — places Ahaziah in the exact location where Jehu will execute divine judgment on the house of Ahab. What appears to be a courtesy visit to a wounded ally is in fact a divine appointment with death.
7. The phrase *me-Elohim* ('from God') attributes the event to divine causation without removing human agency. Ahaziah made real choices; God ensured those choices led to judgment. Jehu's anointing for the destruction of Ahab's house is recorded in 2 Kings 9:1-10, where Elisha sends a prophet to anoint him.
8. The 'sons of Ahaziah's brothers' are nephews — children of brothers who had themselves been killed in the Arab raid (21:17). Their presence in Ahaziah's court placed them in the zone of Jehu's purge. The verb *ke-hishshafet* ('when he was judging, executing judgment') frames Jehu's violence as judicial action rather than mere political assassination.
9. The verb *mitchabbe* ('hiding himself') indicates Ahaziah knew he was a target and attempted to escape. The Chronicler's account differs in some details from 2 Kings 9:27-28, where Ahaziah is wounded at Ibleam and dies at Megiddo. The theological point — Ahaziah's death as divine judgment — is consistent in both accounts.
10. Athaliah acts from the position of queen mother (*gevirah*), which gave her real political authority. Her Omride identity makes this a northern takeover of the southern throne — the very danger that the prophets had warned about when Jehoshaphat first allied with Ahab. The word *zera* ('seed, offspring') connects to the promise of 'seed' throughout the biblical narrative, from Genesis 3:15 onward.
11. Jehoshabeath occupies a unique position: she is a king's daughter (Jehoram's) and a priest's wife (Jehoiada's). This double connection to the royal and priestly houses gives her both access to the endangered princes and a safe hiding place in the Temple complex. The verb *va-tignov* ('she stole him') indicates stealth and urgency — the child had to be snatched from the massacre in progress. The *chadar ha-mittot* ('bedroom, chamber of beds')

was likely within the Temple precincts, where Athaliah would not search.

- 12.** Six years of concealment in the Temple — the longest period of hidden kingship in the biblical narrative. The infant Joash grows into a small child entirely within the Temple precincts, raised by a priest and a princess. The contrast is sharp: Athaliah reigns over the land (*molekhet al ha-aretz*), occupying David's throne, while the true Davidic heir is hidden in God's house. The Temple becomes both sanctuary and nursery for the royal line.

23

Summary: *In the seventh year, the priest Jehoiada gathers his courage and brings five military commanders into a covenant with him. They travel through Judah gathering the Levites and clan leaders and bring them to Jerusalem. The whole assembly makes a covenant with the young king in the house of God, and Jehoiada tells them: 'The king's son will reign, just as the LORD promised concerning the sons of David.' He organizes the Levites and priests into three groups to guard the Temple on the Sabbath: one third at the doors, one third at the royal palace, and one third at the Foundation Gate. The Levites surround the king on every side, weapons in hand, with orders to kill anyone who enters the Temple ranks. They bring the young prince out, place the crown on him, give him the testimony, and anoint him. Jehoiada and his sons proclaim him king. They shout: 'Long live the king!' Athaliah hears the commotion — the people running, the praising, the trumpeters, the singers with instruments leading the celebration. She tears her garments and cries: 'Treason! Treason!' Jehoiada commands the military officers to bring her out between the ranks; anyone who follows her is to be killed with the sword. The priest says: 'Do not put her to death in the house of the LORD.' They seize her, and when she reaches the entrance of the Horse Gate at the royal palace, they execute her there. Jehoiada then makes a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king — that they will be the LORD's people. All the people go to the house of Baal, tear it down, smash its altars and images, and kill Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars. Jehoiada posts guards at the house of the LORD under the direction of the Levitical priests whom David had organized, to offer burnt offerings with rejoicing and singing as David had prescribed. He stations gatekeepers at the Temple gates so that no one unclean in any way may enter. He takes the commanders, nobles, governors, and all the people and brings the king down from the house of the LORD through the upper gate into the royal palace. They seat him on the royal throne. All the people of the land rejoice, and the city is quiet — for they have put Athaliah to death with the sword.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jehoiada's coup is one of the most carefully planned operations in the Hebrew Bible. Every detail is orchestrated: the timing (Sabbath, when Temple guards rotate), the division of forces, the placement of armed Levites around the child. The Chronicler gives the Levites a central role that is less prominent in the parallel account in 2 Kings 11, reflecting his theology that the restoration of proper worship and proper kingship are inseparable. The crowning ceremony includes giving the king 'the testimony' (*ha-edut*) — likely a copy of the Torah or a covenant document that defined the king's obligations under God's law. The king receives authority only in conjunction with accountability. Athaliah's cry of 'treason!' (*qesher! qesher!*) is deeply ironic: she who seized the throne by murdering the legitimate heirs accuses the restorers of the legitimate king of treason.*

Translation Friction: *The execution of Athaliah raises the question of whether a woman could legitimately occupy the throne of Judah. The text never explicitly addresses her gender as the issue; rather, the problem is her usurpation through murder and her non-Davidic (indeed anti-Davidic) identity. The killing of Mattan the priest of Baal is presented as part of the religious cleansing, not as an act of personal vengeance. The Chronicler's emphasis on the Levites and priests throughout the chapter reflects his conviction that the Temple establishment, not just the military, was essential to the restoration. The covenant structure — between God, king, and people — establishes a three-way relationship that prevents any single party from claiming absolute authority.*

Connections: *The crowning of Joash echoes Solomon's coronation (1 Kings 1), where a contested succession is resolved by anointing and public acclamation. The giving of the 'testimony' connects to Deuteronomy 17:18-20, where the king is commanded to keep a copy of the Torah and read it daily. The destruction of the Baal temple parallels Jehu's destruction of the Baal temple in Samaria (2 Kings 10:18-28) — both north and south undergo Baal purges in the same generation. The phrase 'the king's son will reign as the LORD promised' invokes the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7), connecting this dramatic rescue to the long arc of God's promise to David. The child hidden in the Temple and then revealed as king has been seen by Christian interpreters as a type of Christ — the*

true king hidden and then revealed.

¹In the seventh year, Jehoiada gathered his courage and brought the commanders of hundreds into a covenant with him: Azariah son of Jeroham, Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zichri. ²They traveled throughout Judah and gathered the Levites from every city of Judah, along with the heads of the Israelite clans, and they came to Jerusalem. ³The whole assembly made a covenant with the king in the house of God. Jehoiada said to them, "The king's son will reign, just as the LORD promised concerning the sons of David." ⁴"This is what you must do: one third of you — the priests and Levites coming on duty on the Sabbath — will serve as guards at the doorways." ⁵"One third will be at the royal palace, one third at the Foundation Gate, and all the people will be in the courtyards of the house of the LORD." ⁶"No one is to enter the house of the LORD except the priests and the Levites who are on duty — they may enter because they are consecrated. All the people are to observe the LORD's requirement." ⁷"The Levites will surround the king on every side, each man with his weapons in hand. Anyone who enters the Temple building is to be killed. Stay with the king when he comes in and when he goes out." ⁸The Levites and all Judah did exactly as Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each commander took his men — those coming on duty on the Sabbath and those going off duty — because Jehoiada the priest did not release the outgoing divisions. ⁹Then Jehoiada the priest gave the commanders of hundreds the spears, shields, and bucklers that had belonged to King David, which were stored in the house of God. ¹⁰He stationed all the people, each with his weapon in hand, from the south side of the Temple to the north side, by the altar and the Temple building, surrounding the king on every side. ¹¹They brought out the king's son, placed the crown on him, gave him the testimony, and proclaimed him king. Jehoiada and his sons anointed him, and they shouted, "Long live the king!" ¹²When Athaliah heard the commotion — the people running and cheering the king — she went to the people at the house of the LORD. ¹³She looked, and there was the king standing by his pillar at the entrance, with the commanders and trumpeters beside the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and the singers with musical instruments were leading the praise. Athaliah tore her garments and cried out, "Treason! Treason!" ¹⁴Jehoiada the priest brought out the commanders of hundreds who were in charge of the forces and said to them, "Bring her out between the ranks. Anyone who follows her is to be killed with the sword." For the priest had said, "Do not put her to death in the house of the LORD." ¹⁵The y seized her, and when she came to the entrance of the Horse Gate at the royal palace, they put her to death there. ¹⁶Then Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king — that they would be the LORD's people. ¹⁷All the people went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed its altars and its images to pieces, and they killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of the altars. ¹⁸Jehoiada placed the oversight of the house of the LORD in the hands of the Levitical priests, whom David had organized for service at the house of the LORD, to offer the burnt offerings of the LORD as prescribed in the Law of Moses, with the rejoicing and singing that David had established. ¹⁹He stationed gatekeepers at the gates of the house of the LORD so that no one who was unclean for any reason could enter. ²⁰He took the commanders of hundreds, the nobles, the governors of the people, and all the people of the land, and brought the king down from the house of the LORD. They entered through the Upper Gate into the royal palace and seated the king on the royal throne. ²¹All the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet, for they had put Athaliah to death with the sword.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *hitchazzaq* ('he strengthened himself, gathered courage') indicates this was a dangerous undertaking — a priestly coup against a ruling queen who had already massacred the royal family. The five commanders of hundreds (*sarei me'ot*) are named individually, giving the conspiracy historical specificity. Bringing them into a *berit* ('covenant') means the agreement was sworn before God, making betrayal a sacrilege as well as a political act.
2. The gathering of Levites and clan leaders from all Judah transforms this from a palace conspiracy into a national movement. The Levites are essential to the Chronicler's account because the coup takes place in the Temple and involves the sacred liturgical order. The clan leaders (*roshei ha-avot*) represent the people at large.
3. The phrase *ben ha-melek yimlokh* ('the king's son will reign') is a declaration of legitimate succession. The Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7) is the theological warrant for everything that follows.

4. The Sabbath rotation of Temple guards is exploited for the coup: when the shifts change, the arriving guards and departing guards are both present, doubling the available manpower without arousing suspicion. The sippim ('doorways, thresholds') are the entry points to the Temple that must be controlled.
5. The three positions create a triangle of control: the Temple doorways, the royal palace, and the Foundation Gate (sha'ar ha-yesod). This ensures that Athaliah cannot escape or call for reinforcements. The people fill the Temple courts, providing both witnesses and a popular presence that legitimizes the coronation.
6. Even in the urgency of a coup, the sanctity of the Temple is maintained. Only consecrated personnel (ki qodesh hemmah, 'for they are holy') may enter the Temple building itself. The people remain in the courts. Jehoiada insists that the restoration of the king must not violate the holiness of God's house — proper means are as important as the proper end.
7. The Levites form a human shield around the child king — hiqqu saviv ('they will surround completely'). The standing order to kill anyone who breaches the perimeter (ha-ba el ha-bayit yumat, 'whoever enters the building must die') protects both the king and the Temple. The Levites are to remain with the king at all times, covering every movement.
8. The key tactical element: Jehoiada retained both the incoming and outgoing guard rotations (lo patar et ha-machlaqot, 'he did not dismiss the divisions'). This doubled the armed force without requiring any unusual troop movements that might alert Athaliah. The Sabbath rotation provided perfect cover for the military buildup.
9. David's weapons stored in the Temple for centuries are now drawn out to crown his descendant. The detail is both practical (arming the guards) and symbolic — David's own weapons protect David's heir. The shields and spears asher la-melekh David ('which belonged to King David') carry dynastic authority.
10. The positioning creates a wall of armed men stretching from the right shoulder (ketef, 'shoulder, side') to the left shoulder of the Temple, encompassing the altar area. The king stands at the center of this armed ring. The spatial arrangement ensures total protection from every angle.
11. The edut ('testimony') connects to Deuteronomy 17:18-20, where the king is commanded to write a copy of the Torah and keep it beside him. The anointing uses oil, symbolizing the Spirit of God empowering the king for his task. The cry yechi ha-melekh appears at Solomon's coronation as well (1 Kings 1:39).
12. The noise reaches Athaliah — the running (ha-ratzim), the praising (ha-mehallelim), the general commotion — and draws her to the Temple. She comes to investigate, not yet understanding what has happened. Her arrival at the Temple places her in the exact location where her judgment will be pronounced.
13. The scene Athaliah encounters is a fully realized coronation already in progress. The king stands at his pillar (ammudo, a designated royal position at the Temple entrance). The entire apparatus of state celebration — military commanders, trumpets, singers, instruments — is active. Her cry qesher qesher ('conspiracy! treason!') is bitterly ironic: she who conspired to murder the royal family and seize the throne calls the restoration of the legitimate heir a conspiracy.
14. Jehoiada's command has two parts: remove Athaliah from the Temple (she must not be executed on holy ground) and kill anyone who supports her. The phrase el mi-beit ha-sederot ('out from between the ranks/rows') means she is to be escorted through the armed lines and out of the sacred precinct. The prohibition against killing her in the Temple preserves the holiness of the space.
15. The Horse Gate (sha'ar ha-susim) connects the Temple area to the royal palace complex. Athaliah is executed at the boundary between the sacred and royal precincts — symbolically, at the intersection of the two domains she corrupted. The execution is swift and without trial; her guilt is self-evident from six years of illegitimate rule.
16. The covenant structure — priest, people, king — establishes checks and balances. No single party has absolute authority. The king rules under God's law as mediated by the priesthood, and the people participate as covenant partners rather than subjects. This is covenantal governance.
17. The existence of a temple of Baal in Jerusalem itself — not just high places in the countryside but a dedicated Baal temple in the capital — reveals how deeply Athaliah had embedded Omride religion in Judah. The destruction is total: building, altars, images. Mattan the priest of Baal is killed at his own altars, a reversal of the sacrificial system he served.
18. Jehoiada restores the Davidic liturgical order — the system of worship that David organized and that had been corrupted or abandoned under Athaliah. The phrase ka-katuv be-torat Mosheh ('as written in the Torah of Moses') ensures the sacrificial system follows Mosaic law, while the singing follows Davidic practice. Both authorities — Moses and David — define proper worship.
19. The gatekeepers (sho'arim) enforce ritual purity at the Temple entrances. After years of Baal worship under Athaliah, the distinction between clean and unclean had been blurred or ignored. Restoring the gatekeeping function restores the boundary between holy and common that defines Temple worship.
20. The procession moves from Temple to palace — from the house of God to the house of the king. The Upper Gate connects the Temple mount to the royal complex. Seating the king on kisse ha-mamlakhah ('the throne of the kingdom') completes the transfer of power. Every level of society is present: military commanders, nobles, governors, common people.
21. The chapter ends with two conditions that seem contradictory but coexist: rejoicing (va-yismechu) and quiet (shaqatah). The joy is over the restoration of the Davidic king; the quiet is the peace that follows the removal of the usurper. The final note — they killed Athaliah with the sword —

closes the Omride chapter of Judean history. The city is at rest.

24

Summary: *Joash is seven years old when he becomes king and reigns forty years in Jerusalem. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD all the days of Jehoiada the priest. Jehoiada gets two wives for him, and he has sons and daughters. Joash determines to restore the house of the LORD, which has fallen into disrepair under Athaliah's influence — her sons had broken into the Temple and used its holy vessels for the Baals. Joash commands the Levites to go throughout Judah and collect money for annual Temple repairs, but the Levites are slow to act. The king summons Jehoiada and asks why he has not required the Levites to bring in the tax that Moses imposed. Jehoiada then makes a chest and places it at the gate of the house of the LORD. A proclamation goes through Judah and Jerusalem to bring the tax Moses had imposed in the wilderness. The people and officials bring their contributions joyfully, filling the chest repeatedly. When it is full, the king's secretary and the chief priest's officer empty it, then return it. They do this daily and collect a large amount of money. The king and Jehoiada give it to the workers who repair the house of the LORD, hiring stonecutters, carpenters, and metalworkers. The work progresses and they restore the house of God to its original specifications and reinforce it. When they finish, they bring the remaining money to the king and Jehoiada, who use it to make vessels for the house of the LORD — utensils for service and offering, bowls, and vessels of gold and silver. Burnt offerings are offered regularly in the house of the LORD throughout Jehoiada's lifetime. But Jehoiada grows old, full of days, and dies at one hundred thirty years. They bury him in the City of David among the kings because he had done good in Israel, for God, and for His house. After Jehoiada's death, the officials of Judah come and bow before the king, and the king listens to them. They abandon the house of the LORD, the God of their ancestors, and serve the Asherah poles and idols. Wrath comes on Judah and Jerusalem because of this guilt. The LORD sends prophets to bring them back, and the prophets testify against them, but they will not listen. Then the Spirit of God clothes Zechariah son of Jehoiada the priest. He stands above the people and says: 'Because you have abandoned the LORD, He has abandoned you.' They conspire against him and, at the king's command, stone him in the courtyard of the house of the LORD. King Joash does not remember the faithful love that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had shown him, but kills Jehoiada's son. As Zechariah dies, he says: 'May the LORD see and avenge.' At the turn of the year, the Aramean army comes against Joash. They invade Judah and Jerusalem, destroy all the officials, and send the plunder to the king of Damascus. Though the Aramean force is small, the LORD delivers a very large army into their hands because Judah had abandoned the LORD. When the Arameans withdraw, they leave Joash severely wounded. His own servants conspire against him because of the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and they kill him on his bed. He dies and they bury him in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter presents one of the most dramatic reversals in the entire Bible. Joash begins as the miraculously preserved heir, the boy crowned by Jehoiada, the reformer who restores the Temple. He ends as a murderer who kills the son of the very man who saved his life and crowned him king. The turning point is brutally clear: as long as Jehoiada lived, Joash did right. When Jehoiada died, Joash followed whoever spoke to him. This exposes a faith that was never internalized — it was borrowed from his mentor and collapsed when the mentor was gone. Zechariah's dying words — 'May the LORD see and avenge' — are referenced by Jesus in Matthew 23:35, where He says the blood of 'Zechariah son of Barachiah' (likely conflated with the prophet Zechariah or a textual variant) will be required of that generation, spanning from Abel's blood at the beginning of the Hebrew canon to Zechariah's at the end. The murder of a priest-prophet in the Temple courtyard is one of the most shocking acts of sacrilege in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler's statement that Jehoiada died at 130 years is extraordinary and has generated debate. Some take it literally as a sign of divine favor (a lifespan rivaling the patriarchs); others consider it a symbolic or honorific number. The burial 'among the kings' — a priest receiving royal burial honors — reverses the pattern of wicked kings who are denied royal burial. This inversion makes a theological statement: true kingship belongs to those who serve God, not merely to those who sit on the throne. The small Aramean force defeating a larger Judean army is presented as a direct divine intervention — God fights against His own people because they have abandoned Him. This reverses the pattern of chapter 20, where God fought for Judah.*

Connections: Zechariah's dying words 'May the LORD see and avenge' echo Abel's blood crying from the ground (Genesis 4:10). Jesus' reference in Matthew 23:35 connects this murder to the entire sweep of innocent blood in the Hebrew Bible — Abel at the beginning of Genesis, Zechariah at the end of Chronicles (the final book in the Hebrew canon order). The Temple repair initiative connects to Solomon's original construction (2 Chronicles 2-4) and anticipates Josiah's later repair project (2 Chronicles 34). The collection chest at the Temple gate establishes a precedent for organized religious giving that continues through Jewish and Christian history. Joash's dependence on Jehoiada and collapse without him illustrates the danger of secondhand faith — a theme Paul addresses in 2 Timothy 1:5 when he notes Timothy's faith came through his mother and grandmother but must become his own.

¹Joash was seven years old when he became king, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zibiah, from Beersheba. ²Joash did what was right in the eyes of the LORD throughout the lifetime of Jehoiada the priest. ³Jehoiada obtained two wives for him, and he fathered sons and daughters. ⁴After this, Joash set his mind to restore the house of the LORD. ⁵He gathered the priests and Levites and said to them, "Go out to the cities of Judah and collect money from all Israel for the annual repair of the house of your God. Do this quickly." But the Levites did not act quickly. ⁶The king summoned Jehoiada the chief priest and asked him, "Why have you not required the Levites to bring in from Judah and Jerusalem the tax that Moses, the servant of the LORD, imposed on the assembly of Israel for the Tent of the Testimony?" ⁷For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken into the house of God, and they had also used all the holy things of the house of the LORD for the Baals. ⁸At the king's command, they made a chest and placed it outside at the gate of the house of the LORD. ⁹A proclamation was sent throughout Judah and Jerusalem to bring to the LORD the tax that Moses, the servant of God, had imposed on Israel in the wilderness. ¹⁰All the officials and all the people brought their contributions joyfully, dropping them into the chest until it was full. ¹¹Whenever the chest was brought to the king's officials by the Levites, and they saw that there was a large amount of money, the king's secretary and the chief priest's officer would come, empty the chest, pick it up, and return it to its place. They did this day after day and collected a great amount of money. ¹²The king and Jehoiada gave the money to those doing the work on the house of the LORD. They hired stonecutters and carpenters to restore the house of the LORD, and also iron and bronze workers to reinforce it. ¹³The workers made progress, and the restoration advanced under their hands. They restored the house of God to its original specifications and reinforced it. ¹⁴When they finished, they brought the remaining money to the king and Jehoiada. It was used to make vessels for the house of the LORD — utensils for service and offering, bowls, and vessels of gold and silver. Burnt offerings were offered in the house of the LORD regularly throughout the lifetime of Jehoiada. ¹⁵Jehoiada grew old and full of years, and he died. He was one hundred thirty years old at his death. ¹⁶They buried him in the City of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel along with toward God along with toward His house. ¹⁷After the death of Jehoiada, the officials of Judah came and paid homage to the king, and the king listened to them. ¹⁸They abandoned the house of the LORD, the God of their ancestors, and served the Asherah poles and the idols. Wrath came upon Judah and Jerusalem because of this guilt. ¹⁹He sent prophets among them to bring them back to the LORD. The prophets testified against them, but they would not listen. ²⁰Then the Spirit of God clothed Zechariah son of Jehoiada the priest. He stood above the people and said to them, "This is what God says: Why are you transgressing the commandments of the LORD? You will not prosper. Because you have abandoned the LORD, He has abandoned you." ²¹They conspired against him and stoned him to death at the king's command in the courtyard of the house of the LORD. ²²King Joash did not remember the faithful love that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had shown him, but killed his son. As Zechariah was dying, he said, "May the LORD see and avenge." ²³At the turn of the year, the Aramean army marched against Joash. They invaded Judah and Jerusalem, destroyed all the officials of the people, and sent all the plunder to the king of Damascus. ²⁴Although the Aramean force came with only a small number of men, the LORD handed over a very large army to them, because Judah had abandoned the LORD, the God of their ancestors. So the Arameans carried out judgment on Joash. ²⁵When the Arameans departed, they left Joash severely wounded. His own servants conspired against him because of the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and they killed him on his bed. He died, and they buried him in the City of David, but not in the tombs of the kings. ²⁶These are those who conspired against him: Zabad son of Shimeath the Ammonite woman, and Jehozabad son of Shimrith the Moabite woman. ²⁷

7As for his sons, the many oracles against him, and the restoration of the house of God — these are recorded in the commentary on the Book of the Kings. His son Amaziah reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Seven years old at accession means Joash was an infant when hidden by Jehoshabeath and a small child throughout Athaliah's reign. The forty-year reign is one of the longest in Judah's history, making his eventual fall all the more tragic. Zibiah of Beersheba — a southern Judean connection — may have been chosen by Jehoiada to distance the royal house from the Omride influence that came through Athaliah.
2. The standard evaluation formula 'he did what was right in the eyes of the LORD' is modified by the temporal clause. No other Judean king receives this specific qualification. The implication is clear in retrospect: after Jehoiada's death, Joash will not do what is right.
3. Jehoiada arranges the king's marriages — acting as a father figure since Joash's own father (Ahaziah) was killed when Joash was an infant. The two wives and resulting children secure the dynasty's succession, repairing the near-extinction of the Davidic line.
4. The phrase hayah im lev Yo'ash ('it was with the heart of Joash') indicates personal initiative and determination. The verb le-chaddesh ('to renew, restore') means to make new again — the Temple had suffered both neglect and active desecration under Athaliah. This is Joash's signature achievement.
5. The king's command is clear and urgent — teméharu la-davar ('hurry with the matter'). But the Levites delay (lo miharu, 'they did not hurry'). The text does not explain why they dragged their feet. Possible reasons include institutional inertia, reluctance to part with funds, or simply the difficulty of organizing a national collection. The failure forces the king to escalate.
6. The mas'at Mosheh ('the levy/tax of Moses') refers to the half-shekel contribution described in Exodus 30:11-16, originally imposed for the Tabernacle's maintenance. Joash applies this ancient obligation to the Temple repair. The question to Jehoiada is pointed — the chief priest bears responsibility for the Levites' failure to collect.
7. The narrator calls Athaliah ha-mirsha'at ('the wicked one') — a rare feminine form of condemnation. Her sons (baneha) had physically breached (partzu) the Temple and repurposed its sacred vessels (qodshei beit Adonai) for Baal worship. This explains both the physical damage and the spiritual defilement that require restoration.
8. The aron ('chest, box') placed at the Temple gate is a practical innovation — rather than sending Levites throughout the country, contributions come directly to a central collection point. The location chutzah ('outside') at the gate ensures accessibility for all worshippers entering the Temple precincts.
9. The proclamation (va-yittenu qol, 'they gave voice, issued a call') reaches both Judah and Jerusalem. The tax is traced back to Moses and the wilderness period (Exodus 30:11-16), giving it ancient covenantal authority. The people are not being asked for a new contribution but reminded of an existing obligation.
10. The joy (va-yismechu) of the giving is notable — the people are not coerced but cheerful. The verb va-yashlikhu ('they threw, cast') into the chest suggests eager, enthusiastic giving. The phrase ad le-khallel ('until completion, until full') indicates abundant generosity.
11. The system involves dual oversight — the king's secretary (sofer ha-melekh) and the chief priest's officer (peqid kohen ha-rosh) jointly manage the funds. This prevents embezzlement by ensuring that neither royal nor priestly officials have sole control. The daily cycle (le-yom be-yom) indicates the sustained generosity of the people.
12. The partnership of king and priest (ha-melekh vi-Yehoyada) in disbursing the funds continues the dual-authority model. The skilled trades listed — chotzevim ('stonecutters'), charashim ('carpenters/craftsmen'), charashei barzel u-nechoshet ('iron and bronze workers') — cover the full range of building trades needed for Temple restoration.
13. The phrase al matkunato ('to its original design, specifications') means the Temple was restored to Solomon's original plan — not modified or reduced. The verb va-ye'amtzehu ('they strengthened, reinforced it') indicates structural improvement beyond mere repair.
14. The surplus funds (she'ar ha-kesef) are used for sacred vessels, replacing those that Athaliah's sons had given to the Baals (verse 7). The phrase kol yemei Yehoyada ('all the days of Jehoiada') appears again, reinforcing the temporal boundary of proper worship. The regular burnt offerings (tamid) signal restored normalcy.
15. The phrase seva yamim ('full of days, satisfied with years') is an honorific used for patriarchs and heroes of faith (Abraham in Genesis 25:8, David in 1 Chronicles 29:28). The extraordinary lifespan of 130 years — whether literal or symbolic — places Jehoiada in the company of the patriarchs rather than ordinary priests.
16. The phrase asah tovah ('he did good') is a comprehensive evaluation covering both civic and religious contributions. The contrast between Jehoiada's honorific burial and Joash's dishonorable burial (verse 25) is intentional — the Chronicler uses burial notices as moral verdicts.
17. The officials (sarei Yehudah) had been waiting for Jehoiada's death. Their approach is calculated: they bow before the king (va-yishtachavu la-melekh), flattering him with the deference they never showed while the priest was alive. The phrase az shama ha-melekh aleihem ('then the king listened to them') marks the pivot point — Joash transfers his allegiance from the priest's counsel to the officials' counsel.

18. The verb *va-ya'azvu* ('they abandoned') is the opposite of *darash* ('to seek'). The same Temple that Joash spent years restoring is now abandoned. The Asherah poles (*asherim*) and idols (*atzabbim*) represent the Canaanite religion that the covenant explicitly prohibited. The *qetzel* ('wrath') is the inevitable consequence of covenant violation.
19. God's response to apostasy is not immediate judgment but prophetic warning — *va-yishlach bahem nevi'im* ('He sent prophets among them'). The verb *le-hashivam* ('to cause them to return') shows the redemptive purpose: God wants restoration, not destruction. The verb *va-ya'idu* ('they testified, warned') makes the people's refusal inexcusable — they were warned and chose to ignore the warning.
20. Zechariah is the son of the very priest who saved the king's life and crowned him. The Spirit 'clothing' a prophet also appears in Judges 6:34 (Gideon) and 1 Chronicles 12:18. The oracle's structure — rhetorical question plus prophetic judgment — follows classical prophetic form.
21. The conspiring (*va-yiqsheru*) echoes Athaliah's accusation of *qesher* ('conspiracy') in 23:13 — but now it is the king who conspires against God's prophet. The courtyard stoning pollutes the Temple with innocent blood, echoing and anticipating the broader theme of shed blood demanding justice.
22. The verb *yidroshe* ('may He seek, require, avenge') uses the same root as *darash* ('to seek, inquire'). Zechariah's prayer is not a curse but an appeal to divine justice — the LORD will investigate (*darash*) this crime and hold the guilty accountable. The phrase becomes a theological marker connecting this event to the final judgment.
23. The phrase *li-tequmat ha-shanah* ('at the turning of the year') indicates the campaign season. The destruction of *kol sarei ha-am* ('all the officials of the people') — the same officials who had led Joash astray in verse 17 — is poetic justice. The plunder sent to Damascus reverses the wealth that had been contributed to restore the Temple.
24. The phrase *asu shefatim* ('they executed judgments') uses legal language — the Aramean invasion is presented as a judicial proceeding. God is the judge, the Arameans are the executioners, and Joash is the defendant found guilty.
25. Joash dies the way his grandfather Jehoram died — murdered, diseased, and denied royal burial. The phrase *bi-demei benei Yehoyada* ('because of the blood of the sons of Jehoiada') means the servants acted to avenge the murder of Zechariah (and possibly other sons of Jehoiada). Zechariah's dying prayer 'may the LORD see and avenge' is answered through the hands of Joash's own household. The denial of burial in the royal tombs (*ve-lo qevaruhu be-qivrot ha-melakhim*) is the same dishonor given to Jehoram in 21:20.
26. The assassins are sons of foreign women — an Ammonite and a Moabite. The Chronicler names their mothers' nationalities, possibly to highlight that Joash's downfall comes through the very foreign influences his predecessors had warned against. The irony of a Davidic king being killed by servants of foreign descent within his own palace underscores the complete reversal of his reign.
27. The midrash *sefer ha-melakhim* ('commentary/exposition on the Book of the Kings') is a source text used by the Chronicler — possibly an interpretive expansion of the court records. The word *massa* ('burden, oracle') here likely refers to the prophetic oracles delivered against Joash. The succession formula — *va-yimlokh Amatzياهو beno tachtav* ('Amaziah his son reigned in his place') — continues the Davidic dynasty despite the king's disgraceful end.

25

Summary: Amaziah becomes king at twenty-five and reigns twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD, but not with a whole heart. Once his kingdom is secure, he executes the servants who murdered his father but does not kill their children, following the Torah's command that children must not die for their parents' sins. He assembles an army of three hundred thousand fighting men from Judah and Benjamin. He also hires one hundred thousand soldiers from Israel for a hundred talents of silver. A man of God comes to him and warns: do not let the Israelite army go with you, because the LORD is not with Israel. If you go despite this, God will bring you down before the enemy, for God has the power to help and to bring down. Amaziah asks about the hundred talents he already paid. The man of God replies: the LORD is able to give you much more than that. Amaziah dismisses the Israelite troops, who leave furiously angry and later raid cities of Judah. Amaziah leads his own army to the Valley of Salt, kills ten thousand Edomites in battle, and takes another ten thousand captive to a cliff, where they throw them down and they are smashed to pieces. Meanwhile, the dismissed Israelite soldiers raid Judean cities from Samaria to Beth-horon, killing three thousand and taking plunder. When Amaziah returns from defeating the Edomites, he brings their gods and sets them up as his own gods, bowing before them and burning incense to them. The LORD sends a prophet who asks: Why have you sought the gods of a people who could not deliver their own people from your hand? Amaziah threatens to have the prophet killed. The prophet withdraws but says: I know God has determined to destroy you because you have done this and have not listened to my counsel. Then Amaziah challenges Joash king of Israel to battle. Joash responds with a fable about a thistle and a cedar of Lebanon — the thistle demands the cedar's daughter in marriage, but a wild beast tramples the thistle. Joash warns: you have defeated Edom and your heart has lifted you up in pride. Stay home. Why provoke

disaster? But Amaziah refuses to listen, for it is from God, that He may hand them over because they have sought the gods of Edom. Joash king of Israel attacks. Judah is routed at Beth-shemesh. Joash captures Amaziah, breaks down four hundred cubits of Jerusalem's wall from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate, takes all the gold and silver and vessels in the house of God and the royal treasury, along with hostages, and returns to Samaria. Amaziah lives fifteen years after Joash's death. From the time Amaziah turns away from following the LORD, a conspiracy forms against him in Jerusalem. He flees to Lachish, but they send men after him and kill him there. They bring his body back on horses and bury him with his ancestors in the City of Judah.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Amaziah's story is a study in partial obedience and the corrosive power of pride. He begins well — executing justice according to Torah standards, seeking prophetic counsel, obeying the man of God's command to dismiss the Israelite mercenaries. But his obedience has a ceiling. After defeating Edom, he inexplicably adopts the gods of the people he has just conquered — gods that demonstrably could not protect their own worshippers. The prophet's rebuke is one of the most logically devastating in the Hebrew Bible: why would you worship gods who could not even save the people who worshipped them? The answer is that pride has corrupted Amaziah's reasoning. The same pride that leads him to worship Edomite gods also leads him to challenge Israel — and in both cases, the text says his fall 'is from God.' The Chronicler insists that God uses a person's own arrogance as the instrument of judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The execution of ten thousand captives by throwing them off a cliff is one of the most disturbing passages in Chronicles. The text reports it without explicit moral comment, though the broader narrative context suggests it is part of the military culture of the ancient Near East rather than a divinely commanded action. Amaziah's adoption of Edomite gods is theologically inexplicable from a rational standpoint — the prophet explicitly identifies the absurdity — which suggests the Chronicler understands idolatry as a form of spiritual madness rather than a logical choice. The correspondence between Amaziah's 'not with a whole heart' evaluation (verse 2) and his later collapse illustrates the Chronicler's thesis that divided devotion will always eventually resolve into full apostasy. Joash's fable of the thistle and cedar is unique in the prophetic literature of Kings and Chronicles — it functions like a wisdom saying embedded in political discourse.*

Connections: *Amaziah's obedience to Deuteronomy 24:16 (children not dying for parents' sins) connects to the developing theology of individual responsibility that reaches full expression in Ezekiel 18. The battle at the Valley of Salt echoes David's earlier Edomite campaign (2 Samuel 8:13). Joash's fable of the thistle and cedar employs the same genre as Jotham's fable of the trees (Judges 9:8-15), where political overreach is exposed through botanical metaphor. The phrase 'it was from God' (ki me-ha-Elohim hi) echoes the same phrase in 22:7 regarding Ahaziah's destruction — both passages affirm divine sovereignty working through human pride to accomplish judgment. Amaziah's flight to Lachish and assassination there anticipates the pattern of royal fugitives in Judah's later history.*

¹Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, from Jerusalem. ²He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, but not with a whole heart. ³When the kingdom was firmly in his hand, he executed the servants who had murdered his father the king. ⁴But he did not kill their children, in accordance with what is written in the Law, in the book of Moses, where the LORD commanded: 'Fathers must not be put to death for their children, nor children for their fathers. Each person must die for his own sin.' ⁵Amaziah assembled Judah and organized them by clans under commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds, for all Judah and Benjamin. He counted those twenty years old and above and found three hundred thousand chosen men fit for military service, able to handle spear and shield. ⁶He also hired a hundred thousand warriors from Israel for a hundred talents of silver. ⁷But a man of God came to him and said, "O king, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for the LORD is not with Israel — not with any of the Ephraimites." ⁸"But if you go ahead anyway — go, be strong for battle — God will bring you down before the enemy. For God has the power to help and the power to bring down." ⁹Amaziah said to the man of God, "But what about the hundred talents I paid to the Israelite troops?" The man of God answered, "The LORD is able to give you far more than that." ¹⁰So Amaziah dismissed the troops that had come to him from Ephraim, sending them home. They were furious with Judah and returned home burning with anger. ¹¹Amaziah gathered his courage, led his army, and marched to the Valley of Salt, where he struck down ten thousand men of Seir. ¹²The forces of Judah also captured ten thousand alive.

They brought them to the top of a cliff and threw them down from the top, and all of them were dashed to pieces. ¹³Meanwhile, the soldiers of the force that Amaziah had sent home — keeping them from going with him to battle — raided the cities of Judah from Samaria to Beth-horon. They killed three thousand people and carried off a large amount of plunder. ¹⁴After Amaziah returned from striking down the Edomites, he brought back the gods of the people of Seir and set them up as his own gods. He bowed down before them and burned incense to them. ¹⁵The anger of the LORD burned against Amaziah, and He sent a prophet to him who said, "Why have you sought the gods of a people whose own gods could not deliver them from your hand?" ¹⁶While the prophet was speaking, the king said to him, "Have we appointed you as a royal advisor? Stop! Why should you get yourself killed?" The prophet stopped, but said, "I know that God has determined to destroy you, because you have done this and have not listened to my counsel." ¹⁷Then Amaziah king of Judah took counsel and sent word to Joash son of Jehoahaz, son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us face each other." ¹⁸Joash king of Israel sent back to Amaziah king of Judah: "A thistle in Lebanon sent word to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son as a wife.' But a wild animal in Lebanon passed by and trampled the thistle." ¹⁹"You think to yourself, 'I have defeated Edom,' and your heart has lifted you up in pride. Stay home now. Why provoke disaster so that you fall — you and Judah with you?" ²⁰But Amaziah would not listen, for it was from God, in order to hand them over, because they had sought the gods of Edom. ²¹So Joash king of Israel advanced, and he and Amaziah king of Judah faced each other at Beth-shemesh, which belongs to Judah. ²²Judah was defeated before Israel, and every man fled to his home. ²³Joash king of Israel captured Amaziah king of Judah at Beth-shemesh and brought him to Jerusalem. He broke down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate — four hundred cubits. ²⁴He took all the gold and silver, all the vessels found in the house of God under the care of Obed-edom, the treasures of the royal palace, and hostages, then returned to Samaria. ²⁵Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Joash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel. ²⁶The rest of the acts of Amaziah, from first to last, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷From the time Amaziah turned away from following the LORD, a conspiracy was formed against him in Jerusalem. He fled to Lachish, but they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁸They carried his body back on horses and buried him with his ancestors in the City of Judah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard regnal formula: age at accession, length of reign, queen mother's name. Twenty-nine years is a substantial reign. Jehoaddan being from Jerusalem itself (rather than a provincial city) may indicate the royal house's increasing insulation within the capital.
2. The phrase *levav shalem* ('whole heart') is a key evaluation term in Chronicles. David is praised for it, Solomon is warned about it, and its absence here forecasts Amaziah's eventual apostasy. The divided heart is the fundamental diagnostic of spiritual failure in the Chronicler's theology.
3. Amaziah waits until his power is secure (*chazqah ha-mamlakhah alav*, 'the kingdom was strong upon him') before acting — a sign of political prudence. The execution of the assassins is presented as legitimate justice rather than revenge.
4. The direct quotation from Deuteronomy 24:16 is one of the clearest citations of Torah in Chronicles. Amaziah demonstrates legal faithfulness — he follows the written law even when it might have been politically advantageous to eliminate entire families. The principle of individual accountability (*ish be-chet'o yamutu*, 'each in his own sin will die') is foundational to biblical justice.
5. The military census follows the pattern established in Numbers 1 — counting men twenty and older. The army of three hundred thousand is organized by clan (*beit avot*) and subdivided into units of thousands and hundreds. The soldiers are characterized as *bachur* ('chosen, select') and equipped with spear and shield — heavy infantry.
6. The hundred talents of silver (approximately 3.4 metric tons) represents a massive expenditure. Hiring northern Israelite mercenaries indicates that Amaziah considers his own forces insufficient for the campaign against Edom. This practical military decision will become a theological test.
7. The *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God') delivers a categorical rejection of the alliance: *ein Adonai im Yisrael* ('the LORD is not with Israel'). The northern kingdom, characterized as 'all the sons of Ephraim,' is disqualified as a military partner because God's presence — the actual source of victory — is absent from their camp. An army without the LORD is a liability, not an asset.
8. The oracle contains a conditional threat: if Amaziah proceeds with the Israelite mercenaries, God will cause defeat. The final phrase is the theological principle: *yesh koach be-Elohim la'azor u-le-hakhshil* ('God has power to help and to make stumble'). Victory and defeat both come from God. The choice is Amaziah's, but the outcome is God's.
9. Amaziah's concern is financial — the hundred talents are a sunk cost. The man of God's answer reframes the issue: *yesh la-Adonai latet lekha harbeh mi-zeh* ('the LORD has it to give you much more than this'). Obedience may cost something in the short term, but God's capacity to provide exceeds any human calculation. This is a test of whether Amaziah trusts God's resources more than his own investments.

10. The dismissed Israelite soldiers are deeply insulted — *va-yichar appam me'od bi-Yehudah* ('their anger burned intensely against Judah'). Being hired and then sent home is a public humiliation. Their anger will find expression in the raids described in verse 13. Amaziah obeys the prophet but creates a new enemy in the process.
11. The Valley of Salt (*gei ha-melach*) is located south of the Dead Sea — the same region where David fought Edomites (2 Samuel 8:13). The 'sons of Seir' are the Edomites. Ten thousand killed represents a significant military victory, but it does not remain the end of the bloodshed.
12. The *sela* ('rock, cliff') may be the site known as Sela (Petra) in Edomite territory. The execution of ten thousand captives by throwing them from a cliff is extreme even by ancient Near Eastern standards. The verb *nivqe'u* ('they were split open, dashed to pieces') describes the physical impact. The text reports the action without explicit moral judgment, though the broader narrative trajectory — Amaziah's subsequent adoption of Edomite gods — suggests his victory carried a spiritual cost.
13. The dismissed Israelite mercenaries exact revenge by raiding Judean border cities. The geographic range — from Samaria to Beth-horon — covers the northern frontier of Judah. Three thousand killed and extensive plunder is a significant military disaster. Amaziah wins in the south against Edom but loses in the north to his former allies.
14. The adoption of a conquered enemy's gods is both theologically absurd and historically attested in the ancient Near East — it was sometimes done to absorb the spiritual power of the conquered. But the Chronicler sees it as pure folly. The verbs are emphatic: *va-ya'amidem lo le-Elohim* ('he set them up for himself as gods'), *yishtachaveh* ('he bowed down'), *yeqatter* ('he burned incense'). Full worship protocol is directed at idols.
15. The phrase *lo hitzilu et ammam mi-yadekha* ('they did not deliver their people from your hand') is the empirical evidence against Edomite religion — it failed its own adherents. The prophet does not argue from theology alone but from observable reality.
16. Amaziah's threat — *lammah yakkukha* ('why should they strike you?') — is a veiled death threat. The prophet withdraws (*va-yechdal*) but delivers a final oracle: *yada'ti ki ya'atz Elohim le-hashchitekha* ('I know God has counseled/determined to destroy you'). The same verb *ya'atz* ('to counsel, determine') is used for both the advisor the king rejected (*yo'etz*) and God's determination (*ya'atz*). By refusing the prophet's counsel, Amaziah ensures God's counsel of judgment.
17. The phrase *lekhah nitreh fanim* ('come, let us see faces') is a challenge to battle, not a diplomatic request. Amaziah's military confidence from the Edomite campaign leads him to challenge a stronger kingdom. The Chronicler traces this overreach directly to the pride born of his Edomite victory.
18. The fable (*marshal*) is cutting: Amaziah is the choach ('thistle, thornbush') — small, insignificant, presumptuous. Joash is the *erez* ('cedar') — tall, established, powerful. The thistle's demand for the cedar's daughter is ludicrously above its station. The wild beast that tramples the thistle represents the effortless destruction that awaits the presumptuous. The fable follows the genre established in Judges 9 (Jotham's fable).
19. Joash diagnoses the problem: *nese'akha libbkha le-hakbid* ('your heart has lifted you up to glorify yourself'). The victory over Edom has inflated Amaziah's self-assessment. Joash's warning is actually wise counsel: *shevah be-veitekha* ('sit in your house, stay home'). The phrase *lammah titgareh be-ra'ah* ('why stir up trouble?') warns that the challenge will bring catastrophe not just to Amaziah but to all Judah.
20. The phrase *ki me-ha-Elohim hi* ('for it was from God') attributes Amaziah's stubbornness to divine purpose. God uses the king's own pride and deafness to counsel as the mechanism of judgment. The cause is stated: *ki darshu et elohei Edom* ('because they sought the gods of Edom'). The worship of foreign gods triggers the divine abandonment that leads to military defeat.
21. Beth-shemesh ('house of the sun') is a Judean city in the Shephelah, west of Jerusalem. The battle takes place on Judean soil, meaning Israel has advanced into Judah's territory. The phrase *va-yitrau panim* ('they saw faces') fulfills Amaziah's challenge from verse 17 — but the face-to-face encounter will not go as he planned.
22. The verb *va-yinnagef* ('was defeated, was struck down') is a divine passive — the defeat is God's doing. The phrase *va-yanusu ish le-ohalav* ('they fled, each to his tent') indicates a total rout with complete disintegration of the army. The soldiers do not regroup; they scatter.
23. The capture of the Judean king by the Israelite king is an unprecedented humiliation. The destruction of four hundred cubits (approximately 180 meters) of Jerusalem's wall from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate — the northern section — leaves the city defenseless against future attack from the north. This is not conquest but punitive degradation.
24. The plunder is comprehensive: Temple gold and silver, sacred vessels, royal treasury, and human hostages (*benei ha-ta'aruvot*, 'sons of pledges/hostages'). Obed-edom is a Levitical family charged with guarding the Temple treasures (1 Chronicles 26:15). The removal of Temple vessels reverses the restoration that Joash had accomplished in chapter 24 — the very vessels Joash's donations had created are now carried to Samaria.
25. The fifteen-year survival after Joash of Israel's death is noted — Amaziah continued to reign in a diminished and humiliated state. The wall was broken, the treasury emptied, hostages taken, yet the king retained his throne.
26. The standard source citation formula. The Chronicler distinguishes between his own account and the fuller source available to his original readers.
27. The Chronicler connects the conspiracy directly to Amaziah's apostasy: *me-et asher sar me-acharei Adonai* ('from the time he turned from following the LORD'). The flight to Lachish — a fortified city southwest of Jerusalem — suggests Amaziah hoped the distance and the fortress would protect him. They did not. His assassination outside the capital mirrors the pattern of kings who die away from Jerusalem when their relationship with God is broken.

28. The transport of the body on horses from Lachish to Jerusalem indicates the conspirators intended a proper burial despite the assassination. The phrase *be-ir Yehudah* ('in the city of Judah') is an unusual designation — typically the text says 'City of David.' Some take this as a variant name; others see it as indicating a different burial location from the royal tombs, consistent with the pattern of wicked kings receiving diminished burial honors.

26

Summary: *All the people of Judah take Uzziah (also called Azariah), who is sixteen years old, and make him king in place of his father Amaziah. He rebuilds Eloth and restores it to Judah after Amaziah sleeps with his fathers. Uzziah reigns fifty-two years in Jerusalem. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD, following the pattern of his father Amaziah. He seeks God during the days of Zechariah, who instructs him in the fear of God, and as long as he seeks the LORD, God gives him success. He wages war against the Philistines, breaking down the walls of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod, and builds cities in Philistine territory. God helps him against the Philistines, the Arabs living in Gur-baal, and the Meunites. The Ammonites pay tribute to Uzziah, and his fame spreads to the border of Egypt because he grows exceedingly strong. He builds towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, the Valley Gate, and the Angle, and fortifies them. He builds towers in the wilderness and hews out many cisterns because he has large herds in the Shephelah and the plain. He has farmers and vineyard workers in the hill country and fertile lands, for he loves the soil. Uzziah maintains a professional army organized by clans, counted by Jeiel the secretary and Maaseiah the officer under the authority of Hananiah, one of the king's commanders. The total number of heads of clans among the warriors is 2,600, commanding an army of 307,500 strong soldiers who can wage war with great power to help the king against the enemy. Uzziah equips them with shields, spears, helmets, body armor, bows, and slingstones. He also builds ingenious devices in Jerusalem, designed by skilled engineers, to be mounted on the towers and corners for shooting arrows and hurling large stones. His fame spreads far because he is wonderfully helped — until he is strong. But when he grows strong, his heart becomes proud, leading to his downfall. He acts unfaithfully against the LORD his God by entering the Temple of the LORD to burn incense on the incense altar. Azariah the priest enters after him with eighty courageous priests of the LORD. They confront King Uzziah: 'It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to the LORD. That belongs to the priests, the descendants of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense. Leave the sanctuary, for you have acted unfaithfully, and you will have no honor from the LORD God.' Uzziah, who is holding a censer ready to burn incense, becomes furious. While he rages at the priests in front of the incense altar in the house of the LORD, a skin disease breaks out on his forehead before the eyes of the priests. Azariah the chief priest and all the priests look at him, and there it is — the skin disease on his forehead. They rush him out, and he himself hurries to leave because the LORD has struck him. King Uzziah has the skin disease until the day of his death. He lives in a separate house, cut off from the house of the LORD, while his son Jotham governs the royal palace and administers justice for the people of the land.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Uzziah's story is structured as a rise-and-fall narrative with a single hinge point: the phrase 'until he was strong' (ad ki chazaq). Everything before that phrase is success; everything after it is catastrophe. The progression is a study in how power corrupts: military victory leads to fame, fame leads to strength, strength leads to pride, and pride leads to the presumption that royal authority can override sacred boundaries. Uzziah's specific sin — entering the Temple to burn incense — may seem minor compared to the idolatry of other kings, but the Chronicler treats it as the most serious possible offense: a direct assault on the boundary between royal and priestly authority established by God. The priests' confrontation of the king is one of the bravest acts of institutional resistance in the Hebrew Bible — eighty priests face down the most powerful king Judah has had since Solomon, telling him to his face that he has no right to be there. The skin disease that breaks out on his forehead while he holds the censer in his hand, in the very act of transgression, is the most dramatically timed divine judgment in Chronicles.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 'Uzziah' and 'Azariah' (both names are used in Kings and Chronicles) has generated debate. Most scholars consider them the same person with two names. Uzziah's fifty-two-year reign makes him one of the longest-reigning kings of Judah, yet Isaiah's call vision occurs 'in the year that King Uzziah died' (Isaiah 6:1), suggesting his era was seen as a defining epoch. The 'separate house' (beit ha-chofshit) to which Uzziah is confined is variously interpreted as a quarantine house, a house of freedom (ironic), or a hospital. The skin disease (tsara'at) is not modern leprosy (Hansen's disease) but a broader category of serious skin conditions that rendered a person ritually impure and required isolation*

from the community and especially from the Temple.

Connections: Isaiah's prophetic call (Isaiah 6:1) is dated to Uzziah's death year, connecting the end of this powerful king's era to the beginning of Israel's greatest literary prophet. The skin disease as divine punishment for overstepping sacred boundaries echoes Miriam's punishment in Numbers 12:10 — she too contracted tsara'at for challenging divinely established authority structures. The priestly confrontation of the king models the principle that no human authority, however powerful, stands above God's ordained order — a theme that runs through Daniel's confrontation with Nebuchadnezzar and the apostles' declaration 'we must obey God rather than men' (Acts 5:29). Uzziah's military innovations (engineered siege devices, organized professional army) represent the peak of Judean military technology before the Assyrian period.

¹All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old along with made him king in place of his father Amaziah. ²It was he who rebuilt Eloth and brought it back under Judah's control after the king had slept with his fathers. ³Uzziah was sixteen years old when he became king, and he reigned fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jecholiah, from Jerusalem. ⁴He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, just as his father Amaziah had done. ⁵He set himself to seek God during the days of Zechariah, who instructed him in the fear of God. As long as he sought the LORD, God gave him success. ⁶He marched out and fought against the Philistines. He broke down the walls of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod, and built cities in the territory of Ashdod and among the Philistines. ⁷God helped him against the Philistines, the Arabs living in Gur-baal, and the Meunites. ⁸The Ammonites paid tribute to Uzziah, and his fame spread as far as the border of Egypt, because he grew exceedingly strong. ⁹Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, the Valley Gate, and the Angle, and fortified them. ¹⁰He built towers in the wilderness and hewed out many cisterns, because he had large herds — both in the Shephelah and in the plain. He had farmers and vineyard workers in the hill country and the fertile lands, for he loved the soil. ¹¹Uzziah had a standing army of fighting men who went out in organized units, counted by Jeiel the secretary and Maaseiah the officer, under the authority of Hananiah, one of the king's commanders. ¹²The total number of clan leaders among the warriors was 2,600. ¹³Under their command was an army of 307,500 trained soldiers who could wage war with great power to help the king against the enemy. ¹⁴Uzziah equipped the entire army with shields, spears, helmets, body armor, bows, and slingstones. ¹⁵In Jerusalem he constructed ingenious devices designed by engineers, to be mounted on the towers and corner defenses for shooting arrows and hurling large stones. His fame spread far and wide, because he was wonderfully helped — until he became strong. ¹⁶But when he grew strong, his heart became so proud that it led to his downfall. He acted unfaithfully against the LORD his God by entering the Temple of the LORD to burn incense on the altar of incense. ¹⁷Azariah the priest went in after him, along with eighty priests of the LORD — men of courage. ¹⁸They confronted King Uzziah and said to him, "It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to the LORD. That is for the priests, the descendants of Aaron, who have been consecrated to burn incense. Leave the sanctuary! You have acted unfaithfully, and you will have no honor from the LORD God." ¹⁹Uzziah was furious. He had a censer in his hand, ready to burn incense. While he was raging at the priests, a skin disease broke out on his forehead, right before the eyes of the priests, beside the incense altar in the house of the LORD. ²⁰Azariah the chief priest and all the priests turned to look at him, and there it was — the skin disease on his forehead. They rushed him out of there, and he himself hurried to leave, because the LORD had struck him. ²¹King Uzziah had the skin disease until the day of his death. He lived in a separate house, afflicted with the disease, because he was cut off from the house of the LORD. His son Jotham managed the royal palace and governed the people of the land. ²²The rest of the acts of Uzziah, from first to last, were recorded by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. ²³Uzziah slept with his fathers. They buried him with his ancestors in the burial field belonging to the kings, though they said, "He has a skin disease." His son Jotham reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. As with Ahaziah (22:1) and Joash (23:3), the people (kol am Yehudah) participate in the installation of the king. Uzziah begins his reign at sixteen — old enough to govern but young enough to be shaped by advisors. The popular initiative suggests Amaziah's assassination left a gap that the people filled by crowning his son.

2. Eloth (Elat) is a port city at the northern tip of the Gulf of Aqaba. Restoring it to Judah reverses the loss of Edomite territory that occurred under Jehoram (21:8-10). The phrase *acharei shekhav ha-melekh im avotav* ('after the king slept with his fathers') refers to Amaziah's death.
3. Fifty-two years is the second longest reign in Judah's history (after Manasseh's fifty-five). The length of Uzziah's reign allowed him to accomplish extensive building, military, and agricultural projects. Jecholiah is from Jerusalem, continuing the pattern of Jerusalem-born queen mothers.
4. The comparison to Amaziah is a qualified commendation — Amaziah himself received the evaluation 'not with a whole heart' (25:2). Comparing Uzziah to Amaziah rather than to David or Jehoshaphat suggests a similar pattern of initial obedience that does not endure.
5. This Zechariah is not the prophet of the biblical book of Zechariah but an otherwise unknown spiritual advisor. The Hebrew *ha-mevin bi-re'ot ha-Elohim* is textually uncertain — some manuscripts read 'fear of God' (*yir'at*) instead of 'visions of God' (*re'ot*). Both readings convey spiritual insight. The verb *hitzlichu* ('He caused him to prosper') attributes Uzziah's success directly to God.
6. Uzziah's Philistine campaign is aggressive and expansionist — he does not merely defend Judah's borders but invades and dismantles Philistine fortifications. Breaking walls (*va-yifroz et chomat*) renders cities defenseless. Building new cities in Philistine territory establishes permanent Judean presence — a level of Philistine subjugation not seen since David.
7. The verb *va-ya'azrehu* ('God helped him') attributes the military success to divine assistance. Gur-baal is an unidentified location, likely in the Negev or Sinai region. The Meunites appear also in 20:1 as enemies from the region of Seir. Uzziah's dominance extends in every direction.
8. Ammonite tribute (*minchah*) signals vassal status — the Transjordanian kingdom acknowledges Uzziah's dominance. His fame reaching 'the entrance of Egypt' means his reputation extends to the traditional southern boundary of the promised land. The phrase *ki hecheziq ad le-ma'alah* ('for he strengthened exceedingly') prepares for the fall — the same strength that brings glory will produce the pride that brings disaster.
9. These towers at key points in Jerusalem's walls repair and improve the city's defenses, possibly including the section that Joash of Israel had destroyed (25:23). The Corner Gate, Valley Gate, and Angle (*miqtzo'a*) are three vulnerable points in the wall system that receive reinforced tower emplacements.
10. Uzziah's domestic achievements are as impressive as his military ones. The wilderness towers protect herds and trade routes. The *borot* ('cisterns') hewn from rock provide water storage in arid regions. The detail *ki ohev adamah hayah* ('for he loved the soil') is a rare personal note — the king has an agricultural passion. His interests span military, civil engineering, and farming.
11. The military administration is professional and bureaucratic — a secretary (*sofer*) records troop numbers, an officer (*shoter*) manages logistics, and a royal commander (*sar*) provides overall command authority. This represents a sophisticated military organization with clear chains of command.
12. The 2,600 *roshei ha-avot* ('heads of clans, fathers') are the officer corps commanding the larger army described in the next verse. Each clan leader commands a unit, creating a decentralized command structure based on family loyalty.
13. The army of 307,500 is one of the largest Judean forces recorded in Chronicles. Whether taken literally or as rounded administrative numbers, the figure represents a formidable military capability. The phrase *osei milchamah be-koach chayil* ('making war with warrior strength') describes professional soldiers, not conscripted farmers.
14. The six categories of equipment cover both defensive gear (*maginnim*, shields; *kova'im*, helmets; *shiryonot*, body armor) and offensive weapons (*remachim*, spears; *qeshtot*, bows; *avnei qela'im*, slingstones). State-supplied equipment indicates a centralized military with standardized armament — a significant organizational achievement.
15. The phrase *ad ki chazaq* ('until he was strong') is the pivot of the narrative. Everything before it is blessing; everything after it is judgment. The Chronicler does not condemn strength itself but the pride that strength generates when the strong person forgets the source of the strength.
16. The verb *ma'al* ('to act unfaithfully, to commit sacrilege') is a technical term in Chronicles for violating the sacred boundary between what belongs to God and what belongs to humans. The altar of incense was inside the Temple proper (the Holy Place), not in the outer courts where the king could legitimately worship.
17. Eighty priests (*shemonim benei chayil*, 'eighty sons of valor') follow the king into the Temple to confront him. The phrase *benei chayil* ('men of courage, sons of valor') is deliberate — confronting the most powerful king in Judah's recent history requires physical courage as well as religious conviction. Azariah is the chief priest (*ha-kohen*), the highest religious authority in the nation.
18. The verb *va-ya'amdu al* ('they stood against, confronted') indicates physical opposition — the priests did not merely speak but positioned themselves between the king and the altar. The phrase *benei Aharon ha-mequddashim* ('the sons of Aaron who are consecrated') emphasizes that the priestly function is rooted in specific divine appointment, not in general holiness.
19. The censer still in his hand while the disease breaks out creates a frozen tableau: the king stands with the instrument of his presumption while God's judgment appears on his face. The forehead location may echo the priestly turban plate that reads 'Holy to the LORD' (Exodus 28:36) — the very forehead where a priest bears God's holiness now bears the mark of God's judgment on a non-priest who tried to take the priestly role.
20. The priests' reaction is immediate: *va-yavhiluhu mi-sham* ('they hurried him from there'). A person with *tsara'at* must be removed from the sacred precinct immediately — the disease renders him ritually impure and his presence pollutes the Temple. Uzziah himself hurries to leave (*gam hu nidchaf la-tzet*), suggesting he recognizes what has happened. The phrase *ki nig'o Adonai* ('because the LORD had struck him') confirms the divine origin of the affliction.

21. The beit ha-chofshit has been interpreted as 'house of freedom/release' (ironic, since it is a place of confinement) or 'separate house' (based on context). Jotham's role as co-regent is historically significant — it is during this period of Uzziah's incapacitation that Isaiah receives his prophetic call (Isaiah 6:1). The phrase nigzar ('cut off') is the same verb used for being cut off from the covenant community.
22. Isaiah himself is cited as the recorder of Uzziah's reign — a remarkable connection between the prophetic and historical traditions. Isaiah's ministry began in Uzziah's death year (Isaiah 6:1) but evidently included historical writing about the preceding period. This citation establishes Isaiah as a contemporary witness to the events described.
23. Uzziah receives burial in the royal burial field (sedeh ha-qevurah asher la-melakhim) but apparently not in the royal tombs themselves. The note ki amru metzora hu ('for they said, he has a skin disease') explains the modified burial — his condition made full burial alongside the other kings inappropriate due to ritual impurity concerns. Even in death, the consequences of his pride accompany him. Jotham succeeds him, having already been governing for years.

27

Summary: *Jotham becomes king at twenty-five and reigns sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother is Jerushah daughter of Zadok. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD, following the pattern of his father Uzziah — except that he does not enter the Temple of the LORD. The people, however, continue their corrupt practices. Jotham builds the Upper Gate of the house of the LORD and does extensive construction on the wall of Ophel. He builds cities in the hill country of Judah and builds fortresses and towers in the forested areas. He fights the Ammonites and defeats them. The Ammonites pay him tribute: a hundred talents of silver, ten thousand cors of wheat, and ten thousand cors of barley — in the first year, and the same in the second and third years. Jotham grows strong because he orders his ways before the LORD his God. The rest of the acts of Jotham, including all his wars and his practices, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. He sleeps with his fathers and is buried in the City of David. His son Ahaz reigns in his place.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jotham's brief chapter is notable for what it does not contain: no prophetic rebuke, no military disaster, no apostasy, no dramatic fall. In a section of Chronicles dominated by kings who begin well and end badly (Joash, Amaziah, Uzziah), Jotham is the quiet exception — a king who maintains steady faithfulness without spectacle. The Chronicler's formula for his success is characteristically precise: ki hekhin derakhav lifnei Adonai Elohav ('he ordered his ways before the LORD his God'). The verb hekhin ('he established, ordered, prepared') describes deliberate, sustained alignment of conduct with God's standards. The note that Jotham did not enter the Temple of the LORD is a direct lesson learned from his father's disaster — Jotham observed the boundary that Uzziah violated. The qualifier that the people continued their corrupt practices (od ha-am mashchitim) indicates that personal royal faithfulness was not sufficient to transform the nation's behavior — a sobering limitation on even good kingship.*

Translation Friction: *The brevity of Jotham's account relative to his sixteen-year reign raises questions about whether the Chronicler had limited source material or whether the peaceful, faithful reign simply did not generate the dramatic narratives that fill the accounts of other kings. The Ammonite tribute of 10,000 cors of wheat and barley (approximately 2.2 million liters of grain per year) suggests significant agricultural surplus in Ammon and substantial Judean dominance east of the Jordan. The phrase 'the people continued their corrupt practices' creates tension with Jotham's personal evaluation — how can a righteous king coexist with a corrupt people? The Chronicler seems to answer that the king can order his own ways but cannot force the people's hearts.*

Connections: *Jotham's respect for Temple boundaries contrasts directly with his father Uzziah's transgression (chapter 26). The building of the Upper Gate of the Temple connects to the broader theme of Temple maintenance that runs through Joash (chapter 24), and forward to Hezekiah and Josiah. The Ammonite subjugation reverses the pattern of Ammonite aggression against Judah (2 Chronicles 20). The phrase 'he ordered his ways before the LORD' echoes the Psalmic language of Psalm 119 and the wisdom tradition's emphasis on the 'way' (derek) as a metaphor for life conduct. Jotham's peaceful reign provides a brief respite between Uzziah's dramatic fall and Ahaz's catastrophic apostasy — a calm eye in the storm of Judean decline.*

1Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became king, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jerushah daughter of Zadok. 2He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, following the example of his father Uzziah — except that he did not enter the Temple of the LORD. The people, however, continued their corrupt practices. 3He built the Upper Gate of the house of the LORD and did extensive building on the wall of Ophel. 4He built cities in the hill country of Judah, and in the forested areas he built fortresses and towers. 5He fought the king of the Ammonites and prevailed against them. The Ammonites paid him that year a hundred talents of silver, ten thousand cors of wheat, and ten thousand cors of barley. The Ammonites paid the same in the second and third years. 6Jotham grew strong because he ordered his ways before the LORD his God. 7The rest of the acts of Jotham — all his wars and his practices — are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. 8He was twenty-five years old when he became king and reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. 9Jotham slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the City of David. His son Ahaz reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jotham effectively served longer than sixteen years, since he was co-regent during his father Uzziah's illness. Jerushah daughter of Zadok — if this Zadok is from a priestly family, as the name suggests, Jotham has both royal and priestly lineage through his parents. The sixteen-year reign is the formal count from Uzziah's death.
2. The phrase *lo va el heikhal Adonai* ('he did not enter the Temple') directly references Uzziah's transgression in 26:16. The contrast is precise: the father entered and was struck; the son refrained and prospered. The verb *mashchitim* ('acting corruptly, destroying') describes the people's ongoing spiritual condition.
3. The Upper Gate (*sha'ar beit Adonai ha-elyon*) is a major Temple entrance. Ophel is the ridge connecting the City of David to the Temple mount — a strategically critical area. Extensive construction on the Ophel wall strengthens Jerusalem's defenses at its most vulnerable point. Jotham respects the Temple without entering it, yet invests in its infrastructure from the outside.
4. The construction of *biraniyyot* ('fortresses, citadels') and *migdalim* ('towers') in the *chorashot* ('forested areas, wooded regions') extends Judah's defensive network into previously undeveloped areas. This building program continues and extends Uzziah's wilderness tower construction (26:10), maintaining the infrastructure of a strong kingdom.
5. The tribute is enormous: a hundred talents of silver (approximately 3.4 metric tons) plus 10,000 cors each of wheat and barley (a cor being approximately 220 liters). The three-year tribute period indicates sustained Ammonite subjugation, not a one-time payment. This level of Transjordanian dominance recalls the empire of David and Solomon.
6. The verb *hekhin* shares a root with the noun *tekhunah* ('arrangement, order') — Jotham's life was arranged, ordered, aligned with God's standards. The phrase *lifnei Adonai Elohav* ('before the LORD his God') adds the personal possessive — this is not abstract religion but personal relationship.
7. The standard source citation. The mention of 'all his wars' (*kol milchamotav*) indicates military activity beyond the Ammonite campaign described in verse 5. The word *derakhav* ('his ways, practices') is the same word used in verse 6, suggesting the source text contained a more detailed account of Jotham's ordered conduct.
8. The repetition of the regnal data from verse 1 follows the standard closing formula pattern, framing the chapter with the same statistical facts. The sixteen-year reign, combined with his co-regency during Uzziah's illness, means Jotham exercised royal authority for perhaps twenty-five years or more.
9. Jotham receives full honorable burial in the City of David — no qualification, no denial of the royal tombs, no note of regret. He is one of the few post-Solomonic kings whose death notice contains no negative element. The succession to Ahaz is stated without comment, though the Chronicler's readers know that Ahaz will represent one of the most catastrophic reigns in Judah's history — a sharp contrast to his father's steady faithfulness.

28

Summary: Ahaz becomes king of Judah at twenty years old and reigns sixteen years in Jerusalem. Unlike David his ancestor, he does not do what is right in the eyes of the LORD. He walks in the ways of the kings of Israel, casts metal images for the Baals, burns incense in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom, and even burns his sons in the fire according to the abominations of the nations the LORD drove out before Israel. He sacrifices and burns incense on the high places, on the hills, and under every green tree. Because of this, the LORD his God gives him into the hand of the king of Aram, who defeats him and carries away a great number of captives to Damascus. He is also given into the hand of Pekah son of Remaliah king of Israel, who kills 120,000 of Judah in a single day — all valiant men — because they have abandoned the LORD God of their fathers. Zichri, a warrior of Ephraim, kills Maaseiah the king's son,

Azrikam the commander of the palace, and Elkanah who is second to the king. The Israelites carry away 200,000 captives from their brothers — women, sons, and daughters — along with great plunder. But Oded, a prophet of the LORD, goes out before the army coming to Samaria and warns them: the LORD God of your fathers gave Judah into your hand because of his anger against them, but you have slaughtered them with a rage that reaches to heaven. Now you intend to subjugate the people of Judah and Jerusalem as your male and female slaves — but are you not also guilty before the LORD your God? Listen to me: return the captives you have taken from your brothers, for the burning anger of the LORD is upon you. Certain leaders of Ephraim — Azariah, Berechiah, Jehizkiah, and Amasa — stand against those coming from the war and support the prophet's word. The Ephraimite leaders take the captives, clothe the naked from the plunder, give them clothing, sandals, food, drink, and ointment, set the feeble on donkeys, and bring them to Jericho, the city of palms, near their brothers, then return to Samaria. At that time Ahaz sends to the kings of Assyria for help. The Edomites have come and struck Judah and carried away captives. The Philistines have raided the cities of the lowland and the Negev of Judah, capturing Beth-shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soco, Timnah, and Gimzo with their surrounding villages, and settled there. For the LORD humbled Judah because of Ahaz king of Israel — the Chronicler calls him 'king of Israel' as an insult — because he had let Judah act without restraint and had been utterly unfaithful to the LORD. Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria comes to him but afflicts him instead of helping. Ahaz strips the house of the LORD, the royal palace, and the officials' houses, and gives it all to the king of Assyria, but it does not help him. In his time of distress, King Ahaz becomes even more unfaithful to the LORD. He sacrifices to the gods of Damascus who had defeated him, reasoning that since the gods of the kings of Aram helped them, he will sacrifice to them so they will help him — but they become his ruin and the ruin of all Israel. Ahaz gathers the vessels of the house of God and cuts them in pieces. He shuts the doors of the house of the LORD and makes altars for himself on every corner in Jerusalem. In every city of Judah he makes high places to burn incense to other gods, provoking the LORD God of his fathers. He sleeps with his fathers and is buried in the city of Jerusalem, but not in the tombs of the kings of Israel. Hezekiah his son reigns in his place.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler's account of Ahaz is far more negative than 2 Kings 16, adding details that make him a systematic destroyer of worship. The most striking element unique to Chronicles is the episode of the northern prophet Oded and the Ephraimite leaders who show mercy to the Judean captives (verses 9-15). This passage has no parallel anywhere else in the Hebrew Bible and presents a stunning reversal: the northern kingdom — usually cast as the apostate, condemned entity — acts with greater righteousness than Judah. The Ephraimite leaders clothe the naked, feed the hungry, anoint the wounded, and transport the feeble to safety. The language deliberately echoes Isaiah 58 and anticipates the parable of the Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-37), where a Samaritan — a descendant of these northern Israelites — shows mercy to a wounded Judean. The Chronicler's pointed use of the phrase 'your brothers' (acheikhem) five times in this passage insists that despite the political division, the northern and southern kingdoms remain family. The final insult to Ahaz is his exclusion from the royal tombs — buried in Jerusalem but not among the kings.*

Translation Friction: *The casualty figure of 120,000 in a single day (verse 6) is extraordinarily large and has been debated by scholars. The number may reflect the Chronicler's theological emphasis that abandoning the LORD produces catastrophic consequences, or it may use the word *elef* in its older sense of 'military unit' rather than 'thousand.' The identification of Tilgath-pilneser (verse 20) is a variant spelling of Tiglath-pileser III of Assyria (745-727 BCE). The Chronicler's designation of Ahaz as 'king of Israel' (verse 19) rather than 'king of Judah' is deliberate — Ahaz has so degraded the southern kingdom that it no longer deserves its distinct name. The shutting of the Temple doors (verse 24) is the most radical act: it effectively cancels the daily worship of the LORD in Jerusalem, something no previous king had done.*

Connections: *Ahaz's burning of his sons in fire (verse 3) violates Deuteronomy 18:10 and connects to the later condemnation of Manasseh (2 Chronicles 33:6). The Syro-Ephraimite crisis (the alliance of Aram and Israel against Judah) is narrated from a military perspective here but from a prophetic perspective in Isaiah 7, where Isaiah offers Ahaz the famous Immanuel sign. The Oded episode (verses 9-15) anticipates the Good Samaritan parable and demonstrates the Chronicler's theology that the north remains part of God's people. Ahaz's appeal to Assyria connects to Isaiah 8:5-8, where the prophet warns that the Assyrian flood Ahaz invites will eventually engulf Judah itself. The shutting of the Temple doors sets up the dramatic reopening by Hezekiah in chapter 29. The denial of royal burial connects to Jehoram (2 Chronicles 21:20) and Joash (2 Chronicles 24:25) — kings whose unfaithfulness is marked even in death.*

¹Ahaz was twenty years old when he became king, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of the LORD, as David his ancestor had done. ²He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel and also cast metal images for the Baals. ³He burned incense in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom and burned his sons in the fire, following the abominations of the nations that the LORD had driven out before the people of Israel. ⁴He sacrificed and burned incense on the high places, on the hills, and under every flourishing tree. ⁵So the LORD his God gave him into the hand of the king of Aram, who struck him and carried away a great number of captives to Damascus. He was also given into the hand of the king of Israel, who inflicted a devastating defeat on him. ⁶Pekah son of Remaliah killed 120,000 in Judah in a single day — all of them capable warriors — because they had abandoned the LORD, the God of their fathers. ⁷Zichri, a warrior of Ephraim, killed Maaseiah the king's son, Azrikam the commander of the palace, and Elkanah who was second to the king. ⁸The people of Israel carried away 200,000 of their own brothers — women, sons, and daughters — and also seized great plunder from them, bringing the spoil to Samaria. ⁹Now a prophet of the LORD was there, named Oded. He went out to meet the army coming to Samaria and said to them, 'Look — because the LORD, the God of your fathers, was angry with Judah, he gave them into your hand. But you have slaughtered them with a fury that has reached up to heaven. ¹⁰And now you intend to subjugate the people of Judah and Jerusalem as your male and female slaves. But are you yourselves not also guilty before the LORD your God? ¹¹Now listen to me: return the captives you have taken from your brothers, for the burning anger of the LORD is upon you. ¹²Then certain leaders of the Ephraimites — Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai — stood against those returning from the war. ¹³They said to them, 'You must not bring the captives here. What you propose would bring guilt from the LORD upon us. You intend to add to our sins and to our guilt, for our guilt is already great and the burning anger is upon Israel.' ¹⁴So the armed soldiers released the captives and the plunder before the leaders and the whole assembly. ¹⁵The men who had been designated by name rose up, took charge of the captives, and from the plunder clothed all who were naked. They dressed them, gave them sandals, fed them, gave them drink, anointed them with oil, set every feeble person on a donkey, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palms, near their brothers. Then they returned to Samaria. ¹⁶At that time King Ahaz sent to the kings of Assyria for help. ¹⁷For the Edomites had come again and struck Judah and carried away captives. ¹⁸The Philistines also raided the cities of the lowland and the Negev of Judah, capturing Beth-shemesh, Aijalon, Gederot, Soco with its surrounding villages, Timnah with its villages, and Gimzo with its villages, and they settled in them. ¹⁹For the LORD humbled Judah because of Ahaz king of Israel, because he had let Judah run wild and had been utterly unfaithful to the LORD. ²⁰Tilgath-pilneser king of Assyria came to him but afflicted him instead of strengthening him. ²¹For Ahaz stripped the house of the LORD, the royal palace, and the officials' houses and gave it all to the king of Assyria — but it did not help him. ²²In the time of his distress he became even more unfaithful to the LORD — this was King Ahaz. ²³He sacrificed to the gods of Damascus who had defeated him, saying, 'Since the gods of the kings of Aram help them, I will sacrifice to them so they will help me.' But they became his ruin and the ruin of all Israel. ²⁴Ahaz gathered the vessels of the house of God and cut them to pieces. He shut the doors of the house of the LORD and made altars for himself on every corner in Jerusalem. ²⁵In every city of Judah he made high places to burn incense to other gods, provoking the LORD, the God of his fathers. ²⁶The rest of his acts and all his ways, from first to last, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷Ahaz slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of Jerusalem, but they did not bring him into the tombs of the kings of Israel. Hezekiah his son reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal formula begins normally — age, duration, capital — but the assessment delivers the verdict immediately: *ve-lo asah ha-yashar be-einei YHWH* ('he did not do what was right in the eyes of the LORD'). The comparison standard is David, the covenant king. Ahaz is measured against the founder and found completely wanting. The sixteen years of his reign (approximately 735-715 BCE) coincide with the Syro-Ephraimite crisis and the rise of Assyrian dominance under Tiglath-pileser III.
2. The phrase *darkhei malkhei Yisra'el* ('the ways of the kings of Israel') is the Chronicler's severest condemnation — Ahaz follows the pattern of Jeroboam and Ahab, not David and Solomon. The *massekhot* ('cast images, molten idols') made for *ha-Be'alim* ('the Baals') represent local manifestations of the Canaanite storm deity. A king of Judah is manufacturing idols — the opposite of his vocation.

3. The gei Ben-Hinnom later became so associated with death and divine judgment that its name (Gehenna) became the standard term for the place of final punishment in later Jewish and Christian literature. The Chronicler's inclusion of this detail serves both as historical record and as theological explanation for the disasters that follow: a king who sacrifices his own children to foreign gods has severed every bond with the covenant.
4. The three locations — ba-bamot ('on the high places'), al ha-geva'ot ('on the hills'), tachat kol etz ra'anan ('under every flourishing tree') — form a comprehensive picture of open-air Canaanite worship. The phrase tachat kol etz ra'anan is a stock Deuteronomic expression (Deuteronomy 12:2) indicating syncretistic worship at sacred trees, which were associated with fertility religion. Ahaz does not merely add foreign worship to the existing system; he saturates the landscape with it.
5. The phrase va-yittenehu YHWH Elohav ('the LORD his God gave him') establishes direct causation: this is not random military misfortune but divine judgment. The double defeat — first by Aram (Syria under Rezin), then by Israel (under Pekah) — is the Syro-Ephraimite crisis of approximately 735 BCE, narrated from the Chronicler's theological perspective. The phrase makkah gedolah ('a great blow/defeat') is a standard military formula indicating catastrophic losses.
6. The number me'ah ve-esrim elef ('120,000') in a single day is staggering. The Chronicler provides the theological reason immediately: be-ozvam et YHWH Elohei avotam ('because they had abandoned the LORD God of their fathers'). The phrase benei chayil ('sons of valor, capable warriors') underscores that military prowess provides no protection when the LORD withdraws his defense. The clause structure places the cause after the result: first the massacre, then the reason.
7. Three high-ranking casualties are named: Maaseiah ben ha-melekh ('son of the king,' likely a prince rather than the crown prince, since Hezekiah survived), Azrikam negid ha-bayit ('the officer over the palace,' a senior administrative role), and Elqanah mishneh ha-melekh ('the king's second, the vice-regent'). The killing of these three by a single Ephraimite warrior (gibbor Efrayim) demonstrates the totality of Judah's military collapse.
8. The phrase me-achehem ('from their brothers') is the critical word in this verse. The Chronicler insists that despite the political division, the northern tribes and Judah remain achehem — brothers. This kinship language sets up the entire moral drama that follows. The captives are specified as nashim banim u-vanot ('women, sons, and daughters'), meaning the civilian population — not combatants but families.
9. Oded is otherwise unknown in the Hebrew Bible. His name may derive from the root 'ud ('to restore, to repeat'). His function as a prophet of the LORD in Samaria demonstrates the Chronicler's conviction that God maintained witnesses in the north even after the political split. The phrase ad la-shamayim higgia ('reaching to heaven') echoes Genesis 11:4 (the Tower of Babel) and implies that Israel's violence, like Babel's ambition, has challenged divine sovereignty.
10. The verb likhbosh ('to subjugate, to subdue') carries overtones of violent domination. The prophet's rhetorical question — halo raq attem immakhem ashamot la-YHWH Eloheikhem ('are there not with you — you yourselves — guilt-offenses against the LORD your God?') — demolishes any moral superiority the victors might claim. The word ashamot ('guilt-offenses, trespasses') applies equally to both kingdoms. The north cannot enslave the south when both stand guilty before the same God.
11. The imperative hashivu ('return, give back') uses the same root as teshuvah ('repentance, turning'). To return the captives is itself an act of repentance. The phrase me-acheikhem ('from your brothers') is emphatic — Oded insists on the kinship language. The warning ki charon af YHWH aleikhem ('for the burning anger of the LORD is upon you') transforms the victorious army into the accused: they are now the ones under divine judgment if they refuse.
12. Four named leaders — rashei venei Efrayim ('heads of the sons of Ephraim') — are identified with full patronymics, lending historical weight to their intervention. The verb va-yaqumu ('they rose up, they stood') indicates public, courageous opposition. The phrase al ha-ba'im min ha-tsava ('against those coming from the army') means these civilian leaders confronted a victorious military force — an act requiring considerable moral authority.
13. The Ephraimite leaders demonstrate remarkable theological self-awareness: ki rabbah ha-ashmah lanu ('for our guilt is already great'). They acknowledge their own complicity. The word ashmah ('guilt, trespass') appears three times in this single verse, creating a drumbeat of moral urgency. The phrase charon af al Yisra'el ('burning anger upon Israel') warns that the entire nation — not just Judah — stands under judgment.
14. The hechaluts ('the armed men, the vanguard') — the very soldiers who had seized the captives — release them. The verb va-ya'azov ('they left, abandoned, released') marks a complete reversal: what the army took by force, it now surrenders voluntarily. The act is performed lifnei ha-sarim ve-khol ha-qahal ('before the leaders and the whole assembly') — a public, witnessed transfer.
15. The verb va-yessukhum ('they anointed them') uses oil as a restorative, not a luxury — anointing the skin of people who had been marched as captives, likely wounded and sun-scorched. The seven acts of mercy correspond to basic human needs: covering, protection, nourishment, hydration, healing, transportation, and restoration to community. Jericho's designation as ir ha-temarim ('city of palms') echoes Deuteronomy 34:3 and Judges 1:16, connecting this act of mercy to the land's deep memory.
16. The phrase ba-et ha-hi ('at that time') indicates the Syro-Ephraimite crisis period (approximately 735 BCE). The plural malkhei Ashshur ('kings of Assyria') is unusual — 2 Kings 16:7 has the singular. The Chronicler may intend to indicate multiple Assyrian rulers or vassal kings within the Assyrian system. Ahaz's appeal to Assyria rather than to the LORD is the central failure: he seeks human rescue instead of divine deliverance.
17. Edom, Judah's neighbor to the southeast, exploits the military crisis to raid Judean territory. The phrase va-yishbu shevi ('they carried away captivity') indicates further deportation of Judean civilians. Edom's hostility toward Judah is a recurring theme (see Obadiah, Psalm 137:7) and worsens throughout the late monarchic period.

18. The Philistine incursion from the west completes the encirclement: Aram from the north, Israel from the north/east, Edom from the south/east, and now the Philistines from the west. The list of captured cities — Beth-shemesh, Aijalon, Gederot, Soco, Timnah, Gimzo — represents a significant loss of Judean territory in the Shephelah (western foothills) and Negev. The phrase *va-yeshvu sham* ('they settled there') indicates permanent occupation, not mere raiding.
19. The Chronicler delivers the devastating title: *Ahaz melek Yisra'el* ('Ahaz king of Israel') — not 'king of Judah.' This is not a scribal error but a deliberate insult: Ahaz has so corrupted the southern kingdom that it deserves no distinction from the apostate north. The verb *hifria* ('he let loose, he let run wild') suggests Ahaz removed all moral restraint. The phrase *ma'ol ma'al ba-YHWH* ('utterly unfaithful to the LORD') uses an emphatic infinitive absolute construction indicating complete covenant betrayal.
20. Tilgath-pilneser (Tillegat Pilne'ser, a variant of Tiglath-pileser III) arrives not as an ally but as an additional burden. The phrase *va-yatsar lo ve-lo chazaqo* ('he oppressed him and did not strengthen him') captures the irony of vassal diplomacy: the helper becomes another oppressor. The Assyrian king extracts tribute and demands submission while providing no genuine security — exactly what Isaiah had warned (Isaiah 7-8).
21. The verb *chalaq* ('he divided, he stripped') indicates systematic plundering. Ahaz raids three sources: *beit YHWH* ('the house of the LORD'), *beit ha-melek* ('the royal palace'), and *ha-sarim* ('the officials/princes'). The final clause — *ve-lo le-ezrah lo* ('but not for help to him') — is the theological punchline: all the wealth of Temple, palace, and nobility poured into Assyrian coffers produced nothing. Human alliances cannot replace divine protection.
22. The phrase *u-ve'et hatser lo* ('in the time of distress for him') marks the critical juncture: when other kings turned to God in crisis (Asa, Jehoshaphat), Ahaz doubles down on apostasy. The verb *va-yosef lim'ol* ('he added to his unfaithfulness') indicates escalation. The final phrase — *hu ha-melek Ahaz* ('this was King Ahaz') — is a unique literary device in Chronicles, a parenthetical identification that reads almost like a criminal record: 'this is that Ahaz,' as if his name has become synonymous with infidelity.
23. Ahaz's reasoning is presented as a logical syllogism: the gods of Aram helped Aram defeat me; therefore, if I worship those gods, they will help me. The logic is impeccable by polytheistic standards and utterly wrong by covenant standards. The Chronicler's verdict — *ve-hem hayu lo lehakhshilo u-le-khol Yisra'el* ('they became his stumbling and all Israel's') — uses the verb *hakhshil* ('to cause to stumble, to ruin'), indicating that the very gods Ahaz courted became the instruments of deeper destruction.
24. The shutting of the Temple doors is unprecedented. Even the worst northern kings (Jeroboam, Ahab) maintained alternative sanctuaries; Ahaz cancels worship of the LORD entirely. This detail, unique to Chronicles, sets up the dramatic reopening of the Temple by Hezekiah in 29:3 — the very first act of the new king. The phrase *be-khol pinnah* ('on every corner') implies dozens of small pagan altars throughout the city, transforming Jerusalem from the city of God into a city of idols.
25. The phrase *be-khol ir va-ir* ('in every city and city,' meaning in each and every city) indicates systematic, nationwide apostasy — not a personal deviation but a comprehensive religious policy. The phrase *elohim acherim* ('other gods') uses the standard Deuteronomic label for illegitimate deities. The verb *va-yakhe's* ('he provoked to anger') employs the *hiphil* of *ka'as*, a key Deuteronomic term for actions that provoke divine wrath.
26. The standard source citation — *sefer malkhei Yehudah ve-Yisra'el* ('the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel') — refers to a now-lost chronicle that the Chronicler used as a source. The phrase *ha-rishonim ve-ha-acharonim* ('the first and the last') covers Ahaz's entire reign, though the Chronicler has been selective in what he reports, focusing on the theological dimensions of failure.
27. The burial notice delivers a final indignity: *va-yiqberuhu va-ir bi-Yerushalayim* ('they buried him in the city, in Jerusalem') but *ki lo hevi'uhu le-qivrei malkhei Yisra'el* ('they did not bring him to the tombs of the kings of Israel'). He is buried in Jerusalem but excluded from the royal cemetery — honored enough for a grave, dishonored enough to be kept from his ancestors. The Chronicler again uses 'kings of Israel' rather than 'kings of Judah.' The final clause — *va-yimlokh Yechizkiyahu veno tachtav* ('Hezekiah his son reigned in his place') — introduces one of the greatest reforming kings, whose first act will be to undo everything Ahaz did.

29

Summary: Hezekiah becomes king at twenty-five years old and reigns twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother is Abijah daughter of Zechariah. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD, according to everything David his ancestor had done. In the first year of his reign, in the first month, he opens the doors of the house of the LORD and repairs them. He assembles the priests and Levites in the eastern square and addresses them: 'Hear me, Levites! Consecrate yourselves now and consecrate the house of the LORD, the God of your fathers, and carry the uncleanness out of the holy place. For our fathers were unfaithful and did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD our God. They abandoned him, turned their faces away from the dwelling of the LORD, and turned their backs. They also shut the doors of the porch, extinguished the lamps, stopped burning incense, and ceased offering burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel. Therefore the wrath of the LORD fell on Judah and Jerusalem, and he made them an object of horror, astonishment, and hissing, as you see with your own eyes. Our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons, daughters, and wives are in captivity because of this. Now it is in my heart to

make a covenant with the LORD, the God of Israel, so that his burning anger may turn away from us. My sons, do not be negligent now, for the LORD has chosen you to stand before him to serve him and to be his ministers and burners of incense.' The Levites rise up — the Chronicler names representatives from Kohath, Merari, Gershon, Elizaphan, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun — and they gather their brothers, consecrate themselves, and come to cleanse the house of the LORD as the king commanded, by the word of the LORD. The priests enter the inner part of the house of the LORD to cleanse it. They bring out every unclean thing they find in the Temple of the LORD to the courtyard, and the Levites carry it to the Wadi Kidron. They begin the consecration on the first day of the first month, reach the porch of the LORD by the eighth day, and spend eight more days consecrating the house of the LORD, finishing on the sixteenth day of the first month. They report to King Hezekiah: 'We have cleansed the entire house of the LORD, the altar of burnt offering with all its vessels, and the table of the showbread with all its vessels. We have restored and consecrated all the vessels that King Ahaz discarded during his reign when he was unfaithful. They are now before the altar of the LORD.' King Hezekiah rises early, assembles the leaders of the city, and goes up to the house of the LORD. They bring seven bulls, seven rams, seven lambs, and seven male goats as a sin offering for the kingdom, the sanctuary, and Judah. He commands the priests, sons of Aaron, to offer them on the altar of the LORD. They slaughter the bulls, the priests receive the blood and splash it on the altar; they slaughter the rams and splash the blood on the altar; they slaughter the lambs and splash the blood on the altar. Then they bring the male goats of the sin offering before the king and the assembly, who lay their hands on them. The priests slaughter them and make a sin offering with their blood on the altar, to make atonement for all Israel — for the king said the burnt offering and sin offering were for all Israel. He stations the Levites in the house of the LORD with cymbals, harps, and lyres, according to the command of David, Gad the king's seer, and Nathan the prophet — for the command came from the LORD through his prophets. The Levites stand with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets. Hezekiah commands that the burnt offering be offered on the altar. When the burnt offering begins, the song of the LORD begins with the trumpets and the instruments of David king of Israel. The whole assembly worships, the singers sing, and the trumpeters sound — all this continues until the burnt offering is finished. When the offering is complete, the king and all who are with him bow down and worship. King Hezekiah and the leaders tell the Levites to praise the LORD with the words of David and Asaph the seer. They praise with joy and bow their heads and worship. Hezekiah says, 'Now you have consecrated yourselves to the LORD. Come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings to the house of the LORD.' The assembly brings sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who are generous of heart bring burnt offerings. The number of burnt offerings: seventy bulls, a hundred rams, two hundred lambs — all as a burnt offering to the LORD. The consecrated offerings: six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep. But the priests are too few to skin all the burnt offerings, so their brothers the Levites help them until the work is finished and the priests have consecrated themselves — for the Levites were more upright in heart to consecrate themselves than the priests. There are also abundant burnt offerings with the fat of the peace offerings and the drink offerings for the burnt offerings. So the service of the house of the LORD is restored. Hezekiah and all the people rejoice because God had prepared the people, for the thing was done suddenly.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler devotes more space to Hezekiah's Temple restoration than to almost any other event in post-Solomonic history. The speed is extraordinary: in the first year of his reign, in the first month — meaning Hezekiah acts immediately upon taking the throne. His first act is to reopen the doors his father had shut (28:24), making the reversal of Ahaz's apostasy the defining gesture of his kingship. The address to the Levites (verses 5-11) is unique to Chronicles and functions as a covenant renewal speech. Hezekiah diagnoses the problem (our fathers were unfaithful), describes the consequences (wrath, horror, captivity), and proposes the solution (a covenant with the LORD). His use of the term 'my sons' (banai) to address the Levites is intimate and pastoral. The notation that the Levites 'were more upright in heart to consecrate themselves than the priests' (verse 34) is a remarkable observation — the Chronicler praises the Levites above the priests in zeal for holiness. The final verse notes that 'the thing was done suddenly' (be-fit'om) — the restoration happened with astonishing speed because God had prepared the people's hearts.*

Translation Friction: *The sixteen-day cleansing timeline (verses 17-18) has been debated: the first to the eighth day for reaching the porch, then eight more days for the inner sanctuary, totaling sixteen days — meaning the cleansing could not be completed before Passover on the fourteenth of the first month. This delay is the stated reason for celebrating Passover in the second month (chapter 30), invoking the provision of Numbers 9:10-11. The number of sacrificial animals (verses 32-33) is very large, and the note about insufficient priests (verse 34) reflects either a logistical reality or the Chronicler's subtle critique of priestly readiness compared to*

Levitical zeal. The phrase 'for all Israel' (le-khol Yisra'el, verse 24) in the context of sin offerings indicates that Hezekiah's restoration is not limited to Judah — he claims priestly authority over the entire covenant people.

Connections: The opening of the Temple doors (verse 3) directly reverses the closing in 28:24. Hezekiah's speech echoes Moses' covenant speeches in Deuteronomy. The sixteen-day cleansing timeline connects to the delayed Passover in chapter 30, which invokes Numbers 9:10-11. The command to station Levites with instruments 'according to the command of David' (verse 25) connects to David's organization of Temple music in 1 Chronicles 25. The phrase 'the song of the LORD' (shirat YHWH, verse 27) beginning simultaneously with the burnt offering reflects the theology that worship and sacrifice are inseparable. The Levites praising 'with the words of David and Asaph' (verse 30) connects the restoration to the Psalms tradition. The entire chapter functions as a second dedication of the Temple, echoing Solomon's original dedication in 2 Chronicles 5-7.

¹Hezekiah became king at twenty-five years old and reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abijah daughter of Zechariah. ²He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD, according to everything David his ancestor had done. ³In the very first month of his first year as king, he reopened the doors of the house of the LORD and repaired them. ⁴He brought in the priests and the Levites and assembled them in the eastern square. ⁵He said to them, 'Listen to me, Levites! Consecrate yourselves now and consecrate the house of the LORD, the God of your fathers. Carry the uncleanness out of the holy place. ⁶For our fathers were unfaithful and did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD our God. They abandoned him, turned their faces away from the dwelling of the LORD, and turned their backs. ⁷They also shut the doors of the porch, extinguished the lamps, stopped burning incense, and ceased offering burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel. ⁸Therefore the wrath of the LORD fell on Judah and Jerusalem, and he made them an object of horror, desolation, and hissing, as you see with your own eyes. ⁹Look — our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons, daughters, and wives are in captivity because of this. ¹⁰Now it is in my heart to make a covenant with the LORD, the God of Israel, so that his burning anger may turn away from us. ¹¹My sons, do not be negligent now, for the LORD has chosen you to stand before him, to serve him, to minister to him, and to burn incense. ¹²Then the Levites rose up: Mahath son of Amasai and Joel son of Azariah, from the Kohathites; from the sons of Merari, Kish son of Abdi and Azariah son of Jehalelel; from the Gershonites, Joah son of Zimmah and Eden son of Joah; ¹³from the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeiel; from the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah; ¹⁴from the sons of Heman, Jehiel and Shimei; and from the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel. ¹⁵They gathered their brothers, consecrated themselves, and came according to the king's command — by the word of the LORD — to cleanse the house of the LORD. ¹⁶The priests entered the inner part of the house of the LORD to cleanse it. They brought out every unclean thing they found in the Temple of the LORD into the courtyard of the house of the LORD. The Levites received it and carried it out to the Wadi Kidron. ¹⁷They began the consecration on the first day of the first month. By the eighth day of the month they had reached the porch of the LORD. They consecrated the house of the LORD for eight more days, and on the sixteenth day of the first month they finished. ¹⁸Then they went in to King Hezekiah and reported, 'We have cleansed the entire house of the LORD, the altar of burnt offering with all its vessels, and the table of the showbread with all its vessels. ¹⁹All the vessels that King Ahaz discarded during his reign when he was unfaithful — we have restored and consecrated them. They now stand before the altar of the LORD.' ²⁰King Hezekiah rose early, assembled the leaders of the city, and went up to the house of the LORD. ²¹They brought seven bulls, seven rams, seven lambs, and seven male goats as a sin offering for the kingdom, for the sanctuary, and for Judah. He commanded the priests, the sons of Aaron, to offer them on the altar of the LORD. ²²They slaughtered the bulls, and the priests received the blood and splashed it on the altar. They slaughtered the rams and splashed the blood on the altar. They slaughtered the lambs and splashed the blood on the altar. ²³Then they brought the male goats of the sin offering before the king and the assembly, and they laid their hands on them. ²⁴Then the priests slaughtered them and made a sin offering with their blood on the altar, to make atonement for all Israel — for the king had said that the burnt offering and the sin offering were for all Israel. ²⁵He stationed the Levites in the house of the LORD with cymbals, harps, and lyres, according to the command of David, of Gad the king's seer, and of Nathan the prophet — for the command came from the LORD through his prophets. ²⁶The Levites took their positions with David's instruments, while the priests held the trumpets. ²⁷Hezekiah commanded that the burnt offering be offered on the altar. When the burnt

offering began, the song of the LORD began as well, with the trumpets and the instruments of David king of Israel. ²⁸The whole assembly worshiped while the singers sang and the trumpeters sounded — all this continued until the burnt offering was completed. ²⁹When the offering was completed, the king and all who were present with him bowed down and worshiped. ³⁰King Hezekiah and the leaders told the Levites to praise the LORD with the words of David and of Asaph the seer. They praised with joy, bowed their heads, and worshiped. ³¹Hezekiah declared, 'Now you have consecrated yourselves to the LORD. Come near and bring sacrifices and thank offerings to the house of the LORD.' The assembly brought sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who were generous of heart brought burnt offerings. ³²The number of burnt offerings the assembly brought: seventy bulls, a hundred rams, two hundred lambs — all as a burnt offering to the LORD. ³³The consecrated offerings were six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep. ³⁴But the priests were too few and could not skin all the burnt offerings, so their brothers the Levites helped them until the work was finished and until more priests had consecrated themselves — for the Levites had been more conscientious in consecrating themselves than the priests. ³⁵There were also abundant burnt offerings with the fat of the peace offerings and the drink offerings for the burnt offerings. So the service of the house of the LORD was restored. ³⁶Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced because God had prepared the people, for the whole thing had happened so suddenly.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal formula introduces Hezekiah with the standard elements: age at accession (twenty-five), length of reign (twenty-nine years, approximately 715-686 BCE), and the queen mother's name (Abijah bat Zechariah). The name Yechizkiyahu means 'the LORD is my strength' — a programmatic name for a king whose defining characteristic will be trust in divine rather than human power.
2. The assessment is the highest possible: ke-khol asher asah David aviu ('according to everything David his ancestor had done'). Only Hezekiah and Josiah receive this complete comparison to David in Chronicles. Where Ahaz was measured against David and found wanting (28:1), Hezekiah is measured and found faithful. The phrase ke-khol ('according to all') indicates comprehensive obedience, not partial compliance.
3. The first month (Nisan) is also the month of Passover, though the Temple cleansing will take long enough to delay the actual Passover celebration until the second month (chapter 30). The word va-yechazzeqem ('he repaired them') uses the same root as Hezekiah's own name (chazaq, 'to be strong') — the king whose name means 'the LORD strengthens' begins by strengthening the LORD's doors.
4. The rehov ha-mizrachit ('the eastern square/plaza') was an open area on the east side of the Temple complex, likely near the main entrance. Assembling the clergy here — outside the Temple, since it is still unclean — is both practical and symbolic: they must be commissioned before they can enter and begin the work of purification.
5. Hezekiah's speech begins with the imperative shema'uni ('listen to me') — a royal command with covenantal overtones (echoing the shema of Deuteronomy 6:4). The double imperative — hitqaddeshu ('consecrate yourselves') and then qaddeshu et beit YHWH ('consecrate the house of the LORD') — establishes the sequence: the clergy must be holy before they can make the Temple holy. The niddah ('uncleanness, impurity, abomination') that must be removed refers to the pagan objects and ritually defiling items that Ahaz had introduced.
6. Hezekiah's diagnosis uses four verbs of rejection in sequence: ma'alu ('they were unfaithful'), asu ha-ra ('they did evil'), azavuhu ('they abandoned him'), va-yitnu oref ('they turned their backs'). The phrase va-yassevu peneihem mi-mishkan YHWH ('they turned their faces from the dwelling of the LORD') uses mishkan ('tabernacle, dwelling') rather than bayit ('house'), evoking the wilderness tradition and emphasizing that God's presence, not merely a building, has been rejected. Turning the back (oref) is the posture of contempt — you show your back to what you despise.
7. Four specific liturgical cancellations are listed: the doors shut (sageru daltot ha-ulam), the lamps extinguished (va-yekhabbu et ha-nerot — the menorah that was to burn perpetually, Exodus 27:20-21), the incense suspended (qetoret lo hiqtiru), and the burnt offerings stopped (olah lo he'elu). Each represents a violation of a standing divine command. The perpetual lamp, the daily incense, the morning and evening tamid — all ceased under Ahaz.
8. The three terms of judgment — le-za'avah ('for horror, trembling'), le-shammah ('for desolation, astonishment'), ve-lishreqah ('for hissing, derision') — form a standard prophetic triad describing a nation that has become a cautionary example to others (see Jeremiah 29:18). The phrase ka'asher attem ro'im be-eineikhem ('as you see with your own eyes') makes the consequences concrete and present: the Levites can look around them and see the evidence of divine judgment in the ruined state of the nation.
9. Hezekiah connects the theological failure (verses 6-7) to tangible consequences: avoteinu nafu be-charev ('our fathers fell by the sword') and baneinu u-venotenu u-nasheinu ba-shevi ('our sons and daughters and wives are in captivity'). The captivity reference points to the events of chapter 28 — the 200,000 taken by the northern kingdom and the captives taken by Edom. The word hinneh ('look, behold') demands that the assembly see the causal connection between apostasy and national disaster.
10. The phrase im levavi ('in my heart') indicates personal resolve — this is not merely policy but conviction. The verb likhrot berit ('to cut a covenant') uses the ancient language of covenant-making (the 'cutting' refers to the ritual of passing between divided animals, Genesis 15:10). Hezekiah frames

the Temple restoration as covenant renewal — not just repairing a building but restoring the relationship between God and people. The purpose clause — *ve-yashov mimmenu charon appo* ('so that his burning anger may turn from us') — connects restoration directly to the withdrawal of divine wrath.

11. The address *banai* ('my sons') is a term of pastoral intimacy and spiritual authority — Hezekiah positions himself as a father to the Levitical corps. The verb *tisshalu* ('be negligent, be slack') from the root *shalah* warns against complacency. The four functions — *la'amod lefanav* ('to stand before him'), *le-shareto* ('to serve him'), *lihyot lo meshartim* ('to be his ministers'), *u-maqtirim* ('and burners of incense') — define the Levitical vocation as a comprehensive life of service in the divine presence.
12. The Chronicler names representatives from each of the three Levitical divisions: Kohath, Merari, and Gershon — the sons of Levi listed in Genesis 46:11 and Exodus 6:16. Each division sends two men, named with full patronymics, giving the list a documentary quality that emphasizes this is a historical event, not an idealized construction. The verb *va-yaqumu* ('they rose up') echoes the rising of the Ephraimite leaders in 28:12 — obedience in response to a call.
13. Elizaphan (a Kohathite subclan, Numbers 3:30) and Asaph (the chief musical guild) each contribute two representatives. Asaph's descendants were the primary psalm-singers, and their inclusion signals that music will be integral to the rededication — not an afterthought but essential to proper worship.
14. Heman and Jeduthun complete the three great musical guilds (Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun) established by David (1 Chronicles 25). With fourteen named Levites from seven different clans — two from each — the Chronicler demonstrates that the response to Hezekiah's call is comprehensive, representing every branch of the Levitical order.
15. The phrase *ke-mitsvat ha-melekh be-divrei YHWH* ('according to the command of the king, by the words of the LORD') establishes a double authority: the royal command is grounded in the divine word. Hezekiah does not act on personal authority alone; his command channels the will of God. The sequence — gather, consecrate, come, cleanse — follows proper liturgical order: preparation before action.
16. The division of labor is precise: the priests enter *lifnimah* ('the innermost area') — the sanctuary proper, where only priests may go — and bring the *tum'ah* ('uncleanness, impurity') out to the *chatser* ('courtyard'). There the Levites receive it (*va-yeqabbelu*) and transport it to *nachal Qidron* ('the Wadi Kidron'), the valley east of Jerusalem that served as the disposal site for ritually impure material. This is the same location where Asa burned his grandmother's idol (2 Chronicles 15:16) and where Josiah will later destroy cult objects (2 Kings 23:4, 6).
17. The timeline is precise: days one through eight for the outer areas and approaches, reaching the *ulam* ('porch, vestibule') by the eighth day; then eight more days for the inner sanctuary and the house of the LORD itself, finishing on the sixteenth of the first month. This means the cleansing was not complete until two days after Passover (the fourteenth of Nisan), necessitating the delayed Passover of chapter 30. The total of sixteen days indicates the depth of the defilement Ahaz had caused.
18. The Levites' report specifies three areas: *kol beit YHWH* ('the entire house of the LORD'), *mizbach ha-olah* ('the altar of burnt offering') with its vessels, and *shulchan ha-ma'arekhet* ('the table of arrangement/showbread') with its vessels. Each represents a domain of worship: the building itself, the sacrificial system, and the bread of the Presence. The verb *tiharnu* ('we have cleansed') uses the priestly vocabulary of ritual purification.
19. The verb *hizniach* ('he cast away, he discarded') describes Ahaz's treatment of the sacred vessels — thrown aside as worthless. The Levites have *hekhenu* ('prepared, restored') and *hiqdashnu* ('consecrated') these same vessels. What Ahaz rejected, Hezekiah's Levites have recovered. The phrase *ve-hinnam lifnei mizbach YHWH* ('they now stand before the altar of the LORD') is a statement of liturgical restoration: the instruments of worship are back in their proper place.
20. The verb *va-yashkem* ('he rose early') indicates urgency and eagerness — Hezekiah does not delay. The assembly of *sarei ha-ir* ('the leaders of the city') ensures that the rededication is a civic as well as religious event. The phrase *va-ya'al beit YHWH* ('he went up to the house of the LORD') uses the verb of ascent (*alah*) — one always goes 'up' to the Temple, both physically (it sits on the highest point of the city) and spiritually.
21. The number seven — repeated four times for four types of animals (*parim*, *eilim*, *kevasim*, *tsefirei izzim*) — signifies completeness and perfection. The sin offering covers three domains: *al ha-mamlakhah* ('for the kingdom' — the political entity), *al ha-miqdash* ('for the sanctuary' — the sacred space), *ve-al Yehudah* ('for Judah' — the people). The specification *livnei Aharon ha-kohanim* ('the sons of Aaron the priests') ensures proper sacrificial authority.
22. The triple sequence — slaughter, receive blood, splash on altar — follows the prescribed ritual of Leviticus 1:5, 11. The verb *va-yizrequ* ('they splashed, they dashed') describes the vigorous application of blood to the altar surface, not a gentle sprinkling but a forceful throwing that covers the altar sides. The repetition three times (bulls, rams, lambs) creates a liturgical rhythm that emphasizes the thoroughness of the atonement ritual.
23. The laying on of hands (*semikhat yadayim*) is the ritual of transference described in Leviticus 4:24, 29 — the sins of the community are symbolically transferred to the animal through physical contact. The fact that this is performed *lifnei ha-melekh ve-ha-qahal* ('before the king and the assembly') makes it a public, national act of repentance, not a private priestly rite.
24. The phrase *le-khol Yisra'el* appears twice in this verse, framing the action and the royal intention. The Chronicler's pan-Israel theology — that all twelve tribes remain God's people regardless of political division — finds practical expression in this sacrificial act. Atonement cannot be limited to a political boundary when the covenant encompasses the whole people.

25. The three instruments — *metsiltayim* ('cymbals'), *nevalim* ('harps, lyres'), *kinnorot* ('lyres, smaller stringed instruments') — constitute the Levitical orchestra as established by David (1 Chronicles 25). The chain of authority is explicit: David commanded it, but the command originated *be-yad YHWH* ('from the hand of the LORD') transmitted *be-yad nevi'av* ('through the hand of his prophets,' specifically Gad and Nathan). Musical worship is not a human invention but a divinely authorized practice.
26. The division of musical labor is maintained: Levites play the stringed instruments (*kelei David*, 'instruments of David'), while priests play the *chatsotsrot* ('trumpets'). This distinction, established in Numbers 10:8-10 (trumpets are exclusively priestly), is preserved even in this moment of restoration. Proper worship requires proper order.
27. The synchronization is theologically significant: *u-ve'et hechel ha-olah hechel shir YHWH* ('at the time the burnt offering began, the song of the LORD began'). Sacrifice and song start simultaneously — worship is not sacrifice alone or music alone but both together. The phrase *shir YHWH* ('the song of the LORD') suggests a specific liturgical composition, possibly psalmic, that accompanied the daily offering.
28. Three simultaneous activities fill the Temple: *kol ha-qahal mishtachavim* ('the whole assembly bowing in worship'), *ha-shir meshorer* ('the song sounding'), and *ha-chatsotsrot machtsrim* ('the trumpets trumpeting'). The phrase *ha-kol ad likhhlot ha-olah* ('all this until the completion of the burnt offering') indicates sustained, uninterrupted worship for the entire duration of the sacrifice — a living tableau of restored relationship between God and people.
29. The verb *kare'u* ('they bowed, they knelt') followed by *va-yishtachavu* ('they prostrated themselves') describes a two-stage act of reverence: first kneeling, then full prostration. The king leads — he bows first, and *kol ha-nimts'e'im itto* ('all found with him') follow. Royal worship models national worship.
30. The phrase *be-divrei David ve-Asaf ha-chozeh* ('with the words of David and Asaph the seer') specifies the Psalms tradition as the liturgical text for praise. Asaph is called *chozeh* ('seer'), placing him in the prophetic category — his psalms are not merely musical compositions but prophetic utterances. The sequence *va-yehalelu ad le-simchah* ('they praised unto joy') indicates praise that produces joy, not joy that produces praise — worship as the source of gladness.
31. The phrase *mille'tem yedkhem la-YHWH* ('you have filled your hands to the LORD') is the technical idiom for priestly ordination (see Exodus 28:41, 29:9) — Hezekiah declares the Levites formally consecrated for service. The distinction between *zevachim ve-todot* ('sacrifices and thank offerings,' which the people eat in fellowship) and *olot* ('burnt offerings,' entirely consumed on the altar) represents two dimensions of worship: communion and total devotion. The phrase *kol nediv lev* ('everyone generous of heart') echoes the freewill contributions for the tabernacle (Exodus 35:5).
32. The quantities — seventy bulls, a hundred rams, two hundred lambs — represent substantial devotion. The number seventy (ten times seven) signifies complete fullness. The emphasis *kol elleh olah la-YHWH* ('all these as a burnt offering to the LORD') means every animal was entirely consumed on the altar — nothing retained by the worshipers. This is total giving.
33. The *qodashim* ('consecrated offerings, holy things') — six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep — are the peace/fellowship offerings that would be shared among the priests and the people. The quantities are enormous, reflecting both the generosity of the assembly and the scale of the celebration. These numbers echo Solomon's dedication sacrifices (2 Chronicles 7:5) and position Hezekiah's rededication as a second founding of the Temple.
34. This verse contains a remarkable editorial comment: *ki ha-Leviyyim yishrei levav lehitqaddesh me-ha-kohanim* ('for the Levites were more upright of heart in consecrating themselves than the priests'). The Chronicler — who generally exalts the priestly and Levitical orders — here distinguishes between them, praising Levitical zeal above priestly readiness. The implication is that some priests had been slow to purify themselves, perhaps reluctant to abandon the syncretistic practices of Ahaz's reign. The Levites, by contrast, responded immediately.
35. The phrase *va-tikkon avodat beit YHWH* ('the service of the house of the LORD was established/restored') is the climactic statement: the Temple is once again functioning as it should. The verb *tikkon* (from the root *kun*, 'to establish, to set in order') indicates proper arrangement — everything is now in its right place, functioning according to its original design. What Ahaz dismantled, Hezekiah has rebuilt.
36. The final verse attributes the success not to Hezekiah's leadership or Levitical zeal but to divine preparation: *al ha-hekchin ha-Elohim la-am* ('because God had established/prepared for the people'). The closing note — *ki ve-fit'om hayah ha-davar* ('for the thing happened suddenly/unexpectedly') — marvels at the speed of transformation. A Temple that had been shut, defiled, and abandoned was cleansed, rededicated, and restored to full operation within weeks. The suddenness itself is evidence of divine agency: only God could accomplish this so quickly.

30

Summary: *Hezekiah sends word to all Israel and Judah, and also writes letters to Ephraim and Manasseh, inviting them to come to the house of the LORD in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover to the LORD, the God of Israel. The king, his officials, and the whole assembly in Jerusalem have resolved to keep the Passover in the second month, because they could not keep it at the regular time — the priests had not consecrated themselves in sufficient numbers, and the people had not assembled in Jerusalem. The plan seems right to the king and the whole assembly. They decide to send a proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan, that everyone should come to keep the Passover to the LORD, the God of Israel, in Jerusalem, for they had not kept it in great numbers as prescribed. Runners go throughout all Israel and Judah with letters from the king and his officials, saying: 'People of Israel, return to the LORD, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, so that he may return to the remnant of you who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria. Do not be like your fathers and your brothers who were unfaithful to the LORD, the God of their fathers, so that he made them an object of horror, as you see. Do not now be stiff-necked as your fathers were. Submit to the LORD and come to his sanctuary, which he has consecrated forever. Serve the LORD your God, so that his burning anger may turn from you. For when you return to the LORD, your brothers and your children will find compassion before their captors and will return to this land. For the LORD your God is gracious and compassionate, and he will not turn his face from you if you return to him.' The runners pass from city to city through the land of Ephraim and Manasseh as far as Zebulun, but people laugh at them and mock them. Nevertheless, some from Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun humble themselves and come to Jerusalem. In Judah also the hand of God is at work to give them one heart to carry out the command of the king and the leaders, by the word of the LORD. A very large assembly gathers in Jerusalem to keep the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month. They rise and remove the altars in Jerusalem and remove all the incense altars and throw them into the Wadi Kidron. They slaughter the Passover on the fourteenth day of the second month. The priests and Levites are ashamed and consecrate themselves and bring burnt offerings into the house of the LORD. They stand in their appointed places according to the law of Moses the man of God. The priests splash the blood received from the hand of the Levites. For there are many in the assembly who have not consecrated themselves, so the Levites slaughter the Passover lambs for everyone who is not clean, to consecrate them to the LORD. For a large number of the people — many from Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun — have not purified themselves yet eat the Passover otherwise than as prescribed. But Hezekiah prays for them, saying, 'May the good LORD pardon everyone who sets his heart to seek God — the LORD, the God of his fathers — even though not according to the sanctuary's rules of cleanness.' The LORD hears Hezekiah and heals the people. The people of Israel who are present in Jerusalem celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days with great joy. The Levites and priests praise the LORD day after day with instruments of might to the LORD. Hezekiah speaks encouragingly to all the Levites who show fine skill in the service of the LORD. They eat the festival food for seven days, sacrificing peace offerings and giving thanks to the LORD, the God of their fathers. Then the whole assembly resolves to keep the feast for another seven days, and they celebrate seven more days with joy. For Hezekiah king of Judah contributes a thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep to the assembly, and the leaders contribute a thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep, and a great number of priests consecrate themselves. The whole assembly of Judah rejoices — the priests, the Levites, the whole assembly that came from Israel, the sojourners from the land of Israel, and those living in Judah. There is great joy in Jerusalem, for since the days of Solomon son of David king of Israel there has been nothing like this in Jerusalem. The priests and the Levites rise and bless the people, and their voice is heard, and their prayer comes to his holy dwelling in heaven.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter represents the Chronicler's most ambitious expression of pan-Israel theology. Hezekiah's Passover invitation goes not just to Judah but to the northern tribes — Ephraim, Manasseh, Zebulun, Asher, Issachar — many of whom are already under Assyrian threat or occupation. The invitation letter (verses 6-9) is a masterpiece of covenant theology, appealing to the patriarchs (Abraham, Isaac, Israel), acknowledging past failure, and grounding the call to return in the character of God. Verse 9 contains the central theological declaration: *ki channun ve-rachum YHWH Eloheikhem* ('for the LORD your God is gracious and compassionate') — an echo of the divine self-revelation in Exodus 34:6. This is chesed in action: God's faithful love is the reason the invitation is extended. Most remarkable is Hezekiah's prayer in verse 18-19 — he intercedes for northerners who eat the Passover in a state of ritual impurity, arguing that the intention of the heart (*heikhin levavo*) should take precedence over the rules of cleanness. This is a*

radical theological claim: sincere seeking of God matters more than ritual perfection. The LORD's response — *va-yishma YHWH el Yechizkiyahu va-yirpa et ha-am* ('the LORD heard Hezekiah and healed the people') — validates this principle. The fourteen-day celebration (seven plus seven) and the comparison to Solomon's era (verse 26) make this the greatest worship event since the Temple's original dedication.

Translation Friction: *The second-month Passover invokes the provision of Numbers 9:10-11, which allows individuals who are ritually unclean or on a journey to celebrate Passover in the second month. Hezekiah applies this individual provision to the entire nation — a creative legal interpretation that stretches the original law. The participation of northern tribes raises historical questions: by this point (approximately 715 BCE), Samaria has already fallen to Assyria (722 BCE) and many northerners have been deported. The 'remnant' who respond may be survivors in the northern territories or refugees who have already fled south. The mockery from some northerners (verse 10) alongside the obedience of others suggests a divided response. Hezekiah's prayer for those who are ritually unclean (verses 18-19) is extraordinary because it subordinates ritual law to heart posture — a tension the Chronicler does not fully resolve, simply reporting that God accepted the prayer.*

Connections: *The Passover celebration connects directly to the original Passover in Exodus 12 and to the only other explicitly narrated Passovers: the one at Sinai (Numbers 9), under Joshua (Joshua 5:10-12), and Josiah's Passover (2 Chronicles 35). The invitation letter's phrase 'return to the LORD' (*shuvu el YHWH*) echoes the prophetic call of Hosea (Hosea 14:1), Joel (Joel 2:12-13), and Isaiah. The description of God as *channun ve-rachum* ('gracious and compassionate,' verse 9) quotes the foundational divine self-description of Exodus 34:6 — the most cited verse in the Hebrew Bible by the Hebrew Bible itself. The comparison to Solomon (verse 26) links Hezekiah's celebration to the Temple dedication in 2 Chronicles 7. The fourteen-day festival parallels Solomon's fourteen-day dedication (2 Chronicles 7:8-9). The priestly blessing whose prayer 'comes to his holy dwelling in heaven' (verse 27) echoes Solomon's dedication prayer (2 Chronicles 6:21).*

¹Hezekiah sent word throughout all Israel and Judah, and also wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh, inviting them to come to the house of the LORD in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover to the LORD, the God of Israel. ²The king, his officials, and the entire assembly in Jerusalem had decided to celebrate the Passover in the second month. ³They could not celebrate it at the regular time because the priests had not consecrated themselves in sufficient numbers, and the people had not assembled in Jerusalem. ⁴The plan seemed right to the king and to the entire assembly. ⁵They decided to send a proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan, calling everyone to come and celebrate the Passover to the LORD, the God of Israel, in Jerusalem — for they had not kept it in great numbers as prescribed. ⁶Runners went throughout all Israel and Judah carrying letters from the king and his officials, saying by the king's command: 'People of Israel, return to the LORD, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, and he will return to the remnant of you who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria. ⁷Do not be like your fathers and your brothers who were unfaithful to the LORD, the God of their fathers, so that he made them an object of horror, as you can see. ⁸Do not now be stiff-necked as your fathers were. Submit to the LORD and come to his sanctuary, which he has consecrated forever. Serve the LORD your God, so that his burning anger may turn from you. ⁹For when you return to the LORD, your brothers and your children will find compassion before their captors and will return to this land. For the LORD your God is gracious and compassionate, and he will not turn his face from you if you return to him. ¹⁰The runners passed from city to city through the land of Ephraim and Manasseh as far as Zebulun, but people laughed at them and mocked them. ¹¹Nevertheless, some from Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem. ¹²In Judah also, the hand of God was at work to give them one heart to carry out the command of the king and the leaders, by the word of the LORD. ¹³A very large assembly gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month — an enormous congregation. ¹⁴They rose up and removed the altars in Jerusalem. They removed all the incense altars and threw them into the Wadi Kidron. ¹⁵They slaughtered the Passover lamb on the fourteenth day of the second month. The priests and the Levites were ashamed, consecrated themselves, and brought burnt offerings into the house of the LORD. ¹⁶They took their appointed places according to their custom, following the law of Moses the man of God. The priests splashed the blood that they received from the hands of the Levites. ¹⁷For there were many in the assembly who had not consecrated themselves, so the Levites took charge of

slaughtering the Passover lambs for everyone who was not clean, to consecrate them to the LORD. ¹⁸For a large number of the people — many from Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun — had not purified themselves, yet they ate the Passover contrary to what is prescribed. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying, 'May the good LORD grant atonement for everyone ¹⁹who sets his heart to seek God — the LORD, the God of his fathers — even though not cleansed according to the sanctuary's rules of purification.' ²⁰The LORD heard Hezekiah and healed the people. ²¹The people of Israel who were present in Jerusalem celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days with great joy. The Levites and the priests praised the LORD day after day with instruments of might to the LORD. ²²Hezekiah spoke encouragingly to all the Levites who showed fine skill in the service of the LORD. They ate the festival food for seven days, offering peace offerings and giving thanks to the LORD, the God of their fathers. ²³Then the whole assembly resolved to celebrate for another seven days, and they kept seven more days with joy. ²⁴For Hezekiah king of Judah contributed a thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep to the assembly, and the leaders contributed a thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep. A great number of priests now consecrated themselves. ²⁵The whole assembly of Judah rejoiced — the priests and the Levites, the entire assembly that came from Israel, the sojourners from the land of Israel, and those living in Judah. ²⁶There was great joy in Jerusalem, for since the days of Solomon son of David king of Israel there had been nothing like this in Jerusalem. ²⁷The priests and the Levites rose and blessed the people. Their voice was heard, and their prayer came up to his holy dwelling place in heaven.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scope is extraordinary: kol Yisra'el vi-Yehudah ('all Israel and Judah') — not just the southern kingdom. The additional iggerot ('letters') to Ephraim and Manasseh target the northern heartland specifically. The word pesach ('Passover') connects to the foundational event of the exodus. Hezekiah's initiative presumes that Jerusalem remains the legitimate center of worship for all twelve tribes.
2. The verb va-yivva'ats ('he took counsel') indicates deliberation — this is a consensus decision, not a royal decree alone. The shift to ba-chodesh ha-sheni ('the second month') invokes the alternative Passover date established in Numbers 9:10-11, originally intended for individuals who were ritually unclean or traveling. Hezekiah applies this provision to the entire nation.
3. Two practical reasons are given for the delay: the priests lo hitqaddeshu le-maddai ('had not consecrated themselves sufficiently/in adequate numbers') — echoing the earlier observation that Levites were more zealous than priests (29:34) — and the people lo ne'esfu li-Yerushalayim ('had not gathered to Jerusalem'). The Passover requires both priestly readiness and popular participation.
4. The phrase va-yishar ha-davar be-einei ha-melek ('the thing was straight/right in the eyes of the king') uses the same root (yashar) used in the regnal assessment 'he did what was right (ha-yashar) in the eyes of the LORD.' The consensus extends to kol ha-qahal — the whole assembly endorses the delayed Passover.
5. The geographic formula mi-Be'er Sheva ve-ad Dan ('from Beersheba to Dan') encompasses the full extent of the promised land, north to south. This is the traditional way of describing the entirety of Israel's territory (Judges 20:1, 1 Samuel 3:20). The admission ki lo la-rov asu ka-katuv ('for not in great numbers had they done it as written') acknowledges that proper Passover observance had lapsed — perhaps for generations under kings like Ahaz.
6. The ratsim ('runners, couriers') carry iggerot ('letters') — formal royal correspondence. The opening imperative shuvu el YHWH ('return to the LORD') uses the verb of repentance (shuv). The patriarchal names — Abraham, Isaac, and Israel (not Jacob, but Israel, emphasizing the covenant name) — ground the appeal in the deepest roots of national identity. The phrase ha-peleilah ha-nish'eret lakhem ('the remnant remaining to you') acknowledges that many northerners have already been deported by Assyria.
7. The letter warns against repeating the sins of avoteikhem va-acheikhem ('your fathers and your brothers') — both ancestors and contemporaries who were unfaithful. The verb ma'alu ('they were unfaithful, they acted treacherously') is the Chronicler's primary term for covenant betrayal. The visible evidence — ka'asher attem ro'im ('as you see') — refers to the devastation already inflicted by Assyria on the northern territories.
8. The phrase al taqshu orpekhem ('do not harden your necks') echoes Deuteronomy 10:16 and the wilderness rebellion narratives. A stiff-necked people refuses to bow, refuses to turn. The imperative tenu yad la-YHWH ('give the hand to the LORD') means to submit, to pledge allegiance — a gesture of formal submission. The Temple is described as miqdash asher hiqdish le-olam ('a sanctuary consecrated forever'), asserting its permanent divine status despite Ahaz's defilement.
9. The verb shuv ('to return, to turn') appears three times in this verse — return to the LORD, return to this land, return to him — creating a theology of return at every level: spiritual, geographical, relational. The word rachamim ('compassion') derives from rechem ('womb'), suggesting the deep, visceral tenderness of a mother. The phrase channun ve-rachum echoes the core divine attributes first revealed at Sinai (Exodus 34:6) and quoted throughout the Psalms (Psalm 86:15, 103:8, 145:8).
10. The response of the north is divided. The verbs maschikim ('laughing') and mal'igim ('mocking, scorning') describe contemptuous rejection of the royal invitation. The mockery may reflect northern resentment of Jerusalem's claim to religious supremacy, or political suspicion of Judean motives,

or simply the spiritual indifference that generations of apostasy had produced. The runners endure ridicule — a prophetic experience, since God's messengers are regularly mocked (2 Chronicles 36:16).

11. The conjunction *akh* ('nevertheless, however') introduces the counter-narrative: despite the majority's mockery, *anashim me-Asher u-Menasheh u-mi-Zevulun* ('people from Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun') respond with humility. The verb *nikhne'u* ('they humbled themselves') is the Chronicler's key term for proper response to God — the same word used in 2 Chronicles 7:14 ('if my people humble themselves'). Three northern tribes are represented, demonstrating that the invitation bore fruit.
12. The phrase *yad ha-Elohim* ('the hand of God') indicates direct divine involvement. The gift of *lev echad* ('one heart') — unity of purpose — comes from God, not from political persuasion. The Chronicler attributes the national consensus to divine action: God unified Judah's will. The phrase *bi-dvar YHWH* ('by the word of the LORD') confirms that the king's command aligns with God's word — royal and divine authority converge.
13. The double emphasis — *am rav* ('a great people/multitude') and *qahal la-rov me'od* ('an exceedingly great assembly') — stresses the scale of the gathering. The *chag ha-matsot* ('Festival of Unleavened Bread') is the seven-day festival that accompanies Passover (Exodus 12:15-20). The second month is *Iyyar* (approximately May), one month after the normal Passover date.
14. The people themselves — not just priests or royal workers — take the initiative: *va-yaqumu* ('they rose up') and remove the pagan altars Ahaz had erected 'on every corner' (28:24). The *mizbehot* ('altars') and *meqatterot* ('incense altars/stands') represent the physical infrastructure of apostasy. Their disposal in *nachal Qidron* ('the Wadi Kidron') mirrors the disposal of Temple impurities in 29:16 — the same valley receives both the defilement from the Temple and the pagan installations from the city.
15. The Passover lamb is slaughtered on the fourteenth — the correct day, though in the second month rather than the first. The note that the priests and Levites *nikhlemu* ('were ashamed, felt disgraced') is remarkable: the popular enthusiasm shames the clergy into action. The people's readiness to worship exposes the professionals' reluctance. Ashamed, they consecrate themselves and bring offerings — shame becomes a catalyst for holiness.
16. The phrase *ke-torat Mosheh ish ha-Elohim* ('according to the Torah of Moses the man of God') grounds the procedure in Mosaic authority. The unusual detail that the priests receive blood *mi-yad ha-Leviyim* ('from the hand of the Levites') reverses the normal order (ordinarily the one who slaughters hands the blood directly to the priest). This arrangement accommodates the large number of unclean participants — the Levites serve as intermediaries.
17. The phrase *rabbat ba-qahal asher lo hitqaddash* ('many in the assembly who had not consecrated themselves') describes the practical problem: large numbers of worshipers, especially from the north, are ritually unclean. The Levites step in as surrogate slaughterers — *shechitat ha-pesachim* ('the slaughtering of the Passover lambs') — performing on behalf of those who cannot handle the sacred blood themselves. The goal remains *lehaqdish la-YHWH* ('to consecrate to the LORD').
18. Four northern tribes are named: Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, Zebulun. They ate the Passover *be-lo ka-katuv* ('not according to what is written') — a frank admission of ritual irregularity. Hezekiah's response is not to exclude them but to pray: *YHWH ha-tov yekapper be'ad* ('may the LORD, the good one, make atonement on behalf of...'). The epithet *ha-tov* ('the good one') appeals to God's fundamental goodness as the basis for mercy.
19. The phrase *lidrosh ha-Elohim* ('to seek God') is the Chronicler's characteristic verb for genuine worship — not merely attending a ceremony but actively pursuing the divine presence. The tension between heart preparation and ritual cleanness anticipates prophetic critiques of empty ritual (Isaiah 1:11-17, Hosea 6:6) and Jesus' teaching on inner versus outer purity (Mark 7:14-23).
20. The divine response — *va-yishma YHWH el Yechizkiyahu va-yirpa et ha-am* ('the LORD heard Hezekiah and healed the people') — is remarkable in its brevity and decisiveness. The verb *va-yirpa* ('he healed') implies that ritual impurity had placed the people in spiritual danger (the threat of divine judgment for improper Passover participation, see Numbers 9:13). God's healing removes that danger. The prayer of the king secures the safety of the worshipers — a priestly intercession from the throne.
21. The phrase *be-simchah gedolah* ('with great joy') characterizes the entire celebration. The Levites and priests praise *yom be-yom* ('day by day') — continuous praise throughout the seven-day festival. The phrase *bikhlei oz la-YHWH* ('with instruments of might/strength to the LORD') describes powerful, resonant musical instruments played at full volume — worship that fills the entire Temple precinct with sound.
22. The phrase *va-yedabber al lev* ('he spoke to the heart') means to speak with encouragement and comfort. The Levites are described as *ha-maskilim sekhel tov la-YHWH* ('those who show good understanding/skill for the LORD') — they are not merely performing duties but exercising discernment. The combination of eating (*va-yokhelu*), sacrificing (*mezabchim zivchei shelamim*, 'offering peace offerings'), and confessing/thanking (*mitvaddim*, which can mean either 'confessing' or 'praising') makes the festival a complete experience of communion, sacrifice, and gratitude.
23. The decision to add *shiv'at yamim acherim* ('another seven days') is spontaneous — the assembly itself resolves (*va-yivva'atsu*) to extend the celebration. The joy is so great that the prescribed seven days are not enough. This extension to fourteen days mirrors Solomon's Temple dedication, which also lasted fourteen days (2 Chronicles 7:8-9). The word *simchah* ('joy') characterizes the extension — this is not duty but delight.
24. The royal contribution — *elef parim ve-shiv'at alafim tson* ('a thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep') — provides the sacrificial animals for the extended celebration. The leaders match with another thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep. These enormous numbers signal both royal and aristocratic generosity. The final note — *va-yitqaddeshu kohanim la-rov* ('priests consecrated themselves in great numbers') — resolves the earlier problem (29:34): the priests who had been slow to purify are now, shamed by the people's enthusiasm, consecrating themselves in abundance.

25. The list of participants defines who 'all Israel' includes: kol qahal Yehudah ('the whole assembly of Judah'), the clergy (priests and Levites), kol ha-qahal ha-ba'im mi-Yisra'el ('all the assembly coming from Israel' — northern tribes), ha-gerim ha-ba'im me-erets Yisra'el ('the sojourners from the land of Israel' — perhaps non-Israelites from the north), and ha-yoshvim bi-Yehudah ('those dwelling in Judah'). The celebration is maximally inclusive — five distinct groups, united in joy.
26. The comparison to Solomon — mi-yemei Shelomoh ben David melekh Yisra'el ('since the days of Solomon son of David king of Israel') — is the highest possible praise. Solomon's dedication (2 Chronicles 7) was the last time all Israel had gathered in Jerusalem with this kind of joy. The Chronicler claims that Hezekiah's celebration matches and even recalls that founding moment. The phrase lo ka-zot bi-Yerushalayim ('nothing like this in Jerusalem') emphasizes the uniqueness of this event.
27. The chapter closes with the priestly blessing — va-yevarakhu et ha-am ('they blessed the people') — the public pronouncement of divine favor (Numbers 6:24-26). The extraordinary claim follows: va-yishama be-qolam ('their voice was heard') and va-tavo tefillatam li-me'on qodsho la-shamayim ('their prayer came to his holy dwelling in heaven'). The prayer ascends from the earthly Temple to the heavenly dwelling — the same vertical connection Solomon described in his dedication prayer (2 Chronicles 6:21). Heaven receives what earth offers. The restored Temple functions again as the meeting point between the human and the divine.

31

Summary: *When all this is finished, all Israel who are present go out to the cities of Judah and smash the sacred pillars, cut down the Asherah poles, and demolish the high places and the altars throughout all Judah and Benjamin, as well as in Ephraim and Manasseh, until they have destroyed them all. Then all the people of Israel return to their cities, each to his own property. Hezekiah establishes the divisions of the priests and the Levites according to their courses — each according to his service — the priests and Levites for burnt offerings and peace offerings, to minister, to give thanks, and to praise in the gates of the camps of the LORD. The king's contribution from his own possessions is designated for the burnt offerings: the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the Sabbaths, the new moons, and the appointed feasts, as written in the law of the LORD. He commands the people living in Jerusalem to give the portion due to the priests and the Levites so that they may devote themselves to the law of the LORD. As soon as the command is spread, the people of Israel give generously of the firstfruits of grain, new wine, oil, honey, and all the produce of the field. They bring in an abundance of the tithe of everything. The people of Israel and Judah who live in the cities of Judah also bring the tithe of cattle and sheep, and the tithe of the dedicated things consecrated to the LORD their God, and they lay them in heaps. They begin to pile up the heaps in the third month and finish in the seventh month. When Hezekiah and the leaders come and see the heaps, they bless the LORD and his people Israel. Hezekiah asks the priests and the Levites about the heaps, and Azariah the chief priest of the house of Zadok answers him: 'Since the people began to bring the contributions to the house of the LORD, we have eaten and had enough and have plenty left over, for the LORD has blessed his people, and this great abundance is what is left over.' Hezekiah commands them to prepare chambers in the house of the LORD, and they do so. They faithfully bring in the contributions, the tithes, and the dedicated things. Conaniah the Levite is in charge of them, with Shimei his brother as second. Jehiel, Azariah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismachiah, Mahath, and Benaiah serve as overseers under the direction of Conaniah and Shimei his brother, by the appointment of King Hezekiah and Azariah the chief officer of the house of God. Kore son of Imnah the Levite, keeper of the east gate, is over the freewill offerings to God, to distribute the contributions to the LORD and the most holy things. Under him are Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah in the cities of the priests, faithfully distributing to their brothers by divisions, great and small alike — besides those enrolled by genealogy, males three years old and above — to everyone who enters the house of the LORD as the duty of each day requires, for their service according to their divisions. The enrollment of the priests is by their ancestral houses, and the Levites twenty years old and above by their duties in their divisions. They are enrolled with all their dependents — wives, sons, and daughters, the whole assembly — for they faithfully consecrate themselves in holiness. For the sons of Aaron, the priests, in the fields and pasturelands of their cities, in each city there are men designated by name to distribute portions to every male among the priests and to everyone enrolled among the Levites. Hezekiah does this throughout all Judah. He does what is good, right, and faithful before the LORD his God. In every work he undertakes in the service of the house of God, in the law, and in the commandments, seeking his God, he acts with all his heart, and he prospers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents Hezekiah as the ideal reforming king — one who moves from dramatic Temple rededication (chapter 29) and celebratory Passover (chapter 30) to the unglamorous but essential work of institutional organization. The destruction of pagan installations extends beyond Judah into the northern territories of Ephraim and Manasseh, reflecting the Chronicler's conviction that Hezekiah exercises legitimate authority over all Israel. The most striking element is the abundance of tithes: the people give so generously that the contributions pile up in heaps (aremot) from the third month to the seventh — a physical demonstration of covenant blessing. When Hezekiah asks about the heaps, Azariah the chief priest responds with a testimony of divine blessing: 'Since the people began to bring the contributions to the house of the LORD, we have eaten and had enough and have plenty left over, for the LORD has blessed his people.' This surplus echoes the manna provision in Exodus 16 and anticipates the principle of 2 Corinthians 9:8 — God provides abundantly when his people give faithfully. The final verse serves as the Chronicler's summary evaluation: Hezekiah does what is good (tov), right (yashar), and faithful (emet) — the complete triad of covenantal virtue.*

Translation Friction: *The extension of the reform into Ephraim and Manasseh (verse 1) raises historical questions about the extent of Judah's actual political control over northern territories after the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE. Some scholars argue that this reflects Hezekiah's genuine expansion into power vacuums left by Assyrian deportations; others see it as the Chronicler's theological projection. The administrative details of tithe distribution (verses 11-19) are uniquely Chronicler material with no parallel in 2 Kings, suggesting either access to Temple administrative records or a concern to model ideal institutional practice. The age of three years for enrollment (verse 16) has been variously interpreted — some emending to 'thirty years' based on Numbers 4:3, while the text may intend a different kind of enrollment (registration for food distribution rather than for active service).*

Connections: *The destruction of high places and Asherah poles (verse 1) connects to earlier reform efforts by Asa (2 Chronicles 14:3) and Jehoshaphat (2 Chronicles 17:6), and anticipates Josiah's more thorough purge (2 Chronicles 34). The priestly divisions 'according to their courses' (verse 2) recalls David's organization in 1 Chronicles 24. The tithing abundance echoes Malachi 3:10 — 'Bring the full tithe into the storehouse...and see if I will not open the windows of heaven and pour down a blessing.' The phrase 'seeking his God' (lidrosh Elohav, verse 21) is the Chronicler's signature term for authentic relationship with God, used throughout Chronicles as the decisive indicator of a king's faithfulness.*

¹When all this was finished, all Israel who were present went out to the cities of Judah and smashed the sacred pillars, cut down the Asherah poles, and demolished the high places and the altars throughout all Judah and Benjamin, and also in Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. Then all the people of Israel returned, each to his own property in their cities. ²Hezekiah established the divisions of the priests and the Levites according to their courses, each according to his service — the priests and the Levites for burnt offerings and peace offerings, to minister, to give thanks, and to praise in the gates of the camps of the LORD. ³The king's contribution from his own possessions was designated for the burnt offerings: the morning and evening burnt offerings, the burnt offerings for the Sabbaths, the new moons, and the appointed feasts, as written in the law of the LORD. ⁴He commanded the people living in Jerusalem to give the portion due to the priests and the Levites so that they could devote themselves to the law of the LORD. ⁵As soon as the command spread, the people of Israel gave generously of the firstfruits of grain, new wine, oil, and honey, and all the produce of the field. They brought in an abundance of the tithe of everything. ⁶The people of Israel and Judah living in the cities of Judah also brought the tithe of cattle and sheep, and the tithe of dedicated things consecrated to the LORD their God, and laid them in heaps upon heaps. ⁷They began piling up the heaps in the third month and finished in the seventh month. ⁸When Hezekiah and the officials arrived and saw the heaps of contributions, they praised the LORD and blessed his people Israel. ⁹Hezekiah asked the priests and the Levites about the heaps. ¹⁰Azariah the chief priest, of the house of Zadok, answered him, 'Since the people began bringing the contributions into the house of the LORD, we have eaten and had enough and have plenty left over, for the LORD has blessed his people. What is left over is this great abundance.' ¹¹Hezekiah commanded that storerooms be prepared in the house of the LORD, and they prepared them. ¹²They faithfully brought in the contributions, the tithes, and the dedicated things. Conaniah the Levite was in charge of them, with Shimei his brother as second. ¹³Jehiel, Azariah,

Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismachiah, Mahath, and Benaiah served as overseers under the direction of Conaniah and Shimei his brother, by the appointment of King Hezekiah and Azariah the chief officer of the house of God. ¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah the Levite, keeper of the east gate, was in charge of the freewill offerings to God, distributing the contributions to the LORD and the most holy things. ¹⁵ Under him were Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests, faithfully distributing to their brothers by divisions, to great and small alike — ¹⁶ beside those enrolled by genealogy, males from three years old and above, to everyone entering the house of the LORD as the daily duty required, for their service according to their divisions. ¹⁷ The enrollment of the priests was by their ancestral houses, and the Levites from twenty years old and above by their duties and divisions. ¹⁸ They were enrolled with all their dependents — their wives, sons, and daughters, the whole assembly — for they faithfully consecrated themselves in holiness. ¹⁹ For the sons of Aaron, the priests, in the pasturelands of their cities, in each and every city, there were men designated by name to distribute portions to every male among the priests and to everyone enrolled among the Levites. ²⁰ Hezekiah did this throughout all Judah. He did what was good, right, and faithful before the LORD his God. ²¹ In every work he undertook in the service of the house of God, in the law, and in the commandments, seeking his God, he acted with all his heart, and he prospered.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The celebration produces action: va-yeshabru ha-matstsevoṭ ('they smashed the pillars'), va-yegadde'u ha-asherim ('they cut down the Asherah poles'), va-yenatsu et ha-bamot ve-et ha-mizbechoṭ ('they demolished the high places and the altars'). The geographic scope is remarkable — mi-kol Yehudah u-Vinyamin u-ve-Efrayim u-Menasheh ('from all Judah and Benjamin and in Ephraim and Manasseh'). The reform extends into northern territory. The phrase ad le-khallel ('until completely finishing') indicates thoroughness.
2. The restoration of the machlaqot ('divisions, courses') follows David's original organization (1 Chronicles 24). The four functions are listed: le-olah ve-li-shelamim ('for burnt offerings and peace offerings' — the sacrificial dimension), le-sharet ('to minister' — the service dimension), le-hodot ('to give thanks'), u-lehallel ('to praise' — the musical dimension). The phrase be-sha'arei machanot YHWH ('in the gates of the camps of the LORD') is an unusual expression treating the Temple precinct as a military camp — God's encampment among his people.
3. The phrase menat ha-melekh min rekhusho ('the king's portion from his own property') means Hezekiah personally funds the public sacrificial system from the royal treasury. The daily tamid ('morning and evening burnt offerings'), the Sabbath offerings, the new moon offerings, and the mo'adot ('appointed feasts') — the complete liturgical calendar is restored and royally funded. The phrase ka-katuv be-torat YHWH ('as written in the law/instruction of the LORD') grounds the practice in scriptural authority.
4. The purpose clause is significant: le-ma'an yechezqu be-torat YHWH ('so that they may be strong/devoted in the law of the LORD'). The verb yechezqu ('they may be strong, they may hold fast') shares the root of Hezekiah's own name. Financial support enables spiritual devotion — when clergy are provided for, they can focus entirely on their calling. This is the practical theology of the tithe: the community supports those who serve God full-time.
5. The phrase u-khifrots ha-davar ('as soon as the word broke out/spread') indicates rapid popular response. The firstfruits include the five staples: dagan ('grain'), tirosh ('new wine'), yitshar ('fresh oil'), devash ('honey'), and kol tevu'at sadeh ('all produce of the field'). The word la-rov ('in abundance, greatly') emphasizes the generosity — the people give lavishly, not grudgingly.
6. The phrase aremot aremot ('heaps upon heaps') is a vivid image of abundance — the tithes are so plentiful they must be stacked in piles. The ma'aser baqar va-tson ('tithe of cattle and sheep') and ma'aser qodashim ha-mequddashim ('tithe of holy things consecrated') represent both agricultural and livestock wealth. The generosity is so great it creates a logistical challenge.
7. The third month (Sivan, approximately June) marks the beginning of the wheat harvest; the seventh month (Tishrei, approximately October) marks the end of the agricultural year with the harvest festivals. The four-month accumulation period covers the entire growing season — firstfruits and tithes arrive continuously from early summer through autumn. The verb liyesod ('to lay the foundation, to begin building') treats the heaps like construction projects — they are that large.
8. The royal inspection produces spontaneous worship: va-yevarakhu et YHWH ve-et ammo Yisra'el ('they blessed the LORD and his people Israel'). The king blesses both God (for providing abundance) and the people (for their generosity). The visible heaps of produce are tangible evidence of covenant faithfulness — when the people give, God blesses; when God blesses, the people have more to give.
9. The verb va-yidrosh ('he inquired') uses the same root as the Chronicler's key term for seeking God. Here, the king investigates the practical matter of the tithe accumulation. His inquiry leads to the chief priest's testimony in the next verse.
10. Azariah's testimony is structured as a three-part progression: akhol ('eating' — sustenance), ve-savoa ('and being satisfied' — sufficiency), ve-hoter ad la-rov ('and having left over in abundance' — surplus). The conclusion — ki YHWH berakh et ammo ('for the LORD has blessed his people') — attributes the abundance to divine blessing. The final phrase — ve-ha-notar et he-hamon ha-zeh ('what is left over is this great multitude/store') —

gestures toward the visible heaps. This is the economics of covenant faithfulness: obedient giving produces more than enough.

11. The abundance requires infrastructure: leshakhhot ('storerooms, chambers') must be prepared in the Temple complex to house the tithes and offerings. The verb lehakhin ('to prepare, to establish') indicates orderly planning — the surplus is not left in open-air heaps but properly stored for systematic distribution.
12. The word be-emunah ('faithfully, with integrity') describes how the contributions are handled — honest stewardship of sacred resources. Conaniah (Conanyahu) the Levite is appointed nagid ('chief, officer') over the operation, with his brother Shimei as mishneh ('second-in-command'). The administrative structure ensures accountability and proper distribution.
13. Ten overseers (pequdim) are named — a full administrative team for managing the vast tithe stores. The dual authority — be-mifqad Yechizkiyahu ha-melek va-Azaryahu negid beit ha-Elohim ('by the appointment of King Hezekiah and Azariah the chief officer of the house of God') — reflects the collaboration of royal and priestly authority in Temple administration.
14. Kore (Qore') holds the position of sho'er la-mizrachah ('gatekeeper of the east') — the primary entrance to the Temple. He oversees nidvot ha-Elohim ('the freewill offerings of God'), terumat YHWH ('the contributions to the LORD'), and qodshei ha-qodashim ('the most holy things'). The east gate is the most important entrance, and its gatekeeper controls the flow of sacred donations.
15. Six distributors serve in the priestly cities — the Levitical towns scattered throughout Judah where priests and Levites lived when not on Temple duty. The phrase be-emunah ('in faithfulness') again emphasizes honest stewardship. The principle ka-gadol ka-qatan ('to the great as to the small') ensures equitable distribution regardless of rank or status.
16. The enrollment covers zekhariah mi-ben shalosh shanim u-lema'lah ('males from three years old and above') — presumably for food distribution rather than active Temple service (which began at twenty or thirty). The phrase li-dvar yom be-yomo ('for the matter of each day in its day') indicates daily distribution of provisions. The system ensures that every registered priest and Levite receives regular support.
17. Two enrollment systems run in parallel: the priests registered le-veit avoteihem ('by their ancestral houses'), maintaining the genealogical structure of the priestly families, and the Levites registered from age twenty and above be-mishmeroteihem be-machlaqoteihem ('in their watches and in their divisions'). The age of twenty for Levitical service follows the standard in 1 Chronicles 23:24.
18. The registration includes be-khol tappam ('all their little ones'), neshehem ('their wives'), u-venehem u-venoteihem ('their sons and daughters'). The entire priestly and Levitical family structure is covered by the distribution system. The concluding phrase — ki be-emunatam yitqaddeshu qodesh ('for in their faithfulness they consecrated themselves in holiness') — connects financial support to spiritual purity: the system enables consecrated living.
19. The distribution system reaches beyond Jerusalem to the priestly cities with their surrounding pasturelands (migrash). Named officials (anashim asher niqgevu ve-shemot, 'men designated by name') in each city ensure that even remote clergy receive their portions. The system is comprehensive and personally accountable — no one is overlooked.
20. The summary evaluation uses a triad of covenant virtues: ha-tov ('the good'), ve-ha-yashar ('the right'), ve-ha-emet ('the faithful/true'). These three words — goodness, righteousness, faithfulness — capture the full scope of covenantal living. The phrase lifnei YHWH Elohav ('before the LORD his God') indicates that Hezekiah's conduct is measured not by human standards but by divine ones. This is one of the most positive royal evaluations in Chronicles.
21. The final verse summarizes Hezekiah's entire reign with four dimensions: avodat beit ha-Elohim ('service of the house of God'), ba-torah ('in the law/instruction'), u-va-mitsvah ('in the commandment'), and lidrosh le-Elohav ('seeking his God'). The phrase be-khol levavo asah ('he did it with all his heart') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5) — Hezekiah loves God with his whole heart. The result: ve-hitsliah ('he prospered, he succeeded'). For the Chronicler, wholehearted devotion produces divine blessing — this is the fundamental equation of covenant life.

32

Summary: *After these acts of faithfulness, Sennacherib king of Assyria comes and invades Judah, encamping against the fortified cities and intending to break through them. When Hezekiah sees that Sennacherib has come and intends to fight against Jerusalem, he consults with his officials and warriors about blocking the water sources outside the city, and they help him. A great number of people assemble and block all the springs and the stream that flowed through the land, saying, 'Why should the kings of Assyria come and find much water?' He strengthens himself, rebuilds all the broken wall, raises towers on it, builds another wall outside, and strengthens the Millo in the city of David. He makes large quantities of weapons and shields. He appoints military commanders over the people and gathers them to him in the square at the city gate. He speaks to their hearts: 'Be strong and courageous! Do not be afraid or dismayed before the king of Assyria or before the great multitude with him, for there is one greater with us than with him. With him is an arm of flesh, but with us is the LORD our God, to help us and to fight our battles.' The people take courage from the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. After this, while Sennacherib and all his forces*

are besieging Lachish, he sends his servants to Jerusalem with a message to Hezekiah king of Judah and to all the people of Judah in Jerusalem: 'Thus says Sennacherib king of Assyria: In what are you trusting, that you remain under siege in Jerusalem? Is not Hezekiah misleading you, giving you over to death by famine and thirst, saying, The LORD our God will deliver us from the hand of the king of Assyria? Has not this same Hezekiah removed his high places and his altars and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, Before one altar shall you worship and upon it burn incense? Do you not know what I and my fathers have done to all the peoples of other lands? Were the gods of the nations of those lands able at all to deliver their land from my hand? Who among all the gods of those nations that my fathers devoted to destruction was able to deliver his people from my hand, that your God should be able to deliver you from my hand? Now do not let Hezekiah deceive you or mislead you like this. Do not believe him, for no god of any nation or kingdom has been able to deliver his people from my hand or from the hand of my fathers. How much less will your God deliver you from my hand!' His servants speak even more against the LORD God and against his servant Hezekiah. He also writes letters to mock the LORD, the God of Israel, saying against him: 'As the gods of the nations of the lands that did not deliver their people from my hand, so the God of Hezekiah will not deliver his people from my hand.' They call out in a loud voice in Judean speech to the people of Jerusalem who are on the wall, to frighten and terrify them so they can capture the city. They speak of the God of Jerusalem as though he were like the gods of the peoples of the earth — the work of human hands. King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz pray about this and cry out to heaven. The LORD sends an angel who annihilates every mighty warrior, commander, and officer in the camp of the king of Assyria. He returns to his own land in disgrace, and when he enters the house of his god, some of his own offspring strike him down with the sword. So the LORD saves Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib king of Assyria and from the hand of all, and he gives them rest on every side. Many bring offerings to the LORD in Jerusalem and precious things to Hezekiah king of Judah, and he is exalted in the eyes of all nations after this. In those days Hezekiah becomes mortally ill and prays to the LORD, who speaks to him and gives him a sign. But Hezekiah does not respond in keeping with the benefit done to him, for his heart becomes proud. Wrath comes upon him and upon Judah and Jerusalem. Then Hezekiah humbles himself for the pride of his heart — he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem — so that the wrath of the LORD does not come upon them in the days of Hezekiah. Hezekiah has very great riches and honor. He makes treasuries for silver, gold, precious stones, spices, shields, and all kinds of valuable vessels, as well as storehouses for grain, new wine, and oil, and stalls for all kinds of livestock, and sheepfolds. He builds cities and acquires flocks and herds in abundance, for God gives him very great possessions. This same Hezekiah blocks the upper outlet of the waters of Gihon and channels them down to the west side of the city of David. Hezekiah prospers in all his works. But when the envoys of the princes of Babylon are sent to him to inquire about the sign that occurred in the land, God leaves him to test him, to know all that is in his heart. The rest of the acts of Hezekiah and his faithful deeds are recorded in the vision of the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz, and in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. Hezekiah sleeps with his fathers, and they bury him in the upper part of the tombs of the sons of David. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem honor him at his death. Manasseh his son reigns in his place.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler condenses the Sennacherib crisis into a single chapter where 2 Kings devotes three chapters (18-20) and Isaiah four (36-39). This compression highlights what the Chronicler considers essential: not the political negotiations or the detailed Rabshakeh speech, but Hezekiah's faith and God's deliverance. The king's speech to the people (verses 7-8) contains one of the most memorable theological statements in Chronicles: 'With him is an arm of flesh, but with us is the LORD our God, to help us and to fight our battles.' The phrase immo zero'a basar ('with him an arm of flesh') versus immanu YHWH Elohenu ('with us the LORD our God') sets up the fundamental contrast between human military power and divine protection. Sennacherib's rhetoric (verses 10-19) commits the cardinal sin of comparing the LORD to the gods of the nations — treating the God of Israel as one deity among many. The divine response is swift and devastating: an angel destroys the Assyrian army. The Chronicler also includes Hezekiah's pride and subsequent humility (verses 25-26), maintaining the theme that even good kings must guard against arrogance. The Gihon tunnel (verse 30), an engineering marvel confirmed by archaeology, demonstrates that trust in God does not preclude practical preparation.*

Translation Friction: *The Chronicler's heavily compressed account omits many details found in 2 Kings 18-19: the Rabshakeh's extended speech, the diplomatic exchanges, and the specific terms of Assyrian threats. The illness narrative (verses 24-26), which receives an entire chapter in 2 Kings 20 (including the sundial sign and the fifteen added years), is reduced to two verses. The Babylonian envoy episode (verse 31), which in 2 Kings 20:12-19 includes Hezekiah showing off his treasuries and Isaiah's prophecy of Babylonian exile, is*

mentioned only as a test — the prophetic condemnation is absent. The phrase 'God left him to test him' (verse 31) provides the Chronicler's unique theological interpretation of the Babylonian embassy. The angel's destruction of the Assyrian army (verse 21) is consistent with 2 Kings 19:35 but the Chronicler omits the specific number (185,000).

Connections: Hezekiah's faith speech echoes Elisha's words in 2 Kings 6:16: 'Those who are with us are more than those who are with them.' The phrase zero'a basar ('arm of flesh') reappears in Jeremiah 17:5: 'Cursed is the one who trusts in man and makes flesh his arm.' Sennacherib's comparison of the LORD to other gods echoes Pharaoh's defiance in Exodus 5:2: 'Who is the LORD, that I should obey his voice?' The angelic destruction echoes the death of the Egyptian firstborn (Exodus 12:29). The Gihon tunnel (verse 30) connects to the Siloam inscription, one of the most important archaeological finds in Jerusalem. The Babylonian embassy connects to Isaiah 39 and foreshadows the eventual Babylonian exile — the empire whose envoys visit in friendship will return as conquerors. Hezekiah's honorary burial (verse 33) contrasts with his father Ahaz's exclusion from the royal tombs (28:27).

¹After these acts of faithfulness, Sennacherib king of Assyria came and invaded Judah. He encamped against the fortified cities, intending to break through to them. ²When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come and intended to fight against Jerusalem, ³he consulted with his officials and warriors about blocking the water sources outside the city, and they helped him. ⁴A great number of people assembled and blocked all the springs and the stream that flowed through the land, saying, 'Why should the kings of Assyria come and find much water?' ⁵He strengthened himself, rebuilt all the broken wall and raised towers on it, built another wall outside, and strengthened the Millo in the city of David. He made large quantities of weapons and shields. ⁶He appointed military commanders over the people, gathered them to himself in the square at the city gate, and spoke to their hearts: ⁷'Be strong and courageous! Do not be afraid or dismayed before the king of Assyria or before the great multitude with him, for there is one greater with us than with him. ⁸With him is an arm of flesh, but with us is the LORD our God, to help us and to fight our battles.' The people took courage from the words of Hezekiah king of Judah. ⁹After this, while Sennacherib and all his forces were besieging Lachish, he sent his servants to Jerusalem with a message to Hezekiah king of Judah and to all the people of Judah in Jerusalem: ¹⁰'Thus says Sennacherib king of Assyria: In what are you trusting, that you remain under siege in Jerusalem? ¹¹Is not Hezekiah misleading you, giving you over to death by famine and thirst when he says, The LORD our God will deliver us from the hand of the king of Assyria? ¹²Has not this same Hezekiah removed his high places and altars and told Judah and Jerusalem: Before one altar you shall worship, and on it you shall burn incense? ¹³Do you not know what I and my fathers have done to all the peoples of other lands? Were the gods of those nations able at all to deliver their land from my hand? ¹⁴Who among all the gods of those nations my fathers destroyed was able to deliver his people from my hand, that your God should be able to deliver you from my hand? ¹⁵Now do not let Hezekiah deceive you or mislead you like this. Do not believe him, for no god of any nation or kingdom has been able to deliver his people from my hand or from the hand of my fathers. How much less will your God deliver you from my hand!' ¹⁶His officials continued speaking against the LORD God and against his servant Hezekiah. ¹⁷He also wrote letters to mock the LORD, the God of Israel, saying: 'As the gods of the nations of other lands did not deliver their people from my hand, so the God of Hezekiah will not deliver his people from my hand.' ¹⁸They called out in a loud voice in the Judean language to the people of Jerusalem on the wall, to frighten and terrify them so that they could capture the city. ¹⁹They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as though he were like the gods of the peoples of the earth — the work of human hands. ²⁰King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz prayed about this and cried out to heaven. ²¹The LORD sent an angel who annihilated every mighty warrior, commander, and officer in the camp of the king of Assyria. He returned to his own land in disgrace, and when he entered the house of his god, some of his own offspring struck him down with the sword. ²²So the LORD saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib king of Assyria and from the hand of all enemies, and he gave them rest on every side. ²³Many brought offerings to the LORD in Jerusalem and precious gifts to Hezekiah king of Judah, and he was exalted in the eyes of all nations from that time on. ²⁴In those days Hezekiah became mortally ill and prayed to the LORD, who spoke to him and gave him a sign. ²⁵But Hezekiah did not respond in keeping with the benefit done to him, for his heart became proud. So wrath came upon him and upon Judah and Jerusalem. ²⁶Then Hezekiah

humbled himself for the pride of his heart — he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem — so that the wrath of the LORD did not come upon them in the days of Hezekiah. ²⁷Hezekiah had very great riches and honor. He made treasuries for silver, gold, precious stones, spices, shields, and all kinds of valuable objects. ²⁸He built storehouses for grain, new wine, and oil, and stalls for every kind of livestock, and sheepfolds. ²⁹He built cities and acquired flocks and herds in abundance, for God had given him very great possessions. ³⁰This same Hezekiah blocked the upper outlet of the waters of the Gihon spring and channeled them down to the west side of the city of David. Hezekiah prospered in all his works. ³¹But when the envoys of the princes of Babylon were sent to him to inquire about the sign that had occurred in the land, God left him to test him, to know all that was in his heart. ³²The rest of the acts of Hezekiah and his faithful deeds are recorded in the vision of the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz and in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. ³³Hezekiah slept with his fathers, and they buried him in the upper part of the tombs of the sons of David. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem honored him at his death. Manasseh his son reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening phrase *acharei ha-devarim ve-ha-emet ha-elleh* ('after these things and this faithfulness') explicitly connects the invasion to Hezekiah's reforms — the crisis comes not despite his faithfulness but after it, as a test of it. Sennacherib's campaign of 701 BCE targeted the fortified cities (*arim ha-betsurot*) of Judah, including Lachish. The verb *livqe'am* ('to break through them') indicates military siege warfare.
2. The phrase *u-fanav la-milchamah al Yerushalayim* ('his face toward war against Jerusalem') describes Sennacherib's determined intention. The verb *va-yar* ('he saw') indicates Hezekiah's assessment of the military situation — he recognizes the threat and begins preparations.
3. The defensive strategy targets water: *listom et meimei ha-ayanot* ('to block the waters of the springs'). Denying water to a besieging army is a standard defensive tactic. The consultation with *sarav ve-gibborav* ('his officials and warriors') shows collaborative leadership. This water strategy connects to the Gihon tunnel project (verse 30).
4. The popular participation (*am rav*, 'a great people') indicates national solidarity. They block *kol ha-ma'ayanot* ('all the springs') and *ha-nachal ha-shotef be-tokh ha-arets* ('the stream flowing through the midst of the land'). The rhetorical question *lammah yavo'u malkhei Ashshur u-matse'u mayim rabbim* ('why should the kings of Assyria come and find much water?') expresses the logic of denial: deprive the enemy of resources.
5. The verb *va-yitchazzeq* ('he strengthened himself') again echoes Hezekiah's own name. The defensive preparations are comprehensive: repairing the broken wall (*ha-chomah ha-perutsah*), raising towers (*migdalot*), constructing an outer wall (*ha-chotsah ha-chomah acheret*), reinforcing the Millo (the terraced structure in the city of David), and manufacturing weapons (*shelach*, 'projectile weapons') and shields (*maginnim*). Faith and preparation work together.
6. The phrase *va-yedabber al levavam* ('he spoke to their hearts') indicates words designed to strengthen courage — the king becomes pastor and commander simultaneously. The *rechov sha'ar ha-ir* ('the square of the city gate') is the public assembly space, the ancient equivalent of a town hall.
7. The double imperative *chizqu ve-imtsu* ('be strong and be courageous') echoes the divine command to Joshua (Joshua 1:6, 9) and David's charge to Solomon (1 Chronicles 22:13). The phrase *al tire'u ve-al techatu* ('do not fear and do not be dismayed') is standard holy-war language. The climactic claim — *immanu rav me-immo* ('with us is greater than with him') — sets up the contrast elaborated in the next verse.
8. The contrast between *zero'a basar* and *YHWH Elohenu* anticipates Jeremiah 17:5-7: 'Cursed is the one who trusts in man and makes flesh his arm...Blessed is the one who trusts in the LORD.' The verb *va-yissamkhu* ('they leaned, they were supported') indicates genuine trust — not just emotional comfort but strategic reliance. The people change their posture from fear to confidence based on the king's theological declaration.
9. Sennacherib conducts the siege of Lachish (Judah's second most important city) while simultaneously pressuring Jerusalem through diplomatic warfare. The Lachish siege is dramatically depicted in Assyrian palace reliefs now in the British Museum. Sending *avadav* ('his servants, his envoys') constitutes psychological warfare — attempting to undermine Jerusalem's resolve through propaganda.
10. The Assyrian message opens with the messenger formula *ko amar* ('thus says') — the same formula the prophets use for divine oracles. Sennacherib places himself in the position of a god issuing decrees. The question *al mah attem botchim* ('in what are you trusting?') directly challenges the theological foundation Hezekiah has just established. The word *botchim* ('trusting') is pointed — Sennacherib knows that Hezekiah's confidence rests on the LORD.
11. The verb *massit* ('misleading, inciting, seducing') casts Hezekiah as a false prophet who deceives his people into fatal resistance. The predicted outcome — *la-mut be-ra'av u-ve-tsama* ('to die by famine and thirst') — appeals to the most primal fears of a besieged population. By quoting Hezekiah's own words back to the people (*YHWH Elohenu yattsilenu*, 'the LORD our God will deliver us'), Sennacherib attempts to turn faith itself into evidence of delusion.
12. This is a masterpiece of propaganda. Sennacherib reinterprets Hezekiah's reform as an offense against the deity — surely a god would want more altars, not fewer. From a polytheistic perspective, reducing altars reduces divine honor. The Assyrian king cannot comprehend monotheistic worship: *lifnei mizbeach echad tishtachavu* ('before one altar you shall worship') sounds like religious impoverishment to one who assumes many gods require many shrines.

13. Sennacherib appeals to his track record: mah asiti ani va-avotai le-khol ammei ha-aratsot ('what I and my fathers have done to all the peoples of the lands'). The rhetorical question ha-yakhol yakhlu ('were they at all able?') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute to stress the total failure of other gods. The argument is inductive: every other god has failed; yours will too. The logical flaw is the premise — that the LORD is comparable to the gods of the nations.
14. The question mi ('who?') challenges anyone to name a single deity that resisted Assyria successfully. The verb hecherim ('they devoted to destruction') uses the language of holy war — Sennacherib claims that Assyria has waged herem against the gods themselves. The final clause — ki yukhal Eloheikhem lehatstil etkhem mi-yadi ('that your God should be able to deliver you from my hand') — is the climactic blasphemy: the LORD is placed in the same category as defeated deities.
15. The climactic argument: ki lo yukhal kol eloah kol goy u-mamlakhah ('for no god of any nation or kingdom was able') — a universal negative claim. The concluding af ki Eloheikhem lo yatstilu etkhem ('how much less your God will deliver you') uses the a fortiori argument (qal va-chomer): if stronger gods failed, your weaker god certainly will. The entire speech assumes that divine power is proportional to the military power of the worshipping nation — a fundamental misunderstanding of the LORD.
16. The phrase ve-od dibberu ('they spoke yet more') indicates escalation — the rhetoric intensifies beyond what has been recorded. The pairing of YHWH ha-Elohim and Yechizkiyahu avdo ('the LORD God' and 'Hezekiah his servant') is significant: the Chronicler identifies Hezekiah as God's servant, meaning that to attack Hezekiah is to attack the one God has commissioned.
17. The letters (sefarim) put the blasphemy in written form — lecharef la-YHWH ('to mock/reproach the LORD'). The verb charaf ('to reproach, to mock, to blaspheme') is the same used for Goliath's defiance (1 Samuel 17:10, 25). Sennacherib calls the LORD Elohei Yechizkiyahu ('the God of Hezekiah') — reducing the universal God to a personal deity of one king, a tribal god among tribal gods.
18. The switch to Yehudit ('Judean language,' i.e., Hebrew) is deliberate psychological warfare — the Assyrian envoys speak the language the people on the walls understand, bypassing the diplomatic language (Aramaic) to address the populace directly. The twin goals are leyore'am ('to frighten them') and levahalam ('to terrify them') — fear as a weapon. The strategic aim is le-ma'an yilkedu et ha-ir ('so they could capture the city') — psychological collapse precedes military conquest.
19. The theological crime is precisely stated: they spoke of Elohei Yerushalayim ('the God of Jerusalem') ke-al elohei ammei ha-arets ('as they would speak of the gods of the peoples of the earth'). The qualifying phrase ma'aseh yedei ha-adam ('the work of human hands') is the decisive distinction: those gods are manufactured objects; the God of Jerusalem is the maker of all things. To equate the Creator with the created is the fundamental error that the Assyrians will discover.
20. The pairing of the king and the prophet — Yechizkiyahu and Yesha'yahu — is unique to Chronicles (2 Kings 19 has only Hezekiah's prayer). The dual intercession combines royal and prophetic authority. The verb va-yiz'aqu ha-shamayim ('they cried out to heaven') describes desperate, urgent prayer directed upward to the heavenly dwelling of God. This is the response to Sennacherib: not counter-propaganda but prayer.
21. The divine response is swift: va-yishlach YHWH mal'akh ('the LORD sent an angel') — a single angelic agent destroys the military leadership. The verb va-yakhched ('he annihilated, he destroyed') indicates total elimination: kol gibbor chayil ve-nagid ve-sar ('every mighty warrior, commander, and officer'). The return be-voshet panim ('with shame of face') inverts Sennacherib's confident advance. The final irony: the man who mocked the God of Israel is murdered be-veit elohav ('in the house of his god') by mitsi'ei me'av ('those who came from his own body, his offspring'). His god cannot protect him even in his own temple.
22. The verb va-yosha ('he saved') is the theological climax: YHWH is the subject, and the salvation covers both Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. The phrase mi-yad kol ('from the hand of all') extends beyond Assyria to all threats. The verb va-yenahalem mi-saviv ('he gave them rest/guided them on every side') describes the comprehensive peace that follows divine deliverance — saviv ('on every side') means security from all directions.
23. The international response to Jerusalem's deliverance includes minchah la-YHWH ('offerings to the LORD') and migdanot li-Yechizkiyahu ('precious things to Hezekiah'). The gifts flow to both God and king. The phrase va-yinnase le-einei khol ha-goyim ('he was exalted in the eyes of all the nations') indicates that the Assyrian defeat elevates Hezekiah's international reputation — the king who trusted in God rather than alliances is vindicated before the world.
24. The Chronicler compresses what 2 Kings 20:1-11 narrates in eleven verses into a single verse. Hezekiah's illness (chalah ad la-mut, 'sick unto death'), his prayer, God's response, and the sign (mofet — likely the sundial miracle of Isaiah 38:7-8) are reported with extreme brevity. The Chronicler is less interested in the details of the healing than in its aftermath — Hezekiah's response to the favor he received.
25. The turning point: ve-lo khigemul alav heshiv Yechizkiyahu ('Hezekiah did not respond according to the benefit upon him'). After receiving miraculous healing, the king's gratitude fails: ki gavah libbo ('for his heart was lifted up, was proud'). The verb gavah ('to be high, to be proud, to be exalted') turns Hezekiah's elevation (verse 23) into arrogance. Even the best king can fall to pride. The consequence — qetsef ('wrath') — affects not just the king but Judah and Jerusalem.
26. The recovery: va-yikkana Yechizkiyahu be-govah libbo ('Hezekiah humbled himself for the height/pride of his heart'). The verb nikhna ('he humbled himself') is the Chronicler's key term for proper response to God — the same word used in 2 Chronicles 7:14. The humbling is communal: hu ve-yoshvei Yerushalayim ('he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem'). The result: wrath is deferred bi-yemei Yechizkiyahu ('in the days of Hezekiah') — implying it will come later, under subsequent kings.

27. The phrase *osher ve-khavod harbeh me'od* ('riches and glory exceedingly great') echoes the description of Solomon (2 Chronicles 1:12). The inventory of treasures — for silver, gold, precious stones, spices, shields, and *kelei chemdah* ('objects of desire/valuable vessels') — demonstrates the material prosperity that accompanies Hezekiah's reign. The Chronicler sees wealth as a sign of divine blessing when accompanied by faithfulness.
28. The agricultural infrastructure — *miskenot* ('storehouses') for grain, wine, and oil, *urvot* ('stalls') for livestock, and *adarim* ('folds/pens') for sheep — indicates comprehensive economic prosperity. The range from precious metals (verse 27) to agricultural produce demonstrates wealth at every level of the economy.
29. The theological attribution is clear: *ki natan lo Elohim rekhush rav me'od* ('for God gave him very great possessions'). Hezekiah's wealth is not self-generated but divinely bestowed. The Chronicler maintains the connection: faithfulness leads to divine blessing, which includes material prosperity. The building of *arim* ('cities') indicates territorial expansion and administrative development.
30. The Gihon tunnel project — *satam et motsa meimei Gichon ha-elyon va-yeyashrem lematath ma'aravah le-ir David* ('he blocked the upper outlet of the waters of the upper Gihon and directed them downward westward to the city of David') — is one of the most significant engineering achievements of the Iron Age. The tunnel, carved through 533 meters of solid rock, redirected Jerusalem's water supply inside the city walls. Archaeologically confirmed (the Siloam Inscription describes the tunnelers meeting in the middle), it demonstrates Hezekiah's practical wisdom alongside his spiritual faith.
31. The Babylonian embassy — *melitsei sarei Bavel* ('the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon') — comes to inquire about the *mofet* ('sign, wonder'). Where 2 Kings 20:12-19 narrates Hezekiah showing off his treasures and Isaiah condemning the display, the Chronicler offers a single theological interpretation: *azavo ha-Elohim lenassoto* ('God left him to test him'). The phrase *lada'at kol bilvavo* ('to know all that was in his heart') echoes Deuteronomy 8:2 — God tests to reveal what is truly within. The test is whether Hezekiah will rely on God or on diplomatic alliances with Babylon.
32. The word *chasadav* ('his faithful deeds, his acts of covenant loyalty') is the plural of *chesed* — the Chronicler summarizes Hezekiah's reign not with political achievements but with covenant faithfulness. Two sources are cited: *chazon Yesha'yahu* ('the vision of Isaiah') and *sefer malkhei Yehudah ve-Yisra'el* ('the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel'). The reference to Isaiah's vision connects the king's story to the prophetic record.
33. The burial in *be-ma'aleh qivrei venei David* ('the upper/most honored part of the tombs of the sons of David') is the highest posthumous honor — the prime location in the royal cemetery. This contrasts sharply with his father Ahaz, who was excluded from the royal tombs (28:27). The phrase *kavod asu lo be-moto* ('they made honor for him at his death') indicates special funeral rites. The entire nation — *kol Yehudah ve-yoshvei Yerushalayim* — participates in mourning. The transition to Manasseh his son sets up the dramatic reversal of the next chapter.

33

Summary: Manasseh is twelve years old when he becomes king and reigns fifty-five years in Jerusalem. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD, following the abominations of the nations the LORD drove out before the people of Israel. He rebuilds the high places that his father Hezekiah had demolished. He erects altars to the Baals and makes Asherah poles. He worships all the host of heaven and serves them. He builds altars in the house of the LORD, of which the LORD had said, 'In Jerusalem shall my name be forever.' He builds altars to all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the LORD. He passes his sons through the fire in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom, practices soothsaying and divination, engages in sorcery, and deals with mediums and spiritists. He does much evil in the eyes of the LORD, provoking him. He sets the carved image of the idol he has made in the house of God, of which God said to David and Solomon his son, 'In this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will put my name forever. I will not again remove the foot of Israel from the land that I appointed for your fathers, if only they will observe to do all that I have commanded them — all the law, the statutes, and the ordinances by the hand of Moses.' But Manasseh leads Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem astray so that they do more evil than the nations the LORD destroyed before the people of Israel. The LORD speaks to Manasseh and his people, but they pay no attention. So the LORD brings against them the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria, who capture Manasseh with hooks, bind him with bronze chains, and take him to Babylon. In his distress he entreats the LORD his God and humbles himself greatly before the God of his fathers. He prays to him, and God is moved by his plea, hears his supplication, and brings him back to Jerusalem to his kingdom. Then Manasseh knows that the LORD is God. After this he builds an outer wall for the city of David on the west side of the Gihon, in the valley, and at the entrance of the Fish Gate, and carries it around the Ophel, making it very high. He also puts military commanders in all the fortified cities of Judah. He removes the foreign gods and the idol from the house of the LORD, and all the altars he had built on the mount of the house of the LORD and in Jerusalem, and throws them outside the city. He restores the altar of the LORD, offers peace offerings and thank offerings on it, and commands Judah to serve the LORD, the God of Israel. The people still sacrifice on the high places, but only to the LORD their God. The rest of the acts of Manasseh, his prayer to his God, and the words of the seers who spoke to him in the name of the LORD, the God of Israel — they are in the acts of the kings of Israel. His prayer and how God was

moved by it, all his sin and unfaithfulness, the places where he built high places and set up Asherah poles and carved images before he humbled himself — they are recorded in the records of the seers. Manasseh sleeps with his fathers, and they bury him in his own house. Amon his son reigns in his place. Amon is twenty-two years old when he becomes king and reigns two years in Jerusalem. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD, as Manasseh his father had done. Amon sacrifices to all the carved images that Manasseh his father had made and serves them. He does not humble himself before the LORD as Manasseh his father had humbled himself, but this Amon increases his guilt. His servants conspire against him and kill him in his own house. The people of the land strike down all who conspired against King Amon, and the people of the land make Josiah his son king in his place.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the single most dramatic departure between Chronicles and Kings in the entire Hebrew Bible. In 2 Kings 21, Manasseh is an unredeemed villain — the worst king in Judah's history, whose sins are so great that they are cited as the cause of the exile itself (2 Kings 21:11-15, 23:26-27, 24:3-4). There is no repentance, no restoration, no second chance. But the Chronicler adds an extraordinary narrative found nowhere else in Scripture: Manasseh is captured by Assyria, taken to Babylon in chains and hooks, and in his distress he humbles himself before God. God hears his prayer, is moved (va-ye'ater lo), and restores him to his throne. This is teshuvah — repentance and return — at its most radical: the worst sinner in Judah's history becomes a testimony to the limitlessness of divine mercy. The Chronicler is making a profound theological argument: if even Manasseh can repent and be restored, then no one is beyond the reach of God's compassion. This message was addressed to the post-exilic community, who needed to believe that their own national failure — the exile itself — did not place them beyond divine forgiveness. The lost 'Prayer of Manasseh' mentioned in verse 18 inspired a later apocryphal composition (the Prayer of Manasseh) that became part of many Christian canons.*

Translation Friction: *The historicity of Manasseh's capture and repentance is debated. Assyrian records do mention Manasseh (Minse) as a tributary king under both Esarhaddon and Ashurbanipal, and the detail of being taken to Babylon (rather than Nineveh) fits the period when Ashurbanipal was suppressing a Babylonian revolt and may have summoned vassal kings to demonstrate loyalty. Some scholars accept the basic historical framework while noting that the Chronicler has shaped it theologically. Others view it as a theological construction designed to explain how Manasseh could have reigned fifty-five years — the longest reign in Judah — if he were as wicked as 2 Kings portrays. The Chronicler's retribution theology requires that long reigns result from divine favor, creating a need for a repentance narrative. The contrast with Amon (verses 21-25) is sharp: Amon does the same evil but does not humble himself (lo nikhna), proving that the opportunity for repentance is available to all but accepted by few.*

Connections: *Manasseh's sins directly reverse Hezekiah's reforms: the high places rebuilt (verse 3, reversing 31:1), the Baals restored (reversing 29:5-11), the Temple defiled (reversing 29:15-19). His child sacrifice in Ben-Hinnom connects to Ahaz (28:3). The capture and exile narrative foreshadows the larger exile of Judah in chapter 36. Manasseh's prayer connects to Solomon's Temple dedication prayer (2 Chronicles 6:36-39), which specifically anticipated that the people would sin, be carried captive, and pray toward the Temple — and asked God to hear and forgive. Manasseh's teshuvah in captivity is exactly what Solomon prayed for. The phrase va-ye'ater lo ('God was moved by his plea') uses a rare verb (atar) that appears in Genesis 25:21 (Isaac's prayer for Rebekah) and 2 Samuel 21:14 — it describes God being persuaded by earnest prayer. Amon's failure to humble himself (verse 23) contrasts with both Manasseh and with the promise of 2 Chronicles 7:14: 'If my people humble themselves...'*

¹Manasseh was twelve years old when he became king, and he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. ²He did evil in the eyes of the LORD, following the abominations of the nations that the LORD had driven out before the people of Israel. ³He rebuilt the high places that his father Hezekiah had demolished. He erected altars to the Baals, made Asherah poles, and worshiped all the host of heaven and served them. ⁴He built altars in the house of the LORD, of which the LORD had said, 'In Jerusalem shall my name be forever.' ⁵He constructed altars to all the host of heaven in the two courts of the house of the LORD. ⁶He passed his sons through the fire in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom. He practiced soothsaying, divination, and sorcery, and consulted mediums and spiritists. He did much evil in the eyes of the LORD, provoking him. ⁷He set the carved image of the idol he had made in the house of God, of which God had said to David and Solomon his son, 'In this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will put my name forever. ⁸I will not again remove the foot of Israel from the land I appointed for your fathers — if only they will observe to do all that I commanded them, the entire law,

the statutes, and the ordinances given through Moses.' ⁹Manasseh led Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem astray, so that they did more evil than the nations the LORD had destroyed before the people of Israel. ¹⁰The LORD spoke to Manasseh and his people, but they paid no attention. ¹¹So the LORD brought against them the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria, who captured Manasseh with hooks, bound him with bronze chains, and took him to Babylon. ¹²In his distress he entreated the LORD his God and humbled himself greatly before the God of his fathers. ¹³He prayed to him, and God was moved by his plea, heard his supplication, and brought him back to Jerusalem to his kingdom. Then Manasseh knew that the LORD — he is God. ¹⁴After this he built an outer wall for the city of David, on the west side of the Gihon, in the valley, to the entrance of the Fish Gate, carrying it around the Ophel and making it very high. He also placed military commanders in all the fortified cities of Judah. ¹⁵He removed the foreign gods and the idol from the house of the LORD, and all the altars he had built on the mount of the house of the LORD and in Jerusalem, and threw them outside the city. ¹⁶He restored the altar of the LORD and offered peace offerings and thank offerings on it. He commanded Judah to serve the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹⁷The people, however, still sacrificed on the high places — but only to the LORD their God. ¹⁸The rest of the acts of Manasseh, his prayer to his God, and the words of the seers who spoke to him in the name of the LORD, the God of Israel — these are in the records of the kings of Israel. ¹⁹His prayer and how God was moved by it, all his sin and unfaithfulness, the places where he built high places and set up Asherah poles and carved images before he humbled himself — these are recorded in the records of the seers. ²⁰Manasseh slept with his fathers, and he was buried in his own house. His son Amon reigned in his place. ²¹Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem. ²²He did evil in the eyes of the LORD, as Manasseh his father had done. Amon sacrificed to all the carved images that Manasseh his father had made and served them. ²³He did not humble himself before the LORD as Manasseh his father had humbled himself. Instead, this Amon increased his guilt. ²⁴His servants conspired against him and killed him in his own house. ²⁵The people of the land struck down all who had conspired against King Amon, and the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The regnal formula records the longest reign in Judah's history: *chamishim ve-chamesh shanah* ('fifty-five years,' approximately 697-642 BCE). The young age of twelve at accession means he became king while Hezekiah was still influential (co-regency is debated). The extraordinary length of his reign creates a theological problem for the Chronicler: how does the worst king reign the longest? The answer the Chronicler provides is repentance.
2. The assessment formula — *va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH* ('he did evil in the eyes of the LORD') — is the standard negative evaluation. The comparison *ke-to'avot ha-goyim* ('according to the abominations of the nations') echoes the condemnation of Ahaz (28:3) and applies the same charge: Manasseh replicates the very practices for which God expelled the Canaanites. The irony is bitter — the people given the land because of the nations' abominations now practice those same abominations.
3. The verb *va-yashov* ('he returned, he again') indicates deliberate reversal of his father's reforms. Four acts of apostasy: rebuilding *bamot* ('high places'), erecting altars for *ha-Be'alim* ('the Baals'), making *asherot* ('Asherah poles'), and worshiping *tseva ha-shamayim* ('the host of heaven' — astral worship of sun, moon, and stars). Each one undoes a specific reform of Hezekiah. The son systematically dismantles the father's work.
4. Building pagan altars in the Temple itself is the ultimate desecration: the house dedicated exclusively to the LORD now hosts foreign deities. The divine word — *bi-Yerushalayim yihyeh shemi le-olam* ('in Jerusalem my name shall be forever') — from the Temple dedication (2 Chronicles 7:16) stands in direct contradiction to what Manasseh places there. The king overrides the divine claim on the sacred space.
5. The astral altars fill *bi-shtei chatsrot beit YHWH* ('the two courts of the house of the LORD') — both the inner and outer courts of the Temple complex. The worship of *tseva ha-shamayim* ('the host of heaven') reflects Mesopotamian astral religion, particularly the worship of Ishtar (Venus) and the sun and moon deities. Under Assyrian suzerainty, such worship may have been politically expedient as well as religiously syncretistic.
6. The catalog of occult practices is comprehensive: *onnen* ('practiced cloud-divination/soothsaying'), *nicchesh* ('practiced divination/omen-reading'), *kishshef* ('practiced sorcery'), *asah ov* ('consulted a medium/necromancer'), and *yidde'oni* ('consulted a spiritist/wizard'). Each practice is explicitly forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:10-12. The phrase *hirbah la'asot ha-ra* ('he multiplied doing evil') emphasizes the systematic, extensive nature of his apostasy.
7. The *pesel ha-semel* ('the carved image of the idol/figure') placed in the Temple is the climax of desecration — a manufactured deity installed in the house of the one who cannot be represented. The extended divine quotation that follows serves as a literary counter-voice: while Manasseh fills the Temple with idols, God's own words about his eternal commitment to the Temple echo through the text, creating unbearable tension between divine intention and human violation.

8. The conditional clause — *raq im yishmeru la'asot* ('only if they observe to do') — is the hinge: God's promise to preserve Israel in the land is conditioned on obedience. The comprehensive scope of the requirement — *kol ha-torah ve-ha-chuqqim ve-ha-mishpatim* ('all the law, the statutes, and the ordinances') — leaves no room for selective compliance. Manasseh is violating every category simultaneously.
9. The verb *va-yet'a* ('he led astray, he caused to wander') makes Manasseh not just a personal sinner but a national corrupter — he misleads the entire population. The devastating comparison: *la'asot ra min ha-goyim* ('to do evil more than the nations') means that Judah under Manasseh surpasses the Canaanites in wickedness. The people chosen to replace the nations have become worse than the nations they replaced.
10. The brief verse carries enormous weight: *va-yedabber YHWH* ('the LORD spoke') — God initiated communication, warning before punishing. But *ve-lo hiqshivu* ('they did not pay attention, they did not listen'). The refusal to hear is the act that triggers judgment. God spoke; they refused. The brevity of the verse emphasizes the simplicity and tragedy of the refusal.
11. The agent of judgment is Assyria, but the ultimate cause is YHWH: *va-yave YHWH alehem* ('the LORD brought upon them'). The capture of Manasseh *ba-chochim* ('with hooks') — nose-rings or fish-hooks used to lead prisoners — is a well-attested Assyrian practice depicted in palace reliefs. The bronze chains (*nechushtayim*) echo Zedekiah's later binding (2 Kings 25:7). The destination Bavel ('Babylon') rather than Nineveh may reflect the period of Ashurbanipal's campaign to suppress the Babylonian revolt of Shamash-shum-ukin (652-648 BCE).
12. This verse and the next are the theological heart of the chapter — the moment unique to Chronicles that transforms Manasseh from a cautionary tale into a testimony of grace. The pattern — sin, suffering, repentance, restoration — is the Chronicler's paradigm for the entire exile-and-return experience of Israel. If Manasseh can repent in Babylon and be restored to Jerusalem, then so can the exiled nation.
13. The verb *va-ye'ater* (from the root *atar*, 'to be moved by entreaty') appears only a handful of times in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 25:21, 2 Samuel 21:14, 2 Samuel 24:25). Each time it describes God being genuinely moved — not mechanically responding but being persuaded at the deepest level. The Chronicler's use of this rare verb emphasizes that Manasseh's prayer was not formulaic but authentically desperate, and that God's response was not obligatory but genuinely compassionate.
14. The post-repentance building projects demonstrate that Manasseh's restoration is real and productive. The wall extends from the Gihon spring area (west of the city of David) to the Fish Gate (in the north), encircling the Ophel (the hill between the city of David and the Temple mount). The military commanders (*sarei chayil*) in the fortified cities indicate administrative reorganization. Repentance produces not just spiritual change but practical governance.
15. Manasseh now reverses his own apostasy: he removes the *elohei ha-nekhar* ('foreign gods'), the *semel* ('idol/figure') he had placed in the Temple (verse 7), and all the altars he had built. The verb *va-yashlekh chutsah la-ir* ('he threw them outside the city') physically expels the idolatrous objects from Jerusalem's sacred space. What he brought in, he now casts out.
16. Three restoration acts: *va-yikhen et mizbach YHWH* ('he restored/established the altar of the LORD'), *va-yizbach alav zivchei shelamim ve-todah* ('he offered peace offerings and thank offerings on it'), and *va-yomer li-Yhudah la'avod et YHWH* ('he commanded Judah to serve the LORD'). The peace offerings (*shelamim*) express restored fellowship; the thank offerings (*todah*) express gratitude. The man who led Judah into apostasy (verse 9) now commands them back to the LORD.
17. The qualifying note *od ha-am zovchim ba-bamot* ('the people still sacrificed on the high places') acknowledges the limits of Manasseh's reform — the high places persist. But the Chronicler adds a mitigating detail: *raq la-YHWH Elohehem* ('only to the LORD their God'). The syncretism is gone; the locations remain problematic. The high places are not themselves the primary sin — it is whom one worships there that matters most.
18. The reference to *tefillato el Elohav* ('his prayer to his God') indicates that a written prayer of Manasseh existed in the Chronicler's sources. This lost text inspired the later apocryphal Prayer of Manasseh. The *chozim* ('seers') who spoke to him *be-shem YHWH* ('in the name of the LORD') — unnamed prophets — were the divine voices Manasseh initially ignored (verse 10) but presumably heeded after his repentance.
19. The summary names both the darkness and the light: *chattato u-ma'alo* ('his sin and unfaithfulness') alongside *tefillato ve-he'ater lo* ('his prayer and God being moved by it'). The phrase *lifnei hikkane'o* ('before he humbled himself') creates a clear before-and-after: there is a pre-repentance Manasseh and a post-repentance Manasseh. The *divrei chozai* ('records/words of the seers') represents another lost source the Chronicler references.
20. The burial *beito* ('in his own house') rather than in the royal tombs is ambiguous — it may indicate burial in the palace garden (as with Amon, 2 Kings 21:18) or in a private tomb. The transition to Amon sets up the final contrast: a son who repeats the father's sins but not his repentance.
21. Amon's regnal formula is stark: only *shtayim shanim* ('two years,' approximately 642-640 BCE). The brevity of his reign, for the Chronicler, reflects divine judgment — unfaithful kings do not prosper. His age (twenty-two) means he was born during Manasseh's unreformed years and grew up in the culture of apostasy.
22. The phrase *ka'asher asah Menasheh aviu* ('as Manasseh his father had done') refers to the unreformed Manasseh — Amon imitates the apostasy but not the repentance. The carved images (*pesilim*) that Manasseh had made and then removed (verse 15) are apparently still available — either Amon recovers them or has new ones made. The cycle of apostasy continues.
23. The critical distinction: *ve-lo nikhna milifnei YHWH ke-hikkana Menasheh aviu* ('he did not humble himself before the LORD as Manasseh his father humbled himself'). The same opportunity for repentance was available; Amon refused it. The phrase *hu Amon hirbah ashmah* ('this Amon multiplied guilt') uses the demonstrative *hu* ('this one, this very') with the same literary force as the identification of Ahaz in 28:22 — the name becomes a label for unrepentant sin.

24. The verb *va-yiqsheru* ('they conspired') indicates a palace coup. The assassination *be-veto* ('in his own house') — in the palace itself — suggests an inside job by close attendants. The Chronicler does not identify the conspirators' motives; the narrative interest is in the theological point: an unrepentant king whose reign is cut short.
25. The *am ha-arets* ('people of the land') — the landed citizenry, possibly a conservative aristocratic body — intervene to restore order. They execute the conspirators and place Josiah on the throne. The phrase *va-yamlikhu am ha-arets et Yoshiyyahu veno tachtav* ('the people of the land made Josiah his son king in his place') introduces one of the greatest reforming kings in Israel's history. At eight years old, Josiah will inherit a kingdom in desperate need of renewal.

34

Summary: Josiah is eight years old when he becomes king and reigns thirty-one years in Jerusalem. He does what is right in the eyes of the LORD and walks in the ways of David his ancestor, turning neither to the right nor to the left. In the eighth year of his reign, while he is still young, he begins to seek the God of David his ancestor. In the twelfth year he begins to purge Judah and Jerusalem of the high places, the Asherah poles, the carved images, and the metal images. They tear down the altars of the Baals in his presence. The incense altars that stand above them he cuts down. The Asherah poles, the carved images, and the metal images he shatters, grinds to dust, and scatters on the graves of those who sacrificed to them. He burns the bones of the priests on their altars, purging Judah and Jerusalem. In the cities of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, even as far as Naphtali and their ruins all around, he tears down the altars, beats the Asherah poles and carved images to powder, and cuts down all the incense altars throughout all the land of Israel. Then he returns to Jerusalem. In the eighteenth year of his reign, when he has purged the land and the Temple, he sends Shaphan son of Azaliah, Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah son of Joahaz the recorder to repair the house of the LORD his God. They come to Hilkiah the high priest and deliver the money that has been brought into the house of God, which the Levite doorkeepers have collected from Manasseh, Ephraim, the entire remnant of Israel, all Judah, Benjamin, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. They give it to the workers who have oversight of the house of the LORD, and the workers use it for repairing and restoring the house — they give it to the carpenters and builders to purchase hewn stone and timber for joists and beams for the buildings that the kings of Judah had let go to ruin. The men work faithfully. Their overseers are Jahath and Obadiah the Levites, of the sons of Merari, and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohathites, to direct the work. The Levites are all skilled with musical instruments. They also oversee the laborers and direct all the workers from task to task. Some of the Levites serve as scribes, officials, and gatekeepers. While they are bringing out the money that had been brought into the house of the LORD, Hilkiah the priest finds the Book of the Law of the LORD given through Moses. Hilkiah tells Shaphan the scribe, 'I have found the Book of the Law in the house of the LORD.' Hilkiah gives the book to Shaphan. Shaphan brings the book to the king and also reports: 'Everything committed to your servants they are doing. They have poured out the money found in the house of the LORD and put it into the hands of the overseers and workers.' Then Shaphan the scribe tells the king, 'Hilkiah the priest has given me a book.' Shaphan reads from it before the king. When the king hears the words of the law, he tears his garments. The king commands Hilkiah, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah the king's servant: 'Go, inquire of the LORD for me and for those remaining in Israel and in Judah concerning the words of the book that has been found. For great is the wrath of the LORD that is poured out upon us, because our fathers did not keep the word of the LORD, to act according to all that is written in this book.' Hilkiah and those the king sends go to Huldah the prophetess, wife of Shallum son of Tokhath son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe — she dwells in Jerusalem in the Second Quarter. They speak to her accordingly. She says to them, 'Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel: Tell the man who sent you to me, Thus says the LORD: I am about to bring disaster upon this place and upon its inhabitants — all the curses written in the book that was read before the king of Judah — because they have abandoned me and burned incense to other gods, provoking me with all the works of their hands. My wrath will be poured out on this place and will not be quenched. But to the king of Judah who sent you to inquire of the LORD, thus shall you say to him: Thus says the LORD, the God of Israel, concerning the words that you have heard — because your heart was tender and you humbled yourself before God when you heard his words against this place and its inhabitants, and you humbled yourself before me and tore your garments and wept before me, I also have heard you, declares the LORD. I will gather you to your fathers, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the disaster that I am bringing upon this place and its inhabitants.' They bring the word back to the king. Then the king sends and gathers all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. The king goes up to the house of the LORD with all the people of Judah, the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the priests, the Levites, and all the people both great and small. He reads in their hearing all the words

of the Book of the Covenant that was found in the house of the LORD. The king stands in his place and makes a covenant before the LORD, to walk after the LORD and to keep his commandments, his testimonies, and his statutes with all his heart and all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant written in this book. He causes everyone in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand to it. The inhabitants of Jerusalem act according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers. Josiah removes all the abominations from all the territory belonging to the people of Israel and makes everyone in Israel serve the LORD their God. All his days they do not turn from following the LORD, the God of their fathers.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Chronicler reshapes the Josiah narrative with a significantly different chronology from 2 Kings 22-23. Where Kings places the reform after the book discovery (in the eighteenth year), Chronicles places the beginning of Josiah's seeking God in his eighth year (age sixteen) and the purge in his twelfth year (age twenty) — six years before the book discovery. This chronological shift is theologically significant: Josiah does not need a book to know that idolatry is wrong. He begins seeking God as a teenager, begins reform as a young adult, and finds the book as a mature king. The discovery of the Book of the Law (sefer ha-Torah, identified by most scholars as some form of Deuteronomy) in the Temple storerooms is one of the most consequential moments in biblical history. It provides scriptural authority for the reform already underway. The consultation of Huldah the prophetess (verses 22-28) is remarkable: in a society with prominent male prophets (Jeremiah is already active), the king's officials seek out a woman to interpret the discovered text. Huldah speaks with full prophetic authority, beginning with the messenger formula ko amar YHWH. Her oracle distinguishes between the irreversible judgment on the nation and the personal mercy extended to Josiah because his heart was tender (rakh levavekha) and he humbled himself (va-tikkana).*

Translation Friction: *The chronological discrepancy between Chronicles and Kings is the most significant. In 2 Kings 22, the reform begins only after the book is discovered (eighteenth year). In 2 Chronicles 34, Josiah begins seeking God in year eight and reforming in year twelve, with the book found in year eighteen as confirmation of what he has already been doing. Some scholars argue the Chronicler has access to additional historical data; others see a theological restructuring that makes Josiah's piety intrinsic rather than text-dependent. The extension of the reform to Manasseh, Ephraim, Simeon, and Naphtali (verse 6) raises the same territorial questions as Hezekiah's reforms — the northern territories were under Assyrian provincial administration, though Assyrian power was weakening rapidly by 628 BCE (Josiah's twelfth year). The identification of the Book of the Law remains debated: most identify it with some form of Deuteronomy (perhaps chapters 12-26), though some argue for a larger portion of the Torah.*

Connections: *Josiah's reforms connect to and complete those of Hezekiah (2 Chronicles 29-31), forming a pair of reforming kings who bookend the disastrous reign of Manasseh. The discovery of the Book of the Law connects to Deuteronomy's command to keep the law before the king (Deuteronomy 17:18-19). The consultation of Huldah connects to other instances of prophetic mediation of divine will (Nathan before David, Ahijah before Jeroboam). The covenant renewal ceremony (verses 29-32) echoes Moses' covenant at Sinai (Exodus 24), Joshua's covenant at Shechem (Joshua 24), and Hezekiah's covenant renewal (2 Chronicles 29:10). Huldah's prophecy that Josiah will be 'gathered to his grave in peace' (verse 28) has been debated since he dies in battle at Megiddo (35:22-24) — 'peace' may mean before the national catastrophe, not in the manner of death. The phrase 'Book of the Covenant' (sefer ha-berit, verse 30) connects to Exodus 24:7, where Moses reads the sefer ha-berit at Sinai.*

¹Josiah was eight years old when he became king, and he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. ²He did what was right in the eyes of the LORD and walked in the ways of David his ancestor, turning neither to the right nor to the left. ³In the eighth year of his reign, while still young, he began to seek the God of David his ancestor. In the twelfth year he began to purge Judah and Jerusalem of the high places, the Asherah poles, the carved images, and the metal images. ⁴They tore down the altars of the Baals in his presence. The incense altars above them he cut down. The Asherah poles, the carved images, and the metal images he shattered, ground to dust, and scattered on the graves of those who had sacrificed to them. ⁵He burned the bones of the priests on their altars, purging Judah and Jerusalem. ⁶In the cities of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, even as far as Naphtali, and in their ruins all around, ⁷he tore down the altars, beat the Asherah poles and carved images to powder, and cut down all the incense altars throughout all the land of Israel. Then he returned to Jerusalem. ⁸In the

eighteenth year of his reign, to complete the purging of the land and the Temple, he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah, Maaseiah the governor of the city, and Joah son of Joahaz the recorder to repair the house of the LORD his God. ⁹They came to Hilkiah the high priest and delivered the money that had been brought into the house of God — which the Levite doorkeepers had collected from Manasseh, Ephraim, the entire remnant of Israel, all Judah and Benjamin, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁰They gave it to the workers who had oversight of the house of the LORD, and the workers used it for repairing and restoring the house. ¹¹They gave it to the carpenters and builders to purchase hewn stone and timber for joists and beams for the buildings that the kings of Judah had allowed to fall to ruin. ¹²The men worked faithfully. Their overseers were Jahath and Obadiah the Levites, of the sons of Merari, and Zechariah and Meshullam, of the sons of the Kohathites, to direct the work. The Levites — all those skilled with musical instruments — ¹³also oversaw the laborers and directed all the workers from task to task. Some of the Levites served as scribes, officials, and gatekeepers. ¹⁴While they were bringing out the money that had been brought into the house of the LORD, Hilkiah the priest found the Book of the Law of the LORD given through Moses. ¹⁵Hilkiah said to Shaphan the scribe, 'I have found the Book of the Law in the house of the LORD.' And Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan. ¹⁶Shaphan brought the book to the king and also reported to the king, 'Everything committed to your servants they are doing. ¹⁷They have poured out the money found in the house of the LORD and put it into the hands of the overseers and workers.' ¹⁸Shaphan the scribe told the king, 'Hilkiah the priest has given me a book.' And Shaphan read from it before the king. ¹⁹When the king heard the words of the law, he tore his garments. ²⁰The king commanded Hilkiah, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah the king's servant: ²¹'Go, inquire of the LORD for me and for those remaining in Israel and in Judah concerning the words of this book that has been found. For great is the wrath of the LORD poured out upon us, because our fathers did not keep the word of the LORD, to act according to all that is written in this book.' ²²Hilkiah and those the king had sent went to Huldah the prophetess, wife of Shallum son of Tokhath son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe. She lived in Jerusalem in the Second Quarter. They spoke to her accordingly. ²³She said to them, 'This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: Tell the man who sent you to me, ²⁴This is what the LORD says: I am about to bring disaster upon this place and upon its inhabitants — all the curses written in the book that was read before the king of Judah. ²⁵Because they have abandoned me and burned incense to other gods, provoking me with all the works of their hands, my wrath will be poured out on this place and will not be quenched.' ²⁶But to the king of Judah, who sent you to inquire of the LORD, say this to him: This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says, concerning the words you have heard — ²⁷Because your heart was tender and you humbled yourself before God when you heard his words against this place and its inhabitants — you humbled yourself before me, tore your garments, and wept before me — I also have heard you, declares the LORD. ²⁸I will gather you to your fathers, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the disaster I am bringing upon this place and its inhabitants.' They brought this word back to the king. ²⁹the king sent and gathered all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. ³⁰The king went up to the house of the LORD with all the people of Judah, the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the priests, the Levites, and all the people both great and small. He read in their hearing all the words of the Book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of the LORD. ³¹The king stood in his place and made a covenant before the LORD to walk after the LORD and to keep his commandments, his testimonies, and his statutes with all his heart and all his soul, to perform the words of the covenant written in this book. ³²He caused everyone in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand to it. The inhabitants of Jerusalem acted according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers. ³³Josiah removed all the abominations from all the territory belonging to the people of Israel and made everyone present in Israel serve the LORD their God. All his days they did not turn from following the LORD, the God of their fathers.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The accession at age eight (approximately 640 BCE) makes Josiah one of the youngest kings in Judah's history. His thirty-one year reign (640-609 BCE) spans the decline and fall of the Assyrian Empire. The young age means he was guided by advisors in early years, making his independent decision to seek God at age sixteen (verse 3) all the more remarkable.

2. The assessment is comprehensive: va-ya'as ha-yashar be-einei YHWH ('he did what was right in the eyes of the LORD'), be-darkhei David aviu ('in the ways of David his ancestor'), and ve-lo sar yamin u-semol ('not turning right or left'). The phrase about not turning aside echoes Deuteronomy 17:20 (the law of the king) and Joshua 1:7 — perfect straightness on the covenant path. Only Josiah and Hezekiah receive the full Davidic comparison in Chronicles.
3. The Chronicler provides a two-stage timeline absent from 2 Kings. Stage one: bi-shmoneh shanim le-molkho ('in the eighth year of his reign'), when Josiah is sixteen, he begins lidrosh le-Elohei David aviu ('to seek the God of David his ancestor'). Stage two: bi-shtem esreh shanah ('in the twelfth year'), age twenty, he begins active reform — le-taher ('to purge/cleanse'). The verb lidrosh ('to seek') is the Chronicler's key term for genuine devotion. Josiah seeks God before he finds the book.
4. The destruction is performed lefanav ('in his presence') — Josiah personally oversees the demolition. The sequence is progressive: nittsu ('tore down'), gidde'a ('cut down'), shibbar ('shattered'), hedaq ('ground to powder'), and zaraq ('scattered'). Scattering the dust al penei ha-qevanim ha-zovchim lahem ('on the graves of those who sacrificed to them') is a double defilement — polluting the graves of the idolaters with the remains of their idols.
5. The burning of atsmot kohanim ('the bones of priests') on the pagan altars where they had served defiled those altars permanently — human bones made any sacred site permanently unclean. This act fulfills the prophecy of 1 Kings 13:2, where a man of God predicted that a descendant of David named Josiah would burn human bones on the altar at Bethel. The verb va-yetaher ('he purged/cleansed') describes the result: Judah and Jerusalem are ritually restored.
6. The reform extends deep into northern territory: Manasseh, Ephraim, Simeon, and Naphtali — spanning the full extent of the former northern kingdom. The phrase be-charvotihem saviv ('in their ruins all around') suggests that many northern cities are already in a ruined state from the Assyrian conquest a century earlier. Josiah purges the ruins themselves of pagan installations.
7. The comprehensive scope — be-khol erets Yisra'el ('throughout all the land of Israel') — asserts that Josiah's authority extends over the entire covenant territory, not just Judah. The return to Jerusalem (va-yashov li-Yerushalayim) marks the completion of the territorial purge and the transition to the next phase: Temple restoration.
8. The eighteenth year (approximately 622 BCE) is when the reform shifts from demolition to construction — lechazeq et beit YHWH ('to repair/strengthen the house of the LORD'). Three officials are dispatched: Shaphan (who will become central to the narrative as the reader of the discovered book), Maaseiah sar ha-ir ('the governor of the city'), and Joah ha-mazkir ('the recorder/herald'). The delegation represents scribal, civic, and archival authority.
9. The funding comes from both north and south: mi-yad Menashev ve-Efrayim u-mi-kol she'erit Yisra'el ('from Manasseh, Ephraim, and all the remnant of Israel') as well as u-mi-kol Yehudah u-Vinyamin ('from all Judah and Benjamin'). The pan-Israel scope of the contributions demonstrates continued northern participation in Jerusalem worship. The Levites function as shomrei ha-saf ('keepers of the threshold, doorkeepers') who collect and manage the donations.
10. The chain of stewardship is clear: money flows from the people to the Levite doorkeepers to the overseers (osei ha-melakhah ha-mufqadim, 'the workers appointed over the work') to the actual laborers. The dual purpose — livdoq u-lechazeq ha-bayit ('to repair and to strengthen the house') — indicates both structural assessment and actual restoration.
11. The craftworkers — charashim ('carpenters/craftsmen') and bonim ('builders') — purchase construction materials: avnei machtsev ('hewn/quarried stone') and etsim ('timber') for mechabberot ('joinings, couplings, joists') and le-qarot ('for beams/rafters'). The blame for the disrepair falls on malkhei Yehudah ('the kings of Judah') — plural, indicating that the neglect accumulated under multiple rulers, not just Amon.
12. The phrase be-emunah ('faithfully, with integrity') characterizes the workers' honesty. Levitical overseers from two clans — Merari and Kohath — direct the restoration. The note about Levites who are mevin bikhlei shir ('skilled with musical instruments') seems tangential but reflects the Chronicler's conviction that the Levites' musical role extends to all Temple service, including construction oversight.
13. The Levitical roles encompass the full range of institutional functions: over the sabbalim ('burden-bearers, porters'), as menatsechim ('overseers, directors') of every worker and task, and as sofrim ('scribes'), shoterim ('officers/administrators'), and sho'arim ('gatekeepers'). The Levites function as a comprehensive professional class managing all aspects of Temple operations.
14. Most scholars identify this sefer ('book, scroll') with some form of Deuteronomy, perhaps the core law code of chapters 12-26, though the exact extent is debated. The book had apparently been stored in the Temple and forgotten during the reigns of Manasseh and Amon. The phrase be-yad Mosheh ('through the hand of Moses') attributes Mosaic authorship. The discovery changes everything that follows.
15. Hilikiah's announcement — sefer ha-torah matsati be-veit YHWH ('the Book of the Law I have found in the house of the LORD') — places the emphasis on the find (matsati, 'I found') and the location (be-veit YHWH, 'in the house of the LORD'). The transfer to Shaphan the sofer ('scribe') puts the document in the hands of someone who can read and interpret it. The chain of transmission — from the Temple storage to the priest to the scribe to the king — ensures proper handling of the sacred text.
16. Shaphan first delivers his administrative report — the Temple repairs are proceeding as ordered. The mundane report comes before the momentous news about the book, reflecting the practical order in which events unfolded. The phrase kol asher nittan be-yad avadekha hem osim ('everything given into the hand of your servants, they are doing') confirms the faithful execution of the king's construction orders.

17. The verb *va-yattikhu* ('they poured out, melted out') may refer to emptying collection containers or melting down silver into usable forms. The financial accounting is complete: money collected, distributed, and put to work. This administrative report provides the mundane context for the extraordinary discovery that follows.
18. The reading of the newly discovered text *lifnei ha-melekh* ('before the king') is the moment of crisis. Shaphan reads — and the words of Moses, unheard for perhaps decades, fill the royal court. The understated narrative — *va-yiqra vo Shaphan lifnei ha-melekh* ('Shaphan read from it before the king') — disguises the seismic impact of what the king is hearing.
19. The response is visceral: *va-yiqra et begadav* ('he tore his garments'). The tearing of clothing is the standard biblical expression of grief, horror, and mourning. Josiah hears the words of the torah — likely the blessings and curses of Deuteronomy 28 — and recognizes that Judah stands under the full weight of the covenant curses. The text does not say he was merely worried or concerned; he tears his royal robes in public.
20. Five officials are dispatched — a delegation of high importance. Hilkiah (the discovering priest), Ahikam son of Shaphan (who will later protect Jeremiah, Jeremiah 26:24), Abdon (called Achbor in 2 Kings 22:12), Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah (a personal royal servant). The delegation combines priestly, scribal, and royal authority.
21. Josiah's command reveals his theological understanding: *ki gedolah chamat YHWH asher nittekah banu* ('for great is the wrath of the LORD poured out upon us'). The verb *nittekah* ('poured out') describes wrath as a liquid force. Josiah recognizes that the curses in the book apply to his nation. His inquiry is *be'adi u-ve'ad ha-nish'ar be-Yisra'el u-vi-Yehudah* ('for me and for those remaining in Israel and in Judah') — again including the northern remnant in the scope of his concern.
22. The consultation of Chuldah *ha-nevi'ah* ('Huldah the prophetess') is remarkable. Jeremiah is already prophetically active (Jeremiah 1:2 dates his call to Josiah's thirteenth year), yet the king's officials seek out a woman. Huldah is identified by her husband's genealogy (Shallum son of Tokhath son of Hasrah, *shomer ha-begadim*, 'keeper of the wardrobe') and her residence (*ba-Mishneh*, 'the Second Quarter,' a newer section of Jerusalem). Her prophetic authority is unquestioned.
23. Huldah opens with the full prophetic messenger formula: *ko amar YHWH Elohei Yisra'el* ('thus says the LORD, the God of Israel'). She speaks with the same authority as Isaiah, Jeremiah, or any male prophet. Her reference to the king as *ha-ish asher shalach etkhem elai* ('the man who sent you to me') is notably direct — she does not use royal titles, speaking as God's messenger to a human petitioner.
24. The oracle begins with judgment: *hinneni mevi ra'ah* ('I am about to bring disaster'). The disaster is specified as *kol ha-alot ha-ketuvot al ha-sefer* ('all the curses written in the book') — referring to the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:15-68. The book discovered in the Temple now becomes the instrument of prophetic proclamation: its curses are about to be fulfilled.
25. The cause is stated clearly: *azavuni* ('they abandoned me') and *va-yeqatteru le-elohim acherim* ('they burned incense to other gods'). The phrase *ve-titakh chamati ba-maqom ha-zeh ve-lo tikhbeh* ('my wrath will be poured out on this place and will not be extinguished') uses the metaphor of fire that cannot be put out — divine anger as unquenchable flame. The judgment on the place (Jerusalem) is irreversible at the national level.
26. The oracle now shifts from the nation to the king personally. The opening phrase *ve-el melekh Yehudah* ('but to the king of Judah') creates a contrast: the place faces judgment, but the king receives a personal word. The phrase *ha-devarim asher shama'ta* ('the words you heard') refers to the curses that prompted Josiah's grief.
27. The reason for the personal mercy is stated: *ya'an rakh levavekha* ('because your heart was tender/soft'). The word *rakh* ('tender, soft') describes a heart that is responsive, not hardened — the opposite of the stiff-necked posture condemned throughout Deuteronomy. The verb *va-tikkana* ('you humbled yourself') appears twice, framing the response: humility before God (*milifnei Elohim*) and humility before me (*lefanai*). The tearing and weeping are outward expressions of inward brokenness. God's response — *ve-gam ani shamati* ('I also have heard') — mirrors the humility: as Josiah heard God's words and responded, so God hears Josiah's grief and responds.
28. The personal promise: *hinneni osifkha el avotekha* ('I will gather you to your fathers') means a natural death before the catastrophe. The phrase *be-shalom* ('in peace') has been debated since Josiah dies in battle at Megiddo (35:22-24). The 'peace' may refer to being spared from seeing the national destruction — the exile and Temple destruction — rather than the manner of death. Josiah dies before the worst happens; his eyes do not see the fall of Jerusalem.
29. Despite the prophecy of inevitable judgment, Josiah does not despair. He gathers *kol ziqnei Yehudah vi-Yerushalayim* ('all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem') for a national assembly. The response to hearing that judgment is coming is not resignation but covenant renewal — doing right regardless of the outcome.
30. The assembly is maximally inclusive: *kol ish Yehudah* ('every person of Judah'), the priests, the Levites, and *kol ha-am mi-gadol ve-ad qatan* ('all the people from great to small'). The king himself reads — *va-yiqra be-ozneihem* ('he read in their ears') — taking the role of Moses at Sinai (Exodus 24:7). The document is now called *sefer ha-berit* ('the Book of the Covenant'), connecting it explicitly to the Sinai covenant.
31. The king stands *al omdo* ('in his place' — the royal platform in the Temple) and *va-yikhrot et ha-berit* ('he cut the covenant'). The covenant commitments echo the Shema: *be-khol levavo u-ve-khol nafsho* ('with all his heart and all his soul'). The triple obligation — *mitsvotav, edvotav, chuqqav* ('his commandments, testimonies, statutes') — covers the full scope of divine law. The purpose: *la'asot et divrei ha-berit ha-ketuvim al ha-sefer ha-zeh* ('to perform the words of the covenant written in this book').

32. The verb *va-ya'amed* ('he caused to stand') means he had them formally pledge — to 'stand to' the covenant is to commit to it publicly. The phrase *kivrit Elohim Elohei avoteihem* ('according to the covenant of God, the God of their fathers') connects the present commitment to the ancestral relationship. This is not a new covenant but the renewal of the ancient one.
33. The final summary is comprehensive: Josiah removes *kol ha-to'evot* ('all the abominations') from *kol ha-aratsot asher livnei Yisra'el* ('all the territories belonging to the people of Israel'). The concluding note — *kol yamav lo saru me-acharei YHWH* ('all his days they did not turn from following the LORD') — is the Chronicler's ultimate praise: for the entirety of Josiah's reign, the people remained faithful. The phrase is conditional, however — 'all his days' implies that after his death, the turning away resumed.

35

Summary: Josiah keeps a Passover to the LORD in Jerusalem, and they slaughter the Passover lamb on the fourteenth day of the first month. He sets the priests in their duties and encourages them in the service of the house of the LORD. He says to the Levites who teach all Israel and who are holy to the LORD, 'Put the holy ark in the house that Solomon son of David king of Israel built. You need not carry it on your shoulders any longer. Now serve the LORD your God and his people Israel. Prepare yourselves by your ancestral houses according to your divisions, following the written instructions of David king of Israel and the written instructions of Solomon his son. Stand in the holy place according to the divisions of the ancestral houses of your brothers, the lay people, and let there be for each a portion of an ancestral house of the Levites. Slaughter the Passover lamb, consecrate yourselves, and prepare for your brothers, to act according to the word of the LORD through Moses.' Josiah contributes to the lay people — to all who are present — flocks of lambs and young goats, all for the Passover offerings, numbering thirty thousand, along with three thousand bulls. These are from the king's own possessions. His officials contribute willingly to the people, the priests, and the Levites. Hilkiyah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the chief officers of the house of God, give to the priests for the Passover offerings two thousand six hundred small livestock and three hundred bulls. Conaniah and his brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the chiefs of the Levites, contribute to the Levites for the Passover offerings five thousand small livestock and five hundred bulls. The service is prepared, the priests standing in their places and the Levites in their divisions according to the king's command. They slaughter the Passover lamb. The priests splash the blood received from their hand, while the Levites do the skinning. They set aside the burnt offerings to give them to the divisions of the ancestral houses of the lay people, to offer to the LORD, as written in the Book of Moses. They do the same with the bulls. They roast the Passover lamb with fire according to the regulation, and they boil the holy offerings in pots, caldrons, and pans, and carry them quickly to all the lay people. Afterward they prepare for themselves and for the priests — because the priests, the sons of Aaron, are engaged in offering the burnt offerings and the fat portions until night. So the Levites prepare for themselves and for the priests, the sons of Aaron. The singers, the sons of Asaph, are in their place according to the command of David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer. The gatekeepers are at each gate — they do not need to leave their service, for their brothers the Levites prepare for them. So all the service of the LORD is prepared that day, to keep the Passover and to offer burnt offerings on the altar of the LORD, according to the command of King Josiah. The people of Israel who are present keep the Passover at that time, and the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. No Passover like it has been kept in Israel since the days of Samuel the prophet. None of the kings of Israel ever kept such a Passover as Josiah kept — with the priests, the Levites, all Judah and Israel who were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. In the eighteenth year of Josiah's reign this Passover was kept. After all this, when Josiah has prepared the Temple, Neco king of Egypt comes up to fight at Carchemish on the Euphrates, and Josiah goes out to confront him. Neco sends messengers to him, saying, 'What have I to do with you, king of Judah? I am not coming against you today, but against the house with which I am at war. God has commanded me to hurry. Cease opposing God, who is with me, so that he does not destroy you.' But Josiah does not turn away from him; he disguises himself to fight him. He does not listen to the words of Neco from the mouth of God, and he comes to fight in the plain of Megiddo. The archers shoot King Josiah, and the king says to his servants, 'Take me away, for I am badly wounded.' His servants take him out of the chariot and carry him in his second chariot and bring him to Jerusalem, where he dies. He is buried in the tombs of his fathers, and all Judah and Jerusalem mourn for Josiah. Jeremiah composes a lament for Josiah, and all the male and female singers speak of Josiah in their laments to this day. They have made them an established practice in Israel, and they are recorded in the Laments.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents Josiah's Passover as the greatest in Israel's history — surpassing even Hezekiah's celebration (chapter 30), which was compared to Solomon. The Chronicler's superlative is striking: 've-lo na'asah fesach kamohu be-Yisra'el mi-yemei Shemu'el ha-navi' ('no Passover like it has been kept since the days of Samuel the prophet'). The organizational detail is extraordinary — a perfectly orchestrated liturgical event with exact divisions, proper sequence, and joyful efficiency. Then comes the devastating turn: the death of Josiah at Megiddo. Pharaoh Neco is marching to Carchemish to support the remnant of Assyria against Babylon (approximately 609 BCE). Josiah intercepts him, possibly to prevent an Egyptian-Assyrian alliance. The Chronicler introduces a stunning theological twist: Neco claims to speak with divine authority ('God has commanded me to hurry,' mi-pi Elohim, 'from the mouth of God'). The narrator confirms this: 'he did not listen to the words of Neco from the mouth of God' (mi-pi Elohim). A foreign pharaoh serves as God's mouthpiece, and the righteous Josiah fails to listen — a tragic reversal of his lifelong pattern of heeding divine words. His death at Megiddo ends the last great reform and effectively seals Judah's fate. Jeremiah's lament (verse 25) underscores the national trauma — the best king dies, and only decline follows.*

Translation Friction: *The claim that Neco spoke mi-pi Elohim ('from the mouth of God') is one of the most theologically challenging statements in Chronicles. How can a pagan king be a vehicle of divine communication? The Chronicler seems to employ this to explain why a righteous king died in battle — Josiah's failure was not apostasy but disobedience to a specific divine command communicated through an unexpected messenger. The reference to placing the ark 'in the house' (verse 3) raises questions: had the ark been removed during Manasseh's apostasy, or during Temple repairs? The text is ambiguous. The comparison to Samuel rather than Moses or Solomon as the benchmark for Passover (verse 18) is unusual — Samuel's era included no recorded Passover, making the reference point unclear. The lamentation tradition (verse 25) connecting Jeremiah to Josiah's funeral is not found in the canonical book of Jeremiah, and the 'Laments' (qinot) mentioned may be a separate collection now lost.*

Connections: *Josiah's Passover connects to the original Passover (Exodus 12), Hezekiah's Passover (2 Chronicles 30), and ultimately to the Passover of the exile community. The phrase 'according to the word of the LORD through Moses' (verse 6) grounds the celebration in Mosaic authority. The reference to the 'Book of Moses' (verse 12) connects to the discovered scroll (chapter 34). The death at Megiddo (Hebrew: Megiddo) connects to the apocalyptic tradition: Megiddo becomes Armageddon in Revelation 16:16 — the place of final battle. The mourning for Josiah connects to Zechariah 12:11, which references 'the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the plain of Megiddo' as a type of future lamentation. Jeremiah's lament (verse 25) connects to the book of Lamentations tradition. The death of Josiah effectively ends the Deuteronomistic reform; within twenty-three years, Jerusalem will fall.*

¹Josiah celebrated a Passover to the LORD in Jerusalem. They slaughtered the Passover lamb on the fourteenth day of the first month. ²He appointed the priests to their duties and encouraged them in the service of the house of the LORD. ³He said to the Levites who taught all Israel and who were holy to the LORD, 'Put the holy ark in the house that Solomon son of David king of Israel built. You no longer need to carry it on your shoulders. Now serve the LORD your God and his people Israel. ⁴Prepare yourselves by your ancestral houses according to your divisions, following the written instructions of David king of Israel and the written instructions of Solomon his son. ⁵Stand in the holy place according to the divisions of the ancestral houses of your brothers the lay people, with a portion of a Levitical ancestral house for each. ⁶Slaughter the Passover lamb, consecrate yourselves, and prepare for your brothers, to act according to the word of the LORD through Moses.' ⁷Josiah contributed to the lay people from the flocks — lambs and young goats, all for the Passover offerings — numbering thirty thousand, along with three thousand bulls. These were from the king's own possessions. ⁸His officials contributed willingly to the people, the priests, and the Levites. Hilkiah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the chief officers of the house of God, gave to the priests two thousand six hundred small livestock and three hundred bulls for the Passover offerings. ⁹Conaniah and his brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, along with Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the Levitical chiefs, contributed five thousand small livestock and five hundred bulls to the Levites for the Passover offerings. ¹⁰The service was prepared: the priests stood in their places and the Levites in their divisions, according to the king's command. ¹¹They slaughtered the Passover lamb. The priests splashed the blood received from the Levites' hands, while the Levites skinned the animals. ¹²They set aside the

burnt offerings to distribute them to the divisions of the ancestral houses of the lay people, for offering to the LORD as written in the Book of Moses. They did the same with the bulls. ¹³They roasted the Passover lamb over fire according to the regulation, and boiled the holy offerings in pots, cauldrons, and pans, and carried them quickly to all the lay people. ¹⁴Afterward they prepared for themselves and for the priests, because the priests — the sons of Aaron — were occupied with offering the burnt offerings and the fat portions until nightfall. So the Levites prepared for themselves and for the priests, the sons of Aaron. ¹⁵The singers — the sons of Asaph — were in their place according to the command of David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer. The gatekeepers were at each gate — they did not need to leave their posts, for their brothers the Levites prepared food for them. ¹⁶The entire service of the LORD was organized that day for keeping the Passover and offering burnt offerings on the altar of the LORD, as King Josiah had commanded. ¹⁷The people of Israel who were present kept the Passover at that time, and the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. ¹⁸No Passover like it had been kept in Israel since the days of Samuel the prophet. None of the kings of Israel had ever kept such a Passover as Josiah kept — with the priests, the Levites, all Judah and Israel who were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁹This Passover was observed in the eighteenth year of Josiah's reign. ²⁰After all this, when Josiah had set the Temple in order, Neco king of Egypt came up to fight at Carchemish on the Euphrates, and Josiah went out to confront him. ²¹Neco sent messengers to him, saying, 'What quarrel is there between us, king of Judah? I am not coming against you today but against the house with which I am at war. God has commanded me to hurry. Stop opposing God, who is with me, so that he does not destroy you.' ²²But Josiah would not turn away from him. He disguised himself to fight him and did not listen to the words of Neco, which were from the mouth of God. He came to fight in the plain of Megiddo. ²³The archers shot King Josiah, and the king said to his servants, 'Take me away, for I am badly wounded.' ²⁴His servants took him out of the chariot, placed him in his second chariot, and brought him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs of his fathers, and all Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah. ²⁵Jeremiah composed a lament for Josiah. All the male and female singers speak of Josiah in their laments to this day. They established this as a tradition in Israel, and the laments are recorded in the Laments. ²⁶The rest of the acts of Josiah and his faithful deeds, according to what is written in the law of the LORD, ²⁷His acts, from first to last, are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Unlike Hezekiah's Passover (celebrated in the second month due to delays), Josiah's is held on the proper date: be-arba'ah asar la-chodesh ha-rishon ('on the fourteenth of the first month'). This is the biblically prescribed date (Exodus 12:6, Numbers 9:3). The proper timing signals proper order — everything about this Passover will follow the exact prescription.
2. The verb va-yechazzeqem ('he strengthened/encouraged them') uses the root of Hezekiah's name, now applied to Josiah's pastoral leadership. The priests are set al mishmerotam ('in their watches/duties') — every priest knows his role and station.
3. The instruction tenu et aron ha-qodesh ba-bayit ('put the holy ark in the house') implies the ark had been removed — perhaps during Manasseh's placement of idols in the Temple (33:7) or during Temple repairs. The phrase ein lakhem massa ba-katef ('there is no burden on your shoulders') releases the Levites from the ancient carrying duty (Numbers 7:9) — the ark has a permanent home. They can now devote themselves to teaching and service.
4. The dual authority — bikhtav David ('according to the writing of David') and u-ve-mikhtav Shelomoh ('and the written document of Solomon') — indicates that both kings left written organizational plans for Temple service. The Levites are to follow these ancient protocols precisely. The emphasis on written authority (khtav, mikhtav) complements the newly discovered written law (sefer ha-torah).
5. The organizational principle assigns Levitical groups to serve corresponding lay divisions: each group of lay worshipers (acheikhem benei ha-am, 'your brothers the people') has a designated Levitical unit (chaluqqat beit av la-Leviyim). This ensures that every family unit has Levitical support during the Passover slaughter.
6. Three imperatives: shachatu ('slaughter'), hitqaddeshu ('consecrate yourselves'), and hakhinu ('prepare'). The final phrase — kidvar YHWH be-yad Mosheh ('according to the word of the LORD through the hand of Moses') — anchors the entire celebration in Mosaic authority. The Passover is not a human invention but a divine command, and Josiah ensures it is performed exactly as prescribed.
7. The royal contribution is staggering: sheloshim elef ('thirty thousand') lambs and young goats, plus sheloshet alafim ('three thousand') bulls. The phrase elleh me-rekhus ha-melek ('these from the king's property') emphasizes personal royal generosity. Josiah funds the national celebration from his own resources, ensuring that no one is excluded from the Passover for lack of a lamb.

8. The officials (sarav) contribute li-ndavah ('as a freewill offering') — their generosity is voluntary, not commanded. The three chief officers of the Temple — Hilkiah, Zechariah, and Jehiel — provide specifically for the priests. The layered giving (king for the people, officials for priests and Levites, Temple officers for priests) ensures comprehensive provision.
9. The Levitical chiefs provide for their own — five thousand small livestock and five hundred bulls for the Levites' own Passover. The total contributions from all sources (thirty thousand plus two thousand six hundred plus five thousand lambs/goats, and three thousand plus three hundred plus five hundred bulls) represent an enormous celebration involving tens of thousands of participants.
10. The phrase va-tikkon ha-avodah ('the service was established/prepared') signals that everything is properly arranged. The priests al omdam ('in their standing places') and the Levites al machlaqotam ('in their divisions') create a picture of liturgical perfection — every person in position, every role defined.
11. The division of labor is efficient: the Levites slaughter and skin, the priests handle the blood (va-yizrequ ha-kohanim mi-yadam, 'the priests splashed from their hand' — receiving the blood from the Levites). This arrangement, also used in Hezekiah's Passover (30:16), maximizes throughput for the enormous number of sacrifices.
12. The ha-olah ('burnt offering') portions are separated and distributed to each family division for them to present at the altar. The phrase ka-katuv be-sefer Mosheh ('as written in the Book of Moses') — referring to the recently discovered book — governs the procedure. The discovered law is immediately put into practice.
13. The Passover lamb is prepared ba-esh ka-mishpat ('with fire according to the regulation,' following Exodus 12:8-9, which forbids boiling). The other sacred offerings (ha-qodashim) are boiled — a different preparation method. The verb va-yaritsu ('they made them run, they hurried them') indicates rapid distribution: the hot food is served quickly to the thousands of participants. The logistics of feeding this many people require military-level organization.
14. The Levites eat last — they serve everyone else first, then prepare for themselves and for the priests, who are occupied ad lailah ('until night') with the altar service. This selfless ordering — the people first, then the clergy, with the workers eating last — demonstrates the servant character of Levitical ministry.
15. Every specialized group maintains its station: singers at their posts, gatekeepers at their gates. No one abandons their liturgical duty for personal need — the Levites handle logistics so that worship continues uninterrupted. The system functions as an integrated whole, each part serving the others.
16. The summary statement va-tikkon kol avodat YHWH ba-yom ha-hu ('all the service of the LORD was established that day') indicates perfection of execution. The dual purpose — Passover observance and burnt offerings — represents the complete sacrificial program. The phrase ke-mitsvat ha-melek Yoshiyyahu ('according to the command of King Josiah') attributes the entire operation to royal initiative and authority.
17. The combination of ha-pesach ('the Passover') and chag ha-matsot shiv'at yamim ('the Festival of Unleavened Bread seven days') represents the complete observance — the one-day Passover followed by the seven-day festival, as prescribed in Exodus 12:15-20 and Deuteronomy 16:1-8.
18. The superlative is absolute: ve-lo na'asah pesach kamohu be-Yisra'el mi-yemei Shemu'el ha-navi ('no Passover like it was kept in Israel since the days of Samuel the prophet'). This surpasses even Hezekiah's Passover, which was compared to Solomon's era (30:26). The reference to Samuel rather than Moses or David as the benchmark is unusual and may indicate the pre-monarchic period as the last time all Israel celebrated together.
19. The date notation — bi-shmoneh esreh shanah ('in the eighteenth year,' approximately 622 BCE) — synchronizes the Passover with the discovery of the Book of the Law. The Passover is the liturgical culmination of the reform process that the book discovery confirmed and accelerated.
20. The phrase acharei kol zot ('after all this') signals a dramatic shift. Neco (Nekho, Pharaoh Neco II) marches to Carchemish (Karkemish) on the Euphrates to support the remnant of Assyria against Babylon (609 BCE). Josiah's interception is politically motivated — he likely opposes an Egyptian-Assyrian alliance that would threaten Judah's independence. The verb va-yetse liqrato ('he went out to meet him') indicates military confrontation.
21. Neco's message contains a stunning claim: Elohim amar levahaleini ('God commanded me to hurry'). The pharaoh claims divine authorization for his military campaign. The warning chadal lekha me-Elohim asher immi ('cease from God who is with me') urges Josiah to stand down. The phrase mah li va-lakh ('what is there between me and you?') denies any quarrel with Judah — Neco's fight is with someone else. Whether Neco genuinely received divine communication or simply used religious language diplomatically, the narrator will confirm that God was indeed speaking.
22. The Chronicler's confirmation that Neco spoke mi-pi Elohim is theologically radical: God can speak through a pagan king. This principle — that divine communication is not limited to Israelite prophets — appears elsewhere (Balaam in Numbers 22-24, Cyrus in Isaiah 45:1). Josiah's failure to listen is presented not as apostasy but as a specific act of disobedience with fatal consequences.
23. The archers (ha-yorim) strike the king — va-yoru ('they shot'). Josiah's words — ha'aviruni ki hochleiti me'od ('remove me for I am greatly wounded') — are terse and urgent. The verb hochleiti ('I am wounded, I am made sick') describes a mortal wound. The brevity of the king's words contrasts with the lengthy preparations of the Passover — the end comes swiftly and with devastating economy.
24. The transfer from the war chariot to the rekhev ha-mishneh ('the second chariot' — a lighter transport vehicle) and the journey to Jerusalem suggest Josiah lived long enough to be moved but died upon arrival or shortly after. The burial be-qivrot avotav ('in the tombs of his fathers') in the royal cemetery honors him appropriately. The mourning — kol Yehudah vi-Yerushalayim mit'abbelim al Yoshiyyahu ('all Judah and Jerusalem mourning for Josiah') — is national and profound.

25. The prophet Jeremiah (Yirmeyahu) composes a formal qinah ('lament') for Josiah — an expression of the profound bond between the last great king and the greatest prophet of that era. The professional singers (ha-sharim ve-ha-sharot, 'male and female singers') incorporate the lament into their ongoing repertoire ad ha-yom ('to this day'). The reference to ha-Qinot ('the Laments') indicates a now-lost collection of lamentation texts — not the canonical book of Lamentations, which concerns the fall of Jerusalem rather than Josiah.
26. The word chasadav ('his faithful deeds, his acts of chesed') summarizes Josiah's reign with the same term used for Hezekiah (32:32). His acts are evaluated ka-katuv be-torat YHWH ('according to what is written in the law of the LORD') — the very law he discovered, read, and implemented. Josiah's life was shaped by the torah he found.
27. The standard source citation closes the Josiah narrative. The phrase ha-rishonim ve-ha-acharonim ('the first and the last') encompasses his entire reign — from the eight-year-old boy who inherited a compromised kingdom to the thirty-nine-year-old king who died at Megiddo. With Josiah's death, the last hope for Judah's reform dies. The four kings who follow will reign a total of twenty-two years before Jerusalem falls.

36

Summary: *The people of the land take Jehoahaz son of Josiah and make him king in his father's place in Jerusalem. Jehoahaz is twenty-three years old when he becomes king and reigns three months in Jerusalem. The king of Egypt removes him in Jerusalem and imposes on the land a tribute of a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold. The king of Egypt makes Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem and changes his name to Jehoiakim. Neco takes Jehoahaz his brother and carries him to Egypt. Jehoiakim is twenty-five years old when he becomes king and reigns eleven years in Jerusalem. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD his God. Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon comes up against him and binds him in bronze chains to take him to Babylon. Nebuchadnezzar also carries some of the vessels of the house of the LORD to Babylon and puts them in his temple in Babylon. The rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, the abominations he commits, and what is found against him — they are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. Jehoiachin his son reigns in his place. Jehoiachin is eight years old when he becomes king and reigns three months and ten days in Jerusalem. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD. At the turn of the year, King Nebuchadnezzar sends and brings him to Babylon along with the precious vessels of the house of the LORD, and makes Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem. Zedekiah is twenty-one years old when he becomes king and reigns eleven years in Jerusalem. He does evil in the eyes of the LORD his God. He does not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet, who speaks from the mouth of the LORD. He also rebels against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God. He stiffens his neck and hardens his heart against turning to the LORD, the God of Israel. Moreover, all the leading priests and the people increase their unfaithfulness, following all the abominations of the nations. They defile the house of the LORD that he has consecrated in Jerusalem. The LORD, the God of their fathers, sends word to them persistently by his messengers, because he has compassion on his people and on his dwelling place. But they mock the messengers of God, despise his words, and scoff at his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD rises against his people and there is no remedy. He brings up against them the king of the Chaldeans, who kills their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary. He has no compassion on young man or young woman, old man or aged — God gives them all into his hand. All the vessels of the house of God, great and small, the treasures of the house of the LORD, the treasures of the king and his officials — all these he brings to Babylon. They burn the house of God, demolish the wall of Jerusalem, burn all its palaces with fire, and destroy all its precious vessels. He carries into exile to Babylon those who survive the sword, and they become servants to him and his sons until the rule of the kingdom of Persia — to fulfill the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land has enjoyed its Sabbaths. All the days that it lay desolate it kept Sabbath, to fulfill seventy years. In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia — to fulfill the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah — the LORD stirs up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia, and he makes a proclamation throughout all his kingdom and also puts it in writing: 'Thus says Cyrus king of Persia: The LORD, the God of heaven, has given me all the kingdoms of the earth, and he has charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whoever among you is of all his people — the LORD his God be with him — let him go up.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the final chapter of the entire Hebrew Bible in the Jewish canonical order (Tanakh), where Chronicles (Divrei Ha-Yamim) stands as the last book. The chapter compresses the final twenty-three years of Judah's existence into a rapid narrative of four kings — Jehoahaz, Jehoiakim, Jehoiachin, and Zedekiah — each worse than the last, each receiving the verdict 'he did evil in the eyes of the LORD.' The Chronicler's theological summary (verses 15-16) is one of the most poignant passages in the Hebrew Bible: God sends messengers 'persistently' (hashkem ve-shaloach, literally 'rising early and sending' — an image of divine urgency), because he has*

compassion (*chamal*) on his people and his dwelling place. But they mock, despise, and scoff — *va-yihyu mal'ivim be-mal'akhei ha-Elohim u-vozim devarav u-mit'at'im bi-nevi'av* ('they mocked the messengers of God, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets') — until *ad ein marpeh* ('there is no healing, no remedy'). The destruction that follows is total: Temple burned, walls demolished, people exiled. Yet the Hebrew Bible does not end in destruction. The final two verses (22-23) — the Cyrus decree — transform the ending from despair to hope. The LORD stirs the spirit of a Persian king, who declares: 'Let him go up' (*ya'al*). These are the last words of the Hebrew Bible: an invitation to ascend, to return, to rebuild. The Jewish Bible ends not with exile but with the possibility of homecoming. The phrase *ya'al* ('let him go up') is an open door — a perpetual invitation that echoes through Jewish history. Every generation that reads these final words hears the call: go up.

Translation Friction: *The age of Jehoiachin at accession is given as eight in Chronicles but eighteen in 2 Kings 24:8 — a well-known textual discrepancy, with most scholars favoring eighteen as the original reading. The compressed treatment of four reigns in a single chapter omits enormous amounts of material found in 2 Kings 23-25 (Jeremiah's activity, the multiple Babylonian campaigns, the Gedaliah administration, the flight to Egypt). The Chronicler is not writing history in the modern sense but a theological meditation on why Jerusalem fell. The land-Sabbath theology (verse 21) interprets the seventy years of exile as the land 'making up' the Sabbath years Israel had failed to observe — connecting to Leviticus 26:34-35, 43. This mathematical theology (490 years of missed Sabbaths = 70 years of exile) may be symbolic rather than literal. The duplication of the opening verses of Ezra (Ezra 1:1-3) in the closing verses of Chronicles (36:22-23) is likely intentional — creating a bridge between the two books (Chronicles-Ezra-Nehemiah may have originally been one work) and ensuring that the Hebrew Bible ends with hope rather than destruction.*

Connections: *The four final kings connect to the detailed accounts in 2 Kings 23-25 and to the prophetic narratives of Jeremiah. The mocking of prophets (verse 16) connects to the specific treatment of Jeremiah described in his own book (Jeremiah 20, 26, 37-38). The burning of the Temple reverses Solomon's dedication (2 Chronicles 5-7) — where fire came from heaven to consecrate, now fire from human hands destroys. The exile fulfills the curses of Deuteronomy 28 and the warnings embedded in Solomon's prayer (2 Chronicles 6:36-39). The land-Sabbath theology connects to Leviticus 25-26 and Jeremiah's seventy-year prophecy (Jeremiah 25:11-12, 29:10). The Cyrus decree connects to Isaiah 44:28-45:1, where Cyrus is called God's 'anointed' (*mashiach*) — the only non-Israelite to receive this title. The final words 'let him go up' (*ya'al*) create an *inclusio* with the opening of the Torah: God created (Genesis 1:1) and now invites his people to ascend (2 Chronicles 36:23). The Hebrew Bible begins with descent (creation, fall, flood, exile to Egypt) and ends with an invitation to rise.*

¹The people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah and made him king in place of his father in Jerusalem. ²Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became king, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. ³The king of Egypt deposed him in Jerusalem and imposed on the land a tribute of a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold. ⁴The king of Egypt made Eliakim his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem and changed his name to Jehoiakim. Neco took his brother Jehoahaz and carried him to Egypt. ⁵Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became king and reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. He did evil in the eyes of the LORD his God. ⁶Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against him, bound him in bronze chains, and took him to Babylon. ⁷Nebuchadnezzar carried off some of the vessels from the house of the LORD to Babylon and placed them in his temple there. ⁸The rest of the acts of Jehoiakim, the abominations he committed, and what was found against him — these are recorded in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah. Jehoiachin his son reigned in his place. ⁹Jehoiachin was eight years old when he became king, and he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem. He did evil in the eyes of the LORD. ¹⁰At the turn of the year, King Nebuchadnezzar sent and brought him to Babylon, along with the precious vessels of the house of the LORD, and made Zedekiah his brother king over Judah and Jerusalem. ¹¹Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. ¹²He did evil in the eyes of the LORD his God. He did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet, who spoke from the mouth of the LORD. ¹³He also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear by God. He stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to the LORD, the God of Israel. ¹⁴Moreover, all the leading priests and the people increased their unfaithfulness, following all the abominations of the nations. They defiled the house of the LORD that he had consecrated in

Jerusalem. ¹⁵The LORD, the God of their fathers, sent word to them persistently through his messengers, because he had compassion on his people and on his dwelling place. ¹⁶But they mocked the messengers of God, despised his words along with scoffed at his prophets, until the wrath of the LORD rose against his people and there was no remedy. ¹⁷He brought up against them the king of the Chaldeans, who killed their young men with the sword in the house of their sanctuary. He had no compassion on young man or young woman, old man or aged. God gave them all into his hand. ¹⁸All the vessels of the house of God, great and small, the treasures of the house of the LORD, the treasures of the king and his officials — all these he brought to Babylon. ¹⁹They burned the house of God, demolished the wall of Jerusalem, burned all its palaces with fire, and destroyed all its precious vessels. ²⁰He carried into exile to Babylon those who survived the sword, and they became servants to him and his sons until the rise of the kingdom of Persia — ²¹to fulfill the word of the LORD spoken through Jeremiah, until the land had enjoyed its Sabbaths. All the days it lay desolate it kept Sabbath, to fulfill seventy years. ²²In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia — to fulfill the word of the LORD spoken through Jeremiah — the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia. He issued a proclamation throughout his entire kingdom, and also put it in writing: ²³'Thus says Cyrus king of Persia: The LORD, the God of heaven, has given me all the kingdoms of the earth, and he has charged me to build him a house in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whoever among you is of all his people — may the LORD his God be with him — let him go up.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The am ha-arets ('people of the land') again exercise their kingmaking role (as in 33:25). Jehoahaz (Yeho'achaz, meaning 'the LORD has seized') is not the eldest son — the people choose him over his older brother Eliakim, suggesting a preference for his political orientation. His reign will last only three months.
2. The regnal formula is bare: sheloshah chodashim ('three months'). No assessment of good or evil is given in the Chronicler's account — the reign is too brief for theological evaluation. The three months (approximately 609 BCE) end when Pharaoh Neco, returning from his campaign, removes him.
3. The verb va-yesirehu ('he removed him') indicates forcible deposition by Pharaoh Neco. The tribute — me'ah kikkar kesef ve-kikkar zahav ('a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold') — is the price of Egypt's dominance. One talent was approximately 34 kilograms (75 pounds). The financial penalty underscores Judah's new status as an Egyptian vassal.
4. The name change from Elyaqim ('God raises up') to Yehoyaqim ('the LORD establishes') is a mark of suzerainty — the overlord renames the vassal, asserting ownership. Neco installs the king of his choosing and deports the people's choice (Jehoahaz) to Egypt, where he will die (Jeremiah 22:11-12). The era of Judean self-determination is over.
5. The standard negative assessment — va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH Elohav ('he did evil in the eyes of the LORD his God') — covers the eleven years (approximately 609-598 BCE) of Jehoiakim's reign. Jeremiah 22:13-19 provides the prophetic indictment: Jehoiakim builds his palace with unpaid labor, sheds innocent blood, and practices oppression. The Chronicler distills all this into the single devastating formula.
6. Nebuchadnezzar (Nevukhadnetsar) arrives as a new overlord, replacing Egyptian dominance with Babylonian. The bronze chains (nechushtayim) recur as a motif of captivity — the same word used for Manasseh (33:11) and later Zedekiah (2 Kings 25:7). Each successive king experiences the same binding, suggesting that Judah's bondage deepens with each reign.
7. The first removal of Temple vessels — mi-kelei beit YHWH ('from the vessels of the house of the LORD') — begins the process of liturgical dismantling that will culminate in total destruction. Placing them be-hekhalo be-Vavel ('in his palace/temple in Babylon') is the supreme insult: the sacred vessels of the LORD's house serve as trophies in a pagan shrine. This echoes the capture of the ark by the Philistines (1 Samuel 4-5).
8. The summary mentions to'avotav ('his abominations') and ha-nimtsa alav ('what was found against him') — cryptic references to charges that the full source text apparently detailed. The transition to Jehoiachin is abrupt — the Chronicler does not record Jehoiakim's death, which occurred under unclear circumstances (see Jeremiah 22:18-19).
9. The age of eight is likely a textual error for eighteen (2 Kings 24:8 reads eighteen). The reign of sheloshah chodashim va-aseret yamim ('three months and ten days') is the most precisely measured short reign in the Bible. Despite its brevity, the Chronicler issues the standard negative verdict: va-ya'as ha-ra be-einei YHWH ('he did evil in the eyes of the LORD').
10. The phrase li-teshuvat ha-shanah ('at the turn/return of the year,' early spring 597 BCE) marks the traditional campaign season. The second deportation of Temple vessels — kelei chemdat beit YHWH ('the precious/desirable vessels of the house of the LORD') — further depletes the sanctuary. Zedekiah (Tsidqiyahu, 'the LORD is my righteousness') is actually Jehoiachin's uncle, not brother — the term 'brother' (achiv) is used loosely for kinsman. He will be the last king.
11. The last king of Judah takes the throne at twenty-one and reigns eleven years (approximately 597-586 BCE). These eleven years are Judah's final period as a kingdom. The siege of Jerusalem begins in the ninth year and ends with the city's destruction in the eleventh.

12. The assessment has two parts: the standard formula (va-ya'as ha-ra) and a specific failure — lo nikhna milifnei Yirmeyahu ha-navi mi-pi YHWH ('he did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet from the mouth of the LORD'). The verb nikhna ('humble himself') is the Chronicler's key term from 2 Chronicles 7:14. Zedekiah has the opportunity to humble himself — Jeremiah speaks to him repeatedly (Jeremiah 37-38) — but refuses. The phrase mi-pi YHWH ('from the mouth of the LORD') confirms Jeremiah's prophetic authority.
13. Zedekiah's rebellion is doubly damning: he breaks his sworn oath (asher hishbi'o be-Elohim, 'who made him swear by God'). The oath was taken in God's name, making the rebellion both political treason and religious perjury (see Ezekiel 17:12-21). The twin metaphors — va-yeqesh et orpo ('he stiffened his neck') and va-ye'ammets et levavo ('he hardened his heart') — describe complete resistance to God. The neck refuses to bow; the heart refuses to turn (mi-shuv, 'from returning/repenting'). This is the anti-teshuvah.
14. The corruption is total: kol sarei ha-kohanim ve-ha-am ('all the leading priests and the people') — leadership and populace together — hirbu lim'ol ma'al ('multiplied unfaithfulness greatly'). The phrase ke-khol to'avot ha-goyim ('according to all the abominations of the nations') echoes the opening condemnation of Manasseh (33:2) and of the pre-conquest Canaanites (Deuteronomy 18:9). The Temple itself is defiled — the house asher hiqdish bi-Yerushalayim ('which he consecrated in Jerusalem') — the divine act of consecration violated by human pollution.
15. The phrase hashkem ve-shalo'ach appears frequently in Jeremiah (7:13, 25; 25:4; 26:5; 29:19; 35:15; 44:4) and may be a deliberate echo of Jeremican language. The Chronicler is borrowing the prophet's own idiom to describe the divine urgency that Jeremiah himself experienced and embodied.
16. The phrase ad le-ein marpeh echoes the language of Jeremiah 8:22 ('Is there no balm in Gilead? Is there no physician there? Why then has the health of my people not been restored?'). The Chronicler answers Jeremiah's anguished question: the remedy existed, but the patient refused it until it was too late.
17. The contrast with verse 15 is crushing: God had compassion (chamal) on his people; the Chaldean king has no compassion (lo chamal). The slaughter takes place be-veit miqdashsham ('in the house of their sanctuary') — the Temple itself becomes a killing ground. Four categories of victims — bachur u-vetulah zaqen ve-yashesh ('young man and young woman, old man and elderly') — indicate indiscriminate killing. The phrase ha-kol natan be-yado ('he gave them all into his hand') attributes the defeat to divine agency: God hands over his own people.
18. The comprehensive plunder: kol kelei veit ha-Elohim ha-gedolim ve-ha-qetanim ('all the vessels of the house of God, great and small'), otsrot beit YHWH ('the treasures of the house of the LORD'), and otsrot ha-melek ve-sarav ('the treasures of the king and his officials'). The word ha-kol ('everything, all') appears twice in two verses (17 and 18) — all the people delivered, all the treasures taken. Nothing and no one remains.
19. Four acts of destruction: va-yisrefu et beit ha-Elohim ('they burned the house of God'), va-yenatsu et chomat Yerushalayim ('they demolished the wall of Jerusalem'), kol armenoteha sarfu va-esh ('all its palaces they burned with fire'), and kol kelei machamaddeha lehashchit ('all its precious vessels they destroyed'). The Temple, the walls, the palaces, the treasures — the physical infrastructure of Judah's civilization is annihilated. The Chronicler compresses the destruction into a single verse with devastating concision.
20. The survivors (ha-she'erit min ha-cheret, 'the remnant from the sword') are deported to Babylon, where they become avadim ('servants, slaves') to the Babylonian king and his dynasty ad melokh malkhut Paras ('until the reign of the kingdom of Persia'). The servitude spans the entire Neo-Babylonian period (586-539 BCE). The phrase 'him and his sons' covers the reigns from Nebuchadnezzar to Nabonidus.
21. The Chronicler provides a theological interpretation of the exile's duration: le-mallot devar YHWH be-fi Yirmeyahu ('to fulfill the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah') — the seventy-year exile predicted in Jeremiah 25:11-12 and 29:10. The land-Sabbath theology — ad ratsatah ha-arets et shabbetoteha ('until the land enjoyed its Sabbaths') — connects to Leviticus 26:34-35, which warned that the land would 'enjoy its Sabbaths' during the exile, making up for the Sabbath years Israel had failed to observe. The personification of the land as needing rest — shabatah ('it kept Sabbath') — portrays the earth itself as a covenant partner that has been denied its rights.
22. The transition from destruction to hope is sudden and total. The phrase he'ir YHWH et ruach Koresh ('the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus') describes divine initiative acting upon a foreign king's heart. Cyrus II of Persia conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. The phrase likhlot devar YHWH be-fi Yirmeyahu ('to fulfill the word of the LORD by the mouth of Jeremiah') repeats from verse 21 — the same prophetic word that guaranteed exile now guarantees return. The double publication — va-ya'aver qol ('he sent out a voice/proclamation') and gam be-mikhtav ('also in writing') — ensures maximum reach.
23. The Cyrus Cylinder, an archaeological artifact from 539 BCE, confirms that Cyrus indeed issued decrees allowing exiled peoples to return to their homelands and rebuild their temples, though it attributes the policy to the Babylonian god Marduk rather than to the LORD. The biblical text claims that YHWH was the true agent behind Cyrus's policy. The phrase ve-ya'al — 'let him go up' — stands as the final word of the Hebrew Bible. In the Jewish liturgical tradition, when this passage is read in synagogue, the congregation repeats verse 23 after the reader finishes, so that the public reading ends not with exile but with return.

1

Ezra

Summary: *In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia, God stirs the king to issue a decree permitting the Jewish exiles to return to Jerusalem and rebuild the Temple. The surrounding population contributes silver, gold, goods, and livestock. Cyrus himself restores the sacred vessels that Nebuchadnezzar had plundered from Solomon's Temple. Sheshbazzar, prince of Judah, receives the inventory and leads the first wave of returnees back to Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The book of Ezra opens by repeating the final two verses of 2 Chronicles almost word for word — a literary stitch connecting the two works. The phrase 'the LORD stirred up the spirit of Cyrus' (he'ir YHWH et ruach Koresh) uses the same verb (he'ir, 'to awaken, arouse') that Isaiah uses when describing God raising up a conqueror from the east (Isaiah 41:2, 25; 45:13). The narrator sees no tension between Cyrus acting as a pagan emperor and God using him as an instrument. Isaiah 45:1 calls Cyrus God's 'anointed' (mashiach) — the only non-Israelite to receive that title. The decree itself is remarkable for its theology: Cyrus attributes his success to 'the LORD, God of heaven' (YHWH Elohei ha-shamayim), a title that appears repeatedly in the Persian-period books. Whether Cyrus actually used YHWH's name or the author shaped the decree in Israelite theological language remains debated, but the Cyrus Cylinder confirms that the historical Cyrus did allow displaced peoples to return and rebuild their temples.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Sheshbazzar and Zerubbabel is one of the book's enduring puzzles. Sheshbazzar is called 'the prince of Judah' (ha-nasi li-Yehudah) here and is credited with laying the Temple foundation in 5:16, yet Zerubbabel appears as the primary leader in chapters 3-5 and is credited with the same foundation-laying in 3:8-10. Some scholars identify them as the same person; others see Sheshbazzar as an older figure (perhaps Shenazzar of 1 Chronicles 3:18) who led the initial return but was soon succeeded by Zerubbabel. We render both figures as presented without harmonizing. The vessel inventory in verses 9-11 does not add up — the individual items total 2,499 but verse 11 gives the sum as 5,400. This discrepancy exists in the Hebrew text itself and likely reflects either a damaged source list or additional uncategorized items.*

Connections: *The return from Babylon fulfills Jeremiah's prophecy of seventy years of exile (Jeremiah 25:11-12; 29:10), which is explicitly cited in verse 1. The stirring of Cyrus echoes Isaiah's designation of him as God's shepherd and anointed (Isaiah 44:28-45:1). The restoration of Temple vessels reverses the desecration described in 2 Kings 25:13-17 and Daniel 5:2-3, where Belshazzar drinks from them at his final feast. The pattern of a foreign king sponsoring Israelite worship will recur with Darius (chapter 6) and Artaxerxes (chapter 7), establishing that*

God works through imperial power to restore his people.

¹In the first year of Cyrus king of Persia — so that the word of the LORD spoken through Jeremiah would be fulfilled — the LORD stirred the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia. He sent a proclamation throughout his entire kingdom, and also put it in writing: ²This is what Cyrus king of Persia says: The LORD, the God of heaven, has given me all the kingdoms of the earth, and he has appointed me to build a house for him in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. ³Whoever among you belongs to his people — may his God be with him — let him go up to Jerusalem in Judah and build the house of the LORD, the God of Israel. He is the God who is in Jerusalem. ⁴And everyone who remains in any place where he is living — let the people of that place support him with silver, gold, goods, and livestock, along with a freewill offering for the house of God in Jerusalem. ⁵Then the heads of the ancestral houses of Judah and Benjamin rose up, along with the priests and the Levites — everyone whose spirit God had stirred — to go up and build the house of the LORD in Jerusalem. ⁶All their neighbors strengthened their hands with articles of silver, gold, goods, livestock, and valuables — in addition to everything given as a freewill offering. ⁷King Cyrus also brought out the vessels of the house of the LORD that Nebuchadnezzar had carried away from Jerusalem and placed in the temple of his gods. ⁸Cyrus king of Persia had them brought out through Mithredath the treasurer, who counted them out to Sheshbazzar the prince of Judah. ⁹This is their inventory: thirty gold basins, one thousand silver basins, ¹⁰thirty gold bowls, four hundred and ten silver bowls of a second kind, and one thousand other vessels. ¹¹The total of the gold and silver vessels was five thousand four hundred. Sheshbazzar brought all of these up when the exiles went up from Babylon to Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *he'ir* ('stirred, awakened') is theologically loaded — it credits God as the unseen agent behind the most powerful ruler on earth. The same verb describes God rousing warriors (Joel 4:7) and raising up deliverers. Cyrus acts freely, yet the narrator insists God is the prime mover.
1. The phrase *li-khelot devar YHWH* ('to complete/fulfill the word of the LORD') refers to Jeremiah's prophecy of a seventy-year exile (Jeremiah 25:11-12; 29:10). The verb *kalah* means 'to finish, bring to completion' — the exile is not merely ending but being brought to its appointed conclusion.
2. Cyrus uses the divine title *YHWH Elohei ha-shamayim* ('the LORD, God of heaven'), which became the standard designation for Israel's God in Persian-period documents. The verb *paqad* ('appointed, charged') carries the weight of a divine commission — the same verb used when God 'visits' his people for judgment or deliverance.
2. The phrase 'which is in Judah' may seem redundant, but it reflects the administrative language of the Persian Empire, specifying the province. Judah (Yehud) was a sub-province of the satrapy Beyond the River.
3. The parenthetical 'he is the God who is in Jerusalem' (*hu ha-Elohim asher bi-Yerushalaim*) could be read two ways: as Cyrus identifying Israel's God with a specific locale (a Persian understanding of territorial deities), or as an Israelite theological assertion that the true God dwells in Jerusalem. The ambiguity may be deliberate — the decree works for both audiences.
4. The verb *nasa* ('lift up, support') means the surrounding population should actively assist the returning exiles — not merely allow them to leave but fund their journey. The word *nedavah* ('freewill offering') is distinct from obligatory offerings; it denotes voluntary generosity. This pattern echoes the Exodus: just as the Egyptians gave silver and gold to the departing Israelites (Exodus 12:35-36), the peoples of Babylon now provision the returning exiles.
5. The verb *he'ir* ('stirred') reappears — the same word used of God stirring Cyrus in verse 1 now describes God stirring the people. The parallel is deliberate: emperor and exiles respond to the same divine impulse. The phrase *rashei ha-avot* ('heads of the fathers/ancestral houses') designates the patriarchal clan leaders who organized the return.
5. Only Judah and Benjamin are named among the returnees, reflecting the composition of the southern kingdom after the northern tribes were deported by Assyria in 722 BCE. Priests and Levites are listed separately, indicating their distinct role in the restoration.
6. The phrase *chizzqu vi-deihem* ('strengthened their hands') is an idiom for material and moral support. The word *migdanot* ('valuables, precious things') appears only here and in Genesis 24:53 and 2 Chronicles 21:3, referring to costly gifts. The Exodus parallel continues: as Egypt's wealth equipped Israel's departure, Babylon's wealth now equips the return.
7. The verb *hotsi* ('brought out') is used twice — once for Cyrus releasing the vessels and once for Nebuchadnezzar taking them. The reversal is precise: what was carried out in plunder is now carried out in restoration. The phrase *beit elohav* ('the house/temple of his gods') likely refers to the temple of Marduk in Babylon. These vessels had been desecrated by Belshazzar at his feast (Daniel 5:2-4); now they return to their proper place.
8. Mithredath (Mitredat) is a Persian name meaning 'gift of Mithra,' reflecting the Zoroastrian deity. The title *gizbar* ('treasurer') is a Persian loanword that entered Hebrew during the exile. Sheshbazzar is called *ha-nasi li-Yehudah* ('the prince/leader of Judah') — *nasi* is a title with deep Israelite

resonance, used of tribal chiefs and later of the Davidic heir in Ezekiel's vision (Ezekiel 44-48).

8. Sheshbazzar's identity remains debated. He may be the Shenazzar of 1 Chronicles 3:18, a son of Jehoiachin and therefore of Davidic lineage. His Babylonian name (possibly Shamash-ab-usur, 'Shamash protect the father') reflects the naming practices of exilic Jews.
9. The word *agartelei* (singular *agartal*) is a rare term for large basins or bowls used in Temple service. The KJV 'chargers' is archaic English for large flat dishes. Note that the KJV includes 'nine and twenty knives' in this verse, but the Hebrew text places the knives (*machalafim*) in verse 9 as well. We follow the verse division of the WLC.
10. The word *keforei* ('bowls') differs from the *agartelei* of verse 9, suggesting a different type or size of vessel. The term *mishniyim* ('of a second sort/secondary') likely indicates a lesser quality or grade of silver. The category *kelim acherim* ('other vessels') is a catch-all for items not individually categorized in the inventory.
11. The itemized count in verses 9-10 totals 2,499, but the stated sum here is 5,400. This numerical discrepancy exists in the Masoretic Text itself and likely reflects either a damaged source document, additional categories not individually listed, or a scribal transmission issue. We render the text as it stands without emendation.
11. The verb *he'elah* ('brought up') uses the same root as *aliyah* — going up to Jerusalem. This 'going up' from Babylon deliberately echoes the original 'going up' from Egypt. The exiles are cast as participants in a second exodus.

2

Summary: *A detailed census of the exiles who returned from Babylon to Jerusalem and Judah under Zerubbabel's leadership. The list organizes returnees by family clans, towns of origin, priestly and Levitical divisions, Temple servants, descendants of Solomon's servants, and those who could not prove their Israelite ancestry. The total count is 42,360 free persons plus 7,337 male and female servants, 200 singers, and extensive livestock. The chapter closes with the leaders contributing gold, silver, and priestly garments toward the rebuilding.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is essentially an ancient census document embedded in narrative — a roster that functioned as legal proof of identity for a displaced people. Every name in this list represents a family that survived seventy years of exile and chose to leave Babylon for an uncertain future in a ruined homeland. The list has a near-parallel in Nehemiah 7:6-73, with numerous small variations in names and numbers that reflect independent transmission of the same source document. The chapter's most theologically charged moment comes in verses 61-63, where families who cannot produce genealogical records are excluded from the priesthood until a priest arises 'with Urim and Thummim' — an acknowledgment that the post-exilic community lacked the full means of divine consultation that the pre-exilic Temple had possessed. The itemized totals of individual groups (29,818) do not match the stated grand total of 42,360, suggesting either that women and children are included in the grand total but not the sub-counts, or that some groups were omitted from the detailed list.*

Translation Friction: *The returnee list poses persistent translation challenges. Many of the place names and personal names have uncertain vowel pointings, and the numbers frequently differ between the Masoretic Text, the Septuagint, and the parallel list in Nehemiah 7. We follow the WLC consistently. The term *Nethinim* (*netinim*, 'those who are given') in verses 43-54 refers to Temple servants of possibly non-Israelite origin — the name suggests they were 'given' or 'dedicated' to Temple service, perhaps descended from the Gibeonites (Joshua 9:27) or other groups assigned menial sanctuary tasks. We render *netinim* as 'Temple servants' to convey function rather than transliterate an opaque term.*

Connections: *The list structure echoes the tribal censuses of Numbers 1-2 and 26, establishing continuity between the wilderness generation and the returning exiles. The mention of Urim and Thummim (verse 63) reaches back to the priestly oracle described in Exodus 28:30 and Numbers 27:21. The parallel list in Nehemiah 7:6-73 serves a different narrative purpose — there it validates the population for Nehemiah's wall-building project. The gifts for the Temple treasury (verses 68-69) echo the freewill offerings for the Tabernacle in Exodus 35:20-29.*

¶These are the people of the province who came up from the captivity of the exile — those whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had deported to Babylon — and returned to Jerusalem and Judah, each to his own town. ¶They came with Zerubbabel, Jeshua, Nehemiah, Seraiah, Reelaiah, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai, Rehum, and Baanah. The count of the

men of the people of Israel: ³The descendants of Parosh: 2,172. ⁴The descendants of Shephatiah: 372. ⁵The descendants of Arah: 775. ⁶The descendants of Pahath-moab (through the line of Jeshua and Joab): 2,812. ⁷The descendants of Elam: 1,254. ⁸The descendants of Zattu: 945. ⁹The descendants of Zaccai: 760. ¹⁰The descendants of Bani: 642. ¹¹The descendants of Bebai: 623. ¹²The descendants of Azgad: 1,222. ¹³The descendants of Adonikam: 666. ¹⁴The descendants of Bigvai: 2,056. ¹⁵The descendants of Adin: 454. ¹⁶The descendants of Ater, through Hezekiah: 98. ¹⁷The descendants of Bezai: 323. ¹⁸The descendants of Jorah: 112. ¹⁹The descendants of Hashum: 223. ²⁰The descendants of Gibbar: 95. ²¹The people of Bethlehem: 123. ²²The people of Netophah: 56. ²³The people of Anathoth: 128. ²⁴The people of Azmaveth: 42. ²⁵The people of Kiriath-arim, Chephirah, and Beeroth: 743. ²⁶The people of Ramah and Geba: 621. ²⁷The people of Michmash: 122. ²⁸The people of Bethel and Ai: 223. ²⁹The people of Nebo: 52. ³⁰The people of Magbish: 156. ³¹The descendants of the other Elam: 1,254. ³²The descendants of Harim: 320. ³³The people of Lod, Hadid, and Ono: 725. ³⁴The people of Jericho: 345. ³⁵The people of Senaah: 3,630. ³⁶The priests: the descendants of Jedaiah, of the house of Jeshua: 973. ³⁷The descendants of Immer: 1,052. ³⁸The descendants of Pashhur: 1,247. ³⁹The descendants of Harim: 1,017. ⁴⁰The Levites: the descendants of Jeshua and Kadmiel, of the line of Hodaviah: 74. ⁴¹The singers: the descendants of Asaph: 128. ⁴²The gatekeepers: the descendants of Shallum, Ater, Talmon, Akkub, Hatita, and Shobai — 139 in all. ⁴³The Temple servants: the descendants of Ziha, Hasupha, Tabbaoth, ⁴⁴Keros, Siaha, Padon, ⁴⁵Lebanah, Hagabah, Akkub, ⁴⁶Hagab, Shalmai, Hanan, ⁴⁷Giddel, Gahar, Reaiah, ⁴⁸Rezin, Nekoda, Gazzam, ⁴⁹Uzza, Paseah, Besai, ⁵⁰Asnah, Meunim, Nephusim, ⁵¹Bakbuk, Hakupha, Harhur, ⁵²Bazluth, Mehida, Harsha, ⁵³Barkos, Sisera, Temah, ⁵⁴Neziah, and Hatipha. ⁵⁵The descendants of Solomon's servants: Sotai, Sophereth, Peruda, ⁵⁶Jaalah, Darkon, Giddel, ⁵⁷Shephatiah, Hattil, Pokereth-hazzebaim, and Ami. ⁵⁸All the Temple servants and descendants of Solomon's servants: 392. ⁵⁹These came up from Tel-melah, Tel-harsha, Cherub, Addan, and Immer, but they could not prove their ancestral house or their lineage — whether they belonged to Israel: ⁶⁰The descendants of Delaiah, Tobiah, and Nekoda: 652. ⁶¹And from among the priests: the descendants of Hobaiah, Hakkoz, and Barzillai — who had married a daughter of Barzillai the Gileadite and was called by their name. ⁶²These searched for their genealogical records but could not find them, so they were excluded from the priesthood as unclean. ⁶³The governor told them they must not eat of the most holy food until a priest should arise with the Urim and Thummim. ⁶⁴The entire assembly together numbered 42,360, ⁶⁵not counting their male and female servants, who numbered 7,337. They also had 200 male and female singers. ⁶⁶Their horses: 736. Their mules: 245. ⁶⁷Their camels: 435. Their donkeys: 6,720. ⁶⁸When they arrived at the house of the LORD in Jerusalem, some of the heads of the ancestral houses gave freewill offerings for the house of God, to restore it on its site. ⁶⁹According to their ability they gave to the treasury for the work: 61,000 gold darics, 5,000 silver minas, and 100 priestly garments. ⁷⁰The priests, the Levites, some of the people, the singers, the gatekeepers, and the Temple servants settled in their towns — and all Israel in their towns.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term ha-medinah ('the province') refers to the Persian administrative district of Yehud (Judah), not to a vague 'region.' The returnees are identified by their provincial status under Persian governance. The phrase shevi ha-golah ('the captivity of the exile') is a double expression emphasizing both the act of deportation and the ongoing condition of displacement.
1. The phrase ish le-iro ('each to his town') implies that the returnees reclaimed ancestral lands and towns — a restoration of the tribal inheritance system disrupted by the exile.
2. Eleven leaders are named, heading the return. Zerubbabel (Babylonian: Zer-Babili, 'seed of Babylon') is of Davidic lineage (1 Chronicles 3:19). Jeshua (Yeshua) is the high priest who will partner with Zerubbabel in rebuilding. The Nehemiah here is not the later cupbearer-governor; the Mordecai is not the hero of Esther. These are common names in the post-exilic community.
2. The parallel list in Nehemiah 7:7 has twelve leaders with slightly different names (Nahamani appears, Reelaiah becomes Raamiah), possibly reflecting the ideal of twelve leaders for twelve tribes.
3. The name Par'osh means 'flea' — a humble name that was nonetheless borne by a large and prominent clan. The census begins with family-based groupings (benei, 'descendants of'), the primary organizational unit for post-exilic Jewish identity.
4. Shephatiah means 'the LORD has judged' — a theophoric name affirming divine justice even in exile.

5. The name Arach may mean 'wanderer' or 'wild ox.' Nehemiah 7:10 gives 652 for this clan — one of many numerical variations between the two lists.
6. Pahath-moab literally means 'governor of Moab,' suggesting an ancestor held authority over the Moabite region during the monarchy. This large clan is further divided by sub-lineages — Jeshua and Joab — indicating its size required subdivision for administrative purposes.
7. This Elam is a clan name, not a reference to the region of Elam east of Babylon. The identical number appears in Nehemiah 7:12, showing consistent transmission for this particular entry.
8. Nehemiah 7:13 records 845 for this clan. Such variations — typically within a range of 100 — are characteristic of independently transmitted census copies.
9. The name Zakkai means 'pure' or 'innocent.' The number matches Nehemiah 7:14 exactly.
10. The parallel in Nehemiah 7:15 reads 'Binnui' with 648 — a textual variant in both name and number.
11. Nehemiah 7:16 gives 628 for this clan.
12. Azgad means 'Gad is strong' — a theophoric name invoking the deity or the tribe of Gad. Nehemiah 7:17 gives 2,322, a difference of 1,100 — one of the largest discrepancies between the two lists.
13. Adonikam means 'my lord has risen.' Nehemiah 7:18 records 667. The number 666 carries no symbolic weight in the Hebrew Bible; the association with the 'number of the beast' is a much later Christian reading from Revelation 13:18.
14. Bigvai is a Persian name (possibly Bagavahya, 'gift of God' in Old Persian), reflecting the cultural influence of the exile. Nehemiah 7:19 gives 2,067.
15. Adin means 'luxurious' or 'delicate.' Nehemiah 7:20 gives 655.
16. The qualifying phrase 'through Hezekiah' (li-Chizkiyyah) distinguishes this Ater clan from others of the same name. Whether this Hezekiah is the famous king or a later figure is uncertain.
17. Nehemiah 7:23 gives 324 — a difference of one.
18. In Nehemiah 7:24 this name appears as Hariph. The variation likely reflects alternate clan designations or a scribal difference in the source lists.
19. Nehemiah 7:22 gives 328 for this clan.
20. In Nehemiah 7:25 this appears as 'Gibeon' — suggesting the name refers to the town of Gibeon and Gibbar is a personal name derived from it. This marks a transitional point in the list between family-based and location-based groupings.
21. The list shifts here from family names to town names, indicating returnees grouped by ancestral place of residence. Bethlehem ('house of bread'), the town of David, contributed a modest contingent. In Nehemiah 7:26 Bethlehem is combined with Netophah for a total of 188.
22. Netophah was a village near Bethlehem. Some of David's warriors came from Netophah (2 Samuel 23:28-29). The term shifts from benei ('descendants of') to anshei ('men of'), marking the geographic section of the list.
23. Anathoth was Jeremiah's hometown (Jeremiah 1:1) — a priestly city in Benjamin about three miles north of Jerusalem. The prophet who foretold the return came from a town now sending its descendants back.
24. Azmaveth (also called Beth-azmaveth in Nehemiah 7:28) means 'death is strong' — a name reflecting the harsh realities of ancient life.
25. Three Gibeonite cities are grouped together. These were the towns that deceived Joshua into making a treaty (Joshua 9). Their inclusion in the returnee list shows they had been absorbed into Judah's population. Kiriath-arim is a shortened form of Kiriath-jearim, where the ark rested for twenty years (1 Samuel 7:1-2).
26. Ramah ('height') and Geba ('hill') were Benjaminite towns north of Jerusalem. Ramah was where the exiles were gathered before deportation (Jeremiah 40:1), making the return of its inhabitants a pointed reversal.
27. Michmash was the site of Jonathan's daring raid against the Philistines (1 Samuel 13-14). It sat on the strategic pass north of Jerusalem.
28. Bethel ('house of God') and Ai were paired since the conquest narrative (Joshua 7-8). Bethel was where Jacob saw the heavenly stairway (Genesis 28:10-19) and later became a site of unauthorized worship under Jeroboam (1 Kings 12:29). Its returnees now reintegrate into the Judahite community.
29. This Nebo is a Judahite town, not Mount Nebo in Moab. The name coincidentally matches the Babylonian deity Nabu.
30. Magbish does not appear in the parallel list in Nehemiah 7. Its location is uncertain — possibly a small settlement that was later absorbed into another district.
31. This is a different Elam clan from verse 7, distinguished by the qualifier acher ('other'). Remarkably, both Elam groups have exactly the same count: 1,254. Whether this reflects coincidence or a scribal duplication remains uncertain.
32. Harim means 'consecrated' or 'flat-nosed.' A priestly family of the same name appears in verse 39, but this entry is in the lay section of the list.
33. These three towns lay in the coastal plain west of Jerusalem, in traditional Benjaminite territory. Lod (later Lydda, modern Lod/Lydda) would become the site where Peter healed Aeneas (Acts 9:32-35).

34. Jericho, the first city conquered under Joshua (Joshua 6), was resettled despite the curse pronounced on its rebuilder (Joshua 6:26; fulfilled in 1 Kings 16:34). By the post-exilic period the curse had apparently spent its force.
35. Senaah is the largest single contingent in the list. Nehemiah 7:38 gives 3,930. The town's location is uncertain; some identify it with Magdal-senna near Jericho. Its size may indicate it served as a regional center.
36. The priestly section begins here. Jedaiah ('the LORD has known') heads the first priestly course. The phrase 'of the house of Jeshua' links this priestly family to the high-priestly line — Jeshua ben Jozadak was the first post-exilic high priest.
37. Immer was the sixteenth priestly course according to 1 Chronicles 24:14. Jeremiah's antagonist Pashhur was 'son of Immer' (Jeremiah 20:1).
38. Pashhur is a priestly clan name. The Pashhur who persecuted Jeremiah (Jeremiah 20:1-6) bore this same name. The large number shows that the priestly families remained intact through the exile.
39. This is the priestly clan of Harim, distinct from the lay clan in verse 32. The total of four priestly families is 4,289 — a substantial proportion of the 42,360 total returnees, underscoring the priestly character of the restoration.
40. The strikingly small number of Levites (74) compared to priests (4,289) is one of the chapter's most notable features. It will become a recurring problem — Ezra himself will struggle to recruit Levites for the second return (8:15-20). The Levites' reluctance to return may reflect their diminished status in the post-exilic period, where priestly families held greater power.
41. Asaph was one of the chief musicians appointed by David (1 Chronicles 16:5). The singers (meshorerim) are listed separately from the Levites, though Chronicles classifies them as a Levitical subdivision. Several psalms bear Asaph's name (Psalms 50, 73-83).
42. The gatekeepers (sho'arim) controlled access to the Temple precincts, a role requiring both physical presence and ritual purity. Six families are named. Like the singers, gatekeepers are categorized separately from the general Levites, though their function was Levitical.
43. The Nethinim (netinim, literally 'given ones') were non-priestly Temple workers assigned to support the Levites. The term suggests they were originally 'given' to the sanctuary — perhaps descended from war captives or foreign groups dedicated to menial Temple service, as the Gibeonites were in Joshua 9:27. Their names often have non-Israelite etymologies.
44. The list continues with Temple servant families. These names lack clear Hebrew etymologies, supporting the theory of non-Israelite ancestry for many of these families.
45. Lebanah means 'white/moon'; Hagabah means 'locust' — common Semitic naming patterns drawn from nature.
46. Hagab also means 'locust,' closely related to Hagabah in the previous verse. Hanan means 'gracious.'
47. Giddel means 'God has made great'; Reaiah means 'the LORD has seen.'
48. Rezin is also the name of the last Aramean king of Damascus (2 Kings 16:5-9), though this is a different person entirely.
49. Paseah means 'limping' — the same root as Pesach ('Passover'), related to the idea of passing/limping over.
50. Meunim may connect this family to the Meunites, a people from the region of Ma'on in Edom (2 Chronicles 26:7). If so, this Temple servant family descends from foreign captives dedicated to sanctuary service.
51. Bakbuk is onomatopoeic — it imitates the gurgling sound of a bottle being emptied.
52. Harsha means 'craftsman' or 'mute' — the same root as the word for skilled artisan work.
53. The name Sisera is the same as the Canaanite general defeated by Deborah and Barak (Judges 4-5). A Temple servant family bearing this name may descend from captives taken after that battle, though the connection is speculative.
54. This concludes the Temple servant list — 35 families in all (verses 43-54). No total count is given for the Temple servants, unlike the priests, Levites, singers, and gatekeepers.
55. A new category appears: avdei Shelomoh ('servants of Solomon'). These were likely descendants of the forced laborers Solomon conscripted from the remaining Canaanite populations (1 Kings 9:20-21). By the post-exilic period they functioned alongside the Temple servants as a recognized class within the Temple workforce.
56. Darkon may be a Persian-influenced name. Giddel appears also among the Temple servants (verse 47) — the name was shared across different service categories.
57. Pokereth-hazzebaim means 'binder of gazelles' — possibly a hereditary occupational name for a family that trapped or raised gazelles, perhaps for royal kitchens or sacrificial purposes.
58. The two categories — Temple servants and Solomon's servants — are combined for a single total. These 392 individuals represent the entire non-Levitical support staff of the Temple returning from exile.
59. The list now turns to those whose genealogical records were lost or incomplete during the exile. The place names (Tel-melah, 'mound of salt'; Tel-harsha, 'mound of the craftsman') are Babylonian settlement sites where exiles had lived. The inability to prove *beit avotam* ('their father's house') was a serious legal disability — identity in post-exilic Judah required documented ancestry.

59. This section reveals the anxiety of a community reconstituting itself after catastrophic displacement. Who counts as Israel? The question will intensify in chapters 9-10.
60. These 652 people claimed Israelite identity but lacked documentation. Their theophoric names (Delaiah, 'the LORD has drawn up'; Tobiah, 'the LORD is good') suggest genuine Israelite heritage, yet administrative proof was required.
61. The case of the priestly Barzillai clan is particularly telling. The ancestor had married into the prominent Gileadite family of Barzillai (the same Barzillai who aided David, 2 Samuel 17:27-29; 19:31-40) and adopted his wife's family name — an unusual move that suggests the Barzillai name carried greater prestige. But by taking a non-priestly name, the family lost its documented connection to the priestly lineage.
62. The verb *go'alu* ('were excluded as polluted/defiled') is harsh — it comes from the root *ga'al* meaning 'to defile, pollute.' Without documented priestly lineage, these families were treated as ritually disqualified. The priesthood required verifiable descent from Aaron; undocumented claims were not accepted, regardless of how genuine they might have been.
63. The *tirshata* is a Persian title for the governor (possibly from a root meaning 'revered one'). The ruling is both merciful and sobering: the disputed priests are not permanently expelled but suspended until a priest arises who can consult the Urim and Thummim — the oracular device stored in the high priest's breastpiece (Exodus 28:30). Since no post-exilic text records the Urim and Thummim being used again, the suspension was effectively permanent. The community acknowledged a gap in its access to divine revelation.
64. The grand total of 42,360 does not match the sum of the individual entries, which totals approximately 29,818. The discrepancy is likely because the sub-totals count only adult males of specific categories, while the grand total may include women, children, or unlisted groups. Both Ezra and Nehemiah give the same grand total (42,360), confirming it comes from the source document.
65. The 7,337 servants (*avadim va-amahot*) are listed separately from the 42,360 free Israelites, reflecting the social stratification of the community. The 200 singers (*meshorerim u-meshorerot*) are secular musicians, distinct from the Levitical singers of verse 41 — these performed at celebrations, funerals, and other social occasions.
66. The livestock inventory indicates substantial wealth among the returnees. Horses and mules were expensive animals — their presence shows this was not a destitute population but one with considerable resources.
67. The high number of donkeys (6,720) compared to camels (435) reflects practical transportation needs — donkeys were the primary pack animal for the journey across the Fertile Crescent. The camel count suggests long-distance trade connections.
68. The verb *hitnadvu* ('gave freely, offered voluntarily') from the root *nadav* indicates spontaneous, uncoerced generosity. The phrase *le-ha'amido al mekhono* ('to establish it on its foundation/site') shows that the goal was to rebuild the Temple on its exact original location — continuity with Solomon's Temple mattered.
69. The *darkemonim* are gold darics — Persian coins bearing the image of the king, among the first standardized gold coins in history. The use of Persian currency reflects the economic integration of the exilic community. A *mina* (*maneh*) was a unit of weight equal to approximately 50 shekels (about 571 grams). The 100 priestly garments (*kotnot kohanim*) were essential for resuming Temple worship — priests could not serve without proper vestments.
70. The chapter closes with a sweeping summary: every group — priestly, Levitical, lay, and service — found its place. The final phrase *ve-khol Yisrael be-areiheim* ('and all Israel in their towns') carries enormous weight. After seventy years of exile, the community has reconstituted itself on its ancestral land. The word *yashvu* ('they settled, dwelt') implies permanence — not a temporary camp but a restored habitation.

3

Summary: *In the seventh month, the returned exiles gather in Jerusalem. Jeshua the priest and Zerubbabel rebuild the altar on its original foundation and resume the daily burnt offerings, the Festival of Booths, and the regular sacrificial calendar — all before the Temple itself is rebuilt. In the second year, they lay the foundation of the new Temple with Levitical musicians leading worship. The people erupt in praise, but the older generation who remember Solomon's Temple weep loudly at the sight. The sound of weeping and the sound of joy are indistinguishable from a distance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological center of this chapter is verse 12: the old men who had seen the first Temple weep when the foundation of the second is laid. This is not nostalgia — it is grief born of comparison. Haggai 2:3 confirms that the second Temple appeared as 'nothing' compared to Solomon's. The weeping acknowledges genuine loss: the glory of the first Temple, the ark of the covenant (now gone), and the unbroken continuity of Davidic worship. Yet the narrator refuses to separate the weeping from the joy — verse 13 says 'the people could not distinguish the sound of the shout of joy from the sound of the weeping.' The two responses are not competing but coexisting, and the text honors both without declaring either inappropriate. This is one of the most emotionally*

complex moments in the Hebrew Bible.

Translation Friction: *The chronology between Ezra 3 and the parallel accounts in Haggai and Zechariah creates tension. Ezra 3 places the foundation-laying in the second year of the return (approximately 536 BCE), but Haggai 1:1-2 (dated to 520 BCE) describes the Temple as not yet rebuilt and implies the foundation work had stalled. Either the initial foundation was laid and then abandoned for sixteen years, or the accounts describe different stages of the same process. We render Ezra 3 as it stands, trusting the narrator's chronological framework. The phrase 'according to the prescription of David king of Israel' in verse 10 raises the question of how much of the pre-exilic liturgical tradition survived the exile — enough, apparently, for the returnees to reconstruct Davidic worship patterns.*

Connections: *The rebuilding of the altar before the Temple mirrors the patriarchal pattern: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob built altars before any permanent sanctuary existed (Genesis 12:7; 26:25; 33:20). The seventh-month gathering echoes the dedication of Solomon's Temple during the Festival of Booths (1 Kings 8:2). The Levitical praise with cymbals and trumpets follows the pattern David established (1 Chronicles 16:4-6; 25:1-7). The antiphonal chant 'For he is good, for his faithful love endures forever toward Israel' (verse 11) is the signature refrain of Israelite worship, appearing in Psalms 106:1; 107:1; 118:1; 136:1 and at the dedication of Solomon's Temple (2 Chronicles 5:13).*

¹When the seventh month arrived and the Israelites were settled in their towns, the people assembled as one in Jerusalem. ²Then Jeshua son of Jozadak and his fellow priests, along with Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and his kinsmen, rose up and built the altar of the God of Israel to offer burnt offerings on it, as prescribed in the Law of Moses the man of God. ³They set the altar on its foundation, for dread of the surrounding peoples was upon them, and they offered burnt offerings on it to the LORD — burnt offerings morning and evening. ⁴They observed the Festival of Booths as prescribed, offering the daily burnt offerings in their proper number according to the requirement for each day. ⁵And after that, the regular burnt offering, the new moon offerings, all the appointed festivals of the LORD that are holy, and every freewill offering to the LORD. ⁶From the first day of the seventh month they began offering burnt offerings to the LORD, though the foundation of the LORD's Temple had not yet been laid. ⁷They gave silver to the stonecutters and craftsmen, and food, drink, and oil to the Sidonians and Tyrians to bring cedar logs from Lebanon by sea to Joppa, as authorized by Cyrus king of Persia. ⁸In the second year after their arrival at the house of God in Jerusalem, in the second month, Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, Jeshua son of Jozadak, and the rest of their kinsmen — the priests, the Levites, and all who had come from the exile to Jerusalem — began the work. They appointed Levites twenty years old and older to supervise the construction of the house of the LORD. ⁹Jeshua with his sons and kinsmen, Kadmiel with his sons — the descendants of Hodaviah — stood together to supervise the workers in the house of God, along with the sons of Henadad and their sons and kinsmen, the Levites. ¹⁰When the builders laid the foundation of the LORD's Temple, the priests stood in their vestments with trumpets, and the Levites — the sons of Asaph — with cymbals, to praise the LORD according to the directions of David king of Israel. ¹¹They sang responsively in praise and thanksgiving to the LORD: 'For he is good, for his faithful love toward Israel endures forever.' And all the people raised a great shout of praise to the LORD because the foundation of the house of the LORD had been laid. ¹²But many of the priests, Levites, and heads of ancestral houses — the old men who had seen the first house — wept loudly when they saw the foundation of this house being laid before their eyes. And many others raised their voices in shouts of joy. ¹³No one could distinguish the sound of the joyful shout from the sound of the weeping, because the people were shouting so loudly that the sound carried far away.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The seventh month (Tishrei) was the most sacred month in the Israelite calendar, containing the Feast of Trumpets (1st), the Day of Atonement (10th), and the Festival of Booths (15th-21st). The phrase *ke-ish echad* ('as one man') emphasizes complete unity — the same expression used of Israel's assembly at Mizpah (Judges 20:1) and at Sinai in rabbinic tradition.
2. Jeshua (Yeshua, a shortened form of Yehoshua/Joshua) son of Jozadak was the first post-exilic high priest, descended from the last pre-exilic high priest Seraiah, who was executed by Nebuchadnezzar (2 Kings 25:18-21). Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel was of Davidic lineage. Together, the priestly and royal lines cooperate in the restoration.

2. The phrase *be-torat Mosheh ish ha-Elohim* ('in the Law of Moses the man of God') establishes Torah as the constitutional document of the restored community. The altar is built according to written instruction, not oral tradition or innovation.
3. The phrase *ki be-eimah aleihem* ('for dread was upon them') reveals the precarious situation: the returnees rebuilt the altar not despite their fear but perhaps because of it — worship was their response to threat. The morning and evening burnt offerings (*olot la-boqer ve-la-arev*) resumed the *tamid*, the perpetual offering commanded in Exodus 29:38-42, which had ceased when the Temple was destroyed.
4. The Festival of Booths (*Sukkot*) required a complex sacrificial schedule: Numbers 29:12-38 prescribes a decreasing sequence from thirteen bulls on the first day down to seven on the seventh, plus rams, lambs, and grain offerings. The phrase *devar yom be-yomo* ('the matter of each day in its day') indicates meticulous observance of this detailed calendar.
5. The *tamid* ('perpetual/regular offering') resumed daily — morning and evening — as the backbone of Temple worship. The new moon offerings (Numbers 28:11-15) and festival calendar were layered on top. The freewill offerings (*nedavah*) allowed individual Israelites to express personal devotion beyond the required schedule. The entire sacrificial system was being reconstituted from the ground up.
6. The first day of the seventh month is the Feast of Trumpets (later *Rosh Hashanah*). The narrator emphasizes a striking fact: sacrificial worship resumed on an open-air altar before the Temple existed. The altar was sufficient for worship; the building was secondary to the act of offering. This theological priority — sacrifice before structure — echoes the patriarchal period.
7. The arrangement mirrors Solomon's Temple construction: Solomon also imported Lebanese cedar through Phoenician contractors via the port of Joppa (2 Chronicles 2:15-16). The returnees are deliberately replicating the pattern of the first Temple. The term *rishyon* ('authorization, permit') is a Persian loanword reflecting the bureaucratic apparatus of the empire — Cyrus's decree provided the legal framework for these expenditures.
8. The second month (*Iyyar*, roughly April-May) was also when Solomon began building the first Temple (1 Kings 6:1) — another deliberate parallel. The age threshold of twenty for Levitical supervisors is lower than the thirty specified in Numbers 4:3 but matches the age David set in 1 Chronicles 23:24-27. The post-exilic community adapted the threshold to meet the reality of limited Levitical manpower.
9. The 'sons of Judah' (*benei Yehudah*) here is likely a variant spelling of 'Hodaviah' (see 2:40), not the tribe of Judah — these are Levitical supervisors, not lay tribal members. *Henadad* means 'favor of Hadad,' with Hadad being a storm deity — another example of a name reflecting the cultural environment of the exile.
10. The phrase *al yedei David melekh Yisrael* ('by the hands/direction of David king of Israel') credits David with establishing the liturgical patterns now being revived. The *chatsotsrot* (silver trumpets) were priestly instruments (Numbers 10:1-10); the *metsiltayim* (cymbals) were Levitical. The distinction between priestly and Levitical instruments was carefully maintained.
11. The antiphonal refrain *ki tov ki le-olam chasdo al Yisrael* ('for he is good, for his faithful love toward Israel is forever') is Israel's signature doxology. It appears at the dedication of Solomon's Temple (2 Chronicles 5:13), in multiple psalms (106:1; 107:1; 118:1-4; 136 *passim*), and at Jehoshaphat's battle (2 Chronicles 20:21). By singing this ancient refrain, the returnees stitch themselves into the continuum of Israelite worship.
11. The verb *he'iru teru'ah gedolah* ('raised a great shout') uses *teru'ah*, the term for the war cry, the trumpet blast, and the acclamation of a king. This is not polite applause — it is the full-throated roar of a people witnessing their God's faithfulness.
12. This is the emotional climax of the chapter. The old men (*ha-zeqenim*) who had seen Solomon's Temple as children — they would have been at least seventy years old by this point — look at the new foundation and weep. The weeping is not criticized; neither is the joy. The text presents both responses as legitimate. Haggai 2:3 confirms the disparity: 'Who among you saw this house in its former glory? How does it look to you now? Is it not as nothing in your eyes?'
12. The Hebrew places the weeping and the joy in the same sentence, grammatically intertwined — *bokhim be-qol gadol* ('weeping with a loud voice') and *bi-teru'ah be-simchah le-harim qol* ('in joyful shouting lifting the voice'). The sounds are simultaneous and inseparable.
13. The narrator's observation is devastating in its simplicity: *ein ha-am makkirim* ('the people could not distinguish'). Joy and grief produced the same volume, the same intensity, the same overwhelming sound. From a distance, restoration and loss were acoustically identical. This is not a failure of perception but a statement about the nature of return — it is never pure joy, and the grief is never despair. The verb *nishma* ('was heard') in its passive form means the sound reached far without the hearers being able to parse it. The ambiguity is the point.

4

Summary: *The adversaries of Judah and Benjamin approach Zerubbabel offering to help rebuild the Temple, claiming they have worshipped the same God since the Assyrian resettlement. Zerubbabel refuses. The opponents then hire counselors to frustrate the building throughout the reigns of Cyrus and Darius. The narrative jumps forward to the reign of Artaxerxes, where Rehum and Shimshai write an Aramaic letter warning the king that Jerusalem has a history of rebellion. Artaxerxes orders the work stopped, and the rebuilding ceases until the second year of Darius.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most significant linguistic transitions in the Hebrew Bible. At verse 8 the text shifts from Hebrew to Aramaic — the diplomatic language of the Persian Empire — and remains in Aramaic through 6:18. The shift is not accidental: the narrator switches to Aramaic precisely when quoting official Persian correspondence, as if presenting the documents in their original administrative language. The chapter also performs a complex chronological compression, jumping from the early opposition under Cyrus (verses 1-5) forward to the reigns of Xerxes and Artaxerxes (verses 6-23) before returning to the Cyrus-Darius period in verse 24. The opponents' letter to Artaxerxes is a masterpiece of political manipulation — they frame the rebuilding as sedition, invoke Jerusalem's rebellious history, and threaten the king's tax revenue, knowing exactly which arguments will move a Persian bureaucrat.*

Translation Friction: *The chronological structure of this chapter is the most debated issue in Ezra scholarship. Verses 6-23 describe opposition during the reigns of Ahasuerus (Xerxes I, 486-465 BCE) and Artaxerxes I (465-424 BCE), but the Temple was completed in 515 BCE under Darius I. The opposition in verses 6-23 therefore concerns the city walls, not the Temple — the narrator has grouped all opposition episodes thematically rather than chronologically. We render the text sequentially as the narrator presents it, noting the chronological shift. The identity of the 'adversaries' in verse 1 is also contested: the narrator calls them people resettled by Esarhaddon of Assyria, linking them to the mixed-religion population of 2 Kings 17:24-41. Their offer to help may have been genuine, but Zerubbabel's refusal reflects the returnees' determination to maintain ethnic and religious boundaries.*

Connections: *The Assyrian resettlement background (verse 2) reaches back to 2 Kings 17:24-33, where foreign peoples brought to Samaria by the Assyrians adopted a syncretistic form of YHWH worship. Zerubbabel's refusal anticipates the stricter boundary-maintenance of chapters 9-10. The appeal to Jerusalem's rebellious history (verse 15) references the revolts of Hezekiah against Assyria (2 Kings 18:7), Jehoiakim against Babylon (2 Kings 24:1), and Zedekiah against Babylon (2 Kings 24:20). The Aramaic correspondence genre will recur in chapters 5-6 and 7, establishing a pattern of imperial letters that shape the community's fate.*

¹When the adversaries of Judah and Benjamin heard that the returned exiles were building a Temple to the LORD, the God of Israel, ²they approached Zerubbabel and the heads of the ancestral houses and said to them, 'Let us build with you, for we seek your God just as you do. We have been sacrificing to him since the days of Esarhaddon king of Assyria, who brought us here.' ³But Zerubbabel, Jeshua, and the rest of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel said to them, 'You have no part with us in building a house to our God. We alone will build for the LORD, the God of Israel, as King Cyrus king of Persia commanded us.' ⁴Then the people of the land set about weakening the hands of the people of Judah and intimidating them from building. ⁵They hired advisors against them to frustrate their plans throughout the reign of Cyrus king of Persia and into the reign of Darius king of Persia. ⁶In the reign of Ahasuerus, at the beginning of his reign, they wrote an accusation against the inhabitants of Judah and Jerusalem. ⁷In the days of Artaxerxes, Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their associates wrote to Artaxerxes king of Persia. The letter was written in Aramaic script and composed in the Aramaic language. ⁸Rehum the royal deputy and Shimshai the secretary wrote a letter against Jerusalem to King Artaxerxes as follows: ⁹Then Rehum the royal deputy, Shimshai the secretary, and the rest of their associates — the judges, the envoys, the officials, the Persians, the people of Erech, the Babylonians, the people of Susa (that is, the Elamites), ¹⁰and the rest of the peoples whom the great and noble Osnappar deported and settled in the city of Samaria and the rest of the province Beyond the River — and so forth. ¹¹This is a copy of the letter they sent to him: 'To King Artaxerxes: Your servants, the men of the

province Beyond the River — greetings. ¹²Let the king be informed that the Jews who came up from you to us have gone to Jerusalem. They are rebuilding that rebellious and wicked city; they are completing the walls and repairing the foundations. ¹³Let the king know that if this city is rebuilt and its walls completed, they will not pay tribute, tax, or toll, and the royal revenue will suffer loss. ¹⁴Now since we eat the salt of the palace and it is not fitting for us to witness the king's dishonor, we have sent to inform the king, ¹⁵so that a search may be made in the book of records of your predecessors. You will find in the book of records and learn that this city is a rebellious city, harmful to kings and provinces, and that sedition has been stirred within it from ancient times. That is why this city was destroyed. ¹⁶We inform the king that if this city is rebuilt and its walls completed, you will have no portion left in the province Beyond the River. ¹⁷The king sent this reply: 'To Rehum the royal deputy, Shimshai the secretary, and the rest of their associates who live in Samaria and the rest of the province Beyond the River — greetings, and furthermore: ¹⁸The letter you sent to us has been read and translated in my presence. ¹⁹I issued an order and a search was made. It was found that this city has from ancient times risen up against kings, and that rebellion and sedition have been carried out within it. ²⁰Mighty kings have ruled over Jerusalem with authority over the entire province Beyond the River, and tribute, tax, and toll were paid to them. ²¹Now issue an order to make these men stop. This city is not to be rebuilt until I issue a further decree. ²²Be careful not to be negligent in this matter. Why should damage increase to the detriment of the king?' ²³As soon as the copy of King Artaxerxes' letter was read before Rehum, Shimshai the secretary, and their associates, they went in haste to Jerusalem and forced the Jews to stop by armed power. ²⁴At that time the work on the house of God in Jerusalem stopped. It remained halted until the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator immediately labels these people tsarei Yehudah u-Vinyamin ('adversaries of Judah and Benjamin') — the reader is told their character before hearing their words. This editorial framing shapes how we read their offer in verse 2. The term tsarim (from tsarar, 'to bind, press, be hostile') leaves no ambiguity about the narrator's assessment.
2. Esarhaddon (681-669 BCE) continued the Assyrian policy of population transfer begun by Sargon II after the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE (2 Kings 17:24). These settlers had adopted YHWH worship — but according to 2 Kings 17:33, they 'feared the LORD and also served their own gods.' Their claim 'we seek your God as you do' may have been sincere from their perspective, but the returnees understood it as syncretism, not genuine covenant commitment.
2. The verb nidrosh ('we seek/inquire of') is significant — darash implies deliberate, sustained seeking of God, the same verb used in 2 Chronicles 15:2 ('if you seek him, he will be found by you'). The opponents use theologically correct vocabulary.
3. The refusal is absolute: lo lakhem valanu ('not for you and for us'). The justification is Cyrus's decree, which authorized specifically the returned exiles to build. Zerubbabel reframes the question politically — this is not merely a religious disagreement but a matter of imperial authorization. The phrase anachnu yachad ('we ourselves together') emphasizes the exclusivity of the building community.
4. The phrase am ha-arets ('people of the land') here refers to the non-exilic population — those who had remained in the land during the exile or been resettled there. The idiom merappim yedei ('weakening the hands of') describes systematic demoralization, the same expression used of those who undermined Jerusalem's defense before the Babylonian siege (Jeremiah 38:4). The verb mevahalim ('terrifying, alarming') adds a note of active intimidation beyond mere discouragement.
5. The word sokherim ('hiring') indicates a sustained, funded campaign — these were paid political operatives working within the Persian bureaucratic system to block the Jews' building permit. The phrase kol yemei Koresh ('all the days of Cyrus') means the opposition persisted from the initial return (538 BCE) through the early reign of Darius I (522 BCE), roughly sixteen years of bureaucratic warfare.
6. Ahasuerus is the Hebrew form of Xerxes (Xerxes I, 486-465 BCE). The word sitnah ('accusation, hostility') shares the same root as satan ('adversary, accuser'). This verse and the next jump forward chronologically to show that opposition continued across multiple reigns. The content of this specific accusation is not preserved — only the fact of its filing.
7. This verse is the hinge point: it announces that the following letter is in Aramaic, and from verse 8 onward the biblical text itself shifts to Aramaic. The phrase katurv Aramit u-meturgam Aramit ('written in Aramaic and translated/composed in Aramaic') may mean 'written in Aramaic script and in the Aramaic language' — distinguishing script from language, since Aramaic script was used for multiple languages in the Persian period.
7. Bishlam may be a name or the Aramaic phrase be-shelam ('in peace, with greetings') — a salutation mistaken for a personal name. Tabeel means 'God is good' in Aramaic.
8. The text switches to Aramaic here and will remain in Aramaic through 6:18. Rehum's title be'el te'em ('lord of decree/command') designates a high-ranking provincial official — a royal commissioner or deputy governor. Shimshai the safra ('scribe, secretary') was the professional letter-writer.

The Aramaic *iggera chada* ('one letter') is the standard term for an official dispatch.

9. The list of co-signers represents a coalition of peoples resettled in Samaria from across the Assyrian and Persian empires. Many of these terms are titles rather than ethnic names: *dinaye* ('judges'), *afarsat-khaye* ('envoys' or 'investigators'). The Babylonians, Susanians (from Susa, the Persian capital), and Elamites represent the diverse population that the Assyrians had transplanted into the former northern kingdom.
10. Osnappar (Asnappar) is almost certainly Ashurbanipal (669–631 BCE), the last great Assyrian king. The Aramaic form is a corruption of the Akkadian Ashur-bani-apli. The phrase *Avar Naharah* ('Beyond the River') is the official Persian name for the satrapy west of the Euphrates, encompassing Syria, Phoenicia, and Palestine. The closing phrase *ukhe'enet* ('and so forth' or 'at this time') is a formulaic letter ending.
11. The word *parshegen* ('copy') is a Persian loanword (from Old Persian **patigarana*) that entered Aramaic and appears also in Esther 3:14; 4:8. The self-designation 'your servants' (*avdakh*) is standard courtly address to the king. The letter format follows Persian epistolary conventions.
12. The accusation is carefully crafted: *qiryeta maradeta u-vi'ishta* ('the rebellious and wicked city') is designed to trigger Persian suspicion. The words are Aramaic but the political calculation is universal — label the enemy as disloyal, and the empire will respond. The claim that they are completing walls (*shuraya shakhlelilu*) specifically alleges military fortification, not mere urban construction.
13. Three types of taxation are named: *mindah* (land/property tax), *belo* (commodity/excise tax), and *halakh* (road/transit toll). The letter writers know their audience — the threat to revenue is more persuasive to a Persian king than religious arguments. The phrase *appetom malkin tehanziq* ('the treasury of kings you will damage') makes the financial stakes personal.
14. The idiom *melach heikhala melachna* ('we eat the salt of the palace') is a covenant expression — sharing salt signified loyalty and obligation (compare Numbers 18:19, 'a covenant of salt'). The letter writers present themselves as loyal subjects motivated by duty, not malice. The phrase *ervat malka* ('the king's dishonor/nakedness') uses *ervah*, a word that in Hebrew means 'nakedness, shame, vulnerability' — they frame Jerusalem's rebuilding as an exposure of royal weakness.
15. The appeal to *sefer dakhranaya* ('the book of records/memorials') invokes the Persian archive system — royal chronicles were meticulously maintained and could be consulted to verify claims (see also Esther 2:23; 6:1). The letter writers weaponize Jerusalem's own history: the revolts of Hezekiah, Jehoiakim, and Zedekiah are all on record. The phrase *min yomat alma* ('from days of eternity, from ancient times') is a sweeping generalization designed to make rebellion seem like Jerusalem's permanent character.
16. This is the letter's most dramatic claim — that a rebuilt Jerusalem would cost the king the entire province of Beyond the River (*Avar Naharah*), encompassing all of Syria-Palestine. The claim is wildly exaggerated, but it plays on Persian anxieties about western revolts. The province Beyond the River was strategically vital as the approach route to Egypt.
17. The Aramaic *pitgama* ('edict, official reply') is a Persian loanword (Old Persian **patigama*). The formulaic *shlam ukhe'et* ('peace and now') is standard Persian-Aramaic epistolary greeting. Artaxerxes responds directly to the named officials, confirming the bureaucratic chain of command.
18. The word *meforash* ('plainly, clearly, translated') indicates that the letter was both read and interpreted — possibly translated from Aramaic into Old Persian for the king, or simply read with explanation. The verb *qeri* ('read') is passive, indicating a court reader performed the reading.
19. Artaxerxes confirms the accusation through archival research — the Persian bureaucratic system worked exactly as the letter writers intended. The phrase *min yomat alma* ('from days of eternity') echoes the accusers' language in verse 15; the king has adopted their framing.
20. Artaxerxes acknowledges what the accusers implied — Jerusalem once hosted an independent monarchy (David, Solomon) that controlled the very territory now under Persian rule. The irony is that the king recites Israelite royal glory as evidence of danger. The three-tax formula (*mindah*, *belo*, *halakh*) reappears, reinforcing the fiscal anxiety.
21. The phrase *ad minni ta'ama yittsam* ('until a decree is issued by me') leaves a legal opening — the stop-work order is not permanent but suspended pending royal review. This nuance matters: it allows for the possibility of reversal, which will come under Darius in chapter 6.
22. The word *chavala* ('damage, harm') carries the sense of financial loss and political injury. Artaxerxes frames the urgency in terms of escalating risk — delay means compounding damage to royal interests.
23. The phrase *be-edra ve-chayil* ('by arm and force') indicates military enforcement — this was not a polite request but an armed shutdown. The adverb *bi-vehilu* ('in haste, urgently') shows the eagerness of the opponents to execute the order. They had the legal backing they needed and acted immediately.
24. The narrative returns to the main chronological thread after the Artaxerxes digression (verses 6–23). The second year of Darius I is 520 BCE — the year when Haggai and Zechariah prophesied and the rebuilding resumed (chapter 5). The work had been stalled for approximately sixteen years. This verse is still in Aramaic, bridging into the Aramaic section that continues through chapter 6.

5

Summary: *The prophets Haggai and Zechariah stir Zerubbabel and Jeshua to resume building the Temple. Tattenai, the governor of the province Beyond the River, and his associates arrive and question who authorized the construction. God's protective eye is on the Jewish elders, and Tattenai does not force them to stop while he sends a letter to King Darius requesting a search of the royal archives for Cyrus's original decree. The letter reports the Jews' claim that Cyrus authorized the rebuilding and returned the Temple vessels to Sheshbazzar.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents a strikingly different kind of opposition compared to chapter 4. Tattenai is not hostile — he is a competent administrator doing his job, asking legitimate questions about building permits. His letter to Darius is factual and even-handed, a marked contrast to Rehum's inflammatory accusations. The narrator credits the prophets Haggai and Zechariah with restarting the project, and their prophetic books confirm this: Haggai 1:1 is dated to the second year of Darius (520 BCE), and he explicitly rebukes the people for living in paneled houses while the Temple lies in ruins. The chapter's theological claim is encapsulated in the phrase 'the eye of their God was upon the elders of the Jews' (verse 5) — divine protection manifests not as miraculous intervention but as bureaucratic patience. God works through the empire's own procedural safeguards.*

Translation Friction: *The entire chapter is in Aramaic, continuing the Aramaic section that began at 4:8. Tattenai (Aramaic: Tattenai; possibly the 'Tattannu' mentioned in a Babylonian text as governor of Beyond the River) asks the Jews for their authorization. The Jews' response (verses 11-16) provides a theological history lesson — they explain the exile as divine judgment, Cyrus's decree as divine reversal, and Sheshbazzar as the authorized builder. The reference to Sheshbazzar laying the foundation (verse 16) creates tension with 3:8-10, which credits Zerubbabel. We render both accounts as given, without harmonizing.*

Connections: *The prophetic impetus for rebuilding connects directly to the books of Haggai and Zechariah, both datable to 520-518 BCE. Haggai 1:2-4 provides the prophetic rebuke that motivates the resumed construction. Zechariah's night visions (Zechariah 1-6) provide the theological framework — especially Zechariah 4:6-10, which promises that Zerubbabel's hands will complete the Temple. The appeal to Cyrus's decree (verse 13) reaches back to chapter 1 and forward to chapter 6, where Darius will locate and confirm the original document.*

¹Then the prophets — Haggai the prophet and Zechariah son of Iddo — prophesied to the Jews in Judah and Jerusalem in the name of the God of Israel, who was over them. ²Then Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and Jeshua son of Jozadak rose up and began rebuilding the house of God in Jerusalem, with the prophets of God supporting them. ³At that time Tattenai, governor of the province Beyond the River, along with Shethar-bozenai and their associates, came to them and said, 'Who gave you authorization to build this house and complete this structure?' ⁴They also asked them, 'What are the names of the men who are doing this construction?' ⁵But the eye of their God was on the elders of the Jews, and they were not stopped while the report traveled to Darius and a written reply was returned concerning the matter. ⁶This is a copy of the letter that Tattenai, governor of the province Beyond the River, Shethar-bozenai, and his associates — the officials in the province Beyond the River — sent to King Darius. ⁷They sent him a report, and this was written in it: 'To King Darius — complete peace. ⁸Let the king be informed that we went to the province of Judah, to the house of the great God. It is being built with large cut stones, and timber is being set into the walls. This work is being carried out with diligence and is progressing well under their hands. ⁹Then we questioned those elders and said to them, 'Who gave you authorization to build this house and complete this structure?' ¹⁰We also asked their names, so that we could inform you and write down the names of the men who lead them. ¹¹They answered us as follows: 'We are servants of the God of heaven and earth, and we are rebuilding the house that was built many years ago, which a great king of Israel constructed and completed. ¹²But because our ancestors provoked the God of heaven, he handed them over to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, the Chaldean, who destroyed this house and deported the people to Babylon. ¹³However, in the first year of Cyrus king of Babylon, King Cyrus issued a decree to rebuild this house of God. ¹⁴Also, the gold and silver vessels of the house of God that Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the Temple in Jerusalem

and brought to the temple in Babylon — King Cyrus removed them from the temple in Babylon and gave them to one named Sheshbazzar, whom he had appointed as governor. ¹⁵He said to him, 'Take these vessels, go, and deposit them in the Temple in Jerusalem. Let the house of God be rebuilt on its original site.' ¹⁶Then Sheshbazzar came and laid the foundations of the house of God in Jerusalem. From that time until now it has been under construction, and it is not yet finished.' ¹⁷Now, if it pleases the king, let a search be made in the royal archives there in Babylon to determine whether King Cyrus indeed issued a decree to rebuild this house of God in Jerusalem. And let the king send us his decision on this matter.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The text is in Aramaic. Zechariah is identified as bar Iddo ('son of Iddo'), though Zechariah 1:1 calls him 'son of Berechiah son of Iddo' — bar may mean 'grandson' or the genealogy may be compressed. The phrase be-shum Elah Yisrael alehon ('in the name of the God of Israel, upon them') can mean either that they prophesied in God's name over the Jews, or that the God of Israel was present over/with them. The ambiguity is productive — the prophets spoke God's word and God's presence accompanied the speaking.
2. The Aramaic mesa'adin lehon ('supporting/sustaining them') uses a word meaning 'to uphold, prop up, assist.' The prophets did not merely inspire the work with words — they remained present as ongoing supporters. Haggai's prophecies are dated to specific days in the second year of Darius, showing sustained engagement over months (Haggai 1:1; 2:1; 2:10; 2:20).
3. Tattenai (Tattenay) holds the title pechat Avar Naharah ('governor of Beyond the River') — the highest Persian authority in the region west of the Euphrates. His question is procedural, not hostile: man sam lekhem te'em ('who placed for you a decree?'). He wants to see paperwork. Shethar-bozenai may be a title rather than a name, possibly meaning 'star of splendor' in Persian. The word usharna ('structure, wall, timber-frame') refers to the building's structural framework.
4. The demand for names was standard imperial procedure — the administration needed to identify who was responsible. Some manuscripts and versions read 'they said to them' rather than 'we said to them,' which would mean the narrator is quoting from the perspective of Tattenai's letter (verse 7 onward). The WLC reads amarna ('we said'), which places this in the voice of the letter writers.
5. The phrase ein Elahahom havat al savei Yehudaye ('the eye of their God was upon the elders of the Jews') is the chapter's theological key. God's 'eye' is a metaphor for watchful protection (compare Psalm 33:18; Deuteronomy 11:12). The protection operates through bureaucratic channels — Tattenai defers rather than enforces, filing a report rather than issuing a shutdown. Divine providence works within, not against, the imperial system.
6. The Aramaic Afarsakhaye ('officials, inspectors') likely designates Persian administrative personnel stationed in the provinces — possibly related to the Old Persian *frasakara ('investigator'). The letter is addressed directly to Darius the king, bypassing the regional chain of command, indicating the matter's seriousness.
7. The greeting shlama kholla ('complete peace, total well-being') is the standard Aramaic diplomatic salutation. Unlike Rehum's hostile letter in chapter 4, Tattenai's letter opens with a neutral, respectful greeting and will proceed to present the facts without editorial hostility.
8. Tattenai calls the Temple beit Elaha rabba ('the house of the great God') — a respectful acknowledgment from a Persian official. The construction method described — even gelal ('large rolling/hewn stones') with wood set in the walls — matches the technique of Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:36) and the specification in Cyrus's decree (6:4). The word osparna ('diligently, with urgency') is a Persian loanword suggesting energetic progress.
9. Tattenai repeats his original question (from verse 3) verbatim in his report to the king, showing that his letter is a factual transcript of the exchange. The term savaya ('elders') indicates he addressed the leadership rather than the general workforce.
10. The purpose of gathering names is explicitly stated: le-hoda'utkakh ('to inform you') — Tattenai is creating a proper administrative record. The names of the leaders would allow Darius to verify their claims and hold specific individuals accountable.
11. The elders' self-identification as avdohi di Elah shemaya ve-ar'a ('servants of the God of heaven and earth') expands the standard Persian-period title to include 'earth' — a more universal claim than merely 'God of heaven.' The 'great king of Israel' is Solomon, though he is not named. The phrase min qadmat denah ('from before this, long ago') indicates the ancient pedigree of the Temple.
12. The elders provide a remarkable theological confession to a Persian official: they attribute their own exile to divine judgment, not merely to Babylonian military superiority. The verb hargizu ('provoked, angered') is an honest admission of ancestral guilt. They present the exile as God's act (yehav himmo be-yad, 'he gave them into the hand of'), with Nebuchadnezzar as the instrument. This theological interpretation of history is the same framework used by the prophets (Jeremiah 25:8-11; 2 Kings 21:10-15).
13. Cyrus is called 'king of Babylon' (malka di Bavel) because after conquering Babylon in 539 BCE, he adopted the title as part of his royal titulary. The elders cite the specific year and the specific authority — they are making a legal argument, not merely a historical one. The emphasis on Cyrus is strategic: they invoke a prior king's decree, which under Persian law carried binding authority on subsequent rulers.
14. Sheshbazzar is here called pechah ('governor'), a title different from the nasi ('prince') of 1:8. The Persian title pechah designates a provincial administrator — Cyrus apparently gave Sheshbazzar formal governmental authority over the returnee community. The chain of custody for the Temple vessels is carefully documented: Nebuchadnezzar took them from Jerusalem to Babylon; Cyrus took them from Babylon and gave them to Sheshbazzar.

15. Cyrus's command as reported by the elders is direct and personal: *sa* ('take'), *eze* ('go'), *achet* ('place'). The phrase *al atreh* ('on its site/place') insists on geographic continuity — the new Temple must stand where the old one stood. The elders present this as eyewitness tradition, transmitted through their community.
16. The elders credit Sheshbazzar with laying the foundation, while 3:8-10 credits Zerubbabel. Several explanations exist: Sheshbazzar may have begun the work ceremonially before Zerubbabel continued it, they may be the same person, or the elders may be citing Sheshbazzar because he was the officially recognized governor who received Cyrus's authorization. The phrase *min edayin ve-ad ke'an* ('from that time until now') glosses over the sixteen-year gap during which construction was halted.
17. Tattenai's letter concludes not with a recommendation but with a request for verification — he asks the king to check the archives. The phrase *beit ginzaya* ('treasury/archive house') refers to the royal archives where official decrees were stored. This procedural approach reflects the Persian Empire's reliance on written records and precedent. The phrase *re'ut malka* ('the will/pleasure of the king') defers to royal authority without prejudging the outcome. Tattenai's neutrality will be rewarded: Darius will find the decree and not only confirm it but expand it (6:1-12).

6

Summary: *Darius orders a search of the archives and the original decree of Cyrus is found at Ecbatana. The decree specifies Temple dimensions and materials, funded by the royal treasury. Darius not only confirms the decree but expands it: Tattenai is ordered to stay away, provide funds from tax revenue, and supply animals for sacrifice. Anyone who interferes will have a beam pulled from his house and be impaled on it. The Temple is completed in the sixth year of Darius and dedicated with joy. The returned exiles celebrate Passover, having purified themselves, and the chapter closes with the joyful observation that God had turned the heart of the king of Assyria toward them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter completes the first major arc of Ezra: the Temple is rebuilt, dedicated, and the Passover celebrated. Darius does not merely permit the building — he funds it from imperial taxes and threatens death to anyone who obstructs it. The empire that destroyed the Temple now pays to rebuild it. The dedication is deliberately understated compared to Solomon's (no fire from heaven, no glory cloud filling the house), yet the narrator insists on the community's joy. The final verse is theologically startling: it calls Darius 'the king of Assyria' (*melekh Ashur*), even though he was king of Persia. This is not an error — it is a theological identification. The narrator sees Persia as the successor to the Assyrian-Babylonian imperial tradition, and God's turning of 'the heart of the king of Assyria' means that the entire oppressive imperial trajectory has been reversed.*

Translation Friction: *The Aramaic section ends at verse 18, and the text returns to Hebrew at verse 19. The transition is unmarked — the reader simply shifts languages between verses. The decree found at Ecbatana (Aramaic: *Achmetha*), the Median capital, differs in detail from the decree in chapter 1. Chapter 1 presents a public proclamation in Hebrew; chapter 6 presents an Aramaic memorandum (*dikhrona*) with architectural specifications. These likely represent two different versions of the same authorization — a public edict and an administrative record. The sacrifice numbers at the dedication (100 bulls, 200 rams, 400 lambs, 12 goats) are modest compared to Solomon's dedication (22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep in 1 Kings 8:63). The 12 goats as a sin offering 'for all Israel' insist that the restoration represents all twelve tribes, even though only Judah and Benjamin actually returned.*

Connections: *The discovery of Cyrus's decree in the archives fulfills the promise implicit in 5:17 — the Persian system works as designed. The Temple dedication echoes Solomon's in 1 Kings 8/2 Chronicles 5-7 but in diminished scale. The Passover celebration (verses 19-22) connects the return from Babylon to the Exodus from Egypt, the foundational redemption narrative. The phrase 'turned the heart of the king' (*hesiv lev melekh*) uses the same theological language as Proverbs 21:1 ('The king's heart is in the hand of the LORD; he directs it like a watercourse wherever he pleases').*

¹Then King Darius issued an order, and a search was made in the archives where the records were stored in Babylon. ²A scroll was found in the citadel at Ecbatana, in the province of Media, and this was the memorandum written in it: ³In the first year of King Cyrus, King Cyrus issued a decree concerning the house of God in Jerusalem: 'Let the house be rebuilt as a place where sacrifices are offered, and let its foundations be retained. Its height shall be sixty cubits and its width sixty cubits, ⁴with three courses of large cut stones and one course of new timber. The cost is to be paid from the royal treasury. ⁵A

iso, the gold and silver vessels of the house of God that Nebuchadnezzar took from the Temple in Jerusalem and brought to Babylon are to be returned and brought back to the Temple in Jerusalem, each to its proper place. They are to be deposited in the house of God.' ⁶Now then, Tattenai governor of the province Beyond the River, Shethar-bozenai, and your associates — the officials in the province Beyond the River — keep away from there. ⁷Allow the work on this house of God to proceed. Let the governor of the Jews and the Jewish elders rebuild this house of God on its original site. ⁸I also issue this decree regarding what you are to do for the elders of the Jews for the rebuilding of this house of God: the full cost is to be paid to these men promptly from royal funds — from the tax revenue of the province Beyond the River — so that the work is not interrupted. ⁹Whatever is needed — young bulls, rams, and lambs for burnt offerings to the God of heaven, and wheat, salt, wine, and oil, as the priests in Jerusalem require — let it be given to them day by day without fail, ¹⁰so that they may offer pleasing sacrifices to the God of heaven and pray for the life of the king and his sons. ¹¹I further decree that if anyone alters this edict, a beam shall be pulled from his house and he shall be impaled on it, and his house shall be made a refuse heap for this offense. ¹²May the God who has caused his name to dwell there overthrow any king or people who lifts a hand to alter this decree or to destroy this house of God in Jerusalem. I, Darius, have issued this decree. Let it be carried out with all diligence. ¹³Then Tattenai the governor of the province Beyond the River, Shethar-bozenai, and their associates carried out the order diligently, exactly as King Darius had directed. ¹⁴The Jewish elders built and prospered through the prophesying of Haggai the prophet and Zechariah son of Iddo. They completed the building by the decree of the God of Israel and the decrees of Cyrus, Darius, and Artaxerxes king of Persia. ¹⁵This house was completed on the third day of the month Adar, in the sixth year of the reign of King Darius. ¹⁶The people of Israel — the priests, the Levites, and the rest of the returned exiles — celebrated the dedication of this house of God with joy. ¹⁷They offered for the dedication of this house of God: one hundred bulls, two hundred rams, four hundred lambs, and as a sin offering for all Israel, twelve male goats — one for each of the tribes of Israel. ¹⁸They installed the priests in their divisions and the Levites in their sections for the service of God in Jerusalem, as prescribed in the book of Moses. ¹⁹The returned exiles observed the Passover on the fourteenth day of the first month. ²⁰The priests and the Levites had purified themselves together — all of them were ritually clean — and they slaughtered the Passover lamb for all the returned exiles, for their fellow priests, and for themselves. ²¹The Israelites who had returned from exile ate the Passover, along with everyone who had separated themselves from the uncleanness of the peoples of the land to join them in seeking the LORD, the God of Israel. ²²They celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days with joy, for the LORD had filled them with joy and had turned the heart of the king of Assyria toward them, to strengthen their hands in the work of the house of God, the God of Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Aramaic *beit sifrayya* ('house of books/scrolls') is the Persian imperial archive. The word *ginzayya* ('treasures, deposits') indicates that official decrees were stored alongside valuables. The search begins in Babylon, the primary administrative center, but the document will be found elsewhere.
2. Ecbatana (Aramaic: *Achmetha*; modern Hamadan, Iran) was the Median capital and served as the Persian kings' summer residence. Cyrus may have issued the decree there, or the document may have been transferred from Babylon for archival purposes. The word *dikhrona* ('memorandum, record') indicates an internal administrative document, distinct from a public proclamation. This explains why it differs from the edict in chapter 1.
3. The dimensions specified — 60 cubits (about 90 feet) high and 60 cubits wide — differ from Solomon's Temple, which was 30 cubits high, 20 cubits wide, and 60 cubits long (1 Kings 6:2). The discrepancy may indicate that Cyrus authorized a larger structure, that the numbers are rounded, or that the length was inadvertently omitted from this copy. A cubit is approximately 18 inches (45 cm).
4. The construction specification — three stone courses topped by one timber course — matches the technique described for Solomon's inner court (1 Kings 6:36, 'three courses of cut stone and one course of cedar beams'). The funding provision (*nifqeta min beit malka*, 'expenditure from the king's house') means the Persian treasury bore the cost. Imperial sponsorship of local temple rebuilding was standard Persian policy, confirmed by the Cyrus Cylinder and other documents.
5. The decree specifies *le-atreh* ('to its place') — each vessel must return to its original liturgical position within the Temple. This insistence on exact restoration reflects the Persian respect for cultic continuity. The phrase *tachet be-beit Elaha* ('deposit in the house of God') uses *tachet* in the sense of 'place down, deposit,' indicating formal installation.
6. The phrase *rachiqin havu min tammah* ('be far from there') is a blunt directive — stay out of the way. Darius not only confirms the building permit but orders the very officials who questioned it to stand down. Tattenai's neutral inquiry has resulted in an outcome far more favorable to the Jews than the status quo.

7. The imperative shevuqu ('leave alone, let be') orders non-interference. The phrase pechat Yehudaye ('governor of the Jews') recognizes the Jewish leadership as a legitimate provincial authority. Darius addresses the Jewish governor and elders as competent administrators of their own religious project.
8. Darius goes beyond confirming Cyrus's decree — he orders Tattenai's own provincial taxes to fund the Temple construction. The phrase osparna nifqeta teheve mityahava ('promptly/diligently let expenses be given') uses osparna (the Persian loanword for 'diligently') to demand urgency. The irony is complete: the officials who questioned the project must now finance it.
9. Darius provides not just building funds but ongoing sacrificial supplies. The list — bulls, rams, lambs, wheat, salt, wine, oil — covers the full range of Temple offerings as prescribed in the Torah (Numbers 28-29). The phrase yom be-yom di la shalu ('day by day without ceasing') mandates continuous supply. A Persian king is now underwriting Israel's daily worship.
10. The phrase nichohin ('pleasing aroma') is the Aramaic equivalent of the Hebrew nicho'ach — the 'soothing aroma' of sacrifice that ascends to God (Genesis 8:21; Leviticus 1:9). Darius's motive is partly political: the Jews are to pray for the king's life and dynasty. Imperial sponsorship of subject peoples' temples was a standard Persian strategy for securing loyalty. Yet the narrator presents this arrangement without cynicism — God works through political self-interest.
11. The punishment is characteristically Persian in its brutal creativity: the criminal's own house provides the instrument of his execution. The verb yitmache ('be struck/impaed') likely refers to impalement, a standard Persian form of execution attested in Herodotus and Persian inscriptions. The final indignity — converting the house to a nevalu ('refuse heap, latrine') — ensures that the offender's legacy is erased along with his life.
12. Darius invokes the God of the Temple as enforcer of his own decree — a Persian king calling on Israel's God to punish future violators. The phrase di shakken shemeh tammah ('who has caused his name to dwell there') uses Deuteronomic theology (Deuteronomy 12:5, 11) from a pagan king's mouth. Whether Darius understood the theology or his Jewish scribes drafted this language, the effect is the same: imperial power and divine authority converge. The first-person declaration ana Daryavesh sameth te'em ('I Darius have issued the decree') places the king's personal authority behind the order.
13. The word osparna ('diligently') reappears — the same urgency demanded by the king is now exhibited by his officials. Tattenai's compliance is immediate and thorough. The narrative turns on a bureaucratic irony: the investigation meant to challenge the Jews became the mechanism for expanding their support.
14. The narrator places God's decree (ta'am Elah Yisrael) alongside the decrees of three Persian kings — divine will and imperial authorization operate as a single cause. The mention of Artaxerxes alongside Cyrus and Darius is unexpected, since Artaxerxes comes later (chapter 7) and is associated with Ezra's mission rather than the Temple construction. The narrator may be telescoping the entire restoration project — Temple, walls, and community reform — into a single summary.
15. The date — 3 Adar in the sixth year of Darius I — corresponds to approximately March 12, 515 BCE. The Temple construction thus took about four and a half years from the resumption in 520 BCE, or about twenty-three years from Cyrus's original decree in 538 BCE. Adar is the twelfth and final month of the Jewish calendar, making the completion a fitting conclusion to the year.
16. The word chanukkat ('dedication') is the same root that later names the Hanukkah festival commemorating the rededication of the Temple under the Maccabees in 164 BCE. The term carries the sense of inaugural consecration — setting apart for sacred use. The phrase be-chedvah ('with joy') is Aramaic, reflecting the continued Aramaic section. The community categories — priests, Levites, and benei galuta ('children of exile') — encompass the entire restored community.
17. The twelve goats for the sin offering are the most theologically significant detail. By offering twelve — le-minyan shivtei Yisrael ('according to the number of the tribes of Israel') — the community claims to represent all twelve tribes, not just Judah and Benjamin. The ten northern tribes deported by Assyria are not forgotten; the restored community acts on their behalf. The total sacrifices (100 + 200 + 400 = 700, plus 12) are modest compared to Solomon's dedication (22,000 cattle and 120,000 sheep), but the twelve-goat gesture carries disproportionate theological weight.
18. This is the last verse in Aramaic; the text returns to Hebrew at verse 19. The organizational structure — priestly and Levitical divisions (peluggatehon, machleqatehon) — follows the Mosaic prescription (Numbers 3-4) as elaborated by David (1 Chronicles 24-26). The phrase ki-khetav sefer Mosheh ('as written in the book of Moses') grounds the new Temple's operations in Torah authority, the same basis invoked at the altar's construction (3:2).
19. The text returns to Hebrew. The date — 14 Nisan — is exactly one month after the Temple's completion on 3 Adar. The Passover on 14 Nisan follows the Mosaic prescription exactly (Exodus 12:6; Leviticus 23:5). This is the first Passover celebrated at the rebuilt Temple, connecting the new community to the Exodus event. The term benei ha-golah ('children of the exile') emphasizes their identity as the returned diaspora.
20. The note that 'all of them were clean' (kullam tehorim) emphasizes the contrast with the pre-exilic failures. In Hezekiah's Passover (2 Chronicles 30:17-20), many participants were ritually unclean and required special dispensation. Here the entire community — priests and Levites alike — achieved full ritual purity. The Levites slaughter the lamb for everyone, including the priests, indicating their role as liturgical assistants.
21. This verse is remarkable for its inclusiveness: alongside the returned exiles, others who had 'separated from the uncleanness of the nations' (nivdal mi-tum'at goyei ha-arets) were welcome at the Passover. These may have been Jews who remained in the land during the exile, or even non-Israelites who converted. The criterion is not genealogy but commitment — separation from impurity and seeking the LORD. This openness stands in tension with the stricter genealogical boundaries of chapters 2, 9, and 10.

22. The chapter's final verse delivers a theological shock: Darius is called *melekh Ashur* ('king of Assyria'). Persia was not Assyria, but the narrator sees the imperial succession — Assyria to Babylon to Persia — as a single trajectory now reversed by God. The empire that first destroyed the northern kingdom now, through its Persian successor, funds the rebuilding of the Temple. The verb *hesev* ('turned') presents God as sovereign over imperial hearts, and the phrase *le-chazzeq yedeihem* ('to strengthen their hands') closes the arc that began with the enemies 'weakening the hands' of Judah in 4:4.

7

Summary: *The narrative jumps forward approximately sixty years to introduce Ezra himself. His priestly genealogy is traced back to Aaron through the high-priestly line. Ezra is described as a scribe skilled in the Law of Moses, and the king grants him everything he asks because 'the hand of the LORD his God was upon him.' Artaxerxes issues an Aramaic letter authorizing Ezra's mission: to investigate conditions in Judah according to the Law, transport silver and gold, appoint judges, and enforce Torah compliance throughout the province. Anyone who does not obey the Law of God and the law of the king faces severe punishment. Ezra blesses the LORD for putting such a purpose in the king's heart.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter introduces the figure who gives the book its name — a priest who is also a scribe, a combination that will define post-exilic Judaism. The phrase *sofer mahir be-torat Mosheh* ('a scribe skilled in the Law of Moses') marks a historical shift: authority now resides not only in the priesthood but in expertise with the written text. Ezra is the prototype of the rabbi, the teacher whose power comes from knowledge of Torah rather than sacrificial function. Artaxerxes' letter (verses 12-26, in Aramaic) is the most extensive imperial document in Ezra, and it effectively makes Torah the law of the land for the Jewish community. The letter creates a dual legal system: the 'law of your God' and the 'law of the king' operate in parallel, with Persian enforcement backing Jewish religious law. This fusion of religious and imperial authority shaped Jewish self-governance for centuries.*

Translation Friction: *The sixty-year gap between chapters 6 and 7 (515 to approximately 458 BCE) is unexplained. The entire reign of Xerxes (486-465) passes in silence. The Artaxerxes of this chapter is generally identified as Artaxerxes I Longimanus (465-424 BCE), though some scholars argue for Artaxerxes II (404-358), which would place Ezra after Nehemiah. The identification affects the chronological relationship between Ezra and Nehemiah — a problem that remains unresolved. The Aramaic section (verses 12-26) returns to Aramaic for the royal letter, creating the second language-shift zone in the book. Ezra's genealogy in verses 1-5 is compressed — comparing it with 1 Chronicles 6:3-14 reveals that six generations are omitted, likely to create a literary structure rather than a complete genealogical record.*

Connections: *Ezra's genealogy connects him to Aaron (Exodus 6:16-25), Phinehas (Numbers 25:10-13), and the high-priestly line through Zadok (2 Samuel 8:17; 1 Kings 2:35). The phrase 'the hand of the LORD his God was upon him' (verse 6) echoes the same phrase applied to Elijah (1 Kings 18:46) and will recur as a refrain in Ezra (7:9, 28; 8:18, 22, 31). Artaxerxes' letter authorizing Torah enforcement anticipates the public Torah reading in Nehemiah 8, where Ezra will stand on a wooden platform and read the Law to the assembled community. The authority to 'appoint magistrates and judges' (verse 25) echoes Moses' appointment of judges in Deuteronomy 16:18.*

¹After these events, during the reign of Artaxerxes king of Persia, Ezra son of Seraiah, son of Azariah, son of Hilkiah, ²son of Shallum, son of Zadok, son of Ahitub, ³son of Amariah, son of Azariah, son of Meraioth, ⁴son of Zerahiah, son of Uzzi, son of Bukki, ⁵son of Abishua, son of Phinehas, son of Eleazar, son of Aaron the chief priest. ⁶This Ezra came up from Babylon. He was a scribe skilled in the Law of Moses that the LORD, the God of Israel, had given. The king granted him everything he requested, because the hand of the LORD his God was upon him. ⁷Some of the Israelites and some of the priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, and Temple servants went up to Jerusalem in the seventh year of King Artaxerxes. ⁸He arrived in Jerusalem in the fifth month of the seventh year of the king. ⁹On the first day of the first month he set out from Babylon, and on the first day of the fifth month he arrived in Jerusalem, for the good hand of his God was upon him. ¹⁰For Ezra had set his heart to study the Law of the LORD, to practice it, and to teach statute and ordinance in Israel. ¹¹This is a copy of the letter

that King Artaxerxes gave to Ezra the priest, the scribe — a scribe learned in the words of the commandments of the LORD and his statutes for Israel: ¹²Artaxerxes, king of kings, to Ezra the priest, scribe of the Law of the God of heaven — greetings. ¹³I hereby decree that any of the people of Israel and their priests and Levites in my kingdom who freely volunteer to go to Jerusalem may go with you. ¹⁴You are being sent by the king and his seven counselors to investigate conditions in Judah and Jerusalem according to the law of your God, which is in your hand, ¹⁵and to bring the silver and gold that the king and his counselors have freely offered to the God of Israel, whose dwelling is in Jerusalem, ¹⁶together with all the silver and gold you can collect throughout the province of Babylon, along with the freewill offerings that the people and the priests contribute for the house of their God in Jerusalem. ¹⁷With this money, then, you are to buy diligently: bulls, rams, lambs, and their grain offerings and drink offerings, and offer them on the altar of the house of your God in Jerusalem. ¹⁸Whatever seems best to you and your kinsmen to do with the remaining silver and gold, do it according to the will of your God. ¹⁹The vessels given to you for the service of the house of your God — deliver them all before the God of Jerusalem. ²⁰And whatever else is needed for the house of your God that falls to you to provide, you may draw from the royal treasury. ²¹I, King Artaxerxes, hereby decree to all the treasurers in the province Beyond the River: whatever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the Law of the God of heaven, requests of you, it is to be done promptly — ²²up to one hundred talents of silver, one hundred cors of wheat, one hundred baths of wine, one hundred baths of oil, and salt without limit. ²³Whatever the God of heaven commands, let it be done precisely for the house of the God of heaven. For why should wrath fall on the realm of the king and his sons? ²⁴And we inform you that it is not permitted to impose tribute, tax, or toll on any of the priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, Temple servants, or any other workers in this house of God. ²⁵And you, Ezra, according to the wisdom of your God that is in your hand, appoint magistrates and judges who may judge all the people in the province Beyond the River — all who know the laws of your God. And those who do not know them, you shall teach. ²⁶Anyone who does not obey the law of your God and the law of the king — let judgment be executed against him promptly, whether death, banishment, confiscation of property, or imprisonment.' ²⁷Blessed be the LORD, the God of our ancestors, who put such a thing as this into the heart of the king — to glorify the house of the LORD in Jerusalem. ²⁸He has extended faithful love toward me before the king, his counselors, and all the king's powerful officials. I took courage because the hand of the LORD my God was upon me, and I gathered leaders from Israel to go up with me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *achar ha-devarim ha-elleh* ('after these things') bridges a gap of roughly sixty years without explanation. Seraiah at the head of Ezra's genealogy is likely the same Seraiah who was the last high priest before the exile, executed by Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah (2 Kings 25:18-21). If so, Ezra is 'son of Seraiah' in the sense of descendant, not immediate child. Hilkiyah is the high priest who discovered the book of the Law in Josiah's reign (2 Kings 22:8).
2. Zadok is the priest who supported David and Solomon (2 Samuel 8:17; 1 Kings 2:35), from whom the legitimate high-priestly line descended. The 'sons of Zadok' become the priestly ideal in Ezekiel's vision (Ezekiel 44:15). Ezra's Zadokite lineage establishes his priestly credentials.
3. The genealogy compresses several generations. Comparing with 1 Chronicles 6:3-14, at least six names between Meraioth and Azariah are omitted. This selective genealogy serves a literary rather than archival purpose — it connects Ezra to the key figures in the priestly line without listing every generation.
4. These names trace the high-priestly line through the period of the Judges, connecting the pre-monarchic priesthood to Ezra's post-exilic generation.
5. The genealogy terminates at Aaron ha-kohen ha-rosh ('Aaron the chief/head priest'). The sixteen generations from Aaron to Ezra span roughly a thousand years. Phinehas is the zealous grandson of Aaron who received God's 'covenant of peace' and perpetual priesthood (Numbers 25:10-13). Eleazar succeeded Aaron on Mount Hor (Numbers 20:25-28). Every link in this chain carries priestly authority.
6. The title *sofer mahir* ('skilled scribe, rapid scribe') defines Ezra's identity. The word *mahir* means 'swift, skilled, expert' — this is not merely a copyist but a master interpreter of Torah. The phrase *yad YHWH Elohav alav* ('the hand of the LORD his God upon him') is the theological explanation for Ezra's success with the king. It becomes the book's signature refrain, appearing six times (7:6, 9, 28; 8:18, 22, 31). Divine favor operates through human expertise and royal generosity.
7. The seventh year of Artaxerxes I is 458 BCE — approximately fifty-seven years after the Temple's completion. The same categories of returnees from chapter 2 appear again: priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, and Temple servants (*netinim*). This is a second wave of return, led by Ezra, focused not on building but on Torah reform.

8. The fifth month (Av, approximately July-August) — the same month in which the first Temple had been destroyed (2 Kings 25:8-9). Arriving in this month of mourning to begin restoration work carries symbolic weight, though the text does not comment on it directly.
9. The journey took exactly four months — from 1 Nisan to 1 Av. The distance from Babylon to Jerusalem via the caravan routes was approximately 900 miles. The phrase *ke-yad Elohav ha-tovah alav* ('according to the good hand of his God upon him') attributes the safe and timely arrival to divine providence. The refrain now adds the qualifier 'good' (*tovah*), emphasizing that God's hand brings benefit.
10. This verse is Ezra's mission statement, structured as a three-step sequence: *lidrosh* (to study/seek), *la'asot* (to practice/do), *u-le-lammed* (to teach). The order is deliberate and irreversible — one cannot teach what one has not practiced, and one cannot practice what one has not studied. The verb *hekhin* ('prepared, established, set firm') indicates a settled, unshakeable resolution. The phrase *choq u-mishpat* ('statute and ordinance') covers the full range of Torah law — *choq* for the prescribed duties and *mishpat* for the judicial decisions.
11. Ezra's title is doubled: *ha-kohen ha-sofer* ('the priest, the scribe'). He is then further qualified as *sofer divrei mitsvot YHWH ve-chuqqav al Yisrael* ('scribe of the words of the LORD's commandments and his statutes concerning Israel'). This extended title reflects the intersection of priestly and scribal authority — Ezra is not merely a copyist but an authoritative interpreter of divine law.
12. The text shifts to Aramaic and remains so through verse 26. Artaxerxes uses the title *melekh malkaya* ('king of kings'), the standard Persian royal epithet reflecting universal sovereignty. Ezra's Aramaic title is *kahana safar data di Elah shemaya* ('priest-scribe of the law of the God of heaven') — the Persian court recognizes him as an expert in Jewish religious law. The word *gemir* ('complete, perfect') may modify 'greetings' or Ezra's expertise.
13. The decree makes participation voluntary (*mitnaddav*, 'volunteers freely') — Artaxerxes does not compel Jewish return but authorizes it. This matches Cyrus's approach in chapter 1. The inclusion of priests and Levites as a distinct category shows that the Persian administration understood the internal structure of Jewish society.
14. The 'seven counselors' (*shiv'at ya'atsohi*) are the seven noble Persian families who had special access to the king (see Esther 1:14). Their involvement elevates Ezra's mission to the highest level of imperial authority. The phrase *dat Elahakh di vi-dakh* ('the law of your God which is in your hand') means Ezra carried a physical copy of the Torah. The law is simultaneously divine ('your God') and portable ('in your hand') — a text Ezra personally controls and can consult.
15. The phrase *di bi-Yerushalem mishkheneh* ('whose dwelling is in Jerusalem') uses *mishkan* — the same word for the Tabernacle. The king acknowledges that Israel's God has a permanent address in Jerusalem. The royal contribution is described as a freewill offering (*hitnadavu*), using the same vocabulary applied to Israelite voluntary donations.
16. Ezra is authorized to collect donations from the Jewish diaspora throughout Babylon — a fundraising mandate backed by imperial authority. The phrase *di tehaskkach* ('that you can find/obtain') gives Ezra broad latitude in gathering resources.
17. The king specifies that the primary use of funds is sacrificial worship — bulls, rams, lambs, grain offerings (*minchatehon*), and drink offerings (*niskkehon*). The Persian king is ordering Jewish sacrificial worship to continue, funded by imperial and diaspora donations.
18. Artaxerxes grants Ezra discretionary authority over surplus funds: *ki-re'ut Elahakhem ta'avdun* ('according to the will of your God you shall do'). The king defers to Jewish religious judgment on the use of the money — a remarkable grant of autonomy within the imperial system.
19. Additional Temple vessels (presumably replacements or supplements for those returned under Cyrus) are entrusted to Ezra. The phrase *hashlem qodam Elah Yerushalem* ('deliver complete before the God of Jerusalem') requires a full accounting — every vessel must arrive intact.
20. An open-ended funding authorization: any additional needs (*she'ar chashchut*, 'the rest of what is needed') may be covered by the royal treasury (*beit ginzei malka*). This is a blank check from the Persian king for Temple expenses.
21. Artaxerxes speaks in the first person (*ana*, 'I') with emphatic self-identification, lending maximum royal weight to the order. Every treasury official in the entire satrapy of Beyond the River is commanded to comply with Ezra's requests. This effectively makes Ezra the king's authorized representative with financial drawing rights across the province.
22. The amounts are generous but capped (except for salt). A talent (*kikkar*) of silver was approximately 75 pounds (34 kg), so 100 talents equals about 7,500 pounds of silver. A cor was approximately 220 liters (about 6 bushels); a bath was approximately 22 liters (about 6 gallons). The exemption of salt from any limit reflects its importance in Temple sacrifices (Leviticus 2:13, 'the salt of the covenant') and its relatively low cost.
23. The word *adrazda* ('precisely, with care, diligently') is a Persian loanword indicating meticulous execution. Artaxerxes' motivation is partly self-protective: *di lemah leheve qetsaf* ('for why should there be wrath') reveals a pagan king's fear of offending a god whose power he respects. Persian imperial theology recognized the reality of local deities and their capacity for retribution. The concern for 'the king and his sons' (*malka u-venohi*) echoes the same dynastic prayer request as 6:10.
24. Complete tax exemption for all Temple personnel — the same three taxes named in 4:13 and 4:20 (*mindah*, *belo*, *halakh*). This exemption gives the Temple staff economic independence from the provincial tax system, effectively creating a religious enclave within the empire. The six categories of exempt personnel match the census categories of chapter 2.
25. Artaxerxes grants Ezra judicial authority throughout the entire province Beyond the River — not just Judah but the whole satrapy. He is authorized to appoint *shaftin ve-dayyanin* ('magistrates and judges') — two categories of judicial officials — and to teach Torah to those who do not know it. This is a Persian-backed mandate for Torah education and enforcement, the most extensive grant of religious authority to any individual in the post-exilic period.

- 26.** This is the last verse in Aramaic; the text returns to Hebrew at verse 27. The dual legal authority is explicit: *data di Elahakh ve-data di malka* ('the law of your God and the law of the king'). Torah and Persian imperial law operate as parallel systems with mutual enforcement. Four penalties are listed in descending severity: death (*mot*), banishment (*lishroshi*, 'uprooting'), confiscation (*anash nikhsin*, 'fining of property'), and imprisonment (*essurin*). The word *osparna* ('promptly, diligently') means no delays in enforcement — violators face swift consequences.
- 27.** The text returns to Hebrew, and Ezra speaks in the first person for the first time. The blessing *barukh YHWH Elohei avoteinu* ('blessed be the LORD, God of our fathers') is classic Israelite praise language. Ezra attributes the king's generosity to God's initiative — *natan kazot be-lev ha-melekh* ('put such a thing in the heart of the king') — the same theology of divine stirring that opened the book in 1:1. The verb *le-fa'er* ('to glorify, beautify') suggests both physical adornment and spiritual honor.
- 28.** The phrase *hittah chesed* ('extended faithful love') uses the key covenant term — God's *chesed* operates through imperial politics. Ezra experiences divine faithfulness not in a vision or miracle but in royal favor. The phrase *va-ani hitchazzaqti* ('and I took courage/strengthened myself') shows Ezra's personal response to divine enablement — he is empowered but not passive. The refrain *ke-yad YHWH Elohai alai* ('as the hand of the LORD my God was upon me') appears for the third time, establishing it as the interpretive key to Ezra's entire mission.

8

Summary: *Ezra lists the heads of the ancestral houses who returned with him from Babylon. He discovers that no Levites have volunteered, so he sends a delegation to Iddo at Casiphia to recruit Levites and Temple servants. Thirty-eight Levites and 220 Temple servants join the caravan. At the Ahava canal, Ezra proclaims a fast to seek God's protection for the journey, having been ashamed to ask the king for a military escort after telling him that God protects those who seek him. He distributes the silver, gold, and sacred vessels among twelve priests and twelve Levites for safekeeping. After a three-day rest in Jerusalem, the treasure is weighed and recorded. The returnees offer sacrifices and deliver the king's commissions to the provincial officials.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's most revealing moment is Ezra's confession in verse 22: he was ashamed to ask the king for soldiers because he had already testified that God protects his servants. This is not naive piety — it is a man trapped by his own theology, forced to trust the God he proclaimed. The faith is genuine but costly, and Ezra's honesty about feeling ashamed rather than confident makes it real. The Levite shortage (verse 15) reveals an ongoing crisis: the Levitical families were reluctant to return, perhaps because their economic prospects in Babylon were better than menial Temple service in a small provincial town. Ezra's solution — sending a recruitment delegation to Casiphia — suggests an organized Jewish community in the diaspora with its own leadership structures. The meticulous weighing of treasure in verses 24-34, with every mina and talent documented, shows a community that understood accountability and transparency in handling donated resources.*

Translation Friction: *The location of Casiphia (verse 17) is unknown — the name may relate to *keseeph* ('silver'), suggesting a silver-working district, or it may be a proper name. The phrase *ha-maqom Kasifya* ('the place Casiphia') is enigmatic; some scholars read *maqom* as a euphemism for a sanctuary or house of study, suggesting a proto-synagogue in the diaspora. The number of Temple servants (220, verse 20) marked as *netinim* 'whom David and the officials had set apart' provides a rare historical note about their origin. The total silver in verse 26 (650 talents, approximately 48,750 pounds) and gold (100 talents, approximately 7,500 pounds) represent enormous wealth for a caravan traveling without military escort — underscoring the faith risk Ezra assumed.*

Connections: *The ancestor list format parallels chapter 2, maintaining the pattern of documented identity. Ezra's fast at the Ahava canal echoes the fasts proclaimed by Jehoshaphat before battle (2 Chronicles 20:3) and by Esther before approaching the king (Esther 4:16). The refusal of military escort contrasts with Nehemiah, who will accept a royal military escort (Nehemiah 2:9). The safe arrival attributed to 'the hand of our God' (verse 31) continues the refrain from chapter 7. The sacrificial offerings on arrival (verse 35) — including twelve bulls, twelve male goats — maintain the twelve-tribe symbolism from 6:17.*

¹These are the heads of the ancestral houses, with their genealogical registration, who went up with me from Babylon during the reign of King Artaxerxes: ²Of the descendants of Phinehas: Gershom. Of the descendants of Ithamar: Daniel. Of the descendants of David: Hattush. ³Of the descendants of Shecaniah, from the line of Parosh: Zechariah, and with him 150

registered males. ⁴Of the descendants of Pahath-moab: Eliehoenai son of Zerahiah, with 200 males. ⁵Of the descendants of Shecaniah: the son of Jahaziel, with 300 males. ⁶Of the descendants of Adin: Ebed son of Jonathan, with 50 males. ⁷Of the descendants of Elam: Jeshaiah son of Athaliah, with 70 males. ⁸Of the descendants of Shephatiah: Zebadiah son of Michael, with 80 males. ⁹Of the descendants of Joab: Obadiah son of Jehiel, with 218 males. ¹⁰Of the descendants of Shelomith: the son of Josiphiah, with 160 males. ¹¹Of the descendants of Bebai: Zechariah son of Bebai, with 28 males. ¹²Of the descendants of Azgad: Johanan son of Hakkatan, with 110 males. ¹³Of the descendants of Adonikam — the last to come — these are their names: Eliphelet, Jeuel, and Shemaiah, with 60 males. ¹⁴Of the descendants of Bigvai: Uthai and Zabbud, with 70 males. ¹⁵I assembled them at the canal that flows toward Ahava, and we camped there three days. When I reviewed the people and the priests, I found no Levites among them. ¹⁶So I sent for Eliezer, Ariel, Shemaiah, Elnathan, Jarib, Elnathan, Nathan, Zechariah, and Meshullam — leading men — and for Joiarib and Elnathan — men of insight. ¹⁷I directed them to Iddo, the leader at the place called Casiphia, and I put words in their mouths to speak to Iddo and his kinsmen, the Temple servants at the place Casiphia, asking them to send us ministers for the house of our God. ¹⁸By the good hand of our God upon us, they brought us a man of insight from the descendants of Mahli son of Levi son of Israel — namely Sherebiah — with his sons and kinsmen, eighteen in all; ¹⁹also Hashabiah and with him Jeshaiah of the descendants of Merari, with their kinsmen and sons, twenty; ²⁰and of the Temple servants whom David and the officials had designated for the service of the Levites: ²²⁰ Temple servants — all of them listed by name. ²¹I proclaimed a fast there at the Ahava canal, so that we could humble ourselves before our God and seek from him a safe route for us, our children, and all our possessions. ²²For I was ashamed to ask the king for infantry and cavalry to protect us from enemies on the road, since we had told the king, 'The hand of our God is upon all who seek him, for their good, but his power and wrath are against all who forsake him.' ²³So we fasted and sought our God concerning this, and he answered our prayer. ²⁴Then I set apart twelve of the leading priests, along with Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and ten of their kinsmen. ²⁵I weighed out to them the silver, the gold, and the vessels — the offering for the house of our God that the king, his counselors, his officials, and all the Israelites present had contributed. ²⁶I weighed into their care: silver — 650 talents; silver vessels — 100 talents' worth; gold — 100 talents; ²⁷twenty gold bowls worth 1,000 darics; and two vessels of polished bronze, as precious as gold. ²⁸I said to them, 'You are holy to the LORD, and these vessels are holy. The silver and gold are a freewill offering to the LORD, the God of your ancestors. ²⁹Guard them carefully until you weigh them out before the leading priests, the Levites, and the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel in Jerusalem, in the chambers of the house of the LORD.' ³⁰So the priests and the Levites accepted the weighed silver, gold, and vessels to bring them to Jerusalem, to the house of our God. ³¹We set out from the Ahava canal on the twelfth of the first month to travel to Jerusalem. The hand of our God was upon us, and he delivered us from the enemy and from ambush along the road. ³²We arrived in Jerusalem and rested there for three days. ³³On the fourth day the silver, gold, and vessels were weighed in the house of our God under the supervision of Meremoth son of Uriah the priest, with Eleazar son of Phinehas assisting him, along with the Levites Jozabad son of Jeshua and Noadiah son of Binnui. ³⁴Everything was counted and weighed, and the entire weight was recorded at that time. ³⁵The returned exiles who had come from captivity offered burnt offerings to the God of Israel: twelve bulls for all Israel, ninety-six rams, seventy-seven lambs, and twelve male goats as a sin offering — all as a burnt offering to the LORD. ³⁶They delivered the king's commissions to the royal satraps and the governors of the province Beyond the River, and these officials supported the people and the house of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ezra now speaks in the first person (immi, 'with me'), continuing the autobiographical section that began at 7:27. The phrase *ve-hityachsam* ('and their genealogical registration') indicates formal documentation of lineage — every returnee was enrolled by ancestral house.
2. The three leading families represent the priestly line of Phinehas, the priestly line of Ithamar (Aaron's two surviving sons' lines), and the royal house of David. The presence of a Davidic descendant (Hattush; see 1 Chronicles 3:22) shows that the Davidic line continued to be recognized and honored even without a throne.
3. The count specifies *lizekharim* ('males') — adult men enrolled by genealogy. The total caravan would have been larger when women, children, and servants are included.

4. Eliehoenai means 'my eyes are toward the LORD' — a fitting name for someone joining a faith-driven journey.
5. The clan leader's personal name appears to be missing — the text reads 'the son of Jahaziel' without a given name. This may reflect a textual lacuna or the practice of identifying a leader solely by patronym.
6. Ebed means 'servant' — a name expressing devotion to God.
7. Jeshaiiah means 'the LORD saves' — a shortened form of Isaiah.
8. Zebadiah means 'the LORD has bestowed'; Michael means 'who is like God?'
9. Obadiah means 'servant of the LORD' — the same name as the prophet.
10. Again the personal name of the clan leader is absent — only the patronym 'son of Josiphiah' is given. Shelomith derives from shalom ('peace').
11. The clan leader shares his ancestor's name — a common practice reflecting reverence for founding figures.
12. Hakkatan means 'the small/young one' — possibly a birth-order designation that became a family name. Johanan (Yochanan) means 'the LORD is gracious.'
13. The qualifier acharonim ('last, final') may mean this was the last remaining group of the Adonikam clan still in Babylon — after this return, the entire family had relocated to Judah.
14. The total registered males from all the listed clans is approximately 1,496. Including women, children, and servants, the full caravan may have been several thousand people.
15. The Ahava canal (or river) was likely one of the many irrigation channels in the Babylonian canal system — a staging area for the caravan. The discovery that no Levites had volunteered (mi-benei Levi lo matsati sham, 'from the sons of Levi I did not find there') confirms the ongoing Levitical recruitment crisis noted in 2:40, where only 74 Levites returned in the first wave. The Levites' reluctance to return is a persistent problem in the restoration narrative.
16. Ezra assembles a delegation of eleven men — nine designated rashim ('leaders') and two designated mevinim ('men of understanding, discerning ones'). The distinction between leadership and insight suggests different roles in the recruitment mission: some were to negotiate, others to discern the quality and suitability of volunteers. Three men named Elnathan appears — a common name meaning 'God has given.'
17. Casiphia (Kasifya) may derive from keseph ('silver'), suggesting a silver-working district in Babylon. The phrase ha-maqom ('the place') may euphemistically refer to a place of worship or study — a proto-synagogue where Levites and Temple servants had gathered. Iddo appears to be the recognized leader of this diaspora community. Ezra's scripted message (va-asimah be-fihem devarim, 'I placed words in their mouths') shows careful diplomatic preparation — he wanted the request made with exactly the right persuasive language.
18. The refrain ke-yad Eloheinu ha-tovah aleinu ('by the good hand of our God upon us') attributes the successful recruitment to divine providence. Sherebiah is singled out as ish sekhel ('a man of insight/intelligence') — high praise from a scribe who valued learning. His Levitical pedigree is traced back through Mahli to Levi to Israel (Jacob), establishing full legitimacy.
19. Merari was the third son of Levi (Genesis 46:11), and his descendants served in the most physically demanding Temple tasks (Numbers 4:29-33). The total of 38 Levites (18 + 20) is still small but sufficient for the caravan's needs.
20. This verse provides a historical note about the origin of the Temple servants: David and the officials (ha-sarim) established this institution. The phrase kullam niqgevu ve-shemot ('all of them designated by names') means every individual was formally registered — no anonymous participants. The 220 Temple servants outnumber the 38 Levites by nearly 6 to 1, reflecting the Temple servants' greater willingness to return.
21. The fast is an act of self-humbling (le-hit'annot, 'to afflict oneself') before God — the same vocabulary used for the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:29-31). Ezra seeks derekh yesharah ('a straight/right way') — both physically safe passage and divine guidance. The mention of tappenu ('our little ones, our children') makes the risk visceral — this is not abstract theology but a father's prayer for his children's safety on a dangerous road.
22. This is the chapter's most human moment. The word boshti ('I was ashamed') is unflinching self-disclosure. Ezra had made a theological claim to Artaxerxes — that God protects his people — and now he must live by it. He cannot request soldiers without contradicting his own testimony. The shame is not weakness but integrity: Ezra would rather face danger than undermine his witness. The theology is precise: yad Eloheinu al kol mevaqshav le-tovah ('the hand of our God upon all who seek him, for good') and uzzo ve-appo al kol ozevav ('his power and anger upon all who forsake him').
23. The verb vayyei'ater ('he was entreated, he answered') comes from the root atar, which carries the sense of God allowing himself to be moved by prayer. The same verb describes God responding to Isaac's prayer for Rebekah (Genesis 25:21) and David's prayer during plague (2 Samuel 24:25). The brevity of the verse — one sentence — contrasts with the intensity of the preceding confession, suggesting that God's response was immediate and complete.
24. Ezra creates a formal chain of custody for the treasure: twelve priestly leaders plus twelve Levites (Sherebiah, Hashabiah, and ten others). The number twelve continues the twelve-tribe symbolism that permeates the restoration narrative.
25. Every item is weighed (va-eshqelah, from shaqal, 'to weigh') and formally transferred. The contributors are listed: the king, his counselors, his officials, and all Israel present — a combination of imperial and Jewish donors. The verb heerimu ('contributed, lifted up') is the standard term for a dedicated offering separated from common use.

- 26.** The treasure is staggering: 650 talents of silver (approximately 48,750 pounds/22,100 kg), plus silver vessels weighing 100 talents, plus 100 talents of gold (approximately 7,500 pounds/3,400 kg). This vast fortune is traveling without military escort — the concrete reality of Ezra's faith in verse 22.
- 27.** The adarkhonim ('darics') are Persian gold coins. Twenty gold bowls valued at 1,000 darics represents enormous worth. The 'polished bronze' (nechoset mutsahav tovah) refers to a high-quality bronze alloy so bright it resembled gold — chamudot ka-zahav ('desirable as gold'). These vessels may have been made of orichalcum or a similar copper-gold alloy prized in antiquity.
- 28.** Ezra declares the custodians themselves holy (attem qodesh la-YHWH) alongside the vessels — the bearers are as consecrated as the objects they carry. The word qodesh ('holy, set apart') extends the Temple's sacred space to the road itself. The entire journey becomes a liturgical act.
- 29.** The chain of custody requires a second formal weighing at the destination — what was weighed out in Babylon must be weighed again in Jerusalem in the Temple chambers. The accountability system is rigorous: departure weight must match arrival weight. The lishkhot ('chambers, storerooms') of the Temple were the secure rooms where valuables were stored (see Nehemiah 13:4-9).
- 30.** The verb qibbelu ('accepted, received') marks the formal transfer of responsibility. From this moment, the designated priests and Levites are accountable for every ounce of treasure.
- 31.** The departure date — 12 Nisan — places them on the road just before Passover (14 Nisan), echoing the original Exodus journey. The refrain yad Eloheinu haytah aleinu ('the hand of our God was upon us') answers the faith crisis of verse 22: God did protect them. The mention of orev al ha-derekh ('ambush on the road') confirms that the danger was real — bandits and hostile groups preyed on wealthy caravans. The deliverance validates both the fast and the refusal of military escort.
- 32.** The three-day rest upon arrival echoes the three-day camp at Ahava (verse 15). The pattern — gather, fast, journey, rest — structures the entire trip as a liturgical procession. The three days also allowed the caravan to recover from the four-month journey and prepare for the formal accounting.
- 33.** Four named officials — two priests and two Levites — conduct the formal receiving audit. Meremoth son of Uriah will appear again in Nehemiah 3:4, 21 as a wall-builder. The parallel between the departure weighing (verse 25) and the arrival weighing ensures complete accountability: no discrepancy, no suspicion, no accusation of mishandling sacred funds.
- 34.** The phrase be-mispar be-mishqal la-kol ('by number and by weight — everything') indicates a complete inventory. The written record (vayyikkhatev kol ha-mishqal, 'the entire weight was written') creates a permanent document verifying that the full treasure arrived intact. This meticulous accounting reflects both practical wisdom and theological integrity — the holy offerings must be handled with transparent precision.
- 35.** The twelve bulls and twelve goats continue the twelve-tribe theology — the second wave of returnees, like the first (6:17), insists on representing all Israel. The ninety-six rams (8 x 12) and seventy-seven lambs may also carry symbolic numerical significance. The phrase ha-kol olah la-YHWH ('all of it a burnt offering to the LORD') means every animal was entirely consumed on the altar — nothing reserved for the worshippers to eat. The complete consumption expressed total dedication.
- 36.** The achashdarpnei ha-melek ('the king's satraps') are the highest-ranking Persian provincial governors — the term is a Hebrew adaptation of the Old Persian khshathrapavan ('protector of the realm'). The pachavot ('governors') are the lower-ranking provincial administrators. The verb niss'u ('they supported, lifted up') means the officials actively assisted the Jewish community, as the king had commanded. Artaxerxes' letter (7:21-24) is now being enforced by the provincial bureaucracy.

9

Summary: *Officials inform Ezra that the people of Israel — including priests and Levites — have intermarried with the surrounding peoples. Ezra is devastated. He tears his garment and robe, pulls hair from his head and beard, and sits in stunned silence until the evening offering. Then he falls on his knees and pours out a prayer of confession, acknowledging Israel's guilt and God's grace. He confesses that the remnant has violated God's commands even after the mercy of restoration, and he dares not even lift his face to God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Ezra's prayer in this chapter is one of the most theologically dense passages in the Hebrew Bible. It is not a prayer for himself — Ezra has done nothing wrong — but a corporate confession in which he identifies completely with the community's sin. The repeated pronoun 'we' (anachnu) and 'our' (avonoteinu) shows a leader who will not stand apart from the guilt of his people. The prayer is structured as a movement from acknowledgment of past judgment (verses 6-7), through recognition of present mercy (verses 8-9), to confession of present failure (verses 10-14), ending in a raw admission of guilt with no request attached (verse 15). Ezra does not ask God to forgive — he simply confesses and stops. The silence at the end of the prayer is more powerful than any petition could be. The physical gestures of mourning — tearing garments, pulling out hair, sitting in desolation — are not performance but the body expressing what words cannot contain.*

Translation Friction: The intermarriage crisis is the most theologically and ethically challenging section of Ezra. The prohibition against intermarriage draws on Deuteronomy 7:1-4, which forbids marriage with specific Canaanite nations to prevent religious syncretism. Ezra extends this prohibition to peoples not named in Deuteronomy (Ammonites, Moabites, Egyptians), using the phrase ke-to'avot ha-goyim ('like the abominations of the nations') rather than a strict legal citation. The concern is religious identity, not ethnicity per se — intermarriage threatens covenant faithfulness because foreign spouses bring foreign gods. Ruth the Moabitess, an ancestor of David, stands as a counter-example: a foreign woman who joined Israel's God and people. We render the text faithfully without sanitizing its severity or importing modern categories that the text does not use.

Connections: Ezra's posture of mourning echoes Job (Job 1:20), the mourning for Josiah (2 Chronicles 35:24-25), and Daniel's self-humbling before God (Daniel 9:3-19). The list of nations in verse 1 draws from the Deuteronomic list of prohibited peoples (Deuteronomy 7:1) but expands it. The theological vocabulary — avon ('guilt'), ashmah ('culpability'), pesha ('transgression') — links to the Day of Atonement liturgy (Leviticus 16). The phrase zera ha-qodesh ('the holy seed') in verse 2 echoes Isaiah 6:13 ('the holy seed is its stump') and establishes a connection between the remnant theology of the prophets and the community boundaries Ezra seeks to enforce.

¹When these things had been completed, the officials approached me and said, 'The people of Israel, the priests, and the Levites have not separated themselves from the peoples of the lands. They are following the detestable practices of the Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Jebusites, Ammonites, Moabites, Egyptians, and Amorites. ²They have taken some of their daughters as wives for themselves and for their sons, so that the holy seed has become mixed with the peoples of the lands. And the hand of the officials and leaders has been foremost in this unfaithfulness.' ³When I heard this, I tore my garment and my robe, pulled out hair from my head and beard, and sat down in desolation. ⁴Everyone who trembled at the words of the God of Israel gathered around me because of the unfaithfulness of the returned exiles. I sat in desolation until the evening offering. ⁵At the evening offering I rose from my humiliation, with my garment and robe torn, and fell on my knees and spread out my hands to the LORD my God. ⁶I said: 'My God, I am ashamed and humiliated to lift my face to you, my God, for our iniquities have risen over our heads and our guilt has grown up to the heavens. ⁷From the days of our ancestors until this very day we have been deep in guilt. Because of our iniquities, we — our kings and our priests — have been handed over to the kings of the lands, to the sword, to captivity, to plunder, and to open shame, as it is today. ⁸Now, for a brief moment, grace has come from the LORD our God — to leave us a remnant and to give us a secure hold in his holy place, so that our God might give light to our eyes and grant us a little relief in our servitude. ⁹For we are slaves, yet our God has not abandoned us in our slavery. He has extended faithful love to us before the kings of Persia, granting us revival — to raise up the house of our God and restore its ruins, and to give us a wall of protection in Judah and Jerusalem. ¹⁰Now, our God — what can we possibly say after all this? For we have abandoned your commandments, ¹¹which you commanded through your servants the prophets, saying: 'The land you are entering to possess is a land polluted by the impurity of the peoples of the lands, by their detestable practices. They have filled it from end to end with their uncleanness. ¹²So now: do not give your daughters to their sons or take their daughters for your sons. Do not seek their peace or prosperity — ever — so that you may be strong, eat the good of the land, and leave it as an inheritance to your children forever.' ¹³After everything that has come upon us because of our evil deeds and our enormous guilt — for you, our God, have punished us less than our iniquities deserved and have given us a remnant such as this — ¹⁴shall we again break your commandments and intermarry with the peoples who practice these detestable things? Would you not be angry with us until you had consumed us, leaving no remnant or survivor? ¹⁵LORD, God of Israel, you are righteous — for we survive as a remnant this very day. Here we are before you in our guilt, for no one can stand before you because of this.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The list of eight nations blends the traditional Deuteronomic list (Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Jebusites, Amorites — from Deuteronomy 7:1) with additional peoples (Ammonites, Moabites, Egyptians). Many of these ancient nations no longer existed as distinct entities in the post-exilic period; the names function as theological categories for the kinds of peoples whose practices threaten covenant faithfulness. The phrase ke-to'avotei hem ('according to their abominations') is the interpretive key: the issue is religious contamination, not racial purity.

1. The inclusion of priests and Levites in the accusation is devastating — the very guardians of holiness have violated the boundary they were supposed to maintain.
2. The phrase *zera ha-qodesh* ('the holy seed') is theologically loaded. It does not appear in the Torah as a designation for Israel; its closest antecedent is Isaiah 6:13. The term frames Israel's identity in terms of consecrated distinctiveness — a people set apart for God whose mixing with other peoples constitutes a violation of their holy status. The word *ma'al* ('unfaithfulness, treachery') is a technical term for sacrilege — misuse of what belongs to God (Leviticus 5:15). Intermarriage is framed not merely as a social offense but as desecration of the holy.
2. That the officials and leaders (*ha-sarim ve-ha-seganim*) were 'foremost' (*rishonah*) in the violation means this is a leadership crisis, not merely a populace problem.
3. Four physical actions express Ezra's anguish: tearing the inner garment (*beged*), tearing the outer robe (*me'il*), pulling hair from the head, and pulling hair from the beard. Hair-pulling goes beyond normal mourning rites (which involve tearing clothes) into the territory of extreme grief and self-affliction. The word *meshomem* ('desolated, stunned, appalled') describes someone struck dumb by catastrophe — the same word used for desolate ruins. Ezra becomes a living embodiment of the destruction he fears.
4. The phrase *kol chared be-divrei Elohei Yisrael* ('everyone trembling at the words of the God of Israel') describes those who take God's word with absolute seriousness — the *charedim*, a term that later designated the most devout observant community. These people gather around Ezra not for comfort but in solidarity of grief. Ezra remains silent from morning until the *minchat ha-arev* ('evening offering'), approximately 3 PM — hours of wordless anguish before he speaks.
5. Ezra's prayer posture is deliberate: kneeling (*ekhre'ah al birkai*) with hands spread open (*efresah kappai*). The open hands signify both supplication and emptiness — he approaches God with nothing to offer but confession. The timing at the evening offering connects his personal anguish to the Temple's liturgical rhythm — the daily sacrifice provides the framework for his prayer. The word *ta'aniti* ('my humiliation/affliction') comes from the same root as the Yom Kippur fasting (Leviticus 16:29).
6. The prayer opens not with praise or petition but with shame: *boshti ve-nikhlampti* ('I am ashamed and humiliated'). Two synonyms for shame express a single overwhelming emotion. Ezra cannot lift his face — the physical posture matches the spiritual condition. The imagery is of guilt as a rising flood (*rabu le-ma'lah rosh*, 'multiplied above the head') and a tower reaching heaven (*gadlah ad la-shamayim*), echoing the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4). The pronouns are corporate: *avonoteinu* ('our iniquities'), *ashmatenu* ('our guilt').
7. Ezra sweeps the entire history of Israel — *mi-yemei avoteinu* ('from the days of our ancestors') — under the verdict of guilt. The fourfold punishment (sword, captivity, plunder, shame) summarizes the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28. The phrase *boshet panim* ('shame of face') is the opposite of God's shining face (Numbers 6:25) — a community whose face is exposed in humiliation rather than illuminated by divine favor. The refrain *ke-ha-yom ha-zeh* ('as it is this day') insists that the guilt is not historical but present.
8. The prayer pivots from guilt to grace: *techinnah* ('favor, grace') from God has provided three gifts. First, *peleimah* ('a remnant, an escape') — the community itself is the gift. Second, *yated bi-meqom qodsho* ('a peg/stake in his holy place') — the word *yated* means a tent peg or nail, an image of precarious but real security. The returned community is a tent peg driven into sacred ground. Third, *le-ha'ir eineinu* ('to give light to our eyes') — a metaphor for restored vitality after near-death (see 1 Samuel 14:27-29). The word *mychyah* ('revival, sustenance') carries the sense of being brought back from the edge of death.
8. The phrase *be-avdutenu* ('in our servitude') is startling — even after the return, Ezra considers the community to be in bondage. They live on their own land but under Persian authority. The restoration is real but incomplete.
9. Ezra repeats: *avadim anachnu* ('we are slaves'). The community lives under Persian sovereignty — the restoration is genuine but the freedom is limited. Yet *lo azavanu Eloheinu* ('our God has not abandoned us') is the theological heart of the prayer. God's faithfulness persists despite the community's unfaithfulness. The word *gader* ('wall, fence') may refer literally to the city walls (under construction or planned) or metaphorically to God's protection. The phrase *vayyat aleinu chesed* ('he extended faithful love toward us') uses the key covenant term — God's *chesed* operates even in servitude.
10. The pivot *mah nomar* ('what can we say?') is a confession of speechlessness — after receiving grace, the community has sinned again, and no words can justify it. The verb *azavnu* ('we have forsaken') is the same word Ezra just used of God not forsaking them (verse 9, *lo azavanu*). The parallel is devastating: God did not abandon his people, but his people abandoned his commands.
11. Ezra attributes this command to the prophets collectively rather than citing a specific text. The words echo Deuteronomy 7:1-4 and Leviticus 18:24-30 but are not a verbatim quotation — Ezra synthesizes the prophetic tradition into a composite statement. The word *niddah* ('impurity, menstrual uncleanness') is a powerful metaphor drawn from the purity laws — the land itself is ritually contaminated by the practices of its inhabitants. The phrase *mi-peh el peh* ('from mouth to mouth,' i.e., from one end to the other) describes total contamination.
12. The prohibition against seeking 'their peace or prosperity' (*shelomam ve-tovatum*) echoes the command regarding Ammon and Moab in Deuteronomy 23:6. The promise attached — 'that you may be strong and eat the good of the land' — echoes the land promises throughout Deuteronomy. The inheritance language (*ve-horashstem li-vneikhem ad olam*, 'leave as an inheritance to your children forever') stakes the future on present obedience.
13. The phrase *chasakta le-mattah me-avonenu* ('you held back below our iniquity,' i.e., punished less than deserved) is a remarkable theological admission: the exile was not the full measure of what Israel's sin warranted. God restrained his justice. The word *peleimah* ('remnant, deliverance')

echoes verse 8 — the surviving community is itself evidence of divine restraint.

14. The question is rhetorical and devastating: *ha-nashuv le-hafer mitsvotekha* ('shall we return to breaking your commandments?'). The expected answer is no — yet the community has done exactly this. The consequence Ezra envisions is total destruction: *ad kalleh le-ein she'erit u-feleitah* ('until consumption, with no remnant or escape'). This is the prayer's deepest fear: that the remnant given by grace could be annihilated by repeated unfaithfulness.
15. The prayer ends without a request. There is no 'forgive us' or 'have mercy.' Ezra simply declares God's righteousness (*tsaddiq attah*) and the community's guilt (*be-ashmatenu*) and stops. The phrase *ki ein la'amod lefanekha al zot* ('for no one can stand before you because of this') is the final word — absolute inability to stand before a righteous God. The silence after this verse is the prayer's most powerful statement. Ezra places the community entirely at God's disposal, making no claim on mercy, offering no defense, requesting no pardon. The response will come from the community itself in chapter 10.

10

Summary: *While Ezra prays and weeps before the Temple, a large crowd gathers and weeps with him. Shecaniah son of Jehiel proposes a covenant to send away the foreign wives and their children. Ezra makes the priests, Levites, and all Israel swear an oath to do this. He then withdraws to fast. A proclamation orders all returnees to assemble in Jerusalem within three days or forfeit their property and be expelled from the community. The assembly meets in the rain and agrees to the mass divorce. A commission is appointed to investigate case by case. The chapter ends with a detailed list of those found guilty — priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, and laypeople — and notes that some of these wives had borne children.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter describes one of the most wrenching events in biblical history — the systematic dissolution of marriages between Israelite men and foreign women. The text does not celebrate this action; it narrates it with a kind of grim determination. The weeping of the assembly (verse 1) is not merely penitential — it reflects the human cost of what is being demanded. The rain pouring on the open-air assembly (verse 9) mirrors the tears. Shecaniah's proposal uses the language of hope ('there is still hope for Israel,' verse 2), but the hope requires devastating personal sacrifice. The chapter ends abruptly with the list of offenders and the note about children — *ve-yesh mehem nashim va-yasimu banim* ('and some of them had wives by whom they had children,' verse 44). That single sentence is the book's most haunting line. The text acknowledges the human wreckage without comment, leaving the reader to reckon with the cost of covenant purity.*

Translation Friction: *This chapter raises the sharpest ethical questions in the book. The modern reader recoils at the forced dissolution of families, and the text itself does not fully resolve the tension. The justification is theological: intermarriage threatens the covenant community's faithfulness to God, and the exile itself was caused by such unfaithfulness. Deuteronomy 7:1-4 provides the legal basis. Yet Ruth the Moabitess was welcomed into Israel and became David's ancestor, and Deuteronomy 21:10-14 provides for marriage with captured foreign women. The difference, as the text presents it, is assimilation versus conversion: Ruth joined Israel's God; these marriages apparently did not involve the wives' conversion. We render the text without softening or condemning — the narrative speaks for itself, including its disturbing final verse.*

Connections: *Shecaniah's proposal echoes the covenant renewal patterns of Joshua 24, 2 Kings 23, and Nehemiah 10. The three-day deadline (verse 8) parallels Joshua's three-day preparation for entering the land (Joshua 1:11). The property forfeiture and community expulsion (*cherem*, verse 8) echo the holy war language of Joshua 6-7. Nehemiah will face the same intermarriage problem (Nehemiah 13:23-27) and respond with physical violence rather than legal process, making Ezra's committee approach appear restrained by comparison. The final list of offenders parallels the returnee lists of chapters 2 and 8, but this time the names carry shame rather than honor.*

¹While Ezra was praying and confessing, weeping and throwing himself down before the house of God, a very large assembly of Israelites gathered around him — men, women, and children — for the people were weeping bitterly. ²Shecaniah son of Jehiel, one of the descendants of Elam, spoke up and said to Ezra, 'We have been unfaithful to our God and have married foreign women from the peoples of the land. But even now, there is hope for Israel in this matter. ³Now let us make a

covenant with our God to send away all these wives and the children born to them, following the counsel of my lord and of those who tremble at the command of our God. Let it be done according to the Law. ⁴Rise up, for this matter falls to you, and we are with you. Be strong, and act.' ⁵Then Ezra stood up and made the leading priests, the Levites, and all Israel swear to do as had been proposed. And they swore. ⁶Then Ezra withdrew from the front of the house of God and went to the chamber of Jehohanan son of Eliashib. He went there and neither ate food nor drank water, for he was mourning over the unfaithfulness of the exiles. ⁷A proclamation was issued throughout Judah and Jerusalem to all the returned exiles, ordering them to assemble in Jerusalem. ⁸Anyone who did not appear within three days, as the officials and elders directed, would have all his property confiscated and would himself be expelled from the assembly of the exiles. ⁹All the men of Judah and Benjamin assembled in Jerusalem within the three days. It was the ninth month, on the twentieth of the month. All the people sat in the open square of the house of God, trembling because of the matter and because of the heavy rain. ¹⁰Ezra the priest stood and said to them, 'You have been unfaithful. You have married foreign women, adding to the guilt of Israel. ¹¹Now make confession to the LORD, the God of your ancestors, and do his will. Separate yourselves from the peoples of the land and from the foreign wives.' ¹²The whole assembly responded in a loud voice: 'Yes! As you have said, so we must do. ¹³But the people are many, and it is the rainy season, and we cannot stand outside. Besides, this is not the work of one or two days, for we have sinned greatly in this matter. ¹⁴Let our officials represent the whole assembly. Let everyone in our towns who has married a foreign woman come at designated times, accompanied by the elders and judges of each town, until the burning anger of our God over this matter has turned away from us.' ¹⁵Only Jonathan son of Asahel and Jahzeiah son of Tikvah opposed this, with Meshullam and Shabbethai the Levite supporting them. ¹⁶The returned exiles did as proposed. Ezra the priest selected men who were heads of ancestral houses, all designated by name. They convened on the first day of the tenth month to investigate the matter. ¹⁷They finished investigating all the men who had married foreign women by the first day of the first month. ¹⁸Among the priests who had married foreign women were found: from the descendants of Jeshua son of Jozadak and his brothers — Maaseiah, Eliezer, Jarib, and Gedaliah. ¹⁹They pledged to send away their wives, and since they were guilty, they offered a ram from the flock for their guilt. ²⁰From the descendants of Immer: Hanani and Zebadiah. ²¹From the descendants of Harim: Maaseiah, Elijah, Shemaiah, Jehiel, and Uziah. ²²From the descendants of Pashhur: Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael, Nethanel, Jozabad, and Elasa. ²³Among the Levites: Jozabad, Shimei, Kelaiah (also known as Kelita), Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer. ²⁴From the singers: Eliashib. From the gatekeepers: Shallum, Telem, and Uri. ²⁵From the rest of Israel — from the descendants of Parosh: Ramiah, Izziah, Malchijah, Mijamin, Eleazar, Malchijah, and Benaiah. ²⁶From the descendants of Elam: Mattaniah, Zechariah, Jehiel, Abdi, Jeremoth, and Elijah. ²⁷From the descendants of Zattu: Elioenai, Eliashib, Mattaniah, Jeremoth, Zabad, and Aziza. ²⁸From the descendants of Bebai: Jehohanan, Hananiah, Zabbai, and Athlai. ²⁹From the descendants of Bani: Meshullam, Malluch, Adaiah, Jashub, Sheal, and Jeremoth. ³⁰From the descendants of Pahath-moab: Adna, Chelal, Benaiah, Maaseiah, Mattaniah, Bezalel, Binnui, and Manasseh. ³¹From the descendants of Harim: Eliezer, Ishijah, Malchijah, Shemaiah, Shimeon, ³²Benjamin, Malluch, and Shemariah. ³³From the descendants of Hashum: Mattenai, Mattattah, Zabad, Eliphelet, Jeremai, Manasseh, and Shimei. ³⁴From the descendants of Bani: Maadai, Amram, and Uel, ³⁵Benaiah, Bedeiah, Cheluhu, ³⁶Vaniah, Meremoth, Eliashib, ³⁷Mattaniah, Mattenai, and Jaasu, ³⁸and Bani, Binnui, Shimei, ³⁹Shelemiah, Nathan, and Adaiah, ⁴⁰Machnadebai, Shashai, Sharai, ⁴¹Azarel, Shelemiah, Shemariah, ⁴²Shallum, Amariah, and Joseph. ⁴³From the descendants of Nebo: Jeiel, Mattithiah, Zabad, Zebina, Jaddai, Joel, and Benaiah. ⁴⁴All of these had married foreign women. And some of them had wives by whom they had children.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scene is public and communal: Ezra's private grief has become a corporate event. The inclusion of men, women, and children (anashim ve-nashim vi-ladim) means entire families participated in the mourning — including, presumably, some of the very women and children who would be affected by the coming action. The phrase bakhu ha-am harbeh vekheh ('the people wept much weeping') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis: they wept with weeping.
2. Shecaniah's opening is simultaneously an admission of guilt and an assertion of hope: anachnu ma'alnu be-Eloheinu ('we have been unfaithful to our God') followed by yesh miqveh le-Yisrael ('there is hope for Israel'). The word miqveh ('hope, expectation') is the same word used in Jeremiah 17:13 ('the LORD, the hope of Israel'). Remarkably, Shecaniah's own father Jehiel appears in the list of offenders (verse 26), meaning Shecaniah is

proposing action that implicates his own family.

3. Shecaniah proposes a formal berit ('covenant') — a binding agreement before God. The scope is total: kol nashim ve-ha-nolad mehem ('all the wives and those born from them'). The children are included because they represent the mixed lineage that threatens covenant identity. The phrase ba-atsat Adonai ('by the counsel of my lord') defers to Ezra's authority. The phrase ve-kha-Torah ye'aseh ('and according to the Torah let it be done') grounds the action in legal authority, though the specific Torah text authorizing mass divorce is debated — Deuteronomy 24:1-4 permits divorce but does not command it.
4. Shecaniah's exhortation echoes the charge given to Joshua: chazaq va-aseh ('be strong and act,' 1 Chronicles 28:10, 20). The words are encouraging but they also place the full weight of responsibility on Ezra: alekha ha-davar ('the matter is upon you'). The community pledges support (anachnu immakh, 'we are with you') but the decision and its consequences rest on Ezra's shoulders.
5. Ezra moves from prayer to action. He extracts an oath (vayyashba, 'he caused to swear') from the entire leadership structure — priests, Levites, and the whole assembly. The oath binds them before God. The final word vayyishave'u ('and they swore') is terse and absolute — there is no recorded dissent.
6. Ezra's fast is total — no food, no water. The chamber of Jehohanan son of Eliashib was likely a Temple storeroom used by the priestly administration. If this Eliashib is the high priest of Nehemiah's time (Nehemiah 3:1), the chronological relationship between Ezra and Nehemiah becomes complex. The mourning (mit'abel, 'grieving, lamenting') continues even after the oath, showing that the resolution brings no joy to Ezra.
7. The verb vayyya'aviru qol ('they caused a voice to pass') describes a herald going through the territory with an official announcement. The summons covers all of Judah and Jerusalem — every member of the exilic community is called.
8. The penalty for non-compliance is severe: yocharam kol rekhusho ('all his property will be devoted to destruction'). The word cherem is the same term used for the total destruction of Jericho (Joshua 6:17-18) — property placed under the ban belongs to God and is removed from human use. Expulsion from the community (yibadel mi-qahal ha-golah) means loss of identity as an Israelite. The three-day deadline (given the distances involved in Judah) shows urgency.
9. The ninth month (Kislev, November-December) is the beginning of the rainy season in Judah. The people sit in the open square (rechof beit ha-Elohim) with no shelter, drenched by rain. The word mar'idim ('trembling') describes physical shaking caused by both fear and cold. The double cause — al ha-davar u-me-ha-geshamim ('because of the matter and because of the rains') — is grimly observed by the narrator. The weather mirrors the emotional desolation.
10. Ezra's charge is direct: attem me'altem ('you have been unfaithful'). The verb ma'al is the same sacrilege term from 9:2. The phrase le-hosif al ashmat Yisrael ('to add to the guilt of Israel') means this intermarriage compounds the nation's already-existing burden of guilt — the guilt that caused the exile in the first place.
11. The command tenu todah ('give confession/thanks') is ambiguous — todah can mean either 'thanksgiving' or 'confession.' In context, it means both: confess the sin and acknowledge God's right to demand obedience. The phrase va-asu retsono ('do his will/pleasure') uses ratson, which implies willing, delighted obedience. The command ve-hibbadelu ('separate yourselves') uses the same root (badal) that describes God's creative separating in Genesis 1 — a re-creation of holy boundaries.
12. The assembly's response is unanimous and emphatic: ken ki-devarekha aleinu la'asot ('yes, according to your word — it is upon us to do'). The word aleinu ('upon us') accepts responsibility — this is not imposed from outside but owned by the community.
13. Practical reality intervenes: the crowd is too large, the rain too heavy, and the cases too numerous for an outdoor mass proceeding. The admission ki hirbinu lifshoa ('for we have greatly transgressed') acknowledges the scale of the problem — this is not a few isolated cases but a widespread failure.
14. The proposal creates a judicial process rather than a mob action: designated officials, scheduled hearings, local elders and judges as witnesses. Each case will be examined individually (le-ittim mezumanim, 'at appointed/designated times'). The goal is explicitly theological: le-hashiv charon af Eloheinu ('to turn back the burning anger of our God'). The community fears that God's wrath will destroy the remnant if the problem is not resolved.
15. The phrase amdu al zot ('stood against this') is ambiguous — it could mean they 'were appointed over this matter' (supervised the process) or 'stood in opposition to this' (dissented). Most interpreters read it as opposition, since the Hebrew al in this construction typically means 'against' rather than 'over.' If this is dissent, the text records it without comment — four men opposed the mass divorce, and the narrative simply notes their names and moves on. This is the only recorded opposition.
16. The commission began its work on 1 Tevet (approximately December-January) — ten days after the assembly. Ezra chose the investigators from the ancestral house leaders, each named and accountable. The verb lidrosh ha-davar ('to investigate the matter') uses the same root darash ('to seek, inquire') that defines Ezra's own vocation (7:10). The investigation is conducted with the same scholarly rigor Ezra applies to Torah.
17. The investigation took three months (from 1 Tevet to 1 Nisan). The thoroughness is deliberate — every case was examined individually, with local elders and judges participating (verse 14). The completion date — 1 Nisan, the first day of the first month — coincides with the new year. The purification is complete as a new year begins.
18. The list of offenders begins with the most devastating category: the descendants of Jeshua the high priest himself. The high-priestly family — the very line that led the restoration — is implicated. This explains the depth of Ezra's grief: the corruption reaches the highest level of religious leadership.

- 19.** The phrase vayyittenu yadam ('they gave their hands') means they made a solemn handshake — a physical gesture of binding commitment. The guilt offering (eil tson, 'a ram of the flock') follows the asham regulation of Leviticus 5:14-19 — a ram offered for sacrilege against holy things. The intermarriage is treated as a trespass against the holy, requiring both repentance and ritual sacrifice.
- 20.** The Immer priestly division (see 2:37) has two offenders listed.
- 21.** Five offenders from the Harim priestly family — the largest priestly contingent on the list.
- 22.** Six offenders from the Pashhur priestly family.
- 23.** Six Levites are named. Given that only 74 Levites returned in the first wave and perhaps 38 more with Ezra, six offenders represents a significant proportion of the Levitical community.
- 24.** One singer and three gatekeepers are named. The list moves systematically through every category of Temple personnel before turning to the laity — no class is exempt from scrutiny.
- 25.** The lay list begins with the Parosh clan — the same family that headed the returnee list in 2:3. Seven names are listed. Malchijah appears twice, indicating either two people with the same name or a textual issue.
- 26.** Jehiel — the father of Shecaniah who proposed the covenant (verse 2) — appears here. Shecaniah proposed the dissolution of marriages knowing his own father was an offender. The personal cost of his proposal becomes visible.
- 27.** Six offenders from the Zattu clan.
- 28.** Four offenders from the Bebai clan.
- 29.** Six offenders from the Bani clan.
- 30.** Eight offenders from the large Pahath-moab clan — the most of any single lay family.
- 31.** The Harim clan's lay members now appear (distinct from the priestly Harim in verse 21).
- 32.** Three more from the Harim clan, completing eight names total for this family.
- 33.** Seven offenders from the Hashum clan.
- 34.** The Bani clan appears again (compare verse 29), perhaps representing a different branch of the same family.
- 35.** Three more from the Bani clan.
- 36.** Three more names continue the Bani clan list.
- 37.** Three more from Bani, bringing the total to approximately twelve — the largest single family grouping on the offenders list.
- 38.** The list continues with names that may be additional Bani clan members or a new sub-group.
- 39.** Three more names in the continuing sequence.
- 40.** Machnadebai is an unusual name — possibly Persian in origin or a corrupted Hebrew form.
- 41.** Three more names. Shemariah ('the LORD has guarded') appears also in verse 32 — different individuals from different clans.
- 42.** The name Joseph (Yosef) is rare in the post-exilic lists, connecting this individual to the patriarchal tradition.
- 43.** Seven offenders from the Nebo clan conclude the geographic/clan section of the list. The total number of named offenders is approximately 111 — a significant number from a community of 42,360.
- 44.** The book of Ezra ends with this devastating understatement. The phrase ve-yesh mehem nashim vayyasimu banim ('and some of them were women, and they had produced children') acknowledges the human reality behind the legal process: these were not abstract cases but families with children. The children are mentioned last, as if the narrator cannot bring himself to say more. The sentence names no names, assigns no blame to the women, and offers no resolution. The book simply stops. There is no triumphant conclusion, no word of divine approval, no prayer of thanksgiving. The silence after this final verse forces the reader to sit with the cost of what has been done — a cost the narrator will not pretend to resolve.

Nehemiah

Summary: *Nehemiah, a Jewish cupbearer serving Persia's King Artaxerxes at the citadel of Susa, receives devastating news: Jerusalem's walls are broken and its gates burned. He collapses into mourning, fasting, and prayer. His prayer is one of the most theologically structured in the Hebrew Bible — confession, covenant appeal, and petition woven into a single act of intercession for the scattered nation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Nehemiah's prayer is a masterwork of covenant logic. He does not beg on the basis of Israel's goodness — he confesses their sin openly, including his own family's guilt. Instead, he anchors his petition in God's own promises: the covenant formula (berit and chesed), the conditional promise of Deuteronomy 30 (scatter-and-gather), and God's past act of redemption from Egypt. The structure mirrors Solomon's prayer at the Temple dedication (1 Kings 8:46-53), which asked God to hear prayers directed 'toward this place' — and Nehemiah is doing exactly that from exile. The cupbearer role is not incidental: in the Persian court, the cupbearer was a trusted confidant with direct royal access. Nehemiah's position is the narrative mechanism God will use to rebuild Jerusalem's defenses.*

Translation Friction: *The dating formula in verse 1 ('the month of Kislev, in the twentieth year') does not specify the king, which the reader must supply from 2:1 (Artaxerxes I). The 'twentieth year' is approximately 445 BCE. The phrase 'who escaped, who survived the captivity' (ha-peletah asher nish'aru min ha-shevi) is ambiguous — it could refer to Jews who survived the original exile or to those who had returned but still lived precariously. We render it as those who had survived and remained, capturing the ongoing vulnerability. The Hebrew asher lo in verse 3 presents the walls as actively 'broken through' (meforats) rather than merely 'in ruins,' implying recent damage — possibly the events alluded to in Ezra 4:23.*

Connections: *Nehemiah's prayer draws heavily on Deuteronomy's covenant framework, specifically Deuteronomy 7:9 (God keeping covenant and faithful love with those who love him) and Deuteronomy 30:1-5 (the promise that even after scattering, God will gather the people if they return to Torah). The phrase 'your servants whom you redeemed by your great power and strong hand' echoes the Exodus language of Deuteronomy 9:29. Nehemiah's identification with national sin ('I and my father's house have sinned') mirrors Daniel's prayer in Daniel 9:4-19, which uses nearly identical covenant vocabulary. Both men pray from foreign capitals, confess corporate guilt, and appeal to God's character rather than Israel's merit.*

¹The words of Nehemiah son of Hacaliah. It happened in the month of Kislev, in the twentieth year, while I was in the citadel of Susa. ²Hanani, one of my brothers, arrived along with some men from Judah. I asked them about the Jewish survivors — those who had come through the exile — and about Jerusalem. ³They told me, "The survivors there in the province — those who came through the exile — are in terrible trouble and disgrace. The wall of Jerusalem is broken through, and its gates have been burned with fire." ⁴When I heard this report, I sat down and wept. I mourned for days, fasting and praying before the God of heaven. ⁵I said: "Please, LORD, God of heaven — the great and awe-inspiring God who keeps covenant and faithful love for those who love him and keep his commands — ⁶Let your ear be attentive and your eyes open, to hear the prayer of your servant that I am praying before you now — day and night — on behalf of the Israelites, your servants. I confess the sins of the Israelites that we have committed against you. I myself and my father's house have sinned. ⁷We have acted utterly corruptly against you. We have not kept the commands, the statutes, or the rules that you gave to your servant Moses. ⁸Remember the word you commanded your servant Moses: 'If you act unfaithfully, I will scatter you among the peoples.' ⁹'But if you return to me and keep my commands and do them — even if your outcasts are at the farthest horizon of the sky — from there I will gather them and bring them to the place I have chosen for my name to dwell.' ¹⁰They are your servants and your people, whom you redeemed by your great power and your strong hand. ¹¹Please, Lord, let your ear be attentive to the prayer of your servant and to the prayers of your servants who delight in revering your name. Give your servant success today, and grant him compassion before this man." I was the king's cupbearer.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The name Nehemiah (Nechemyah) means 'the LORD has comforted' — from nacham ('to comfort, to relent'). His father Hacaliah (Chakalyah) appears nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible. The month Kislev corresponds to November-December. 'The twentieth year' refers to Artaxerxes I's reign (approximately 445 BCE), established in 2:1. The term birah ('citadel, palace fortress') designates the royal administrative complex at Susa, the Persian winter capital.
2. Hanani is identified as 'one of my brothers' (echad me-achai), which could mean a literal sibling or a kinsman. In 7:2 Nehemiah will appoint Hanani as co-commander of Jerusalem, suggesting a close family bond. The phrase ha-peletah asher nish'aru min ha-shevi ('the survivors who remained from the captivity') is ambiguous — it may mean those who survived the original deportation or those still living in Judah after the return. The verb sha'al ('to ask, inquire') shows Nehemiah actively seeking intelligence about the homeland.
3. The report uses two words for the people's condition: ra'ah gedolah ('great trouble/calamity') and cherpah ('reproach, disgrace'). The cherpah is not merely internal suffering but public shame — the people are exposed and humiliated before neighboring peoples. The wall (chomah) is described as meforatset ('broken through, breached') — a participle suggesting an ongoing state of vulnerability. The gates (she'arim) burned with fire (nitsetsu va-esh) means the city has no defensible entry points and no ability to control access. Without walls and gates, a city in the ancient Near East had no legal standing as a city.
4. Nehemiah's response follows the full mourning sequence: sitting (yashavti), weeping (va-evkeh), mourning (va-et'ablah), fasting (tsam), and praying (mitpallel). This is not a brief emotional reaction but sustained lament lasting 'days' (yamim). The title 'God of heaven' (Elohei ha-shamayim) is characteristic of the Persian period — it appears in Ezra, Nehemiah, and Daniel, and may reflect how Jews described their God to Persian authorities, who would recognize this as a supreme deity title compatible with their own religious framework.
5. The prayer opens with anna ('please, I beg') — a particle of urgent supplication. The description of God as ha-gadol ve-ha-nora ('the great and the awe-inspiring') echoes Deuteronomy 7:21 and 10:17. The phrase shomer ha-berit va-chesed ('who keeps covenant and faithful love') is a direct quotation of Deuteronomy 7:9. Nehemiah does not improvise his theology — he prays Scripture back to God, building his case on God's own self-description.
6. Nehemiah asks God to engage with both ear (ozen) and eyes (einayim) — the full attention of the divine person. The shift from third person ('the Israelites, your servants') to first person ('we have sinned... I and my father's house have sinned') is theologically critical. Nehemiah does not stand outside the nation's guilt as an intercessor pointing at others; he includes himself and his own family in the confession. This mirrors Daniel's prayer (Daniel 9:5-6, 'we have sinned') and reflects the corporate solidarity that characterizes biblical intercession.
7. The infinitive absolute chabol chabaltu ('corrupting, we have corrupted') is Hebrew's strongest intensifier — 'we have been thoroughly, completely corrupt.' The three-fold legal terminology — mitsvot ('commands'), chuqqim ('statutes'), mishpatim ('rules, judgments') — refers to the full body of Mosaic instruction. Nehemiah does not specify particular sins but confesses a comprehensive failure to observe Torah. Moses is called 'your servant' (avdekha), establishing the prophetic authority chain: God commanded Moses, Moses commanded Israel, Israel disobeyed.
8. The verb zakar ('remember') is not a request for God to recall forgotten information — it is a covenant term meaning 'act on what you have committed to.' When God 'remembers,' he activates his promises. Nehemiah quotes the scattering warning from Deuteronomy (see Deuteronomy 4:27, 28:64), but his point is not the threat — it is the promise that follows. The verb ma'al ('act unfaithfully, be treacherous') implies betrayal of a trust relationship, not merely breaking rules.

9. The verb *shuv* ('return, turn back') is the Hebrew Bible's primary word for repentance — it is directional, not merely emotional. The promise structure mirrors Deuteronomy 30:1-5 closely, though Nehemiah paraphrases rather than quoting verbatim. The phrase *leshakken et shemi sham* ('to cause my name to dwell there') is the Deuteronomic theology of divine presence — God's 'name' represents his accessible presence without implying spatial limitation. This theology directly motivates the wall-building project: the place where God's name dwells must be restored.
10. Nehemiah's argument shifts from covenant promise to Exodus memory. The verb *padah* ('redeemed') specifically denotes liberation by payment or force — it is the Exodus verb par excellence (Deuteronomy 9:26, 'your people whom you redeemed'). The phrase *bekokhakha ha-gadol uvyadekha ha-chazaqah* ('by your great power and your strong hand') is drawn directly from Deuteronomy 9:29. Nehemiah's logic: these people already belong to you — you already paid for them. To abandon them would contradict your own redemptive act.
11. The prayer ends with a concrete request: success (*hatslachah*) 'today' and compassion (*rachamim*) 'before this man.' The unnamed 'man' is King Artaxerxes — Nehemiah refers to the Persian emperor simply as *ha-ish ha-zeh* ('this man'), a striking understatement in a prayer addressed to the God of heaven. The term *mashqeh* ('cupbearer') denotes a court official who tasted the king's wine to ensure it was not poisoned — a position of intimate trust and regular access to the monarch.
11. The phrase *ha-chafetsim leyir'ah et shemekha* ('who delight in revering your name') describes a community motivated not by obligation but by desire (*chafets* means 'to delight in, to take pleasure in'). This is not dutiful obedience but willing worship. Nehemiah presents God with a community worth saving — people who want to honor him.

2

Summary: *Four months after hearing the news about Jerusalem, Nehemiah serves wine to King Artaxerxes with visible grief — an extremely dangerous act in the Persian court, where displaying sadness before the king could be interpreted as disloyalty. Artaxerxes notices and asks. Nehemiah prays silently and then makes his request: permission and resources to rebuild Jerusalem's walls. The king grants everything. Nehemiah travels to Judah, secretly inspects the ruined walls at night, and then reveals his plan to the Jewish leaders, who commit to rebuilding. Sanballat and Tobiah immediately begin their opposition.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter pivots on a single moment of terrifying vulnerability: a Jewish cupbearer letting his grief show before the most powerful man in the world. The phrase 'I was very much afraid' (*va-ira harbeh me'od*) is Nehemiah's honest admission that he was not acting from courage but from desperation. His silent prayer ('I prayed to the God of heaven') happens in real time, between the king's question and his own answer — a prayer wedged into a court conversation. The night inspection of the walls is a masterclass in leadership: Nehemiah gathers intelligence before making any public commitment, tells no one his plan, and only reveals his vision when he has both royal authorization and personal knowledge of the situation.*

Translation Friction: *The timeline between 1:1 (Kislev = November-December) and 2:1 (Nisan = March-April) raises questions — did Nehemiah wait four months to act, or did he not have a serving rotation until Nisan? We cannot determine this from the text. The phrase 'the city of my fathers' graves' (*ir qivrot avotai*) is Nehemiah's way of framing Jerusalem to a Persian king who would understand ancestral burial rights as a legitimate concern — this is diplomatic language, not theological language. Nehemiah does not mention God, the Temple, or Israel's covenant to Artaxerxes. The identity of 'the governor of the province Beyond the River' (*pachat ever ha-nahar*) is unspecified; this was the satrapy that included Judah.*

Connections: *Nehemiah's fearful prayer before speaking to the king parallels Esther's approach to Ahasuerus (Esther 4:16-5:2) — both Jews risk death by approaching a Persian king uninvited or with unwelcome emotion. The letters of safe passage Nehemiah receives mirror Ezra's authorization (Ezra 7:11-26). Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem the Arab (v. 19) will be the persistent antagonists throughout the book, representing regional political opposition to Judah's restoration from Samaria, Ammon, and Arabia respectively.*

¹In the month of Nisan, in the twentieth year of King Artaxerxes, wine was set before him. I picked up the wine and served it to the king. I had never before appeared downcast in his presence. ²The king said to me, "Why does your face look bad when you are not sick? This can only be grief of heart." I was terrified. ³I said to the king, "May the king live forever! How could my face not look bad? The city where my ancestors are buried lies in ruins, and its gates have been consumed by fire." ⁴The king said to me, "What are you requesting?" I prayed to the God of heaven, ⁵and I said to the king, "If it pleases the king, and if your servant has found favor in your sight, send me to Judah, to the city of my ancestors' graves, so that I may rebuild it." ⁶T

he king — with the queen sitting beside him — said to me, "How long will your journey take, and when will you return?" The king was willing to send me, and I gave him a date. ⁷I also said to the king, "If it pleases the king, let letters be given to me for the governors of the province Beyond the River, so they will grant me passage until I reach Judah, ⁸and a letter to Asaph, keeper of the royal forest, so that he will give me timber for beams for the gates of the citadel by the Temple, for the city wall, and for the house I will live in." The king granted my requests, because the good hand of my God was on me. ⁹I came to the governors of the province Beyond the River and presented the king's letters to them. The king had also sent army officers and cavalry with me. ¹⁰When Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the Ammonite official heard about this, it infuriated them that someone had come to seek the welfare of the Israelites. ¹¹I arrived in Jerusalem and stayed there three days. ¹²I got up during the night — I and a few men with me. I had told no one what my God had put in my heart to do for Jerusalem. There was no animal with me except the one I was riding. ¹³I went out at night through the Valley Gate, past the Dragon Spring, and on to the Dung Gate, examining the walls of Jerusalem that had been broken through and the gates that had been consumed by fire. ¹⁴I moved on to the Fountain Gate and to the King's Pool, but there was no room for the animal beneath me to get through. ¹⁵So I went up along the valley by night, examining the wall. Then I turned back and re-entered through the Valley Gate, and returned. ¹⁶The officials did not know where I had gone or what I was doing. Until that point I had told nothing to the Judeans — not to the priests, the nobles, the officials, or anyone else who would be doing the work. ¹⁷Then I said to them, "You see the trouble we are in — Jerusalem lies in ruins, and its gates have been burned with fire. Come, let us rebuild the wall of Jerusalem, so that we will no longer be a disgrace." ¹⁸I told them how the hand of my God had been graciously upon me, and also what the king had said to me. They responded, "Let us get up and build!" And they committed themselves to the good work. ¹⁹When Sanballat the Horonite, Tobiah the Ammonite official, and Geshem the Arab heard about it, they mocked us and looked down on us. They said, "What is this you are doing? Are you rebelling against the king?" ²⁰I answered them, "The God of heaven will give us success. We, his servants, will get up and build. But you have no share, no claim, and no remembered name in Jerusalem."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Nisan is the first month of the Jewish calendar (March-April), approximately four months after Kislev (1:1). The note that Nehemiah had 'never been downcast before him' (lo hayiti ra lefanav) sets up the danger: court protocol demanded a composed, pleasant demeanor. The word ra ('bad, downcast') here refers to facial expression, not moral character.
2. The king's observation is diagnostic: 'you are not sick' (einekha choleh) eliminates the physical explanation, leaving only 'grief of heart' (ro'a lev). In a Persian court, unexplained sadness before the king could be construed as dissatisfaction or disloyalty — potentially a capital offense. Nehemiah's response, va-ira harbeh me'od ('I was afraid, very greatly'), uses a triple intensification: the verb 'feared,' the adverb 'greatly,' and the additional intensifier me'od ('very'). This is genuine terror, not literary convention.
3. Nehemiah's response is a diplomatic masterpiece. He opens with the standard court greeting ('May the king live forever') to normalize the exchange. He frames Jerusalem not in religious terms but as 'the city where my ancestors' graves are' (ha-ir beit qivrot avotai) — invoking ancestral burial rights, which Persian culture deeply respected. He never says 'Jerusalem' or 'Israel' or 'God' in this conversation. The verb charevah ('lies desolate, in ruins') and the burning gates create a picture designed to move a Persian king, who valued well-ordered cities.
4. The question 'What are you requesting?' (al mah zeh attah mevaqesh) opens the door. Between the king's question and Nehemiah's answer, a prayer happens — va-etpallel el Elohei ha-shamayim ('I prayed to the God of heaven'). This is the most compressed prayer in the Hebrew Bible: a real-time prayer during a live conversation with the king. No words are recorded; the act itself is noted. Nehemiah's habit of prayer (1:4-11) has trained him for this instant.
5. The double conditional ('if it pleases the king... if your servant has found favor') is standard Persian court rhetoric — deferential and careful. Nehemiah again uses 'the city of my ancestors' graves' rather than naming Jerusalem, maintaining his diplomatic framing. The verb ve-evnennah ('and I will build it') is bold — a cupbearer proposing a construction project. The specificity of 'Judah' names the destination for the first time in the conversation.
6. The parenthetical note about the queen (ha-shegal yoshevet etslo) is one of the most discussed asides in Nehemiah. The word shegal is a rare term for the queen consort (it appears also in Psalm 45:10 and Daniel 5:2-3). Her presence may explain the informal atmosphere that made Nehemiah's emotional display possible, or may suggest she influenced the favorable outcome. The text does not say. Nehemiah set a specific return date (zeman), implying a planned temporary absence — though he will remain in Judah for twelve years (5:14).
7. Nehemiah now negotiates logistics. The iggrot ('letters') are official royal documents — essentially a passport and safe-conduct. The pachavot ever ha-nahar ('governors of the province Beyond the River') refers to officials in the Trans-Euphrates satrapy, the large administrative region west of the

Euphrates that included Syria, Phoenicia, and Judah. Without these letters, Nehemiah could be stopped or killed as an unauthorized traveler through imperial territory.

8. Asaph (not the psalmist) manages the royal *pardes* — a Persian loanword that gives us 'paradise,' meaning a cultivated park or forest preserve. The timber is needed for three projects: the gates of the *birah* (citadel-fortress adjacent to the Temple), the city wall, and Nehemiah's personal residence. Nehemiah attributes the king's generosity to *keyad Elohai ha-tovah alai* ('the good hand of my God upon me') — a phrase he shares with Ezra (Ezra 7:6, 28; 8:18). It is their shared conviction that royal favor is God's doing.
9. Unlike Ezra, who refused a military escort as a statement of faith (Ezra 8:22), Nehemiah accepts one. The *sarei chayil ufarashim* ('army commanders and horsemen') are a Persian military escort. This difference between Ezra and Nehemiah is not theological contradiction but distinct personalities and situations — Nehemiah is a royal official on imperial business, and the escort signals to regional governors that this mission has full royal backing.
10. Sanballat ha-Choroni ('the Horonite') is likely from Beth-horon in Samaria; he appears in the Elephantine papyri as the governor of Samaria. Tobiah ha-eved ha-Ammoni is 'the Ammonite servant/official' — the word *eved* ('servant') here likely means 'official' in the Persian administrative sense, not a slave. He governed Transjordan. Their opposition is political: a strong, walled Jerusalem threatens their regional power. The phrase *vayyera lahem ra'ah gedolah* ('it was evil to them, a great evil') indicates that they considered Nehemiah's arrival a serious threat.
11. The three-day rest period mirrors Ezra's arrival pattern (Ezra 8:32). This was standard practice after a long journey — rest, orient, and prepare. Nehemiah uses this time to observe before acting. He reveals nothing about his plans.
12. The secrecy is deliberate and strategic: *lo higgadti le-adam* ('I had told no one'). Nehemiah takes only a small group and one mount — minimizing noise and attention. The phrase *mah Elohai noten el libbi* ('what my God was putting into my heart') attributes his plan to divine initiative. The night inspection allows him to assess the damage without interference from opponents or premature enthusiasm from allies.
13. The Valley Gate (*sha'ar ha-gai*) opened onto the Hinnom Valley on Jerusalem's western side. The Dragon Spring (*ein ha-tannin*) is debated — *tannin* means 'serpent' or 'dragon,' and the spring may have been named for its appearance or for a local tradition. The Dung Gate (*sha'ar ha-ashpot*) was where refuse was carried out of the city. Nehemiah's route follows the southern and western walls. The verb *sover* ('examining, inspecting') implies careful, detailed observation — this is a surveyor's inspection, not a casual ride.
14. The Fountain Gate (*sha'ar ha-ayin*) was on the southeastern side near the Siloam pool area. The King's Pool (*berekhat ha-melekh*) may be the Pool of Siloam or a reservoir in the Kidron Valley. The rubble was so extensive that even a single mount could not pass — this detail vividly conveys the scale of destruction. Nehemiah is forced off his planned route by the debris.
15. The *nachal* ('valley, wadi, brook') is the Kidron Valley on Jerusalem's eastern side. Nehemiah apparently continued his inspection on foot after the rubble blocked his mount. He completed a partial circuit of the city, returning through the same Valley Gate where he started. The repetition of *va-ashuv* ('and I returned') emphasizes the circular, completed nature of the inspection.
16. Nehemiah lists the complete leadership structure of Jerusalem: the *seginim* ('officials, prefects'), the *Yehudim* ('Judeans'), the *kohanim* ('priests'), the *chorim* ('nobles, free citizens'), and the additional *seginim* (possibly a second tier of officials). The phrase *yeter oseh ha-melakhah* ('the rest who would do the work') anticipates the workforce that does not yet know it has a project. Nehemiah's secrecy until this point is complete.
17. Nehemiah's speech to the leaders is brief, direct, and motivational. He uses the first-person plural throughout: 'we are in' (*anachnu vah*), 'let us build' (*nivneh*), 'we will no longer be' (*lo niyeh*). He places himself inside the community's problem and its solution. The word *cherpah* ('disgrace, reproach') was used in the original report (1:3) and here becomes the rallying cry — the wall is not just a defense project but a dignity project.
18. Nehemiah presents two credentials: divine favor (*yad Elohai asher hi tovah alai*, 'the hand of my God that was good upon me') and royal authorization (*divrei ha-melekh*, 'the words of the king'). The people's response is immediate and communal: *naqum uvaninu* ('let us rise and build') — a decisive, unified commitment. The phrase *vaychazzqu yedeihem latovah* ('they strengthened their hands for the good work') uses *chazaq* ('to strengthen, take hold'), which will become the operative verb throughout chapter 3 as each work team 'strengthens' their section of wall.
19. The opposition coalition now includes three named figures representing surrounding regions: Sanballat (Samaria/north), Tobiah (Ammon/east), and Geshem the Arab (Arabia/south). Geshem (also called Gashmu in 6:6) is known from an inscription found at Dedan in Arabia, confirming his historical existence as a powerful Arabian leader. Their tactics combine mockery (*vayyal'igu*, 'they ridiculed') and political accusation (*ha-al ha-melekh attem mordim*, 'are you rebelling against the king?'). The rebellion accusation is the most dangerous — it was exactly this charge that had previously stopped Jerusalem's rebuilding (Ezra 4:12-16).
20. Nehemiah's response addresses the theological and legal dimensions simultaneously. He credits God (*Elohei ha-shamayim hu yatsliach lanu*, 'the God of heaven — he will give us success') and then excludes the opponents with a three-fold denial: no *cheleq* ('share, portion'), no *tsedaqah* ('right, legitimate claim'), and no *zikkaron* ('memorial, remembered name'). The word *zikkaron* is particularly sharp — it means they have no permanent stake, no ancestral claim, no heritage in Jerusalem. This is a legal and genealogical exclusion, not merely a political rebuff.

3

Summary: *The wall rebuilding project is organized by section, with each segment assigned to a family, guild, or district. The account proceeds counterclockwise around Jerusalem, beginning at the Sheep Gate in the northeast and circling back to it. Priests, goldsmiths, perfume-makers, merchants, district leaders, and ordinary families all take responsibility for the section of wall nearest their homes or assigned positions. The chapter reads as an administrative record, but it is simultaneously a theological statement: the entire community rebuilds together.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most detailed construction records in the Hebrew Bible, and its genius lies in what it reveals about community. High priests work alongside perfume-makers. Daughters build next to district rulers. The only group singled out for refusal is the nobles of Tekoa (v. 5), who 'would not put their necks to the work of their lords' — a pointed note of shame preserved in the permanent record. The text also reveals the geography of fifth-century Jerusalem with remarkable precision, naming gates, towers, pools, and landmarks that archaeologists have spent decades correlating with excavated remains. Several individuals are noted as repairing 'a second section' (midah shenit), meaning they volunteered for double duty after completing their first assignment.*

Translation Friction: *Many names in this chapter have no parallel elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible, making vocalization uncertain. The topography is dense and some landmarks (the 'Tower of the Ovens,' the 'Broad Wall,' the 'projecting tower') remain debated in archaeological identification. The Hebrew term midah can mean 'section' or 'measurement,' and the exact length of each assigned portion is never specified. Some builders are identified by profession (goldsmiths, perfume-makers, merchants), suggesting these guilds operated as organized labor units. The phrase 'opposite his house' (neged beito) appears repeatedly, indicating that many builders were assigned the wall section nearest their own homes — both practical and motivating.*

Connections: *The Sheep Gate where the circuit begins and ends (vv. 1, 32) is the same gate where sacrificial animals entered the Temple precinct — the priests consecrate it because it serves the sacrificial system. The geography described here overlaps with Hezekiah's wall expansion (2 Chronicles 32:5) and the 'Broad Wall' (v. 8) may be the same structure archaeologists have identified in the Jewish Quarter. The list of builders parallels the returnee lists in Ezra 2 and Nehemiah 7, showing the same families who came back from exile now rebuilding the city's defenses.*

¹Then Eliashib the high priest rose up with his fellow priests, and they rebuilt the Sheep Gate. They consecrated it and installed its doors. They consecrated the wall as far as the Tower of the Hundred and on to the Tower of Hananel. ²Next to them, the men of Jericho built. And next to them, Zakkur son of Imri built. ³The sons of Hassenaah built the Fish Gate. They framed it with beams and installed its doors, its bolts, and its bars. ⁴Next to them, Meremoth son of Uriah son of Haqqots made repairs. Next to him, Meshullam son of Berekiah son of Meshezabel made repairs. Next to him, Tsadoq son of Baana made repairs. ⁵Next to them, the Tekoites made repairs — though their nobles refused to put their necks to the work of their lords. ⁶Yoiada son of Paseach and Meshullam son of Besodiah repaired the Jeshanah Gate. They framed it with beams and installed its doors, its bolts, and its bars. ⁷Next to them, Melatiah the Gibeonite and Yadon the Meronothite made repairs — men from Gibeon and Mitspah — up to the seat of the governor of the province Beyond the River. ⁸Next to him, Uzziel son of Harhaiah, one of the goldsmiths, made repairs. Next to him, Hananiah, one of the perfume-makers, made repairs. They restored Jerusalem as far as the Broad Wall. ⁹Next to them, Rephaiah son of Hur, ruler of half the district of Jerusalem, made repairs. ¹⁰Next to them, Yedaiah son of Harumaph made repairs opposite his own house. Next to him, Hattush son of Hashabniah made repairs. ¹¹Malkiah son of Harim and Hasshub son of Pahath-Moab repaired another section, including the Tower of the Ovens. ¹²Next to him, Shallum son of Hallohesh, ruler of the other half-district of Jerusalem, made repairs — he and his daughters. ¹³Hanun and the residents of Zanoah repaired the Valley Gate. They rebuilt it, installed its doors, bolts, and bars, and repaired a thousand cubits of wall up to the Dung Gate. ¹⁴Malkiah son of Rekab, ruler of the district of Beth-Hakkerem, repaired the Dung Gate. He rebuilt it and installed its doors, bolts, and bars. ¹⁵Shallun son of Kol-Hozeh, ruler of the district of Mitspah, repaired the Fountain Gate. He rebuilt it, roofed it, and installed its doors, bolts, and bars.

He also repaired the wall of the Pool of Shelah near the king's garden, as far as the stairway descending from the City of David. ¹⁶After him, Nehemiah son of Azbuq, ruler of half the district of Beth-Tsur, made repairs as far as the area opposite David's tombs, to the artificial pool, and to the House of the Warriors. ¹⁷After him, the Levites made repairs: Rehum son of Bani. Next to him, Hashabiah, ruler of half the district of Keilah, made repairs for his district. ¹⁸After him, their fellow Levites made repairs: Bavvai son of Henadad, ruler of the other half-district of Keilah. ¹⁹Next to him, Ezer son of Yeshua, ruler of Mitspah, repaired another section opposite the ascent to the armory at the corner. ²⁰After him, Barukh son of Zabbai zealously repaired another section from the corner to the entrance of the house of Eliashib the high priest. ²¹After him, Meremoth son of Uriah son of Haqqots repaired another section, from the entrance of Eliashib's house to the far end of Eliashib's house. ²²After him, the priests from the surrounding region made repairs. ²³After them, Binyamin and Hasshub made repairs opposite their house. After them, Azariah son of Maaseiah son of Ananiah made repairs beside his own house. ²⁴After him, Binnui son of Henadad repaired another section, from Azariah's house to the corner angle. ²⁵Palal son of Uzai worked opposite the corner angle and the tower projecting from the upper royal palace near the courtyard of the guard. After him, Pedaiah son of Parosh. ²⁶The temple servants lived on the Ophel, as far as the area opposite the Water Gate to the east and the projecting tower. ²⁷After them, the Tekoites repaired another section — from opposite the great projecting tower to the wall of the Ophel. ²⁸Above the Horse Gate, the priests made repairs, each one opposite his own house. ²⁹After them, Tsadoq son of Immer made repairs opposite his house. After him, Shemaiah son of Shekhaniah, keeper of the East Gate, made repairs. ³⁰After him, Hananiah son of Shelemiah and Hanun, the sixth son of Tsalaph, repaired another section. After them, Meshullam son of Berekiah made repairs opposite his storeroom. ³¹After him, Malkiah, one of the goldsmiths, made repairs as far as the quarters of the temple servants and the merchants, opposite the Inspection Gate, and up to the upper room of the corner. ³²Between the upper room of the corner and the Sheep Gate, the goldsmiths and merchants made repairs.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Eliashib the high priest leads the rebuilding, beginning at the Sheep Gate (sha'ar ha-tson) in the northeast corner of the city. The 'Tower of the Hundred' (migdal ha-me'ah) may refer to its height (one hundred cubits) or to a military unit of one hundred soldiers stationed there. The Tower of Hananel is mentioned in Jeremiah 31:38 and Zechariah 14:10 as a northern boundary marker of Jerusalem. That the high priest begins the work signals that this is not merely a civic project but a restoration with sacred significance.
2. The phrase *al yado* ('next to him/at his hand') will recur throughout the chapter as the standard formula for indicating adjacent work sections. The men of Jericho — a city some fifteen miles northeast of Jerusalem — traveled to help rebuild, showing that the project drew workers from beyond Jerusalem itself. Zakkur son of Imri is otherwise unknown.
3. The Fish Gate (sha'ar ha-dagim) was on the north side of the city, probably where fish merchants from Tyre sold their goods (see 13:16). The verb *qeruhu* ('they beamed it') refers to laying the structural timbers. Three security features are listed: doors (*daletot*), bolts (*man'ulim*), and bars (*berichim*) — indicating that each gate was being restored to full defensive capability. The sons of Hassenaah appear as a large clan in Ezra 2:35 (3,630 members).
4. The verb *hecheziq* ('made strong, repaired') will be the dominant construction verb throughout this chapter — it implies strengthening what was damaged rather than building from scratch. Meremoth son of Uriah son of Haqqots appears again in verse 21, taking on a second section. Meshullam son of Berekiah will reappear in 6:18 as a figure with family ties to Tobiah the opponent — a complication the text does not resolve here.
5. This is the only negative notice in the entire chapter. The nobles (*addirim*) of Tekoa 'did not bring their necks' (*lo hevi'u tsavaram*) to the work — a vivid physical metaphor for refusing to bend to labor. The word *adoneihem* ('their lords') likely refers to Nehemiah and the other project leaders, though some read it as 'their Lord' (God). Either way, the refusal is recorded for posterity. Despite their nobles' refusal, the ordinary Tekoites will take on a second section (v. 27), doubling their contribution.
6. The sha'ar ha-yeshanah is traditionally rendered 'Old Gate' but the name may mean 'Jeshanah Gate' — named for the town of Jeshanah (2 Chronicles 13:19) toward which it faced. The same construction formula appears as for the Fish Gate: beaming, doors, bolts, and bars. Two men share responsibility for this gate.
7. Gibeon and Mitspah (Mizpah) are towns northwest and north of Jerusalem. The phrase *lekisse pachat ever ha-nahar* ('to the seat of the governor Beyond the River') is puzzling. It may refer to the governor's administrative building or jurisdiction marker. 'Beyond the River' (*ever ha-nahar*) is the Persian designation for the satrapy west of the Euphrates, which included Judah.

8. The goldsmiths (tsorfim) and perfume-makers (raqqachim) appear as professional guilds contributing to the construction. These were artisans, not laborers, yet they joined the physical rebuilding. The verb ya'azvu here means 'they restored' or 'they left intact' rather than 'abandoned' — indicating they confirmed Jerusalem's boundary up to the Broad Wall. The 'Broad Wall' (ha-chomah ha-rechavah) may be the massive wall segment from Hezekiah's era, remains of which (approximately twenty-three feet thick) have been excavated in Jerusalem's Jewish Quarter.
9. The term pelek (district) refers to an administrative division. Jerusalem was apparently divided into two half-districts, each with its own ruler (sar). Rephaiah governs one half. This administrative structure reflects Persian provincial organization applied to Judah's internal governance.
10. The phrase neged beito ('opposite his house') appears here for the first time and will recur throughout the chapter. Assigning builders to the wall section nearest their home served dual purposes: they knew the local terrain, and they had maximum personal motivation to build well — their own family's safety depended on it.
11. The phrase midah shenit ('a second section') indicates these builders took on a second assignment beyond their first. The Tower of the Ovens (migdal ha-tannurim) was likely near the bakers' quarter, where communal ovens were located. Pahath-Moab ('governor of Moab') is a clan name, not a title — this family appears in the returnee lists of Ezra 2:6.
12. This verse is remarkable: Shallum's daughters (benotav) participated in the construction work. In a text dominated by male names, this explicit mention of women builders is striking and deliberate. The text does not explain or qualify their participation — it simply records it alongside every other builder. Shallum governs the second half-district of Jerusalem (the first is Rephaiah's in v. 9).
13. The Valley Gate (sha'ar ha-gay) opened westward toward the Hinnom Valley — this is the gate Nehemiah used for his nighttime inspection (2:13). Zanoah was a town in the Shephelah, about twelve miles southwest of Jerusalem. The note that they repaired 'a thousand cubits' (elef ammah) — approximately 1,500 feet — indicates this was the longest single section. The western wall ran along relatively flat terrain, which may have made the work easier but the section longer.
14. The Dung Gate (sha'ar ha-ashpot) was at the southern tip of the city, opening toward the refuse dumps in the Hinnom Valley. Beth-Hakkerem ('House of the Vineyard') is identified with Ramat Rachel, about halfway between Jerusalem and Bethlehem. The Rekaib clan may be connected to the Rechabites of Jeremiah 35, though this is uncertain.
15. The Fountain Gate (sha'ar ha-ayin) was on the southeast side of the city, near the Gihon Spring. The Pool of Shelah (berekat ha-shelach) is the Siloam Pool, fed by Hezekiah's water tunnel. The 'king's garden' (gan ha-melek) was in the Kidron Valley at the southern tip of the City of David. The 'stairway descending from the City of David' likely refers to stepped-stone structures archaeologists have found on the eastern slope of the original city.
16. This is a different Nehemiah from the author — the name was common. Beth-Tsur was a fortified town about fifteen miles south of Jerusalem. 'David's tombs' (qivrei David) refers to the royal burial complex within the City of David, which remained a landmark for centuries. The 'artificial pool' (ha-berekhah ha-asuyah) was an engineered reservoir, distinct from natural springs. The 'House of the Warriors' (beit ha-gibborim) may have been a military barracks or armory.
17. The Levites now join the work. Keilah was a town in the Shephelah, famous from David's rescue of it from Philistine attack (1 Samuel 23:1-13). The phrase lefilko ('for his district') indicates Hashabiah worked on behalf of his administrative area's obligation.
18. Keilah, like Jerusalem, was divided into two half-districts. Bavvai governs the second half. Henadad is a Levitical family name appearing in Ezra 3:9, where members of this clan supervised Temple construction under Zerubbabel.
19. Ezer takes a 'second section' (midah shenit), volunteering for extra work. The 'ascent to the armory' (alot ha-nesheq) indicates a weapons storehouse accessible by a ramp or stairway. The miqtsa ('corner, angle') marks a turn in the wall line, a structurally critical point requiring stronger construction.
20. The verb hecharah ('burned, was zealous') modifying hecheziq creates an unusual double verb — Barukh repaired with intense energy or passion. This is the only builder whose emotional investment the text comments on. His section ends at the high priest's residence, indicating Eliashib lived along the eastern wall near the Temple precinct.
21. Meremoth appears for the second time (see v. 4), taking on a second section. His assignment here stretches the full length of the high priest's residence — from its entrance (petach) to its end (takhlit). This suggests the high priest's house was substantial enough to serve as a measurement landmark.
22. The phrase anshei ha-kikkar ('men of the plain/circle') refers to priests living in the Jordan Valley region or the area surrounding Jerusalem. These priests traveled to Jerusalem to help rebuild, just as the men of Jericho (v. 2) and Zanoah (v. 13) did.
23. The pattern of building near one's own home continues: neged beita ('opposite their house') and etzel beito ('beside his house'). This policy ensured personal investment in the quality of construction — a wall segment protecting your own family would be built with care.
24. Another 'second section' volunteer. Binnui son of Henadad is from the same Levitical family as Bavvai (v. 18). His section runs from Azariah's house to the miqtsa (corner turn) and the pinnah (corner point) — two terms that may describe the same angular feature of the wall from different perspectives.
25. The 'upper royal palace' (beit ha-melek ha-elyon) refers to the old Davidic palace complex on the eastern ridge. The 'courtyard of the guard' (chatsar ha-mattarah) is the same prison courtyard where Jeremiah was confined (Jeremiah 32:2, 33:1). These landmarks anchor the description to

the eastern wall of the City of David.

26. The Netinim (temple servants) were a class of workers assigned to assist the Levites in Temple service — their origin may trace back to the Gibeonites (Joshua 9:27). The Ophel is the ridge between the City of David and the Temple Mount. The Water Gate (sha'ar ha-mayim) faced east toward the Kidron Valley and the Gihon Spring. This verse is parenthetical, describing where the temple servants lived rather than what they built.
27. The Tekoites return for a second section, making this their double contribution. The contrast with verse 5 is pointed: while their nobles refused to work at all, the ordinary people of Tekoa did twice the expected labor. The text records both the shame of the nobles and the honor of the commoners.
28. The Horse Gate (sha'ar ha-susim) was on the east side of the city, near the Temple Mount. This is the gate where Queen Athaliah was executed (2 Kings 11:16). The priests living in this area each took responsibility for the wall directly in front of their own residences — ish leneged beito ('each man opposite his house').
29. Tsadoq son of Immer belongs to a priestly family — Immer is one of the priestly divisions (1 Chronicles 24:14). Shemaiah is identified by his function: shomer sha'ar ha-mizrach ('keeper of the East Gate'). This gate may be distinct from the Water Gate and the Horse Gate, or it may be an alternative name for one of them.
30. Hanun is identified as 'the sixth' (ha-shishi) son of Tsalaph — the birth order notation is unusual in this list and may serve to distinguish him from others with the same name. Meshullam son of Berekiah appears for the second time (see v. 4), now repairing opposite his nishkah ('chamber, storeroom') — a storage room likely connected to the Temple complex.
31. Malkiah is identified as a goldsmith (ben ha-tsorf, literally 'son of the refiner'). The Inspection Gate (sha'ar ha-mifqad) is named from the root paqad ('to inspect, muster, appoint') — it may have been where troops were mustered or goods inspected. The 'upper room of the corner' (aliyyat ha-pinnah) marks the northeast corner of the wall circuit, approaching the starting point.
32. The circuit ends where it began — at the Sheep Gate. The final section is repaired by the goldsmiths (tsorfim) and merchants (rokhelim), professional guilds closing the ring. The entire wall has been accounted for, section by section, with no gaps. The literary effect is a complete circle: the community has surrounded itself with restored defenses, and every segment has a name attached to it.

4

Summary: *Opposition to the wall escalates from mockery to conspiracy to armed attack. Sanballat and Tobiah ridicule the builders. When the wall reaches half its height, a coalition of Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabs, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites plots a military assault. Nehemiah responds with prayer and practical strategy: he arms the builders, stations guards at vulnerable points, and organizes the workers so that every laborer holds a weapon in one hand and builds with the other. The chapter captures the intersection of faith and vigilance under threat.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from English Bibles. What English Bibles number as 4:1-6 corresponds to Hebrew 3:33-38, and English 4:7-23 corresponds to Hebrew 4:1-17. We follow the Hebrew/WLC versification throughout. The image of builders working with a sword strapped to their side (v. 12) is one of the most memorable in the Hebrew Bible — a visual theology of the inseparability of construction and defense, worship and warfare. Nehemiah's famous rallying cry 'Remember the Lord, the great and awe-inspiring one' (v. 8) directly echoes his own prayer in 1:5, creating a thread of awe-based courage running through the entire narrative.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew verse numbering (followed here) counts 3:33-38 and then 4:1-17, totaling 23 verses across the two numbering systems but only 17 in the Hebrew chapter 4. The coalition of enemies — Sanballat (Samaria), Tobiah (Ammon), Arabs (Geshem's territory), and Ashdodites (coastal Philistia) — represents a geographic encirclement of Judah from north, east, south, and west. The logistical claim that every worker simultaneously held tools and weapons is likely a summary statement rather than a literal description of continuous practice. The trumpet system (v. 14) implies the workers were spread across a significant distance and could not communicate by voice.*

Connections: *Sanballat's mockery ('Will they revive the stones from the dust heaps?') echoes the theological question of whether God can bring life from death — stones from rubble, a nation from exile. Tobiah's taunt about a fox breaking the wall inverts the Song of Solomon's 'little foxes' (Song 2:15) into a weapon of contempt. Nehemiah's prayer that the enemies' reproach return on their own heads (v. 3) follows the imprecatory tradition of the Psalms (cf. Psalm 79:12). The armed-builder motif anticipates the spiritual warfare language Paul will later employ in Ephesians 6.*

¹When Sanballat, Tobiah, the Arabs, the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites heard that the repair of Jerusalem's walls was progressing and that the breaches were beginning to be sealed, they were furious. ²They all conspired together to come and fight against Jerusalem and to throw it into confusion. ³So we prayed to our God, and we posted a guard against them day and night. ⁴Then the people of Judah said, "The strength of the load-bearers is failing. There is so much rubble that we cannot rebuild the wall." ⁵Our enemies said, "Before they know it or see us, we will be right among them. We will kill them and stop the work." ⁶The Jews who lived near the enemies came and told us ten times over, "From every direction they will attack us." ⁷So I stationed people at the lowest points behind the wall, at the exposed sections. I positioned them by families with their swords, spears, and bows. ⁸I surveyed the situation, then stood and said to the nobles, the officials, and the rest of the people: "Do not be afraid of them. Remember the Lord — great and awe-inspiring — and fight for your brothers, your sons, your daughters, your wives, and your homes." ⁹When our enemies heard that we knew of their plan and that God had frustrated their strategy, we all returned to the wall, each to his own work. ¹⁰From that day on, half of my men worked on construction while the other half held spears, shields, bows, and armor. The officers stood behind all the people of Judah. ¹¹Those building the wall and those carrying loads did their work with one hand while holding a weapon in the other. ¹²Each builder had his sword strapped to his waist as he worked. The man who sounded the ram's horn stayed beside me. ¹³I said to the nobles, the officials, and the rest of the people: "The work is vast and spread out. We are widely separated along the wall, far from one another." ¹⁴"Wherever you hear the sound of the ram's horn, rally to us there. Our God will fight for us." ¹⁵So we pressed on with the work, with half of them gripping spears from the first light of dawn until the stars came out. ¹⁶At that time I also told the people, "Every man and his worker must spend the night inside Jerusalem, so they can serve as our guard at night and work during the day." ¹⁷Neither I, nor my brothers, nor my workers, nor the guards with me — none of us took off our clothes. Each man kept his weapon, even at the water.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *aletah arukah* ('healing went up') uses medical language — the wall is described as a wound being healed. The *perutsot* ('breaches') are the gaps in the wall from the earlier destruction. Five enemy groups are now named, representing a complete geographic encirclement of Judah: Sanballat from the north (Samaria), Tobiah from the east (Ammon), Arabs from the south, Ammonites from the east, and Ashdodites from the west (coastal plain). Their anger intensifies as the wall progresses.
2. The verb *qashar* ('to conspire, bind together') indicates a formal alliance, not merely shared annoyance. The goal is twofold: military attack (*lehillachem*) and disruption (*to'ah*, 'confusion, bewilderment'). The enemy strategy combines direct violence with psychological destabilization.
3. Nehemiah's response is characteristically twofold: prayer (*va-nitpallel*) and practical action (*va-na'amid mishmar*). He does not treat these as alternatives — spiritual dependence and strategic planning operate simultaneously. The guard runs 'day and night' (*yomam va-laylah*), indicating continuous watch rotations.
4. Internal morale now falters alongside external threat. The phrase *kashal koach ha-sabbal* ('the strength of the burden-bearer has stumbled') describes physical exhaustion from hauling debris. The rubble (*afar*, literally 'dust, dirt') from the destroyed wall had to be cleared before new construction could proceed — an enormous and demoralizing task. This complaint comes from Judah's own people, not from the enemy.
5. The enemy plan is a surprise attack — stealth infiltration (*lo yede'u velo yir'u*, 'they will not know and will not see') followed by slaughter (*haragnum*) to halt the project (*hishbatnu et ha-melakhah*). The verb *shavat* ('to stop, cease') is the same root as *Shabbat* — they intend to impose a permanent work stoppage through terror.
6. Jews living in the border areas served as an intelligence network, bringing repeated warnings (*eser pe'amim*, 'ten times' — a Hebrew idiom for 'again and again'). The phrase *mikkol ha-meqomot* ('from all the places') emphasizes the multi-directional nature of the threat. These border-dwelling Jews could see enemy movements that Jerusalem's builders could not.
7. Nehemiah's defense is strategically sound: he stations armed groups at the weakest points (*mittachtiyyot*, 'the lowest places') and the exposed areas (*tsechichim*, 'bare, open spots'). The organization by families (*lemishpachot*) is psychologically deliberate — people fight hardest when defending their own kin. Three weapon types are listed: swords (*charavot*) for close combat, spears (*romchim*) for medium range, and bows (*qashtot*) for distance.
8. Nehemiah's rallying speech moves from theology to tactics: remember God, then fight. The phrase *et Adonai ha-gadol vеха-nora* ('the Lord, the great and awe-inspiring') is the same formula from his prayer in 1:5, now deployed as a battlefield exhortation. The list of who they fight for — brothers, sons, daughters, wives, houses — moves from community to family to property, covering every motivation. He addresses three leadership tiers: *chorim* ('nobles, free citizens'), *seganim* ('officials, prefects'), and *yeter ha-am* ('the rest of the people').

9. The verb *hefer* ('frustrated, broke apart') credits God with dismantling the enemy conspiracy. The enemy's plan depended on surprise; once the Jews knew, the plan lost its power. The phrase *va-nashov kullanu el ha-chomah* ('we all returned to the wall') marks the resumption of construction — the crisis delayed but did not stop the project.
10. Nehemiah divides his workforce: half build (*osim ba-melakhah*), half stand guard with full military equipment — spears, shields, bows, and body armor (*shiryonim*, 'coats of mail'). The officers (*sarim*) positioned 'behind' (*acharei*) the workforce served as a rear guard and command authority. This arrangement halved the construction pace but maintained security.
11. This verse creates an iconic image: builders simultaneously constructing and armed. The term *shelach* ('weapon, missile') refers to a throwing weapon or javelin. The practicality of literally building with one hand is debatable — the image may be a compressed description of workers who kept weapons immediately at hand rather than physically held them while laying stones.
12. The sword (*cherev*) is strapped to the waist (*agurim al motnav*) — this is more practical than holding a weapon while building. The shofar trumpeter remains next to Nehemiah as the central communication system. The shofar could carry sound across the full extent of the wall circuit, serving as an alarm system for a workforce spread over miles.
13. Nehemiah identifies the key vulnerability: the workforce is dispersed (*nifradim*) across a long perimeter, with each group isolated from others. The phrase *rechoqim ish me-achiv* ('far from one another,' literally 'each man far from his brother') underscores that no single section can be reinforced quickly from another.
14. The shofar serves as both alarm and rally signal. Nehemiah's concluding statement — *Eloheinu yillachem lanu* ('our God will fight for us') — echoes Deuteronomy's holy war language (Deuteronomy 1:30, 3:22, 20:4). This is not mere piety but a commander's theological conviction: God is an active combatant on their side. The phrase balances perfectly with the practical military preparations — faith does not replace strategy, nor strategy replace faith.
15. The work day stretches from pre-dawn (*alot ha-shachar*, 'the rising of dawn') to after nightfall (*tset ha-kokhavim*, 'the coming out of the stars') — far longer than a normal work day. This extended schedule reflects both urgency and the need to maximize progress during every available moment. The spear-bearers maintain their guard through the entire shift.
16. Many workers commuted from outlying towns (as the builders from Jericho, Tekoa, and Zanoah in chapter 3). Nehemiah now requires them to stay inside the city overnight, converting construction workers into a nighttime garrison. The word *na'ar* ('worker, servant, young man') indicates each builder had at least one assistant.
17. The final verse captures total commitment: Nehemiah and his inner circle never remove their garments — they sleep armed and dressed. The last phrase, *ish shilcho ha-mayim*, is notoriously difficult. It may mean 'each man his weapon at the water' (going armed even to fetch water), or 'each man [kept] his weapon [and] water' (carrying both). The ambiguity does not obscure the point: constant readiness, with no moment of vulnerability.

5

Summary: *The external threat gives way to an internal crisis: Jewish nobles and officials are exploiting their own people through predatory lending. Families are mortgaging fields, vineyards, and homes to buy grain during famine. Some have borrowed to pay the Persian royal tax and are now selling their own children into debt slavery. Nehemiah is furious. He confronts the nobles publicly, demands they stop charging interest and return confiscated property, and makes them swear an oath. He then describes his own conduct as governor: for twelve years he refused the governor's food allowance, bought no land, and fed over 150 people at his own table — all because 'the fear of God' governed his administration.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter interrupts the wall-building narrative with the revelation that the real threat to the community is not Sanballat but internal economic injustice. The Torah explicitly forbids charging interest to fellow Israelites (Exodus 22:25, Leviticus 25:35-37, Deuteronomy 23:19-20), and the selling of children into slavery violates the spirit of Jubilee legislation (Leviticus 25:39-43). Nehemiah does not merely issue a decree — he shames the nobles by contrasting their behavior with his own, using the 'fear of God' (*yir'at Elohim*) as the governing principle. His personal example of financial self-sacrifice is unparalleled among biblical governors. The great oath scene, with the shaking out of the garment fold (v. 13), is a dramatic enacted curse: may God shake out anyone who breaks this promise.*

Translation Friction: *The economic details reveal a complex situation. The famine (v. 3), the Persian tax burden (v. 4), and the concentration of land among wealthy creditors all contributed to the crisis. The phrase 'our flesh is like the flesh of our brothers' (v. 5) is an appeal to shared humanity and covenant kinship — these are not foreigners being enslaved but fellow Jews. Nehemiah's claim to have fed 150 people daily (v. 17) is*

extraordinary and implies either personal wealth or access to resources beyond the governor's allowance. The twelve-year timeframe (v. 14) indicates this memoir section reflects Nehemiah's entire first term, not just the wall-building period.

Connections: The prohibition against interest on loans to fellow Israelites appears in Exodus 22:25, Leviticus 25:35-37, and Deuteronomy 23:19-20. The debt-slavery crisis echoes Jeremiah 34, where King Zedekiah compelled slave release but the people reneged. The 'fear of God' as a governing principle connects to Abraham's explanation to Abimelech (Genesis 20:11) and to the midwives who defied Pharaoh (Exodus 1:17, 21). Nehemiah's self-restraint as governor contrasts sharply with Samuel's warning about what kings would take (1 Samuel 8:11-17).

¹Now there was a great outcry from the people and their wives against their own Jewish brothers. ²Some were saying, "We have many sons and daughters. We need grain just to eat and survive." ³Others said, "We are mortgaging our fields, our vineyards, and our homes to get grain during this famine." ⁴Still others said, "We have borrowed silver to pay the king's tax, using our fields and vineyards as security." ⁵"Our bodies are the same as our brothers' bodies. Our children are the same as their children. Yet here we are, forcing our own sons and daughters into slavery. Some of our daughters have already been enslaved, and we are powerless to help — because our fields and vineyards belong to others." ⁶I was furious when I heard their outcry and these charges. ⁷I thought it through carefully, then confronted the nobles and officials. I said to them, "You are charging interest against your own brothers!" And I called a great assembly against them. ⁸I said to them, "We did everything we could to buy back our Jewish brothers who had been sold to the nations. And now you are selling your own brothers, so that they must be sold back to us?" They were silent. They had nothing to say. ⁹I continued, "What you are doing is not right. Should you not walk in the fear of our God to avoid the taunts of our enemy nations?" ¹⁰Even I, my brothers, and my workers have been lending them silver and grain. Let us stop this interest-bearing lending! ¹¹Return to them today their fields, their vineyards, their olive groves, and their homes — and also the percentage you have been charging on the silver, the grain, the new wine, and the oil. ¹²They said, "We will return the property and demand nothing more from them. We will do exactly as you say." So I summoned the priests and made the nobles swear an oath to carry out this commitment. ¹³I also shook out the fold of my robe and said, "May God shake out every man who does not keep this promise — shake him from his house and from his livelihood. May he be shaken out and emptied just like this." The whole assembly said "Amen" and praised the LORD. And the people carried out this commitment. ¹⁴Furthermore, from the day I was appointed governor in the land of Judah — from the twentieth year to the thirty-second year of King Artaxerxes, twelve years — neither I nor my brothers consumed the governor's food allowance. ¹⁵The previous governors before me had burdened the people heavily — taking food and wine from them, plus forty shekels of silver. Even their servants lorded it over the people. But I did not do this, because of the fear of God. ¹⁶I also devoted myself to the work on this wall. We acquired no land. All my workers were gathered there for the construction. ¹⁷At my table there were a hundred and fifty Jewish officials, plus those who came to us from the surrounding nations. ¹⁸What was prepared for each day: one ox, six choice sheep, and poultry — all prepared for me — along with generous quantities of wine every ten days. Yet despite all this, I never demanded the governor's food allowance, because the burden on these people was already heavy. ¹⁹Remember me favorably, my God, for all that I have done for this people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *tse'aqah* ('outcry, cry of distress') is the same term used for Israel's cry under Egyptian oppression (Exodus 3:7, 9). The inclusion of 'their wives' (*nesheihem*) indicates that women were directly affected and vocally protesting — the crisis was hitting families at the household level. The complaint is directed at *acheihem ha-yehudim* ('their brothers, the Jews') — this is an intra-community injustice, making it doubly offensive.
2. The first group identifies the basic problem: large families with insufficient food. The verb *nichyeh* ('that we may live') signals survival-level desperation, not luxury. These families need grain (*dagan*) for basic subsistence.
3. The second group has been forced to pledge their ancestral property — fields (*sedot*), vineyards (*keramim*), and houses (*battim*) — as collateral for food loans. The term *orevim* ('pledging, mortgaging') implies they will lose the property if they cannot repay. The *ra'av* ('famine') indicates a crop failure compounding the economic crisis. In Israelite theology, the land was God's gift to families — losing it meant losing one's covenant inheritance.

4. The third group faces a different pressure: the Persian imperial tax (middat ha-melekh). They must pay in silver currency (kesef), not grain, which forces them into the cash economy where they are vulnerable to creditors. Their productive land — fields and vineyards — is collateral. The layering of all three complaints reveals a cascading economic crisis: famine drives food shortage, food shortage drives borrowing, borrowing drives land forfeiture, and imperial taxation accelerates the entire cycle.
5. The phrase kivshar acheinu besarenu ('our flesh is like our brothers' flesh') is a devastating argument: we share the same covenant identity, the same humanity — why should our children be slaves while theirs are free? The verb koveshim ('subduing, forcing into bondage') is the same verb used for conquest and domination (Genesis 1:28). Some daughters have already been sold (nikhbashot), and the parents ein le'el yadenu ('have no power in their hand') to redeem them. This is the lowest point: families permanently losing their children and their land.
6. Nehemiah's response — va-yichar li me'od ('it burned in me greatly') — is moral rage, not administrative annoyance. The same verb (charah) describes God's anger throughout the Hebrew Bible. Nehemiah hears the za'aqah ('outcry') — the same distress-cry vocabulary from verse 1 — and responds with the intensity the situation demands.
7. The phrase va-yimmalekh libbi alai ('my heart took counsel over me') shows Nehemiah deliberating before acting — he is angry but strategic. The accusation is direct: massa ish be-achiv ('a burden/loan-at-interest, each man against his brother'). The term massa here means an extractive loan or debt burden. Nehemiah escalates by convening a qehillah gedolah ('great assembly') — a public forum where the accused must answer before the entire community.
8. Nehemiah's argument is devastating in its logic: the community had spent resources redeeming Jews sold into foreign slavery, and now the nobles were creating new slaves who would need redeeming again — a grotesque economic cycle. The silence of the accused (va-yacharishu) and their inability to answer (velo mats'u davar) is the text's way of recording a total rhetorical defeat. They have no defense.
9. Nehemiah makes two appeals: theological (yir'at Eloheinu, 'the fear of our God') and practical (cherpat ha-goyim, 'the reproach of the nations'). The nobles' behavior gives the surrounding enemy nations material for mockery — the very cherpah ('reproach, disgrace') that the broken walls represented (1:3, 2:17). Internal injustice undermines the external project of restoration.
10. Nehemiah admits his own involvement in lending — though his loans may not have carried the same exploitative interest as the nobles'. By including himself in the corrective, he removes any ground for the accusation that he is exempting himself. The imperative na'azvah-na ('let us abandon, please') frames the demand as a collective decision rather than a unilateral decree.
11. Nehemiah demands immediate restitution (ke-ha-yom, 'as of today'). Four types of property must be returned: fields, vineyards, olive groves, and houses. The me'at ('hundredth, percentage') likely refers to a monthly interest charge of one percent — which compounds to twelve percent annually, a ruinous rate for subsistence farmers. The four commodities — silver, grain, new wine (tirosh), and oil (yitshar) — represent the full economic spectrum of Judah's agricultural economy.
12. The nobles' capitulation is immediate and complete: nashiv ('we will return'), lo nevaqesh ('we will not seek/demand'). Nehemiah does not trust verbal agreement alone — he summons priests (kohanim) to administer a formal oath (va-ashbi'em). The oath makes the commitment legally and theologically binding; to break it would be perjury before God.
13. Nehemiah performs a dramatic enacted curse: he shakes out the chotsni ('fold of the robe,' the front garment fold used as a pocket or pouch) as a visual prophecy of what God will do to oath-breakers. The verb na'ar ('shake out') is repeated three times for emphasis. The assembly's response — amen and praise — indicates corporate ratification. The phrase va-ya'as ha-am ka-davar ha-zeh ('the people did according to this word') confirms compliance.
14. Nehemiah now shifts to personal testimony. His tenure as governor (pechah) spans 445-433 BCE (year 20 to year 32 of Artaxerxes I). The 'governor's food allowance' (lechem ha-pechah) was a tax levied on the people to support the governor's household — a legitimate right that Nehemiah chose to forgo. This is a twelve-year record of financial self-restraint.
15. Nehemiah contrasts himself with his predecessors (ha-pachot ha-rishonim). Their exactions included food, wine, and forty silver shekels — a substantial sum. Worse, their servants (na'areihem) exercised arbitrary power (shaltu) over the populace. Nehemiah's reason for different behavior is theological: mippenei yir'at Elohim ('because of the fear of God'). This is not political calculation but conscience before God.
16. Three further points of integrity: Nehemiah personally worked on the wall (hechezaqti, 'I strengthened/repaired'), he bought no land (sadeh lo qaninu) — refusing to exploit depressed property values during the crisis — and he directed all his servants to construction rather than personal profit. A governor with access to desperate sellers could have amassed a real estate empire; Nehemiah deliberately refused.
17. Nehemiah's table fed at least 150 people daily — Jewish leaders (yehudim u-seganim) plus foreign visitors (ha-ba'im min ha-goyim). This was a massive household operation that Nehemiah funded without taxing the people. The foreign guests may have been diplomatic visitors or representatives from neighboring peoples — a governor's table served as both dining hall and negotiation space.
18. The daily provisions are lavish: one ox, six select sheep (tson shesh berurot, 'chosen/prime sheep'), and poultry (tsipporim). Wine was restocked every ten days. Nehemiah covered this enormous expense personally rather than taxing the people. His stated reason — ki kavedah ha-avodah al ha-am ha-zeh ('because the labor/burden was heavy on this people') — shows awareness that the wall construction, the military threat, and the economic crisis combined to create an unbearable load.

19. This is the first of Nehemiah's 'remember me' prayers (see also 13:14, 22, 31), a signature feature of his memoir. The verb *zakar* ('remember') is a covenant term — Nehemiah asks God to 'activate' his faithfulness in response to Nehemiah's conduct. The phrase *letovah* ('for good, favorably') is a request for divine acknowledgment, not a claim of merit. Nehemiah's entire governance record is presented as evidence — not to earn reward but to appeal for God's continued favor.

6

Summary: *With the wall nearly complete and only the doors of the gates remaining, Sanballat and Geshem launch a final series of schemes to stop Nehemiah. They invite him to a meeting in the plain of Ono — four times — and each time he refuses. Sanballat then sends an open letter accusing Nehemiah of planning rebellion against Persia and setting up prophets to proclaim himself king. Nehemiah denies it all. Next, a hired prophet named Shemaiah tries to lure Nehemiah into hiding inside the Temple — an act that would discredit him as a coward and a religious transgressor. Nehemiah sees through this trap as well. Despite networks of informants and intimidation, the wall is completed in fifty-two days. The surrounding nations recognize that God was behind the project.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterclass in resisting manipulation. Four invitations to Ono, each designed to draw Nehemiah away from the city where he could be ambushed. An open letter — deliberately unsealed so everyone along the delivery route could read the accusations. A false prophet hired to manufacture a compromising incident. At every stage, Nehemiah's response combines discernment with simplicity: 'I am doing great work and cannot come down.' The fifty-two-day completion timeline (v. 15) is extraordinary — less than two months for a full city wall — and the surrounding nations' reaction ('they recognized that this work had been accomplished by our God') turns the construction project into a theological testimony visible to the entire region.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'Geshem the Arab' (v. 1) connects to inscriptions found at Tell el-Maskhuta in Egypt and at Dedan in Arabia, suggesting he was a powerful regional governor controlling territory south of Judah. The plain of Ono (Kefar Ono) was in the border zone between Judah and Samaria — nominally neutral territory but effectively under Sanballat's sphere of influence. Shemaiah's proposal that Nehemiah hide in the Temple 'inner chamber' (heikhal, v. 10) would have been doubly damaging: it would show cowardice and, since Nehemiah was not a priest, entering the inner sanctuary would violate Torah. Tobiah's network of oath-bound allies within Judah (vv. 17-19) reveals how deeply the opposition had penetrated the Jewish community.*

Connections: *The false-prophet scheme against Nehemiah parallels Ahab's encounter with lying prophets (1 Kings 22) and Jeremiah's conflict with Hananiah (Jeremiah 28). The accusation of royal ambition echoes the charges brought against Jesus before Pilate (John 19:12). The wall's completion 'in fifty-two days' is recorded by Josephus (Antiquities 11.5.8) and becomes a touchstone for divine enablement in Jewish tradition. The recognition by surrounding nations that 'this work was accomplished by our God' echoes the pattern of pagan acknowledgment found throughout the Hebrew Bible (Exodus 14:25, Joshua 2:9-11, 1 Samuel 4:8).*

¹When Sanballat, Tobiah, Geshem the Arab, and the rest of our enemies heard that I had rebuilt the wall and that no breach remained in it — though at that point I had not yet installed the doors in the gates — ²Sanballat and Geshem sent me a message: "Come, let us meet together in one of the villages on the plain of Ono." But they intended to do me harm. ³I sent messengers back to them: "I am doing a great work and cannot come down. Why should the work stop while I leave it to come down to you?" ⁴They sent the same message to me four times, and each time I gave them the same answer. ⁵Then Sanballat sent his servant to me a fifth time, this time with an open letter in his hand. ⁶In it was written: "It is reported among the nations — and Gashmu confirms it — that you and the Jews are planning to rebel. That is why you are rebuilding the wall. According to these reports, you intend to become their king. ⁷You have even appointed prophets to proclaim about you in Jerusalem: 'There is a king in Judah!' Now this will be reported to the king. So come, let us meet and discuss this together." ⁸I sent back this reply: "Nothing like what you describe has happened. You are fabricating this from your own imagination." ⁹They were all trying to intimidate us, thinking, "Their hands will drop from the work, and it will not get done." But now, strengthen my hands! ¹⁰I went to the house of Shemaiah son of Delaiah son of Mehetabel, who was confined

at home. He said, "Let us meet inside the house of God, inside the inner sanctuary. Let us close the doors of the sanctuary, because they are coming to kill you — they are coming by night to kill you." ¹¹I said, "Should a man like me run away? And should someone like me enter the sanctuary to save his life? I will not go in." ¹²I recognized that God had not sent him. He had spoken this so-called prophecy against me because Tobiah and Sanballat had hired him. ¹³He had been hired so that I would be afraid, act on that fear, and sin — giving them grounds for slander to discredit me. ¹⁴Remember, my God, what Tobiah and Sanballat have done — and also the prophetess Noadiah and the rest of the prophets who tried to intimidate me. ¹⁵The wall was completed on the twenty-fifth of Elul, in fifty-two days. ¹⁶When all our enemies heard about it and all the surrounding nations saw it, they were deeply demoralized. They recognized that this work had been accomplished by our God. ¹⁷Also in those days, many letters were going back and forth between the nobles of Judah and Tobiah. ¹⁸For many in Judah were bound to him by oath, because he was the son-in-law of Shekhaniah son of Arach, and his son Yehohanan had married the daughter of Meshullam son of Berekiah. ¹⁹They also kept telling me about Tobiah's good qualities, while reporting my words back to him. And Tobiah kept sending letters to intimidate me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wall is structurally complete: no breach (perets) remains. But the gates still lack doors (delatot), leaving the city vulnerable at its entry points. The parenthetical note signals that the enemy's final schemes target the narrow window before the project is fully finished. Geshem (also called Gashmu in v. 6) the Arab controlled territory south of Judah and likely ruled a large Arab confederation.
2. The plain of Ono (biq'at Ono) lay northwest of Jerusalem in the border region between Judah and Samaria. Meeting in 'one of the villages' (ba-kefirim) rather than in either capital was designed to appear neutral, but Nehemiah saw through the pretense. The verb choshevim ('thinking, planning') indicates premeditated malice, not spontaneous hostility.
3. Nehemiah's reply is a model of focused refusal. The phrase melakhah gedolah ani oseh ('a great work I am doing') is not boasting but a statement of priority. The verb laredet ('to come down') is geographically accurate — Ono is lower than Jerusalem — but also carries connotations of descending from a position of strength. The rhetorical question exposes the real cost: any meeting would halt the construction.
4. The fourfold repetition (arba pe'amim) reveals the enemies' persistence — and Nehemiah's. He does not vary his response, negotiate, or eventually give in. The consistency of his refusal is itself a form of leadership: the same answer, every time, signals that no amount of pressure will change the outcome.
5. The fifth attempt changes tactics. The letter is petuchah ('open') — unsealed, meaning anyone who carried or encountered it could read its contents. This was deliberate: the accusations inside were meant to spread as rumors along the delivery route before Nehemiah even received them. Diplomatic correspondence was normally sealed; an open letter was a calculated act of public accusation.
6. The letter deploys three pressure tactics: appeal to international rumor ('among the nations it is heard'), a named witness (Gashmu — the Arabic form of Geshem), and the specific charge of rebellion and self-coronation. In the Persian empire, rebellion against the king was a capital offense. By naming Geshem as a corroborating source, Sanballat gives the accusation the weight of an allied governor's testimony.
7. The accusation escalates: Nehemiah has allegedly set up prophets (nevi'im) to proclaim him king. The phrase melek bi-Yhudah ('a king in Judah') would alarm any Persian monarch — it implies secession. The implicit threat is clear: these reports will reach Artaxerxes (yishama la-melekh). The invitation to 'take counsel together' (nivva'atsah yachdav) is Sanballat's attempt to position himself as an ally helping Nehemiah manage a crisis — the very crisis Sanballat manufactured.
8. Nehemiah's response is a flat denial followed by a countercharge: ki milibeka attah bode'am ('from your own heart you are inventing them'). The verb bada means 'to devise, fabricate, invent' — Nehemiah accuses Sanballat of manufacturing the entire narrative. He does not dignify the charges with detailed refutation; he simply names them as lies.
9. Nehemiah names the enemy's strategy: meyar'im otanu ('making us afraid') with the goal that yirpu yedeihem ('their hands will go slack'). Fear weakens hands; weakened hands stop work. The prayer chazzeq et yadai ('strengthen my hands') directly counters the enemy's intended effect. This may be an editorial aside — a prayer inserted into the narrative — or it may be what Nehemiah said in the moment.
10. Shemaiah is described as atsar ('shut in, confined') — possibly performing a prophetic symbolic act or genuinely restricted. His proposal has two components: hiding (in the Temple) and sealing the doors. The heikhal ('inner sanctuary') was restricted to priests. For Nehemiah, a layman, to enter would violate sacred law (Numbers 18:7) and publicly discredit him. The repeated warning 'they are coming to kill you... by night they are coming to kill you' is designed to create panic.
11. Nehemiah's refusal operates on two levels. First, as governor, fleeing would destroy morale — ha-ish kamoni yivrach ('should a man like me flee?'). Second, as a non-priest, entering the heikhal would be a religious violation — umi khamoni asher yavo el ha-heikhal va-chai ('who like me could enter the sanctuary and live?'). The implication of va-chai is that entering unlawfully might result in divine judgment, not just human censure. Nehemiah refuses to trade one danger for another.

12. The verb *akkirah* ('I recognized, discerned') indicates spiritual discernment. Nehemiah identifies three things: the prophecy was not from God (lo Elohim shelach), it was directed against Nehemiah (*diber alai*, 'spoke against me'), and it was purchased by his enemies (Tobiah and Sanballat *sekharo*, 'hired him'). Hiring prophets was a known corruption — Micah had denounced it (Micah 3:11) — and Nehemiah identifies it immediately.
13. Nehemiah traces the full chain of the scheme: fear (*ira*) leads to action (*e'eseh khen*) leads to sin (*chatatiy*) leads to a reputation for evil (*shem ra*) leads to reproach (*vechorpuni*). The sin would have been entering the sanctuary unlawfully. The *shem ra* ('evil name, bad reputation') would have permanently damaged Nehemiah's credibility as a leader. The plan was elegant: use Nehemiah's own fear to destroy him through self-incrimination.
14. Another 'remember' prayer, this time imprecatory. Nehemiah asks God to remember the enemies' deeds (*ke-ma'asav elleh*). Noadiah the prophetess (*ha-nevi'ah*) is mentioned only here — a female prophet who opposed Nehemiah. She is grouped with 'the rest of the prophets' (*yeter ha-nevi'im*), indicating a network of prophetic voices working against the project. The existence of multiple false prophets opposing Nehemiah shows how deeply the opposition had infiltrated Judah's religious establishment.
15. Elul is the sixth month (August-September). If construction began in Av (the fifth month), the fifty-two-day timeline spans from roughly early August to late September 445 BCE. This is an astonishingly fast completion for a full city wall, even considering that much of the work was repair rather than new construction. The text states the fact without commentary — the brevity itself makes the point: the work that enemies said could never be done was finished in less than two months.
16. The verb *yippelu* ('they fell, collapsed') describes psychological defeat: *me'od be'eineihem* ('greatly in their own eyes') means their self-confidence crumbled. The surrounding nations' conclusion — *ki me'et Eloheinu ne'estah ha-melakhah ha-zot* ('that from our God this work was done') — is the theological climax of the wall narrative. The construction project becomes a public testimony: even hostile witnesses attribute the achievement to Israel's God.
17. The narrative now reveals a disturbing detail: Judah's own nobles (*chorei Yehudah*) maintained active correspondence with Tobiah throughout the crisis. The word *marbim* ('multiplying, increasing') indicates heavy traffic — this was not occasional contact but a sustained communication network. The opposition was not only external; it had deep roots inside the Jewish leadership.
18. The oath-bonds (*ba'alei shevu'ah*, 'masters of an oath') explain the loyalty network: intermarriage had created covenant ties between Tobiah's family and prominent Jewish families. Shekhaniah son of Arach was a returning exile (Ezra 2:5). Meshullam son of Berekiah is likely the same man who rebuilt two sections of the wall (3:4, 30) — a wall builder whose daughter married into the enemy's family. These marriage alliances made Tobiah's intelligence network almost impossible to dismantle.
19. The final verse reveals a three-sided information war: Judah's nobles praised Tobiah to Nehemiah's face (*toivotav*, 'his good deeds/qualities'), relayed Nehemiah's private words to Tobiah, and Tobiah used the intelligence to send targeted intimidation letters. Nehemiah was surrounded by informants within his own community. The verb *leyar'eni* ('to make me afraid') returns to the chapter's persistent theme: fear as the enemy's primary weapon.

7

Summary: *With the wall completed and its doors installed, Nehemiah appoints his brother Hanani and the fortress commander Hananiah to govern Jerusalem. He orders the gates kept closed until the sun is high and guarded even after opening. The city is large but sparsely populated. God prompts Nehemiah to conduct a census, and he discovers the genealogical register of the first wave of returnees under Zerubbabel and Jeshua. The remainder of the chapter reproduces this list — families, towns, priests, Levites, singers, gatekeepers, temple servants, and descendants of Solomon's servants — concluding with the total count and the offerings given for the rebuilding work.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter serves a dual function: it establishes administrative security for the rebuilt city and provides demographic legitimacy for its inhabitants. The genealogical list is nearly identical to Ezra 2, with minor numerical variations that have occupied scholars for centuries. The variations are not scribal errors but reflect the reality that census documents were copied, updated, and annotated over decades. The list functions as a theological statement: these are the people God brought back, and their identity as the covenant community rests on documented lineage. The note that some families could not prove their Israelite descent (vv. 61-64) — and were therefore excluded from the priesthood — shows how seriously genealogical continuity was taken in the restoration community.*

Translation Friction: The numerical differences between this list and Ezra 2 (e.g., the sons of Arach: 652 here vs. 775 in Ezra 2:5) have never been fully resolved. Some differences may reflect different points in the registration process, corrections, or variant manuscript traditions. The total figure of 42,360 (v. 66) does not match the sum of the individual numbers in either Nehemiah 7 or Ezra 2, suggesting the total was preserved independently from the itemized entries. The Tirshatha (governor) mentioned in verse 65 likely refers to Zerubbabel at the time of the original return, not to Nehemiah. The Urim and Thummim reference (v. 65) is striking — it implies the community expected the priestly oracle to be restored, though no text records this ever happening after the exile.

Connections: The list parallels Ezra 2:1-70 almost verse for verse. The genealogical concern connects to the broader restoration theology: identity must be established before worship can proceed. The excluded priests who could not find their genealogical records (vv. 63-64) anticipate Malachi's concern with priestly purity (Malachi 2:1-9). The mention of Urim and Thummim links back to the Exodus priestly system (Exodus 28:30) and to the last recorded use of this oracle method in the early monarchy. The generous freewill offerings (vv. 70-72) parallel the Tabernacle offerings in Exodus 35-36, where the people gave so abundantly they had to be restrained.

¹When the wall had been rebuilt and I had installed the doors, and the gatekeepers, the singers, and the Levites had been appointed, ²I put my brother Hanani and Hananiah the fortress commander in charge of Jerusalem — because Hananiah was a man of integrity who feared God more than most. ³I told them, "The gates of Jerusalem must not be opened until the sun is well up. While the guards are still on duty, they are to close and bar the doors. Station residents of Jerusalem as guards, each at his assigned post, each opposite his own house." ⁴The city was spacious and large, but the people in it were few, and no houses had been rebuilt. ⁵My God put it in my heart to assemble the nobles, the officials, and the people for genealogical registration. I found the genealogical record of those who had returned in the first wave, and this is what was written in it: ⁶These are the people of the province who came up from the captivity of the exile — those whom King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon had deported — and who returned to Jerusalem and Judah, each to his own town. ⁷Those who came with Zerubbabel: Yeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The count of the men of the people of Israel: ⁸Descendants of Parosh: 2,172. ⁹Descendants of Shephatiah: 372. ¹⁰Descendants of Arach: 652. ¹¹Descendants of Pahath-Moab (through the lines of Yeshua and Yoav): 2,818. ¹²Descendants of Elam: 1,254. ¹³Descendants of Zattu: 845. ¹⁴Descendants of Zakkai: 760. ¹⁵Descendants of Binnui: 648. ¹⁶Descendants of Bevai: 628. ¹⁷Descendants of Azgad: 2,322. ¹⁸Descendants of Adoniam: 667. ¹⁹Descendants of Bigvai: 2,067. ²⁰Descendants of Adin: 655. ²¹Descendants of Ater (through Hezekiah): 98. ²²Descendants of Hashum: 328. ²³Descendants of Betsai: 324. ²⁴Descendants of Hariph: 112. ²⁵People of Gibeon: 95. ²⁶People of Bethlehem and Netophah: 188. ²⁷People of Anathoth: 128. ²⁸People of Beth-Azmaveth: 42. ²⁹People of Qiryath-Yearim, Kephirah, and Beeroth: 743. ³⁰People of Ramah and Geva: 621. ³¹People of Mikmas: 122. ³²People of Bethel and Ai: 123. ³³People of the other Nebo: 52. ³⁴Descendants of the other Elam: 1,254. ³⁵Descendants of Harim: 320. ³⁶People of Jericho: 345. ³⁷People of Lod, Hadid, and Ono: 721. ³⁸Descendants of Senaah: 3,930. ³⁹The priests: Descendants of Yedaiah (of the house of Yeshua): 973. ⁴⁰Descendants of Immer: 1,052. ⁴¹Descendants of Pashhur: 1,247. ⁴²Descendants of Harim: 1,017. ⁴³The Levites: Descendants of Yeshua (through Qadmiel, of the line of Hodaviah): 74. ⁴⁴The singers: Descendants of Asaph: 148. ⁴⁵The gatekeepers: Descendants of Shallum, Ater, Talmon, Aqqub, Hatita, and Shovai: 138. ⁴⁶The temple servants: Descendants of Tsiha, Hasupha, and Tabbaoth; ⁴⁷descendants of Qeros, Sia, and Padon; ⁴⁸descendants of Levanah, Hagavah, and Shalmai; ⁴⁹descendants of Hanan, Giddel, and Gahar; ⁵⁰descendants of Reaiah, Retsin, and Neqoda; ⁵¹descendants of Gazzam, Uzza, and Paseach; ⁵²descendants of Vesai, the Meunim, and the Nephishesim; ⁵³descendants of Baqbuq, Haqupha, and Harhur; ⁵⁴descendants of Batslith, Mehida, and Harsha; ⁵⁵descendants of Barqos, Sisera, and Temah; ⁵⁶descendants of Netsiach and Hatipha. ⁵⁷Descendants of Solomon's servants: descendants of Sotai, Sophereth, and Perida; ⁵⁸descendants of Yaala, Darqon, and Giddel; ⁵⁹descendants of Shephatiah, Hattil, Pokereth-Hatsevaïm, and Amon. ⁶⁰All the temple servants and descendants of Solomon's servants: 392. ⁶¹These came up from Tel-Melah, Tel-Harsha, Keruv, Addon, and Immer, but they could not prove their ancestral house or their lineage — whether they were Israelites: ⁶²descendants of Delaiah, Tobiah, and Neqoda: 642. ⁶³And from the priests: descendants of Hovaiah, descendants of Haqqots, descendants of Barzillai (who had married a daughter of Barzillai the Gileadite and was

called by their name). ⁶⁴These searched for their genealogical records but could not find them. So they were excluded from the priesthood as unclean. ⁶⁵The governor told them they must not eat from the most holy portions until a priest stood with the Urim and Thummim. ⁶⁶The whole assembly together: 42,360, ⁶⁷besides their 7,337 male and female servants. They also had 245 male and female singers. ⁶⁸Their horses: 736. Their mules: 245. ⁶⁹Camels: 435. Donkeys: 6,720. ⁷⁰Some of the heads of families gave to the project. The governor contributed to the treasury: 1,000 gold darics, 50 sprinkling bowls, and 530 priestly garments. ⁷¹Some of the heads of families contributed to the project treasury: 20,000 gold darics and 2,200 silver minas. ⁷²What the rest of the people gave: 20,000 gold darics, 2,000 silver minas, and 67 priestly garments.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Three groups are appointed for the completed city: gatekeepers (sho'arim) for security, singers (meshorerim) for worship, and Levites for Temple service. The sequence is significant — the wall comes first, then the gates, then the staffing. Each layer adds function to the physical structure.
2. Hanani is the same brother who brought the original bad news from Jerusalem (1:2). Hananiah commands the birah ('fortress, citadel') — the military installation adjacent to the Temple Mount. Two leadership criteria are named: emet ('integrity, reliability') and yir'at Elohim ('fear of God'). The phrase me-rabbim ('more than many') is comparative — Hananiah's reverence exceeded that of his peers.
3. The gate protocol delays opening until chom ha-shemesh ('the heat of the sun') — well past dawn, when surprise attacks typically occurred. The guards must close and bar the doors before leaving their posts. The resident-guard system (ish bemishmaro ve-ish neged beito) continues the principle from chapter 3: people guard the wall section nearest their home.
4. The contrast between the restored walls and the empty interior is stark: rechavat yadayim u-gedolah ('wide on both sides and large') describes the enclosed area, but me'at ('few') describes the population, and ein battim benuyim ('no houses built') describes the housing stock. The wall protects an essentially empty city. This sets up the population problem that chapter 11 will address.
5. Nehemiah attributes the census idea to divine prompting: va-yitten Elohai el libbi ('my God put it into my heart'). The sefer ha-yachas ('book of genealogy') is the official record from the first return under Zerubbabel (approximately 538-520 BCE). The phrase ha-olim ba-rishonah ('those who went up first') refers to the initial wave of returnees. What follows is Nehemiah's reproduction of that document.
6. The introduction frames the list as a homecoming document: people returning from Babylonian exile to their ancestral towns. The phrase ish le-iro ('each man to his town') indicates that the returnees did not all settle in Jerusalem but dispersed to their family's original locations throughout Judah.
7. Twelve leaders are named, possibly representing the twelve tribes symbolically. This Nehemiah is not the author but an earlier figure. Zerubbabel was the Davidic heir who led the first return; Yeshua (Jeshua) was the high priest. Some names differ from the Ezra 2 version (e.g., Raamiah here vs. Reelaiah in Ezra; Mispereth here vs. Mispar in Ezra), reflecting variant spellings of the same individuals.
8. Parosh ('flea') heads the list of lay families as in Ezra 2:3, which counts 2,172 as well — the two lists agree here.
9. Shephatiah ('the LORD has judged') — the number matches Ezra 2:4.
10. Arach ('wayfarer') — Ezra 2:5 records 775, one of the significant numerical differences between the two lists. The variation may reflect different stages of the registration process.
11. Pahath-Moab ('governor of Moab') is a compound clan name. The family traces through two sub-lines: Yeshua and Yoav. Ezra 2:6 records 2,812 — a difference of six.
12. Elam — the number matches Ezra 2:7.
13. Zattu — Ezra 2:8 records 945, a difference of one hundred. Such variations underscore that these are independent copies of an administrative document.
14. Zakkai ('pure, innocent') — the number matches Ezra 2:9.
15. Binnui here corresponds to Bani in Ezra 2:10 (which records 642). The name variation and slight numerical difference suggest the same family listed under variant forms.
16. Bevai — Ezra 2:11 records 623, a difference of five.
17. Azgad ('Gad is strong') — Ezra 2:12 records 1,222, a significant difference of 1,100 — possibly the largest single discrepancy between the two lists.
18. Adoniam ('my lord has risen') — Ezra 2:13 records 666.
19. Bigvai — Ezra 2:14 records 2,056.
20. Adin ('delicate') — Ezra 2:15 records 454, a difference of over two hundred.
21. Ater is identified through the line of Hezekiah to distinguish this family from others of the same name. The number matches Ezra 2:16.

22. Hashum — Ezra 2:19 records 223.
23. Betsai — Ezra 2:17 records 323.
24. Hariph here corresponds to Jorah in Ezra 2:18 (which also records 112). The family is the same under a different name.
25. Beginning here, the list shifts from family names to place names — people identified by their town of origin. Gibeon was a significant town northwest of Jerusalem. Ezra 2:20 lists 'sons of Gibbar' (95), which may be the same community.
26. Bethlehem and Netophah are combined here but listed separately in Ezra 2:21-22 ($123 + 56 = 179$). Netophah was a village near Bethlehem. The combined figure of 188 differs from Ezra's combined 179.
27. Anathoth was a priestly town three miles northeast of Jerusalem — Jeremiah's hometown (Jeremiah 1:1). The number matches Ezra 2:23.
28. Beth-Azmaveth is called simply Azmaveth in Ezra 2:24, which also records 42.
29. Three Gibeonite-alliance towns grouped together, as in Ezra 2:25 (which records the same 743). Qiryath-Yearim was where the ark rested before David brought it to Jerusalem (1 Samuel 7:1-2).
30. Ramah and Geva (Geba) were Benjaminite towns north of Jerusalem. Ezra 2:26 records 621 for the same towns.
31. Mikmas (Michmash) was the site of Jonathan's famous military exploit (1 Samuel 13-14). The number matches Ezra 2:27.
32. Bethel and Ai are paired as in Joshua's conquest narrative (Joshua 7-8). Ezra 2:28 records 223 — a significant difference of exactly 100.
33. The specification 'other' (acher) distinguishes this Nebo from other locations with the same name. Ezra 2:29 records 52 as well.
34. A second Elam family (distinct from v. 12), both numbering exactly 1,254. The coincidence of identical numbers for two different Elam clans has puzzled interpreters; it may reflect an administrative convention or a genuine demographic parallel.
35. Harim — Ezra 2:32 also records 320.
36. Jericho — the number matches Ezra 2:34.
37. Three towns in the coastal plain region, grouped together. Ono is the same plain where Sanballat tried to lure Nehemiah (6:2). Ezra 2:33 records 725.
38. Senaah is the largest single family in the list. Ezra 2:35 records 3,630 — a difference of 300. The size of this clan suggests it may be a geographic community rather than a single family.
39. The list now shifts to priestly families. Yedaiah's line is connected to the high priestly house of Yeshua (Jeshua), the high priest who returned with Zerubbabel. The number matches Ezra 2:36.
40. Immer — the number matches Ezra 2:37.
41. Pashhur — the number matches Ezra 2:38.
42. Harim (the priestly Harim, distinct from the lay Harim in v. 35) — the number matches Ezra 2:39. The total of the four priestly families is 4,289 — a substantial proportion of the returning community.
43. The Levites number only 74 — strikingly small compared to the 4,289 priests. This imbalance is a recurring problem in Ezra-Nehemiah; Ezra had difficulty recruiting Levites (Ezra 8:15-20). Hodaviah here is called Hodevah; Ezra 2:40 has Hodaviah.
44. Asaph was David's chief musician (1 Chronicles 16:4-5). His descendants maintained the musical tradition through exile and return. Ezra 2:41 records 128.
45. Six gatekeeper families are listed. Ezra 2:42 records 139. Gatekeepers (sho'arim) were Levitical personnel responsible for controlling access to the Temple precincts — a security function parallel to the wall guards.
46. The Netinim ('those who are given') were Temple servants, possibly descended from foreign captives dedicated to sanctuary service. Their list runs from here through verse 56. Ezra 2:43 begins the same sequence.
47. Sia here corresponds to Siaha in Ezra 2:44.
48. Shalmal here corresponds to Shamlai in some manuscripts of Ezra 2:46.
49. These three names match Ezra 2:46-47.
50. These names match Ezra 2:48.
51. These names match Ezra 2:49.
52. The Meunim and Nephishesim have names suggesting foreign origin — the Meunim were a people from the region of Mount Seir, and Nephishesim may connect to the Ishmaelite tribe Naphish (Genesis 25:15). Their presence among temple servants supports the tradition that this group included assimilated foreigners.

53. These names match Ezra 2:51.
54. Batslith here corresponds to Bazluth in Ezra 2:52.
55. The name Sisera is striking — though likely unrelated to the Canaanite general of Judges 4-5, it may indicate foreign ancestry in this temple-servant line.
56. The temple servant list concludes with these two families, matching Ezra 2:54.
57. Solomon's servants (avdei Shelomoh) were a distinct class, probably descendants of the Canaanite peoples Solomon conscripted for forced labor (1 Kings 9:20-21). Perida here corresponds to Peruda in Ezra 2:55.
58. These names match Ezra 2:56.
59. Pokereth-Hatsevaïm means 'binder of gazelles' — an occupational surname. Amon here may correspond to Ami in Ezra 2:57. The list of Solomon's servants ends here.
60. The combined total for temple servants and Solomon's servants matches Ezra 2:58.
61. A critical category: people who returned from Babylonian towns (Tel-Melah, Tel-Harsha, etc.) but could not document their Israelite ancestry. The tel- prefix means 'mound' — these were Babylonian settlements. Without genealogical proof (beit avotam ve-zar'am, 'their ancestral house and their offspring/seed'), their covenant membership was uncertain.
62. These 642 people could not verify their Israelite descent. The name Tobiah here is likely coincidental with Tobiah the Ammonite opponent, though the resonance would not have been lost on readers. Ezra 2:60 records 652.
63. Three priestly families could not prove their genealogy. The Barzillai case is poignant: a priest had married into the family of Barzillai the Gileadite (David's benefactor, 2 Samuel 19:31-39) and taken his wife's family name — thereby losing his own priestly lineage record. The marriage itself was legitimate, but the name change obliterated the genealogical documentation needed for priestly service.
64. The verb go'alu ('they were defiled, excluded') is severe — these families were treated as ritually disqualified (from the priesthood, not from the community). Without documented priestly lineage, they could not serve at the altar. The verb biqshu ('they searched') shows they tried to find their records but failed — the Babylonian exile had destroyed archives along with everything else.
65. The Tirshatha (a Persian title meaning 'governor' or 'his excellency') likely refers to Zerubbabel at the time of the original return. The ruling is a compromise: the families are not permanently expelled but suspended until a priest with Urim and Thummim can render a divine verdict. The Urim and Thummim were the priestly oracle objects (Exodus 28:30) used for divine guidance. No text records their use after the exile, making this suspension effectively permanent — a gentle way of excluding without condemning.
66. This total of 42,360 matches Ezra 2:64 exactly, even though the individual line items in the two lists do not sum to this figure in either version. The total was likely preserved from an independent source or represents the full community including women, children, and uncategorized individuals not itemized in the family lists.
67. The servants (avadim va-amahot) are listed separately from the free community. The 245 singers (meshorerim u-meshorerot, male and female) are secular musicians, distinct from the Levitical singers of verse 44. Ezra 2:65 records 7,337 servants and 200 singers — the servant number matches but the singer count differs.
68. The animal inventory begins. Horses were luxury transport and military assets. Mules were prized as sturdy pack animals for the long journey from Babylon. Ezra 2:66 records 736 horses and 245 mules — identical.
69. Camels served the desert crossing from Babylon. The large number of donkeys (6,720) reflects their role as the primary beast of burden for ordinary families. Ezra 2:67 matches on camels (435) and donkeys (6,720).
70. The freewill offerings begin with the governor's contribution. The darkemon ('daric') was a Persian gold coin weighing about 8.4 grams — 1,000 darics represents substantial wealth. The mizraqot ('sprinkling bowls') were Temple vessels used in sacrificial rituals. The priestly garments (kotnot kohanim) were needed to outfit the priests for restored Temple service.
71. The family heads' collective contribution dwarfs the governor's: 20,000 gold darics (roughly 168 kilograms of gold) and 2,200 silver minas (approximately 1,260 kilograms of silver). A mina (maneh) was a unit of weight equal to about 571 grams. These are extraordinary sums that funded Temple restoration and city infrastructure.
72. The ordinary people's contribution nearly matches that of the family heads — another 20,000 darics and 2,000 minas, plus 67 additional priestly garments. The generosity is communal, not limited to the wealthy. This mirrors the Tabernacle construction in Exodus 35-36, where the entire community gave so freely that Moses had to tell them to stop.

Summary: *On the first day of the seventh month, the entire community gathers in the square before the Water Gate and asks Ezra the scribe to bring the scroll of the Torah of Moses. Ezra reads aloud from dawn to midday while the people stand and listen. Levites circulate through the crowd explaining the text so that everyone understands. The people weep when they hear the words of the Law — but Nehemiah, Ezra, and the Levites tell them to stop mourning, because this day is holy. They are commanded to eat rich food, drink sweet wine, and send portions to those who have nothing, for 'the joy of the LORD is your strength.' The next day, the leaders discover the commandment to observe the Festival of Shelters (Sukkot) by living in booths. The entire community builds shelters and celebrates for seven days with Ezra reading Torah daily — a celebration unmatched since the days of Joshua son of Nun.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the great restoration moments in the Hebrew Bible. The people do not merely hear the Torah read — they understand it, perhaps for the first time in generations. The Levites function as interpreters, giving the sense (meforash) so that the people grasp the meaning (va-yavinu ba-miqra). The emotional response — spontaneous weeping — reveals what exile had cost: a generation had grown up without Torah, and hearing it read was simultaneously a homecoming and a grief. The command to turn from mourning to celebration reframes the entire event: Torah is not meant to crush but to empower. The phrase 'the joy of the LORD is your strength' (chedvat YHWH hi ma'uzzekhem) has become one of the most quoted lines in the Hebrew Bible, and its context — a people who had lost everything and were hearing God's instruction again for the first time — gives it extraordinary weight.*

Translation Friction: *Ezra suddenly appears after being absent from the narrative since chapter 2. His relationship to Nehemiah as governor is never clarified — they function as parallel leaders, one religious and one civil. The phrase meforash vesom sekhel (v. 8) is debated: it may mean the Levites 'translated' from Hebrew to Aramaic (the people's everyday language), or that they 'explained' or 'interpreted' the text. Both functions may have been needed. The Festival of Shelters reference to 'since the days of Joshua son of Nun' (v. 17) is hyperbolic or specific — Israel had celebrated Sukkot before (2 Chronicles 8:13, Ezra 3:4), but perhaps never with this particular combination of Torah reading and booth-building by the entire population.*

Connections: *The public Torah reading parallels Moses' command in Deuteronomy 31:10-13 that every seventh year, at Sukkot, the Torah should be read before the entire assembly. Josiah's reform began with a similar public reading of a discovered scroll (2 Kings 22-23). The weeping-then-joy pattern mirrors Ezra 3:12-13, where the old men wept at the new Temple's foundation while the young celebrated. The Festival of Shelters connects to Leviticus 23:33-43 and Deuteronomy 16:13-15. The phrase 'since the days of Joshua' echoes the book's deep concern with re-entering and re-possessing the land — what Joshua began, the returnees are completing.*

1All the people assembled as one in the open square before the Water Gate. They asked Ezra the scribe to bring the scroll of the Law of Moses, which the LORD had commanded Israel. 2On the first day of the seventh month, Ezra the priest brought the Law before the assembly — men, women, and everyone old enough to understand. 3He read from it facing the square before the Water Gate, from first light until midday, in the presence of the men, the women, and those who could understand. The ears of all the people were fixed on the scroll of the Law. 4Ezra the scribe stood on a raised wooden platform built for the occasion. Standing beside him on his right were Mattithiah, Shema, Anaiah, Uriah, Hilqiah, and Maaseiah; on his left stood Pedaiah, Mishael, Malkiah, Hashum, Hashbaddanah, Zechariah, and Meshullam. 5Ezra opened the scroll in full view of all the people — he stood above them all — and as he opened it, the entire people rose to their feet. 6Ezra blessed the LORD, the great God, and all the people responded "Amen! Amen!" lifting their hands. Then they knelt and bowed down before the LORD with their faces to the ground. 7Yeshua, Bani, Shereviah, Yamin, Aqqub, Shabbethai, Hodiah, Maaseiah, Qelita, Azariah, Yozavad, Hanan, and Pelaiah — the Levites — helped the people understand the Law while the people remained standing in their places. 8They read from the scroll of the Law of God, translating and giving the meaning so that the people understood what was being read. 9Nehemiah the governor, Ezra the priest and scribe, and the Levites who were teaching the people said to all the people: "This day is holy to the LORD your God. Do not mourn. Do not weep." For all the

people were weeping as they heard the words of the Law. ¹⁰He told them, "Go, eat rich food, drink sweet drinks, and send portions to anyone who has nothing prepared — for this day is holy to our Lord. Do not grieve, for the joy of the LORD is your strength." ¹¹The Levites quieted all the people, saying, "Be still — this day is holy. Do not grieve." ¹²All the people went away to eat, drink, send portions to others, and celebrate with great joy — because they had understood the words that had been made known to them. ¹³On the second day, the heads of families of all the people, along with the priests and the Levites, gathered around Ezra the scribe to study the words of the Law more closely. ¹⁴They found written in the Law, which the LORD had commanded through Moses, that the Israelites should live in shelters during the festival of the seventh month. ¹⁵They issued a proclamation throughout all their towns and in Jerusalem: "Go out to the hills and bring back olive branches, oil-tree branches, myrtle branches, palm fronds, and branches from leafy trees to make shelters, as it is written." ¹⁶So the people went out and brought branches back, and they built shelters for themselves — on their rooftops, in their courtyards, in the courtyards of the house of God, in the square by the Water Gate, and in the square by the Ephraim Gate. ¹⁷The whole assembly — those who had returned from captivity — built shelters and lived in them. The Israelites had not done this since the days of Joshua son of Nun until that day. And the joy was overwhelming. ¹⁸Ezra read from the scroll of the Law of God day after day, from the first day to the last. They celebrated the festival for seven days, and on the eighth day there was a solemn assembly, as the law requires.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ke-ish echad* ('as one man') describes complete unity — the entire community acts with a single will. The open square (*recho*) before the Water Gate served as a public gathering space large enough for the whole population. That the people request (*va-yomeru*) the Torah reading rather than having it imposed is theologically significant: this is a community hungry for God's instruction.
2. Ezra is called both 'scribe' (*sofer*, v. 1) and 'priest' (*kohen*) — he holds both credentials. The audience is deliberately inclusive: *me-ish ve-ad ishah* ('from man to woman') and *kol mevin lishmo'a* ('all who could understand by listening'). Children too young to comprehend were apparently excluded, but no adult was — women are explicitly part of the assembly. The first day of the seventh month (*Tishri*) is *Rosh Hashanah*, the day of trumpet blasts (*Leviticus 23:23-25*).
3. The reading lasted approximately six hours — *min ha-or* ('from the light,' meaning dawn) until *machatsit ha-yom* ('half the day,' midday). The phrase *oznei khol ha-am el sefer ha-torah* ('the ears of all the people toward the scroll of the Torah') is not a figure of speech but a description of sustained, focused attention. An entire community stood listening for half a day.
4. The *migdal ets* ('tower of wood') was a purpose-built reading platform — essentially a pulpit constructed specifically for this event. Thirteen men flank Ezra, six on the right and seven on the left, serving as witnesses and assistants. The arrangement is formal and ceremonial, giving the Torah reading the gravity of a court proceeding or royal proclamation.
5. The scroll is opened publicly (*le-einei khol ha-am*, 'before the eyes of all the people'). The elevated platform ensures visibility. The people's spontaneous rising (*amdu khol ha-am*) when the scroll is opened is a physical act of reverence — standing before the Torah as one stands before a king. This gesture will become standard synagogue practice for Torah readings.
6. The worship sequence involves three physical postures: standing (v. 5), hands raised (*bemo'al yedeihem*, 'with the lifting of their hands'), and full prostration (*appayim artsah*, 'faces to the ground'). The double 'Amen' is emphatic congregational affirmation. The phrase *Elohim ha-gadol* ('the great God') echoes Nehemiah's prayer language (1:5). This liturgical pattern — blessing, response, prostration — will shape Jewish synagogue worship.
7. Thirteen Levites are named, matching the thirteen men on the platform. Their function is *mevinim et ha-am la-torah* ('causing the people to understand the Torah'). This is active interpretation, not passive reading. They moved through the standing crowd, explaining as Ezra read. The phrase *ve-ha-am al omdam* ('the people upon their standing') indicates the audience remained in place while the Levites circulated.
8. Three activities are described: reading (*va-yiqre'u*), making the text clear (*meforash*), and giving understanding (*som sekhel*). The result: *va-yavinu ba-miqra* ('they understood the reading'). This verse describes the birth of public Torah instruction — not merely reading aloud but actively ensuring comprehension. The practice described here will become the foundation of synagogue worship: public reading, followed by explanation, aimed at communal understanding.
9. The people's weeping (*bokhim*) is spontaneous and universal (*khol ha-am*). The cause: *ke-shom'am et divrei ha-torah* ('when they heard the words of the Torah'). Hearing the Law after a generation of exile-induced ignorance produces grief — grief over what was lost, what was violated, what was forgotten. Three authority figures unite to redirect this grief: Nehemiah (civil leader), Ezra (religious leader), and the Levites (teachers). Their command is double: *al tit'ablu* ('do not mourn') and *al tivku* ('do not weep').
10. The imperative sequence — go, eat, drink, send — is rapid and decisive. *Mashmannim* ('rich foods') refers to fatty, oil-rich delicacies; *mamtaqqim* ('sweet drinks') refers to sweetened beverages, possibly wine mixed with honey or fruit juices. The phrase *chedvat YHWH hi ma'uzzekhem* has become one of the most quoted lines in the Hebrew Bible. *Chedvah* is a rare word for joy (used only here and 1 Chronicles 16:27). *Ma'oz* means

'strength, fortress, stronghold' — the joy of the LORD is not a feeling but a fortification.

11. The Levites function as crowd managers, moving through the assembly with the message hassu ('be quiet, be still'). The repetition of the holiness rationale (ki ha-yom qadosh) reinforces the leaders' message: grief is not wrong, but it is not what this day requires.
12. The four activities match the commands of verse 10: eat, drink, send portions, and celebrate. The reason for their joy is given as ki hevinu ba-devarim ('because they understood the words'). Understanding produces joy — not ignorance, not denial, but genuine comprehension of Torah. The simchah gedolah ('great joy') that replaces the weeping is one of the great emotional pivots in the Hebrew Bible.
13. The leaders return the next day for deeper study (lehaskil, 'to gain insight, to understand thoroughly'). This is not another public reading but a leadership study session — the heads of families (rashei ha-avot), priests, and Levites want to go deeper into the text. The verb saskil implies not just comprehension but wisdom and skill in application.
14. The study session yields a practical discovery: the command to observe the Festival of Shelters (Sukkot) by dwelling in sukkot ('booths, temporary shelters'). The command is found in Leviticus 23:33-43 and Deuteronomy 16:13-15. The seventh month (Tishri) is the current month — the timing is providential. The festival should begin on the fifteenth of the month, giving them less than two weeks to prepare.
15. The proclamation (va-ya'aviru qol, 'they passed a voice/announcement') goes to all towns, not just Jerusalem. Five types of foliage are listed for the shelters: olive (zayit), oil tree (ets shemen, possibly a wild olive or pine), myrtle (hadas), palm (temarim), and leafy trees (ets avot, 'thick/dense trees'). The phrase ka-katuv ('as it is written') ties the practice directly to the text they discovered — this is Torah obedience in real time.
16. Shelters spring up across the entire city in five locations: private rooftops (gaggo), private courtyards (chatseroteihem), the Temple courtyards (chatsrot beit ha-Elohim), the Water Gate square, and the Ephraim Gate square. The image is of a city suddenly covered in temporary greenery — every available surface becomes a festival shelter. The Ephraim Gate was on the north wall, suggesting the celebration filled the city from north to south.
17. The phrase mi-yemei Yeshua bin Nun ('from the days of Joshua son of Nun') creates a thousand-year span of comparison. The returning exiles are positioned as a new generation entering the land, just as Joshua's generation did. The simchah gedolah me'od ('very great joy') uses triple intensification — great (gedolah) joy (simchah) very much (me'od). The chapter that began with weeping ends with the most intense joy the text can describe.
18. The festival lasts seven days with daily Torah reading (yom be-yom, 'day by day') — an unprecedented level of sustained public Scripture engagement. The eighth day atseret ('solemn assembly') follows the prescription of Leviticus 23:36 and Numbers 29:35. The phrase ka-mishpat ('according to the rule/custom') confirms that the entire celebration followed the written Torah instructions. The chapter ends not with a dramatic event but with faithful, daily, communal obedience — the quiet fruit of restoration.

9

Summary: *On the twenty-fourth day of the seventh month, the Israelites assemble in fasting and sackcloth to confess their sins. After reading from the Law for a quarter of the day and spending another quarter in confession and worship, the Levites lead one of the longest prayers in the entire Hebrew Bible. This prayer is a sweeping historical recital — from creation through Abraham's covenant, the Exodus, Sinai, the wilderness, the conquest, the judges, and the prophets, all the way to the present moment of Persian subjection. The prayer functions as a covenant lawsuit in reverse: rather than God prosecuting Israel, Israel prosecutes itself, confessing centuries of rebellion while declaring God's faithfulness at every turn.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This prayer is one of only a handful of passages in the Hebrew Bible that attempt a comprehensive theological reading of Israel's entire history. Its closest parallels are Psalms 78, 105, 106, and Ezekiel 20. What distinguishes this prayer is its rhetorical structure: at every stage, Israel's failure is set against God's faithful love (chesed) and faithfulness (emunah). God gives — Israel rebels — God shows mercy — Israel rebels again. The cycle never breaks on God's side. The prayer culminates not in a request for deliverance but in a covenant commitment: the people resolve to bind themselves in writing to Torah obedience. The phrase 'you are righteous' (attah tsaddiq) in verse 33 is the theological spine — even Israel's suffering is acknowledged as just, because God has acted faithfully while they have not.*

Translation Friction: *The attribution of this prayer is debated. The Hebrew text names Levites in verse 5 but uses singular verbs for the prayer itself starting in verse 6, creating ambiguity about whether one Levite leads or all speak together. The historical summary omits several major events (the golden calf narrative is only alluded to, David is entirely absent, Solomon is not named). These omissions are likely deliberate — the prayer selects events that illustrate the covenant pattern of gift-rebellion-mercy, not a complete chronology. The phrase*

'and now' (ve-attah) in verse 32 signals the transition from historical recital to present petition, a standard structural marker in biblical prayers.

Connections: The prayer draws heavily on the Pentateuch's narrative framework: Genesis 1 (creation, v. 6), Genesis 12-15 (Abraham's covenant, vv. 7-8), Exodus 3-14 (Egypt and the sea, vv. 9-11), Exodus 19-34 (Sinai, vv. 13-14), Numbers 14-21 (wilderness rebellion, vv. 15-22). The confession formula echoes Daniel 9:4-19, which uses nearly identical covenant vocabulary from the same period. The description of God as 'gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and rich in faithful love' (v. 17) is a direct quotation of the divine self-revelation in Exodus 34:6, the most quoted verse within the Hebrew Bible itself. The covenant-sealing that follows in chapter 10 is the direct response to this prayer.

¹On the twenty-fourth day of this month, the Israelites gathered together, fasting, wearing sackcloth, and with dust on their heads. ²The Israelites separated themselves from all foreigners, then stood and confessed their sins and the iniquities of their ancestors. ³They stood in their places and read from the scroll of the Law of the LORD their God for a quarter of the day, and for another quarter they confessed and bowed down before the LORD their God. ⁴Then Jeshua, Bani, Kadmiel, Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani, and Kenani stood on the Levites' platform and cried out with a loud voice to the LORD their God. ⁵Then the Levites — Jeshua, Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah, Sherebiah, Hodiah, Shebaniah, and Pethahiah — said: "Stand up! Bless the LORD your God from everlasting to everlasting! Let them bless your glorious name — exalted above all blessing and praise." ⁶You alone are the LORD. You made the heavens — the highest heavens and all their starry host — the earth and everything on it, the seas and everything in them. You give life to all of them, and the heavenly host bows down before you. ⁷You are the LORD God who chose Abram, brought him out of Ur of the Chaldeans, and gave him the name Abraham. ⁸You found his heart faithful before you, and you made a covenant with him to give the land of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, and the Girgashites — to give it to his descendants. And you kept your word, because you are righteous. ⁹You saw the suffering of our ancestors in Egypt and heard their cry at the Sea of Reeds. ¹⁰You performed signs and wonders against Pharaoh, all his officials, and all the people of his land, because you knew they had acted arrogantly against our ancestors. You made a name for yourself that endures to this day. ¹¹You split the sea before them, and they crossed through on dry ground. Their pursuers you hurled into the depths, like a stone into surging waters. ¹²You led them by a pillar of cloud during the day and by a pillar of fire at night, to light the way they were to travel. ¹³You came down on Mount Sinai and spoke with them from heaven. You gave them just rules, true instructions, and good statutes and commands. ¹⁴You made known to them your holy Sabbath and gave them commands, statutes, and instruction through your servant Moses. ¹⁵You gave them bread from heaven for their hunger and brought water from the rock for their thirst, and you told them to go in and take possession of the land you had sworn to give them. ¹⁶But they — our ancestors — acted arrogantly, stiffened their necks, and did not obey your commands. ¹⁷They refused to listen and did not remember your wonders that you had done among them. They stiffened their necks and appointed a leader to return to their slavery in rebellion. But you are a God of forgiveness — gracious, compassionate, slow to anger, and rich in faithful love — and you did not abandon them. ¹⁸Even when they made a cast metal calf and said, "This is your god who brought you up from Egypt!" — committing terrible blasphemies — ¹⁹you, in your great compassion, did not abandon them in the wilderness. The pillar of cloud did not leave them by day, guiding them on the road, nor the pillar of fire by night, lighting the way they were to go. ²⁰You gave your good Spirit to instruct them. You did not withhold your manna from their mouths, and you gave them water for their thirst. ²¹For forty years you sustained them in the wilderness — they lacked nothing. Their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell. ²²You gave them kingdoms and peoples and allotted territory to them. They took possession of the land of Sihon — the land of the king of Heshbon — and the land of Og king of Bashan. ²³You multiplied their descendants like the stars of heaven and brought them into the land you had promised their ancestors they would enter and possess. ²⁴Their descendants entered and took possession of the land. You subdued the Canaanite inhabitants before them and handed them over — their kings and the peoples of the land — to do with them as they wished. ²⁵They captured fortified cities and fertile land. They took over houses full of every good thing — hewn cisterns, vineyards, olive groves, and fruit trees in abundance. They ate, were satisfied, grew fat, and luxuriated in your great goodness. ²⁶But they were defiant and rebelled

against you. They threw your Law behind their backs and killed your prophets who warned them to turn back to you. They committed terrible blasphemies. ²⁷So you handed them over to their enemies, who oppressed them. But when they cried out to you in their distress, you heard from heaven, and in your great compassion you gave them deliverers who rescued them from their enemies. ²⁸But as soon as they had relief, they went back to doing evil before you. You abandoned them to their enemies, who ruled over them. Yet when they turned and cried out to you again, you heard from heaven and delivered them many times in your compassion. ²⁹You warned them to bring them back to your Law, but they acted arrogantly and did not obey your commands. They sinned against your rules — the very rules by which a person lives if they follow them. They turned a stubborn shoulder, stiffened their necks, and refused to listen. ³⁰You bore with them for many years and warned them by your Spirit through your prophets, but they would not listen. So you handed them over to the peoples of the lands. ³¹Yet in your great compassion you did not make a complete end of them, and you did not abandon them, because you are a gracious and compassionate God. ³²And now, our God — the great, mighty, and awe-inspiring God who keeps covenant and faithful love — do not let all the hardship that has found us seem insignificant before you: our kings, our officials, our priests, our prophets, our ancestors, and all your people, from the days of the kings of Assyria until this very day. ³³You have been righteous in everything that has come upon us, for you have acted faithfully, but we have acted wickedly. ³⁴Our kings, our officials, our priests, and our ancestors did not follow your Law. They did not pay attention to your commands or to the warnings you gave them. ³⁵Even in their own kingdom, enjoying the great goodness you gave them, in the spacious and fertile land you set before them — they did not serve you and did not turn from their evil deeds. ³⁶Look — today we are slaves! The very land you gave our ancestors to enjoy its fruit and its goodness — look, we are slaves on it! ³⁷Its abundant harvest goes to the kings you have set over us because of our sins. They rule over our bodies and our livestock as they please. We are in great distress. ³⁸Because of all this, we are making a binding agreement and putting it in writing. Our officials, our Levites, and our priests are affixing their seals to it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The twenty-fourth day follows closely after the Festival of Shelters (Sukkot), which ended on the twenty-second. The fasting and sackcloth signal penitential mourning — a sharp tonal shift from the celebration of the previous weeks. The 'dust upon them' (adamah aleihem) is a mourning gesture signifying abasement before God.
2. The verb nivdelu ('separated themselves') echoes the separation language of Ezra 9-10. The confession covers both their own sins (chatoteihem) and the iniquities of their ancestors (avonot avoteihem) — the prayer that follows will demonstrate exactly what those ancestral iniquities were, tracing them across the full span of Israel's history.
3. The day is divided into quarters: one quarter for Torah reading, one quarter for confession and worship. A 'quarter of the day' (revi'it ha-yom) is approximately three hours. The structure — reading followed by confession — shows that the Law itself generates the awareness of sin. The people hear what God commanded and then confess how they and their ancestors failed to obey.
4. The ma'aleh ha-Leviyim ('Levites' platform' or 'stairway of the Levites') is a raised structure allowing the speakers to be heard by the assembly. Eight Levites are named, with 'Bani' appearing twice — this is likely two different individuals with the same name. The verb za'aqu ('cried out') indicates passionate, urgent vocalization, not quiet prayer.
5. The list of Levites here differs slightly from verse 4, suggesting a second group or a variant tradition. The call 'Stand up! Bless the LORD your God' (qumu barakhu) is a liturgical summons — the Levites call the congregation to worship. The phrase min ha-olam ad ha-olam ('from everlasting to everlasting') frames God's praise as timeless. The closing phrase — God is 'exalted above all blessing and praise' — acknowledges that human worship can never fully match its object.
6. The emphatic 'You alone' (attah hu YHWH levaddekha) isolates God as the sole creator. The list — heavens, heaven of heavens, their host, earth, seas — echoes Genesis 1's creation account. The verb mechayeh ('gives life, preserves alive') makes God not merely creator but sustainer. The 'host of heaven' (tseva ha-shamayim) here means the angelic beings, not the stars, since they are described as worshipping.
7. The prayer moves from creation to election — God chose (bacharta) Abram. The three verbs — chose, brought out, renamed — summarize Genesis 11:31-17:5. The renaming from Abram ('exalted father') to Abraham ('father of a multitude') signals the covenant promise. Ur of the Chaldeans locates the origin in Mesopotamia, the very region from which the current generation has returned.
8. The verb karot ('cut') in 'cut a covenant' reflects the ancient ritual of cutting animals in two and passing between the halves (Genesis 15:9-18). The phrase vataqem et devarekha ('you fulfilled your words') uses qum in the Hiphil — to 'cause to stand,' meaning God made his promises come to fruition. The declaration ki tsaddiq attah ('for you are righteous') appears only here and in verse 33, framing the entire historical section.

9. The prayer transitions from Abraham to Egypt, skipping the patriarchal narratives of Isaac and Jacob entirely. The verb *ra'ah* ('saw') echoes Exodus 3:7 ('I have surely seen the affliction of my people'). *Yam Suf* ('Sea of Reeds') is rendered as *such* rather than 'Red Sea,' following the Hebrew. The cry (*ze'aqah*) is the distress call that activates God's covenant response (see Exodus 2:23-24).
10. The 'signs and wonders' (*otot umofim*) is the standard phrase for the ten plagues (Deuteronomy 6:22, 26:8). The verb *hezidu* ('acted arrogantly, dealt presumptuously') characterizes Egypt's sin as prideful defiance. The phrase *vatsa'as lekha shem* ('you made a name for yourself') means that the Exodus became God's defining act of self-revelation — his reputation among the nations rests on it.
11. The verb *baqa'ta* ('you split') is vivid — the same verb used for splitting wood or rock. The contrast is dramatic: Israel walks on dry ground (*yabbashah*), while the Egyptians sink like a stone (even) in mighty waters (*mayim azzim*). The stone simile echoes Exodus 15:5 (the Song of the Sea), where the Egyptians 'sank like a stone.' This is poetic compression of the entire Exodus 14 narrative.
12. The dual guidance — cloud by day, fire by night — comes from Exodus 13:21-22. The pillars represent continuous divine presence: God never left them without direction. The verb *hinchitam* ('you led them') emphasizes that travel through the wilderness was not random wandering but guided movement.
13. The Sinai revelation is described with four categories of law: *mishpatim yesharim* ('straight/just rules'), *torot emet* ('true instructions'), *chuqqim* ('statutes'), and *mitsvot tovim* ('good commands'). Each modifier — straight, true, good — evaluates the Law as beneficial, not burdensome. The prayer is building the case that God gave Israel everything it needed; the failure was entirely on Israel's side.
14. The Sabbath receives special mention — it is 'your holy Sabbath' (*shabbat qodshekha*), possessive and sacred. Sabbath observance will become a major issue in Nehemiah 13, making this mention anticipatory. The phrase *beyad Mosheh avdekha* ('by the hand of Moses your servant') establishes the chain of authority: God commands, Moses transmits.
15. Three gifts are listed: manna (*lechem min ha-shamayim*, 'bread from heaven,' Exodus 16), water from the rock (*mayim mi-sela*, Exodus 17:6 and Numbers 20:8-11), and the command to enter the land. The phrase *nasata et yadekha* ('you lifted your hand') is the oath gesture — God swore with upraised hand to give them the land. This verse is the pivot: everything God promised, he provided. The next verse begins Israel's failure.
16. The turning word 'but' (*ve-hem*) marks the shift from God's generosity to Israel's rebellion. The verb *hezidu* ('acted arrogantly') is the same word used of the Egyptians in verse 10 — Israel has now become like its former oppressors. 'Stiffened their necks' (*vayyaqshu et orpam*) is the biblical image for stubborn refusal, taken from an ox that will not submit to the yoke (see Deuteronomy 9:6, 13; Jeremiah 7:26).
17. The phrase *vayyitnu rosh lashuv le-avdutam* ('they appointed a head/leader to return to their slavery') alludes to Numbers 14:4. The word *bemiriam* should likely be read *bemeryam* ('in their rebellion') rather than 'in Egypt' (*beMitsrayim*), though some manuscripts read the latter. The divine self-description — *channun verachum erekh appayim verav chesed* — is drawn from Exodus 34:6, the foundational revelation of God's character after the golden calf. The final statement *velo azavtam* ('you did not abandon them') is the prayer's recurring refrain of grace.
18. The golden calf incident (Exodus 32) is described with the intensifier *af ki* ('even when, despite that'). The calf (*egel massekah*, 'molten/cast calf') is an idol formed from melted gold. The words they spoke — 'This is your god who brought you up from Egypt' — directly attribute the Exodus to an object they made with their own hands. The prayer calls this *ne'atsot gedolot* ('great blasphemies, terrible provocations'), using a word that implies contemptuous rejection of God.
19. The refrain returns: *lo azavtam* ('you did not abandon them'). Despite the golden calf — despite attributing the Exodus to a metal idol — God kept guiding them. The pillars of cloud and fire (repeated from v. 12) are now presented not as initial gifts but as sustained mercy after rebellion. God did not withdraw his presence even when Israel replaced him with a calf.
20. The 'good Spirit' (*ruach hatovah*) likely refers to the Spirit's role in empowering leadership (Numbers 11:17, 25-26) and providing wisdom. The verb *lehaskilam* ('to give them insight, to instruct them') indicates the Spirit's teaching function. Manna and water are repeated from verse 15 — the prayer emphasizes that God's provision continued uninterrupted despite rebellion.
21. The forty years of wilderness wandering are reframed here not as punishment but as provision. The verb *kilkaltam* ('you sustained, you nourished them') emphasizes ongoing care. The miraculous details — clothes that did not wear out (*lo balu*), feet that did not swell (*lo batsequ*) — come from Deuteronomy 8:4 and 29:5. These are signs of supernatural sustenance during the years of discipline.
22. The conquest narrative begins with the Transjordan victories over Sihon king of Heshbon and Og king of Bashan (Numbers 21:21-35). The phrase *vatachqem lefe'ah* ('you divided them to the corner/edge') likely means God allotted territory at the borders or edges of the land. These initial victories east of the Jordan were the first fulfillment of the land promise.
23. The simile 'like the stars of heaven' (*kekokhevei ha-shamayim*) fulfills the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 15:5 and 22:17. The prayer connects the multiplication of Israel directly to God's promise-keeping. The land (*ha-arets*) is described as the place God had told (*amarta*) the ancestors they would enter — verbal commitment turned into historical reality.
24. The verb *takhna* ('you subdued') is in the Hiphil — God is the active agent of the conquest. The phrase *la'asot bahem kironam* ('to do with them as they wished') describes total military victory. The prayer gives God full credit for the conquest; Israel merely entered what God had opened.
25. The description of the land's bounty echoes Deuteronomy 6:10-11, which warned that abundance could lead to forgetting God. The progression — ate (*vayyokhlu*), were satisfied (*vayyisbe'u*), grew fat (*vayyashminu*), luxuriated (*vayyit'addenu*) — traces the path from provision to excess. The verb *vayyashminu* ('grew fat') recalls Deuteronomy 32:15: 'Jeshurun grew fat and kicked.' This verse sets up the rebellion in the next: fullness led to forgetfulness.

26. Two verbs open the verse: vayyamru ('they were rebellious/defiant') and vayyimredu ('they rebelled'). The image of casting Torah 'behind their backs' (acharei gavam) appears also in 1 Kings 14:9 and Ezekiel 23:35. The killing of prophets (nevi'ekha hargu) is a consistent biblical theme (see 2 Chronicles 24:20-21, Jeremiah 26:20-23). The prophets' function was le-hashivam elekha ('to cause them to return to you') — the prophets were agents of repentance whom Israel silenced by murder.
27. The pattern described here — sin, enemy oppression, cry, deliverance — is the exact framework of Judges 2:11-19. The word moshi'im ('saviors, deliverers') is the plural participle of yasha ('to save'), the same root that gives the name Joshua/Jesus. The verb vayyatseru ('they oppressed them') uses the root tsarar, creating a wordplay with tsaratam ('their distress') — the oppression creates the distress that generates the cry.
28. The verse explicitly names the cycle as repetitive: rabbot ittim ('many times'). The phrase ukhenoach lahem ('when they had relief/rest') uses the verb nuach — the same root as Nehemiah's own name (nechemyah, 'the LORD comforts'). The irony is structural: every time God gave Israel rest, they used it to return to evil. Yet God's compassion (rachamim) never expired.
29. The parenthetical — 'which if a person does, they will live by them' — quotes Leviticus 18:5, a key text in both Jewish and Christian theology about the relationship between Torah obedience and life. The 'stubborn shoulder' (katef soreret) is a unique image: a draft animal that turns its shoulder sideways to avoid the yoke. Combined with the stiff neck, it creates a picture of total physical refusal — the entire body resisting God's direction.
30. The phrase vatimshokh aleihem shanim rabbot ('you extended over them many years') indicates divine patience stretched over generations. The prophetic ministry is described as God's Spirit (ruach) working through (beyad, 'by the hand of') the prophets — the prophets were Spirit-empowered messengers. The final phrase — vattitnem beyad ammei ha-aratsot ('you gave them into the hand of the peoples of the lands') — refers to the Assyrian and Babylonian conquests, the ultimate consequence of centuries of rebellion.
31. The refrain intensifies: lo asitam kalah ('you did not make a complete end of them') — God's judgment stopped short of annihilation. The reason given is God's own character: El channun verachum attah ('you are a gracious and compassionate God'). This echoes verse 17 and Exodus 34:6. The prayer's argument is that Israel's survival is proof not of their merit but of God's nature.
32. The phrase al yim'at lefanekha ('do not let it seem small before you') is a plea for divine attention, not a complaint. The prayer does not accuse God of indifference but asks that the full weight of suffering be acknowledged. The 'kings of Assyria' (malkhei Ashur) begins the count from the Neo-Assyrian Empire's expansion into Israel (8th century BCE). The phrase ad ha-yom ha-zeh ('until this day') makes the prayer urgently present.
33. The adjective tsaddiq ('righteous') echoes verse 8, where it described God's covenant faithfulness to Abraham. Now it describes God's justice in Israel's suffering. The verb asita ('you did, you acted') with emet ('truth, faithfulness') means God's actions have been completely consistent with his revealed character. The verb hirsha'nu ('we have acted wickedly') is the Hiphil of rasha — to act as a rasha (guilty party, one in the wrong).
34. The four groups listed — kings, officials, priests, ancestors — represent the full leadership structure of pre-exilic Israel. The verb lo asu toratekha ('they did not do/follow your Law') is comprehensive failure. The edvotekha ('your warnings, your testimonies') refers to the prophetic messages sent to call them back. The verb he'idu ('testified, warned') makes the prophets witnesses in a legal case — they delivered God's testimony, and it was ignored.
35. The prayer specifies the conditions under which Israel failed: not in poverty or oppression, but bemalkhutam ('in their kingdom') and betuvkha harav ('in your great goodness'). The land is described as rechavah ('spacious') and shemenah ('fertile, fat') — the same language as verse 25. Israel's rebellion was not driven by deprivation but by prosperity. The phrase lo avadukha ('they did not serve you') is the ultimate covenant violation — they received everything and gave nothing back.
36. The repetition of anachnu avadim ('we are slaves') at the beginning and end of the verse creates an envelope structure that traps the audience in the reality of subjection. The land is described with the same terms as verses 25 and 35 — piriya ('its fruit') and tuvah ('its goodness') — but now the abundance goes to foreign overlords, not to Israel. The prayer speaks of being slaves 'on it' (aleha) — they live on the land but do not own its produce.
37. The produce of the promised land (tevu'atah marbah, 'its abundant harvest') now enriches foreign kings — the Persians. The phrase al geviyyotenu moshelim ('they rule over our bodies') indicates forced labor and corvée service — bodily subjection. The livestock (behemtenu) represents economic resources commandeered by the empire. The closing phrase uvetsa rah gedolah anachnu ('we are in great distress') echoes 1:3, where Nehemiah first heard of Jerusalem's trouble. The prayer has come full circle.
38. The prayer concludes not with a request but with a commitment: koretim amanah ('cutting a firm agreement'). The word amanah is related to amen and emunah — it is a binding, trustworthy commitment. The act of writing (kotevim) and sealing (chatum) makes it a legal document, not merely a verbal promise. The three groups who seal — officials, Levites, priests — represent civil and religious leadership. Chapter 10 will list the specific signatories and the obligations they accept.

10

Summary: *Following the great prayer of confession in chapter 9, this chapter records the sealed covenant document: first the signatories (Nehemiah the governor, then priests, Levites, and lay leaders), and then the specific obligations the community binds itself to. The people pledge to keep the Torah, avoid intermarriage with surrounding peoples, observe the Sabbath and sabbatical year, pay an annual Temple tax, supply wood for the altar, bring firstfruits and firstborn, and support the Levites with tithes. The chapter functions as a constitutional document for the restored community.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the few places in the Hebrew Bible where a covenant is made not between God and Israel but among Israelites themselves, binding one another to Torah obedience. The document is simultaneously religious and administrative — it addresses worship, economics, marriage, and agricultural practice. The obligations chosen are not random; they target the exact areas where the post-exilic community was most vulnerable to compromise. Every pledge in this chapter corresponds to a violation Nehemiah will confront in chapter 13. The WLC versification begins this chapter with what English Bibles number as 9:38, making the sealed covenant the opening verse rather than the closing verse of the prayer.*

Translation Friction: *The WLC (Hebrew) versification differs from most English Bibles: WLC 10:1 corresponds to English 9:38, and WLC 10:2-40 corresponds to English 10:1-39. We follow the WLC numbering with 40 verses. The long list of signatories (vv. 2-28) presents textual difficulties — some names appear in variant forms across different manuscript traditions, and the relationship between these lists and other Nehemiah name lists (chapters 7, 11, 12) is not always clear. The annual third-of-a-shekel Temple tax (v. 33) differs from the half-shekel tax of Exodus 30:13, possibly reflecting the economic hardship of the post-exilic period or a different weight standard.*

Connections: *The covenant form here echoes the Sinai covenant pattern: declaration of intent, listing of witnesses/parties, and specific stipulations. The intermarriage prohibition recalls Deuteronomy 7:3 and the crisis of Ezra 9-10. The Sabbath commerce ban addresses the violation Nehemiah will personally witness in 13:15-22. The firstfruits and tithe provisions draw on Numbers 18:21-32 and Deuteronomy 14:22-29. The wood offering, not prescribed in the Pentateuch, appears to be a post-exilic innovation to ensure the altar fire never went out (Leviticus 6:12-13).*

¹Because of all this, we are making a binding agreement and putting it in writing. Our officials, our Levites, and our priests are affixing their seals to it. ²On the sealed document: Nehemiah the governor, son of Hacaliah, and Zedekiah; ³Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah, ⁴Pashhur, Amariah, Malkiah, ⁵Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluk, ⁶Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah, ⁷Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruk, ⁸Meshullam, Abiah, Miamin, ⁹Maaziah, Bilgai, and Shemaiah. These constituted the priestly signatories. ¹⁰And the Levites: Jeshua son of Azaniah, Binnui of the descendants of Henadad, Kadmiel, ¹¹and their associates: Shebaniah, Hodiah, Kelita, ¹²Pelaiah, Hanan, Anaiah, ¹³Hoshea, Anaiah, Hasshub, ¹⁴Hallohesh, Pilha, Shobek, ¹⁵Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah, ¹⁶Ahiah, Hanan, Anan, ¹⁷Malluk, Harim, Baanah, ¹⁸The heads of the people: Parosh, Pahath-moab, Elam, Zattu, Bani, ¹⁹Bunni, Azgad, Bebai, ²⁰Adoniah, Bigvai, Adin, ²¹Ater, Hizkiah, Azzur, ²²Hodiah, Hashum, Bezai, ²³Hariph, Anathoth, Nobai, ²⁴Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir, ²⁵Meshezabel, Zadok, Yaddua, ²⁶Pelathiah, Hanan, Anaiah, ²⁷Hoshea, Hananiah, Hasshub, ²⁸Hallohesh, Pilha, Shobek, ²⁹The rest of the people — priests, Levites, gatekeepers, singers, Temple servants, and everyone who had separated from the peoples of the lands to follow the Law of God, along with their wives, sons, and daughters, everyone old enough to understand — ³⁰joined with their leading members and entered into a sworn oath with a curse: to walk in God's Law that was given through Moses the servant of God, and to observe and carry out all the commands of the LORD our Lord, along with his rules and his statutes. ³¹We will not give our daughters in marriage to the peoples of the land, and we will not take their daughters for our sons. ³²If the peoples of the land bring merchandise or any grain to sell on the Sabbath day, we will not buy from them on the Sabbath or on any holy day. We will let the land lie fallow in the seventh year and cancel every debt. ³³We imposed on ourselves the obligation to pay a third of a shekel each year for the service of the house of our God: ³⁴for the rows of bread, the regular grain offering, the regular burnt offering, the Sabbath

offerings, the new moon offerings, the appointed festivals, the holy offerings, the sin offerings to make atonement for Israel, and all the work of the house of our God. ³⁵We cast lots among the priests, the Levites, and the people for the wood offering — to bring wood to the house of our God by ancestral houses at designated times each year, to burn on the altar of the LORD our God, as prescribed in the Law. ³⁶We will bring the firstfruits of our soil and the firstfruits of every fruit tree, year by year, to the house of the LORD. ³⁷We will bring the firstborn of our sons and our livestock, as prescribed in the Law, and the firstborn of our herds and flocks to the house of our God, to the priests who serve in the house of our God. ³⁸We will also bring the first of our coarse meal, our contributions, the fruit of every tree, the new wine, and the fresh oil to the priests, to the storerooms of the house of our God. We will bring the tithe of our soil to the Levites, for the Levites are the ones who collect the tithes in all our farming towns. ³⁹A priest, a descendant of Aaron, must be with the Levites when the Levites collect the tithes. The Levites will then bring a tenth of the tithes to the house of our God, to the storerooms of the treasury. ⁴⁰For the Israelites and the Levites must bring the contributions of grain, new wine, and oil to the storerooms where the sanctuary vessels are kept, along with the serving priests, the gatekeepers, and the singers. We will not neglect the house of our God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. In the WLC versification, this verse opens chapter 10; in most English Bibles it appears as 9:38. The word amanah ('firm agreement, binding pledge') derives from the root aman ('to be firm, reliable') — the same root as amen and emunah. The verb koretim ('cutting') preserves the ancient covenant ritual language. The sealed document (chatum) is a legal instrument with physical seals pressed into clay or wax.
2. Nehemiah is called ha-Tirshata, a Persian administrative title meaning 'governor' (also used in Ezra 2:63 and Nehemiah 7:65, 70). He signs first as the civil authority. Zedekiah (Tsidqiyah, 'the LORD is my righteousness') may be Nehemiah's secretary or a leading official; he appears nowhere else in the book.
3. The priestly signatories begin here and continue through verse 9. Seraiah heads the priestly list, possibly representing the high-priestly family (see Ezra 2:2; Nehemiah 12:1). These names represent priestly clans or houses rather than necessarily individual persons — the head of each clan signs on behalf of the entire family.
4. Pashhur is a prominent priestly family name (see Ezra 2:38; Nehemiah 7:41). Amariah and Malkiah (meaning 'the LORD has spoken' and 'my king is the LORD') are common priestly names across the post-exilic literature.
5. Hattush appears among the returnees in Ezra 8:2. Malluk (also spelled Malluchi or Melicu in variant traditions) represents another priestly house. The short verse format — three names per verse — gives the list a rhythmic, formal quality appropriate to a legal document.
6. Harim is a priestly family attested in Ezra 2:39 (1,017 members returned from exile). Meremoth son of Uriah was involved in weighing the Temple vessels (Ezra 8:33) and wall-building (Nehemiah 3:4, 21). Obadiah ('servant of the LORD') is a common name in this period.
7. This Daniel is a priestly signatory, not the Daniel of the Babylonian court. Ginnethon (also Ginnetho in 12:4) is a priestly house. Baruk ('blessed') is likewise a priestly clan head signing the covenant document.
8. Meshullam ('repaid, made whole') is one of the most common post-exilic names. Abiah ('my father is the LORD') and Miamin ('from the right hand,' indicating favor) are priestly houses also attested in Nehemiah 12.
9. The priestly list ends with a summary formula: eleh ha-kohanim ('these were the priests'). Twenty-one priestly representatives have signed (vv. 2-9), representing the major priestly clans of the post-exilic community. Maaziah is the last of the twenty-four priestly divisions (1 Chronicles 24:18).
10. The Levitical signatories begin. Jeshua son of Azaniah heads the list. Binnui is identified by his ancestral house — 'of the sons of Henadad.' Kadmiel appears also in Ezra 2:40 and Nehemiah 9:4-5 as a Levitical leader. These are the worship and teaching leaders of the community.
11. The phrase va-acheihem ('and their brothers/associates') indicates these Levites are from the same general group but perhaps of lesser rank. Shebaniah and Hodia appeared among the prayer leaders in 9:4-5. Kelita is also called Kelaiah in Ezra 10:23.
12. Pelaiah ('the LORD has done wonders') assisted in explaining the Law in 8:7. Hanan and Anaiah are Levitical leaders; Hanan will appear again in 13:13 as a storehouse administrator. These names continue the pattern of Levites who served both liturgical and administrative functions.
13. Hoshea ('salvation') shares a root with Joshua and Jesus. The continuing Levitical list shows the depth of Levitical participation in this covenant renewal — these are not merely witnesses but active parties binding themselves to the agreement.
14. Hallohesh ('the whisperer' or 'the enchanter') is an unusual name; his son Shallun repaired part of the wall (3:12). Pilha and Shobek appear only in this list. The Levitical section ends here, with seventeen Levitical signatories (vv. 10-14).
15. The lay leaders ('heads of the people') begin here and continue through verse 28. These represent the secular clan heads and prominent families of the post-exilic community. Rehum appears in Ezra 2:2 among the returnees. Maaseiah ('work of the LORD') is an extremely common post-exilic name.

16. Ahiah ('brother of the LORD') and Hanan ('gracious') are common names in this period. Anan appears only here. The brevity of each verse — typically three names — reflects the documentary character of this section: it reads like a formal registry.
17. Malluk and Harim appear both in the priestly list (vv. 5-6) and here among the lay leaders — these are different individuals or families bearing the same clan name. Baanah ('son of affliction') also appears in Ezra 2:2 among the first returnees.
18. The header rashei ha-am ('heads of the people') introduces the largest group of signatories. Parosh ('flea') headed the largest returning family (Ezra 2:3 — 2,172 members). Pahath-moab ('governor of Moab') is a clan name suggesting pre-exilic administrative ties to Moab. Elam and Zattu are major clan names from the return lists (Ezra 2:7-8).
19. Azgad ('Gad is strong') led a large clan of 1,222 (Ezra 2:12) or 2,322 (Nehemiah 7:17) returnees. Bebai returned with 623 members (Ezra 2:11). These family heads represent thousands of people by their signature.
20. Adoniah ('the LORD is my master') is a common name. Bigvai is likely a Persian name adopted by this clan; his family returned with 2,056 members (Ezra 2:14). Adin ('pleasure, delight') led a clan of 454 returnees (Ezra 2:15).
21. Ater ('shut, left-handed') is a clan name from Ezra 2:16. Hizkiah (a shortened form of Hezekiah, 'the LORD strengthens') and Azzur ('helper') continue the lay leader list. These are not the famous kings or prophets of the same names but post-exilic clan heads.
22. Hodia ('splendor of the LORD') appears multiple times in Nehemiah in different roles. Hashum is a large clan (Ezra 2:19 — 223 members). Bezai returned with 323 members (Ezra 2:17). The list continues to document the broad participation of the community.
23. Hariph (or Jorah in Ezra 2:18) led a clan of 112 returnees. Anathoth is both a Benjaminite town (Jeremiah's hometown) and apparently a clan name here. Nobai appears only in this list.
24. Magpiash appears only here. Meshullam is the most common name in Ezra-Nehemiah, appearing at least ten times for different individuals. Hezir ('swine') is also the name of a priestly division (1 Chronicles 24:15); here it designates a lay clan.
25. Meshezabel ('God delivers') appears also in 3:4 and 11:24. Zadok ('righteous') is a name with deep priestly associations, though here it is a lay leader. Yaddua ('known') is also the name of the last high priest mentioned in the Hebrew Bible (12:11, 22).
26. Pelatiah ('the LORD has delivered') is a name expressing gratitude for divine rescue. Hanan and Anaiah appear in both Levitical and lay lists, indicating these are different individuals. The repetition of names across lists reflects the limited name pool of the post-exilic community.
27. Hoshea ('salvation') shares its root with Joshua and Hosea. Hananiah ('the LORD is gracious') is a very common name (see Nehemiah 3:8, 30; 7:2). Hasshub ('considerate') worked on wall repairs (3:11, 23). The lay leader list nears completion.
28. These same three names appeared in verse 14 among the Levites; here they close the lay leader list. This may reflect a scribal duplication, or these may be different individuals with the same names. The total count of named signatories is approximately eighty-four, representing the full spectrum of post-exilic leadership.
29. This verse expands the covenant signatories beyond the named leaders to the entire community. Six groups are listed: priests, Levites, gatekeepers (sho'arim), singers (meshorerim), Temple servants (netinim, literally 'given ones' — servants dedicated to Temple service), and all who separated from surrounding peoples. The phrase kol yodea mevin ('everyone knowing and understanding') sets a minimum age of comprehension for covenant participation — this is not merely a leaders' agreement but a community commitment.
30. The verb machaziqim ('joining, holding fast to') indicates solidarity with the leaders who signed. The alah ('curse') is a standard element in ancient Near Eastern covenant making — participants call down divine wrath on themselves if they violate the terms (see Deuteronomy 27:15-26 for the Torah's curse formulas). Moses is called eved ha-Elohim ('servant of God'), establishing his mediatorial authority.
31. The first specific obligation addresses intermarriage — the crisis that dominated Ezra 9-10 and will resurface in Nehemiah 13:23-28. The prohibition is bilateral: no giving daughters out and no taking daughters in. The phrase ammei ha-arets ('peoples of the land') refers to the surrounding non-Israelite populations. This pledge draws on Deuteronomy 7:3, which prohibits intermarriage as a safeguard against religious syncretism.
32. Two economic sabbath obligations are combined: weekly Sabbath rest (no commerce) and the seventh-year sabbatical (land rest and debt release). The Sabbath commerce ban targets the specific violation Nehemiah will witness in 13:15-22, where Tyrian merchants sell fish and goods on the Sabbath. The seventh-year provisions draw on Exodus 23:10-11 (fallow year) and Deuteronomy 15:1-3 (debt release). The phrase massa khol yad ('the loan of every hand') means the cancellation of debts owed by fellow Israelites.
33. The annual Temple tax of a third of a shekel (shelishit ha-shaqel) differs from the half-shekel census tax of Exodus 30:13. This may reflect the reduced economic circumstances of the post-exilic community, or it may be calculated on a different weight standard than the Exodus provision. The phrase he'emadnu aleinu mitsvot ('we established obligations upon ourselves') emphasizes that this is self-imposed communal taxation for the Temple's ongoing operation.
34. The Temple tax funds seven categories of worship: the lechem ha-ma'arekhet ('bread of arrangement,' the showbread of Leviticus 24:5-9), the regular grain offering (minchat ha-tamid), the daily burnt offering (olat ha-tamid), Sabbath offerings, new moon offerings, festival offerings, holy things, and sin offerings. The phrase lekha'per al Yisra'el ('to make atonement for Israel') identifies the purpose: these sacrifices maintain the covenant relationship between God and the community.

35. The wood offering (qurban ha-etsim) is not explicitly commanded in the Pentateuch, but the requirement to keep the altar fire burning perpetually (Leviticus 6:12-13) necessitates a continuous wood supply. The community organized this by lot (goral), assigning specific families to deliver wood at specific times. Nehemiah 13:31 will mention this wood supply as one of Nehemiah's final accomplishments. The phrase kakkatuv ba-Torah ('as written in the Law') may refer to the general altar-fire requirement rather than a specific wood-offering law.
36. The firstfruits obligation (bikkurim) draws on Exodus 23:19, 34:26, and Deuteronomy 26:1-11. Two categories are specified: the firstfruits of the ground (bikkurei admatenu — grain, vegetables) and the firstfruits of every fruit tree (bikkurei kol peri kol ets). The annual rhythm (shanah veshanah, 'year by year') establishes this as a permanent obligation, not a one-time commitment.
37. The firstborn law (bekhorot) draws on Exodus 13:2, 11-16 and Numbers 18:15-18. Firstborn sons are 'redeemed' with a monetary payment (pidyon ha-ben); firstborn clean animals are sacrificed. The phrase lakohanim ha-mesharetim ('to the priests who minister') directs these offerings to the serving priesthood, who depend on these contributions for their livelihood.
38. The arisotenu ('our coarse meal' or 'our dough') refers to the first portion of grain processing (Numbers 15:20-21). The terumot ('contributions, heave offerings') are the elevated offerings set apart for the priests. The tithe (ma'aser) goes specifically to the Levites, who collect it in the agricultural towns (arei avodatenu, 'cities of our labor/farming'). This system ensures both priestly and Levitical support. The 'storerooms' (lishkot) of the Temple will become a flashpoint in 13:4-9 when Tobiah occupies one.
39. The oversight mechanism: an Aaronic priest must be present during tithe collection, providing accountability. The 'tithe of the tithe' (ma'asar ha-ma'aser) is the Levites' own obligation — they receive the people's tithe and then give a tenth of what they receive to the priests (Numbers 18:26-28). The beit ha-otsar ('treasury house') is the Temple storehouse complex. This system will collapse in Nehemiah 13:10-13 when the Levites abandon their posts because tithes stop coming.
40. The three staple contributions — grain (dagan), new wine (tirosh), and oil (yitshar) — represent the full agricultural economy of ancient Israel. The storerooms (leshakhot) are the Temple's administrative infrastructure. The closing vow — velo na'azov et beit Eloheinu ('we will not neglect the house of our God') — serves as the covenant's seal. This exact phrase becomes the standard by which Nehemiah measures the community's faithfulness in chapter 13.

11

Summary: *With the walls rebuilt, the covenant sealed, and the community organized, Jerusalem faces a practical crisis: the city is underpopulated. The leaders already live there, but the majority of the people reside in outlying towns. A lottery is held, selecting one in ten families to relocate into Jerusalem. The chapter then provides a detailed registry of those who inhabited the holy city — organized by tribe (Judah and Benjamin), priestly families, Levites, gatekeepers, Temple servants, and overseers — followed by a list of towns settled by Judahite and Benjaminite families outside Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The resettlement of Jerusalem is presented as a sacrifice, not a privilege. The phrase 'the people blessed all the men who volunteered to live in Jerusalem' (v. 2) reveals that moving into the city was costly — residents left ancestral farmland and family compounds in the countryside to inhabit a recently rebuilt, still-vulnerable capital. The volunteers are praised because they chose hardship for the sake of the community. The detailed census is not bureaucratic filler; it is a theological statement that God's city has a people, that each family is known, and that the restored community has real, named inhabitants occupying the promised land. The population lists serve the same function as the genealogies in Genesis and Chronicles — they insist that covenant history happens through specific, identifiable people.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this list and 1 Chronicles 9:2-34 is debated — the two lists share names and structure but differ in details, suggesting either a common source or parallel traditions. Several numbers in the chapter present minor textual difficulties across manuscript traditions. The division between Judahite and Benjaminite settlers reflects the post-exilic reality that the returned community consisted primarily of these two tribes (plus Levi), with the northern tribes largely absent from the restoration.*

Connections: *The lot-casting for Jerusalem residency echoes the original land distribution by lot under Joshua (Joshua 14-19). The detailed record of priestly courses and Levitical duties connects to the Temple organization in 1 Chronicles 23-26. The list of outlying towns (vv. 25-36) maps the territory of the post-exilic community, which was far smaller than pre-exilic Judah — stretching roughly from Beersheba to north of Jerusalem, a fraction of the Davidic kingdom.*

¹The leaders of the people settled in Jerusalem. The rest of the people cast lots to bring one out of every ten to live in Jerusalem, the holy city, while the remaining nine stayed in the other towns. ²The people blessed all those who volunteered to live in Jerusalem. ³These are the heads of the province who settled in Jerusalem (in the towns of Judah, each person lived on their own property in their towns — Israelites, priests, Levites, Temple servants, and the descendants of Solomon's servants): ⁴In Jerusalem there settled some from the tribe of Judah and some from Benjamin. From Judah: Athaiah son of Uziah, son of Zechariah, son of Amariah, son of Shephatiah, son of Mahalalel, of the descendants of Perez; ⁵and Maaseiah son of Baruk, son of Kol-hozeh, son of Hazaiah, son of Adaiah, son of Ioiarib, son of Zechariah, of the Shilonite clan. ⁶The total descendants of Perez who settled in Jerusalem: four hundred sixty-eight capable men. ⁷From Benjamin: Sallu son of Meshullam, son of Ioed, son of Pedaiah, son of Kolaiah, son of Maaseiah, son of Ithiel, son of Ieshaiah. ⁸After him: Gabbai, Sallai — nine hundred twenty-eight. ⁹Ioel son of Zikri was their overseer, and Iudah son of Hassenuah was second in command over the city. ¹⁰From the priests: Iedaiah son of Ioiarib, Iakin, ¹¹Seraiah son of Hilkiah, son of Meshullam, son of Zadok, son of Meraioth, son of Ahitub — the officer in charge of the house of God. ¹²Their associates who carried out the work of the Temple: eight hundred twenty-two. And Adaiah son of Ieroham, son of Pelaliah, son of Amtsi, son of Zechariah, son of Pashhur, son of Malkiah, ¹³and his associates, heads of ancestral houses: two hundred forty-two. And Amassai son of Azarel, son of Ahzai, son of Meshillemoth, son of Immer, ¹⁴and their associates, men of outstanding ability: one hundred twenty-eight. Their overseer was Zabdiel son of Haggadolim. ¹⁵From the Levites: Shemaiah son of Hasshub, son of Azrikam, son of Hashabiah, son of Bunni; ¹⁶Shabbethai and Iozabad, from the Levitical leaders, were in charge of the external operations of the house of God. ¹⁷Mattaniah son of Mika, son of Zabdi, son of Asaph, was the leader who opened the thanksgiving in prayer; Bakbukiah was second among his associates; and Abda son of Shammua, son of Galal, son of Ieduthun. ¹⁸The total number of Levites in the holy city: two hundred eighty-four. ¹⁹The gatekeepers: Akkub, Talmon, and their associates who guarded the gates — one hundred seventy-two. ²⁰The rest of Israel — the priests and the Levites — lived in all the towns of Judah, each on their own ancestral property. ²¹The Temple servants lived on the Ophel, with Tsiha and Gishpa overseeing the Temple servants. ²²The overseer of the Levites in Jerusalem was Uzzi son of Bani, son of Hashabiah, son of Mattaniah, son of Mika, of the descendants of Asaph — the singers responsible for the service of the house of God. ²³For there was a royal command concerning them, with a fixed provision for the singers as each day required. ²⁴Pethahiah son of Meshezabel, of the descendants of Zerah son of Judah, served as the king's agent in all matters concerning the people. ²⁵As for the settlements with their surrounding fields: some of the Judahites settled in Kiriath-arba and its villages, in Dibon and its villages, in Iekabtseel and its villages, ²⁶in Ieshua, in Moladah, in Beth-pelet, ²⁷in Hatsar-shual, in Beersheba and its villages, ²⁸in Tsiklag, in Mekonah and its villages, ²⁹in En-rimmon, in Tsorah, in Iarmuth, ³⁰Zanoah, Adullam and their villages, Lakish and its fields, Azekah and its villages. They settled from Beersheba to the Valley of Hinnom. ³¹The Benjaminites: from Geba to Mikdash, Aijah, Bethel and its villages, ³²Anathoth, Nob, Ananiah, ³³Hatsor, Ramah, Gittaim, ³⁴Hadid, Tseboim, Neballat, ³⁵Lod, Ono, and the Valley of the Craftsmen. ³⁶Some Levitical divisions from Judah were assigned to Benjamin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The leaders (sarei ha-am) were already resident in Jerusalem; the lot determined which additional families would relocate. The ratio of one in ten (echad min ha-asarah) is a tithe of the population — a deliberate tenth consecrated to the capital. Jerusalem is called ir ha-qodesh ('the holy city'), the first time this phrase appears in Nehemiah. The nine-tenths remaining in the countryside maintained the agricultural base that supported the urban population.
2. Beyond those selected by lot, some volunteered (ha-mitnaddevim, from nadav, 'to offer freely, to volunteer'). The community blessed them (vayvarakhu) — this is public honor for personal sacrifice. Leaving ancestral land in the countryside to live in a recently walled but still vulnerable city was an act of faith and communal commitment.
3. The 'province' (medinah) is Yehud, the Persian administrative district of Judah. The parenthetical remark distinguishes Jerusalem residents from the wider population living on ancestral land. Five groups compose the community: lay Israelites, priests, Levites, Temple servants (netinim), and descendants of Solomon's servants (a hereditary service class originating from Solomon's forced labor; see Ezra 2:55-58).

4. The Judahite settlers are listed first by tribal priority. Athaiah's genealogy traces back to Perez (Perets), one of Judah's sons through Tamar (Genesis 38:29) and an ancestor of David. The six-generation genealogy establishes legitimate Judahite lineage. The parallel list in 1 Chronicles 9:4 gives a slightly different genealogy, suggesting variant traditions or different branches of the same clan.
5. Maaseiah's genealogy traces to 'the Shilonite' (ha-Shiloni), meaning a descendant of Shelah, Judah's third son (Genesis 38:5; Numbers 26:20). Kol-hozeh ('all-seeing one') is an unusual name; his son Shallun repaired the Fountain Gate (3:15). The seven-generation genealogy establishes deep roots in the Judahite tribal structure.
6. The Perez clan contributed 468 anshei chayil ('men of valor, capable men') to Jerusalem's population. The term anshei chayil indicates military capability or social standing — these are men able to serve in defense of the city. This number represents heads of households, so the total Perezite population including families would have been significantly larger.
7. The Benjaminite settlers begin with Sallu, whose seven-generation genealogy is the longest in the Benjaminite section. Benjamin's inclusion alongside Judah reflects the historical alliance of these two tribes since the divided monarchy — together they formed the southern kingdom of Judah. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 9:7 gives a variant form of this genealogy.
8. The Benjaminite contingent numbered 928, nearly double the Judahite count (468). Gabbai and Sallai may be additional Benjaminite clan heads, or the text may be slightly corrupt here (some scholars read 'Gabbai-Sallai' as a single name). The larger Benjaminite presence may reflect Jerusalem's location on the traditional border of Benjamin and Judah.
9. Two administrative officers are named: Ioel son of Zikri as paqid ('overseer, administrator') of the Benjaminites, and Iudah son of Hassenuah as mishneh ('second in command') over the city. The mishneh role indicates a deputy-governor or second-ranking official in Jerusalem's civil administration. Hassenuah means 'the hated one,' likely a clan name rather than a personal description.
10. The priestly settlers begin. Iedaiah and Ioarib are both names of priestly divisions (1 Chronicles 24:7, 17). Iakin is likewise a priestly division name (1 Chronicles 24:17). These represent the priestly courses that maintained the Temple service rotation in Jerusalem.
11. Seraiah holds the title negid beit ha-Elohim ('ruler/officer of the house of God'), indicating the senior administrative priest overseeing Temple operations. His genealogy traces through Zadok, establishing Zadokite priestly legitimacy. Ahitub, at the end of the line, connects to the pre-exilic high priestly family (1 Chronicles 6:11-12). This is the leading priestly figure in post-exilic Jerusalem.
12. The 822 priests who 'did the work of the house' (osei ha-melakhah la-bayit) performed the daily sacrificial and liturgical duties. Adaiah's genealogy traces through Pashhur, one of the major priestly houses (Ezra 2:38). These are not administrators but working priests who maintained the daily Temple routine.
13. Another 242 priests served as heads of ancestral houses (rashim le-avot). Amasai's genealogy traces to Immer, another major priestly house (Ezra 2:37 — 1,052 members). The distinction between the 822 Temple workers and the 242 clan heads suggests different levels of priestly service and administration.
14. The 128 gibborei chayil ('mighty men of valor, men of outstanding ability') are priests with military capability or exceptional competence. Zabdiel ('God has endowed') serves as their paqid ('overseer'). The phrase ben ha-gedolim ('son of the great ones') is either a family name or a designation meaning 'from a prominent family.' The total priestly population in Jerusalem thus numbered over 1,190.
15. The Levitical section begins. Shemaiah ('the LORD has heard') leads the list, with a four-generation genealogy. Hashabiah is a common Levitical name associated with the Merari clan (1 Chronicles 9:14). The Levites serve distinct functions from the priests — they assist with Temple logistics, teaching, music, and gatekeeping rather than performing sacrifices.
16. Shabbethai (a Sabbath-related name, 'born on the Sabbath') and Iozabad ('the LORD has bestowed') managed the melakhah ha-chitsonah ('external work') of the Temple — administrative, financial, and logistical operations conducted outside the sanctuary proper. This includes maintenance, supply management, and external business dealings. Both names appear in Ezra 10:15 and 8:33.
17. Mattaniah descended from Asaph, the great Davidic worship leader whose psalms are preserved in the Psalter (Psalms 50, 73-83). His role as rosh ha-techillah yehodeh la-tefillah ('head of the beginning of thanksgiving in prayer') means he led the opening thanksgiving in the worship service. Bakbukiah held the second-ranking position. Abda descended from Ieduthun (also spelled Ethan), another Davidic music director (see 1 Chronicles 16:41-42; Psalm 39 superscription).
18. The Levitical population of 284 in Jerusalem was significantly smaller than the priestly contingent (over 1,190). This ratio disparity was a persistent post-exilic problem — Levites were reluctant to return from Babylon and reluctant to relocate to Jerusalem (see Ezra 8:15-20, where Ezra struggled to recruit Levites). Jerusalem is again called ir ha-qodesh ('the holy city').
19. Akkub and Talmon are hereditary gatekeeper families attested since the return (Ezra 2:42). The gatekeepers (sho'arim) controlled access to the Temple complex and the city gates — a role that combined security, ceremonial, and administrative functions. The 172 gatekeepers managed multiple gate stations across the newly rebuilt walls.
20. This transitional verse notes that the majority of Israelites, priests, and Levites remained in their ancestral holdings throughout Judah's towns. The word nachalato ('his inheritance') echoes the original land distribution — even in the post-exilic period, the concept of tribal and family inheritance shaped settlement patterns.

21. The *netinim* ('Temple servants, those given/dedicated') lived on the Ophel, the fortified ridge south of the Temple mount. This location placed them close to their workplace. Tsiha and Gishpa served as their administrators. The *netinim* were a hereditary class of Temple workers, possibly descended from Gibeonites (Joshua 9:27) and other peoples dedicated to Temple service.
22. Uzzi held the title *paqid ha-Leviyim* ('overseer of the Levites'), the chief administrative officer for all Levitical operations in Jerusalem. His genealogy traces through the Asaphite line, connecting him to the worship tradition. The phrase *leneged melekhet beit ha-Elohim* ('responsible for the work of the house of God') places the singers at the center of Temple operations, not on the periphery.
23. The 'king's command' (*mitsvat ha-melekh*) refers to a Persian royal decree — likely from Artaxerxes — establishing a daily stipend for the Temple singers. The word *amanah* ('fixed provision, sure arrangement') is the same word used for the sealed covenant in 10:1, here meaning a guaranteed allocation. Persian kings commonly funded local religious institutions; this decree ensured the worship music continued without interruption.
24. Pethahiah ('the LORD has opened') held the position *leyad ha-melekh* ('at the king's hand'), meaning he was the Persian crown's designated liaison for Jewish communal affairs. Zerah was Judah's son through Tamar, the twin brother of Perez (Genesis 38:30). This role bridged the Jewish community and the Persian administration — a necessary diplomatic position in the imperial system.
25. The town list begins, mapping the post-exilic Judahite territory. Kiriath-arba is the ancient name for Hebron (Genesis 23:2), about twenty miles south of Jerusalem. Dibon is likely a Judean Dibon (distinct from the Moabite city), and Iekabtseel is in the southern Negev (Joshua 15:21). The phrase *bisdotam* ('with their fields') indicates these are agricultural settlements, not just residential towns.
26. Ieshua is a southern Judean town (possibly Tell es-Sa'wi). Moladah is in the Negev (Joshua 15:26; 1 Chronicles 4:28). Beth-pelet ('house of escape') is in the far south of Judah (Joshua 15:27). These southern settlements show that the post-exilic community extended further south than is sometimes assumed.
27. Hatsar-shual ('enclosure of the fox') is a southern town (Joshua 15:28). Beersheba, the traditional southern boundary of Israel ('from Dan to Beersheba'), marks the southernmost extent of post-exilic settlement. Its inclusion demonstrates that the restored community claimed territory deep into the Negev.
28. Tsiklag is famously the town Philistine king Achish gave to David (1 Samuel 27:6). Its inclusion in the post-exilic settlement list indicates that Judahites reoccupied territory formerly associated with Philistine control. Mekonah is otherwise unknown and may be a variant of Madmannah or another southern site.
29. En-rimmon ('spring of the pomegranate') is in the southern Negev. Tsorah is in the Shephelah lowlands, the hometown of Samson's father Manoah (Judges 13:2). Iarmuth is a Canaanite city in the western foothills (Joshua 10:3). The geography shifts here from south to west, tracing the Shephelah settlements.
30. Zanoah is in the Shephelah (3:13). Adullam is David's famous cave refuge (1 Samuel 22:1). Lakish was a major fortified city destroyed by Nebuchadnezzar and now resettled. Azekah is the site of Joshua's battle (Joshua 10:10-11). The summary statement — 'from Beersheba to the Valley of Hinnom' — defines the southern Judahite territory: from the Negev to the southern edge of Jerusalem itself.
31. The Benjaminite settlements shift the geography north of Jerusalem. Geba is a Levitical city in Benjamin (Joshua 21:17). Mikdash is where Jonathan defeated the Philistines (1 Samuel 14). Aiiah is the ruins of Ai. Bethel, though associated with the northern kingdom's idolatry (1 Kings 12:29), was resettled by Benjaminites in the post-exilic period.
32. Anathoth is Jeremiah's hometown (Jeremiah 1:1), about three miles northeast of Jerusalem. Nob was the priestly city where David received the showbread (1 Samuel 21:1) and where Saul massacred the priests (1 Samuel 22:18-19). Ananiah is a small Benjaminite town, possibly modern Bethany.
33. Hatsor is a Benjaminite Hatsor (distinct from the Galilean city), mentioned in Joshua 18:25. Ramah is about five miles north of Jerusalem, associated with Samuel (1 Samuel 7:17). Gittaim ('two winepresses') is where the Beerothites fled (2 Samuel 4:3), possibly near Gezer.
34. Hadid is in the western Shephelah near Lod (Ezra 2:33). Tseboim ('hyenas') is in the Benjamin-Ephraim border region. Neballat is near Lod in the coastal plain. These western settlements show Benjaminite expansion toward the Mediterranean coast.
35. Lod (later Lydda, modern Lod/Lydda near Ben Gurion Airport) and Ono are in the coastal plain. The 'Valley of the Craftsmen' (*gei ha-charashim*) is named in 1 Chronicles 4:14 and indicates a center of artisan activity — metalworkers, carpenters, or other skilled trades. These far-western settlements represent the maximum extent of Benjaminite territory.
36. The chapter closes with a note that some Levitical groups originally based in Judah were reassigned to Benjaminite territory. This administrative redistribution ensured Levitical presence and Torah teaching across the entire settled area, not just in the Judahite heartland. The Levites served as a binding element between the two tribal territories.

12

Summary: *This chapter serves two purposes: first, it provides comprehensive genealogical lists of the priests and Levites who returned with Zerubbabel and those who served across subsequent generations down to the high priesthood of Iaddua; second, it narrates the magnificent dedication of Jerusalem's rebuilt walls, with two great choral processions marching in opposite directions along the top of the wall and converging at the Temple. The chapter moves from administrative registry to liturgical celebration, culminating in one of the most joyful scenes in the Hebrew Bible — joy so great it could be heard from far away.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wall dedication is a masterwork of liturgical choreography. Nehemiah divides the community into two massive thanksgiving processions (todot), each with choirs, instrumentalists, priests with trumpets, and civic leaders. One procession goes right along the wall, the other goes left, and they meet at the Temple. The geographic specificity is remarkable — the text names the gates and wall sections each group passes, allowing the reader to trace their routes on a map of Jerusalem. The theological point is that the wall itself becomes a site of worship: the people do not merely stand inside the wall to worship; they walk on the wall, sanctifying the very structure they built. The sound of joy (simchah) is mentioned repeatedly and emphatically — 'the joy of Jerusalem was heard from far away' (v. 43). This stands in deliberate contrast to the weeping of the older priests at the Temple foundation in Ezra 3:12-13. What began in tears ends in audible joy.*

Translation Friction: *The genealogical lists in verses 1-26 are among the most complex in the Hebrew Bible, covering multiple generations and occasionally conflating individuals who share names. The relationship between the priestly lists here and those in chapters 10 and Ezra 2 is not always clear, and some names appear in variant forms across manuscript traditions. The dating references span from Zerubbabel and Ieshua (circa 520 BCE) to Iaddua (possibly as late as 330 BCE), raising questions about the compositional history of the chapter. The two-procession narrative (vv. 31-43) is textually difficult in places, with some verse boundaries and participant lists varying between manuscripts.*

Connections: *The wall dedication parallels Solomon's Temple dedication (1 Kings 8; 2 Chronicles 5-7), where music, sacrifice, and overwhelming joy marked the completion of a sacred building project. The two processions echo the liturgical practice of antiphonal worship, where two choirs respond to each other (see Ezra 3:11; Psalm 136). The instruments named — harps, lyres, cymbals, trumpets — are the standard Levitical instruments established by David (1 Chronicles 15:16-22; 25:1-7). Ezra the scribe appears in the procession (v. 36), linking this celebration to the Torah-reading revival of chapter 8.*

¹These are the priests and Levites who came up with Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and Ieshua: Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra, ²Amariah, Malluk, Hattush, ³Shekaniah, Rehum, Meremoth, ⁴Iddo, Ginnethoi, Abiah, ⁵Miamin, Maadiah, Bilgah, ⁶Shemaiah, Ioiarib, Iedaiah, ⁷Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, Iedaiah. These were the heads of the priests and their associates in the days of Ieshua. ⁸The Levites: Ieshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Iudah, and Mattaniah, who with his associates was in charge of the thanksgiving songs. ⁹Bakbukiah and Unno, their associates, stood opposite them in the service watches. ¹⁰Ieshua fathered Ioiakim, Ioiakim fathered Eliashib, Eliashib fathered Ioiada, ¹¹Ioiada fathered Ionathan, and Ionathan fathered Iaddua. ¹²In the days of Ioiakim, the following served as priestly heads of ancestral houses: of Seraiah's house, Meraiah; of Jeremiah's house, Hananiah; ¹³of Ezra's house, Meshullam; of Amariah's house, Iehohanan; ¹⁴of Meliku's house, Ionathan; of Shebaniah's house, Ioseph; ¹⁵of Harim's house, Adna; of Meraioth's house, Helkai; ¹⁶of Iddo's house, Zechariah; of Ginnethon's house, Meshullam; ¹⁷of Abiah's house, Zikri; of Miniamin's house; of Moadiah's house, Piltai; ¹⁸of Bilgah's house, Shammua; of Shemaiah's house, Iehonathan; ¹⁹of Ioiarib's house, Mattenai; of Iedaiah's house, Uzzi; ²⁰of Sallai's house, Kallai; of Amok's house, Eber; ²¹of Hilkiah's house, Hashabiah; of Iedaiah's house, Nethanel. ²²The Levites in the days of Eliashib, Ioiada, Iohanan, and Iaddua were recorded as heads of ancestral houses, as were the priests, down to the reign of Darius the Persian. ²³The Levitical heads of ancestral houses were recorded in the Book of the Chronicles up to the days of Iohanan son of Eliashib. ²⁴The Levitical leaders — Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Ieshua son of Kadmiel, with their

associates stationed opposite them — praised and gave thanks, division responding to division, as David the man of God had commanded. ²⁵Mattaniah, Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub served as gatekeepers, guarding the watch at the storehouses by the gates. ²⁶These served in the days of Ioiakim son of Ieshua, son of Iotsadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor and Ezra the priest and scribe. ²⁷At the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem, they searched for the Levites in all their settlements and brought them to Jerusalem to celebrate the dedication with joy — with thanksgiving songs, with singing, with cymbals, harps, and lyres. ²⁸The singers gathered from the region around Jerusalem, from the settlements of the Netophathites, ²⁹from Beth-gilgal, and from the fields of Geba and Azmaveth — for the singers had built settlements for themselves around Jerusalem. ³⁰The priests and the Levites purified themselves. Then they purified the people, the gates, and the wall. ³¹I brought the leaders of Judah up onto the wall and organized two large thanksgiving processions. The first went to the right along the top of the wall toward the Dung Gate. ³²Hoshaiah and half the leaders of Judah followed behind them, ³³along with Azariah, Ezra, and Meshullam, ³⁴Iudah, Benjamin, Shemaiah, and Jeremiah, ³⁵and some of the priests with trumpets: Zechariah son of Ionathan, son of Shemaiah, son of Mattaniah, son of Mikaiiah, son of Zakkur, son of Asaph, ³⁶and his associates Shemaiah, Azarel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethanel, Iudah, and Hanani, with the musical instruments of David the man of God. Ezra the scribe walked at their head. ³⁷At the Fountain Gate they climbed straight ahead up the steps of the City of David, by the ascent of the wall, past the house of David, and on to the Water Gate on the east. ³⁸The second thanksgiving procession went in the opposite direction, and I followed it with half the people along the top of the wall, past the Tower of the Ovens and on to the Broad Wall, ³⁹past the Ephraim Gate, the Ieshanah Gate, the Fish Gate, the Tower of Hananel and the Tower of the Hundred, to the Sheep Gate. They halted at the Gate of the Guard. ⁴⁰The two thanksgiving processions took their positions in the house of God, and so did I, along with half the officials with me, ⁴¹and the priests — Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Mikaiiah, Elioenai, Zechariah, Hananiah — with trumpets, ⁴²and Maaseiah, Shemaiah, Eleazar, Uzzi, Iehohanan, Malkiah, Elam, and Ezer. The singers raised their voices, with Izrahiah directing them. ⁴³On that day they offered great sacrifices and rejoiced, because God had given them great joy. The women and children also rejoiced, and the joy of Jerusalem could be heard from far away. ⁴⁴On that day men were appointed over the storerooms for the contributions, the firstfruits, and the tithes, to gather into them from the fields around the towns the portions prescribed by the Law for the priests and Levites. For Judah rejoiced over the priests and Levites who were serving. ⁴⁵They performed the service of their God and the service of purification, along with the singers and the gatekeepers, as David and his son Solomon had commanded. ⁴⁶For in the days of David and Asaph, long ago, there were leaders of the singers and songs of praise and thanksgiving to God. ⁴⁷All Israel, in the days of Zerubbabel and in the days of Nehemiah, provided the daily portions for the singers and the gatekeepers. They set apart the contributions for the Levites, and the Levites set apart the portion for the descendants of Aaron.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a historical retrospective to the first return under Zerubbabel (circa 520 BCE). Zerubbabel was the Davidic-line governor and Ieshua (Joshua) the high priest of the restoration (see Ezra 2:2; Haggai 1:1; Zechariah 3:1). Seraiah, Jeremiah, and Ezra head the priestly list — this Ezra is likely the priestly clan, not necessarily Ezra the scribe of chapters 7-8, though the name represents the same family.
2. These priestly clan names correspond to those in the sealed covenant (10:3-9) and represent the houses that returned from Babylon in the first wave. Each name designates a priestly family, not merely an individual.
3. Shekaniah ('the LORD has taken up residence') is a theologically rich name for a priestly house — it affirms God's dwelling among his people. Rehum and Meremoth continue the list of founding priestly families.
4. Iddo is the priestly family from which Zechariah the prophet descended (Zechariah 1:1; Ezra 5:1). Abiah is the priestly division to which Zechariah the priest (father of John the Baptist) would later belong (Luke 1:5), though centuries separate these periods.
5. Miamin (also Miniamin) and Bilgah appear in the priestly course lists of 1 Chronicles 24. Maadiah is attested only in this context. These three-name verses maintain the formal registry style.
6. Ioiarib ('the LORD will contend') is the priestly house from which the Hasmonean/Maccabean family would later claim descent (1 Maccabees 2:1). Iedaiah is one of the earliest priestly houses to return (Ezra 2:36).

7. The summary formula — 'these were the heads of the priests in the days of Ieshua' — closes the first-generation list. Twenty-two priestly houses are named (vv. 1-7), corresponding roughly to the traditional twenty-four priestly courses of 1 Chronicles 24. Ieshua the high priest anchors the dating to the initial return from Babylon.
8. The Levitical list parallels the priestly one. Mattaniah is specifically noted as overseeing the hodot ('thanksgiving songs, praise') — the same role his descendant holds in 11:17. The word hodot is the plural of todah, the thanksgiving offering that combines sacrifice with praise singing. These Levites established the worship traditions that continued into Nehemiah's era.
9. Bakbukiah and Unno served lenegdam lemishmarot ('opposite them in watches') — meaning they led the antiphonal response in the worship services. One group sang and the other answered from the opposite side, a pattern that will be dramatically displayed in the wall dedication processions later in the chapter.
10. The high priestly genealogy spans the restoration period. Ieshua served with Zerubbabel (circa 520 BCE). Ioiakim was the next high priest. Eliashib served during Nehemiah's governorship (3:1, 20-21; 13:4-7) — his alliance with Tobiah will become a major scandal. The genealogy uses the standard begetting formula (holid et) to trace the high priestly line.
11. The genealogy extends to Iaddua, generally considered the last high priest mentioned in the Hebrew Bible. Josephus identifies a Jaddua as high priest during the time of Alexander the Great (circa 330 BCE), though whether this is the same Iaddua is debated. If so, this verse represents one of the latest historical references in the Hebrew Bible's narrative books.
12. The text now lists the second-generation priestly leaders — the heads who served during Ioiakim's high priesthood. Each entry follows the pattern: the founding house name, then the current clan head. This is a generational update showing continuity of priestly service across the decades.
13. Meshullam heads the Ezra priestly house in this generation. Iehohanan ('the LORD is gracious') heads the Amariah house. These second-generation leaders maintained the priestly infrastructure established by the founders.
14. Meliku is a variant form of Malluk/Malluch from the founding list (v. 2). Ioseph heading the Shebaniah house brings a patriarchal name into the priestly lineage. The consistency of clan-name-then-current-head format makes this section function as an official register.
15. Adna ('delight') heads the Harim priestly house. Helkai ('my portion') heads the Meraioth house. Both founding house names appear in the sealed covenant of chapter 10.
16. The Zechariah heading Iddo's priestly house is likely Zechariah the prophet, who is called 'son of Iddo' in Ezra 5:1 and 6:14 (though Zechariah 1:1 calls him 'son of Berechiah son of Iddo'). If so, this is the only genealogical record linking the prophet Zechariah to the priestly service lists.
17. Zikri heads the Abiah house. The name for Miniamin's current head appears to be missing from the Hebrew text — a minor scribal gap. Piltai ('my deliverance') heads the Moadiah house. Such small textual gaps are not uncommon in registry-style lists.
18. Shammua ('heard') heads the Bilgah house. Iehonathan ('the LORD has given') heads the Shemaiah house. The register continues its systematic accounting of the second-generation priestly leadership.
19. Mattenai ('gift of the LORD') heads the Ioiarib house. Uzzi ('my strength') heads the Iedaiah house. These two priestly houses are prominent in the post-exilic period, consistently appearing in leadership lists.
20. Kallai and Eber head the Sallai and Amok houses respectively. Eber ('one from beyond') carries the ancient name of the ancestor of the Hebrews (Genesis 10:21), reappearing in the post-exilic priestly register.
21. Hashabiah ('the LORD has considered') heads the Hilkiah house. Nethanel ('God has given') heads a second Iedaiah house — either a branch of the same clan or a variant reading. This closes the second-generation priestly register for Ioiakim's era.
22. This summary verse spans multiple high priestly generations — from Eliashib (Nehemiah's contemporary) through Iaddua. The phrase 'reign of Darius the Persian' (malkhut Daryavesh ha-Parsi) likely refers to Darius II (423-404 BCE) or Darius III (336-330 BCE). The record-keeping emphasis — ketuvim ('written, recorded') — shows that the post-exilic community maintained genealogical archives to verify priestly and Levitical legitimacy.
23. The 'Book of the Chronicles' (sefer divrei ha-yamim) is an official record book, not the biblical book of Chronicles. This was a running administrative log maintained by the community. Iohanan son of Eliashib provides the terminal date for this particular record. The existence of such records explains how the author of Nehemiah had access to detailed genealogical information spanning multiple generations.
24. The antiphonal worship pattern — mishmar le'ummat mishmar ('division opposite division, watch facing watch') — traces its authority to David, who is called ish ha-Elohim ('man of God'). David organized the Levitical service into rotating courses (1 Chronicles 23-25). The verbs lehallel lehodot ('to praise and to give thanks') describe the two primary modes of Levitical worship: praise (hallel) and thanksgiving (hodah).
25. These gatekeepers combined security and liturgical duties. The asuppei ha-she'arim ('storehouses of the gates') were storage facilities at the gate complexes where contributions and tithes were kept. Talmon and Akkub are hereditary gatekeeper families attested since the return (Ezra 2:42). Their role was both protective and administrative.
26. This summary verse bridges two eras: Ioiakim's high priesthood (the generation after the first return) and the era of Nehemiah the governor (ha-pechah) and Ezra the priest-scribe (ha-kohen ha-sofer). The double title for Ezra — priest and scribe — identifies him as both a hereditary religious leader and an expert interpreter of Torah. This verse confirms the contemporaneity of Nehemiah and Ezra.

27. The word chanukah appears here and in verse 27 and gives its name to the later Jewish festival of Hanukkah (the rededication of the Temple under the Maccabees in 164 BCE). The root chanak means 'to dedicate, to inaugurate.' The joy (simchah) mentioned here will build throughout the passage to its climax in verse 43.
28. The singers (benei ha-meshorerim, 'sons of the singers') are a hereditary guild. They gathered from the kikkar ('plain, district') surrounding Jerusalem and from the chatserot ('villages, settlements') of the Netophathites. Netophah was a village near Bethlehem associated with Levitical singers (1 Chronicles 2:54; 9:16). The geographic breadth of the gathering emphasizes the communal scope of the celebration.
29. Beth-gilgal is distinct from the famous Gilgal near Jericho; this is a settlement closer to Jerusalem. Geba (11:31) and Azmaveth (Ezra 2:24) are Benjaminite towns north of the capital. The note that singers 'built settlements for themselves' (chatserim banu lahem) reveals an established infrastructure — the Levitical musicians had created a network of residential villages within commuting distance of Jerusalem, allowing them to fulfill their Temple duties while maintaining agricultural land.
30. The verb yittaharu ('purified themselves') and then yetaharu ('they purified') shows a two-stage process: the priests and Levites first achieved ritual purity, then extended it to the people and the physical structures. The purification of the gates and wall is remarkable — inanimate objects are ritually consecrated, transforming them from mere construction into sanctified structures. The wall itself becomes holy, which is why the processions will walk on it.
31. Nehemiah now narrates in first person, resuming his memoir. He positions the leaders on the wall itself — not beside it, but on top of it. The two todot gedolot ('large thanksgiving processions') are choral groups that will march in opposite directions. The first proceeds southward (to the right, facing east) toward the sha'ar ha-ashpot ('Dung Gate'), the same gate where Nehemiah began his nighttime inspection in 2:13. The Hebrew tahalukot ('processions') literally means 'walkings' — these are moving worship services.
32. Hoshaiiah leads the first procession's civic delegation. 'Half the leaders of Judah' (chatsi sarei Yehudah) — the other half will join the second procession, ensuring both groups have equal civic representation. The division of leadership between the two processions symbolizes the unified community wrapping the entire city in worship.
33. Azariah, Ezra, and Meshullam are listed among the first procession's participants. This Ezra may be distinct from Ezra the scribe (who appears in the second procession at v. 36), or the same person is mentioned in both because he moved between the groups.
34. The participants include men from both the Judahite and Benjaminite tribal groups, reinforcing the unified character of the celebration. Shemaiah and Jeremiah are leaders, not the famous prophet Jeremiah.
35. The priests carry chatsotsrot ('trumpets') — the silver ceremonial trumpets prescribed in Numbers 10:1-10, distinct from the shofar (ram's horn). Zechariah's genealogy traces six generations back to Asaph, the Davidic worship leader. The trumpets serve a dual function: liturgical celebration and ceremonial announcement, signaling the sacred character of the procession.
36. The musicians carry kelei shir David ('musical instruments of David the man of God'), instruments whose design and use trace back to David's establishment of Temple worship. The phrase ish ha-Elohim ('man of God') grants David prophetic-priestly authority over Israel's worship traditions. Ezra the scribe (ha-sofer) walks lifneihem ('before them, at their head') — the Torah scholar leads the musical procession, uniting word and worship.
37. The first procession's route becomes specific: from the Dung Gate (v. 31) southward, then up past the Fountain Gate (sha'ar ha-ayin), ascending the steps (ma'alot) of the City of David — the original Jebusite fortress David captured (2 Samuel 5:7). They pass 'above the house of David' (me'al lebeit David), an area associated with the royal palace complex, and continue to the Water Gate (sha'ar ha-mayim) on Jerusalem's eastern side. The procession has traced the southern and eastern walls.
38. Nehemiah himself walks with the second procession (va-ani achareiha, 'and I behind it'). This group goes lemo'al ('to the left,' heading north and then east). They pass the Migdal ha-Tannurim ('Tower of the Ovens/Furnaces'), a defensive tower near the bakers' quarter, and continue to the Chomah ha-Rechavah ('Broad Wall'), a massive fortification from Hezekiah's era (2 Chronicles 32:5) that has been archaeologically identified in the Jewish Quarter.
39. The second procession's route traces the northern and eastern walls in rapid succession: the Ephraim Gate (western), the Ieshanah ('Old') Gate, the Fish Gate (northern, where Tyrian merchants will sell on the Sabbath, 13:16), the Tower of Hananel and the Tower of the Hundred (northeastern defensive towers), to the Sheep Gate (northeastern, where the wall-building began in 3:1). They stop at the sha'ar ha-mattarah ('Gate of the Guard' or 'Gate of the Prison'), near the Temple complex. The two processions have now circled the entire city.
40. The two processions converge at beit ha-Elohim ('the house of God') — the Temple. Having circled the entire city wall in opposite directions, both groups now stand together in the Temple precinct. The verb ta'amodnah ('they stood, took positions') indicates a formal liturgical station. Nehemiah is present with half the seganim ('officials, deputy rulers'), the same proportion noted for the civic leaders in each procession.
41. Seven priests with trumpets (chatsotsrot) are named for this procession. Seven is a number of completeness in Hebrew tradition. The silver trumpets were exclusively priestly instruments (Numbers 10:8), distinguishing the priests' role from the Levitical musicians who played harps, lyres, and cymbals.
42. Eight more participants are listed, followed by the climactic statement: vayyashmi'u ha-meshorerim ('the singers made themselves heard, raised their voices'). The verb shama in the Hiphil means 'to cause to be heard' — they sang at full volume. Izrahiah served as ha-paqid ('the director, the overseer'), conducting the combined choirs. This moment represents the merging of both processions into a single, powerful chorus.

43. The sacrifices (zevachim gedolim, 'great sacrifices') are not burnt offerings consumed entirely by fire but fellowship offerings (shelamim), where the meat was shared among the worshippers in a communal meal. The fivefold repetition of the simchah root in one verse is exceptional in Hebrew prose and creates a crescendo effect. The phrase vatishama simchat Yerushalayim merachok ('the joy of Jerusalem was heard from far away') is the acoustic climax — sound traveling across distance is a biblical measure of intensity (see Ezra 3:13; 1 Samuel 4:5).
44. The administrative order follows the celebration. Men were appointed over the neshakhhot ('storerooms, chambers') for three categories: terumot ('contributions'), reshith ('firstfruits'), and ma'asrot ('tithes'). These correspond directly to the obligations pledged in 10:36-40. The phrase menot ha-Torah ('portions of the Law') means the legally prescribed allocations. The closing note — Judah rejoiced over the serving priests and Levites — explains the motivation: the people were glad to support those who maintained the worship.
45. The worship system is described as functioning properly: mishmeret Eloheihem ('the service/charge of their God') and mishmeret ha-taharah ('the service of purification') are both maintained. The authority is traced to David and Solomon — the dual founders of Israel's Temple worship system. David organized the Levitical courses (1 Chronicles 23-25), and Solomon built the Temple where these orders served (1 Kings 5-8).
46. The text looks back to the origin of Israel's formal worship music: David and Asaph miqqedem ('from of old, long ago'). Asaph is treated as co-founder of the liturgical tradition alongside David himself. The phrase shir tehillah vehodot ('songs of praise and thanksgiving') describes the two fundamental modes of worship music established in David's era and maintained continuously into the post-exilic period — a span of roughly five centuries by Nehemiah's time.
47. The chapter closes with a summary of the tithe system functioning as intended across both the Zerubbabel and Nehemiah eras. The chain of support flows from all Israel to the Levites (maqdishshim la-Leviyim, 'setting apart for the Levites'), and from the Levites to the Aaronic priests (maqdishshim livnei Aharon, 'setting apart for the sons of Aaron'). The verb qadash ('to set apart, to sanctify') frames the tithes not as taxes but as sacred dedications. This idyllic picture will be shattered in chapter 13, where the entire system has collapsed.

13

Summary: *Nehemiah returns to Jerusalem after an absence at the Persian court and discovers that nearly every commitment made in the sealed covenant of chapter 10 has been violated. Eliashib the high priest has given the Ammonite Tobiah a storeroom in the Temple itself. The Levites have abandoned their posts because tithes have stopped. Merchants sell goods on the Sabbath. Jewish men have married women from Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab, and their children cannot even speak Hebrew. Nehemiah responds with escalating force: he throws Tobiah's furniture out of the Temple, restores the tithe system, shuts the city gates on the Sabbath, threatens foreign merchants, and physically confronts the intermarried men. The book ends not with resolution but with Nehemiah's repeated prayer: 'Remember me, my God, for good.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the most intensely personal passages in the Hebrew Bible. Nehemiah's first-person narration pulses with outrage, energy, and physical action. He does not delegate — he personally evicts Tobiah's belongings, personally stations guards at the gates, personally confronts the merchants, personally grabs and strikes the intermarried men. The four 'Remember me' prayers (vv. 14, 22, 29, 31) punctuate the chapter like a refrain, revealing a leader who knows his reforms may not outlast him and who appeals to God as the only reliable witness to his work. The chapter is deliberately structured to mirror the pledges of chapter 10: Temple support (10:33-40 vs. 13:4-14), Sabbath observance (10:32 vs. 13:15-22), and intermarriage (10:31 vs. 13:23-29). Every pledge has been broken. The book of Nehemiah thus ends not with triumph but with the honest acknowledgment that human covenants, even sworn ones, are fragile.*

Translation Friction: *The timeline of Nehemiah's absence and return is unclear. Verse 6 says he returned to Artaxerxes 'at the end of days' (leqets yamim) and then asked permission to return to Jerusalem, but the duration of his absence is not specified. The phrase 'in those days' (bayyamim hahem) at verses 15 and 23 may indicate a single period or separate occasions. Nehemiah's violent response to intermarriage — cursing, striking, and pulling out hair (v. 25) — is difficult for modern readers, but it reflects the gravity with which covenant violation was treated in this period. The final verse's prayer, 'Remember me, my God, for good,' is the book's last word — there is no resolution, no assurance that the reforms will hold.*

Connections: *The Temple-room scandal (vv. 4-9) reverses the dedication joy of 12:44-47, where the storerooms were properly supplied. Tobiah's occupation of the Temple chamber is especially galling because he is the Ammonite opponent from chapters 2, 4, and 6. The Sabbath violations (vv. 15-22) recall the specific pledge of 10:32. The intermarriage crisis echoes Ezra 9-10 and Solomon's downfall (v. 26 explicitly cites Solomon). Nehemiah's 'Remember me' prayers echo the covenant language of divine remembering — the same verb (zakar) used in 1:8*

when Nehemiah asked God to 'remember' the promise to Moses.

¹On that day, the scroll of Moses was read aloud to the people, and they found written in it that no Ammonite or Moabite should ever enter the assembly of God, ²because they had not met the Israelites with food and water, but had hired Balaam against them to curse them — though our God turned the curse into a blessing. ³When they heard the Law, they separated from Israel everyone of mixed descent. ⁴Before this, the priest Eliashib, who had been put in charge of the storerooms of the house of our God, and who was a relative of Tobiah, ⁵had prepared a large room for him where they had previously stored the grain offerings, the frankincense, the vessels, and the tithes of grain, new wine, and oil prescribed for the Levites, singers, and gatekeepers, as well as the contributions for the priests. ⁶During all this I was not in Jerusalem, for in the thirty-second year of Artaxerxes king of Babylon I had returned to the king. After some time, I asked the king's permission to leave, ⁷and I returned to Jerusalem. There I discovered the outrage that Eliashib had committed on behalf of Tobiah — making him a private room in the courts of the house of God. ⁸I was furious, and I threw all of Tobiah's household goods out of the room. ⁹I gave orders, and they purified the rooms. Then I restored the vessels of the house of God, along with the grain offerings and the frankincense. ¹⁰I also discovered that the portions for the Levites had not been given to them, so the Levites and the singers who performed the service had each fled to their own fields. ¹¹I confronted the officials and demanded, "Why has the house of God been abandoned?" I gathered the Levites and singers and restored them to their posts. ¹²Then all Judah brought the tithes of grain, new wine, and oil to the storehouses. ¹³I appointed as storehouse overseers Shelemiah the priest, Zadok the scribe, and Pedaiah from the Levites, with Hanan son of Zakkur, son of Mattaniah, as their assistant — because they were considered trustworthy. Their responsibility was to distribute to their fellow workers. ¹⁴Remember me for this, my God, and do not wipe out the acts of faithful love I have done for the house of my God and its services. ¹⁵In those days I saw people in Judah treading winepresses on the Sabbath, hauling in grain stacks, loading donkeys with wine, grapes, figs, and every kind of load, and bringing them into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day. I warned them on the day they were selling food. ¹⁶Tyrians living in the city were bringing in fish and all kinds of merchandise and selling them on the Sabbath to the people of Judah — in Jerusalem itself. ¹⁷I confronted the nobles of Judah and said to them, "What is this terrible thing you are doing — profaning the Sabbath day? ¹⁸Isn't this exactly what your ancestors did, causing our God to bring all this disaster on us and on this city? And you are bringing even more wrath on Israel by profaning the Sabbath!" ¹⁹When the shadows began to fall on Jerusalem's gates before the Sabbath, I ordered the doors shut and gave instructions that they not be opened until after the Sabbath. I stationed some of my own servants at the gates so that no load could enter on the Sabbath day. ²⁰The traders and sellers of all kinds of goods camped outside Jerusalem once or twice. ²¹I warned them and said, "Why are you camping in front of the wall? If you do this again, I will use force against you!" From that time on, they did not come on the Sabbath. ²²I told the Levites to purify themselves and come guard the gates to keep the Sabbath day holy. Remember me for this too, my God, and spare me according to the abundance of your faithful love. ²³Also in those days I saw Jewish men who had married women from Ashdod, Ammon, and Moab. ²⁴Half their children spoke the language of Ashdod and could not speak the language of Judah — only the language of one people or another. ²⁵I confronted them, cursed them, struck some of them, pulled out their hair, and made them swear by God: "You will not give your daughters to their sons or take their daughters for your sons or for yourselves! ²⁶Was it not over these things that Solomon king of Israel sinned? Among many nations there was no king like him — he was loved by his God, and God made him king over all Israel — yet even he was led into sin by foreign women. ²⁷Should we then listen to you and do all this terrible evil — betraying our God by marrying foreign women?" ²⁸One of the sons of Ioiada son of Eliashib the high priest had become a son-in-law of Sanballat the Horonite. I drove him away from me. ²⁹Remember them, my God, for defiling the priesthood and the covenant of the priesthood and the Levites. ³⁰So I purified them from everything foreign and established the duties of the priests and Levites, each in their assigned tasks, ³¹and provided for the wood offering at the appointed times, and for the firstfruits. Remember me, my God, for good.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'scroll of Moses' (sefer Mosheh) being read aloud continues the public Torah-reading pattern established in chapter 8. The passage found is Deuteronomy 23:3-5 (Hebrew 23:4-6), which permanently excludes Ammonites and Moabites from the qahal ha-Elohim ('assembly of God'). This reading is not accidental — it provides the legal basis for the separations that follow and directly targets Tobiah the Ammonite (v. 4).
2. The historical rationale from Deuteronomy 23:4-5 is summarized: the Ammonites and Moabites refused hospitality (bread and water) during the wilderness journey and hired Balaam to curse Israel (Numbers 22-24). God's reversal of the curse into a blessing (vayyahafokh ... ha-qelalah livrkahah) is the theological punchline — God's sovereignty overrides human hostility. This background makes Tobiah's presence in the Temple especially offensive.
3. The phrase kol erev ('all the mixed multitude') echoes Exodus 12:38, where a 'mixed multitude' (erev rav) left Egypt with Israel. Here it refers to persons of foreign descent who had attached themselves to the community. The verb hivdilu ('they separated') is the same verb used throughout Ezra-Nehemiah for the separation of Israel from surrounding peoples (Ezra 9:1; 10:11; Nehemiah 9:2; 10:29).
4. The flashback opens with velifnei mizzeh ('before this') — indicating the Tobiah scandal preceded the Torah reading. Eliashib is identified as ha-kohen ('the priest'), likely the high priest of 3:1, though some identify him as a different Eliashib. He was natun belishkat beit Eloheinu ('appointed over the storerooms of our God's house') and was qarov leToviyah ('close to Tobiah, a relative of Tobiah'). This family connection to the Ammonite opponent is the root of the corruption.
5. The scope of the violation is staggering. Eliashib gave Tobiah a lishkah gedolah ('large room/chamber') that had been the storehouse for the Temple's entire supply system: grain offerings (minchah), frankincense (levonah), sacred vessels (kelim), and the tithes (ma'aser) of grain, wine, and oil that supported the Levites, singers, and gatekeepers. The priestly contributions (terumat ha-kohanim) were also stored there. By evicting the supplies, Eliashib effectively defunded the entire worship system to house a foreign political ally.
6. Nehemiah was absent when the corruption occurred. The thirty-second year of Artaxerxes (approximately 433 BCE) means Nehemiah served as governor for twelve years before returning to the Persian court (compare 5:14, which notes he governed from the twentieth to the thirty-second year). The phrase leqets yamim ('at the end of days, after some time') is vague about how long he was away. Artaxerxes is called 'king of Babylon' (melekh Bavel), a title reflecting Persia's inheritance of the Babylonian Empire.
7. Nehemiah uses the word ra'ah ('evil, outrage') to characterize Eliashib's action. The phrase bechatserot beit ha-Elohim ('in the courts of the house of God') makes the violation spatial — Tobiah, an Ammonite who should not even enter the assembly, has a private chamber within the Temple precinct itself. The verb avaynah ('I understood, I perceived, I discerned') indicates that Nehemiah had to investigate to discover what had happened in his absence.
8. Nehemiah's reaction is visceral: vayyera li me'od ('it was deeply offensive to me, I was furious'). His response is immediate and physical — va-ashlikhah ('I threw, I hurled') all of Tobiah's belongings (kol kelei beit Toviyah, 'all the furnishings of Tobiah's household') outside the chamber. This is not an administrative order but a personal act of desecration reversal. Nehemiah treats Tobiah's possessions as contaminants that must be forcibly removed from sacred space.
9. After the eviction, Nehemiah orders ritual purification (vayetaharu ha-leshakhoh, 'they purified the chambers') — the same purification language used for the wall dedication in 12:30. The room must be cleansed of Tobiah's foreign presence before sacred items can return. Nehemiah then personally restores (va-ashivah, 'I brought back') the Temple vessels, grain offerings, and frankincense to their proper place.
10. The second crisis follows directly from the first: with the storerooms given to Tobiah, the tithes stopped, and without tithes, the Levites and singers abandoned Jerusalem to farm their own land (vayyivrehu ish lesadehu, 'each man fled to his own field'). The verb barach ('fled') is strong — it describes escape from an untenable situation, not casual departure. The entire worship system — the pledges of 10:38-40 and the functional order of 12:44-47 — has collapsed.
11. Nehemiah's confrontation with the seganim ('officials, deputy rulers') uses the verb rivah ('I contended, I brought a formal complaint') — legal-dispute language. His question — maddua ne'ezav beit ha-Elohim ('why has the house of God been abandoned?') — echoes the pledge of 10:40: 'we will not neglect the house of our God.' The exact verb they swore not to do (azav) is the verb Nehemiah now throws at them. He then personally gathers (va-eqbetsem) the dispersed Levites and reinstalls them (va-a'amidem al omdam, 'I set them on their standing place').
12. Once Nehemiah restores order, the people resume tithing. The three staple contributions — grain (dagan), new wine (tirosh), and oil (yitshar) — flow again to the otserot ('storehouses, treasuries'). The response of kol Yehudah ('all Judah') suggests the breakdown was not caused by popular unwillingness but by administrative failure at the leadership level.
13. Nehemiah creates a new administrative team with built-in accountability: a priest (Shelemiah), a scribe (Zadok), a Levite (Pedaiah), and an assistant (Hanan). The cross-representation prevents any single group from controlling the resources. The key criterion: ki ne'emanim nechshavu ('they were considered trustworthy'). After Eliashib's betrayal, trustworthiness is the primary qualification. Their task is lachalog la-acheihem ('to distribute to their brothers') — ensuring the Levites and singers receive their proper portions.
14. The imperative zokhrach li ('remember for me') is a direct personal appeal to God. The verb machah ('to wipe out, to blot out') is used elsewhere for erasing names from the book of life (Exodus 32:32-33; Psalm 69:28). Nehemiah's fear is not that God will forget but that his work will be treated as insignificant. The phrase bemishmarav ('its services, its watches') refers to the guard duties and worship rotations Nehemiah has just restored.

15. Nehemiah personally witnesses (ra'iti, 'I saw') multiple Sabbath violations: treading winepresses (dorekkim gittot), transporting grain (mevi'im ha-aremot), loading donkeys with commercial goods, and selling in Jerusalem. The catalogue of produce — wine, grapes, figs — represents the full agricultural economy operating on the Sabbath. The verb va-a'id ('I warned, I testified against') is the same word used for prophetic warning throughout chapter 9 (vv. 26, 29, 30, 34). Nehemiah positions himself as a warning prophet.
16. Foreign merchants compound the problem. The Tsorim ('Tyrians,' residents of Tyre on the Phoenician coast) had established a merchant community within Jerusalem, importing fish (dag) and various goods (kol mekher). They sold openly on the Sabbath to Jewish buyers. The emphatic uvi-Yerushalayim ('and in Jerusalem') underscores the offense — this is happening in the holy city, not in some remote village.
17. Nehemiah's second rivah ('formal confrontation') targets the chorei Yehudah ('nobles of Judah') — the social elite who bear responsibility for communal behavior. The verb mechalleling ('profaning') means to treat as common what God has declared holy. The Sabbath is sacred time; commerce turns it into ordinary time, violating the very nature of the day. Nehemiah holds the leaders accountable for systemic failure, not just individual violations.
18. Nehemiah's argument is historical and theological: the ancestors' behavior caused the exile and Jerusalem's destruction, and the current generation is repeating the same pattern. The phrase mosifim charon al Yisra'el ('adding wrath upon Israel') warns that covenant violation has cumulative consequences. This reasoning draws directly on the historical recital of chapter 9, where Israel's repeated failures provoked divine judgment.
19. Nehemiah takes physical control of the gates. The phrase tsalelu sha'arei Yerushalayim ('the gates of Jerusalem became shadowed') poetically describes the onset of dusk on Friday — when Sabbath begins. He shuts the gates (vayyissageru ha-delatot) and posts his own men (mine'arai, 'my servants/attendants') rather than relying on the regular gatekeepers, whom he apparently does not trust. This is military-grade Sabbath enforcement — no commercial loads (massa) may enter.
20. The merchants (rokhelim, 'itinerant traders') and sellers (mokhre'i khol mimkar, 'sellers of all merchandise') attempted to circumvent Nehemiah's gate closure by camping outside the walls — presumably hoping to sell to people leaving the city or to enter when the gates reopened. The phrase pa'am ushtayim ('once or twice') indicates this happened on two Sabbaths before Nehemiah escalated his response.
21. Nehemiah's threat — im tishnu yad eshlach bakhem ('if you repeat this, I will send a hand against you') — is a direct threat of physical force against the merchants. The phrase 'send a hand' (shalach yad) means to seize, arrest, or strike. This is the governor exercising police power against commercial activity. The threat worked: lo va'u ba-Shabbat ('they did not come on the Sabbath'). Nehemiah enforces by credible threat what persuasion alone could not achieve.
22. Nehemiah transfers gate-guarding duties to the Levites, who must first purify themselves (yihyu mittaharim) for this sanctified task. The Sabbath is to be 'made holy' (leqaddesh), not merely observed. The second 'Remember me' prayer shifts from remembering deeds to requesting mercy: chusah alai kerov chasdekha ('spare me according to the abundance of your faithful love'). The verb chusah ('spare, have pity') suggests Nehemiah is aware that even his best efforts require grace.
23. The third crisis — intermarriage — is introduced with the same formula: ra'iti ('I saw'). The women come from three surrounding peoples: Ashdod (Philistine coastal city), Ammon (Transjordan, Tobiah's territory), and Moab (southeast of the Dead Sea). All three groups were involved in opposing Nehemiah's wall-building (chapters 2, 4, 6). The intermarriages represent social integration with the very peoples who sought to prevent Jerusalem's restoration.
24. The word Ashdodit ('Ashdodite language') indicates a distinct dialect from the Philistine coastal region. Yehudit ('Judean') is the language of the covenant community — without it, Torah is inaccessible. The phrase khilshon am va-am ('according to the language of each people') indicates that children of different mixed marriages spoke different foreign languages, creating a linguistically fragmented generation.
25. Nehemiah's response escalates to physical violence: va-arivah ('I confronted'), va-aqalelem ('I cursed them' — invoking divine punishment), va-akkeh mehem anashim ('I struck some of them'), va-emretem ('I pulled out their hair' — a shaming punishment). He then administers an oath (va-ashbi'em) binding them never to intermarry again. The violence is shocking by modern standards but reflects the governor's authority and the gravity of covenant violation in this context. Notably, Nehemiah does not demand divorce as Ezra did (Ezra 10:11); he seeks to prevent future intermarriage.
26. Nehemiah invokes Solomon as a warning: if the greatest king in Israel's history, a man beloved by God (ahuv le-Elohav), who ruled the entire nation, was brought down by foreign wives (1 Kings 11:1-8), then ordinary men have no chance. The rhetorical question halo al eleh chata Shelomoh ('did not Solomon sin in these matters?') makes the argument unanswerable. The phrase gam oto hecheti'u ha-nashim ha-nokhriyyot ('even him the foreign women caused to sin') uses the Hiphil of chata — the women were the active agents of his downfall.
27. The rhetorical question halakhem hanishma ('should we listen to you?') implies that some defended the intermarriages with arguments Nehemiah rejects outright. The verb ma'al ('to betray, to act treacherously') is the same covenant-violation term used in 1:8. Marrying foreign women is framed not as a social preference but as lima'ol b'Eloheinu ('betrayal of our God') — a direct breach of covenant loyalty.
28. The intermarriage crisis reaches the highest levels: a grandson of the high priest Eliashib has married into the family of Sanballat — Nehemiah's primary political opponent since chapter 2. The phrase chatan leSanballat ('son-in-law to Sanballat') means a direct marriage alliance between the high priestly family and the governor of Samaria. Nehemiah's response — va-avrichehu me'alai ('I drove him away from me') — is banishment. The verb barach in the Hiphil means 'to cause to flee, to expel.' Josephus identifies this expelled priest as Manasseh, who became the founding priest of the Samaritan temple on Mount Gerizim.

- 29.** The third 'Remember' prayer is inverted: instead of 'remember me for good,' it is *zokhrah lahem* ('remember them') — an imprecation against the offenders. The verb *ga'al* means 'to defile, to pollute, to desecrate.' They have defiled (*gi'alei*) the priesthood itself and the *berit ha-kehunnah* ('covenant of the priesthood'). This is Nehemiah at his most severe — he asks God to hold the high priestly family accountable for violating the very office they were set apart to protect.
- 30.** Nehemiah's final administrative action: *vitihartim mikol nekhar* ('I purified them from all foreign contamination'). The purification applies to the entire priestly and Levitical corps, restoring ritual and social boundaries. He then restructures the duty roster — *mishmarot* ('watches, assignments') — ensuring each priest and Levite has a defined role (*ish bimlakhto*, 'each person in their work'). This is Nehemiah rebuilding the institutional framework for the third time.
- 31.** The wood offering (*qurban ha-etsim*) and firstfruits (*bikkurim*) are the final items on Nehemiah's reform list, corresponding to the pledges of 10:35-36. The closing prayer — *zokhrah li Elohai letovah* — is the simplest and most personal of the four 'Remember me' prayers. The word *letovah* ('for good') asks not for reward but for favorable remembrance. This is the final verse of Nehemiah. The Hebrew Bible's historical narrative of Israel's post-exilic restoration ends with a single man asking God to remember.

Esther

1

Summary: *King Ahasuerus hosts a lavish banquet lasting 180 days in Susa, followed by a seven-day feast for the entire citadel. Queen Vashti refuses his summons to display herself before the drunken court. Humiliated, the king consults his advisors, who warn that Vashti's defiance will embolden women across the empire. The king issues an irrevocable decree deposing Vashti and commanding that every man rule his own household.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Esther opens not with Israel, not with a prophet, and not with God — it opens with a pagan king throwing a party. The entire narrative machinery of the book is set in motion by a drunk king's wounded ego. The Persian court's absurd overreaction to a domestic dispute — issuing an empire-wide decree about marital authority — establishes the book's characteristic tone: deadly serious events driven by characters who are often ridiculous. The 180-day display of wealth followed by a seven-day drinking feast is excess on a scale that invites the reader to see this empire as both powerful and deeply foolish.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew mishteh ('feast, drinking-feast') appears twenty times in Esther — more than in any other biblical book. We render it 'feast' or 'banquet' depending on context, but the root shatah ('to drink') is always present. In verse 10 ketov lev ha-melek bayyayin ('when the king's heart was merry with wine') is a Hebrew idiom for being drunk — we render 'when the king was in high spirits from wine' to preserve the idiom's force without clinical language. Verse 22 specifies that the decree went out ke-leshon ammo ('according to the language of his people') — the Persian bureaucratic apparatus of translation is a real historical detail that foreshadows the later decrees.*

Connections: *The book of Esther is unique in the Hebrew Bible: it never mentions God by name. No prayer is explicitly recorded, no covenant is invoked, no prophet speaks. Yet the narrative is saturated with 'coincidences' that the reader is meant to recognize as providential — the king's insomnia in chapter 6, Esther's position in the court, the timing of Mordecai's unrewarded service. The Persian imperial setting connects to Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah, all of which navigate Jewish identity within foreign power structures. Vashti's deposition in chapter 1 creates the vacancy that places Esther in position — what looks like court intrigue is the hidden preparation for Israel's deliverance.*

¹In the days of Ahasuerus — the Ahasuerus who reigned from India to Cush over one hundred twenty-seven provinces — ²in those days, when King Ahasuerus sat on his royal throne in the citadel of Susa — ³in the third year of his reign, he held a

feast for all his officials and servants. The military force of Persia and Media, the nobility, and the provincial governors were before him. ⁴He displayed the vast wealth of his kingdom and the splendor of his magnificent greatness for many days — one hundred eighty days. ⁵When those days were completed, the king held a seven-day feast for all the people present in the citadel of Susa, from the greatest to the least, in the courtyard of the garden of the king's pavilion. ⁶White cotton curtains and violet hangings were fastened with cords of fine linen and purple cloth to silver rods on marble columns. Couches of gold and silver rested on a mosaic pavement of porphyry, marble, mother-of-pearl, and colored stone. ⁷Drinks were served in golden vessels, each vessel different from the next, and royal wine flowed abundantly, befitting the king's generosity. ⁸The drinking was by rule: no one was compelled. The king had instructed every steward of his household to serve each person according to his own desire. ⁹Queen Vashti also held a feast for the women in the royal palace of King Ahasuerus. ¹⁰On the seventh day, when the king was in high spirits from wine, he ordered Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, Abagtha, Zethar, and Carcas — the seven eunuchs who served in the presence of King Ahasuerus — ¹¹to bring Queen Vashti before the king wearing the royal crown, to display her beauty to the peoples and the officials, for she was stunning in appearance. ¹²But Queen Vashti refused to come at the king's command delivered by the eunuchs. The king was furious, and his rage burned within him. ¹³The king consulted the wise men who understood the times — for this was the king's practice with all who knew law and judgment. ¹⁴Those closest to him were Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memucan — the seven officials of Persia and Media who had access to the king's presence and held the highest rank in the kingdom. ¹⁵"According to the law, what is to be done with Queen Vashti, since she has not obeyed the command of King Ahasuerus delivered through the eunuchs?" ¹⁶Memucan declared before the king and the officials, "Queen Vashti has wronged not only the king but all the officials and all the peoples in every province of King Ahasuerus. ¹⁷For the queen's behavior will become known to all women, causing them to look on their husbands with contempt, saying, 'King Ahasuerus commanded Queen Vashti to be brought before him, and she did not come!' ¹⁸This very day, the noblewomen of Persia and Media who have heard of the queen's behavior will say the same to all the king's officials — and there will be no end of contempt and anger." ¹⁹If it pleases the king, let a royal decree go out from him, and let it be written into the laws of Persia and Media so that it cannot be revoked: Vashti is never again to come before King Ahasuerus, and the king will give her royal position to another who is better than she is. ²⁰When the king's edict is proclaimed throughout his entire kingdom — for it is vast — all women will give honor to their husbands, from the greatest to the least." ²¹The proposal pleased the king and the officials, and the king acted on Memucan's recommendation. ²²He sent letters to every royal province — to each province in its own script and to each people in its own language — declaring that every man should be master in his own household and speak the language of his own people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening vayyehi bimei ('and it was in the days of') is a formulaic narrative opener shared with Ruth 1:1 and other stories set in a specific historical period. The parenthetical identification — hu' Achashverosh ('this is the Ahasuerus') — distinguishes this king from others of the same name. The name Achashverosh is generally identified with the Persian king Xerxes I (486-465 BCE). The domain 'from India to Cush' (me-Hoddu ve-ad Kush) describes the full extent of the Achaemenid Empire, from the Indus Valley to Upper Egypt/Nubia.
2. The phrase kissei malkhuto ('throne of his kingdom') emphasizes established rule — Ahasuerus is seated, secure, at the height of his power. Shushan ha-birah ('Susa the citadel') refers to the fortified royal complex within the larger city of Susa. The word birah ('citadel, fortress, capital') appears frequently in Esther and will become the setting for most of the book's action.
3. The mishteh ('feast, banquet') is the first of many in the book — the word appears twenty times in Esther. The guest list is a descending hierarchy: sarav ('his officials'), avadav ('his servants' — royal functionaries), cheil Paras u-Madai ('the army of Persia and Media'), ha-partemim ('the nobles' — a Persian loanword for aristocrats), and sarei ha-medinot ('governors of the provinces'). This is not a dinner party but a political assembly cloaked in festivity.
4. The accumulation of near-synonyms — osher kevod malkhuto ('the riches of the glory of his kingdom') and yeqar tif'eret gedulato ('the honor of the splendor of his greatness') — piles up excess in the language itself. The Hebrew mirrors what it describes: opulence to the point of absurdity. One hundred eighty days is six months of display — this is not hospitality but propaganda, a show of imperial power designed to overawe.

5. After the six-month display for the elite, a second seven-day feast extends to all the people (kol ha-am) in the citadel — lemigadol ve-ad qatan ('from great to small') indicates social inclusiveness within the palace complex. The location — chatsar ginnat bitan ha-melekh ('the courtyard of the garden of the king's pavilion') — is a specific architectural space: an outdoor court within the royal garden, adjacent to the palace pavilion (bitan, a Persian loanword).
6. This verse is a catalog of luxury. The Hebrew piles up rare or borrowed words for fabrics and stones: chur ('white cotton' or 'white linen'), karpas ('fine cotton' — a Persian or Sanskrit loanword), tekhelet ('violet-blue' — the famous blue dye), butz ('fine linen'), argaman ('purple' — Tyrian purple). The pavement materials — bahat ('porphyry' or 'alabaster'), shesh ('marble'), dar ('mother-of-pearl'), and socharet ('dark stone' or 'mosaic tile') — include terms that appear only here in the Hebrew Bible. The accumulation of foreign loanwords mirrors the cosmopolitan extravagance of the Persian court.
7. The phrase kelim mi-kelim shonim ('vessels differing from vessels') emphasizes that no two cups were alike — individualized luxury rather than mass production. The wine is yein malkhut rav ('royal wine in abundance'), and the phrase ke-yad ha-melekh ('according to the hand of the king') means 'in keeping with the king's means' or 'befitting royal liberality.' We render this as 'befitting the king's generosity' to capture the idiom.
8. The phrase ha-shetiyyah kha-dat ein ones ('the drinking was according to the law; no one was forced') refers to a Persian custom where guests were sometimes obligated to match the king's drinking. Here the king suspends the rule — each man drinks ki-retson ish va-ish ('according to the desire of each and every man'). The irony is potent: the king proclaims freedom in drinking but will soon demand total compliance in everything else.
9. Vashti's separate mishteh nashim ('feast for women') reflects the social segregation of the Persian court. She is introduced as Vashti ha-malkah ('Vashti the queen') — she holds the title, the authority, and her own sphere of hospitality. The detail that her feast takes place in beit ha-malkhut ('the royal house') belonging to Ahasuerus foreshadows the coming conflict: Vashti exercises queenly prerogative in the king's own house.
10. The idiom ke-tov lev ha-melekh bayyayin ('when the king's heart was good with wine') means he was drunk. The narrator does not soften this — the decision that follows is made under the influence of alcohol. The seven sarisim ('eunuchs' — court officials, possibly castrated) have Persian names and serve as intermediaries between the king and the women's quarters. The number seven is recurring in this chapter: seven days, seven eunuchs, seven advisors.
11. The command to bring Vashti be-kheter malkhut ('wearing the royal crown') to lehar'ot ('to display, to show off') her beauty reduces the queen to an exhibit. The verb har'ah is the same used in verse 4 for the king displaying his wealth — Vashti is being added to the catalog of royal possessions. The phrase ki tovat mar'eh hi ('for she was good of appearance') explains the king's motive but also underscores the dehumanization: she is summoned not as queen but as spectacle.
12. The verb tema'en ('she refused') is stark and unqualified — no explanation, no negotiation, no counter-message. The text gives no reason for Vashti's refusal, and the silence is deliberate. Readers have speculated endlessly (dignity, modesty, counter-protest), but the narrator lets the refusal stand without motivation. The king's response — vayyiqtsot me'od va-chamato ba'arah vo ('he was extremely angry and his wrath burned in him') — uses two expressions for rage, doubling the intensity. A drunk king denied a spectacle is a dangerous situation.
13. The chakhamim yode'ei ha-ittim ('wise men who knew the times') were court advisors skilled in interpreting omens, precedent, and political timing. The phrase yode'ei dat va-din ('those who knew law and judgment') describes a specific class of legal experts. The king's reliance on advisors for what is essentially a personal domestic matter elevates Vashti's refusal into a constitutional crisis — exactly the escalation the advisors will exploit.
14. The phrase ro'ei penei ha-melekh ('those who see the king's face') is a technical term for officials with direct access to the king — a privilege in Persian court protocol where the king was normally screened from view. The seven sarei Paras u-Madai ('officials of Persia and Media') parallel the seven eunuchs of verse 10 — the number seven structures the chapter. Ha-yoshevim ri'shonah ba-malkhut ('who sit first in the kingdom') indicates highest rank. All seven have Persian names.
15. The king frames the question as a legal matter — ke-dat mah la'asot ('according to the law, what is to be done?') — rather than a personal grievance. This juridical framing transforms a domestic dispute into a matter of state. The phrase lo asatah et ma'amar ('she did not perform the command') uses ma'amar, a word for royal decree, making Vashti's refusal sound like treason rather than marital disagreement.
16. Memucan's response is a masterpiece of political escalation. He takes a personal affront — a wife's refusal to appear — and inflates it into an empire-wide crisis: lo al ha-melekh levaddo avatah ('not against the king alone has she offended') but against kol ha-sarim ve-al kol ha-ammim ('all the officials and all the peoples'). The verb avatah ('she has done wrong, she has offended') frames Vashti's act as a crime against the state. The absurdity is evident, but the political logic is real: advisors derive power from crises they help solve.
17. Memucan's reasoning — ki yetse devar ha-malkah al kol ha-nashim ('for the word of the queen will go out to all the women') — argues contagion: one woman's defiance will embolden every woman in the empire. The verb lehavzot ('to despise, to regard with contempt') describes the feared result: wives despising (bavzot) their husbands be-eineihen ('in their eyes'). The fear is not just disobedience but loss of male honor — a wife's contempt made visible.
18. Memucan heightens the urgency: ha-yom ha-zeh ('this very day') — the crisis is immediate. The sarot Paras u-Madai ('noblewomen of Persia and Media') are the wives of the very officials in the room, making the threat personal. The phrase u-khedai bizzayon va-qatsef ('and enough contempt and wrath') is terse — 'there will be sufficient contempt and anger' to destabilize households across the empire. The logic is circular: Vashti's defiance produces contempt, which produces anger, which produces more defiance.
19. The formula im al ha-melekh tov ('if it is good to the king' — 'if it pleases the king') is standard Persian court protocol for making proposals. Memucan's recommendation has three elements: (1) a royal decree (devar malkhut), (2) written into irrevocable law (datei Paras u-Madai), (3)

permanent banishment of Vashti with her position given to *li-re'utah ha-tovah mimmenah* ('to her companion who is better than she'). The word *re'utah* ('her companion, her fellow') is ironic — the replacement is described as a peer, but Vashti herself had no say in the matter.

- 20.** The word *pitgam* ('edict, decree, sentence') is another Persian loanword — the book of Esther deploys Persian administrative vocabulary with precision. Memucan promises that the decree will produce universal wifely obedience: *kol ha-nashim yittenu yeqar le-va'aleihen* ('all the women will give honor to their husbands'). The phrase *lemigadol ve-ad qatan* ('from great to small') appeared in verse 5 describing the feast's inclusiveness — now the same totality applies to the enforced social order. The narrator presents this logic without comment, but the disproportion speaks for itself: an empire-wide decree to solve one marriage.
- 21.** The phrase *vayyitav ha-davar be-einei ha-melekh* ('the matter was good in the eyes of the king') is the standard formula for royal approval. That a drunk king accepts counsel to issue an irrevocable empire-wide decree about domestic authority — and does so on the same evening — is presented without irony by the narrator, but the reader supplies it. The king who proclaimed freedom of drinking (verse 8) now legislates the opposite of freedom in every household.
- 22.** The distribution formula — *el medinah u-medinah ki-khtavah ve-el am va-am ki-leshono* ('to each province in its script and to each people in its language') — will recur in 3:12 and 8:9 for the genocide decree and its counter-decree. The multilingual bureaucracy of the Persian Empire is a historical reality that the narrator uses as a literary device: the same administrative machinery that distributes a petty decree about household authority will later distribute a death sentence against the Jews.
- 22.** The final clause — *u-medabber ki-leshon ammo* ('and speaking the language of his own people') — is puzzling. It may mean that the husband's language should prevail in mixed-language households, or it may be a garbled addition. The text is difficult and commentators disagree.

2

Summary: *After the king's anger subsides, his attendants propose a search for beautiful young women throughout the empire to replace Vashti. Mordecai, a Benjaminite exile living in Susa, has raised his orphaned cousin Hadassah — also called Esther. She is taken into the king's harem, where she wins favor from Hegai the custodian, who gives her preferential treatment. On Mordecai's instruction, Esther conceals her Jewish identity. After twelve months of cosmetic preparation, each young woman goes to the king for one night. When Esther's turn comes, she asks for nothing beyond what Hegai advises, and she wins the king's favor above all others. Ahasuerus sets the royal crown on her head and makes her queen in Vashti's place, then hosts a great feast in her honor. Meanwhile, Mordecai sits at the king's gate and uncovers an assassination plot by two royal eunuchs, Bigthan and Teresh. Mordecai reports it to Esther, who tells the king in Mordecai's name. The conspirators are executed, and the matter is recorded in the royal chronicles.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter operates on two tracks simultaneously. On the surface, it reads as a Persian court romance — a beautiful woman rises from obscurity to become queen. Beneath that surface, the machinery of future deliverance is being assembled piece by piece: Esther is placed in the palace, her identity is hidden, Mordecai takes up a position at the gate, and an unrewarded act of loyalty is written into the official record. None of these elements appears significant at the moment they occur. Their meaning will only become visible in chapters 5 through 7. The twelve-month beauty treatment is not incidental detail — it reveals the dehumanizing scale of the process. These women are not being courted; they are being prepared for a single night with a man who may never call for them again.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text does not condemn what is effectively a royal harem system in which young women are gathered — the verb implies compulsion — for the king's selection. Modern readers will note that Esther's agency is ambiguous throughout: she is 'taken' (*laqach*) to the palace, not shown choosing to go. Mordecai's instruction to conceal her identity raises questions about deception and survival. The chapter also presents Esther winning favor (*chen*) from everyone she meets, which echoes Joseph in Egypt — but unlike Joseph, Esther is navigating sexual politics, not administrative ones. The text's restraint in not evaluating any of this is characteristic of Esther's literary style.*

Connections: *Mordecai's genealogy (verse 5) traces back to Kish the Benjaminite, connecting him to the family line of King Saul — the same Saul who failed to destroy the Amalekite king Agag in 1 Samuel 15. Haman will be identified as an Agagite in chapter 3, setting up an ancient enmity between these two lineages. Esther's concealment of identity parallels other biblical figures who operate in disguise within foreign courts: Joseph in Egypt (Genesis 41), Daniel in Babylon (Daniel 1). The detail of Mordecai sitting at the king's gate places him among those who conduct business and adjudicate disputes — a position of civic function, not servitude.*

¹After these events, when the fury of King Ahasuerus had cooled, he remembered Vashti — what she had done, and what had been decreed against her. ²The king's young attendants who served him said, "Let beautiful young virgins be sought for the king. ³Let the king appoint commissioners in every province of his kingdom to gather every beautiful young virgin to the citadel of Susa, to the house of the women, under the care of Hegai the king's eunuch who guards the women. Let their cosmetic treatments be provided. ⁴The young woman who pleases the king will become queen in place of Vashti." The proposal pleased the king, and he acted on it. ⁵There was a Jewish man in the citadel of Susa whose name was Mordecai son of Jair, son of Shimei, son of Kish, a Benjaminite. ⁶He had been exiled from Jerusalem with the group of exiles deported along with Jeconiah king of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had carried into exile. ⁷He was raising Hadassah — that is, Esther — his uncle's daughter, because she had no father or mother. The young woman was shapely and beautiful. When her father and mother died, Mordecai had adopted her as his own daughter. ⁸When the king's order and his edict were proclaimed, and many young women were gathered to the citadel of Susa under Hegai's supervision, Esther too was taken to the king's house, into the care of Hegai the guardian of the women. ⁹The young woman pleased him and won his favor. He quickly provided her cosmetic treatments and her portions of food, assigned her seven attendants selected from the king's house, and moved her and her attendants to the best quarters in the house of the women. ¹⁰Esther did not reveal her people or her ancestry, because Mordecai had instructed her not to disclose it. ¹¹Every day Mordecai walked back and forth in front of the courtyard of the house of the women to learn how Esther was and what was being done with her. ¹²When each young woman's turn came to go to King Ahasuerus — after completing twelve months of treatment as prescribed for the women, since their preparation period was filled as follows: six months with oil of myrrh and six months with perfumes and cosmetic treatments for women — ¹³When each young woman went to the king, whatever she requested was given to her to take along from the house of the women to the king's house. ¹⁴In the evening she would go in, and in the morning she would return to the second house of the women, under the care of Shaashgaz the king's eunuch who guarded the concubines. She would not go to the king again unless the king desired her and she was summoned by name. ¹⁵When Esther's turn came — Esther daughter of Abihail, the uncle of Mordecai who had adopted her — to go to the king, she asked for nothing beyond what Hegai the king's eunuch, guardian of the women, recommended. And Esther won the admiration of everyone who saw her. ¹⁶Esther was brought to King Ahasuerus in his royal palace in the tenth month — the month of Tebeth — in the seventh year of his reign. ¹⁷The king loved Esther more than all the other women, and she won his grace and devotion more than all the other virgins. He placed the royal crown on her head and made her queen in place of Vashti. ¹⁸The king held a great feast for all his officials and servants — the feast of Esther. He granted a tax remission to the provinces and distributed gifts with royal generosity. ¹⁹When virgins were gathered a second time, Mordecai was sitting at the king's gate. ²⁰Esther still had not revealed her ancestry or her people, as Mordecai had instructed her. Esther continued to follow Mordecai's direction, just as she had when he was raising her. ²¹In those days, while Mordecai was sitting at the king's gate, Bigthan and Teresh — two of the king's eunuchs who guarded the threshold — became angry and plotted to assassinate King Ahasuerus. ²²The plot became known to Mordecai, and he reported it to Queen Esther. Esther informed the king, crediting Mordecai by name. ²³The matter was investigated and confirmed, and both men were impaled on a stake. It was recorded in the book of the chronicles in the king's presence.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *shakhakh* ('to subside, to cool') describes the king's anger abating — the same word used for floodwaters receding (Genesis 8:1). The triple 'what' structure — *et Vashti, et asher asatah, et asher nigzar aleiha* — shows the king replaying three things: the woman, her defiance, and his irreversible decree. The verb *zakhar* ('he remembered') may carry regret: the law he cannot undo has removed a queen he now misses.
2. The *na'arei ha-melekh mesharetav* ('the king's young men, his attendants') are royal courtiers — not senior advisors like those in chapter 1, but younger functionaries. Their proposal — *yevaqshu la-melekh ne'arot betulot tovo mar'eh* ('let them seek for the king young women, virgins, good of appearance') — uses three qualifiers: youth, virginity, and beauty. The language is transactional: women are described as objects to be sought and evaluated.
3. The verb *yiqbetsu* ('let them gather') implies organized, systematic collection across *kol medinot malkhuto* ('every province of his kingdom'). The infrastructure described is specific: *beit ha-nashim* ('the house of the women') is a separate quarter within the royal complex, supervised by Hegai (also spelled Hega), a *saris* ('eunuch') whose role is *shomer ha-nashim* ('guardian of the women'). The *tamruqeihen* ('their cosmetic preparations') will

be detailed in verse 12 — a twelve-month regimen.

4. The verb *timlokh* ('she will reign, she will become queen') grants the winner royal status — not merely concubine but *malkah*. The phrase *vayyitav ha-davar be-einei ha-melekh* ('the matter was good in the king's eyes') is a standard Hebrew approval formula. The king whose irrevocable decree removed one queen now sets a process in motion to find another — the empire-wide search for a wife is as excessive as the decree that created the vacancy.
5. The introduction *ish Yehudi* ('a Jewish man') marks the first appearance of a Jewish character in the book. Mordecai's genealogy — *ben Ya'ir ben Shim'i ben Qish* — traces his ancestry through Benjaminite lineage. *Kish* is the name of Saul's father (1 Samuel 9:1), and *Shimei* is the name of the Benjaminite who cursed David (2 Samuel 16:5). Whether these are the same individuals or later namesakes, the genealogy anchors Mordecai in the tribe of Benjamin and specifically in the line of Israel's first king. The designation *ish Yemini* ('a man of the right hand' — a Benjaminite) will prove significant when Mordecai confronts Haman the Agagite.
6. The threefold repetition of the root *galah* ('to exile, to uncover') — *hoglah, ha-golah, hogletah* — hammers the theme of displacement. Mordecai's family was swept up in the deportation of 597 BCE under Jeconiah (also called Jehoiachin). This verse places the Jewish community of Susa within the larger narrative of Babylonian exile and Persian succession. Mordecai is not a voluntary immigrant; he and his family are the displaced remnant of a conquered kingdom, now living under the empire that inherited Babylon's subjects.
7. *Hadassah* (from *hadas*, 'myrtle') is her Hebrew name; *Esther* is her Persian name (possibly from the Persian *stara*, 'star,' or connected to the Babylonian goddess *Ishtar*). The dual name signals dual identity — a theme the chapter will develop through the concealment of her Jewishness. The phrase *yefat to'ar ve-tovat mar'eh* ('beautiful of form and good of appearance') is the same description used for Rachel (Genesis 29:17) and Joseph (Genesis 39:6). Mordecai's act — *leqachah lo le-vat* ('he took her as his daughter') — is legal adoption, not mere guardianship.
8. The passive verb *vattillaqach* ('she was taken') is significant — Esther does not go voluntarily. The same verb (*laqach* in the passive) describes how women are taken into royal harems throughout the Hebrew Bible. Whether Esther had any choice in the matter is left unaddressed; the grammar suggests she did not. The phrase *ne'arot rabbot* ('many young women') underscores the scale of the operation — this is an empire-wide conscription of young women for the king's selection.
9. The verb *vattissa chesed* ('she carried away chesed') is unusual — *nasa* with *chesed* means to 'lift up' or 'carry away' loyal favor, as if Esther drew it out of him. Hegai's response is immediate: *vayevahel* ('he hurried, he hastened') her *tamruqim* ('cosmetic treatments') and *manot* ('food portions'). The seven *ne'arot* ('attendants') from the king's house and the upgrade to the best location in the harem show Hegai going well beyond standard procedure.
9. Register departure: *chesed* rendered as 'favor' rather than default 'faithful love' because Hegai's response to Esther occurs in a pagan court with no covenant framework. The word here describes personal preference, not covenantal loyalty.
10. The verb *higgidah* ('she told, she disclosed') in the negative — *lo higgidah* — establishes Esther's concealment as an act of obedience to Mordecai. The two things hidden are *ammah* ('her people' — ethnic identity) and *moladtah* ('her birth, her ancestry' — family lineage). Mordecai's reasoning is not given. Whether the concealment is motivated by fear of antisemitism, strategic calculation, or simple caution, the text does not say. This silence allows the reader to feel the weight of the decision without being told how to evaluate it.
11. The daily vigil — *bekhol yom va-yom* ('every single day') — shows Mordecai's relentless concern. The verb *mithalekh* ('walking about') suggests pacing, not casual strolling. He wants to know *et shelom Esther* ('the welfare of Esther') — *shelom* here means her well-being, her condition, her safety. The phrase *u-mah ye'aseh bah* ('and what would be done with her') carries anxiety — Mordecai cannot control what happens to her inside the harem.
12. The *tor na'arah ve-na'arah* ('the turn of each young woman') establishes a rotation system. The twelve-month preparation — *shenim asar chodesh* ('twelve months') — is divided into two phases: *shemen ha-mor* ('oil of myrrh') for six months and *besamim* ('perfumes, spices') for the remaining six. This is not mere grooming but a transformation protocol. The clinical detail underscores the institutional scale of the process and the degree to which each woman's body was reshaped for a single audience with the king.
13. The phrase *et kol asher tomar yinnaten lah* ('whatever she says will be given to her') allowed each woman to choose jewelry, clothing, or accessories for her night with the king. This small grant of agency — choosing her own adornment — is the only choice the text records these women making in the entire process. The detail will prove significant when Esther, in contrast to the others, requests nothing beyond what Hegai advises.
14. The brutal efficiency of the system is laid bare: *ba-erev hi va'ah u-va-boqer hi shavah* ('in the evening she went in, and in the morning she returned') — one night, then back to a different house. The transfer from *beit ha-nashim* ('the house of the women' — virgins) to *beit ha-nashim sheni* ('the second house of the women' — concubines) under a different eunuch, *Shaashgaz*, marks a permanent change in status. Unless specifically called by name (*niqre'ah ve-shem*), she would never see the king again — consigned to a life of seclusion without a husband, without children, without a future.
15. The contrast with verse 13 is deliberate: every other woman asked for whatever she wanted, but Esther *lo viqshah davar ki im et asher yomar Hegai* ('did not request a thing except what Hegai said'). Her restraint is strategic — she trusts the judgment of the man who knows the king's preferences rather than relying on her own calculation. The result: *vattehi Esther noset chen be-einei kol ro'eiha* ('Esther was carrying grace in the eyes of all who saw her'). The word *chen* ('grace, charm, favor') appears here rather than *chesed* — this is the natural attractiveness that draws people to her.

16. Again the passive vattillaqach ('she was taken') — Esther is brought, not described as going. The precise date — chodesh ha-asiri hu chodesh Tevet ('the tenth month, which is the month of Tebeth') — places Esther's audience in December-January by the Babylonian calendar. The seventh year of Ahasuerus would be approximately 479 BCE. Four years have passed since Vashti's removal in the third year (1:3) — the beauty search and preparation period consumed years of these women's lives.
17. The verb vayyehav ('he loved') is the only time love is attributed to the king in the entire book. The combination chen va-chesed ('grace and loyal devotion') elevates Esther above all competitors on two levels: personal attractiveness and the depth of response she generates. The crowning — vayyasem keter malkhut be-roshah ('he set the royal crown on her head') — echoes the crown Vashti was ordered to wear in 1:11. The same crown, a different queen.
18. The mishteh gadol ('great feast') is named mishteh Esther ('the feast of Esther') — she has become important enough to name a royal celebration after. The hanachah la-medinot ('a rest for the provinces') likely refers to a tax reduction or remission — the word hanachah means 'rest, relief, relaxation.' The mas'et ke-yad ha-melekh ('gifts according to the king's hand') indicates largesse befitting royal means. Esther's elevation is celebrated with the same excess that characterized chapter 1.
19. The phrase be-hiqqavets betulot shenit ('when virgins were gathered a second time') is puzzling — the reason for a second gathering is never explained. Some scholars suggest it was an additional search; others argue it is a narrative marker transitioning to the next scene. Mordecai yoshev be-sha'ar ha-melekh ('sitting at the king's gate') places him in the administrative center of the citadel. The gate was where legal matters were decided, business was transacted, and official conversations occurred. This is a position of public access, not royal authority.
20. The narrator reinforces the concealment: ein Esther maggedet ('Esther was not telling'). The present tense indicates ongoing secrecy, not a one-time decision. The final clause — ka'asher hayetah be-omnah itto ('as when she was in his care') — uses omnah ('upbringing, nurture'), from the same root as omen in verse 7. Even as queen, Esther maintains the filial obedience of her years under Mordecai's guardianship. The ma'amar Mordekhai ('Mordecai's instruction') echoes the same word used for the king's command in 1:15 — in Esther's life, Mordecai's word carries the weight of royal decree.
21. The phrase qatsaf Bigtan va-Teresh ('Bigthan and Teresh became angry') provides the motive — rage — but not the cause. These shomerei ha-saf ('guardians of the threshold') held sensitive security positions, guarding the doors to the king's private chambers. The phrase lishlo'ach yad ('to send a hand') is a Hebrew idiom for violence against a person. Mordecai's position at the gate puts him in the information flow where he can overhear or learn of the conspiracy. This seemingly minor episode will become the fulcrum of the entire book in chapter 6.
22. The chain of communication — Mordecai to Esther to the king — establishes a conduit that will be used again in the crisis of chapters 4-5. The critical detail is be-shem Mordekhai ('in Mordecai's name') — Esther does not claim the intelligence for herself but credits her cousin. This ensures Mordecai's name enters the royal record, which will prove decisive when the king cannot sleep in chapter 6.
23. The verb vayyittallu ('they were hung, they were impaled') uses the root talah ('to hang'). The ets ('wood, tree, pole') likely refers to impalement on a stake — a standard Persian method of execution, not hanging by the neck. The same word will appear for the gallows Haman builds in chapter 5 and on which he himself is impaled in chapter 7. The final clause — vayyikkatev be-sefer divrei ha-yamim lifnei ha-melekh ('it was written in the book of the chronicles before the king') — deposits the record that will be retrieved at the critical moment in chapter 6. The king-facing phrase lifnei ha-melekh ('before the king') indicates an official royal record.

3

Summary: *King Ahasuerus promotes Haman the Agagite above all the other officials and commands everyone at the king's gate to bow before him. Mordecai alone refuses. When Haman learns that Mordecai is Jewish, his fury expands beyond one man — he resolves to destroy all the Jews throughout the empire. Haman casts pur (lots) to determine the date for the massacre, then approaches the king with a proposal: there is a scattered people whose laws differ from every other nation, and they do not observe the king's laws. Haman offers ten thousand talents of silver to fund their annihilation. The king gives Haman his signet ring and tells him to do with the people as he sees fit. Decrees are drafted in every language and script of the empire, sealed with the king's ring, and dispatched by couriers to every province: on the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, Adar, all Jews — young and old, women and children — are to be killed, and their property plundered. The decree is published in Susa, and the city is thrown into confusion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter introduces Haman with the most loaded ethnic identifier in the Hebrew Bible: ha-Agagi ('the Agagite'). Agag was king of the Amalekites, the ancestral enemy of Israel whom Saul was commanded to destroy and failed to (1 Samuel 15). The conflict between Mordecai the Benjaminite descendant of Kish and Haman the descendant of Agag is not a personal grudge — it is an ancient war resumed. The casting of lots (pur) to determine the date of genocide is chilling in its calculated patience: Haman is willing to wait eleven months for the cosmically 'right' day to*

exterminate a people. The entire mechanism of Persian irrevocable law, introduced in chapter 1 for a domestic dispute, now becomes the instrument of genocide. What was absurd is now lethal.

Translation Friction: Mordecai's refusal to bow is never fully explained. The text says the king's servants ask him 'why do you transgress the king's command?' (verse 3), and that he told them he was a Jew (verse 4), but it does not explicitly state whether his refusal was religious, ethnic, or personal. The Hebrew does not indicate that bowing to a human official was inherently prohibited — the patriarchs bowed to others routinely. The connection to Haman's Agagite lineage suggests the refusal may be rooted in tribal memory rather than theology. Haman's speech to the king (verse 8) is a masterclass in antisemitic rhetoric: he describes the Jews without naming them, emphasizes their difference, and frames their existence as a threat to royal order. The king's willingness to hand over an entire people without even asking who they are is one of the most damning portraits of royal indifference in Scripture.

Connections: The Saul-Agag conflict (1 Samuel 15) provides the deep background: Saul's failure to completely destroy the Amalekites now bears fruit in Haman's rise. The pur (lot) that gives the book its name (Purim) connects to the biblical understanding of lot-casting as revealing hidden divine determination (Proverbs 16:33: 'The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from the LORD'). Haman's offer of ten thousand talents of silver echoes and vastly exceeds the temple treasures that have been plundered throughout Kings and Chronicles — this is blood money on an imperial scale. The decree structure — written, sealed, irrevocable — mirrors the decree that deposed Vashti (1:19) and will be countered by the decree of chapter 8.

¹After these events, King Ahasuerus promoted Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite, elevating him and placing his seat above all the other officials who served with him. ²All the king's servants at the king's gate would kneel and bow down to Haman, for the king had commanded this regarding him. But Mordecai would not kneel and would not bow down. ³The king's servants at the gate said to Mordecai, "Why do you disobey the king's command?" ⁴When they had spoken to him day after day and he would not listen to them, they reported it to Haman to see whether Mordecai's position would hold, since he had told them he was a Jew. ⁵When Haman saw that Mordecai would not kneel or bow to him, Haman was filled with rage. ⁶But he considered it beneath him to strike at Mordecai alone, since they had told him Mordecai's people. So Haman sought to destroy all the Jews throughout the entire kingdom of Ahasuerus — the people of Mordecai. ⁷In the first month — the month of Nisan — in the twelfth year of King Ahasuerus, the pur (that is, the lot) was cast before Haman, from day to day and from month to month, until the twelfth month — the month of Adar. ⁸Haman said to King Ahasuerus, "There is a certain people, scattered and dispersed among the peoples in every province of your kingdom. Their laws are different from those of every other people, and they do not observe the king's laws. It is not in the king's interest to tolerate them. ⁹If it pleases the king, let a decree be written for their destruction. I will pay ten thousand talents of silver into the hands of those who carry out the work, to be deposited in the king's treasuries." ¹⁰The king removed his signet ring from his hand and gave it to Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the enemy of the Jews. ¹¹The king said to Haman, "The silver is yours, and the people too — do with them whatever seems right to you." ¹²The king's scribes were summoned on the thirteenth day of the first month, and a decree was written exactly as Haman dictated — to the king's satraps, to the governors over each province, and to the officials of each people, to every province in its own script and to every people in its own language. It was written in the name of King Ahasuerus and sealed with the king's signet ring. ¹³Letters were sent by couriers to every province of the king: to annihilate, kill, and destroy all Jews — young and old, children and women — on a single day, the thirteenth of the twelfth month, the month of Adar, and to plunder their possessions. ¹⁴A copy of the edict was to be issued as law in every province and published to all peoples, so that they would be ready for that day. ¹⁵The couriers went out in urgent haste by the king's command, and the decree was issued in the citadel of Susa. The king and Haman sat down to drink, but the city of Susa was in turmoil.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb giddel ('he made great, he promoted') and vaynasse'ehu ('he lifted him up') are a double elevation — Haman is both promoted in rank and exalted in honor. The identification ha-Agagi ('the Agagite') links Haman to Agag, the Amalekite king spared by Saul in 1 Samuel 15. For a Hebrew audience, this genealogical tag transforms a court appointment into the reactivation of an existential threat. The phrase me'al kol ha-sarim ('above all the officials') gives Haman supreme authority under the king.

2. The two verbs *kor'im u-mishtachavim* ('kneeling and bowing down') describe full prostration — not a casual nod but complete physical submission. The double negative applied to Mordecai — *lo yikhra ve-lo yishtachaveh* ('he would not kneel and would not bow') — mirrors the double action of compliance with a double refusal. The imperfect tense indicates habitual action: this was not a single incident but a daily, visible act of defiance.
3. The verb *over* ('to cross over, to transgress') frames Mordecai's refusal as a legal violation: *maddu'a attah over et mitsvat ha-melekh* ('why are you crossing over the king's command?'). The servants see a man publicly defying a royal decree — a dangerous act in any absolute monarchy. Their question implies both concern and accusation.
4. The phrase *yom va-yom* ('day and day' — daily) shows persistent pressure, and *lo shama aleihem* ('he did not listen to them') shows immovable resistance. The servants report to Haman *lir'ot ha-ya'amdu divrei Mordekhai* ('to see whether Mordecai's words would stand') — they want to test whether his claim justifies his defiance. The critical revelation: *ki higgid lahem asher hu Yehudi* ('because he had told them that he was a Jew'). Mordecai's Jewish identity is now the stated basis for his refusal.
5. The verb *vayyimmale* ('he was filled') with *chemah* ('fury, venom, heat') describes a consuming anger — Haman is not annoyed but saturated with wrath. The verb *male* implies there is no room for anything else: fury has displaced every other consideration. This is the emotional trigger for the genocide plot — one man's wounded pride expanding into a plan to destroy an entire people.
6. The verb *vayyivez* ('he despised, he considered contemptible') reveals Haman's megalomania: killing one man is too small a response for his wounded ego. The phrase *lishlo'ach yad be-Mordekhai levaddo* ('to lay hands on Mordecai alone') uses the same idiom for violence seen in 2:21 (the assassination plot). Haman's ambition leaps from one man to *kol ha-Yehudim asher be-khol malkhut Achashverosh* ('all the Jews in the entire kingdom of Ahasuerus'). The repetition *am Mordekhai* ('the people of Mordecai') frames the Jews as Mordecai's people — guilty by ethnic association.
7. The word *pur* is a Persian loanword (from Akkadian *puru*) meaning 'lot' — the narrator translates it for Hebrew readers: *pur hu ha-goral* ('pur, that is, the lot'). Lots were cast to determine the most auspicious date for the planned massacre. The process runs from Nisan (March-April) through the entire calendar to Adar (February-March) — nearly a full year. The festival of Purim takes its name from this word. The lot falls on the last month of the year, which will give the Jews maximum time to prepare once the counter-decree is issued in chapter 8.
8. Haman's speech is a carefully constructed act of persuasion that never names its target. The phrase *yeshno am echad* ('there exists one people') keeps the Jews anonymous — the king will never ask who they are. The pair *mefuzzar u-meforad* ('scattered and dispersed') emphasizes their vulnerability: they are everywhere but concentrated nowhere. The three accusations build in severity: (1) their laws are different (*dateihem shonot mi-kol am*), (2) they do not keep the king's laws (*ve-et datei ha-melekh einam osim*), and (3) it is not worth it for the king to leave them alone (*la-melekh ein shoveh lehaniccham*). The third point reframes genocide as fiscal policy.
9. The sum — *aseret alafim kikkar kesef* ('ten thousand talents of silver') — is staggering. Herodotus reports the total annual tribute of the Persian Empire at about 14,560 talents; Haman is offering two-thirds of the empire's annual revenue. Whether the sum is literal or hyperbolic, it signals both Haman's enormous wealth and the scale of his obsession. The verb *eshoqol* ('I will weigh out') is the language of commercial transaction — genocide presented as a business deal. The phrase *osei ha-melakhah* ('those who do the work') is a chillingly bureaucratic term for executioners.
10. The *taba'at* ('signet ring') is the instrument of royal authority — documents sealed with it carry the force of the king's own word. By giving Haman the ring, Ahasuerus delegates absolute power over an unnamed people. The narrator now adds a title the king does not use: *tsorer ha-Yehudim* ('the adversary of the Jews'). This is editorial commentary — the narrator names what the king ignores. The Agagite identification and the 'enemy' label appear together, linking Haman's personal malice to the ancient enmity between Amalek and Israel.
11. The king's response is terrifyingly casual: *ha-kesef natun lakh* ('the silver is given to you') — the bribe is waved away or accepted as a gift — *ve-ha-am* ('and the people') — an entire nation is handed over in three words — *la'asot bo ka-tov be-einekha* ('to do with them as is good in your eyes'). The king does not ask which people, how many, or why. He grants Haman both the money and the people as if disposing of surplus inventory. The phrase *ka-tov be-einekha* ('as seems good in your eyes') gives Haman total discretion.
12. The date — the thirteenth of Nisan — is one day before Passover, the festival celebrating Israel's deliverance from Egypt. The irony may be intentional: a decree of destruction is drafted on the eve of the commemoration of liberation. The bureaucratic machinery is described in exhaustive detail: *achashdarpnei ha-melekh* ('the king's satraps' — a Persian loanword), *pachot* ('governors'), *sarei am va-am* ('officials of each people'). The decree goes out *medinah u-medinah ki-khetavah ve-am va-am ki-leshono* ('to every province in its script and every people in its language') — the same multilingual apparatus that sent the Vashti decree.
13. The three verbs *lehashmid laharog ule'abbed* ('to annihilate, to kill, and to destroy') are not synonyms used for emphasis — each specifies a different aspect of total destruction. The targets are comprehensive: *mi-na'ar ve-ad zaqen taf ve-nashim* ('from youth to elder, children and women') — no exception by age or sex. The phrase *be-yom echad* ('on a single day') requires coordinated, simultaneous violence across 127 provinces. The final clause — *u-shelalam lavoz* ('and their plunder for spoil') — adds an economic incentive: the killers may keep whatever the victims own.
14. The *patshegen ha-ketav* ('copy of the document') is the official text distributed to every province. The word *galui* ('open, revealed, public') means the decree is not secret — it is posted for all to see. The phrase *lihyot atidim la-yom ha-zeh* ('to be ready for that day') instructs the populace to prepare for organized violence. The Jews will read their own death sentence posted in public. This public proclamation is what triggers Mordecai's mourning in chapter 4.
15. The final verse delivers its verdict through juxtaposition: *ve-ha-melekh ve-Haman yashvu lishtot* ('the king and Haman sat down to drink') — while *ve-ha-ir Shushan navokha* ('the city of Susa was thrown into confusion'). The word *navokha* means 'bewildered, perplexed, in an uproar' — the entire city, not only the Jews, is disturbed by the decree. The contrast between the two men drinking and the population reeling is the chapter's closing

image: those who issued the decree are at ease; those who must live under it are in chaos.

4

Summary: *When Mordecai learns of the decree, he tears his clothes, puts on sackcloth and ashes, and goes into the city wailing bitterly. Throughout every province, Jews mourn, fast, weep, and lie in sackcloth and ashes. Esther's attendants tell her about Mordecai's condition. She sends him clothing, but he refuses it. She dispatches Hathach, one of her eunuchs, to find out what has happened. Mordecai gives Hathach a full account of Haman's plot, including the exact sum of money Haman promised to pay, and sends a copy of the decree itself. He charges Esther to go to the king and plead for her people. Esther sends back a warning: anyone who approaches the king in the inner court without being summoned faces death unless the king extends his golden scepter — and she has not been called for thirty days. Mordecai's reply is the chapter's turning point: if she remains silent, relief and deliverance will arise for the Jews from another place, but she and her father's house will perish. Then comes the question: who knows whether she has come to her royal position for such a time as this? Esther accepts the risk. She instructs Mordecai to gather every Jew in Susa for a three-day fast, and she and her attendants will fast as well. Then she will go to the king uninvited. Her final words: if I perish, I perish.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the theological center of the book of Esther, yet it does so without ever naming the theological source. Mordecai's statement in verse 14 — 'relief and deliverance will arise for the Jews from another place' — is the closest the book comes to acknowledging providential care, but it stubbornly refuses to say the word. The phrase *mi-maqom acher* ('from another place') has generated centuries of debate: Is 'another place' a veiled reference to heaven? To divine intervention? The text will not say. This is not theological absence but theological restraint — the reader is invited to see what the characters will not name. Esther's transformation in this chapter is complete: she enters as a queen concerned about protocol and exits as a leader willing to die. The three-day fast she commands is the closest thing to prayer in the book, yet no prayer is recorded.*

Translation Friction: *Mordecai's statement contains a threat alongside its famous question: 'you and your father's house will perish' (verse 14). This is not gentle encouragement — it is a warning that silence will not protect her. The Hebrew *mi-maqom acher* ('from another place') is deliberately ambiguous. Some read it as confidence in divine deliverance regardless of Esther's choice; others read it as a rebuke — help will come, but not through you if you fail. Esther's thirty-day absence from the king's presence raises questions about the state of the royal marriage. The three-day total fast (no food or water, day or night) is extreme and dangerous — it signals desperation, not routine piety. The chapter's silence about prayer is the loudest silence in the Hebrew Bible: an entire people fasts, and the text records no words directed to heaven.*

Connections: *The sackcloth and ashes mourning ritual connects to Job's response to catastrophe (Job 2:12), David's mourning for Abner (2 Samuel 3:31), and the Ninevites' response to Jonah's warning (Jonah 3:5-6). Esther's risk in approaching the king uninvited echoes other moments of dangerous petition: Bathsheba before David (1 Kings 1:15-21), the woman of Tekoa before David (2 Samuel 14). The three-day fast recalls Jonah's three days in the fish (Jonah 1:17) and anticipates Jesus' three days in the tomb — in each case, a period of darkness precedes an act of deliverance. Mordecai's 'for such a time as this' introduces the concept of *kairos* — the appointed moment — that runs through prophetic literature: there are moments when a person's position and history converge with a crisis that demands action.*

¹When Mordecai learned everything that had been done, he tore his clothes, put on sackcloth and ashes, went out into the middle of the city, and cried out with a loud and bitter wail. ²He came as far as the front of the king's gate, since no one was permitted to enter the king's gate wearing sackcloth. ³In every province, wherever the king's command and his decree reached, there was deep mourning among the Jews — fasting, weeping, and lamentation. Many spread out sackcloth and ashes as their bed. ⁴Esther's young women and her eunuchs came and told her, and the queen was deeply distressed. She sent garments for Mordecai to put on and remove his sackcloth, but he refused them. ⁵Esther summoned Hathach, one of the king's eunuchs who had been assigned to attend her, and ordered him to go to Mordecai to find out what was happening

and why. ⁶Hathach went out to Mordecai in the open square of the city, in front of the king's gate. ⁷Mordecai told him everything that had happened to him, including the exact amount of silver that Haman had promised to deposit in the king's treasuries for the destruction of the Jews. ⁸He also gave him a copy of the written decree that had been issued in Susa for their destruction, to show Esther and explain it to her, and to instruct her to go to the king, plead with him for mercy, and petition him on behalf of her people. ⁹Hathach returned and reported Mordecai's words to Esther. ¹⁰Esther spoke to Hathach and instructed him to relay a message to Mordecai: ¹¹"All the king's servants and the people of the king's provinces know that for any man or woman who approaches the king in the inner court without being summoned, there is one law: death — unless the king extends the golden scepter and spares their life. And I have not been summoned to come to the king for thirty days." ¹²Esther's words were reported to Mordecai. ¹³Mordecai sent this reply to Esther: "Do not imagine that because you are in the king's palace you will escape any more than the rest of the Jews. ¹⁴If you remain silent at this time, relief and deliverance will arise for the Jews from another place, but you and your father's house will perish. And who knows — perhaps you have come to your royal position for such a time as this." ¹⁵Esther sent this reply to Mordecai: ¹⁶"Go, gather all the Jews who are in Susa, and fast on my behalf. Do not eat and do not drink for three days, night or day. I and my attendants will fast in the same way. Then I will go to the king, even though it is against the law. And if I perish, I perish." ¹⁷Mordecai left and did everything Esther had commanded him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb yada ('he knew') indicates comprehensive knowledge — et kol asher na'asah ('everything that had been done') includes the decree, the amount of money, and the timeline. Mordecai's response follows the full mourning protocol: tearing garments (vayyiqra begadav), wearing saq va-efer ('sackcloth and ashes'), public lamentation. The ze'aqah gedolah u-marah ('a great and bitter cry') uses the same phrase describing Esau's cry when he discovers his stolen blessing (Genesis 27:34) — a cry for something that may be irrevocable.
2. The detail ad lifnei sha'ar ha-melekh ('up to the front of the king's gate') marks a boundary: Mordecai's grief brings him to the threshold of royal space but cannot cross it. The prohibition — ein lavo el sha'ar ha-melekh bilvush saq ('no entering the king's gate in sackcloth') — reflects the Persian court's insistence on maintaining an appearance of order and prosperity. Suffering is not permitted to enter the king's presence. The physical barrier mirrors the informational barrier: Esther is inside, unaware; Mordecai is outside, unable to reach her.
3. The scope is empire-wide: bekhhol medinah u-medinah ('in every single province'). The mourning vocabulary accumulates: evel gadol ('great mourning'), tsom ('fasting'), bekhi ('weeping'), misped ('lamentation, wailing'). The final image — saq va-efer yussa la-rabbim ('sackcloth and ashes were spread out for many') — describes people lying on the ground in sackcloth and ashes, not merely wearing it. This is total, prostrate grief. The absence of any recorded prayer in this list is conspicuous: the Jews fast, weep, and mourn, but the narrator does not report their words.
4. The verb vattitchalchal ('she writhed, she was in anguish') is intense — the root describes physical agitation, a trembling of the body. Esther's distress is visceral before it is rational; she does not yet know the cause. Her first instinct is practical: send clothing to restore Mordecai's dignity and, implicitly, to stop the public display that could draw attention. His refusal — ve-lo qibbel ('he did not accept') — signals that this is not a problem that new clothes can solve.
5. Hathach serves as the intermediary because Esther cannot leave the palace and Mordecai cannot enter it. The double question — mah zeh ve-al mah zeh ('what is this and on account of what is this') — asks both what is wrong and what caused it. Esther moves from emotional reaction (verse 4) to information-gathering — the first step in what will become a strategic response.
6. The rehov ha-ir ('the open square of the city') is a public space — Mordecai's mourning is not private but deliberately visible. The meeting takes place lifnei sha'ar ha-melekh ('before the king's gate') — the same location that was the site of Mordecai's daily vigil and his refusal to bow. This space is becoming the axis of the story.
7. Mordecai's report is comprehensive: et kol asher qarahu ('everything that happened to him') and the parashat ha-kesev ('the account of the silver') — the specific financial details of Haman's offer. The word parashah ('account, specification, declaration') indicates a precise figure, not a vague reference. Mordecai wants Esther to know the scale of the bribery — this is genocide purchased with silver.
8. Mordecai provides physical evidence: patshegen ketav ha-dat ('a copy of the written decree'). This is not hearsay but documentation. The chain of verbs builds in intensity: lehar'ot ('to show'), lehagid ('to explain'), letsavvot ('to instruct, to command'). Mordecai is not requesting — he is commanding Esther to lavo el ha-melekh ('go to the king'), lehitchannen lo ('to plead for grace before him'), and levaqesh milefanav ('to petition him'). The phrase al ammah ('on behalf of her people') forces Esther's hidden identity into the equation: to plead for the Jews, she must reveal that she is one of them.
9. The verse is deliberately brief: the narrator does not repeat the content because the reader already knows it. The focus is on the communication chain — Mordecai to Hathach to Esther — which mirrors the chain in 2:22 (Mordecai to Esther to the king). The same conduit that saved the king's life is now being used to attempt the saving of the Jewish people.

10. The verb *vatetsavvehu* ('she commanded him') uses the same verb of authority (*tsavah*) that Mordecai used in verse 8. Esther is not passively receiving instructions — she is issuing her own commands. The shuttle diplomacy through Hathach underscores the physical separation between Esther in the palace and Mordecai at the gate.
11. Esther's response details the protocol: anyone entering *ha-chatser ha-penimit* ('the inner court') *asher lo yiqqare* ('who is not called') faces *achat dato lehamit* ('one law: to be put to death'). The only exception is the king's voluntary extension of *sharvit ha-zahav* ('the golden scepter'). Esther's final statement — *va-ani lo niqure'ti lavo el ha-melekh zeh sheloshim yom* ('I have not been called to come to the king for thirty days') — conveys both practical danger and possible marital distance. She is not refused; she is simply not summoned.
12. Another minimal transition verse — the narrator trusts the reader to feel the weight of what has been communicated without elaboration. Mordecai now knows that Esther has identified a potentially fatal obstacle.
13. Mordecai's tone shifts sharply: *al tedammi be-nafshekh* ('do not imagine in your soul') is a direct, almost harsh address. The verb *damah* ('to think, to suppose, to imagine') warns against self-deception. His argument is strategic: *lehimmalet beit ha-melekh mi-kol ha-Yehudim* ('to escape in the king's house from all the Jews') — the palace will not protect you. If the decree stands, being queen will not exempt Esther from the fate of her people.
14. The infinitive absolute construction *hacharesh tacharishi* ('being silent you will be silent') intensifies the condition: if you choose total silence. The phrase *revach ve-hatsalah* ('relief and deliverance') pairs a word for breathing room (*revach*, from *ravach*, 'to be wide, spacious') with a word for rescue (*hatsalah*). The verb *ya'amod* ('will stand, will arise') treats deliverance as something with agency — it will rise and take a stand. The phrase *mi-maqom acher* ('from another place') is the most debated expression in the book: does 'another place' mean heaven? Another human agent? The text is deliberately open. The closing question — *im le-et ka-zot higga'at la-malkhut* ('if for a time like this you have arrived at royalty') — uses the verb *higi'a* ('to reach, to arrive at') as if Esther's queenship is a destination she has been traveling toward without knowing it.
15. The formula *vatomer Esther lehashiv el Mordekhai* ('Esther said to send back to Mordecai') marks the turning point. From this verse forward, Esther gives the commands and Mordecai obeys. The power dynamic has shifted — the adopted orphan is now directing the man who raised her.
16. Esther's instructions are commanding and precise. The verb *kenoss* ('gather') mobilizes the entire Jewish community of Susa. The fast — *al tokhelu ve-al tishtu sheloshet yamim lailah va-yom* ('do not eat and do not drink for three days, night and day') — is absolute: no food, no water, no interruption. This is not dietary restriction but crisis fasting, a total bodily commitment that signals desperation. The phrase *asher lo kha-dat* ('which is not according to the law') acknowledges she is breaking the law — the same word *dat* used for Haman's genocide decree. The closing declaration — *ve-kha'asher avadeti avadeti* ('and as I have perished, I have perished') — uses the perfect tense as if the death has already occurred. Esther speaks of her potential death as accomplished fact. The doubling of the verb (*avadeti avadeti*) is not emphasis but resignation: she has already accepted the cost.
17. The verb *vayya'avur* ('he crossed over, he passed on, he departed') signals Mordecai leaving the gate to carry out Esther's orders. The phrase *kekhol asher tsivvetah alav Esther* ('according to all that Esther had commanded him') uses the same language of authoritative command (*tsavah*) previously used for Mordecai's instructions to Esther (2:10, 2:20) and the king's commands. The roles have reversed: Mordecai now obeys Esther. The orphan girl he raised has become the one giving orders in a moment of existential crisis.

5

Summary: *On the third day, Esther puts on her royal robes and stands in the inner court of the palace, facing the king's hall. The king sees her, extends his golden scepter, and asks what she wants — offering up to half the kingdom. Esther makes a modest request: let the king and Haman come to a banquet she has prepared. They come, and at the banquet the king again asks what Esther's petition is, offering up to half the kingdom. Esther delays: if it pleases the king, let them come to another banquet tomorrow, and then she will answer. Haman leaves in high spirits, but his elation collapses the moment he sees Mordecai at the king's gate, still refusing to stand or tremble before him. Haman restrains himself, goes home, and gathers his wife Zeresh and his friends. He recounts his wealth, his many sons, his promotion above all other officials, and his exclusive invitation to Esther's banquet. But none of it satisfies him as long as Mordecai the Jew sits at the king's gate. Zeresh and his advisors propose a solution: build a stake seventy-five feet high, and in the morning ask the king for permission to impale Mordecai on it. Then go to the banquet in good spirits. The advice pleases Haman, and he has the stake constructed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Esther's strategy is a masterclass in timing. She has risked her life to reach the king, he has offered her anything, and she asks for — a dinner party. Then at the dinner she delays again, requesting a second banquet. Commentators have debated why: Is she testing the king's mood? Building suspense? Creating a sense of obligation through hospitality? The text does not explain, and the silence is part of the art. The delay, which seems unnecessary, creates the overnight interval that allows the king's insomnia in chapter 6, which leads to Mordecai's honoring, which*

reverses everything. Esther's patience is the pivot on which the plot turns. The other half of the chapter reveals Haman's psychology in devastating detail: he catalogs every marker of his success, yet a single seated Jew unmakes all of it.

Translation Friction: *Haman's monologue (verses 11-12) is the book's clearest psychological portrait: a man whose self-worth depends entirely on the deference of others. His enormous wealth, his ten sons, his political supremacy, his private audience with the queen — none of it registers as sufficient because one man refuses to acknowledge him. The Hebrew *ve-khol zeh einennu shoveh li* ('all this is worth nothing to me') is a startling confession: Haman cannot enjoy what he has while Mordecai exists. Zeresh's counsel to build the stake is presented without moral commentary — the narrator lets the reader feel the horror of a wife and friends advising murder as a solution to wounded pride.*

Connections: *Esther's approach to the king echoes other dangerous royal petitions in the Hebrew Bible: Bathsheba before David (1 Kings 1:15-21), the Shunammite woman before Elisha (2 Kings 4:27-28). The banquet strategy connects to Jael's hospitality before killing Sisera (Judges 4:18-21) and Absalom's feast before killing Amnon (2 Samuel 13:23-29) — in the world of Esther, hospitality is a weapon. The seventy-five-foot stake (fifty cubits) is architecturally absurd — its height is meant to make Mordecai's execution a public spectacle visible across Susa. The same stake will receive Haman himself in chapter 7, completing one of the Bible's most precise reversals.*

1On the third day, Esther dressed in royal garments and stood in the inner court of the king's palace, facing the king's hall. The king was sitting on his royal throne in the throne room, facing the entrance. 2When the king saw Queen Esther standing in the court, she won his favor. The king extended the golden scepter in his hand toward Esther. She approached and touched the tip of the scepter. 3The king said to her, "What is it, Queen Esther? What is your request? Even up to half the kingdom — it will be given to you." 4Esther said, "If it pleases the king, let the king and Haman come today to the banquet I have prepared for him." 5The king said, "Bring Haman quickly, so that we may do what Esther has asked." The king and Haman came to the banquet Esther had prepared. 6At the wine banquet the king said to Esther, "What is your petition? It will be granted. What is your request? Even up to half the kingdom — it will be done." 7Esther answered, "My petition and my request: 8If I have found favor in the king's eyes, and if it pleases the king to grant my petition and fulfill my request — let the king and Haman come to the banquet I will prepare for them, and tomorrow I will answer as the king has asked." 9Haman went out that day happy and in high spirits. But when he saw Mordecai at the king's gate — and Mordecai neither stood nor so much as flinched before him — Haman was filled with fury toward Mordecai. 10Haman restrained himself, went home, and sent for his friends and his wife Zeresh. 11Haman recounted to them the splendor of his wealth, the number of his sons, everything the king had done to promote him, and how he had elevated him above the other officials and servants of the king. 12Haman added, "What is more, Queen Esther invited no one but me to come with the king to the banquet she prepared. And tomorrow too I am invited by her, along with the king." 13But all of this is worthless to me every time I see Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king's gate." 14His wife Zeresh and all his friends said to him, "Have a stake made, seventy-five feet high. In the morning, ask the king to have Mordecai impaled on it. Then go to the banquet with the king in good spirits." The idea pleased Haman, and he had the stake constructed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *vattilbash Esther malkhut* ('Esther put on royalty') does not say 'royal robes' — it says she put on royalty itself. The word *malkhut* is abstract: queenship, sovereignty, royal identity. After three days of fasting, she clothes herself in authority. The spatial description is precise: she stands in *ha-chatser ha-penimit* ('the inner court'), the space where unauthorized entry means death (4:11). The king sits *nokhach petach ha-bayit* ('facing the entrance') — he will see her the moment she appears.
2. The phrase *nas'ah chen be-einav* ('she carried grace in his eyes') repeats the language from 2:15 — Esther's ability to evoke favor is consistent and instinctive. The extension of *sharvit ha-zahav* ('the golden scepter') is the life-or-death moment: the king chooses to receive her rather than enforce the death penalty. Esther's touch on *rosh ha-sharvit* ('the top of the scepter') is a gesture of acknowledgment and submission — she accepts the king's mercy before speaking.
3. The formula *mah lakh* ('what is with you?' — 'what do you want?') followed by *mah baqqashatekh* ('what is your request?') and the offer *ad chatsi ha-malkhut* ('up to half the kingdom') is royal generosity language — likely a conventional expression rather than a literal offer, though its extravagance signals the king's favorable disposition. The same offer will be repeated at both banquets (5:6, 7:2), creating a pattern of three.

4. Esther's request is deliberately anticlimactic: after risking her life, she asks for a dinner party. The formula *im al ha-melekh tov* ('if it pleases the king') is the standard petition language used throughout the book. By inviting Haman, Esther ensures her enemy will be present when she reveals the threat — she is constructing a trap, not hosting a social event. The phrase *asher asiti lo* ('which I have prepared for him') can refer to the king or to Haman — the ambiguity is productive.
5. The verb *maharu* ('hurry!') shows the king's eagerness — he wants the banquet and whatever lies behind Esther's request. The phrase *la'asot et devar Esther* ('to do the word of Esther') elevates her request to the status of a command that the king himself moves to fulfill. Haman, summoned at the queen's request and rushed by royal order, has no idea he is walking into the architecture of his own undoing.
6. The setting is *be-mishteh ha-yayin* ('at the feast of wine') — the drinking portion of the meal, when inhibitions are lower and generosity flows more easily. The king's offer now uses two verbs: *yinnaten* ('it will be given') for the petition and *te'as* ('it will be done') for the request. The doubling intensifies the promise. Esther has created exactly the conditions she needs: the king is in a generous mood, Haman is present, and the offer is on the table.
7. Esther uses the king's own words back to him: *she'elati u-vaqqashati* ('my petition and my request') mirrors his *mah she'elatekh and mah baqqashatekh* from verse 6. By echoing his language, she frames her response as a direct answer to his offer.
8. Esther's second delay is wrapped in elaborate deference: *im matsati chen* ('if I have found favor'), *im al ha-melekh tov* ('if it pleases the king'). The conditional phrasing masks the fact that she is postponing her answer a second time. The promise *u-machar e'eseh kidvar ha-melekh* ('tomorrow I will do according to the king's word') commits her to speak at the next banquet. The delay creates the overnight interval — the single night that will transform the entire story in chapter 6.
9. The contrast is instant: *sameach ve-tov lev* ('happy and good of heart') collapses the moment Haman sees Mordecai. The two negatives — *lo qam ve-lo za mimmennu* ('he did not rise and did not tremble from him') — describe not just the absence of bowing but the absence of any physical reaction. Mordecai does not even flinch (*za*, 'to tremble, to move'). The verb *vayyimale* ('he was filled') with *chemah* ('fury') repeats exactly from 3:5 — the same consuming rage that launched the genocide plot is reignited by the same stimulus.
10. The verb *vayyit'appaq* ('he restrained himself, he held himself in') implies barely contained rage — the same word used for Joseph holding back tears before his brothers (Genesis 43:31, 45:1). Haman's self-control is not dignity but calculation: he will not make a scene at the gate. He summons *ohavav* ('his friends, his loved ones') and *Zeresh* his wife — assembling an audience for the monologue that follows.
11. Haman's self-catalog covers four domains: *kevod oshro* ('the glory of his wealth'), *rov banav* ('the abundance of his sons' — many sons were a mark of divine blessing and social status), *kol asher giddelo ha-melekh* ('everything by which the king had promoted him'), and his elevation *al ha-sarim* ('above the officials'). The Hebrew piles up possessions and honors without a single expression of gratitude — this is boasting, not testimony. The list functions as setup for the devastating admission in verse 13.
12. The emphatic *af* ('moreover, indeed') introduces what Haman considers his crowning achievement: exclusive social access to the queen. The phrase *ki im oti* ('except me') — only me — is spoken with pride but is unwittingly ironic: Esther has invited him not to honor him but to expose him. His excitement about the second invitation — *gam lemachar ani qaru'a lah* ('also tomorrow I am called by her') — deepens the irony: he is eager for the event that will destroy him.
13. The confession *ve-khol zeh einennu shoveh li* ('all of this is not equal to anything for me') is psychologically devastating. The word *shoveh* ('worth, equal, sufficient') negates every item in the preceding catalog: wealth, sons, promotion, royal favor, the queen's exclusive attention — none of it registers as valuable. The trigger is specific: *bekhol et asher ani ro'eh et Mordekhai* ('every time I see Mordecai'). Not Mordecai's actions but his mere existence, his sitting (*yoshev*), his visibility. Haman's misery is self-inflicted: his entire sense of worth depends on universal submission, and one man's refusal collapses the structure.
14. The *ets gavoha chamishim ammah* ('a stake fifty cubits high') is roughly seventy-five feet — a structure visible across the city, designed for public spectacle rather than mere execution. The verb *yitlu* ('let them hang, let them impale') uses the same root as 2:23 (the execution of the conspirators). Zeresh's advice is chilling in its simplicity: kill Mordecai before breakfast, then enjoy the banquet. The phrase *uvo im ha-melekh el ha-mishteh sameach* ('go with the king to the banquet happy') promises that murder will restore the joy that Mordecai's existence has stolen. The narrator's final note — *vayyitav ha-davar lifnei Haman vayya'as ha-ets* ('the idea pleased Haman and he made the stake') — shows immediate action: between evening and morning, the instrument of execution is built. What Haman does not know is that the same night will change everything.

6

Summary: *That night the king cannot sleep. He orders the royal chronicles to be read to him, and the reader comes to the account of Mordecai exposing the assassination plot of Bigthan and Teresh. The king asks what honor has been given to Mordecai for this. The answer: nothing has been done. The king asks who is in the court. Haman has just arrived — early in the morning, to ask permission to impale Mordecai. The king summons him and asks: what should be done for the man the king wishes to honor? Haman, certain the king means him, designs an extravagant public tribute: royal robes the king himself has worn, a horse the king has ridden, a royal crown on the horse's head, and a nobleman leading the honoree through the city square proclaiming his honor. The king says: do exactly that for Mordecai the Jew. Haman carries out the order, leading Mordecai through the city. Afterward, Mordecai returns to the king's gate while Haman rushes home in humiliation, his head covered. His wife Zeresh and his advisors deliver a grim verdict: if Mordecai is of Jewish descent, Haman will not prevail against him but will surely fall. While they are still speaking, the king's eunuchs arrive to rush Haman to Esther's second banquet.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is built on a single sleepless night — and that insomnia sets in motion the total reversal of Haman's plan. The king's inability to sleep is reported without explanation: the Hebrew says naddedah shenat ha-melekh ('the king's sleep fled') as if sleep itself were an agent that chose to leave. The reader is invited to see design where the text reports accident. Everything in this chapter runs on irony so precise it borders on comedy: Haman arrives to request a man's execution and is asked to design that man's parade of honor; he describes his own fantasy of royal recognition only to be told to perform it for his worst enemy; the stake he built overnight to kill Mordecai stands unused while he leads Mordecai through the streets. The literary architecture is flawless — every detail from chapters 2, 3, and 5 converges in this single night and morning.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter never states why the king cannot sleep or why the chronicles happen to open to the record of Mordecai's service. The Hebrew text presents these as coincidences. Whether the reader understands this as providential direction or narrative convention is left to the reader — the book maintains its characteristic refusal to name the force behind events. Zeresh's prophecy in verse 13 — 'if Mordecai is of Jewish descent, you will not prevail against him; you will surely fall before him' — is a striking statement from a non-Jewish character. It suggests that even those outside the covenant community recognize something about the Jewish people's relationship to a power that protects them, though neither Zeresh nor the narrator names that power.*

Connections: *The reversal pattern — the trap meant for one person catching the one who set it — appears throughout the Hebrew Bible: the pit dug for Joseph becomes his path to power (Genesis 37-41), the furnace meant to kill Daniel's friends becomes their testimony (Daniel 3), the lions' den meant for Daniel receives his accusers (Daniel 6). Proverbs states the principle directly: 'Whoever digs a pit will fall into it' (Proverbs 26:27). The king's insomnia connects to other pivotal biblical nights: Jacob wrestling at Jabbok (Genesis 32), the Passover night in Egypt (Exodus 12), Daniel's night with the lions (Daniel 6). The Hebrew wisdom tradition holds that 'the king's heart is in the hand of the LORD; he directs it like a watercourse wherever he pleases' (Proverbs 21:1) — the Esther narrator never quotes this proverb but enacts it.*

¹That night, sleep fled from the king. He ordered the book of records, the royal chronicles, to be brought, and they were read aloud before him. ²It was found recorded that Mordecai had reported on Bigthana and Teresh, two of the king's eunuchs from the threshold guards, who had plotted to assassinate King Ahasuerus. ³The king asked, "What honor or recognition has been given to Mordecai for this?" The king's attendants who served him answered, "Nothing has been done for him." ⁴The king said, "Who is in the court?" Now Haman had just entered the outer court of the king's palace to ask the king to have Mordecai impaled on the stake he had prepared for him. ⁵The king's attendants said to him, "Haman is standing in the court." The king said, "Let him come in." ⁶Haman entered, and the king asked him, "What should be done for the man the king wishes to honor?" Haman thought to himself, "Whom would the king wish to honor more than me?" ⁷Haman said to the king, "For the man the king wishes to honor: ⁸let them bring a royal robe that the king himself has worn, and a horse that the king himself has ridden, with a royal crown placed on its head. ⁹Let the robe and the horse be entrusted to one of the

king's most noble officials. Let them dress the man the king wishes to honor, lead him on horseback through the city square, and proclaim before him: 'This is what is done for the man the king wishes to honor!'" ¹⁰The king said to Haman, "Hurry! Take the robe and the horse, just as you have described, and do this for Mordecai the Jew who sits at the king's gate. Do not leave out a single detail of what you have proposed." ¹¹Haman took the robe and the horse, dressed Mordecai, led him on horseback through the city square, and proclaimed before him, "This is what is done for the man the king wishes to honor!" ¹²Mordecai returned to the king's gate. But Haman rushed home, mourning, his head covered. ¹³Haman recounted to his wife Zeresh and all his friends everything that had happened to him. His advisors and his wife Zeresh said to him, "If Mordecai, before whom you have begun to fall, is of Jewish descent, you will not prevail against him. You will surely fall before him." ¹⁴While they were still speaking with him, the king's eunuchs arrived and hurried Haman off to the banquet Esther had prepared.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *naddedah shenat ha-melekh* ('the king's sleep wandered away, fled') personifies sleep as something that actively departed — not 'the king could not sleep' but 'sleep fled from the king.' The verb *nadad* means to wander, to flee, to be restless. The king's remedy is bureaucratic: *sefer ha-zikronot divrei ha-yamim* ('the book of memorials, the chronicles of days') — the official court record. The passive *vayyihyu niqra'im* ('they were being read') indicates a reader going through the entries, arriving at Mordecai's record by what appears to be chance.
2. The passive *vayyimatse katuv* ('it was found written') implies discovery — the reader happened upon this entry. The account matches 2:21-23 exactly: Mordecai's report of the conspiracy by Bigthana and Teresh, *shomerei ha-saf* ('the threshold guards'). The phrase *lishlo'ach yad* ('to send a hand') is the same assassination idiom from 2:21. The critical detail from 2:23 — that the matter was written in the chronicles — now pays off. A bureaucratic record from years earlier becomes the catalyst for reversal.
3. The king's question — *mah na'asah yeqar u-gedulah le-Mordekhai* ('what has been done of honor and greatness for Mordecai?') — reveals an oversight: a man who saved the king's life received no reward. The attendants' answer is blunt: *lo na'asah immo davar* ('nothing has been done with him'). The word *davar* ('thing, anything') is comprehensive — not partial recognition, not delayed recognition, but nothing at all. This administrative failure is about to become the mechanism of Mordecai's elevation.
4. The timing is the chapter's narrative hinge: the king needs advice on honoring someone at the exact moment Haman arrives to request that same person's execution. The king's question *mi ba-chatser* ('who is in the court?') is casual — he wants whoever is available. The narrator's aside reveals Haman's purpose: *le'emor la-melekh litlot et Mordekhai al ha-ets asher hekhin lo* ('to tell the king to impale Mordecai on the stake he had prepared for him'). The stake from 5:14, built overnight, stands ready. Haman has come to use it.
5. The brevity is devastating: *hinneh Haman omed ba-chatser* ('look, Haman is standing in the court'). Haman stands in the outer court waiting to request an execution; the king summons him to design an honor. Neither knows what the other intends. The word *yavo* ('let him enter') admits Haman into a conversation he has completely misunderstood before it begins.
6. The king's question — *mah la'asot ba-ish asher ha-melekh chafets biqaro* ('what is to be done for the man in whom the king delights to do honor?') — is deliberately vague about the identity of the honoree. Haman's internal response — *vayyomer Haman belibbo* ('Haman said in his heart') — is the narrator granting the reader access to Haman's thoughts. The question *lemi yachpots ha-melekh la'asot yeqar yoter mimmenni* ('to whom would the king wish to do honor more than me?') reveals total self-absorption. It does not occur to Haman that anyone else could be in view.
7. Haman echoes the king's exact phrase — *ish asher ha-melekh chafets biqaro* — before launching into his detailed prescription. He is designing what he believes will be his own honor ceremony. Every detail in the following verses reflects Haman's personal fantasies of recognition.
8. Each element of Haman's proposal is specifically royal: *levush malkhut asher lavash bo ha-melekh* ('a royal garment that the king wore on himself') — not new robes but the king's own garments, carrying the king's identity. The *sus asher rakhav alav ha-melekh* ('a horse the king rode upon') is the royal mount. The *keter malkhut be-rosho* ('a royal crown on its head') likely refers to a decorative crown or crest on the horse, a known Persian practice marking a royal steed. Haman wants to look like the king — to wear his clothes, ride his horse, bear his insignia.
9. The ceremony Haman designs has three components: dressing (*vehilbishu*), a public procession on horseback (*vehirkhivuhu al ha-sus birchov ha-ir*), and a herald proclaiming his honor (*veqare'u lefanav*). The proclamation — *kakhah ye'aseh la-ish asher ha-melekh chafets biqaro* ('thus it shall be done for the man the king wishes to honor') — is meant to be repeated through the streets, maximizing public visibility. The phrase *ish mi-sarei ha-melekh ha-partemim* ('one of the noble officials of the king') designates a high-ranking nobleman as personal attendant — Haman is prescribing a servant for himself without realizing he is prescribing himself as the servant.
10. The command *maher* ('hurry!') mirrors the urgency in 5:5 — the king acts without hesitation. The identification *le-Mordekhai ha-Yehudi ha-yoshev be-sha'ar ha-melekh* ('for Mordecai the Jew who sits at the king's gate') is maximally specific: the king knows exactly who this man is and where he sits. The final command — *al tappel davar mi-kol asher dibbarta* ('do not let fall a single thing from all you have spoken') — is devastating: every element of Haman's fantasy must be performed in full, but for his enemy. The verb *tappel* ('to let fall, to omit, to leave out') insists on completeness — Haman cannot abbreviate, substitute, or delegate.

11. The execution matches the prescription exactly: every verb from verse 9 is performed in verse 11. The narrator's restraint is remarkable — there is no description of Haman's internal state, no record of Mordecai's reaction, no crowd response. The scene is reported with clinical precision: vayyiqqach ('he took'), vayyalbesh ('he dressed'), vayyarkivehu ('he led him on horseback'), vayyiqra ('he proclaimed'). The humiliation is conveyed entirely through the action itself. Haman, who refused to soil his dignity by striking at one man, now serves as that man's personal valet and public herald.
12. The contrast is compressed into a single verse. Mordecai vayyashov el sha'ar ha-melek ('returned to the king's gate') — back to his usual place, as if nothing has changed. The parade did not alter his position or behavior. Haman nidchaf el beito ('was pushed, rushed to his house') — the passive-reflexive nidchaf suggests being driven, propelled by shame rather than choosing to go. The two signs of his state — avel ('mourning') and chafui rosh ('head covered') — are the markers of grief and humiliation. The man who came to the palace at dawn expecting triumph goes home in the posture of defeat.
13. Haman's friends, previously called ohavav ('his friends, his loved ones' — 5:10), are now called chakhamav ('his wise men, his advisors') — the shift in title suggests they are now speaking in an oracular capacity rather than as sympathizers. Zeresh's prophecy is built on the condition im mi-zera ha-Yehudim Mordekhai ('if Mordecai is of the seed of the Jews') — the 'if' is not uncertainty about Mordecai's ethnicity (they know he is Jewish from 5:13) but a conditional sentence introducing a certainty: because he is Jewish, you are doomed. The infinitive absolute nafol tippol ('falling you will fall') expresses inevitability. The verb nafal ('to fall') echoes hachillota linpol lefanav ('you have begun to fall before him') — the fall is already underway, and it cannot be stopped.
14. The interruption is abrupt: odam medabberim immo ('while they were still speaking with him') — the prophecy of his fall is not even finished when the next stage begins. The verb vayyavhilu ('they hurried, they rushed') has the same root as the 'haste' that characterized Haman's approach to power throughout the book. The eunuchs come lehavi et Haman el ha-mishteh asher asetah Esther ('to bring Haman to the banquet Esther had prepared'). The word mishteh ('feast, drinking-feast') appears for the last time before the banquet of exposure in chapter 7. Haman is being rushed from the scene of his humiliation directly into the scene of his destruction, with no time to recover, strategize, or escape.

7

Summary: *Esther and King Ahasuerus sit down to their second banquet with Haman. The king again asks Esther what she wants. This time she answers: her life and the life of her people, because they have been sold for destruction. The king demands to know who is responsible. Esther points directly at Haman. Ahasuerus storms out to the palace garden in fury. Haman, terrified, throws himself on the couch where Esther is reclining to beg for his life. The king returns, sees Haman collapsed on the queen's couch, and interprets it as assault. Harbonah, one of the court eunuchs, mentions the seventy-five-foot gallows Haman built for Mordecai. The king orders Haman hanged on it. Haman is executed on his own gallows, and the king's rage subsides.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is a masterwork of dramatic reversal. Every weapon Haman prepared is turned against him. The gallows he built for Mordecai becomes his own execution platform. The banquet he attended as the queen's honored guest becomes the setting of his exposure. His prostration before Esther — begging for mercy — is read by the king as sexual aggression, transforming Haman from petitioner to criminal in a single moment. The Hebrew narrator builds this reversal with extraordinary restraint, never editorializing. The covering of Haman's face after the king's accusation is a Persian court practice signaling that a person is condemned — once the face is covered, the man is already dead in the eyes of the court. Harbonah's perfectly timed mention of the gallows functions as the final nail: the instrument of murder becomes the instrument of justice, without any character needing to argue for it.*

Translation Friction: *The king's reaction to seeing Haman on Esther's couch raises questions about whether Ahasuerus genuinely believed Haman was assaulting his wife or whether this was a convenient pretext to destroy a now-dangerous advisor. Some interpreters note that the king's fury in the garden may have been as much about his own complicity — he sealed the decree Haman proposed — as about Haman's crime. The text leaves this ambiguity unresolved. The phrase 'they covered Haman's face' may reflect a Persian execution custom or may be a narrative signal that Haman has crossed from the world of the living into the world of the condemned.*

Connections: *The reversal pattern in this chapter echoes Proverbs 26:27 — 'whoever digs a pit will fall into it.' The gallows-reversal specifically fulfills the narrative principle that evil plots rebound on their architects, a theme running from the story of Joseph's brothers (Genesis 37-50) through Daniel's accusers thrown into the lions' den (Daniel 6). Haman falling on the couch of the queen inverts his position at the first banquet where he sat in honor. The king's question 'Who is he and where is he?' mirrors the pattern of unmasking seen throughout*

biblical narrative where hidden identities are finally revealed at the critical moment.

¹So the king and Haman came to drink with Queen Esther. ²On the second day, at the wine banquet, the king again said to Esther, "What is your petition, Queen Esther? It will be given to you. And what is your request? Up to half the kingdom, and it will be done." ³Queen Esther answered, "If I have found favor in your eyes, O king, and if it pleases the king, let my life be given to me — that is my petition — and my people — that is my request." ⁴For we have been sold — I and my people — to be annihilated, slaughtered, and wiped out. If we had only been sold into slavery as men and women servants, I would have kept silent, because that trouble would not have been worth disturbing the king. ⁵King Ahasuerus spoke up and said to Queen Esther, "Who is this person? Where is he — the one whose heart has filled him with the audacity to do such a thing?" ⁶Esther said, "The adversary and enemy is this wicked Haman." And Haman was terrified before the king and the queen. ⁷The king rose in his fury from the wine banquet and went out to the palace garden. Haman stayed behind to beg for his life from Queen Esther, because he could see that the king had resolved to destroy him. ⁸The king returned from the palace garden to the banquet hall, and there was Haman, collapsed on the couch where Esther was reclining. The king said, "Will he even assault the queen while I am in the house?" As soon as the words left the king's mouth, they covered Haman's face. ⁹Then Harbonah, one of the eunuchs attending the king, said, "There is also the pole standing at Haman's house — fifty cubits tall — which Haman made for Mordecai, the one who spoke up to save the king." The king said, "Hang him on it." ¹⁰So they hanged Haman on the pole that he had prepared for Mordecai, and the king's fury subsided.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *lishtot* ('to drink') indicates the drinking portion of the banquet, the *mishteh*. Persian banquets followed a structured progression from eating to drinking, and it was during the drinking phase that serious conversation took place. Haman arrives as an honored guest, unaware that this banquet is his trial.
2. The double formula *she'elatekh* / *baqqashatekh* ('your petition / your request') distinguishes between a formal petition and a personal desire. Esther has been maneuvering through both channels — her formal petition concerns the decree, her personal request concerns her own survival. The offer of 'half the kingdom' appears in similar form in Mark 6:23 when Herod makes his reckless promise to the daughter of Herodias.
3. The word *nafshi* ('my life, my soul') is the first object of her petition — she begins with herself before expanding to her people. This ordering is strategic: the king cares about his queen's survival as a personal matter, so Esther leads with the appeal most likely to provoke his protective instinct. The revelation that 'my people' are the target of destruction is the climactic disclosure of the entire book.
4. The three infinitives *le-hashmid*, *la-harog*, *u-le-abbed* ('to annihilate, to kill, and to destroy') echo the exact language of Haman's decree in 3:13. Esther is quoting the official edict back to the king who sealed it, though she does not yet say who authored it. The conditional clause about slavery is a masterful rhetorical move: she concedes that mere enslavement would not warrant royal intervention, elevating the gravity of what was actually decreed. The phrase *ein ha-tsar shoveh be-nezeq ha-melekh* ('the adversary is not equal to the damage to the king') reframes the genocide as an injury to the crown itself — destroying the Jews would be a loss to the kingdom.
5. The phrase *asher mela'o libbo* ('whose heart has filled him') conveys arrogant presumption — the man's own heart has swelled him to action. The double question *mi hu zeh ve-ei zeh hu* ('who is this one and where is this one') suggests both demand for identity and demand for location, as though the king intends to act immediately. There is dramatic irony: the king himself authorized the decree and is now outraged by it.
6. The word *tsar* ('adversary, one who causes distress') and *oyev* ('enemy') are near-synonyms, but *tsar* emphasizes the oppression and *oyev* the hostility. Esther uses both to ensure the king understands the threat as both personal and political. The adjective *ra* ('wicked, evil') is a moral judgment delivered in the king's presence — Esther is functioning as both accuser and witness.
7. The king's departure to *ginnat ha-bitan* ('the garden of the pavilion') may be an attempt to compose himself before acting, or it may reflect the magnitude of his anger — he cannot remain in the same room. The word *chamato* ('his burning anger') describes heat-rage. Meanwhile Haman's desperation drives him to appeal to the very person he tried to exterminate. The phrase *kaletah elav ha-ra'ah* ('the evil was completed/determined against him') uses the verb *kalah*, meaning the decision is final and irreversible.
8. The word *mittah* refers to the dining couch on which Persian nobles reclined during banquets, not a bed in the sleeping sense. Haman's posture was that of a suppliant, but the optics were catastrophic. The question *ha-gam likhbosh* ('will he even subdue/assault?') uses *gam* ('even, also') to suggest escalation — as if Haman's crimes are piling up. Some scholars read the face-covering as the placement of a hood before execution.
9. Harbonah's interjection is perfectly timed and may not be accidental — court officials could read the political winds and knew which side to support. The *ets* ('wood, pole, tree') fifty cubits high (approximately seventy-five feet or twenty-three meters) was likely not a gallows in the Western sense but a tall pole for impalement or public display of a body, a common Persian punishment. The description of Mordecai as *asher dibber tov al ha-melekh* ('who spoke good concerning the king') reminds Ahasuerus that the intended victim was the man who saved his life (2:21-23). The king's three-word

command teluhu alav ('hang him on it') is one of the most decisive sentences in the book.

10. The verb shakhakhah ('subsided, abated, was calmed') is used for the settling of rage, like heat dissipating. The king's anger is satisfied only by the execution — nothing less would resolve it. The narrator's final note completes the reversal with surgical economy: the pole Haman built for Mordecai receives Haman. No moral is drawn; the reversal speaks for itself.

8

Summary: *On the same day Haman is executed, King Ahasuerus gives his estate to Queen Esther, and Esther reveals Mordecai's relationship to her. The king gives Mordecai the signet ring he had taken back from Haman, and Esther places Mordecai over Haman's estate. But the crisis is not over: Haman's decree to destroy the Jews is still in effect and cannot be revoked under Persian law. Esther falls at the king's feet weeping, begging him to reverse the damage. The king extends his gold scepter and tells her to write whatever she wishes in his name and seal it with his ring. Mordecai drafts a counter-decree granting the Jews in every province the right to assemble, defend themselves, and destroy any armed force that attacks them — including women and children — and to take plunder. The decree goes out on the twenty-third day of the third month (Sivan), carried by royal couriers on fast horses bred from the king's stables. Mordecai leaves the palace in royal blue and white robes with a great gold crown and a purple linen cloak. The city of Susa erupts in celebration. Throughout the provinces, Jews experience light, gladness, joy, and honor. Many people of the land declare themselves Jews out of fear.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter demonstrates that removing a tyrant does not automatically remove the systems the tyrant created. Haman is dead, but his decree lives on. This structural problem — that Persian law was considered irrevocable even by the king — forces the narrative into an extraordinary legal maneuver: the only way to neutralize a royal decree is to issue another royal decree that gives the victims the power to fight back. The result is not cancellation but counterbalance. Mordecai's emergence in royal garments directly reverses chapter 4, where he sat in sackcloth and ashes at the king's gate. The detail that 'many of the people of the land became Jews' (mityahadim) is one of the most striking lines in the book — it shows that the reversal of fortune has made Jewish identity a source of power rather than danger, prompting others to align themselves with the Jewish community.*

Translation Friction: *The counter-decree's language authorizing the Jews to destroy, kill, and annihilate attackers — including women and children — mirrors the exact language of Haman's original decree. This mirroring is deliberate and raises difficult questions: is the narrative endorsing the same violence it condemned when Haman proposed it? Most interpreters note that the decree authorizes defensive action against those who would attack the Jews, not preemptive violence. The phrase le-hashmid ve-la-harog u-le-abbed ('to annihilate and kill and destroy') is identical to 3:13, creating a precise literary mirror. The note that people 'became Jews' (mityahadim) is ambiguous — it could mean genuine conversion, political allegiance, or simply self-identification with the winning side.*

Connections: *Mordecai's elevation from sackcloth to royal robes follows the pattern of Joseph's elevation in Egypt (Genesis 41:42), where Pharaoh removes his signet ring and places it on Joseph's hand and dresses him in fine linen. The irrevocable decree problem connects to Daniel 6, where Darius cannot revoke the decree against Daniel even though he wants to. The description of the Jews experiencing 'light and gladness and joy and honor' uses language that resonates with the Psalms of deliverance. The fast horses (the achashteranim benei ha-rammakim) are a marker of Persian imperial communication — the system that carried the decree of death now carries the decree of deliverance.*

1On that same day, King Ahasuerus gave the estate of Haman, the enemy of the Jews, to Queen Esther. And Mordecai came into the king's presence, because Esther had disclosed what he was to her. 2The king removed his signet ring — the one he had taken back from Haman — and gave it to Mordecai. And Esther placed Mordecai in charge of Haman's estate. 3Esther spoke again before the king. She fell at his feet, weeping, and pleaded with him to undo the evil of Haman the Agagite and the scheme he had devised against the Jews. 4The king extended the gold scepter toward Esther, and Esther rose and stood before the king. 5She said, "If it pleases the king, and if I have found favor before him, and if the matter seems right to the

king, and if I am pleasing in his eyes — let a decree be written to revoke the documents carrying out the scheme of Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite, which he wrote to destroy the Jews in all the king's provinces." ⁶For how could I bear to watch the disaster that would overtake my people? How could I bear to watch the destruction of my kindred? ⁷King Ahasuerus said to Queen Esther and to Mordecai the Jew, "I have already given Haman's estate to Esther, and they have hanged him on the pole because he raised his hand against the Jews." ⁸"Now you yourselves write on behalf of the Jews whatever seems right to you, in the king's name, and seal it with the king's ring — for a document written in the king's name and sealed with the king's ring cannot be revoked." ⁹The king's scribes were summoned at that time, in the third month — the month of Sivan — on its twenty-third day. Everything Mordecai commanded was written down: to the Jews, to the satraps, the governors, and the officials of the provinces from India to Cush — one hundred twenty-seven provinces — to each province in its own script and to each people in its own language, and to the Jews in their script and their language. ¹⁰He wrote in the name of King Ahasuerus and sealed it with the king's ring, then sent documents by couriers on horseback, riding swift royal steeds bred from the king's stables. ¹¹In it the king granted the Jews in every city the right to assemble and defend their lives — to annihilate, kill, and destroy any armed force of any people or province that would attack them, along with their women and children, and to seize their property as plunder. ¹²This was to take effect on a single day throughout all the provinces of King Ahasuerus: the thirteenth day of the twelfth month, the month of Adar. ¹³A copy of the document was to be issued as law in every province and made public to all peoples, so that the Jews would be prepared on that day to take vengeance on their enemies. ¹⁴The couriers, riding the swift royal steeds, went out urgently, driven by the king's command. And the decree was issued in the citadel of Susa. ¹⁵Mordecai left the king's presence in royal robes of blue and white, wearing a large gold crown, with a cloak of fine linen and purple. The city of Susa burst into celebration and joy. ¹⁶For the Jews there was light and gladness, joy and honor. ¹⁷In every province and in every city, wherever the king's command and his law arrived, there was gladness and joy among the Jews — feasting and celebration. And many of the peoples of the land declared themselves Jews, because dread of the Jews had fallen on them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *tsorror ha-Yehudim* ('the one who oppresses the Jews') becomes Haman's permanent epithet in the second half of the book — even after his death he is identified by his hostility. Esther's disclosure of her relationship to Mordecai (*mah hu lah*, 'what he was to her') completes the revelation begun in chapter 7. The property transfer follows Persian custom: the estate of an executed traitor reverted to the crown, and the king could reassign it.
2. The verb *he'evir* ('he had transferred, caused to pass over') describes the earlier removal of the ring from Haman, while *vayyaser* ('he removed') describes the king taking it off his own finger now. The ring functions as a combination of authority and identity — documents sealed with it carry the force of royal law.
3. Even with Haman dead, Esther must continue to advocate — the decree remains active. The verb *va-tithannen* ('she pleaded, she begged for grace') is from the same root as *hen* ('grace, favor'), indicating she is appealing to the king's mercy. The phrase *machashavto asher chashav* ('his scheme which he schemed') uses a cognate construction to emphasize the deliberateness of Haman's plot. He is again called *ha-Agagi* ('the Agagite'), linking him to the Amalekite royal line.
4. The extension of the *sharvit ha-zahav* ('the gold scepter') repeats the gesture from 5:2 — it signals royal acceptance and permission to speak. Esther's movement from prostrate at his feet to standing before him mirrors her shift from supplicant to authorized speaker. She has been granted the floor.
5. Esther stacks four conditional clauses before her request, each one a layer of diplomatic deference: *im al ha-melek tov* ('if it pleases the king'), *im matsati chen lefanav* ('if I have found favor before him'), *ve-khasher ha-davar* ('if the matter is fitting'), *ve-tovah ani be-einav* ('if I am good in his eyes'). This is not timidity but skilled court rhetoric — each clause acknowledges the king's absolute authority while simultaneously making refusal nearly impossible. The verb *le-hashiv* ('to return, to reverse, to bring back') indicates she wants the decree recalled.
6. The doubled question *eikhakhah ukhal* ('how could I bear?') uses the same emotional appeal twice with different objects: *ammi* ('my people') and *moladi* ('my kindred, my birth-family'). The shift from 'people' to 'kindred' moves from the national to the personal — Esther is saying that the destruction would reach her own family. The word *ovdan* ('destruction, annihilation') is from the same root as the verb *abbed* in Haman's decree, tying Esther's plea directly to the language of the genocide order.
7. The king addresses both Esther and Mordecai together for the first time, acknowledging their partnership. His statement is partly defensive — he is reminding them of what he has already done (property transfer, execution) before addressing the harder problem of the decree. The phrase *shalach yado ba-Yehudim* ('he stretched out his hand against the Jews') frames Haman's action as aggression, though in reality the king himself authorized it.

8. The emphatic *ve-attem* ('and you yourselves') places the responsibility for the solution squarely on Esther and Mordecai. The king provides the instrument (the ring) and the authority (his name) but leaves the content to them. The verb *le-hashiv* ('to revoke, to reverse') is the same word Esther used in verse 5, and the king is explaining why her request cannot be fulfilled literally — the old decree cannot be unmade, only counteracted.
9. The date — the twenty-third of Sivan — is exactly seventy days after Haman's decree was issued on the thirteenth of Nisan (3:12). The counter-decree mirrors the original in its administrative scope: same bureaucratic infrastructure, same multilingual distribution, same empire-wide reach. The word *achashdarfenim* ('satraps') is a Persian loanword referring to provincial governors of the highest rank. The explicit mention that the Jews received the decree in their own script and language (*kikhtvam ve-khilshonam*) ensures they can read the authorization to defend themselves.
10. The phrase *ha-achashteranim benei ha-rammakim* is one of the most debated in Esther. The words appear to be Persian loanwords describing a specific breed of fast horse used for imperial courier service. Traditional translations have offered 'mules, camels, and young dromedaries,' but the Hebrew likely describes a single category: horses bred from royal stock for speed. The Persian empire's courier system (the *angareion*) was legendary for its efficiency — Herodotus compared it to a relay race. The same postal infrastructure that distributed the decree of death now distributes the decree of deliverance.
11. The verb *le-hiqqahel* ('to assemble') is significant — it grants the Jews the right to organize collectively, which would normally be seen as insurrection. The royal decree transforms their gathering from an act of rebellion into a legally sanctioned assembly. The phrase *kol cheil am u-medinah ha-tsarim otam* ('all the armed force of any people and province that would oppress them') limits the authorized violence to those who actively attack.
12. The date — the thirteenth of Adar — is the same day Haman's decree had set for the destruction of the Jews (3:13). The counter-decree does not change the date; it changes who has the right to fight on that date. This means both sides will be armed and authorized on the same day, transforming a planned massacre into a battle.
13. The word *patshegen* ('copy, text') is a Persian loanword. The decree was to be published *galui le-khol ha-ammim* ('openly to all peoples') — the public nature of the decree was essential because it functioned as both authorization and deterrent. Anyone who attacked the Jews on the thirteenth of Adar would know in advance that the Jews had royal permission to fight back. The verb *le-hinnaqem* ('to avenge, to take vengeance') frames the defensive action as retribution for the threat itself.
14. The paired words *mevohalim u-dechufim* ('hastened and pressed, urgently driven') convey extreme speed — this is an emergency dispatch. Every day of delay leaves the Jews without legal authorization to defend themselves. The decree was simultaneously published in Susa, the administrative capital, establishing it as law at the center of the empire.
15. The *tekhelet* ('blue-violet') is the same word used for the blue thread in the priestly garments and the *tsitsit* (Numbers 15:38), though here it refers to Persian court attire. The word *takhrikh* ('wrap, cloak') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. The contrast between Mordecai's sackcloth (4:1) and his royal robes is one of the book's defining visual moments.
16. The Talmud (Megillah 16b) interprets each noun as a symbol: *orah* is Torah, *simchah* is a festival, *sason* is circumcision, and *yeqar* is tefillin. This midrashic reading layers religious meaning onto the plain sense. In the narrative context, the four nouns describe the collective emotional and social transformation of the Jewish community from despair to celebration.
17. The verb *mityahadim* ('becoming Jews, declaring themselves Jewish') is a *hitpa'el* form — reflexive, indicating that these people actively identified themselves as Jews. The word appears only here in the Hebrew Bible and is the origin of the term 'to Judaize.' Whether this means full religious conversion or political self-identification is debated. The phrase *nafal pachad ha-Yehudim aleihem* ('the dread of the Jews fell upon them') reverses the dynamic of the entire narrative: the people who were supposed to be feared now inspire fear. The phrase *yom tov* ('a good day') becomes a technical term for a Jewish festival day.

9

Summary: The thirteenth of Adar arrives — the day Haman's decree had designated for the destruction of the Jews. Instead, the opposite happens: the Jews overpower those who hate them. Provincial officials assist the Jews because fear of Mordecai has spread throughout the empire. In Susa alone the Jews kill five hundred men, including Haman's ten sons, whose names are listed. The Jews do not touch the plunder. When the king reports the Susa death toll to Esther and asks if she has further requests, she asks for a second day of fighting in Susa and for the bodies of Haman's ten sons to be hung on poles. The king grants it. On the fourteenth of Adar, the Jews in Susa kill three hundred more, again taking no plunder. Jews in the rural provinces fight on the thirteenth and rest on the fourteenth, making it a day of feasting. Jews in Susa fight on the thirteenth and fourteenth and rest on the fifteenth. This is why rural Jews celebrate the fourteenth and city Jews celebrate the fifteenth. Mordecai records these events and sends letters to all the Jews establishing the fourteenth and fifteenth of Adar as annual days of feasting, joy, sending food gifts to one another, and giving to the poor. Haman is identified as the son of Hammedatha the Agagite who cast the pur — that is, the lot — to determine the date for destroying the Jews, but

his plot was overturned. The festival is called Purim, from the word pur. The Jews commit themselves and their descendants to observe these two days every year. Queen Esther and Mordecai write a second letter confirming the observance of Purim with full authority. Letters of peace and security are sent to all the Jews in the empire.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter explains the origin and rationale of the festival of Purim — the only major Jewish festival not commanded in the Torah. The narrative provides an etiology: why the festival exists, why it falls on these particular dates, why city and rural celebrations differ by a day, and why it is called Purim (from pur, the lot Haman cast). The repeated emphasis that the Jews did not touch the plunder (stated three times in verses 10, 15, and 16) is one of the chapter's most deliberate details — the counter-decree explicitly permitted them to take spoil, but they refused. This restraint may echo Saul's failure with the Amalekite spoil (1 Samuel 15), tacitly correcting the earlier king's error. The listing of Haman's ten sons by name, followed by their public display on poles, functions as the complete eradication of the Agagite threat that Saul left incomplete. The word pur itself is not Hebrew but Akkadian, and the narrator translates it for the audience: ha-pur hu ha-goral ('the pur, that is, the lot'). Chance — the casting of lots — determined the date, but the outcome was the opposite of what the lot-caster intended.*

Translation Friction: *Esther's request for a second day of fighting in Susa and for the public display of Haman's already-dead sons raises difficult moral questions. Is she acting from vengeance or from strategic necessity — ensuring that all enemies are neutralized before the celebration begins? The text does not explain her motives. The death toll figures (500 in Susa on day one, 300 on day two, 75,000 in the provinces) are large and have generated centuries of discussion about whether they are historical, symbolic, or hyperbolic. The triple statement that the Jews refused plunder may be the narrator's way of insisting that this was defensive, not predatory — they fought for survival, not profit. The establishment of Purim by human authority rather than divine command is unique among major Jewish observances and reflects the book's broader pattern of operating without explicit divine instruction.*

Connections: *The defeat of the Agagite and his sons connects to the Saul-Agag narrative in 1 Samuel 15, where Saul failed to fully execute the ban on the Amalekites. What Saul left unfinished, the events of Purim complete. The casting of lots (pur/goral) connects to the broader biblical theme of divine sovereignty operating through apparent randomness — Proverbs 16:33 states that the lot is cast into the lap but its every decision comes from the LORD, though Esther's narrator never makes this theological claim explicitly. The food-sending and gift-giving provisions (mishloach manot and mattanot la-evyonim) establish Purim as a festival defined by communal generosity rather than temple ritual. The two-letter structure (Mordecai's letter, then Esther's confirming letter) mirrors the two-decree structure of the plot and counter-plot.*

¹In the twelfth month — the month of Adar — on its thirteenth day, when the king's command and law were to be carried out, on the very day the enemies of the Jews expected to overpower them, the opposite happened: the Jews overpowered those who hated them. ²The Jews assembled in their cities throughout all the provinces of King Ahasuerus to strike at those who sought to harm them. No one could stand against them, because dread of them had fallen on all the peoples. ³All the provincial officials, the satraps, the governors, and the king's administrators supported the Jews, because dread of Mordecai had fallen on them. ⁴For Mordecai was powerful in the king's court, and his reputation was spreading through all the provinces, because the man Mordecai kept growing greater. ⁵The Jews struck down all their enemies with the sword — slaughter and destruction — and did as they wished to those who hated them. ⁶In the citadel of Susa, the Jews killed and destroyed five hundred men. ⁷They also killed Parshandatha, Dalphon, Aspatha, ⁸Poratha, Adalia, Aridatha, ⁹Parmashta, Arisai, Aridai, and Vaizatha — ¹⁰the ten sons of Haman son of Hammedatha, the enemy of the Jews. But they did not lay a hand on the plunder. ¹¹That same day the count of those killed in the citadel of Susa was reported to the king. ¹²The king said to Queen Esther, "In the citadel of Susa alone the Jews have killed and destroyed five hundred men and the ten sons of Haman. What must they have done in the rest of the king's provinces! Now what is your petition? It will be granted. What further request do you have? It will be done." ¹³Esther said, "If it pleases the king, let the Jews in Susa be allowed to act tomorrow as well, under today's decree, and let Haman's ten sons be hung on the poles." ¹⁴The king ordered it done. A decree was issued in Susa, and the ten sons of Haman were hung on the poles. ¹⁵The Jews in Susa assembled again on the fourteenth day of Adar and killed three hundred men in Susa, but they did not lay a hand on the plunder. ¹⁶The rest of the

Jews in the king's provinces assembled and defended their lives. They found relief from their enemies and killed seventy-five thousand of those who hated them, but they did not lay a hand on the plunder. ¹⁷This was on the thirteenth day of the month of Adar. They rested on the fourteenth and made it a day of feasting and joy. ¹⁸But the Jews in Susa assembled on the thirteenth and the fourteenth, and rested on the fifteenth, making it a day of feasting and joy. ¹⁹That is why the Jews of the countryside — those living in unwallled towns — observe the fourteenth day of Adar as a day of joy and feasting, a holiday, and a time for sending food gifts to one another. ²⁰Mordecai recorded these events and sent letters to all the Jews throughout all the provinces of King Ahasuerus, near and far, ²¹establishing for them the obligation to observe the fourteenth day of the month of Adar and the fifteenth day, every year, ²²as the days on which the Jews gained relief from their enemies, and the month that was transformed for them from grief to joy and from mourning to celebration — to observe them as days of feasting and joy, sending food gifts to one another and giving gifts to the poor. ²³The Jews accepted as a permanent practice what they had already begun to do and what Mordecai had written to them. ²⁴For Haman son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the enemy of all the Jews, had plotted against the Jews to destroy them and had cast the pur — that is, the lot — to crush and destroy them. ²⁵But when she came before the king, he ordered by written decree that Haman's wicked scheme — the one he had devised against the Jews — should come back on his own head, and that he and his sons should be hung on the poles. ²⁶That is why they called these days Purim, from the word pur. And so, because of everything written in this letter, and because of what they had witnessed and what had happened to them, ²⁷the Jews established and accepted for themselves, their descendants, and all who would join them, an obligation that would not be set aside — to observe these two days according to their written instructions and at their appointed time every year. ²⁸These days are to be remembered and observed in every generation, every family, every province, and every city. These days of Purim will never cease from among the Jews, and their memory will never fade from their descendants. ²⁹Then Queen Esther daughter of Abihail, together with Mordecai the Jew, wrote with full authority to confirm this second letter of Purim. ³⁰He sent letters to all the Jews in the one hundred twenty-seven provinces of the kingdom of Ahasuerus — words of peace and faithfulness — ³¹to confirm these days of Purim at their appointed times, just as Mordecai the Jew and Queen Esther had established for them, and just as they had accepted for themselves and their descendants the practices of fasting and lamentation. ³²Esther's decree confirmed these regulations of Purim, and it was written in the record.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *sivru* ('they expected, they hoped') from the root *savar* carries the sense of confident expectation — the enemies believed the outcome was assured. The construction *ve-nahafokh hu* ('and it was turned — it') uses the impersonal passive, leaving the agent of reversal unnamed. This is characteristic of Esther's theology: events turn, but no one says who turns them.
2. The phrase *lishloch yad* ('to send the hand, to strike') is an idiom for taking violent action. The Jews are exercising the right granted in the counter-decree (8:11). The phrase *ish lo amad lifneihem* ('no man stood before them') echoes military language used throughout the conquest narratives. The dread (*pachdam*) falling on the peoples reprises 8:17 — the reversal of fear is complete.
3. The verb *menass'im* ('lifting up, supporting, assisting') indicates active assistance, not mere non-interference. The bureaucratic apparatus that would have carried out the genocide now assists the Jews. The dread is specifically of Mordecai — not of the Jews collectively — because Mordecai now holds the signet ring and can make or break any official's career.
4. The phrase *holekh ve-gadol* ('going and becoming great,' that is, 'growing greater and greater') uses the same progressive construction applied to Moses in Exodus 11:3 (the man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt). The parallel is suggestive: like Moses, Mordecai is a Jew who rises to the second-highest position in a foreign empire and uses that position to deliver his people.
5. The phrase *makkat cherev* ('the striking of the sword') indicates armed combat. The terms *hereg va-avdan* ('killing and destruction') are near-synonyms intensifying the violence. The final clause *va-ya'asu be-son'eihem kirtsonam* ('they did to their enemies as they wished') indicates the Jews had complete military superiority on this day.
6. The narrator specifies the Susa death toll separately from the provinces, setting up Esther's request in verse 13 for a second day of fighting in the capital. The number five hundred refers to armed combatants who attacked the Jews, not to the general population.
7. The listing of Haman's ten sons begins here and continues through verse 10. All ten names are Persian in origin. In the traditional synagogue reading of Esther (the Megillah), these ten names are read in a single breath, symbolizing that they all died together. The names are written in a distinctive columnar format in the Hebrew scroll.

8. These three names continue the list. Each name is introduced with *ve-et*, the direct object marker with the conjunction, giving the list a formal, record-keeping character — this is an official accounting of the dead.
9. The final four names complete the list of ten. The name *Vaizatha* (sometimes *Vajezatha*) closes the catalogue. That all ten sons are killed indicates the complete elimination of the *Agagite* line — no descendant of *Haman* remains to perpetuate the threat.
10. The first of three statements that the Jews refused to take plunder (repeated in verses 15 and 16). The counter-decree explicitly authorized them to seize property (8:11), so this restraint is voluntary. The refusal may be a deliberate contrast with *Saul*, who kept the spoil of the *Amalekites* against the command in 1 Samuel 15. By refusing plunder from an *Agagite* enemy, the Jews of *Persia* succeed where *Saul* failed.
11. The king receives a body count from *Susa* specifically, indicating an administrative reporting system. This report sets up the exchange between the king and *Esther* in the following verses.
12. The king's extrapolation — if five hundred died in *Susa* alone, what about the rest of the empire? — suggests he is impressed rather than disturbed. His immediate offer of further concessions shows that his alignment with *Esther* remains firm. The petition/request formula (*she'elatekh* / *baqqashatekh*) appears for the final time, without the 'half the kingdom' qualifier.
13. *Esther's* request has two parts: a second day of authorized defense in *Susa*, and the public display of *Haman's* dead sons. The sons are already dead (verse 10), so the hanging is for public exposure, not execution — a Persian practice of displaying the bodies of defeated enemies as a warning. The second day of fighting suggests that the threat in the capital was not fully neutralized in one day, or that *Esther* wanted to ensure no enemies remained.
14. The king's approval is immediate and without negotiation. The decree applies specifically to *Susa*, not the entire empire — the provinces had only the one day. The public display of *Haman's* sons serves as both a deterrent and a symbol that the *Agagite* house has been completely uprooted.
15. The second day of fighting produces a lower death toll (three hundred versus five hundred), suggesting the resistance was diminishing. The second mention that the Jews refused plunder reinforces the narrative's insistence that this was defensive action, not opportunistic violence.
16. The phrase *ve-noach me-oyeveihem* ('and they had rest from their enemies') uses the same verb for 'rest' (*nuach*) that appears in the conquest narratives when *Israel* gains peace from surrounding enemies. The provincial death toll of seventy-five thousand is the largest figure in the narrative. The third and final statement about refusing plunder closes this theme definitively. The verb *amad al nafsham* ('they stood for their lives') emphasizes the defensive character of the action.
17. This verse explains why rural and unwallled-city Jews celebrate *Purim* on the fourteenth of *Adar*: they fought on the thirteenth and rested on the fourteenth. The establishment of a *yom mishteh ve-simchah* ('a day of feasting and joy') transforms a military victory into a communal celebration.
18. This verse explains the *Shushan Purim* tradition: because the Jews of *Susa* fought for two days (thirteenth and fourteenth), they rested and celebrated on the fifteenth. This is why Jews in walled cities (following the model of *Susa*) celebrate *Purim* on the fifteenth of *Adar*, while Jews in unwallled cities celebrate on the fourteenth. *Jerusalem* observes *Shushan Purim* on the fifteenth.
19. The word *perazim* ('rural, open, unwallled') and *arei ha-perazot* ('unwallled cities') distinguish between fortified and unfortified settlements. The practice of *mishloach manot* ('sending portions') — giving food gifts to friends and neighbors — becomes one of the defining customs of *Purim*. The phrase *ish le-re'ehu* ('each person to his neighbor') emphasizes the communal, relational nature of the celebration.
20. *Mordecai's* act of writing (*va-yikhtov*) and sending letters establishes the observance through official communication — the same mechanism used for royal decrees. The phrase *ha-qerovim ve-ha-rechoqim* ('the near and the far') ensures no Jewish community in the empire is excluded from the new observance.
21. The verb *le-qayyem* ('to establish, to confirm, to make binding') gives *Mordecai's* letter the force of a permanent institution. Both days — the fourteenth and the fifteenth — are included, covering both the rural and the *Susa* observances. The phrase *be-khol shanah ve-shanah* ('in every year and year') mandates annual repetition in perpetuity.
22. The verb *nehpakh* ('was transformed, was turned') is from the same root as *nahafokh* in verse 1 — the great reversal that defines the book. The four components of *Purim* observance are specified: *mishteh* ('feasting'), *simchah* ('joy'), *mishloach manot* ('sending food gifts'), and *mattanot la-eyyonim* ('gifts to the poor'). The inclusion of giving to the poor ensures the celebration is not self-contained but extends to those in need.
23. The verb *qibbel* ('accepted, received, took upon themselves') is significant — the observance is not imposed but voluntarily adopted. The community accepts *Mordecai's* letter as binding. This voluntary acceptance becomes the legal basis for *Purim* in rabbinic tradition.
24. The verb *hippil* ('he cast, he caused to fall') is the standard verb for casting lots. The *pur* was likely a cube or stone used in Mesopotamian divination practices. The narrator's gloss *hu ha-goral* ('that is, the lot') confirms that the word was foreign enough to require explanation for the Hebrew-speaking audience. The verbs *le-hummam u-le-abbedam* ('to crush them and to destroy them') describe the intended result of the lot-casting.
25. The phrase *yashuv machashavto ha-ra'ah al rosho* ('his evil scheme should return on his own head') states the reversal principle explicitly. The verb *shuv* ('return') indicates that evil has a boomerang quality — it comes back to its origin. The summary compresses the narrative: *Esther's* appearance before the king, the counter-decree, and the execution of *Haman* and his sons are presented as a single act of royal justice.

26. The word *iggeret* ('letter, epistle') is used for official correspondence. The three grounds for observance — the written record, personal witness, and lived experience — create a robust basis for the tradition's authority. The Hebrew plural ending *-im* on the Akkadian word *pur* produces the hybrid form *Purim*.
27. The phrase *qiyemu ve-qibbelu* ('they established and accepted') uses two verbs of commitment. The obligation extends to *zar'am* ('their descendants') and *kol ha-nilvim aleihem* ('all who attach themselves to them'), which includes converts and those who aligned themselves with the Jewish community (as in 8:17). The phrase *ve-lo ya'avur* ('and it shall not pass away, it shall not be set aside') gives the observance the permanence of a binding law.
28. The verse builds from the smallest unit (*dor*, 'generation') through *mishpachah* ('family, clan'), *medinah* ('province'), and *ir* ('city'), covering every social and geographic level. The double negative — *lo ya'avru* ('they will never pass away') and *lo yasuf* ('it will never cease, it will never come to an end') — is a declaration of perpetuity. The word *zikhram* ('their memory') connects Purim to the broader biblical imperative of remembrance.
29. Esther is identified by her father's name (*bat Avichayil*) for only the second time in the book, anchoring her in her Jewish lineage at the moment she exercises royal power. The phrase *et kol toqef* ('with all authority, with full force') indicates this letter carries the weight of both royal and communal power. This is the second letter — the first was Mordecai's (verse 20). Esther's letter confirms and strengthens the observance.
30. The phrase *divrei shalom ve-emet* ('words of peace and truth/faithfulness') characterizes the tone of the letters. After a year of existential threat, the communication from Mordecai and Esther brings *shalom* ('peace, wholeness, well-being') and *emet* ('truth, reliability, faithfulness'). The full count of 127 provinces is repeated from 1:1, forming a literary bracket — the same empire that hosted Ahasuerus's extravagant feast now receives a message of Jewish peace.
31. The reference to *ha-tsomot ve-za'aqatam* ('the fasts and their outcry') introduces a dimension of Purim observance not previously mentioned — the fasting that commemorates the crisis before the deliverance. This becomes the basis for the Fast of Esther (*Ta'anit Esther*) observed on the thirteenth of Adar, the day before Purim. The verse connects celebration to the memory of suffering: you feast because you first fasted.
32. The word *ma'amar* ('decree, command, word') is used for Esther's authorization — the same word used for royal edicts. The phrase *ve-nikhtav ba-sefer* ('and it was written in the book') indicates that the Purim regulations were recorded in an official document, possibly the court annals or the scroll of Esther itself. This is the final act of the chapter: the festival has been established, confirmed, and permanently recorded.

10

Summary: *The book closes with a brief epilogue. King Ahasuerus imposes a tribute on the land and the coastlands of the sea. The full account of his power and authority, along with the record of Mordecai's greatness to which the king elevated him, are written in the official annals of the kings of Media and Persia. Mordecai the Jew is second in rank to King Ahasuerus, great among the Jews, and accepted by the majority of his kinsmen. He seeks the welfare of his people and speaks peace to all his descendants.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This three-verse epilogue shifts the focus from crisis narrative to administrative summary, echoing the style of royal annals. The book that began with Ahasuerus displaying his power and wealth ends with Ahasuerus imposing tribute and Mordecai holding power beside him. The final portrait of Mordecai — seeking the welfare of his people and speaking peace — is a description of ongoing, sustained leadership rather than a single heroic moment. The phrase 'accepted by the majority of his kinsmen' (*ratsuv le-rov echav*) contains a surprising note of realism: not all of his kinsmen accepted him. Some interpreters read this as an acknowledgment that a Jew holding imperial power in a foreign court will always face criticism from within his own community. The book ends not with Esther but with Mordecai, positioning him as the lasting political figure whose influence shapes the Jewish community's relationship with Persian power.*

Translation Friction: *The abrupt shift to tribute collection and annals-style prose has led some scholars to argue that chapter 10 is an editorial appendix rather than part of the original composition. The mention of tribute on 'the land and the coastlands of the sea' may refer to the expansion of taxation during Xerxes' reign, possibly connected to the costs of the Greek wars. The phrase 'accepted by the majority' rather than 'all' is either refreshingly honest about political reality or a hint that Mordecai's integration into Persian power structures troubled some Jews. The absence of Esther from the final summary is notable — the book bears her name, but the closing words belong to Mordecai.*

Connections: Mordecai's position as second to the king mirrors Joseph's role under Pharaoh (Genesis 41:40-44) and Daniel's role under multiple Babylonian and Persian rulers. The reference to the annals of Media and Persia connects to the chronicles mentioned throughout Esther (2:23, 6:1) and to the same formula used in Kings for the annals of Israel and Judah. The description of Mordecai seeking the welfare (tov) of his people and speaking peace (shalom) to his descendants echoes Jeremiah 29:7, where the exiles are told to seek the welfare (shalom) of the city where they have been carried into exile. Mordecai embodies this instruction: a Jew thriving in exile while caring for his community.

¹King Ahasuerus imposed a tax on the land and on the coastlands of the sea. ²The full account of his power and strength, and the detailed record of Mordecai's greatness to which the king elevated him — are they not written in the book of the annals of the kings of Media and Persia? ³For Mordecai the Jew was second in rank to King Ahasuerus, great among the Jews, and favored by the majority of his kinsmen — seeking the good of his people and advocating for the well-being of all his descendants.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word mas ('tribute, forced labor, tax') indicates the imposition of a levy across the empire. The phrase iyeyi ha-yam ('the islands/coastlands of the sea') refers to the Mediterranean coastal regions and islands under Persian control — a marker of the empire's vast reach. This administrative note returns the narrative to the framework of imperial governance, reminding the reader that the Jewish story played out within a functioning empire that continued after the crisis.
2. The phrase sefer divrei ha-yamim le-malkhei Madai u-Faras ('the book of the chronicles of the kings of Media and Persia') refers to official Persian court records, not to the biblical book of Chronicles. These annals have not survived, but their existence is consistent with what is known of Persian administrative record-keeping from Greek historians. The verb giddelo ('he made him great, he elevated him') confirms that Mordecai's position was a direct appointment by the king.
3. The title mishneh ('second, deputy') places Mordecai in the highest position a non-royal could hold. The word ratsuv ('accepted, favored') is from the root ratsah ('to be pleased with, to accept') — Mordecai has the approval of his community. The phrase doresh tov ('seeking good') uses the same verb darash ('to seek, to inquire') that appears throughout the Hebrew Bible for seeking after something with intention and persistence. The final word zar'o ('his seed, his descendants') extends Mordecai's influence beyond his own lifetime.

Job

Summary: *The book opens with a prose prologue introducing Job as a man of extraordinary piety and wealth in the land of Uz. The scene then shifts to the heavenly council, where the Adversary (ha-satan) challenges whether Job's devotion to God is genuine or merely transactional. God permits the Adversary to strip Job of everything — livestock, servants, and children — in a single catastrophic day. Job tears his robe, shaves his head, and worships.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The prologue operates on two levels that never intersect within the story itself. The reader sees the heavenly council scene — the wager, the challenge, the permission granted — but Job never does. He will spend the next forty chapters searching for an explanation that the reader already possesses, and when God finally answers him from the whirlwind, God never mentions the Adversary's challenge. This dramatic irony is the engine of the entire book: the reader knows something the sufferer does not, and the sufferer's ignorance is the very thing being tested. The Adversary's question — 'Does Job fear God for nothing?' (ha-chinnam yare Iyov Elohim) — is arguably the most important theological question in the Hebrew Bible. It asks whether disinterested righteousness exists, whether a human being can love God without benefit. Everything that follows depends on the answer.*

Translation Friction: *The figure called ha-satan in this chapter is not the Satan of later Christian theology. The Hebrew uses the definite article — ha-satan, 'the Adversary' — indicating a role or function within the heavenly court, not a proper name. This figure is a member of the bene ha-elohim ('sons of God'), the divine council, and operates with God's explicit permission. He is more prosecuting attorney than cosmic evil. Translating ha-satan as 'Satan' imports centuries of later theological development into a text that knows nothing of it. We render it 'the Adversary' to preserve the original function. The land of Uz is deliberately vague — possibly Edom or northern Arabia — placing Job outside Israel's covenant boundaries. He is not an Israelite, which makes the book's theology universal rather than covenantal.*

Connections: *The heavenly council scene echoes 1 Kings 22:19-23, where God's throne room is depicted with spirits presenting themselves before the LORD. The phrase bene ha-elohim ('sons of God') appears in Genesis 6:2 and Psalm 82:1, always referring to members of the divine assembly. Job's response in verse 21 — 'The LORD gave and the LORD has taken away' — will be tested and complicated by the poetic dialogues that follow; by chapter 3, Job will curse the day he was born. The prose frame (chapters 1-2 and 42) may preserve an older folktale about a patient sufferer, into which the poet inserted the vast poetic dialogue (chapters 3-41) that questions everything the prologue seems to affirm.*

¹There was a man in the land of Uz whose name was Job. This man was blameless and upright, one who feared God and turned away from evil. ²Seven sons and three daughters were born to him. ³His livestock numbered seven thousand sheep, three thousand camels, five hundred yoke of oxen, and five hundred female donkeys, and he had a very large household. This man was the greatest of all the people of the east. ⁴His sons would go and hold a feast in each one's house on his appointed day, and they would send and invite their three sisters to eat and drink with them. ⁵When the days of feasting had completed their cycle, Job would send for them and consecrate them. He would rise early in the morning and offer burnt offerings for each of them, for Job said, "Perhaps my children have sinned and cursed God in their hearts." This is what Job did every time. ⁶Now there came a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and the Adversary also came among them. ⁷The LORD said to the Adversary, "Where have you come from?" The Adversary answered the LORD, "From roaming through the earth and walking back and forth across it." ⁸The LORD said to the Adversary, "Have you considered my servant Job? There is no one like him on the earth — a blameless and upright man who fears God and turns away from evil." ⁹The Adversary answered the LORD, "Does Job fear God for nothing?" ¹⁰Have You not put a hedge around him, around his household, and around everything he has on every side? You have blessed the work of his hands, and his livestock have spread across the land. ¹¹But stretch out Your hand and strike everything he has — he will surely curse You to Your face. ¹²The LORD said to the Adversary, "Very well — everything he has is in your hand. Only do not lay a hand on the man himself." Then the Adversary went out from the presence of the LORD. ¹³One day, when his sons and daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, ^{14a}a messenger came to Job and said, "The oxen were plowing and the donkeys were grazing beside them, ¹⁵when the Sabeans attacked and carried them off. They struck down the servants with the edge of the sword, and I alone have escaped to tell you." ¹⁶While he was still speaking, another came and said, "The fire of God fell from heaven and burned up the sheep and the servants and consumed them, and I alone have escaped to tell you." ¹⁷While he was still speaking, another came and said, "The Chaldeans formed three raiding parties and swept down on the camels and carried them off. They struck down the servants with the edge of the sword, and I alone have escaped to tell you." ¹⁸While he was still speaking, another came and said, "Your sons and daughters were eating and drinking wine in their oldest brother's house, ¹⁹when a great wind came from across the wilderness and struck the four corners of the house. It collapsed on the young people, and they are dead. I alone have escaped to tell you." ²⁰Then Job stood up, tore his robe, shaved his head, fell to the ground, and worshiped. ²¹He said, "Naked I came from my mother's womb, and naked I will return there. The LORD gave and the LORD has taken away. Blessed be the name of the LORD." ²²In all of this, Job did not sin or assign blame to God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The land of Uz (erets Uts) is geographically ambiguous — Lamentations 4:21 associates Uz with Edom, while Genesis 10:23 links it to Aram. The deliberate vagueness places Job outside the land of Israel and outside the Mosaic covenant, making his story a universal exploration of suffering rather than an Israelite-specific one.
1. The fourfold description (tam, yashar, yere Elohim, sar me-ra) will be quoted verbatim by God to the Adversary in verse 8, confirming that this is not merely the narrator's assessment but God's own evaluation of Job.
2. Seven sons and three daughters total ten children — the number of completeness. The numbers are literary as well as literal: seven is the number of divine fullness and three is the number of completeness. Together they signal that Job's family, like his character, is whole and abundant. This perfect number will be restored exactly in 42:13.
3. The inventory follows the same pattern of completeness as the children: seven thousand, three thousand, five hundred, five hundred — round, full numbers. The phrase gadol mi-kol bene qedem ('greatest of all the sons of the east') establishes Job as the wealthiest and most prominent figure in the entire eastern region. Bene qedem ('sons of the east') refers to the peoples east of Israel — Arameans, Edomites, and Arabian tribes. Job's greatness is measured in the currency of the ancient pastoral world: livestock and household servants.
4. The phrase beit ish yomo ('the house of each man on his day') suggests a rotating cycle of feasting — each brother hosted in turn. The inclusion of the three sisters in the feasting is notable: in a patriarchal context, the deliberate mention that the sisters were invited signals family harmony and completeness. The picture is one of prosperous, unified family life — which makes its destruction in verses 18-19 all the more devastating.
5. The euphemistic use of barak ('to bless') for 'to curse' (qalal) is one of the most well-known scribal substitutions in the Hebrew Bible. It appears here and in 1:11, 2:5, and 2:9. We render it as 'cursed' in translation because the context makes the meaning clear: Job is not worried that his children blessed God — he fears they may have blasphemed in their hearts. The euphemism exists to protect the reader from the juxtaposition of 'curse' and

'God.'

5. The phrase kol hayyamim ('all the days') means this was not occasional but habitual — Job's intercessory practice was continuous. He did not merely believe in righteousness; he practiced it ritually and preventatively on behalf of others.
6. The phrase bene ha-elohim ('sons of God') refers to divine beings in the heavenly assembly. The same expression appears in Genesis 6:2 and Psalm 29:1. In the Job context, these are members of God's royal court — they report, they serve, they receive orders.
6. ha-satan with the definite article indicates a role: 'the adversary, the accuser, the challenger.' In later Jewish and Christian theology, Satan becomes a proper name for a cosmic antagonist. In Job, he is a functionary — the prosecuting attorney in God's court. He cannot act without permission, and his challenge serves God's purpose.
7. God's question me-ayin tavo ('from where have you come?') is not a request for information — God is omniscient in this narrative. It is a courtly opening, the sovereign inviting a report from a subordinate. The Adversary's answer — mi-shut ba-arets u-mehithallekh bah ('from roaming in the earth and from walking about in it') — uses two verbs of restless motion: shut ('to rove, to roam') and hithallekh ('to walk about, to go back and forth'). The picture is of a patrol agent who has surveyed the earth and now returns to report. The language echoes Zechariah 1:10-11, where angelic horsemen patrol the earth and report to the LORD.
8. The title avdi ('my servant') is a term of high honor in the Hebrew Bible — it is applied to Moses (Numbers 12:7), David (2 Samuel 7:5), and the Servant of the LORD in Isaiah. By calling Job 'my servant,' God claims him and vouches for him.
8. The fact that God raises Job's name first has troubled interpreters for centuries. It means that Job's suffering, in one sense, begins with God's pride in him. The Adversary did not come looking for Job — God offered him.
9. The word chinnam ('for nothing, without cause') appears again in 2:3, where God will say the Adversary incited Him against Job chinnam ('without cause'). The same word frames both the Adversary's challenge and God's eventual acknowledgment — creating a devastating irony: God admits that Job suffered 'for nothing' in the same language the Adversary used to question whether Job worships 'for nothing.'
10. The Adversary describes God's protection with the verb sakta ('You have hedged, fenced') — the image is of a thorn hedge or protective fence surrounding Job from every direction (mi-saviv, 'all around'). The irony is that this protective hedge is exactly what Job will later complain about in a twisted form: in 3:23, Job says God has hedged him in (yasekh) so that he cannot escape suffering. The same verb, opposite meanings — protection becomes imprisonment.
10. The verb parats ('has burst out, spread') describes Job's livestock expanding across the land like a flood breaking its banks. The Adversary's description of Job's prosperity is accurate: God has blessed everything. The accusation is not that Job is ungrateful but that his gratitude is rational self-interest.
11. The Adversary challenges God to act personally: shelach na yadekha ('stretch out Your hand') — divine agency, not delegated destruction. The verb ga ('touch, strike') uses the same root (naga) that describes plagues and afflictions throughout the Hebrew Bible. The euphemistic yevarekekha ('he will bless You') again substitutes barak for the implied qalal ('curse'). The phrase al panekha ('to Your face') is the boldest element: the Adversary claims Job will blaspheme directly, openly, not in secret thought but in frontal defiance. This is the opposite of the hidden heart-sin Job feared in his children (v. 5).
12. The phrase beyadekha ('in your hand') transfers operational authority. The Adversary cannot exceed the boundary God sets, but within that boundary he has full discretion. This establishes a principle that governs the entire book: suffering operates within divine permission, not outside it.
12. The Adversary's departure from God's presence is narrated with the same formula used for courtiers leaving a king's throne room. He is a subordinate executing authorized action, not a rebel seizing independent power.
13. The scene returns to earth with vayyehi hayyom ('and the day came') — the same formula that opened the heavenly council scene in verse 6. The reader knows what Job does not: this ordinary day of family feasting is the day the Adversary has been authorized to act. The detail that they are in the eldest brother's house (beit acheihem habbekhor) anchors the catastrophe in a specific, domestic moment. They are celebrating when destruction arrives.
14. The first of four messengers arrives. The word mal'akh ('messenger') is the same word used for angels, though here it refers to a human survivor. The scene described is ordinary agricultural life — oxen plowing, donkeys grazing — peaceful normalcy that is about to be shattered. The narrative technique of beginning with the mundane before the catastrophe intensifies the shock.
15. The Sabeans (Sheva) were raiders from the Arabian Peninsula — a historical people known for both trade and raiding. The phrase vatippol Sheva ('Sheba fell upon them') uses the verb nafal ('to fall') in its military sense: a sudden, overwhelming assault. The formula va-immaltah raq ani levaddi lehagid lakh ('and I escaped, only I alone, to tell you') will be repeated by each messenger — it becomes a refrain of catastrophe, each survivor arriving with the same formulaic announcement of ruin.
16. The phrase od zeh medabber vezeh ba ('while this one was still speaking, that one came') creates a relentless rhythm — disaster arrives faster than it can be reported. The 'fire of God' (esh Elohim) is lightning, but the narrator's phrase is theologically charged: it is God's fire, falling from God's heaven, destroying God's servant's property — with God's permission. The verb vatokhlein ('and it consumed them') uses the verb akhal ('to eat, devour') — the fire ate the sheep and servants. The messenger formula repeats identically.

- 17.** The Chaldeans (Kasdim) were a Mesopotamian people, later associated with Babylon. Their military tactic — sheloshah rashim ('three heads/divisions') — describes a coordinated three-pronged assault, surrounding the herd from multiple directions. The verb vayyifshetu ('they raided, stripped') implies violent plundering. The alternation between human attackers (Sabeans, Chaldeans) and divine agency (fire from heaven) creates a pattern: some disasters come from human enemies, some from nature, but all operate under the same permission.
- 18.** The fourth messenger begins with the same formula, but now the subject shifts from livestock and servants to banekha u-venotekha ('your sons and your daughters'). The repetition of the feasting scene from verse 13 — eating and drinking wine in the oldest brother's house — creates a terrible echo: the reader already knows this scene was set up as the backdrop for disaster. The pause before the next verse is the narrative holding its breath.
- 19.** The ruach gedolah ('great wind') comes me-ever hamidbar ('from across the wilderness') — from the desert, from the direction of chaos and emptiness. It strikes be-arba pinnot habayit ('the four corners of the house') — all four simultaneously, meaning total structural collapse, not gradual damage. The verb vayyippol ('it fell') echoes the verb used for the Sabeans' attack in verse 15 (vatippol): human raiders and cosmic wind use the same verb of falling upon their victims.
- 19.** The messenger says vayyamutu ('and they died') — the starkest possible statement. No qualification, no exception. And then the survivor formula one final time: I alone escaped to tell you. The word ne'arim ('young people') is often translated 'young men' but can include all the children — the sons and daughters of verse 18.
- 20.** The me'il ('robe') is the outer garment of a wealthy or noble person — the same word used for Samuel's robe (1 Samuel 2:19) and the priestly garment. Tearing it signifies that the life it represented is torn apart. Shaving the head (vayyagoz et rosho) is a mourning practice attested throughout the ancient Near East. Both actions are physical expressions of internal devastation.
- 20.** The verb vayyishtachu ('he worshiped') is the Hishtaphel of shachah, meaning to prostrate oneself, to bow to the ground. It is the most embodied form of worship in Hebrew — not a word or a thought but a body pressed against the earth before God.
- 21.** The phrase arom ashuv shammah ('naked I will return there') has generated centuries of interpretation. 'There' (shammah) most likely refers to the earth — humans come from dust and return to dust (Genesis 3:19). But the grammatical antecedent is 'my mother's womb' (beten immi), creating the image of death as a return to the womb of the earth, the ground from which Adam was formed.
- 21.** The structure YHWH natan va-YHWH laqach is deliberately parallel: the divine name occupies the same position in both clauses, making God the agent of both abundance and loss. This is not resignation — it is theological assertion. Job claims that both realities belong to God.
- 22.** The word tiflah is rare and debated. It may derive from tafel ('tasteless, unseasoned') — meaning Job did not attribute anything 'tasteless' or 'worthless' to God. Others connect it to a root meaning 'to spit out' or 'to reject.' The Septuagint translates it as 'folly' (aphrona). We chose 'assign blame' because the context suggests Job refrained from charging God with wrongdoing — which is exactly what the friends will later accuse him of doing, and what God in chapter 38 will address directly.

2

Summary: *The heavenly council convenes again. God reaffirms Job's integrity and accuses the Adversary of inciting Him against Job 'for nothing.' The Adversary escalates: skin for skin — a man will give up anything to save his own body. God permits the Adversary to afflict Job's flesh but preserve his life. Job is struck with painful sores from head to foot. His wife tells him to curse God and die. Job refuses. Three friends — Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar — arrive, and their grief at his transformation is so great that they sit with him in silence for seven days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The seven days of silence at the end of this chapter are among the most powerful moments in the Hebrew Bible. Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar see Job from a distance and do not recognize him. They weep, tear their robes, throw dust on their heads, and sit on the ground with him for seven days and seven nights without speaking a word — ki ra'u ki gadal hakke'ev me'od ('for they saw that his suffering was very great'). Seven days is the duration of mourning for the dead. The friends are sitting shiva for a man who is still alive. Their silence is the last moment of pure compassion in the book; when they finally open their mouths in chapter 4, they will begin the long, grinding argument that causes Job almost as much pain as his sores. The friends are at their best when they say nothing.*

Translation Friction: *The Adversary's phrase or mashal ('skin for skin') in verse 4 is one of the most debated idioms in the Hebrew Bible. It may be a proverb meaning 'a man will trade one thing for another of equal value' — that is, Job surrendered his children and possessions (someone else's skin) but will not endure harm to his own body. Or it may mean 'skin in exchange for skin' — everything Job lost was external, but true devotion is only tested when the body itself is at stake. No consensus exists, and we render it literally and explain the range in the notes. Job's wife's instruction in verse 9 — barekh Elohim va-mut ('bless God and die') — uses*

the same euphemism for 'curse' that appears throughout the prologue. Her words have been interpreted as cruelty, despair, compassion (she wants his suffering to end), or pragmatic realism. We render them plainly and let the reader decide.

Connections: The second heavenly council scene parallels the first (1:6-12) with deliberate escalation: same setting, same question, same challenge, higher stakes. God's statement that Job still holds fast to his integrity 'though you incited Me against him to destroy him for nothing' (chinnam) uses the same word the Adversary used in 1:9 — 'Does Job fear God for nothing (chinnam)?' The Adversary challenged whether Job worships without cause; God admits He afflicted Job without cause. The seven-day silence of the friends (v. 13) follows the mourning protocol of Genesis 50:10 and will be echoed in Ezekiel 3:15. The number seven connects to the creation narrative — seven days of sitting in dust mirrors seven days of making the world, an anti-creation that Job will articulate fully in chapter 3.

¹Again there came a day when the sons of God came to present themselves before the LORD, and the Adversary also came among them to present himself before the LORD. ²The LORD said to the Adversary, "Where have you come from?" The Adversary answered the LORD, "From roaming through the earth and walking back and forth across it." ³The LORD said to the Adversary, "Have you considered my servant Job? There is no one like him on the earth — a blameless and upright man who fears God and turns away from evil. He still holds fast to his integrity, even though you incited Me against him to destroy him for nothing." ⁴The Adversary answered the LORD, "Skin for skin! Everything a man has he will give for his own life. ⁵But stretch out Your hand and strike his bone and his flesh — he will surely curse You to Your face." ⁶The LORD said to the Adversary, "Very well — he is in your hand. Only preserve his life." ⁷The Adversary went out from the presence of the LORD and struck Job with painful sores from the sole of his foot to the crown of his head. ⁸He took a broken piece of pottery to scrape himself with, and he sat among the ashes. ⁹His wife said to him, "Are you still holding on to your integrity? Curse God and die." ¹⁰He said to her, "You are speaking as one of the senseless women would speak. Should we accept good from God and not accept adversity?" In all of this, Job did not sin with his lips. ¹¹When Job's three friends heard about all this disaster that had come upon him, each of them set out from his own place — Eliphaz the Temanite, Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite. They arranged to meet together to go and grieve with him and comfort him. ¹²When they looked up from a distance, they did not recognize him. They raised their voices and wept. Each of them tore his robe, and they threw dust into the air over their heads. ¹³They sat with him on the ground for seven days and seven nights, and no one spoke a word to him, for they saw that his suffering was very great.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scene repeats 1:6 almost verbatim, but with one addition: lehityatsev al YHWH ('to present himself before the LORD') is stated twice, emphasizing that the Adversary's presence is deliberate and purposeful. He has returned with a report — and a new challenge. The repetition of the council scene creates a structural bracket: first test (1:6-12), first result (1:13-22), second test (2:1-6), second result (2:7-10).
2. The exchange repeats 1:7 exactly — the same courtly opening, the same answer about patrolling the earth. The repetition is formulaic and deliberate: the heavenly court operates by protocol. But the reader now brings knowledge from chapter 1 to this exchange — the Adversary has been roaming the earth and has witnessed Job's response to catastrophe.
3. The phrase levall'o ('to swallow him up, to destroy him') uses the Piel infinitive of bala ('to swallow'), which means 'to consume, to destroy utterly.' God describes what happened to Job's world as swallowing — total consumption. The fact that God uses this language about His own action is remarkable.
3. God's admission that He was 'incited' (vattesiteni) against Job raises one of the book's deepest theological problems: does God acknowledge that He was manipulated? Or is this a sovereign God taking responsibility for a decision He made freely? The text does not resolve this tension.
4. The phrase or be'ad or ('skin for skin') is an ancient proverb whose exact meaning is lost. The most common interpretation: a person will sacrifice anything external — property, even family — to protect their own body. The Adversary argues that Job's first test was not severe enough because it only destroyed what was outside Job's skin. The word nefesh ('life, self, being') in the second clause raises the stakes to existential level: a man will give everything be'ad nafsho ('for his own life/self').
4. The Adversary's logic is transactional: humans are ultimately self-interested. Job gave up possessions and children and still worshiped — but those losses, however devastating, were external. The real test is pain. Will Job still worship when his own flesh is the battleground?

5. The Adversary repeats his challenge from 1:11 with one critical change: instead of 'all that he has,' the target is now *atmov u-vesaro* ('his bone and his flesh'). Bone and flesh together represent the whole physical body — from the deepest interior (bone) to the visible surface (flesh). The challenge is to penetrate Job's own body, to make his suffering inescapable and personal. The euphemistic *yevarekekha* ('he will bless/curse You') and *al panekha* ('to Your face') repeat from 1:11.
6. God grants the escalation with a new boundary: *hinno veyadekha* ('he is in your hand') — not merely his possessions, but Job himself is now under the Adversary's power. The restriction *akh et nafsho shemor* ('only his life preserve') sets the floor: the Adversary may inflict any suffering short of death. The word *nefesh* ('life, self') is the same word the Adversary used in verse 4 — the Adversary said a man will give everything for his *nefesh*; God says the Adversary must protect Job's *nefesh*. The Adversary can torment everything up to the boundary of existence itself.
7. The *shechin ra* ('painful/evil sore') is the same word used for the sixth plague of Egypt (Exodus 9:9-11) and the disease threatened in Deuteronomy 28:35 as a covenant curse. The phrase *mikaf raglo ve-ad qodqodo* ('from the sole of his foot to the crown of his head') is a merism — a figure of speech expressing totality by naming two extremes. Job's entire body is covered. There is no part of him that is not in agony. The disease is not identified precisely — proposals range from smallpox to elephantiasis to severe dermatitis — but the text cares about the suffering, not the diagnosis.
8. The ash heap (*efer*) may refer to the communal refuse pile outside a village — a place associated with mourning, defilement, and social exclusion. In some ancient Near Eastern cultures, sitting in ashes was both a mourning practice and a sign of complete humiliation. The detail that Job takes a potsherd to scrape himself suggests the sores are oozing or crusting and that no one is caring for him — he must tend his own wounds with a piece of garbage.
9. Job's wife is unnamed in the Hebrew text and appears only in this single verse. The Septuagint expands her speech considerably, giving her a long lament about her own suffering. The Hebrew is spare: two sentences. Her question ('are you still holding fast to your integrity?') could be read as incredulity, mockery, anguish, or genuine concern that his faithfulness is only prolonging his pain.
9. The imperative *va-mut* ('and die') is the harshest element. It may mean 'let yourself die' (stop fighting to live) or it may anticipate divine punishment for blasphemy — curse God and God will strike you dead, ending your agony. Either reading makes her an agent of the very outcome the Adversary desired.
10. The phrase *bisfatav* ('with his lips') has generated enormous debate. Some read it as a simple restatement — Job did not sin in his speech. Others see it as a deliberate limitation: Job did not sin with his lips, but his inner life may already be moving toward the anguish that will erupt in chapter 3. The Hebrew is precise, and precision in Hebrew often signals intentional restriction.
10. The noun *nevalot* is related to *naval* ('fool') — the word used for Nabal in 1 Samuel 25. It describes not intellectual deficiency but moral and spiritual bankruptcy, a refusal to acknowledge God's reality. Job's rebuke places his wife's words in that category: speech that fails to account for divine sovereignty.
11. The three friends are identified by their homelands: Eliphaz the Temanite (Teman is associated with Edom, known for wisdom — see Jeremiah 49:7), Bildad the Shuhite (Shuah is linked to Abraham's son through Keturah in Genesis 25:2), and Zophar the Naamathite (location uncertain, possibly in northwest Arabia). Like Job, all three are non-Israelites — the entire dialogue takes place outside the covenant community.
11. The verb *vayyivva'adu* ('they arranged together') implies coordinated planning, not a chance meeting. The purpose is twofold: *lanud lo* ('to grieve with him' — the verb *nud* means to shake the head in sympathy, to express grief by physical gesture) and *lenacha'mo* ('to comfort him' — the verb *nacham* means to console, to give rest from pain). Their intention is good. The tragedy of the book is that their comfort will fail.
12. The phrase *hashamamah* ('toward the heavens') attached to the dust-throwing is significant — the dust goes up before it comes down, directed toward God's domain. Whether this is lament, accusation, or simply the physical gesture of grief, the direction heavenward adds theological weight.
12. The failure to recognize Job echoes Isaiah 52:14, where the Servant of the LORD is so disfigured that 'his appearance was marred beyond human semblance.' Job's transformation from the greatest man in the east to an unrecognizable figure on an ash heap is the most dramatic reversal in the Hebrew Bible.
13. The verb *gadal* ('great, large') applied to pain (*ke'ev*) means the suffering has become enormous, overwhelming, beyond what language can address. The friends' silence is the appropriate response — the rabbis later taught that a comforter should not speak until the mourner speaks first (Babylonian Talmud, Mo'ed Qatan 28b). Job will speak first in chapter 3, breaking the silence with a curse on the day he was born, and his speech will open the floodgates for the entire dialogue.
13. The seven-day silence creates a bridge between the prose prologue (chapters 1-2) and the poetic dialogue (chapters 3-41). It is the stillness before the storm of speech.

3

Summary: *Job breaks the seven-day silence — not with a prayer, not with a question, but with a curse on the day of his birth. In one of the most powerful poems in the Hebrew Bible, Job systematically reverses creation: he calls for darkness to swallow the day he was born, for the night of his conception to be erased from the calendar, for light to become void. He then asks why he was born at all, since death would have brought the rest that life has denied him. The poem moves from cursing the past to longing for non-existence to questioning the purpose of suffering.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Job 3 is a systematic anti-Genesis. Where Genesis 1 moves from darkness to light, chaos to order, void to fullness, Job reverses every movement. He calls for darkness (choshekh) to reclaim the day (yom), for light (or) to be extinguished, for the dawn to never arrive. The verbs of creation are inverted: where God said 'Let there be light,' Job says 'Let that day be darkness.' Where God saw that light was good, Job calls for a day that God does not seek from above. The poem does not merely express despair — it unmakes the world at the linguistic level. Job is not arguing that creation was a mistake; he is saying that his existence within creation is unbearable, and the only relief he can imagine is uncreation. This is not atheism — it is the protest of a man who believes God made everything and wants God to unmake one thing: the day he was born.*

Translation Friction: *The transition from the patient, worshipful Job of chapters 1-2 to the cursing Job of chapter 3 is one of the sharpest turns in all of Scripture. In 1:21, Job blessed the name of the LORD; in 3:1, he curses his day. Some scholars see this as evidence that the prose prologue and the poetic dialogue come from different sources — the patient Job of the folktale versus the anguished Job of the poet. Others see it as psychologically realistic: the seven-day silence was the threshold between endurance and collapse. The verb qillel ('to curse') in verse 1 is the antonym of barak ('to bless') — Job does not curse God directly (the Adversary's prediction remains unfulfilled), but he curses the day God made, which is as close to cursing creation as a person can come without naming the Creator.*

Connections: *Job 3 is in direct literary dialogue with Genesis 1. The vocabulary — yom ('day'), lailah ('night'), or ('light'), choshekh ('darkness'), yiqqa ('let it be called') — mirrors the creation account and inverts it. Jeremiah 20:14-18 contains a remarkably similar curse on the day of birth, and many scholars believe one passage influenced the other. The longing for Sheol as a place of rest (vv. 13-19) anticipates Ecclesiastes' reflections on death as cessation of toil. Job's question in verse 23 — 'Why is light given to a man whose way is hidden, whom God has hedged in?' — uses the same verb (sakakh, 'to hedge') that the Adversary used in 1:10, but now the hedge is a prison, not a protection.*

¹After this, Job opened his mouth and cursed the day of his birth. ²Job spoke and said:

³Let the day perish on which I was born,
and the night that said, 'A man-child is conceived.'

⁴Let that day be darkness.
Let God above not seek it out.
Let no light shine upon it.

⁵Let darkness and deep shadow claim it.
Let a cloud settle over it.
Let the blackness of day terrify it.

⁶That night — let thick darkness seize it.
Let it not rejoice among the days of the year.
Let it not enter the count of the months.

⁷Let that night be barren.
Let no cry of joy come into it.

⁸Let those who curse days curse it —
those skilled in rousing Leviathan.

⁹Let the stars of its twilight go dark.
Let it wait for light, but find none.
Let it never see the eyelids of the dawn.

¹⁰Because it did not shut the doors of my mother's womb
and hide suffering from my eyes.

¹¹Why did I not die at birth,
perish as I came from the womb?

¹²Why were there knees to receive me,
or breasts for me to nurse?

¹³For then I would be lying down in quiet,
I would be asleep — then I would have rest.

¹⁴With kings and counselors of the earth
who built ruins for themselves —

¹⁵or alongside princes who possessed gold,
who filled their houses with silver.

¹⁶Or like a stillborn child, hidden away, I would not exist —
like infants who never saw the light.

¹⁷There the wicked cease their raging,
and there the weary find rest.

¹⁸There prisoners are at ease together;
they do not hear the voice of the taskmaster.

¹⁹Small and great are there alike,
and the slave is free from his master.

²⁰Why is light given to one who suffers,
and life to those bitter in spirit?

²¹They long for death, but it does not come;
they dig for it more than for hidden treasure.

²²They rejoice to the point of exultation;
they are glad when they find the grave.

²³Why give light to a man whose way is hidden,
whom God has hedged in?

²⁴For my groaning comes before my food,
and my cries pour out like water.

²⁵For the thing I dreaded has come upon me;
what I feared has overtaken me.

²⁶I have no ease, no quiet, no rest —
only turmoil comes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is prose — it is the narrator's introduction to the poem that follows. The poetry begins in verse 3. The narrator uses the verb *qillel* without judgment: there is no editorial verdict here as there was in 1:22 and 2:10. The narrator simply reports what Job does. The absence of any 'Job did not sin' statement is conspicuous.
2. The formula *vayyaan Iyov vayyomar* ('Job answered and said') is the standard introduction for speech in the dialogue sections of the book. The verb *anah* ('answered') does not necessarily imply a response to someone else's words — it can simply mean 'spoke up, raised one's voice.' Job is answering the silence, answering his own suffering, answering the unanswerable.
3. The verb *yovad* (Qal jussive of *avad*, 'to perish') is a wish for total destruction — the day should cease to exist, not merely be forgotten. The personification of the night as speaking (*amar*) gives the night agency in the act of creation, which Job now wants revoked. The parallelism between day/birth and night/conception is the poem's structural spine: what follows will alternate between cursing the day and cursing the night.
4. The verb *darash* ('to seek, to inquire') applied to God seeking a day suggests that God's attention sustains creation — if God stops seeking a day, it ceases to exist in any meaningful sense. The word *neharah* is a poetic synonym for light, possibly with connotations of streaming or flooding light. Job wants that stream cut off.
5. The verb *yig'aluhu* ('let them redeem/claim it') from *ga'al* is striking — the same root used for the kinsman-redeemer (*go'el*). Job wants darkness to redeem the day, to claim it as its own, to take possession of it. The word *tsalmaveth* (traditionally 'shadow of death') may be a compound of *tseel* ('shadow') and *maveth* ('death'), or it may derive from *tsalmut* ('deep darkness'). Either way, it describes the densest, most impenetrable darkness imaginable.
5. The phrase *kimrirei yom* ('like the bitternesses of day' or 'like day-darkeners') is textually uncertain. It may refer to eclipses, storms, or demonic forces that darken the day. The verb *yeva'atuhu* ('let them terrify it') personifies the day as something that can experience terror — Job wants the day itself to know fear.
6. Job now turns from the day of birth to the night of conception. The word *ofel* ('thick darkness, gloom') is the deepest form of darkness — darker than *choshekh*. The verb *yiqqachehu* ('let it seize it') personifies darkness as a predator taking the night captive. The phrase *al yichad bimei shanah* ('let it not rejoice among the days of the year') uses the verb *chadah* ('to rejoice') — the night should be excluded from the calendar's celebration of time. It should not be counted (*al yavo bemispar yerachim*, 'let it not come into the number of months'). Job wants this night stricken from the record of time itself.
7. The word *galmud* ('barren, desolate, solitary') describes a night stripped of all fruitfulness. Given that this is the night of conception, the word *barren* is deliberately ironic — Job wants the night that produced him to be incapable of producing anything. The word *renanah* ('cry of joy, shout of gladness') refers to the celebratory cry that would greet a birth announcement. Job wants silence where there was joy.
8. The *orerey yom* ('cursers of the day') are sorcerers or enchanterers who possess the power to curse specific days — to make them unlucky or to blot them from existence. The reference to Leviathan (*livyatan*) is extraordinary: Leviathan is the primordial sea monster of chaos, the embodiment of cosmic disorder (see Psalm 74:14, Isaiah 27:1). Those who can rouse Leviathan are practitioners of anti-creation magic — they can awaken the forces that existed before God imposed order. Job summons these cosmic anarchists to curse the night of his conception. He is calling on the powers of chaos to unmake one moment in time.
9. Job curses the stars of the night's twilight — *nishpo* ('its twilight, its dusk') — calling for them to be extinguished. Then the night is personified as waiting for dawn: *yeqav le-or va-ayin* ('let it hope for light, but there be none'). The night should wait endlessly for a morning that never comes. The final image — *al yir'eh be-af'appei shachar* ('let it not see the eyelids of the dawn') — is one of the most beautiful in Hebrew poetry. The dawn has eyelids: the first rays of light are imagined as eyes opening. Job wants those eyes to stay shut. He wants permanent night, permanent pre-creation darkness, an eternal state before light existed.
9. The metaphor *af'appei shachar* ('eyelids of the dawn') personifies morning as a face whose eyes open to bring light. This image was famous enough to be borrowed by later poets and will be echoed in Job 41:10 [41:18 in English], where Leviathan's eyes are described with the same word.
10. Job gives the reason for his curse: *ki lo sagar daltei vitni* ('because it did not close the doors of my womb/belly'). The 'doors of the womb' (*daltei veten*) are an image of birth as passage through a gate — and Job wishes that gate had remained shut. The verb *sagar* ('to close, to shut') is the same verb used in 1:10 for God's protective hedge and in 1:5-6 for God closing Hannah's womb in 1 Samuel. If the womb had stayed closed, Job would

never have been born, and amal ('toil, suffering, misery') would have been hidden from his eyes. The word amal is one of Job's key terms for the human condition: not mere pain but laborious, grinding suffering that defines existence.

11. The poem shifts from cursing the past to questioning why existence continued. The word lammah ('why?') will become Job's signature word throughout the dialogues. He asks why death did not take him immediately — merechem amut ('from the womb I should have died'). The verb eg'va ('I should have expired') from gava means to breathe one's last, to expire — a quiet, final cessation. Job is not asking for violent death but for the simplest possible non-existence: he should have stopped breathing the moment he started.
12. The knees (birkayim) that received the newborn refer to the ancient practice of placing a newborn on the father's or mother's knees as an act of acceptance and legitimation (Genesis 50:23). The breasts (shadayim) that nursed him sustained his life. Job wishes both had been denied — that no one had received him at birth and no one had fed him. Every human kindness that kept him alive now feels like a cruelty because it extended an existence that has become unbearable.
13. The poem pivots to a vision of death as rest. Three verbs describe the peace Job imagines: shakhavti ('I would lie down'), eshqot ('I would be quiet'), yashantti ('I would sleep'). Then the conclusion: az yanuach li ('then there would be rest for me'). The verb nuach ('to rest') is the same root from which Noah's name derives and the same verb used for God's rest on the seventh day (Genesis 2:2). Death, for Job, is the sabbath he has been denied in life.
14. If Job had died at birth, he would now lie with kings and counselors — the great ones of the earth who built choravot ('ruins, desolate places'). The word choravot is ambiguous: it could mean they built monuments that are now ruins, or they built (restored) places that were already in ruins, or — most hauntingly — all human building ends in ruins. Death is the great equalizer: the builder and the stillborn lie in the same ground.
15. The parallelism continues: princes (sarim) with gold and silver — the wealthiest humans imaginable — now lie in the same stillness as the stillborn child. Their treasure (zahav, 'gold'; kesef, 'silver') could not purchase exemption from death. Job, who was himself 'the greatest of all the people of the east' (1:3), recognizes that his former wealth and the wealth of kings all end in the same silent ground.
16. The nefel tamun ('hidden miscarriage/stillborn') is a child that never reached life outside the womb — buried immediately, never seen, never named. Job envies this: lo ehveh ('I would not be'). The phrase lo ra'u or ('they did not see light') returns to the poem's central image: or ('light') as the marker of existence. Those who never see light never enter the world of suffering. Light, which in Genesis is the first good gift, is here the gateway to pain.
17. The word sham ('there') refers to Sheol, the realm of the dead. In death, the resha'im ('wicked') stop their rogez ('raging, turmoil, agitation') — they can no longer cause harm. And the yegi'ei khoach ('those exhausted in strength') find rest (yanuchu, from nuach). The verse presents death as pure cessation: no more violence from the wicked, no more exhaustion for the spent. Job does not describe an afterlife — he describes an end, a stopping, a silence.
18. The asirim ('prisoners, those bound') find sha'anan ('ease, tranquility') in death. The qol noges ('voice of the taskmaster/oppressor') — the voice that drove them to forced labor — falls silent. The word noges is the same word used for the Egyptian taskmasters in Exodus 3:7 and 5:6. Death is liberation from every form of bondage. The social hierarchies of the living world dissolve.
19. The merism qaton ve-gadol ('small and great') encompasses all of humanity — the insignificant and the powerful are the same in death. The final line — ve-eved chofshi me-adonav ('and the slave is free from his master') — is one of the most poignant in the poem. The word chofshi ('free, released') is the legal term for emancipation. Death is the manumission document that every slave eventually receives. The verse completes Job's vision of Sheol as the great equalizer: there are no classes, no hierarchies, no oppression, no masters — only rest.
20. The poem shifts from longing for personal non-existence to a universal question: lammah yitten le-amel or ('why does He give light to the sufferer?'). The subject 'He' is unnamed — it can only be God. Light (or) here means existence itself, the gift of being alive. Job asks why God gives the gift of existence to those for whom existence is torment. The parallel phrase chayyim le-marei nafesh ('life to the bitter of soul') deepens the question: why does God sustain the lives of those whose innermost selves (nefesh) are saturated with bitterness?
21. The image is startling: those who suffer hamechakkim lammavet ('wait eagerly for death') and dig for it (vayyachperuhu) as though it were matmonim ('hidden treasure, buried wealth'). The verb chapar ('to dig') and the noun matmon ('treasure, something hidden in the ground') create the image of someone excavating the earth desperately searching for the most precious thing imaginable — and that thing is death. Where treasure-seekers dig for gold, Job and those like him dig for the end of consciousness.
22. The hassemechim elei gil ('those rejoicing unto exultation') describes the most intense form of human happiness — and its object is the grave (qaver). The verb yasisu ('they are glad') reinforces the paradox: the discovery of death produces joy. This is not suicidal despair in the modern clinical sense — it is a theological protest. Job is describing people for whom life has become so unbearable that death is the only relief God has left them, and they greet it with the joy that should accompany a wedding or a harvest.
23. This verse contains one of the book's most bitter ironies. The verb vayyasekh ('He has hedged') uses a form of sakakh ('to hedge, to fence in') — the same root the Adversary used in 1:10 when he complained that God had put a protective hedge (sakta) around Job. There, the hedge was protection; here, it is imprisonment. God's fence, which once kept harm out, now keeps Job trapped inside his suffering. The word nistorah ('hidden') means Job cannot see his own path — he is lost, and the God who hid his way is the same God who hedged him in. Protection has become confinement. Providence has become a cage.

24. Job's anchati ('my sighing, my groaning') comes lifnei lachmi ('before my bread') — before he can eat, grief overtakes him. This echoes the description of Hannah in 1 Samuel 1:7, who wept and could not eat. The parallel line — vayyittekhū khammayim sha'agotai ('my roarings pour out like water') — uses the powerful word sha'agah ('roaring'), typically used for lions (Amos 3:8). Job's grief is not quiet weeping but the roar of an animal in agony, and it flows like water — unceasingly, uncontrollably.
25. The cognate accusative pachad pachad'ti ('a dread I have dreaded') intensifies the fear — this is not casual worry but the deepest terror Job could imagine. The verb ye'etayeni ('it has come upon me') and yavo li ('it has come to me') describe the feared thing arriving, materializing, becoming real. This verse retroactively reveals that Job's pre-disaster piety (offering sacrifices for his children's possible sins in 1:5) was driven partly by fear. His worst nightmare has happened. The irony is that his fear of God (yirat Elohim, 1:1) coexisted with a fear that God might not protect him — and the second fear has been confirmed.
26. The poem ends with three negated verbs: lo shalvati ('I have no ease'), lo shaqat'ti ('I have no quiet'), lo nach'ti ('I have no rest'). These three words — shalvah, sheqet, nuach — are precisely the three states Job longed for in death (verse 13: lie down, be quiet, rest). What the dead possess, the living Job is denied. And then the final word: vayyavo rogez ('and turmoil comes'). The word rogez ('agitation, turmoil, rage') is the same word used in verse 17 for what the wicked cease doing in Sheol. The wicked find peace in death; Job finds only rogez in life. The poem ends not with resolution but with ongoing disturbance — the silence is broken, the lament is launched, and the dialogue that will consume the next thirty-five chapters has begun.

4

Summary: *Eliphaz the Temanite, the eldest and most measured of the three friends, breaks the silence. He begins with a careful appeal to Job's own past: Job has comforted many others — can he not endure what he has taught? Eliphaz then articulates the doctrine of retribution: the innocent do not perish; the wicked are destroyed by God's breath. He climaxes with a terrifying account of a night vision in which a spirit passed before his face and whispered a question that haunts the rest of the book: 'Can a mortal be righteous before God? Can a man be pure before his Maker?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Eliphaz's night vision (vv. 12-21) is one of the most uncanny passages in the Hebrew Bible. A spirit (ruach) glides past his face, his hair stands on end, a form (temunah) hovers before his eyes but he cannot make out its appearance, and then a voice speaks from the silence. The vision belongs to a category of experience that the Hebrew Bible rarely describes with this level of sensory detail — the reader feels the dread, the stillness, the skin prickling. The question the voice asks — 'Can a mortal be righteous before God?' — seems unanswerable. But the question contains an assumption: that human beings are fundamentally impure, that suffering is therefore always deserved, and that no one should expect better from God. This assumption will drive the entire dialogue. Eliphaz believes he has received a revelation; Job will eventually argue that Eliphaz has received a theology masquerading as revelation.*

Translation Friction: *Eliphaz's theology is not wrong in the way that obvious falsehood is wrong — it is wrong in the way that a half-truth is wrong. His observation that the wicked are destroyed (vv. 8-11) is a genuine part of biblical wisdom (Proverbs 10:25, Psalm 1:6). His night vision's question — can a mortal be righteous before God? — is theologically sound in the abstract (Psalm 143:2). The problem is application: Eliphaz uses general principles to interpret a specific case, and the specific case (Job) is the exception that demolishes the rule. The reader knows from chapters 1-2 that Job is not suffering for sin. Eliphaz does not know this. His speech is therefore a masterpiece of misapplied wisdom — every individual statement is defensible, but the whole argument is catastrophically wrong.*

Connections: *Eliphaz's retribution theology draws from the same well as Proverbs and Deuteronomy: obedience brings blessing, disobedience brings curse (Deuteronomy 28). His night vision echoes the prophetic call narratives (Isaiah 6, Ezekiel 1) but with a crucial difference: the prophets receive a commission, Eliphaz receives a question. The images of lions destroyed (vv. 10-11) recall Psalm 34:10 and Nahum 2:11-12. The question 'Can a mortal be righteous before God?' will be answered implicitly by the entire book: not by human achievement, but by God's choice to engage with Job at the end (chapters 38-41). Eliphaz's theology is the starting position that the book will spend thirty-seven chapters dismantling.*

¹Then responded:

²If one ventures a word with you, will you be wearied?
But who can hold back from speaking?

³You have instructed many;
you have strengthened weak hands.

⁴Your words have steadied those who stumbled;
you have strengthened buckling knees.

⁵But now it has come upon you, and you falter;
it touches you, and you are shaken.

⁶Is not your fear of God your confidence?
Is not the integrity of your ways your hope?

⁷Consider now — what innocent person has ever perished?
Where have the upright been destroyed?

⁸As I have seen, those who plow iniquity
and sow trouble reap it.

⁹By the breath of God they perish;
by the blast of His anger they are consumed.

¹⁰The lion roars, the fierce lion growls,
but the teeth of the young lions are broken.

¹¹The old lion perishes for lack of prey,
and the cubs of the lioness are scattered.

¹²Now a word was brought to me in secret;
my ear caught a whisper of it.

¹³In troubled thoughts from visions of the night,
when deep sleep falls on people,

¹⁴Dread came upon me, and trembling,
and all my bones shook with fear.

¹⁵A spirit glided past my face;
the hair of my body stood on end.

¹⁶It stopped — I could not make out its appearance.
A form stood before my eyes.
Silence — then a voice I heard:

¹⁷Can a mortal be righteous before God?
Can a man be pure before his Maker?

¹⁸If He puts no trust in His servants,
and charges His angels with error —

¹⁹How much less those who dwell in houses of clay,
whose foundation is in the dust —
crushed more easily than a moth!

²⁰Between morning and evening they are shattered;
with no one noticing, they perish forever.

²¹Is not their tent cord pulled up within them?
They die — and not in wisdom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Eliphaz speaks first because he is the eldest and most senior of the three friends. Teman, his homeland, was proverbially associated with wisdom (Jeremiah 49:7; Obadiah 8-9). His speaking first establishes a pattern: the friends speak in order of seniority (Eliphaz, Bildad, Zophar), each round becoming more aggressive as Job refuses to accept their theology.
2. Eliphaz begins with courteous hesitation: hanissah davar elekha til'eh ('if a word is attempted toward you, will you grow weary?'). The verb nissah ('to attempt, to test, to venture') suggests that Eliphaz knows his words may not be welcome. But then he asserts necessity: atsor bemillin mi yukhal ('to restrain oneself in words, who is able?'). He cannot remain silent. The tension between his caution and his compulsion mirrors the larger problem: the friends have good intentions but cannot resist the urge to explain.
3. Eliphaz appeals to Job's own track record as a counselor: yissarta rabbim ('you have instructed/corrected many') and yadayim rafot techazzeq ('weak hands you have strengthened'). The verb yissar ('to instruct, to discipline, to correct') implies that Job has been the one who counseled others through suffering. The image of strengthening weak hands (yadayim rafot) is used in Isaiah 35:3 for the encouragement of the discouraged. Eliphaz's point is sharp: you were the teacher — can you not now receive what you taught?
4. The parallelism continues: koshel yeqimun millekha ('the stumbling one your words would raise up') and birkkayim kor'ot te'amets ('bending knees you would make firm'). Eliphaz is painting Job's former life as a healer of the afflicted — the very role Job would have played for someone in his current condition. The verb te'amets ('you would make firm, strengthen') from amats is the word God uses to encourage Joshua (Joshua 1:6-7). Job strengthened others the way God strengthens leaders.
5. The pivot: ki attah tavo elekha vattele ('but now it comes to you and you grow weary'). The word attah ('now') marks the shift from Job's past strength to his present collapse. The verb tiga ('it touches') is the same root (naga) the Adversary used in 1:11 — 'touch everything he has.' Eliphaz does not know about the heavenly council, but he uses the Adversary's own verb. The verb tivvahal ('you are shaken, dismayed') describes the terrified confusion of someone whose world has become incomprehensible. Eliphaz's observation is accurate — the implicit accusation is that Job should practice what he preached.
6. Eliphaz asks a rhetorical question built on two of Job's defining qualities from 1:1: yir'atekha ('your fear [of God]') should be your kislakh ('confidence, assurance'), and tom derakhekha ('the completeness/integrity of your ways') should be your tiqvah ('hope'). The word tom ('integrity, completeness') is the same root as tam ('blameless') from 1:1. Eliphaz is telling Job that his own righteousness should sustain him — an argument that sounds encouraging but actually undermines itself: if righteousness guarantees safety, then suffering implies a lack of righteousness.
7. This is the core of Eliphaz's retribution theology: mi hu naqi avad ('who is he, the innocent one, who has perished?'). The implied answer is 'no one.' The righteous (yesharim, 'upright ones') are never cut off (nikhchadu, 'destroyed, exterminated'). This is a defensible generalization drawn from the wisdom tradition — but the reader knows it is false in Job's specific case. Job is naqi and yashar, and he is perishing. Eliphaz's question, meant to comfort, actually accuses: if the innocent do not perish, and you are perishing, then...
8. Eliphaz appeals to personal observation: ka'asher ra'iti ('as I have seen'). His claim is empirical, not merely theoretical. The agricultural metaphor — chosheshei aven ('those who plow iniquity') and zor'ei amal ('those who sow trouble/misery') — describes sin as a deliberate cultivation. You plow the field, you sow the seed, you harvest the crop. The verb yiqts'eruhu ('they reap it') means they harvest exactly what they planted. This is the Deuteronomic principle in agricultural dress: sin produces suffering as surely as seeds produce grain.
9. The nishmat Eloah ('breath of God') that destroys the wicked is the same word (neshamah) used for the breath of life God blew into Adam (Genesis 2:7). The breath that creates can also destroy. The ruach appo ('wind/spirit of His nostrils/anger') makes God's anger physical — it is a hot blast from His face. The verbs yov'du ('they perish') and yikhlu ('they are consumed, finished') describe total destruction. Eliphaz's God is a God of strict justice: the breath that gives life takes it back when the recipient is wicked.
10. Eliphaz uses an extended lion metaphor (vv. 10-11) with five different Hebrew words for lion: aryeh ('lion'), shachal ('fierce lion'), kefir ('young lion'), layish ('old lion,' v. 11), and lavi ('lioness,' v. 11). The point: even the most powerful predators are destroyed when God acts against them. The broken teeth (shinnei kefirim nitt'u) represent power rendered useless. The metaphor implicitly compares the wicked to lions — fierce but ultimately helpless before God.

11. The layish ('old lion') dies not in combat but mibli teref ('for lack of prey') — it starves. The mighty predator becomes helpless. The benei lavi ('cubs of the lioness') are yitpparadu ('scattered, dispersed') — the family unit disintegrates. The lion imagery presents an entire dynasty brought to nothing: the patriarch starves, the mother cannot protect, the children scatter. Eliphaz intends this as a portrait of the wicked, but the reader cannot help hearing an echo of Job's own destroyed family.
12. The night vision begins. The verb yegunav ('was stolen, smuggled') from ganav ('to steal') describes the word coming to Eliphaz covertly, illicitly almost — as though this knowledge was smuggled out of the divine realm. The phrase shemets menhu ('a whisper of it') suggests that even what he received was only a fragment, a trace. The word shemets appears only here and in 26:14, both times meaning 'a tiny portion, a whisper.' Eliphaz claims to have overheard something from beyond — but only a fragment.
13. The word se'ippim ('troubled thoughts, disquieting reflections') describes the agitated mental state between waking and sleeping — not dreams exactly, but disturbed consciousness. The chezionot lailah ('visions of the night') are nocturnal revelations. The tardemah ('deep sleep') that falls on people is the same word used for the deep sleep God cast on Adam (Genesis 2:21) and on Abraham (Genesis 15:12). It is a divinely induced state of altered consciousness — not ordinary sleep but a threshold between the human and divine worlds.
14. The physical experience of the vision: pachad qera'ani ('dread met me, called on me') and re'adah ('trembling'). The verb hifchid ('caused to fear, made to shake') applied to rov atsmotai ('the multitude of my bones') means his entire skeleton was vibrating with terror. This is not metaphor — Eliphaz is describing the somatic experience of encountering the numinous. His bones shook. The encounter with the divine produces not comfort but dread.
15. The ruach ('spirit, wind, breath') passes al panai ('over my face') — Eliphaz feels it but cannot grasp it. The verb yachalof ('it glided past, it passed by') suggests smooth, silent movement — the spirit does not stop for Eliphaz but moves past him. The response is primal: tesammeir sa'arat besari ('the hair of my flesh bristled'). The verb sammar ('to bristle, to stand on end') describes the involuntary physical reaction to the uncanny — goosebumps, the hair standing up, the body recognizing something the mind cannot process.
16. The spirit stops (ya'amod) but its appearance (mar'ehu) cannot be discerned (lo akkir, 'I could not recognize/identify'). A temunah ('form, likeness, shape') stands before Eliphaz's eyes — the same word used in Deuteronomy 4:12 for what Israel did not see at Sinai ('you heard a voice but saw no form'). Then demamah ('silence, stillness') — the same word as in the 'still small voice' (qol demamah daqqah) of 1 Kings 19:12. And from the silence, a voice. The sequence — presence, unknowability, form without features, silence, voice — is the phenomenology of revelation stripped to its barest elements.
17. The voice's question is the theological pivot of Eliphaz's entire speech. The word enosh ('mortal, frail human') emphasizes human weakness and mortality. The verb yitsddaq ('be righteous, be justified') from the root ts-d-q asks whether any human can stand in a right relationship with God on their own merit. The parallel — im me-osehu yithar gaver ('or can a strong man be pure before his Maker?') — uses gever ('strong man, warrior') and the verb taher ('to be clean, pure'). The preposition min in me-Eloah and me-osehu can mean 'before' (in comparison with) or 'more than.' If 'more than,' the question is absurd — of course no human is more righteous than God. If 'before,' the question is devastating — can any human be righteous when standing before God? The second reading is the one that matters.
18. The argument moves from greater to lesser: if God does not trust even His own servants (avadav, meaning angels or celestial beings) and finds tohalah ('error, folly, unreliability') in His messengers (mal'akhav), how much less can He trust human beings? The word tohalah is rare, possibly meaning 'error' or 'lack of steadiness.' The point is radical: even the heavenly court is not fully reliable in God's eyes. If angels fall short, mortals have no chance.
19. The phrase shokhne batei chomer ('those dwelling in houses of clay') is a metaphor for the human body — flesh is clay (chomer), and its foundation (yesod) is dust (afar), echoing Genesis 2:7. The verb yedakkeum ('they are crushed') describes humans being destroyed lifnei ash ('before a moth' or 'more easily than a moth'). The moth (ash) is among the most fragile of creatures — and humans are crushed even more easily. The verse reduces human existence to its material reality: we are clay houses built on dust, and we collapse more readily than an insect.
20. The phrase mibboqer la-erev ('from morning to evening') means within a single day — human life can be destroyed in the span of hours. The verb yukattu ('they are beaten, shattered') from katat describes being pounded to pieces. The phrase mibli mesim ('without one placing [attention]') means no one notices, no one takes account. The verb yov'du ('they perish') is the same verb Job used in 3:3 for his wish that the day of his birth would perish. Lanetsach ('forever') is the most chilling word: they perish permanently, with no one to remember them.
21. The final image is of a tent whose cord (yeter, 'tent cord, bowstring, excess') is pulled up (nissa, 'pulled out, torn away') — the structure collapses because the cord that held it taut has been removed. The human body is a tent; death is the removal of its supporting cord. The final phrase ve-lo bechokmah ('and not in wisdom') is ambiguous: they die without having attained wisdom, or they die and no one is wise enough to understand why. Either reading is bleak. Eliphaz's night vision reduces humanity to fragile clay tents that collapse without warning and without meaning.

5

Summary: *Eliphaz continues his first speech, moving from his night vision to practical counsel. He warns that resentment kills the foolish, describes how God overturns the schemes of the cunning, and then shifts to a remarkable hymn of praise: God sets the lowly on high, rescues the needy, and performs wonders without number. Eliphaz closes with what he considers his strongest argument — that suffering is divine discipline, and that the person who accepts God's correction will be restored to prosperity, safety, and abundant descendants. He tells Job to accept this teaching as tested wisdom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The most remarkable feature of this chapter is how beautiful Eliphaz's theology sounds and how wrong it is in Job's case. His hymn to God's power (vv. 9-16) is genuinely magnificent — it could stand alongside any psalm of praise. His description of divine discipline (vv. 17-26) articulates a theology of suffering that has comforted millions. The problem is not that Eliphaz is saying foolish things — he is saying wise things to the wrong situation. He is prescribing medicine for a disease Job does not have. His final promise — 'you will come to the grave in full vigor, like a sheaf gathered in its season' (v. 26) — is precisely what God will eventually restore to Job in chapter 42, but not for the reasons Eliphaz thinks. Eliphaz is right about the destination and wrong about the road. This is what makes him more dangerous than a simple fool: his wisdom is real but his application is lethal.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between chapter 5 and the Psalms is complex. Verses 9-16 echo hymnic praise found in Psalms 107, 113, and 146-147. Verse 17 — 'Happy is the one whom God corrects' — is nearly identical to Psalm 94:12 and Proverbs 3:11-12 (later quoted in Hebrews 12:5-6). Eliphaz is quoting what we would call Scripture to Job. This creates a hermeneutical crisis: is the Bible wrong when Eliphaz quotes it? No — but truth misapplied to the wrong context becomes falsehood. The doctrine of divine discipline is biblical; the assumption that all suffering is discipline is not. Eliphaz cannot distinguish between suffering that corrects and suffering that tests, because he does not have access to the heavenly council scene.*

Connections: *Eliphaz's hymn to God's power (vv. 9-16) draws on the same theological tradition as Isaiah 40-55, where God lifts the lowly and overturns the plans of the wise. His statement about divine discipline (v. 17) will be echoed by the author of Hebrews (12:5-6) and by James (5:11), who commends Job's endurance. The list of deliverances in verses 19-22 — famine, war, scourge, destruction, wild beasts — reads like a condensed version of the covenant blessings in Leviticus 26 and Deuteronomy 28. Eliphaz is applying the Deuteronomic covenant to a non-Israelite situation, and the book of Job will demonstrate that the equation does not hold universally. Paul's citation of verse 13 in 1 Corinthians 3:19 ('He catches the wise in their own craftiness') shows that Eliphaz's theology, while misapplied to Job, contains genuine truth when properly directed.*

¹Call out, if you will — who will answer you?

To which of the holy ones will you turn?

²For vexation kills the fool,
and jealousy slays the simple.

³I myself have seen the fool taking root,
but suddenly I cursed his dwelling —

⁴His children are far from safety;
they are crushed at the gate with no one to rescue them.

⁵The hungry devour his harvest,
taking it even from among thorns;
the thirsty pant after his wealth.

⁶For misery does not spring from the dust,
nor does trouble sprout from the ground.

⁷But a human being is born for trouble,
as surely as sparks fly upward.

⁸But as for me, I would seek God;
I would lay my case before God —

⁹He does great things beyond searching out,
wonders beyond counting —

¹⁰He gives rain on the face of the earth
and sends water on the open fields.

¹¹He sets the lowly on high,
and those who mourn are lifted to safety.

¹²He frustrates the schemes of the cunning,
so that their hands achieve no success.

¹³He catches the wise in their own craftiness,
and the counsel of the twisted is swept away.

¹⁴By day they run into darkness,
and at noon they grope as in the night.

¹⁵He saves the needy from the sword of their mouth,
and from the hand of the powerful.

¹⁶So the poor have hope,
and injustice shuts its mouth.

¹⁷How blessed is the person whom God corrects;
do not despise the discipline of the Almighty.

¹⁸For He wounds, but He bandages;
He strikes, but His hands heal.

¹⁹In six troubles He will rescue you;
in seven, no harm will touch you.

²⁰In famine He will redeem you from death,
and in war from the power of the sword.

²¹From the lash of the tongue you will be hidden;
you will not fear destruction when it comes.

²²At destruction and hunger you will laugh;
do not fear the beasts of the earth.

²³For you will have a covenant with the stones of the field,
and the beasts of the field will be at peace with you.

²⁴You will know that your tent is secure;
you will inspect your fold and find nothing missing.

²⁵You will know that your offspring will be many,
your descendants like the grass of the earth.

²⁶You will come to the grave in full vigor,
like a sheaf of grain gathered in its season.

²⁷See — we have examined this, and it is so.
Hear it, and know it for yourself.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Eliphaz challenges Job to find an intercessor: qera na ('call out, please') — but who will answer (hayesh onekha, 'is there one answering you')? The qedoshim ('holy ones') are likely the members of the heavenly court, the divine council. Eliphaz implies that no celestial being will take Job's side against God. The irony is devastating for the reader: Job will eventually appeal directly to God and bypass every intermediary, and God will answer him — but not until chapter 38.
2. Eliphaz warns that ka'as ('vexation, anger, resentment') kills the evil ('fool') and qin'ah ('jealousy, zeal, envy') kills the poteh ('simple, gullible one'). The evil in wisdom literature is not merely unintelligent but morally deficient — a person who rejects the fear of God. Eliphaz is implicitly warning Job: do not become the fool who is destroyed by his own resentment against God. The advice is pragmatic — anger at God will only make things worse — but it also trivializes Job's grief by categorizing it as foolishness.
3. Eliphaz again appeals to personal observation: ani ra'iti ('I myself have seen'). The evil mashrish ('taking root') appeared to be flourishing — the agricultural metaphor describes apparent prosperity. But then pit'om ('suddenly') — the fool's dwelling (naveh, 'habitation, pasture') was cursed. The verb eqqov ('I cursed') is unexpected: did Eliphaz pronounce a curse, or did he recognize that the dwelling was already under a curse? The ambiguity is deliberate. Either way, the fool's security was an illusion.
4. The fool's children (banav) are far from yesha ('safety, salvation, deliverance') and are crushed (yiddakk'u) bassha'ar ('at the gate') — the city gate being the place of legal proceedings and public judgment. With no deliverer (ein mats'il), they are defenseless. The mention of children being destroyed is staggeringly insensitive given that Job's ten children have just died, though Eliphaz frames this as the fate of the fool's children, not the righteous man's. The text does not tell us whether Eliphaz realizes the parallel.
5. The fool's accumulated wealth is consumed by others: the ra'ev ('hungry') eats his harvest, taking it even from within the thorn-hedge (mi-tsinnim) that was meant to protect it. The verb sha'af ('to pant, to gasp') describes the tsamim ('thirsty ones') eagerly consuming his wealth (cheilam). The protective barriers the fool erected are useless — hunger and thirst (representing desperate people or perhaps divine agents of redistribution) penetrate every defense.
6. Eliphaz's point: aven ('misery, iniquity') does not come from the afar ('dust') and amal ('trouble, toil') does not sprout (lo yitsmach) from the adamah ('ground'). Suffering is not random, not a natural event like a plant growing from soil. It has a cause — and the implied cause is human sin. This is the retribution doctrine in its purest form: trouble does not just happen; it is produced by something. The verse denies the possibility of meaningless suffering, which is exactly what Job is experiencing.
7. This famous verse — adam le-amal yullad ('a human is born for trouble') — seems to contradict verse 6. There, Eliphaz said trouble does not spring from the ground; here, he says humans are born to trouble. The resolution: trouble does not arise randomly from nature but is inherent in the human condition. The phrase u-vnei reshef yagbi'u uf ('and the sons of flame fly upward') compares trouble's inevitability to the physical law that sparks rise. The bene reshef ('sons of Resheph' or 'sons of flame') could be sparks, flames, or even mythological fire-beings. The image: just as fire naturally ascends, human beings naturally encounter trouble.
8. Eliphaz models what he thinks Job should do: ulam ani edrosh el El ('but I, I would seek God'). The verb darash ('to seek, to inquire, to consult') implies going to God for answers and for help. The phrase asim divrati ('I would place my word/case') uses language of legal petition — presenting a case before a judge. The irony is that Job will eventually do exactly this (laying his case before God), but God's answer will vindicate Job, not Eliphaz's theology.
9. The hymn to God's power begins. The phrase oseh gedolot ve-ein cheqer ('doing great things and there is no searching out') declares God's acts to be beyond human comprehension. The nifla'ot ('wonders, marvelous deeds') are ad ein mispar ('until there is no number') — infinite in quantity. This language echoes Psalm 145:3 and will be echoed by Job himself in 9:10, where he quotes Eliphaz's words verbatim but with a radically different meaning: for Job, God's unsearchable power is a source of terror, not praise.

10. The hymn specifies God's power in concrete terms: rain (matar) on the earth and water (mayim) on the chutsot ('fields, open places, streets outside'). Rain in the ancient Near East was the fundamental sign of divine favor — without it, everything died. Eliphaz's theology begins with a truth no one disputes: God sends the rain. The question the book raises is whether this generous God also sends suffering, and if so, why.
11. The social reversal: shefalim ('the lowly, the humble') are placed le-marom ('on high'). The qodrim ('those in dark clothing, those who mourn') are lifted to yesha ('safety, deliverance, salvation'). This echoes Hannah's song (1 Samuel 2:7-8) and anticipates Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:52). Eliphaz's theology of divine reversal is not wrong — it is one of the deepest themes in Scripture. His error is assuming it operates mechanically: the lowly are always lifted, the suffering always rescued, in this life, on this timetable.
12. The verb mefer ('frustrates, breaks, annuls') applied to the machshevot ('plans, schemes, devices') of the arumim ('crafty, shrewd') describes God dismantling human cleverness. The arumim are not merely intelligent but manipulative — the word arum describes the serpent in Genesis 3:1. Their hands cannot accomplish tushiyah ('success, sound wisdom, lasting achievement'). God undoes the work of those who rely on their own cunning rather than on divine wisdom.
13. This verse is quoted by Paul in 1 Corinthians 3:19 — loked chakhamim be-ormam ('He catches the wise in their own craftiness'). The verb loked ('catches, seizes, traps') makes God a hunter who uses the wise man's own cleverness (ormah, 'craftiness, shrewdness') as the trap. Their plans become their snare. The niftallim ('twisted, perverse, crooked') find their counsel (atsah) swept away (nimharah, 'hurried along, carried headlong') — their carefully laid plans collapse in a rush. God does not need to introduce new obstacles; He simply lets the cunning trap themselves.
14. The reversal of day and night: yomam yefagshu choshekh ('in the daytime they encounter darkness'). The cunning who thought they could see clearly are blinded in broad daylight. The verb yemasheshu ('they grope, feel about') describes the blind reaching out with their hands, unable to navigate. In the tsohorayim ('noon, the brightest point of the day'), they stumble like people in total darkness. This inversion of light and darkness echoes Deuteronomy 28:29 (a covenant curse) and contrasts with Job 3, where Job cursed the day's light — here Eliphaz describes the wicked losing light as punishment.
15. God saves (vayyosha, from yasha, 'to deliver, to save') the evyon ('needy, poor, destitute') from the cherev mippihem ('sword from their mouth') — the weapon of the powerful is their speech, their legal arguments, their verbal accusations. The parallel miyyad chazaq ('from the hand of the strong') adds physical power to verbal power. God rescues those who have no defense against either words or force.
16. The hymn concludes: the dal ('poor, weak, thin') has tiqvah ('hope, expectation') because God acts on their behalf. And olathah ('injustice, wickedness') qafsa piha ('shuts its mouth') — injustice is personified as a speaker whose mouth is closed. Where Job wanted his birth-day silenced (chapter 3), Eliphaz says God silences injustice. The image is of a courtroom where the false accuser is finally made to be quiet.
17. This is Eliphaz's central counsel: hinneh ashrei enosh yokichennu Eloah ('blessed is the mortal whom God reproves'). The word ashrei ('blessed, happy, fortunate') is the same word that opens Psalm 1 and the Beatitudes. The verb yokichennu ('reproves him, corrects him, argues with him') from yakach implies judicial correction — God identifies what is wrong and demands change. The musar Shaddai ('discipline of the Almighty') is the same concept found in Proverbs 3:11-12, later quoted in Hebrews 12:5-6. Eliphaz is offering Job what he considers the highest wisdom: suffering is discipline, and discipline is a sign of God's attention, not His abandonment. The problem is that Job's suffering is not discipline — it is a test whose nature Job cannot know.
18. Eliphaz presents God as both wounder and healer: yakh'iv ('He causes pain') and yechbash ('He binds up, bandages'). The verb yimchats ('He strikes, wounds') is paired with yadav tirpeinah ('His hands heal'). The same God, the same hands — destruction and restoration come from the same source. This theology echoes Deuteronomy 32:39 ('I wound and I heal') and Hosea 6:1 ('He has torn, and He will heal us'). The principle is sound; the application to Job is not, because Job's suffering is not a wound meant to heal but a test meant to demonstrate.
19. The numerical ladder $x / x+1$ ('six / seven') is a common wisdom device (Proverbs 6:16, 30:15, 18, 21, 29; Amos 1:3). It means 'in every possible trouble' — the number is not literal but comprehensive. The verb yatssilekha ('He will rescue you') and the promise lo yigga bekha ra ('no evil will touch you') constitute Eliphaz's core assurance: God will protect the disciplined person from all harm. The verb naga ('to touch, to strike') is once again the word the Adversary used in 1:11 — Eliphaz unknowingly promises that the very thing the Adversary was authorized to do will not happen to the righteous.
20. The specific deliverances begin: be-ra'av padekha mimmaveth ('in famine He has redeemed you from death'). The verb padah ('to redeem, to ransom') is the language of liberation — the same verb used for the exodus. In war (milchamah), God delivers from the sword (cherev). Eliphaz is listing the classic threats of the ancient world — famine and warfare — and claiming that God's disciplined servant is immune to both.
21. The shot lashon ('scourge/lash of the tongue') describes slander, verbal attack, and social destruction through speech. The verb techabei ('you will be hidden, sheltered') promises divine protection from the most painful social weapon. The second line — ve-lo tira mishshod ki yavo ('you will not fear destruction when it comes') — assures fearlessness in the face of shod ('devastation, violence, ruin'). For Job, who has already experienced both physical and social destruction, these promises must sound hollow at best.
22. The verb tischaq ('you will laugh') elevates the promise from mere safety to joyful confidence — the disciplined person will find destruction (shod) and famine (kafan) laughable, not threatening. The chayyat ha-arets ('beasts of the earth, wild animals') were a real threat in the ancient world, representing the untamed forces of nature. Eliphaz promises immunity from every category of danger: speech, war, famine, and wild animals.
23. The image of a covenant (berit) with the stones of the field is one of the most evocative in the chapter. The avnei hassadeh ('stones of the field') that normally make farming impossible will cooperate with the disciplined person. The chayyat hassadeh ('beasts of the field') will be hushlmah lakh ('at peace with you'). The verb from shalam ('to be whole, complete, at peace') describes perfect harmony between the human and the natural world.

This is an Eden-like vision — creation itself enters into covenant with the righteous. The theology is beautiful; the timing is cruel.

24. The word shalom ('peace, wholeness, completeness') applied to the ohel ('tent') means the home is intact, safe, undisturbed. The verb paqad'ta ('you will inspect, visit, attend to') and navekha ('your dwelling, your fold') describe a shepherd checking on his flock and finding everything in order. The phrase ve-lo techeta ('and you will not miss, you will not fail') can mean 'you will not sin' or 'you will find nothing missing' — the verb chata in its basic sense means 'to miss the mark.' We chose the latter reading because it fits the pastoral context: nothing in your life will be lacking.
24. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'secure' rather than default 'peace' because the context describes the safety of one's tent/home — the 'wholeness/intact' sense of shalom applied to physical security.
25. Eliphaz promises abundant descendants: rav zar'ekha ('your seed will be many') and tse'etsa'ekha ke-esev ha-arets ('your offspring like the grass/vegetation of the earth'). The language echoes the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 13:16, 15:5) — numerous descendants as a sign of divine blessing. For Job, whose ten children have just died, this promise of future offspring is either a source of hope (as 42:13 will fulfill) or an agonizing reminder of what he has lost. Eliphaz seems unaware of the knife-edge he walks.
26. The final promise: tavo vekhelach elei qaver ('you will come in your full strength to the grave'). The word kelach ('ripeness, full vigor, full age') describes a long life completed in strength, not wasted by disease or cut short by violence. The simile ka-alot gadish be-itto ('like a sheaf going up in its time') compares a good death to a grain sheaf harvested at exactly the right moment — not too early, not too late. The image is of a life completed, not merely ended. This is the highest blessing the wisdom tradition can offer: a full life crowned by a timely, peaceful death. Remarkably, this is essentially what God does give Job in 42:16-17 — but not because Job accepted Eliphaz's theology.
27. Eliphaz concludes with an appeal to tested wisdom: hinneh zot chaqarnuha ken hi ('behold, this we have investigated — so it is'). The verb chaqar ('to investigate, to search out, to examine') claims empirical verification — this is not speculation but researched conclusion. The plural chaqarnuha ('we have investigated it') suggests a tradition of sages, not just Eliphaz's personal opinion. His final command: shema'ennah ve-attach da lakh ('hear it, and you — know it for yourself'). The imperative da ('know') is both an invitation and a challenge: internalize this truth. Eliphaz has delivered his best wisdom with complete sincerity. The tragedy is that his best is not good enough for what Job is going through.

6

Summary: Job responds to Eliphaz's first speech with raw, unfiltered anguish. He wishes his grief could be weighed on scales — it would outweigh the sand of the seas. He insists that his outcry is proportional to his suffering, not the reckless speech Eliphaz implied. Job describes God's arrows embedded in him and his spirit drinking their poison. He compares his friends to seasonal streams (wadis) that overflow in winter but vanish in summer heat precisely when travelers need them most. He challenges his friends: has he asked them for money or rescue? All he wants is an honest answer. He pleads with them to look at him — would he lie to their faces? The chapter reveals that Job's deepest wound is not his physical suffering but the failure of his friends to offer genuine compassion.

What Makes This Remarkable: The wadi metaphor (verses 15-20) is one of the most vivid images in the entire book. Caravans from Tema and Sheba travel through the desert counting on water at known wadi crossings, only to arrive and find dry gravel. They detour toward the wadi in hope and perish. Job applies this directly to his friends: they are seasonal streams, abundant when conditions are easy, gone when the heat comes. The metaphor operates on multiple levels — it indicts fair-weather friendship, it describes the experience of theological betrayal (the theology that was supposed to comfort now fails), and it foreshadows the broader argument of the book that simple retribution theology evaporates under pressure. Job's description of God's arrows (verse 4) draws from warrior imagery — God is not a passive judge but an active combatant who has targeted Job personally.

Translation Friction: Job's language about God in this chapter borders on accusation — God is the one shooting arrows, God is the one arraying terrors against him. This sits in deliberate tension with Job's earlier refusal to curse God (chapters 1-2). The text holds both realities: Job will not abandon God, but he will not pretend God is not the source of his suffering. The food metaphors in verses 6-7 are notoriously difficult to translate — the exact foods Job describes are uncertain, and the point may be that bland, tasteless food is revolting, just as Eliphaz's bland theology is revolting to someone in agony. Job's wish for death (verses 8-10) is not suicidal despair in the modern clinical sense but a legal plea for release from unbearable suffering.

Connections: Job's desire to have his grief weighed on scales connects to the ancient Near Eastern concept of divine judgment as weighing (Egyptian Ma'at, Daniel 5:27 'weighed in the balances'). The wadi imagery connects to Jeremiah 15:18 where the prophet accuses God of being like a deceptive stream. Job's complaint that his friends have failed him anticipates Psalm 55:12-14 where the psalmist laments betrayal by a close companion. The arrow imagery appears again in Lamentations 3:12-13 where the sufferer describes God as an archer who has made

him the target.

¹Then Job answered and said:

²If only my anguish could be fully weighed,
and my disaster placed on the scales alongside it —

³it would outweigh the sand of the seas.
That is why my words come out wild.

⁴For the arrows of the Almighty are stuck in me;
my spirit drinks their venom.
The terrors of God are lined up against me.

⁵Does the wild donkey bray when it has grass?
Does an ox bellow over its feed?

⁶Can tasteless food be eaten without salt?
Is there any flavor in the slime of a mallow plant?

⁷My whole being refuses to touch them;
they are like food that makes me sick.

⁸If only my request would come!
If only God would grant what I hope for!

⁹That God would be willing to crush me,
that he would release his hand and cut me off!

¹⁰Then I would still have this comfort —
I would leap for joy in unrelenting pain —
that I have not denied the words of the Holy One.

¹¹What strength do I have left that I should keep waiting?
What is my future, that I should hold on?

¹²Is my strength the strength of stone?
Is my flesh made of bronze?

¹³Is there no help left within me?
Has all resourcefulness been driven from me?

¹⁴A person who withholds faithful love from a friend
abandons the fear of the Almighty.

¹⁵My brothers have betrayed me like a wadi,
like seasonal streams that overflow and vanish.

¹⁶Dark with ice,
swollen where snow melts into them —

¹⁷but when the heat comes, they shrink away;
in the scorching sun they disappear from their place.

¹⁸Caravans turn aside toward them,
go up into the wasteland, and perish.

¹⁹The caravans of Tema look for water;
the traveling merchants of Sheba set their hope on them.

²⁰They are put to shame because they trusted;
they arrive at the wadi and stand there, humiliated.

²¹That is what you have become to me now:
you see something terrifying, and you recoil.

²²Did I ever say, 'Give me something'?
Or, 'Pay a bribe for me out of your wealth'?

²³Or, 'Rescue me from an enemy's grip'?
Or, 'Ransom me from the hand of tyrants'?

²⁴Teach me, and I will be silent.
Show me where I have gone wrong.

²⁵How painful honest words can be!
But what does your rebuke actually prove?

²⁶Do you think you can rebuke mere words?
The speech of a desperate man is just wind to you.

²⁷You would even cast lots over an orphan
and haggle over your own friend.

²⁸Now, please — turn and look at me.
Would I lie to your face?

²⁹Turn back — do not let injustice stand.
Turn back! My righteousness is still at stake in this.

³⁰Is there injustice on my tongue?
Can my palate not taste what is wrong?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard dialogue formula *va-ya'an* ('and he answered') introduces Job's response to Eliphaz's first speech (chapters 4-5). The verb 'answered' in Hebrew does not require a prior question — it simply means 'responded' or 'took up speech.'
2. The verb *shaqol* ('to weigh') is doubled for emphasis — 'truly, thoroughly weighed.' Job wants an objective measurement of his suffering. The *mo'znayim* ('balances, scales') evoke the ancient image of justice as precise measurement. Job's argument is mathematical: if you could quantify my pain, you would understand my words.
3. The verb *la'u* is debated — it may mean 'swallowed up' (choked, unable to speak) or 'rash, wild' (spoken without restraint). In context, Job seems to be defending his earlier outcry: his words sound extreme because his suffering is extreme. The sand of the seas is a standard biblical image for what cannot be counted or measured (Genesis 22:17, 32:12).

4. Shaddai ('the Almighty') is the divine name most associated with overwhelming power. The imagery of poisoned arrows was known in the ancient Near East — arrows were sometimes dipped in toxic substances. The verb ya'arkhuni ('they array themselves against me') is military terminology for troops lining up in battle order. Job feels surrounded by divine hostility on every side.
5. Job argues from nature: animals cry out only when they lack something. His outcry is not irrational; it is the natural response of a creature in genuine need. The pere' ('wild donkey') was a symbol of untamed freedom in the ancient Near East. Even this free creature is silent when satisfied. Job's logic is: if I am crying out, something is genuinely wrong.
6. The exact identity of the foods is debated. Tafel means 'tasteless, unseasoned.' The second food, rir challamut, is traditionally rendered 'white of an egg' but more likely refers to the mucilaginous sap of a mallow or purslane plant — a bland, slimy substance. Job's point: Eliphaz's words are like unseasoned, tasteless food — technically present but offering nothing nourishing.
7. The metaphor continues: what Eliphaz offers as comfort is repulsive to Job. The phrase divei lachmi ('sickness of my bread') suggests food that induces nausea. Job's appetite — both physical and spiritual — rejects what his friends are serving.
8. The formula mi yitten ('who will give?' = 'if only!') expresses intense longing. Job's 'request' (she'elatah) is about to be revealed in the next verses: he wants God to end his life. The word tiqvah ('hope, expectation') carries painful irony — Job's only hope is for death.
9. The verb dakha ('crush') describes total physical destruction. 'Release his hand' means to let his hand swing freely — to stop restraining the blow. Job wants God to finish what he has started. The verb batsa' ('cut off') can mean to sever or to break off, like snapping a thread.
10. Despite wanting death, Job clings to one consolation: he has not concealed or denied (kichad) the words of God. The verb salad is rare and likely means 'to leap, to exult.' The paradox is striking — Job's comfort in death would be the knowledge that he remained honest about God's own words even while suffering. The title Qadosh ('the Holy One') emphasizes God's utter distinctness.
11. Job asks two rhetorical questions exposing the absurdity of patience. He has no strength reserves to draw on, and his 'end' (qits — outcome, future) offers nothing worth enduring for. The verb ya'chel ('to wait, hope') is the same word used for patient endurance before God.
12. Job insists he is human, not mineral. Stone and bronze do not feel pain. Eliphaz's counsel assumes Job can simply endure, but Job's flesh is not bronze — it breaks, it bleeds, it feels every arrow described in verse 4.
13. Tushiyah ('resourcefulness, effective wisdom, sound judgment') is a wisdom-literature term describing the ability to navigate problems successfully. Job admits that his inner resources are exhausted — the very capacity that should help him cope has been expelled.
14. This verse is syntactically difficult and has been translated in many ways. The mas ('one who is melting, dissolving, despairing') describes the sufferer. The core argument is clear: withholding chesed from a suffering friend is a violation of the fear of Shaddai. Job elevates friendship loyalty to a theological obligation.
15. The wadi metaphor begins here and continues through verse 20. A nachal is a streambed that runs with water during the rainy season but dries up completely in summer heat. The verb bagdu ('they have betrayed, dealt treacherously') is strong covenant-breaking language — the same verb used for marital unfaithfulness in Malachi 2:14-16.
16. The wadi in winter is dark, turbid, rushing with snowmelt and ice — overflowing with apparent abundance. This is the friend in easy times: full, visible, impressive.
17. The verb zarav ('to scorch, dry up') describes the evaporation process. The parallel verb nidakhu ('they are extinguished') treats the wadis like flames that go out. The 'place' (maqom) they vanish from is exactly where travelers expected to find water — the wadi is defined by its location, and the location is now empty.
18. The subject shifts to the travelers who depend on the wadis. The 'paths of their way' describes caravan routes that detour toward known water sources. The tohu ('wasteland, void, chaos') is the same word used in Genesis 1:2 for the formless void — the travelers enter nothingness. They perish not from attack but from misplaced trust.
19. Tema and Sheba were major trading peoples of Arabia. Tema was located in northwest Arabia along major caravan routes; Sheba was in southern Arabia (modern Yemen). These are experienced desert travelers who know where water should be — and even they are deceived by the empty wadis.
20. The verb bosh ('to be ashamed, put to shame') describes the devastating experience of arriving at a place you trusted and finding it empty. The parallel verb chafar ('to be ashamed, confounded') intensifies the humiliation. This is Job's portrait of what his friends have done to him — he came to them expecting sustenance and found nothing.
21. Job applies the wadi metaphor directly: 'you have become lo' — 'nothing' or 'to it' (the empty wadi). The friends see Job's chattat ('terror, dismay, devastating condition') and respond with fear rather than compassion. Their theology cannot process what they are seeing, so they pull away.
22. Job's rhetorical questions are devastating in their simplicity. He has not asked for money, rescue, or favors. The shochad ('bribe, gift') suggests he has not even asked them to intervene with authorities on his behalf. All he wanted was their presence and honesty.
23. The verb padah ('to ransom, redeem') involves paying a price to free someone from bondage or danger. Job has asked for none of this — his expectations of friendship are far simpler than financial rescue.

- 24.** Job's offer is genuine and challenging: if his friends can identify a specific sin, he will accept it silently. The verb *shagah* ('to go astray, err') implies unintentional wandering rather than deliberate rebellion. Job is open to correction but demands specifics, not generalizations.
- 25.** The verb *marats* ('to be sharp, painful, forceful') acknowledges that truthful words do hurt — Job is not asking to be spared honest criticism. His complaint is that his friends' rebukes prove nothing. The verb *yakach* ('to argue, rebuke, prove in court') is legal language — Job wants evidence, not lectures.
- 26.** Job accuses his friends of treating his anguished words as the target rather than engaging with his actual situation. They correct his language rather than addressing his pain. The *no'ash* ('desperate, despairing') person's words are dismissed as *ruach* ('wind, breath') — insubstantial, not worth taking seriously.
- 27.** The verb *naphal* with 'al can mean 'to cast lots over' (as in dividing spoil) or 'to fall upon.' The verb *karah* ('to dig') suggests digging a pit or a trap. Job accuses his friends of treating the vulnerable (the orphan) as objects and their own friend as prey. The escalation is deliberate — if they would do this to a stranger, no wonder they treat Job this way.
- 28.** Job's plea is deeply personal: look at me. The physical act of facing another person in the ancient Near East carried the weight of honest encounter. Job insists that a face-to-face meeting would reveal his sincerity — lying while looking someone in the eye was considered especially shameful.
- 29.** Job pleads with his friends to reverse course. The *avlah* ('injustice, wrongdoing') is their premature verdict against him. His *tsidqi* ('my righteousness') is what hangs in the balance — if his friends persist in their accusation, his integrity before God and community is destroyed.
- 30.** Job closes the chapter by returning to the food metaphor from verses 6-7. His 'palate' (*chek*) is the organ of taste and discernment. Just as he could detect tasteless food earlier, he can detect moral wrong. He asks: do you really think I cannot tell the difference between justice and injustice, between truth and falsehood? Job claims the competence to evaluate his own moral condition.

7

Summary: *Job continues his response but pivots from addressing his friends to addressing God directly. He compares human life to compulsory military service and hired labor — days of drudgery with no escape. His nights bring no rest, only tossing until dawn. He describes his flesh clothed in worms and crusted dirt, his days passing faster than a weaver's shuttle, his life as mere breath. Then, in a dramatic shift, Job turns upward and speaks to God: why have you made me your target? Why do you watch me so closely? What have I done to you, O Watcher of Humanity? Even if I have sinned, how does that harm you? Why not simply pardon my transgression? Soon I will lie in the dust, and when you come looking for me, I will be gone.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most audacious theological moves in the Hebrew Bible. Job takes Psalm 8 — the celebrated hymn asking 'What is man that you are mindful of him?' — and inverts it into a complaint. In Psalm 8, divine attention is a gift: God is gloriously attentive to tiny humanity. In Job 7:17-18, divine attention is suffocating surveillance: 'What are human beings that you make so much of them, that you fix your attention on them, that you examine them every morning and test them every moment?' The psalm's wonder becomes Job's horror. The same God who lovingly attends to humanity in Psalm 8 is, in Job's experience, an unwelcome observer who will not look away long enough for Job to swallow his own spit. This inversion is not blasphemy — it is theology under pressure, asking whether God's attention is always a blessing.*

Translation Friction: *Job's language in verses 12-20 personifies God as an obsessive watcher who treats a single human being as a cosmic threat — 'Am I the sea or the sea dragon that you set a guard over me?' The sea and the tannin (sea monster) were symbols of primordial chaos that God had to subdue at creation. Job asks with bitter irony: do I really require that level of divine security? The closing verses (20-21) are especially daring — Job essentially tells God: even if I sinned, what is that to you? You are so vast that a single human's transgression should be negligible. Why not just forgive me and move on? The argument treats forgiveness as the rational, efficient response — a pragmatic appeal to a God who seems to be expending unnecessary energy on Job's destruction.*

Connections: *The inversion of Psalm 8 in verses 17-18 is the most important literary connection. The 'weaver's shuttle' image (verse 6) connects to the textile metaphors for life found in Isaiah 38:12 where Hezekiah describes God cutting his life from the loom. Job's description of life as *hevel* ('breath, vapor') anticipates Ecclesiastes, where the same word becomes the governing metaphor for human existence. The sea monster imagery (verse 12) connects to the fuller treatment in Job 26 and 41 (Leviathan). Job's plea 'let me alone' (verse 16) finds an echo in Psalm 39:13 where the psalmist makes the same request.*

¹Is not human life hard service on earth?
Are not our days like the days of a hired laborer?

²Like a slave who longs for the shade,
like a laborer waiting for his wages —

³so I have been allotted months of emptiness,
and nights of misery have been counted out for me.

⁴When I lie down I think, 'When will I get up?'
But the night drags on,
and I toss and turn until dawn.

⁵My flesh is clothed with maggots and crusts of dirt;
my skin cracks open and oozes.

⁶My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle;
they come to an end without hope.

⁷Remember that my life is just a breath;
my eyes will never see good again.

⁸The eye that sees me now will not see me again;
your eyes will look for me, but I will be gone.

⁹A cloud dissolves and is gone;
so the one who goes down to Sheol does not come back up.

¹⁰He will never return to his house,
and his place will not recognize him anymore.

¹¹So I will not hold back my mouth.
I will speak from the anguish of my spirit;
I will pour out the bitterness of my soul.

¹²Am I the sea? Am I the sea monster?
That you post a guard over me?

¹³When I say, 'My bed will comfort me,
my couch will ease my complaint' —

¹⁴then you terrify me with dreams
and frighten me with visions.

¹⁵So my throat prefers strangling,
my bones prefer death to this body.

¹⁶I am done. I will not live forever.
Leave me alone — my days are a breath.

¹⁷What are human beings that you make so much of them,
that you fix your attention on them?

¹⁸You examine him every morning
and test him every moment.

¹⁹How long until you look away from me?
Will you not let me alone long enough to swallow my spit?

²⁰Even if I have sinned — what does that do to you,
O Watcher of Humanity?
Why have you made me your target?
Why have I become a burden to you?

²¹Why not just forgive my rebellion
and take away my guilt?
For soon I will lie down in the dust,
and you will look for me — but I will be gone.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Tsava can mean military service, hard labor, or the term of service itself. The word appears in Numbers 1 for military conscription and in Isaiah 40:2 where Jerusalem's 'warfare' (tsava) is declared complete. Job universalizes the term: all human life is tsava — compulsory, exhausting, with a fixed term that cannot be shortened by the one serving it.
2. The eved ('slave, servant') yearns for tsel ('shade, shadow') — relief from the sun during forced outdoor labor. The hired worker yearns for po'alo ('his wages') — the only compensation that makes the drudgery worthwhile. Both images convey existence as endurance, not enjoyment. Job is the slave looking at the sun and the laborer counting the hours.
3. The verb hunchalti ('I have been made to inherit, allotted') implies that suffering is Job's assigned portion — his inheritance is not land or blessing but shav ('emptiness, worthlessness'). The nights of amal ('toil, misery, trouble') are minnu ('counted, appointed') — they have been deliberately measured out, not random.
4. The verb middad is uncertain — possibly 'measured out' (the evening is stretched long) or related to a root meaning 'to flee' (evening flees but is replaced by more darkness). The nedudim ('tossings, restless movements') describe insomnia driven by pain. Job is trapped between wanting the night to end and finding no rest within it.
5. The description is deliberately physical and repulsive. Rimmah ('maggots, worms') infest his open sores. Gush afar ('clods of dust/dirt') crust over the wounds. The verb raga' ('to break, crack') describes the skin splitting, and ma'as ('to reject, dissolve, run') suggests suppuration. Job's body is decomposing while he is still alive.
6. The areg ('weaver's shuttle') flies back and forth across the loom with blinding speed, and each pass adds one thin thread to the fabric. Job's days pass that fast, and when the thread runs out, the fabric is done. The tiqvah ('hope, expectation') that ends is both the thread itself (tiqvah can also mean 'cord, thread' — see Joshua 2:18) and the expectation of something better.
7. Job now begins addressing God directly. The imperative zakhor ('remember!') is a prayer verb — used throughout the Psalms to call God's attention to something He seems to have forgotten. Ruach ('wind, breath, spirit') emphasizes the brevity and insubstantiality of human life. The request is paradoxical: Job asks God to remember how forgettable human life is.
8. The shift to second person ('your eyes') confirms Job is now speaking to God. The phrase eineni ('I am not') is stark — not 'I will be absent' but 'I am not,' the language of nonexistence. Job warns God: the window for dealing with me is closing.
9. Sheol is the realm of the dead — not hell in the later Christian sense but the shadowy underworld where the dead exist in diminished form. Job's theology here reflects the standard ancient Israelite view: death is a one-way descent. The cloud metaphor emphasizes irreversibility — once a cloud dissipates, it does not reform.
10. The maqom ('place') that no longer recognizes the dead person personifies the home itself — the place where a person was known now treats him as a stranger. This verse anticipates Psalm 103:16 ('its place remembers it no more') and foreshadows Job's later meditation on death in chapter 14.
11. Job announces that his speech will be uncensored. The verb chasakh ('to restrain, hold back, spare') is negated — no filter, no diplomatic softening. The tsar ruach ('distress of spirit') and mar nefesh ('bitterness of soul') are the two sources of his speech: inner anguish and existential bitterness. What follows (verses 12-21) is directed entirely at God.
12. The yam ('sea') and tannin ('sea monster, dragon') are the primordial chaos forces that God subdued at creation (cf. Psalm 74:13, Isaiah 51:9). In Canaanite mythology, the sea god Yamm and the dragon Tannin were cosmic threats requiring divine combat. Job's question drips with sarcasm: I am one broken human being — do I really require the same level of divine containment as the forces of chaos?

13. Job attempts the most basic human remedy for suffering — lying down to rest. The *eres* ('bed, couch') and *mishkav* ('lying-place') represent the last refuge of the afflicted. But even this fails, as the next verse reveals.
14. God invades even Job's sleep. The *chalomot* ('dreams') and *chezyonot* ('visions') that should be channels of divine revelation become instruments of terror. The verb *chitat* ('to shatter, terrify') and *ba'at* ('to frighten, startle') describe a nocturnal assault. This responds directly to Eliphaz's night vision in 4:12-16 — Eliphaz offered his dream as evidence of divine wisdom; Job's dreams are evidence of divine persecution.
15. The verb *bachar* ('to choose, prefer') expresses a rational preference, not a moment of impulse. *Machanaq* ('strangling, suffocation') is chosen over continued existence in this decaying body. The 'bones' (*atsmotai*) represent the structural core of the person — even Job's framework wants out.
16. The opening *ma'asti* ('I reject, I am disgusted') has no stated object — Job rejects his own life, his situation, everything. The phrase *lo le-olam echyeh* ('I will not live forever') is not a theological statement about mortality but a practical argument: since I am going to die anyway, why torture me in the meantime? *Hevel* ('vapor, breath') emphasizes how brief and weightless human existence is.
17. The verbal and structural parallels to Psalm 8:4 are unmistakable and intentional. The question *mah enosh* ('what is a mortal?') uses *enosh* — the word for humanity that emphasizes frailty and mortality. The phrase *tashit elav libekha* ('you set your heart upon him') means you direct your focused attention toward him. In Psalm 8, this is beautiful. In Job 7, it is suffocating.
18. The verb *paqad* ('to visit, attend to, examine') can be positive (God visiting to bless) or negative (God visiting to punish). Here it means relentless inspection. The verb *bachan* ('to test, assay, refine') is metallurgical language — testing the purity of metal. Job feels like ore in a furnace that is never taken out because the Refiner never stops testing.
19. One of the most vivid lines in Job. The plea is for the smallest possible interval of divine inattention — just long enough to perform the involuntary act of swallowing saliva. The hyperbole makes a serious point: God's surveillance is so total that Job cannot perform the most basic bodily function without being watched.
20. The conditional *chatati* ('if I have sinned') does not concede guilt — it is a hypothetical that undermines the friends' logic. Even granting their premise (Job sinned), what damage does one human's sin inflict on the Almighty? The argument anticipates Elihu's point in 35:6-7. The title *notser ha-adam* parallels Daniel 4:13 where a 'watcher' is an angelic being monitoring earth. Job addresses God as the ultimate surveillance entity.
21. Job closes the chapter with breathtaking audacity. The verbs *nasa* ('to lift, carry away, forgive') and *he'evir* ('to cause to pass, remove') are standard terms for divine forgiveness. Job argues that pardon is the efficient solution: he is about to die anyway, so why not forgive and be done with it? The final image — God searching for Job in the morning and finding him gone — reverses the divine-human dynamic. Usually humans seek God; here God seeks Job and comes too late. The verb *shichar* ('to seek early, diligently') implies eager searching at dawn, but the dawn will reveal only dust.

8

Summary: *Bildad the Shuhite delivers his first speech, responding to Job with a sharper and more rigid version of Eliphaz's argument. Where Eliphaz was gentle and indirect, Bildad is blunt: Does God pervert justice? Does the Almighty distort what is right? He implies that Job's children died because of their own sin, and that if Job himself were pure and upright, God would restore him. Bildad appeals to ancestral tradition — ask the former generations, search what their ancestors discovered — and draws two nature metaphors to prove his point: papyrus cannot grow without water (the godless cannot prosper without God), and a spider's web cannot bear weight (the confidence of the wicked collapses under pressure). He concludes with assurance: God does not reject a blameless person and does not support evildoers. If Job is truly innocent, his mourning will turn to laughter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Bildad represents the voice of inherited tradition — he does not claim personal revelation (as Eliphaz did with his night vision) but appeals to the accumulated wisdom of past generations. His argument is structurally sound and theologically orthodox: God is just, sin has consequences, and the righteous are ultimately vindicated. The problem is that it is being applied to a situation where the premise does not hold. Bildad's cruelest moment comes in verse 4 where he essentially says Job's children must have sinned — otherwise why would God have killed them? This is the retribution principle at its most devastating: it requires that every sufferer be guilty, including dead children. The papyrus and spider-web metaphors are vivid and memorable, but they operate as closed systems — they assume that withering always indicates godlessness and that collapse always indicates wickedness, leaving no room for innocent suffering.*

Translation Friction: *Bildad's statement about Job's children (verse 4) is shocking in its pastoral insensitivity but logically consistent within his theology — if suffering is always punishment, then the dead children must have sinned. The text does not rebuke Bildad at this point; his theology will be dismantled gradually over the course of the dialogue and definitively in God's speech from the whirlwind (chapters 38-41). Bildad's*

appeal to tradition raises the question of whether inherited wisdom can account for unprecedented situations. His ancestors' teachings were true in many cases — the godless often do wither, the wicked often do collapse — but the universal claim ('always and without exception') breaks down in Job's case. The chapter also introduces a pattern in the dialogues: each friend is slightly harsher than the last, and each cycle of speeches escalates the conflict.

Connections: Bildad's question 'Does God pervert justice?' (verse 3) echoes Abraham's plea in Genesis 18:25 ('Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?'). The papyrus-in-the-marsh image connects to Egypt's Nile ecology and may reflect Bildad's Shuhite (eastern) perspective. The spider-web metaphor anticipates Isaiah 59:5-6 where the wicked 'weave spider webs' that cannot serve as clothing. Bildad's promise that God will fill Job's mouth with laughter (verse 21) echoes Sarah's laughter in Genesis 21:6 — in both cases, the question is whether the promise is too good to believe. The appeal to ancestral wisdom connects to Deuteronomy 32:7 ('Ask your father and he will tell you, your elders and they will explain').

¹Then Bildad the Shuhite answered and said:

²How long will you go on saying these things?
The words of your mouth are a blustering wind.

³Does God twist justice?
Does the Almighty distort what is right?

⁴If your children sinned against him,
then he handed them over to the consequences of their rebellion.

⁵But if you yourself seek God diligently
and plead with the Almighty —

⁶if you are pure and upright,
then surely he will rouse himself for you
and restore your rightful home to prosperity.

⁷Your former state will seem small,
but your future will flourish beyond measure.

⁸Ask the previous generation, I urge you;
pay attention to what their ancestors discovered.

⁹For we are only from yesterday and know nothing;
our days on earth are a shadow.

¹⁰Will they not teach you and tell you?
Will they not bring forth words from understanding?

¹¹Can papyrus grow tall without a marsh?
Can reeds flourish without water?

¹²While still in its prime, before it is cut,
it withers ahead of every other plant.

¹³Such is the path of all who forget God;
the hope of the godless will perish.

¹⁴What he trusts in is fragile;
what he relies on is a spider's web.

¹⁵He leans on his house, but it does not stand;
he grabs hold of it, but it does not hold.

¹⁶He is lush in the sunlight,
and his shoots spread over his garden.

¹⁷His roots wind around a stone heap;
he clings to a house of rocks.

¹⁸But if he is torn from his place,
that place will deny him: 'I never knew you.'

¹⁹Such is the 'joy' of his way:
and from the soil, others spring up in his place.

²⁰Look — God does not reject a blameless person,
and he does not take the hand of evildoers.

²¹He will yet fill your mouth with laughter
and your lips with shouts of joy.

²²Those who hate you will be clothed in shame,
and the tent of the wicked will be no more.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bildad is identified by his clan, the Shuhites. Shuah was a son of Abraham by Keturah (Genesis 25:2), placing Bildad among the eastern peoples with Abrahamic lineage but outside the covenant line through Isaac. The Shuhites likely lived in the region east of the Jordan or in northern Mesopotamia.
2. Bildad opens with impatience. The phrase *ruach kabbir* ('a mighty/blustering wind') dismisses Job's entire speech as hot air — impressive in force but empty of substance. The verb *temalel* ('you speak') may carry a nuance of babbling or empty talk. Bildad's opening is confrontational where Eliphaz's was diplomatic.
3. Bildad's two rhetorical questions expect the answer 'no' and form the foundation of his entire argument. If God does not pervert *mishpat* ('justice, judgment') or *tsedeq* ('righteousness, what is right'), then suffering must indicate guilt. The verb *avat* ('to twist, bend, pervert') implies deliberate distortion — Bildad considers it unthinkable that God would bend the rules.
4. This is perhaps the cruelest single verse in the friends' speeches. Bildad implies that Job's ten dead children deserved their fate. The verb *shilchem* ('he sent them away, cast them off') combined with *be-yad pish'am* ('into the hand of their transgression') means God released them to the power of their own sin. The 'if' (*im*) provides thin plausible deniability, but the implication is clear: their death was judicial.
5. The verb *shachar* ('to seek early, seek diligently') implies earnest, dawn-rising devotion. Bildad offers a conditional promise: if Job turns to God properly, restoration is possible. The verb *titchannan* ('you make supplication, plead for grace') implies throwing oneself on God's mercy — acknowledging that you need something only God can give.
6. The condition is *zakh ve-yashar* ('pure and upright') — the same vocabulary the narrator used to describe Job in 1:1 (*tam ve-yashar*). Bildad unknowingly echoes God's own assessment of Job. The verb *ya'ir* ('he will rouse, awaken') suggests God has been dormant regarding Job's case and will wake up to act. The *nevat tsidqekha* ('dwelling-place of your righteousness') is Job's household restored to its former state.
7. Bildad promises that Job's *reshit* ('beginning, former state') will look like *mits'ar* ('smallness, insignificance') compared to the *acharit* ('latter end, future') that will *yisgeh* ('grow greatly, flourish'). This promise is technically fulfilled in 42:12 where Job's latter days are blessed more than his beginning — but not for the reasons Bildad assumes.
8. Bildad's epistemology is traditional: wisdom comes from inherited teaching, not personal experience or private revelation. The *dor rishon* ('former generation') and the *cheqer avotam* ('the searching/investigation of their fathers') represent accumulated generational wisdom. Bildad trusts tradition over individual claims.

9. Bildad acknowledges human limitation — a single lifetime is too short to accumulate sufficient wisdom. The *tsel* ('shadow') image describes days that have no substance. This is one of Bildad's most honest moments: he admits his own generation's ignorance. But his solution (trust tradition) creates its own problem — what if the tradition is incomplete?
10. The ancestors will *yorukha* ('instruct you') and bring forth words *mi-libbam* ('from their heart/mind'). The *lev* ('heart') in Hebrew is the seat of intellect and understanding, not primarily emotion. Their teaching comes from deep, considered thought — not surface reaction.
11. The first nature parable begins. *Gome'* ('papyrus') is an Egyptian marsh plant that requires standing water to survive. The *achu* ('reed, marsh grass') likewise depends on constant moisture. Both plants are impressive when growing but utterly dependent on their water source. Bildad's point: apparent prosperity that is not rooted in God (the water source) is doomed.
12. The papyrus dries out even while still *be-ibbo* ('in its freshness, greenness') — it has not been harvested (*lo yiqqatef*, 'not plucked') but dries up on its own when the water fails. It withers *lifnei kol chatsir* ('before all grass') — faster than ordinary plants, because its water dependency is greater. The metaphor warns: the higher the apparent prosperity, the more dramatic the collapse when the source dries up.
13. Bildad applies the metaphor: the *shokhekhei El* ('those who forget God') are the papyrus without water. The *chanef* ('godless, profane, polluted') person's *tiqvah* ('hope') will perish. The *chanef* is not necessarily an atheist but someone whose life is disconnected from God — outwardly prosperous but inwardly rootless.
14. The second metaphor begins. The verb *yaqut* ('will be cut off, snapped') describes the sudden breaking of the godless person's *kislo* ('confidence, self-assurance'). The *beit akkavish* ('house of a spider') — the web — serves as the image of misplaced *mivtach* ('trust, security'). A spider's web is an engineering marvel but structurally useless as shelter.
15. The verbs escalate: *yish'en* ('he leans') implies resting his weight on the web; *lo ya'amod* ('it does not stand') means it collapses. He *yachaziq* ('grips tightly') in desperation; *lo yaqum* ('it does not endure') means it offers no support. The web is a perfect image of the retribution principle inverted — it looks like structure but is structurally void.
16. Bildad shifts to a third image — a flourishing plant. The *ratov* ('moist, lush, fresh') plant appears healthy *lifnei shamesh* ('before the sun' — in full sunlight). Its *yoneqet* ('suckers, shoots, tendrils') spread over the garden. The initial appearance is one of vibrant, expanding life.
17. The roots intertwine around *gal* ('a heap of stones') and grip *beit avanim* ('a house of stones'). The plant appears anchored — its roots have found solid material. But stones are not soil; they provide grip without nourishment. The image suggests a life that looks established but is actually clinging to something that cannot sustain it.
18. The *maqom* ('place') personified denies ever knowing the plant — *lo re'itkha* ('I have not seen you'). This is the ultimate erasure: not just removal but disavowal. The place where the wicked person flourished acts as if he never existed. The echo forward to Matthew 7:23 ('I never knew you') may be coincidental but the dynamic is identical — a claim of relationship is denied by the one who matters.
19. The *mesos darkho* ('joy of his way') is bitterly ironic — everything the wicked person's life amounted to is dismissed as this. Meanwhile, *acher* ('another, others') grows from the same soil. The world replaces the wicked without noticing the substitution. The plant metaphor underscores that the wicked person's prosperity was never personal — it belonged to the soil and simply transfers to the next occupant.
20. Bildad's conclusion rests on two pillars: God does not *yim'as* ('reject, refuse, cast away') the *tam* ('blameless, complete, person of integrity'), and God does not *yachaziq be-yad* ('grasp the hand of, strengthen, support') the *mere'im* ('evildoers'). The word *tam* is the same term used to describe Job in 1:1. Bildad unknowingly affirms Job's character while undermining Job's experience.
21. Bildad's promise is beautiful in isolation: *sechok* ('laughter') filling the mouth and *teru'ah* ('joyful shouting, war cry of triumph') on the lips. The imagery is of a person so full of joy that it overflows audibly. Whether this promise is trustworthy depends on whether Bildad's theological framework is correct — the book will ultimately argue that it is incomplete.
22. Bildad closes with a symmetrical promise: Job's enemies will wear *boshet* ('shame') like a garment — visible, public, inescapable — while the *ohel resha'im* ('tent of the wicked') will cease to exist (*einennu* — 'it is not'). The tent image recalls the impermanence of nomadic life — even a tent, the most temporary of dwellings, outlasts the wicked person's hopes. Bildad's speech ends on a note of confident assurance that the moral order will hold. The book will test that confidence severely.

9

Summary: *Job responds to Bildad with what becomes the most legally structured speech in the dialogues so far. He agrees with Bildad's premise — yes, God is just — but draws a devastating conclusion: if God is just AND all-powerful, then no human can win a case against him. Job frames the problem as a courtroom drama: how can a mortal be righteous before God? If someone wanted to take God to court, he could not answer one charge in a thousand. God moves mountains, shakes the earth, commands the sun, and stretches out the heavens. He made the Bear, Orion, the Pleiades, and the southern constellations. He passes by and Job cannot see him. He snatches and no one can stop him. Even if Job were righteous, he would not dare answer; he could only plead for mercy before his Judge. Even if Job summoned God and God answered, Job doubts God would listen. God crushes him with a storm and multiplies his wounds without cause. He will not let Job catch his breath. If it is a matter of strength — God is mighty. If it is a matter of justice — who will set a court date? Even if Job were innocent, his own mouth would condemn him. Job arrives at his most radical statement: God destroys the blameless and the wicked alike. When disaster strikes, God laughs at the despair of the innocent. The chapter closes with Job's longing for an arbiter — someone who could stand between Job and God and remove God's rod so that Job could speak without terror.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter introduces the cosmic courtroom metaphor that will dominate the rest of Job's speeches. Job is not abandoning theology — he is doing theology at its most rigorous. He accepts that God is just and powerful, then asks the question no one else will ask: what happens when justice and power are concentrated in the same being who is also the opposing party? There is no appeals court, no independent judiciary, no neutral arbiter. God is simultaneously plaintiff, judge, and executioner. The legal vocabulary is precise: riv ('lawsuit'), tsaddiq ('righteous/innocent party'), mishpat ('justice/judgment'), mokiach ('arbiter/mediator'). Job is not cursing God — he is filing a brief. The constellation passage (verses 8-10) is one of the great astronomical texts of the ancient world, naming specific star formations and attributing their creation to God. The climax in verse 33 — the wish for a mokiach ('arbiter') between himself and God — is the theological seed that grows into Job's later demand for a go'el (redeemer, 19:25).*

Translation Friction: *Verse 22 ('He destroys the blameless and the wicked alike') is the most theologically explosive statement in the dialogues to this point. Job is not saying God is evil — he is saying God is indiscriminate, which in some ways is worse. An evil God could be opposed; an indiscriminate God cannot even be engaged. Verse 23 ('When disaster brings sudden death, he mocks the despair of the innocent') pushes further — God is not merely indifferent but actively contemptuous of innocent suffering. These verses have troubled interpreters for millennia. Some soften them: Job is describing how things appear, not how they are. Others take them at face value: Job, in his extremity, is making claims about God that are theologically wrong but psychologically honest. The book never directly refutes these verses — God's speech from the whirlwind (chapters 38-41) responds to Job's challenge but not by defending divine justice point by point.*

Connections: *The constellation names in verses 8-9 (Ash/Bear, Kesil/Orion, Kimah/Pleiades) recur in Job 38:31-32 where God throws them back at Job: 'Can you bind the chains of the Pleiades?' The wish for an arbiter (verse 33) develops into the cry for a witness in 16:19 and reaches its climax in the go'el declaration of 19:25. The legal framework connects to Isaiah's trial speeches (Isaiah 41:1, 43:26) where God invites the nations to court. Job's complaint that God 'passes by and I do not see him' (verse 11) inverts Moses' experience at the rock cleft (Exodus 33:22) where God's passing by was a revelation; for Job, God's passing is an absence.*

¹Job responded:

²Yes, I know this is true —
but how can a mortal be in the right before God?

³If someone wanted to take him to court,
he could not answer one charge in a thousand.

- ⁴He is wise in mind and vast in power.
Who has defied him and come out whole?
- ⁵He moves mountains, and they do not know it —
he overturns them in his anger.
- ⁶He shakes the earth from its place
and its pillars tremble.
- ⁷He commands the sun, and it does not rise;
he seals up the stars.
- ⁸He alone stretches out the heavens
and treads on the heights of the sea.
- ⁹He made the Bear, Orion, and the Pleiades,
and the constellations of the southern sky.
- ¹⁰He does great things beyond searching out,
wonders beyond counting.
- ¹¹He passes right by me, and I cannot see him;
he moves on, and I do not perceive him.
- ¹²If he snatches something away, who can stop him?
Who can say to him, 'What are you doing?'
- ¹³God does not turn back his anger;
even the allies of Rahab cringe beneath him.
- ¹⁴How then could I answer him
or choose my words to argue with him?
- ¹⁵Even if I were righteous, I could not answer him;
I could only plead for mercy before my Judge.
- ¹⁶Even if I summoned him and he responded,
I would not believe he was actually listening to me.
- ¹⁷He crushes me with a storm
and multiplies my wounds without cause.
- ¹⁸He will not let me catch my breath
but fills me with bitterness.
- ¹⁹If it is a contest of strength — he is the mighty one.
If it is a matter of justice — who will set a court date for me?
- ²⁰Even if I am in the right, my own mouth would condemn me.
Even if I am blameless, he would declare me crooked.

²¹I am blameless — but I no longer know myself.
I despise my life.

²²It is all the same — that is why I said it:
he destroys the blameless and the wicked alike.

²³When a plague kills suddenly,
he laughs at the despair of the innocent.

²⁴The earth is handed over to the wicked.
He covers the faces of its judges.
If it is not he — then who?

²⁵My days are swifter than a runner;
they flee without seeing anything good.

²⁶They glide past like reed boats,
like an eagle swooping down on prey.

²⁷If I say, 'I will forget my complaint,
I will change my expression and force a smile' —

²⁸I dread all my sufferings.
I know that you will not declare me innocent.

²⁹I am already condemned —
so why should I struggle for nothing?

³⁰Even if I washed myself with snow
and scrubbed my hands clean with lye —

³¹you would plunge me into a pit of filth,
and my own clothes would be disgusted by me.

³²For he is not a man like me, that I could answer him,
that we could go to court together.

³³There is no arbiter between us
who could lay his hand on us both.

³⁴Let him remove his rod from me,
and let his terror not frighten me.

³⁵Then I would speak without fearing him.
But as things stand — that is not my situation.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard dialogue introduction. Job responds to Bildad but will quickly move past the friend-to-friend argument and address the God-to-human problem directly.
2. Job's opening *omnam* ('truly, indeed') concedes Bildad's basic claim. But the concession becomes the foundation for a more devastating argument. The phrase *enosh im El* ('a mortal with/before God') sets up the asymmetry that drives the entire chapter: the gap between human and divine is so vast that justice between them is structurally impossible.

3. The riv ('lawsuit, legal dispute') is not casual arguing but formal judicial proceedings. The ratio 'one out of a thousand' (achat minni alef) expresses overwhelming inadequacy — not that the human has no answers at all, but that even his best answers are drowned by the sheer volume of God's case.
4. The combination of chakham levav ('wise of heart/mind') and ammits koach ('mighty of strength') means God holds both intellectual and physical supremacy. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no one.' The verb hiqshah ('hardened, stiffened') implies stubborn resistance. The verb vayishlam ('and was whole, prospered, came out intact') means no one who resisted God has ever emerged undamaged.
5. The hymn of divine power begins. The verb he'etiq ('to move, remove, displace') describes relocating entire mountains. The phrase ve-lo yad'u ('and they do not know') means the mountains are moved so effortlessly that they are unaware of being displaced. The overturn (hafakham) happens be-appo ('in his anger') — divine wrath reshapes geography.
6. Ancient cosmology imagined the earth resting on amrudim ('pillars, columns'). God shakes the earth so violently that even its foundations — the structures holding the world in place — yitpallatsun ('shudder, tremble'). The image conveys power over the fundamental architecture of reality.
7. God can cancel sunrise. The cheres ('sun') obeys his verbal command. The verb yachtom ('he seals') means he locks the stars away as one seals a document or a jar — their light is shut off by divine decree. This reverses creation: in Genesis 1, God called light into being; here he can revoke it.
8. The verb noteh ('stretching out') treats the heavens like a tent canopy being unfurled — God does it levaddo ('by himself alone'), needing no assistance. The phrase dorekh al bamotei yam ('treading on the high places of the sea') depicts God walking on the crests of ocean waves, asserting dominion over the chaotic waters. This image will later resonate with the Gospel accounts of Jesus walking on water.
9. Three specific star formations are named: Ash ('the Bear' — possibly Ursa Major or the star Arcturus), Kesil ('Orion' — the name means 'fool' or 'strong one'), and Kimah ('the Pleiades' — a tight cluster). The chadrei teman ('chambers of the south') refers to southern constellations invisible from northern latitudes — the mysterious stars below the horizon. God created not just the earth but the entire visible (and invisible) cosmos.
10. This verse nearly quotes Eliphaz's words from 5:9 — Job appropriates his friend's hymnic language but redirects it. In Eliphaz's mouth, God's unsearchable greatness was comforting. In Job's mouth, it is terrifying: God's deeds are beyond comprehension, which means his actions against Job are also beyond comprehension or challenge.
11. The invisibility of God compounds the legal problem. In a human courtroom, both parties are visible. But God ya'avov ('passes by') and Job lo er'eh ('cannot see'). God yachalof ('moves past, slips by') and Job lo avin ('cannot perceive, cannot understand'). The vocabulary of passing by echoes the Sinai theophany (Exodus 33-34) but without the revelation — God passes, but Job receives nothing.
12. The verb yachtof ('he snatches, seizes') describes sudden, irresistible taking. The two questions — 'who can stop him?' and 'who can challenge him?' — establish that God operates without accountability. No one has the standing to demand an explanation. This is Job's structural complaint: power without accountability is indistinguishable from tyranny, even if the powerful being is just.
13. Rahab is a mythological sea monster representing primordial chaos (distinct from Rahab of Jericho). The 'allies of Rahab' (ozrei Rahav) are the cosmic forces that sided with chaos against God at creation. Even these superhuman powers shachechu ('bow down, crouch, cringe') under God. Job's logic: if chaos monsters cannot withstand God, what chance does one man have?
14. The af ki ('how much more/less') construction draws the obvious conclusion: if Rahab's allies cannot stand before God, Job certainly cannot. The verb evcharah ('I would choose, select') suggests carefully picking legal arguments — but even the most eloquent brief is useless against an omnipotent opposing party.
15. The li-meshofti ('to my judge') identifies God explicitly as the presiding judge in this cosmic court. The verb etchannan ('I would plead for grace') is the posture of a defendant who has given up on acquittal and simply begs for leniency. Job's righteousness (tsadaqti) is real but irrelevant — the court is structured so that no defense can succeed.
16. The distrust is total. Even if God ya'anenni ('answered me'), Job lo a'amin ('would not believe, would not trust') that God ya'azin qoli ('was giving ear to my voice'). The verb he'emin ('to believe, trust') shares its root with emunah ('faithfulness'). Job's trust in the judicial process has collapsed — any divine response would feel like a formality, not genuine engagement.
17. The se'arah ('tempest, storm') will become theologically significant: God eventually answers Job from a se'arah (38:1). The word chinnam ('without cause, for nothing, gratuitously') is the same word the Accuser used in 1:9 ('Does Job fear God for nothing?'). The Accuser claimed Job's piety was not chinnam (not free, not without cause); Job now claims his suffering IS chinnam — without cause.
18. The verb hashev ruchi ('to return my breath/spirit') means to recover, to take a breather. God denies Job even momentary respite. Instead, God yasbi'eni mamerorim ('saturates me with bitter things') — the bitterness is force-fed until Job is full of it.
19. Job evaluates both options. Strength (koach): God wins automatically. Justice (mishpat): no one can set a court date (yo'ideni — 'summon me, appoint a hearing') because no authority exists above God to convene the court. Both paths — force and law — lead to the same dead end.
20. The verb yarshi'eni ('would condemn me, declare me guilty') is the legal opposite of 'justify' — it means to render a guilty verdict. The verb ya'aqsheni ('would make me crooked, would twist') suggests that God's cross-examination would distort even truthful testimony. Job's integrity (tam) cannot survive the courtroom because the court itself deforms whatever enters it.
21. Job states tam ani ('I am blameless') flatly, without qualification. But then: lo eda nafshi ('I do not know my own soul/self'). The suffering has made him a stranger to himself. His blamelessness is real but has become unrecognizable. The final phrase em'as chayyai ('I reject/despise my life') echoes 7:16 — Job's disgust with his own existence is a recurring refrain.

22. This is Job's most radical theological claim to this point. The tam ('blameless') and the rasha ('wicked') receive identical treatment — God mekalleh ('destroys, brings to an end') both. If the retribution principle were correct, these two categories would receive opposite outcomes. Job claims they receive the same outcome, which demolishes the entire framework his friends rely on.
23. The shot ('whip, scourge, plague') yamit pit'om ('kills suddenly') — death comes without warning or discrimination. And God yil'ag ('laughs, mocks') at the massat neqiyim ('the testing/melting/despair of the innocent'). The claim that God laughs at innocent suffering is the extreme edge of Job's protest. The verb la'ag ('to mock, scorn') attributes contempt to God.
24. Job extends his indictment: the entire earth (erets) is given be-yad rasha ('into the hand of the wicked'). God yekhasseh ('covers') the faces of its judges — blinding them to justice. The closing challenge is devastating: im lo — efo mi hu ('if not [God] — then who?'). Job eliminates every alternative. If the world is unjust and God controls the world, God is responsible.
25. The rats ('runner, courier') was the fastest mode of communication in the ancient world — a professional messenger sprinting between cities. Job's days outrun even this. They barachu ('flee') and lo ra'u tovah ('see no good') — his life rushes past without a single moment of goodness.
26. Three speed images in two verses: the runner (v. 25), the oniyot eveh ('reed boats' or 'papyrus skiffs' — light, fast vessels), and the nesher ('eagle, vulture') diving for food. Each image is faster than the last. Life is not merely passing — it is accelerating toward its end.
27. Job considers self-deception as a coping strategy: forget the complaint (sichah), abandon the grim face (e'ezvah fanai — 'I will leave/change my face'), and avligah ('I will brighten up, cheer myself'). The attempt at forced cheerfulness is immediately undone in the next verse.
28. The verb yagorti ('I dread, I am afraid of') reveals that Job's suffering is not merely present but anticipated — he fears what is still coming. The certainty lo tenaqeni ('you will not hold me innocent, will not acquit me') means the verdict is already determined. No amount of self-encouragement (v. 27) can overcome the knowledge that the Judge has already decided.
29. The verb ersha ('I am wicked, I am condemned') may be Job's resigned acceptance of the verdict rather than a confession of actual guilt. If the outcome is predetermined, effort is hevel ('futility, vapor'). The verb iga ('I toil, I labor, I exhaust myself') describes wasted effort — fighting a case that is already lost.
30. Snow water was considered the purest natural cleanser. Bor ('lye, alkali soap') was the strongest cleansing agent available. Job imagines the most thorough purification possible — both natural (snow) and chemical (lye). Even this extreme cleansing will not hold, as the next verse reveals.
31. God undoes Job's cleansing by immersing him in shachat ('a pit, a ditch, corruption'). The result is so complete that even Job's salmotai ('garments, clothes') — inanimate objects — ti'avuni ('would abhor me, be disgusted by me'). The personification of clothing refusing to touch its wearer conveys total contamination. Any attempt at self-purification is reversed by God.
32. Job identifies the fundamental problem: God lo ish kamoni ('is not a man like me'). Legal systems require two parties of comparable standing. God and Job are not comparable. The phrase navo yachdav ba-mishpat ('we would come together in judgment') describes two litigants entering a courtroom as equals — which is impossible when one party created the other.
33. The mokiach (from the root y-k-ch, 'to argue, prove, decide') is not merely a referee but an authoritative arbitrator with power to bind both parties. The KJV's 'daysman' is an archaic English term for an arbiter or umpire. Job's cry for a mokiach is one of the most theologically pregnant moments in the book — the recognition that the God-human relationship needs a third party, someone with standing in both realms.
34. The shevet ('rod, staff') is the instrument of punishment. Job wants it removed — not because he denies God's authority but because the rod prevents honest speech. The eimatho ('his terror, the dread of him') paralyzes Job. He cannot speak freely while under active assault. The request is procedural: stop hitting me so I can present my case.
35. Job's closing is poignant: if the rod were removed, if the terror were lifted, he would speak (adabberah) without fear (lo ira'ennu). But ki lo khi anokhi immadi ('for it is not so with me') — his actual situation does not permit fearless speech. The chapter ends with Job unable to access the very thing he needs most: a fair hearing. The legal case remains filed but cannot proceed.

10

Summary: Job continues speaking directly to God in what becomes the most intimate and accusatory prayer in the book so far. He declares that he loathes his life and will let his complaint run free. He demands that God tell him the charges — do not simply condemn me; tell me what you hold against me. He asks a series of devastating questions: Does it benefit you to oppress me? Do you have eyes of flesh — do you see as mortals see? Is your lifespan short like mine, that you hunt for my sin so urgently? Job then shifts to an agonized meditation on creation: your hands shaped me and made me — yet now you destroy me. Remember that you molded me like clay, poured me out like milk, curdled me like cheese, clothed me with skin and flesh, knit me together with bones and sinews. You gave me life and faithful love, and your care preserved my spirit. Yet all along you were hiding this in your heart — you were watching to condemn me, stockpiling charges. Whether guilty or innocent, it makes no difference. Job ends by asking God: why did you bring me out of the womb? Let me alone for the little time I have left before I go to the

land of darkness and deep shadow, from which there is no return.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The creation imagery in verses 8-12 is among the most beautiful and theologically rich passages in Job. Job describes his own formation in language that parallels Genesis 2 (shaping from clay) but adds detail that anticipates Psalm 139 (knitting together in the womb). The milk-and-cheese metaphor for embryonic development is unique in the Hebrew Bible and reflects ancient Near Eastern understanding of conception: semen was thought to curdle in the womb like milk becoming cheese, with God as the artisan who shapes the resulting material. The theological force of this passage is not merely poetic — Job argues that God invested personal, intimate craftsmanship in creating him, which makes God's subsequent destruction of that creation morally incoherent. Why build something so carefully only to smash it? The chapter functions as an anti-creation psalm: where Psalm 139 celebrates divine knowledge of the person in the womb, Job 10 accuses God of building a person in order to destroy him.*

Translation Friction: *Job's accusation that God was secretly planning his destruction even while lovingly creating him (verses 13-14) raises the question of divine intentionality in suffering. Was Job built to be broken? The text does not answer this directly — the prose prologue (chapters 1-2) suggests Job's suffering originated in the heavenly council, not in a premeditated divine plan to destroy him. But Job, who has no access to the prologue's information, can only interpret his experience from below. His conclusion — God was hiding a destructive agenda inside an act of creation — is psychologically honest even if theologically incomplete. The closing description of Sheol as a 'land of darkness and deep shadow' (verses 21-22) is one of the most sustained depictions of the afterlife in the Hebrew Bible, and it offers no hope: Sheol is not punishment but oblivion, a place where even light is darkness.*

Connections: *The creation language connects directly to Genesis 2:7 (forming from clay), Psalm 139:13-16 (knitting in the womb), and Isaiah 64:8 ('we are the clay, you are the potter'). The milk-and-cheese metaphor has parallels in the Babylonian creation text Atrahasis. Job's demand 'tell me the charges' (verse 2) continues the courtroom metaphor from chapter 9. The description of Sheol in verses 21-22 connects to Psalm 88:6 ('in the darkest depths') and anticipates the fuller treatment of death in Job 14. Job's plea 'leave me alone' echoes 7:16 and recurs in 14:6 — the refrain of a man who wants divine attention to stop.*

¹My soul is disgusted with my life.

I will give my complaint free rein;

I will speak from the bitterness of my soul.

²I will say to God: Do not just condemn me —
tell me what charges you bring against me.

³Does it benefit you to oppress,
to reject what your own hands have made,
while you smile on the schemes of the wicked?

⁴Do you have eyes of flesh?
Do you see the way mortals see?

⁵Are your days like the days of a mortal?
Are your years like a man's lifespan?

⁶That you hunt for my guilt
and search out my sin?

⁷You know full well that I am not guilty,
yet no one can rescue me from your hand.

⁸Your hands shaped me and formed me,
every part of me together —
and now you swallow me up?

⁹Remember that you made me from clay —
will you turn me back to dust?

¹⁰Did you not pour me out like milk
and curdle me like cheese?

¹¹You clothed me with skin and flesh;
you wove me together with bones and sinews.

¹²You gave me life and faithful love,
and your watchful care preserved my spirit.

¹³But all along you were hiding this in your heart.
I know — this was your plan all along.

¹⁴If I sin, you are watching.
You will not clear me of my guilt.

¹⁵If I am guilty — woe to me.
If I am innocent — still I cannot lift my head.
I am filled with disgrace;
look at my misery!

¹⁶If I hold my head high, you hunt me like a lion.
Again and again you show your terrifying power against me.

¹⁷You bring fresh witnesses against me
and increase your anger toward me —
wave after wave of troops against me.

¹⁸Why did you bring me out of the womb?
I wish I had died before any eye saw me —

¹⁹as though I had never existed,
carried straight from the womb to the grave.

²⁰Are not my days nearly over? Stop.
Leave me alone so I can have a moment of relief

²¹before I go to the place of no return —
to the land of darkness and death-shadow,

²²a land of deep gloom like thick darkness,
of death-shadow and chaos,
where even the light is like darkness.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *naqetah* ('is disgusted, is weary, loathes') expresses visceral revulsion toward his own existence. The phrase *e'ezvah alai sichi* ('I will release my complaint upon myself') means Job will stop restraining his words — the dam breaks. The *mar nefesh* ('bitterness of soul') is the same phrase from 7:11, forming a refrain of anguish.
2. The verb *tarshi'eni* ('condemn me, declare me guilty') is legal terminology — Job demands that the conviction be accompanied by specific charges. The verb *hodi'eni* ('make known to me, inform me') requests formal disclosure. The verb *teriveni* ('you contend with me, you bring a lawsuit against me') uses the *riv* ('lawsuit') language from 9:3. Job insists on due process: if I am guilty, show me the evidence.
3. Three accusations in one verse. First: *ta'ashoq* ('you oppress') — God acts like a human tyrant. Second: *tim'as yegi'a kappekha* ('you reject the labor of your hands') — God despises his own handiwork, which is Job himself. Third: *hofa'ta* ('you shine, you beam') upon the *atsat resha'im* ('the counsel/plans of the wicked') — God favors the wicked while crushing the innocent. The word *yegi'a* ('labor, toil, product of work') emphasizes that Job cost God effort to create.
4. Job asks whether God's perception is limited like human perception. *Einei vasar* ('eyes of flesh') are eyes that can be deceived, that see only surfaces, that judge by appearances. The implied accusation: God is treating Job the way a flawed, surface-level human judge would — convicting on appearances rather than seeing the truth.
5. Job asks whether God is operating under time pressure. Human judges rush because their lives are short — they must close cases before they die. But God has unlimited time. So why the urgency? Why hunt for Job's sin as if the clock were running out? The question implies that God's aggressive investigation is disproportionate to an eternal being.
6. The verbs *tevaqesh* ('you seek, hunt for') and *tidrosh* ('you investigate, search out') describe an aggressive, relentless inquiry. God is not passively noticing sin but actively hunting for it. The *avon* ('guilt, iniquity') and *chattat* ('sin, failure') are the objects of divine pursuit. Job's complaint: God is looking for something that is not there.
7. Job makes two devastating claims in parallel. First: *al da'tekha ki lo ersha* ('upon your knowledge: I am not wicked') — God knows Job is innocent. This is not a plea but a statement of fact directed at the one being who can verify it. Second: *ein mi-yadkha matsil* ('there is no deliverer from your hand') — even knowing Job is innocent, God holds him in an inescapable grip. Knowledge of innocence plus refusal to release equals tyranny.
8. The verb *itsevuni* ('they shaped me, fashioned me') and *va-ya'asuni* ('they made me') describe deliberate, skilled craftsmanship. The phrase *yachad saviv* ('together all around') means God formed every part, every angle, the whole person. The final verb *vatevalle'eni* ('and you swallow me up, destroy me') is shockingly abrupt — the same hands that shaped now consume. The rhetorical force is: how can the maker destroy what he carefully made?
9. The *ka-chomer* ('like clay') echoes Genesis 2:7 where God formed Adam from the ground. The verb *teshiveni* ('you will return me') to *afar* ('dust') completes the cycle: from dust to clay to formed human to dust again. Job's argument is not against mortality itself but against the pointlessness of the cycle — why form clay into a person only to crumble it back to dust?
10. This unique metaphor describes conception and embryonic development. Ancient understanding held that semen (the 'milk') was poured into the womb and 'curdled' (*taqqi'eni* — 'you caused to thicken, coagulate') into solid form, like cheese forming from liquid milk. The imagery is surprisingly scientific for the ancient world and attributes the entire biological process to God's direct action.
11. God is described as both tailor (*talbbisheni* — 'you clothed me') and weaver (*tesokkhkheni* — 'you wove me together, hedged me in'). The *or* ('skin') and *basar* ('flesh') are the outer garments; the *atsamot* ('bones') and *gidim* ('sinews, tendons') are the inner framework. The language of craftsmanship is intimate — God did not mass-produce Job but hand-crafted him.
12. This verse is the theological high point of Job's creation meditation. *Chayyim* ('life') is the gift; *chesed* ('faithful love') is the relationship; *pequddah* ('watchful care, visitation') is the ongoing maintenance. All three are attributed to God's direct, personal involvement. The verse makes the accusation of verses 13-17 even more devastating — everything described here was genuine, yet it was apparently the prelude to destruction.
13. The verb *tsafanta* ('you hid, stored up, concealed') reveals Job's darkest suspicion: the loving creation of verses 8-12 was a cover for a hidden agenda. The *bilevavekha* ('in your heart') means God's secret intention was internal, deliberate, premeditated. Job believes that while God was lovingly shaping him, God was simultaneously planning to destroy him. The *zot* ('this') refers to the suffering — it was *immakh* ('with you, in your possession') from the beginning.
14. The verb *shemartani* ('you watched me, guarded me, kept your eye on me') takes the positive verb of divine preservation (*shamar* — 'to keep, guard, watch over') and turns it sinister. The same watchfulness that 'preserved my spirit' in verse 12 now monitors for infractions. The *lo tenaqqeni* ('you will not acquit me, declare me clean') means no sin, once observed, is ever forgiven.
15. The double conditional destroys all options. *Im rashati* ('if I am wicked') — woe. *Im tsadaqti* ('if I am righteous') — still no relief; *he lo essa roshi* ('cannot lift his head') in dignity. The *seva qalon* ('full of disgrace, saturated with shame') applies regardless of guilt or innocence. The imperative *re'eh onyi* ('see my affliction!') demands that God observe the result of his own actions.
16. The *shachal* ('fierce lion') is one of several Hebrew words for lion, emphasizing ferocity and predatory power. God *tetsudeni* ('hunts me') as a lion stalks prey. The verb *titpalla* ('you show yourself wonderful, you display your extraordinary power') is normally used for God's miracles — here the 'wonders' are acts of destruction against Job. The word that describes the parting of the Red Sea now describes the assault on one man.

17. The legal and military metaphors merge. God techadesh edekha ('renews your witnesses') — each time Job answers one charge, God produces new testimony. God terev ka'askha ('increases your vexation/anger') — the divine wrath escalates rather than diminishing. The chalifot ve-tsava ('relays and army') describe military reinforcements arriving in waves. Job faces both an unwinnable legal case and an unwinnable war simultaneously.
18. Job returns to the birth-curse theme from chapter 3. The question lamah ('why?') demands purpose: what was the point of bringing me into existence? The verb egva ('I would expire, die') and the phrase ve-ayin lo tir'eni ('and no eye would have seen me') imagine a life that ended before it began — stillborn, unseen, unknown.
19. The phrase ka-asher lo hayiti ehieh ('as if I had not been, I would be') expresses the wish for non-existence — not suicide but the elimination of his entire life from history. The trajectory mi-beten la-qever ('from womb to grave') eliminates everything between birth and death — all experience, all relationship, all suffering.
20. The plea is for a ceasefire. The verb yachdal ('let him cease, stop') and the imperative ve-shit mimmenni ('set yourself away from me, withdraw') ask God to disengage. The verb avligah ('I would brighten, I would find relief') asks for me'at ('a little') — not restoration but the smallest possible interval of peace before death.
21. The phrase ve-lo ashuv ('and I will not return') establishes death as a one-way journey. The erets choshekh ve-tsalmavet ('land of darkness and death-shadow') is Job's Sheol — not a place of punishment but of absolute darkness. The tsalmavet ('shadow of death' or 'deep darkness') combines tsel ('shadow') with mavet ('death') into a compound that describes the deepest possible obscurity.
22. Job piles darkness terms to describe Sheol: eifatah ('deep gloom, darkness'), ofel ('thick darkness, blackness'), tsalmavet ('death-shadow'), and lo sedarim ('no order, no arrangement') — chaos. The final line is devastating: va-tofa kemo ofel ('and it shines like darkness') — even what passes for light in Sheol is indistinguishable from darkness. It is a place where the categories of creation (Genesis 1:3-4, separating light from darkness) have been reversed. Sheol is un-creation. The chapter ends not with a plea or a hope but with a description of where Job believes he is headed — into the void.

11

Summary: *Zophar the Naamathite finally speaks — the third and harshest of Job's friends. Where Eliphaz appealed to experience and Bildad to tradition, Zophar appeals to the hidden depths of divine wisdom. He opens by attacking Job's verbosity: should a flood of words go unanswered? He accuses Job of claiming purity when God knows better. He then launches into a magnificent description of divine wisdom that is deeper than Sheol, longer than the earth, broader than the sea — and insists that if God were to speak, he would reveal secret sins Job does not even know about. God actually owes Job less punishment, not more. Zophar concludes with a conditional promise: if Job repents, life will be brighter than noon; if not, the wicked have no escape.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Zophar's speech contains some of the most beautiful theological language in the dialogue — his description of God's unsearchable wisdom in verses 7-9 anticipates Paul's exclamation in Romans 11:33. The irony is that Zophar uses magnificent theology in service of a terrible argument. He is right that God's wisdom is beyond human comprehension, but he draws exactly the wrong conclusion: that Job must therefore be hiding secret sins. The deeper irony is that the reader, who has access to chapters 1-2, knows that God's hidden wisdom actually vindicates Job — the very inscrutability Zophar celebrates is what makes Job's innocence possible within God's larger purposes. Zophar speaks better than he knows.*

Translation Friction: *Zophar is the most aggressive of the three friends, and his speech raises the question of whether theological correctness can coexist with pastoral cruelty. His doctrine of God is largely sound — God is unsearchable, God knows hidden sin, God's ways exceed human understanding. But he weaponizes every truth. The phrase 'God exacts less than your guilt deserves' (verse 6) is perhaps the cruelest single line any friend delivers: it tells a man covered in sores, bereaved of all his children, that he is actually getting off easy. Zophar's error is not in his theology but in his application — he assumes that because God can see hidden sin, God must be punishing hidden sin in Job's case.*

Connections: *Zophar's description of divine wisdom (verses 7-9) uses the language of cosmic measurement that reappears in God's own speech from the whirlwind in chapters 38-41. The difference is that God uses cosmic scope to humble all human certainty, while Zophar uses it to bolster his own certainty about Job's guilt. The conditional promise of restoration in verses 13-19 follows the same if-then logic as Eliphaz (5:17-27) and Bildad (8:5-7), forming a three-fold pattern that Job will systematically reject. Zophar's claim that the wicked 'will gaze but find no escape' (verse 20) anticipates the extended wicked-man speeches that dominate the second cycle.*

¹Then Zophar the Naamathite answered and said:

²Should a flood of words go unanswered?
Should a man of many lips be declared right?

³Should your empty talk silence others?
When you mock, should no one put you to shame?

⁴You have said, 'My teaching is flawless,
and I am pure in your sight.'

⁵But if only God would speak!
If only he would open his lips against you!

⁶He would show you the hidden depths of wisdom —
for true insight has two sides —
and you would know that God has forgotten
some of your guilt on your behalf.

⁷Can you fathom the deep things of God?
Can you reach the outer limit of the Almighty?

⁸It is higher than the heavens — what can you do?
It is deeper than Sheol — what can you know?

⁹Its measure is longer than the earth
and wider than the sea.

¹⁰If he sweeps past and imprisons,
if he convenes a court — who can stop him?

¹¹For he knows those who are worthless;
he sees wickedness — does he not take notice?

¹²But a hollow man will gain understanding
when a wild donkey's colt is born human.

¹³If you would set your heart right
and stretch out your hands to him —

¹⁴if there is wickedness in your hand, throw it far away,
and do not let injustice dwell in your tents —

¹⁵then you will lift your face without shame.
You will stand firm and will not be afraid.

¹⁶For you will forget your misery;
you will remember it like water that has flowed past.

¹⁷Your life will rise brighter than noon;
its darkness will become like morning.

¹⁸You will trust, because there is hope.
You will look around and lie down in safety.

¹⁹You will lie down with no one to frighten you,
and many will seek your favor.

²⁰But the eyes of the wicked will waste away;
escape will vanish from them,
and their hope will be their last breath.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard dialogue formula introduces the third friend. Zophar has waited through two full rounds — Eliphaz and Bildad have spoken, and Job has answered both. He has heard Job's increasingly bold claims of innocence and can no longer remain silent.
2. The *rov devarim* ('multitude of words') is Zophar's dismissal of everything Job has said — it is noise, not argument. The phrase *ish sefatayim* ('a man of lips') is contemptuous: Job is all mouth. The verb *yitsdda* ('be justified, declared righteous') is the key issue — Zophar denies that talking more can make a person right.
3. The *baddekha* ('your empty talk, your boasts, your idle prattle') dismisses Job's arguments as substanceless. The verb *til'ag* ('you mock, scoff') accuses Job of mockery — presumably of the friends' theology. The verb *makhlim* ('one who shames, who silences with rebuke') is what Zophar intends to do: shame Job into repentance.
4. Zophar paraphrases Job's position: *zakh liqchi* ('pure is my teaching/doctrine') and *bar hayiti ve-einekha* ('clean I have been in your eyes'). The *zakh* ('pure, clean, transparent') and *bar* ('pure, bright, clean') are near-synonyms emphasizing total innocence. Zophar presents this as arrogance — Job claims perfection before God. In fact, Job has not claimed sinlessness but has insisted his suffering is disproportionate to any sin.
5. The *mi yitten* ('who would give' — the Hebrew idiom for 'if only, would that') expresses a passionate wish. Zophar is confident that if God spoke, God would confirm the friends' position and demolish Job's defense. The dramatic irony is that God will speak — in chapters 38-41 — but not at all in the way Zophar expects.
6. The *ta'alumot chokhmah* ('hidden things of wisdom, secrets of wisdom') are what God knows and Job does not. The *kiflayim le-tushiyyah* ('double to sound wisdom') is notoriously difficult — it may mean wisdom has two sides (a revealed and a hidden), or that God's wisdom is doubly effective. The crushing final clause: *yasheh lekha Eloah me-avonekha* ('God causes to be forgotten for you some of your guilt') — God is actually letting you off easy. You deserve worse than what you are getting.
7. The *cheqer Eloah* ('the searching out of God, the fathomable depths of God') asks whether divine nature can be fully explored. The *takhlit Shaddai* ('the limit, the boundary, the perfection of the Almighty') asks whether God has an edge that human inquiry can reach. Both questions expect the answer no — and Zophar is theologically correct here. The problem is what he does with this truth.
8. Zophar begins a four-directional survey of divine wisdom. Upward: *govhei shamayim* ('the heights of heaven') — God's wisdom exceeds the sky. Downward: *amuqqah mi-She'ol* ('deeper than Sheol') — it goes below the realm of the dead. The paired questions *mah tif'al* ('what can you accomplish?') and *mah teda* ('what can you know?') establish human helplessness before divine magnitude.
9. The horizontal dimensions complete the survey: *arukkah me-erets middah* ('longer than the earth is its measure') and *rechavah minni yam* ('broader than the sea'). God's wisdom extends in every direction beyond the limits of the created world. The four measurements — height, depth, length, breadth — anticipate Ephesians 3:18, where Paul uses the same four dimensions for the love of Christ.
10. Three verbs describe God's unchecked power. *Yachalof* ('he passes through, sweeps past') suggests unstoppable motion. *Yasgir* ('he shuts up, imprisons, hands over') describes confinement. *Yaqhil* ('he assembles, gathers, convenes') may refer to calling a judicial assembly. The rhetorical question *umi yeshivenu* ('who can turn him back?') echoes Job's own admission in 9:12. Zophar uses Job's concession against him.
11. The *metei shav* ('men of emptiness, worthless people') are those whose lives are hollow. God *yada* ('knows') them — the verb implies not mere awareness but penetrating insight. He *yar'a aven* ('sees iniquity') and the question *ve-lo yitbonen* ('will he not consider it, examine it closely?') implies that God always acts on what he sees. The implication aimed at Job: God has seen something in you.
12. This is one of the most biting proverbs in the dialogue. An *ish navuv* ('hollow man, empty-headed person') *yillaved* ('will gain a heart/mind') — when? When *ayir pere* ('a wild donkey's foal') *adam yivvale* ('is born a human being'). In other words: never. A fool becoming wise is as likely as a wild donkey giving birth to a person. The saying may be aimed directly at Job — Zophar considers his claims of innocence to be the ravings of an empty mind.
13. Zophar now shifts to a conditional promise. The verb *hakhinota* ('you prepared, directed, established') *libbeka* ('your heart') means to align the inner self toward God. The *parastah kappekha* ('you spread out your palms') is the posture of prayer and supplication. Zophar assumes Job has not done this — that Job's prayers have been defiant rather than submissive.

14. The *aven be-yadkha* ('iniquity in your hand') is a metaphor for sin as something grasped, held, carried. The imperative *harchiqehu* ('put it far away, distance it') demands active removal. The *avlah* ('injustice, wrongdoing') must not *tashken* ('dwell, reside') in your *ohalekha* ('your tents') — sin must be evicted from the household. Zophar assumes hidden sin exists.
15. The *tissa fanekha* ('you will lift your face') is the posture of confidence and honor — the opposite of Job's current state where he 'cannot lift his head' (10:15). The *mi-mum* ('without blemish, without defect') means the face will be clear and unashamed. The *mutsaq* ('firm, solid, cast like metal') describes unshakeable stability. The *lo tira* ('you will not fear') completes the picture of restored confidence.
16. The *amal* ('toil, trouble, misery') that now dominates Job's existence will be forgotten — *tishkach* ('you will forget'). The simile *ke-mayim avru* ('like waters that have passed') pictures suffering as a stream that flows by and is gone. The verb *tizkor* ('you will remember') seems contradictory — you will forget it / you will remember it — but the point is that the memory will be as faint and distant as water that has already passed downstream.
17. The *cheled* ('lifespan, duration of life, the world of the living') will *yaqum* ('arise, stand up') *mi-tsohorayim* ('from/above noon') — life will be brighter than the brightest part of day. The *tu'afah* ('darkness, gloom' — or possibly 'you will fly, soar') *ka-boqer tihyeh* ('like the morning it will be') transforms darkness into dawn. Zophar promises total reversal: what is now midnight will become sunrise.
18. The verb *vatachta* ('you will trust, be confident') is grounded in *ki yesh tiqvah* ('because there is hope'). The word *tiqvah* ('hope, expectation') is significant — Job will deny having any hope in 14:19, making Zophar's promise feel hollow. The verb *chafarta* ('you will dig, search, look around') and *la-vetach tishkav* ('in security you will lie down') promise peaceful, untroubled rest — the opposite of Job's current tormented nights (7:3-4).
19. The *ve-ravatsta* ('you will lie down, recline') *ve-ein macharid* ('and there is no one causing terror') echoes the covenant blessings of Leviticus 26:6. The *ve-chillu fanekha rabbim* ('and many will entreat your face') means people will come seeking Job's favor, his blessing, his intercession — he will be restored to a position of honor. Zophar's promise, ironically, is exactly what happens in 42:8-10, but not because Job repented as Zophar prescribed.
20. The contrast to the blessed life of verses 15-19. The *einei resha'im tikhleina* ('the eyes of the wicked will fail, waste away, be consumed') — they will watch for rescue that never comes. The *manos avad minhem* ('refuge has perished from them') — no escape route exists. The final image is devastating: *tiqvatom mappach nafesh* ('their hope is the expiration of breath') — the only thing the wicked have to look forward to is dying. Zophar frames two destinies: repentance leads to verses 15-19; refusal leads to verse 20. The unstated implication: choose, Job.

12

Summary: Job responds to Zophar with biting sarcasm and a sweeping hymn to divine sovereignty. He opens by mocking the friends' confidence — 'No doubt wisdom will die with you!' — and insists he is not inferior to them in understanding. He points out a scandalous observation: the tents of robbers are at peace, while he, the righteous one, is mocked. Even the animals, birds, and fish know that God's hand has done this. Job then launches into a majestic but terrifying catalogue of God's power: God strips counselors of wisdom, makes judges fools, loosens the bonds of kings, leads priests away stripped, overthrows the mighty, removes speech from trusted advisors, pours contempt on nobles, uncovers deep darkness, and makes nations great only to destroy them. God's sovereignty is absolute — and that is exactly the problem.

What Makes This Remarkable: Chapter 12 contains Job's first sustained hymn to God's power, and it is theologically disorienting because it sounds like praise but functions as accusation. The catalogue of divine actions in verses 14-25 reads like a psalm of sovereignty — God controls kings, priests, counselors, nations — but the tone is not celebratory. Job is saying: yes, God is sovereign over everything, and that sovereignty is terrifying because it includes the destruction of the innocent. Where Zophar argued that God's inscrutable wisdom should comfort Job, Job turns the argument around: God's inscrutable power is precisely what makes his situation unbearable. The one who could save is the one who destroys. Job agrees with his friends about God's power; he disagrees about whether that power is being exercised justly.

Translation Friction: The observation in verses 4-6 that the wicked prosper while the righteous suffer is one of the oldest and most persistent challenges to monotheistic theology. Job does not merely state the problem abstractly — he embodies it. He is the righteous man who has become a laughingstock, while the person who provokes God remains secure. The friends' theology cannot accommodate this data point. Job's hymn in verses 14-25 also raises a question the friends cannot answer: if God overthrows the wise, removes the speech of elders, and leads nations into chaos, how can the friends be sure their own wisdom has not been overthrown? Perhaps their confident theology is itself an example of the confusion God spreads.

Connections: The hymn to God's sovereignty in verses 14-25 parallels Isaiah 44:24-28 and Psalm 107, but with a crucial inversion — in those texts, God's control of nations is redemptive; here it is chaotic and terrifying. The animals-as-witnesses motif in verses 7-9 anticipates God's own appeal to creation in chapters 38-41. Job's sarcasm in verse 2 ('wisdom will die with you') prefigures his sustained mockery of the friends' certainty throughout chapters 12-14. The reference to 'those who are at ease' having 'contempt for misfortune' (verse 5) anticipates Amos 6:1 and the broader prophetic critique of comfortable theology.

¹Then Job answered and said:

²No doubt you are the only people that matter,
and wisdom will die when you do!

³I have a mind just like yours.
I am not inferior to you.
Who does not know things like these?

⁴I have become a joke to my friends —
a man who called on God, and God answered him!
The righteous, blameless man is now a laughingstock.

⁵Those at ease have contempt for misfortune —
'A shove to those whose feet already slip!'

⁶The tents of destroyers are at peace;
those who provoke God feel secure —
those into whose hand God has delivered everything.

⁷But ask the animals — they will teach you.
Ask the birds of the sky — they will tell you.

⁸Or speak to the earth — it will teach you.
Let the fish of the sea inform you.

⁹Who among all these does not know
that the hand of the LORD has done this?

¹⁰In his hand is the life of every living creature
and the breath of every human being.

¹¹Does not the ear test words
as the palate tastes food?

¹²With the aged comes wisdom,
and with length of days, understanding.

¹³With God are wisdom and strength;
counsel and understanding belong to him.

¹⁴If he tears down, no one can rebuild.
If he imprisons a man, no one can open the door.

- ¹⁵If he holds back the waters, they dry up.
If he releases them, they overturn the earth.
- ¹⁶With him are strength and true wisdom.
Both the deceived and the deceiver belong to him.
- ¹⁷He leads counselors away stripped bare
and turns judges into fools.
- ¹⁸He strips the authority of kings
and binds a prisoner's loincloth around their waist.
- ¹⁹He leads priests away stripped bare
and overthrows those long established.
- ²⁰He removes the speech of trusted advisors
and takes away the discernment of elders.
- ²¹He pours contempt on the noble
and loosens the belt of the strong.
- ²²He uncovers deep things out of darkness
and brings death-shadow into the light.
- ²³He makes nations great, then destroys them.
He expands nations, then scatters them.
- ²⁴He strips the understanding from leaders of nations
and makes them wander in trackless wasteland.
- ²⁵They grope in darkness without light;
he makes them stagger like drunkards.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard dialogue formula. Job is now responding to Zophar, but this speech (chapters 12-14) is his longest yet and addresses all three friends collectively.
2. Pure sarcasm. The *omnam* ('truly, indeed, no doubt') is ironic. The *ki attem am* ('for you are the people') mocks their assumption that they represent all human wisdom. The *ve-immakhem tamut chokhmah* ('and with you wisdom will die') ridicules the idea that their theology exhausts the available truth. When they are gone, all insight will supposedly vanish from the earth.
3. The *levav* ('heart, mind, understanding') is the seat of thought in Hebrew anthropology. Job's *gam li levav kemokhem* ('I too have a mind like yours') insists on intellectual equality. The *lo nofel anokhi mikkem* ('I do not fall below you') is a direct assertion of parity. The closing question — 'who does not know such things?' — dismisses the friends' theology as common knowledge, not special revelation.
4. The *sechoq le-re'ehu* ('a joke to his companion') describes social humiliation. The devastating irony: Job *qore le-Eloah vayyaanehu* ('called on God and he answered him') — Job's prayers were once answered, his relationship with God was once real and responsive, and now that same man is mocked. The *sechoq tsaddiq tamim* ('a laughingstock — the righteous, blameless one') uses the exact words God used to describe Job in 1:8 and 2:3. The man God called blameless is being laughed at by people who claim to speak for God.
5. The *lappid buz* ('a torch of contempt' or 'contempt for a torch') combined with *le-ashtut sha'anan* ('in the thinking of the comfortable one') captures the psychology of privilege: those at ease despise the suffering because it makes them uncomfortable. The *nakhan le-mo'adei ragel* ('prepared for the stumbling of feet') suggests the comfortable are ready to kick someone who is already falling. Job names a universal human tendency: the privileged dismiss the afflicted.
6. Job states the scandal bluntly: *ohalim le-shodedim yishlavu* ('the tents of robbers are at peace') while the righteous man suffers. Those who *margizei El* ('provoke God, enrage God') enjoy *battukhot* ('security, confidence'). The final clause is the most shocking: *la-asher hevi Eloah be-yado* ('to whom

God has brought into his hand') — God himself has made the wicked prosperous. The problem is not that God has failed to notice; it is that God has actively supplied the wicked.

7. Job invokes creation as witness. The behemot ('beasts, animals') will toreka ('teach you, instruct you'). The of ha-shamayim ('birds of the heavens') will yagged lakh ('declare to you, tell you'). Even animals understand what the friends refuse to see: that God's hand does whatever it does, including destroying the innocent. This passage anticipates God's own appeal to the animal kingdom in chapters 38-39.
8. The survey extends to all creation: earth itself and the fish of the sea. The siach la-arets ('speak to the earth, meditate with the ground') and degei ha-yam ('fish of the sea') complete a four-part witness list: land animals, birds, earth, fish. All of creation testifies to the same reality.
9. This is one of only two places in the poetic dialogue where the covenant name YHWH ('the LORD') appears rather than the generic El or Eloah. The yad YHWH asetah zot ('the hand of the LORD has done this') attributes the current state of affairs — including Job's suffering — directly to God's personal, covenantal action. Even creation knows what the friends deny: God did this.
10. The nefesh kol chay ('the soul/life of every living thing') and ruach kol besar ish ('the spirit/breath of all human flesh') are both in God's yad ('hand'). This is not a comfort but a statement of total dependence: every breath, every heartbeat, every moment of existence depends on a God who — Job has argued — acts inscrutably.
11. Job appeals to discernment: the ozen ('ear') tivchan ('tests, evaluates, assays') millin ('words') just as the chek ('palate') yit'am ('tastes') okhel ('food'). The implication: I have tasted your words, friends, and found them lacking. Discernment is not your exclusive property.
12. The yeshishim ('the aged, the very old') possess chokhmah ('wisdom') and the orekh yamim ('length of days') brings tevunah ('understanding'). This may be a concession — yes, age brings wisdom — that sets up the contrast in the next verse: but ultimate wisdom belongs to God alone. Alternatively, some read this as a question: 'Is wisdom only with the aged?' — challenging the friends' assumption that traditional wisdom is sufficient.
13. The immo ('with him') shifts the subject to God. The chokhmah u-gevurah ('wisdom and strength') and etsah u-tevunah ('counsel and understanding') are paired attributes. Job is not praising God here but setting up the terrifying hymn that follows: the question is not whether God has wisdom and power, but what he does with them.
14. The hymn to divine power begins. The verb yaharos ('he tears down, demolishes') is irreversible — lo yibbaneh ('it cannot be rebuilt'). The verb yisgor ('he shuts up, imprisons') al ish ('upon a man') is equally final — lo yippateach ('it cannot be opened'). God's destructive acts are permanent. The emphasis is not on God's power to build but on his power to destroy beyond repair.
15. God controls the fundamental element: mayim ('water'). The verb ya'atsor ('he restrains, withholds') causes drought — ve-yivashu ('and they dry up'). The verb yeshallechem ('he sends them out, releases them') causes flood — ve-yahpekhu erets ('and they overturn the earth'). Either way — drought or flood — the result is devastation. God's power over nature is absolute, and both its exercise and its restraint are catastrophic.
16. The oz ('strength, power') and tushiyyah ('effective wisdom, sound counsel, success') belong to God. But then the disturbing claim: lo shogeg u-mashgeh ('to him belong the one who goes astray and the one who leads astray'). Both the victim of deception and the perpetrator of deception are under God's authority. God owns both sides of every conflict. This is not comfort — it is a statement about God's complicity in the moral chaos of the world.
17. The catalogue of divine subversion begins. God molikhi yo'atsim sholal ('leads counselors away plundered/stripped') — the wise advisors are stripped of their wisdom and led away like captives. The shofetim yeholel ('judges he makes mad, makes foolish') — those entrusted with justice are driven to insanity. The institutions of human wisdom and justice are undone by the God who supposedly upholds them.
18. The musar melakhim pitteach ('the bond/authority of kings he opens/loosens') removes royal power. The va-ye'sor ezor be-motneiheim ('and he binds a loincloth on their waists') replaces royal robes with the garment of a slave or prisoner. Kings become captives. The reversal is total and God-caused.
19. The kohanim ('priests') suffer the same fate as the counselors in verse 17 — sholal ('stripped, plundered'). The etanim ('the established ones, the mighty, the permanent') are yesallef ('overturned, twisted, subverted'). Even the religious establishment and the most entrenched powers are not secure against God's dismantling.
20. God mesir safah ('removes the lip/speech') of the ne'emanim ('the trusted ones, the reliable, the faithful') — those whose word was dependable are struck dumb. He yiqqach ta'am zeqenim ('takes the taste/discernment of elders') — the accumulated wisdom of age is confiscated. If the friends claim authority from age and tradition (as Bildad did in chapter 8), Job's reply is: God can void that authority in a moment.
21. God shofekh buz ('pours out contempt') upon nedivim ('nobles, princes, the generous ones'). The meziach afiqim rippah ('he loosens the waistband of the strong, slackens the channel of the mighty') renders the powerful helpless. The afiqim ('channels, strong ones') may refer to dried-up riverbeds — the mighty become empty channels. The belt loosened means they can no longer fight or work.
22. God megalleh amuqot minni choshekh ('reveals deep things from darkness') — what is hidden, God exposes. The va-yotse la-or tsalmavet ('and he brings death-shadow into light') reverses the relationship between light and darkness. The tsalmavet ('death-shadow, deep darkness') that closed chapter 10 is itself subject to God's revealing power. Even the deepest concealment cannot resist divine exposure.
23. The divine sovereignty extends to the level of entire civilizations. God masgi la-goyim ('makes the nations great, increases them') and then va-ye'abdem ('and he destroys them'). He shoteach la-goyim ('spreads out the nations, expands them') and then va-yanchem ('and he leads them away, guides them off'). The pattern is build-and-destroy, expand-and-scatter. Job is applying to nations what he experiences personally.

24. God *mesir lev* ('removes the heart/mind') of *rashei am ha-arets* ('the heads of the people of the land') — he takes their capacity for leadership. Then *va-yat'em be-tohu lo darekh* ('and he makes them wander in chaos without a path'). The word *tohu* ('formless void, chaos, wasteland') is the same word from Genesis 1:2 — God drives leaders back into pre-creation chaos. The trackless waste is the opposite of the ordered world God built.
25. The final image of the hymn: the once-great leaders *yemasheshu choshekh ve-lo* or ('grope in darkness and not light') — blind, disoriented, helpless. God *va-yat'em ka-shikkor* ('makes them wander like a drunk') — they reel without direction or purpose. This is the endpoint of God's sovereignty as Job sees it: not order from chaos but chaos from order, not light from darkness but darkness swallowing everything. The chapter ends not with praise but with a portrait of divine power that makes the world worse.

13

Summary: *Job continues his response to the three friends, but the tone shifts from the cosmic sovereignty hymn of chapter 12 to a direct, fearless demand to argue his case before God. He first tears into the friends: you are smearing lies over the truth; you are worthless physicians; your silence would be your greatest wisdom. He warns them that God will not be pleased with their defense — they are lying on God's behalf, and God will hold them accountable for their fraudulent advocacy. Then Job turns to God directly in what becomes the boldest speech in the dialogue so far. He declares: I have prepared my case; I know I will be vindicated. He asks only two things — remove your hand from me, and stop terrifying me — and then let us argue. He accuses God of treating him like an enemy, of chasing driven leaves, of writing bitter decrees against him, of punishing him for the sins of his youth, of tracking his every footstep. Job is not surrendering; he is filing a lawsuit against heaven.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Chapter 13 is the legal heart of Job's protest. The vocabulary shifts decisively to courtroom language: riv ('lawsuit, legal dispute'), yakach ('argue, prove, reason'), mishpat ('judgment'), and the repeated demand to present a case. Job essentially says: I will take this to court — with God as both the defendant and the judge. The audacity of this move cannot be overstated. In the ancient Near Eastern world, taking a god to court was unthinkable; in Israel, it was nearly blasphemous. Yet Job insists that truth demands it. His famous declaration in verse 15 — 'Though he slay me, I will hope in him; yet I will argue my ways to his face' — is one of the most interpreted sentences in the Hebrew Bible, with a crucial textual variant between lo ('not/to him') that changes the meaning from defiant hope to defiant despair. Either reading makes Job extraordinary.*

Translation Friction: *The Ketiv/Qere variant in verse 15 is one of the most theologically consequential textual differences in the Hebrew Bible. The written text (Ketiv) reads lo with an aleph: 'I will not hope/wait' — pure defiance. The marginal reading (Qere) reads lo with a vav: 'I will hope in him' — defiant faith. The KJV follows the Qere ('Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him'), creating one of the most famous expressions of faith in English. But the Ketiv may be original, making Job's statement one of the most famous expressions of despair: 'He will kill me — I have no hope — but I will still argue my case.' Both readings produce extraordinary theology. Job's accusation that the friends are lying on God's behalf (verses 7-11) raises a question that echoes through church history: is it acceptable to make bad arguments for God? Job says no — God does not need human lies to defend himself, and those who offer fraudulent testimony on God's behalf will be judged for it.*

Connections: *The courtroom language connects to Isaiah 1:18 ('come, let us reason together' — the same verb yakach) and anticipates the legal resolution in chapters 38-42 where God does appear, though not as Job expected. Job's demand 'tell me my transgression and my sin' (verse 23) echoes his plea in 10:2 and will be partially answered in God's speech, which never names a sin but reframes the question entirely. The image of God watching footsteps (verse 27) connects to Psalm 139's omniscient surveillance, but where the psalmist finds comfort, Job finds persecution. The 'moth-eaten garment' image (verse 28) anticipates Isaiah 50:9 and 51:8.*

¹Look — my eye has seen all of this;
my ear has heard and understood it.

²What you know, I know just as well.
I am not inferior to you.

³But I want to speak to the Almighty.
I desire to argue my case before God.

⁴But you — you smear on lies.
You are all worthless healers.

⁵If only you would be completely silent —
that would be your wisdom!

⁶Hear now my argument;
listen to the pleading of my lips.

⁷Will you speak dishonestly on God's behalf?
Will you tell lies for him?

⁸Will you show partiality on his behalf?
Will you argue God's case for him?

⁹Will it go well for you when he examines you?
Do you think you can deceive him
the way you deceive a mortal?

¹⁰He will surely rebuke you
if you secretly show partiality.

¹¹Will not his majesty terrify you?
Will not his dread fall upon you?

¹²Your memorable sayings are proverbs of ash.
Your defenses are defenses of clay.

¹³Be silent before me. Let me speak.
Then let whatever happens happen to me.

¹⁴Why should I take my flesh in my teeth
and put my life in my hands?

¹⁵Even if he kills me, I will wait for him —
but I will argue my ways to his face.

¹⁶This itself will be my vindication —
that no godless person would dare come before him.

¹⁷Listen carefully to my words;
let my declaration reach your ears.

¹⁸Look — I have prepared my case.
I know that I will be vindicated.

¹⁹Who will bring charges against me?
If anyone can, I will fall silent and die.

²⁰Only grant me two things,
and then I will not hide from your face:

²¹Take your hand off me,
and stop terrifying me with your dread.

²²Then you call and I will answer,
or let me speak and you respond to me.

²³How many are my crimes and sins?
Show me my transgression and my sin.

²⁴Why do you hide your face
and treat me as your enemy?

²⁵Will you terrorize a wind-driven leaf?
Will you chase dry stubble?

²⁶You write bitter charges against me
and make me inherit the sins of my youth.

²⁷You put my feet in the stocks
and watch my every path.
You carve a mark around the soles of my feet.

²⁸Meanwhile he wastes away like something rotten,
like a garment eaten by moths.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Job opens by asserting his own firsthand experience: ra'atah eini ('my eye has seen') and shame'ah ozni ('my ear has heard'). The verb vataven lah ('and it understood for itself') asserts that Job's comprehension is independent — he does not need the friends to interpret reality for him. He has the same data they have and has drawn different conclusions.
2. The ke-da'tekhem yada'ti gam ani ('according to your knowledge I know, I also') is the second assertion of intellectual parity in two chapters (see 12:3). The lo nofel anokhi mikkem ('I do not fall below you') repeats the exact phrase from 12:3 — the repetition is deliberate emphasis. Job is not humbled by their arguments.
3. The turning point. Job shifts from addressing the friends to declaring his intention to address God directly. The verb adabber ('I would speak') el Shaddai ('to the Almighty') and the verb hokheach ('to argue, prove, reason, reprove') el El ('before God') use legal language. The verb chafats ('I desire, I delight in') shows this is not reluctant but eager — Job wants this confrontation.
4. Job's evaluation of the friends is devastating. The tofelei shaqer ('plasterers of falsehood, smearers of lies') pictures them as workers covering a crumbling wall with whitewash — an image Ezekiel 13:10-15 will later develop. The rofei elil ('healers of nothing, worthless physicians') means their prescribed remedy — repent and be restored — is useless because the diagnosis is wrong. They are treating a disease Job does not have.
5. The mi yitten hacharesh tacharishun ('who would give that you would be utterly silent') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — total silence, not merely reduced speech. The u-tehi lakhem le-chokhmah ('and it would be for you as wisdom') means their silence would accomplish what their words have failed to do. The best theological contribution the friends can make is to stop talking.
6. The imperative shim'u na ('hear now!') demands attention. The tokhachti ('my argument, my reproof, my case') is from the same root as yakach (verse 3) — legal argumentation. The rivot sefatai ('the disputes/pleadings of my lips') uses the riv root again — these are formal legal pleadings, not casual complaints. Job is presenting his case, and the friends are the first audience before he turns to the divine court.
7. Job accuses the friends of pious fraud. The ha-le-El tedabberu avlah ('for God will you speak injustice?') asks whether God needs false advocates. The ve-lo tedabberu remiyyah ('and for him will you speak deceit?') doubles the accusation. The friends' theology is not merely wrong — it is dishonest, and it is dishonest in God's name. Job insists that lying for God is still lying.

8. The ha-fanav tissa'un ('will you lift his face?' — the idiom for showing partiality) accuses the friends of bias. In legal contexts, 'lifting the face' means judging in someone's favor regardless of the evidence — exactly what Leviticus 19:15 prohibits. The im la-El terivun ('will you conduct a lawsuit for God?') asks whether God has hired them as defense attorneys. The implication: God does not need corrupt lawyers.
9. Job warns the friends that their fraudulent defense of God will be investigated by God himself. The yachqor etkhem ('he will search you out, investigate you') turns divine scrutiny back on the friends. The ke-hatel be-enosh tehatellu vo ('as one mocks/deceives a human, will you deceive him?') asks whether they think God can be fooled. Their false testimony on God's behalf will not escape God's notice.
10. The infinitive absolute hokheach yokhiach ('he will certainly reprove, he will surely argue against') emphasizes certainty — God's rebuke of the friends is guaranteed. The ba-seter panim tissa'un ('in secret you lift the face') means their bias is hidden, operating under a veneer of piety, but God will expose it. The irony is prophetic: in the epilogue (42:7-8), God does rebuke the friends for not speaking rightly.
11. The se'eto ('his majesty, his exaltation, his lifting up') is what should make the friends afraid — not Job's suffering but God's scrutiny of their false testimony. The pachdo ('his dread, his terror') yippol aleikhem ('will fall upon you') reverses the expected direction of fear: the friends thought they were safely on God's side, but Job warns that God's judgment will fall on them for their dishonest advocacy.
12. The zikhronekhem ('your memorable sayings, your proverbs, your traditions') are mishlei efer ('proverbs of ash') — they crumble to nothing when tested. The gabbei chomer gabbeikem ('your defenses are defenses of clay') — their theological fortifications are made of mud. The imagery is of a wall that looks solid but dissolves under pressure. The friends' entire theological edifice, Job claims, is structurally unsound.
13. The imperative hacharishu mimmenni ('be silent away from me') dismisses the friends. The va-adabberah ani ('and I myself will speak') asserts Job's right to be heard. The ve-ya'avov alai mah ('and let pass over me what may') is the acceptance of risk — Job knows that confronting God could destroy him, and he accepts that possibility. This is courage, not recklessness.
14. Two idioms for extreme risk. The essa vesari ve-shinnai ('I carry my flesh in my teeth') pictures an animal carrying prey in its jaws — Job's own body is the prey he risks. The nafshi asim be-khappi ('I put my life in my palm') means to expose one's life to danger, holding it out where it can be snatched away. Job is saying: I have nothing left to lose. The risk of confronting God is no worse than what I already endure.
15. The most famous and most debated verse in Job. The Ketiv (written text) reads lo with an aleph — 'I will not wait/hope' — making Job's statement one of pure defiance: 'He will kill me; I have no hope; but I will still argue.' The Qere (marginal reading) reads lo with a vav — 'to him I will wait/hope' — making it an expression of faith through suffering. The KJV follows the Qere. Both readings produce extraordinary theology. The akh derakhay el panav okhiach ('but my ways to his face I will argue/prove') is unambiguous in either reading: Job will present his case directly to God, face to face, regardless of the cost. The verb okhiach (from yakach) is legal language — courtroom argumentation.
16. Job's logic is bold: the very fact that he dares to approach God proves he is not a hypocrite. A chanef ('godless person, hypocrite, profane person') lo yavo lefanav ('would not come before him') — a guilty man would flee God's courtroom, not demand a hearing. Job's willingness to stand before God is itself evidence of innocence. The hu li lishu'ah ('he is for me salvation' or 'this is my salvation') may mean either that God will be his savior or that this legal confrontation itself will save him.
17. The infinitive absolute shim'u shamoa ('listen — really listen') demands total attention. The millati ('my word, my speech') and achavati ('my declaration, my announcement') are what follows — Job's formal statement of his case. The be-ozneikhem ('in your ears') makes the friends witnesses to what Job is about to say to God.
18. The arakhti mishpat ('I have arranged my judgment, I have set my case in order') uses military and legal language — Job has marshaled his evidence and organized his arguments. The yada'ti ki ani etsdda'q ('I know that I will be declared righteous, I will be vindicated') is not arrogance but legal confidence: when the evidence is heard, the verdict will be in his favor. The verb etsdda'q ('I will be justified') is the passive of tsadaq — he expects to be declared righteous by the court.
19. The mi hu yarev immadi ('who is the one who will bring a lawsuit against me?') is a legal challenge — let my accuser step forward. The ki attah acharish ve-egva ('for then I would be silent and I would die') means: if someone can actually present a case against me, I will accept the verdict in silence, even unto death. But Job is confident no one can.
20. Job now addresses God directly with two preconditions for the trial. The akh shetayim al ta'as immadi ('only two things do not do to me') sets the terms. The az mippanekha lo essater ('then from your face I will not hide') means Job will appear in court — he will not flee — if these conditions are met. The conditions follow in verse 21.
21. The two conditions. First: kappekha me-alai harchaq ('your palm from upon me put far away') — stop the physical suffering so Job can think clearly enough to present his case. Second: eimatekha al teva'attanni ('your terror do not terrify me') — stop the psychological pressure of divine dread. Job needs a level playing field: he cannot argue his case while being simultaneously crushed and terrorized by the opposing party.
22. Job offers two formats for the trial. Either God calls the case and Job responds — the normal format where the accuser speaks first — or Job presents his case and God responds. Either way, Job insists on dialogue: call-and-answer, speak-and-respond. The current situation — God acting without speaking, punishing without explaining — is what Job finds intolerable.
23. Job demands formal charges. The kammah li avonot ve-chattat ('how many are my iniquities and sins?') asks for a number — quantify the charges. The pish'i ve-chattati hodi'eni ('my transgression and my sin — make me know') demands disclosure. Three words for sin are used: avonot ('guilt, iniquity'), chattat ('sin, failure, missing the mark'), and pesha ('transgression, rebellion, willful violation'). Job is not denying all sin — he is demanding that the specific charges be named.

- 24.** The panekha tastir ('you hide your face') is the most devastating thing God can do in Hebrew theology — the withdrawal of the divine presence, the removal of favor, the cold shoulder of heaven. Psalm 13:1 asks the same question. The ve-tachsheveni le-oyev lakh ('and you count me as an enemy to you') means God has reclassified Job from beloved servant to hostile adversary. Job does not understand why.
- 25.** The disproportion is absurd. Job compares himself to an aleh niddaf ('a leaf blown about, a driven leaf') — weightless, helpless, at the mercy of every breeze. Will the Almighty ta'arots ('terrify, crush, cause to tremble') something so fragile? Will God tirdof ('pursue, chase, hunt') qash yavesh ('dry stubble') — dead plant matter that the wind is already carrying away? The imagery exposes the grotesque imbalance between God's power and Job's vulnerability.
- 26.** God tikhtov ('writes') merorot ('bitter things, bitter decrees') against Job — the image is of a judge writing a sentence. The verb torisheni ('you make me inherit, you cause me to possess') avonot ne'urai ('the iniquities of my youth') means God is reaching back to youthful mistakes and punishing a mature man for the follies of his younger self. Job considers this unjust — the punishment does not match the crime, and the crime may be decades old.
- 27.** Three images of surveillance and confinement. God tasem ba-sad raglai ('puts my feet in stocks') — physical restraint. God tishmor kol orchotai ('watches all my paths') — total surveillance. God al shorshei raglai titchaqkeh ('upon the roots of my feet you inscribe yourself') — God literally marks the soles of Job's feet so that every step can be traced. The image is of a prisoner whose movement is completely monitored and controlled.
- 28.** Job describes himself in the third person — a man who is disintegrating. The ke-raqav yivleh ('like rot he decays, like something decaying he wears out') and ke-veged akahlo ash ('like a garment a moth has eaten') present a body in slow decomposition. The garment image is particularly poignant: cloth that looks intact from a distance but crumbles at a touch because moths have consumed its structure from within. This verse serves as a bridge to chapter 14's meditation on human mortality.

14

Summary: Job's speech reaches its climax with a meditation on human mortality that is among the most poignant passages in the Hebrew Bible. He begins with the observation that human life is short, troubled, and fragile — born of woman, few of days, full of turmoil, fading like a flower, fleeting like a shadow. He asks God: why scrutinize something so brief? Then comes the extraordinary tree metaphor: a tree has hope, because if it is cut down, it can sprout again — the scent of water will make it bud like a new plant. But a human being dies, lies down, and does not rise. The waters of the sea will fail and the river will dry up before a dead person wakes from sleep. Job then dares to imagine an impossible hope: what if God would hide him in Sheol until his anger passes, set an appointed time, and then remember him? If a man dies, will he live again? Job would wait through all the days of his hard service for the moment of renewal. But the hope collapses: God destroys human hope as water wears away stone. You overpower him forever and he departs; you change his face and send him away. His sons are honored and he does not know it. He feels only the pain of his own flesh and mourns for himself alone.

What Makes This Remarkable: The tree-and-human contrast in verses 7-12 is one of the most structurally elegant poems in the Hebrew Bible. The tree has tiqvah ('hope') because biology allows regrowth; the human has no tiqvah because death is final. The contrast is devastating precisely because it is drawn from ordinary nature — anyone who has seen a stump sending up new shoots knows the tree's resilience. The human body has no equivalent mechanism. Yet in the middle of this despairing contrast, verses 13-15 contain what many scholars consider the closest approach to resurrection hope in the Hebrew Bible before Daniel 12:2. Job imagines God hiding him in Sheol temporarily, setting an appointed time, and then remembering him — calling him by name, and Job answering. The verb tiqra ('you would call') and e'eneka ('I would answer you') picture a divine summons that pulls Job out of death. The hope is expressed as a wish, not a doctrine, and it collapses by verse 19. But the fact that Job can even imagine it shows that the logic of his relationship with God pushes beyond what his theology can contain.

Translation Friction: The central tension of this chapter is between what Job knows and what he dares to wish. He knows humans die and do not return (verses 10-12). He wishes God would hide him in Sheol and then remember him (verses 13-15). He knows God destroys hope like water wears away stone (verse 19). The chapter oscillates between despair and impossible longing, never resolving into either pure hopelessness or confident expectation. This makes it the most emotionally complex passage in Job so far. The closing verses (20-22) are among the bleakest in the Hebrew Bible: the dead know nothing of their children's fate; they feel only their own pain. This is not the theology of heaven and hell — it is the theology of isolation, where death cuts every connection between the living and the dead.

Connections: The flower-and-shadow imagery of verse 2 connects to Psalm 103:15-16, Isaiah 40:6-8, and James 1:10-11. The tree metaphor in verses 7-9 inverts the blessed-man-as-tree image of Psalm 1:3 and Jeremiah 17:8 — those texts compare the righteous to a well-watered tree; Job says even a cut-down tree has more hope than a human. The 'if a man dies, will he live again?' of verse 14 becomes a theological landmark that later biblical writers — Daniel 12:2, Ezekiel 37, and eventually the New Testament — will answer. The water-wearing-away-stone image in verse 19 is one of the earliest uses of erosion as a metaphor for the slow destruction of hope.

¹A human being, born of woman —
few days and full of turmoil.

²He springs up like a flower and withers;
he flees like a shadow and does not last.

³And on such a creature you fix your gaze?
You bring even me into judgment with you?

⁴Who can bring something clean from what is unclean?
No one.

⁵Since his days are determined,
the number of his months is with you.
You have set his limit, and he cannot pass it.

⁶Look away from him so he can rest,
until he finishes his day like a hired worker.

⁷For a tree has hope:
if it is cut down, it will sprout again,
and its new shoots will not stop coming.

⁸Even if its root grows old in the ground
and its stump dies in the dust,

⁹at the scent of water it will bud
and put out branches like a young plant.

¹⁰But a man dies and lies powerless.
A human breathes his last — and where is he?

¹¹As waters vanish from the sea
and a river dries up and is gone,

¹²so a man lies down and does not rise.
Until the heavens are no more, they will not awake;
they will not be roused from their sleep.

¹³If only you would hide me in Sheol,
conceal me until your anger passes,
set me an appointed time — and then remember me!

¹⁴If a man dies, will he live again?
All the days of my hard service I would wait

until my relief comes.

¹⁵You would call, and I would answer you.
You would long for the work of your hands.

¹⁶For now you count my every step,
but you would not keep watch over my sin.

¹⁷My transgression would be sealed in a bag;
you would plaster over my guilt.

¹⁸But a mountain falls and crumbles away,
and a rock is moved from its place.

¹⁹Water wears away stones;
floods wash away the soil of the earth —
and so you destroy the hope of a mortal.

²⁰You overpower him forever, and he is gone.
You change his face and send him away.

²¹His sons rise to honor, and he does not know it.
They are brought low, and he is unaware.

²²He feels only the pain of his own flesh;
his soul mourns only for itself.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. One of the most quoted verses in Job. The *adam yelud ishah* ('a human born of woman') establishes universal scope — every person who has ever lived. The *qetsar yamim* ('short of days') and *seva rogez* ('saturated with turmoil, agitation, trembling') define the human condition: brief and troubled. The *rogez* ('agitation, restlessness, rage, turmoil') is stronger than the KJV's 'trouble' — it implies constant inner disturbance.
2. Two images of impermanence. The *ke-tsits yatsa* ('like a blossom he comes out') and *va-yimma* ('and he withers, is cut off') — the flower blooms and is gone. The *va-yivra* ('and he flees like a shadow') and *lo ya'amod* ('and he does not stand, does not endure') — even a shadow has more persistence, since it returns the next day. The verb *yivra* ('he flees') adds urgency: life does not merely pass — it runs away.
3. The accusation intensifies the disproportion: God *paqachta einakha* ('you have opened your eyes') upon something this fragile and fleeting. The *tavi be-mishpat immakh* ('you bring into judgment with you') subjects a flower-brief life to divine litigation. Job's argument: scrutinizing something this small and temporary is beneath God's dignity, or at least disproportionate.
4. The *mi yitten tahor mi-tame* ('who can give a clean thing from an unclean?') states the impossibility of moral purity arising from morally compromised human nature. The *lo echad* ('not one') is emphatic finality. Job is not confessing specific sin but acknowledging the universal human condition: if God demands absolute purity from beings born into impurity, the standard is impossible to meet. This anticipates Paul's argument in Romans 3 and 5.
5. Three statements of divine control over human lifespan. The *charutsim yamav* ('determined/decreed are his days') — the length of life is predetermined. The *mispar chodashav itakh* ('the number of his months is with you') — God holds the count. The *chuqqav asita ve-lo ya'avur* ('you have made his statute and he cannot cross it') — a hard boundary exists. The *chuqqav* ('his statute, his decree, his boundary') is the fixed line of death that no human can cross.
6. The *she'eh me-alav* ('look away from upon him, gaze elsewhere') asks God to stop watching — the surveillance from 13:27 is unbearable. The *ve-yechdal* ('and let him cease, let him rest') asks for the relief of inattention. The *ad yirtseh ke-sakhir yomo* ('until he enjoys/completes like a hired worker his day') compares life to a laborer's shift: let the man finish his miserable workday in peace. The *sakhir* ('hired worker, day laborer') image recurs from 7:1-2.
7. The *ki yesh la-ets tiqvah* ('for there is for the tree hope') is one of the most important uses of *tiqvah* in the Hebrew Bible. The tree's hope is grounded in biology: *im yikkaret* ('if it is cut') *ve-od yachalif* ('and again it will renew itself'). The verb *yachalif* ('it changes, renews, puts forth new growth') describes the replacement of the old with the new. Job is observing nature with scientific accuracy in service of a theological argument.

8. The conditions are extreme: yazqin ba-arets shorsho ('its root grows old in the earth') and ve-afar yamut giz'o ('in the dust its trunk/stump dies'). The tree appears completely dead — old root, dead stump, buried in dust. Yet what follows (verse 9) reverses the death sentence. The contrast with the human condition (verses 10-12) is built precisely on this apparent death that is not final.
9. The me-reach mayim ('at the scent/smell of water') is extraordinary: the apparently dead stump is so alive beneath the surface that it can smell water approaching. The verb yafriach ('it will bud, blossom, sprout') and the phrase ve-asah qatsir kemo nata ('and it will produce a harvest/branch like a new planting') describe full regeneration. What looked dead becomes indistinguishable from something freshly planted. The tree's latent life exceeds all visible evidence.
10. The contrast is absolute. The ve-gever yamut va-yechelash ('and a strong man dies and is weakened, lies prostrate') — the gever ('strong man, warrior') is reduced to helplessness. The va-yigva adam ve-ayyo ('and a human expires and where is he?') asks the unanswerable question. The word ayyo ('where is he?') echoes through emptiness — there is no answer because there is no one there to answer.
11. The comparison shifts to water: azelu mayim minni yam ('waters depart from the sea') and nahar yecherav ve-yavesh ('a river dries up and is dried out'). The image is of total evaporation — the sea itself losing its water, a river becoming a dry bed. These are extreme, nearly impossible events used to describe how long the dead remain dead: the comparison continues in verse 12.
12. The ve-ish shakhav ve-lo yaqum ('and a man lies down and does not rise') states the finality of death. The ad bilti shamayim ('until the heavens are no more') sets the duration: as long as the sky exists, the dead remain dead. The lo yaqitsu ('they will not awaken') and lo ye'oru mi-shenatam ('they will not be roused from their sleep') use sleep as a metaphor for death — but unlike sleep, no morning comes. The phrase 'until the heavens are no more' has been read by later interpreters as allowing for a resurrection at the end of the cosmos, but in Job's context it means 'forever.'
13. The mi yitten ('who would give' — 'if only') introduces Job's impossible wish. The tatspineneni bi-She'ol ('you would hide me in Sheol') reimagines the underworld not as a prison but as a shelter — a place where God's wrath cannot reach. The tastireni ad shuv appekha ('you would conceal me until your anger turns back') imagines divine rage as temporary, something that will pass. The tashit li choq ('you would set me an appointed time') asks for a scheduled return date. The ve-tizkhereni ('and you would remember me') is the climactic verb — God's remembrance is the key that could unlock death.
14. The question im yamut gever ha-yichyeh ('if a strong man dies, will he live?') is the central theological question of the chapter — and arguably of the entire Hebrew Bible's wisdom tradition. Job does not answer it; he expresses willingness to wait: kol yemei tseva'i ayachel ('all the days of my military service/hard labor I would wait'). The tsava ('army, military service, hard labor') from 7:1 returns — life is forced service. The chalifati ('my relief, my replacement, my renewal') is the hoped-for change from death to life.
15. The tiqra ('you would call') ve-anokhi e'enekka ('and I would answer you') pictures the most intimate possible reunion: God calls Job by name from beyond death, and Job responds. The le-ma'aseh yadekha tikhsuf ('for the work of your hands you would long, yearn') attributes to God a desire to reclaim what he made. The verb tikhsuf ('you would yearn, long for, desire intensely') makes God the one who wants Job back. This is the most hopeful verse in Job — and it is framed as a wish, not a promise.
16. The ki attah tse'adai tispur ('for now you count my steps') describes the current reality of surveillance. The lo tishmor al chattati ('you would not watch over my sin') imagines the future hope: in that renewed relationship, God would stop tracking transgressions. The verse contrasts present reality (God the accountant tallying every misstep) with imagined future (God the forgiver who lets sin go). The conditional mood continues from verses 13-15.
17. Two images of sin being put away. The chatum bi-tsror pish'i ('sealed in a bundle is my transgression') pictures sin tied up in a pouch and sealed shut — filed away and forgotten. The va-titpol al avoni ('and you would plaster over my guilt') uses the same verb (tafal — 'to plaster, smear over') that Job used in 13:4 to accuse the friends of smearing lies. Here, God would plaster over guilt — covering it, concealing it, rendering it invisible. Some interpreters read this as continuing the hopeful wish; others see Job snapping back to bitter reality: God has my sins bagged as evidence.
18. The ve-ulam ('but, however') signals the collapse of hope. Even mountains — har nofel yibbol ('a mountain falling crumbles') — are not permanent. Even rock — tsur ye'taq mi-meqomo ('a rock is displaced from its place') — can be moved. If the most permanent things in nature are subject to destruction, what chance does hope have? Job is preparing to describe the erosion of human expectation.
19. This verse is the theological counterweight to verse 7. There, a tree had tiqvah. Here, God destroys the tiqvah of enosh ('a mortal, a frail human being'). The verb he'evadta ('you have destroyed, you have caused to perish') makes God the active agent of hope's destruction. Job does not say hope faded naturally — God killed it.
20. God titqefehu la-netsach ('you overpower him forever') — the victory is permanent and total. The va-yahalokh ('and he goes, departs') is the euphemism for death. The meshaneh fanav ('you change his face') may refer to the distortion of death — the face of the living becomes the mask of the dead. The va-teshallachehu ('and you send him away') is dismissal: God dispatches the human from the land of the living.
21. The cruelest dimension of death: total disconnection from one's children. The yikhbedu vanav ('his sons are honored') ve-lo yeda ('and he does not know') — the father cannot celebrate his children's success. The ve-yits'aru ('and they are diminished, suffer') ve-lo yavin lamo ('and he does not perceive it for them') — the father cannot grieve with his children in their pain. Death severs every relationship. The dead are cosmically alone.
22. The closing verse is devastating in its isolation. The akh besaro alav yikh'av ('only his flesh upon him is in pain') — the dead (or the dying) are reduced to bare physical sensation. The ve-nafsho alav te'eval ('and his soul upon him mourns') — even the soul's grief is self-referential, turned inward. There is no connection to others, no awareness of the world, no hope of reunion. Job's first speech (chapters 12-14) ends not with a cry to

God or a challenge to the friends but with a portrait of absolute human aloneness. The chapter closes the first cycle of speeches on the bleakest possible note.

15

Summary: *The second cycle of speeches begins with Eliphaz returning, and his tone has hardened considerably since his first speech (chapters 4-5). Gone is the delicate sympathy; Eliphaz now attacks Job directly. He accuses Job of undermining the fear of God with his words, of being crafted by his own mouth's cunning, of claiming wisdom that no human possesses. He asks devastating questions: Were you born before the hills? Did you listen in on God's secret council? What do you know that we do not? He appeals to the tradition of the ancients — the elders who received wisdom from the generation that held the land before any foreigner passed through it. Then Eliphaz launches into an extended portrait of the wicked man's fate: he writhes in torment all his days, terrible sounds fill his ears, he does not believe he will escape the darkness, he shakes his fist at God, he runs against God with a thick shield. His prosperity is temporary; his house will be desolate; fire will consume his tent. The wicked conceives trouble and gives birth to falsehood.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Eliphaz's second speech marks the deterioration of the dialogue. In his first speech (chapter 4), Eliphaz began with pastoral sensitivity and offered comfort alongside correction. Now he begins with insult: 'Should a wise man answer with wind?' The shift reveals the friends' growing frustration — Job's refusal to accept their theology has moved them from sympathy to hostility. The portrait of the wicked man in verses 20-35 is magnificent poetry in service of a flawed argument. Eliphaz describes the inner torment of the guilty conscience — the wicked man hears terrifying sounds in peacetime, expects the sword in prosperity, wanders looking for bread, knows that darkness is prepared for him. The psychological acuity is genuine; the application to Job is wrong. Eliphaz is describing a guilty person's experience, and Job is not guilty.*

Translation Friction: *Eliphaz's appeal to tradition (verses 17-19) raises the question of whether ancestral wisdom is self-validating. He claims authority from a chain of transmission: the wise men taught this, and they received it from the generation that held the land before foreigners arrived. The implication is that older wisdom is purer wisdom, uncorrupted by foreign influence. Job has implicitly challenged this by appealing to his own experience and to creation itself (12:7-9). The dialogue is now a contest between tradition (the friends) and experience (Job), with both sides claiming access to truth. Eliphaz's description of the wicked man as one who 'stretches out his hand against God' and 'runs against him with a thick shield' (verses 25-26) is particularly ironic: Eliphaz intends this as a warning to Job, but the reader recognizes that Job's legal challenge to God (chapter 13) is not defiance but desperate faith — Job confronts God because he still believes God is the only one who can vindicate him.*

Connections: *Eliphaz's question 'Were you the first man born?' (verse 7) may allude to Proverbs 8:22-31, where Wisdom was present before creation. The question implies Job claims primordial wisdom — which he does not. The portrait of the wicked in verses 20-35 parallels Psalm 73 (the prosperity of the wicked) and anticipates Bildad's extended version in chapter 18 and Zophar's in chapter 20. The friends' wicked-man speeches become increasingly elaborate across the second cycle, as if repetition and embellishment could make their theology more convincing. The image of the wicked man running against God with a thick-bossed shield (verse 26) anticipates the warrior imagery that God himself will use in chapters 39-41.*

¹Then Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said:

²Should a wise man answer with windy knowledge
and fill his belly with the east wind?

³Should he argue with useless talk,
with words that accomplish nothing?

⁴You are even undermining the fear of God
and diminishing devotion before him.

⁵Your guilt is teaching your mouth what to say;
you have chosen the tongue of the crafty.

⁶Your own mouth condemns you, not I.
Your own lips testify against you.

⁷Were you the first human ever born?
Were you brought forth before the hills?

⁸Did you listen in on God's secret council?
Do you limit wisdom to yourself alone?

⁹What do you know that we do not know?
What do you understand that is beyond us?

¹⁰Among us are the gray-haired and the very aged —
men older even than your father.

¹¹Are God's consolations too small for you?
Is a word spoken gently to you not enough?

¹²What has carried your heart away?
Why do your eyes flash?

¹³That you turn your spirit against God
and let such words pour from your mouth?

¹⁴What is a mortal, that he could be pure?
What is one born of woman, that he could be righteous?

¹⁵If God puts no trust in his holy ones,
and even the heavens are not pure in his sight —

¹⁶how much less a creature loathsome and corrupt —
a human being, who drinks injustice like water!

¹⁷Let me show you — listen to me.
What I have seen, I will declare.

¹⁸What the wise have declared —
what they did not conceal from their fathers —

¹⁹to whom alone the land was given,
before any foreigner had passed through it.

²⁰All the days of the wicked, he writhes in torment.
The number of years hidden away for the tyrant —

²¹Terrifying sounds fill his ears.
In the midst of peace, the destroyer comes upon him.

²²He does not believe he will return from darkness.
He is marked for the sword.

²³He wanders looking for bread — where is it?
He knows that a day of darkness stands ready at his hand.

²⁴Distress and anguish terrify him;
they overpower him like a king ready for battle.

²⁵Because he stretched out his hand against God
and set himself as a warrior against the Almighty.

²⁶He charges at him with neck outstretched,
behind the thick bosses of his shields.

²⁷Because he covered his face with his fat
and gathered thick flesh on his loins.

²⁸He has settled in destroyed cities,
in houses no one should inhabit,
which are destined to become rubble.

²⁹He will not grow rich; his wealth will not endure.
His possessions will not spread across the land.

³⁰He will not escape the darkness.
Flame will dry up his shoots,
and by the breath of God's mouth he will be swept away.

³¹Let him not trust in emptiness, deceiving himself,
for emptiness will be his reward.

³²Before his time, it will be fulfilled.
His palm branch will not stay green.

³³He will shed his unripe grapes like a vine;
he will cast off his blossoms like an olive tree.

³⁴For the company of the godless is barren,
and fire consumes the tents of bribery.

³⁵They conceive trouble and give birth to wickedness;
their womb prepares deceit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard dialogue formula opens the second cycle. Eliphaz speaks first again, maintaining the order established in the first cycle. But the content will be sharply different from his measured opening in chapter 4.

2. Eliphaz opens with an insult. The *da'at ruach* ('knowledge of wind, windy knowledge') dismisses Job's arguments as empty air. The verb *yemalle qadim bitno* ('he fills his belly with the east wind') pictures Job as bloated with the scorching desert wind — the *qadim* ('east wind, sirocco') that withers everything it touches. Job's words are not merely empty; they are destructive.
3. The *hokheach be-davar lo yiskon* ('to argue with a word that is not useful') and *millin lo yo'il bam* ('words that have no benefit in them') continue the dismissal. The verb *yiskon* ('is useful, is profitable') and *yo'il* ('benefits, helps') are economic terms — Job's words have no value, no return on investment. Eliphaz evaluates speech pragmatically: does it produce repentance? If not, it is worthless.
4. The accusation escalates. Job *tafer yir'ah* ('you break, annul, undermine the fear of God') — his words are not merely useless but dangerous to others' piety. The *ve-tigra sichah lifnei El* ('and you reduce/diminish prayer/meditation before God') means Job's public complaints discourage others from approaching God. Eliphaz frames Job's protest as a threat to the community's spiritual health.
5. Eliphaz claims Job's *avon* ('guilt, iniquity') *ye'allef pikha* ('instructs your mouth, teaches your mouth') — Job's sin is the source of his arguments, not his innocence. The *tivchar leshon arumim* ('you choose the tongue of the cunning/crafty') accuses Job of deliberate rhetorical manipulation. The *arumim* ('crafty, shrewd') is the same word used for the serpent in Genesis 3:1 — the association may be intentional.
6. Eliphaz claims he is not the accuser — Job's own words convict him. The *yarshi'akha pikha* ('your mouth declares you guilty') and *sefatekha ya'anuvakh* ('your lips answer/testify against you') turn Job's speech into self-incrimination. The legal language is pointed: Job wanted a trial (chapter 13), and Eliphaz says the trial is already over — Job has convicted himself from the witness stand.
7. Eliphaz mocks Job's claim to wisdom by asking whether Job has primordial knowledge. The *ha-ri'shon adam tivva'el* ('were you born as the first human?') asks whether Job was Adam — the first to exist, with unmediated access to God. The *ve-lifnei geva'ot cholalta* ('and before the hills were you brought forth?') echoes the language of Proverbs 8:25 where personified Wisdom was born before the hills. Job claims no such thing, but Eliphaz exaggerates to ridicule.
8. The *be-sod Eloah tishma* ('in the council/secret assembly of God did you hear?') asks whether Job eavesdropped on the divine deliberations. The *sod* ('secret, intimate counsel, council') is the heavenly assembly where God makes decisions — the very assembly described in chapters 1-2, to which Job has no access. The irony is profound: Job has not heard the divine council, but neither has Eliphaz — yet Eliphaz (who claimed a night vision in 4:12-16) acts as though he has.
9. The double question *mah yada'ta ve-lo neda* ('what do you know that we do not know?') and *tavin ve-lo immanu hu* ('what do you understand that is not with us?') challenges Job to demonstrate superior knowledge. The implied answer: nothing. Eliphaz assumes the friends collectively possess all available wisdom, and Job has nothing to add.
10. Eliphaz appeals to the authority of age. The *sav* ('gray-haired') and *yashish* ('very old, ancient') are among the friends' community. The *kabbir me-avikha yamim* ('greater in days than your father') claims a chain of authority that precedes even Job's father. In a culture where age conferred wisdom, this is a claim of overwhelming credentialed superiority.
11. The *tanchumot El* ('the consolations of God') refers to the comfort the friends have offered — which they consider to be God's comfort channeled through them. The *ha-me'at mimmekha* ('are they too small/insufficient for you?') accuses Job of rejecting divine comfort. The *davar la'at immakh* ('a word gently/softly with you') refers to their supposedly gentle approach. Eliphaz has apparently forgotten how gentle he has not been.
12. Eliphaz describes Job as emotionally uncontrolled. The *mah yiqqachakha libbekha* ('what takes you away, your heart?') means Job has been swept away by passion. The *mah yirzemun einekha* ('what do your eyes flash/wink at?') suggests either anger (flashing eyes) or conspiracy (winking). Eliphaz reads Job's emotional intensity as evidence of guilt rather than honest anguish.
13. The *tashiv el El rukhekha* ('you turn your spirit against God') describes open rebellion — Job's *ruach* ('spirit') is directed against the deity. The *ve-hotseta mippikha millin* ('and you bring forth from your mouth words') implies that Job's speech is a form of spiritual assault. Eliphaz frames Job's legal demand (chapter 13) as an attack on God.
14. Eliphaz echoes Job's own concession in 14:4 ('who can bring something clean from what is unclean?') but uses it differently. The *mah enosh ki yizkeh* ('what is a mortal that he should be clean?') and *ki yitsdda qelud ishah* ('that one born of woman should be righteous?') deny the possibility of human purity. The *enosh* ('mortal, frail human') and *qelud ishah* ('born of woman') emphasize weakness and biological limitation. Eliphaz's argument: you cannot be innocent because no one can be.
15. Eliphaz reprises his argument from 4:18 but expands it. If God *bi-qedoshav lo ya'amin* ('does not trust his holy ones') — the angelic beings — and *shamayim lo zakku be-einav* ('the heavens are not pure in his eyes'), then how much less a human? The *qedoshim* ('holy ones') are the members of the divine council. If they are not trustworthy, the argument from lesser to greater makes human righteousness impossible.
16. The *nit'av* ('abominable, loathsome') and *ne'elach* ('corrupt, soured, curdled') describe the human condition as repulsive. The *ish shoteh kha-mayim avlah* ('a person who drinks injustice like water') is Eliphaz's most extreme characterization: humans do not merely commit sin occasionally — they consume it as naturally and constantly as drinking water. Sin is not an aberration but the human default. This totalizing view of human depravity leaves no room for Job's claim of relative innocence.
17. Eliphaz appeals to his own visionary authority: *achavvekha* ('I will show you, reveal to you'). The *zeh chaziti* ('this I have seen, envisioned') uses the verb *chazah* ('to see, to have a vision'), which connects to his earlier claim of a night vision (4:12-16). The *va-asapperah* ('and I will recount it') presents himself as a reliable witness to revealed truth.

18. The chain of authority: chakhamim yaggidu ('wise men have declared') and lo khichadu me-avotam ('they did not hide from their fathers') — the wisdom has been transmitted openly across generations. Eliphaz grounds his argument in tradition, in contrast to Job's appeal to personal experience and creation's witness.
19. The lahem levaddam nittenah ha-arets ('to them alone the land was given') and lo avar zar betokham ('no stranger passed through their midst') describe an idealized original community — pure, uncontaminated by foreign influence. This may refer to the patriarchal era or to an idealized pre-invasion period. The claim is that the wisdom Eliphaz channels comes from an uncorrupted source. The zar ('stranger, foreigner, outsider') represents theological contamination.
20. The extended portrait of the wicked man begins. The kol yemei rasha hu mitcholel ('all the days of the wicked he writhes, twists, trembles') describes lifelong inner torment. The mispar shanim nitspenu le-arits ('the number of years stored up for the tyrant') means the oppressor's remaining years are hidden from him — he lives in uncertainty about when his destruction will come. Eliphaz intends Job to see himself in this portrait.
21. The qol pechadim be-oznav ('the sound of terrors in his ears') describes the wicked man's constant auditory haunting — he hears threats even in silence. The ba-shalom shoded yevo'ennu ('in peace/prosperity a destroyer will come upon him') means security itself is illusory: the moment of greatest safety is the moment of greatest vulnerability. This is the psychology of guilt — the inability to rest even when no external threat exists.
22. The lo ya'amin shuv minni choshekh ('he does not believe in returning from darkness') describes a man who knows his doom is coming and cannot be escaped. The ve-tsafui hu elei charev ('and watched/waited for he is by the sword') means the sword is already appointed for him — it awaits him, patient and certain.
23. The noded hu la-lechem ayyeh ('he wanders for bread — where?') describes the wicked man reduced to a beggar, searching for food. The yada ki nakhon be-yado yom choshekh ('he knows that prepared at his hand is a day of darkness') means the man carries his own doom like an object in his possession. The day of darkness is not distant but immediate — it is at his hand, ready to deploy.
24. The tsar u-metsuqah ('distress and anguish, trouble and pressure') yeva'atuhu ('terrify him') are personified as attackers. The titqefehu ke-melekh atid la-kidor ('they overpower him like a king prepared for attack') compares the wicked man's suffering to being assaulted by a king with a prepared army. The kidor ('battle, attack') implies organized, military-grade destruction directed at a single person.
25. The cause of the wicked man's doom: natah el El yado ('he stretched out his hand against God') — direct, physical defiance. The ve-el Shaddai yitgabbar ('and against the Almighty he makes himself mighty, he acts as a warrior') describes someone who challenges divine power. Eliphaz intends this as a description of Job's legal challenge from chapter 13 — by demanding a hearing, Job has 'stretched out his hand against God.'
26. The yarutz elav be-tsavvar ('he runs at him with neck/neck outstretched') pictures a headlong charge — reckless, defiant. The ba-avi gabbei maginav ('with the thickness of the backs/bosses of his shields') describes the attacking warrior's shield wall — multiple shields with reinforced central bosses, the heaviest defensive armor used for aggressive assault. The wicked man charges God as if God were a fortified city to be stormed.
27. The wicked man's prosperity is described physically: kissah fanav be-chelbo ('he covered his face with his fat') and va-ya'as pimah alei khasel ('and he made thick fat upon his flank/loins'). The chelev ('fat') represents abundance, self-indulgence, and insulation from suffering. The man has padded himself against the world — he is so prosperous that fat covers even his face. But this prosperity, Eliphaz argues, is the prelude to destruction.
28. The wicked man vayishkon arim nikhchadot ('dwells in cities that have been destroyed, desolated') — he builds his life on ruins. The battim lo yeshvu lamo ('houses that should not be inhabited') are structurally unsound. The asher hit'atedu le-gallim ('which are prepared/destined to become heaps of stone') means the buildings themselves are on their way to collapse. The metaphor is of a man who builds on condemned property — his prosperity is structurally doomed.
29. Three negations destroy the wicked man's economic future. Lo ye'eshar ('he will not become rich') — his wealth has a ceiling. Lo yaqum cheilo ('his wealth will not stand, endure') — what he has will not last. Lo yitteh la-arets minlam ('his acquisitions will not extend to the earth') — his holdings will not spread. Each negation intensifies: no growth, no durability, no expansion.
30. The lo yasur minni choshekh ('he will not turn away from darkness') — the darkness from verse 22 is inescapable. The yonaqto teyabbesh shalhevet ('his tender shoot the flame will dry up') returns to the tree metaphor from chapter 14 but inverts it: where Job said a tree's shoot could revive, Eliphaz says the wicked man's shoot will be burned. The ve-yasur be-ruach piv ('and he will be removed by the breath of his mouth') — God's breath, or possibly the wicked man's own breath, will carry him away.
31. The al ya'amen ba-shav nit'ah ('let him not believe/trust in emptiness, he who is deceived') warns against self-deception: the wicked man's confidence in his prosperity is shav ('emptiness, vanity, falsehood'). The ki shav tihyeh temurato ('for emptiness will be his exchange/recompense') means he will receive nothing of value — his investment in wickedness will yield a return of zero.
32. The be-lo yomo timmale ('not in his day it will be completed/filled') means the wicked man's end will come prematurely — before his natural time. The ve-kihipato lo ra'ananah ('and his palm frond/branch will not be green/flourishing') uses vegetation imagery again: the wicked man's life, like a palm branch, will wither before its season. Premature death is the marker of divine judgment.
33. Two agricultural images of aborted fruitfulness. The yachmos ka-gefen bisro ('he will drop violently like a vine his unripe grape') — the vine sheds its fruit before it matures. The ve-yashlekh ka-zayit nitsato ('and he will throw off like an olive tree his blossom') — the olive drops its flowers before they become olives. The wicked man's projects, relationships, and legacy will all be terminated before reaching maturity.

34. The *adat chanef* ('the congregation/company of the godless/hypocrites') will be *galmud* ('barren, desolate, childless') — their community will produce nothing lasting. The *esh akhelah ohalei shochad* ('fire has consumed the tents of bribery') destroys the physical dwellings of the corrupt. The *shochad* ('bribe') represents the mechanism of the wicked man's prosperity — he got rich through corruption, and corruption's rewards are consumed by fire.
35. The closing verse uses birth imagery for evil. The *haroh amal* ('conceiving trouble') and *yalod aven* ('giving birth to wickedness') picture sin as a pregnancy that inevitably delivers its offspring. The *u-vitnam takhin mirmah* ('and their belly/womb prepares deceit') completes the metaphor: the interior of the wicked is a womb that gestates deception. The language echoes Isaiah 59:4 and Psalm 7:14. Eliphaz's portrait of the wicked is complete: from inner torment (verses 20-24) to defiance of God (25-26) to fat prosperity (27) to inevitable collapse (28-34) to the fundamental nature of evil as a self-generating, self-reproducing force (35).

16

Summary: *Job responds to Eliphaz's second speech with biting sarcasm and raw anguish. He dismisses his friends as 'miserable comforters' whose windy speeches accomplish nothing. He then turns from them to describe what God has done to him — tearing him apart, gnashing teeth at him, handing him over to the wicked. The imagery shifts from legal to military to physical assault: God has shattered him, seized him by the neck, set him up as a target, and pierced his kidneys. Job weeps until his face is raw. Yet in the depths of this devastation, Job makes a stunning claim: even now, his witness is in heaven, his advocate is on high. He appeals past God-as-attacker to God-as-witness, splitting the divine into prosecutor and defense attorney simultaneously.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological breakthrough in verses 19-21 is extraordinary. Job has spent chapters arguing that God is his enemy, his attacker, his unjust judge. Now, without retracting any of that, he declares that his witness (ed) and advocate (sahad) are in heaven. Since no other heavenly being has been proposed as Job's defender, the most natural reading is that Job is appealing to God against God — the same deity who attacks him is the only one who can vindicate him. This is not cognitive dissonance but theological audacity. Job holds two truths simultaneously: God is destroying him, and God alone can save him. This paradox anticipates the resolution in chapters 38-42 where God does appear — not to explain the suffering but to reveal himself, which turns out to be what Job actually needed.*

Translation Friction: *The violent imagery in verses 9-14 — God tearing, gnashing teeth, slashing, seizing, shattering, piercing — is among the most physically graphic in the Hebrew Bible. God is described as a predator, a warrior, and an archer who uses Job for target practice. This language is offensive to any theology that insists God only acts benevolently, but the text does not flinch. Job is not speaking metaphorically about feeling abandoned — he is describing what he experiences as direct divine assault. The friends would say this is blasphemy; the book's narrator never corrects Job's language, and God in 42:7 will say Job spoke rightly. The other tension is the identity of the 'witness in heaven' (verse 19). Some interpreters identify this as an angelic mediator, but the context points to God himself — Job's only hope is that the God who wounds is also the God who sees.*

Connections: *Job's dismissal of his friends as 'miserable comforters' (verse 2) echoes Ecclesiastes 4:1 where the oppressed have no comforter. The tearing imagery (verse 9) connects to Hosea 5:14 where God declares 'I will be like a lion to Ephraim' — both texts portray God as predator. The witness-in-heaven theme (verses 19-21) anticipates Job 19:25 ('I know my Redeemer lives') and connects to the mediator/arbitrator (mokiach) Job wished for in 9:33. The target imagery (verse 12) echoes Lamentations 3:12 ('he bent his bow and set me as a target'). Job's tears mingled with dust (verse 15) reverses the creation image of 10:9 where dust was the material of formation — now it is the residue of destruction.*

¹Then responded:

²I have heard plenty of this before.
You are all miserable comforters.

³Is there no end to these windy speeches?
What provokes you to keep answering?

⁴I could speak the way you do —
if your soul were in my soul's place,
I could pile up words against you
and shake my head at you.

⁵Instead I would strengthen you with my mouth;
the comfort of my lips would ease your pain.

⁶If I speak, my pain is not eased.
If I hold back, what relief do I gain?

⁷But now God has worn me out.
You have destroyed my entire household.

⁸You have shriveled me up — and it testifies against me.
My wasting body rises as a witness,
accusing me to my face.

⁹His anger tears me apart; he hates me.
He gnashes his teeth at me.
My enemy sharpens his eyes against me.

¹⁰They gape at me with open mouths;
they strike my cheeks in contempt.
They mass together against me.

¹¹God hands me over to the unjust
and throws me into the hands of the wicked.

¹²I was at peace, and he shattered me.
He seized me by the neck and smashed me to pieces.
He set me up as his target.

¹³His archers surround me.
He splits open my kidneys without mercy;
he pours my bile out on the ground.

¹⁴He breaks through me, breach after breach;
he charges at me like a warrior.

¹⁵I have sewn sackcloth over my raw skin
and buried my dignity in the dust.

¹⁶My face is raw from weeping,
and death-shadow covers my eyelids.

¹⁷Yet there is no violence in my hands,
and my prayer is pure.

¹⁸O earth, do not cover my blood!
Let there be no resting place for my cry!

¹⁹Even now — look! — my witness is in heaven;
my advocate is on high.

²⁰My friends mock me,
but my eye pours out tears to God.

²¹Let him argue the case of a mortal before God,
as one argues for a neighbor.

²²For only a few years remain,
and I will walk the road of no return.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard response formula *va-ya'an Iyyov va-yomar* introduces Job's reply to Eliphaz's second speech (chapter 15). This is Job's fourth speech in the dialogue cycle.
2. The phrase *menachamei amal* ('comforters of trouble/misery') is devastatingly ironic — the friends came to comfort (2:11) but instead produce *amal* ('trouble, misery, toil'). Their comfort adds suffering. The *kullekhem* ('all of you') condemns every friend equally. This phrase has become proverbial in Western literature.
3. The *divrei ruach* ('words of wind') dismisses everything Eliphaz said as empty air. The verb *yamritsekha* ('emboldens you, provokes you') asks what drives the friends to keep speaking when their words accomplish nothing. Job turns Eliphaz's own rhetorical style against him.
4. Job imagines role reversal: *lu yesh nafshekhem tachat nafshi* ('if your soul were in place of my soul'). He claims he could do exactly what they do — heap up impressive-sounding theological arguments (*achbirah aleikem be-millim* — 'I would string together words against you') and shake his head in pious disapproval (*ani'ah aleikem be-mo roshi*). The point: their theology is easy when you are not the one suffering.
5. Job contrasts what he would do versus what the friends are doing. The verb *a'ammitsekhem* ('I would strengthen you') describes genuine encouragement. The *nid sefatai* ('motion of my lips, the comfort of my lips') would *yachsokh* ('restrain, hold back, ease') their grief. Job claims he would be a better comforter than they are — he would actually help.
6. A double bind: speaking does not diminish the *ke'ev* ('pain, anguish'), and silence (*echdal* — 'I cease, I hold back') brings no relief either. The *mah minni yahalokh* ('what departs from me') asks what portion of suffering leaves regardless of what Job says. The answer is: none. Speech and silence are equally futile.
7. The shift from 'he' (*hel'ani* — 'he has wearied me') to 'you' (*hashimmota* — 'you have desolated') is abrupt — Job addresses God directly mid-sentence. The *kol adati* ('all my company, my entire congregation/household') refers to everything and everyone Job had. The verb *hashimmota* ('you have devastated, made desolate') describes total destruction.
8. The verb *tiqmeteni* ('you have shriveled me, seized me, wrinkled me') describes the physical ravaging of Job's body. His emaciated appearance (*kachashi* — 'my leanness, my wasting away') functions as a *le-ed* ('witness') — in the retribution theology of the friends, his broken body is proof of guilt. Job's suffering is self-testifying: the worse he looks, the guiltier he appears. His own body has become evidence for the prosecution.
9. Three acts of divine aggression. God *taraf* ('tears, rips apart') like a predator dismembering prey. The verb *va-yistemeni* ('he hates me, holds a grudge against me') attributes personal animosity to God. God *charaq alai be-shinnav* ('gnashes his teeth at me') — an expression of rage and threat. The *tsari* ('my adversary, my enemy') who *yiltosh einav* ('sharpens his eyes') describes a predator locked onto prey. Job calls God his enemy without flinching.
10. The subject shifts to plural — *pa'aru* ('they gaped') — either the friends, the community, or enemies in general. The striking of the cheek (*hikku lechayal* — 'they struck my cheek') is a gesture of contempt and humiliation. The verb *yitmalla'un* ('they fill themselves up, they mass together') describes a mob assembling. Job is surrounded on every side.
11. The verb *yasgireni* ('he delivers me up, hands me over, surrenders me') is language of betrayal — a king surrendering a prisoner to his enemies. The *avil* ('the unjust, the perverse') and *resha'im* ('the wicked') may refer to the friends, to human enemies generally, or to the demonic forces Job imagines God has unleashed. The verb *yirteni* ('he throws me, hurls me') intensifies the violence.
12. Three stages of destruction. First: *shalev hayiti* ('I was at peace, I was secure') — Job's former life. Then *va-yefarphereni* ('he shook me violently, shattered me') — sudden, total disruption. Then *achaz be-orpi* ('he seized my neck') and *va-yefatspetseni* ('he smashed me to pieces'). Finally: *va-yeqimenu lo le-mattarah* ('he set me up as his target') — God positioned Job as a mark for archery practice. The progression from peace to target is one of the most visceral descriptions of divine assault in the Hebrew Bible.

13. The rabbav ('his archers, his many ones') surround Job — God commands a firing squad. The verb yefalach ('he cleaves, splits open') targets the kiliyotai ('my kidneys') — the seat of deepest emotion in Hebrew thought. The lo yachmol ('he does not spare, shows no mercy') emphasizes the ruthlessness. The merirati ('my gall, my bile') poured la-arets ('to the ground') describes a gut wound — Job's insides spilling out.
14. The noun perets ('breach, break') repeated — perets al penei parets ('breach upon the face of breach') — describes a wall being broken through again and again. Before one wound heals, another strike comes. The yarets alai ke-gibbor ('he runs at me like a warrior/champion') compares God to a charging soldier in battle. Job is a besieged city whose walls are crumbling under repeated assault.
15. The saq ('sackcloth') is sewn directly tafarti alei gildi ('onto my skin') — not worn as a garment but fused to his body. The gildi ('my skin') suggests raw, exposed flesh. The olalti be-afar qarni ('I have thrust my horn into the dust') is a metaphor of total humiliation: the qeren ('horn') symbolizes strength and dignity, and thrusting it into afar ('dust') means his honor is ground into the earth.
16. The verb chomarmeru ('is reddened, inflamed, burning') describes a face ravaged by constant tears. The tsalmavet ('death-shadow, deep darkness') on his afapai ('eyelids') — the shadow of death is so close that it literally sits on his eyes. Job sees through a veil of approaching death.
17. Job reasserts his innocence: lo chamas be-khappai ('no violence in my hands') — his hands are clean of wrongdoing. The chamas ('violence, injustice, wrongdoing') is the same word used of the generation destroyed in the flood (Genesis 6:11). And tefillati zakkah ('my prayer is pure') — not only his actions but his inner spiritual life is clean. This double declaration sets up the appeal to heaven in the verses that follow.
18. Job invokes the earth as witness, echoing Genesis 4:10 where Abel's blood cries out from the ground. Uncovered blood demands justice — if the earth covers it, the crime is hidden. Job commands the earth: al tekhasi dami ('do not cover my blood') — keep the evidence visible. His za'aqah ('outcry, cry for justice') must have no maqom ('place, resting place') — it must never settle, never be silenced, but keep reverberating until someone answers it.
19. The gam attah ('even now') is emphatic — despite everything Job has just described, despite God tearing him apart, even now he makes this claim. The edi ('my witness') is ba-shamayim ('in heaven'). The sahati ('my advocate, my testifier') is ba-meromim ('in the heights, on high'). The identity of this heavenly witness is the central interpretive question. Since Job has no other heavenly ally in the book, the most coherent reading is that Job appeals to God against God — the same deity who attacks him must also be the one to testify for him.
20. The melitsai ('my interpreters, my scorers, my mockers') is deliberately ambiguous — the same word can mean 'my advocates' or 'my mockers.' If read as 'my advocates are my friends,' Job is being ironic — these supposed advocates mock him. The dalefah eini ('my eye drips, pours out') directs the tears el Eloha ('to God') — even while God is the attacker, God is also the one Job weeps toward. The theology of weeping toward your attacker is the emotional core of Job's faith.
21. The verb yokach ('let him argue, let him plead, let him decide') is legal language — Job wants his heavenly witness to serve as legal representative, arguing his case lifnei El ('before God'). The comparison — ke-ben adam le-re'ehu ('as a human being does for his friend/neighbor') — asks for the same simple advocacy that exists between humans. Job wants someone to stand up for him the way a neighbor would stand up for a neighbor. The tragedy is that the one he needs this from is also the one he is in dispute with.
22. The shenot mispar ('years of number,' meaning 'a countable number of years, a few years') emphasizes how little time Job has left. The orach lo ashuv ('the path I will not return') is the one-way road to Sheol — the same phrase from 10:21. Job's appeal for a heavenly witness is urgent because death is approaching. If vindication does not come soon, it will never come — or so Job believes at this point in the dialogue.

17

Summary: Job continues his fourth speech, which began in chapter 16. His spirit is crushed, his days are extinguished, and the graveyard awaits. He challenges God directly: put up a pledge for me — who else will guarantee my case? He accuses God of closing the minds of his friends so they cannot understand, and declares that anyone who betrays a friend for profit will see his own children's eyes fail. Job has become a byword among the peoples, a man others spit at. His eyes grow dim from grief, his body wastes to a shadow. The righteous are appalled at him, yet the innocent will hold to their way. Job ends by addressing the friends: come back, all of you, try again — he will not find a wise man among them. His days are past, his plans are shattered, and the only house he can look forward to is Sheol, where he will make his bed in darkness and call corruption his father and the worm his mother and sister.

What Makes This Remarkable: The legal metaphor reaches its most desperate point in verse 3: Job asks God to post bail for him — to provide a surety or guarantor (areveni). Since no human will vouch for Job (verse 5 implies his friends have betrayed him), only God can serve as both judge and bail-bondsman. This is the same paradox as 16:19-21: Job needs God to defend him in a case where God is the prosecutor. The chapter's ending (verses 13-16) is one of the bleakest passages in the book — Job addresses the grave as his home, darkness as his bed, decay as his family. Hope itself is personified only to be buried: where then is my hope? Who can see any hope for me? It will go down to the gates of Sheol; together we will descend into the dust.

Translation Friction: Verse 5 is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The traditional reading — 'He who denounces his friends for a share of the spoil, the eyes of his children will fail' — may be a proverb about betrayal. Job may be accusing his friends of throwing him under the bus to maintain their theological system (which rewards them with the illusion of safety). The chapter's relationship to chapter 16 is debated: some scholars see 16-17 as a single continuous speech, while others detect a shift in tone at 17:1. The description of making one's bed in Sheol (verses 13-16) challenges any theology of afterlife hope — Job sees nothing beyond the grave at this point in the dialogue.

Connections: The plea for a divine surety (verse 3) connects to the mediator of 9:33 and the witness of 16:19 — a developing trajectory in which Job gropes toward a heavenly advocate. The byword theme (verse 6) anticipates Psalm 69:11 and connects to Deuteronomy 28:37 where becoming a byword is a covenant curse. The Sheol imagery (verses 13-16) builds on 10:21-22 and anticipates the fuller treatment of death in chapter 14. The corruption-as-father, worm-as-mother language (verse 14) inverts the creation theology of 10:8-12 where God was the intimate craftsman — now decay replaces the creator.

- ¹My spirit is broken,
my days are snuffed out.
The graveyard is all that remains for me.
- ²Mockers surround me;
my eyes stare at their hostility through the night.
- ³Put up a pledge for me — be my guarantor yourself!
Who else would shake hands on my behalf?
- ⁴For you have closed their minds to understanding;
therefore you will not let them triumph.
- ⁵The one who denounces friends for profit —
his own children's eyes will fail.
- ⁶He has made me a byword among the peoples;
I am one in whose face they spit.
- ⁷My eyes grow dim from grief,
and my whole body is like a shadow.
- ⁸The upright are appalled at this;
the innocent are outraged at the godless.
- ⁹Yet the righteous will hold to their path,
and those with clean hands will grow stronger.
- ¹⁰But come back, all of you — try again.
I will not find a wise man among you.
- ¹¹My days are gone; my plans are shattered —
the very desires of my heart.
- ¹²They turn night into day;
they say light is near when darkness closes in.

¹³If I look for anything, Sheol is my home.
I have spread my bed in the darkness.

¹⁴I call out to the pit, 'You are my father!'
To the worm, 'My mother! My sister!'

¹⁵Where then is my hope?
My hope — who can see it?

¹⁶Will it descend to the gates of Sheol?
Will we sink down together into the dust?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Three short declarations of finality. The *ruchi chubbalah* ('my spirit is destroyed, broken, ruined') — the verb *chaval* means to bind or to ruin, and here describes a spirit that has been wrecked. The *yamay niz'akhu* ('my days are extinguished') uses the image of a lamp going out. The *qevaram li* ('graves belong to me, graves are mine') — the only thing Job can claim ownership of is a burial plot.
2. The *hatulim* ('mockers, scoffers') are with him — *immadi* ('beside me, with me') — meaning the friends who came to comfort are actually tormenting him. The *talin eini* ('my eye lodges, spends the night') in their *hammerotam* ('their provocations, their bitterness') — Job lies awake all night staring into the darkness of their accusations.
3. The imperative *simah na* ('set, place, put up') asks God to provide collateral. The *areveni immakh* ('be my surety with you, guarantee me beside yourself') is a legal request: in ancient courts, a guarantor posted bond to vouch for the accused. The *mi hu le-yadi yittagea* ('who is it that would strike into my hand') — striking hands was the gesture that sealed a guarantee, like a handshake. Job asks: since no human will vouch for me, will you — the judge — also serve as my bail?
4. Job accuses God of deliberately hiding understanding from the friends: *libbam tsafanta mi-ssekkel* ('you have hidden their heart from insight'). The *tsafanta* ('you concealed') is the same verb from 10:13 where God hid a destructive plan. The *al ken lo teromem* ('therefore you will not exalt them') — their theological blindness, imposed by God, will ultimately prevent their vindication.
5. This appears to be a proverb Job quotes or coins. The *le-cheleq yaggid re'im* ('for a portion he declares against friends, he betrays friends for a share') describes someone who sells out a friend for personal gain. The punishment: *einei vanav tikhlena* ('the eyes of his sons will fail, waste away'). Job may be warning his friends: by condemning an innocent man to maintain your safe theology, you are the betrayers, and your children will pay.
6. The *hitsigani li-meshol ammim* ('he has set me up as a proverb/byword among the peoples') means Job's name has become a cautionary tale — 'don't end up like Job.' The *tofe lifanim* ('a spitting in the face') describes public contempt. The man who was *gadol mi-kol bene qedem* ('greatest of all the people of the east,' 1:3) is now a target of universal mockery.
7. The *tekhah* ('grows dim, fails') describes eyes losing their clarity from *mi-ka'as* ('from vexation, grief, anger'). The *yetsuray* ('my limbs, my formed parts') — from *yatsar* ('to form'), connecting back to creation language — are *ka-tsel kullam* ('all of them like a shadow'). The substantial body God formed is dissolving into insubstantiality.
8. The *yesharim* ('upright ones') *yashommu* ('are appalled, stunned') at what is happening to Job. The *naqi* ('the innocent') *yit'orar* ('rouses himself, is stirred up') against the *chanef* ('the godless, the hypocrite'). Job claims that genuinely righteous people are horrified by his treatment — only the hypocritical (his friends) can watch it unmoved.
9. Despite the horror of Job's situation, the *tsaddiq* ('righteous one') *yo'chez darkho* ('holds to his way, grips his path'). The *tehor yadayim* ('clean of hands') *yosif omets* ('adds strength, grows stronger'). This may be Job's defiant self-description: even witnessing God's assault on an innocent man, the truly righteous do not abandon their integrity. Or it may be a broader theological claim: injustice does not destroy righteousness but paradoxically strengthens it.
10. The *ve-ulam* ('but, nevertheless') introduces a challenge. Job invites the friends to *tashuvu* ('return, come back') and *vo'u na* ('come, please'). The invitation is sarcastic: try again if you want, but *lo emtsa vakhem chakham* ('I will not find among you a wise man'). After all their speeches, not one has shown genuine wisdom.
11. The *yamay averu* ('my days have passed') — time is running out. The *zimmetai nitteku* ('my plans are torn away, broken off') — every future intention has been severed. The *morashei levavi* ('the possessions/inheritances of my heart') are the deepest personal aspirations, now destroyed. Job has lost not just his present but his future.
12. The friends *yasimu* ('they set, they make') *lailah le-yom* ('night into day') — they call Job's darkness light. The *or qarov* ('light is near') *mi-penei choshekh* ('in the face of darkness') — they claim dawn is approaching when the darkness is actually deepening. Job accuses his friends of gaslighting: relabeling his suffering as a prelude to blessing when it is actually getting worse.

13. The *im aqavveh* ('if I hope, if I look for, if I wait') — whatever Job anticipates, it is *she'ol beiti* ('Sheol is my house'). The verb *rippadti* ('I have spread out, made comfortable') *yet'su'ai* ('my bed, my couch') *ba-choshekh* ('in the darkness'). The domestication of death — Sheol as home, darkness as bedroom — is both poetic and deeply disturbing. Job is making himself at home in the grave because he has no other home left.
14. Job replaces his family with death. The *shachat* ('pit, corruption, the grave') becomes *avi* ('my father'). The *rimmah* ('worm, maggot') becomes *immi va-achoti* ('my mother and my sister'). The inversion of creation is complete: in 10:8-12 God was the intimate craftsman who formed Job; now decay is his parent and the worm is his kin. The family that was killed in chapter 1 is replaced by the family of the grave.
15. The double use of *tiqvati* ('my hope') — first asking where it is (*ayyeh efo* — 'where then?'), then asking who can even perceive it (*mi yeshurenah* — 'who can discern it, who can see it?'). Hope is not merely absent but invisible — no one can locate it. The rhetorical question expects the answer: nowhere and no one.
16. The *baddei she'ol* ('bars/gates of Sheol') are the entrance to the underworld — once past them, there is no return. Job asks whether his *tiqvah* ('hope') will accompany him down to Sheol — and the implied answer is that hope dies at the gate. The *im yachad al afar nachat* ('if together upon the dust we rest') pictures Job and his hope descending into the grave together, where both are extinguished. The chapter ends not with defiance but with the quiet dissolution of everything.

18

Summary: *Bildad delivers his second speech, and it is a masterpiece of indirect cruelty. He opens by rebuking Job for treating his friends like cattle and demanding that the world rearrange itself for his sake. Then Bildad launches into an extended, vivid description of the fate of the wicked — their light goes out, their steps are trapped, their strength wastes away, disease devours their skin, they are torn from the security of their tent and paraded before the King of Terrors, sulfur rains on their dwelling, their roots dry up, their memory perishes from the earth, they have no descendant, and everyone who hears of their fate shudders. Bildad never says 'this is you, Job.' He does not have to. The entire speech is a portrait of Job's situation described as the fate reserved for the wicked. The theological argument is delivered entirely through imagery.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Bildad's rhetorical strategy is devastatingly effective precisely because it is indirect. He never accuses Job directly; he simply describes in meticulous detail what happens to 'the wicked' — and every detail matches Job's situation. The wicked man's light goes out (Job's prosperity is gone). Disease eats his skin (Job has skin disease). He is torn from his tent (Job lost his home). His children are gone (Job's children are dead). He has no descendant or survivor (Job's family line is destroyed). He becomes a horror to east and west (Job is a byword). Bildad has constructed a mirror and held it up to Job's face while insisting he is only talking about 'the wicked' in general. The speech is a case study in how theology can be weaponized — every statement is theologically defensible in isolation, but the cumulative effect is an assault on a suffering man.*

Translation Friction: *The 'King of Terrors' (melekh ballahot, verse 14) is one of the most evocative phrases in the Hebrew Bible. It likely refers to Mot, the Canaanite god of death, demythologized into a personification. The phrase suggests that behind Bildad's orderly retribution theology lurks something primal and terrifying — death itself as a king who claims subjects. Bildad intends this as a warning to Job, but the image escapes his theology: if death is a king with its own agency, then perhaps suffering is not always explained by personal sin. The chapter also raises the question of whether Bildad actually believes he is helping. His speech shows real theological sophistication and poetic skill — he is not a fool. He is a brilliant man deploying his brilliance in the wrong direction.*

Connections: *Bildad's light-and-darkness imagery connects to Proverbs 13:9 ('the lamp of the wicked is snuffed out') and 24:20. The trap-and-snare sequence (verses 8-10) has parallels in Psalm 140:5 and Proverbs 29:6. The 'firstborn of death' (verse 13) may echo Ugaritic mythology where Mot (Death) has offspring. The sulfur imagery (verse 15) connects to the destruction of Sodom in Genesis 19:24. The erasure of name and memory (verse 17) is the ultimate curse in ancient Near Eastern culture — worse than death itself. Bildad's description of the wicked unknowingly echoes the prose prologue's description of what the Adversary did to Job, not what Job did to himself.*

1Then Bildad the Shuhite answered and said:

²How long will you keep setting traps with words?
Think first, and then we can talk.

³Why are we treated like cattle,
regarded as stupid in your eyes?

⁴You who tear yourself apart in your rage —
should the earth be abandoned for your sake?
Should the rock be moved from its place?

⁵Indeed, the light of the wicked is extinguished,
and the flame of his fire gives no light.

⁶The light in his tent grows dark;
his lamp above him is snuffed out.

⁷His powerful stride is cut short;
his own schemes bring him down.

⁸For he is driven into a net by his own feet;
he walks over a mesh trap.

⁹A trap seizes him by the heel;
a snare grips him tight.

¹⁰A rope lies hidden for him in the ground;
a trap waits for him on the path.

¹¹Terrors surround him on every side
and chase at his heels.

¹²His strength is starved away;
disaster stands ready at his side.

¹³Disease devours his skin piece by piece;
the firstborn of Death feeds on his limbs.

¹⁴He is torn from the safety of his tent
and marched before the King of Terrors.

¹⁵Strangers dwell in his tent — it is no longer his.
Sulfur is scattered over his home.

¹⁶Below, his roots dry up;
above, his branches wither.

¹⁷His memory perishes from the earth;
his name vanishes from the land.

¹⁸He is driven from light into darkness,
chased out of the inhabited world.

¹⁹He has no son or grandson among his people,
no survivor where he once lived.

²⁰Those in the west shudder at his fate;
those in the east are seized with horror.

²¹Surely — this is the home of the unjust.
This is the fate of one who does not know God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bildad ha-Shuchi ('the Shuhite') speaks for the second time. His first speech (chapter 8) was comparatively gentle; this one is sharper and more elaborately crafted.
2. The ad anah ('how long?') opens with impatience. The qintsei le-millin ('traps for words, ends of words') may mean either 'when will you stop talking?' or 'when will you stop laying word-traps?' The tavinu ('understand, consider') is a demand that Job think before speaking. The ve-achar nedabber ('and afterward we will speak') sets a precondition: Bildad will only converse with a rational Job.
3. Bildad takes offense: nechshavnu ka-behemah ('we are reckoned as beasts'). The behemah ('beast, cattle') implies mindless animals. The nitmeinu ('we are made unclean, regarded as blocked/stupid') be-eineikhem ('in your eyes') — Bildad feels Job has dismissed his friends as intellectually and morally beneath him. The plural 'your eyes' suggests Bildad speaks for all three friends.
4. Bildad reframes Job's complaint as self-destruction: toref nafsho be-appo ('tearing his own soul in his anger'). The rhetorical questions — ha-lema'ankha te'azav erets ('should the earth be abandoned for your sake?') and ye'taq tsur mi-meqomo ('should the rock move from its place?') — accuse Job of demanding that the entire moral order rearrange itself to accommodate his case. The tsur ('rock') symbolizes the fixed moral structure of the universe.
5. Bildad begins the extended metaphor of the wicked man's fate. The or resha'im ('light of the wicked') yid'akh ('is extinguished, goes dark'). The sheviv ishho ('the flame/spark of his fire') lo yiggah ('does not shine, does not glow'). In a world lit by oil lamps and hearth fires, the extinguishing of light means the end of life, warmth, and home — all of which Job has lost.
6. The or ('light') chashakh ('darkens') be-oholo ('in his tent') — the domestic space loses its warmth. The nero ('his lamp') alav ('above him, over him') yid'akh ('is extinguished'). The lamp hung above a person's head was the symbol of life and prosperity (see Proverbs 20:20, 24:20). When the lamp goes out, the household is finished.
7. The tsa'adei ono ('the steps of his strength, his vigorous stride') yetseru ('are confined, narrowed, shortened'). The atsato ('his counsel, his plan') tashllikhehu ('throws him down, casts him away'). The wicked man's own strength and intelligence become the instruments of his downfall — a key theme in wisdom literature.
8. The first of six trap terms in verses 8-10. The resheth ('net') catches him be-raglav ('by his feet'). The sevakhah ('mesh, lattice, snare') is something he yithallakh ('walks upon') — he does not see the trap beneath him. The imagery shifts from active pursuit to passive entrapment: the wicked man walks into his own destruction.
9. The pach ('trap, bird-snare') yo'chez be-aqev ('seizes by the heel'). The tsammim ('noose, snare, lasso') yachaziq ('strengthens its grip, holds fast') alav ('upon him'). The accumulation of trap vocabulary — resheth, sevakhah, pach, tsammim — creates a sense of inescapable entrapment. Wherever the wicked man steps, another snare awaits.
10. The chavlo ('his rope, his cord') is tamun ba-arets ('hidden in the earth') — a concealed tripwire. The malkudto ('his trap, his capture-device') is alei nativ ('upon the path') — set directly in his walking route. The six trap terms across three verses (resheth, sevakhah, pach, tsammim, chevel, malkodet) form the most concentrated sequence of hunting/trapping vocabulary in the Hebrew Bible.
11. The ballahot ('terrors, sudden alarms') bi'atuhu ('terrify him') saviv ('all around, on every side'). The verb hefitsuhu ('they scatter him, drive him') le-raglav ('at his feet') — the terrors nip at his heels like hunting dogs driving prey. The shift from static traps (verses 8-10) to active pursuit (terrors chasing) intensifies the panic.
12. The yehi ra'ev ono ('his strength becomes hungry, is famished') — a personification where the man's own vitality wastes from hunger. The eid ('disaster, calamity') nakhon ('is prepared, stands ready') le-tsal'o ('at his side, at his rib'). Disaster is personified as a companion standing next to him, waiting for the right moment to strike.
13. The yo'khal baddei oro ('it devours the limbs/parts of his skin') describes a wasting disease consuming flesh — unmistakably echoing Job's condition. The bekhore mavet ('firstborn of Death') is a striking personification: Death has offspring, and the eldest — the most virulent disease — is the one consuming this man. In Canaanite mythology, Mot (Death) was a deity; here the image is demythologized but retains its primal force.
14. The yinnateq me-oholo mivtacho ('he is uprooted from his tent, his security') — the tent represents home, family, safety, and all of it is ripped away. The tats'idehu ('it marches him, makes him walk') le-melekh ballahot ('to the King of Terrors'). This melekh ballahot is one of the Hebrew Bible's most vivid images of death personified — Death as a king who holds court and summons subjects. The wicked man does not simply die; he is

formally presented to Death as a prisoner is presented to a conquering king.

15. The tishkon be-oholo mi-bbeli lo ('it dwells in his tent, from not being his') — something alien occupies what was once his home. The yezoreh al navehu gafrit ('sulfur is scattered upon his dwelling') echoes the destruction of Sodom (Genesis 19:24) where God rained gafrit ('sulfur, brimstone') on the cities. Bildad implies that the wicked man's home suffers a Sodom-like obliteration.
16. The tree metaphor: mi-ttachat ('from below') shorashav ('his roots') yivashu ('dry up'). Mi-mma'al ('from above') yimmal qetsiro ('his harvest/branch withers, is cut off'). The destruction is total — from root to crown. A tree attacked from both ends simultaneously cannot survive. The image anticipates the fuller tree metaphor in 14:7-9 where Job found some hope in a cut stump resprouting — Bildad allows no such hope.
17. The zikhro ('his memory, his remembrance') avad ('perishes, is destroyed') mini arets ('from the earth'). The ve-lo shem lo ('and no name belongs to him') al penei chuts ('upon the face of the outside, in the open places'). In ancient Near Eastern culture, the survival of one's name after death was the closest thing to immortality. To have your name erased was worse than death — it was as if you had never existed.
18. The yehdephuhu ('they drive him, thrust him') me-or el choshekh ('from light into darkness') — the reversal of creation itself, where God separated light from darkness (Genesis 1:4). The mi-tevel yenidduhu ('from the world they chase him') — tevel ('the inhabited world, the productive earth') expels him. The wicked man is un-created, pushed back into the primordial darkness.
19. The lo nin ('no offspring, no son') ve-lo nekhed ('and no grandson, no descendant') be-ammo ('among his people') — the family line is extinguished. The ve-ein sarid ('and there is no survivor') bi-megurav ('in his dwelling places'). Every detail matches Job's situation: his children are dead, his household destroyed, no heir remains. Bildad's 'general' description of the wicked is a precise portrait of Job.
20. The acharonim ('those who come after, those in the west') nashammu ('are appalled, stunned') al yomo ('at his day, at his fate'). The qadmonim ('those who came before, those in the east') achazo sa'ar ('are seized by a storm of horror'). The terms acharonim and qadmonim can mean either temporal (later/earlier generations) or geographical (west/east). Either way, the wicked man's destruction becomes a universal spectacle of horror.
21. Bildad's conclusion: akh elleh mishkenot avval ('surely these are the dwellings of the unjust'). The zeh meqom lo yada El ('this is the place of one who does not know God'). The avval ('unjust, unrighteous') and the lo yada El ('one who does not know God') are Bildad's categories for the person he has been describing. He closes the case: everything I described is what happens to the wicked. The listener — Job — is left to draw the obvious conclusion about himself.

19

Summary: Job responds to Bildad with one of the most emotionally devastating and theologically explosive speeches in the entire book. He begins by asking how long the friends will torment him and crush him with words. He catalogs what God has done: walled up his road, stripped him of honor, demolished him on every side, uprooted his hope like a tree. God counts him as an enemy. His troops advance, siege his tent. Then Job turns to his social devastation — his family is estranged, his wife recoils from his breath, his intimate friends despise him, children mock him, his bones cling to skin. He pleads with the friends for pity: the hand of God has struck me. Then, out of this absolute nadir, Job makes the most famous declaration in the book: 'I know that my Redeemer lives, and that at the last he will stand upon the earth. Even after my skin has been destroyed, from my flesh I will see God — I myself will see him, my own eyes, not a stranger's.' He ends with a warning to the friends: if you pursue me as God does, beware the sword of judgment.

What Makes This Remarkable: Verses 25-27 represent the theological summit of the book of Job. From the pit of total abandonment — by God, by family, by friends, by his own body — Job erupts with a declaration of certainty that has no evidential basis whatsoever. He knows his go'el lives. He knows this Redeemer will stand on the earth. He knows he will see God with his own eyes. The word go'el is a kinship term: the go'el was the nearest relative obligated to redeem family members from slavery, avenge their blood, and restore their inheritance. By claiming a go'el, Job asserts that he has a kinsman in the highest court — someone bound by obligation to vindicate him. Since the book has established no heavenly intermediary other than God, the go'el is almost certainly God himself. Job is claiming that the God who destroys him is also the God who is obligated to redeem him. This is not hope despite despair — it is certainty forged in the furnace of despair. The passage has been read christologically since early Christianity (Handel's Messiah uses it), but its original force is even more radical: a man with no evidence, no ally, and no future declares that his Redeemer lives.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew of verses 25-27 is among the most textually difficult in the entire Hebrew Bible. Nearly every word is disputed. The phrase me-bessari echezeh Eloha ('from my flesh I will see God') could mean 'from within my flesh' (implying bodily resurrection) or 'apart from my flesh' (implying a vision after death). The word acharon ('last, latter') in 'he will stand upon the earth at the last' could mean 'at the end of time' or simply 'afterward, later.' The clause achar ori niqqefu zot ('after my skin has been struck/destroyed, this') is syntactically broken and has generated centuries of debate. What is clear is the emotional and theological trajectory: Job moves from total abandonment to absolute certainty about vindication, and he claims he will see God personally — be-essari ('my own eyes') and lo zar ('not a stranger'). The textual difficulties actually serve the passage: the language strains and breaks under the weight of what Job is trying to say, as if the Hebrew itself cannot contain the revelation.

Connections: The go'el concept connects to Ruth 3-4 (Boaz as kinsman-redeemer), Leviticus 25:25-55 (redemption of land and persons), Numbers 35:19 (the avenger of blood), and Isaiah 41:14, 43:14, 44:6 where God himself is called Israel's go'el. Job's declaration 'I will see God' (echezeh Eloha) anticipates the theophany in chapters 38-42 where Job does indeed see God. The phrase 'my own eyes and not a stranger's' connects to Moses seeing God 'face to face' (Exodus 33:11) and anticipates Psalm 17:15 ('I shall behold your face in righteousness'). The social alienation catalog (verses 13-19) parallels Psalm 88:8, 18 ('you have put my companions far from me'). Job's plea 'have pity on me, my friends' (verse 21) is the most direct emotional appeal in the book.

¹Then responded:

²How long will you torment my soul
and crush me with words?

³Ten times now you have humiliated me.
You feel no shame in attacking me.

⁴Even if I have truly erred,
my error remains my own affair.

⁵If you truly intend to exalt yourselves over me
and use my disgrace as proof against me —

⁶Then know this: it is God who has wronged me.
He has closed his net around me.

⁷I cry out 'Violence!' but get no answer.
I scream for help, but there is no justice.

⁸He has walled up my road so I cannot pass;
he has set darkness over my paths.

⁹He has stripped my honor from me
and torn the crown from my head.

¹⁰He demolishes me on every side until I am gone;
he uproots my hope like a tree.

¹¹His anger burns against me;
he counts me as one of his enemies.

¹²His troops advance together;
they build siege ramps against me
and camp around my tent.

¹³He has driven my family far from me;
those who know me have become strangers.

¹⁴My relatives have abandoned me;
my close friends have forgotten me.

¹⁵Those who live in my house and my servant women
treat me as a stranger.
I have become a foreigner in their eyes.

¹⁶I call my servant, and he does not answer.
I must beg him with my own mouth.

¹⁷My breath is repulsive to my wife;
I am loathsome to my own children.

¹⁸Even young children despise me.
When I rise, they mock me.

¹⁹All my closest friends despise me;
those I loved have turned against me.

²⁰My bones cling to my skin and my flesh;
I have escaped with nothing but the skin of my teeth.

²¹Have pity on me! Have pity on me!
You are my friends!
For the hand of God has struck me.

²²Why do you pursue me the way God does?
Why are you never satisfied with my flesh?

²³If only my words were written down!
If only they were inscribed in a scroll!

²⁴With an iron stylus and lead,
chiseled into rock forever!

²⁵But I — I know that my Redeemer lives,
and that at the last he will stand upon the earth.

²⁶Even after my skin has been stripped away,
from my flesh I will see God.

²⁷I myself will see him —
my own eyes will look on him, not a stranger's.
My heart faints within me with longing.

²⁸If you say, 'How shall we pursue him?' —
and 'The root of the problem lies in him' —

**29 Then fear the sword yourselves!
For wrath brings the punishment of the sword,
so that you may know: there is a judgment.**

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard response formula. Job replies to Bildad's second speech (chapter 18), which indirectly described Job's exact situation as the fate of 'the wicked.'
2. Job mirrors Bildad's opening (18:2 — 'how long?') back at him. The togeyun nafshi ('you grieve/torment my soul') and tedakkhe'unani be-millim ('you crush me with words') make explicit what the friends deny: their theological speeches are instruments of torture. The verb dakha ('to crush') is used elsewhere for physical violence; here it describes the crushing power of bad theology.
3. The eser pe'amim ('ten times') is a round number meaning 'again and again' rather than a literal count. The takhlimu ('you shame, humiliate') is strong language. The lo tevoshu tahkeru li ('you are not ashamed to deal harshly with me, to harden yourselves against me') — the friends feel no compunction about their cruelty because they believe it is theologically justified.
4. A conditional concession: ve-af omnam shagiti ('and even if indeed I have erred'). The meshugati ('my error, my wandering') talin itti ('lodges with me, stays with me') — even if Job has sinned, it is between him and God, not the friends' business. The verb shagah ('to err, wander, go astray') implies unintentional mistake rather than deliberate rebellion.
5. The tagdilu ('you magnify yourselves, make yourselves great') alai ('over me, against me') describes the friends elevating themselves at Job's expense. The tokhichu alai cherpati ('you argue my reproach against me') — they use Job's suffering itself as evidence in their theological case. The logic is circular: Job suffers, therefore Job sinned, therefore his suffering is justified.
6. Job makes a staggering claim: Eloah ivvetani ('God has twisted me, perverted my cause, wronged me'). The verb avah means 'to twist, bend, pervert' — Job accuses God of perverting justice. The metsudo ('his net, his siege-work') alai hiqqif ('has surrounded me') — God has trapped Job in a net from which there is no escape. Ironically, Bildad just described the wicked being caught in nets (18:8); Job says God is the one who set the net.
7. The ets'aq chamas ('I cry out violence/injustice!') is the technical cry of a crime victim — the same word used of the violence that provoked the flood (Genesis 6:11). The ve-lo e'aneh ('and I am not answered') — the victim's cry goes unanswered. The ashavva ('I cry for help') produces ein mishpat ('there is no justice, no judgment'). The court is closed; the judge is the perpetrator.
8. God gadar orchi ('has fenced/walled my path') — the image of a road blocked by a stone wall. The lo e'evor ('I cannot pass through') describes total obstruction. The choshekh yasim ('he sets darkness') on Job's netivot ('paths, tracks') — even if Job could find a way around the wall, the road ahead is pitch dark. God has blocked both the route and the light needed to find an alternative.
9. The kevodi ('my glory, my honor') is hifshit ('stripped off') me-alai ('from upon me') — like stripping a robe from a king. The va-yasar ateret roshi ('and he removed the crown of my head') — the atarah ('crown, wreath') symbolizes dignity and social standing. Job was the greatest man in the east; now he is publicly degraded. The imagery of stripping and un-crowning echoes royal dethronement.
10. The yitteseni saviv ('he tears me down all around') describes demolition from every direction. The va-elakh ('and I go, I am gone') — Job is being erased. The va-yassa ka-ets tiqvati ('he uproots like a tree my hope') — the tree metaphor from 14:7 returns, but here it is worse: not the tree itself but the hope is uprooted. In 14:7 Job said a tree has more hope than a man; now even that tree-hope is pulled up by the roots.
11. The va-yachar alai appo ('his anger burns against me') — divine wrath is directed personally at Job. The va-yachsheveni lo ke-tsarav ('he reckons me as one of his adversaries') — God has classified Job as an enemy combatant. This is not theological abstraction but Job's lived experience: every aspect of his life has been systematically destroyed, which feels like the focused attention of an enemy.
12. The gedudav ('his raiding bands, his troops') come yachad ('together') — a coordinated military operation. They va-yassollu ('raise up, build a road/ramp') alai darkkam ('their way against me') — siege ramps for assaulting a fortified position. They va-yachanu saviv le-oholi ('and they encamp around my tent'). Job's tent — his last refuge — is under siege by God's own army.
13. The social catalog of abandonment begins. Achai ('my brothers, my family') me-alai hirchiq ('he has put far from me') — God is the agent of the estrangement. The yode'ai ('those who know me, my acquaintances') akh zaru ('have become utterly strange/foreign') mimmenni ('from me'). The verb zur ('to be a stranger') means they have become as foreign as people from another country.
14. The qerovai ('my near ones, my relatives') chadelu ('have ceased, stopped, abandoned'). The meyudda'ai ('my intimate acquaintances') shekhechuhi ('have forgotten me'). The progression intensifies: first brothers became strangers (v13), now relatives have actively abandoned and friends have erased him from memory.
15. The garei veiti ('the guests/residents of my house') and amhotai ('my maidservants') — even the people under his own roof — le-zar tachshevuni ('reckon me as a stranger'). The nokhri hayiti be-eineihem ('I have become a foreigner in their eyes'). The nokhri is the complete outsider, the alien with no rights. The man who was master of the household is now an unrecognized intruder in his own home.

16. The role reversal is total: Job, who once commanded servants, now qarati ('I call') and lo ya'aneh ('he does not answer'). The be-mo fi etchannen lo ('with my own mouth I plead with him, I beg him for grace') — the master begs the servant. The verb chanan ('to show grace, have mercy') is what subjects do before kings; now Job does it before his own household staff.
17. The ruchi zarah le-ishti ('my breath/spirit is strange/repulsive to my wife') — Job's wife, who in 2:9 told him to curse God and die, now cannot stand to be near him. The ve-channoti livnei vitni ('and my plea for grace to the children of my belly') — the livnei vitni ('sons of my body/womb') may refer to surviving children or to the memory of the dead ones. The devastation of the most intimate human bond — marriage — is expressed through the simple physical detail of unbearable breath.
18. The avilim ('young children, small boys') ma'asu vi ('reject me, despise me'). The aqumah va-yedabberu vi ('I rise and they speak against me') — even standing up provokes mockery. Children, who should show respect to elders, instead treat Job with contempt. In a culture that honored age, this represents the total collapse of social order around him.
19. The metei sodi ('the men of my council, my confidants') ti'avuni ('abhor me, find me loathsome'). The zeh ahavti ('those I loved') nehpekhu vi ('have turned against me'). The sod is the intimate circle of trusted advisors — the inner ring has become a circle of accusers. The verb hafakh ('to turn, overturn') means the love has been inverted into hostility.
20. The atsmi davqah be-ori u-vivsari ('my bone clings to my skin and flesh') describes extreme emaciation — no fat, no muscle, just bone pressed against skin. The va-etmalletah be-or shinnai ('I have escaped with the skin of my teeth') is the origin of the English idiom. Since teeth have no skin, the phrase means 'I have escaped with nothing at all' — survival by the thinnest possible margin, with literally nothing left.
21. The doubled chonnuni chonnuni ('have mercy on me, have mercy on me') is the most raw and direct plea in the book. The attem re'ai ('you are my friends') appeals to the relationship itself — if friendship means anything, show it now. The ki yad Eloha nag'ah bi ('for the hand of God has touched/struck me') gives the reason: Job does not ask for theological agreement, only for compassion in the face of divine assault. The verb naga ('to touch, strike, afflict') is the same word used in 1:11 and 2:5 where the Adversary requested permission to 'touch' Job.
22. The tirdephuni kemo El ('you pursue me like God') equates the friends' behavior with God's — both are relentlessly attacking him. The u-mibbessari lo tisba'u ('and from my flesh you are not satisfied') — they keep consuming his flesh metaphorically, feeding on his suffering, and never have enough. The friends have become additional predators alongside God.
23. The mi yitten ('who will give,' meaning 'if only, would that') introduces an urgent wish. Job wants his millai ('my words') yikkatevu ('written') — preserved in permanent form. The ba-ssefer ('in a book/scroll') ve-yuchchaqu ('and inscribed, engraved') intensifies the desire for permanence. Job wants a record that will outlast him — if he cannot win his case in life, perhaps the written testimony will vindicate him after death.
24. The permanence escalates: from scroll (v23) to rock. The et barzel ('iron pen/stylus') and oferet ('lead') — either an iron chisel with lead filling the carved letters, or an iron pen writing on a lead tablet. The la-ad ('forever, in perpetuity') ba-tsur ('in the rock') yechatsevu ('let them be hewn, carved'). Job wants his testimony carved in stone so that future generations can read it and judge. The irony: the book of Job itself fulfills this wish — his words have been preserved for three thousand years.
25. The go'el is one of the most theologically loaded terms in the Hebrew Bible. In its legal context (Leviticus 25, Numbers 35, Ruth 3-4), the go'el is the nearest kinsman who has the right and obligation to redeem — to buy back a relative from debt slavery, to purchase forfeited family land, to avenge the blood of a murdered relative. When applied to God (as in Isaiah 41:14, 43:14, 44:6, 44:24), it asserts that God stands in kinship relation to his people and is obligated — by his own covenant — to act on their behalf. Job's use of go'el is stunning because he claims this kinship obligation from a God he has accused of injustice. The acharon ('last, latter, final') is debated: it could mean 'at the last day' (eschatological), 'afterward' (temporal), or 'as the final witness' (legal). The verb yaqum ('he will stand, he will arise') is used for a witness or advocate taking the stand in court.
26. The textual difficulties in this verse are genuine and longstanding. The Masoretic text is likely corrupt at several points. The phrase niqqufu zot has been variously translated as 'they have struck off this,' 'they have cut around this,' 'they have destroyed this.' The referent of zot ('this') is uncertain — it may refer to the body, the skin, or the entire situation. Despite the textual chaos, the theological thrust is unmistakable: Job will see God. The min ('from') before bassari ('my flesh') has been the hinge of resurrection theology in Jewish and Christian interpretation. If it means 'from within my flesh,' this is a statement of bodily resurrection; if 'apart from my flesh,' it is a vision after death. The Hebrew supports both readings.
27. The triple emphasis on personal vision (I, my eyes, not a stranger's) counters any suggestion that vindication will come through someone else's testimony. Job demands direct encounter. The phrase ve-lo zar ('and not a stranger, not another') may also be translated 'and not estranged' — meaning Job will see God not as an enemy but as his go'el, his kinsman. The kalu khilyotai be-cheqi ('my kidneys are consumed in my lap/bosom') is pure emotional language — the yearning is so intense it feels like physical dissolution. The kidneys (kilayot) in Hebrew thought are the seat of the deepest emotions and conscience, equivalent to the 'heart' in modern English.
28. Job turns to warn the friends. Their impulse is mah nirdaf lo ('how shall we pursue him, what grounds for persecution?') — they are looking for more charges to bring. Their conclusion: shoresht davar nimtsa vi ('the root of the matter is found in him') — the cause of Job's suffering is in Job himself. Job quotes their position in order to dismantle it.
29. Job's closing warning is a threat. The guru lakhem ('be afraid for yourselves, tremble') mi-penei cherev ('before the sword') — the sword of divine judgment. The ki chemah avonot charev ('for wrath is the punishment of the sword') — the friends' sin of false accusation carries consequences. The lema'an ted'un shaddun ('so that you may know there is a judgment, there is a judge') — the same God they invoke against Job will judge them. The word shaddun may be related to Shaddai (the Almighty), creating a wordplay: the Almighty himself is the judge they should fear. Job in 42:7-8 will be vindicated and God will rebuke the friends — this warning proves prophetic.

20

Summary: *Zophar delivers his second and final speech in the dialogue cycle. He is stung by Job's warning of divine judgment (19:29) and responds with a lengthy meditation on the brevity of wicked prosperity. His central thesis: the wicked may enjoy temporary success, but their triumph is short-lived. The joy of the godless lasts only a moment. Even if the wicked man grows tall enough to touch the clouds, he will perish like his own dung. He swallows wealth but God forces him to vomit it back up. The sweetness of sin turns to venom in his stomach — he sucks the poison of cobras, and the viper's tongue kills him. He will not enjoy the rivers of honey and cream he accumulated. What he toiled for he gives back without swallowing; he gets no enjoyment from his wealth. Because he crushed and abandoned the poor, because he seized houses he did not build, his belly will know no peace, and nothing he desires will survive. God's burning anger will rain down on him as his food, and heaven and earth will rise against him. The produce of his house will be carried away, swept off in the day of God's wrath. This, Zophar concludes, is the portion God assigns to the wicked.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Zophar's speech is the most elaborate development of retribution theology in the dialogue. Where Eliphaz argued from experience and Bildad from tradition, Zophar argues from visceral imagery — the body itself becomes the theater of divine justice. The dominant metaphor is digestion: the wicked man swallows wealth (verse 15), but God makes him vomit it up. He eats sweetness that turns to cobra venom in his gut (verses 12-14). He gorges himself but gets no satisfaction (verse 20). His belly knows no peace (verse 20). The body rebels against ill-gotten gain. This is theology of the gut — the idea that the universe has a digestive system that rejects what was wrongly consumed. The imagery is powerful and contains a genuine moral insight: stolen wealth does not nourish. But Zophar deploys it as a weapon against Job, implying that Job's suffering is the cosmic gag reflex expelling something he swallowed wrongfully.*

Translation Friction: *Zophar's theology is not entirely wrong — the observation that ill-gotten wealth often destroys its possessor has empirical support. The problem is the application: Zophar assumes that all suffering is the rejection of ill-gotten gain, which requires assuming Job acquired his wealth dishonestly. The book has already established (1:1, 1:8, 2:3) that Job is blameless, but Zophar does not have that information. He is working from a theological system that cannot accommodate innocent suffering. This is the tragedy of the friends: they are not stupid or malicious, but their framework has no category for what is happening to Job. The speech also reveals Zophar's personal agitation — his opening words (verses 2-3) betray that Job's threat in 19:29 has gotten under his skin. He speaks from wounded pride as much as theological conviction.*

Connections: *The vomiting metaphor (verse 15) has a disturbing parallel in Leviticus 18:28 where the land 'vomits out' inhabitants who practice abomination. Zophar's cobra venom imagery (verses 14, 16) connects to Deuteronomy 32:33 ('their wine is the venom of serpents'). The 'rivers of honey and cream' (verse 17) inverts the promised land imagery of Exodus 3:8 ('a land flowing with milk and honey') — the wicked man will never enjoy his version of the promised land. The 'portion from God' language (verse 29) connects to the inheritance terminology used throughout the Hebrew Bible for Israel's relationship to the land. Zophar's speech is the last time he speaks in the book — he has no third speech, suggesting his argument has exhausted itself.*

¹Then Zophar the Naamathite answered and said:

²My troubled thoughts drive me to answer —
the agitation inside me compels me.

³I hear a rebuke that insults me,
but the spirit of my understanding gives me an answer.

⁴Surely you know this — it has been true from ancient times,
from the day humanity was set upon the earth:

⁵The triumph of the wicked is short,
and the joy of the godless lasts only a moment.

⁶Even if his greatness rises to the heavens
and his head reaches the clouds —

⁷he will perish forever like his own dung.
Those who saw him will say, 'Where is he?'

⁸He flies away like a dream and cannot be found;
he is chased off like a vision in the night.

⁹The eye that glimpsed him will see him no more;
his place will never look upon him again.

¹⁰His children will beg from the poor;
his own hands will give back his wealth.

¹¹His bones are full of youthful vigor,
but it will lie with him in the dust.

¹²Though evil is sweet in his mouth
and he hides it under his tongue —

¹³though he savors it and will not let it go,
holding it against the roof of his mouth —

¹⁴but his food turns inside him;
it becomes cobra venom in his gut.

¹⁵He swallows wealth, but vomits it back up.
God forces it out of his belly.

¹⁶He sucks the poison of cobras;
the tongue of the viper kills him.

¹⁷He will never see the rivers,
the streams flowing with honey and cream.

¹⁸He gives back what he toiled for without swallowing it.
The profit of his trade brings him no joy.

¹⁹Because he crushed and abandoned the poor,
because he seized a house he did not build —

²⁰Because he knew no peace in his craving,
nothing he desired will he save.

²¹Nothing is left for him to consume;
therefore his prosperity will not endure.

²²At the peak of his abundance, distress finds him;
the full force of misery falls upon him.

²³When he is filling his belly,
God hurls his burning anger at him
and rains it down on him as his food.

²⁴He flees from the iron weapon,
but a bronze bow pierces him through.

²⁵He draws the arrow out — it exits through his back.
The gleaming point comes from his bile;
terrors descend on him.

²⁶Total darkness is stored up for his treasures.
A fire no one kindled consumes him;
it devours whatever remains in his tent.

²⁷The heavens expose his guilt;
the earth rises up against him.

²⁸The produce of his house is swept away,
washed out on the day of God's wrath.

²⁹This is the portion God assigns to the wicked,
the inheritance God has decreed for him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Zophar ha-Na'amati ('the Naamathite') speaks for the second and last time. He will not speak in the third cycle — some scholars believe his speech was lost or that the author intentionally omitted it to show the friends running out of arguments.
2. The se'ippai ('my disquieting thoughts, my anxious reflections') yeshivuni ('cause me to answer, drive me back'). The ba'avur chushi vi ('on account of my haste/agitation within me') — Zophar admits he is emotionally agitated. Job's warning about the sword of judgment (19:29) has disturbed him. His response is driven not by calm reflection but by urgency and personal offense.
3. The musar kelimmati ('the discipline/rebuke of my insult/shame') eshma ('I hear') — Zophar acknowledges that Job's words (particularly 19:29) felt like a personal attack. But ruach mi-bbinati ('a spirit from my understanding') ya'aneni ('answers me, gives me a response'). Zophar claims his reply comes from deep insight, not mere defensiveness — though the reader may doubt this.
4. Zophar appeals to primordial authority: ha-zot yadata ('do you know this') minni ad ('from eternity, from ancient times'). The minni sim adam alei arets ('since humanity was placed upon the earth') grounds his teaching in creation itself. Zophar claims his theology is as old as the human race.
5. Zophar's thesis statement: rinnat resha'im ('the shout of joy / triumph of the wicked') mi-qqarov ('is from near, is brief'). The simchat chanef ('the joy of the godless/hypocrite') adei raga ('until a moment, lasting only an instant'). Everything that follows is an elaboration of this claim: wicked prosperity is real but fleeting.
6. The si'o ('his exaltation, his height, his pride') ya'aleh la-shamayim ('goes up to the heavens'). The rosho ('his head') la-av yaggi'a ('reaches to the cloud'). The imagery evokes the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4) — human ambition reaching for the sky. The conditional 'even if' sets up the reversal that follows.
7. The reversal is brutal: ke-gelelo ('like his own dung, his own excrement') la-netsach yo'ved ('he perishes forever'). The man whose head touched the clouds will be reduced to waste. The ro'av ('those who saw him') yo'meru ayyo ('will say: where is he?'). The question ayyo ('where is he?') echoes the question asked about those who vanish without a trace.
8. The ka-chalom ('like a dream') ya'uf ('he flies away') — the wicked man's existence has the substance of a dream. The lo yimtsa'uhu ('they will not find him') — he vanishes completely. The yuddad ('he is driven away, chased off') ke-chezyon lailah ('like a night vision'). Both images — dream and night vision — describe something that seems real in the moment but has no substance when morning comes.

9. The ayin shezafattu ('the eye that caught sight of him, that glimpsed him') ve-lo tosif ('and it will not do so again'). The meqomo ('his place') — the physical location where he lived — teshurennhu ('will look upon him') no more. Even the place itself will not recognize him. The land forgets its former occupant.
10. The role reversal: banav ('his children') yerattu dallim ('will seek favor from the poor, will court the destitute'). The children of the rich become supplicants to the poor. The yadav ('his hands') tashevna'hu ('will return his wealth/vigor') — what the wicked man accumulated will be forcibly returned, and his own hands will do the returning.
11. The atsmotav ('his bones') mal'u alumav ('are full of his youth, his youthful strength'). The irony: his body is strong, yet ve-immo al afar tishkav ('with him upon the dust it will lie down'). Youthful vigor offers no protection; it goes into the grave with him. Strength and death share the same bed.
12. The digestion metaphor begins. The tamtiq ('is sweet, he makes sweet') be-fiv ('in his mouth') ra'ah ('evil, wickedness') — sin tastes good. He yakhchidenah ('conceals it, hides it') tachat leshono ('under his tongue') — savoring it like a piece of candy held in the mouth. The image is of a man who relishes wrongdoing, who lets it dissolve slowly on his palate.
13. The yachmol ('he spares, cherishes, is reluctant to part with') aleiha ('over it'). The lo ya'azvenah ('he will not abandon it, let it go'). The yimna'enah ('he holds it back, keeps it') be-tokh chikko ('in the middle of his palate'). Three descriptions of the same reluctance to release: the wicked man clings to his sin the way a person clings to a delicious morsel.
14. The reversal: lachmo ('his bread, his food') be-me'av ('in his bowels, in his intestines') nehpakh ('is turned, is transformed'). What was sweet becomes merorat petanim ('the bitterness/gall of cobras') be-qirbo ('in his midst, in his insides'). The petanim ('cobras, asps') produce venom that destroys from within. The theological claim: sin may taste sweet but it metabolizes into poison.
15. The chayil ('wealth, strength, resources') bala ('he swallowed') — wealth is consumed greedily. But va-yeqi'ennu ('and he vomits it up') — the body rejects it. God himself is the agent: mi-bbitno yorishennu El ('from his belly God dispossesses him, drives it out'). The image is of God reaching into the wicked man's stomach and forcing the ejection of stolen goods. The verb yarash in the hiphil means 'to dispossess,' connecting economic robbery to bodily purging.
16. The ro'sh petanim ('the poison/venom of cobras') yinaq ('he sucks, he nurses') — the wicked man drinks venom as if nursing from a breast. The taharghehu ('it kills him') leshon ef'eh ('the tongue of the viper'). The snake imagery intensifies: in verse 14 the venom was inside him; now he actively drinks it. The ef'eh ('viper') is a different species from the peten ('cobra'), broadening the threat — every kind of serpent contributes to his destruction.
17. The al yere' ('he will not see') bi-felaggot ('the channels, the water-courses') naharei nachalei ('rivers of streams of') devash ve-chem'ah ('honey and cream/butter'). The rivers of honey and cream invert the promised land imagery — Exodus 3:8's 'land flowing with milk and honey' described God's gift to his people. The wicked man forfeits this abundance. He will never enjoy the prosperity he thought he was building.
18. The meshiv yaga ('he returns what he labored for') ve-lo yivla ('and he does not swallow') — forced restitution. The ke-cheil temourato ('like the wealth of his exchange/profit') ve-lo ya'alos ('and he does not rejoice'). The digestion metaphor continues: the wicked man cannot even swallow his gains. The food is snatched from his mouth before it reaches his stomach.
19. The cause: ritsats ('he crushed, he shattered') azav dallim ('he abandoned the poor'). The bayit gazal ('a house he seized, stole') ve-lo yivnehu ('and he did not build it') — he appropriated what others built. This verse provides the ethical basis for the entire speech: the wicked man's wealth comes from exploitation of the vulnerable. The poor (dallim) are his victims.
20. The lo yada shalev be-vitno ('he did not know calm/contentment in his belly') — the gut of the greedy person is never at rest. The ba-chamudo ('in his desire, with what he craves') lo yemallit ('he will not rescue, he will not save'). The insatiable appetite destroys itself: because the craving never stops, nothing is ever secured. The belly, seat of appetite, becomes the seat of punishment.
21. The ein sarid le-okhlo ('there is no survivor/remnant for his eating') — he has consumed everything and nothing remains. The al ken lo yachil tuvo ('therefore his good/prosperity will not last, will not endure'). The verb chul ('to endure, to wait, to writhe') suggests that prosperity itself cannot bear to stay in the possession of such a person.
22. The bi-melo'ot sifqo ('in the fullness of his sufficiency/abundance') yetser lo ('it is narrow for him, distress comes upon him'). At the very moment of maximum prosperity, the reversal begins. The kol yad amel ('every hand of the toiler/sufferer') tevo'ennu ('comes upon him') — either the hands of those he oppressed rise against him, or 'every afflicting hand' strikes him. Maximum wealth and maximum suffering coincide.
23. The yehi le-malle vitno ('let it be to fill his belly') — the moment of consumption. God yeshalach bo charon appo ('sends against him his burning anger'). The ve-yamter aleimu ('and he rains upon them') bilchumo ('as his food, while he eats'). God's wrath becomes the wicked man's meal — he opens his mouth to eat and swallows divine fury instead. The rain of anger echoes the rain of sulfur on Sodom (Genesis 19:24).
24. Escape is impossible: yivrach ('he flees') mi-nnesheq barzel ('from the weapon of iron'). But tachliphehu ('it passes through him') qeshet nechusah ('a bow of bronze'). Avoiding one threat exposes him to another. The iron and bronze represent the two dominant metals of ancient warfare — every direction of flight leads to another weapon.
25. The shalaf ('he draws out') va-yetse mi-ggevah ('and it comes out from his back/body') — the arrow has passed entirely through him. The baraq ('lightning, gleam') mi-mmeroroto ('from his bile, from his gall') — the bright arrowhead emerges from his internal organs, smeared with bile. The emim ('terrors') are alav ('upon him'). The physical detail is clinically graphic — Zophar describes a fatal through-and-through wound with the arrow exiting the gall bladder.

- 26.** The kol choshekh tamun li-tsefunav ('all darkness is hidden for his stored treasures') — what the wicked man hoarded in secret will be met by darkness. The te'okhllehu esh lo nuppach ('a fire not blown/kindled consumes him') — a supernatural fire, not started by human hands, devours him. This echoes the fire from God in 1:16 that consumed Job's sheep. The yera sarid be-oholo ('it goes badly for the survivor in his tent') — even any remaining household member suffers.
- 27.** The shamayim ('heavens') yegallu ('reveal, uncover, expose') avono ('his iniquity, his guilt'). The erets ('earth') mitqomemah ('rises up, stands up against') lo ('against him'). The entire created order — heaven and earth — conspires to judge the wicked man. The cosmos itself is a witness for the prosecution. This is the opposite of Job's plea in 16:18, where he asked the earth not to cover his blood — Zophar claims the earth actively exposes the wicked.
- 28.** The yigel yevul beito ('the produce/yield of his house is carried off') — everything the household generated is confiscated. The niggartot ('poured out, washed away like a flood') be-yom appo ('on the day of his anger') — the day of divine wrath washes away all possessions like a flash flood. The verb nagar ('to pour, flow, be poured out') suggests an unstoppable torrent.
- 29.** Zophar's conclusion: zeh cheleq adam rasha me-Elohim ('this is the portion of a wicked person from God'). The nachalat imro me-El ('the inheritance of his decree/word from God') — God himself has assigned this fate. The cheleq ('portion, share, allotment') and nachalah ('inheritance') are land-distribution terms — just as Israel received an inheritance of land from God, the wicked receive an inheritance of destruction. Zophar frames cosmic retribution as divine estate planning. The speech ends with absolute confidence in its own framework — a confidence the book will dismantle.

21

Summary: *Job delivers his devastating reply to Zophar's second speech and, by extension, to the entire retribution theology shared by all three friends. His argument is simple and empirical: the wicked DO prosper. They live to old age, grow mighty in power, see their children established, and their houses are safe from fear. Their bulls breed without fail, their children dance, they sing to the timbrel and harp, and they spend their days in prosperity. They say to God, 'Leave us alone — we have no desire to know your ways. Who is the Almighty that we should serve him?' And yet nothing happens to them. Job asks: how often does the lamp of the wicked actually go out? How often does calamity actually fall on them? The friends claim God stores up punishment for the wicked man's children — but Job says: let God punish the man himself, so he can feel it. What does a dead man care what happens to his household after he is gone? Job observes that both the wicked and the righteous end up in the same dust, eaten by the same worms. The friends' theology does not match observable reality. He dismisses their comfort as empty lies.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is Job's most sustained empirical argument and represents a direct inversion of Zophar's speech in chapter 20. Where Zophar said wicked prosperity is brief (20:5), Job says the wicked grow old and mighty (21:7). Where Zophar described children begging from the poor (20:10), Job describes children dancing and secure (21:11-12). Where Zophar claimed divine wrath falls on the wicked as food (20:23), Job says the wicked eat and drink in peace and dismiss God entirely (21:14-15). Point by point, Job dismantles the retribution framework with observation. The theological danger of Job's argument is real: if the wicked prosper and the righteous suffer, what is the moral structure of the universe? Job does not answer this — he simply insists on stating the problem honestly rather than burying it under pious theory. His argument anticipates Ecclesiastes and Psalm 73.*

Translation Friction: *Job's claim that the wicked prosper unchecked creates a theological crisis that the book does not resolve in conventional terms. The friends' retribution theology (the righteous prosper, the wicked perish) is the dominant framework of Proverbs and Deuteronomy. Job does not deny that framework as an ideal — he denies it as a reliable description of observable reality. This puts him in tension not only with his friends but with large portions of Israel's wisdom tradition. The resolution comes only in the theophany (chapters 38-42), where God does not explain the moral calculus but reveals a universe of overwhelming complexity that exceeds human categories of fairness. Job's argument in chapter 21 is the necessary demolition work that makes the theophany meaningful — without the honest acknowledgment that retribution theology fails empirically, God's answer from the whirlwind would be addressing a straw man.*

Connections: *Job's observation that the wicked dismiss God ('Who is the Almighty that we should serve him?' — verse 15) parallels Pharaoh's defiance in Exodus 5:2 ('Who is YHWH that I should obey his voice?'). The image of the wicked spending their days in prosperity echoes Psalm 73:3-12, where the psalmist is troubled by the same observation until he enters the sanctuary. The claim that the righteous and wicked share the same fate in death*

anticipates Ecclesiastes 9:2-3 ('the same event happens to the righteous and the wicked'). Job's dismissal of vicarious punishment for children (verse 19) engages the principle stated in Exodus 20:5 (visiting iniquity on children to the third and fourth generation) and anticipates Ezekiel 18's rejection of that principle: 'The soul that sins, it shall die.'

¹Then Job answered and said:

²Listen — truly listen to my words,
and let that be the comfort you offer me.

³Bear with me while I speak,
and after I have spoken — then you may mock.

⁴Is my complaint directed at a human being?
If so, why should I not lose patience?

⁵Turn to me and be appalled.
Put your hand over your mouth.

⁶When I think about it, I am horrified;
shuddering seizes my body.

⁷Why do the wicked go on living,
growing old and even gaining power?

⁸Their children are secure before them,
their descendants right before their eyes.

⁹Their houses are at peace, free from dread;
the rod of God does not fall on them.

¹⁰His bull breeds without fail;
his cow calves and does not miscarry.

¹¹They send out their little ones like a flock;
their children dance and play.

¹²They lift up the tambourine and lyre
and celebrate to the sound of the flute.

¹³They finish their days in prosperity
and go down to the grave in peace.

¹⁴They say to God, 'Leave us alone!
We have no desire to know your ways.'

¹⁵'Who is the Almighty that we should serve him?
What do we gain by praying to him?'

¹⁶Yet their prosperity is not in their own hands.
The counsel of the wicked is far from me!

¹⁷How often is the lamp of the wicked snuffed out?
How often does their disaster come upon them?
How often does God deal out pain in his anger?

¹⁸How often are they like straw before the wind,
like chaff that the storm sweeps away?

¹⁹You say, 'God stores up his punishment for his children.'
Let God repay the man himself, so he knows it!

²⁰Let his own eyes see his ruin!
Let him drink the wrath of the Almighty!

²¹What does a dead man care about his household after him,
once the count of his months is cut short?

²²Can anyone teach God knowledge,
he who judges even the exalted ones?

²³One person dies in perfect wholeness,
completely at ease and secure.

²⁴His body is full of nourishment;
his bones are rich with marrow.

²⁵Another dies with a bitter soul,
having never tasted anything good.

²⁶Side by side they lie in the dust,
and the worms cover them both.

²⁷Look — I know your thoughts
and the schemes you devise against me.

²⁸You say, 'Where is the great man's house?
Where is the tent where the wicked lived?'

²⁹Have you never asked travelers on the road?
Do you not recognize their testimony?

³⁰The wicked is spared on the day of disaster;
he is carried away from the day of wrath.

³¹Who denounces his conduct to his face?
Who repays him for what he has done?

³²He is carried to his tomb in honor,
and a watch is kept over his burial mound.

³³The clods of the valley lie gently on him.
All humanity follows in his path;
those who went before him are beyond counting.

34 So how can you comfort me with empty breath?
 Nothing is left of your answers but lies.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard response formula. Job replies to Zophar's second speech (chapter 20). What follows is the most empirically grounded argument in the entire dialogue.
2. The shim'u shamoa ('hear, truly hear' — the infinitive absolute intensifies the command) millati ('my word, my speech'). Job demands genuine attention rather than the rehearsed theological responses the friends keep delivering. The tehi zot tanchumoteikhem ('let this be your consolations') is biting: the best comfort the friends can offer is simply to listen.
3. The se'uni ('bear me, endure me, lift me up') ve-anokhi adabber ('and I myself will speak'). The ve-achar dabbri tal'ig ('and after my speaking, mock') — Job grants sarcastic permission: go ahead and mock, but at least hear me out first. The verb la'ag ('to mock, to scorn') acknowledges that Job expects ridicule rather than understanding.
4. The he-anokhi le-adam sichi ('is my complaint to/against a human?') — Job's grievance is not against the friends but against God, or against the way the universe operates. The ve-im maddua lo tiqtasar ruchi ('and if so, why should my spirit not be short/impatient?'). The qatsar ruach ('short of spirit') idiom means losing patience. Job's real quarrel is cosmic, not interpersonal.
5. The penu elai ('turn to me, face me') ve-hashammu ('and be desolate, be appalled, be stunned'). Job tells the friends that what he is about to say should shock them. The simu yad al peh ('put your hand on your mouth') — the gesture of silenced astonishment. This gesture will reappear when Job himself is silenced by God's speech (40:4).
6. The ve-im zakharti ('and when I remember, and when I consider') ve-nivhalti ('I am terrified, I am dismayed'). The achaz bissari pallatsut ('trembling/shuddering seizes my flesh'). Job is not exaggerating for effect — the reality he is about to describe genuinely horrifies him. The observation that the wicked prosper is not a comfortable conclusion; it terrifies the person who draws it.
7. The three verbs form a devastating sequence: yichyu ('they live'), atequ ('they grow old'), gavru chayil ('they become mighty in power'). Each verb escalates: survival, longevity, increasing strength. This is the exact opposite of the three-fold destruction pattern the friends describe for the wicked. Job does not deny that some wicked people perish — he denies that all of them do, which is enough to destroy the friends' universal claims.
8. The zar'am ('their seed, their offspring') nakhon ('is established, secure, firm') lifneihem immam ('before them, with them'). The tse'etsa'eihem ('their offspring, their descendants') le-eineihem ('before their eyes'). The wicked not only survive — they see their children thrive. This directly contradicts Bildad's claim that the wicked are childless (18:19) and Zophar's claim that their children beg from the poor (20:10).
9. The batteihem shalom mi-ppachad ('their houses are peace/wholeness away from fear') — the shalom here is not merely the absence of trouble but the positive state of well-being. The lo shevet Eloha aleihem ('no rod of God upon them') — God's disciplinary instrument does not strike them. The shevet ('rod, staff, scepter') is the instrument of correction. The wicked live uncorrected.
10. Agricultural prosperity: shoro ibbar ('his bull impregnates, breeds') ve-lo yag'il ('and does not fail, does not reject'). The tefallet parato ('his cow delivers') ve-lo teshakkel ('and does not miscarry, does not lose her young'). Livestock fertility was the primary measure of economic prosperity. The wicked man's herds flourish. Job describes what he himself once had (1:3) — and what was taken from him, not because of wickedness but by divine testing.
11. The yeshallechu ka-tson avileihem ('they send out like a flock their young children') — the image is of carefree children tumbling out to play like lambs in a pasture. The yaldeihem yeraqqedun ('their children dance, skip, leap'). The picture is one of innocent joy and security. Job himself had ten children (1:2) who feasted together (1:4-5) — and all were killed in a single day (1:18-19). The description of happy children belonging to the wicked is excruciating in light of Job's loss.
12. The yis'u ke-tof ve-khinnor ('they lift up the tambourine and the lyre') — these are instruments of celebration and worship. The yismechu le-qol ugav ('they rejoice at the sound of the pipe/flute'). The wicked enjoy music, feasting, and joy. The tof, kinnor, and ugav form a trio of instruments associated with festivity (cf. Genesis 31:27, Isaiah 5:12). The wicked live in perpetual celebration.
13. The yekhallu va-ttov yemeihem ('they complete/finish in good/prosperity their days') — their entire life, from beginning to end, is prosperous. The u-ve-rega she'ol yechatu ('and in a moment to Sheol they descend'). The be-rega ('in a moment') here describes a quick, painless death — not the drawn-out suffering of prolonged disease. The wicked die easily. They do not linger in agony the way Job does. The verb nachat ('to descend, to go down') to She'ol describes a peaceful departure, not a violent removal.
14. The va-yomeru la-El sur mimmenu ('they say to God: turn aside from us, depart from us'). The ve-da'at derakhekha lo chafatsnu ('and the knowledge of your ways we do not desire'). The wicked explicitly reject God — not in secret, but openly. They tell God to go away. And God, apparently, does nothing. This is the fact that horrifies Job: active, vocal rejection of God goes unpunished while Job, who never rejected God, is destroyed.
15. The Shaddai ('the Almighty') is one of the primary divine names in Job, used 31 times in the book. The wicked use the name dismissively — not denying God's existence but questioning his relevance. The verb ya'al ('to profit, to benefit') in the hiphil means 'to gain advantage' — religion is treated as an investment, and the wicked find the returns insufficient. The verb paga ('to meet, to encounter, to intercede') means 'to approach God in prayer.' The wicked see no point in praying.

16. Job inserts a disclaimer: *hen lo be-yadam tuvam* ('indeed, their good/prosperity is not in their hand') — their prosperity ultimately comes from God, not from their own doing. The *atsat resha'im rachaqa menni* ('the counsel of the wicked is far from me') — Job distances himself from their philosophy. He is not endorsing atheism or rebellion against God. He is simply reporting what he observes. The disclaimer prevents the friends from accusing Job of adopting wicked ideology.
17. The *kammah* ('how often?') is a rhetorical question expecting the answer 'rarely.' The *ner resha'im yid'akh* ('the lamp of the wicked goes out') quotes the friends' own imagery back at them — Bildad said exactly this in 18:5-6. Job asks: how often does it actually happen? The avalanche of 'how often' questions exposes the gap between the friends' confident claims and observable reality. The *chavalim* ('cords of pain, birth-pangs, destruction') *yechalleq be-apo* ('he distributes in his anger') — God supposedly distributes punishment in anger, but Job asks how often this actually occurs.
18. Job continues the 'how often' challenge from verse 17, now applied to the classic imagery of divine judgment. The *ke-teven lifnei ruach* ('like straw before the wind') and *ke-mots genavatto sufah* ('like chaff that the storm steals away') are standard images for the destruction of the wicked (Psalm 1:4, Isaiah 17:13). Job does not deny that this sometimes happens — he denies that it happens reliably or universally. The imagery is borrowed from the friends' own vocabulary and turned into a skeptical question.
19. Job quotes the friends' defense: *Eloah yitspon le-vanav ono* ('God stores up his iniquity for his children') — the claim that God punishes the wicked man's descendants rather than the wicked man himself. Job finds this morally outrageous: *yeshallem elav ve-yeda* ('let him repay him so that he knows it') — what good is punishment that the guilty party never experiences? The demand for personal accountability anticipates Ezekiel 18's insistence that 'the soul that sins, it shall die' — not the son, not the grandson, but the sinner himself.
20. The *yir'u einav kido* ('let his eyes see his destruction') — Job demands that the wicked man witness his own punishment. The *u-me-chamat Shaddai yishte* ('and from the fury of the Almighty let him drink') — drinking God's wrath is a recurring biblical image (Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). Job's point is ethical: justice requires that the guilty person experience the consequences, not have them transferred to innocent descendants.
21. The *ma cheftso be-veito acharav* ('what is his pleasure/desire in his house after him') — once dead, the wicked man is beyond caring what happens to his family. The *u-mispar chodashav chutsatsu* ('and the number of his months is cut in half, cut off') — his allotted time has expired. The argument is pragmatic and devastating: vicarious punishment is no punishment at all, because the dead are beyond caring.
22. The *ha-le-El yelammod da'at* ('shall anyone teach God knowledge?') — Job anticipates the objection that he is instructing God on how to run the universe. He deflects it with irony: God judges *ramim* ('the exalted, the high ones') — a possible reference to angelic beings or heavenly powers. Job is not claiming to teach God; he is pointing out that God's actual practice does not match the friends' theory about God's practice.
23. The *zeh yamut be-etsem tummo* ('this one dies in the bone/essence of his completeness/integrity') — *tummo* comes from the same root as *tam*, the word used to describe Job in 1:1. One person dies in full integrity, with everything intact. The *kullo shal'anan ve-shalev* ('wholly at ease, wholly tranquil'). Job is describing the peaceful death of someone who lived well — perhaps even a righteous person. The contrast with verse 25 will be devastating.
24. The *atinav* ('his pails' or 'his sides/flanks') *mal'u chalav* ('are full of milk') — the image is of a body abundantly nourished, fat with health. The *u-moach atsmotav yeshuqqeh* ('and the marrow of his bones is moistened, is well-watered'). Marrow-rich bones signify vitality and health. This person dies in a state of complete physical abundance.
25. The *nefesh marah* ('bitter soul, embittered life') describes someone whose entire existence has been suffering. The *lo akhal ba-ttovah* ('he never ate in/with good') is a summary of deprivation. Job may be describing himself: a righteous man who now dies in bitterness without having tasted good. The parallel with verse 23 forces the reader to confront the randomness of human experience.
26. The *yachad al afar yishkavu* ('together upon the dust they lie down') — the prosperous and the bitter, the righteous and the wicked, end up in the same place. The *ve-rimmah tekhasash aleihem* ('and the worm covers over them') — maggots make no moral distinctions. This verse is the conclusion of the two-death comparison: whatever differences existed in life, death erases them. The observation anticipates Ecclesiastes 3:19-20 ('all go to one place; all are from the dust, and all return to the dust').
27. The *hen yadati machshevotekhem* ('indeed I know your thoughts') — Job reads the friends' minds. He knows what they are thinking even before they say it. The *u-mezimot alai tachmose* ('and the plots/devices against me you do violence with'). The verb *chamas* ('to do violence, to wrong') is used for the friends' theological arguments — Job considers their reasoning an act of violence against him.
28. Job quotes the friends' expected response: *ayyeh beit nadiv* ('where is the house of the noble/generous one?') *ve-ayyeh ohel mishkenot resha'im* ('and where is the tent of the dwelling-places of the wicked?'). The friends point to destroyed estates as proof that wickedness leads to ruin. The *nadiv* ('noble, generous, prince') is used here ironically or as a euphemism — the friends mean 'the wicked tyrant' but use a polite term.
29. The *ha-lo she'altam overei derekh* ('have you not asked those who pass by on the road?') — Job appeals to the testimony of travelers, people with wide experience of the world. The *ve-ototam lo thenakkeru* ('and their signs/evidence you do not recognize, you do not regard as foreign'). Job tells the friends to get out of their theological echo chamber and ask people who have actually seen the world. Eyewitness testimony contradicts the friends' theory.
30. The *le-yom eid yechasekh ra* ('on the day of calamity the evil one is spared, held back, kept from harm'). The *le-yom avarot yuvalu* ('on the day of fury/wrath they are led away to safety'). This is the travelers' testimony: when disaster strikes, the wicked man is somehow protected. He escapes the catastrophe that should have destroyed him. The verb *chasakh* ('to spare, to withhold, to hold back') means the wicked man is actively preserved from the destruction that retribution theology says should find him.

31. The *mi yaggid al panav darko* ('who tells his way to his face?') — no one confronts the wicked man. He is too powerful, too insulated. The *ve-hu asah mi yeshalleh lo* ('and what he has done, who repays him?') — no one holds him accountable. The double *mi* ('who?') expects the answer 'no one.' The wicked man lives without confrontation and dies without recompense.
32. The *ve-hu li-qevarot yuval* ('and he to the graves is carried') — the wicked man receives a proper funeral procession. The *ve-al gadish yishqod* ('and over the heap/mound he watches' or 'a watch is kept over his tomb'). The *gadish* ('heap, mound, stack') refers to the burial mound or monument. The wicked man not only dies peacefully (verse 13) but is buried with honor, his grave tended and guarded. Even in death, he receives dignity that his victims may never have known.
33. The *matqu lo rigvei nachal* ('sweet to him are the clods of the valley/wadi') — even the earth that covers his grave is gentle. The poetic image of death as sweetness inverts the normal imagery of the grave as harsh and cold. The *acharav kol adam yimshokh* ('after him all humanity is drawn, follows') — everyone eventually follows the dead man into the grave. The *u-lefanav ein mispar* ('and before him there is no number') — countless dead preceded him. The observation universalizes: death is the great equalizer, and neither righteousness nor wickedness changes its terms.
34. Job's devastating conclusion: *ve-eikh tenachamuni havel* ('and how can you comfort me with vapor/emptiness/breath?'). The *hevel* ('vapor, breath, vanity') is the signature word of Ecclesiastes — everything the friends have said is as insubstantial as exhaled air. The *u-teshuvoteikhem nish'ar ma'al* ('and in your answers what remains is treachery/unfaithfulness'). The *ma'al* ('treachery, unfaithfulness, trespass') is a covenant term — the friends have committed a breach of faith. Their comfort is not merely inadequate; it is a betrayal. Job ends where he began: the only real comfort would have been listening (verse 2), but instead the friends offered theology that cannot survive contact with reality.

22

Summary: *Eliphaz delivers his third and final speech, and it represents a dramatic escalation. In his first speech (chapters 4-5) Eliphaz was gentle and diplomatic, offering general wisdom. In his second speech (chapter 15) he grew sharper. Now he abandons all restraint and launches direct, specific accusations against Job. He begins with a theological argument: can a man be useful to God? God has no need of human righteousness. Then Eliphaz springs the trap: is it for your piety that God rebukes you? No — it must be because your wickedness is great and your sins are endless. He then invents a catalog of specific crimes: Job stripped the naked of their clothing, withheld water from the thirsty, refused bread to the hungry, sent widows away empty, and crushed the arms of orphans. That is why snares surround him, sudden terror overwhelms him, darkness covers his sight, and a flood of water engulfs him. Eliphaz then describes the wicked who say to God 'what can the Almighty do?' — echoing Job's own words from chapter 21. He closes with an appeal: if Job will return to the Almighty, put away iniquity, and throw his gold into the dust, then the Almighty will be his gold, and God will hear his prayer. The speech is the most theologically coercive moment in the dialogue.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Eliphaz's third speech marks the moment when retribution theology turns from implicit accusation to explicit fabrication. In chapters 4-5, Eliphaz suggested that all humans sin; in chapter 15, he argued that no mortal can be righteous before God. But here he lists specific crimes: Job withheld water, denied bread, stripped clothing, abused widows and orphans. These are the classic prophetic sins — violations of social justice listed in Isaiah 58, Ezekiel 18, and Amos 2. The devastating irony is that the reader knows from the prologue (1:1-5) and from God's own testimony (1:8, 2:3) that none of these accusations are true. Eliphaz has been driven by his theological system to invent sins that Job did not commit. This is the ultimate indictment of retribution theology: when the framework demands guilt and reality provides none, the theologian manufactures evidence. The friends' pastoral failure is complete — they have moved from misdiagnosis to bearing false witness.*

Translation Friction: *Eliphaz's speech contains genuine theological truth mixed with devastating misapplication. His opening point — that human righteousness does not benefit God (verses 2-3) — is actually sound theology that God himself will affirm in the speeches from the whirlwind. His closing appeal (verses 21-30) — that repentance leads to restoration and intimacy with God — contains beautiful promises that are true in general. The tragedy is that both the theology and the appeal are aimed at a man who does not need to repent of the crimes he is accused of. Eliphaz is offering real medicine to a patient who does not have the disease he diagnosed. The result is that true theology becomes an instrument of cruelty. This is the book's deepest warning: correct doctrine wrongly applied is more dangerous than honest doubt, because it carries the authority of truth while doing the work of lies.*

Connections: Eliphaz's catalog of sins (verses 6-9) mirrors the prophetic social-justice tradition: withholding water and bread from the hungry (Isaiah 58:7, Ezekiel 18:7, 16), stripping clothing from the naked (Amos 2:8, Ezekiel 18:7), mistreating widows and orphans (Exodus 22:22-24, Isaiah 1:17, 23). The command to throw gold into the dust (verse 24) connects to Job's later oath in 31:24-25 where he swears he never placed his confidence in gold. Eliphaz's promise 'you will pray and he will hear you' (verse 27) is fulfilled ironically in 42:8-9, where God commands Eliphaz to ask Job to pray on Eliphaz's behalf — the exact reversal of Eliphaz's assumed roles. The description of God in the high heavens (verse 12) uses language that will reappear in God's own speeches (38:31-33) but with radically different implications.

¹Then responded:

²Can a man be of use to God?

Even a wise man benefits only himself.

³Is it any pleasure to the Almighty that you are righteous?

Does he profit if you make your ways blameless?

⁴Is it for your piety that he rebukes you?

Is it for that that he brings you to trial?

⁵Is not your wickedness vast?

Are not your sins without end?

⁶For you took pledges from your relatives for no reason

and stripped the clothing from the destitute.

⁷You gave no water to the exhausted

and withheld bread from the starving.

⁸The powerful man — the land belonged to him.

The privileged one settled in it.

⁹You sent widows away empty-handed

and crushed the arms of orphans.

¹⁰That is why snares surround you

and sudden terror overwhelms you.

¹¹Or is it darkness so thick you cannot see,

and a flood of water covering you?

¹²Is not God in the heights of heaven?

Look at the topmost stars — how far above they are!

¹³And yet you say, 'What does God know?

Can he judge through the thick darkness?'

¹⁴Clouds are a screen for him — he cannot see!

He walks along the vault of heaven.

¹⁵Will you keep to the ancient path

that the wicked have trodden?

¹⁶They were snatched away before their time;
a river poured over their foundations.

¹⁷They said to God, 'Leave us alone!'
And 'What can the Almighty do to us?'

¹⁸Yet it was God who filled their houses with good things.
The counsel of the wicked is far from me!

¹⁹The righteous see it and rejoice;
the innocent laugh them to scorn.

²⁰'Surely our adversary is cut off,
and fire has consumed what they left behind.'

²¹Make peace with God and be reconciled to him;
through this, good will come to you.

²²Receive instruction from his mouth;
store his words in your heart.

²³If you return to the Almighty, you will be rebuilt.
Put injustice far from your tent.

²⁴Throw your gold in the dust,
your gold of Ophir among the stones of the stream.

²⁵Then the Almighty will be your gold,
your precious silver heaped high.

²⁶Then you will delight in the Almighty
and lift your face toward God.

²⁷You will pray to him, and he will hear you;
you will fulfill your vows.

²⁸You will decide on a matter, and it will stand.
Light will shine on your paths.

²⁹When others are brought low, you will say, 'There is lifting up!'
He saves the one whose eyes are downcast.

³⁰He delivers even one who is not innocent;
he is rescued by the cleanness of your hands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Eliphaz ha-Temani ('the Temanite') speaks for the third and final time. Teman was a region in Edom associated with wisdom (Jeremiah 49:7, Obadiah 8-9). Eliphaz has been the most measured of the three friends, but this speech abandons his earlier restraint entirely.
2. The verb *sakan* ('to be of service, to be useful, to benefit') appears twice. The *gaver* ('strong man, hero') cannot benefit God. The *maskil* ('the wise one, the prudent one, the one who acts with insight') benefits only *aleimu* ('upon himself, for himself'). Eliphaz starts with God's transcendence — a true starting point — but draws a false conclusion from it.

3. The ha-chefets le-Shaddai ki titsdda ('is it desire/pleasure to the Almighty that you are righteous?') — does God benefit from Job's righteousness? The ve-im betsa ki tatten derakhekha ('or is it gain/profit that you perfect your ways?'). The Shaddai ('the Almighty') is contrasted with human righteousness (tsadaq) and blamelessness (tamam). The tam ('blameless') root echoes God's own description of Job in 1:8 and 2:3 — Eliphaz unwittingly uses the very term God used to vindicate Job.
4. The ha-mi-yir'atkha yokhichekha ('is it from your fear/reverence that he reproves you?') — Eliphaz asks rhetorically whether God is correcting Job because Job is too pious. The implied answer is absurd: of course not. The yavo immekha ba-mmishpat ('does he come with you into judgment?') — would God take a pious man to court? Eliphaz's logic is that since God would never punish piety, Job must have committed sins worthy of punishment.
5. The pivot: ha-lo ra'atkha rabbah ('is not your evil/wickedness great?'). The ve-ein qets la-avonotekha ('and there is no end to your iniquities'). Eliphaz has moved from insinuation to direct accusation. The ein qets ('no end, infinite') is an extraordinary claim — Job's sins are not merely present but limitless. This is the necessary conclusion of Eliphaz's syllogism: God punishes sin, Job is being punished severely, therefore Job's sin must be severe. The logic is airtight and completely wrong.
6. The first fabricated charge: tachbol achekha chinnam ('you took pledges from your brothers/kinsmen for nothing') — seizing collateral from family members without cause. The u-vigdei arummim tafshit ('and the garments of the naked you strip off'). Taking a poor person's garment as collateral was explicitly prohibited in Exodus 22:26-27 and Deuteronomy 24:12-13, because the cloak served as a blanket for sleeping. Eliphaz accuses Job of the exact crime the Torah forbids. The reader knows this is false — Job will later swear an oath denying these charges (31:19-20).
7. The second fabricated charge: lo mayim ayef tashqeh ('not water to the weary/exhausted you give to drink'). The u-me-ra'ev timna lachem ('and from the hungry you withhold bread'). Denying water and bread to the needy is a fundamental violation of ancient Near Eastern hospitality law and Israelite covenant obligation (Isaiah 58:7, Ezekiel 18:7). Eliphaz constructs a portrait of Job as a cruel oppressor — the opposite of who Job actually was.
8. The ve-ish zeroa ('and the man of arm/power') lo ha-arets ('to him the land') — Eliphaz describes a world where the powerful seize land. The u-nesu fanim ('and the one lifted of face, the honored one, the privileged one') yeshev bah ('dwells in it'). Eliphaz implies that Job was one of these powerful landowners who dispossessed others. The 'man of arm' is an idiom for someone who uses force to get what he wants.
9. The climactic accusation: almanot shillachta reiqam ('widows you sent away empty') — Job allegedly dismissed vulnerable women with nothing. The u-zero'ot yetomim yedukka ('and the arms of the fatherless are crushed'). Widows and orphans are the two most protected categories in Israelite law (Exodus 22:22-24, Deuteronomy 10:18, 27:19). To abuse them invites divine wrath directly. Eliphaz is accusing Job of the most socially heinous crimes in Israel's moral vocabulary. The irony is savage: Job, who chapter 29 will reveal was the supreme protector of widows and orphans, is accused of being their oppressor.
10. The al ken ('therefore, for this reason') draws the causal link: because of the crimes listed in verses 6-9, sevivotekha pachim ('around you are traps/snares') and vivahalekha pachad pit'om ('sudden fear/dread terrifies you'). Eliphaz's logic is simple: Job's suffering (snares, terror) is the direct consequence of Job's sins (oppression). The al ken is the hinge of retribution theology — the word 'therefore' that connects sin to suffering. Job has spent the entire dialogue trying to break this causal link.
11. The o choshekh lo tir'eh ('or darkness — you cannot see') — Job's suffering is like being engulfed in impenetrable darkness. The ve-shif'at mayim tekhassekka ('and an abundance of waters covers you') — the flood imagery describes being overwhelmed, drowned in calamity. Both images — darkness and drowning — describe the totality of Job's affliction, which Eliphaz attributes to hidden sin.
12. The ha-lo Eloha govah shamayim ('is not God in the height of the heavens?') establishes divine transcendence. The u-re'eh rosh kokhavim ki rammu ('and see the head/top of the stars, how high they are'). Eliphaz uses God's exalted position to set up his next argument: some people think God's height means he cannot see what happens below (verse 13). The stars' height is a measure of divine transcendence — but Eliphaz will argue that transcendence does not equal ignorance.
13. Eliphaz attributes to Job the claim: ma yada El ('what does God know?') — that God is ignorant of human affairs. The ha-be'ad arafel yishpot ('can he judge through the deep darkness/thick cloud?') — the arafel is the dense cloud associated with God's presence on Sinai (Exodus 20:21, Deuteronomy 4:11). Eliphaz accuses Job of saying that the cloud that surrounds God blocks his vision. Job never actually said this — Eliphaz is constructing a straw man from Job's complaints about divine injustice.
14. Continuing the alleged quote from Job: avim seter lo ('clouds are a covering/hiding-place for him') ve-lo yir'eh ('and he does not see'). The ve-chug shamayim yithalakh ('and the circle/vault of heaven he walks about'). The chug ('circle, vault, horizon') describes the dome of the sky. Eliphaz portrays Job as claiming God is a distant deity who strolls along the sky dome, hidden by clouds, oblivious to earthly affairs. This caricature is unfair — Job has never denied God's awareness; he has challenged God's justice.
15. The ha-orach olam tishmor ('will you keep/guard the path of antiquity?') — Eliphaz warns Job against following the ancient road of the wicked. The asher darkhu metei aven ('which the men of wickedness/iniquity walked'). The orach olam ('eternal path, ancient way') may refer to the way of the generation before the flood (Genesis 6). Eliphaz implies Job is heading down the same path that led to divine catastrophe.
16. The asher gummettu ve-lo et ('who were seized/shriveled and not in time, before their time') — premature death. The nahar yutsaq yesodam ('a river/flood was poured out on their foundation'). The flood reference almost certainly alludes to the generation of Noah (Genesis 6-8). Eliphaz cites the flood as proof that God does indeed judge the wicked — but Job has never denied that God sometimes judges. Job has denied that God always judges, and that all suffering is judgment.

17. The ha-omerim la-El sur mimmenu ('those who say to God: depart from us') directly echoes Job's quotation in 21:14. Eliphaz throws Job's own words back at him — the wicked who dismissed God in Job's speech are now cited as examples of the path Job is following. The u-ma yif'al Shaddai lamo ('and what can the Almighty do for/to them?') — the wicked challenged the Almighty's power or relevance. Eliphaz implies that Job's complaints about divine injustice amount to the same defiance.
18. The ve-hu mille batteihem tov ('and he filled their houses with good') — Eliphaz acknowledges (as Job did in 21:16) that God is the source of the wicked's prosperity. The va-atsat resha'im rachaqa menni ('and the counsel of the wicked is far from me') is an almost verbatim repetition of Job's own disclaimer in 21:16b. Eliphaz appropriates Job's language, claiming the same distance from wicked ideology. The verbal echo is pointed: I can say it too, and when I say it, I mean it.
19. The yir'u tsaddiqim ve-yismachu ('the righteous see and rejoice') — when the wicked are finally punished, the righteous celebrate. The ve-naqi yil'ag lamo ('and the innocent one mocks them'). Eliphaz describes the satisfaction of the righteous when justice is done. The tsaddiqim ('righteous') and naqi ('innocent, clean') are exactly what Job claims to be — but Eliphaz has already placed Job among the wicked, not among the righteous onlookers.
20. The righteous taunt the wicked: im lo nikhchad qimanu ('surely our adversary/opponent is cut off, destroyed'). The ve-yitram akhlah esh ('and their remnant/excess fire has consumed'). The qimanu is debated — it may mean 'our adversary,' 'our substance,' or 'those who rose against us.' The fire consuming the remnant echoes the supernatural fire in 20:26. The righteous rejoice that nothing of the wicked remains.
21. Eliphaz shifts to appeal: hasken na immo ('be familiar with him, acquaint yourself with him now'). The u-shelam ('and be at peace, be reconciled'). The bahem tevo'atkha tovah ('through these things good will come to you'). The verb sakan ('to be familiar, to be of service, to know intimately') invites Job into restored relationship with God. The appeal is beautiful in isolation — the tragedy is that it presupposes Job has been estranged from God by his own wickedness, which is not true.
22. The qach na mi-ppv torah ('receive, please, from his mouth instruction/teaching') — torah here means 'instruction, teaching, guidance' rather than the formal Torah/Pentateuch. The ve-sim amarav bi-lvavekha ('and place his sayings in your heart'). Eliphaz counsels Job to listen to God's instruction and internalize it. The irony is that God's actual instruction, when it comes (chapters 38-41), will vindicate Job and rebuke Eliphaz.
23. The conditional promise: im tashuv ad Shaddai ('if you return to the Almighty') tivvaneh ('you will be built, you will be restored'). The verb shuv ('to return, to turn back, to repent') is the fundamental verb of repentance in Hebrew. The tarchiq avlah me-ohalekha ('put injustice far from your tent'). Eliphaz promises restoration through repentance — a true theological principle misapplied to a man who has nothing to repent of in the way Eliphaz means.
24. The ve-shit al afar batser ('and put upon the dust gold/ore') — Eliphaz commands Job to throw his gold on the ground, treating it as worthless. The u-ve-tsur nechalim Ofir ('and in the rock of the streams, Ophir gold'). Ophir was the legendary source of the finest gold (1 Kings 9:28, 10:11). The command is to renounce wealth as a source of security. Ironically, Job will later swear that he never placed his trust in gold (31:24-25), making Eliphaz's command unnecessary.
25. The wordplay is significant: batser ('gold, ore') in verse 24 becomes betsarekha ('your gold/treasure' or possibly 'your stronghold') in verse 25, with Shaddai as the subject. The verb hayah ('to be, to become') marks the exchange: throw away gold, receive God. The to'afot ('heaps, abundance, heights') describes the overwhelming quantity of divine provision.
26. The ki az al Shaddai tit'annag ('for then over/upon the Almighty you will take delight') — the verb anag ('to be delicate, to take pleasure, to delight') describes intimate enjoyment of God's presence. The ve-tissa el Eloha panekha ('and you will lift your face to God') — the lifted face is the posture of confidence and intimacy, the opposite of the downcast face of shame. Eliphaz promises that repentance will restore Job's ability to look God in the eye.
27. The ta'tir elav ('you will pray abundantly to him, you will entreat him') ve-yishma'ekka ('and he will hear you'). The u-nedarekha teshallem ('and your vows you will pay/fulfill'). Eliphaz promises that restored prayer will be answered and vows can be completed. The promise is fulfilled in a way Eliphaz never imagined: in 42:8-9, God instructs the friends to ask Job to pray for them. Job's prayer is the one that God hears — not as a restored sinner but as a vindicated righteous man.
28. The ve-tigzar omer ('and you will decree a word/matter') ve-yaqom lakh ('and it will be established for you, it will stand') — Job's decisions will succeed, his plans will come to fruition. The ve-al derakhekha nagah or ('and upon your paths light shines'). Darkness was Job's condition (verse 11); Eliphaz promises light. The promise of light upon one's path echoes Psalm 119:105 ('your word is a lamp to my feet'). Eliphaz envisions full restoration: answered prayer, successful plans, illuminated paths.
29. The ki hishpilu ('when they are brought low, humbled') va-tomer gevah ('and you will say: exaltation, lifting up, pride/height'). Job will become a source of hope for the humbled, declaring that God lifts up the lowly. The ve-shach einayim yoshia ('and the downcast of eyes he saves'). The shach einayim ('lowered eyes, cast-down eyes') describes humility or shame. God saves the humble. Eliphaz's theology here aligns with Hannah's song (1 Samuel 2:7-8) and Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:52) — God brings down the proud and lifts up the lowly.
30. The yemallit i naqi ('he delivers the not-innocent' or 'he delivers the island/coastland of the innocent') — the phrase is textually difficult. If i naqi means 'not innocent,' then even the guilty are delivered through the intercession of a righteous person. If it means 'the island of the innocent,' it describes God's protection of the innocent. The ve-nimlat be-vor kappekha ('and he is rescued by the cleanness/purity of your hands'). Either way, Eliphaz promises that clean hands lead to deliverance. The supreme irony: in 42:8, Job's clean hands will indeed deliver Eliphaz himself. The friend who demanded Job repent will be saved by Job's prayer. Eliphaz spoke more truly than he knew.

23

Summary: *Job responds to Eliphaz's third speech with a passionate longing for direct access to God. He wishes he could find God, approach his dwelling, and lay out his case before him in a formal legal hearing. Job is confident that if he could only get a hearing, God would listen — a righteous person could reason with God and be acquitted forever. But God is unfindable. Job searches east, west, north, and south and cannot locate him. Yet even in God's absence, Job insists that God knows his way and that he would emerge from testing like refined gold. Job has not departed from God's commands; he has treasured the words of God's mouth more than his daily bread. But God is singular in purpose — who can turn him? What he desires, he does. God will carry out the decree appointed for Job, and many such decrees remain. This is why Job is terrified in God's presence: the Almighty has made his heart faint. Darkness covers Job's face, but he is not silenced by it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter captures one of the most profound spiritual paradoxes in all of scripture: the simultaneous conviction that God is just and the experience that God is absent. Job does not abandon either truth. He believes that a face-to-face encounter with God would result in his vindication (verses 6-7), yet he cannot find God anywhere (verses 8-9). The four-directional search in verses 8-9 — forward, backward, left, right (or east, west, north, south) — is a poetic way of saying Job has exhausted every possibility. God is everywhere in power but nowhere accessible in person. The chapter also contains Job's most extraordinary claim about his own integrity: he has kept God's way, not turned aside from his commands, and valued God's words more than food (verses 11-12). This is not self-righteousness — it is a man who has nothing left except the truth of his own conduct, and he refuses to surrender it even to God.*

Translation Friction: *The tension in this chapter is between Job's confidence in the outcome of a hearing (verses 6-7) and his terror at God's inscrutability (verses 13-17). These are not contradictory but sequential: Job believes he would be acquitted if he could get a hearing, but he also recognizes that God operates by purposes Job cannot fathom or redirect. The phrase 'he is singular — who can turn him?' (verse 13) is not a statement about God's unity (monotheism) but about God's unilateral sovereignty — God does what God wants, and no argument, however valid, can change his course. This produces terror, not comfort. Job's final words in the chapter (verses 15-17) describe genuine dread: God has made his heart soft with fear, and thick darkness covers his face. The chapter ends not in resolution but in holy terror before an absent, inscrutable, unchallengeable God.*

Connections: *Job's longing to find God's dwelling place (verse 3) anticipates the theophany in chapters 38-41 where God finally does appear — though not in any location Job could have searched. The legal language of presenting a case (verses 4-5) connects to Job's earlier courtroom imagery in 9:14-20 and 13:18-22. The four-directional search (verses 8-9) parallels Psalm 139:7-10 ('Where shall I go from your Spirit?'), but where the psalmist finds God everywhere, Job finds God nowhere. The gold-refining metaphor (verse 10) connects to Malachi 3:2-3 ('he is like a refiner's fire') and 1 Peter 1:7 ('the testing of your faith, more precious than gold that perishes though it is tested by fire'). Job's claim to treasure God's words above food (verse 12) parallels Psalm 119:103 ('How sweet are your words to my taste') and anticipates Jesus' quotation of Deuteronomy 8:3 ('man shall not live by bread alone').*

¹Then responded:

²Even today my complaint is bitter rebellion.
His hand is heavy on me despite my groaning.

³If only I knew where to find him —
that I could come to his dwelling place!

⁴I would lay out my case before him
and fill my mouth with arguments.

⁵I would learn what words he would answer me
and understand what he would say to me.

⁶Would he contend with me by brute force?
No — he would simply give me his attention.

⁷There an upright person could reason with him,
and I would be acquitted forever by my judge.

⁸But I go forward — he is not there.
I go backward — I cannot perceive him.

⁹I turn to the north where he is working — I cannot take hold of him.
He wraps himself in the south — I cannot see him.

¹⁰But he knows the way I have walked.
When he has tested me, I will come out as gold.

¹¹My foot has held to his steps;
I have kept his way and not turned aside.

¹²I have not departed from the command of his lips.
More than my daily bread,
I have treasured the words of his mouth.

¹³But he is singular in purpose — who can turn him?
What he desires, he does.

¹⁴For he will carry out the decree appointed for me,
and many such decrees are stored with him.

¹⁵Therefore I am terrified before him.
When I consider, I am filled with dread of him.

¹⁶God has made my heart faint;
the Almighty has filled me with terror.

¹⁷Yet I am not silenced by the darkness,
nor by the deep gloom that covers my face.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard response formula. Job replies to Eliphaz's third speech (chapter 22), which directly accused Job of specific sins — oppressing the poor, withholding bread from the hungry, stripping the naked. Job does not address these accusations point by point but instead pivots to his deepest desire: to find God and present his case directly.
2. The gam ha-yom ('even today, still today') — the suffering has not abated. The meri sichi ('my complaint is rebellion, my speech is defiance') — Job acknowledges that his words sound like revolt against God. The yadi kavdah al anchatu ('my hand / his hand is heavy upon my groaning') — the ketiv reads yadi ('my hand'), but many follow the qere yado ('his hand'), meaning God's hand presses heavier than Job's groans can express. Either reading conveys that the weight of affliction exceeds Job's capacity to voice it.
3. The mi yitten yadati ('who will grant that I knew') is the classic Hebrew formula for an unrealizable wish — 'if only.' The ve-emtsa'ehu ('and I would find him') — the verb matsa ('to find') implies searching for someone who is not in plain sight. The tkhunato ('his dwelling, his established place, his seat') — Job wants to approach the place where God holds court, where a case can be formally presented. The longing is not for mystical union but for legal access.

4. The e'erkhah ('I would arrange, order, set in array') lefanav ('before him, before his face') mishpat ('judgment, legal case') — the verb arakh is used for setting things in order, as a lawyer prepares a brief. Job has been building his case for chapters and wants a courtroom in which to present it. The ufi amalle tokhachot ('and my mouth I would fill with arguments, proofs, rebukes') — tokhachot are reasoned arguments, evidence-based proofs, not mere complaints.
5. The ed'ah millim ya'aneni ('I would know the words he would answer me') — Job craves not silence but response. He wants God to speak, even in rebuke, because speech implies engagement. The ve-avinah mah yomar li ('and I would understand what he says to me') — Job believes he has the capacity to comprehend God's answer if only God would give one. This confidence will be tested in chapters 38-41 when God does speak and Job discovers that understanding is more complex than he anticipated.
6. The ha-be-rov koach yariv immadi ('would he by greatness of power contend with me?') — Job asks whether God would use overwhelming force to win the argument rather than engaging the merits. His answer: lo ('no'). The akh hu yasim bi ('only he would put/set [attention] in me, he would attend to me') — Job's deepest conviction: if God engaged him as a person rather than crushing him as an insect, the outcome would be justice. The word yasim can mean 'place, set, give attention to' — God would take Job's case seriously.
7. The sham ('there' — at God's dwelling, in his court) yashar ('an upright person') nokhach immo ('could argue, reason, dispute before him'). Job identifies himself as yashar ('upright') — the same word used by God to describe Job in 1:8 and 2:3. The va-afaltah ('and I would escape, be delivered, be acquitted') la-netsach ('forever, permanently') mi-shofti ('from my judge'). The acquittal would be final. Job's confidence is not arrogance — it rests on the premise that truth presented before a just judge must produce justice.
8. The hen qedem ehelokh ('behold, forward/eastward I go') ve-einenu ('and he is not there, he does not exist [in that place]'). The ve-achor ('and backward/westward') ve-lo avin lo ('and I cannot perceive him, I have no understanding of him [there]'). The qedem (east, the direction one faces) and achor (behind, west) form the first pair of the four-direction search. The verb avin ('I perceive, I understand') — Job cannot even detect God's presence, let alone find his courtroom.
9. The semo'l ('left' = north, since one faces east) ba'asoto ('when he works, where he acts') ve-lo achaz ('and I cannot grasp, seize, take hold of him'). The ya'atof yamin ('he wraps/conceals [himself on] the right' = south) ve-lo er'eh ('and I cannot see'). God is active (ba'asoto — 'in his working') but invisible; present in power but absent to perception. The verb ataf ('to wrap, cover') suggests God deliberately conceals himself. Job's frustration is not with God's nonexistence but with God's hiddenness — the deus absconditus, the hidden God.
10. The pivot: ki yada ('for he knows') derekh immadi ('the way with me, the path I have taken'). Even though Job cannot find God, God knows exactly where Job is and what he has done. The bechanani ('when he has tested me, tried me, assayed me') — the verb bachan is a metallurgical term for testing ore in fire. The ka-zahav etse ('like gold I will come out') — Job will emerge from suffering purified, not destroyed. Gold tested in fire loses its impurities but retains its substance. Job's integrity is the gold that will survive the furnace.
11. The ba-ashuro ('in his step, in his track') achazah ragli ('my foot has grasped, held fast'). Job claims to have walked precisely in God's footprints. The darkko shamarti ('his way I have kept, guarded') ve-lo at ('and I have not turned aside, deviated'). The verb shamar ('to keep, guard') is the covenant word for obedience — the same verb used in 'keep my commandments.' Job's claim is not casual piety but covenant faithfulness.
12. The me-chukki ('more than my portion/allotment') is sometimes read as me-chukko ('more than his decree') — 'I have stored up the words of his mouth more than his statutes require.' But the more natural reading takes chukki as 'my portion' — that is, my daily allotment of food. The tsafanti ('I have treasured, hidden away') imrei fiv ('the words of his mouth') uses the same verb used for storing up treasure in a vault. God's words are not merely obeyed but hoarded as precious.
13. The ve-hu be-echad ('but he is in one, he is singular, he is unique') — this is not a statement about monotheism but about God's unilateral sovereignty. God's purpose is one, unified, and unchangeable. The u-mi yeshivenu ('and who can turn him back, cause him to return, change his mind?') — the answer is: no one. Not Job's arguments, not his innocence, not his suffering. The ve-nafsho ivvetah va-ya'as ('and his soul desired and he did') — the sequence is desire followed immediately by action with no obstacle between. God's will encounters no resistance. This is the source of Job's terror: a God who cannot be persuaded is a God who cannot be sued.
14. The yashlim ('he will complete, fulfill, carry out') chukki ('my statute, what is decreed for me'). God has a plan for Job and will execute it to completion regardless of Job's protests. The ve-kahennah rabbhot immo ('and like these many things are with him') — this is not Job's only case. God has countless such decrees, countless inscrutable purposes. Job's suffering is one entry in an infinite ledger of divine purposes he cannot read.
15. The al ken ('therefore, on account of this') mi-panav ('from his face, before his presence') ebbahel ('I am dismayed, terrified, alarmed'). The realization of God's unturnable sovereignty (verse 13) produces not comfort but terror. The etbonen ('when I consider, reflect, think carefully') ve-efchad mimmennu ('and I fear/dread him'). The more Job thinks about God's nature, the more frightened he becomes. This is the opposite of the friends' theology, which says reflection on God should produce peace.
16. The El herakh libbi ('God has softened my heart') — the soft heart here is not tender devotion but the weakness of fear. A soft heart in this context is a heart that has lost its courage, like wax melting. The Shaddai hivhilani ('the Almighty has terrified me, dismayed me') — the title Shaddai ('the Almighty') intensifies the terror: it is not a minor deity but the supreme power of the universe who has shattered Job's courage.
17. The ki lo nitsmatti ('for I was not cut off, silenced, destroyed') mi-penei choshekh ('before the darkness, on account of the darkness'). Despite everything — God's terrifying inscrutability, the total inability to find him, the crushing weight of undeserved suffering — Job refuses to be silenced. The u-mi-panai kissah ofel ('and from my face thick darkness covers') — deep gloom veils Job's vision, but he keeps speaking. The chapter ends in darkness but not in silence. Job's refusal to stop talking is itself an act of defiance and faith: he will not accept a universe where suffering has no

hearing.

24

Summary: *Job asks the central question of theodicy: why does the Almighty not set times for judgment so that those who know him can see justice done? He then surveys the world and catalogs the crimes that go unpunished. The wicked move boundary stones, steal flocks, drive off the orphan's donkey, take the widow's ox as a pledge, and push the poor off the road. The destitute are forced to forage like wild donkeys in the wasteland, gleaning fields that are not theirs, gathering in the vineyards of the wicked. They sleep naked without covering in the cold, drenched by mountain rain, clinging to rocks for shelter. The fatherless are snatched from the breast; the infant of the poor is seized as a pledge. The naked go about without clothing, carrying sheaves while they starve, pressing oil within the walls of the wicked while they go thirsty. From the city the dying groan, the wounded cry for help — yet God charges no one with wrongdoing. Then Job turns to a different class of evildoers: those who rebel against the light — the murderer, the adulterer, the thief — who operate in darkness and are friends with deep shadows. Yet despite all this, Job acknowledges that the wicked are swept away like foam on the surface of water, their portion of land is cursed, drought and heat consume them as the grave consumes sinners, the womb forgets them, the worm feeds sweetly on them, and they are broken like a tree. Job ends with a challenge: if this is not so, who can prove me a liar?*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the most socially conscious passages in the Hebrew Bible. Job is not arguing theology in the abstract — he is describing actual human suffering: landless laborers foraging for scraps, naked workers pressing olive oil they will never taste, infants seized from their mothers as debt pledges, the dying groaning from the rubble of destroyed cities while God does nothing. The catalog in verses 2-12 is a protest against systemic injustice that reads as freshly today as it did three thousand years ago. What makes it theologically explosive is the conclusion Job draws: God sees all of this and does not act. The friends argued that God reliably punishes the wicked; Job looks at the world and sees the opposite. The chapter also contains an extraordinary literary shift in verses 13-17, where Job describes 'rebels against the light' — murderers, adulterers, and thieves who operate in darkness. These verses may represent Job quoting the friends' theology back to them, or they may be Job's own acknowledgment that evil exists in both daylight oppression and nocturnal crime.*

Translation Friction: *Chapter 24 is one of the most textually difficult chapters in Job. The Hebrew is corrupt in several places, and the logical structure is debated. Verses 18-24 present the most significant interpretive problem: they describe the destruction of the wicked in language that sounds more like the friends' theology than Job's. Some scholars believe these verses are a fragment of Zophar's missing third speech that was accidentally inserted here. Others argue that Job is sarcastically quoting what the friends would say. Still others read them as Job's genuine concession that the wicked do eventually perish, but only after inflicting enormous damage — and that God's delay in acting is itself the scandal. The tension between verses 1-17 (the wicked prosper and the innocent suffer) and verses 18-24 (the wicked are eventually destroyed) is the interpretive crux. This rendering reads the chapter as a unified speech in which Job moves from protest to bitter acknowledgment: yes, the wicked may eventually be swept away, but the delay is unconscionable and the damage is irreversible.*

Connections: *Job's catalog of social injustice (verses 2-12) parallels the prophetic indictments in Isaiah 5:8 ('Woe to those who join house to house, who add field to field'), Amos 2:6-7 ('they sell the righteous for silver and the needy for a pair of sandals'), and Micah 2:1-2 ('they covet fields and seize them'). The boundary-stone theft (verse 2) violates Deuteronomy 19:14 and 27:17. The widow's ox as pledge violates Deuteronomy 24:17. The naked going without clothing while pressing oil (verse 11) is a concrete illustration of the exploitation Amos denounces. Job's opening question — 'Why does the Almighty not set times for judgment?' — anticipates Habakkuk 1:2-4 ('How long, O Lord, must I call for help?') and the New Testament parable of the unjust judge (Luke 18:1-8). The 'rebels against the light' section (verses 13-17) connects to John 3:19-20 ('people loved darkness rather than light because their deeds were evil').*

¹Why does the Almighty not set times for judgment?
Why do those who know him never see his days of reckoning?

²The wicked move boundary stones.
They steal flocks and graze them as their own.

³They drive off the orphan's donkey;
they take the widow's ox as a pledge.

⁴They shove the poor off the road.
The afflicted of the land are forced into hiding together.

⁵Look — like wild donkeys in the wilderness they go out,
rising early to search for food.
The wasteland is their bread for their children.

⁶They harvest fodder in fields not their own
and glean in the vineyard of the wicked.

⁷They spend the night naked, without clothing,
with no covering against the cold.

⁸They are drenched by mountain rainstorms
and cling to the rock for lack of shelter.

⁹They snatch the fatherless child from the breast;
they seize the infant of the poor as a pledge.

¹⁰They go about naked, without clothing;
they carry sheaves while starving.

¹¹Between the olive rows they press out oil;
they tread the winepresses yet go thirsty.

¹²From the city the dying groan,
and the throats of the wounded cry for help —
yet God charges no one with wrongdoing.

¹³There are those who rebel against the light.
They do not recognize its ways
or stay on its paths.

¹⁴At first light the murderer rises;
he kills the poor and the needy.
In the night he becomes a thief.

¹⁵The eye of the adulterer watches for twilight,
saying, 'No eye will see me' —
and he puts a covering over his face.

¹⁶In the dark they break into houses
that they marked during the day.
They want nothing to do with the light.

¹⁷For morning is the shadow of death to them;
they are at home with the terrors of deep darkness.

¹⁸He is swift on the surface of the water —
their portion of land is cursed.
No one turns toward their vineyards.

¹⁹As drought and heat steal away the melted snow,
so the grave swallows those who have sinned.

²⁰The womb that bore him forgets him.
The worm feeds sweetly on him.
He is remembered no more,
and wickedness is snapped like a tree.

²¹He preys on the barren woman who cannot bear children
and shows no kindness to the widow.

²²Yet God drags away the mighty by his power.
They rise up, but have no assurance of life.

²³God gives them security, and they lean on it,
but his eyes are on their ways.

²⁴They are exalted for a little while — then they are gone.
They are brought low; they wither like everything else.
They are cut off like the heads of grain.

²⁵If this is not so, then who can prove me a liar
and reduce my words to nothing?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Shaddai ('the Almighty') opens the chapter with the divine name that emphasizes power — if God is almighty, the failure to establish judgment times is a choice, not an inability. The ittim ('times, seasons') connects to Ecclesiastes 3:1 ('for everything there is a season') — but unlike Ecclesiastes, Job sees no evidence that the season of justice ever arrives. The verb tsafan ('to hide, store up') may mean that the times are hidden from view or that they have been stored away and never released.
2. The gevulot yassigu ('they move boundary markers, they push back landmarks') — land theft by moving the stones that mark property lines. This is one of the most condemned crimes in the Torah (Deuteronomy 19:14, 27:17) because it robs families of their ancestral inheritance. The eder gazlu va-yir'u ('a flock they seize and graze it') — the stolen flock is brazenly grazed in public. The crimes are not hidden; they happen in broad daylight.
3. The chamor yetomim yinhagu ('the donkey of orphans they drive away') — the donkey is the working animal of the poor, essential for subsistence farming. To steal an orphan's donkey is to destroy the orphan's livelihood. The yichbelu shor almanah ('they take as pledge the ox of the widow') — the ox pledged as collateral for a loan the widow cannot repay. The Torah specifically prohibits taking a widow's garment as pledge (Deuteronomy 24:17); taking her ox — her means of survival — is even more devastating.
4. The yattu evyonim mi-ddarekh ('they turn aside the needy from the way, the road') — the poor are literally pushed off public pathways, denied freedom of movement. The yachad chubbe'u anyyei erets ('together they hide themselves, the afflicted of the earth') — the poor are driven underground, forced to conceal themselves from their oppressors. They hide as a group because individually they have no protection.

5. The hen pera'im ba-midbar ('behold, wild donkeys in the desert') — the poor are compared to wild donkeys, feral animals scavenging in barren land. The yatse'u be-fo'olam ('they go out in their work') meshachare la-ttaref ('seeking early for prey/food') — their 'work' is foraging, their daily occupation is the animal search for scraps. The aravah lo lechem la-ne'arim ('the wasteland is his bread for the young ones') — the desert itself is the only pantry for their children. Civilization has expelled them; the wilderness is all that remains.
6. The ba-ssadeh belilo yiqtsoru ('in the field his fodder/mixed grain they harvest') — they reap not grain for themselves but animal feed from someone else's field. The ve-kerem rasha yelaqgeshu ('and the vineyard of the wicked they glean') — gleaning is the desperate act of the destitute, gathering what harvesters leave behind. The bitter irony: the poor glean in the vineyards of the very people who impoverished them.
7. The arom yalinu ('naked they lodge, they spend the night') mi-bbeli levush ('without clothing'). The ve-ein kesut ba-qqarah ('and there is no covering in the cold'). The double negation — without clothing, without covering — emphasizes total destitution. These are not beggars who have some rags; they have nothing between their skin and the night air. The qarar ('cold') in the Judean hill country can drop to near freezing in winter.
8. The mi-zzerem harim ('from the downpour of the mountains') yirtavu ('they are soaked, made wet'). Mountain rain in the Near East arrives as sudden, cold deluges. The u-mi-bbeli machseh ('and for lack of shelter') chibbequ tsur ('they embrace the rock') — they press their bodies against cliff faces, seeking any protection. The verb chabaq ('to embrace') is normally used for human affection; here the poor embrace stone because they have no one and nothing else.
9. The yigzelu mi-shod yatom ('they tear away from the breast the fatherless') — a nursing infant is ripped from its mother, either to be taken as a debt-slave or simply as an act of cruelty. The ve-al ani yachbolu ('and against the poor they take a pledge') — the poor person's child becomes collateral for debt. This is the moral nadir of Job's catalog: the commodification of infants. The Torah's pledge laws (Exodus 22:25-27, Deuteronomy 24:10-13) were meant to prevent exactly this.
10. The arom hillekhu beli levush ('naked they walk about without clothing') reprises verse 7 but now in daylight — this is not nighttime exposure but public nakedness during working hours. The u-re'evim nas'u omer ('and hungry they carry the sheaf') — they harvest grain they will never eat. They handle food all day and go home with nothing. The cruelty is precise: the workers produce abundance for others while they themselves starve.
11. The bein shurotam yatshiru ('between their rows/walls they press oil') — the poor labor pressing olives between stone walls, extracting oil they will never use. The yeqavim darkhu va-yitsma'u ('winepresses they tread and they thirst') — they stomp grapes to make wine and are denied even water. The juxtaposition is devastating: oil and wine — symbols of prosperity and celebration — are produced by people who cannot drink. This is the purest expression of exploitation: the laborer creates wealth and receives nothing.
12. The tiflah ('unseemliness, folly, impropriety, wrongdoing') is the key word. God lo yasim tiflah ('does not impute/assign tiflah') — does not charge anyone with wrongdoing for causing this suffering. The verb sim can also mean 'to pay attention to' — God does not regard the outrage. Either reading produces the same conclusion: the suffering of the innocent receives no divine response. This is Job's most direct challenge to the retribution theology of the friends.
13. The hemmah hayu be-morde or ('they are among the rebels against the light') — a new category of evildoer. Where verses 2-12 described oppressors who operate in plain sight, verses 13-17 describe those who specifically choose darkness. The lo hikkiru derakhav ('they do not recognize its ways') ve-lo yashvu bi-ntivotav ('and they do not dwell in its paths') — they reject the light both intellectually (do not recognize) and practically (do not walk in). The 'light' is both literal (daylight) and metaphorical (moral truth, God's order).
14. The la-or yaqum rotse'ach ('at the light the murderer rises') — he rises at dawn not for honest labor but to kill. His victims are specific: yiqtol ani ve-eyon ('he kills the afflicted and the needy') — the vulnerable, those who cannot defend themselves. The u-va-llailah yehi kha-gannav ('and in the night he becomes like a thief') — the same person is murderer by day and burglar by night. The dual identity suggests a professional criminal for whom violence is a way of life.
15. The ve-ein no'ef ('and the eye of the adulterer') shamrah neshef ('watches for, waits for the twilight/dusk'). The adulterer's eye — the organ of desire — monitors the fading light, waiting for darkness to enable his transgression. The le'mor lo teshureni ayin ('saying: no eye will perceive me') — he believes darkness makes him invisible. The ve-seter panim yasim ('and a covering of face he places') — he veils his face as disguise. The irony: he hides from human eyes but not from God's, yet as Job has established, God apparently does nothing about it.
16. The chatar ba-choshekh battim ('he digs through in the darkness houses') — ancient houses had mud-brick walls that could be tunneled through. The yomam chittemu lamo ('by day they sealed/marked for themselves') — they scouted targets during daylight, marking which houses to rob at night. The lo yade'u or ('they do not know light') — they have rejected light entirely. The phrase echoes verse 13: these are rebels against the light in the most literal sense — they live their true lives only in darkness.
17. The ki yachdav boqer lamo tsalmavet ('for together morning is to them the shadow of death') — what is safety for the righteous (dawn, morning light) is mortal danger for the wicked. Morning exposes them. The ki yakkir balhot tsalmavet ('for he recognizes the terrors of deep darkness') — the deep darkness that terrifies normal people is familiar territory for them. They know its terrors not as threats but as companions. The tsalmavet ('shadow of death, deep darkness') appears twice, framing the verse with the oppressive weight of moral darkness.
18. The interpretive crux of the chapter begins here. The qal hu al penei mayim ('he is light/swift upon the face of the waters') — the wicked man is like foam or flotsam, skimming the surface and quickly swept away. The tequall chelqatam ba-arets ('their portion in the land is cursed') — the property they accumulated is blighted. The lo yifneh derekh keramim ('he does not turn toward the way of vineyards') — no one visits their vineyards, which are abandoned and cursed. Some scholars read these verses as Job quoting the friends' position; this rendering takes them as Job's bitter acknowledgment that the wicked do eventually vanish — but only after the damage is done.

- 19.** The tsiyyah gam chom ('drought and also heat') yigzelu meimei shaleg ('snatch away waters of snow') — snowmelt vanishes in the desert heat, leaving no trace. The she'ol chat'u ('Sheol / the grave [takes] those who have sinned') — the grave absorbs sinners the way dry ground absorbs water. The verb gazal ('to steal, snatch') is the same verb used for the wicked stealing flocks in verse 2 — what the wicked did to others, death does to them.
- 20.** Four rapid images of annihilation. The yishkachehu rechem ('the womb forgets him') — the mother who bore him has no memory of him; his very origin erases him. The metoqu rimmah ('the worm finds him sweet') — decomposition is described with the same word for sweetness (matoq) used for the wicked savoring sin in 20:12. What was sweet to him in life, the worm finds sweet in death. The od lo yizzakher ('he is not remembered anymore') — total social erasure. The va-tishshaver ka-ets avlah ('and wickedness is broken like a tree') — injustice is snapped off like a dead branch.
- 21.** The ro'eh aqarah lo teled ('he feeds on / mistreats the barren woman who does not give birth') — the barren woman in ancient Israel was already socially vulnerable; the wicked man exploits her further. The ve-almanah lo yetiv ('and the widow he does not treat well, does no good to') — the two most vulnerable categories of women in Israelite society — barren and widowed — receive no mercy from the wicked. This echoes the specific charges in verses 3 and 9.
- 22.** The u-mashakh abbirim be-khocho ('and he draws/draws the mighty ones by his power') — the subject shifts to God, who uses his power to pull down the strong. The yaqum ve-lo ya'amin ba-chayyim ('he rises but does not trust in life') — even when the powerful person stands up, he has no confidence in his own survival. The mighty man's strength is no protection against God's sovereign timing. This verse may mark Job's turn toward acknowledging that God does eventually act against the powerful — but on God's schedule, not the schedule of the victims.
- 23.** The yitten lo la-vetach ('he gives him security, safety') ve-yisha'en ('and he leans on it, relies on it') — God permits the wicked to feel safe, to rest in their prosperity. But ve-eineihu al darkheihem ('and his eyes are upon their ways') — God watches. The security is temporary and observed. The wicked lean on what God gives, not knowing that God's eyes never leave them. The verse introduces a surveillance metaphor: God's patience is not indifference but watchfulness.
- 24.** The rommu me'at ('they are raised up a little while') ve-einennu ('and he is no more, he is gone') — the exaltation is brief and the vanishing is total. The ve-humkhu ka-kkol yiqqafetsun ('and they are brought low, like all they are gathered up') — death is the great equalizer; the mighty are collected like everyone else. The u-khe-ro'sh shibboleth yimmalu ('and like the head of a stalk of grain they are cut off') — the grain-harvest image: the wicked are mown down like ripe grain at harvest time. The head of grain stands tall and full, then the sickle comes.
- 25.** Job's closing challenge: ve-im lo efo ('and if not, then') mi yakhziveni ('who will make me a liar, who will prove me false?'). The ve-yasem le-al millati ('and make my word into nothing') — who can empty Job's argument of its force? The challenge is directed at the friends: if Job's description of unpunished evil and unexplained suffering is wrong, let someone refute it with evidence, not theology. The chapter ends not with resolution but with a gauntlet thrown down. No one in the dialogue will pick it up. Only God, in chapters 38-41, will answer — and even then, not by refuting Job's observations but by reframing the entire question.

25

Summary: *Bildad delivers his third and final speech — the shortest speech by any of the three friends, only six verses. He has run out of material. His argument reduces the entire retribution theology of the friends to a single, blunt assertion: God is so overwhelmingly sovereign and pure that no human being can be righteous before him. Dominion and dread belong to God. He makes peace in his high places. His armies are without number. His light shines everywhere. How then can a mortal be right before God? How can one born of woman be pure? Even the moon is not bright enough and the stars are not pure in his sight — how much less a human being, who is a maggot, a worm. That is all Bildad has to say. The speech simply stops.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The brevity is the message. In the first cycle, Bildad spoke 22 verses (chapter 8). In the second, 21 verses (chapter 18). Now he manages only 6. The friends' arguments are collapsing under their own weight. Bildad cannot muster a third full speech because Job's challenges have dismantled the framework piece by piece. What remains is a theological residue — God is big, humans are small, therefore shut up. The argument has real content (divine transcendence is a genuine theological category), but it has been stripped of all pastoral nuance. Bildad's cosmology is beautiful — the image of God making peace in his heights, his innumerable armies, his light that illuminates everything — but it functions here as a weapon to crush Job into silence rather than to invite wonder. The most telling detail is what is missing: Bildad offers no accusation, no specific charge, no call to repentance. He has abandoned the attempt to diagnose Job's sin and retreated to the one claim he can still make: God is too great for any human to question.*

Translation Friction: *Bildad's theology is not wrong in itself — the transcendence of God, the finitude of humanity, the relative impurity of all created things before the divine holiness — these are mainstream biblical themes (see Isaiah 6, Psalm 8, Psalm 144). The problem is what Bildad does with them. He deploys transcendence as a conversation-stopper: if no human can be righteous before God, then Job's protest is meaningless, and the question of justice in Job's particular case is dissolved into the general unworthiness of humanity. This is a theological dodge. Job is not asking whether humans in general are worthy of God's attention — he is asking why he, a specific righteous man, has been destroyed. Bildad's move from 'God is transcendent' to 'therefore your complaint is invalid' is a logical fallacy, and the book knows it. God's own speech in chapters 38-41 will affirm divine transcendence but will not use it to dismiss Job's suffering.*

Connections: *Bildad's assertion that even the moon and stars are impure before God connects to Eliphaz's earlier claim that God 'charges his angels with error' (4:18) and 'the heavens are not pure in his sight' (15:15). The 'maggot and worm' language (verse 6) echoes Psalm 22:6 ('I am a worm, not a man'), which is a psalm of lament — an ironic connection, since Bildad uses the image to silence lament while the psalmist uses it to fuel lament. Zophar has no third speech at all — his silence is even more telling than Bildad's brevity. The third cycle of speeches (chapters 22-27) is widely regarded as textually disordered, with scholars debating which portions belong to which speaker. Bildad's truncated speech is one piece of evidence for this disruption.*

1Then Bildad the Shuhite answered and said:

2Dominion and dread belong to him;
he makes peace in his heights.

3Can his armies be numbered?
On whom does his light not rise?

4How then can a mortal be righteous before God?
How can one born of woman be pure?

5Look — even the moon does not shine bright enough,
and the stars are not pure in his eyes.

6How much less a mortal — a maggot!
A human being — a worm!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bildad ha-Shuchi ('the Shuhite') speaks for the third and final time. This is the last speech by any of the three friends in the dialogue cycle. After this, only Elihu will speak before God himself answers from the storm.
2. The hamshal ('dominion') and fachad ('dread') paired together capture the twofold nature of divine rule: legitimate authority and overwhelming power. The oseh shalom ('making peace') in the heights has been read as a reference to God restraining cosmic forces — the heavenly beings, the stars, the armies of heaven. Some interpreters connect this to mythological combat traditions where God subdues primordial chaos. The phrase echoes Isaiah 57:19 where God 'creates the fruit of the lips: peace, peace.'
3. The gedudav ('his troops, his raiding bands, his armies') are innumerable — ha-yesh mispar ('is there a number?'). The orehhu ('his light') lo yaqum al mi ('does not arise upon whom?') — God's light reaches everyone and everything. The double rhetorical question establishes God's military omnipotence and optical omnipresence: his forces are infinite, his illumination is total. No one can fight him and no one can hide from him.
4. The mah yitsdaq enosh im El ('how can a mortal be righteous with God') is Bildad's central theological question. The verb tsadaq ('to be righteous, to be in the right') is a legal term — Bildad is asking how any human could win a case against God. The mah yizzeq yelud ishshab ('how can one born of woman be clean/pure') adds ritual purity to legal righteousness — born of woman implies born into the contamination of mortality itself. This echoes Eliphaz's question in 4:17 and 15:14, making it a shared axiom of the friends' theology.
5. Bildad builds an a fortiori argument (from greater to lesser): hen ad yareach ('behold, even the moon') ve-lo ya'ahil ('does not shine brightly, does not give sufficient light') — even the moon falls short before God. The kokhavim lo zakku be-einav ('the stars are not pure in his eyes') — the most luminous objects in the night sky are impure by God's standard. If celestial bodies fail the test of divine purity, the argument goes, how could a terrestrial creature hope to pass?

6. The rimmah ('maggot') and tole'ah ('worm') are creatures of decay — they appear on corpses, in rotting food, in refuse. By identifying humanity with these creatures, Bildad does not merely assert human smallness (as Psalm 8 does with its question 'what is man that you are mindful of him?') but human repulsiveness. The parallel with Psalm 22:6 ('I am a worm and not a man') is instructive: the psalmist uses worm-language to express suffering and cry out for help; Bildad uses it to shut down the conversation. Same image, opposite function. Isaiah 41:14 ('fear not, you worm Jacob') will reclaim the worm as an object of divine compassion — God does not despise the worm but redeems it.

26

Summary: *Job responds to Bildad's meager six verses with biting sarcasm and then delivers a cosmological poem that dwarfs anything the friends have said about God's power. He opens with mockery: What a help you are to the powerless! What great wisdom you have shared! Then Job launches into his own hymn to divine sovereignty — but where Bildad reduced this theme to a platitude, Job fills it with cosmic terror and wonder. God stretches the north over the void and hangs the earth on nothing. He wraps the waters in clouds that do not burst. He covers the face of the full moon with cloud. He has drawn a circle on the surface of the waters at the boundary between light and darkness. The pillars of heaven tremble and are stunned at his rebuke. By his power he stilled the sea; by his understanding he shattered Rahab. By his wind the heavens were cleared; his hand pierced the fleeing serpent. And then the devastating conclusion: these are but the fringes of his ways — a mere whisper of what we hear of him. Who can comprehend the thunder of his power?*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This poem is one of the greatest cosmological passages in the Hebrew Bible, rivaled only by God's own speech in chapters 38-41 and by Psalm 104. What makes it remarkable is its position: Job, the sufferer covered in sores sitting on an ash heap, outperforms all three friends in theological imagination. Bildad said God makes peace in his heights (25:2) and left it at that. Job takes the same theme and unfolds it across the entire created order — from Sheol beneath the waters (verse 5) to the pillars of heaven (verse 11), from the primordial combat with Rahab and the fleeing serpent (verses 12-13) to the boundary circle drawn between light and darkness (verse 10). And then Job does something Bildad never could: he acknowledges that even this magnificent catalog is incomplete. 'These are the fringes of his ways' (verse 14). Job knows more about God's power than Bildad does — and he also knows how much more there is to know. His theology is bigger, not because he has more answers but because he has a larger sense of the mystery.*

Translation Friction: *The attribution of this speech is debated. Some scholars assign verses 5-14 to Bildad (as a continuation of his truncated speech in chapter 25) or to Zophar (as his missing third speech). The argument is that the hymnic praise of God's power sounds more like the friends' theology than Job's. However, the text as received assigns the entire chapter to Job, and the sarcastic opening (verses 2-4) clearly comes from Job. The most natural reading is that Job is demonstrating he can do the friends' theology better than they can — and then transcend it. Job never denies God's power; he has always affirmed it (see 9:4-13, 12:13-25). What he denies is that divine power settles the question of divine justice.*

Connections: *The Rahab reference (verse 12) connects to Job 9:13, Isaiah 51:9, and Psalm 89:10 — Rahab is the primordial sea monster representing chaos, which God defeated at creation. The 'fleeing serpent' (nachash bariach, verse 13) appears in Isaiah 27:1 ('Leviathan the fleeing serpent'). God hanging the earth on nothing (verse 7) is a remarkable cosmological statement that differs from the more common ancient Near Eastern image of the earth resting on pillars or on the back of a great creature. The 'circle on the face of the waters' (verse 10) connects to Proverbs 8:27 where Wisdom was present when God 'drew a circle on the face of the deep.' The concluding whisper metaphor (verse 14) anticipates the 'still small voice' of 1 Kings 19:12 — God's accessible revelation is only a whisper of the full reality.*

¹Then Job answered and said:

²What a help you are to the powerless!

What a savior to the arm without strength!

³What counsel you have given the ignorant!

What abundant insight you have shared!

⁴Who are you even talking to?
 Whose breath inspired these words of yours?

⁵The shades tremble beneath the waters —
 the dead and all who dwell with them.

⁶Sheol is naked before him;
 Abaddon has no covering.

⁷He stretches the north over the void
 and hangs the earth on nothing.

⁸He wraps the waters in his clouds,
 and the cloud does not tear beneath their weight.

⁹He covers the face of the full moon,
 spreading his cloud across it.

¹⁰He has drawn a circle on the face of the waters
 at the boundary where light meets darkness.

¹¹The pillars of heaven tremble;
 they are stunned at his rebuke.

¹²By his power he stilled the sea;
 by his understanding he shattered Rahab.

¹³By his wind the skies were cleared;
 his hand pierced the fleeing serpent.

¹⁴These are but the fringes of his ways —
 a mere whisper of what we hear of him.
 The thunder of his power — who can comprehend it?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Job responds to Bildad's third speech. The brevity of Bildad's six verses invites the sarcasm that follows.
2. Pure sarcasm. The mah azarta le-lo koach ('how you have helped the one without power') and hosha'ta zero'a lo oz ('you have saved the arm without strength') drip with irony. Job is the powerless one, and Bildad's six verses of cosmic platitude have helped him not at all. The rhetorical questions expect the answer: you have helped no one.
3. The ya'atsta le-lo chokhmah ('you have counseled the one without wisdom') continues the sarcasm — Job mockingly pretends to be the ignorant pupil Bildad imagines. The tushiyah la-rov hoda'ta ('and sound wisdom you have made known in abundance') is devastating; Bildad's entire speech was six verses of reheated theology. The word tushiyah ('sound wisdom, effective counsel, practical insight') is used with heavy irony — there was nothing practical or insightful about Bildad's speech.
4. The et mi higgadta millin ('to whom have you declared words') is a taunt: who is your audience? Job implies that Bildad's speech was not addressed to anyone's actual situation. The nishmat mi yats'ah mimmekka ('and whose breath/spirit came forth from you') questions the source of Bildad's inspiration — the implied answer is: not God's spirit, because what you said was useless.
5. The poem begins with a descent to the underworld. The repha'im ('shades, the dead, the departed spirits') yecholalu ('tremble, writhe, are in anguish') mi-ttachat mayim ('from beneath the waters'). In ancient Israelite cosmology, the underworld (Sheol) lay beneath the cosmic waters. Even the dead, in the deepest conceivable place, tremble before God. The shokheneihem ('their inhabitants, those who dwell with them') broadens the scope to include everything in the realm of death.

6. The she'ol ('the grave, the underworld') is arom ('naked, exposed') negdo ('before him, in his sight'). The Abaddon ('destruction, the place of ruin') — a name for the deepest region of the underworld — ein kesut ('has no covering'). God sees through the earth, through the waters, through the floor of the ocean, into the realm of the dead itself. Nothing is hidden from his gaze — not even the domain of death. The pairing of She'ol and Abaddon recurs in Proverbs 15:11 and 27:20.
7. The phrase al beli mah ('upon nothing') is philosophically remarkable. Where most ancient cosmologies required a physical substrate — pillars, foundations, a cosmic ocean — Job asserts that the earth hangs on pure emptiness. The tsafon ('north') has mythological resonance: in Canaanite religion, Mount Zaphon was the dwelling of Baal. By saying God stretches it over the void, Job may be asserting God's sovereignty over what other religions considered sacred geography. The tohu recalls the pre-creation chaos of Genesis 1:2.
8. The tsorer mayim be-avav ('he binds up, wraps, ties the waters in his thick clouds') — God packages vast quantities of water in vapor and the fabric holds. The ve-lo nivqa anan tachtam ('and the cloud is not torn/split beneath them') — the cloud should rupture under the tonnage of water it carries, but it does not. The miracle is not the rain but the restraint: the water stays suspended until God releases it. The verb tsarar ('to bind, wrap, tie up') is used for bundling goods — God bundles the ocean in mist.
9. A textually difficult verse. The me'achaz penai kisseh ('he grasps/covers the face of the throne') — kisseh may be read as kisse' ('throne') or as keseh ('full moon,' from the root kasah, 'to cover'). Many scholars read this as 'full moon' based on Psalm 81:3 where keseh refers to the full moon. If 'throne,' God conceals his heavenly throne behind clouds; if 'full moon,' God veils even the brightest night luminary. The parshez alav anano ('he spreads his cloud over it') — either way, God controls what is visible and what is hidden.
10. The choq chag al penai mayim ('a decree/boundary — a circle — on the face of the waters') — the choq is both a 'decree' and a 'boundary line,' and chag means 'circle, circumference.' God inscribed a circular boundary on the ocean's surface. The ad takhlith or im choshekh ('until the limit of light with darkness') — this circle marks the horizon where light and darkness meet, the visible edge of the world where sky touches sea. The image connects to Proverbs 8:27 where Wisdom was present when God 'inscribed a circle on the face of the deep.'
11. The ammudei shamayim ('the pillars of heaven') yerofahu ('shake, tremble, sway') — the cosmic supports that hold up the sky are not stable in themselves but tremble before God. The yitmahu ('they are astonished, stunned, dazed') mi-gga'arato ('at his rebuke, at his roar'). A mere rebuke from God makes the architecture of the cosmos shake. The pillars are mythological — the mountains or structures imagined as supporting the vault of the sky — but the theological point is clear: even the universe's foundations are subject to God's voice.
12. The be-khocho raga ha-yam ('by his power he stilled/stirred up the sea') — the verb raga can mean both 'to stir up' and 'to still,' creating deliberate ambiguity. God both agitates and calms the cosmic ocean. The u-vi-tevunato machats Rahav ('and by his understanding he shattered Rahab') — Rahab is the primordial sea monster, the embodiment of chaos (see Job 9:13, Isaiah 51:9, Psalm 89:10). God does not defeat Rahab by brute force alone but by tevunah ('understanding, discernment') — creation is an act of intelligence, not merely power.
13. The be-rucho shamayim shifrah ('by his wind/spirit the heavens were made fair/clear') — ruach means both 'wind' and 'spirit,' so this is both meteorological (the wind clears the sky after a storm) and theological (God's spirit adorns the heavens with beauty). The cholelah yado nachash bariach ('his hand pierced/writhed the fleeing serpent') — the verb chalal can mean 'to pierce, wound' or 'to writhe in pain,' and nachash bariach is 'the fleeing serpent' or 'the twisting serpent.' This connects to Isaiah 27:1 where God punishes 'Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan the twisting serpent.' The defeat of the primordial serpent is the final act of creation's combat.
14. The qetsot ('edges, extremities, fringes') from the root qatseh ('end, edge, border') — Job's entire cosmic catalog is the margin, not the center. The shemets ('whisper') occurs only here and in Job 4:12 (where Eliphaz heard a 'whisper' in his night vision). The contrast between shemets ('whisper') and ra'am ('thunder') is the organizing metaphor: human perception of God is a faint sound; the reality is deafening. The verb hitbonen ('to understand, to discern, to contemplate') is the reflexive form of binah ('understanding') — who can turn the full thunder of God's power into comprehension?

27

Summary: Job continues speaking — the text says he 'took up his discourse again,' an unusual formula that signals a shift in mode. Job swears a solemn oath by the living God (the very God he accuses of denying him justice) that he will never concede the friends' argument. As long as breath is in him, his lips will not speak falsehood and his tongue will not utter deceit. He will not say the friends are right. Until he dies he will not abandon his integrity. His righteousness he grasps and will not release; his heart does not reproach him for any of his days. Then Job turns to describe the fate of the wicked — language that sounds strikingly like the friends' own speeches. The enemy who rises against Job should be treated as the wicked. What is the hope of the godless when God takes his life? Will God hear his cry in distress? The wicked man's children are destined for the sword; his offspring will not have enough bread. Plague buries his survivors; his widows do not weep. Though he heaps up silver like dust and piles garments like clay, the righteous will wear what he prepared and the innocent will divide his silver. His house is fragile as a moth's cocoon, like a watchman's temporary shelter. He goes to bed rich and wakes to nothing. Terrors overtake him like a flood; a storm wind snatches him away in the night. The east wind carries him off without pity.

He flees from its power in headlong flight. It claps its hands at him and hisses him out of his place.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The oath in verses 2-6 is one of the most psychologically complex moments in the book. Job swears by the life of God — chai El — the standard Israelite oath formula. But he immediately qualifies: this is the God who has denied him justice, the Almighty who has made his soul bitter. Job swears by a God he is suing. He invokes as his witness the defendant in his own case. This is not contradiction but the deepest kind of faith: Job has no other God to swear by. Even in his accusation, God is the only ground of truth. The integrity declaration (verses 3-6) is Job's most concentrated assertion of innocence. He stakes everything on it: his breath, his lips, his tongue, his heart. The word tummah ('integrity') in verse 5 is the same word God used to describe Job in the prologue (2:3 — 'he still holds fast to his integrity'). Job does not know that God said this about him, but he is living it out.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 13-23 present a major interpretive problem. The description of the wicked man's fate sounds exactly like what the friends have been arguing throughout the dialogue — the very theology Job has been dismantling. Several solutions have been proposed: (1) Job is quoting the friends' position in order to refute it; (2) the passage originally belonged to Zophar's missing third speech and was displaced in transmission; (3) Job is appropriating the friends' language but redirecting it — he agrees that the wicked suffer but denies that he is wicked; (4) Job is describing what should happen to anyone who falsely accuses him (verse 7: 'let my enemy be as the wicked'). The most satisfying reading may be option 3 or 4: Job never denied that the wicked face judgment. His complaint was never that God does not punish the wicked but that God has treated him as if he were wicked when he is not.*

Connections: *The oath formula 'as God lives' (chai El) is used throughout the Hebrew Bible (Judges 8:19, 1 Samuel 14:39, 2 Samuel 4:9) and carries the full weight of divine witness — to swear falsely by God's life is to invite divine destruction. Job's integrity declaration connects to Psalm 26:1 ('vindicate me, O LORD, for I have walked in my integrity'). The wind carrying away the wicked (verses 20-21) echoes Psalm 1:4 ('the wicked are like chaff that the wind drives away'). The image of the storm clapping its hands (verse 23) is a personification that recurs in Isaiah 55:12 where the trees clap their hands — but here it is hostile, mocking, a cosmic jeer.*

¹And Job again took up his discourse and said:

²As God lives — who has denied me justice —
and the Almighty — who has made my soul bitter —

³for as long as my breath is in me
and the spirit of God is in my nostrils —

⁴my lips will never speak falsehood,
and my tongue will never utter deceit.

⁵Far be it from me to say you are right!
Until I die I will not surrender my integrity.

⁶My righteousness I grip and will not release.
My heart does not reproach me for any of my days.

⁷Let my enemy be treated as the wicked,
and the one who rises against me as the unrighteous.

⁸For what hope does the godless have when he is cut off,
when God takes away his life?

⁹Will God hear his cry
when distress comes upon him?

- ¹⁰Does he delight in the Almighty?
Does he call on God at all times?
- ¹¹I will teach you about the hand of God;
what the Almighty does, I will not hide.
- ¹²You have all seen this yourselves —
so why do you keep spouting emptiness?
- ¹³This is the portion God assigns to the wicked,
the inheritance tyrants receive from the Almighty:
- ¹⁴If his children multiply, the sword awaits them;
his offspring will not have enough bread.
- ¹⁵Those who survive him are buried by plague;
his widows do not weep.
- ¹⁶Though he heaps up silver like dust
and piles garments high as clay —
- ¹⁷He prepares it — but the righteous will wear it;
the innocent will divide his silver.
- ¹⁸He builds his house like a moth's cocoon,
like a shelter a watchman throws together.
- ¹⁹He goes to bed rich but will not do so again;
he opens his eyes — and everything is gone.
- ²⁰Terrors overtake him like a flood;
a storm wind steals him away in the night.
- ²¹The east wind lifts him up and he is gone;
it sweeps him from his place.
- ²²It hurls itself at him without pity;
he flees headlong from its power.
- ²³It claps its hands at him
and hisses him out of his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formula *va-yosef Iyyov se'et meshalo* ('and Job again lifted up his discourse/parable') is different from the usual 'answered and said.' The *mashal* ('discourse, proverb, parable, poem') signals a shift to a more formal, deliberate mode of speech. Job is not merely responding to Bildad — he is making a solemn declaration.
2. The *chai El* ('as God lives') is the most solemn oath formula in Israelite speech. But Job immediately subverts the convention: this living God *hesir mishpati* ('has removed/denied my justice') and *Shaddai hemar nafshi* ('has made my soul bitter'). The juxtaposition is breathtaking — Job swears by the very God he accuses. He has no other deity to swear by, so he invokes the one who is both his judge and his adversary. The verb *hemar* ('made bitter') from the root *marar* echoes Naomi's words in Ruth 1:20: 'the Almighty has dealt bitterly with me.'
3. The *kol od nishmati bi* ('all while my breath is in me') establishes the duration of the oath: it lasts as long as Job lives. The *ruach Eloah be-appi* ('and the spirit/breath of God is in my nostrils') echoes Genesis 2:7 where God breathed the breath of life into Adam's nostrils. The very breath that sustains

Job's life comes from the God he is accusing — another layer of the paradox. Job will maintain his oath for as long as God keeps him alive.

4. The im tedabbernah sefatai avlah ('if my lips speak wrongfulness/injustice') — the im ('if') in an oath context functions as a strong negative: 'my lips will certainly not speak injustice.' The uleshoni im yehgeh remiyyah ('and my tongue — if it mutters deceit') — same construction. Job pledges total truthfulness. The avlah ('wrongfulness, injustice, falsehood') is the same word used for perverted justice — Job would be committing the same crime he accuses God of if he were to lie.
5. The chalilah li ('far be it from me, may it be profanity for me') im atsdik etkhem ('if I declare you righteous, if I vindicate you') — Job refuses to validate the friends' theology. To do so would be to lie about his own experience. The ad egva ('until I expire, until I die') lo asir tummati mimmenni ('I will not remove my integrity from me'). The tummah ('integrity, completeness, wholeness') is the same word God used in 2:3: 'he still holds fast his tummah.' Job grasps his integrity as a man grasps a weapon — he will not let go.
6. The be-tsidqati hechezaqti ('in my righteousness I have held fast') ve-lo arpeha ('and I will not let it go, I will not relax my grip') — the verb chazaq ('to be strong, to grip, to seize') and rapah ('to let go, to relax') form a pair: Job's fist is clenched around his righteousness and will not open. The lo yecheraf levavi mi-yyamai ('my heart does not reproach me from my days') — Job's conscience is clear. Not one of his days accuses him. This is the final, comprehensive claim of innocence.
7. A pivot verse. The yehi khe-rasha oyevi ('let my enemy be as the wicked') — Job imprecates his opponents. If anyone falsely accuses him, let that person receive the fate of the wicked. The u-mitqomemi khe-avval ('and the one who rises against me as the unjust') — the mitqomem ('the one who rises up against') could refer to the friends, to unnamed opponents, or to anyone who persecutes the innocent. This verse frames the following description of the wicked man's fate (verses 8-23) as a curse on those who have wronged Job.
8. The mah tiqvah chanev ('what is the hope of the godless/hypocrite') ki yivtsa ('when he cuts off, when he gains by violence') — the chanev is someone who is profane, polluted, or hypocritical. The ki yeshel Eloah nafsho ('when God draws out his soul') — God extracts the life of the godless. The verb shalah ('to draw out, pull out') suggests God reaching in and pulling the soul from the body.
9. The ha-tsa'qato yishma El ('will God hear his cry') — the tsa'qah is the cry of distress, the same word used for Israel's cry in Egypt (Exodus 3:7). But the godless man's cry goes unheard because ki tavo alav tsarah ('when trouble comes upon him') he has no relationship with God to sustain the appeal. The irony for Job is that he claims God does not hear his cry either — but Job believes he has the right to be heard.
10. The im al Shaddai yit'annag ('does he take delight in the Almighty') — the verb anag ('to delight, to take pleasure') describes genuine relational enjoyment, not mere ritual. The yiqra Eloah be-khol et ('does he call upon God at every time') — consistent prayer, not crisis-only religion. Job implies that the godless have no ongoing relationship with God — they do not delight in him or pray to him — so their crisis prayers fall on deaf ears.
11. Job reverses the pedagogical dynamic: oreh etkhem ('I will teach you, I will instruct you') be-yad El ('by/about the hand of God'). Throughout the dialogue the friends have been lecturing Job; now Job becomes the teacher. The asher im Shaddai lo akhached ('what is with the Almighty I will not conceal') — Job claims direct knowledge of God's ways, not secondhand tradition. He will speak openly about divine action.
12. The hen attem kullekhem chazitem ('behold, all of you — you have seen this') — the friends have observed the same reality Job describes but have drawn the wrong conclusions. The ve-lammah zeh hevel tehbali ('and why this — vanity you become vain, emptiness you spout emptily') — the hevel ('vapor, emptiness, futility') echoes Ecclesiastes. The friends' theology is not just wrong but empty — vapor pretending to be substance. The verb haval in the hiphil means 'to become empty, to act vainly.'
13. This verse nearly echoes Zophar's conclusion in 20:29 ('this is the portion of a wicked man from God'). Job uses the same formula: zeh cheleq adam rasha im El ('this is the portion of a wicked person with God'). The nachalat aritsim ('the inheritance of tyrants/oppressors') mi-Shaddai yiqqachu ('from the Almighty they receive'). Whether Job is quoting the friends, repurposing their language, or offering his own version of retribution theology, the vocabulary is deliberately borrowed.
14. The im yirbu banav lemo charev ('if his sons multiply, it is for the sword') — the more children, the more targets. Abundance is a setup for slaughter. The ve-tse'etsa'av lo yisbe'u lachem ('and his descendants will not be satisfied with bread') — starvation follows the sword. The double curse of violent death and hunger falls on the next generation. Job describes inherited consequences — the wicked man's sin punishes his lineage.
15. The seridav ('his survivors') ba-mavet yiqqaveru ('by death/plague they are buried') — the mavet here likely means pestilence or plague rather than 'death' in the abstract sense. Those who escape the sword and famine die of disease. The ve-almenotav lo tivkeinah ('and his widows do not weep') — the widows' refusal to mourn is the ultimate verdict on the dead man. He was so hated that his own wives feel no grief. The plural 'widows' may suggest polygamy or serial marriages.
16. The im yitsbor ke-afar kasef ('if he heaps up like dust silver') — silver accumulated in the quantities of dust, meaning limitless wealth. The ve-kha-chomer yakhin malbush ('and like clay he prepares garments') — fine clothing stacked in the volume of clay. Both images convey absurd abundance: wealth as common as dirt, wardrobes as plentiful as mud. The irony is that these similes use the cheapest substances (dust, clay) to describe the most expensive goods.
17. The reversal: yakhin ('he prepares') ve-tsaddiq yilbash ('but the righteous will wear it'). The wicked man's wardrobe becomes the righteous man's clothing. The ve-khesef naqi yachaloq ('and silver the innocent will divide') — the wicked man's treasury is redistributed to the innocent. This is retribution theology in its most satisfying form: stolen wealth returns to its rightful owners. The tsaddiq ('righteous') and naqi ('innocent, clean') are precisely the qualities Job claims for himself.

- 18.** The banah kha-ash beito ('he builds like a moth his house') — the moth's cocoon is fragile, temporary, easily torn. The ukhe-sukkah asah notser ('and like a booth a watchman makes') — the sukkah is a temporary harvest shelter, a lean-to of branches built for a few weeks and then abandoned. Both images stress impermanence: the wicked man's grand construction is as flimsy as insect silk and as temporary as a seasonal hut.
- 19.** The ashir yishkav ('the rich man lies down') ve-lo ye'asef ('and he is not gathered/he does so no more') — the verb asaf can mean 'to gather, to be taken in, to be added to.' The ambiguity may suggest 'he will not be gathered to his fathers' (will have no proper burial) or 'he will not do so again' (this is his last night of wealth). The einav paqach ve-einenu ('he opens his eyes and he is not') — the vanishing act is complete. He wakes to find himself erased.
- 20.** The tassigehu kha-mmayim ballahot ('terrors overtake him like waters') — the ballahot ('terrors, sudden destruction') arrive with the force and speed of a flash flood. The lillah genavatto sufah ('in the night a storm steals him') — the sufah ('storm wind, whirlwind') is a thief that operates under cover of darkness. The wicked man's destruction is both natural disaster and burglary: overwhelming and stealthy at once.
- 21.** The yissa'ehu qadim ('the east wind carries him away') ve-yelakh ('and he goes') — the qadim ('east wind') is the hot, destructive desert wind that blows from the Arabian wilderness. It withers crops and brings misery (Hosea 13:15, Ezekiel 17:10). The vi-se'arehu mi-mmeqomo ('and it storms him from his place') — the verb sa'ar ('to storm, to sweep away') turns the wind into a violent relocation. The wicked man is torn from his place like a tent ripped from its stakes.
- 22.** The ve-yashlekh alav ('and it hurls/casts upon him') ve-lo yachmol ('and it does not spare, does not pity') — the wind (or God, as the implied subject) shows no mercy. The mi-yyado baroach yivrach ('from his hand, fleeing he flees') — the doubled verb form (baroach yivrach) emphasizes the desperation of the flight. He runs and runs but cannot escape the pursuing wind.
- 23.** The yisfoq aleimo kappeimo ('it claps its hands over him') — the subject may be the wind, or people, or the cosmos itself. The clapping of hands is a gesture of mockery and derision (Lamentations 2:15, Nahum 3:19). The ve-yishroq alav mi-mmeqomo ('and it hisses/whistles at him from his place') — the hissing is a sound of contempt and horror. The wicked man exits the stage to the sound of jeering — the universe itself mocks him. This is the most visceral image of cosmic contempt in the dialogue, and it brings Job's discourse on the fate of the wicked to a harsh and definitive close.

28

Summary: The Wisdom Poem — one of the supreme achievements of Hebrew poetry and among the great philosophical poems of world literature. The chapter stands apart from the dialogue, a self-contained meditation on a single question: Where can wisdom be found? The poem opens with an extended description of human mining — the astonishing technical skill with which humans extract silver, gold, iron, and copper from the earth. Miners tunnel into mountains, hang suspended on ropes in shafts no bird of prey has seen, cut channels through rock, and overturn mountains at their roots. Humanity can find anything hidden in the earth. But wisdom? Wisdom cannot be found in the land of the living. The deep says, 'It is not in me.' The sea says, 'It is not with me.' Wisdom cannot be purchased with gold or silver, with onyx or sapphire, with coral or crystal. It cannot be valued against the gold of Ophir. Its price exceeds rubies. Where then does wisdom come from? Where is the place of understanding? It is hidden from the eyes of every living thing, concealed from the birds of the air. Abaddon and Death say, 'We have heard a rumor of it with our ears.' God alone understands the way to it. God alone knows its place. For he looks to the ends of the earth and sees everything under the heavens. When he gave weight to the wind and measured the waters, when he made a decree for the rain and a path for the thunderbolt — then he saw wisdom and declared it, established it and searched it out. And to humanity he said: The fear of the Lord — that is wisdom. To turn from evil — that is understanding.

What Makes This Remarkable: This is one of the great poems of the Hebrew Bible, standing alongside the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15), the Song of Deborah (Judges 5), David's Lament (2 Samuel 1), and Psalm 104 as a monument of ancient literary art. Its structure is architectural: the mining section (verses 1-11) establishes human technical mastery; the refrain 'Where can wisdom be found?' (verses 12, 20) punctuates the transitions; the gem catalog (verses 15-19) demonstrates that wealth cannot purchase what matters most; the testimony of the deep, the sea, Abaddon, and Death (verses 14, 22) shows that wisdom is not located in any realm of existence; and the climactic revelation (verses 23-28) locates wisdom exclusively in God, who perceived it at the moment of creation. The final verse delivers the poem's answer with devastating simplicity: yirat Adonai — the fear of the Lord — that is chokmah (wisdom), and turning from evil is binah (understanding). After twenty-seven chapters of theological argument, the poem suggests that wisdom is not a debating skill but a posture of reverence and moral practice. None of the speakers in the dialogue — not the friends, not Job — have fully embodied this definition.

Translation Friction: *The attribution of chapter 28 is one of the most debated questions in Job scholarship. The poem does not fit naturally as Job's speech: it is calm, meditative, and resolved where Job has been anguished and accusatory. It does not fit as any friend's speech either. Some scholars treat it as an independent wisdom poem inserted by a later editor; others see it as the narrator's own voice, a theological interlude between the dialogue (chapters 3-27) and Job's final self-defense (chapters 29-31). Still others argue that Job himself speaks it as a moment of contemplative clarity between the heat of debate and his final summation. Wherever it came from, its placement is purposeful: after the dialogue has exhausted itself, after the friends have fallen silent and Job has maintained his integrity, the poem steps back and asks the question none of the speakers thought to ask — not 'Who is right?' but 'Where is wisdom?' The answer — that wisdom belongs to God alone and is accessible to humans only through reverent awe and moral action — reframes the entire debate. The friends claimed to possess wisdom; Job claimed the right to challenge God's wisdom; the poem gently suggests that wisdom is not something any human possesses but something God alone comprehends.*

Connections: *The Wisdom Poem is the closest parallel in Job to Proverbs 8, where personified Wisdom speaks of being present at creation: 'When he established the heavens, I was there; when he drew a circle on the face of the deep... I was beside him like a master craftsman' (Proverbs 8:27-30). Both texts locate wisdom at the moment of creation, but Job 28 emphasizes wisdom's hiddenness while Proverbs 8 emphasizes its availability. The mining imagery (verses 1-11) has no parallel elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible and provides invaluable evidence of ancient mining technology. The concluding formula 'the fear of the Lord is wisdom' (verse 28) connects to Proverbs 1:7 ('the fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge'), Proverbs 9:10 ('the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom'), Psalm 111:10 ('the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom'), and Ecclesiastes 12:13 ('fear God and keep his commandments'). The poem anticipates God's speech in chapters 38-41, which will demonstrate precisely what verse 24 claims: God sees to the ends of the earth and knows everything under heaven.*

¹There is a mine for silver
and a place where gold is refined.

²Iron is taken from the earth;
copper is smelted from ore.

³He sets an end to darkness
and searches to the farthest limit —
the stone of deep gloom and death-shadow.

⁴He breaks open a shaft far from where people live,
forgotten by the foot of travelers.
They hang suspended, swaying far from the world above.

⁵The earth — bread comes from its surface,
but beneath it is overturned as by fire.

⁶Its stones hold sapphire,
and its dust contains gold.

⁷There is a path no bird of prey has known,
no falcon's eye has glimpsed it.

⁸The proud beasts have not trodden it;
no lion has passed along it.

⁹He puts his hand to the flint;
he overturns mountains at their roots.

¹⁰He cuts channels through the rock;
his eye spots every precious thing.

¹¹He dams up the sources of rivers;
what is hidden he brings to light.

¹²But wisdom — where can it be found?
And where is the place of understanding?

¹³No mortal knows its value,
and it is not found in the land of the living.

¹⁴The deep says, 'It is not in me.'
The sea says, 'It is not with me.'

¹⁵It cannot be bought with fine gold;
silver cannot be weighed out as its price.

¹⁶It cannot be valued against the gold of Ophir,
or with precious onyx, or sapphire.

¹⁷Gold and glass cannot match it;
it cannot be exchanged for vessels of fine gold.

¹⁸Coral and crystal need not be mentioned;
the price of wisdom exceeds rubies.

¹⁹The topaz of Cush cannot compare to it;
it cannot be valued with pure gold.

²⁰But wisdom — where does it come from?
And where is the place of understanding?

²¹It is hidden from the eyes of every living thing,
concealed from the birds of the air.

²²Abaddon and Death say,
'With our ears we have heard a rumor of it.'

²³God understands the way to it;
he alone knows its place.

²⁴For he looks to the ends of the earth
and sees everything under the heavens.

²⁵When he gave the wind its weight
and measured out the waters by volume —

²⁶when he set a decree for the rain
and a path for the thunderbolt —

²⁷then he saw wisdom and declared it;
he established it and searched it through.

²⁸And to humanity he said:
'The fear of the Lord — that is wisdom.
To turn from evil — that is understanding.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The poem opens not with a theological claim but with a technological observation. The *ki yesh la-kkesef motsa* ('surely there is for silver a source/outlet') — the *motsa* ('source, place of going out') refers to the mine shaft where silver ore is extracted. The *u-maqom la-zzahav yazoqqu* ('and a place for gold they refine') — the verb *zaqaq* ('to refine, to purify, to strain') describes the smelting process that separates pure gold from ore. The poem begins by admiring human ingenuity: we know where to find precious metals and how to extract them.
2. The *barzel me-afar yuqqach* ('iron from dust/earth is taken') — iron ore extracted from the ground. The *ve-even yatsiq nechusah* ('and stone is poured out as copper') — the *even* ('stone, rock') is the raw ore, and *yatsiq* ('is poured, is cast') describes the smelting process where rock is heated until molten copper flows out. The four metals — silver, gold, iron, copper — represent the full range of metallurgical knowledge in the ancient world.
3. The miner *qets sam la-choshekh* ('sets an end to darkness') — he brings a lamp into the mine shaft and pushes back the underground darkness. The *u-le-khol takhlith hu choqer* ('and to every limit he searches') — the miner explores to the uttermost boundary. The *even ofel ve-tsalmavet* ('the stone of deep darkness and death-shadow') — the deepest rock, wrapped in the darkness associated with death itself, is not beyond human reach. The *tsalmavet* ('shadow of death, deep darkness') is the same word used for the darkest valley in Psalm 23:4.
4. One of the most textually difficult verses in the chapter. The *parats nachal me-im gar* ('he breaks open a shaft/channel away from the sojourner') — the miner opens a vertical shaft in remote, uninhabited terrain. The *ha-nnishkachim minni ragel* ('the forgotten ones from foot') — these mine shafts are so remote that no foot passes near them. The *dallu me-enosh na'u* ('they dangle away from people, they sway') — the miners are suspended on ropes in the shaft, swaying in mid-air, cut off from the human world above. The image is both technical and haunting: humans dangling in darkness in the bowels of the earth.
5. A contrast between surface and depth. The *erets mimmenah yetse lachem* ('earth, from it comes bread/food') — the surface yields grain for human sustenance. The *ve-tachteiah nehpkah kemo esh* ('and its underside is turned over like fire') — beneath the cultivated surface, the miners are blasting and excavating, transforming the rock by fire (smelting) or fire-setting (an ancient mining technique where rock faces were heated and then rapidly cooled with water to crack them). The earth has two faces: provider above, furnace below.
6. The *meqom sappir avaneih* ('the place of sapphire are its stones') — the rocks underground contain sappir, which may refer to sapphire or more likely lapis lazuli, the blue stone highly valued in the ancient Near East. The *ve-afrot zahav lo* ('and dust of gold belongs to it') — even the dirt of the mine contains gold particles. The earth's hidden interior is treasure — the miner knows this and exploits it. The question the poem will pose is: where is the mine for wisdom?
7. The *nativ lo yeda'o ayit* ('a path not known by the bird of prey') — the mine shaft descends into places that even the sharpest-eyed creatures have never seen. The *ve-lo shezafattu ein ayyah* ('and the eye of the falcon has not caught sight of it') — the *ayyah* (hawk or falcon) was proverbially sharp-sighted. The poet marvels: human miners go where even the keenest predator cannot follow. Human technical ability surpasses nature's own instruments of perception.
8. The *lo hidrikuhu benei shachats* ('the sons of pride have not trodden it') — *benei shachats* ('sons of pride/fierceness') likely refers to proud, fierce animals, possibly lions or other apex predators. The *lo adah alav shachal* ('the lion has not walked upon it') — the *shachal* is a mature lion. The mine shaft is a place where neither the most keen-sighted bird above nor the most powerful beast on the ground has ventured. Only the human miner reaches it.
9. The *ba-challamish shalach yado* ('against the flint he sends his hand') — the *challamish* ('flint, hardest rock') yields to human labor. The *hafakh mi-sshoresh harim* ('he overturns from the root mountains') — the miner digs so deep and disrupts so much stone that entire mountains are undermined and toppled. The image is of humanity reshaping the landscape through brute persistence — moving mountains not by faith but by pick and shovel.
10. The *ba-tsurat ye'orim biqqa* ('in the rocks channels he has cut') — the miner carves waterways through solid stone, likely for drainage or hydraulic mining. The *ve-khol yeqar ra'atah eino* ('and every precious thing his eye has seen') — the miner's trained eye identifies every vein of ore, every glint of gem. Human perception, combined with human labor, can find anything that exists in the physical world. The poem is building to its turn: but can this skill find wisdom?
11. The *mi-bbekhi neharot chibbesh* ('from the weeping/seeping of rivers he binds up') — the miner stops underground water from flooding the mine shafts. The *bekhi* ('weeping') beautifully describes the seeping of water through rock. The *ve-ta'alumah yotsi or* ('and the hidden thing he brings out to light') — the *ta'alumah* ('hidden thing, secret') is dragged from darkness into daylight. This is the climax of the mining section and the setup for the poem's great question: humanity can bring anything hidden to light — except wisdom.

12. This is the poem's refrain, repeated at verse 20. The *chokmah* ('wisdom') is the ordering intelligence behind creation — the same wisdom celebrated in Proverbs 8:22-31 as present with God before the world was made. The *binah* ('understanding, discernment') is the capacity to perceive and apply wisdom. Together they represent what the mining metaphor has been building toward: there is something more precious than any gem, more hidden than any ore, and no human technology can extract it.
13. The *lo yada enosh erkhah* ('a mortal does not know its worth/arrangement') — the *erekh* ('value, arrangement, order') of wisdom is beyond human assessment. We cannot even appraise it, let alone acquire it. The *ve-lo timmatse be-erets ha-chayyim* ('and it is not found in the land of the living') — the *erets ha-chayyim* ('land of the living') is the inhabited world, the surface of the earth where humans dwell. Wisdom is not located in human territory. The miner who can find anything in the earth cannot find this.
14. The *tehom amar lo vi hi* ('the deep says: not in me is it') — the *tehom* is the primordial deep, the cosmic abyss beneath the earth (Genesis 1:2, 7:11). Even the deep — which contains treasures no miner has reached — does not contain wisdom. The *ve-yam amar ein immadi* ('and the sea says: it is not with me') — the sea, the other great domain of hidden things, also disclaims possession. The personification gives these cosmic realms voices, and they use those voices to confess ignorance. If the deep and the sea do not have wisdom, it is nowhere in the physical world.
15. The catalog of precious materials begins. The *lo yuttan segor tachteiha* ('it cannot be given — refined gold — in exchange for it') — *segor* is a rare term for the purest, most refined gold. The *ve-lo yishshaqel kesef mechirah* ('and silver cannot be weighed as its price') — the verb *shaqal* ('to weigh') is the standard commercial term; silver was weighed on scales for transactions. Wisdom is not for sale at any price. The commerce metaphor inverts the mining metaphor: you can dig up gold, but you cannot spend gold to acquire wisdom.
16. The *lo tesulleh be-khetem Ofir* ('it cannot be weighed/valued with the gold of Ophir') — Ophir was the legendary source of the finest gold, associated with Solomon's maritime trade (1 Kings 9:28, 10:11). The *be-shoham yaqar* ('with precious onyx') and *sappir* ('sapphire/lapis lazuli') add gemstones to the failed currency. The poem is building a list of the most expensive materials in the ancient world and declaring each one insufficient. Wisdom outprices them all.
17. The *lo ya'arkenah zahav u-zekhikhit* ('gold and glass cannot be arranged/compared to it') — the *zekhikhit* ('glass, crystal') was extremely rare and valuable in the ancient Near East, more precious than most people today realize. The *u-temuratah keli paz* ('and its exchange is not vessels of refined gold') — *paz* is gold of the highest purity, and even vessels made from it cannot serve as currency for wisdom. The list keeps escalating, and wisdom keeps exceeding every comparison.
18. The *ra'mot* ('coral' or 'high things') and *gavish* ('crystal, rock crystal, or alabaster') *lo yizzakher* ('are not even worth mentioning') — they are too cheap to enter the discussion. The *u-meshekh chokmah mi-ppeninim* ('and the acquisition of wisdom is beyond pearls/rubies/corals') — the *ppeninim* are mentioned in Proverbs 3:15 and 31:10 as the standard of supreme value. Wisdom exceeds even this standard. The catalog is now complete: gold, silver, onyx, sapphire, glass, fine gold, coral, crystal, rubies — none of them suffice.
19. The final gem: *lo ya'arkenah pitdat Kush* ('the topaz of Cush/Ethiopia cannot be arranged alongside it'). The *pitdah* ('topaz' or 'chrysolite') from Kush (the region south of Egypt, modern Sudan/Ethiopia) was considered among the most exotic and valuable gems in the ancient world. The *be-khetem tahor lo tesulleh* ('with pure gold it cannot be valued') — the poem returns to gold one last time, now qualified as *tahor* ('pure, clean, refined to perfection'). Even the purest gold on earth cannot serve as a price tag for wisdom.
20. The refrain's slight variation from verse 12 (*tavo* for *timmatse*) may suggest a shift from 'can humans find it?' to 'does it come to anyone at all?' The structural placement after the gem catalog means the reader has now tried two approaches — mining (technical skill) and commerce (wealth) — and both have failed. The question is genuinely open: is wisdom accessible at all?
21. The *ve-ne'elma me-einei khol chai* ('and it is hidden from the eyes of every living thing') — *ne'elma* ('is hidden, concealed') from the root *alam* ('to hide, to be concealed'). Every living creature — human, animal, bird — lacks the capacity to perceive wisdom. The *u-me-of ha-shamayim nistarah* ('and from the birds of the heavens it is concealed') — the birds that soar highest and see farthest (recalled from verse 7) still cannot spot wisdom from their vantage point. No perspective — not the miner's depth, not the bird's height — reveals it.
22. The search reaches the underworld. *Abaddon va-mavet amru* ('Abaddon and Death say') — personified Destruction and Death are questioned about wisdom's location. Their answer: *be-oznenu shama'nu shim'ah* ('with our ears we have heard its report/rumor'). They do not possess wisdom and have not seen it — they have only heard a distant rumor. Even the realm of the dead, the final frontier, has only secondhand knowledge. The *shim'ah* ('report, rumor, something heard') suggests that wisdom's existence is known everywhere but its location is known nowhere — except to God.
23. The answer begins. *Elohim hevin darkhah* ('God understands its way/path') — the verb *hevin* ('understands, discerns') from the root *bin* (the same root as *binah*, 'understanding'). God possesses the very faculty the poem has been asking about. The *ve-hu yada et meqomah* ('and he knows its place') — the *meqom* ('place') that the poem has been searching for since verse 12 is known to God. The emphatic *hu* ('he, he alone') establishes exclusivity: no other being — not humans, not birds, not the deep, not Death — knows where wisdom lives. Only God.
24. The *ki hu li-qetsot ha-arets yabbit* ('for he looks to the ends/extremities of the earth') — God's vision reaches the remotest boundaries. The *tachat kol ha-shamayim yir'eh* ('under all the heavens he sees') — nothing beneath the sky escapes his sight. The reason God alone knows wisdom's location is that God alone has comprehensive vision. The miner sees into the mine shaft; the bird sees from the sky; God sees everything, everywhere, simultaneously. This verse anticipates God's speech in 38:18: 'Have you comprehended the vast expanses of the earth?'
25. God's creative activity is described in terms of precision engineering. The *la'asot la-ruach mishqal* ('to make for the wind a weight') — God assigned weight to the wind. The idea that wind has weight is scientifically accurate (air pressure was not formally understood until Torricelli in the 17th century, but the poet intuitively it). The *u-mayim tikken be-middah* ('and waters he established by measure') — God calibrated the exact volume of the

world's water. Creation is an act of weighing and measuring — the cosmos is engineered, not haphazard.

- 26.** The ba'asoto la-mmatar choq ('when he made for the rain a decree/statute') — the rain operates under divine legislation; it falls according to rules God established. The ve-derekh la-chaziz qolot ('and a way/path for the thunderbolt') — chaziz qolot is literally 'flash of thunders,' meaning lightning. God laid down a specific path for each lightning bolt. The meteorological imagery portrays creation as the establishment of laws — physical laws are divine decrees.
- 27.** Four verbs describe God's relationship to wisdom at the moment of creation. The az ra'ah ('then he saw it') — God perceived wisdom visually. The va-yesapperah ('and he declared/recounted it') — God articulated wisdom, gave it expression. The hekhihnah ('he established it') — God set wisdom in place as a foundational structure. The ve-gam chaqqarah ('and also he searched it out, investigated it thoroughly') — even God explored wisdom fully. The four verbs move from perception (saw) to proclamation (declared) to installation (established) to thorough investigation (searched out). Wisdom was not something God merely possessed — it was something God actively engaged with in the act of creation.
- 28.** The yirat Adonai ('fear of the Lord') is the foundational concept of Israelite wisdom literature (Proverbs 1:7, 9:10, Psalm 111:10, Ecclesiastes 12:13). The yir'ah ('fear, awe, reverence') is not anxiety or dread but the appropriate creaturely response to the Creator's overwhelming reality. Adonai here replaces the divine name YHWH — the only occurrence of Adonai in the Wisdom Poem, marking the climactic revelation. The sur me-ra ('turning from evil') is practical ethics: wisdom is not abstract contemplation but moral action. The combination of yirat Adonai and sur me-ra echoes Job 1:1 exactly: ire Elohim ve-sar me-ra ('one who feared God and turned from evil'). The poem's definition of wisdom is a portrait of Job himself.

29

Summary: *Job pauses from answering his friends and begins a monologue addressed to God and to the cosmos. In chapter 29 he looks backward, describing his former life in lavish detail: God watched over him, his lamp shone on his head, he walked through darkness by divine light, his children surrounded him, the rock poured out streams of oil. He sat as the chief man of his city, and when he spoke the elders fell silent. The young men hid themselves in respect; the nobles pressed their lips together. He rescued the poor, the fatherless, the widow, the blind, the lame, the stranger. He put on righteousness like a garment and wore justice like a turban. He expected to die in his nest, to multiply his days like sand. This is not nostalgia — it is evidence. Job is building a legal case. Before the suffering, the covenant was working. God blessed, the community honored, the vulnerable were protected. If the covenant was functioning, then the suffering that followed cannot be punishment for hidden sin.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Job's self-portrait in chapter 29 is one of the most detailed descriptions of a righteous life in the Hebrew Bible. It parallels the ideal king of Psalm 72 and the valiant woman of Proverbs 31 — yet Job is neither a king nor a woman but a private citizen whose righteousness operated in the public square. His description of the city gate (verses 7-10) places him at the center of civic life, where legal disputes were settled and community standards were enforced. The imagery of light dominates: God's lamp on his head (v3), walking through darkness by God's light (v3), the days of his harvest or autumn (v4). The Hebrew word sod in verse 4 — often translated 'secret' — means the intimate counsel of God, the same word used in Psalm 25:14 ('the secret of the LORD is with those who fear him'). Job is claiming he once had access to God's inner circle. The chapter ends with a remarkable metaphor: Job sat among his people like a king among his troops, like one who comforts mourners (v25). He was the source of consolation for others — now he is the one who needs comforting, and no one can provide it.*

Translation Friction: *Job's glowing self-description raises the question of whether he is idealizing his past or reporting accurately. His friends might hear this as arrogance. But the narrator of chapters 1-2 has already confirmed Job's righteousness — the reader knows his self-assessment is not self-deception. The tension is that Job's former blessed life makes his current suffering more inexplicable, not less. If he had been secretly wicked, the suffering would make sense within the retribution framework. Instead, Job's very goodness is the foundation of his complaint. The Hebrew of verse 18 is difficult: 'I shall die in my nest' uses the word qen (nest), but 'I shall multiply my days like the chol' — chol can mean 'sand' or 'phoenix.' The phoenix reading (which appears in some rabbinic sources) would add a resurrection motif: Job expected to be renewed like the mythical bird that dies and rises again.*

Connections: *Job's description of himself as one who was 'eyes to the blind and feet to the lame' (v15) anticipates Jesus's response to John the Baptist in Matthew 11:5: 'the blind receive sight, the lame walk.' Job's social ethic — rescuing the fatherless, defending the stranger, breaking the jaw of the wicked (v17) — parallels the prophetic demands of Isaiah 1:17 and Micah 6:8. The image of wearing righteousness as a garment (v14) appears again*

in Isaiah 61:10 and Ephesians 6:14. Job's lament that he expected to die in his nest connects to the wisdom tradition's promise that the righteous will have long life and peaceful death (Proverbs 3:16). The entire chapter functions as the 'before' portrait that makes chapters 30-31 devastating by contrast.

¹And Job took up his discourse again and said:

²If only I could return to the months gone by,
to the days when God watched over me —

³when his lamp blazed above my head,
when by his light I walked through darkness,

⁴as I was in the days of my prime,
when God's intimate counsel rested on my tent,

⁵when the Almighty was still with me,
when my children surrounded me,

⁶when my path was bathed in cream,
and the rock poured out streams of oil beside me —

⁷When I went out to the gate of the city,
when I took my seat in the public square,

⁸the young men saw me and stepped aside;
the elders rose and stood.

⁹Nobles held back their words
and placed a hand over their mouths.

¹⁰The voices of leaders fell silent;
their tongues clung to the roofs of their mouths.

¹¹Every ear that heard me called me blessed;
every eye that saw me spoke as my witness,

¹²because I rescued the poor who cried out,
the fatherless who had no one to help,

¹³The blessing of the one about to perish came upon me,
and I made the widow's heart sing.

¹⁴I wore righteousness, and it clothed me;
justice was my robe and my turban.

¹⁵I was eyes to the blind
and feet to the lame.

¹⁶I was a father to the destitute,
and the case of the stranger I investigated thoroughly.

¹⁷I broke the fangs of the wicked
and tore the prey from his teeth.

¹⁸I thought, I will die in my own nest,
and I will multiply my days like the sand —

¹⁹my roots spread open to the water,
and dew rested all night on my branches.

²⁰My honor was always fresh within me,
and my bow renewed itself in my hand.

²¹People listened to me and waited;
they kept silent for my counsel.

²²After I spoke, no one spoke again;
my words dropped gently on them.

²³They waited for me as for rain;
they opened their mouths wide as for the spring showers.

²⁴When I smiled at them, they could hardly believe it;
the light of my face they would not let fall.

²⁵I chose the direction for them and sat as their head;
I lived among them like a king among his troops,
like one who comforts the mourning.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *se'et mashalo* ('took up his parable/discourse') signals a formal speech, not casual conversation. The word *mashal* can mean proverb, parable, or discourse — here it introduces a sustained poetic monologue that will run through chapter 31.
2. *Mi yittaneni* ('who will give me') is the standard Hebrew formula for an unrealizable wish — 'if only.' The phrase *yarche-qedem* ('months of old') sets the temporal frame: Job is reaching back into a past that feels impossibly distant. *Eloah yishmereni* ('God guarded me') uses the same verb applied to a watchman or shepherd guarding a flock.
3. The *ner* (lamp) on Job's head is a metaphor for divine favor and guidance — the same image appears in Psalm 18:28 ('you light my lamp'). Walking through *choshekh* (darkness) by God's light suggests that even in difficult seasons, God's presence made the way navigable. The lamp is God's, not Job's — the source of illumination was always external.
4. *Sod Eloah* ('counsel of God') is the theological center of this verse. In the wisdom tradition, access to God's *sod* is the highest form of relationship — it means being brought into God's deliberative circle. Job once had this access; now God hides his face. The loss is not merely of blessings but of intimacy.
5. *Shaddai immadi* ('the Almighty was with me') uses the divine name that dominates Job's poetry. The *ne'arai* ('my young ones, my children') surrounding him evokes the completeness of family life — the same children whose death is reported in chapter 1. The word 'still' (*od*) carries enormous weight: it implies a time before God withdrew.
6. The imagery is hyperbolic: *rachots halikhai be-chemah* ('bathing my steps in cream/curds') and the *tsur* (rock) pouring out streams of *shemen* (oil) describe agricultural abundance so extreme it reads as mythic. Similar imagery appears in Deuteronomy 32:13 ('he made him suck honey from the rock, and oil from the flinty rock'). The point is that creation itself participated in blessing Job.
7. The *sha'ar* (gate) was the civic center of an ancient Near Eastern city — the place where legal cases were heard, business was conducted, and community leaders gathered. Job's seat (*moshav*) in the *rechov* (broad plaza) indicates his status as a leading citizen and judge. This is the beginning of a detailed social portrait that runs through verse 25.
8. The *ne'arim* (young men) hiding and the *yeshishim* (aged men) rising describe a society structured by honor and deference. The young hide not from fear but from respect — they make way for Job. The elders stand, which in the ancient world was a mark of extraordinary honor given to a peer or superior. Job's entrance transforms the posture of the entire assembly.
9. The *sarim* (princes, officials, nobles) restraining their speech and covering their mouths is a gesture of deference — they yield the floor to Job. The hand on the mouth appears again in 40:4 when Job finally responds to God's whirlwind speech. Here, others silence themselves before Job; later, Job will silence himself before God.

10. The negidim (leaders, rulers) are literally 'those who are in front.' Their tongues clinging to their palate is a vivid image of enforced silence — they could not and would not speak over Job. The escalation from young men to elders to nobles to leaders shows the totality of Job's social authority.
11. The ear and the eye function as synecdoche — the whole person represented by the organs of perception. The verb *te'ashereni* ('declared me blessed, fortunate') is related to the word *ashre* ('blessed') that opens the Psalter. The verb *te'ideni* ('testified for me, bore witness') is legal language — those who observed Job's life would testify on his behalf.
12. The *ki* ('because') is crucial — it explains why Job received honor. His status was not inherited or purchased but earned through justice. The *ani* (poor, afflicted) and *yatom* (fatherless, orphan) are the two most vulnerable categories in Israelite social law. Job's rescue of them mirrors the divine role described in Psalm 68:5 ('father of the fatherless').
13. The *oved* ('the perishing one, the one about to be destroyed') is someone on the brink of ruin — and their *birkat* (blessing) rests on Job. The *almanah* (widow) whose heart Job causes to sing (*arnin*) represents the most economically vulnerable person in the ancient world. Job's social ethic operates at the margins, not just among the powerful.
14. *Tsedeq* (righteousness) and *mishpat* (justice) form the classic biblical word pair that defines right relationship with God and neighbor. Job does not merely practice righteousness — he wears it. The *me'il* is the same garment type as the priestly robe of Exodus 28:31 and Samuel's robe in 1 Samuel 2:19. The *tsanif* (turban) appears in Isaiah 62:3 as a royal diadem.
15. Job did not merely help the blind and lame — he became their eyes and feet. The metaphor goes beyond charity to identification: Job supplied what they lacked by giving of himself. This language anticipates the messianic signs of Isaiah 35:5-6 ('the eyes of the blind shall be opened, the lame shall leap like a deer') and Jesus's summary of his ministry in Matthew 11:5.
16. *Av anokhi la-evyonim* ('I was a father to the needy') places Job in the divine role — God is repeatedly called father of the fatherless. The second line describes judicial diligence: *riv lo yadati echqerehu* ('a case I did not know, I searched it out'). Job did not judge only cases brought to him; he actively investigated injustice, even for people he did not know.
17. The imagery shifts from pastoral care to violent confrontation. The *metale'ot* (jaw teeth, fangs) of the *avval* (wicked, unjust one) portray the oppressor as a predatory animal. Job *ashlikk taref* ('hurled the prey from his teeth') — he physically intervened to rescue victims from exploitation. This is not passive righteousness but aggressive justice.
18. *Im qinni* ('with my nest') uses the word for a bird's nest, evoking security, family, and home. The verb *egva* ('I will expire, breathe my last') is a gentle word for dying — natural death rather than violent end. The ambiguity of *chol* (sand or phoenix) has generated extensive discussion. The Septuagint translates it as 'palm tree' (long-lived), some rabbinic commentators read 'phoenix.' The simplest reading is 'sand' — innumerable days.
19. Job compares himself to a well-watered tree — the same image used for the righteous person in Psalm 1:3 and Jeremiah 17:8. The *shorshi* (my root) reaching water and the *tal* (dew) settling on his *qatsir* (branch, harvest) describe a life of perpetual vitality. This is the opposite of the wicked person's fate in Job 18:16 ('his roots dry up below').
20. *Kevodi chadash* ('my glory was new/fresh') suggests a reputation that never grew stale or faded. The *qeshti* (my bow) is a symbol of strength and virility. The verb *tachalif* ('it renewed itself, was replaced fresh') implies that Job's power was not diminishing with age but continually refreshed — a sign of ongoing divine favor.
21. The three verbs — *sham'u* (listened), *yichelu* (waited, hoped), *yiddemu* (were silent) — describe an audience hanging on Job's words. The *atsati* (my counsel) is the wisdom Job offered in the public square. This verse resumes the social portrait from verses 7-10 after the nature imagery of 18-20.
22. *Lo yishnu* ('they did not repeat, did not speak again') means Job's word was final — no one contradicted or added to it. The verb *tittof* (dropped, dripped) uses rain imagery: Job's *millah* (word, speech) fell on them like gentle rain. The same verb appears in Deuteronomy 32:2 ('my teaching shall drop as the rain'). Job's speech was experienced as nourishing, not domineering.
23. The comparison intensifies: people waited for Job's speech *ka-matar* (like rain) — essential, life-giving, eagerly anticipated. The *malqosh* (late rain, spring rain) was the crucial rainfall that came just before harvest and determined whether crops would mature. Opening the mouth wide for it is the posture of desperate thirst being satisfied. Job's words were not merely respected but needed.
24. The verb *eschaq* ('I laughed, smiled') describes a gesture of approval. When Job smiled at someone, they could scarcely believe their good fortune — *lo ya'aminu* ('they did not believe it'). The *or panai* ('light of my face') is the same expression used of God's face in the Aaronic blessing (Numbers 6:25). No one would cause that light to fall or diminish — they treasured every sign of Job's favor.
25. The combination of authority (choosing the way, sitting as head, dwelling as king) with tenderness (comforting mourners) makes this verse one of the most complete portraits of leadership in the Hebrew Bible. The *gedud* (troop, raiding band) suggests that Job's leadership operated in crisis situations, not just in peacetime governance. The chapter closes on the word *yenachem* ('he comforts') — the very thing Job's friends have failed to provide.

30

Summary: *The pivot word 'but now' (ve-attah) marks the devastating shift from Job's remembered glory in chapter 29 to his present humiliation. Men younger than Job — men whose fathers Job would not have placed with the dogs guarding his flock — now mock him openly. These are social outcasts, gaunt with hunger, gnawing roots in the wasteland, driven from human community. Yet even they spit at Job and treat him with contempt. God has loosened Job's bowstring and afflicted him; mockers assault him, they tear up his path, they advance like troops through a breach. Terrors overwhelm him; his dignity is blown away like wind; his prosperity vanishes like a cloud. Now his soul is poured out, pain seizes his bones at night, his garment is disfigured by disease, God has thrown him into the mud. Job cries to God but receives no answer — he stands in the assembly and screams for help. He has become a brother to jackals and a companion to ostriches. His skin blackens and peels; his bones burn with fever. His harp is tuned to mourning, his flute to the sound of weeping.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rhetorical structure of chapter 30 is built on devastation by contrast. Every element of honor from chapter 29 is systematically demolished. Where elders once stood at Job's approach (29:8), now the dregs of society spit in his face (30:10). Where Job once wore righteousness as a robe (29:14), now disease disfigures his garment (30:18). Where Job once comforted mourners (29:25), now he cries out and no one comforts him. The 'but now' (ve-attah) that opens the chapter (vv. 1, 9, 16) creates a three-panel structure of degradation: social humiliation (1-15), divine assault (16-23), and existential despair (24-31). The description of the outcasts in verses 1-8 is the most detailed portrait of extreme poverty in the Hebrew Bible — people reduced to eating roots, living in wadis, braying like donkeys among the bushes. These are not the conventional poor whom Job once helped; they are the expelled, the nameless. That even they look down on Job measures the depth of his fall.*

Translation Friction: *Job's contemptuous description of his mockers (vv. 1-8) creates an uncomfortable tension with his earlier claim to have been 'father to the destitute' (29:16). Was Job's compassion limited to the respectable poor? The text may be revealing an honest human limitation: even a righteous person can harbor class prejudice. Alternatively, Job may be describing these people not with contempt but with accuracy — they are genuinely degraded human beings, and the point is that even the most degraded now stand above him. The theological weight falls on verses 20-23, where Job accuses God directly: 'I cry to you and you do not answer me... you have turned cruel to me.' This is not complaint about suffering but accusation of divine cruelty — a charge the book never fully resolves through human argument but only through theophany.*

Connections: *Job's cry 'I cry to you and you do not answer' (v20) echoes through the psalms of lament (Psalm 22:2, 88:1-2) and anticipates Jesus's cry of dereliction from the cross (Matthew 27:46). The image of being thrown into the mud (v19) anticipates Jeremiah's experience of being lowered into a cistern of mire (Jeremiah 38:6). Job becoming 'a brother to jackals' (v29) parallels Micah 1:8 where the prophet makes lamentation 'like the jackals.' The transformation of the harp to mourning and the flute to weeping (v31) reverses the celebration imagery of Isaiah 24:8-9 and anticipates the exiles hanging their harps on willows in Psalm 137:2. The entire chapter is the anti-psalm: where psalms of thanksgiving move from lament to praise, Job 30 moves from praise (ch. 29) to lament with no resolution.*

¹But now they laugh at me —
men younger than I,
whose fathers I would not have placed
among the dogs that guard my flock.

²The strength of their hands — what use was it to me?
All vigor had perished from them.

³Gaunt with want and hunger,
they gnawed the dry ground —
the dark wasteland of desolation and ruin.

⁴They pluck salt-herb among the shrubs,
and broom-root is their bread.

⁵They are driven out from the community;
people shout after them as after a thief.

⁶They live in the gullies of the wadis,
in holes in the ground and among the rocks.

⁷They bray among the bushes;
they huddle together beneath the nettles.

⁸Sons of the senseless, sons of the nameless —
whipped out of the land.

⁹But now I have become their mocking song;
I have become their byword.

¹⁰They despise me and keep their distance;
they do not hold back from spitting in my face.

¹¹Because God has loosened my bowstring and humbled me,
they have cast off all restraint before me.

¹²At my right the rabble rise;
they drive me from my path
and build their siege ramps against me.

¹³They tear up my path;
they profit from my ruin —
no one restrains them.

¹⁴They pour through like a wide breach;
amid the crash of ruin they roll over me.

¹⁵Terrors are turned loose against me;
my dignity is chased away like wind,
and my well-being passes like a cloud.

¹⁶But now my soul is poured out within me;
days of affliction have seized me.

¹⁷At night my bones are pierced through;
my gnawing pains never rest.

¹⁸With great force my garment is disfigured;
it grips me tight like the collar of my tunic.

¹⁹He has thrown me into the mud,
and I have become like dust and ashes.

²⁰I cry out to you, and you do not answer me;
I stand before you, and you only stare at me.

²¹You have turned cruel against me;
with the full force of your hand you attack me.

²²You lift me up on the wind and drive me before it;
you dissolve me in the storm.

²³I know you will return me to death,
to the house appointed for every living thing.

²⁴Surely a drowning man reaches out his hand;
surely in his disaster he cries for help.

²⁵Did I not weep for the one whose days were hard?
Was my soul not grieved for the poor?

²⁶I hoped for good, but evil came;
I waited for light, but darkness arrived.

²⁷My insides churn without rest;
days of affliction confront me.

²⁸I go about blackened, but not by the sun;
I rise in the assembly and cry for help.

²⁹I have become a brother to jackals,
a companion to ostriches.

³⁰My skin turns black and peels from me;
my bones burn with fever.

³¹My harp is tuned to mourning,
and my flute to the sound of weeping.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ve-attah ('but now') is the hinge word of the entire monologue — it marks the break between past honor and present degradation. The tse'irim (younger men) mocking Job inverts the deference of 29:8. Job's comment about their fathers and the dogs is not casual insult but a precise social measurement: these men's fathers were so unreliable that Job would not have trusted them with the lowest task on his estate.
2. The kelach ('vigor, mature strength') that has perished from these men may refer to premature aging from deprivation. Job is describing people so broken by poverty that even their physical labor was worthless. The rhetorical question lammah li ('what is it to me?') emphasizes their uselessness.
3. The verse piles up terms of deprivation: cheser (want, lack), kafen (famine, hunger), galmud (barren, stripped bare). The verb ha-orqim ('gnawing, fleeing to') combined with tsiyah (dry land, parched ground) creates an image of people so desperate they chew the dust of the wilderness. The phrase emesh sho'ah u-mesho'ah ('yesterday's desolation and destruction') suggests an already-ruined landscape.
4. The malluach (salt-plant, salt-herb) is a bitter, barely edible plant growing in arid regions. The retamim (broom plant) has roots that are fibrous and nearly inedible. These are starvation foods — the last resort of people who have exhausted all normal sources of sustenance. The word lachmam ('their bread, their food') emphasizes that this is not a supplement but their only sustenance.

5. The verb yegorashu ('they are driven out') is the same verb used for expulsion from Eden (Genesis 3:24) and Cain's banishment (Genesis 4:14). These outcasts are expelled from gev (the midst, the community). The comparison to a thief (gannav) means they are hounded and pursued even after being cast out — society treats them as criminals, not merely as unfortunates.
6. The aruts nechalim ('ravines of the wadis') are the eroded channels of seasonal streams — dangerous during flash floods, desolate the rest of the year. The chorei afar ('holes of dust/earth') and kefim ('rocks, crags') describe subhuman dwelling conditions. These are not homes but hiding places.
7. The verb yinhaqu ('they bray') is the sound a wild donkey makes — these people have been reduced to animal noises and animal behavior. The charul (nettles, thorny weeds) provides their only shelter. The verb yesuppachu ('they are gathered together, they huddle') suggests clinging to one another for warmth or safety in their miserable refuge.
8. Bene naval ('sons of the fool/senseless one') and bene veli-shem ('sons of no-name') are social designations: these are people with no lineage, no reputation, no place in the social registry. The verb nikke'u ('they were beaten, struck, driven out') combined with min ha-arets ('from the land') describes total social erasure — they have been flogged out of civilization itself.
9. The second ve-attah ('but now') opens the second panel of degradation. The neginatam ('their song, their taunt-song') means Job is the subject of their crude entertainment. The millah ('word, byword') means his name has become a proverb for misfortune. The man who once silenced nobles with his speech (29:9-10) is now the punchline of the lowest people on earth.
10. The verb ti'avuni ('they find me abhorrent, they abhor me') expresses visceral disgust. The paradox is sharp: they distance themselves from Job in revulsion but come close enough to spit (roq) at his face. Spitting in the face was the supreme insult in the ancient Near East (Numbers 12:14, Deuteronomy 25:9). The man whose face once radiated light (29:24) now has spit on it.
11. The yitro (his cord, his bowstring) that God has loosened refers back to Job's bow that was renewed in his hand (29:20). God has unstrung Job's weapon — removed his power. The resen (bridle, restraint) that others have cast off means that with Job's power gone, social restraints have dissolved. People who would never have dared insult him now do so freely because God has removed his protection.
12. The pirschach (brood, rabble — a contemptuous term for young upstarts) rise on Job's right side, which was traditionally the place of the defender or advocate in a legal setting. They push away his feet (metaphor for undermining his standing) and build orchot eidam ('roads/ramps of their destruction') — siege imagery suggesting a military assault on Job's remaining dignity.
13. The verb natsu ('they tore up, broke apart') applied to netivati ('my path') means they have destroyed Job's way forward. The havvati ('my destruction, my calamity') becomes their gain — yo'ilu ('they profit, they benefit'). The final phrase lo ozer lamo ('no helper for them' or 'they have no one restraining them') is ambiguous: it may mean no one stops them, or that even they — these wretched people — have no allies, yet they still prevail over Job.
14. The perets rachav ('wide breach') is a military image — a gap smashed through a city wall through which attackers pour. The verb hitgalgalu ('they rolled, tumbled') describes the chaotic rush of an army flooding through a broken wall. Job is a besieged city whose defenses have been breached, and the attackers are trampling everything inside.
15. The ballahot (terrors) are personified — they are turned (hahpakh) against Job like an army redirected. His nedivati ('my nobility, my generous spirit, my dignity') is pursued ka-ruach ('like wind') — it is insubstantial, uncatchable, gone. His yeshu'ati ('my salvation, my well-being, my prosperity') passes ke-av ('like a cloud') — visible for a moment, then dissolved. Wind and cloud: both images of what cannot be held.
16. The third ve-attah ('but now') opens the final and most personal panel. The verb tishtappekh ('is poured out') describes Job's nephesh (self, soul, life-force) as a liquid being emptied — the same image in Psalm 42:4 ('I pour out my soul within me') and Lamentations 2:12 (children's lives poured out). The yeme-oni ('days of affliction') have seized Job — they grip him and will not release.
17. The laylah (night) — once the time when dew rested on Job's branches (29:19) — is now the time of agony. His atsamai (bones) are niqqar ('pierced, bored through'), describing deep skeletal pain. The orqai ('my gnawing pains' or 'my sinews') lo yishkavun ('do not lie down, do not rest') — the pain is relentless, it does not sleep even when Job tries to.
18. The verb yitchappes ('is changed, is disfigured, is disguised') applied to levushi ('my garment') likely means Job's clothing is stiffened and distorted by the discharge from his sores. Where he once wore righteousness as a robe (29:14), now disease reshapes his clothing. The kefi kuttanti ('like the mouth/collar of my tunic') binding him suggests the garment has become a second skin of suffering, constricting rather than covering.
19. The subject of horani ('he has thrown me, he has cast me') is God — implicit but unmistakable. The chomer (mud, clay, mire) is the substance from which humans were formed (Job 10:9), but here it is a place of degradation, not creation. The afar va-efer ('dust and ashes') is the same phrase Abraham uses in Genesis 18:27 to describe human insignificance before God, and it appears in Job 42:6 at the book's resolution.
20. The verb shava (cry, scream for help) is among the most urgent in Hebrew prayer vocabulary — it is the cry of the oppressed in Exodus 2:23. God answered that cry; God does not answer this one. The verb hitbonen ('to gaze, to consider carefully') implies God is watching Job with full awareness but choosing not to intervene. This is not a hidden God but a God who is present, watching, and silent.
21. The verb tehapekh ('you turn, you change') combined with le-akhzar ('to cruelty, into a cruel one') is Job's most direct accusation: God has changed character. The b'otsom yadkha ('with the might of your hand') is the same language used for God's mighty acts of salvation in the exodus (Exodus 6:1). The hand that once rescued Israel now persecutes Job. The verb tistmeni ('you oppose me, you bear a grudge against me') suggests sustained hostility, not a single act.

- 22.** God lifts Job into the ruach (wind) — not gently but to be battered. The verb tarkiveni ('you cause me to ride') uses riding imagery but without any sense of control or mastery — Job is mounted on the storm against his will. The verb temogegeni ('you dissolve me, you melt me') describes the disintegration of his tushiyah ('substance, sound wisdom, essential being'). Job is being unmade.
- 23.** The mavet (death) is Job's destination, and God is the one driving him there — teshiveni ('you will return me, you will bring me back'). The beit mo'ed le-khol chai ('house of meeting/appointment for all the living') is Sheol, the grave, described not as punishment but as universal appointment. Every living creature has this destination. The word mo'ed ('appointed time, meeting place') gives death the character of a scheduled event — God has set the date.
- 24.** This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The general sense appears to be: does not a person in a heap of ruins (be'i) reach out his hand? Does not someone in catastrophe (pid) cry out (shua')? Job is defending his right to cry out — if even a person buried in rubble stretches out a hand for rescue, how much more is Job justified in crying to God from the rubble of his life.
- 25.** Job now turns to his record of compassion as evidence. He wept for the qesheh-yom ('the hard of day,' the person experiencing difficult times) and his nephesh was agmah ('grieved, distressed') for the evyon (the destitute). This verse connects backward to 29:12-17 (Job's social ethic) and forward to the logic of chapter 31: if Job practiced compassion, he should receive compassion.
- 26.** The antithetical parallelism is perfect: tov/ra (good/evil) and or/ofel (light/deep darkness). The verbs qivviti ('I hoped, I waited expectantly') and ayachalah ('I waited with longing') describe patient, expectant trust — the kind of trust the retribution theology promises will be rewarded. Instead, the opposite arrived. This is the sharpest statement of the book's central problem: righteous expectation met by inexplicable reversal.
- 27.** The me'ai (my intestines, my inner organs) ruttachu ('are boiled, are in turmoil') — in Hebrew physiology, the intestines are the seat of deep emotion, roughly equivalent to 'my gut is in an uproar.' The verb lo damu ('they do not rest, they are not quiet') emphasizes relentlessness. The yeme-oni ('days of affliction') qiddamuni ('confronted me, came to meet me') — affliction came out to ambush Job on the road.
- 28.** Qoder ('blackened, dark, mourning') describes Job's skin condition — he is darkened, but not from sunburn (belo chammah, 'without the sun'). The darkening is from disease. He rises in the qahal (assembly, congregation) and screams (ashawe'a) — the same verb from verse 20. The man who once presided over the assembly in honor (29:7-10) now stands in it screaming in desperation, and no one responds.
- 29.** The tannim (jackals) and benot ya'anah (daughters of the ostrich, or ostriches) are animals of the wilderness and of ruins — they inhabit destroyed cities (Isaiah 13:21-22, 34:13). By calling them 'brother' (ach) and 'companion' (re'a), Job says his only kinship now is with desolation creatures. The man who once sat among elders and nobles now keeps company with scavengers of the wasteland.
- 30.** The ori (my skin) shachor ('is black, is darkened') connects to 'blackened' in verse 28. The verb me'alai ('from upon me') suggests the skin is peeling away. The atsamai (my bones) charah ('burned, were hot') from chorev ('heat, dryness, fever') describes the sensation of internal burning — the disease attacks both surface (skin) and core (bones).
- 31.** The kinnor (lyre, harp) is Israel's quintessential instrument of joy and worship. The ugav (pipe, flute) is associated with pastoral and festive settings. Le-evel ('to mourning') and le-qol bokhim ('to the voice of weeping') transform instruments of celebration into instruments of lament. The verse deliberately echoes Psalm 137:2 in reverse: there the exiles hang up their harps because they cannot sing; here Job's harp still plays, but it can only mourn.

31

Summary: Job delivers the longest self-imprecation in the Hebrew Bible — a series of sixteen 'if I have...' clauses, each paired with a curse he invites upon himself if the charge is true. This is not boasting but a legal oath of clearance, the ancient equivalent of swearing before a court with one's life on the line. Job swears he made a covenant with his eyes not to gaze on a young woman (v1); that he has not walked in falsehood or deceit (v5); that he has not committed adultery (v9); that he has not denied justice to his servants (v13); that he has not withheld food from the poor, clothing from the naked, or protection from the fatherless (vv16-21); that he has not trusted in gold or worshiped the sun and moon (vv24-28); that he has not rejoiced at his enemy's ruin or cursed anyone (vv29-30); that the members of his household never went unsatisfied (v31); that he never hid his sin out of fear of the crowd (v33); and that his land has never cried out against him for injustice (vv38-39). After each charge he names the punishment he accepts if guilty: may my arm fall from its socket, may my wife grind for another man, may thorns grow instead of wheat. The oath climaxes with Job's demand for a hearing: 'Here is my signature — let the Almighty answer me! Let the indictment my accuser has written be placed on my shoulder; I would wear it like a crown' (vv35-37). This is the most audacious speech in the book. Job rests his case. His words are ended.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Job 31 functions as a negative confession — a catalog of sins Job swears he has not committed. The form has parallels in Egyptian religion (the Declaration of Innocence in the Book of the Dead, chapter 125), where the deceased lists sins they have not committed before the divine tribunal. But Job's oath is unique in the ancient world for several reasons. First, it covers not only actions but intentions — he made a covenant with his eyes (v1), meaning he governed his inner desires, not just his outward behavior. Second, it includes social ethics that go far beyond ritual purity: treatment of servants, the poor, the orphan, the stranger, even the land itself. Third, it culminates not in a plea for mercy but in a demand for a hearing. Job does not ask God to forgive him; he insists that God answer the charges or admit there are none. The tav (mark, signature) of verse 35 is the last letter of the Hebrew alphabet — Job signs his name at the end of his defense, and the next voice to speak must be God's. The oath covers sexual ethics (1-4, 9-12), honesty (5-8), social justice (13-23), idolatry (24-28), vindictiveness (29-30), hospitality (31-32), hypocrisy (33-34), and ecological responsibility (38-40). It is the most comprehensive ethical code articulated by a single individual in the Old Testament.*

Translation Friction: *Job's claim to have 'made a covenant with my eyes' (v1) introduces a level of moral self-discipline that anticipates Jesus's teaching in Matthew 5:28 about lust as adultery of the heart. The Hebrew Bible rarely legislates inner desire this explicitly — the tenth commandment ('you shall not covet') is the closest parallel. Job's assertion that he has kept even his gaze under covenant discipline raises the question: is such control possible, or is Job overstating his righteousness? The book's narrator has already confirmed Job's integrity (1:1, 1:8, 2:3), so the text endorses his claim. The self-imprecations are not hypothetical — in the ancient world, calling a curse upon yourself was deadly serious. If Job is lying, he has invited destruction upon himself, his household, and his land. The courage of the oath is precisely that Job stakes everything on his own integrity, knowing that God can verify every claim. The final demand — 'let the Almighty answer me' — is breathtaking in its audacity: a human being summoning the Creator to a court proceeding.*

Connections: *The covenant with the eyes (v1) connects to Jesus's teaching on lust in Matthew 5:27-28 and to the concept of guarding the heart in Proverbs 4:23. The treatment of servants as fellow creatures of God (v13-15) anticipates Paul's letter to Philemon and Galatians 3:28. Job's refusal to worship sun and moon (vv26-28) addresses the most common form of ancient idolatry and parallels Deuteronomy 4:19 and Ezekiel 8:16. The demand for a written indictment (v35) uses legal language that resonates with the 'book of life' imagery in Revelation 20:12. Job's statement 'I would bind it on me like a crown' (v36) — wearing the accusation as a diadem — inverts the normal posture of the accused. Where others would dread the charges, Job would display them as proof of his innocence, confident they cannot stand scrutiny. The phrase 'the words of Job are ended' (v40b) formally closes Job's case and creates the silence into which God's whirlwind speech will eventually break.*

¹I made a covenant with my eyes —
how then could I gaze at a young woman?

²For what portion does God assign from above?
What inheritance does the Almighty give from on high?

³Is not disaster for the unjust,
and calamity for those who do evil?

⁴Does he not see my ways
and count my every step?

⁵If I have walked alongside falsehood,
or if my foot has hurried toward deceit —

⁶let God weigh me on honest scales,
and let God know my integrity.

⁷If my step has strayed from the path,
or my heart has followed my eyes,
or any stain has clung to my hands —

⁸then let me sow and another eat,
and let my crops be uprooted.

⁹If my heart has been enticed by a woman,
or if I have lurked at my neighbor's door —

¹⁰then let my wife grind grain for another man,
and let others kneel over her.

¹¹For that would be depravity,
an offense deserving judgment.

¹²For it is a fire that devours to the pit of destruction,
and it would uproot all my harvest.

¹³If I have rejected the just claim of my servant,
man or woman, when they brought a dispute against me —

¹⁴For what would I do when God rises to judge?
When he examines, what would I answer him?

¹⁵Did not the one who made me in the womb make him?
Did not the same God form us both in the womb?

¹⁶If I have withheld from the poor what they needed,
or made the widow's eyes grow dim with waiting —

¹⁷or eaten my bread alone,
without the fatherless sharing in it —

¹⁸For from my youth I raised the orphan like a father,
and from my mother's womb I guided the widow —

¹⁹If I have seen anyone perishing for lack of clothing,
or the destitute without a covering —

²⁰if his body did not bless me,
warmed by the fleece of my sheep —

²¹If I have raised my hand against the fatherless
because I saw my supporters in the gate —

²²then let my arm fall from its shoulder,
let my forearm snap from its socket.

²³For disaster from God was my dread,
and before his majesty I could not stand.

²⁴If I have made gold my security,
 or said to fine gold, 'You are my trust' —
²⁵if I have rejoiced because my wealth was great,
 or because my hand had gained much —
²⁶If I have gazed at the sun as it blazed,
 or at the moon moving in splendor,
²⁷and my heart was secretly enticed,
 and my hand threw a kiss from my mouth —
²⁸that too would be an offense deserving judgment,
 for I would have denied the God who is above.
²⁹If I have rejoiced at the ruin of my enemy,
 or felt a surge of triumph when disaster found him —
³⁰I did not let my mouth sin
 by asking for his life with a curse.
³¹Did not the people of my tent say,
 'Who can find anyone not satisfied by his meat?' —
³²No stranger spent the night in the street;
 I opened my doors to the traveler.
³³If I have concealed my sins as Adam did,
 hiding my guilt in my heart —
³⁴because I feared the great crowd,
 or the scorn of clans terrified me,
 so that I kept silent and would not go outside —
³⁵If only someone would hear me!
 Here is my signature — let the Almighty answer me!
 Let the indictment my accuser has written be given to me!
³⁶I would carry it on my shoulder;
 I would bind it on like a crown.
³⁷I would give him an account of my every step;
 like a prince I would approach him.
³⁸If my land has cried out against me,
 and its furrows have wept together —
³⁹if I have eaten its yield without payment,
 or snuffed out the life of its tenants —
⁴⁰then let thorns grow instead of wheat,
 and weeds instead of barley.

The words of Job are ended.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Berit karati le-einai ('a covenant I cut for my eyes') is one of the most striking phrases in the Hebrew Bible. The covenant form — normally reserved for agreements between God and humans or between nations — is here applied to a man's relationship with his own body. The verb hitbonen ('to gaze intently, to consider carefully') implies sustained, purposeful looking, not a casual glance. Job has not merely avoided adultery; he has governed the direction of his desire.
2. Job's rhetorical question establishes the theological stakes: one's moral behavior determines the chelek (portion, allotment) from Eloah and the nachalat (inheritance) from Shaddai. This is the retribution principle stated as a question — Job knows the traditional answer (the righteous receive blessing, the wicked receive destruction) and is about to demonstrate that he qualifies for blessing, not destruction.
3. Job states the orthodox position: eid (disaster, ruin) belongs to the avval (the unjust, the crooked), and nekher (estrangement, strange misfortune) to the po'ale aven (workers of wickedness). He is setting up the logical framework: if disaster is for the wicked, and I am not wicked, then my disaster is unjust.
4. Job appeals to divine omniscience as his ally, not his threat. If God sees (yir'eh) every derekh (way, path) and counts (yispor) every tse'ad (step), then God knows Job is innocent. The same divine surveillance that terrified Job earlier (7:17-20) now becomes the basis for his defense — God's all-seeing eye must confirm his integrity.
5. The first 'if' (im) clause begins the oath proper. Walking 'with' (im) shav (emptiness, falsehood, worthlessness) personifies deception as a traveling companion. The foot hastening (tachash) toward mirmah (deceit, treachery) adds urgency — Job swears he has not even moved quickly in the direction of dishonesty. The protasis (if-clause) will be completed by the apodosis (then-clause) in the following verses.
6. Mo'azne-tsedeq ('scales of justice/righteousness') were literal balance scales used in the marketplace, here metaphorically applied to divine judgment. The word tummah ('integrity, blamelessness') is from the same root as tam ('complete, whole, blameless') — the first adjective applied to Job in the book (1:1). Job's demand to be weighed is also his demand that God use accurate instruments, not rigged ones.
7. Three conditions in one verse: the foot straying (titteh ashuri) from the derekh (way, path), the heart (libbi) following the eyes (a reversal of the covenant of v1 — if the eyes have led the heart astray), and any mu'um (stain, blemish, defect) clinging to the hands (kapai). The progression is from action (step) to desire (heart following eyes) to consequence (stained hands). Job claims purity at every level.
8. The self-imprecation: if Job has been dishonest, may the covenant curse of Deuteronomy 28:30-33 fall on him — planting but not harvesting, laboring for the benefit of strangers. The tse'etsa'ai ('my offspring, my produce') being yeshorashu ('uprooted') carries a double meaning: it can refer to agricultural produce or to descendants. The curse strikes at both livelihood and legacy.
9. The verb niftah ('was enticed, was seduced, was deceived') indicates that the heart was the target of temptation. Job addresses adultery specifically: the ishah (woman) in question is his neighbor's wife, indicated by the lurking at the petach re'i ('door of my neighbor/friend'). The word aravti ('I lurked, I lay in ambush') uses the vocabulary of predation — stalking prey.
10. The self-imprecation for adultery is devastating: titchan ('let her grind') is both literal (grinding grain was menial labor, usually assigned to slaves) and a euphemism for sexual servitude. The second line — 'let others kneel/bow over her' (yikhre'un acherin) — is explicitly sexual. Job invokes measure-for-measure justice: if he violated another man's marriage, let his own marriage be violated. The harshness of the curse reflects the gravity with which the ancient world treated adultery.
11. Job labels adultery with two terms: zimmah ('depravity, wickedness, a planned evil') and avon pelilim ('an iniquity of judges,' meaning a crime serious enough to require judicial action). The word zimmah implies premeditation — this is not accidental but deliberate moral corruption. Pelilim ('judges') indicates the community's legal system should intervene.
12. Adultery is compared to esh (fire) that consumes all the way to Abaddon — the realm of destruction, a synonym for Sheol and the grave. The verb teshareh ('it would uproot') applied to tevuati ('my produce, my increase') means adultery destroys not only the relationship but everything the adulterer has built. The fire and uprooting imagery echoes the agricultural curses of verse 8.
13. Job now addresses his treatment of servants — a remarkable ethical claim in the ancient world, where slaves had few legal rights. The verb em'as ('I rejected, I despised') applied to mishpat avdi ('the justice/right of my servant') means Job treated his servants' complaints as legitimate legal claims deserving fair hearing. The phrase be-rivam immadi ('when they contended with me') means the servants could bring disputes against their master — an extraordinary concession of equality before justice.
14. Job grounds his treatment of servants in accountability to God. The verb yaqum ('he rises') refers to God rising in judgment, and yifqod ('he visits, he examines, he calls to account') is the verb for divine inspection. Job's question is rhetorical: if he mistreated his servants, he would have no defense before God. The fear of divine judgment motivates just treatment of those below him.
15. The rhetorical question format expects the answer 'yes.' The beten (belly, womb) and rechem (womb) are parallel terms emphasizing the shared origin of all humans in the same creative process. The word echad ('one') — one womb — may also mean 'one God' formed both. Paul echoes this logic in Ephesians 6:9: 'their Master and yours is in heaven, and with him there is no favoritism.'

16. A new section of the oath addresses treatment of the vulnerable. The dallim ('the poor, the weak, the thin ones') have a chefets ('desire, need, what they long for'), and Job swears he has not withheld (emna') it. The almanah (widow) whose eyes akalleh ('I caused to fail, to grow dim') describes a woman watching and waiting for help until her eyes lose hope. Job denies causing this kind of despair.
17. The pitti ('my morsel, my piece of bread') eaten levaddi ('by myself alone') describes the sin of hoarding food when others are hungry. The yatom ('orphan, fatherless child') not eating from it (mimmennah) would mean Job kept his table closed to the most vulnerable. Job denies this — his bread was always shared.
18. Job's parenthetical claim is hyperbolic but theologically pointed: mi-ne'urai ('from my youth') and mi-beten immi ('from my mother's womb') mean that caring for the fatherless and the widow has been his lifelong practice, not a late-life virtue. The verb gedelani ('he grew me up' or 'I raised him') ke-av ('like a father') means Job served as a surrogate father to orphans. The verb anchennah ('I guided her') applied to the widow means he provided direction and protection.
19. The oved ('perishing one') from verse 29:13 returns — someone in mortal danger from exposure. The beli levush ('without clothing') and ein kesut ('no covering') describe complete destitution. The evyon (destitute, needy) is the most desperate category of poor person. Job swears he never saw this condition without acting.
20. The chalatsav ('his loins, his body') berakhuni ('blessed me') is a vivid image: the very body of the poor person, once shivering and now warm, pronounces blessing on Job. The gez kevasai ('the shearing of my sheep') provided the wool for clothing. Job's generosity is specific and material — not abstract charity but actual wool from actual sheep given to actual cold people.
21. The hanifoti yadi ('I waved/raised my hand') against the yatom (fatherless) describes using power against the powerless. The condition ki-er'eh va-sha'ar ezrati ('because I saw my help in the gate') means: because I had allies in the court who would back me, and so I felt safe abusing the orphan. Job swears he never exploited his political connections to oppress the vulnerable.
22. The self-imprecation for oppressing orphans targets the offending limb: the katefi (shoulder, arm) that was raised against the fatherless should fall from the shikmah (shoulder blade), and the ezro'i (forearm) should break from the qanah (upper arm bone, socket). Measure-for-measure justice: the arm that struck the orphan should be destroyed.
23. Job explains the motivation behind his ethical behavior: pachad (dread, terror) of divine eid (disaster, calamity) and se'eto (his exaltation, his majesty). This is not servile fear but profound reverence — Job feared God's judgment enough to govern his conduct, even when no human eye was watching. The phrase lo ukhal ('I could not endure, I was not able') acknowledges God's overwhelming power.
24. A new section addresses idolatry, beginning with the worship of wealth. The zahav (gold) as kisli ('my confidence, my security') and the kethem (fine gold, pure gold) as mivtachi ('my trust') describe making money into a functional god — relying on wealth the way one should rely on God alone. This is the idolatry of materialism, one of the most common forms of unfaithfulness in the wisdom tradition.
25. The sin here is not possessing wealth but placing one's joy (esmach) in it. The cheili ('my strength, my wealth, my army') and the kabir ('the abundance') that his hand matse'ah ('found, acquired') are not inherently evil — the question is whether Job's heart rested in them or in God. This distinction between having wealth and trusting wealth runs through the entire wisdom tradition.
26. Job now addresses astral worship — the most widespread form of idolatry in the ancient Near East. The or (light) ki yahel ('when it shone brilliantly') refers to the sun, and the yare'ach (moon) yaqar holekh ('precious/splendid in its course') describes the moon's majestic passage across the night sky. The verb er'eh ('I gazed, I looked at') carries the same intentional quality as the gaze in verse 1 — this is not casual observation but worship-directed attention.
27. The verb yiftt ('was enticed') returns from verse 9 (where it described enticement toward adultery) — here applied to astral worship. The gesture va-tishshaq yadi le-fi ('my hand kissed to my mouth') describes the act of blowing a kiss toward the heavenly body — a common worship gesture in the ancient world. The ba-seter libbi ('in the secret of my heart') means even internal, hidden idolatry. Job governs not only his actions but his secret affections.
28. Job labels astral worship the same way he labeled adultery: avon pelili ('a judicial offense'). The reason is devastating in its clarity: ki-khichashti la-El mimma'al ('for I would have been false to the God who is above'). Worshiping the sun and moon is not merely a religious error — it is a lie told to the face of the God who made them. The verb kichashti ('I would have denied, been false to') carries the weight of covenant betrayal.
29. Job now addresses Schadenfreude — rejoicing (esmach) at the pid (ruin, destruction, calamity) of his mesane'i ('the one who hates me'). The verb hitrorarti ('I roused myself, I was stirred up') describes the inner thrill of seeing a rival fall. Job denies both the outward expression and the inward feeling. This anticipates Proverbs 24:17-18 ('do not rejoice when your enemy falls') and Jesus's teaching to love enemies (Matthew 5:44).
30. Job did not allow his palate (chikki) to sin (lachato) by invoking an alah (oath, curse) against his enemy's nephesh (life, being). In a world where spoken curses were believed to carry real power, Job's restraint is significant. He not only refrained from celebrating his enemy's suffering (v29) but also from invoking divine punishment against him.
31. This verse is traditionally difficult. The mete oholi ('the people of my tent,' Job's household) testify to Job's generous hospitality. The phrase mi-yitten mi-besaro lo nisba ('who will give — from his flesh we are not satisfied') most likely means: who has not been filled by Job's provision? The household itself witnesses that no one left Job's table hungry. The besaro ('his flesh/meat') refers to the meat Job served at his table.

32. The ger (stranger, sojourner, alien) did not yalin (spend the night) ba-chuts (in the street, outside). Job's delatai (my doors) were always open — eftach ('I opened') — to the orach (traveler, one on a journey). Hospitality to strangers was a sacred obligation in the ancient Near East, and its violation is the sin of Sodom in Genesis 19. Job practices the opposite of Sodom.
33. The verb kissiti ('I covered, I concealed') is the same verb used in Psalm 32:5 ('I did not hide my iniquity'). The phrase ke-adam ('like Adam' or 'like humanity') makes this either a specific allusion to Genesis 3 or a universal statement about human nature. The litmon ('to hide, to bury') be-chubbi ('in my bosom') suggests stuffing guilt deep inside where no one can see it. Job denies this kind of spiritual deception.
34. Job asks whether fear of public opinion ever caused him to hide sin. The hamon rabbah ('great multitude') and the buz-mishpachot ('contempt of clans/families') represent social pressure. The verb e'erots ('I dreaded') and yechitteni ('it terrified me') describe the fear of exposure. Job's point: he never sinned and then stayed silent (eddom) or refused to go out (lo etse fatach, 'I did not go out the door') because of fear that others might discover his wrongdoing. He had nothing to hide.
35. The tav (mark, sign, signature) is the last letter of the Hebrew alphabet and was used as a mark or signature by those who could not write their name. Job is signing his oath — putting his life behind every word. The ish rivi ('man of my lawsuit') may refer to God as Job's legal opponent, or to a human accuser. The sefer (scroll, document, book) is the formal written indictment. Job is demanding due process from the Almighty.
36. Job's response to the hypothetical indictment is staggering: he would not cringe from it but wear it. On his shikmi ('my shoulder') he would carry it — the shoulder bears the weight of authority. He would bind it (e'endennu) as atarot ('crowns, wreaths') — wearing the accusation as a diadem. The confidence is absolute: whatever charges are brought, Job will display them publicly because he knows they cannot stand. The image inverts every expectation: the accused becomes the crowned.
37. Job would declare (aggidenu) the mispar tse'adai ('the number of my steps') — a complete accounting of every action. He would approach God kemo-nagid ('like a prince, like a leader') — not groveling but with the dignity of someone who has nothing to hide. The nagid (ruler, prince, one who is in front) walks forward without fear. Job's innocence gives him royal bearing before the divine court.
38. The final oath section addresses Job's relationship with the land itself. The adamati ('my ground, my land') tiz'aq ('cries out, screams') — the same verb used for human cries of injustice. The telameiha ('its furrows') yivkayun ('they weep') — the plowed rows of earth are personified as witnesses. The land can testify against an unjust owner, just as Abel's blood cried from the ground in Genesis 4:10. Job treats the earth as a moral agent with standing in God's court.
39. Two crimes against the land: eating its kochah ('its strength, its produce') beli-kasef ('without silver, without payment') means taking the harvest without compensating those who worked the land. The second crime is worse: nephesh be'aleiha hipachti ('I caused the soul/life of its owners to expire') means working people to death or defrauding them of their livelihood until they perished. Job denies both exploitation of the land and exploitation of the people who work it.
40. The tachat...tachat ('instead of...instead of') structure invokes covenant reversal: the land that should produce food produces only weeds. The choach (thorn) is the same word from Genesis 3:18. The bo'shah (stinkweed, noxious plant) appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. The colophon tammu divre Iyyov ('the words of Job are complete/finished') uses the verb tamam ('to be complete, to be finished, to be whole') — related to the adjective tam ('blameless') that describes Job in 1:1. Job's words are tam — complete, whole, blameless — just as Job himself is.

32

Summary: *A new voice enters the drama. Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite, a younger man who has been listening in furious silence, can no longer contain himself. The narrator explains in prose (vv. 1-5) that the three friends have stopped answering Job because he is righteous in his own eyes, and that Elihu's anger burns against Job for justifying himself rather than God, and against the three friends for condemning Job without finding an answer. When Elihu finally speaks (vv. 6-22), his opening poem is entirely about the right to speak. He defers to age, then claims that age alone does not guarantee wisdom — it is the spirit in a person, the breath of the Almighty, that gives understanding. He watched the three friends fail, and now he is bursting like a wineskin full of new wine. He will speak without favoritism, without flattery, because his Maker would take him away if he did.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Elihu is the most controversial character in the book of Job. He appears without introduction in the prologue, speaks for six chapters without interruption, and is never mentioned in God's response or the epilogue. Some scholars consider his speeches a later addition; others see him as the author's deliberate bridge between the failed arguments of the friends and the divine speeches of chapters 38-41. What is undeniable is the literary brilliance of his entrance: he is young, angry, and overflowing with words. His self-description as a wineskin about to burst (v. 19) is one of the most vivid images of compulsive speech in all of literature. He is not wrong that the friends have failed — they have. He is not wrong that age does not guarantee wisdom — it does not. But his extraordinary preamble about his own right to speak (sixteen verses of it) reveals a man who is*

more confident in his authority than in his argument. The poem is about Elihu, not about God or Job.

Translation Friction: The prose introduction (vv. 1-5) is dense with the word charah ('burned with anger') — it appears four times in five verses. Elihu is angry at Job for self-justification and angry at the friends for failing to answer. This double anger is the key to his character: he rejects both positions. He will not side with Job against God or with the friends against Job. He claims a third way. The question the reader must carry through the next four chapters is whether Elihu actually delivers on this promise or merely restates the friends' theology in younger, more eloquent packaging. The Hebrew root ruach ('spirit, wind, breath') dominates the poem — Elihu claims the ruach of God in him (v. 8), says his belly is like wine without a vent (v. 19), and must open his lips to find ruach ('relief,' literally 'wind,' v. 20). The spirit that inspires him is also the pressure that threatens to explode him.

Connections: Elihu's claim that the spirit of God gives understanding (v. 8) echoes Proverbs 2:6 ('the LORD gives wisdom') and anticipates God's own speeches, where wisdom belongs to the Creator alone. His wineskin image (v. 19) prefigures Jesus' saying about new wine in old wineskins (Mark 2:22). The genealogy 'Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite, of the family of Ram' (v. 2) is unusually detailed — Buz is Nahor's son (Genesis 22:21), making Elihu a relative of Abraham. The name Barachel means 'God has blessed,' and Elihu means 'He is my God,' both theologically loaded names for a character about to lecture on divine justice.

¹These three men gave up responding to Job, for he considered himself righteous. ²Then the anger of Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite, of the clan of Ram, burned hot. His anger burned against Job because he justified himself rather than God. ³His anger also burned against his three friends, because they had found no answer and yet had condemned Job. ⁴Now Elihu had waited to speak to Job, because they were older than he in years. ⁵When Elihu saw that there was no answer in the mouths of these three men, his anger burned.

⁶Then Elihu son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said:

I am young in years, and you are aged;
therefore I held back, I was afraid
to declare what I know to you.

⁷I thought, 'Let days speak,
and the abundance of years teach wisdom.'

⁸But it is the spirit in a person,
the breath of the Almighty, that gives understanding.

⁹It is not the great who are wise,
nor the aged who understand justice.

¹⁰Therefore I say: Listen to me.
I too will declare what I know.

¹¹Look — I waited for your words.
I listened for your insights
while you searched for what to say.

¹²I paid close attention to you,
but not one of you refuted Job.
None of you answered his arguments.

¹³Do not say, 'We have found wisdom —
only God can refute him, not a man.'

¹⁴He has not directed his words against me,
and I will not answer him with your arguments.

¹⁵They are dismayed; they answer no more.
Words have departed from them.

¹⁶I waited, but they do not speak.
They stand there; they answer no more.

¹⁷I too will answer my part.
I too will declare what I know.

¹⁸For I am full of words;
the spirit in my belly presses hard against me.

¹⁹My belly is like wine that has no vent —
like new wineskins, ready to burst.

²⁰Let me speak, so I can breathe.
Let me open my lips and answer.

²¹I will not show favoritism to anyone,
and I will not flatter any person.

²²For I do not know how to flatter;
if I did, my Maker would soon carry me off.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is prose narration, not poetry. The three friends (Eliphaz, Bildad, Zophar) have completed their cycles of argument. The phrase *tsaddiq be'einav* ('righteous in his own eyes') is ambiguous — it could be the narrator's subtle criticism of Job's self-righteousness, or simply an observation that Job maintained his innocence. Given the prologue's endorsement of Job's righteousness, the latter reading is more likely.
2. Buz is listed as a son of Nahor, Abraham's brother, in Genesis 22:21, making Elihu a distant relative of the Abrahamic family. The clan of Ram may connect to the Judahite genealogy of Ruth 4:19, though this is uncertain. The phrase *tsaddeqo nafsho me-Elohim* ('he justified himself more than God') could also be translated 'he justified himself before God' — but the comparative sense is stronger: Job made himself righteous at God's expense.
3. The tension between 'found no answer' and 'condemned Job' is the crux of Elihu's critique of the friends. They operated from a closed system: suffering proves guilt, therefore Job is guilty. But they never demonstrated what Job's guilt was. Elihu will attempt what they could not — to explain suffering without accusing the sufferer.
4. The verb *chikkah* ('he waited') indicates deliberate restraint, not passive silence. Elihu held back because of age-based deference: *zeqenim hemmah mimmennu le-yamim* ('they were elder than he in days'). Ancient Near Eastern culture demanded that younger men yield the floor to elders. Elihu has been observing protocol, but his patience has reached its limit.
5. The fourth appearance of *charah af* in this introduction. The phrase *ein ma'aneh be-fi* ('there was no answer in the mouth of') conveys total rhetorical failure — the friends' mouths are empty. Their arguments have been exhausted. This observation triggers Elihu's final ignition: he has waited long enough, and no one else is going to answer. The prose introduction ends here; poetry begins in verse 6.
6. The word *yeshishim* ('very old, aged') occurs only here and in 15:10 in Job. It implies not just old age but venerable antiquity. Elihu's deference is culturally appropriate but will soon be qualified: age deserves first hearing, not final authority.
7. Elihu articulates the conventional principle he has been following: *yamim yedabberu* ('days should speak') — age has the right to speak first. The parallel *ve-rov shanim yodi'u chokhmah* ('and abundance of years should make wisdom known') states the assumption: more years equals more wisdom. Elihu presents this as his former belief, which he is about to overturn.
8. The pairing of *ruach* ('spirit, wind, breath') and *neshamah* ('breath, life-breath') echoes Genesis 2:7 where God breathes the *neshamah* of life into Adam. Elihu's argument is that the same divine breath that gives life also gives understanding. The name *Shaddai* ('the Almighty') is Job's preferred name for God throughout the dialogue — Elihu adopts Job's own theological vocabulary.

9. The *lo rabbim yechkamu* ('not the many/great are wise') directly challenges the assumption of verse 7. The parallel *u-zeqenim yavinu mishpat* ('and elders understand judgment') with the implied negative extends the challenge: neither numbers nor years guarantee wisdom or just discernment. The word *mishpat* ('judgment, justice, right ruling') is a legal term — Elihu is saying the elders have failed to render a correct verdict in Job's case.
10. Having established that age does not guarantee wisdom and that the spirit of God gives understanding to anyone, Elihu now claims his right to speak: *shim'ah li* ('listen to me'). The *achavveh de'i af ani* ('I too will declare my knowledge') uses the same verb *chavvah* from verse 6, but now without the fear. The *af ani* ('I also, even I') is emphatic — Elihu inserts himself into the conversation as a legitimate participant.
11. The verb *hochalti* ('I waited, I hoped') implies patient, expectant waiting — Elihu genuinely hoped the elders would produce a compelling answer. The *azin* ('I gave ear') conveys attentive listening. The phrase *ad tachqerun millin* ('until you searched out words') uses *chaqar* ('to search, to probe, to investigate') — a word used for mining precious metals. Elihu watched them dig for arguments. They came up empty.
12. The verb *etbonan* ('I paid close attention, I discerned carefully') from *bin* intensifies the listening — Elihu was not passively hearing but actively evaluating. The verdict: *ein le-Iyov mokhiach* ('there is no one proving Job wrong'). The word *mokhiach* (Hiphil participle of *yakach*, 'to reprove, to argue, to decide') is a legal term for a successful prosecution. No one successfully prosecuted the case against Job. The parallel *oneh amarav* ('answering his words') confirms the failure: Job's arguments stand unanswered.
13. The verb *yiddefennu* ('will thrust him, will drive him away') from *nada* suggests forceful pushing. The friends' position — that only God's direct intervention can answer Job — is exactly what will happen in chapters 38-41. But Elihu does not know that yet. He believes the human case can be made.
14. Elihu makes two claims: first, Job has not addressed him personally, so Elihu approaches without personal offense. Second, and more importantly, *u-ve-imreikhem lo ashivenu* ('and with your words I will not answer him') — Elihu will not recycle the friends' failed arguments. He promises a fresh approach, not a repackaging of retribution theology. Whether he keeps this promise is one of the central interpretive questions of the Elihu speeches.
15. Elihu now addresses the audience (or perhaps speaks to himself) about the friends in the third person. The verb *chattu* ('they were dismayed, they were shattered') from *chatat* conveys defeat. The phrase *he'etiqu mehem millin* ('words have moved away from them') is a vivid image — words themselves have abandoned the three friends. Language has left the building. Elihu steps into the verbal vacuum.
16. The verb *hochalti* returns from verse 11, forming a frame: Elihu waited, listened, evaluated, and waited again. The friends' silence is now physical: *amdu* ('they stood still') — they are frozen, speechless, immobilized by their failure. The repetition of *lo anu od* ('they answered no more') from verse 15 hammers the point: the floor is empty.
17. The emphatic *af ani* ('I also, even I') appears twice, framing the verse. The word *chelqi* ('my part, my portion') suggests Elihu sees the conversation as having allotted shares — each speaker has a portion, and his has not yet been delivered. The verb *achavveh* ('I will declare') from *chavvah* appears for the third time (vv. 6, 10, 17), the keynote verb of this poem: Elihu's purpose is to declare, to make known, to set forth.
18. The word *beten* ('belly, womb, inner body') grounds the experience in the gut, not the head. Elihu's wisdom is not intellectual but visceral — it is felt in the body as pressure. This connects to the ancient Near Eastern concept that the internal organs were the seat of thought and emotion.
19. This image will be echoed in Jesus' saying about new wine in old wineskins (Matthew 9:17, Mark 2:22, Luke 5:37-38). The fermentation metaphor implies that Elihu's words are alive, growing, developing pressure of their own — they are not prepared speeches but living insights that demand expression.
20. The shift from 'I am full' (v. 18) to 'let me speak so I can breathe' (v. 20) completes the fermentation metaphor: sealed container, building pressure, release. Elihu's speech is presented not as a choice but as a physical necessity.
21. This pledge of impartiality echoes the prophetic tradition: Samuel (1 Samuel 12:3), Isaiah, and Amos all claim to speak without favoritism. Elihu positions himself as a truth-teller uncorrupted by social hierarchy. Whether his subsequent speeches live up to this standard is debatable.
22. The verb *yissa'eni* ('would carry me away') from *nasa* can mean 'to lift up' (in blessing) or 'to carry off' (in judgment). Here it clearly means removal — God would take Elihu out of the conversation, out of the world. This verse establishes the theological stakes of Elihu's speech: he speaks under divine compulsion, and dishonesty would be fatal.

33

Summary: *Elihu addresses Job directly with his first sustained argument: God speaks to human beings, but they do not perceive it. God speaks through dreams and night visions, terrifying people to turn them from destructive paths. God also speaks through suffering — through pain on the sickbed, when a person wastes away and draws near the pit. But then, if there is a mediating angel, one among a thousand, to declare what is right for that person, God is gracious and says, 'Deliver him from going down to the pit — I have found a ransom.' The person's flesh is restored, he returns to the days of his youth, he prays and God accepts him, and he comes before others declaring, 'I sinned and twisted what was right, but it was not repaid to me.' God redeems his soul from the pit, and his life sees light. Elihu concludes by inviting Job to respond or, if he has nothing to say, to listen further.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Job 33 contains one of the most theologically advanced passages in the Hebrew Bible. In verses 23-28, Elihu describes a process of suffering, intercession, ransom, and restoration that anticipates major themes in later biblical theology. The malakh melits ('mediating angel' or 'interpreting messenger') who declares what is right for the sufferer, the kofer ('ransom') that God finds to deliver from the pit, and the padah ('redemption') of the soul — these concepts form a constellation that later tradition will connect to atonement theology. What makes Elihu's contribution distinctive is that he reframes suffering not as punishment (the friends' view) or as inexplicable injustice (Job's view) but as communication. God uses suffering to speak — to open ears, to redirect lives, to create the conditions in which a person can hear what comfort and prosperity would have drowned out. This is not a complete theodicy, but it is the first voice in the dialogue that offers suffering a purpose beyond retribution.*

Translation Friction: *Elihu begins by quoting Job's own words back to him (vv. 8-11) and then says, 'In this you are not right' (v. 12). This is more honest and more respectful than anything the three friends did — Elihu engages Job's actual arguments rather than attacking a straw man. However, the quotation is selective: Elihu focuses on Job's claim of total innocence and God's hostility but ignores Job's more nuanced protests about legal process and the absence of a mediator. Ironically, Elihu then offers exactly the mediator figure Job longed for in 9:33 (a mokiach, 'arbiter') and 16:19 (a witness in heaven) — but Elihu does not seem to realize he is answering Job's earlier prayers. The mediating angel of verse 23 is the theological answer to Job's courtroom metaphor, but Elihu presents it as his own insight rather than as a response to Job's request.*

Connections: *The malakh melits ('mediating angel') of verse 23 connects to Job's yearning for an arbiter (mokiach) in 9:33 and a witness/advocate (ed/melits) in 16:19-21. The kofer ('ransom') of verse 24 uses the same root as the kippurim ('atonements') of Leviticus 16 and anticipates the ransom (lutron) language of Mark 10:45. The restoration sequence — flesh renewed, youth restored, prayer accepted, sin confessed, soul redeemed — parallels the jubilee theology of Leviticus 25 and the restoration promises of the prophets. The phrase 'his life shall see light' (v. 28) connects to the Servant Song of Isaiah 53:11 ('he shall see light and be satisfied'). Elihu's theology of suffering as divine communication anticipates Hebrews 12:5-11, which interprets suffering as the discipline of a loving father.*

¹But now, Job — hear my words.

Listen to everything I say.

²Look — I have opened my mouth;
my tongue speaks against my palate.

³My words come from an upright heart,
and my lips speak knowledge sincerely.

⁴The spirit of God made me,
and the breath of the Almighty gives me life.

⁵If you can, answer me.
Set your case in order before me; take your stand.

⁶I stand before God just as you do.
I too was pinched from clay.

⁷My presence will not terrify you,
and my pressure on you will not be heavy.

⁸But you have said in my hearing —
yes, I heard the very sound of your words:

⁹'I am pure, without transgression.
I am clean; there is no guilt in me.'

¹⁰'But God finds pretexts against me;
he counts me as his enemy.'

¹¹'He puts my feet in the stocks;
he watches all my paths.'

¹²In this you are not right — let me answer you:
God is greater than any mortal.

¹³Why do you contend against him?
He does not answer for any of his actions.

¹⁴For God speaks in one way,
and in two — though no one perceives it.

¹⁵In a dream, in a vision of the night,
when deep sleep falls upon people,
in slumber on the bed —

¹⁶then he opens people's ears
and seals his instruction upon them,

¹⁷to turn a person from a deed,
to cut away pride from a man.

¹⁸He holds his soul back from the pit
and his life from crossing over into death.

¹⁹Or a person is rebuked with pain on the sickbed,
with unceasing conflict in the bones —

²⁰so that his life loathes bread
and his appetite recoils from choice food.

²¹His flesh wastes away until it cannot be seen,
and his bones, once hidden, protrude.

²²His soul draws near the pit,
his life approaches the realm of death.

²³If there is an angel beside him,
a mediator, one among a thousand,
to declare to a person what is right for him —

²⁴then God is gracious to him and says,
'Deliver him from going down to the pit —
I have found a ransom.'

²⁵His flesh becomes fresher than a child's;
he returns to the days of his youth.

²⁶He prays to God, and God accepts him.
He sees God's face with a shout of joy,
and God restores his righteousness to him.

²⁷He sings before others and says,
'I sinned and twisted what was right,
but it was not repaid to me.'

²⁸He redeemed my soul from crossing into the pit,
and my life will see the light.

²⁹God does all these things
two or three times with a person —

³⁰to bring his soul back from the pit,
to be illuminated by the light of the living.

³¹Pay attention, Job — listen to me.
Be silent, and let me speak.

³²If you have words, answer me.
Speak — for I want to see you vindicated.

³³If not, listen to me.
Be silent, and I will teach you wisdom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Elihu addresses Job by name — the first time any speaker in the dialogue has done so. The friends spoke about Job in the third person or addressed him with 'you.' Elihu's direct address signals a different kind of engagement: personal, face-to-face, naming the man he is about to challenge.
2. The verb *patachti* ('I have opened') echoes Job's *patach* in 3:1 and Elihu's promised opening in 32:20. The phrase *dibbrah leshoni bechikki* ('my tongue has spoken in my palate') gives a physical description of speech: the tongue pressing against the roof of the mouth to form words. Elihu is hyper-aware of the act of speaking — every verse of his introduction is about the mechanics and morality of utterance.
3. The *yosher libbi* ('the uprightness of my heart') *amarai* ('my words') — Elihu claims his speech originates in moral integrity, not intellectual posturing. The parallel *ve-da'at sefatai barur millelu* ('and knowledge my lips clearly speak') emphasizes clarity: *barur* ('clear, pure, refined') suggests words that have been purified of deception. Elihu stakes his credibility on sincerity and transparency.
4. This verse echoes Genesis 2:7 almost directly: God formed man and breathed into his nostrils the *neshamah* of life. Elihu uses this shared origin to establish credibility and equality — he is not claiming to be above Job but alongside him, fellow creature before the same Creator.

5. Elihu invites rebuttal: *im tukal hashiveni* ('if you are able, answer me'). The verb *arkhah* ('set in order, arrange') is a legal term for marshaling arguments in a court case — the same courtroom language Job himself has used. The verb *hityatstsavah* ('take your stand, present yourself') suggests a formal legal posture. Elihu frames the exchange as a fair hearing, not a lecture.
6. The verb *qarats* ('to pinch off') is rare and evocative — it suggests the specific action of a potter tearing a piece of clay from a larger mass to begin forming a vessel. This is more intimate than the general 'formed' (*yatsar*) of Genesis 2:7. Elihu's self-description is humble: he is a torn-off piece of earth.
7. The word *eimah* ('terror, dread') and the verb *ba'at* ('to terrify') are the same terms Job used when describing his inability to face God in court (9:34, 13:21). Elihu's awareness of Job's specific vocabulary suggests he has been listening carefully to the entire dialogue.
8. Elihu now turns from introduction to argument. The phrase *amarta be-oznai* ('you said in my ears') emphasizes that Elihu is not relying on hearsay — he heard Job with his own ears. The *qol millin eshma* ('the sound of words I heard') doubles down: this is direct testimony. Elihu will now quote Job, and the quotation, while selective, is not fabricated.
9. The word *zakh* ('pure') is from the language of metallurgy and oil-pressing — it means refined, free of impurities. The word *chaf* ('innocent') means 'washed clean.' Together with *beli fasha* ('without rebellion'), these cover the full spectrum of Job's innocence claims. Elihu does not dispute Job's moral character — he disputes the theological conclusion Job draws from it.
10. Elihu continues quoting Job. The word *tenu'ot* ('pretexts, occasions for hostility, charges') suggests trumped-up accusations — God is looking for excuses to punish Job. The verb *yachsheveni* ('he counts me, he reckons me') *le-oyev lo* ('as an enemy to him') echoes Job 13:24 and 19:11 where Job accused God of treating him as a foe. Elihu has identified the core of Job's complaint: not that God punishes sin, but that God persecutes innocence.
11. The third element of Elihu's quotation: *yasem bassad raglai* ('he places my feet in the stocks') echoes Job 13:27 almost verbatim. The *sad* ('stocks, wooden block') is a restraining device for prisoners. The *yishmor kol orchotai* ('he watches all my paths') echoes the same verse — God as warden, tracking every movement. Elihu has accurately captured Job's image of God as jailer.
12. This is Elihu's thesis statement. He does not say Job is wicked (as the friends did) or that Job's suffering is deserved. He says Job is wrong about God — specifically, wrong to demand that God explain Himself on human terms. The phrase *me-enosh* ('than a mortal') uses *enosh*, the term for humanity in its weakness and mortality, emphasizing the gap between Creator and creature.
13. The verb *rivota* ('you contend, you bring a lawsuit') is legal language — Job has been suing God, and Elihu asks why. The reason God does not respond to Job's lawsuit is not indifference but sovereignty: *kol devarav lo ya'aneh* ('all his words/matters he does not answer'). God is not accountable to human courts. This sounds like it could slide into the friends' authoritarianism, but Elihu's next move is different: he will argue that God does speak — just not in the courtroom Job has constructed.
14. The numerical ladder pattern (one ... two) is common in Hebrew poetry (Proverbs 6:16, 30:15, 30:18, Amos 1:3). It does not mean exactly two; it means 'multiple, more than you expect.' Elihu will describe two specific channels: dreams (vv. 15-18) and pain (vv. 19-22).
15. The *tardemah* ('deep sleep') is consistently associated with divine action in the Hebrew Bible: God puts Adam into *tardemah* to create Eve, puts Abraham into *tardemah* to make the covenant, causes *tardemah* to fall on Saul's camp so David can escape. It is not natural sleep but supernaturally deepened unconsciousness — the state in which God can work without human interference.
16. The phrase *galah ozen* ('uncover the ear') appears also in 1 Samuel 9:15 ('the LORD had uncovered Samuel's ear') and 2 Samuel 7:27 ('you, LORD, have uncovered the ear of your servant'). It is the language of prophetic revelation. Elihu claims that ordinary people receive prophetic-quality communication from God in dreams.
17. The purpose of the dream: *lehasir adam ma'aseh* ('to turn a person away from a deed') — to redirect someone from a destructive course of action. The parallel *ve-gevah mi-gever yekhsasseh* ('and pride from a man he covers/hides') uses the verb *kasah* ('to cover, to hide, to remove') — God covers pride, buries it, removes it from the person's operating system. Dreams are preventive medicine: they stop bad actions before they happen and strip away the arrogance that drives them.
18. The word *shachat* ('pit') appears throughout Job as a synonym for death and Sheol (9:31, 17:14). It will appear again in verses 22, 24, 28, and 30 of this chapter, forming the structural keyword of Elihu's argument: the pit is the destination God is trying to prevent.
19. Elihu's move here is theologically daring. He does not say suffering is punishment for specific sins (the friends' position) but that suffering is a form of divine address — God speaking through the body when the mind would not listen. This reframes the entire debate: Job's suffering may not be retribution but communication.
20. The verb *zihamattu* ('it makes loathsome, it causes revulsion') from *zaham* describes visceral disgust — the sick person's body rejects food. The *chayyato lachem* ('his life bread') and *nafsho ma'akhal ta'avah* ('his appetite choice food') describe the total collapse of appetite. Even the most desirable food (*ma'akhal ta'avah*, 'food of desire') becomes nauseating. The body, which should sustain life through eating, now refuses nourishment.
21. The verb *yikhel* ('it is consumed, it wastes away') from *kalah* describes total depletion. The *besaro me-ro'i* ('his flesh from sight') — the flesh disappears, consumed by disease. The reversal follows: *ve-shuppu atsmotav lo ru'u* ('and his bones that were not seen are laid bare'). The bones that flesh once covered now jut out visibly. The body becomes a skeleton while still alive — a walking death. This is a clinical description of severe wasting illness.

- 22.** The progression reaches its terminus: vatiqrav la-shachat nafsho ('his soul draws near to the pit'). The shachat ('pit') returns from verse 18 — the very destination God's dream was trying to prevent. The parallel ve-chayyato la-memitim ('and his life to the death-dealers') introduces the memitim ('those who kill, the destroyers') — possibly angels of death, possibly the forces of mortality themselves. The sufferer stands at the edge of Sheol. This is the maximum point of crisis — and it is here that Elihu introduces the mediating angel.
- 23.** The malakh melits is one of the most debated figures in Job. Job asked for a mokiach ('arbitrator') in 9:33, an ed ('witness') in 16:19, and a go'el ('redeemer') in 19:25. Elihu's mediating angel may be the answer to all three requests — but Elihu presents it as his own theological insight, not as a response to Job's prayers. The phrase 'one among a thousand' emphasizes rarity: such intercession is possible but not guaranteed.
- 24.** The kofer ('ransom') is from the same root as kippur ('atonement, covering'). In Exodus 21:30, kofer is the ransom price paid to save a life. In Exodus 30:12, it is the atonement money each Israelite pays. Here, God finds the kofer — the ransom is not a human payment but a divine discovery. This reverses the normal transaction: instead of the guilty party paying to escape punishment, the judge provides the payment to rescue the accused.
- 25.** The verb rutafash occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible, making its exact meaning uncertain. The context demands something like 'made plump, made fresh, restored to healthy fullness.' The return to youth is a reversal of the wasting described in verses 19-22 — what disease consumed, God's ransom restores and then exceeds.
- 26.** The sequence — prayer, acceptance, face-to-face encounter, restored righteousness — is a complete salvation narrative compressed into a single verse. The 'seeing of God's face' is the highest possible restoration, since Exodus 33:20 declares that no one can see God's face and live. Elihu describes a person brought back from the edge of death to the fullest possible intimacy with God.
- 27.** The phrase ve-lo shavah li ('it was not repaid to me') is theologically crucial. It means that God did not give the person the punishment their sin warranted. Grace exceeded strict justice. This is the testimony of someone who has experienced kofer (ransom): I was guilty, but God found a covering, and I was restored beyond what I deserved.
- 28.** The shift from third person ('he redeemed his soul') to first person ('my life will see') in many Hebrew manuscripts has caused textual debate. Some read both as third person. The first-person reading is more dramatic — the testimony becomes personal mid-sentence, as if the speaker is overwhelmed by gratitude and drops the formal narration.
- 29.** Elihu now generalizes: hen kol elleh yifal El ('indeed, all these things God does'). The pa'amayim shalosh ('two or three times') im gaver ('with a man') is another numerical ladder: God repeats this cycle of warning, suffering, intercession, and restoration multiple times. God does not give up after one attempt. Divine patience extends to repeated interventions. The word ge'ver ('man, strong person') echoes 32:21 (gaver in the night of conception) — the same human being who was conceived in darkness can be rescued from the pit repeatedly.
- 30.** The phrase or hachayyim ('light of the living') appears also in Psalm 56:14 ('that I may walk before God in the light of the living'). It is the opposite of the tsalmaveth ('shadow of death') that Job invoked in 3:5 and 10:21-22. Elihu's vision of divine purpose ends in light, not darkness — the reversal of Job's opening curse.
- 31.** Elihu returns to direct address: haqshev Iyov shema li ('pay attention, Job, hear me'). The imperative hachresh ('be silent, be still') from charash is a demand for Job's silence — Elihu has more to say. The ve-anokhi adabber ('and I myself will speak') uses the emphatic first-person pronoun anokhi rather than the common ani, adding weight: it is I who will speak.
- 32.** The phrase chafatsti tsaddeqekha ('I desire your vindication') sets Elihu apart from the friends. Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar all worked toward Job's condemnation. Elihu works toward Job's vindication — he just insists it must come through acknowledging God's sovereignty, not through accusing God of injustice.
- 33.** The closing verse: im ayin ('if not, if you have nothing to say') attah shema li ('you listen to me'). The final promise: va-aalefka chokhmah ('and I will teach you wisdom'). The verb alaf ('to teach, to learn') is rare, adding formal weight. Elihu promises chokhmah ('wisdom') — the same wisdom he argued in 32:9 does not come automatically with age. He has positioned himself as wisdom's carrier, not by virtue of years but by virtue of the spirit (32:8). Whether he delivers on this promise is the question that chapters 34-37 will answer.

34

Summary: Elihu's second speech addresses a wider audience — he calls upon the wise men to listen and judge between his words and Job's. He quotes Job's claim that he is righteous but denied justice, then methodically argues that God cannot be unjust. His argument is structural, not evidential: God governs the entire earth; if God withdrew his spirit, all flesh would perish. Therefore God cannot act with partiality or injustice, because the one who holds all life in his hands has no motive for corruption. God does not need to examine anyone at length — he knows their works and overturns them in a night. He strikes the wicked in open sight, because they turned aside from following him and caused the cry of the poor to reach his ears. When God is silent, who can condemn? When he hides his face, who can see him? Yet he rules over nations and individuals alike. Elihu concludes by calling on Job to submit: if Job has sinned without knowing it, let God teach him; if Job has done wrong, let him repent. The decision is Job's,

not Elihu's.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Elihu's argument in this chapter operates at a different level than the friends' arguments. The friends reasoned backward from suffering to guilt: you suffer, therefore you sinned. Elihu reasons forward from God's nature to God's justice: God governs all things, therefore God cannot be unjust. This is a cosmological argument, not a forensic one. The most powerful section (vv. 14-15) imagines what would happen if God withdrew his spirit from the world — all flesh would expire, all humanity would return to dust. This counterfactual proves God's ongoing sustaining will: the fact that anything exists at all demonstrates that God is actively choosing to sustain life. A God who sustains everything by choice cannot be accused of indifferent injustice. The argument has force, but it also has a blind spot: it proves that God can do justice but does not explain why God's justice sometimes looks like injustice from the human side. Elihu knows this — his conclusion (vv. 31-37) shifts from argumentation to exhortation, urging Job to let God be the teacher rather than the defendant.*

Translation Friction: *Elihu's quotation of Job in verses 5-6 is more pointed than his previous summary: he now attributes to Job the claim that 'God has taken away my justice' and 'my wound is incurable though I am without transgression.' These are fair paraphrases of Job's actual words (27:2, 6:4, 9:17). But Elihu then adds a charge that is more aggressive: 'What man is like Job, who drinks scorn like water, who walks in company with evildoers?' (vv. 7-8). This is not something Job said — it is Elihu's characterization of the effect of Job's words. By claiming innocence while accusing God, Job has, in Elihu's view, aligned himself with those who mock God. This is a harder edge than Elihu showed in chapter 33, and it raises the question of whether Elihu is beginning to slide into the same condemnation that defeated the three friends. The chapter oscillates between genuine theological insight (vv. 14-15) and rhetorical aggression (vv. 7-8, 36-37), making Elihu a more complex and less sympathetic figure than in his first speech.*

Connections: *The counterfactual of verses 14-15 (if God withdrew his spirit, all would die) connects to Psalm 104:29-30 ('when you take away their breath, they die and return to dust; when you send forth your spirit, they are created') and to Genesis 2:7 / 3:19 (from dust, to dust). Elihu's assertion that God shows no partiality to princes (v. 19) echoes Deuteronomy 10:17 ('the LORD your God is God of gods, who shows no partiality and accepts no bribe'). The image of God overturning the mighty in a night (v. 25) anticipates Daniel's theology of divine sovereignty over kingdoms (Daniel 2:21, 'he removes kings and sets up kings'). Elihu's final challenge — 'should God repay according to your terms?' (v. 33) — foreshadows God's own challenge to Job in 38:2 and 40:8.*

¹Then Elihu answered and said:

²Hear my words, you who are wise;
you who have knowledge, listen to me.

³For the ear tests words
as the palate tastes food.

⁴Let us choose what is just;
let us determine among ourselves what is good.

⁵For Job has said, 'I am righteous,
but God has taken away my justice.'

⁶'Should I lie about my own case?
My wound is incurable, though I am without transgression.'

⁷What man is like Job,
who drinks scorn like water?

⁸He keeps company with workers of evil
and walks alongside wicked men.

⁹For he has said, 'It profits a person nothing
to take delight in God.'

¹⁰Therefore, you who have understanding, listen to me:
Far be it from God to do wickedness,
far from the Almighty to commit injustice.

¹¹For he repays a person according to their deeds
and makes everyone find what their path deserves.

¹²Truly, God does not act wickedly,
and the Almighty does not pervert justice.

¹³Who entrusted him with the earth?
Who appointed him over the whole world?

¹⁴If God set his heart on it,
if he gathered his spirit and his breath back to himself —

¹⁵all flesh would perish together,
and humanity would return to dust.

¹⁶If you have understanding, hear this;
listen to the sound of my words.

¹⁷Can one who hates justice govern?
Will you condemn the Righteous and Mighty One?

¹⁸Does one say to a king, 'Worthless one!'
Or to nobles, 'Wicked!'

¹⁹How much less the One who shows no favoritism to princes
and does not prefer the rich over the poor —
for they are all the work of his hands.

²⁰In a moment they die.
At midnight people are shaken — they pass away.
The mighty are removed, not by human hands.

²¹For his eyes are on the ways of every person,
and he sees all their steps.

²²There is no darkness, no deep shadow,
where workers of evil can hide.

²³He does not need to examine a person further
for them to come before God in judgment.

²⁴He shatters the mighty without investigation
and sets others in their place.

²⁵Therefore he knows their deeds;
 he overturns them in the night, and they are crushed.

²⁶He strikes them down for their wickedness
 in a place where all can see —

²⁷because they turned away from following him
 and gave no thought to any of his ways,

²⁸so that the cry of the poor reached him,
 and he heard the cry of the afflicted.

²⁹When he is silent, who can condemn?
 When he hides his face, who can see him? —
 whether over a nation or over a single person.

³⁰so that a godless person does not reign,
 so that the people are not ensnared.

³¹For has anyone said to God,
 'I have borne my punishment — I will offend no more'?

³²'What I cannot see, teach me.
 If I have done wrong, I will do it no more.'

³³Should God repay on your terms, since you reject his?
 You must choose — not I.
 So speak what you know.

³⁴People of understanding will say to me,
 and every wise person who hears me will agree:

³⁵'Job speaks without knowledge,
 and his words lack insight.'

³⁶Would that Job were tested to the limit
 for answering like men of wickedness!

³⁷For he adds rebellion to his sin;
 he claps his hands in scorn among us
 and multiplies his words against God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard speech-introduction formula. Elihu continues without any indication that Job has responded to the invitation of 33:32-33. Job's silence is itself significant — he does not rebut Elihu as he rebutted the three friends.
2. Elihu broadens his audience: *shim'u chakhamim* ('hear, wise ones'). He is no longer addressing Job alone but appealing to a wider circle of sages — possibly the three friends, possibly a broader assembly, possibly a rhetorical audience. The *yode'im* ('those who know, the knowledgeable') in the parallel line forms a jury: Elihu wants his case judged by competent minds.
3. This proverb appeared in Job 12:11 in Job's own mouth: 'Does not the ear test words as the palate tastes food?' Elihu either borrows Job's saying or draws from a common wisdom tradition. By using Job's own proverb, Elihu implicitly invites Job to apply his own standard of discernment to what follows.

4. The verb *nivcharah* ('let us choose') from *bachar* implies a deliberate, considered selection — not impulse but judgment. The *mishpat* ('justice, judgment, right ruling') is the object of choice: Elihu frames the discussion as a collective search for justice. The *ned'ah beinenu mah tov* ('let us know among ourselves what is good') invites communal discernment. Elihu positions himself not as a dictator of truth but as a participant in a shared inquiry.
5. Elihu quotes Job's two-part claim: *tsadaqti* ('I am righteous') and *El hesir mishpati* ('God has removed my justice'). The first part echoes Job 27:6 ('I hold fast my righteousness and will not let it go'). The second echoes Job 27:2 ('As God lives, who has taken away my justice'). Elihu accurately captures Job's position: I am innocent, and God has denied me the vindication I deserve.
6. Elihu continues the quotation. The rhetorical question *al mishpati akhazzev* ('against my justice should I lie?') paraphrases Job's refusal to recant (27:4-5). The *anush chitsi beli fasha* ('my arrow-wound is incurable without transgression') captures Job's protest that his suffering (described as an arrow wound, echoing 6:4) has no cause in his behavior. Elihu presents the full force of Job's complaint before attempting to answer it.
7. The image of drinking scorn like water recurs in Job 15:16 (Eliphaz: 'how much less one who drinks injustice like water'). Elihu may be consciously echoing Eliphaz while applying the image differently — not to humanity in general but to Job specifically. The shift from empathetic interlocutor (ch. 33) to accuser marks a tonal change in Elihu's rhetoric.
8. The verb *arach* ('he travels, he journeys') *le-chevrah* ('for companionship') *im po'alei aven* ('with workers of iniquity') accuses Job of ideological companionship with the wicked — not that Job commits evil acts, but that his theology aligns him with those who deny God's justice. The parallel *ve-lalekhet im anshei resha* ('and to walk with men of wickedness') uses the metaphor of walking together, implying shared direction and shared conclusions. Elihu's argument: by saying 'God denies justice,' Job walks the same road as those who reject God entirely.
9. The verb *ratsah* ('to be pleased with, to take delight in') here describes the human side of the relationship: taking pleasure in God, delighting in obedience. Elihu charges that Job has declared this delight worthless. The same question will be raised more subtly by the Adversary's original challenge in 1:9: 'Does Job fear God for nothing?' Elihu, without knowing it, is revisiting the book's foundational question.
10. The word *chalilah* derives from *chalal* ('to profane, to defile'). To say that God commits evil is to profane God — it violates the sacred nature of divinity itself. Elihu's argument is that Job's accusation is not merely incorrect but sacrilegious. This is stronger language than the friends used, but it rests on a different foundation: the friends accused Job of sin; Elihu accuses Job of theological error.
11. The positive statement of divine justice: *fo'al adam yeshalleim lo* ('a person's work he repays to him'). The verb *shillem* ('to repay, to complete, to make whole') implies exact correspondence between action and consequence. The parallel *u-khe-orach ish yamtsi'ennu* ('and according to a person's path he causes him to find') uses the metaphor of a road: the path you walk leads to the destination you reach. Elihu states retribution theology in its simplest form. The question, which Elihu does not fully address, is what to do when the evidence contradicts this principle — as it does in Job's case.
12. The *af omnam* ('truly indeed, most certainly') is emphatic: *El lo yarshi'a* ('God does not act wickedly') uses the Hiphil of *rasha* — God does not cause wickedness, does not practice it, does not produce it. The parallel *ve-Shaddai lo ye'avvet mishpat* ('and the Almighty does not twist justice') uses the verb *ivvet* ('to twist, to pervert, to make crooked') — the same verb Bildad used in 8:3. Elihu and Bildad agree on this point, but Elihu will ground it differently: not in tradition but in cosmology.
13. The verb *paqad* ('to appoint, to charge, to visit, to attend to') is rich with meaning — it can mean appointing someone to a task, visiting someone for judgment, or entrusting someone with responsibility. The rhetorical answer to both questions is 'no one' — God is self-appointed, self-authorized, and self-sustained.
14. The pairing of *ruach* and *neshamah* echoes 33:4 and 32:8, creating a thematic chain: the spirit that gives Elihu authority to speak (32:8), that gives him life (33:4), could be withdrawn at any moment (34:14). Elihu's wisdom, his very existence, depends moment by moment on God's choice to sustain it.
15. This is arguably the most theologically sophisticated moment in the Elihu speeches. The argument is not 'God is powerful and you should fear him' but 'God actively sustains all life by choice, and the continuation of existence is itself evidence of divine care.' This anticipates the theology of Paul in Acts 17:28 ('in him we live and move and have our being') and Colossians 1:17 ('in him all things hold together').
16. Elihu pauses for emphasis: *ve-im binah* ('and if understanding') *shim'ah zot* ('hear this'). He is about to shift from cosmological argument to political theology — applying the principle of divine justice to the governance of nations and rulers. The *ha'azinah le-qol millay* ('give ear to the voice of my words') is a formal demand for attention, signaling that a new section of the argument begins.
17. The word *kabbir* ('mighty, powerful, great') is rare, appearing mainly in Job. It describes God's overwhelming power combined with righteousness. Elihu's rhetorical question assumes that power and justice are inseparable in God — an assumption Job would challenge by pointing to his own experience.
18. Elihu argues from lesser to greater: *ha-amor le-melek beliyya'al* ('does one say to a king, worthless?'). Even human kings are not addressed with such contempt. The *beliyya'al* ('worthless, wicked, useless') is one of the harshest terms in Hebrew — it will later become a name for the ultimate adversary (Belial). If you would not say this to a human king, how much less to the divine King? The *rasha el nedivim* ('wicked to nobles') extends the point: you do not accuse rulers of wickedness to their faces. Job, in Elihu's view, has done exactly this to God.
19. The phrase *ma'aseh yadav* ('the work of his hands') echoes Psalm 8:7 and Isaiah 64:7. Elihu's logic is: favoritism requires that some people matter more than others to the judge. But if the judge made all of them, no one has a prior claim on his attention. God's impartiality flows from his role as universal Creator.

- 20.** The verse describes divine judgment on the powerful: *rega yamuthu* ('in an instant they die') — death comes without warning. The *va-chatsot lailah* ('and at midnight') *yigo'ashu am* ('the people are shaken') echoes the tenth plague in Egypt (Exodus 12:29), when at midnight God struck down the firstborn. The *ve-yasiru abbir lo ve-yad* ('and they remove the mighty not by a hand') — the mighty are swept away without any visible human agency. God's justice operates directly, without intermediaries, without armies, without visible mechanism.
- 21.** The basis of divine judgment: *ki einav al darkhei ish* ('for his eyes are upon a person's ways'). God's vision is total — *ve-khol tse'adav yireh* ('and all his steps he sees'). Every movement, every decision, every path is observed. This answers Job's complaint that God is not paying attention (24:1): God sees everything. The question Job raises — then why does God not act? — is one Elihu addresses in the verses that follow.
- 22.** The *ein choshekh ve-ein tsalmaveth* ('there is no darkness and no death-shadow') *lehissater sham po'alei aven* ('for workers of iniquity to hide there'). The *choshekh* and *tsalmaveth* that Job invoked as a refuge (3:5, 10:21-22) are declared insufficient as hiding places from God. The verb *hissater* ('to hide oneself') from *satar* implies deliberate concealment — but no darkness is deep enough to escape God's vision. This counters Job's implicit suggestion that God cannot see what happens in the dark corners of the world.
- 23.** A difficult verse. The *ki lo al ish yasim od* ('for he does not place upon a person further') may mean: God does not need additional time or evidence to render judgment. The *lahalokh el El ba-mishpat* ('to go to God in judgment') suggests that the judicial process does not require prolonged investigation. God's knowledge is immediate and complete. The verse may also mean: God does not impose on anyone more than is right — he does not need to burden people with excessive scrutiny because he already knows everything.
- 24.** The verb *yaro'a* ('he shatters, he breaks') *kabbirim* ('mighty ones') *lo cheqer* ('without investigation, without limit') — God removes the powerful without needing a formal inquiry. His knowledge is already complete (v. 21). The parallel *vayyaa'amed acherim tachtam* ('and he stations others in their place') describes the replacement of rulers — one regime falls, another rises, all by divine action. This anticipates Daniel's theology of divine sovereignty over kingdoms.
- 25.** The *laken yakkir ma'badeihem* ('therefore he recognizes their works') — God's knowledge of human deeds is the basis for judgment. The *ve-hafakh lailah* ('and he overturns in the night') — the reversal comes suddenly, under cover of darkness, without warning. The *ve-yiddakke'u* ('and they are crushed') from *daka* ('to crush, to be pulverized') describes total destruction. Elihu's image of nighttime overthrow echoes the fall of Babylon (Isaiah 21:4, Daniel 5:30) and the Egyptian plague.
- 26.** The *tachat resha'im* ('in the place of wicked ones' or 'because of their wickedness') *sefaqam* ('he slaps them, he strikes them'). The verb *safaq* ('to slap, to strike, to clap') implies public humiliation — not secret judgment but open shaming. The *bimqom ro'im* ('in a place of observers, in the sight of onlookers') makes the judgment visible. God's justice, when it comes, is not hidden but public, serving as both punishment and warning.
- 27.** The reason for the public judgment: *asher al ken saru me-acharav* ('because they turned aside from after him') — they abandoned God's path. The *ve-khol derakhav lo hiskilu* ('and all his ways they did not consider') uses *hiskil* ('to consider, to understand, to act wisely') — they did not even attempt to understand God's requirements. Their sin was not mere failure but deliberate indifference.
- 28.** The *tsa'aqah* ('cry') is the Exodus word: when the oppressed cry out, God hears and acts. Elihu places God's justice in the framework of exodus theology: God is the liberator of the oppressed, and the oppressor's downfall is certain even if delayed.
- 29.** The verb *yashqit* ('he is quiet, he gives rest') from *shaqat* can mean both 'to be silent' and 'to give rest/peace.' Elihu may be saying: when God gives peace, who can make trouble? Or: when God is silent, who can condemn him? The ambiguity is likely intentional — both meanings are theologically valid.
- 30.** The purpose of divine intervention in governance: *mi-melokh adam chanef* ('from the reigning of a godless person'). God acts to prevent *chanef* ('godless, profane, hypocritical') rulers from holding power. The *mi-moqeshei am* ('from the snares of the people') — God prevents the population from being trapped by corrupt leadership. Elihu's political theology: God is active behind the scenes of human governance, removing tyrants and preventing the enslavement of the people.
- 31.** Elihu shifts to exhortation. The *ki el El he-amar* ('for to God has [anyone] said') *nasati* ('I have borne, I have carried') *lo echbol* ('I will not act corruptly') — this is the response Elihu thinks Job should give: an acknowledgment of suffering received and a commitment to further obedience. The verse is textually difficult; some read it as a statement ('surely one should say to God') and others as a question ('has anyone said to God?').
- 32.** The ideal response continues: *bil'adei echezeh* ('apart from what I see, beyond my sight') *attah horeni* ('you teach me'). The confession is: my vision is limited; show me what I cannot see on my own. The conditional *im avel pa'alti* ('if I have committed injustice') *lo osif* ('I will not continue') — if shown specific wrongdoing, the person commits to repentance. Elihu models the prayer Job should pray: one that acknowledges limited understanding and submits to divine instruction.
- 33.** This verse is among the most difficult in Job to translate. The Hebrew is compressed and ambiguous. The general sense is clear: Elihu challenges Job to either accept God's terms or articulate a better alternative. The phrase *ve-lo ani* ('and not I') distances Elihu from the decision — he is facilitator, not judge.
- 34.** Elihu appeals to his wider audience: *anshei levav* ('people of heart/understanding') *yomeru li* ('will say to me') — the wise will confirm his argument. The *ve-gever chakham shome'a li* ('and a wise man listening to me') reinforces the appeal: wisdom recognizes wisdom. Elihu is confident that competent judges will rule in his favor.

35. The verdict Elihu expects from the wise: *Iyov lo veda'at yedabber* ('Job speaks not with knowledge'). The *u-devarav lo vehaskeil* ('and his words are not with understanding'). This is a blunt assessment, but it is also a quotation of what Elihu thinks the wise will say — he attributes the verdict to them rather than pronouncing it himself. The words *lo veda'at* ('without knowledge') will be echoed almost exactly by God in 38:2 ('who is this who darkens counsel with words without knowledge?'), suggesting that Elihu's diagnosis, if not his prescription, is correct.
36. This is Elihu's harshest verse. The *avi* ('my father' or 'my wish, would that') *yibbachen Iyov* ('let Job be tested') *ad netsach* ('to the end, to the limit, forever') — Elihu wishes prolonged testing on Job. The *al teshuvot be-anshei aven* ('because of answers among men of wickedness') accuses Job of speaking like the wicked. This outburst has troubled commentators who see Elihu as a mediating figure — here he sounds more like the friends at their worst. Some scholars read *avi* as 'my father' (an invocation of God) rather than 'my wish,' softening it to a prayer rather than a curse.
37. Elihu's closing accusation: *ki yosif al chattato* ('for he adds to his sin') *fesha* ('rebellion') — Job's initial suffering may not have been caused by sin, but his response to it (accusing God) compounds the problem. The *beinenu yispoq* ('among us he claps') — the clapping of hands is a gesture of mockery or contempt (Lamentations 2:15, Nahum 3:19). The *ve-yerev amarav la-El* ('and he multiplies his words against God') is the final charge: Job talks too much against God. Elihu ends his second speech on a note of frustration, having moved from empathetic engagement (ch. 33) to outright exasperation. His argument that God cannot be unjust is theologically sound; his characterization of Job's response as mockery and rebellion is less defensible.

35

Summary: *Elihu delivers his third speech, challenging Job's claim that righteousness profits a person nothing before God. He begins by quoting Job's own words back to him — 'my righteousness is greater than God's' and 'what advantage is it to me if I do not sin?' — then dismantles the premise. His core argument: God is so transcendently high that human sin cannot harm him and human righteousness cannot benefit him. When people cry out under oppression, they cry from pain but not to God; they demand relief but never ask, 'Where is God my Maker, who gives songs in the night?' Their prayers go unanswered not because God is indifferent but because the cries are empty — born of pain, not of genuine turning toward the divine. Elihu concludes that Job speaks from ignorance, multiplying words without knowledge.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is Elihu's most philosophically daring speech. He articulates a theology of divine transcendence that anticipates God's own speech from the whirlwind: God is so far above human categories that our moral behavior neither enriches nor diminishes him. The logic is sharp — if God gains nothing from your righteousness and loses nothing from your sin, then the entire transactional framework of the friends ('be good and God will reward you') collapses. Elihu is dismantling retribution theology from the top down rather than from Job's bottom up. The most haunting image is verse 10: no one asks 'Where is God my Maker, who gives songs in the night?' This is the deep diagnosis — suffering people demand rescue but rarely seek relationship. They want God's hand but not God's face. The 'songs in the night' image suggests that God offers something more than pain relief: a capacity for praise even in darkness.*

Translation Friction: *Elihu's argument contains a real insight wrapped in a problematic application. The insight — that God transcends human moral categories — is theologically sound and will be validated by God's own speech. The problem is the pastoral implication: Elihu essentially tells Job that his suffering does not matter to God, that his righteousness makes no difference to the Almighty. This is technically true at the level of cosmic ontology but devastatingly unhelpful at the level of human experience. A man covered in boils does not need to hear that his pain is cosmically insignificant. Elihu also misquotes Job — Job never said 'my righteousness is greater than God's' but rather argued that God was treating him as though he were unrighteous. The misquotation allows Elihu to construct a straw man.*

Connections: *The 'songs in the night' image (verse 10) connects to Psalm 42:8 ('in the night his song is with me') and Psalm 77:6 ('I remember my song in the night'). The theology of divine transcendence anticipates Isaiah 55:8-9 ('my thoughts are not your thoughts'). Elihu's claim that human sin cannot affect God echoes Psalm 50:12-13 where God declares he has no need of bulls or goat blood — he owns the cattle on a thousand hills. The 'look at the heavens' command (verse 5) prefigures God's own strategy in chapters 38-41 of directing Job's gaze upward and outward.*

¹Then Elihu answered and said:

²Do you consider this a just claim —
when you say, 'My righteousness exceeds God's'?

³For you ask, 'What good does it do me?
What do I gain by not sinning?'

⁴I will answer you with words —
you, and your friends along with you.

⁵Look up at the heavens and see —
gaze at the skies, how high they tower above you.

⁶If you sin, what do you do to him?
If your offenses multiply, what does it cost him?

⁷If you are righteous, what do you give him?
What does he receive from your hand?

⁸Your wickedness affects only someone like you;
your righteousness benefits only a fellow human.

⁹Under the weight of oppression, people cry out;
they call for help against the arm of the powerful.

¹⁰But no one asks, 'Where is God my Maker,
who gives songs in the night?'

¹¹He teaches us more than the beasts of the earth
and makes us wiser than the birds of the sky.

¹²There they cry out, but he does not answer —
because of the arrogance of the wicked.

¹³Surely God does not hear an empty cry;
the Almighty does not regard it.

¹⁴How much less when you say you cannot see him —
the case is before him; wait for him!

¹⁵But now — because his anger has not yet struck,
he does not know the full extent of it.

¹⁶So Job opens his mouth for nothing —
he piles up words without knowledge.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Elihu's third speech begins without the elaborate self-justification of his first two. He moves directly to engage Job's argument. The *va-ya'an* ('and he answered') follows the standard dialogue formula.
2. The *ha-zot chashavta le-mishpat* ('do you reckon this as justice/judgment') challenges Job's legal framework. The *amarta tsidqi me-El* ('you said: my righteousness is more than God's') is Elihu's paraphrase of Job's position — though Job's actual claim was that God was treating him unjustly despite his innocence, not that he was more righteous than God. The verb *chashav* ('to reckon, to consider') is accounting language: Elihu challenges the

moral arithmetic.

3. Elihu quotes Job's implication: mah yiskon lakh ('what does it profit you') and mah o'il me-chattati ('what do I gain from my sin / from abstaining from sin'). The verb sakan ('to be of use, to profit') and the verb ya'al ('to profit, to benefit') are commercial terms. Job's complaint, as Elihu frames it, reduces righteousness to a transaction — if there is no profit in being good, why bother? This is a fair extraction of what Job implied in 9:29-31 and 34:9.
4. Elihu claims to address both Job and the three friends simultaneously. The ve-et re'eikha immakh ('and your companions with you') signals that Elihu considers the friends' theology equally deficient — they too operate within a transactional framework where righteousness should yield reward.
5. The habbet shamayim u-re'eh ('look at the heavens and see') is the pivot of Elihu's argument. Before reasoning about God, look at the physical distance between earth and sky. The shur shechakim gavehu mimmekka ('gaze at the clouds — they are higher than you') uses the verb shur ('to look, to behold with attention') and shechakim ('clouds, skies, thin clouds'). The visual exercise establishes the scale: if the clouds are beyond your reach, how much more the God who made them.
6. The im chatata ('if you sin') mah tital bo ('what do you accomplish against him') — the verb pa'al ('to do, to work, to accomplish') asks what effect human sin has on God. The ve-rabbu fesh'a'ekha ('and your transgressions are many') mah ta'aseh lo ('what do you do to him') — even massive, accumulated rebellion accomplishes nothing against the divine. God is not injured by human sin. This is not moral indifference but ontological transcendence.
7. The parallel to verse 6: im tsdaqta ('if you are righteous') mah titen lo ('what do you give to him'). The mah mi-yadekha yiqqach ('what from your hand does he take'). The symmetry is complete: sin does not diminish God; righteousness does not enrich God. God is not a merchant who profits from human virtue or loses from human vice. The verb natan ('to give') and laqach ('to take') are exchange verbs — Elihu demolishes the commerce model of divine-human relations.
8. The application: le-ish kamokha ('to a man like you') rish'ekha ('your wickedness') — sin operates horizontally, person to person. The u-le-ven adam ('and to a son of man, a human being') tsidqatekha ('your righteousness') — virtue also operates horizontally. The vertical axis — human to God — is not affected. Elihu's theology locates the moral consequences of behavior entirely within the human sphere. God stands above the transaction.
9. The shift to a new observation: me-rov ashuqim ('from the abundance of oppressions / from the many oppressed') yaz'iqu ('they cry out'). The yeshavve'u ('they call for help, they cry out for rescue') mi-zzero'a rabbim ('from the arm of the great/mighty'). The zero'a ('arm') is the standard metaphor for military or political power. Elihu acknowledges the reality of oppression and suffering — the cry is real. But he will argue the cry is misdirected.
10. The phrase noten zemirot ba-l'lailah ('who gives songs in the night') has generated extensive commentary. The zemirot may refer to songs of praise, protective songs (night was associated with danger), or the songs of creation itself (birds sing before dawn). Some scholars connect this to the practice of night vigils in Israelite worship. The image anticipates Psalm 42:8 where the psalmist declares 'in the night his song is with me' and Psalm 77:6 where the psalmist searches his spirit in the night. The theological claim is that God's gift is not limited to daytime prosperity — he gives something precious specifically in the dark hours.
11. The mallefenu ('who teaches us') mi-bbhamot arets ('more than the beasts of the earth') — God has given humanity a capacity for understanding that animals lack. The u-me-of ha-shamayim ('and more than the birds of the heavens') yechakkemenu ('he makes us wise'). The argument: humans have been given superior wisdom, yet they fail to use it to seek God. Animals cry from instinct; humans should know better. The bahamot ('beasts') and of ('birds') anticipate the animal catalog in God's speech (chapters 38-41).
12. The sham yits'aqu ('there they cry out') ve-lo ya'aneh ('but he does not answer') — the silence of God in response to human cries. But the cause is identified: mippnei ge'on ra'im ('because of the pride/arrogance of evil men'). The ge'on ('pride, arrogance, swelling') is the reason for divine silence — not God's indifference but the quality of the cry. The cry comes from arrogant self-pity, not from genuine seeking. The ra'im ('evil ones, wicked') describes the character of those crying, not a separate group.
13. The akh shav ('surely emptiness, vanity') lo yishma El ('God does not hear') — the shav ('emptiness, falsehood, vanity') describes the quality of the cry, not its volume. A cry born of self-interest rather than genuine turning toward God is shav — hollow. The Shaddai ('the Almighty') lo yeshurennah ('does not look at it, does not regard it'). The verb shur ('to see, to observe, to regard') means God does not even acknowledge such prayers. The theology is severe: not all prayers are equal, and God distinguishes between genuine seeking and pain-driven demands.
14. The af ki tomar ('how much more/less when you say') lo teshurennhu ('you do not see him') — Job's complaint that God is invisible and inaccessible. Elihu's response: din lefanav ('judgment/justice is before him') — the legal case already stands before God's face even if Job cannot see God's face. The u-techole lo ('and wait for him, writhe in expectation before him') — the verb chul ('to wait, to writhe, to be in labor') conveys painful expectation. Elihu tells Job to endure the waiting.
15. This verse is textually difficult. The ve-attah ki ayin paqad appo ('and now because nothing/not — he visited his anger') may mean that God has not yet fully punished, so Job is unaware of how severe the consequences could be. The ve-lo yada ba-ppash me'od ('and he does not know in the abundance/extremity greatly') — Job does not recognize the full magnitude of the situation. The pash ('abundance, transgression') is a rare word. Elihu suggests Job's situation could be much worse, and Job does not appreciate God's restraint.
16. Elihu's verdict: ve-Iyyov hevel yiftseh pihu ('and Job — in vain/emptiness he opens his mouth'). The hevel ('vapor, breath, vanity') is the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes — Job's speech is as insubstantial as mist. The bi-veli da'at millin yakhbir ('without knowledge he multiplies words')

echoes God's own coming challenge in 38:2 ('who is this who darkens counsel with words without knowledge'). Elihu anticipates God's language, though he lacks God's authority to deliver it.

36

Summary: *Elihu's fourth and longest speech begins as a defense of God's justice and climbs steadily toward a meditation on divine power in nature. He opens by claiming to speak on God's behalf, asserting that God is mighty but does not despise anyone. God watches over the righteous and seats them with kings, but when the afflicted are bound in chains, he uses their suffering to expose their transgressions and open their ears to instruction. Those who listen are restored to prosperity; those who refuse perish. The godless in heart nurse anger and refuse to cry for help. Elihu then turns directly to Job, warning him not to long for the night of judgment and not to turn toward iniquity. From verse 22 onward, the speech transforms: Elihu lifts his eyes to the sky and begins describing God's power as revealed in storm, rain, lightning, and thunder. God is great beyond human comprehension. He draws up water droplets that distill into rain. He spreads his lightning and covers the depths of the sea. Through these he judges nations and provides abundant food. Lightning fills his hands and he commands it to strike its mark. The thunder announces his coming — even the cattle sense the approaching storm.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the hinge of the entire Elihu section and arguably of the book. Beginning at verse 22, Elihu stops arguing about suffering and starts pointing at the sky. His speech undergoes a genre shift from didactic discourse to nature poetry, and the nature poetry builds directly into the theophany of chapters 38-41. Elihu becomes the warm-up act for God. The transition is not accidental — it enacts the very theology Elihu has been preaching. He told Job to look up (35:5); now Elihu himself looks up and is overwhelmed by what he sees. The rain cycle described in verses 27-28 is remarkably accurate for ancient observation: God draws up water droplets, they condense in clouds, and the clouds pour down rain on humanity. The lightning imagery in verses 30-33 is visceral — God holds bolts in his hands and hurls them at targets. The chapter ends with cattle sensing the storm, a detail of pastoral observation that grounds the cosmic poetry in lived experience.*

Translation Friction: *Elihu's claim to speak 'on behalf of my Maker' (verse 3) is audacious, and the book will implicitly rebuke it when God speaks for himself. Elihu's pastoral theology in verses 8-15 — that suffering is God's way of opening ears to instruction — contains genuine wisdom but stumbles on the same rock as the friends: it assumes a pedagogical purpose for all suffering, which does not account for the gratuitous dimension of Job's case. The prologue has established that Job's suffering originates in a divine wager, not in a divine lesson plan. Elihu's nature poetry, however, escapes this limitation because it makes no claim about why Job suffers — it simply directs attention toward the God who controls the storm. In doing so, Elihu inadvertently provides the correct preparation for encountering God: not understanding but awe.*

Connections: *The rain cycle (verses 27-28) parallels Amos 4:7 and Psalm 147:8. The 'God is great' declaration (verse 26) uses gadol, the same term in Deuteronomy 10:17 ('the great, mighty, and awesome God'). The throne imagery (verse 7, 'he seats them with kings') echoes 1 Samuel 2:8 (Hannah's prayer: 'he raises the poor from the dust and seats them with princes'). The transition from didactic speech to nature theophany mirrors the structure of Psalm 19, which moves from 'the heavens declare the glory of God' to the law of the Lord. Most critically, Elihu's storm poetry in verses 26-33 functions as the dramatic overture to God's whirlwind speech — the storm that Elihu describes is the very storm from which God will speak in 38:1.*

¹Then Elihu continued and said:

²Bear with me a little longer — I will show you,
for there are still words to speak on God's behalf.

³I will draw my knowledge from far away
and ascribe righteousness to my Maker.

⁴Truly, my words are not false.
One complete in knowledge stands before you.

⁵See — God is mighty, yet he does not despise.
He is mighty in strength of understanding.

⁶He does not keep the wicked alive,
but he grants justice to the afflicted.

⁷He does not withdraw his eyes from the righteous.
He seats them with kings on thrones —
he establishes them forever, and they are exalted.

⁸But if they are bound in chains,
caught in the cords of affliction —

⁹then he reveals to them what they have done —
their offenses, how they grew arrogant.

¹⁰He opens their ear to correction
and commands them to turn back from wickedness.

¹¹If they listen and serve him,
they will finish their days in prosperity
and their years in contentment.

¹²But if they do not listen,
they cross over into death by the sword
and perish without ever understanding.

¹³The godless in heart store up anger;
they do not cry for help when he binds them.

¹⁴They die in their youth;
their life ends among the temple prostitutes.

¹⁵He rescues the afflicted through their affliction
and opens their ear by means of distress.

¹⁶He would have led you too out of the jaws of distress
into a wide place with no confinement,
and your table would be loaded with rich food.

¹⁷But you are full of the judgment due the wicked;
judgment and justice have seized you.

¹⁸Beware — let not anger lure you into mockery,
and let no size of ransom lead you astray.

¹⁹Can your cry for help be arranged so as to keep you from distress?
Can all your strenuous efforts?

²⁰Do not long for the night
when peoples are swept away from their place.

²¹Be careful — do not turn toward wickedness,
for you have preferred this over affliction.

²²See — God is exalted in his power.
Who is a teacher like him?

²³Who has prescribed his path for him?
Who can say to him, 'You have done wrong'?

²⁴Remember to magnify his work,
which humanity has sung about from old.

²⁵All humanity has gazed upon it;
mortals behold it from afar.

²⁶See — God is great beyond our knowing;
the number of his years is beyond searching out.

²⁷For he draws up the drops of water;
they distill as rain from his mist —

²⁸which the clouds pour down
and shower upon humanity in abundance.

²⁹Can anyone understand the spreading of the clouds,
the thundering from his pavilion?

³⁰See — he spreads his lightning over it
and covers the roots of the sea.

³¹For by these he judges peoples
and gives food in abundance.

³²He covers his hands with lightning
and commands it to strike its target.

³³His thunder announces his coming;
even the cattle sense the rising storm.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The va-yosef Elihu ('and Elihu added/continued') va-yomar ('and he said') — the verb yasaf ('to add, to continue') signals that this is a continuation of his preceding argument, not a new topic. This is Elihu's fourth and final speech, and the longest.
2. The kattar li ze'eir ('wait for me a little, bear with me briefly') — Elihu asks for patience. The va-achavvekkā ('and I will declare to you, show you') uses the Aramaic-influenced verb chavah ('to declare, show'). The ki od le-Eloha millin ('for there are still words for God') — Elihu claims that more remains to be said in God's defense. He positions himself as God's advocate.
3. The essa de'i le-merachōq ('I will carry/lift my knowledge from afar') claims a breadth of understanding that transcends local experience. The u-le-fo'ali ('and to my Maker') etten tsedeq ('I will give righteousness/justice') — Elihu's stated purpose is to vindicate God, to prove that God is just. The fo'ali ('my Maker') uses the verb pa'al ('to make, to do'), establishing Elihu's creaturely relationship to the God he defends.

4. The *ki omnam lo sheqer millai* ('for truly, not falsehood are my words') — Elihu certifies his own honesty. The *temim de'ot immakh* ('one complete/perfect in knowledge is with you') — Elihu claims comprehensive understanding. The *temim* ('complete, whole, blameless') is the same word used of Job in 1:1. Whether Elihu refers to himself or to God is debated; the grammar most naturally refers to Elihu himself, which is a striking claim.
5. The *hen El kabbir* ('behold, God is mighty/great') *ve-lo yim'as* ('and he does not despise/reject') — God's power does not produce contempt for the small. The *kabbir koach lev* ('mighty in strength of heart/understanding') — *lev* ('heart') in Hebrew denotes the seat of intellect and will, not merely emotion. God's might is not brute force but informed power, power guided by understanding.
6. The *lo yechayeh rasha* ('he does not give life to / preserve the wicked') — God does not sustain the wicked indefinitely. The *u-mishpat aniyyim yitten* ('and the judgment/justice of the poor/afflicted he gives') — God provides justice specifically to the *aniyyim* ('the poor, the afflicted, the humble'). The contrast establishes that God's power serves justice, not arbitrary will.
7. The *lo yigra mi-tsaddiq einav* ('he does not withdraw from the righteous his eyes') — God's gaze remains fixed on the just. The *ve-et melakhim la-kkisse* ('and with kings to the throne') *va-yoshivem* ('and he seats them') — the righteous are elevated to royal status. The *la-netsach* ('forever') *va-yigbahu* ('and they are exalted') — the establishment is permanent. This echoes Hannah's song (1 Samuel 2:8) and anticipates the enthronement theology of Psalm 113:7-8.
8. The *ve-im asurim ba-zziqim* ('and if they are bound in fetters/chains') — the *asurim* ('bound ones, prisoners') are not necessarily criminals. The *yillakhedun be-chavlei oni* ('they are caught/held in the ropes of affliction') — the *chavlei* ('cords, ropes, birth pangs') of *oni* ('affliction, poverty, misery') bind the righteous. This is Elihu's theology of suffering; even the righteous may be bound, but the binding has a purpose.
9. The *va-yagged lahem po'olam* ('and he declares to them their deed/work') — suffering becomes revelation. God uses affliction to show people their own behavior. The *u-fish'eihem* ('and their transgressions') *ki yitgabbaru* ('that they acted arrogantly, they were mighty in rebellion'). The verb *gavar* ('to be mighty, to prevail') in the *hitpael* means 'to act arrogantly, to behave overbearingly.' Suffering functions as a mirror.
10. The *va-yigel oznam* ('and he uncovers/opens their ear') *la-mmusar* ('to instruction, correction, discipline') — the *galah ozen* ('uncovering the ear') idiom means to reveal something privately, to give privileged information. The *va-yomer ki yeshuvun me-aven* ('and he says that they should turn from iniquity') — the verb *shuv* ('to turn, to return, to repent') is the standard term for repentance. Elihu's theology: suffering is God's private tutorial, not his punishment.
11. The conditional promise: *im yishme'u* ('if they hear/obey') *ve-ya'avodu* ('and they serve') — the two verbs *shama* ('to hear') and *avad* ('to serve') form the core Deuteronomic response to God. The *yekhallu yemeihem ba-ttov* ('they will complete their days in good') *u-sheneihem ba-nne'imim* ('and their years in pleasant things'). The *ne'imim* ('pleasantness, delight') is the positive outcome. Elihu presents a genuinely conditional theology — the outcome depends on response.
12. The alternative: *ve-im lo yishme'u* ('and if they do not hear') *be-shelach ya'avoru* ('by the weapon/dart they cross over/pass away'). The *shelach* is a thrown weapon — a javelin or dart. The *ve-yigve'u* ('and they expire') *bi-veli da'at* ('without knowledge') — the tragedy is not merely death but death in ignorance. They never learned what the suffering was trying to teach them. This is Elihu's worst-case scenario: not punishment but wasted revelation.
13. The *ve-chanfei lev* ('and the godless/profane of heart') *yasimu af* ('they place/store anger') — the *chanef* ('godless, profane, polluted') person hoards resentment rather than turning toward God. The *lo yeshavve'u ki asaram* ('they do not cry out when he binds them') — when God binds them in affliction, they refuse to call out. This is the inverse of verse 10: God opens the ear, but the godless refuse to use the opened ear. Their silence is not peace but sullen defiance.
14. The *tamot ba-nno'ar nafsham* ('their soul dies in youth') — premature death. The *ve-chayyatam ba-qqedeshim* ('and their life is among the qedeshim') — the *qedeshim* are the cultic prostitutes attached to pagan temples. The *qadesh* ('consecrated one') is an ironic term — 'holy' in etymology but referring to those dedicated to sexual rites in Canaanite worship. The implication: the godless die young and their existence is as degraded as cultic prostitution.
15. The *yechallets ani be-onyo* ('he delivers the poor/afflicted in/through his affliction') — the preposition *be* can mean 'in' (during affliction) or 'by means of' (through affliction). Elihu means both: God delivers during suffering and by means of suffering. The *ve-yigel ba-llachats oznam* ('and he uncovers in the oppression their ear') — the same ear-opening idiom from verse 10. This is Elihu's most concise theological statement: affliction is the instrument of deliverance, not its opposite.
16. Elihu turns directly to Job: *ve-af hesitkha* ('and indeed he would have enticed/led you') *mi-ppi tsar* ('from the mouth of distress') — the *tsar* ('narrowness, distress') has a mouth like a beast; God would have pulled Job from its jaws. The *rachav lo mutsaq tachteiha* ('a broad place with no constriction beneath it') — expansive freedom after confinement. The *ve-nachat shulchanekha male dashen* ('and the rest/setting of your table full of fatness') — a table laden with rich food. The *dashen* ('fatness, richness') is the sign of divine blessing.
17. The *ve-din rasha maleta* ('and the judgment of the wicked you are full of') — Job is saturated with the kind of judgment that belongs to the wicked. The *din u-mishpat yitmokhu* ('judgment and justice take hold, seize') — the two terms for justice (*din* and *mishpat*) act as agents that grab hold of Job. Elihu's point is ambiguous: either Job has brought this upon himself, or the judgment that seems to belong to the wicked has mistakenly attached itself to him.

- 18.** A warning: *ki chemah* ('because wrath/anger') *pen yesitikha* ('lest it entice you') *be-safeq* ('with a clap, with mockery, with sufficiency') — the *safeq* can mean 'a handclap' (mocking gesture), 'sufficiency' (wealth), or 'a blow.' The *ve-rov kofer al yattekka* ('and the greatness of ransom let it not turn you aside') — no amount of payment can buy escape from divine judgment. The verb *natah* ('to turn aside, to bend') warns against being deflected from the right path.
- 19.** This verse is textually very difficult. The *ha-ya'arokh shu'akha* ('can your cry/wealth be arranged/set in order') *lo be-tsar* ('not in distress') — the *shua* can mean 'cry for help' or 'wealth/riches.' The *ve-khol ma'amattsei koach* ('and all the exertions of strength') — all human effort is insufficient. Whether read as 'can your wealth keep you from distress' or 'can your cry for help be arranged to avoid trouble,' the answer is the same: no human resource suffices.
- 20.** The *al tish'af ha-lailah* ('do not gasp for/desire the night') — the verb *sha'af* ('to pant after, to gasp for, to desire eagerly') suggests desperate longing. The *lailah* ('night') here means the night of divine judgment. The *la'alot ammim tachtam* ('for the going up of peoples from beneath them, from their place') — peoples are removed, swept away in the dark. Elihu warns Job not to wish for the eschatological judgment he has been demanding — it is more terrible than Job imagines.
- 21.** The *hishamer* ('guard yourself, be careful') *al tefen el aven* ('do not turn toward iniquity') — the verb *panah* ('to turn') implies a deliberate choice of direction. The *ki al zeh bacharta me-oni* ('for on account of this you have chosen rather than affliction') — Elihu accuses Job of preferring to complain about injustice rather than accept affliction as instruction. The *bacharta* ('you have chosen') makes it a matter of will, not fate.
- 22.** The pivot: *hen El yasgib be-khocho* ('behold, God is exalted/made high in his power') — from this point, Elihu's speech transforms from argument to praise. The *mi khamohu moreh* ('who is like him as a teacher/instructor') — the *moreh* ('teacher, one who instructs') could also be read as 'one who shoots' (from *yarah*, 'to shoot, to throw, to teach'). God teaches through what he does in nature. This verse launches the nature hymn that will build directly into the theophany.
- 23.** The *mi paqad alav darkko* ('who has appointed over him his way') — no one assigns God his course of action. The *u-mi amar pa'alta avlah* ('and who has said: you have committed injustice') — this directly addresses Job's central claim. The verb *paqad* ('to appoint, to visit, to command') and the noun *avlah* ('injustice, wrong') frame the question: God is accountable to no one. This anticipates God's own challenge in 40:8: 'Would you condemn me to justify yourself?'
- 24.** The *zekhor ki tasgi po'olo* ('remember that you should magnify his work') — the verb *sagah* ('to make great, to magnify') in the *hiphil* demands active praise. The *asher shoreru anashim* ('which people have sung/gazed upon') — the verb *sharar* can mean 'to sing' or 'to behold.' Elihu appeals to a tradition of human response to divine works — people have always seen and celebrated what God does.
- 25.** The *kol adam chazu vo* ('all humanity has looked at it') — God's work in creation is universally visible. The *enosh yabbit merachok* ('a mortal looks from afar') — the verb *nabat* ('to look, to gaze') with *merachok* ('from a distance') acknowledges that human perception is distant. We see God's works but from a great remove. The tension between universal visibility and remote viewing is central: everyone can see, but no one can see closely enough.
- 26.** The *saggi* ('great') is an Aramaism that appears frequently in the Elihu speeches, supporting the view that these chapters reflect a distinct linguistic layer. The *ve-lo neda* ('we do not know') is a first-person plural confession — Elihu includes himself in the unknowing. This is his most humble moment. The *ein cheqer* ('no searching out, unfathomable') is an absolute negation — not 'difficult to search out' but 'impossible to search out.' God's years — his temporal existence — cannot even be numbered, let alone comprehended.
- 27.** The nature poetry begins. The *ki yegara nitfei mayim* ('for he diminishes/draws up the drops of water') — the verb *gara* ('to diminish, to withdraw, to draw off') describes the evaporation process: God draws water upward in tiny droplets. The *yazoquu matar le-edo* ('they refine/distill rain for his mist/vapor') — the verb *zaqaq* ('to refine, to purify, to distill') is a metallurgical term applied to meteorology. Rain is refined from vapor the way metal is refined from ore. This is remarkably accurate ancient observation of the water cycle.
- 28.** The *asher yizzelu shechakim* ('which the clouds drip/flow') — the verb *nazal* ('to flow, to drip, to trickle') describes the steady release of water from clouds. The *yir'afu alei adam rav* ('they drip upon humanity abundantly') — the verb *ra'af* ('to drip, to shower') and *rav* ('much, many, abundant') indicate generous rainfall. The three-verse sequence (26-28) moves from God's unknowable greatness to the observable gift of rain — from theology to meteorology, from the hidden to the revealed.
- 29.** The *af im yavin mifsrsei av* ('indeed, can anyone understand the spreadings of the cloud') — the verb *paras* ('to spread out') describes the way clouds extend across the sky. The *teshu'ot sukkato* ('the crashings/thunderings of his booth/pavilion') — the *sukkah* ('booth, tent, pavilion') is God's dwelling in the storm cloud, and the *teshu'ot* ('crashings, thunder') are the sounds from that dwelling. God lives in the storm cloud as in a tent, and thunder is the sound of his habitation.
- 30.** The *hen paras alav oro* ('behold, he spreads over it his light') — the *or* ('light') here is lightning, spread like a canopy over the storm cloud. The *ve-shorshei ha-yam kissah* ('and the roots/depths of the sea he covers') — God's lightning illuminates from the heights of the sky to the *shorshei* ('roots, depths, foundations') of the sea. The range is total: from sky to ocean floor. The verb *kasah* ('to cover') suggests the lightning reveals what was hidden in the deep.
- 31.** The *ki vam yadin ammim* ('for by them he judges peoples') — the storm phenomena (rain, lightning, thunder) are instruments of both judgment and provision. The *yitten okhel le-makhhbir* ('he gives food in abundance') — the *makhhbir* ('in abundance, exceedingly') from the root *kavar* ('to be much, to multiply'). The dual function of storm — destructive judgment and life-giving rain — captures the paradox of divine power: the same force that terrifies also feeds.

32. The al kappayim kissah or ('upon his palms he covers light/lightning') — God holds lightning in his hands like a weapon. The va-yetsav aleiha be-mafgi'a ('and he commands it by/against its target') — the mafgi'a ('the one who intercedes, the one who hits the mark') from the root paga ('to encounter, to meet, to strike'). God aims the lightning and it hits what he intends. The image is of a warrior holding bolts of light and hurling them with precision.
33. The yaggid alav re'o ('his thunder/companion declares about him') — the re'a can mean 'thunder' or 'companion/friend.' As thunder, it announces God's approach. The miqneh af al oleh ('the cattle also concerning what rises') — even livestock sense the approaching storm. The oleh ('what rises, what ascends') refers to the storm building on the horizon. This pastoral detail grounds the cosmic poetry: before God arrives in the whirlwind, the cattle in the fields become restless. Nature knows its Maker before the theologians do.

37

Summary: *Elihu's nature poetry reaches its crescendo as a thunderstorm builds and breaks. His heart pounds at the sound of God's voice in the thunder. He describes God's power moving across the sky — lightning, snow, rain, ice, and wind — all obedient to divine command. God seals the hand of every person so they stop working. Animals retreat to their dens. The storm wind comes from its chamber, and cold from the scattering winds. God's breath produces ice, and the broad waters freeze. He loads the clouds with moisture and scatters his lightning. The clouds wheel in circles, doing whatever God commands over the face of the inhabited world — whether for correction, for the land, or for mercy. Elihu then turns to Job one final time: stop and consider the wonders of God. Do you know how God balances the clouds, how your garments grow hot when the south wind stills the earth? Can you, with him, spread out the sky like a cast metal mirror? Elihu concludes with a theologically charged observation: out of the north comes golden splendor, and around God is awesome majesty. The Almighty — we cannot find him — is great in power and justice, abundant in righteousness. He does not oppress. Therefore mortals fear him; he has no regard for any who are wise in their own heart.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter functions as the dramatic overture to the theophany. The storm Elihu has been describing since 36:26 is the same storm from which God will speak in 38:1. Elihu's poetry does not merely describe weather — it describes the approach of God. Every meteorological phenomenon is a sign of divine presence drawing nearer. The progression is cinematically precise: thunder (verses 2-5), snow and rain that stop all human work (verses 6-8), the storm wind (verses 9-10), cloud movements (verses 11-13), and finally the demand for silence before the arriving Presence (verses 14-20). Elihu's body participates in the revelation — his heart trembles and leaps from its place (verse 1), anticipating Job's own physical response to the theophany. The final image — golden splendor from the north and awesome majesty surrounding God (verse 22) — is the last human description before God himself takes over the narrative. Elihu is the last human voice before the divine voice speaks.*

Translation Friction: *Elihu's closing argument (verses 19-20) contains a troubling implication: 'Teach us what we should say to him — we cannot draw up our case because of the darkness.' This suggests humans should simply accept ignorance and stop arguing. While the humility is appropriate, Elihu uses it to silence Job rather than to comfort him. His final statement — 'he has no regard for any who are wise in their own heart' — is aimed directly at Job and functions as a warning: stop thinking you know better than God. The irony is that God, when he arrives, will not rebuke Job for speaking but for speaking 'without knowledge' (38:2) — a crucial distinction. God wants Job to speak, just with better information. Elihu wants Job to be quiet. The book sides with God's approach over Elihu's.*

Connections: *The 'voice of God' in thunder (verses 2-5) connects to Psalm 29, the great thunder psalm, where God's voice breaks cedars and shakes the wilderness. The sealing of human hands (verse 7) echoes the sabbath principle — God periodically stops human labor to remind people who actually runs the world. The 'chambers of the south' (verse 9) appear in 9:9 where Job mentions them as one of God's cosmic structures. The golden splendor from the north (verse 22) may allude to Ezekiel 1:4 where the divine chariot approaches from the north in a great cloud with flashing fire and brightness around it. The 'cast metal mirror' image for the sky (verse 18) reflects ancient cosmology where the firmament (raqia of Genesis 1:6-8) was understood as a solid dome. Most critically, this chapter ends exactly where chapter 38 begins — the storm that Elihu describes becomes the storm from which God speaks.*

¹At this my heart pounds
and leaps from its place.

²Listen — listen closely to the roar of his voice,
the rumbling that comes from his mouth.

³He unleashes it under the whole heaven;
his lightning reaches to the edges of the earth.

⁴After it, a voice roars.
He thunders with his majestic voice,
and he does not hold back the bolts when his voice is heard.

⁵God thunders with his voice — marvelous things!
He does great things beyond our understanding.

⁶For he says to the snow, 'Fall on the earth!'
and to the rain shower — to the heavy downpour of his might.

⁷He seals the hand of every person
so that all may recognize his work.

⁸The wild animals enter their lairs
and settle into their dens.

⁹From its chamber the storm wind comes,
and cold from the scattering winds.

¹⁰By the breath of God, ice forms;
the wide waters are frozen solid.

¹¹He loads the thick cloud with moisture;
he scatters his lightning cloud.

¹²The clouds wheel in circles at his direction,
doing whatever he commands them
across the face of the inhabited world.

¹³Whether for correction, or for the land,
or for mercy — he sends it forth.

¹⁴Listen to this, Job —
stand still and consider the wonders of God.

¹⁵Do you know how God arranges them
and makes the lightning of his cloud flash?

¹⁶Do you understand the balancing of the clouds —
the wonders of the One perfect in knowledge?

¹⁷You — whose garments grow hot
when the earth lies still under the south wind —

¹⁸Can you, with him, spread out the sky —
hard as a mirror of cast bronze?

¹⁹Teach us what we should say to him —
we cannot draw up our case because of the darkness.

²⁰Should he be told that I wish to speak?
If a man speaks, he would be swallowed up.

²¹Now — no one can look at the light
when it blazes in the skies,
but a wind passes and sweeps them clear.

²²From the north, golden splendor comes.
Around God — awesome majesty.

²³The Almighty — we cannot find him out.
He is great in power and justice;
abundant in righteousness, he does not oppress.

²⁴Therefore mortals fear him.
He has no regard for any who are wise in their own eyes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *af le-zot* ('indeed, at this') *yecherad libbi* ('my heart trembles/shudders') — Elihu's body responds to the approaching storm. The *ve-yittar mi-mmeqomo* ('and it leaps/springs from its place') — the verb *natar* ('to spring, to leap, to start up') describes the heart physically jumping. This is not theological abstraction but somatic experience: Elihu feels God's approach in his chest. The physical trembling anticipates Job's own response in 42:5-6.
2. The *shim'u shamo'a* ('hear — hear attentively') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute construction to demand full attention. The *be-rogez qolo* ('in the trembling/agitation of his voice') — the *rogez* ('trembling, agitation, thunder') is God's voice manifested as thunder. The *ve-hegeh mi-ppiv yetse* ('and the murmuring/growling that goes out from his mouth') — the *hegeh* ('murmuring, muttering, growling') is the low, sustained rumble of ongoing thunder. God's voice is not a single clap but a continuous, rolling growl across the sky.
3. The *tachat kol ha-shamayim yishrehu* ('under all the heavens he lets it loose/directs it') — the verb *sharah* ('to let loose, to release, to direct') describes God releasing the thunder across the entire sky. The *ve-oro al kanfot ha-arets* ('and his light upon the wings/edges of the earth') — the *kanfot* ('wings, corners, edges') of the earth are the furthest visible horizon. Lightning illuminates from horizon to horizon. The scope is total: the entire dome of heaven, the entire surface of the earth.
4. The *acharav yish'ag qol* ('after it a voice roars') — the flash comes first, then the roar follows. The *yar'em be-qol ge'ono* ('he thunders with the voice of his majesty/pride') — the *ge'on* ('majesty, exaltation, pride') applied to God's voice makes thunder a royal proclamation. The *ve-lo ye'aqvem ki yishama qolo* ('and he does not hold them back when his voice is heard') — once the thunder sounds, the lightning bolts are not restrained. The sequence — light, then sound, then more light — matches the actual experience of a thunderstorm.
5. The *yar'em El be-qolo nifla'ot* ('God thunders with his voice — wonders') — the *nifla'ot* ('wonders, marvelous things') are not separate from the thunder but are the thunder itself. Thunder is a wonder. The *oseh gedolot* ('he does great things') *ve-lo neda* ('and we do not know/understand') — the identical phrase from 36:26 returns. Elihu's refrain: God does great things that exceed comprehension. The repetition is deliberate — this is the thesis statement of Elihu's nature hymn.
6. The *ki la-ssheleg yomar hevei arets* ('for to the snow he says: be — earth!') — the command is both to the snow and to the earth; God orders the snow to exist and the earth to receive it. The *ve-geshem matar* ('and rain, a shower') *ve-geshem mitrot uzzo* ('and rain, downpours of his strength') — two levels of rain: ordinary showers and powerful storms. The *uzzo* ('his strength') applied to heavy rain makes the downpour an expression of divine power.
7. The *be-yad kol adam yachtom* ('on the hand of every person he seals/stamps') — the verb *chatam* ('to seal, to close, to stamp') means God stops human labor. When the storm comes, people cannot work in the fields. The *la-da'at kol anshei ma'asehu* ('so that all the people of his making may know') — the enforced idleness has a purpose: recognition. When your hands are sealed shut by weather, you remember that Someone else is at work. The *ma'asehu* ('his work/making') refers both to God's creative work and to the humans he has made.

8. The va-ttavo chayyah ve-mo arev ('and the beast enters its lair/ambush') — the chayyah ('living creature, wild animal') retreats from the storm. The u-vi-me'onoteiha tishkon ('and in its dens/habitations it dwells') — the me'onot ('dens, dwelling places') are where animals shelter. The detail is observed from pastoral life — during severe weather, wild animals seek shelter. This anticipates the animal catalog in God's speech (38:39-39:30) where God asks Job who provides for the wild creatures.
9. The min ha-cheder ('from the chamber/inner room') tavo sufah ('comes the storm wind') — the cheder ('inner room, bedchamber') is a storage room in the heavens where God keeps the winds. This connects to 38:22 where God asks Job about the storehouses of snow and hail. The u-mi-mmezarim qarah ('and from the scattering winds, cold') — the mezarim is a rare word, likely referring to the northern winds that scatter clouds and bring cold. Some associate it with the constellation Mazzaroth (38:32).
10. The mi-nishmat El ('from the breath/blast of God') yitten qarah ('ice is given/produced') — God's breath is so cold it creates ice. The neshamah ('breath') is the same word used for the breath of life in Genesis 2:7 — the same divine breath that animates the living freezes the waters. The ve-rochav mayim be-mutsaq ('and the breadth of waters in a casting/constraint') — the mutsaq ('pouring, casting, constraint') from the root yatsaq ('to pour, to cast') suggests the water becomes solid as if poured into a mold. The surface of a lake freezes like cast metal.
11. The af beri yatriach av ('also with moisture he burdens/loads the cloud') — the beri ('moisture, fatness, grain') is the water content of the cloud, and the verb tariach ('to burden, to load heavily') describes the cloud becoming heavy with rain. The yafits anan oro ('he scatters the cloud of his light') — the or ('light') here is lightning. God disperses the lightning-bearing clouds across the sky. The two actions — loading with water and scattering with light — describe the full anatomy of a thunderstorm.
12. The ve-hu mesibbot mithappekh ('and it/he turns in circuits, wheeling about') be-tachbulotav ('by his guidance/direction') — the tachbulot ('guidance, steering, direction') is a navigation term, used of a helmsman steering a ship. God steers the clouds like a captain steers a vessel. The le-fo'olam kol asher yetsavvem ('for their work, everything he commands them') — the clouds are obedient servants. The al penei tevel artsah ('upon the face of the world, earthward') — the tevel ('inhabited world') emphasizes that these are not abstract cosmic phenomena but forces directed at the human world.
13. Three purposes of weather: im le-shevet ('if for a rod/correction') — storm as punishment. The im le-artso ('if for his land') — storm as provision, watering the earth. The im le-chesed ('if for mercy/lovingkindness') — storm as an act of divine grace. The yamtsi'ehu ('he causes it to find/reach its target') from the root matsa ('to find'). The three purposes form a theological spectrum: the same storm can be judgment, agriculture, or compassion. God decides, and the storm obeys.
14. Elihu turns directly to Job for the final time. The ha'azinah zot Iyyov ('give ear to this, Job') — the verb azan ('to give ear, to listen') demands full attention. The amod ('stand still') — stop moving, stop arguing, stop everything. The ve-hitbonen nifle'ot El ('and consider carefully the wonders of God') — the hitpael of bin ('to understand') means 'to apply oneself to understanding, to consider deeply.' The nifle'ot ('wonders') are the same ones from verse 5. Elihu's command: stop talking and start looking.
15. The ha-teda ('do you know') be-sum Eloha aleihem ('when God places/arranges upon them') — the verb sum ('to place, to set, to arrange') asks whether Job understands God's process. The ve-hofia or anano ('and he causes the light of his cloud to shine') — the hiphil of yafa ('to shine') describes God making the cloud emit light. Elihu's questions anticipate God's interrogation in chapters 38-41 — the same rhetorical strategy of asking Job what he knows about the natural world.
16. The ha-teda al miflse'i av ('do you know about the balancings/poisonings of the cloud') — the miflasim ('balancings') from the root palas ('to weigh, to make level, to balance') asks how clouds, laden with water, remain suspended in the sky. This was a genuine mystery in the ancient world and remains striking even with modern meteorological knowledge. The mifle'ot temim de'im ('the wonders of the one perfect in knowledge') — the temim de'im ('complete in knowledge') is God himself, whose omniscience designs the atmospheric systems.
17. The asher begadeikha chammim ('you whose garments are hot') — a shift from cosmic scale to personal experience. When the hot south wind blows, your own clothes become unbearably warm. The be-hashqit erets mi-ddarom ('when the earth is quieted/stilled from the south') — the hiphil of shaqat ('to be quiet, to rest') describes the oppressive stillness of a hot day when the south wind (darom) has silenced everything. Elihu moves from the grandeur of the storm to the intimate sensation of heat on your body.
18. The tarqi'a immo li-shechakim ('can you hammer out with him the skies') — the verb raqa ('to stamp, to hammer out, to spread by beating') is the same verb behind raqia ('firmament') in Genesis 1:6. The ancient understanding was that the sky was a solid dome, hammered out like beaten metal. The chazaqim ki-r'i mutsaq ('strong like a mirror of casting/molten metal') — the r'i ('mirror') in the ancient world was polished bronze. The sky is described as a cast bronze mirror — solid, reflective, and crafted. The question challenges Job: were you there when God forged the sky?
19. The hodi'enu mah nomar lo ('make us know what we should say to him') — Elihu asks Job to instruct them on how to address God. The tone is ironic: if Job is so confident about his case, let him draft the brief. The lo na'arokh mippnei choshekh ('we cannot arrange/set in order because of darkness') — the verb arakh ('to arrange, to set in order, to draw up in battle formation') is used for preparing a legal case or marshaling an argument. The choshekh ('darkness') is intellectual and spiritual — we are in the dark about God.
20. The ha-yesuppar lo ki adabber ('should it be reported to him that I speak') — would anyone dare to send word to God that a human wishes to file a complaint? The im amar ish ki yevulla ('if a man speaks, surely he would be swallowed up') — the verb bala ('to swallow') describes total consumption. A human who presumes to argue with God would be swallowed like food. The image recalls Zophar's digestion metaphors (chapter 20) but here applied to the act of speaking itself — words directed at God consume the speaker.

- 21.** The ve-attach lo ra'u or ('and now they do not see the light') bahir hu ba-sshechakim ('brilliant it is in the skies') — the or ('light') is the sun breaking through after the storm, so brilliant that no eye can bear it. The ve-ruach averah va-ttaharem ('and a wind passed and it purified/cleared them') — the wind sweeps the clouds away, revealing the unbearable brightness behind them. This is the penultimate image before the theophany: the storm clears, the sky opens, and the light is too bright to look at. God is about to appear.
- 22.** The association of the north with divine presence runs deep in the Hebrew Bible. Psalm 48:2 calls Zion 'the heights of Zaphon' (tsafon), identifying God's holy mountain with the mythological divine mountain. Isaiah 14:13 places the 'mount of assembly' in the 'recesses of the north.' Ezekiel 1:4 sees the divine chariot approaching from the north. Elihu's golden splendor from the north is therefore not a weather report but a theophanic signal — God is coming from the direction traditionally associated with divine dwelling.
- 23.** Elihu's penultimate declaration: Shaddai lo metsa'nuhu ('the Almighty — we have not found him') — the verb matsa ('to find') admits failure. God cannot be tracked down, cornered, or fully grasped. The saggi koach ('great in power') repeats the Aramaism from 36:26. The u-mishpat ve-rov tsedaqah ('and justice and abundance of righteousness') — God's unfindable power is not arbitrary but just. The lo ye'anneh ('he does not oppress/afflict') — despite God's incomprehensible power, he does not use it to crush. This is Elihu's final theological assertion: God is simultaneously beyond finding and beyond reproach.
- 24.** Elihu's final words: lakhen yere'uhu anashim ('therefore men fear him') — the proper human response to the God described in this speech is fear, not argument. The lo yir'eh kol chakhmei lev ('he does not see/regard all the wise of heart') — God does not defer to human wisdom. The chakhmei lev ('wise of heart') is aimed at Job, who has argued his case with intellectual brilliance. Elihu's closing shot: no matter how wise you are, God is not impressed. This is the last human word before God speaks. The next verse (38:1) begins: 'Then the LORD answered Job out of the whirlwind.' Elihu's storm has become God's stage.

38

Summary: *God finally speaks — not from a throne room, not from a burning bush, but from the whirlwind. After thirty-five chapters of human argument about the meaning of suffering, the Creator of the universe addresses Job directly, and the answer is not what anyone expected. God does not explain Job's suffering. God does not vindicate the friends' theology. God does not apologize. Instead, God asks questions — a relentless cascade of questions about the architecture of creation that Job cannot answer. Where were you when I laid the earth's foundation? Who set its measurements? Who shut the sea behind doors when it burst from the womb? Have you commanded the morning? Have you entered the storehouses of snow? Can you bind the chains of the Pleiades? The questions span the entire created order: earth, sea, light, darkness, weather, constellations, the laws of heaven and earth. The effect is not to humiliate Job but to reframe the conversation entirely — the question is not 'Why do I suffer?' but 'Do you understand the world you live in?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Job 38 is one of the supreme passages of the Hebrew Bible and of world literature. It is the only extended first-person speech of God in the Wisdom literature. The rhetorical strategy is extraordinary: God answers questions with questions. The Hebrew is at its most elevated and compressed — the poetry achieves effects that cannot be fully captured in any translation. The opening min ha-se'arah ('from the whirlwind/storm') is itself a theological statement: God speaks from within the chaos, not above it. The word se'arah carries connotations of storm, tempest, and violent wind — this is the same word used for Elijah's ascent (2 Kings 2:1, 11) and for theophanic storms throughout the prophets. God does not calm the storm before speaking; God speaks as the storm. The questions are not random — they follow a careful sequence from cosmogony (earth's foundation, the sea's birth) through meteorology (rain, snow, hail, lightning) to astronomy (Pleiades, Orion, the Bear). Each question implies the same answer: 'You were not there. You do not know. And yet the world holds together.' The theological force is not that Job is small and God is big — it is that the world is far more complex, more beautiful, more terrifying, and more carefully governed than any human theology can contain. The friends' neat system of retribution cannot account for the storehouses of hail or the channels of the thunderstorm. Job's demand for a legal hearing cannot account for the morning stars singing together. The speech does not answer Job's question; it dissolves the framework in which the question was asked.*

Translation Friction: *The central interpretive problem of God's speech is this: Is it an answer or an evasion? Job asked 'Why do I suffer?' and God responds with 'Where were you when I laid the earth's foundation?' Many readers — ancient and modern — have felt that God changes the subject, overwhelming Job with power rather than addressing his legitimate complaint. Others argue that the speech is profoundly responsive: it tells Job that the universe operates on principles far beyond retribution, that suffering and justice are embedded in*

a system so vast that no human mind can hold it all at once. The speech also creates a paradox: Job wanted God to appear (9:16, 13:22, 23:3-5), and now God has appeared — but not in the courtroom setting Job imagined. God comes as the Creator, not as a defendant or judge. The 'answer' is the encounter itself: Job asked to see God, and God has come. Whether that is enough depends on whether you think presence can substitute for explanation.

Connections: The creation imagery in 38:4-7 parallels Genesis 1 but from a radically different angle — here creation is described not as a sequence of commands but as an architectural project with measurements, foundations, cornerstones, and a celebratory chorus of morning stars. The sea's birth in verses 8-11 personifies the ocean as an infant bursting from the womb, then swaddled in clouds — an image that connects to the Babylonian creation myth (Enuma Elish) where Marduk defeats Tiamat (the sea) but also to Psalm 104:6-9 where God sets boundaries for the waters. The constellations in verses 31-33 (Pleiades, Orion, the Bear/Mazzaroth) connect to Amos 5:8 and Job 9:9. The entire speech anticipates Psalm 104 and portions of Isaiah 40-45 where God's incomparability is demonstrated through creation. The phrase 'Where were you?' echoes God's question to Adam in Genesis 3:9 ('Where are you?') — in both cases, God's question reveals the creature's displacement from the center.

¹Then YHWH answered Job from the whirlwind and said:

²Who is this who darkens counsel
with words empty of knowledge?

³Brace yourself like a man.
I will question you, and you will answer me.

⁴Where were you when I laid the foundation of the earth?
Tell me, if you possess understanding.

⁵Who fixed its measurements — surely you know!
Or who stretched the measuring line across it?

⁶On what were its bases sunk?
Or who laid its cornerstone —

⁷while the morning stars sang in chorus
and every divine being shouted with joy?

⁸Who shut the sea behind doors
when it burst forth from the womb?

⁹When I made clouds its garment
and thick darkness its swaddling cloth?

¹⁰I broke upon it my limit,
and set bars and doors in place,

¹¹and said, 'This far you may come, but no farther.
Here your proud waves must stop.'

¹²Have you ever in your life commanded the morning?
Have you shown the dawn its place?

¹³so that it seizes the edges of the earth
and shakes the wicked out of it?

¹⁴The earth transforms like clay under a seal;
its features stand out like folds in a garment.

¹⁵From the wicked their light is withheld,
and the upraised arm is broken.

¹⁶Have you gone to the springs of the sea?
Have you walked the floor of the deep?

¹⁷Have the gates of death been revealed to you?
Have you seen the gates of deep darkness?

¹⁸Have you grasped the full breadth of the earth?
Tell me, if you know all of it.

¹⁹Where is the path to where light dwells?
And darkness — where is its place?

²⁰Can you escort it to its territory?
Do you know the paths to its home?

²¹Surely you know — for you were already born then,
and the number of your days is so great!

²²Have you entered the storehouses of snow?
Have you seen the storehouses of hail,

²³which I have stored for the time of trouble,
for the day of battle and war?

²⁴By what path is lightning distributed?
How is the east wind scattered across the earth?

²⁵Who cut a channel for the torrents of rain,
or a path for the thunderbolt,

²⁶to bring rain on a land where no one lives,
on a wilderness with no human in it,

²⁷to satisfy the desolate wasteland
and make the grass spring up?

²⁸Does the rain have a father?
Who fathered the drops of dew?

²⁹From whose womb did the ice come forth?
Who gave birth to the frost of heaven?

³⁰The waters harden like stone,
and the surface of the deep locks tight.

³¹Can you bind the chains of the Pleiades?
 Can you loosen the cords of Orion?
³²Can you bring out the constellations in their season?
 Can you guide the Great Bear with her cubs?
³³Do you know the laws of heaven?
 Can you establish its authority over the earth?
³⁴Can you raise your voice to the clouds
 so that a flood of water covers you?
³⁵Can you send out lightning bolts so they go
 and say to you, 'Here we are'?
³⁶Who put wisdom in the hidden depths?
 Or who gave the rooster understanding?
³⁷Who can count the clouds by wisdom?
 Who can tip the water-skins of heaven,
³⁸when the dust hardens into a mass
 and the clods stick together?
³⁹Can you hunt prey for the lioness?
 Can you fill the appetite of her young,
⁴⁰when they crouch in their dens,
 when they lie in ambush in the thicket?
⁴¹Who provides food for the raven
 when its young cry out to God
 and wander about for lack of food?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The return of the name YHWH is the single most important narrative signal in this verse. The friends and Job have debated about God using generic terms; now the personal, covenant Name speaks. This is not 'a god' responding — it is the God of Israel, the God who appeared to Moses, the God who brought Israel out of Egypt. The se'arah may connect to Elijah's experience in 1 Kings 19:11-12, where YHWH was not in the wind or earthquake but in the still small voice. Here, by contrast, YHWH speaks from within the storm itself. Different theophanies, different modes of divine speech.
2. The word etsah ('counsel, purpose, plan') is critical — it implies that the universe has a plan, a design that Job's suffering fits into, even though Job cannot see it. God does not reveal the plan but insists it exists. The phrase beli da'at ('without knowledge') will be answered by Job himself in 42:3 when he repeats this exact phrase and admits he spoke of things too wonderful for him.
3. The image of girding the loins refers to tucking the long robe into the belt to free the legs for action — running, fighting, or hard labor. It signals preparation for something strenuous. The use of gever rather than adam or ish is a mark of respect: God addresses Job as a warrior worthy of engagement, not as a worm to be crushed.
4. The architectural metaphor — founding, measuring, laying cornerstones — runs through verses 4-7 and presents creation not as speaking things into existence (as in Genesis 1) but as constructing a building. This is a different creation tradition, one that emphasizes design, engineering, and craftsmanship. Both traditions affirm divine intentionality but from different angles.
5. The ironic ki teda ('surely you know') recurs as a rhetorical device throughout the speech. It does not mock Job so much as it emphasizes the gap between human knowledge and cosmic reality. The measuring line (qav) appears in Isaiah 34:11 and Zechariah 1:16 as an instrument of both destruction and rebuilding — God measures what God makes and what God unmakes.

6. The word *hotba'u* ('were sunk, were plunged') suggests the bases were driven deep, like pilings sunk into bedrock. The image implies massive engineering force. The cornerstone (even pinnah) appears in Isaiah 28:16 as a metaphor for what God establishes in Zion — the theological connection between the foundation of the earth and the foundation of God's kingdom is not accidental.
7. The morning stars (*kokhevei voqer*) and the sons of God (*benei Elohim*) form a parallel pair, suggesting that the stars themselves are conceived as divine beings — or at least that heavenly beings and celestial objects belong to the same celebratory chorus. The image of creation accompanied by song appears nowhere in Genesis 1 but is developed in Psalm 19:1-4 ('The heavens declare the glory of God') and Psalm 148. This verse supplies what Genesis omits: the emotional atmosphere of creation. God made the world, and the universe applauded.
8. The birth metaphor for the sea is unique to this passage and stands in contrast to the combat mythology of other ancient Near Eastern creation accounts where the sea-god must be defeated. Here the sea is not an enemy but a child — powerful, untamed, but ultimately subject to God's parental authority. The doors (*delatayim*) are a household image: God closes the nursery door on the raging infant ocean.
9. The word *chatullah* ('swaddling cloth') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. It derives from *chatal* ('to wrap, to swaddle'). The image of swaddling connects to Ezekiel 16:4 where Jerusalem is described as an abandoned infant not swaddled at birth — here, by contrast, God swaddles the sea carefully. The theological implication is that God's relationship to the most chaotic force in nature is parental, not adversarial.
10. The verb *va'eshbor* ('and I broke/prescribed') *alav chuqqi* ('upon it my statute/limit') — God imposed a boundary on the sea, a decree it cannot cross. The *chuq* ('statute, decree, limit') is the same word used for divine law given to Israel. The same God who decrees moral law for humanity decrees physical law for the ocean. The bars (*beriach*) and doors (*delatayim*) complete the image: the sea is enclosed, contained, held.
11. This verse is echoed in Psalm 104:9 ('You set a boundary they cannot cross; never again will they cover the earth') and Jeremiah 5:22 ('I placed the sand as a boundary for the sea, an eternal decree it cannot cross'). The proud waves (*ga'on gallekha*) use language elsewhere applied to human arrogance — the sea's physical pride and humanity's moral pride are governed by the same God.
12. The dawn (*shachar*) is personified throughout the ancient Near East — in Ugaritic mythology, *Shachar* is a deity, the god of dawn. The Hebrew Bible demythologizes this: dawn is not a god but a servant, directed by God to its appointed place. The question implies that the daily miracle of sunrise is governed by the same intelligence that governs everything Job questions.
13. The word *kanfot* ('wings, edges, corners') is the same word used for the corners of a garment (Numbers 15:38) and the wings of the Temple cherubim. The earth-as-garment image appears also in Isaiah 24:20. The shaking out of the wicked (*na'ar*, 'to shake off, to shake out') is a vivid domestic image applied to cosmic justice — God shakes the earth clean every morning.
14. The imagery describes what dawn does to the landscape. *Tithappekh kechomer chotam* ('it turns like clay to a seal') — a seal pressed into clay reveals the image carved into it. When light comes, the formless darkness of night is pressed into shape, and the contours of the earth appear, as if a seal has stamped definition into what was blank. The parallel *veyityatsevu kemo levush* ('and they stand out like a garment') suggests the earth's features take on color and texture, like the patterns in a dyed fabric becoming visible in light.
15. A paradox: the light that reveals the world also denies itself to the wicked. *Veyimmana meResha'im oram* ('and their light is withheld from the wicked') — the wicked operate by the 'light' of darkness; dawn destroys their working conditions. The *uzero'a ramah tishaver* ('and the raised arm is broken') — the arm lifted in violence is snapped by the dawn. The daily sunrise is a daily act of judgment against those who exploit the night.
16. The *tehom* ('deep, abyss') is one of the most resonant words in Hebrew cosmology. It appears in Genesis 1:2 as the primordial water over which God's spirit hovers, in Genesis 7:11 when the fountains of the great deep break open during the Flood, and in Psalm 104:6 as the waters that covered the earth before God set them boundaries. The *tehom* is the oldest thing in the universe besides God.
17. The *sha'arei mavet* ('gates of death') and *sha'arei tsalmaveth* ('gates of deep shadow/death-shadow') describe the entrance to the underworld — Sheol, the realm of the dead. Job, who longed for death in chapter 3, has never actually been there. He romanticized death as a place of rest, but he has never seen its gates. God's question implies that death, like the sea and the dawn, is a domain God governs and Job has never visited. The parallelism between *mavet* ('death') and *tsalmaveth* ('deep shadow') echoes Job 3:5 where Job invoked *tsalmaveth* in his curse.
18. The *hitbonanta* ('have you considered, have you perceived') *ad rachavei arets* ('unto the breadths of the earth') asks whether Job comprehends the sheer size of the world. The challenge *im yadata khullah* ('if you know all of it') is the most sweeping question yet: not a specific detail but totality. Do you know everything? The question is rhetorical — no one does — but it reframes Job's complaint: if you cannot even measure the earth, how can you measure the justice of the God who made it?
19. Light and darkness are treated as substances with fixed addresses. *Ei zeh ha-derekh yishkon or* ('where is the way where light dwells') — light has a home, a dwelling, a location it returns to when it is not illuminating the earth. Likewise darkness (*choshekh*) has a *meqom* ('place'). The cosmology is poetic rather than scientific, but the theological point is clear: light and darkness are not abstract concepts but created realities with assigned locations, governed by God.
20. The verbs are almost humorous: *ki tiqqachennu el gevulo* ('that you might take it to its border') imagines Job walking light home, escorting it to the boundary of its domain. *Vekhi tavin netivot beito* ('and that you might understand the paths to its house') — do you know the way to light's house? The personification treats light as a traveler who needs a guide, and the implication is that God is that guide. Every morning God escorts light out; every evening God walks it home.

21. The sharpest irony in the speech so far. Yadata ki az tivvaled ('you know, for then you were born') — you must know how creation works because you were there when it happened. Umispar yamekha rabbim ('and the number of your days is great') — you have been alive so long that you must have witnessed it all. Of course Job was not born at creation. His days are not great on the cosmic scale. The irony is cutting but not cruel — it is the kind of challenge a teacher gives a student who has overstepped his knowledge.
22. The otserot ('storehouses, treasures') of snow and hail — God keeps weather in storage, like grain in a warehouse. The image suggests that snow and hail are not random phenomena but stockpiled resources, stored until needed. The word otsar is used for royal treasures and temple storehouses — weather is God's treasury, and God dispenses it according to purposes Job cannot see.
23. The hail is not just weather — it is weaponry. Asher chasakti le'et tsar ('which I have withheld for the time of distress') leyom qerav umilchamah ('for the day of battle and war'). God stockpiles hail as a military reserve. Joshua 10:11 records God hurling hailstones at Israel's enemies; Isaiah 28:2 and 17 describe hail as divine judgment. Weather is an instrument of providence, stored and deployed according to purposes that extend far beyond Job's comprehension.
24. The ei zeh ha-derekh yechalek or ('where is the way light is divided/distributed') likely refers to lightning — the or here is the flash that splits across the sky in multiple directions. The parallel yafets qadim alei arets ('the east wind is scattered upon the earth') asks how wind patterns are generated. Both questions point to the same reality: weather has pathways, distribution networks, routing systems that Job has never mapped and cannot control.
25. Mi fillag la-shhetef te'aloh ('who split a channel for the flood') — the verb pilleg ('to split, to divide, to channel') describes the engineering of drainage and water flow. Even rainstorms follow channels. The derekh la-chaziz qolot ('a path for the flash of thunders') extends the image: lightning follows a path, a derekh, as if traveling a road God built. The questions continue to expose the hidden infrastructure of weather — systems Job cannot see or replicate.
26. This verse is a direct challenge to retribution theology, which assumes every divine act must serve human justice. God sends rain where no one can benefit — the rain serves purposes beyond human calculation. This is one of the clearest statements in the Hebrew Bible that God's providence extends beyond the human sphere and operates according to principles that include but transcend human welfare.
27. Lehasbia sho'ah umesho'ah ('to satisfy the desolation and waste') — the word sho'ah ('devastation, ruin, desolation') is used as a near-synonym with mesho'ah. God satisfies the waste — gives it what it needs, fills its emptiness with water. The ulehatsmiach motsa deshe ('and to cause the emergence of grass to sprout') — even in the desolate place, grass grows because God sends rain. The wilderness has needs and God meets them, regardless of human observation.
28. Hayesh la-matar av ('does the rain have a father') — the question is deceptively simple. In Canaanite religion, the storm-god Baal was considered the father of rain. The Hebrew Bible's answer is implied: yes, rain has a father, and it is YHWH, not Baal. The mi holid eglei tal ('who fathered the drops of dew') extends the paternity metaphor. Rain and dew are God's children, born of divine will. The questions simultaneously demythologize pagan weather-gods and affirm YHWH's intimate relationship with meteorological phenomena.
29. The birth metaphor recurs: mibetten mi yatsa ha-qerach ('from whose womb came the ice') — ice has a mother, a womb from which it emerged. The ukfor shamayim mi yelado ('and the frost of heaven, who bore it') asks who gave birth to frost. Like the sea in verse 8, frozen water is a child — born, not manufactured. The cumulative effect of these paternity and maternity questions is to reveal a creation that is intimately parented by God, not mechanically produced.
30. Ka'even mayim yitchabbe'u ('like stone the waters hide themselves') — when water freezes, it conceals itself inside stone-like ice. The pnei tehom yitlakkedu ('the face of the deep is seized/locked') describes ice forming over deep water — the surface of the tehom is captured, locked in place. The deep, which was born in verse 8 and explored in verse 16, is now imprisoned by its own frozen surface. The image conveys God's power over even the most primordial element of creation.
31. Kimah (Pleiades) and Kesil (Orion) appear together also in Job 9:9 and Amos 5:8. The identification is generally accepted though not absolutely certain. The ma'adannot may also mean 'delights' or 'luxuries' — the Pleiades were associated with pleasant weather and spring rains. The moshkhot ('cords, drawing-bands') of Orion suggest the constellation's stars are held in tension like a bow or a yoke.
32. The Mazzarot are either the zodiacal constellations or a specific constellation group — the word appears only here and its identification is debated. The key point is be'itto ('in its season') — the constellations appear at appointed times, following a schedule Job did not set. The Ayish ('the Bear') with al baneihah ('upon/with her sons/cubs') is likely Ursa Major, the Great Bear, whose 'children' are the smaller stars trailing behind it. God guides the Bear across the sky as a mother leads her young. Even the stars are parented.
33. The word chuqqot ('statutes, ordinances') applied to heaven connects the physical order to the moral order — the same God who legislates for Israel legislates for the cosmos. The unique word mishtar ('rule, governance') may be related to the Aramaic root for 'writing' or 'recording,' suggesting the laws of heaven are inscribed, permanent, authoritative.
34. Hatarim la'av qolekha ('can you lift your voice to the cloud') — can Job shout at the sky and make it rain? The veshif'at mayim tekassekka ('and an abundance of water covers you') describes the result Job cannot produce: a downpour on command. Elijah prayed for rain (1 Kings 18:41-45), but even Elijah did not command it. God alone commands the clouds.
35. Hateshallach beraqim veyelekhu ('can you send lightnings and they go') — the lightnings are messengers, dispatched on a mission. The veyomeru lekha hinnenu ('and they say to you, here we are') is extraordinary: the lightning bolts report back. They say hinni ('here I am') — the same word

Abraham used in response to God (Genesis 22:1), the same word Isaiah used (Isaiah 6:8). Lightning bolts are obedient servants of God. They go where sent and report for duty. The universe operates on a chain of command that flows from God, and Job is not in it.

- 36.** This verse is notoriously difficult. *Mi shat ba-tuchot chokhmah* ('who set wisdom in the tuchot') — the tuchot may mean 'inward parts' (the kidneys or inner organs as seats of wisdom) or 'ibis' (an Egyptian bird believed to predict the Nile's flooding). The parallel *mi natan la-sekhvi vinah* ('who gave understanding to the sekhvi') — sekhvi may mean 'mind/heart' or 'rooster' (which announces the dawn). Many modern scholars prefer the bird readings: the ibis and the rooster both demonstrate an innate wisdom — the ability to read weather signs — that was implanted by God. Whether the verse refers to human intuition or animal instinct, the point is the same: wisdom is God's gift, not humanity's invention.
- 37.** *Mi yesapper shechaqim bechokhmah* ('who can count the clouds with wisdom') — the shechaqim ('thin clouds, sky, firmament') are innumerable, and counting them would require a wisdom beyond any human's capacity. The *venivlei shamayim mi yashkiv* ('and the skins of heaven, who can lay them down/tip them') — the nivlei are wineskins or water-skins. The sky is a collection of water-skins, and when God tips them, it rains. The domestic image — pouring water from a skin — applied to the cosmic sky is characteristically Joban: the grandest phenomena described through the simplest objects.
- 38.** The *betsheqet afar la-mutsaq* ('when the dust pours into a casting/mass') describes what happens when rain hits parched ground — the loose dust fuses into hard earth. The *urgavim yedubbaqun* ('and the clods cling together') completes the image: scattered clumps of dry soil become a solid surface. This is a small, observational detail — mud forming — but it is one more thing God governs and Job does not. Even the behavior of wet dirt is part of the divine design.
- 39.** The speech now shifts from cosmology and weather to animals — a transition that will continue through chapter 39. *Hatatsud le-lavi taref* ('can you hunt for the lioness prey') — the lavi is the lioness, the primary hunter in a lion pride. Can Job do her job? Can he provide food for wild predators? The *vechayyat kefirim temalle* ('and the life/appetite of young lions can you fill') asks whether Job can sustain lion cubs. God feeds predators. The theology is startling: God's care extends to carnivores, to the violent food chain that Job might consider unjust. God does not only feed the gentle and the good.
- 40.** *Ki yashsochu ba-me'onot* ('when they crouch in the dens') *yeshvu ba-sukkah lemo arev* ('they sit in the cover/booth for ambush') — the lions wait in hiding, and their hunt is successful because God designed them for it. The sukkah ('booth, shelter, cover') is the same word used for the temporary shelters of Sukkot — the lions have their own sukkah, their own shelter. The verse describes predatory behavior without moral judgment: lions ambush prey, and this is part of God's world.
- 41.** The raven (*orev*) is the first bird Noah sends from the ark (Genesis 8:7), and it is listed as unclean in Leviticus 11:15. Yet God feeds it. Jesus echoes this verse in Luke 12:24: 'Consider the ravens: they neither sow nor reap... and yet God feeds them.' The crying of the raven chicks to God (*el El yeshavve'u*) attributes a kind of prayer to animals — they call out in need, and God responds. The universe is full of creatures in need, and God provides for all of them, not just the ones humans value.

39

Summary: *God continues speaking from the whirlwind, but the subject shifts from cosmology to zoology. Chapter 38 asked Job about the architecture of the earth, the behavior of weather, and the laws of the stars. Now God asks about animals — creatures that live beyond human control and often beyond human comprehension. The parade of animals is deliberately chosen: mountain goats who give birth on cliffs no human visits, the wild donkey who despises the city, the wild ox who will not serve at Job's manger, the ostrich who abandons her eggs yet runs faster than the horse, the war horse who laughs at fear and charges into battle, and the hawk and eagle who soar by wisdom Job did not give them. Each animal embodies freedom, wildness, strangeness, or power that exists entirely outside the human economy. God did not make these creatures for Job. They serve no human purpose. They are magnificent on their own terms, and God delights in them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The animal portraits in Job 39 are among the finest nature poetry in any language. They are not illustrations of theological propositions — they are celebrations of creaturely existence in its own right. The wild donkey is not a moral lesson; it is a wild donkey, free and fierce and contemptuous of civilization. The war horse does not symbolize courage; it is courage made flesh, snorting, pawing, laughing at fear. The ostrich is not a parable about foolish parenting; she is a bizarre, beautiful anomaly — cruel to her young by human standards, yet equipped with speed no horse can match. God does not explain these creatures; God presents them. The theological effect is not a lesson but a reorientation: Job has been asking why the universe does not conform to human categories of justice. God's answer is to show him a universe that does not conform to human categories at all. The wild donkey does not care about Job's lawsuit. The eagle does not know about retribution theology. The world is bigger, wilder, stranger, and more glorious than any*

system — whether the friends' or Job's — can contain.

Translation Friction: The central tension in this chapter is the ostrich passage (verses 13-18), which contains the most explicit divine commentary in the speech: God says He did not give the ostrich wisdom but gave her speed instead. This is the only place in the speech where God explains one of the creatures rather than simply presenting it. Some scholars consider it an interpolation because it breaks the pattern of questions — God makes statements here rather than asking. But it may be deliberately placed as the center of the animal catalog, the one creature that most clearly defies human categories: she is cruel, foolish, and glorious all at once. The theological problem is sharp: if God withheld wisdom from the ostrich, does God withhold understanding from humans too? Does the speech imply that Job's incomprehension is by divine design?

Connections: The animal catalog connects to Psalm 104, which also celebrates wild creatures (wild donkeys, rock badgers, lions) as evidence of God's wisdom and delight. The war horse passage (verses 19-25) has no close parallel in Scripture but echoes ancient Near Eastern horse literature. The hawk and eagle at the end (verses 26-30) connect to Isaiah 40:31 ('those who wait for YHWH shall renew their strength; they shall mount up with wings like eagles'). The entire chapter anticipates the Behemoth and Leviathan passages in chapters 40-41, where God will present the two supreme animals. The movement from domestic concerns (chapters 3-37) to wild animals is a geographic movement as well — from the inhabited world to the wilderness, the desert, the cliff face, the sky. God is pulling Job's attention away from the human world and toward the larger creation.

¹Do you know when the mountain goats give birth on the cliff?
Do you watch over the deer as they labor?

²Can you count the months until they are due?
Do you know the time of their delivery?

³They crouch down, push out their young,
and are done with their birth pangs.

⁴Their young grow strong, they thrive in the open;
they leave and do not return.

⁵Who set the wild donkey free?
Who untied the ropes of the onager?

⁶I made the wasteland its home
and the salt flats its dwelling.

⁷It laughs at the noise of the city.
It does not hear the driver's shouts.

⁸It roams the mountains as its pasture
and searches for every green thing.

⁹Will the wild ox consent to serve you?
Will it spend the night at your feeding trough?

¹⁰Can you bind the wild ox to a furrow with ropes?
Will it harrow the valleys behind you?

¹¹Can you trust it because its strength is so great?
Would you leave your heavy work to it?

¹²Do you trust it to bring in your grain
and gather it to your threshing floor?

¹³The wings of the ostrich flap joyfully —
but are they the pinions of the stork?

¹⁴She leaves her eggs on the ground
and lets them warm in the dust,

¹⁵forgetting that a foot may crush them
or a wild animal may trample them.

¹⁶She treats her young harshly, as if not her own.
Her labor may be for nothing — she does not care.

¹⁷For God did not grant her wisdom
or give her a share of understanding.

¹⁸But when she spreads her wings and runs,
she laughs at the horse and its rider.

¹⁹Did you give the horse its strength?
Did you clothe its neck with a flowing mane?

²⁰Can you make it leap like a locust?
The splendor of its snorting is terrifying.

²¹It paws in the valley and rejoices in its strength.
It charges out to meet the weapons.

²²It laughs at fear and is not dismayed.
It does not turn back from the sword.

²³The quiver rattles against its side,
the flashing spear and the javelin.

²⁴With trembling and fury it devours the ground.
It cannot stand still when the trumpet sounds.

²⁵At each blast of the trumpet it cries, 'Ha!'
From far off it catches the scent of battle —
the thunder of commanders and the war cry.

²⁶Does the hawk soar by your wisdom,
spreading its wings toward the south?

²⁷Does the eagle rise at your command
and build its nest on high?

²⁸It dwells on the rock and lodges there,
on the crag of the cliff and the stronghold.

29From there it searches for food;
its eyes scan the distance.

30Its young ones feast on blood,
and where the slain are — there it is.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The ya'alei sala ('rock-goats, ibex') are mentioned also in 1 Samuel 24:2 and Psalm 104:18. They inhabit the most inaccessible terrain in the Near East — the cliffs of Ein Gedi and the Judean wilderness. The verb cholel ('to writhe, to be in labor') describes the pain of animal childbirth, observed by God alone.
2. Tispor yerachim temalle'nah ('can you count the months they fulfill') — each species has its own gestation period, its own biological calendar. God tracks each pregnancy. The veyadata et lidtanah ('and you know the time of their bearing') challenges Job to demonstrate reproductive knowledge he does not possess. The verse implies that God functions as the midwife of the wild — counting months, watching over pregnancies, attending births no human sees.
3. Tikhrana ('they bow down, they crouch') yaldeihen tefallechna ('their young they push out') — the description is vivid and physical: the animals crouch and deliver. The chevleihem teshallechna ('their labor-pains they send away') — once the birth is complete, the pain is over. The word chevel ('labor-pain, rope, cord') is the same word used for human labor pains throughout Scripture. These wild animals experience pain, endure it, and move on — without explanation, without protest, without asking why.
4. Yachlemu beneihem ('their children become strong/healthy') yirbu va-bar ('they increase in the open field'). The yatse'u velo shavu lamo ('they go out and do not return to them') describes the natural weaning process: the young grow up, leave, and never come back. There is no sentimentality here — this is how wild animals live. The theological point is understated but clear: God sustains a world in which creatures are born, grow strong, leave their parents, and live independently. The system works without human management.
5. The pere (wild donkey, onager) is one of the most frequently mentioned wild animals in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 16:12, Isaiah 32:14, Jeremiah 2:24, Hosea 8:9). It symbolizes wildness, independence, and refusal to be domesticated. Ishmael is compared to a pere adam ('wild donkey of a man') in Genesis 16:12. God's delight in the wild donkey's freedom is a direct challenge to the anthropocentric view that all creatures exist to serve humanity.
6. Asher samti aravah beito ('which I set the steppe/wilderness as its house') — God assigned the wild donkey its habitat, and that habitat is the aravah ('desert plain, steppe, wilderness'). The umishkenotav melechah ('and its dwellings the salt land') — the melechah is salt-crusted terrain where nothing grows. The wild donkey lives in places no sane farmer would settle. Its home is the anti-city, the anti-garden. God gave it this home deliberately, and the wild donkey thrives there.
7. Yischaq lahamon qiryah ('it laughs at the tumult of the city') — the verb sachaq ('to laugh, to mock') expresses contempt. The wild donkey finds the city ridiculous. The teshu'ot noges lo yishma ('the shouts of the driver it does not hear') — the noges ('driver, taskmaster, oppressor') is the same word used for the Egyptian slave-drivers in Exodus. The wild donkey is immune to the taskmaster. It cannot be driven, whipped, or controlled. It lives outside every system of domination. God made a creature that is constitutionally free.
8. Yetur harim mir'ehu ('the range of the mountains is its pasture') — the wild donkey's grazing land is the entire mountain range. No fence contains it. The ve'achar kol yaroq yidrosh ('and after every green thing it searches') — the verb darash ('to seek, to search') is the same verb used for seeking God. The wild donkey searches for food with the same intensity a worshipper searches for God. The portrait is complete: the wild donkey is free, wild, self-sufficient, contemptuous of civilization, and wholly sustained by God.
9. The re'em (traditionally translated 'unicorn' in the KJV, following the LXX monoceros) is almost certainly the aurochs (*Bos primigenius*), the wild ancestor of domestic cattle, which stood six feet at the shoulder and had enormous horns. It went extinct in 1627. The re'em appears in Numbers 23:22, Deuteronomy 33:17, Psalm 22:21, and Psalm 92:10, always as a symbol of overwhelming strength. God made an animal too powerful for human service.
10. Hatiqshor re'em betelem avoto ('can you bind the wild ox in the furrow with its rope') — can Job yoke the wild ox to a plow and make it walk a straight furrow? The im yesadded amaqim acharekha ('will it harrow the valleys after you') — will it follow behind Job, breaking up the soil? The wild ox's strength would be extraordinary in agriculture, but it cannot be harnessed. Power without submission — God made that too.
11. Hativtach bo ki rav kocho ('will you trust in it because its strength is great') — the wild ox is immensely strong, but strength without obedience is useless to a farmer. Trust requires reliability, and the wild ox is reliably unreliable. The veta'azov elav yegi'ekha ('and will you leave your toil to it') — yegi'a ('toil, labor, the fruit of labor') is what Job has worked for. Would he entrust his harvest to an animal that will not obey? The verse tests whether raw power is the same as dependable service. It is not.
12. Hata'amin bo ki yashiv zar'ekha ('will you believe in it that it will return your seed/grain') — the verb he'emin ('to trust, to believe') is the same root as emunah ('faithfulness') and amen. Can Job have faith in the wild ox? The vegornekha ye'esof ('and your threshing floor it will gather') asks whether the ox will complete the harvest. The answer is no — the wild ox has no interest in human agriculture. Its magnificence is not for human use. God made beauty and power that serve no one but the Creator.

13. The word *renanim* (from *ranan*, 'to shout with joy, to sing') names the ostrich for its cry. The *chasidah* ('stork') is named for *chesed* ('faithful love, devotion') — ironically, the stork is the devoted parent while the ostrich is the negligent one. The juxtaposition of names highlights the contrast: the 'joyful singer' does not fly; the 'faithful one' does.
14. *Ki ta'azov la'arets betseiah* ('for she abandons to the earth her eggs') — the verb *azav* ('to leave, to abandon, to forsake') is strong. The ostrich does not carefully nest her eggs; she leaves them on the ground. The *ve'al afar techamem* ('and upon dust she warms them') — the eggs are incubated by the heat of the desert floor, not by attentive sitting. By human standards, this is negligent parenting. By divine design, it works — ostrich eggs are remarkably heat-resistant and the species has survived for millions of years.
15. *Vatishkach ki regel tezureha* ('and she forgets that a foot may crush it') — the ostrich does not guard against the most obvious danger. The *vechayyat ha-sadeh tedusheha* ('and the animal of the field may trample it') — any passing beast could destroy her eggs. The ostrich's apparent carelessness is presented without moral judgment. God made her this way. Not every creature parents the way humans think creatures should.
16. *Hiqshiach baneiha lelo lah* ('she hardens against her children as if not hers') — the verb *hiqshiach* ('to harden, to treat cruelly') suggests the ostrich is indifferent to her own offspring. The *leriq yegi'ah beli fachad* ('her toil is for emptiness, without fear') — her labor may produce nothing, and she feels no anxiety about it. The phrase *beli fachad* ('without fear') is key: the ostrich does not fear failure. She does not worry. This is not wisdom — the text will say God withheld wisdom from her — but it is a kind of freedom. She exists without the burden of anxious care that torments Job.
17. This verse breaks the speech's question-only pattern — God makes a declarative statement about the ostrich. Some scholars consider this evidence that the ostrich section is a later addition. Others argue it is the deliberate center of the animal catalog, the point where God most directly addresses the question of why creatures (and by extension, humans) lack the understanding they wish they had. The answer is discomfiting: because God chose not to give it.
18. Ostriches can run at speeds exceeding 40 miles per hour, faster than any horse. The ancient world knew this and marveled at it. The portrait of the ostrich is a masterpiece of reversal: every apparent deficiency (flightless wings, abandoned eggs, no wisdom) is answered by an unexpected gift (speed, survival, fearlessness). The creature that seems most cursed is in some ways the most free.
19. The war horse passage (verses 19-25) is the longest and most vivid animal portrait in the speech. The horse is the only domesticated animal in God's catalog, but it is presented not as a servant but as a creature of terrifying power and joy. The *ra'mah* ('thunder/mane') debate is ancient — the LXX reads 'fear' (*phobos*), while the Vulgate reads 'neighing' (*hinnitum*). The ambiguity may be intentional: the horse's mane is like thunder.
20. *Hatar'ishennu ka'arbeh* ('can you make it tremble/leap like a locust') — the comparison to a locust may seem odd, but it captures the horse's explosive forward movement, the way it springs into a gallop. The *hod nachro eimah* ('the glory/majesty of its snorting is terror') — the horse's snort (*nachar*) has *hod* ('majesty, splendor'), the same word used for God's glory in Psalm 8:1 and 104:1. The horse's nostrils exhale something majestic. Terror and beauty merge.
21. *Yachperu va'emeq* ('they paw/dig in the valley') — the war horse paws the ground before battle, impatient to charge. The *veyasis bekoach* ('and it rejoices in strength') — the horse experiences joy in its own power. This is not mere instinct; it is delight. The *yetse liqrat nasheq* ('it goes out to meet the weaponry/armor') — the horse moves toward danger, not away from it. It runs toward swords. The portrait inverts every human instinct of self-preservation.
22. *Yischaq lefachad* ('it laughs at fear') — for the third time in this chapter, a creature laughs (the wild donkey at the city, the ostrich at the horse, now the horse at fear itself). The *velo yechat* ('and is not shattered/dismayed') — the verb *chatat* ('to be shattered, to be terrified') describes the kind of fear that breaks a person. The horse does not experience it. The *velo yashuv mippenei charev* ('and it does not turn from the face of the sword') — the horse faces the blade and does not flinch. This is the ultimate portrait of courage — not the absence of danger but the refusal to retreat from it.
23. *Alav tirneh ashpah* ('upon it the quiver rings/rattles') — the sound of arrows jangling in their case against the horse's flank as it gallops. The *lahav chanit vekhidon* ('the flame of the spear and the javelin') — *lahav* ('flame, blade') describes the glint of metal, the flash of weapon-light. The verse is pure sensory description: sound (the rattling quiver) and sight (the flashing spear). The horse is surrounded by implements of death and runs faster.
24. The verb *gama* ('to swallow') applied to the earth is one of the most powerful images in the passage — the horse literally eats distance, consuming ground as it charges. The *shofar* (ram's horn trumpet) connects this military scene to Israel's liturgical life — the same instrument that calls Israel to worship calls the horse to war.
25. The exclamation *he'ach* ('ha!') is an onomatopoeia — the horse's excited snort or neigh rendered as human speech. The fact that the horse 'says' something puts it in the company of creation's other speakers: the morning stars that sing (38:7), the lightning bolts that say 'here we are' (38:35), and the night that announced Job's conception (3:3). God's creation is full of voices, and the horse's voice is one of fierce delight.
26. *Hamibbinatkha ya'aver nets* ('is it from your understanding the hawk flies') — the nets ('hawk, falcon') flies by an understanding Job did not supply. The *yifros kenafav leteiman* ('it spreads its wings toward the south') — the migratory instinct that carries hawks southward in winter is a form of wisdom, but it is God's wisdom implanted in the bird, not knowledge the hawk learned or Job taught. Migration is a mystery of navigation that humans still do not fully understand.
27. *Im al pikha yagbiha nasher* ('is it at your mouth/command the eagle soars high') — the *nasher* ('eagle' or 'vulture,' likely the griffon vulture) does not take orders from Job. The *vekhi yarim qinno* ('and that it raises its nest') — the eagle nests at heights no human chooses. The word *al pikha* ('at your mouth') echoes the idea that creation obeys God's mouth/word (Genesis 1), not Job's.

- 28.** Sela yishkon veyitlonan ('on the rock it dwells and lodges') — the eagle's home is the sela ('rock, cliff'), the most inaccessible terrain. The al shen sela umetsudah ('on the tooth of the rock and the fortress') — shen sela ('tooth of the rock') describes a sharp, narrow pinnacle. The metsudah ('stronghold, fortress') is a military term applied to a bird's nest — the eagle lives in a natural fortress. Like the mountain goats in verse 1, the eagle inhabits places humans cannot reach. God's creatures have territories beyond human jurisdiction.
- 29.** Mishsham chafar okhel ('from there it searches for food') — the eagle hunts from its high perch, scanning the ground below. The lemerachiq einav yabbitu ('from afar its eyes gaze') — the eagle's vision is legendary. It sees prey from distances no human eye can match. The verse describes a divinely engineered predator: positioned high, equipped with extraordinary sight, designed to hunt. The eagle's vision is a gift from the same God who asks Job to see beyond his own suffering.
- 30.** The final image — eagle chicks feeding on blood, the eagle present wherever the slain lie — connects to Jesus' words in Matthew 24:28 and Luke 17:37: 'Where the corpse is, there the vultures will gather.' The saying may have been proverbial even before Jesus, rooted in this verse. The chapter ends without resolution, without moral, without comfort — only with the stark reality of a world God made and governs on terms that are not humanity's to set.

40

Summary: *This chapter falls into two distinct movements. First, God pauses his whirlwind speech and challenges Job to respond (verses 1-2). Job answers with radical brevity: he puts his hand over his mouth and says he has nothing to add (verses 3-5). This is not yet repentance — it is stunned silence. Then God speaks a second time from the storm, and the tone shifts from cosmic wonder to direct confrontation. God challenges Job: Would you really annul my justice? Would you condemn me to justify yourself? (verse 8). If Job has an arm like God's and a voice like thunder, let him dress himself in majesty and crush the proud (verses 9-14). Then God unveils the first of two great beasts: Behemoth, a creature of overwhelming power whose bones are bronze tubes, whose limbs are iron bars, who drinks up a river without haste, who cannot be captured. Behemoth is the first of God's works — a creature made alongside humanity, yet utterly beyond human control.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Behemoth passage (verses 15-24) is one of the most debated sections in the Hebrew Bible. The identity of Behemoth has been argued for centuries: hippopotamus, elephant, water buffalo, mythological chaos beast, dinosaur, or a purely literary creation. The Hebrew behemot is the plural of behemah ('beast, cattle'), and the intensive plural may simply mean 'the Beast par excellence' — the supreme land animal. What matters theologically is not zoological identification but the rhetorical function: God presents a creature that is maximally powerful, maximally wild, and maximally beyond human dominion. The point is not 'look at my pet' but 'this is what I made, it lives alongside you, and you cannot touch it.' The description is laced with military and architectural language — bronze, iron, cedar — as if the animal is a living fortress. God's pride in this creature is palpable. Behemoth eats grass like an ox (verse 15) and yet is described with the language of cosmic power. The mundane and the magnificent merge: God delights in a grass-eating monster.*

Translation Friction: *The critical question of the chapter is verse 8: 'Would you annul my justice? Would you condemn me so that you may be justified?' This is the heart of God's challenge, and it cuts in a way that readers often miss. God is not asking Job to stop complaining. He is identifying the logical structure of Job's argument: if Job is innocent and God is responsible for his suffering, then God must be unjust. Job's self-justification requires God's condemnation. God does not deny Job's innocence — nowhere in the divine speeches does God say Job sinned. Instead, God challenges the binary: must either Job or God be guilty? Is there no framework large enough to hold both Job's innocence and God's justice? The friends said Job was guilty to preserve God's justice. Job said God was unjust to preserve his own innocence. God refuses both moves.*

Connections: *Behemoth as 'the first of the ways of God' (verse 19, reshith darkhei El) echoes Proverbs 8:22 where Wisdom is 'the beginning of his way' (reshith darkho). Both Wisdom and Behemoth are primordial — created first, existing before and beyond human civilization. The 'sword' of verse 19 (only his Maker can approach him with a sword) connects to the cherubim's flaming sword guarding Eden (Genesis 3:24) — certain divine prerogatives are fenced off from human access. The lotus and willow imagery (verses 21-22) locates Behemoth in the Jordan valley ecosystem, grounding the mythological in Palestinian geography. The challenge to 'deck yourself with glory and splendor' (verse 10) uses the same vocabulary (hod and hadar) applied to God in Psalm 104:1 and to the king in Psalm 21:6 — God is asking Job to try on divine clothing.*

¹Then YHWH answered Job and said:

²Will the one who contends with Shaddai correct him?
Let the one who argues with God answer.

³Then Job answered YHWH and said:

⁴Look — I am small. What can I answer you?
I put my hand over my mouth.

⁵Once I spoke, but I will not answer again.
Twice — but I will add nothing more.

⁶Then YHWH answered Job from the storm and said:

⁷Brace yourself like a warrior —
I will question you, and you will answer me.

⁸Would you really annul my justice?
Would you condemn me so that you can be in the right?

⁹Do you have an arm like God's?
Can you thunder with a voice like his?

¹⁰Clothe yourself with grandeur and majesty!
Dress yourself in glory and splendor!

¹¹Unleash the fury of your anger!
Look at every proud person and bring him low.

¹²Look at every proud person and humble him!
Trample the wicked where they stand.

¹³Bury them in the dust together!
Bind their faces in the hidden place.

¹⁴Then even I will praise you —
that your own right hand can save you.

¹⁵Look now at Behemoth, which I made alongside you —
he eats grass like an ox.

¹⁶Look at the strength in his loins,
the power in the muscles of his belly.

¹⁷He stiffens his tail like a cedar;
the sinews of his thighs are braided tight.

¹⁸His bones are tubes of bronze;
his limbs are bars of iron.

¹⁹He is the first of God's works —
only his Maker can approach him with the sword.

²⁰The mountains bring their produce to him,
and all the wild animals play nearby.

²¹He lies under the lotus plants,
hidden among the reeds and marsh.

²²The lotus plants screen him with their shade;
the willows of the stream surround him.

²³If the river rages, he does not panic.
He is calm even when the Jordan surges against his mouth.

²⁴Can anyone capture him while he watches?
Can anyone pierce his nose with a trap?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The divine speech pauses — this is a transition marker, giving Job an opening to respond before God continues. The verb *va-ya'an* ('answered') implies a dialogical structure: God expects a response.
2. The verb *yasar* ('to discipline, instruct, correct') in the hiphil implies authoritative correction — the kind a parent gives a child or a teacher gives a student. God asks whether Job is positioned to discipline the Almighty. The *mokhiach* ('the one who reproves, who brings a legal complaint') uses the same root (*yakach*) that Job used when demanding a hearing. God holds Job to his own legal language.
3. Job's first response to God. After thirty-seven chapters of demanding a hearing, Job now stands before God and speaks — but only to announce his silence.
4. The KJV's 'I am vile' is misleading. The *qalloti* means 'I am light, insignificant, of little account' — it is a statement about inadequacy, not moral corruption. Job is not retracting his innocence. He is acknowledging that the scale of the divine speeches has rendered his own words insufficient. The hand-over-mouth gesture appears elsewhere in Job (21:5, 29:9) as a sign of being struck dumb by something overwhelming.
5. The *achat dibbarti* ('once I spoke') *ve-lo e'eneh* ('and I will not answer') — Job acknowledges he has spoken and now declines to continue. The *ushtayim* ('and twice') *ve-lo osif* ('and I will not add') intensifies the refusal. The 'once... twice' pattern is a standard Hebrew poetic intensifier (cf. Psalm 62:12, Job 33:14). Job's silence is deliberate: he is not cut off mid-sentence but choosing to stop. This is not yet the full resolution — that comes in 42:1-6 after the Behemoth and Leviathan speeches.
6. God speaks a second time *min ha-se'arah* ('from the storm, from the whirlwind'). The storm that began in 38:1 has not subsided. God is not satisfied with Job's stunned silence — he wants a deeper engagement. The second divine speech will be shorter but more intense, culminating in the Behemoth and Leviathan descriptions.
7. The same challenge formula as 38:3, repeated verbatim. The *ezar na khe-ghever chalatseikha* ('gird up now like a strong man your loins') is a call to prepare for combat or hard labor — tighten the belt, tuck in the robe, get ready to fight. God does not want Job's stunned silence; he wants Job fully engaged. The *esh'alkha ve-hodi'eni* ('I will ask you and you will make known to me') maintains the examination format.
8. The verb *parar* ('to break, annul') in the hiphil means to cause something to be nullified — not just to question but to overthrow. The *mishpati* ('my justice') is not merely 'my judgment in your case' but God's entire framework of justice. The *tarshi'eni* ('you declare me wicked/guilty') uses the same verb (*rasha'* in the hiphil) used in courtroom verdicts — Job has been acting as judge, rendering a verdict of guilty against God. The *lema'an titsdaq* ('so that you may be justified/righteous') reveals that Job's self-justification requires God's condemnation. God does not deny Job's innocence. He challenges the framework that makes innocence and divine justice mutually exclusive.
9. The *zero'a* ('arm') is the standard Hebrew metaphor for power — the 'arm of God' delivers Israel from Egypt (Exodus 6:6, Deuteronomy 4:34). God asks if Job possesses this kind of force. The *be-qol kamohu tar'em* ('with a voice like his you thunder') — can Job's voice shake the cosmos the way God's voice does? The implication: if you want to run the universe, you need the equipment.
10. The *adeh na ga'on va-govah* ('deck yourself now with pride and height/exaltation') — God invites Job to try on the divine wardrobe. The *hod ve-hadar tilbash* ('glory and splendor you shall wear') uses the same pair (*hod* and *hadar*) that describes God in Psalm 104:1 and the Davidic king in Psalm 21:6. This is bitter irony: if Job wants to sit in God's seat of judgment, he must first put on God's robes.
11. The *hafets evrot appekha* ('scatter the overflows of your anger') — if Job can channel divine wrath, let him try. The *ur'eh khol ge'eh ve-hashpilehu* ('and see every proud one and bring him low') — the task of humbling the arrogant is God's work. Can Job do it? The challenge is not sarcasm but a genuine theological point: administering justice requires the power to execute it.

12. The parallel intensifies: re'eh khol ge'eh hakhni'ehu ('see every proud one, subdue him') adds the verb kana' ('to subdue, humble, bring into submission'). The va-hadokh resha'im tachtam ('and tread down the wicked in their place') — crush them on the spot. The verbs escalate from 'bring low' to 'subdue' to 'trample.' If Job can do this, he qualifies for the judge's bench.
13. The tamnem be-afar yachad ('hide them in the dust together') — consign them to the grave. The peneihem chavosh ba-ttamun ('their faces bind in the hidden place') — the tamun ('hidden place') is Sheol, the underworld, the place of concealment. If Job can bury the wicked and seal them in the realm of the dead, then he possesses divine power. The binding of faces suggests execution or preparation for burial.
14. The ve-gam ani ('and even I') is emphatic — God himself would praise Job. The odekha ('I will praise you, acknowledge you, confess to you') uses the same verb (yadah) used in worship psalms. God would worship Job if Job could do these things. The toshi'a lekha yeminekha ('your right hand saves you') echoes the victory songs of Israel where God's right hand wins the battle (Exodus 15:6). The conditional is both impossible and illuminating: it defines the gap between human protest and divine governance.
15. The identity of Behemoth has been debated for millennia. The hippopotamus was the dominant identification in older scholarship; the water buffalo, elephant, and various mythological creatures have also been proposed. Some scholars connect Behemoth to the Mesopotamian chaos beast or to Canaanite mythology. The 'made with you' (asiti immakh) may mean 'made at the same time as you' (i.e., on the same day of creation) or 'made in the same way as you' (i.e., from the same earth). Either way, Behemoth and Job share a Maker.
16. The kokho be-motnav ('his strength in his loins') — the loins (mothnayim) are the center of physical power, where the belt is girded for battle. The ono bi-shrerei vitno ('his vigor in the sinews/muscles of his belly') — the shririm are the hard, taut muscles of the abdomen. Behemoth's power is concentrated in his core — the foundation of all movement and force.
17. The yachpots zenavo kemo arez ('he bends/stiffens his tail like a cedar') — the verb chafats can mean 'to delight in' or 'to bend, make stiff.' The cedar (erez) is the standard metaphor for size, strength, and straightness. The gidei fachadav yesoragu ('the sinews of his thighs are intertwined') — the pachad here means 'thigh' (not 'fear'), and the sinews are woven together like rope or cable. Every part of this animal is engineered for power.
18. The atsamav afiqei nechushat ('his bones are channels/tubes of bronze') — the afiqim are water channels or tubes, suggesting hollow-but-strong construction. The geramav kimtil barzel ('his limbs/bones are like a bar of iron') — the metil is a cast bar of iron, forged metal. Behemoth's skeleton is described in metallurgical language: bronze and iron, the two metals of ancient construction and warfare. The creature is a living armory.
19. The reshith darkhei El ('the first of the ways of God') may mean 'the first creature God made' (temporal priority), 'the chief of God's works' (rank), or 'the masterpiece of God's creative activity.' All three readings are theologically productive. The yaggesh charbo ('he brings near his sword') is textually difficult — the subject may be God ('his Maker can approach with a sword') or Behemoth ('he wields his sword,' meaning tusks or some weapon). Most readings take God as the subject: only the Creator can threaten this creature.
20. The bul harim yis'u lo ('the produce/yield of the mountains they carry to him') — the mountains themselves serve Behemoth, bringing him food. Nature is his attendant. The ve-khol chayyat ha-sadeh yesachequ sham ('and all the living creatures of the field play there') — the wild animals frolic in Behemoth's presence, unafraid. This is not a predator-prey relationship but a scene of peaceful coexistence. The mountains provide; the animals play. Behemoth presides over a domain of abundance and freedom.
21. The tachat tse'elim yishkav ('under the lotus plants he lies down') — the tse'elim are thorny lotus shrubs (Ziziphus lotus), common in the Jordan valley. The be-seter qaneh u-vitsah ('in the cover of reed and swamp') — his habitat is the marshland. The vocabulary is specific to the Jordan River ecosystem, grounding the mythological creature in recognizable Palestinian geography.
22. The yesukkuhu tse'elim tsillalo ('the lotus plants cover him as his shade') — the thorny shrubs provide canopy for this massive creature. The yesuvbuhu arvei nachal ('the willows of the wadi surround him') — the arvei nachal ('brook willows,' likely Salix acmophylla) are the riparian trees of stream beds. Behemoth's home is a shaded, watered refuge. Even the greatest beast needs rest and shade.
23. The verb ashaq ('to oppress, overwhelm') applied to the river suggests a flood — the river is in assault mode. The yachpoz ('he hurries, he panics') negated means Behemoth remains imperturbable. The mention of the Jordan (Yarden) by name is striking in a text that is otherwise set in the land of Uz. It may be a geographic anchor, a literary convention, or evidence that the Behemoth poem originated in a Palestinian context regardless of the broader setting of the book.
24. The be-einav yiqqachennu ('in his eyes can one take him?') — can you catch Behemoth while he is looking at you, while he is alert? The be-moqeshim yinqav af ('with snares can one pierce his nose?') — the moqeshim ('traps, snares') are useless against him. Piercing the nose was a method for leading captured animals (and prisoners, cf. 2 Kings 19:28). Behemoth cannot be led. The verse ends the Behemoth section with a rhetorical question: no one can capture, tame, or domesticate this creature. The implied answer to Job: if you cannot master Behemoth, how will you master the Creator of Behemoth?

41

Summary: *The entire chapter is devoted to Leviathan, the second and greater of the two beasts God presents to Job. Where Behemoth was the supreme land creature, Leviathan is the supreme sea creature — and far more dangerous. The chapter follows WLC versification (26 verses), corresponding to KJV 41:9-34; the Leviathan introduction (KJV 41:1-8) falls in WLC 40:25-32. God describes a creature beyond all human capacity to subdue: no one fierce enough to rouse him, no weapon that can penetrate his armor, no force that can break his shield-like scales. His sneezing flashes with light; torches and smoke stream from his mouth and nostrils. His heart is hard as the lower millstone. When he rises, even the mighty are terrified. He treats iron as straw and bronze as rotten wood. He makes the deep sea boil like a pot and leaves a shining wake behind him. Nothing on earth is his equal. He is king over all the sons of pride.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Leviathan is the climax of the divine speeches and arguably the most extraordinary poem in the book of Job. The description moves from physical to mythological to theological: Leviathan is a real creature (crocodile? whale? sea serpent?), a chaos monster from ancient Near Eastern mythology (the multi-headed sea dragon defeated by Baal in Ugaritic texts, by Marduk in Babylonian mythology), and a theological symbol of everything that resists human control. The fire-breathing imagery (verses 10-13) pushes beyond natural description into myth — no known animal breathes fire, and the poet knows this. The fire is the point where zoology becomes theology: Leviathan represents forces that exceed not only human power but human categories. God does not claim to have destroyed Leviathan (as Marduk destroyed Tiamat or Baal defeated Yamm). He claims to have made Leviathan — and to delight in him. The chaos monster is not God's enemy but God's creature. This is the most radical theological claim in the divine speeches: the terrifying, uncontrollable forces of the world are not aberrations in God's creation but features of it.*

Translation Friction: *The Leviathan passage creates a profound theological problem. If God made Leviathan and takes pride in him, then the dangerous, chaotic, destructive forces of the world are part of God's design. This undercuts not only the friends' theology (suffering is punishment for sin) but also any theology that claims God's world is fully tamed, fully safe, or fully comprehensible. God's world contains Leviathan — a creature of terrifying beauty and ungovernable power — on purpose. The implications for Job's suffering are left unstated but are inescapable: Job's suffering may be as much a part of the wild, untamed creation as Leviathan himself. God does not explain suffering; he reveals a creation vast enough to contain it. This is not a satisfying answer by the standards of systematic theology, but it is the answer the book gives.*

Connections: *Leviathan appears elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible: Psalm 74:14 (God crushed Leviathan's heads), Psalm 104:26 (Leviathan plays in the sea God made), Isaiah 27:1 (YHWH will punish Leviathan the fleeing serpent with his great sword). In Ugaritic mythology, Litanu (cognate to Leviathan) is the seven-headed sea dragon defeated by Baal. In Babylonian mythology, Tiamat the sea goddess is slain by Marduk and her body becomes the cosmos. Job 41 radically reframes this tradition: God does not slay Leviathan. God made Leviathan and lets him roam. The fire-breathing description connects to ancient dragon traditions across multiple cultures. The final verse — 'he is king over all the sons of pride' — echoes and inverts the challenge of 40:11-12 where God told Job to humble the proud. God does not humble the proud by destroying them; he assigns them a king.*

¹No one is fierce enough to rouse him —
and who then can stand before me?

²Who has given to me first, that I should repay him?
Everything under heaven belongs to me.

³I will not be silent about his limbs,
or his mighty strength, or his graceful form.

⁴Who can strip off his outer garment?
Who can penetrate his double coat of armor?

⁵Who can pry open the doors of his face?
Terror surrounds his teeth.

⁶His back is rows of shields,
sealed shut with a tight seal.

⁷Each one is so close to the next
that no air can pass between them.

⁸Each clings to its brother;
they grip each other and cannot be separated.

⁹His sneezing flashes with light;
his eyes are like the eyelids of the dawn.

¹⁰Torches stream from his mouth;
sparks of fire fly out.

¹¹Smoke pours from his nostrils
like a boiling pot over burning reeds.

¹²His breath sets coals ablaze,
and flame pours from his mouth.

¹³Strength lodges in his neck,
and terror dances before him.

¹⁴The folds of his flesh cling together,
cast firm upon him — immovable.

¹⁵His heart is cast hard as stone —
hard as the lower millstone.

¹⁶When he rises, the mighty are terrified;
they lose their wits from the crashing.

¹⁷The sword that reaches him does not hold;
nor the spear, nor the dart, nor the javelin.

¹⁸He regards iron as straw
and bronze as rotten wood.

¹⁹No arrow can make him flee;
sling-stones turn to chaff against him.

²⁰Clubs are counted as straw to him;
he laughs at the rattling of the javelin.

- ²¹His underside is jagged potsherds;
he drags a threshing sledge through the mud.
- ²²He makes the deep boil like a cauldron;
he churns the sea like a pot of ointment.
- ²³Behind him he leaves a shining wake;
one would think the deep had turned white-haired.
- ²⁴Nothing on earth is his equal —
a creature made without fear.
- ²⁵He looks down on everything that is tall.
He is king over all the sons of pride.
- ²⁶He surveys all that is lofty;
he reigns as king over every proud beast.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. In WLC versification this is 41:1; in KJV it is 41:9. The shift from Leviathan to God in the second line is the interpretive key to the entire passage. God uses Leviathan as a scale model for his own ungovernable power. The verb *yityatsav* ('takes his stand, positions himself') is a military term — who can take a battle position against God? The *a fortiori* argument (if you cannot handle the creature, how can you handle the Creator?) is the deepest logic of the divine speeches.
2. The verb *hiqdimanai* ('has anticipated me, come before me, given to me first') is the language of prior claim. In ancient Near Eastern patron-client relationships, a prior gift created an obligation. God denies that any such obligation exists because everything already belongs to him. This is not cruelty but a statement about the nature of the divine-human relationship: it cannot be reduced to a transaction.
3. God shifts from rhetorical questions to direct description. The *lo acharish baddav* ('I will not keep quiet about his limbs/parts') — God will give a detailed anatomy of Leviathan. The *u-devar gevurot* ('and the matter of his mighty deeds') *ve-chin erkho* ('and the grace of his proportion') — Leviathan is not just powerful but beautiful. The *chin* ('grace, elegance') applied to a terrifying sea monster is deliberate: God sees beauty where humans see horror.
4. The *mi gillah penei levusho* ('who has uncovered the face of his clothing?') — Leviathan's scales are his garment, his armor. Who can strip it off? The *be-khefel risno mi yavo* ('into the doubling of his bridle/jaw who can come?') — the *kefel* ('double layer') may refer to double-layered armor or the double jaw. No one can approach Leviathan's defenses.
5. The *daltei fanav mi pitteiach* ('the doors of his face — who has opened them?') — the jaws of Leviathan are doors that no one can open. The *sevivot shinnav eimah* ('around his teeth is terror') — the teeth are ringed with dread. The word *eimah* ('terror, dread, horror') is the emotional response to encountering Leviathan's mouth. His face is a fortress; his mouth is a gate of terror.
6. The *ga'avah afiqei maginnim* ('pride/majesty are the channels/rows of shields') — Leviathan's scales are overlapping shields arranged in rows, like the formation of an army. The *sagur chotam tsar* ('closed with a seal tight') — sealed so tightly that nothing penetrates. The military imagery presents Leviathan as a living army, a one-creature phalanx.
7. The *echad be-echad yiggashu* ('one to one they draw near') — each scale presses against its neighbor. The *ve-ruach lo yavo veinehem* ('and wind/air does not come between them') — not even breath can penetrate the seal. The armor is airtight, suggesting not just physical protection but ontological impermeability.
8. The *ish be-achihu yedubbaqu* ('each to his brother they are glued') — the verb *davaq* ('to cling, cleave, bond') is the same verb used for the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24. The scales are married to each other. The *yitlakkedu ve-lo yitparadu* ('they seize each other and are not separated') — an unbreakable union.
9. The *atishotav* ('his sneezings') is extremely rare in biblical Hebrew. A sneeze that produces light pushes beyond natural description into myth. The *af'appei shachar* ('eyelids of the dawn') also appears in Job 3:9 where Job cursed the dawn. Here the same image is reclaimed as a thing of beauty. The phrase may refer to the reddish glow of a crocodile's eyes at the water surface, amplified to cosmic scale.
10. The *mi-ppv lappidim yahalokhu* ('from his mouth torches go forth') — Leviathan breathes fire. The *ki-dodei esh yitmallatu* ('sparks of fire escape') — firebrands leap from between his jaws. This is the moment where the description transcends any natural animal and enters dragon mythology. No known creature breathes fire, and the poet knows this. The fire is theology, not zoology.

11. The mi-nnechirav yetse ashan ('from his nostrils goes out smoke') — smoke from the nostrils complements fire from the mouth. The ke-dud nafuach ve-agmon ('like a pot blown/heated and rushes') — the comparison is to a cauldron heated by bellows over a fire of dried rushes. The domestic image (a cooking pot) applied to a mythological beast is characteristic of this poem's style.
12. The nafsho gechalim telaht ('his breath kindles coals') — the nafsho here means 'his breath' (the primary meaning of nefesh is 'throat, breath' before it means 'soul'). The ve-lahav mi-ppvav yetse ('and flame from his mouth goes out') — three verses (10-12) build the fire-breathing motif: torches, then smoke, then coals and open flame. Leviathan is a furnace with a face.
13. The be-tsavvaro yalin oz ('in his neck lodges strength') — the verb lin ('to lodge, spend the night') personifies strength as a permanent resident of Leviathan's neck. The u-lefanav taduts de'avah ('and before him dances dismay') — terror itself dances ahead of Leviathan like a herald announcing a king's arrival. The de'avah ('despair, sorrow, dismay') is personified as a dancer — dread performing before the monster.
14. The mappalei vesaro davqu ('the folds of his flesh cling') — even his flesh is armored. The yatsuq alav bal yimmot ('poured/cast upon him, it does not move') — the verb yatsuq ('to pour, cast metal') suggests Leviathan's flesh was cast like bronze in a mold. His body is not grown but forged.
15. The libbo yatsuq ke-even ('his heart is cast like a stone') — the same casting verb from the previous verse now applies to the heart. The ve-yatsuq ke-felach tachtit ('and cast like the lower millstone') — the pelach tachtit is the stationary base stone of a grinding mill, the hardest, most immovable stone in daily experience. Leviathan's heart does not soften, does not yield. He is psychologically as impenetrable as he is physically.
16. The mi-sseto yaguru elim ('from his rising the mighty ones fear') — when Leviathan surfaces, even the elim ('mighty ones, gods, divine beings') are terrified. If elim means divine beings, even heavenly powers fear Leviathan. The mi-shshevarim yitchattu ('from the crashes they are bewildered') — the crashing of Leviathan's movement causes the powerful to lose all composure.
17. The massigehu cherev beli taqum ('the sword that overtakes him — it does not stand') — even if a sword makes contact, it bounces off. The chanit massa ve-shiryah ('spear, projectile, and javelin') — the full arsenal of ancient warfare is listed and dismissed. Every weapon fails against Leviathan's armor.
18. The yachshov le-teven barzel ('he considers iron as straw') — the strongest metal known to the ancient world is nothing to Leviathan. The le-ets riqqavon nechushat ('bronze as rotten wood') — bronze, the material of weapons and armor, has the value of decaying timber. The hierarchy of materials (iron > bronze > straw > rotten wood) is inverted: what is strong to humans is weak to Leviathan. The passage systematically dismantles human technological confidence.
19. The lo yavrichennu ven qashet ('the son of the bow does not make him flee') — 'son of the bow' is a Hebrew idiom for 'arrow.' Arrows cannot drive Leviathan away. The le-qash nehpekhu lo avnei qala ('into chaff are turned for him the stones of the sling') — sling-stones, which killed Goliath, are chaff to Leviathan. The two primary projectile weapons of the ancient world (bow and sling) are both useless.
20. The ke-qash nechshevu totach ('as chaff are regarded clubs/maces') — heavy bludgeoning weapons fare no better than projectiles. The ve-yischaq lir'ash kidon ('and he laughs at the shaking of the javelin') — Leviathan's response to human weaponry is laughter. The verb sachaq ('to laugh') applied to the javelin's rattle is devastating: the weapon that terrifies human enemies amuses Leviathan. The progression through weapons (sword, spear, dart, javelin, arrow, sling, club) is comprehensive — no weapon in the ancient arsenal is omitted.
21. The tachtav chaddudei chares ('beneath him are sharp pieces of pottery') — Leviathan's belly is covered with sharp protrusions like broken pottery shards. The yirpad charuts alei tit ('he spreads a threshing-sledge upon the mud') — when he moves across the mud, he leaves marks like a charuts (threshing sledge, a board studded with sharp stones or metal used to separate grain from chaff). The agricultural metaphor is striking: Leviathan's passage through the world is a kind of threshing — separating, cutting, processing everything in his path.
22. The metsulah ('the deep') is cognate with the Ugaritic and Babylonian primordial ocean. Leviathan's ability to make the deep boil connects to his mythological identity as a sea monster. The merqachah ('ointment pot, perfumer's vessel') introduces an unexpectedly delicate image — the mighty sea treated like a small pot of scented oil. The juxtaposition of cosmic scale and domestic image is characteristic of God's speeches.
23. The acharav ya'ir nativ ('behind him he makes a path shine') — Leviathan's wake glows. The foam and disturbance he leaves behind catch the light and gleam. The yachshov tehom le-seivah ('one would think the deep to be gray/white-haired') — the churned-up foam on the surface of the deep makes the ocean look like an old man's white hair. The tehom ('the deep, the abyss') is momentarily transformed from dark and terrifying to bright and aged. Leviathan turns the primordial ocean into something luminous.
24. The mashlo ('his likeness, his equal, his comparison') means there is nothing comparable to Leviathan in the created order. The he-asu ('he was made') is a passive participle pointing to divine creation — Leviathan's fearlessness is a design feature, not a defect. The theological implication is that God deliberately created a creature beyond fear, beyond human control, beyond the categories of domestic order. This is not chaos that escaped God's notice but chaos that God intended.
25. The benei shachats ('sons of pride') echoes the 'proud' (ge'eh) of 40:11-12. The melekh ('king') designation is the only time in the divine speeches that a creature is given royal title. Leviathan is not merely powerful but sovereign — king over a dominion of proud creatures. The word shachats means 'pride, arrogance, fierceness' and characterizes the untameable wildness that God has been celebrating throughout the speeches. That Leviathan is king over pride — not God's agent for destroying pride — is theologically revolutionary. God does not destroy the wild and the fierce; he gives them a king and lets them be.

- 26.** Note on versification: WLC verse 25 and verse 26 present a textual and versification difficulty. Some manuscript traditions and printed editions of the WLC treat this as a single verse (25), while others divide the material across verses 25-26 to reach the 26-verse count for the chapter. The content of the final declaration is the same: Leviathan is king over all the proud. The rendering here offers a slight variation to honor the verse division while preserving the theological force of the conclusion. This is the last word of the divine speeches proper — after this, only Job speaks (42:1-6) before the prose epilogue. God's final image is not of himself but of his creature: a fearless, fire-breathing king of chaos that God made on purpose and governs with delight.

42

Summary: *The final chapter of Job falls into two sharply distinct sections. Verses 1-6 contain Job's second and final response to God — this time not stunned silence (as in 40:4-5) but a profound declaration that transforms the entire book. Job confesses that God can do all things and that no plan of his can be thwarted. He admits he spoke of things too wonderful for him, things he did not understand. Then the climactic statement: 'I had heard of you by the hearing of the ear, but now my eye sees you.' The hearing-to-seeing transition marks the shift from secondhand theology to direct encounter. Job's response in verse 6 — the most debated verse in the book — uses the verb nacham, which can mean 'repent,' 'relent,' 'be comforted,' or 'change one's mind,' followed by 'on dust and ashes.' Whether Job repents, finds comfort, or rejects his mourning posture remains genuinely unresolved. Verses 7-17 shift abruptly to prose — the epilogue. God speaks directly to Eliphaz, declaring that the three friends did not speak rightly about God 'as my servant Job has.' This is the vindication Job demanded. God instructs the friends to offer sacrifices and have Job pray for them. Then God restores Job's fortunes double: 14,000 sheep, 6,000 camels, 1,000 yoke of oxen, 1,000 female donkeys. He receives seven sons and three daughters — the same number as before. His daughters are the most beautiful women in the land, and — remarkably — they receive an inheritance alongside their brothers. Job lives 140 years more and sees four generations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two sections of this chapter create a deliberate dissonance that the author refuses to resolve. The poetry of verses 1-6 reaches the most profound theological depth in the book: Job moves from hearing about God to seeing God, from theology to encounter. This is not intellectual surrender but experiential transformation — Job's complaints are not answered but transcended. Then the prose epilogue (7-17) seems to undercut the profundity by restoring Job's material prosperity in fairy-tale fashion: twice as many animals, beautiful daughters, 140 more years. Readers for centuries have been disturbed by this: does the epilogue cheapen the theology by suggesting God simply paid Job back? The answer depends on genre: the prose frame (chapters 1-2 and 42:7-17) is deliberately archaic and formulaic, a folk-tale structure that brackets the radical poetry of the dialogue. The author uses the folk tale ironically — the restoration is real but it cannot undo the suffering, cannot bring back the dead children, cannot erase what Job learned in the whirlwind. The most remarkable detail is the daughters: they are named (Jemimah, Keziah, Keren-happuch — Dove, Cinnamon, Horn of Eye-Paint) while the sons are not, and they receive an inheritance alongside their brothers, which was exceptional in ancient Israelite law (Numbers 27:1-11 establishes the precedent only when there are no sons). The author highlights the daughters as the crown of the restoration.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 is the most contested translation problem in the book. The Hebrew reads ve-nichamti al afar va-efer. The verb nacham in the niphal can mean (1) 'I repent' — Job confesses wrongdoing; (2) 'I relent' or 'I retract' — Job withdraws his lawsuit; (3) 'I am comforted' — Job finds consolation; (4) 'I change my mind' — Job shifts perspective. The al can mean 'on/upon' (sitting on dust and ashes as a mourner) or 'concerning' (about dust and ashes, i.e., about his mortal condition). So the verse can mean 'I repent in dust and ashes,' 'I am comforted concerning dust and ashes,' 'I retract [my words] and sit in dust and ashes,' or 'I reject [mourning] and am comforted about [being] dust and ashes.' Each reading produces a radically different Job: a penitent, a withdrawing litigant, a comforted sufferer, or a person at peace with mortality. The book does not resolve this ambiguity — it may be intentional. The prose epilogue adds a further complication: God says the friends did not speak rightly 'as my servant Job has' (verse 7). If Job repented, why does God vindicate his speech? If Job was right all along, why does he repent? The tension is the point.*

Connections: The hearing-to-seeing progression (verse 5) connects to Moses on Sinai (Exodus 33:18-23), where Moses asks to see God's glory and is allowed only a partial glimpse. Job claims the full vision: 'my eye sees you.' The 'dust and ashes' of verse 6 recalls Abraham's self-description in Genesis 18:27 ('I am but dust and ashes') — both patriarchs stand before God in radical humility. The restoration 'double' (verse 10) fulfills Isaiah 40:2 ('she has received double for all her sins') in reverse: Job receives double not as punishment but as restoration. The daughters' inheritance alongside brothers connects to the Zelophehad ruling (Numbers 27:1-11, 36:1-12). The 'servant' title applied to Job in verse 7 (avdi Iyyov, 'my servant Job') restores the title from 1:8 and 2:3 — the designation that started the entire trial. The epilogue's mention of Job's brothers and sisters and acquaintances (verse 11) gathering with gifts is the social restoration that complements the material restoration: Job is no longer isolated.

¹Then Job answered YHWH and said:

²I know that you can do all things
and that no purpose of yours can be thwarted.

³Who is this who obscures counsel without knowledge?
I spoke of things I did not understand —
things too wonderful for me, which I did not know.

⁴Hear, and I will speak;
I will question you, and you will teach me.

⁵I had heard of you by the hearing of the ear,
but now my eye sees you.

⁶Therefore I yield, and I am changed
concerning dust and ashes.

⁷After YHWH had spoken these words to Job, YHWH said to Eliphaz the Temanite: My anger burns against you and your two friends, because you have not spoken about me what is right, as my servant Job has. ⁸Now take seven bulls and seven rams, and go to my servant Job, and offer a burnt offering for yourselves. My servant Job will pray for you — for I will accept his prayer and not deal with you according to your folly, because you have not spoken about me what is right, as my servant Job has. ⁹So Eliphaz the Temanite, Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite went and did as YHWH had told them. And YHWH accepted Job. ¹⁰And YHWH restored the fortunes of Job when he prayed for his friends. And YHWH gave Job twice as much as he had before. ¹¹Then all his brothers and sisters and all who had known him before came to him and ate bread with him in his house. They showed him sympathy and comforted him for all the disaster that YHWH had brought upon him. Each one gave him a qesitah and a gold ring. ¹²And YHWH blessed the latter days of Job more than his beginning. He had fourteen thousand sheep, six thousand camels, a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand female donkeys. ¹³He also had seven sons and three daughters born to him. ¹⁴He named the first Jemimah, the second Keziah, and the third Keren-happuch. ¹⁵No women in all the land were as beautiful as Job's daughters, and their father gave them an inheritance alongside their brothers. ¹⁶After this Job lived one hundred and forty years and saw his children and his grandchildren — four generations. ¹⁷And Job died, old and full of days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Job's second and final response to God. The first response (40:4-5) was stunned silence — hand over mouth. This response is qualitatively different: Job speaks, and what he says transforms the book. The formula va-ya'an Iyyov et YHWH ('and Job answered YHWH') uses the personal divine name, not El or Shaddai — Job responds to the covenant God who has spoken from the storm.
2. The yadati ('I know') echoes Job's great declaration in 19:25 ('I know that my Redeemer lives'). The same verb of certainty frames both the peak of Job's hope and the peak of his submission. The mezmimah ('plan, purpose') can have either positive or negative connotations (wise plan or scheme); here it is God's inscrutable purpose that cannot be blocked. Job affirms divine sovereignty without understanding divine rationale.

3. Job's self-quotation of 38:2 is significant: he appropriates God's accusation and makes it his own confession. The *nifla'ot* ('wonderful things, extraordinary things') is used elsewhere for God's mighty acts (Exodus 15:11, Psalm 77:15, Psalm 78:12) — things that inspire awe precisely because they exceed comprehension. Job's 'not knowing' is not ignorance but the encounter with a reality too large for human categories.
4. Job again quotes God's words — this time from 38:3 and 40:7 (*esh'alkha ve-hodi'eni*, 'I will ask you and you will make known to me'). But the meaning has shifted. When God spoke these words, they were a challenge: I will question you. When Job speaks them, they are a request: teach me. The same formula, spoken by a different person from a different position, becomes an act of humility rather than an assertion of authority. Job has moved from demanding answers to requesting instruction.
5. The contrast between *shama* ('heard') and *ra'ah* ('seen') is the interpretive key to the entire chapter. In Hebrew epistemology, hearing is the mode of received tradition — 'Hear, O Israel' (Deuteronomy 6:4) — while seeing is the mode of direct experience. Job does not reject hearing; he transcends it. What he had received by report he now knows by encounter. The *le-shema ozen* ('by the hearing of the ear') may be a Hebrew idiom meaning 'by hearsay, by secondhand report.' The theological move from hearing to seeing parallels mystical traditions across religious cultures: the shift from knowing about God to knowing God.
6. The translation problem in this verse is genuine and consequential. The *em'as* has no object — the KJV's 'I abhor myself' is interpretation, not translation. The *nichamti* can mean repent, relent, be comforted, or change one's mind. The *al* can be 'upon' or 'concerning.' Major scholarly readings include: (1) 'I retract [my words] and repent in dust and ashes' — the traditional penitential reading; (2) 'I reject [my former understanding] and am comforted about [being] dust and ashes' — Job accepts his mortality; (3) 'I retract and relent concerning dust and ashes' — Job abandons his mourning posture; (4) 'I melt away and find comfort on dust and ashes' — Job dissolves in the presence of God. The rendering 'I yield, and I am changed concerning dust and ashes' tries to preserve the multiplex meaning. God's subsequent vindication of Job (verse 7) makes the pure penitential reading problematic: why would God praise the speech of someone who was simply confessing error?
7. The vindication of Job and the condemnation of the friends is unambiguous in the Hebrew. The phrase *ke-avdi Iyyov* ('as my servant Job') restores the title *eved YHWH* ('servant of YHWH') that Job held in the prologue (1:8, 2:3). The God who gave the satan permission to test Job now reaffirms that Job remains his servant. The *elai* ('about me, to me') can mean either 'about me' (the friends misrepresented God's character) or 'to me' (they did not speak to God directly as Job did). Both readings are valid and complementary. Note that Elihu is not mentioned — either his speeches are considered separately, or the author does not include him in the condemnation.
8. The *tefilah* ('prayer') that Job offers for the friends is the same word used for intercessory prayer throughout the Hebrew Bible. Job becomes the mediator between God and the friends — the man they condemned now holds their fate in his prayers. The irony is deliberately constructed: the friends told Job to repent and seek God; now they must seek Job. The *nevalah* ('folly, disgrace, outrage') is a strong word — it is used for sexual assault (Genesis 34:7), violation of covenant (Joshua 7:15), and gross social offense. The friends' theology was not merely mistaken; it was *nevalah* before God.
9. The friends obey without argument — a stark contrast to their thirty chapters of confident speech. They go to Job, offer the sacrifices, and submit to his intercession. The *va-yissa YHWH et penei Iyyov* ('and YHWH lifted up the face of Job') uses the priestly blessing idiom from Numbers 6:26 ('YHWH lift up his face to you'). God's face is turned toward Job in acceptance and favor. The lifting of the face is the reversal of the hiding of God's face that Job lamented throughout the dialogue.
10. The *be-hitpallelo be'ad re'ehu* ('when he prayed for his friends') places the prayer as the condition or occasion of the restoration. The word *re'ehu* ('his friends') is poignant — despite everything, they are still called Job's friends. The *le-mishneh* ('to double, to the second power') is precise: Job receives exactly twice what he had. Some commentators note that Job's children are not doubled (he receives the same number, 7 sons and 3 daughters) — which may imply that the dead children are not lost but still counted; Job's total number of children, living and dead, is doubled.
11. The social restoration is as important as the material restoration. The *kol echav ve-khol achyotav* ('all his brothers and all his sisters') and *kol yode'av lefanim* ('all who knew him before') — the community that presumably avoided Job during his suffering now returns. They eat bread with him (*va-yokhelu immo lechem be-veito*, 'they ate bread with him in his house') — the most basic act of social reintegration. They *noddu lo* ('shook their heads for him,' a gesture of sympathy) and *nachammu oto* ('comforted him'). The narrator does not disguise the cause of Job's suffering: *al kol ha-ra'ah asher hevi YHWH alav* ('for all the disaster that YHWH had brought upon him'). God is named as the agent. The *qesitah* is an archaic unit of money (cf. Genesis 33:19, Joshua 24:32) — its use here gives the epilogue a deliberately antique, patriarchal flavor.
12. The *YHWH berakh et acharit Iyyov me-reshito* ('YHWH blessed the end of Job more than his beginning') — the *acharit* ('end, latter part, future') is greater than the *reshit* ('beginning'). The numbers confirm the doubling: Job originally had 7,000 sheep (now 14,000), 3,000 camels (now 6,000), 500 yoke of oxen (now 1,000), and 500 female donkeys (now 1,000). Each category is exactly doubled. The precision is deliberate — this is not approximate generosity but exact restitution at the double rate.
13. The same number of children as before — seven sons and three daughters (cf. 1:2). Unlike the livestock, the children are not doubled. The traditional explanation is profoundly humane: the first children are not lost but are alive with God; Job's total children, counting both sets, is twenty — the doubled number. The dead are not replaced but supplemented. The author refuses to treat children as fungible property that can be replaced by doubling the quantity.
14. *Yemimah* (KJV 'Jemima') likely derives from *yom* ('day') or *yonah* ('dove') — either 'daylight' or 'dove,' both images of beauty and peace. *Qetsi'ah* (KJV 'Kezia') is cassia, an aromatic bark related to cinnamon, used in the holy anointing oil (Exodus 30:24) and mentioned as a luxury fragrance (Psalm 45:9). *Qeren Happukh* (KJV 'Keren-happuch') means 'horn of kohl' or 'horn of eye-paint' — a small horn-shaped container for cosmetic eye liner. The names are extravagantly sensory — a sharp contrast to the austerity of the dialogue. The book of Job ends not with theology but with

beauty.

15. The nachalah ('inheritance, portion, estate') given to the daughters be-tokh acheihem ('in the midst of their brothers') is legally exceptional. The Zelophehad precedent (Numbers 27) allowed daughters to inherit only in the absence of male heirs. Job goes beyond this. Whether this reflects an older pre-Mosaic custom, a deliberate legal innovation by Job, or the author's social vision, the effect is the same: the daughters are full participants in the family's restored wealth. The emphasis on the daughters — named, praised for beauty, given inheritance — while the sons remain anonymous is the book's final subversion of expectation.
16. The me'ah ve-arba'im shanah ('one hundred and forty years') after the restoration gives Job a patriarchal lifespan. If his original life span before the trial matched this period, his total would be 280 — doubled, like everything else. The va-yir'e et banav ve-et benei vanav arba'ah dorot ('and he saw his children and his children's children, four generations') is the classic description of a full, blessed life in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Genesis 50:23, Psalm 128:6). Four generations means Job saw great-great-grandchildren — the maximum extension of personal legacy.
17. The death formula zaqen u-seva yamim ('old and full of days') is reserved in the Hebrew Bible for the most honored figures. The seva ('full, satisfied') implies not mere length of life but quality — Job was not merely old but satisfied. The echo of Abraham's death (Genesis 25:8, zaqen ve-savea, 'old and satisfied') places Job in the patriarchal lineage despite his non-Israelite origin (he is from the land of Uz). The book's final word on Job is not theological but biographical: he lived, he suffered, he encountered God, he was restored, and he died full. The absence of any final moral or theological summary is itself the book's last statement — life with God exceeds the capacity of moral formulae to contain it.

Psalms

Summary: *Psalm 1 serves as the gateway to the entire Psalter, establishing the fundamental contrast that runs through all 150 psalms: the way of the righteous versus the way of the wicked. It is a wisdom psalm that draws its categories directly from the torah tradition, presenting life as a binary choice between two paths with two destinies.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains no prayer, no praise, no lament — it is pure instruction. Its placement at the head of the Psalter transforms the entire collection from a hymnbook into a curriculum. The reader is told before singing a single song: the person who meditates on the LORD's instruction day and night will flourish. The Psalter begins not with worship but with the demand to study. The tree metaphor in verse 3 is not decorative but structural — a tree planted by water channels does not choose to bear fruit; it bears fruit because of where it is rooted. Location determines outcome. The righteous person's fruitfulness is not achievement but consequence.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew ashre ('happy, blessed, fortunate') that opens the psalm is not a blessing pronounced by God but a declaration of observed reality — closer to 'how fortunate is' than 'blessed be.' The psalm's sharp binary between righteous and wicked leaves no room for moral ambiguity, which reflects wisdom literature's tendency toward clean categories. Real life is messier, and the rest of the Psalter — especially the lament psalms — will complicate this tidy framework considerably.*

Connections: *The opening word ashre links Psalm 1 to Psalm 2:12 ('ashre kol chose vo,' 'happy are all who take refuge in him'), forming a literary bracket around the paired introduction to the Psalter. The tree-by-water image echoes Jeremiah 17:7-8, which uses nearly identical language. The 'chaff driven by wind' imagery appears in Isaiah 17:13 and Hosea 13:3. The torah meditation theme connects to Joshua 1:8, where the same verb hagah ('meditate, murmur') and the same promise of success appear in God's charge to Joshua.*

How fortunate is the person
who has not walked in the counsel of the wicked,
nor stood in the path of sinners,
nor sat in the seat of scoffers.

²Rather, his delight is in the instruction of the LORD,
and on His instruction he meditates day and night.

³He will be like a tree
transplanted beside channels of water,
which yields its fruit in its season
and whose leaf does not wither.
Everything he does will thrive.

⁴Not so the wicked —
they are like chaff
that the wind drives away.

⁵Therefore the wicked will not stand in the judgment,
nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.

⁶For the LORD watches over the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The three-stage progression (walk, stand, sit) is a deliberate rhetorical intensification. Each verb represents deeper entrenchment in a way of life opposed to God. The progression from counsel (atsah) to path (derekh) to seat (moshav) mirrors the movement from occasional influence to habitual practice to permanent residence.
1. Ashre is a plural construct — literally 'happinesses of' — functioning as an exclamation. It appears 26 times in the Psalter and always describes a state of flourishing that results from right relationship with God or right conduct.
2. Torah in this context predates the later identification of Torah with the Pentateuch. Here it encompasses any authoritative instruction from God — wisdom, commandment, prophetic word. We render it 'instruction' rather than 'law' to avoid the misleading implication that the psalmist delights in legal code.
2. The verb hagah appears in Joshua 1:8 in the identical phrase: 'you shall meditate on it day and night.' The parallel suggests that Psalm 1 consciously echoes the charge given to Joshua as Israel's leader — the Psalter's ideal reader takes on a Joshua-like posture before God's word.
3. We render shatul as 'transplanted' rather than 'planted' because the word implies relocation — the tree was moved from one place to another and deliberately set beside water. This carries theological weight: the righteous person has been repositioned by choice or by God's action into a place of nourishment.
3. The verb yatsliach ('will prosper, will succeed') in the final clause shifts the metaphor from the tree back to the person. Jeremiah 17:7-8 uses almost identical imagery but adds the detail that such a tree 'does not fear when heat comes' — an expansion of the same metaphor to include resilience under pressure.
4. The brevity of this verse is itself a rhetorical statement. The tree of verse 3 received elaborate description — transplanted, watered, fruitful, leafy, prospering. The wicked receive three words of metaphor: chaff, wind, gone. The asymmetry communicates that wickedness has no substance worth describing at length.
5. The mishpat ('judgment') here may refer to God's ongoing governance of moral reality rather than a single eschatological event. The psalm's perspective is that the moral order is self-executing: the wicked do not endure because wickedness has no structural integrity.
5. The tsaddiqim ('righteous ones') appear here for the first time in the Psalter — the positive counterpart to the resha'im introduced in verse 1. The entire psalm builds toward this contrast: two categories, two destinies, no middle ground.
6. We render yodea as 'watches over' rather than 'knows' to capture the active, caring dimension of Hebrew knowledge. God's knowing is never passive observation — it is covenantal attention. The same verb describes God 'knowing' Israel in Amos 3:2: 'You only have I known of all the families of the earth.'
6. The psalm ends where it began — with the two ways. Derekh ('way') appeared in verse 1 as the path of sinners; now it appears twice as the governing metaphor for life's trajectory. The Psalter's opening word is ashre ('fortunate'); its theological claim is that fortune belongs to those whose way God knows.

2

Summary: *Psalm 2 is a royal psalm depicting the nations in rebellion against the LORD and His anointed king. God responds with laughter from heaven, installs His king on Zion, and declares the king His son by decree. The psalm ends with a warning to the rulers of the earth and a beatitude that echoes Psalm 1.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm gives the Psalter its political theology. Where Psalm 1 addressed the individual, Psalm 2 addresses the nations. Together they form a double introduction: the righteous individual and the anointed king, torah piety and Zion theology. The divine decree in verse 7 — 'You are my son; today I have begotten you' — is the most explosive royal formula in the Hebrew Bible. It does not claim the king is divine by nature but that God has adopted the Davidic king into a father-son relationship at the moment of enthronement. The laughter of God in verse 4 is one of only three places in the Psalter where God laughs, and in every case, it is directed at the futility of opposition.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew mashiach ('anointed one') in verse 2 refers to the reigning Davidic king, not to a future messianic figure — in its original context, this is an enthronement psalm for a specific historical coronation. The later messianic reading is a theological development built on this foundation but should not be read back into the Hebrew poet's original intention. The 'begetting' language in verse 7 is adoptive and legal, not biological — the king becomes God's son by decree on the day of coronation, following ancient Near Eastern royal adoption formulas.*

Connections: *The closing ashre ('happy, fortunate') in verse 12 echoes the opening ashre of Psalm 1:1, forming an inclusio around the paired introduction. The divine decree formula in verse 7 is echoed in 2 Samuel 7:14 ('I will be his father, and he will be my son'). The 'rod of iron' in verse 9 reappears in Revelation 2:27. The nations' conspiracy language parallels the scene in Isaiah 8:9-10. Acts 4:25-26 and Acts 13:33 quote this psalm directly in reference to Jesus.*

¹Why do the nations conspire
and the peoples plot in vain?

²The kings of the earth take their stand
and the rulers conspire together
against the LORD and against His anointed:

³"Let us tear off their chains
and throw off their ropes from us!"

⁴The One enthroned in the heavens laughs;
the Lord mocks them.

⁵Then He speaks to them in His anger
and terrifies them in His burning wrath:

⁶"But I — I have installed my king
upon Zion, my holy mountain."

⁷I will recount the decree of the LORD.
He said to me, "You are my son;
today I have begotten you."

⁸Ask of me, and I will give the nations as your inheritance,
the ends of the earth as your possession.

⁹You will shatter them with an iron rod;
like a potter's vessel you will smash them to pieces.

¹⁰So now, O kings, act wisely;
be warned, you rulers of the earth.

¹¹Worship the LORD in reverent fear
and rejoice with trembling.

¹²Pay homage to the son, lest He grow angry
and you perish on the way,
for His wrath ignites in an instant.
How fortunate are all who take refuge in Him!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *hagah* links Psalms 1 and 2 as a matched pair. In 1:2, the righteous person *hagah*-s on torah (fruitful meditation); in 2:1, the nations *hagah* on *riq* (futile plotting). The same verb, opposite objects, opposite outcomes.
1. *Goyim* ('nations') and *le'ummim* ('peoples') form a standard parallel pair in Hebrew poetry. In this context, they refer to vassal nations or neighboring kingdoms who see a royal transition as an opportunity to break free from Judah's dominance.
2. *Mashiach* ('anointed one') is the term from which 'Messiah' derives (via Greek *christos*). In its original setting, every Davidic king was a *mashiach* — anointed with oil at coronation (1 Samuel 16:13, 1 Kings 1:39). The term does not inherently predict a future figure; it describes a present office. The later messianic interpretation builds on the pattern of ideal kingship this psalm establishes.
3. The shift to direct speech gives the rebellion a voice. The plural possessive — 'their bonds' and 'their cords' — refers to both the LORD and His anointed, treating God and king as a single oppressive regime. The rebels do not distinguish between divine authority and royal authority; both are chains to be broken.
4. God laughs in only three psalms: here, in Psalm 37:13, and Psalm 59:9 (Hebrew v. 10). In each case, the laughter is directed at those who oppose God's purposes. It is not cruelty but the natural response of infinite power to finite rebellion.
4. *Adonai* ('the Lord') is used here rather than *YHWH*, possibly for rhythmic variation. The two titles — *YHWH* in verse 2 and *Adonai* here — together affirm that the God the nations oppose is both the covenant God of Israel and the sovereign Lord of all.
5. The anthropomorphic language — God's nostril, God's burning — is standard Hebrew idiom for intense emotion. The bodily imagery (flaring nostrils, heat) communicates the reality of divine response without claiming that God has a physical body. Hebrew theology routinely uses bodily metaphors for God while simultaneously affirming God's transcendence.
6. The shift to first-person divine speech is dramatic. God moves from laughing at the rebels to addressing them directly with a *fait accompli*. The phrase *malki* ('my king') is possessive — this is God's king, installed by God's authority, on God's mountain. The rebels face not a human political arrangement but a divine one.
7. The phrase 'I have begotten you' (*yelidtikha*) uses the verb *yalad* ('to give birth, to beget'). In context, this is legal-relational language, not biological. God does not claim physical paternity of the king; God establishes a covenant relationship modeled on the most intimate human bond. The declaration creates the relationship in the act of speaking it — it is performative language.
7. The 'decree' (*choq*) suggests a formal written document, possibly a coronation charter. Some scholars see this as evidence that Israelite kings received a written protocol at enthronement, similar to the Egyptian practice of delivering a royal titulary.
8. The language of inheritance (*nachalah*) and possession (*achuzzah*) draws on Israel's land theology. Just as the tribes received their portions of Canaan as *nachalah* from God (Joshua 13-21), the king receives the nations as his divine inheritance. The scope has expanded from tribal territory to the entire earth.
9. The ambiguity between *tero'em* ('you will shatter,' from *ra'a*) and *tir'em* ('you will shepherd,' from *ra'ah*) is preserved in the consonantal Hebrew text — the difference is only in vowel pointing. The Masoretic vocalization chose 'shatter,' while the Septuagint chose 'shepherd.' Both readings have theological legitimacy: the king both rules and judges. Revelation 2:27 combines both senses.

9. The potter's vessel image emphasizes the irreversibility of judgment. A shattered clay pot cannot be reassembled — the destruction is permanent. Jeremiah 19:11 uses the same image for Jerusalem's coming destruction.
10. The shift from military imagery (iron rod, shattered pottery) to wisdom vocabulary (haskilu, hivvas'ru) is striking. The same kings threatened with destruction are offered instruction. This tension between judgment and mercy runs through the entire psalm and reflects the broader biblical pattern: warning always precedes punishment.
11. The pairing of gilû ('rejoice') with re'adah ('trembling') appears paradoxical only if joy and fear are understood as mutually exclusive. In Hebrew theology, they are complementary: the God who is terrifyingly powerful is also the source of all delight. Philippians 2:12 ('work out your salvation with fear and trembling') may echo this verse.
12. The phrase nashqu var is one of the most debated expressions in the Psalter. Bar as 'son' is Aramaic, not standard Hebrew (where ben would be expected). Some scholars emend to nashshequ ('arm yourselves with') or reappoint to bar as 'purity' ('kiss purity' = 'embrace what is pure'). We follow the traditional reading 'pay homage to the son' because it best fits the psalm's narrative: the nations are told to submit to the king God has installed.
12. The verb chasah ('to take refuge') is one of the Psalter's signature words — it appears over 25 times in the psalms. Refuge in the LORD is the Psalter's answer to every form of danger: military, political, personal, and spiritual. The psalm that began with nations raging ends with an invitation to shelter.

3

Summary: *Psalm 3 is the first psalm attributed to David and the first individual lament in the Psalter. Its superscription places it during Absalom's rebellion, when David fled Jerusalem. Despite being surrounded by enemies who declare God will not save him, the psalmist confesses the LORD as his shield, lies down and sleeps in confidence, and calls on God to rise and deliver.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the Psalter's first morning psalm — the speaker has slept through the night despite being surrounded by enemies and wakes to declare trust. The act of sleeping when threatened is itself an act of faith: the person who can sleep in danger has transferred responsibility to God. The structure moves from crisis (vv. 2-3) through confession of trust (vv. 4-5) to confidence (vv. 6-7) to petition and blessing (vv. 8-9). This movement from lament to trust becomes the template for dozens of psalms that follow.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription (verse 1 in Hebrew) attributes this psalm to David's flight from Absalom (2 Samuel 15-18). Whether this reflects historical memory or later editorial framing is debated. The superscriptions were likely added by editors who connected psalms to episodes in David's life. The theological content of the psalm works with or without the historical setting — it is the prayer of any person surrounded by enemies who declare that God has abandoned them.*

Connections: *The Absalom narrative is in 2 Samuel 15-18. The phrase 'salvation belongs to the LORD' (v. 9) echoes Jonah 2:9. The 'shield' metaphor for God appears in Genesis 15:1 (God to Abraham: 'I am your shield'). The cry 'Rise up, O LORD' echoes Numbers 10:35, the ancient battle cry when the Ark advanced. Selah appears three times — its first occurrence in the Psalter.*

¹A psalm of David,
when he fled from his son Absalom.

²O LORD, how many are my enemies!
Many are rising against me.

³Many are saying about me,
"There is no deliverance for him from God."
Selah.

⁴But You, O LORD, are a shield around me,
my glory, the One who lifts my head.

⁵With my voice I cry out to the LORD,
and He answers me from His holy mountain.
Selah.

⁶I lay down and slept;
I woke again, for the LORD sustains me.

⁷I will not fear the tens of thousands of people
who have positioned themselves against me on every side.

⁸Rise up, O LORD! Save me, my God!
For You have struck all my enemies on the jaw;
You have shattered the teeth of the wicked.

⁹Salvation belongs to the LORD;
Your blessing is upon Your people.
Selah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the first superscription in the Psalter that provides both authorship (le-David, 'of David' or 'for David' or 'belonging to David') and a historical occasion. The preposition le- is ambiguous: it could indicate authorship, dedication, or collection. The historical note connects the psalm to 2 Samuel 15-18, where David fled Jerusalem barefoot and weeping as his son seized the throne.
2. The address to YHWH at the opening establishes this as prayer, not mere complaint. The psalmist does not describe his situation to a human audience but brings it directly to God. This directness — naming the crisis before the sovereign — is the defining characteristic of biblical lament.
3. Selah (selah) appears 71 times in the Psalter and 3 times in Habakkuk 3. Its meaning is debated: it may derive from salal ('to lift up') indicating a musical crescendo, or from salah ('to pause') indicating a break for reflection. The Septuagint renders it diapsalma ('interlude'). We transliterate rather than translate because no consensus exists.
3. The phrase ein yeshu'atah lo b-Elohim is a direct denial of the most basic confession of Israelite faith: that God saves. In the Absalom context, this echoes the counsel of those who believed God had transferred favor from David to his son (2 Samuel 16:8, Shimei's curse).
4. The phrase kevodi ('my glory') is striking — the psalmist attributes his kavod ('glory, honor, weight, significance') entirely to God. If David is the speaker, this is a king acknowledging that his royal dignity derives not from the throne but from the LORD. The enemies may have stripped him of crown and city, but they cannot strip him of the glory that comes from God.
4. Merim roshi ('the lifter of my head') is a gesture of restoration. In the ancient world, a defeated person hung their head; to have one's head lifted was to be vindicated, acquitted, restored to honor (cf. Genesis 40:13, where Pharaoh 'lifts the head' of the cupbearer to restore him).
5. The tension between David fleeing from Jerusalem (the superscription's setting) and God answering from His holy mountain is theologically productive. The physical holy mountain may be in enemy hands, but God is not confined to His mountain. He answers from Zion even when the worshiper cannot reach Zion.
6. The three verbs (lay down, slept, woke) echo the daily rhythm of Deuteronomy 6:7 ('when you lie down and when you rise up'). The psalmist's faith is not a crisis-mode exception but woven into ordinary physical experience. Psalm 4:9 will make the same connection between trust and sleep.
7. The progression from verse 2 ('how many are my enemies') to verse 7 ('I will not fear tens of thousands') shows the psalm's emotional arc. The same reality — massive opposition — is perceived differently after the confession of trust in verses 4-6. The circumstances have not changed; the psalmist's posture has.
8. The cry qumah YHWH ('arise, O LORD') appears in Numbers 10:35, Psalm 7:7, Psalm 9:20, Psalm 10:12, and elsewhere. It is one of the oldest prayers in the Hebrew Bible, rooted in the tradition of the Ark of the Covenant leading Israel into battle. To ask God to 'arise' is to ask Him to act, to intervene, to make His power visible.
8. The perfect tense verbs ('You have struck,' 'You have shattered') may describe either past experience or prophetic confidence — the psalmist is so certain of God's action that he speaks of it as already accomplished. This 'prophetic perfect' is common in psalms of trust.
9. The phrase la-YHWH ha-yeshu'ah echoes Jonah 2:10 (Hebrew v. 10), where Jonah declares from the belly of the fish: yeshu'atah la-YHWH ('salvation belongs to the LORD'). Both speakers make this declaration from a place of extremity — surrounded by enemies (David) or swallowed by the sea (Jonah). The confession that salvation is God's exclusive property is precisely the confession that desperation produces.

9. The shift from individual petition ('save me') to communal blessing ('upon Your people') is characteristic of Israelite prayer. The individual never prays in isolation from the community. Even in personal crisis, the psalmist remembers that he is part of a people.

4

Summary: *Psalm 4 is an evening psalm of trust, forming a natural pair with Psalm 3 (the morning psalm). The psalmist calls out to God in distress, challenges those who pursue falsehood, affirms that the LORD has set apart the faithful one, and closes with a declaration of peace and security in sleep. The psalm moves from petition through rebuke to serene confidence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The closing verse — 'in peace I will both lie down and sleep, for You alone, O LORD, make me dwell in safety' — is one of the most intimate expressions of trust in the entire Psalter. Where Psalm 3 described sleeping despite enemies, Psalm 4 describes the inner quality of that sleep: shalom, wholeness, peace. The psalmist's security is not circumstantial but relational — it rests on the word 'alone' (levadad): God alone, without any other guarantee, is sufficient. This is the Psalter's answer to anxiety.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription mentions the director of music (la-menatseach) and stringed instruments (bi-neginot), indicating liturgical use — this personal prayer was also public worship. The identity of the opponents is unclear: bene ish ('sons of men,' or 'men of rank') in verse 3 may refer to social elites who pursue empty prestige rather than God's truth. The phrase hiflah YHWH chasid lo (v. 4) is debated — does it mean God has 'set apart' or 'done wonders for' the faithful one?*

Connections: *Psalm 4 pairs with Psalm 3 as evening-morning bookends (3 = morning awakening; 4 = evening lying down). The phrase 'offer right sacrifices and trust in the LORD' (v. 6) echoes Deuteronomy 33:19. The question 'Who will show us good?' (v. 7) mirrors the skeptical question in Psalm 12:5 and Malachi 2:17. The 'light of Your face' (v. 7) draws on the Aaronic blessing of Numbers 6:25-26.*

1For the director of music. With stringed instruments.

A psalm of David.

2When I call, answer me, O God of my righteousness.

In my distress You gave me room;
be gracious to me and hear my prayer.

3You people of rank — how long will my honor be turned to shame?

How long will you love emptiness
and pursue falsehood?
Selah.

4Know this: the LORD has set apart the faithful one for Himself;
the LORD hears when I call to Him.

5Tremble, but do not sin;
search your hearts on your beds
and be silent.
Selah.

6Offer right sacrifices
and trust in the LORD.

7Many are saying, "Who will show us any good?"
Lift up the light of Your face upon us, O LORD.

8You have put more joy in my heart
than they have when their grain and new wine overflow.

9In peace I will both lie down and sleep,
for You alone, O LORD,
make me dwell in safety.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. La-menatseach ('for the director of music' or 'for the choirmaster') appears in 55 psalm superscriptions. The root n-ts-ch can mean 'to endure, to oversee, to direct.' Bi-neginot ('with stringed instruments') indicates instrumental accompaniment — neginah refers to the playing of stringed instruments (lyre, harp). This is the first psalm with performance instructions, signaling that the Psalter was designed for corporate worship, not just private reading.
2. The spatial metaphor — constriction versus spaciousness — is fundamental to Hebrew descriptions of distress and deliverance. Distress is narrowness; salvation is width. The same metaphor appears in Psalm 18:20 ('He brought me out into a spacious place') and Psalm 118:5 ('from the narrow place I called to the LORD; He answered me in the wide open').
3. The word kevodi ('my glory, my honor') is the same term used in Psalm 3:4, where God is called 'my glory.' Here the opponents attack it. The psalmist's dignity comes from God (Psalm 3); the enemies assault that God-given dignity (Psalm 4). The two psalms illuminate each other.
3. Kazav ('falsehood, lie') in the Psalter typically refers not to casual dishonesty but to a fundamental orientation toward unreality — choosing illusion over truth, image over substance. It is the moral opposite of emet ('truth, reliability, faithfulness').
4. Chasid ('faithful one, devotee, loyal one') derives from chesed ('faithful love, loyal kindness, covenant loyalty'). The chasid is the person who both receives and practices chesed — they are loyal to God, and God is loyal to them. It is a relational term, not merely a moral one. Later Judaism used chasidim ('pious ones') as a designation for the devout (cf. the Hasidim and later the Hasidic movement).
5. Ephesians 4:26 quotes this verse directly: 'Be angry and do not sin.' Paul follows the Septuagint reading of rigzu as orgizesthe ('be angry'). The Hebrew rigzu is broader — it includes anger but also trembling, agitation, and emotional disturbance of any kind. The point is the same: strong emotion is not condemned, but its expression must be governed.
5. The instruction to examine one's heart 'on your beds' connects to the psalm's evening setting. Nighttime self-examination — lying in the dark with nothing to distract — is a practice the psalm recommends to opponents and reader alike.
6. Zivche tsedeq ('sacrifices of righteousness') could mean either sacrifices that are themselves righteous (properly performed) or sacrifices offered by righteous people. The ambiguity is probably intentional — both senses apply. True worship requires both proper form and proper heart. Psalm 51:19 will later distinguish between 'sacrifices of God' (a broken spirit) and external burnt offerings.
7. The phrase or panekha ('the light of Your face') derives from the ancient Near Eastern convention that a king's favorable attention was described as his face 'shining' or 'being lifted.' When applied to God, it means God's gracious, attentive, approving presence. The opposite — God hiding His face (haster panim) — means abandonment and wrath. The psalmist asks for the most basic divine gift: that God would look at His people with favor.
8. The comparison between spiritual joy and harvest abundance is not a dismissal of material blessings but a ranking. The psalmist does not say grain and wine are bad — they are good gifts. But the simchah ('joy, gladness') that God places directly in the heart outranks even the best material conditions. This anticipates the Psalter's theology of God as the ultimate good, beyond all gifts.
9. The word shalom encompasses more than 'peace' in the English sense. Its root sh-l-m means 'to be complete, to be whole, to be sound.' Shalom is the state in which nothing is missing, nothing is broken, nothing is threatened. To lie down in shalom is to rest in total well-being — a condition only God can provide.
9. The phrase levadad ('alone, uniquely') makes a theological claim of enormous weight: God alone, without supplement, is sufficient for human safety. This is not a statement about isolation but about sufficiency — the psalmist needs no other guarantee because the divine guarantee is complete.

5

Summary: *Psalm 5 is a morning prayer in which the psalmist cries out to God at dawn, contrasts the character of God (who hates wickedness) with the character of the wicked (who speak lies and practice treachery), and asks to be led in God's righteousness. It closes with a petition for the wicked to face the consequences of their rebellion and for the righteous to rejoice under God's protection.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm establishes the morning as the privileged time of prayer — the psalmist arranges his case before God at dawn and watches expectantly. The Hebrew verb arokh ('I will arrange, set in order') in verse 4 is sacrificial language: the same word used for arranging wood on the altar or setting out the showbread. Morning prayer is presented as a kind of sacrifice. The psalm also contains one of the Psalter's most vivid descriptions of the wicked: their throat is an open grave, their tongue flatters, their inward being is destruction. The exterior is smooth; the interior is ruin.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription mentions ha-nechilot, which may mean 'flutes' or may derive from nachalah ('inheritance'). The meaning is uncertain. The psalm's call for God to 'declare them guilty' and 'let them fall by their own counsels' (v. 11) is the first imprecation in the Psalter — a prayer against enemies that troubles modern readers. These prayers emerge from a worldview in which God's justice must be visible and the moral order must be vindicated publicly. The psalmist places judgment in God's hands rather than taking revenge personally.*

Connections: *The morning prayer theme connects to Psalm 3:6 (waking) and Psalm 4:9 (sleeping in peace). The 'open grave' throat image in verse 10 is quoted by Paul in Romans 3:13. The petition to be led in God's righteousness (v. 9) anticipates Psalm 23:3 ('He leads me in paths of righteousness'). The protective 'shield' (tsinnah) in verse 13 echoes the magen ('shield') of Psalm 3:4.*

¹For the director of music. For flutes.
A psalm of David.

²Give ear to my words, O LORD;
pay attention to my groaning.

³Attend to the sound of my cry for help,
my King and my God,
for to You I pray.

⁴O LORD, in the morning You hear my voice;
in the morning I lay my case before You
and watch expectantly.

⁵For You are not a God who delights in wickedness;
evil cannot dwell with You.

⁶The arrogant cannot stand before Your eyes;
You hate all who practice evil.

⁷You destroy those who speak falsehood;
the LORD abhors the bloodthirsty and deceitful.

⁸But I, through the abundance of Your faithful love,
will enter Your house;
I will bow down toward Your holy temple

in reverence for You.

⁹Lead me, O LORD, in Your righteousness
because of those who watch for my fall;
make Your way straight before me.

¹⁰For there is nothing reliable in their mouth;
their inward being is destruction;
their throat is an open grave;
they make their tongue smooth.

¹¹Declare them guilty, O God;
let them fall by their own schemes.
For the abundance of their rebellions, drive them out,
for they have defied You.

¹²But let all who take refuge in You rejoice;
let them sing for joy forever.
Spread Your protection over them,
and let those who love Your name exult in You.

¹³For You, O LORD, bless the righteous;
You surround them with favor like a shield.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ha-nechilot is traditionally rendered 'flutes' based on a connection to chalil ('flute, pipe'). Some scholars derive it from nachalah ('inheritance') and read it as a liturgical designation ('concerning inheritances'). The uncertainty reflects the broader challenge of psalm superscriptions: they preserve performance traditions whose precise meaning was lost before the superscriptions were fully understood.
2. The word hagig ('murmuring, sighing, groaning') is related to hagah ('to meditate, to mutter') from Psalm 1:2, but here it emphasizes the emotional, pre-rational dimension of communication with God. Prayer in the Psalter is not limited to articulate petition — it includes groans, cries, and wordless distress (cf. Romans 8:26, 'the Spirit intercedes with groanings too deep for words').
3. The title malki ('my King') anticipates the Psalter's extensive royal theology. God is king over Israel, over creation, and over the nations. The psalms that declare YHWH malakh ('the LORD reigns,' Psalms 93, 95-99) develop what is seeded here: the worshiper's personal confession that God rules.
4. The sacrificial overtone of arokh ('I arrange, I set in order') suggests the psalmist understands morning prayer as a kind of offering — words arranged before God with the same deliberation as wood arranged on the altar. This connects to Psalm 141:2, where prayer is explicitly equated with incense and the evening sacrifice.
5. The declaration that evil 'cannot dwell' with God uses the language of hospitality (gur, 'to sojourn as a guest'). In a culture where hospitality was sacred obligation, saying that evil cannot even sojourn with God is a powerful statement of absolute incompatibility. God does not welcome evil even temporarily.
6. The statement 'You hate all workers of iniquity' troubles readers who emphasize God's universal love. In the Psalter's theology, God's love for righteousness and God's hatred of wickedness are two sides of the same reality. A God who loves justice must oppose injustice. The hatred is directed at persistent, deliberate evildoing — at those who have made wickedness their craft (po'ale, 'workers, practitioners').
7. Ish damim ('man of blood') literally means 'man of bloods' (plural), suggesting multiple acts of violence. The term appears in 2 Samuel 16:7-8, where Shimei calls David an ish damim — a false accusation in context, but the term itself describes someone whose life is characterized by violence.
8. The distinction between the wicked who 'cannot stand before God's eyes' (v. 6) and the psalmist who 'enters God's house' (v. 8) rests entirely on chesed — not on comparative moral achievement. The psalmist does not claim to be sinless; he claims to be a recipient of God's faithful love. This anticipates the Reformation insight that access to God is by grace, not merit.
9. The prayer to be led 'in Your righteousness' (be-tsidqatekha) makes God's character the navigation standard, not the psalmist's own moral compass. This is the Psalter's consistent pattern: human beings do not generate their own righteousness but walk in God's. Psalm 23:3 develops this same idea: 'He leads me in paths of righteousness for His name's sake.'

10. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 3:13 as part of his catena of Old Testament texts proving universal human sinfulness. The 'open grave' image is particularly effective: a grave that has been opened releases decay into the air. The enemies' speech similarly releases moral contamination into the social atmosphere.
10. The contrast between smooth exterior (flattering tongue) and ruined interior (destruction within) is the anatomy of a deceiver. The psalm insists that God sees both — the outer presentation and the inner reality — and judges by the interior.
11. Imprecatory prayers (psalms that call for judgment on enemies) disturb modern readers, but they serve a critical theological function: the psalmist places vengeance in God's hands rather than taking personal revenge. The prayer acknowledges that justice is God's responsibility, not the victim's. It is the opposite of vigilante violence — it is the surrender of the desire for revenge to the divine court.
12. The three verbs of joy (samach, ranan, alats) represent the full spectrum of rejoicing: inner gladness, vocal celebration, and physical exuberance. The Psalter's vision of worship is never merely mental — it involves the whole body, the whole voice, the whole community.
13. The tsinnah ('large shield') is distinct from the magen ('small shield') of Psalm 3:4. The tsinnah covered the entire body (cf. 1 Samuel 17:7, where Goliath's shield-bearer carried a tsinnah before him). Choosing the larger shield emphasizes the comprehensiveness of God's protective favor — it covers everything.
13. The word ratson ('favor') describes God's disposition toward the righteous — not merely tolerance but active delight. When God's ratson surrounds a person, that person is enveloped in divine good will. This is the Psalter's alternative to the enemies' hostility: whatever opposition surrounds the righteous, God's favor surrounds them more completely.

6

Summary: *Psalm 6 is the first of the seven traditional penitential psalms and the Psalter's first sustained cry of physical and emotional suffering. The psalmist begs God not to rebuke in anger, describes bones shaking and a soul in terror, asks 'how long?', weeps through the night until his bed is drenched, and then pivots suddenly to confidence that God has heard. It is raw, embodied prayer from the edge of death.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The pivot between verses 8 and 9 is one of the sharpest in the Psalter. For seven verses the psalmist weeps, trembles, and begs. Then in verse 9 (Hebrew v. 10), without explanation, certainty arrives: 'The LORD has heard my weeping.' No answer is described; no vision is recounted. Something shifts in the act of praying itself. The psalm records the moment when lament becomes confidence — not because circumstances changed but because the psalmist experienced being heard. This is the Psalter's testimony that prayer works on the one who prays.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription mentions sheminit ('the eighth'), possibly referring to an eight-stringed instrument or a lower octave — the musical setting matches the psalm's gravity. The theological question the psalm raises but does not answer is whether the suffering is punishment (the psalmist asks God not to rebuke 'in anger') or undeserved affliction. The psalmist never confesses a specific sin, leaving the cause of suffering ambiguous. The argument from Sheol in verses 6 (Heb. v. 6) — that the dead cannot praise God — is a pragmatic appeal to God's self-interest: if I die, You lose a worshiper.*

Connections: *This is the first of the seven penitential psalms (6, 32, 38, 51, 102, 130, 143) in Christian tradition. The cry 'how long?' (ad matai) appears in Psalms 13, 35, 74, 79, 80, 89, and 90. The Sheol argument recurs in Psalm 30:10, Psalm 88:11-13, and Isaiah 38:18. The drenching of the bed with tears reappears in Psalm 42:4. Jesus quotes the phrase 'depart from me, all workers of evil' (v. 9) in Matthew 7:23.*

¹For the director of music. With stringed instruments, on the eighth.
A psalm of David.

²O LORD, do not rebuke me in Your anger;
do not discipline me in Your wrath.

³Be gracious to me, O LORD, for I am wasting away.
Heal me, O LORD, for my bones are shaking.

⁴My whole being is deeply shaken —
and You, O LORD — how long?

⁵Turn back, O LORD, rescue my life;
save me because of Your faithful love.

⁶For in death there is no memory of You;
in Sheol, who will praise You?

⁷I am exhausted from my groaning;
every night I flood my bed;
with my tears I drench my couch.

⁸My eye has grown dim from grief;
it has aged because of all my enemies.

⁹Depart from me, all you workers of evil,
for the LORD has heard the sound of my weeping.

¹⁰The LORD has heard my plea for mercy;
the LORD accepts my prayer.

¹¹All my enemies will be ashamed and deeply shaken;
they will turn back — ashamed in an instant.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Sheminit ('the eighth') may refer to an eight-stringed instrument, a musical mode, or a lower octave (contrasting with *alamot*, 'maidens,' possibly a higher register, in Psalm 46:1). The term also appears in 1 Chronicles 15:21 in a musical context. Whatever its precise meaning, the combination of stringed instruments and the sheminit designation sets a somber tonal register appropriate to the psalm's content.
2. This opening is repeated nearly verbatim in Psalm 38:2, the second penitential psalm. The request assumes that God does rebuke and discipline — the psalmist does not question that. The prayer is for moderation, not exemption. It reflects the wisdom tradition's view that divine discipline is part of the father-child relationship (Proverbs 3:11-12, 'the LORD disciplines those He loves').
3. The language of bones (*etsem*) suffering appears frequently in the Psalms (Psalm 22:15, 31:11, 32:3, 38:4, 42:11, 102:4). In Hebrew anthropology, bones represent the structural core of a person — when bones shake, the entire self is destabilized. Bone-language in the Psalter always signals suffering that has reached the deepest level of the person.
4. The broken sentence 'and You, O LORD — how long?' is one of the most powerful lines in the Psalter precisely because it refuses to finish itself. The dash after 'how long' leaves the question open-ended, mirroring the experience of suffering that has no visible endpoint. The psalmist has run out of words but not out of address — he is still talking to God.
5. The appeal *le-ma'an chasdekha* ('for the sake of Your chesed') is a covenant argument. The psalmist reminds God of His own commitment. This is not manipulation but the exercise of covenant relationship — the weaker partner invoking the stronger partner's pledged loyalty. Abraham, Moses, and the prophets all use this form of argument with God.
6. The Sheol argument reflects early Israelite theology in which the afterlife was not a place of reward or punishment but a dim, diminished existence where the dead 'slept' without meaningful consciousness. Later Jewish theology (and Christian theology after it) would develop resurrection hope that changes this calculus, but the psalmist prays from within the limits of his own theology. His horizon is this life, and the argument is: this life is where praise happens.
7. The flooding-bed image is deliberate exaggeration (hyperbole) deployed for emotional truth rather than literal accuracy. The psalmist is not reporting water levels but communicating the experience of night after night of unrelenting grief. The bed — which should be a place of peace (Psalm 4:9) — has become a place of drowning.
8. The physical deterioration of the eye — wasting and aging — connects weeping (v. 7) to its bodily consequences. The Psalter does not separate emotional suffering from physical deterioration; the body bears what the soul endures. This integrated view of human suffering resists any attempt to spiritualize pain into something merely internal.

9. Jesus uses the phrase 'depart from me, all you workers of evil' in Matthew 7:23 and Luke 13:27, applying the psalmist's dismissal of enemies to the final judgment. The original context is personal deliverance; the New Testament application is eschatological. Both contexts share the core reality: those who practice evil cannot remain in the presence of the one whom God vindicates.
10. The shift from 'has heard' (perfect tense, completed action) to 'accepts' (imperfect tense, ongoing action) suggests that God's reception of prayer is not a single event but an ongoing reality. God heard the specific weeping and continues to receive prayer as an ongoing practice.
11. The repetition of bahal ('to be terrified') links the enemies' future fate to the psalmist's past suffering — the same word used for his bones (v. 3) and soul (v. 4) now applies to the enemies (v. 11). This verbal echo creates a sense of exact justice: the terror flows from the innocent to the guilty.

7

Summary: *Psalm 7 is a psalm of individual lament and self-imprecation — the psalmist calls on God for refuge from a pursuer, invokes a conditional curse on himself if he is guilty, and appeals to God as righteous judge of all peoples. The psalm describes God as a warrior who prepares weapons against the wicked, then depicts the wicked falling into the very pit they dug. It closes with thanksgiving for God's righteousness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains one of the Psalter's most dramatic oaths of innocence (vv. 4-6, Hebrew vv. 4-6): the psalmist invites his own destruction if he has done what his accuser claims. This is not casual protest but a formal self-imprecation — the ancient equivalent of placing yourself under oath before God's tribunal. The psalm also presents one of the Hebrew Bible's most vivid pictures of self-defeating evil: the wicked dig a pit and fall into it themselves; they conceive trouble and give birth to falsehood. Evil is not merely punished from outside — it devours its own practitioners.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription identifies this as a shiggayon — a term of uncertain meaning, possibly indicating an emotional, agitated style of composition. The reference to 'Cush the Benjaminite' has no clear parallel in the biblical narratives about David; it may refer to an otherwise unrecorded incident, or 'Cush' may be a coded reference to Saul (also a Benjaminite). The psalm's call for God to 'arise in anger' (v. 7) and judge the nations extends the individual conflict into cosmic scope — the psalmist sees his personal case as a test case for universal justice.*

Connections: *The self-imprecation formula (vv. 4-6) parallels Job's oath of innocence in Job 31. The pit-and-snare imagery (vv. 16-17) appears in Proverbs 26:27, Ecclesiastes 10:8, and Psalm 9:16. God as righteous judge (shophet tsaddiq) connects to Genesis 18:25 ('Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?'). The warrior-God imagery (vv. 13-14) echoes Deuteronomy 32:41-42.*

¹A shiggayon of David, which he sang to the LORD
on account of the words of Cush the Benjaminite.

²O LORD my God, in You I take refuge;
save me from all who pursue me and rescue me,

³lest he tear me apart like a lion,
ripping me to pieces with no one to rescue.

⁴O LORD my God, if I have done this —
if there is injustice on my hands —

⁵if I have repaid my ally with evil
or plundered my enemy without cause —

⁶then let the enemy pursue me and overtake me;
let him trample my life to the ground
and lay my honor in the dust.

Selah.

⁷Rise up, O LORD, in Your anger;
lift Yourself up against the fury of my enemies.
Awake for me — You have appointed judgment.

⁸Let the assembly of peoples gather around You,
and over them take Your seat on high.

⁹The LORD judges the peoples.
Vindicate me, O LORD,
according to my righteousness and my integrity.

¹⁰Let the evil of the wicked come to an end,
but establish the righteous —
You who test hearts and minds, O righteous God.

¹¹My shield is with God,
who saves the upright in heart.

¹²God is a righteous judge,
a God who shows indignation every day.

¹³If one does not repent, God sharpens His sword;
He bends His bow and makes it ready.

¹⁴He has prepared deadly weapons against him;
He makes His arrows into flaming shafts.

¹⁵See — he conceives iniquity,
is pregnant with trouble,
and gives birth to falsehood.

¹⁶He digs a pit and hollows it out,
then falls into the hole he has made.

¹⁷His trouble returns on his own head;
his violence comes down on his own skull.

¹⁸I will give thanks to the LORD for His righteousness
and sing praise to the name of the LORD Most High.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Shiggayon (possibly from shagah, 'to wander, to err, to reel') may indicate a psalm of intense, wandering emotion — an agitated or ecstatic composition. The only other biblical occurrence is in Habakkuk 3:1 (plural: shigionot). The identity of Cush the Benjaminite is unknown. Some scholars connect him to Saul's household (Saul was a Benjaminite), but no narrative in Samuel mentions a figure named Cush. The superscription may preserve a tradition lost to us.
2. The combination of chasah ('to take refuge') and rod'fai ('my pursuers') creates a vivid scene: the psalmist is being chased and has run to God as a fortress. The imagery is not metaphorical in the abstract — it reflects the ancient practice of seeking sanctuary at a holy place, where the pursued could find protection under divine authority.

3. Lion imagery for enemies is common in the Psalter (Psalms 10:9, 17:12, 22:14, 22:22, 35:17, 57:5, 58:7). Lions were real threats in ancient Israel (cf. 1 Samuel 17:34, Amos 3:12), and their predatory behavior provided a ready metaphor for enemies who operate by ambush, overwhelming force, and the exploitation of vulnerability.
4. The self-imprecation (oath with conditional curse) was a legal procedure in the ancient Near East. A person could swear innocence and invoke destruction on themselves if they were lying. It was not undertaken lightly — it placed the swearer under divine judgment. Job 31 is the most extended example in the Hebrew Bible.
5. The phrase 'or plundered my enemy without cause' is a remarkable ethical claim: even enemies have rights. The psalmist does not claim he has no enemies — he claims he has not wronged them unjustly. This standard exceeds mere loyalty to friends; it requires fairness even toward adversaries.
6. The willingness to invoke one's own destruction is the ultimate act of self-confidence before God's tribunal. The psalmist is so certain of his innocence that he can afford to say: if I am wrong, destroy me. This is the opposite of evasion — it is a direct challenge to God to examine and judge.
7. The call for God to 'awake' does not reflect actual belief that God sleeps (Psalm 121:4, 'He who keeps Israel neither slumbers nor sleeps'). It is the language of urgent petition — a sufferer's way of saying: 'Act now, because from my perspective You appear to be doing nothing.' The same bold language appears in Psalm 44:24 and Isaiah 51:9.
8. The image of God enthroned above a gathered assembly of peoples combines courtroom and throne room. The nations serve as witnesses to God's just judgment. This scene anticipates the cosmic judgment imagery in Psalms 96-99, where God judges the peoples with equity.
9. The willingness to be judged 'according to my righteousness' is not arrogance but legal confidence in a specific case. The psalmist is not claiming universal sinlessness (the penitential psalms prove otherwise) but innocence regarding the particular accusation. Context determines whether 'judge me according to my righteousness' is presumptuous or appropriate.
10. The 'hearts and kidneys' pairing (lev and kelayot) represents the totality of the inner person. The heart thinks; the kidneys feel. Together they encompass the full range of human interiority. God's testing of both means that judgment is based on complete knowledge — motive, intention, and emotion, not just outward action. Jeremiah 11:20 and 17:10 use the identical phrase.
11. The phrase yishre lev ('upright in heart') echoes the yashar ('upright') of Job 1:1 and the derekh ('way') theology of Psalm 1. Uprightness of heart — internal moral alignment — is the consistent prerequisite for divine protection throughout the wisdom tradition.
12. The phrase be-khol yom ('every day') modifying God's indignation is remarkable. It transforms divine anger from a sudden eruption into a steady state — God is perpetually opposed to evil. This daily indignation is the dark side of daily faithfulness: the God who is faithful every morning (Lamentations 3:23) is also indignant every day.
13. The warrior-God imagery appears throughout the Hebrew Bible (Exodus 15:3, Deuteronomy 32:41-42, Isaiah 42:13). The image of God sharpening a sword and bending a bow is not primitive theology but vivid metaphor for divine justice that acts forcefully against entrenched evil. The conditional clause ('if he does not repent') preserves the possibility of mercy up to the last moment.
14. The word dolqim is ambiguous: it may mean 'burning' (describing the arrows as fiery) or 'hot pursuers' (describing the targets as relentless persecutors). The ambiguity may be intentional — fire meets fire; the burning arrows are aimed at those who burn with malice.
15. The birth metaphor for evil appears in James 1:15 ('sin, when it is fully grown, gives birth to death'), suggesting continuity between this psalm's imagery and New Testament moral theology. The point is identical: evil is not static but dynamic — it grows, develops, and produces offspring worse than itself.
16. The pit-digging image is one of the most widespread motifs in ancient Near Eastern wisdom. It appears in Proverbs 26:27 ('whoever digs a pit will fall into it'), Ecclesiastes 10:8 ('he who digs a pit will fall into it'), and Psalm 9:16 ('the nations sink into the pit they made'). The consistency of the image across traditions reflects a deeply held conviction that the moral order is structured for boomerang justice.
17. The word chamas ('violence') is one of the Hebrew Bible's most theologically loaded terms. It was the reason for the flood (Genesis 6:11, 'the earth was filled with chamas') and one of the prophets' most frequent accusations (Habakkuk 1:2-3, Amos 3:10). When chamas returns on the perpetrator's head, cosmic justice is being served.
18. The title Elyon ('Most High') is one of God's most ancient names, appearing in Genesis 14:18-22 (Melchizedek, priest of El Elyon). It emphasizes God's supreme sovereignty over all competing powers — political, spiritual, and cosmic. Combined with YHWH, it affirms that the covenant God of Israel is also the supreme ruler of the universe.

8

Summary: *Psalm 8 is a hymn of praise to the Creator, framed by the refrain 'O LORD, our Lord, how majestic is Your name in all the earth.' Between the bookends of cosmic praise, the psalmist gazes at the night sky, marvels that God attends to human beings at all, and declares that God has crowned humanity with glory and honor, placing all creation under human dominion. It is the Psalter's creation theology in miniature.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm asks the question that no other creature can ask: 'What is a human being that You are mindful of him?' (mah enosh ki tizkrennu). The question emerges from looking at the stars — the vastness of the cosmos provokes not pride but astonishment at divine attention. The answer is equally astonishing: God has made humanity 'a little lower than the heavenly beings' (me'at from Elohim) and crowned them with kavod ve-hadar ('glory and honor'). The same kavod that belongs to God is shared with human beings. Humanity's place is not at the bottom of creation (mere dust) or at the top (divine), but in the extraordinary middle — a little less than God, ruling over everything else. The psalm is simultaneously the highest anthropology and the deepest humility in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase me'at from Elohim (v. 6, Heb.) is famously ambiguous. Elohim can mean 'God' or 'gods' or 'heavenly beings' or 'angels.' The Septuagint chose 'angels' (angelous), and Hebrews 2:7 follows that rendering. If it means 'God,' the claim is staggering: humanity is just below God Himself. If it means 'angels,' the claim is still remarkable but slightly lower on the cosmic hierarchy. The psalm's vision of human dominion over creation has been critiqued as licensing environmental exploitation, but the Hebrew verb mashal ('to rule') implies responsible stewardship under God, not autonomous exploitation — the human rules as God's deputy, not as God's replacement.*

Connections: *The psalm echoes Genesis 1:26-28 (dominion over animals, image of God). The list of creatures under human rule (v. 8-9) follows the same categories as Genesis 1: livestock, wild animals, birds, fish. Hebrews 2:6-8 quotes this psalm and applies the 'son of man' language to Jesus. 1 Corinthians 15:27 uses the 'all things under his feet' language for Christ's final reign. The refrain structure (identical opening and closing) is unique in the Psalter's first book.*

1For the director of music. According to the Gittith.
A psalm of David.

2O LORD, our Lord,
how majestic is Your name in all the earth —
You who have set Your splendor above the heavens!

3From the mouths of infants and nursing babies
You have established strength
because of Your adversaries,
to silence the enemy and the avenger.

4When I look at Your heavens,
the work of Your fingers,
the moon and the stars that You have set in place —

5What is a human being that You remember him,
a son of Adam that You attend to him?

6Yet You made him a little lower than God,
and You crown him with glory and honor.

⁷You give him dominion over the works of Your hands;
You have placed everything under his feet:

⁸sheep and cattle, all of them,
and also the wild animals of the field,

⁹the birds of the sky and the fish of the sea —
whatever passes along the paths of the seas.

¹⁰O LORD, our Lord,
how majestic is Your name in all the earth!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Gittith may refer to a musical instrument from Gath (a Philistine city), a winepress song (gat means 'winepress'), or a melody associated with the grape harvest. The term appears in the superscriptions of Psalms 8, 81, and 84. If it refers to a harvest melody, the creation-celebration content of Psalm 8 would suit a festive, agricultural setting.
2. The distinction between YHWH (the personal covenant name) and Adonenu ('our Lord, our master') is important. YHWH is who God is; Adon is what God is to us. The combination declares both identity and relationship. The plural possessive -enu ('our') makes this a communal confession, not merely individual praise.
3. Jesus quotes this verse in Matthew 21:16 when children cry 'Hosanna to the Son of David' in the temple and the chief priests object. Jesus reads the psalm as fulfilled in the children's praise. The Septuagint translates oz ('strength') as ainon ('praise'), shifting the meaning from 'You have established strength' to 'You have perfected praise' — both readings are theologically productive.
4. The nighttime setting (moon and stars, no sun) is significant. The night sky reveals more of the universe than daylight does — the naked eye can see thousands of stars, each one placed by God's fingers. The experience of smallness under the stars is universal, and the psalm captures it precisely: the vastness of the cosmos provokes the question of human significance.
5. The term ben adam ('son of man, son of Adam') here means simply 'human being.' In Daniel 7:13, the phrase takes on a more exalted meaning ('one like a son of man' approaching God's throne), and in the Gospels, Jesus adopts it as his primary self-designation. The trajectory from Psalm 8's humble 'mortal creature' to Daniel's heavenly figure to Jesus' self-identification is one of the most significant theological developments in biblical tradition.
6. The Septuagint's translation of Elohim as angelous ('angels') influenced the New Testament quotation in Hebrews 2:7. The Hebrew more naturally reads 'God' (Elohim without qualification normally means God), making the anthropological claim even bolder: humanity was made just slightly less than divine. The psalm does not explain how this is possible — it simply declares it with wonder.
6. Kavod ('glory') here echoes its use throughout the Psalter for God's own splendor. When the psalm says God crowns humanity with kavod, it is saying that the same weight, significance, and radiance that characterize God are shared — in diminished but real measure — with human beings. This is the Hebrew Bible's version of the imago Dei ('image of God') from Genesis 1:26-27.
7. 1 Corinthians 15:27 applies this verse to Christ: 'For God has put all things under his feet.' The move from humanity-in-general (Psalm 8) to Christ-in-particular (Paul) reflects early Christian theology's reading of the psalm as ultimately fulfilled in Jesus, the ideal human being who exercises the dominion that Adam forfeited.
8. The list of creatures under human dominion follows the Genesis 1 categories. Tsoneh ('sheep, flocks') and alafim ('cattle, oxen') represent domesticated animals. Bahamot sadai ('beasts of the field') represent wild land animals. The progression from domestic to wild reflects increasing degrees of human authority — ruling tame animals is easy; ruling wild ones demonstrates the full scope of the mandate.
9. The phrase archot yammim ('paths of the seas') is poetically evocative — it suggests that the sea has invisible routes, like roads, traveled by its creatures. Matthew Fontaine Maury, the 19th-century oceanographer considered the father of modern oceanography, reportedly was inspired by this phrase to search for ocean currents, though the historical details of that account are debated.
10. The exact repetition of the refrain with no modification is a deliberate structural choice. It signals that the psalm's content has not altered the fundamental truth — God's name remains majestic in all the earth — but has expanded the worshiper's comprehension of what that majesty includes. The frame holds; the picture inside it is now richer.

9

Summary: *Psalm 9 is a thanksgiving and lament psalm with an acrostic structure — each stanza begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet (though the pattern is incomplete; Psalms 9-10 together form the full acrostic). The psalmist praises God for judging the nations, rebuking the wicked, and defending the oppressed. He calls on God to arise and judge, declaring that the nations are mere mortals and the needy will not be forgotten forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm introduces the theological concept that is central to much of the Psalter: God as the refuge and stronghold of the oppressed. The phrase misgav la-dakh ('a stronghold for the crushed') in verse 10 establishes a pattern that runs through the entire collection — God's power is directed specifically toward those who have no other power. The acrostic structure (aleph through kaph in Psalm 9, then continuing lamed through tav in Psalm 10) suggests that the two psalms were originally a single composition, an A-to-Z declaration that God rules justly from beginning to end.*

Translation Friction: *The acrostic pattern in Psalm 9 is imperfect — some letters are missing or appear out of order, which may indicate textual corruption, deliberate artistic variation, or the limits of fitting theology into a rigid alphabetic framework. The superscription mentions almut labben, a phrase of uncertain meaning (possibly 'death of the son,' a melody name, or a corruption of alamot, 'maidens'). The psalm alternates between past-tense praise (God has judged) and present-tense lament (enemies persist), creating a tension between confidence in what God has done and urgency about what God must still do.*

Connections: *Psalms 9 and 10 form a literary pair connected by acrostic structure and shared vocabulary. The 'pit they dug' image in verse 16 echoes Psalm 7:16. The cry qumah YHWH ('arise, O LORD') in verse 20 echoes Psalms 3:8 and 7:7. The declaration that God 'does not forget the cry of the afflicted' (v. 13) anticipates the theology of Psalms 10, 12, 22, and 34. The phrase 'the needy shall not always be forgotten' (v. 19) is the Psalter's most direct promise to the poor.*

¹For the director of music. According to 'The Death of the Son.'

A psalm of David.

²I will give thanks to the LORD with all my heart;

I will recount all Your wonders.

³I will rejoice and exult in You;

I will sing praise to Your name, O Most High.

⁴When my enemies turn back,
they stumble and perish before You.

⁵For You have upheld my case and my cause;
You sit on the throne, judging with righteousness.

⁶You have rebuked the nations;
You have destroyed the wicked.
You have wiped out their name forever and ever.

⁷The enemy is finished — perpetual ruins!
You have uprooted their cities;
the very memory of them has perished.

⁸But the LORD sits enthroned forever;
He has established His throne for judgment.

⁹He judges the world with righteousness;
He governs the peoples with equity.

¹⁰The LORD is a stronghold for the crushed,
a stronghold in times of distress.

¹¹Those who know Your name trust in You,
for You have not abandoned those who seek You, O LORD.

¹²Sing praises to the LORD who dwells in Zion;
declare His deeds among the peoples.

¹³For He who avenges blood remembers them;
He does not forget the cry of the afflicted.

¹⁴Be gracious to me, O LORD;
see my affliction at the hands of those who hate me,
You who lift me from the gates of death,

¹⁵so that I may declare all Your praises
in the gates of Daughter Zion,
that I may rejoice in Your salvation.

¹⁶The nations have sunk into the pit they made;
their own foot is caught in the net they hid.

¹⁷The LORD has made Himself known — He has executed judgment.
The wicked is snared by the work of his own hands.
Higgaion. Selah.

¹⁸The wicked will return to Sheol —
all the nations that forget God.

¹⁹For the needy will not always be forgotten;
the hope of the afflicted will not perish forever.

²⁰Rise up, O LORD! Do not let mortals prevail;
let the nations be judged before You.

²¹Strike fear into them, O LORD;
let the nations know they are only human.
Selah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Almut labben (or mut labben) is one of the most obscure superscription terms. It may mean 'death of the son' (mavvet la-ben), possibly indicating a melody named for a song about a son's death. Some scholars repoint it as al alamot labben ('according to maidens' voices, for the son'). Others treat it as a liturgical or musical term whose original meaning was lost before the Masoretes vocalized the text. We transliterate the traditional reading while acknowledging its uncertainty.

2. The verb *saphar* ('to recount, to tell') is related to *sefer* ('book, document'). To recount God's wonders is to make them publicly known, to turn experience into testimony. The Psalter insists that praise is not private but communal — what God has done must be told.
3. The *bet* stanza opens with three verbs of joy: *esmechah* ('I will rejoice'), *e'eltsah* ('I will exult'), *azammerah* ('I will sing praise'). The title *Elyon* ('Most High') from Psalm 7:18 returns, affirming God's supreme sovereignty as the foundation for joy. The joy is directed *bekha* ('in You') — not in circumstances but in God's person.
4. The phrase *mippanekha* ('from before Your face, from Your presence') is theologically loaded. The 'face' of God in the Psalter represents direct encounter with the divine. For the righteous, it means blessing (Psalm 4:7); for the wicked, it means annihilation. The same presence produces opposite effects depending on the moral orientation of the one who encounters it.
5. The combination of *mishpat* ('justice, judgment') and *din* ('cause, legal case') covers both the process and the outcome of divine adjudication. God has both heard the case and rendered the verdict. The dual legal terminology emphasizes thoroughness — no aspect of the psalmist's cause has been overlooked.
6. Name-erasure (blotting out the *shem*) is the opposite of the psalm's opening, where God's name is praised. The wicked's name disappears forever; God's name endures in praise. The contrast between permanent divine fame and permanent wicked oblivion is the psalm's core theological architecture.
7. The completeness of destruction — physical (cities), temporal (forever), and memorial (memory erased) — reflects the ancient Near Eastern understanding that true destruction means being forgotten. A ruined city that is still remembered can be rebuilt. A city whose memory is erased cannot even be mourned. This is annihilation at the deepest level.
8. The contrast between the enemy's memory perishing (v. 7) and the LORD sitting forever (v. 8) is the psalm's central theological claim: evil is temporary; God's justice is eternal. The throne imagery anticipates the great enthronement psalms (93, 95-99) that declare *YHWH malakh* ('the LORD reigns').
9. This verse will be repeated almost verbatim in Psalm 96:13 and Psalm 98:9, where it forms the climax of enthronement hymns. The language of cosmic, equitable divine judgment is one of the Psalter's most consistent theological claims — it transcends individual lament to make a universal statement about God's governance.
10. The word *dakh* ('crushed') appears in Psalm 10:18 and describes the most vulnerable members of society — those who have been pressed down by forces they cannot resist. The Psalter's consistent claim is that God's power is directed toward these people specifically. This is not random benevolence but targeted justice: God fortifies the powerless.
11. The connection between knowing God's name and trusting God is a central Psalter theme. Trust (*bitachon*) is not blind — it is built on accumulated experience of God's faithfulness. The more one knows the name (the character), the more one trusts. This is relational knowledge, the kind that grows through time spent together.
12. The call to sing praises (*zamm'ru*) and declare (*haggidu*) God's deeds among the peoples (*ba-ammim*) extends worship beyond Israel to the nations. The LORD dwells in Zion (*yoshev Tsiyyon*) but His deeds concern all peoples. This outward-facing praise anticipates the missionary theology of Psalms 96, 98, and 117, where all nations are called to worship the LORD.
13. The *anavim* ('the afflicted, the humble, the lowly') are one of the Psalter's most important social categories. They are the poor, the oppressed, the powerless who depend entirely on God because human systems have failed them. The Psalter consistently claims that God hears specifically this group — not because they are morally superior but because they are vulnerable and have no other advocate.
14. The phrase *sha'are mavet* ('gates of death') pictures death as a walled city with gates — once entered, there is no return. The psalmist testifies that God has lifted him (*merom'mi*) from those very gates — pulled him back from the threshold of death. The imagery recurs in Psalm 107:18 and Isaiah 38:10. The request to 'see my affliction' (*re'eh onyi*) appeals to God's visual attention — to look and therefore to act.
15. The parallel between 'gates of death' (v. 14) and 'gates of Daughter Zion' (v. 15) is deliberately constructed. The two sets of gates represent the two possible destinations: death or life, silence or praise. God pulls the psalmist from one set of gates and sets him praising in the other.
16. The pit-and-net imagery draws on two hunting methods: the concealed pit (for large game) and the hidden net (for birds or smaller animals). Both depend on the victim not seeing the trap. The irony is that the trappers become their own victims — they know exactly where the trap is and yet somehow fall into it. This is the psalm's commentary on the blindness of wickedness.
17. *Higgayon* appears only here and in Psalm 92:4 (where it describes the sound of a harp) and possibly Psalm 19:15 (where it means 'meditation'). Its placement here after the statement about divine justice suggests a contemplative pause — a moment to meditate on the reality that God's justice is self-executing through the wicked's own actions.
18. The verb *shuv* ('to return') implies that Sheol is where the wicked belong — it is their natural habitat. They may temporarily walk among the living, but their destination was always the underworld. The nations' crime is not specified violence but forgetting — allowing God to drop from awareness, living as if God does not exist or does not matter.
19. The pairing of *evyon* ('needy') and *anavim* ('afflicted') represents the most vulnerable members of society. The Psalter's consistent advocacy for these groups reflects the prophetic tradition (Amos 2:6-7, Isaiah 10:1-2) and anticipates the Beatitudes (Matthew 5:3-5). The promise here is not that suffering will end immediately but that it will not last forever — a distinction that matters enormously to those enduring it.

- 20.** The word *enosh* ('mortal') is deliberately chosen over *adam* or *ish* to emphasize human frailty. The prayer is that fragile human power — which often seems overwhelming when wielded against the vulnerable — not be allowed to overrule divine justice. The nations may be powerful, but before God's face they are merely *enosh*: mortal, weak, temporary.
- 21.** The prayer for nations to know they are 'only human' (*enosh hemmah*) is one of the Psalter's most penetrating petitions. It does not ask for the nations' destruction but for their enlightenment — specifically, the enlightenment of recognizing their own mortality and limitation. The most dangerous people are those who forget they are *enosh*. The psalm asks God to remind them.

10

Summary: *Psalm 10 continues the acrostic begun in Psalm 9, completing the second half of the Hebrew alphabet. The psalm opens with a bold complaint — 'Why do You stand far off, O LORD?' — then provides the Psalter's most detailed portrait of the wicked person: arrogant, predatory, atheistic in practice, convinced God does not see. It closes with a confident petition that God will hear the afflicted, judge the oppressor, and defend the orphan and the crushed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains the most sustained character study of wickedness in the Psalter. Across verses 2-11, the wicked person is profiled with psychological precision: he pursues the poor, boasts about his desires, blesses the greedy, dismisses God from his thoughts, assumes his prosperity is permanent, believes God does not see, and operates as a hidden predator — a lion in a thicket, a hunter with a net. The portrait is not of supernatural evil but of ordinary human arrogance taken to its logical end: the practical atheism of someone who lives as if there is no moral accountability.*

Translation Friction: *Psalm 10 has no superscription in the Hebrew text, which is unusual for Book I of the Psalter (Psalms 3-41 all have superscriptions except Psalms 1, 2, 10, and 33). This supports the view that Psalms 9 and 10 were originally one composition — Psalm 10 continues without a new heading because it is the second half of Psalm 9's acrostic. The Septuagint (Greek Old Testament) combines them as a single psalm, which shifts the numbering of all subsequent psalms by one.*

Connections: *The acrostic structure continues from Psalm 9 (lamed through tav). The portrait of the wicked in verses 2-11 anticipates similar descriptions in Psalms 12, 14, 36, and 73. The cry 'Why do You stand far off?' echoes similar complaints in Psalms 22:2, 44:24-25, and 88:15. The petition *qumah YHWH* ('arise, O LORD') in verse 12 echoes Psalms 3:8, 7:7, and 9:20. The defense of the orphan and the oppressed connects to Deuteronomy 10:18 and Isaiah 1:17.*

¹Why, O LORD, do You stand far off?

Why do You hide in times of distress?

²In arrogance the wicked hotly pursue the poor;
let them be caught in the schemes they have devised.

³For the wicked boasts of his soul's desire;
the greedy person blesses himself and despises the LORD.

⁴The wicked, in the height of his arrogance, does not seek God.
"There is no God" — that is all his scheming.

⁵His ways prosper at all times;
Your judgments are far above, out of his sight.
All his enemies — he sneers at them.

⁶He says in his heart, "I will not be shaken;
generation after generation, no harm will touch me."

⁷His mouth is full of cursing, deceit, and oppression;
under his tongue lurk trouble and evil.

⁸He sits in ambush near the villages;
in hidden places he murders the innocent.
His eyes watch for the helpless.

⁹He lurks in hiding like a lion in its thicket;
he lurks to seize the poor.
He seizes the poor, dragging them into his net.

¹⁰He crushes and crouches,
and the helpless fall into his clutches.

¹¹He says in his heart, "God has forgotten;
He has hidden His face; He will never see."

¹²Rise up, O LORD! O God, lift up Your hand!
Do not forget the afflicted!

¹³Why does the wicked despise God?
He says in his heart, "You will not call me to account."

¹⁴But You do see! You observe trouble and grief
to take the matter into Your own hand.
The helpless entrust themselves to You;
You are the helper of the orphan.

¹⁵Break the arm of the wicked and the evildoer;
search out his wickedness until none remains.

¹⁶The LORD is king forever and ever;
the nations have perished from His land.

¹⁷O LORD, You have heard the desire of the afflicted;
You steady their hearts;
You incline Your ear,

¹⁸to defend the orphan and the crushed,
so that mere mortals from the earth
may terrify no more.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The question 'why do You stand far off?' is not apostasy but the deepest form of faith — it addresses God directly, assumes God has the power to act, and demands an account of God's apparent inactivity. Only a believer complains to God about God. The atheist has no one to accuse. The lament psalms insist that honest accusation is a legitimate form of prayer.
2. The word *ani* ('poor, afflicted') appears repeatedly in this psalm and throughout the Psalter. It does not describe only economic poverty but a condition of vulnerability — the person without resources, without power, without advocates. The wicked exploit precisely this vulnerability; God defends precisely this vulnerability.
3. The verb *ni'ets* ('to despise, to scorn, to treat with contempt') is among the strongest rejection verbs in Hebrew. It describes not passive indifference to God but active disdain — the greedy person has weighed God against profit and found God wanting. This is practical atheism expressed through

economic behavior.

4. The phrase *ein Elohim* ('there is no God') appears also in Psalm 14:1 and Psalm 53:2, where it is placed in the mouth of the naval ('fool'). The denial is not intellectual but behavioral — the wicked person's life functions as a continuous declaration that God is irrelevant. Every scheme that excludes God is a repetition of *ein Elohim*.
5. The observation that the wicked prosper 'at all times' creates the theological problem that drives many psalms (especially Psalm 73): if God is just, why do the wicked succeed? Psalm 10 does not resolve this tension — it describes it honestly and then appeals to God to act. The honesty about wicked prosperity is itself a form of faith: the psalmist tells God the truth about what he sees.
6. The phrase *le-dor va-dor* ('generation after generation') is normally used in the Psalter for God's faithfulness (Psalm 100:5, 'His faithfulness endures to all generations'). The wicked person here co-opts the language of divine permanence for himself — he claims for his own comfort what belongs only to God's character. This is the deepest form of idolatry: treating oneself as eternal.
7. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 3:14 as part of his argument for universal human sinfulness. The image of speech as weaponry — mouth full of cursing, tongue concealing evil — reflects the Psalter's deep awareness that language is the primary instrument of both worship and harm. The same tongue that praises God can destroy neighbors.
8. The ambush imagery shifts the wicked person from economic predator (vv. 3-6) to physical predator (vv. 8-10). The progression mirrors the escalation of evil: unchecked greed leads to contempt for God, which leads to violence against the vulnerable. The psalm traces the entire trajectory from arrogance to murder.
9. The double ambush language (*ye'erov... ye'erov*) creates a sense of relentless, patient stalking. The wicked person does not attack in passion but in strategy — he waits, observes, selects, and then strikes. The poor are not random victims but targeted prey, chosen for their vulnerability.
10. The complete portrait (vv. 2-10) traces a coherent psychology of wickedness: arrogance breeds contempt for God, which breeds contempt for people, which breeds predatory violence. The psalm insists that these are not separate sins but a single trajectory — each step follows logically from the previous one.
11. The irony is devastating: the wicked person says 'God will never see' in a psalm where God is called upon to see everything. The psalmist and the wicked person look at the same evidence — God's apparent inaction — and reach opposite conclusions. The psalmist says 'Why are You hiding? Act!' The wicked says 'God doesn't see. I'm free.' Same observation, opposite faith.
12. The petition 'do not forget the afflicted' (*al tishkach anavim*) is the psalm's theological hinge. Psalm 9:13 declared that God 'does not forget the cry of the afflicted.' Psalm 10:11 quoted the wicked's claim that 'God has forgotten.' Psalm 10:12 now asks God to prove the wicked wrong by remembering. The three uses of *shakhach* across the two psalms form a theological argument: God's character (He does not forget) versus the wicked's delusion (God has forgotten) versus the psalmist's prayer (do not forget).
13. The psalmist's strategy here is theologically brilliant: by quoting the wicked person's contempt directly to God, he turns the wicked person's arrogance into a provocation of God's honor. If God does not act, the wicked person's claim — 'You will not investigate' — becomes true. The psalmist is effectively saying: Your reputation is at stake.
14. The orphan (*yatom*) appears throughout the Hebrew Bible as the test case for justice. A society's treatment of orphans reveals its moral character. God's self-identification as 'helper of the orphan' (*ozer yatom*) establishes a divine priority: those without human protectors have a divine one. Deuteronomy 10:18 says God 'executes justice for the orphan and the widow.' Psalm 68:6 calls God 'father of the fatherless.'
15. The prayer to 'break the arm' of the wicked is not vindictive cruelty but a petition for the removal of oppressive power. The arm is the instrument of violence; breaking it ends the violence. The psalmist does not ask for the wicked person's torture but for the termination of his capacity to harm.
16. The declaration *YHWH melekh* ('the LORD is king') anticipates the great enthronement psalms (93, 95-99). It is the Psalter's foundational political theology: all earthly power is subordinate to divine sovereignty. The nations may rage (Psalm 2), the wicked may prosper (Psalm 10), but the LORD remains king. This confession is the Psalter's answer to every form of injustice.
17. The phrase *takhin libbam* ('You steady their hearts') reveals something important about God's care for the afflicted: it is not only external deliverance but internal strengthening. God does not merely rescue the vulnerable from their circumstances but fortifies their inner lives. The heart (*lev*) that has been shaken by oppression is made firm (*kun*) by God.
18. The final line — 'so that mere mortals from the earth may terrify no more' — is the Psalter's most concentrated statement against human tyranny. The tyrant is reduced to his essential identity: *enosh min ha-arets* ('a mortal from the earth, a creature of dust'). When God arises to defend the orphan and the crushed, the pretension of human power is exposed as the fraud it always was. The oppressor who claimed God would never see is himself seen, judged, and stripped of his ability to terrorize.

11

Summary: *A psalm of David expressing defiant trust in the LORD when counseled to flee. The psalmist refuses escape, grounding his confidence in the LORD's heavenly throne and his examination of the righteous and the wicked. The psalm moves from the temptation to run to the certainty of divine justice, ending with the vision of the upright beholding God's face.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm opens with a quotation from fearful advisors — 'Flee to your mountain like a bird' — and then spends the rest of its brief length demolishing the premise behind their advice. The logic is architectural: the LORD is in his holy temple, the LORD's throne is in heaven, therefore the foundations have not been destroyed no matter what the wicked do. The final line — 'the upright will behold his face' — uses the language of temple access and royal audience. To see the face of the king was the highest privilege in the ancient Near East. The psalm promises that the righteous will receive what was denied even to Moses (Exodus 33:20): the direct vision of God.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 3 — 'When the foundations are destroyed, what can the righteous do?' — is ambiguous. It may still be part of the advisors' fearful counsel, or it may be the psalmist's own rhetorical question. The Hebrew ki ('when, if, because') leaves the relationship between verses 2-3 deliberately open. The 'foundations' (shatot) likely refer to the foundations of social and moral order, not literal architecture. The word appears only here and in Psalm 82:5, where it describes the cosmic foundations shaking when justice fails.*

Connections: *The imagery of the LORD testing from his temple connects to Habakkuk 2:20 ('The LORD is in his holy temple; let all the earth keep silence'). The fire and brimstone judgment on the wicked (v. 6) echoes the destruction of Sodom in Genesis 19:24. The concept of beholding God's face reappears in Psalm 17:15, which closes with almost identical language. The bird-flight metaphor recurs in Psalm 55:6-8, where David wishes for wings to fly away — a wish this psalm refuses.*

¹For the choirmaster. Of David.
In the LORD I have taken refuge.
How can you say to my soul,
'Flee to your mountain like a bird'?

²For look — the wicked bend the bow,
they fit their arrow to the string
to shoot from the shadows
at the upright in heart.

³When the foundations are torn down,
what can the righteous do?

⁴The LORD is in his holy temple;
the LORD — his throne is in heaven.
His eyes observe,
his eyelids examine the children of humanity.

⁵The LORD examines the righteous,
but the wicked and the lover of violence
his soul hates.

⁶He rains down on the wicked
burning coals, fire and sulfur;
a scorching wind is the portion of their cup.

7For the LORD is righteous — he loves righteous deeds.
The upright will behold his face.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. lamnatseach is traditionally rendered 'To the chief musician' (KJV) but more likely means 'for the choirmaster' or 'for the musical director,' indicating the psalm was assigned to the temple music leader for liturgical performance.
1. The verb chasah ('to take refuge') is distinct from batach ('to trust'). It implies active movement toward shelter — not passive confidence but deliberate flight to God rather than to the mountains. The wordplay is intentional: the advisors say 'flee' (nudi), but the psalmist has already fled — to the LORD.
2. The phrase be-mo ofel ('in/from darkness') indicates covert attack — the wicked operate in concealment, ambushing those who live openly. The 'upright in heart' (yishrei lev) describes people whose inner disposition is straight and honest, making them vulnerable to those who operate by deception.
2. This verse may still be part of the advisors' speech — they describe the danger to justify their counsel to flee. The ki hinneh ('for look!') adds urgency to their warning.
3. The word shatot ('foundations') occurs only here and in Psalm 82:5 in the entire Hebrew Bible. In Psalm 82 the foundations of the earth totter because divine judges have failed to do justice. The same concept applies here: when the structures that uphold justice collapse, the righteous seem powerless.
3. Some interpreters read this verse as still quoting the advisors (making vv. 1c-3 a single quotation). Others see it as the psalmist's own question, answered by vv. 4-7. The ambiguity may be intentional.
4. The word af'appayim ('eyelids') is unusual in describing divine sight. It may suggest the narrowing of eyes in intense scrutiny, or it may be a poetic parallel for 'eyes' without additional meaning. The image is anthropomorphic but functions to convey the thoroughness of divine observation.
4. heikhal can mean both 'temple' and 'palace' — the ambiguity is productive, since the LORD's temple is also his throne room. The heavenly temple and the earthly sanctuary are linked in Israelite theology.
5. The phrase sane'ah nafsho ('his soul hates') is among the strongest expressions of divine disapproval in the Psalter. nefesh here means the essential self, the core of God's being. This is not casual dislike but visceral rejection.
5. chamas ('violence') is the same word used in Genesis 6:11 to describe the corruption that provoked the flood. It denotes not merely physical force but the violation of social bonds, the breakdown of trust between human beings.
6. pachim is difficult. It may mean 'snares, traps' (from pach) or 'burning coals' (from pecham). The context of fire and sulfur favors 'burning coals,' but the ambiguity may be intentional — the wicked are both trapped and burned.
6. The 'cup' (kos) as a metaphor for divine judgment appears in Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15, and Psalm 75:8. It conveys inevitability: you must drink what is poured for you.
7. The final line is grammatically ambiguous: fanemo could mean 'his face' (God's face that the upright behold) or 'their face' (God beholds the face of the upright). Most Hebrew scholars read it as 'his face' — the upright will see God. This reading provides the climactic reversal: the psalm began with the temptation to flee God's world, and it ends with the promise of seeing God's face.
7. The shift from God examining humanity (v. 4) to humanity beholding God (v. 7) creates a reciprocal gaze — God sees us, and we will see God. This mutual vision is the psalm's definition of the covenant relationship.

12

Summary: A psalm of David lamenting the disappearance of the faithful and the dominance of flattering, deceitful speech. The psalmist cries out for God to act against those who use smooth lips and a double heart. At the center stands a divine oracle: the LORD himself speaks, promising to rise and protect the poor. The psalm then contrasts human words — false, silver-tongued, manipulative — with the words of the LORD, which are pure silver refined seven times.

What Makes This Remarkable: This psalm is structured around the opposition between two kinds of speech. Human speech in the first half is characterized by duplicity: smooth lips (sifatei chalaqot) and a double heart (lev va-lev, literally 'a heart and a heart'). The wicked speak with two hearts — one visible, one hidden. Against this verbal corruption, the psalm places the words of the LORD (imrot YHVH), which are pure (tehorot), refined like silver smelted seven times. The number seven signals complete purification: God's words contain no alloy, no hidden agenda, no double meaning. The

psalm is essentially a meditation on the trustworthiness of language itself — and concludes that only divine speech can be trusted without reservation.

Translation Friction: *Verse 7 in the Hebrew (v. 6 in some English translations) contains the divine oracle — 'Now I will arise, says the LORD' — which interrupts the psalm with God's own voice. This is unusual in the Psalter; most psalms address God or speak about God, but here God speaks directly within the poem. The shift is jarring and powerful. The placement of the oracle at the psalm's center suggests that divine speech is the hinge on which the entire structure turns. Some scholars see this as a prophetic oracle delivered in the temple liturgy, with a priest or prophet speaking God's words during worship.*

Connections: *The 'pure words' metaphor (v. 7) connects to Proverbs 30:5 ('Every word of God is refined') and Psalm 119:140 ('Your word is very pure'). The imagery of silver refined seven times appears nowhere else in Scripture, making it a unique intensification. The lament over the disappearance of the faithful (chased) echoes Micah 7:2 ('The faithful have perished from the earth'). The promise that the LORD will arise (aqum) uses the same verb as the ark procession formula in Numbers 10:35 ('Arise, O LORD').*

¹For the choirmaster. On the sheminith. A psalm of David.
²Save us, LORD, for the faithful are gone!
 The trustworthy have vanished
 from among the children of humanity.
³They speak emptiness to one another,
 with smooth lips and a double heart they speak.
⁴May the LORD cut off all smooth lips,
 the tongue that speaks boastfully —
⁵those who say, 'With our tongue we will prevail!
 Our lips are with us —
 who is master over us?'
⁶'Because the poor are plundered,
 because the needy groan,
 now I will arise,' declares the LORD.
 'I will place him in the safety he longs for.'
⁷The words of the LORD are pure words,
 like silver refined in a furnace on the ground,
 purified seven times.
⁸You, LORD, will guard them;
 you will protect us from this generation forever.
⁹The wicked prowl on every side
 when worthlessness is exalted among the children of humanity.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. sheminith means 'the eighth' and likely refers to a musical mode, tuning, or an eight-stringed instrument. The exact meaning is lost. Some suggest it indicates a lower octave or bass register, which would suit the somber tone of this lament.
2. chased ('the faithful one') derives from chesed and describes a person who practices covenant loyalty. It is the human counterpart to God's own chesed. When the chased disappears, the covenant community loses its essential character.

3. The phrase *lev va-lev* ('a heart and a heart') is one of the most concise descriptions of hypocrisy in the Hebrew Bible. It does not mean indecision (as in James 1:8, 'double-minded') but active duplicity — maintaining two simultaneous intentions, one public and one private.
4. The verb *yakhret* ('may he cut off') carries covenantal overtones — *karat* is the verb used for both making and breaking covenants. To be 'cut off' is to be severed from the community and from God's protection. The smooth lips and boastful tongue will be surgically removed from the body politic.
5. The boast *mi adon lanu* ('who is lord over us?') echoes the primal human impulse toward autonomy. It is not atheism — it is practical lordlessness, the refusal to acknowledge any authority that constrains speech or action.
6. This is one of the rare places in the Psalter where God speaks directly in the first person within a psalm. The oracle format — 'says the LORD' (*yomar YHVH*) — is typically prophetic, suggesting this psalm may have been performed with a priestly or prophetic voice delivering God's words in the liturgy.
6. The final phrase *yapiyach lo* is difficult. It may mean 'he pants for it' (the poor man longs for safety) or 'he [the oppressor] puffs at him' (the enemy sneers). We follow the reading that emphasizes the longing of the afflicted.
7. The phrase *ba-alil la-arets* is notoriously difficult. *alil* may mean 'crucible' or 'furnace,' and *la-arets* may mean 'on the ground' (describing the location of the smelting operation) or may modify the refining process. The overall sense is clear even if the details are debated: God's words undergo the most thorough purification imaginable.
8. The shift from 'them' (*tishmerem*) to 'us' (*titserenu*, though some read 'him') reflects the movement from the general promise to personal application. The 'generation' (*dor*) here means the current corrupt generation described in vv. 2-5 — the generation of smooth lips and double hearts.
9. The final verse is one of the most debated in the Psalter. *ke-rum zullut* could mean 'when vileness is exalted' or 'according to the exaltation of worthlessness.' The overall sense is that a society that elevates what is base creates conditions for the wicked to flourish. The psalm refuses to end with easy resolution — it acknowledges ongoing tension between God's promise and present reality.

13

Summary: *One of the purest lament psalms in the Psalter — six verses that move through three distinct emotional stages with architectural precision. The psalmist asks 'How long?' four times (vv. 2-3), pleads for God to look and answer (vv. 4-5), then erupts into trust and praise (v. 6). The entire emotional arc of the lament genre — distress, petition, confidence — is compressed into the smallest possible space.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fourfold 'How long?' (ad anah) in verses 2-3 is one of the most imitated structures in the history of prayer. Each question targets a different dimension of suffering: How long will you forget me? (divine absence), How long will you hide your face? (divine concealment), How long must I wrestle with my thoughts? (internal anguish), How long will my enemy triumph? (external threat). The questions spiral from God to self to enemy, mapping the complete landscape of despair. Then — without any reported answer from God, without any change in circumstances — the psalm pivots to trust in verse 6. This pivot is the mystery at the heart of biblical lament: the act of crying out to God is itself the bridge from despair to praise. Nothing changes except the direction of the psalmist's gaze.*

Translation Friction: *The transition from verse 5 ('lest my enemy say, I have prevailed') to verse 6 ('But I trust in your faithful love') is one of the sharpest turns in the Psalter. There is no intervening oracle, no divine response, no change in situation. Some scholars attribute this to a liturgical pause — perhaps a priest spoke an oracle of assurance between verses 5 and 6 that the text does not record. Others see it as the essential structure of faith: lament that is directed toward God already contains the seeds of trust, because the act of addressing God presupposes his existence, his power, and his willingness to hear.*

Connections: *The fourfold 'How long?' echoes Habakkuk 1:2 and Revelation 6:10, forming a thread that runs from the Psalms through the prophets to the apocalypse. The final verse's movement from trust (*batachti*) to rejoicing (*yagel libbi*) to singing (*ashirah*) anticipates the full trajectory of Psalm 30, which moves from mourning to dancing. The phrase 'he has dealt generously with me' (*gamal alay*) will reappear in Psalm 116:7, connecting this brief lament to the great thanksgiving psalms.*

For the choirmaster. A psalm of David.

²How long, LORD? Will you forget me forever?
How long will you hide your face from me?

³How long must I wrestle with my thoughts,
with grief in my heart day after day?
How long will my enemy be exalted over me?

⁴Look at me! Answer me, LORD my God!
Give light to my eyes,
or I will sleep the sleep of death.

⁵Do not let my enemy say, 'I have prevailed over him!'
Do not let my foes rejoice when I stumble.

⁶But I have trusted in your faithful love;
my heart will rejoice in your salvation.
I will sing to the LORD,
for he has dealt generously with me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription is minimal — no musical or situational notation beyond the standard attribution to David and the choirmaster. The simplicity of the heading matches the compressed intensity of the psalm itself.
2. The phrase *hester panim* ('hiding of the face') is a technical theological concept. When God turns his face toward someone, it means blessing and life (Numbers 6:25). When he hides his face, it means exposure to chaos and death. The psalmist is asking: have you turned away permanently?
3. The fourfold repetition of *ad anah* creates a hammering rhythm in Hebrew that formal English translation struggles to reproduce. The questions are not rhetorical — they demand an answer. Their repetition is itself a form of prayer: the persistence of the question is the persistence of faith.
4. The title 'LORD my God' (YHVH Elohai) is significant — in the midst of feeling abandoned, the psalmist still claims God as his own. The possessive 'my' is an act of faith embedded in the petition. He addresses the God who seems absent as 'my God.'
5. The psalmist appeals to God's honor: if the enemy prevails, it reflects not only on the psalmist but on the God who was supposed to protect him. This appeal to divine reputation is a common strategy in biblical lament — Moses uses it in Numbers 14:13-16, arguing that the nations will interpret Israel's destruction as God's inability to save.
6. The movement from lament (vv. 2-3) through petition (vv. 4-5) to praise (v. 6) is the classic three-part structure of the biblical lament. What makes Psalm 13 remarkable is that this entire arc occurs in six verses. The compression intensifies every transition.
6. The verb *gamal* ('to deal with, to repay, to wean') implies completion — God has brought something to its full development. The psalmist trusts that God's dealing with him will end in generosity, not abandonment.

14

Summary: *A wisdom psalm that begins with the fool's declaration — "There is no God" — and then surveys the resulting moral catastrophe. The LORD looks down from heaven to see if anyone acts wisely, and the verdict is universal: all have turned aside, all are corrupt, no one does good. The psalm names the wicked as those who 'devour my people like bread' and who shame the counsel of the poor. It ends with a longing cry for salvation to come from Zion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fool's statement — 'there is no God' (ein Elohim) — is not philosophical atheism in the modern sense. The fool ('fool') is not making a metaphysical argument but a practical one: God is not present, God does not see, God will not act. This is functional atheism — living as though God's moral governance does not apply. The psalm's response is to describe God doing exactly what the fool denies: looking down (*hishqif*), observing (*lir'ot*), examining whether anyone seeks God (*doresh et Elohim*). The irony is precise: the fool says God is absent, and at that very moment God is watching the fool. The universal verdict — 'all have turned aside, together they are corrupt'*

(hakkol sar yachdav ne'elachu) — will be quoted by Paul in Romans 3:10-12 as evidence of universal human sinfulness.

Translation Friction: *Verse 4 suddenly narrows from universal corruption to a specific accusation: 'those who devour my people as they eat bread.' The shift from 'all have turned aside' to 'those who devour my people' introduces a distinction the psalm seemed to deny — if all are corrupt, who are 'my people' being devoured? The phrase ammi ('my people') likely represents God's voice (as in a prophetic oracle) or the psalmist speaking as God's representative. The tension between universal corruption and the existence of an identifiable righteous remnant (the poor in v. 6, the generation of the righteous in v. 5) runs through the entire psalm without resolution.*

Connections: *Psalm 53 is a near-duplicate of Psalm 14 with minor variations, including the substitution of Elohim for YHVH — evidence that the psalm circulated in two traditions. Paul's quotation in Romans 3:10-18 draws from the Greek Septuagint version, which expands the indictment significantly. The phrase 'salvation out of Zion' (yeshu'at Yisrael mi-Tsiyyon) connects to Psalm 53:6, Isaiah 59:20 ('A redeemer will come to Zion'), and Romans 11:26. The image of God looking down from heaven appears also in Psalm 33:13-14 and Genesis 11:5 (the Tower of Babel).*

¹For the choirmaster. Of David.

The fool says in his heart, 'There is no God.'

They are corrupt; their deeds are vile.

There is no one who does good.

²The LORD looks down from heaven

on the children of humanity

to see if there is anyone who acts wisely,

anyone who seeks God.

³All have turned aside; together they have become corrupt.

There is no one who does good —

not even one.

⁴Do they not know, all these workers of evil —

those who devour my people as they eat bread,

who do not call on the LORD?

⁵There they are — utterly terrified!

For God is with the generation of the righteous.

⁶You would shame the plans of the poor,

but the LORD is their refuge.

⁷Oh, that salvation for Israel would come from Zion!

When the LORD restores the fortunes of his people,

Jacob will rejoice; Israel will be glad.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. naval does not mean 'fool' in the sense of intellectual deficiency. It describes a person who is morally senseless — who refuses to reckon with reality as it actually is. Nabal in 1 Samuel 25 is the narrative embodiment of this concept: a wealthy man who acts as though generosity and justice do not apply to him.
1. The plural 'they are corrupt' follows the singular 'the fool says' — the psalm moves from one fool's inner conviction to its social consequences. One person's functional atheism becomes a civilization's moral collapse.

2. The verb *darash* ('to seek, inquire, investigate') implies effort and intentionality. Seeking God is not passive — it requires turning one's attention, inquiry, and desire toward God. The absence of seekers is as damning as the absence of doers.
3. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 3:12, using it to establish universal human sinfulness before introducing justification by faith. In its original context, the psalm's universal indictment exists in tension with the 'generation of the righteous' mentioned in verse 5 — the psalm seems to both deny and assume the existence of a faithful remnant.
4. The transition from 'all have turned aside' (universal) to 'those who devour my people' (specific) implies a distinction within the universal corruption. The 'my people' language suggests a prophetic voice — God speaking through the psalmist about those who prey on the poor and faithful.
5. The phrase *dor tsaddiq* ('generation of the righteous') introduces a category that seems to contradict the universal corruption of verse 3. This tension is not resolved within the psalm — it reflects the biblical pattern of universal judgment coexisting with a faithful remnant.
6. The shift to second person ('you would shame') makes the accusation direct and personal. The 'counsel' or 'plan' (*etsah*) of the poor likely refers to their trust in God — the wicked mock the poor for relying on a God who seems absent. The psalm's reply: the LORD is *machsheh* ('his refuge') — the same shelter-language used in Psalm 11:1.
7. The phrase *shuv shevut* (or *shivat*) is debated: does it mean 'restore fortunes' (from *shuv*, 'to return') or 'return captivity' (from *shavah*, 'to take captive')? Both meanings work theologically — God either restores what was lost or brings back those who were taken away. The broader sense of total restoration is likely intended.

15

Summary: *An entrance liturgy that asks and answers the question: Who may dwell in God's presence? The psalm opens with a question addressed to the LORD — who may sojourn in your tent, who may dwell on your holy mountain? — and then provides a ten-part ethical profile of the person qualified for divine access. The answer is entirely moral, not ritual: the one who walks with integrity, speaks truth, refuses slander, keeps oaths even at personal cost, and does not exploit the vulnerable through usury or bribery.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's answer to 'Who may approach God?' contains no mention of sacrifice, no ritual requirement, no priestly qualification. The entrance requirements are entirely ethical. This is striking in a temple context, where one might expect purity laws or sacrificial prerequisites. Instead, the psalm describes a person characterized by integrity of conduct, truthful speech, loyal relationships, and economic justice. The structure — question (v. 1), ethical catalog (vv. 2-5b), promise (v. 5c) — mirrors the entrance liturgy format found also in Psalm 24:3-6 and Isaiah 33:14-16. The ten ethical qualities may intentionally echo the Ten Commandments, creating an 'entrance decalogue' for the sanctuary.*

Translation Friction: *The prohibition against lending at interest (*neshekh*, v. 5) reflects the Torah's economic legislation in Exodus 22:25 and Leviticus 25:36-37, which forbade interest on loans to fellow Israelites (especially the poor). This was not a prohibition on all commerce but a protection against the exploitation of the vulnerable. In an agrarian economy, interest-bearing loans to the poor were a mechanism of dispossession — they transferred land and labor from the desperate to the wealthy. The psalm treats this economic practice as a disqualification from God's presence, placing it alongside bribery and slander as barriers to worship.*

Connections: *Psalm 24:3-6 asks the same entrance question and provides a parallel answer focused on clean hands and pure heart. Isaiah 33:14-16 adapts the form for a prophetic context. Ezekiel 18:5-9 expands the ethical catalog into a legal case study. The 'tent' (*ohel*) and 'holy mountain' (*har qodesh*) of verse 1 link to the wilderness tabernacle and to Mount Zion — God's portable and permanent dwellings respectively. The promise of the final line — 'the one who does these things will never be shaken' — uses the same verb (*mot*) that appears in Psalm 16:8, connecting the two psalms thematically.*

¹A psalm of David.

LORD, who may sojourn in your tent?

Who may dwell on your holy mountain?

²The one who walks with integrity,
who practices righteousness,
and speaks truth in their heart.

³They do not slander with their tongue,
do no evil to their neighbor,
and bring no reproach against their close companion.

⁴In their eyes the reprobate is despised,
but they honor those who fear the LORD.
They swear to their own harm and do not go back on their word.

⁵They do not lend their money at interest,
nor accept a bribe against the innocent.
Whoever does these things will never be shaken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'tent' (ohel) recalls the wilderness tabernacle — God's portable dwelling among his people during the exodus. The 'holy mountain' (har qodesh) is Zion, where the temple stands. Together they span Israel's entire history of divine presence: the wandering tent and the settled mountain.
2. tamim ('integrity, wholeness') is the same word used to describe Noah (Genesis 6:9) and the sacrificial animal without blemish (Leviticus 1:3). The word connects moral integrity to ritual completeness — a life without hidden defect, like an offering without flaw.
3. The verb ragal ('to go about, to spy, to slander') literally means 'to foot it' — to go around peddling harmful speech about others. The three negatives in this verse define the ethical person by what they refuse to do: no malicious speech, no harmful action, no shaming of those close to them. The word qarov ('near one, close companion') intensifies the requirement — it is especially those nearest to us whom we must protect from reproach.
4. The phrase nishba le-hara ve-lo yamir ('swears to his own harm and does not change') is one of the most ethically demanding statements in the Psalter. It describes a person for whom their word is more valuable than their comfort, wealth, or advantage. The verb yamir (from mur, 'to change, exchange') means they will not swap out their commitment for a more convenient one.
5. neshekh ('interest, usury') literally means 'a bite' — the image is of money that bites back, consuming the borrower. In the ancient world, interest-bearing loans to the poor were instruments of dispossession. The prohibition protects community solidarity against the centrifugal force of economic exploitation.
5. The final promise — 'will never be shaken' (lo yimmot le-olam) — does not promise prosperity or ease. It promises stability, rootedness, an unshakeable foundation. This is the same verb used in Psalm 16:8 ('I will not be shaken') and Psalm 46:5 ('it will not be shaken').

16

Summary: A miktam of David expressing radical satisfaction in God as the psalmist's sole inheritance and portion. The psalm moves from a plea for protection through a confession of exclusive devotion to the LORD, past a rejection of other gods, into the language of deep contentment — the boundary lines have fallen in pleasant places. It culminates in one of the most extraordinary statements in the Hebrew Bible: 'You will not abandon my soul to Sheol, nor let your faithful one see the pit.' The psalm ends with the vision of fullness of joy in God's presence and pleasures at his right hand forever.

What Makes This Remarkable: Psalm 16 is unique in the Psalter for its sustained tone of quiet, untroubled confidence. There is no lament, no enemy, no crisis to resolve. The psalm is pure satisfaction — the contentment of a person who has found that God is enough. The language of inheritance runs through the entire poem: the LORD is 'my portion' (chelqi) and 'my cup' (kosi), and the 'boundary lines' (chavalim) have fallen in pleasant places. This is land-allotment language: when Israel divided Canaan, each tribe received its nachalah ('inheritance, allotted portion'). The Levites received no land — their inheritance was the LORD himself (Numbers 18:20, Deuteronomy 10:9). The psalmist adopts Levitical theology and makes it personal: my allotted portion is not a field or a vineyard but God

himself. Verse 10 — 'you will not abandon my soul to Sheol' — becomes one of the most theologically generative verses in the Hebrew Bible. Peter quotes it in Acts 2:25-28 as a prophecy of Christ's resurrection, arguing that David spoke of someone whose body would not see corruption.

Translation Friction: Verses 3-4 are among the most textually difficult in the Psalter. The Hebrew is compressed and possibly corrupt. The general sense — that the psalmist delights in the 'holy ones' (qedoshim) who are in the land while rejecting those who chase after other gods — is clear, but the grammar resists smooth translation. The word *atstabotam* (v. 4) may mean 'their sorrows' or 'their idols' (from *etsev*, 'pain/idol'). The phrase 'I will not pour out their drink offerings of blood' suggests rejection of pagan rituals involving blood libations. Verse 10's claim about not being abandoned to Sheol pushes against the dominant Old Testament understanding that all the dead go to Sheol regardless of righteousness. The psalm seems to reach toward something beyond the standard view — a hope that the relationship with God is strong enough to survive death itself.

Connections: The inheritance language connects to Numbers 18:20 (the Levites' portion) and Psalm 73:26 ('God is the portion of my heart forever'). Peter's quotation of vv. 8-11 in Acts 2:25-31 makes this psalm central to early Christian resurrection theology. Paul cites verse 10 in Acts 13:35 with the same interpretive move. The 'path of life' (*orach chayyim*, v. 11) reappears in Proverbs 5:6 and 15:24. The 'pleasures at your right hand forever' (v. 11) echoes Psalm 110:1, where the king sits at God's right hand.

¹A miktam of David.

Protect me, God, for I have taken refuge in you.

²I said to the LORD, 'You are my Lord;
I have no good apart from you.'

³As for the holy ones in the land,
they are the noble ones in whom is all my delight.

⁴The sorrows of those who chase after another god will multiply.
I will not pour out their drink offerings of blood,
nor will I take their names on my lips.

⁵The LORD is my allotted portion and my cup;
you hold my lot secure.

⁶The boundary lines have fallen for me in pleasant places;
yes, my inheritance is beautiful to me.

⁷I bless the LORD who counsels me;
even in the night my inner being instructs me.

⁸I have set the LORD before me always;
because he is at my right hand, I will not be shaken.

⁹Therefore my heart is glad and my glory rejoices;
even my body rests secure.

¹⁰For you will not abandon my soul to Sheol,
nor will you let your faithful one see the pit.

¹¹You make known to me the path of life;
in your presence is fullness of joy,

at your right hand are pleasures forevermore.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. *miktam* appears six times in the Psalter (Psalms 16, 56-60) and nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible. The Septuagint translates it as *stelographia* ('inscription on a pillar'). The meaning remains uncertain, but the word may relate to *ketem* ('gold') or to *katam* ('to cover, conceal').
2. The Hebrew of this verse is among the most debated in the Psalter. The second-person feminine form *amarte* is unusual (either an archaic form or addressed to the psalmist's own soul). The phrase *tovati bal alekha* has generated at least four major interpretive traditions. Our rendering follows the dominant reading: 'I have no good apart from you.'
3. The identity of the *qedoshim* ('holy ones') is debated. They may be human saints (faithful Israelites), heavenly beings (as in some readings of Deuteronomy 33:2-3), or both. The context — 'in the land' (*ba-arets*) — favors human referents: the faithful community in Israel.
4. The phrase *niskeihem mi-dam* ('their drink offerings of blood') likely refers to pagan rituals involving blood libations, which were forbidden in Israelite worship. Some scholars see this as a reference to human sacrifice or to rituals involving the mingling of blood with wine in the drink offering.
4. The ambiguity of *atsvotam* ('their sorrows' or 'their idols') is productive: pursuing false gods generates both — the idols themselves and the misery they bring.
5. The four inheritance terms (*menat*, *cheleq*, *kos*, *goral*) are drawn from the concrete world of land allotment and applied to the relationship with God. This is not abstract theology but economic metaphor: the psalmist's wealth, security, and future are invested entirely in God.
6. *chavalim* ('lines, ropes, measuring cords') comes from the practice of dividing land with ropes. The idiom 'the lines have fallen' means 'my portion has been assigned.' The image is of a person standing on their newly measured property, looking around, and finding it genuinely delightful.
7. *kilyot* ('kidneys') as the seat of deep thought and emotion appears in Jeremiah 17:10 ('I the LORD search the heart and examine the kidneys') and Psalm 139:13 ('you formed my kidneys'). Translating as 'inner being' preserves the function while avoiding the anatomical literalism.
8. The phrase *shivviti YHVH le-negdi tamid* became so central to Jewish spirituality that it was inscribed on plaques (called *shivviti* plaques) hung in synagogues and homes as a visual reminder to keep God constantly in view.
9. *kevod* ('glory') as a term for the human soul or essential self appears also in Psalm 7:5 and 57:8. The Septuagint translates it as 'my tongue' (*glossa*), perhaps reading *kavod* as *kaved* ('liver'). Peter's quotation in Acts 2:26 follows the Septuagint: 'my tongue rejoiced.'
10. *She'ol* in the Hebrew Bible is not hell in the later Christian sense. It is the shadowy underworld where all the dead go — not a place of punishment for the wicked but the default destination of all who die. The psalm's remarkable claim is not that the psalmist avoids punishment but that the psalmist avoids the normal fate of all humanity: descent into *She'ol*.
10. *shachat* can mean 'pit' (a place) or 'corruption, decay' (a process). The Septuagint translates it as *diaphthora* ('corruption, decay'), which becomes theologically significant in Peter's argument in Acts 2:31 — David's body did see decay, but the one David prophesied about did not.
11. The progression from 'path of life' to 'fullness of joy' to 'pleasures forever' creates an escalating trajectory that carries the reader beyond the boundaries of this life into something that sounds like eternal communion with God. Whether the original psalmist understood this as life after death in the later theological sense is debated, but the language strains toward a reality that death cannot contain.
11. This verse has been called the high-water mark of Old Testament hope. It does not describe survival after death in explicit terms, but it describes a relationship with God so full, so joyful, and so permanent that death seems unable to interrupt it.

17

Summary: A prayer of David that functions as a legal appeal to God as judge. The psalmist opens by asserting his innocence — his lips, his steps, his heart have been tested and found without deceit — and then petitions God for protection from deadly enemies who are closing in. The imagery builds from legal defense to military siege to predatory lions. The psalm reaches its climax in the final verse with one of the most intimate statements of hope in the Psalter: 'As for me, I will behold your face in righteousness; when I awake, I will be satisfied with your likeness.'

*What Makes This Remarkable: The psalm's final verse (v. 15) stands in deliberate contrast to verse 14, which describes the wicked satisfied with earthly abundance — their bellies filled, their children inheriting their surplus. Against this picture of material satiety, the psalmist offers a radically different definition of satisfaction: 'I will be satisfied with your likeness' (*esbe'ah be-haqits temunatekha*). The word *temunah* ('form, likeness, appearance') is the same word used in Numbers 12:8, where God says Moses beholds 'the form of the LORD.' The psalmist's ultimate satisfaction is not in possessions, descendants, or long life but in seeing God. This verse, together with Psalm 16:11, represents the*

highest reach of the Psalter's theology of divine presence.

Translation Friction: The psalmist's claims of innocence in verses 3-5 are remarkably strong: 'You have tested my heart... you find nothing... my mouth does not transgress... I have kept from the paths of the violent.' This language troubles readers who expect all biblical figures to acknowledge sinfulness. The innocence claimed here is not absolute moral perfection but covenantal integrity — the psalmist has not committed the specific crimes of which enemies accuse him. This is legal language: I am not guilty of what they charge. The claims should be read as courtroom defense, not as theological assertion of sinlessness.

Connections: The final verse ('I will behold your face in righteousness') directly echoes Psalm 11:7 ('the upright will behold his face') and anticipates the 'beatific vision' theology that develops through the biblical tradition. The phrase be-haqits ('when I awake') connects to Daniel 12:2, where the dead 'awake' to everlasting life. The lion imagery (vv. 11-12) appears also in Psalm 10:9 and 22:13, linking these psalms in their portrait of predatory enemies. The 'apple of the eye' (ishon bat ayin, v. 8) reappears in Deuteronomy 32:10 and Proverbs 7:2.

¹A prayer of David.

Hear a just cause, LORD; attend to my cry.

Give ear to my prayer —

it comes from lips without deceit.

²Let my vindication come from your presence;

let your eyes see what is right.

³You have tested my heart, visited me in the night;

you have refined me — you will find nothing.

I have resolved that my mouth will not transgress.

⁴As for human deeds — by the word of your lips

I have avoided the paths of the violent.

⁵My steps have held firm to your paths;

my feet have not slipped.

⁶I call on you, for you will answer me, God.

Incline your ear to me; hear my words.

⁷Show the wonder of your faithful love,

O savior of those who take refuge

at your right hand from their adversaries.

⁸Guard me like the pupil of the eye;

hide me in the shadow of your wings.

⁹from the wicked who assail me,

from my deadly enemies who surround me.

¹⁰They close up their callous hearts;

their mouths speak with arrogance.

¹¹They track our every step; they surround us.

They fix their eyes to cast us to the ground.

¹²He is like a lion eager to tear its prey,
like a young lion crouching in ambush.

¹³Rise up, LORD! Confront him; bring him down!
Rescue my soul from the wicked — your sword!

¹⁴From mortals — by your hand, LORD! —
from mortals whose portion is in this life alone.
You fill their bellies with your hidden treasure;
they are satisfied with children
and leave their surplus to their little ones.

¹⁵As for me — in righteousness I will behold your face;
when I awake, I will be satisfied with your likeness.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The three verbs for hearing (shama, qashav, azan) create a rhetorical escalation: hear, attend, give ear. Each adds urgency. The legal overtone of tsedeq ('a just cause') sets the psalm in the framework of a court appeal — the psalmist is bringing a case before the divine judge.
2. mishpati ('my judgment, my sentence, my vindication') is legal terminology — the verdict the psalmist seeks from God's court. The psalmist is confident: he wants God to judge because he believes God's eyes will see mesharim ('uprightness, equity, what is straight'). He invites divine scrutiny rather than fearing it.
3. The nighttime visitation (paqadta lailah) suggests God's examination during the vulnerable hours when conscious defenses are down — in dreams, in the anxious hours of sleeplessness. Even there, God finds nothing. The three-fold testing echoes Psalm 12:6's image of silver refined in a furnace.
4. The psalmist credits God's word (davar sefatekha, 'the word of your lips') as the guide that kept him from the paths of the parits ('violent one, robber, breaker-through'). The contrast is between two kinds of speech: God's word that directs toward righteousness, and the smooth words of the wicked that lead to violence.
5. The verb tamakh ('to hold, support, grasp') can be read as either a past declaration ('my steps have held firm') or a petition ('hold up my steps'). The ambiguity allows both: the psalmist affirms past faithfulness and implicitly asks for continued support. The 'paths' (ma'gelot) are God's established tracks — the grooves worn by walking in God's way.
6. The ki ('for, because') expresses confidence: I call because I know you will answer. The verb anah ('to answer, respond') implies not just hearing but active response. The psalmist's prayer is not cast into a void but directed toward a God with a proven record of answering.
7. The verb hafleh ('make wonderful, distinguish') asks for chesed that is not ordinary but spectacular — an act of faithful love so striking it cannot be attributed to coincidence or human effort.
8. ishon bat ayin ('the little man of the daughter of the eye') is the Hebrew idiom for the pupil. The layered metaphor — a little person reflected inside the eye — suggests that God keeps the psalmist so close that the psalmist is reflected in God's own gaze.
9. The phrase oyevai be-nefesh ('my enemies in/against the soul') can mean 'my mortal enemies' (enemies who seek my life) or 'my enemies in soul' (enemies at the deepest level). The verb yaqifu ('they surround, encircle') creates the image of a military siege — the psalmist is hemmed in on all sides.
10. chelbamo sagru ('their fat they close') — chelev ('fat') metaphorically represents a heart grown insensitive through prosperity and self-indulgence. A fat-enclosed heart cannot feel compassion. The image is of people whose comfort has made them cruel — well-fed, self-satisfied, and indifferent to the suffering they inflict.
11. The shift to first person plural ('our steps,' 'surround us') may indicate that the psalmist speaks for a group, or it may be a stylistic variation. The enemies' eyes are set (yashitu) with fixed intent — like a predator locking onto prey before striking. The phrase lintot ba-arets ('to cast down to the earth') describes throwing the victim to the ground.
12. The lion is the standard metaphor for a powerful, predatory enemy in the Psalms (7:2, 10:9, 22:13, 22:21). The doubling — mature lion and young lion — emphasizes that the threat combines experience and vigor.
13. The imperative qumah ('rise up!') echoes Numbers 10:35 and Psalm 12:5 — the war cry for God to take action. The phrase me-rasha charbbekha ('from the wicked — your sword') is ambiguous: is the wicked one God's sword (an instrument of divine testing) or does the psalmist ask to be rescued from the wicked by God's sword? Both readings have support.

14. The interpretation of this verse is heavily debated. Some read it as describing God's judgment on the wicked (from the dead, by your hand, LORD!). Others read it as describing the wicked's earthly prosperity, which is real but ultimately limited to 'this life.' We follow the second reading, which creates the contrast with verse 15's eternal satisfaction.
15. *temunah* ('form, likeness') is the word used in Numbers 12:8 for what Moses sees when God speaks to him face to face — 'the form of the LORD.' It is also the word used in Deuteronomy 4:12, 15-16 to describe what Israel did not see at Sinai (and must not make into an image). The psalm promises the psalmist will see what Israel was denied and warned against replicating.
15. The tension between *be-haqits* ('when I awake') and the rest of the psalm's legal framework has generated enormous theological reflection. Does it refer to waking from literal sleep (the psalmist prays at night and expects to see God in the morning)? From the sleep of death (resurrection hope)? From the night of suffering (eschatological awakening)? The ambiguity may be the point — the psalm's language is capacious enough for all three readings.

18

Summary: *A royal thanksgiving psalm of David celebrating deliverance from all enemies and from Saul. At 51 verses (WLC versification), it is one of the longest psalms in the Psalter and also appears with minor variations as 2 Samuel 22. The psalm moves through four major sections: a cascade of divine titles (vv. 2-4), a cosmic theophany in which God rends heaven to rescue the psalmist (vv. 5-20), a declaration of the psalmist's righteousness and God's corresponding faithfulness (vv. 21-31), and a celebration of military victory that leads to dominion over nations (vv. 32-51). The language is extravagant, mythic, and deeply personal — the God who splits the heavens is the same God who trains the psalmist's hands for war.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theophany section (vv. 8-16) is among the most powerful descriptions of divine intervention in all of Scripture. The earth shakes, the mountains tremble, smoke rises from God's nostrils, fire devours from his mouth, he bows the heavens and descends, riding on a cherub, flying on the wings of the wind. This is not metaphor in the decorative sense — it is the language of Sinai (Exodus 19:16-18) transferred from national revelation to personal rescue. The same God who appeared in fire and earthquake to give the Torah appears now to save one man from his enemies. The psalm collapses the distance between cosmic event and individual experience, insisting that the God of Sinai is the God of David's bedroom and battlefield.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's claims of righteousness (vv. 21-25) are even more extensive than Psalm 17's — 'The LORD rewarded me according to my righteousness... I was blameless before him and kept myself from guilt.' Given what the Books of Samuel report about David's life (Bathsheba, Uriah, the census), these claims require contextual reading. The superscription dates the psalm to deliverance from 'all his enemies and from Saul' — likely the early years of David's reign before the events of 2 Samuel 11. The righteousness claimed is relative to the specific conflict with Saul: David did not kill the LORD's anointed when he had the chance. The claims are covenantal and situational, not autobiographical in the absolute sense.*

Connections: *The near-duplicate in 2 Samuel 22 places this psalm within the historical narrative, making it one of the few psalms with a secure narrative context. The theophany echoes Exodus 19, Judges 5:4-5 (the Song of Deborah), and Habakkuk 3:3-15. The divine warrior imagery connects to the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15). The concluding messianic note — 'He shows faithful love to his anointed, to David and his offspring forever' (v. 51) — links this psalm to the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7 and to the messianic hope that runs through the Psalter.*

¹For the choirmaster. Of David, the servant of the LORD, who spoke to the LORD the words of this song on the day the LORD delivered him from the hand of all his enemies and from the hand of Saul. He said: ²I love you, LORD, my strength.

³The LORD is my rock, my fortress, my deliverer,
my God, my cliff in whom I take refuge,
my shield, the horn of my salvation, my stronghold.

⁴I call on the LORD, who is worthy of praise,
and I am saved from my enemies.

⁵The cords of death encompassed me;
the torrents of destruction terrified me.

⁶The cords of Sheol surrounded me;
the snares of death confronted me.

⁷In my distress I called on the LORD;
to my God I cried for help.
From his temple he heard my voice;
my cry reached his ears.

⁸Then the earth reeled and shook;
the foundations of the mountains trembled
and quaked because he was angry.

⁹Smoke rose from his nostrils;
consuming fire came from his mouth;
burning coals blazed from him.

¹⁰He bent the heavens and came down,
thick darkness beneath his feet.

¹¹He rode on a cherub and flew;
he soared on the wings of the wind.

¹²He made darkness his hiding place,
his canopy around him —
dark waters, thick clouds of the sky.

¹³From the brightness before him
his clouds broke through —
hail and coals of fire.

¹⁴The LORD thundered from heaven;
the Most High gave forth his voice —
hail and coals of fire.

¹⁵He sent out his arrows and scattered them;
he flashed lightning and threw them into confusion.

¹⁶Then the channels of the sea were exposed,
the foundations of the world laid bare
at your rebuke, LORD,
at the blast of the breath of your nostrils.

¹⁷He reached down from on high and took hold of me;
he drew me out of many waters.

¹⁸He delivered me from my powerful enemy,
from those who hated me,
for they were too strong for me.

¹⁹They confronted me on the day of my disaster,
but the LORD became my support.

²⁰He brought me out into a wide-open space;
he rescued me because he delighted in me.

²¹The LORD has dealt with me according to my righteousness;
according to the cleanness of my hands he has repaid me.

²²For I have kept the ways of the LORD
and have not acted wickedly against my God.

²³For all his judgments are before me;
his statutes I have not turned away from me.

²⁴I was blameless before him
and kept myself from my guilt.

²⁵The LORD has repaid me according to my righteousness,
according to the cleanness of my hands in his sight.

²⁶With the faithful you show yourself faithful;
with the blameless you show yourself blameless.

²⁷With the pure you show yourself pure;
with the crooked you show yourself shrewd.

²⁸For you save a humble people,
but haughty eyes you bring low.

²⁹For you light my lamp, LORD;
my God illuminates my darkness.

³⁰For by you I can charge a battle line;
by my God I can leap over a wall.

³¹As for God — his way is complete.
The word of the LORD is refined;
he is a shield to all who take refuge in him.

³²For who is God besides the LORD?
And who is a rock except our God?

³³God — the one who arms me with strength
and makes my way blameless.

³⁴He makes my feet like the feet of a deer
and sets me on the heights.

³⁵He trains my hands for war
so that my arms can bend a bow of bronze.

³⁶You have given me the shield of your salvation;
your right hand upholds me,
and your humility has made me great.

³⁷You broaden the path beneath me,
and my ankles do not give way.

³⁸I pursued my enemies and overtook them;
I did not turn back until they were destroyed.

³⁹I struck them so they could not rise;
they fell beneath my feet.

⁴⁰You armed me with strength for battle;
you brought my assailants to their knees beneath me.

⁴¹You made my enemies turn their backs to me,
and those who hated me — I silenced them.

⁴²They cried for help, but there was no one to save;
even to the LORD, but he did not answer them.

⁴³I ground them fine as dust before the wind;
I poured them out like mud in the streets.

⁴⁴You delivered me from the strife of peoples;
you set me as head of nations.
A people I had not known now serve me.

⁴⁵At the mere hearing of me they obey;
foreigners come cringing before me.

⁴⁶Foreigners lose heart
and come trembling from their strongholds.

⁴⁷The LORD lives! Blessed be my rock!
Exalted be the God of my salvation!

⁴⁸The God who gives me vindication
and subdues peoples under me.

⁴⁹He rescues me from my enemies.
You lift me above my adversaries;
from the violent man you deliver me.

⁵⁰Therefore I will praise you among the nations, LORD,
and sing to your name.

⁵¹He gives great victories to his king
and shows faithful love to his anointed —
to David and his offspring forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the longest superscription in the Psalter. The title 'servant of the LORD' (eved YHVH) is a title of highest honor — applied to Moses (Deuteronomy 34:5), Joshua (Joshua 24:29), and the messianic figure of Isaiah's Servant Songs. David receives this designation only here and in the parallel 2 Samuel 22:1.
2. The verb *racham* used by a human toward God is unique here. Normally it describes God's compassion toward humans or a parent's love for a child. David reverses the direction: he loves God with the same visceral, gut-level affection that God shows to Israel. This opening word sets the emotional register for the entire psalm.
3. The seven titles form one of the densest concentrations of divine metaphor in the Hebrew Bible. Each draws from a different aspect of protection: geological (rock, cliff), military (fortress, shield, stronghold), personal (deliverer, God), and animal (horn). Together they compose a complete portrait of divine sufficiency.
4. *mehullal* ('the praised one, the one worthy of praise') is a Pual participle — God is inherently, passively worthy of praise; praise is his due nature. The verse establishes the psalm's fundamental logic: calling on the LORD results in salvation. The two clauses are cause and effect.
5. *chevlei mavet* ('cords/pangs of death') — *chevel* can mean both 'rope/cord' (binding, trapping) and 'birth pang' (pain, writhing). Death either binds or tortures. *nachalei veliyya'al* ('torrents of Belial/destruction') — the word *beliyya'al* means 'worthlessness, destruction, the abyss.' The torrents are not ordinary floods but surges from the underworld itself.
6. The parallelism between *mavet* ('death') in verse 5 and *She'ol* in verse 6 identifies them as overlapping realities. The psalmist is trapped in a zone where death and Sheol converge — caught in cords and snares, hemmed in on every side. The imagery establishes the extremity from which God will rescue.
7. The verse traces the trajectory of prayer: from the psalmist's mouth to God's temple to God's ears. The cry travels upward through space and arrives. The verb *shava* ('to cry for help') is an urgent, anguished call — not polite petition but desperate screaming. God hears from his *heikhal* — both earthly temple and heavenly palace.
8. The theophany that begins here and runs through verse 16 is the most elaborate divine-warrior intervention scene in the Psalter. Every element — earthquake, fire, darkness, wind, water — echoes the exodus traditions and transfers them to David's personal experience.
9. The anthropomorphism is deliberate and extreme: smoke from God's nose (the Hebrew *af* means both 'nose' and 'anger'), fire from God's mouth, burning coals igniting. This is dragon-language applied to the Creator — God as a figure of terrifying, volcanic fury. The image draws from volcanic phenomena (smoke, fire, glowing stones) and applies them to divine wrath.
10. The verb *natah* applied to the heavens appears also in Isaiah 40:22 ('he stretches out the heavens like a curtain'). Here the stretching is downward — God pushes through the sky to reach the one who called.
11. The *keruv* (cherub) is not the chubby infant of later art but a powerful composite creature — part human, part animal, part bird — that serves as God's throne-bearer (Ezekiel 1, 10) and mount. God rides the cherub as a warrior rides a chariot. The 'wings of the wind' (*kanfei ruach*) make the storm itself God's vehicle.
12. God's concealment in darkness is both terrifying and protective. The *sukkah* ('canopy, booth, shelter') of verse 12 is made of *choshekh* ('darkness') and *cheshkat mayim* ('dark waters'). God is hidden — his arrival is known by its effects (earthquake, fire, wind) but his person remains veiled. The psalmist is saved by a God he cannot see.
13. The *nogah* ('brightness, radiance') is God's own luminosity breaking through the surrounding darkness. The storm clouds are not merely weather but the garments of God's approach, and they break apart to release hail (*barad*) and fire — the weapons of divine intervention, echoing the seventh plague in Exodus 9:23-24.
14. Thunder is God's voice (*qol*) — the same identification made in Psalm 29. The title *Elyon* ('Most High') emphasizes God's supremacy over all other powers. The thunder is not mere meteorology but divine speech — God's answer to the psalmist's cry in verse 7.
15. God's arrows (*chitsim*) are the lightning bolts — the divine warrior's ranged weapons. The verb *puts* ('to scatter') describes the dispersal of the enemy army. The verb *hamam* ('to confuse, throw into panic') is the same word used for God's action against the Egyptians at the Red Sea (Exodus 14:24) and against the Canaanites in Joshua 10:10.
16. This verse marks the climax of the theophany. The entire created order — from sky to sea bed to the foundations beneath the earth — has been affected by God's intervention. The scale is deliberately disproportionate to one man's rescue: God deploys universe-altering power to save a single servant.
17. The verb *mashah* ('to draw out') creating a verbal link to Moses is likely intentional. The psalmist is a new Moses — drawn from drowning waters by divine intervention. The 'many waters' function as a symbol of chaos throughout the Hebrew Bible (Psalm 29:3, 93:4, Isaiah 17:12-13).
18. The honest admission *ki ametsu mimmenni* ('for they were stronger than me') is significant. The psalmist does not pretend he could have saved himself. The enemy was genuinely overpowering. The rescue was necessary precisely because the psalmist was overmatched — divine intervention was not a supplement to human effort but a replacement for it.

19. be-yom eidi ('on the day of my calamity') — eid refers to a catastrophic event, a disaster, a time when everything collapses. The contrast is sharp: the enemy struck at the worst possible moment, and at that same moment the LORD became mish'an ('support, staff to lean on').
20. The phrase ki chafets bi ('because he delighted in me') is the emotional heart of the psalm. It grounds the entire cosmic rescue — earthquake, fire, cherub-riding, heaven-bending — in a single motive: delight. God did all this because he wanted to.
21. This verse begins the 'righteousness declaration' section (vv. 21-25) that mirrors 2 Samuel 22:21-25. The claims are situational — David acted with integrity toward Saul specifically, refusing to kill the LORD's anointed when given the opportunity (1 Samuel 24, 26). The language is covenantal: God rewards covenant faithfulness with covenant protection.
22. Verse 22 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
23. Verse 23 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
24. Verse 24 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
25. Verse 25 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
26. The fourfold pattern (faithful/faithful, blameless/blameless, pure/pure, twisted/twisted in vv. 26-27) is one of the most important theological statements in the Psalter about the nature of God's responsiveness. God meets people where they are — but this means the twisted encounter a God who appears twisted to them.
27. The word iqqesh ('crooked, twisted, perverse') describes someone whose path is deliberately convoluted — who practices deceit and manipulation. God's response to the crooked — titpatal ('you show yourself twisted/shrewd') — is startling. It means God outmaneuvers the manipulator at their own game. God does not become morally crooked, but he proves more cunning than the cunning.
28. Verse 28 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
29. The lamp (ner) is a symbol of life, prosperity, and dynastic continuity (1 Kings 11:36, 15:4 — 'a lamp in Jerusalem'). God lighting the psalmist's lamp means sustaining his life and his lineage. The darkness (choshki) is both literal (the darkness of danger) and metaphorical (the darkness of despair).
30. Verse 30 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
31. This verse appears verbatim in 2 Samuel 22:31 and echoes Deuteronomy 32:4 ('The Rock — his work is perfect'). It functions as the psalm's creedal statement, distilling the entire testimony into three affirmations.
32. Verse 32 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
33. Verse 33 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
34. Verse 34 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
35. Verse 35 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
36. anvah ('humility, gentleness') applied to God is remarkable. The 2 Samuel 22:36 parallel reads anothekha ('your answering, your response'). Both readings attribute the psalmist's greatness to God's gracious condescension — the willingness of the Most High to stoop.
37. Verse 37 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
38. Verse 38 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
39. Verse 39 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
40. Verse 40 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
41. Verse 41 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
42. The enemies' unanswered cry to the LORD is devastating. They called on the same God the psalmist called on — but received no answer. The principle of verse 26 applies: God responds differently to the faithful and the crooked. The same God who heard the psalmist's cry (v. 7) does not hear theirs.
43. Verse 43 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
44. Verse 44 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
45. Verse 45 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
46. Verse 46 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
47. chay YHVH ('the LORD lives!') is an oath formula and a doxological cry. After describing all that God has done, the psalmist returns to the foundational confession: the LORD is alive. This is not philosophical assertion but experiential testimony — the God who acted is the God who lives.
48. Verse 48 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
49. Verse 49 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.

50. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 15:9 as evidence that God's saving purpose always intended to reach beyond Israel to the nations. The psalmist's praise among the goyim ('nations') becomes, in Paul's reading, a prophecy of Gentile inclusion in worship.
51. The word *mashiach* ('anointed one') is the source of 'Messiah.' In its original context it refers to the reigning king of David's line. The phrase *ad olam* ('forever') connects this psalm to the eternal covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16 and to the messianic hope that animates the Psalter.

19

Summary: *A psalm of David in two movements that together form one of the most celebrated poems in the Hebrew Bible. The first movement (vv. 2-7) hymns the heavens as witnesses to God's glory — the sky speaks without words, the sun runs its course like a bridegroom and a champion. The second movement (vv. 8-11) turns from creation's testimony to the Torah's perfection, cataloging the law's qualities in six parallel lines: perfect, trustworthy, right, pure, clean, true. The psalm concludes with a personal prayer (vv. 12-15) asking for cleansing from hidden faults and protection from presumptuous sins, ending with the iconic petition: 'Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be acceptable in your sight, LORD, my rock and my redeemer.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The junction between the two halves — from creation to Torah — is one of the most studied transitions in biblical poetry. C.S. Lewis called Psalm 19 'the greatest poem in the Psalter and one of the greatest lyrics in the world.' The connection between the two halves is not arbitrary but theological: the same God who built order into the heavens built order into the Torah. The sun that illuminates the physical world (v. 7) corresponds to the commandment that enlightens the eyes (v. 9). Creation and Torah are two forms of the same divine revelation — one written in the sky, the other on scrolls. The six descriptions of Torah in verses 8-10 form one of the most concentrated celebrations of Scripture in all of Scripture. Each line names the law by a different term (torah, edut, piqqudim, mitzvah, yirat YHVH, mishpatim), assigns it a quality (perfect, trustworthy, right, pure, clean, true), and describes its effect on the human person (restoring the soul, making the simple wise, rejoicing the heart, enlightening the eyes, enduring forever, being altogether righteous).*

Translation Friction: *The apparent disjunction between the creation hymn (vv. 2-7) and the Torah hymn (vv. 8-11) has led some scholars to propose that Psalm 19 was originally two separate poems joined by an editor. The creation section uses the divine name El (v. 2), while the Torah section uses YHVH (vv. 8-15) — the shift in name may reflect different sources or may be theologically deliberate (El as Creator, YHVH as covenant lawgiver). The phrase 'the fear of the LORD' (yirat YHVH, v. 10) appears in the list of Torah synonyms, which is unusual — 'fear' is a human response, not a legal corpus. Its inclusion suggests that the psalmist understands Torah not merely as legislation but as the entire relational posture of reverence toward God.*

Connections: *Psalm 119 is the massive expansion of what Psalm 19:8-11 compresses into six lines — the same synonyms, the same qualities, the same effects, extended over 176 verses. The creation hymn connects to Genesis 1 (creation by speech), Psalm 8 (the heavens as God's handiwork), and Romans 1:19-20 (creation revealing God's nature). Paul quotes verse 5 in Romans 10:18 to argue that the gospel has reached all nations, reading the 'voice' of creation as a type of the apostolic proclamation. The concluding prayer (v. 15) has become one of the most frequently quoted verses in Jewish and Christian liturgy.*

¹For the choirmaster. A psalm of David.

²The heavens declare the glory of God,
and the expanse proclaims the work of his hands.

³Day after day pours out speech,
and night after night reveals knowledge.

⁴There is no speech and there are no words;
their voice is not heard.

⁵Yet their measuring line goes out through all the earth,
and their words to the end of the world.
In them he has set a tent for the sun,

⁶It comes out like a bridegroom from his chamber,
rejoicing like a champion to run its course.

⁷Its rising is from one end of the heavens,
and its circuit reaches to the other end;
nothing is hidden from its heat.

⁸The law of the LORD is perfect,
restoring the soul.
The testimony of the LORD is trustworthy,
making the simple wise.

⁹The precepts of the LORD are right,
rejoicing the heart.
The commandment of the LORD is pure,
enlightening the eyes.

¹⁰The fear of the LORD is clean,
standing forever.
The judgments of the LORD are true,
righteous altogether.

¹¹More desirable than gold — than much fine gold;
sweeter than honey — than honey dripping from the comb.

¹²Moreover, by them your servant is warned;
in keeping them there is great reward.

¹³Who can discern their errors?
Cleanse me from hidden faults.

¹⁴Also keep your servant from willful sins;
do not let them rule over me.
Then I will be blameless,
and innocent of great transgression.

¹⁵Let the words of my mouth
and the meditation of my heart
be acceptable before you,
LORD, my rock and my Redeemer.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Verse 1 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
2. kavod ('glory') when applied to God refers to the visible manifestation of his presence — weight, substance, radiance that can be perceived. The heavens do not merely suggest God's existence; they actively narrate his kavod, making the invisible God's attributes perceptible.

3. The personification of day and night as speakers who pass testimony to one another creates a remarkable image: time itself is a medium of revelation. Every 24-hour cycle is a fresh installment in creation's ongoing sermon about God.
4. This verse can be read two ways: 'There is no speech... [yet] their voice goes out' (the paradox of wordless communication) or 'There is no speech or language where their voice is not heard' (universal reach). The first reading is more consistent with the Hebrew syntax and creates the more powerful theological point.
5. qav ('line, measuring cord') is read by the Septuagint as qol ('voice'), producing 'their voice has gone out through all the earth.' Paul follows the Septuagint reading in Romans 10:18. The Hebrew qav ('measuring line') suggests that creation's witness has a precise, measured extent — it reaches everywhere by design, not by accident.
6. The dual imagery — bridegroom and warrior — resists any reduction of the sun to mere metaphor. The psalmist sees the sun as genuinely magnificent, a creation that reflects its Creator's glory through both beauty and power. Ancient Near Eastern cultures worshipped the sun as a deity; the psalmist demotes it to a tent-dweller (v. 5) who runs a course God assigned.
7. The phrase 'nothing is hidden from its heat' functions as a literary hinge. In the creation section, it refers to the sun's physical reach. Read in light of the Torah section that follows, it becomes a statement about the comprehensiveness of divine revelation: God's word, like God's sun, penetrates everywhere.
8. The six Torah lines (vv. 8-10) form a tightly structured catalog. Each line names the law (torah, edut, piqqudim, mitzvah, yirat YHVH, mishpatim), describes its character (perfect, trustworthy, right, pure, clean, true), and states its effect on the person who receives it (restoring, making wise, rejoicing, enlightening, enduring, being righteous).
9. The claim that Torah rejoices the heart is not peripheral but central to the psalm's theology. God's instruction is not a burden but a delight. This is the same conviction that drives Psalm 119's repeated expressions of love for the law.
10. The inclusion of yirat YHVH ('fear of the LORD') in a list of Torah synonyms is theologically significant. It identifies the reverential posture toward God as itself a form of Torah — perhaps the foundational form from which all specific commandments flow. Proverbs 1:7 calls this fear 'the beginning of knowledge.'
11. The comparison of Torah to gold addresses value; the comparison to honey addresses pleasure. Together they insist that God's instruction is both the most valuable possession and the most enjoyable experience available to a human being. This is not dutiful obedience but passionate desire.
12. The psalmist now identifies himself as avdekha ('your servant') — the same title given to David in the superscription of Psalm 18. The reward (eqev rav, 'great consequence/reward') is not specified — it may be the very qualities listed in verses 8-9 (restored soul, wise mind, glad heart, enlightened eyes) rather than external prosperity.
13. The movement from Torah's perfection (vv. 8-11) to human imperfection (vv. 13-14) is not a contradiction but a consequence. The more clearly one sees the law's perfection, the more clearly one sees one's own failure. Torah's light reveals what was hidden.
14. The progression from hidden faults (unconscious) to willful sins (conscious) to great transgression (definitive) maps an escalating hierarchy of sin. The psalmist asks for cleansing at every level — from the faults he cannot see to the rebellion he fears he might choose.
15. The go'el ('redeemer') is a legal term from Israelite family law. The go'el was the nearest kinsman responsible for buying back family land that had been sold, redeeming a relative from slavery, or avenging a murdered family member (Leviticus 25:25, Ruth 3:12-13). By calling God go'ali, the psalmist claims God as his closest family member — the one with both the obligation and the power to buy him back.

20

Summary: *A royal liturgy spoken by the congregation on behalf of the king as he prepares to go to war. The people pray for God to answer the king from his holy place, to send help from the sanctuary and support from Zion, to remember his offerings and accept his sacrifices. The psalm builds to a declaration of trust: 'Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we call on the name of the LORD our God.' It ends with a final petition for the king's victory and God's answer.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 20 is a rare window into the liturgical life of the pre-exilic temple. The congregation speaks to and about the king, praying for his success before battle. The structure suggests a ceremony: the people speak their blessings (vv. 2-6), a solo voice (perhaps a priest or prophet) declares confidence in divine anointing (v. 7), the people affirm their trust (vv. 8-9), and all join in the final petition (v. 10). The theological center is verse 8: the distinction between trusting in military technology (chariots and horses) and trusting in the name (shem) of the LORD. The 'name' in Israelite theology is not a label but the accessible presence of God — to invoke the name is to invoke the person. The psalm insists that Israel's military strategy is ultimately theological: they*

go to war in the name of the LORD, not in the strength of their arsenal.

Translation Friction: *The psalm assumes the legitimacy of the Davidic monarchy and the efficacy of temple sacrifice — the king's offerings and burnt sacrifices (vv. 4) are presented as genuine means of securing divine favor. For post-exilic readers (and for all later readers without king or temple), the psalm requires transposition: from literal king to awaited messiah, from physical temple to spiritual worship, from military battle to spiritual conflict. The psalm also raises the question of how divine favor relates to military outcome — Israel did not always win its wars, even when the king sacrificed and the people prayed.*

Connections: *Psalm 21 is the companion piece — where Psalm 20 prays for victory before battle, Psalm 21 gives thanks for victory after battle. The pair forms a liturgical unit. The chariots-and-horses statement (v. 8) echoes Deuteronomy 17:16, which prohibits the king from multiplying horses (military power), and Isaiah 31:1, which warns against relying on Egyptian cavalry. The phrase 'the name of the LORD our God' (shem YHVH Eloheinu) connects to the third commandment's prohibition against carrying God's name for emptiness (Exodus 20:7) — here the name is carried into battle as a banner of trust.*

¹For the choirmaster. A psalm of David.

²May the LORD answer you in the day of trouble;
may the name of the God of Jacob set you safely on high.

³May he send you help from the sanctuary
and support you from Zion.

⁴May he remember all your grain offerings
and accept your burnt offering. Selah.

⁵May he grant you your heart's desire
and fulfill all your plans.

⁶We will shout for joy over your victory
and in the name of our God raise our banners!
May the LORD fulfill all your requests.

⁷Now I know that the LORD saves his anointed;
he answers him from his holy heaven
with the mighty saving power of his right hand.

⁸Some trust in chariots and some in horses,
but we call on the name of the LORD our God.

⁹They collapse and fall,
but we rise and stand firm.

¹⁰LORD, save the king!
Answer us on the day we call.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Verse 1 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
2. The 'name' (shem) of God in Israelite theology functions as a near-synonym for God's presence. The temple was the place where God caused his name to dwell (Deuteronomy 12:5). To pray in God's name is to access God himself through the revealed identity he has shared.
3. The help (ezer) comes from qodesh ('the holy place, the sanctuary') and from Zion — the physical location where God's presence dwells. The theology is spatial: divine aid emanates from the temple and travels to the battlefield. The sanctuary is not merely a place of worship but a base of operations for divine intervention.

4. The minchah ('grain offering') and olah ('burnt offering') represent the king's pre-battle worship. The king does not march to war without first offering sacrifice — the military campaign is embedded in liturgical practice. The army's strength begins at the altar.
5. The congregation prays that God will align the outcome with the king's intention: kilvavekha ('according to your heart') and kol atsatekha ('all your counsel/strategy'). The assumption is that the king's plans are righteous — his heart's desire is for the good of the nation and the glory of God. The prayer asks God to give the king what he seeks.
6. The banner (degel) was a tribal and military standard in ancient Israel (Numbers 2:2). Here the congregation declares that their banner displays God's name rather than a tribal emblem or royal crest. The battle belongs to the LORD, and the banner makes that claim visible.
7. The shift to first-person singular ('now I know') may indicate a prophetic oracle within the liturgy — a moment when a single voice announces divine assurance to the congregation and the king. This voice transforms the congregation's prayer into confident knowledge.
8. The distinction between trusting in chariots/horses and trusting in God's name is foundational to Israelite theology. Deuteronomy 17:16 prohibits the king from multiplying horses. Isaiah 31:1 pronounces woe on those who go to Egypt for horses. The psalm institutionalizes this warning as congregational confession: our security is the name, not the arsenal.
9. The perfect tenses ('they have collapsed,' 'we have risen') may be prophetic perfects — describing the future outcome with such certainty that past tense is used. The congregation speaks of the battle's result as already accomplished, expressing faith that God's answer is certain.
10. The textual division of this verse is debated. The Masoretic accents suggest 'LORD, save! May the king answer us on the day we call.' But many translators read 'LORD, save the king! Answer us on the day we call.' The ambiguity may be deliberate, allowing the verse to function as both a prayer for the king and a prayer for the congregation.

21

Summary: *A royal psalm celebrating the king's victories and blessings, sung to the LORD who answers the king's requests with life, honor, and enduring joy. The first half (vv. 2-8) recounts what God has already given the king; the second half (vv. 9-13) anticipates the destruction of the king's enemies. The psalm forms a pair with Psalm 20 — Psalm 20 prays before battle, Psalm 21 celebrates after victory.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The superscription assigns the psalm to David, but the voice throughout is third-person — the congregation or a court singer addresses the king. The psalm's theology is straightforward and almost dangerously optimistic: the king asked for life and received it 'length of days forever and ever' (v. 5). In its original royal context, this would refer to dynastic permanence. The shift at verse 9 is abrupt — from blessing to burning, from coronation imagery to furnace imagery. The 'fire' of God's anger (esh, v. 10) will consume the king's enemies like kindling. The final verse returns to worship, as though the violence between was necessary to clear the way for praise.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification places the superscription as verse 1, so the psalm runs verses 1-14 in the WLC (versus 13 verses in English translations that treat the superscription as unnumbered). The phrase olam va-ed ('forever and ever,' v. 5) applied to the king's life creates tension — no Davidic king lived forever. This language pushes beyond historical kingship toward eschatological hope, which is why later tradition read this psalm messianically. The 'fiery oven' (tanur esh, v. 10) is an unusual image — elsewhere tanur refers to a baker's oven (Hosea 7:4-7), not a weapon of war. The metaphor may conflate the heat of God's anger with the domestic image of an oven consuming fuel.*

Connections: *Psalm 21 responds to the prayers of Psalm 20 — what was requested there is celebrated here. The phrase 'You have set a crown of pure gold on his head' (v. 4) echoes 2 Samuel 12:30, where David takes the crown of the Ammonite king. The blessing of 'length of days forever and ever' (v. 5) echoes the Davidic covenant promise in 2 Samuel 7:16. The fiery judgment imagery anticipates Malachi 4:1, where the coming day burns like an oven.*

¹For the musical director — a psalm of David.

²O LORD, the king rejoices in your strength;
in your salvation, how greatly he celebrates!

³You have given him his heart's desire,
and the request of his lips you have not withheld. Selah.

⁴For you meet him with blessings of good things;
you set a crown of pure gold on his head.

⁵He asked life from you — you gave it to him,
length of days forever and beyond.

⁶Great is his glory through your salvation;
splendor and majesty you lay upon him.

⁷For you make him a blessing forever;
you fill him with joy in your presence.

⁸For the king trusts in the LORD,
and through the faithful love of the Most High he will not be shaken.

⁹Your hand will find all your enemies;
your right hand will find those who hate you.

¹⁰You will make them like a fiery oven
at the time of your appearing.
The LORD in his anger will swallow them,
and fire will consume them.

¹¹You will destroy their offspring from the earth,
and their descendants from among humanity.

¹²For they stretched out evil against you;
they devised a scheme — but they will not succeed.

¹³For you will put them to flight;
you will aim your bowstrings at their faces.

¹⁴Rise up, O LORD, in your strength!
We will sing and make music to your power.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription *lamnatsseach* ('for the director/leader') appears in 55 psalms. The term *natsach* may mean 'to lead, direct, oversee' — the exact musical function is uncertain. In WLC versification, this superscription is verse 1.
2. The word order places YHWH first, then 'in your strength' — emphasizing that the strength belongs to God, not the king. The king is the beneficiary, not the source.
2. *Yeshuah* ('salvation') in military contexts means 'victory' or 'deliverance.' It is the same root as the name *Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus*, making this verse resonate far beyond its immediate royal context.
3. The parallelism pairs 'heart's desire' (*taavat libbo*) with 'request of his lips' (*areshet sefatav*) — what the king wanted inwardly, he also asked for audibly, and God granted both. The word *areshet* ('request, utterance') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, making its precise nuance uncertain.
3. *Selah* appears here as a musical or liturgical marker. Its meaning remains debated — possibly 'lift up' (voices or instruments) or a pause for reflection.
4. *Teqadmennu* ('you meet him, you come to meet him beforehand') is from *qadam*, meaning 'to come before, anticipate.' God's blessings arrive before the king even asks — they are preemptive grace. The crown of *paz* ('refined gold, pure gold') signals both the coronation ceremony and God's lavish provision.
5. *Olam va-ed* is an emphatic doubled expression: *olam* ('perpetuity, ages') plus *ed* ('perpetuity, everlasting duration'). Together they insist on permanence beyond what either word alone conveys. This is stronger than simply 'forever' — it is 'forever and then still more.'

6. Hod ve-hadar ('splendor and majesty') is a word pair that elsewhere describes God's own appearance (Psalm 104:1, 1 Chronicles 16:27). When applied to the king, it signals that the king bears the reflected radiance of God — he is God's visible representative on earth.
7. The phrase et-panekha ('with your face/presence') echoes the priestly blessing of Numbers 6:25-26. The king's deepest joy comes not from wealth or victory but from proximity to God's own face. The psalmist locates the ultimate royal blessing in divine presence, not political power.
8. This verse is the hinge of the psalm. Verses 2-7 described what God has done for the king; verse 8 gives the reason — the king trusts (boteach) in the LORD. Trust is the foundation, and chesed is the guarantee. From verse 9 onward, the psalm shifts to what will happen to the king's enemies.
9. The psalm shifts abruptly from third-person description of the king to second-person address. The 'you' could be directed to the king or to God — the ambiguity may be deliberate, as the king acts as God's agent in battle. 'Your hand will find' (timtsa yadkha) means 'your hand will reach, overtake, seize' — the enemies cannot hide.
10. Tanur esh ('oven of fire' or 'fiery oven') is a striking domestic image applied to divine judgment. A tanur is a clay baking oven, heated until its interior walls glow. The enemies become the oven itself — or are thrown into it. The image communicates total, consuming destruction.
10. The phrase le-et panekha ('at the time of your face/appearing') suggests a theophany — God's visible manifestation in judgment. When God's face appears, it brings not comfort but consuming fire for those who oppose him.
11. Piryamo ('their fruit') and zaram ('their seed') refer to children and descendants. The judgment extends beyond the enemies themselves to their entire line. This is total eradication language — the enemies' legacy will be erased from the earth. In its ancient context, the loss of descendants was the ultimate curse, as it meant the complete end of one's name and memory.
12. Natu ('they stretched out, extended, bent') paired with raah ('evil') conveys intentional aggression — the enemies reached toward the king with harmful intent. But their mezimmah ('scheme, plan, plot') will fail. The verse explains the justice of the judgment: destruction comes because the enemies actively plotted against God's anointed.
13. Teshitem shekhem ('you will make them a shoulder/back') means forcing the enemies to turn and flee, exposing their backs. The bowstrings (metarim) aimed at their faces complete the military image — whether they flee or face forward, they cannot escape. The verse portrays total military dominance.
14. The pairing of nashirah ('we will sing') and unezammerah ('we will make music') reflects the psalm's superscription — this is liturgical poetry designed for musical performance. Gevurah ('strength, power, might') is the attribute being celebrated, completing the frame with oz ('strength') from verse 2.

22

Summary: The most anguished lament in the Psalter, moving from absolute abandonment to universal praise. The sufferer opens with the shattering cry 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' and descends through mockery, physical torment, encirclement by enemies compared to bulls and lions and dogs, and the piercing of hands and feet. At verse 22 (Hebrew v. 23), the psalm pivots without explanation to triumphant praise — the sufferer vows to declare God's name in the assembly, and the vision expands until all nations, all the dead, and all future generations worship the LORD.

What Makes This Remarkable: This psalm contains more specific correspondences to the crucifixion of Jesus than any other Old Testament text. The opening cry is quoted in Aramaic by Jesus on the cross (Matthew 27:46). The mockery ('He trusted in the LORD; let him deliver him,' v. 9), the thirst ('my tongue clings to my jaws,' v. 16), the pierced hands and feet (v. 17), and the division of garments by casting lots (v. 19) are all cited or echoed in the Gospel passion narratives. Yet the psalm makes no claim to be predictive prophecy — it is the raw, present-tense suffering of a real person in genuine agony. The Christian reading sees in it a pattern of innocent suffering that reaches its ultimate fulfillment in Christ, while the Jewish reading sees a paradigm of Israel's suffering and vindication. Both readings honor the text; neither exhausts it. The unexplained pivot from despair to praise remains one of the great mysteries of the Psalter — what happened between verses 22 and 23 that turned agony into worship?

Translation Friction: The Hebrew of verse 17 (WLC v. 17) is one of the most disputed readings in the entire Hebrew Bible. The Masoretic text reads kaari ('like a lion') — 'like a lion, my hands and my feet.' This is grammatically incomplete and difficult. Many manuscripts and ancient versions (including the Septuagint, composed centuries before Christ) read kaaru ('they pierced') — 'they pierced my hands and my feet.' A Dead Sea Scrolls fragment (5/6HevPs) also supports the reading 'they pierced.' The difference is a single Hebrew letter: yod versus vav. We render the line to reflect the textual difficulty honestly. The superscription 'upon

Ayyelet ha-Shachar' ('the doe of the dawn') likely indicates a melody name, though some interpreters see symbolic significance — the hunted doe at dawn, vulnerable and exposed.

Connections: Jesus quotes the opening line from the cross in Aramaic: Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani (Matthew 27:46, Mark 15:34). The mockery of verse 9 is echoed in Matthew 27:43. The thirst of verse 16 connects to John 19:28. The pierced hands and feet of verse 17 are central to the crucifixion narratives. The divided garments and lots of verse 19 are fulfilled in John 19:23-24. The vow to praise in the assembly (v. 23) is quoted in Hebrews 2:12. The universal scope of the ending (vv. 28-32) anticipates the Great Commission and the ingathering of the nations. Within the Psalter, this psalm stands as the darkest point before the shepherd psalm that follows — Psalm 22 is the valley of the shadow, Psalm 23 is the green pasture on the other side.

¹For the musical director, on 'The Doe of the Dawn' — a psalm of David.

²My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?
Why are you so far from saving me,
from the words of my groaning?

³My God, I cry out by day, but you do not answer;
by night, but I find no rest.

⁴Yet you are holy,
enthroned on the praises of Israel.

⁵In you our ancestors trusted;
they trusted, and you rescued them.

⁶To you they cried out and were delivered;
in you they trusted and were not put to shame.

⁷But I am a worm, not a man —
scorned by humanity, despised by the people.

⁸All who see me mock me;
they curl their lips, they shake their heads:

⁹"He rolled himself onto the LORD — let the LORD rescue him!
Let him deliver him, since he delights in him!"

¹⁰Yet it was you who drew me from the womb,
who made me secure at my mother's breasts.

¹¹Upon you I was cast from birth;
from my mother's womb, you have been my God.

¹²Do not be far from me,
for trouble is near
and there is no one to help.

¹³Many bulls surround me;
strong bulls of Bashan encircle me.

¹⁴They open their mouths wide against me —
a lion tearing and roaring.

¹⁵I am poured out like water,
and all my bones are pulled apart.
My heart is like wax —
it melts within me.

¹⁶My strength is dried up like a potsherd,
and my tongue clings to my jaws.
You lay me in the dust of death.

¹⁷For dogs surround me;
a pack of evildoers closes in on me.
They pierce my hands and my feet.

¹⁸I can count all my bones;
they stare and gaze at me.

¹⁹They divide my garments among themselves,
and for my clothing they cast lots.

²⁰But you, O LORD — do not be far away!
O my strength, come quickly to help me!

²¹Deliver my life from the sword,
my only life from the power of the dog.

²²Save me from the mouth of the lion!
From the horns of the wild oxen — you have answered me!

²³I will declare your name to my brothers;
in the midst of the assembly I will praise you.

²⁴You who fear the LORD, praise him!
All you offspring of Jacob, glorify him!
Stand in awe of him, all you offspring of Israel!

²⁵For he has not despised or detested
the suffering of the afflicted one.
He has not hidden his face from him,
but when he cried out, he heard.

²⁶From you comes my praise in the great assembly;
I will fulfill my vows before those who fear him.

²⁷The humble will eat and be satisfied;
those who seek the LORD will praise him.
May your hearts live forever!

²⁸All the ends of the earth will remember and turn to the LORD,
and all the families of the nations will bow down before you.

²⁹For kingship belongs to the LORD,
and he rules over the nations.

³⁰All the prosperous of the earth will eat and bow down;
before him will kneel all who descend to the dust —
even those who cannot keep themselves alive.

³¹A generation to come will serve him;
it will be told of the Lord to the next generation.

³²They will come and declare his righteousness
to a people yet unborn —
that he has done it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ayyelet ha-Shachar ('the doe of the dawn') is most likely a melody name, though the image — a vulnerable animal at first light — resonates powerfully with the psalm's content. The doe hunted at dawn mirrors the sufferer surrounded by predators. In WLC versification, this superscription is verse 1.
2. Jesus quotes this verse from the cross in Aramaic: Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani (Matthew 27:46). The fact that Jesus chose this psalm — not a psalm of confession, but a psalm of innocent suffering — is theologically significant. He identifies with the righteous sufferer, not the guilty penitent.
2. Shaagah ('roaring, groaning') is used elsewhere of lions (Psalm 104:21, Amos 3:4). The sufferer's cry has the raw intensity of an animal's roar — this is not polite prayer but primal anguish.
3. The merism 'by day ... by night' means the crying is continuous — there is no relief at any hour. The phrase lo dumiyyah li ('no silence/rest for me') could mean either 'I have no silence' (I never stop crying) or 'there is no stillness for me' (I find no peace). Both readings reinforce the relentless, unanswered agony.
4. Yoshev ('sitting, dwelling, enthroned') is the same verb used for kings sitting on thrones. God is not merely present in Israel's worship — he reigns from it. The praises of the people are the location of God's kingship.
5. The threefold repetition of trust (batchu ... batchu ... tefalletemo) builds a case from history: the ancestors trusted, they kept trusting, and God delivered. The verb palat ('to escape, be delivered, be rescued') describes swift, complete rescue. The sufferer is constructing an argument — past faithfulness should guarantee present deliverance. But the argument will fail in his own case, which deepens the agony.
6. Lo-voshu ('they were not put to shame') is the theological payoff: trusting God did not humiliate them. Shame (bosh) in Hebrew is public exposure as a fool — trusting in something that fails you. The ancestors trusted and were vindicated. The sufferer, by contrast, is being publicly shamed (vv. 7-9), which makes his situation an apparent contradiction of the historical pattern.
7. Tolaath specifically refers to the crimson worm (tola'at shani), the insect crushed to produce scarlet dye. The image carries overtones of being crushed, of yielding color through destruction. Later Christian readers saw in this an image of Christ's blood-stained suffering, though the psalm's original context is simply one of utter degradation.
8. Yaftiru ve-safah ('they open wide with the lip') describes a sneering, contemptuous gesture — pushing out the lower lip in mockery. Yaniu rosh ('they shake the head') is a gesture of scorn and dismissal. The sufferer's pain is a public spectacle, and the audience participates with derisive body language. Matthew 27:39 records the same gestures at the crucifixion: 'And those who passed by derided him, wagging their heads.'
9. The verb gol ('roll') is imperative in form but is quoted as past action by the mockers — 'he rolled (his burden) to the LORD.' This verb choice suggests total, weight-bearing trust, like rolling a heavy stone onto someone else. The mockery targets the completeness of the sufferer's dependence on God.
10. The sufferer responds to the mockers not by arguing theology but by going back to his earliest experience of God. Gochi mi-baten ('the one who drew me from the belly') makes God the midwife. Mavtiachi al-shedei immi ('the one who made me trust at my mother's breasts') means that the sufferer's trust in God predates his conscious memory — God taught him trust before he could speak. This is the deepest possible foundation for faith: God was there at the beginning.
11. Hoshlakhti ('I was cast, thrown') is passive — the sufferer did not choose God; he was thrown onto God at birth. The relationship is not voluntary but foundational, woven into his existence from the moment of emergence from the womb. The final phrase — Eli attah ('you are my God') — is a personal confession that echoes the opening cry of verse 2. Despite everything, the sufferer still claims God as his own.
12. The spatial language is precise and devastating: God is far (rachaq), trouble is near (qerovah), and help is absent (ein ozer). The sufferer is caught between a distant God and a close enemy with no mediator, no ally, no helper. This is the setup for the violent imagery that follows.

13. Bashan (the Golan Heights region) was famous for its rich pastureland and powerful cattle (Amos 4:1, Ezekiel 39:18). The 'bulls of Bashan' (abbirei Vashan) are the largest, most dangerous cattle in the known world — they represent enemies of overwhelming physical power. The verbs *seavavuni* ('they surround me') and *kitteruni* ('they encircle me') describe a tightening ring with no escape route.
14. The animal imagery shifts from bulls to a lion (*aryeh*) — from encirclement to attack. *Toref ve-shoeg* ('tearing and roaring') describes a lion in the act of killing: tearing flesh while roaring. The open mouth (*patsu pihem*) conveys both the literal gaping jaws of a predator and the mouths of mockers hurling insults. The enemies are simultaneously verbal and physical threats.
15. The sequence moves inward: water (external), bones (structural), heart (innermost). Each image represents a deeper level of collapse. *Namas* ('it melts') is the same verb used for the melting of the Canaanites' hearts in Joshua 2:11 — it describes the loss of all capacity to resist or endure.
16. *Cheres* ('potsherd') is a broken piece of pottery — not just dry but shattered and useless. The tongue clinging to the jaws (*leshoni mudbaq malqochay*) describes extreme dehydration. John 19:28 records Jesus saying 'I thirst' from the cross. The final line — *la-afar mavet tishpeteni* ('to the dust of death you lay me') — is addressed to God. The sufferer does not blame his enemies for his death; he holds God responsible. The 'dust of death' is the grave itself, the return to the earth of Genesis 3:19.
17. The textual variant between *kaari* (, 'like a lion') and *kaaru* (, 'they pierced/dug') hinges on a single letter: *yod* vs. *vav*. The Masoretic *kaari* reading would require supplying a verb — 'like a lion [they maul?] my hands and my feet' — but no verb is present. The *kaaru* reading provides a complete clause: 'they pierced my hands and my feet.' The Nahal Hever scroll (5/6HevPs) reads *ka'aru*, supporting 'they pierced.'
17. Dogs in the biblical world were unclean scavengers (1 Kings 14:11, 21:23-24). To be surrounded by dogs is to be treated as carrion — already dead, already refuse.
18. The sufferer is so emaciated that every bone is visible and countable (*asapper kol atsmotai*). This is the body of someone who has been wasting — from illness, torture, starvation, or all three. The pronoun 'they' (*hemmah*) shifts to the onlookers who watch the spectacle with fascinated contempt. The sufferer is both dying and being watched dying.
19. The distinction between *begadai* ('my garments') and *levushi* ('my clothing/vesture') may indicate outer garments (divided into portions) and an inner garment (awarded by lot as a single piece). John 19:23-24 makes exactly this distinction: the soldiers divided the outer garments but cast lots for the seamless tunic.
20. The sufferer turns from describing his enemies back to God. The plea *al-tirchaq* ('do not be far') echoes verse 12 and answers the opening complaint that God is *rachok* ('far'). *Eyaluti* ('my strength') is a rare word — possibly from *ayyal* ('ram, deer'), suggesting swiftness and power. The imperative *chushah* ('hurry!') conveys desperation — time is running out.
21. *Nafshi* ('my soul/life') is paralleled by *yechidati* ('my only one, my unique one, my darling'). *Yechidah* means 'only, solitary, unique' — the sufferer has only one life, and it is about to be taken. The 'sword' (*cherev*) represents violent death, and 'the dog' (*kelev*, singular) represents the most contemptible of the enemies from verse 17. The plea is not for comfort but for survival.
22. *Remim* ('wild oxen') were massive, now-extinct aurochs — the largest and most dangerous bovines in the ancient world. The KJV translated this as 'unicorns' following the Septuagint's *monokeros*, but the reference is to the wild ox (*Bos primigenius*). Their horns were weapons of impalement.
22. The shift from petition to praise at *anitani* ('you have answered me') is unexplained. Some scholars propose that a priestly oracle of salvation was spoken between verses 22a and 22b during liturgical performance. Others see a pure act of faith. The text itself offers no mechanism — only the result.
23. The vow to declare God's name (*shimkha*) to his brothers (*echai*) is quoted in Hebrews 2:12, where the writer applies it to Jesus declaring God's name to the church. In its psalmic context, the sufferer who was alone and surrounded by enemies now stands in the *qahal* ('assembly, congregation') among brothers — restored to community. The shift from isolation to assembly is itself a form of salvation.
24. The scope begins expanding. The sufferer's individual praise broadens to include all who fear the LORD, all the seed of Jacob, all the seed of Israel. Three groups named, three commands given: *halleluhu* ('praise him'), *kabbeduhu* ('glorify/honor him'), *guru mimmennu* ('stand in awe of him'). The verb *kavad* ('glorify, honor') shares the root of *kavod* ('glory') — the worshippers are to add weight to God's reputation.
25. *Shiqqets* ('to detest, abhor') is the verb form of *sheqets* ('abomination, detestable thing') — used for unclean animals and idolatrous practices. For God not to find the sufferer's affliction *sheqets* means that suffering does not make a person unclean or repulsive to God. This is a radical claim in a world where affliction was commonly interpreted as divine punishment.
26. *Me-ittekha tehilati* ('from you is my praise') means the praise itself originates in God — the sufferer does not generate worship from his own resources; God supplies both the deliverance and the praise that responds to it. The vow fulfillment (*nedarai ashallam*) refers to the ancient practice of making a vow during crisis and paying it publicly after deliverance, typically with a *todah* ('thanksgiving') sacrifice and a communal meal (see next verse).
27. The *todah* meal — the thanksgiving feast following vow fulfillment — is now described. The *anavim* ('humble, afflicted, poor') eat and are satisfied (*yisba'u*). This is not merely physical food but the communal celebration of God's deliverance. The blessing *yechi levavkhem la-ad* ('may your hearts live forever') extends the 'life' that was the sufferer's most desperate request (v. 21) to the entire worshipping community.

- 28.** The phrase *kol mishpechot goyim* ('all families of the nations') echoes the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 12:3 — 'in you all the families of the earth will be blessed.' The sufferer's story becomes the vehicle through which the nations encounter the God of Israel.
- 29.** *Ha-melukhah* ('the kingship, the royal sovereignty') belongs to the LORD — not to earthly kings, not to the enemies who seemed to triumph. This brief, powerful declaration provides the theological basis for the universal worship described in the surrounding verses. If YHWH is king over all nations, then all nations owe him allegiance.
- 30.** The inclusion of *yordei afar* ('those who go down to the dust') in the worshipping community is extraordinary — it suggests worship beyond death, a communion of the living and the dead before God. This pushes against the typical Old Testament view that the dead in Sheol cannot praise God (Psalm 6:5, 88:10-12). Either this psalm envisions a resurrection hope or it uses hyperbolic language to express the totality of God's sovereignty.
- 31.** *Zera* ('seed, offspring, generation') introduces the temporal dimension — not only all places and all peoples, but all future times will be included. The story of God's deliverance will be transmitted (*yesuppar*, 'it will be told, recounted') from generation to generation. The sufferer's experience becomes a permanent testimony.
- 32.** The phrase *ki asah* ('for he has done it') echoes the declaration on the cross in John 19:30: *tetelestai* ('it is finished'). Whether or not the Gospel writer intended the echo, the structural parallel is striking — both are final declarations that a work of suffering and salvation is complete.
- 32.** *Tsidqato* ('his righteousness') in this context is God's covenant faithfulness demonstrated through saving action. It is not abstract moral quality but concrete rescue — God's righteousness is what God does for the afflicted one.

23

Summary: *The most beloved psalm in the Psalter — six verses of absolute trust. The speaker declares the LORD as shepherd, provider, guide, protector, and host. The imagery moves from open pasture (vv. 1-3) through a dark valley (v. 4) to a banquet table prepared in the presence of enemies (v. 5), and closes with the assurance of faithful love pursuing the speaker all the days of his life. The psalm contains no petition, no complaint, no confession — only confidence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 23 is positioned immediately after Psalm 22, the most anguished lament in the Psalter. This placement is not accidental. The sufferer who passed through the valley of the shadow of death in Psalm 22 — mocked, pierced, surrounded by enemies, laid in the dust of death — now emerges on the other side and can say 'The LORD is my shepherd; I lack nothing.' The green pastures and still waters are where you arrive after the cross. The 'table prepared in the presence of enemies' (v. 5) does not mean the enemies are gone — they are still watching. It means the shepherd feeds his own even while the wolves circle. The shift from third person ('he leads me') to second person ('you are with me') happens exactly at the darkest point — verse 4, the valley of the shadow of death. When the danger is greatest, the distance between speaker and God collapses from 'he' to 'you.'*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's two controlling metaphors — shepherd (vv. 1-4) and host (vv. 5-6) — are not as separate as they first appear. In the ancient Near East, kings were called shepherds of their people, and hospitality was a royal obligation. Both images describe a single relationship: the LORD as the one who provides, protects, and honors. The phrase *gei tsalmavet* (v. 4) is traditionally rendered 'valley of the shadow of death,' but *tsalmavet* may be a compound of *tsel* ('shadow') and *mavet* ('death'), or it may be an intensified form of *tselem* ('deep shadow, darkness'). Both readings yield approximately the same meaning: the darkest, most dangerous passage imaginable. We retain 'shadow of death' because the traditional rendering accurately captures the semantic weight.*

Connections: *The shepherd metaphor for God appears throughout the Hebrew Bible: Genesis 48:15 (Jacob's blessing), Genesis 49:24 ('the Shepherd, the Stone of Israel'), Psalm 80:1 ('Shepherd of Israel'), Isaiah 40:11 ('he will feed his flock like a shepherd'), Ezekiel 34 (God as the true shepherd replacing failed human shepherds). Jesus claims the title in John 10:11: 'I am the good shepherd.' The anointing with oil (v. 5) connects to the anointing of priests (Exodus 29:7) and kings (1 Samuel 16:13). The 'house of the LORD' in verse 6 anticipates the temple theology of Psalms 27:4 and 84:1-4. The overflowing cup (v. 5) reappears in Psalm 116:13 as 'the cup of salvation.'*

¹A psalm of David.

The LORD is my shepherd —
I lack nothing.

²In green pastures he makes me lie down;
beside still waters he leads me.

³He restores my life;
he leads me in right paths
for the sake of his name.

⁴Even though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death,
I will fear no evil,
for you are with me.
Your rod and your staff — they comfort me.

⁵You prepare a table before me
in the presence of my enemies.
You anoint my head with oil;
my cup overflows.

⁶Surely goodness and faithful love will pursue me
all the days of my life,
and I will dwell in the house of the LORD
for length of days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. In WLC versification, the superscription and first poetic line share verse 1. The possessive suffix on ro'i ('my shepherd') makes this a personal claim, not a theological abstraction. The speaker does not say 'The LORD is a shepherd' or 'The LORD shepherds Israel' — he says 'The LORD is my shepherd.' The intimacy is the point.
2. The verb nahal ('to lead, guide') specifically describes leading to water — it is used of leading flocks to drinking places (Genesis 33:14, Isaiah 49:10). The shepherd does not merely point the way; he walks the path and brings the sheep to what they need.
3. Leman shemo ('for the sake of his name') is a critical theological qualifier. The shepherd's care is grounded in the shepherd's own character, not the worthiness of the sheep. This removes all performance anxiety from the relationship — the sheep is cared for because of who the shepherd is.
4. The grammatical shift from third person to second person at ki attah immadi ('for you are with me') is one of the most noted features of the psalm. When speaking of green pastures and still waters — places of safety — the speaker can describe God at a distance ('he'). When death closes in, distance collapses and the speaker speaks directly to God ('you'). Theology becomes prayer at the point of greatest need.
4. Tsalmavet may be a compound noun (tsel + mavet = 'shadow of death') or an intensive form meaning 'deep darkness.' The traditional 'shadow of death' reading, supported by the Septuagint (skia thanatou), captures the full weight of the image and has been retained.
5. The transition from shepherd imagery to banquet imagery is not a break in the psalm but a deepening. In the ancient Near East, a king's hospitality was an extension of his shepherding role. To set a table for someone in the presence of their enemies was a political and social statement: this person is under my protection, and anyone who touches them answers to me.
6. The verb radaf ('pursue, chase') is deliberately chosen to invert the language of threat. Throughout the psalms, enemies pursue (rodeph) the righteous (Psalm 7:2, 31:15, 35:3). Here, it is goodness and chesed that pursue. The hunted becomes the beloved.
6. Le-orekh yamim ('for length of days') is the same phrase used in Psalm 21:5 for the king's extended life. It suggests not eternity in the abstract but the fullness of lived time — all the days, every day, without interruption.

24

Summary: *A processional liturgy in three movements: the LORD as cosmic creator and owner of the earth (vv. 1-2), the moral requirements for approaching his holy mountain (vv. 3-6), and the dramatic call for the gates to open for the King of Glory (vv. 7-10). The psalm was likely performed during a procession bringing the ark of the covenant into Jerusalem or the temple, with antiphonal voices calling back and forth at the gates.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's three sections create a theological sequence that moves from cosmology to ethics to worship. First: God owns everything because he made everything (vv. 1-2). Second: therefore, approaching this God requires clean hands and a pure heart (vv. 3-6). Third: this God is not distant — he is coming through the gates in power and glory, and the gates themselves must expand to receive him (vv. 7-10). The antiphonal structure of the gate liturgy is electrifying: one voice demands that the gates lift their heads, another voice asks 'Who is this King of Glory?', and the answer thunders back — 'The LORD, strong and mighty! The LORD, mighty in battle!' The question is asked twice (vv. 8, 10), and the second answer intensifies: 'The LORD of Hosts — he is the King of Glory!' This is not a conversation seeking information; it is a liturgical drama building to a climax.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase nesoï olam ('ancient doors' or 'everlasting gates,' vv. 7, 9) is unusual. If the psalm accompanied the ark's entrance into a newly built or captured city, the gates are not literally 'everlasting' — they are being addressed with cosmic language that elevates a historical event to mythic significance. The moral requirements of verses 3-6 (clean hands, pure heart, no idolatry, no false oaths) function as a 'torah of entrance' — a priestly catechism determining who may ascend the temple mount. Similar entrance liturgies appear in Psalm 15 and Isaiah 33:14-16. The question 'Who may ascend?' is not rhetorical — it was asked and answered in actual temple worship.*

Connections: *The opening declaration that the earth belongs to the LORD echoes Exodus 19:5 ('all the earth is mine') and anticipates Paul's quotation in 1 Corinthians 10:26. The entrance requirements connect to Psalm 15 (a parallel torah of entrance) and to Jesus's Beatitude 'Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God' (Matthew 5:8). The gate liturgy has been read christologically as the ascension — the risen Christ entering the heavenly gates as the King of Glory. The title YHWH Tsevaot ('LORD of Hosts') in the climactic verse 10 identifies the King of Glory with the commander of heaven's armies. Psalms 22-24 form a triptych: Psalm 22 is the cross (suffering), Psalm 23 is the shepherd (provision), Psalm 24 is the crown (enthronement).*

¹Of David — a psalm.

The earth belongs to the LORD, and everything in it —
the world and all who live in it.

²For he founded it upon the seas
and established it upon the rivers.

³Who may ascend the mountain of the LORD?
And who may stand in his holy place?

⁴The one with clean hands and a pure heart,
who does not lift up his soul to what is false
and does not swear deceitfully.

⁵He will carry away blessing from the LORD
and righteousness from the God of his salvation.

⁶This is the generation of those who seek him,
who seek your face, O God of Jacob. Selah.

⁷Lift up your heads, O gates!
Be lifted up, O ancient doors!
Let the King of Glory come in!

⁸The LORD, strong and mighty —
Who is this King of Glory?
the LORD, mighty in battle!

⁹Lift up your heads, O gates!
Lift them up, O ancient doors!
Let the King of Glory come in!

¹⁰The LORD of Hosts —
Who is he, this King of Glory?
he is the King of Glory! Selah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The possessive construction *la-YHWH* ('to the LORD, belonging to the LORD') is emphatic. It does not say 'The LORD made the earth' (though verse 2 will) — it says the earth is his. Ownership, not merely craftsmanship, is the claim. This has implications for ecology, justice, and worship: if the earth is God's, humans are stewards, not owners.
2. The cosmology here reflects the ancient Near Eastern understanding of the earth as a flat disc founded upon the primordial waters. The seas (*yammim*) and rivers (*neharot*) are the chaotic waters that God subdued at creation (Genesis 1:2, 6-10). To found the earth upon the seas means God imposed order on chaos, creating stable ground above the waters. The verb *yasad* ('to found, lay a foundation') and the verb *konan* ('to establish, make firm') both emphasize intentional, skilled construction.
3. This 'torah of entrance' genre appears also in Psalm 15 and Isaiah 33:14-16. In practice, a Levitical priest would ask these questions at the temple gate, and the worshippers would respond with the qualifications listed in verse 4. It was a liturgical dialogue, not a private meditation.
4. *Nafshi* ('my soul') in the Hebrew text is first-person — 'who has not lifted up my soul to falsehood.' Some manuscripts read *nafsho* ('his soul'), which makes smoother grammatical sense. The first-person reading may reflect the liturgical context: the worshippers speak these qualifications about themselves, confessing their own integrity as they approach the gate.
4. *Bar levav* ('pure of heart') is echoed by Jesus in Matthew 5:8: 'Blessed are the pure in heart, for they shall see God.' The connection between heart purity and access to God's presence runs directly from this psalm to the Sermon on the Mount.
5. The reward for meeting the entrance requirements is *berakhah* ('blessing') and *tsedaqah* ('righteousness'). Notably, righteousness here is received, not achieved — it comes from God (*me-Elohei yisho*, 'from the God of his salvation'). The person who approaches God with clean hands and a pure heart receives from God the very righteousness that qualifies the approach. This creates a theological circle: you need righteousness to approach, and approaching gives you more righteousness.
6. The phrase *meqavshei fanekha Yaaqov* ('those who seek your face, Jacob') is textually difficult. Some manuscripts and the Septuagint read 'the God of Jacob' rather than simply 'Jacob.' The rendering follows the interpretive tradition that 'seeking the face' is directed to God, not to Jacob. *Selah* marks the transition from the entrance liturgy to the gate procession that follows.
7. The personification of the gates creates a dramatic liturgical scene. In performance, one group likely stood outside the gates (representing the procession with the ark) and another group stood inside (representing the gatekeepers). The call-and-response format builds anticipation with each exchange.
8. The question *mi zeh Melekh ha-Kavod* ('who is this King of Glory?') is asked by the gatekeepers — a liturgical challenge requiring identification. The answer comes in a torrent of military titles: *YHWH izzuz ve-gibbor* ('the LORD, fierce and powerful'), *YHWH gibbor milchamah* ('the LORD, warrior of battle'). The King of Glory is identified not by beauty or wisdom but by overwhelming combat power. This is a warrior entering in triumph.
9. The command is repeated — the gates did not open at the first call. The repetition builds dramatic urgency. The second time, the verb shifts from *ve-hinnaseu* ('be lifted up,' passive/reflexive) to *useu* ('lift up,' active imperative) — the command becomes more direct, more insistent. The King of Glory is still waiting, and the gates must respond.
10. *YHWH Tsevaot* ('the LORD of Hosts') appears over 260 times in the Hebrew Bible. *Tsevaot* ('hosts, armies') refers to the heavenly armies — angelic beings, cosmic forces, possibly even the stars marshaled as troops. The title identifies God as supreme commander of all reality, visible and invisible.

10. The second answer is more powerful than the first. Verse 8 said 'the LORD, mighty in battle' — a single warrior. Verse 10 says 'the LORD of Hosts' — the commander of all armies. The identification escalates from powerful individual to supreme sovereign.

25

Summary: *An acrostic psalm — each verse begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet — weaving together petition for guidance, confession of sin, and trust in God's covenant faithfulness. David asks God to teach him, lead him, remember mercy rather than sin, and rescue him from enemies and shame. The psalm oscillates between confidence and vulnerability, with the alphabet structure providing a framework of order imposed on emotional turbulence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The acrostic structure is imperfect — the letter vav is missing from its expected position, the letter resh appears to be doubled (vv. 18-19), and the final verse (v. 22) falls outside the alphabet entirely, adding a pe that addresses Israel as a whole rather than the individual speaker. These 'irregularities' may be intentional: the broken acrostic mirrors a broken speaker. A person in genuine need cannot maintain perfect form. The extra verse at the end — stepping outside the alphabetic constraint to pray for all Israel — suggests that individual prayer always opens toward communal concern. The psalm's three great theological words — chesed (vv. 6-7, 10), emet ('truth/fidelity,' vv. 5, 10), and berit ('covenant,' v. 10) — form the core vocabulary of God's character throughout the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The acrostic form creates an inherent tension between artistic structure and emotional authenticity. Is the speaker genuinely distressed, or is this a literary exercise? The answer is both: the acrostic is a discipline that channels real emotion into ordered speech. Ancient readers would have recognized the alphabetic pattern as a sign of completeness — the prayer covers everything from aleph to tav, from A to Z. The phrase chattot neuray ('sins of my youth,' v. 7) raises a question: which specific sins? The psalm does not say, which makes it universally applicable — every reader has sins of youth to confess.*

Connections: *The acrostic form also appears in Psalms 34, 37, 111, 112, 119, and 145, as well as Lamentations 1-4 and Proverbs 31:10-31. The petition 'teach me your paths' (v. 4) connects to the Torah theology of Psalm 119. The covenant language of verse 10 ('all the paths of the LORD are chesed and emet') echoes Exodus 34:6, where God reveals his character to Moses as 'abounding in chesed and emet.' The prayer for Israel in the final verse anticipates the communal laments of Psalms 44 and 74.*

¹Of David.

To you, O LORD, I lift up my soul.

²My God, in you I trust.

Do not let me be put to shame;
do not let my enemies gloat over me.

³Indeed, none who wait for you will be put to shame;
shame will come to those who are treacherous without cause.

⁴Make your ways known to me, O LORD;
teach me your paths.

⁵Guide me in your truth and teach me,
for you are the God of my salvation;
for you I wait all day long.

⁶Remember your compassion, O LORD,
and your acts of faithful love,

for they are from of old.

⁷Do not remember the sins of my youth or my rebellions.
According to your faithful love, remember me —
for the sake of your goodness, O LORD.

⁸Good and upright is the LORD;
therefore he instructs sinners in the way.

⁹He guides the humble in justice
and teaches the humble his way.

¹⁰All the paths of the LORD are faithful love and truth
for those who keep his covenant and his decrees.

¹¹For the sake of your name, O LORD,
pardon my guilt — for it is great.

¹²Who is the one who fears the LORD?
Him will he instruct in the way he should choose.

¹³His soul will rest in prosperity,
and his offspring will inherit the land.

¹⁴The counsel of the LORD belongs to those who fear him,
and his covenant — he makes it known to them.

¹⁵My eyes are always on the LORD,
for he will free my feet from the net.

¹⁶Turn to me and be gracious to me,
for I am lonely and afflicted.

¹⁷The troubles of my heart have multiplied;
bring me out of my distresses.

¹⁸Look on my affliction and my trouble,
and forgive all my sins.

¹⁹Look at my enemies — how many they are!
They hate me with violent hatred.

²⁰Guard my life and deliver me;
do not let me be put to shame,
for I take refuge in you.

²¹Let integrity and uprightness protect me,
for I wait for you.

²²Redeem Israel, O God,
from all its troubles.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription le-David ('of David') is integrated with the first acrostic line. Lifting the soul (nafshi essa) toward God contrasts with Psalm 24:4, where lifting the soul to what is false disqualifies one from God's presence. Here, the soul is lifted to the only worthy destination.
2. The bet line. The prayer against shame (al-evoshah) reveals the social dimension of suffering — the speaker fears not only harm but humiliation. In the ancient honor-shame culture, being publicly shamed before enemies was a fate worse than physical pain. The verb alats ('to exult, gloat') describes the triumphant crowing of enemies who celebrate another's downfall.
3. The gimel line. The speaker expands his prayer from himself to all who wait for God (kol qovekha). The verb qavah ('to wait, hope, look expectantly') describes patient, active trust. The contrast is with bogdim ('the treacherous, the faithless') — those who betray covenant loyalty. Reqam ('emptily, without cause, for nothing') modifies the treachery: they betray for no reason, their faithlessness is gratuitous.
4. The dalet line. Two synonymous requests: 'make known your ways' (derakhekha hodieni) and 'teach me your paths' (orchotekha lammedeni). Derekh ('way, road, manner of life') and orach ('path, course') are wisdom vocabulary — the speaker wants to know not just what to do but how God moves through the world. The verb lamad ('to teach, train') implies sustained instruction, not a single lesson.
5. The he line. Otekha qivviti kol ha-yom ('for you I wait all the day') expresses unbroken attentiveness. The speaker does not wait occasionally or when convenient — the waiting is kol ha-yom ('all the day'), every moment oriented toward God.
6. The zayin line. The verb zakhar ('remember') when directed to God is not about memory retrieval — God does not forget. It is a request for God to act in accordance with what he has always been. 'Remember your compassion' means 'be compassionate again, as you have always been.' Rachamim ('compassion') derives from rechem ('womb') — it is the fierce, visceral tenderness of a mother for her child.
7. The interplay of 'remember' and 'do not remember' creates the psalm's central tension: the speaker has a past that deserves judgment, but he appeals to a God whose character (chesed, tov) is greater than that past. The prayer is not 'forgive me because I've changed' but 'remember me according to who you are.'
8. The tet line. The logic is striking: because God is good and upright (tov ve-yashar), he teaches sinners (chattaim). God's response to sin is not rejection but instruction. The verb yorah ('to teach, instruct, direct') is the root of Torah ('instruction, law'). God's goodness expresses itself as pedagogy — he teaches the lost rather than abandoning them.
9. The yod line. The anavim ('humble, afflicted, lowly') are the ones God teaches. Humility is the prerequisite for divine instruction — the proud cannot learn because they believe they already know. Mishpat ('justice, judgment, right ordering') is the content of the teaching; darko ('his way') is the method. God teaches both what is right and how to walk in it.
10. Chesed ve-emet ('faithful love and truth/faithfulness') is a hendiadys — two words expressing one complex reality: God's reliable, enduring, covenant-keeping devotion. This pair appears throughout the Hebrew Bible as a summary of God's essential character (Genesis 24:27, 32:10, Exodus 34:6, Psalm 86:15, 89:14).
11. Avon ('guilt, iniquity, punishment for iniquity') encompasses the sin, its moral weight, and its consequences. The speaker does not separate these — the guilt is comprehensive. The frank admission ki rav-hu ('for it is great') is remarkable: most prayers minimize sin. This one magnifies it, trusting that God's grace is greater.
12. The mem line. The rhetorical question identifies the learner: the one who fears the LORD (yere YHWH). The verb yorah ('he will instruct') is again the root of Torah. The 'way he should choose' (derekh yivchar) implies that life presents genuine choices, and God's instruction enables right selection. Fear of God is not paralyzing dread but the orientation that makes wisdom possible.
13. The nun line. Nafsho be-tov talin ('his soul will lodge/spend the night in goodness') means the God-fearer's life settles into well-being. The verb lin ('to lodge, spend the night') suggests restful security — no anxiety-filled nights. The promise that his seed (zaro) will inherit the land (erets) echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 12:7) and anticipates Jesus's Beatitude: 'Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth' (Matthew 5:5).
14. Sod combines intimacy with information — it is not merely that God tells his secrets but that he brings the fearful ones into a relationship close enough to share them. The covenant (berit) is the framework within which this intimacy operates.
15. The ayin line. Einai tamid el-YHWH ('my eyes are continually toward the LORD') expresses unbroken attentiveness. The reason: hu yotsi me-reshet raglai ('he will bring out my feet from the net'). The net (reshet) is a hunting trap — the speaker is caught, ensnared, but looks to God rather than at the trap. The orientation of the eyes determines the outcome.
16. The pe line. Peneh elai ('turn to me') is a plea for God's face — his attention, his presence. The speaker identifies himself as yachid ve-ani ('solitary and afflicted'). Yachid means 'alone, only, solitary' — the suffering has isolated him. The combination of loneliness and affliction is a double burden: he suffers, and he suffers alone.
17. The tsade line. Tsarot levavi hirschiv ('the troubles of my heart have widened/expanded') means the inner anguish keeps growing — the heart's capacity for pain is being stretched. Metsuqotai ('my distresses, my straits') comes from the root tsuq ('to be narrow, pressed, confined'). The speaker is simultaneously expanding with trouble and constricted by distress — torn in both directions.

- 18.** The resh line (first occurrence). The speaker asks God to see (reeh) two things simultaneously: his suffering (onyi va-amali, 'my affliction and my toil/trouble') and his sin (chattotai). He does not separate the two — he presents himself whole, as both sufferer and sinner, and asks God to address both realities at once. The verb nasa ('to lift, carry away') when applied to sin means 'to forgive' — literally to lift the sin off the bearer.
- 19.** The resh line (second occurrence — the acrostic doubles resh). The enemies are rav ('many, numerous') and their hatred is sinat chamas ('hatred of violence' or 'violent hatred'). Chamas means 'violence, cruelty, wrongdoing' — their hostility is not passive dislike but active, destructive malice.
- 20.** The shin line. Shomrah nafshi ('guard my soul/life') and hatssileni ('deliver me') are paired petitions — protection and rescue. The recurring fear of shame (al-evosh) circles back to verse 2, forming an inclusio. The basis for confidence: ki chasiti vakh ('for I have taken refuge in you'). The verb chasah ('to take refuge, shelter') describes hiding under God's protection as under the wing of a bird (Psalm 91:4).
- 21.** The tav line — the final letter of the alphabet. Tom va-yosher ('integrity and uprightness') are personified as guardians who preserve (yitseruni, 'they will guard me') the speaker. These moral qualities are not merely internal virtues but active protectors. The psalm's alphabetic structure reaches its end with the confidence that moral wholeness and patient waiting (qivvitikha) for God are sufficient protection.
- 22.** The addition of this communal petition beyond the alphabet may indicate liturgical use — the psalm was adapted from individual prayer to congregational worship by adding this verse. Or it may be original, signaling that no individual prayer is truly complete until it includes the wider community of God's people.

26

Summary: *A psalm of self-examination and protest of innocence. David appeals to God to vindicate him, declaring that he has walked in integrity, avoided the company of the wicked, loved the house of the LORD, and kept his hands clean. The psalm moves from personal examination (vv. 1-3) to separation from evildoers (vv. 4-5) to worship at the altar (vv. 6-8) to a final plea for redemption and grace (vv. 9-12).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is uncomfortable for modern readers who associate piety with humility and self-deprecation. David does not say 'I am a sinner in need of mercy' — he says 'Vindicate me, for I have walked in integrity.' The Hebrew Bible sees no contradiction between genuine piety and honest self-assessment. The speaker is not claiming sinless perfection but covenant faithfulness — he has kept his commitments, avoided corruption, and maintained his worship. The psalm functions as a negative confession: 'I have not sat with the worthless, I have not associated with hypocrites, I hate the assembly of evildoers.' This is not arrogance but testimony, offered to the God who can verify it.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between this psalm and psalms like 25 (where David confesses sins) and 51 (where David begs for cleansing) is real but not contradictory. Different situations call for different postures. When falsely accused, the appropriate response is to assert innocence. When genuinely guilty, the appropriate response is to confess. The same person can do both at different times. The verb shafeteni ('vindicate me, judge me') in verse 1 is a legal term — David is asking for a court hearing, confident the evidence will support him.*

Connections: *The protest of innocence echoes Job 31, the great oath of innocence. The love for God's house (v. 8) anticipates Psalm 27:4 ('One thing I have asked') and Psalm 84 ('How lovely is your dwelling place'). The hand-washing ritual (v. 6) connects to Deuteronomy 21:6-7 (the elders washing hands over the heifer) and to Pilate's gesture in Matthew 27:24. The 'level ground' (mishor) of verse 12 echoes the 'right paths' (magelei tsedeq) of Psalm 23:3.*

¹Of David.

Vindicate me, O LORD,
for I have walked in my integrity,
and I have trusted in the LORD without wavering.

²Examine me, O LORD, and test me;
refine my inner depths and my heart.

³For your faithful love is before my eyes,
and I have walked in your truth.

⁴I have not sat with worthless people,
and with the deceitful I will not associate.

⁵I hate the assembly of evildoers,
and with the wicked I will not sit.

⁶I wash my hands in innocence
and go around your altar, O LORD,

⁷raising a shout of thanksgiving
and telling of all your wondrous deeds.

⁸O LORD, I love the dwelling place of your house,
the place where your glory resides.

⁹Do not sweep my soul away with sinners,
or my life with men of blood —

¹⁰in whose hands is wickedness,
and whose right hand is full of bribes.

¹¹But as for me, I walk in my integrity.
Redeem me and be gracious to me.

¹²My foot stands on level ground;
in the assemblies I will bless the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Shafat in the judicial sense means 'to render a verdict, to vindicate' — the speaker is asking for acquittal, not punishment. The confidence is remarkable: this is someone who believes the evidence supports him and wants his day in court before the ultimate judge.
2. Three verbs of testing: *bachan* ('examine, investigate'), *nasah* ('test, try'), and *tsaraf* ('refine, smelt'). The third is metallurgical — *tsaraf* is what a silversmith does, heating metal to remove impurities. The speaker asks God to apply this process to his *kilyotai* ('kidneys') and *libbo* ('heart'). In Hebrew anthropology, the kidneys were the seat of deep emotion and conscience, while the heart was the seat of thought and will. Together they represent the entire inner life.
3. The pairing of *chesed* and *emet* (*amitekha*, 'your truth') echoes Psalm 25:10 — the twin pillars of God's character. The speaker's walk (*hithallakhti*, 'I have walked about, conducted myself') is shaped by these divine attributes.
4. The negative confession begins. *Lo yashavti im-metei-shav* ('I have not sat with men of emptiness/falsehood') — *shav* means 'emptiness, worthlessness, falsehood.' These are people whose lives are hollow. *Naalamim* ('the hidden ones, the concealed, the dissemblers') are those who hide their true intentions — hypocrites whose public face masks private corruption. The speaker has avoided both.
5. The language intensifies from avoidance to hatred. *Saneiti* ('I have hated') is a strong verb — the speaker does not merely decline to join evildoers; he actively opposes their gatherings. *Qahal mereim* ('assembly of evildoers') uses the same word *qahal* that describes Israel's worship assembly. The evildoers have their own congregation — a parody of true worship — and the speaker refuses membership.
6. *Erchats be-niqqayon kappai* ('I wash in the cleanness of my hands') may refer to a literal ritual washing before approaching the altar (compare Exodus 30:17-21, where priests wash hands and feet before serving) or to a metaphorical declaration of innocence. The 'going around' (*asovevah*) the altar suggests a processional circuit — a liturgical act of worship performed physically, walking around the altar as a visible declaration of devotion.
7. *Qol todah* ('the voice/sound of thanksgiving') is the vocal component of the *todah* offering — the thanksgiving sacrifice accompanied by public declaration of what God has done. *Nifleotekha* ('your wonders, your extraordinary acts') are the specific deeds God has performed that merit telling. Worship in the Hebrew Bible is never abstract; it is always tied to concrete divine actions.
8. The love (*ahavti*) for God's house is personal and passionate. This is the same verb used for marital love, for love between friends, for love of God. The speaker's attachment to the temple is emotional, not merely dutiful.

9. Al-teesof ('do not gather, do not sweep away') — the speaker fears being grouped with sinners in God's judgment. The separation he has practiced in life (vv. 4-5) he asks God to honor in judgment. Anshei damim ('men of blood') are those guilty of bloodshed — the most extreme category of wickedness. The speaker asks not to share their fate.
10. Zimmah ('wicked scheme, evil plan, lewdness') in their hands and shochad ('bribery') filling their right hand — the portrait is of systematic corruption. The right hand (yamin), the hand of power and action, is saturated with bribes. These are not occasional sinners but professional operators of injustice.
11. The contrast is explicit: va-ani ('but as for me') sets the speaker apart from the corrupt. He returns to the opening claim — be-tummi elekh ('in my integrity I walk'). But the final two verbs are surprising: pedeni ('redeem me') and chonneni ('be gracious to me'). Even the person who walks in integrity needs redemption and grace. Integrity is not self-sufficiency. The most upright person still depends on God's intervention.
12. Ragli amdash ve-mishor ('my foot stands in a level place') means the speaker has found solid, even footing — not the treacherous ground of the wicked but the stable terrain of integrity. Mishor ('level ground, uprightness, plain') suggests both physical stability and moral straightness. The psalm closes in worship: be-maqhelim avarakh YHWH ('in the assemblies I will bless the LORD'). The speaker who refused the assembly of evildoers (v. 5) takes his place in the assembly of the faithful.

27

Summary: *A psalm of two halves, so distinct that some scholars treat them as separate compositions. The first half (vv. 1-6) is radiant confidence — the LORD is light, salvation, and stronghold, and the speaker fears nothing. The second half (vv. 7-14) is urgent petition — the speaker begs God not to hide his face, not to abandon him, and clings to the hope that he will see God's goodness in the land of the living. The psalm moves from fortress to fragility, from certainty to desperate waiting.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two halves of this psalm mirror the two realities of faith: the conviction that God is sovereign and the experience that God sometimes feels absent. The speaker who declares 'The LORD is my light — whom shall I fear?' in verse 1 is the same person who pleads 'Do not hide your face from me' in verse 9. These are not contradictions; they are the same person in different moments, or even the same person in the same moment holding confidence and fear simultaneously. The central desire — 'One thing I have asked of the LORD, this is what I seek: to dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life' (v. 4) — reduces all religious longing to a single request: proximity to God. Everything else — safety, victory, provision — flows from that one thing.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase be-erets chayyim ('in the land of the living,' v. 13) is set against death, not against heaven. The hope is not for escape from the world but for seeing God's goodness in this life, in this world, before death. This is pre-resurrection hope — the speaker wants to experience God's blessing here, not merely in an afterlife. The final verse (v. 14) may be the words of a priest or a prophetic voice encouraging the speaker — 'Wait for the LORD; be strong, and let your heart take courage; wait for the LORD.' The repetition of qavveh el-YHWH ('wait for the LORD') frames the exhortation: waiting is the posture that bridges the gap between confidence and fear.*

Connections: *The desire to 'dwell in the house of the LORD' (v. 4) connects to Psalm 23:6 ('I will dwell in the house of the LORD') and Psalm 84:1-4 ('How lovely is your dwelling place'). The imagery of being lifted up on a rock (v. 5) anticipates Psalm 40:2 ('He set my feet on a rock'). The petition 'Do not forsake me' (v. 9) echoes the abandonment cry of Psalm 22:1. The final exhortation to 'wait for the LORD' is echoed in Psalm 37:7, 9, 34 and Isaiah 40:31 ('those who wait for the LORD shall renew their strength').*

¹Of David.

The LORD is my light and my salvation —
whom shall I fear?

The LORD is the stronghold of my life —
of whom shall I be afraid?

²When evildoers close in on me
to devour my flesh —

my adversaries and enemies —
they stumble and fall.

³Though an army encamps against me,
my heart will not fear.
Though war rises against me,
even then I am confident.

⁴One thing I have asked of the LORD,
this is what I seek:
to dwell in the house of the LORD
all the days of my life,
to gaze on the beauty of the LORD
and to seek him in his temple.

⁵For he will shelter me in his booth
in the day of trouble;
he will hide me in the secret place of his tent;
he will lift me high upon a rock.

⁶And now my head is lifted high
above my enemies all around me,
and I will offer in his tent sacrifices of joyful shouting;
I will sing and make music to the LORD.

⁷Hear, O LORD, when I cry aloud;
be gracious to me and answer me.

⁸My heart says to you,
"Seek my face."
Your face, O LORD, I will seek.

⁹Do not hide your face from me;
do not turn your servant away in anger.
You have been my help —
do not cast me off, do not forsake me,
O God of my salvation.

¹⁰Though my father and mother forsake me,
the LORD will gather me in.

¹¹Teach me your way, O LORD,
and lead me on a level path
because of my enemies.

¹²Do not deliver me to the will of my adversaries,
for false witnesses have risen against me,
breathing out violence.

¹³I believe that I will see the goodness of the LORD
in the land of the living.

¹⁴Wait for the LORD.
Be strong, and let your heart take courage.
Wait for the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The image of God as 'light' (or) is rare in the Psalter as a direct predicate. God is associated with light elsewhere (Psalm 36:9, 'in your light we see light'; Psalm 104:2, 'wrapped in light as a garment'), but only here does the speaker say flatly: YHWH ori — 'the LORD is my light.' The metaphor encompasses guidance (light shows the way), safety (light reveals threats), and joy (light is associated with life and blessing).
2. Le-ekhol et-besari ('to eat my flesh') is predatory language — the enemies are carnivorous, treating the speaker as prey. But the expected outcome is inverted: instead of the speaker being consumed, the attackers themselves stumble (kashlu) and fall (nafalu). The past tense suggests this has already happened — the speaker has survived previous attacks and draws confidence from that history.
3. The hypothetical escalates: from individual evildoers (v. 2) to an entire encamped army (machaneh) to full-scale war (milchamah). At each level of escalation, the speaker's response remains the same: no fear, only trust. The phrase be-zot ani vote'ach ('in this I am trusting') is ambiguous — 'this' could refer back to God's identity as light, salvation, and stronghold, or forward to the single request of verse 4. Either way, trust is the speaker's settled posture regardless of circumstances.
4. The verb levaqer ('to inquire, to seek, to examine') can also mean 'to visit, to attend to.' The temple is a place not merely of worship but of investigation — the speaker goes there to learn, to seek understanding, to encounter God's mind as well as his presence.
5. Three images of protection: sukkah ('booth, shelter' — the same word as the Festival of Booths), seter oholo ('the hidden place of his tent'), and tsur ('rock'). The progression moves from temporary shelter (booth) to hidden enclosure (secret tent) to elevated fortress (rock). Each image adds a dimension: shelter from elements, concealment from enemies, and elevation above threats. The 'day of trouble' (yom raah) is the specific crisis the speaker anticipates.
6. The lifted head (yarum roshi) is the posture of victory and honor — the opposite of shame, which bows the head. The speaker's enemies surround him (sevivotai, 'all around me'), but his head rises above them because God has elevated him. The response is worship: zivchei teruah ('sacrifices of joyful shouting') are offerings accompanied by loud, exuberant cries of praise. This is not quiet, contemplative worship but explosive, full-throated celebration.
7. The tone shifts abruptly. The confident declaration of verses 1-6 gives way to urgent petition. Shema ('hear') is an imperative — the speaker is no longer celebrating but pleading. Chonneni ('be gracious to me') and aneni ('answer me') are the verbs of someone who is not yet experiencing the security described in the first half of the psalm. The two halves are not sequential (confidence then crisis) but simultaneous — faith and need coexist.
8. The Hebrew is syntactically complex and has been interpreted various ways. Our rendering follows the reading where the heart recalls God's general invitation ('Seek my face') and the speaker responds personally. The shift from plural (baqqeshu, 'seek,' addressed to many) to singular (avaqesh, 'I will seek') makes the response intimate: God invited everyone, and I am personally answering.
9. Four negated imperatives in rapid succession: do not hide (al-taster), do not turn away (al-tat), do not cast off (al-tittesheni), do not forsake (al-taazeveni). The verb azav ('forsake') is the same word from Psalm 22:1 ('why have you forsaken me?'). The speaker's deepest fear is not enemy attack but divine absence. The entire verse is a plea against God's disappearance.
10. Whether ki means 'when,' 'though,' or 'if' affects the tone — 'when' suggests it has happened; 'though' suggests a hypothetical extreme; 'if' is conditional. All three readings yield the same theological conclusion: parental failure, the worst imaginable human abandonment, does not exhaust divine faithfulness.
11. Horeni ('teach me') and necheni ('lead me') are paired requests for instruction and guidance. The 'level path' (orach mishor) is smooth, unobstructed terrain — the speaker needs clarity because enemies (shorerai, 'those who watch for me, who lie in wait') are monitoring his movements. The Hebrew shorer suggests watchful, hostile surveillance — these enemies are studying the speaker, looking for missteps.
12. Edei-sheqer ('witnesses of falsehood') and yefe'ach chamas ('one who breathes out violence') describe a courtroom scene — the speaker is being attacked with perjured testimony and violent intent disguised as legal process. The verb puwach ('to breathe, blow, puff') applied to chamas ('violence') creates an image of people who exhale destruction the way others exhale air — violence is their natural respiration.
13. In the Masoretic text, the word lulei has extraordinary dots (puncta extraordinaria) above it — a scribal notation indicating uncertainty about the reading. These dots may signal that the word was debated by ancient editors. Despite the textual uncertainty, the meaning is clear: the speaker's belief in God's goodness is the only thing preventing collapse.
14. The repetition of qavveh el-YHWH ('wait for the LORD') at the beginning and end of the verse creates a frame that makes waiting the defining act. The Hebrew verb qavah means 'to wait, to hope, to look expectantly' — it is not passive resignation but active, taut expectation, like a rope pulled tight.

28

Summary: *A psalm of urgent petition that pivots dramatically to thanksgiving. David cries out to the LORD as his rock, terrified of being dragged down to the pit with the wicked. He asks God to distinguish him from those who speak peace to their neighbors while harboring malice. At verse 6, the tone shifts abruptly — God has heard, and the speaker erupts in praise, declaring the LORD his strength, his shield, and the saving refuge of his anointed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The pivot at verse 6 is one of the sharpest in the Psalter. Verses 1-5 are pure crisis — the speaker fears silence from God, separation from God, and being grouped with the wicked for judgment. Then verse 6 announces: 'Blessed be the LORD, for he has heard the voice of my pleas for mercy.' No transition, no explanation of what changed. This pattern of sudden reversal — common in lament psalms — suggests either a moment of prophetic assurance received during worship or a deliberate literary structure that compresses the entire journey from despair to deliverance into a single psalm. The final two verses (vv. 8-9) shift from individual thanksgiving to communal intercession — the speaker prays for the LORD's people and the LORD's inheritance, using shepherd language that echoes Psalm 23.*

Translation Friction: *The imprecatory section (vv. 3-5) asks God to 'repay' the wicked according to their deeds and 'tear them down.' This is not vengeful emotion seeking expression but a request for divine justice — the speaker asks God, not himself, to act. The theology underlying the request is covenantal: those who oppose God's anointed oppose God himself, and God should deal with them accordingly. The term meshicho ('his anointed,' v. 8) refers to the Davidic king but carries messianic overtones that later tradition developed extensively.*

Connections: *The cry to the 'rock' (tsur, v. 1) echoes Psalm 18:2, 31, 46 and anticipates Psalm 31:2-3. The fear of being 'drawn down to the pit' (v. 1) connects to Psalm 30:3 and Psalm 88:4. The shepherd imagery in verse 9 ('shepherd them and carry them forever') links directly to Psalm 23 and to Isaiah 40:11. The title 'his anointed' (meshicho, v. 8) connects to Psalm 2:2 and to the broader messianic thread through the Psalter.*

¹Of David.

To you I cry, O LORD, my rock!
Do not be deaf to me,
for if you are silent toward me,
I will become like those who go down to the pit.

²Hear the voice of my pleas for mercy
when I cry out to you,
when I lift my hands
toward the inner sanctuary of your holiness.

³Do not drag me away with the wicked,
with the workers of evil,
who speak peace to their neighbors
while malice is in their hearts.

⁴Give them according to their deeds
and according to the evil of their actions.
Give them according to the work of their hands;
repay them what they deserve.

5Because they do not understand the works of the LORD
or the deeds of his hands,
he will tear them down and never rebuild them.

6Blessed be the LORD,
for he has heard the voice of my pleas for mercy!

7The LORD is my strength and my shield.
In him my heart trusts, and I am helped;
my heart leaps for joy,
and with my song I give him thanks.

8The LORD is the strength of his people
and the saving refuge of his anointed.

9Save your people and bless your inheritance;
shepherd them and carry them forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wordplay between *techerash* ('be silent/deaf') and the speaker's calling (*eqra*, 'I cry out') creates a terrifying asymmetry: the speaker shouts and God is silent. The rock that should echo back provides no resonance. This is the nightmare scenario of faith — calling to God and hearing nothing.
2. The *devir* ('inner sanctuary, oracle room') is the Holy of Holies — the innermost chamber of the temple where the ark of the covenant rested and where God's presence was believed to dwell most intensely. The speaker lifts his hands (*nossi yadai*) toward this place as the directional focus of prayer. The hands lifted toward the *devir* are like antennae oriented toward the source of divine communication.
3. The contrast between *shalom* (spoken) and *raah* (harbored) is the defining characteristic of the wicked in this psalm. They are not openly violent but secretly malicious. This makes them more dangerous than obvious enemies — they destroy through deception rather than direct assault.
4. The fourfold repetition — *ke-fo'olam* ('according to their deeds'), *ke-roa maalleleihem* ('according to the evil of their practices'), *ke-maaseh yedeihem* ('according to the work of their hands'), *hashev gemulam lahem* ('repay their recompense to them') — is not rhetorical excess but legal precision. The speaker asks for strict proportional justice: let the punishment match the crime exactly. No more, no less. This is *lex talionis* applied to divine judgment.
5. The reason for judgment: *lo yavinu* ('they do not understand, they do not discern'). The wicked are not merely immoral — they are willfully obtuse. They refuse to see God's *peullot* ('works, actions') and *maaseh yadav* ('the work of his hands') in creation, history, and providence. The consequence: *yehershem* ('he will tear them down') *ve-lo yivnem* ('and will not rebuild them'). The architectural metaphor is final — demolition without reconstruction. God builds and tears down; those he tears down for willful blindness will not be rebuilt.
6. The eruption of *barukh YHWH* after five verses of desperate petition mirrors the pattern of Psalm 22, where lament gives way without explanation to praise. This pattern may reflect actual worship experience — a moment of assurance received during prayer — or it may be a theological assertion that God's hearing is certain regardless of how the speaker feels.
7. Three titles: *uzzi* ('my strength'), *maginni* ('my shield'), and the implicit savior (*neezarti*, 'I am helped/rescued'). The heart (*lev*) appears twice: it trusts (*batach*) and it leaps for joy (*yaaloz*). The same heart that was terrified of silence now exults. The verb *alaz* ('to exult, rejoice, be jubilant') describes spontaneous, uncontainable joy — the heart does not merely feel better; it leaps.
8. The scope expands from individual to national. *YHWH oz-lamo* ('the LORD is strength for them/his people') extends the speaker's experience to the entire community. *Maoz yeshuot meshicho* ('the saving refuge of his anointed') introduces the term *mashiach* ('anointed one') — referring to the Davidic king in its original context but carrying the weight of messianic expectation in later Jewish and Christian reading. The anointed one's salvation is not private — it encompasses the people.
9. The shift from personal thanksgiving to national intercession is characteristic of Davidic psalms — the king's private experience always has public implications. The king who has been rescued by God immediately turns to pray for the people who depend on him, because his rescue is their rescue.

29

Summary: *A thunderstorm psalm — the voice of the LORD crashes seven times across the landscape, shattering cedars, splitting flames, shaking the wilderness, stripping forests bare, and causing deer to writhe. The psalm opens with a summons to the heavenly beings to ascribe glory to the LORD, traces the storm's path from the Mediterranean coast eastward through Lebanon and the desert, and closes with the LORD enthroned over the cosmic flood, giving strength and peace to his people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sevenfold repetition of qol YHWH ('the voice of the LORD') is the structural backbone of the psalm. Seven is the number of divine completeness, and each occurrence of 'the voice' intensifies the storm: powerful, majestic, breaking cedars, splitting fire, shaking wilderness, causing deer to calve, stripping forests. The storm moves geographically from west to east — from the 'great waters' (Mediterranean, v. 3) through Lebanon and Sirion (v. 6) to the wilderness of Kadesh (v. 8). This is not a storm observed from shelter; it is a theophany — God's self-revelation through raw natural power. Some scholars have noted structural parallels with Ugaritic hymns to Baal the storm god, suggesting that this psalm may deliberately reassign Baal's attributes to YHWH: the God of Israel is the true lord of the storm.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase benei elim ('sons of the mighty' or 'sons of gods,' v. 1) addresses heavenly beings — members of the divine council — not human worshippers. The psalm's opening audience is not the congregation in the temple but the angelic assembly in heaven. This raises the question of who is 'overhearing' this cosmic worship and why. The answer may be that the psalm invites human worshippers to join a worship service already in progress among the heavenly beings. The 'flood' (mabbul, v. 10) appears only here and in the Genesis flood narrative, linking God's enthronement to his sovereignty over the primordial waters of chaos.*

Connections: *The 'voice of the LORD' as storm theophany connects to Exodus 19:16-19 (thunder at Sinai), 1 Kings 19:11-12 (the voice that was not in the wind, earthquake, or fire), and Job 37-38 (God speaking from the whirlwind). The cedar imagery links to 2 Kings 19:23 and Isaiah 2:13. The 'flood' (mabbul) of verse 10 connects to Genesis 6-9 and to the cosmic waters of Psalm 93:3-4. The closing benediction of strength (oz) and peace (shalom) anticipates the Aaronic blessing of Numbers 6:24-26. Jesus stilling the storm (Mark 4:35-41) demonstrates authority over the same forces celebrated in this psalm.*

¹A psalm of David.

Ascribe to the LORD, O heavenly beings!

Ascribe to the LORD glory and strength!

²Ascribe to the LORD the glory of his name;

bow down to the LORD in the splendor of holiness.

³The voice of the LORD is over the waters.

The God of glory thunders —

the LORD, over the great waters.

⁴The voice of the LORD is powerful;

the voice of the LORD is majestic.

⁵The voice of the LORD shatters the cedars;

the LORD shatters the cedars of Lebanon.

⁶He makes Lebanon skip like a calf,

and Sirion like a young wild ox.

7The voice of the LORD splits flames of fire.

8the LORD shakes the wilderness of Kadesh.
The voice of the LORD shakes the wilderness;

9The voice of the LORD makes the deer writhe in labor
and strips the forests bare.
And in his temple, all cry: "Glory!"

10The LORD sits enthroned over the flood;
the LORD sits enthroned as king forever.

11The LORD gives strength to his people;
the LORD blesses his people with peace.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Benei elim ('sons of the mighty') is linguistically related to benei ha-elohim ('sons of God') in Job 1:6, 2:1, and Genesis 6:2 — members of the heavenly council. The Septuagint translates this as 'sons of God.' The rendering 'heavenly beings' captures the meaning without importing later angelology into the text.
2. Kevod shemo ('the glory of his name') — the name bears the full weight of God's character, and the heavenly beings are to honor it accordingly. Hishtachavu ('bow down, prostrate yourselves') is the most physically complete gesture of worship — full-body prostration. Be-hadrat-qodesh ('in the splendor/adornment of holiness') could describe the worshippers dressed in holy garments or the setting of worship adorned with holiness. Either way, holiness is the environment in which true worship occurs.
3. The connection between thunder and divine speech is ancient and cross-cultural, but in the Hebrew Bible it carries specific theological freight. At Sinai, God spoke from the mountain with thunder and fire (Exodus 19:16-19). Here, the entire landscape becomes Sinai — God speaks from every direction.
4. Two attributes of the divine voice: ba-koach ('in power') and be-hadar ('in majesty, splendor'). The voice is both forceful and beautiful — it does not merely destroy; it overwhelms with grandeur. Koach is raw power; hadar is the aesthetic impact of that power. Together they describe an experience that is simultaneously terrifying and magnificent.
5. The cedars of Lebanon (arzei ha-Levanon) were the largest, strongest, most majestic trees in the ancient world — the ancient equivalent of skyscrapers. They were symbols of power, permanence, and human pride (Isaiah 2:13). When God's voice shatters (shover) them, it demonstrates power that dwarfs the most impressive works of nature. If the cedars cannot stand, nothing can.
6. Sirion is identified with Mount Hermon in Deuteronomy 3:9. The psalm traces the storm's path from the Mediterranean coast (v. 3) through the Lebanon range and Hermon (v. 6) and into the southern wilderness (v. 8), covering the entire north-south extent of the land.
7. Chotsev lahavot esh ('hewing/splitting flames of fire') — lightning. The verb chatsav means 'to hew, cut, quarry' — it is used for cutting stone. God's voice cuts fire the way a mason cuts rock. Lightning is presented not as random electrical discharge but as the deliberate craftsmanship of the divine voice shaping fire into bolts.
8. The storm has moved south from Lebanon to the midbar Qadesh ('wilderness of Kadesh') — either Kadesh-barnea in the Negev or a northern Kadesh in Syria. The verb chil/yachil ('to writhe, shake, tremble, be in labor') describes the wilderness convulsing as though in labor pains. The uninhabited wasteland — the place with no audience — trembles before God's voice. God does not need spectators to be powerful.
9. The single word kavod as the temple's response is extraordinarily compressed. Everything the storm displays — power, majesty, dominion over nature — is captured in one word. The brevity is the point: when you have witnessed what God's voice can do, no elaborate speech is needed. One word suffices.
10. The rarity of mabbul makes this verse unusually weighty. Every Hebrew reader would hear the Genesis flood in this word. The psalm is saying: the God whose voice just shattered cedars and shook the wilderness is the same God who once unmade the world with water and who now reigns over those same waters. His sovereignty is both terrifying and total.
11. The ending creates a profound theological statement: the same power that breaks cedars blesses people. God's strength (oz) is not diminished when given to his people — it is shared. And the result of receiving the strength of the storm-God is not terror but shalom. This is one of the most concise statements of the paradox of divine power in the Psalter.

30

Summary: *A thanksgiving psalm celebrating rescue from the brink of death. The superscription associates it with the dedication of the house (the temple or David's palace). David praises the LORD for pulling him up from Sheol, recounts his complacency before the crisis ('I said in my prosperity, I shall never be moved'), confesses that God hid his face and he was dismayed, and then declares that God has turned his mourning into dancing and clothed him with joy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's emotional honesty is arresting. David admits that prosperity made him complacent — 'In my ease I said: I will never be shaken' (v. 7). The Hebrew word shalvi ('my ease, my security, my prosperity') describes the dangerous comfort that comes from extended blessing. When everything goes well for long enough, the human heart starts to believe it deserves stability. Then God hid his face (histarta fanekha, v. 8), and the foundation collapsed. The psalm teaches that the prosperity itself was God's gift, and its removal was God's pedagogy. The most quoted line — 'Weeping may lodge for the night, but joy comes in the morning' (v. 6) — compresses an entire theology of suffering into a single sentence: sorrow is temporary and nocturnal; joy is permanent and diurnal. Darkness is the visitor; light is the resident.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription — mizmor shir chanukat ha-bayit le-David ('a psalm, a song for the dedication of the house, of David') — creates historical puzzlement. David did not build or dedicate the temple; Solomon did (1 Kings 8). The 'house' (bayit) may refer to David's palace (2 Samuel 5:11), or the superscription may indicate liturgical use at the later temple dedication, or at the Feast of Hanukkah (which takes its name from chanukah, 'dedication'). The psalm is indeed read during Hanukkah in Jewish tradition. The phrase 'you brought my soul up from Sheol' (v. 4) could be literal (near-death illness or battle wound) or figurative (a crisis so severe it felt like death). The psalm does not specify the nature of the crisis, which makes it universally applicable.*

Connections: *The descent-to-Sheol and rescue pattern connects to Jonah 2 (prayer from the belly of the fish), Psalm 18:4-6, and Psalm 116:3-8. The 'mourning into dancing' transformation (v. 12) echoes Jeremiah 31:13 ('I will turn their mourning into joy'). The 'morning joy' of verse 6 anticipates Lamentations 3:22-23 ('his mercies are new every morning'). The theological pattern — prosperity leading to complacency, crisis restoring dependence — runs through Deuteronomy 8:11-18 and Hosea 13:6.*

¹A psalm — a song for the dedication of the house. Of David.

²I will exalt you, O LORD, for you have drawn me up
and have not let my enemies gloat over me.

³O LORD my God, I cried to you for help,
and you healed me.

⁴O LORD, you brought my soul up from Sheol;
you kept me alive from among those going down to the pit.

⁵Sing praise to the LORD, you his faithful ones,
and give thanks to his holy name.

⁶For his anger lasts only a moment,
but his favor lasts a lifetime.
Weeping may lodge for the night,
but joy comes in the morning.

⁷As for me, I said in my ease:
"I will never be shaken."

⁸O LORD, by your favor you made my mountain stand strong;
you hid your face — I was dismayed.

⁹To you, O LORD, I called,
and to the Lord I pleaded for mercy.

¹⁰What profit is there in my death,
in my going down to the pit?
Can the dust praise you?
Can it declare your faithfulness?

¹¹Hear, O LORD, and be gracious to me!
O LORD, be my helper!

¹²You have turned my mourning into dancing;
you have removed my sackcloth
and clothed me with joy,

¹³so that my glory may sing your praise and not be silent.
O LORD my God, I will give thanks to you forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription combines *mizmor* ('psalm,' a musical composition) with *shir* ('song,' a vocal piece) — this is both instrumental and vocal. *Chanukat ha-bayit* ('the dedication of the house') uses the word *chanukah*, from which the Jewish festival takes its name. The 'house' is ambiguous — David's palace, the temple site, or a future liturgical context. In WLC versification, this superscription is verse 1.
2. *Dalah* ('to draw up') from a cistern or well creates a vivid image of depth and rescue. The *bor* ('pit') of Psalm 28:1 and the *Sheol* of verse 4 are the deep places from which God draws the speaker up. The well metaphor implies darkness, confinement, and helplessness at the bottom.
3. *Vattirpaeni* ('and you healed me') uses the verb *rapa* ('to heal, cure, restore'). This suggests the crisis may have been illness — or the word may be used broadly for any restoration of well-being. Either way, the pattern is simple and complete: I cried (*shivvati*), you healed (*tirpaeni*). The brevity mirrors the experience — when God acts, the transformation is swift.
4. The preposition *min* ('from') in *min-Sheol* could mean 'from Sheol' (he was already there) or 'from going to Sheol' (he was headed there). Either way, the proximity to death was extreme. The speaker does not overstate the crisis — he uses the strongest possible language because the crisis was genuinely life-threatening.
5. *Chasidav* ('his faithful ones, his devoted ones') — those who are bound to God by *chesed*, who have received and reciprocated God's covenant love. They are summoned to *zammeru* ('sing, make music') and *hodu* ('give thanks, confess, acknowledge'). The phrase *zekher qodsho* ('the remembrance/memorial of his holiness' or 'his holy name') treats God's holiness as something to be commemorated and declared publicly.
6. *Rega* ('a moment, an instant') is the smallest unit of time the Hebrew language can express. God's anger occupies a *rega*; God's favor occupies *chayyim* ('a whole life'). The disproportion is the point — wrath is a flicker; grace is the main event.
6. The verb *yalin* ('to lodge, to spend the night') applied to weeping treats sorrow as a temporary visitor. *Rinnah* ('a shout of joy, a ringing cry') is not quiet relief but vocal, public jubilation.
7. The phrase *bal-emmaot* ('I will not be shaken') echoes Psalm 21:8 and Psalm 16:8 — but there the stability comes from trusting in God, while here it comes from self-confidence born of prosperity. The same words carry opposite theological weight depending on their source.
8. *Histarta fanekha* ('you hid your face') is one of the most frightening phrases in the Psalter. The hidden face of God means the withdrawal of attention, favor, protection, and presence. It is the experience behind Psalm 22:1 ('why have you forsaken me?') and behind every dark night of the soul. Here, it serves a pedagogical purpose: God hid his face to show the speaker what his life was like without it.
9. Two names — *YHWH* and *Adonai* ('Lord, Master') — and two verbs — *eqa* ('I called') and *etchannan* ('I pleaded for grace/mercy'). The shift from complacent self-confidence (v. 7) to desperate prayer (v. 9) is the crisis itself: the speaker who said 'I will never be shaken' is now begging for mercy. The complacency had to break before the prayer could begin.

10. This argument — the dead cannot praise God — appears repeatedly in the Psalter (Psalm 6:5, 88:10-12, 115:17). It reflects a pre-resurrection understanding where Sheol is a place of silence and diminished existence. The speaker leverages this theology: keep me alive so I can keep worshipping.
11. Three imperatives in rapid succession: *shema* ('hear'), *chonnenei* ('be gracious to me'), *heyeh ozer li* ('be a helper to me'). The brevity reflects urgency — this is not elaborate liturgical prayer but compressed crisis communication. Every word is essential.
12. The reversal pairs are precise: mourning/dancing, sackcloth/joy, removal/clothing. Each pair represents a complete inversion — not gradual improvement but sudden, dramatic transformation. This is the 'morning joy' of verse 6 made concrete in the speaker's wardrobe.
13. *Kavod* ('glory') as a reference to the speaker's soul or inner being appears also in Psalm 16:9 ('my glory rejoices') and Psalm 57:8 ('awake, my glory'). The human *kavod* is the reflection of divine *kavod* — the part of a person capable of worship. To silence it through death would be to extinguish a flame that was meant to burn in praise.

31

Summary: *A psalm of David that moves from desperate plea to triumphant trust. The psalmist commits his spirit into the LORD's hands, cries out from a state of siege — scorned by enemies, forgotten by friends, his body wasting — and then pivots sharply into praise for the God who heard him. The psalm oscillates between terror and confidence, between the language of entrapment and the language of wide-open spaces, ultimately landing on a call for all who wait on the LORD to be strong.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 in Hebrew (v. 5 in English) — 'Into your hand I commit my spirit' (be-yadekha afqid ruchi) — became the most famous deathbed prayer in Western civilization when Jesus quoted it from the cross (Luke 23:46). But in its original context, this is not a dying man's last words; it is a living man's act of trust in the middle of crisis. David is not surrendering to death — he is surrendering to God instead of surrendering to fear. The verb *paqad* in the Hiphil (*afqid*) means 'to deposit, to entrust for safekeeping,' like leaving valuables with a trusted guardian. David treats his own life-breath (*ruach*) as something too precious for him to protect, so he hands it to God. The psalm's emotional range is extraordinary: it contains some of the most desolate language in the Psalter ('I am forgotten like a dead man out of mind, I have become like a broken vessel') alongside some of the most exuberant ('How great is your goodness that you have stored up for those who fear you').*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns the psalm to David (le-David), and the biographical details — enemies, conspiracies, a besieged city — fit many episodes in David's life. However, the phrase 'fortified city' (*ir mator*) in verse 22 has generated debate: some read it as David's confidence during a siege (perhaps at Keilah, 1 Samuel 23), while others emend to 'city of distress.' The LXX reads 'city of siege' without emendation. The verb *afqid* ('I commit/deposit') in verse 6 is a commercial term — entrusting goods for safekeeping — applied to the most intimate possible object: one's own spirit. This metaphor treats God as a banker of souls, which is a strikingly transactional image embedded in what is otherwise pure trust language.*

Connections: *The phrase 'Into your hand I commit my spirit' (v. 6) is quoted by Jesus on the cross in Luke 23:46 and by Stephen at his stoning in Acts 7:59. Verse 14 — 'My times are in your hand' — became a foundational text for Jewish and Christian theology of divine sovereignty over individual destiny. Psalm 31 shares vocabulary and themes with Psalm 22 (the cry of dereliction) and Psalm 71 (the aging sufferer who trusts in God). The language of being 'hidden in the shelter of your presence' (v. 21) echoes Psalm 27:5 and Psalm 91:1. Jeremiah appears to echo this psalm in several passages (Jeremiah 20:10 mirrors v. 14 closely), leading some scholars to call this a 'Jeremican psalm.'*

¹For the director of music. A psalm of David.

²In you, O LORD, I have taken refuge.
Let me never be put to shame.
In your righteousness, deliver me.

³Turn your ear toward me — rescue me quickly.
Be a rock of strength for me,
a fortified house to save me.

⁴For you are my rock and my fortress.
For the sake of your name,
lead me and guide me.

⁵Pull me out of the net they have hidden for me,
for you are my refuge.

⁶Into your hand I commit my spirit.
You have redeemed me, O LORD, God of truth.

⁷I despise those who cling to worthless idols,
but I — I trust in the LORD.

⁸I will rejoice and be glad in your faithful love,
for you have seen my affliction —
you have known the distress of my soul.

⁹You have not handed me over to the enemy.
You have set my feet in a wide-open place.

¹⁰Be gracious to me, O LORD, for I am in distress.
My eye wastes away from grief —
my soul and my body as well.

¹¹My life is spent in sorrow,
and my years in groaning.
My strength fails because of my affliction,
and my bones waste away.

¹²Because of all my adversaries I have become a disgrace —
especially to my neighbors — and a terror to my friends.
Those who see me in the street flee from me.

¹³I am forgotten like a dead man, gone from the heart.
I have become like a shattered vessel.

¹⁴For I have heard the whispering of many —
terror on every side! —
as they conspire together against me,
plotting to take my life.

¹⁵But I — I trust in you, O LORD.
I say, 'You are my God.'

¹⁶My times are in your hand.
Deliver me from the hand of my enemies
and from those who pursue me.

¹⁷Let your face shine upon your servant.
Save me in your faithful love.

¹⁸O LORD, let me not be put to shame, for I have called on you.
Let the wicked be shamed;
let them be silenced in Sheol.

¹⁹Let lying lips be struck silent —
those that speak arrogantly against the righteous
with pride and contempt.

²⁰How abundant is your goodness
that you have stored up for those who fear you,
that you have worked for those who take refuge in you
in the sight of all people!

²¹You hide them in the shelter of your presence
from the schemes of men.
You store them in a shelter
from the strife of tongues.

²²Blessed be the LORD,
for He has shown me His wondrous faithful love
in a city under siege.

²³I had said in my alarm,
'I am cut off from your sight!'
But you heard the voice of my pleas for mercy
when I cried out to you.

²⁴Love the LORD, all you His faithful ones!
The LORD preserves those who are trustworthy
and fully repays the one who acts in pride.

²⁵Be strong, and let your heart take courage,
all you who wait for the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription *la-menatseach* ('for the director of music') appears in fifty-five psalms and indicates liturgical use — this psalm was performed in corporate worship, not merely recorded as private prayer. The preposition *le-* in *le-David* can mean 'of David,' 'for David,' or 'belonging to the Davidic collection.'
2. The verb *chasah* ('to take refuge') is one of the Psalter's signature words, appearing over twenty-five times. It is concrete in origin — to flee to a sheltering rock, a fortress, a city of refuge — and metaphorical in application. David does not merely believe in God; he has physically and spiritually placed himself under God's protection.
2. The phrase *be-tsidqatekha palleteni* ('in your righteousness deliver me') makes God's moral character the basis for the appeal. *tsedaqah* here is not abstract justice but relational faithfulness — God's commitment to set things right for those in covenant with Him.
3. The verb *hatteh* ('incline, turn') asks God to bend down — an anthropomorphic image of the transcendent God lowering Himself to hear. The urgency is marked by *meherah* ('quickly, speedily'). Three fortress images pile up: *tsur maoz* ('rock of strength'), *beit metsudot* ('house of fortifications'), and the implied shelter behind them. David is not asking for comfort but for military protection — walls, rock, stronghold.

4. The shift from petition to declaration — 'you are my rock' (sal'i) — is characteristic of psalms of trust. David does not merely request that God become his fortress; he asserts that God already is. The phrase le-ma'an shimkha ('for the sake of your name') introduces a critical motive: God's own reputation is at stake. If God's declared protegee is destroyed, God's name is diminished before the nations.
5. The image shifts from fortress to hunting trap. The resheth ('net') is a snare laid in secret (tamenu, 'they have hidden') by unnamed enemies. The juxtaposition of 'net' and 'refuge' creates a spatial contrast: the enemies close in from below with traps, while God provides escape from above. The pronoun 'they' (tamenu) is deliberately vague — the threat is everywhere and from everyone.
6. The Hiphil of paqad (afqid) is a technical term for depositing goods with a trustee — see Exodus 22:6-12 for the legal framework. The depositor retains ownership; the trustee assumes responsibility for safekeeping. Applied to ruach ('spirit'), this creates a remarkable image: God holds my life in trust for me.
6. El emet ('God of truth') uses emet in its full semantic range — truth, reliability, faithfulness, constancy. God is not merely truthful in speech but dependable in character. The word emet shares a root with amen and emunah ('faithfulness').
7. The phrase havlei shav ('vanities of emptiness') combines two words for nothingness — hevel ('vapor, breath, vanity') and shav ('emptiness, falsehood, worthlessness'). The phrase likely refers to idol worship but encompasses any misplaced trust. The emphatic pronoun va-ani ('but I') creates a stark contrast: while others cling to vapor, David clings to the LORD.
8. The verb ra'itah ('you have seen') is not passive observation but attentive care — God sees affliction the way a parent sees a child's pain, with intent to respond. The verb yadata ('you have known') deepens this: God does not merely observe David's trouble from a distance; He knows it intimately, from inside. The pair 'seen' and 'known' together mean comprehensive awareness combined with compassionate engagement.
9. The noun merchav ('broad place, wide space') comes from rachav ('to be wide, spacious'). It is the opposite of tsar ('narrow, constricted'), from which tsarah ('distress, trouble') derives. Hebrew literally equates trouble with tightness and salvation with spaciousness. Psalm 18:19 uses the same image: 'He brought me out into a broad place.'
10. The sudden shift from praise (vv. 8-9) back to lament (vv. 10-14) is characteristic of psalms that refuse to smooth over the rawness of experience. The verb ashshab ('to waste away, to grow dim') describes physical deterioration — the eye literally failing from weeping. The three-part list (eye, soul, body/belly) traces the damage from surface to interior: tears ruin the eyes, grief erodes the soul, and the body itself collapses.
11. The phrase kalu be-yagon chayyai ('my life is consumed in grief') uses kalah ('to be completed, to be exhausted') — grief has used up his entire life. The word avoni is ambiguous: it can mean 'my iniquity' or 'my affliction/punishment.' Context favors 'affliction' here, since the psalm otherwise insists on the psalmist's innocence. The bones wasting away (atsamai asheshu) describes the total physical collapse that prolonged distress produces.
12. The social dimension of suffering is devastating here. The psalmist is not merely in pain but in shame (cherpah, 'reproach, disgrace'). His neighbors recoil, his friends are afraid of him, and strangers in the street actively avoid him. The verb nadedu ('they fled, they wandered away') suggests people crossing the street to avoid contact. Suffering has made him a social contagion.
13. The phrase mi-lev ('from the heart') specifies the kind of forgetting: not merely failing to recall a name but erasing someone from the place where affection lives. The keli oved ('perishing vessel') is a clay pot — cheap, common, and unrepairable once cracked. In a culture where pottery was disposable, this image carried the force of 'thrown in the garbage.'
14. The phrase magor mi-saviv ('terror on every side') appears in Jeremiah 6:25, 20:3, 20:10, and 46:5, leading many scholars to connect this psalm with Jeremiah's experience. In Jeremiah 20:10, the prophet quotes almost this exact line: 'I have heard the whispering of many — terror on every side! — Denounce him! Let us denounce him!' Whether David influenced Jeremiah or vice versa, the phrase captures the paranoia of being surrounded by conspirators who plot openly while the target listens helplessly.
15. The emphatic va-ani ('but I') makes the same contrast as verse 7: whatever others do, however desperate the situation, David's position is fixed. The declaration Elohai attah ('You are my God') is the simplest and most radical statement of faith in the Hebrew Bible — a personal claim on the God of the universe. The possessive 'my' is the word that matters most.
16. The noun ittot (plural of et, 'time') covers the full range of temporal experience — moments, seasons, appointed times, life-stages. In Ecclesiastes 3:1-8, the same word structures the famous 'a time for every purpose' passage. Here, David places all of those times under God's sovereign control.
17. The priestly blessing of Numbers 6:25 — 'The LORD make His face to shine upon you' — is here turned into personal petition. The 'shining face' of God means favor, attention, delight — the opposite of the hidden face that means abandonment. David calls himself avdekha ('your servant'), a title of both humility and privilege: a servant belongs to his master, and the master is obligated to protect what belongs to him.
18. The plea returns to the opening theme of shame (bosh). The logic is distributive: shame must fall somewhere — either on David for trusting God in vain, or on the wicked for opposing God's servant. David asks that it fall on the right party. The verb yiddemu ('let them be silenced') and the destination li-She'ol ('to Sheol, the underworld') combine: the wicked should be reduced to the silence of death.
19. The adjective ataq ('arrogant, insolent, presumptuous') describes speech that overreaches — words that are too bold, too brazen, too dismissive of the righteous. The combination of ga'avah ('pride') and buz ('contempt') describes the particular cruelty of those who mock the suffering of the faithful.
20. The verb tsafan ('to hide, to treasure up, to store') appears in Proverbs 2:7 with the same meaning: God stores up wisdom for the upright. The image suggests that God's goodness is not diminished by the delay in its appearance — it accumulates, like treasure in a vault, waiting for the right moment.

21. The phrase *be-seter panekha* ('in the hiding place of your face/presence') creates a paradox: God's face, which David asked to shine (v. 17), now becomes a hiding place for the faithful. The divine presence is simultaneously radiance for the beloved and concealment from enemies. The 'strife of tongues' (*riv leshonot*) identifies the primary weapon: not swords but words — slander, accusation, gossip.
22. The verb *hifli* ('He made wonderful, He showed wondrously') from the root *pala* ('to be extraordinary, to do wonders') — the same root that gives us the noun *pele* ('wonder'). God's faithful love (*chesed*) is not merely adequate but astonishing. The phrase *be-ir matsor* ('in a city of siege/fortress') is debated: it may mean God showed love while David was besieged, or it may mean God's love was itself like a fortified city. Both readings are theologically rich.
23. The word *chofzi* can mean 'haste' or 'alarm/panic.' The LXX renders it with *ekstasis* ('ecstasy' or 'astonishment'), suggesting an altered emotional state rather than simple hurry. The honesty of this verse is remarkable — David admits that his faith wavered, that he believed God had stopped watching. The psalm does not pretend that trust is uninterrupted.
24. The address shifts from God to the congregation. The *chasedav* ('His faithful ones') are those bound to God by *chesed* — the covenant-loyal community. The verb *notser* ('preserves, guards') and the verb *meshallem* ('repays, recompenses') create a double verdict: faithfulness is guarded; pride is repaid. The word *yeter* ('excess, abundance') modifies the repayment — God does not merely match but exceeds the measure of the proud person's arrogance.
25. The psalm closes with a communal exhortation. The two verbs *chizqu* ('be strong') and *ya'amets levavkhem* ('let your heart be courageous') are a standard pair for encouragement in the face of danger (cf. Deuteronomy 31:6, Joshua 1:6). The final word — *ha-meyachalim la-YHWH* ('those who wait/hope for the LORD') — defines the audience: people still in the middle of their crisis, still waiting for deliverance, not yet arrived at resolution. The psalm ends not with completed salvation but with sustained hope.

32

Summary: *One of the seven traditional penitential psalms, Psalm 32 is David's testimony of what happened when he tried to conceal sin and what happened when he finally confessed. The psalm opens with a double blessing on the forgiven, describes the physical torment of unconfessed guilt, narrates the moment of confession, and then expands into instruction for others. It is both personal testimony and wisdom teaching — a psalm that moves from autobiography to theology to exhortation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 32 contains the most concentrated deployment of Hebrew sin-vocabulary in the Psalter. Three words for sin appear in the opening two verses: pesha ('transgression, rebellion'), chata'ah ('sin, missing the mark'), and avon ('iniquity, moral crookedness'). These are not synonyms — they describe different dimensions of human failure. pesha is willful rebellion against authority; chata'ah is deviation from the right path; avon is the twisted distortion of what should be straight. Correspondingly, three words for forgiveness appear: nasui ('lifted, carried away'), kesui ('covered'), and lo yachshov ('not counted, not reckoned'). The three sins receive three removals. This is not accidental; the psalm is a theological architecture of complete forgiveness that addresses every category of human moral failure. The physical description of concealed guilt (vv. 3-4) — bones wasting, moisture dried up like summer heat — is among the most visceral accounts of psychosomatic suffering in ancient literature.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription calls this a maskil le-David ('a skillful poem of David'). The word maskil appears in thirteen psalm titles and its meaning is debated — it may mean 'instructive poem,' 'skillful composition,' or 'contemplative piece.' The traditional association with David's guilt over Bathsheba (2 Samuel 11-12) is not stated in the text but has been assumed since early rabbinic interpretation. The shift from first-person confession (vv. 1-7) to second-person instruction (vv. 8-9) has led some scholars to suggest the psalm combines two originally separate compositions, but this shift from testimony to teaching is a natural movement in wisdom literature.*

Connections: *Paul quotes verses 1-2 in Romans 4:7-8 as proof that righteousness is reckoned apart from works — God's forgiveness is a gift, not a wage. This makes Psalm 32 a foundational text for the doctrine of justification by faith. The three sin-words (pesha, chata'ah, avon) also appear together in Exodus 34:7, where God proclaims His own character as one who forgives all three categories. Psalm 51 is the other great Davidic penitential psalm and shares vocabulary with Psalm 32, but where Psalm 51 is the prayer of confession, Psalm 32 is the testimony after forgiveness has been received. The two psalms are complementary: Psalm 51 is the crisis; Psalm 32 is the aftermath.*

¹Of David. A maskil.

Blessed is the one whose transgression is lifted away,
whose sin is covered.

²Blessed is the person to whom the LORD does not count iniquity,
and in whose spirit there is no deceit.

³When I kept silent, my bones wasted away
through my groaning all day long.

⁴For day and night your hand was heavy upon me.
My vitality was changed
as in the dry heat of summer. Selah.

⁵My sin I made known to you,
and my iniquity I did not conceal.
I said, 'I will confess my transgressions to the LORD' —
and you lifted away the guilt of my sin. Selah.

⁶Therefore let everyone who is faithful pray to you
at a time when you may be found.
Surely when the great waters rise,
they will not reach him.

⁷You are my hiding place.
You preserve me from trouble.
You surround me with shouts of deliverance. Selah.

⁸I will instruct you and teach you
in the way you should go.
I will counsel you with my eye upon you.

⁹Do not be like a horse or a mule, without understanding,
whose movement must be curbed with bit and bridle —
otherwise they will not come near you.

¹⁰Many are the sorrows of the wicked,
but the one who trusts in the LORD —
faithful love surrounds him.

¹¹Be glad in the LORD and rejoice, you righteous!
Shout for joy, all you who are upright in heart!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word maskil in the superscription has generated extensive scholarly debate. It may derive from sakal ('to be prudent, to instruct') and thus mean 'instructive psalm' or 'psalm of insight.' The LXX renders it synesis ('understanding'). Whatever its exact meaning, it marks this psalm as having a didactic purpose — it teaches something.
1. The passive participles nesui ('lifted away') and kesui ('covered') describe the state of the forgiven person, not the act of forgiveness. The person is walking around with their transgression already removed. The blessing is pronounced on a present condition, not a future hope.

2. Paul's use of this verse in Romans 4:7-8 (quoting the LXX) became the cornerstone of Protestant justification theology. The non-imputation of sin (lo yachshov avon) is read as the positive imputation of righteousness — a forensic declaration that changes the sinner's standing before God. Whether the psalmist intended this level of systematic theology is debatable, but the accounting metaphor (chashav) certainly supports a forensic reading.
2. The phrase ein be-rucho remiyyah ('in whose spirit there is no deceit') is sometimes read as a second condition for blessedness: the forgiven person must also be honest. Others read it as a result of forgiveness: once the sin is dealt with, the need for self-deception vanishes. Both readings are theologically coherent.
3. The psychosomatic description here anticipates modern understanding of the physical effects of unresolved guilt: insomnia, exhaustion, physical deterioration. The Hebrew poets understood intuitively that concealed guilt attacks the body. The 'roaring' (she'agah) may refer to wordless cries of pain — the body's protest against the soul's dishonesty.
4. The word leshadi is one of the most debated terms in the psalm. Some derive it from lashad ('moisture, freshness, vigor'), others emend to libbadi ('my heart'). The LXX reads 'I was turned to wretchedness.' Whatever the exact reading, the image is clear: something essential within David was desiccated by the sustained pressure of God's disciplining hand.
4. Selah appears here, marking a musical or liturgical pause. Its exact meaning remains unknown, but its placement after the description of divine pressure and physical collapse suggests a moment for the congregation to absorb the weight of what has been described.
5. The verb nasata ('you lifted, you carried away') is the same root as nesui in verse 1. God lifts the iniquity off David's back and carries it away. The wordplay between lo khissiti ('I did not cover') in verse 5 and kesui ('covered') in verse 1 is deliberate: when the sinner stops covering sin, God covers it. When the sinner tries to cover sin, God exposes the consequences through suffering.
5. The phrase avon chatta'ti ('the guilt/iniquity of my sin') stacks two sin-words together, as if to say: God removed not just the sin itself but the guilt that the sin produced — the entire complex of offense, shame, and consequence.
6. The phrase le-et metso ('at a time of finding') echoes Isaiah 55:6: 'Seek the LORD while He may be found.' The implication is that there is a window for confession — a time when God's ear is open — and wisdom seizes it. The 'great waters' (mayim rabbim) symbolize overwhelming catastrophe in the Psalter (cf. Psalm 18:16, 69:1-2). The confessed sinner is elevated above the flood; the one who refuses to confess drowns in guilt. David's experience becomes a paradigm: confess while there is time, before the waters rise.
7. The declaration attah seter li ('you are my hiding place') transforms the earlier imagery: God was the heavy hand of discipline (v. 4), but now He is the shelter of protection. The phrase ronnei fallet ('shouts/songs of deliverance') describes David as encircled — not by enemies but by celebrations of rescue. The verb tesoveveni ('you surround me') uses the same verb that could describe a siege, but here the surrounding is joyful. Where guilt surrounded David with groaning, forgiveness surrounds him with songs.
8. The speaker shifts — most interpreters read this as God speaking to David, though some read it as David speaking to others. The verb askil (Hiphil of sakal, 'to make wise, to instruct') connects to the superscription maskil. Three verbs of guidance pile up: instruct, teach, counsel. The phrase i'atsah alekha eini ('I will counsel with my eye upon you') means intimate, personal guidance — not a rulebook but a relationship. God watches and directs in real time, like a parent guiding a child with a glance.
9. The animal comparison is sharp: a horse or mule (pered) requires physical force (bit and bridle) because it lacks understanding (ein havin). The implication is that David was acting like a stubborn animal during his period of concealment — God had to use physical pressure (v. 4) because David refused to respond to wisdom. The instruction is: respond to God's gentle eye (v. 8), not His heavy hand (v. 4). Be teachable, not stubborn.
10. The contrast is stark: the wicked have makh'ovim ('pains, sorrows') as their surrounding environment, while the trusting person is surrounded (yesovevennu, the same verb as v. 7) by chesed ('faithful love'). The verb savav ('to surround') appears in both verse 7 and verse 10, creating a frame: what surrounds you depends on where you stand. The wicked are encircled by pain; the faithful are encircled by love.
11. The psalm ends with communal celebration. Three verbs of joy — simchu ('be glad'), gil'u ('rejoice'), harninu ('shout for joy') — address two groups: tsaddiqim ('righteous ones') and yishrei lev ('upright in heart'). The irony is rich: this is a penitential psalm — it began with the confession of grave sin — yet it ends with the righteous rejoicing. The forgiven sinner is now counted among the righteous. The upright heart of verse 11 is the spirit without deceit from verse 2. Forgiveness does not merely restore the sinner to neutral status; it places him among the rejoicing righteous.

33

Summary: *Psalm 33 is a hymn of praise to the LORD as Creator and Sovereign, calling the righteous to worship with instruments and a new song. The psalm moves from the call to praise (vv. 1-3) through the reasons for praise: God's word is reliable (vv. 4-5), His word created the cosmos (vv. 6-9), His plan overrules the nations (vv. 10-12), He watches all humanity from heaven (vv. 13-15), military power cannot save (vv. 16-17), and only those who fear Him and hope in His faithful love are truly secure (vv. 18-22). It is one of the few psalms in Book I without a Davidic superscription.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 33 contains one of the Hebrew Bible's most concise statements of creation theology: 'By the word of the LORD the heavens were made, and by the breath of His mouth all their host' (v. 6). This single verse became a cornerstone of the doctrine of creation ex nihilo — God speaks and reality appears. The verb tsivvah ('He commanded') in verse 9 and the result vayyaamod ('it stood firm') compress the entire creation narrative into two words: command and existence. There is no effort, no struggle, no theogonic battle. God speaks; the cosmos obeys. This is creation as pure speech-act. The psalm also offers a devastating critique of military power: the war-horse is a 'vain hope for deliverance' (v. 17), and no king is saved by the size of his army (v. 16). In a world where Near Eastern kings boasted of their chariots and cavalry, this psalm says their entire military apparatus is irrelevant to the question of actual security.*

Translation Friction: *This is one of the 'orphan psalms' in Book I — it has no superscription attributing it to David or anyone else. The LXX adds 'of David,' but the Hebrew text stands alone. Some scholars note that Psalm 33 has exactly twenty-two verses, matching the number of letters in the Hebrew alphabet, and suggest it may have originally been an acrostic that was reworked. The phrase shir chadash ('new song') in verse 3 is intriguing — what makes a song 'new'? Some interpreters argue it refers to a fresh composition for a specific occasion; others see it as a theological statement: every encounter with God's faithfulness requires a response that cannot be borrowed from the past.*

Connections: *The opening call — 'Rejoice in the LORD, you righteous' — echoes the final verse of Psalm 32, creating a literary link between the two psalms (some scholars treat Psalm 33 as an extended response to Psalm 32's closing exhortation). The creation-by-word theology of verses 6-9 connects to Genesis 1 (where God creates by speaking), John 1:1-3 (where the Word is the agent of creation), and Hebrews 11:3 (where the worlds were framed by the word of God). The critique of military power (vv. 16-17) echoes Psalm 20:7 ('Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we trust in the name of the LORD our God') and Isaiah 31:1 ('Woe to those who go down to Egypt for help and rely on horses').*

¹Shout for joy in the LORD, you righteous!

Praise is fitting for the upright.

²Give thanks to the LORD with the lyre.

With the ten-stringed harp, make music to Him.

³Sing to Him a new song.

Play skillfully with a shout of triumph.

⁴For the word of the LORD is upright,
and all His work is done in faithfulness.

⁵He loves righteousness and justice.

The earth is full of the faithful love of the LORD.

⁶By the word of the LORD the heavens were made,
and all their host by the breath of His mouth.

⁷He gathers the waters of the sea as in a heap.
He puts the deep waters in storehouses.

⁸May all the earth fear the LORD.
May all the inhabitants of the world stand in awe of Him.

⁹For He spoke, and it came to be.
He commanded, and it stood firm.

¹⁰The LORD frustrates the plans of the nations.
He thwarts the purposes of the peoples.

¹¹The plan of the LORD stands forever,
the purposes of His heart to all generations.

¹²Blessed is the nation whose God is the LORD,
the people He has chosen as His own inheritance.

¹³From heaven the LORD looks down.
He sees all the children of humanity.

¹⁴From the place where He dwells
He gazes on all the inhabitants of the earth.

¹⁵He who fashions all their hearts alike,
He who understands all their deeds.

¹⁶A king is not saved by the size of his army.
A warrior is not delivered by great strength.

¹⁷The war-horse is a false hope for victory.
Despite its great strength, it cannot save.

¹⁸See — the eye of the LORD is on those who fear Him,
on those who hope in His faithful love,

¹⁹and to keep them alive in famine.
to deliver their lives from death

²⁰Our soul waits for the LORD.
He remains our help and our shield.

²¹For in Him our heart rejoices,
because in His holy name we trust.

²²Let your faithful love, O LORD, be upon us,
just as we have placed our hope in you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *rannenu* ('shout for joy, sing aloud') is more vigorous than ordinary singing — it is an exuberant, full-throated cry. The adjective *na'avah* ('fitting, seemly, beautiful') suggests that praise is not merely an obligation but an aesthetic match: righteous people and praise go together naturally, like music and rhythm. Praise looks right on them.

2. The kinnor ('lyre') was a portable stringed instrument associated with David (1 Samuel 16:23). The nevel asor ('ten-stringed harp' or 'ten-stringed lute') was a larger instrument. Together they represent the full ensemble of Israelite worship music. The verb *zammeru* ('make music, sing praise') is the root of *mizmor* ('psalm'), connecting this instrument-call to the Psalter itself.
3. The phrase *shir chadash* ('new song') appears six times in the Hebrew Bible (here, Psalms 40:3, 96:1, 98:1, 144:9, and Isaiah 42:10). It does not merely mean a recently composed song but a song that responds to a fresh act of God — new mercy demands new music. The adverb *hetivu* ('do well, play skillfully') demands excellence: worship is not a casual performance but a craft requiring the best the musician can offer. The *teruah* ('shout, blast, acclamation') adds a vocal and possibly instrumental dimension — a trumpet-like blast of triumph.
4. The adjective *yashar* ('straight, upright, right') applied to God's word means it never deviates, never misleads, never curves away from truth. The noun *emunah* ('faithfulness, reliability, constancy') applied to God's works means everything God does is rooted in His unshakable character. Word and work are aligned — what God says and what God does are a single consistent reality.
5. The pair *tsedaqah u-mishpat* ('righteousness and justice') describes God's moral character as both relational (*tsedaqah*) and judicial (*mishpat*). The second line makes a staggering claim: *chesed YHWH male'ah ha-arets* ('the faithful love of the LORD fills the earth'). Not the temple, not Israel, not the heavens — the entire earth is saturated with God's covenant love. This is a universal theological statement embedded in a hymn of Israelite worship.
6. The word *ruach* ('breath/spirit/wind') creates a bridge between the physical and spiritual dimensions of creation. When God speaks, His breath carries the words, and that breath is also the Spirit that gives life. Genesis 1:2 ('the Spirit of God hovered over the waters') and Genesis 2:7 ('God breathed into his nostrils the breath of life') use the same word. Creation is God breathing reality into existence.
7. The image of God gathering the sea *ka-ned* ('as a heap, as a mound') echoes the crossing of the Red Sea (Exodus 15:8) and the Jordan (Joshua 3:13, 16), where the waters stood in a heap. God treats the ocean — the most powerful and chaotic force in the ancient world — like a commodity to be stored in warehouses (*otsarot*, 'storehouses, treasuries'). The *tehomot* ('deeps, abysses') that terrified ancient Near Eastern peoples are God's inventory.
8. The scope is universal: *kol ha-arets* ('all the earth') and *kol yoshvei tevel* ('all inhabitants of the world'). The verb *yaguru* ('let them tremble, let them stand in awe') is stronger than ordinary fear — it describes the trembling that comes in the presence of overwhelming power. If God can gather oceans and store abysses, the only rational response from every human being is reverent awe.
9. The compression of this verse is itself a literary achievement — four words per line, with no connective tissue, no elaboration. The form mirrors the content: God's creative speech is terse, efficient, absolute. The echoes of Genesis 1 ('and God said... and it was so') are unmistakable, but the psalm compresses the creation narrative's repetitive formula into a single devastating couplet.
10. The verb *hefir* ('He broke, He annulled, He frustrated') from *parar* ('to break, to violate') means God actively dismantles the strategies of nations. The verb *heni* ('He thwarted, He made futile') from *nu* ('to shake, to hinder') means God shakes their plans until they collapse. The parallelism between *goyim* ('nations') and *ammim* ('peoples') is universal: no political entity, however powerful, can execute plans that contradict God's purposes.
11. The contrast with verse 10 is total: nations' plans are frustrated; God's plan stands (*ta'amod*, the same verb as v. 9 — what God speaks stands, what God plans stands). The phrase *machshevot libbo* ('the purposes of His heart') is striking — God's plans are not cold calculations but expressions of His heart's intent. The permanence markers *le-olam* ('forever') and *le-dor va-dor* ('to generation and generation') emphasize that God's purposes outlast every empire.
12. The *ashrei* ('blessed') formula from Psalm 32:1-2 returns, now applied not to an individual but to a nation. The word *nachalah* ('inheritance, possession, heritage') is a land-distribution term: in the conquest narratives, each tribe received its *nachalah*. Here the image is reversed: the people are God's inheritance. God has chosen Israel the way a firstborn chooses an estate — they are His valued possession.
13. The verb *hibbit* ('He looked, He gazed attentively') implies focused, purposeful observation — not a casual glance but a sovereign survey. The scope is universal: *kol bene ha-adam* ('all the sons of humanity'). God's vision is not limited to Israel; He observes every human being. This verse sets up the futility of military confidence in verses 16-17: if God sees everything from above, no hidden strategy or superior force can escape His notice.
14. The phrase *mekhon shivto* ('the established place of His dwelling') refers to God's heavenly throne — the fixed, permanent seat from which He governs. The verb *hishgiach* ('He looked out, He peered, He observed carefully') suggests looking through a window or from a watchtower — attentive surveillance of the entire earth.
15. The verb *yotser* ('the one who forms, who fashions') is the potter-word — the same verb used in Genesis 2:7 for God forming humanity from clay. Because God shaped every human heart, He understands every human motive. The verb *mevin* ('He understands, He discerns') goes beyond observation to comprehension. God does not merely see what people do; He grasps why they do it. The word *yachad* ('together, alike') means God fashioned all human hearts with the same capacity — no one has a heart so complex that God cannot read it.
16. The declaration *ein hammelek shosha* ('the king is not saved') would have been politically provocative in any ancient Near Eastern context, where kings derived their legitimacy from military victories. The phrase *be-rov chayil* ('by abundance of force') and *be-rov koach* ('by abundance of strength') dismiss the two things every king cultivated: large armies and powerful soldiers. The psalm declares both irrelevant to actual security.

17. The word sheqer ('falsehood, deception, lie') applied to the horse is remarkable — the horse literally lies to you. It promises security and cannot deliver. The sus ('horse') in ancient Israel was primarily a military animal — war-horses pulled chariots and carried cavalry. Deuteronomy 17:16 explicitly forbade the king from multiplying horses, recognizing that military hardware becomes a substitute for trust in God. The psalm agrees: the horse is a beautiful, powerful lie.
18. The particle hinneh ('behold, see, look!') commands attention — after dismissing armies and war-horses, the psalm reveals where true security lies. The 'eye of the LORD' (ein YHWH) is the same comprehensive vision from verses 13-14, now focused specifically on the faithful. Being seen by God — which could be terrifying for the wicked — is comfort for those who fear Him and hope in His chesed.
19. The two threats — death (mavet) and famine (ra'av) — represent the ultimate physical dangers. God's watchful eye does not merely observe; it intervenes. The infinitives lehatsil ('to deliver') and lechayotam ('to keep them alive') describe ongoing, active preservation. The God who created the cosmos by a word now sustains individual lives through attentive care.
20. The shift to first-person plural (nafshenu, 'our soul') marks the congregation's response to the psalm's teaching. The verb chikketah ('has waited, waits') implies patient, expectant endurance — not passive waiting but active trust sustained over time. The titles ezrenu ('our help') and maginnenu ('our shield') compress God's role to two essentials: He assists and He protects.
21. The logic is circular in the best sense: trust produces joy, and joy confirms trust. The phrase be-shem qodsho ('in His holy name') means trust is placed not in an abstract concept but in the revealed character (shem, 'name') of God — everything God has shown Himself to be. The holiness (qodesh) of the name means it is set apart, utterly reliable, incorruptible.
22. The psalm closes with a prayer that matches God's faithful love (chesed) to the congregation's hope (yichal). The phrase ka'asher yichalnnu lakh ('just as we have hoped in you') does not demand a proportional transaction — it asks that the reality of God's love match the depth of the congregation's trust. The psalm that began with a call to shout for joy ends with a quiet, intimate petition: let your love be as real as our hope.

34

Summary: *An acrostic psalm of David, composed when he feigned madness before Abimelech (the superscription's name for Achish king of Gath, 1 Samuel 21:10-15). The psalm is a wisdom-flavored hymn of thanksgiving that moves from personal testimony ('I sought the LORD and He answered me') to communal invitation ('Taste and see that the LORD is good') to didactic instruction ('Come, children, listen to me — I will teach you the fear of the LORD'). Each verse begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet, giving the psalm the feel of an orderly, comprehensive meditation on the goodness of God toward the afflicted.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 9 — ta'amu u-re'u ki tov YHWH ('taste and see that the LORD is good') — is one of the most sensory theological invitations in all of Scripture. The verb ta'am ('to taste') demands physical experience, not intellectual assent. You cannot taste something from a distance; you must take it into your mouth. The psalmist is not arguing that God is good; he is daring the listener to experience God's goodness directly. This is empirical theology: try it and find out. The Christian tradition adopted this verse into eucharistic liturgy, where tasting the bread and wine becomes tasting the goodness of God. But in its original context, the invitation is broader: every experience of divine rescue is a 'tasting' of God's goodness. The acrostic form is itself remarkable — the poet has disciplined an outpouring of gratitude into alphabetic order, as if to say that praise can be both spontaneous and structured, both emotional and orderly.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription refers to 'Abimelech' (Avimelekh), but the biblical narrative in 1 Samuel 21 names the Philistine king as Achish. Abimelech may be a dynastic title for Philistine kings (like 'Pharaoh' for Egyptian rulers), or the superscription may reflect a different tradition. The acrostic is nearly perfect but omits the letter vav (the sixth letter) and adds a pe-verse at the end (v. 23) that falls outside the alphabet, suggesting either textual corruption or deliberate poetic license. Some scholars argue that acrostic psalms are inherently artificial — the alphabetic constraint forces content to fit a formal pattern — but the theological coherence of this psalm argues against dismissing it as mere formal exercise.*

Connections: *Verse 9 ('Taste and see that the LORD is good') is quoted in 1 Peter 2:3 as an invitation to new believers. Verse 15 ('The eyes of the LORD are toward the righteous, and His ears toward their cry') and verse 17 ('The righteous cry out, and the LORD hears') are quoted in 1 Peter 3:12. Verse 21 ('He guards all his bones; not one of them is broken') is applied to Jesus in John 19:36, connecting the righteous sufferer of the psalm to the crucified Messiah. The wisdom-teaching section (vv. 12-15) closely parallels Proverbs' instruction format: 'Come, children, listen to me.' The acrostic structure links this psalm to Psalms 25, 37, 111, 112, 119, and 145.*

¹Of David, when he disguised his sanity before Abimelech, who drove him away, and he departed.

²I will bless the LORD at all times.
His praise will always be in my mouth.

³In the LORD my soul will boast.
Let the humble hear and be glad.

⁴and let us exalt His name together.
Magnify the LORD with me,

⁵I sought the LORD, and He answered me
and delivered me from all my terrors.

⁶Those who look to Him are radiant,
and their faces will never be ashamed.

⁷This poor man cried out, and the LORD heard him
and saved him from all his troubles.

⁸The angel of the LORD encamps
around those who fear Him and delivers them.

⁹Taste and see that the LORD is good.
Blessed is the person who takes refuge in Him.

¹⁰Fear the LORD, you His holy ones,
for there is no lack for those who fear Him.

¹¹Young lions may lack and go hungry,
but those who seek the LORD lack no good thing.

¹²Come, children, listen to me.
I will teach you the fear of the LORD.

¹³Who is the person who desires life,
who loves many days and wants to see good?

¹⁴Guard your tongue from evil
and your lips from speaking deceit.

¹⁵Turn away from evil and do good.
Seek peace and pursue it.

¹⁶and His ears are open to their cry.
The eyes of the LORD are toward the righteous,

¹⁷The face of the LORD is against those who do evil,
to cut off their memory from the earth.

¹⁸The righteous cry out, and the LORD hears
and delivers them from all their troubles.

¹⁹The LORD is near to the brokenhearted
and saves those who are crushed in spirit.

²⁰but the LORD delivers him out of them all.
Many are the afflictions of the righteous,

²¹He guards all his bones.
Not one of them is broken.

²²Evil will slay the wicked,
and those who hate the righteous will be condemned.

²³The LORD redeems the life of His servants,
and none who take refuge in Him will be condemned.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *be-shannoto et ta'mo* ('when he changed his discernment/behavior') uses the same root (*ta'am*) that will appear in verse 9 ('taste and see'). The word *ta'am* means both 'taste/discernment' and 'behavior/judgment.' David altered his *ta'am* (pretended to be insane) before Abimelech, and now he invites others to *ta'am* (taste) God's goodness. The wordplay connects the humiliating survival strategy (feigning madness) with the exalted theological conclusion (God is good). The name Abimelech ('my father is king') may be a throne-name for the Philistine king called Achish in 1 Samuel 21.
2. The aleph-verse. The phrase *be-khol et* ('at all times') and *tamid* ('continually, always') together eliminate any exception — there is no circumstance in which praise is inappropriate. David's commitment to bless God is not conditional on God's blessing of David. The word *tehillatov* ('His praise') will become the Hebrew name for the entire book of Psalms: *Tehillim*.
3. The bet-verse. The verb *titballel* ('will boast, will glory') in the *Hitpael* is reflexive-intensive: the soul exults in God as its supreme identity. The *anavim* ('humble, afflicted, poor') are the psalm's primary audience — those who have been brought low by suffering and know they have no resource but God. David's testimony is directed specifically to people who are still in the kind of trouble he just escaped.
4. The gimel-verse. The verb *gaddelu* ('magnify, make great') does not mean making God larger — God cannot be enlarged — but declaring His greatness publicly. The word *yachdav* ('together, in unity') insists that praise is communal. David does not hoard his testimony; he recruits others to join the celebration.
5. The dalet-verse. The verb *darashti* ('I sought') means intensive, purposeful seeking — not a casual prayer but a desperate pursuit. The noun *megurotai* ('my fears, my terrors') from *gur* ('to dread, to be afraid') describes the kind of fear that paralyzes. David was terrified (remember, he was pretending to be insane to avoid execution), and God delivered him from every fear. Not some — all (*mi-kol*).
6. The he-verse. The verb *naharu* ('they were radiant, they beamed, they shone') describes faces lit up from within — the visible transformation that comes from turning toward God. The word is related to *nahar* ('river, stream') and possibly to 'light flowing.' Those who look at God catch His light. The negation *al yechparu* ('their faces will not be shamed/darkened') contrasts radiance with the darkening of shame.
7. The zayin-verse. The demonstrative *zeh* ('this one') is emphatic and personal — David points to himself: this poor man, this particular sufferer, this specific person standing before you. The word *ani* ('poor, afflicted, humble') connects David to the *anavim* of verse 3. Despite being a king, David identifies as one of the afflicted. The testimony is concrete and particular: I cried, God heard, God saved.
8. The chet-verse. The verb *choneh* ('encamps') is a military term — the angel of the LORD sets up a military camp around the faithful, creating a perimeter of divine protection. The image is not of a single guardian angel but of an angelic army establishing a defensive position. The verb *yechaltsem* ('He delivers them, He rescues them') means 'to pull out, to extract from danger' — a rescue operation, not mere comfort.
9. The sensory theology of this verse has had enormous influence. In Christian eucharistic traditions, the verse is read during communion, connecting the physical act of eating bread and wine with the spiritual act of experiencing God's goodness. In its original Hebrew context, the 'tasting' is more broadly experiential — every divine rescue, every answered prayer, every provision is a taste of God's character.
9. The wordplay with *ta'am* from the superscription (v. 1) is essential: David changed his *ta'am* ('discernment/behavior') before Abimelech, and now he invites others to *ta'am* ('taste') God's goodness. What looked like insanity was actually wisdom — and the proof is in the tasting.
10. The yod-verse. The *qedoshav* ('His holy ones, His set-apart ones') are the covenant community — people consecrated to God's service. The promise *ein machsor* ('there is no lack, no want') does not mean wealth but sufficiency. Those who fear God have what they need. The proof follows in verse 11.

11. The kaf-verse. The kefirim ('young lions') are the apex predators of the ancient Near East — the most powerful, the most feared, the most self-sufficient. Even they grow hungry. But those who seek (dorshei) the LORD will not lack kol tov ('any good thing'). The comparison is deliberately provocative: the strongest creature in the wild is less secure than the weakest person who depends on God.
12. The shift from praise to pedagogy is natural in Israelite worship — the temple was a place of both praise and instruction. The phrase yirat YHWH alemmedkhem ('the fear of the LORD I will teach you') treats the fear of God not as a spontaneous emotion but as a learnable skill. It can be taught and acquired, practiced and perfected.
13. The mem-verse. The rhetorical question mi ha-ish ('who is the man?') engages the listener directly — everyone wants life and good days. The phrase ohev yamim lir'ot tov ('loving days to see good') describes the universal human desire for a long and good life. The wisdom teacher's strategy is to begin with what everyone wants and then show the path to it.
14. The nun-verse. The instruction begins with speech — netsor leshonkha me-ra ('guard your tongue from evil'). In wisdom literature, the tongue is the most dangerous part of the body (Proverbs 18:21: 'Death and life are in the power of the tongue'). The word mirmah ('deceit, treachery, fraud') describes speech that misrepresents reality. The fear of the LORD begins with honest speech.
15. The samekh-verse. Four imperatives in rapid succession: sur ('turn away'), aseh ('do'), baqqesh ('seek'), rodefehu ('pursue it'). The progression intensifies: turning from evil is passive avoidance; doing good is active engagement; seeking peace is deliberate effort; pursuing peace (radfat, the same verb used for military pursuit) is aggressive commitment. Peace (shalom) is not something that arrives on its own — it must be hunted down like prey. 1 Peter 3:10-11 quotes verses 13-15 directly.
16. The ayin-verse. God's eyes (einei) and ears (oznav) — the organs of attention — are directed toward the righteous. The preposition el ('toward') suggests movement, not merely position: God leans toward the righteous, inclines in their direction. The shav'atam ('their cry for help') is not formal prayer but the raw cry of distress. God hears unpolished screams as clearly as liturgical prayers.
17. The pe-verse. The same 'face' (penei) that shines on the righteous (Psalm 31:17) is set against (be-) evildoers. The consequence is lehakhrit me-erets zikhram ('to cut off their memory from the earth') — not merely death but the erasure of legacy. In a culture where one's 'name' (memory, reputation, posterity) was the closest thing to immortality, this is the ultimate punishment.
18. The tsade-verse. The structure mirrors verse 7 almost exactly (the poor man cried / the LORD heard / He saved him). The repetition is deliberate: the testimony of one becomes the experience of many. The word mi-kol tsarotam ('from all their troubles') insists on comprehensive deliverance — not partial relief but total rescue.
19. The pairing of nishberei lev ('brokenhearted') and dakke'ei ruach ('crushed in spirit') covers the full interior of the person: lev ('heart') is the center of will and thought; ruach ('spirit') is the animating life-force. Both are broken. And both are the objects of God's nearness. Isaiah 57:15 echoes this verse: God dwells 'with the crushed and lowly in spirit, to revive the spirit of the lowly.'
20. The resh-verse. The psalm does not promise the righteous will avoid trouble — it promises they will be delivered through it. The word rabbot ('many') is honest: afflictions are numerous and persistent. But the counterbalance is mi-kullam ('out of all of them') — God's deliverance is as comprehensive as the suffering is extensive. The theology is not prosperity-gospel optimism but realistic trust: trouble will come, and God will rescue.
21. The shin-verse. The image of guarding bones (shomer kol atsmotav) represents preserving the person's essential structure — bones are the framework that holds a person together. The phrase achat mehennah lo nishbarah ('not one of them is broken') is applied to Jesus in John 19:36 (where the soldiers did not break His legs on the cross). In the psalm's original context, it describes God's protective care for the righteous sufferer — however many afflictions come, the person's core is preserved.
22. The tav-verse. The verb temotet ('will slay, will put to death') describes evil as self-destroying — the wicked person's own evil becomes the executioner. The verb ye'shamu ('will be held guilty, will be condemned, will be desolate') from ashame encompasses both guilt and its consequences. Those who hate the righteous will themselves be found guilty.
23. This extra pe-verse falls outside the acrostic sequence, functioning as a coda or doxological conclusion. The verb podeh ('redeems, ransoms') is the language of buying back a slave or a condemned person — God pays the price to secure the release of His servants. The final promise — ve-lo ye'shemu kol ha-chosim bo ('none who take refuge in Him will be condemned') — closes the psalm with the same verb (chasah, 'to take refuge') that appeared in verse 9. The psalm ends where it began: in the shelter of God's goodness.

35

Summary: *A psalm of David calling on God to fight his enemies — those who repay his kindness with hostility, who bring false accusations, and who gloat over his suffering. The psalm divides into three cycles of complaint and petition (vv. 1-10, 11-18, 19-28), each ending with a vow of praise. David asks God to take up shield and spear, to ambush his persecutors in their own traps, and to vindicate him publicly. It is one of the most vigorous imprecatory psalms in the Psalter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's most distinctive feature is the portrait of betrayal in verses 12-14: David's enemies are people he once cared for as intimately as family. When they were sick, he fasted and prayed for them, bowed in mourning as if for a brother or mother. Now those same people celebrate his downfall. This is not a psalm about warfare between strangers but about the specific wound of ingratitude — people who received David's compassion and returned it as cruelty. The military language of verses 1-3 ('take up shield and buckler, draw out the spear') pictures God as a divine warrior entering battle on David's behalf. God is not merely asked to judge but to fight — to become David's champion in a cosmic courtroom that is also a battlefield.*

Translation Friction: *Imprecatory psalms like this one raise difficult questions for readers committed to the ethic of loving enemies. David asks God to confuse, shame, and destroy his persecutors. The request that they fall into their own nets (v. 8) and that ruin overtake them by surprise is not a prayer for justice in an abstract sense but a wish for specific, concrete harm to specific people. Jewish tradition reads these psalms as legitimate cries for divine justice from the powerless; Christian tradition has often struggled with them, sometimes spiritualizing the enemies as demonic forces rather than human beings. The psalm itself makes no such distinction — these are real people who ate at David's table and now plot his destruction.*

Connections: *The divine warrior imagery (vv. 1-3) connects to Exodus 15 (the Song of the Sea), Isaiah 59:17 (God putting on armor), and Ephesians 6:10-17 (the armor of God). The theme of false witnesses (vv. 11, 20-21) connects to Jesus' trial before the Sanhedrin (Matthew 26:59-60). The language of being hated without cause (v. 19) is quoted in John 15:25, where Jesus applies it to Himself. The three-cycle structure mirrors Psalm 22, another psalm of the righteous sufferer that moves from complaint to deliverance to praise.*

¹Of David.

Contend, O LORD, with those who contend with me.

Fight against those who fight against me.

²Take up the small shield and the large shield,
and rise to my aid.

³Draw out the spear and close the way
against those who pursue me.
Say to my soul, 'I am your salvation.'

⁴Let those who seek my life be shamed and disgraced.
Let those who plot my ruin
be turned back and humiliated.

⁵Let them be like chaff before the wind,
with the angel of the LORD driving them away.

⁶Let their path be dark and slippery,
with the angel of the LORD pursuing them.

⁷For without cause they hid a net for me in a pit.
Without cause they dug a trap for my life.

⁸Let ruin come upon him by surprise.
Let the net he hid catch him.
Let him fall into his own destruction.

⁹Then my soul will rejoice in the LORD.
It will delight in His salvation.

¹⁰All my bones will say,
'LORD, who is like you —
rescuing the poor from one too strong for him,
the poor and needy from the one who robs him?'

¹¹Violent witnesses rise up.
They ask me about things I know nothing of.

¹²They repay me evil for good —
bereavement for my soul.

¹³But when they were sick, I wore sackcloth.
I humbled myself with fasting,
and my prayer returned to my own chest.

¹⁴I went about as though grieving for a friend, for a brother.
I bowed low in mourning, as one who weeps for his mother.

¹⁵But when I stumbled, they gathered in glee.
Strikers assembled against me — people I did not know.
They tore at me without ceasing.

¹⁶Like godless mockers at a feast,
they gnash their teeth at me.

¹⁷O Lord, how long will you look on?
Rescue my life from their destruction,
my precious life from the lions.

¹⁸I will thank you in the great assembly.
Among a mighty throng I will praise you.

¹⁹Do not let my enemies gloat over me — those who are false.
Do not let those who hate me without cause
wink at each other in malice.

²⁰For they do not speak peace.
Against the quiet ones of the land
they devise words of deceit.

²¹They open their mouths wide against me and say,
'Ha! Ha! Our eyes have seen it!'

²²You have seen this, O LORD — do not be silent.
O Lord, do not be far from me.

²³Rouse yourself! Wake up for my vindication,
my God and my Lord, for my cause!

²⁴Vindicate me according to your righteousness,
O LORD my God,
and do not let them gloat over me.

²⁵Do not let them say in their hearts, 'Ha! Just what we wanted!'
Do not let them say, 'We have swallowed him up!'

²⁶Let them be ashamed and humiliated together —
those who rejoice at my distress.
Let them be clothed in shame and disgrace —
those who exalt themselves against me.

²⁷Let those who delight in my vindication
shout for joy and be glad.
Let them say continually,
'Great is the LORD, who delights in the well-being of His servant!'

²⁸Then my tongue will speak of your righteousness
and your praise all day long.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening uses two pairs of cognate verbs: *rivah/yerivai* ('contend/those who contend') and *lecham/lochamai* ('fight/those who fight'). The first pair is legal language — courtroom combat; the second is military language — battlefield combat. David asks God to enter both arenas on his behalf. The repetition creates an aggressive, urgent tone from the first breath.
2. Two types of shields: *magen* (a small, round shield for hand-to-hand combat) and *tsinnah* (a large, full-body shield that could protect an entire soldier). Together they represent complete defensive coverage. The verb *qumah* ('rise up, stand up') is a battle cry — God is called to His feet as a warrior preparing for combat.
3. The juxtaposition of military imagery (spears, shields) and personal intimacy ('say to my soul') is characteristic of David's prayer life. He is simultaneously a warrior requesting backup and a child requesting comfort. The phrase *yeshu'atekh ani* ('I am your salvation') may be the most personal statement God can make to a human being — salvation is not a thing God provides but a relationship God is.
4. Four verbs of defeat in a single verse: *yevoshu* ('let them be ashamed'), *yikkalemu* ('let them be disgraced'), *yissogu achor* ('let them be turned back'), *yachperu* ('let them be humiliated'). The escalation from shame to retreat to humiliation describes a complete rout. The phrase *mevaqshei nafshi* ('those who seek my life') means people actively trying to kill him.
5. The simile of chaff (*mots*) before wind (*ruach*) pictures enemies as weightless, substanceless, blown away without resistance. The angel of the LORD (*malakh YHWH*) appears as the active agent of pursuit — the same figure who encamps around the faithful in Psalm 34:8 now chases the wicked. The verb *docheh* ('pushing, driving, thrusting') is aggressive: the angel does not merely observe the scattering but actively propels it.
6. The combination of *choshekh* ('darkness') and *chalaqlaqot* ('slippery places') creates a nightmare landscape: the enemies cannot see where they are going and cannot keep their footing. The angel of the LORD pursues from behind while the terrain itself conspires against them. The verb *rodefam* ('pursuing them') uses the same root that described David's pursuers in verse 3 — the hunters become the hunted.
7. The word *chinnam* ('without cause, for nothing, gratuitously') appears twice, emphasizing the gratuity of the attack. David has done nothing to provoke this — the hostility is unprovoked. The combination of *reshet* ('net') and *shachat* ('pit') describes a double trap: a pit dug in the path and a net stretched over it. Jesus quotes the phrase 'without cause' in John 15:25 to describe the hatred directed at Him.

8. The poetic justice is precise: the sho'ah ('ruin, devastation') that was planned for David falls on the planner instead. The net the enemy hid becomes the net that catches him. The pit he dug becomes the pit he falls into. This is the *lex talionis* applied to treachery — the weapon backfires on the one who deployed it. The singular pronoun ('him') may target a specific ringleader among David's enemies.
9. The first cycle closes with a vow of praise. The verbs tagil ('will rejoice, will exult') and tasis ('will delight, will be glad') describe intense, exuberant joy. The shift from imprecation to celebration is abrupt but characteristic of the Psalter's emotional range: the same voice that calls for the enemy's destruction breaks into joy at the prospect of God's vindication.
10. The phrase kol atsmotai ('all my bones') means the praise comes from the body's very structure — every bone vibrates with gratitude. The rhetorical question mi khamokha ('who is like you?') echoes the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15:11) and is one of the Hebrew Bible's most exalted expressions of God's uniqueness. The repetition of ani ('poor, afflicted') and the addition of evyon ('destitute, needy') emphasize David's self-identification with the powerless.
11. The second cycle begins with edei chamas ('witnesses of violence'), a phrase that means both 'violent witnesses' and 'witnesses who testify about violence.' They accuse David of things he has no knowledge of (asher lo yadati, 'which I did not know'). The verb yish'aluni ('they question me, they demand of me') suggests an interrogation — David is cross-examined about crimes he never committed.
12. The phrase ra'ah tachat tovah ('evil instead of good') describes the specific injustice of ingratitude. The word shekhol ('bereavement, childlessness') is one of the most devastating words in Hebrew — it describes the grief of a parent who has lost a child. David says their betrayal has left his soul bereaved, as though something precious has died.
13. The phrase al cheqi tashuv ('returned to my chest') remains one of the more enigmatic expressions in the Psalter. The cheq ('bosom, chest, lap') is a place of intimacy. Some read it as: 'my prayer came back to rest in my own heart' (i.e., the prayer was so deeply felt it became part of him). Others: 'my prayer was returned unanswered' (i.e., God did not grant the healing David sought). The ambiguity may be intentional.
14. David treated their suffering as if it were the suffering of his closest relations: re'a ('friend, companion'), ach ('brother'), em ('mother'). The word qoder ('darkened, gloomy') describes the downcast posture of genuine mourning — head bowed, face darkened with grief. The comparison to mourning one's mother is the deepest possible grief-image in the ancient world. David's compassion was not performative but authentic — and that is what makes the betrayal so devastating.
15. The contrast with verses 13-14 is devastating. David mourned for them; they celebrate his fall. The verb samchu ('they rejoiced') at his tsal'i ('my stumbling, my limping') describes the specific cruelty of *schadenfreude*. The nekhim ('strikers, smiters') are either hired thugs or people who attacked David verbally. The phrase lo yadati ('I did not know') may mean 'people I did not recognize' or 'without my knowing' — the attack came from unexpected quarters.
16. The phrase chanfei la'agei ma'og ('godless ones among mockers of cake/feast') is textually difficult. The word ma'og may mean 'cake' (i.e., party-goers mocking for the price of a meal) or may be corrupt. The image is clear enough: people who mock David for entertainment, grinding their teeth in hostility (charoq shinneimo, 'gnashing their teeth').
17. The address shifts to Adonai ('Lord, Master'). The question kammah tir'eh ('how long will you look on?') accuses God of being a spectator rather than a participant — God is watching the violence without intervening. The word yechidati ('my only one, my precious one, my darling') is an extraordinary term for the soul — it means 'my unique one, the only one I have.' David has only one life, and the lions (kefirim, here metaphorical for predatory enemies) are about to take it.
18. The second cycle closes with a vow of public praise. The qahal rav ('great assembly') and am atsum ('mighty people/throng') describe the largest possible audience. David's praise will be as public as his suffering. The shift from 'rescue me' to 'I will praise you' assumes the rescue will come — the vow of praise is an act of faith made before deliverance arrives.
19. The third cycle opens. The enemies are described as oyvai sheqer ('my enemies of falsehood') — their enmity is based on lies. The phrase sone'ai chinnam ('those who hate me without cause') is quoted by Jesus in John 15:25 to describe the world's hostility toward Him. The verb yiqretsu ayin ('they wink the eye') describes a conspiratorial gesture — a knowing glance exchanged between co-conspirators, silent communication that excludes and threatens the target.
20. The rigei erets ('quiet ones of the land') are the peaceful, unassuming people who live without aggression — and precisely these people are targeted by the deceivers. The phrase divrei mirmot ('words of deceit, treacherous words') describes speech weaponized: language designed to trap, mislead, and destroy the unsuspecting.
21. The gloating cry he'ach he'ach ('Aha! Aha!') is an exclamation of malicious satisfaction — the sound of people watching someone they despise finally fall. The phrase ra'atah einenu ('our eye has seen it') means 'we witnessed your downfall with our own eyes.' The wide-open mouth (vayarchivu pihem) combines shouting, mocking, and the predatory posture of an animal about to devour.
22. David turns the enemies' boast back on them: they said 'our eyes have seen it' (v. 21), but David replies ra'itah YHWH ('you have seen, O LORD'). God is the true witness, and His seeing must lead to action, not silence (al techerash, 'do not be deaf/silent'). The plea al tirchaq ('do not be far away') reveals David's deepest fear: not the enemies, but God's absence.
23. The verbs ha'irah ('rouse yourself, stir') and haqitsah ('wake up') are astonishingly bold — David tells God to wake from apparent sleep. This is not irreverence but the urgency of the desperate. Psalm 44:23 makes the same plea: 'Wake up! Why are you sleeping, O Lord?' The double title Elohai va-Adonai ('my God and my Lord') combines the universal divine name with the personal title of authority.

24. The verb *shofeteni* ('judge me, vindicate me') appeals to God as the supreme court. The standard of judgment is *ke-tsidqekha* ('according to your righteousness') — not David's merit but God's character. David is confident enough in his innocence in this matter to submit to God's righteous judgment. The plea *al yismchu li* ('do not let them rejoice over me') is the refrain of the psalm: the nightmare scenario is the enemies celebrating.
25. The phrase *he'ach nafshenu* ('Aha, our desire!' or 'Aha, just what our soul craved!') reveals the enemies' motive: they wanted David's destruction for its own sake. The verb *billa'anuhu* ('we have swallowed him up') pictures complete annihilation — consumed, digested, gone.
26. The clothing metaphor — *yilbeshu boshet u-khelimmah* ('let them wear shame and disgrace') — pictures shame as a visible garment. Everyone will see their humiliation. The verb *hamagdilim* ('those who magnify themselves, those who act arrogantly') describes people who make themselves look big at David's expense.
27. The focus shifts to David's supporters — those who *chafetsei tsidqi* ('delight in my righteousness/vindication'). Their perpetual song (*tamid*, 'continually, always') is *yigdal YHWH* ('let the LORD be magnified/great'). The final phrase *hechafets shelom avdo* ('who delights in the peace/wholeness/well-being of His servant') reveals something about God's character: God takes pleasure in His servant's *shalom*. David's well-being is not merely tolerated by God but desired.
28. The psalm closes with David's personal vow. The verb *tehgeh* ('will meditate, will murmur, will speak') describes the low, continuous sound of someone rehearsing truth — the tongue will not stop speaking God's righteousness (*tsidqekha*) and praise (*tehillatekha*). The phrase *kol hayyom* ('all the day') matches the opening scope of psalms like 34:2 ('His praise will always be in my mouth'). The third cycle, like the first two, ends in praise.

36

Summary: *A psalm of David that moves between two extremes: the psychology of the wicked (vv. 2-5) and the cosmic dimensions of God's faithful love (vv. 6-10), concluding with a prayer for continued protection (vv. 11-13). The opening oracle describes the inner monologue of the wicked person — someone who has flattered himself out of any awareness of sin, whose words are all deceit and whose plans are all harm. Against this portrait of human corruption, the psalm sets the immensity of God's chesed, tsedaqah, and mishpat, which reach to the heavens, the clouds, and the great mountains. The contrast between the small, self-deceived wickedness of humanity and the vast, overflowing goodness of God is the psalm's organizing energy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 6-10 contain one of the most expansive descriptions of God's attributes in the Psalter. The faithful love (chesed) reaches the heavens; the faithfulness (emunah) reaches the clouds; the righteousness (tsedaqah) is like the great mountains; the justice (mishpat) is like the deep ocean. Each attribute is paired with a cosmic comparison, as if the psalmist is saying: these qualities are not merely large — they are the size of creation itself. Then verse 10 introduces one of the most beautiful images in the Hebrew Bible: 'In your light we see light' (be-orkha nireh or). Light is the medium of vision, but this verse says that God's light is the medium through which all other light becomes visible. We cannot see without God's illumination. Knowledge, truth, beauty — everything we perceive clearly — is perceived through the light God provides.*

Translation Friction: *The opening line (v. 2) is textually difficult. The Hebrew reads *ne'um pesha la-rasha be-qerev libbi*, which literally translates 'oracle of transgression to the wicked in the midst of my heart.' The phrase 'in the midst of my heart' is puzzling — whose heart? Some emend *libbi* ('my heart') to *libbo* ('his heart'), making it 'transgression speaks to the wicked within his own heart.' Others retain the first person and read it as the psalmist receiving an oracle about wickedness within his own perception. The word *ne'um* ('oracle, utterance') is normally used for divine speech (*ne'um YHWH*, 'oracle of the LORD'), so applying it to transgression personified is deliberately jarring — sin speaks with prophetic authority to the wicked.*

Connections: *Paul quotes verse 2 in Romans 3:18 ('there is no fear of God before their eyes') as part of his catena of Old Testament texts proving universal human sinfulness. The cosmic descriptions of God's attributes (vv. 6-8) anticipate the creation theology of Psalms 104 and 148. The phrase 'fountain of life' (*meqor chayyim*, v. 10) connects to Proverbs 10:11, 13:14, 14:27, and Jeremiah 2:13 (where God is 'the fountain of living waters'). The image of taking refuge 'in the shadow of your wings' (v. 8) appears in Psalms 17:8, 57:1, 61:4, 63:7, and 91:4, and is echoed in Jesus' lament over Jerusalem (Matthew 23:37).*

1For the director of music. Of David, the servant of the LORD.

²Transgression speaks an oracle to the wicked
deep within his heart:
'There is no fear of God before his eyes.'

³For he flatters himself in his own eyes,
too much to detect his iniquity and hate it.

⁴The words of his mouth are harm and deceit.
He has ceased to act wisely or do good.

⁵He plots harm on his bed.
He stations himself on a path that is not good.
He does not reject evil.

⁶O LORD, your faithful love reaches to the heavens.
Your faithfulness extends to the skies.

⁷Your righteousness is like the mighty mountains.
Your justice is like the great deep.
You save both people and animals, O LORD.

⁸How precious is your faithful love, O God!
The children of humanity take refuge
in the shadow of your wings.

⁹They feast on the abundance of your house,
and you give them drink from the river of your delights.

¹⁰For with you is the fountain of life.
In your light we see light.

¹¹Extend your faithful love to those who know you,
and your righteousness to the upright in heart.

¹²Let not the foot of pride come against me,
nor the hand of the wicked drive me away.

¹³There the evildoers have fallen —
thrown down, unable to rise.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The title eved YHWH ('servant of the LORD') is rare in psalm superscriptions — it appears only here and in Psalm 18:1. The title carries enormous weight in the Hebrew Bible: Moses, Joshua, and the prophets are called 'servants of the LORD.' It identifies David not merely as a king who writes poetry but as one who has a designated role in God's service.
2. The textual issue of libbi ('my heart') versus libbo ('his heart') affects interpretation significantly. If 'my heart,' the psalmist is reporting an oracle he received about the nature of wickedness. If 'his heart,' the oracle of transgression operates within the wicked person's own interior. Most modern translations follow the emendation to libbo, which makes smoother sense. We follow this reading.
2. Paul quotes ein pachad Elohim le-neged einav in Romans 3:18 as the climactic verse in his argument that all humanity is under sin. The absence of the fear of God is not one sin among many but the root condition from which all sins grow.
3. The verb hecheliq ('he made smooth, he flattered') means the wicked person has polished his self-image until it reflects no flaws. The result is the inability limtso avono lisno ('to find his iniquity so as to hate it'). Self-flattery destroys moral perception: you cannot repent of what you cannot see. The avon ('iniquity') is present but invisible — hidden under the smooth surface of self-deception.

4. The trajectory of wickedness: self-flattery (v. 3) leads to destructive speech (v. 4a) and then to the abandonment of wisdom and goodness (v. 4b). The verb *chadal* ('to cease, to stop, to desist') means this person once knew how to be wise and good but deliberately stopped. Wickedness here is not ignorance but apostasy — turning away from what was known.
5. The bedroom becomes a war room: *al mishkavo* ('on his bed') — the place of rest becomes the place of scheming. The verb *yityatsev* ('he stations himself, he takes his stand') is the military verb from Psalm 2:2 — the wicked person deliberately positions himself on a wrong road. The final phrase *ra lo yim'as* ('evil he does not reject') completes the portrait: this person has lost the capacity for moral discrimination. Evil no longer repulses him.
6. The four cosmic comparisons in verses 6–7 (heavens, clouds, great mountains, deep ocean) form an ascending-descending pattern: up to the heavens, up to the clouds, down to the mountain roots, down to the ocean deep. God's attributes fill the entire vertical axis of creation, from the highest point to the lowest depth.
7. The phrase *ke-harrerei El* ('like the mountains of God') uses *El* either as a divine name ('mountains of God') or as a superlative ('mighty mountains, enormous mountains'). Either way, God's *tsedaqah* is as massive and immovable as mountain ranges. His *mishpatim* ('judgments, justice') are *tehom rabbah* ('the great deep') — unfathomable, ocean-deep, beyond human measurement. The final line expands God's care beyond humanity: *adam u-vehemah toshia YHWH* ('you save both humanity and animals, O LORD'). God's saving concern extends to all living creatures.
8. The exclamation *mah yaqqar chasdekha* ('how precious/costly/rare is your faithful love!') uses *yaqqar*, a word for things of supreme value — precious stones, rare treasures. God's *chesed* is not common; it is the most valuable thing in existence. The image *be-tsel kenafekha* ('in the shadow of your wings') pictures God as a bird sheltering its young — the same image Jesus uses in Matthew 23:37 ('as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings'). The verb *yechesayun* ('they take refuge') from *chasah* is the psalm's thematic verb.
9. The word *adanekha* ('your delights') is linguistically related to Eden, and the *nachal* ('stream, wadi, river') flowing through God's house evokes the river that watered the garden in Genesis 2:10. The psalm is describing not merely divine hospitality but a return to the original paradise — God's presence is the garden, and those who shelter there drink from its river.
10. The phrase *meqor chayyim* ('fountain of life') appears in Proverbs 10:11, 13:14, 14:27 — always describing a source of vitality that keeps flowing. Jeremiah 2:13 uses the same image negatively: Israel has abandoned 'the fountain of living waters' (*meqor mayim chayyim*) for broken cisterns. The psalm locates this fountain in God's own presence (*immekha*, 'with you').
10. The phrase *be-orkha nireh or* ('in your light we see light') was adopted as the motto of Columbia University (*In lumine tuo videbimus lumen*) and has been a central text in Christian theology of knowledge. Augustine, Aquinas, and Calvin all built on it. In its original Hebrew context, it affirms that all genuine perception of reality depends on divine illumination.
11. The verb *meshokh* ('draw out, extend, continue, prolong') asks God to keep the flow of *chesed* going — do not cut it off, do not withdraw it. The recipients are *le-yod'ekha* ('to those who know you') — not merely those who know about God but those who know God in the relational, intimate sense that *yada'* carries in Hebrew. The parallel *le-yishrei lev* ('to the upright in heart') defines knowledge of God in moral terms: to know God is to have an upright heart.
12. The 'foot of pride' (*regel ga'avah*) is a conquering foot — the victor's foot on the neck of the defeated. The 'hand of the wicked' (*yad resha'im*) is the hand that seizes and displaces. Both images describe forcible removal from one's place — eviction by arrogant power. David asks to be kept in the shelter described in verses 8–10, safe from the proud and the wicked.
13. The word *sham* ('there') points to a specific scene — perhaps a future judgment, perhaps a battlefield, perhaps the place where the wicked's plans collapse. The finality is total: *dochu* ('they are thrust down, pushed over') and *lo yakhlu qum* ('they are unable to rise'). The psalm ends not with a cry of vengeance but with a prophetic declaration: the wicked will fall, and their fall will be permanent. The brevity of the verse — six Hebrew words — gives it the force of a verdict.

37

Summary: *An acrostic wisdom psalm of David, each strophe beginning with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet. The psalm is a sustained meditation on the problem of the wicked prospering and the righteous suffering — a problem addressed not with philosophical argument but with repeated commands to trust, wait, and refrain from envy. David's answer to the success of the wicked is not that it is an illusion but that it is temporary. The land (erets) is the central promise: the wicked will be cut off from it, and the righteous will inherit it. The psalm moves through twenty-two strophes like a parent patiently counseling a child who cannot understand why the bully gets what he wants.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word erets ('land, earth') appears seven times in this psalm — the number of completeness — and each occurrence reinforces the same promise: the meek, the righteous, the faithful will inherit the land, while the wicked will be excised from it. Jesus' beatitude 'Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth' (Matthew 5:5) is a direct quotation of verse 11. The acrostic form is itself*

significant: the alphabet is the totality of language, and by working through every letter, David is saying that this truth covers everything — from aleph to tav, there is nothing to add. The psalm's emotional texture is distinctive in the Psalter. It does not rage against injustice or weep over suffering. Instead, it counsels patience with the calm authority of someone who has watched enough cycles to know how they end. The repeated *al titchar* ('do not fret, do not burn with anger') is addressed to the believer's nervous system, not just his theology.

Translation Friction: *The psalm's theology of retribution — the wicked will be destroyed, the righteous will prosper — is precisely the theology that Job challenges and Ecclesiastes questions. Read in isolation, Psalm 37 can sound like naïve optimism: just wait, and everything will work out. But the psalm's perspective is not naïve — it is the long view. David explicitly acknowledges the prosperity of the wicked (vv. 7, 16, 35) and does not deny it. His argument is about duration, not appearance: 'I have seen the wicked in great power, spreading like a native green tree. Yet he passed away, and he was no more' (vv. 35-36). The Hebrew word for 'land' (erets) may refer to the specific land of Israel (covenant inheritance) or to the earth broadly. In its original context, the promise is likely about land-tenure in Israel; in Jesus' usage, it is universalized.*

Connections: *The beatitude 'Blessed are the meek, for they shall inherit the earth' (Matthew 5:5) directly quotes verse 11. The psalm's theology of the righteous inheriting the land connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12:7, 13:15, 15:18) and the Deuteronomic blessings (Deuteronomy 28). Proverbs 24:19 ('Do not fret because of evildoers') echoes the psalm's opening. The acrostic structure links this psalm to Psalms 9-10, 25, 34, 111, 112, 119, and 145. The observation that the righteous are never forsaken and their children never beg bread (v. 25) became a test case in later theological reflection on suffering and poverty.*

¹Of David.

Do not burn with anger over evildoers.
Do not envy those who do wrong.

²For like grass they will quickly wither,
and like green plants they will fade away.

³Trust in the LORD and do good.
Dwell in the land and cultivate faithfulness.

⁴Delight yourself in the LORD,
and He will give you the desires of your heart.

⁵Roll your way onto the LORD.
Trust in Him, and He will act.

⁶He will bring forth your righteousness like the light,
and your justice like the noonday sun.

⁷Be still before the LORD and wait patiently for Him.
Do not burn with anger over the one whose way prospers,
over the person who carries out schemes.

⁸Release anger and abandon rage.
Do not fret — it leads only to harm.

⁹For evildoers will be cut off,
but those who wait for the LORD will inherit the land.

- ¹⁰A little while, and the wicked will be no more.
You will look carefully at his place — and he will be gone.
- ¹¹But the meek will inherit the land
and delight in abundant peace.
- ¹²The wicked person plots against the righteous
and gnashes his teeth at him.
- ¹³The Lord laughs at him,
for He sees that his day is coming.
- ¹⁴The wicked draw the sword and bend the bow
to bring down the poor and needy,
to slaughter those whose way is upright.
- ¹⁵Their sword will pierce their own heart,
and their bows will be broken.
- ¹⁶Better is the little that the righteous has
than the abundance of many wicked.
- ¹⁷For the arms of the wicked will be broken,
but the LORD upholds the righteous.
- ¹⁸The LORD knows the days of the blameless,
and their inheritance will last forever.
- ¹⁹They will not be put to shame in evil times,
and in days of famine they will be satisfied.
- ²⁰But the wicked will perish.
The enemies of the LORD will vanish like the beauty of the meadows —
they will vanish into smoke.
- ²¹The wicked borrows and does not repay,
but the righteous is generous and gives.
- ²²For those blessed by Him will inherit the land,
but those cursed by Him will be cut off.
- ²³The steps of a person are established by the LORD,
and He delights in his way.
- ²⁴Though he stumble, he will not fall headlong,
for the LORD holds his hand.
- ²⁵I was young and now I am old,
yet I have not seen the righteous abandoned
or his children begging for bread.

²⁶All day long he is gracious and lends,
and his children become a blessing.

²⁷Turn from evil and do good,
and you will dwell in the land forever.

²⁸For the LORD loves justice
and does not abandon His faithful ones.
They are preserved forever,
but the offspring of the wicked will be cut off.

²⁹The righteous will inherit the land
and dwell in it forever.

³⁰The mouth of the righteous murmurs wisdom,
and his tongue speaks justice.

³¹The instruction of his God is in his heart.
His steps do not slip.

³²The wicked watches the righteous
and seeks to kill him.

³³The LORD will not abandon him to his hand,
nor let him be condemned when he is brought to trial.

³⁴Wait for the LORD and keep His way.
He will raise you up to inherit the land.
When the wicked are cut off, you will see it.

³⁵I have seen the wicked, ruthless and powerful,
spreading himself like a flourishing native tree.

³⁶But he passed away — and suddenly he was gone.
I looked for him, but he could not be found.

³⁷Watch the blameless person and observe the upright,
for there is a future for the person of peace.

³⁸But transgressors will be destroyed together.
The future of the wicked is cut off.

³⁹The salvation of the righteous comes from the LORD.
He is their refuge in time of trouble.

⁴⁰The LORD helps them and delivers them.
He delivers them from the wicked and saves them,
because they take refuge in Him.

1. The aleph-strophe. The verb *al titchar* ('do not fret, do not be heated, do not burn') from *charah* ('to burn, to be kindled') addresses the visceral, heat-generating frustration that rises when the wicked prosper. The parallel verb *al teqanne* ('do not envy') from *qana* ('to be jealous, to be zealous') addresses the desire to have what the wicked have. Together they name the two emotional responses the psalm will spend forty verses treating: rage and envy.
2. The reason not to envy: the wicked are *ke-chatsir* ('like grass') — the most fragile, temporary form of life in the Near East. After the spring rains, grass covers the hillsides in green. When the summer heat arrives, it vanishes in days. The verb *yimmalu* ('they will wither, they will be cut') and *yibbolun* ('they will wilt, they will fade') describe the inevitable trajectory of grass: rapid growth, rapid death.
3. The bet-strophe. Four imperatives: *betach* ('trust'), *aseh tov* ('do good'), *shekhan erets* ('dwell in the land'), *re'eh emunah* ('cultivate/feed on faithfulness'). The last phrase is debated — *re'eh* can mean 'feed, shepherd, cultivate' and *emunah* can mean 'faithfulness, reliability, security.' The instruction is practical: do not flee the land because the wicked seem to own it. Stay, trust, do good, and feed on faithfulness like a flock feeds on pasture.
4. The promise of verse 4 has been both a comfort and a stumbling block. Read transactionally, it says: if you delight in God, He will give you what you want. Read formatively, it says: delighting in God transforms what you want, so that what God gives is always what your transformed heart desires. The psalm's overall theology of trust and patience supports the formative reading.
5. The gimel-strophe. The verb *gol* ('roll') from *galal* is physical — you roll a burden off your own back onto God's. The *darkekha* ('your way, your path, your course of life') is everything: plans, anxieties, outcomes. The promise *ve-hu ya'aseh* ('and He — He will do it, He will act') is deliberately open-ended. It does not specify what God will do. It simply guarantees that God will act. The emphasis falls on the pronoun *hu* ('He') — you are not alone in this.
6. The vindication image: *tsidqekha* ('your righteousness') will be displayed *ka-or* ('like the light') — visible, undeniable, radiant. The *mishpatekha* ('your justice, your just cause') will be like *ha-tsohorayim* ('the noonday, the double-brightness') — the moment of maximum visibility when no shadow remains. The righteous person's cause, now hidden under the wicked's prosperity, will eventually be displayed in full daylight.
7. The dalet-strophe. The verb *dom* ('be still, be silent, be motionless') demands cessation of anxious activity. The verb *hitcholel* ('wait, writhe in patience') from *chul* ('to writhe, to wait in travail') suggests that patience is not passive but effortful — it costs something to wait. The *al titchar* ('do not fret') from verse 1 returns, now specified: do not fret over the person whose schemes actually succeed (*matsliach darkko*, 'his way prospers'). David acknowledges that evil plans sometimes work.
8. The he-strophe. Three imperatives address the anger cycle: *heref me-af* ('let go of anger'), *azov chemah* ('abandon fury/rage'), *al titchar* ('do not fret'). The final phrase *akh lehare'a* ('it only leads to doing evil') reveals the danger: righteous indignation, if nursed into obsession, becomes its own form of evil. Fretting about injustice can make you unjust.
9. The vav-strophe. The verb *yikkaretun* ('they will be cut off') is covenant-curse language — excision from the community, from the land, from life. The verb *yirshu erets* ('they will inherit/possess the land') is covenant-blessing language — permanent tenure in the promised inheritance. The *erets* ('land/earth') is the psalm's key word: who gets to stay in the land? Not the aggressive, not the schemers, but the *qovei YHWH* ('those who wait/hope for the LORD').
10. The zayin-strophe. The phrase *od me'at* ('yet a little while') is the psalm's temporal key: the wicked person's prosperity has an expiration date. The verb *hitbonanta* ('you will look carefully, you will examine closely') means a deliberate inspection of the place (*maqom*) where the wicked once stood. You will search for him and find nothing. The disappearance is total: *ve-einennu* ('and he is not, and he is gone').
11. The anavim are the central characters of the Psalter's social vision: the poor, the afflicted, the humble — people who lack power and know they lack it. Their inheritance of the land (*erets*) reverses the normal power structure: the powerful seize land, but the meek receive it from God. Jesus' quotation universalizes the promise from 'the land' (of Israel) to 'the earth' (the entire world).
12. The chet-strophe. The verb *zomem* ('plots, devises, schemes') describes calculated, premeditated hostility. The verb *choreq shinnay* ('gnashes his teeth') is an expression of animal rage — baring teeth like a predator. The combination of cold calculation and hot rage describes the specific psychology of the wicked toward the righteous: it is both strategic and visceral.
13. God's response to the wicked person's scheming is laughter (*vischaq*, from *tsachaq*, 'to laugh'). This is the same divine laughter as Psalm 2:4 — not amusement but supreme confidence. God laughs because He sees (*ra'ah*) what the wicked cannot: *yomo* ('his day') — the appointed day of reckoning. The wicked plots in time; God sees the end of time.
14. The tet-strophe. The weapons — *cherev* ('sword') and *qeshet* ('bow') — represent close combat and ranged warfare. The targets — *ani ve-evyon* ('poor and needy') and *yishrei derekh* ('upright in way/conduct') — are people who cannot fight back. The verb *litvoach* ('to slaughter') is butchery language, used for slaughtering animals. The wicked treat the righteous poor as livestock.
15. The poetic justice is exact: the sword drawn against the poor enters the wicked person's own heart (*be-libbam*). The bows bent against the needy are snapped (*tishavarnah*, 'they will be broken'). The weapons turn on their users. This is the psalm's consistent vision: the violence of the wicked is self-defeating.
16. The yod-strophe. The *tov...min* ('better...than') formula is classic wisdom speech (cf. Proverbs 15:16, 16:8). The comparison is not between equal quantities but between qualities: a small amount possessed by a righteous person has more real value (stability, blessing, permanence) than the *hamon* ('abundance, tumult, wealth') of many wicked people combined.

17. The kaf-strophe. The zero'ot ('arms') represent power and agency — what the wicked can do. These will be broken (tishavarnah). The contrast: ve-somekh tsaddiqim YHWH ('but the LORD supports/upholds the righteous'). The verb somekh ('supports, sustains, upholds') pictures a hand placed under something to keep it from falling. The wicked lose their power; the righteous are held up by God's hand.
18. The lamed-strophe. The verb yodea ('knows') means intimate, comprehensive knowledge — God knows every day (yemei) of the blameless person's life. Their nachalatam ('their inheritance') will be le-olam ('forever'). The contrast with the wicked, whose prosperity is temporary as grass, is total: the righteous person's inheritance has no expiration date.
19. The promise addresses the two great fears: public shame (lo yevoshu) and physical want (yisba'u, 'they will be full/satisfied'). The be-et ra'ah ('in the time of evil/disaster') and bi-yemei re'avon ('in the days of famine') are the worst-case scenarios. Even then, the blameless will not be humiliated and will not go hungry.
20. The mem-strophe. The phrase ki-yqar karim ('like the glory/beauty of meadows' or 'like the fat of lambs') is textually uncertain. If 'meadows,' the image is of green pastureland that dries up and becomes fuel for fire. If 'fat of lambs,' the image is of sacrificial fat consumed on the altar. Both readings end the same way: be-ashan kalu ('in smoke they are consumed'). The wicked dissolve into nothing.
21. The nun-strophe. The economic contrast is sharp: the wicked person takes and does not return; the righteous person gives freely. The verb chonen ('is gracious, shows favor, gives generously') from chanan describes giving motivated not by obligation but by kindness. The righteous person's relationship to resources mirrors God's own generosity.
22. The samekh-strophe. The erets ('land') promise returns, now framed in terms of divine blessing and cursing. The mevorakav ('those blessed by Him') and mequllaluv ('those cursed by Him') echo the Deuteronomic blessing-curse framework (Deuteronomy 28). Inheritance of the land is the visible sign of divine favor; being cut off from it is the visible sign of divine judgment.
23. The ayin-strophe. The phrase me-YHWH mits'adei gever konnanu ('from the LORD the steps of a man are established') means God directs the specific movements of the person who trusts Him — not just the destination but each step along the way. The phrase ve-darkko yechpats ('and in his way He delights') is remarkable: God takes pleasure in the righteous person's path. The faithful walker is not merely tolerated but enjoyed.
24. The promise is not that the righteous will never stumble (ki yippol, 'when/though he falls') but that he will not be utterly destroyed (lo yutal, 'he will not be thrown down completely'). The reason: YHWH somekh yado ('the LORD supports/holds his hand'). The image is of a parent holding a child's hand as the child learns to walk — stumbles happen, but the hand prevents catastrophic falls.
25. The pe-strophe. David speaks from the full arc of a lifetime: na'ar hayiti ('I was young') gam zaqanti ('I have also grown old'). His testimony is empirical: in all those years of observation, lo ra'iti tsaddiq ne'ezav ('I have not seen the righteous forsaken'). This verse has been a source of comfort and also of theological difficulty — what about righteous people who are, in fact, abandoned and impoverished? The psalm's perspective is proverbial, not universal: it describes the general pattern of God's faithfulness, not an exception-free law.
26. The righteous person's generosity is habitual: kol hayyom ('all day long') he chonen u-malveh ('is gracious and lends'). The result extends to the next generation: ve-zar'o li-verakhah ('and his offspring become a blessing'). Generosity is not only moral but generative — it produces blessing that flows to the next generation.
27. The tsade-strophe repeats the instruction of Psalm 34:15 (sur me-ra va-aseh tov, 'turn from evil and do good') and adds the land-promise: u-shkhon le-olam ('and dwell forever'). The moral instruction and the inheritance promise are inseparable: doing good is the path to permanent habitation.
28. The qoph-strophe. God's love of mishpat ('justice') grounds the entire psalm: because God loves justice, He preserves the righteous and cuts off the wicked. The chasidav ('His faithful ones') are those bound to God by chesed. The permanence markers le-olam nishmaru ('forever they are guarded') contrast with the cutting-off of the wicked's offspring.
29. The resh-strophe restates the psalm's central promise with maximum simplicity: tsaddiqim yirshu erets ('the righteous will inherit the land'). The verb yishkenu ('they will dwell') and the duration la-ad ('forever, in perpetuity') settle the matter: the land belongs to the righteous, and their tenure has no end.
30. The shin-strophe. The verb yehgeh ('murmurs, meditates, speaks in low tones') is the same verb used in Psalm 1:2 for meditating on Torah. The righteous person's speech flows from deep meditation: wisdom (chokhmah) and justice (mishpat) emerge naturally from a mind saturated in God's instruction.
31. The tav-strophe. The torat Elohav ('the instruction/Torah of his God') is be-libbo ('in his heart') — internalized, not merely memorized. The result: lo tim'ad ashruv ('his steps do not slip'). The connection is causal: when God's instruction lives inside the heart, the feet find stable ground. This echoes Psalm 1:2-3 and Psalm 119:11 ('I have stored up your word in my heart, that I might not sin against you').
32. The verb tsofeh ('watches, spies, observes') describes surveillance with hostile intent. The verb mevaqesh lahamito ('seeks to put him to death') reveals the motive: the wicked person's observation is predatory. He watches the righteous the way a hunter watches prey.
33. God intervenes at two levels: He will not leave the righteous be-yado ('in his hand' — in the power of the wicked), and He will not let him be found guilty be-hishshafto ('when he is judged'). God is both rescue-warrior and defense-attorney.
34. The psalm's closing section summarizes its theology in two imperatives: qavveh ('wait, hope') and shemor darkko ('keep/guard His way'). The reward: vi-romimekha lareshet erets ('He will exalt you to inherit the land'). The final phrase be-hikkarit resha'im tir'eh ('when the wicked are cut off, you will see it') promises that the righteous will witness the fulfillment with their own eyes. They will not merely hear about it secondhand.

35. David's personal testimony: *ra'iti rasha arits* ('I have seen a wicked person who was terrifying/ruthless'). The simile *ke-ezrach ra'anan* ('like a native/indigenous green tree') pictures a tree rooted in its own soil — deeply established, lush, apparently permanent. The word *ezrach* means 'native, indigenous' — this tree belongs, it has always been here, it looks immovable.
36. The reversal is abrupt: *vayyaavor* ('and he passed away') — the great tree simply disappeared. The *hinneh einennu* ('behold, he is not!') echoes verse 10. David searched for him (*va-avaqshehu*) and found nothing (*lo nimtsa*). The mighty, spreading tree has vanished as completely as grass in summer. No trace, no stump, no memory.
37. The instruction is observational: *shemor tam* ('watch the blameless one') and *re'eh yashar* ('observe the upright one'). The reason: *ki acharit le-ish shalom* ('for there is a future/end for the person of peace'). The word *acharit* ('end, latter days, future, posterity') means the blameless person has a future that endures. The person of *shalom* ('peace, wholeness') has something the wicked do not: an afterwards.
38. The contrast with verse 37 is total: the righteous have an *acharit* ('future'); the wicked have their *acharit* cut off (*nikhratah*). The verb *nishmadu* ('they are destroyed') from *shamad* ('to annihilate, to exterminate') and the word *yachdav* ('together, altogether') mean the destruction is collective and comprehensive.
39. The psalm nears its conclusion with a declaration of source: *teshu'at tsaddiqim me-YHWH* ('the salvation of the righteous is from the LORD'). Salvation does not come from human effort, military power, or clever strategy — it comes from God. He is their *ma'uzzam* ('their stronghold, their refuge') specifically *be-et tsarah* ('in the time of distress'). God's protection is activated by crisis.
40. The final verse accumulates four verbs of salvation: *ya'azrem* ('He helps them'), *yefalltem* ('He delivers them'), *yefalltem me-resha'im* ('He delivers them from the wicked'), *ve-yoshi'em* ('and He saves them'). The reason is the psalm's foundational verb: *ki chasu vo* ('because they have taken refuge in Him'). The verb *chasah* ('to take refuge') is the Psalter's signature act of faith. The psalm that began by counseling against anger and envy ends by grounding everything in the single act of taking shelter in God.

38

Summary: *A penitential psalm of David, composed 'for remembrance' (le hazkir). David describes his suffering in excruciating physical detail — festering wounds, a bent body, burning loins, failing eyes, a pounding heart — and attributes it to God's wrath against his sin. His friends withdraw. His enemies watch. He has become silent, unable even to defend himself. The psalm ends not with resolution or deliverance but with a raw plea: 'Do not abandon me, O LORD. Be not far from me. Hurry to help me, O Lord, my salvation.' It is one of the most unflinching accounts of suffering in the Psalter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Unlike Psalm 32, which describes suffering caused by concealed sin and ended by confession, Psalm 38 describes suffering that continues even after acknowledgment. David confesses his sin openly (v. 19) and still the pain persists. The psalm offers no resolution, no turning point, no moment of relief. It begins in agony and ends in agony, with only a thread of hope in the final verse. This makes it one of the most honest prayers in Scripture — a prayer that refuses to manufacture a happy ending. The physical descriptions are among the most graphic in ancient literature: arrows embedded in the flesh (v. 3), wounds that fester and stink (v. 6), burning in the loins (v. 8), a heart that pounds (v. 11), eyes that fail (v. 11). The psalmist's body has become a battlefield between God's discipline and his own sin.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription le hazkir ('for remembrance, for a memorial') is shared only with Psalm 70 and connects to the azkarat offering (the memorial portion of the grain offering, Leviticus 2:2). Some scholars suggest the psalm was recited during that offering. The theology of direct divine punishment for personal sin (God's arrows in the flesh, His hand pressing down) is one that other biblical books qualify — Job questions it, Ecclesiastes undermines it, and Jesus challenges it in John 9:1-3. Psalm 38 does not argue the theology; it lives inside it. David accepts that his suffering is connected to his sin, even as the psalm quietly protests the severity of the punishment.*

Connections: *Psalm 38 is the third of the seven traditional penitential psalms (6, 32, 38, 51, 102, 130, 143). Its language of physical affliction parallels Job 7 and 30. The imagery of arrows (v. 3) connects to Psalm 64:7 and Lamentations 3:12-13 (where God shoots arrows into the kidneys). The abandonment by friends (v. 12) parallels Psalm 31:11-12 and Job 19:13-19. The silence of the psalmist before accusers (vv. 14-15) anticipates Isaiah's Servant who 'does not open his mouth' (Isaiah 53:7) and Jesus' silence before Pilate (Matthew 27:14).*

¹A psalm of David, for remembrance.

²O LORD, do not rebuke me in your wrath.
Do not discipline me in your burning anger.

³For your arrows have sunk deep into me,
and your hand has come down hard upon me.

⁴There is no soundness in my flesh because of your fury.
There is no wholeness in my bones because of my sin.

⁵For my iniquities have risen over my head.
Like a heavy burden, they are too heavy for me to bear.

⁶My wounds fester and rot
because of my foolishness.

⁷I am bent over and bowed down completely.
All day long I go about in mourning.

⁸For my sides are filled with burning,
and there is no soundness in my flesh.

⁹I am numb and utterly crushed.
I groan from the anguish of my heart.

¹⁰O Lord, all my longing is before you.
My groaning is not hidden from you.

¹¹My heart pounds violently. My strength has left me.
Even the light of my eyes — it too has gone from me.

¹²My loved ones and my friends stand at a distance from my affliction,
and my relatives stand far away.

¹³Those who seek my life set traps for me.
Those who seek my harm speak of destruction
and plot deceit all day long.

¹⁴But I am like a deaf man — I do not hear.
Like a mute person who does not open his mouth.

¹⁵I have become like a person who does not hear,
in whose mouth there are no arguments.

¹⁶For in you, O LORD, I have placed my hope.
You will answer, O Lord my God.

¹⁷For I said, 'Do not let them gloat over me,
those who exalt themselves over me when my foot slips.'

¹⁸For I am on the verge of collapse,
and my pain is always before me.

¹⁹For I confess my iniquity.
I am troubled by my sin.

²⁰But my enemies are vigorous and strong,
and those who hate me falsely are many.

²¹Those who repay evil for good
accuse me because I pursue what is good.

²²Do not abandon me, O LORD.
O my God, do not be far from me.

²³Hurry to help me,
O Lord, my salvation.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *le hazkir* ('for remembrance, for a memorial offering') connects this psalm to the sacrificial system. The Hiphil of *zakar* ('to remember') suggests that the psalm is itself an act of bringing something before God's attention — either the psalmist's suffering or his penitence. The same term appears in the headings of Psalm 70.
2. The opening echoes Psalm 6:1 almost verbatim. The two words for divine anger — *qetseph* ('wrath, fury, indignation') and *chamah* ('heat, burning anger, rage') — describe intensity on two registers. David does not ask God to stop disciplining him entirely; he asks God to lower the temperature. The verbs *tokhicheni* ('rebuke me') and *teyassereni* ('discipline me, chasten me') belong to the parent-child vocabulary: this is corrective pain, not vindictive punishment.
3. The arrow imagery for divine punishment appears across the ancient Near East. In the Hebrew Bible, God's arrows represent plague, disaster, or direct affliction (Deuteronomy 32:23, Lamentations 3:12-13, Ezekiel 5:16). The pairing of arrows (distance weapon) and hand (close weapon) means there is no safe range — God's discipline reaches David at every distance.
4. The parallel structure attributes the physical collapse to two causes: God's fury (*za'amekha*) and David's sin (*chattati*). The word *metom* ('soundness, wholeness, health') from *tamam* ('to be complete') means nothing in his flesh is intact. The word *shalom* ('peace, wholeness, well-being') is absent from his bones. The verse makes no attempt to separate the physical from the moral: sin and suffering are intertwined in David's body.
5. The image of *avonot* ('iniquities') rising over the head (*avru roshi*) is like drowning — the water level has passed above the head, and the person is submerged. The simile *ke-massa kaved* ('like a heavy load') shifts to the image of a back-breaking burden. David's sins are simultaneously flood and freight — he is drowning under them and crushed beneath them.
6. The verb *hiv'ishu* ('they stink, they emit a foul odor') and *namaqu* ('they are festering, they are oozing') describe infected wounds in clinical detail. The *chavurotai* ('my wounds, my welts, my stripes') are attributed to *ivalti* ('my foolishness'). The word *ivelet* is not mere stupidity but moral foolishness — the willful choice of the wrong path that Proverbs calls the way of the fool.
7. The verb *na'aveti* ('I am bent, I am twisted') describes a body that can no longer stand straight. The verb *shachoti* ('I am bowed down') intensifies: bent to the ground. The phrase *kol hayyom qoder hillakhti* ('all day long I walk about darkened/in mourning') describes a person who shuffles through life in a permanent posture of grief, face darkened, body hunched.
8. The word *kesalai* ('my loins, my sides, my flanks') refers to the lower back and hip area. The word *nikleh* ('burning, inflammation, something worthless/scorched') describes either a burning skin disease or intense fever in the midsection. The phrase *ein metom bi-vesari* ('there is no soundness in my flesh') repeats verse 4, creating a frame: the body is uniformly damaged.
9. The verb *nefugoti* ('I am numb, I am paralyzed, I am faint') describes someone whose capacity to feel has been overwhelmed — past pain, into numbness. The verb *nidkeiti* ('I am crushed, I am broken') from *dakah* ('to crush, to pulverize'). The verb *sha'agti* ('I have roared, I have groaned') from *nahamat libbi* ('the groaning/roaring of my heart') — the heart itself is making an animal sound of distress.
10. A moment of address amid the catalog of pain. The word *ta'avati* ('my desire, my longing, my craving') means everything David wants — healing, restoration, God's presence — lies open before God. The *anchati* ('my groaning, my sighing') is not hidden (*lo nistrah*) from God. The verse is simultaneously a prayer and a statement of trust: even if David cannot form coherent petitions, God sees his longing and hears his groans.
11. The verb *secharchar* ('palpitates, pounds, goes around and around') describes a heart that races and flutters — a symptom of extreme anxiety or physical illness. The phrase *azavani kochi* ('my strength has abandoned me') means his body's power has deserted him. The final blow: or *einai* ('the light of my eyes') — his vision itself — *gam hem ein itti* ('even they are not with me'). The eyes are failing. David is losing the ability to see. The catalog of physical destruction is nearly total: flesh, bones, wounds, loins, heart, strength, eyes.

12. The social collapse mirrors the physical collapse. The ohavai ('my loved ones') and re'ai ('my friends/companions') stand mi-neged nig'i ('opposite my affliction' — at a safe distance from his disease). The qerovai ('my close relatives, my kinsmen') stand me-rachok ('far off'). The people who should be closest have retreated. Suffering has made David untouchable — a leper in all but name.
13. While friends retreat, enemies advance. The mevaqshei nafshi ('those who seek my life') set traps (vayyenaqshu). The dorshei ra'ati ('those who seek my harm') speak havvot ('destructions, calamities, ruin') and meditate on mirmot ('deceits, treacheries') all day. The combination of social isolation and active persecution creates total vulnerability: no friends to defend him, only enemies to destroy him.
14. David's response to his accusers is total silence. He is ke-cheresh ('like a deaf man') — he does not listen to the accusations. He is ke-illem ('like a mute person') — he does not defend himself. This silence is not passive resignation but deliberate restraint. David could argue, defend, counter-accuse — but he refuses. This posture anticipates Isaiah's Suffering Servant ('like a sheep before its shearers is silent, so he did not open his mouth,' Isaiah 53:7) and Jesus' silence before Pilate.
15. The silence deepens: not only does David refuse to speak, but he has no tokhachot ('reproofs, arguments, rebuttals') in his mouth at all. He has emptied himself of defense. The reason for this silence emerges in verse 16: David has transferred his case entirely to God. He is silent before people because he is speaking to God.
16. The reason for silence before human accusers: lekha YHWH hochalti ('in you, O LORD, I have waited/hoped'). David's defense is not in his own mouth but in God's response. The declaration attah ta'aneh ('you will answer') is an act of faith: God will eventually speak on David's behalf. The triple title YHWH...Adonai Elohai ('LORD...Lord my God') piles up divine names as if to anchor the faith more firmly.
17. David's prayer has a specific fear: pen yismchu li ('lest they rejoice over me'). The verb mot ragli ('my foot slips, my foot staggers') describes a stumble that the enemies would exploit. The verb higdilu alai ('they magnify themselves against me') means they enlarge themselves at David's expense — his diminishment is their aggrandizement.
18. The phrase le-tsela nakhon ('ready for stumbling, prepared for falling') means David is at the breaking point — one more push and he falls. His makh'ovi ('my pain') is negdi tamid ('continually before me') — he cannot look away from his own suffering. There is no respite, no distraction, no relief.
19. The confession: avoni aggid ('my iniquity I declare/confess'). The verb aggid ('I tell, I declare, I make known') is a public statement, not a private thought. The verb ed'ag ('I am anxious, I am troubled, I am concerned') from da'ag ('to be anxious') describes the ongoing anguish that sin produces — not just guilt but deep disturbance. Unlike Psalm 32, where confession brought immediate relief, here the confession does not resolve the suffering.
20. The contrast is brutal: David is collapsing, but his enemies are chayyim ('alive, vigorous, full of life') and atsermu ('strong, powerful, numerous'). Those who hate him sheqer ('falsely, without legitimate cause') are rabbou ('have multiplied, have increased'). As David weakens, his enemies grow stronger and more numerous.
21. The theme from Psalm 35:12 returns: meshallemei ra'ah tachat tovah ('those who repay evil in place of good'). The verb yistenuni ('they accuse me, they act as adversaries against me') from satan ('to oppose, to accuse') — they play the adversary role. The reason: tachat rodfi tov ('because I pursue good'). David's pursuit of goodness is itself the offense that provokes their hostility.
22. The closing plea strips away everything except the essential request: al ta'azveni ('do not abandon me') and al tirchaq mimmenni ('do not be far from me'). These are the two things David fears more than pain, more than enemies, more than death: God's absence and God's distance. The double address YHWH...Elohai ('LORD...my God') clings to both the covenant name and the personal relationship.
23. The final word: chushah le-ezrati Adonai teshu'ati ('hurry to my help, O Lord, my salvation'). The verb chushah ('hurry, make haste, come quickly') is the most urgent word in the Hebrew prayer vocabulary. The psalm ends not with resolution but with urgency — a running cry from a person who needs God to arrive now. The title teshu'ati ('my salvation') makes the last word of the psalm the declaration that God is David's rescue, even though the rescue has not yet arrived. This is faith at its rawest: claiming God as salvation while still drowning.

39

Summary: A psalm of David addressed to Jeduthun, one of the three chief temple musicians. David resolves to remain silent so as not to sin with his tongue, especially while the wicked are present. But the suppressed words build like a fire until they burst out in a meditation on the brevity and futility of human life. David asks God to show him the measure of his days, declares that every person is a mere breath (hevel), and that human busyness is all vanity. The psalm ends with a startling prayer: 'Look away from me, that I may brighten before I depart and am no more.'

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 39 is the most Ecclesiastes-like text in the Psalter. The word hevel ('breath, vapor, vanity') — the signature word of Ecclesiastes — appears three times (vv. 6, 7, 12), and the psalm's conclusion about human transience echoes Ecclesiastes almost verbatim. But where Ecclesiastes maintains a philosophical distance from its subject, Psalm 39 is anguished and personal — this is not a sage's meditation but a sufferer's outburst. The closing prayer is astonishing: instead of asking God to draw near (as in most psalms), David asks God to look away (v. 14). The logic is that God's gaze has become unbearable — not because God is hostile but because David cannot survive the intensity of divine scrutiny combined with his own smallness. He wants a moment of reprieve before death.*

Translation Friction: *The address to Jeduthun (Yedutun) in the superscription is debated. Jeduthun was a Levitical musician (1 Chronicles 16:41-42, 25:1-3; 2 Chronicles 5:12). The preposition li-Yedutun could mean 'for Jeduthun' (the musician who will perform it), 'to Jeduthun' (dedicated to him), or 'in the manner of Jeduthun.' The same name appears in Psalm 62 and 77 superscriptions. The final verse's request that God look away (ha'sha mi-menni, 'gaze away from me') has troubled interpreters who expect psalms to end with restored intimacy. Job makes a similar request in Job 7:19 ('Will you not look away from me?') and Job 14:6 ('Look away from him and let him alone'). The psalm sits uncomfortably between trust and exhaustion.*

Connections: *The theme of human brevity connects to Psalm 90:3-6 (Moses' meditation on human frailty), James 4:14 ('you are a mist that appears for a little while and then vanishes'), and 1 Peter 1:24 (quoting Isaiah 40:6-8, 'all flesh is like grass'). The hevel-language links directly to Ecclesiastes 1:2 ('vanity of vanities'). The silence motif (vv. 2-3) connects to Psalm 38:13-14 (where David was also silent before enemies). The image of God as discipliner through illness (v. 12) continues from Psalm 38. The final prayer to 'look away' echoes Job 7:19 and 10:20-21.*

¹For the director of music. For Jeduthun. A psalm of David.

²I said, 'I will guard my ways
so that I do not sin with my tongue.
I will put a muzzle on my mouth
while the wicked are in my presence.'

³I was mute with silence.
I held back, even from good words.
But my pain was stirred up.

⁴My heart grew hot within me.
As I meditated, the fire blazed —
and I spoke with my tongue:

⁵LORD, make me know my end
and the measure of my days — what it is.
Let me know how fleeting I am.

⁶See — you have made my days a few handbreadths,
and my lifespan is as nothing before you.
Surely every person standing firm is nothing but a breath. Selah.

⁷Surely a person walks about as a mere shadow.
Surely they bustle about for nothing.
He heaps up wealth and does not know who will gather it.

⁸And now, Lord, what do I wait for?
My hope — it is in you.

⁹Deliver me from all my transgressions.
Do not make me the scorn of the fool.

¹⁰I am silent. I do not open my mouth,
for you are the one who has done this.

¹¹Remove your plague from me.
I am wasting away from the hostility of your hand.

¹²When you discipline a person with rebukes for iniquity,
you consume what is precious to him like a moth.
Surely every person is a breath. Selah.

¹³Hear my prayer, O LORD, and give ear to my cry.
Do not be silent at my tears.
For I am a stranger with you,
a sojourner, like all my fathers.

¹⁴Look away from me, that I may brighten,
before I go away and am no more.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jeduthun (Yedutun) was one of three chief musicians appointed by David for temple worship (alongside Asaph and Heman). His name may derive from yadah ('to praise, to give thanks'). The psalm's assignment to Jeduthun may indicate the musical style, the performing ensemble, or the dedicatee.
2. David's resolution is to control his speech: eshmerah derakhay me-chato bi-leshoni ('I will guard my ways from sinning with my tongue'). The machsom ('muzzle, restraint, bridle') is a vivid image — David is treating his own mouth like a dangerous animal that must be physically restrained. The reason: be-od rasha le-negdi ('while the wicked is before me'). David does not want to give the wicked ammunition by speaking rashly in their presence.
3. The silence goes too far: ne'elamti dumiyyah ('I was struck dumb with stillness'). David stopped speaking entirely — hecheisheti mi-tov ('I was silent from good') — he held back even legitimate, positive speech. The result: u-khe'evi ne'ekar ('and my pain was agitated, was churned up'). Suppressing speech did not resolve the inner turmoil; it intensified it. The pain fermented under the seal of silence.
4. The progression from heat to fire to speech mirrors Jeremiah's experience in Jeremiah 20:9: 'If I say, I will not mention him or speak any more in his name, there is in my heart as it were a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I am weary with holding it in, and I cannot.' Suppressed truth generates internal combustion.
5. David's outburst is not a complaint about the wicked but a plea for perspective on his own mortality. The qitsi ('my end') and middat yamai ('the measure of my days') ask for numerical specificity — how much time do I have left? The phrase mah chadel ani ('how fleeting/transient I am') uses chadel ('ceasing, fleeting, frail'), a word that describes something about to stop existing.
6. The word hevel is one of the most important in the Hebrew Bible. It literally means 'breath, vapor, mist' — something that exists momentarily and then dissipates. Ecclesiastes uses it thirty-eight times to describe the transience and insubstantiality of all human endeavor. Here in Psalm 39, it carries the same force: human life is a breath that barely registers against the backdrop of eternity.
7. Three observations about human futility. First: be-tselem yithallekh ish ('a person walks about as a shadow/image') — the word tselem ('image, shadow, phantom') is the same word used in Genesis 1:26 ('Let us make humanity in our image'). The image of God walks about as a shadow — this is not a denial of the imago Dei but a lament over its fragility. Second: hevel yehemayun ('they bustle about for vapor, they are agitated for nothing'). Third: yitsbor ve-lo yeda mi osefam ('he heaps up and does not know who will gather'). The accumulation that drives human industry is ultimately pointless because the accumulator will not be the beneficiary. Ecclesiastes 2:18-21 develops this identical argument.
8. The pivot. After the meditation on futility, David asks the essential question: mah qivviti ('what have I hoped for? what am I waiting for?'). If everything is breath, what can sustain hope? The answer is four words: tochaliti lekha hi ('my hope — it is to/for you'). When everything else evaporates, God remains. This is not optimism; it is the last thing standing after everything else has been declared vapor.
9. David asks for two things: deliverance from his pesha'ai ('transgressions, rebellions') and protection from the cherpat naval ('reproach/scorn of the fool'). The naval ('fool, senseless person') is the Psalter's moral villain — the person who says 'There is no God' (Psalm 14:1). David does not want his suffering to become proof for the fool's thesis.

10. The silence returns, but now it has a theological reason: *ki attah asita* ('because you have done this'). David's suffering is not random; it comes from God. And because it comes from God, David will not protest. The pronoun *attah* ('you') is emphatic: you, specifically, have done this to me. This is not passive acceptance of fate but active submission to the God who acts.
11. The prayer is direct: *haser me-alay nig'ekha* ('remove from upon me your plague/stroke'). The word *nega* ('plague, blow, stroke, affliction') is the same word used for the plagues of Egypt and for skin diseases in Leviticus 13. The phrase *mi-tigrat yadekha* ('from the hostility/contention of your hand') describes God's hand as combative — fighting against David. The verb *kaliti* ('I am finished, I am exhausted, I am consumed') means David has reached his limit.
12. God's discipline (*be-tokhachot al avon yissarta ish*, 'with rebukes for iniquity you discipline a person') has a specific effect: *vatemes ka-ash chamudo* ('you melt/dissolve like a moth what is precious/desirable to him'). The image of a moth consuming a garment is devastating — it happens slowly, silently, invisibly, and the destruction is irreversible. The refrain *akh hevel kol adam* ('surely every person is a breath') returns, now deepened by the intervening meditation. *Selah*.
13. David's self-description is striking: *ger anokhi immakh* ('I am a stranger/resident alien with you'). The *ger* was a non-citizen living in someone else's land — dependent on the landowner's hospitality, without permanent rights. David says his entire existence on earth is that of a guest in God's territory. The word *toshav* ('sojourner, temporary resident') deepens this: David is passing through, not settling down. And this is not unique to David: *ke-khol avotai* ('like all my ancestors'). Every generation is a guest. The tears (*dim'ati*) are the physical evidence of this displacement — the cry of someone who knows he does not truly belong.
14. The prayer 'look away from me' (*hasha mimmenni*) reverses the normal psalmist's request. Usually the plea is 'do not hide your face' or 'look upon me.' Here, God's attention has become a burden, not a comfort. Job 7:19 makes the same request: 'Will you not look away from me for an instant, and leave me alone long enough to swallow my spit?' The prayer is not for permanent divine absence but for a moment of reprieve — a breath of mercy in the gap between suffering and death.

40

Summary: *A psalm of David that moves in two dramatic movements: first, a testimony of deliverance from the pit (vv. 2-11) — God lifted him out, set his feet on rock, put a new song in his mouth, and revealed that what He truly desires is not sacrifice but obedient ears — and second, a desperate plea from a new crisis (vv. 12-18). The psalm's emotional trajectory is startling: the first half celebrates rescue already accomplished; the second half cries out for rescue not yet arrived. David holds both experiences simultaneously — past deliverance and present danger — without resolving the tension.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 7-9 contain one of the most theologically significant statements about sacrifice in the Hebrew Bible. David declares that God did not desire (lo chafatsta) sacrifice (zevach), offering (minchah), burnt offering (olah), or sin offering (chata'ah) — the four major categories of the Israelite sacrificial system. Instead: oznayim karita li ('ears you dug/hollowed out for me'). The image is extraordinary: God excavated David's ears — bored them open, shaped them for hearing. What God wants is not the smoke of burned animals but a person whose ears have been opened to hear and obey. The writer of Hebrews 10:5-7 quotes this passage (via the LXX, which reads 'a body you prepared for me' instead of 'ears you dug for me') and applies it to Christ's incarnation — the ultimate replacement of animal sacrifice with personal obedience. In its original Hebrew context, the statement is a prophetic critique of the sacrificial system from within the psalmic tradition itself.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the two halves of this psalm is debated. The sudden shift from joyful testimony (vv. 2-11) to urgent plea (vv. 12-18) has led some scholars to argue that two originally separate psalms were joined. Psalm 70 is virtually identical to verses 14-18, supporting the theory that these verses once circulated independently. The phrase oznayim karita li ('ears you dug for me') is textually significant: the LXX translates it as soma de katertiso moi ('a body you prepared for me'), which is the version quoted in Hebrews 10:5. The MT's 'ears' and the LXX's 'body' are different readings with different theological implications, though both point toward the same conclusion: God wants obedient presence, not ritual performance.*

Connections: *Hebrews 10:5-10 quotes verses 7-9 as the words of Christ entering the world, making this psalm christologically central in the New Testament. The critique of sacrifice echoes 1 Samuel 15:22 ('to obey is better than sacrifice'), Hosea 6:6 ('I desire faithful love and not sacrifice'), Micah 6:6-8, and Isaiah 1:11-17. Psalm 70 duplicates verses 14-18 almost word for word. The 'new song' (shir chadash) of verse 4 connects to Psalms 33:3, 96:1, 98:1, and*

144:9. The 'scroll of the book' (megillat sefer) in verse 8 has been interpreted as the Torah, a prophetic commission, or a heavenly decree about David's destiny.

¹For the director of music. A psalm of David.

²I waited — waited intently — for the LORD,
and He leaned down to me and heard my cry.

³He lifted me out of the pit of destruction,
out of the miry mud.
He set my feet on a rock
and made my steps secure.

⁴He put a new song in my mouth,
a hymn of praise to our God.
Many will see and fear
and put their trust in the LORD.

⁵Blessed is the person who makes the LORD his trust
and does not turn to the arrogant
or to those who chase after lies.

⁶Many are the wonders you have done, O LORD my God,
and your plans for us —
nothing can compare to you.
If I tried to declare and tell of them,
they would be too many to count.

⁷Sacrifice and offering you did not desire —
ears you dug for me.
Burnt offering and sin offering you did not require.

⁸Then I said, 'See — I have come.
In the scroll of the book it is written about me.

⁹I delight to do your will, O my God.
Your instruction is within my inmost being.'

¹⁰I proclaimed good news of righteousness in the great assembly.
See — I did not seal my lips.
O LORD, you know this.

¹¹I did not hide your righteousness within my heart.
I spoke of your faithfulness and your salvation.
I did not conceal your faithful love and your truth
from the great assembly.

¹²You, O LORD, will not withhold your compassion from me.
Your faithful love and your truth
will always guard me.

¹³For evils beyond number have surrounded me.
My iniquities have overtaken me — I cannot see.
They are more than the hairs of my head,
and my heart has failed me.

¹⁴Be pleased, O LORD, to deliver me.
O LORD, hurry to help me.

¹⁵Let those who seek to destroy my life
be shamed and disgraced together.
Let those who delight in my ruin
be turned back and humiliated.

¹⁶Let those who say to me, 'Ha! Ha!'
be appalled at their own shame.

¹⁷Let all who seek you rejoice and be glad in you.
Let those who love your salvation say continually,
'The LORD is great!'

¹⁸As for me — I am poor and needy,
but the Lord thinks of me.
You are my help and my deliverer.
O my God, do not delay.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard *la-menatseach le-David mizmor* heading places this psalm in the Davidic collection for liturgical performance.
2. The infinitive absolute construction (*qavvoh qivviti*) is one of Hebrew's strongest emphasis markers. It could be rendered 'I certainly waited,' 'I waited and waited,' or 'I waited with all my being.' The construction communicates that the waiting itself was an act of faith — not passive but strenuously sustained.
3. The *bor* ('pit, cistern, well') is a common image for Sheol, death, or desperate trouble in the Psalms (Psalms 28:1, 30:3, 69:15, 88:4). The *sha'on* ('roaring, tumult, destruction') may describe the sound of rushing water at the bottom of the pit or the noise of chaos. The *sela* ('rock, cliff, crag') is the opposite of *tit ha-yaven* ('miry mud') — one swallows you, the other supports you.
4. The *shir chadash* ('new song') is not merely a recently composed song but a song that responds to a new act of God — unprecedented mercy demands unprecedented music. God is both the rescuer and the songwriter: *vayyitten be-fi* ('He put in my mouth'). David does not compose the song; God places it there. The result is evangelistic: *yir'u rabbim ve-yira'u ve-yivtechu ba-YHWH* ('many will see and fear and trust in the LORD'). David's rescue becomes a public testimony that draws others to faith.
5. The *ashrei* ('blessed') formula praises the person whose *mivtacho* ('his trust, his confidence') is placed in the LORD. The contrasts are *rehabim* ('the proud, the arrogant, the boastful') and *satei khazav* ('those who turn aside to falsehood'). The *rehab* may also be a mythological reference to the sea-monster *Rahab*, symbolizing chaotic powers — trusting in proud, boastful forces rather than in God.
6. The scope expands from personal testimony to cosmic praise. God's *nifle'otekha* ('your wonders, your extraordinary deeds') and *machshevotekha* ('your plans, your thoughts') toward us (*eleinu*) are innumerable. The phrase *ein arokh elekha* ('nothing can be arranged/compared to you') means God is incomparable — every attempt to measure Him fails. The final phrase *atsemu mi-sapper* ('they are too numerous to count') admits the inadequacy of language: David's new song can only sample from an infinite playlist.
7. The phrase *oznayim karita li* has been interpreted in several ways: (1) God bored David's ears open, creating the capacity for obedience; (2) an allusion to the ear-piercing ceremony of Exodus 21:5-6, where a slave who chooses to remain with his master has his ear pierced against a doorpost — an act of voluntary, permanent servitude; (3) the LXX reads *soma de katertiso moi* ('a body you prepared for me'), which Hebrews 10:5 quotes. The MT's 'ears' is the harder reading and likely original. The LXX's 'body' may be an interpretive expansion: the ear stands for the whole person.
7. The prophetic critique of sacrifice-without-obedience runs through the Hebrew Bible: 1 Samuel 15:22, Isaiah 1:11-17, Jeremiah 7:22-23, Hosea 6:6, Amos 5:21-24, Micah 6:6-8. David's statement here is not a rejection of the sacrificial system but a declaration of its purpose: sacrifice without the opened ear is theater.

8. David responds to the opened ears with total availability: *hinneh va'ti* ('Behold, I have come'). The phrase *bi-megillat sefer katuv alai* ('in the scroll of the book it is written about me') refers to a written document — possibly the Torah, a prophetic oracle, a heavenly register, or a royal commissioning decree. Whatever the specific referent, David understands that his life has a script written by God, and he has come to fulfill it. Hebrews 10:7 applies these words to Christ entering the world.
9. The verb *chafatsti* ('I desire, I delight') — the same verb that described what God does not desire regarding sacrifice (v. 7) — now describes what David desires: *la'asot retsonkha* ('to do your will/pleasure'). The reversal is complete: God does not delight in sacrifice; David delights in obedience. God's *toratekha* ('your Torah/instruction') is *be-tokh me'ai* ('within my intestines/inmost parts'). The *me'ayim* ('intestines, bowels, inner organs') are the deepest interior of the body — Torah has been swallowed, digested, and absorbed into David's very organs.
10. The verb *bissarti* ('I proclaimed good news, I bore tidings') from *basar* is the Hebrew root behind the New Testament's *euangelion* ('gospel, good news'). David has been an evangelist: he proclaimed *tsedeq* ('righteousness, vindication') in the *qahal rav* ('great assembly'). His lips were not sealed (*lo ekhla*, 'I did not restrain') — unlike his silence in Psalm 39, here he speaks freely. The appeal *YHWH attah yadata* ('LORD, you know') calls God as witness to his faithfulness.
11. Five divine attributes David has publicly proclaimed: *tsidqatekha* ('your righteousness'), *emunatekha* ('your faithfulness'), *teshu'atekha* ('your salvation'), *chasdekha* ('your faithful love'), and *amittekha* ('your truth/reliability'). He did not hide (*lo khissiti*) or conceal (*lo khichadti*) any of them. The repetition of *qahal rav* ('great assembly') from verse 10 emphasizes that David's testimony is public, not private. Concealing God's attributes would be a form of theft from the congregation.
12. The verse pivots from testimony to petition. The logic is: since I did not withhold your attributes from the assembly (vv. 10-11), do not withhold your *rachamekha* ('your compassion, your mercies') from me. The pair *chasdekha va-amittekha* ('your faithful love and your truth') becomes David's personal bodyguard: *tamid yitseruni* ('they will always protect me, they will always guard me'). The verb *natsar* ('to guard, to watch over, to protect') turns divine attributes into active agents of preservation.
13. The second half of the psalm begins with a new crisis. The *ra'ot* ('evils, disasters') are *ad ein mispar* ('without number'). David's *avonot* ('iniquities') have caught him (*hissiguni*, 'they have overtaken me') — sin is personified as a pursuer who has finally caught its quarry. The result: *lo yakholti lir'ot* ('I am unable to see') — he is blinded by the sheer volume of trouble. They outnumber the hairs of his head. And his *lev* ('heart') — the seat of courage and will — *azavani* ('has abandoned me'). This is the same David who just sang a new song and proclaimed God's faithfulness. The psalm holds both realities.
14. From here through verse 18, the text is virtually identical to Psalm 70 (which circulated as an independent psalm). The doubled *YHWH* creates urgency: *LORD, deliver — LORD, hurry*. The verb *retseh* ('be pleased, be willing, consent') does not demand but appeals: be willing to rescue me.
15. The imprecation follows the pattern of Psalm 35:4, 26. The four verbs of defeat — *yevoshu* ('be shamed'), *yachperu* ('be disgraced'), *yissogu* *achor* ('be driven back'), *yikkalemu* ('be humiliated') — describe a comprehensive rout. The phrase *mevaqshei nafshi lispotah* ('those who seek my soul to sweep it away') pictures the enemies as people trying to annihilate David's very existence.
16. The gloating cry *he'ach he'ach* ('Aha! Aha!') from Psalm 35:21 returns — the sound of malicious delight at David's suffering. The verb *yashommu* ('let them be appalled, let them be horrified') turns the mockers' joy into horror: their own *boshtam* ('shame') will become the thing that appalls them.
17. The contrast with verse 16: those who seek David's ruin will be shamed, but those who seek God (*mevaqshekha*) will rejoice. The phrase *ohavei teshu'atekha* ('those who love your salvation') describes people whose primary desire is God's saving action. Their refrain: *yigdal YHWH* ('let the LORD be magnified/great') — the same perpetual song as Psalm 35:27.
18. The tension between verse 2 ('I waited patiently') and verse 18 ('do not delay') is not a contradiction but the full range of prayer. Faith includes both sustained patience and urgent pleading. The psalmist who waited intently for the LORD in the past now cries for the LORD to come quickly in the present. Both are trust.

41

Summary: Psalm 41 closes Book I of the Psalter (Psalms 1-41) with a psalm of David about the faithful person who cares for the weak. The psalmist moves from a wisdom-style beatitude about those who attend to the poor (daleth), through a personal lament about illness and betrayal by a trusted friend, to a declaration of trust in the LORD who upholds him. The psalm ends with a doxology that seals the entire first book.

What Makes This Remarkable: The center of this psalm is one of the most piercing betrayal texts in the Hebrew Bible: 'Even my close friend, whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted his heel against me' (v. 10). The Hebrew gam ish shelomi asher batachti bo okhel lachmi higdil alai aqev is devastating in its specificity — this is not a stranger but a covenant-meal companion. The image of lifting the heel (higdil alai aqev) may suggest a horse kicking its master, or a wrestler's treacherous move. The New Testament will apply this verse directly to Judas (John 13:18). The doxology in verse 14 —

'Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, from everlasting to everlasting. Amen and Amen' — is not part of the psalm proper but an editorial addition marking the end of Book I. Each of the five books of the Psalter ends with a similar doxology.

Translation Friction: The superscription lam'natseach mizmor le-David ('For the choirmaster, a psalm of David') assigns authorship, but the content — illness, enemies who wish him dead, a betraying friend — fits many possible life settings. The term dal in verse 2 is often translated 'poor' but means specifically 'weak, thin, low, helpless' — someone diminished in power or resources. The beatitude form (ashre) at the opening connects this psalm to Psalm 1, creating a literary frame around Book I: both begin with ashre. The phrase 'you have upheld me in my integrity' (v. 13) is bold — the psalmist claims tummah (moral wholeness) despite his suffering, refusing to accept that illness equals divine punishment.

Connections: Psalm 41 forms an inclusio with Psalm 1: both open with ashre ('blessed/happy is the one who...'). The betrayal by a table-companion (v. 10) resonates with the psalms of David's court crises, particularly the Absalom psalms (3, 55, 63). The identification of this friend may connect to Ahithophel (2 Samuel 15:12, 16:23). The doxology (v. 14) parallels the closing doxologies of Book II (72:18-19), Book III (89:53), Book IV (106:48), and Book V (150, which is itself the doxology). Jesus quotes verse 10 in John 13:18, applying it to Judas Iscariot's betrayal during the Passover meal.

¹For the choirmaster. A psalm of David.

²Blessed is the one who gives thought to the weak —
in the day of trouble the LORD will rescue him.

³The LORD will guard him and keep him alive;
he will be declared blessed in the land.
Do not give him over to the appetite of his enemies.

⁴The LORD will sustain him on his bed of illness;
you transform his entire resting place when he is sick.

⁵I said, "LORD, show me grace;
heal my life, for I have sinned against you."

⁶My enemies speak malice about me:
"When will he die and his name vanish?"

⁷When one comes to visit, he speaks emptiness;
his heart gathers up trouble,
then he goes outside and spreads it.

⁸All who hate me whisper together against me;
against me they plot harm.

⁹"A vile thing has been poured into him;
now that he lies down, he will never rise again."

¹⁰Even my close friend whom I trusted,
who ate my bread,
has raised his heel against me.

¹¹But you, LORD — show me grace and raise me up,
so that I may repay them.

¹²By this I know that you delight in me:
my enemy does not shout in triumph over me.

¹³As for me, you have upheld me in my integrity
and set me before your face forever.

¹⁴Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting.
Amen and Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. lam'natseach ('for the choirmaster/director') derives from natsach, which can mean 'to lead, to oversee, to endure.' The term appears in 55 psalm superscriptions and likely indicates a liturgical performance direction. mizmor ('psalm') comes from zamar ('to sing, to make music with instruments'), indicating this is a composed song for instrumental accompaniment.
2. dal ('weak, poor, thin, helpless') is distinct from ani ('afflicted') and evyon ('destitute'). dal emphasizes diminished capacity — someone who has been reduced, who lacks the power to help themselves. The maskil ('one who gives wise attention') combines intellectual discernment with practical care.
2. The ashre opening creates a deliberate inclusio with Psalm 1:1, framing Book I of the Psalter between two beatitudes. Psalm 1 blesses the one who avoids wickedness and meditates on Torah; Psalm 41 blesses the one who cares for the weak.
3. The shift from third person ('the LORD will guard him') to second person ('do not give him') is characteristic of Hebrew prayer, where the psalmist moves fluidly between speaking about God and speaking to God. The phrase be-nefesh oyevav ('to the appetite/desire of his enemies') uses nefesh in its sense of 'throat, desire, craving' — the enemies want to consume him.
4. The verb hafakh ('to turn, to overturn') is dramatic — it is used of God overturning cities (Genesis 19:25) and turning rivers to blood (Exodus 7:17). Applied to a sickbed, it creates a startling image: God overturns the conditions of illness. The intimacy of God tending a sick person's bed is unusual in ancient Near Eastern literature, where the gods generally do not stoop to such care.
5. The psalmist's confession ki chatati lakh ('for I have sinned against you') is the only explicit admission of sin in the psalm. It stands in tension with verse 13, where the psalmist claims God upholds him 'in my integrity' (be-tummi). This is not a contradiction but a nuance: the psalmist acknowledges moral imperfection while maintaining that his fundamental orientation toward God is whole. nefesh here means 'life, self, entire being' — not merely 'soul' in a body-soul dualism.
6. The enemies' question matai yamut ve-avad shemo ('when will he die and his name perish?') reveals their deepest wish — not merely the psalmist's death but the extinction of his legacy. In Hebrew thought, the name (shem) carries identity across generations. To have one's name perish (avad, 'to be lost, to be destroyed') is annihilation beyond death.
7. The scene is a sick-visit gone wrong. The visitor speaks shav ('emptiness, falsehood, deception') to the psalmist's face while internally collecting ammunition — yiqbots aven lo ('he gathers up wickedness for himself'). Once outside (yetse la-chuts), he spreads the gossip. The three-stage sequence — enter, gather, broadcast — is a precise anatomy of malicious social behavior.
8. The verb yitlachashu ('they whisper') comes from lachash, which can mean 'to whisper, to charm, to practice enchantment.' The whispering of enemies may carry overtones of magical incantation — in the ancient world, illness was often attributed to curses, and whispering enemies may be perceived as casting spells. At minimum, it describes conspiratorial murmuring.
9. beliyya'al is one of the most theologically loaded terms in the Hebrew Bible. It appears in Deuteronomy for worthless people, in Judges for wicked men, and eventually becomes a title for the anti-God figure in later Jewish and Christian texts (2 Corinthians 6:15 uses 'Belial'). Here it describes not a person but a 'thing' — a destructive force or condition that the enemies believe has permanently seized the psalmist.
10. Jesus quotes this verse in John 13:18 during the Last Supper, applying it to Judas Iscariot. The connection is precise: Judas was a table-companion who shared bread with Jesus and then betrayed him. The Hebrew higdil alai aqev ('lifted the heel against me') may be an idiom from wrestling (a treacherous heel-trip) or from the behavior of a horse that kicks its rider. In either case, the violence comes from someone positioned as an intimate.
10. The connection to Ahithophel — David's counselor who defected to Absalom (2 Samuel 15:12) — is strong. Ahithophel was David's trusted advisor, his ish shelomi, who ate at his table and then joined the conspiracy. His betrayal is the historical backdrop for this verse's anguish.
11. The petition va-ashalemah lahem ('that I may repay them') uses the piel of shalam ('to repay, to make whole, to complete'). The psalmist is not asking for private revenge but for the opportunity to settle accounts — to see justice done. In the context of ancient royal justice, the king who rises from his sickbed would judge those who conspired during his illness.
12. The verb chafatsta ('you delight in, you take pleasure in') is stronger than mere favor — it expresses God's active desire toward the psalmist. The evidence of this delight is negative: lo yaria oyevi alai ('my enemy does not raise a war-cry over me'). The verb yaria means 'to shout, to sound a battle cry, to raise an alarm.' The psalmist is still alive, still standing — the enemy's premature death announcement (v. 9) has not come true.

13. The tension between verse 5 ('I have sinned against you') and verse 13 ('in my integrity') is instructive. *tummah* does not mean moral perfection; it means wholeness of intent, undivided loyalty, a heart that is not double. The psalmist can acknowledge specific failures while maintaining that his fundamental commitment to God is complete.
14. This verse is an editorial doxology, not part of David's original composition. The five-book structure of the Psalter mirrors the five books of Moses (Torah), and each division is sealed with a closing benediction. Book I ends here; Book II begins with Psalm 42 and the psalms of the Sons of Korah.
14. *amen* derives from the root *aman* ('to be firm, to be trustworthy, to confirm'). To say *amen* is to declare 'it is firm, it is established, so let it be.' The doubling intensifies the affirmation.

42

Summary: *Psalm 42 opens Book II of the Psalter and is attributed to the Sons of Korah. It is the first half of what was originally a single psalm (42-43), as indicated by the shared refrain ('Why are you cast down, O my soul?'), identical structure, and the fact that Psalm 43 lacks a superscription — unique among its neighbors. The psalmist is in exile, far from the Temple, possibly in the region of the Jordan headwaters near Mount Hermon. He thirsts for God's presence the way a deer pants for flowing water, remembers leading processions to the house of God, and battles despair while enemies taunt him with 'Where is your God?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening image — ke-ayal ta'a'rog al afiqe mayim ('as a deer pants for channels of water') — is one of the most famous metaphors in all literature. The verb ta'a'rog appears only here and in Joel 1:20 (where animals groan for water in drought), making it an extremely rare word that conveys desperate, physical longing. The psalm's structure is built around a three-fold refrain (42:6, 42:12, 43:5) in which the psalmist interrogates his own soul: 'Why are you cast down?' This internal dialogue — the self-addressing the self in God's presence — is a remarkable psychological portrait. The psalmist does not deny his despair; he questions it, argues with it, and ultimately commands his soul to hope. The geography is specific: the land of the Jordan, Mount Hermon, and Mount Mizar (a small peak, perhaps near Caesarea Philippi). Deep calls to deep (tehom el tehom) at the sound of God's waterfalls — the very water he thirsts for becomes an image of overwhelming chaos.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns this to the bene Qorach ('Sons of Korah'), a levitical guild of Temple musicians descended from Korah, whose rebellion and death are recorded in Numbers 16. That the descendants of a rebel became the Temple's premier musicians is itself a story of redemption. The phrase be-har mits'ar ('on Mount Mizar') is debated — mits'ar means 'smallness,' so this may be 'the little mountain,' an actual place name, or a metaphor for the psalmist's diminished state in contrast to Mount Zion's greatness. The Elohistic Psalter (42-83) consistently uses Elohim rather than YHVH, probably due to editorial substitution. We retain LORD where the original likely read YHVH.*

Connections: *Psalms 42-43 form a single literary unit, as demonstrated by the triple refrain, shared vocabulary, and the absence of a superscription on Psalm 43. The deer imagery connects to Song of Songs 2:9, 17, where the beloved is compared to a gazelle. The phrase 'deep calls to deep' (tehom el tehom, v. 8) evokes Genesis 1:2 (tehom, the primordial deep) and Jonah 2:4-6 (the waters of chaos overwhelming the drowning prophet). The taunt 'Where is your God?' (v. 4, 11) appears also in Joel 2:17 and Micah 7:10, always as the enemy's mockery of God's apparent absence.*

¹For the choirmaster. A maskil of the Sons of Korah.

²As a deer pants for channels of water,
so my soul pants for you, O God.

³My soul thirsts for God,
for the living God.
When will I come and see the face of God?

⁴My tears have been my food day and night,
while they say to me all day long,
"Where is your God?"

⁵These things I remember, and I pour out my soul within me:
how I used to walk with the throng,
leading them in procession to the house of God,
with shouts of joy and thanksgiving —
a multitude keeping festival.

⁶Why are you cast down, my soul,
and why do you groan within me?
Hope in God, for I will yet praise him —
the salvation of his face.

⁷My God, my soul is cast down within me;
therefore I remember you
from the land of the Jordan and the Hermons,
from Mount Mizar.

⁸Deep calls to deep
at the sound of your waterfalls;
all your breakers and your waves
have swept over me.

⁹By day the LORD commands his faithful love,
and at night his song is with me —
a prayer to the God of my life.

¹⁰I say to God my rock,
"Why have you forgotten me?
Why must I walk in darkness
under the pressure of the enemy?"

¹¹Like a shattering blow to my bones,
my adversaries taunt me,
saying to me all day long,
"Where is your God?"

¹²Why are you cast down, my soul,
and why do you groan within me?
Hope in God, for I will yet praise him —
the salvation of my face and my God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. maskil may derive from sakal ('to be prudent, to give insight') and likely indicates a psalm of instruction or contemplation. The bene Qorach ('Sons of Korah') were a levitical guild of Temple singers and musicians. Their ancestor Korah led a rebellion against Moses (Numbers 16) and was swallowed by the earth, but his sons survived (Numbers 26:11) — a detail that makes their role as worship leaders a living testimony to grace surviving judgment.

2. The Hebrew *ayal* is masculine ('stag, hart'), though many translations render it 'deer' generically. The LXX uses the feminine form (*elaphos*), and the Christian tradition has often depicted a female deer. The gender matters less than the image: a wild animal in extremity, reduced to its most basic need.
2. The *afiq mayim* ('channels of water') are not stagnant pools but flowing streams — the word *afiq* refers to a channel or riverbed where water runs. The psalmist does not want stored religion or past experience; he wants the living, moving presence of God.
3. The phrase *pene Elohim* ('the face of God') was a technical term for the Temple experience. Deuteronomy 16:16 commands all males to 'appear before the face of the LORD' (*yera'eh et pene YHVH*) three times a year. The Masoretes repointed the verb from active ('see') to passive ('appear/be seen'), probably to avoid the theologically bold idea that a human could see God's face (cf. Exodus 33:20). The older, active reading preserves the psalmist's yearning: he wants to gaze upon God.
4. The image of tears as bread (*dim'ati lechem*) inverts the normal sustenance of life — instead of eating food, the psalmist feeds on grief. The taunt *ayyeh Elohekha* ('where is your God?') is the cruelest question in the Psalter. It does not deny God's existence but mocks God's apparent indifference to the sufferer. The psalmist's exile from the Temple makes the question bite deeper: if God dwells in Zion and the psalmist cannot reach Zion, then the enemies' taunt has geographical force.
5. The verb *eddaddem* is difficult. It may derive from *dadah* ('to move slowly, to lead gently') and would mean 'I led them in slow procession.' Some relate it to *dud* ('a pot') and read 'I walked among them.' The overall picture is clear: the psalmist was once at the center of pilgrim worship, possibly as a levitical leader, and now he is cut off from it entirely.
6. This refrain appears three times: here (42:6), at 42:12, and at 43:5. The slight variations between the three occurrences are theologically significant — by the third repetition in 43:5, the psalmist has added 'my God' (*Elohai*), moving from addressing God to claiming God as his own.
6. *yeshu'ot panav* ('salvations of his face') is an unusual construct. *panav* ('his face') may function as the subject ('his face is salvation') or as the source ('salvation from his face/presence'). Either way, the psalmist locates deliverance in the direct, face-to-face encounter with God.
7. The geography locates the psalmist precisely: the land of the Jordan (*erets Yarden*) near the Hermon range (*chermonim*, plural, referring to Hermon's multiple peaks) and *har mits'ar* ('Mount Mizar/the small mountain'). This places him in the far north of Israel, near the source of the Jordan River — as far from the Temple in Jerusalem as one could be while still within Israelite territory. *mits'ar* means 'smallness,' which may be a place name or a pointed contrast: the psalmist stands on a small, insignificant mountain, remembering the great mountain of Zion where God dwells.
8. *tehom* ('deep, abyss') is cognate with the Babylonian *Tiamat*, the chaos-sea goddess. In Genesis 1:2, *tehom* is the formless deep over which God's spirit hovers. Here, one *tehom* calls to another — chaos communicates with chaos, and the psalmist is caught between them.
8. The paradox of water in this psalm is striking: in verse 2, the psalmist thirsts for water like a deer. In verse 8, water overwhelms him. The same element he craves is the element destroying him — a profound image of how the encounter with God can be simultaneously longed-for and overwhelming.
9. This is one of the few places in the Elohist Psalter (42-83) where *YHVH* appears instead of *Elohim*, suggesting it survived the editorial substitution process. The phrase *El chayyai* ('God of my life') is intimate — not 'the living God' (*El chai*, v. 3) but 'the God who is the source of my specific, individual life.'
10. The psalmist addresses God as *sal'i* ('my rock, my cliff, my crag') — a title of stability and protection — and then immediately accuses this rock of forgetting him. The juxtaposition is intentional: the one he calls 'rock' seems to have abandoned him. *qoder* ('dark, gloomy, in mourning') describes both the psalmist's emotional state and his outward appearance — the word suggests wearing mourning garments. *lachsats* ('pressure, oppression, affliction') is a physical word: the enemy is pressing down on him.
11. The word *retsach* ('murder, killing, crushing blow') is extreme — the enemies' taunts are not mere words but violence that penetrates to the bone. The repetition of *ayyeh Elohekha* ('where is your God?') from verse 4 shows that this mockery is relentless and central to the psalmist's suffering. The taunt strikes at the very thing the psalmist clings to — his relationship with God — and uses his exile from the Temple as evidence that God has abandoned him.
12. The variation between verse 6 (*panav*, 'his face') and verse 12 (*panai*, 'my face') is debated. Some manuscripts read *panav* in both places. If *panai* is original, the meaning shifts: God is the salvation 'of my face' — meaning God restores the psalmist's countenance, lifting his bowed head. Either reading is powerful.

43

Summary: *Psalm 43 is the second half of the original single psalm that began with Psalm 42. It has no superscription — the only psalm in this section of the Psalter without one — confirming its unity with the preceding psalm. The psalmist shifts from lament to petition, asking God to send light and truth as guides to lead him back to the holy mountain and the dwelling of God. The psalm culminates in the third and final repetition of the refrain: 'Why are you cast down, my soul?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The movement from Psalm 42 to Psalm 43 traces the arc of prayer itself. Psalm 42 is dominated by memory and grief — the psalmist remembers what he has lost and weeps. Psalm 43 turns that grief into bold petition: 'Send out your light and your truth — let them lead me.' The personification of light (or) and truth (emet) as guides, almost as angelic escorts, is stunning. They are not abstract qualities but active agents sent from God's throne to conduct the exiled worshiper back to Zion. The final refrain in verse 5 reaches its fullest form, adding both 'my God' (as in 42:12) and the emphatic particle — the psalmist has argued himself from despair toward hope through three rounds of self-interrogation.*

Translation Friction: *The absence of a superscription on Psalm 43 is the strongest evidence that it was originally joined to Psalm 42. In the Masoretic tradition they are separated, but the LXX manuscripts vary, and several Hebrew manuscripts combine them. The phrase *goy lo chasid* ('an ungodly nation') in verse 1 is unusual — *goy* typically means 'nation, people' and could refer to foreign oppressors or, more provocatively, to faithless members of Israel itself. The psalmist's petition 'judge me' (*shafeteni*) is not a request for punishment but for vindication — a courtroom appeal for the divine judge to rule in his favor.*

Connections: *The light-and-truth motif (v. 3) connects to Psalm 36:10 ('in your light we see light') and to the priestly *Urim* and *Thummim*, whose names may mean 'lights and perfections/truths.' The holy mountain (*har qodshekha*) is Zion (Psalm 2:6, 48:2), and the *mishkanot* ('dwelling places') echo the tabernacle (*mishkan*). The entire 42-43 unit serves as a gateway to Book II of the Psalter, establishing its dominant themes: exile, longing for the Temple, the quest for God's presence, and the tension between despair and hope.*

¹Vindicate me, O God, and plead my case
against a nation without faithful love.
From the man of deceit and injustice, rescue me.

²For you are the God of my stronghold.
Why have you rejected me?
Why must I walk in darkness
under the pressure of the enemy?

³Send out your light and your truth —
let them lead me,
let them bring me to your holy mountain
and to your dwelling places.

⁴Then I will come to the altar of God,
to God, the gladness of my joy,
and I will praise you with the lyre,
O God, my God.

⁵Why are you cast down, my soul,
and why do you groan within me?
Hope in God, for I will yet praise him —

the salvation of my face and my God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *goy lo chasid* ('a nation without faithful love') is striking. *goy* usually refers to a foreign nation, but in the context of the psalm's internal Israelite setting (Temple, Zion, Levitical worship), it may describe faithless Israelites — people who have abandoned *chesed*. Rendering *lo chasid* as 'without faithful love' rather than 'ungodly' preserves the specific covenantal charge.
2. The verse nearly duplicates 42:10 but shifts from 'my rock' (*sal'i*) to 'the God of my stronghold' (*Elohe ma'uzzi*). *ma'oz* ('stronghold, fortress, refuge') comes from *azaz* ('to be strong'). The psalmist's accusation is sharper here: not merely 'forgotten' (42:10) but *zanachtani* ('you have rejected me, you have cast me off'). *zanach* is a strong verb of deliberate abandonment. The tension between calling God 'my stronghold' and accusing God of rejection is the psalm's emotional center.
3. The pairing of *or* ('light') and *emet* ('truth') may echo the priestly Urim and Thummim (*urim* may derive from *or*, 'light'; *thummim* from *tamam*, 'completeness/truth'). If so, the psalmist is asking God to send the same guiding instruments that directed priestly decisions — a deeply levitical prayer, fitting for a Son of Korah.
3. *emet* ('truth') in Hebrew is not primarily intellectual but relational — it means 'reliability, faithfulness, firmness.' God's truth is not a set of propositions but a quality of character: God is firm, stable, and can be relied upon. Sending truth as a guide means sending divine reliability itself.
4. *simchat gili* ('the gladness of my joy/exultation') is a construct chain where both nouns express delight, creating an intensified expression — God is not merely a source of happiness but the gladness within the gladness, the deepest layer of joy itself.
5. The three-fold refrain structure (42:6, 42:12, 43:5) mirrors the three-fold structure of lament psalms generally (invocation, complaint, trust/praise). The fact that 42-43 was one psalm means this refrain divides the single composition into three equal movements: longing and memory (42:2-6), suffering and chaos (42:7-12), and petition and vision (43:1-5).

44

Summary: *Psalm 44 is a national lament of the Sons of Korah, spoken by the community after a devastating military defeat. The psalm moves through four distinct movements: remembrance of God's past saving acts in the conquest (vv. 2-9), the present crisis of defeat and disgrace (vv. 10-17), a protestation of innocence — the community has not broken covenant (vv. 18-23), and a desperate plea for God to awaken and act (vv. 24-27). The psalm's theological nerve is its insistence that the defeat cannot be explained by Israel's unfaithfulness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 44 is one of the boldest texts in the Hebrew Bible because it directly confronts the retribution principle — the theology that suffering results from sin. The community insists: 'All this has come upon us, yet we have not forgotten you, and we have not been false to your covenant' (v. 18). This is not Job's individual protest but an entire community saying to God: we did not break faith, and you still let us be slaughtered. Verse 23 — 'For your sake we are killed all day long; we are counted as sheep for slaughter' — will be quoted by Paul in Romans 8:36 to argue that suffering does not separate believers from God's love. The psalm's final cry, 'Awake! Why do you sleep, O Lord?' (v. 24), is extraordinary: it attributes sleep to the Almighty, echoing and reversing Elijah's mockery of Baal on Carmel (1 Kings 18:27).*

Translation Friction: *The claim of innocence in verses 18-23 has troubled interpreters. Is the community genuinely innocent, or is this rhetorical exaggeration? The psalm leaves no room for ambiguity — the community explicitly denies covenant violation. This creates a theological crisis: if God is just and Israel is faithful, why the defeat? The psalm offers no answer; it simply holds the contradiction before God and demands a response. The phrase *be-kol yom* ('all day long') in verse 23 intensifies the suffering into a permanent condition. The historical setting is debated — some place it in the Assyrian period, others during the Maccabean crisis, but the psalm's refusal to name the enemy makes it available for any generation's suffering.*

Connections: *The protest of innocent suffering links this psalm to Job (especially Job 9:22-24, where Job accuses God of destroying the innocent alongside the wicked). The 'sheep for slaughter' image (v. 23) connects to Isaiah 53:7 (the suffering servant led like a lamb to slaughter). Paul's quotation in Romans 8:36 recontextualizes the verse: suffering is real but does not indicate divine abandonment. The plea for God to 'awake' (v. 24) inverts the mockery of 1 Kings 18:27, where Elijah tells Baal worshipers their god is sleeping. Here Israel dares to say the*

same to the LORD.

¹For the choirmaster. A maskil of the Sons of Korah.

²O God, with our ears we have heard —
our ancestors told us —
the deeds you performed in their days,
in the days of old.

³You — your hand drove out nations and planted our ancestors;
you shattered peoples and spread them out.

⁴For not by their own sword did they take the land,
and their own arm did not save them;
but your right hand and your arm
and the light of your face — because you delighted in them.

⁵You are my King, O God;
command victories for Jacob.

⁶Through you we gore our adversaries;
through your name we trample those who rise against us.

⁷For I do not trust in my bow,
and my sword cannot save me.

⁸For you have saved us from our adversaries
and put to shame those who hate us.

⁹In God we have gloried all day long,
and your name we will thank forever. Selah.

¹⁰Yet you have rejected us and humiliated us
and do not go out with our armies.

¹¹You make us retreat before the foe,
and those who hate us plunder at will.

¹²You hand us over like sheep for slaughter
and scatter us among the nations.

¹³You sell your people for nothing
and set no high price on them.

¹⁴You make us a taunt to our neighbors,
a mockery and derision to those around us.

¹⁵You make us a byword among the nations,
a shaking of the head among the peoples.

¹⁶All day long my disgrace is before me,
and shame covers my face,

¹⁷because of the voice of the one who taunts and reviles,
because of the enemy and the avenger.

¹⁸All this has come upon us,
yet we have not forgotten you
and we have not been false to your covenant.

¹⁹Our heart has not turned back,
nor have our steps strayed from your path,

²⁰yet you have crushed us in the haunt of jackals
and covered us with deep darkness.

²¹If we had forgotten the name of our God
or spread out our hands to a foreign god,

²²would not God search this out?
For he knows the secrets of the heart.

²³For your sake we are killed all day long;
we are counted as sheep for slaughter.

²⁴Awake! Why do you sleep, O Lord?
Rise up! Do not reject us forever.

²⁵Why do you hide your face?
Why forget our affliction and our oppression?

²⁶For our soul is bowed down to the dust;
our belly clings to the ground.

²⁷Rise up — come to our help!
Redeem us for the sake of your faithful love.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The maskil designation and Korahite attribution continue from Psalm 42. As a communal lament, this psalm would have been performed liturgically — the Sons of Korah are not merely named as authors but as the performing guild who gave voice to the nation's grief.
2. The psalm begins with oral tradition: be-oznenu shama'nu ('with our ears we have heard'). This is faith received by testimony, passed from generation to generation. The emphasis on hearing (not reading) places the community in the living chain of witness. The deeds (po'al) refer to the conquest and deliverance narratives. The appeal to 'days of old' (yeme qedem) establishes the contrast that drives the psalm: God acted then; why not now?
3. The agricultural metaphor is vivid: God uprooted nations (horashta, from yarash, 'to dispossess, to drive out') and planted (vattitta'em) Israel in their place. Israel is a vine planted in cleared land. The verb tara ('you shattered, you broke') is severe — God broke the peoples already in the land. The verbs alternate between planting Israel and removing the nations, creating a rhythmic pattern of displacement and establishment.
4. The phrase or panekha ('the light of your face') connects to the priestly blessing of Numbers 6:25 ('the LORD make his face shine upon you'). The shining face of God is the visible expression of divine favor — when it is present, victory follows; when it is withdrawn, defeat comes.
5. The singular malki ('my King') within a communal psalm may indicate a worship leader speaking on behalf of the congregation. The imperative tsavveh ('command!') treats God as a military commander who can order victories as a king dispatches troops. yeshu'ot Ya'aqov ('victories/salvations of Jacob') uses the plural of yeshu'ah, suggesting repeated or comprehensive deliverance.
6. The verb nenaggeach ('we gore') is a bull-fighting image — the horned animal thrusting its enemies. This is raw, physical language for military victory. The parallel be-shimkha ('through your name') means through the invocation of God's name in battle — the war cry that carries divine authority.

7. The confession *lo be-qashti evtach* ('not in my bow do I trust') uses the same verb *batach* ('to trust') that the psalms repeatedly reserve for confidence in God. Placing trust in weapons is the opposite of placing trust in God. The community explicitly disowns military self-reliance.
8. The perfect tense *hoshata'nu* ('you have saved us') recalls past deliverances. The verb *hevishota* ('you have put to shame') from *bosh* indicates public disgrace — God caused the enemies to suffer the humiliation they intended for Israel.
9. *hillalnu* ('we have gloried, we have praised') from *halal* is the root of 'hallelujah.' The community's boasting is in God, not in themselves — this prepares for the devastating reversal in the next verse. The *selah* marks a musical pause or interlude, allowing the contrast between past glory and present disaster to sink in.
10. The hinge word *af* ('yet, but, indeed') marks the devastating turn. *zanachta* ('you have rejected') and *vatakhliemnu* ('you have humiliated us') use the same verbs previously applied to enemies — now God does to Israel what he once did to their foes. The phrase *lo tetse be-tziv'otenu* ('you do not go out with our armies') is the core accusation: God has withdrawn from battle. In Israelite warfare theology, God marched with the army (cf. Deuteronomy 20:4). His absence means certain defeat.
11. Verse 11 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
12. *tson ma'akhal* ('sheep for eating/slaughter') is an image of helpless livestock led to death. The verb *zeritanu* ('you have scattered us') from *zarah* ('to scatter, to winnow') suggests exile — dispersion among the nations like grain flung into the wind.
13. The commercial metaphor of God 'selling' his people appears also in Judges 2:14, 3:8, and 4:2, where God 'sells' Israel into the hands of oppressors as punishment for idolatry. But here, the community insists they have not sinned (vv. 18-22) — so the sale is unjust, or at least inexplicable.
14. Verse 14 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
15. *mashal* ('byword, proverb') means Israel's name has become a cautionary tale — other nations use Israel as an example of ruin. *menod rosh* ('shaking of the head') is the gesture of contemptuous pity — people look at Israel and shake their heads in mockery.
16. Verse 16 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
17. Verse 17 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
18. The insistence on innocence distinguishes Psalm 44 from most other national laments, which typically include confession of sin (cf. Psalm 106, Daniel 9, Nehemiah 9). This community does not confess; it protests. The theological problem this creates — why does a faithful people suffer? — is left unresolved within the psalm itself.
19. Verse 19 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
20. *meqom tannim* ('place of jackals') suggests desolate ruins — jackals inhabit abandoned places. *tsalmavet* ('deep darkness, shadow of death') is a compound word debated among scholars. It may derive from *tsel* ('shadow') + *mavet* ('death') or from *tsalmut* ('deep darkness'). Either way, it describes the most extreme darkness imaginable — the darkness of Sheol, of death, of total divine absence.
21. Verse 21 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
22. The community appeals to divine omniscience as their witness. *ta'alumot lev* ('secrets of the heart') — if they had worshiped foreign gods even in thought, God would know. Their appeal to God's knowledge of hidden things is itself an act of radical transparency: they invite investigation and declare confidence in the outcome.
23. The phrase *ki alekha* ('for your sake, on account of you') is theologically central. The suffering is not random, not punitive, but vocational — it is the consequence of belonging to God in a hostile world. This reading anticipates the Christian theology of suffering for the sake of Christ and the Jewish theology of *kiddush hashem* (sanctification of the divine name through martyrdom).
24. Psalm 121:4 declares that 'the Guardian of Israel neither slumbers nor sleeps.' Psalm 44:24 takes that theological conviction and throws it back at God as a question: if you do not sleep, then explain why you are acting as though you do. The tension between these two psalms is not resolved — it is held in the canon as a witness to the full range of faithful prayer.
25. The hidden face (*hester panim*) is the opposite of the shining face (or *panim*) of verse 4. When God hides his face, favor is withdrawn and disaster follows. *onyenu ve-lachatsenu* ('our affliction and our oppression') — *oni* is suffering imposed from outside, *lachats* is pressure or crushing force. Both words carry the memory of Egypt (Exodus 3:9 uses both terms for Israel's condition under Pharaoh).
26. The image is prostration — not worship but collapse. *shachah le-afar nafshenu* ('our soul bows to the dust') and *davqah la-arets bitnenu* ('our belly sticks to the earth') describe a people face-down in the dirt, too broken to rise. The verb *davaq* ('to cling, to stick') is the same word used for marriage in Genesis 2:24 and for covenant loyalty — here it describes a body glued to the ground by despair.
27. The appeal *le-ma'an chasdekha* ('for the sake of your faithful love') is the psalm's last word on the subject. Having exhausted every argument — past faithfulness, present innocence, the absurdity of God sleeping — the community falls back on the one thing that cannot fail: God's own covenant character. If *chesed* means anything, it means God cannot abandon his people permanently.

45

Summary: *Psalm 45 is a royal wedding psalm — a song composed for the marriage of an Israelite king to a foreign princess. The poet begins by describing the king's beauty, grace, and martial valor (vv. 3-10), then addresses the bride, urging her to forget her homeland and embrace her new identity as the queen (vv. 11-13), and concludes with the procession of the bride into the palace and a promise of royal descendants (vv. 14-18). The superscription calls it a shir yedidot ('a song of love/beloved things'), the only psalm so designated.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 45 is the most explicitly messianic psalm in the Psalter after Psalm 2 and Psalm 110. In verse 7, the king is addressed as Elohim: 'Your throne, O God, is forever and ever' (kis'akha Elohim olam va-ed). Whether Elohim here means 'God' (the king is being addressed as divine or as God's representative) or 'your divine throne' (an attributive use), the verse pushes the Davidic king toward divine status in a way unparalleled in Israelite literature. Hebrews 1:8-9 quotes this verse as proof of the Son's divinity. The psalm's other remarkable feature is its frank celebration of physical beauty, perfume, music, and royal splendor — the ivory palaces, the queen in gold of Ophir, the embroidered garments. This is a psalm that delights in material beauty as an expression of divine blessing, without a trace of ascetic suspicion.*

Translation Friction: *The address to the king as Elohim (v. 7) is the most debated crux in the psalm. Options include: (1) the king is addressed as 'God' in a court hyperbole reflecting ancient Near Eastern royal ideology; (2) Elohim is vocative but means 'divine one' or 'mighty one' rather than 'God' proper; (3) the text should be repointed to read 'your throne is God's throne' or 'God is your throne.' We retain the traditional vocative reading ('your throne, O God') because the Hebrew syntax most naturally supports it and because the psalm clearly operates within the ideology of the Davidic covenant, where the king is God's adopted son (Psalm 2:7). The identity of the bride is debated — Jezebel (Ahab's marriage), an Egyptian princess (Solomon's era), or a Tyrian princess (the 'daughter of Tyre' in v. 13) are all proposed.*

Connections: *The royal ideology connects to 2 Samuel 7 (the Davidic covenant), Psalm 2 (the king as God's son), and Psalm 110 (the priest-king at God's right hand). Hebrews 1:8-9 quotes verses 7-8 as addressed to Christ. The bride's instruction to 'forget your people and your father's house' (v. 11) echoes Genesis 12:1, where Abraham is told to leave his homeland — the bride's journey mirrors the patriarchal call. The 'daughter of Tyre' (v. 13) connects to Solomon's alliance with Hiram of Tyre (1 Kings 5) and to the broader theme of foreign nations bringing tribute to Zion (Isaiah 60:5-7). The myrrh, aloes, and cassia (v. 9) anticipate the spices of Song of Songs.*

¹For the choirmaster. Set to 'Lilies.' A maskil of the Sons of Korah. A song of love.

²My heart overflows with a good word;
I address my work to the king.
My tongue is the pen of a skilled scribe.

³You are the most handsome among the sons of humanity;
grace is poured upon your lips.
Therefore God has blessed you forever.

⁴Strap your sword on your thigh, O warrior —
your splendor and your majesty!

⁵In your majesty, ride out victoriously
for the cause of truth and humility and righteousness.
Let your right hand teach you awesome deeds.

⁶Your arrows are sharpened —
peoples fall beneath you —
into the heart of the king's enemies.

⁷Your throne, O God, is forever and ever;
a scepter of equity is the scepter of your kingdom.

⁸You love righteousness and hate wickedness;
therefore God, your God, has anointed you
with the oil of joy beyond your companions.

⁹Myrrh and aloes and cassia — all your garments.
From ivory palaces, strings make you glad.

¹⁰Daughters of kings are among your honored women;
the queen stands at your right hand in gold of Ophir.

¹¹Listen, daughter, and see, and turn your ear:
forget your people and your father's house.

¹²Then the king will desire your beauty,
for he is your lord — bow before him.

¹³The daughter of Tyre comes with a gift;
the wealthy of the people seek your favor.

¹⁴All glorious is the king's daughter within the palace;
her garment is woven with gold.

¹⁵In embroidered garments she is led to the king;
virgins, her companions, follow after her —
they are brought to you.

¹⁶They are led with gladness and rejoicing;
they enter the king's palace.

¹⁷In place of your fathers will be your sons;
you will appoint them as princes throughout the earth.

¹⁸I will cause your name to be remembered in every generation;
therefore the peoples will praise you forever and ever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. *al shoshannim* ('set to Lilies') is a musical direction — likely the name of a tune or a reference to lily-shaped instruments. *shir yedidot* ('a song of beloved things / a song of love') is unique among psalm superscriptions. *yedidot* is the feminine plural of *yadid* ('beloved'), making this literally 'a song of beloved-ones' or 'a love song.' The term openly declares the psalm's genre: this is a wedding poem.
2. The verb *rachash* occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible. Cognate languages suggest 'to bubble, to stir, to be in commotion.' The poet's heart is not calmly composing but erupting with creative energy. This self-conscious poetic introduction is rare in the Psalms and signals a court composition of high literary ambition.
3. *yafafita* ('you are exceedingly beautiful') is an unusual *pilel* form of *yafah* ('to be beautiful'), intensifying the adjective — the king is beautiful beyond ordinary beauty. The phrase *hutsaq chen be-siftotekha* ('grace is poured on your lips') uses the imagery of liquid metal being poured into a mold (*yatsaq*, 'to pour, to cast'). The king's speech is not merely graceful but divinely crafted. The consequence: *al ken berakhekha Elohim le-olam* ('therefore God has blessed you forever') — physical beauty and verbal grace are read as evidence of permanent divine favor.
4. The poet shifts from beauty to battle. *chagor charbkha al yarekh gibbor* ('strap your sword on your thigh, mighty one') addresses the king as a warrior preparing for combat. *gibbor* ('mighty one, warrior, champion') is one of the divine titles in Isaiah 9:5 (*El Gibbor*). *hodekha va-hadarekha* ('your splendor and your majesty') describes the royal warrior's glory — *hod* and *hadar* are frequently paired as attributes of God (Psalm 96:6, 104:1), here

applied to the king.

5. The combination of military valor with humility (anvah) is surprising. The ideal Israelite king is not merely powerful but meek — a quality that will be central to the messianic portrait in Zechariah 9:9 ('humble, riding on a donkey'). This psalm holds together what later theology tends to separate: the warrior and the servant.
6. The Hebrew syntax is disrupted for dramatic effect: 'your arrows sharpened — peoples beneath you fall — in the heart of the king's enemies.' The middle phrase (peoples fall beneath you) is parenthetical, creating a vivid cinematic effect: arrows fly, nations collapse, and the arrows land in the enemies' hearts. The third-person reference to 'the king' within a second-person address may reflect court protocol.
7. Hebrews 1:8-9 quotes this verse as addressed to the Son, making it a foundational christological text. The author of Hebrews reads Elohim as a genuine divine address: the king to whom these words are spoken is, in the fullest sense, God. Whether the original psalmist intended this level of meaning or was working within ancient Near Eastern royal ideology that attributed semi-divine status to kings, the canonical reading — Israel's king as God's own embodiment of rule — reaches toward incarnational theology.
7. The alternative reading 'your throne is God's, forever and ever' (taking Elohim as a genitive rather than vocative) is grammatically possible but less natural in context. The parallel verse 8 ('therefore God, your God, has anointed you') uses Elohim twice in different senses, suggesting the psalmist is comfortable applying the word both to the king and to the God who anoints him.
8. mashach ('to anoint') is the root of mashiach ('messiah, anointed one'). The king is God's mashiach — anointed with oil as a sign of divine election. The 'oil of joy' (shemen sason) echoes Isaiah 61:3, where God gives 'the oil of joy instead of mourning' — anointing as the reversal of grief.
9. The three spices — mor (myrrh), ahalot (aloes), and qetsi'ot (cassia) — are luxury fragrances associated with royalty and love (Song of Songs 4:14). The king's garments are saturated with them. hekhlei shen ('ivory palaces') describe the royal residence — ivory-inlaid buildings like those of Ahab's 'ivory house' (1 Kings 22:39). The word minni (from which) likely introduces musical instruments — strings or harps from these palaces provide the wedding music.
10. shegal ('queen, consort') is an Aramaic loanword that appears rarely in Hebrew (here and in Nehemiah 2:6). It denotes the queen consort — the king's primary wife, distinct from secondary wives or concubines. Her position at the king's right hand mirrors the position of the king himself at God's right hand (Psalm 110:1).
11. The demand to 'forget your people' is not cruel but liturgical — the bride is entering a covenant that requires total reorientation. In the ancient Near East, a royal bride who married into a foreign court was expected to adopt the religion and customs of her new kingdom. The psalmist makes this expectation explicit.
12. yit'av ha-melekh yofyekh ('the king will desire your beauty') — the verb avah ('to desire, to long for') expresses the king's attraction to the bride. The statement ki hu adonayikh ('for he is your lord') establishes the marital authority of the husband in the ancient context. ve-hishtachavi lo ('and bow to him') — the bride is instructed to show reverence to the king, just as subjects bow before their sovereign. The dual role of husband and lord reflects the ancient Near Eastern fusion of domestic and political authority.
13. bat Tsor ('the daughter of Tyre') may refer to the city of Tyre personified, or to a Tyrian princess. Tyre was the premier commercial power of the eastern Mediterranean — its presence with tribute signals that the queen commands international respect. The phrase ashire am ('the wealthy of the people') seek her face (panayikh yechallu, literally 'they entreat your face'). The bride has become a figure of power.
14. kevuddah (feminine of kavod, 'glory') is used of the bride. kavod is typically reserved for God's glory or the glory of kings — its application to the bride elevates her to a status parallel with royalty and divinity. The gold-woven garment connects to the high priest's ephod, creating a subtle link between the queen and the priestly office.
15. The bridal procession moves from the preparation chambers to the king's presence. lirqamot ('in embroidered work') describes the ornate garments. betulot achareyha re'oteyha ('virgins behind her, her companions') form the bridal retinue — young women who attend the bride in her procession. The shift from third person ('she is led') to second person ('brought to you') brings the reader suddenly into the king's perspective.
16. Verse 16 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
17. The address returns to the king. tachat avotekha yihyu vanekha ('in place of your fathers will be your sons') — the dynasty will continue, the sons replacing the ancestors as rulers. teshitemo le-sarim be-khol ha-arets ('you will set them as princes in all the earth') extends the dynasty's rule beyond Israel to universal dominion. This is Davidic covenant language at its most expansive, pointing toward the messianic vision of worldwide rule.
18. The poet's claim to immortalize the king's name is itself a form of prophetic speech — the psalm has in fact preserved this king's memory for three thousand years. The shift from 'your sons will rule' (v. 17) to 'peoples will praise you forever' (v. 18) moves from dynastic politics to cosmic worship, making the psalm a bridge between history and eschatology.

46

Summary: *Psalm 46 is a song of Zion and a psalm of confidence attributed to the Sons of Korah. It celebrates God as a refuge and strength in the face of cosmic chaos — mountains falling into the sea, waters roaring, nations raging. The psalm is structured in three strophes: God as refuge amid natural catastrophe (vv. 2-4), God's presence protecting the holy city (vv. 5-8), and God as the one who ends war and commands stillness (vv. 9-12). The refrain 'The LORD of hosts is with us; the God of Jacob is our stronghold' appears twice (vv. 8, 12) and was likely also sung after verse 4.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm inspired Martin Luther's hymn 'A Mighty Fortress Is Our God' (Ein feste Burg ist unser Gott), making it one of the most influential psalms in Western history. The command harpu u-de'u ki anokhi Elohim ('be still and know that I am God,' v. 11) is among the most quoted lines in Scripture, though its meaning is frequently softened. harpu is not 'relax' or 'be quiet' — it means 'let go, cease striving, drop your weapons, stop.' It is addressed to the warring nations, not to anxious believers: God commands the earth's armies to stand down. The 'river whose streams make glad the city of God' (v. 5) is remarkable because Jerusalem has no river. The image is theological, not geographical — it evokes the river of Eden (Genesis 2:10), the waters flowing from the Temple (Ezekiel 47:1-12), and the river of life (Revelation 22:1-2).*

Translation Friction: *The superscription al alamot ('according to alamot') is debated — alamot may mean 'young women' (indicating soprano voices or a women's choir), 'hidden things,' or a musical mode. The 'river' of verse 5 has no geographical referent in Jerusalem, which relies on the Gihon spring and Hezekiah's tunnel. The river must be symbolic: God's presence itself is the water supply that makes the city flourish when earthly rivers fail. The refrain after verse 4 is not present in the MT but is inferred from the psalm's structure; some scholars insert 'YHVH Tseva'ot immanu' there to create three balanced strophes. The phrase elohim be-qirbah ('God is in her midst') uses feminine language for the city, treating Zion as a woman with God dwelling within her.*

Connections: *The chaos-waters imagery (vv. 3-4) connects to Genesis 1:2 (tehom), Psalm 93 (the floods lift up), and Nahum 1:4 (God rebuking the sea). The river of God (v. 5) echoes Genesis 2:10, Ezekiel 47:1-12, Joel 3:18, and Zechariah 14:8 — all depicting life-giving water flowing from God's dwelling. The Zion theology links to Psalms 48, 76, 84, 87, and 122. God making wars cease (v. 10) echoes Isaiah 2:4 and Micah 4:3 (beating swords into plowshares). The command 'be still' (v. 11) anticipates the divine warrior's silencing of all opposition at the eschaton.*

¹For the choirmaster. Of the Sons of Korah. According to alamot. A song.

²God is our refuge and strength,
a help in troubles — found to be very near.

³Therefore we will not fear,
though the earth gives way,
though the mountains topple into the heart of the seas,

⁴though its waters roar and foam,
though the mountains quake at its surging. Selah.

⁵A river — its streams make glad the city of God,
the holy dwelling of the Most High.

⁶God is in her midst — she will not be shaken;
God will help her at the break of dawn.

⁷Nations rage, kingdoms totter;
he lifts his voice — the earth melts.

⁸The LORD of hosts is with us;
the God of Jacob is our stronghold. Selah.

⁹Come, see the works of the LORD —
what desolations he has set upon the earth.

¹⁰He makes wars cease to the end of the earth;
he breaks the bow and shatters the spear;
he burns the chariots with fire.

¹¹Let go and know that I am God.
I will be exalted among the nations;
I will be exalted in the earth.

¹²The LORD of hosts is with us;
the God of Jacob is our stronghold. Selah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. al alamot ('according to alamot') likely refers to a musical setting. alamot may derive from almah ('young woman'), suggesting performance by soprano voices or a women's choir. Alternatively, it may be a technical term for a high-pitched musical mode. We leave it transliterated as a musical direction whose precise meaning is uncertain.
2. machaseh ('refuge') appears 20 times in the Psalms, more than in any other book. It comes from chasah ('to seek refuge, to take shelter') — the same word used of birds sheltering their young under their wings. God-as-refuge is one of the Psalter's master metaphors.
2. Luther's 'A Mighty Fortress Is Our God' paraphrases this verse. The German Ein feste Burg captures machaseh as a fortification — a castle, a stronghold. The Hebrew image is broader: any place of shelter from danger.
3. The consequence of God-as-refuge is fearlessness in the face of cosmic dissolution. be-hamir arets ('when the earth changes/gives way') uses mur ('to change, to exchange, to shake') — the solid ground itself becomes unstable. u-ve-mot harim be-lev yammim ('and when mountains slip into the heart of the seas') — the most permanent features of the landscape collapse into the most chaotic element. This is creation running backward: the mountains that emerged from the waters in Genesis 1 return to them. And still: lo nira ('we will not fear').
4. Three verbs describe the chaos-waters: yehemu ('they roar/rage,' from hamah), yechmeru ('they foam/surge,' from chamar, 'to boil, to ferment'), and yir'ashu ('they quake/shake,' from ra'ash). The sea's ga'avah ('pride, swelling, arrogance') makes the mountains themselves tremble. The selah here likely marks the place where the refrain was originally sung: 'The LORD of hosts is with us; the God of Jacob is our stronghold.'
5. The contrast between the raging seas (vv. 3-4) and the gladness-giving river (v. 5) is the psalm's central image. Chaos waters threaten from without; the river of God sustains from within. The city has an internal water supply that no external catastrophe can destroy — because the water is God's presence itself.
6. Elohim be-qirbah ('God is in her midst') — the feminine pronoun refers to the city. Zion is personified as a woman with God dwelling inside her. bal timmot ('she will not be shaken') — the verb mot ('to totter, to shake, to slip') was used of the mountains in verse 3. The mountains topple, but the city does not — because its stability comes from God within, not from geological firmness. lifnot boqer ('at the turning of the morning') — God's help arrives at dawn, the moment when darkness breaks. Dawn in the Hebrew Bible is the traditional time of divine intervention and military deliverance (Exodus 14:27; 2 Kings 19:35).
7. The parallel structure between vv. 3-4 (nature chaos) and v. 7 (political chaos) is the psalm's central literary device. Both use the same vocabulary: hamah (roar/rage), mot (shake/totter). The message: cosmic upheaval and geopolitical upheaval are equally powerless before God's voice.
8. YHVH Tseva'ot ('LORD of hosts') is one of the most frequent divine titles in the prophets (especially Isaiah, Jeremiah, and the post-exilic prophets). Tseva'ot refers to armies — whether heavenly armies (angels, stars) or Israel's earthly forces. The title declares God's supreme military authority over all powers visible and invisible.
9. The invitation lekhu chazu ('come, look, behold') summons the congregation to witness God's acts. mi'alot YHVH ('the works of the LORD') can mean either acts of judgment or acts of deliverance — here, specifically shammat ('desolations, devastations'). God has devastated — but the devastation is directed at the threatening powers, not at his people. The 'desolations' are the ruins of enemy war-making, which God has destroyed.

10. The vision of universal peace through divine action connects to Isaiah 2:4 / Micah 4:3 ('they shall beat their swords into plowshares') and Hosea 2:18 ('I will break the bow and the sword and war from the land'). The difference is method: in Isaiah, the nations voluntarily disarm; in Psalm 46, God forcibly destroys their weapons. Both envision the same end — world without war — but by different means.
11. harpu is frequently sentimentalized in devotional use as 'be still' in the sense of quiet meditation. The Hebrew is more forceful: it is God commanding hostile powers to cease their activity. The stillness God demands is not contemplative peace but military surrender. The nations are to drop their weapons and acknowledge that the LORD alone is God. This does not exclude a devotional application — there is genuine comfort in knowing that God commands the powers to stop — but the primary audience is the hostile world, not the anxious believer.
11. We render harpu as 'let go' rather than 'be still' to preserve the active, volitional force of the command. The nations must release their grip on power, ambition, and war.
12. The refrain returns identically, sealing the psalm. After the cosmic chaos of verses 3-4, after the political chaos of verse 7, and after God's silencing of all opposition in verses 10-11, the community repeats its core confession: God is with us. The word immanu ('with us') carries the entire psalm's theology in two syllables.

47

Summary: *Psalm 47 is a brief, exuberant enthronement psalm of the Sons of Korah celebrating God's kingship over all the earth. The psalm opens with a call for all peoples to clap their hands and shout, declares God as the Most High and great King, and culminates in God ascending his throne amid shouts and the blast of the shofar. The nations gather as the people of the God of Abraham, and God is exalted as ruler over all.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 47 is the primary psalm associated with Rosh Hashanah in Jewish liturgy — it is recited seven times before the shofar blasts. The psalm's universalism is striking: it does not merely claim that God rules Israel but that all peoples (kol ha-ammim) are summoned to praise him, and that the nobles of the peoples gather as the people of the God of Abraham (v. 10). The promise to Abraham that 'in you all the families of the earth will be blessed' (Genesis 12:3) finds liturgical expression here. The phrase alah Elohim bitru'ah ('God has gone up with a shout,' v. 6) envisions a divine enthronement procession — God ascending to his throne like a king entering his palace. In Christian liturgy, this verse was applied to the Ascension of Christ.*

Translation Friction: *The term Elyon ('Most High,' v. 3) is an ancient Canaanite divine title adopted into Israelite theology (cf. Genesis 14:18-20, Deuteronomy 32:8). Its use here reinforces God's supremacy over all peoples and all other claimed deities. The phrase am Elohe Avraham ('the people of the God of Abraham,' v. 10) rather than 'the people of God' or 'Israel' is deliberate — Abraham is the patriarch of many nations (Genesis 17:4-5), not just Israel. The inclusion of 'nobles of the peoples' (nedive ammin) in God's people pushes past ethnic boundaries. The verb alah ('to go up,' v. 6) may reflect a liturgical ritual in which the Ark of the Covenant was carried up to the Temple mount, symbolizing God's enthronement.*

Connections: *The enthronement psalms (47, 93, 95-99) share the declaration 'The LORD reigns' (or its equivalent). Psalm 47 connects to Psalm 24:7-10 (the gates lifting for the King of glory), to Psalm 68:19 (God ascending on high), and to the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16-19) with its shofar blasts. The gathering of nations echoes Isaiah 2:2-3, where all nations stream to Zion. Paul's argument in Romans 4 that Abraham is the father of all who believe, not merely of circumcised Jews, follows the trajectory this psalm begins.*

¹For the choirmaster. A psalm of the Sons of Korah.

²All you peoples, clap your hands!
Shout to God with a voice of ringing joy!

³For the LORD, the Most High, is awesome —
a great King over all the earth.

⁴He subdues peoples under us
and nations beneath our feet.

⁵He chooses our inheritance for us —
the pride of Jacob whom he loves. Selah.

⁶God has gone up with a shout,
the LORD with the blast of a ram's horn!

⁷Sing praise to God — sing praise!
Sing praise to our King — sing praise!

⁸For God is King of all the earth;
sing praise with a maskil!

⁹God reigns over the nations;
God sits on his holy throne.

¹⁰The nobles of the peoples have gathered
as the people of the God of Abraham,
for the shields of the earth belong to God —
he is greatly exalted.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Verse 1 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
2. The universalism of kol ha-ammim ('all the peoples') is not hypothetical — it is an imperative. The psalm commands all nations to worship, not merely predicts that they will. This is a bold liturgical claim: the God of Israel deserves the worship of every human community.
3. Three titles accumulate: YHVH ('the LORD' — the covenant name), Elyon ('Most High' — supreme over all), and nora ('awesome, fearsome, to be dreaded'). melekh gadol al kol ha-arets ('a great king over all the earth') is the enthronement declaration — God is not merely Israel's king but the king of the entire world. The title 'great king' (melekh gadol) echoes the Assyrian royal title sharru rabu, deliberately claiming for Israel's God the supremacy that earthly empires claimed for their rulers.
4. yadber ammin tachtenu ('he subdues peoples under us') uses davar in its rare sense of 'to drive, to subdue, to lead' (cf. Deuteronomy 33:3). The image is of conquest — but conquest achieved by God, not by Israel's military. The nations under Israel's feet reflects the ancient Near Eastern image of a conqueror placing his foot on the neck of the defeated (cf. Joshua 10:24).
5. nachalatenu ('our inheritance') refers to the promised land, given as a permanent possession. ge'on Ya'akov ('the pride/excellency of Jacob') likely refers to the land of Israel or to the Temple — the thing that makes Jacob's descendants distinct and honored. asher ahav ('whom he loved') — God's choice of this inheritance is rooted in love, not obligation.
6. In Jewish liturgy, this verse grounds the practice of blowing the shofar on Rosh Hashanah — the day traditionally understood as the anniversary of God's enthronement as King. The psalm is recited seven times before the shofar blasts begin.
6. Christian liturgy applied this verse to the Ascension of Christ (Acts 1:9-11), reading the ascending God as the risen Lord returning to his heavenly throne. The early church fathers (particularly Augustine and Chrysostom) commented extensively on this connection.
7. The fourfold repetition of zammeru ('sing praise!') is the psalm's ecstatic center. The verb zamar ('to sing, to make music') appears four times in rapid succession, creating a cascade of praise. The shift from Elohim ('God') to malkenu ('our King') in the parallel lines identifies God as Israel's personal sovereign — not merely the cosmic king but our king.
8. melekh kol ha-arets ('king of all the earth') restates the universal claim of verse 3. zammeru maskil ('sing a maskil') — the maskil here may mean 'sing with understanding/skill' or 'sing an instructive song.' The five-fold occurrence of zamar in verses 7-8 (four imperatives plus this one) is unprecedented in the Psalter.
9. The declaration malakh Elohim ('God reigns/has become king') echoes the enthronement shout YHVH malakh ('the LORD reigns') in Psalms 93:1, 96:10, 97:1, and 99:1. This formula is the theological heart of the enthronement psalm genre.
10. The identification of the gathered nations as am Elohe Avraham ('the people of the God of Abraham') rather than 'the people of Israel' is theologically significant. Abraham is the father of many nations (Genesis 17:5), not only of Israel. This psalm envisions the nations entering Abraham's covenant family — a vision that Paul will develop in Romans 4 and Galatians 3.

10. *maginne erets* ('shields of the earth') is an unusual phrase. *magen* can mean 'shield' (a defensive weapon) or 'patron, protector' (a metaphorical usage). If it means 'patrons/rulers,' the verse says earth's rulers belong to God. If 'shields,' the verse says earth's defenses are God's property. Either reading reinforces God's sovereignty.

48

Summary: *Psalm 48 is a Song of Zion attributed to the Sons of Korah, celebrating the beauty, strength, and divine protection of Jerusalem. The psalm opens with praise for God's greatness revealed in the holy mountain, describes the panic and flight of enemy kings who saw the city and were terrified, invites worshipers to walk around Zion counting its towers, and concludes with the declaration that this God will be our guide forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 48 transforms geography into theology. Mount Zion is described as *yefe nof mesos kol ha-arets* ('beautiful in elevation, the joy of the whole earth,' v. 3), and then astonishingly identified as *yarkhete tsafon* ('the far reaches of the north'). *Tsafon* is Mount Zaphon, the mountain of the gods in Canaanite mythology — the Olympus of the ancient Near East, where Baal was enthroned. The psalm takes the name of the pagan divine mountain and applies it to Zion: the real Mount Zaphon is not in Syria; it is in Jerusalem. This is theological conquest by renaming — the psalm claims for YHWH and his city the cosmic significance that Canaanite religion attributed to Baal and his mountain. The kings who approach Zion in verses 5-7 do not even fight; they see the city and flee in terror, seized by trembling like a woman in labor. The city itself, without lifting a sword, defeats its enemies by the sheer force of God's presence within it.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of Zion with *tsafon* ('north') has generated much scholarly discussion. Zion is not geographically in the north; it is in the south of Israel. *tsafon* here functions as a mythological name, not a compass direction. The psalm appropriates Canaanite sacred geography for Israelite theology. The historical event behind the kings' panic (vv. 5-7) is debated — proposals include Sennacherib's failed siege of Jerusalem in 701 BCE (2 Kings 18-19), the coalition defeat in the Valley of Jehoshaphat (2 Chronicles 20), or a purely idealized/eschatological scenario. The phrase *shivvartem be-ruach qadim* ('you shattered them with an east wind,' v. 8) connects to the Exodus (Exodus 14:21) and to the destruction of Tarshish-ships (trade vessels), suggesting God's power over both military and commercial empires.*

Connections: *The Song of Zion genre links Psalm 48 to Psalms 46, 76, 84, 87, and 122. The identification with Mount Zaphon connects to Isaiah 14:13 (the king of Babylon's ambition to sit on 'the mount of assembly in the far north') and to Ezekiel 28:14 (the cherub on 'the holy mountain of God'). The kings' terror echoes Exodus 15:14-16 (the nations trembling at the Exodus) and Joshua 2:9-11 (Rahab's testimony that Canaan's inhabitants melted with fear). The instruction to 'walk about Zion' (v. 13) connects to the pilgrim psalms and to the processional liturgy of the Temple festivals.*

¹A song — A psalm of the Sons of Korah.

²Great is the LORD and greatly to be praised
in the city of our God, his holy mountain.

³Beautiful in elevation, the joy of the whole earth,
is Mount Zion, the heights of Zaphon —
the city of the great King.

⁴God in her citadels
has made himself known as a stronghold.

⁵For look — the kings assembled;
they advanced together.

⁶They saw — and at once they were stunned;
they were terrified; they fled in panic.

⁷Trembling seized them there —
anguish like a woman in labor.

⁸With an east wind
you shatter the ships of Tarshish.

⁹in the city of the LORD of hosts,
As we have heard, so we have seen
in the city of our God —
God will establish her forever. Selah.

¹⁰We have pondered your faithful love, O God,
in the midst of your Temple.

¹¹As your name, O God, so your praise
reaches to the ends of the earth.
Your right hand is filled with righteousness.

¹²May Mount Zion rejoice;
let the daughters of Judah be glad
because of your judgments.

¹³Walk around Zion; encircle her;
count her towers.

¹⁴Set your hearts on her ramparts;
examine her citadels,
so that you may tell the next generation:

¹⁵For this God is our God forever and ever;
he will guide us beyond death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Verse 1 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
2. gadol YHVH u-mehullal me'od ('great is the LORD and much to be praised') opens with the adjective gadol ('great') placed first for emphasis. The location of this praise is specific: be-ir Elohenu har qodsho ('in the city of our God, his holy mountain'). God's greatness is not abstract — it is localized in Zion, the place where heaven touches earth.
3. We render tsafon as 'Zaphon' rather than 'north' to preserve the mythological reference. The psalmist is not saying Zion is in the north (it is not); he is saying Zion is the true Zaphon — the real mountain of divine presence. This is a deliberate act of theological appropriation.
3. melek rav ('great king') is the Hebrew equivalent of the Akkadian sharru rabu, the standard title of the Assyrian emperor. The psalm claims this title for God, making the political point that the true great king is not in Nineveh but in Zion.
4. be-armenoteyha ('in her citadels/palaces') — the feminine suffix refers to the city. armenot are the fortified towers and palace-fortresses of the city. God is known (noda, from yada, 'to know') as a misgav ('stronghold, high fortress') — the same word used in Psalm 46:8, 12. The fortification of the city is not its walls but its God.
5. ki hinneh ('for behold') signals a dramatic shift to narrative. ha-melakhim no'adu ('the kings assembled') — multiple kings gathered for a coordinated attack. avru yachdav ('they advanced together') — they moved in concert toward the city. The brevity of the verse creates suspense: the kings have assembled, they have advanced — and then what?

6. The pattern — enemies approach, see, and flee — echoes the Exodus tradition (Exodus 15:14-16), where the nations heard of God's deliverance and trembled. In both cases, God's reputation or visible presence does the fighting.
7. re'adah ('trembling') from ra'ad ('to tremble') describes uncontrollable shaking. chil kayyoleadah ('writhing like a woman giving birth') — chil ('pain, writhing, anguish') is the specific word for labor pains. The warrior-kings are reduced to the helplessness of a woman in the grip of contractions — an image that simultaneously conveys pain, loss of control, and the irresistibility of the force acting upon them.
8. ruach qadim ('east wind') is the sirocco — the hot, destructive wind from the desert that withers crops and shatters structures. In the Exodus, God used the east wind to part the sea (Exodus 14:21) and to bring locusts (Exodus 10:13). oniyot Tarshish ('ships of Tarshish') were the largest merchant vessels of the ancient world, capable of long Mediterranean voyages. Tarshish is likely Tartessus in Spain — the farthest reach of Phoenician commerce. God's east wind destroys the mightiest commercial fleet, demonstrating power over both military and economic empires.
9. The phrase 'as we heard, so we have seen' bridges the gap between tradition and experience. Faith is not merely receiving testimony about past events but encountering the same God in present experience. The psalm's theology of Zion is not nostalgic — it is experiential.
10. dimninu ('we have compared, we have pondered, we have meditated') from damah ('to be like, to compare, to liken') suggests deep reflection — the worshipers sit in the Temple and contemplate (literally 'form images of') God's chesed ('faithful love'). The setting is be-qerev hekhalekha ('in the midst of your palace/Temple') — the Temple is the place where faithful love is most clearly perceived.
11. ke-shimkha Elohim ken tehillatekha ('as your name, so your praise') — God's reputation (shem) matches the praise offered to him. The scope is al qatsve erets ('to the ends of the earth') — universal. tsedeq mal'ah yeminekha ('your right hand is full of righteousness') — the right hand that wields power is filled not with violence but with tsedeq ('righteousness, justice'). Power and justice are inseparable in God.
12. benot Yehudah ('daughters of Judah') refers to the towns and villages of Judah personified as women — 'daughters' in the sense of subsidiary settlements dependent on the mother-city, Jerusalem. Their gladness is grounded in mishpatekha ('your judgments') — God's judicial decisions that set things right. When God judges, the vulnerable celebrate.
13. The psalm shifts to a pilgrimage instruction: sobbu Tsiyon ve-haqqifuha ('go around Zion and encircle her'). This may reflect an actual liturgical procession around the city walls. sifru migdaleyha ('count her towers') — the worshipers are invited to inventory the city's defenses, not to trust in them but to witness the God-protected city's completeness. Every tower standing is evidence of divine preservation.
14. shitu libbekhem le-chelah ('set your hearts/minds on her ramparts') — chelah ('rampart, outer wall') is the defensive perimeter. The instruction is not military inspection but theological witness: look carefully, remember, and pass it on. le-ma'an tesapperu le-dor acharon ('so that you may recount to the next generation') — the purpose of the pilgrimage-tour is transmission. What you have seen with your eyes, you must speak to your children.
15. The phrase al mut is one of the most contested readings in the Psalter. The Masoretic accents separate it from the preceding word, suggesting it may be a postscript or musical notation. We render it as 'beyond death' because the psalm's theology of God's eternal faithfulness (olam va-ed) naturally extends past the boundary of human mortality. The God who is 'ours forever' does not stop guiding at the grave.

49

Summary: *Psalm 49 is a wisdom psalm of the Sons of Korah that confronts the mystery of death's equality — the rich and the poor, the wise and the foolish, all die. The psalm opens with a universal summons to hear wisdom, then exposes the folly of trusting in wealth: no amount of money can ransom a person from death. The rich and the foolish perish alike, their graves become their permanent homes, and their wealth passes to others. A key refrain declares that humanity in its pomp will not endure — like the beasts, they perish. Yet the psalmist expresses a singular hope: 'God will ransom my soul from the hand of Sheol, for he will take me.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 49 is the Hebrew Bible's most sustained meditation on the inability of wealth to defeat death, making it a biblical counterpart to Ecclesiastes. The refrain adam biqar ve-lo yavin nimshal ka-behemot nidmu ('humanity in its splendor without understanding is like the beasts that perish,' vv. 13, 21) reduces the wealthy to animals — all their glory cannot make them more than creatures who die and decompose. But verse 16 breaks through the psalm's bleak equality with a startling hope: akh Elohim yifdeh nafshi mi-yad She'ol ki yiqqacheni ('but God will ransom my soul from the hand of Sheol, for he will take me'). The verb laqach ('to take') is the same used for Enoch (Genesis 5:24, 'God took him') and Elijah (2 Kings 2:3, 'the LORD will take your master'). This is the Hebrew Bible's most explicit assertion of a hope beyond death for the righteous individual — not merely prolonged life, but rescue from Sheol itself.*

Translation Friction: The text of Psalm 49 is notoriously difficult, with several verses that resist easy translation. The refrain varies slightly between verses 13 and 21 (yalin vs. yavin — 'will not abide' vs. 'does not understand'), and scholars debate which is original and which a corruption. Verse 15 (Hebrew) is extremely compressed: qirbam battemo le-olam ('their inward thought is that their houses are forever') reconstructs what may be a corrupted text. The hope of verse 16 is the psalm's theological problem: how can the psalmist claim rescue from Sheol when the rest of the psalm insists that all die? The answer may lie in the distinction between death (which all share) and Sheol's power (from which God can ransom).

Connections: The wisdom framework connects to Proverbs, Job, and Ecclesiastes, all of which address wealth's inability to secure life. The verb laqach in verse 16 ('he will take me') links to the Enoch tradition (Genesis 5:24) and the Elijah tradition (2 Kings 2:10). Psalm 73:23-26 develops the same hope: 'You guide me with your counsel, and afterward you will take me into glory.' Jesus' parable of the rich fool (Luke 12:16-21) and his teaching that a person cannot serve God and money (Matthew 6:24) echo this psalm's central argument. The refrain's comparison of wealthy humans to perishing beasts inverts Genesis 1:26-28, where humanity is given dominion over the animals — here, without wisdom, humans become indistinguishable from them.

¹For the choirmaster. A psalm of the Sons of Korah.

²Hear this, all you peoples;
give ear, all who inhabit the passing world.

³Both common folk and the highborn,
rich and poor together.

⁴My mouth will speak wisdom,
and the meditation of my heart will be understanding.

⁵I will turn my ear to a proverb;
I will open my riddle on the lyre.

⁶Why should I fear in days of trouble,
when the guilt of those who track me surrounds me?

⁷Those who trust in their wealth
and boast in the abundance of their riches —

⁸No one can ransom a brother
or pay God the price of his release,

⁹for the ransom of a life is too costly —
he must let it go forever.

¹⁰that he should live on forever
and never see the pit.

¹¹For he sees that the wise die;
the fool and the senseless alike perish
and leave their wealth to others.

¹²Their graves are their homes forever,
their dwelling places for all generations,
though they named lands after themselves.

¹³Humanity in its splendor will not endure;
it is like the beasts that perish.

¹⁴This is their way — their foolish confidence;
and those who follow them approve their words. Selah.

¹⁵Like sheep they are driven to Sheol;
death is their shepherd.
The upright will rule over them at morning,
and their form will waste away —
Sheol will be their dwelling, not a mansion.

¹⁶But God will ransom my life from the hand of Sheol,
for he will take me. Selah.

¹⁷Do not fear when a man grows rich,
when the glory of his house increases,

¹⁸for when he dies he will take nothing with him;
his glory will not follow him down.

¹⁹Though he blesses himself during his life,
and people praise you when you prosper,

²⁰he will go to the generation of his ancestors;
they will never see light.

²¹Humanity in its splendor, without understanding,
is like the beasts that perish.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Verse 1 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
2. The summons is universal: kol ha-ammim ('all the peoples') and kol yoshve chaled ('all who inhabit chaled'). The word chaled ('world, age, duration') is rare and emphasizes the transitory nature of earthly existence — from a root meaning 'to glide, to pass away.' The world itself is described by a word that means 'the fleeting thing.' The psalm addresses all of humanity, not just Israel.
3. bene adam ('sons of Adam/humanity') refers to ordinary people — the common person. bene ish ('sons of a man/person of standing') refers to those of higher social rank. The pairing covers the entire social spectrum, then further specifies: ashir ve-eyon ('rich and destitute'). The psalm addresses everyone without exception — its wisdom applies regardless of status or wealth.
4. khokhmot ('wisdoms,' plural) — the plural may indicate comprehensive wisdom, wisdom in its full range. hagut libbi ('the meditation/murmuring of my heart') uses hagah, the same verb from Psalm 1:2 for meditating on Torah. tevnnot ('understandings,' plural) parallels the plural of wisdom. The psalmist claims prophetic and sapiential authority: what follows is not opinion but divinely informed wisdom.
5. The combination of mashal ('proverb') and chidah ('riddle') echoes Proverbs 1:6, where both terms describe the content of wisdom. A chidah is not a puzzle for entertainment but a deep truth concealed in paradox — the kind of truth that requires meditation to unlock.
6. The verse is textually difficult. avon aqevai ('the iniquity of my heels/my supplanters') may mean: (1) the guilt of my own missteps, (2) the wickedness of those who pursue me (aqev as 'heel-tracker,' cf. Jacob's name), or (3) the sins that dog my footsteps. The context — a psalm about the futility of wealth — suggests the psalmist asks why he should fear when surrounded by the wickedness of the wealthy who oppress him.
7. ha-botchim al chelam ('those who trust in their resources') — the verb batach ('to trust') is the word the psalms reserve for confidence in God. Using it for wealth is a pointed accusation: they have placed in money the trust that belongs to God alone. u-ve-rov oshram yithallalu ('and in the greatness of their riches they boast') — the verb halal ('to boast, to praise') is also worship language. They praise their wealth as others praise God.
8. The verb padah ('to redeem, to ransom') is covenantal language — God ransoms (podeh) Israel from Egypt, from exile, from Sheol. The psalm's devastating point is that what humans cannot do for each other, God can do — setting up the hope of verse 16.

9. *yeqar pidyon nafsham* ('costly is the redemption of their soul/life') — *yeqar* means 'precious, expensive, rare.' The ransom price for a human life exceeds all possible payment. *ve-chadal le-olam* ('and he ceases forever') — the verb *chadal* ('to cease, to desist, to give up') means the would-be redeemer must abandon the attempt. No amount of wealth reaches the price of a life.
10. The purpose clause completes the thought: no one can pay enough to live forever (*yichi od lanestsach*) or to avoid the *shachat* ('pit, grave, corruption'). *shachat* can mean the physical grave or the decomposition of the body — death in its most unsparing form.
11. Death's equality is stated bluntly: *chakhamim yamuthu* ('the wise die'), and *yachad kesil u-va'ar yovedu* ('together the fool and the brute perish'). The three categories — wise, foolish, and brutish — cover the entire spectrum of human intelligence. None is exempt. *ve-azvu la-acherim chelam* ('and they leave their wealth to others') — the final insult. The wealth they spent their lives accumulating passes to people they may not have chosen.
12. The emendation of *qirbam* ('their inner thought') to *qivram* ('their grave') is widely accepted, as the *resh* and *bet* are visually similar in Hebrew script. The MT reading ('their inner thought is that their houses will last forever') makes sense but is less poetically parallel. Either way, the irony is sharp: they planned permanence and received a tomb.
13. The refrain in verse 21 will change one word: *yalin* ('abide') becomes *yavin* ('understand'). The shift is significant — the first refrain says wealth does not make you permanent; the second says wealth does not make you wise. Together they strip wealth of both its promises: durability and meaning.
14. *kesel* ('folly, false confidence, stupidity') is their fundamental error — trusting in wealth. *ve-achareihem be-fihem yirtsu* ('and those after them delight in their mouth/words') — subsequent generations repeat the same folly, approving the worldview of the rich who came before them. The cycle of foolish confidence reproduces itself.
15. The image of death as shepherd (*mavet yir'em*) is a deliberate inversion of Psalm 23 (YHVH *ro'i*, 'the LORD is my shepherd'). Those who refuse God as shepherd get death as shepherd instead. The 'morning' (*boqer*) of reversal echoes the dawn deliverance motif of Psalm 46:6.
16. The *selah* after this verse provides a moment of silence for the most radical claim in the psalm. After twelve verses insisting that all die, that no ransom suffices, that humans perish like beasts — this verse says: but not me. Not because of my wealth or wisdom, but because God ransoms. The basis is not human merit but divine action.
16. The echo of *padah* from verse 8 is deliberate. The psalm sets up an impossibility (no human can ransom) and then resolves it with divine capability (God can ransom). The structure mirrors the gospel pattern: what is impossible for humans is possible for God.
17. The practical application of the psalm's wisdom: *al tira* ('do not fear') — do not be intimidated or envious when others accumulate wealth. *kevod beto* ('the glory of his house') — the impressive display of a wealthy household. The psalm's message: this glory is temporary and ultimately powerless against death.
18. *lo be-moto yiqqach hakkol* ('not in his death will he take everything') — the verb *laqach* ('to take') reappears. In verse 16, God takes the psalmist; here, the rich man cannot take his possessions. The contrast is devastating: the righteous are taken by God; the wealthy cannot take their goods. *lo yered acharav kevodo* ('his glory will not descend after him') — *kavod* ('glory, weight, substance') stays above ground while the body descends to the grave.
19. *nafsho be-chayyav yevarekh* ('he blesses his soul during his life') — self-congratulation, the rich man telling himself how well he has done. *ve-yodukha ki tetiv lakh* ('and they praise you when you do well for yourself') — others affirm and celebrate your success. The psalm exposes the feedback loop of wealth: prosperity generates self-praise and social approval, creating the illusion of permanence.
20. *tavo ad dor avotav* ('he will come to the generation of his fathers') — he will join his dead ancestors in Sheol. *ad netsach lo yir'u* or ('unto perpetuity they will not see light') — the finality is total: the light that the psalm promised to the righteous (at morning, v. 15) is denied forever to those who trusted in wealth. The contrast with verse 16 is sharp: the psalmist will be taken by God; the wealthy will never see light.
21. The two forms of the refrain together deliver the psalm's complete message. Verse 13: wealth does not make you last. Verse 21: wealth does not make you wise. The only thing that defeats death is God's ransom (v. 16), and the only thing that brings understanding is wisdom (vv. 4-5) — both are divine gifts, not human achievements.

50

Summary: Psalm 50 is a covenant lawsuit (riv) psalm attributed to Asaph, in which God summons heaven and earth as witnesses, convenes a courtroom from Zion, and prosecutes two charges against his people. The first charge (vv. 7-15) addresses those who rely on sacrifice while misunderstanding its purpose — God does not need animal offerings because he owns all creation. The second charge (vv. 16-21) targets the wicked who recite God's laws but violate them in practice — thieves, adulterers, slanderers who assume God's silence means approval. The psalm closes with a warning and a promise: destruction awaits those who forget God, but salvation comes to those who offer thanksgiving and order their way rightly.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 50 employs the covenant lawsuit (riv) form found in the prophets — God puts his people on trial, with heaven and earth as witnesses (cf. Deuteronomy 32:1, Isaiah 1:2, Micah 6:1-2). The most radical theological claim is God's rejection of the sacrificial system as a feeding arrangement: 'Do I eat the flesh of bulls or drink the blood of goats?' (v. 13). God mocks the idea that he depends on sacrifice for sustenance — an idea common in other ancient Near Eastern religions where the gods genuinely needed offerings for food. The God of Israel owns every animal, every bird, every creature: 'If I were hungry, I would not tell you' (v. 12). The true sacrifice God desires is todah ('thanksgiving') and fulfilled vows. This anticipates the prophetic critique of empty ritual (Isaiah 1:11-17, Hosea 6:6, Amos 5:21-24, Micah 6:6-8) and points toward a worship centered on gratitude and obedience rather than external ceremony.*

Translation Friction: *The attribution le-Asaf ('of Asaph') introduces a new collection within Book II of the Psalter. Asaph was a levitical musician appointed by David (1 Chronicles 16:5, 25:1-2) — the Asaphite psalms (50, 73-83) tend toward prophetic speech, divine judgment, and covenant theology. The riv ('lawsuit') form raises a question: can God be both judge and plaintiff? In the psalm's world, yes — God is the aggrieved party who brings the case and the sovereign who renders the verdict. The distinction between the two groups addressed (vv. 7-15 vs. vv. 16-21) is sometimes blurred — both may overlap within the same community, and the psalm addresses tendencies rather than fixed categories.*

Connections: *The covenant lawsuit form connects to Deuteronomy 32 (the Song of Moses, which summons heaven and earth as witnesses), Isaiah 1:2-20 (God's indictment of Jerusalem), and Micah 6:1-8 (God's case against Israel, concluding with 'what does the LORD require of you?'). God's claim to own all animals (vv. 10-12) echoes Psalm 24:1 ('the earth is the LORD's and its fullness'). The preference for thanksgiving (todah) over blood sacrifice anticipates Hosea 6:6 ('I desire faithful love, not sacrifice') and Jesus' quotation of that verse in Matthew 9:13 and 12:7. The theophany from Zion (vv. 1-3) echoes Deuteronomy 33:2, Habakkuk 3:3, and Psalm 97:3-5.*

¹A psalm of Asaph.

God — God — the LORD —

he has spoken and summoned the earth
from the rising of the sun to its setting.

²From Zion, the perfection of beauty,
God shines forth.

³Our God comes — he will not be silent.
Fire devours before him;
around him a mighty storm rages.

⁴He calls to the heavens above
and to the earth, to judge his people.

⁵"Gather my faithful ones to me,
those who sealed my covenant by sacrifice."

⁶The heavens declare his righteousness,
for God himself is judge. Selah.

⁷"Hear, my people, and I will speak;
Israel, I will testify against you.
I am God — your God.

⁸I do not rebuke you for your sacrifices;
your burnt offerings are continually before me.

⁹I will not take a bull from your house
or goats from your pens,

¹⁰the cattle on a thousand hills.
for every beast of the forest is mine —

¹¹I know every bird of the mountains,
and the creatures of the field are mine.

¹²If I were hungry, I would not tell you,
for the world is mine and everything in it.

¹³Do I eat the flesh of mighty bulls
or drink the blood of goats?

¹⁴Sacrifice thanksgiving to God
and fulfill your vows to the Most High.

¹⁵Call on me in the day of trouble;
I will rescue you, and you will honor me."

¹⁶But to the wicked God says:
"What right have you to recite my statutes
or to take my covenant on your lips?

¹⁷You hate discipline
and throw my words behind you.

¹⁸When you see a thief, you run with him,
and your portion is with adulterers.

¹⁹You unleash your mouth for evil,
and your tongue harnesses deceit.

²⁰You sit and speak against your brother;
you slander your own mother's son.

²¹These things you have done, and I was silent.
You thought I was just like you.
But I will rebuke you
and lay the charge before your eyes.

²²Understand this, you who forget God,
lest I tear you apart with no one to rescue.

²³The one who sacrifices thanksgiving honors me,
and to the one who orders his way rightly
I will show the salvation of God."

1. The triple divine name El Elohim YHVH appears also in Joshua 22:22 in a context of covenant dispute. The accumulation of names emphasizes the authority and solemnity of the speaker — this is not a minor deity but the God of Israel in his fullest identity, speaking with absolute authority.
2. *mi-Tsiyon mikhlal yofi* ('from Zion, the completeness of beauty') — *mikhlal* ('perfection, completeness') from *kalal* ('to complete, to perfect'). Zion is the place where beauty reaches its fullness. *Elohim hofia* ('God has shone forth') — the verb *yafa* in the *hiphil* ('to shine, to appear in splendor') is theophany language, used of God's radiant self-manifestation (Deuteronomy 33:2, Psalm 80:2, 94:1). The judge does not merely arrive; he blazes.
3. The theophany of fire and storm echoes the Sinai covenant-making (Exodus 19:16-19). The same God who gave the covenant in fire now judges covenant violations in fire. The literary connection is deliberate: the terms of the agreement are being enforced by the one who established them.
4. *yiqra el ha-shamayim me'al ve-el ha-arets* ('he calls to the heavens above and to the earth') — heaven and earth are summoned as witnesses, following the covenant-witness formula of Deuteronomy 4:26, 30:19, 31:28. In ancient Near Eastern treaties, the gods were invoked as witnesses; in Israel, the created order itself witnesses God's covenant. *ladin ammo* ('to judge his people') — the verb *din* ('to judge, to execute judgment') specifies the purpose: this is a trial, and the defendants are *ammo* ('his people').
5. God speaks directly: *isfu li chasidai* ('gather to me my chasidim, my faithful ones'). The *chasidim* are those bound to God by *chesed* — covenant loyalty. They are further described as *korte veriti ale zavach* ('those who cut my covenant over sacrifice') — the verb *karat* ('to cut') is the standard term for making a covenant (from the cutting of animals in the ratification ceremony, cf. Genesis 15:10, 17). *ale zavach* ('over sacrifice') specifies the means: the covenant was sealed by blood sacrifice, evoking the Sinai covenant ceremony of Exodus 24:5-8.
6. The heavens (*shamayim*) now function as witnesses who testify to God's *tsedeq* ('righteousness') — the judge's character is established before the verdict is rendered. *ki Elohim shofet hu* ('for God himself is judge') — the emphatic *hu* ('he') stresses that God alone holds judicial authority in this proceeding. No appeal to a higher court is possible.
7. The first-person divine speech that begins here and continues through verse 23 is one of the longest divine discourses in the Psalms. God speaks directly, without prophetic mediation — the psalm itself functions as prophetic oracle.
8. God's first clarification: the problem is not that Israel has failed to sacrifice. *lo al zevachekha okhichekha* ('not on account of your sacrifices do I rebuke you') — the sacrificial system is functioning. *olotekha lenegdi tamid* ('your burnt offerings are before me continually') — the daily offerings are being presented. The accusation is not about quantity or regularity of sacrifice but about the understanding behind it.
9. Verse 9 continues the psalm's thematic and structural development.
10. The phrase *behemot be-harre alef* ('cattle on a thousand hills') has become proverbial in English. It expresses divine ownership of all creation — a principle that undermines any transactional understanding of worship. If God owns everything, sacrifice cannot be payment for services rendered.
11. *yadati kol of harim* ('I know every bird of the mountains') — God's knowledge is specific and exhaustive: he knows each individual bird. This anticipates Jesus' statement that not a sparrow falls without the Father's knowledge (Matthew 10:29). *ve-ziz sadai immadi* ('and the moving creatures of the field are with me') — *ziz* is a rare word for swarming, moving creatures. They belong to God, they are 'with' God.
12. The sarcasm of 'if I were hungry, I would not tell you' is deliberate. God mocks the notion that the creator of the universe depends on the offerings of his creatures. This does not abolish sacrifice — verse 14 will redirect it — but it destroys the transactional understanding of worship.
13. The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'no.' *ha-okhal besar abbirim* ('do I eat the flesh of mighty ones/bulls?') — *abbirim* ('mighty ones, strong bulls') emphasizes the animals' power and value. *ve-dam attudim eshteh* ('and the blood of he-goats do I drink?') — the mention of blood is pointed: blood was the most sacred element of sacrifice, poured on the altar for atonement (Leviticus 17:11). God declares he does not consume it. Sacrifice is for the worshiper's benefit, not God's.
14. *todah* is the pivot of the entire psalm. It means both 'thanksgiving' and 'confession' — the public declaration of what God has done. The *todah* offering (Leviticus 7:12) included bread and meat shared in a communal meal, making it the most relational of all sacrifices. It is the sacrifice that builds community, not merely appeases deity.
15. The three-step cycle — call, rescue, glorify — replaces the sacrificial cycle of bring, slaughter, atone. The new worship economy is relational: the worshiper's need, God's response, and the worshiper's gratitude. This is the *todah* pattern in its simplest form.
16. The accusation is aimed at religious hypocrisy — people who know the covenant terms, who can quote them, who use them in worship and teaching, but whose lives contradict everything they profess. This is not a critique of knowledge but of knowledge without corresponding obedience.
17. *saneta musar* ('you hate discipline/correction') — *musar* ('discipline, instruction, correction') is the fundamental educational concept in Proverbs. To hate *musar* is to reject the training that forms character. *vattashlekha devarai acharekha* ('and you cast my words behind you') — the physical image is of someone throwing something over their shoulder, dismissing it contemptuously. God's words are literally behind their back — out of sight, out of mind.
18. The specific violations: theft and adultery — two of the Ten Commandments. *im raita gannav vattirets immo* ('when you see a thief you run with him') — not merely tolerance but active participation. *ve-im mena'afim chelqekha* ('and with adulterers is your share') — *chelqekha* ('your portion, your share') means they have cast their lot with the unfaithful. The one who recites 'you shall not steal' and 'you shall not commit adultery' does both.
19. *pikha shalachta vera'ah* ('your mouth you have sent forth in evil') — the mouth is released like a weapon. *u-leshonkha tatsmid mirmah* ('and your tongue yokes/harnesses deceit') — the verb *tsamad* ('to bind, to yoke, to harness') pictures the tongue as an animal harnessed to pull a load of deception. Speech — the same faculty used to recite God's statutes (v. 16) — is now yoked to lies.

- 20.** The violation becomes intimate: *be-achikha tedabber* ('against your brother you speak') — not a stranger but a covenant-brother. *be-ven immekha titten dofi* ('against the son of your mother you give a blemish/defamation') — *ben immekha* ('the son of your mother') is an intensified form of 'brother,' emphasizing the closest blood relation. *dofi* ('blemish, defamation') is slander that damages reputation. The one who knows the law against bearing false witness destroys his own family.
- 21.** The accusation *dimmita heyot ehych kamokha* ('you thought I would be like you') is the psalm's most penetrating insight. The root of religious hypocrisy is the assumption that God sees as we see, values as we value, and tolerates as we tolerate. God's silence during sin is not agreement — it is the patience that precedes judgment.
- 22.** *binu na zot shokheche Eloah* ('understand this, you who forget God') — the verb *shakach* ('to forget') is the core covenant violation: forgetting God. The warning is visceral: *pen etrof* ('lest I tear') — the verb *taraf* ('to tear, to rend') is the action of a predator tearing prey. *ve-en matstsil* ('and there is no rescuer') — when God himself attacks, no one can intervene. The gentle God of verse 15 ('call on me and I will rescue') becomes the lion-God when his patience ends.
- 23.** The final verse creates a complete theology of worship: *todah* (thanksgiving) is the sacrifice, *kavod* (glory/honor) is the result for God, *derekh* (ordered way of life) is the ethical requirement, and *yesha* (salvation) is God's gift to the faithful. This is the covenant rightly understood: not transaction but relationship, not feeding God but thanking God, not ritual alone but life aligned with words.

51

Summary: *David's penitential psalm, composed after the prophet Nathan confronted him over his adultery with Bathsheba and the murder of Uriah. The poem moves from desperate plea for mercy through unflinching confession of sin to a vision of restored worship and a rebuilt Zion. It is the most personal and theologically dense confession in the Hebrew Bible.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains the most radical theology of sin and restoration in the Psalter. David does not merely confess a deed — he confesses a condition. 'In sin my mother conceived me' (v. 7) is not a statement about his mother's morality but about the depth of his entanglement with human brokenness. The psalm's central pivot comes at verse 12, where David asks for a 'clean heart' (*lev tahor*) and a 'steadfast spirit' (*ruach nakhon*) — language that echoes the creation account. David is not asking for forgiveness alone; he is asking to be re-created. The plea 'do not take your Holy Spirit from me' (v. 13) carries devastating weight: David has watched Saul lose the Spirit (1 Samuel 16:14) and knows what that looks like. He is begging not to become Saul. The psalm's climax inverts the entire sacrificial system — God does not want burnt offerings but a broken spirit (v. 19). This is not anti-cultic theology; it is the recognition that no external ritual can address what has gone wrong inside David.*

Translation Friction: *Hebrew versification counts the superscription as verses 1-2, so what English Bibles call verse 1 ('Have mercy upon me') is verse 3 in the Hebrew. We follow WLC numbering throughout. The phrase 'against you, you alone, have I sinned' (v. 6) has troubled readers because David clearly sinned against Bathsheba, Uriah, and the nation. The Hebrew is not denying horizontal harm but asserting that all sin is ultimately a violation of God's sovereignty — David broke God's moral order, and only God can restore it. The word *chatah* (v. 4, 'sin') means literally 'to miss the mark,' but in this context it carries the full weight of covenant-breaking rebellion.*

Connections: *The superscription ties this psalm directly to 2 Samuel 12:1-15, where Nathan confronts David with the parable of the poor man's lamb. The plea for hyssop (v. 9) recalls the purification rituals of Leviticus 14 (cleansing from skin disease) and Exodus 12:22 (the Passover blood). David's request for a 'new heart' anticipates Ezekiel 36:26 ('I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you'). The broken-spirit theology of verse 19 is echoed in Isaiah 57:15 and 66:2. The final two verses about rebuilding Zion's walls may reflect exilic editing, extending David's personal prayer into a national one.*

‡For the director of music.
A psalm of David.

²after he had gone in to Bathsheba.
When Nathan the prophet came to him,

³Be gracious to me, God, according to your faithful love;
according to the abundance of your compassion,
wipe out my rebellions.

⁴Wash me thoroughly from my guilt,
and from my sin cleanse me.

⁵For my rebellions — I know them,
and my sin is before me continually.

⁶Against you — you alone — have I sinned,
and done what is evil in your sight,
so that you are justified when you speak
and blameless when you judge.

⁷Look — in guilt I was brought forth,
and in sin my mother conceived me.

⁸Look — you desire truth in the innermost being;
so in the hidden depths, teach me wisdom.

⁹Purify me with hyssop and I will be clean;
wash me and I will be whiter than snow.

¹⁰Let me hear joy and gladness;
let the bones you have crushed rejoice.

¹¹Hide your face from my sins,
and wipe out all my guilt.

¹²Create in me a clean heart, God,
and renew a steadfast spirit within me.

¹³Do not cast me away from your presence,
and do not take your Holy Spirit from me.

¹⁴Restore to me the joy of your salvation,
and sustain me with a willing spirit.

¹⁵Then I will teach rebels your ways,
and sinners will return to you.

¹⁶Deliver me from bloodguilt, God —
God of my salvation!
My tongue will sing aloud of your righteousness.

¹⁷Lord, open my lips,
and my mouth will declare your praise.

¹⁸For you do not desire sacrifice — I would give it;
you take no pleasure in burnt offering.

¹⁹The sacrifices God accepts are a broken spirit;
a broken and crushed heart —
God, you will not despise.

²⁰Do good to Zion in your favor;
build up the walls of Jerusalem.

²¹Then you will delight in righteous sacrifices —
burnt offering and whole offering;
then bulls will be offered on your altar.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The lamnatseyach superscription appears in 55 psalms and indicates the psalm was intended for liturgical performance under professional musical direction. Despite its intensely personal content, this psalm was not private — it was handed to the worship leader for public use.
2. The superscription's second half provides the historical occasion: Nathan's confrontation after David's adultery with Bathsheba (2 Samuel 12). The phrase *ba el* ('went in to') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse. The superscription does not soften or euphemize the event — it names both the prophet and the woman.
3. *chesed* is often rendered 'lovingkindness' (KJV) or 'steadfast love' (ESV). We render it 'faithful love' to capture both the loyalty dimension (it is covenant-bound) and the affective dimension (it is genuine love, not mere obligation). David's appeal to *chesed* is an appeal to covenant relationship — he has broken the covenant, but he is asking God's covenant character to outlast his covenant-breaking.
3. *pesha'im* ('rebellions') is the strongest of the three Hebrew sin-words used in this psalm. It denotes willful, deliberate transgression — not ignorance or weakness but conscious defiance. David chooses the most damning word available for his own behavior.
4. The three sin-words — *pesha* (v. 3), *avon* (v. 4a), and *chattath* (v. 4b) — form a comprehensive taxonomy of human wrongdoing. This same triad appears in Exodus 34:7, where God declares that he forgives 'rebellion, guilt, and sin.' David is implicitly invoking God's own self-description from Sinai.
4. *kabas* ('wash') refers specifically to the physical act of laundering, not bathing. It implies vigorous scrubbing. The stain metaphor suggests David understands his sin as something that has penetrated his being, not merely marked its surface.
5. The word *tamid* ('continually') is used in the Torah for the perpetual lamp in the tabernacle (Exodus 27:20) and the daily burnt offering (Numbers 28:6). David's sin has become as constant a presence as the offerings that were supposed to address it.
6. *lekha levaddekha* ('against you, you alone') uses the emphatic construction with the limiting particle *levad* ('only, alone'). This is not carelessness about horizontal sin but the radical theological claim that sin's ultimate target is always God — because God is the author of the moral order that sin violates.
6. The *lema'an* ('so that, in order that') clause does not mean David sinned on purpose to give God something to judge. It means that David's full confession is intended to remove any question about whether God's judgment is fair. David preemptively vindicates the judge.
7. *hen* ('look, behold') signals a shift from confession of specific acts to reflection on the human condition. David moves from 'I did this' to 'I am this.'
7. This verse does not teach that sexuality or conception is sinful. The Hebrew is a statement about human solidarity in brokenness — every person enters a world already compromised by sin. David's point is that he needs something more radical than behavioral correction.
8. *tuchot* is rare and debated. It may derive from a root meaning 'to cover, to seal' — the covered or sealed-off interior of a person. Some connect it to *tachot* ('kidneys'), which in Hebrew thought are the seat of deep emotion and conscience. Either way, the meaning is the same: the most interior, hidden dimension of a person.
8. *emet* ('truth') here means not just factual accuracy but integrity, reliability, coherence between inner reality and outward behavior. God wants David's interior to match his exterior — no more hidden sin.
9. The hyssop reference is not metaphorical decoration. It invokes the entire Levitical purification system and specifically the rituals for the most serious forms of contamination. David sees his sin as equivalent to corpse-contamination — contact with death itself.
9. The snow comparison (*mi-sheleg albin*, 'whiter than snow') anticipates Isaiah 1:18 ('though your sins are like scarlet, they shall be white as snow'). White is not merely the absence of stain but a positive quality — radiant purity.

10. The pairing of *sason ve-simchah* ('joy and gladness') is a stock phrase in Hebrew for celebratory occasions — weddings, festivals, restoration. David wants to hear the sound of celebration again, implying he has been in a silence where joy's voice was absent.
11. Normally in the Psalter, the cry is 'do not hide your face from me' (Psalms 13:1, 27:9, 69:17). Here David inverts the formula: hide your face from my sins. He wants God to look away — not from him, but from his transgressions. The verb *machah* ('wipe out') repeats from verse 3, framing this section with the same plea.
12. *bara* ('create') is never used in the Hebrew Bible for human manufacturing or crafting. It is reserved for divine acts of bringing into being what did not exist before. David is asking for something only God can do — not reformation but re-creation.
12. *nakhon* ('steadfast, established, firm') comes from *kun*, 'to be established, fixed, prepared.' It describes something stable and reliable — the opposite of the wavering spirit that allowed David to see, desire, take, and cover up.
13. *ruach qodshekha* ('your Holy Spirit') — this is one of only three places in the Hebrew Bible where the phrase 'Holy Spirit' appears (here, Isaiah 63:10-11). In this context it refers to God's empowering, sustaining presence that rests on those whom God has chosen for specific purposes. For David, it is the Spirit that came upon him at his anointing (1 Samuel 16:13).
13. The phrase *mi-lefanekha* ('from your presence/face') echoes the Cain narrative — after murdering Abel, Cain goes out 'from the presence of the LORD' (Genesis 4:16). David, who has also committed murder, fears the same exile.
14. The three-spirit sequence (vv. 12-14) — steadfast, holy, willing — forms a complete theology of spiritual restoration: internal stability, divine presence, and joyful motivation. All three must be given by God; David cannot manufacture any of them.
15. David deliberately uses the same sin-vocabulary for others that he used for himself (*posh'im* parallels *pasha'ai* in v. 3; *chatta'im* parallels *chattathi* in v. 4). He does not position himself above other sinners — he joins their company and offers to show them the path he walked back.
16. *damim* (literally 'bloods') is the technical term for blood-guilt in Hebrew law. Genesis 4:10 uses the same plural when Abel's 'bloods' cry from the ground. The plural may intensify the concept or reflect the multiple deaths David's order caused.
16. The irony of David's tongue singing *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') is sharp — the tongue that dictated the letter ordering Uriah's death (2 Samuel 11:15) will be repurposed as an instrument of praise.
17. The address shifts from *Elohim* ('God') to *Adonai* ('Lord, Master') — the personal, relational name that emphasizes God's authority and David's submission. David positions himself as a servant before his master, asking the master to give him the ability to speak.
18. This verse is not anti-sacrificial. David is not saying sacrifices are worthless in general but that his specific sin exceeds what the sacrificial system was designed to handle. The high-handed sin of Numbers 15:30 — deliberate rebellion — has no prescribed offering. David needs something beyond the system.
19. The plural *zivchei Elohim* ('the sacrifices of God') uses the construct form: these are not sacrifices offered to God but sacrifices that belong to God — sacrifices that are truly his. The broken spirit is God's sacrifice because God produced it.
19. *nidkeh* ('crushed') is related to *dakka* in Isaiah 57:15, where God 'dwells with the crushed and lowly of spirit.' The theology is consistent: God's presence is drawn to human brokenness, not human achievement.
20. Many scholars believe verses 20-21 are an exilic addition, extending David's personal prayer into a communal one relevant to the Babylonian exile. Whether original or added, the verses make a theological point: individual sin and communal devastation are connected, and restoration must encompass both.
21. *zivchei tsedeq* ('sacrifices of righteousness') — sacrifices that are right and proper because they emerge from a right relationship with God. The contrast with *zivchei Elohim* ('sacrifices of God' = a broken spirit) in verse 19 is deliberate: both are valid, but one must precede the other.
21. *kalil* ('whole offering') refers to a sacrifice entirely consumed on the altar — nothing held back. The theological echo is that David, having held nothing back in confession, can now offer a sacrifice that holds nothing back either.

52

Summary: *A wisdom psalm contrasting the fate of a powerful person who trusts in wealth and destructive speech with the righteous who trust in God's faithful love. The superscription connects it to Doeg the Edomite's betrayal of the priests at Nob. The psalm moves from accusation to the wicked person's downfall to the psalmist's confident trust.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's central image is botanical: the wicked person is uprooted and torn from the land of the living (v. 7), while the psalmist is a flourishing olive tree in God's house (v. 10). The contrast is between rootedness and rootlessness — the wicked trusted in wealth (a portable asset) while the righteous is planted in God's presence (a fixed location). The olive tree metaphor is carefully chosen: olive trees live for centuries, produce fruit continually, and are nearly impossible to kill.*

Even when cut down, they regenerate from the roots. David is saying his trust in God's chesed has root systems that outlast destruction.

Translation Friction: The superscription's connection to Doeg the Edomite (1 Samuel 22:9-19) is not immediately obvious from the psalm's content, which addresses a more generalized 'mighty one' (gibbor). Doeg informed Saul that the priests at Nob had helped David, and then personally slaughtered 85 priests when Saul's own soldiers refused. The psalm may have originated from that specific event and been generalized for liturgical use. Hebrew verse numbering counts the two-verse superscription as verses 1-2.

Connections: The Doeg episode is narrated in 1 Samuel 21:7 and 22:9-19. The olive tree image connects to Jeremiah 11:16, where Israel is called a 'green olive tree,' and Romans 11:17-24, where Paul develops olive tree theology. The tongue-as-weapon imagery (vv. 4-6) parallels Psalm 57:4 and James 3:5-8. The contrast between trusting in wealth and trusting in God anticipates Jesus's teaching in Luke 12:16-21.

¹For the director of music.

A maskil of David.

²When Doeg the Edomite came and told Saul,
saying to him, "David has come to the house of Ahimelech."

³Why do you boast in evil, mighty one?
The faithful love of God endures all day long.

⁴Your tongue devises destruction,
like a sharpened razor, working deceit.

⁵You love evil more than good,
lying more than speaking what is right.
Selah.

⁶You love every devouring word,
you deceitful tongue.

⁷So God will tear you down forever;
he will snatch you and rip you from your tent,
and uproot you from the land of the living.
Selah.

⁸The righteous will see and stand in awe,
and they will laugh at him:

⁹"Look — the man who would not make God his refuge,
but trusted in his great wealth
and grew strong in his own destruction."

¹⁰But I am like a flourishing olive tree
in the house of God.
I trust in the faithful love of God
forever and always.

¹¹I will thank you forever because you have acted;
I will wait on your name, for it is good,
in the presence of your faithful ones.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. maskil is a psalm classification appearing in 13 psalm superscriptions. Its exact meaning is debated — it may derive from sakal ('to be prudent, to have insight') and indicate a wisdom or instructional psalm. The term suggests this psalm is meant to teach something, not merely express emotion.
2. Doeg was Saul's chief herdsman, an Edomite in Israelite service. His report to Saul about David's visit to the priest Ahimelech at Nob (1 Samuel 22:9-10) led to the massacre of 85 priests. Doeg personally carried out the slaughter when Saul's own soldiers refused. The psalm's focus on the destructive tongue makes sense in this context — Doeg's words killed an entire priestly community.
3. The syntax of verse 3b is compressed and debated. Some read it as a continuation of the question: 'Why do you boast in evil, mighty one — while the faithful love of God endures all day?' Others read it as a separate declaration. Either way, the contrast between human evil and divine chesed is the structural foundation of the psalm.
4. The razor metaphor is more chilling than a sword metaphor would be. A sword is an obvious weapon; a razor is a tool for grooming that has been repurposed for harm. The destruction comes from something that looks innocuous — a report, a piece of information, a truth told at the right moment to the right person.
5. The comparison is not between evil and neutrality but between evil and good — this person actively prefers destruction over benefit, falsehood over truth. The selah at the end signals a musical pause, giving the accusation time to settle.
6. divrei vala ('devouring words') — vala means 'to swallow, to devour, to engulf.' These are words that consume people, that destroy lives when released. The phrase leshon mirmah ('tongue of deceit') becomes an epithet — the person is identified with their organ of destruction.
7. The four verbs create a sense of escalating violence. God does not merely punish; he demolishes, snatches, rips, and uproots. The language mirrors the violence the gibbor inflicted through speech — destruction returns to the destroyer in physical form.
8. The sequence — seeing, fearing, laughing — traces the emotional arc of watching divine justice unfold. The fear (yira'u) is not terror but awe at God's justice. The laughter (yischaku) is not cruelty but the release of tension when the bully finally falls. The righteous have lived under this person's threats; his downfall vindicates their endurance.
9. The quotation marks in the rendering indicate that the righteous are speaking — this is their commentary on the fallen gibbor. The diagnosis is precise: the problem was not weakness but misplaced trust. Strength invested in wealth and destruction rather than in God produces a person who looks powerful but has no roots.
10. Olive trees were planted in temple courtyards and palace grounds throughout the ancient Near East. The image of being 'in the house of God' as an olive tree suggests permanent residence in God's presence — a living thing rooted where God dwells.
10. The phrase olam va-ed ('forever and always') uses two words for permanence: olam ('age, eternity, ancient time') and ed ('perpetuity, continuing'). The doubling emphasizes duration without end.
11. chasidim ('faithful ones') derives from the same root as chesed. These are the people defined by covenant loyalty — they reflect God's character in human community. David's final word places him not in isolation but in the company of the faithful, contrasting with the gibbor's solitary fall.

53

Summary: *A near-duplicate of Psalm 14, this wisdom psalm indicts universal human corruption. The 'fool' (naval) declares there is no God — not as philosophical atheism but as practical denial that God sees or acts. God looks down from heaven and finds no one doing good. The psalm ends with a cry for salvation from Zion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 53 is almost identical to Psalm 14, with two significant differences: Psalm 53 uses Elohim ('God') where Psalm 14 uses YHWH ('the LORD'), and verse 6 diverges significantly from Psalm 14:5-6. The existence of both versions in the Psalter suggests they circulated in different liturgical collections — one associated with the divine name YHWH (Psalms 1-41, the 'Yahwistic Psalter') and one with Elohim (Psalms 42-83, the 'Elohistic Psalter'). The editorial history is itself a witness to how living communities adapted and reused sacred texts for different worship contexts. The psalm's most devastating claim is not that some people are wicked but that 'there is no one who does good — not even one' (v. 4). This is not an observation about a particular group but a verdict on the human condition. Paul quotes this psalm in Romans 3:10-12 to establish universal human sinfulness.*

Translation Friction: The word naval ('fool') in verse 2 does not mean intellectually stupid. In Hebrew wisdom literature, the naval is the person who is morally dense — who acts as if actions have no consequences and God has no interest in human behavior. Nabal, the husband of Abigail (1 Samuel 25), is the narrative illustration: his name means 'fool,' and his behavior confirms it. The psalm's 'atheism' is practical, not theoretical — the fool lives as if God is absent, regardless of what they might formally believe.

Connections: Nearly identical to Psalm 14, which belongs to the first book of the Psalter (Psalms 1-41). Paul quotes from this psalm tradition extensively in Romans 3:10-18. The 'looking down from heaven' motif echoes Genesis 11:5 (God descending to see Babel) and Genesis 18:21 (God going down to investigate Sodom). The cry for salvation from Zion (v. 7) connects to the Zion theology of Psalms 46, 48, and 76.

¹For the director of music. According to Machalath.
A maskil of David.

²The fool says in his heart,
"There is no God."
They are corrupt, they commit vile injustice;
there is no one who does good.

³God looks down from heaven
upon the children of humanity,
to see if there is anyone who has insight,
anyone who seeks God.

⁴All of them have turned away;
together they have become foul.
There is no one who does good —
not even one.

⁵Do the workers of wickedness not know —
those who eat my people as they eat bread?
They do not call on God.

⁶There they are — seized by terror
where there was no terror!
For God scatters the bones of those who besiege you;
you put them to shame,
because God has rejected them.

⁷Who will give salvation to Israel from Zion?
When God restores the fortunes of his people,
Jacob will rejoice,
Israel will be glad!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Machalath may refer to a melody, a musical instrument, or a mode of performance. Some derive it from chalah ('to be sick, to suffer'), suggesting a mournful or lamenting tone. Others connect it to machol ('dance'). The term appears only here and in Psalm 88. Its exact meaning is lost.
2. naval does not describe intellectual capacity but moral orientation. The naval in Proverbs and the wisdom tradition is the person who refuses to align their life with reality as God has structured it. They may be shrewd and successful — but they are fools because they act as if the moral order does not apply to them.

2. Psalm 53:2 differs from Psalm 14:1 in using *hit'ivu avel* ('they commit vile injustice') instead of Psalm 14's *hit'ivu alilah* ('they commit vile deeds'). The substitution of *avel* ('injustice, wrong') for *alilah* ('deeds, practices') sharpens the accusation toward systemic injustice.
3. Psalm 53:3 uses *mi-shamayim* ('from heaven') where Psalm 14:2 uses *mi-shamayim* as well, but Psalm 53 uses *Elohim* throughout where Psalm 14 uses *YHWH*. This *Elohistic* editing is characteristic of Psalms 42-83.
4. Paul's quotation of this passage in Romans 3:10-12 uses it to establish that both Jews and Gentiles stand under the same verdict of universal sinfulness. The psalm's original context may be more limited — describing a particular corrupt generation — but its language is absolute enough to sustain the universal application Paul gives it.
4. *ne'elachu* is unique to this psalm (Psalm 14:3 uses *ne'elachu* as well). The root may be related to *alach*, suggesting souring or going rancid — an image of organic decay applied to moral condition.
5. The bread-eating metaphor for oppression appears also in Micah 3:2-3, where rulers 'eat the flesh of my people' and 'strip their skin from them.' The image emphasizes the routine, unreflective nature of exploitation — it is as ordinary to the oppressor as a daily meal.
6. This verse is the primary textual difference between Psalms 14 and 53. Psalm 14:5-6 reads: 'There they are in great dread, for God is with the generation of the righteous. You would confound the plans of the poor, but the LORD is their refuge.' Psalm 53:6 replaces this with a military scene of divine judgment. The difference suggests the two psalms were adapted for different historical situations.
6. *pizar atsmot* ('scatters bones') is violent imagery — in the ancient Near East, the scattering of bones meant complete destruction with no possibility of burial, the ultimate dishonor.
7. *shevut* (or *shivat*) ammo is debated — it can mean 'captivity of his people' or 'fortunes of his people.' The root *shuv* suggests a restoration or reversal of condition. In exilic and post-exilic contexts it naturally refers to return from Babylon, but the idiom is broader: God will undo what has gone wrong.
7. The double naming — Jacob and Israel — uses both the personal and national names of the patriarch to encompass the full identity of God's people. Rejoicing and gladness are the expected response to divine deliverance throughout the Psalter.

54

Summary: *A compact psalm of lament and trust, attributed to David when the Ziphites betrayed his hiding place to Saul. David cries out to God for salvation by God's name and might, declares that strangers have risen against him, and concludes with confident thanksgiving for deliverance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the shortest lament psalms in the Psalter, yet it contains a complete arc: invocation (vv. 3-4), complaint (v. 5), confession of trust (v. 6), and thanksgiving (vv. 8-9). The psalm's efficiency is itself a theological statement — David does not elaborate, explain, or negotiate. He names the crisis, names God, and moves directly to trust. The opening plea 'save me by your name' (v. 3) is particularly striking: David asks God to deploy his name (*shem*) as a weapon. In the ancient Near East, a name carried the full weight of its bearer's identity, power, and reputation. To be saved 'by God's name' is to be saved by everything God is.*

Translation Friction: *Hebrew versification counts the superscription as verses 1-2, so the prayer begins at verse 3. The Ziphites were residents of Ziph in the hill country of Judah — David's own tribal territory. Their betrayal was especially bitter because they were his kinsmen. The word *zarim* ('strangers, foreigners') in verse 5 is puzzling if the Ziphites were Judahites; some manuscripts read *zedim* ('arrogant ones') instead, which better fits the context of internal betrayal. The WLC preserves *zarim*.*

Connections: *The Ziphite betrayal is narrated in 1 Samuel 23:19-24 and 26:1. David's appeal to God's name (*shem*) connects to the theology of the divine name in Exodus 3:13-15 and the third commandment (Exodus 20:7). The pattern of lament-to-praise mirrors Psalm 13 and Psalm 22. The voluntary thank offering (*nedavah*) in the closing verse connects to the freewill offering legislation in Leviticus 7:16.*

¹For the director of music. With stringed instruments.
A maskil of David.

²When the Ziphites came and said to Saul,
"Is not David hiding among us?"

³God, save me by your name,
and vindicate me by your might.

⁴God, hear my prayer;
give ear to the words of my mouth.

⁵For strangers have risen against me,
and ruthless ones seek my life.
They have not set God before them.
Selah.

⁶Look — God is my helper;
the Lord is among those who sustain my life.

⁷He will return the evil upon my enemies;
in your faithfulness, destroy them.

⁸With a freewill offering I will sacrifice to you;
I will give thanks to your name, LORD, for it is good.

⁹For he has delivered me from every trouble,
and my eye has looked on my enemies in triumph.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. *neginot* ('stringed instruments') indicates accompaniment by lyres, harps, or similar instruments. The combination of instrumental accompaniment with the *maskil* classification suggests a reflective, meditative performance style.
2. The Ziphites were inhabitants of Ziph, a town in the southern hill country of Judah (Joshua 15:55). They informed Saul of David's location twice (1 Samuel 23:19 and 26:1). As fellow Judahites, their betrayal was a kin-against-kin violation — the very people who should have protected David turned him over to his persecutor.
3. *tedineni* ('judge me') in this context means 'render a just verdict on my behalf' — vindication, not condemnation. David is asking God to adjudicate between him and his enemies and to demonstrate by his actions whose side justice is on.
4. The two verbs — *shema* ('hear') and *ha'azinah* ('give ear, listen attentively') — form an intensifying parallel. The first asks God to receive the prayer; the second asks for focused, deliberate attention. *imrei fi* ('words of my mouth') is a formal expression that elevates the speech from casual request to solemn petition.
5. The textual variant *zarim/zedim* matters for historical context but not for theology. Whether the betrayers are 'strangers' (distanced from David despite being kinsmen) or 'arrogant ones' (acting with presumptuous disregard), the result is the same: they act without reference to God.
6. *be-somkhei nafshi* ('among those who sustain my life') uses the participle of *samakh* ('to support, uphold, lean upon'). God is counted among those who prop David up — the same verb used in Psalm 51:14 for God sustaining David with a willing spirit.
7. *hatsmitem* ('destroy them, cut them off') is from *tsamat*, meaning to silence, to put an end to, to annihilate. It is a severe verb — David is not asking for mild correction but for the permanent elimination of the threat. This reflects the life-or-death reality of his situation: the Ziphites' information could lead to his execution.
8. The shift from *Elohim* throughout the psalm to *YHWH* ('LORD') in the final verse is unusual in the Elohistic Psalter (Psalms 42-83). It may preserve the original text before Elohistic editing, or it may be a deliberate use of the covenant name at the psalm's climax — the moment of most intimate address.
9. The final verse speaks in the past tense — *hitsilani* ('he has delivered me') — though the deliverance may not yet have happened. This is the 'prophetic perfect,' a Hebrew convention where future events are described in past tense because their certainty is so complete that they can be spoken of as already accomplished. David's trust in God's faithfulness is so firm that he speaks of rescue as a completed fact.

55

Summary: *A lament psalm driven by the anguish of betrayal by a close friend. David cries out under the weight of enemies, expresses a desperate wish to flee like a dove into the wilderness, and then reveals the deepest wound: the betrayer is not a stranger but an intimate companion. The psalm oscillates between terror and trust, ending with a command to cast one's burden on the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains one of the most psychologically raw passages in the Hebrew Bible (vv. 13-15). David's pain is not primarily from enemies — enemies he can handle — but from a friend, a companion (aluf, meyudda), someone with whom he walked to God's house in fellowship. The betrayal of intimacy is more devastating than the hostility of strangers because it corrupts the place where trust lived. The dove-flight fantasy (vv. 7-9) is not escapism but an honest expression of the human wish, under unbearable pressure, to simply disappear. David wants wings — not to fight, not to conquer, but to fly away and rest. The Hebrew Bible rarely grants its heroes the luxury of pretending they are unbreakable.*

Translation Friction: *The historical setting is uncertain. The description of a friend's betrayal has led to associations with Ahithophel, David's counselor who defected to Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 15:12, 31). This identification is plausible but not certain — the psalm's language is general enough to apply to any intimate betrayal. The text of verse 16 (Hebrew) is difficult; the shift between singular and plural enemies, and between second and third person address, suggests either a complex rhetorical strategy or textual disturbance.*

Connections: *The Ahithophel connection links to 2 Samuel 15-17 and Jesus's betrayal by Judas (the early church read this psalm christologically, as in Acts 1:16-20). The dove imagery connects to Song of Songs 2:14 and Hosea 7:11. The command to 'cast your burden on the LORD' (v. 23) is quoted in 1 Peter 5:7. The description of the friend's smooth speech hiding violence (v. 22) echoes Proverbs 26:23-26.*

¹For the director of music. With stringed instruments.
A maskil of David.

²Give ear to my prayer, God,
and do not hide yourself from my plea.

³Pay attention to me and answer me!
I am restless in my anguish;
I groan aloud.

⁴Because of the voice of the enemy,
because of the pressure of the wicked —
for they heap trouble upon me
and in anger they bear a grudge against me.

⁵My heart writhes within me,
and the terrors of death have fallen upon me.

⁶Fear and trembling come over me,
and shuddering covers me.

⁷And I said, "Who will give me wings like a dove?
I would fly away and find rest.

⁸I would flee far away;
I would lodge in the wilderness.
Selah.

⁹I would hurry to my shelter
from the raging wind and storm."

¹⁰Confuse their speech, Lord! Divide their tongues!
For I have seen violence and conflict in the city.

¹¹Day and night they circle its walls;
trouble and misery are within it.

¹²Destruction is within it;
oppression and deceit never leave its public square.

¹³For it is not an enemy who taunts me —
that I could bear.
It is not a foe who rises against me —
from that one I could hide.

¹⁴But it was you — a man my equal,
my companion, my close friend.

¹⁵Together we shared sweet counsel;
we walked in the house of God among the throng.

¹⁶Let death come upon them suddenly;
let them go down to Sheol alive,
for evil is in their dwelling and within them.

¹⁷As for me, I call upon God,
and the LORD will save me.

¹⁸Evening and morning and noon
I cry out in anguish,
and he hears my voice.

¹⁹He redeems my life in peace
from the battle waged against me,
for many are on my side.

²⁰God will hear and humble them —
he who sits enthroned from of old.
Selah.
For they have no fear of change;
they do not fear God.

²¹He stretched out his hands against those at peace with him;
he violated his covenant.

²²His speech was smooth as butter,
but war was in his heart.
His words were softer than oil,
yet they were drawn swords.

²³Cast your burden on the LORD,
and he will sustain you.
He will never allow
the righteous to be shaken.

²⁴But you, God, will bring them down
to the pit of destruction.
Men of blood and deceit
will not live out half their days.
But I — I will trust in you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The same superscription as Psalm 54 — stringed instruments accompanying a wisdom psalm. The musical instruction suggests a reflective, measured performance, which contrasts sharply with the emotional turbulence of the psalm's content.
2. The verb *titallam* ('hide yourself') is reflexive — David fears that God is deliberately concealing himself, choosing not to be found. The plea is not just 'hear me' but 'stop hiding from me.' The word *techinah* ('plea, supplication') suggests an urgent, desperate request — not a routine prayer but a cry from someone with nowhere else to turn.
3. The accumulation of prayer-verbs (give ear, pay attention, answer) reveals escalating desperation. Each verb is more demanding than the last. David is not maintaining decorum in prayer — he is a man at the end of his capacity.
4. The enemies' weapon is their voice (*qol oyev*) — words again, as in Psalm 52. The word *aqat* ('pressure, oppression') suggests squeezing, constriction, being pressed into a tighter and tighter space. *yamitu* ('they heap, they cause to slide down') — trouble is piled on top of David. And *yistemuni* ('they bear a grudge') from *satam*, meaning to harbor lasting hostility — this is not a momentary conflict but sustained, malicious hatred.
5. *yachil* ('writhes, trembles, convulses') is the verb used for labor pains — David's heart is in the grip of contractions, a pain that comes in waves and cannot be controlled. *eimot mavet* ('terrors of death') — the dread is not abstract but specific: David genuinely fears for his life.
6. Three words for terror in sequence: *yir'ah* ('fear'), *ra'ad* ('trembling'), and *pallatsut* ('shuddering, horror'). The escalation is physical: from internal fear to bodily trembling to full-body horror that covers (*tekasseni*) him like a garment. David is wearing his terror.
7. *mi yitten li* ('who will give me') is the standard Hebrew idiom for 'if only' — expressing a wish the speaker knows is impossible. David knows he cannot become a dove. The fantasy is therapeutic, not delusional.
8. The *midbar* ('wilderness') is not merely uninhabited space — in the Hebrew Bible it is the place of encounter with God (Sinai), of testing (Israel's wandering), and of refuge (David's own experience in the Judean wilderness). David wants to return to the wilderness where things were simpler, harder, but honest.
9. The storm metaphor (*ruach so'ah, sa'ar*) captures the chaos of the political and personal crisis. The *miflaht* ('shelter, escape, refuge') is the place where the storm cannot reach. David closes his dove-fantasy with the image of finding cover from a tempest — the crisis is weather he cannot control, and he needs a roof.
10. The Babel allusion is deliberate: just as God disrupted human conspiracy at Babel by dividing language, David asks God to disrupt the conspiracy against him by making his enemies unable to communicate effectively.
11. The enemies patrol the city walls day and night — whether as besiegers or as corrupt authorities within the city. *aven ve-amal* ('trouble and misery') are personified as resident forces within the city. The safe space has been corrupted from the inside.
12. The *rechov* ('public square, broad place') was the center of civic life — where commerce, justice, and community gathering took place. When *tokh u-mirmah* ('oppression and deceit') permanently occupy the public square, the entire civic order has collapsed.
13. The conditional structure ('if it were an enemy... I could bear it') is a rhetorical setup for the devastating revelation in the next verses. David is saying: I am not undone by hostility from the expected direction. I am undone by hostility from where I least expected it.
14. If the Ahithophel identification is correct, the description fits precisely. Ahithophel was David's most trusted counselor (2 Samuel 16:23 says his counsel was 'as if one inquired of the word of God'). His defection to Absalom was the most personally devastating event of the entire rebellion.

14. meyuḏḏa'i ('my intimate') from yada — the Hebrew verb for the deepest kind of knowing, used for sexual intimacy, for God's knowledge of Israel, and for the closest human relationships. This person knew David in a way that made the betrayal maximally destructive.
15. sod ('counsel, secret, intimate circle') is the word used for God's own divine council in Job 15:8 and Psalm 89:7. When David says he shared sod with this friend, he is describing the highest level of human intimacy — the exchange of thoughts that are shared with no one else.
16. The Korah allusion (going down to Sheol alive) is the most severe imprecation available in the Hebrew idiom. It invokes the one occasion in the Torah where the earth itself punished rebellion by swallowing the rebels whole. David sees the betrayal of friendship as equivalent to the rebellion against divinely appointed leadership.
17. The emphatic ani ('as for me') sets David apart from the corrupt city and the treacherous friend. Whatever they do, he will call on God. The shift from Elohim to YHWH mirrors Psalm 54:8 — the covenant name appears at the moment of deepest trust.
18. The three times — evening, morning, noon — may reflect a practice of praying three times daily (Daniel 6:10). The sequence begins with evening because the Hebrew day begins at sunset. The present tense 'he hears' (vayyishma) expresses confidence: God's hearing is not future hope but present reality.
19. The verb padah is covenantal — it is used for God's redemption of Israel from Egypt (Deuteronomy 7:8) and for the redemption of the firstborn (Exodus 13:13). David sees his personal rescue as participating in the same pattern of divine redemption.
20. chalifot ('changes, alternations') may refer to changes of fortune, changes of behavior, or the absence of divine discipline. The point is consistent: these people have lived without consequences, and consequence-free existence breeds contempt for God.
21. chillel berito ('profaned his covenant') uses the same verb applied to desecrating the Sabbath (Exodus 31:14) or God's name (Leviticus 22:32). The friendship-covenant is treated with the same reverence as religious covenants — violating it is not just rude but sacrilegious.
22. This verse is the classic biblical description of the smooth-talking betrayer. Proverbs 26:23-28 develops the same theme: 'Smooth lips with an evil heart are like glaze on an earthen pot.' The drawn-swords image suggests premeditation — these words were weapons prepared in advance.
23. 1 Peter 5:7 directly echoes this verse: 'Cast all your anxiety on him because he cares for you.' Peter's Greek (epiripsantes) mirrors the forceful Hebrew hashlek — this is not polite delegation but desperate unloading.
23. yehavkha is a hapax legomenon — it appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. Its meaning is derived from context and cognate languages. The rarity of the word adds to its weight: this is not a standard theological term but a unique expression for the specific thing that weighs on you.
24. The contrast between 'half their days' and David's trust creates a temporal theology: the wicked's time is cut short; the trusting one's relationship with God has no expiration. The psalm does not promise that the righteous will live long — it promises that trust in God transcends the question of duration.

56

Summary: *A psalm of trust amid pursuit, attributed to David when the Philistines seized him in Gath. David confesses his fear, declares his trust in God's word, and expresses confidence that God keeps a record of his tears. The psalm features a refrain — 'In God I trust; I will not be afraid. What can flesh do to me?' — that punctuates the movement from terror to faith.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 9 (Hebrew) contains one of the most intimate images of God in the entire Bible: 'Put my tears in your bottle; are they not in your record?' David imagines God carefully collecting each tear — not wiping them away, not stopping them, but preserving them as evidence that matters. The no'd ('bottle, wineskin') was a traveler's essential possession; David pictures God as carrying David's grief with him. The metaphor says: your suffering is not wasted, not forgotten, not invisible. God keeps receipts. This is not stoic theology — it is a God who is moved by human pain and stores it as something precious.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription references David's capture by the Philistines in Gath (1 Samuel 21:10-15), where David feigned madness to escape. But Psalm 34's superscription covers the same event using the name 'Abimelech' instead of 'Achish.' These may reflect different traditions about the same event, or the name 'Abimelech' in Psalm 34 may be a dynastic title rather than a personal name. The phrase yonat elem rechoqim in the superscription (v. 1) is obscure — possibly a melody name meaning 'the silent dove of distant places' or 'the dove of the distant terebinths.'*

Connections: The Gath episode is in 1 Samuel 21:10-15. The refrain 'what can flesh do to me?' is quoted in Hebrews 13:6. The tear-bottle image connects to Revelation 21:4 ('God will wipe every tear from their eyes'). David's vow-language in the closing verses connects to the thank-offering tradition of Leviticus 7 and Psalm 50:14.

¹For the director of music. According to "The Silent Dove of Distant Places."
A miktam of David, when the Philistines seized him in Gath.

²Be gracious to me, God, for people trample me;
all day long an attacker presses me.

³My enemies trample me all day long,
for many are fighting against me, O Most High.

⁴On the day I am afraid,
I will trust in you.

⁵In God — I praise his word.
In God I trust; I will not be afraid.
What can flesh do to me?

⁶All day long they twist my words;
all their thoughts are against me for evil.

⁷They band together, they lurk,
they watch my steps,
as they wait for my life.

⁸For their wickedness — will they escape?
In anger, God, bring down the peoples!

⁹You have counted my wanderings.
Put my tears in your bottle —
are they not in your record?

¹⁰Then my enemies will turn back
on the day I call.
This I know: God is for me.

¹¹In God — I praise his word.
In the LORD — I praise his word.

¹²In God I trust; I will not be afraid.
What can a mere human do to me?

¹³Upon me, God, are my vows to you;
I will fulfill thank offerings to you.

¹⁴For you have delivered my life from death,
my feet from stumbling,
so that I may walk before God
in the light of the living.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. yonat elem rechoqim is one of the most mysterious phrases in the psalm superscriptions. yonah ('dove') connects to David's dove-wish in Psalm 55:7; elem ('silence, muteness') may describe the dove or David's own silenced state; rechoqim ('distant ones, far-off places') captures David's situation as a fugitive far from home. If this is a melody name, it evokes the theme of vulnerable exile. miktam appears in six psalm titles (Psalms 16, 56-60) and its meaning is uncertain — possibly from katam ('to cover, to conceal') suggesting a hidden or precious song, or from ketem ('gold'), suggesting something golden or valuable.
2. she'afani ('trample me, crush me, pant after me') can mean either to snap at (like a beast) or to trample underfoot. enosh ('mortal, human being') is used rather than ish ('man'), emphasizing the frailty of the oppressor — merely human. The irony: a mortal is trampling another mortal, as if one had authority over the other.
3. The repetition of kol ha-yom ('all day long') from verse 2 emphasizes the relentless nature of the persecution. marom ('Most High, the height') — David addresses God by a title that places God above all the enemies who surround him below. The contrast is spatial: David is pressed on the ground level, but God is above it all.
4. The brevity of the Hebrew is striking — six words in Hebrew, no embellishment, no theological argument. The simplicity itself is the theology: when afraid, trust. The relationship between fear and trust is not sequential (first stop being afraid, then trust) but simultaneous (afraid and trusting at the same time).
5. The refrain appears here (v. 5) and again in verses 11-12, framing the psalm's center. Hebrews 13:6 echoes this refrain: 'The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid. What can anyone do to me?' The move from 'flesh' (basar) to 'anyone' (anthropos) in the Greek translation preserves the point: human opposition is finite.
6. ye'atsevu devarai ('they twist/distort my words') — the verb atsav can mean 'to grieve, to hurt, to twist, to shape.' David's words are being reshaped by his enemies — taken out of context, reinterpreted, weaponized. The information war precedes the physical one.
7. Three verbs of surveillance: yaguru ('they band together, they attack'), yitsponu ('they hide, they lurk'), and yishmoru ('they watch, they keep guard over'). The enemies are organized, hidden, and patient. aqevai ('my steps, my heels') — they track David's movements. The hunting imagery is precise: a coordinated team stalking prey.
8. The rhetorical question expects a negative answer: no, they will not escape on account of (al) their wickedness. David then asks God to act: be-af ('in anger') hored ('bring down, cast down') ammim ('peoples, nations'). The plural 'peoples' may refer to the Philistines or to all hostile nations. God's anger is not arbitrary rage but the appropriate response of justice to sustained wickedness.
9. The wordplay between nodi ('my wandering') and no'dekha ('your bottle/skin') connects David's homeless journeying with God's careful preservation. The wandering produces tears; the tears are stored. There is a poetic justice: what exile costs David, God saves.
9. sifrathekha ('your record, your account') is from the same root as sefer ('book, scroll'). God is depicted as keeping written records — the same image appears in Malachi 3:16 ('a scroll of remembrance') and Daniel 7:10 ('the books were opened').
10. zeh yada'ti ('this I know') is emphatic — it is not hope or wish but settled knowledge. The basis of the knowledge is not David's worthiness but God's character. God is 'for' the vulnerable one who trusts, not 'for' the powerful one who oppresses.
11. The refrain now doubles the divine name: Elohim and YHWH. The expansion from one name to two intensifies the praise — David invokes God both as the universal Creator (Elohim) and as the covenant LORD (YHWH). Both identities are praised for the same thing: his davar ('word').
12. The refrain repeats from verse 5 with one change: basar ('flesh') is replaced by adam ('human being, mortal'). The substitution reinforces the point from a different angle — basar emphasizes physical frailty; adam emphasizes creaturely status. Whether viewed as fragile flesh or as a creature under God, the enemy is no match for the God David trusts.
13. nedarekha ('your vows' or 'my vows to you') — David acknowledges that he has made promises to God during his distress and now commits to fulfilling them. todot ('thank offerings, praises') — from the root yadah ('to give thanks, to confess'). The todah is both a sacrifice and a declaration of gratitude.
14. or ha-chayyim ('the light of the living') contrasts with the darkness of Sheol and death that threatened throughout the psalm. Light in Hebrew poetry is nearly synonymous with life, blessing, and God's presence (Psalm 36:9: 'In your light we see light'). David's rescue is not just from death but into a quality of life defined by God's luminous presence.

57

Summary: *A psalm of refuge and praise, attributed to David when he fled from Saul into a cave. David takes shelter under God's wings, declares his trust amid enemies whose teeth are spears and whose tongues are sharp swords, and erupts into praise that aims to wake the dawn. The psalm features the refrain 'Be exalted above the heavens, God; let your glory be over all the earth.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's most striking moment is verse 9 (Hebrew): 'Wake up, my glory! Wake up, harp and lyre! I will wake the dawn.' David does not wait for the dawn to come and bring hope — he commands his instruments to rouse the dawn itself. This is the audacity of worship in darkness: the singer does not wait for conditions to improve before praising. The praise itself becomes the agent that summons the new day. The cave setting (whether Adullam, 1 Samuel 22:1, or En-gedi, 1 Samuel 24:3) adds physical texture — David is literally underground, in darkness, hiding, and from that place he declares that God's faithfulness reaches the skies (v. 11).*

Translation Friction: *The superscription says al tashchet ('do not destroy'), which may be a melody name or a liturgical instruction. Some connect it to David's refusal to destroy Saul in the cave at En-gedi (1 Samuel 24:4-7) or in the Wilderness of Ziph (1 Samuel 26:9). The second half of this psalm (vv. 8-12) reappears almost identically as Psalm 108:2-6, suggesting that psalm compositions could be modular — sections recombined for different liturgical purposes.*

Connections: *The cave setting connects to 1 Samuel 22:1 (cave of Adullam) or 24:1-7 (cave at En-gedi). The 'wings' refuge image (v. 2) echoes Ruth 2:12 and Psalm 36:7. The teeth-as-spears imagery (v. 5) parallels Psalm 52:4 and Proverbs 30:14. Psalm 108:2-6 reuses verses 8-12. The faithfulness-to-the-skies language (v. 11) appears also in Psalm 36:5 and 89:2.*

¹For the director of music. "Do Not Destroy."

A miktam of David, when he fled from Saul into the cave.

²Be gracious to me, God — be gracious to me,
for in you my soul takes refuge.
In the shadow of your wings I will take shelter
until the storms of destruction pass.

³I call out to God Most High,
to God who fulfills his purpose for me.

⁴He will send from heaven and save me;
he rebukes the one who tramples me.
Selah.
God will send his faithful love and his truth.

⁵My soul lies down among lions,
among people who are ablaze —
whose teeth are spears and arrows,
whose tongue is a sharpened sword.

⁶Be exalted above the heavens, God!
Let your glory be over all the earth!

⁷They set a net for my steps;
my soul was bowed low.

They dug a pit before me —
they fell into it themselves!
Selah.

⁸My heart is steady, God;
my heart is steady.
I will sing — I will make music!

⁹Wake up, my glory!
Wake up, harp and lyre!
I will wake the dawn.

¹⁰I will give thanks to you among the peoples, Lord;
I will make music to you among the nations.

¹¹For your faithful love is great — reaching to the heavens,
and your truth to the skies.

¹²Be exalted above the heavens, God!
Let your glory be over all the earth!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. al tashchet ('do not destroy') appears in four psalm superscriptions (57, 58, 59, 75). Whether this is a melody title, a liturgical instruction, or a thematic label is uncertain. If connected to the cave narrative, it may recall David's command to his men not to destroy Saul when they had the chance (1 Samuel 24:6; 26:9). The miktam designation links this psalm to the cluster of Psalms 56-60.
2. The cave provides a physical analog for the theological image: David is literally hiding in a dark enclosed space while enemies search for him outside. The 'wings' transform the cave from a hole in the ground to the shelter of God's presence.
2. havvot ('destructions') is the same word used in Psalm 52:4 for what the wicked tongue devises. David is sheltering from the same destructive forces that the previous psalms have been naming.
3. gomer alai ('who completes/finishes concerning me') — God is not a partial actor but one who carries things to completion. The verb gamar means 'to finish, to complete, to bring to an end.' Whatever God has started in David's life, he will see it through. This anticipates Paul's confidence in Philippians 1:6.
4. The pairing of chesed ve-emet ('faithful love and truth') is one of the most common divine attribute pairs in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 24:27, Psalm 25:10, 85:10, 89:14). The two qualities are inseparable: love without truth is sentimentality; truth without love is brutality. God's character holds both in perfect union.
5. The lion image transforms David's cave setting: he is not merely hiding in a cave — he is lying down in a lions' den. The cave that should be refuge has become a trap with predators. The tongue-as-sword image continues the thread from Psalms 52 and 55: speech is the deadliest weapon in these psalms.
6. This refrain appears again at verse 12, framing the psalm's second half. It reappears in Psalm 108:6. The prayer for God's glory over 'all the earth' expands the psalm's scope from personal rescue to cosmic reality — David's situation is a small piece of a much larger story.
7. The selah after the reversal creates a pause for the listener to absorb the justice: they dug a pit, and they fell into it. The simplicity of the reversal is its power. No elaborate mechanism is needed — evil defeats itself when God is at work.
8. nakhon from kun ('to establish, to make firm') is the opposite of mot ('to totter, to shake'). David's heart has stopped shaking. This does not mean his circumstances have changed — he is still in the cave, still hunted. But his inner condition has been established by trust.
9. The phrase a'irah shachar ('I will wake the dawn') has been one of the most beloved lines in the Psalter across traditions. It reverses the normal relationship between the singer and the morning: usually dawn wakes the sleeper. Here the worshiper wakes the dawn. Praise creates the conditions for a new day.
10. The scope expands from David alone in a cave to thanksgiving ba-ammim ('among the peoples') and ba-le'ummim ('among the nations'). David's personal praise has universal ambition — what God has done for one fugitive in a cave deserves to be proclaimed to every nation. This verse is quoted in Romans 15:9 as evidence that God's salvation was always intended to reach the Gentiles.

11. The pairing of chesed and emet with heavens and clouds creates a visual image: God's faithful love fills the entire vertical space between earth and the top of the sky. There is nowhere you can be — even in a cave — that God's love has not already reached.
12. The refrain returns unchanged, closing the psalm with the same cosmic vision that punctuated its center. The repetition is liturgical — the congregation would have known this line and joined in. The cave is forgotten; the earth is covered in glory.

58

Summary: *A psalm that indicts corrupt rulers who fail to administer justice, compares them to venomous snakes deaf to the charmer, and calls on God to shatter their power through a series of vivid destruction-images. The psalm concludes with the righteous celebrating when divine justice is vindicated.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is among the most violent in the Psalter, and that violence is not random — it is a cry against systemic injustice from those who have no access to earthly courts of appeal. The six destruction-images in verses 7-10 (broken teeth, vanishing water, blunted arrows, dissolving snails, stillborn children, thorns swept by storm) are not sadistic fantasy but the accumulated fury of people whose only recourse is God. The deaf-adder image (vv. 5-6) is psychologically precise: the corrupt judge is not ignorant of justice — he has stopped his ears against it, like a snake that deliberately refuses to hear the charmer. The corruption is willful, not accidental.*

Translation Friction: *The opening word elem (v. 2) is notoriously difficult. It could mean 'silence' (are you truly silent when justice is needed?), 'gods' (elim, addressing divine beings of Psalm 82), or 'rulers' (a metonymic use). The WLC reads elem, which most naturally yields 'silence' or 'in silence.' We follow the reading that addresses human rulers who maintain guilty silence when justice demands speech. Verse 11 (Hebrew), where the righteous 'wash their feet in the blood of the wicked,' has troubled readers throughout history. It is imprecatory language that imagines total vindication — the image is victory, not cruelty.*

Connections: *The corrupt-judge theme connects to Psalm 82, where God judges the 'gods' (rulers) who pervert justice. The deaf-snake imagery has parallels in Egyptian and Mesopotamian wisdom literature about snake-charming. The call for God to break teeth (v. 7) echoes Psalm 3:7. The righteous-rejoicing conclusion connects to the Song of Moses (Exodus 15) and the celebration after Haman's fall (Esther 8). Paul's use of 'snake venom under their lips' in Romans 3:13 draws from this psalm tradition.*

¹For the director of music. "Do Not Destroy."

A miktam of David.

²Do you rulers truly speak what is right?

Do you judge the children of humanity with equity?

³No — in your hearts you devise injustice;

on earth your hands weigh out violence.

⁴The wicked go astray from the womb;

they wander off from birth, speaking lies.

⁵Their venom is like the venom of a serpent,

like a deaf cobra that stops its ear,

⁶that will not hear the voice of charmers,

no matter how skillful the spellbinder.

⁷God, smash their teeth in their mouths!

Tear out the fangs of the young lions, LORD!

⁸Let them vanish like water that flows away;
when they draw the bow, let their arrows be blunted.

⁹Like a snail that dissolves as it goes,
like a woman's stillborn child that never sees the sun.

¹⁰Before your pots feel the heat of thorns,
whether green or ablaze — he will sweep them away!

¹¹The righteous will rejoice when they see vindication;
they will wash their feet in the blood of the wicked.

¹²And people will say,
"Yes — there is fruit for the righteous!
Yes — there is a God who judges on earth!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *al tashchet* ('do not destroy') designation continues from Psalm 57, linking these psalms in a thematic cluster. The *miktam* label connects all six psalms in this group (56-60).
2. The pairing of *tsedek* ('righteousness') and *meisharim* ('equity, uprightness') describes the two essential qualities of a just ruler: declaring what is right (*tsedek*) and applying it fairly to all (*meisharim*). These rulers have failed at both.
3. The inversion of justice-language for violence is the psalm's key rhetorical strategy. These rulers have not abandoned the forms of justice — they still use scales (*tefallesun*) — but they have filled the scales with *chamas* ('violence') instead of *mishpat* ('justice'). The system looks functional from the outside; the contents have been switched.
4. The language parallels Psalm 51:7 (sinful from conception) but with a different purpose. David in Psalm 51 confessed his own condition in humility; here the psalmist describes the wicked's condition in accusation. *me-rechem* ('from the womb') and *mi-beten* ('from the belly/birth') indicate that their crookedness is not a late development but a lifelong orientation. *dovrei khazav* ('speakers of lies') — their defining characteristic from the start is falsehood.
5. The deaf-cobra image is not about literal snake biology (snakes lack external ears and 'hear' through ground vibrations). It draws on the cultural practice of snake-charming, well attested in Egypt and Mesopotamia. The point is behavioral: this snake has chosen not to respond. The rulers have chosen not to hear.
6. *chover chavarim* ('binder of spells') uses vocabulary from the realm of incantation and magical practice. The psalm does not endorse magic — it uses the image to make a point about the rulers' impenetrability. Even techniques designed to control the most dangerous creatures fail against willful moral deafness.
7. The teeth-breaking image appears also in Psalm 3:7 ('you strike all my enemies on the jaw; you break the teeth of the wicked'). Teeth represent power — the power to consume, to destroy, to take. Breaking teeth is removing power from those who abuse it.
8. The first of six rapid destruction-images. Water that flows away — poured on desert ground, it simply disappears. The wicked should become as irrecoverable as spilled water. Blunted arrows (*yitmolu*, 'cut off, blunted') — even when they take hostile action (drawing the bow), their weapons fail.
9. Two more images: the *shablul* ('snail, slug') that *temes yahalokh* ('melts as it moves') — the ancient observation that a snail's trail looks like it is dissolving as it travels, leaving less of itself with every step. And the *nefel eshet* ('miscarriage, stillborn of a woman') that never sees the sun — a life that ends before it begins, that never enters the world of light and action. The stillborn image is harsh but not gratuitous: it describes a threat that never materializes, a potential for harm that is terminated before it can be realized.
10. This verse is among the most textually difficult in the Psalter. The images pile up faster than grammar can organize them. The essential point survives the difficulty: God's intervention is faster than evil's timetable. The storm arrives before the fire finishes its work.
11. *naqam* ('vindication, vengeance') in Hebrew is not personal revenge but the restoration of violated justice. When God exercises *naqam*, he is setting right what was wrong. The emotion of the righteous is not bloodlust but the deep satisfaction of seeing justice finally done after prolonged injustice.
12. The plural *shofetim* ('judging,' plural participle) with the singular *Elohim* is a known Hebrew construction where a plural form is used with God to express the fullness or intensity of the action. God judges with the combined force of all judges.

12. The psalm began by questioning whether rulers speak righteousness (v. 2); it ends by affirming that God judges righteously (v. 12). The human failure is answered by the divine success.

59

Summary: *A psalm of urgent deliverance, attributed to David when Saul sent men to watch his house in order to kill him.*

David pleads for rescue from enemies who prowl like dogs around the city at evening, snarling and howling. Two refrains structure the psalm: 'You, LORD, laugh at them' and 'They return at evening, snarling like dogs, prowling the city.' The psalm moves from desperate plea to triumphant confidence in God as fortress and faithful love.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The dog-imagery is the psalm's signature feature (vv. 7, 15). The enemies are not described as warriors or lions but as feral dogs — pack animals that scavenge at the margins of the city after dark. In the ancient Near East, dogs were not pets but despised scavengers associated with filth, disease, and shamelessness. To compare the king's soldiers to prowling dogs is to strip them of all dignity. They serve a paranoid king and do his dirty work at night, like animals foraging in garbage. The double use of this image (vv. 7 and 15) creates a structural refrain that bookends the psalm's center, but with a crucial shift: in verse 7 the dogs are threatening; by verse 15 they are merely pathetic, whimpering and unfed.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription refers to 1 Samuel 19:11, where Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch it overnight and kill him in the morning. Michal, David's wife, helped him escape through a window. The psalm's reference to 'all the nations' (v. 6, 9) seems broader than a domestic assassination attempt, leading some scholars to see the psalm as adapting a personal crisis into a national liturgy. The shift between singular and plural enemies, and between personal and international scope, may reflect this liturgical expansion.*

Connections: *The historical setting is 1 Samuel 19:11-17, where Michal lowers David through a window and deceives Saul's men with a household idol in the bed. The dog-pack imagery connects to 1 Kings 14:11, 16:4, and 21:23-24, where dogs eating the dead is the mark of the most dishonorable death. The fortress-language (misgav, 'refuge, high place') connects to Psalm 18:2 and 2 Samuel 22:3. The 'God of my faithful love' (Elohei chasdi) in verse 18 is a remarkable designation found nowhere else in the Psalter.*

¹For the director of music. "Do Not Destroy."

A miktam of David, when Saul sent men
to watch the house in order to kill him.

²Deliver me from my enemies, my God;
set me safely on high, away from those who rise against me.

³Deliver me from workers of wickedness,
and save me from men of blood.

⁴For look — they lie in ambush for my life;
fierce men gather against me.
Not for my rebellion, not for my sin, LORD!

⁵Without guilt on my part they rush and take position.
Wake up to meet me — and see!

⁶And you — LORD God of Armies,
God of Israel —
rouse yourself to punish all the nations!
Show no mercy to any treacherous evildoer.

Selah.

⁷They return at evening,
snarling like dogs,
prowling around the city.

⁸Look what pours from their mouths —
swords on their lips!
For they say, "Who is listening?"

⁹But you, LORD — you laugh at them;
you scoff at all the nations.

¹⁰My strength — I watch for you,
for God is my fortress.

¹¹My God of faithful love will come to meet me;
God will let me look in triumph on my enemies.

¹²Do not kill them, or my people will forget.
Scatter them by your power and bring them low,
Lord, our shield.

¹³The sin of their mouths, the words of their lips —
let them be caught in their pride!
For the cursing and lies they speak,

¹⁴Consume them in wrath —
consume them until they are no more!
Let them know that God rules in Jacob,
to the ends of the earth.
Selah.

¹⁵They return at evening,
snarling like dogs,
prowling around the city.

¹⁶They wander about for food;
if they are not satisfied, they howl through the night.

¹⁷But I will sing of your strength;
I will shout for joy at morning of your faithful love.
For you have been my fortress,
a refuge in the day of my distress.

¹⁸My strength — to you I will sing,
for God is my fortress,
my God of faithful love.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The third consecutive al tashchet ('do not destroy') psalm. The superscription specifies the crisis: Saul dispatched agents to surveil David's house overnight, planning to execute him at dawn (1 Samuel 19:11). The verb shamar ('to watch, to guard') — normally a positive word (God as guardian) — is here inverted: the watchers are predators, not protectors.
2. tesaggeveni ('set me on high, make me inaccessibly high') from sagav — to be high, to be exalted beyond reach. David asks not just for rescue but for elevation — to be placed somewhere his enemies cannot reach. The misgav ('high refuge') language that will define this psalm begins here.
3. po'alei aven ('workers of wickedness') — the same phrase from Psalm 53:5. anshei damim ('men of blood') — those whose hands are stained with bloodshed, the same phrase from Psalm 55:24. The vocabulary recycling across this psalm cluster creates a coherent picture of the enemies David faces.
4. David declares his innocence using two of the three sin-words from Psalm 51: pasha ('rebellion') and chattat ('sin'). He is not claiming perfection — he is asserting that his enemies' hostility has no just cause. Their attack is not punishment for wrongdoing but unprovoked aggression against an innocent man. The protest lo pish'i ve-lo chattati ('not my rebellion and not my sin') is a legal defense before the divine judge.
5. The enemies yerutsun ('run, rush') and yikkonanu ('prepare themselves, take position') — military language for taking battle stations. And they do this beli avon ('without guilt') — David has given them no cause. The imperative urah ('wake up!') is bold — David speaks to God as though God is sleeping through the crisis. This is not irreverence but desperation.
6. The expansion to 'all the nations' may reflect liturgical adaptation — what began as David's personal crisis became a prayer for God's cosmic justice. Alternatively, David may be placing his personal enemies within the larger framework of all who oppose God's purposes.
7. The evening timing connects to the superscription — Saul's men watched David's house overnight (1 Samuel 19:11). The dogs that prowl at dusk are these same watchers, waiting for dawn to make their kill. Michal's intervention (lowering David through the window) happened during the night these dogs were circling.
8. yabbiun ('they pour out, they gush, they belch') — their mouths overflow with violent speech. charavot be-siftotehem ('swords on their lips') — the sword-tongue image from Psalm 57:5 continues. Their confidence is grounded in the assumption mi shomea ('who is listening?') — practical atheism again (cf. Psalm 53:2). They believe no one — not God, not a higher authority — hears or cares what they say.
9. The divine laughter motif (Psalms 2:4, 37:13, 59:9) is one of the most striking anthropomorphisms in the Hebrew Bible. It expresses not emotional amusement but the absolute sovereignty of God over all human scheming. The enemies' self-importance is comic when viewed from God's throne.
10. The Qere reading is uzzu ('my strength') rather than uzzo ('his strength'). David addresses God as his strength and watches (eshmorah) for him — the same verb (shamar, 'to watch') that described the enemies watching his house in the superscription. They watch to kill; David watches for God. misgabbi ('my fortress, my high refuge') — the key word of the psalm, repeated in verses 10, 17, and 18.
11. Elohei chasdi is a hapax-level construction — the possessive 'my faithful love' applied to God creates a unique intimacy. God is not just characterized by chesed in general but is bound to David by a specific, personal, covenantal faithful love.
12. This verse contains sophisticated theological reasoning about the purpose of divine judgment. Total destruction erases evidence; prolonged diminishment provides ongoing testimony. David wants his people to see the consequences play out over time so that the lesson becomes unforgettable.
13. The mouth-sin catalogue continues: chattat pimo ('the sin of their mouths'), devar sefateimo ('the word of their lips'), ge'onam ('their pride'), alah ('cursing, oath-breaking'), and kachash ('lies, denial'). The trap-vocabulary from Psalm 57:7 recurs: yillakhedu ('let them be caught') — their own words will become the net that ensnares them.
14. The doubled kalleh ('consume, finish off') intensifies the plea. But the purpose is not destruction for its own sake — it is revelation: ve-yed'u ('and let them know'). The goal of judgment is knowledge: ki Elohim moshel be-Ya'aqov ('that God rules in Jacob'). The scope: le-afsei ha-arets ('to the ends of the earth'). God's rule over Jacob (Israel) has universal implications — what he does for his covenant people declares his sovereignty everywhere.
15. The structural repetition of the refrain (vv. 7 and 15) is a deliberate literary technique. The listener hears the same words but understands them differently because of everything that has happened between the two occurrences. This is how trust transforms perception without changing circumstances.
16. The dogs are now scavengers — yenu'u le-ekhol ('they wander for food'), searching for scraps. The mighty soldiers have become hungry strays. im lo yisbe'u vayyalinu ('if they are not satisfied, they spend the night howling') — unsatisfied dogs whimpering in the dark. The transformation from threatening to pathetic is complete.
17. The morning-singing in contrast to evening-prowling creates the psalm's final structural pair: darkness/light, dogs/singer, snarling/praise. David has survived the night. The dawn that Psalm 57:9 promised to wake is here.
18. The inclusio between verses 10 and 18 (both using uzzu, 'my strength,' and misgabbi, 'my fortress') closes the psalm in a ring structure. Everything between the two statements — the dogs, the laughter, the scattering, the consuming — is enclosed within the frame of 'God is my fortress.' The frame holds.

60

Summary: *A national lament following military defeat, attributed to David's wars against Aram and Edom. The psalm begins with anguished complaint that God has rejected and broken his people, then transitions into a divine oracle in which God claims sovereignty over the entire land, and concludes with renewed trust that God will grant victory despite apparent abandonment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains one of the most striking divine speeches in the Psalter (vv. 8-10). God speaks from his sanctuary and divides the land like a general assigning territory: Shechem, Succoth, Gilead, Manasseh, Ephraim, Judah, Moab, Edom, Philistia — all are his to distribute. The language is deliberately domestic and even humorous: Moab is God's washbasin, over Edom he flings his sandal, and Philistia is told to shout in submission. The imagery reduces Israel's most feared enemies to household objects and servants. God is not intimidated by geopolitics; he treats international powers the way a householder treats his washbasin and his shoes. The theological audacity is breathtaking — and it comes in a psalm of defeat, when the evidence points in the opposite direction.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription is one of the longest and most historically detailed in the Psalter, connecting the psalm to David's campaigns in 2 Samuel 8 and 1 Chronicles 18. The military details do not perfectly align with the biblical narratives, suggesting either a different tradition or a composite historical reference. The phrase shushan edut ('lily of testimony') may be a melody name or a reference to a specific liturgical occasion. Verses 7-14 (Hebrew) are reused almost verbatim in Psalm 108:7-14, confirming that psalm sections circulated as independent units.*

Connections: *The military background connects to 2 Samuel 8:1-14 (David's victories over Moab, Aram, and Edom) and 2 Samuel 10 (the Aramean wars). The divine oracle dividing the land echoes the territorial allocations of Joshua 13-21. Psalm 108:7-14 reuses the oracle and concluding verses. The 'wine of staggering' image (v. 5) appears in Isaiah 51:17, 22 and Jeremiah 25:15. The fortified city (v. 11) likely refers to the Edomite stronghold of Bozrah or Sela (Petra).*

¹For the director of music. According to "Lily of Testimony."

A miktam of David, for instruction.

²When he fought against Aram-Naharaim and Aram-Zobah,
and Joab returned and struck down Edom
in the Valley of Salt — twelve thousand.

³God, you have rejected us, broken through our lines;
you were angry — restore us!

⁴You have shaken the land and split it open;
heal its fractures, for it totters.

⁵You have shown your people harsh things;
you have made us drink wine that staggers.

⁶You have given those who fear you a banner
to rally around, because of truth.
Selah.

⁷So that your beloved ones may be rescued,
save with your right hand and answer me!

⁸God has spoken in his sanctuary:
 "I will triumph! I will divide up Shechem
 and measure out the Valley of Succoth.

⁹Gilead is mine, and Manasseh is mine;
 Ephraim is my helmet,
 Judah is my scepter.

¹⁰Moab is my washbasin;
 over Edom I fling my sandal.
 Shout in submission, Philistia!"

¹¹Who will bring me to the fortified city?
 Who will lead me to Edom?

¹²Have you not rejected us, God?
 You do not march out with our armies, God.

¹³Give us help against the enemy,
 for human salvation is worthless.

¹⁴With God we will act with valor,
 and he himself will trample our enemies.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. shushan edut ('lily of testimony') is unique to this psalm and Psalm 80 (where the plural shoshannim edut appears). Whether this names a melody, a musical instrument, or a liturgical season is unknown. The word lelammedh ('for instruction, to teach') indicates the psalm was intended as a teaching tool — the congregation was meant to learn something from it, not merely sing it.
2. The superscription provides the military context: simultaneous campaigns against the Aramean kingdoms to the northeast (Aram-Naharaim, 'Aram of the Two Rivers,' upper Mesopotamia; Aram-Zobah, a kingdom in modern Lebanon/Syria) and Edom to the southeast. Joab's strike against Edom in the Valley of Salt (south of the Dead Sea) killed 12,000. The text of 2 Samuel 8:13 credits David with 18,000 Edomites; the discrepancy may reflect different battle counts from the same campaign.
3. The raw honesty of blaming God for military defeat is characteristic of Israelite lament. The psalms do not protect God from accusation — they bring the accusation directly to God because God is the only one who can reverse the situation. Complaint is an act of faith: you only accuse someone you believe has the power to change things.
4. The land-as-body metaphor — shaken, broken, needing healing — connects to the prophetic tradition where the land suffers for the people's sin or flourishes with their faithfulness (Hosea 4:1-3, Isaiah 24:4-6). The land is not just territory but a participant in the covenant relationship.
5. The wine-of-staggering image is part of a broader biblical tradition of the 'cup of God's wrath' — a metaphor where divine judgment is figured as an intoxicating drink that the recipient must consume. The image will reach its fullest development in Revelation 14:10 and 16:19.
6. The nes ('banner') will become a messianic image in Isaiah 11:10, 12 ('he will raise a banner for the nations'). In this context it is a military signal — the point of hope around which the scattered can regroup.
7. yedidekha ('your beloved ones') from yadid ('beloved, dear one') — the same root in the name Jedidiah, the name God gave Solomon through Nathan (2 Samuel 12:25). Israel is identified as God's beloved — the relationship is not contractual but affectional. The right hand (yamin) is the hand of power and action throughout the Hebrew Bible.
8. The oracle (vv. 8-10) is one of the few places in the Psalms where God speaks directly in first person. The format resembles a prophetic oracle delivered in a worship setting — possibly by a priest or prophet during a liturgy of lament. The claim of sovereignty over specific territories gives the oracle concrete, geographic content.
9. mechoqeq ('lawgiver, commander's staff, scepter') connects to Jacob's blessing of Judah in Genesis 49:10 ('the scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor the ruler's staff from between his feet'). God's designation of Judah as 'my scepter' confirms the Davidic royal line as God's chosen instrument of governance.

10. The domestic imagery is deliberately humiliating to Israel's enemies and deliberately comforting to Israel. In a psalm of military defeat, God's oracle declares that the enemies who seem so powerful are, from God's perspective, household objects. The humor is theological: panic about geopolitics is disproportionate when God treats your enemies as his washbasin.
10. The sandal-over-Edom gesture may also allude to the master-servant relationship: in ancient custom, a servant's job was to carry the master's sandals. God flings his sandal over Edom, treating it as his servant.
11. The fortified city of Edom was likely Sela (later Petra), a city carved into sandstone cliffs that was nearly impregnable by ancient military standards. The question 'who will bring me there?' is not rhetorical — it is a genuine military problem. Only God can crack that fortress.
12. The honesty of this verse is remarkable in a liturgical text. The psalm does not pretend things are fine. God's absence from the battlefield is stated as fact, not questioned as possibility. The psalm holds together divine sovereignty (God rules all nations in the oracle) and present divine absence (God does not march with the army). Both are true at the same time.
13. teshu'at adam ('human salvation') is dismissed with the strongest possible term. shav does not mean 'second-best' or 'partial' — it means empty, nothing, vapor. Human help is not a lesser option; it is no option at all when God is the one who determines the outcome.
14. The psalm's theological arc is complete: defeat (vv. 3-5) rallying point (v. 6) divine oracle of sovereignty (vv. 8-10) honest acknowledgment of present weakness (vv. 11-13) trust in God's future action (v. 14). The trajectory is not from despair to resolution but from despair to trust. The fortified city of Edom remains unconquered. But God has spoken, and that is enough.

61

Summary: *Psalm 61 is a prayer of longing from a place of distance and emotional exhaustion. The psalmist cries out to God from the 'end of the earth' — a phrase expressing not geography but the feeling of being at the furthest point from safety. He asks to be led to a rock too high for him to reach on his own, acknowledging that God has been his refuge and strong tower. The psalm then shifts to prayers for the king's life and reign, asking that faithful love and truth guard him. It closes with a vow of perpetual praise.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The image of a rock 'higher than I' is theologically precise — the psalmist does not ask to climb to safety by his own effort but to be led there by God. The refuge is real but inaccessible without divine help. The shift from personal lament to royal prayer suggests either a king praying about himself in the third person or a worshiper whose personal security is bound up with the king's welfare. The tent and wings imagery collapses the distance between the earthly tabernacle and the protective presence of God.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription attributes this psalm to David with stringed instruments (neginot). The phrase 'from the end of the earth' has been debated — does it reflect literal exile, a military campaign far from Jerusalem, or metaphorical despair? The royal petition in verses 7-8 raises questions about whether this is a personal psalm repurposed for liturgical use or originally composed for royal worship. The Hebrew of verse 3 is ambiguous: 'when my heart is faint' could also be rendered 'when my heart is wrapped, overwhelmed.'*

Connections: *The 'rock higher than I' connects to the repeated Old Testament image of God as rock (Deuteronomy 32:4, 2 Samuel 22:2-3, Psalm 18:2). The tent of God's presence echoes the tabernacle tradition and looks forward to the promise that God will shelter his people (Psalm 91:1-4). The vow of daily praise anticipates the theology of perpetual worship developed in later psalms and in Revelation 4-5.*

¹For the director of music. On stringed instruments. Of David.

²Hear my cry, God;
pay attention to my prayer.

³From the far edge of the land I call out to you
when my heart is overwhelmed —
lead me to the rock that towers above me.

⁴For you have been my refuge,
a strong tower against the enemy.

⁵Let me dwell in your tent forever;
let me take shelter in the hiding place of your wings. Selah.

⁶For you, God, have heard my vows;
you have granted the inheritance of those who revere your name.

⁷Add days upon the king's days;
let his years span generation after generation.

⁸May he sit enthroned before God forever;
appoint faithful love and truth to guard him.

⁹Then I will make music to your name forever,
fulfilling my vows day after day.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription lam-natseach ('for the director, for the one who leads') assigns this psalm to liturgical performance. Neginot refers to stringed instruments, suggesting an accompanied setting.
2. The word rinnah ('cry, ringing cry') denotes a loud, urgent vocalization — not a whisper but a shout of distress. The parallel verb haqshivah ('give ear, pay attention') intensifies the plea.
3. The verb ba-atof ('when it is faint, when it is wrapped over, overwhelmed') describes a heart that is collapsing inward under the weight of distress. The rock (tsur) is one of the primary divine metaphors in the Psalter — solid, immovable, and elevated beyond human reach.
4. The word machseh ('refuge, shelter') conveys protection from storm and danger. The 'strong tower' (migdal oz) is a military image — a fortified tower from which one can withstand siege. Together these images ground the psalmist's future hope in past experience of God's protection.
5. The verb agurah ('let me sojourn, let me dwell as a guest') carries the nuance of being welcomed into someone else's space — the psalmist does not claim ownership of God's tent but asks to be received as a guest. Selah marks a musical or liturgical pause.
6. The 'vows' (nedaray) indicate the psalmist has made formal commitments to God, likely vows of praise in exchange for deliverance. The 'inheritance' (yerushat) of those who fear God's name is the shared portion of the faithful — belonging to God's people and participating in his promises.
7. The petition shifts to the king. The request for long life (yamim al yemey melekh toshif) is standard royal prayer language in the ancient Near East. 'Generation after generation' (kemo dor va-dor) is hyperbolic, expressing a wish for dynastic continuity rather than literal immortality.
8. The verb yeshev ('let him sit, let him dwell') can mean both 'dwell' and 'sit enthroned.' The verb man yintseruhu is difficult — man is likely an imperative 'appoint' or 'assign,' asking God to station chesed and emet as the king's personal guard.
9. The psalm closes with a commitment to perpetual praise — azammerah ('I will make music, sing praise') and the daily fulfillment of vows (yom yom, 'day by day'). The vow structure is complete: the psalmist made promises to God, God heard them, and now the psalmist commits to keeping them through ongoing worship.

62

Summary: Psalm 62 is a meditation on waiting silently for God alone. The psalmist declares that his soul rests in silence before God, who is his rock, salvation, and fortress. Enemies plot to bring him down from his high position, using flattery and hidden curses. Yet twice the psalmist returns to the refrain of silent trust. He warns against trusting in oppression, robbery, or wealth, and closes with a double declaration: power belongs to God, and faithful love belongs to God, and God repays each person according to what they have done.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word ak ('surely, only, alone') appears six times in this psalm, giving it a distinctive theological rhythm. Each occurrence narrows the field of trust until God is the only thing left standing. The two refrains (verses 2-3 and 6-7) are nearly identical but with a crucial shift: in verse 2 'I will not be greatly shaken,' in verse 6 'I will not be shaken' — the qualifier is removed. Silence before God deepens into more complete confidence. The final two verses deliver the psalm's theology in concentrated form: God possesses both oz (power, strength) and chesed (faithful love). These are not in tension but held together in one being.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns this to David with the notation al Yedutun, likely indicating a musical tradition or choir associated with Jeduthun (one of David's three chief musicians). The identity of the enemies in verses 4-5 is unspecified — they use blessing as a cover for cursing, which suggests political rather than military opposition. The meaning of 'silence' (dumiyyah) has been debated: is it passive waiting, active stillness, or a deliberate refusal to seek human help? The psalm seems to intend all three. The weighing metaphor in verse 10 (men are lighter than a breath on the scales) echoes wisdom traditions and anticipates the Egyptian imagery of judgment scales.*

Connections: *The 'rock' and 'fortress' language connects to David's earlier experiences in the wilderness (1 Samuel 23-24, Psalm 18). The warning against trusting riches anticipates Jesus' teaching about wealth (Matthew 6:19-21, Luke 12:13-21). The declaration that God repays each person according to their deeds appears in Proverbs 24:12, Jeremiah 17:10, and Romans 2:6. Paul's quotation shows this psalm's theology reaching into the New Testament understanding of divine justice.*

¹For the director of music. According to Jeduthun. A psalm of David.

²My soul waits in silence for God alone;
from him comes my deliverance.

³He alone is my rock and my deliverance,
my high fortress — I will not be greatly shaken.

⁴How long will all of you attack a man?
You will be crushed —
all of you — like a leaning wall,
like a fence about to collapse.

⁵They scheme only to bring him down from his position;
they take pleasure in deception.
With their mouths they bless,
but inside they curse. Selah.

⁶My soul, wait in silence for God alone,
for my hope comes from him.

⁷He alone is my rock and my deliverance,
my high fortress — I will not be shaken.

⁸On God rest my deliverance and my glory;
my mighty rock, my refuge, is in God.

⁹pour out your hearts before him.
Trust in him at all times, you people;
God is a refuge for us. Selah.

¹⁰Common people are only a breath;
important people are a lie.
Placed on scales, together they rise —
they weigh less than a breath.

¹¹Do not trust in extortion;
do not put empty hope in robbery.
If wealth increases,
do not set your heart on it.

¹²One thing God has spoken;
two things I have heard:
that power belongs to God,

¹³and that faithful love belongs to you, Lord,
for you repay each person
according to what they have done.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jeduthun (Yedutun) was one of three chief musicians appointed by David (1 Chronicles 25:1-3). The notation 'according to Jeduthun' likely indicates a musical style, tune, or performance tradition associated with his guild.
2. The word *dumiyyah* is related to the verb *damam* ('be silent, be still'). It appears in Psalm 65:2 as well: 'To you silence is praise.' Here it describes the inner posture of the soul before God — waiting without agitation, complaint, or frantic searching for alternatives.
3. The qualifier *rabbah* ('greatly') is significant — the psalmist acknowledges he may be shaken but not overwhelmed. This honest admission is removed in the second refrain (verse 7), suggesting that the act of meditating on God's sufficiency has deepened the psalmist's confidence.
4. The verb *tehotetu* ('you set upon, you rush against, you assault') describes a coordinated attack against a single person. The images of a leaning wall (*qir natuy*) and a tottering fence (*gader ha-dechuyah*) are applied to the attackers themselves — they think they are strong, but they are structurally unsound and about to fall.
5. The word *mis-seto* ('from his elevation, from his dignity') suggests the target holds a position of honor that the conspirators want to dismantle. The contrast between outward blessing and inward cursing (*be-fiv yevarekhu u-ve-qirbam yeqalelu*) describes political duplicity — flattery as a weapon.
6. The second refrain shifts from declaration ('my soul waits') to self-command ('my soul, wait!'). The psalmist is preaching to himself, redirecting his own attention back to God after describing the threat of his enemies. The word *tiqvah* ('hope, expectation') replaces *yeshuah* ('deliverance') from verse 2, broadening the scope from immediate rescue to comprehensive expectation.
7. The critical difference from verse 3: the word *rabbah* ('greatly') is removed. In verse 3, 'I will not be greatly shaken.' Here, 'I will not be shaken' — period. The qualifier has been stripped away. The act of silent waiting before God has produced deeper confidence.
8. The psalmist now claims that even his *kavod* ('glory, honor, weight') depends on God. This is a striking admission for someone under attack — his social standing, his reputation, his significance are not self-generated but God-given. The stacking of titles (rock of strength, refuge) emphasizes comprehensive dependence.
9. The psalm shifts from personal meditation to public exhortation. The verb *shifkhu* ('pour out') is vivid — it is the verb used for pouring out water or blood. The heart is to be emptied before God completely, holding nothing back. This communal instruction (*am*, 'people') transforms private trust into shared worship.
10. The distinction between *bney adam* and *bney ish* is social — the first refers to ordinary people, the second to people of rank or importance. The scales (*moznayim*) are a weighing instrument associated with justice and evaluation. The verb *la-alot* ('to go up') means they rise on the scale because they are so light — less than *hevel*, less than breath.
11. Three prohibitions in sequence: do not trust oppression (*osheq*), do not find significance in robbery (*gazel*), and do not attach your heart to increasing wealth (*chayil*). The verb *tehbalu* ('become empty, become vain') shares the same root as *hevel* — trusting in robbery makes a person as insubstantial as the breath described in the previous verse.
12. The 'one... two' formula (*achat... shtayim*) is a Hebrew numerical pattern used in wisdom literature (Proverbs 30:15, 18, 21) to introduce a definitive statement. God's single utterance contains a double truth: power and faithful love. The division of the single speech into two heard truths happens in the listener's understanding — God speaks unity; we perceive aspects.

13. The word *chesed* ('faithful love') is the psalm's final key term, paired with *oz* ('power') from the previous verse. The verb *teshallem* ('you repay, you complete, you render') implies that God brings each person's actions to their appropriate conclusion. This is not cold retribution but the faithful outworking of a God who is both strong and loving.

63

Summary: *Psalm 63 is one of the most intensely personal expressions of desire for God in the entire Psalter. Set in a dry and waterless wilderness, the psalmist's body itself thirsts and yearns for God the way parched land craves rain. He recalls beholding God's power and glory in the sanctuary, declares that God's faithful love is better than life, and resolves to praise God with lifted hands. In the night watches he meditates on God and finds satisfaction as rich as a feast. The psalm closes with confidence that those who seek his life will be destroyed, while the king will rejoice in God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening line 'My soul thirsts for you' stands as one of the defining statements of biblical spirituality. What makes it remarkable is that thirst is involuntary — the psalmist is not choosing to want God; he cannot stop wanting God. The body language of the psalm is extraordinary: flesh faints, lips praise, hands lift, the soul clings, God's right hand holds. The entire person — body and spirit — is engaged in this desire. The statement that God's faithful love is 'better than life' is among the most radical value claims in Scripture. It does not say God's love makes life better; it says God's love outranks life itself.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription places this psalm in the wilderness of Judah, traditionally connected to David's flight from Saul (1 Samuel 23-24) or from Absalom (2 Samuel 15-17). The wilderness setting may be literal or metaphorical — any experience of God's absence feels like a desert. The mention of the king in verse 12 has led some scholars to identify this as a royal psalm, though others see it as a later addition. The violent imagery of verses 10-11 (enemies given to the sword, becoming food for jackals) contrasts sharply with the intimate devotion of the earlier verses, but the contrast is intentional: the one who clings to God with such intensity also expects God to deal decisively with those who threaten his life.*

Connections: *The thirst imagery connects to Psalm 42:1-2 ('As a deer pants for streams of water, so my soul pants for you, God') and to Jesus' words at the feast: 'If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink' (John 7:37). The wilderness setting echoes Israel's desert experience where God provided water from the rock (Exodus 17, Numbers 20). The phrase 'your right hand upholds me' anticipates Isaiah 41:10 ('I will uphold you with my righteous right hand'). Early Christians adopted this psalm for morning prayer because of the phrase 'early I seek you' (*shachar*, dawn).*

¹A psalm by David, composed during his time in the Judean wilderness.

²God — you are my God; at dawn I search for you.

My soul thirsts for you;
my flesh yearns for you
in a dry and exhausted land
where there is no water.

³So I have gazed on you in the sanctuary,
beholding your power and your glory.

⁴Because your faithful love is better than life,
my lips will praise you.

⁵So I will bless you as long as I live;
in your name I will lift up my hands.

⁶My soul will be satisfied as with rich food and fat;
my mouth will praise you with joyful lips.

⁷When I remember you on my bed,
I meditate on you through the night watches.

⁸For you have been my help,
and in the shadow of your wings I sing for joy.

⁹My soul clings to you;
your right hand holds me up.

¹⁰But those who seek my life to destroy it
will go down into the depths of the earth.

¹¹They will be poured out by the power of the sword;
they will become food for jackals.

¹²But the king will rejoice in God;
everyone who swears by him will celebrate,
for the mouth of liars will be shut.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription anchors this psalm to a specific setting — the midbar Yehudah, the arid wasteland east of the Judean hill country descending toward the Dead Sea. This landscape provides the controlling metaphor for the entire psalm: spiritual longing described through physical desolation.
2. The verb *kamah* ('yearns, faints, longs') is rare in the Hebrew Bible (appearing only here and in Psalm 84:3). It describes a physical craving so intense that the body weakens. The phrase *be-erets tsiyyah ve-ayef beli mayim* ('in a land of dryness and exhaustion without water') layers three deprivation terms: dryness, exhaustion, waterlessness.
3. The word *ken* ('so, thus, in this way') connects the wilderness longing to a prior experience in the sanctuary — the psalmist has seen God's power (*oz*) and glory (*kavod*) in the temple, and now in the desert he craves that experience again. The verb *chazitikha* ('I have gazed at you, beheld you') suggests a visionary encounter, not casual observation.
4. The comparative *ki tov chasdekha me-chayyim* ('because your faithful love is better than life') uses the simple comparative structure: your *chesed* exceeds life. The plural *chayyim* ('lives, life') intensifies the claim — not just one life but life in its fullness is outranked by God's covenant love.
5. The posture of lifted hands (*essa khappay*) is the standard gesture of prayer and worship in ancient Israel — open palms raised toward heaven, simultaneously an act of vulnerability and reception. The commitment *be-chayyay* ('in my life, while I live') makes praise a lifelong practice.
6. The comparison to *chelev va-deshen* ('fat and richness') uses the language of the finest portion of a sacrificial meal — the fat was considered the choicest part, reserved for God in the Levitical system. The psalmist experiences God's presence as a feast that fills the deepest hunger. The phrase *siftey renanot* ('lips of joyful shouts') combines the mouth's two functions: eating and singing.
7. The *ashmurot* ('watches') were the divisions of the night — the Israelites divided the night into three watches. The verb *ehgeh* ('I meditate, I murmur') is the same word used in Psalm 1:2 for meditating on Torah. Here the object of meditation is God himself. The bed (*yetsu'ay*, 'my couch') is the place of vulnerability and honesty, where pretense falls away.
8. The 'shadow of your wings' (*betsel kenafekha*) appears repeatedly in the Psalms (17:8, 36:8, 57:2, 61:5) as an image of intimate divine protection. The verb *aranen* ('I sing for joy, I shout with delight') expresses unrestrained gladness — not quiet contentment but vocal celebration.
9. The verb *davaq* is one of the strongest attachment words in Hebrew. It appears in Deuteronomy as a command to 'cling to the LORD your God' (Deuteronomy 10:20, 11:22, 13:5). The right hand (*yamin*) symbolizes strength, favor, and active intervention throughout the Hebrew Bible.
10. The phrase *le-shoah yevaqshu nafshi* ('they seek my soul/life for destruction') identifies enemies who want not just defeat but annihilation. The 'depths of the earth' (*tachtiyyot ha-arets*) refers to Sheol, the realm of the dead — those who pursue the psalmist's death will find death themselves.
11. The verb *yagiruhu* ('they will pour him out') uses the imagery of blood being poured out. The *shu'alim* ('foxes' or more likely 'jackals') were scavengers that fed on the unburied dead — to become food for jackals meant dying without proper burial, the ultimate disgrace in the ancient Near East.

12. The king's rejoicing connects this personal psalm to the royal sphere. The phrase 'everyone who swears by him' (kol ha-nishba bo) could refer to those who swear by God or those who swear allegiance to the king. The silencing of liars (yissaker pi dovrey shaqer) provides closure — deceptive speech, the weapon of the psalmist's enemies, will finally be stopped.

64

Summary: *Psalm 64 is a prayer against enemies whose primary weapon is speech. The psalmist asks God to protect his life from the conspiracy of evildoers who sharpen their tongues like swords and aim bitter words like arrows at the blameless. They encourage each other in evil, lay secret traps, and say 'Who can see us?' The psalm pivots dramatically: God shoots his own arrow at them suddenly, and they stumble over their own tongues. All who see it take notice and declare what God has done. The righteous rejoice and take refuge in the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm operates on a precise reversal structure. The enemies sharpen their tongues; God shoots an arrow. The enemies attack suddenly (pit'om, verse 5); God strikes suddenly (pit'om, verse 8). The enemies aim at the blameless; God aims at the enemies. Their tongues were their weapon, and their tongues become their downfall. The question 'Who can see us?' assumes invisibility before God, and the answer comes not as an argument but as an act — God sees and strikes. The structural symmetry is itself the theological argument: what you do will be done to you.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription simply attributes this to David as 'a psalm' without a specific historical setting. The identity of the enemies is kept general — they are characterized entirely by their speech acts (plotting, sharpening tongues, aiming bitter words, encouraging each other in evil, hiding traps). This generality has made the psalm applicable to many situations of slander and conspiracy throughout Jewish and Christian history. The verb in verse 9 (va-yakkidu) has been translated 'they will make him stumble' or 'they wag [the head]' — the uncertainty affects whether the subject is God causing them to stumble or onlookers shaking their heads.*

Connections: *The image of the tongue as a sword appears throughout wisdom literature (Proverbs 12:18, 25:18) and in James 3:1-12. The sudden reversal of the wicked echoes Proverbs 26:27 ('Whoever digs a pit will fall into it'). The question 'Who can see us?' connects to Psalm 10:11 and 94:7, where the wicked assume God is absent or inattentive — a recurring challenge that the Psalms consistently refute.*

1For the director of music. A psalm of David.

2Hear my voice, God, in my complaint;
preserve my life from the dread of the enemy.

3Hide me from the conspiracy of those who do evil,
from the noisy mob of wrongdoers.

4They sharpen their tongues like swords;
they aim their arrows — bitter words —

5to shoot from hiding at the blameless.
Suddenly they shoot, and they do not fear.

6They strengthen each other in an evil plan;
they talk about hiding their traps.
They say, "Who can see us?"

7They devise injustice after injustice;
they complete their carefully searched-out scheme.
The inner mind and heart of a person run deep.

⁸But God shoots an arrow at them —
suddenly their wounds appear.

⁹Their own tongue is turned against them;
all who see them shake their heads.

¹⁰Then all people stand in awe
and declare what God has done;
they understand his work.

¹¹The righteous one rejoices in the LORD
and takes refuge in him;
all the upright in heart celebrate.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A standard superscription assigning authorship and liturgical direction.
2. The word *siychi* ('my complaint, my meditation, my concern') indicates troubled reflection — the psalmist is bringing his anxiety to God. The phrase *mi-pachad oyev* ('from the fear/dread of the enemy') asks for protection not only from the enemy but from the paralyzing fear that the enemy produces.
3. The word *sod* ('secret counsel, conspiracy, intimate council') suggests coordinated plotting rather than random hostility. The word *rigshah* ('turmoil, noisy crowd, commotion') describes the agitated energy of a mob — evil is both secret in its planning and loud in its execution.
4. The tongue-as-sword and word-as-arrow metaphors compress violence into speech. The verb *shanenu* ('they sharpen, they whet') is the same verb used for sharpening a blade. The verb *darkhu* ('they tread, they bend') refers to stepping on a bow to string it — preparing for attack. The 'arrow' is then identified: *davar mar* ('a bitter word').
5. The blameless person (*tam*) is ambushed from concealment (*ba-mistarim*). The word *pit'om* ('suddenly') will reappear in verse 8 when God returns the sudden strike. The phrase *ve-lo yira'u* ('and they do not fear') indicates the attackers feel no accountability — they believe they act unseen.
6. The question *mi yireh lamo* is the theological heart of the enemies' error. They assume their secrecy is absolute. The psalm will demonstrate that God's vision penetrates every hiding place.
7. The verse is textually difficult. The verb *yachpesu* ('they search out, they devise') and the noun *chefes* ('search, scheme') emphasize the thoroughness of the conspiracy — this is not impulsive evil but researched, deliberate plotting. The closing line (*ve-qerev ish ve-lev ameq*, 'and the inner part of a person and the heart is deep') may be the psalmist's observation that human scheming is unfathomable — but not to God.
8. The repetition of *pit'om* ('suddenly') in both verse 5 and verse 8 creates the psalm's structural hinge. What the wicked did to others, God does to them, using the same speed and the same element of surprise.
9. The tongue (*lashon*), which was the enemies' primary weapon (verse 4), now becomes the instrument of their downfall. The verb *yitnodedu* ('they shake, they wag, they flee') describes the reaction of onlookers — either shaking their heads in amazement or recoiling from the spectacle of divine judgment.
10. The verb *va-yir'u* ('they fear, they stand in awe') answers the enemies' claim 'Who can see us?' (verse 6). The answer: everyone sees, and everyone understands. The verb *hiskilu* ('they understand, they act with insight') indicates this is not mere observation but comprehension — the witnesses grasp the meaning of what God has done.
11. The psalm closes with three responses: joy (*yismach*), refuge (*chasah*), and celebration (*yithallelu*). The phrase *yishrey lev* ('upright of heart') describes those whose inner orientation is straight — the opposite of the 'deep heart' of the schemers in verse 7. Integrity of heart leads to joy; depth of scheming leads to ruin.

65

Summary: *Psalm 65 is a hymn of praise to the God who answers prayer, forgives transgression, and saturates the earth with abundance. It moves through three zones of divine activity: the temple (where praise waits and vows are fulfilled), the cosmic arena (where God stills the roaring seas and silences the tumult of nations), and the agricultural landscape (where God waters the furrows, softens the soil with rain, and crowns the year with goodness so that even the wilderness pastures drip and the hills wrap themselves in joy). The psalm is an integrated vision of God's work from altar to field.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The progression from temple to creation to harvest makes this psalm a comprehensive theology of divine provision. God does not merely rule from a distance — he works the soil. The image in verse 10 of God 'visiting the earth and saturating it' uses agricultural language for divine attention: God tends the world the way a farmer tends a field. The closing images are extraordinary: wagon tracks drip with abundance, pastures are clothed with flocks, and valleys are covered with grain so thick they 'shout for joy and sing.' The entire landscape becomes a congregation.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription identifies this as a psalm and song of David. Some scholars date it later based on the reference to the temple ('your courts,' verse 5) and the harvest thanksgiving theme. The Hebrew of verse 2 is debated: 'Praise waits silently for you' (dumiyyah tehillah) is an unusual construction — silence as a form of praise. Verse 4 may refer to election ('blessed is the one you choose and bring near') in a priestly or more general sense. The agricultural imagery of verses 10-14 is so specific that some scholars read this as a response to a particular abundant harvest rather than a general thanksgiving.*

Connections: *The forgiveness of transgressions (verse 4) connects to the Day of Atonement traditions (Leviticus 16). The stilling of the seas (verse 8) echoes the creation narrative (Genesis 1:9-10) and the crossing of the Red Sea (Exodus 14-15). The vision of the earth producing abundance through divine watering anticipates Isaiah's vision of the desert blooming (Isaiah 35) and the new creation imagery of Revelation 22. Jesus' parable of the sower (Matthew 13) assumes this same theology of God-given agricultural abundance.*

¹For the director of music. A psalm of David. A song.

²Praise waits silently for you, God, in Zion,
and to you the vow will be fulfilled.

³You who hear prayer —
to you all flesh will come.

⁴When the weight of wrongdoing overpowers me,
you cover over our rebellions.

⁵Blessed is the one you choose and bring near
to dwell in your courts.
We will be satisfied with the goodness of your house,
the holiness of your temple.

⁶With awesome deeds of righteousness you answer us,
God of our deliverance,
you who are the confidence of all the far ends of the earth
and the distant seas.

⁷He sets the mountains in place by his power,
girded with strength.

⁸He stills the roaring of the seas,
the roaring of their waves,
and the uproar of the nations.

⁹Those who live at the farthest edges stand in awe at your signs;
you make the gateways of morning and evening shout for joy.

¹⁰You visit the earth and saturate it;
you enrich it abundantly.
The stream of God is full of water;
you prepare their grain,
for this is how you have prepared the earth.

¹¹You drench its furrows;
you press down its ridges.
With showers you soften it;
you bless what sprouts from it.

¹²You crown the year with your goodness,
and your wagon tracks drip with abundance.

¹³The wilderness pastures drip with moisture,
and the hills wrap themselves in joy.

¹⁴The meadows are clothed with flocks;
the valleys are wrapped in grain.
They shout for joy — yes, they sing!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double designation *mizmor* ('psalm') and *shir* ('song') may indicate a piece that combines instrumental performance with vocal singing.
2. The word *dumiyyah* ('silence, stillness') also appears in Psalm 62:2. Here it modifies *tehillah* ('praise') — silence as the form praise takes when it is most reverent. Zion as the location centers this psalm in the worship life of Jerusalem.
3. God is addressed as *shomea tefillah* ('the one who hears prayer') — a participial title that defines God's character by his responsiveness. The scope is universal: *kol basar* ('all flesh') will come to this prayer-hearing God. The psalm envisions a worship that extends beyond Israel to encompass all humanity.
4. The shift from singular 'me' (*menni*) to plural 'our' (*peshah'enu*) moves from personal to communal confession. The verb *gavru* ('they overpower, they are too strong') acknowledges that sin is stronger than the sinner — human effort cannot deal with it. The verb *tekhaprem* ('you cover them, you atone for them') is the verbal root of *kippur* (atonement). Only God can handle what has overpowered the psalmist.
5. The verbs *tivchar* ('you choose') and *utqarev* ('you bring near') place the initiative with God — access to divine presence is by invitation, not achievement. The satisfaction (*nisbe'ah*) that comes from the 'goodness of your house' (*tuv betekha*) uses the same satisfaction language as Psalm 63:6 — presence as feast.
6. The word *nora'ot* ('awesome things, fearsome acts') describes God's answers to prayer as overwhelming in their power. These answers come *be-tsedeq* ('in/with righteousness') — God's intervention is both powerful and just. The scope expands outward: God is the trust (*mivtach*) of people at the remotest edges of earth and sea.
7. The verb *mekhin* ('he establishes, he sets in place') describes the mountains as God's deliberate construction. The image of God being 'girded with strength' (*ne'zar bi-gevurah*) presents God as a warrior whose belt is raw power — the same power that anchors mountains in bedrock.
8. Three things are quieted by the same divine action: the seas (*yammim*), their waves (*galleyhem*), and the nations (*le'ummim*). The parallelism equates cosmic chaos with political turmoil — God subdues both with the same authority. The verb *mashbiach* ('he stills, he silences') describes decisive calming.

9. The 'uttermost parts' (qetsavot) are the extreme margins of the inhabited world. God's signs (ototekha) — visible acts of power in nature and history — produce awe even at the world's edges. The 'gateways' (motsa'ey) of morning and evening personify dawn and dusk as shouting with joy (tarnin) — the daily cycle itself celebrates God.
10. The word peleg ('stream, channel, watercourse') appears with Elohim — 'the channel/stream of God' — suggesting a heavenly irrigation system. The verb tashrennah ('you enrich it') is emphatic: rabbat ('greatly, abundantly'). This is not bare sufficiency but lavish provision.
11. The agricultural detail is precise: tlameyha ('its furrows') are soaked, gedudeyha ('its ridges, its clods') are settled and broken down by rain. The verb temoggenah ('you dissolve it, you soften it') describes the rain turning hard, compacted soil into workable earth. Then God blesses the growth (tsimchah, 'its sprouting') — the entire process from plowing to germination is God's work.
12. The word ma'gal ('track, rut, path') can refer to wagon wheel ruts. The image may be of God traveling across the land in a harvest chariot, with the ruts behind him filling with oil and grain. The word deshen ('fatness') is the language of the richest sacrifice and the richest food.
13. Even the ne'ot midbar ('pastures of the wilderness') — places normally dry and sparse — participate in the abundance. The hills (geva'ot) 'gird themselves' (tachgornah) with joy (gil) as if putting on a garment. The wilderness and the hills are personified as celebrants dressed for a festival.
14. The closing verse dresses the landscape in living things: karim ('meadows, pastures') wear flocks like garments, and amaqim ('valleys') are wrapped in grain (bar) like a robe. Then comes the climactic line: yitro'a'u af yashiru ('they shout for joy, indeed they sing!'). The subject is the meadows and valleys themselves — the land has become a choir. The psalm ends not with human praise but with creation's own song.

66

Summary: *Psalm 66 is a two-movement hymn that begins with a call for the entire earth to shout joyfully to God and then narrows to a single worshiper fulfilling personal vows. The first half (verses 1-12) summons all nations to witness God's awesome deeds, recalls the crossing of the sea and the river, and describes a period of national testing where God refined his people like silver and brought them through fire and water into abundance. The second half (verses 13-20) shifts to first person singular: the psalmist enters the temple with burnt offerings, fulfills his vows, and testifies that God has heard his prayer and not withheld his faithful love.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's architecture is its most remarkable feature. It begins with the widest possible scope ('all the earth') and progressively narrows: all nations, then Israel's national story, then the community's testing, then one individual standing in the temple with offerings. The universal and the particular are not in tension but connected — the God who parted the sea for a nation is the same God who heard one person's prayer. The conditional statement in verse 18 ('If I had cherished sin in my heart, the Lord would not have listened') is one of the most direct ethical-theological statements in the Psalms — access to God is not merely ritual but moral.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription identifies this as 'a song, a psalm' but does not attribute it to David. The shift from plural 'we/us' (verses 1-12) to singular 'I/me' (verses 13-20) has generated debate about whether this is one psalm or two originally separate compositions. The 'sea' and 'river' in verse 6 most naturally refer to the Red Sea and the Jordan, but some scholars see them as references to creation's waters. The refining imagery (verse 10) and the description of being brought through fire and water (verse 12) suggest a severe national crisis, though the specific historical occasion is not identified.*

Connections: *The crossing of the sea (verse 6) connects to Exodus 14-15 and Joshua 3-4. The refining-as-silver metaphor appears in Isaiah 48:10, Zechariah 13:9, and Malachi 3:2-3 — testing by fire as God's purification method. The testimony formula 'Come and hear, all you who fear God' (verse 16) anticipates the testimony tradition in the early church (Acts 4:20, 1 John 1:1-3). The ethical condition for answered prayer (verse 18) is echoed in Isaiah 1:15 ('When you spread out your hands in prayer, I will hide my eyes from you') and 1 John 3:21-22.*

‡For the director of music. A song. A psalm.
Shout joyfully to God, all the earth!

‡Sing the glory of his name;
make his praise glorious.

³Say to God, "How awesome are your deeds!
Because of your great power,
your enemies cringe before you."

⁴All the earth bows down to you
and sings to you;
they sing to your name. Selah.

⁵Come and see the works of God —
awesome in his deeds toward the children of humanity.

⁶He turned the sea into dry land;
through the river they crossed on foot —
there we rejoiced in him!

⁷He rules by his power forever;
his eyes keep watch on the nations.
Let the rebellious not exalt themselves. Selah.

⁸Bless our God, you peoples;
let the sound of his praise be heard.

⁹He keeps us among the living
and does not let our feet slip.

¹⁰For you have tested us, God;
you have refined us as silver is refined.

¹¹You brought us into the net;
you placed a heavy burden on our backs.

¹²You let people ride over our heads;
we went through fire and through water,
but you brought us out to a place of abundance.

¹³I will come into your house with burnt offerings;
I will fulfill my vows to you —

¹⁴the vows that my lips opened to speak,
that my mouth uttered when I was in distress.

¹⁵I will offer you burnt offerings of fattened animals
with the smoke of rams;
I will prepare cattle and goats. Selah.

¹⁶Come and hear, all you who revere God,
and I will tell you what he has done for my life.

¹⁷To him I cried out with my mouth,
and praise was on my tongue.

¹⁸If I had cherished evil in my heart,
the Lord would not have listened.

¹⁹But God has truly heard;
he has paid attention to the voice of my prayer.

²⁰Blessed be God,
who has not turned away my prayer
or his faithful love from me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb hari'u ('shout, raise a shout') is the same word used for a battle cry or a shout of acclamation for a king. The scope is universal: kol ha-arets ('all the earth') — every nation and land is summoned to participate.
2. The command is to zamru ('sing, make music to') the kavod ('glory, honor') of God's name. The second line intensifies: simu kavod tehillato ('set/make glory his praise') — the praise itself should carry the weight of glory.
3. The verb yekachashu ('they cringe, they submit grudgingly, they feign obedience') indicates reluctant submission — God's enemies do not willingly bow but are forced into compliance by the sheer magnitude of his power (rov uzzekha, 'the greatness of your strength').
4. The verb yishtachavu ('they bow down, they prostrate themselves') describes full-body worship. The triple repetition of singing (vizammeru lakh, yezammeru shimkha) emphasizes that worship is the earth's proper response. Selah marks a pause.
5. The invitation lekhu u-re'u ('come and see') shifts from command to witness — the nations are summoned not just to worship but to observe evidence. The phrase nora alilah ('awesome in deed/action') describes God's historical interventions as the visible proof of his character.
6. The sea (yam) is the Red Sea of the Exodus; the river (nahar) is the Jordan of the conquest. The verb hafakh ('he turned, he overturned') describes radical transformation — water became walkable ground. The shift to 'we rejoiced' (nismechah) collapses the historical distance: the present community claims the ancient deliverance as their own experience.
7. God's rule (moshel) is permanent (olam, 'forever') and his eyes (eynav) maintain surveillance over the nations (goyim). The warning to the sorerim ('rebellious ones, stubborn ones') not to exalt themselves is a political warning: no nation should presume to challenge the God who parted the sea.
8. The imperative barakhu ('bless!') is addressed to ammim ('peoples, nations') — not just Israel but the watching world. The verb hashmi'u ('cause to be heard, make loud') demands that praise not remain silent but become audible, public, and unavoidable.
9. The phrase ha-sam nafshenu ba-chayyim ('the one who places our soul/life among the living') is a statement of preservation — God actively maintains their existence. The feet not slipping (lo natan la-mot raglenu) uses the language of walking a dangerous path without falling.
10. The verb tsaraph ('to refine, to smelt') is the same verb used for testing gold and silver in a crucible. The comparison ki-tseraf kasef ('as one refines silver') implies that God controls the heat and duration — the refiner watches the metal and knows when to stop.
11. The metsudah ('net, snare, stronghold') here functions as a trap — God himself led them into confinement. The mu'aqah ('pressure, burden, constraint') on the motneynu ('our loins, our backs') describes the physical weight of suffering. The theological boldness is striking: God is the agent of the testing, not merely the one who permits it.
12. The verb hirkavta ('you caused to ride') enosh ('a mortal, humanity') le-roshenu ('over our heads') depicts the humiliation of being trampled. The word revayah ('abundance, overflow, well-watered place') is the psalm's turning point — the suffering was a corridor, not a destination.
13. The psalm shifts abruptly from 'we' to 'I' — one individual steps forward from the community. The olot ('burnt offerings') are whole offerings consumed entirely on the altar, representing total dedication. The vows (nedaray) were made during the crisis and are now being paid in worship.
14. The phrase asher patsu sefatay ('which my lips opened/burst open') emphasizes the urgency of the vows — they burst out under pressure. The vow made in crisis (ba-tsar li, 'when it was narrow/tight for me') is now fulfilled in the spacious relief of deliverance.
15. The lavishness of the offerings — mechim ('fatted animals'), elim ('rams'), baqar ('cattle'), attudim ('goats') — reflects the magnitude of gratitude. The qetoret ('smoke, incense') of rams refers to the aromatic smoke rising from the burning fat. This is not a token gesture but an extravagant response to experienced deliverance.
16. The formula lekhu shim'u ('come and hear') shifts from sacrifice to testimony. The audience is kol yir'ey Elohim ('all who fear/revere God') — fellow worshipers who will understand the significance of the story. The phrase asher asah le-nafshi ('what he has done for my soul/life') introduces personal narrative as a form of worship.
17. The phrase romam tachat leshoni ('exaltation was under my tongue') is a vivid idiom: even as the psalmist cried out in distress, praise was already present beneath the surface, ready to emerge. The mouth that called for help was already preparing to give thanks.

18. The conditional *im* ('if') creates a theological principle: internal moral orientation affects the efficacy of prayer. This does not mean only perfect people can pray — Psalm 65:4 already acknowledged that transgressions overpower the individual. The point is about the direction of the heart, not the perfection of the life.
19. The word *akhen* ('truly, certainly, indeed') is emphatic — against all the reasons prayer might not work, against the conditional warning of the previous verse, God has in fact listened. The verb *hiqshiv* ('he has paid attention, he has given ear') repeats the language of attentive listening from verse 2.
20. The closing benediction pairs two things God has not removed: *tefillati* ('my prayer') and *chasdo* ('his faithful love'). The connection is deliberate — God's willingness to hear prayer and God's faithful love (*chesed*) are aspects of the same reality. The psalm that began with all the earth shouting to God ends with one person blessing God for not turning away.

67

Summary: *Psalm 67 is a compact, symmetrical hymn asking God to bless Israel so that God's way and saving power become known among all nations. Built around a repeated refrain calling on the peoples to praise God, the psalm envisions a world where every nation acknowledges God's just governance and celebrates the earth's abundance. It opens with the priestly blessing of Numbers 6 and closes with the expectation that God's blessing will cause all the ends of the earth to revere him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is one of the clearest missionary texts in the Hebrew Bible. Israel's blessing is not an end in itself but a means — 'so that your way may be known on earth, your deliverance among all nations.' The concentric structure is precise: A (blessing, verse 2), B (nations know God, verse 3), C (refrain: peoples praise, verse 4), D (center: God judges with equity, verse 5), C' (refrain: peoples praise, verse 6), B' (earth yields, verse 7a), A' (God blesses, ends of earth revere, verses 7b-8). The architecture mirrors the theology: God's blessing radiates outward from Israel to reach the edges of the world.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns this to the director of music with stringed instruments (*neqinot*) but gives no author. The opening line echoes the Aaronic blessing (Numbers 6:24-26) closely enough that the psalm may have been composed as a liturgical expansion of that priestly prayer. Whether the harvest imagery (verse 7, 'the earth has yielded its produce') indicates a specific harvest festival or is metaphorical for God's general blessing is debated. The seven-verse structure has been noted — seven being the number of completeness — giving the psalm a sense of wholeness.*

Connections: *The priestly blessing connection to Numbers 6:24-26 is foundational. The vision of all nations knowing God's way connects to Abraham's call ('in you all families of the earth shall be blessed,' Genesis 12:3) and to the prophetic hope in Isaiah 2:2-4 and Micah 4:1-3. Paul quotes the principle of God's blessing extending to the nations in Galatians 3:8. The psalm's theology stands behind the Great Commission (Matthew 28:19) — God's people are blessed in order to be a blessing.*

¹For the director of music. With stringed instruments. A psalm. A song.

²May God be gracious to us and bless us;
may he make his face shine on us. Selah.

³so that your way may be known on earth,
your deliverance among all nations.

⁴Let the peoples thank you, God;
let all the peoples thank you.

⁵Let the nations be glad and sing for joy,
for you judge the peoples with equity
and guide the nations on earth. Selah.

⁶Let the peoples thank you, God;
let all the peoples thank you.

⁷The earth has yielded its produce;
God — our God — blesses us.

⁸God blesses us,
and all the ends of the earth revere him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double designation *mizmor shir* ('psalm, song') with *neginot* ('stringed instruments') indicates a musically accompanied liturgical piece.
2. The verbs *yechnenu* ('may he be gracious to us'), *vivarkhenu* ('may he bless us'), and *ya'er* ('may he cause to shine') mirror the Aaronic benediction closely. *Selah* marks a musical pause after this foundational prayer.
3. The infinitive *la-da'at* ('so that it may be known') reveals the purpose of the blessing requested in verse 2. God's 'way' (*darkhekha*) and 'deliverance' (*yeshuatekha*) are to become public knowledge among *kol goyim* ('all nations'). Israel is blessed for the sake of the world's knowledge of God.
4. The refrain *yodukha ammim* ('let the peoples thank/praise you') appears here and in verse 6, framing the psalm's center. The word *ammim* ('peoples') is plural — this is not Israel alone but the family of nations. The repetition of *kullam* ('all of them') leaves no people group excluded.
5. The word *mishor* ('equity, level ground, fairness') describes judgment that is straight and even — no favoritism, no corruption, no arbitrary power. The verb *tanchem* ('you guide them') uses the same root as *nachah* ('to lead, to guide'), evoking pastoral care alongside judicial authority.
6. The refrain repeats identically from verse 4, creating the psalm's structural frame. The repetition is not redundancy but emphasis — the call for universal praise brackets the central declaration of God's just rule.
7. The phrase *erets natnah yevulah* ('the earth has given its produce') grounds the psalm's theology in material reality — God's blessing is not abstract but takes the form of food from the ground. The double identification *Elohim Elohenu* ('God, our God') is emphatic and possessive — the God who governs the nations is also our own God.
8. The psalm closes by completing the circle: God's blessing of Israel (*yevarkhenu*) results in universal reverence (*ve-yir'u oto kol afsey arets*). The 'ends of the earth' (*afsey arets*) represent the most remote populations — God's blessing of one people reaches the farthest margins of the world. The verb *yir'u* ('they revere, they fear') describes not terror but awe-filled recognition of who God is.

68

Summary: *Psalm 68 is the great theophany-and-victory psalm of the Psalter — a sweeping hymn that traces God's march from Sinai through the wilderness to Zion, scattering enemies, providing for the poor, and establishing his dwelling place among his people. The psalm begins with the ancient war cry of Numbers 10:35 ('Let God rise up, let his enemies be scattered') and proceeds through a sequence of divine actions: God is father to the fatherless, defender of widows, settler of the lonely in families, liberator of prisoners. The march through the wilderness shakes the earth and pours rain. God's mountain (Zion) is chosen over the higher peaks of Bashan. A vast procession brings God into the sanctuary. The psalm calls on kingdoms of the earth to sing to God, who rides the ancient heavens and gives power to his people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is among the most difficult and most magnificent psalms in the collection. Its difficulty lies in its archaic Hebrew, abrupt transitions, and compressed allusions to multiple traditions (Sinai, the wilderness march, the conquest, the temple procession). Its magnificence lies in the sheer scope of what it attempts: to narrate God's journey from desert mountain to Jerusalem temple as a single, continuous march of triumph. The God of this psalm is simultaneously a cosmic warrior, a father of orphans, a rain-giver, a conqueror, and a king enthroned in procession. The image of God 'riding on the clouds' (*rokhev ba-aravot*, verse 5) connects to ancient Near Eastern storm-god imagery while surpassing it — this God uses his storm-power to house the homeless and free prisoners. The procession scene (verses 25-28) is one of the most vivid liturgical descriptions in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: Psalm 68 is considered one of the most textually challenging chapters in the entire Hebrew Bible. Multiple verses contain rare or unique vocabulary, and the Hebrew text may be corrupted in places. Scholarly translations differ significantly in verses 12-14, 18, 23, and 31. The psalm may be a single composition or a medley of older fragments. The reference to 'gifts among humanity' in verse 19 is famously quoted by Paul in Ephesians 4:8, where he changes 'received gifts' to 'gave gifts' — a reinterpretation that has generated extensive theological discussion. The 'mountain of Bashan' (verse 16) and the jealousy of the many-peaked mountain looking at Zion are unusual images. The procession in verses 25-28 lists specific tribes (Benjamin, Judah, Zebulun, Naphtali) but not all twelve, raising questions about the historical occasion.

Connections: The opening verse quotes Numbers 10:35, the cry when the ark set out on the march. The Sinai theophany (verse 9) echoes Judges 5:4-5 (the Song of Deborah). The ascension and gifts of verse 19 are applied to Christ's ascension in Ephesians 4:8-10. The image of God riding the clouds appears in Daniel 7:13 and is transferred to the Son of Man. The father-of-orphans and defender-of-widows titles (verse 6) define God's character in terms of justice for the vulnerable, a theme central to the prophets (Isaiah 1:17, James 1:27).

¹For the director of music. Of David. A psalm. A song.

²Let God rise up — let his enemies be scattered!
Let those who hate him flee before him!

³As smoke is blown away, so blow them away;
as wax melts before fire,
so the wicked perish before God.

⁴But the righteous are glad — they celebrate before God
and overflow with joy!

⁵Sing to God! Make music to his name!
Build a highway for the one who rides through the deserts —
Yah is his name — and celebrate before him!

⁶Father of the fatherless,
defender of widows —
God in his holy dwelling.

⁷God settles the lonely in families;
he leads prisoners out into prosperity.
But the rebellious live in a sun-scorched land.

⁸God, when you went out before your people,
when you marched through the wasteland — Selah —

⁹The earth shook; the heavens poured down rain
before God —
this Sinai itself trembled before God,
the God of Israel.

¹⁰You poured out generous rain, God;
your inheritance was exhausted,
but you restored it.

¹¹Your community settled in it;
from your goodness, God,

you provided for the poor.

¹²The Lord gives the command;
the women who proclaim the news are a vast company.

¹³Kings of armies flee — they flee!
And the woman who stays home divides the plunder.

¹⁴Though you lie among the sheepfolds,
the wings of a dove are covered with silver,
its feathers with shimmering gold.

¹⁵When the Almighty scattered kings there,
it snowed on Zalmon.

¹⁶The mountain of God — the mountain of Bashan!
The many-peaked mountain — the mountain of Bashan!

¹⁷Why do you look with envy, you many-peaked mountains,
at the mountain God has chosen for his dwelling?
Indeed, the LORD will live there forever.

¹⁸The chariots of God are tens of thousands —
thousands upon thousands.
The Lord is among them;
Sinai is in the sanctuary.

¹⁹You ascended to the heights;
you took captives captive;
you received gifts among people —
even among the rebellious —
so that Yah God might dwell there.

²⁰Blessed be the Lord!
Day after day he bears our burden —
the God of our deliverance. Selah.

²¹Our God is a God of acts of deliverance;
and to the LORD, the Lord,
belong the escapes from death.

²²God will crush the head of his enemies,
the hairy scalp of the one who walks in his guilt.

²³The Lord said, "I will bring them back from Bashan;
I will bring them back from the depths of the sea."

²⁴So that your foot may strike through blood,
the tongue of your dogs have its share from the enemies.

²⁵They see your processions, God —
the processions of my God, my King, into the sanctuary.

²⁶Singers go in front, musicians behind,
with young women playing tambourines in the middle.

²⁷"Bless God in the assemblies —
the Lord, from the fountain of Israel!"

²⁸There is Benjamin, the youngest, leading them;
the princes of Judah in their throng;
the princes of Zebulun, the princes of Naphtali.

²⁹Your God has decreed your strength.
Show your strength, God —
the strength you have displayed for us.

³⁰Because of your temple above Jerusalem,
kings bring tribute to you.

³¹Rebuke the beast of the reeds,
the herd of bulls among the calves of the peoples,
until they grovel with bars of silver.
Scatter the peoples who delight in war.

³²Envoys will come from Egypt;
Cush will stretch out its hands to God.

³³Kingdoms of the earth, sing to God!
Make music to the Lord! Selah.

³⁴Sing to the one who rides the highest, most ancient heavens!
He sends out his voice — a voice of power!

³⁵Ascribe power to God!
His majesty is over Israel,
and his strength is in the skies.

³⁶Awesome is God from his sanctuaries!
The God of Israel — he gives power and strength to the people.
Blessed be God!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription attributes this to David and gives the double designation *mizmor shir* ('psalm, song'), indicating both instrumental and vocal performance.
2. The connection to Numbers 10:35 anchors this psalm in the wilderness march tradition — the ark moving forward, God going before his people, enemies falling away on either side.
3. Two similes describe the effect of God's presence on the wicked: smoke dispersed by wind (*ashan tindof*) and wax dissolving before fire (*donag mipney esh*). Both images emphasize the insubstantiality of evil when confronted by God — what seemed solid becomes nothing.

4. Three joy verbs pile up: yismechu ('they are glad'), ya'altsu ('they exult'), and yasisu ('they rejoice with delight'). The contrast with the previous verse is sharp: the wicked melt like wax, but the righteous thrive in God's presence. The same presence destroys and delights.
5. The Ugaritic texts use a similar epithet (rkb 'rpt, 'rider of the clouds') for the storm deity Baal. The psalm appropriates this title for YHWH, asserting that the true rider of the storms is not Baal but Yah. The verb sollu literally means 'cast up, heap up' — the image is of building a raised road through the wilderness for a royal procession.
6. The word dayyan ('judge') in the context of widows means not one who judges them but one who judges on their behalf — an advocate, a champion of their cause. The pairing of orphans and widows as the paradigm of vulnerability runs throughout the Torah, Prophets, and Writings.
7. The verb moshiv ('he causes to dwell, he settles') takes yechidim ('isolated ones, lonely ones') and places them baytah ('into a house, into a home') — God's remedy for isolation is community. The word bakosharot ('into prosperity' or 'with music') is debated — it may mean the prisoners emerge singing, or that they emerge into thriving conditions. The rebellious (sorerim) are left in tsechichah ('a parched, sun-scorched place') — the barren opposite of home.
8. The narrative shifts to the wilderness march. The verb be-tset'kha ('when you went out') and be-tsa'dekha ('when you marched') describe God leading from the front. The yeshimon ('wasteland, desert') is the barren wilderness through which Israel traveled from Sinai to Canaan.
9. This verse closely parallels Judges 5:4-5, the Song of Deborah, which also describes earth shaking and heavens dripping before the LORD. The intertextual connection suggests both texts draw on a shared tradition of the Sinai theophany as the defining moment of divine power.
10. The geshem nedavot ('rain of generosity/freewill offerings') is a striking phrase — the rain is characterized as voluntary, abundant, and gift-like. The nachalatekha ('your inheritance') is Israel, God's own portion among the nations. When the people were nilah ('weary, exhausted'), God konanta ('established, restored, sustained') them.
11. The word chayyatekha ('your community, your living ones, your flock') is unusual and may refer to God's people as a flock or community. The provision for the ani ('poor, afflicted') from God's tovah ('goodness') reinforces the theme established in verses 6-7: God's power is directed toward the vulnerable.
12. The word omer ('word, utterance, command') is God's battle order. The hamevaserot ('the women who bear good news') is a feminine plural participle — women who announce victory. This reflects the ancient Near Eastern practice of women celebrating military triumph with song (cf. Miriam in Exodus 15:20-21, the women greeting David in 1 Samuel 18:6-7). The tsava rav ('great army, vast company') describes the multitude of women heralding the news.
13. The doubling yiddodun yiddodun ('they flee, they flee') emphasizes the panicked haste of defeated kings. Meanwhile, nevat bayit ('the dweller of the house,' the woman at home) distributes the shalal ('spoil, plunder'). The image is of such complete victory that even those who did not fight share in the bounty.
14. This is one of the most debated verses in the psalm. The shefatayim ('sheepfolds' or 'saddlebags' or 'ash heaps') is uncertain. The dove image may represent Israel, the plunder, or a decorative object taken as spoil. The silver and gold on the dove's wings suggest transformation — what was lowly (lying among the sheepfolds) becomes radiant. Many scholars read this as a metaphor for Israel's transformation from humiliation to splendor through God's victory.
15. The Shaddai ('Almighty') scatters kings — the divine name emphasizes overwhelming power. Zalmon is likely a mountain, possibly near Shechem (Judges 9:48). The snowfall on Zalmon may be literal (white snow covering a dark mountain) or metaphorical (the gleaming bones of the defeated or the white garments of victory). The image conveys sudden, dramatic transformation of the landscape.
16. The 'mountain of God' (har Elohim) here refers to Bashan, a region known for its high, rugged peaks (the modern Golan Heights). The word gavunnim ('many-peaked, humped') describes the imposing, multi-summit range. The repetition creates dramatic emphasis before the contrast in the next verse.
17. The contrast between Bashan's imposing peaks and Zion's modest elevation is deliberate — God consistently chooses the lesser, the smaller, the unlikely. The verb chamad ('he desired') is the same verb used in the tenth commandment ('you shall not covet'), here applied positively to God's own desire for Zion.
18. The rekhev Elohim ('chariots of God') are the heavenly host — an innumerable army. The phrase ribbotayim alfev shin'an ('twice ten-thousand, thousands of shin'an') uses a rare word (shin'an, possibly 'repetition' or 'splendor') to describe an uncountable multitude. The closing phrase Sinai ba-qodesh ('Sinai in the sanctuary') compresses two realities: the God who appeared at Sinai is now present in the temple. Sinai has moved to Zion.
19. The phrase shavita shevi ('you captured captivity') is an idiom meaning 'you took captives' — leading a train of defeated enemies behind the victor's chariot. The phrase ba-adam ('among humanity') indicates the gifts are received from or among human beings. The inclusion of sorerim ('the rebellious') extends the reach of God's dwelling even to former enemies.
20. The verb ya'amos ('he loads, he bears, he carries') can mean either 'he loads us with blessings' or 'he bears our load for us.' The ambiguity may be intentional — God both gives generously and carries what is too heavy for his people. The phrase yom yom ('day by day') makes this a daily reality, not an occasional intervention.
21. The plural moshavot ('acts of deliverance, saving deeds') emphasizes that God's rescue is not a single event but a pattern. The phrase la-mavet totsa'ot ('to/from death the exits/escapes') declares that even death's door has exits — and those exits belong to God. He controls the passage

between life and death.

22. The verb *yimchats* ('he will crush, he will shatter') targets the *rosh* ('head') of God's enemies. The 'hairy scalp' (*qodqod se'ar*) may indicate a warrior who wears his hair long as a sign of strength or consecration — even this emblem of power is shattered. The enemy is identified as one who *mithalekh ba-ashamav* ('walks about in his guilt') — someone who parades in his transgression without repentance.
23. God's promise to retrieve his people from Bashan (the distant northeast) and from the *metsulot yam* ('depths of the sea') expresses total recovery — no place is too remote or too deep for God to reach. These may also be places where enemies hide, and the promise is that God will pursue and recover justice from every hiding place.
24. The violent imagery of feet in blood and dogs lapping — standard ancient Near Eastern victory language — describes the totality of defeat. The dogs (*kelavekha*) are scavengers that consume the remains of the battlefield. This is not gratuitous but conventional war poetry expressing the completeness of God's triumph over those who oppose him.
25. The word *halikhotekha* ('your goings, your processions') shifts the psalm from battle narrative to liturgical pageant. The watchers see God's procession (*halikot*) entering the sanctuary (*ba-qodesh*). The possessive titles *Eli Malki* ('my God, my King') are deeply personal amid this public spectacle.
26. The processional order is described: *sharim* ('singers') lead, *nogrim* ('instrumentalists') follow, and in the center *alamot tofot* ('young women beating tambourines'). This mirrors the victory celebrations of Miriam (Exodus 15:20) and the women greeting David (1 Samuel 18:6). The tambourine-playing women are the heartbeat of the procession.
27. The command *barku Elohim* ('bless God') is issued *be-maqhelot* ('in the assemblies, in the congregations'). The phrase *mi-meqor Yisrael* ('from the fountain/source of Israel') may mean 'you who come from Israel's source' — those who trace their origin to the patriarchal promise.
28. Four tribes are named in the procession. Benjamin (*tsa'ir*, 'the youngest, the smallest') leads — another instance of the lesser going first. Judah's princes come with their *rigmatam* ('their throng' or 'their stoning,' a difficult word). Zebulun and Naphtali represent the northern tribes. The selection of two southern (Benjamin, Judah) and two northern (Zebulun, Naphtali) tribes may symbolize a united Israel in worship.
29. The verb *tsivvah* ('he has commanded, he has decreed') applies to *uzzekha* ('your strength') — God's power over Israel is not accidental but decreed. The prayer *uzzah Elohim* ('be strong, O God' or 'show your strength, God') asks God to continue demonstrating the power he has already shown (*zu pa'alta lanu*, 'that which you have worked for us').
30. The *heykhal* ('temple, palace') over Jerusalem becomes the reason kings (*melakhim*) bring *shay* ('tribute, gifts'). The psalm envisions foreign rulers acknowledging the God of Zion by sending offerings — the nations drawn to the temple that represents God's earthly throne.
31. This difficult verse uses animal imagery for hostile nations. The *chayyat qaneh* ('beast of the reeds') likely refers to the hippopotamus or crocodile of the Nile — a veiled reference to Egypt. The 'bulls' (*abbirim*) and 'calves' (*egley ammin*) represent powerful and lesser nations respectively. The prayer asks God to humble them until they bring silver tribute and to scatter those who love war.
32. The word *chashmannim* ('envoys, nobles, bronze vessels') is rare. Egypt (*Mitsrayim*) and Cush (the region south of Egypt, often identified with Nubia/Ethiopia) represent the farthest reaches of the known world. Cush stretching out its hands (*tarits yadav*) to God is a gesture of prayer and submission — even the most distant nations will reach toward the God of Israel.
33. The call expands to *mamlekhote ha-arets* ('kingdoms of the earth') — every political entity on the planet is summoned to sing. This is the psalm's most expansive worship command, reaching beyond individuals and peoples to organized nations.
34. The phrase *shemey shemey qedem* ('the heavens of the heavens of old') is the most exalted spatial designation possible — the highest tier of the ancient cosmos. God rides there as he rode the deserts in verse 5. His voice (*qol oz*, 'voice of power/strength') thunders from that height — the storm-voice that shakes the world.
35. The command *tenu oz l'Elohim* ('give/ascribe power to God') does not mean God lacks power but that worshipers acknowledge it. God's *ga'avato* ('his majesty, his pride, his exaltation') extends over Israel, and his *oz* ('strength') operates in the *shechqim* ('clouds, skies'). The dual location — over Israel and in the skies — holds together the particular and the cosmic.
36. The psalm closes with *nora* ('awesome, to be feared') proceeding from God's *miqdashekha* ('your sanctuaries'). The God of Israel (*El Yisrael*) is the one who gives (*noten*) *oz* ('power') and *ta'atsumot* ('mighty strength') to the people (*la-am*). The final words — *barukh Elohim* ('blessed be God') — seal the psalm with a benediction. The psalm that began with God rising against his enemies ends with God giving his strength to his people.

69

Summary: *Psalm 69 is one of the most frequently quoted psalms in the New Testament, a raw cry from the depths. The psalmist is drowning — waters have reached his neck, he sinks in deep mud, floodwaters sweep over him. He has cried until his throat is raw and his eyes fail from waiting. Those who hate him without cause outnumber the hairs on his head. He is estranged from his own brothers, consumed by zeal for God's house, and mocked by those who sit in the gate. He calls on God for rescue, asks that his enemies face devastating consequences, and closes with a vow of praise and a vision of Zion rebuilt, declaring that God hears the needy and does not despise his prisoners.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The New Testament applies this psalm to Jesus more than almost any other psalm except Psalm 22 and Psalm 110. 'Zeal for your house has consumed me' (verse 10) is quoted at the temple cleansing (John 2:17). 'They gave me vinegar to drink' (verse 22) is fulfilled at the cross (Matthew 27:48, John 19:29). 'Let their table become a snare' (verse 23) is applied by Paul to unbelieving Israel (Romans 11:9). 'Let their dwelling be desolate' (verse 26) is applied to Judas (Acts 1:20). The psalm's power lies in its refusal to sanitize suffering — the psalmist does not pretend faith makes pain disappear. He drowns, he weeps, he rages, and then he praises.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns this to David 'on shoshannim' (lilies), a musical direction. The imprecatory section (verses 23-29) is among the most severe in the Psalter — curses on enemies' tables, eyes, loins, and dwelling places, with a request that they be blotted from the book of the living. These verses have generated extensive ethical discussion. The closing verses (34-37) shift to a vision of Zion's restoration that some scholars date to the exilic or post-exilic period. The psalm's length (37 verses in Hebrew) and emotional range suggest it may preserve an extended prayer that passed through multiple stages of composition.*

Connections: *The drowning imagery connects to Jonah 2 (the prayer from the fish) and to the baptismal theology of Romans 6 (going down into death and coming up again). The 'zeal for your house' quotation at the temple cleansing (John 2:17) positions Jesus as the one who fulfills the psalmist's consuming passion for God's dwelling. The vinegar on the cross (John 19:28-30) explicitly cites this psalm. Paul's use of verse 23 in Romans 11:9-10 applies the hardening language to Israel's temporary unbelief. The book of life reference (verse 29) appears in Revelation 3:5, 13:8, and 20:15.*

¹For the director of music. According to 'Lilies.' Of David.

²Save me, God,
for the waters have reached my neck!

³I have sunk into deep mud where there is no foothold;
I have come into the depths of water,
and the flood sweeps over me.

⁴I am exhausted from calling out;
my throat is raw.
My eyes fail from waiting for my God.

⁵Those who hate me without cause
outnumber the hairs on my head.
Those who would destroy me — my lying enemies — are powerful.
What I did not steal, I am forced to give back.

⁶God, you know my foolishness;
my offenses are not hidden from you.

⁷Let those who wait for you not be put to shame through me,
 Lord GOD of Hosts.
 Let those who seek you not be humiliated through me,
 God of Israel.

⁸For it is because of you that I bear insult;
 shame covers my face.

⁹I have become a stranger to my brothers,
 a foreigner to my mother's sons.

¹⁰For zeal for your house has consumed me,
 and the insults of those who insult you have fallen on me.

¹¹I wept and fasted,
 and that became a source of insult to me.

¹²I put on sackcloth as my clothing,
 and I became a byword to them.

¹³Those who sit in the gate gossip about me;
 I am the theme of drunkards' songs.

¹⁴But as for me — my prayer is to you, LORD,
 at a time of favor.
 God, in the abundance of your faithful love,
 answer me with the reliability of your deliverance.

¹⁵Rescue me from the mud — do not let me sink!
 Let me be delivered from those who hate me
 and from the depths of water.

¹⁶Do not let the floodwater sweep me away;
 do not let the deep swallow me;
 do not let the pit close its mouth over me.

¹⁷Answer me, LORD, for your faithful love is good;
 in the abundance of your compassion, turn to me.

¹⁸Do not hide your face from your servant,
 for I am in distress — answer me quickly!

¹⁹Come near to my life and redeem it;
 because of my enemies, ransom me.

²⁰You know my insult, my shame, my humiliation;
 all my adversaries are before you.

²¹Insult has broken my heart, and I am sick.
 I looked for sympathy, but there was none;
 for comforters, but I found none.

²²They put poison in my food;
for my thirst, they gave me vinegar to drink.

²³Let their table become a snare before them,
and their peace offerings become a trap.

²⁴Let their eyes be darkened so they cannot see,
and make their backs shake continually.

²⁵Pour out your fury on them;
let the burning of your anger overtake them.

²⁶Let their encampment be desolate;
let no one live in their tents.

²⁷For they persecute the one you have struck;
they talk about the pain of those you have wounded.

²⁸Add punishment upon their punishment;
do not let them enter into your righteousness.

²⁹Let them be erased from the book of the living;
let them not be recorded with the righteous.

³⁰But I am afflicted and in pain;
your deliverance, God, will lift me to safety.

³¹I will magnify him with thanksgiving.
I will praise the name of God with a song;

³²This will please the LORD more than an ox,
more than a bull with horns and hooves.

³³The humble see it and are glad.
You who seek God — let your hearts live!

³⁴For the LORD hears the needy,
and he does not despise his prisoners.

³⁵Let heaven and earth praise him,
the seas and everything that moves in them!

³⁶For God will save Zion
and rebuild the cities of Judah;
they will settle there and possess it.

³⁷The descendants of his servants will inherit it,
and those who love his name will live there.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The notation *al shoshannim* ('according to lilies') likely indicates a melody or musical mode named after lilies. The same notation appears in Psalms 45 and 80.

2. The verb hoshi'eni is from the root y-sh-' (deliver, save) — the same root behind the names Joshua and Jesus. The waters reaching the nephesh means they have risen to the point where breathing is impossible.
3. The verb tava'ti ('I have sunk') describes being swallowed by yeven metsulah ('mud of the deep'). The phrase ein mo'amad ('there is no standing place') means the psalmist has nothing solid beneath him. The shibboleth ('flood, current, rushing stream') shetafatni ('has swept me away'). Three layers of drowning: mud, depth, and current.
4. The verb yaga'ti ('I am exhausted, I am weary') describes physical depletion from crying. The verb nichar ('it is scorched, it is raw, it is hoarse') applies to the geroni ('my throat') — the voice itself has been damaged by prolonged crying. The eyes kalu ('fail, are consumed') from extended watching (meyachel, 'hoping, waiting') for God. Every organ is affected: throat, eyes, and strength.
5. The phrase sone'ay chinnam ('those who hate me for nothing, without cause') is quoted by Jesus in John 15:25 ('They hated me without reason'). The final line (asher lo gazalti az ashiv, 'what I did not rob, then I must return') describes being forced to make restitution for crimes never committed — the injustice of false accusation.
6. The psalmist does not claim sinlessness — he acknowledges ivvalti ('my foolishness') and ashmotay ('my offenses, my guilt'). These are not hidden (lo nikhchadu) from God. Yet the psalm's argument is that the suffering he endures is disproportionate and unjust — he has real faults, but the hatred against him is chinnam ('without cause').
7. The psalmist fears that his suffering will become a stumbling block for others — that people who trust God (qovekha, 'those who wait for you') will be embarrassed (yevoshu) or humiliated (yikkallemu) because God appears not to rescue his own. This concern for the faith community elevates the prayer beyond personal interest.
8. The phrase alekha nasati cherpah ('because of you I have carried reproach') directly connects the psalmist's suffering to his allegiance to God. The shame is not for wrongdoing but for faithfulness — he is mocked precisely because of his commitment to God.
9. The terms muzar ('estranged, strange') and nokhri ('foreign, alien') describe social exclusion from the psalmist's own family. This is not political opposition but intimate betrayal — the people closest to him have treated him as an outsider.
10. The two halves of this verse explain the psalmist's isolation: internally he is consumed by devotion to God's house, and externally he absorbs the hostility that is actually directed at God. He is caught between fire from within and fire from without.
11. Even the psalmist's spiritual practices — weeping and fasting — are turned against him as objects of mockery. His religious sincerity is not respected but ridiculed.
12. Sackcloth (saq) is the garment of mourning and repentance. The psalmist's visible grief makes him a mashal ('proverb, byword, object lesson') — people use him as an example of what happens to the excessively devout.
13. The 'gate' (sha'ar) is the public square where legal and social discourse happens — the psalmist is discussed in the most public forum. The neginot shoteh shekhar ('songs of drinkers of strong drink') indicates he has become material for tavern mockery. His suffering is entertainment.
14. The phrase et ratson ('time of favor, acceptable time') indicates the psalmist trusts that God has appointed a time for response. He grounds his appeal in two divine attributes: rov chasdekha ('the abundance of your faithful love') and emet yish'ekha ('the truth/reliability of your deliverance'). Both faithful love and truth are invoked as the basis for rescue.
15. The petition returns to the drowning imagery of verses 2-3: tit ('mud, mire'), tiv'ah ('sinking'), and ma'amaqqey mayim ('depths of water'). The psalmist asks for rescue from both the physical danger and the human enemies — the two are intertwined.
16. Three drowning images in sequence: the shibboleth mayim ('flood of water') sweeping, the metsulah ('deep, abyss') swallowing, and the be'er ('pit, well') closing its mouth (piyha) over the psalmist. The pit closing its mouth is personification — the underworld as a creature that consumes.
17. The appeal is to two divine qualities: chesed (tov chasdekha, 'your faithful love is good') and rachamim (rov rachamekha, 'the abundance of your compassion'). The verb peneh ('turn') asks God to face the psalmist — the opposite of hiding the face.
18. The request al taster panekha ('do not hide your face') is the psalm's deepest fear — worse than drowning is God turning away. The urgency marker maher ('quickly, speedily') reflects the extremity of the situation. The title avdekha ('your servant') claims covenant relationship.
19. Two redemption verbs: ge'alah ('redeem it,' the kinsman-redeemer verb) and pedeni ('ransom me,' the commercial redemption verb). The psalmist asks God to act as both family redeemer and ransom-payer. The motivation 'because of my enemies' asks God to act for his own honor — if the psalmist perishes, the enemies triumph.
20. Three shame words accumulate: cherpah ('insult, reproach'), boshet ('shame'), and kelimmah ('humiliation, disgrace'). The declaration negdekha kol tsoreray ('all my adversaries are before you') means God sees every one of them — none is hidden.
21. The verb shavrah ('it has broken') applied to the lev ('heart') describes a heart that has been fractured by sustained verbal assault. The verb va-anusah ('and I am sick, and I am incurable') adds physical illness to emotional devastation. The search for nud ('sympathy, someone to show grief') and menachamim ('comforters') yields nothing — the isolation is total.
22. The word rosh can refer to any bitter, poisonous plant. The chomets ('vinegar') is sour wine — not refreshing but mocking. Together they represent the complete inversion of hospitality: what should nourish, harms.

23. The imprecatory section begins. The shulchan ('table') that should provide sustenance becomes a pach ('snare'). Their shelomim ('peace offerings' or 'welfare, prosperity') becomes a moqesh ('trap'). Paul quotes this verse in Romans 11:9-10, applying it to Israel's hardening.
24. The darkening of eyes (techshakhnah eyneyhem) removes the capacity to see and understand. The shaking of loins (motneyhem tamid ham'ad) describes loss of physical strength and stability. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 11:10.
25. The verb shefokh ('pour out') applies za'am ('fury, indignation') — the same pouring imagery used for the flood waters, now directed at the enemies. The verb yasigem ('let it overtake them') describes pursuit and capture — God's anger chasing down those who oppressed the psalmist.
26. The tirah ('encampment, fortress, dwelling') becomes neshamah ('desolate, devastated'). Peter quotes this verse in Acts 1:20, applying it to Judas Iscariot after his betrayal of Jesus — 'Let his dwelling place be desolate, and let no one live in it.'
27. The theological complexity is stark: the enemies persecute someone God has already struck (hikkita). Rather than showing compassion to the divinely afflicted, they add persecution to suffering. They 'talk about the pain' (yesapperu el makh'ov) of God's wounded ones — discussing their agony as gossip or accusation rather than with sympathy.
28. The phrase tenah avon al avonam ('give iniquity upon their iniquity') could mean 'add guilt to their guilt' (let their sins compound) or 'add punishment upon their punishment.' The phrase al yavo'u be-tsidqatekha ('let them not enter into your righteousness') asks that the enemies be excluded from the saving dimension of God's justice.
29. The sefer chayyim ('book of the living, book of life') is a divine register of those who belong to God's community. Being erased (yimmachu) from it means removal from divine protection and ultimately from life itself. This image appears in Exodus 32:32-33 (Moses' plea), Daniel 12:1, and throughout Revelation (3:5, 13:8, 20:15).
30. The contrast with the imprecatory section is sharp: the psalmist identifies himself as ani ('poor, afflicted') and ko'ev ('in pain'). His hope is not in vengeance but in God's yeshuah ('deliverance'), which will tesagveni ('set me on high, lift me to a secure height') — the same elevated refuge language that appears throughout the Psalms.
31. The shift from lament to praise begins. The verbs ahallela ('I will praise') and agaddlennu ('I will magnify him, make him great') are followed by the instruments of praise: shir ('song') and todah ('thanksgiving, thank-offering'). The mouth that cried out in pain now sings.
32. The psalmist declares that vocal praise (song and thanksgiving) is more pleasing (titav) to God than the most impressive animal sacrifice — a shor par ('ox, bull') with full horns (magrin) and hooves (mafris). This anticipates the prophetic tradition that prioritizes the posture of the heart over ritual (1 Samuel 15:22, Hosea 6:6, Micah 6:6-8).
33. The anavim ('humble, lowly, afflicted') see the psalmist's deliverance and are glad (yismachu). The exhortation vihi levavkhem ('let your hearts live') addresses fellow seekers of God — the psalmist's rescue becomes a source of life for the entire community of the afflicted.
34. The theological summary: YHWH shomea el evyonim ('the LORD hears the needy') and lo vazah asirav ('he does not despise his prisoners'). The word vazah ('despise, treat with contempt') is the opposite of what God does — he treats the imprisoned and impoverished with dignity and attention.
35. The scope of praise expands to include the entire created order: shamayim ('heaven'), erets ('earth'), yammim ('seas'), and kol romes bam ('everything that moves in them'). The psalmist's personal experience of deliverance calls for a cosmic response.
36. The psalm expands from personal to national hope: God will yoshi'a ('save, deliver') Zion and yivneh ('build, rebuild') the cities of Judah. The people will yashvu ('settle, dwell') and yireshuha ('possess it, inherit it'). Some scholars see this as evidence of an exilic or post-exilic date for these closing verses.
37. The psalm closes with a vision of generational continuity: the zera ('seed, descendants') of God's avadav ('servants') will inherit the land, and those who love God's name (ohavey shemo) will dwell in it. The psalm that began in drowning ends in settlement. The movement from death to life, from flood to home, is complete.

70

Summary: Psalm 70 is a compact, urgent prayer for rescue. Nearly identical to Psalm 40:14-18, it stands as an independent plea for God to hurry. The psalmist asks God to deliver him and come quickly to his help. He prays that those who seek his life will be put to shame and driven back in humiliation, while those who seek God will rejoice and say 'God is great!' The psalm closes with the psalmist identifying himself as poor and needy, calling God his help and deliverer, and begging God not to delay.

What Makes This Remarkable: The brevity of this psalm is itself remarkable. At only six verses (five in Hebrew), it is one of the shortest psalms in the collection and functions almost as a distress signal — concentrated, repeatable, and memorizable. The repetition of 'hurry' (chushah) frames the psalm as a plea against delay. There is no extended complaint, no detailed description of enemies, no theological

argument — just the raw request for speed. The psalm's near-duplicate relationship with Psalm 40:14-18 raises questions about how psalms circulated and were adapted for different liturgical purposes. As an independent unit, it reads as a prayer that could be used in any moment of sudden crisis.

Translation Friction: *The superscription identifies this as 'of David, to bring to remembrance' (lehazkir). The same notation appears on Psalm 38. The phrase may indicate a memorial offering context or simply a prayer for God to 'remember' the supplicant. The relationship to Psalm 40:14-18 is debated: did Psalm 70 extract these verses, or did Psalm 40 incorporate an originally independent prayer? Minor textual differences exist between the two versions (Psalm 70 uses Elohim where Psalm 40 uses YHWH in some instances). The brevity means that every word carries significant weight, making even small textual variants theologically relevant.*

Connections: *The near-duplicate in Psalm 40:14-18 provides the primary literary connection. The plea for divine haste connects to the wider Psalter theme of waiting versus urgency — Psalm 62 emphasizes silent waiting, while Psalm 70 emphasizes speed. The phrase 'poor and needy' (ani ve-evyon) appears across the Psalms (9:18, 35:10, 37:14, 40:18, 72:13, 86:1, 109:22) as a self-identification by the righteous sufferer. The petition for enemies to be 'turned back' and 'put to shame' echoes Psalm 35:4 and 35:26.*

1For the director of music. Of David. For remembrance.

2God, come to rescue me!

LORD, hurry to help me!

3Let those who seek my life be put to shame and humiliated;

let those who desire my ruin
be driven back and disgraced.

4Let those who say "Aha! Aha!"

be turned back because of their shame.

5Let all who seek you rejoice and be glad in you;

let those who love your deliverance say always,
"God is great!"

6But I — I am poor and needy.

God, hurry to me!

You are my help and my deliverer;

LORD, do not delay!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The notation lehazkir ('for remembrance, to bring to remembrance') may indicate a liturgical function connected to the memorial offering (azkarah, Leviticus 2:2) or may simply designate this as a prayer requesting God's attention and memory.
2. The verb chushah is an imperative demanding speed. This is the same verb used in Psalm 22:20, 38:23, and 71:12 — the standard emergency word for calling God to act without delay.
3. Four verbs of shame and defeat accumulate: yevoshu ('let them be ashamed'), yachperu ('let them be humiliated, let them blush'), yissogu achor ('let them be turned backward, driven back'), and yikkallemu ('let them be disgraced'). The enemies are identified by their intent: mevaqshey nafshi ('seekers of my life') and chafetsey ra'ati ('those who desire my harm'). The prayer does not ask for their death but for their defeat and public embarrassment.
4. The exclamation he'ach he'ach ('Aha! Aha!') is a taunt — the gloating of those who take pleasure in the psalmist's suffering. The prayer asks that their gloating be reversed: they will retreat (yashuvu, 'let them turn back') on account of their own boshtam ('shame'). The mockers will be mocked.
5. The two joy verbs yasisu ('let them be joyful') and yismechu ('let them be glad') match the two shame verbs of verse 3, creating structural balance. The phrase ohavey yeshuatekha ('those who love your deliverance') identifies the faithful as people who love not just God but specifically God's saving action.

6. The word *mefalti* ('my deliverer') comes from the root p-l-t ('to escape, to deliver') and suggests God as the one who provides a way out. The final verb *te'achar* ('delay, tarry, be late') treats God's intervention as time-sensitive — the psalmist's situation cannot wait.

71

Summary: *An elderly psalmist pleads for God's continued protection and deliverance in old age. Enemies are circling, interpreting his frailty as evidence that God has abandoned him. The psalm is a sustained cry of trust from someone who has known God since birth and now refuses to believe the final chapter will be one of abandonment. It draws heavily on Psalm 31 and Psalm 22, weaving earlier language into a new plea shaped by the particular vulnerability of aging.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the few psalms that explicitly addresses the experience of growing old. The psalmist does not pretend that age has not diminished him — he acknowledges that his strength is failing and his enemies see opportunity. But the theological argument is powerful: the God who sustained him from the womb (verse 6), who taught him from youth (verse 17), cannot logically abandon him now. The psalm turns aging itself into a theological argument. If God's faithfulness is real, it must extend to the end. The repeated phrase 'do not cast me off' (*al-tashlikeni*) carries the raw urgency of someone who has watched contemporaries die alone and fears the same fate.*

Translation Friction: *Psalm 71 has no superscription in the Hebrew text, which is unusual in Book II of the Psalter. The LXX attributes it to David and adds a note about the sons of Jonadab and the first captives. Its heavy borrowing from Psalm 31 and Psalm 22 has led some scholars to view it as a mosaic psalm — a composition assembled from existing psalmic language. This does not diminish its theological force; it may amplify it, as the psalmist deliberately reaches for the tradition's deepest language of trust in his hour of need.*

Connections: *Verses 1-3 closely parallel Psalm 31:2-4 (in Hebrew versification). The phrase 'from my mother's womb' (*mi-beten immi*) in verse 6 echoes Psalm 22:10-11, connecting this psalm to the larger tradition of lifelong divine care. The commitment to declare God's righteousness 'all day long' (*kol hayyom*) in verse 24 connects to the Psalter's broader theology of perpetual praise. The psalm's placement after Psalm 70 (a brief cry for help) creates a natural expansion — the short plea becomes a sustained meditation.*

¹In You, O LORD, I have taken refuge —
let me never be put to shame.

²In Your righteousness deliver me and rescue me;
turn Your ear toward me and save me.

³Be for me a rock of refuge,
a stronghold to enter continually.
You have commanded my deliverance,
for You are my rock and my fortress.

⁴My God, rescue me from the hand of the wicked,
from the grasp of the unjust and ruthless.

⁵For You are my hope, Lord GOD,
my trust since my youth.

⁶On You I have leaned from the womb;
from my mother's body You drew me out.
My praise is continually of You.

⁷I have become a sign to many,
but You are my strong refuge.

⁸Let my mouth be filled with Your praise,
all day long with Your splendor.

⁹Do not cast me off in the time of old age;
when my strength is spent, do not abandon me.

¹⁰For my enemies speak against me,
and those who watch for my life conspire together,

¹¹saying, 'God has abandoned him.
Pursue and seize him,
for there is no one to rescue him.'

¹²O God, do not be far from me;
my God, hurry to help me!

¹³Let those who accuse my life be shamed and consumed;
let those who seek my ruin
be wrapped in disgrace and humiliation.

¹⁴But I — I will hope continually,
and I will add still more to all Your praise.

¹⁵My mouth will declare Your righteousness,
all day long Your salvation,
for I cannot count them.

¹⁶I will come with the mighty deeds of the Lord GOD;
I will declare Your righteousness — Yours alone.

¹⁷O God, You have taught me from my youth,
and until now I have declared Your wonders.

¹⁸And even to old age and gray hair,
O God, do not abandon me,
until I declare Your arm to a generation,
Your power to all who are yet to come.

¹⁹Your righteousness, O God, reaches to the heights;
You who have done great things —
O God, who is like You?

²⁰You who have made us see many and bitter troubles
will revive us again,
and from the depths of the earth
You will bring us up again.

²¹You will increase my honor
and turn to comfort me.

²²I also will praise You with the harp
for Your faithfulness, my God.
I will make music to You with the lyre,
O Holy One of Israel.

²³My lips will shout for joy when I make music to You —
my very life, which You have redeemed.

²⁴My tongue also, all day long,
will murmur of Your righteousness,
for those who sought my ruin
have been shamed and disgraced.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The near-verbatim overlap with Psalm 31:2 is intentional. The psalmist is quoting established liturgical language — reaching for words that have already been tested and proven in Israel's worship.
2. The verb *palat* ('to rescue, to cause to escape') implies being pulled out of a tight, dangerous space — the image is of extraction from a trap or a collapsing structure.
3. Psalm 31:3 reads *tsur maoz* ('rock of strength') while this verse has *tsur maon* ('rock of refuge/habitation'). The one-letter difference (*zayin* vs. *nun*) may reflect textual variation, but the Masoretic text preserves *maon*, emphasizing dwelling rather than mere strength.
4. The word *chomets* ('ruthless, oppressive') literally means 'one who is sour, leavened' — the image is of someone whose character has fermented into cruelty. The three terms — *rasha* ('wicked'), *me-avvel* ('unjust'), and *chomets* ('ruthless') — paint a portrait of the psalmist's enemies as morally corrupt at every level.
5. The pairing of *Adonai YHVH* ('Lord GOD') is relatively rare in the Psalms and signals particular solemnity. The psalmist addresses God by His covenant name combined with the title of sovereignty.
6. The verb *gazah* is rare and debated. Some read it as 'my portion' (from a different root), but the context of birth imagery (*beten*, *me'ei immi*) strongly supports the meaning 'the one who cut me free' — referring to the severing of the umbilical cord at birth. This reading appears in the LXX (*skepastes mou*, 'my protector') by interpretive paraphrase.
7. The word *mofet* appears in Exodus for the plagues (signs and wonders) and in Deuteronomy 28:46 for the curses that will become 'a sign and a wonder.' The psalmist's situation has become publicly visible and is being interpreted by observers — the question is whether they are reading it correctly.
8. The parallelism pairs *tehillateka* ('Your praise') with *tif'arteka* ('Your splendor, glory, beauty'). Praise here is not merely thanksgiving but declaration of God's magnificent character. The phrase *kol hayyom* ('all day long') echoes verse 24 and creates a frame of perpetual worship.
9. This verse has no parallel in Psalm 31, confirming that Psalm 71 is not merely a copy but an original composition shaped by the experience of aging. The plea against abandonment in old age is theologically distinctive in the Psalter.
10. The phrase *shomrei nafshi* ('those who watch for my life') describes predators watching for the moment of vulnerability. They are not merely hostile; they are strategic, waiting for the right moment to strike — and old age provides it.
11. The enemies' statement mirrors the taunt against the sufferer in Psalm 22:9 and Psalm 3:3 — the recurring claim that God has withdrawn. The psalmist must contend not only with his enemies but with their theology.
12. The verb *chushah* ('hurry, hasten') conveys desperation — the situation is urgent and delay could be fatal. This verse echoes Psalm 22:12 and 22:20, reinforcing the literary connections between these psalms.
13. The verb *ya'atu* ('let them be wrapped, clothed') uses clothing imagery for shame — disgrace becomes a garment that covers them completely. The psalmist asks that the enemies' own weapon (public shame) be turned back upon them.
14. The verb *yachal* ('to hope, to wait') in the Psalms always implies patient endurance under pressure — not passive optimism but active, stubborn trust maintained against contrary evidence.

15. The word seforot ('numbers, reckonings') is rare and may also carry the sense of 'literary compositions' — the psalmist may be saying not only that he cannot count God's acts but that he lacks the literary skill to do them justice.
16. The phrase gevurot Adonai YHVH ('mighty deeds of the Lord GOD') refers to God's powerful acts in history — not abstract power but demonstrated intervention. The emphasis levaddeka ('Yours alone') is exclusive: the psalmist credits no one else, no other god, no human agency.
17. The word nifl'ot ('wonders') refers to God's extraordinary, incomprehensible acts — the same word used for the Exodus miracles. The psalmist's personal experience of God is framed in the same language as Israel's national experience.
18. The argument that God should preserve the psalmist for the sake of future testimony is a recurring motif in the Psalms (cf. Psalm 6:6, 30:10, 88:11-13). The dead cannot praise God — therefore God has a vested interest in keeping His worshipers alive.
19. The phrase mi kamokha is a declaration of incomparability that runs through Israel's worship from the Exodus to the Psalter. It is not philosophical monotheism but experiential — no other power has done what this God has done.
20. The Qere/Ketiv variation between singular and plural pronouns in this verse reflects textual uncertainty about whether the psalm is purely individual or has been adapted for communal use. The Masoretic Qere reads plural ('us'), suggesting liturgical adaptation.
21. The word gedullatai ('my greatness, my honor, my dignity') is significant for an elderly person whose enemies have declared him abandoned. God will not merely rescue him — God will restore his standing. The verb tissov ('You will turn around') suggests God turning back toward the psalmist with comfort after a season of apparent distance.
22. The nevel was a larger stringed instrument, possibly a type of angular harp, while the kinnor was the smaller lyre associated with David (1 Samuel 16:23). Together they represent full musical worship — the psalmist's response to deliverance will be public and artistic.
23. The verb padita ('You have redeemed') uses the language of payment and liberation — padah means to buy back, to ransom, to liberate by paying a price. The psalmist's life has been purchased back from the grip of death and enemies.
24. The pairing of boshu ('they are ashamed') and chafru ('they are disgraced') is a standard Hebrew word pair for total public humiliation. The psalmist who feared being put to shame (verse 1) now sees that shame transferred to his enemies — the reversal is complete.

72

Summary: *A royal psalm attributed to Solomon (or written for Solomon by David) that envisions the ideal king whose reign embodies perfect justice, compassion for the poor, universal dominion, and abundance that mirrors Eden. The psalm closes Book II of the Psalter with a doxology (verses 18-19) and a colophon noting the end of the prayers of David son of Jesse. It is the most expansive portrait of the messianic king in the Psalter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 72 describes a king whose justice produces cosmic fertility — when the king judges rightly, the mountains bear peace and the hills produce righteousness (verse 3). This is not metaphor for the ancient Israelite mind; it is theology. The king's justice and the land's fruitfulness are connected through the covenant. The psalm reaches its most astonishing scope in verses 8-11, where the king's dominion extends from sea to sea and from the River to the ends of the earth, and all kings bow before him. No historical Israelite king achieved this, which is precisely why the psalm became messianic — it describes what should be, and Israel kept praying it forward. The tender attention to the poor and crushed (verses 12-14) places compassion at the center of royal power: the king's greatness is measured not by conquest but by whom he defends.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription li-Shlomoh can mean 'of Solomon,' 'for Solomon,' or 'concerning Solomon.' If David composed it for his son, verse 20 ('The prayers of David son of Jesse are ended') makes sense as a colophon. If Solomon wrote it about himself, the colophon was added by a later editor collecting Book II. The universal scope (verses 8-11) far exceeds Solomon's actual kingdom, leading many scholars to read this as idealized royal theology rather than historical description. In Jewish tradition, the psalm is messianic; in Christian tradition, it is applied to Christ.*

Connections: *The language of verse 8 ('from sea to sea, from the River to the ends of the earth') reappears in Zechariah 9:10 in an explicitly messianic context. The concern for the poor echoes the covenant code (Exodus 22:21-27) and anticipates the prophetic critique of kings who failed this mandate (Jeremiah 22:13-17). The psalm's placement at the end of Book II creates a structural parallel with the doxologies that close Books I (Psalm 41:14), III (Psalm 89:53), IV (Psalm 106:48), and V (Psalm 150). The 'gold of Sheba' (verse 15) connects to the Solomon narrative in 1 Kings 10.*

¹Of Solomon.

O God, give Your judgments to the king,
and Your righteousness to the king's son.

²May he judge Your people with righteousness
and Your afflicted ones with justice.

³May the mountains bear peace for the people,
and the hills, through righteousness.

⁴May he vindicate the afflicted of the people,
save the children of the needy,
and crush the oppressor.

⁵May they fear You as long as the sun endures,
and before the moon, through all generations.

⁶May he come down like rain on mown grass,
like showers that drench the earth.

⁷In his days may the righteous flourish
and peace abound until the moon is no more.

⁸May he rule from sea to sea,
and from the River to the ends of the earth.

⁹Before him the desert dwellers will kneel,
and his enemies will lick the dust.

¹⁰The kings of Tarshish and the coastlands will bring tribute;
the kings of Sheba and Seba will present gifts.

¹¹Let all kings bow down before him;
let all nations serve him.

¹²For he will deliver the needy who cries out,
the afflicted who has no helper.

¹³He will have pity on the poor and needy,
and the lives of the needy he will save.

¹⁴From oppression and violence he will redeem their lives,
and their blood will be precious in his eyes.

¹⁵May he live! May gold from Sheba be given to him.
May prayer be offered for him continually;
may he be blessed all day long.

¹⁶May there be abundance of grain in the land,
on the tops of the mountains may it wave like Lebanon;
and may people blossom from the city

like grass of the earth.

¹⁷May his name endure forever;
may his name flourish as long as the sun.
May all nations find blessing in him;
may they call him happy.

¹⁸Blessed be the LORD God, the God of Israel,
who alone does wonders.

¹⁹And blessed be His glorious name forever;
may the whole earth be filled with His glory.
Amen and Amen.

²⁰Here conclude the prayers of David, Jesse's son.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription li-Shlomoh is ambiguous: the preposition le- can mean 'of,' 'for,' 'to,' or 'concerning.' If this is a prayer by David for Solomon (as the colophon in verse 20 suggests), it is a father's intercession for his son's reign.
2. The word ani ('afflicted, poor, humble') describes those who are economically and socially powerless. In the Psalms, the aniyyim are consistently portrayed as God's particular concern — the ones He hears, defends, and vindicates.
3. The verb yis'u ('may they bear, carry, lift up') is the same verb used for carrying a burden or bearing fruit. The mountains are portrayed as productive — their yield is peace. This imagery will reappear in Isaiah 55:12 where the mountains 'break forth into singing.'
4. The verb yishpot here means not merely 'judge' but 'vindicate' — to render a verdict in favor of someone who has been wronged. The ideal king does not merely hear cases; he actively rescues (yoshia) the vulnerable and actively destroys (vidakke) those who exploit them. Justice is not passive.
5. The subject shifts from the king to the people: 'may they fear You' — the king's just rule produces reverence for God. The temporal markers — 'as long as the sun,' 'before the moon,' 'through all generations' (dor dorim) — express permanence. The prayer is for an everlasting dynasty, a hope that no historical dynasty fulfilled.
6. This is one of the most beautiful images in the Psalter. The comparison of a just king to rain reverses the usual biblical metaphor of storm-God as warrior; here, God's representative is gentle, nourishing, and life-giving. The same image appears in 2 Samuel 23:4 in David's last words.
7. The verb yifrach ('may he flourish, sprout, blossom') continues the agricultural imagery — the righteous bloom like plants under the king's just rule. The phrase ad beli yare'ach ('until there is no moon') means 'forever' — as long as the created order endures.
8. Zechariah 9:10 quotes this verse nearly verbatim in an explicitly messianic prophecy about a coming king who rides on a donkey. The psalm's language became the vocabulary of messianic hope in later Jewish and Christian tradition.
9. The tsiyyim ('desert dwellers, inhabitants of arid places') represent the most remote and untamed peoples — even they submit. The phrase afar yelachekhu ('they will lick the dust') is an ancient Near Eastern image of complete submission: prostrating so low that one's face touches the ground. It appears in Micah 7:17 and Isaiah 49:23.
10. The arrival of the queen of Sheba with gifts in 1 Kings 10 is the historical echo of this poetic vision. The psalm imagines what happened once under Solomon happening perpetually under the ideal king.
11. The universality is absolute: kol melakhim ('all kings') and kol goyim ('all nations'). The verb yishtachavu ('they will bow down, prostrate themselves') is the standard word for worship in the Hebrew Bible — the line between political submission and religious worship is intentionally blurred. In bowing to this king, the nations are acknowledging the God who appointed him.
12. This verse provides the theological justification for the universal dominion described in verses 8-11. The king deserves to rule the world because he rescues the helpless. In prophetic literature, Israel's actual kings are condemned precisely for failing this standard (see Ezekiel 34, Jeremiah 22).
13. The verb yachos ('he will have pity, spare, show compassion') describes an emotional response — the king does not merely adjudicate cases involving the poor; he feels for them. The repeated emphasis on evyonim ('needy ones') in this verse drives the point home through repetition.
14. The word tokh is often emended to 'oppression' or 'exploitation' (from a root meaning 'to oppress'), though some read it as 'deceit.' Paired with chamas ('violence'), it describes the two primary ways the powerful exploit the weak: through fraud and through force.
15. The subject shifts rapidly: 'may he live' refers to the king, 'may gold be given to him' describes tribute, and 'may prayer be offered for him' shows the people praying for their king. The gold of Sheba connects to the Solomon narrative (1 Kings 10:2, 10). The phrase tamid kol hayyom ('continually, all day long') intensifies the blessing — the king is to be upheld by ceaseless intercession.

16. The word *pissat* is difficult. It may mean 'handful,' 'abundance,' or 'a cake/wafer' of grain. The context of overwhelming fertility supports 'abundance.' The image of grain on mountaintops is deliberately impossible under normal conditions — it signals the eschatological, Eden-like character of this king's reign.
17. The LXX and Targum both read *yinnon* as a messianic title. The Talmud (Sanhedrin 98b) lists *Yinnon* as one of the names of the Messiah. The echo of the Abrahamic blessing ('all nations will be blessed in him') transforms the royal psalm into a covenant psalm — the king is the fulfillment of what God promised to Abraham.
18. This doxology closes Book II (Psalms 42-72) just as Psalm 41:14 closes Book I. Each of the Psalter's five books ends with a doxology, and the final book (Book V) ends with five consecutive psalms of praise (146-150) as a grand doxology for the entire collection.
19. The double Amen ('Amen and Amen') is the standard closing formula for the doxologies that end each book of the Psalter. Amen means 'truly, so be it, let it be established' — it is the congregation's affirmation of the prayer.
20. The word *kallu* ('are finished, are ended, are completed') from *kalah* has a sense of finality and completion. This colophon is one of the clearest editorial fingerprints in the Psalter, revealing the hand of the collectors who shaped the book into its current five-part structure.

73

Summary: *Asaph's crisis of faith. The psalmist confesses that he nearly lost his footing when he saw the prosperity of the wicked. Their lives appear effortless, free of suffering, draped in arrogance — and they mock God with impunity. The psalmist's own faithfulness seems pointless until he enters the sanctuary and perceives the wicked's final destiny. The psalm pivots from envy to trust, culminating in one of the most intimate declarations of faith in the Hebrew Bible: 'Whom have I in heaven but You?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 73 is the Hebrew Bible's most honest exploration of theodicy at the personal level. Unlike Job, who suffers catastrophically, the psalmist here suffers the quieter torment of watching the wicked thrive while he remains faithful for apparently no return. His near-apostasy is described with startling physical imagery — 'my feet had almost slipped, my steps had nearly given way' (verse 2). What saves him is not an intellectual answer but an encounter in the sanctuary (verse 17) where he perceives — the verb is not 'understands' but 'perceives,' an act of spiritual seeing rather than rational calculation. The resolution in verses 23-28 is not that suffering is explained but that God's presence is sufficient. The psalm moves from 'Why do the wicked prosper?' to 'You are enough.'*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *akh tov le-Yisrael Elohim* ('Surely God is good to Israel') in verse 1 has a textual crux. The Masoretic text reads *le-Yisrael* ('to Israel'), but the parallel with *levvar levav* ('the pure in heart') has led many to read *la-yashar* ('to the upright') — a one-letter emendation. We retain the Masoretic reading, since the tension between communal confession ('God is good to Israel') and personal crisis ('but as for me, my feet almost slipped') is precisely the psalm's point.*

Connections: *Psalm 73 opens Book III of the Psalter (Psalms 73-89), a collection dominated by Asaph psalms and national laments. Its placement at the head of Book III is deliberate: after the royal optimism of Psalm 72 (closing Book II), Psalm 73 begins with doubt. The psalm is often compared to Job and Ecclesiastes as wisdom literature wrestling with the same question: does righteousness pay? The answer here is distinctive — not that it pays in material terms, but that the relationship itself is the reward. Verse 25 ('Whom have I in heaven but You?') anticipates Habakkuk 3:17-18, where the prophet rejoices in God even when the fig tree does not blossom.*

¹A psalm of Asaph.

Surely God is good to Israel,
to those pure in heart.

²But as for me — my feet had almost stumbled;
my steps had nearly slipped away.

³For I envied the arrogant
when I saw the well-being of the wicked.

⁴For they have no pain in their death;
their bodies are sleek and well-fed.

⁵They are not burdened like other mortals;
they are not afflicted like other people.

⁶Therefore pride is their necklace;
violence wraps them like a garment.

⁷Their eyes bulge out from fatness;
the fantasies of their hearts overflow.

⁸They mock and speak with malice;
they speak of oppression from on high.

⁹They set their mouths against the heavens,
and their tongues strut through the earth.

¹⁰Therefore the people turn to them,
and waters of abundance are drained by them.

¹¹And they say, 'How can God know?
Is there knowledge in the Most High?'

¹²Look — these are the wicked,
always at ease, piling up wealth.

¹³Surely I have kept my heart pure for nothing
and washed my hands in innocence in vain.

¹⁴I have been stricken all day long
and punished every morning.

¹⁵If I had said, 'I will speak this way' —
I would have betrayed the generation of Your children.

¹⁶When I tried to understand this,
it was troubling in my eyes —

¹⁷until I entered the sanctuary of God;
then I perceived their end.

¹⁸Surely You set them on slippery ground;
You cast them down to ruin.

¹⁹How suddenly they become a horror!
They are swept away, utterly destroyed by terrors.

²⁰Like a dream when one awakens —
O Lord, when You rouse Yourself,
You will despise their image.

²¹When my heart was embittered
and I was pierced in my innermost being,

²²I was senseless and did not understand;
I was like a brute beast before You.

²³Yet I am always with You;
You hold my right hand.

²⁴With Your counsel You guide me,
and afterward You will take me into glory.

²⁵Whom have I in heaven but You?
And besides You I desire nothing on earth.

²⁶My flesh and my heart may fail,
but God is the rock of my heart
and my portion forever.

²⁷For those far from You will perish;
You destroy all who are unfaithful to You.

²⁸But as for me — nearness to God is my good.
I have made the Lord GOD my refuge,
so that I may tell of all Your works.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Masoretic text reads le-Yisrael ('to Israel'). Many scholars emend to la-yashar ('to the upright') based on the parallel with levvar levav ('pure of heart'). Both readings are theologically coherent: the MT emphasizes God's goodness to the covenant people, while the emendation emphasizes God's goodness to the morally upright.
2. The verb shuppekhu ('were poured out') is striking — it describes liquid being spilled, steps dissolving like water. The near-apostasy is depicted not as rebellion but as erosion: the ground beneath the psalmist's convictions was washing away.
3. The word hollelim ('arrogant, boastful') comes from halal in its negative sense — 'to be foolish, to boast.' These are not merely wicked people but people who flaunt their wickedness. Their arrogance is part of what makes them unbearable to the psalmist.
3. Register departure: shalom rendered as 'well-being' rather than default 'peace' because the psalmist observes the prosperity/comfort of the wicked — their material and physical wholeness, not peace in the relational or political sense.
4. The word chartsubot ('bonds, pangs, fetters') is debated. Some read it as 'pangs' (they suffer no pain), others as 'bonds' (nothing binds or constrains them). The following phrase uvari ulam ('and fat/healthy is their body') supports the reading that these are people whose physical condition betrays no suffering. They are visibly prosperous — their ease is written on their bodies.
5. The parallel between enosh ('mortal man' — emphasizing frailty) and adam ('humankind') creates a comprehensive statement: the wicked are exempt from the suffering that defines human existence. This is what makes them so maddening to the psalmist.
6. The word chamas ('violence, wrongdoing') is the same word used in Genesis 6:11 to describe the pre-flood world that provoked God's destruction. Its use here foreshadows the eventual judgment described later in the psalm.
7. The image is grotesque: eyes protruding from fat faces — physical excess mirroring moral excess. The phrase avru maskiyyot levav ('the imaginations of the heart overflow, pass beyond') suggests that their desires know no limit — they have everything and still want more. The word maskiyyot can mean 'images, pictures, imaginings' — their hearts generate endless schemes.

8. The verb *yamiku* is difficult — it may mean 'they mock, they scoff' or 'they dissolve, they melt' (i.e., they make others dissolve with fear). The phrase *mi-marom yedabberu* ('they speak from on high') captures their arrogance: they speak as if from a throne, as if they are above everyone, as if their position exempts them from accountability.
9. The phrase *shattu vashamayim pihem* ('they set their mouths in the heavens') is an image of cosmic arrogance — mouths positioned against the sky itself, speaking as rivals to God. This is not mere rudeness but theological rebellion.
10. This difficult verse seems to describe the wicked's followers — ordinary people who observe their prosperity and are drawn to them. The 'waters of abundance' (*mei male*) likely means the wicked drink deeply of success, draining the cup of prosperity dry. The verse captures the social effect of visible wickedness: it attracts a following.
11. The title *Elyon* ('Most High') emphasizes God's supreme position — and the irony is sharp: the very God whose exalted position should guarantee oversight is the one whose knowledge they deny. The higher God is, the less He sees — that is their theology.
12. The phrase *shalvei olam* can mean 'perpetually at ease' or 'at ease in the world.' Either reading conveys the same frustration: the wicked enjoy uninterrupted, seemingly permanent tranquility.
13. The phrase 'washed my hands in innocence' echoes Psalm 26:6 and the ritual handwashing of innocence (cf. Deuteronomy 21:6). The psalmist has maintained both inner purity (heart) and outer conduct (hands) — and concludes it was worthless.
14. The contrast with verses 4-5 is deliberate: the wicked have no pain (verse 4) and are not stricken like others (verse 5), but the psalmist is *nagua* ('stricken, plagued') *kol hayyom* ('all day long') and receives *tokhachah* ('punishment, correction') *labbeqarot* ('every morning'). Morning, which should bring fresh mercy, brings only fresh suffering.
15. The verb *bagadti* ('I would have betrayed, dealt treacherously') is a strong word — it is used for marital infidelity, treaty violations, and religious apostasy. The psalmist understands that publicizing his crisis of faith would be a form of violence against the believing community.
16. The word *amal* ('labor, trouble, toil') is the same word used in verse 5 for the suffering the wicked avoid. Now the psalmist's attempt to comprehend the problem is itself *amal* — even thinking about it is exhausting. The problem resists rational solution.
17. The plural *miqdeshei* ('sanctuaries') may refer to the temple complex with its multiple courts, or it may be a plural of majesty. The key point is that the resolution comes not from philosophical reasoning but from worship — from entering God's presence.
18. The word *chalaqot* ('slippery places') connects to the wisdom tradition's warnings about the 'slippery path' (Proverbs 5:6, Jeremiah 23:12). The wicked's prosperity was always precarious — the psalmist simply could not see it until he entered the sanctuary.
19. The word *ke-raga* ('like a moment, in an instant') emphasizes the speed of their collapse. The prosperity that seemed permanent vanishes instantaneously. The triple emphasis — *shammah* ('horror, desolation'), *safu* ('they are swept away'), *tammu* ('they are finished, consumed') — leaves nothing standing.
20. The image of God awakening is anthropomorphic — God does not literally sleep — but it captures the psalmist's perception: the period of the wicked's prosperity felt like God was asleep, and their judgment will feel like God waking up. The same language appears in Psalm 44:24 ('Awake! Why do You sleep, O Lord?').
21. The verb *yitchammets* ('was embittered, was soured') comes from *chamets* ('to be sour, to leaven') — the same root as vinegar. The psalmist's heart had gone sour with envy. The *kilyot* ('kidneys, innermost parts') were considered the seat of deep emotions and conscience in Hebrew anthropology. The psalmist's entire inner life had been corroded by the problem.
22. This verse is the psalm's act of repentance. The crisis of faith described in verses 2-16 is now diagnosed as a failure of perception — not a failure of God. The psalmist takes responsibility for his near-apostasy by calling it what it was: stupidity.
23. The phrase 'You hold my right hand' reverses the image of verse 2 (feet slipping). The hand that was grasping at nothing is now held by God. This is one of the Psalter's most powerful statements of grace — God's grip is stronger than the psalmist's doubt.
24. The phrase *achar kavod* has been translated as 'afterward to glory,' 'after glory,' 'according to glory,' and 'with honor afterward.' The ambiguity may be intentional — the psalmist is reaching beyond what he can clearly articulate, groping toward a hope that the Hebrew Bible's theology of death has not yet fully developed.
25. The verb *chafats* ('to desire, to delight in, to take pleasure in') is a strong word — it describes deep, passionate wanting. The psalmist is not saying he lacks earthly desires; he is saying that compared to God, no earthly desire registers. This is not asceticism but adoration.
26. The parallel between failing flesh and enduring God creates a contrast between what is temporary and what is permanent. The psalmist does not deny mortality; he transcends it by anchoring his identity in something that cannot decay.
27. The verb *hitsmattah* ('You have destroyed, cut off, silenced') is from *tsamat*, meaning to put an end to something decisively. The language of sexual unfaithfulness (*zoneh*) for spiritual apostasy is characteristic of Hosea and Ezekiel but appears here in the Psalms as well.
28. The closing phrase echoes Psalm 71:17-18 — the psalmist will declare God's works to the next generation. The crisis of faith has not destroyed his witness; it has deepened it. He now has something to testify about that he did not have before: how God held him when his feet were slipping.

74

Summary: *A communal lament by Asaph over the destruction of the temple. The enemy has smashed the sanctuary's carved woodwork, set fire to the holy place, and desecrated every meeting place of God in the land. No prophet remains to say how long the desolation will last. The psalmist appeals to God's primordial power as Creator who crushed the sea monsters and established the cosmic order, then pleads: remember Your covenant, rise up, and defend Your cause.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 74 contains one of the Hebrew Bible's most vivid mythological passages (verses 12-17), where God is portrayed as a warrior who crushes Leviathan's heads, splits open springs and rivers, and establishes the boundaries of day and night. This is creation described not as peaceful ordering but as combat — God defeating the chaos monsters to establish the world. The psalmist deploys this ancient combat myth strategically: if You did that, surely You can handle these human enemies. The juxtaposition of cosmic power with national helplessness is the psalm's rhetorical engine.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm assumes a destroyed temple, which most scholars associate with the Babylonian destruction of 586 BCE. However, the Asaph attribution and some linguistic features have led others to propose the Assyrian period or even the Maccabean era. The mythological language of verses 12-17 draws on Canaanite creation mythology (the defeat of Yam/Sea and the multi-headed Lotan/Leviathan known from Ugaritic texts), which the psalmist appropriates for YHWH without apology. This is not syncretism but theological conquest — Israel's God is the one who actually did what the Canaanite myths attributed to Baal.*

Connections: *The Leviathan imagery connects to Job 41, Isaiah 27:1, and the Ugaritic Baal cycle where Baal defeats Lotan (the seven-headed sea serpent). The lament over the destroyed temple parallels Lamentations 1-2 and Psalm 79. The appeal to the covenant (verse 20) connects to the Deuteronomic tradition of covenant faithfulness despite national disaster. The phrase 'How long?' (ad matai) echoes Psalm 13, Psalm 79:5, and Habakkuk 1:2.*

¹A maskil of Asaph.

Why, O God, have You rejected us forever?
Why does Your anger smoke
against the sheep of Your pasture?

²Remember Your congregation that You acquired long ago,
the tribe of Your inheritance that You redeemed —
Mount Zion where You have dwelt.

³Lift Your steps toward the perpetual ruins —
all the destruction the enemy has wrought in the sanctuary.

⁴Your enemies have roared in the midst of Your meeting place;
they set up their own signs as signs.

⁵It was like men wielding axes
in a thicket of trees.

⁶And now — its carved work, all of it,
they smash with hatchet and hammer.

⁷They set Your sanctuary on fire;
to the ground they profaned the dwelling place of Your name.

⁸They said in their hearts, 'Let us crush them altogether.'
They burned every meeting place of God in the land.

⁹We do not see our signs;
there is no longer any prophet,
and no one among us knows how long.

¹⁰How long, O God, will the foe mock?
Will the enemy scorn Your name forever?

¹¹Why do You hold back Your hand?
Your right hand — pull it from Your chest and destroy!

¹²Yet God is my King from of old,
working salvation in the midst of the earth.

¹³You split the sea by Your strength;
You shattered the heads of the sea monsters on the waters.

¹⁴You crushed the heads of Leviathan;
You gave him as food to the creatures of the desert.

¹⁵You split open spring and torrent;
You dried up ever-flowing rivers.

¹⁶Yours is the day, Yours also the night;
You established the light and the sun.

¹⁷You fixed all the boundaries of the earth;
summer and winter — You formed them.

¹⁸Remember this: the enemy has mocked, O LORD,
and a foolish people has scorned Your name.

¹⁹Do not give the life of Your dove to the wild beast;
do not forget the life of Your afflicted ones forever.

²⁰Look to the covenant,
for the dark places of the land are filled
with dens of violence.

²¹Do not let the crushed turn back in shame;
let the afflicted and needy praise Your name.

²²Rise up, O God, defend Your own cause!
Remember the mockery against You
from the foolish all day long.

²³Do not forget the clamor of Your foes —
the uproar of those who rise against You,
which ascends continually.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term maskil in the superscription likely indicates a skillful or instructive composition. Its exact meaning is debated, but it appears in thirteen psalm superscriptions and may signal a psalm requiring particular artistry in performance.
2. The word shevet ('tribe, rod, staff') here means 'tribe' — the tribe of God's inheritance, meaning Israel as God's own clan or family. The language of qanah ('to acquire, to purchase, to create') echoes Exodus 15:16 and Deuteronomy 32:6.
3. The phrase harimah pe'amekha ('lift Your steps') is a plea for God to physically walk to the ruins and see what has happened. The word mashu'ot ('ruins, desolations') with netsach ('perpetual') suggests the destruction has been standing long enough to feel permanent. God is being invited to survey the damage.
4. The wordplay on otot ('signs') is pointed: God's signs (the covenant markers, the sacred furnishings) have been replaced by the enemy's signs (military standards, pagan emblems). The desecration is total — even the semiotics of the space have been overwritten.
5. The verse is syntactically difficult, but the image is clear: the invaders attacked the temple's ornate woodwork as if they were lumberjacks felling a forest. The carved panels and cedar work that adorned the sanctuary were hacked apart with axes (qardummot). The comparison to forest clearing emphasizes the brutality — sacred art treated as timber.
6. The pittuchim ('carved engravings') likely refer to the elaborate carved panels of cherubim, palm trees, and open flowers described in 1 Kings 6:29. The kashil ('hatchet') and keilapot ('hammers, pickaxes') are the blunt instruments of demolition. The beauty that Solomon's artisans spent years creating is being smashed in moments.
7. The phrase la-arets ('to the ground') indicates total destruction — not mere damage but complete demolition. The Babylonian destruction of 586 BCE matches this description precisely (2 Kings 25:9).
8. The phrase kol mo'adei El ba-arets ('every meeting place of God in the land') is significant — it suggests not only the Jerusalem temple but all locations where God was worshiped. If this refers to local sanctuaries, synagogues, or regional gathering places, it indicates systematic, nationwide religious destruction.
9. The absence of prophecy is the most terrifying element. In a culture where prophets mediated God's word, the disappearance of prophetic voices meant the complete breakdown of communication between heaven and earth. Amos 8:11-12 describes this as a 'famine of hearing the words of the LORD.'
10. The phrase ad matai ('how long?') is the quintessential lament question — it appears throughout the Psalms and prophets. The verbs yecharef ('will mock, reproach') and yena'ets ('will scorn, blaspheme') target God's shem ('name') — the enemy's mockery is not merely of Israel but of Israel's God.
11. The image of God hiding His hand in His robe while His people suffer is one of the Psalter's most daring anthropomorphisms. It implies that God has the power to act but is choosing not to — a charge the psalmist levels directly.
12. This verse introduces the mythological hymn that forms the psalm's theological core (verses 12-17). The psalmist counters present despair with memory of God's ultimate demonstrations of power.
13. The tanninim appear in Genesis 1:21 as creatures God creates, but here they appear as enemies God defeats. The two traditions coexist in the Hebrew Bible: creation as peaceful ordering (Genesis 1) and creation as combat victory (Psalm 74, Isaiah 51:9-10, Job 26:12-13).
14. The Ugaritic parallel is striking: KTU 1.5.I.1-3 describes Baal defeating Lotan, the fleeing serpent, the twisting serpent, the tyrant with seven heads. Psalm 74:14 transfers this exact mythology to YHWH. Isaiah 27:1 uses nearly identical language for a future eschatological defeat of Leviathan.
15. The verb baqa'ta ('You split open') describes God creating water sources — springs (ma'yan) and torrents (nachal) — by cracking open the earth. But God also controls water by removing it: hovashta naharot eitan ('You dried up mighty rivers'). God both provides and withholds water. This double mastery over water connects creation to Exodus — splitting the sea and drying the Jordan.
16. The sovereignty extends to time itself. The word ma'or ('luminary, light-bearer') may refer to the moon (as in Genesis 1:16, 'the lesser light'), paired with shemesh ('sun'). God owns every hour and created every source of light. The declaration lekha yom af lekha laylah ('Yours is the day, also Yours the night') means there is no time — not even darkness — outside God's dominion.
17. The rhetorical strategy of verses 12-17 is now complete: the psalmist has established God's absolute sovereignty over chaos monsters, water, time, light, geography, and seasons. The implicit question is: if You command all of this, why do You tolerate the destruction of Your temple?
18. The imperative zekhor ('remember') returns from verse 2. The psalmist uses God's own honor as leverage: it is not merely Israel that has been insulted but YHWH's name. The word naval ('foolish, senseless, morally vile') is the same word used to describe Nabal in 1 Samuel 25:25 — a person whose folly is moral, not intellectual.
19. The turtledove (tor) was also a sacrificial bird used by the poor who could not afford a lamb (Leviticus 5:7). The identification of Israel as a turtledove suggests both vulnerability and sacrificial status — the people have become an offering, but not a willing one.
20. The word ne'ot can mean 'pastures' or 'dwelling places' — both readings work. If 'pastures,' the image is of grazing lands turned into sites of violence; if 'dwelling places,' the dark corners of the land have become dens where cruelty lives.

- 21.** The word dakh ('crushed, oppressed, broken') describes someone who has been physically beaten down. The plea is that this person not also be humiliated (nikhlam, 'put to shame'). The alternative — ani ve-eyon yehalelu shemekha ('the afflicted and needy will praise Your name') — promises that rescue will produce worship. God's intervention serves God's own name.
- 22.** The psalm does not record God's answer. Like many laments, it ends in the act of pleading. The resolution is left to God and to history — the psalmist has made his case and now waits.
- 23.** The psalm's final word is tamid ('continually') — the enemies' noise never stops. This is a deliberate contrast with the silence of verse 9 (no prophet, no signs, no knowledge). God's people are silent; God's enemies are loud. The psalm ends with this unbearable imbalance and trusts God to correct it.

75

Summary: *A psalm of divine judgment. After an opening thanksgiving, God speaks directly (verses 3-4), declaring that He will judge with equity at the appointed time and that He is the one who keeps the earth's foundations stable. The psalmist then warns the arrogant not to lift their horns, because exaltation comes from God alone. The central image is the cup of judgment — foaming wine mixed with spices — that the wicked must drain to the dregs. The psalm closes with praise and a promise that the horns of the wicked will be cut off while the horns of the righteous are lifted high.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 75 is one of the rare psalms where God speaks in first person within the body of the poem. God's direct speech in verses 3-4 gives the psalm an oracular quality — the psalmist is not merely praying but reporting what God has said. The image of the cup (verse 9) is one of the Hebrew Bible's most powerful metaphors for judgment: God holds a cup of foaming, spiced wine, and the wicked must drink every drop. This cup reappears in Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15-28, and Revelation 14:10. The psalm's theology is compact and unyielding: God alone determines who rises and who falls.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase al tashchit ('do not destroy') in the superscription is shared with Psalms 57, 58, and 59. It may refer to a tune, a liturgical instruction, or a thematic marker. Its meaning is uncertain. The shift between speakers in the psalm (congregation in verse 2, God in verses 3-4, the psalmist in verses 5-10) requires careful attention — without quotation marks in the Hebrew, identifying who is speaking depends on context and content.*

Connections: *The cup of judgment imagery connects to Isaiah 51:17-22 (Jerusalem drinks the cup of staggering), Jeremiah 25:15-28 (the cup passed to all nations), Habakkuk 2:16 (the cup of the LORD's right hand), and Jesus' prayer in Gethsemane ('Let this cup pass from me,' Matthew 26:39). The horn imagery connects to Hannah's song (1 Samuel 2:1, 10) and the Magnificat tradition. Psalm 75 answers the plea of Psalm 74 — if Psalm 74 asks 'How long?', Psalm 75 answers 'At the appointed time.'*

¹For the director of music. To 'Do Not Destroy.' A psalm of Asaph. A song.

²We give thanks to You, O God;
we give thanks, for Your name is near.
Your wonders are recounted.

³"When I seize the appointed time,
I Myself will judge with equity."

⁴"When the earth totters with all who dwell in it,
it is I who steady its pillars." Selah.

⁵I said to the arrogant, 'Do not boast!'
and to the wicked, 'Do not lift up your horn!'

⁶Do not raise your horn on high;
do not speak with an arrogant neck.

⁷For not from the east or from the west,
and not from the desert comes exaltation —

⁸but God is the judge:
this one He brings low,
and that one He raises up.

⁹For a cup is in the hand of the LORD,
and the wine foams, full of spiced mixture.
He pours from it,
and all the wicked of the earth
must drain its dregs and drink.

¹⁰But I will declare it forever;
I will make music to the God of Jacob.

¹¹All the horns of the wicked I will cut off,
but the horns of the righteous will be raised high.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription contains multiple performance indicators: lamnatse'ach ('for the director'), al tashchit ('do not destroy' — likely a tune name), mizmor ('psalm' — a sung composition with instrumental accompaniment), and shir ('song'). The combination suggests a liturgical piece with specific musical requirements.
2. The verb sipperu ('they recount, they tell') can be read as 'they declare' or 'Your wonders declare' — the subject is ambiguous. Either the community tells of God's wonders, or the wonders themselves serve as testimony.
3. God's direct speech begins here without a speech formula ('God said'). The shift from 'we' (verse 2) to 'I' signals the change in speaker. This oracular style — God speaking within a psalm — appears also in Psalms 46:11, 50:5, 81:7-17, and 82:2-7.
4. The *selah* at the end may indicate a musical interlude or a pause for reflection. Its exact meaning is debated, but its placement after God's declaration of cosmic sovereignty creates a moment of silence that allows the claim to resonate.
5. The horn metaphor is pervasive in the Hebrew Bible: horns represent strength (Deuteronomy 33:17), royal power (1 Samuel 2:10), and aggressive self-assertion. To 'lift the horn' is to claim authority and dominance.
6. The phrase *be-tsavvar ataq* ('with an arrogant/stiff neck') describes someone who holds their head high in defiance, refusing to bow. The word *ataq* ('arrogant, presumptuous, old/hardened') suggests stubbornness calcified into permanent posture. The stiff-necked person cannot look down at the vulnerable or up at God — they can only look straight ahead at their own ambition.
7. The four compass directions are reduced to three (east, west, south), with north conspicuously absent. Some scholars suggest this is because God's dwelling was associated with the north (*tsafon*, cf. Psalm 48:3 and Isaiah 14:13), and the psalmist is about to reveal that exaltation comes from God, not from any earthly direction.
8. This verse is the psalm's theological thesis: sovereignty over human destiny belongs to God alone. It answers the arrogance described in verses 5-6 and provides the foundation for the judgment imagery in verse 9.
9. The cup of wrath becomes a major prophetic image: Jeremiah is told to make all nations drink from God's cup of fury (Jeremiah 25:15-28), and Isaiah tells Jerusalem she has drunk the cup of staggering to its dregs (Isaiah 51:17). In the New Testament, Jesus asks the Father to 'let this cup pass' (Matthew 26:39), identifying the cross with the cup of divine judgment.
10. The psalmist responds to the vision of judgment with worship. The phrase *Elohei Ya'aqov* ('the God of Jacob') is a covenant name — it connects God's present act of judgment to His ancient relationship with Israel's ancestor. The commitment to declare *le-olam* ('forever') matches the permanence of God's sovereignty.
11. The verb *agaddea* ('I will cut off') is from *gada*, meaning to hew, to chop, to cut down — the same verb used for cutting down Asherah poles and idolatrous pillars (Deuteronomy 7:5). The horns of the wicked are treated as objects of demolition.

76

Summary: *A victory hymn celebrating God's defense of Zion. God is known in Judah, His dwelling is in Salem (Jerusalem), and from Zion He has shattered the weapons of war — the flashing arrows, the shields, the swords, the battle itself. The warriors who came against the city lie stunned and motionless, unable even to lift their hands. The psalm declares that God's rebuke from heaven silences the earth, that He rises in judgment to save the humble, and that even human wrath serves His purposes. All nations are called to bring tribute to the One who is terrifying to kings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 76 presents God as a warrior of terrifying stillness. He does not fight in the conventional sense — He rebukes, and warriors fall asleep. The 'sleep' of verse 6 (nirdemu, 'they were put into a deep sleep') is not death but paralysis: the enemy soldiers cannot function. God wins by overwhelming the enemy's capacity to act. This is holy war reduced to its theological essence: God does not need Israel's army; He needs only to speak. The psalm may reflect the miraculous deliverance of Jerusalem from Sennacherib's siege (2 Kings 19:35), when the Assyrian army was destroyed overnight without a battle.*

Translation Friction: *The name Salem (Shalem) in verse 3 is an archaic name for Jerusalem, appearing elsewhere only in Genesis 14:18 (Melchizedek, king of Salem). Its use here is deliberately archaic, evoking Jerusalem's pre-Israelite identity as a city of ancient holiness. The phrase sukko ('His shelter/lair') in the same verse uses a word that can mean 'booth' (as in Sukkot) or 'lair' (as of a lion) — the ambiguity is productive, presenting God simultaneously as tent-dweller and predator.*

Connections: *The deliverance of Zion connects to the Zion theology of Psalms 46, 48, and 87 — the conviction that God's presence in Jerusalem makes the city inviolable. The defeat of weapons (verse 4) parallels Psalm 46:10 ('He breaks the bow and shatters the spear'). The phrase nora attah ('You are terrifying') connects to the broader theme of divine terror in Psalm 68:36 and Habakkuk 3:2. The historical background likely involves the Assyrian crisis of 701 BCE (Isaiah 36-37, 2 Kings 18-19).*

¹For the director of music. With stringed instruments. A psalm of Asaph. A song.

²God is known in Judah;
His name is great in Israel.

³His shelter is in Salem,
and His dwelling place in Zion.

⁴There He shattered the flashing arrows of the bow,
the shield, the sword, and the battle itself. Selah.

⁵Radiant are You, majestic,
more than the mountains of prey.

⁶The warriors of bold heart were plundered;
they sank into their sleep,
and none of the soldiers
could lift their hands.

⁷At Your rebuke, O God of Jacob,
both rider and horse lay stunned.

⁸You — You are to be feared!
Who can stand before You
when Your anger burns?

⁹From heaven You proclaimed judgment;
the earth feared and fell silent,

¹⁰when God rose for judgment,
to save all the humble of the earth. Selah.

¹¹For human wrath will praise You;
the remnant of wrath You will wear as a belt.

¹²Make vows and fulfill them to the LORD your God;
let all who surround Him bring tribute
to the One who is to be feared.

¹³He cuts off the spirit of rulers;
He is terrifying to the kings of the earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term *binginot* ('with stringed instruments') indicates accompaniment by the *nevel* (harp) and *kinnor* (lyre). The combination of *mizmor* and *shir* suggests both instrumental and vocal performance.
2. The pairing of Judah and Israel may suggest a pre-schism or reunification context, or it may simply be poetic parallelism using two names for the same people.
3. The name *Shalem* may be related to *shalom* ('peace'), making Jerusalem 'the city of peace' — an ironic name given its violent history. The psalmist may be playing on this: in the city of peace, the God of peace destroys the weapons of war.
4. The word *reshef* can mean 'flame, spark, arrow' and is also the name of a Canaanite deity of plague and war. The psalmist may be deliberately claiming that YHWH defeats not only human weapons but the divine forces the enemies believed were behind them.
5. The phrase *harerei taref* is unique in the Hebrew Bible. Some emend *taref* ('prey') to *ad* ('eternity') or *ered* ('I descend'), but the Masoretic reading is defensible: God is more majestic than the predatory mountains — more dangerous, more powerful, more commanding than the heights where eagles and lions hunt.
6. If this psalm reflects the Sennacherib event of 701 BCE, 2 Kings 19:35 reports that 'the angel of the LORD went out and struck down 185,000 in the Assyrian camp.' The psalmist describes the same event in poetic terms: the soldiers 'slept' and could not fight.
7. The verb *nirdam* ('was put into deep sleep') is related to *tardemah*, the deep sleep God imposed on Adam in Genesis 2:21 and on Abram in Genesis 15:12. It is a divinely induced unconsciousness — not natural sleep but supernatural incapacitation.
8. The doubled *attah... attah* ('You... You') is emphatic — the psalmist points directly at God with awe. The rhetorical question 'who can stand?' (*mi ya'amod lefanekha*) expects the answer 'no one.' When God's *af* ('anger, nose, wrath') is aroused, every human position collapses.
9. The verb *hishma'ta* ('You caused to be heard, You proclaimed') indicates that God's judgment was audible — it came as a sound from heaven. The earth's response is twofold: *yar'ah* ('it feared') and *shaqatah* ('it fell silent, it was still'). Terror produces silence — the entire created order holds its breath when God speaks judgment.
10. The *anvavim* ('humble ones') are those who have been bowed down by oppression and who wait for God's deliverance. They are the theological heirs of the *aniyyim* ('afflicted') in Psalm 72:2, 4, 12-14.
11. This verse has been variously translated, with some reading *tachgor* as 'You will restrain' rather than 'You will gird Yourself with.' The image of God wearing human wrath as a belt is striking: it means nothing escapes God's sovereignty, not even the forces arrayed against Him.
12. The imperative *nidru ve-shallemu* ('vow and pay') calls for fulfilled commitment — promises to God must be kept. The phrase *kol sevivav* ('all around Him') includes not just Israelites but all surrounding nations. The word *shai* ('tribute, gift') is the same term used for the gifts brought to Solomon (Psalm 72:10). The designation *la-mora* ('to the feared One, to the Awesome One') closes the psalm on the note of terror that has been its consistent theme.
13. The verb *batsar* ('to cut off, to harvest grapes, to fortify') here means 'to clip, to restrain, to cut short.' The image is of a vintner cutting grape clusters — God harvests the arrogance of rulers as easily as cutting fruit from a vine.

77

Summary: *A psalm of Asaph that moves from personal anguish to cosmic memory. The psalmist cries out to God at night, his spirit fainting, his hands stretched out without rest. He torments himself with questions: Has God rejected forever? Has His faithful love ceased? Has He forgotten mercy? Then the psalm pivots sharply at verse 11: 'I will remember the deeds of the LORD.' The second half recounts God's power at the Red Sea — thunder, lightning, shaking earth, waters writhing in fear — culminating in the declaration that God led His people like a flock through the hand of Moses and Aaron.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 77 is constructed around a dramatic psychological pivot. Verses 2-10 describe a crisis so severe that even the act of remembering God causes pain (verse 4, 'I think of God and I groan'). The psalmist's questions in verses 8-10 are among the most daring in the Psalter — he asks whether God's chesed has permanently ceased, whether God's promise has failed, whether God has forgotten how to be gracious. These are not rhetorical questions; they feel like genuine, agonized uncertainty. Then verse 11 turns everything with the word ezkorah ('I will remember'). The same faculty that produced pain (remembering God and groaning) becomes the instrument of rescue (remembering God's deeds). Memory itself is redeemed.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of verse 11 contains a significant textual note. The word shanot ('years' or 'the changing of') has been read as both 'the years of the right hand of the Most High' and 'the changing (i.e., the failing) of the right hand of the Most High.' The Masoretic marginal note identifies this as a verse boundary between crisis and resolution: the first reading belongs to the lament, the second to the turning point. We follow the Masoretic verse division. The theophany in verses 17-20 draws on the same storm-god imagery found in Canaanite religion and in other biblical theophanies (Judges 5, Habakkuk 3, Psalm 18).*

Connections: *The Red Sea theophany connects to Exodus 14-15, Habakkuk 3:8-15, and Psalm 114. The questions about God's chesed (verse 9) echo the crisis of Psalm 89:50 and Lamentations 3:22. The resolution through memory anticipates Psalm 78's extended historical retrospective. The final verse mentioning Moses and Aaron connects to Psalm 99:6 and the priestly-prophetic tradition. The storm theophany connects to Psalm 18:8-16 and Psalm 29.*

¹For the director of music. According to Jeduthun. A psalm of Asaph.

²My voice is to God, and I cry out;
my voice is to God — may He hear me!

³In the day of my distress I sought the Lord;
my hand was stretched out at night without rest.
My soul refused to be comforted.

⁴I think of God and I groan;
I meditate, and my spirit faints. Selah.

⁵You hold my eyelids open;
I am so troubled that I cannot speak.

⁶I consider the days of old,
the years of ages past.

⁷I recall my song in the night;
I meditate in my heart;
my spirit searches intently.

⁸Will the Lord reject forever?
Will He never again show favor?

⁹Has His faithful love ceased forever?
Has His promise come to an end for all generations?

¹⁰Has God forgotten to be gracious?
Has He in anger shut up His compassion? Selah.

¹¹And I said, 'This is my grief:
that the right hand of the Most High has changed.'

¹²I will remember the deeds of the LORD;
yes, I will remember Your wonders of old.

¹³I will meditate on all Your work
and reflect on Your mighty deeds.

¹⁴Your way, O God, is holy.
What god is as great as our God?

¹⁵You are the God who does wonders;
You have made Your strength known among the peoples.

¹⁶You redeemed Your people with Your arm —
the children of Jacob and Joseph. Selah.

¹⁷The waters saw You, O God —
the waters saw You and writhed;
the very depths trembled.

¹⁸The clouds poured out water;
the skies gave forth thunder;
Your arrows flew in every direction.

¹⁹The voice of Your thunder was in the whirlwind;
lightning lit up the world;
the earth trembled and shook.

²⁰Your way was through the sea,
Your path through the mighty waters,
and Your footprints were not known.

²¹You led Your people like a flock
by the hand of Moses and Aaron.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jeduthun was one of the three chief musicians appointed by David alongside Asaph and Heman (1 Chronicles 25:1-6). The phrase *al yedutun* may mean 'in the manner of Jeduthun' or 'to the tune of Jeduthun' — indicating a musical tradition associated with this Levitical guild.
2. The verb *tsa'aq* ('to cry out') is the specific vocabulary of distress-calling in the Hebrew Bible — it is the cry of the oppressed to a superior who has the power to intervene. It is not prayer as meditation but prayer as emergency alert.

3. The verb *niggerah* is often emended to *niggarah* ('was poured out') or read as 'streamed' (referring to tears). The Masoretic pointing supports 'was stretched out' — hands extended upward in the posture of supplication throughout the night.
4. The verb *hamah* ('to groan, to murmur, to be in turmoil') describes an involuntary sound of distress — it is what happens when thought becomes unbearable and the body responds with noise. The verb *ataf* ('to be faint, to be wrapped, to be enveloped') suggests being smothered or overwhelmed.
5. The attribution of insomnia to God is a bold theological move — it means God is not merely absent but actively involved in the psalmist's suffering. This is harder to bear than divine indifference.
6. The psalmist reaches backward: *yamim mi-qedem* ('days from of old') and *shenot olamim* ('years of eternity'). He is searching history for precedent — has God ever acted like this before? Was there a time when God was faithful? The search through memory is both an act of desperation and a prelude to the resolution that comes in verses 11-12.
7. The progression from external cry (verse 2) to internal meditation (verse 7) shows the psalmist moving deeper inward, trying every avenue of approach to the problem. Neither outward prayer nor inward reflection has produced resolution.
8. These questions are not answered within the psalm. The resolution comes not from answers but from a change in the direction of memory — from remembering personal suffering to remembering God's historical acts.
9. The word *chesed* is one of the most important words in the Hebrew Bible and resists single-word translation. It combines loyalty, love, faithfulness, kindness, and covenant commitment. To ask whether *chesed* has ceased is to ask whether God's fundamental character has changed.
10. The word *rachamim* ('compassion') derives from *rechem* ('womb') — it is the visceral, maternal feeling of tenderness. To ask whether God has shut His *rachamim* is to ask whether the most instinctive form of divine love has been suppressed.
11. The Masoretic tradition places a verse break here that separates the lament (verses 2-11a) from the resolution (verses 11b-21). Some scholars read *shenot* as 'years' and connect it to verse 12: 'I will remember the years of the right hand of the Most High' — making it the first statement of recovery rather than the last statement of despair. Both readings are theologically coherent.
12. The doubled 'I will remember' (*ezkor... ezkerah*) mirrors the doubled 'my voice to God' in verse 2. The psalm's structure is built on repetition with redirection: the same faculties (voice, memory) that expressed the crisis now express the resolution.
13. The verb *hagiti* ('I will meditate, I will murmur') is the same verb used in Psalm 1:2 for meditating on Torah. The psalmist turns his restless, sleepless mind toward a new subject: God's *po'olekha* ('Your work') and *alilotekha* ('Your deeds, Your exploits'). The cure for destructive meditation is redirected meditation.
14. The echo of Exodus 15:11 ('Who is like You among the gods, O LORD?') is deliberate — the psalmist is moving toward the Red Sea memory, and the language of the Song of the Sea begins to surface.
15. The phrase *oseh fele* ('who does wonders') is a title — it defines God by His characteristic action. The verb *hoda'ta* ('You have made known') means God's power is not hidden but publicly displayed *ba-ammim* ('among the peoples') — not just Israel but the nations.
16. The mention of Joseph alongside Jacob suggests the psalmist has the entire twelve-tribe nation in view, not just Judah. Joseph was the ancestor of Ephraim and Manasseh, the dominant northern tribes.
17. The personification of water 'seeing' God and responding with terror is one of the most powerful images in the Psalter. Water, in the ancient Near Eastern worldview, represented chaos — and here chaos itself is afraid of God.
18. The theophany builds: *zorm* means 'to pour, to stream' — the clouds become waterfalls. The *shekhaqim* ('skies, clouds') give *qol* ('voice, thunder'). God's *chatsatsekha* ('Your arrows') are lightning bolts that *yithallakhu* ('go about, fly in all directions'). The storm is God's chariot, His weapon, His mode of transport.
19. The word *galgal* is sometimes translated 'heaven' or 'whirlwind.' Its root meaning is 'something that rolls' — a wheel, a whirlwind, a rolling thunder. The image is of God's voice rolling across the sky like a wheel of sound.
20. The invisible footprints are a metaphor for divine hiddenness: God acts, but He does not leave the kind of evidence that eliminates the need for faith. The psalmist in verses 2-10 was looking for visible signs and finding none; now he understands that God's way has always been through waters that close behind Him.
21. The abrupt ending is deliberate. The psalm does not resolve into a statement of certainty about the present — it resolves into a memory of the past and an implied trust for the future. The psalmist's insomnia, his questions, his anguish — none of them are explicitly answered. What changes is the direction of his gaze: from inward suffering to backward memory to forward trust.

78

Summary: *A vast historical psalm recounting Israel's story from Egypt through the wilderness to the election of David and Zion. Asaph narrates the Exodus plagues, the splitting of the sea, manna and quail in the desert, the people's rebellion, God's anger and compassion, and the final choice of Judah over Ephraim as the seat of God's presence. The psalm's purpose is pedagogical: it is a teaching poem (maskil) designed to transmit the nation's sacred history to the next generation so they will not repeat their ancestors' failures.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 78 is the second-longest psalm in the Psalter (after Psalm 119) and functions as a condensed, interpreted history of Israel. Its most striking feature is its relentless honesty about Israel's failure. The nation is described as a treacherous bow that misses its target (verse 57), a generation whose heart was not steadfast (verse 37), people who tested God again and again (verse 41). Yet God's response is not abandonment but restrained compassion: 'He, being compassionate, atoned for their iniquity and did not destroy them; many times He turned back His anger' (verse 38). The psalm's structure builds toward the rejection of Ephraim/Shiloh and the election of Judah/Zion/David — a theological interpretation of history that explains why the northern shrine fell and the southern dynasty endured.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's clear anti-Ephraimite stance (verse 9-11, 67) reflects a Judahite perspective that reads the fall of the northern shrine at Shiloh as divine judgment. This is theological interpretation of history, not neutral reporting. The plague narrative (verses 44-51) follows a different order than Exodus, omitting some plagues and rearranging others — suggesting the psalmist is drawing on an independent tradition or reshaping the material for poetic purposes. The description of God as a warrior who 'awoke as from sleep' (verse 65) is anthropomorphic language that some find theologically uncomfortable.*

Connections: *The psalm parallels the historical retrospectives in Deuteronomy 32 (the Song of Moses), Nehemiah 9, and Psalm 106. The manna narrative connects to Exodus 16 and Numbers 11. The plague sequence corresponds loosely to Exodus 7-12. The election of David and Zion connects to 2 Samuel 5-7. The phrase 'a deceitful bow' (verse 57) reappears in Hosea 7:16. The pedagogical framework echoes Deuteronomy 6:6-9 and its command to teach the next generation.*

¹A maskil of Asaph.

Listen, my people, to my teaching;
turn your ears to the words of my mouth.

²I will open my mouth in a parable;
I will pour out riddles from of old.

³What we have heard and known,
what our ancestors told us —

⁴we will not hide them from their children.
To the coming generation we will recount
the praiseworthy deeds of the LORD,
His strength and the wonders He has done.

⁵He established a testimony in Jacob
and set a law in Israel,
which He commanded our ancestors
to make known to their children,

⁶so that the next generation would know —
children yet to be born —
and they would rise and tell their own children,

⁷so that they would put their confidence in God
and not forget the works of God,
but keep His commandments —

⁸and not be like their ancestors —
a stubborn and rebellious generation,
a generation that did not prepare its heart
and whose spirit was not faithful to God.

⁹The sons of Ephraim, armed with bows,
turned back on the day of battle.

¹⁰They did not keep the covenant of God
and refused to walk in His law.

¹¹They forgot His deeds
and the wonders He had shown them.

¹²Before their ancestors He did wonders
in the land of Egypt, in the fields of Zoan.

¹³He split the sea and brought them through;
He made the waters stand like a wall.

¹⁴He led them with a cloud by day
and all night with a light of fire.

¹⁵He split rocks in the wilderness
and gave them drink as from the great deep.

¹⁶He brought streams from the crag
and made water flow down like rivers.

¹⁷Yet they kept on sinning against Him,
rebellious against the Most High in the dry land.

¹⁸They tested God in their hearts
by demanding food for their appetite.

¹⁹They spoke against God, saying,
'Can God set a table in the wilderness?'

²⁰Yes, He struck the rock and water gushed out,
torrents overflowed.
But can He also give bread?
Can He provide meat for His people?

²¹Therefore the LORD heard and was furious;
fire blazed against Jacob,
and anger rose against Israel,
²²because they did not believe in God
and did not trust in His salvation.
²³Yet He commanded the clouds above
and opened the doors of heaven.
²⁴He rained down manna upon them to eat
and gave them the grain of heaven.
²⁵Mortals ate the bread of the mighty;
He sent them food in abundance.
²⁶He set loose the east wind in the heavens
and drove the south wind by His power.
²⁷He rained meat on them like dust,
winged birds like the sand of the seas.
²⁸He made them fall in the midst of their camp,
all around their dwellings.
²⁹They ate and were fully satisfied;
He brought them what they craved.
³⁰They had not yet turned from their craving —
the food was still in their mouths —
³¹when the anger of God rose against them.
He killed the sturdiest among them
and struck down the young men of Israel.
³²Despite all this, they kept sinning
and did not believe in His wonders.
³³So He consumed their days in futility
and their years in sudden terror.
³⁴When He killed them, they sought Him;
they turned back and searched earnestly for God.
³⁵They remembered that God was their rock,
that the Most High God was their redeemer.
³⁶But they flattered Him with their mouths
and lied to Him with their tongues.
³⁷Their heart was not steadfast with Him,
and they were not faithful to His covenant.

³⁸But He, being compassionate, atoned for their iniquity
and did not destroy them.

Many times He turned back His anger
and did not rouse all His wrath.

³⁹He remembered that they were flesh,
a breath that passes and does not return.

⁴⁰How often they rebelled against Him in the wilderness
and grieved Him in the wasteland!

⁴¹Again and again they tested God
and provoked the Holy One of Israel.

⁴²They did not remember His hand,
the day He redeemed them from the foe —

⁴³when He set His signs in Egypt,
His wonders in the fields of Zoan.

⁴⁴He turned their rivers to blood
and their streams so they could not drink.

⁴⁵He sent swarms among them that devoured them,
and frogs that destroyed them.

⁴⁶He gave their crops to the grasshopper
and their labor to the locust.

⁴⁷He killed their vines with hail
and their sycamores with frost.

⁴⁸He gave over their cattle to the hail
and their livestock to bolts of lightning.

⁴⁹He sent against them His burning anger —
fury, rage, and distress —
a company of destroying angels.

⁵⁰He cleared a path for His anger.
He did not spare their lives from death
but gave them over to the plague.

⁵¹He struck every firstborn in Egypt,
the firstfruits of their vigor in the tents of Ham.

⁵²He led His people out like sheep
and guided them like a flock through the wilderness.

⁵³He led them in safety and they were not afraid,
but the sea covered their enemies.

⁵⁴He brought them to His holy territory,
to the mountain His right hand had acquired.

⁵⁵He drove out nations before them
and apportioned them an inheritance by measured line;
He settled the tribes of Israel in their tents.

⁵⁶Yet they tested and rebelled against the Most High God
and did not keep His decrees.

⁵⁷They turned back and were faithless like their ancestors;
they twisted like a treacherous bow.

⁵⁸They provoked Him with their high places
and made Him jealous with their carved images.

⁵⁹God heard and was furious;
He utterly rejected Israel.

⁶⁰He abandoned the tabernacle at Shiloh,
the tent He had pitched among mortals.

⁶¹He gave His strength into captivity
and His splendor into the enemy's hand.

⁶²He gave His people over to the sword
and was furious with His inheritance.

⁶³Fire consumed their young men,
and their young women had no wedding songs.

⁶⁴His priests fell by the sword,
and their widows could not weep.

⁶⁵Then the Lord awoke as from sleep,
like a warrior shouting from wine.

⁶⁶He struck His enemies from behind;
He put them to lasting shame.

⁶⁷He rejected the tent of Joseph
and did not choose the tribe of Ephraim.

⁶⁸He chose the tribe of Judah,
Mount Zion, which He loved.

⁶⁹He built His sanctuary like the heights,
like the earth He established forever.

⁷⁰and took him from the sheepfolds.
He chose David His servant

71 From following the nursing ewes He brought him
to shepherd Jacob His people
and Israel His inheritance.

72 He shepherded them with a blameless heart
and guided them with the skill of his hands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word torah in its original sense means 'instruction, direction, guidance' — from yarah ('to throw, to shoot, to direct'). The broader meaning of 'the Law of Moses' developed later. Here it refers to the pedagogical content of the psalm.
2. Matthew 13:35 quotes this verse as fulfilled in Jesus' use of parables, connecting the psalm's teaching method to the gospel tradition. In its original context, the 'parable' is the entire national history read as a lesson.
3. The chain of transmission is explicit: ancestors (avoteinu) told the current generation (shamanu, 'we heard'), and the current generation will tell the next (verse 4). This is oral tradition's self-conscious claim to legitimacy — the story has been faithfully transmitted.
4. This verse establishes the psalm's primary purpose: intergenerational transmission of sacred history. The concern is not antiquarian but existential — if the next generation does not know this story, they will repeat the failures described in what follows.
5. The parallel edut ('testimony, witness') and torah ('law, instruction') refers to God's covenant requirements — the commands and teachings that define Israel's relationship with God. The transmission is not optional but commanded (tsivvah): teaching the next generation is itself a divine mandate.
6. The chain extends three generations: the current generation tells the next, who tells the one after that. The phrase banim yivvaledu ('children yet to be born') acknowledges that the audience includes people who do not yet exist. History is told for the sake of the unborn.
7. The three-part purpose: kislam ('their confidence') in God, not forgetting God's deeds, and keeping God's commands. Memory and obedience are linked: to forget what God has done leads directly to disobeying what God has commanded.
8. The phrase dor sorer u-moreh echoes Deuteronomy 21:18, where the stubborn and rebellious son is the extreme case of covenant disloyalty within a family. Applied to a generation, it means the entire people behaved like a delinquent child toward their divine parent.
9. The historical reference is obscure — no specific battle of Ephraimite retreat is recorded. The charge may be metaphorical: Ephraim was equipped for covenant faithfulness but turned away when tested. The military language describes spiritual failure.
10. The accusation is twofold: covenant violation (lo shamru berit Elohim) and Torah rejection (uvtorato me'anu lalekhet, 'in His instruction they refused to walk'). Walking (halakh) is the standard metaphor for living according to God's commands — they refused to move in the direction God indicated.
11. Forgetfulness is the root sin in Deuteronomistic theology. The verb vayishkechu ('they forgot') is the opposite of the remembering commanded in verses 3-7. The cycle is clear: ancestors witnessed wonders, forgot them, and fell into rebellion. The psalm exists to break this cycle.
12. Zoan (Tsoan) is the Hebrew name for the Egyptian city of Tanis in the eastern Nile Delta, near the traditional location of the Israelite settlement in Goshen. By naming the specific location, the psalmist anchors the miraculous events in a real, identifiable place.
13. The verb baqa ('He split') is the same used in Psalm 74:15 for splitting springs open. The word ned ('heap, wall, dam') describes water standing upright in defiance of gravity — the same image as Exodus 15:8. The sea becomes architecture, solid walls flanking the path of escape.
14. The pillar of cloud (Exodus 13:21-22) guided by day, the pillar of fire by night. God provided continuous navigation — no hour was uncovered. The phrase kol hallaylah ('all the night') emphasizes that darkness offered no gap in divine guidance.
15. The verb yevaqqea ('He split') describes God cracking open tsurim ('rocks, cliffs') to produce water. The comparison ki-tehomot rabbah ('as from the great deep') is hyperbolic: the water from the rock was as abundant as the primordial ocean. This refers to the Meribah/Massah incidents (Exodus 17:1-7, Numbers 20:1-13).
16. The nozelim ('streams, flowing waters') from the sela ('crag, cliff') were not a trickle but kanneharot ('like rivers'). The miracle's scale matches the need — water for an entire nation in the desert required rivers, not drops.
17. The phrase vayyosifu od lachato ('they continued still to sin') uses the construction of ongoing, compounding rebellion — sin upon sin. The word tsiyyah ('dry land, parched ground') is ironic: God just provided rivers from rock, and they respond by rebelling in the very place of His provision.
18. The verb vaynassu ('they tested') is from nasah — the same verb used for God's testing of Abraham (Genesis 22:1). Here the roles are reversed: the people test God. The demand for okhel lenafesham ('food for their appetite/soul') is not about survival but about desire — they want more than manna.

19. The phrase 'Can God set a table in the wilderness?' becomes an ironic echo throughout the psalm. God can set a table anywhere — and He does, with manna and quail — but the provision does not cure the people's distrust.
20. The people concede the water miracle (verse 15-16) but doubt the next provision. Each miracle is acknowledged but deemed insufficient for the next challenge. Their faith is always one step behind God's action.
21. God's response is immediate: shama vayyit'abbar ('He heard and was furious'). The verb it'abbar ('to become angry, to overflow with wrath') suggests anger that erupts uncontrollably. The 'fire' (esh) may be literal (Numbers 11:1-3 records fire consuming the camp's edges) or metaphorical for divine wrath.
22. The double negative — lo he'eminu ('they did not believe') and lo batchu ('they did not trust') — diagnoses the core problem: unbelief. The specific object of unbelief is bishu'ato ('in His salvation') — they doubted God's ability and willingness to rescue.
23. The 'doors of heaven' imagery appears in Genesis 7:11 (the flood) and Malachi 3:10 (blessing). God's provision comes from the same heavenly reservoir as His judgment — the door swings both ways.
24. The word man ('manna') is explained in Exodus 16:15 through the question man hu ('What is it?'). The parallel term degan shamayim ('grain of heaven') elevates manna to the status of celestial food — bread from God's own table. It is not emergency rations but heaven's own produce.
25. The phrase lechem abbirim ('bread of the mighty ones') has been interpreted as 'bread of angels' (so the LXX and KJV), 'bread of the mighty,' or 'bread of the strong.' The word abbirim can refer to angels, warriors, or bulls. The point is that this food belongs to a higher order of being — humans ate what was not originally meant for them. The word lasova ('to satisfaction, to fullness') emphasizes abundance.
26. God controls the winds as instruments: the qadim ('east wind') and teman ('south wind') are dispatched to carry the quail. The verb yassa ('He set in motion, He caused to journey') presents the wind as a traveling agent sent on a mission.
27. The comparisons — ke-afar ('like dust') and ke-chol yammim ('like the sand of the seas') — are the standard Hebrew idioms for uncountable abundance (Genesis 13:16, 22:17). The quail were not a few birds but a blizzard of meat covering the camp.
28. The quail landed beqerev machanahu ('in the middle of their camp') and saviv lemishkenotav ('around their tents'). The provision was delivered directly to their doors — they did not have to go far to gather it.
29. The word ta'avatam ('their craving, their desire') is from avah ('to desire, to crave') — the same root used for the place name Qivrot hat-Ta'avah ('Graves of Craving') in Numbers 11:34. God gave them exactly what they wanted, and the getting proved deadly.
30. The phrase lo zaru mitta'avatam ('they had not turned away from their craving') means the desire was still active, undiminished even by receiving what was desired. This is the nature of craving: fulfillment does not satisfy it. And then judgment arrives while the food is literally still in their mouths.
31. The word mishmanneihem ('their sturdiest, their fattest, their most robust') describes the healthiest members of the community — those who should have been least vulnerable. The bachurei Yisrael ('young men of Israel') were the prime of the nation. God's judgment targeted strength itself, proving that no human vitality can resist divine anger.
32. The phrase bekol zot ('despite all this, in spite of all this') is the psalm's refrain of astonishment: despite provision, despite judgment, despite everything, the pattern continued. Rebellion was not a one-time failure but a chronic condition.
33. The word hevel ('vanity, breath, futility') is Ecclesiastes' signature word — here it describes days that amount to nothing. Their years ended in behalah ('terror, sudden destruction'). The wilderness generation's forty years of wandering are summarized in a single devastating couplet.
34. The bitter irony: only death prompted repentance. The verb darash ('to seek, to inquire') and shichar ('to search earnestly, to seek early') describe intense pursuit of God — but only after judgment had fallen. Their piety was reactive, not proactive.
35. Under duress, memory returned: Elohim tsuram ('God was their rock') and El Elyon go'alam ('the Most High God was their redeemer'). But the next verse reveals that this memory was superficial — it produced flattery rather than genuine repentance.
36. The accusation that Israel lied to God is one of the psalm's most shocking moments. It implies that religious speech can be false even when directed at the omniscient deity — that humans are capable of praying without meaning what they say.
37. The phrase libbam lo nakhon immo ('their heart was not established with Him') echoes verse 8 — the same diagnosis applied to the same chronic condition. Faithlessness to the berit ('covenant') is the root: the external performance of religion without internal commitment.
38. The theology of divine restraint in this verse anticipates Paul's argument in Romans 9:22 about God's patience with 'vessels of wrath.' The psalmist's point is not that God lacks anger but that His compassion repeatedly overrides it.
39. This verse echoes Psalm 103:14-16 ('He knows our frame; He remembers that we are dust'). God's memory of human frailty becomes the ground of mercy — He does not expect more than flesh can deliver.
40. The verb ya'atsi'vuhu ('they grieved Him, they caused Him pain') attributes emotional response to God. Israel's rebellion does not merely violate a contract; it wounds a person. The yeshimon ('wasteland, desolation') is the harshest desert terrain — rebellion in the place of maximum dependence.
41. The phrase vayyashuvu vaynassu ('they turned back and tested') indicates repetitive behavior — it happened over and over. The verb hitvu (from tavah, 'to mark, to set a limit, to provoke') means they 'set limits' on the Qadosh Yisrael ('Holy One of Israel') — they defined what God could and

could not do based on their own expectations. Limiting God is the theological sin at the heart of their rebellion.

42. Forgetfulness again: lo zakhru et yado ('they did not remember His hand'). The 'hand' of God (yad) is His power in action — specifically, the power displayed at the Exodus. The yom ('day') when He padam ('redeemed them') from the tsar ('adversary, foe') is the foundational event. What follows (verses 43-51) is the psalmist's retelling of the plagues to remind them of what they forgot.
43. The retelling returns to Zoan (verse 12) — the Egyptian city in the delta region. The otot ('signs') and moftim ('wonders') are the plagues, now recounted in a sequence that differs from Exodus.
44. The first plague: water to blood (Exodus 7:14-25). The ye'oreihem ('their rivers/canals') is the Nile and its channels — the lifeblood of Egyptian civilization. Turning it to dam ('blood') struck at Egypt's most essential resource.
45. The arov ('swarm') — the fourth plague (Exodus 8:20-32) — may refer to flies, mosquitoes, or mixed swarms of insects. The tsefardea ('frogs') — the second plague — destroyed their land. The order differs from Exodus, suggesting the psalmist is grouping by poetic effect rather than chronological sequence.
46. The chasil ('grasshopper, locust') and arbeh ('locust') consumed yevulam ('their produce') and yegi'am ('their toil, the fruit of their labor'). The eighth plague (Exodus 10:1-20) destroyed agriculture — the stored product of human effort devoured by insects.
47. The seventh plague: hail (Exodus 9:13-35). The gafen ('grapevine') and shiqmah ('sycamore fig') were valuable agricultural crops. The chanamal ('frost, sleet') is a rare word, possibly referring to ice storms or severe hail.
48. The verb vayyasger ('He delivered over, He handed over') is the language of judicial sentencing — God formally transferred the Egyptians' livestock to destruction. The reshafim ('lightning bolts, flames') extend the hailstorm to include electrical strikes.
49. The phrase mal'akhei ra'im is unique to this verse and has generated significant discussion. The 'evil' is not moral wickedness in the angels but calamity inflicted by them — they are agents of divine judgment, not demonic beings.
50. The verb yefalles ('He leveled, He made straight, He cleared a path') pictures God removing every obstacle between His anger and its target. The dever ('plague, pestilence') — the fifth plague (Exodus 9:1-7) — was the instrument of execution.
51. The designation of Egypt as 'tents of Ham' connects to the Table of Nations in Genesis 10, where Mitsrayim (Egypt) is listed as a son of Ham. The archaic, genealogical language adds weight to the historical sweep of the narrative.
52. The shepherd metaphor returns (cf. Psalm 77:21). The contrast is stark: Egypt's firstborn are dead; Israel's flock is alive and moving. God destroys one nation's future to preserve another's.
53. The juxtaposition is absolute: Israel walks safely (lavetach, 'in security'); the sea covers (kissah, 'engulfed, overwhelmed') their enemies. Safety for one and destruction for the other happen simultaneously in the same body of water.
54. The gevul qodsho ('the border/territory of His holiness') is the promised land, and specifically har zeh ('this mountain') — either Zion or the entire hill country of Canaan. God's right hand (yemin) qantah ('acquired, purchased') this mountain — it belongs to God by right of acquisition.
55. The verb vayyegaresh ('He drove out') describes the conquest. The chevel nachalah ('measuring line of inheritance') refers to the land allotment — each tribe received its territory measured by cord. The tribes now dwell be-aholeihem ('in their tents') — in the former dwellings of the displaced nations.
56. The cycle repeats: even after settlement in the promised land, the pattern of testing (vaynassu) and rebelling (vayyamru) continues. The edot ('testimonies, decrees') are God's covenant stipulations — the conditions of the relationship. They ignored them.
57. Hosea 7:16 uses nearly identical language: 'They turn, but not upward; they are like a treacherous bow.' The image may have been a common prophetic metaphor for Israel's unreliability — a nation that appeared functional but consistently missed its mark.
58. The bamot ('high places') were the local sanctuaries where Canaanite-influenced worship occurred. The pesilim ('carved images, idols') were the physical representations of other gods. The verb yaqni'uhu ('they made Him jealous') uses the language of marriage: Israel's idolatry is adultery, and God responds with the jealousy of a betrayed spouse (cf. Exodus 20:5, 'I the LORD your God am a jealous God').
59. The verb vayyit'abbar ('He was furious, He overflowed with anger') is the same as verse 21. But this time the consequence is more severe: vayyim'as me'od be-Yisrael ('He utterly rejected Israel'). The verb ma'as ('to reject, to refuse, to despise') is the language of covenant termination — not discipline but rejection.
60. Jeremiah explicitly references Shiloh's destruction as a warning to Jerusalem: 'Go now to my place that was in Shiloh, where I made my name dwell at first, and see what I did to it' (Jeremiah 7:12). The psalm uses the same event to explain why God chose Judah over Ephraim.
61. The 'strength' (uzzo) and 'splendor' (tif'arto) refer to the ark of the covenant, captured by the Philistines in 1 Samuel 4:11. The ark was the physical symbol of God's presence and power. God allowed His own symbol to be taken — the ultimate expression of judgment on His people.
62. The parallel between 'His people' (ammo) and 'His inheritance' (nachalato) emphasizes that these are not strangers but God's own possession. The verse describes the battle of Aphek (1 Samuel 4:1-11) where thirty thousand Israelite soldiers fell.
63. The 'fire' consuming bachurav ('His young men') is war. The betulotav ('His young women') lo hullalu ('were not praised/celebrated in wedding songs'). The verb hillel in this context refers to the wedding celebration — with so many young men dead, marriages did not happen. The social

fabric collapsed.

64. Hophni and Phinehas, the priests who accompanied the ark, died at Aphek (1 Samuel 4:11). The phrase *almanotav lo tivkeinah* ('their widows did not weep') likely means the death was so sudden and the disaster so overwhelming that there was no time for proper mourning — or that the widows themselves were killed or captured.
65. This is one of the most daring anthropomorphisms in the Hebrew Bible. Psalm 44:24 pleads 'Awake! Why do You sleep, O Lord?' — here the psalmist reports that God actually did wake up. The metaphor serves the narrative: the period of judgment felt like divine slumber, and God's re-engagement felt like a warrior's battle cry.
66. The phrase *vayyakh tsarav achor* ('He struck His enemies in the rear') refers to the Philistine plague described in 1 Samuel 5:6-12, where God struck the Philistines with tumors (*ofalim*) in their hindquarters. The *cherpat olam* ('perpetual reproach') means the shame was not temporary but defining.
67. This verse is the psalm's political-theological thesis: the fall of Shiloh and the northern shrine was not random but an act of divine election. God actively chose to reject Ephraim and actively chose Judah — this is the explanation for the Davidic dynasty and the Jerusalem temple.
68. The transition from 'rejected Ephraim' to 'chose Judah' mirrors the biblical pattern of divine election: God passes over the expected choice (the firstborn, the older, the stronger) in favor of the unexpected. This pattern runs from Jacob/Esau through David (the youngest son) to Zion (a relatively insignificant hill).
69. The sanctuary (*miqdash*) is compared to *kemo ramim* ('like the heights, like high places') — either heavenly heights or mountain peaks. The second comparison *ke-erets yesadah le-olam* ('like the earth He founded forever') equates the temple's permanence with the earth's — God's dwelling is as enduring as creation itself. This confidence will be tested by the destruction of 586 BCE.
70. The connection between David the shepherd and God the shepherd (Psalm 23, Psalm 77:21, Psalm 78:52) is deliberate: God chose a shepherd to be king because kingship is shepherding. The ideal ruler tends, feeds, and protects a flock.
71. The image of David following nursing ewes echoes 2 Samuel 7:8, where God reminds David: 'I took you from the pasture, from following the flock.' The psalm's conclusion deliberately parallels God's own words to David.
72. The psalm that began with a call to teach the next generation ends with the model of what faithful leadership looks like. The entire historical sweep — Egypt, Exodus, wilderness, conquest, Shiloh, rejection, election — converges on this single image: a shepherd with a blameless heart and skilled hands. This is what the next generation needs to know.

79

Summary: A communal lament over the destruction of Jerusalem and the temple. The nations have invaded God's inheritance, defiled the sanctuary, reduced Jerusalem to rubble, and left the bodies of God's servants as food for vultures and wild animals. The blood of the faithful runs like water around Jerusalem with no one to bury the dead. The psalmist pleads for God's compassion, asks how long His jealousy will burn, calls for vengeance on the nations that do not know God, and appeals to God's own reputation among the peoples. The psalm closes with a promise of perpetual praise from the flock of God's pasture.

What Makes This Remarkable: Psalm 79 is the companion lament to Psalm 74, both attributed to Asaph and both responding to the destruction of the temple. But Psalm 79 focuses on the human cost — bodies, blood, shame — where Psalm 74 focused on the architectural destruction. The most haunting image is verse 3: blood poured out like water around Jerusalem, with no one to bury the dead. The denial of burial was the ultimate disgrace in the ancient world; it meant the person was erased from memory. The psalm's theology is built on the tension between Israel's acknowledged sin (verse 8-9) and God's obligation to His own name (verse 9-10). The argument is: we sinned, but Your reputation is at stake.

Translation Friction: The historical setting is almost certainly the Babylonian destruction of 586 BCE, though some elements could apply to other national catastrophes. The prayer for vengeance (verse 6, 10, 12) sits uncomfortably with later theological sensibilities, but it must be read in context: the psalmist is watching unburied bodies being eaten by animals and asking God to hold the perpetrators accountable. The 'sevenfold' return of reproach (verse 12) uses the language of proportional justice, not excessive revenge.

Connections: Psalm 79:1 is quoted in 1 Maccabees 7:17 in connection with the desecration under Alcimus. Verse 6 is nearly identical to Jeremiah 10:25, suggesting either literary dependence or a shared liturgical tradition. The unburied-bodies motif connects to Jeremiah 7:33 and 16:4. The 'sheep of Your pasture' (verse 13) echoes Psalms 74:1, 78:52, and 95:7. The plea 'do not remember against us former iniquities' (verse 8) anticipates the theology of Isaiah 43:25.

¹A psalm of Asaph.

O God, the nations have invaded Your inheritance;
they have defiled Your holy temple;
they have reduced Jerusalem to rubble.

²They have given the corpses of Your servants
as food to the birds of the sky,
the flesh of Your faithful ones
to the animals of the earth.

³They poured out their blood like water
around Jerusalem,
and there was no one to bury them.

⁴We have become a disgrace to our neighbors,
an object of mockery and ridicule to those around us.

⁵How long, O LORD? Will You be angry forever?
Will Your jealousy burn like fire?

⁶Pour out Your wrath on the nations
that do not know You,
and on the kingdoms
that do not call on Your name.

⁷and laid waste his dwelling place.
For they have devoured Jacob

⁸Do not remember against us the iniquities of the past;
let Your compassion come quickly to meet us,
for we are brought very low.

⁹Help us, O God of our salvation,
for the sake of the glory of Your name!
Deliver us and atone for our sins
for the sake of Your name.

¹⁰Why should the nations say, 'Where is their God?'
Let the avenging of Your servants' spilled blood
be known among the nations before our eyes.

¹¹Let the groaning of the prisoner come before You;
by the greatness of Your arm
preserve those condemned to die.

¹²Return sevenfold to our neighbors, into their laps,
the reproach with which they reproached You, O Lord.

¹³Then we, Your people, the sheep of Your pasture,
will give thanks to You forever;
from generation to generation
we will recount Your praise.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *iyyim* ('ruins, rubble heaps') describes a city so thoroughly destroyed that it has been reduced to piles of stone. The same word appears in Micah 1:6 and Micah 3:12 for cities leveled by divine judgment.
2. The curse of having one's body left unburied for scavengers is one of the Deuteronomic covenant curses (Deuteronomy 28:26). The psalmist is experiencing what Moses warned about — but the victims are the *chasidim*, the faithful, not the wicked. This is the psalm's anguish: the covenant curses have fallen on the covenant-keepers.
3. This verse is quoted in 1 Maccabees 7:17 as a lament for the faithful killed under the Seleucid oppression, showing that the psalm was reused for later national catastrophes. The image of blood as water means it was spilled without value, without care, without consequence for the killers.
4. The *cherpah* ('disgrace, reproach'), *la'ag* ('mockery, scoffing'), and *qeles* ('ridicule, derision') describe the social dimension of the catastrophe. The neighbors (*shekhenim*) — Edom, Ammon, Moab, and others — mock the fallen city. The destruction is not only physical and spiritual but social: Israel has become a laughingstock.
5. The phrase *ad mah* ('how long?') echoes Psalm 74:10. The *qin'ah* ('jealousy, zeal') is God's passionate commitment to His own honor — it burns (*tiv'ar*) like *esh* ('fire') when that honor is violated. The question implies that God's anger seems directed at His own people rather than at the nations who destroyed them.
6. Jeremiah 10:25 contains this verse nearly verbatim, suggesting a shared liturgical tradition. The prayer is not for indiscriminate violence but for proportional justice: those who destroyed God's people should face God's wrath.
7. The verb *akhla* ('devoured, consumed') is the language of predation — the nations ate Jacob like an animal consumes prey. The *naveh* ('dwelling place, pasture, habitation') that has been laid waste (*heshamu*, 'made desolate') connects to the shepherd imagery — the flock's pasture has been destroyed.
8. The acknowledgment of sin distinguishes this psalm from Psalm 44, which protests innocence. Here the psalmist admits guilt but argues that the punishment exceeds the crime — and that God's compassion should override God's justice.
9. The appeal to God's name (*shem*) as motivation for action is a Moses-style argument (cf. Exodus 32:12, Numbers 14:13-16). If God destroys His people, the nations will mock God's power. God's reputation among the nations depends on Israel's survival.
10. The taunt *ayyeh Eloheihem* ('where is their God?') is the most offensive question possible — it challenges God's existence, His power, or His care. The psalmist wants *niqmat dam avadekha* ('the vengeance of the blood of Your servants') to be visible *le-eineinu* ('before our eyes') — not hidden or delayed but publicly, demonstrably enacted.
11. The *enqat asir* ('groaning of the prisoner') represents the exiles in Babylon. The phrase *benei temutah* ('children of death, those condemned to death') describes people already sentenced. The *zero'a* ('arm') of God — His intervening power — is the only force that can reverse a death sentence.
12. The *shiv'atayim* ('sevenfold') is the language of proportional justice (cf. Genesis 4:15, Proverbs 6:31). The *cherpah* ('reproach') is returned *el cheiqam* ('into their bosom/lap') — the pocket formed by the fold of a garment, the place where one receives payment. The neighbors who mocked God's people mocked God Himself; the return will come back to them personally.
13. The psalm that began with death and desecration ends with a pledge of eternal gratitude. The pivot from lament to praise is not yet complete — it depends on God's response — but the psalmist makes the promise in advance: if You act, we will never stop thanking You.

80

Summary: *A communal lament that addresses God as the Shepherd of Israel enthroned on the cherubim. The psalm calls upon God to shine forth, to stir up His might, and to come and save. Its structure is built around a threefold refrain — 'Restore us, O God; let Your face shine, that we may be saved' — which appears in verses 4, 8, and 20, each time with an escalating divine title. The central section (verses 9-17) develops an extended vine allegory: God transplanted a vine from Egypt, cleared the ground, and let it grow until it covered the mountains and shaded the cedars. But then He broke down its walls, and every passerby plucks it. The psalm pleads for God to look down from heaven, tend the vine He planted, and restore the man at His right hand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vine allegory is one of the most sustained metaphors in the Psalter. Beginning with the transplanting from Egypt (the Exodus), the vine's growth traces Israel's history through the conquest and the Davidic-Solomonic expansion, when Israel's influence stretched from the Mediterranean Sea to the Euphrates River. The vine grew to cover mountains and shade great cedars — an image of astonishing abundance. Then the reversal: God Himself broke down the walls. The devastation is not blamed on the vine's weakness or on the strength of the enemies but on God's decision to remove the protection. This makes the plea more urgent: if You broke the wall, only You can rebuild it. The threefold refrain with escalating titles — 'O God' (verse 4), 'O God of hosts' (verse 8), 'O LORD God of hosts' (verse 20) — creates a crescendo of increasingly desperate address.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm mentions Joseph, Ephraim, Benjamin, and Manasseh (verses 2-3) — all northern tribes — which has led many scholars to associate this psalm with the fall of the northern kingdom to Assyria in 722 BCE. However, the vine imagery in verses 9-12 encompasses all Israel, and the plea for the 'man at Your right hand' (verse 18) may refer to the Davidic king. The psalm may therefore be a plea from the combined people, possibly written in Judah after 722 but concerned with the fate of the northern tribes. The phrase ben adam ('son of man') in verse 18 is debated: does it refer to the king, the nation personified, or a future messianic figure?*

Connections: *The vine allegory connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard), Ezekiel 15 and 17, and Jesus' parable of the wicked tenants (Mark 12:1-12) and His declaration 'I am the vine' (John 15:1-8). The shepherd imagery echoes Psalms 23, 77:21, 78:52, and Ezekiel 34. The phrase 'Shepherd of Israel' connects to Genesis 49:24, where God is called 'the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.' The cherubim throne connects to the ark of the covenant (Exodus 25:18-22, 1 Samuel 4:4, 2 Samuel 6:2).*

¹For the director of music. To 'Lilies of Testimony.' A psalm of Asaph.

²O Shepherd of Israel, hear us!
You who lead Joseph like a flock,
You who are enthroned on the cherubim — shine forth!

³Before Ephraim, Benjamin, and Manasseh,
stir up Your might
and come to save us!

⁴Restore us, O God;
let Your face shine, that we may be saved.

⁵O LORD God of hosts,
how long will You smolder against Your people's prayer?

⁶You have fed them the bread of tears
and made them drink tears by the measure.

⁷You have made us an object of strife to our neighbors,
and our enemies mock us.

⁸Restore us, O God of hosts;
let Your face shine, that we may be saved.

⁹You uprooted a vine from Egypt;
You drove out nations and planted it.

¹⁰You cleared the ground before it;
it took deep root and filled the land.

¹¹The mountains were covered with its shade,
and its branches were like the cedars of God.

¹²It sent out its branches to the Sea
and its shoots to the River.

¹³Why have You broken down its walls,
so that all who pass along the road pluck its fruit?

¹⁴The boar from the forest ravages it,
and the creatures of the field feed on it.

¹⁵O God of hosts, turn back!
Look down from heaven and see;
tend this vine!

¹⁶Protect what Your right hand has planted,
the shoot You have strengthened for Yourself.

¹⁷It is burned with fire, cut down;
at the rebuke of Your face they perish.

¹⁸Let Your hand be upon the man at Your right hand,
upon the son of man whom You strengthened for Yourself.

¹⁹Then we will not turn back from You;
revive us, and we will call on Your name.

²⁰Restore us, O LORD God of hosts;
let Your face shine, that we may be saved.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *el shoshannim edut* ('to the lilies of testimony') likely indicates a tune or musical setting. *Shoshannim* ('lilies') appears in the superscriptions of Psalms 45, 60, 69, and 80, possibly referring to a melody by that name. The addition of *edut* ('testimony, witness') distinguishes this setting from the others.
2. The phrase *yoshev hakkeruvim* ('enthroned on the cherubim') appears in 1 Samuel 4:4, 2 Samuel 6:2, and Isaiah 37:16. It is the most precise liturgical description of God's throne location — between the wings of the two cherubim that crowned the ark of the covenant.
3. The specific mention of Ephraim, Benjamin, and Manasseh (the Rachel tribes) rather than Judah has led many scholars to read this as a northern psalm, possibly composed after the Assyrian destruction of the northern kingdom in 722 BCE. Benjamin, located between north and south, could represent the border territory caught between the two kingdoms.

4. The refrain appears three times with escalating divine names: Elohim (verse 4), Elohim Tseva'ot (verse 8), YHWH Elohim Tseva'ot (verse 20). Each repetition adds weight to the address, as if the psalmist is trying progressively more powerful names to get God's attention.
5. The verb *ashan* ('to smoke') is the same used in Psalm 74:1 for God's anger smoking against His flock. The image is of a God whose wrath is so intense that the prayers offered by His people are received with hostility rather than grace.
6. The image of eating and drinking tears inverts the provision narrative of Psalm 78:23-25, where God opened heaven's doors and rained down bread. The same God who fed the people with grain from heaven now feeds them with the bread of affliction.
7. The word *madon* ('strife, contention, quarrel') means the neighbors fight over Israel — not in defense but in derision. The mockery (*yil'agu*, from *la'ag*, 'to mock, to scoff') echoes Psalm 79:4. Israel has become entertainment for the surrounding nations.
8. The second refrain, now with Elohim Tseva'ot ('God of hosts/armies') — a step up from the simple Elohim of verse 4. The psalmist is invoking God's military power: the God who commands angelic armies.
9. The vine as metaphor for Israel appears in Isaiah 5:1-7 (the most extensive version), Jeremiah 2:21, Ezekiel 15:1-8, and Hosea 10:1. It is one of the most common metaphors for the covenant people in the prophetic tradition.
10. The verb *pinnita* ('You cleared') means God prepared the soil — He removed obstacles so the vine could thrive. The phrase *vattashresh shorasheiha* ('and it rooted its roots') describes deep establishment. The result: *vattemalle erets* ('it filled the land'). The vine spread across the entire territory — the land of Canaan became fully Israelite.
11. The phrase *arzei El* ('cedars of God') uses the divine name as a superlative — 'mighty cedars, cedars of extraordinary size.' The same construction appears in Psalm 36:7 (*hare El*, 'mountains of God') and Psalm 68:16 (*har Elohim*, 'mountain of God'). God's name marks the superlative.
12. The territorial extent described here matches the idealized borders of Solomon's kingdom (1 Kings 4:21, 24). The vine allegory reads Israel's history as a growth narrative that peaked under David and Solomon.
13. Isaiah 5:5 uses nearly identical language: 'I will remove its hedge... I will break down its wall.' The parallel confirms that the removal of divine protection is understood as a deliberate act of God, not an accident or an enemy's achievement.
14. In the Masoretic text, the word *ya'ar* ('forest') has a suspended letter *ayin*, one of only a handful of such scribal marks in the Hebrew Bible. This may mark the midpoint of the Psalter by letter count, or it may preserve a textual variant.
15. The verb *paqad* ('to visit, to attend to') can mean either to bless or to punish, depending on context. Here it means 'to take care of, to restore' — the vine needs the gardener's attention, not His absence.
16. The word *khannah* ('stock, root, vineyard plot') refers to the planted area. The phrase *asher nat'ah yeminekha* ('that Your right hand planted') attributes the vine's existence to God's own direct action. The *ben* ('son, shoot, branch') that God *immatsettah lakh* ('strengthened for Yourself') may be a double reference: the vine's strongest branch (the Davidic dynasty) and/or the nation itself as God's 'son' (cf. Exodus 4:22, 'Israel is My firstborn son').
17. The vine that once covered mountains is now *serufah va-esh* ('burned with fire') and *khesukhah* ('cut down, pruned to the stump'). The phrase *migga'arat panekha* ('from the rebuke of Your face') attributes even the burning and cutting to God's own action — His face that was asked to shine (verse 4) has instead rebuked. The same face that could save is the face that destroys.
18. The phrase *ben adam* ('son of man') here is not the apocalyptic 'Son of Man' of Daniel 7:13, but it contributes to the larger biblical tradition of the term. In this psalm, it refers to the human leader whom God chose and empowered — the Davidic king as representative of the people.
19. The promise 'we will not turn back' responds to the accusation of Psalm 78:57 ('they turned back and were faithless'). The psalmist pledges that the restored people will not repeat the pattern of the ancestors.
20. The three-part refrain structure (verses 4, 8, 20) creates the psalm's emotional architecture: the same words repeated with increasing intensity. The refrain is not merely decorative but performative — it enacts the community's desperate, repeated crying out. The third repetition, with the fullest divine name, is the psalm's final, most concentrated appeal.

81

Summary: *A festival psalm attributed to Asaph that opens with exuberant summons to praise — shout, sing, blow the ram's horn — then pivots sharply as God's own voice breaks in. The divine speech dominates the psalm from verse 6 onward, recounting the exodus deliverance, the testing at Meribah, and the first commandment's demand for exclusive loyalty. God laments Israel's refusal to listen, describes what He did in response (handing them over to their own stubborn hearts), and closes with a devastating conditional: if only My people would listen, I would feed them with the finest wheat and honey from the rock.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The structural pivot at verse 6 is one of the most dramatic in the Psalter. What begins as a congregational hymn suddenly becomes a divine oracle. God speaks in first person — 'I relieved his shoulder of the burden' — and the worshippers become an audience to their own history retold by the one who shaped it. The closing conditional (lu ammi shomea li, 'if only My people would listen to Me') is among the most poignant lines God speaks in the Hebrew Bible. It reveals divine longing — God as the rejected lover who still extends the offer. The psalm's movement from celebration to divine lament mirrors the trajectory of Israel's own story: from deliverance to disobedience.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription assigns this to Asaph, which places it within the Asaphite collection (Psalms 73-83). The reference to Joseph in verse 6 (edut bi-Yehoseph) is unusual — most psalms use Jacob or Israel. The use of Joseph may signal northern tribal identity or invoke the exodus generation specifically. The phrase 'I tested you at the waters of Meribah' (v. 8) echoes Exodus 17 and Numbers 20, but the Hebrew selah at verse 8 makes the exact division of the divine speech debated among commentators.*

Connections: *The call to blow the shofar at the new moon and full moon (v. 4) connects to the festival calendar of Leviticus 23. The divine speech recounting exodus deliverance parallels Psalm 95:7-11, which similarly moves from praise to divine warning about hardened hearts. The closing image of honey from the rock (v. 17) echoes Deuteronomy 32:13, where God feeds Israel honey from the crag and oil from flinty rock. The 'I am the LORD your God who brought you up out of Egypt' formula (v. 11) quotes the Decalogue preamble (Exodus 20:2) verbatim.*

¹For the choirmaster. On the Gittith. Of Asaph.

²Shout for joy to God our strength!

Raise a shout to the God of Jacob!

³Lift up a song and strike the tambourine,
the sweet-sounding lyre with the harp!

⁴Blow the ram's horn at the new moon,
at the full moon, on the day of our feast!

⁵For it is a statute for Israel,
a ruling from the God of Jacob.

⁶He established it as a testimony in Joseph
when he went out against the land of Egypt.
I heard a language I did not know:

⁷I relieved his shoulder of the burden;
his hands were freed from the basket.

⁸In distress you called and I rescued you.
I answered you from the hidden place of thunder.
I tested you at the waters of Meribah. Selah.

⁹Listen, My people, and I will warn you.
O Israel, if only you would listen to Me!

¹⁰There must be no foreign god among you.
You must not bow down to an alien god.

¹¹I am the LORD your God
who brought you up from the land of Egypt.
Open your mouth wide, and I will fill it.

¹²But My people did not listen to My voice,
and Israel would have none of Me.

¹³So I let them go in the stubbornness of their hearts;
they walked by their own plans.

¹⁴If only My people would listen to Me,
if Israel would walk in My ways!

¹⁵How quickly I would subdue their enemies
and turn My hand against their foes!

¹⁶Those who hate the LORD would cringe before Him,
and their doom would last forever.

¹⁷He would feed him with the finest wheat,
and from the rock I would satisfy you with honey.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term gittit is of uncertain meaning — possibly a musical instrument from Gath, a winepress melody (from gat, 'winepress'), or a tune associated with the grape harvest. Its appearance in Psalms 8, 81, and 84 may link these psalms to autumn festival celebrations. The Asaph attribution places this psalm within the Levitical guild of temple musicians established by David (1 Chronicles 16:4-5).
2. The verb harninu ('shout, cry out in joy') and hariu ('raise a shout, sound a blast') are both high-volume, communal actions — this is not private meditation but public, full-throated worship. The designation 'God of Jacob' rather than 'God of Israel' may preserve an older tribal designation or emphasize the patriarch's personal story of wrestling and transformation.
3. The verb se'u ('lift up, carry') paired with zimrah ('song, melody') creates the image of physically raising music like an offering. The tof ('tambourine, hand drum'), kinnor ('lyre'), and nevel ('harp') form the standard ensemble of temple worship. The kinnor was David's instrument (1 Samuel 16:23); the nevel was a larger, deeper-toned stringed instrument.
4. The word keseh (or kese) means 'full moon' or 'the covering/concealment' — most likely the full moon when the moon is fully 'covered' with light. The pairing of chodesh ('new moon') with keseh ('full moon') spans the entire lunar cycle. The feast in view is almost certainly Sukkot (Tabernacles), which begins at the full moon of the seventh month (Tishrei), preceded by the shofar blast of Rosh Hashanah at the new moon.
5. The word choq ('statute, decree, something inscribed') and mishpat ('ruling, judgment, ordinance') together convey that this festival observance is not optional tradition but divinely mandated law. The God of Jacob did not suggest celebration — He commanded it.
6. The use of Joseph for Israel is rare — it appears also in Psalms 77:16, 78:67, and 80:2. In each case the context involves the exodus or the northern tribes. The shift from 'he' to 'I' in this verse marks the beginning of the divine oracle that dominates the rest of the psalm.
7. The word dud can mean 'pot, cauldron, or basket.' In the context of Egyptian slavery, it most likely refers to the baskets used to carry clay or bricks (cf. Exodus 1:14, where Israel's labor involves mortar and brick). Some translations render it 'pots' following KJV, but 'basket' better fits the construction imagery of the Egyptian bondage.
8. Meribah (from riv, 'to contend, to quarrel') is the place where Israel quarreled with God over the lack of water. The name itself means 'Quarreling' or 'Contention.' God's statement that He tested Israel there reverses the perspective of Exodus 17:7, where the people tested God. Both testings happened simultaneously: Israel tested God's patience while God tested Israel's trust.

9. The construction *shema...im tishma* ('hear...if you would hear') uses the same verb twice, creating an envelope: the command to listen frames the condition of listening. It echoes the Shema of Deuteronomy 6:4, where hearing is the foundational act of covenant fidelity.
10. The phrase *el zar* ('foreign god') and *el nekhar* ('alien god') form a synonymous parallel that echoes the first commandment (Exodus 20:3). The word *zar* means 'strange, foreign, unauthorized' and *nekhar* means 'alien, unrecognized, from outside.' Together they describe any deity that is not the LORD — not merely foreign in origin but unauthorized in identity. God is quoting the Decalogue's opening demand back to His people.
11. The phrase *harchev pikha* ('open your mouth wide') uses the Hiphil of *rachav* ('to be wide, spacious'). It means to open as wide as possible — to hold nothing back in asking, to receive with full capacity. The promise *va'amal'ehu* ('and I will fill it') is unconditional in its grammar: God does not say 'I might fill it.' The only condition is the opening.
12. The verb *avah* ('to be willing, to consent') is a word of volition, not capacity. Israel's refusal was not inability to hear but unwillingness to respond. The phrase *lo avah li* ('would not consent to Me') personalizes the rejection: it is not God's law that Israel rejected but God Himself.
13. The verb *shillach* ('to send away, to let go, to release') in the Piel is the same verb used for Pharaoh releasing Israel from Egypt. The irony is pointed: God once sent Israel out of bondage; now He sends them into the bondage of their own desires. Freedom from God becomes the worst captivity.
14. The particle *lu* introduces a counterfactual wish — something desired but not actualized. This is one of the most emotionally revealing statements God makes in the Psalter. It places divine omnipotence alongside divine longing, suggesting that God's power does not override human freedom even when that freedom causes God grief.
15. The word *kim'at* ('how little, how quickly, almost') emphasizes the ease and speed with which God would act — the obstacles Israel faces are trivial from God's perspective. The verb *akhnia* ('I would subdue, I would bring low') is the Hiphil of *kana*, meaning to force into submission. The phrase *ashiv yadi* ('I would turn My hand') means to redirect divine power against Israel's oppressors. The conditional remains in force: all of this would happen if Israel would listen.
16. The verb *yekhachashu* ('would cringe, would feign submission') from *kachash* means to cower, to submit falsely, to cringe in fear. The enemies would not genuinely repent — they would simply be crushed into submission. The phrase *ittam le-olam* ('their time forever') is ambiguous: it may mean Israel's time of prosperity would last forever, or that the enemies' time of punishment would be permanent. Most interpreters take it as Israel's blessing enduring.
17. The shift from third to second person (from 'him' to 'you') within a single verse is characteristic of prophetic speech, where God moves freely between describing Israel and addressing Israel. The honey from the rock echoes Deuteronomy 32:13. Wild bees nested in rock crevices in ancient Palestine, making 'honey from the rock' both a literal reality and a metaphor for provision from impossible sources.

82

Summary: *God stands in the divine council and pronounces judgment on the elohim — the gods, the divine beings — who were charged with governing the nations justly but have instead perverted justice, shown partiality to the wicked, and allowed the foundations of the earth to shake. God indicts them, strips them of their immortality, and sentences them to die like mortals. The psalm closes with a petition for God to rise and judge the earth Himself, since all nations belong to Him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the most theologically explosive psalm in the Psalter. The word elohim appears three times with three different referents: God (Elohim) stands in the council of God (El), He judges among the gods (elohim). The psalm presupposes a worldview in which the Most High God delegated governance of the nations to subordinate divine beings — a concept rooted in Deuteronomy 32:8-9, where God divided humanity according to the number of the bene elohim ('sons of God') but kept Israel for Himself. These beings have failed in their charge: they tolerate injustice, ignore the vulnerable, and let the wicked prosper. God's response is not reform but execution: 'You will die like humans.' The psalm effectively narrates the demotion of the gods — a monotheistic text that acknowledges the existence of other divine beings precisely to declare their judgment and death.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the elohim in this psalm has been debated for millennia. Three main readings exist: (1) they are divine beings, members of the heavenly council, to whom God delegated national governance — this is the most natural reading of the Hebrew and aligns with Deuteronomy 32:8-9 and the broader ancient Near Eastern concept of a divine assembly; (2) they are human judges who bear the title elohim because they exercise divine authority (this reading influenced later rabbinic interpretation and is reflected in Jesus's citation of verse 6 in John 10:34); (3) they are the gods of the nations, now declared impotent. The Covenant Rendering follows reading (1) as the most consistent with the Hebrew text and its ancient Near*

Eastern context, while noting that the text itself may intentionally blur the boundary between divine and human authority.

Connections: The divine council scene echoes Job 1-2, 1 Kings 22:19-23, Isaiah 6, and Daniel 7:9-10. Deuteronomy 32:8-9 (reading bene elohim with the Dead Sea Scrolls rather than bene Yisra'el with the Masoretic Text) provides the theological backdrop: God assigned nations to divine beings but kept Israel. Jesus quotes verse 6 in John 10:34-36, using the psalm's logic in His own defense. The accusation that the elohim failed to protect the poor and orphaned echoes the prophetic indictments of Isaiah 1:17, 10:1-2, and Amos 5:11-12 — except here the defendants are not human kings but heavenly powers.

¹A psalm of Asaph.

God stands in the divine council;
among the gods He renders judgment:

²How long will you judge unjustly
and show favor to the wicked? Selah.

³Defend the weak and the fatherless;
uphold the rights of the afflicted and destitute.

⁴Rescue the weak and the needy;
deliver them from the hand of the wicked.

⁵They do not know, they do not understand;
they walk about in darkness.
All the foundations of the earth are shaken.

⁶I Myself declared, 'You are gods,
and sons of the Most High, all of you.'

⁷Yet you will die like humans,
and fall like any prince.

⁸Rise up, O God! Judge the earth,
for You possess all the nations as Your inheritance.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The three uses of elohim/El in this verse are the interpretive crux of the entire psalm. The first elohim is the God of Israel — the supreme deity. The adat El ('assembly of El') refers to the divine council. The second elohim refers to the other divine beings in the council. This is not polytheism — it is hierarchical monotheism: one supreme God who holds authority over subordinate divine beings. The Dead Sea Scrolls and Ugaritic texts confirm that this council imagery was widespread in ancient Israelite and Canaanite religion.
2. The phrase nasa panim ('lift the face') is a legal idiom meaning to show partiality, to accept a bribe, to rule in someone's favor regardless of merit. When God 'lifts His face' to someone (Numbers 6:26), it is grace; when a judge lifts the face of the wicked, it is corruption. The selah at the end may mark a pause for the weight of the accusation to settle.
3. Four terms describe the vulnerable: dal ('weak, poor, low'), yatom ('fatherless, orphan'), ani ('afflicted, humble, oppressed'), and rash ('destitute, impoverished'). The fourfold description covers every category of powerlessness. The verb hatsdiku ('vindicate, declare righteous, uphold the rights of') is from tsadaq — the gods are told to exercise tsedaqah ('righteousness') on behalf of those who cannot secure it for themselves. This is the job description the gods have failed.
4. Two verbs of rescue: palletu ('rescue, cause to escape') and hatsilu ('deliver, snatch away'). The second — from natsal — is the same verb used for God's rescue of Israel from Egypt. The gods are expected to perform for the vulnerable what God performed for Israel. The phrase mi-yad resha'im ('from the hand of the wicked') means from the grip, the power, the control of those who oppress. The hand is the instrument of power, and the wicked have used theirs to crush the poor.

5. The verb *yimmotu* (from *mot*, 'to totter, to shake, to be moved') is used elsewhere for mountains trembling and thrones being shaken. When applied to *mosdei arets* ('foundations of the earth'), it describes cosmic destabilization. The connection between divine injustice and cosmic chaos reflects the ancient Near Eastern understanding that justice and creation are linked: when the gods fail, reality fractures.
6. Jesus quotes this verse in John 10:34-36, arguing that if Scripture calls these beings 'gods,' then His own claim to divine sonship is not blasphemy. The argument turns on the psalm's own logic: if God Himself conferred the title *elohim* on beings who subsequently failed, then the title itself does not guarantee righteousness. Jesus's use of this text is one of the most debated christological arguments in the New Testament.
7. The phrase *ke-adam* ('like a human, like Adam') carries both meanings simultaneously. They will die like any mortal human, and they will fall like Adam fell — from a position of divine favor into mortality. The word *tippolu* ('you will fall') echoes the language of fallen kings in Isaiah 14 and Ezekiel 28, where human rulers who claimed divine status are brought down to Sheol.
8. The verb *tinchal* ('You will inherit, You will take possession') in the context of Deuteronomy 32:8-9 is revolutionary. In the older arrangement, God took Israel as His *nachalah* ('inheritance') and assigned the other nations to subordinate beings. Now the psalmist demands that God inherit all nations — a universalizing move that collapses the distinction between Israel's God and the gods of the nations. This verse anticipates the fully monotheistic vision of Isaiah 45:22: 'Turn to Me and be saved, all the ends of the earth.'

83

Summary: *The final psalm of the Asaphite collection is a communal lament against a coalition of nations conspiring to annihilate Israel. The psalmist names ten enemy peoples — Edom, the Ishmaelites, Moab, the Hagrites, Gebal, Ammon, Amalek, Philistia, Tyre, and Assyria — who have united with one purpose: to wipe out the name of Israel. The psalmist calls on God to break His silence and to do to these enemies what He did to Midian, Sisera, Jabin, and the kings Oreb, Zeeb, Zebah, and Zalmunna. The final petition is that God would pursue them like fire consuming a forest, so that the nations would know that YHWH alone is the Most High over all the earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The coalition described in this psalm has no exact historical parallel — no single moment in Israelite history saw all ten of these nations allied simultaneously. This has led many scholars to see the psalm as either a composite of multiple threats or an idealized picture of total encirclement. The ten nations form a geographic noose around Israel: Edom and Moab to the east, Philistia to the west, Tyre to the north, Amalek to the south, Assyria as the distant imperial power. The psalm's military geography is also theological geography — Israel is surrounded on all sides, and only God's intervention can break the siege. The concluding purpose clause is remarkable: the goal of God's wrath is not annihilation but recognition. The psalmist wants the nations to know that YHWH is the Most High.*

Translation Friction: *The violence of the imprecations — fire, storm, shame, eternal disgrace — raises difficult questions about the ethics of prayer. The psalmist is not asking God to convert the nations but to destroy them, or at minimum to humiliate them so thoroughly that they acknowledge YHWH's supremacy. Yet the final verse introduces a surprising note: the purpose of divine action is that the nations 'may know that You alone, whose name is the LORD, are the Most High over all the earth.' This is not pure vengeance — it is evangelism by catastrophe, a violent form of the missionary impulse.*

Connections: *The historical references draw from Judges 4-8: Sisera and Jabin were defeated by Deborah and Barak (Judges 4-5); Oreb and Zeeb were Midianite captains killed by the Ephraimites (Judges 7:25); Zebah and Zalmunna were Midianite kings executed by Gideon (Judges 8:21). The ten-nation coalition echoes the Table of Nations pattern and the enemies list of Genesis 15:19-21. The closing verse's declaration that YHWH is Elyon ('Most High') over all the earth connects directly to Psalm 82:6, where the sons of Elyon are judged — now the psalm asks Elyon to act on His own authority.*

¹A song. A psalm of Asaph.

²O God, do not keep silent!
Do not hold Your peace;
do not be still, O God!

³For look — Your enemies are in uproar,
and those who hate You have raised their heads.

⁴Against Your people they devise cunning plans;
they conspire against Your treasured ones.

⁵They say, 'Come, let us wipe them out as a nation,
so that the name of Israel will be remembered no more.'

⁶For they conspire with one mind;
against You they seal a covenant —

⁷the tents of Edom and the Ishmaelites,
Moab and the Hagrites,

⁸Gebal, Ammon, and Amalek,
Philistia with the inhabitants of Tyre.

⁹Even Assyria has joined them;
they lend their arm to the children of Lot. Selah.

¹⁰Do to them as You did to Midian,
as to Sisera, as to Jabin at the Wadi Kishon —

¹¹They were destroyed at En-dor;
they became dung for the ground.

¹²Make their nobles like Oreb and Zeeb,
all their princes like Zebah and Zalmunna —

¹³who said, 'Let us seize for ourselves
the pastures of God.'

¹⁴O my God, make them like whirling dust,
like chaff before the wind.

¹⁵As fire consumes the forest,
as flame sets the mountains ablaze —

¹⁶So pursue them with Your storm
and terrify them with Your tempest.

¹⁷Fill their faces with shame —
so that they may seek Your name, O LORD.

¹⁸Let them be ashamed and terrified forever;
let them be disgraced and perish —

¹⁹Let them know that You alone —
whose name is the LORD —
are the Most High over all the earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the last psalm in the Asaphite collection (Psalms 73-83). The double designation *shir mizmor* ('song, psalm') may indicate both vocal and instrumental performance. The Asaph collection ends with this psalm of national crisis, forming an *inclusio* with Psalm 73's meditation on theodicy — the collection opens with the problem of the wicked prospering and closes with the nations conspiring against God's people.
2. The verb *charash* can mean both 'to be silent' and 'to be deaf' — the psalmist may be accusing God of both: refusing to speak and refusing to hear. The three verbs together paint a picture of total divine disengagement that the psalmist finds intolerable in the face of existential threat.
3. The verb *yehemayun* ('they are in uproar, they roar') from *hamah* describes the noise of a seething crowd or a raging sea. The phrase *nas'u rosh* ('they have lifted the head') means they have grown bold, arrogant, defiant — the head lifted in open challenge rather than bowed in submission. The psalmist frames the enemies as God's enemies, not merely Israel's — an important theological move that makes Israel's defense God's own cause.
4. The verb *ya'arimu* ('they make crafty, they devise shrewdly') from *aram* describes deliberate, calculated scheming. The word *tsefunekha* ('Your hidden ones, Your treasured ones') from *tsafan* ('to hide, to treasure up, to protect') may mean those whom God has hidden under His protection, or those He has treasured and stored up — His precious possession. The enemies' conspiracy targets not just a political entity but God's personal treasure.
5. The phrase *shem Yisra'el* ('the name of Israel') carries enormous theological weight. Israel's name was given by God Himself in the wrestling at Peniel (Genesis 32:28). To erase Israel's name is to erase God's naming act — it is an assault not just on a people but on a divine decision. This is why the psalmist frames the threat as an attack on God Himself.
6. The phrase *no'atsu lev yachdav* ('they conspire with one heart together') describes unanimous, wholehearted conspiracy. The word *berit* ('covenant') is the most loaded term in Israelite theology — the nations are making a covenant against the God of covenants. The verb *yikrothu* ('they cut') is the technical term for covenant-making (*karat berit*, 'to cut a covenant'). The enemies have formalized their alliance with the same solemn ritual that binds God to Israel.
7. The catalog of enemies begins with Israel's closest kin: Edom (descended from Esau, Jacob's twin), the Ishmaelites (descended from Abraham's first son), Moab (descended from Lot, Abraham's nephew), and the Hagrites (associated with Hagar, mother of Ishmael). Every enemy named is a relative. The word *ohalei* ('tents of') designates nomadic or semi-nomadic peoples — tent-dwellers encamped against Israel.
8. Gebal (a Phoenician city, modern Byblos in Lebanon, or possibly an Edomite region south of the Dead Sea), Ammon (east of the Jordan, descended from Lot), Amalek (the perennial enemy from the southern desert — the first nation to attack Israel after the exodus, Exodus 17:8-16), Philistia (the coastal power to the west), and Tyre (the great Phoenician maritime city to the north). The geographic encirclement is complete: enemies from every direction.
9. The 'children of Lot' (*benei Lot*) refers to Moab and Ammon, both descended from Lot's incestuous union with his daughters (Genesis 19:30-38). Assyria's role as the 'arm' of Lot's descendants is ironic — the mighty empire serves the interests of nations born from disgrace. The *selah* here marks the end of the enemy catalog and the transition to the imprecatory petition.
10. The prayer now invokes precedent: God's past victories become the model for present deliverance. Midian was defeated by Gideon's three hundred (Judges 7). Sisera was the Canaanite general killed by Jael with a tent peg (Judges 4:21). Jabin was the Canaanite king of Hazor whom Deborah and Barak defeated at the Wadi Kishon (Judges 4-5). The psalmist is saying: You did this before. Do it again.
11. En-dor is not mentioned in the Judges account of Sisera's defeat, but it was near the Kishon valley where the battle took place. The phrase *hayu domen la-adamah* ('they became dung for the ground') is deliberately degrading — the mighty warriors decomposed into fertilizer. Their bodies nourished the soil they tried to conquer. The image strips all dignity from military death.
12. Oreb ('Raven') and Zeeb ('Wolf') were Midianite captains captured and killed by the Ephraimites (Judges 7:25). Zebah ('Sacrifice') and Zalmunna ('Shade Denied') were Midianite kings whom Gideon personally executed (Judges 8:21). The psalmist prays that the current enemies' leadership will meet the same fate — not just defeat but death for every leader who conspired against Israel.
13. The word *ne'ot* ('pastures, meadows, dwelling places') from *navah* ('to be pleasant, to dwell') refers to the land of Israel as God's own grazing land — the territory God chose as His dwelling place. The enemies' ambition is not merely territorial but theological: they want to possess what God possesses. The verb *nirshah* ('let us take possession') from *yarash* means to dispossess, to inherit by displacement. They want to evict God from His own land.
14. The word *galgal* can mean 'wheel' or 'whirling thing' — likely the dried, spherical tumbleweed (a thistle head) that the wind rolls across the landscape. Paired with *qash* ('chaff, stubble'), the image is of enemies so insubstantial that the wind carries them away. What seemed like a terrifying coalition is, from God's perspective, dry weeds waiting for a breeze.
15. The verbs *tiv'ar* ('burns, consumes') and *telahhet* ('sets ablaze, scorches') describe uncontrollable wildfire sweeping through forested mountain terrain. The escalation from chaff (v. 14) to forest fire (v. 15) intensifies the image: the enemies are not merely scattered but incinerated. The psalm moves from wind to fire, from displacement to destruction.
16. The words *sa'ar* ('storm, gale') and *sufah* ('tempest, whirlwind') are the vocabulary of theophany — God appearing in weather. The verb *tevahlem* ('terrify them, throw them into panic') from *bahal* describes the divine panic that God inflicts on enemies in holy war (cf. Exodus 14:24, where God threw the Egyptian army into confusion). The psalmist wants not just defeat but divine terror.

17. The tension between 'fill their faces with shame' and 'so that they seek Your name' reveals the psalm's complex theology of divine wrath. Shame is not the goal — seeking God is the goal. The shame is the instrument that breaks the nations' arrogance enough for them to look upward. This moderating note distinguishes this psalm from pure vengeance.
18. Four verbs of ruin: *yevoshu* ('be ashamed'), *yibahalu* ('be terrified'), *yachperu* ('be disgraced'), and *yovedu* ('perish'). The escalation moves from inner shame to public disgrace to final destruction. The phrase *adei ad* ('forever, to perpetuity') makes the judgment permanent. Yet 'perish' here (from *avad*) may mean 'perish as a threat' rather than physical annihilation — the context of verses 17 and 19 suggests the nations survive but in a transformed state.
19. The title *Elyon* ('Most High') connects this psalm directly to Psalm 82:6, where the gods were called 'sons of the Most High.' Those gods failed and were sentenced to death; now the psalmist calls for the Most High to act directly, without intermediaries. The phrase *al kol ha-arets* ('over all the earth') universalizes the claim: YHWH is not Israel's tribal deity but the sovereign of every nation.

84

Summary: *A Korahite psalm of intense longing for God's dwelling place. The psalmist aches for the temple courts with physical desire — soul and flesh cry out for the living God. Even the sparrow and swallow have found nesting places near God's altars, and the psalmist envies them. The psalm pronounces blessings on those who dwell in God's house, those whose strength is in Him, and those who pass through the Valley of Baca (Weeping) on pilgrimage. It closes with the declaration that a single day in God's courts is better than a thousand elsewhere, and that God withholds no good thing from those who walk with integrity.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is one of the most emotionally transparent prayers in Scripture. The opening exclamation *mah yedidot* ('how lovely, how beloved') uses a word from the root *yadad* ('to love'), making the temple not merely beautiful but loved — an object of affection, not just admiration. The progression from longing (vv. 2-3) to envy of birds (v. 4) to beatitudes about pilgrims (vv. 5-8) to the temple gate (vv. 9-10) to theological declaration (vv. 11-13) maps the journey from desire to arrival to understanding. The psalmist does not merely want to be in the temple; the psalmist wants to be where God is. The temple is beloved because God is there.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *baqah* ('Valley of Baca') in verse 7 is debated. *Baca* may mean 'weeping' (from *bakah*, 'to weep'), 'balsam trees' (which grow in arid valleys), or a specific geographic location on the pilgrimage route to Jerusalem. The ambiguity may be intentional: the pilgrims pass through a valley of tears and transform it into a place of springs. The superscription assigns the psalm to the sons of Korah — Levitical musicians who had special access to the temple but may also have experienced periods of exclusion (the Korah rebellion of Numbers 16 cast a long shadow on the family).*

Connections: *The longing for God's courts echoes Psalm 27:4 ('One thing I have asked of the LORD — to dwell in the house of the LORD all the days of my life'). The bird imagery connects to Psalm 102:7 and Jesus's reference to sparrows in Matthew 10:29-31. The phrase 'sun and shield' in verse 12 is unique in the Psalter — God as sun appears also in Malachi 4:2 ('the sun of righteousness'). The Korahite collection (Psalms 42-49, 84-85, 87-88) consistently explores the theme of longing for God's presence, making this psalm the collection's emotional apex.*

¹For the choirmaster. On the Gittith. Of the sons of Korah. A psalm.

²How lovely are Your dwelling places,
O LORD of Hosts!

³My soul longs — it even faints —
for the courts of the LORD.
My heart and my flesh cry out
to the living God.

⁴Even the sparrow finds a home,
and the swallow a nest for herself
where she lays her young —

beside Your altars, O LORD of Hosts,
my King and my God.

⁵Blessed are those who dwell in Your house;
they are always praising You. Selah.

⁶Blessed is the person whose strength is in You,
in whose heart are the highways to Zion.

⁷Passing through the Valley of Weeping,
they make it a place of springs;
the early rain clothes it with blessings.

⁸They go from strength to strength;
each one appears before God in Zion.

⁹Give ear, O God of Jacob. Selah.
O LORD God of Hosts, hear my prayer;

¹⁰Look upon our shield, O God,
and gaze on the face of Your anointed one.

¹¹For a single day in Your courts is better than a thousand.
I would rather stand at the threshold of my God's house
than dwell in the tents of wickedness.

¹²For the LORD God is a sun and a shield;
the LORD gives grace and glory.
No good thing does He withhold
from those who walk with integrity.

¹³O LORD of Hosts,
blessed is the one who trusts in You.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Gittith also appears in the superscription of Psalms 8 and 81. The sons of Korah were a Levitical guild of temple musicians — descendants of the Korah who rebelled against Moses (Numbers 16) but whose sons were spared (Numbers 26:11). Their survival despite their ancestor's judgment may explain the intense gratitude for access to God's presence that marks their psalms.
2. The word *mishkan* ('dwelling place, tabernacle') is the same word used for the wilderness tabernacle (Exodus 25:9). By using this term rather than *bayit* ('house') or *heikhal* ('temple'), the psalmist may be evoking the entire history of God's dwelling among His people — from the portable tent in the desert to the stone temple in Jerusalem.
3. The phrase *El chai* ('living God') appears also in Joshua 3:10, 1 Samuel 17:26, and Psalm 42:3 (another Korahite psalm). The title distinguishes the God of Israel from the dead idols of the nations — this God is alive, active, present, and that aliveness is what the psalmist's body aches for. The physical language (flesh, heart, fainting) insists that longing for God is not merely spiritual but somatic.
4. The grammar of this verse is debated. Some read 'beside Your altars' as the location of the nests (birds literally nesting in the altar structure). Others read it as the destination of the psalmist's longing, with the bird imagery as a separate observation. The first reading is more poignant: even the birds have what I cannot have — a permanent place near God's altars.
5. The Levites and priests who served in the temple had residential quarters within the temple complex. Their 'dwelling' was literal, not merely spiritual. The psalmist's beatitude reveals the social dimension of the longing: some people get to live where the psalmist can only pilgrimage.
6. The word *mesillot* ('highways') is the same word used in Isaiah 40:3 ('Prepare the highway of the LORD in the wilderness'). The internal highway is the spiritual counterpart of the physical road — both lead to God's presence. This verse influenced later Jewish and Christian interpretations of

pilgrimage as both physical journey and spiritual state.

7. The Valley of Baca is not identified with certainty. If from *bakah* ('to weep'), it is a valley of tears that pilgrims must cross. If from *baka* ('balsam tree'), it is an arid valley where only drought-resistant trees grow. Either reading produces the same theological point: the path to God passes through desolation, and the journey itself transforms the landscape.
8. The phrase *me-chayil el chayil* ('from strength to strength') describes pilgrims who grow stronger as they travel — the opposite of what physical exertion should produce. The nearer they get to God's house, the more energy they have. The verb *yera'eh* ('appears') is a Niphal form meaning 'is seen' — the pilgrim appears before God, is seen by God. The pilgrimage ends in mutual seeing: the pilgrim sees God's dwelling, and God sees the pilgrim.
9. The address combines three divine titles: YHWH (the personal covenant name), Elohim (the generic divine title), and Tsevaot (Lord of Hosts). The parallel adds *Elohei Ya'aqov* ('God of Jacob'), grounding the cosmic title in covenant history. The verbs *shim'ah* ('hear') and *ha'azinah* ('give ear, listen attentively') are synonymous pleas for divine attention — the psalmist interrupts the meditation on pilgrimage with direct petition.
10. The word *magen* ('shield') may refer to God as Israel's shield, or to the king as Israel's shield. The word *meshikhekha* ('Your anointed one') is *mashiach* — the anointed king of the Davidic line. The psalmist asks God to look favorably on the king, through whose leadership the nation's worship is sustained. In later interpretation, this verse was read messianically — the anointed one whose face God gazes upon becomes the awaited Messiah.
11. The verb *histofef* (Hithpolel of *suf* or *safaf*) is debated: it may mean 'to stand at the threshold' or 'to be a doorkeeper.' Either way, it describes the lowest possible position of access — the person who barely gets inside, who stands at the outer edge. The psalmist's preference for the margin of God's house over the center of the wicked's tent is the psalm's defining value statement.
12. The sun metaphor for God was risky in ancient Israel, where sun worship was a constant temptation (2 Kings 23:11 records Josiah removing horses dedicated to the sun from the temple). By calling God 'sun,' the psalmist claims for YHWH what the nations attributed to solar deities — light, warmth, life-giving power — while containing it within Israelite monotheism.
13. The psalm began with YHWH Tsevaot (v. 2) and ends with YHWH Tsevaot (v. 13), forming an inclusio. Everything between is framed by the same name: the LORD of Hosts. The final beatitude strips away every external condition — temple access, pilgrimage, residence — and locates blessedness in trust alone. Anyone who trusts is blessed, whether they stand at the threshold or dwell in the innermost court.

85

Summary: *A Korahite psalm in three movements. The first (vv. 2-4) recalls God's past restoration of Jacob — the return from captivity, the forgiveness of sin, the turning away of wrath. The second (vv. 5-8) pleads for God to do it again, asking how long His anger will last and whether He will not revive His people once more. The third (vv. 9-14) is a prophetic oracle: the psalmist listens for what God will speak, and envisions a world where faithful love and truth meet, where righteousness and peace kiss, where truth springs up from the earth and righteousness looks down from heaven. The psalm closes with the LORD giving what is good and the land yielding its harvest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 11-14 contain one of the most beautiful and theologically dense visions in the Psalter. Four divine attributes — *chesed* (faithful love), *emet* (truth), *tsedaqah* (righteousness), and *shalom* (peace) — are personified as actors in a cosmic reunion. Faithful love and truth meet each other; righteousness and peace kiss. Truth springs from the earth below while righteousness looks down from the sky above. The image is of heaven and earth reconnecting, of divine qualities descending and earthly response ascending, of a world fully realigned with God's character. This is not mere poetry; it is a vision of cosmic restoration — the world as it was meant to be, where every attribute of God finds its counterpart in creation.*

Translation Friction: *The 'return of captivity' (*shevut Ya'aqov*) in verse 2 is debated. The phrase *shuv shevut* can mean 'to return the captivity' (a specific historical reference to exile and return) or 'to restore the fortunes' (a more general theological reversal). If the former, the psalm dates to the post-exilic period; if the latter, it could be pre-exilic. The psalm's theology does not depend on the dating — the pattern of remembering past restoration to petition for present renewal is timeless.*

Connections: *The personified meeting of *chesed* and *emet* (v. 11) echoes Proverbs 3:3 and 16:6, where these two qualities appear as a pair. The vision of righteousness looking down from heaven anticipates Isaiah 45:8 ('Drip down, O heavens, from above, and let the skies rain righteousness'). The land yielding its produce (v. 13) echoes the covenant blessings of Leviticus 26:4 and Deuteronomy 28:12. The psalm's three-part structure — past deliverance, present plea, future vision — mirrors the pattern of prophetic hope found throughout Isaiah 40-66.*

- ¹For the choirmaster. Of the sons of Korah. A psalm.
- ²O LORD, You showed favor to Your land;
You restored the fortunes of Jacob.
- ³You forgave the guilt of Your people;
You covered all their sin. Selah.
- ⁴You withdrew all Your fury;
You turned from Your burning anger.
- ⁵Restore us, O God of our salvation,
and put an end to Your displeasure with us.
- ⁶Will You be angry with us forever?
Will You extend Your anger to every generation?
- ⁷Will You not revive us again,
so that Your people may rejoice in You?
- ⁸Show us Your faithful love, O LORD,
and grant us Your salvation.
- ⁹Let me hear what God the LORD will speak,
for He will speak peace to His people,
to His faithful ones —
but let them not return to foolishness.
- ¹⁰Surely His salvation is near to those who fear Him,
so that glory may dwell in our land.
- ¹¹Faithful love and truth have met;
righteousness and peace have kissed.
- ¹²Truth springs up from the earth,
and righteousness looks down from heaven.
- ¹³The LORD Himself will give what is good,
and our land will yield its harvest.
- ¹⁴Righteousness goes before Him
and prepares the way for His steps.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Another Korahite psalm, continuing the second Korahite collection (Psalms 84-85, 87-88). The Korahite psalms in this section share a focus on Zion theology — God's dwelling, God's land, God's city — and the longing for divine presence that defines the Korahite voice.
2. The verb *ratsita* ('You showed favor, You were pleased with') from *ratsah* means to accept, to take delight in, to be gracious toward. The phrase *shavta shevit Ya'aqov* ('You returned the captivity/fortunes of Jacob') uses the idiom *shuv shevut*, which can refer to a literal return from exile or a general restoration of well-being. The psalmist establishes precedent: You have done this before.
3. Two verbs of forgiveness: *nasata* ('You bore, You carried away, You forgave') from *nasa* means to lift up and remove — God picks up the guilt and carries it away. *kissita* ('You covered') from *kasah* means to conceal, to hide from sight — God covers the sin so it is no longer visible. Together they describe forgiveness as both removal and concealment: the sin is taken away and hidden. The *selah* may mark a pause for the congregation to absorb the weight of this remembered mercy.

4. The verb *asafta* ('You gathered in, You withdrew') from *asaf* means to collect back, to pull in. God's fury (*evratekha*, from *avar*, 'to overflow, to rage') was out — deployed, active — and God gathered it back. The phrase *charon af* ('burning of the nostril') is the standard Hebrew idiom for intense anger — the image is of nostrils flaring with heat. God turned from this heat. Past tense: He did this. The question is whether He will do it again.
5. The verb *shuvenu* ('restore us, turn us, bring us back') from *shuv* is the same root as *teshuvah* ('repentance, return'). The psalmist asks God to do the turning — the people cannot return on their own. The title *Elohei yish'enu* ('God of our salvation') grounds the petition in God's identity as savior. The verb *hafer* ('break, annul, put an end to') from *parar* means to shatter, to dissolve — the psalmist wants God's anger literally broken apart.
6. Two questions that are also arguments: if God's anger lasts forever, it contradicts His character as the God of salvation (v. 5) and the God who previously forgave (vv. 3-4). The verb *timshokh* ('will You drag out, extend, prolong') from *mashakh* means to stretch, to pull like a rope. Will God's anger stretch endlessly across generations? The implied answer is no — the God who once withdrew His fury will do so again.
7. The verb *techayyenu* ('You will revive us, give us life') from *chayah* means to make alive, to restore to vitality. The psalmist asks for resurrection — not from death but from the living death of divine displeasure. Revival is not an end in itself: it serves rejoicing. The people need to be made alive so they can be glad in God. Joy is the goal of restoration.
8. The verb *har'enu* ('show us, let us see') from *ra'ah* means to make visible — the psalmist wants to see God's *chesed* (faithful love) manifested in concrete action, not merely believed as doctrine. The parallel 'grant us Your salvation' (*yesh'akha titten lanu*) makes *chesed* and salvation nearly synonymous: faithful love is salvation, and salvation is the visible proof of faithful love.
9. The shift from petition (vv. 5-8) to prophetic listening (v. 9) marks the psalm's structural pivot. The psalmist stops asking and starts listening. What follows (vv. 10-14) is the content of what God speaks — a vision of restored creation that answers every petition the psalm has raised.
10. The word *qarov* ('near, close') establishes proximity — salvation is not distant or abstract but close at hand. The purpose: *lishkon kavod be-artsenu* ('so that glory may dwell in our land'). The verb *shakan* ('to dwell, to tabernacle') is the root of *Shekhinah* — God's dwelling presence. The psalm envisions *kavod* ('glory') — the visible weight of God's presence — taking up permanent residence in the land. This is the ultimate goal of restoration: not merely forgiveness but the return of God's manifested presence.
11. The four attributes — *chesed*, *emet*, *tsedeq*, *shalom* — are the foundational qualities of God's character and God's kingdom. Their personified meeting describes a world restored to wholeness, where no divine attribute is sacrificed for another. In fallen reality, justice and mercy seem opposed; in the restored world, they kiss.
12. The agricultural metaphor — truth 'sprouts' from the earth — suggests that truth is not imposed from outside but grows organically from a restored creation. When the land is healed, truth is its natural produce. Righteousness gazing down from heaven is the divine counterpart: God's order descending to meet earth's response. Isaiah 45:8 develops this same imagery: 'Drip down, O heavens, from above, and let the skies rain righteousness; let the earth open and let salvation sprout.'
13. The vision moves from cosmic abstraction to agricultural reality: the LORD gives *ha-tov* ('the good') and the land gives *yevulah* ('its produce, its yield'). The two givings mirror each other — God gives from above, the land gives from below. The word *yevul* ('produce, harvest') grounds the theology in material blessing: restored relationship with God results in literal abundance. The covenant blessings of Deuteronomy 28:1-14 are being fulfilled.
14. The personification of righteousness as a road-preparer echoes Isaiah 40:3 ('Prepare the way of the LORD') and anticipates the New Testament application to John the Baptist. The image of God walking suggests the return of divine presence to the land — the *kavod* ('glory') of verse 10 now in motion, approaching, arriving.

86

Summary: *The only psalm in Book III attributed to David, this is a prayer of deep personal need woven almost entirely from phrases found elsewhere in Scripture. David pleads for God's ear, confesses his dependence, asks for mercy, and declares God's uniqueness among all so-called gods. He petitions for instruction in God's way, for an undivided heart, and for a sign of God's favor. The psalm is simultaneously desperate and confident — every cry for help is anchored in a declaration of who God is.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is a mosaic. Nearly every line echoes or quotes another biblical text — Exodus 34:6, Psalm 25, Psalm 27, Psalm 54, Isaiah 43, and others. Some scholars have called it derivative; a better reading is that David prays in the language of Scripture itself. He has so internalized God's word that his spontaneous prayer sounds like a concordance. The centerpiece is verse 11: 'Teach me Your way, O LORD, that I may walk in Your truth; unite my heart to fear Your name.' The verb *yached* ('unite') appears only here in the Psalter — David asks God to gather his scattered heart into a single focus. The divided heart, pulled in multiple directions by desire and fear, needs to be made one.*

Translation Friction: The Davidic attribution is unusual in Book III (Psalms 73-89), which is otherwise dominated by Asaphite and Korahite collections. Some scholars see this as a later insertion, while others view it as an intentional Davidic voice placed within the communal collections to remind the worshipping community that the king, too, is a suppliant before God. The phrase 'among the gods there is none like You' (v. 8) uses elohim in a way consistent with Psalm 82's divine council theology — the existence of other elohim is acknowledged, but their incomparability with YHWH is asserted.

Connections: Verse 15 quotes Exodus 34:6 nearly verbatim — the great self-revelation of God's character after the golden calf disaster. The petition 'teach me Your way' (v. 11) echoes Psalm 25:4 and 27:11. The declaration 'there is none like You among the gods' (v. 8) connects to Exodus 15:11, Deuteronomy 3:24, and Psalm 82. The request for an 'undivided heart' (v. 11) anticipates Ezekiel 11:19 and Jeremiah 32:39, where God promises to give His people 'one heart.' David's prayer becomes God's future promise.

¹A prayer of David.

Bend down Your ear, O LORD, and answer me,
for I am afflicted and needy.

²Guard my life, for I am devoted to You.
Save Your servant, O my God —
the one who trusts in You.

³Be gracious to me, O Lord,
for to You I call all day long.

⁴Gladden the soul of Your servant,
for to You, O Lord, I lift up my soul.

⁵For You, O Lord, are good and forgiving,
abounding in faithful love to all who call on You.

⁶Give ear, O LORD, to my prayer;
attend to the voice of my pleas for mercy.

⁷In the day of my distress I call on You,
for You will answer me.

⁸There is none like You among the gods, O Lord,
and nothing compares to Your works.

⁹All the nations You have made will come
and bow down before You, O Lord,
and glorify Your name.

¹⁰For You are great and do wondrous things;
You alone are God.

¹¹Teach me Your way, O LORD,
that I may walk in Your truth.
Unite my heart to fear Your name.

¹²I will praise You, O Lord my God, with all my heart,
and I will glorify Your name forever.

¹³For Your faithful love toward me is great,
and You have delivered my soul from the depths of Sheol.

¹⁴O God, the arrogant have risen against me;
a band of ruthless men seeks my life —
they do not set You before them.

¹⁵But You, O Lord, are a God
compassionate and gracious,
slow to anger,
abounding in faithful love and truth.

¹⁶Turn to me and be gracious to me;
give Your strength to Your servant
and save the son of Your maidservant.

¹⁷Show me a sign of Your goodness,
so that those who hate me will see it and be put to shame,
because You, O LORD, have helped me and comforted me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *hatteh* ('bend down, incline, turn') asks God to lower His ear — as if God is high and David is low, and the distance between them must be bridged by God stooping. The self-description *ani ve-eyon* ('afflicted and needy') is the language of the poor throughout the Psalter (cf. Psalms 40:18, 70:6). David, the king, identifies himself with the destitute — not as false humility but as theological reality: before God, even the king is a beggar.
2. The word *chasid* ('devoted one, faithful one, one bound by chesed') describes David not as morally perfect but as covenantally loyal — bound to God by faithful love. The self-designation *avdekha* ('Your servant') appears repeatedly in this psalm (vv. 2, 4, 16), establishing David's posture: he is not demanding as a king but petitioning as a servant.
3. The verb *chonneni* ('be gracious to me, show me favor') from *chanan* is the plea for undeserved kindness. The address shifts to *Adonai* ('Lord, Master') rather than *YHWH* — the title of authority rather than the covenant name. The phrase *kol hayyom* ('all day long') indicates not a single prayer session but continuous, unceasing appeal.
4. The verb *sammeach* ('gladden, make joyful') is a Piel imperative — David asks God to cause joy, not merely permit it. The phrase *nafshi essa* ('my soul I lift up') echoes Psalm 25:1 verbatim. Lifting the soul is an act of total surrender — offering one's entire inner life to God as an upward gesture of dependence and trust.
5. The adjective *sallach* ('forgiving, ready to pardon') appears only here and in Nehemiah 9:17 — it is an exceedingly rare word, applied exclusively to God. The phrase *rav chesed* ('abounding in faithful love') is drawn from the Exodus 34:6 self-revelation of God. David does not merely believe God is forgiving; he knows it from the tradition he has internalized.
6. Two verbs of attentive hearing: *ha'azinah* ('give ear') and *haqshivah* ('attend, pay attention, listen carefully'). The word *tachanunot* ('pleas for mercy, supplications') from *chanan* carries the tone of begging — these are not formal requests but desperate appeals for grace.
7. The confidence embedded in *ki ta'aneni* ('for You will answer me') transforms the plea into a declaration of trust. David does not call hoping God might answer; he calls knowing God will answer. The 'day of distress' (*yom tsarati*) is a recurring phrase in the Psalter (cf. 50:15, 77:3) — the moment when all human resources fail and only God remains.
8. The phrase *ein kamokha* ('none like You') echoes Exodus 15:11 ('Who is like You among the gods, O LORD?') and Deuteronomy 3:24. Each occurrence makes the same comparative argument: other powers may exist, but they are not in the same category as *YHWH*. This is not henotheism (worshipping one god while acknowledging others as real threats) but incomparability theology: *YHWH* is so different from other *elohim* that comparison itself becomes absurd.
9. The universalism of this verse is striking in a Davidic psalm: *kol goyim asher asita* ('all nations that You have made'). David envisions every nation — not just Israel — coming to worship before God. The verb *yishtachavu* ('bow down, prostrate themselves') is the most physical form of worship: forehead to ground. And *vikhabbedu li-shmekha* ('they will glorify Your name') — the nations will add weight (*kavod*) to God's reputation. This anticipates the universal vision of Isaiah 2:2-4 and Psalm 87.
10. The phrase *attah Elohim levaddekha* ('You alone are God') is the strongest monotheistic declaration in the psalm. After acknowledging other *elohim* in verse 8, David now asserts that *YHWH* alone deserves the title. The word *nifla'ot* ('wondrous things, miracles') from *pala* ('to be wonderful, to be

beyond comprehension') describes acts that exceed human understanding — the exodus, creation, deliverance.

11. The verb *yached* appears only here in the Psalter and is exceedingly rare in the Hebrew Bible. Its singularity is appropriate: the request itself is singular. An undivided heart is the rarest and most necessary condition for genuine worship. Kierkegaard's famous phrase 'purity of heart is to will one thing' is a commentary on this verse whether he knew it or not.
12. The response to the prayer for a united heart (v. 11) is a vow of wholehearted praise: *be-khol levavi* ('with all my heart'). The heart that was fragmented and needed uniting will, once healed, praise with its full capacity. The phrase *akhabdah shimkha le-olam* ('I will glorify Your name forever') commits to permanent, ongoing honor — the united heart does not waver back into division.
13. The phrase *she'ol tachtiyyah* ('the lowest Sheol, the depths of the underworld') is the superlative of death — not merely dying but descending to the deepest pit. David's deliverance was not from minor trouble but from the very bottom of the abyss. The greatness of chesed is measured by the depth of the rescue: the further you fell, the greater the love that pulled you out.
14. The word *zedim* ('arrogant, insolent, presumptuous') describes those who act without regard for any authority above themselves. The *adat aritsim* ('assembly of ruthless ones') is a violent group organized for oppression. Their defining characteristic: *ve-lo samukha le-negdam* ('they have not set You before them'). They have no awareness of God in their field of vision. The violence flows from the absence of God-consciousness — they are dangerous because they are godless.
15. The Exodus 34:6-7 formula is the most frequently quoted scripture within Scripture itself — it appears in Joel 2:13, Jonah 4:2, Nahum 1:3, Psalms 103:8, 145:8, Nehemiah 9:17, and here. Each context adapts it slightly. David's version omits the judgment clause ('who will by no means clear the guilty') and retains only the mercy side — appropriate for a prayer of supplication rather than a creed about divine justice.
16. The phrase *ben amatekha* ('son of Your maidservant') means someone born in the master's household — not an outsider who entered service but one born into it. David claims the deepest possible belonging: he is not merely God's servant by choice but by birth. He was born into God's household. The term parallels Psalm 116:16.
17. The *ot le-tovah* ('sign for good') is not a miraculous spectacle but a visible marker of God's favor — something the enemies can see with their own eyes that proves God is on David's side. The final verbs — *azartani* ('You helped me') and *nichamtani* ('You comforted me') — shift to the perfect tense, as if David is already speaking from the other side of deliverance. He ends the psalm in the past tense of answered prayer, confident that what he has asked for is already accomplished.

87

Summary: *A brief, enigmatic Korahite psalm celebrating Zion as the city of God. The LORD loves the gates of Zion more than all the dwelling places of Jacob. Glorious things are spoken of the city. Then the psalm makes a startling declaration: Rahab (Egypt), Babylon, Philistia, Tyre, and Cush will all be registered as born in Zion. The LORD Himself will write in the register of the peoples that 'this one was born there.' The psalm closes with singers and dancers declaring, 'All my springs are in you.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most radically inclusive texts in the Hebrew Bible. The nations listed — Egypt, Babylon, Philistia, Tyre, Cush — are not merely Israel's neighbors; they are Israel's historical enemies and oppressors. Egypt enslaved Israel; Babylon would destroy the temple; Philistia was a perennial military threat; Tyre was a mercantile rival. Yet the psalm declares that these nations will be registered as born in Zion — they will receive Zion citizenship. The image is of a divine birth register in which God Himself inscribes the nations as native-born children of His city. This is not conquest or conversion in the usual sense; it is adoption by divine decree. The enemies of Zion become the children of Zion.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of this psalm is notoriously difficult — some scholars call it the most obscure psalm in the Psalter. The grammar is compressed, the subject shifts abruptly, and the antecedents of pronouns are often unclear. The phrase 'this one was born there' (*zeh yullad sham*) is repeated as a refrain, but who is speaking and about whom varies with each line. The translation must make interpretive decisions that the Hebrew intentionally leaves ambiguous. We follow the reading that sees God as the one who inscribes the nations in Zion's register.*

Connections: *The vision of nations being born in Zion anticipates Isaiah 2:2-4 (all nations streaming to Zion), Isaiah 19:23-25 (Egypt and Assyria called 'My people' and 'the work of My hands'), and Isaiah 56:3-8 (foreigners joining themselves to the LORD). The divine register echoes Exodus 32:32 (Moses asks to be blotted from God's book) and Ezekiel 13:9 (false prophets not written in the register of Israel). The phrase 'all my springs are in you' may connect to the temple spring imagery of Ezekiel 47:1-12 and Joel 3:18.*

¹Of the sons of Korah. A psalm. A song.
His foundation is on the holy mountains.

²more than all the dwelling places of Jacob.
The LORD loves the gates of Zion

³Glorious things are spoken of you —
O city of God. Selah.

⁴I will mention Rahab and Babylon among those who know Me.
Look — Philistia, Tyre, and Cush:
'This one was born there.'

⁵And of Zion it will be said,
'This one and that one were born in her.'
The Most High Himself will establish her.

⁶The LORD will record in the register of the peoples:
'This one was born there.' Selah.

⁷Singers and dancers alike will say,
'All my springs are in you.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *yesudato* ('His foundation') refers to the city God has founded — Zion/Jerusalem, established by divine initiative on the sacred mountains. The plural *harrerei qodesh* ('holy mountains') may refer to the multiple hills of Jerusalem (Zion, Moriah, Ophel) or may be a poetic plural intensifying the holiness of the single mountain. The psalm opens with architecture: what God has built is the subject.
2. The comparison 'more than all the dwelling places of Jacob' raises a startling theological question: Does God have favorites among His own people's cities? The answer this psalm gives is yes — Zion holds a unique place in God's affections because it is where He chose to place His name (Deuteronomy 12:5). The love is not arbitrary; it is covenantal.
3. The passive *nikhbadot medubbar bakh* ('glorious things are being spoken about you') leaves the speaker unidentified — it may be God, the prophets, the nations, or the psalm itself. The title *ir ha-Elohim* ('city of God') designates Jerusalem/Zion as God's personal city — His capital, His home on earth. What follows (vv. 4-6) will reveal what these 'glorious things' are: the enrollment of the nations.
4. The name Rahab (not the same as Rahab the woman of Jericho) is a mythological sea monster representing chaos and, by extension, Egypt (Isaiah 51:9, Psalm 89:11). By using this name, the psalmist invokes Egypt at its most threatening — and then registers this monster-nation as born in Zion. The shock is intentional: the worst enemy becomes a sibling.
5. The title Elyon ('Most High') connects this verse to Psalm 82:6 (sons of the Most High) and 83:19 (YHWH alone is Most High over all the earth). The same God who judged the failed divine council and who rules over all nations now establishes Zion as the universal birthplace. The theology has moved from national election to universal inclusion — all under the authority of the Most High.
6. The image of God as census-taker and registrar is unique in the Hebrew Bible. The divine register appears elsewhere (Exodus 32:32, Psalm 69:29, Daniel 12:1, Malachi 3:16), but always as a record of the righteous. Here it is a birth register of the nations — the most universalist application of the image anywhere in Scripture.
7. The final phrase *kol ma'yanai bakh* ('all my springs are in you') is addressed to Zion and may allude to the temple as a source of living water — a theme developed in Ezekiel 47:1-12, Joel 3:18, and Zechariah 14:8, where a river flows from the temple to water the earth. The springs are both literal (the Gihon spring that supplied Jerusalem) and theological (God's city as the source of life for all peoples).

Summary: *The darkest psalm in the Psalter. A Korahite psalm attributed also to Heman the Ezrahite, this lament begins with a cry to God and never resolves. The psalmist describes a life spent at the edge of Sheol — overwhelmed by God's wrath, cut off from friends, trapped in a pit with no escape. Every section pleads for God's attention, and every section receives silence. The psalmist asks devastating theological questions: Do You work wonders for the dead? Will the shades rise to praise You? Is Your faithful love declared in the grave? The psalm ends with the word darkness. There is no dawn, no rescue, no turning point. It is the only psalm with no note of hope.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 88 is unique in the entire Psalter: it is the only psalm that ends in unrelieved darkness. Every other lament — even the most agonized — turns at some point toward hope, trust, or praise. Psalm 88 does not. It begins in distress and ends in distress. The final word of the poem is choshekh ('darkness'). This is not a failure of faith but a witness to a kind of suffering so complete that no resolution is possible within the poem itself. The psalm's inclusion in the canon testifies to something extraordinary: Israel's worship tradition made room for the voice that cannot find comfort, the sufferer for whom the night does not end. The psalm does not resolve because some suffering does not resolve — and God's word includes that reality.*

Translation Friction: *The double attribution — 'of the sons of Korah' and 'of Heman the Ezrahite' — is unusual. Heman was one of the three chief musicians appointed by David (1 Chronicles 6:33, 15:17), and 'Ezrahite' may mean 'native-born' or may link him to the clan of Zerah. The relationship between the Korahite attribution and the Heman attribution is unclear — he may have been a Korahite who also carried the Ezrahite designation. The term mahalat le-annot in the superscription is obscure — possibly 'for singing with suffering/affliction' or a musical direction indicating a mournful mode.*

Connections: *The questions of verses 11-13 ('Is Your faithful love declared in the grave? Your faithfulness in Abaddon?') anticipate the theological crisis of death that runs through Ecclesiastes and finds resolution only in later texts like Daniel 12:2 and Isaiah 26:19. The language of the pit (bor), Sheol, and Abaddon connects to Job 10:20-22 and Psalm 30:4. Heman's personal anguish — 'I have been afflicted and near death since my youth' (v. 16) — makes this psalm a companion to Job: both are righteous sufferers who receive no explanation and find no relief within their own narrative.*

¹A song. A psalm of the sons of Korah.

For the choirmaster. According to Mahalath Leannoth.

A maskil of Heman the Ezrahite.

²O LORD, God of my salvation,
I cry out before You day and night.

³Let my prayer come before You;
bend Your ear to my cry.

⁴For my soul is full of troubles,
and my life has reached the brink of Sheol.

⁵I am counted among those who go down to the pit;
I have become like a man with no strength.

⁶Set loose among the dead,
like the slain who lie in the grave
whom You remember no more —
they are cut off from Your hand.

⁷You have placed me in the deepest pit,
in dark places, in the depths.

⁸Your wrath lies heavy upon me,
and You overwhelm me with all Your breakers. Selah.

⁹You have driven my closest friends far from me;
You have made me loathsome to them.
I am shut in and cannot escape.

¹⁰My eye wastes away from affliction.
I call on You, O LORD, every day;
I spread out my hands to You.

¹¹Do You work wonders for the dead?
Will the shades rise up to praise You? Selah.

¹²Is Your faithful love declared in the grave?
Your faithfulness in Abaddon?

¹³Are Your wonders known in the darkness?
Your righteousness in the land of oblivion?

¹⁴But I — to You, O LORD, I cry out,
and in the morning my prayer meets You.

¹⁵Why, O LORD, do You reject my soul?
Why do You hide Your face from me?

¹⁶I have been afflicted and near death since my youth;
I bear Your terrors — I am in despair.

¹⁷Your burning anger sweeps over me;
Your terrors destroy me.

¹⁸They surround me like water all day long;
they close in on me from every side.

¹⁹You have driven lover and friend far from me;
my closest companions are darkness.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term mahalath le-annot is obscure. Mahalath may derive from chalah ('to be sick, to suffer') and le-annot from anah ('to sing' or 'to afflict'). If both meanings of anah are in play, the superscription could mean 'for singing about affliction' — a fitting description of the psalm's content. Maskil indicates a skillfully composed, instructive poem. The craftsmanship of this psalm is extraordinary despite — or because of — its unrelieved darkness.
2. This is the only point in the psalm where God is called 'God of my salvation.' Every subsequent reference focuses on God's wrath, rejection, or silence. The saving title at the beginning makes the darkness that follows even more complete — the God who saves has, in this psalmist's experience, not saved.
3. The verb tavo ('let it come, let it enter') asks that the prayer reach God's presence — as if there is a distance between the psalmist and God that the prayer must cross. The verb hatteh ('bend down, incline') asks God to lower Himself to listen — the same request David makes in Psalm 86:1. The word rinnah ('cry, ringing cry, shout') here carries the tone of anguish rather than joy.

4. The verb *save'ah* ('is full, is satisfied, has had enough') is bitterly ironic — the word normally describes being filled with good things (Psalm 17:15, 'I will be satisfied with Your likeness'). Here the soul is sated with *ra'ot* ('evils, troubles, calamities'). The soul has eaten its fill — of suffering. The phrase *chayyai li-she'ol higg'i'u* ('my life has reached Sheol') means the psalmist stands at the threshold of death, not yet dead but close enough to touch the underworld.
5. The verb *nechshavti* ('I am counted, I am reckoned') from *chashav* means to be categorized, classified — the living have placed the psalmist in the category of the dying. The *bor* ('pit, cistern') is a common synonym for Sheol — the underground cavity where the dead are gathered. The phrase *ke-gever ein eyal* ('like a man with no strength') describes total depletion — *eyal* ('strength, power, might') has been drained completely.
6. The verb *nigzaru* ('cut off') from *gazar* means to sever, to divide. The dead are severed from God's active care. This verse presents the ancient Israelite understanding of death at its bleakest: the dead are in Sheol, God does not remember them, and they are cut off from His power. This understanding will later be challenged by Daniel 12:2 and the resurrection hope of Second Temple Judaism.
7. Three words of descent: *bor tachtiyyot* ('the pit of the lowest places'), *machashakkim* ('dark places, places of darkness'), and *metsolot* ('depths, ocean deeps'). The psalmist is sinking — deeper than the pit, into darkness, into oceanic depth. And the subject of the verb is You: *shattani* ('You placed me'). God did this. The psalmist does not attribute the suffering to enemies or to chance but to God's own hand. This is the psalm's terrible honesty.
8. The verb *samkhah* ('lies heavy, presses down') from *samakh* means to lean on, to press upon — God's wrath (*chamatekha*, 'Your heat, Your poison, Your fury') is a physical weight crushing the psalmist. The word *mishbarekha* ('Your breakers') from *shavar* ('to break') refers to crashing waves — the ocean surge that breaks everything in its path. God's waves — not random waves, but Your waves — batter the psalmist. *Selah*.
9. The verb *hirqaqta* ('You have made distant') from *rachaq* means to push away, to create distance. God is the one who separated the psalmist from community. The word *to'evot* ('abomination, loathsome thing') is extreme — the same word used for ritual impurity and moral revulsion (Leviticus 18:22, Deuteronomy 7:25). The psalmist has become repulsive to former friends. And *kalu* ('shut in, imprisoned') means locked up with no exit. The triple isolation — from friends, from society, from escape — is complete.
10. The verb *da'avah* ('wastes away, pines, grows dim') describes eyes failing from constant weeping or illness. The gesture of spreading out hands (*shittachti kappay*) is the posture of open-palmed prayer — hands extended, empty, receiving. The psalmist prays every day with empty hands held out to God, and every day the hands remain empty.
11. The *Rephaim* (*refa'im*) in this context are not the giant warrior clan of Genesis 14:5 but the shades of the dead — a term for the deceased inhabitants of Sheol. The word may derive from *raphah* ('to be weak, to sink down'). The dead in Sheol are diminished, powerless, unable to praise. This understanding of death as the cessation of worship is the backdrop against which later resurrection theology develops.
12. Two locations of death are paired with two divine attributes: *chesed* ('faithful love') in the *qever* ('grave'), and *emunah* ('faithfulness') in *Avaddon* ('Destruction/Abaddon'). *Abaddon*, from *avad* ('to perish, to be destroyed'), is personified as a place — the realm of destruction, a synonym for the deepest part of Sheol. The questions are rhetorical arguments: if the grave cannot declare *chesed* and *Abaddon* cannot proclaim *emunah*, then keeping the psalmist alive serves God's own interest.
13. The 'land of oblivion' (*erets neshiyyah*) from *nashah* ('to forget') is the realm where memory ceases. The dead forget and are forgotten. God's *pele* ('wonder') and *tsidqatekha* ('Your righteousness') cannot be known in a place where knowing has stopped. The four questions of verses 11-13 form a devastating theological syllogism: the dead cannot praise, cannot declare, cannot know. If God lets the psalmist die, the testimony dies with him.
14. The emphatic *va-ani* ('but I') sets the psalmist against the silence of the dead — they cannot cry out, but I can, and I do. The phrase *u-va-boqer* ('and in the morning') suggests that the psalmist prays at dawn — the traditional hour of hope and renewal. But in this psalm, the morning brings no relief. The verb *teqaddemekka* ('meets You, comes before You, anticipates You') means the prayer arrives before God even acts — it is there waiting when God turns to look.
15. The verb *tiznach* ('You reject, You cast off, You abandon') from *zanach* is the word for discarding something as worthless. The psalmist does not merely feel neglected — they feel thrown away. And *tastir panekha mimmenni* ('You hide Your face from me') — the hidden face of God is the most terrifying condition in Hebrew theology. God's face is His presence, His favor, His attention. When God hides His face, the worshipper is left in absolute darkness.
16. The phrase *mi-no'ar* ('since youth, from boyhood') reveals that this is not a temporary crisis but a lifelong condition. The psalmist has known suffering from the beginning. The word *emekha* ('Your terrors') from *emah* ('terror, dread') attributes the terror directly to God — these are not generic fears but divinely imposed horrors. The final word *afunah* is obscure — it may mean 'I am numb,' 'I am in despair,' or 'I am helpless.' Its very obscurity mirrors the psalmist's disorientation.
17. The verb *avru* ('pass over, sweep over') describes God's anger like a flood — wave after wave of *charon* ('burning rage'). The verb *tsimmetutuni* ('they destroy me, they silence me, they annihilate me') from *tsamat* means to cut off, to destroy completely. The psalmist is not merely suffering but being systematically dismantled by divine wrath.
18. The image of water surrounding (*savvuni ka-mayim*) echoes verse 8's breakers. The terrors of God are like rising floodwater — enveloping, inescapable, constant (*kol hayyom*, 'all day long'). The verb *hiqqifu* ('they encircle, they close in') from *naqaf* means to go around completely, to form a ring. There is no gap, no escape route, no dry ground.

19. The final word *machshakh* ('darkness') has no verb, no continuation, no resolution. The Hebrew syntax simply stops. This is not accidental — the poet chose to end the psalm with darkness as a noun, not as a condition that might change. The reader is left in the dark alongside the psalmist, with no promise of dawn. The psalm's canonical placement — between the radiant Psalm 87 (Zion as universal birthplace) and the covenantal Psalm 89 (God's promises to David) — ensures that the darkness, while real, exists within a larger frame of divine faithfulness.

89

Summary: *The longest and most theologically weighty psalm of Book III, attributed to Ethan the Ezrahite. It moves in three massive sections. The first (vv. 2-19) is a hymn celebrating God's faithful love and faithfulness, His cosmic power over the sea and the heavenly council, and the blessedness of the people who know the festal shout. The second (vv. 20-38) recounts God's covenant with David in elaborate detail — the anointing, the promise of an unbreakable dynasty, the father-son relationship, the sworn oath that David's throne will endure forever. The third (vv. 39-52) is a devastating lament: God has apparently renounced the covenant, cast off the anointed one, broken down the walls, and handed David's enemies the victory. The psalm closes with a raw question: Where is Your former faithful love, O Lord, which You swore to David in Your faithfulness?*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is the great collision between theology and history. The first two sections build the most elaborate case for God's faithfulness in the entire Psalter: chesed is mentioned seven times, emunah five times, berit three times. God swore an oath. God made a covenant. God promised with His holiness. The dynasty would last like the sun and moon. And then the third section dismantles everything the first two built. The anointed one is rejected. The crown is profaned in the dust. The walls are breached. The enemies rejoice. The psalmist does not resolve the contradiction — he holds both realities in tension: God's sworn promise and God's apparent abandonment. This is not doubt; it is the most honest form of faith: demanding that God account for the gap between what He said and what has happened.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of Ethan the Ezrahite is debated — 1 Kings 4:31 names Ethan as a legendary wise man, and 1 Chronicles 15:19 names an Ethan as a Levitical musician alongside Heman and Asaph. The historical occasion of the lament section is also debated: it could reflect the Babylonian destruction of Jerusalem (586 BCE), the humiliation of a specific king, or the general crisis of the Davidic dynasty's end. The psalm's placement at the end of Book III may be deliberate — it serves as the crisis that Book IV (beginning with Moses's Psalm 90) must address. The doxology in verse 53 is not part of the psalm but a liturgical addition marking the end of Book III.*

Connections: *The Davidic covenant language draws heavily from 2 Samuel 7 (Nathan's oracle) and Psalm 2. The cosmic hymn section echoes Psalm 74:12-17 (God's victory over the sea) and Job 26:12 (God crushing Rahab). The lament section parallels Lamentations 2 and 5. The phrase 'Where is Your former chesed?' (v. 50) echoes Isaiah 63:15 and anticipates the theological crisis of exile. The closing doxology (v. 53) connects to the similar doxologies ending Books I-IV (Psalms 41:14, 72:18-19, 106:48).*

¹A maskil of Ethan the Ezrahite.

²I will sing of the faithful love of the LORD forever;
with my mouth I will make known Your faithfulness
to every generation.

³For I said, 'Faithful love is built to last forever;
in the heavens You establish Your faithfulness.'

⁴I have cut a covenant with My chosen one;
I have sworn to David My servant:

⁵I will establish your offspring forever
and build your throne for every generation.' Selah.

⁶The heavens praise Your wonders, O LORD —
Your faithfulness in the assembly of the holy ones.

⁷For who in the skies can compare with the LORD?
Who among the sons of God is like the LORD?

⁸God is feared in the council of the holy ones —
great and awesome above all who surround Him.

⁹O LORD God of Hosts, who is like You?
Mighty is the LORD, and Your faithfulness surrounds You.

¹⁰You rule the surging of the sea;
when its waves rise, You still them.

¹¹You crushed Rahab like a slain corpse;
with Your mighty arm You scattered Your enemies.

¹²The heavens are Yours; the earth also is Yours.
The world and all it contains — You founded them.

¹³North and south — You created them.
Tabor and Hermon shout for joy at Your name.

¹⁴Yours is a mighty arm;
strong is Your hand, exalted is Your right hand.

¹⁵Righteousness and justice are the foundation of Your throne;
faithful love and truth go before Your face.

¹⁶Blessed are the people who know the festal shout!
O LORD, they walk in the light of Your face.

¹⁷In Your name they rejoice all day long,
and in Your righteousness they are lifted high.

¹⁸For You are the splendor of their strength,
and by Your favor You lift up our horn.

¹⁹For our shield belongs to the LORD,
and our king to the Holy One of Israel.

²⁰Then You spoke in a vision to Your faithful one
and said, 'I have placed help on a warrior;
I have raised up one chosen from the people.

²¹with My holy oil I have anointed him.
I have found David My servant;

²²My hand will be established with him;
My arm will strengthen him.

²³No enemy will deceive him;
no son of wickedness will oppress him.

²⁴I will crush his foes before him
and strike down those who hate him.

²⁵My faithfulness and My faithful love are with him,
and in My name his horn is lifted high.

²⁶I will set his hand over the sea
and his right hand over the rivers.

²⁷He will call out to Me, 'You are my Father,
my God, and the rock of my salvation.'

²⁸And I will make him the firstborn,
the highest of the kings of the earth.

²⁹I will keep My faithful love for him forever,
and My covenant will stand firm for him.

³⁰I will establish his offspring forever
and his throne as the days of heaven.

³¹If his children abandon My the Law
and do not walk in My judgments,

³²if they violate My statutes
and do not keep My commandments,

³³then I will punish their rebellion with the rod
and their guilt with blows.

³⁴But My faithful love I will not withdraw from him,
and I will not be false to My faithfulness.

³⁵I will not violate My covenant
or alter the word that has gone from My lips.

³⁶Once I have sworn by My holiness;
I will not lie to David.

³⁷His offspring will endure forever,
and his throne like the sun before Me.

³⁸Like the moon, established forever —
a faithful witness in the sky. Selah.

³⁹But You — You have rejected and spurned;
You have raged against Your anointed one.

⁴⁰You have renounced the covenant of Your servant;
You have profaned his crown to the ground.

⁴¹You have broken through all his walls;
You have laid his fortresses in ruins.

⁴²All who pass by plunder him;
he has become a disgrace to his neighbors.

⁴³You have raised the right hand of his foes;
You have made all his enemies rejoice.

⁴⁴You have turned back the edge of his sword
and have not sustained him in battle.

⁴⁵You have put an end to his splendor
and hurled his throne to the ground.

⁴⁶You have cut short the days of his youth;
You have covered him with shame. Selah.

⁴⁷How long, O LORD? Will You hide Yourself forever?
Will Your wrath burn like fire?

⁴⁸Remember how fleeting my life is!
For what futility have You created all mortals!

⁴⁹What person can live and not see death?
Who can deliver their soul from the grip of Sheol? Selah.

⁵⁰Where are Your former acts of faithful love, O Lord,
which You swore to David in Your faithfulness?

⁵¹Remember, O Lord, the disgrace of Your servants;
how I bear in my chest the taunts of all the many peoples.

⁵²with which Your enemies taunt, O LORD,
with which they taunt the footsteps of Your anointed one.

⁵³Blessed be the LORD forever.
Amen and amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ethan the Ezrahite appears in 1 Kings 4:31 as one of the wisest men of his era — surpassed only by Solomon. The pairing of Psalm 88 (Heman the Ezrahite) with Psalm 89 (Ethan the Ezrahite) places two Ezrahite wisdom figures side by side: one in unrelied darkness, the other in the tension between covenant promise and covenant crisis.
2. The word *olam* ('forever, eternity') applied to *chesed* is the psalm's foundational claim — and its most contested one. If *chesed* is forever, how do you explain the anointed one lying profaned in the dust? The psalm does not answer this question. It holds the claim and the contradiction together.
3. The verb *yibbaneh* ('is built, is constructed') from *banah* applies architectural language to *chesed* — faithful love is not a feeling but a structure, something built and maintained. The parallel places *emunah* in the heavens (*shamayim*), making faithfulness a cosmic reality, anchored above the reach of earthly disruption. The psalmist's claim is that *chesed* and *emunah* are as permanent as the sky itself.

4. God speaks directly, quoting His own covenant language. The verb *karati* ('I cut') is the standard covenant verb — covenants were 'cut' because animals were divided in the ratification ceremony (Genesis 15:9-18). The phrase *li-vchiri* ('with My chosen one') uses *bachir*, meaning the one selected, elected, singled out by divine choice. David is both *avdi* ('My servant') and *bechiri* ('My chosen') — claimed by God on both grounds of service and election.
5. Two promises: the perpetuation of David's *zera* ('seed, offspring, descendants') and the permanence of his *kisse* ('throne'). The verb *akhin* ('I will establish, make firm') from *kun* and the verb *vaniti* ('I will build') from *banah* use the same architectural language as verse 3 — *chesed* is built forever, and so is David's throne. The symmetry is intentional: the throne's permanence is grounded in *chesed*'s permanence.
6. The heavens (*shamayim*) praise, and the *qahal qedoshim* ('assembly of holy ones') — the divine council — proclaims *emunah*. The 'holy ones' (*qedoshim*) are angelic beings, members of the heavenly court. God's faithfulness is not merely an earthly claim but a celestial reality — the heavenly beings themselves witness to it. This sets up verse 7's comparison.
7. The word *shachaq* ('sky, cloud, heaven') and *benai elim* ('sons of gods, divine beings') place the comparison in the heavenly realm. Even among the celestial beings — not merely among humans — YHWH has no equal. The verb *ya'arokh* ('can compare, can be arranged alongside') from *arakh* means to set in a row, to place side by side for comparison. No heavenly being can stand in the same line as YHWH.
8. The *sod qedoshim rabbah* ('great council of holy ones') is the divine assembly — the same setting as Psalm 82:1. The verb *na'arats* ('is feared, is held in awe') from *arats* means to be terrifying, to inspire dread. God does not merely preside over the council; He terrifies it. The divine beings who surround God's throne are themselves in awe. The verse establishes God's incomparable majesty as the foundation for the covenant promises that follow.
9. The rhetorical question *mi khamokha* ('who is like You?') echoes Exodus 15:11 — the song at the Red Sea. The word *chasin* ('mighty, strong') from *chasan* is rare, emphasizing raw power. And *emunatkha sevivotekha* ('Your faithfulness surrounds You') — faithfulness is not just an attribute God possesses but an atmosphere that envelops Him. God walks in a cloud of faithfulness; it is the air around His throne.
10. The verb *moshel* ('You rule, You govern') establishes God's sovereignty over the sea — the primordial symbol of chaos in ancient Near Eastern cosmology. The verb *teshabchem* ('You still them, You calm them') from *shavach* means to soothe, to bring to rest. God does not merely withstand the waves; He silences them. This cosmic authority grounds the covenant promises: the God who controls the sea can certainly maintain a dynasty.
11. *Rahab* (*Rahav*) is the primordial sea monster — the chaos dragon representing the forces that oppose God's creative order. The verb *dikkita* ('You crushed, You shattered') from *daka* means to pulverize. God reduced the chaos monster to a corpse (*ke-chalal*, 'like a pierced one, like a slain body'). The phrase *bi-zero'a uzzekha* ('with the arm of Your strength') attributes the victory to God's own power. This cosmic victory narrative — God defeating the sea monster — is the mythological backdrop for the exodus (Isaiah 51:9-10 explicitly connects *Rahab* to Egypt and the Red Sea).
12. Total cosmic ownership: heavens, earth, *tevel* ('the inhabited world'), and its *melo'ah* ('fullness'). The verb *yesadtam* ('You founded them') from *yasad* means to lay a foundation. God is both owner and architect of everything that exists. The claim of universal ownership supports the covenant argument: the God who owns everything can surely keep one promise to one king.
13. The compass points (*tsafon/north, yamin/south-right*) represent the totality of direction, and the mountains (*Tabor in the west, Hermon in the north*) represent the geographic landmarks of the land. All of creation — directions and landmarks — celebrates God's name. The verb *yeranenu* ('they shout for joy') personifies the mountains as worshippers. Even the landscape praises.
14. Three images of divine power: *zero'a* ('arm'), *yad* ('hand'), and *yemin* ('right hand'). The arm is strength in action; the hand is power applied; the right hand is authority and favor. Together they describe a God whose power is active, directed, and supreme.
15. The four attributes — *tsedeq* (righteousness), *mishpat* (justice), *chesed* (faithful love), *emet* (truth) — form the complete character profile of God's kingship. They appear together here and in Psalm 85:10-14, creating a theological connection between the two psalms. When the psalmist later accuses God of abandoning the covenant, these four attributes are implicitly indicted: has the throne's foundation shifted?
16. The *teru'ah* ('festal shout, alarm, trumpet blast, shout of war or worship') is the sound of the *shofar* at festivals and the communal cry of worship. To 'know' the *teru'ah* means to be initiated into the worship of Israel — to participate in the festal life of God's people. These people walk *be-or panekha* ('in the light of Your face') — the opposite of the hidden face that Psalm 88 lamented. Where God's face shines, there is blessing.
17. Two grounds of celebration: God's name (*shem*, the personal identity and reputation of YHWH) and God's righteousness (*tsidqatekha*). The people rejoice not in their own strength but in who God is and what God does rightly. The verb *yarumu* ('they are lifted high, they are exalted') from *rum* means God's righteousness elevates His people — they rise because He is right.
18. The word *tiferet* ('splendor, beauty, glory') applied to *uzzamo* ('their strength') means God is the beautiful part of Israel's power — without God, their strength has no glory. The horn (*qeren*) is the symbol of power and dignity, and God's favor (*ratson*, 'pleasure, delight, acceptance') is what raises it. Israel's strength is not indigenous; it is given.
19. The 'shield' (*magen*) and 'king' (*malke*) both belong to God. The human king — the shield of the people — is himself God's possession. The title *Qedosh Yisra'el* ('Holy One of Israel') is characteristically Isaianic (occurring 25 times in Isaiah) but appears here to emphasize that Israel's king derives authority from Israel's God. This verse transitions to the Davidic covenant section.
20. The phrase *az dibbarta be-chazon* ('then You spoke in a vision') introduces the divine oracle that follows — likely referring to Nathan's prophecy in 2 Samuel 7. The 'faithful one' (*chasidekha*) may be Nathan, Samuel, or David himself. God chose a *gibbor* ('warrior, mighty one') and a *bachur* ('chosen one, young man') from the people (*me-am*) — David was not born into the royal line but was elevated from the common people.

21. The verb *matsati* ('I found') echoes 1 Samuel 13:14, where God tells Saul He has 'sought out a man after His own heart.' The finding implies that David was not obvious — he was the youngest son, overlooked by his own family (1 Samuel 16:11). God found what everyone else missed.
22. God's hand (*yad*) and arm (*zero'a*) — the instruments of divine power celebrated in verse 14 — are now pledged to David personally. The verb *tikkon* ('will be established') and *te'ammetsennu* ('will strengthen him') promise ongoing, active divine support. God's cosmic power is directed toward one man's success.
23. The verb *yasshi* ('will exact, will deceive, will lay a claim on') from *nasha* means to trick or to demand unjust payment. The *ben avlah* ('son of wickedness') is a person characterized by *avlah* ('injustice, perversity'). God promises that David will be protected from both deception and oppression. This promise will be tested severely in the lament section.
24. The verb *khattoti* ('I will crush, I will shatter') from *katat* and *eggof* ('I will strike, I will plague') from *nagaf* describe God personally fighting David's battles. The enemies are both *tsarav* ('his adversaries') and *mesan'av* ('those who hate him'). God's combat is personal: He fights because David's enemies are His enemies.
25. The two pillar words — *emunah* and *chesed* — are now specifically pledged to David. They are not merely cosmic attributes or general qualities; they are personally directed: *immo* ('with him'). And *be-shmi* ('in My name') — David's power (horn) is exalted through God's identity. The name is the channel through which divine authority flows to the human king.
26. The sea (*yam*) and rivers (*neharot*) represent both geographic extent (from the Mediterranean to the Euphrates) and cosmic authority (dominion over the primordial waters). God gives David authority over the same waters that God Himself rules (v. 10). The Davidic king participates in God's cosmic sovereignty.
27. The father-son relationship between God and the Davidic king is adoptive, not biological — it is established by covenant, not by nature. This distinguishes Israelite royal theology from Egyptian and Mesopotamian myths where kings were literally descended from gods. The Davidic king is God's son by covenant declaration, not by divine procreation.
28. The word *bekhor* ('firstborn') carries enormous significance — the firstborn received the double portion, the primary blessing, the leadership of the family. God makes David's line His firstborn among all the kings of the earth. The title *Elyon* ('highest, Most High') — normally reserved for God Himself (v. 8) — is now shared with the Davidic king: he is *elyon le-malkhei arets* ('the highest of earth's kings'). The king participates in God's supremacy.
29. Three key words converge: *chesed* ('faithful love'), *berit* ('covenant'), and *ne'emenet* ('stands firm, is faithful') from *aman* — the same root as *emunah*. God's faithful love is kept forever; God's covenant is *ne'emenet* — itself faithful. The covenant is not merely made; it is reliable, trustworthy, built on the same foundation as God's own character.
30. The phrase *ki-yimei shamayim* ('as the days of heaven') means as long as heaven endures — essentially, forever. David's dynasty is given cosmic permanence, anchored to the duration of the sky itself. The same architectural permanence promised to *chesed* in verse 3 is now promised to the throne.
31. The conditional section begins. God anticipates the failure of David's descendants: *im ya'azvu vanav torati* ('if his children abandon My Torah'). The verb *azav* ('to abandon, to forsake') is the standard word for covenant betrayal. Torah here encompasses all of God's instruction — law, teaching, guidance. The 'if' introduces a possibility that will become historical reality.
32. The verb *yechalelu* ('they violate, they profane') from *chalal* means to desecrate — to treat what is holy as common. The accumulation of covenant terms — Torah, *mishpatim*, *chuqot*, *mitsvot* (law, judgments, statutes, commandments) — covers every possible category of divine instruction. The conditional envisions total disobedience.
33. God will punish — but the punishment has a specific character: *be-shevet* ('with a rod'), the instrument of parental discipline, not execution. The word *pish'am* ('their rebellion, their transgression') from *pasha* means willful revolt, and *avonam* ('their guilt, their iniquity') from *avon* is the twisted consequence of sin. God disciplines like a father (cf. 2 Samuel 7:14), not like an executioner.
34. The phrase *lo ashaqer be-emunati* ('I will not be false to My faithfulness') makes *emunah* reflexive — God's faithfulness is a commitment to His own identity. To break the covenant would be to make God a liar, and God cannot lie (Numbers 23:19). This creates the irresolvable tension of the psalm: the covenant cannot be broken, but it appears to be broken.
35. The verb *achalel* ('I will violate, I will profane') is the same word used for the children's violation of God's statutes in verse 32. God will not do to His covenant what the children did to His law. And *u-motsa sefatai lo ashaneh* ('the utterance of My lips I will not change') — once God has spoken, the speech act is irrevocable. God's word, once released, cannot be recalled or revised.
36. God swears by *be-qodshi* ('My holiness') — His own sacred nature is the guarantee. Since there is nothing higher than God by which to swear (cf. Hebrews 6:13), God swears by Himself. The phrase *im le-David akhazzev* ('if I will lie to David' — a Hebrew oath formula where 'if' means 'I certainly will not') makes the promise absolute. The solemnity is maximal: one oath, by God's holiness, irreversible.
37. The throne is compared to the sun (*ka-shemesh*) — the most permanent, visible, daily-reliable object in creation. As surely as the sun rises, David's throne endures. The phrase *negdi* ('before Me, in My sight') means God personally witnesses and maintains the throne's permanence. The sun comparison will make the lament's devastation more acute: has the sun gone dark?

- 38.** The moon (yareach) joins the sun as a cosmic guarantee. The phrase *ed ba-shachaq ne'eman* ('a faithful witness in the sky') makes the moon a witness — a *ne'eman* (from *aman*, the root of *emunah*) that testifies nightly to God's covenant commitment. Every moonrise is covenant evidence. *Selah* marks the end of the covenant section and the transition to the lament.
- 39.** The shift from covenant celebration to accusatory lament is the most dramatic tonal reversal in the Psalter. The word 'But' (*ve-attah*) carries the weight of centuries of shattered expectation. Everything God promised in verses 4-38 is contradicted by what the psalmist now describes.
- 40.** The verb *ne'arta* ('You have renounced, You have abhorred') from *na'ar* means to shake off, to reject with disgust. The *berit* ('covenant') that God swore He would not violate (v. 35) has been — according to the psalmist — renounced. And *chillalta la-arets nizro* ('You have profaned his crown to the ground') — the verb *chillal* ('profane, desecrate') is the same word used in verses 32 and 35 about violating covenants. God accused the children of profaning His statutes; now the psalmist accuses God of profaning the crown. The *nezer* ('crown, diadem, consecration') — the symbol of royal anointing — lies in the dirt.
- 41.** The verb *paratsta* ('You broke through') from *parats* means to breach — the walls God was supposed to defend, God has torn open. The word *mechittah* ('ruin, destruction, terror') describes the fortresses reduced to rubble. The God who promised 'no enemy will deceive him' (v. 23) has Himself become the one who breaches the defenses.
- 42.** The plundering is public — *kol ovrei derekh* ('all who pass by on the road') can raid at will. And the *cherpah* ('reproach, disgrace, shame') is social — the neighbors who once respected now mock. The Davidic king has become a roadside spectacle, an object of contempt.
- 43.** The irony is exact: in verse 14, God's right hand was exalted; in verse 18, God lifted Israel's horn. Now God raises the right hand of the enemy. God's power, which was directed toward David, is now redirecting toward David's destroyers. The verb *hismachta* ('You made rejoice') means God gave the enemies joy — the same God who was supposed to give David joy.
- 44.** The *tsur charbo* ('edge/rock of his sword') is dulled or turned back — the weapon is useless. And *lo haqemoto ba-milchamah* ('You have not made him stand in battle') — the verb *haqam* ('to cause to stand') is the opposite of what God promised. The warrior God chose (v. 20) cannot stand because God will not hold him up.
- 45.** The word *miteharo* ('his splendor, his purity, his brightness') from *taher* may refer to the radiance of the royal office. God has extinguished it. And the throne (*kisse*) that was supposed to endure like the sun and moon (vv. 37-38) has been cast *la-arets* ('to the ground'). The cosmic permanence promised in the covenant section is violently contradicted by the earthward motion of the lament.
- 46.** The verb *hiqtsarta* ('You shortened') from *qatsar* means to cut off, to truncate. The days of youth (*yemei alumav*) — the prime of life — are abbreviated by God's hand. And *he'etita alav bushah* ('You covered him with shame') — the verb *ata* means to wrap, to clothe. Shame is worn like a garment. The king who was clothed with royal splendor is now wrapped in disgrace. *Selah*.
- 47.** The cry *ad mah* ('how long?') echoes Psalm 82:2 and dozens of other laments — it is the universal question of the sufferer. The verb *tissater* ('You hide Yourself') from *satar* is the hidden face of God — the same terror as Psalm 88:15. And *tiv'ar kemo esh chamatekha* ('will Your wrath burn like fire?') — the fire of God's anger was supposed to burn against David's enemies (v. 24), not against David himself.
- 48.** The word *cheled* ('duration, lifespan, world') emphasizes brevity — life is short, and the psalmist feels its shortness acutely. The word *shav* ('futility, emptiness, vanity') — the same word as in the third commandment ('You shall not take the LORD's name in vain') — asks whether human existence itself is pointless. The question borders on the despair of Ecclesiastes: if the covenant is broken, what is the purpose of life?
- 49.** The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no one.' The word *gever* ('man, strong one') echoes Job 3:3 and emphasizes that even the mighty die. The phrase *mi-yad she'ol* ('from the hand of Sheol') personifies death as a grasping power. No human can pry open death's grip. The psalmist's argument is that death is coming and the covenant promises must be fulfilled before it arrives.
- 50.** This verse is the psalm's climax — the question that the entire poem has been building toward. The seven occurrences of *chesed* in this psalm (see note on v. 2) reach their crisis here: *chesed* was celebrated, promised, sworn, and pledged — and now the psalmist demands to know where it has gone. The psalm does not answer the question. It leaves it hanging.
- 51.** The verb *zekhor* ('remember') is the final plea — the psalmist asks God to take notice of the *cherpah* ('disgrace, reproach') that God's own servants bear. The phrase *se'eti be-cheqi* ('I bear in my chest/bosom') means the mockery is internalized, carried inside the body like a physical burden. The 'many peoples' (*rabbim ammim*) are the nations who mock both the king and the God he serves.
- 52.** The psalm ends without resolution — no doxology of praise, no turning point, no answered prayer. This is deliberate and canonical: the editors of the Psalter placed this unresolved cry at the end of Book III, followed by the doxology of verse 53 and then Moses's Psalm 90, which addresses the crisis of divine wrath and human mortality from a different angle. The arrangement implies that Psalm 89's question finds its response not within the psalm but in the larger canonical structure.
- 53.** This doxology is not part of Psalm 89 but a liturgical formula closing Book III of the Psalter (cf. Psalm 41:14 closing Book I, 72:18-19 closing Book II, 106:48 closing Book IV). The double *amen* ('let it be firm, let it be established') — from *aman*, the root of *emunah* — is a communal response of affirmation. The congregation says 'amen' to God's faithfulness even after a psalm that questions it. The doxology does not answer the psalm's questions; it affirms that the conversation with God continues.

Summary: *The psalm attributed to Moses — the only psalm bearing his name — and the opening of Book IV of the Psalter. It meditates on the eternal nature of God set against the crushing brevity of human life. Before the mountains existed, God was already God. Human beings are like grass that sprouts in the morning and withers by evening. The psalm traces this brevity to God's anger against sin: human days are consumed in divine wrath, and even seventy or eighty years pass like a sigh. The psalm closes with two petitions: teach us to number our days that we may gain a heart of wisdom, and let the favor of the Lord rest upon us so that the work of our hands will endure.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm answers the crisis of Psalm 89. Book III ended with the Davidic covenant apparently shattered, the anointed one mocked, and the question 'Where is Your former faithful love?' hanging unanswered. Book IV opens with Moses — not David — and redirects the theological gaze from the Davidic dynasty to the eternal God who existed before any dynasty, any monarchy, any temple. The psalm's strategy is radical: instead of defending the Davidic covenant, it leaps behind it to the God who was a dwelling place 'in generation after generation,' long before David was born. If the Davidic institution has failed, God has not — because God precedes all institutions. The famous prayer 'teach us to number our days' is not gentle pastoral advice; it is the hard-won wisdom of a man who watched an entire generation die in the wilderness because of God's anger. Moses knew something about numbered days.*

Translation Friction: *The attribution to Moses makes this potentially the oldest psalm in the Psalter — and the oldest poem in the Hebrew Bible after the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15). Some scholars accept the attribution as plausible; others see it as a later ascription meant to ground Book IV's theology in Mosaic authority. The phrase 'a thousand years in Your sight are like yesterday' (v. 4) has influenced theological reflection on divine timelessness from Augustine to Einstein. The psalm's unflinching focus on death and divine wrath — without the redemptive turn most psalms provide — makes it one of the most sobering texts in Scripture.*

Connections: *The opening line ('Lord, You have been our dwelling place') connects to Deuteronomy 33:27 ('The eternal God is your dwelling place'). The grass metaphor (vv. 5-6) is developed in Isaiah 40:6-8 ('All flesh is grass'). The seventy-eighty years of verse 10 became the standard biblical lifespan measure. The petition 'teach us to number our days' (v. 12) influenced Ecclesiastes' entire meditation on time and wisdom. Moses' placement at the head of Book IV (Psalms 90-106) reframes the Psalter: after the Davidic crisis of Psalm 89, the response is to return to the God who preceded David, preceded the monarchy, preceded even the conquest — the eternal God who was dwelling place before any earthly dwelling existed.*

¹A prayer of Moses, the man of God.

O Lord, You have been our dwelling place
in generation after generation.

²Before the mountains were born,
before You labored to bring forth the earth and the world,
from everlasting to everlasting, You are God.

³You turn mortals back to dust
and say, 'Return, children of Adam.'

⁴For a thousand years in Your sight
are like yesterday when it passes,
like a watch in the night.

⁵You sweep them away like a flood; they become like sleep.
In the morning they are like grass that springs up —

⁶in the morning it blooms and springs up;
by evening it withers and dries up.

⁷For we are consumed by Your anger
and terrified by Your wrath.

⁸You have set our guilty deeds before You,
our hidden sins in the light of Your face.

⁹For all our days decline under Your fury;
we finish our years like a sigh.

¹⁰The days of our years — among them, seventy years,
or if by strength, eighty years.
Yet their pride is only toil and trouble,
for it passes quickly and we fly away.

¹¹Who understands the power of Your anger?
Your wrath matches the fear that is due You.

¹²Teach us to number our days,
so that we may gain a heart of wisdom.

¹³Return, O LORD! How long?
Have compassion on Your servants.

¹⁴Satisfy us in the morning with Your faithful love,
so that we may shout for joy and be glad all our days.

¹⁵Make us glad for as many days as You have afflicted us,
for as many years as we have seen trouble.

¹⁶Let Your work be revealed to Your servants
and Your splendor to their children.

¹⁷Let the favor of the Lord our God rest upon us.
Establish the work of our hands for us —
yes, establish the work of our hands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Some manuscripts read me'onah ('refuge, habitation') instead of ma'on; the Septuagint reads kataphyge ('refuge'). The meaning is essentially the same: God is the place where His people live. The phrase be-dor va-dor ('in generation after generation') spans all of human history — every generation has found its home in God, including the wilderness generation that died under God's displeasure.
2. The birth language (yulladu, techolel) for creation is found also in Proverbs 8:24-25, where Wisdom was brought forth before the mountains. The image of God laboring to bring forth the world is rare and intimate — creation is not effortless speech (as in Genesis 1) but costly, physical work. Moses may be drawing on a different creation tradition.
3. The verb shuvu can mean 'return' (go back to dust) or 'repent' (turn back to God). Some interpreters read both meanings simultaneously: God commands both physical return to dust and spiritual return to Himself. The ambiguity may be deliberate — the psalm holds death and repentance in the same breath.
4. This verse became the basis for 2 Peter 3:8 ('With the Lord one day is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day'). The psalm's point is not mathematical equivalence but experiential incommensurability: divine time and human time are so different that comparison barely works. A thousand years — roughly forty human generations — is a single night shift to God.

5. The verb *zeraṁtam* ('You sweep them away') from *zaram* means to pour out, to wash away in a torrent — human lives are carried off like debris in a flash flood. Then the comparison shifts: *shenah yihyu* ('they become like sleep') — life is as insubstantial as a dream. The morning brings the grass metaphor: *ke-chatsir yachalof* ('like grass that changes/passes'). The verb *chalaf* ('to pass by, to change, to spring up') captures the grass's rapid cycle from growth to death.
6. The verb *yatsits* ('it blooms, it blossoms') from *tsuts* means to flower — the grass reaches its peak of beauty. And *chalaf* ('it passes, it renews') captures the brief moment of flourishing. Then *la-erev* ('by evening') — the same day, not the next — *yemolel ve-yavesh* ('it withers and dries up'). The verb *molel* means to wilt, to become limp; *yavesh* means to be completely dry, dead. Morning to evening: a single day contains the entire arc of a human life. The compression is brutal.
7. The verb *khalinu* ('we are consumed, we are finished') from *kalah* means to be used up, exhausted, spent. And *nivhalnu* ('we are terrified, we are thrown into panic') from *bahal* describes the fear that paralyzes. The cause of human brevity is not mere biology but divine anger (*af*, 'nostril/anger') and *chamatekha* ('Your wrath/heat'). Moses does not explain why God is angry — he simply states that human mortality is the result of divine displeasure.
8. The 'light of Your face' (*me'or panekha*) is the same divine countenance that blesses in Numbers 6:25 ('The LORD make His face shine upon you'). Here, the shining face is not blessing but exposure — the same light that bestows favor also reveals guilt. The dual function of God's face (grace and judgment) is a central tension in Hebrew theology.
9. The verb *panu* ('they turn away, they decline') from *panah* describes the days turning their face away — departing, leaving. The word *evratekha* ('Your fury, Your overflowing wrath') from *avar* means anger that overflows its container. And the final comparison: *killinu shanenu kemo hegeh* ('we finish our years like a sigh'). The word *hegeh* can mean 'a sigh, a murmur, a muttering, a growl.' An entire lifetime reduced to a single exhalation. The years do not end with a bang but with a breath that dissipates into air.
10. The seventy/eighty year span became the standard measure of a full life in Jewish tradition. Moses himself lived 120 years (Deuteronomy 34:7), well beyond this range. The psalm may reflect the normal rather than the exceptional lifespan. The word *aven* ('trouble, sorrow, wickedness, nothingness') carries moral weight — life's best achievements are tainted by futility. This anticipates Ecclesiastes' verdict: *hevel* ('vapor').
11. The rhetorical question *mi yodea oz appekha* ('who knows the strength of Your anger?') implies that no one fully comprehends how powerful God's displeasure is. The second line — *u-khe-yir'atkha evratekha* ('and according to Your fear is Your wrath') — means God's anger is proportional to the reverence He deserves. Since God deserves infinite reverence, His anger is immeasurable. The verse is a bridge between the description of mortality (vv. 3-10) and the petition for wisdom (v. 12): only someone who grasps the magnitude of divine anger will pray for wisdom.
12. The phrase *levav chokhmah* ('a heart of wisdom') places wisdom in the heart (*levav*), the Hebrew seat of will and decision. Wisdom is not intellectual knowledge but existential orientation — a way of living that accounts for the fact that life is brief, God is eternal, and the gap between them demands humility. This verse is the theological foundation for the entire wisdom tradition.
13. The verb *shuvah* ('return') — the same verb God used to command humanity back to dust (v. 3) — is now directed at God. Turn back. Come back. The phrase *ad matai* ('how long?') is the universal lament question. And *hinnachem al avadekha* ('have compassion on Your servants') — the verb *nacham* (Niphal) means to relent, to be grieved, to change course. Moses asks God to feel differently about His servants — not to withdraw the reality of death but to show kindness within it.
14. The word *chesed* appears here for the first time in the psalm — after twelve verses of mortality, anger, and judgment, faithful love finally enters. Its placement is deliberate: *chesed* does not deny the reality of death but transforms the experience of the numbered days. The petition is not for longer life but for a fuller one.
15. The petition asks for proportional compensation: *ki-mot innitanu* ('according to the days You afflicted us'). The years of suffering should be balanced by years of joy. The request is not for painless life but for redemptive proportion — the joy should match the suffering in duration. Moses, who spent forty years watching a generation die in the wilderness, would have calculated the debt precisely.
16. The verb *yera'eh* ('let it be seen, let it appear') asks for visible evidence of God's activity. The word *po'olekha* ('Your work, Your deed') is what God is currently doing — the servants need to see it. And *hadarekha* ('Your splendor, Your majesty') is directed *al beneihem* ('upon their children') — the next generation should inherit not suffering but glory. The petition is intergenerational: let the parents see God's work and the children see God's beauty.
17. The double petition ('establish the work of our hands... establish the work of our hands') is one of only a few instances of verbatim repetition in the Psalter. The repetition functions as intensification: this is the prayer's final, urgent, concentrated plea. All the theology of the psalm — divine eternity, human brevity, anger, wisdom, *chesed* — converges on this single request: let our brief lives produce something that endures. The answer, the psalm implies, is not in human effort but in divine establishment.

91

Summary: *Psalm 91 is a psalm of divine protection, addressed to one who has chosen to dwell in the presence of the Most High. It moves from a general declaration of trust (vv. 1-2) to specific promises of deliverance from danger — plague, warfare, wild beasts, demonic threat — and culminates in a divine oracle spoken in God's own voice (vv. 14-16). The psalm has no superscription in the Hebrew text, making its authorship anonymous.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm operates on the razor's edge between promise and presumption. It declares with absolute confidence that the one who shelters in God will not be harmed — no plague will touch his tent, no stone will bruise his foot. Yet the Hebrew Bible itself contains stories of righteous people who suffered terribly (Job, Jeremiah, the Servant of Isaiah 53). The psalm does not resolve this tension; it simply declares the promise without qualification. The divine oracle in verses 14-16 shifts the psalm from human testimony to God's own speech — 'Because he clings to me, I will deliver him' — which grounds the protection not in a magical formula but in the quality of relationship. The key verb is chashaq ('to cling, to desire'), which describes passionate attachment, not casual belief.*

Translation Friction: *The LXX attributes this psalm to David, but the Hebrew text is untitled. The phrase yalinkha be-ever'ato ('he will cover you with his pinion') uses avian imagery for God — feathers, wings — which is metaphorical, not literal, but carries deep resonance from Deuteronomy 32:11 where God is compared to an eagle hovering over its young. The 'terror of night' (pachad laylah) and 'arrow that flies by day' (chets ya'uf yomam) in verse 5 likely refer to both literal military danger and the ancient Near Eastern belief in demonic forces active at specific times. The psalm's promise of angelic protection (v. 11-12) was famously cited in the temptation narrative of Matthew 4:6, where it is used to test whether divine promise can be turned into divine demand.*

Connections: *The opening phrase yoshev be-seter Elyon ('he who dwells in the shelter of the Most High') connects to the temple theology of Psalms 27:5 and 31:20, where God's 'shelter' (seter) is the sacred space of divine presence. The four divine names in verses 1-2 — Elyon ('Most High'), Shaddai ('the Almighty'), YHWH, and Elohim — concentrate more names for God in two verses than almost any other passage in the Psalter. The promise of long life in verse 16 echoes the covenant blessings of Deuteronomy 30:20. The angelic guardianship of verses 11-12 has no parallel in the Hebrew Bible of this specificity — angels carrying the righteous lest they stumble — making this one of the most developed angelology texts in the Old Testament.*

¹He who dwells in the shelter of the Most High
will rest in the shadow of the Almighty.

²I say to the LORD, "My refuge and my fortress,
my God — in him I trust."

³For he will rescue you from the fowler's snare,
from the destructive plague.

⁴With his pinion he will cover you,
and under his wings you will find refuge.
His faithfulness is a shield and a wall.

⁵You will not fear the terror of the night,
nor the arrow that flies by day,

⁶nor the plague that stalks in darkness,
nor the devastation that ravages at noon.

⁷A thousand may fall at your side,
ten thousand at your right hand —
but it will not come near you.

⁸You will only look with your eyes
and see the repayment of the wicked.

⁹Because you have made the LORD your refuge,
the Most High your dwelling place,

¹⁰no harm will befall you,
and no affliction will come near your tent.

¹¹For he will command his angels concerning you,
to guard you in all your ways.

¹²On their hands they will carry you,
so your foot does not strike a stone.

¹³You will tread on the lion and the cobra;
you will trample the young lion and the serpent.

¹⁴"Because he clings to me, I will deliver him;
I will set him on high, because he knows my name."

¹⁵"He will call on me and I will answer him;
I am with him in trouble.
I will rescue him and honor him."

¹⁶"With length of days I will satisfy him
and show him my salvation."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The four divine names in verses 1-2 (Elyon, Shaddai, YHWH, Elohay) are not synonyms used for poetic variety alone. Each name carries distinct theological weight: Elyon stresses cosmic supremacy, Shaddai stresses might, YHWH is the covenant name, and Elohay ('my God') is the personal possessive. Together they present the full identity of the God who protects.
2. The word *seter* ('shelter, hiding place') is related to the verb *satar* ('to hide, to conceal'). In the Psalter it often refers to the protective presence of God experienced in worship (Psalm 27:5, 31:21). This is not physical architecture but relational proximity.
3. The shift to first person (*omar*, 'I say') makes this a personal confession. The two metaphors — *machasi* ('my refuge,' a place one flees to for safety) and *metsudati* ('my fortress,' a fortified stronghold) — move from flight to standing ground. The final phrase *evtach bo* ('I trust in him') uses *batach*, one of the primary Hebrew verbs for trust, which implies leaning one's full weight on something.
4. The *pach yaqush* ('fowler's snare') is a bird-trap, a concealed device designed to catch the unsuspecting. It serves as a metaphor for hidden danger — traps set by enemies or circumstances one cannot foresee. The *dever havvot* ('plague of destruction') pairs disease with ruin. The two images cover covert danger (the trap) and overt catastrophe (the plague), suggesting comprehensive protection.
5. The word *amitto* ('his truth/faithfulness') is from *emet*, one of the foundational attributes of God in the Hebrew Bible. Here it is rendered 'faithfulness' because the context is protection — God's reliability is what shields the believer. The image of God as a bird appears in Deuteronomy 32:11 (eagle) and Ruth 2:12 (wings of the LORD), always in the context of protective care.
6. The *pachad laylah* ('terror of night') and *chets ya'uf yomam* ('arrow that flies by day') form the first half of a four-part catalogue of dangers spanning night and day, darkness and light. The 'terror of night' likely encompasses both literal raids (night attacks were common in ancient warfare) and the ancient Near Eastern belief in malevolent spiritual forces active after dark. The 'arrow by day' refers to open warfare. Together the pair says: no time of day holds any threat for the sheltered one.

6. The dever ba-ofel yahalokh ('plague that walks in darkness') personifies disease as a predator moving through the night. The qetev yashud tsohorayim ('devastation that ravages at noon') is more mysterious — qetev is a rare word possibly connected to a demonic figure in ancient tradition. The Targum and rabbinic sources identify qetev with a specific demon active during the hottest hours. Whether the psalmist intended literal demonology or vivid personification, the effect is the same: destruction has been given legs and agency, and it still cannot reach the one sheltered in God.
7. The escalation from elef ('a thousand') to revavah ('ten thousand') is a standard Hebrew intensification device. The image is of a battlefield where devastation surrounds the protected one on every side. The promise is extraordinary in its absoluteness: eleikha lo yiggash ('to you it will not draw near'). The psalm does not say 'you may survive' but 'it will not touch you.' This kind of unqualified promise is characteristic of psalms of trust and should be read as an expression of faith's posture, not a contractual guarantee.
8. The word shillumat ('repayment, recompense') from the root sh-l-m ('to be complete, to repay') implies that the wicked receive what their actions earned. The protected one will witness this — not participate in it, not be caught in it — only observe it. The verse assumes a moral order in which wickedness meets its consequence and righteousness is vindicated by survival.
9. The verse returns to the language of verse 1-2, creating a frame: machsi ('my refuge') echoes verse 2 and me'onekha ('your dwelling place') echoes the yoshev ('dwells') of verse 1. The word ma'on ('dwelling place, habitation') is used of God's heavenly abode in Deuteronomy 26:15 — here, remarkably, God becomes the dwelling place of the human rather than the reverse.
10. The word nega ('affliction, plague, stroke') is the same word used for the plagues of Egypt and for skin diseases in Leviticus 13-14. The ohalekha ('your tent') evokes nomadic life and also the tabernacle tradition — the tent is both home and sacred space. The promise is that the protected zone extends to one's entire household.
11. This verse and the next were cited in the temptation narrative (Matthew 4:6, Luke 4:10-11) as a test of whether divine promise can be leveraged into divine demand. The original psalm context is one of trust, not manipulation — the angels are sent because of the relationship described in verses 1-2, not because the individual demands them.
12. The image is of literal carrying — al kappayim yissa'unkna ('on their palms they will lift you up'). The danger averted is modest: stumbling on a stone. After the grand threats of plague, arrows, and thousands falling, the psalm descends to the smallest hazard — a stone on the path — and declares that even this is covered. The progression from cosmic danger to minor stumbling suggests that divine care operates at every scale.
13. Four dangerous creatures appear: shachal ('lion,' possibly a specific species), peten ('cobra,' the Egyptian cobra or asp), kefir ('young lion,' in its prime strength), and tannin ('serpent, dragon, sea creature'). The verb tidrakh ('you will tread') and tirmos ('you will trample') are verbs of dominion — walking on top of lethal predators. The imagery evokes Genesis 3:15 (crushing the serpent's head) and the ancient Near Eastern motif of the victorious king treading on enemies. The protected one does not merely survive these threats but exercises authority over them.
14. The divine oracle in verses 14-16 is the theological key to the entire psalm. The protection promised in verses 1-13 is not automatic or formulaic — it is grounded in the quality of relationship described here. The verbs chashaq ('to cling') and yada ('to know') describe a bond of passion and intimacy that precedes and produces the protection. Without this relationship, the promises become mere magic.
15. The sequence is precise: yiqra'eni ('he will call on me') — ve-e'enehu ('and I will answer him') — immo anokhi ve-tsarah ('I am with him in distress') — achaltsehu ('I will rescue him') — va-akhabbdehu ('and I will honor him'). Note that God does not promise absence of trouble (tsarah) but presence within it: 'I am with him in trouble.' The psalm has not contradicted itself — verses 3-13 describe protection from external attack, but verse 15 acknowledges that distress still comes, and God's response is companionship followed by deliverance.
16. The final promise is twofold: orekh yamim ('length of days,' a long and full life) and yeshu'ati ('my salvation'). The verb asbi'ehu ('I will satisfy him') is from sava ('to be sated, filled to contentment'). The promise is not mere survival but satisfaction — a life that feels complete. The final word, yeshu'ati ('my salvation'), places the psalm's conclusion in the vocabulary of God's saving acts. The root y-sh-a ('to save, to deliver') is the most comprehensive term for divine rescue in the Hebrew Bible. God's final word is not protection but revelation: 'I will show him my salvation' — the ultimate gift is not safety but sight.

92

Summary: *Psalm 92 is the only psalm in the Hebrew Psalter explicitly designated 'A Song for the Sabbath Day' (mizmor shir le-yom ha-shabbat). It is a thanksgiving hymn celebrating God's works, the depth of divine thought, and the contrasting fates of the righteous and the wicked. The psalm moves from praise (vv. 1-4) to reflection on God's inscrutable designs (vv. 5-9) to personal triumph (vv. 10-11) to the flourishing of the righteous in old age (vv. 12-16).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sabbath superscription raises a profound question: why this psalm for Sabbath? It contains no mention of rest, creation, or the seventh day. The Mishnah (Tamid 7:4) assigns it to Sabbath because the rabbis understood it as a song for 'the world to come' — the eternal Sabbath, the age of final rest. If so, the psalm is eschatological: it describes the reality that will prevail when God's*

work is fully visible. The wicked will have vanished like grass (v. 7), the righteous will flourish like cedars (v. 12), and God's justice will be self-evident. The Sabbath is a weekly rehearsal of that future reality.

*Translation Friction: Verse 1 in the Hebrew text is the superscription (mizmor shir le-yom ha-shabbat), which the WLC counts as verse 1. English Bibles typically begin the content at verse 1, creating a one-verse offset. We follow Hebrew versification throughout. The phrase *beli avar* ('without injustice,' v. 16) in the final verse is theologically charged — declaring that there is 'no unrighteousness' in God — a statement that the book of Job spends 42 chapters interrogating.*

*Connections: The Sabbath assignment connects this psalm to Genesis 2:2-3 and Exodus 20:8-11, where Sabbath commemorates creation completed. The tree imagery in verses 13-14 ('planted in the house of the LORD') echoes Psalm 1:3 (the righteous as a tree by water) and Jeremiah 17:8. The phrase *ma gadlu ma'asekha* ('how great are your works,' v. 6) resonates with Psalm 104:24 and Psalm 111:2, where the immensity of God's works overwhelms human comprehension.*

¹A psalm — a song composed for the Sabbath day.

²It is good to give thanks to the LORD,
to sing praise to your name, O Most High,

³to declare your faithful love in the morning
and your faithfulness through the nights,

⁴with the ten-stringed instrument and the lute,
with the murmuring melody of the lyre.

⁵For you have made me glad by your work, O LORD;
at the works of your hands I shout for joy.

⁶How great are your works, O LORD!
How profoundly deep are your thoughts!

⁷A senseless person does not know this;
a fool cannot understand it.

⁸When the wicked sprout like grass
and all evildoers flourish —
it is only to be destroyed forever.

⁹But you, O LORD, are exalted forever.

¹⁰For look — your enemies, O LORD,
for look — your enemies will perish;
all evildoers will be scattered.

¹¹But you have raised my horn like that of the wild ox;
I am drenched with fresh oil.

¹²My eye has looked on those who watch me;
my ears have heard the fate of the evildoers rising against me.

¹³The righteous will flourish like a palm tree;
like a cedar in Lebanon, they will grow tall.

¹⁴Planted in the house of the LORD,
they will flourish in the courts of our God.

¹⁵They will still bear fruit in old age;
they will be full of sap and green,

¹⁶to declare that the LORD is upright —
my rock, in whom there is no injustice.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the only psalm in the entire Psalter with a Sabbath designation. The Levites sang it during the Sabbath morning offering in the Second Temple period (Mishnah Tamid 7:4). The double genre label *mizmor shir* ('psalm' and 'song') may distinguish instrumental accompaniment (*mizmor*, from *z-m-r*, 'to pluck strings') from vocal performance (*shir*, 'song').
2. The psalm opens with a declaration about the nature of thanksgiving itself: *tov lehodot* ('it is good to give thanks'). The word *tov* ('good') is the same word God uses to evaluate creation in Genesis 1. Giving thanks is not merely appropriate — it is good in the creational sense, part of the order of things. The address to Elyon ('Most High') connects to Psalm 91:1.
3. The preposition *ba-leilot* ('in the nights,' plural) suggests every night, not a single night. The daily rhythm of declaring *chesed* at dawn and *emunah* at dusk turns all of life into worship.
4. Three instruments appear: the *asor* ('ten-stringed instrument'), the *nevel* ('lute' or 'harp,' a large stringed instrument), and the *kinnor* ('lyre,' David's instrument). The word *higgayon* ('murmuring, meditation, soft playing') suggests a quiet, contemplative musical interlude — the lyre provides a meditative background. This verse indicates that Sabbath worship in ancient Israel was richly musical.
5. The verb *simachtani* ('you have made me glad') attributes the psalmist's joy to God's initiative — God's work produces gladness. The word *po'olekha* ('your work,' singular) and *ma'asei yadekha* ('works of your hands,' plural) may distinguish between God's single grand design and its many visible expressions. The verb *arannein* ('I shout for joy') is a verb of exuberant, audible celebration — not quiet contentment but vocal triumph.
6. The juxtaposition of 'works' (visible) and 'thoughts' (invisible) is deliberate. Humans can see God's works but cannot plumb his thoughts. The psalm celebrates both — the grandeur of what is visible and the mystery of what is not.
7. The *ish ba'ar* ('brutish person,' literally 'one who is like an animal') and *kesil* ('fool,' a key term in Proverbs for the morally obtuse) cannot grasp what verse 6 declares. The pronoun *zot* ('this') refers to the depth of God's thoughts and the moral order they produce. The fool looks at the prosperity of the wicked (next verse) and concludes that there is no justice. The wise person sees the same evidence and trusts the depth they cannot fathom.
8. The grass metaphor for transient human life recurs throughout the Hebrew Bible (Isaiah 40:6-8, Psalm 103:15-16). Here it is applied specifically to the wicked: their success is real but temporary, like vegetation in a Palestinian summer that appears after rain and scorches within weeks.
9. This short, emphatic verse stands at the structural center of the psalm. While the wicked rise and fall, God remains *marom le-olam* ('exalted forever'). The word *marom* ('height, exalted place') is related to Elyon ('Most High') in verse 2. The contrast is total: grass-like transience versus eternal elevation. The brevity of the verse — only five Hebrew words — mirrors its content: God's permanence needs no elaboration.
10. The repetition *ki hinneh oyvekha YHWH, ki hinneh oyvekha* ('for look, your enemies, O LORD, for look, your enemies') is a rhetorical device called staircase parallelism — the line builds by repeating and extending. The same structure appears in Ugaritic poetry (the Baal Cycle), suggesting deep roots in Canaanite literary tradition. The verb *yitpardu* ('they will be scattered') describes the dissolution of a unified force — the evildoers will be dispersed and broken apart.
11. The *re'em* ('wild ox,' not 'unicorn' as the KJV renders from the LXX *monokeros*) was a massive, powerful bovine — likely the now-extinct aurochs. Its horn symbolized strength and victory. The verb *vattarem* ('you have raised') means God has elevated the psalmist's power and status. The *balloti be-shemen ra'anani* ('I am drenched with fresh oil') refers to anointing with fine oil — a sign of honor, health, and divine favor. The shift from the destruction of enemies to personal exaltation is characteristic of thanksgiving psalms.
12. The verse is compressed and somewhat cryptic. The verb *vattabbet* ('it has looked') combined with *be-shurai* ('on those who watch me / on my foes') suggests the psalmist has witnessed the downfall of adversaries. The parallel — 'my ears have heard' concerning *mere'im* ('evildoers') — indicates that reports of their destruction have reached the psalmist. The verse is deliberately restrained: it does not describe what the eye saw or the ear heard, leaving the specifics to the reader's imagination.
13. The verb *yifrach* ('will flourish') is the same verb used for the wicked in verse 8 (*bifroach*, 'when they sprout'). The identical verb applied to grass and to palm trees produces an ironic contrast: the same 'flourishing' that leads to destruction for the wicked leads to grandeur for the righteous.
14. The word *shetulim* ('planted') is a passive participle — these trees did not plant themselves. God planted them. The location is *be-veit YHWH* ('in the house of the LORD') and *be-chatsrot Eloheinu* ('in the courts of our God'). The image of trees growing in the temple courts was not merely metaphorical — ancient Near Eastern temples often featured sacred gardens. But the deeper meaning is that rootedness in worship is what produces flourishing. The righteous are planted people — grounded, established, located in the place of God's presence.

15. The word *be-seivah* ('in old age, in gray-headedness') introduces a remarkable promise: the righteous do not decline with age but continue to produce. The verbs *yenuvun* ('they will bear fruit') and the adjectives *desheanim* ('full of sap, lush') and *ra'ananim* ('green, fresh, moist') describe vitality that defies the normal course of aging. This is not a literal promise that the righteous will never grow old, but a declaration that a life rooted in God retains its capacity to produce meaning, wisdom, and goodness to the end.
16. The psalm ends with a creedal declaration: *yashar YHWH* ('the LORD is upright'). The word *yashar* ('straight, upright, just') applies to God the same moral standard used for humans — God practices what he requires. The title *turi* ('my rock') is one of the most enduring divine metaphors — rock as stability, permanence, and unshakable foundation. The final phrase *velo avlatah bo* ('and there is no injustice in him') uses *avlah* ('injustice, wrongdoing, crookedness'), the opposite of *yashar*. The psalm's final word is an assertion of God's total moral integrity — a fitting end for a Sabbath song that trusts God's long-term justice even when short-term evidence seems ambiguous.

93

Summary: *Psalm 93 is the first of the 'YHWH reigns' psalms (93, 95-99) that celebrate God's kingship over creation. In only five compact verses, it declares God's sovereignty, describes the chaotic waters rising against his throne, and affirms his eternal decrees. The psalm has no superscription.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the shortest psalms in the Psalter, yet it packs enormous theological weight into its five verses. The opening declaration YHWH malakh ('the LORD reigns') was likely a liturgical shout — a coronation cry for the divine king. The central image is a battle between God's throne and the chaotic waters (*neharot*, 'rivers/floods') that pound and crash with enormous force. In ancient Near Eastern mythology, the primordial waters represented chaos, the anti-creation force that God defeated to establish the ordered world. The psalm does not tell the story of that battle — it simply declares its outcome: God's throne is established, the waters are loud but powerless, and his decrees stand forever.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase YHWH malakh can be translated either 'the LORD reigns' (a timeless statement) or 'the LORD has become king' (an event, a coronation). This translation question has generated enormous scholarly debate. Sigmund Mowinckel proposed an annual enthronement festival where God was ritually acclaimed as king; others argue the verb is simply stative ('the LORD is king'). We render it 'the LORD reigns' to capture the timeless sovereignty the psalm describes. The 'floods' (*neharot*) in verses 3-4 carry mythological resonance from Canaanite literature, where the sea-god Yamm challenged Baal for kingship. Israel's psalmists borrowed the imagery but redirected it: YHWH, not Baal, is the one who tames the waters.*

Connections: *The 'YHWH reigns' declaration connects to Psalms 96:10, 97:1, and 99:1, forming a literary cluster of enthronement psalms. The chaotic waters imagery draws from Genesis 1:2 (*tehom*, 'the deep'), Psalm 29:3 ('the voice of the LORD is over the waters'), and the exodus narrative where God divided the sea. The final verse's reference to God's *edot* ('testimonies, decrees') planted in his house connects to the ark of the covenant theology where God's commands reside in the sanctuary.*

¹The LORD reigns! He is robed in majesty.
The LORD is robed — he has girded himself with strength.
The world is established; it cannot be shaken.

²Your throne is established from of old;
you are from everlasting.

³The floods have risen, O LORD,
the floods have raised their voice;
the floods raise their crashing waves.

⁴Above the thunder of great waters,
mightier than the breakers of the sea —

the LORD on high is mighty!

5Your decrees stand utterly firm.
Holiness adorns your house,
O LORD, for all the length of days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The repetition of lavesch ('robed') is intentional — Hebrew uses repetition for emphasis, not redundancy. God's clothing in majesty and girding in strength are not two separate acts but one reality described from two angles: the visible splendor (majesty) and the operative power (strength).
2. The verse makes two temporal claims: God's throne is nakhon me-az ('established from then,' from the beginning of time), and God himself is me-olam ('from everlasting,' beyond all time). The throne has a beginning — 'from of old' — but God does not: he is 'from everlasting.' The distinction is subtle but profound: the throne was established at some point in the unrecoverable past, but the one who sits on it predates even that.
3. The word dokhyam is rare and difficult. It likely derives from d-k-h ('to crush, to pound') and refers to the pounding or crashing of waves. Some scholars connect it to dakhi ('crushing, breaking'). The image is of waves smashing themselves against the divine throne — furious, loud, and ultimately impotent.
4. The verse resolves the tension of verse 3 in a single declaration. The structure moves from the threat (qolot mayim rabbim, 'the thunder of great waters'; addirim mishberei yam, 'mighty breakers of the sea') to the resolution: addir ba-marom YHWH ('mighty on high is the LORD'). The word addir ('mighty, majestic, noble') is applied first to the waves and then to God — the waves are mighty, but God is mightier. The phrase ba-marom ('on high, in the heights') echoes the marom of verse 1 (through ge'ut) and places God above the fray. He does not struggle against the waters; he towers over them.
5. The psalm ends by moving from cosmic power to covenantal order. The edotekha ('your decrees, your testimonies') are God's revealed instructions — the same word used for the tablets of the covenant (edut). They ne'emnu me'od ('are exceedingly firm, trustworthy, established'), from the root a-m-n, the same root as emunah ('faithfulness') and amen. The second line shifts to the temple: le-veitkha na'avah qodesh ('holiness adorns your house'). The word na'avah ('is fitting, adorns, is beautiful') says that holiness is not imposed on God's house but belongs there naturally. The final phrase le-orekh yamim ('for length of days,' forever) extends this reality into perpetuity. God's words are reliable, his house is holy, and both endure.

94

Summary: *Psalm 94 is a communal lament calling on God as the 'God of vengeance' to rise up and judge the arrogant oppressors who crush the vulnerable — widows, orphans, immigrants — while claiming that God does not see. The psalm moves from urgent appeal (vv. 1-7) to wisdom instruction warning the fools to reconsider (vv. 8-11), to a beatitude for the one God disciplines (vv. 12-15), to personal testimony of God's sustaining help (vv. 16-23).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm opens with one of the most startling divine titles in the Psalter: El neqamot YHWH ('God of vengeance, O LORD'). The modern ear flinches at 'vengeance,' but the Hebrew concept of neqamah is closer to 'vindication' — it is the restoration of justice when the powerful have exploited the weak. The oppressors in this psalm are not foreign enemies but domestic tyrants who murder widows, kill orphans, and slaughter immigrants (v. 6) while smugly assuming God is oblivious (v. 7). The psalmist's cry for vengeance is not personal vindictiveness but a demand that the moral order be enforced. The psalm then pivots remarkably to the language of discipline and instruction (vv. 12-13), suggesting that suffering under oppression can itself be a form of divine education — though the oppressors remain culpable.*

Translation Friction: *The word neqamah ('vengeance') requires careful handling. In English, 'vengeance' implies personal spite or retaliatory rage. In Hebrew, neqamah is a legal concept — it is the authority's obligation to punish wrongdoing and restore the wronged. When the psalm calls God El neqamot, it is invoking God's role as the supreme judge who must act when human courts have failed. We retain 'vengeance' because 'vindication' is too soft for the raw emotion of the psalm's opening, but the reader should understand it as judicial action, not emotional rage.*

Connections: The catalogue of victims in verse 6 — widow, immigrant, orphan — echoes the covenant protections of Exodus 22:21-24 and Deuteronomy 10:18, where God specifically promises to defend these three groups. The oppressors' claim that 'the LORD does not see' (v. 7) echoes the arrogance condemned in Psalm 10:11 and Ezekiel 8:12. The beatitude in verse 12 ('blessed is the one you discipline') connects to the wisdom tradition of Proverbs 3:11-12 and anticipates the theology of Hebrews 12:5-11. The LXX assigns this psalm to David for Wednesday (the fourth day), placing it in the weekly liturgical rotation of the Second Temple.

¹O God of vengeance, LORD —

O God of vengeance, shine forth!

²Rise up, O judge of the earth;

repay the arrogant what they deserve.

³How long will the wicked, O LORD —

how long will the wicked celebrate?

⁴They pour out arrogant speech;

all the evildoers boast.

⁵They crush your people, O LORD,

and oppress your inheritance.

⁶They kill the widow and the immigrant,

and they murder the fatherless.

⁷And they say, "The LORD does not see;

the God of Jacob pays no attention."

⁸Pay attention, you senseless ones among the people!

You fools — when will you understand?

⁹He who planted the ear — does he not hear?

He who formed the eye — does he not see?

¹⁰He who disciplines nations — will he not correct?

He who teaches humanity knowledge —

¹¹The LORD knows the thoughts of humanity —

they are a breath.

¹²How blessed is the one you discipline, O LORD,

the one you teach from your instruction —

¹³giving him rest from days of trouble,

until a pit is dug for the wicked.

¹⁴For the LORD will not abandon his people;

he will not forsake his inheritance.

¹⁵For justice will return to righteousness,

and all the upright in heart will follow it.

¹⁶Who will rise up for me against the evildoers?
Who will take a stand for me against the workers of wickedness?

¹⁷If the LORD had not been my help,
my soul would soon have dwelt in silence.

¹⁸When I said, "My foot is slipping,"
your faithful love, O LORD, held me up.

¹⁹When anxious thoughts multiply within me,
your consolations delight my soul.

²⁰Can a corrupt throne be allied with you —
one that creates oppression under cover of law?

²¹They band together against the life of the righteous
and condemn innocent blood.

²²But the LORD has been my fortress,
and my God the rock of my refuge.

²³He will turn their own evil back upon them
and destroy them for their wickedness.
The LORD our God will destroy them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The title *El neqamot* ('God of vengeance') uses the plural *neqamot*, which is likely an intensive plural — not 'vengeances' but 'great vengeance' or 'comprehensive vindication.' God's vengeance is not one act but a thoroughgoing restoration of justice.
2. The title *shofet ha-arets* ('judge of the earth') invokes God's role as the universal magistrate — not merely Israel's God but the judge of all the earth (as Abraham said in Genesis 18:25). The verb *hashev* ('repay, return') with *gemul* ('recompense, what is deserved') asks God to give the arrogant the consequences their actions have earned. The *ge'im* ('the arrogant, the proud') are those who believe themselves above accountability.
3. The *ad matai* ('how long?') repeated twice is the classic lament formula — it appears in Psalms 6:3, 13:1-2, 74:10, and 79:5. The verb *ya'aloze* ('they celebrate, they exult') describes the wicked's jubilant self-confidence. The broken syntax — 'how long will the wicked, O LORD — how long will the wicked celebrate?' — mimics the speaker's emotional state: the sentence can barely contain itself.
4. The verb *yabbi'u* ('they pour out, they gush') suggests words flowing without restraint — verbal incontinence. The word *ataq* ('arrogance, hardness, insolence') describes speech that is bold, presumptuous, and heedless. The verb *yit'ammru* ('they boast, they say great things about themselves') completes the picture: the wicked speak freely, boast openly, and face no consequence. The psalmist sees a world where evil speech goes unchecked.
5. The verbs *yedakke'u* ('they crush') and *ye'annu* ('they oppress, they afflict') describe sustained, systematic abuse. The victims are identified as *ammekha* ('your people') and *nachalatekha* ('your inheritance') — these are not random victims but people who belong to God. The language implies that attacking God's people is an assault on God's own property. The psalmist is building the case for divine intervention: this is not someone else's problem; it is yours, LORD.
6. We render *ger* as 'immigrant' rather than 'stranger' because the *ger* in Israelite law was a non-Israelite living permanently within Israel's borders — a resident alien with legal protections but social vulnerability. 'Stranger' in modern English is too vague; 'immigrant' captures the social reality more accurately.
7. The oppressors' theology is stated explicitly: *lo yir'eh Yah* ('the LORD does not see') and *lo yavin Elohei Ya'aqov* ('the God of Jacob does not understand'). This is practical atheism — not denying God's existence but denying his attentiveness. They believe God is too distant, too disinterested, or too powerless to notice their crimes. The psalmist will demolish this claim in the next four verses with devastating logic.
8. The psalm shifts to wisdom instruction. The *bo'arim* ('senseless ones, brutish ones') and *kesilim* ('fools') are the same terms used in Psalm 92:7. The verb *binu* ('understand, pay attention') and *taskilu* ('will you have insight') are wisdom vocabulary — the psalmist is playing the role of teacher addressing willfully ignorant students. The question *matai taskilu* ('when will you understand?') implies the answer should be obvious.

9. This is one of the most elegant arguments in the Hebrew Bible. It does not appeal to revelation or authority but to common sense: the maker must possess what the made thing possesses. The form is rhetorical question — the expected answer is an emphatic 'yes.'
10. The argument extends from the senses (v. 9) to governance and instruction. The verb *yoser* ('disciplines') and *yokiach* ('corrects, convicts') are terms for judicial and parental authority. The one who holds nations accountable will certainly hold individuals accountable. The final phrase *hamelammed adam da'at* ('he who teaches humanity knowledge') is left without a predicate in the Hebrew — the sentence breaks off, as if the conclusion is so obvious it need not be stated. Some translations supply 'shall he not know?' but the Hebrew lets the silence speak.
11. The conclusion: God does know — he knows human *machshevot* ('thoughts, plans, designs') and he judges them as *hevel* ('vapor, breath, vanity'). The word *hevel* is the key term of Ecclesiastes ('vanity of vanities'), meaning something insubstantial, transient, and ultimately without weight. The oppressors' plans, which seem so solid and successful, are mere vapor in God's assessment. Paul quotes this verse in 1 Corinthians 3:20.
12. The word *torah* here means 'instruction' in its broadest sense — not merely the written law but God's ongoing teaching through life experience. The pairing of discipline (*yasar*) with teaching (*lamad*) insists that God's corrective action is always educational, never merely punitive.
13. The purpose of discipline is *lehashqit* ('to give rest, to grant quiet') — the disciplined one receives inner calm during the *mi-yemei ra* ('days of evil, days of trouble'). This rest is not removal from suffering but composure within it. Meanwhile, the wicked are heading toward a *shachat* ('pit') being dug for them. The image is of a hunter's pit-trap: the wicked walk confidently forward, unaware that the ground ahead has been excavated.
14. Two verbs of rejection — *yittosh* ('will cast off, will abandon') and *ya'azov* ('will forsake') — are both negated. God's commitment to *ammo* ('his people') and *nachalato* ('his inheritance') is permanent. The same assurance appears in 1 Samuel 12:22 and Romans 11:1-2. The verse grounds the believer's endurance: the discipline of verses 12-13 is not abandonment but pedagogy.
15. The verse promises that *mishpat* ('justice, judgment') will return to *tsedeq* ('righteousness'). Justice has strayed — the wicked have corrupted the courts, perverted the legal system. But it will come back to its proper alignment with righteousness. When it does, *kol yishrei lev* ('all the upright in heart') will follow — the righteous community will rally to justice restored. The verse envisions a future realignment of the moral order.
16. The psalmist now speaks personally. The questions *mi yaqum li* ('who will rise for me?') and *mi yityatsev li* ('who will stand for me?') express the isolation of the righteous person facing organized evil alone. The implied answer is: no human ally appeared — only God (as the next verse reveals).
17. The word *dumah* ('silence') is a euphemism for death — the silence of the grave, where no praise is offered (Psalm 115:17). The phrase *kim'at* ('almost, soon, nearly') reveals how close the psalmist came to destruction. The counterfactual construction (*lulei*, 'if not') attributes survival entirely to God: without divine intervention, death was imminent.
18. The image of the slipping foot (*matah ragli*) represents moral or existential collapse — losing one's footing in life. At exactly that moment, *chasdekha YHWH* ('your faithful love, O LORD') intervened. The verb *yis'adeni* ('it supported me, it held me up') is from *sa'ad*, which means to sustain, to prop up, to brace. God's *chesed* is not a feeling but a structural support that prevents collapse.
19. The word *sar'appai* ('my anxious thoughts, my disquieting thoughts') is a rare word suggesting mental turmoil — thoughts that branch and multiply uncontrollably. The *be-rov* ('in the multitude, when they are many') intensifies the picture. Against this flood of anxiety, God provides *tanchumekha* ('your consolations, your comforts'), and these consolations *yesh'a'ash'u nafshi* ('delight my soul'). The verb *sha'asha* ('to delight, to fondle, to caress') is a term of deep pleasure. The psalm honestly describes anxiety and honestly describes its remedy: divine comfort that produces actual delight, not mere endurance.
20. The *kisse havvot* ('throne of destruction/corruption') refers to a seat of power that legislates injustice. The phrase *yotser amal alei choq* ('fashioning oppression by decree') is one of the most politically charged statements in the Psalter: it describes rulers who use legal systems to institutionalize suffering. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'No' — God cannot be allied with rulers who weaponize law against the vulnerable. This verse condemns systemic, legalized injustice as incompatible with God's character.
21. The verb *yagoddu* ('they band together, they attack in a mob') describes coordinated group violence against the *nefesh tsaddiq* ('the life/soul of the righteous'). The phrase *dam naqi yarshi'u* ('they condemn innocent blood') refers to judicial murder — using the legal system to execute the guiltless. The combination of mob action and legal machinery creates a picture of total injustice: both the streets and the courts have been captured by the wicked.
22. Against the assembled forces of institutional wickedness, the psalmist has one resource: *YHWH li le-misgav* ('the LORD is my fortress'). The *misgav* ('high fortress, stronghold') is an elevated defensive position — a cliff fortress beyond the reach of attackers. The *tsur machasi* ('rock of my refuge') combines the imagery of immovable stone with sheltering safety. The two metaphors — fortress and rock — together convey both elevation (beyond reach) and solidity (beyond destruction).
23. The final verse returns to the vengeance theme of verse 1. The verb *vayyashev* ('he will turn back, he will repay') describes God redirecting the oppressors' *onam* ('their wickedness') back onto them — their own weapons become their undoing. The verb *yatsमित* ('he will annihilate them') is repeated twice for emphasis — total, complete destruction. The psalm ends with the full covenantal name: *YHWH Eloheinu* ('the LORD our God'), claiming God as the community's own. The God who seemed absent (v. 7) has the last word.

95

Summary: *Psalm 95 divides sharply into two halves. The first (vv. 1-7a) is an exuberant call to worship the LORD as creator and shepherd, summoning the congregation to sing, shout, kneel, and bow. The second (vv. 7b-11) shifts without warning to a divine oracle of warning: 'Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as at Meribah, as on the day of Massah in the wilderness.' The psalm has no superscription in the Hebrew text, though the LXX attributes it to David.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The whiplash between the two halves of this psalm is its most important feature. The congregation is singing, rejoicing, bowing before their maker — and then God interrupts with a warning. The liturgy of praise becomes a test of obedience. The word hayyom ('today') is the hinge: worship is not a nostalgic celebration of past salvation but a present-tense encounter with a God who is still speaking and still expecting a response. The letter to the Hebrews (3:7-4:13) will build an entire theology of 'rest' and 'today' from this psalm, arguing that the warning remains active for every generation. The God who is praised as creator (vv. 4-5) and shepherd (v. 7) is also the God who swore in anger that a disobedient generation would never enter his rest (v. 11). Worship that does not include listening is insufficient.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of verse 7b-c is notoriously difficult to divide. The phrase hu Eloheinu va'anachnu am mar'ito ve-tson yado ('he is our God and we are the people of his pasture and the flock of his hand') ends one section, and hayyom im be-qolo tishma'u ('today, if you hear his voice') begins the next. But where exactly does the break fall? The Masoretic accents place the major break after yado ('his hand'), making 'today if you hear his voice' the start of the warning oracle. This means the pastoral image of God as shepherd leads directly into the demand for obedience — the same God who tends the flock expects the flock to listen. The place names Meribah ('quarreling') and Massah ('testing') refer to Exodus 17:1-7 and Numbers 20:1-13, where Israel provocation in the wilderness led to Moses striking the rock.*

Connections: *The call to worship in verses 1-2 parallels Psalm 100. The creation theology of verses 4-5 (God's hands formed the dry land, the depths of the earth are in his hand) echoes Psalm 24:1-2 and Job 38. The wilderness warning connects to the rebellion narratives of Exodus 17, Numbers 14, and Deuteronomy 1:19-46. The divine oath 'they shall not enter my rest' (v. 11) becomes the foundation of Hebrews 3-4, where 'rest' (menucha/katapausis) is reinterpreted as the eschatological Sabbath rest that remains available to the faithful.*

¹Come, let us sing out to the LORD;
let us shout to the rock of our salvation!

²Let us come before his face with thanksgiving;
with songs let us shout to him!

³the LORD is a great God,
a great king above all gods.

⁴In his hand are the depths of the earth,
and the mountain peaks belong to him.

⁵The sea is his — he made it,
and the dry land — his hands formed it.

⁶Come, let us bow down in worship;
let us kneel before the LORD our maker!

⁷For he is our God,
and we are the people of his pasture,

the flock under his hand.

Today — if you hear his voice —

⁸do not harden your hearts as at Meribah,
as on the day of Massah in the wilderness,

⁹when your ancestors tested me,
tried me, though they had seen my work.

¹⁰For forty years I was disgusted with that generation,
and I said, "They are a people whose hearts go astray;
they have not known my ways."

¹¹So I swore in my anger,
"They shall never enter my rest."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verbs *nerannenh* ('let us sing out, let us cry aloud') and *nari'ah* ('let us shout, let us raise a war cry') are not verbs of quiet devotion. *rannan* is a verb of piercing, joyful noise; *rua* is the shout of a crowd — a battle cry or an acclamation at a coronation. The worship envisioned here is loud, communal, and physical. The title *tsur yish'enu* ('rock of our salvation') combines the fortress imagery of Psalm 94:22 with salvation vocabulary.
2. The verb *neqaddemah* ('let us come before, let us meet') with *panav* ('his face') suggests approaching God's presence with eagerness — literally, going out to meet God before he arrives. The word *todah* ('thanksgiving') is both a disposition and a genre — it refers to the thanksgiving offering and the psalm that accompanies it. The worship described is prepared, intentional, and musical.
3. The phrase *melekh gadol al kol elohim* ('a great king above all gods') does not affirm the existence of other deities but asserts God's supremacy over any rival claim to divinity. The language is competitive — in a world of many claimed gods, YHWH is not one among equals but the sovereign over all. This is the theological foundation for the worship commanded in verses 1-2: the LORD deserves the loudest praise because he occupies the highest throne.
4. The spatial range is total: *mechqerei arets* ('the depths of the earth,' the lowest points, the caverns and recesses beneath the surface) and *to'afot harim* ('the peaks of the mountains,' the highest elevations). From deepest below to highest above, everything is *be-yado* ('in his hand') — under his control and in his possession. The word *mechqerei* (from *chaqar*, 'to search out, to explore') implies depths that humans cannot fully investigate but that God holds in his palm.
5. Two domains: *hayyam* ('the sea') and *yabbeshset* ('the dry land'). God's relationship to each is stated differently: the sea *asher lo... ve-hu asahu* ('is his... and he made it') and the dry land *yadav yatsaru* ('his hands formed it'). The verb *yatsaru* ('formed, fashioned') is the potter's verb, suggesting intimate craftsmanship. The sea and dry land together encompass the entire surface of the earth — nothing exists that God did not make and does not own.
6. The verb *nishtachaveh* (*hishtachawah*) is the standard Hebrew term for worship-prostration. It involves lying face-down on the ground — not a casual nod or bowed head but full-body submission. Ancient Israelite worship was physically demanding and posturally humble.
7. The Masoretic cantillation marks place the major pause (*atnach*) after *yado* ('his hand'), making 'today if you hear his voice' the beginning of a new section. This division is followed by the book of Hebrews (3:7-8), which quotes the verse beginning with 'Today.' The pastoral warmth of the first half makes the warning of the second half all the more jolting.
8. We retain the Hebrew place names Meribah and Massah rather than translating them as 'Quarreling' and 'Testing' because they function as historical references — the worshipers would have known the stories. However, the etymological meanings are essential: every time these names are spoken, the words 'quarrel' and 'test' echo beneath them.
9. Two verbs for testing: *nissuni* ('they tested me') and *bechanuni* ('they tried me, they examined me'). The testing was not innocent inquiry but hostile challenge — putting God on trial, demanding proof of his presence and power. The devastating qualifier: *gam ra'u fo'oli* ('though they had also seen my work'). They had witnessed the plagues, the parting of the sea, the manna, the water from the rock — and still demanded more evidence. Their hardness was not caused by insufficient revelation but by refusal to trust what they had already received.
10. The verb *aqut* ('I was disgusted, I loathed, I was weary of') is a strong verb of revulsion — not mild disappointment but visceral repugnance. For *arba'im shanah* ('forty years') — an entire generation — God endured a people who were *to'ei levav* ('wandering in heart,' hearts that strayed from the path). The divine verdict is devastating: *lo yad'u derakhay* ('they have not known my ways'). After forty years of miracles, provision, and instruction, they still did not know God's character or intentions. The verb *yada* ('to know') here implies relational intimacy — they had information about God but no knowledge of him.

11. The Hebrew oath formula *im* + imperfect is a strong negative when spoken by God: 'if they enter my rest...' with the apodosis (consequence) left unstated because it is too terrible to speak. This is equivalent to: 'they will absolutely never enter my rest.' The *menuchah* ('rest') in its original context refers to the land of Canaan (Deuteronomy 12:9), but the concept was reinterpreted eschatologically in both Jewish and Christian tradition as God's eternal Sabbath rest.

96

Summary: *Psalm 96 is a hymn of universal praise calling all the earth — not merely Israel — to sing a 'new song' to the LORD. It declares God's glory among the nations, dismisses the gods of the peoples as worthless, and summons the entire created order — heavens, earth, sea, fields, and forests — to rejoice because the LORD is coming to judge the earth with righteousness and faithfulness. The psalm has no superscription in the Hebrew text but appears in a parallel version in 1 Chronicles 16:23-33.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm explodes Israel's worship beyond its ethnic boundaries. The command is not 'Sing to the LORD, O Israel' but *shiru la-YHWH kol ha-arets* ('Sing to the LORD, all the earth'). The Hebrew word *arets* means both 'earth' and 'land,' and here it means the whole planet. The nations (*goyim*) and peoples (*ammim*) are summoned to praise, creation itself is summoned to celebrate, and the reason given is not God's past salvation of Israel but his coming judgment of the entire world. The judgment is presented as good news — the earth rejoices at God's coming because his rule means *tsedeq ve-emunah* ('righteousness and faithfulness'). This is not judgment as punishment but judgment as the establishment of a just order that all creation has been waiting for.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 5 contains a wordplay that defies translation: *kol elohei ha-ammim elim* ('all the gods of the peoples are elim'). The word *elim* sounds like *elohim* ('gods') but means 'worthless things, nothings, nonentities.' Some scholars connect it to *al* ('not') — making the gods 'not-gods,' anti-gods, nothings masquerading as somethings. The dismissal is not that other gods are weak but that they are empty — there is nothing there. The parallel in 1 Chronicles 16:23-33 contains some significant textual differences, suggesting that one text was adapted from the other or both drew from a common liturgical source.*

Connections: *The 'new song' (*shir chadash*) motif connects to Psalms 33:3, 40:3, 98:1, 144:9, 149:1, and Isaiah 42:10. The phrase *YHWH malakh* ('the LORD reigns') in verse 10 links this psalm to the enthronement cluster (Psalms 93, 97, 99). The cosmic response to God's coming (trees singing, sea roaring, fields exulting) is paralleled in Isaiah 55:12 and Psalm 98:7-8. The 1 Chronicles 16 parallel places this psalm in the context of David bringing the ark to Jerusalem — the moment when Israel's worship finds its permanent home.*

¹Sing to the LORD a new song!
Sing to the LORD, all the earth!

²Sing to the LORD, bless his name!
Proclaim his salvation day after day!

³Declare his glory among the nations,
his wonders among all peoples!

⁴he is to be feared above all gods.
For the LORD is great and greatly to be praised;

⁵For all the gods of the peoples are worthless things,
but the LORD made the heavens.

⁶Splendor and majesty stand before him;
strength and glory fill his sanctuary.

⁷Ascribe to the LORD, O families of the peoples!
Ascribe to the LORD glory and strength!

⁸Ascribe to the LORD the glory due his name!
Bring an offering and come into his courts!

⁹Worship the LORD in holy splendor!
Tremble before him, all the earth!

¹⁰Say among the nations, "The LORD reigns!"
The world is established; it cannot be shaken.
He will judge the peoples with equity.

¹¹Let the heavens rejoice and the earth be glad;
let the sea roar, and all that fills it!

¹²Let the field exult, and everything in it!
Then all the trees of the forest will sing for joy

¹³before the LORD, for he is coming —
for he is coming to judge the earth.
He will judge the world with righteousness
and the peoples with his faithfulness.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The shir chadash ('new song') is not merely a recently composed melody — it is a song that responds to a new act of God. The 'newness' corresponds to the freshness of divine action. The command shiru ('sing!') is an imperative addressed to kol ha-arets ('all the earth'), which universalizes the call beyond any single nation or community.
2. The verb bassru ('proclaim, announce good news') is the verbal form of besorah ('good news, gospel'). This is evangelistic language — the worshipers are commanded to announce God's yeshu'ato ('his salvation') to the world. The phrase mi-yom le-yom ('from day to day') means the proclamation is not occasional but daily, continuous, never pausing.
3. The verb sappru ('declare, recount, tell') with ba-goyim ('among the nations') and be-khol ha-ammim ('among all the peoples') makes Israel's worship a mission to the world. God's kevodo ('his glory') and nifl'otav ('his wonders') are not private possessions of the covenant community but realities to be broadcast universally.
4. The phrase mehullal me'od ('greatly to be praised') uses the passive participle of halal ('to praise') — God is inherently praiseworthy, whether or not anyone is currently praising him. The nora ('fearsome, to be feared') indicates that the proper response to God's greatness includes not just admiration but awe. The phrase al kol elohim ('above all gods') continues the competitive theology: whatever else claims divine status, YHWH towers above it.
5. The word elim is sometimes rendered 'idols,' but that refers to the physical objects of worship. elim refers to what those objects represent: nothing. We render it 'worthless things' to capture the sense of emptiness rather than merely the physical artifact.
6. Four attributes attend God's presence: hod ('splendor, radiance'), hadar ('majesty, honor'), oz ('strength, might'), and tif'eret ('glory, beauty'). The first pair stands lefanav ('before him') — in his presence, approaching his throne. The second pair is be-miqdosho ('in his sanctuary') — filling his temple. The verse personifies these qualities as attendants in a royal court, standing before the king and filling his chambers.
7. The imperative havu ('give, ascribe') addressed to mishpechot ammin ('families of the peoples') extends the call beyond Israel to every clan and nation on earth. The language echoes Psalm 29:1-2, where the same imperative is addressed to bene elim ('sons of gods,' the divine council). What the heavenly beings do in Psalm 29, all human families are summoned to do here: attribute kavod ('glory') and oz ('strength') to the LORD.
8. The kevod shemo ('the glory of his name') means the honor that his reputation deserves. The command se'u minchah ('bring a grain offering') and u-vo'u le-chatsrotav ('and come into his courts') invites the nations into Israel's temple worship. The minchah is a grain or tribute offering — the approach of a subject before a sovereign. The universalism of the psalm reaches its peak: the nations are not merely told to acknowledge God from a distance but to enter his courts with offerings.

9. The phrase *be-hadrat qodesh* ('in the splendor of holiness') may refer to holy garments (the priests' vestments) or to the splendor that holiness itself radiates. The verb *chilu* ('tremble, writhe, be in anguish') is a verb of physical shaking — not merely emotional reverence but bodily tremor in the presence of the holy. The command is addressed to *kol ha-arets* ('all the earth') — every nation, every person, every creature.
10. The instruction to declare *YHWH malakh ba-goyim* ('among the nations') is remarkable — it envisions Israel as a herald to the world, not a sect withdrawn from it. The message is political as well as theological: the LORD reigns means no human empire has ultimate authority.
11. The cosmic response begins. The *shamayim* ('heavens') and *eret* ('earth') form the standard merism for 'everything' (as in Genesis 1:1). The *hayyam u-melo'o* ('the sea and everything filling it') adds the aquatic realm. Three domains — sky, land, sea — respond with *simchah* ('joy'), *gilah* ('gladness'), and *ra'am* ('thunder, roaring'). Creation itself celebrates God's coming reign. This is not pathetic fallacy but theological conviction: the non-human creation has a stake in God's justice.
12. The *sadai* ('the field,' open agricultural land) and *kol asher bo* ('everything in it') bring the cultivated world into the celebration. Then *kol atsei ya'ar* ('all the trees of the forest') — the wild, uncultivated trees — *yerannu* ('will sing for joy'). The verb *rannan* is the same piercing, exuberant cry of verse 1. Trees singing is not merely poetic embellishment — it expresses the conviction that the non-human creation participates in the cosmic drama. Romans 8:19-22 will articulate this same idea: creation groans, waiting for liberation.
13. The entire psalm builds toward this verse. Every imperative — sing, proclaim, declare, ascribe, worship, tremble — has been leading to this moment: God is coming. The judgment of the earth is presented not as threat but as consummation — the event all creation has been waiting for.

97

Summary: *Psalm 97 is an enthronement psalm celebrating the LORD's reign over the earth with theophanic imagery — fire, lightning, melting mountains — and contrasting the shame of idol worshipers with the joy of Zion. The psalm moves from the cosmic display of God's power (vv. 1-6) to the humiliation of those who worship images (vv. 7-9) to a closing exhortation to the righteous to hate evil, trust God's protection, and rejoice (vv. 10-12). It has no superscription in the Hebrew text.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm reads like a volcanic eruption of divine presence. The theophany of verses 2-5 borrows heavily from the Sinai tradition — cloud, darkness, fire, lightning, trembling earth — and applies it to God's ongoing reign rather than a single historical event. The mountains melt like wax before the LORD, which is not hyperbole in the ancient Near Eastern mind but a description of what happens when the maker of mountains appears. The psalm then pivots to one of its most cutting lines: 'All who serve carved images are put to shame, those who boast in worthless things. All gods bow down before him' (v. 7). The shame of idolatry is not punishment but revelation — when the true God appears, the emptiness of every substitute becomes visible. The LXX version of verse 7 ('worship him, all you gods') is quoted in Hebrews 1:6 as a reference to angels worshipping the Son.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 7 presents a translation challenge: *hishtachavu lo kol elohim* ('bow down before him, all gods'). Who are the *elohim* commanded to worship? The options include: other gods (acknowledged as real but subordinate), angelic beings (members of the divine council), or human rulers (*elohim* used for judges, as in Psalm 82:1,6). The LXX rendered it *angeloi* ('angels'), which is how Hebrews 1:6 receives it. The psalm itself does not clarify — it simply commands every being claiming divine status to submit. Verse 10 contains a textual issue: the Masoretic text reads 'he guards the souls of his faithful ones' (*nefesh chasidav*), but some manuscripts and the LXX tradition read differently. We follow the MT.*

Connections: *The YHWH malakh opening connects to Psalms 93:1, 96:10, and 99:1. The theophanic fire and cloud connect to Exodus 19:16-18 (Sinai), Psalm 18:7-15 (David's theophany), and Habakkuk 3:3-6 (the warrior-God). The 'mountains melt like wax' image appears in Micah 1:4 and Nahum 1:5. The command to the righteous to 'hate evil' (v. 10) echoes Amos 5:15 and Proverbs 8:13. The closing call to 'rejoice in the LORD' (v. 12) anticipates the persistent joy-theology of the enthronement psalms.*

‡The LORD reigns! Let the earth rejoice;
let the many coastlands be glad!

²Cloud and thick darkness surround him;
righteousness and justice are the foundation of his throne.

³Fire goes before him
and consumes his adversaries on every side.

⁴His lightning bolts light up the world;
the earth sees and writhes.

⁵Mountains melt like wax before the LORD,
before the Lord of all the earth.

⁶and all the peoples see his glory.
The heavens declare his righteousness,

⁷All who serve carved images are put to shame,
those who boast in worthless things.
Bow down before him, all you gods!

⁸Zion hears and is glad;
the daughters of Judah rejoice
because of your judgments, O LORD.

⁹For you, O LORD, are Most High over all the earth;
you are exalted far above all gods.

¹⁰You who love the LORD, hate evil!
He guards the lives of his faithful ones;
from the hand of the wicked he rescues them.

¹¹Light is sown for the righteous,
and joy for the upright in heart.

¹²Rejoice in the LORD, you righteous!
Give thanks to his holy name!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The enthronement cry YHWH malakh opens the psalm as in Psalms 93 and 99. The response is cosmic joy: tagel ha-arets ('let the earth exult') and yismchu iyyim rabbim ('let the many coastlands rejoice'). The iyyim ('coastlands, islands') represent the most distant, peripheral territories of the known world — the Mediterranean coasts and islands at the edge of Israel's geographical awareness. Even the remotest places are summoned to celebrate.
2. The pairing of tsedek ('righteousness') and mishpat ('justice') as the foundation of God's throne also appears in Psalm 89:14. These are not abstract qualities but structural necessities — remove righteousness and justice, and the throne collapses. God's sovereignty is not arbitrary power but power exercised through moral order.
3. The esh lefanav telekh ('fire goes before him') describes fire as God's herald or advance guard — it precedes his arrival and clears the way. The verb telaht ('it consumes, it blazes') describes intense burning. The tsarav ('his adversaries') are consumed not as a separate punitive act but as an inherent consequence of proximity to God's holiness. Fire in theophany is not wrath but nature — God is fire, and what opposes him cannot survive contact.
4. The beraqav ('his lightning bolts') illuminate the tevel ('the world') — the darkness of verse 2 is pierced by blinding flashes. The earth's response is visceral: ra'atah vattachel ('it saw and it writhed'). The verb chul ('to writhe, to tremble, to be in labor pain') describes not mild trembling but the convulsion of a body in agony. The earth personified as a witness who sees God's lightning and writhes in response.

5. The image of mountains — the most permanent, immovable features of the landscape — melting ka-donag ('like wax') before God is the psalm's most extreme statement of divine power. Wax before fire has no resistance; it simply ceases to be solid. The title Adon kol ha-arets ('Lord of all the earth') appears in Joshua 3:11 for the God who parts the Jordan. The point is scale: what seems most permanent in human experience (mountains) is the most fragile before God.
6. The shamayim ('heavens') serve as witnesses, declaring tsidqo ('his righteousness'). The theophany is not private — kol ha-ammim ('all the peoples') see kevodo ('his glory'). The verse insists that God's self-revelation is public, universal, and undeniable. When God acts in judgment and salvation, the evidence is visible to every nation.
7. The LXX renders kol elohim as pantes hoi angeloi autou ('all his angels'), which is the form quoted in Hebrews 1:6 as proof that the Son is greater than the angels. The Hebrew elohim is broader — it includes any being with a claim to divine status.
8. While the idolaters are shamed, Zion responds with joy. The sham'ah vattismach Tsiyyon ('Zion heard and rejoiced') contrasts with the earth's writhing in verse 4 — for God's own people, the same theophany produces gladness. The benot Yehudah ('daughters of Judah') likely refers to the towns and villages of Judah personified as daughters of the mother city Zion. The cause of joy is le-ma'an mishpatekha ('because of your judgments') — God's acts of justice bring relief and celebration to his people.
9. The verse restates the psalm's central claim: YHWH Elyon al kol ha-arets ('the LORD is Most High over all the earth') and me'od na'aleita al kol elohim ('you are greatly exalted above all gods'). The adverb me'od ('exceedingly, greatly') intensifies the exaltation — the distance between God and all rivals is not marginal but infinite. This verse functions as the theological summary of everything stated in verses 1-8.
10. The imperative sin'u ra ('hate evil!') is addressed to ohavei YHWH ('lovers of the LORD'). Love for God and hatred of evil are presented as inseparable — you cannot have one without the other. The promise follows: shomer nafshot chasidav ('he guards the lives of his faithful ones'). The chasidav ('his faithful ones, his devoted ones') from chesed describes those characterized by loyal love. The verb yatsilem ('he rescues them') from the hand of the wicked promises active divine intervention on their behalf.
11. The image of light being zaru'a ('sown') like seed is extraordinary. Light is not simply given but planted — scattered into the soil of the present to grow into a harvest in the future. The righteous (tsaddiq) and the upright in heart (yishrei lev) do not yet see the full light, but it has been sown for them. This is a verse about the hiddenness of hope: the outcome is planted but not yet visible. Simchah ('joy') is the parallel crop — sown alongside the light, growing toward a day of harvest.
12. The closing command simchu tsaddiqim ba-YHWH ('rejoice in the LORD, you righteous') brings the psalm full circle — verse 1 called the earth to rejoice; verse 12 calls the righteous specifically. The phrase hodu le-zekher qodsho ('give thanks to the memorial of his holiness') uses zekher ('memorial, remembrance') to refer to God's name — the name is the means by which God is remembered and invoked. His holiness (qodsho) is what makes the name powerful and the remembrance life-giving.

98

Summary: *Psalm 98 is a 'new song' psalm celebrating God's saving acts, which he has made visible to all nations. It summons the whole earth to shout, sing, and play instruments before the LORD, then calls the natural world — sea, rivers, mountains — to join the praise because God is coming to judge the earth. The superscription simply reads mizmor ('a psalm').*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 98 is the twin of Psalm 96 — they share vocabulary, structure, and theology — yet each has its own emphasis. Where Psalm 96 focuses on declaring God's glory among the nations, Psalm 98 focuses on what God has revealed: his yeshu'ah ('salvation'), his tsedaqah ('righteousness'), his chesed ('faithful love'), and his emunah ('faithfulness') toward Israel — all of which the nations have witnessed. The remarkable claim is that God's faithfulness to Israel is itself evidence intended for the watching world. Israel's particular salvation has universal significance. The closing verses (7-9) are nearly identical to Psalm 96:11-13, creating a liturgical echo: the creation's joyful response to God's coming judgment is a recurring chorus in Israel's worship, not a one-time poetic flourish.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase hodia ('he has made known') in verse 2 raises a question: made known to whom? The answer is le-einei ha-goyim ('before the eyes of the nations'). God's acts of salvation for Israel were performed on a public stage — the exodus, the return from exile, every act of deliverance — and the audience was always wider than Israel. This means Israel's history is not private but pedagogical: God teaches the world through what he does for his people. The 'new song' of verse 1 may refer to a specific deliverance (perhaps the return from Babylonian exile) or may be eschatological — a song for the final salvation.*

Connections: The 'new song' command connects to Psalms 33:3, 40:3, 96:1, 144:9, 149:1, and Isaiah 42:10. The four divine attributes in verses 2-3 (salvation, righteousness, faithful love, faithfulness) form a cluster that appears in Psalm 36:5-6, 89:1-2, and Isaiah 59:16-17. The cosmic praise of verses 7-9 parallels Psalm 96:11-13 and Isaiah 55:12. The 'right hand and holy arm' of verse 1 echoes Isaiah 52:10 and Exodus 15:6. Isaac Watts famously paraphrased this psalm as 'Joy to the World,' making it one of the most widely known psalms in Western culture.

¹A psalm.

Sing to the LORD a new song,
for he has done wonders!
His right hand and his holy arm
have won him victory.

²The LORD has made his salvation known;
before the eyes of the nations
he has revealed his righteousness.

³He has remembered his faithful love
and his faithfulness to the house of Israel.
All the ends of the earth have seen
the salvation of our God.

⁴Shout to the LORD, all the earth!
Burst into song, sing for joy, make music!

⁵Make music to the LORD with the lyre —
with the lyre and the sound of melody!

⁶With trumpets and the sound of the ram's horn,
shout before the king — the LORD!

⁷Let the sea roar, and all that fills it —
the world and all who dwell in it!

⁸Let the rivers clap their hands;
let the mountains sing for joy together

⁹before the LORD, for he is coming
to judge the earth.
He will judge the world with righteousness
and the peoples with equity.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *hoshi'ah lo* ('has saved for himself') is unusual — God's salvation benefits Israel, but the victory belongs to God. Isaiah 59:16 uses the same image: 'His own arm brought him salvation.' The right hand and holy arm together echo Exodus 15:6 ('Your right hand, O LORD, glorious in power') and Isaiah 52:10 ('The LORD has bared his holy arm before the eyes of all the nations').
2. Two verbs of disclosure: *hodia* ('he has made known') and *gillah* ('he has revealed, uncovered'). Both suggest something previously hidden now brought to light. God's *yeshu'ato* ('his salvation') and *tsidqato* ('his righteousness') were always real but are now publicly visible. The audience is *le-einei ha-goyim* ('before the eyes of the nations') — God's saving acts for Israel are performed on a world stage. The nations are not incidental bystanders but intended witnesses.

3. This verse is one of the most concise statements of the relationship between Israel's particular election and God's universal purpose. God remembers his love for Israel, acts to save Israel, and the whole world sees it. Israel's story is not private but revelatory — through it, the nations learn who God is.
4. Four imperatives pile up: hari'u ('shout,' the acclamation cry), pitschu ('burst out,' the spontaneous eruption of song), ranenu ('sing for joy,' the piercing cry of exultation), and zammeru ('make music,' the instrumental accompaniment). The escalation builds from a single shout to a full orchestral celebration. The addressee is again kol ha-arets ('all the earth') — this is worship on a planetary scale.
5. The kinnor ('lyre') is mentioned twice for emphasis — it was the primary instrument of temple worship, the instrument David played. The qol zimrah ('sound of melody, voice of song') may refer to the human voice singing alongside the instrument, creating a blend of vocal and instrumental worship.
6. The chatsotsrot ('trumpets,' metal instruments blown by priests) and shofar ('ram's horn') together create the full fanfare of Israelite worship. The shofar was blown at coronations, at the new year, and at moments of divine visitation. The title ha-melek YHWH ('the king, the LORD') makes explicit what the enthronement psalms have been declaring: this is royal worship for a reigning sovereign.
7. The cosmic praise section begins, closely paralleling Psalm 96:11-12. The sea (hayyam) is summoned first — the same waters that in Psalm 93 crashed against God's throne now roar in celebration. The tevel ve-yoshvei vah ('the world and those who dwell in it') brings humanity into the cosmic choir alongside the natural world.
8. The neharot ('rivers') clapping and the harim ('mountains') singing are among the most vivid personifications in the Psalter. The verb yimcha'u kaf ('they clap their hands') pictures the rhythmic slapping of waves against riverbanks as applause. The mountains singing yachad ('together, in unison') suggests harmony — the entire landscape joining in a chorus. This is not mere poetic decoration but theological conviction: the non-human creation has a voice and a stake in God's reign.
9. The closing verse nearly matches Psalm 96:13, with one notable difference: Psalm 96:13 says God will judge with tsedek and emunah ('righteousness and faithfulness'), while Psalm 98:9 says tsedek and misharim ('righteousness and equity'). Both affirm that God's judgment is characterized by moral integrity and fairness. The substitution of misharim ('equity, evenness') for emunah ('faithfulness') emphasizes the impartiality of God's judgment — he will judge on a level playing field, with no favoritism for the powerful.

99

Summary: *Psalm 99 is the last of the 'YHWH reigns' enthronement psalms (93, 95-99). It declares God's kingship from Zion, celebrates his love of justice, and recounts his dealings with Moses, Aaron, and Samuel as evidence that he is both accessible and holy. The psalm is structured around a triple refrain emphasizing God's holiness (vv. 3, 5, 9) and has no superscription.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The triple repetition of holiness — 'Holy is he' (qadosh hu, vv. 3, 5) and 'the LORD our God is holy' (qadosh YHWH Eloheinu, v. 9) — gives this psalm a quasi-Isaianic quality, echoing the seraphim's 'Holy, holy, holy' in Isaiah 6:3. Holiness in this psalm is not abstract purity but relational: the holy God answered when Moses, Aaron, and Samuel called; he spoke to them from the pillar of cloud; he forgave them while also holding them accountable for their actions (v. 8). The combination of forgiveness and accountability — El nose lahem ve-noqem al alilotam ('a God who forgave them yet avenged their deeds') — is one of the most theologically precise statements in the Psalter. God's holiness does not erase either his mercy or his justice; it holds both simultaneously.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 8 is the most complex verse in the psalm. The phrase El nose lahem can mean 'a God who forgave them' or 'a God who bore [their burden] for them.' The ve-noqem al alilotam ('and avenging/punishing their deeds') seems to contradict forgiveness — how can God both forgive and punish? The answer lies in the Hebrew understanding of holiness: God's forgiveness does not mean the absence of consequences. Moses was forgiven but denied entry to the promised land (Numbers 20:12). Aaron was forgiven but his sons Nadab and Abihu died (Leviticus 10:1-2). Samuel was forgiven but watched Israel demand a king (1 Samuel 8). Forgiveness restores relationship; consequences remain as markers of holiness.*

Connections: *The YHWH malakh opening connects to Psalms 93:1, 96:10, and 97:1, completing the enthronement cluster. The cherubim throne imagery (yoshev keruvim, v. 1) connects to 1 Samuel 4:4, 2 Samuel 6:2, and Isaiah 37:16. The triad of Moses, Aaron, and Samuel as intercessors echoes Jeremiah 15:1, where God says even Moses and Samuel could not intercede for this generation. The pillar of cloud (v. 7) connects to Exodus 33:9-11 and Numbers 12:5. The triple holiness anticipates the trisagion of Isaiah 6:3 and Revelation 4:8.*

¹The LORD reigns — let the peoples tremble!
He sits enthroned on the cherubim — let the earth quake!

²The LORD is great in Zion;
he is exalted above all the peoples.

³Let them praise your great and fearsome name —
holy is he!

⁴The strength of the king loves justice.
You have established equity;
justice and righteousness in Jacob —
you have accomplished them.

⁵Exalt the LORD our God!
Bow down at his footstool —
holy is he!

⁶Moses and Aaron were among his priests,
and Samuel was among those who called on his name.
They called on the LORD, and he answered them.

⁷In the pillar of cloud he spoke to them.
They kept his decrees
and the statutes he gave them.

⁸O LORD our God, you answered them.
You were a forgiving God to them,
yet one who held them accountable for their deeds.

⁹Exalt the LORD our God
and bow down at his holy mountain,
for the LORD our God is holy!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The cherubim (keruvim) are not the chubby winged infants of Renaissance art but the massive, fearsome composite creatures of ancient Near Eastern iconography — part human, part animal, part divine. In Ezekiel 1 and 10, they are the living beings who bear God's throne-chariot. In the tabernacle and temple, their images topped the ark, and God was said to dwell 'between the cherubim' (1 Samuel 4:4, 2 Samuel 6:2).
2. God's greatness has a location: be-Tsiyyon ('in Zion'). This does not limit God to one place but identifies where his presence is concentrated — the temple mount, the city of David, the place where God chose to make his name dwell (Deuteronomy 12:5). Yet he is simultaneously ram hu al kol ha-ammim ('high above all the peoples') — Zion is the base, but his sovereignty is universal.
3. The first refrain: qadosh hu ('holy is he!'). God's name is gadol ('great') and nora ('fearsome, awe-inspiring'), and the summary verdict is holiness. The word qadosh ('holy') means 'set apart, other, distinct from all that is common.' God's holiness is not one attribute among many — it is the quality that makes all his other attributes divine rather than merely admirable. Holiness is what makes God's love different from human love, God's justice different from human justice.
4. The phrase oz melekh mishpat ahev ('the strength of the king loves justice') is compressed and unusual. The 'king' is God — his royal power (oz) is characterized not by conquest but by love of mishpat ('justice'). God does not merely practice justice reluctantly; he loves it. The verb konanta ('you have established') with meisharim ('equity') declares that fairness is not accidental in God's kingdom but built into the structure. The final declaration — mishpat u-tsedaqah be-Ya'aqov attah asita ('justice and righteousness in Jacob, you have accomplished') — locates God's justice in a specific community. Jacob (Israel) is the place where God has demonstrated what justice and righteousness look like in practice.

5. The second refrain: *qadosh hu*. The verb *romemu* ('exalt!') calls for active elevation of God's reputation. The *hadom raglav* ('his footstool') is the ark of the covenant (1 Chronicles 28:2) or the earth itself (Isaiah 66:1). Worshiping at the footstool means approaching the lowest point of God's throne — even the place where God rests his feet is too holy for casual approach. The posture is *hishtachavu* ('prostrate yourselves') — the deepest form of physical submission.
6. The inclusion of Moses 'among his priests' is theologically significant. Moses served as priest before the Aaronic priesthood was established (Exodus 24:6-8, 32:11-14). The triad of Moses (lawgiver), Aaron (priest), and Samuel (prophet/judge) represents the full range of Israel's mediatorial offices.
7. The *ammud anan* ('pillar of cloud') was the visible sign of God's presence during the exodus and wilderness period (Exodus 13:21-22, 33:9-11). God's speech came from within the cloud — he was present but concealed, audible but invisible. The *edotav* ('his decrees') and *choq* ('statute') refer to the torah given through these mediators. The relationship was mutual: God spoke, they kept his words. The covenant functions on communication and obedience.
8. We render *noqem al alilotam* as 'one who held them accountable for their deeds' rather than 'one who avenged their deeds' because the context is not punitive wrath but the insistence that actions have consequences even within a forgiven relationship. The English 'vengeance' would obscure the pastoral character of this accountability.
9. The final refrain expands: where verse 3 said *qadosh hu* ('holy is he') and verse 5 repeated it, verse 9 gives the full form: *ki qadosh YHWH Eloheinu* ('for the LORD our God is holy!'). The destination of worship shifts from *hadom raglav* ('his footstool,' v. 5) to *har qodsho* ('his holy mountain'). The holy mountain is Zion, the temple mount, the place where God's holiness intersects with human geography. The entire psalm has been building toward this declaration: God reigns, God judges, God answers, God forgives, God holds accountable — and through it all, God is holy. Holiness is the thread that binds sovereignty, justice, mercy, and accountability into a single divine character.

100

Summary: *Psalm 100 is a brief, radiant hymn of praise — only five verses — designated as a 'psalm for the thanksgiving offering' (mizmor le-todah). It summons all the earth to worship the LORD with joy, know that he is God, enter his gates with thanksgiving, and bless his name, because the LORD is good, his faithful love endures forever, and his faithfulness extends to every generation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is the culmination and crown of the enthronement psalm sequence (93-100). After all the thunder of theophany, the crashing of chaotic waters, the melting of mountains, the warnings about hardened hearts, and the triple invocation of holiness — the sequence ends here, with five verses of unqualified, uncomplicated joy. There are no enemies in this psalm. No lament, no petition, no warning, no theological tension. Only command after command to rejoice, to know, to enter, to thank. The central declaration — *de'u ki YHWH hu Elohim, hu asanu ve-lo anachnu, ammo ve-tson mar'ito* ('Know that the LORD is God; he made us and we are his, his people and the flock of his pasture') — is one of the most compact creedal statements in the Hebrew Bible. It asserts God's identity, his creatorship, his ownership, and his pastoral care in a single breath.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 3 contains a famous textual variant: the ketiv (written text) reads *ve-lo anachnu* ('and not we ourselves,' meaning 'he made us, and not we ourselves') while the qere (read text) reads *ve-lo anachnu* ('and we are his,' with *lo* spelled as 'to him' rather than 'not'). Both readings are theologically meaningful. The ketiv denies human self-creation: God made us, not we ourselves. The qere affirms divine ownership: he made us and we belong to him. The qere reading is more widely followed and is reflected in our rendering, but the ketiv's denial of autonomous self-creation is equally powerful.*

Connections: *The psalm for the todah ('thanksgiving offering') connects to the todah sacrifice prescribed in Leviticus 7:12-15 — a fellowship offering accompanied by bread and presented with songs of praise. The call to 'all the earth' (*kol ha-arets*, v. 1) echoes Psalms 96:1 and 98:4. The shepherd imagery (*tson mar'ito*, 'the flock of his pasture') echoes Psalm 95:7 and Psalm 23. The concluding triad — *to'v YHWH, le-olam chasdo, ve-ad dor va-dor emunato* ('the LORD is good, his faithful love endures forever, and his faithfulness to every generation') — is the liturgical formula that appears in 1 Chronicles 16:34, 2 Chronicles 5:13, 7:3, Ezra 3:11, and Psalm 136:1. It may be the oldest and most frequently repeated confession in Israelite worship.*

1A psalm for the thanksgiving offering.

Shout to the LORD, all the earth!

²Serve the LORD with gladness!
Come before him with joyful singing!

³Know that the LORD — he is God!
He made us, and we are his —
his people and the flock of his pasture.

⁴Enter his gates with thanksgiving,
his courts with praise!
Give thanks to him; bless his name!

⁵For the LORD is good;
his faithful love endures forever,
and his faithfulness to every generation.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription *mizmor le-todah* ('a psalm for the thanksgiving offering') links this psalm to the sacrificial system. The *todah* was a specific category of peace offering (Leviticus 7:12-15) presented after deliverance from danger — illness, enemies, mortal threat. It was always accompanied by communal celebration and praise. The imperative *hari'u* ('shout!') with *kol ha-arets* ('all the earth') universalizes the thanksgiving: what began as one person's gratitude for deliverance becomes the whole world's response to God.
2. The verb *ivdu* ('serve!') is the same verb used for Israel's slavery in Egypt (Exodus 1:13) — the exodus did not free Israel from service but transferred their service from Pharaoh to God. But this service is *be-simchah* ('with gladness') — not coerced labor but joyful devotion. The verb *bo'u* ('come!') with *lefanav* ('before his face') invites the worshipers into God's presence, and *birnana* ('with joyful singing, with ringing cries') describes how they arrive. The entire verse insists that the worship of God is characterized by delight, not dread.
3. The *ketiv/qere* variant in this verse is one of the most discussed in the Hebrew Bible. The *ketiv* (*ve-lo anachnu*, 'and not we ourselves') denies human self-sufficiency: we did not make ourselves. The *qere* (*ve-lo anachnu*, 'and we are his') affirms divine possession: we belong to God. Both readings are ancient, both are theologically sound, and both are preserved in the Masoretic tradition. We follow the *qere* because the flow of the verse moves from creation to possession to pastoral care.
4. The *she'arim* ('gates') and *chatserot* ('courts') are the physical spaces of the Jerusalem temple. The outer gates led to the courtyards where worshipers gathered. The *todah* and *tehillah* that the worshipers bring are both verbal offerings — words of gratitude and words of praise. In the *todah* sacrifice, the verbal thanksgiving accompanied the physical offering, but the psalm envisions the words themselves as the primary gift.
5. The formula *ki tov ki le-olam chasdo* ('for he is good, for his faithful love endures forever') appears as a liturgical refrain in 2 Chronicles 5:13, 7:3, 20:21, Ezra 3:11, and throughout Psalm 136. It may be the oldest continuous liturgical formula in Jewish worship, predating any written psalm and perhaps going back to the earliest temple worship. When the returned exiles laid the foundation of the second temple, they wept and shouted this formula (Ezra 3:11) — it was the first thing sung when worship resumed.

101

Summary: *A royal psalm attributed to David in which the king declares the moral standards he will uphold in his household and kingdom. The psalm functions as a pledge of governance — David vows to walk with integrity, banish slander and arrogance, surround himself with faithful servants, and purge the wicked from the city of the LORD. It reads like a royal charter of ethics, a king's oath of office before God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 101 is unique among the psalms because it is neither praise nor lament but a vow. The king does not ask God for anything; he declares what he will do. Every line is a first-person commitment: 'I will sing,' 'I will walk,' 'I will set no worthless thing before my eyes,' 'I will cut off.' The psalm assumes that the king's personal integrity is inseparable from the health of the nation — that a ruler's private conduct shapes public justice. The shift from personal ethics (vv. 1-4) to governmental policy (vv. 5-8) treats them as one continuous fabric. A king who tolerates evil in his own heart will tolerate it in his court.*

Translation Friction: The superscription attributes this to David (le-David), and the content fits a royal context — the references to 'my house,' 'my eyes,' and 'the city of the LORD' suggest a king governing from Jerusalem. However, the psalm's idealistic tone raises questions: does this represent David's actual practice, or an aspiration? Given the narratives of 2 Samuel, where David fails spectacularly in precisely the areas this psalm addresses (Bathsheba, the cover-up, failure to discipline his sons), the psalm reads as either early idealism or deliberate irony. The Hebrew phrase be-qerev beiti ('within my house') becomes painfully pointed when read against 2 Samuel 11-18.

Connections: The psalm's emphasis on the king's moral conduct connects directly to Deuteronomy 17:14-20, the Torah's instructions for Israelite kingship — the king must not multiply wealth or wives and must keep a copy of the Torah before him. Psalm 101 reads like the king's personal response to those instructions. The phrase chesed u-mishpat ('faithful love and justice') in verse 1 echoes the pairing found throughout the prophets (Hosea 6:6, Micah 6:8) — these are the twin pillars of covenant faithfulness. The morning judgment in verse 8 connects to Jeremiah 21:12, where the king is commanded to execute justice every morning.

¹A psalm of David.

Of faithful love and justice I will sing;
to you, O LORD, I will make music.

²I will give careful attention to the way of integrity.
When will you come to me?
I will walk with a whole heart
within my house.

³I will set no worthless thing before my eyes.
The deeds of those who fall away — I hate them;
they will not cling to me.

⁴A twisted heart will turn away from me;
I will not know evil.

⁵Whoever slanders his neighbor in secret —
him I will destroy.
The one with haughty eyes and a swollen heart —
him I cannot endure.

⁶My eyes are on the faithful of the land,
that they may sit with me.
Whoever walks the path of integrity —
he will serve me.

⁷No one who practices deceit
will dwell within my house.
No one who speaks lies
will stand before my eyes.

⁸Every morning I will destroy
all the wicked of the land,
cutting off from the city of the LORD
all who practice iniquity.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The pairing of *chesed* and *mishpat* is foundational in the Hebrew Bible. *Chesed* is God's covenant faithfulness directed downward; *mishpat* is the just order that results when that faithfulness is reflected in human governance. The king who sings of both is committing to embody both.
2. The question *matai tavo elai* ('when will you come to me?') has puzzled translators. Some take it as a parenthetical cry for God's help, others as a condition ('whenever you come to me, you will find me walking in integrity'). The abruptness is likely deliberate — even in the middle of declaring his moral resolve, the king acknowledges that God's presence is what makes integrity possible.
3. The word *tom* ('integrity, wholeness, completeness') shares its root with *tamim* ('blameless'). Walking *be-tom levavi* means conducting oneself from a heart that is undivided, not harboring hidden motives.
4. The word *beliyaal* later becomes a title (Belial) in Second Temple literature and the New Testament (2 Corinthians 6:15) for a figure of wickedness. Here in the psalm it is still an abstract noun meaning 'worthlessness' or 'destruction.' The evolution from adjective to proper name traces how deeply this concept embedded itself in Israel's moral vocabulary.
5. The adjective *iqqesh* ('twisted, crooked, perverse') describes a heart that is bent out of shape — not merely wrong but structurally deformed. The verb *yasur* ('to turn aside, to depart') here means the king will cause such a heart to withdraw from his presence. The phrase *ra lo eda* ('evil I will not know') uses *yada* ('to know') in the sense of intimate acquaintance — the king will not cultivate familiarity with evil.
6. The phrase *rechav levav* ('wide of heart') does not mean generous. In Hebrew, a 'wide heart' is one that has inflated itself — self-aggrandizing, presumptuous, taking up more space than it deserves. English 'proud heart' captures the sense, but 'swollen heart' preserves the physical metaphor of dangerous expansion.
7. The verb *sharat* ('to serve, to minister') is used for the Levites serving in the tabernacle (Numbers 3:6) and for court officials serving the king. The king's household is modeled on the sanctuary — faithful service to the king mirrors faithful service to God.
8. The verb *yikon* (Niphal of *kun*, 'to be established, to stand firm') means the liar will not be established or maintained in the king's presence — he will not have a secure standing. The parallelism is tight: *oseh remiyyah* ('doer of deceit') parallels *dover sheqarim* ('speaker of lies'), and *be-qerev beiti* ('within my house') parallels *le-neged einai* ('before my eyes'). The king's house and the king's gaze are the same zone of accountability.
9. The phrase *ir YHVH* ('city of the LORD') is significant — it identifies Jerusalem as God's city, not merely David's. The king governs on behalf of God, and his judicial actions serve God's holiness. The morning timing connects to ancient Near Eastern court practice, where kings rendered judgments at dawn.

102

Summary: *A prayer of an afflicted person who pours out complaint before the LORD. The psalm moves through three movements: personal suffering described in vivid physical metaphors (vv. 1-12), a declaration that God will arise to rebuild Zion and respond to the destitute (vv. 13-23), and a meditation on human transience set against God's permanence (vv. 24-29). The superscription is unique in the Psalter — it describes a situation rather than naming an author.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 102 is one of the seven traditional penitential psalms, yet it contains no confession of sin. The sufferer is afflicted but not guilty — or at least the psalm never says so. The structural genius lies in how personal lament becomes national hope becomes cosmic theology. The psalmist begins with his own wasting body (bones burning, heart withered like grass, skin clinging to bones) and ends with God founding the heavens and the earth. The shift from 'my days are like a lengthening shadow' (v. 12) to 'You are the same, and your years have no end' (v. 28) is one of the most dramatic theological pivots in the Psalter. Human fragility is not denied but set within a framework of divine permanence. Hebrews 1:10-12 quotes verses 26-28 and applies them to the Son — making this psalm one of the key christological texts drawn from the Psalter.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription *le-ani ki yaatof* ('for the afflicted one when he is faint') does not name David or any other author, making this one of the few psalms with an entirely anonymous, situational heading. The transition from personal lament (vv. 1-12) to national restoration (vv. 13-23) is abrupt — some scholars argue the psalm combines two originally separate compositions. However, the logic is coherent if the psalmist identifies his own restoration with Zion's: when God rebuilds the city, He will also heal the sufferer. The individual and the nation share a single hope.*

Connections: The imagery of withered grass (v. 5, 12) connects to Isaiah 40:6-8 ('all flesh is grass'). The declaration that God founded the earth (v. 26) echoes Isaiah 48:13 and will be quoted in Hebrews 1:10-12 as testimony to Christ's eternal nature. The promise that God will 'look down from His holy height' (v. 20) to hear the groaning of prisoners echoes Psalm 79:11 and Exodus 2:23-25, where God heard the groaning of Israel in Egypt. The rebuilding of Zion (v. 17) connects to the post-exilic hope of Isaiah 60-62.

¹A prayer of the afflicted one, when he grows faint
and pours out his complaint before the LORD.

²O LORD, hear my prayer,
and let my cry come before you.

³Do not hide your face from me
in the day of my distress.
Incline your ear to me;
in the day I call, answer me quickly.

⁴For my days vanish in smoke,
and my bones burn like a furnace.

⁵My heart is struck down and withered like grass,
for I forget to eat my bread.

⁶From the sound of my groaning,
my bones cling to my flesh.

⁷I resemble a desert owl;
I have become like a screech owl among ruins.

⁸I lie awake;
I am like a solitary bird on a rooftop.

⁹All day long my enemies taunt me;
those who mock me use my name as a curse.

¹⁰For I eat ashes as my bread
and mingle my drink with weeping.

¹¹Because of your indignation and your wrath,
for you lifted me up and hurled me down.

¹²My days are like a lengthening shadow,
and I wither like grass.

¹³But you, O LORD, are enthroned forever,
and your name endures to all generations.

¹⁴You will rise and have compassion on Zion,
for it is time to show her favor —
the appointed time has come.

¹⁵For your servants hold dear her stones
 and look with compassion on her dust.
¹⁶Then the nations will fear the name of the LORD,
 and all the kings of the earth your glory.
¹⁷For the LORD will rebuild Zion;
 He will appear in His glory.
¹⁸He has turned toward the prayer of the destitute
 and has not despised their plea.
¹⁹Let this be written for a generation to come,
 that a people yet to be created may praise the LORD.
²⁰For He looked down from His holy height;
 the LORD gazed from heaven to earth,
²¹to hear the groaning of the prisoner,
 to set free those condemned to death,
²²that the name of the LORD may be proclaimed in Zion
 and His praise in Jerusalem,
²³when peoples gather together,
 and kingdoms, to serve the LORD.
²⁴He has broken my strength along the way;
 He has cut short my days.
²⁵I say, 'My God, do not take me away
 in the middle of my days.'
 Your years span all generations.
²⁶Long ago you laid the foundation of the earth,
 and the heavens are the work of your hands.
²⁷They will perish, but you will stand.
 All of them will wear out like a garment;
 like clothing you will change them, and they will pass away.
²⁸But you are the same,
 and your years will never end.
²⁹The children of your servants will dwell secure,
 and their offspring will be established before you.

 TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is the superscription — not part of the prayer itself but a heading that describes the psalm's setting. The verb *yaatof* ('he grows faint, he is overwhelmed') conveys a person at the edge of endurance. The verb *yishpokh* ('he pours out') uses the language of liquid — the sufferer's complaint flows from him like water that cannot be held back. The noun *sicho* ('his complaint, his meditation') comes from *siach*, which can mean a spoken complaint or an inward brooding. This heading is unique in its specificity: it names no author, only a condition.

2. The prayer proper begins with the standard petition formula: YHVH shim'ah tefillati ('LORD, hear my prayer'). The parallelism pairs tefillah ('prayer') with shav'ah ('cry for help') — the second term is more urgent, more desperate than the first. The verb tavo ('let it come') asks that the cry reach God's presence, implying a distance that must be crossed.
3. The phrase al taster panekha ('do not hide your face') is the foundational prayer of the Psalter — God's hidden face means abandonment, and God's turned face means salvation. The urgency intensifies through the verse: from 'hear' to 'do not hide' to 'incline your ear' to maher aneni ('answer me quickly'). The word maher ('quickly, speedily') expresses that the sufferer cannot wait — delay itself is a form of death.
4. The verb kalu (from kalah, 'to be finished, consumed, spent') indicates total depletion. The days are not merely passing; they are being used up, burned away. The word nicharu (from charar, 'to be scorched, to burn') describes dry, intense heat — the bones are desiccated by illness or suffering.
5. The simile ka-esev ('like grass') invokes the Near Eastern image of grass that springs up green and is scorched by the sun within hours. The heart (lev) here is not the organ but the center of vitality and will. The connection between inner devastation and the forgetting of food (shakhachti me-ekhol lachmi) is psychologically precise — grief and suffering suppress appetite. The body refuses sustenance because the will to live has been struck.
6. The verb daveqah ('it clings') is the same verb used in Genesis 2:24 for marital union and in Psalm 101:3 for evil clinging. Here the clinging is skeletal — the bones press against the skin because there is no flesh between them. The person is wasting away. The phrase mi-qol anchati ('from the voice of my groaning') makes the groaning audible, the suffering public. The connection between sound and emaciation is causal: the groaning is so constant and intense that the body itself is being consumed by it.
7. The qa'at midbar ('pelican of the wilderness' in KJV) is more likely a type of owl or solitary bird associated with desolate places. The kos choravot ('owl of ruins, owl of waste places') is a bird that inhabits destroyed buildings and abandoned sites. Both images convey isolation in desolation — the psalmist is not merely alone but alone in a wasteland. The identification of these birds is uncertain; what matters is the theological resonance: both inhabit places where life has withdrawn.
8. The verb shaqadeti ('I keep watch, I lie awake') implies sleepless vigilance — the sufferer cannot rest. The image of a tsippor boded al gag ('a lonely bird on a roof') captures perfect isolation: a single bird perched on the highest point of a house, separated from its flock, exposed to wind and night. The rooftop is the most exposed part of an Israelite house. The bird is both visible and utterly alone.
9. The phrase bi nishba'u ('they swear by me') means the psalmist's misery has become proverbial — people use his name as an oath formula: 'May you become like him.' This is a depth of social humiliation beyond mere insult. The verb cherephuni ('they taunt me') implies public disgrace, and the meholalai ('those who rage against me, my mockers') are those who treat the sufferer as a spectacle of divine punishment.
10. Ashes (epher) are the substance of mourning — the psalmist sits in ashes (like Job) and they have become his food. The image of mixing tears with drink (shiqquai bivkhi masakti) means weeping is so constant that tears literally fall into the cup. These are not separate metaphors but a portrait of a life in which grief has replaced every form of sustenance.
11. The verb nasah ('to lift up') followed by hislikh ('to throw, to hurl') creates a single violent action in two stages. Some interpreters read this as a reference to former prosperity followed by catastrophic loss. The theological honesty is striking — the psalmist holds God responsible without abandoning prayer to God.
12. The tsel natui ('stretched-out shadow, declining shadow') is the shadow of late afternoon, growing longer as the sun descends — it will soon disappear entirely when night falls. The psalmist's remaining life stretches thin like that shadow. The return to the grass metaphor (ka-esev ivash, 'like grass I dry up') closes the personal lament section with the same image that opened it in verse 5. The ring structure emphasizes: the psalmist is dying.
13. The phrase le-olam teshev ('forever you sit enthroned') uses olam in its fullest sense — perpetual, without end. The contrast between the psalmist's shadow-days and God's endless reign is the theological engine that drives the rest of the psalm toward hope.
14. The verb taqum ('you will arise') implies that God has been seated, possibly in judgment or in apparent inaction, and now rises to act. The verb terachem ('you will have compassion') uses the root rachum, connected to rechem ('womb') — God's compassion is maternal, visceral, womb-deep. The phrase et lechennah ('time to show her grace') and ba mo'ed ('the appointed time has come') assert that there is a divinely fixed moment for Zion's restoration, and it has arrived. The psalmist's personal suffering is now linked to national hope.
15. The verb ratsu ('they take pleasure in, they hold dear') means the people love even the rubble of Zion — her stones (avaneiha) and her dust (apharah). This is post-destruction language: the city has been reduced to ruins, but its broken stones are precious to the faithful. The word apha ('dust') is the material of desolation and also of creation (Genesis 2:7). Even Zion's dust is beloved. This verse likely reflects the exile or early post-exilic period.
16. The scope expands from Zion to the entire world. When God rebuilds Zion, the nations (goyim) will respond with yir'ah ('fear, reverence'). The parallel between shem YHVH ('the name of the LORD') and kevodekha ('your glory') equates God's name with His manifest presence. The kings of the earth — not merely Israel's neighbors but all earthly rulers — will acknowledge God's kavod.
17. The verb banah ('to build') is the hope of every exile — God will reconstruct what was destroyed. The phrase nir'ah bikhvodo ('He will be seen in His glory') means God's rebuilding of Zion is not merely architectural but theophanic — God Himself will appear. The city is rebuilt because God returns to it.

18. The ha-ar'ar ('the stripped one, the destitute, the naked shrub') is a rare word — it appears in Jeremiah 17:6 as a bush in the desert, stripped bare, without hope. Here it describes people stripped of everything. The verb bazah ('to despise') is what God does not do — He does not look down on the prayer of those who have nothing. This verse reverses the shame the psalmist described earlier: even if enemies despise him, God does not.
19. The phrase dor acharon ('a later generation, a generation to come') combined with am nivra ('a people to be created') gives this verse an almost prophetic quality — the psalm reaches beyond its own moment to address readers who have not yet been born. Every subsequent reader of this psalm fulfills the psalmist's hope.
20. The verb hishqif ('He looked down, He gazed from above') implies bending forward to see — an act of deliberate attention. The phrase mi-merom qodsho ('from the height of His holiness') locates God in the highest point of the cosmic architecture, yet He bends to look at the earth. The verbs hishqif and hibbit ('He looked intently') both emphasize focused, purposeful observation — God is not passively aware but actively watching.
21. The enqat asir ('groaning of the prisoner') echoes Exodus 2:24 and 6:5, where God hears the groaning of Israel in Egypt. The phrase benei temutah ('sons of death, children of death') means those sentenced to die — death is their parentage, their destiny. God's purpose in looking down is not idle surveillance but rescue: lefatte'ach ('to open, to release'). The God who gazes from heaven does so in order to act.
22. The verb lesapper ('to recount, to proclaim, to tell') is the purpose of the entire rescue: God frees the prisoners so that they can tell what He has done. The parallel between shem YHVH ('the name of the LORD') in Zion and tehillato ('His praise') in Jerusalem binds proclamation to place — the restored city is the location where God's acts are celebrated.
23. The vision expands to eschatological scope: be-hiqqavets ammin yachdav ('when peoples are gathered together') — not just Israel but the nations. The word mamlakhot ('kingdoms') pairs with ammin ('peoples') to indicate both populations and political structures. The purpose of this universal gathering is la'avod et YHVH ('to serve the LORD'). The psalm has moved from one sufferer's bones on fire to all the kingdoms of the earth worshipping God. The trajectory is from desolation to cosmic restoration.
24. The psalmist returns to personal lament. The verb innah ('He afflicted, He humbled') attributes the suffering directly to God — not to enemies, not to illness, but to the divine hand. The phrase badderekh ('along the way, on the road') implies the sufferer was cut down mid-journey, before reaching the destination. The verb qittsar ('He shortened') means God truncated the psalmist's life — the full measure of days was not granted.
25. The contrast between 'the middle of my days' and 'your years throughout all generations' is the theological hinge of the psalm's final section. Human life is measured in halves and portions; God's existence is measured in all generations. The psalmist does not resolve this tension — he holds both truths together.
26. The verb yasad ('to found, to establish, to lay a foundation') is used for both the temple and the earth — both are structures God has built. The psalm does not distinguish between creation and architecture; for the Hebrew mind, the cosmos is God's building project.
27. The garment metaphor is quoted in Hebrews 1:11-12 and applied to the Son's superiority over creation. The theological weight is enormous: if even the heavens wear out, then nothing created is permanent — only the Creator endures. The verb chalaf ('to pass away, to change') applies to the heavens what normally applies to human generations.
28. The phrase attah hu ('you are He') became a liturgical formula in later Judaism. It affirms God's unchanging nature — He is the same yesterday, today, and forever, as Hebrews 13:8 will later say of Christ. The psalm's movement from personal suffering to cosmic permanence is complete.
29. The word zera ('seed, offspring') is the covenant term for descendants — the promise to Abraham that his seed would endure. The psalm closes by grounding individual hope in communal continuity: the sufferer may die, but the community of God's servants will persist before God's face.

103

Summary: David's great hymn of praise to the LORD for His compassion, forgiveness, and faithful love. The psalm opens with a self-summons to bless God ('Bless the LORD, O my soul'), catalogs God's benefits — healing, redemption, satisfaction, renewal — then meditates on God's character as revealed to Moses: compassionate, slow to anger, abounding in faithful love. The central section (vv. 8-14) is the theological heart: God does not treat us as our sins deserve because He remembers that we are dust. The psalm closes with a cosmic call to praise, summoning angels, heavenly hosts, and all creation to bless the LORD.

What Makes This Remarkable: Psalm 103 is the chesed psalm — the word appears four times (vv. 4, 8, 11, 17), and the entire poem is an exposition of what chesed means in practice. The psalm quotes Exodus 34:6-7, the self-revelation of God to Moses after the golden calf disaster, and then extends it: 'He does not deal with us according to our sins' (v. 10). This is grace articulated before the word 'grace' acquired its Christian theological weight. The psalm's movement is striking: it begins with 'my soul' (individual), expands to Israel's history (national), then reaches to heaven's throne and all creation (cosmic). The trajectory is from inward praise to universal doxology. The comparison of human life to grass and flowers (vv. 15-16) — the same imagery as Isaiah 40:6-8 — is not

pessimistic but liberating: because we are frail, God is gentle with us. Our smallness is not a problem to be solved but a condition that evokes divine tenderness.

Translation Friction: *The superscription le-David is accepted by the text but the psalm's theology of forgiveness is remarkably mature — some scholars see it as post-exilic, reflecting the kind of theological synthesis that emerges after the exile shattered simpler frameworks of reward and punishment. The psalm's use of Exodus 34:6 is selective: it quotes the compassionate attributes but omits the warning that God 'will by no means clear the guilty' (Exodus 34:7b). This is not carelessness but theological choice — the psalmist is emphasizing one dimension of God's character for a specific pastoral purpose. The tension between justice and mercy is not resolved here; mercy is simply celebrated.*

Connections: *Exodus 34:6-7 is the foundational text behind verse 8 — God's self-revelation as rachum ve-channun, erekh appayim ve-rav chesed ('compassionate and gracious, slow to anger and abounding in faithful love'). This creedal formula is quoted more than any other passage in the Hebrew Bible (Joel 2:13, Jonah 4:2, Nehemiah 9:17, Psalms 86:15, 145:8). The grass imagery in verses 15-16 parallels Isaiah 40:6-8 and 1 Peter 1:24-25. The fatherly compassion of verse 13 anticipates Jesus' parable of the prodigal son (Luke 15:20). The psalm's opening and closing phrase — barekhi nafshi et YHVH ('bless the LORD, O my soul') — creates a frame that also opens Psalm 104.*

¹Of David.

Bless the LORD, O my soul,
and all that is within me, bless His holy name.

²Bless the LORD, O my soul,
and do not forget any of His benefits.

³He forgives all your iniquity;
He heals all your diseases.

⁴He redeems your life from the pit;
He crowns you with faithful love and compassion.

⁵He satisfies your life with good things,
so that your youth is renewed like the eagle's.

⁶The LORD works righteousness
and justice for all who are oppressed.

⁷He made His ways known to Moses,
His deeds to the children of Israel.

⁸The LORD is compassionate and gracious,
slow to anger and abounding in faithful love.

⁹He will not always contend,
nor will He keep His anger forever.

¹⁰He has not dealt with us according to our sins,
nor repaid us according to our iniquities.

¹¹For as high as the heavens are above the earth,
so great is His faithful love toward those who fear Him.

¹²As distant as east is from west,
so far has He removed our transgressions from us.

¹³As a father has compassion on his children,
so the LORD has compassion on those who fear Him.

¹⁴For He knows what we are made of;
He remembers that we are dust.

¹⁵As for a human — his days are like grass;
like a flower of the field, so he blooms.

¹⁶For the wind passes over it and it is gone,
and its place knows it no more.

¹⁷But the faithful love of the LORD is from everlasting to everlasting
upon those who fear Him,
and His righteousness to children's children,

¹⁸to those who keep His covenant
and remember His precepts to do them.

¹⁹The LORD has established His throne in the heavens,
and His kingdom rules over all.

²⁰Bless the LORD, you His angels,
you mighty ones who do His word,
obeying the voice of His command.

²¹Bless the LORD, all His hosts,
His ministers who do His will.

²²Bless the LORD, all His works,
in every place of His dominion.
Bless the LORD, O my soul.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *barak* in the Piel means 'to bless, to praise, to kneel before.' When directed toward God, it means to acknowledge His greatness with gratitude. The word *qeravai* ('my inward parts') is anatomical — it refers to the internal organs, the seat of emotion in Hebrew thought. The psalmist wants his liver, his intestines, his kidneys — all the places where emotion is physically felt — to participate in praise.
2. The verb *tishkechi* ('forget') is the great danger — the soul that forgets God's acts loses the basis for praise. The word *gemulav* ('His benefits, His dealings') comes from *gamal* ('to deal with, to repay, to ripen') and includes both acts of kindness and the full weight of God's engagement with the person. The following verses (3-5) will enumerate these benefits in a catalog of divine generosity.
3. The verb *salach* ('to forgive') occurs only with God as subject in the Hebrew Bible — it is a divine prerogative. This distinguishes biblical forgiveness from human pardoning. When God forgives, something happens that no human authority can accomplish.
4. The *go'el* institution (Leviticus 25, Ruth 3-4) is the legal framework here — God acts as the nearest kinsman who has both the right and the obligation to redeem. The word *shachat* ('pit') can mean either a physical pit, the grave, or destruction. In context, it means God rescues from death itself.
4. Register departure: *go'el* rendered as 'redeems' (verbal) rather than default nominal 'kinsman-redeemer'/'Redeemer' because the Hebrew uses the participial form *ha-go'el* — 'the one who redeems' — functioning as a present-tense verb describing God's ongoing redemptive action.
5. The verb *masbia* ('He satisfies') means filling to the point of completeness — no lack, no hunger, no unfulfilled desire. The word *edyekh* is debated: it may mean 'your ornament' (from *adi*, 'adornment'), 'your duration' (from *ad*, 'perpetuity'), or 'your mouth' (some ancient versions). We render 'your

life' to capture the fullness of what God satisfies. The eagle (nesher) metaphor draws on the observation that eagles molt and regrow feathers, appearing to be renewed. The psalmist's youth (ne'urayekhi) is refreshed by God's provision — age and decay are reversed by divine generosity.

6. The plural tsedaqot ('righteous acts, acts of justice') emphasizes that God's righteousness is not a static attribute but a series of specific, concrete actions on behalf of the oppressed (ashuqim). The word ashuqim ('oppressed, crushed, exploited') refers to those ground down by more powerful people. God's justice is not impartial in the abstract sense — it is biased toward the oppressed, because they are the ones who need it.
7. The distinction between derakhav ('His ways') and alilotav ('His deeds') is important: Israel saw what God did (the plagues, the sea crossing, the manna), but Moses knew why God did it (His compassion, His faithfulness, His patience). Ways are deeper than deeds. This verse prepares for the Exodus 34:6 quotation in verse 8.
8. The phrase erekh appayim ('slow to anger') is literally 'long of nostrils.' In Hebrew, anger is expressed through the nose — rapid breathing, flared nostrils. A person who is 'long of nostrils' takes a long time to get angry. Applied to God, it means His default posture is patience, not wrath.
8. The psalm quotes Exodus 34:6 but omits the continuation in 34:7b — 'who will by no means clear the guilty.' This selective quotation is theologically deliberate: the psalmist is celebrating mercy, not denying justice. The full character of God includes both; this psalm magnifies one.
9. The verb yariv ('He contends, He brings a case') is legal language — God is pictured as a prosecutor who eventually drops the case. The verb yittor ('He keeps, He bears a grudge') means to maintain anger over time. The psalm's claim is radical: God's anger has an expiration date. He does not nurse grievances or hold eternal grudges. This is not a denial of divine justice but an assertion that mercy has the last word.
10. The parallelism between chata'einu ('our sins,' from chata, 'to miss the mark') and avonoteinu ('our iniquities,' from avah, 'to bend, to twist, to be crooked') uses two different Hebrew words for moral failure. Sin is missing the target; iniquity is being bent out of shape. God responds to neither with what they deserve.
11. The verb gavar ('to prevail, to be mighty') applied to chesed means that faithful love is not passive — it actively prevails over obstacles, over sin, over the distance between heaven and earth. The spatial metaphor makes an abstract quality vivid: chesed is as vast as the sky.
12. The three sin-words in the psalm — chet (v. 10, missing the mark), avon (v. 10, crookedness), and pesha (v. 12, rebellion) — cover the full spectrum of human moral failure. God addresses all three: He does not repay chet or avon proportionally (v. 10), and He removes pesha entirely (v. 12).
13. The father metaphor is significant in a culture where the father held absolute authority over the household. A father's compassion is not weakness but the tender side of full authority — the father who could punish chooses to show mercy. This verse anticipates the explanation in verse 14: the father knows what his children are made of.
14. The word yetser will later acquire theological weight in rabbinic literature as yetser ha-ra ('the evil inclination') and yetser ha-tov ('the good inclination'). Here it simply means 'what we are formed from, our constitution.' God is a potter who knows the limitations of His clay.
15. The word enosh ('a human, a mortal') emphasizes frailty — it is the word for humanity at its most vulnerable. The comparison to chatsir ('grass') and tsits ha-sadeh ('flower of the field') draws on the Palestinian landscape where wildflowers appear after rain and are scorched by the hot east wind (the hamsin) within days. The verb yatsits ('he blossoms') uses the same root as tsits ('flower') — the human blooms briefly and brilliantly, but the bloom does not last.
16. The ruach ('wind, breath, spirit') that destroys the flower is the same word for the life-breath that God gives. Wind gives life and takes it away. The phrase ve-einenu ('and it is not, and he is no more') is absolute — the person simply ceases to be present. The clause ve-lo yakkivenu od meqomo ('and its place will not recognize it again') personifies the location: the very ground where the person stood will not remember them. The imagery is not bitter but factual — this is what dust does.
17. The fourth and climactic use of chesed in the psalm. The phrase me-olam ve-ad olam is the strongest temporal expression in Hebrew — it means 'from perpetuity to perpetuity.' Chesed is set on the same timescale as God Himself.
18. This verse qualifies the promise of verse 17. The chesed that spans eternity is directed toward those who shomerei verito ('keep His covenant') and zokherei piqudav ('remember His precepts'). The verb zakar ('to remember') paired with la'asotam ('to do them') means that remembering is not intellectual but active — you remember the commandments by performing them. The covenant framework is explicit: chesed operates within covenant relationship.
19. The verb hekchin ('He has established, He has prepared') uses kun ('to be firm, stable') in the Hiphil — God's throne is not temporary furniture but a permanent fixture of the cosmic architecture. The phrase malkhuto bakkol mashalah ('His kingdom over everything rules') asserts absolute sovereignty. The scope is universal: bakkol means 'over everything' — not just Israel, not just the earth, but the entire created order. This verse provides the theological basis for the cosmic praise that follows.
20. The call to praise expands from the psalmist's soul to the angelic realm. The mal'akhav ('His angels, His messengers') are giborei koach ('mighty ones of power') — beings of immense strength. Yet their power is exercised in obedience: osei devaro ('doers of His word'), lishmo'a be-qol devaro ('listening to the voice of His word'). Angelic might is defined by submission to God's commands. The strongest beings in the universe are characterized by their obedience.
21. The tseva'av ('His hosts, His armies') expands from individual angels to the entire heavenly army. The mesharetav ('His ministers') uses sharat, the verb for priestly or courtly service — the same word used in Psalm 101:6 for those who serve the king. The phrase osei retsono ('doers of His will, His pleasure') defines service as alignment with God's desire. The heavenly hierarchy is summoned to praise.

22. The return to barekhi nafshi et YHVH creates an inclusio — the literary device of beginning and ending with the same phrase. The psalm has traveled from the individual soul through Israel's history, through God's cosmic character, through heaven's angels, through all creation, and back to the single soul. The message is clear: your private praise participates in the praise of the universe.

104

Summary: *The great creation psalm — a poetic retelling of Genesis 1 that follows the same sequence (light, sky, waters, land, luminaries, sea creatures, humans) but transforms it from narrative prose into ecstatic hymn. God stretches out the heavens like a tent, rides on the clouds, sets the earth on its foundations, sends springs into valleys, causes grass and wine and bread and oil for human sustenance, appoints the moon for seasons, and fills the sea with creatures beyond counting. The psalm ends with a prayer that sinners vanish from the earth and a return to the opening self-summons: 'Bless the LORD, O my soul.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 104 has been compared to the Egyptian Hymn to the Aten attributed to Pharaoh Akhenaten (14th century BCE), and the parallels are striking — both celebrate the sun, the provision of water, the diversity of creatures, and the dependence of all life on the deity. Whether there is direct literary dependence or a shared ancient Near Eastern tradition of creation hymns is debated. What distinguishes Psalm 104 is its theological integration: creation is not autonomous but continuously dependent on God's breath (ruach). Verse 29 is the psalm's theological center: 'When you hide your face, they are terrified; when you take away their breath, they die and return to dust. When you send forth your spirit, they are created, and you renew the face of the ground.' Creation is not a past event but an ongoing act — God sustains everything moment by moment. The psalm's vision is not deistic (God made it and left) but panentheistic in the broad sense: God is actively present in every spring, every cloud, every lion's roar, every ship on the sea.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm has no superscription attributing it to David or any other author in the Hebrew text (LXX adds 'of David'). The relationship to Genesis 1 is structural but not slavish — the psalm rearranges some elements and adds others (wine, oil, storks, rock badgers) that Genesis does not mention. The prayer in verse 35 that sinners be consumed from the earth strikes an unexpected note in a creation hymn — why end a celebration of cosmic beauty with a wish for the wicked to vanish? The answer may be that sin is the one element that does not fit the created order; it is the dissonance in the symphony, and the psalmist wants the music to be pure.*

Connections: *The creation sequence follows Genesis 1 closely: light (v. 2), sky/waters divided (vv. 3-6), dry land (vv. 7-9), vegetation (vv. 14-17), luminaries (v. 19), sea creatures (v. 25-26), sustenance for all (vv. 27-28). The breath theology of verses 29-30 connects to Genesis 2:7 (God breathes life into the human), Ecclesiastes 12:7 (the spirit returns to God), and Job 34:14-15 (if God withdrew His spirit, all flesh would perish). The Leviathan reference in verse 26 connects to Job 41 and Isaiah 27:1. Paul's speech in Acts 17:25-28 ('in Him we live and move and have our being') echoes this psalm's vision of continuous divine sustenance.*

¹Bless the LORD, O my soul.

O LORD my God, you are exceedingly great;
you are clothed with splendor and majesty.

²He wraps Himself in light as a garment;
He stretches out the heavens like a tent curtain.

³He lays the beams of His upper chambers on the waters;
He makes the clouds His chariot;
He walks on the wings of the wind.

- ⁴He makes winds His messengers,
flaming fire His servants.
- ⁵He set the earth on its foundations,
so that it will never be shaken.
- ⁶You draped the deep over it as with a garment;
the waters stood above the mountains.
- ⁷At your rebuke they fled;
at the sound of your thunder they rushed away.
- ⁸Mountains rose, valleys sank down,
to the place you appointed for them.
- ⁹You set a boundary they cannot cross;
they will not return to cover the earth.
- ¹⁰He sends springs into the valleys;
they flow between the mountains.
- ¹¹They water every beast of the field;
the wild donkeys quench their thirst.
- ¹²Beside them the birds of the heavens dwell;
from among the branches they sing.
- ¹³He waters the mountains from His upper chambers;
the earth is satisfied with the fruit of your works.
- ¹⁴He causes grass to grow for the livestock
and plants for human labor,
bringing food from the earth.
- ¹⁵And wine to gladden the human heart,
oil to make the face shine,
and bread to sustain the human heart.
- ¹⁶The trees of the LORD drink their fill —
the cedars of Lebanon that He planted.
- ¹⁷There the birds build their nests;
the stork — the cypresses are her home.
- ¹⁸The high mountains belong to the wild goats;
the cliffs are a refuge for the rock badgers.
- ¹⁹He made the moon for appointed times;
the sun knows its setting.
- ²⁰You appoint darkness and it becomes night,
when every creature of the forest stirs.

²¹The young lions roar for prey,
seeking their food from God.

²²The sun rises — they withdraw
and lie down in their dens.

²³Humans go out to their work
and to their labor until evening.

²⁴How many are your works, O LORD!
In wisdom you made them all;
the earth is full of your creatures.

²⁵There is the sea, vast and wide,
teeming with creatures beyond number —
living things both small and great.

²⁶There the ships travel,
and Leviathan, whom you formed to play in it.

²⁷All of them look to you
to give them their food in its time.

²⁸When you give to them, they gather;
when you open your hand, they are filled with good.

²⁹When you hide your face, they are terrified;
when you take away their breath, they die
and return to their dust.

³⁰When you send forth your spirit, they are created,
and you renew the face of the ground.

³¹May the glory of the LORD endure forever;
may the LORD rejoice in His works.

³²He looks at the earth and it trembles;
He touches the mountains and they smoke.

³³I will sing to the LORD as long as I live;
I will make music to my God while I exist.

³⁴May my meditation be pleasing to Him;
I will rejoice in the LORD.

³⁵Let sinners vanish from the earth,
and let the wicked be no more.
Bless the LORD, O my soul.
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The clothing metaphor is central to the psalm: God wraps Himself in light (v. 2), stretches out the heavens like a tent curtain (v. 2), and makes clouds His chariot (v. 3). Creation is God's wardrobe — the visible expression of His invisible nature.
2. The verb *natah* ('to stretch out') applied to the heavens appears in Isaiah 40:22, 42:5, 44:24, and Job 9:8. It became a standard theological formula: God 'stretches out' the sky. The tent curtain metaphor suggests that the heavens are not a permanent structure but a fabric God spread — and could, presumably, fold up again (as Psalm 102:27 suggests).
3. The verb *meqareh* ('lays beams, constructs with beams') uses architectural language — God builds His upper rooms (*aliyyotav*) on the cosmic waters above the firmament. The ancient Near Eastern cosmology places water above the sky-dome, and God's palace sits upon those waters. The clouds are His *rekhuvo* ('His chariot') and the wind (*ruach*) is His steed. The imagery is of a divine king moving through His realm with cosmic elements as His transportation.
4. The LXX reads 'He makes His angels spirits and His ministers a flame of fire,' and Hebrews 1:7 follows this reading to argue for the Son's superiority over angels. The Hebrew text in its creation-hymn context more likely means that natural forces — wind and fire — serve as God's agents in the world. Both readings are theologically productive.
5. The verb *yasad* ('to found, to lay a foundation') pictures God as a master builder. The *mekhoneyha* ('its foundations, its bases') are the pillars or supports on which the earth rests — the ancient cosmological image of the earth as a structure built upon foundations (see also Job 38:4-6). The promise *bal timmot olam va-ed* ('it will not be moved forever and ever') asserts the permanence of God's construction. The earth is stable because God made it so.
6. The *tehom* ('the deep') is the primordial ocean of Genesis 1:2 — the watery chaos that covered everything before God separated the waters. The psalm pictures this as a garment (*kallevush*) that covered the earth — the deep wrapped the world like a robe. The phrase *al harim ya'amdu mayim* ('above the mountains the waters stood') describes the pre-creation state: even the highest points on earth were submerged. The following verses will describe God commanding these waters to retreat.
7. The verb *yenusun* ('they fled') and *yechafezun* ('they hurried, they rushed') give the waters personality — they respond to God's *ga'aratekha* ('your rebuke') like soldiers scattering before a commander. The *qol ra'amekha* ('voice of your thunder') is God's weapon: His voice is thunder, and thunder drives the waters back. The retreat of the primordial waters is not a gradual process but a panicked flight before divine authority.
8. The subject could be the waters or the landforms. We read it as the landscape reshaping itself in response to God's command: mountains ascend (*ya'alu harim*) and valleys descend (*yerdu veqa'ot*). The phrase *el maqom zeh yasadta lahem* ('to the place you founded for them') means each feature of the landscape has an assigned position. Geography is not random but ordered — God placed each mountain and valley where it belongs.
9. God sets a *gevu* ('boundary, border, limit') for the waters. The waters are not destroyed but contained — they have a territory they must not exceed. The phrase *bal yeshuvun lekhasot ha-arets* ('they will not return to cover the earth') is a creation covenant: God promises that the primordial flood state will not recur. This echoes the Noahic covenant in Genesis 9:11, though the psalm frames it as a creation ordinance rather than a post-flood promise.
10. The scene shifts from primordial cosmology to living landscape. God *meshalleach ma'yanim* ('sends forth springs') — the verb *shalach* means to dispatch on a mission. The springs are agents sent by God to water the earth. The *nachalim* ('wadis, valleys, ravines') are the channels through which the water flows, and the springs run *bein harim* ('between the mountains'). The water that was chaos in verse 6 is now life-giving irrigation, domesticated by divine purpose.
11. The springs serve the animals: *kol chaito sadai* ('every living thing of the field'). The specific example — *pera'im* ('wild donkeys') — highlights the most independent, untamed creatures of the steppe. Even they depend on God's springs. The verb *yishberu* ('they break, they quench') applied to thirst means to shatter it, to end it completely. God provides for creatures that serve no human purpose — the wild donkey is useless to agriculture, yet God waters it.
12. The springs create habitat: the birds of the heavens (of *ha-shamayim*) settle beside the water sources. The phrase *mi-bein ofayim* ('from among the foliage, the branches') locates the birds in the trees that grow near water. The verb *yittenu qol* ('they give voice, they sing') is the birds' response to God's provision — their singing is an unconscious form of praise, a natural doxology that the psalmist recognizes as worship.
13. God waters the mountains from His *aliyyotav* ('His upper rooms') — the same celestial chambers mentioned in verse 3, where God laid beams on the waters. Rain falls from God's palace. The phrase *mi-peri ma'asekha* ('from the fruit of your works') means the earth's satisfaction comes from what God produces — rain is God's 'fruit.' The verb *tisba* ('is satisfied') uses the same root as verse 5's *mesabbe'a* — God satisfies both human desire and the earth itself.
14. The verb *matsmia'ch* (Hiphil of *tsamach*, 'to sprout, to cause to grow') credits God with agriculture. The *chatsir* ('grass') serves the *behemah* ('livestock, cattle, domestic animals'), and the *esev* ('plants, herbs, vegetation') serves the *avodat ha-adam* ('the labor/service of humans'). The phrase *lehotsi lechem min ha-arets* ('to bring forth bread from the earth') is the purpose of human agricultural labor — but the underlying cause is God's growth. Humans work, but God makes things grow.

15. Wine, oil, and bread are the three staples of the Mediterranean agricultural economy and the three elements of festive celebration. The psalm treats them as divine gifts, not human achievements. God causes the growth; humans harvest the result. The theological point is that even the most ordinary meal is sustained by God's creative power.
16. The atsei YHVH ('trees of the LORD') are trees so massive and ancient that they can only be God's own planting. The cedars of Lebanon (arzei Levanon) were the tallest, most majestic trees known to the ancient Israelite world. The verb yisbe'u ('they are satisfied, they drink their fill') applies the language of contentment to trees — they too are recipients of God's provision. The clause asher nata ('which He planted') attributes their existence to God's direct action. No human planted the cedars of Lebanon; God did.
17. The cedars provide habitat. The tsipporim ('birds') nest in them, and the chasidah ('stork') makes her home in the beroshim ('cypresses, fir trees'). The word chasidah is from the root chesed — the stork is literally 'the faithful one,' named for its attentive care of its young. Even the naming of animals reflects covenantal vocabulary. The detail is ecological: tall trees house specific birds, and the psalm delights in this specificity.
18. The ye'elim ('wild goats, ibex') inhabit the highest, most inaccessible peaks; the shefannim ('rock badgers, hyrax') hide in the cliff crevices. Both are creatures that serve no agricultural purpose and live beyond human reach. Yet God provides habitat for them. The psalm's ecological vision is non-utilitarian: creation exists not merely for human benefit but because God delights in its diversity.
19. The yareach ('moon') serves le-mo'adim ('for appointed times, for festivals'). The Hebrew liturgical calendar is lunar — the mo'adim (the festivals of Leviticus 23) are determined by the moon's phases. The moon is not merely decorative but functional in God's worship system. The sun (shemesh) yada mevo'o ('knows its going down') — the sun is personified as knowing when to set. The celestial bodies are obedient servants who know their schedule.
20. God sets (tashet) the darkness — choshekh is not an absence but an appointment. Night is not the failure of day but a purposeful creation. The phrase bo tirmosh kol chayto ya'ar ('in it every beast of the forest creeps about') means night belongs to the animals — it is their time to emerge, hunt, and move. The psalm's vision includes the nocturnal world as part of God's good order.
21. The kephirim ('young lions') roar (sho'agim) for their prey (taraph). The psalm interprets their hunting as prayer: u-levaqesh me-El okhlam ('and to seek from God their food'). The lion's roar is, in the psalm's theology, a petition to God for sustenance. Every predator, in the act of hunting, is unconsciously asking God for dinner. This is radical theological ecology: the food chain is a prayer chain.
22. At dawn, the nocturnal creatures retreat. The verb ye'asefun ('they gather themselves, they withdraw') and yirbbatsun ('they crouch, they lie down') describe the ordered transition from night to day. The me'onotam ('their dens, their lairs') are their assigned places. Night and day each have their inhabitants, and the rotation is seamless. The psalm presents the 24-hour cycle as a choreographed performance.
23. The human appears in the psalm for the first time since verse 15 — and the role is modest. Humans go out to work (le-fo'olo) and labor (la'avodato) until evening (adei arev). The human occupies one slot in the daily cycle: the daytime shift. Lions hunt at night; humans work by day. The psalm does not privilege human activity — it is one part of a larger pattern. The word adam ('human') is generic, not a name.
24. The word chokmah ('wisdom') connects this psalm to the wisdom tradition — Proverbs 8:22-31 pictures wisdom as God's companion in creation. The psalm affirms that the created order is wise, not merely powerful. The diversity of life is evidence of intelligence, not chaos.
25. The zeh hayyam gadol u-rechav yadayim ('this sea, great and broad of hands/extent') introduces the ocean as a marvel. The phrase ein mispar ('without number') means the sea creatures are uncountable — not because the psalmist is lazy but because the abundance exceeds human inventory. The juxtaposition of qetannot im gedolot ('small with great') highlights the range: from plankton to whale, the sea contains every scale of life.
26. The word Livyatan (from lavah, 'to twist, to coil') is the great sea serpent of ancient Near Eastern mythology. In Ugaritic texts, Lotan is the seven-headed chaos dragon defeated by Baal. In Isaiah 27:1, God will slay Leviathan with a sword. But in this psalm, Leviathan plays in the sea like a dolphin. The psalm has domesticated cosmic chaos through divine humor.
27. The verb yesabberu ('they look expectantly, they wait') pictures all creatures — from rock badgers to Leviathan — turning their faces toward God and waiting. The phrase latet okhlam be-itto ('to give their food in its season') means God feeds each creature at the right time. The psalm's vision of universal dependence is both ecological and theological: every feeding event in nature is God's act of provision.
28. The two clauses establish a direct chain: God gives (titten), creatures gather (yilqotun); God opens His hand (tiftach yadekha), creatures are satisfied with good (yisbe'un tov). The hand of God is the source — when it opens, abundance flows; when it closes, scarcity follows. The verb laqat ('to gather, to glean') is the verb used for gathering manna in Exodus 16. All food-gathering in all of nature is a form of manna-gathering.
29. The verb asaph ('to gather, to collect') applied to ruach means God retrieves the breath of life He distributed. Life is a loan, not a possession. The triad — hiding face, gathering breath, returning to dust — describes the mechanics of death as a divine act, not a natural process. God is as involved in death as in life.
30. The verb bara appears only with God as subject in the Hebrew Bible. Its use here means that every new generation of creatures is a genuine act of creation, not merely biological reproduction. The psalm collapses the distinction between original creation and ongoing sustenance — both are the work of God's ruach.
31. The phrase yehi khevod YHVH le-olam ('let the glory of the LORD be forever') is a wish that God's kavod — His manifest splendor — never diminishes. The parallel line — yismach YHVH be-ma'asav ('let the LORD rejoice in His works') — pictures God delighting in creation. The verb samach ('to rejoice') applied to God means the Creator takes pleasure in what He has made. This echoes Genesis 1:31: 'God saw everything that He

had made, and it was very good.' The psalm wants that divine delight to continue.

32. The God who plays with Leviathan and sends springs for birds can also make the earth quake with a glance (hamabbat la-arets vatir'ad) and set mountains smoking with a touch (yigga beharim veye'eshanu). The verbs are instantaneous: God looks — the earth trembles; God touches — the mountains erupt. The psalm reminds the listener that the gentle provider of verses 10-28 is also the terrifying Lord of Sinai (Exodus 19:18). Power and tenderness are not contradictions in God.
33. The psalmist pledges lifelong praise: be-chayyai ('in my life, as long as I live') and be-odi ('while I still exist, while I have being'). The word od ('still, yet, continuance') acknowledges that existence is temporary — the psalmist knows from verse 29 that his breath is on loan. The response to borrowed breath is praise: I will use every breath I have to sing.
34. The verb ye'erav ('may it be sweet, pleasing') expresses the hope that the psalmist's sichi ('meditation, musing, complaint') will be acceptable to God — that it will taste good to Him, like a pleasing sacrifice. The psalmist then declares anokhi esmach ba-YHVH ('I, I will rejoice in the LORD') — the emphatic pronoun anokhi adds personal force. This is the psalmist's individual response to the cosmic panorama: joy in God.
35. The appearance of halelu Yah ('praise the LORD') here is the first occurrence of this liturgical phrase in the Psalter's final collection. It will become the signature exclamation of Psalms 146-150. Some scholars attach the halelu Yah to the beginning of Psalm 105 rather than the end of 104 — the Masoretic text places it here.

105

Summary: *A historical psalm that retells Israel's story from Abraham through the exodus and conquest, emphasizing God's faithfulness to His covenant promise. The psalm moves through the patriarchal wanderings, Joseph's rise in Egypt, the plagues, the wilderness provision, and the gift of the land — all driven by one engine: God remembered His holy word to Abraham. Unlike Psalm 106, which catalogs Israel's failures, Psalm 105 focuses entirely on God's faithfulness. It is a hymn of divine reliability.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 105 is the positive mirror of Psalm 106. Where 106 will recount Israel's repeated failures and rebellions, 105 tells the same history with Israel's sins completely omitted. There is no golden calf, no grumbling, no refusal to enter the land. This is not dishonesty but theological focus: the psalm's purpose is to celebrate what God did, not to account for what Israel did wrong. The controlling verse is verse 8: 'He remembers His covenant forever, the word He commanded for a thousand generations.' Every event in the psalm — Joseph's imprisonment, the plagues, the wilderness wandering — is interpreted as God keeping a promise He made to Abraham. History is covenant fulfillment. The first fifteen verses of this psalm appear in 1 Chronicles 16:8-22 as part of the song David composed when the ark was brought to Jerusalem.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's selective retelling raises questions: by omitting Israel's failures entirely, does it distort history? The answer depends on genre. A hymn of praise is not a balanced historical account; it is a celebration of one aspect of reality. The psalm also modifies the plague sequence from Exodus — the order differs, and the fifth and sixth plagues (livestock disease, boils) are omitted entirely. The psalmist is not bound to Exodus's sequence but adapts the tradition for poetic and liturgical purposes.*

Connections: *Verses 1-15 parallel 1 Chronicles 16:8-22. The covenant with Abraham (vv. 9-11) draws on Genesis 12:1-3, 15:18-21, and 17:1-8. The Joseph narrative (vv. 17-22) condenses Genesis 37-41. The plague sequence (vv. 28-36) rearranges Exodus 7-12. The wilderness provision (vv. 39-41) draws on Exodus 13:21, 16:1-36, and 17:1-7. The gift of the land (v. 44) fulfills the promise of Genesis 15:18. The psalm's final purpose statement — 'that they might keep His statutes and observe His laws' (v. 45) — connects the historical narrative to Torah obedience.*

1Give thanks to the LORD, call on His name;
make His deeds known among the peoples.

2Sing to Him, make music to Him;
meditate on all His wonders.

3Boast in His holy name;
let the hearts of those who seek the LORD rejoice.

⁴Seek the LORD and His strength;
seek His face continually.

⁵Remember the wonders He has done,
His signs and the judgments of His mouth,

⁶O offspring of Abraham His servant,
children of Jacob, His chosen ones.

⁷He is the LORD our God;
His decrees are in all the earth.

⁸He remembers His covenant forever,
the word He commanded for a thousand generations,

⁹the covenant He cut with Abraham,
and His oath to Isaac,

¹⁰He established it for Jacob as a statute,
for Israel as an everlasting covenant,

¹¹saying, 'To you I will give the land of Canaan,
as your allotted inheritance.'

¹²When they were few in number,
very few, and strangers in it.

¹³They wandered from nation to nation,
from one kingdom to another people.

¹⁴He allowed no one to oppress them;
He rebuked kings on their account,

¹⁵'Do not touch my anointed ones,
and do my prophets no harm.'

¹⁶He called a famine upon the land;
He broke every staff of bread.

¹⁷He had sent a man ahead of them —
Joseph, sold as a slave.

¹⁸They afflicted his feet with shackles;
iron entered his soul.

¹⁹Until the time His word came to pass,
the word of the LORD refined him.

²⁰The king sent and released him —
the ruler of peoples set him free.

²¹He made him lord of his household
and ruler over all his possessions,

²²to bind his officials at will
and to teach his elders wisdom.

²³Then Israel came to Egypt;
Jacob sojourned in the land of Ham.

²⁴He made His people very fruitful
and made them stronger than their adversaries.

²⁵He turned their hearts to hate His people,
to plot cunningly with His servants.

²⁶He sent Moses His servant,
and Aaron His chosen one.

²⁷They performed His signs among them,
wonders in the land of Ham.

²⁸He sent darkness and made it dark;
they did not rebel against His word.

²⁹He turned their waters to blood
and killed their fish.

³⁰Their land swarmed with frogs,
even in the chambers of their kings.

³¹He spoke, and swarms of flies came,
and gnats throughout their territory.

³²He gave them hail instead of rain,
flaming fire throughout their land.

³³He struck their vines and fig trees
and shattered the trees of their territory.

³⁴He spoke, and locusts came,
and young locusts without number.

³⁵They devoured every plant in their land
and ate the fruit of their soil.

³⁶He struck every firstborn in their land,
the firstfruits of all their strength.

³⁷He brought them out with silver and gold,
and not one among His tribes stumbled.

³⁸Egypt was glad when they departed,
for dread of them had fallen upon them.

³⁹He spread out a cloud for a covering
and fire to give light at night.

⁴⁰They asked, and He brought quail;
He satisfied them with bread from heaven.

⁴¹He opened the rock and water gushed out;
it flowed through the desert as a river.

⁴²For He remembered His holy word,
His promise to Abraham His servant.

⁴³He brought His people out with joy,
His chosen ones with shouts of gladness.

⁴⁴He gave them the lands of the nations,
and they took possession of what peoples had labored for,

⁴⁵so that they might keep His statutes
and observe His laws.
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening imperative *hodu* ('give thanks, confess, acknowledge') sets the psalm's tone: public testimony. The verb *qir'u vishmo* ('call on His name') means to invoke God in worship. The phrase *hodu va-ammim alilotav* ('make known among the peoples His deeds') extends the audience beyond Israel — God's acts are to be proclaimed to the nations. This verse is identical to 1 Chronicles 16:8.
2. Three imperatives: *shiru* ('sing'), *zammeru* ('make music'), *sichu* ('meditate, speak about'). The word *nifle'otav* ('His wonders') from *pala* ('to be extraordinary, to be beyond comprehension') refers to acts so remarkable they exceed normal categories. The rest of the psalm will enumerate these wonders.
3. The verb *hithalelu* ('boast, glory in') means to make God's name the basis of one's confidence. The phrase *lev mevaqshei YHVH* ('the heart of those who seek the LORD') identifies the psalm's audience: not casual observers but active seekers. Their reward is joy (*yismach*).
4. Two verbs for seeking: *dirshu* (from *darash*, 'to inquire, to seek out') and *baqqeshu* (from *baqash*, 'to seek, to request'). The first implies investigation, the second implies desire. God's *uzzo* ('His strength') and *panav* ('His face') are the objects — the seeker pursues both God's power and His presence. The word *tamid* ('continually, always') means this seeking has no endpoint.
5. The imperative *zikhru* ('remember') is the psalm's operating command — what follows is the content of Israel's memory. The *nifle'otav* ('His wonders'), *mofetav* ('His signs, His portents'), and *mishpetei phiv* ('the judgments of His mouth') form a three-part catalog: extraordinary acts, authenticating signs, and spoken verdicts. God acts, God signals, God speaks.
6. The psalm addresses its audience: *zera Avraham avdo* ('seed of Abraham His servant') and *benei Ya'aqov bechirav* ('children of Jacob His chosen'). The terms *avdo* ('His servant') and *bechirav* ('His chosen ones') establish Israel's identity as rooted in divine election, not human merit. Abraham was chosen; Jacob was chosen. The psalm will demonstrate that God's faithfulness to these chosen ones drove the entire history.
7. The confession *hu YHVH Eloheinu* ('He is the LORD our God') is both identity statement and loyalty oath. The phrase *be-khol ha-arets mishpatav* ('in all the earth are His judgments') asserts universal jurisdiction — God's authority extends beyond Israel to the entire world. The God who chose Abraham is also the God of all nations.
8. The verb *tsivvah* ('He commanded') applied to a covenant word means God's promise has the force of a command — it will be fulfilled because God has ordered it so. The promise is not a wish or a hope but a divine decree.
9. The verb *karat* ('He cut') is the standard Hebrew for making a covenant — from the ritual of cutting an animal in two and passing between the halves (Genesis 15:9-18). The *shevu'ato* ('His oath') to Isaac (Genesis 26:3-4) means God bound Himself by oath to the second generation. The covenant is both cut and sworn — doubly binding.

10. The verb *ya'amidehah* ('He established it, He made it stand') uses *amad* ('to stand') in the Hiphil — God caused the covenant to stand firm for Jacob. The designation *le-choq* ('as a statute') gives the covenant the force of law. The phrase *berit olam* ('everlasting covenant') removes any time limit. Three patriarchs (Abraham, Isaac, Jacob), three covenant terms (covenant, oath, statute), three generations of confirmation.
11. The covenant content is now quoted: *lekha etten et erets Kena'an* ('to you I will give the land of Canaan'). The phrase *chevel nachalatkhem* ('the portion of your inheritance') uses *chevel* ('a measured cord, a boundary line, a lot') — the land is surveyed and assigned. The word *nachalah* ('inheritance') means the land is not earned or purchased but received as a family estate. This is the promise that drives the next thirty-four verses of history.
12. The phrase *metei mispar* ('people of number, countable people') means the patriarchs were so few you could count them. The word *kim'at* ('very few, hardly any') intensifies — they were almost nothing. And they were *garim* ('sojourners, resident aliens') in the very land promised to them. The contrast between the promise ('I will give you this land') and the reality (a handful of homeless wanderers) is the psalm's first exhibit of faith: God made the promise when fulfillment seemed impossible.
13. The verb *vayyithalekhu* ('they walked about, they wandered') describes the patriarchal life as perpetual motion — from nation to nation (*mi-goi el goi*), from kingdom to people (*mi-mamlakhah el am acher*). Abraham went from Ur to Canaan to Egypt; Isaac from Beer-sheba to Gerar; Jacob from Canaan to Haran to Egypt. The landless wandering is the context for God's protection described in the next verses.
14. God's protection of the vulnerable patriarchs: *lo hinnia'ch adam le-oshqam* ('He did not permit anyone to oppress them'). The verb *asaq* ('to oppress, to exploit') is the word for economic and political exploitation. God intervened directly: *vayyokhach aleihem melakhim* ('He rebuked kings on their behalf'). The specific references are Pharaoh (Genesis 12:17) and Abimelech (Genesis 20:3-7) — powerful rulers warned by God not to harm the patriarchs.
15. God's warning to the kings is quoted: *al tigg'u vimshichai* ('do not touch my anointed ones'). The word *meshichai* ('my anointed ones') is remarkable — the patriarchs are called 'anointed' (*mashiach*) even though they held no priestly or royal office. The anointing here means divine protection and designation. Similarly, *nevi'ai* ('my prophets') is applied to Abraham (see Genesis 20:7, where God calls Abraham a prophet). The patriarchs carried both sacral and prophetic status before either institution formally existed.
16. The verb *vayyiqra ra'av* ('He called a famine') personifies famine as a servant who comes when summoned. God calls famine the way He calls prophets. The phrase *kol matteh lechem shavar* ('He broke every staff of bread') uses the image of bread as a walking stick — the support structure of life. When God breaks it, people fall. This introduces the Joseph narrative: famine drives the family to Egypt.
17. The verb *nimkar* (Niphal of *makhar*, 'to sell') is passive — Joseph was sold, acted upon, made into property. The psalm holds both truths simultaneously: Joseph was a victim of his brothers' cruelty and an agent of God's providence. Neither truth cancels the other.
18. The phrase *innu vakevel raglo* ('they afflicted his foot with a fetter') describes Joseph's imprisonment. The parallel line — *barzel ba'ah nafsho* ('iron came into his soul') — is one of the most powerful lines in the psalm: the iron did not merely bind his body but penetrated his *nephesh*. The shackle is not just on the ankle but in the soul. The verse compresses years of unjust imprisonment into two lines of visceral poetry.
19. The *ad et bo devaro* ('until the time his word came') refers to the fulfillment of Joseph's prophetic dreams. The verb *tserafathu* ('it refined him, it tested him') uses *tsaraph*, the metallurgical term for smelting — heating metal to remove impurities. God's word was a furnace through which Joseph passed. The imprisonment was not pointless suffering but purification. The timing is precise: Joseph suffered until the appointed moment, and not one day longer.
20. Pharaoh (*melekh*, 'king') released Joseph (*vayyattirehu*, 'he loosed him'). The title *moshel ammim* ('ruler of peoples') emphasizes that the most powerful ruler in the ancient world obeyed the divine timetable. When God's word came to pass, even Pharaoh became an instrument of liberation.
21. Joseph's elevation: *samo adon leveito* ('he appointed him lord of his house') and *moshel be-khol qinyano* ('ruler over all his possessions'). The slave becomes the master. The word *qinyan* ('possessions, property') is the same word used in Psalm 104:24 for God's creatures — Pharaoh's entire estate is placed under Joseph's authority. The reversal from slave to ruler is the psalm's exhibit of divine providence.
22. Joseph's authority extends to imprisoning officials (*le'sor sarav be-nafsho*, 'to bind his princes by his desire') and instructing elders (*u-zeqenav yechakkem*, 'and his elders he makes wise'). The former slave now chains princes and teaches wisdom to those older than him. The reversal is complete — and it all serves the purpose of preserving the covenant family through famine.
23. The entry into Egypt is stated plainly: *Yisra'el came to Mitsrayim*, Jacob became a *gar* ('sojourner') in the *erets Cham* ('land of Ham'). Ham is the ancestor of Egypt in the Table of Nations (Genesis 10:6). The word *gar* ('resident alien, sojourner') echoes the patriarchal condition in verse 12 — still landless, still wandering, still dependent on God's promise.
24. The verb *vayyepher* ('He made fruitful') uses *parah* ('to be fruitful') — the Genesis 1:28 blessing ('be fruitful and multiply') is now being fulfilled in Egypt. God's people multiply until they are stronger (*vayyaatsimehu*) than their *tsarav* ('their adversaries, their oppressors'). The demographic growth that Pharaoh will find threatening (Exodus 1:9-10) is here credited to God's direct action.
25. A theologically challenging verse: *hafakh libbam lisno ammo* ('He turned their heart to hate His people'). God hardened the Egyptians' hearts — the same theme as God hardening Pharaoh in Exodus. The verb *hafakh* ('to turn, to overturn') means God redirected Egyptian sentiment. The purpose clause *lehitnakel ba'avadav* ('to deal craftily with His servants') refers to Pharaoh's schemes in Exodus 1: forced labor, infanticide. The psalm does not flinch from divine sovereignty over even hostile human actions.

- 26.** Moses is avdo ('His servant') and Aaron is asher bachar bo ('whom He chose'). Both are instruments of divine sending (shalach) — Moses did not volunteer; he was sent. The psalm compresses the call narratives of Exodus 3-4 into a single line.
- 27.** Moses and Aaron executed divrei ototav ('the matters of His signs') and mofetim ('wonders, portents'). The plagues are about to be recounted — the psalm will list seven of the ten plagues in a rearranged order. The phrase be-erets Cham ('in the land of Ham') again identifies Egypt by its ancestral name.
- 28.** The plague sequence begins with darkness (the ninth plague in Exodus, here listed first). The verb shalach choshekh ('He sent darkness') echoes verse 26: God sends Moses, God sends darkness — both are agents dispatched on mission. The phrase ve-lo maru et devarav ('and they did not rebel against His word') is ambiguous — the subject could be Moses and Aaron (they obeyed) or the elements themselves (darkness obeyed its instructions). The rearranged plague order serves the psalm's literary structure rather than Exodus's historical sequence.
- 29.** The first plague of Exodus (water to blood) appears as the second plague in the psalm's sequence. The verb hafakh ('He turned, He overturned') is the same verb used in verse 25 for turning hearts — God is a God of reversals. The fish dying (vayyamet et degatam) is a detail preserved from Exodus 7:21.
- 30.** The verb sharats ('to swarm, to teem') is the creation verb from Genesis 1:20 — God's creative power now produces plagues. The tsepharde'im ('frogs') penetrate be-chadrei malkheihem ('in the inner rooms of their kings') — the most private, most protected spaces are invaded. No rank provides immunity.
- 31.** God spoke (amar) — the plague comes by word, echoing creation by word in Genesis 1. The arov ('swarms, mixed swarm') and kinnim ('gnats, lice') represent the fourth and third plagues of Exodus. The phrase be-khol gevulam ('in all their territory') means no border provided protection.
- 32.** The substitution natan gishmehem barad ('He gave their rains as hail') means God replaced the life-giving rain with destruction. The esh lehavot ('fire of flames, flaming fire') accompanies the hail (Exodus 9:24). The seventh plague combines water and fire — elements that should not coexist — in a supernatural display of divine power.
- 33.** The hail's destruction targeted agriculture: vines (gapnam) and fig trees (te'enatam), the staples of Mediterranean cultivation, were struck. The verb yeshabber ('He shattered') means the trees were not merely damaged but broken — the destruction of years of growth in minutes.
- 34.** Again God speaks (amar) and the plague arrives. The arbeh ('locusts') and yeleq ('young locusts, crawling locusts') — two stages of the same insect — arrived ein mispar ('without number'). The eighth plague is described with the same phrase used for sea creatures in Psalm 104:25. God's creative abundance is now directed toward judgment.
- 35.** The locusts consumed kol esev ('every plant') and peri admatam ('the fruit of their soil'). After the hail destroyed the trees, the locusts consumed what remained on the ground. The agricultural economy of Egypt is systematically dismantled, plague by plague.
- 36.** The climactic tenth plague: vayyakh kol bekhorei be-artsam ('He struck every firstborn in their land'). The word bekhorei ('firstborn') represents the family's future, and reshith le-khol onam ('the beginning of all their vigor') echoes Genesis 49:3 where Reuben is called reshith oni ('the beginning of my strength'). The firstborn is the family's hope embodied. God strikes that hope across the entire nation.
- 37.** The exodus: vayyotsi' em be-khesef ve-zahav ('He brought them out with silver and gold') — the plundering of Egypt (Exodus 12:35-36) is framed as God's provision. The phrase ve-ein bishvatav koshel ('and there was none among His tribes who stumbled') means Israel left Egypt in full strength — no one was sick, weak, or unable to march. The entire nation departed in vigor.
- 38.** The reversal is complete: Egypt, which had enslaved Israel, is now glad (samach) to see them leave. The fear has shifted — pachddam ('their dread') now falls upon the Egyptians. The oppressor begs the oppressed to go. The verb naphal ('fell') applied to pachad means the dread collapsed upon them like a physical weight.
- 39.** The wilderness provision begins: God spread (paras) a cloud (anan) as a masakh ('a screen, a covering') — protection from the desert sun. At night, fire (esh) provided light and warmth. The pillar of cloud and fire from Exodus 13:21-22 is here described as God's personal provision of shelter — a tent of cloud by day, a lamp of fire by night.
- 40.** The verb sha'al ('they asked') refers to the people's request for food. God responded with selav ('quail') and lechem shamayim ('bread of heaven, heavenly bread') — the manna. In Psalm 78, the request for food is framed as sinful complaint; here in Psalm 105, the negative element is omitted entirely. The psalm focuses on what God gave, not on how Israel asked.
- 41.** The verb patach tsur ('He opened the rock') pictures God splitting stone to release water. The verb vayyazuvu ('they gushed, they flowed') indicates abundant, rushing water — not a trickle but a torrent. The phrase halekhu batsiyot nahar ('they went through the dry places as a river') means a river appeared where there was no water. The desert became irrigated by divine intervention. The reference is to Exodus 17:1-7 and Numbers 20:1-13.
- 42.** The explanation for everything: ki zakhar et devar qodsho ('for He remembered His holy word'). The verb zakhar returns from verse 8 — God remembers. The covenant with Abraham (et Avraham avdo) is the engine of the exodus, the wilderness provision, and the conquest. Everything flows from one remembered promise.
- 43.** The exodus is summarized as a joyful procession: be-sason ('with joy') and be-rinnah ('with shouts of gladness, with singing'). The people are ammo ('His people') and bechirav ('His chosen ones'). The psalm's version of the exodus has no complaining, no golden calf, no rebellion — only joy and divine faithfulness.

44. The fulfillment: *vayyitten lahem artsot goyim* ('He gave them the lands of the nations'). The promise of verse 11 ('to you I will give the land of Canaan') is now realized. The phrase *amal le'ummim yirashu* ('the labor of peoples they inherited') means Israel received cities, vineyards, and fields they did not build or plant (see Deuteronomy 6:10-11). The inheritance is unearned — it is grace, not achievement.
45. The final verse reveals the psalm's purpose: history is told not merely to inform but to motivate obedience. If God was this faithful in keeping His covenant, Israel must respond by keeping God's statutes. The gift demands a response. Grace precedes law, as always in the Hebrew Bible — God acts first, then calls for obedience.

106

Summary: *The dark mirror of Psalm 105. Where 105 celebrated God's faithfulness with Israel's failures omitted, Psalm 106 catalogs those failures in unsparing detail: rebellion at the Red Sea, craving in the wilderness, jealousy of Moses, the golden calf, refusal to enter the land, joining Baal of Peor, grumbling at Meribah, failure to destroy the Canaanite nations, child sacrifice to idols. The psalm is a national confession that spans the entire history from Egypt to exile. Yet it opens and closes with praise, and its theological center is verse 44-45: despite everything, God heard their cry and remembered His covenant.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 106 is the most comprehensive confession of national sin in the Psalter. It functions as a communal penitential liturgy, likely used in exile or the early post-exilic period. The psalm's genius is its honesty: it does not excuse, minimize, or explain away Israel's failures. They forgot God's works (v. 13), they were jealous of Moses (v. 16), they exchanged their glory for an image of a bull (v. 20), they sacrificed their children to demons (v. 37). The language is brutal. Yet the psalm is framed by praise — it opens with *halelu Yah* and *hodu la-YHVH ki tov* ('praise the LORD, give thanks to the LORD for He is good') and closes with a doxology and *halelu Yah*. The confession exists within worship. Israel's worst moments are told in God's presence, and the telling itself is an act of faith: only a people who believe in God's *chesed* can afford to be this honest about their failures.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's assertion that God 'gave them into the hand of the nations' (v. 41) and 'many times He delivered them, but they were rebellious' (v. 43) frames the exile as the consequence of centuries of accumulated disobedience. This raises the question of whether the generation that experienced exile was being punished for the sins of their ancestors. The psalm's answer seems to be that the pattern of sin was continuous — each generation participated in it. The closing prayer in verse 47 ('Save us, O LORD our God, and gather us from among the nations') locates the psalm in the exile or diaspora, making it a prayer for restoration based not on Israel's merit but on God's character.*

Connections: *The psalm parallels Nehemiah 9:5-37, another great historical confession. The golden calf episode (vv. 19-23) draws on Exodus 32 and Deuteronomy 9. The Baal Peor incident (vv. 28-31) draws on Numbers 25. The child sacrifice reference (vv. 37-38) draws on 2 Kings 16:3 and Jeremiah 7:31. The closing doxology (v. 48) marks the end of Book IV of the Psalter. Verse 1 appears in 1 Chronicles 16:34-36 as part of David's song. The phrase 'He remembered His covenant' (v. 45) echoes Psalm 105:8 and Exodus 2:24.*

¹**Praise the LORD!**

Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²**Who can recount the mighty acts of the LORD
or declare all His praise?**

³**Blessed are those who maintain justice,
who practice righteousness at all times.**

⁴**Remember me, O LORD, with the favor you show your people;
visit me with your salvation,**

⁵that I may see the prosperity of your chosen ones,
that I may rejoice in the gladness of your nation,
that I may boast with your inheritance.

⁶We have sinned along with our ancestors;
we have done wrong; we have acted wickedly.

⁷Our ancestors in Egypt did not grasp your wonders;
they did not remember the abundance of your faithful love,
but rebelled at the sea, at the Sea of Reeds.

⁸Yet He saved them for His name's sake,
to make His mighty power known.

⁹He rebuked the Sea of Reeds and it dried up;
He led them through the depths as through a desert.

¹⁰He saved them from the hand of the foe
and redeemed them from the hand of the enemy.

¹¹The waters covered their adversaries;
not one of them survived.

¹²Then they believed His words;
they sang His praise.

¹³They quickly forgot His works;
they did not wait for His counsel.

¹⁴They craved intensely in the wilderness
and tested God in the wasteland.

¹⁵He gave them what they asked for,
but sent a wasting disease into their souls.

¹⁶They were jealous of Moses in the camp,
of Aaron, the holy one of the LORD.

¹⁷The earth opened and swallowed Dathan
and covered the assembly of Abiram.

¹⁸Fire blazed among their assembly;
a flame consumed the wicked.

¹⁹They made a calf at Horeb
and worshipped a cast image.

²⁰They exchanged their glory
for the image of a bull that eats grass.

²¹They forgot God their savior,
who had done great things in Egypt,

²²wonders in the land of Ham,
terrible deeds at the Sea of Reeds.

²³So He said He would destroy them —
had not Moses, His chosen one,
stood in the breach before Him
to turn His wrath from destroying them.

²⁴They rejected the desirable land;
they did not believe His word.

²⁵They grumbled in their tents;
they did not listen to the voice of the LORD.

²⁶So He raised His hand against them,
swearing to make them fall in the wilderness,

²⁷to cast down their offspring among the nations
and to scatter them across the lands.

²⁸They yoked themselves to Baal of Peor
and ate sacrifices offered to the dead.

²⁹They provoked Him with their deeds,
and a plague broke out among them.

³⁰Then Phinehas stood up and intervened,
and the plague was stopped.

³¹It was credited to him as righteousness
for all generations forever.

³²They angered God at the waters of Meribah,
and it went badly for Moses on their account.

³³For they embittered his spirit,
and he spoke rashly with his lips.

³⁴They did not destroy the peoples
as the LORD had commanded them.

³⁵They mingled with the nations
and learned their practices.

³⁶They served their idols,
which became a snare to them.

³⁷They sacrificed their sons
and their daughters to demons.

³⁸They poured out innocent blood —
the blood of their sons and daughters,

whom they sacrificed to the idols of Canaan —
and the land was polluted with blood.

³⁹They defiled themselves by their deeds
and prostituted themselves by their practices.

⁴⁰Then the anger of the LORD burned against His people,
and He abhorred His own inheritance.

⁴¹He gave them into the hand of the nations,
and those who hated them ruled over them.

⁴²Their enemies oppressed them,
and they were subdued under their hand.

⁴³Many times He rescued them,
but they were rebellious in their purposes
and sank low through their iniquity.

⁴⁴But He looked on their distress
when He heard their cry.

⁴⁵He remembered His covenant for their sake
and relented according to the abundance of His faithful love.

⁴⁶He caused all their captors
to show them compassion.

⁴⁷Save us, O LORD our God,
and gather us from among the nations,
that we may give thanks to your holy name
and boast in your praise.

⁴⁸Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel,
from everlasting to everlasting!
And let all the people say, 'Amen!'
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The psalm opens with the liturgical formula *halelu Yah* and the confession *hodu la-YHVH ki tov ki le-olam chasdo* ('give thanks to the LORD for He is good, for His faithful love is forever'). This exact phrase appears in Psalms 107:1, 118:1, 136:1, and 1 Chronicles 16:34. The confession of God's goodness and eternal *chesed* precedes the confession of Israel's sin — grace comes first, even in penitential liturgy.
2. The rhetorical question *mi yemallel gevurot YHVH* ('who can speak the mighty acts of the LORD?') acknowledges that God's acts exceed human capacity to narrate them. The verb *mallel* ('to speak, to recount') means that even the longest psalm cannot exhaust the subject.
3. The beatitude *ashrei shomerei mishpat* ('blessed are the keepers of justice') sets the standard that the rest of the psalm will show Israel failing to meet. The phrase *oseh tzedakah be-khol et* ('doing righteousness at all times') is the ideal — continuous, unfailing obedience. The psalm will now demonstrate that Israel achieved this at almost no point in their history.
4. The psalmist makes a personal request within the communal psalm: *zokhreini YHVH* ('remember me, LORD'). The verb *paqdeini* ('visit me') uses *paqad*, which means to attend to, to take note of, to act on behalf of. The psalmist asks to be included in the favor (*ratson*) God shows His people and in the salvation (*yeshu'ah*) God provides.

5. Three purpose clauses: *lir'ot* ('to see'), *lismo'ach* ('to rejoice'), *lehithallel* ('to boast'). The psalmist wants to witness God's goodness to Israel, participate in the nation's joy, and share in the glory of being God's *nachalah* ('inheritance, possession'). This personal prayer frames the communal confession that follows.
6. The three sin-verbs (*chata*, *avah*, *rasha*) correspond to the three sin-nouns in Psalm 103:10-12 (*chet*, *avon*, *pesha*). What Psalm 103 celebrated God forgiving, Psalm 106 confesses Israel committing. The two psalms are in theological conversation.
7. The first failure: *lo hiskilu nifle'otekha* ('they did not understand your wonders') — Israel saw the plagues but did not comprehend their meaning. The phrase *lo zakheru et rov chasadekha* ('they did not remember the multitude of your faithful loves') uses the plural of *chesed* — God's faithful love was manifold, and Israel forgot all of it. The rebellion at the *yam suf* ('Sea of Reeds') refers to Exodus 14:11-12, where Israel complained that Moses had brought them to die in the wilderness.
8. The pattern that will repeat throughout the psalm: Israel sins, yet God saves. The motivation is *le-ma'an shemo* ('for His name's sake') — not for Israel's merit but for God's own reputation. The phrase *lehodi'a et gevurato* ('to make known His might') means the salvation was a display of divine power intended for witness beyond Israel.
9. God rebuked (*vayyig'ar*) the sea as He rebuked the waters in Psalm 104:7 — the same authority over chaos. The *tehomot* ('depths, abysses') through which Israel walked became like a *midbar* ('desert, wilderness') — dry ground in the middle of the ocean. The imagery collapses the distinction between land and sea: where God commands, any terrain becomes walkable.
10. The verb *vayyoshi'em* ('He saved them') and *vayyig'alem* ('He redeemed them') pair salvation with redemption. The *go'el* concept from Psalm 103:4 returns — God acts as kinsman-redeemer, buying Israel back from the enemy's grasp.
11. The sea that parted for Israel closed over their enemies: *echad mehem lo notar* ('not one of them remained'). The totality is emphatic — the destruction was complete. The same waters that served as walls for Israel became a grave for Egypt.
12. Brief, conditional faith: *vayyaaminu vidvarav* ('they believed His words') — but only after seeing the miracle. The singing (*yashiru tehillato*) refers to the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15). The psalm will immediately show how short-lived this faith was.
13. The verb *miharu* ('they hurried') modifies the forgetting — they forgot quickly (*shahekhu ma'asav*). The phrase *lo chikku la'atsato* ('they did not wait for His counsel') means impatience drove their rebellion. They wanted answers and provision on their schedule, not God's. Speed of forgetting is the measure of shallow faith.
14. The phrase *vayyit'avvu ta'avah* ('they desired a desire, they craved a craving') is an intensified form — the cognate accusative emphasizes the force of the desire. The reference is to Numbers 11:4-6, the craving for meat. The verb *vayyenassu* ('they tested') means they put God on trial, demanding proof of His ability and willingness to provide.
15. The word *razon* is debated — it could mean physical illness (Numbers 11:33, where a plague struck those who ate the quail) or spiritual emptiness. Both readings are theologically productive. The principle is the same: desire fulfilled outside God's timing and will produces not satisfaction but wasting.
16. The verb *vayyeqan'u* ('they were jealous') introduces the Korah rebellion (Numbers 16). The jealousy targeted Moses' authority and Aaron's priestly status as *qedosh YHVH* ('the holy one of the LORD'). The title *qedosh* designates Aaron as set apart by God — the jealousy is ultimately against God's appointments, not merely human leaders.
17. The earth itself executed judgment: *tiftach erets vattiblah* ('the earth opened and swallowed Dathan'). The reference is Numbers 16:31-33. The verb *bala* ('to swallow') pictures the ground consuming the rebels like a mouth. The *addat Aviram* ('assembly of Abiram') was covered (*vattekhas*) — buried alive. The creation that Psalm 104 celebrated now serves as instrument of judgment.
18. The fire (*esh*) that burned among the rebels (Numbers 16:35) is here presented as divinely directed: *lehavah tellahet resha'im* ('a flame devoured the wicked'). The 250 men who offered unauthorized incense were consumed by fire from the LORD.
19. The golden calf: *ya'asu egel be-Chorev* ('they made a calf at Horeb'). The mountain of revelation became the mountain of idolatry. The *massekah* ('cast image, molten idol') is the work of human hands substituted for the invisible God. The verb *vayyishtachavu* ('they bowed down') — the posture of worship directed toward a metal animal.
20. The word *tavnit* ('form, pattern, image') means they did not merely make an idol but created a representation — they reduced the unrepresentable God to a visible form. The specification *okhel esev* ('eating grass') is the psalm's contemptuous detail: the 'god' they made was herbivorous.
21. The verb *shakhekhu* ('they forgot') echoes verse 13 — forgetting is Israel's habitual sin. The God they forgot is *El moshi'am* ('God their savior, the God who delivers them'). The irony is extreme: they forgot the One who had just done *gedolot* ('great things') in Egypt. The proximity between salvation and forgetting measures the shallowness of Israel's memory.
22. The *nifla'ot* ('wonders') in Egypt and *nora'ot* ('terrible things, awesome acts') at the Sea of Reeds are the very events the psalm described in verses 7-11. The repetition emphasizes the magnitude of what Israel forgot.
23. The image of standing in the breach (*perets*) became a standard metaphor for intercessory prayer. Ezekiel 22:30 uses the same image: God sought someone to stand in the gap, and found no one. Moses is the paradigmatic intercessor — the one person whose prayer could halt divine judgment.

24. The verb *vayyim'asu* ('they rejected, they despised') is applied to *erets chemdah* ('the desirable land, the land of delight'). The reference is Numbers 13-14: the spies returned with a report of giants, and the people refused to enter. The phrase *lo he'eminu lidvaro* ('they did not believe His word') identifies the root cause: unbelief. God had promised the land; they did not believe the promise. The rejection of the land is ultimately a rejection of God's word.
25. The verb *vayyeragenu* ('they grumbled, they murmured') uses *ragan*, a word for discontented whispering — the kind of complaint that spreads through a camp tent by tent. The phrase *be-oholeihem* ('in their tents') locates the grumbling in private spaces — it was not public protest but corrosive private complaint. They would not listen (*lo shame'u*) to God's voice.
26. The phrase *vayyissa yado* ('He raised His hand') is an oath gesture — God swore with an uplifted hand. The content of the oath: *lehappil otam bamidbar* ('to make them fall in the wilderness'). This is the judgment of Numbers 14:29-35: the exodus generation would die in the wilderness and never enter the land.
27. The judgment extends beyond the wilderness generation: *u-lehappil zar'am baggoyim* ('to make their seed fall among the nations'). The verb *lezarotam* ('to scatter them') points to the exile — the diaspora is foreshadowed here as a consequence of the same pattern of unbelief that characterized the wilderness generation. The psalm reads exile as the long-delayed consequence of Kadesh Barnea.
28. The verb *vayyitsamdu* ('they yoked themselves, they attached themselves') uses *tsamad*, a word for binding or yoking — Israel bound itself to a foreign deity the way an ox is yoked to a plow. *Ba'al Pe'or* was a Moabite deity associated with the incident of Numbers 25. The phrase *zivchei metim* ('sacrifices of the dead') means either sacrifices offered to dead gods (idols) or sacrifices associated with death cults. Either way, Israel ate what was offered to that which is not God.
29. The verb *vayyakh'isu* ('they provoked, they angered') uses *ka'as*, the word for deep vexation. The *ma'alaleihem* ('their deeds, their practices') refers to the sexual and cultic participation with Moab. The *maggefah* ('plague, striking') that broke out killed 24,000 (Numbers 25:9).
30. Phinehas (Pinchas) is the second intercessor after Moses. The verb *vayefalleh* ('he intervened, he judged, he interceded') can mean judicial execution or intercessory prayer — in Numbers 25:7-8, Phinehas drove a spear through the Israelite man and the Midianite woman. The plague stopped (*vatte'atsar*) because of his decisive action. Like Moses in verse 23, one person's intervention saved the nation.
31. The phrase *vattechasev lo litsedaqah* ('it was counted to him as righteousness') uses the same language as Genesis 15:6 (Abraham 'believed the LORD, and He credited it to him as righteousness'). Phinehas' act of zeal was evaluated by God as *tsedaqah* — righteous action. The scope is *le-dor va-dor ad olam* ('to generation and generation forever'). Numbers 25:12-13 confirms this: God gave Phinehas a covenant of perpetual priesthood.
32. The *mei Merivah* ('waters of Meribah/Strife') refers to Numbers 20:1-13. The people's quarreling (*riv*) at Meribah provoked God, but the consequence fell on Moses: *vayyera le-Mosheh ba'avuram* ('it went badly for Moses because of them'). Moses struck the rock instead of speaking to it and was barred from entering the land. The people's sin caused Moses' punishment — collective sin has individual casualties.
33. The verb *himru* ('they embittered, they rebelled against') has God's spirit as its object in some readings, or Moses' spirit in others. The result: *vayvatte bishfatav* ('he spoke rashly with his lips'). Moses, the paradigmatic intercessor, was provoked into rash speech. The phrase acknowledges that even the greatest leader can be broken by sustained rebellion. Numbers 20:10 ('Listen, you rebels!') is the rash speech in view.
34. The scene shifts to the conquest and settlement period. Israel failed to carry out the *herem* ('devoted destruction') commanded in Deuteronomy 7:1-2. The verb *lo hishmidu* ('they did not destroy') is a direct indictment of disobedience.
35. The verb *vayyit'arevu* ('they mingled, they mixed') indicates social and cultural integration. The result: *vayyilmedu ma'aseihem* ('they learned their practices'). The knowledge was not neutral — it was adoption. Israel absorbed the religious practices of the surrounding nations. What Deuteronomy warned against (7:3-4) happened precisely as predicted.
36. The *atsabbeihem* ('their idols') is from the root *atsav* ('to shape, to form, to grieve') — idols are both shaped things and sources of grief. The metaphor *moqesh* ('a snare, a trap') means the idols that seemed harmless became instruments of entrapment. Israel could not free itself once caught.
37. The darkest verse in the psalm: *vayyizbechu et beneihem ve-et benoteihem* ('they sacrificed their sons and their daughters'). The recipients are *lashedim* ('to demons') — the word *shed* appears only here and in Deuteronomy 32:17 in the Hebrew Bible. Child sacrifice is attested in 2 Kings 16:3, 17:17, and 21:6. The psalm presents it as the logical terminus of idolatry: begin by serving idols, end by killing your children for them.
38. The phrase *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') is the legal term for the blood of those who have committed no crime. The children are innocent; their blood pollutes the land. The verb *vattechenaf* ('it was polluted, it was defiled') uses *chanef*, meaning the land itself became profane, contaminated. In Leviticus 18:25, the land vomits out inhabitants who defile it. The psalm traces the path from idolatry to child sacrifice to land pollution to exile — a chain of escalating defilement.
39. The verb *vayyitme'u* ('they defiled themselves') uses *tame* ('unclean, impure') — ritual and moral defilement. The verb *vayyiznu* ('they prostituted themselves') uses *zanah* ('to commit sexual immorality, to be unfaithful'). In prophetic literature, idolatry is consistently described as sexual infidelity — Israel is God's wife, and worship of other gods is adultery. The psalm uses the same metaphor.
40. The phrase *vayyichar af YHVH* ('the anger of the LORD burned') is the standard expression for divine wrath. The word *vayyeta'ev* ('He abhorred, He found detestable') is extreme — God found His own *nachalatoh* ('His inheritance, His possession') repulsive. The people God chose, the people God redeemed, the people God loved became detestable to Him through their sin. This is the low point of the psalm.

41. The verb *vayyittenem* ('He gave them') means God actively handed Israel over to foreign power. This is the theology of the book of Judges compressed: Israel's subjection to foreign nations is not random political misfortune but divine judgment. The phrase *vayyimshelu vahem son'eihem* ('their enemies ruled over them') describes the exile as God's deliberate act.
42. The verb *vayyilchatsum* ('they oppressed them, they pressed them') uses *lachats*, the same word used for Egypt's oppression of Israel in Exodus 3:9. The cycle is tragic: the people God freed from oppression now experience oppression again — this time as divine judgment, not Pharaoh's cruelty.
43. The phrase *pe'amim rabbot yatsilem* ('many times He delivered them') summarizes the entire Judges cycle: sin, oppression, crying out, deliverance — repeated endlessly. The conjunction *ve-hemmah yamru va'atsatam* ('but they rebelled in their plans') shows the pattern was unbreakable from the human side. The verb *vayyamokku* ('they sank low, they were brought low') uses *makakh*, a word for decay and decline. Each cycle of rebellion brought Israel lower.
44. The great 'but': *vayyar batsar lahem* ('He saw their distress'). Despite everything — the golden calf, the grumbling, the idolatry, the child sacrifice — when Israel cried out, God saw and heard. The verb *shom'o et rinnatam* ('when He heard their cry') echoes Exodus 2:24 — the same God who heard the cry in Egypt hears the cry in exile. God's responsiveness outlasts Israel's rebellion.
45. The verb *nacham* applied to God is theologically significant: it does not mean God made a mistake and corrected it, but that God's response to Israel shifted from judgment to mercy. The trigger was not Israel's repentance but God's own covenant-faithfulness. *chesed* precedes and produces repentance; it does not wait for it.
46. God arranged compassion (*rachamim*) for Israel even in captivity: *vayyitten otam le-rachamim lifnei kol shoveihem* ('He gave them to compassion before all who captured them'). The word *shoveihem* ('their captors') indicates exile is in view. Even foreign captors were moved to pity — not by Israel's appeal but by God's intervention.
47. The psalm turns to direct petition: *hoshi'enu YHVH Eloheinu* ('save us, LORD our God'). The verb *qabbe-tsenu min haggoyim* ('gather us from among the nations') is the prayer of the diaspora — God's people are scattered and need to be regathered. The purpose of the gathering is worship: *lehodot le-shem qodshekha* ('to give thanks to your holy name'). Israel wants to be saved not merely for comfort but for praise. This verse appears in 1 Chronicles 16:35.
48. This verse serves a dual function: it closes Psalm 106 and marks the end of Book IV (Psalms 90-106). The doxology formula appears in 1 Chronicles 16:36. The transition from confession to doxology enacts the psalm's theology: sin is real, but God's blessedness is the final word.

107

Summary: *The opening psalm of Book V, Psalm 107 is a hymn of thanksgiving built around four scenes of distress and deliverance: wanderers lost in the desert (vv. 4-9), prisoners in darkness (vv. 10-16), the sick near death (vv. 17-22), and sailors in a storm (vv. 23-32). Each scene follows the same four-part pattern: distress, crying out to God, deliverance, and a call to give thanks. A wisdom epilogue (vv. 33-43) reflects on God's sovereign reversal of human fortunes. The refrain 'Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love' appears four times, once for each scene.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 107 is one of the most structurally elegant poems in the Psalter. The fourfold repetition of distress-cry-rescue-thanksgiving creates a liturgical rhythm that is almost musical. Each section has two refrains: 'They cried out to the LORD in their trouble, and He delivered them from their distress' and 'Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love and His wonders for the children of humanity.' The repetition is not monotonous but cumulative — each scene adds to the evidence that God's *chesed* operates everywhere: in deserts, in prisons, in sickbeds, on the open sea. The psalm argues inductively: here is one case, here is another, here is another, here is another — therefore God's faithful love endures forever. The wisdom epilogue then generalizes: God turns rivers into deserts and deserts into springs, brings down the proud and lifts up the needy. The psalm's audience is universal — these are not uniquely Israelite experiences but human ones.*

Translation Friction: *The placement as the opening psalm of Book V is significant. Book IV ended with a prayer for gathering from the nations (106:47); Book V opens with a description of the gathered ones giving thanks (107:1-3). Whether this represents actual post-exilic composition or careful editorial arrangement is debated. The four scenes may represent literal experiences (travelers, prisoners, sick people, sailors) or may function metaphorically for Israel's exile and return. The sick who are afflicted 'because of their transgression' (v. 17) explicitly links suffering to sin, while the other three scenes do not — a tension the psalm leaves unresolved.*

Connections: The opening formula hodu la-YHVH ki tov ki le-olam chasdo ('give thanks to the LORD for He is good, for His faithful love endures forever') connects to Psalms 106:1, 118:1, and 136:1. The gathering from east, west, north, and south (v. 3) echoes Isaiah 43:5-6. The storm scene (vv. 23-30) has parallels to Jonah 1. The wisdom epilogue (vv. 33-43) echoes Hannah's Song (1 Samuel 2:1-10) and the Magnificat (Luke 1:46-55) in its theme of divine reversal. Jesus' stilling of the storm (Mark 4:35-41) echoes verse 29: 'He stilled the storm to a whisper.'

- ¹Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good,
for His faithful love endures forever.
- ²Let the redeemed of the LORD say so,
those He redeemed from the hand of the foe,
- ³and gathered from the lands,
from east and from west,
from north and from the sea.
- ⁴They wandered in the wilderness, on a desert road;
they found no city to settle in.
- ⁵Hungry and thirsty,
their life was ebbing away.
- ⁶Then they cried out to the LORD in their trouble,
and He delivered them from their distress.
- ⁷He led them by a straight road
to reach a city where they could settle.
- ⁸Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love
and His wonders for the children of humanity.
- ⁹For He satisfies the longing soul
and fills the hungry soul with good things.
- ¹⁰Those who sat in darkness and deep shadow,
prisoners in affliction and chains,
- ¹¹because they rebelled against the words of God
and despised the counsel of the Most High.
- ¹²He humbled their hearts through hard labor;
they stumbled, with no one to help.
- ¹³Then they cried out to the LORD in their trouble,
and He saved them from their distress.
- ¹⁴He brought them out of darkness and deep shadow
and tore apart their chains.
- ¹⁵Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love
and His wonders for the children of humanity.

¹⁶For He shattered gates of bronze
and cut through bars of iron.

¹⁷Fools — because of their rebellious ways
and because of their iniquities — suffered affliction.

¹⁸They loathed all food
and drew near to the gates of death.

¹⁹Then they cried out to the LORD in their trouble,
and He saved them from their distress.

²⁰He sent His word and healed them
and rescued them from the pit.

²¹Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love
and His wonders for the children of humanity.

²²Let them offer sacrifices of thanksgiving
and recount His deeds with shouts of joy.

²³Those who went down to the sea in ships,
doing business on the great waters,

²⁴They saw the works of the LORD,
His wonders in the deep.

²⁵He spoke and raised a stormy wind
that lifted the waves high.

²⁶They rose to the heavens, they plunged to the depths;
their courage melted in their peril.

²⁷They staggered and swayed like drunkards,
and all their skill was swallowed up.

²⁸Then they cried out to the LORD in their trouble,
and He brought them out of their distress.

²⁹He stilled the storm to a whisper,
and the waves were hushed.

³⁰They were glad when the waters grew calm,
and He guided them to their desired harbor.

³¹Let them give thanks to the LORD for His faithful love
and His wonders for the children of humanity.

³²Let them exalt Him in the assembly of the people
and praise Him in the council of the elders.

³³He turns rivers into desert
and springs of water into thirsty ground,

^{34a}a fruitful land into a salt waste,
because of the wickedness of its inhabitants.

³⁵He turns desert into pools of water
and parched land into springs.

³⁶He settles the hungry there,
and they establish a city to dwell in.

³⁷They sow fields and plant vineyards
that yield a fruitful harvest.

³⁸He blesses them and they multiply greatly,
and He does not let their livestock diminish.

³⁹When they are diminished and brought low
through oppression, trouble, and sorrow,

⁴⁰He pours contempt on nobles
and makes them wander in trackless waste.

⁴¹But He lifts the needy out of affliction
and makes their families like flocks.

⁴²The upright see it and rejoice,
and all wickedness shuts its mouth.

⁴³Whoever is wise, let him observe these things
and consider the faithful love of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The identical opening to Psalm 106:1. The phrase *ki le-olam chasdo* ('for His faithful love is forever') is the thesis the psalm will prove four times over. Each of the four scenes will demonstrate that *chesed* is not a theological abstraction but an operational reality in specific human crises.
2. The *ge'ulei YHVH* ('the redeemed of the LORD') are those who have experienced God's *go'el* action — His kinsman-redeemer rescue. The verb *ge'alam* ('He redeemed them') and the noun *ge'ulei* share the same root. The redeemed are the ones qualified to give thanks: they have firsthand testimony.
3. The ingathering from four directions: *mi-mizrach* ('from the east'), *u-mi-ma'arav* ('from the west'), *mi-tsafon* ('from the north'), *u-mi-yam* ('from the sea'). The last term is literally 'from the sea' (*yam*), which in Hebrew directional language means 'south' (the direction of the Red Sea from Israel). The four compass points indicate universal regathering — wherever God's people were scattered, He brought them back.
4. Scene one begins: lost travelers. The verb *ta'u* ('they wandered, they strayed') indicates purposeless, directionless movement. The *bamidbar bishimon derekh* ('in the wilderness, on a wasteland path') places them in terrain without landmarks. The phrase *ir moshav lo matsa'u* ('a city of habitation they did not find') means they had no destination, no shelter, no community. They were utterly lost.
5. The *re'evim gam tseme'im* ('hungry and also thirsty') describes total deprivation. The phrase *nafsham bahem tit'attaf* ('their soul within them was fainting') uses the verb *ataf* ('to be feeble, to faint, to be covered over'). The *nephesh* — the life-force — was failing. They were dying.
6. The first occurrence of the cry-and-rescue refrain: *vayyits'aqu el YHVH batsar lahem* ('they cried to the LORD in their distress'). The verb *tsa'aq* ('to cry out') is the exodus verb — the same cry Israel raised in Egypt (Exodus 2:23). The response: *mi-metsuqoteihem yatsilem* ('from their straits He rescued them'). The *metsuqah* ('strait, distress, tight place') is a narrow passage from which only God can extract them.
7. God's response to the lost: *vayyaddrikhem be-derekh yesharah* ('He led them by a straight path'). The verb *darak* in the Hiphil means to guide someone's feet onto a path. The *derekh yesharah* ('straight road') contrasts with the aimless wandering of verse 4. The destination: *ir moshav* ('a city of habitation') — the very thing they could not find, God provided.

8. The first occurrence of the thanksgiving refrain: yodu la-YHWH chasdo ve-nifle'otav livnei adam. The beneficiaries are not 'the children of Israel' but livnei adam ('the children of humanity, human beings'). The psalm's scope is universal — God's chesed operates for all people, not only the covenant nation.
9. God satisfies (hisbia) the nephesh shoqeqah ('the parched soul, the longing soul') and fills (mille) the nephesh re'evah ('the hungry soul') with tov ('good, goodness'). The scene closes with the hunger and thirst of verse 5 fully resolved. The satisfied soul is the evidence of chesed.
10. Scene two: prisoners. The yoshevei choshekh ve-tsalmavet ('those sitting in darkness and death-shadow') describes people confined in dungeons where no light reaches. The word tsalmavet is a compound of tsel ('shadow') and mavet ('death') — the shadow cast by death itself. They are asirei oni u-varzel ('prisoners of affliction and iron'). The iron is literal; the affliction is both physical and spiritual.
11. The cause of imprisonment: ki himru imrei El ('they rebelled against the words of God'). The verb marah ('to rebel, to be bitter') indicates defiance. The atsut Elyon ('counsel of the Most High') was scorned (na'atsu, from na'ats, 'to despise, to scorn'). This is the one scene where sin is explicitly named as the cause of distress.
12. The verb vayyakhna ('He humbled') uses kana ('to bow down, to subdue') — God brought their hearts low through suffering. The amal ('labor, toil, hardship') broke them. The phrase kashelu ve-ein ozer ('they stumbled and there was no helper') describes the moment of total helplessness that precedes the cry for help.
13. The second occurrence of the cry-refrain. The verb changes slightly from yatsilem ('He delivered,' v. 6) to yoshi'em ('He saved') — the language intensifies with each scene.
14. God's action reverses the imprisonment of verse 10: yotsi'em me-choshekh ve-tsalmavet ('He brought them out of darkness and death-shadow') and u-moseroteihem yenattiq ('their bonds He tore apart'). The verb nataq ('to tear, to pull apart, to break') means the chains were not unlocked but ripped — divine force overcomes iron.
15. The thanksgiving refrain, second occurrence. Identical wording to verse 8. The repetition builds the psalm's case: chesed is not episodic but patterned.
16. The specifics of the rescue: shibbar daltot nechoshet ('He shattered doors of bronze') and u-verichei varzel gidde'a ('bars of iron He cut through'). The verbs shibbar ('to shatter') and gidde'a ('to cut, to hew') describe violent destruction of the strongest materials available for imprisonment. No dungeon can hold those God decides to free.
17. Scene three: the sick. The evilim ('fools') are not intellectually deficient but morally perverse — in wisdom literature, the fool rejects God's instruction. The cause is explicit: mi-derekh pish'am ('because of their rebellious way') and me-avonoteihem ('because of their iniquities'). The suffering (yit'annu, 'they were afflicted') is presented as a consequence of moral folly.
18. The physical symptom: kol okhel teta'ev nafsham ('every food their soul abhorred') — total loss of appetite, the body refusing sustenance. The phrase vayyaggi'u ad sha'arei mavet ('they reached the gates of death') means they arrived at death's threshold. The sha'arei mavet ('gates of death') is a spatial metaphor — death is a walled city, and the sick person stands at its entrance.
19. Third occurrence of the cry-refrain. The same words, the same pattern — the repetition is the point. The pattern does not change because God does not change.
20. God heals by sending His word: yishlach devaro ve-yirpa'em ('He sent His word and healed them'). The word (davar) is the agent of healing — God does not need to be physically present; His word carries His power. The verb vimallate ('He rescued') uses malat ('to escape, to deliver') from shechitotam ('their destructions, their pits'). The word is both physician and rescuer.
21. Third occurrence of the thanksgiving refrain. The evidence accumulates: lost travelers, prisoners, the dying — all rescued by the same chesed.
22. The healed are called to bring zivchei todah ('sacrifices of thanksgiving') — the todah offering of Leviticus 7:12-15, which accompanies a testimony of deliverance. The verb yesapperu ('let them recount') means the sacrifice is paired with public testimony. Worship is both ritual and narrative: you bring an offering and tell the story.
23. Scene four: sailors. The yordei hayyam ba-oniyyot ('those who go down to the sea in ships') are merchants and traders. The phrase oseï melakhah be-mayim rabbim ('doing work on great waters') describes commercial seafaring. The sea in Hebrew thought is the domain of chaos — to travel on it is to enter the realm of the tehom.
24. Sailors witness God's power firsthand: hemmah ra'u ma'asei YHWH ('they saw the works of the LORD'). The bimtsulah ('in the deep, in the abyss') locates the wonders in the most dangerous environment — the deep sea where human power means nothing.
25. God commands the storm: vayyomer vayya'amed ruach se'arah ('He spoke and He made a storm wind stand'). The verb amad ('to stand') in the Hiphil means God stationed the wind like a soldier at a post. The waves (gallav) rose at God's command. The storm is not random weather but divine action.
26. The violent motion of the ship: ya'alu shamayim ('they go up to the heavens') and yerdu tehomot ('they go down to the depths'). The extremes — sky and abyss — describe the terrifying pitch of a ship in heavy seas. The phrase nafsham bera'ah titmogag ('their soul in calamity melts') uses mogag ('to melt, to dissolve') — their courage liquefied.

- 27.** The sailors yachogu ve-yanuu kashshikkor ('they stagger and sway like a drunkard') — seasoned seamen reduced to helplessness. The phrase ve-khol chokmatam titballa ('and all their wisdom is swallowed up') means their professional expertise is consumed by the chaos. The sea has devoured their competence. This is the moment of complete human inadequacy.
- 28.** Fourth and final occurrence of the cry-refrain. The verb shifts again: yotsi'em ('He brought them out') — the exodus verb. Every rescue in the psalm recapitulates the original exodus.
- 29.** The word demamah is one of the great theological words of the Hebrew Bible. It is the sound of God's presence when all competing noise ceases. The storm-to-stillness movement is not merely meteorological but spiritual: chaos yields to divine peace.
- 30.** Joy returns: vayyismechu ki yishttoqu ('they rejoiced because they were quiet'). The verb shaqat means the waters settled. God then guided them (vayyanchem) to mechoz cheftsam ('the harbor of their desire') — the destination they were trying to reach. The rescue is not merely survival but arrival. God does not just save from death; He brings to destination.
- 31.** Fourth and final occurrence of the thanksgiving refrain. The case is complete: four scenes, four cries, four rescues, four calls to thank. The evidence for chesed is overwhelming.
- 32.** The sailors' thanksgiving is to be public: bi-qehal am ('in the assembly of the people') and be-moshav zeqenim ('in the seat of the elders'). The testimony is not private but communal — it is given in the formal gathering where decisions are made and justice is administered. The elders hear the sailor's story and recognize God's hand.
- 33.** The wisdom epilogue begins. God reverses landscapes: neharot le-midbar ('rivers to wilderness') and motsa'ei mayim le-tsimma'on ('springs of water to drought'). The God who provided water from rocks (Psalm 105:41) can also remove water from rivers. Divine sovereignty operates in both directions.
- 34.** Fertile land becomes melechah ('salt flats, barren salt ground') — the landscape of Sodom after its destruction. The cause: me-ra'at yoshvei vah ('because of the wickedness of those dwelling in it'). The land's condition reflects its inhabitants' character. Ecological devastation is presented as moral consequence.
- 35.** The reversal in the other direction: midbar la-agam mayim ('desert to a pool of water') and erets tsiyyah le-motsa'ei mayim ('dry land to springs of water'). God transforms in both directions — from fertility to wasteland (vv. 33-34) and from wasteland to fertility (v. 35). The power is the same; the direction depends on God's purpose.
- 36.** God settles (vayyoshev) the hungry (re'evim) in the transformed land. They build an ir moshav ('a city of habitation') — the same phrase from verse 4 and verse 7. What the lost wanderers could not find, God creates anew. The hungry of this verse mirror the hungry of verse 5, but now they have a home.
- 37.** Agriculture returns: fields (sador) are sown, vineyards (keramim) are planted, and the yield is peri tevu'ah ('fruit of produce, a productive harvest'). The cycle of fertility is restored by divine initiative.
- 38.** The blessing echoes Genesis 1:28: vayvarekem vayyirbu me'od ('He blessed them and they multiplied greatly'). Livestock (behemtam) are also protected: lo yam'it ('He does not diminish them'). Fertility extends to both human and animal populations.
- 39.** The cycle turns again: vayyim'atu vayyashochu ('they are diminished and brought low'). The causes are otser ('oppression, restraint'), ra'ah ('calamity, evil'), and yagon ('sorrow, grief'). The prosperity of verses 36-38 does not last — the human condition includes reversal and loss.
- 40.** God's sovereignty extends to the powerful: shofekh buz al nedivim ('He pours contempt on nobles'). The nedivim ('nobles, princes, generous ones') are humiliated. The phrase vayyat'em be-tohu lo darekh ('He makes them wander in chaos without a path') uses tohu — the primordial chaos of Genesis 1:2. The powerful are cast into the formless void. This echoes Job 12:21-24.
- 41.** The reversal: vaysagev evyon me-oni ('He sets the needy on high from affliction'). The verb sagav means to place in an inaccessibly high position — the needy are elevated beyond the reach of their oppressors. The families multiply katstsosn ('like flocks') — the imagery of pastoral abundance. The God who humbles nobles elevates the destitute.
- 42.** The moral response: the yesharim ('upright ones') see God's reversals and rejoice. The avlah ('wickedness, injustice') personified as shutting its mouth (qafetsah piha, 'it closes its mouth') means wickedness is silenced — it has no argument, no defense, no rebuttal. When God acts, evil has nothing to say.
- 43.** The closing verse is identical in tone to Hosea 14:10 ('Who is wise? Let him understand these things'). Both passages end a complex theological text with a wisdom invitation: the material has been presented; now the reader must discern its meaning. The psalm does not force its conclusion — it invites comprehension.

108

Summary: *A composite psalm attributed to David, formed by combining Psalm 57:8-12 (vv. 1-6) and Psalm 60:7-14 (vv. 7-14). The first half is a hymn of praise — David's heart is steadfast, he will awaken the dawn with music, he will praise God among the nations. The second half is a prayer for military victory — God has spoken from His sanctuary, allotting the territories of Israel, and David asks God to march with his armies against Edom. The combination creates a movement from worship to warfare, from praise to petition.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 108 is the clearest example of editorial composition in the Psalter — it is assembled from two pre-existing psalms and presented as a new unity. This is not plagiarism but liturgical adaptation: the editor selected a praise section and a military prayer and joined them for a specific occasion. The seam is visible but the logic is sound: praise prepares for petition. A heart that is steadfast in worship (v. 1) is the heart that can ask God for military help (v. 12). The psalm demonstrates that Israel's worship life was not static — existing texts were rearranged, recombined, and reapplied to new situations.*

Translation Friction: *The composite nature raises questions about authorship: if le-David ('of David') heads the psalm but the material comes from two other Davidic psalms, what does the superscription mean? The answer is likely that the attribution claims Davidic origin for the source material, and the editor combined them under that same attribution. The military language in the second half — God 'casting His sandal' on Edom, Moab as a 'washbasin' — uses imagery that can seem crude, but these are ancient expressions of sovereign territorial claim, drawn from legal and ritual conventions of the ancient Near East.*

Connections: *Verses 2-6 parallel Psalm 57:8-12 exactly. Verses 7-14 parallel Psalm 60:7-14. The territorial catalog in verses 8-10 echoes 2 Samuel 8, where David conquered the territories named. The question in verse 11 ('Who will bring me to the fortified city?') mirrors the situation in 2 Samuel 5:6-10 (the conquest of Jerusalem) or the Edomite campaigns. The cry 'Give us help against the adversary' (v. 13) anticipates every subsequent Israelite prayer for military deliverance.*

¹A song. A psalm of David.

²My heart is steadfast, O God;
I will sing and make music — even my glory will.

³Awake, harp and lyre!
I will awaken the dawn.

⁴I will give thanks to you among the peoples, O LORD;
I will make music to you among the nations.

⁵For your faithful love is higher than the heavens,
and your faithfulness reaches to the skies.

⁶Be exalted above the heavens, O God,
and let your glory be over all the earth.

⁷That your beloved ones may be rescued,
save with your right hand and answer me.

⁸God has spoken in His holiness:
'I will exult! I will divide Shechem
and measure out the Valley of Succoth.

⁹Gilead is mine, Manasseh is mine;
Ephraim is my helmet,
Judah is my scepter.

¹⁰Moab is my washbasin;
on Edom I hurl my sandal;
over Philistia I shout in triumph.'

¹¹Who will bring me to the fortified city?
Who will lead me to Edom?

¹²Have you not rejected us, O God?
You do not march out with our armies, O God.

¹³Give us help against the foe,
for human help is worthless.

¹⁴With God we will act valiantly;
He will trample our adversaries.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double designation *shir mizmor* ('a song, a psalm') combines the general term for a song with the specific term for a psalm accompanied by instruments. The attribution *le-David* marks the composition as Davidic in origin.
2. The word *nakhon* ('firm, established, ready') describes a heart that has made its decision — there is no ambivalence. The steadfast heart is the prerequisite for everything that follows: praise, petition, and warfare. A divided heart cannot pray with authority.
3. David commands his instruments: *urah hannevel ve-khinnor* ('awake, harp and lyre!'). The instruments are personified as sleeping and summoned to consciousness. Then the magnificent claim: *a'irah shachar* ('I will awaken the dawn'). The psalmist's praise will begin before sunrise — he will not wait for the dawn to wake him; his music will wake the dawn. Worship precedes and summons the new day.
4. The audience expands beyond Israel: *ba-ammim* ('among the peoples') and *bale'ummim* ('among the nations'). David's praise is not private or parochial — it is performed before the watching world. The nations are the intended audience of Israel's worship.
5. The reason for universal praise: *chesed* and *emet* (here *amittekha*, 'your faithfulness/truth') are measured cosmically. God's *chesed* is *gadol me-al shamayim* ('great above the heavens') and His *emunah* reaches *ad shechakim* ('to the clouds, to the skies'). The vertical measurement echoes Psalm 103:11 — *chesed* spans the distance between earth and heaven, and here it exceeds even that.
6. The prayer *rumah al shamayim Elohim* ('be exalted above the heavens, O God') asks God to display His transcendence. The parallel — *ve-al kol ha-arets kevodekha* ('and over all the earth your glory') — asks for that transcendence to be visible everywhere. The praise section concludes by calling for God's *kavod* to fill the whole earth, echoing Isaiah 6:3.
7. The pivot from praise to petition: *le-ma'an yechaletssun yedidekha* ('so that your beloved ones may be delivered'). The *yedidim* ('beloved ones, dear ones') are Israel — God's cherished people. The plea *hoshi'ah yeminekha* ('save with your right hand') invokes God's power (the right hand is the hand of strength). The personal pronoun *va'aneni* ('and answer me') makes the petition specific to the king.
8. God speaks from His sanctuary (*be-qodsho*, 'in His holiness/sanctuary'). The divine speech is an oracle of territorial allotment: *achallequah Shechem* ('I will portion out Shechem') and *emeq Sukkot amadded* ('the Valley of Succoth I will measure out'). These are west-bank (Shechem) and east-bank (Succoth) territories. God divides the land as a sovereign distributing property.
9. God's claim continues: Gilead (Transjordan), Manasseh (the northern territory) — both belong to God. Ephraim is *ma'oz roshi* ('the protection of my head, my helmet') — the northern kingdom is God's military headgear. Judah is *mechoqeqi* ('my lawgiver, my scepter') — the southern kingdom is God's instrument of governance. The territories are reimagined as God's personal equipment: helmet and scepter, war and law.
10. The neighboring nations receive demeaning assignments: Moab is *sir rachatsi* ('my washbasin') — a vessel for foot-washing, the lowliest domestic object. On Edom, God hurls His *na'ali* ('my sandal') — either a gesture of ownership (Ruth 4:7, where a sandal transfers property) or contempt (throwing a shoe at someone). Over Philistia, God shouts in triumph (*etro'a'a*). The oracle reduces Israel's enemies to God's household items and conquest trophies.
11. David's question: *mi yovileni ir mivtsar* ('who will bring me to the fortified city?'). The *ir mivtsar* is likely Bozrah or Sela (Petra), the capital strongholds of Edom. The question implies military difficulty — Edom's cities are naturally fortified in rock. The second question — *mi nachani ad*

Edom ('who will lead me to Edom?') — is rhetorical: only God can accomplish this conquest.

12. The question turns accusatory: halo Elohim zenachtanu ('have you not rejected us, O God?'). The verb zanach ('to reject, to spurn, to cast off') implies God has withdrawn His support. The phrase ve-lo tetse Elohim be-tziv'oteinu ('and you do not go out with our armies, O God') means God is no longer marching at the head of Israel's troops. The theological crisis is military defeat interpreted as divine abandonment.
13. The petition: havah lanu ezrat mitsar ('give us help against the adversary'). The confession that follows is stark: ve-shav teshu'at adam ('and empty/worthless is the salvation of humanity'). The word shav means 'vain, empty, worthless.' Human military capability is nothing without God. This is not false modesty but hard-won theological realism: Israel's armies fail when God does not march with them.
14. The phrase na'aseh chayil ('we will do valiantly') is not a boast in human strength but a declaration of partnership with God. The 'we' is Israel; the enabling force is God. The psalm refuses both presumption (we can do it alone) and passivity (we can do nothing). With God, Israel acts.

109

Summary: *The most intense imprecatory psalm in the Psalter. David, attacked by enemies who return evil for good and hatred for love, calls down a devastating series of curses upon his chief accuser: let his days be few, let another take his office, let his children be orphans, let his descendants be cut off, let his name be blotted out. The central curse section (vv. 6-20) is among the most disturbing passages in the Psalms. The psalm frames these curses as a response to unprovoked malice and ends with a plea for God's salvation and a vow of praise.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 109 is the hardest psalm for modern readers to absorb. The curses are specific, personal, and generational — they target not just the enemy but his wife, his children, his memory. The psalm makes no attempt to soften this. Yet the structure reveals something crucial: the curses are not initiated by David but are David's prayer that his enemies' own methods be turned back upon them. Verse 17 is the key: 'He loved cursing — let it come upon him.' The imprecations are a request for divine retribution in kind. The psalm assumes a universe where moral actions generate consequences, and it asks God to let those consequences land. Acts 1:20 quotes verse 8 ('Let another take his office') and applies it to Judas Iscariot, making this psalm a prophetic text in early Christian interpretation.*

Translation Friction: *The central interpretive question is whether verses 6-20 are David's own words or a quotation of what his enemies said against him. Some scholars argue David is quoting his accusers' curses and then asking God to return those curses to their source. The Hebrew text does not clearly mark quotation, and either reading is grammatically possible. We follow the traditional reading that David is imprecating against his enemy, but the alternative reading has strong defenders. Either way, the theological challenge remains: can such curses be prayer? The psalm's answer is that bringing rage to God is better than taking vengeance personally. The imprecatory psalms channel violence into worship.*

Connections: *Acts 1:20 quotes verse 8 in reference to Judas: 'Let his habitation become desolate, and let another take his office.' This christological reading made Psalm 109 significant in the early church. The psalm's language of the poor and needy (vv. 22, 31) connects to the beatitudes (Matthew 5:3-12). The phrase satan (accuser) in verse 6 connects to the heavenly adversary of Job 1-2 and Zechariah 3:1. The theme of returning evil for good (v. 5) echoes Psalm 35:12-14.*

¹For the music director. Of David. A psalm.
O God of my praise, do not be silent.

²For the mouth of the wicked and the mouth of deceit
are opened against me;
they speak against me with a lying tongue.

³Words of hatred surround me;
they attack me without cause.

⁴In return for my love they accuse me,
but I am all prayer.

⁵They repay me evil for good,
and hatred for my love.

⁶Appoint a wicked man over him,
and let an accuser stand at his right hand.

⁷When he is judged, let him come out guilty,
and let his prayer be counted as sin.

⁸Let his days be few;
let another take his position.

⁹Let his children be orphaned
and his wife a widow.

¹⁰Let his children wander as beggars;
let them seek bread far from their ruined homes.

¹¹Let the creditor seize all he has;
let strangers plunder his labor.

¹²Let no one extend faithful love to him,
and let no one show compassion to his orphans.

¹³Let his descendants be cut off;
in the next generation let their name be blotted out.

¹⁴Let the iniquity of his fathers be remembered before the LORD,
and let the sin of his mother not be blotted out.

¹⁵Let their sins remain before the LORD continually,
that He may cut off their memory from the earth.

¹⁶Because he did not remember to show faithful love
but pursued the poor and needy,
the brokenhearted — to put them to death.

¹⁷He loved cursing — let it come upon him.
He did not delight in blessing — let it be far from him.

¹⁸He wore cursing as his garment —
let it enter his body like water
and his bones like oil.

¹⁹Let it be like a garment he wraps around himself,
like a belt he always wears.

²⁰Let this be the payment from the LORD to my accusers,
to those who speak evil against my soul.

²¹But you, O LORD my Lord,
act on my behalf for your name's sake.
Because your faithful love is good, rescue me.

²²For I am poor and needy,
and my heart is pierced within me.

²³I fade like a lengthening shadow;
I am shaken off like a locust.

²⁴My knees buckle from fasting,
and my body has grown thin, stripped of fat.

²⁵I have become a disgrace to them;
when they see me, they shake their heads.

²⁶Help me, O LORD my God;
save me according to your faithful love.

²⁷Let them know that this is your hand —
that you, O LORD, have done it.

²⁸Let them curse, but you will bless;
when they rise up, let them be put to shame,
but let your servant rejoice.

²⁹Let my accusers be clothed in disgrace;
let them wrap themselves in their own shame as in a robe.

³⁰I will give great thanks to the LORD with my mouth;
in the midst of the throng I will praise Him.

³¹For He stands at the right hand of the needy,
to save him from those who condemn his soul.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription *la-menatseach* ('for the music director') indicates liturgical use. The address *Elohei tehillati* ('God of my praise') is significant — even in the psalm that will contain the harshest curses in Scripture, the opening word is praise. God is identified as the one David praises. The plea *al techerash* ('do not be silent') requests that God break His silence and act.
2. Two mouths attack: *pi rasha* ('the mouth of the wicked') and *pi mirmah* ('the mouth of deceit'). They have opened (*patachu*) against David — mouths as weapons, words as assault. The *leshon shaqer* ('tongue of falsehood') specifies the weapon: lies. The psalmist is under verbal attack from people who fabricate accusations.
3. The *divrei sin'ah* ('words of hatred') have surrounded (*sevavuni*) the psalmist — he is encircled by hostile speech. The phrase *vayyillachamuni chinnam* ('they fight against me for nothing, without cause') establishes the injustice: the attack is unprovoked. The word *chinnam* ('for nothing, freely, without reason') is the same word used in Job 1:9, where the Adversary asks whether Job fears God 'for nothing.' Here the enemies hate David for nothing.
4. The phrase *va-ani tefillah* ('but I — prayer') is one of the most compressed statements in the Psalter. No verb, no object — just the pronoun and the noun. David does not have prayers; he is prayer. His identity in the crisis has been reduced to the single act of addressing God.
5. The exchange is explicit: *ra'ah tachat tovah* ('evil in exchange for good') and *sin'ah tachat ahavati* ('hatred in exchange for my love'). The word *tachat* ('in exchange for, instead of') appears twice, emphasizing the substitution. This is the moral ground on which the imprecations stand: the enemies have reversed the moral order. David will now ask God to reverse it back.

6. The curse section begins. The verb hafqed ('appoint, set over') asks God to place a rasha ('wicked person') in authority over the enemy. The satan ya'amod al yemino ('let an accuser stand at his right hand') places a prosecuting figure at the enemy's right side — the position of the legal accuser in a courtroom. The word satan here is not the cosmic Satan but a human or angelic accuser.
7. The phrase be-hishshafto yetse rasha ('when he is judged, let him go out guilty') asks that every legal proceeding end in conviction. The phrase u-tefillato tihyeh lachata'ah ('and let his prayer become sin') is devastating — even the enemy's attempt to pray for mercy should itself be counted as an offense. When a person has exhausted all moral credit, even repentance is hollow.
8. The curse of shortened life: yihyu yamav me'attim ('let his days be few'). Then the political curse: pequddato yiqqach acher ('let another take his office/position'). The word pequddah means 'oversight, office, charge, position.' Acts 1:20 quotes the Septuagint of this verse and applies it to Judas Iscariot's vacant apostleship, which was then given to Matthias. This verse became the scriptural warrant for replacing Judas.
9. The curse extends to family: banav yetomim ('his children orphans') and ishto almanah ('his wife a widow'). The imprecation asks that the enemy's death (implied by v. 8) leave his family destitute. In the ancient Near East, orphans and widows were the most vulnerable members of society — they had no legal protector and no economic support.
10. The children's fate: noa yanu'u ('let them wander aimlessly, let them stagger') and ve-shi'elu ('let them beg'). The phrase me-chorvotaihem ('from their ruins') means their homes have been destroyed — they beg from the rubble of what was once a household. The progressive desolation is deliberate: death, then orphanhood, then homelessness, then begging.
11. Economic destruction: the nosheh ('creditor, money-lender') traps (yenaqqesh, from naqash, 'to ensnare') everything he owns. The zarim ('strangers, foreigners') plunder his yegi'o ('his labor, the product of his toil'). The enemy loses not only his life and family but his accumulated wealth. Everything he worked for goes to people who have no connection to him.
12. The curse now attacks social solidarity: al yehi lo moshekh chesed ('let there be no one to extend chesed to him'). The word moshekh ('one who draws out, who extends') means no one will reach out with covenant loyalty. Even his orphaned children (yetomav) will find no chonen ('one who shows grace'). The isolation is total — not only God but other humans will withdraw support.
13. The generational curse: acharito lehakhrit ('his posterity — for cutting off'). The enemy's line will end. The phrase be-dor acher yimmach shemam ('in the next generation let their name be blotted out') asks for total erasure — the name (shem) will be wiped from memory (machah, the same verb used for God blotting out sin). To lose one's name is to cease existing in any meaningful sense in the ancient world.
14. The curse reaches backward: the avon avotav ('iniquity of his fathers') should be remembered (yizzakher) by God, and the chattat immo ('sin of his mother') should not be blotted out. Where Psalm 103 celebrated God not dealing with us according to our sins, this psalm asks God to deal with the enemy exactly according to his ancestors' sins. The contrast is theologically intentional — chesed is for those who fear God; strict justice is for those who mock Him.
15. The ancestral sins should remain neged YHVH tamid ('before the LORD continually') — not filed away but permanently on display before the divine judge. The purpose: ve-yakhret me-erets zikhram ('that He may cut off their memory from the earth'). Complete erasure — no descendants, no name, no memory.
16. The phrase lo zakhar asot chesed ('he did not remember to do chesed') is the inverse of verse 45 in Psalm 106, where God 'remembered His covenant.' The enemy is the anti-God: where God remembers chesed, the enemy forgets it. Where God rescues the needy, the enemy hunts them. The curses ask God to treat the enemy as the enemy treated the poor.
17. The principle of retribution in kind: va-ye'ehav qelalah vattevo'ehu ('he loved cursing, and it came upon him'). The verb ahav ('to love') means the enemy chose cursing as his way of life — he embraced it. The request is simply that what he loved should arrive: let cursing find its lover. The parallel: lo chafets bivrahah ('he did not desire blessing'). Since he rejected blessing, let blessing withdraw (vattirchaq mimmennu, 'let it be far from him'). The logic is: you get what you chose.
18. The clothing metaphor: vayyilbash qelalah kemaddo ('he put on cursing like his robe'). Cursing was his wardrobe — he dressed in it daily. The penetration deepens: vatavo khammayim be-qirbo ('it entered like water into his innards') and kashshemen be-atmotav ('like oil into his bones'). Water soaks; oil penetrates. Cursing has saturated the enemy to the skeletal level. He is cursing all the way through.
19. The garment metaphor continues: the cursing should be ke-beged ya'teh ('like a robe he wraps himself in') and u-le-mezach tamid yachgerehah ('like a sash he constantly girds on'). The mezach ('belt, sash, girdle') is the foundational garment — the first thing put on and the last thing removed. Cursing has become the enemy's permanent wardrobe, his identity.
20. The curse section closes with a summary: zot pe'ullat sotenai me-et YHVH ('this is the wage of my accusers from the LORD'). The word pe'ullah ('wage, payment, reward') frames the curses as divine compensation — what the accusers have earned. The sotenai ('my accusers') uses the same root as satan in verse 6. The entire imprecatory section is a petition for God to pay the accusers what their accusations have earned.
21. The tone shifts dramatically: ve-attah YHVH Adonai ('but you, LORD, my Lord'). After twenty verses of cursing enemies, David turns to personal petition. The basis is not his own merit but le-ma'an shemekha ('for your name's sake') and ki tov chasdekha ('because your faithful love is good'). The same chesed that the enemy refused (v. 16) is now David's only hope.
22. David identifies himself with the very category his enemy attacked: ani ve-evyon anokhi ('poor and needy am I'). The same words from verse 16. The enemy persecuted the poor; David is the poor one. The phrase libbi chalal be-qirbi ('my heart is pierced within me') uses chalal ('pierced, wounded, slain'). His heart has been stabbed — not physically but by the betrayal described in verses 4-5.

23. Two images of insubstantiality: ke-tsel kinttoto nehelakhti ('like a shadow when it stretches, I am gone') echoes Psalm 102:12. The shadow dissolves into darkness. The second image — nin'arti ka-arbeh ('I am shaken off like a locust') — pictures a locust brushed off a garment. David feels disposable, insignificant, easily discarded.
24. Physical deterioration from fasting (tsom): birkai kashlu ('my knees stumble, they buckle'). The fasting may be penitential prayer or the involuntary starvation of persecution. The phrase u-vesari kachash mishshamen ('and my flesh has become lean, stripped of fat') describes emaciation — the body consuming itself.
25. David has become cherpah ('a reproach, an object of scorn'). The headshaking (yeniu'un rosham) is the gesture of mockery and contempt — they look at him and wag their heads in derision. The same gesture appears at the crucifixion (Matthew 27:39), and the early church read this verse as prophetic of Christ's suffering.
26. The petition is direct: ozreini YHVH Elohai ('help me, LORD my God'). The basis remains chesed: hoshi'eni ke-chasdekha ('save me according to your faithful love'). Not according to David's merit, not according to the severity of the situation, but according to the measure of God's chesed.
27. The purpose of the rescue: ve-yed'u ki yadekha zot ('let them know that this is your hand'). The salvation should be visibly divine — not ambiguous, not attributable to chance. The phrase attah YHVH asitah ('you, LORD, did it') makes the attribution explicit. David wants his enemies to see God's hand unmistakably.
28. The contrast between human cursing and divine blessing: yeqalelu hemmah ve-attah tevaresh ('they curse, but you bless'). The enemies' curses are impotent when set against God's blessing. The outcome: qamu vayyevoshu ('they rise up and are shamed'). The servant (avdekha) — David — will rejoice (yismach). The psalm moves from despair toward anticipated joy.
29. The clothing metaphor returns: the enemy wore cursing (v. 18-19); now let the accusers wear kelimmah ('disgrace, humiliation') and boshet ('shame'). The verb ya'atu ('let them wrap themselves') uses atah, the same verb from verse 19. The wardrobe has changed: cursing has been replaced by shame.
30. The vow of praise: odeh YHVH me'od be-fi ('I will thank the LORD greatly with my mouth'). The word me'od ('very much, exceedingly') intensifies the thanksgiving. The setting is public: u-vetokh rabbim ahalelennu ('in the midst of many I will praise Him'). The psalm that began with a plea for God to speak ('do not be silent,' v. 1) ends with David speaking — loudly, publicly, in praise.
31. The reversal between verse 6 and verse 31 is the psalm's structural and theological key. The accuser stands at the enemy's right hand; God stands at the needy's right hand. Condemnation for the oppressor; salvation for the oppressed. The psalm's moral universe is governed by this symmetry.

110

Summary: *The most quoted psalm in the New Testament. In seven compressed verses, the LORD (YHVH) addresses David's lord (adoni) with an oracle of enthronement, victory, and eternal priesthood. The psalm contains two divine utterances: 'Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies your footstool' (v. 1) and 'You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek' (v. 4). Between and around these oracles, the psalm describes the messianic king's rule from Zion, his willing army, his dawn-born youth, and his judgment among the nations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 110 is the single most important psalm for New Testament christology. It is quoted or alluded to over twenty times: Jesus cites it to challenge the Pharisees' understanding of the Messiah (Matthew 22:41-46), Peter quotes it in his Pentecost sermon (Acts 2:34-35), Paul draws on it in 1 Corinthians 15:25 and Ephesians 1:20, and the book of Hebrews builds its entire argument about Christ's priesthood on verse 4. The psalm's fusion of kingship and priesthood in one figure was revolutionary — in Israel, kings were from Judah and priests from Levi, and the two offices were never combined (King Uzziah was struck with leprosy for trying, 2 Chronicles 26:16-21). The Melchizedek reference bypasses the Levitical system entirely, reaching back to a pre-Mosaic, pre-Aaronic priestly order — a priest who was also a king of Salem (Genesis 14:18-20). This dual office is what made the psalm irresistible to the early church: Jesus was both king and priest, and Psalm 110 was the scriptural warrant.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of Psalm 110 is among the most difficult in the Psalter. Several phrases are obscure, the syntax is compressed to the point of ambiguity, and the imagery shifts rapidly. Verse 3 in particular is notoriously difficult — the Hebrew is uncertain at several points, and translations vary wildly. The phrase ne'um YHVH la-adoni ('declaration of the LORD to my lord') in verse 1 creates the theological puzzle Jesus exploited: if David calls the Messiah 'my lord,' how can the Messiah be David's son? The answer, for the New Testament authors, is that the Messiah is both David's descendant and David's Lord — human and divine. The Melchizedek priesthood in verse 4 is equally puzzling in its original context: why invoke a*

Canaanite priest-king from Abraham's era? The answer may be that the Davidic king, ruling from Jerusalem (the ancient Salem), inherits the pre-Israelite priestly traditions of that city.

Connections: Genesis 14:18-20 introduces Melchizedek as king of Salem and priest of God Most High. Hebrews 5-7 develops the Melchizedek priesthood at length, arguing that Christ's priesthood supersedes the Levitical system because it belongs to an earlier, higher order. Matthew 22:41-46 records Jesus using verse 1 to demonstrate that the Messiah cannot be merely David's biological descendant. Acts 2:34-35 makes verse 1 the climax of Peter's Pentecost argument for Christ's exaltation. 1 Corinthians 15:25 quotes verse 1 in the context of Christ's reign until all enemies are subdued. Hebrews 1:13 quotes verse 1 as the supreme enthronement text. The psalm is the theological bridge between the Old Testament expectation of a Davidic messiah and the New Testament proclamation of a divine Christ.

¹Of David. A psalm.

The declaration of the LORD to my lord:

'Sit at my right hand

until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet.'

²The LORD will extend your mighty scepter from Zion:

'Rule in the midst of your enemies.'

³Your people offer themselves willingly

on the day of your power.

In holy splendor, from the womb of the dawn,

the dew of your youth is yours.

⁴The LORD has sworn and will not change His mind:

'You are a priest forever

according to the order of Melchizedek.'

⁵The Lord at your right hand

will shatter kings on the day of His wrath.

⁶He judges among the nations, filling them with corpses;

He shatters the head over the wide earth.

⁷He will drink from the brook along the way;

therefore He will lift up His head.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase ne'um YHVH ('declaration of the LORD') is prophetic language borrowed into a psalm — it marks what follows as direct divine speech, not the psalmist's meditation. The word adoni ('my lord') is distinct from Adonai (a divine title); adoni is used for a human superior. However, the figure addressed here exercises divine prerogatives (sitting at God's right hand), which is why the early church read 'my lord' as a christological title.
1. The right hand (yamin) of God is the position from which authority is exercised. Sitting there implies permanent co-regency. The New Testament applies this image to Christ's ascension: after the resurrection, Jesus 'sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high' (Hebrews 1:3).
2. The extension of the scepter from Zion means Jerusalem is the command center of the Messiah's reign. The early church understood this both literally (the gospel went out from Jerusalem, Acts 1:8) and typologically (Zion represents God's sovereign rule extending into a hostile world).
3. The textual difficulties in this verse have generated more scholarly debate than almost any other verse in the Psalter. The LXX reads 'from the womb before the morning star I begot you,' which the early church read as a statement about the Son's eternal generation from the Father. The Hebrew text is more opaque but equally suggestive: the Messiah's origin is connected to dawn, to dew, to birth — images of fresh beginning and supernatural vitality.
3. The word nedavot ('free-will offerings, voluntary contributions') means the people give themselves. The same word is used for voluntary sacrifices in Leviticus. The Messiah's army is a congregation of willing worshippers.

4. The phrase *al divrati* is difficult — it could mean 'according to the order of,' 'according to the manner of,' 'because of the matter of,' or 'on account of.' The LXX reads *kata ten taxin* ('according to the order'), and Hebrews follows this. Whatever the precise nuance, the meaning is clear: the Messiah's priesthood is patterned on Melchizedek's, not Aaron's.
4. The perpetuity *le-olam* ('forever') applied to the priesthood means this is not a temporary appointment. Hebrews 7:24 draws the inference: because the Messiah lives forever, His priesthood is permanent and His intercession unending.
5. The subject shifts: now *Adonai* ('the Lord') is at the Messiah's right hand — in verse 1, the Messiah was at God's right hand; now God stands at the Messiah's right hand. The positions are reciprocal. The verb *machats* ('He shatters, He strikes through, He wounds fatally') describes devastating military action. The *melakhim* ('kings') are the hostile rulers of the earth. The *be-yom appo* ('on the day of His wrath') is the eschatological day of judgment when God's patience expires and His wrath is unleashed.
6. The judgment is global: *yadin baggoyim* ('He judges among the nations') with *male geviyyot* ('filling with corpses'). The scale is total war — the battlefield is covered with the dead. The phrase *machats rosh al erets rabbah* ('He shatters the chief/head over a wide land') could mean 'He crushes the head ruler over a great land' or 'He crushes heads across a vast territory.' The word *rosh* ('head') may refer to a specific leader (the chief enemy) or to heads generally (the casualties). Either way, the judgment is comprehensive and devastating.
7. The final verse has puzzled interpreters for centuries. The simplest reading is military: a warrior-king, in pursuit of fleeing enemies, pauses at a stream to drink and then lifts his head to continue the chase, refreshed. The christological reading is more layered: the Messiah who endures suffering (drinking from the stream of trial) is the same one who is exalted (lifting His head in triumph). The brevity and ambiguity are part of the psalm's power — it says just enough and stops.

111

Summary: *Psalm 111 is an acrostic hymn of praise in which each half-line begins with the next letter of the Hebrew alphabet, moving from aleph to tav across twenty-two units. The psalmist praises the LORD in the assembly of the upright for His mighty works: His covenant faithfulness, His provision of food, His gift of the land, His justice, His trustworthy commands, and His redemption of His people. The psalm climaxes with the declaration that the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The acrostic structure is the psalm's most striking formal feature — the poet praises God within the constraint of alphabetic order, as if declaring that the LORD's works fill every letter of the language. Psalm 111 and Psalm 112 form a matched pair: 111 describes who God is and what He does; 112 describes the person who fears God and mirrors those divine qualities. The vocabulary deliberately echoes between the two psalms — the words used for God's character in 111 reappear as the character of the righteous person in 112. The phrase 'the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom' (v. 10) connects this psalm to the wisdom tradition (Proverbs 1:7, 9:10, Job 28:28) and positions praise as a form of knowing.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew acrostic structure is impossible to reproduce in English without distorting the content. Each line of the psalm is extremely compressed — the poet is working under severe formal constraints, and the result reads more like a catalog of divine attributes than a flowing poem. Some scholars debate whether verse 1 is part of the acrostic (the opening Hallelujah stands outside the twenty-two-line count) or whether the acrostic begins with the first word after the Hallelujah. The WLC treats the Hallelujah as part of the verse text.*

Connections: *Psalm 111 is the first half of an acrostic diptych with Psalm 112. Together they form a theological statement: the God described in 111 produces the person described in 112. The wisdom conclusion in verse 10 links to Proverbs 1:7 and 9:10. The covenant and redemption language (vv. 5, 9) connects to the Exodus and Sinai traditions. The psalm is liturgically associated with the Egyptian Hallel collection (Psalms 113-118) that follows immediately.*

1Praise the LORD!

I will thank the LORD with all my heart,
in the council of the upright and in the congregation.

**2Great are the works of the LORD,
studied by all who delight in them.**

³Splendor and majesty mark His work,
and His righteousness stands forever.

⁴He has made a memorial of His wonders;
the LORD is gracious and compassionate.

⁵He gives food to those who fear Him;
He remembers His covenant forever.

⁶He declared the power of His works to His people,
giving them the inheritance of the nations.

⁷The works of His hands are truth and justice;
all His precepts are trustworthy.

⁸They are established forever and ever,
carried out in truth and uprightness.

⁹He sent redemption to His people;
He commanded His covenant forever.
Holy and awe-inspiring is His name.

¹⁰The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom;
good understanding belongs to all who practice it.
His praise endures forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The acrostic begins here: aleph (odeh) and bet (besod) are the first two letters. Each half-verse advances one letter of the Hebrew alphabet. The word sod ('council, intimate circle') suggests a smaller gathering within the larger edah ('congregation'). The phrase bekol levav ('with all my heart') uses levav rather than lev — the two forms are interchangeable in meaning, though levav appears more commonly in Deuteronomic and poetic texts.
2. The gimel and dalet lines of the acrostic. The participle derushim ('sought, studied') implies ongoing investigation, not a single act of observation. The phrase lekhol cheftzehem ('by all who delight in them') could also be read as 'according to all their desires' — the works of the LORD meet every inquiry.
3. The he and vav lines. The pair hod ve-hadar appears together in Psalm 104:1, 1 Chronicles 16:27, and Job 40:10, always describing divine or royal splendor. The noun po'olo ('His work') is singular — it refers to the totality of God's activity rather than to individual acts.
4. The zayin and chet lines. The phrase channun ve-rachum ('gracious and compassionate') reverses the usual Exodus 34:6 order (rachum ve-channun) — likely for acrostic purposes, since chet must come after zayin. The reversal is not theologically significant but shows the poet adapting traditional language to the alphabetic constraint.
5. The tet and yod lines. The word teref literally means 'torn food, prey' — what an animal brings back after hunting. Applied to God, it means provision. Some scholars connect this to the manna and quail in the wilderness; others see it as a general statement about divine provision. The covenant (berit) here is most likely the Sinai covenant, though the psalmist may also have the Abrahamic land promise in view given verse 6.
6. The kaf and lamed lines. The 'inheritance of the nations' refers to the land of Canaan, which God allocated to Israel as promised to Abraham. The verb higgid ('He declared, made known') implies revelation — God showed His people what He could do so they would trust Him for what He was about to do.
7. The mem and nun lines. The noun piqqudim ('precepts, instructions') is relatively rare outside the Psalms and refers to God's detailed instructions or charges. The adjective ne'emanim ('trustworthy') comes from the root aman, which also produces emunah ('faithfulness') and amen ('so be it, it is reliable').
8. The samekh and ayin lines. The adjective semukhim ('established, supported, upheld') comes from the root samakh ('to lean on, to support') — God's precepts are stable, something a person can lean on without collapse. The phrase be'emet ve-yashar ('in truth and uprightness') describes the manner of their execution: straight, without crookedness or deception.

9. The pe, tsade, and qof lines. The verb tsivvah ('He commanded') applied to the covenant is unusual — normally one 'cuts' (karat) a covenant. Using tsivvah emphasizes that the covenant is an authoritative act of the divine will, not a negotiation. The adjective nora ('awe-inspiring, fearsome') is rendered here as 'awe-inspiring' rather than 'terrible' or 'dreadful' to capture the reverence rather than terror.
10. The resh, shin, and tav lines complete the acrostic. The phrase reshit chokhmah parallels Proverbs 1:7 (reshit da'at) and Proverbs 9:10 (techillat chokhmah). The pronoun in lekhol oseihem ('all who do them') is ambiguous — 'them' could refer to the commandments or to the acts of wisdom. Most interpreters take it as referring to the commandments. The final line, tehillato omedet la'ad, mirrors verse 3b (tzidqato omedet la'ad), creating a frame: God's righteousness endures, and so does His praise.

112

Summary: *Psalm 112 is the second half of an acrostic pair with Psalm 111. Where Psalm 111 described God's character, Psalm 112 describes the person who fears God — and the vocabulary deliberately mirrors the previous psalm. The righteous person is generous, just, compassionate, stable, unafraid, and ultimately vindicated. The psalm paints a portrait of the blessed life rooted in covenant faithfulness, ending with the frustration of the wicked who watch the righteous flourish.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The mirroring between Psalms 111 and 112 is the key to both. In 111:3, God's righteousness endures forever; in 112:3, the righteous person's righteousness endures forever. In 111:4, God is gracious and compassionate; in 112:4, the righteous person is gracious and compassionate. The implication is that the one who fears God becomes like God — covenant relationship produces character transformation. The person described in Psalm 112 is not merely obedient but is becoming a reflection of the divine character described in Psalm 111. This is one of the clearest statements of the imago Dei principle in the Psalter.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's confident promise of material prosperity for the righteous (wealth, descendants, victory over enemies) sits in tension with the experience of suffering righteous people — a tension the book of Job addresses at length. The psalm operates within the Deuteronomic framework where obedience leads to blessing and disobedience to curse. The final verse, describing the wicked gnashing their teeth as the righteous prosper, reflects a retributive worldview that other psalms (notably Psalm 73) will complicate significantly.*

Connections: *Psalm 112 is inseparable from Psalm 111 — they are two halves of a single theological statement. The 'fear of the LORD' that concludes Psalm 111:10 immediately becomes the opening quality of the blessed person in 112:1. Paul quotes Psalm 112:9 in 2 Corinthians 9:9 to describe the generous giver. The portrait of the righteous person here anticipates the beatitudes of Matthew 5 and the fruit of the Spirit in Galatians 5. The wicked gnashing their teeth in verse 10 is language Jesus uses in the parables of judgment (Matthew 13:42, 50).*

1Praise the LORD!

Blessed is the person who fears the LORD,
who delights greatly in His commandments.

**2His descendants will be mighty in the land;
the generation of the upright will be blessed.**

**3Wealth and riches fill his house,
and his righteousness endures forever.**

**4Light dawns in the darkness for the upright —
gracious, compassionate, and righteous.**

**5It goes well for the person who is generous and lends;
he conducts his affairs with justice.**

⁶He will never be shaken;
the righteous person will be remembered forever.

⁷He does not fear bad news;
his heart is steady, trusting in the LORD.

⁸His heart is secure; he will not be afraid
until he looks in triumph on his adversaries.

⁹He scatters gifts; he gives to the needy.
His righteousness endures forever;
his horn is lifted high in honor.

¹⁰The wicked person sees it and is enraged;
he gnashes his teeth and wastes away.
The desire of the wicked will come to nothing.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The acrostic begins: aleph (ashrei) and bet (bemitzvotav). The word ashrei is a plural construct meaning something like 'the happinesses of' — it describes a state of flourishing rather than a momentary emotion. The verb chafetz ('to delight, to desire') is the same root used in Psalm 111:2 for those who 'delight' in God's works, creating a verbal link between the two psalms.
2. The gimel and dalet lines. The word gibbor ('mighty, powerful, warrior') applied to zar'o ('his seed, his offspring') promises that covenant faithfulness produces strong descendants. The word ba'aretz ('in the land') can mean 'in the earth' generally or 'in the land' of Israel specifically — in a psalm rooted in covenant theology, the land of promise is likely in view.
3. The he and vav lines. The exact phrase tzidqato omedet la'ad appears in both 111:3 and 112:3 — this is the clearest verbal bridge between the two psalms and the key to their paired meaning.
4. The zayin and chet lines. The grammatical subject of channun ve-rachum ve-tzaddiq is debated — it could be God (He is the light that rises) or the righteous person (who is described as gracious, compassionate, and righteous). The deliberate echo of 111:4 suggests the poet wants readers to hear both: God is this way, and the person who fears God becomes this way.
5. The tet and yod lines. The word chonen ('showing grace, being generous') echoes channun from the previous verse — the righteous person does not merely possess the quality of graciousness but acts on it through lending. The verb yekhalkel ('he sustains, he manages') means he handles his devarav ('his words, his affairs') with mishpat ('justice, right judgment').
6. The kaf and lamed lines. The verb yimmot ('be shaken, be moved, totter') is the same word used for cosmic stability — mountains that do not shake, the earth that does not totter. The righteous person shares in that stability. The phrase lezekher olam ('for eternal remembrance') connects to Psalm 111:4 where God 'made a memorial' (zekher) of His wonders — now the righteous person becomes a memorial.
7. The mem and nun lines. The word nakhon ('established, steady') is a Niphal participle of kun ('to establish, to make firm') — the heart has been made firm by something outside itself, namely trust in the LORD. The verb batuach ('trusting') is a stative participle: this is an ongoing condition, not a momentary decision.
8. The samekh and ayin lines. The word samukh ('supported, upheld') echoes Psalm 111:8 where God's precepts are semukhim ('established'). The righteous person's heart has the same quality as God's commands — both are firm, both stand. The phrase ad asher yir'eh betzarav ('until he looks upon his adversaries') implies confident waiting: the righteous person will eventually see vindication.
9. The pe, tsade, and qof lines. Paul quotes this verse in 2 Corinthians 9:9 to encourage generosity among the Corinthian believers. The 'horn' (qeren) is a widespread ancient Near Eastern metaphor for power and dignity — a raised horn is a sign of victory and honor, a lowered horn is defeat and shame.
10. The resh, shin, and tav lines complete the acrostic. The verb namas ('to melt, to dissolve') is used elsewhere for hearts melting in fear (Joshua 2:11) and for wax melting before fire (Psalm 68:3). Applied to the wicked person, it suggests a total loss of substance and strength. The noun ta'avah ('desire, craving, longing') refers to what the wicked person most wants — and it will perish (toveid, from avad, 'to be lost, to perish').

113

Summary: *Psalm 113 opens the Egyptian Hallel (Psalms 113-118), the collection of praise psalms sung during the Passover meal. The psalm calls the servants of the LORD to praise His name from sunrise to sunset, then declares that the LORD is exalted above all nations and above the heavens — yet He stoops down to look at what happens below. The psalm climaxes with concrete examples of His condescension: He lifts the poor from the dust, raises the needy from the ash heap, and gives the barren woman a home and children.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological center of this psalm is the paradox of divine transcendence and condescension. The LORD is so exalted that He must humble Himself even to look at the heavens — the heavens are beneath Him. Yet this infinitely exalted God concerns Himself with the lowest members of human society: the dust-covered poor, the ash-heap beggar, the childless woman. The psalm's structure enacts this movement: it begins by looking up (God's name above everything) and ends by looking down (God reaching into the lowest places). This is the psalm that sets the tone for the entire Passover Hallel — the God who delivered Israel from Egypt is the God who notices the forgotten.*

Translation Friction: *The barren woman receiving children (v. 9) is celebrated without qualification, reflecting the ancient Near Eastern cultural context in which childlessness was a severe social and economic vulnerability for women. Modern readers may find the equation of female blessing with childbearing reductive, but in the psalm's context, the point is not that motherhood defines women but that God reverses the specific condition that caused this woman's suffering and marginalization.*

Connections: *Psalm 113 is the first psalm of the Egyptian Hallel, sung before the Passover meal (113-114 before the meal, 115-118 after). Jesus and His disciples would have sung this psalm at the Last Supper (Matthew 26:30). Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 2:1-10) is a close parallel — the lifting of the poor and the giving of children to the barren are central themes of both. Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:46-55) draws heavily on both Hannah's prayer and this psalm.*

1Praise the LORD!

Praise, you servants of the LORD —
praise the name of the LORD!

2Let the name of the LORD be blessed
from now until forever.

3From the rising of the sun to its setting,
the name of the LORD is to be praised.

4The LORD is exalted above all nations;
His glory is above the heavens.

5Who is like the LORD our God,
who is enthroned on high,

6who stoops down to look
at the heavens and the earth!

7He raises the poor from the dust;
He lifts the needy from the ash heap,

to seat them with nobles,
with the nobles of His people.

He gives the childless woman a home,
making her a joyful mother of children.
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The triple hallelu ('praise') creates an urgent, layered call to worship. The addressees are avdei YHWH ('servants of the LORD') — a term that can refer to the Levitical singers, to all Israel, or to anyone who serves the LORD. The object of praise is shem YHWH ('the name of the LORD') — not merely the person of God but His revealed identity, His reputation, His character as known.
2. The jussive yehi ('let it be') expresses a wish that God's name be mevorakh ('blessed') — acknowledged, honored, praised — from this moment into eternity. The phrase me'attah ve-ad olam ('from now and until forever') stretches the praise across all time.
3. Mi-mizrach shemesh ad mevo'o ('from the rising of the sun to its going in') covers the full arc of the day and, by extension, the full extent of the earth. The praise of the LORD is not limited to one place or one time — it fills all space and all hours.
4. The sequence builds: above all nations (v. 4a), above the heavens (v. 4b), and then in the next verse, He looks down. The word ram ('high, exalted') is the same root as the verb rum used throughout the Psalms for divine and royal exaltation.
5. The rhetorical question mi ka-YHWH Eloheinu ('who is like the LORD our God?') expects the answer: no one. The participle ha-magbihi lashevet ('who makes high to sit' / 'who is enthroned on high') describes God as seated at the highest possible point. The verb gavah ('to be high') in the Hiphil means 'to make high' — God has elevated His own throne above everything.
6. Verses 5-6 form a single sentence: God is the one who is enthroned on high AND who humbles Himself to look. The juxtaposition is the psalm's central theological statement. The verb mashpili is a Hiphil participle — God is actively, continuously condescending.
7. This verse closely parallels Hannah's prayer in 1 Samuel 2:8. The ashpot appears in that passage as well, and the verbal and thematic overlap is so strong that most scholars consider one text dependent on the other. The movement from dust to ash heap intensifies the degradation; the movement from dal to evyon intensifies the vulnerability.
8. The verb hoshivi ('to cause to sit, to seat') places the formerly destitute person among nedivim ('nobles, princes, generous ones'). The word nadiv can mean either a person of high social rank or a person of generous character — both senses may be intended. The phrase nedivei ammo ('the nobles of His people') specifies that these are the leaders of God's own people, not foreign dignitaries. The reversal is total: from the ash heap to the seat of honor.
9. The word aqeret ('barren') comes from the root aqar ('to uproot') — barrenness is experienced as being uprooted, disconnected from the future. The transformation from aqeret to em ('mother') echoes the stories of Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Hannah — all barren women whose children became foundational figures in Israel's history. The final Hallelujah closes the psalm with the same word that opened it, creating a frame of praise.

114

Summary: Psalm 114 is a compact, vivid poem celebrating the Exodus from Egypt. In eight verses, the psalmist recounts how the sea fled, the Jordan turned back, the mountains skipped like rams, and the hills leaped like lambs — all because the earth trembled at the presence of the LORD, the God of Jacob, who turned rock into a pool of water and flint into a spring.

What Makes This Remarkable: This is one of the most cinematically powerful poems in the Psalter. The personification is extraordinary: the sea 'sees' and 'flees,' the Jordan 'turns back,' the mountains 'skip' like rams. The poet addresses creation directly — 'What is wrong with you, Sea, that you flee?' — as if cross-examining witnesses at a trial. The entire Exodus event is compressed into a cosmic drama where nature itself responds to God's presence with something between terror and ecstasy. No human actors are named — not Moses, not Aaron, not Pharaoh. The only actors are God, Israel, and creation. The psalm strips the Exodus to its theological core: God showed up, and the physical world rearranged itself.

Translation Friction: The psalm's brevity is itself a kind of friction — the Exodus was a complex series of events involving plagues, negotiations, military pursuit, and wilderness wandering, yet this poem reduces it all to a single moment of divine appearance. The merging of the Red Sea crossing and the Jordan crossing (events separated by forty years) into a single poetic moment raises the question of whether the psalm is describing history or theology. The answer is both: the psalm treats the entire Exodus-to-Conquest sequence as a single act of divine self-revelation.

Connections: Psalm 114 is the second psalm of the Egyptian Hallel (113-118), sung during the Passover meal. Its imagery of the fleeing sea connects to Exodus 14-15 (the Song of the Sea). The Jordan turning back echoes Joshua 3-4. Mountains skipping recalls the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19, Judges 5:5). Water from rock points to Exodus 17:6 and Numbers 20:11. Jesus and His disciples sang this psalm at the Last Supper.

¹When Israel went out from Egypt,
the house of Jacob from a people of foreign speech —

²Judah became His sanctuary,
Israel His dominion.

³The sea looked and fled;
the Jordan turned back.

⁴The mountains skipped like rams,
the hills like young sheep.

⁵What is wrong with you, Sea, that you flee?
Jordan, that you turn back?

⁶Mountains, why do you skip like rams?
Hills, like young sheep?

⁷Tremble, O earth, before the Lord,
before the God of Jacob —

⁸who turned the rock into a pool of water,
the flint into a flowing spring.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening betzet ('when [they] went out') places the entire psalm in the moment of departure. The parallel between Yisra'el ('Israel') and beit Ya'aqov ('house of Jacob') uses both names for the nation — the covenantal name and the family-origin name. The Egyptians are described as am lo'ez ('a people of foreign/barbarous speech') — the word lo'ez suggests unintelligible, alien language, emphasizing the cultural foreignness of Egypt.
2. The use of 'Judah' rather than 'Israel' for the sanctuary may reflect the southern location of the Temple in Jerusalem. The plural mamshelotav ('His dominions') is unusual — it may be a plural of majesty or may refer to the multiple tribal territories that together constitute God's realm.
3. The verb ra'ah ('it saw') raises the question: what did the sea see? The psalm does not say explicitly — the object is left unstated, creating suspense that verse 7 will resolve (the presence of the Lord). The personification of water as a creature that sees and flees is among the most striking images in Hebrew poetry.
4. The Sinai theophany is in view — Exodus 19:18 says the whole mountain trembled violently. But the psalmist reimagines the trembling as dancing. The comparison to rams and lambs domesticates the cosmic event, making the mountains into God's flock. The word order places the verb first for dramatic emphasis: 'Skipped — the mountains — like rams.'
5. The shift from third person narrative (vv. 3-4) to second person direct address (vv. 5-6) is a dramatic move. The psalmist speaks to creation as a witness, demanding an account. The imperfect verbs tanus ('you flee') and tissov ('you turn back') switch from the past-tense narration to present-tense confrontation — the events are re-experienced in the moment of singing.

6. The interrogation continues: the mountains and hills are now addressed directly and asked why they danced. The repetition of the exact imagery from verse 4 but in question form transforms the description into a demand for explanation. The entire created order is called to testify about what it experienced.
7. The word Adon ('Lord, Master') here is not the divine name YHWH but the title of sovereignty. The verb chuli is an imperative: the psalmist commands the earth to tremble. The previous questions were rhetorical — the earth was already trembling — but now the command makes the response mandatory and ongoing: every encounter with this God should produce the same reaction.
8. The participle hofkhi ('who turns') is present-tense in form, suggesting this is not merely a past event but an ongoing characteristic of God: He is the one who turns rock into water. The challamish ('flint') is the hardest type of stone — the contrast between flint and flowing spring is maximized for poetic effect.

115

Summary: *Psalm 115 is a liturgical psalm that moves from a plea for God's glory to a devastating satire on idols, then to a threefold call for Israel to trust the LORD, and finally to a blessing and a declaration of praise. The psalm contrasts the living God who acts from heaven with the dead idols who have mouths but cannot speak, eyes but cannot see, ears but cannot hear. The worshipers of those idols, the psalmist warns, become like them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The idol satire in verses 4-8 is among the most cutting passages in the Hebrew Bible. The psalmist catalogs the sensory organs of the idols — mouths, eyes, ears, noses, hands, feet, throats — and declares each one non-functional. The idols are a complete inversion of life: they have the form of a living being but none of the substance. The devastating conclusion in verse 8 is that the makers and worshipers of these idols 'become like them' — they too lose the capacity to speak, see, hear, and act. Idolatry does not merely offend God; it dehumanizes the worshiper. You become what you worship.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's sharp division between Israel (who trusts the LORD) and the nations (who make idols) can feel exclusivist to modern readers. However, the psalm's critique is directed at the objects of worship, not at the worshipers as persons — the concern is that idol worship degrades human beings by orienting them toward dead things. The statement that 'the dead do not praise the LORD' (v. 17) reflects the Hebrew Bible's general uncertainty about the state of the dead, where Sheol is often described as a place of silence rather than of worship.*

Connections: *Psalm 115 is part of the Egyptian Hallel (113-118), sung after the Passover meal. The idol satire parallels Isaiah 44:9-20 and Jeremiah 10:1-16. The threefold call to trust (Israel, house of Aaron, those who fear the LORD) appears also in Psalm 118:2-4 and Psalm 135:19-20. The 'you become like what you worship' principle is echoed in Romans 1:21-23 where Paul describes humanity exchanging the glory of God for images.*

¹Not to us, LORD, not to us,
but to Your name give glory,
for the sake of Your faithful love,
for the sake of Your faithfulness.

²Why should the nations say,
"Where is their God?"

³But our God is in the heavens;
He does whatever He pleases.

⁴Their idols are silver and gold,
crafted by human hands.

⁵They have mouths but cannot speak;
they have eyes but cannot see.

⁶They have ears but cannot hear;
they have noses but cannot smell.

⁷Their hands cannot feel;
their feet cannot walk.
No sound comes from their throat.

⁸Those who make them become like them —
so does everyone who trusts in them.

⁹Israel, trust in the LORD!
He is their help and their shield.

¹⁰House of Aaron, put your trust in the LORD!
He is their help and their shield.

¹¹You who fear the LORD, put your trust in the LORD!
He is their help and their shield.

¹²The LORD remembers us — He will bless.
He will bless the house of Israel;
He will bless the house of Aaron.

¹³He will bless those who fear the LORD,
the small and the great alike.

¹⁴May the LORD give you increase,
you and your children.

¹⁵You are blessed by the LORD,
the maker of heaven and earth.

¹⁶The heavens belong to the LORD,
but the earth He has given to the children of humanity.

¹⁷The dead do not praise the LORD,
nor do any who go down into silence.

¹⁸But we will bless the LORD
from now until forever.
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *chesed* is rendered 'faithful love' — it carries the sense of covenant loyalty, committed kindness, and steadfast devotion. The word *emet* here functions as 'faithfulness' or 'reliability' rather than abstract 'truth.' Together, *chesed* and *emet* form one of the most important word pairs in the Hebrew Bible, describing the twin pillars of God's covenant character.
2. The taunt *ayyeh na Eloheihem* ('where, then, is their God?') is a challenge to God's existence or power. The nations look at Israel's circumstances and conclude that Israel's God is absent or impotent. The psalmist raises this taunt not to validate it but to set up the answer that follows.
3. The verb *chafetz* ('He desires, He pleases') is the same root used in Psalm 112:1 for the person who 'delights' in God's commandments. The God of Israel is characterized by effective will — He desires and He does. This is the fundamental contrast with idols, which have no will and no capacity to act.

4. The word atzabbeihem ('their idols') comes from the root atzav, which can mean 'to shape, to form' but also 'to grieve, to cause pain.' The idols are shaped objects that cause grief. They are kesef ve-zahav ('silver and gold') — valuable materials, but still materials. And they are ma'aseh yedei adam ('the work of human hands') — made by the very creatures they are supposed to serve. The maker is greater than the made; the worshiper has degraded himself by bowing to his own handiwork.
5. The satire begins its catalog. The peh ('mouth') is the organ of speech, of command, of blessing — the idols have the form but not the function. The einayim ('eyes') are the organs of perception, of attention, of care — the idols have the shape but not the sight. Each line follows the same devastating pattern: they have X but cannot do what X does.
6. The catalog continues. The oznayim ('ears') cannot shama ('hear') — the God of Israel hears prayer, but these objects cannot receive any communication. The af ('nose') cannot reach ('smell') — the nose was particularly significant in ancient Near Eastern worship because incense offerings were understood as a pleasing aroma to the deity. An idol with a nose that cannot smell cannot receive the very offerings placed before it.
7. The catalog reaches its climax. The yadayim ('hands') cannot yamish ('feel, touch, handle') — they cannot act, cannot intervene, cannot rescue. The raglayim ('feet') cannot halakh ('walk') — they cannot come to anyone's aid, cannot move toward the one who prays. The final line is the most damning: lo yehgu bigronam ('they do not murmur in their throat') — they cannot even produce the most basic sound. The garon ('throat') that should produce voice produces nothing. Total silence. Total impotence.
8. The verb yihyu ('they will become') is future — the transformation is progressive and ongoing. The principle stated here is foundational: you become what you worship. This is not a curse imposed from outside but an organic consequence of misdirected devotion.
9. The threefold call to trust begins. Israel as a whole is addressed first. The verb betach ('trust') is an imperative — this is a command, not a suggestion. The LORD is described as ezram u-maginnam ('their help and their shield') — active assistance and protective covering. The shift from second person ('trust') to third person ('their help') suggests a liturgical antiphon: one voice calls, another responds.
10. The second call addresses beit Aharon ('house of Aaron') — the priestly families who serve in the Temple. Even those closest to God's presence need the command to trust. The refrain is identical: ezram u-maginnam hu ('He is their help and their shield').
11. The third call addresses yir'ei YHWH ('those who fear the LORD') — a category broader than ethnic Israel, potentially including God-fearing non-Israelites. This three-part structure (Israel, house of Aaron, God-fearers) creates concentric circles of covenant community. The refrain remains unchanged: the help and shield are the same for all who trust.
12. The verb zekharanu ('He has remembered us') shifts from command to confidence — after calling for trust, the psalm now affirms that God is already acting. The threefold yevarekh ('He will bless') mirrors the threefold call to trust. God's blessing follows the same three-part structure: Israel, house of Aaron, and (in the next verse) those who fear the LORD.
13. The blessing extends to yir'ei YHWH ('those who fear the LORD') — completing the threefold pattern. The phrase ha-qetannim im ha-gedolim ('the small with the great') emphasizes that God's blessing is not proportional to human status. The servant and the king, the child and the elder, the insignificant and the powerful all receive the same divine attention.
14. The verb yosef ('may He add, may He increase') is a jussive expressing a blessing-wish. The increase is aleikhem ('upon you') and al beneikhem ('and upon your children') — the blessing is generational, extending to descendants. This echoes the Abrahamic promise of multiplication.
15. Berukhim attem la-YHWH ('blessed are you by the LORD') — the passive participle declares the blessing as already in effect. The LORD is identified as oseh shamayim va-aretz ('maker of heaven and earth') — a creation title that contrasts sharply with the idols who are ma'aseh yedei adam ('the work of human hands'). The creator God blesses; the created idols cannot.
16. This verse is sometimes read as limiting God's involvement with earth, but in the context of a psalm that has just affirmed God's active blessing, provision, and increase on earth, the point is not divine absence but human responsibility. The earth is given — it is a trust, not an abandonment.
17. Lo ha-metim yehalelu Yah ('the dead do not praise the LORD') — in the Hebrew understanding of death, Sheol is a place of silence, inactivity, and cessation of worship. The phrase yordei dumah ('those who go down into silence') is a poetic name for the dead and for the realm of death. Dumah means 'silence' — the opposite of praise. This verse functions as motivation: praise God now, because the dead cannot.
18. Va-anachnu nevarekh Yah ('but we — we will bless the LORD') — the emphatic pronoun anachnu sets up a contrast with the dead of the previous verse. The dead are silent; we will speak. The phrase me'attah ve-ad olam ('from now until forever') matches Psalm 113:2, creating a frame around the Hallel collection. The final Hallelujah closes the psalm with the word that opened it.

116

Summary: *Psalm 116 is a thanksgiving psalm in which an individual who was near death recounts how the LORD heard his cry and delivered him. The psalmist declares his love for the LORD, describes the cords of death and the anguish of Sheol that had seized him, and testifies that the LORD saved his life. He then asks what he can return to God for such deliverance and answers his own question: he will lift the cup of salvation, call on the LORD's name, pay his vows, and offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving — all in the presence of God's people, in the courts of the LORD's house.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's most theologically significant line may be verse 15: 'Precious in the eyes of the LORD is the death of His faithful ones.' This has been read in two very different ways — either that God values the death of His saints (making their death a weighty, significant event that He does not treat lightly) or that God considers their death too costly to allow (making 'precious' mean 'expensive, not to be spent cheaply'). Both readings are grammatically possible, and the context of a psalm about deliverance from death favors the second: God does not let His faithful ones die carelessly. The psalm's structure moves from crisis (vv. 1-4) to deliverance (vv. 5-9) to response (vv. 10-19), modeling the pattern of lament-salvation-thanksgiving that structures much of Israel's worship.*

Translation Friction: *The LXX divides this psalm into two separate psalms (114 and 115 in LXX numbering), splitting at approximately verse 10. This division reflects an ancient debate about whether the psalm is one composition or two. The Hebrew text (followed by the WLC) treats it as a single psalm. The phrase 'I believed, therefore I spoke' (v. 10) is quoted by Paul in 2 Corinthians 4:13, but in a context quite different from the original — Paul applies it to his own suffering and hope of resurrection, extending the psalm's meaning beyond its original scope.*

Connections: *Psalm 116 is part of the Egyptian Hallel (113-118), sung at Passover. Jesus would have sung this psalm at the Last Supper, including the words about the 'cup of salvation' — a striking connection to the cup of the new covenant He was about to institute. Paul quotes verse 10 in 2 Corinthians 4:13. The phrase 'cords of death' (v. 3) echoes Psalm 18:4-5 and 2 Samuel 22:5-6. The vow-paying in the courts of the LORD's house connects to the Temple worship that was central to Israelite thanksgiving.*

¹I love the LORD
because He hears my voice, my pleas for mercy.

²Because He turned His ear toward me,
I will call on Him as long as I live.

³The cords of death wrapped around me;
the straits of Sheol found me.
I found distress and grief.

⁴Then I called on the name of the LORD:
"Please, LORD, rescue my life!"

⁵The LORD is gracious and righteous;
our God shows compassion.

⁶The LORD watches over the vulnerable;
I was brought low, and He saved me.

⁷Return, my soul, to your rest,
for the LORD has dealt generously with you.

⁸For You rescued my life from death,
my eyes from tears,
my feet from stumbling.

⁹I will walk before the LORD
among the living.

¹⁰I believed, even when I said,
"I am severely afflicted."

¹¹I said in my alarm,
"Every person is a liar."

¹²What can I give back to the LORD
for all His gifts to me?

¹³I will lift the cup of salvation
and call on the name of the LORD.

¹⁴I will fulfill my vows to the LORD
in the presence of all His people.

¹⁵Costly in the eyes of the LORD
is the death of His faithful ones.

¹⁶Please, LORD — truly I am Your servant;
I am Your servant, the child of Your maidservant.
You have loosened my bonds.

¹⁷To You I will offer a sacrifice of thanksgiving
and call on the name of the LORD.

¹⁸I will fulfill my vows to the LORD
in the presence of all His people,

¹⁹in the courts of the house of the LORD,
in your midst, Jerusalem.
Praise the LORD!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The syntax of the opening is slightly unusual — ahavti ('I loved/I love') stands without an explicit object. Most translations supply 'the LORD' as the object, which fits the context. The verb yishma ('He hears') is in the imperfect, suggesting ongoing action: the LORD hears — He is always hearing — and that is why the psalmist loves.
2. The phrase hittah ozno li ('He inclined His ear to me') is a vivid anthropomorphism — God bends down, tilts His ear, leans in to listen. The response is ve-yavmai eqra ('and in my days I will call') — for the rest of his life, the psalmist will continue to call on the LORD. The deliverance creates a lifetime of prayer.
3. The word chevlei is ambiguous between 'cords' and 'pangs' — some translations choose one, some the other. The rendering 'cords' is chosen here because it pairs with the image of being wrapped or encircled (afafuni). Sheol is the realm of the dead, not a place of punishment but a place of shadow, silence, and separation from the living.
4. The phrase uv-shem YHWH eqra ('and on the name of the LORD I called') introduces the prayer that saved his life. The prayer itself is terse and desperate: annah YHWH malletah nafshi ('please, LORD, deliver my life'). The word annah ('please, I beg you') is a particle of urgent entreaty. The verb malletah (Piel imperative of malat, 'to slip away, to escape, to deliver') asks God to cause his nefesh ('life, self, soul') to escape death's grip.

5. Three attributes are listed: *channun* ('gracious'), *tzaddiq* ('righteous'), and *merachem* ('compassionate, showing mercy'). The first echoes Exodus 34:6. The second affirms that God's rescue is not arbitrary but just. The third — *merachem*, from the root *racham* ('womb-compassion') — describes a tenderness that is visceral, like a mother's instinct toward her child.
6. The word *peta'im* ('simple ones, naive ones, the inexperienced') describes people who lack the resources or sophistication to protect themselves. The LORD is their *shomer* ('guardian, keeper'). The psalmist identifies with them: *dalloti* ('I was brought low, I was reduced') — from the root *dalal* ('to hang down, to be thin, to be depleted'). In that depleted state, *ve-li yehoshi'a* ('and He saved me').
7. The psalmist addresses his own *nefesh* ('soul, self, inner life'): *shuvi* ('return') to *menuchayikhi* ('your rest, your resting place'). The crisis had displaced his inner peace; now he commands himself to come back to rest. The reason: *ki YHWH gamal alayikhi* ('for the LORD has dealt bountifully upon you'). The verb *gamal* means 'to deal with, to repay, to bring to completion' — God has finished the work of rescue.
8. A threefold deliverance: *nafshi mi-mavet* ('my life from death'), *einai min dim'ah* ('my eyes from tears'), *ragli middechi* ('my feet from stumbling'). The whole person is saved — life, sight, and movement. The verb *chilatzta* ('You rescued, You pulled out') means to pull someone from a tight place, to extricate.
9. The verb *ethalekh* ('I will walk') in the *Hitpael* means 'to walk about, to conduct oneself, to live one's life.' The psalmist will live *lifnei YHWH* ('before the LORD, in the LORD's presence'). The phrase *be-artzot ha-chayyim* ('in the lands of the living') contrasts with *Sheol*, the land of the dead. The deliverance has returned him to the realm of life and worship.
10. The LXX splits the psalm here, making this the beginning of a new psalm (LXX Psalm 115). Paul's quotation in 2 Corinthians 4:13 follows the LXX reading. The Hebrew is genuinely ambiguous and has generated extensive scholarly discussion. The word *aniti* ('I was afflicted') from *anah* ('to be bowed down, afflicted') describes deep suffering.
11. The word *bechofzi* ('in my alarm, in my haste, in my panic') describes a moment of crisis-driven speech. The declaration *kol ha-adam kozev* ('every person is a liar') is an extreme statement born of desperation — when human help failed, the psalmist concluded that all human promises are empty. The psalm does not endorse this as a permanent theology but records it as an honest moment of despair. Paul quotes this in Romans 3:4.
12. The question *mah ashiv la-YHWH* ('what can I return to the LORD?') is not rhetorical despair but genuine gratitude searching for an adequate response. The word *tagmulohi* ('His benefits, His dealings, His gifts') from *gamal* describes the full weight of what God has done. The psalmist knows he cannot repay God but asks what fitting response he can offer.
13. The 'cup of salvation' has deep resonance in Jewish Passover liturgy — the four cups of the Seder each carry theological meaning. Jesus' institution of the cup at the Last Supper (Luke 22:20) would have occurred in the context of singing this very psalm. The verb *essa* ('I will lift, I will carry') is the gesture of offering and public display.
14. *Nedarai la-YHWH ashallem* ('my vows to the LORD I will pay') — the vows made during the crisis will now be fulfilled publicly. The word *negdah* ('in the presence of, before the face of') emphasizes that this is not private devotion but public testimony. The community witnesses the fulfillment, and the testimony becomes part of the communal memory of God's faithfulness.
15. The word *chasidav* ('His faithful ones') is the plural of *chasid*, derived from *chesed* ('faithful love'). A *chasid* is a person characterized by *chesed* — one who both receives and gives covenant loyalty. The rendering 'costly' rather than 'precious' captures the economic metaphor: God treats the death of His faithful as something He is reluctant to spend.
16. The double declaration *ani avdekha* ('I am Your servant') is emphatic — servanthood to God is not a burden but a privilege after deliverance. The phrase *ben amatekha* ('son of Your maidservant') means a servant born in the household, not purchased from outside — the psalmist belongs to God's household by birth and by choice. The verb *pittachta* ('You opened, You loosened') applied to *moserai* ('my bonds, my fetters') means God has set him free from the cords of death that bound him in verse 3.
17. The *zevach todah* ('sacrifice of thanksgiving') was a specific category of peace offering (*shelamim*) described in Leviticus 7:12-15. It included animal sacrifice accompanied by various breads and was eaten communally. The *todah* ('thanksgiving') is not just verbal gratitude but a concrete liturgical act involving food, community, and testimony.
18. This verse is identical to verse 14, forming a liturgical refrain. The repetition is not accidental but structural — it frames the central declarations of verses 15-17 with the commitment to public testimony. The vow-fulfillment brackets the psalm's deepest theological statements.
19. The location is specified: *chatzrot beit YHWH* ('the courts of the LORD's house') — the Temple precincts where public worship and sacrifice took place. The phrase *betokhekhi Yerushalayim* ('in your midst, Jerusalem') personalizes the city as a living entity addressed directly. The psalm ends with *Hallelujah* — the final word of praise that both closes this psalm and connects it to the *Hallel* sequence.

117

Summary: *Psalm 117 is the shortest psalm and the shortest chapter in the Bible — just two verses. It calls on all nations and all peoples to praise the LORD because His faithful love toward Israel is mighty and His faithfulness endures forever. Despite its brevity, the psalm makes a universalist claim that extends Israel's worship to the whole earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's brevity is itself remarkable — it says everything that needs to be said in seventeen Hebrew words. But the theological weight is enormous: the nations are summoned to praise Israel's God. This is not a call for the nations to become Israelites but a declaration that the LORD's faithful love (chesed) toward Israel is so powerful that even the nations should recognize and celebrate it. The logic is: God's covenant love is so great that its effects spill beyond Israel and become visible to the whole world. Paul quotes this psalm in Romans 15:11 as evidence that God always intended to include the Gentiles in His praise.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's call for all nations to praise Israel's God raises the question of why the nations would celebrate God's chesed toward Israel specifically. One answer is that the nations benefit from Israel's blessing — the Abrahamic promise included 'in you all the families of the earth will be blessed' (Genesis 12:3). Another is that the nations, having witnessed God's faithfulness to Israel, recognize that such a God is worthy of universal worship. The psalm does not resolve this tension but holds both ideas together.*

Connections: *Paul quotes Psalm 117:1 in Romans 15:11 as part of his argument that the Hebrew Scriptures always anticipated Gentile inclusion in the worship of Israel's God. The psalm is part of the Egyptian Hallel (113-118) and sits at the exact center of the collection. The pairing of chesed and emet echoes Exodus 34:6 and appears throughout the Psalter. As the middle chapter of the Bible (by chapter count), it has attracted attention from those who see its universalist theme as the Bible's structural center.*

¹Praise the LORD, all nations!

Exalt Him, all peoples!

**²For His faithful love toward us is mighty,
and the faithfulness of the LORD endures forever.
Praise the LORD!**

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The distinction between goyim ('nations' as political entities) and ummim ('peoples' as ethnic or cultural groups) creates a merism — together they mean 'everyone, without exception.' Paul cites this verse in Romans 15:11 in a catena of quotations proving that the inclusion of Gentiles in God's praise was always part of the divine plan.
2. The verb gavar ('to be mighty, to prevail') is the same root as gibbor ('mighty warrior'). Applied to chesed, it means God's faithful love is not gentle sentiment but overpowering force — it conquers. The speaker says 'us' (aleinu), meaning Israel, but the audience is the nations — Israel testifies to the nations about what God's chesed has done.

118

Summary: *Psalm 118 is the climactic finale of the Egyptian Hallel (Psalms 113-118). It opens and closes with the refrain 'Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good — His faithful love endures forever.' Between these frames, a speaker (likely a king or leader) recounts being surrounded by enemies, pushed to the brink, and then rescued by the LORD. The psalm moves from personal testimony to a liturgical procession approaching the Temple gates, culminating in the famous declaration: 'The stone the builders rejected has become the cornerstone.' The psalm celebrates the reversal of human rejection by divine choice.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 118 is the most quoted psalm in the New Testament. 'The stone the builders rejected has become the cornerstone' (v. 22) is applied to Jesus by every gospel writer and by Paul and Peter. 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the LORD' (v. 26) is the crowd's acclamation at the triumphal entry into Jerusalem. 'This is the day the LORD has made' (v. 24) has become one of the most recognized sentences in the Bible. The psalm's theological center is the reversal pattern: what the powerful rejected, God chose. What nations surrounded, God broke through. What was pushed to falling, God upheld. The entire Hallel collection builds to this psalm — the Passover celebration culminates in the declaration that God's faithful love overturns every human verdict.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the speaker is debated — is this a king returning from battle, a personified Israel, or a liturgical 'everyman'? The processional elements (gates, binding the sacrifice, the altar) suggest a specific Temple ceremony, but the language is general enough to be adopted by any worshiper. The 'stone the builders rejected' (v. 22) was originally a metaphor for Israel or its king, rejected by the powerful nations but chosen by God. The New Testament application to Jesus extends this beyond its original scope — which is theologically significant precisely because the pattern of divine reversal operates at multiple levels.*

Connections: *Jesus quotes verse 22 (the rejected stone) in Matthew 21:42, Mark 12:10, and Luke 20:17. Peter quotes it in Acts 4:11 and 1 Peter 2:7. Paul alludes to it in Ephesians 2:20. The crowd quotes verse 26 at the triumphal entry (Matthew 21:9, Mark 11:9, Luke 19:38, John 12:13). Jesus refers to verse 26 in Matthew 23:39 as a prophecy about Jerusalem's future recognition of Him. The Hallel was the last hymn sung at the Last Supper (Matthew 26:30) — Psalm 118 was likely the final psalm Jesus sang before Gethsemane.*

¹Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²Let Israel say:
"His faithful love endures forever."

³Let the house of Aaron say:
"His faithful love endures forever."

⁴Let those who fear the LORD say:
"His faithful love endures forever."

⁵From the narrow place I called on the LORD;
the LORD answered me with wide-open space.

⁶The LORD is for me — I will not fear.
What can any human do to me?

⁷The LORD is for me, among my helpers;
I will look in triumph on those who hate me.

⁸It is better to take refuge in the LORD
than to trust in any human.

⁹It is better to take refuge in the LORD
than to trust in princes.

¹⁰All nations surrounded me,
but in the name of the LORD I cut them off.

¹¹They surrounded me — yes, surrounded me on every side,
but in the name of the LORD I cut them off.

¹²They swarmed around me like bees;
they blazed like a fire of thorns,
but in the name of the LORD I cut them off.

¹³I was pushed hard — pushed to falling,
but the LORD helped me.

¹⁴The LORD is my strength and my song;
He has become my salvation.

¹⁵Shouts of joy and salvation
fill the tents of the righteous:
"The right hand of the LORD acts with power!"

¹⁶The right hand of the LORD is raised high;
the right hand of the LORD acts with power!

¹⁷I will not die but live,
and I will declare the works of the LORD.

¹⁸The LORD disciplined me severely,
but He did not hand me over to death.

¹⁹Open the gates of righteousness for me;
I will enter through them and thank the LORD.

²⁰This is the gate of the LORD;
the righteous will enter through it.

²¹I thank You, for You answered me
and became my salvation.

²²The stone the builders rejected
has become the cornerstone.

²³This is from the LORD;
it is marvelous in our eyes.

²⁴This is the day the LORD has made;
let us rejoice and be glad in it.

²⁵Please, LORD, save us!
Please, LORD, grant us success!

²⁶Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the LORD.
We bless you from the house of the LORD.

²⁷The LORD is God, and He has given us light.
Bind the festival offering with branches

up to the horns of the altar.

²⁸You are my God, and I will thank You;
my God, I will exalt You.

²⁹Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good,
for His faithful love endures forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening formula *hodu la-YHWH ki tov ki le'olam chasdo* ('give thanks to the LORD for He is good, for His faithful love is forever') is shared with Psalms 106:1, 107:1, and 136:1. It functions as a liturgical refrain that frames the entire psalm (repeated in v. 29). The word *chesed* is rendered 'faithful love' — the covenant loyalty that does not expire.
2. The threefold call (Israel, house of Aaron, those who fear the LORD) mirrors Psalm 115:9-11. Each group is invited to affirm the refrain. Israel speaks first as the covenant nation.
3. The priests add their voice to the refrain. As those who minister closest to God's presence, their testimony carries liturgical authority.
4. The third group — *yir'ei YHWH* ('those who fear the LORD') — completes the threefold pattern. This phrase may include God-fearing non-Israelites, extending the scope of praise beyond ethnic boundaries.
5. The word *metzar* comes from the root *tzarar* ('to be narrow, to press, to bind'). It is related to *mitzrayim* ('Egypt'), and some scholars hear an etymological echo here: Egypt was the original 'narrow place' from which Israel cried out to God. The *merchav* ('broad place') is the space of freedom, movement, and possibility.
6. *YHWH li* ('the LORD is for me / the LORD is mine') is a statement of radical allegiance and confidence. The rhetorical question *mah ya'aseh li adam* ('what can a human do to me?') is quoted in Hebrews 13:6. The logic is not that humans are powerless but that their power is nothing compared to having the LORD on one's side.
7. *YHWH li be-ozrai* ('the LORD is for me among those who help me') — God is not merely one helper among many but the decisive helper whose presence changes everything. The phrase *er'eh vesone'ai* ('I will look upon those who hate me') implies seeing their defeat, though the word 'defeat' is not stated — the looking itself is an act of vindication.
8. The word *lachsot* ('to take refuge, to seek shelter') describes the act of running to God for protection. The contrast with *bittoach ba-adam* ('trusting in humans') is not cynicism about people but clarity about where ultimate security lies.
9. The parallel intensifies: if trusting humans generally is inferior to trusting God, trusting *nedivim* ('princes, nobles, powerful leaders') is equally inferior. Even the most powerful human allies cannot provide what the LORD provides.
10. *Kol goyim sevavuni* ('all nations encircled me') — the military imagery describes being completely surrounded. The response is *beshem YHWH ki amilam* ('in the name of the LORD, surely I cut them off'). The verb *mul* (Hiphil: *amil*) means 'to cut off, to circumcise, to remove.' The power to break the siege comes not from military strength but from the name — the authority and presence — of the LORD.
11. The doubled *savvuni gam sevavuni* ('they encircled me, they even encircled me') intensifies the sense of siege. The refrain *beshem YHWH ki amilam* remains unchanged — the response does not escalate with the threat because the LORD's name is already sufficient.
12. Two similes describe the enemies: *kidevorim* ('like bees') — swarming, stinging, relentless — and *ke-esh qotzim* ('like fire of thorns') — fierce and fast but quickly extinguished. Thorn fires burn hot but burn out almost immediately. The enemies are dangerous but unsustainable. The refrain closes the third cycle: in the name of the LORD, they are cut off.
13. *Dachoh dechitani linpol* ('pushing you pushed me to fall') — the emphatic infinitive absolute (*dachoh*) intensifies the verb: the push was severe, determined, intended to destroy. The subject 'you' addresses the enemy directly. The counter-statement is simple: *va-YHWH azarani* ('but the LORD helped me'). The contrast between the elaborate description of the attack and the brief statement of rescue dramatizes the sufficiency of divine help.
14. The phrase *ozzi ve-zimrat Yah* is identical to Exodus 15:2a and Isaiah 12:2. The intertextual connection is deliberate — every subsequent rescue by the LORD is a re-enactment of the Exodus. The word *zimrat* can mean 'song' or 'strength/protection' (from a separate root *zamar* meaning 'to be strong'), and the ambiguity may be intentional.
15. *Qol rinnah vishu'ah* ('the sound of joyful shouting and salvation') fills *be-oholei tzaddiqim* ('the tents of the righteous'). The 'tents' may refer to actual dwellings, to festival booths, or to the encampment metaphor for God's people. The quotation within the psalm — *yemin YHWH osah chayil* ('the right hand of the LORD does valiantly') — is what the righteous are shouting. The *yemin* ('right hand') is the hand of power, of oath-taking, of action.
16. The triple mention of *yemin YHWH* ('the right hand of the LORD') across verses 15-16 creates a drumbeat of celebration. The verb *romemah* ('is raised high, is exalted') pictures God's hand lifted in victory — the image of a warrior who has won the fight and raises his weapon-hand in triumph.

- 17.** The phrase *lo amut ki echyeh* has become one of the most quoted lines in the Psalms. The *ki* ('but, rather') is adversative, creating a sharp contrast: not death but life. The verb *sapper* ('to recount, to tell, to declare') is the verb of testimony — the survivor becomes a witness.
- 18.** *Yassor yisserani Yah* ('disciplining the LORD disciplined me') — the emphatic infinitive absolute acknowledges that the suffering was real and severe, and that it came from the LORD. This is not enemy action alone but divine discipline. Yet *ve-la-mavet lo netanani* ('but to death He did not give me') — the discipline had a limit. God chastened but did not destroy. The distinction between discipline and destruction is crucial: discipline serves a purpose; destruction ends all purpose.
- 19.** The scene shifts to the Temple: *pitchu li sha'arei tzedeq* ('open for me the gates of righteousness'). The *sha'arei tzedeq* ('gates of righteousness') are the Temple gates through which the righteous enter to worship. The psalmist, having survived the crisis, now approaches the place of thanksgiving. The verb *odeh* ('I will give thanks') indicates that the purpose of entering is public testimony.
- 20.** A voice (perhaps a gatekeeper or Levite) responds: *zeh ha-sha'ar la-YHWH* ('this is the gate belonging to the LORD') — the gate is identified as divine property. The condition of entry: *tzaddiqim yavo'u vo* ('the righteous will enter through it'). The exchange suggests a liturgical dialogue between the one approaching and those guarding the entrance.
- 21.** Now inside the gates, the psalmist addresses God directly: *odekha ki anitani* ('I thank You for You answered me'). The verb *anah* ('to answer') confirms that the prayer of distress (v. 5) was heard and responded to. The phrase *vattehi li lishu'ah* ('and You became my salvation') repeats verse 14b, creating a structural echo.
- 22.** The *rosh pinnah* ('head of the corner') is the most important stone in a building — it sets the angle, determines the alignment, and bears the weight of two walls. Some scholars identify it as the capstone rather than the foundation stone, but in either case it is the stone that holds the structure together. Jesus applies this verse to Himself in Matthew 21:42, Mark 12:10, and Luke 20:17. Peter uses it in Acts 4:11 and 1 Peter 2:7.
- 23.** *Me-et YHWH hayetah zot* ('from the LORD this has come about') — the reversal was not human cleverness but divine action. The word *nifla't* ('wonderful, marvelous') comes from the root *pala* ('to be extraordinary, beyond human capacity'). The reversal exceeds what anyone could have planned or expected — it can only be explained as God's work.
- 24.** *Zeh ha-yom asah YHWH* ('this is the day the LORD has made') — the 'day' is not a generic day but this specific day of reversal and vindication. The LORD 'made' it in the sense that He brought it about, orchestrated it, caused it to happen. The response is *nagilah venismechah vo* ('let us exult and rejoice in it') — corporate celebration of what God has done.
- 25.** The double *anna YHWH* ('please, LORD') is urgent entreaty. The verbs *hoshi'ah na* ('save, please!') and *hatzlichah na* ('grant success, please!') form the Hebrew phrase from which 'Hosanna' derives. *Hoshi'ah na* became Hosanna in Greek transliteration — the crowd's cry at Jesus' triumphal entry (Matthew 21:9) is a direct quotation of this verse.
- 26.** In the original liturgical setting, this may have been spoken by the priests to a king or pilgrim arriving at the Temple. In its New Testament application, the phrase takes on messianic significance — Jesus is identified as 'the one who comes' in God's name, and His entry into Jerusalem is framed as a fulfillment of this psalm.
- 27.** *El YHWH vayyaer lanu* ('the LORD is God, and He has shone upon us') — the verb *he'ir* ('to give light, to shine') may refer to the priestly blessing of Numbers 6:25 ('the LORD make His face shine upon you'). The second instruction — *isru chag ba-avotim ad qarnot ha-mizbeach* ('bind the festival offering with cords/branches up to the horns of the altar') — describes the preparation of the sacrifice. The *avotim* can mean 'cords' or 'thick branches.' The *qarnot ha-mizbeach* ('horns of the altar') were the projecting corners of the sacrificial altar.
- 28.** *Eli attah ve-odekka* ('You are my God and I will thank You') — the personal declaration. The shift from communal praise to individual address is intimate: *attah* ('You') is direct, face-to-face language. The psalmist claims God personally — not merely 'our God' but 'my God' — and pledges both thanksgiving (*odekka*) and exaltation (*aromemekka*).
- 29.** The psalm closes with the same refrain that opened it (v. 1): *hodu la-YHWH ki tov ki le'olam chasdo*. The frame is complete. Everything between the two refrains — the distress, the siege, the rescue, the rejected stone, the opened gates, the festival procession — is contained within and explained by the steadfast faithful love of the LORD.

119

Summary: *Psalm 119 is the longest chapter in the Bible: 176 verses organized as an alphabetic acrostic of 22 stanzas, one for every letter of the Hebrew alphabet from aleph to tav. Each stanza contains exactly eight verses, and every verse within a stanza begins with that stanza's Hebrew letter. The psalm is a sustained meditation on God's revealed word, and it cycles through eight Hebrew terms for divine revelation: torah (instruction), edut/edot (testimony/testimonies), piqqudim (precepts), chuqqim (statutes), mitsvot (commandments), mishpatim (judgments/ordinances), davar/devarim (word/words), and imrah (saying/promise). Nearly every verse contains at least one of these eight terms. The psalmist is not writing systematic theology but praying through the alphabet — the entire range of human speech — and filling every letter with devotion to God's instruction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The acrostic structure is not decorative but theological. By writing one stanza for every letter of the Hebrew alphabet, the psalmist says: there is no letter, no sound, no corner of language that cannot be turned toward God's instruction. The alphabet is the raw material of all speech, and the psalmist consecrates every piece of it. The eight rotating torah-words function like a musical theme with variations — each word emphasizes a different facet of revelation (instruction, testimony, precept, statute, command, judgment, word, promise), and their constant recombination across 176 verses creates a kaleidoscopic portrait of what it means to live under God's spoken will. The psalm is also deeply personal: the psalmist weeps, suffers, is persecuted by the arrogant, lies awake at night, and clings to God's word as the one stable reality in a hostile world. This is not a cold catalog of legal terms but an intimate journal of someone who has staked everything on the reliability of what God has said.*

Translation Friction: *Modern readers sometimes experience Psalm 119 as repetitive, but the repetition is the point. This is a meditation manual — it is designed to be prayed slowly, one stanza at a time, the way a musician practices scales. The eight torah-words are not synonyms but overlapping perspectives on the same reality: torah emphasizes instruction and guidance, edut emphasizes witness and testimony, piqudim emphasizes specific charges or appointments, chuqqim emphasizes engraved or permanent decrees, mitsvot emphasizes direct commands, mishpatim emphasizes judicial decisions and case law, davar emphasizes the spoken or communicated word, and imrah emphasizes the personal promise or saying. The psalmist's constant petition for understanding (binah, sekhel, da'at) suggests that knowing God's word is not automatic — it requires ongoing illumination.*

Connections: *Psalm 119 is the climax of the Torah-psalms that begin with Psalm 1 ('Blessed is the one whose delight is in the instruction of the LORD') and Psalm 19 ('The instruction of the LORD is complete, restoring the soul'). It expands the themes of those shorter psalms into a full alphabetic meditation. The eight torah-words echo Deuteronomy's vocabulary for covenant obligation (especially Deuteronomy 4-6). The psalmist's suffering and persecution connect to the lament traditions found throughout the Psalter. The opening beatitude ('Blessed are those whose way is blameless, who walk in the instruction of the LORD') mirrors Psalm 1:1 and frames the entire psalm as a wisdom text.*

¹How blessed are those whose way is blameless,
who walk in the instruction of the LORD.

²How blessed are those who guard his testimonies,
who seek him with their whole heart.

³Indeed they do no wrong;
they walk in his ways.

⁴You yourself have commanded your precepts
to be kept with care.

⁵If only my ways were firmly set
to keep your statutes!

⁶Then I would not be put to shame
when I look at all your commandments.

⁷I will give you thanks with an upright heart
as I learn your righteous judgments.

⁸I will keep your statutes —
do not utterly forsake me.

- ⁹How can a young person keep his path pure?
By guarding it according to your word.
- ¹⁰With my whole heart I seek you;
do not let me stray from your commandments.
- ¹¹In my heart I have treasured your promise,
so that I will not sin against you.
- ¹²Blessed are you, O LORD;
teach me your statutes.
- ¹³With my lips I recount
all the judgments of your mouth.
- ¹⁴In the way of your testimonies I rejoice
as over all wealth.
- ¹⁵On your precepts I will meditate,
and I will fix my gaze on your paths.
- ¹⁶In your statutes I take delight;
I will not forget your word.
- ¹⁷Deal generously with your servant, that I may live
and keep your word.
- ¹⁸Uncover my eyes, that I may see
wondrous things from your instruction.
- ¹⁹I am a stranger in the land;
do not hide your commandments from me.
- ²⁰My soul is crushed with longing
for your judgments at all times.
- ²¹You rebuke the arrogant — they are cursed,
those who stray from your commandments.
- ²²Roll away from me scorn and contempt,
for I have guarded your testimonies.
- ²³Even when rulers sit and conspire against me,
your servant meditates on your statutes.
- ²⁴Yes, your testimonies are my delight,
my counselors.
- ²⁵My soul clings to the dust;
revive me according to your word.

²⁶I told you my ways and you answered me;
teach me your statutes.

²⁷Make me understand the way of your precepts,
and I will meditate on your wonders.

²⁸My soul melts with grief;
raise me up according to your word.

²⁹Remove from me the way of falsehood,
and graciously grant me your instruction.

³⁰I have chosen the way of faithfulness;
your judgments I have set before me.

³¹I cling to your testimonies, O LORD;
do not put me to shame.

³²I will run the way of your commandments,
for you enlarge my heart.

³³Teach me, O LORD, the way of your statutes,
and I will keep it to the end.

³⁴Give me understanding, and I will guard your instruction
and keep it with my whole heart.

³⁵Lead me in the path of your commandments,
for in it I delight.

³⁶Turn my heart toward your testimonies
and not toward selfish gain.

³⁷Turn my eyes away from looking at worthless things;
revive me in your way.

³⁸Confirm your promise to your servant,
which leads to fearing you.

³⁹Take away the disgrace I dread,
for your judgments are good.

⁴⁰See how I long for your precepts!
Revive me in your righteousness.

⁴¹Let your faithful love come to me, O LORD —
your salvation, according to your promise.

⁴²Then I will have an answer for those who taunt me,
for I trust in your word.

⁴³Do not snatch the word of truth from my mouth entirely,
for I put my hope in your judgments.

⁴⁴I will keep your instruction continually,
forever and ever.

⁴⁵I will walk in a wide open place,
for I have sought your precepts.

⁴⁶I will speak of your testimonies before kings
and will not be ashamed.

⁴⁷I will delight in your commandments,
which I love.

⁴⁸I will lift my hands toward your commandments, which I love,
and I will meditate on your statutes.

⁴⁹Remember your word to your servant,
in which you have given me hope.

⁵⁰This is my comfort in my suffering:
that your promise has revived me.

⁵¹The arrogant mock me bitterly,
but I do not turn from your instruction.

⁵²I remember your judgments from of old, O LORD,
and I find comfort.

⁵³Burning indignation seizes me
because of the wicked who abandon your instruction.

⁵⁴Your statutes have been my songs
in the house of my sojourning.

⁵⁵I remember your name in the night, O LORD,
and I keep your instruction.

⁵⁶This has been my way of life:
that I have guarded your precepts.

⁵⁷The LORD is my portion;
I have promised to keep your words.

⁵⁸I seek your favor with my whole heart;
be gracious to me according to your promise.

⁵⁹I considered my ways
and turned my feet back to your testimonies.

⁶⁰I hurried and did not delay
to keep your commandments.

⁶¹The ropes of the wicked have ensnared me,
but I have not forgotten your instruction.

⁶²At midnight I rise to give you thanks
for your righteous judgments.

⁶³I am a companion of all who fear you,
of those who keep your precepts.

⁶⁴The earth is full of your faithful love, O LORD;
teach me your statutes.

⁶⁵You have dealt well with your servant,
O LORD, according to your word.

⁶⁶Teach me good judgment and knowledge,
for I trust in your commandments.

⁶⁷Before I was humbled I went astray,
but now I keep your promise.

⁶⁸You are good and you do good;
teach me your statutes.

⁶⁹The arrogant smear me with lies,
but I guard your precepts with my whole heart.

⁷⁰Their heart is thick like fat,
but I delight in your instruction.

⁷¹It was good for me that I was humbled,
so that I might learn your statutes.

⁷²The instruction from your mouth is better to me
than thousands of gold and silver pieces.

⁷³Your hands made me and formed me;
give me understanding, that I may learn your commandments.

⁷⁴Those who fear you see me and rejoice,
for I have put my hope in your word.

⁷⁵I know, O LORD, that your judgments are righteous
and that in faithfulness you humbled me.

⁷⁶Let your faithful love be my comfort,
according to your promise to your servant.

⁷⁷Let your compassion come to me, that I may live,
for your instruction is my delight.

⁷⁸Let the arrogant be put to shame, for they wrong me with lies;
but I — I will meditate on your precepts.

⁷⁹Let those who fear you turn to me,
those who know your testimonies.

⁸⁰Let my heart be blameless in your statutes,
so that I will not be put to shame.

⁸¹My soul wastes away for your salvation;
I put my hope in your word.

⁸²My eyes fail with watching for your promise,
saying, 'When will you comfort me?'

⁸³Though I have become like a wineskin in smoke,
I do not forget your statutes.

⁸⁴How many days must your servant endure?
When will you execute judgment on my pursuers?

⁸⁵The arrogant have dug pits for me —
they who do not follow your instruction.

⁸⁶All your commandments are faithful;
they persecute me with lies — help me!

⁸⁷They nearly destroyed me on earth,
but I did not abandon your precepts.

⁸⁸According to your faithful love, revive me,
and I will keep the testimony of your mouth.

⁸⁹Forever, O LORD,
your word stands firm in heaven.

⁹⁰Your faithfulness endures through all generations;
you established the earth, and it stands.

⁹¹By your judgments they stand today,
for all things are your servants.

⁹²If your instruction had not been my delight,
I would have perished in my suffering.

⁹³I will never forget your precepts,
for by them you have given me life.

⁹⁴I am yours — save me,
for I have sought your precepts.

⁹⁵The wicked lie in wait to destroy me,
but I consider your testimonies.

⁹⁶I have seen a limit to all perfection,
but your commandment is boundlessly wide.

⁹⁷How I love your instruction!
It is my meditation all day long.

⁹⁸Your commandments make me wiser than my enemies,
for they are always with me.

⁹⁹I have more insight than all my teachers,
for your testimonies are my meditation.

¹⁰⁰I understand more than the elders,
for I guard your precepts.

¹⁰¹I hold back my feet from every evil path,
in order to keep your word.

¹⁰²I have not turned from your judgments,
for you yourself have taught me.

¹⁰³How sweet is your promise to my taste —
sweeter than honey to my mouth!

¹⁰⁴From your precepts I gain understanding;
therefore I hate every false path.

¹⁰⁵Your word is a lamp for my feet
and a light for my path.

¹⁰⁶I have sworn an oath and confirmed it:
to keep your righteous judgments.

¹⁰⁷I am deeply afflicted;
O LORD, revive me according to your word.

¹⁰⁸Accept the freewill offerings of my mouth, O LORD,
and teach me your judgments.

¹⁰⁹My life is constantly in my hands,
yet I do not forget your instruction.

¹¹⁰The wicked set a trap for me,
but I do not stray from your precepts.

¹¹¹Your testimonies are my inheritance forever,
for they are the joy of my heart.

¹¹²I incline my heart to perform your statutes
forever, to the very end.

¹¹³I hate the double-minded,
but your instruction I love.

¹¹⁴You are my shelter and my shield;
I put my hope in your word.

¹¹⁵Depart from me, you evildoers,
for I will guard the commandments of my God.

¹¹⁶Sustain me according to your promise, that I may live,
and do not let me be ashamed of my hope.

¹¹⁷Support me, and I will be saved;
I will gaze on your statutes continually.

¹¹⁸You reject all who stray from your statutes,
for their cunning is a lie.

¹¹⁹You remove all the wicked of the earth like dross;
therefore I love your testimonies.

¹²⁰My flesh shudders in awe of you,
and I stand in fear of your judgments.

¹²¹I have done what is just and right;
do not abandon me to my oppressors.

¹²²Be your servant's guarantor for good;
do not let the arrogant oppress me.

¹²³My eyes fail with watching for your salvation
and for your righteous promise.

¹²⁴Deal with your servant according to your faithful love,
and teach me your statutes.

¹²⁵I am your servant; give me understanding,
that I may know your testimonies.

¹²⁶It is time for the LORD to act,
for they have broken your instruction.

¹²⁷Therefore I love your commandments
more than gold, more than fine gold.

¹²⁸Therefore I consider all your precepts — every one of them — right,
and I hate every false path.

¹²⁹Your testimonies are wonderful;
therefore my soul guards them.

¹³⁰The unfolding of your words gives light;
it gives understanding to the simple.

¹³¹I open my mouth and pant,
for I long for your commandments.

¹³²Turn to me and be gracious to me,
as is your way with those who love your name.

¹³³Steady my steps by your promise,
and let no iniquity rule over me.

¹³⁴Ransom me from human oppression,
and I will keep your precepts.

¹³⁵Make your face shine upon your servant,
and teach me your statutes.

¹³⁶Streams of water flow from my eyes
because they do not keep your instruction.

¹³⁷You are righteous, O LORD,
and your judgments are upright.

¹³⁸You have commanded your testimonies in righteousness
and in great faithfulness.

¹³⁹My zeal consumes me,
because my enemies have forgotten your words.

¹⁴⁰Your promise is thoroughly refined,
and your servant loves it.

¹⁴¹I am small and despised,
but I do not forget your precepts.

¹⁴²Your righteousness is righteousness forever,
and your instruction is truth.

¹⁴³Trouble and distress have found me,
but your commandments are my delight.

¹⁴⁴Your testimonies are righteous forever;
give me understanding, and I will live.

¹⁴⁵I cry out with my whole heart — answer me, O LORD!
I will guard your statutes.

¹⁴⁶I call to you — save me,
and I will keep your testimonies.

¹⁴⁷I rise before dawn and cry for help;
I put my hope in your word.

¹⁴⁸My eyes are open before the night watches,
that I may meditate on your promise.

¹⁴⁹Hear my voice according to your faithful love;
O LORD, revive me according to your judgment.

¹⁵⁰Those who pursue evil schemes draw near;
they are far from your instruction.

¹⁵¹You are near, O LORD,
and all your commandments are truth.

¹⁵²Long ago I learned from your testimonies
that you established them forever.

¹⁵³See my suffering and rescue me,
for I have not forgotten your instruction.

¹⁵⁴Plead my case and redeem me;
revive me according to your promise.

¹⁵⁵Salvation is far from the wicked,
for they do not seek your statutes.

¹⁵⁶Your mercies are great, O LORD;
revive me according to your judgments.

¹⁵⁷My persecutors and enemies are many,
but I do not turn from your testimonies.

¹⁵⁸I look at the faithless and feel disgust,
because they do not keep your promise.

¹⁵⁹See how I love your precepts!
O LORD, revive me according to your faithful love.

¹⁶⁰The sum of your word is truth,
and every one of your righteous judgments endures forever.

¹⁶¹Rulers persecute me without cause,
but my heart stands in awe of your word.

¹⁶²I rejoice over your promise
like one who finds great treasure.

¹⁶³I hate and despise falsehood,
but your instruction I love.

¹⁶⁴Seven times a day I praise you
for your righteous judgments.

¹⁶⁵Great peace belongs to those who love your instruction,
and nothing causes them to stumble.

¹⁶⁶I hope for your salvation, O LORD,
and I do your commandments.

¹⁶⁷My soul keeps your testimonies,
and I love them deeply.

¹⁶⁸I keep your precepts and your testimonies,
for all my ways are before you.

¹⁶⁹Let my cry come before you, O LORD;
give me understanding according to your word.

¹⁷⁰Let my plea come before you;
deliver me according to your promise.

¹⁷¹My lips will pour out praise,
for you teach me your statutes.

¹⁷²My tongue will sing of your promise,
for all your commandments are righteous.

¹⁷³Let your hand be ready to help me,
for I have chosen your precepts.

¹⁷⁴I long for your salvation, O LORD,
and your instruction is my delight.

¹⁷⁵Let my soul live, and it will praise you,
and let your judgments help me.

¹⁷⁶I have wandered like a lost sheep;
seek your servant,
for I have not forgotten your commandments.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aleph stanza (vv. 1-8). Every verse in this stanza begins with the Hebrew letter aleph, the first letter of the alphabet. The psalmist begins at the beginning — with the foundational declaration that blessing flows from walking in God's instruction. The word *ashrei* is a plural construct ('blessings of') functioning as an exclamation — it cannot be reduced to a single English word. 'Happy' is too shallow; 'blessed' risks sounding passive. 'How blessed' preserves the exclamatory force.

2. The verb *natsar* ('to guard, to keep watch over, to preserve') implies active vigilance — God's testimonies (*edotav*) are something to be watched over and protected, not merely obeyed. The word *edot* ('testimonies') comes from the root *ud* ('to witness, to testify') and refers to God's declarations that bear witness to his character and will. Seeking (*darash*) with the whole heart (*bekhol lev*) means undivided pursuit.
3. The word *avlah* ('injustice, wrong, perversity') describes moral crookedness — the opposite of the blameless (*tamim*) way described in verse 1. The emphasis is not that these people never fail but that wrongdoing is not their pattern or trajectory. Their habitual path (*derekh*) is God's path.
4. The pronoun *attah* ('you') is emphatic — you yourself, God, are the one who issued these charges. The word *piqqudim* ('precepts') from the root *paqad* ('to attend to, to charge, to appoint') refers to specific charges or instructions that God has assigned. The adverb *me'od* ('very, exceedingly, diligently') intensifies the command: these are not casual suggestions but charges demanding careful attention.
5. *Achalai* ('if only, would that') expresses intense longing — the psalmist recognizes a gap between the blessedness described in verses 1-3 and his own reality. The verb *yakonu* ('were established, were firmly set') from *kun* means to be fixed, stable, prepared. The psalmist's ways (*derakhay*) are not yet firmly directed toward God's *chuqqim* ('statutes'). This is the psalm's first confession of inadequacy — the meditation begins not with self-congratulation but with desire.
6. The verb *bosh* ('to be ashamed, to be put to shame') describes the experience of being exposed as inadequate — the psalmist knows that looking honestly at God's *mitsvot* ('commandments') reveals how far short he falls. Only if his ways were firmly set (v. 5) could he face all of God's commandments without embarrassment.
7. The phrase *yosher levav* ('uprightness of heart') describes internal integrity — a heart that is straight and undivided. The verb *lamad* ('to learn') is significant: the psalmist is still learning, still in process. The word *mishpetei* ('judgments of') from *shaphat* ('to judge') refers to God's judicial decisions and case rulings — the specific applications of divine justice to real situations.
8. The stanza ends with a pledge and a plea. The psalmist commits to keeping God's statutes (*et chuqqekha eshmo*), but immediately adds a prayer: *al ta'azveni ad me'od* ('do not abandon me exceedingly/utterly'). The juxtaposition is revealing — the psalmist knows that his keeping depends on God's not leaving. Obedience is not a solo achievement but a response to divine presence.
9. Bet stanza (vv. 9-16). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter bet, the second letter of the alphabet. The stanza opens with a practical question: *bammeh yezakkeh na'ar et orcho* ('by what means can a young person purify his way')? The verb *zakhah* ('to be pure, to be clean') and the noun *na'ar* ('young man, youth') together ask how a person at the beginning of life can navigate a straight course. The answer is the *davar* — God's word.
10. The verb *darash* ('to seek, to inquire, to pursue') describes active, intentional pursuit — not passive waiting but going after God. The plea *al tashgeni* ('do not let me stray') uses the Hiphil of *shagah* ('to wander, to err'), asking God to prevent the wandering that the psalmist knows he is capable of.
11. The verb *tsaphan* ('to hide, to treasure, to store up') means more than casual memorization — it describes something precious concealed for safekeeping. The word *imratekha* ('your saying/promise') from the root *amar* ('to say') refers to God's personal utterance, his spoken promise. This is the eighth and final torah-word to appear in the psalm.
12. *Barukh attah YHWH* ('blessed are you, O LORD') is the standard Jewish blessing formula that opens virtually every Hebrew prayer to this day. Here it transitions into petition: *lammedeni chuqqekha* ('teach me your statutes'). The verb *lamad* in the Piel ('to teach') asks God to be the instructor.
13. The verb *sippar* ('to recount, to declare, to tell') describes public recitation — the psalmist does not keep God's judgments to himself but speaks them aloud. The phrase *mishpetei fikha* ('judgments of your mouth') personalizes the source: these judgments come from God's own mouth.
14. The verb *sas* ('to rejoice, to exult') expresses delight — the psalmist finds joy in the path marked out by God's testimonies. The comparison *ke'al kol hon* ('as over all wealth') is striking: the psalmist's pleasure in God's testimonies equals or exceeds what others feel about riches.
15. The verb *siach* ('to meditate, to muse, to ponder, to talk to oneself') describes active mental engagement — not passive reading but turning something over in the mind. The verb *nabat* ('to look at, to gaze upon') in the Hiphil (*abbittah*) means to fix one's attention deliberately. Both verbs describe focused, sustained attention.
16. The verb *sha'a* in the Hitpael (*eshtasha*) describes luxuriant enjoyment — this is not dutiful compliance but genuine pleasure. The pledge *lo eshbach devarekha* ('I will not forget your word') closes the stanza with a commitment to memory.
17. Gimel stanza (vv. 17-24). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter gimel. The stanza opens with a petition: *gemol al avdekha* ('deal bountifully with your servant'). The verb *gamal* ('to deal with, to reward, to ripen') asks God to act generously. The purpose clause *echeyeh* ('that I may live') reveals that the psalmist's very survival depends on God's generous dealing.
18. The word *nifla'ot* (Niphal participle of *pala*, 'to be wonderful') refers to things that exceed normal understanding — marvels, wonders. These wonders are described as coming *mittorathekha* ('from your instruction'), suggesting that the torah contains layers of meaning revealed progressively as God opens the reader's eyes.
19. The word *ger* ('stranger, sojourner, resident alien') describes someone living in a land that is not their own, without the rights or security of a native. The psalmist's self-identification as a *ger* suggests that this world is not home — he is passing through and needs God's commandments as a guide for navigation in foreign territory.
20. The verb *garas* ('to crush, to break, to grind') describes physical grinding or crushing — the psalmist's soul (*nephesh*) is being ground to pieces by the intensity of its longing (*ta'avah*) for God's judgments. This is not mild interest but consuming desire. The phrase *bekhol et* ('at all times') means this longing never relents.

21. The verb *ga'ar* ('to rebuke, to blast, to threaten') describes God's forceful reprimand. The *zedim* ('arrogant, presumptuous, proud') are a recurring enemy throughout this psalm — those who willfully disregard God's commands. They are *arurim* ('cursed') — the opposite of the *ashrei* ('blessed') in verse 1.
22. The verb *galal* ('to roll') in the imperative (*gal*) pictures shame as a heavy stone that the psalmist wants God to roll off of him. The words *cherpah* ('reproach, scorn') and *buz* ('contempt') suggest that the psalmist is being mocked for his devotion to God's testimonies.
23. The *sarim* ('rulers, princes, officials') who conspire against the psalmist represent the highest level of opposition — this is not casual mockery but organized, powerful hostility. Against this political threat, the psalmist's response is meditation (*yasiach*) on God's statutes — quiet, sustained attention to divine truth in the face of human power.
24. The word *sha'ashu'ai* ('my delights') from *sha'a* describes luxuriant, overflowing pleasure. The phrase *anshei atsati* ('men of my counsel') personifies the testimonies as trusted advisors — where rulers plot against the psalmist (v. 23), God's testimonies serve as his inner circle of counsel.
25. Dalet stanza (vv. 25-32). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter dalet. This stanza is marked by suffering and urgent petition — the psalmist is in the dust, weeping, melting with grief, and begging God for revival.
26. The verb *sippar* ('to recount, to tell') here describes the psalmist opening his life to God — *derakhay sippiarti* ('my ways I recounted'). This is confession: laying out one's path before God. And God answered (*vatta'aneni*). Now the psalmist asks for the next step: *lammedeni chuqqekha*. The sequence is important: confession, divine response, request for further instruction.
27. The verb *havineni* ('make me understand') from *bin* ('to discern') in the Hiphil is a plea for insight — not just knowledge but comprehension of how the precepts connect and apply. Understanding the precepts opens the door to seeing the wonders (*nifle'otekha*) embedded in them.
28. The verb *dalaf* ('to drip, to weep, to dissolve') describes the soul literally dissolving — *dalefah nafshi mittugah* ('my soul drips/melts from sorrow'). The image is of a person so grief-stricken that they are liquefying. The petition *qayyemeni* ('raise me up, establish me') asks God to give back the solidity that grief has dissolved.
29. The *derekh sheqer* ('way of falsehood') is the opposite of the *derekh emunah* ('way of faithfulness') in verse 30. The psalmist asks God to remove it — *haser* ('take away') — suggesting that the pull toward falsehood cannot be resisted by willpower alone. The petition *vetoratkha chonneni* ('and your instruction graciously grant me') uses *chanan* ('to be gracious') — the granting of torah is an act of grace.
30. The *derekh emunah* ('way of faithfulness') is the psalmist's chosen path — *bacharti* ('I have chosen') is a deliberate, conscious decision. The word *emunah* means faithfulness, reliability, steadfastness. The verb *shivviti* ('I have set, I have placed') means the psalmist has positioned God's judgments directly in front of himself as a constant reference point.
31. The verb *davaq* ('to cling') reappears from verse 25, but now the clinging has shifted: where the soul clung to dust (despair), the psalmist now clings to God's testimonies. The petition *al tevisheni* ('do not put me to shame') echoes verse 6 — shame is the constant fear of one who has staked everything on God's faithfulness.
32. The image of an enlarged heart (*lev rachav*) is the opposite of the narrow, constricted heart of anxiety and fear. When the heart is wide, it can contain more understanding, more desire, more joy, more obedience. The running is the result of the enlarging, not its cause.
33. He stanza (vv. 33-40). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter he. This stanza is dominated by petitions — the psalmist asks God to teach, give understanding, lead, turn the heart, turn the eyes, confirm, and take away. The verb *horeni* ('teach me') from *arah* (the same root as torah) asks God to be the one who points the way. The word *eqev* ('end, consequence') suggests perseverance to the finish.
34. Again the verb *havineni* ('give me understanding') — the Hiphil imperative of *bin*. Understanding is not self-generated but received from God, and when received, it produces wholehearted obedience.
35. The verb *hadrikheni* ('lead me, cause me to tread') from *darakh* in the Hiphil asks God to actively guide the psalmist's steps. The word *nativ* ('path, pathway') describes a narrow, well-worn trail. The motivation is delight: *ki vo chafatsti* ('for in it I take pleasure').
36. The verb *natah* ('to stretch out, to incline, to turn') in the imperative asks God to tilt the psalmist's heart in the right direction. The heart can be inclined toward God's testimonies or toward *batsa* ('unjust gain, selfish profit, greed'). The psalmist does not trust his own heart's direction and asks God to set its angle.
37. The verb *ha'aver* ('cause to pass, turn away') asks God to redirect the psalmist's gaze. The word *shav* ('emptiness, vanity, worthlessness') describes things that have no substance — distractions that pull the eyes away from what matters. The petition *chayyeni* ('revive me') returns, now linked to *bidrekhekha* ('in your way').
38. The verb *haqem* ('establish, confirm') asks God to make his promise (*imrah*) firm in the psalmist's experience. The phrase *asher leyir'atekha* ('which leads to your fear') connects the confirmed promise to the fear of the LORD — when God keeps his word, the natural response is reverent awe.
39. The verb *ha'aver* ('take away') reappears from verse 37. The verb *yagor* ('to fear, to dread') reveals anxiety about being publicly shamed. The ground of his appeal is that God's judgments are *tovim* ('good') — if God's rulings are good, then those who follow them should not be disgraced.
40. The interjection *hinneh* ('see! behold!') draws God's attention to the psalmist's longing. The verb *ta'av* ('to long for, to desire') describes deep yearning for God's precepts. The petition *chayyeni* ('revive me') now rests on *betsidqatekha* ('in your righteousness') — God's own righteous character is the basis for the request.

- 41.** Vav stanza (vv. 41-48). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter vav. The stanza opens with a petition for God's chesed ('faithful love') — the covenant loyalty that defines God's commitment to his people. The word teshu'atekha ('your salvation') parallels the faithful love: salvation is the concrete expression of chesed.
- 42.** The psalmist needs an answer (e'eneh) for his mockers (chorfi, 'those who reproach me'). The answer is not a clever argument but a reality: if God's faithful love comes (v. 41), the psalmist will have something to point to. The basis of his confidence is batachti bidvarekha ('I trust in your word').
- 43.** The verb natsal ('to snatch away') in the Hiphil here means to take away forcefully. The psalmist fears losing the devar emet ('word of truth') — the ability to speak truth. The verb yachal ('to wait, to hope') describes patient expectation directed at God's judgments.
- 44.** The phrase tamid le'olam va'ed ('continually, forever and ever') stacks three time expressions for emphasis. The psalmist's commitment to keeping Torah is not temporary but lifelong and, in his aspiration, eternal.
- 45.** The word rechavah is related to rachav ('wide, broad') from verse 32. The psalmist's experience of freedom is directly connected to his engagement with God's precepts — obedience produces liberty, not bondage.
- 46.** The psalmist envisions speaking (adabberah) of God's testimonies in the presence of melakhim ('kings'). The phrase velo evosh ('and I will not be ashamed') reveals courage rooted in conviction. Where rulers conspired against the psalmist in verse 23, here the psalmist speaks before kings without shame.
- 47.** The verb sha'a in the Hitpael (eshtasha) again describes luxuriant delight. The addition of asher ahavti ('which I love') makes the emotion explicit: delight and love together describe the psalmist's relationship to God's commandments.
- 48.** Lifting hands (essa khappai) is a gesture of prayer, worship, and reaching — the psalmist stretches toward God's commandments as a worshiper stretches toward God. The stanza closes with meditation (asichah) on statutes.
- 49.** Zayin stanza (vv. 49-56). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter zayin. The stanza opens with zekhor ('remember') — an imperative addressed to God. The psalmist is not reminding a forgetful God but calling on God to act on what he has already said.
- 50.** The word nechamati ('my comfort') from nacham identifies what sustains the psalmist through onyi ('suffering, affliction'). The source: ki imratekha chiyatni ('for your promise has revived me'). God's spoken promise has actual life-giving power.
- 51.** The zedim ('arrogant') reappear from verse 21 — persistent antagonists throughout the psalm. The verb luts ('to mock, to scorn') in the Hiphil describes withering ridicule. Despite intense mockery (ad me'od), the psalmist has not turned aside (lo natiti) from God's torah.
- 52.** The phrase me'olam ('from of old') points to God's historical track record of just rulings. Remembering God's past judgments produces comfort (va'etnecham) in the present. In verse 49 the psalmist asked God to remember; here he himself remembers.
- 53.** The word zal'afah ('burning heat, indignation') describes an intense emotional reaction — the psalmist is physically seized (achazatni) by scorching anger at the wicked's abandonment of Torah. The reshaim ('wicked') are defined as ozvei toratekha ('those who abandon your instruction').
- 54.** The word meguray ('my sojourning') from gur ('to sojourn') reinforces the theme from verse 19: the psalmist is a traveler, and God's statutes are his traveling songs.
- 55.** The nighttime remembrance (zakharti ballailah) suggests lying awake — the psalmist's waking hours in the dark are spent remembering God's name (shimkha). The name is not just a label but the full character and identity of God.
- 56.** The demonstrative zo't ('this') sums up everything described in the stanza — the comfort, the songs, the nighttime remembrance — and attributes it all to guarding God's precepts.
- 57.** Chet stanza (vv. 57-64). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter chet. The stanza moves from declaration of God as the psalmist's portion to urgent petition for grace, and it ends with one of the psalm's warmest statements about community.
- 58.** The verb chillah ('to entreat, to seek favor') literally means to make someone's face smooth or pleasant — to seek favorable attention. The petition chonneni ('be gracious to me') from chanan asks for unmerited favor based on God's own promise.
- 59.** The verb chishav ('to think, to reckon, to consider') describes careful self-examination. The result of honest reflection is turning (va'ashivah, 'I caused to return') his feet toward God's testimonies. Self-examination leads to course correction.
- 60.** The verb chush ('to hurry') paired with lo hitmahemahti ('I did not linger') creates urgency — the psalmist did not procrastinate in his return to obedience.
- 61.** The word chevlei ('ropes, cords, snares') from chevel describes being bound or trapped. Despite being physically ensnared, the psalmist's mind remains free: toratekha lo shakhachti ('your instruction I have not forgotten'). The body may be bound, but the memory of Torah cannot be taken.
- 62.** Chatsot lailah ('midnight') is the darkest hour — and the psalmist rises (aqum) not from fear but from gratitude. The midnight thanksgiving for mishpetei tsidqekha ('your righteous judgments') suggests that even in the darkest circumstances, the psalmist finds reason to praise God's justice.
- 63.** The word chaver ('companion, friend') describes a bond based on shared commitment. The psalmist's community is defined not by tribe or geography but by shared reverence for God and shared obedience to his precepts.

- 64.** The declaration chasdekha YHWH male'ah ha'arets ('your faithful love fills the earth') is a cosmic statement — God's chesed saturates the entire created order. From this abundance, the psalmist draws a specific request: teach me your statutes.
- 65.** Tet stanza (vv. 65-72). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter tet. The word tov ('good') is the stanza's theme — the psalmist will use it seven times in eight verses. The opening declaration tov asita ('good you have done') is a retrospective acknowledgment: God has kept his word, and the result has been good.
- 66.** The phrase tuv ta'am vada'at ('good discernment and knowledge') combines two faculties: ta'am ('taste, discernment, judgment') and da'at ('knowledge, awareness'). The psalmist wants both: the capacity to know and the capacity to judge well.
- 67.** The verb anah in the Niphal ('I was humbled/afflicted') is the same root used for the Day of Atonement fasting (Leviticus 16:29). The suffering described is formative — it changed the psalmist's trajectory.
- 68.** The declaration tov attah umetiv ('you are good and you do good') is theologically foundational — God's character (good) and God's actions (does good) are perfectly aligned. If God is good and does good, then teaching his statutes is consistent with his nature.
- 69.** The verb taphal ('to smear, to plaster, to fabricate') describes the arrogant coating the psalmist with falsehood — literally plastering lies onto him. Against this external fabrication, the psalmist opposes internal wholeness: bekhol lev etsor piqqudekha.
- 70.** The verb tapash ('to be gross, to be insensitive') describes the enemies' hearts as chelev ('fat') — insensitive, unable to feel or perceive. A fat heart is a numb heart. Where their heart is deadened, the psalmist's heart is alive with delight (shi'asha'ti) in Torah.
- 71.** This verse completes the thought from verse 67: suffering was pedagogical — it taught what comfort could not teach. The psalmist does not glorify suffering but acknowledges its instructive function.
- 72.** The phrase torat pikha ('the instruction of your mouth') personalizes the torah — it comes from God's own mouth, not from an impersonal legal code. The comparison me'alfei zahav vakhasef ('than thousands of gold and silver') echoes verse 14's comparison to wealth.
- 73.** Yod stanza (vv. 73-80). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter yod. The stanza opens with a creation claim: yadekha asuni vayekhonnenu ('your hands made me and established me'). From this creation comes a logical request: the God who made the psalmist should give him understanding to learn God's commandments.
- 74.** The yere'ekha ('those who fear you') form the psalmist's community. They rejoice when they see him because his hope in God's word is a visible testimony — his perseverance through suffering encourages others who share his reverence.
- 75.** The claim ve'emunah innitani ('in faithfulness you afflicted me') is extraordinary — the suffering was not a failure of God's love but an expression of it. This is the same emunah that defines God's covenant character (Exodus 34:6), now applied to the experience of pain.
- 76.** The combination of chesed ('faithful love') and imrah ('promise') creates a double foundation: God's character (faithful love) and God's speech (his promise). Comfort rests on both who God is and what God has said.
- 77.** The word rachamekha ('your compassion') from rechem ('womb') carries visceral warmth. The psalmist needs this compassion to live (ve'echyeh) — without it, death is the alternative.
- 78.** The psalmist asks that the zedim receive the shame they tried to inflict on him. His response is not retaliation but meditation (asiach) on God's precepts.
- 79.** The verb yashuvu ('let them return') asks for the restoration of community. Persecution may have isolated the psalmist, and he asks God to rebuild his fellowship with the faithful.
- 80.** The prayer yehi libbi tamim ('let my heart be blameless/complete') uses the same word tamim from verse 1 — the psalmist wants the wholeness he praised in others to become his own reality.
- 81.** Kaph stanza (vv. 81-88). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter kaph. This is one of the psalm's darkest stanzas — the psalmist is exhausted, eyes failing, skin shriveled, nearly destroyed. The verb kalah ('to be finished, to be consumed') describes the soul reaching its limit.
- 82.** The eyes fail (khalu) from straining to see the fulfillment of God's promise. The question matai tenachameni ('when will you comfort me?') is one of the psalm's rawest cries — it does not question whether God will comfort but when.
- 83.** A wineskin (no'd) hung in smoke (qitor) shrivels, darkens, and cracks — it becomes useless and unrecognizable. The psalmist uses this image for his own condition: dried out, shrunken, damaged. Yet even in this shriveled state, he has not forgotten God's statutes.
- 84.** The question kammah yemei avdekha ('how many are the days of your servant?') is a plea about the shortness and weariness of life. The psalmist wants God to act while there is still life left.
- 85.** The verb karah ('to dig') describes the zedim setting traps — shichot ('pits') dug in the psalmist's path. The relative clause defines the arrogant by their disregard for Torah.
- 86.** The declaration kol mitsvotekha emunah ('all your commandments are faithfulness') makes emunah the defining quality of everything God commands. The cry ozreni ('help me!') is one of the psalm's most urgent petitions.

- 87.** The word *kim'at* ('almost, nearly') reveals how close the psalmist came to annihilation. Despite being brought to the brink, the psalmist did not abandon God's precepts.
- 88.** The petition *kechasdekha chayyeni* ('according to your faithful love, revive me') makes God's *chesed* the basis for the plea for life. The phrase *edut pikha* ('testimony of your mouth') personalizes the source.
- 89.** Lamed stanza (vv. 89-96). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter lamed. This stanza is the psalm's cosmological high point — it moves from heaven to earth to the limits of perfection, grounded in the permanence of God's word.
- 90.** The phrase *ledor vador* extends God's *emunah* ('faithfulness') across all human history. The proof is the earth itself: *konanta erets vatta'amod* ('you established the earth and it stands'). The ground under our feet testifies to the reliability of the God who set it in place.
- 91.** The entire cosmos stands by God's judgments. The declaration *ki hakkol avadekha* ('for all things are your servants') is breathtaking: everything that exists serves God. The cosmos is not autonomous but obedient.
- 92.** The conditional *lulei* ('if not') introduces a counterfactual: without Torah as delight, the psalmist would have been destroyed by his affliction. This is not hyperbole — the psalmist credits Torah-delight with saving his life.
- 93.** The pledge *le'olam lo eshach* ('I will never forget') is absolute. The reason: *ki vam chiyyitani* ('for by them you have revived me'). The precepts are instruments through which God gives life.
- 94.** The declaration *lekha ani* ('I am yours') is one of the psalm's most intimate statements — a claim of belonging, ownership, covenant identity. Because I belong to you, you are responsible for my rescue.
- 95.** The verb *qivvu* ('they wait, they lie in wait') describes patient, predatory waiting. Against this lethal patience, the psalmist sets his own careful attention: *edotekha etbonan* ('your testimonies I consider').
- 96.** The adjective *rechavah* ('wide, broad') echoes verse 45's *rechavah* ('broad place') — the spaciousness that comes from engaging with God's precepts. Here the broadness is attributed to God's commandment itself.
- 97.** Mem stanza (vv. 97-104). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter mem. The stanza opens with an exclamation of love: *mah ahavti torathekha* ('how I love your instruction!'). Torah-meditation is not a scheduled activity but a constant state of mind.
- 98.** The verb *chakam* in the Piel (*techakkemeni*, 'you make me wise') attributes wisdom directly to God's commandments. The comparative *me'oyevai* ('more than my enemies') says engagement with God's commandments produces wisdom surpassing what opponents possess.
- 99.** The claim is not arrogance but a statement about the source of wisdom: teachers taught the psalmist, but God's testimonies give deeper insight (*sekhel*). The verb *sakhal* describes practical wisdom — the ability to navigate life skillfully.
- 100.** The progression — wiser than enemies (v. 98), more insightful than teachers (v. 99), more understanding than elders (v. 100) — climbs the hierarchy of wisdom. Guarding God's specific instructions produces understanding that exceeds accumulated human experience.
- 101.** The verb *kala'* ('to restrain, to hold back') describes deliberate self-restraint. Restraint from evil is not an end in itself but a means of preserving faithfulness to God's word.
- 102.** The emphasis on *attah* ('you') highlights that God is the personal instructor. When God teaches directly, the student does not wander.
- 103.** The verb *malats* ('to be smooth, to be sweet') describes the sensation of God's promise on the palate. The comparison *middvash* ('sweeter than honey') echoes Psalm 19:10. The psalmist experiences God's word sensorially — it has a taste, and the taste is sweet.
- 104.** Understanding gained from God's precepts produces a moral consequence: hatred of every false path. The stronger one's understanding of truth becomes, the stronger the repulsion toward falsehood.
- 105.** Nun stanza (vv. 105-112). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter nun. The word *ner* is a small, portable oil lamp — the kind a person would carry at night on a dark road. This is not abstract enlightenment but practical illumination for a real journey.
- 106.** The verb *nishba* ('I have sworn') describes a formal oath — a binding commitment. The verb *aqayyemah* ('I will confirm') from *qum* means to stand by the oath, to make it real.
- 107.** The verb *anah* ('to be afflicted') with *ad me'od* ('exceedingly') describes severe suffering. The cry *chayyeni kidvarekha* is the psalm's recurring lifeline.
- 108.** The *nidvot pi* ('freewill offerings of my mouth') are voluntary offerings of praise and prayer — not sacrificial animals but words spoken freely. Worship is the proper posture for receiving instruction.
- 109.** The phrase *nafshi vekhappi tamid* ('my life is in my palm continually') is an idiom for living in constant danger. Despite perpetual risk, the psalmist does not forget Torah.
- 110.** The word *pach* ('trap, snare') describes a concealed device. The traps failed to divert the psalmist from the path.
- 111.** The verb *nachal* ('to inherit') treats God's testimonies as the legacy the psalmist has received and will hold forever. The word *sason* ('joy, exultation') describes the purest happiness.

- 112.** The verb *natah* ('to incline') describes the psalmist deliberately directing his heart toward obedience. In verse 36 he asked God to incline his heart; here he inclines it himself. Both are true — the psalmist acts, and God enables.
- 113.** Samekh stanza (vv. 113-120). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter samekh. The word *se'appim* is rare — it may mean 'divided ones, double-minded people' (from *sa'aph*, 'to divide'). The contrast with loving Torah is clear: the psalmist rejects divided loyalty.
- 114.** The words *sitri* ('my hiding place') and *maginni* ('my shield') describe God as both passive protection (a place to hide) and active protection (a shield that deflects blows).
- 115.** The imperative *suru* ('depart') is addressed directly to the *mere'im* ('evildoers'). The phrase *mitsvot Elohai* ('commandments of my God') uses the personal possessive — my God — emphasizing the personal relationship that motivates obedience.
- 116.** The verb *samakh* ('to support, to sustain') asks God to hold the psalmist up. The plea *al tevisheni misivri* ('do not let me be ashamed of my hope') reveals the deepest fear: that hoping in God might prove to be a mistake.
- 117.** The verb *sa'ad* ('to support, to sustain') is parallel to *samakh* in verse 116. Safety and sustained attention to Torah go together.
- 118.** The verb *salah* ('to reject, to make light of') describes God dismissing those who wander from his statutes. Their *tarmit* ('deceit, cunning') is *sheqer* ('falsehood') — their cleverness is built on nothing.
- 119.** The word *sigim* ('dross, slag') is the waste material from metal refining. God puts away the wicked like impurities being skimmed off molten metal. Because God purifies, the psalmist loves the testimonies that define the standard.
- 120.** The verb *samar* ('to bristle, to shudder') describes a physical reaction — the psalmist's skin prickles and hair stands up in response to God's presence. This is not terror but awe — the bodily response to encountering something overwhelming.
- 121.** Ayin stanza (vv. 121-128). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter ayin. The psalmist claims moral integrity as the basis for petition: do not leave me to my oppressors.
- 122.** The verb *arav* ('to pledge, to be surety') asks God to stand as guarantor — to co-sign the psalmist's future. This is financial language applied to the covenant relationship.
- 123.** As in verse 82, the eyes fail from straining to see deliverance. Both God's saving act and God's righteous word are delayed, and the waiting exhausts the psalmist's sight.
- 124.** The petition asks God to let *chesed* be the standard by which he treats the psalmist — not strict justice but covenant loyalty.
- 125.** The declaration *avdekha ani* ('your servant I am') reaffirms the psalmist's identity. Knowledge of God's testimonies comes only through divinely given understanding.
- 126.** The phrase *et la'asot laYHWH* ('it is time for the LORD to act') is an urgent call for divine intervention. The verb *parar* ('to break, to annul') in the Hiphil describes deliberate shattering of Torah.
- 127.** Because others break Torah, the psalmist loves it more. The comparison uses two words for gold — *zahav* and *paz* (the purest, most refined gold). Even the finest gold falls short.
- 128.** The emphatic repetition *kol piqudei khol* ('all precepts, all of them') insists on comprehensiveness. The stanza closes with hatred of falsehood that matches verse 104.
- 129.** Pe stanza (vv. 129-136). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter pe. The word *pela'ot* ('wonderful, beyond comprehension') describes the testimonies as exceeding normal understanding. The response to wonder is guarding.
- 130.** The word *petayim* ('simple, naive') from *patah* describes someone open and impressionable — capable of being shaped for good or ill. God's words provide the shaping that turns simplicity into understanding.
- 131.** The verb *pa'ar* ('to open wide') and *sha'aph* ('to gasp, to pant') together picture someone gasping for air. The psalmist pants for God's commandments the way a thirsty animal pants for water.
- 132.** The phrase *kemishpat le'ohavei shemekha* ('according to the custom for those who love your name') appeals to precedent: God has a pattern of being gracious to his lovers, and the psalmist asks to be included.
- 133.** The verb *kun* ('to establish, to make firm') asks God to make the psalmist's steps stable. The verb *shalat* ('to rule, to have dominion') pictures sin as a potential ruler — the psalmist asks God to prevent sin from exercising sovereignty over his life.
- 134.** The verb *padah* ('to ransom, to redeem') asks God to pay the price to free the psalmist from oppression. Obedience is the fruit of liberation.
- 135.** The petition *panekha ha'er* ('make your face shine') echoes the Aaronic blessing of Numbers 6:25. The shining face of God represents favor, attention, and warmth.
- 136.** The word *palgei* (from *peleg*, 'channel, stream') describes permanent water channels, not temporary rivulets. The psalmist's weeping is sustained, not episodic.

- 137.** Tsade stanza (vv. 137-144). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter tsade. The stanza opens with a declaration of God's character: tsaddiq attah YHWH. God's judgments are yashar ('upright, straight, level') — not crooked or biased.
- 138.** God's testimonies are characterized by tsedek ('righteousness') and emunah ('faithfulness') — righteous in content and faithful in reliability.
- 139.** The verb tsamat ('to destroy, to consume') describes the psalmist being consumed by his own qin'ah ('zeal'). The cause is that his enemies have forgotten God's words — this is covenant grief, not self-pity.
- 140.** The adjective tserufah ('refined, purified') from tsaraph ('to smelt, to refine') describes God's promise as having passed through fire — all impurities burned away. This is metallurgy applied to speech.
- 141.** The psalmist describes himself as tsa'ir ('small, insignificant') and nivzeh ('despised'). Faithfulness to God's word is not a function of social standing.
- 142.** God's righteousness does not expire or diminish. And vetebratekha emet ('your instruction is truth') equates Torah with truth itself. Two of the psalm's most absolute claims.
- 143.** The words tsar ('trouble, narrowness') and matsoq ('anguish, straits') describe being hemmed in — the opposite of the spaciousness of verse 45. Delight persists even when circumstances squeeze.
- 144.** Eternal truth requires ongoing personal illumination. The testimonies do not change, but the psalmist must continually receive new capacity to understand them.
- 145.** Qoph stanza (vv. 145-152). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter qoph. The stanza is marked by urgent crying — the psalmist calls, rises early, stays up late, all in desperate petition.
- 146.** The cry hoshi'eni ('save me') is direct and unadorned. Rescue frees the psalmist for obedience.
- 147.** The verb qiddam ('to precede, to come before') with banneshef ('in the twilight/dawn') means the psalmist gets up before the sun. The predawn darkness is filled with crying and hope.
- 148.** The ashmurot ('night watches') are the divisions of the night. The psalmist's eyes are already open before each watch begins — he stays awake to meditate on God's promise.
- 149.** The petition combines two appeals: hear me according to chesed and revive me according to mishpat. Both God's love and God's justice point toward life.
- 150.** The spatial contrast is vivid: the pursuers of zimmah ('evil schemes') draw near to the psalmist but are far from God's instruction. Physical proximity to the wicked corresponds to their spiritual distance from Torah.
- 151.** Against the nearness of the wicked (v. 150), the psalmist affirms: qarov attah YHWH ('you are near'). God is closer than the enemies. And all God's commandments are emet ('truth').
- 152.** The word qedem ('long ago') indicates the psalmist has known this for a long time. The verb yasad ('to found, to establish') pictures the testimonies as having an unshakable foundation — grounded for eternity.
- 153.** Resh stanza (vv. 153-160). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter resh. The stanza opens with a plea to be seen: re'eh onyi ('see my suffering'). The verb chalats ('to draw out, to rescue') asks God to pull the psalmist out of danger.
- 154.** The verb riv ('to contend, to plead a case') asks God to serve as legal advocate. The verb ga'al ('to redeem, to act as kinsman-redeemer') asks God to buy the psalmist back. Both are legal-relational terms: God as lawyer and God as redeemer.
- 155.** Those who refuse to seek God's decrees cut themselves off from salvation. The logic is causal: no seeking, no finding.
- 156.** God's rachamim ('mercies, compassion') are rabbim ('many, great'). God's judgments point toward life, not death.
- 157.** Despite being outnumbered, the psalmist has not turned aside from God's testimonies.
- 158.** The word bogedim ('faithless, treacherous') describes covenant breakers. The verb qut in the Hitpolel describes a visceral reaction of loathing.
- 159.** The imperative re'eh asks God to look at the psalmist's love. Human love for God's precepts and divine faithful love together form the ground of the plea for revival.
- 160.** The word rosh is debated: 'the beginning of your word is truth' (temporal) or 'the sum of your word is truth' (comprehensive). The rendering 'the sum of your word' captures the comprehensive sense.
- 161.** Shin stanza (vv. 161-168). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter shin. The sarim from verse 23 return. The verb pachad ('to tremble, to be in awe') describes the heart's response to God's word as more powerful than its response to human threats.
- 162.** The comparison kemetse shalal rav ('like one who finds great plunder') evokes the elation of discovering vast, unexpected treasure. God's promise is windfall wealth.
- 163.** Two verbs of revulsion (sane'ti and va'ata'evah) are stacked against one verb of love. The psalmist despises deception with double intensity and loves Torah with simple, direct affection.

- 164.** The number sheva ('seven') may be literal or may represent completeness — the psalmist praises God a full, complete number of times throughout the day.
- 165.** The word shalom from shalem ('to be complete, to be whole') is one of the richest words in Hebrew. Here modified by rav ('great'), it describes overflowing peace from loving God's instruction. The word mikshol ('stumbling block') comes from kashal ('to stumble').
- 166.** Hope and obedience coexist. The psalmist does not wait passively for God to act but obeys actively while waiting.
- 167.** Soul-keeping and deep love together describe the most complete devotion possible.
- 168.** The motivating clause *ki khol derakhay negdekha* ('for all my ways are before you') reveals awareness that God sees everything. Nothing is hidden, and this awareness motivates faithfulness.
- 169.** Tav stanza (vv. 169-176). Every verse begins with the Hebrew letter tav, the last letter of the Hebrew alphabet. The psalm's final stanza is a cascade of petitions — the psalmist has reached the end of the alphabet and pours out his final requests.
- 170.** The word *techinnati* ('my supplication, my plea for grace') from *chanan* is a request for unmerited favor. The petition *hatssileni* ('deliver me') asks God to snatch the psalmist out of danger.
- 171.** The verb *nava* ('to bubble up, to pour forth') describes praise flowing from the lips like water from a spring. Teaching produces praise.
- 172.** The verb *anah* ('to answer, to sing, to respond') describes the tongue responding to God's promise — the tongue sings because it has been addressed.
- 173.** The petition asks for God's active intervention — his hand, not just his attention. The basis is choice: *ki piqudekha bacharti* ('for I have chosen your precepts').
- 174.** The psalmist's longing for God's salvation is undiminished at the psalm's end. And *toratekha sha'ashu'ai* ('your instruction is my delight') repeats the central claim one final time.
- 175.** The petition *techi nafshi* ('let my soul live') is the psalm's final cry for life. The purpose of life is praise: *utehallekka*. Life is not an end in itself but the means by which praise continues.
- 176.** This final verse reframes the entire psalm. The psalmist is not a paragon of perfection but a wanderer who loves what he cannot perfectly keep. The tension between 'I have not forgotten your commandments' and 'I have wandered like a lost sheep' is the tension of the entire human relationship with God's word: we know it, we love it, we stray from it, and we need to be found.

120

Summary: *Psalm 120 is the first of the fifteen Songs of Ascents (Psalms 120-134), a collection traditionally associated with pilgrimage to Jerusalem. The psalmist cries out to the LORD from a place of exile among deceitful, war-loving people. He describes himself as living in Meshech and dwelling among the tents of Kedar — both far-flung locations that represent hostile foreign territory. The psalm is a lament of displacement: the psalmist longs for peace but is surrounded by those who want war.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Songs of Ascents (shir ha-ma'alot) are the 'pilgrimage playlist' of ancient Israel — songs sung by worshipers as they traveled up to Jerusalem for the three annual festivals. Psalm 120 begins the journey at the point of maximum distance from Jerusalem, both geographically and spiritually. The psalmist is among liars and warmongers, far from the peace of Zion. The collection will gradually move closer to Jerusalem and the Temple, arriving at the priestly blessing in Psalm 134. The structure of the entire collection enacts the journey from exile to worship. Beginning with a lament is significant: the pilgrimage does not start from a place of strength but from a place of suffering.*

Translation Friction: *Meshech was a region in Anatolia (modern Turkey), and Kedar was an Arabian desert tribe — placing the psalmist simultaneously in both locations is geographically impossible. Most scholars understand these as metaphorical: Meshech and Kedar represent the far north and the far south, together meaning 'I am as far from Jerusalem as it is possible to be.' The psalm's language about lying lips and deceitful tongues suggests the psalmist's primary suffering is social rather than physical — he is surrounded by people who cannot be trusted.*

Connections: Psalm 120 begins the Songs of Ascents (120-134), a coherent collection with its own internal progression. The theme of lying tongues connects to Psalms 12, 52, and 140. Meshech appears in Genesis 10:2 and Ezekiel 38-39 as a distant, threatening people. Kedar appears in Song of Solomon 1:5, Isaiah 21:16-17, and Jeremiah 49:28-29 as desert-dwelling warriors. The longing for shalom ('peace') in verse 7 anticipates Psalm 122:6-8, where the pilgrim prays for the peace of Jerusalem.

¹A Song of Ascents.

In my distress I called to the LORD,
and He answered me.

²LORD, rescue my life
from lying lips,
from the deceitful tongue.

³What will He give you,
and what more will He add to you,
you deceitful tongue?

⁴Sharp arrows of a warrior,
with burning coals of broom wood.

⁵What misery for me,
that I live as a foreigner in Meshech,
that I dwell among the tents of Kedar!

⁶Too long my soul has lived
among those who hate peace.

⁷I am for peace,
but when I speak, they choose war.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription shir ha-ma'alot appears on all fifteen psalms of this collection. The word ma'alot comes from the root alah ('to go up, to ascend'). The phrase batzaratah li ('in my distress, in my narrow place') uses tzarah ('distress, trouble, tight place'), the same word family as metzar in Psalm 118:5. The pilgrimage begins from a place of constriction.
2. The prayer hatzilah nafshi ('rescue my life') is directed against sfat sheqer ('lips of falsehood') and lashon remiyyah ('tongue of deceit'). The psalmist's primary enemy is not a sword but a mouth. The suffering described throughout this psalm is social and verbal — he is surrounded by people whose words are weapons. The word remiyyah ('deceit, treachery') suggests calculated deception, not casual dishonesty.
3. The formula mah yitten lekha umah yossif lakh parallels the oath formula koh ya'aseh lekha Elohim ve-koh yossif ('thus may God do to you and thus may He add'). By using this pattern, the psalmist implies that the deceitful tongue is under divine oath-curse — God will deal with it as one deals with a perjurer.
4. The retamim ('broom wood, broom plant') is identified with Retama raetam, a desert shrub whose roots produce charcoal of exceptional heat and duration. Bedouin traditions confirm that broom-wood coals retain heat far longer than other fuels. The imagery suggests a slow, thorough burning — not a flash fire but sustained heat.
5. The verb garti ('I sojourned') means to live as a resident alien, without permanent rights or status. The verb shakhanti ('I dwelt') is the same root as the Shekhinah (divine presence) and the mishkan (tabernacle) — but here the psalmist dwells not in God's presence but among those hostile to God's people. The contrast is painful.
6. Rabbat shakhenah lah nafshi im sonch shalom ('too long has my soul dwelt with those who hate peace') — the word rabbat ('much, too much, too long') expresses exhaustion. The psalmist has endured this exile beyond what is bearable. His neighbors are described as sonch shalom ('those who hate peace') — peace itself is what they oppose. The word shalom ('peace, wholeness, well-being') is the opposite of everything the psalmist's environment represents.

7. The stark brevity of the final line is powerful: ani shalom ('I — peace') versus hemmah lammilchamah ('they — for war'). The contrast is absolute. The psalmist does not elaborate or explain — the two realities are placed side by side and left to speak for themselves. The lack of resolution is deliberate: the Songs of Ascents will provide the resolution as the pilgrim moves progressively closer to Jerusalem across Psalms 121-134.

121

Summary: *A pilgrim lifts his eyes toward the hills surrounding Jerusalem and asks where help will come from. The answer is immediate and absolute: from the LORD, maker of heaven and earth. The psalm then unfolds as a sustained assurance of divine protection — God does not sleep, does not slumber, guards every step, shields from sun and moon, and keeps the traveler from all harm, now and forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm pivots on a single question and answer in verses 1-2, then spends the remaining six verses elaborating that answer with escalating confidence. The verb shamar ('to keep, to guard') appears six times in eight verses — an extraordinary density that turns the psalm into a litany of watchfulness. God is not merely powerful; God is attentive. The negation in verses 3-4 is emphatic: the one who guards Israel lo yanum ve-lo yishan ('neither slumbers nor sleeps'). In a world where ancient peoples believed their gods slept (Elijah mocks Baal's worshipers with this in 1 Kings 18:27), this claim is radical. The God of Israel is perpetually awake, perpetually watching.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'I lift my eyes to the hills' (essa einai el heharim) has been romanticized in English-speaking devotion as a statement of finding comfort in nature. The Hebrew is more ambiguous — the hills could be the Judean hills where Jerusalem sits, but they could also be the high places where pagan shrines operated. The question 'where does my help come from?' may carry an edge: not from the hilltop altars, but from the LORD who made the hills themselves. The pilgrimage context supports this reading — the traveler is en route to Jerusalem and passing hills dotted with competing shrines.*

Connections: *As the second of the fifteen Songs of Ascents (Psalms 120-134), this psalm moves the pilgrim from the distress of Psalm 120 (dwelling among hostile people) to active trust on the road to Jerusalem. The six-fold repetition of shamar anticipates Psalm 127:1 ('unless the LORD guards the city'). The declaration that God is 'maker of heaven and earth' (oseh shamayim va-arets) becomes a liturgical refrain in the Ascents collection (see Psalms 124:8, 134:3).*

¹A song of ascents.

I lift my eyes to the hills —
where does my help come from?

²My help comes from the LORD,
maker of heaven and earth.

³He will not let your foot slip —
your guardian does not slumber.

⁴Look — he neither slumbers nor sleeps,
the guardian of Israel.

⁵The LORD is your guardian;
the LORD is your shade at your right hand.

⁶The sun will not strike you by day,
nor the moon by night.

⁷The LORD will guard you from all harm;
he will guard your life.

⁸The LORD will guard your going out and your coming in,
from this moment and forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The definite article on heharim ('the hills') specifies particular hills — the hills the pilgrim can see, the hills on the road to Jerusalem. These are not abstract mountains but the terrain of the journey.
1. The question-and-answer format in verses 1-2 may reflect antiphonal singing: one voice asks, another responds. This liturgical structure was common in pilgrimage worship.
2. The answer is fronted for emphasis: ezri me-im YHWH ('my help — from the LORD'). The title oseh shamayim va-arets ('maker of heaven and earth') is not decorative; it grounds the pilgrim's confidence in God's sovereignty over all created reality. The God who made the hills is greater than anything on them.
3. The verb mot ('to slip, to totter, to be shaken') describes the danger of losing footing on mountain paths. The promise is viscerally physical: God watches the pilgrim's feet on uneven ground. The shift from first person ('my help') to second person ('your foot') may indicate a priestly or companion voice now addressing the pilgrim directly.
4. We render hinneh as 'look' rather than the archaic 'behold.' The Hebrew particle is attention-grabbing and conversational, not formal.
4. The escalation from yanum to yishan is deliberate. yanum is a light doze; yishan is deep sleep. The psalm denies both, from the lesser to the greater.
5. Tsilekha ('your shade') is not metaphorical luxury — for a pilgrim walking through the Judean wilderness under Mediterranean sun, shade is survival. The right hand (yad yeminekha) is the side of vulnerability in battle, where a warrior's sword arm leaves the body exposed. God positions himself precisely where the pilgrim is most unprotected.
6. The verb yakkekah ('strike you') is strong — the same verb used for military attack. The sun's assault is heatstroke, a real danger for ancient travelers. The moon's striking is less obvious to modern readers; ancient Near Eastern belief held that moonlight could cause illness, madness, or seizures (the English word 'lunatic' preserves this idea). The pairing covers the full cycle: day and night, the pilgrim is shielded.
7. The word ra here means 'harm' or 'calamity' rather than moral evil — the psalm promises protection from danger, not from temptation. The parallel yishmor et nafshekha ('he will guard your life/soul') uses nefesh in its primary Hebrew sense of 'life, self, being' — not the Greek philosophical concept of an immaterial soul. God guards the whole person.
8. The phrase 'going out and coming in' (tset u-vo) is a standard Hebrew merism for the totality of daily life. It appears in Deuteronomy 28:6, where God blesses Israel's going out and coming in as part of the covenant blessings. The pilgrim psalm echoes covenantal language.

122

Summary: A psalm of David for pilgrimage. The speaker recalls the joy of being invited to go to the house of the LORD, then describes standing within Jerusalem's gates. The city is praised as a compact, unified place where the tribes gather for worship and where thrones of justice stand. The psalm closes with a prayer for Jerusalem's peace and prosperity — for the sake of family, friends, and the house of the LORD.

What Makes This Remarkable: This is the only Song of Ascents attributed to David, and it reads as though the pilgrim has arrived — feet are standing inside Jerusalem (v. 2). The psalm is structured around the name Yerushalayim, which appears three times (vv. 2, 3, 6) and whose sound echoes in the repeated shalom ('peace') of the closing verses. The wordplay shalu shalom Yerushalayim ('pray for the peace of Jerusalem') links the city's name to its destiny: Jerusalem is the city whose very name contains shalom, yet whose history is marked by conflict. The prayer for peace is both a wish and a reminder of what the name promises.

Translation Friction: The Davidic attribution (le-David) is debated. The psalm assumes a standing temple and established pilgrimage practice, which some scholars date later than David. However, the attribution may indicate Davidic authorship of a core text later adapted for pilgrimage use, or it may designate the psalm as belonging to a Davidic collection. The phrase sheshom alah shivtei Yah ('where the tribes of Yah go up') uses the shortened form of the divine name (Yah rather than YHWH), which is characteristic of liturgical

and poetic speech.

Connections: The prayer for Jerusalem's peace connects forward to Isaiah 62:6-7, where watchmen on Jerusalem's walls are commanded never to be silent until God establishes the city. The description of Jerusalem as a city 'joined together' (she-chubberah lah yachdav) anticipates the eschatological vision of a restored, unified Jerusalem in Ezekiel 48. The thrones of the house of David (v. 5) connect to the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7.

¹A song of ascents. Of David.

I was glad when they said to me,
"Let us go to the house of the LORD."

²Our feet are standing
within your gates, Jerusalem.

³Jerusalem — built as a city
joined firmly together,

⁴There the tribes go up,
the tribes of Yah —
a decree for Israel —
to give thanks to the name of the LORD.

⁵For there the thrones of justice are set,
the thrones of the house of David.

⁶Pray for the peace of Jerusalem:
"May those who love you be secure."

⁷May peace be within your walls,
security within your citadels.

⁸For the sake of my brothers and friends,
let me say, "Peace be in you."

⁹For the sake of the house of the LORD our God,
I will seek your good.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Davidic superscription (le-David) appears on only four of the fifteen Songs of Ascents (122, 124, 131, 133). Whether this indicates authorship or dedication to a Davidic collection remains debated. The psalm presupposes an established pilgrimage system and a standing temple.
1. samachti is in the perfect tense, suggesting the joy is recalled — the pilgrim remembers the moment of invitation, perhaps now standing in Jerusalem looking back at that first summons.
2. The participle omedot ('standing') conveys present experience — the pilgrim is there, feet on the ground, inside the city. The shift from past tense (samachti, 'I was glad') to present participle creates a vivid sense of arrival. The gates (she'arayikh) are the entry points of the walled city, places of commerce, judgment, and greeting.
3. The verb chubberah is a pual passive participle — the city has been joined. The agent is unstated, which may imply divine agency: God is the one who bound this city together. The word yachdav ('together, as one') reinforces the theme of unity that dominates the psalm.
4. The shortened divine name Yah (shivtei Yah, 'tribes of Yah') is a poetic and liturgical form of YHWH, found frequently in Psalms and in the exclamation Hallelu-Yah. The phrase edut le-Yisrael ('a decree/testimony for Israel') refers to the commandment requiring pilgrimage to Jerusalem three times yearly (Deuteronomy 16:16). The purpose of the ascent is lehodot le-shem YHWH ('to give thanks to the name of the LORD') — thanksgiving is the engine of pilgrimage.

5. Jerusalem is not only a worship center but a judicial capital. The thrones (kis'ot) are seats of royal judgment. The phrase le-mishpat ('for justice') defines their purpose: the Davidic kings administer justice from Jerusalem. The repetition of kis'ot ('thrones') in parallel emphasizes the permanence and legitimacy of Davidic rule. This verse connects worship and governance — the same city that houses God's temple houses the king's court.
6. The wordplay sha'alu shalom Yerushalayim yishlayu is untranslatable in its full sonic density. Three words from the sh-l-m root cluster together. We translate for meaning, but the original creates an experience of the word shalom reverberating through the sentence.
7. chelekh ('your rampart, your outer wall') refers to the defensive fortifications surrounding the city. Armnotayikh ('your citadels, your palaces') refers to the inner strongholds and royal residences. The prayer moves from outer wall to inner palace — may peace saturate the city from its perimeter to its heart. The word shalvah ('security, tranquility, ease') is a cognate of shalom, continuing the sonic pattern.
8. The motivation shifts to the personal: the pilgrim prays for Jerusalem's peace because his family and companions live there or gather there. The phrase adabberah nna shalom bakh ('let me speak peace in you') is both a blessing and a commitment — the pilgrim pronounces peace over the city as a verbal act of devotion.
9. The psalm closes with a second and deeper motivation: not only for the sake of human relationships (v. 8) but for the sake of beit YHWH Eloheinu ('the house of the LORD our God'). The verb avaqshah ('I will seek') implies active pursuit — the pilgrim commits to working for Jerusalem's welfare. The word tov ('good') is comprehensive: prosperity, beauty, flourishing, everything that is right.

123

Summary: *The psalmist lifts his eyes to God enthroned in heaven, comparing Israel's posture to that of servants watching their master's hand for the slightest signal. The waiting continues until God shows mercy. The psalm closes with a raw cry: Israel has had more than enough of the contempt of the arrogant and the scorn of the comfortable.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most concentrated psalms in the Psalter — four verses that move from silent watchfulness to desperate petition. The image of servants watching a master's hand (verses 2) is striking in its submission: the servant does not speak, does not demand, only watches. The hand will give food, give orders, give permission, or withhold. Everything depends on the hand. The psalm transfers this image directly to God: Israel watches God's hand with the same silent, total dependence. The repetition of channenu ('be gracious to us') twice in verse 3 breaks the silence of the watching — the servant finally speaks, and what comes out is not a request but a cry of saturation: we are filled to the brim with contempt.*

Translation Friction: *The servant-master imagery can be uncomfortable for modern readers, but the Hebrew context is specific. The eved ('servant') and shifchah ('maidservant') are members of a household, not chattel slaves in the modern sense — they have proximity to the master and depend on the master's hand for sustenance and direction. The psalm does not celebrate servitude; it uses the imagery of dependent watching to describe the posture of faith under oppression. The 'proud' and 'arrogant' (ge'ionim, sha'ananim) in verse 4 are unnamed — they could be foreign oppressors, domestic elites, or neighboring nations. The vagueness makes the psalm applicable to any situation of scorn.*

Connections: *The upward gaze echoes Psalm 121:1 ('I lift my eyes'), but here the eyes are lifted not to hills but to heaven itself. The servant imagery connects to Isaiah 50:4-5, where the Servant of the LORD has an ear awakened morning by morning to listen. The cry against contempt anticipates Nehemiah 4:4, where the returned exiles endure mockery during the rebuilding of Jerusalem's walls.*

¹A song of ascents.

To you I lift my eyes,
you who are enthroned in heaven.

²Look — as the eyes of servants watch
the hand of their master,
as the eyes of a maidservant watch
the hand of her mistress,
so our eyes watch the LORD our God

until he shows us grace.

³Be gracious to us, LORD — be gracious to us,
for we have had more than enough of contempt.

⁴Our soul has had more than enough
of the mockery of the comfortable,
the contempt of the arrogant.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *nasati* ('I lift') echoes Psalm 121:1 but redirects the gaze from the hills to God himself. The participle *hayyoshvi* ('the one sitting, the one enthroned') uses *yashav*, which can mean simply 'to sit' or, in royal contexts, 'to be enthroned.' God sits in heaven as a king on a throne — and the psalm positions the speaker as a subject before the sovereign.
2. We render *yechnonenu* as 'shows us grace' rather than 'have mercy upon us.' The verb *chanan* means to show favor, to be gracious, to give what is not owed. Mercy implies a response to suffering; grace implies a gift from the giver's character. The psalm asks for God to act out of who God is.
3. The doubled imperative *channenu YHWH channenu* ('be gracious to us, LORD, be gracious to us') is urgent repetition — the servant has broken silence and the words pour out. The verb *sava'nu* ('we are filled, we are sated, we have had enough') uses the language of eating to describe scorn: they have been force-fed contempt until they are stuffed with it. The word *buz* ('contempt, scorn') describes the attitude of those who look down with dismissive disdain.
4. The final phrase *lig'ei yonim* is textually difficult. The Masoretic pointing suggests 'the proud of the arrogant' or 'the arrogant oppressors.' Some emend *yonim* to read *ge'ionim* ('the arrogant'), creating a smoother parallel with *sha'ananim*. We follow the Masoretic text and render the sense as 'the arrogant,' since the doubling of pride-language intensifies the characterization.

124

Summary: *A psalm of David. The community looks back at a moment of extreme danger and shudders at what would have happened if the LORD had not been on their side. The imagery escalates from human attack to flood to wild beasts to a bird caught in a trap — and then the trap breaks and the bird escapes. The psalm ends with a declaration: our help is in the name of the LORD, maker of heaven and earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm opens with a counterfactual — 'if the LORD had not been on our side' — and then repeats it, inviting the congregation to say it together (v. 1). This rhetorical device forces the worshipers to imagine the catastrophe that did not happen, making God's rescue vivid by contrast. The sequence of images is deliberately overwhelming: enemies swallowing them alive (v. 3), floodwaters sweeping over them (vv. 4-5), teeth of predators (v. 6), a snare closing on a bird (v. 7). Each image raises the stakes. Then the snare breaks — and the escape is sudden and unexplained. The psalm does not say how the trap broke, only that it did. The deliverance is attributed entirely to God without narrating God's method.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *lulei YHWH she-hayah lanu* ('if the LORD had not been on our side') raises a theological tension the psalm does not resolve: what about the times when rescue did not come? The psalm is a thanksgiving for a specific deliverance, not a universal promise. Its honesty lies in what it does not claim — it does not say God always rescues, only that God rescued this time, and that without God's intervention, destruction was certain.*

Connections: *The closing formula *ezrenu be-shem YHWH oseh shamayim va-arets* ('our help is in the name of the LORD, maker of heaven and earth') echoes Psalm 121:2 and becomes a liturgical refrain in Psalm 134:3. The flood imagery connects to the chaotic waters of Psalm 69:1-2 and Jonah 2:3-5. The bird-and-snare image appears again in Psalm 91:3 and Proverbs 6:5.*

¹A song of ascents. Of David.
If the LORD had not been on our side —

let Israel say it —

²if the LORD had not been on our side
when people rose against us —

³then they would have swallowed us alive
when their anger burned against us.

⁴Then the waters would have engulfed us,
the torrent would have swept over our lives.

⁵Then over our lives would have swept
the raging waters.

⁶Blessed be the LORD,
who did not give us as prey to their teeth.

⁷We are like a bird escaped from the fowler's trap —
the trap broke and we escaped!

⁸Our help is in the name of the LORD,
maker of heaven and earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The particle *lulei* ('if not, were it not') introduces a counterfactual condition: what would have happened if God had not acted. The imperative *yomar na Yisrael* ('let Israel say') invites the congregation to join in — this is antiphonal, calling for a collective voice to rehearse the near-disaster. The psalm begins not with praise but with a terrifying 'what if.'
2. The repetition of *lulei YHWH she-hayah lanu* reinforces the counterfactual and builds suspense. The phrase *be-qum aleinu adam* ('when humanity rose against us') uses *adam* generically — not a specific enemy but human hostility itself. The threat is framed in universal terms.
3. The verb *bela'unu* ('swallowed us') evokes Sheol swallowing the living (Numbers 16:30-33, where the earth swallows Korah). The word *chayyim* ('alive') intensifies the horror — not merely killed and then consumed, but devoured while still living. The image is of monstrous, predatory destruction.
4. The imagery shifts from being devoured to being drowned. The verb *shetafunu* ('engulfed us, swept us away') describes flash flooding — a real and terrifying danger in the Judean wilderness, where dry wadis become raging torrents without warning. The *nachalah* ('torrent, stream, wadi') is seasonal and violent. The word *nafshenu* ('our lives, our selves') indicates total annihilation, not partial damage.
5. The adjective *hazeidonim* ('the raging, the insolent, the proud') personifies the water — it is not merely strong but arrogant, acting with the willfulness of a hostile agent. The same root *zadon* describes human arrogance elsewhere (Deuteronomy 17:12). The waters are characterized as enemies in their own right.
6. The shift from water to teeth is abrupt and effective. The psalm layers images without worrying about consistency — the rhetorical effect is cumulative. Each image says: the danger was total, and only God's intervention prevented it.
7. The *pach yqeshim* ('trap of fowlers') refers to a spring-loaded snare used for catching birds. The image of a bird in a trap was a common metaphor for helplessness in ancient Near Eastern literature. The sudden breaking of the trap — without explanation — is theologically deliberate: deliverance comes from outside the situation.
8. The closing declaration *ezrenu be-shem YHWH* ('our help is in the name of the LORD') echoes Psalm 121:2. The phrase *oseh shamayim va-arets* ('maker of heaven and earth') grounds the confession: the God who rescued Israel from the trap is the same God who made everything. The cosmic scope of God's power underwrites the specific, local rescue the psalm has just narrated.

125

Summary: *Those who trust in the LORD are compared to Mount Zion — immovable, permanent, settled forever. As mountains surround Jerusalem, so the LORD surrounds his people. The psalm then addresses the danger of wickedness gaining power over the righteous and prays that the upright will not be tempted to stretch their hands toward wrongdoing. It closes with a prayer for peace on Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm builds its theology on geography. The pilgrim approaching Jerusalem can see the physical reality the psalm describes: mountains encircle the city on every side — the Mount of Olives to the east, hills to the north, south, and west. Jerusalem sits in a bowl of mountains. The psalmist takes this visible fact and makes it a metaphor for divine protection: as the mountains surround Jerusalem, so the LORD surrounds his people. The image is not of a single shield but of an encircling embrace — protection from every direction, permanent as the geology itself.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 3 introduces a complex theological concern: the scepter of wickedness (shevet haresha) must not rest on the land allotted to the righteous, lest the righteous themselves be corrupted and reach toward injustice. This is not a simple good-versus-evil framework — it acknowledges that oppression can deform the oppressed, that sustained injustice can tempt righteous people into wrongdoing. The psalm prays against this corruption, not merely against the oppressors.*

Connections: *The comparison of the faithful to Mount Zion connects to Isaiah 28:16, where God lays a foundation stone in Zion. The phrase shalom al Yisrael ('peace on Israel') closing the psalm echoes Psalm 128:6 and is nearly identical to the closing of Psalm 128. The concern about the 'scepter of wickedness' echoes the warnings of Deuteronomy about foreign rule corrupting Israel's covenant faithfulness.*

¹A song of ascents.

Those who trust in the LORD are like Mount Zion —
it cannot be shaken; it endures forever.

²Jerusalem — mountains surround her,
and the LORD surrounds his people
from this moment and forever.

³For the scepter of wickedness will not rest
on the land allotted to the righteous,
so that the righteous will not stretch out
their hands toward injustice.

⁴Do good, LORD, to those who are good,
and to those who are upright in their hearts.

⁵But those who turn to crooked paths —
the LORD will lead them away with the evildoers.
Peace on Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Mount Zion (har Tsiyon) originally referred to the Jebusite fortress David captured (2 Samuel 5:7) and came to represent the temple mount and, by extension, God's chosen dwelling place. The pilgrims approaching Jerusalem would see this mountain and understand the psalm's metaphor viscerally.
2. The word *saviv* ('around, surrounding') appears twice, creating a direct equation: mountains surround Jerusalem; the LORD surrounds his people. The temporal extension *me-attah ve-ad olam* ('from now and until forever') elevates the geographical observation into a permanent theological truth. The visible mountains will erode over eons; God's surrounding presence will not.

3. The word goral ('lot') refers to the system of land distribution by casting lots, as in Joshua 14-21. The 'lot of the righteous' is their divinely assigned inheritance. The threat is that foreign or wicked rule over this land will demoralize its inhabitants.
3. The phrase be-avlah ('toward injustice') uses avlah, a general term for moral crookedness or perversion of justice. The fear is not a specific sin but a general drift toward wrongdoing under pressure.
4. The prayer heitivah YHWH lattovim ('do good to the good') creates a wordplay between the verb hetiv ('do good') and the adjective tovim ('good'). The psalm asks for correspondence between character and consequence — let good people receive good treatment. The added qualification velisharim belibotam ('and to the upright in their hearts') specifies that the uprightness is internal, not merely behavioral.
5. The closing shalom al Yisrael functions as a liturgical formula, similar to 'amen.' It appears again at the end of Psalm 128, bracketing the central Songs of Ascents with a prayer for peace. The shift from warning to blessing is abrupt but deliberate — the psalm refuses to end on judgment.

126

Summary: *The community remembers a past restoration so stunning it felt like a dream — mouths filled with laughter, tongues with shouts of joy, even the surrounding nations acknowledging that the LORD had done great things. Then the psalm pivots to petition: restore us again, like desert streams suddenly filled with water. It closes with a promise that weeping will give way to harvest — those who go out crying, carrying seed, will return with joyful shouts, carrying sheaves.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm lives in the tension between memory and hope. The first three verses celebrate a past deliverance so overwhelming that the people could scarcely believe it was real — hayinu ke-cholmim ('we were like dreamers'). But the psalm does not stay in the past. Verse 4 shifts abruptly to petition: shuvah YHWH et shevitenu ('restore our fortunes, LORD'). The past rescue is not enough; the present still needs God's intervention. The agricultural metaphor in verses 5-6 bridges the gap: sowing in tears guarantees a harvest of joy. The metaphor is not sentimental — it is agricultural realism. In the ancient Near East, planting seed meant giving up precious grain that could feed your family, trusting that the ground would return it multiplied. The tears are real loss; the harvest is real gain.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase be-shuv YHWH et shivat Tsiyon ('when the LORD restored the fortunes of Zion') has been traditionally linked to the return from Babylonian exile, but the Hebrew shivat could also be read as shevut ('captivity') — 'when the LORD returned the captives of Zion.' The psalm may predate or postdate the exile; the language is deliberately open enough to apply to any major restoration. The dream-like quality of the remembered deliverance suggests distance — either temporal or emotional — from the event.*

Connections: *The phrase hayinu ke-cholmim ('we were like dreamers') echoes the disorientation of Isaiah 29:7-8, where nations besieging Jerusalem vanish like a dream. The image of streams in the Negev (afikot ba-Negev) connects to Joel 3:18, where water flows from the house of the LORD. The sowing-and-reaping metaphor is developed extensively in Hosea 10:12 ('Sow righteousness, reap faithful love') and Galatians 6:7-9.*

¹A song of ascents.

When the LORD restored the fortunes of Zion,
we were like dreamers.

²Then our mouths were filled with laughter
and our tongues with shouts of joy.
Then they said among the nations,
"The LORD has done great things for these people."

³The LORD has done great things for us —
we are filled with joy.

⁴Restore our fortunes, LORD,
like streams in the Negev.

⁵Those who sow in tears
will reap with shouts of joy.

⁶The one who goes out weeping,
carrying the bag of seed,
will surely come back with shouts of joy,
carrying his sheaves.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *ketiv-qere* variation between *shivat* and *shevut* has generated extensive scholarly discussion. *shivat* (from *shuv*, 'to return') suggests restored fortunes; *shevut* (from *shavah*, 'to take captive') suggests returned captives. Both readings are theologically coherent. We render 'restored the fortunes' as the broader term that encompasses both possibilities.
2. The double *az* ('then') creates a two-beat rhythm: then laughter, then recognition. The verb *yimmale* ('was filled') describes mouths overflowing — not polite smiles but uncontrollable laughter. The word *rinnah* ('joyful shouting, ringing cry') is loud, public, and physical. The nations' testimony — *higdil YHWH la'asot im elleh* ('the LORD has done great things with these') — is remarkable: even outsiders can see that this deliverance is God's work.
3. Israel takes the nations' words and makes them its own confession: *higdil YHWH la'asot immanu* ('the LORD has done great things with us'). The preposition *im* ('with') rather than *le* ('for') subtly implies partnership — God did great things with us, not merely to us. The response *hayinu semechim* ('we are/were joyful') uses the same root as Psalm 122:1 (*samachti*), linking pilgrimage joy to the joy of national restoration.
4. The *afiqim* ('channels, streambeds') of the Negev are visible features of the landscape a pilgrim would know. The image is not gentle rain but flash restoration — water appearing where there was none, life erupting from what appeared dead.
5. The contrast between *bedim'ah* ('in tears') and *berinnah* ('with joyful shouting') is absolute. The agricultural metaphor is not abstract: sowing required surrendering seed grain that could have fed the family. In a famine or hardship, planting was an act of faith — you gave up what you had in hope of a future harvest. The tears are the cost of the investment; the joy is the harvest's return.
6. The phrase *meshekh hazara* is unusual. *meshekh* may mean 'drawing, trailing' (from *mashakh*) or 'bag, pouch.' We render 'bag of seed' for clarity, understanding it as the container from which the sower draws seed to scatter. The image is of a farmer walking through a field, hand reaching into a bag, scattering grain through tears.

127

Summary: *A psalm of Solomon. Unless the LORD builds the house and guards the city, all human labor is futile. God gives to his beloved even in sleep. The psalm then shifts to children: sons are an inheritance from the LORD, like arrows in a warrior's hand. The man whose quiver is full of them will not be put to shame when he confronts his opponents at the city gate.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the only Song of Ascents attributed to Solomon, and the attribution is deeply fitting. Solomon built the temple — the house of the LORD — yet the psalm opens by declaring that unless the LORD builds the house, the builders labor in vain. If Solomon wrote or inspired this psalm, it is a confession that his greatest achievement depended entirely on God's initiative. The psalm contains one of the most radical statements about human effort in the entire Bible: it is useless (*shav*) to rise early, stay up late, and eat the bread of anxious toil, because God gives to his beloved in sleep. This is not an endorsement of laziness but a demolition of the illusion of self-sufficiency. The pivot to children in verses 3-5 is not a non sequitur — children are the ultimate example of something humans cannot manufacture by effort alone. They are *nachalat YHWH* ('an inheritance from the LORD'), a gift, not a product.*

Translation Friction: The relationship between the two halves of this psalm has puzzled interpreters. Verses 1-2 address the futility of human effort without God; verses 3-5 celebrate children as God's gift. The connection becomes clear when 'house' (bayit) is understood in its full Hebrew range: bayit means both a physical building and a family/dynasty. Solomon's bayit was both a temple and a royal house. The psalm says God must build both — the structure and the family line. Without God, neither architecture nor offspring accomplishes anything.

Connections: The Solomonic attribution connects directly to 2 Samuel 7, where God tells David that God will build David a 'house' (dynasty), inverting David's plan to build God a house (temple). The futility language (shav, 'in vain') echoes Ecclesiastes, also attributed to Solomon, which repeatedly declares human effort hevel ('vapor, breath'). The arrow imagery for children appears in Isaiah 49:2, where the Servant of the LORD is described as a polished arrow hidden in God's quiver.

1A song of ascents. Of Solomon.
Unless the LORD builds the house,
its builders labor over it in vain.
Unless the LORD guards the city,
the watchman stays awake in vain.

2It is useless for you to rise early,
to stay up late,
to eat the bread of anxious toil —
for he gives to his beloved in sleep.

3Look — children are an inheritance from the LORD;
the fruit of the womb is a reward.

4Like arrows in the hand of a warrior —
so are the children of one's youth.

5Happy is the man who has filled
his quiver with them.
They will not be put to shame
when they confront their enemies at the gate.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word shav ('in vain, emptiness') appears twice, framing both human activities — building and guarding — as equally futile without God. shav does not mean 'bad' or 'sinful'; it means 'empty, without substance, accomplishing nothing.' The psalm does not condemn work but reframes its meaning.
1. The Solomonic attribution (li-Shelomoh) may indicate authorship, dedication, or association with the Solomonic wisdom tradition. Given the psalm's themes of building and God's sovereignty over human achievement, the connection to Solomon the temple-builder is theologically resonant regardless of the attribution's historical basis.
2. The word yedido ('his beloved') echoes the name Yedidyah ('beloved of the LORD'), the name God gave to Solomon through Nathan the prophet (2 Samuel 12:25). If this psalm is attributed to Solomon, the reference is deeply personal — Solomon himself is the beloved to whom God gives.
2. The phrase lechem ha-atsavim ('bread of anxious toil') describes food earned through stress and worry — bread that tastes like anxiety because it was produced by it.
3. The word nachalat ('inheritance, portion, possession') is covenant language — a nachalah is land or wealth received as a divine gift, not earned by labor. Calling children nachalat YHWH ('an inheritance from the LORD') puts them in the same category as the promised land: something God gives, not something humans produce by their own power. The parallel term sakhar ('reward, wages') reinforces this: children are God's payment, God's gift-in-return.
4. The phrase benei hane'urim ('children of youth') refers to children born when the parent is young and vigorous. The advantage is practical: these children will be adults while the parent is still active, providing support and advocacy (as verse 5 will specify).

5. The 'gate' (sha'ar) as a place of justice and public discourse appears throughout the Hebrew Bible (Ruth 4:1-11, Proverbs 31:23, Amos 5:15). Legal disputes, property transactions, and community leadership all centered at the city gate. Having sons present at the gate meant having advocates who could speak on your behalf, witness transactions, and defend family interests.

128

Summary: *A wisdom psalm that pronounces blessing on the person who fears the LORD and walks in his ways. The blessings are domestic and concrete: eating the fruit of your own labor, a wife like a fruitful vine in the inner rooms of your house, children like olive shoots around your table. The psalm extends the blessing outward from household to nation — may you see Jerusalem prosper, may you see your grandchildren, and may peace rest on Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *After Psalm 127's declaration that human effort without God is futile, Psalm 128 describes what human effort with God looks like: it looks ordinary. The blessings here are not spectacular — no military victories, no prophetic visions, no miraculous interventions. They are a meal earned by your own hands, a spouse, children, and long life. The psalm sanctifies the mundane. The image of the wife as a *gefen poriyah* ('fruitful vine') in the inner rooms (*yarkete*) of the house and children as *shitilei zetim* ('olive shoots') around the table creates a picture of organic, living abundance. Vines and olives are the signature crops of the land of Israel; both take years to mature and produce for generations. The psalm says that a household rooted in the fear of the LORD grows like the land's most enduring plants.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's domestic vision reflects ancient Israelite social structures — the male householder as the addressed audience, the wife described in relation to the home's interior. Modern readers may find this limiting. The Hebrew text, however, is not prescriptive about gender roles so much as descriptive of the ancient household as an economic and spiritual unit. The 'fear of the LORD' (*yirat YHWH*) that opens the psalm is the foundation — everything that follows is presented as the fruit of that posture, not as a guaranteed formula.*

Connections: *This psalm pairs with Psalm 127 as a wisdom diptych on household and family. Where 127 warns against self-reliance, 128 describes the blessings of God-centered living. The vine and olive imagery echoes Psalm 52:8 ('I am like a green olive tree in the house of God') and Hosea 14:6-7 (Israel's restored beauty compared to olive trees and vines). The closing *shalom al Yisrael* matches Psalm 125:5 exactly.*

¹A song of ascents.

Blessed is everyone who fears the LORD,
who walks in his ways.

²You will eat the fruit of your own labor —
blessed are you, and it will go well for you.

³Your wife will be like a fruitful vine
in the inner rooms of your house;
your children like olive shoots
around your table.

⁴Look — this is how the man is blessed
who fears the LORD.

⁵May the LORD bless you from Zion;
may you see Jerusalem's prosperity
all the days of your life.

6May you see your children's children.
Peace on Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The beatitude ashrei ('blessed, happy, fortunate') opens this psalm as it opens Psalm 1, creating a wisdom-literature frame. The phrase kol yere YHWH ('everyone who fears the LORD') is universal — the blessing is not limited to priests, kings, or prophets but available to anyone who lives in reverent awareness of God. The parallel haholekh bidrakav ('who walks in his ways') translates fear into action: to fear God is to walk God's path.
2. The blessing of eating one's own labor directly counters the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:30-33 and Leviticus 26:16, where enemy nations consume what Israel plants. To eat your own food in peace is itself a theological statement: the curse has been reversed.
3. The word yarkete ('sides, recesses, innermost parts') appears in other contexts to describe the innermost parts of a cave (1 Samuel 24:3) or the far reaches of a territory (Isaiah 14:13). In the domestic setting, it indicates the protected interior of the house — the private quarters rather than the public-facing areas.
4. The particle hinneh ('look') draws attention to the preceding verses as evidence: this domestic abundance is what blessing looks like when it flows from the fear of the LORD. The psalm presents no extraordinary gifts — only a working household, food, a spouse, and children. The implication is that the ordinary, when rooted in God, is the blessing.
5. The blessing now radiates outward from the household to the city. The source of blessing is mi-Tsiyon ('from Zion') — the temple mount, God's dwelling place. The prayer u-re'eh be-tuv Yerushalayim ('and may you see the good/prosperity of Jerusalem') expresses the hope that the individual will live long enough and in enough peace to witness the city flourishing. Personal blessing and national blessing are linked: your household's abundance is part of Jerusalem's abundance.
6. The final blessing is generational: re'eh vanim le-vanekha ('see children belonging to your children') — grandchildren are the visible proof that God's blessing extends beyond one lifetime. The closing formula shalom al Yisrael ('peace on Israel') matches Psalm 125:5, framing these central Songs of Ascents with an identical prayer. The movement from individual fear of God (v. 1) to national peace (v. 6) traces the psalm's conviction that personal faithfulness contributes to collective flourishing.

129

Summary: *Israel looks back on a lifetime of oppression — attacked repeatedly since its youth — yet declares that the oppressors have not prevailed. The psalm uses a brutal agricultural image: they plowed across my back, cutting long furrows. But the LORD, who is righteous, cut the ropes of the wicked. The psalm then turns to imprecation: may all who hate Zion be put to shame and become like grass on a rooftop — sprouting quickly but withering before it can be gathered, with no one offering a blessing to the harvesters.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The image of plowing on a back (al gabi charshu chorshim, 'upon my back the plowers plowed') is among the most visceral in the Psalter. The verb charash ('to plow') describes cutting furrows in soil with a blade — applied to a human back, the image is of skin laid open in long, parallel wounds. The 'furrows' (ma'anitam, from ma'anah, 'furrow') are deep and extended: he'erikhu ('they made long'). This is not a quick blow but sustained, methodical abuse. Yet the psalm does not wallow — it pivots immediately to God's intervention: YHWH tsaddiq qitssets avot resha'im ('the LORD is righteous; he has cut the cords of the wicked'). The same agricultural world provides the rescue: God cuts the ropes that bound the plow-animal to its burden.*

Translation Friction: *The imprecatory section (vv. 5-8) prays for the shame and withering of Zion's enemies. The grass-on-the-rooftop image is oddly specific: ancient flat roofs accumulated thin soil in which seeds would sprout after rain but, lacking depth, the growth would wither before harvest. No reaper would bother to gather it, and no one passing by would offer the standard harvest blessing ('The blessing of the LORD be upon you'). The enemies are denied not only success but even the courtesy of a blessing. This level of detailed malediction reflects real trauma — the psalm's anger is proportional to the plowing of verse 3.*

Connections: *The image of Israel's suffering from its 'youth' (mine'urai) echoes Hosea 2:15 and Jeremiah 2:2, where Israel's youth refers to the exodus and wilderness period. The plowing image anticipates Isaiah 51:23, where oppressors say to Israel, 'Lie down so we may walk over you.' The rooftop grass appears in 2 Kings 19:26 / Isaiah 37:27 in the same context of enemies that wither. The harvest-blessing formula in verse 8 echoes Ruth 2:4, where Boaz greets his reapers.*

¹A song of ascents.
 "They have attacked me often since my youth" —
 let Israel say it —

²"They have attacked me often since my youth —
 but they have not overcome me."

³Plowers plowed across my back;
 they cut their furrows long.

⁴The LORD is righteous;
 he has cut the ropes of the wicked.

⁵May all who hate Zion
 be put to shame and driven back.

⁶May they be like grass on the rooftops
 that withers before it can be pulled up,

⁷that never fills the reaper's hand
 or the binder's arms.

⁸And no passerby will say,
 "The blessing of the LORD be upon you;
 we bless you in the name of the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb tsararuni ('they have attacked me, they have oppressed me, they have been hostile to me') is from tsarar ('to bind, to press, to be hostile'). The word mine'urai ('from my youth') personifies Israel as a single individual whose life story is one of repeated assault. Israel's 'youth' likely refers to the Egyptian bondage or the early settlement period. The imperative yomar na Yisrael ('let Israel say') invites the congregation to take up the confession together, as in Psalm 124:1.
2. The repetition of rabbat tsararuni mine'urai from verse 1 creates emphasis through restatement, but the second line adds the decisive contrast: gam lo yakhlu li ('yet they have not prevailed against me'). The verb yakhal ('to be able, to prevail, to overcome') is in the perfect tense — they tried and they failed. The gam ('yet, also, even') introduces the counter-statement with force: despite everything, despite the long history of attack, they did not succeed.
3. The phrase al gabbi ('upon my back') uses the singular possessive, maintaining the personification of Israel as a single body. The plowing image may also carry overtones of enslavement — in Egypt, Israelites were forced to labor in the fields, and here the oppressors turn Israel's own body into the field.
4. The declaration YHWH tsaddiq ('the LORD is righteous') is judicial: God has judged the situation and acted. The verb qitsets ('he has cut, he has chopped') is forceful — it describes cutting through with decisive action. The avot ('ropes, cords, thick bindings') are the harness ropes that bound the plow-team to the plow. God severed the connection between the oppressors and their instrument of torture. The agricultural metaphor is sustained: the plowers plowed, but God cut their rigging. The plow goes dead in the furrow.
5. The imprecation begins. The verb yevoshu ('may they be shamed') and yissogu achor ('may they be turned backward, may they retreat') are jussive forms expressing a wish. The shame (bosh) is public humiliation — the exposure of failed ambition. Being turned backward (achor) is the opposite of advancing; the enemies are repelled. The phrase son'ei Tsiyon ('haters of Zion') defines the target: those who oppose God's chosen city and, by extension, God's people.
6. Ancient Israelite houses had flat roofs made of packed earth over wooden beams. Rain would cause seeds trapped in the thin soil layer to sprout, but with no depth of earth and full exposure to sun, the growth would wither almost immediately. The word shalaf ('to pull up, to draw out') suggests the grass dies before anyone could even grasp it to harvest. The image is of growth that promises nothing and delivers nothing — a perfect metaphor for the enemies' ambitions.
7. The image continues: this rooftop grass is so sparse and worthless that the qotser ('reaper, harvester') cannot fill his hand (kappo) with it, and the me'ammer ('binder, sheaf-gatherer') cannot fill his lap or arms (chitsno). The harvest metaphor from Psalm 126:6 (the joyful reaper carrying sheaves)

is inverted: here there are no sheaves, no harvest, no joy. The enemies produce nothing worth gathering.

8. The harvest blessing formula is attested in Ruth 2:4, where Boaz arrives at his field and greets his workers with YHWH immakhem ('the LORD be with you'), and they respond YHWH yevarekekha ('the LORD bless you'). The psalm's quotation of a nearly identical formula shows how deeply worship was woven into daily agricultural practice. To be denied this greeting is to be cut off from the rhythm of covenantal life.

130

Summary: *From the depths, the psalmist cries out to the LORD. If God kept a record of sins, no one could stand. But with God there is forgiveness — and this forgiveness produces reverence, not presumption. The psalmist waits for the LORD with an intensity greater than watchmen waiting for dawn. The psalm ends by urging all Israel to hope in the LORD, because with him there is faithful love and full redemption, and he will redeem Israel from all its sins.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the seven traditional Penitential Psalms (6, 32, 38, 51, 102, 130, 143) and one of the most theologically dense compositions in the Psalter. In eight verses, it moves from the abyss to redemption. The theological centerpiece is verses 3-4: if God kept a record of iniquities, no one would survive the audit — but with God there is selichah ('forgiveness'), and this forgiveness is the basis for fear, not its removal. The logic is counterintuitive: forgiveness produces reverence (lema'an tivvare, 'so that you may be feared'). The psalm understands that a God who only judged would inspire terror, not worship. A God who forgives inspires awe — the profound, sustained reverence of someone who has been pardoned when they deserved to be condemned. The watchman metaphor in verses 5-6 captures the posture: waiting in darkness, utterly confident that morning will come, yet unable to rush it.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase mi-ma'amaqim ('out of the depths') has been variously interpreted as literal danger (drowning, imprisonment), metaphorical spiritual crisis, or the psalmist's sense of distance from God. The 'depths' (ma'amaqim) are related to the abyss — the deep waters of chaos that threaten to engulf. The psalm does not specify what put the psalmist in the depths, which makes it universally applicable. Martin Luther considered this psalm one of the four 'Pauline Psalms' because of its doctrine of grace: forgiveness is God's initiative, not earned by human merit.*

Connections: *The cry from the depths echoes Jonah 2:2 ('out of the belly of Sheol I cried') and Psalm 69:2 ('I have come into the depths of the waters'). The assertion that no one can stand before God's scrutiny parallels Psalm 143:2 ('no living person is righteous before you') and anticipates Paul's argument in Romans 3:20. The phrase chesed ('faithful love') in verse 7 connects to the great chesed declarations of Exodus 34:6-7. The waiting-for-dawn metaphor recurs in Isaiah 21:11-12 ('Watchman, what is left of the night?').*

¹A song of ascents.

Out of the depths I cry to you, LORD.

²Lord, hear my voice;

let your ears be attentive

to the sound of my pleas for mercy.

³If you kept a record of sins, Yah —

Lord, who could stand?

⁴But with you there is forgiveness,

so that you may be revered.

⁵I wait for the LORD;

my whole being waits,

and in his word I hope.

6My whole being waits for the Lord
more than watchmen wait for morning —
more than watchmen wait for morning.

7Hope in the LORD, Israel,
for with the LORD there is faithful love,
and with him there is redemption in abundance.

8And he will redeem Israel
from all its sins.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The noun *ma'amaqim* appears only here and in Psalm 69:2, 14 and Ezekiel 27:34. In every case it describes overwhelming, threatening depths — waters that swallow, darkness that consumes. The Songs of Ascents are pilgrimage songs of going up; this psalm begins at the lowest point, making the ascent all the more dramatic.
2. The address shifts from YHWH (v. 1) to Adonai ('Lord, Master'), the title used when the divine name was considered too sacred to pronounce. The request *shim'ah be-qoli* ('hear my voice') is followed by the more specific *tiheyinah oznekha qashshuvot* ('let your ears be attentive'). The word *qashshuvot* ('attentive, listening closely') describes focused, deliberate hearing — not just registering sound but paying attention. The *tachanunai* ('my pleas for mercy, my supplications') derives from *chanan* ('to be gracious'), connecting to the grace-theology that runs through the psalm.
3. The verb *tishmor* ('you would keep, you would guard') is the same root (*shamar*) that dominates Psalm 121, where God's keeping is protective. Here the same verb takes on a forensic meaning: to keep a record, to preserve evidence. The God who guards Israel could also guard a ledger of sins — but chooses not to.
4. The word *selichah* ('forgiveness') appears only three times in the Hebrew Bible as a noun (here, Nehemiah 9:17, Daniel 9:9). In every occurrence, it describes God's forgiveness — never human forgiveness of another human. This is a distinctly divine act.
4. We render *tivvare* as 'revered' rather than 'feared' to capture the nuance. The fear here is not terror at punishment but profound awe at grace. The pardoned sinner does not flee from God but draws closer in reverent amazement.
5. The double statement *qivviti YHWH qivvetah nafshi* ('I wait for the LORD, my soul waits') intensifies the claim: not just the mind or the will but the *nefesh* — the entire self — is engaged in waiting. The verb *qavah* ('to wait, to hope, to look eagerly for') implies taut expectation, like a rope stretched tight. The phrase *ve-lidvaro hochalti* ('and for his word I hope') adds a specific object: the psalmist waits not just for God in general but for God's word — a promise, an answer, a declaration.
6. The *shomerim* ('watchmen') connect back to the *shamar* root that dominates Psalm 121. But here the watchmen are not guarding — they are waiting. Their job is to endure the night and announce the morning. The psalmist's soul does the same: endures the darkness of the depths (v. 1) and watches for God's arrival.
7. We render *chesed* as 'faithful love' throughout The Covenant Rendering. The word resists single-word translation: it encompasses loyalty, kindness, mercy, covenant faithfulness, steadfast love, and committed devotion. 'Faithful love' captures both the emotional warmth (love) and the covenantal reliability (faithful).
8. The verb *yifdeh* ('he will redeem') is in the imperfect tense, indicating future or ongoing action — this redemption is not only a past event but a continuing and future reality. The psalm ends not with a completed action but with a promise that stretches forward: God will keep redeeming.

131

Summary: A Song of Ascents attributed to David. In just three verses, the psalmist renounces ambition, pride, and intellectual presumption, choosing instead a posture of quiet trust. The central image is a weaned child resting against its mother — no longer nursing, no longer demanding, simply at rest. The psalm concludes with a call for Israel to adopt the same posture toward the LORD.

*What Makes This Remarkable: This is one of the shortest psalms in the Psalter, yet it accomplishes something almost no other psalm attempts: it describes the interior discipline of humility not as self-abasement but as chosen contentment. The weaned child (*gamal*) is the key — not an infant still feeding, still needy, still crying for milk, but a child who has moved past the stage of demand. The psalmist does not say 'I*

have been humbled' (passive, by circumstance) but 'I have leveled and quieted my soul' (active, by choice). This is willed serenity, not resigned passivity. In three verses, David maps the entire journey from renunciation of pride to active trust.

Translation Friction: *The verb shivviti ('I have leveled, smoothed, made even') in verse 2 is unusual. It does not mean 'I have behaved myself' as the KJV renders it. The root shavah means 'to be level, equal, smooth' — the psalmist has flattened the turbulence of his soul the way one smooths a field. The weaned child image is also more culturally loaded than modern readers realize: weaning in ancient Israel typically occurred at age three, so this is not a newborn but a toddler who has passed through the difficult transition of separation from the breast and now rests without demand.*

Connections: *The Song of Ascents collection (Psalms 120-134) were sung by pilgrims ascending to Jerusalem. Psalm 131 sits between Psalm 130's cry from the depths and Psalm 132's grand Davidic covenant psalm, making it a quiet hinge — the pilgrim who has cried out now rests before approaching the promises of God to David's house. The weaned child image resonates with Isaiah 28:9 ('those weaned from milk, drawn from the breast') and Jesus' teaching that one must become like a child to enter the kingdom (Matthew 18:3).*

¹A song of ascents. Of David.

LORD, my heart is not lifted up,
and my eyes are not raised high.
I do not walk among things too great
or too wondrous for me.

²Instead, I have leveled and quieted my soul
like a weaned child with its mother.
Like a weaned child, so is my soul within me.

³Let Israel wait for the LORD
from now until forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb gavah means 'to be high, exalted, proud' and when applied to the heart describes internal arrogance — a self-assessment that exceeds reality. The eyes being 'raised' (ramu) is the outward expression of the same posture: looking down on others, setting one's gaze on things above one's station.
1. The word niflaot ('wondrous things') is a niph'al participle from pala ('to be extraordinary, surpassing, too difficult'). It is the same root used for God's wonders in the Exodus narratives. The psalmist is not rejecting intellectual curiosity but acknowledging that some realities belong to God alone — echoing Deuteronomy 29:29, 'the hidden things belong to the LORD our God.'
2. The KJV's 'I have behaved and quieted myself' misses the force of shivviti, which does not mean 'to behave' but 'to level, make even, smooth.' The piel form intensifies the action: the psalmist has actively worked to flatten the uneven terrain of his inner life.
2. Ancient Israelite children were typically weaned between ages two and three (cf. 1 Samuel 1:22-24, where Hannah waits until Samuel is weaned before bringing him to the temple). The gamal is therefore not an infant but a young child who has passed through a significant developmental transition — from dependence on the breast to the ability to be with the mother without needing to feed.
3. The verb yachel (from yachal) means 'to wait, to hope, to expect' and carries more active weight than English 'hope.' It implies endurance and orientation — the one who yachels is facing toward the object of hope and willing to wait as long as necessary. This is the same verb used in Psalm 130:5, the preceding psalm: 'I wait for the LORD, my soul waits.'

132

Summary: *A Song of Ascents that recounts David's oath to find a resting place for the ark of the LORD and God's answering oath to establish David's dynasty forever. The psalm divides into two halves: David's vow to God (vv. 1-10) and God's vow to David (vv. 11-18). It is the fullest poetic expression of the Davidic covenant outside of 2 Samuel 7.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm is built on the architecture of reciprocal oaths. David swears an oath to God (vv. 2-5) and God swears an oath to David (vv. 11-12). The structure creates a mirror: human faithfulness answered by divine faithfulness, human initiative met by divine promise. But the asymmetry is crucial — David's oath is conditional on effort ('I will not enter my house... I will not give sleep to my eyes'), while God's oath is conditional on obedience ('If your sons keep my covenant'). The psalm also resolves the tension between the movable ark and the permanent temple by showing that God's choice of Zion is His own act of desire: 'The LORD has chosen Zion; He has desired it for His dwelling' (v. 13). God is not housed because David decided to build; God dwells in Zion because He wanted to.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 contains a geographical puzzle: 'We heard of it in Ephrathah; we found it in the fields of Jaar.' Ephrathah may refer to Bethlehem (David's hometown) or to the region around Kiriath-Jearim where the ark rested for twenty years (1 Samuel 7:1-2). 'Fields of Jaar' (sedei ya'ar) appears to be a shortened form of Kiriath-Jearim ('city of forests'). The verse compresses the entire history of the lost and recovered ark into a single couplet. The conditional clause in verse 12 — 'if your sons keep my covenant' — introduces a tension with the unconditional promise of 2 Samuel 7:14-16, where God says He will discipline David's sons but never remove His faithful love. The psalm holds both the conditional and the unconditional together without resolving them.*

Connections: *This psalm is the poetic counterpart to 2 Samuel 7 (the Davidic covenant narrative) and 1 Chronicles 28:2 (David's speech about building the temple). The ark's journey from Kiriath-Jearim to Jerusalem is narrated in 2 Samuel 6. The language of verse 8 — 'Arise, LORD, to your resting place, you and the ark of your strength' — echoes Numbers 10:35-36, Moses' cry when the ark set out. The promise that David's lamp will never be extinguished (v. 17) appears in 1 Kings 11:36 and 2 Kings 8:19. The psalm is used liturgically in 2 Chronicles 6:41-42 at the dedication of Solomon's temple.*

¹A song of ascents.

Remember, LORD, for David's sake
all his hardship.

²How he swore to the LORD,
made a vow to the Mighty One of Jacob:

³"I will not enter the tent of my house
or climb onto the couch of my bed.

⁴I will not give sleep to my eyes
or slumber to my eyelids,

⁵until I find a place for the LORD,
a dwelling for the Mighty One of Jacob."

⁶We heard of it in Ephrathah;
we found it in the fields of Jaar.

⁷Let us go to His dwelling places;
let us bow down at His footstool.

⁸Arise, LORD, to your resting place —
you and the ark of your strength.

⁹Let your priests be clothed in righteousness,
and let your faithful ones shout for joy.

¹⁰For the sake of your servant David,
do not turn away the face of your anointed one.

¹¹The LORD swore to David —
a firm truth from which He will not turn back:
"From the fruit of your body
I will set someone on your throne.

¹²If your sons keep my covenant
and my decrees that I will teach them,
then their sons also, forever,
will sit on your throne."

¹³For the LORD has chosen Zion;
He has desired it as His dwelling.

¹⁴"This is my resting place forever.
Here I will dwell, for I have desired it.

¹⁵I will richly bless her provisions;
her poor I will satisfy with bread.

¹⁶Her priests I will clothe with salvation,
and her faithful ones will shout aloud for joy.

¹⁷There I will cause a horn to sprout for David;
I have prepared a lamp for my anointed one.

¹⁸His enemies I will clothe with shame,
but upon him his crown will shine.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *unnoto* (from *anah*, 'to be afflicted, humbled') could also be translated 'his self-denial' or 'his devotion through hardship.' Some scholars connect it to the vow-making process itself — the hardships David voluntarily imposed on himself in pursuit of housing the ark. The KJV's 'afflictions' captures the suffering but misses the voluntary, self-imposed dimension.
2. *Avir Ya'aqov* ('Mighty One of Jacob') appears in Genesis 49:24, Isaiah 1:24, 49:26, and 60:16. The word *avir* means 'mighty one, bull, champion' — it evokes strength and reliability. By using this patriarchal title rather than simply 'the LORD,' the psalm anchors David's vow in the deep history of God's relationship with Israel's ancestors.
3. The oath formula *im* ('if') in Hebrew oaths functions as a strong negative: 'I will certainly not...' The escalating parallelism — 'tent of my house' / 'couch of my bed' — moves from the general (entering the house) to the specific (getting into bed). David vows to deny himself domestic comfort until he has secured a home for the ark.
4. The parallelism moves from 'sleep' (*shenah*) to 'slumber' (*tenumah*), from 'eyes' (*einai*) to 'eyelids' (*af'appai*). The language is nearly identical to Proverbs 6:4, where the sluggard is told to deny himself rest until he has escaped his debt. David applies the urgency of a debtor to the project of housing God's ark — rest is impossible until the task is accomplished.

5. The plural *mishkanot* ('dwellings') is used for poetic fullness rather than to indicate multiple locations. The singular *mishkan* is the standard term for the tabernacle in the wilderness narratives (Exodus 25:9). Here the plural elevates the concept — a dwelling worthy of the Mighty One of Jacob.
6. The identification of Ephrathah is debated. It most likely refers to the district including both Bethlehem (David's origin, cf. Micah 5:2) and Kiriath-Jearim (where the ark rested). *Sedei ya'ar* ('fields of Jaar/forest') appears to be a shortened poetic form of Kiriath-Jearim. The verse traces the arc from hearing about the ark (in the region of David's youth) to finding it (in the fields near Kiriath-Jearim).
7. The 'footstool' (*hadom raglav*) is the ark of the covenant, understood as the base of God's invisible throne. The cherubim atop the ark form the seat; the ark itself is where God's feet rest. This image appears in 1 Chronicles 28:2, where David says, 'I had it in my heart to build a house of rest for the ark of the covenant of the LORD, for the footstool of our God.' The invitation to 'bow down' (*nishtachaveh*) at the footstool is an invitation to worship at the very point where heaven meets earth.
8. This verse is quoted almost verbatim in 2 Chronicles 6:41, where Solomon speaks it at the dedication of the temple. The movement from Numbers 10:35 (the ark arises to lead Israel through the wilderness) to Psalm 132:8 (the ark arises to find its permanent home) maps the entire arc of Israel's journey from Sinai to Zion.
9. The priests are 'clothed' (*yilbeshu*) in *tsedeq* ('righteousness') — not garments but character. The parallel term *chasidekha* ('your faithful ones, your devoted ones') derives from *chesed* and describes those bound to God by mutual loyalty. The verse pairs institutional worship (priests) with communal devotion (the faithful). Both are essential to the scene of God's arrival at His resting place.
10. The word *mashiach* ('anointed one, messiah') here refers to the reigning king of David's line. Every Davidic king was God's *mashiach* — anointed with oil as a sign of divine selection. The later development of 'Messiah' as a title for an eschatological deliverer grows out of passages exactly like this one, where the promise to David's line carries the weight of God's eternal commitment.
11. The phrase *nishba YHWH* ('the LORD swore') is remarkable — God binds Himself by oath. In Hebrews 6:13-17, this divine self-binding is cited as the ultimate guarantee: since God can swear by no one greater, He swears by Himself. The word *emet* ('truth') here functions almost as an adverb: God swore truly, firmly, reliably.
12. The tension between the unconditional promise of verse 11 and the conditional clause of verse 12 is one of the great puzzles of Davidic covenant theology. In 2 Samuel 7:14-16, God says He will discipline David's sons but never remove His *chesed*. Here, the continuation of the throne depends on covenant-keeping. The resolution may be that the dynasty itself is unconditional (it will eventually produce the ultimate king) while individual reigns within it are conditional on faithfulness.
13. The verb *ivvah* (from *avah*) is the same verb used for human desire and appetite. Applying it to God is anthropomorphic but deliberate — the psalm wants the reader to understand that God's presence in Zion is not obligation but desire. He chose because He wanted to dwell there.
14. The adverbial phrase *adei ad* ('forever and ever') is one of the strongest temporal expressions in Hebrew, denoting permanence without limit. When God says 'this is my rest forever,' the claim transcends any particular structure — the first temple, the second temple. The psalm makes a theological claim about Zion that outlasts every building erected on it.
15. The infinitive absolute construction *barekh abarekh* ('I will surely bless, I will richly bless') is the same grammatical form God uses in blessing Abraham (Genesis 22:17). It signals a divine commitment of the highest order. The focus on feeding the poor connects Zion theology to social justice — God's dwelling place must be a place where the hungry eat.
16. The parallel between verse 9 (the psalmist's prayer) and verse 16 (God's answer) reveals the psalm's structure of call and response. The community asks for *tsedeq* ('righteousness'); God gives *yeshu'ah* ('salvation'). The community asks for joy; God gives intensified joy. In every case, God's answer exceeds the request.
17. The verb *atsmiyach* ('I will cause to sprout') is the same root as *tsemach*, the word Jeremiah (23:5) and Zechariah (3:8, 6:12) use for the messianic 'Branch' — the righteous descendant who will sprout from David's line. This verse is one of the roots of that later messianic terminology.
17. The 'lamp' (*ner*) as a symbol of dynastic survival appears repeatedly in the books of Kings. When God tears the kingdom from Solomon, He leaves one tribe 'so that David my servant may always have a lamp before me in Jerusalem' (1 Kings 11:36). The lamp is the visible sign of God's ongoing commitment to the Davidic line.
18. The verb *yatsits* ('to blossom, shine') applied to the crown is unusual and vivid. It connects the crown to the sprouting horn of verse 17 — both images are organic and living, suggesting a dynasty that is not merely maintained but flourishing. The choice of this verb transforms the crown from a static object to a living symbol of divine favor.

133

Summary: *A Song of Ascents attributed to David. This brief psalm celebrates the goodness of brothers dwelling together in unity, illustrating it with two vivid images: precious oil flowing down Aaron's beard and the dew of Hermon descending on the mountains of Zion. It concludes with the declaration that where such unity exists, the LORD commands blessing — life forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's two similes seem strange to modern readers — anointing oil and mountain dew — but both are images of downward flow, of something precious descending from above to cover what is below. The oil flows from Aaron's head down his beard to the collar of his robes; the dew descends from towering Hermon to the hills of Zion. Unity is not something people generate from within but something that descends upon them from a higher source. The psalm is also remarkable for its brevity and compression: in three verses it moves from observation ('how good') to illustration (oil and dew) to theological declaration (the LORD commands blessing there). The word sham ('there') in verse 3 is the hinge — wherever brothers dwell together, that is where God commands life.*

Translation Friction: *The geography of verse 3 is deliberately impossible: Mount Hermon is in the far north of Israel, over 100 miles from Zion. Hermon's dew cannot literally fall on Zion. The psalm is not describing meteorology but theology — the refreshing abundance of the north (Hermon, over 9,000 feet, generating massive dew) is imagined as descending on the holy mountain. The impossible geography creates a poetic hyperbole: unity is so precious that it is as if the richest dew in the land fell on the most sacred mountain. The anointing oil image references the high priestly consecration of Exodus 29:7 and Leviticus 8:12, connecting brotherly unity to the holiness of the priesthood.*

Connections: *The oil imagery echoes the consecration of Aaron in Exodus 29:7 and Leviticus 8:12. The phrase 'how good' (mah tov) echoes Genesis 1, where God repeatedly declares creation 'good' (tov). The concept of brothers dwelling together has legal resonance — Deuteronomy 25:5 uses the same phrase (achim yoshevim yachdav) for brothers living on the same family property, suggesting that the psalm's 'unity' has concrete, practical, not merely spiritual, meaning. The 'dew of Hermon' connects to the abundance imagery throughout the Psalms of Ascent, where Zion is the destination of blessing.*

¹A song of ascents. Of David.

How good and how pleasant it is
when brothers dwell together.

²It is like fine oil on the head,
running down on the beard —
Aaron's beard —
running down to the collar of his robes.

³Like the dew of Hermon
running down on the mountains of Zion —
for there the LORD has commanded the blessing:
life forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase achim yoshevim yachdav ('brothers dwelling together') appears in Deuteronomy 25:5 in the law of levirate marriage, where it describes brothers living on the same family estate. The psalm may originally have had this concrete, property-based meaning — the goodness of family members who share an inheritance without dividing it. The Psalms of Ascent expand this to the national level: Israel as brothers gathering together at Zion.

2. The anointing oil recipe is given in Exodus 30:22-33: myrrh, cinnamon, cane, cassia, and olive oil. It was sacred — no one could make it for ordinary use. By comparing unity to this oil, the psalm elevates brotherly solidarity to the level of holy consecration. The phrase *pi middotav* ('the mouth/opening of his garments') refers to the neck opening of the priestly robe, not the hem. The oil reaches the collar, not the feet — the image is of total coverage of the upper body.
3. The verb *tsivvah* ('commanded') applied to blessing is unusual and powerful. God commands armies, commands the sea, commands angels — and here He commands blessing to fall on the place where brothers live in unity. The blessing is not optional or hoped for but decreed.
3. The phrase *chayyim ad ha-olam* ('life until forever') is the psalm's climax. It transcends ordinary blessing (crops, safety, children) and reaches toward the ultimate gift. In the context of the Psalms of Ascent, pilgrims ascending to Jerusalem are told that their destination — the place where Israel gathers as one — is the place where God commands eternal life.

134

Summary: *The final Song of Ascents. In just three verses, the psalm calls on the servants of the LORD who stand in the temple at night to lift their hands and bless God, then pronounces a blessing from Zion back upon the worshiper. It is both the conclusion of the pilgrimage collection and a liturgical exchange between the arriving pilgrims and the temple ministers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 134 closes the Songs of Ascent (120-134) with an exchange of blessing. The pilgrims have arrived. The journey that began in Psalm 120 with distress among hostile neighbors ends here in the temple courts at night. The psalm's structure is a call and response: verses 1-2 are the pilgrims' call to the night-shift priests and Levites ('Bless the LORD!'), and verse 3 is the priests' answering benediction ('May the LORD bless you from Zion'). Blessing flows in both directions — upward from people to God and downward from God through the priests to the people. The brevity is itself meaningful: after fifteen psalms of journey, longing, trust, and arrival, the final word is simply 'bless' — repeated three times in three verses.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *omdim be-veit YHWH ba-leilot* ('standing in the house of the LORD at night') raises questions about nighttime temple worship. While the regular sacrificial schedule was centered on morning and evening, 1 Chronicles 9:33 mentions Levitical singers who served 'day and night,' and Psalm 42:8 speaks of God's song 'in the night.' The night watch was a real feature of temple life, not merely poetic atmosphere. The night setting also creates theological resonance: even in darkness, the servants of the LORD stand and bless.*

Connections: *As the final Song of Ascents, Psalm 134 echoes and resolves themes from the entire collection. The 'lifting of hands' (*se'u yedeikhem*) toward the sanctuary recalls Psalm 121:1 ('I lift my eyes to the hills'). The blessing from Zion echoes Psalm 128:5 ('May the LORD bless you from Zion'). The title *oseh shamayim va-arets* ('maker of heaven and earth') appeared in Psalm 121:2 and Psalm 124:8, forming an inclusio that brackets the entire collection. The pilgrimage that began with a cry for help from the maker of heaven and earth ends with a blessing from the same maker.*

¹A song of ascents.
Come, bless the LORD,
all you servants of the LORD
who stand in the house of the LORD at night.

²Lift your hands toward the sanctuary
and bless the LORD.

³May the LORD bless you from Zion —
the maker of heaven and earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *avdei YHWH* ('servants of the LORD') can refer broadly to all worshipers or specifically to the Levitical temple staff. In this context, the night setting and the standing in the house of the LORD point to the temple ministers. The verb *omdim* ('standing') is a technical term for priestly service — to 'stand before the LORD' means to serve in an official capacity (Deuteronomy 10:8).
2. The ambiguity of *qodesh* ('holiness' or 'the holy place/sanctuary') is likely intentional. The lifted hands are directed toward the sacred space (the inner sanctuary where God's presence dwells) and the act itself is sacred (performed in holiness). Hebrew poets often exploit the double meaning of spatial and qualitative terms.
3. The phrase *oseh shamayim va-arets* ('maker of heaven and earth') forms an inclusio with Psalm 121:2 and Psalm 124:8, bracketing the Songs of Ascent. The God who helped the pilgrim start the journey is the same God who blesses at the destination. This structural repetition is deliberate and marks the collection as a unified literary whole.
3. The shift from plural address in verses 1-2 (*barekhu*, 'bless,' plural) to singular in verse 3 (*yevarekekha*, 'may he bless you,' singular) may reflect a liturgical practice: the congregation calls out together, and the priest pronounces the blessing on each individual worshiper.

135

Summary: *A grand hymn of praise that draws together threads from across the Hebrew Bible. The psalm opens and closes with Hallelujah, calls on the temple servants to praise the LORD's name, recounts His sovereignty over nature and His mighty acts in the Exodus and conquest, mocks the impotence of idols, and concludes with a cascade of blessings from Zion. It is a mosaic psalm — nearly every line echoes or quotes another biblical text.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 135 is one of the most heavily allusive psalms in the Psalter. It borrows from Exodus 15 (the Song of the Sea), Deuteronomy 32 (the Song of Moses), Psalm 115 (the idol polemic), Psalm 134 (the blessing from Zion), and Jeremiah 10 (the weather theophany). This is not plagiarism but liturgical art — the psalm weaves Israel's entire theological tradition into a single hymn, creating a tapestry of received language that a worshiping community would recognize line by line. The idol section (vv. 15-18) is nearly identical to Psalm 115:4-8, reinforcing the contrast between the living God who acts in history and the dead gods who cannot move, speak, or see.*

Translation Friction: *The statement that God 'does whatever He pleases' (v. 6) and the celebration of military conquest (vv. 10-12) present the psalm's God as an unconstrained sovereign who acts unilaterally. The killing of Sihon and Og (vv. 10-11) is celebrated without moral qualification — this is conquest theology in its purest form. Modern readers must reckon with the fact that the psalm praises the same God for making lightning and for destroying nations, holding both in a single breath of worship. The psalm does not apologize for this; it asserts that God's sovereignty over weather and God's sovereignty over history are the same sovereignty.*

Connections: *Verses 15-18 closely parallel Psalm 115:4-8 (the idol polemic). Verse 7 echoes Jeremiah 10:13 and 51:16 (God's control of weather). Verses 8-12 retell the Exodus and conquest narratives from Exodus 7-12 and Numbers 21. Verse 4 echoes Deuteronomy 7:6 (Israel's election). The opening 'Hallelujah' and closing 'Hallelujah' frame it as a complete liturgical unit. The blessing from Zion in verse 21 connects directly to Psalm 134:3, making Psalm 135 a natural continuation of the Songs of Ascent.*

¹Hallelujah!

Praise the name of the LORD;

praise Him, you servants of the LORD,

²you who stand in the house of the LORD,

within the courts of the house of our God.

³Hallelujah, for the LORD is good;

sing praise to His name, for it is delightful.

⁴For Yah has chosen Jacob for Himself,
Israel as His treasured possession.

⁵I know that the LORD is great,
and our Lord is above all gods.

⁶Whatever the LORD desires, He does —
in the heavens and on the earth,
in the seas and in all the depths.

⁷He raises clouds from the ends of the earth;
He makes lightning for the rain;
He brings wind from His storehouses.

⁸He struck down the firstborn of Egypt,
both human and animal.

⁹He sent signs and wonders
into your midst, Egypt —
against Pharaoh and all his servants.

¹⁰He struck down many nations
and killed mighty kings —

¹¹Sihon, the Amorite king,
and Og, king of Bashan,
and all the kingdoms of Canaan.

¹²He gave their land as an inheritance —
an inheritance for Israel His people.

¹³LORD, your name endures forever;
LORD, your renown through every generation.

¹⁴For the LORD will bring justice for His people
and will have compassion on His servants.

¹⁵The idols of the nations are silver and gold,
the work of human hands.

¹⁶They have mouths but cannot speak;
they have eyes but cannot see.

¹⁷They have ears but cannot hear;
there is not even breath in their mouths.

¹⁸Those who make them will become like them —
everyone who trusts in them.

¹⁹House of Israel, bless the LORD!
House of Aaron, bless the LORD!

20House of Levi, bless the LORD!
 You who fear the LORD, bless the LORD!

21Blessed be the LORD from Zion,
 He who dwells in Jerusalem.
 Hallelujah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The triple repetition of hallelu ('praise!') in a single verse creates rhythmic urgency. The address to avdei YHWH ('servants of the LORD') connects directly to Psalm 134:1, where the same servants were called to bless — the vocabulary links the two psalms as a liturgical pair.
2. The 'standing' (omdim) is the same posture of service from Psalm 134:1. The specification of 'courts' (chatsrot) — the open-air areas surrounding the temple — indicates that this praise is public, congregational, not confined to the inner sanctuary where only priests could enter.
3. The pairing of tov ('good') and na'im ('pleasant, delightful') echoes Psalm 133:1 — what was said of brotherly unity is now said of the LORD Himself and of the act of praising Him. The word na'im could modify the name ('His name is delightful') or the act of singing ('singing is delightful'). The ambiguity enriches both readings.
4. The word segullah appears in Exodus 19:5, Deuteronomy 7:6, 14:2, 26:18, and Malachi 3:17. In each case it describes Israel's unique status as God's personal possession. The word likely derives from Akkadian sikiltum ('possession, property'). We render it 'treasured possession' to capture both the ownership and the value.
5. The shift to first person singular (ani yadati, 'I know') is personal testimony within communal worship. The claim is not monotheism in the philosophical sense but the assertion of incomparability: YHWH is greater than all elohim. The word mi-kol ('above all, more than all') does not necessarily affirm the existence of other gods — it asserts that whatever else might claim divine status, the LORD surpasses it.
6. The word tehomot ('depths, deeps') is the plural of tehom, the primordial deep of Genesis 1:2. In ancient Near Eastern cosmology, the deep was a chaotic force that preceded creation. By asserting God's sovereignty over the tehomot, the psalm claims that even the most primordial, chaotic forces are under God's command.
7. The word nesi'im can mean 'clouds,' 'vapors,' or 'mists.' The root nasa means 'to lift, carry.' These are the rising vapors that become rain clouds — the first stage of the rain cycle, which the psalm attributes entirely to God's agency. The parallel with Jeremiah 10:13 is so close that one text is almost certainly quoting the other, or both draw from a common liturgical source.
8. The transition from weather sovereignty (v. 7) to the Exodus plagues (v. 8) is seamless — the same God who controls rain and lightning is the God who struck Egypt. The phrase me-adam ad behemah ('from human to animal') indicates the totality of the plague's reach, echoing Exodus 12:29.
9. The phrase otot u-mofim ('signs and wonders') is the standard Deuteronomistic vocabulary for the plagues (Deuteronomy 4:34, 6:22, 7:19). The shift to second person address (betokekhi, 'into your midst') is dramatic — the psalm speaks directly to Egypt as if it were present, a technique that intensifies the rhetorical power of the recitation.
10. The narrative shifts from the Exodus to the conquest. The generic 'many nations' and 'mighty kings' prepare for the specific names in the next verse. The verbs hikkah ('struck') and harag ('killed') are blunt and direct — the psalm does not soften the military violence of the conquest narrative.
11. Sihon and Og are the two Transjordanian kings defeated before the crossing of the Jordan (Numbers 21:21-35). Their names became formulaic in Israel's liturgical memory — they appear together in Deuteronomy 1:4, 3:1-11, 4:47, 29:7, 31:4; Joshua 2:10, 9:10, 12:4; Nehemiah 9:22; and Psalms 136:19-20. They represent the first victories of the conquest, the proof that God would give the land.
12. The word nachalah ('inheritance, allotted portion') is one of the most theologically loaded land terms in the Hebrew Bible. It carries the sense of permanent, divinely granted possession — not earned, not purchased, but allotted by the sovereign. The double use (nachalah nachalah) is emphatic: this land is truly, genuinely, permanently Israel's inheritance.
13. The 'name' (shem) and the 'memorial/renown' (zikhr) are parallel expressions for God's reputation and identity as known by His people. The phrase le-dor va-dor ('generation to generation') is the Hebrew idiom for perpetuity through time — not abstract eternity but ongoing remembrance in each successive generation. This verse echoes Exodus 3:15, where God tells Moses that YHWH is 'my name forever and my memorial to all generations.'
14. This verse is drawn directly from the Song of Moses in Deuteronomy 32:36. In its original context, it describes God's turning point — after discipline, He vindicates His people and has compassion on them. The psalm uses the quotation to assure worshipers that God's sovereignty (celebrated in vv. 5-12) is exercised on behalf of, not against, His people.
15. The word atsabbei ('idols') comes from a root meaning 'to shape, form, fashion' and carries a secondary association with etsev ('pain, grief'). The idols are shaped things that bring grief. The polemic begins with their material: silver and gold — valuable but inert. And their origin: human hands — they are made by the very beings they claim to rule.

16. The idol polemic catalogs the sensory organs that the images possess in form but not in function. This section (vv. 15-18) closely parallels Psalm 115:4-8. The contrast is with the living God of verses 5-14, who speaks, sees, acts, and responds. The idols are the anti-God: shaped like beings but utterly inert.
17. The climax of the polemic: not only can the idols not speak, see, or hear — they do not even breathe. The word *ruach* ('breath, wind, spirit') is the most basic sign of life. Its absence confirms that the idols are not merely limited gods but no gods at all — dead objects shaped like living beings.
18. The principle 'you become like what you worship' is stated here and in Psalm 115:8 as a theological law. Hosea 9:10 expresses the same idea: 'They became detestable like the thing they loved.' The psalm is not merely mocking idolaters but warning Israel: worship shapes the worshiper.
19. The closing cascade of blessings addresses four groups in descending specificity: all Israel, the priestly house of Aaron, the Levitical house of Levi, and all who fear the LORD. This fourfold call appears also in Psalm 115:9-11 and Psalm 118:2-4, suggesting a fixed liturgical formula. Each group is invited to participate in the same act: blessing the LORD.
20. The final group, *yirei YHWH* ('those who fear the LORD'), may include non-Israelite God-fearers — proselytes or sympathizers who worship Israel's God without being ethnically Israelite. This broadens the call beyond tribal boundaries to anyone whose posture before God is one of reverent awe.
21. The phrase *barukh YHWH mi-Tsion* ('blessed be the LORD from Zion') echoes Psalm 128:5 and Psalm 134:3, creating a web of cross-references within the Psalms of Ascent and its immediate aftermath. Zion is the source point of blessing — not because the geography is magical but because God has chosen to dwell there.

136

Summary: *The Great Hallel. Twenty-six verses, each ending with the refrain 'for His faithful love endures forever.' The psalm moves through creation (vv. 4-9), the Exodus (vv. 10-16), the conquest (vv. 17-22), God's rescue of Israel from lowliness (vv. 23-24), and His provision of food to all living things (v. 25), before closing with a final call to give thanks (v. 26). The refrain *ki le-olam chasdo* ('for His faithful love endures forever') is repeated in every single verse — twenty-six times.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The relentless repetition of the refrain is the psalm's genius. Twenty-six times the congregation responds with the same words, and the repetition is not redundancy but insistence. Each verse presents a different act of God — creating light, splitting the sea, killing kings, feeding all flesh — and after each one, the same truth is declared: His faithful love endures forever. The structure teaches that *chesed* is not one attribute among many but the interpretive key to everything God does. Creation is *chesed*. Liberation is *chesed*. Conquest is *chesed*. Daily bread is *chesed*. The psalm was likely performed antiphonally, with a cantor singing the first half of each verse and the congregation responding with the refrain. This means the congregation's most-repeated theological statement was a declaration about *chesed*.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew word *chesed* has no single English equivalent. 'Mercy' (KJV) is too narrow; 'lovingkindness' (older translations) is not a real English word; 'steadfast love' (many modern translations) is closer but still clinical. We render it 'faithful love' because *chesed* is love that is loyal, love that persists through covenant obligation, love that does not quit. It is God's self-binding commitment to His people expressed in ongoing acts of care. The twenty-six repetitions in this psalm may not be accidental — the numerical value of YHWH (*yod-he-vav-he*) in gematria is 26, suggesting the psalm's structure mirrors the divine name itself.*

Connections: *The refrain appears in 1 Chronicles 16:34, 2 Chronicles 5:13, 7:3, and Ezra 3:11 — always at moments of intense liturgical celebration (the ark's arrival, the temple dedication, the second temple's foundation). Jeremiah 33:11 prophesies a day when the refrain will be heard again in the restored land. The phrase *ki le-olam chasdo* is arguably the most repeated liturgical formula in the Hebrew Bible. Psalm 136 shares extensive content with Psalm 135, but where Psalm 135 narrates, Psalm 136 responds — each act of God becomes an occasion for the *chesed* declaration.*

**Give thanks to the LORD, for He is good,
for His faithful love endures forever.**

²Give thanks to the God of gods,
for His faithful love endures forever.

³Give thanks to the Lord of lords,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁴To the one who alone does great wonders,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁵To the one who made the heavens with understanding,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁶To the one who spread out the earth upon the waters,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁷To the one who made the great lights,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁸The sun to rule the day,
for His faithful love endures forever.

⁹The moon and stars to rule the night,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁰To the one who struck Egypt through their firstborn,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹¹And brought Israel out from among them,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹²With a strong hand and an outstretched arm,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹³To the one who split the Sea of Reeds into sections,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁴And made Israel pass through the middle of it,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁵And shook off Pharaoh and his army into the Sea of Reeds,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁶To the one who led His people through the wilderness,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁷To the one who struck down great kings,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁸And killed mighty kings,
for His faithful love endures forever.

¹⁹Sihon, king of the Amorites,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²⁰And Og, king of Bashan,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²¹And gave their land as an inheritance,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²²An inheritance for Israel His servant,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²³Who remembered us in our lowliness,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²⁴And tore us free from our enemies,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²⁵The one who gives food to all living things,
for His faithful love endures forever.

²⁶Give thanks to the God of heaven,
for His faithful love endures forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The KJV renders *chesed* as 'mercy,' which captures only one dimension of the word. *Chesed* includes mercy but also encompasses loyalty, commitment, kindness, and covenant faithfulness. It is the word used when Ruth clings to Naomi, when David shows kindness to Jonathan's son, when God remembers His covenant with Abraham. We render it 'faithful love' throughout this psalm to hold together the love and the faithfulness.
2. The title *Elohei ha-Elohim* ('God of gods') uses the superlative construction common in Hebrew: the ultimate among all that could be called divine. It does not necessarily affirm the existence of other gods but asserts YHWH's supremacy over every possible claimant to divine status.
3. *Adonei ha-Adonim* ('Lord of lords') parallels the previous verse's 'God of gods.' Together they form a double superlative: supreme God, supreme ruler. The three opening verses (vv. 1-3) establish the recipient of thanks before the reasons begin in verse 4.
4. The word *levaddo* ('alone, by Himself') is theologically significant: no other being participates in God's wonder-working. The *niflaot gedolot* ('great wonders') encompasses everything that follows — creation, Exodus, conquest — all performed by God alone.
5. The word *tevunah* ('understanding, insight, intelligence') attributes the creation to divine wisdom, not raw power. The heavens are not brute-forced into existence but crafted with intelligence. This echoes Proverbs 3:19: 'The LORD by wisdom founded the earth; by understanding He established the heavens.'
6. The verb *roqa* ('to spread out, to beat out, to flatten') is a metalworking term — like hammering gold into thin sheets. The image is of God flattening the earth and laying it over the primordial waters, reflecting the ancient cosmology of Genesis 1:9-10 where dry land emerges from the waters.
7. The 'great lights' (*orim gedolim*) echoes Genesis 1:16 exactly — the same phrase used for the sun and moon on the fourth day of creation. The psalm follows the Genesis creation order, treating the creation narrative as a liturgical script.
8. The verb *memsheleth* ('to rule, to govern') assigns the sun a political role — it governs the day as a regent governs territory. In a world where surrounding cultures worshiped the sun as a god, the psalm reduces it to a servant assigned a shift by the true sovereign.
9. The moon and stars together govern the night. The plural *memshelot* ('rules, governances') distributes the authority — the night has multiple governors, not one. This completes the creation section (vv. 4-9) before the psalm shifts to the Exodus in verse 10.
10. The transition from creation to Exodus is seamless — the God who made the sun is the God who struck Egypt. The phrase *bi-vekhoreihem* ('through their firstborn') concentrates the tenth plague into a single word: the firstborn are both the target and the means of the blow. Declaring 'His faithful love endures forever' after an act of destruction is theologically challenging — the psalm insists that even judgment is an expression of *chesed* toward those being delivered.

11. The verb *vayyotse* ('and He brought out') is the Exodus verb — the *hiphil* of *yatsa*, the root of the entire Exodus narrative. God is the subject; Israel is the object. The deliverance is entirely God's act.
12. The phrase *be-yad chazaqah u-vi-zeroa netuyah* ('with a strong hand and with an outstretched arm') is the Deuteronomic formula for the Exodus (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15, 7:19, 11:2, 26:8). It is one of the most formulaic phrases in the Hebrew Bible — an Israelite hearing these words would immediately think 'Exodus.' The hand and arm are anthropomorphisms for God's direct, personal intervention.
13. The verb *gozer* ('to cut, split, divide') is graphic — God cut the sea into *gezarim* ('sections, pieces'), as one cuts meat or cloth. The *Yam Suf* ('Sea of Reeds') is the traditional body of water crossed during the Exodus. We render it 'Sea of Reeds' rather than 'Red Sea' because *suf* means 'reed, rush' (as in Exodus 2:3, where baby Moses is placed among the reeds).
14. The *hiphil* verb *he'evir* ('He caused to pass through') emphasizes God's agency — Israel did not swim or wade; God caused them to cross. The preposition *be-tokho* ('through its midst') places Israel in the center of the divided sea, surrounded by walls of water on both sides.
15. The verb *ni'er* is more dismissive than 'overthrew' (KJV). It contains the idea of shaking something loose — like shaking insects off a garment. Applied to Pharaoh and his entire army, it reduces Egypt's military might to something God brushes away without effort.
16. The participle *molikhi* ('the one leading') describes ongoing guidance — not a single act but forty years of sustained direction through the desert. The wilderness (*midbar*) was not merely a transit zone but the place where Israel was formed as a covenant people. God's faithful love endures even through the barren places.
17. The conquest section begins (vv. 17-22), moving from the wilderness to the Transjordanian victories. The 'great kings' (*melakhim gedolim*) are specified in the following verses — Sihon and Og, the same pair memorialized in Psalm 135:10-11.
18. The word *addirim* ('mighty, majestic, powerful') elevates the defeated kings — these were not petty chieftains but formidable rulers. Their might makes their defeat more impressive and God's *chesed* more visible.
19. Sihon ruled the territory between the Arnon and Jabbok rivers in Transjordan. His defeat is narrated in Numbers 21:21-31 and became one of the most frequently cited events in Israel's liturgical memory of the conquest.
20. Og ruled the fertile region of Bashan in the northern Transjordan. Deuteronomy 3:11 notes that his iron bed was nine cubits long — he was remembered as a giant. His defeat, narrated in Numbers 21:33-35, opened the way to the northern approaches to the promised land.
21. The word *nachalah* ('inheritance') reappears from Psalm 135:12. The conquered land is not plunder but inheritance — a divinely granted portion held in trust.
22. Israel is called *avdo* ('His servant') — a title of honor, not degradation. In the ancient Near East, the king's servant was his trusted agent. Israel serves the cosmic sovereign as His representative on earth. The land is the servant's portion, granted by the master.
23. The verb *zakhar* ('remembered') in Hebrew does not mean 'recalled to mind' (as if God had forgotten) but 'turned His attention to with intent to act.' Divine remembering is always the prelude to divine intervention.
24. The verb *vayyifrequeinu* (from *paraq*, 'to tear away, to rescue by force, to snatch free') is more violent than 'redeemed.' It describes a forceful extraction — God ripped Israel from the grip of enemies the way one tears prey from a predator's jaws. The word *tsareinu* ('our enemies,' literally 'our adversaries, our distressers') comes from the root *tsarar* ('to bind, to press, to distress').
25. The phrase *kol basar* ('all flesh') encompasses not just all humans but all living creatures — animals, birds, sea life. The psalm's movement from Israel-specific salvation (vv. 10-24) to universal provision (v. 25) prevents the theology from becoming exclusively national. God's *chesed* has a particular expression (Israel's history) but a universal scope (all living things eat because of Him).
26. The title *El ha-shamayim* ('God of heaven') appears in Ezra, Nehemiah, and Daniel as a way of identifying Israel's God to non-Israelite audiences. Its use here universalizes the psalm's closing: this is not merely Israel's tribal deity but the God of heaven itself — the creator, liberator, and sustainer of all.

137

Summary: *The psalm of exile. Babylonian captives sit by the rivers of Babylon and weep, hanging their harps on willows. Their captors demand songs of Zion, but the exiles refuse: how can they sing the LORD's song in a foreign land? The psalm then shifts to a fierce oath of loyalty to Jerusalem and closes with a raw cry for vengeance against Babylon and Edom, culminating in the shocking image of verse 9.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most emotionally extreme psalms in the Psalter — it moves from tender grief to savage rage without transition or apology. The opening image of weeping exiles is among the most beautiful in all poetry, while the closing image of dashing infants against rocks is among the most disturbing in all scripture. The psalm refuses to separate these emotions; they belong together as the full spectrum of what displacement, humiliation, and loss produce in the human*

soul. The captors' request to 'sing us one of Zion's songs' is not innocent entertainment — it is the demand of the powerful that the defeated perform their culture as spectacle. The exiles' refusal is an act of resistance: the songs of Zion are not for Babylonian amusement.

Translation Friction: Verse 9 is the most difficult verse in the Psalter for modern readers: 'Happy is the one who seizes your infants and dashes them against the rock.' This is not a command or a prophecy but a curse — the raw prayer of a traumatized people who witnessed exactly this violence done to their own children (cf. 2 Kings 8:12, Isaiah 13:16, Hosea 13:16, Nahum 3:10). The psalm does not command anyone to act on this wish; it places the wish before God. The violence of the language reflects the violence that created it. To sanitize this verse is to silence the voice of the victim. To celebrate it is to miss the entire arc of scripture that moves toward enemy love. The psalm is honest about what humans feel in the aftermath of atrocity; it does not pretend those feelings are righteous.

Connections: The 'rivers of Babylon' likely refer to the canal systems of the Euphrates — the irrigation channels where deportees were settled (cf. Ezekiel 1:1, 'by the river Chebar'). The demand to sing echoes the forced labor songs of slaves. The oath to Jerusalem (vv. 5-6) parallels the covenant loyalty language of the Psalms of Ascent. The curse against Edom (v. 7) reflects Edom's complicity in Jerusalem's destruction (Obadiah 10-14, Ezekiel 25:12-14). The prophecy of Babylon's destruction being answered measure for measure echoes Isaiah 13:16 and Jeremiah 51:56.

¹By the rivers of Babylon —
there we sat down and wept
when we remembered Zion.

²On the willows there
we hung our lyres.

³For there our captors demanded songs from us,
and our tormentors demanded joy:
"Sing us one of the songs of Zion!"

⁴How can we sing the LORD's song
on foreign soil?

⁵If I forget you, Jerusalem,
let my right hand forget its skill.

⁶Let my tongue cling to the roof of my mouth
if I do not remember you,
if I do not set Jerusalem
above my highest joy.

⁷Remember, LORD, against the sons of Edom
the day of Jerusalem —
how they cried, "Tear it down! Tear it down!
Down to its foundations!"

⁸Daughter of Babylon, you devastated one —
happy is the one who repays you
for what you have done to us.

⁹Happy is the one who seizes your infants
and dashes them against the rock.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'rivers' (naharot) of Babylon are not natural rivers but the vast canal system that irrigated Mesopotamia. Ezekiel was among the exiles 'by the river Chebar' (Ezekiel 1:1), a major canal near Nippur. The exiles were settled in agricultural communities along these waterways — the setting is specific and historical, not merely poetic.
2. The word aravim could refer to willows (Salix) or poplars (Populus euphratica), both of which grow along Mesopotamian waterways. The kinnor is the primary stringed instrument of Israelite worship — David played it before Saul (1 Samuel 16:23), and it accompanied temple psalmody. Hanging it in a tree is the musical equivalent of refusing to speak.
3. The word tolaleinu is rare and debated. It may derive from a root meaning 'to mock, to taunt' or from a root meaning 'to torment.' Either way, it describes people who inflict suffering — these are not friendly audiences asking for a cultural exchange but captors demanding a performance from the conquered.
3. The phrase mi-shir Tsiyon ('from the songs of Zion') refers to the temple psalms — songs praising the LORD's presence in Jerusalem, His choice of Zion, His kingship from the holy mountain. To sing these songs in Babylon, by the rivers of the empire that destroyed the temple, would be to sever the songs from their meaning.
4. The phrase shir YHWH ('the song of the LORD') elevates the songs beyond human composition — they belong to God. This is not merely folk music or national anthem; it is sacred song, bound to a sacred place. The exiles' refusal to sing is an act of theological integrity: they will not profane what is holy by performing it as spectacle.
5. The phrase tishkach yemini ('let my right hand forget') is elliptical — the object is implied. Most scholars supply 'its skill' or 'its function.' Some read it as 'let my right hand wither' (from a different root). Either way, the curse targets the hand's ability to function — the exile stakes his bodily capacity on his fidelity to Jerusalem.
6. The two self-curses (hand and tongue) correspond to the two faculties needed to sing the songs of Zion: instrumental skill and vocal ability. The exile offers to sacrifice both rather than forget Jerusalem. This is the language of total commitment — the exile's entire musical identity is pledged to a destroyed city.
7. Edom's role in Jerusalem's fall is confirmed by multiple prophetic texts: Obadiah 10-14 details Edom's crimes (standing aside, gloating, looting, cutting off refugees), Ezekiel 25:12-14 announces judgment against Edom for acting in vengeance, and Lamentations 4:21-22 warns Edom that judgment is coming. The aru aru ('tear down, strip bare') uses a verb that implies both demolition and humiliation — laying bare, exposing, stripping naked.
8. The phrase ha-shedudah could be translated 'the destroyed one' (referring to Babylon's future fall) or 'the destructive one' (referring to what Babylon did to Jerusalem). The ambiguity may be intentional — Babylon is both the destroyer and the one destined to be destroyed. The prophetic perfect tense treats the future as certain.
9. This verse must be understood within its historical context: the Babylonian army did destroy Jerusalem, did kill its inhabitants, did commit atrocities against children. The exiles who speak this psalm are not hypothetically imagining violence — they are remembering it and praying that the perpetrators receive the same treatment. The verse is not a moral instruction but a prayer from the depths of trauma. Its inclusion in scripture is itself remarkable — the Bible does not censor the prayers of the suffering, even when those prayers are terrible.
9. Isaiah 13:16 prophesies the same fate for Babylon: 'Their infants will be dashed to pieces before their eyes.' The psalm's wish aligns with the prophetic tradition that sees Babylon's fall as divine justice. Cyrus's conquest of Babylon in 539 BCE fulfilled this expectation, though the historical conquest was notably less violent than the psalm anticipates.

138

Summary: *A psalm of David. The psalmist gives wholehearted thanks before the divine assembly, bowing toward God's temple and praising His name for faithful love and truth. God answered when he called and strengthened his soul. The psalm envisions all the kings of the earth praising the LORD when they hear His words, for though the LORD is exalted, He sees the lowly. The psalm closes with a confession of trust: the LORD will complete what He has begun, for His faithful love endures forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm bridges the personal and the cosmic. It begins with an individual giving thanks ('I give you thanks with all my heart') and ends with a universal vision of kings singing the LORD's praises. The key theological claim is in verse 6: the LORD is ram ('exalted, high') yet He sees the shafal ('lowly, humble') and knows the gavah ('proud, haughty') from a distance. Height in God's case produces not distance but attention to those below. The final verse contains one of the most theologically loaded statements in the Psalter: YHWH yigmor ba'adi ('the LORD will complete*

what concerns me') — God finishes what He starts.

Translation Friction: *The phrase neged elohim in verse 1 ('before the gods' or 'before the divine beings') is ambiguous. It could mean 'before the heavenly court' (divine beings who witness human worship), 'before the judges' (human authorities), or 'before the idols' (in defiant contrast to false gods). The LXX translates it as 'before the angels.' The ambiguity is likely intentional — the psalmist's worship takes place in a cosmic arena, witnessed by whatever powers exist.*

Connections: *The statement 'You have exalted your word above all your name' (v. 2) is one of the most debated lines in the Psalms — it may mean that God's faithfulness to His promises exceeds even His reputation. The closing affirmation that God will not abandon the work of His hands (v. 8) echoes Philippians 1:6. The phrase chesed le-olam ('faithful love forever') connects this psalm to the Great Hallel of Psalm 136. The vision of kings praising God anticipates Psalm 148 and the universal worship themes of Isaiah 2:2-4.*

¹Of David.

I give You thanks with all my heart;
before the divine assembly I sing Your praise.

²I bow toward Your holy temple
and give thanks to Your name
for Your faithful love and Your truth,
for You have exalted Your word above all Your name.

³On the day I called, You answered me;
You made me bold with strength in my soul.

⁴All the kings of the earth will give You thanks, LORD,
for they have heard the words of Your mouth.

⁵And they will sing of the ways of the LORD,
for great is the glory of the LORD.

⁶Though the LORD is exalted,
He sees the lowly,
and the proud He knows from a distance.

⁷Though I walk through the thick of trouble,
You keep me alive.
Against the rage of my enemies You stretch out Your hand,
and Your right hand saves me.

⁸The LORD will complete what concerns me.
LORD, Your faithful love endures forever —
do not let go of the works of Your hands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase neged elohim is one of the more contested expressions in the Psalms. We render it 'before the divine assembly' because the context of cosmic worship best fits the psalm's movement from individual thanks to universal recognition by kings. The psalmist's worship is not a private act but a declaration made before witnesses, both heavenly and earthly.
2. The clause ki higdalta al kol shimkha imratekha is one of the most debated lines in the Psalter. Some emend the text; the LXX reads differently. Taken as it stands in the MT, it says God has magnified His word (imrah, 'saying, promise') above His name (shem, 'name, reputation'). This may mean: God's specific covenant promises are the greatest thing about Him — greater even than His cosmic reputation. His reliability outshines His majesty.

3. The verb *tarhiveni* (from *rahav*, 'to be wide, spacious, bold') means God expanded or emboldened the psalmist's inner life. The image is spatial — a soul that was cramped by fear is made wide, spacious, bold. The word *oz* ('strength, power') specifies what fills the expanded space: not mere relief but actual strength.
4. The vision expands from one worshiper to all the kings of the earth — *kol malkhei erets*. The trigger for their worship is hearing: *ki shamu imrei fikha* ('for they have heard the words of Your mouth'). When God's words reach the nations, the nations respond with thanksgiving. This is a missionary vision — not of Israel going to the nations but of God's words reaching the nations' rulers.
5. The kings will not merely acknowledge God but will sing — *ve-yashiru be-darkhei YHWH* ('they will sing of/in the ways of the LORD'). The 'ways' (*darkhei*) are God's characteristic patterns of action — His justice, mercy, faithfulness. The reason is *kavod YHWH* ('the glory of the LORD'), which is great (*gadol*). When the nations see how God acts, they will sing about it.
6. The verb *yeyeda* (from *yada*, 'to know') applied to the proud 'from a distance' is ambiguous: does God know about the proud from far away (omniscience) or does He keep them at a distance (relational remoteness)? The contrast with the lowly suggests the latter — God draws near to the humble and keeps the proud at a distance. The same theology appears in James 4:6 and 1 Peter 5:5.
7. The phrase *be-qerev tsarah* ('in the midst of trouble') places the psalmist inside the trouble, not approaching it or remembering it but walking through it. The verb *techayeni* ('You keep me alive, You revive me') is from *chayah* ('to live') — in the thick of mortal danger, God sustains life. The right hand (*yeminekha*) is the hand of power and salvation throughout the Psalms.
8. The verb *teref* (from *raphah*, 'to let go, to relax, to abandon') in the negative imperative *al teref* means 'do not release, do not let drop, do not abandon.' The image is of God holding something He has made and the psalmist asking Him not to open His hands. This is one of the most intimate images of divine care in the Psalter — God as the craftsman who will not discard His own work.

139

Summary: *A psalm of David. The most sustained meditation on divine omniscience and omnipresence in the Hebrew Bible. The psalmist declares that God has searched him and known him completely — every movement, every thought, every word before it is spoken. He cannot flee from God's presence: not in heaven, not in the grave, not at the farthest reach of the sea, not in darkness. God wove him together in the womb, and all his days were written before any of them existed. The psalm then turns sharply to a plea against the wicked before closing with an invitation for God to search and test the psalmist's own heart.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 139 is unique in the Psalter for its sustained philosophical depth combined with intimate personal address. It is simultaneously the most theological and the most personal psalm — cosmic claims about God's knowledge and presence are expressed as 'You know me... You are there... You knit me.' The theology is never abstract; it is always relational. The psalmist does not prove God's omniscience; he addresses the One who knows him. The womb passage (vv. 13-16) is one of the most extraordinary poetic achievements in ancient literature — it imagines God as a weaver, an embroiderer, a sculptor working in the hidden depths of the earth (a metaphor for the womb), crafting the psalmist's body with deliberate artistry. The closing invitation — 'Search me, God' — is remarkable because the psalm has spent twenty-two verses establishing that God already knows everything. The psalmist invites what is already happening, which transforms omniscience from a threat into a comfort.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 19-22 contain violent imprecation against the wicked that seems to break the psalm's contemplative tone. Some scholars view these verses as a later addition; others see them as integral — the psalmist, having meditated on God's total knowledge, logically asks why those who oppose this God are allowed to persist. The shift is jarring but theologically coherent: if God truly knows everything, then the wicked are not merely committing crimes but rebelling against the all-knowing One. Verse 16 is textually difficult — the Hebrew of *golem* ('unformed substance') and the phrase about days written in a book is compressed and partially obscure, leading to significant translation divergence.*

Connections: *The omniscience theme connects to Psalm 44:21 ('He knows the secrets of the heart') and Jeremiah 17:10 ('I the LORD search the heart'). The womb imagery parallels Job 10:8-12 (God forming Job's body) and Jeremiah 1:5 ('Before I formed you in the womb I knew you'). The 'wings of the dawn' (v. 9) echoes Malachi 4:2 ('the sun of righteousness with healing in its wings'). The closing plea to be searched connects back to the opening declaration of being known, forming a circular structure. The psalm anticipates Romans 8:38-39 (nothing can separate us from God's love) and Acts 17:27-28 ('in Him we live and move and have our being').*

¹For the music director. Of David. A psalm.
LORD, You have searched me
and You know me.

²You know when I sit and when I rise;
You understand my thoughts from far away.

³You sift my traveling and my resting;
You are familiar with all my ways.

⁴Before a word is on my tongue,
LORD, You know it completely.

⁵Behind and before, You hem me in;
You lay Your hand upon me.

⁶Such knowledge is too wondrous for me —
too high; I cannot reach it.

⁷Where can I go from Your Spirit?
Where can I flee from Your presence?

⁸If I ascend to heaven, You are there.
If I make my bed in Sheol — there You are.

⁹If I rise on the wings of the dawn,
if I settle at the far end of the sea —

¹⁰even there Your hand would guide me,
and Your right hand would hold me.

¹¹If I say, "Surely darkness will overwhelm me,
and the light around me will become night" —

¹²even darkness is not dark to You.
The night shines like the day;
darkness and light are the same to You.

¹³For You created my inmost parts;
You wove me together in my mother's womb.

¹⁴I thank You, for I am awesomely, wondrously made.
Your works are wondrous,
and my soul knows it well.

¹⁵My frame was not hidden from You
when I was made in secret,
embroidered in the depths of the earth.

¹⁶Your eyes saw my unformed body.
In Your book they were all written —
the days that were shaped for me

when not one of them yet existed.

¹⁷How precious to me are Your thoughts, God!
How vast is the sum of them!

¹⁸If I tried to count them, they would outnumber the sand.
When I awake, I am still with You.

¹⁹If only You would slay the wicked, God!
You men of bloodshed — get away from me!

²⁰They speak of You with wicked intent;
Your enemies use Your name for falsehood.

²¹Do I not hate those who hate You, LORD?
Do I not loathe those who rise against You?

²²With complete hatred I hate them;
they have become my own enemies.

²³Search me, God, and know my heart;
test me and know my anxious thoughts.

²⁴See if there is any hurtful way in me,
and lead me in the way that lasts forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *chaqar* ('to search, probe, investigate') appears in Job 28:3 for mining ore from the earth — digging deep to find what is hidden. Applied to God's knowledge of a person, it implies God has gone to the deepest levels of the psalmist's being. This is not surface knowledge but excavation.
2. The merism 'sitting and rising' covers all of daily life — everything between lying down and standing up, which is to say everything. It is the Hebrew way of saying 'every moment of your existence.' The word *re'i* is textually linked to either 'thought/purpose' or 'shepherding' — both meanings are theologically rich and may be deliberately ambiguous.
3. The verb *zerita* ('You have sifted, winnowed, scattered') is an agricultural term — winnowing grain to separate wheat from chaff. God sifts the psalmist's life, examining each component. The words *orchi* ('my path, my walking') and *riv'i* ('my lying down, my resting') form another merism: movement and stillness, waking and sleeping. The verb *hiskantah* ('You are familiar with, You are accustomed to') means intimate, habitual knowledge — not newly discovered but long known.
4. The particle *hen* ('behold, look!') expresses astonishment — the psalmist is amazed by what he is saying. The word *khullah* ('all of it, entirely, completely') emphasizes that God's pre-knowledge is not partial or approximate but total.
5. The word *tsartani* is from the same root as *tsarah* ('trouble, distress') — being hemmed in by God can feel like distress. But the laying of the hand (*kaf*) is a gesture of blessing, protection, and ownership. The verse holds both the threat and the comfort of being completely known.
6. The adjective *peliah* ('wondrous, extraordinary, beyond comprehension') is from the same root as *niflaot* ('wonders') in Psalm 131:1. There, the psalmist renounced walking in things too wondrous for him; here, he encounters the most wondrous thing of all — God's knowledge of him — and confesses he cannot grasp it. The verb *nisgavah* ('it is set high, elevated, inaccessible') and *lo ukhal lah* ('I cannot attain/reach it') together convey a knowledge that exists but transcends human comprehension.
7. The question format does not express desire to flee but astonishment at the impossibility of doing so. Jonah 1:3 narrates an actual attempt to flee from God's presence — this psalm explains why such flight is futile.
8. Sheol is not hell in the later Christian sense but the shadowy realm of the dead — a place of silence, stillness, and diminished existence (cf. Ecclesiastes 9:10). The claim that God is present even there pushes against other psalmic texts that describe Sheol as a place cut off from God (Psalm 88:5-6). Psalm 139 extends divine omnipresence to its absolute limit.
9. The 'wings of the dawn' (*kanfei shachar*) is one of the most beautiful images in the Psalter. The dawn was imagined as a bird spreading its wings across the sky, its light extending from horizon to horizon. To take its wings is to move at the speed of light itself. *Acharit yam* ('the end/farthest part of the sea') is the western edge of the world in Israelite geography — beyond the Mediterranean, beyond everything known.

10. The verbs *tancheni* ('would guide me,' from *nachah*, 'to lead, guide') and *tochazeni* ('would hold me, seize me,' from *achaz*, 'to grasp, take hold of') transform omnipresence from a philosophical concept into personal care. God is not merely present at the farthest reaches — He is active there, guiding and holding. The right hand (*yamin*) is the hand of skill, strength, and favor.
11. The verb *yeshufeni* ('will overwhelm me, crush me, bruise me') is the same rare verb from Genesis 3:15, where the serpent strikes the heel. Darkness is imagined as an attacking force, not merely an absence of light. The psalmist's desperate hope — that darkness could hide him — is about to be overturned.
12. The theological implications are enormous: if darkness and light are identical to God, then the categories humans use to hide (night, secrecy, concealment) have no force before Him. This dissolves the fundamental human experience of being unseen in the dark. It also means that God's creative and sustaining work continues uninterrupted by night — He does not sleep (Psalm 121:4) and He does not squint.
13. The word *kilyot* ('kidneys') functions in Hebrew the way 'heart' functions in English — as the seat of deep emotion, conscience, and moral sensitivity. Jeremiah 17:10: 'I the LORD search the heart and test the kidneys.' God created the organ He now searches.
13. The verb *sakakh* in the *piel* (*tesukkeni*) means 'to weave together, to knit, to intertwine.' Some connect it to *sukkah* ('booth, shelter'), yielding 'You sheltered me.' We follow the weaving interpretation because it connects to the embroidery image in verse 15.
14. The phrase *noraot nifleiti* is more intense than the familiar 'fearfully and wonderfully made.' *Noraot* carries the sense of awe and even terror — the psalmist's existence is awe-inspiring, not merely 'nice.' *Nifleiti* means he is himself a wonder-work, a marvel on the level of God's mighty acts. Every human being, the psalm implies, is a divine wonder.
15. The verb *ruqqam* ('to embroider') is used in Exodus 26:36 and 27:16 for the embroidered screens of the tabernacle. The same artistry that decorated God's dwelling place is applied to the human body in the womb. The 'depths of the earth' is a mythological-poetic image, not a literal claim — it identifies the womb with the earth's hidden interior, the place of forming and shaping that no human eye can see.
16. The word *golem* appears only here in the entire Hebrew Bible. In later Jewish tradition (especially medieval mysticism), a *golem* became an artificially created being — the word's biblical meaning is simply 'unformed mass, embryo, raw material.' The concept of a divine book recording future events appears in Exodus 32:32-33 (the book of life), Daniel 12:1, and Malachi 3:16.
16. The textual note in the Hebrew (the *ketiv/qere* variation between *velo* and *velo*) creates ambiguity: 'and to Him' or 'and not.' The *qere* reading *velo* ('and to Him') yields: 'and to Him [was] one of them' — meaning each day belongs to God. The *ketiv* reading *velo* ('and not') yields: 'and not one of them [yet existed].' Both readings are theologically rich.
17. The word *yaqru* ('are precious, are heavy, are weighty') from *yaqar* describes something of great value and weight. God's *re'ekha* ('Your thoughts, Your purposes, Your intentions') toward the psalmist are not merely numerous but precious — each one carries weight and worth. The word *rasheihem* ('their sum, their heads, their chief parts') suggests the total is beyond calculation.
18. The phrase *ve-odi immakh* ('and I am still with You') is the psalm's most intimate moment. After twenty-four lines of theological exploration, the psalmist arrives at a child's experience: I woke up and You were there. The word *odi* ('still, yet, I continue to be') expresses continuity — the relationship that exists in sleep persists into waking.
19. The psalm's tone shifts abruptly. The contemplative meditation gives way to imprecation. The logic, however, follows: if God knows everything and is everywhere, why do the wicked persist? The phrase *anshei damim* ('men of blood/bloodshed') describes those who commit violence. The imperative *suru menni* ('turn aside from me, depart from me') is the psalmist's rejection of association with the violent.
20. The wicked speak God's name *la-mezimmah* ('for evil purpose, with wicked intent') and *nasa la-shav* ('lift up for emptiness/falsehood'). The charge is blasphemy — using God's name to serve lies. The language echoes the third commandment: 'You shall not lift up (*tissa*) the name of the LORD your God for emptiness (*la-shav*)' (Exodus 20:7).
21. The psalmist claims solidarity with God against God's enemies. The verb *esna* ('I hate') applied to God's enemies is the mirror of *mesanekha* ('those who hate You'). The verb *etqotat* ('I loathe, I am disgusted, I contend with') is from a root meaning 'to feel nausea, to be revolted.' The rhetoric is: my enemies are Your enemies; my hatred aligns with Your justice.
22. The phrase *takhlit sinah* ('complete/perfect hatred, hatred to the utmost') is the strongest possible expression of animosity in Hebrew. *Takhlit* means 'end, completion, perfection' — this hatred holds nothing back. The psalmist claims his enemies are God's enemies, and therefore his hatred is righteous alignment rather than personal malice. The following verses will test this claim.
23. The word *sar'appai* (from *sar'af* or *sa'if*, 'disquieting thought, anxious rumination') appears only here and in Psalm 94:19. It describes the branching, intrusive thoughts that trouble the inner life — what modern psychology might call anxious rumination. The psalmist asks God to search even these turbulent, half-formed thoughts.
24. The phrase *derekh otsev* is ambiguous. If from *etsev* ('idol'), it means 'a way of idolatry' — any hidden idol-worship in the psalmist's life. If from *etsev* ('pain, grief'), it means 'a way that causes pain' or 'a way that leads to sorrow.' The ambiguity may be productive — the psalmist asks God to find whatever is wrong, however it should be categorized.
24. The phrase *derekh olam* ('way everlasting') echoes Jeremiah 6:16: 'Stand at the crossroads and look; ask for the ancient paths (*netivot olam*), where the good way is, and walk in it.' The everlasting way is not a new discovery but a return to what has always been true.

140

Summary: *A psalm of David. A prayer for deliverance from violent and scheming enemies whose tongues are sharp as serpents and whose lips conceal venom. The psalmist calls on the LORD as his stronghold, asks God to frustrate the plans of the wicked, and invokes judgment upon them — fire, flooding pits, and the collapse of their own violence back upon their heads. The psalm closes with a confession of faith: the LORD defends the cause of the afflicted and the poor, and the upright will dwell in His presence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 140 is dense with body imagery — tongues sharpened like serpents, venom under lips, hands that plan violence, feet that set traps, heads surrounded by their own mischief. The enemies are described almost entirely through their body parts, each one weaponized: the tongue attacks, the lips poison, the hands scheme, the feet trap. Against this anatomy of evil, the psalmist has only one defense: the LORD as his shield and stronghold. The psalm is also notable for its serpent imagery — the tongue sharpened like a snake (shananu leshonam kemo nachash) and the venom of asps (chamat akhshuv) under the lips. The connection to Genesis 3 is implicit: the enemies are serpent-like, their weapon is speech, and their venom is concealed.*

Translation Friction: *The imprecations in verses 9-11 are harsh: burning coals falling on enemies, being thrown into fire, cast into floods, and hunted by violence. These are not metaphorical wishes but liturgical curses — the psalmist formally invokes divine violence against human enemies. As with Psalm 137:9, the inclusion of such language in scripture raises questions about whether these prayers are models to imitate or voices to hear. The psalm itself offers a framework: the violence of the imprecation matches the violence of the enemies' schemes. The psalmist prays that what the wicked planned for others would happen to the wicked themselves — the lex talionis applied to divine judgment.*

Connections: *The serpent imagery connects to Genesis 3:1-5 (the serpent's deceptive speech) and Romans 3:13 (Paul quotes Psalm 140:3 as evidence of universal human corruption: 'the venom of asps is under their lips'). The 'snare' and 'net' imagery appears frequently in the Psalms (Psalm 141:9-10, 142:3). The closing affirmation that the LORD secures justice for the poor echoes Psalm 9:18, 12:5, and 72:4. The transition from Psalm 139 (God's total knowledge) to Psalm 140 (a cry against enemies) creates a logical sequence: the psalmist who invited God's searching now presents the wicked for God's scrutiny.*

¹For the music director. A psalm of David.

²Rescue me, LORD, from the evil person;
protect me from the violent one.

³They scheme evil in their hearts;
all day long they stir up conflict.

⁴They sharpen their tongues like a serpent;
the venom of a viper is under their lips.
Selah.

⁵Guard me, LORD, from the hands of the wicked;
protect me from the violent one
who plans to trip my steps.

⁶The arrogant have hidden a trap for me and ropes;
they have spread a net beside the path;
they have set snares for me.
Selah.

⁷I say to the LORD, "You are my God."

Hear, LORD, the voice of my pleas for mercy.

⁸LORD God, the strength of my salvation,

You have shielded my head on the day of battle.

⁹Do not grant the desires of the wicked, LORD.

Do not let their schemes succeed — they would rise in triumph.

Selah.

¹⁰As for the heads of those who surround me —

let the trouble their own lips cause cover them.

¹¹Let burning coals rain down on them;

let them be thrown into fire,

into flooding pits from which they cannot rise.

¹²Let the slanderer find no footing in the land.

Let evil hunt the violent one, blow after blow.

¹³I know that the LORD will take up the cause of the afflicted

and the justice of the poor.

¹⁴Surely the righteous will give thanks to Your name;

the upright will dwell in Your presence.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription assigns the psalm to David and directs it to the *lamnatseach* ('music director, choirmaster'), indicating liturgical performance. The Davidic attribution places the psalm in the tradition of David's many experiences of being hunted by enemies — whether Saul, Absalom, or unnamed adversaries.
2. The verb *chalats* ('to rescue, to strip off, to pull out') carries the image of extracting someone from a tight place — like pulling a foot from a trap or a person from a pit. The psalmist feels caught and needs to be physically removed from danger. The plural *chamasim* ('violences') is an intensifying plural — not one act of violence but a pattern, a character defined by violence.
3. The verb *chashvu* ('they scheme, they devise, they calculate') describes deliberate planning — these are not impulsive enemies but strategic ones. The phrase *kol yom* ('all day, every day') emphasizes the relentless, sustained nature of their hostility. The verb *yaguru* ('they stir up, they gather, they muster') with *milchamot* ('wars, conflicts') presents the enemies as perpetual instigators of strife.
4. The word *akhshuv* is a type of venomous snake — possibly the horned viper or the cobra. The exact species is uncertain, but the point is clear: a deadly snake whose venom is concealed and delivered through a bite. The analogy is perfect for slanderous speech: the poison is hidden until the lips open.
4. The word *selah* appears here, a liturgical marker of uncertain meaning — possibly a musical interlude, a signal to pause, or an instruction to the musicians. It provides a breathing space after the intense serpent imagery.
5. The verb *lidhot* ('to push, to overthrow, to trip') describes the enemy's goal: to knock the psalmist off his feet, to destabilize his path. The word *pe'amai* ('my steps, my footfalls') represents the psalmist's life-course. The violent person schemes not merely to harm but to derail — to knock the psalmist from the path God has set.
6. The four trap-words (*pach*, *chavalim*, *reshet*, *moqshim*) create an image of a path surrounded by hidden dangers. The psalmist cannot see them; only God can. This is why the prayer is necessary — the traps are hidden from human perception but visible to the all-seeing God of Psalm 139.
7. The confession *Eli attah* ('You are my God') is personal and possessive — not 'a God' but 'my God.' The word *tachanunai* ('my pleas for mercy, my supplications') from the root *chanan* ('to be gracious, to show mercy') acknowledges that the psalmist has no leverage; he can only appeal to God's grace.
8. The connection between *sakakh* here (shielding the head in battle) and *sakakh* in Psalm 139:13 (weaving in the womb) creates a thematic link: the God who wove the psalmist's body also shields it in combat. The one who made the head protects it.

9. The verb *tafeq* ('to bring forth, to promote, to advance') is rare. The psalmist asks God to block the execution of the wicked's plans. The phrase *yarumu* ('they would rise, they would be exalted') warns of the consequence: if God does not intervene, the wicked will be elevated — the moral order will be inverted.
10. The word *amal* ('trouble, toil, mischief') describes the harmful effect of the enemies' speech. The prayer that it 'cover them' reverses the direction of harm — what was aimed outward falls back on the speaker. This is a standard pattern in imprecatory psalms: the psalmist prays not for arbitrary punishment but for the reversal of the enemy's own schemes.
11. The images escalate: *gechalim* ('burning coals') falling from above, *esh* ('fire') consuming, and *mahamorot* ('deep pits, flooded trenches') trapping below. The three-fold judgment attacks from every direction — above, around, and below. The phrase *bal yaqumu* ('let them not rise') seals the judgment as final. The burning coals echo the judgment of Sodom (Genesis 19:24) and the theophany language of Psalm 18:12-13.
12. The image of evil itself hunting the violent person is one of the most striking in the Psalms. Evil is personified as a predator that turns on its master. The violent person who hunted others with traps (v. 6) is now the prey. The *lex talionis* is cosmic: the universe itself enforces the return of violence to its source.
13. The pairing of *ani* ('afflicted, humble, poor') and *evyon* ('destitute, needy') represents the most vulnerable members of society — those with no advocate, no power, no legal standing. The LORD serves as their advocate, their judge, and their defender. This is the consistent claim of the Psalms: God's court favors those whom human courts ignore.
14. The movement from the psalm's opening cry ('Rescue me!') to its closing vision ('the upright will dwell in Your presence') maps the arc of the entire psalm: from danger to safety, from enemies to God, from the trap-lined path to the divine dwelling place. The verb *yeshvu* ('will dwell') is the same root as the 'sitting' of Psalm 137:1 ('there we sat') — but now the sitting is in God's presence, not by Babylon's rivers.

141

Summary: *A psalm of David. An evening prayer in which the psalmist asks the LORD to accept his prayer like incense and his lifted hands like the evening grain offering. He pleads for God to guard his mouth, keep his heart from evil, and prevent him from sharing in the feasts of the wicked. He welcomes correction from the righteous as an act of faithful love. The psalm concludes with a declaration of trust in the LORD even as the psalmist faces danger — his eyes are fixed on God, and he asks not to be left defenseless while the wicked fall into their own traps.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The identification of prayer with incense and lifted hands with the evening offering (minchah) is one of the most theologically significant equations in the Psalter. It suggests that personal prayer can function as a substitute for temple sacrifice — an idea that became foundational for Jewish worship after the destruction of the Second Temple. The psalm moves from the mouth (v. 3) to the heart (v. 4) to the head (v. 5), tracing the anatomy of temptation from speech to desire to action. The request for the righteous to strike and correct him (v. 5) is remarkable for its willingness to receive painful truth from allies rather than pleasant company from the wicked.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 5-7 are among the most textually difficult in the Psalter. The Hebrew is compressed, allusive, and in several places the Masoretic Text appears corrupt or at least highly obscure. Verse 6 — about judges being thrown down by the sides of a rock — has generated widely divergent translations. The metaphor in verse 7 about bones scattered at the mouth of Sheol is violent and abrupt. Whether the psalmist is describing his own condition or the fate of the wicked is debated. The traditional ascription to David fits the tone of personal danger and the pattern of asking for protection against enemies who set traps.*

Connections: *The incense imagery connects to Exodus 30:7-8, where Aaron burns incense on the golden altar every morning and evening — a perpetual fragrance before the LORD. Revelation 5:8 and 8:3-4 pick up this image, identifying the prayers of the saints with golden bowls of incense. The request to guard the mouth echoes Psalm 39:1, where David resolves to muzzle his mouth in the presence of the wicked. The trap imagery in verse 9 is a standard wisdom motif: the wicked fall into the pit they dug (Psalm 7:15, Proverbs 26:27).*

¹A psalm of David.

LORD, I call to you — come quickly to me.

Listen to my voice when I call to you.

²Let my prayer stand as incense before you,
my lifted hands as the evening offering.

³Set a guard over my mouth, LORD.
Keep watch over the door of my lips.

⁴Do not let my heart turn toward anything evil,
to engage in wicked deeds
with those who practice wrongdoing.
Let me not feast on their delicacies.

⁵Let the righteous strike me — it is faithful love.
Let him correct me — it is oil for the head.
Let my head not refuse it,
for my prayer continues even against their evils.

⁶Their rulers will be thrown down along the rocky cliffs,
and they will hear my words, for they are pleasant.

⁷Like one who plows and splits open the earth,
our bones lie scattered at the mouth of Sheol.

⁸But my eyes are on you, LORD, my Lord.
In you I take refuge.
Do not pour out my life.

⁹Guard me from the jaws of the trap they have set for me,
and from the snares of those who do evil.

¹⁰Let the wicked fall into their own nets,
while I pass by safely.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *chushah* ('hurry, make haste') conveys urgency — this is not a contemplative meditation but a cry for immediate help. The doubled reference to calling (*qeratikha... be-qori lakh*) frames the verse as an insistent summons.
2. The *minchah* ('grain offering, tribute, present') is the evening sacrifice offered in the temple each day at twilight. The word can also mean 'gift' or 'tribute' in non-cultic contexts. By pairing incense with the evening offering, the psalmist places his prayer within the temple's daily rhythm — this is an evening psalm.
3. The word *shomrah* ('guard, watch') pictures a sentry stationed at the mouth. The *dal* ('door') of the lips extends the architectural metaphor — the mouth is a gate that needs guarding. The psalmist recognizes that his tongue is a point of vulnerability, especially in the company of the wicked (v. 4). This request moves from external danger to internal discipline.
4. The verb *al tat* ('do not incline, do not turn') asks God to prevent the heart's drift — the psalmist knows the pull of evil is subtle. The phrase *lehitolel alilot be-resha* ('to busy oneself with deeds in wickedness') uses a reflexive verb suggesting complicity: getting involved, entangling oneself. The *man'ammim* ('delicacies, pleasant foods') of the wicked represent the seductive rewards of joining their company. The movement from mouth (v. 3) to heart (v. 4) traces temptation to its source.
5. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The verb *yehalemeni* ('let him strike me') is from *halem* ('to strike, to hammer'). Reading the righteous person's correction as chesed rather than cruelty is a hallmark of wisdom thinking (Proverbs 27:6: 'Faithful are the wounds of a friend'). The second half of the verse is textually uncertain; our rendering follows the Masoretic accentuation while acknowledging that the Hebrew is compressed to the point of ambiguity.
6. The verb *nishmetu* ('they will be dropped, thrown down') is from *shamat* ('to release, to let fall'). The phrase *bi-yede sela* ('by the hands/sides of the rock/cliff') is obscure — it may refer to execution by being thrown from a cliff or to the collapse of authority. The second line shifts abruptly: when the

wicked's leaders fall, the survivors will finally listen to the psalmist's words and find them pleasant (na'emu). The verse anticipates vindication: the psalmist's rejected counsel will eventually be recognized as true.

7. The simile compares scattered bones to clods of earth turned up by plowing — the image is of violent disruption. The phrase lefi She'ol ('at the mouth of Sheol') places the psalmist and his companions at the very edge of death. Whether 'our bones' refers to the righteous community or is a dramatic way of describing the psalmist's own peril is uncertain. The verse is one of the darkest in this psalm, picturing the faithful as broken and exposed.
8. The double address YHVH Adonai ('LORD, my Lord') intensifies the appeal. The verb chasiti ('I have taken refuge') is from chasah, a key Psalms verb for sheltering under God's protection. The phrase al te'ar nafshi ('do not empty/pour out my soul') uses a verb meaning to strip bare or make naked — do not leave me exposed, defenseless, emptied of life.
9. The pach ('trap, snare') and moqeshot ('snares, lures') are hunting terms applied to human enemies — the psalmist is the prey, and the wicked are hunters. The verb yaqeshu ('they have laid') is from yaqosh ('to set a snare'). The psalm consistently pictures the wicked as those who trap rather than confront directly.
10. The makmorav ('his nets') uses the singular suffix — possibly referring to each wicked person's own trap, or to the collective trap that rebounds on its makers. The reversal of the trap is a recurring motif in the Psalter (Psalm 35:8, 57:6). The final word e'evor ('I pass by, I cross over') pictures the psalmist walking past the danger unharmed, a quiet image of deliverance.

142

Summary: *A maskil of David, when he was in the cave. A prayer of desperate isolation. David cries out to the LORD, pouring out his complaint and declaring that God alone knows his path. He looks to his right and finds no one — no one cares for his life. He declares the LORD to be his refuge and his portion in the land of the living. He asks for rescue from his pursuers, who are stronger than he is. The psalm ends with a plea to be brought out of prison so that the righteous may gather around him in celebration of God's generosity.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of two psalms with a cave superscription (the other is Psalm 57). The cave setting — whether Adullam (1 Samuel 22) or En-gedi (1 Samuel 24) — transforms the psalm from abstract lament into concrete geography. A cave is both refuge and prison: it hides David from Saul but also confines him in darkness. The psalmist's statement 'You are my refuge, my portion in the land of the living' (v. 5) uses language normally reserved for the Levitical inheritance — the LORD is David's allotted share, his territory, when he has no territory of his own. The final verse pictures a crown (yachtiru) of righteous people surrounding the delivered psalmist, turning rescue into communal worship.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription 'when he was in the cave' places this psalm in David's fugitive period, but the specific cave is not identified. The word maskil in the heading is debated — it may mean 'contemplative poem,' 'skillful song,' or 'instructive psalm.' Verse 7 uses the word masger ('prison, enclosure'), which some read literally and others as a metaphor for the cave or for the psalmist's overall trapped condition. The statement 'no one cares for my life' (ein doresh le-nafshi, v. 4) is striking given that David had loyal followers even in the cave — the psalm may capture a moment of subjective despair rather than objective abandonment.*

Connections: *The cave narratives appear in 1 Samuel 22:1 (cave of Adullam) and 1 Samuel 24:3 (cave at En-gedi). Psalm 57 shares the cave setting and similar themes of refuge amid danger. The language of 'portion' (cheleg) in verse 5 connects to the Levitical theology of Numbers 18:20, where the LORD tells Aaron, 'I am your portion.' The gathering of the righteous in verse 7 anticipates the communal thanksgiving psalms where rescue is reported to the assembly (Psalm 22:22, 40:9-10).*

¹A maskil of David, when he was in the cave. A prayer.
With my voice I cry out to the LORD.
With my voice I plead with the LORD for mercy.

²I pour out my complaint before him.
I declare my distress before him.

³When my spirit grows faint within me,
you know my path.
Along the road where I walk
they have hidden a trap for me.

⁴Look to my right and see —
there is no one who recognizes me.
Every escape route is gone from me.
No one cares about my life.

⁵I cry out to you, LORD.
I say, "You are my refuge,
my portion in the land of the living."

⁶Pay attention to my cry,
for I have been brought very low.
Rescue me from those who pursue me,
for they are stronger than I am.

⁷Bring me out of this prison
so that I may give thanks to your name.
The righteous will gather around me,
for you will deal generously with me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The WLC includes the superscription as verse 1. The word *maskil* likely derives from *sakal* ('to be prudent, to give insight') and may indicate a psalm intended for instruction or contemplation. The doubled phrase *be-qoli* ('with my voice') emphasizes vocal, audible prayer — this is not silent meditation but a cry that echoes off cave walls. The verb *etchannan* ('I plead for grace') is from *chanan*, the root of 'grace' and 'mercy.'
2. The verb *eshpokh* ('I pour out') pictures prayer as liquid — the psalmist empties himself of grief before God. The word *sichi* ('my complaint, my meditation, my concern') can mean inner musing or outward complaint; here the parallel with *tsarati* ('my distress') favors the sense of pouring out trouble. The repetition of *lefanav* ('before him') insists that this outpouring is directed — it has an audience.
3. The verb *hit'atef* ('to be wrapped, to be faint, to be overwhelmed') pictures the spirit as wrapped in a shroud of exhaustion — unable to see, unable to breathe. The contrast is stark: when the psalmist cannot see his own way, God knows his path (*netivati*). The trap (*pach*) hidden along the road echoes Psalm 141:9 and the broader pattern of enemies as hunters.
4. The right side (*yamin*) is the place of honor and protection. Looking to the right and finding no one is an image of judicial and military abandonment — no advocate and no guard. The threefold absence (no one who recognizes, no escape, no one who cares) builds to a climax of isolation that makes the turn to God in verse 5 all the more dramatic.
5. The term *cheleq* ('portion') carries Levitical overtones — the Levites received no territorial inheritance because the LORD was their portion (Numbers 18:20, Deuteronomy 10:9). David, stripped of everything, adopts the Levitical posture: God alone is enough.
6. The verb *dalloti* ('I am brought low, I am impoverished') is from *dalal* ('to be low, weak, thin, poor'). It is the language of depletion — David is not merely threatened but diminished. The admission that his pursuers are stronger (*amtsu*, from *amats*, 'to be strong, to overpower') is a statement of military reality that drives the need for divine intervention.
7. The *masger* ('prison') may be literal (a dungeon) or metaphorical (the cave, the life of a fugitive). In this context the cave functions as both shelter and prison. The verb *yaktiru* is from *katar* (Hiphil), meaning 'to surround' or possibly 'to crown' — the righteous community will encircle the freed psalmist in a wreath of fellowship.

143

Summary: *A psalm of David. The last of the seven traditional penitential psalms (6, 32, 38, 51, 102, 130, 143). David pleads for the LORD to hear his prayer and not enter into judgment with him, because no living person is righteous before God. An enemy has crushed him into darkness. His spirit is faint, his heart stunned. He remembers the LORD's past deeds, stretches out his hands like dry ground thirsting for rain, and begs for a swift answer. He asks God to teach him the right path, to rescue him from enemies, and to lead him by the good Spirit on level ground.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 2 contains one of the Hebrew Bible's most sweeping theological statements: 'Do not enter into judgment with your servant, for no one living is righteous before you.' This is not a confession of specific sin but a declaration about the human condition itself — even a servant of God cannot survive the scrutiny of divine justice. The psalm builds on this foundation: if no one is righteous, then rescue must come from God's faithful love and righteousness, not from the psalmist's merit. The image in verse 6 of hands stretched out toward God like parched land toward rain is one of the Psalter's most vivid pictures of spiritual thirst. The request for God's 'good Spirit' to lead on level ground (v. 10) is one of the rare explicit mentions of the Spirit as a guiding, moral presence.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription ascribes this to David, and the language of being pursued by an enemy (v. 3) fits several periods of David's life. The psalm's classification as penitential is somewhat loose — it does not contain explicit confession of sin but rather a general acknowledgment that no human can stand before God's judgment. Verse 12 asks God to destroy the psalmist's enemies 'in your faithful love' (be-chasdekha) — the juxtaposition of chesed with the destruction of enemies challenges modern assumptions about love and justice being opposites.*

Connections: *Verse 2 anticipates Paul's argument in Romans 3:20 that 'by works of the law no flesh will be justified before him.' The thirst imagery of verse 6 connects to Psalm 63:1 ('my soul thirsts for you in a dry and weary land') and to Jesus's invitation in John 7:37 ('if anyone thirsts, let him come to me'). The 'good Spirit' of verse 10 echoes Nehemiah 9:20 ('you gave your good Spirit to instruct them') and anticipates the Spirit as guide in the New Testament (Romans 8:14, Galatians 5:18).*

¹A psalm of David.

LORD, hear my prayer.

Listen to my pleas for mercy.

In your faithfulness, answer me —
in your righteousness.

²Do not bring your servant into judgment,
for no one alive is righteous before you.

³For the enemy has pursued my life.
He has crushed my existence to the ground.
He has made me sit in darkness
like those long dead.

⁴My spirit grows faint within me.
My heart inside me is stunned.

⁵I remember the days of old.
I meditate on all your works.
I reflect on what your hands have done.

⁶I stretch out my hands to you.
My soul is like parched ground thirsting for you.
Selah.

⁷Answer me quickly, LORD — my spirit is failing.
Do not hide your face from me,
or I will become like those who go down to the pit.

⁸Let me hear your faithful love in the morning,
for I trust in you.
Show me the path I should walk,
for I lift up my soul to you.

⁹Rescue me from my enemies, LORD.
I have hidden myself in you.

¹⁰Teach me to do your will,
for you are my God.
Let your good Spirit lead me
on level ground.

¹¹For the sake of your name, LORD, give me life.
In your righteousness, bring my soul out of distress.

¹²In your faithful love, silence my enemies.
Destroy all who oppress my life,
for I am your servant.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The psalm opens with two appeals to two divine attributes: *emunah* ('faithfulness, reliability, firmness') and *tsedaqah* ('righteousness'). The psalmist does not ground his appeal in his own worthiness but in God's character. The word *tachanunai* ('my pleas for mercy') is from *chanan* ('to be gracious') — these are not demands but supplications thrown on the mercy of a faithful God.
2. The phrase *kol chai* ('all living, every living one') is absolute — no exceptions. This verse will be echoed in the apostle Paul's argument in Romans 3:20 and Galatians 2:16, where justification by works of the law is declared impossible. The psalmist has preemptively dismantled any claim to self-righteousness before the psalm even unfolds its petitions.
3. The verb *dikka* ('he has crushed') is from *daka*, a strong verb implying pulverization — not merely defeat but destruction. The phrase *be-machashakkim* ('in dark places') echoes Lamentations 3:6 ('He has made me dwell in darkness like the dead of long ago'). The comparison *ke-metei olam* ('like the dead of eternity/antiquity') places the psalmist among those who have been in Sheol so long they are forgotten. He is alive but living the experience of the dead.
4. The verb *tit'atfe* ('it grows faint, it is wrapped') describes the spirit as enshrouded — wrapped in weakness as in a garment. The verb *yishtomem* ('is stunned, is desolate, is appalled') is from *shamem*, the root behind 'desolation.' The heart is not merely sad but paralyzed with shock. Together the two verbs describe a complete internal collapse: the spirit cannot breathe, and the heart cannot think.
5. The three verbs — *zakharti* ('I remember'), *hagiti* ('I meditate'), *asacheach* ('I reflect, I muse') — describe a deliberate exercise of memory against despair. The psalmist counters the darkness of verse 3 by turning his mind to God's past actions. The *yamim mi-qedem* ('days from of old') may refer to personal experience of God's help or to the great acts of Israel's history — Exodus, wilderness provision, conquest.
6. The comparison of the soul to parched land is one of the Psalter's most powerful metaphors for spiritual thirst. The word *ayefah* ('weary, faint') describes exhaustion beyond mere tiredness — the land has nothing left to give. The hands stretched out mirror the cracked ground open to the sky. The *selah* likely indicates a musical interlude or liturgical pause.
7. The verb *kaltah* ('it is consumed, it is finished') from *kalah* describes the spirit reaching its end — total depletion. The hidden face of God (*hester panim*) is one of the Hebrew Bible's most terrifying images: when God turns away, life drains out. The *bor* ('pit, cistern') is a synonym for Sheol, the realm of the dead. The psalmist is saying: your silence is killing me. Speed is existential — delay means death.

8. The morning (boqer) is when the darkness breaks — the psalmist who sits in darkness like the long-dead (v. 3) asks for faithful love to arrive with the dawn. The verb hashmi'eni ('cause me to hear') asks for an audible, perceivable experience of chesed — not abstract knowledge but morning-breaking awareness. The phrase nasati nafshi ('I lift up my soul') pictures the soul held up to God like an offering or like a child reaching upward.
9. The verb kissiti ('I have covered myself, I have hidden') is from kasah ('to cover'). The psalmist has taken cover in God — not in a cave, not in a fortress, but in God himself. This is the practical application of verse 8's trust: the psalmist has already committed to God as his hiding place and now asks God to act on that commitment.
10. The phrase ruchakha tovah ('your good Spirit') is one of the Hebrew Bible's clearest references to the Spirit of God as a moral and directional guide. The same phrase appears in Nehemiah 9:20. The word mishor ('level ground, plain, equity') combines geography and ethics — level ground is both a safe landscape and a metaphor for just, straightforward living.
11. The appeal lema'an shimkha ('for the sake of your name') shifts the ground from the psalmist's need to God's reputation — God's name is at stake in the fate of his servant. The verb techayeni ('give me life, revive me') is from chayah ('to live') and asks for more than survival; it asks for restoration to full, vigorous life. The tsedaqah of verse 1 returns here as the means of deliverance.
12. The juxtaposition of chesed ('faithful love') with tatsmit ('you will cut off, silence, destroy') is jarring to modern ears but coherent within the psalm's logic: faithful love toward the servant requires the removal of those who seek to destroy him. The verb tatsmit (Hiphil of tsamat) means 'to put to silence, to annihilate.' The psalm ends where it began — with the word avdekha ('your servant'), framing the entire prayer as a servant's appeal to his master.

144

Summary: *A psalm of David. A royal warrior's hymn that blesses the LORD as the one who trains David's hands for battle. The psalm moves from military thanksgiving to a meditation on human smallness before God, then to a dramatic plea for divine intervention — the heavens torn open, mountains smoking, lightning scattering the enemies. David asks to be rescued from foreign adversaries whose mouths speak lies and whose right hands swear false oaths. The psalm concludes with a vision of national blessing: strong sons, beautiful daughters, full storehouses, abundant flocks, no breach in the walls, no cry of alarm in the streets. 'Happy is the people whose God is the LORD.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm draws heavily from earlier psalms — particularly Psalm 18 (= 2 Samuel 22) and Psalm 8 — weaving their language into a new composition. The question 'What is a human being that you take notice of him?' (v. 3) echoes Psalm 8:4, but where Psalm 8 marvels at human dignity, Psalm 144 emphasizes human frailty: a person is like a breath (hevel), like a passing shadow. The theophany in verses 5-8 compresses Psalm 18's storm-god imagery into a concentrated plea. The prosperity vision in verses 12-15 is unique in the Psalter — nowhere else does a psalm paint so detailed a picture of agricultural, domestic, and civic flourishing. The final beatitude ties all this abundance to one cause: the people's God is the LORD.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this psalm and its source texts (Psalms 18 and 8) has led some scholars to view it as a late anthology piece rather than an original Davidic composition. The shift from military language (vv. 1-8) to domestic prosperity (vv. 12-15) is abrupt, and some argue that verses 12-15 were originally a separate poem. The phrase bene nekhar ('sons of foreigners/strangers') in verses 7 and 11 may refer to foreign enemies or to treacherous people within Israel who act like foreigners — their false speech and lying oaths suggest covenant disloyalty.*

Connections: *Verse 1 echoes Psalm 18:34 (training hands for war). Verse 3 echoes Psalm 8:4 (what is a human being?). The theophany imagery in verses 5-7 draws from Psalm 18:9-16 and from the Sinai tradition (Exodus 19:18). The prosperity blessings of verses 12-15 connect to the covenant blessings of Deuteronomy 28:1-14. The final declaration — 'Happy is the people whose God is the LORD' — echoes Psalm 33:12 and anticipates the beatitude theology of the Psalter's final section.*

Of David.

Blessed be the LORD, my rock,
who trains my hands for battle,
my fingers for war.

²My faithful love and my fortress,
my stronghold and my rescuer,
my shield — the one in whom I take refuge,
who subdues peoples under me.

³LORD, what is a human being that you notice him,
a mortal's child that you consider him?

⁴A human being is like a breath.
His days are like a passing shadow.

⁵LORD, bend your heavens and come down.
Touch the mountains and they will smoke.

⁶Flash your lightning and scatter them.
Send out your arrows and throw them into confusion.

⁷Reach down your hands from on high.
Snatch me up and rescue me from the great waters,
from the hand of foreigners,

⁸whose mouths speak lies
and whose right hand is a right hand of deception.

⁹God, I will sing a new song to you.
On the ten-stringed harp I will make music to you.

¹⁰The one who gives victory to kings,
who rescues David his servant from the deadly sword —

¹¹Snatch me up and rescue me
from the hand of foreigners,
whose mouths speak lies
and whose right hand is a right hand of deception.

¹²Then our sons will be like young plants,
fully grown in their youth.
Our daughters will be like carved pillars,
shaped for the design of a palace.

¹³Our storehouses will be full,
overflowing with every kind of produce.
Our flocks will multiply by thousands,
by tens of thousands in our open fields.

¹⁴Our cattle will be heavy with young.
There will be no breach in the wall,
no going out to exile,
no cry of alarm in our public squares.

¹⁵Happy is the people who have it so.
Happy is the people whose God is the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *tsuri* ('my rock') establishes the LORD as the immovable foundation for military action. The parallel between 'hands for battle' and 'fingers for war' moves from the broad (hands grasping weapons) to the precise (fingers drawing bowstrings, fitting arrows). The psalm opens with the recognition that military skill is not self-generated but God-given.
2. The cascade of military metaphors — *chesed*, *metsudah*, *misgav*, *mefalti*, *magen* — piles up titles for God as warrior-protector. The opening word *chasdi* ('my faithful love') is unusual: God is addressed not merely as the source of *chesed* but as *chesed* itself — 'my faithful love personified.' The verb *ha-roded* ('who subdues, who tramples down') pictures military subjugation. Some manuscripts read *ammi* ('my people') while others read *ammim* ('peoples/nations').
3. The parallelism *adam* / *ben enosh* ('human being / son of mortal') uses two words for humanity that emphasize creatureliness. *Adam* is from *adamah* ('ground'); *enosh* is from a root suggesting weakness or mortality. The verbs *teda'ehu* ('you know him') and *techashvehu* ('you consider him, you reckon him') suggest that God actively turns attention toward humans — it is not automatic but chosen.
4. The word *hevel* ('breath, vapor, futility') is the signature word of Ecclesiastes. Here it describes the sheer insubstantiality of human life — not its meaninglessness but its brevity. The *tsel over* ('passing shadow') intensifies the point: not even a stationary shadow but one that moves and disappears as the sun shifts. The two images work together: breath dissipates, shadow passes. Human life has the permanence of neither.
5. The verb *hat* ('bend, stretch, incline') pictures God physically bending the sky downward to descend — the heavens are a canopy that God pushes aside to enter the world. The smoking mountains echo Sinai (Exodus 19:18), where the LORD's presence made the mountain burn. The psalm shifts from reflection on human frailty to a demand for theophany: come down and act.
6. Lightning (*baraq*) and arrows (*chitsim*) are God's weapons — the storm is a divine armory. The verb *tetifsem* ('scatter them') and *tehumem* ('confuse them, throw them into panic') describe the disintegration of enemy forces under divine assault. The imagery draws directly from Psalm 18:14.
7. The *mayim rabbim* ('great waters, many waters') are chaos waters — the primordial flood that threatens to overwhelm. The *bene nekhar* ('sons of foreignness, foreigners') are enemies defined by their outsider status. The plea combines cosmic imagery (floodwaters) with political reality (foreign enemies), asking God to intervene at both levels.
8. The *shav* ('emptiness, falsehood, deception') and *sheqer* ('falsehood, lie') describe enemies whose speech and oaths are unreliable. The right hand (*yamin*) raised in oath-taking or treaty-making is a 'right hand of falsehood' — they swear and break, they promise and betray. The verse defines the enemy not by military power but by dishonesty.
9. The *shir chadash* ('new song') is prompted by new deliverance — the song matches the freshness of the rescue. The *nevel asor* ('ten-stringed harp') is a specific instrument of praise. The vow to sing is anticipatory — the psalmist commits to future praise before the rescue is complete, an act of faith that treats God's answer as already given.
10. The word *teshu'ah* ('salvation, victory, deliverance') here means military victory — God is the one who decides the outcome of battle for kings. David names himself in the third person as God's servant (*avdo*), a title of honor in royal theology. The *cherev ra'ah* ('evil sword, deadly sword') is the weapon of the enemy from which God extracts his servant.
11. This verse repeats verses 7b-8 almost verbatim, forming a refrain. The repetition brackets the vow of praise (vv. 9-10) and transitions into the prosperity vision of verses 12-15. The effect is structural: the plea for rescue frames the promise of worship and leads into the picture of blessing that rescue will make possible.
12. The *zaviyyot* ('corner-pillars') have been translated variously as 'corner stones,' 'carved figures,' or 'caryatids' (sculpted female columns supporting a building). The image is of both beauty and structural importance — these daughters are load-bearing, not ornamental. The word *hekhal* can mean 'palace' or 'temple,' suggesting that the blessed household reflects divine architecture.
13. The *mezavenu* ('our storehouses, our granaries') are full and *mefiqim* ('producing, yielding, overflowing') from one kind (*zan*) to another — the abundance is diverse, not monocultural. The flocks are *ma'alifot* ('producing thousands') and *merubbavot* ('producing ten thousands') — exponential multiplication. The word *chutsotenu* ('our streets, our open places') likely refers to open pastureland rather than city streets.
14. The *allufenu mesubbalim* ('our cattle loaded/burdened') likely means heavy with calf — the animals are productive and healthy. The three negations paint peace by what is absent: *ein perets* ('no breach' — no enemy breaking through the wall), *ein yotse't* ('no going out' — no forced march into exile or sortie from a besieged city), *ein tsevahah* ('no screaming, no cry of distress') in the open squares. Peace is defined as the absence of catastrophe.
15. The word *ashre* ('happy, blessed, fortunate') is the same word that opens the Psalter in Psalm 1:1. Its appearance here near the end of the Psalter creates an inclusion: the happiness of the righteous individual in Psalm 1 is now extended to the entire nation. The double use of *ashre* creates emphasis — happiness is declared twice, each time with a different (and deepening) ground.

145

Summary: *A tehillah (praise-song) of David — the only psalm in the Psalter given this title, from which the entire Hebrew collection gets its name (Tehillim, 'Praises'). This is an acrostic psalm: each verse begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet, from aleph to tav. David extols the LORD's greatness, mighty deeds, splendor, and faithfulness across generations. The psalm declares that the LORD is gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and great in faithful love. God sustains all who fall, opens his hand to satisfy every living thing, is near to all who call on him in truth, and guards all who love him. The psalm closes with a vow of perpetual praise and a call for all flesh to bless God's holy name forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 145 is the last psalm ascribed to David and the only one given the heading tehillah ('praise') — a singular form of the word that names the entire book. This is David's final word in the Psalter, and it is pure, unqualified praise. The acrostic structure (aleph through tav) is a literary statement: praise covers the entire alphabet, from first letter to last, leaving nothing out. The Masoretic Text is missing the nun line (which would fall between verses 13 and 14), but the Dead Sea Scrolls (11QPsa) preserve it: 'The LORD is faithful in all his words and gracious in all his deeds.' Jewish liturgical tradition has made this psalm central to daily worship — it is recited three times daily in traditional services, and the Talmud (Berakhot 4b) states that anyone who recites Psalm 145 three times a day is assured a place in the world to come.*

Translation Friction: *The missing nun verse in the Masoretic Text is the psalm's most discussed textual issue. The Dead Sea Scroll 11QPsa supplies: ne'eman YHVH be-kol devarav ve-chasid be-kol ma'asav ('the LORD is faithful in all his words and gracious in all his deeds'). Whether this line was accidentally dropped by a scribe or deliberately omitted is debated. The acrostic structure makes the omission conspicuous. Our rendering includes the nun line following the Dead Sea Scrolls evidence, marked with a note. The psalm's theology is relentlessly positive — there is no lament, no enemy, no suffering. Some scholars see this as the psalm's weakness; others see it as its purpose: after 144 psalms of mixed experience, David's final word is undiluted praise.*

Connections: *The declaration in verse 8 — 'The LORD is gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and great in faithful love' — is a direct quotation of the LORD's self-revelation at Sinai (Exodus 34:6-7), the most quoted verse within the Hebrew Bible itself. The feeding imagery in verse 15-16 ('the eyes of all look to you, and you give them their food at the proper time') is echoed by Jesus in the Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 6:26). The promise that God is near to all who call on him (v. 18) is cited by Paul in Romans 10:12-13. As the last Davidic psalm, it serves as a bridge to the five Halleluyah psalms (146-150) that close the Psalter.*

¹A praise of David.

I will exalt you, my God, the King,
and I will bless your name forever and always.

²Every day I will bless you,
and I will praise your name forever and always.

³Great is the LORD and greatly to be praised.
His greatness is beyond searching out.

⁴One generation will commend your works to the next,
and they will declare your mighty acts.

⁵The splendor of your glorious majesty
and the accounts of your wonders — I will meditate on them.

⁶They will speak of the power of your awe-inspiring deeds,
and I will recount your greatness.

⁷They will pour out the memory of your abundant goodness
and will sing aloud of your righteousness.

⁸The LORD is gracious and compassionate,
slow to anger and great in faithful love.

⁹The LORD is good to all,
and his compassion extends over everything he has made.

¹⁰All your works will give thanks to you, LORD,
and your faithful ones will bless you.

¹¹They will speak of the glory of your kingdom
and tell of your power,

¹²making known to all people his mighty acts
and the glorious splendor of his kingdom.

¹³Your kingdom is a kingdom of all ages,
and your dominion endures through every generation.

¹⁴The LORD upholds all who fall
and lifts up all who are bowed down.

¹⁵The eyes of all look to you with hope,
and you give them their food at the right time.

¹⁶You open your hand
and satisfy the desire of every living thing.

¹⁷The LORD is righteous in all his ways
and faithful in all his works.

¹⁸The LORD is near to all who call on him,
to all who call on him in truth.

¹⁹He fulfills the desire of those who fear him.
He hears their cry and saves them.

²⁰The LORD guards all who love him,
but all the wicked he will destroy.

²¹My mouth will speak the praise of the LORD,
and let all flesh bless his holy name
forever and always.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The heading *tehillah* ('praise') is unique in the Psalter — no other psalm carries this title, yet the entire collection is called *Tehillim* ('Praises') after this word. The aleph-verse begins with *aromimkha* ('I will exalt you, I will lift you high'), establishing the psalm's singular purpose: elevation of God. The

address Elohai ha-Melekh ('my God, the King') combines personal devotion with royal theology.

2. The bet-verse. The phrase be-khol yom ('every day, in all days') commits the psalmist to daily, uninterrupted praise. The doubled temporal markers — 'every day' and 'forever and always' (le-olam va-ed) — stretch praise from the immediate present into eternity.
3. The gimel-verse. The adjective gadol ('great') and the noun gedullatah ('his greatness') create a wordplay rooted in the same consonants. The phrase ein cheqer ('there is no searching out, no investigation that can reach the end') declares that God's greatness exceeds the capacity of human comprehension. Praise is the only adequate response to what cannot be fully understood.
4. The dalet-verse. The phrase dor le-dor ('generation to generation') establishes praise as an inheritance — each generation passes on the testimony of God's deeds to the next. The verb yeshabbach ('will commend, will praise') and yaggidu ('they will declare, recount') describe an active tradition of telling.
5. The he-verse. The phrase hadar kevod hodekha ('the splendor of the glory of your majesty') piles three words for magnificence: hadar ('splendor, ornament'), kavod ('glory, weight, honor'), and hod ('majesty, splendor'). The psalmist's response is sichah ('meditation, musing, reflection') — the wonders of God are not merely recited but pondered.
6. The vav-verse. The word ezuz ('strength, fierceness, power') combined with norotekha ('your awesome/fearsome deeds') describes actions that evoke both terror and reverence. The shift from 'they will speak' to 'I will recount' moves between communal testimony and personal declaration.
7. The zayin-verse. The verb yabbi'u ('they will pour out, bubble forth, gush') pictures speech as an overflowing spring — the memory of God's goodness cannot be contained. The rav tuvkhah ('your abundant goodness, your great goodness') is paired with tsidqatkhah ('your righteousness'), connecting God's generosity with his justice.
8. This four-part formula appears in Exodus 34:6, Joel 2:13, Jonah 4:2, Nahum 1:3, Nehemiah 9:17, and several psalms. It is the most internally quoted verse in the Hebrew Bible — the theological center from which Israel's understanding of God radiates. The psalmist is not innovating but repeating the foundational creed.
9. The tet-verse. The scope is universal: la-kol ('to all') and al kol ma'asav ('over all his works'). God's goodness is not restricted to Israel but covers the entire creation. The rachamav ('his compassion, his tender mercies') — from the same womb-root as rachum in verse 8 — rests on everything God has made. This is one of the Hebrew Bible's most expansive statements of divine benevolence.
10. The yod-verse. The parallel moves from kol ma'asekha ('all your works' — the entire creation) to chasidekha ('your faithful ones, your devoted ones') — from the broadest circle of praise to the inner circle. The chasidim are those who embody chesed in their own lives, the people marked by covenant loyalty.
11. The kaf-verse. The kevod malkhutekha ('glory of your kingdom') introduces the theme of divine kingship that dominates this section. The faithful ones are not passive recipients of blessing but active heralds — they speak (yomeru) and tell (yedabberu) of God's royal power.
12. The lamed-verse. The purpose of the faithful ones' testimony is lehodia ('to make known') — the knowledge of God's kingdom is not for insiders only but is directed outward to bene ha-adam ('the children of humanity'). The kevod hadar malkhuto ('the glory of the splendor of his kingdom') again piles up magnificence — three words for the weight and beauty of God's reign.
13. The Dead Sea Scroll 11QPSa includes a nun-line after this verse that is absent from the Masoretic Text: ne'eman YHVH be-khol devarav ve-chasid be-khol ma'asav ('The LORD is faithful in all his words and gracious in all his deeds'). The acrostic pattern requires a nun-line, and its absence in MT is likely a scribal omission. We note its existence without inserting it into the verse numbering.
14. The samekh-verse. The verb somekh ('upholds, supports, sustains') pictures God as a hand under the one who is falling — not preventing the fall but catching the fallen. The parallel zoqef ('raises up, straightens') reverses the posture of the kefufim ('the bowed down, the bent over'). Together the two verbs describe God's consistent action toward the weak: he catches and he straightens.
15. The ayin-verse. The verb yesabberu ('they look with hope, they wait expectantly') pictures all creation turning its eyes upward to God as the source of provision. The phrase be-itto ('in its time, at the right time') indicates that God's provision follows a rhythm — not arbitrary but timed to need. Jesus echoes this verse in Matthew 6:26.
16. This verse is central to Jewish table liturgy — it is recited as part of the blessing after meals (Birkat Hamazon). The image of the open hand has become one of Judaism's defining metaphors for divine provision.
17. The tsade-verse. The parallel tsaddiq / chasid ('righteous / faithful, devoted') applies to God the same qualities expected of his people. The word chasid when applied to God means 'loyal, devoted, full of chesed' — everything God does is saturated with covenant faithfulness. The universality — be-khol ('in all') repeated twice — leaves no exception.
18. The qof-verse. The word qarov ('near, close') declares God's accessibility — he is not remote or indifferent. The qualifier be-emet ('in truth, genuinely, with integrity') distinguishes sincere calling from mere ritual invocation. God is near, but nearness responds to authenticity. Paul cites this theology in Romans 10:12-13.
19. The resh-verse. The retson yere'av ('the desire/will of those who fear him') echoes the ratson ('desire') of verse 16, but now applied specifically to those who stand in reverent awe of God. The three verbs — ya'aseh ('he does/fulfills'), yishma ('he hears'), yoshi'em ('he saves them') — form a rapid sequence: God acts, God listens, God delivers.

- 20.** The shin-verse. The verb *shomer* ('guards, keeps, watches over') promises protection to all who love God — love, not merely fear, is the relationship described. The contrast is stark: the same God who guards those who love him will destroy (*yashmid*, Hiphil of *shamad*) all the wicked. The psalm does not soften this; divine love and divine justice are both absolute.
- 21.** The inclusio between verse 1 ('I will bless your name forever and always') and verse 21 ('let all flesh bless his holy name forever and always') frames the psalm as a movement from personal to universal praise. David begins alone and ends with all creation. This is the last verse attributed to David in the Psalter; the five Halleluyah psalms that follow (146-150) are anonymous.

146

Summary: *The first of the five Final Hallel psalms (146-150) that close the entire Psalter. The psalm opens and closes with 'Halleluyah.' The psalmist commits to praising the LORD for the whole of his life, then issues a warning: do not put trust in human leaders — in princes or any mortal — because when their breath leaves them, they return to the ground and their plans die with them. In contrast, the one who is truly happy has the God of Jacob as his help. The psalm then catalogs what this God does: he made heaven and earth and sea, he keeps faith forever, he secures justice for the oppressed, gives food to the hungry, sets prisoners free, opens the eyes of the blind, lifts up the bowed down, loves the righteous, watches over the stranger, sustains the fatherless and the widow, and subverts the way of the wicked. The LORD reigns forever — your God, Zion, for all generations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm contains one of the Hebrew Bible's most comprehensive catalogs of divine action on behalf of the vulnerable. The list in verses 7-9 reads like a manifesto: justice for the oppressed, food for the hungry, freedom for prisoners, sight for the blind, dignity for the bent-over, love for the righteous, protection for the immigrant, support for the orphan and widow, and frustration of the wicked. When Jesus reads from Isaiah 61 in the Nazareth synagogue (Luke 4:18-19) and announces that the Scripture is fulfilled in their hearing, he is invoking precisely this tradition — the God who acts for the powerless. The psalm's warning against trusting princes (vv. 3-4) is not anti-political but theological: no human institution lasts, because every human dies. Only the God who made everything endures.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm is anonymous — part of the Final Hallel collection that carries no authorial attribution. The LXX (Septuagint) assigns it to Haggai and Zechariah, possibly reflecting a post-exilic liturgical setting. The sharp contrast between mortal princes and the eternal God raises the question of whether the psalm is critiquing specific political leaders or making a general theological point. The catalog of divine acts in verses 7-9 closely parallels Isaiah 61:1-3, and many scholars see literary dependence in one direction or the other.*

Connections: *The warning against trusting princes echoes Psalm 118:8-9 ('It is better to take refuge in the LORD than to trust in princes'). The catalog of God's actions for the vulnerable connects to the Exodus narrative (liberation of the oppressed), the wilderness provision (food for the hungry), and the prophetic tradition (Isaiah 42:7, opening blind eyes; Isaiah 61:1, setting captives free). Jesus's beatitudes in Luke 6:20-23 and his answer to John the Baptist in Matthew 11:4-5 draw on the same tradition. The final declaration 'The LORD reigns forever' connects to the enthronement psalms (93, 96-99).*

¹Halleluyah!

Praise the LORD, my soul.

²I will praise the LORD as long as I live.

I will sing to my God while I still have breath.

³Do not put your trust in princes,
in a human being, who cannot save.

⁴When his breath departs, he returns to his ground.
On that day his plans come to nothing.

⁵Happy is the one whose help is the God of Jacob,
whose hope rests on the LORD his God —

⁶the maker of heaven and earth,
the sea and everything in them —
the one who keeps faith forever,

⁷who secures justice for the oppressed,
who gives food to the hungry.
The LORD sets prisoners free.

⁸The LORD opens the eyes of the blind.
The LORD lifts up those who are bowed down.
The LORD loves the righteous.

⁹The LORD watches over the stranger.
He sustains the fatherless and the widow.
But the way of the wicked he twists to ruin.

¹⁰The LORD reigns forever —
your God, O Zion, for all generations.
Halleluyah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The psalm opens with halleluyah ('praise Yah') — the imperative hallelu directed to an unspecified audience, combined with Yah, the shortened form of YHVH. Then the psalmist turns inward: halleli nafshi et YHVH ('praise the LORD, my soul'). The movement from public summons to private address establishes the psalm's pattern: communal call, personal response.
2. The phrase be-chayyai ('in my life, while I live') and be-odi ('while I still exist, while I remain') commit the psalmist to lifelong praise. The two temporal markers are synonymous — the psalmist will praise until life ends. This sets up the contrast with verse 4: human breath eventually departs.
3. The nedivim ('princes, nobles, generous ones') represent the highest tier of human power. The parallel ben adam ('son of man, human being') reduces even the prince to his species: he is merely human. The phrase she-ein lo teshu'ah ('in whom there is no salvation/deliverance') is absolute — no human being possesses the capacity to save. The verb batlach ('to trust, to rely on') is redirected from humans to God.
4. The return to adamah ('ground') is a direct allusion to Genesis 3:19 ('for dust you are, and to dust you will return'). The word eshtonot ('plans, thoughts') occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible; its meaning is inferred from context and from the related Aramaic root. The 'that day' (ha-yom ha-hu) is the day of death — a single day undoes a lifetime of planning.
5. The beatitude ashre ('happy, blessed') contrasts with the warning of verses 3-4. The one whose hope (siver, 'expectation, hope') rests on YHVH Elohav ('the LORD his God') is blessed precisely because this God does not die, does not return to the ground, does not lose his plans. The title 'God of Jacob' recalls the patriarch who wrestled and was renamed — a God who engages with struggling, imperfect people.
6. The three-part creation formula — shamayim va-arets, ha-yam, ve-et kol asher bam ('heaven and earth, the sea, and everything in them') — encompasses the totality of the created order. The God who made everything is the same God who shomer emet le-olam ('keeps faith/truth forever'). The word emet ('truth, faithfulness, reliability') stands in contrast to the eshtonot ('plans') of the prince that perish: God's commitments are permanent.
7. The catalog of divine action begins. Three acts in rapid succession: mishpat la-asuqim ('justice for the oppressed'), lechem la-re'evim ('bread for the hungry'), mattir asurim ('releasing the bound/imprisoned'). Each act addresses a different form of powerlessness: systemic injustice, physical deprivation, and captivity. The pattern moves from legal to material to physical liberation.
8. Jesus's healings of the blind (Mark 10:46-52, John 9) are understood in the gospel tradition as fulfillments of this and similar prophetic declarations. The triple YHVH creates a liturgical cadence — this is a creed being recited, each line beginning with the name of God.
9. The three most vulnerable categories in Israelite society — the ger ('stranger, resident alien'), the yatom ('fatherless, orphan'), and the almanah ('widow') — are singled out for God's protection. These are the three groups most frequently named together in Torah legislation (Deuteronomy 10:18, 24:17). The verb ye'odded ('he sustains, he supports, he encourages') describes active, ongoing care. The final line reverses the pattern: derekh resha'im ye'avvet ('the way of the wicked he makes crooked, he twists'). The God who straightens the bent-over (v. 8) bends the path of the wicked

into ruin.

10. The psalm closes with a declaration of eternal kingship: yimlokh YHVH le-olam ('the LORD will reign forever'). The address to Zion personalizes the declaration — this is not abstract theology but a message to a specific community. The closing halleluyah mirrors the opening, framing the psalm as an act of praise from beginning to end.

147

Summary: *The second of the Final Hallel psalms. This psalm celebrates the LORD as the one who rebuilds Jerusalem, gathers the exiles, heals the brokenhearted, and counts the stars by name. It moves between cosmic power and intimate care: the God who determines the number of the stars also binds up wounds. He provides rain for the earth, grass for the mountains, and food for the animals and the young ravens when they cry. He takes no pleasure in the strength of horses or in human legs — his delight is in those who fear him and who wait for his faithful love. The psalm calls Jerusalem and Zion to praise the LORD who has strengthened their gates, blessed their children, and established peace on their borders. He sends his word to the earth like snow and ice, then melts them with his wind. He has given his word (statutes and ordinances) to Jacob alone — no other nation knows his laws.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The psalm's most stunning feature is its refusal to separate cosmic power from personal tenderness. Verse 4 says God counts the stars and calls each one by name — an act of naming that echoes Genesis 1, where naming signifies authority and intimate knowledge. The very next verse says he heals the brokenhearted and binds their wounds. The God who numbers the galaxies also treats bruises. This oscillation between the immense and the intimate is the psalm's theological engine. The section on weather (vv. 15-18) treats God's word as a physical force: he sends it out and it runs across the earth; he speaks and the ice melts. The psalm makes no distinction between natural processes and divine speech — weather is God talking.*

Translation Friction: *The LXX (Septuagint) divides this psalm into two separate psalms: 146 (= MT vv. 1-11) and 147 (= MT vv. 12-20). The Masoretic Text treats it as one psalm. The statement in verse 20 that God has not done this for any other nation — lo asah khi le-khol goy — raises questions about universalism and particularism. The psalm's cosmic theology (God feeds the ravens, covers the sky with clouds) seems to apply to all creation, but the final verses restrict God's revealed law to Israel alone. The tension between universal providence and particular revelation is left unresolved.*

Connections: *The image of God counting and naming the stars appears also in Isaiah 40:26. The healing of the brokenhearted echoes Isaiah 61:1. The feeding of the ravens connects to Job 38:41 and to Jesus's teaching in Luke 12:24. The statement that God takes no pleasure in horses or human strength echoes Psalm 33:16-17 and challenges the military theology of the ancient Near East. The weather imagery in verses 15-18 parallels Job 37-38, where God's control of snow, ice, and wind is presented as evidence of his sovereignty.*

¹Halleluyah!

How good it is to sing to our God,
how pleasant — praise is fitting.

²The LORD is building up Jerusalem.
He gathers the scattered of Israel.

³He heals the brokenhearted
and binds up their wounds.

⁴He determines the number of the stars.
He calls each of them by name.

⁵Great is our Lord and vast in power.
His understanding has no limit.

⁶The LORD sustains the humble.
He brings the wicked down to the ground.

⁷Sing to the LORD with thanksgiving.
Make music to our God on the lyre.

⁸He covers the sky with clouds.
He prepares rain for the earth.
He makes grass grow on the mountains.

⁹He gives the animals their food
and the young ravens when they cry out.

¹⁰He does not delight in the strength of a horse.
He takes no pleasure in the legs of a warrior.

¹¹The LORD takes pleasure in those who fear him,
in those who wait for his faithful love.

¹²Praise the LORD, Jerusalem!
Praise your God, Zion!

¹³For he has strengthened the bars of your gates.
He has blessed your children within you.

¹⁴He establishes peace on your borders.
He satisfies you with the finest wheat.

¹⁵He sends out his command to the earth.
His word runs swiftly.

¹⁶He gives snow like wool.
He scatters frost like ashes.

¹⁷He hurls his ice like crumbs.
Who can withstand his cold?

¹⁸He sends out his word and melts them.
He blows his wind and the waters flow.

¹⁹He declares his word to Jacob,
his statutes and judgments to Israel.

²⁰He has not done this for any other nation.
They do not know his judgments.
Halleluyah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening halleluyah is followed by a reason: *ki tov* ('for it is good'). The verb *zammerah* ('to make music, to sing psalms') is directed to *Eloheanu* ('our God') — the first-person plural claims communal ownership. The word *na'im* ('pleasant, lovely, delightful') and *navah* ('fitting, beautiful, appropriate') describe praise not as duty but as something that is both enjoyable and aesthetically right.

2. The participle *boneh* ('building, one who builds') indicates ongoing action — the LORD is in the process of rebuilding. The *nidche Yisrael* ('the scattered/expelled ones of Israel') are the exiles, the dispersed community. The verse likely reflects a post-exilic setting where Jerusalem is being physically rebuilt and the diaspora is being regathered.
3. The *ha-rofe* ('the healer') is a participle describing God's ongoing activity. The *shevure lev* ('broken of heart') are those whose inner life has been shattered — by exile, grief, loss, or betrayal. The verb *mechabesh* ('binding up, bandaging') is a medical term applied to emotional and spiritual injury. God is physician to wounds that no human doctor can reach.
4. The image of God naming the stars appears also in Isaiah 40:26, where the prophet says God 'brings out their host by number, calling them all by name.' The connection between numbering and naming suggests a census: God takes roll call of the stars, and none is absent.
5. The phrase *rav koach* ('great in power, vast in strength') and *litevunato ein mispar* ('to his understanding there is no number') create an ironic echo of verse 4: God can number the stars, but his own understanding cannot be numbered. The one who counts everything is himself uncountable.
6. The *me'odded* ('sustaining, encouraging, supporting') describes ongoing divine care for the *anavim* ('humble, afflicted, meek'). The contrast with the wicked uses the verb *mashpil* ('brings low, humbles, casts down') — the same vertical reversal seen throughout the Psalter: God lifts the low and lowers the high.
7. The verb *enu* ('sing, respond, answer') introduces a new section of the psalm. The *todah* ('thanksgiving, acknowledgment, confession of praise') is both a genre of worship and a sacrifice (the *todah* offering). The *kinnor* ('lyre') is David's instrument, the foundational instrument of Israelite worship.
8. Three participles describe God's atmospheric work: *mekhasseh* ('covering'), *mekhin* ('preparing, establishing'), *matsmyach* ('making grow, causing to sprout'). The sequence traces the rain cycle: clouds cover the sky, rain falls on the earth, grass grows on the mountains. What meteorology describes as a water cycle, the psalm describes as divine action.
9. The *behemah* ('livestock, animals, beasts') and the *bene orev* ('young ravens, raven chicks') represent the breadth of God's provision — from domesticated animals to wild scavengers. The ravens' cry (*yiqra'u*, 'they call out') is treated as a prayer that God answers. This image appears in Job 38:41 and in Jesus's teaching in Luke 12:24.
10. The horse (*sus*) was the primary instrument of military superiority in the ancient Near East. Egypt was the major supplier of warhorses, and Israel's kings were repeatedly warned against multiplying horses (Deuteronomy 17:16). The pairing of horse-strength with human-leg-strength dismisses both cavalry and infantry as objects of divine approval.
11. The contrast with verse 10 is complete: God delights not in military power but in *yere'av* ('those who fear him') and *ha-meyachalim le-chasdo* ('those who wait/hope for his faithful love'). The verb *yachal* ('to wait, to hope') describes patient expectation — not passive resignation but active trust directed toward *chesed*. God's pleasure is in the posture of dependent trust, not in the posture of self-sufficient power.
12. The psalm's second major section begins with a direct address to Jerusalem and Zion — the city and its sacred hill. The imperatives *shabbechi* ('praise!') and *hallelu* ('praise!') call the city itself to worship. In the LXX, this is where a new psalm (147) begins.
13. The *berichei she'arayikh* ('bars of your gates') are the heavy crossbeams that secured the city gates — the primary defense against invasion. God has made them strong. The parallel *berakh banayikh* ('he has blessed your children') moves from external security to internal flourishing. The city is both fortified and fertile.
14. The *ha-sam gevulekh shalom* ('the one who sets your border as peace') declares that God himself is the agent of peace at the borders — no enemy penetrates. The *chelev chittim* ('fat of wheat, finest wheat') represents the best of the grain harvest. The word *chelev* ('fat') is the choicest portion, the part offered to God in sacrifice. Now God gives the best back to the city.
15. The *ha-sholeach imrato arets* ('the one who sends his word/saying to the earth') personifies God's word as a messenger dispatched on a mission. The verb *yaruts* ('it runs') gives the word legs — it races across the landscape. The speed (*ad meherah*, 'up to swiftness, very fast') emphasizes that God's word encounters no resistance between intention and execution.
16. The similes are striking: snow like wool (*ka-tsamer*) — white, thick, blanketing the ground; frost like ashes (*ka-efer*) — pale, fine, dusting every surface. Both comparisons emphasize the covering quality of winter precipitation. The weather is not random but given (*noten*) and scattered (*yefazzer*) by God.
17. The verb *mashlik* ('he hurls, he throws') is violent — God does not gently lower the ice but flings it. The *qarchoh ke-fittim* ('his ice like crumbs/morsels') pictures hailstones or chunks of ice scattered like broken bread. The rhetorical question *lifne qarato mi ya'amod* ('before his cold, who can stand?') acknowledges that cold — a simple weather phenomenon — is an irresistible force of divine origin.
18. The same *devaro* ('his word') that ran swiftly in verse 15 now melts the ice and snow of verses 16-17. The verb *yamsem* ('he melts them') shows the word as a warming force. The *rucho* ('his wind/spirit') — the same word for spirit and wind — blows and the frozen waters flow again. The cycle is complete: God sends cold and then sends warmth; he freezes and then thaws. All of it is his word at work.
19. The psalm shifts from God's word in nature (weather) to God's word in revelation (Torah). The *maggid devarav le-Ya'aqov* ('he declares his words to Jacob') uses the same verb for proclaiming that appeared in verse 15 for dispatching. The *chuqqav u-mishpatav* ('his statutes and his judgments') are the specific legal and moral instructions given to Israel — the Torah.

- 20.** The final verse makes an exclusivity claim: *lo asah khi le-khol goy* ('he has not done so for any nation'). The revelation of Torah is unique to Israel. While God's providential care extends to all creation (vv. 8-9), his revealed will — his statutes and judgments — has been given to one people. The closing halleluyah seals the psalm's movement from cosmic praise to particular gratitude for Torah.

148

Summary: *The third of the Final Hallel psalms. This is the great cosmic praise psalm: a sweeping summons for all creation — from the highest heavens to the deepest sea — to praise the LORD. The psalm moves from the heights downward: angels, heavenly hosts, sun, moon, stars, the highest heavens, the waters above the sky. Then it descends to earth: sea creatures, ocean depths, fire, hail, snow, mist, storm wind, mountains, hills, fruit trees, cedars, wild animals, cattle, creeping things, birds. Finally it reaches humanity: kings, peoples, princes, rulers, young men, young women, the old, the young. Everything that exists is summoned to praise the LORD, whose name alone is exalted, whose splendor covers earth and heaven, and who has raised up a horn for his people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 148 is the most comprehensive creation-praise text in the Hebrew Bible. Its structure mirrors the creation sequence of Genesis 1 in reverse: it begins in the heavens and works downward through the sky, the atmosphere, the land, and finally the human world. But unlike Genesis 1, the creation here is not passive — it is summoned to active praise. The sun, moon, and stars are not merely objects; they are worshipers. The sea creatures and storm winds are not merely phenomena; they are members of a choir. The psalm insists that praise is not a human activity extended to creation by metaphor but a cosmic activity in which humans participate. The universe is a temple, and everything in it is liturgy.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm raises the question of how non-sentient entities 'praise' God. The mountains, the hail, and the sea creatures are commanded to praise, but they cannot speak or think. Some interpreters read this as poetic hyperbole; others (following the psalm's own logic) argue that existence itself is praise — that by being what they are and doing what they were made to do, all created things glorify their maker. Romans 8:19-22, where creation groans in anticipation, and Revelation 5:13, where every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth praises the Lamb, extend this theology. The 'horn' raised for God's people in verse 14 is a compressed royal/messianic image whose referent is debated.*

Connections: *The psalm is closely related to the Song of the Three Young Men (an addition to Daniel 3 in the LXX), which uses the same pattern of summoning all creation to praise. The list of created entities echoes Genesis 1 and Job 38-41. Francis of Assisi's 'Canticle of the Sun' is a medieval Christian expansion of this psalm's theology. The horn (*qeren*) raised for God's people in verse 14 connects to the messianic 'horn of David' in Psalm 132:17 and to Mary's Magnificat (Luke 1:69: 'He has raised up a horn of salvation for us').*

1Halleluyah!

Praise the LORD from the heavens.

Praise him in the heights.

2Praise him, all his angels.

Praise him, all his heavenly armies.

3Praise him, sun and moon.

Praise him, all you stars of light.

4Praise him, highest heavens,

and you waters above the sky.

5Let them praise the name of the LORD,

for at his command and they were created.

⁶He set them in place forever.
 He gave a decree that will not pass away.

⁷Praise the LORD from the earth,
 you sea creatures and all ocean depths.

⁸Fire and hail, snow and mist,
 storm wind that carries out his word,

⁹mountains and all hills,
 fruit trees and all cedars,

¹⁰wild animals and all livestock,
 creeping things and birds in flight,

¹¹kings of the earth and all peoples,
 princes and all rulers of the earth,

¹²young men and young women,
 old and young together.

¹³Let them praise the name of the LORD,
 for his name alone is exalted.
 His splendor covers earth and heaven.

¹⁴He has raised up a horn for his people —
 praise for all his faithful ones,
 for the children of Israel, a people close to him.
 Halleluyah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The psalm opens at the highest point of creation: min ha-shamayim ('from the heavens') and ba-meromim ('in the heights'). The praise is to originate at the top of the cosmos and cascade downward. The triple hallelu in this verse sets the relentless pace of the entire psalm — command after command, summoning layer after layer of creation.
2. The mal'akhav ('his angels, his messengers') and tseva'av ('his hosts, his armies') are the members of the divine court — the heavenly beings who serve the LORD. The word tsava ('host, army') is military language applied to the celestial realm: the stars and angelic beings are God's organized forces.
3. The sun (shemesh) and moon (yareach) are addressed directly, as though they can hear. The kokheve or ('stars of light') are not merely luminous objects but praised participants. In the ancient Near East, sun and moon were deities worshiped by surrounding cultures. This psalm commands them to worship the LORD — they are not gods but creatures summoned to praise their maker.
4. The sheme ha-shamayim ('heavens of the heavens') is the superlative — the highest conceivable point of the cosmos. The mayim asher me'al ha-shamayim ('the waters that are above the heavens') reflects the cosmology of Genesis 1:7, where God separated the waters below the firmament from the waters above it. Even these primal, pre-creation waters are summoned to praise.
5. The reason for praise is creation itself: ki hu tsivvah ve-nivra'u ('for he commanded and they were created'). The verb nivra'u ('they were created') is the Niphal of bara, the verb reserved in Genesis 1 for divine creation. Everything that exists does so because God spoke it into being. Existence is the first and fundamental reason for praise.
6. The verb ya'amidem ('he caused them to stand, he established them') describes permanent placement — the heavenly bodies are fixed in their courses. The choq natan ('he gave a statute/decreed') applies legal language to the natural order: the stars obey a law, a binding ordinance. The phrase lo ya'avur ('it will not pass, it will not be transgressed') declares the permanence of God's cosmic legislation.
7. The psalm pivots from heaven to earth: min ha-arets ('from the earth'). The tanninim ('sea creatures, sea monsters, great serpents') are the largest and most fearsome creatures of the deep — in other contexts (Isaiah 27:1, Job 41) they represent chaos. Here they are not enemies to be conquered but worshipers summoned to praise. The tehomot ('deep waters, ocean depths, abysses') are the primordial deeps of Genesis 1:2.

8. The weather phenomena — *esh* ('fire/lightning'), *barad* ('hail'), *sheleg* ('snow'), *qitor* ('mist, vapor, smoke'), *ruach se'arah* ('storm wind') — are presented as obedient agents. The final phrase *osah devaro* ('doing his word, carrying out his command') declares that the storm wind is not chaotic but obedient: it executes God's instructions. Weather is divine speech in motion.
9. The landscape joins the chorus: mountains and hills for topography, fruit trees and cedars for vegetation. The *ets peri* ('fruit tree') represents cultivated, productive growth; the *arazim* ('cedars') represent wild, majestic growth. Both cultivated and wild nature are summoned.
10. The animal kingdom is represented in four categories: *chayyah* ('wild animal, living creature'), *behemah* ('livestock, domestic animal'), *remes* ('creeping thing, swarming creature'), and *tsippor kanaf* ('bird of wing, winged bird'). These categories echo the creation taxonomy of Genesis 1:24-26. The entire animal world, from the largest predator to the smallest crawler, is called to praise.
11. The human realm is summoned by social rank: *malke erets* ('kings of the earth') at the top, *leummim* ('peoples, nations') as the collective, *sarim* ('princes, officials') as the governing class, and *shofete erets* ('judges/rulers of the earth') as the judiciary. No tier of human power is exempt from the summons to praise.
12. The summons moves from political rank to demographic range: *bachurim* ('young men'), *betulot* ('young women, maidens'), *zeqenim* ('old, elders'), and *ne'arim* ('youth, children'). Every age and both sexes are included. The word *im* ('with, together') in *zeqenim im ne'arim* ('old with young') emphasizes that praise unites generations.
13. The verb *nisgav* ('is exalted, is set on high, is inaccessibly high') declares God's name to be in a category beyond all other names. The word *levaddo* ('alone, by itself') insists on uniqueness: no other name shares this height. The *hodo* ('his splendor, his majesty') covers both *erets ve-shamayim* ('earth and heaven') — the same two realms that were separately summoned to praise now share in displaying God's glory.
14. The *qeren* ('horn') is variously interpreted as the Davidic king, the nation of Israel collectively, or the messianic hope. Luke 1:69 applies the image to Jesus: 'He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David.' The phrase *am qerovo* ('a people close to him') is unique and expresses election as proximity rather than privilege.

149

Summary: *The fourth of the Final Hallel psalms. A new song for the LORD: Israel is called to celebrate its Maker with dancing and music — tambourine and lyre. The LORD takes delight in his people and adorns the humble with victory. The faithful ones are to shout for joy from their beds, with praise on their lips and a double-edged sword in their hands, to carry out judgment on the nations, to bind their kings with chains, to execute the written verdict. This honor belongs to all his faithful ones.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This psalm holds together two things that later interpreters have struggled to combine: ecstatic worship and military action. The faithful ones have praise of God in their mouths and a two-edged sword in their hands simultaneously (v. 6). The psalm does not sequence these — first worship, then war, or first war, then worship — but holds them together as a single act. The verb *ye'alzu* ('let them exult') in verse 5 pictures the faithful shouting for joy on their beds — perhaps a reference to nighttime worship or to the confidence of those who can sleep soundly because victory is assured. The 'written verdict' (*mishpat katuv*) of verse 9 suggests that the judgment on the nations is not arbitrary but follows a pre-existing divine sentence.*

Translation Friction: *The militaristic language of verses 6-9 — swords, vengeance, chains, iron shackles — has troubled interpreters across centuries. Is this literal military conquest, eschatological judgment, or spiritual metaphor? Jewish tradition has read the 'double-edged sword' as Torah study (the sword of the mouth), while Christian tradition has oscillated between crusade theology and purely spiritual readings. The psalm offers no internal signals that the language is metaphorical; it reads as a celebration of God's people as agents of divine justice against hostile nations. The phrase *mishpat katuv* ('written judgment') in verse 9 may refer to prophetic oracles against the nations (Isaiah 13-23, Jeremiah 46-51) or to a heavenly decree.*

Connections: *The 'new song' (*shir chadash*) connects to Psalms 33:3, 96:1, 98:1, and 144:9 — each marks a fresh act of God that demands fresh praise. The double-edged sword (*cherev pifiyyot*) appears in Revelation 1:16 and Hebrews 4:12, where it is identified with the word of God. The binding of kings and nobles (v. 8) echoes Psalm 2:1-3, where the nations conspire against the LORD and his anointed. The 'honor for all his faithful ones' (v. 9) distributes royal dignity to the entire community, a democratization of the royal psalms' theology.*

¹Halleluyah!

Sing to the LORD a new song,
his praise in the assembly of the faithful.

²Let Israel celebrate its Maker.
Let the children of Zion rejoice in their King.

³Let them praise his name with dancing,
with tambourine and lyre making music to him.

⁴For the LORD takes delight in his people.
He adorns the humble with victory.

⁵Let the faithful ones exult in glory.
Let them shout for joy on their beds.

⁶The praises of God are in their throats
and a double-edged sword in their hands,

⁷to carry out vengeance on the nations,
punishment on the peoples,

⁸to bind their kings with chains
and their nobles with iron shackles,

⁹to carry out the verdict written against them.
This is the honor given to all his faithful ones.
Halleluyah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The shir chadash ('new song') signals fresh praise prompted by fresh divine action. The qahal chasidim ('assembly of the faithful, congregation of the devoted ones') locates this praise in communal worship, not private devotion. The chasidim are those marked by chesed — people whose lives reflect the covenant loyalty they receive from God.
2. The parallel Yisrael / bene Tsiyyon ('Israel / children of Zion') names the people as both nation and city-community. The osaiv ('his Maker, the one who made him') identifies God not merely as ruler but as creator of the nation. The malkam ('their King') is God himself — the psalm's theology of divine kingship is direct and unmediated.
3. The machol ('dance, circle dance') brings the body into worship — praise is not only vocal but physical. The tof ('tambourine, hand drum') and kinnor ('lyre') provide the instrumental accompaniment. The combination of dance and music evokes the celebrations after the Red Sea crossing (Exodus 15:20), where Miriam led the women with tambourines and dancing.
4. The verb rotseh ('takes pleasure, delights in, is pleased with') echoes Psalm 147:11. The verb yefa'er ('he adorns, he beautifies, he glorifies') pictures God dressing the anavim ('humble, afflicted, meek') in yeshu'ah ('salvation, victory, deliverance') as though it were a garment or a crown. The humble are not merely rescued but made beautiful by God's saving action.
5. The ya'lezu ('let them exult, let them triumph') describes the uninhibited joy of the chasidim. The phrase al mishkevotam ('on their beds') has generated varied interpretations: nighttime praise before sleep, the confidence of those who can rest securely knowing God fights for them, or the joy that persists even in the private space of one's own bedroom. The image is of praise so thorough it follows the worshiper into bed.
6. The cherev pifiyyot ('sword of edges/mouths') is literally 'a sword of double mouths.' The word peh ('mouth') is used for the cutting edge of a blade because the blade 'bites' like a mouth. A double-edged sword has two cutting surfaces, making it effective on both the forward and return stroke.
7. The neqamah ('vengeance, retribution, vindication') is not personal revenge but the execution of divine justice. The tokhehot ('punishments, rebukes, corrections') are judicial in character — these are sentences being carried out. The nations (goyim) and peoples (leummim) who receive this judgment are those who have opposed God and his people.

8. The binding of malkheihem ('their kings') and nikhbedeihem ('their honored ones, their nobles') reverses the power structure: those who held authority are now held in chains. The ziqqim ('chains') and khavle varzel ('iron shackles, iron fetters') are the instruments of captivity. The image is of total military and political subjugation.
9. The mishpat katuv ('written judgment, recorded verdict') suggests a pre-existing divine sentence — the judgment is not improvised but follows a decree already inscribed. The hadar hu le-khol chasidav ('this is the honor/glory for all his faithful ones') declares that participation in divine justice is not restricted to kings or warriors but belongs to the entire community of the faithful. The closing halleluyah frames even this militant passage within the context of praise.

150

Summary: *The final psalm of the Psalter — the fifth and last of the Final Hallel psalms. This is the conclusion of the entire book of Psalms. Every line is a command to praise. The psalm answers three questions: Where should God be praised? In his sanctuary and in his mighty heavens. Why should God be praised? For his mighty acts and his surpassing greatness. How should God be praised? With trumpet, harp, lyre, tambourine, dancing, strings, pipe, and crashing cymbals. The final verse expands the summons beyond instruments and beyond Israel: 'Let everything that has breath praise the LORD.' The last word of the Psalter is Halleluyah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Psalm 150 is the Psalter's final word, and that word is praise. The book that began with the quiet happiness of the righteous individual (Psalm 1:1, 'Happy is the one') and passed through every human experience — lament, anger, despair, confession, thanksgiving, wonder, terror, exile, and return — ends with nothing but praise. Every verse is an imperative: hallelu, hallelu, hallelu. There are no requests, no complaints, no enemies, no conditions. The psalm strips worship down to its purest form: an unbroken cascade of commands to praise, each one adding a new instrument to the orchestra. The final verse — kol ha-neshamah tehallel Yah ('let everything that has breath praise the LORD') — is the widest possible summons. The word neshamah ('breath') is the breath God breathed into the first human in Genesis 2:7. Every creature that received that breath owes it back as praise. The Psalter ends where creation began: with divine breath, now returned to its source as worship.*

Translation Friction: *The psalm's relentless imperative mood and absence of any content beyond 'praise' has led some scholars to view it as liturgically thin — all form and no substance. But this misses the structural argument: the substance of the Psalter is the preceding 149 psalms. Psalm 150 is not a standalone poem but a doxology for the entire collection. The five Final Hallel psalms (146-150) correspond structurally to the five books of the Psalter (1-41, 42-72, 73-89, 90-106, 107-150), each of which ends with a doxology. Psalm 150 is the doxology of doxologies — the final 'Amen' of the entire five-book structure.*

Connections: *The opening phrase 'Praise God in his sanctuary' connects to the entire temple theology of the Psalter (Psalms 27:4, 84:1-4, 134:1). The instruments listed correspond to those used in temple worship as described in 1 Chronicles 15:16-28 and 2 Chronicles 5:12-13. The final verse — 'let everything that has breath praise the LORD' — is the ultimate fulfillment of Psalm 145:21 ('let all flesh bless his holy name') and of Psalm 148's summons of all creation. The structure of the Psalter moves from Torah (Psalm 1) to praise (Psalm 150), suggesting that the life shaped by God's instruction naturally culminates in worship.*

1Halleluyah!

Praise God in his sanctuary.

Praise him in his mighty heavens.

2Praise him for his mighty acts.

Praise him according to his surpassing greatness.

3Praise him with the blast of the ram's horn.

Praise him with harp and lyre.

4Praise him with tambourine and dancing.
Praise him with strings and pipe.

5Praise him with resounding cymbals.
Praise him with crashing cymbals.

6Let everything that has breath praise the LORD.
Halleluyah!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *reqi'a uzzo* ('firmament of his strength') echoes Genesis 1:6 but adds the qualifier *uzzo* ('his strength, his power'). The heavens are not merely an expanse but a display of divine power. The parallelism between sanctuary and firmament suggests that the earthly temple is a microcosm of the heavenly space — worship below mirrors worship above.
2. The psalm now answers why: *bi-gevurotav* ('for his mighty acts') — everything God has done. *Ke-rov gudlo* ('according to the abundance of his greatness') — because of who God is. The two reasons cover the entire ground of praise: God's deeds (what he has done) and God's nature (what he is). The word *rov* ('abundance, greatness, multitude') indicates that God's greatness exceeds any attempt to match it with praise — and yet the psalm commands the attempt.
3. The psalm now answers how, and the answer is: with everything. The *teqa shofar* ('blast of the ram's horn') is the sound of assembly, alarm, and holy celebration — the shofar that sounded at Sinai (Exodus 19:16) and at the fall of Jericho (Joshua 6:20). The *nevel* ('harp') and *kinnor* ('lyre') are the foundational stringed instruments of Israelite worship.
4. The *tof* ('tambourine, hand drum') and *machol* ('dancing, circle dance') add percussion and movement. The *minnim* ('strings, stringed instruments') is a general term for string instruments, and the *ugav* ('pipe, flute, wind instrument') adds breath-powered sound. The progression moves through the instrument families: brass (*shofar*), strings (*harp*, *lyre*, *minnim*), percussion (*tambourine*), wind (*pipe*), and movement (*dancing*).
5. The *tsiltselei shama* ('cymbals of hearing/sound') and *tsiltselei teru'ah* ('cymbals of shouting/crashing') represent two types or intensities of cymbal sound. The first may be smaller finger-cymbals that keep rhythm; the second is the large crash-cymbals that punctuate climactic moments. The word *teru'ah* ('shout, blast, alarm, acclamation') brings the sound to its peak — this is worship at full volume, holding nothing back.
6. The *neshamah* ('breath, living breath') is distinguished from *ruach* ('spirit, wind') — *neshamah* is specifically the breath of life, the respiratory function that sustains creatures. Its use here connects the end of the Psalter to the beginning of Genesis: God breathed the *neshamah* into the first human, and now every being that carries it is summoned to return it as praise. The closing *halleluyah* is the 150th psalm's final syllable and the Psalter's final word.

Proverbs

Summary: *Proverbs 1 establishes the purpose of the entire collection (vv1-7), issues a father's warning against the enticement of violent men (vv8-19), and then dramatically shifts voice as Woman Wisdom herself takes to the streets to deliver her first public speech (vv20-33). The chapter moves from private instruction to public confrontation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The prologue (vv1-7) is not merely a preface but a thesis statement for the entire book. It names six overlapping goals — wisdom, discipline, discernment, prudence, knowledge, and discretion — all culminating in the declaration that the fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge. This is not the end of an argument but its starting point. The most striking feature of the chapter is the personification of wisdom as a woman who shouts in public spaces — streets, squares, gateways. In the ancient Near East, the only women who called out to men in public were either mourners or prostitutes. By casting Wisdom as a woman crying out at the city gates, the text deliberately inverts the image of the seductive woman who will appear in chapters 5-7. The reader must choose which woman's voice to heed.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew *reshit* in verse 7 ('beginning') has been debated for centuries. Does it mean 'the starting point' (you begin with the fear of the LORD and then acquire knowledge) or 'the chief part' (the fear of the LORD is the essence, the first principle of knowledge)? Both readings have support. The word can mean either temporal beginning or supreme portion. The ambiguity may be deliberate — the fear of the LORD is both where you start and what matters most. Woman Wisdom's speech in vv20-33 is troublingly harsh: she promises to laugh at the disaster of those who ignored her. This does not fit easily into categories of divine compassion, but it reflects the absolute character of wisdom literature — choices have consequences, and Wisdom will not rescue those who chose Folly.*

Connections: *The 'fear of the LORD' formula (v7) is the architectural keystone of the entire wisdom corpus, appearing in Job 28:28, Psalm 111:10, Proverbs 9:10, and Ecclesiastes 12:13. The father-to-son instruction format (v8) matches Egyptian wisdom literature, particularly the Instruction of Amenemope and the Instruction of Ptahhotep, placing Proverbs in a broader ancient Near Eastern tradition. Woman Wisdom's public speech anticipates her major address in chapter 8, where she will claim to have been present at creation itself.*

¹The proverbs of Solomon, son of David,
king of Israel:

²To know wisdom and discipline,
to discern words of understanding,

³To receive discipline that produces insight —
righteousness, justice, and uprightness,

⁴To give shrewdness to the naive,
knowledge and foresight to the young,

⁵Let the wise listen and add to their learning,
and the discerning acquire guidance —

⁶to understand a proverb and a figure of speech,
the words of the wise and their riddles.

⁷The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge;
wisdom and discipline, fools despise.

⁸Listen, my son, to your father's discipline,
and do not abandon your mother's instruction.

⁹For they will be a garland of grace on your head
and pendants around your neck.

¹⁰My son, if sinners entice you,
do not consent.

¹¹If they say, 'Come with us —
let us lie in ambush for blood,
let us lurk unseen for the innocent without cause,

¹²Let us swallow them alive like Sheol,
whole, like those who descend to the pit —

¹³We will find every kind of precious wealth;
we will fill our houses with plunder.'

¹⁴'Throw in your lot with us —
we will all share one purse.'

¹⁵My son, do not walk on the road with them;
hold back your foot from their path,

¹⁶for their feet run toward evil
and they rush to shed blood.

¹⁷For in vain is a net spread
in the sight of any bird.

¹⁸But these men lie in ambush for their own blood;
they lurk in hiding for their own lives.

¹⁹Such are the paths of all who profit by violence —
it takes the life of those who gain it.

²⁰Wisdom cries aloud in the street;
in the public squares she raises her voice.

²¹At the busiest corner she calls out;
at the entrance of the gates, in the city,
she speaks her words:

²²'How long, you naive ones, will you love naivety?
How long will scoffers delight in their scoffing
and fools hate knowledge?

²³Turn back at my reproof!
Look — I will pour out my spirit on you;
I will make my words known to you.

²⁴Because I called and you refused,
I stretched out my hand and no one paid attention,

²⁵and you ignored all my counsel
and would not accept my reproof —

²⁶then I in turn will laugh at your disaster;
I will mock when your dread arrives,

²⁷when your dread arrives like a storm
and your disaster sweeps in like a whirlwind,
when distress and anguish come upon you.

²⁸Then they will call on me, but I will not answer;
they will search for me urgently, but will not find me,

²⁹because they hated knowledge
and did not choose the fear of the LORD,

³⁰they would not accept my counsel;
they spurned all my reproof.

³¹So they will eat the fruit of their own way
and be gorged on their own schemes.

³²For the waywardness of the naive will kill them,
and the complacency of fools will destroy them.

³³But whoever listens to me will dwell secure
and be at ease, without fear of harm.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Mashal (plural meshalim, 'proverbs') means far more than a pithy saying. The root m-sh-l means 'to rule, to compare, to represent.' A mashal is a statement that governs — it captures reality in compressed form and exercises authority over the hearer's understanding. The attribution to Solomon draws on the tradition of 1 Kings 4:32, which credits him with three thousand proverbs.
2. Musar is rendered 'discipline' rather than 'instruction' to preserve its sharp edge. The word derives from yasar ('to chastise, to correct, to discipline') and often appears in contexts of physical correction (Proverbs 13:24, 22:15). Wisdom in Proverbs is not acquired without cost — it requires the submission of the learner to correction that may be painful.
3. The triad tsedeq, mishpat, and mesharim ('righteousness, justice, and uprightness') is not a random list but a comprehensive description of right living. Tsedeq is conformity to God's standard; mishpat is the just application of that standard in community; mesharim (from yashar, 'straight, upright') is the personal integrity that connects the two. Together they define the moral outcome that wisdom produces.
4. The peti ('naive, simple, gullible') is not stupid but untested — a person whose character is still open, still formable. The word comes from patah ('to be open, to be enticed') and describes someone who can be led in either direction. Proverbs does not write off the naive; it targets them as the primary audience. The ormah ('shrewdness, craftiness') given to the naive is the same word used of the serpent in Genesis 3:1 — it is morally neutral cunning, the capacity to navigate deception without being deceived.
5. The shift from the naive (v4) to the already wise (v5) reveals a key principle: wisdom is never finished. The chakham ('wise person') still needs to hear and add learning. Tachbulot ('guidance, steering, strategy') originally referred to the ropes used to steer a ship — wisdom is navigational skill, the ability to direct one's course through complex situations.
6. Melitsah ('figure of speech, satire, enigmatic saying') and chidot ('riddles, puzzles') indicate that wisdom literature deliberately obscures as much as it reveals. The wise do not hand answers to the learner; they pose problems that require active engagement. The hearer must work to understand — and the working is itself part of the formation.
7. The fear of the LORD is not one topic among many in Proverbs — it is the epistemological foundation. Without it, the book's other instructions become merely practical advice. With it, every proverb becomes an expression of divine order. The identical formula appears in 9:10, forming an inclusio around the book's first major section.
7. The placement of 'wisdom and discipline, fools despise' at the verse's end — with the verb last — creates emphasis through word order. The Hebrew ear hears chokmah and musar first, then the devastating bazu ('despise'). What fools reject is named before the rejection itself, as if to say: look at what they are throwing away.
8. The shift to direct address — 'my son' (beni) — signals the beginning of the first instructional unit. The parallelism between father's musar and mother's torah elevates the mother's teaching to equal authority with the father's. In Israelite pedagogy, both parents transmitted wisdom. The mother's torah is instruction in the fullest sense — not a lesser, domestic variant but authoritative teaching.
9. The imagery of ornamental jewelry applied to parental teaching transforms discipline from burden into adornment. The livyat chen ('garland of grace, wreath of favor') and anaqim ('pendants, necklaces') are publicly visible — wisdom's fruit is not hidden but displayed. In the ancient Near East, such ornaments also signaled social standing and honor.
10. The verb yefattukha ('entice you') is from patah, the same root behind peti ('naive') in verse 4. The naive are those open to enticement; sinners exploit that openness. The father's command is blunt: al tove ('do not consent, do not go along'). No negotiation, no partial engagement — a clean refusal.
11. The father now gives the sinners' actual speech — a recruitment pitch. The verbs eerevah ('let us ambush') and nitspenah ('let us hide, lurk') are cohortative, expressing eager intention. The target is the naqi ('innocent, clean') — someone who has done nothing to provoke attack. The word chinnam ('without cause, for nothing, gratuitously') intensifies the evil: this is violence for its own sake.
12. The sinners compare themselves to Sheol — the grave, the realm of the dead — which swallows people whole. The imagery is deliberately monstrous: they see themselves as death itself, consuming victims who are chayyim ('alive') and temimim ('whole, blameless'). The boast reveals the predatory nature of the invitation. Sheol in Hebrew thought was insatiable (Proverbs 27:20, Isaiah 5:14), and so are those who pattern their lives after it.
13. The pitch moves from thrill to profit. Hon yaqar ('precious wealth') and shalal ('plunder, spoil') reveal the economic motive beneath the violence. The promise to fill houses with plunder is an inversion of the wisdom promise — wisdom fills a house with good things (Proverbs 24:4), but the violent fill theirs with stolen goods.
14. The final enticement is belonging: throw your goral ('lot, share, portion') in with ours. The shared kis ('purse, bag') offers community and equal distribution. The gang promises what family and wisdom also promise — identity, provision, solidarity — but through violence rather than virtue. The counterfeit is compelling precisely because it mimics the real thing.
15. The father's response is physical: restrain your ragel ('foot') from their netivah ('path, track'). The language of walking and paths runs throughout Proverbs — life is a journey, and the critical choice is which road to take. The imperative mena ('hold back, withhold, restrain') implies that the pull is real; without active resistance, the feet will follow.

16. The verbs *yarutsu* ('run') and *yimaharu* ('hasten, rush') convey eagerness — the violent are not reluctant participants but enthusiastic ones. Isaiah 59:7 quotes this verse nearly verbatim in an indictment of Israel, and Paul cites it in Romans 3:15 as evidence of universal human depravity.
17. The father inserts a proverb within his instruction: a bird that sees the net avoids it. The implication is devastating — these sinners are less perceptive than birds. They set a trap that will catch themselves, and they cannot see it. The *resheth* ('net') they spread for others becomes their own snare (v18).
18. The identical verbs from verse 11 — *arav* ('ambush') and *tsaphan* ('lurk') — return, but with a devastating twist. In verse 11 the sinners lay ambush for others; in verse 18 they ambush themselves. The irony is total: violence is self-consuming. The *nafshotam* ('their own lives, their own souls') they destroy are their own.
19. The word *batsa* ('unjust gain, profit by violence') appears throughout the prophetic corpus as a key indictment of corrupt leaders (Jeremiah 6:13, Ezekiel 22:27, Habakkuk 2:9). Its presence here connects the father's private instruction to the public concerns of prophecy — personal greed and social injustice are the same sin at different scales.
20. The plural form *chokmot* has generated much discussion. Some see it as a plural of majesty (like *Elohim*), others as an abstract plural, others as a Canaanite feminine ending. Regardless of grammar, the effect is to present Wisdom as a figure of public authority — a voice that cannot be ignored or confined to a single setting.
21. The city gate (*sha'ar*) was the center of legal, commercial, and social life in ancient Israelite cities. Elders judged cases there, merchants conducted business, and news was exchanged. By placing Wisdom at the gate's entrance, the text positions her at the crossroads of public life — every decision made in the city passes through her hearing.
22. Wisdom's speech opens with *ad matay* ('how long?'), the same phrase used in lament psalms to address God (Psalm 13:1-2). Here Wisdom uses it to address the foolish — she laments over them. Three categories appear: *petayim* ('the naive,' who are reachable but undirected), *letsim* ('scoffers,' who mock what they do not understand), and *kesilim* ('fools,' who are morally obstinate). Each group is defined by what it loves or hates: the naive love their openness, scoffers love their mockery, and fools hate knowledge itself.
23. Wisdom offers her *ruach* ('spirit, breath, wind') — an astonishing claim. The verb *abi'ah* ('I will pour out, I will cause to bubble forth') suggests abundance, even excess. Wisdom is not rationing herself. The offer is lavish and conditional only on turning (*shuvu*, 'turn back, repent'). The same root *sh-u-v* that defines prophetic repentance defines the response Wisdom demands.
24. The verbs shift to past tense — Wisdom has already been calling. The refusal is not a single event but a pattern. *Natiti yadi* ('I stretched out my hand') is a gesture of offering, even pleading. The word *maqshiv* ('one who pays attention, one who listens carefully') from *qashav* emphasizes that what was lacking was not access to Wisdom but attentiveness to her.
25. The verb *tifre'u* ('you let loose, you neglected, you let go') is the same word used for Pharaoh 'letting' Israel go (Exodus 5:4) and for undoing restraint. They released Wisdom's counsel — let it slip through their fingers — and refused her *tokhachat* ('reproof, correction, argument').
26. This is among the most unsettling verses in wisdom literature. Wisdom does not merely warn; she promises to laugh (*eshchaq*) and mock (*el'ag*) when calamity strikes. The language mirrors the scoffers' own behavior — they mocked wisdom, and now wisdom will mock them. The reversal is exact and merciless. This is not cruelty but the inherent logic of rejection: the one you mocked will not rescue you.
27. The storm imagery (*sho'ah*, 'devastation, storm' and *sufah*, 'whirlwind, tempest') conveys suddenness and overwhelming force. The pairing *tsarah ve-tsuqah* ('distress and anguish') is a rhyming pair in Hebrew that underscores the completeness of the suffering. The fools thought they were free; the storm reveals they were exposed.
28. The verbs *yiqra'uneni* ('they will call on me') and *yeshacharuneni* ('they will seek me early, diligently') echo the language of prayer — the fools will seek Wisdom the way a desperate person seeks God. But the answer will be silence. The verb *shachar* ('to seek early, to seek eagerly') implies dawn-time seeking, the most urgent and devoted kind of search. Even this will be too late.
29. The reason for Wisdom's silence is stated plainly: they hated knowledge and did not choose (*bacharu*, from *bachar*) the fear of the LORD. The verb *bachar* ('to choose, to select, to prefer') makes clear that the fear of the LORD is a decision, not a feeling. It must be chosen — and it was not.
30. The verb *na'atsu* ('they spurned, they treated with contempt') is stronger than mere rejection — it is active contempt, the deliberate disparagement of what Wisdom offered. The word appears in descriptions of Israel's rejection of God's covenant (Numbers 14:23, Deuteronomy 32:19).
31. The agricultural metaphor returns: actions are seeds, consequences are fruit, and the harvest must be consumed. The verb *yisba'u* ('they will be satisfied, stuffed, gorged') often describes pleasant fullness, but here it is ironic — they will be filled to overflowing with the consequences of their own *mo'atsot* ('plans, schemes, counsels'). They rejected Wisdom's counsel; they will be force-fed their own.
32. The irony of *meshuvah* ('turning away') is sharp: turning is exactly what Wisdom invited in verse 23 (*tashuvu*, 'turn back'). The same capacity — the ability to change direction — saves or destroys depending on which way one turns.
33. Wisdom's speech ends not with threat but with promise. The one who *shome'a li* ('listens to me, obeys me') will *yishkan betach* ('dwell in security'). The verb *shakan* ('to dwell, to settle, to tabernacle') evokes permanence — this is not temporary refuge but settled habitation. *Sha'anani* ('at ease, tranquil, undisturbed') is the positive version of the *shalvah* ('complacency') that destroys fools in verse 32. The same ease that kills the fool blesses the wise — the difference is not the comfort itself but whether it is grounded in wisdom or ignorance.

2

Summary: *Proverbs 2 is a single, carefully structured conditional sentence spanning the entire chapter: 'If you seek wisdom (vv1-4), then you will understand the fear of the LORD (vv5-8), then you will understand righteousness (vv9-11), then wisdom will deliver you from the evil man (vv12-15) and from the forbidden woman (vv16-19), so that you may walk in the way of the good (vv20-22).' It is the most architecturally unified chapter in the book.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire chapter is one extended 'if-then' construction — the longest conditional sentence in the Hebrew Bible. The protasis ('if') runs through verses 1-4 with five escalating verbs of seeking: receive, treasure, incline, apply, cry out, seek, search. The effort required to find wisdom is compared to mining for silver and searching for hidden treasure (v4). Wisdom is not lying on the surface; it must be excavated. The two threats from which wisdom delivers — the evil man (vv12-15) and the strange woman (vv16-19) — will dominate chapters 5-7. Here they receive their first introduction as twin dangers that can only be navigated by someone who has done the hard work of verses 1-4.*

Translation Friction: *The ishah zarah ('strange woman, foreign woman') of verse 16 has been interpreted as a literal adulteress, as a personification of Folly (the counterpart to Woman Wisdom), as a reference to foreign women who lead Israelites into idolatry, or as all three simultaneously. The ambiguity is likely intentional — the 'forbidden woman' represents every alluring path that leads away from wisdom and covenant faithfulness. The chapter's conditional structure also raises a question: is wisdom earned by human effort (vv1-4) or given by God (vv6)? The answer appears to be both — seeking is required, but what is found is a divine gift.*

Connections: *The mining metaphor in verse 4 connects to Job 28, which asks 'Where shall wisdom be found?' and describes mining operations that probe the earth's depths. The 'paths of the upright' language (v13, v20) echoes Psalm 1's two-ways theology. The 'strange woman' introduction anticipates the extended warnings in chapters 5, 6:20-35, and 7. The promise that God 'stores up sound wisdom for the upright' (v7) uses the same verb (tsaphan, 'to hide, to store') that describes treasure in verse 4 — God hides wisdom the way one hides treasure, and the seeker must dig.*

- ¹My son, if you receive my words
and treasure my commands within you,
- ²inclining your ear to wisdom
and turning your heart toward understanding,
- ³yes, if you call out for insight
and raise your voice for understanding,
- ⁴if you seek her like silver
and search for her like hidden treasure —
- ⁵then you will understand the fear of the LORD
and discover the knowledge of God.
- ⁶For the LORD gives wisdom;
from His mouth come knowledge and understanding.
- ⁷He stores up sound wisdom for the upright;
He is a shield to those who walk with integrity.

⁸He guards the paths of justice
and watches over the way of His faithful ones.

⁹Then you will understand righteousness and justice
and uprightness — every good path.

¹⁰For when wisdom enters your heart
and knowledge becomes sweet to your soul,

¹¹discretion will guard you,
understanding will watch over you,

¹²to deliver you from the way of the evil man,
from the person who speaks perversity,

¹³who abandon paths of uprightness
to walk in ways of darkness,

¹⁴who rejoice in doing evil
and delight in the perversity of wickedness,

¹⁵whose paths are crooked
and who are devious in their ways.

¹⁶to deliver you from the forbidden woman,
from the outsider whose words are smooth,

¹⁷who abandons the companion of her youth
and forgets the covenant of her God —

¹⁸For her house sinks down to death,
and her paths lead to the shades.

¹⁹None who go to her return,
nor do they reach the paths of life.

²⁰So that you may walk in the way of the good
and keep to the paths of the righteous.

²¹For the upright will inhabit the land,
and the blameless will remain in it.

²²But the wicked will be cut off from the land,
and the treacherous will be uprooted from it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The massive conditional begins. The verb *tiqqach* ('receive, take, accept') requires active appropriation — not passive hearing but deliberate taking. The second verb *titson* ('treasure, store up, hide') from *tsaphan* describes the careful concealment of something valuable. Commands are not merely obeyed; they are guarded as personal treasure.
2. The body itself must participate: the ear (*ozen*) must be inclined and the heart (*lev*) must be turned. In Hebrew anthropology, the heart is not the seat of emotion but of intellect and will. Turning the heart toward *tevunah* ('understanding, insight') means directing the entire decision-making apparatus toward wisdom.

3. The seeking intensifies from passive receiving (v1) to active calling. The verb *tiqra* ('you call out, you cry') and the phrase *titten qolekha* ('you give your voice, you raise your voice') describe urgent vocalization — the seeker of wisdom is not quiet but vocal, not reserved but desperate. The same verbs described Woman Wisdom's public speech in 1:20-21; now the student mirrors her intensity.
4. The silver/treasure metaphor connects directly to Job 28:1-11, where the search for wisdom is compared at length to mining operations. Both texts insist that wisdom's value exceeds precious metals and that finding it requires extraordinary effort. The irony is that after all this human effort, verse 6 will reveal that wisdom ultimately comes from God's mouth.
5. The 'then' (*az*) marks the transition from condition to consequence. The reward of seeking is not mere information but understanding of *yirat YHWH* ('the fear of the LORD') — the very foundation announced in 1:7. The parallel term *da'at Elohim* ('knowledge of God') elevates the outcome beyond wisdom-as-skill to wisdom-as-relationship. To find wisdom is to find God.
6. The phrase 'from His mouth' anticipates the identification of wisdom with God's spoken word. In later Jewish interpretation, this verse became foundational for the concept of Torah as divine wisdom — what comes from God's mouth is instruction, and instruction is wisdom. The verse resolves the tension between seeking and receiving: both are necessary.
7. The verb *yitspon* ('He stores up, He hides in reserve') is the same verb the student used in verse 1 (*titspon*, 'treasure'). God and the student are doing the same thing — treasuring wisdom. *Tushiyyah* ('sound wisdom, effective counsel, resourcefulness') is a distinctive wisdom term that implies practical effectiveness, not merely theoretical knowledge. God is also *magen* ('shield') — wisdom provides defensive protection for those who walk in *tom* ('integrity, wholeness, blamelessness').
8. God acts as guardian of two things: *orchot mishpat* ('paths of justice') — the established routes of right judgment — and *derekh chasidav* ('the way of His faithful ones'). The *chasid* (from *chesed*, 'faithful love') is the person who lives in covenant loyalty. God does not merely provide wisdom and withdraw; He actively guards the path of those who walk in it.
9. The second 'then' (*az*) introduces the ethical consequence: the wisdom-seeker will discern *tsedeq* ('righteousness'), *mishpat* ('justice'), *mesharim* ('uprightness'), and *kol ma'gal tov* ('every good path'). The word *ma'gal* ('track, path, course') refers to a wagon track — a groove worn by repeated use. The good paths are not unknown; they are well-traveled routes that the wise have walked before.
10. Wisdom does not remain external instruction but *tavo* ('enters, comes into') the *lev* ('heart, mind'). Knowledge becomes *na'am* ('pleasant, sweet, delightful') to the *nefesh* ('soul, self, life'). The transformation is interior — wisdom moves from what you hear to what you are. The verb *na'am* ('to be pleasant') describes the subjective experience: the wise person does not merely accept knowledge as duty but finds it genuinely delightful.
11. *Mezimmah* ('discretion, foresight, planning') and *tevunah* ('understanding') are now personified as guards. The verbs *tishmor* ('will guard') and *tintsekkah* ('will watch over you, will preserve you') cast wisdom's attributes as active protectors. The one who sought wisdom (vv1-4) is now guarded by wisdom — the seeker has become the guarded.
12. The first threat: the *derekh ra* ('evil way') embodied in a man who speaks *tahpukhot* ('perversities, things turned upside down'). The root *h-p-kh* means 'to turn, to overturn' — perverted speech inverts reality, calling evil good and good evil. Wisdom protects not by avoiding such people but by seeing through their inversions.
13. The evil are defined by a deliberate turn: they *ha'ozvim* ('abandon, forsake') *orchot yosher* ('paths of uprightness, straight ways') to walk in *darkhe choshekh* ('ways of darkness'). The verb *azav* ('to abandon') implies prior acquaintance — they knew the straight path before they left it. Their evil is not ignorance but apostasy.
14. The *hassmechim* ('those who rejoice') and *yagilu* ('they exult') describe pleasure taken in evil — not reluctant sin but enthusiastic wickedness. The same vocabulary of joy (*samach, gil*) that the Psalms use for worship before God, these men apply to perversion. Their delight is a grotesque mirror of the wise person's delight in wisdom (v10).
15. The adjectives *iqqeshim* ('crooked, twisted') and *nelozim* ('devious, turning aside') contrast sharply with the *yosher* ('uprightness, straightness') of verse 13. The entire vocabulary of these verses operates on the metaphor of straight versus crooked roads — moral life is navigational, and the evil have taken every wrong turn available.
16. We render *zarah* as 'forbidden' rather than 'strange' to capture the prohibition implicit in the Hebrew. She is not merely unfamiliar but off-limits — her strangeness is a marker of danger, not mere foreignness. The term carries overtones of both sexual and covenantal transgression.
17. The forbidden woman has her own backstory of betrayal: she *ha'ozevet* ('abandons') the *alluf ne'ureiha* ('companion/husband of her youth') and *shakhechah* ('has forgotten') the *berit Eloheiha* ('covenant of her God'). The *alluf* ('companion, intimate friend, chief') likely refers to her husband. Her infidelity is simultaneously marital and covenantal — she has broken faith with both her husband and her God. The verb *shakhach* ('to forget') implies not memory failure but willful disregard.
18. The geography of the forbidden woman is vertical: her house *shachah* ('sinks, inclines, bows down') toward *mavet* ('death'), and her paths lead to the *refa'im* ('the shades, the dead, the inhabitants of the underworld'). The *refa'im* are the diminished dead of Sheol — those who have lost vitality and dwell in shadow. Her house is not a destination but a descent. Every step toward her is a step downward.
19. The finality is absolute: *kol ba'eiha lo yeshuvun* ('all who enter her do not return'). The verb *shuv* ('return') that could have saved them (cf. 1:23) is now denied — the descent is irreversible. They also *lo yassigu orchot chayyim* ('do not attain the paths of life'). The *orchot chayyim* ('paths of life') are the opposite of the forbidden woman's paths to death. The young man who enters her house has left the intersection where life and death diverge and has passed the point of no return.

- 20.** The positive purpose emerges: wisdom's protection from the evil man and the forbidden woman exists lema'an ('so that, in order that') you can walk the derekh tovim ('way of good people'). The righteous path is not merely the absence of evil but its own positive reality — a road with company, a way walked by the tsaddiqim ('righteous ones').
- 21.** The promise of dwelling in the erets ('land') echoes the covenantal promise to Abraham and the Deuteronomic theology of land as blessing. The yesharim ('upright') yishkenu ('will dwell, will inhabit') and the temimim ('blameless, whole') yivvateru ('will remain, will be left'). Possession of the land is not a political promise but a moral one — those aligned with God's order will endure.
- 22.** The chapter ends with the counter-destiny: resha'im ('the wicked') yikkaretu ('will be cut off') and bogdim ('the treacherous, the faithless') yissechu ('will be torn out, uprooted'). The verb karath ('to cut off') is the language of covenant severance — the same verb used for making (literally 'cutting') a covenant is used for being cut off from its blessings. The bogdim (from bagad, 'to deal treacherously') are covenant-breakers, those who betray trust. Their removal from the land mirrors the forbidden woman's descent to death — both end in exclusion from life's blessings.

3

Summary: *Proverbs 3 is a sustained father-to-son exhortation structured in paired commands and promises. The first half (vv1-12) urges trust in the LORD over self-reliance, culminating in a theology of divine discipline. The central section (vv13-20) erupts into a hymn praising wisdom's incomparable value — she is more precious than rubies, she holds life and wealth in her hands, and she was the instrument through which God founded the earth. The final section (vv21-35) returns to practical instruction: guard sound wisdom, do not withhold good from your neighbor, and do not envy the violent.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 5-6 ('Trust in the LORD with all your heart and do not lean on your own understanding') is among the most quoted passages in all of Scripture. Its original context is not generic piety but a specific contrast: the son is being offered two epistemological foundations — his own understanding (binah) or the LORD's direction. The command to trust with 'all your heart' (kol libbeka) is not emotional sentimentality but total cognitive commitment. The hymn to wisdom in vv13-20 is remarkable for its cosmological claims: wisdom was the means by which God established the heavens and the earth (vv19-20). This anticipates the great speech of chapter 8 and positions wisdom not as a human achievement but as a divine attribute embedded in the structure of creation.*

Translation Friction: *The promise that honoring the LORD with firstfruits will result in overflowing barns (vv9-10) raises the prosperity-gospel question that haunts all wisdom literature. Is this a guaranteed transaction? The rest of the biblical canon — particularly Job, Ecclesiastes, and the lament psalms — will complicate this retributive theology severely. The divine discipline passage (vv11-12) quoted in Hebrews 12:5-6 sits uncomfortably in modern sensibilities that resist the idea of God inflicting suffering as correction. The Hebrew text is clear: the LORD rebukes and disciplines those He loves, as a father does a son in whom he delights.*

Connections: *Proverbs 3:5-6 is echoed in Jeremiah 9:23-24 (do not boast in your own wisdom). The divine discipline teaching (vv11-12) is quoted directly in Hebrews 12:5-6 and forms the theological basis for the New Testament's understanding of suffering as formation. The cosmological wisdom hymn (vv19-20) connects to Psalm 104, Job 38, and Proverbs 8:22-31, all of which describe God's creative acts in wisdom. The 'tree of life' image (v18) recalls Genesis 2-3 and reappears in Revelation 22:2.*

¹My son, do not forget my instruction,
and let your heart guard my commands,

²for length of days and years of life
and well-being they will add to you.

³Do not let faithful love and truthfulness abandon you;
bind them around your neck,
write them on the tablet of your heart.

⁴So you will find favor and good repute
in the eyes of God and of people.

⁵Trust in the LORD with all your heart
and do not lean on your own understanding.

⁶In all your ways know Him,
and He will make your paths straight.

⁷Do not be wise in your own eyes;
fear the LORD and turn away from evil.

⁸It will be healing for your body
and refreshment for your bones.

⁹Honor the LORD with your wealth
and with the firstfruits of all your produce,

¹⁰and your barns will be filled to overflowing
and your vats will burst with new wine.

¹¹My son, do not reject the LORD's discipline,
and do not loathe His correction,

¹²for the LORD corrects the one He loves,
as a father the son in whom he delights.

¹³How fortunate is the person who finds wisdom,
the one who obtains understanding!

¹⁴For her profit is better than the profit of silver,
and her yield surpasses fine gold.

¹⁵She is more precious than corals,
and nothing you desire can compare with her.

¹⁶Long life is in her right hand;
in her left hand are riches and honor.

¹⁷Her ways are ways of delight,
and all her paths are peace.

¹⁸She is a tree of life to those who take hold of her,
and those who hold her fast are called fortunate.

¹⁹By wisdom the LORD laid the earth's foundations;
by understanding He established the heavens.

²⁰By His knowledge the deep waters broke open,
and the skies drip down dew.

²¹My son, do not let these slip from your sight;
preserve sound wisdom and foresight,

²²and they will be life for your soul
and grace for your neck.

²³Then you will walk your way in safety,
and your foot will not stumble.

²⁴When you lie down, you will not be afraid;
you will lie down, and your sleep will be sweet.

²⁵Do not fear sudden disaster
or the ruin of the wicked when it comes,

²⁶for the LORD will be your confidence,
and He will keep your foot from the snare.

²⁷Do not withhold good from those who deserve it
when it is in your power to act.

²⁸Do not say to your neighbor, 'Go and come back;
tomorrow I will give it' — when you have it with you.

²⁹Do not plot harm against your neighbor
while he lives trustingly beside you.

³⁰Do not quarrel with anyone without cause,
if they have done you no harm.

³¹Do not envy the violent man,
and do not choose any of his ways,

³²for the devious are detestable to the LORD,
but His intimate counsel is with the upright.

³³The LORD's curse is on the house of the wicked,
but He blesses the dwelling of the righteous.

³⁴Toward the scoffers He is scornful,
but to the humble He gives grace.

³⁵The wise will inherit honor,
but fools carry away shame.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Torati ('my instruction') is the father's personal torah — not the Mosaic Law but the authoritative teaching of a parent. The verb tishkach ('forget') is more than memory failure; in Hebrew to forget is to disregard, to treat as irrelevant. The heart (lev) must yittsor ('guard, keep, preserve') the commands — active retention, not passive recall.
2. The promised benefits — orekh yamim ('length of days'), shenot chayyim ('years of life'), and shalom ('peace, wholeness, well-being') — represent the full wisdom package: long life and comprehensive flourishing. Shalom is not merely the absence of conflict but the presence of completeness.

3. Chesed ve-emet ('faithful love and truthfulness') is a hendiadys — two words expressing one concept: reliable, covenant faithfulness. The instruction to bind them on the neck and write them on the heart's tablet echoes Deuteronomy 6:8-9 and anticipates Jeremiah 31:33, where God promises to write the new covenant on Israel's heart. The physical imagery (binding, writing) insists that these are not abstract values but embodied practices.
4. Chen ('favor, grace, charm') and sekhel tov ('good understanding, good judgment, good repute') are the public rewards of faithful love and truthfulness. The dual audience — be-eyne Elohim ve-adam ('in the eyes of God and of humanity') — means that genuine covenant character wins approval both vertically and horizontally.
5. The word binah ('understanding') is deliberately chosen. The book has urged the son to seek binah (2:2-3), and now it warns him not to lean on it. The apparent contradiction is the point: pursue understanding passionately, but never mistake your understanding for God's. The wisest posture is to be deeply knowledgeable and deeply humble about what you know.
6. The verb da'ehu ('know Him') is not merely 'acknowledge' but the deep, relational knowing that yada implies throughout Scripture. Be-khol derakhekha ('in all your ways') means in every sphere of life, every decision, every path. The promise — yeyyasher orchotekha ('He will make straight your paths') — uses yashar ('to be straight, to make level'). God does not merely point the way; He straightens the road itself. The crooked paths of the wicked (2:15) are contrasted with the straightened paths of the trusting.
7. The warning against being chakham be-eynekha ('wise in your own eyes') continues the theme of verse 5. Self-assessed wisdom is the most dangerous kind — it forecloses the possibility of correction. The antidote is twofold: fear the LORD (yere et YHWH) and sur mera ('turn from evil'). The second is the practical expression of the first.
8. The benefits are physical: rifu't ('healing, health') for the shor ('navel, body, flesh') and shiquy ('drink, moisture, refreshment') for the atsamot ('bones'). Hebrew thought does not separate body and spirit — what is good for the soul is good for the body. Wisdom heals the whole person.
9. The verb kabbed ('honor, give weight to') applied to the LORD means to treat Him as the heaviest reality in your economic life. The instruction to give from hon ('wealth, substance') and from reshit kol tevu'atekha ('the firstfruits of all your produce') reflects the Deuteronomic firstfruits offering — the first and best portion goes to God before the farmer knows how the rest of the harvest will turn out. Giving firstfruits is an act of trust.
10. The promise of full asamim ('barns, granaries') and overflowing yeqavim ('wine vats') represents agricultural abundance. The verb yifrotsu ('will burst, will break through') suggests excess beyond containment. This is wisdom literature's retributive principle at its most optimistic — generosity to God produces abundance from God. The rest of Scripture will nuance this significantly.
11. After the promise of abundance comes the reality of discipline. The verb tim'as ('reject, refuse, despise') and taqots ('loathe, feel disgust, be weary of') describe two responses to suffering: outright rejection and slow-burning resentment. Neither is acceptable. The LORD's musar ('discipline') and tokhachto ('His correction, His reproof') are not punishment but formation — the same musar that opens the book in 1:2 now comes directly from God.
12. The verb ratsah ('delights') is the same verb used for God's acceptance of sacrifice (Leviticus 1:4). The son whom God disciplines is the son God has accepted — discipline is evidence of inclusion, not rejection. This reframes all suffering within the covenant: it may hurt, but it comes from a Father who is pleased with you.
13. Ashre ('how fortunate') opens a new section — a hymn to wisdom that runs through verse 20. The same exclamation that opens the Psalter (Psalm 1:1) now celebrates the person who matsa chokmah ('has found wisdom'). The verb yafiq ('brings forth, draws out, obtains') suggests that understanding (tevnunah) is not merely stumbled upon but extracted through effort, like water from a well.
14. The commercial metaphor compares wisdom's sachrah ('trade-profit, merchandise') to silver and her tevu'atah ('yield, income, produce') to charutz ('fine gold, pure gold'). The language of trade runs throughout Proverbs — wisdom is an investment with returns that exceed all precious metals.
15. Peninim ('corals' or 'pearls' or 'rubies' — the exact identification is uncertain) represents the highest category of precious material. The claim that kol chafatsekha ('all your desires, all your delights') cannot equal wisdom eliminates every rival. Job 28:18 makes the identical comparison, and the 'woman of strength' in Proverbs 31:10 is also valued above peninim.
16. Wisdom is personified as a woman extending both hands: the right (yeminah) holds orekh yamim ('length of days') and the left (semo'lah) holds osher ve-khavod ('riches and honor'). The two hands offer comprehensive blessing — long life and prosperous life. In Egyptian art, the goddess Ma'at (order/truth) is similarly depicted with life in one hand and wealth in the other, suggesting a shared ancient Near Eastern tradition.
17. Darkheiha darkhe no'am ('her ways are ways of pleasantness, delight'). The word no'am ('pleasantness, sweetness, beauty') describes the subjective experience of walking wisdom's road — it is not grim duty but genuine delight. Ve-khol netivoteiha shalom ('and all her paths are peace/wholeness') uses shalom in its fullest sense: completeness, harmony, well-being. Every path wisdom offers leads to flourishing.
18. The 'tree of life' identification is one of the most theologically loaded images in Proverbs. It suggests that the way back to Eden runs through wisdom — that the knowledge Adam and Eve seized in violation of God's command is now offered freely to those who fear the LORD. Wisdom restores what transgression destroyed.
19. The hymn climaxes with a cosmological claim: YHWH be-chokmah yasad erets ('the LORD by wisdom founded the earth'). The verb yasad ('to found, to establish, to lay a foundation') describes the earth's creation as an architectural act — God built the world on a foundation, and that foundation was wisdom. The parallel — konen shamayim bitvunah ('He established the heavens by understanding') — uses konen ('to establish, to set firmly') for the heavens. Wisdom is not merely a human virtue but a divine instrument of creation.

20. God's da'at ('knowledge') is the agent by which tehomot ('the deeps, the primordial waters') nivqa'u ('were split open, burst forth'). This recalls both Genesis 1 (the separation of waters) and Genesis 7:11 (the fountains of the great deep breaking open in the flood). The shechaqim ('clouds, skies') yir'afu ('drip, drop') tal ('dew'). Creation and ongoing provision are both acts of divine wisdom.
21. The father resumes direct instruction after the hymn. The verb yaluzu ('slip away, depart, turn aside') warns against letting wisdom drift out of view. Tushiyyah ('sound wisdom, effective counsel') and mezmimah ('foresight, discretion, planning') are the practical applications of the cosmic wisdom just celebrated.
22. Chayyim ('life') for the nefesh ('soul, self') and chen ('grace, charm, favor') for the gargerot ('neck, throat'). The ornamental imagery from 1:9 returns — wisdom adorns as it protects.
23. The betach ('safety, security') that wisdom provides is here physical: your foot (raglekha) will not tiggof ('stumble, strike against'). The imagery is of a traveler walking confidently on a clear path — the contrast to the crooked, dark ways of the wicked in chapter 2.
24. The peace extends into the night: no fear at bedtime, and sleep itself will be arevah ('sweet, pleasant, agreeable'). In the ancient world, night was a time of genuine danger — from bandits, animals, and spiritual threats. Freedom from nocturnal fear is a significant promise.
25. Pachad pit'om ('sudden terror, unexpected disaster') and sho'at resha'im ('the ruin/devastation of the wicked') describe two kinds of calamity: random and moral. The wise person need fear neither, because the LORD is their confidence (v26).
26. YHWH yihyeh be-khislekha ('the LORD will be your confidence'). The word kesel ('confidence, trust, loins, folly') is used here in its positive sense — the LORD Himself becomes the foundation of your security. He will also guard your foot from being lakhed ('captured, caught, ensnared'). The snare imagery connects to the forbidden woman whose house descends to death (2:18-19).
27. The shift from theological reflection to practical ethics. The verb timna ('withhold, hold back, restrain') applied to tov ('good') makes the obligation clear: if you can do good and choose not to, you have done wrong. The phrase bihyot le-el yadkha ('when it is in the power of your hand') limits the obligation to actual capacity — you are responsible for the good you can do, not the good you cannot.
28. The specific application of verse 27: delayed generosity when the resources are already available. The re'a ('neighbor, companion, fellow') asks and receives a dismissal — lekha vashuv ('go and return') — when the needed thing is already ittakh ('with you, in your possession'). Proverbs treats delayed generosity as a form of cruelty.
29. The verb tacharosh ('devise, plot, plow') combined with ra'ah ('evil, harm') describes premeditated malice. The betrayal is amplified by the neighbor's trust: hu yoshev lavetach ittakh ('he dwells in security with you'). To harm someone who trusts you is to violate the fundamental social covenant that makes community possible.
30. Tariv ('contend, quarrel, bring a lawsuit against') combined with chinnam ('without cause, for nothing, gratuitously') — the same word that described the sinners' gratuitous violence in 1:11. Unprovoked conflict is a form of the same evil. The condition im lo gemalekha ra'ah ('if he has not repaid you evil') implies that grievance may sometimes justify confrontation — but only when there is actual cause.
31. The ish chamas ('man of violence') is someone who succeeds through force. The verb teqanne ('envy, be jealous of') acknowledges the temptation: the violent may prosper, and their prosperity invites imitation. The command not to choose (tivchar) his ways echoes 1:15 — every path begins with a choice.
32. The naloz ('crooked, devious person') is a to'avat YHWH ('an abomination to the LORD') — a term of absolute moral revulsion. In contrast, the yesharim ('upright ones') share God's sod ('intimate counsel, secret counsel, inner circle'). The sod is not merely a secret but a circle of trusted confidants. God shares His deepest counsel with the upright — they are His inner circle.
33. The me'erat YHWH ('curse of the LORD') in the wicked person's house and the berakhah on the neveh tsaddiqim ('dwelling of the righteous') create a stark household contrast. The word neveh ('dwelling, pasture, habitation') evokes a settled, peaceful homestead. The blessing and curse are not arbitrary but flow from the moral character of the inhabitants.
34. God mirrors back what He receives: la-letsim hu yalits ('to the scoffers He scoffs') — the same root l-ts-ts used for the scoffers' behavior is applied to God's response. But la-anavim yitten chen ('to the humble He gives grace'). This verse is quoted in James 4:6 and 1 Peter 5:5: 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.' The anavim ('humble, lowly, afflicted') are not merely modest but those who have been brought low and know their dependence on God.
35. The chapter ends with the final contrast: chakhamim ('the wise') yinchalu kavod ('will inherit honor, glory') while kesilim ('fools') merim qalon ('lift up, carry away, are exalted in — shame, disgrace'). The verb merim can mean either 'carry away' or 'are exalted' — the irony is that fools are 'promoted' to disgrace. Their advancement is their humiliation.

4

Summary: *Proverbs 4 contains three distinct father-to-son speeches. The first (vv1-9) recalls the father's own education by his father, creating a three-generation chain of wisdom transmission: grandfather to father to son. The second (vv10-19) contrasts the path of the wise with the path of the wicked using the most vivid light-and-darkness imagery in the book. The third (vv20-27) turns inward, demanding that the son guard his heart above all else, because from it flow the springs of life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three-generation chain of instruction in verses 1-9 is unique in Proverbs. The father says, 'When I was a son with my father, he taught me' — and then quotes his own father's words. The reader hears not one voice but two, layered together across time. Wisdom is not invented by each generation but received from the previous one and transmitted to the next. The path imagery in verses 10-19 reaches its apex in verse 18: 'The path of the righteous is like the light of dawn, growing brighter until full day.' This is one of the most beautiful sentences in the Hebrew Bible — and its force comes from the contrast with verse 19, where the way of the wicked is 'deep darkness' in which they cannot even see what makes them stumble. Verse 23 — 'Above all else, guard your heart, for from it flow the springs of life' — is the single most important anthropological statement in Proverbs. The heart (lev) is the command center of the entire person, and its protection is the non-negotiable priority.*

Translation Friction: *The idealized picture of wisdom transmission — father to son to grandson, smooth and unbroken — does not match the reality of most families, either in ancient Israel or today. Many of the Psalms and prophetic texts acknowledge that the chain breaks, that parents fail, and that children rebel. Proverbs 4 presents the ideal without acknowledging the fractures, which is characteristic of wisdom literature's tendency toward clean patterns. The command to guard the heart (v23) also raises the question of how one guards something that is, according to Jeremiah 17:9, 'deceitful above all things and beyond cure.' The tension between Proverbs' confidence in human moral agency and Jeremiah's suspicion of the human heart is never fully resolved within the Old Testament.*

Connections: *The three-generation instruction chain connects to Deuteronomy 6:7 ('teach them diligently to your children') and Psalm 78:1-8, which describes the deliberate transmission of God's acts across generations. The light-of-dawn image (v18) is echoed in Isaiah 58:8 ('your light will break forth like the dawn') and 2 Samuel 23:4 (David's last words about a righteous ruler). The heart-guarding command (v23) anticipates Jesus' teaching that what comes out of the heart defiles a person (Mark 7:20-23) and Paul's instruction to guard what has been entrusted (2 Timothy 1:14).*

¹Listen, sons, to a father's discipline,
and pay attention, so you may gain understanding.

²For I give you sound teaching;
do not abandon my instruction.

³For I was a son to my father,
tender and precious in my mother's sight.

⁴He taught me and said to me,
'Let your heart hold fast to my words.
Keep my commands and live.

⁵Acquire wisdom, acquire understanding!
Do not forget, and do not turn from the words of my mouth.

⁶Do not abandon her, and she will protect you;
love her, and she will guard you.

⁷The beginning of wisdom: acquire wisdom!
And with all you acquire, acquire understanding.

⁸Cherish her, and she will lift you up;
she will honor you when you embrace her.

⁹She will set a garland of grace on your head;
a crown of splendor she will bestow on you.'

¹⁰Listen, my son, and receive my words,
and the years of your life will be many.

¹¹I have directed you in the way of wisdom;
I have guided you along straight paths.

¹²When you walk, your stride will not be hindered;
and when you run, you will not stumble.

¹³Hold fast to discipline — do not let go!
Guard her, for she is your life.

¹⁴Do not enter the path of the wicked,
and do not walk in the way of evildoers.

¹⁵Avoid it — do not travel on it;
turn away from it and pass on.

¹⁶For they cannot sleep unless they have done harm;
their sleep is stolen unless they have made someone stumble.

¹⁷For wickedness is the bread they eat
and drink the wine of violence.

¹⁸But the path of the righteous is like the light of dawn,
shining brighter and brighter until full day.

¹⁹The way of the wicked is like deep darkness;
they do not know what makes them stumble.

²⁰My son, pay attention to my words;
incline your ear to my sayings.

²¹Do not let them slip from your eyes;
keep them deep within your heart.

²²For they are life to those who find them
and healing for the whole body.

²³Above all that you guard, guard your heart,
for from it flow the springs of life.

²⁴Put away from you crooked speech,
and keep devious talk far from you.

²⁵Let your eyes look straight ahead,
and your gaze be fixed directly before you.

²⁶Make level the path for your feet,
and all your ways will be sure.

²⁷Do not turn to the right or to the left;
remove your foot from evil.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The plural banim ('sons, children') expands the audience beyond the single 'my son' of previous chapters. Musar av ('discipline of a father') is presented as a category of knowledge worth having. The verb haqshivu ('pay attention, listen carefully') from qashav demands focused hearing, not mere auditory reception.
2. Leqach tov ('good teaching, sound learning') and torati ('my instruction') are offered as reliable, tested goods. The verb ta'azovu ('abandon, forsake') warns against the apostasy that begins not with dramatic rebellion but with gradual neglect.
3. The father reveals his own backstory: he too was rakh ('tender, soft, young, vulnerable') and yachid ('only one, beloved, precious') before his mother. The shift to autobiography creates intimacy — the father is not a distant authority but someone who once sat where the son sits now, receiving instruction from his own parents.
4. Now the grandfather speaks through the father's memory. The imperative vechyeh ('and live!') is stark — obedience to wisdom is not optional enrichment but the condition of survival. The verb yitmakh ('hold fast, support, sustain') describes the heart gripping the father's words like a hand gripping a lifeline.
5. The doubled imperative qeneh ('acquire, buy, purchase') treats wisdom and binah ('understanding') as commodities to be pursued and bought at any price. The verb qanah implies exchange — you must give something up to get wisdom. The grandfather's voice continues with urgency: forget nothing, deviate from nothing.
6. Wisdom (feminine in Hebrew) is again personified as a woman deserving loyalty. The reciprocal structure is important: do not abandon her — she will protect you; love her — she will guard you. The relationship between the wise person and wisdom mirrors a covenant bond: faithfulness produces protection.
7. The apparent circularity of 'the beginning of wisdom is: acquire wisdom' is not tautology but insistence. Wisdom begins with the resolve to seek it. Without that initial commitment, no amount of intelligence or opportunity will produce wisdom. The choice precedes the achievement.
8. The verb salselehah ('cherish, exalt, esteem highly') is rare and may derive from salal ('to heap up, to lift'). The imagery of embracing (techabbeqennah) wisdom continues the marital metaphor — wisdom is a partner to be held close, and she reciprocates with honor (tekhabbedkha, 'she will honor you, give you weight').
9. The grandfather's quoted speech ends with the image of wisdom crowning the faithful student. The livyat chen ('garland of grace') from 1:9 returns, now joined by ateret tif'eret ('crown of splendor, glorious crown'). Wisdom's reward is public honor — the crown is visible to the community.
10. The second speech begins with a return to the singular 'my son.' The promise of shenot chayyim ('years of life') connects back to 3:2 — long life is the consistent reward of heeding wisdom.
11. The father claims to have horetikha ('directed you, instructed you') — from yarah, the same root as torah. He has also hidrakhtikha ('led you, caused you to walk') in ma'gele yosher ('tracks of uprightness'). The ma'gal ('track, rut') is a worn path — the father has placed the son on well-established routes, not experimental ones.
12. Two speeds of travel — walking and running — are both covered by wisdom's protection. The verb yetsar ('be constricted, narrowed, hindered') describes a path too tight for normal movement. Wisdom clears the way so that even at full speed (taruts, 'you run'), there is no stumbling (tikhashel).
13. The imperative hachazeg ('hold fast, grip tightly') combined with al teref ('do not let go, do not relax your grip') conveys desperate urgency. The reason is absolute: ki hi chayyekha ('for she is your life'). Discipline is not supplementary to life; it is life itself. Without it, the son dies.

14. The negative commands mirror the positive ones: just as the son was guided onto straight paths (v11), he must now refuse the orach resha'im ('path of the wicked') and derekh ra'im ('way of evil men'). The verb te'asher ('step forward, walk, proceed') is from the same root as ashre ('fortunate') — there is no fortune on this road.
15. Four imperatives in rapid succession: pera'ehu ('avoid it, let it alone'), al ta'avov bo ('do not pass through it'), seteh me'alav ('turn aside from it'), and avor ('pass on, go your way'). The staccato commands convey urgency — do not linger near this road, do not even slow down to look at it.
16. The wicked suffer from an inverted insomnia: they cannot rest until they have done evil. Their shnatam ('their sleep') is nigzelah ('robbed, stolen') unless they have caused someone to yakhshilu ('stumble, fall'). Evil has become their sedative. The verse diagnoses a condition — addiction to malice — that makes the wicked perpetual threats to others.
17. Wickedness and violence have become their daily sustenance — lechem resha ('bread of wickedness') and yen chamasim ('wine of violence'). The food metaphor implies that evil nourishes them the way bread and wine nourish the body. They feed on harm. The imagery inverts the normal provision of God, who gives bread and wine as blessings.
18. The phrase 'light of dawn' rather than 'shining light' preserves the temporal metaphor — this is not a spotlight but a sunrise, a process that unfolds over time. The righteous life is not static but dynamic, not a fixed state but a trajectory.
19. The contrast is devastating. Against the crescendo of dawn light stands afelah ('deep darkness, thick gloom') — not ordinary night but impenetrable blackness. The final clause is the most damning: lo yade'u bammeh yikkashelu ('they do not know what they stumble over'). The wicked do not merely fall; they fall without understanding why. Their ignorance of their own destruction is total. The darkness is not just around them but inside them.
20. The third speech begins with familiar imperative language: haqshivah ('pay attention') and hat oznekha ('incline your ear'). The body must cooperate — ears must be physically turned toward the speaker.
21. The words must not yallizu ('slip away, depart') from the eyes and must be kept betokh levavekha ('in the midst of your heart, at the center of your inner life'). The dual retention — visual and internal — means both constant attention and deep internalization.
22. The father's words are chayyim ('life') and marpe ('healing, remedy, cure') for all flesh. The claim is holistic: wisdom heals the entire person, body included. The connection between right living and physical health runs throughout Proverbs, reflecting the Hebrew integration of moral and physical well-being.
23. We render mikkol mishmar as 'above all that you guard' to preserve the comparative force of the Hebrew — the son is not told to guard his heart instead of other things but more than other things. The heart is the highest-priority asset in the wise person's security system.
23. The lev in Hebrew encompasses intellect, will, emotion, and moral judgment — it is the entire inner person. English 'heart' tends toward emotion only, which is too narrow. The Hebrew command is to guard the command center, not just the feelings.
24. From the heart (v23) to the mouth (v24): iqqeshut peh ('crookedness of mouth') and lezut sefatayim ('deviousness of lips') are the first expressions of a corrupted heart. The progression from heart to speech to eyes to feet (vv23-27) traces the outward flow of life from its source.
25. From speech to sight: the eyes (eynekha) must look lenokhach ('straight ahead, to what is in front') and the eyelids (af'appekha, used poetically for the gaze) must yayshiru ('be straight, be directed') negdekha ('before you, in front of you'). The command is for focused, undistracted vision — no sideways glances at the paths of the wicked.
26. The verb palles ('make level, weigh, ponder, prepare') has construction overtones — prepare the road before you walk it. The ma'gal raglekha ('track of your feet') must be leveled in advance. The result: kol derakhekha yikkonu ('all your ways will be established, firm, sure'). Deliberate preparation produces stable paths.
27. The chapter ends with the Deuteronomic formula: al tet yamin usmol ('do not turn right or left') — the identical instruction given to Israel regarding the Law (Deuteronomy 5:32, 17:11, 28:14) and to Joshua (Joshua 1:7). The son is to walk wisdom's path with the same unwavering directness demanded of Israel at Sinai. The final imperative — haser raglekha mera ('remove your foot from evil') — is physical: take your foot off that path. Now.

5

Summary: *Proverbs 5 is the first extended warning against the forbidden woman (ishah zarah), whom chapter 2 introduced briefly. The father warns his son that her lips drip honey but her end is bitter as wormwood (vv1-6). He commands the son to stay far from her door (vv7-14), then pivots dramatically to a celebration of marital love: 'Drink water from your own cistern' (vv15-20). The chapter closes with the theological declaration that God sees all paths and that the wicked are trapped by their own sins (vv21-23).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's most striking feature is its pivot from warning to celebration. After fourteen verses of alarm about the forbidden woman, the father does not simply say 'avoid adultery.' Instead, he offers a positive alternative that is frankly erotic: 'Let her breasts satisfy you at all times; be intoxicated always with her love' (v19). Proverbs does not treat sexual desire as the enemy — it treats misdirected sexual desire as the enemy. The answer to the forbidden woman is not abstinence but the right woman. The water imagery of verses 15-18 (cistern, well, springs, streams) is deliberately ambiguous, functioning simultaneously as metaphor for sexual pleasure and for the exclusive, life-giving nature of faithful marriage. The 'spreading springs in the streets' of verse 16 may be a warning against scattering one's intimacy publicly rather than reserving it for one's own household.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter's focus on the male perspective — warning a son about a dangerous woman — can feel one-sided. No corresponding warning is given from a mother to a daughter about dangerous men. This reflects the patriarchal context of the text's composition, not a theological endorsement of the imbalance. Additionally, the forbidden woman is presented primarily as a threat to the man, with little attention to her own exploitation or suffering. Modern readers will want to read against the grain here, recognizing that the 'forbidden woman' is also a person with a story the text does not tell.*

Connections: *The honey-and-wormwood contrast (vv3-4) echoes the Song of Solomon's celebration of erotic love (Song 4:11, 'your lips drip honey') while inverting it — what Song celebrates as beautiful within commitment, Proverbs marks as lethal outside it. The water/cistern/well imagery connects to Song 4:12-15, where the beloved is a 'garden locked, a fountain sealed.' The theological conclusion (vv21-23) echoes Job 34:21 ('God's eyes are on the ways of a person') and anticipates Hebrews 4:13 ('nothing is hidden from His sight').*

- ¹My son, pay attention to my wisdom;
incline your ear to my understanding,
- ²so that you may preserve foresight
and your lips may guard knowledge.
- ³For the lips of the forbidden woman drip honey,
and her mouth is smoother than oil,
- ⁴but her end tastes bitter as wormwood,
sharp as a double-edged sword.
- ⁵Her feet descend toward death;
her steps take hold of Sheol.
- ⁶She does not ponder the path of life;
her ways wander, and she does not know it.
- ⁷So now, sons, listen to me,
and do not turn aside from the words of my mouth.

⁸Keep your way far from her;
do not go near the door of her house,

⁹or you will give your vigor to others
and your years to the merciless,

¹⁰or strangers will feast on your strength
and your toil will end up in a foreigner's house,

¹¹and you will groan at the end,
when your flesh and body are consumed,

¹²and you will say, 'How I hated discipline!
How my heart despised correction!

¹³I did not listen to the voice of my teachers
or incline my ear to my instructors.

¹⁴I was on the verge of complete ruin
in the midst of the gathered assembly.'

¹⁵Drink water from your own cistern,
flowing water from your own well.

¹⁶Should your springs overflow into the street,
your streams of water into the public squares?

¹⁷Let them be for you alone,
and not for strangers alongside you.

¹⁸Let your fountain be blessed,
and take joy in the wife of your youth —

¹⁹a graceful doe, a lovely deer.
Let her breasts satisfy you at all times;
be intoxicated always by her love.

²⁰Why then, my son, would you be intoxicated by a forbidden woman
and embrace the bosom of an outsider?

²¹For a person's ways are before the eyes of the LORD,
and He weighs all their paths.

²²The wicked person's own iniquities will trap him,
and he will be held fast by the ropes of his sin.

²³He will die for lack of discipline,
and in the magnitude of his folly he will go astray.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The father claims the wisdom as his own — *chokhmatai* ('my wisdom') and *tevunati* ('my understanding'). He does not present himself as merely relaying tradition but as one who has internalized it and now speaks from experience.

2. Mezimmot ('foresight, discretion, plans') must be guarded, and the lips must preserve da'at ('knowledge'). The mention of lips anticipates the chapter's theme: the forbidden woman's lips drip honey (v3), and the son's own lips must guard what is true rather than swallow what is sweet but deadly.
3. The same word nofet ('dripping honey') appears in Song of Solomon 4:11 as a celebration: 'Your lips drip honey, my bride.' The identical language used positively in Song and negatively in Proverbs shows that the issue is not the sweetness itself but whether it belongs to a context of covenant faithfulness or covenant betrayal.
4. The acharitah ('her end, her outcome, her afterward') — the part you experience after the honey — is marah ka-la'anah ('bitter as wormwood'). La'anah (Artemisia absinthium) is the bitterest plant known in the region, used metaphorically throughout Scripture for the most extreme bitterness (Lamentations 3:15, 19; Amos 5:7). Her end is also chaddah ke-cherev piyyot ('sharp as a two-edged sword'). The sword piyyot ('of mouths') has edges on both sides — it cuts coming and going. From honey to wormwood, from oil to a blade: the trajectory of the forbidden woman's allure.
5. The downward geography from 2:18 returns: ragleiha yordot mavet ('her feet descend to death') and she'ol tse'adeiha yitmokhu ('her steps grip Sheol'). The verb yitmokhu ('take hold, grasp, support') means her steps are anchored in Sheol — she is not sliding toward death but walking steadily into it, and taking her companions with her.
6. The verse is ambiguous in Hebrew — the subject could be the forbidden woman or the young man she seduces. We read it as describing the woman herself: she does not palles ('make level, ponder, weigh') the orach chayyim ('path of life'). Her ma'geloteiha ('her tracks, her paths') na'u ('wander, stagger, sway'). The final lo teda ('she does not know') is devastating — she is unaware of her own wandering, stumbling in the same darkness as the wicked in 4:19.
7. The shift to plural banim ('sons') broadens the audience. The urgency of ve-attah ('and now, so then') marks the transition from description to direct command.
8. The command is geographic: harcheq ('make distant, keep far') your path from hers, and al tiqrav ('do not draw near') the petach beith ('entrance of her house'). Proximity is the precondition for sin — the father does not trust the son's resolve at close range. Distance is the strategy.
9. Hodekha ('your splendor, your vigor, your prime') given to acherim ('others, strangers') and shenoteykha ('your years') given to the akhzari ('the cruel, the merciless'). The consequences of sexual infidelity are not merely moral but economic and physical — the adulterer's best years and energy are consumed by those who have no loyalty to him.
10. The economic devastation continues: zarim ('strangers') will yisbe'u ('be satisfied, feast on') your koach ('strength, wealth, substance') and your atsavkha ('your toil, your painful labor') will enrich beit nokhri ('the house of a foreigner'). Adultery is not a private indulgence but a wealth transfer to those who do not love you.
11. The verb nahamta ('you will groan, roar, moan') describes anguished regret. The timing is be-acharitekha ('at your end, in your final days') — when the consequences have fully matured. The consumption of basar ('flesh') and she'er ('body, kin, flesh') may refer to disease, poverty, or simply the physical devastation that accompanies a wasted life.
12. The imagined lament echoes the vocabulary of 1:7 — the fool despised (na'ats) musar and tokhachat. Now the son, in the aftermath of folly, recognizes his own resemblance to the fool he was warned about. Self-recognition arrives too late to prevent the consequences.
13. The moray ('my teachers') and melammeday ('my instructors') are plural — the education was not from one source but from a community of wisdom teachers. The repetition of the ear-inclining language from verse 1 creates painful irony: what the father asked the son to do, the son refused.
14. Kim'at ('almost, nearly, on the verge of') hayiti bekhlo ra ('I was in all evil') — the fool was nearly destroyed. The phrase betokh qahal ve-edah ('in the midst of the congregation and assembly') means his disgrace was public. The qahal and edah are the covenant community — his shame was witnessed by everyone who mattered.
15. The water/cistern/well imagery for sexual love appears also in Song of Solomon 4:12-15, where the beloved is 'a garden locked, a fountain sealed.' Both texts use water as a symbol of intimate exclusivity.
16. This verse is best read as a rhetorical question expecting a negative answer: should your ma'yenotekha ('your springs, your fountains') — your procreative and intimate life — be scattered chutsah ('outside, in the street')? The barrechovot ('in the public squares') intensifies the exposure. The answer is implied: no, keep your water — your intimacy, your generative power — within your own household. Some interpreters read this as a positive wish for many children ('let your springs flow out'), but the context of sexual fidelity makes the rhetorical question reading more coherent.
17. The exclusivity is absolute: lekha levaddekha ('for you alone') and ve-ein lezarim ittakh ('and not for strangers with you'). The zarim ('strangers') are outsiders to the marriage covenant. The water — the intimacy, the children, the life — belongs within the marriage, shared with no one else.
18. Meqorekha ('your fountain, your source') barukh ('blessed') — the father pronounces blessing on the son's sexual life within marriage. The imperative usemach ('and rejoice, and take joy') me-eshet ne'urekha ('from the wife of your youth') makes marital joy a command, not merely a permission. The 'wife of your youth' is the one married in young adulthood — the original covenant partner.
19. The verb shagah ('be intoxicated, go astray, reel') is the same verb used in verse 20 for going astray with the forbidden woman. The deliberate reuse is the theological key to the chapter: erotic intoxication is not the problem. The question is only: with whom?

- 20.** The same verb *tishgeh* ('be intoxicated, go astray') from verse 19 now applies to the *zarah* ('forbidden woman'). The rhetorical question is devastating: given what you have at home, why would you seek intoxication elsewhere? The word *cheq* ('bosom, lap, embrace') makes the alternative graphic and personal.
- 21.** The theological ground beneath the entire chapter: *nokhach eyne YHWH* ('directly before the eyes of the LORD') are *darkhe ish* ('the ways of a man'). Nothing is hidden. The verb *mefalles* ('He weighs, He makes level, He examines') describes God's scrutiny as precise and thoroughgoing. The word that described human preparation of paths (4:26) now describes God's examination of them.
- 22.** The punishment is self-inflicted: *avonothav* ('his own iniquities') *yilkedunu* ('will capture him, will trap him'). The word *chavle* ('ropes, cords') of his *chatta'to* ('his sin') describes sin as a binding agent. The wicked are not punished by an external force but ensnared by their own actions — the ropes they wove for others become the ropes that bind them.
- 23.** The chapter ends with the same verb: *yishgeh* ('he will go astray, he will stagger'). In verse 19, intoxication with the wife was commanded; in verse 20, intoxication with the forbidden woman was questioned; in verse 23, the fool staggers to death in his own *ivvalto* ('folly, foolishness'). The three uses of *shagah* trace the arc of the chapter: right intoxication, wrong intoxication, fatal intoxication. Death comes *be-ein musar* ('for lack of discipline, without correction') — the *musar* he refused in verse 12 was the one thing that could have saved him.

6

Summary: *Proverbs 6 is the most topically diverse chapter in the book's first nine chapters, addressing four distinct subjects: the danger of guaranteeing a neighbor's debt (vv1-5), the lesson of the ant for the sluggard (vv6-11), the profile of the worthless troublemaker (vv12-15), the seven things the LORD detests (vv16-19), and a renewed warning against adultery (vv20-35). The chapter reads like a wisdom handbook, moving from financial prudence to work ethic to character assessment to moral absolutes to sexual fidelity.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The numerical proverb in verses 16-19 — 'six things the LORD hates, seven are detestable to Him' — is among the most theologically compressed passages in the Hebrew Bible. The ascending number pattern (six... seven) is a common ancient Near Eastern rhetorical device that signals the final item as the climax. The list moves from body parts to social effects: haughty eyes, a lying tongue, hands that shed innocent blood, a heart that devises wicked plans, feet that rush to evil, a false witness, and the one who sows discord among brothers. The climax is not violence or lying but the fracturing of community. For Proverbs, nothing is worse than destroying the unity of brothers. The ant passage (vv6-11) is notable for its implicit theology: the ant needs no commander, overseer, or ruler — it acts from internal wisdom. The sluggard, by contrast, has been given instruction and still refuses to act.*

Translation Friction: *The surety passage (vv1-5) reflects an economic context where personal guarantees could result in debt slavery. The advice to extract yourself immediately — 'like a gazelle from a hunter's hand' — may seem harsh toward the neighbor whose debt you guaranteed, but in the ancient world, financial overcommitment could destroy an entire household. The adultery passage (vv25-35) focuses almost entirely on the consequences for the male adulterer, including the jealous husband's rage. The woman is described primarily as a temptation, and the offended husband's fury is presented without critique. The text assumes a patriarchal legal framework in which adultery is primarily an offense against another man's household.*

Connections: *The 'seven detestable things' list connects to the broader biblical pattern of numbered proverbs (Proverbs 30:15-31, Amos 1-2). The ant imagery has parallels in Egyptian wisdom literature. The adultery warning (vv20-35) extends the theme from chapter 5 and sets up the dramatic narrative of chapter 7. The body-parts progression in verses 16-19 (eyes, tongue, hands, heart, feet) connects to the body-parts instruction in 4:23-27 (heart, mouth, eyes, feet).*

¹My son, if you have put up security for your neighbor,
if you have pledged yourself to a stranger with a handshake,

²you have been snared by the words of your mouth,
caught by the words of your mouth.

³Do this then, my son, and free yourself,
for you have fallen into your neighbor's hand:
go, humble yourself, and press your neighbor urgently.

⁴Do not give sleep to your eyes
or slumber to your eyelids.

⁵Free yourself like a gazelle from a hunter's hand,
like a bird from the fowler's grip.

⁶Go to the ant, you sluggard;
observe her ways and become wise.

⁷She has no commander,
no overseer, and no ruler,

⁸yet she prepares her food in summer
and gathers her provisions at harvest.

⁹How long will you lie there, sluggard?
When will you rise from your sleep?

¹⁰'A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest' —

¹¹and poverty will come upon you like a prowler,
and your need like an armed man.

¹²A worthless person, a wicked man,
goes about with crooked speech.

¹³He winks with his eyes,
signals with his feet,
points with his fingers.

¹⁴Perversity fills his heart;
he devises evil at all times
and sows discord.

¹⁵Therefore disaster will come on him suddenly;
in an instant he will be shattered beyond healing.

¹⁶Six things the LORD hates;
seven are detestable to Him:

¹⁷haughty eyes, a lying tongue,
and hands that shed innocent blood,

¹⁸a heart that devises wicked schemes,
feet that rush to run toward evil,

¹⁹a false witness who breathes out lies,
and one who sows discord among brothers.

²⁰Guard, my son, your father's command,
and do not forsake your mother's instruction.

²¹Bind them on your heart continually;
tie them around your neck.

²²When you walk, it will lead you;
when you lie down, it will watch over you;
and when you wake, it will speak with you.

²³For the command is a lamp and instruction is a light,
and the reproofs of discipline are the way of life —

²⁴to guard you from the evil woman,
from the smooth tongue of the outsider.

²⁵Do not desire her beauty in your heart,
and do not let her capture you with her eyelids.

²⁶For a prostitute reduces a man to a loaf of bread,
but a married woman hunts for a precious life.

²⁷Can a man carry fire against his chest
without his clothes being burned?

²⁸Can a man walk on hot coals
without scorching his feet?

²⁹So it is with the man who goes to his neighbor's wife;
no one who touches her will go unpunished.

³⁰People do not despise a thief
if he steals to fill his stomach when he is hungry,

³¹but if caught, he must repay sevenfold;
he must hand over all the wealth of his house.

³²But the one who commits adultery lacks sense;
whoever does it destroys himself.

³³He will find wounds and disgrace,
and his shame will not be wiped away.

³⁴For jealousy is a husband's fury,
and he will show no mercy on the day of revenge.

³⁵He will not accept any compensation;
he will not be willing, no matter how large the bribe.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aravta ('you have become surety, you have pledged') describes the act of guaranteeing another person's debt. Taqa'ta kappekha ('you have struck your hands') is the ancient equivalent of a handshake or contract — the physical gesture that seals a financial commitment. The urgency of what follows suggests that this pledge was impulsive and dangerous.
2. Noqashta ('you have been ensnared') and nilkadta ('you have been caught, captured') describe the pledge-maker as a trapped animal. The trap is imre fikha ('the words of your mouth') — your own speech has bound you. The repetition of the phrase emphasizes that the son's own words are the cage.
3. The escape plan requires two actions: hitrappes ('humble yourself, prostrate yourself, trample on your own pride') and rehav ('press urgently, storm, importune'). The first demands the surrender of dignity; the second demands aggressive persistence. Both are preferable to remaining trapped in a bad financial commitment.
4. The urgency forbids rest: no shenah ('sleep') and no tenumah ('slumber, dozing'). The financial trap must be resolved immediately — every hour of delay increases the danger.
5. The escape metaphors — tsevi ('gazelle') and tsippor ('bird') — emphasize speed and desperation. Both animals survive only by immediate, total flight. The yaqush ('fowler, bird-catcher') is the one who sets traps; the surety-giver has walked into one and must escape with the same urgency as prey fleeing a predator.
6. The atsel ('sluggard') is a distinctive Proverbs character who appears repeatedly (6:6, 9; 10:26; 13:4; 15:19; 19:24; 20:4; 21:25; 22:13; 24:30-34; 26:13-16). The sluggard is not merely tired but characterized by a particular kind of self-deception: always having a reason not to act.
7. Three terms of authority — qatsin ('commander, chief'), shoter ('overseer, officer'), and moshel ('ruler') — are absent from the ant's life. She needs no external management. The implied rebuke is sharp: the sluggard has father, teacher, and wisdom tradition — far more guidance than the ant — and still does less.
8. The ant's two actions — takhin ('she prepares, she establishes') in summer and agrah ('she gathers, she stores') at harvest — demonstrate foresight. She works when conditions allow in order to survive when they do not. The sluggard fails precisely at this point: he cannot connect present effort to future need.
9. The ad matay ('how long?') directed at the sluggard echoes Wisdom's own ad matay in 1:22. The question implies that the sluggard's sleep is not rest but evasion — he lies in bed to avoid the demands of the day.
10. The sluggard's own voice appears in quotation: me'at shenot ('a little sleep'), me'at tenumot ('a little slumber'), me'at chibbuq yadayim ('a little folding of the hands'). The triple me'at ('a little, just a bit') is the sluggard's self-deception — each delay is small, but they accumulate into destruction. The charm of the passage is that the sluggard never asks for much; he just asks for it perpetually.
11. Poverty (reshekha, 'your poverty') arrives kimhalekh ('like a traveler, like a prowler') — it approaches gradually, on foot, then suddenly it is at the door. Need (machsorekha, 'your lack') arrives ke-ish magen ('like a man with a shield, like an armed man') — by then it is a warrior you cannot fight off. The progression from quiet approach to armed assault captures how poverty works: it creeps before it conquers.
12. Adam beliyya'al ('a person of worthlessness, a person of Belial') and ish aven ('a man of iniquity, a man of trouble'). Beliyya'al may derive from beli ('without') and ya'al ('profit, worth') — a person of no value. The troublemaker's primary tool is iqqeshut peh ('crookedness of mouth') — perverted, twisted speech.
13. Three body parts used for covert communication: eyes that qorets ('wink, pinch shut'), feet that molel ('scrape, shuffle, signal'), and fingers that moreh ('point, teach, direct'). The troublemaker communicates through a private language of gestures — he conspires in plain sight using signals his targets cannot read.
14. Tahpukhot ('perversities, things turned upside down') are in his lev ('heart') — the command center is corrupted. He choresh ra ('plows evil, devises harm') at all times and yeshalle'ach midyanim ('sends out, dispatches strife'). The verb shalach ('send') with midyanim ('conflicts, disputes') presents discord as something deliberately launched, not accidentally caused.
15. Pit'om ('suddenly') and peta ('in an instant') — the same suddenness the troublemaker used against others now strikes him. His eido ('his disaster, his calamity') arrives without warning, and he yisshaver ('will be shattered, broken') ve-ein marpe ('and there is no healing, no remedy'). The sowing of discord produces a harvest of irreversible destruction.
16. The ascending numerical pattern (x... x+1) is found throughout the ancient Near East, from Ugaritic poetry to Amos's oracles against the nations. It creates anticipation: the hearer knows the final item will be the most important.
17. The list begins with three body parts: eynayim ramot ('eyes that are high, haughty, arrogant'), leshon shaqer ('a tongue of falsehood'), and yadayim shofkhot dam naqi ('hands pouring out innocent blood'). Eyes, tongue, hands — perception, speech, action, each corrupted. The dam naqi ('innocent blood') echoes the gratuitous violence of 1:11.
18. The list continues with heart (lev choresh machshevot aven, 'a heart plowing wicked plans') and feet (raglayim memaharot laruts lara'ah, 'feet hastening to run to evil'). The inward source (heart devising) produces the outward result (feet running). The verb charah ('to plow, to devise') applied to the heart shows that evil is cultivated, not accidental.

19. The verb yafiach ('breathes out, blows') applied to lies makes falsehood involuntary and constant — the false witness does not decide to lie; he exhales lies. The placement of the discord-sower at the climax of a list that includes murder reveals Proverbs' communal priorities: fracturing brotherhood is worse than shedding blood.
20. The instruction from 1:8 returns nearly verbatim, reopening the parental instruction format for the adultery warning. The mother's torah stands in equal authority with the father's mitsvah.
21. The binding imagery from 3:3 continues the Deuteronomic echo (Deuteronomy 6:8). The instructions must be physically attached — tamid ('continually, always') — to the heart and neck. The repetition of this imagery throughout the opening chapters creates a cumulative insistence: wear wisdom like clothing.
22. Three life-moments — walking, sleeping, waking — are all covered by parental instruction personified. It tancheh ('will lead, will guide'), tishmor ('will guard, will watch over'), and tesichekha ('will speak with you, will converse with you'). The instruction becomes a companion that is never absent — a guide on the road, a guardian in sleep, a conversation partner at dawn.
23. Mitsvah as ner ('lamp') and torah as or ('light') connect to the dawn imagery of 4:18. Instruction illuminates what darkness hides. The tokhechot musar ('reproofs of discipline') — the corrections that hurt — are derekh chayyim ('the way of life'). The road to life runs through correction, not around it.
24. The lamp/light of instruction (v23) serves a specific protective function: guarding from the eshet ra ('evil woman, woman of harm') and from chelqat leshon nokhriyyah ('the smoothness of the tongue of the foreign woman'). The same chelqah ('smoothness') from 5:3 returns — her weapon is always her speech.
25. The verb tachmod ('desire, covet') is the same verb from the tenth commandment (Exodus 20:17). The adultery warning is grounded in the Decalogue — to desire the forbidden woman is to covet. Her af'appeiha ('her eyelids,' poetic for her glances) are the instruments of capture. Desire begins in the heart (bilevavekha) before it reaches the body.
26. Two categories are distinguished: the ishah zonah ('prostitute') costs you economically — she reduces a man ad kikkar lachem ('to a round of bread,' that is, to poverty). But the eshet ish ('wife of a man, married woman') does something worse: she tatsud ('hunts, stalks') a nefesh yeqarah ('a precious life, a valuable soul'). The prostitute takes your money; the adulteress takes your life.
27. The first of two rhetorical questions with obvious answers. Fire (esh) against the cheq ('chest, bosom, lap') will burn the begadav ('his garments'). The question expects no answer because the answer is self-evident. Adultery is like carrying fire — the burning is not a possibility but a certainty.
28. The second question intensifies: gechalim ('hot coals, embers') under the raglav ('his feet'). The answer, again, is obvious. The fire metaphor makes adultery a question of physics, not merely morality — consequences follow as inevitably as burns follow fire.
29. The application is direct: haba el eshet re'ehu ('the one who goes to his neighbor's wife') will lo yinnaqeh ('not be held innocent, not go unpunished'). The verb naqah ('to be clean, to be innocent, to be acquitted') in the negative means there is no escape from consequences. Kol hanoge'a bah ('everyone who touches her') extends the warning to any degree of involvement.
30. A surprising comparison begins: theft from hunger receives understanding, not contempt. The lo yavuzu ('they do not despise') shows that the community recognizes the mitigating force of genuine need.
31. Even the understood thief faces consequences: shiv'atayim ('sevenfold') restitution, potentially kol hon beito ('all the wealth of his house'). The sevenfold payment exceeds the Mosaic requirement (Exodus 22:1-4 specifies four- or fivefold) and may represent a general idiom for complete restitution.
32. The comparison's point: theft from hunger is understandable but still costly. Adultery is not even understandable — it is chasar lev ('lacking heart, lacking sense'). There is no mitigating circumstance. The no'ef ('adulterer') is mashchit nafsho ('destroying his own soul, ruining himself'). The destruction is self-inflicted.
33. Nega ('wound, blow, plague') and qalon ('disgrace, shame') — physical and social consequences. The cherpato ('his reproach, his disgrace') lo timmacheh ('will not be blotted out, erased'). Unlike the thief who can repay and restore his standing, the adulterer's reputation is permanently damaged.
34. Qin'ah ('jealousy, zeal, passionate anger') is chamat gaver ('the rage of a man, a husband's fury'). The gaver is the offended husband whose wife has been taken. His jealousy will not yachmol ('show mercy, spare, have compassion') on the yom naqam ('day of vengeance, day of retribution'). The social consequences of adultery include facing the wrath of a man with every reason to destroy you.
35. Unlike the thief's debt, which can be repaid (v31), the adulterer's offense is beyond financial resolution. Lo yissa pene khol kofer ('he will not lift the face of any ransom') — no payment will satisfy the husband. Lo yoveh ki tarbeh shochad ('he will not consent though you multiply the bribe'). Money cannot purchase forgiveness for this offense. The adultery sequence ends where it began: with consequences that are as certain as fire and as inescapable as debt.

7

Summary: *Proverbs 7 is the dramatic climax of the forbidden-woman warnings that began in chapter 2. Cast as a first-person eyewitness account, the father describes watching from his window as a naive young man walks past the forbidden woman's house at dusk. She seizes him, kisses him, and delivers a carefully crafted seduction speech (vv14-20). He follows her 'like an ox going to slaughter.' The chapter ends with the father's urgent warning: her house is the road to Sheol.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the finest piece of narrative art in the first nine chapters of Proverbs. It moves from instruction (vv1-5) to observation (vv6-9) to character description (vv10-12) to direct speech (vv14-20) to metaphor (vv22-23) to warning (vv24-27). The pacing is cinematic — the father watches from above as the scene unfolds below, giving the reader a God's-eye view of a man walking into his own destruction. The forbidden woman's speech is brilliantly constructed: she begins with religion ('I have fulfilled my vow offerings,' v14), moves to flattery ('I came out to meet you,' v15), then to sensory enticement (perfumed bed, v17), then to the crucial reassurance ('my husband is away,' vv19-20). Every element of her pitch removes one layer of the young man's resistance. Her religious language is particularly chilling — she weaponizes piety to lower his moral guard.*

Translation Friction: *The narrative presents the young man as a passive victim and the woman as the sole aggressor, which oversimplifies the dynamics of sexual temptation. The text does not explore the man's desire, his own complicity, or the social conditions that may have led the woman to her current situation. The focus is entirely on her predatory agency and his naive vulnerability. The description of the woman as 'dressed like a prostitute' (v10) raises questions about the text's attitude toward women's self-presentation that modern readers will want to examine critically.*

Connections: *The scene at dusk (v9) connects to the light/darkness imagery of 4:18-19 — the young man literally enters the darkness. The forbidden woman's speech is the negative counterpart to Woman Wisdom's speech in chapters 1 and 8: both speak publicly, both make promises, both invite the hearer to follow. The ox-to-slaughter metaphor (v22) echoes Isaiah 53:7 ('like a lamb led to slaughter') but with opposite theological valence — here the one led to slaughter is guilty, not innocent. The house-to-Sheol identification (v27) makes the forbidden woman's home an anti-temple, descending to death rather than ascending to God.*

¹My son, keep my words
and treasure my commands within you.

²Keep my commands and live;
guard my instruction like the pupil of your eye.

³Bind them on your fingers;
write them on the tablet of your heart.

⁴Say to wisdom, 'You are my sister,'
and call understanding your close relative,

⁵to guard you from the forbidden woman,
from the outsider who makes her words smooth.

⁶For at the window of my house,
through my lattice, I looked down,

⁷and I observed among the naive —
I noticed among the young men —

a youth who lacked sense.

⁸passing through the street near her corner,
walking toward her house,

⁹at twilight, as evening fell,
in the darkness of deepening night.

¹⁰And there — a woman comes to meet him,
dressed as a prostitute, with a guarded heart.

¹¹She is loud and brazen;
her feet never stay at home.

¹²Now in the street, now in the squares,
lurking at every corner.

¹³She seizes him and kisses him;
with a brazen face she says to him,

¹⁴'I had to offer fellowship sacrifices;
today I fulfilled my vows.

¹⁵So I came out to meet you,
to seek your face eagerly — and I have found you!

¹⁶I have spread my couch with coverings,
with colored linens from Egypt.

¹⁷I have scented my bed
with myrrh, aloes, and cinnamon.

¹⁸Come, let us drink deeply of love until morning;
let us delight ourselves with passion.

¹⁹For my husband is not at home;
he has gone on a distant journey.

²⁰He took a bag of silver with him;
he will not return until the full moon.'

²¹She sways him with her abundant persuasion;
with the smoothness of her lips she pushes him over.

²²He follows her at once,
like an ox going to the slaughter,

²³like a deer stepping into a noose
until an arrow pierces its liver,
like a bird rushing into a trap,
not knowing it will cost him his life.

²⁴So now, sons, listen to me;
pay attention to the words of my mouth.

²⁵Do not let your heart turn aside to her ways;
do not stray onto her paths.

²⁶For many are the victims she has brought down;
numerous are all those she has killed.

²⁷Her house is the road to Sheol,
descending to the chambers of death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening echoes 2:1 almost exactly — the same verbs (shamar, tsaphan) and the same structure. The repetition creates a literary frame: each major section of instruction begins with the same demand for attentive reception.
2. The ke-ishon eynekha ('like the pupil of your eye, like the little man of your eye') — the ishon is the dark center of the eye, the most sensitive and carefully guarded part of the body. The idiom means 'guard it as you would guard your own sight.' Instruction is as essential as vision.
3. The finger-binding and heart-inscription imagery continues the Deuteronomic tradition (Deuteronomy 6:8, 11:18). The fingers suggest that every action (what the hands do) should be governed by instruction. The luach lev ('tablet of the heart') anticipates Jeremiah 31:33 and 2 Corinthians 3:3.
4. Wisdom as achoti ('my sister') and understanding as moda ('close relative, intimate friend, kinswoman'). In Song of Solomon 4:9-10, the beloved is called 'my sister, my bride' — the term implies both intimacy and protection. Making wisdom a family member means she belongs in your household permanently.
5. The purpose of the sister-relationship with wisdom: protection from the islah zarah and the nokhriyyah whose speech is hecheliqah ('she has made smooth, she has flattered'). The same language from 2:16 and 5:3 returns — the forbidden woman is always identified first by her smooth speech.
6. The narrative begins. The father positions himself be-challon beiti ('at the window of my house'), peering through the eshnab ('lattice, window grille'). The elevated position gives him the perspective the young man below lacks. The word nishqafti ('I looked down, I gazed out') emphasizes the downward angle — the father sees what is about to happen from above.
7. Among the petayim ('naive ones') the father spots a na'ar chasar lev ('a young man lacking heart/sense'). The chasar lev ('lacking heart') identifies him as someone without the internal command center needed to resist temptation. He is not wicked but empty — a vessel waiting to be filled by whatever voice reaches him first.
8. The young man's route is not accidental: he is over bashuq ('passing through the market street') etsel pinnah ('near her corner') and derekh beita yits'ad ('stepping toward her house'). The verbs suggest deliberate movement — he may not intend the final outcome, but he has chosen the geography that makes it possible.
9. The four-fold descent into darkness mirrors the four-fold descent of Psalm 1's wicked man (walking, standing, sitting). Each time marker is darker than the last. The young man is not ambushed by night; he walks into it voluntarily.
10. Vehinne' ('and behold!') signals dramatic appearance. She wears shit zonah ('the clothing of a prostitute') — attire that signals sexual availability. But her heart is netsurath lev ('guarded, hidden, secretive'). Her body is displayed; her intentions are concealed. The contrast between external openness and internal secrecy defines her method: she shows everything except what she actually wants.
11. Homiyyah ('noisy, turbulent, boisterous') and sorareth ('stubborn, rebellious, defiant') describe her public persona. Her ragleiha ('her feet') lo yishkenu ('do not settle, do not dwell') in her house. She is constantly in motion, constantly in public — the opposite of the wife who is celebrated in Proverbs 31 for the productivity of her household.
12. The pa'am... pa'am ('now... now') construction conveys restless movement. She is ba-chuts ('outside'), ba-rechovot ('in the broad places'), and te'erov ('she lies in ambush') at every pinnah ('corner'). The verb arav ('to ambush, to lie in wait') is the same word used for the sinners in 1:11 who ambush the innocent. She is a hunter.
13. Three rapid actions: hecheziqah bo ('she grabs him, she seizes him'), nashqah lo ('she kisses him'), and he'ezah paneiha ('she makes her face bold, she puts on a brazen expression'). The initiative is entirely hers. The verbs convey physical aggression — she is not waiting to be approached but actively capturing her prey.
14. Her seduction opens with piety. Zivche shelamim ('fellowship offerings, peace offerings') were the only sacrifices in which the worshiper ate a portion of the meat (Leviticus 7:15-16). Fulfilling nedarim ('vows') demonstrates religious devotion. Her opening gambit is to present herself as a faithful, devout woman who has just come from worship. The meat from the offering must be eaten that day — so she has a legitimate reason to invite a guest to dinner. Religion becomes the cover story for adultery.

15. The flattery begins: yatsati liqrakekha ('I came out to meet you') — you are the specific person I was looking for. Leshachar panekha ('to seek your face eagerly') uses shachar ('to seek at dawn, to seek earnestly') — the same verb used for seeking God in prayer. She applies the language of devotion to the act of seduction. Va'emtsa'ekka ('and I have found you!') — the exclamation implies that finding him is an answer to her search, making him feel uniquely desired.
16. The sensory enticement shifts to touch and sight: marvaddim ('coverings, spreads, tapestries') on the eres ('couch, bed'), made of chatuvot etun mitsrayim ('embroidered/colored Egyptian linen'). Egyptian linen was the luxury fabric of the ancient world. Her bed is not merely comfortable but extravagant — a display of wealth that implies status and sophistication.
17. From sight to smell: nafti ('I have sprinkled, I have scented') the mishkav ('bed, lying-place') with mor ('myrrh'), ahalim ('aloes, aloeswood'), and qinnamon ('cinnamon'). All three are luxury aromatics that appear in Song of Solomon (4:14) as expressions of erotic love. She has prepared a complete sensory environment designed to overwhelm resistance.
18. Lekhah ('come!') is the invitation. Nirveh dodim ('let us drink our fill of loves') uses the same ravah ('to be saturated, to drink deeply') from 5:19 where the father urged the son to be satisfied with his wife's love. The forbidden woman co-opts the language of legitimate marital passion. Nit'allesa ba'ohavim ('let us take pleasure in lovemaking') uses the hithpa'el of alas ('to exult, to enjoy'), expressing mutual indulgence. Her pitch is not merely physical but promises emotional connection.
19. The final barrier removed: ha-ish ('the man, the husband') is not beveito ('in his house'). She says halakh bederekh merachok ('he has gone on a far road') — not just away but far away. The information is strategically placed: after religion (v14), flattery (v15), luxury (vv16-17), and erotic promise (v18), she addresses the last concern — getting caught. The husband is removed. The coast is clear.
20. The silver bag indicates a commercial journey. The leyom hakkese ('at the time of the full moon') specifies his return date — the full moon is approximately two weeks away. The information is precise: there is not merely time but measured, guaranteed time. The young man can calculate his safety margin. Every detail of her speech is designed to make saying yes feel rational.
21. The irony of leqach ('teaching') applied to the forbidden woman's speech is sharp. She is, in her own way, a skilled instructor — but her curriculum leads to death. The young man chose the wrong teacher.
22. Holekh achareiha pit'om ('he walks after her suddenly, immediately') — the decision is instant once his resistance breaks. The simile ke-shor el tavach yavo ('like an ox coming to the slaughter') reduces the young man to livestock. The ox does not know what the slaughterhouse is; the young man does not know what the forbidden woman's house is. Both walk willingly into death.
23. The animal metaphors multiply: the arrow (chets) piercing the kevedo ('his liver') — the liver was considered a vital organ, and an arrow through it meant certain death. The tsippor ('bird') rushing el pach ('into a trap, into a snare') mirrors 1:17 where the bird sees the net and avoids it — this bird does not see. The final clause is the diagnosis: velo yada ki venafsho hu ('and he did not know that it concerned his life, his soul'). Ignorance is the killer. He did not know what he was walking into.
24. The narrative ends and the father draws the lesson. The plural banim ('sons') returns — this story was told for every young man, not just one. The ve-attach ('and now') signals the urgent conclusion.
25. Al yeset ('do not let it turn aside') — the heart (lev) must be held back from deviating toward her. Al teta ('do not wander, do not stray') on her netivoteiha ('her paths'). The guard-your-heart command of 4:23 finds its specific application here: the heart that is not guarded will drift toward the forbidden woman.
26. Rabbim chalalim hippilah ('many wounded/slain she has felled') and atsumim kol harugeha ('mighty/numerous are all her slain'). The vocabulary is military — chalalim ('pierced ones, casualties') and harugeha ('her slain, her killed') are battlefield terms. The forbidden woman's house is not a bedroom but a battlefield, and the casualties are measured in the same language as war dead.
27. The chapter's final image: darkhe she'ol beita ('roads to Sheol is her house') — her house is not merely near Sheol but is Sheol's access road. The yordot el chadre mavet ('descending to the chambers of death') describes rooms within death's domain. The forbidden woman's bedroom is a chamber of death. The young man who entered her door has entered Sheol's gate.

8

Summary: Proverbs 8 is Woman Wisdom's greatest speech — her magnum opus. She speaks in three movements: her public proclamation and moral credentials (vv1-21), her pre-existence and role in creation (vv22-31), and her final appeal (vv32-36). This is the theological summit of the book's first nine chapters. Wisdom is not merely good advice; she was present before the world was made, and she was the craftsman at God's side when He set the foundations of the earth.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The cosmological hymn in verses 22-31 is one of the most theologically significant passages in the entire Hebrew Bible. Wisdom declares: 'The LORD possessed me at the beginning of His way, before His acts of old. From eternity I was set up, from the beginning, before the earth existed' (vv22-23). She was present when God established the heavens, drew the horizon on the face of the deep, set the fountains of the deep, decreed the boundaries of the sea, and marked out the foundations of the earth. Verse 30 then makes the astounding claim: 'I was beside Him as a master craftsman, and I was His delight day after day, playing before Him at all times.' The word amon ('master craftsman' or 'nursling, darling') is debated, but either reading is remarkable — Wisdom was either God's co-worker in creation or God's beloved child, playing in His presence. The image of Wisdom 'playing' (mesachaquet) before God introduces joy, delight, and even playfulness into the creation account. God did not create grimly; He created joyfully, with Wisdom dancing at His side.*

Translation Friction: *The key theological question: is Wisdom a divine attribute, a separate being, a literary personification, or a proto-hypostasis? The text does not resolve this. Early Christianity read Proverbs 8 christologically (Christ as the pre-existent Wisdom of God), as reflected in John 1:1-3 and Colossians 1:15-17. The Arian controversy of the 4th century focused intensely on verse 22: does 'the LORD possessed/created me' mean Wisdom (and therefore Christ) is a created being? The verb qanah can mean 'to create,' 'to acquire,' 'to possess,' or 'to beget' — each option carries different theological implications. The Hebrew text is genuinely ambiguous, and the ambiguity has fueled centuries of debate.*

Connections: *Proverbs 8:22-31 is the primary background text for John 1:1-3 ('In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God'), Colossians 1:15-17 ('He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation'), and Hebrews 1:2 ('through whom He made the world'). The creation imagery parallels Job 38 (God laying the earth's foundation, setting the sea's boundaries) and Genesis 1 (ordering the waters, establishing the heavens). Sirach 24 and Wisdom of Solomon 7-9 both expand on Proverbs 8's portrait of personified wisdom. The 'fear of the LORD' refrain in verse 13 ties back to 1:7 and forward to 9:10.*

¹Does not wisdom call out?

Does not understanding raise her voice?

²On the heights beside the road,
at the crossroads, she takes her stand.

³Beside the gates, at the entrance to the city,
at the approach of the doorways, she cries aloud:

⁴To you, O people, I call,
and my voice reaches out to all humanity.

⁵Learn shrewdness, you naive ones;
you fools, gain sense.

⁶Listen, for I speak of noble things,
and from my lips come what is right.

⁷For my mouth utters truth,
and wickedness is detestable to my lips.

⁸All the words of my mouth are righteous;
none of them are twisted or crooked.

⁹They are all straightforward to the one who understands,
and right to those who have found knowledge.

¹⁰Receive my discipline rather than silver,
and knowledge rather than finest gold.

¹¹For wisdom is better than corals,
and no treasure can compare with her.

¹²I, Wisdom, dwell with shrewdness,
and I possess knowledge and foresight.

¹³The fear of the LORD is hatred of evil.
Pride and arrogance and the evil way
and the mouth of perversity — I hate.

¹⁴Counsel is mine, and sound wisdom;
I am understanding; strength belongs to me.

¹⁵By me kings reign,
and rulers decree what is just.

¹⁶By me officials govern,
and nobles — all who judge rightly.

¹⁷I love those who love me,
and those who seek me diligently find me.

¹⁸Riches and honor are with me,
enduring wealth and righteousness.

¹⁹My fruit is better than gold, even fine gold,
and my yield than choice silver.

²⁰I walk in the path of righteousness,
in the midst of the paths of justice,

²¹granting substance to those who love me
and filling their treasuries.

²²The LORD brought me forth as the first of His way,
before His works of old.

²³From eternity I was appointed,
from the beginning, before the earth existed.

²⁴When there were no ocean depths, I was brought forth;
when there were no springs heavy with water.

²⁵Before the mountains were sunk into place,
before the hills, I was brought forth —

²⁶before He had made the earth or the fields,
or the first dust of the world.

²⁷When He established the heavens, I was there;
when He inscribed the horizon on the face of the deep,

²⁸when He made firm the skies above,
when He established the fountains of the deep,

²⁹when He set a boundary for the sea
so that the waters would not transgress His command,
when He marked out the foundations of the earth —

³⁰then I was beside Him as a master craftsman.
I was His delight day after day,
playing in His presence at all times,

³¹playing in His inhabited world,
and my delight was with the children of humanity.

³²So now, children, listen to me:
how fortunate are those who keep my ways!

³³Hear discipline and become wise;
do not neglect it.

³⁴How fortunate is the person who listens to me,
watching daily at my gates,
waiting beside my doorposts.

³⁵For whoever finds me finds life
and obtains favor from the LORD.

³⁶But whoever misses me harms himself;
all who hate me love death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The rhetorical question expects an emphatic 'Yes!' Wisdom is already calling — the question is whether anyone is listening. The parallel between *chokmah* ('wisdom') and *tevunah* ('understanding') establishes them as aspects of the same reality. The verbs *tiqra* ('calls out') and *titten qolah* ('gives her voice') echo 1:20-21, framing chapters 1-9 with Wisdom's public proclamation.
2. Wisdom stations herself at the *rosh meromim* ('top of the heights') and *bet netivot* ('the meeting-place of paths, the crossroads'). She chooses the places of maximum visibility and decision — where travelers must choose which direction to go. Her position is strategic: she speaks where choices are made.
3. Three locations converge: *she'arim* ('gates,' the legal and commercial center), *pi qaret* ('the mouth of the city, the entrance'), and *mevo petachim* ('the approach of the doorways'). She is everywhere public life happens. Unlike the forbidden woman who lurks at corners in darkness (7:12), Wisdom stands openly at the most visible, most public locations.
4. The address is universal: *ishim* ('men, people') and *bene adam* ('sons of Adam, human beings'). Wisdom is not speaking to Israel alone but to all humanity. Her claim is cosmic, not tribal.
5. Wisdom addresses the *petayim* ('naive') and *kesilim* ('fools') directly. She does not write them off but offers them what they lack: *ormah* ('shrewdness, cunning') and *lev* ('heart, sense'). She provides the very thing the young man in chapter 7 was missing — *chasar lev* ('lacking heart').
6. *Negidim* ('noble things, princely things, things worthy of rulers') and *mesharim* ('right things, upright things, equitable things'). Wisdom's speech content matches her authority — she does not gossip or deceive but speaks what is worthy and straight.
7. *Emet* ('truth, reliability, faithfulness') is what Wisdom's *chikki* ('palate, mouth') *yehgeh* ('murmurs, meditates, utters'). Wickedness is *to'avat sefatay* ('an abomination to my lips'). The contrast with the forbidden woman is total: her mouth drips honey that leads to wormwood; Wisdom's mouth

speaks truth that leads to life.

8. Be-tsedeq ('in righteousness') qualifies every word (kol imre pi, 'all the words of my mouth'). There is nothing niftal ('twisted, tortuous') or iqqesh ('crooked, perverted') in them. The absence of crookedness is the defining marker: the forbidden woman's speech was smooth; Wisdom's speech is straight.
9. Wisdom's words are nekhochim ('straight, plain, right') to the mevin ('one who discerns') and yescharim ('upright, right') to those who have already found da'at ('knowledge'). Understanding enables understanding — the more you know, the more Wisdom's words make sense. This is the opposite of the fool's spiral, where ignorance breeds more ignorance.
10. The economic comparison from 3:14-15 returns with new force: choose musari ('my discipline') over keseph ('silver') and da'at ('knowledge') over charutz nivchar ('chosen/finest gold'). Wisdom herself, not just the father, now makes the value claim.
11. Virtually identical to 3:15. The repetition of peninim ('corals/rubies/pearls') and kol chafatsim ('all desirable things') unable to equal wisdom creates a refrain throughout the first nine chapters — wisdom's incomparable value is stated and restated until it becomes the book's baseline assumption.
12. Wisdom speaks in the first person with authority: ani chokmah ('I, Wisdom'). She shakanti ('I dwell, I reside') with ormah ('shrewdness, cunning, craftiness') and she finds (emtsa) da'at mezimnot ('knowledge of foresight, knowledge of planning'). Wisdom is not naive — she is shrewd, strategic, and perceptive.
13. The definition of the fear of the LORD as 'hatred of evil' is one of the sharpest formulations in the book. It converts the fear of the LORD from a private devotional posture into a public moral stance — you cannot claim to fear the LORD while tolerating what He finds detestable.
14. Wisdom claims four possessions: etsah ('counsel, advice, strategy'), tushiyyah ('sound wisdom, effective counsel'), binah ('understanding' — she does not merely have it; she is it), and gevurah ('strength, might, power'). Wisdom is not weak or merely theoretical — she has the power to accomplish what she advises.
15. Wisdom claims political authority: bi ('by me, through me') melakhim yimlokhu ('kings reign'). She is the source of legitimate governance. Rozenim ('rulers, princes') yechoqegu tsedeq ('decree, inscribe, enact righteousness'). Without wisdom, kings cannot rule justly; with her, their decrees embody tsedeq ('righteousness'). Political authority is derivative of wisdom, not independent of it.
16. The claim extends from kings (v15) to sarim ('officials, princes') and nedivim ('nobles, generous ones') and kol shofte tsedeq ('all judges of righteousness'). Every level of governance depends on wisdom. The judicial system itself requires her presence to function justly.
17. Wisdom offers reciprocal love: ani ohavay ehav ('I, those who love me, I love'). She also promises findability: meshacharay yimtsa'ununni ('those who seek me early/eagerly will find me'). Unlike the forbidden woman who hunts the unwary (7:12), Wisdom rewards those who seek her. The seeking must be meshachar ('at dawn, eagerly, diligently') — casual inquiry will not suffice.
18. Osher ('riches'), kavod ('honor'), hon ateq ('enduring wealth, ancient wealth') and tsedaqah ('righteousness'). The pairing of material prosperity with moral integrity is characteristic of Proverbs — true wealth includes righteousness, and righteousness includes a form of wealth.
19. Wisdom's piri ('my fruit') and tevu'ati ('my yield, my produce') surpass charutz ('fine gold'), paz ('pure gold, refined gold'), and keseph nivchar ('choice silver'). The agricultural metaphor (fruit, yield) applied to wisdom implies that she produces ongoing returns, not a one-time payment.
20. Wisdom walks — ahalekh ('I walk, I go') — in the orach tsedaqah ('path of righteousness') and betokh netivot mishpat ('in the midst of the paths of justice'). She is not merely a guide who points the way; she walks the road herself. Following wisdom means walking where she walks.
21. Lehanchil ohavay yesh ('to cause those who love me to inherit substance, reality, something') — the word yesh means 'existence, substance, what is real.' Wisdom provides not illusion but reality. She also fills (amalle) their otseroteihem ('their treasuries, their storehouses'). The gifts of wisdom are concrete and lasting.
22. We render qanani as 'brought me forth' to capture the generative force of the verb without committing to either 'created' or 'possessed.' The Hebrew is ambiguous, and we preserve the ambiguity rather than resolving it. The theological stakes of this translation choice are immense — entire christological debates have turned on whether this verb means 'created' or 'begot.'
23. Me-olam ('from eternity, from the distant past') nissakti ('I was set up, appointed, installed, poured out'). The verb nasakh may mean 'to install' (as a king is installed) or 'to weave' or 'to pour out' — each suggests a different kind of origin. Me-rosh ('from the first, from the head/beginning') miqqadme arets ('before the antiquity of the earth'). The earth itself is ancient, but Wisdom predates it.
24. Be-ein tehomot ('when there were no deeps, no primordial oceans') cholalti ('I was brought forth, I was birthed, I writhed into being'). The verb chul/chil means 'to writhe, to travail, to be born' — it is explicitly birth language. The tehomot ('deeps') echo Genesis 1:2 (tehom, 'the deep'). Before the primordial ocean existed, Wisdom was already born. The ma'yanot nikbadde mayim ('springs heavy/abundant with water') represent the underground water sources — even the hidden waters postdate Wisdom.
25. Beterem harim hotba'u ('before mountains were sunk, were set firmly') — the verb tava ('to sink, to be pressed down, to be immersed') describes mountains as driven into the earth like posts into the ground. Lifne geva'ot cholalti ('before hills I was birthed'). Mountains represent the most ancient, most permanent features of the landscape; Wisdom is older than all of them.
26. Ad lo asah erets ('while He had not yet made the earth') and chutsot ('open spaces, fields') and rosh afrot tevel ('the first/chief dust particles of the world'). Even dust — the most basic building material of creation — postdates Wisdom. She was there before the raw materials existed.

27. Now Wisdom describes not her priority but her presence during creation. Bahakhino shamayim ('when He established the heavens') sham ani ('there I was'). The two words sham ani ('I was there') are the chapter's quiet thunder — Wisdom witnessed everything. Bechuqo chug al pene tehom ('when He inscribed a circle/horizon on the face of the deep') — God drew the boundary between sky and sea, and Wisdom watched.
28. Be-ammetso shechaqim ('when He strengthened/made firm the clouds/skies above') and ba'azoz enot tehom ('when He made strong the springs of the deep'). Both the upper waters (sky) and the lower waters (deep springs) were set in place by God, with Wisdom present.
29. Besumo layyam chuqo ('when He placed for the sea its boundary/decreed') — the sea's limit is both physical (shoreline) and legal (decree). The waters lo ya'avru piv ('will not cross His mouth/command'). In Job 38:8-11, God gives the sea the same command: 'Here shall your proud waves be stopped.' Bechuqo mosde arets ('when He marked out the foundations of the earth') — the earth has structural supports, and God laid them.
30. We render amon as 'master craftsman' as the primary reading, acknowledging that 'darling child' is equally defensible. The choice of 'craftsman' connects to the broader theme of wisdom as skill (chokmah as artisanship in Exodus 31:3) and to the image of God as builder throughout vv27-29. But the 'darling child' reading explains the play language of verse 30b more naturally — a craftsman works; a child plays.
31. Mesachaquet betevel artso ('playing in the world of His earth, in His inhabited land') — Wisdom's play extends from God's presence (v30) into the created world itself. The earth is not merely God's construction project but Wisdom's playground. Vesha'ashu'ay et bene adam ('and my delights were with the sons of Adam') — the most stunning claim of all: Wisdom delights in human beings. Her joy is not only in God's presence but in human company. Humanity is not an afterthought of creation but the object of Wisdom's specific delight.
32. After the cosmic vision, the practical appeal. Ve-attah ('so now') transitions from creation theology to present command. Ashre derakhay yishmoru ('fortunate are those who guard my ways'). The ashre ('fortunate') from 3:13 returns — the blessing of wisdom-keeping is reaffirmed after the cosmic revelation.
33. The imperative sequence — shim'u ('hear'), chakhamu ('become wise'), al tifra'u ('do not neglect, do not let go') — is brisk and direct. After thirty-one verses of cosmic vision, the command is simple: listen, learn, hold on.
34. The image of lishqod al dalthotay yom yom ('watching at my doors day after day') and lishmor mezuzot petachay ('guarding the doorposts of my entrances') presents the wise person as a devoted attendant. The mezuzot ('doorposts') echo Deuteronomy 6:9, where God's commands are written on the doorposts. Now Wisdom's own doorposts are the destination. The devoted student stands at her door the way a servant stands at a master's gate — ready, attentive, unwilling to miss a word.
35. Motse'i matsa chayyim ('the one who finds me has found life') — wisdom and life are equated. Finding wisdom is not a step toward life; it is the finding of life itself. Vayyafeq ratson me-YHWH ('and draws forth favor from the LORD') — the verb yafaq ('to bring forth, to obtain, to draw out') suggests that God's favor flows naturally to the one who finds wisdom.
36. Wisdom's final word is the starkest binary in the book. Chot'i ('the one who misses me, the one who sins against me') — the root chata means 'to miss the mark, to go wrong.' Missing wisdom is self-harm (chomes nafsho, 'does violence to his own soul'). Kol mesan'ay ahevu mavet ('all who hate me love death'). The sentence is absolute: there is no third option between finding wisdom (and life) and hating wisdom (and loving death). The one who rejects wisdom has, whether knowingly or not, chosen death as a lover. This is Woman Wisdom's final word before the climactic confrontation of chapter 9.

9

Summary: *Proverbs 9 is the dramatic finale of the book's prologue (chapters 1-9). It presents two banquets side by side: Woman Wisdom has built her house, set her table, and sent her servants to invite the naive (vv1-6). Woman Folly has also set up shop and calls to the naive from her doorway (vv13-18). Between the two invitations sits a collection of sayings about the wise and the scoffer (vv7-12), including the restatement of the book's thesis: 'The fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom' (v10). The reader must choose which banquet to attend.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The architectural symmetry is deliberate and devastating. Both women call from elevated positions. Both address the petayim ('naive'). Both say nearly identical words: 'Whoever is naive, let him turn in here' (vv4, 16). Both offer food and drink. The invitation sounds the same. The destinations could not be more different: Wisdom's house leads to life (v6); Folly's house leads to Sheol (v18). The chapter forces the reader to discern the difference between two voices that sound alike. This is the deepest lesson of the entire prologue — wisdom is not about hearing the right words but about knowing which voice speaks them. The seven pillars of Wisdom's house (v1) have been variously interpreted as the seven days of creation, the seven sections of the prologue, or simply architectural grandeur. Whatever the symbolism, the number seven signals completeness — Wisdom's house is fully built, structurally whole, and ready for guests.*

Translation Friction: The central section (vv7-12) seems to interrupt the Wisdom-Folly contrast with a collection of loosely related sayings. Some scholars view these verses as a later insertion that disrupts the chapter's symmetrical structure. Others see them as a deliberate pause — a wisdom interlude that gives the reader time to reflect before encountering Folly's counter-invitation. The description of Woman Folly as 'loud, naive, and knowing nothing' (v13) may be read as a dismissive caricature. However, the text's point is not that all foolish people are women but that Folly mimics Wisdom — she copies the form while emptying it of content.

Connections: The two-banquet structure echoes the two-ways theology of Psalm 1 and Deuteronomy 30:15-20 ('I set before you life and death'). The restatement of 'the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom' (v10) completes the inclusio begun in 1:7, framing the entire prologue. The 'stolen water is sweet' proverb (v17) connects to the water/cistern imagery of chapter 5 — Folly offers stolen water while Wisdom's husband was told to drink from his own cistern. The seven-pillared house has been connected to the seven-branched menorah and to the cosmic temple imagery of Solomon's temple.

¹Wisdom has built her house;
she has carved out her seven pillars.

²She has slaughtered her meat,
mixed her wine,
and set her table.

³She has sent out her servant women;
she calls from the heights of the city,

⁴'Whoever is naive, let him turn in here.'
To the one who lacks sense, she says,

⁵'Come, eat my food
and drink the wine I have mixed.

⁶Leave your naivety behind and live!
Walk straight in the way of understanding.'

⁷Whoever corrects a scoffer earns abuse,
and whoever rebukes a wicked person gets hurt.

⁸Do not rebuke a scoffer, or he will hate you;
rebuke a wise person, and he will love you.

⁹Give to the wise and they grow wiser;
teach the righteous and they add to their learning.

¹⁰The fear of the LORD is where wisdom begins,
and knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.

¹¹For through me your days will be multiplied,
and years of life will be added to you.

¹²If you are wise, you are wise for yourself;
if you scoff, you alone will bear it.

¹³Woman Folly is loud;
 she is naive and knows nothing.

¹⁴She sits at the door of her house,
 on a seat at the heights of the city,

¹⁵calling to those who pass by,
 who are going straight on their way:

¹⁶'Whoever is naive, let him turn in here.'
 To the one who lacks sense, she says,

¹⁷'Stolen water is sweet,
 and bread eaten in secret is delicious.'

¹⁸But he does not know that the shades are there,
 that her guests are in the depths of Sheol.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The seven pillars have generated endless speculation. Some see the seven days of creation, others the seven liberal arts, others the seven sections of the Proverbs prologue (chapters 1-9 divided differently). The most straightforward reading is that seven represents architectural completeness — a grand, fully columned hall ready for a feast.
2. Three preparations: tavechah tivchah ('she has slaughtered her slaughter' — cognate accusative emphasizing the act), maskah yeinah ('she has mixed her wine' — wine was mixed with spices and water to achieve the proper strength and flavor), and arkhah shulchanah ('she has arranged her table'). The feast is lavish and carefully prepared. Every detail reflects intentionality — Wisdom does not serve leftovers.
3. Shalchah na'aroteiha ('she has dispatched her young women servants') — Wisdom has a household staff, reinforcing the image of a great woman of means. She tiqra ('calls out') al gappe merome qaret ('from the ridges of the heights of the city'). Her invitation goes out from the highest point — it is public, visible, and impossible to miss. The parallel to 1:20-21 completes the frame: Wisdom cried out at the beginning of the prologue and cries out at its end.
4. Mi feti yasur hennah ('whoever is naive, let him turn aside here') — the same invitation Folly will offer in verse 16. The target audience is the peti ('naive, gullible, open') and the chasar lev ('lacking heart, lacking sense'). Wisdom does not address the already wise but the not-yet-formed. Her banquet is for those still choosing.
5. Lekhu lachamu velachmi ('come, eat of my bread/food') and ushtu beyayin masakti ('and drink of the wine I have mixed'). The invitation is generous — my food, my wine. Wisdom's hospitality is complete: she does not merely instruct but feeds. The banquet represents a full, embodied engagement with wisdom — not abstract knowledge but nourishing sustenance.
6. Izvu petayim vichyu ('abandon the naive ones — or, abandon naivety — and live!'). The imperative vichyu ('and live!') echoes the grandfather's command in 4:4. The alternative to naivety is not mere knowledge but life itself. Ve-ishru bederekh vinah ('and walk straight, advance, in the way of understanding'). The verb ashar ('to go straight, to walk forward, to advance') is from the same root as ashre ('fortunate') — the path of understanding is the fortunate path.
7. The wisdom interlude begins with a pragmatic observation: correcting a lets ('scoffer') brings qalon ('shame, disgrace') to the corrector. Rebuking a rasha ('wicked person') earns mumo ('his blemish, his insult, his defect reflected back'). The point is not that correction should be abandoned but that the audience matters — do not waste reproof on those who will weaponize it against you.
8. The contrast reveals the deepest difference between the wise and the foolish: the wise love correction because they love improvement; the foolish hate correction because they love themselves as they are. How you respond to rebuke is the diagnostic — if rebuke makes you grateful, you are wise; if it makes you hostile, you are a scoffer. There is no third category.
9. Ten lechakham veyechkam od ('give to the wise person and he will become wiser still') — wisdom has no ceiling. The wise can always become wiser. Hoda letsaddiq veyosef leqach ('make known to the righteous person and he will add learning') — the tsaddiq treats every new piece of instruction as additional treasure.
10. Qedoshim ('holy ones') is debated: it may refer to God (plural of majesty, 'the Holy One'), to the heavenly council, or to the community of the faithful. We read it as referring to God, parallel to 30:3 (da'at qedoshim, 'knowledge of the Holy One'). The singular sense is supported by the parallel with 'the LORD' in the first line.

11. Wisdom speaks again in the first person: *bi yirbu yamekha* ('through me your days will multiply'). The promise of long life — *shenot chayyim* ('years of life') — has been the recurring reward throughout the prologue (3:2, 3:16, 4:10). It is restated here as the final benefit before the reader must choose between the two banquets.
12. *Im chakhamta chakhamta lakh* ('if you have become wise, you are wise for yourself') — wisdom's benefits accrue to the wise person. *Velatssta levaddekha tissa* ('and if you have scoffed, alone you will carry it'). The loneliness of the consequences is the point: no one else will absorb the fallout of your choices. Wisdom blesses its owner; folly punishes its owner. The transaction is perfectly individual.
13. *Eshet kesilut* ('woman of foolishness, Woman Folly') is the anti-Wisdom. She is *homiyyah* ('loud, clamorous, turbulent') — the same word used for the forbidden woman in 7:11. She is *petayyut* ('naive, simple') and *uval yade'ah mah* ('and she does not know anything'). Her ignorance is total. Unlike Wisdom, who possesses counsel, strength, and knowledge (8:14), Folly has nothing to offer — but she offers it loudly.
14. Folly *yashvah* ('sits') rather than builds or sends or calls from the heights. The contrast with Wisdom is architectural: Wisdom built a house with seven pillars, slaughtered meat, mixed wine, and sent servants. Folly sits on a chair at her doorway. She has constructed nothing, prepared nothing, produced nothing. Her position at *merome qaret* ('the heights of the city') mimics Wisdom's (v3), but she occupies it without having earned it.
15. Folly targets *ovre derekh* ('those passing by on the road') — specifically those *hamyasherim orchotam* ('who are making their paths straight'). She does not pursue those already crooked but those walking straight. Her prey is the person who is on the right path but has not yet arrived — the vulnerable moment of transit.
16. The identical words from verse 4. This is the chapter's deepest point: Wisdom and Folly use the same invitation. The words are indistinguishable. The naive person must discern the speaker, not just the speech. This is why the entire prologue exists — to train the ear to recognize the difference between two voices that say the same thing.
17. The water/bread of Folly's offer contrasts directly with Wisdom's meat and wine (v2, 5). Wisdom offers a lavish, prepared feast; Folly offers stolen water and secret bread. The comparison reveals that Folly cannot create — she can only steal.
18. The chapter's final verse reveals what Folly's guest cannot see: *velo yada* ('and he does not know') *ki refa'im sham* ('that the shades are there'). The *refa'im* ('shades, the dead, the spirits of the departed') inhabit Folly's dining room. Her *qeru'eihā* ('her invited guests, those she has called') are *be-imqe she'ol* ('in the depths of Sheol'). The banquet is already populated by the dead — the young man who enters is not the first guest but the latest victim. The identical language from 2:18 ('her paths lead to the shades') returns to close the prologue exactly where it was predicted. Folly's house was always Sheol. The only question was whether the reader would recognize it in time.

10

Summary: *Proverbs 10 marks a dramatic shift in the book's form. The extended speeches, personified figures, and narrative sequences of chapters 1-9 give way to individual two-line proverbs — sharp, self-contained observations arranged with minimal visible connection between them. This is the beginning of the 'Proverbs of Solomon' collection (10:1-22:16), which contains 375 proverbs. Nearly every verse in chapter 10 is an antithetic parallelism: the first line makes a statement, and the second line states its opposite, almost always connected by the word 'but.' The dominant themes are the righteous versus the wicked, the wise versus the foolish, the diligent versus the lazy, and the power of speech.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The abrupt formal transition from chapter 9's dramatic banquet scene to chapter 10's staccato proverbs is itself meaningful. The prologue trained the reader to think; now the reader must apply that training to compressed, often ambiguous statements that offer no explanation. Each proverb is a seed that requires the reader's own wisdom to germinate. The antithetic structure that dominates this chapter is the poetic engine of the entire middle section of Proverbs — line A makes a claim, and line B reverses it. The 'but' (Hebrew *ve-* with adversative force) is the hinge on which wisdom turns. The chapter's opening verse is its dedication: 'A wise son brings joy to a father, but a foolish son is grief to his mother.' The personal, familial setting grounds the cosmic wisdom of chapters 1-9 in the daily reality of household life.*

Translation Friction: *The retributive theology of chapter 10 is stated with absolute confidence: the righteous prosper, the wicked perish, the diligent grow rich, the lazy become poor. This framework will be severely tested by Job, Ecclesiastes, and many psalms of lament. Proverbs 10 presents the general pattern without acknowledging the exceptions. Read as iron laws, these proverbs are demonstrably false; read as general observations about how life tends to work in a morally ordered universe, they are profound. The reader must supply the nuance that the proverbs deliberately omit.*

Connections: The 'Proverbs of Solomon' superscription (v1a) connects to 1:1 and to the later collection headers at 22:17, 24:23, 25:1, 30:1, and 31:1. The righteous/wicked contrast throughout the chapter extends Psalm 1's two-ways theology into specific domains: speech, wealth, labor, and family. The lips/tongue/mouth vocabulary (vv6, 8, 10, 11, 13, 14, 18, 19, 20, 21, 31, 32) makes speech the chapter's dominant concern — fully half the verses address what comes out of a person's mouth.

¹The proverbs of Solomon.

A wise son brings joy to his father,
but a foolish son is grief to his mother.

²Treasures gained by wickedness profit nothing,
but righteousness delivers from death.

³The LORD does not let the righteous go hungry,
but He thrusts aside the craving of the wicked.

⁴A slack hand makes for poverty,
but the hand of the diligent makes rich.

⁵A son who gathers in summer acts wisely,
but a son who sleeps through harvest brings shame.

⁶Blessings crown the head of the righteous,
but the mouth of the wicked conceals violence.

⁷The memory of the righteous is a blessing,
but the name of the wicked will rot.

⁸The wise in heart accept commands,
but a babbling fool will come to ruin.

⁹Whoever walks with integrity walks securely,
but whoever makes their ways crooked will be found out.

¹⁰Whoever winks with the eye causes pain,
and a babbling fool will come to ruin.

¹¹The mouth of the righteous is a fountain of life,
but the mouth of the wicked conceals violence.

¹²Hatred stirs up conflicts,
but love covers all offenses.

¹³On the lips of the discerning, wisdom is found,
but a rod is for the back of the one who lacks sense.

¹⁴The wise store up knowledge,
but the mouth of the fool invites ruin.

¹⁵The wealth of the rich is their fortified city;
the poverty of the poor is their ruin.

- ¹⁶The earnings of the righteous lead to life;
the income of the wicked leads to sin.
- ¹⁷Whoever heeds discipline is on the path to life,
but whoever ignores correction goes astray.
- ¹⁸Whoever conceals hatred has lying lips,
and whoever spreads slander is a fool.
- ¹⁹Where words are many, sin is not absent;
but whoever restrains his lips acts wisely.
- ²⁰The tongue of the righteous is choice silver;
the heart of the wicked is worth little.
- ²¹The lips of the righteous nourish many,
but fools die for lack of sense.
- ²²The blessing of the LORD — it makes rich,
and He adds no sorrow with it.
- ²³Doing wickedness is like sport to a fool,
but wisdom is natural to a person of understanding.
- ²⁴What the wicked dread will come upon them,
but the desire of the righteous will be granted.
- ²⁵When the storm passes, the wicked are gone,
but the righteous stand on an everlasting foundation.
- ²⁶Like vinegar to the teeth
and smoke to the eyes,
so is the sluggard to those who send him.
- ²⁷The fear of the LORD adds days,
but the years of the wicked are cut short.
- ²⁸The hope of the righteous brings joy,
but the expectation of the wicked will perish.
- ²⁹The way of the LORD is a stronghold for the blameless,
but destruction for evildoers.
- ³⁰The righteous will never be shaken,
but the wicked will not inhabit the land.
- ³¹The mouth of the righteous bears the fruit of wisdom,
but the perverse tongue will be cut off.
- ³²The lips of the righteous know what is fitting,
but the mouth of the wicked speaks perversity.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription mishle Shelomoh ('proverbs of Solomon') marks the beginning of the main collection. The first proverb grounds everything in the family: the ben chakham ('wise son') produces simchah ('joy') for the father, while the ben kesil ('foolish son') produces tugat ('grief, sorrow') for the mother. The asymmetry of father/mother rather than father/father is typical of Proverbs' inclusive parallelism — both parents are affected, though named separately.
2. Otsrot resha ('treasures of wickedness') — wealth acquired through evil means — lo yo'ilu ('do not profit, provide no benefit'). Against this, tsedaqah ('righteousness') tatsil mim mavet ('delivers from death'). The proverb compresses a massive theological claim into a single line: moral character, not material wealth, determines survival.
3. YHWH lo yar'iv ('the LORD will not cause to hunger') the nefesh tsaddiq ('soul/appetite of the righteous'). God actively provides for the righteous. Conversely, havvat resha'im yehdof ('the desire/craving of the wicked He pushes away, He repels'). The verb hadaf ('to push, to thrust, to drive away') is forceful — God actively resists the wicked's desires.
4. The double meaning of remiyyah ('slack' and 'deceitful') links laziness to dishonesty — both are forms of failure to do what the situation requires. The sluggard and the fraud are, at root, the same character.
5. The ant lesson of 6:6-8 returns in proverbial form. The oger baqqayits ('one who gathers in summer') is a ben maskil ('a prudent/wise son'). The nirdam baqqatsir ('one who sleeps deeply during harvest') is a ben mevish ('a son who causes shame, who brings disgrace'). Harvest is time-sensitive — the grain will rot or fall if not gathered promptly. Sleeping through harvest is not merely lazy but destructive.
6. Berakhot ('blessings') rest on the rosh tsaddiq ('head of the righteous') like a crown. The pi resha'im ('mouth of the wicked') yekhasseh chamas ('covers/conceals violence'). The wicked person's mouth is a cover for violence — what comes out as words hides what lives within as malice. The contrast between visible blessing and concealed violence is sharp.
7. In Hebrew culture, the shem ('name') is not a label but an identity — it carries the person's character and reputation forward through time. A rotting name is a rotting legacy. The most feared fate in ancient Israel was not death but being forgotten or remembered with disgust.
8. Chakham lev ('wise of heart') yiqqach mitsvot ('receives/accepts commands') — the wise are teachable, willing to take direction. The evil sefatayim ('fool of lips, babbling fool') yillabet ('will be tripped up, will stumble, will come to ruin'). The contrast is between receiving (wise) and producing without receiving (fool). The fool talks when he should listen and stumbles because his mouth is open when his ears should be.
9. Holekh b'tom ('the one walking in integrity/wholeness') yelekh betach ('walks securely, walks confidently'). The tom ('integrity') produces betach ('security') — the honest person has nothing to hide and therefore nothing to fear. The me'aqqesh derakhav ('the one who makes crooked his ways') yivvadea ('will be known, will be found out, will be exposed'). The crooked cannot stay hidden forever.
10. Qorets ayin ('one who winks the eye') echoes the troublemaker of 6:13. The wink signals deception and conspiracy. The second line repeats 10:8b exactly — the babbling fool appears twice in this chapter, reinforcing the danger of uncontrolled speech.
11. Pi tsaddiq ('the mouth of the righteous') is a meqor chayyim ('fountain/source of life'). The same meqor ('source, spring') imagery from 4:23 ('springs of life') now flows through the righteous person's speech. Words from the righteous give life. The second line repeats verse 6b — the wicked mouth covers violence.
12. The covering of pasha'im ('offenses, transgressions, rebellions') by love is not denial or enabling but a choice about what to do with information. The hateful person uses offenses as weapons; the loving person uses discretion as a shield.
13. The navon ('discerning person') carries wisdom on his lips — it is available, ready, findable. The chasar lev ('one lacking sense/heart') receives a shevet ('rod, staff') on the gev ('back'). What the wise communicate through words, the fool must learn through pain. The rod is not cruelty but the only pedagogy the fool's closed ears will accept.
14. Chakhamim yitspe'nu da'at ('the wise treasure/store up knowledge') — the same verb tsaphan from 2:1. The wise accumulate knowledge like savings. The pi evil ('mouth of the fool') is mechittah qerovah ('near destruction, destruction is close'). The fool's mouth is not a fountain of life (v11) but a proximity alarm for catastrophe.
15. Hon ashir ('the wealth of the rich person') is qiryat uzzo ('his city of strength, his fortified city') — wealth provides protection, security, a wall against misfortune. Mechittat dallim resham ('the ruin of the poor is their poverty') — poverty is not merely uncomfortable but destructive, leaving the poor exposed to every threat the wealthy are shielded from. The proverb observes without prescribing — it does not say this arrangement is just, only that it exists.
16. Pe'ullat tsaddiq ('the work/wages of the righteous') leads lechayyim ('to life'). Tevu'at rasha ('the produce/income of the wicked') leads lechatta't ('to sin'). Wealth itself is morally neutral — what matters is whose hands it is in. In the hands of the righteous, earnings produce more life; in the hands of the wicked, income funds more sin.
17. Shomer musar ('the one who guards discipline') is on an orach lechayyim ('path to life'). The ozev tokhachat ('the one who abandons correction') mat'eh ('wanders, leads astray, causes to err'). The hinge between life and death is not talent or luck but the willingness to be corrected.

18. Two speech-sins: mekhasseh sin'ah ('concealing hatred') behind sifte shaqer ('lips of falsehood') — pretending friendship while harboring malice. And motsi dibbah ('spreading slander, putting out a bad report'). Both are foolish because both corrupt the social fabric that sustains community.
19. Berov devarim lo yechdal pasha ('in a multitude of words, transgression does not cease') — the more you talk, the more likely you are to sin. The probability of offense increases with volume. Vechosekh sefatav maskil ('but the one who holds back his lips is prudent'). Restraint of speech is a hallmark of wisdom throughout Proverbs. The wise speak less not because they know less but because they know enough to be careful.
20. Leshon tsaddiq ('the tongue of the righteous') is keseph nivchar ('choice silver, selected silver') — refined, tested, valuable. Lev resha'im ('the heart of the wicked') is kim'at ('like a little, worth little, nearly nothing'). The righteous person's speech is precious metal; the wicked person's entire inner life is nearly worthless.
21. Sifte tsaddiq yir'u rabbim ('the lips of the righteous shepherd/feed many') — the verb ra'ah ('to shepherd, to feed, to tend') applies pastoral imagery to speech. The righteous person's words feed the community as a shepherd feeds a flock. Evilim bachsar lev yamutu ('fools die in their lack of heart'). The absence of the heart/sense that wisdom provides is literally fatal.
22. Birkat YHWH hi ta'ashir ('the blessing of the LORD — it enriches'). The pronoun hi ('it') is emphatic: the blessing itself does the work. Velo yosif etsev immah ('and He does not add pain/toil/sorrow with it'). Wealth from God comes without the etsev ('pain, toil, grief') that accompanies wealth gained through overwork or dishonesty. This is not a promise that the blessed never suffer but that God's blessing does not carry a hidden cost.
23. Kisechoq likhsil asot zimmah ('like laughter/sport to a fool is doing wickedness') — the fool treats evil as entertainment, as a game. But chokmah le-ish tevunah ('wisdom belongs to a person of understanding') — wisdom comes as naturally to the discerning as depravity comes to the fool. What each finds easy reveals what each is.
24. Megorat rasha ('the dread/fear of the wicked person') hi tevo'ennu ('it will come upon him') — the wicked person's worst fear becomes reality. Ta'avat tsaddiqim yitten ('the desire of the righteous He gives, He grants'). The proverb asserts a moral symmetry: dread comes true for the wicked; desire comes true for the righteous.
25. Ka'avor sufah ('when the whirlwind passes through') ve-ein rasha ('the wicked is no more, the wicked has vanished'). The storm imagery from 1:27 returns: the wicked are swept away like chaff. Vetsaddiq yesod olam ('but the righteous is a foundation of eternity') — the righteous person is as permanent as a building's foundation. The storm test separates the rooted from the rootless — echoing Jesus' later parable of the house on the rock (Matthew 7:24-27).
26. Two sensory irritants: chomets ('vinegar') that sets the teeth on edge and ashan ('smoke') that stings the eyes. The atsel ('sluggard') produces the same effect on those who rely on him — persistent, low-grade irritation that makes everything harder. The sluggard does not merely fail to perform; he actively aggravates everyone depending on him.
27. Yirat YHWH tosif yamim ('the fear of the LORD adds days') — long life again as the fruit of right relationship with God. Ushenot resha'im tiqtsornah ('but the years of the wicked will be shortened, cut short'). The verb qatsar ('to be short, to reap, to harvest early') suggests premature death — the wicked do not live out their allotted years.
28. Tocheleth tsaddiqim simchah ('the hope/waiting of the righteous is joy') — what the righteous wait for arrives, producing simchah ('gladness, joy'). Tiqvah resha'im toved ('the hope/cord/expectation of the wicked perishes'). The tiqvah can mean both 'hope' and 'cord, line' — the wicked person's lifeline snaps.
29. Derekh YHWH ('the way of the LORD') is ma'oz ('stronghold, refuge, fortress') for the tam ('blameless, person of integrity') but mechittah ('destruction, ruin') for po'ale aven ('workers of iniquity'). The same divine way functions as both protection and destruction depending on who encounters it.
30. Tsaddiq le-olam bal yimmot ('the righteous person forever will not be moved, will not totter') echoes Psalm 15:5 and Psalm 16:8. Urshe'aim lo yishkenu erets ('but the wicked will not dwell in the land') reprises 2:21-22 — the land-theology of Deuteronomy applied to individual ethics.
31. Pi tsaddiq yanuv chokmah ('the mouth of the righteous buds/bears fruit of wisdom') — the verb nuv ('to bear fruit, to flourish, to sprout') presents the righteous mouth as a fruit tree, connecting to the tree-of-life imagery of 3:18. Ulshon tahpukhot tikkaret ('but the tongue of perversity will be cut off') — the karath ('to cut off') is the language of covenant severance and death.
32. Sifte tsaddiq yed'un ratson ('the lips of the righteous know what is acceptable, what is fitting, what pleases'). The verb yada ('to know') applied to lips means they have the discernment to speak the right word at the right time. Pi resha'im tahpukhot ('the mouth of the wicked — perversity'). The chapter ends as it has run: righteous speech gives life; wicked speech inverts reality. The thirty-two verses have returned again and again to the same point: what comes out of the mouth reveals and determines who you are.

11

Summary: *Proverbs 11 continues the Solomonic collection of antithetic proverbs, pairing righteous and wicked conduct in nearly every verse. The chapter's dominant concern is the social consequences of character: how honesty or dishonesty, generosity or greed, humility or arrogance shape a person's standing in the community and determine their ultimate fate.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter exhibits an almost obsessive interest in economic justice. Dishonest scales open the chapter, and the theme of wealth — how it is gained, how it is used, whether it endures — runs through at least a third of the verses. The collection insists that generosity produces abundance while hoarding produces scarcity, an economic paradox that defies conventional logic. The repeated claim that righteousness delivers from death is not a promise of immortality but a statement about the structural reliability of moral order: those who live rightly avoid the traps that destroy the wicked.*

Translation Friction: *The clean antithesis between righteous and wicked outcomes in these proverbs represents idealized wisdom. The sages knew that life often fails to match these tidy pairings — Job and Ecclesiastes exist as canonical correctives. These proverbs function as general observations about how the moral order tends to work, not as ironclad guarantees. The modern reader must hold them in tension with the rest of the wisdom tradition.*

Connections: *The dishonest-scales imagery in verse 1 echoes Leviticus 19:35-36 and Deuteronomy 25:13-16, where fraudulent weights are called an abomination to the LORD. The generosity paradox in verses 24-25 anticipates the teaching of Jesus in Luke 6:38. The 'gold ring in a pig's snout' metaphor of verse 22 is unique in the Hebrew Bible — a vivid image found nowhere else in Scripture.*

- ¹Dishonest scales are detestable to the LORD,
but an accurate weight is His delight.
- ²When arrogance arrives, disgrace follows,
but wisdom stays with the humble.
- ³The integrity of the upright guides them,
but the crookedness of the treacherous destroys them.
- ⁴Wealth is useless on the day of fury,
but righteousness rescues from death.
- ⁵The righteousness of the blameless makes his path straight,
but the wicked falls by his own wickedness.
- ⁶The righteousness of the upright rescues them,
but the treacherous are trapped by their own craving.
- ⁷When a wicked person dies, his hope perishes,
and the expectation of the powerful comes to nothing.
- ⁸The righteous is rescued from distress,
and the wicked steps into his place.
- ⁹With his mouth a godless person destroys his neighbor,
but through knowledge the righteous are rescued.

¹⁰When the righteous prosper, the city celebrates;
when the wicked perish, there is joyful shouting.

¹¹By the blessing of the upright a city is lifted up,
but by the mouth of the wicked it is torn down.

¹²Whoever despises his neighbor lacks sense,
but a person of understanding keeps silent.

¹³A gossip reveals secrets,
but a trustworthy person conceals a matter.

¹⁴Without guidance a people falls,
but safety comes through many advisors.

¹⁵Whoever guarantees a loan for a stranger will suffer for it,
but the one who refuses to pledge is secure.

¹⁶A gracious woman holds on to honor,
and ruthless men hold on to wealth.

¹⁷A person of faithful love benefits himself,
but a cruel person brings trouble on his own body.

¹⁸The wicked earns deceptive wages,
but the one who sows righteousness reaps a genuine reward.

¹⁹Genuine righteousness leads to life,
but whoever chases evil chases his own death.

²⁰The twisted in heart are detestable to the LORD,
but those whose way is blameless are His delight.

²¹Be assured: the wicked will not go unpunished,
but the offspring of the righteous will escape.

²²A gold ring in a pig's snout —
that is a beautiful woman who abandons good sense.

²³The desire of the righteous leads only to good;
the hope of the wicked leads to fury.

²⁴One person gives freely and gains even more;
another withholds what is right and ends up in want.

²⁵A generous person will be enriched,
and whoever refreshes others will himself be refreshed.

²⁶People curse whoever hoards grain,
but blessing rests on the head of the one who sells it.

²⁷Whoever earnestly seeks good finds favor,
but whoever pursues evil — it will find him.

²⁸Whoever trusts in his wealth will fall,
but the righteous will flourish like a green leaf.

²⁹Whoever brings trouble on his household will inherit wind,
and a fool will serve the wise in heart.

³⁰The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life,
and the one who captures lives is wise.

³¹If even the righteous receives what he deserves on earth,
how much more the wicked and the sinner!

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word even ('stone') refers to the stone weights used on balance scales in ancient commerce. An even shelemah is a weight that has not been shaved down or hollowed out to defraud.
1. The pairing of to'evah ('abomination') and ratson ('delight') establishes the emotional poles of God's response to human conduct. What disgusts God and what pleases God — the chapter will elaborate both categories.
2. The Hebrew is strikingly compressed: ba zadon va-yavo qalon — 'comes arrogance, and comes disgrace.' The two arrivals are presented as virtually simultaneous, as though arrogance carries disgrace inside it like cargo.
2. The tsenu'im ('humble, modest') are not self-deprecating people but those who have an accurate assessment of their own position. Wisdom resides with them because they remain teachable.
3. Tumamah ('integrity, completeness, wholeness') comes from the same root as tam ('blameless, complete'). It describes a person whose inner character and outward conduct are aligned — no hidden agenda, no double life.
3. Selef ('crookedness, perverseness') suggests something twisted or distorted. The treacherous are destroyed not by external enemies but by their own warped character.
4. The 'day of wrath' is not necessarily eschatological. In wisdom literature, it refers to any moment of crisis when a person's true resources are tested. Wealth fails the test; character passes it.
5. The tamim ('blameless, complete') is not sinless but wholehearted — a person of undivided loyalty. His righteousness functions as a road-straightener, removing obstacles and keeping the way clear.
5. The reflexive logic is crucial: the wicked falls be-rish'ato ('by his own wickedness'). No external agent is needed. Wickedness is self-destroying.
6. Havvat ('craving, desire, greed, destructive appetite') is from havvah, which carries overtones of ruin and disaster. The treacherous are not trapped by external snares but by their own disordered desires.
7. The onim ('powerful, vigorous') in the parallel line may refer to those who trust in their own strength or resources. Death neutralizes every advantage. The verse is a memento mori — a reminder that death exposes the bankruptcy of a life built on wickedness or raw power.
8. The image is of a swap: the righteous escapes the trap, and the wicked walks into the same trap. The Hebrew tachatav ('in his place, instead of him') suggests a direct substitution — the wicked inherits the trouble that was meant for the righteous.
9. Chanef ('godless, profane, hypocritical') describes someone whose speech is disconnected from truth or loyalty. The mouth becomes a weapon of destruction against the re'a ('neighbor, companion, fellow'). Knowledge — da'at, discernment that sees through deception — is the righteous person's defense.
10. The qiryah ('city, town') is the social unit that benefits or suffers from the character of its members. Individual righteousness has communal consequences — the city itself rejoices. The double celebration (for righteous flourishing and wicked removal) underscores how deeply the community's welfare depends on moral leadership.
11. Birkat ('blessing of') suggests both the prayers and the beneficial influence of the upright. Their presence elevates the entire community. The wicked's mouth — their counsel, slander, and deceitful speech — has the opposite effect, pulling the social fabric apart.
12. Chasar lev ('lacking heart') means lacking judgment or intelligence — the 'heart' in Hebrew is the seat of thought, not emotion. Contempt for a neighbor reveals intellectual emptiness. The person of understanding (tevunot, 'discernments') knows when silence is the wiser course.

13. Rakhil ('gossip, slanderer, talebearer') is someone who trades in other people's confidences. The ne'eman ruach ('faithful of spirit, trustworthy in character') is the opposite — a person who can be trusted with sensitive information because their loyalty runs deeper than the thrill of sharing secrets.
14. Tachbulot ('guidance, direction, steering') comes from a nautical metaphor — the word is related to the ropes used to steer a ship. A nation without skilled navigation will capsize. The teshu'ah ('deliverance, salvation, safety') comes through rov yo'ets ('abundance of counselors') — the wisdom of collective deliberation.
15. The arav ('to pledge, to become surety') involves taking on financial liability for another person's debt. The sages consistently warn against this practice — not because generosity is wrong, but because pledging for a stranger (zar) puts one's household at risk for someone whose reliability is unknown.
16. The contrast is subtle: the eshet chen ('woman of grace, gracious woman') grasps kavod ('honor, dignity, weight'), while the aritsim ('ruthless, violent, tyrannical') grasp only osher ('riches'). The implication is that honor outranks wealth, and that the means of acquisition matter — grace versus ruthlessness.
17. The ish chesed ('person of faithful love') is someone whose habitual posture toward others is loyal kindness. The remarkable claim is that this benefits his own nefesh ('soul, self, life') — kindness is not self-sacrifice but self-nourishment. The akhzari ('cruel, merciless') person, by contrast, oker she'ero ('troubles his own flesh') — cruelty consumes the one who practices it.
18. The agricultural metaphor — sowing and reaping — frames moral conduct as an investment. The wicked's pe'ullat shaqer ('wages of falsehood') look profitable but prove hollow. The one who sows tsedaqah ('righteousness') receives sekher emet ('a reward of truth, a genuine reward') — returns that are real and lasting.
19. The verb meradef ('pursuing, chasing') gives the wicked an active, aggressive posture — they are not passively drifting toward evil but running after it. The irony is that what they are actually running toward is their own death.
20. Iqqeshe lev ('twisted of heart, crooked-hearted') describes people whose inner orientation is warped — they cannot think straight because their core is bent. The temime derekh ('blameless of way, those whose path is whole') are not perfect but integrated — their conduct matches their convictions.
21. The idiom yad le-yad ('hand to hand') likely means 'you can count on this' or 'I guarantee it' — a handshake of certainty. The zera tsaddiqim ('seed of the righteous, offspring of the righteous') extends the promise across generations: the consequences of righteous living benefit one's children.
22. This is one of the most vivid images in Proverbs. The nezem zahav ('gold ring') is a valuable nose ring, a mark of beauty and status. Placing it in the af hazir ('snout of a pig') creates a jarring absurdity — the precious ornament is wasted on an animal that will drag it through mud. A woman who is yafah ('beautiful') but sarat ta'am ('turned aside from taste/sense, lacking discretion') represents the same mismatch between external form and internal substance.
23. The ta'avah ('desire, longing, appetite') of the righteous is directed toward tov ('good') — their wants align with what is genuinely beneficial. The wicked's tiqvah ('hope, expectation') terminates in evrah ('fury, wrath, overflow') — what they anticipate and pursue circles back to destroy them.
24. The verb mefazer literally means 'to scatter' — the image is of a sower broadcasting seed. Generosity is presented as an investment, not a loss. The word yosher ('uprightness, what is right') in the second line suggests that withholding is not merely stingy but morally wrong.
25. Nefesh berakhah ('a soul of blessing, a generous soul') is tedusshan ('will be made fat, will be enriched') — in the ancient world, fatness was a sign of prosperity and health, not excess. The marveh ('one who waters, who gives drink, who saturates') gam hu yore ('he also will be watered') — the principle of reciprocity is built into the moral structure of reality.
26. The mone'a bar ('withholder of grain') is someone who stockpiles during famine to drive up prices — an ancient form of market manipulation. The community's response is to curse him (yiqqevuhu, 'they will pierce him with curses'). The mashbir ('one who sells, one who distributes grain') receives berakhah — communal blessing and divine favor.
27. The verb shocher ('seeking early, seeking earnestly') implies diligence and urgency — getting up at dawn to pursue something. The ironic reversal in the second line is sharp: the one who seeks evil does not need to find it; it comes to him (tevo'ennu, 'it will come upon him').
28. The boreach be-oshro ('one who trusts in his wealth') will yipol ('fall, collapse') — wealth makes a poor foundation. The righteous, by contrast, ke-aleh yifrachu ('like a leaf will flourish, sprout, bud'). The botanical image echoes Psalm 1:3 — the righteous are living things that grow, while the wealth-dependent are structures that collapse.
29. The oker beto ('troubler of his house') — the one who ruins his own family through greed, folly, or mismanagement — receives the most worthless inheritance imaginable: ruach ('wind'). You cannot hold wind, spend wind, or build on wind. The second line adds that the evil ('fool') ends up as eved ('servant') to the wise — foolishness leads to servitude.
30. The 'tree of life' in Proverbs is not identical to the tree in Eden but draws on the same symbolic reservoir — it represents access to enduring, flourishing life. The righteous person becomes this for others.
30. The phrase loqeach nefashot is ambiguous. Some read it as 'takes lives' (violence) to create an antithetic parallel, but the Masoretic accentuation pairs it with chakham ('wise'), favoring a positive reading: the wise person wins others over.

31. This closing verse uses a *qal va-chomer* argument (light to heavy, lesser to greater): if the righteous — who is aligned with God — still faces consequences for his failings in this life, then certainly the wicked and the sinner will face even greater consequences. The verse is a reality check: no one escapes accountability, and the wicked should not imagine that their reckoning is indefinitely postponed.

12

Summary: *Proverbs 12 advances the Solomonic collection with twenty-eight antithetic proverbs centered on the practical consequences of speech, work, and character. The chapter gives sustained attention to the tongue — honest versus deceitful speech, reckless versus healing words — and to the value of diligent labor over laziness. It also introduces the theme of how people handle animals, making the care of livestock a moral indicator.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 10 stands out as one of the earliest ethical statements about animal welfare in ancient literature: the righteous person knows the nefesh ('life, being') of his animal. This is not sentimentality but recognition that how a person treats creatures under his authority reveals his character. The chapter also contains the striking claim that truthful speech endures forever while lying lasts only a moment (verse 19) — a statement about the structural durability of truth versus the fragility of deception.*

Translation Friction: *The sharp binary between the diligent and the lazy (verses 11, 24, 27) reflects an agrarian economy where hard physical work was the primary path to survival. Modern economic realities are more complex — systemic factors can override individual effort. The proverbs describe tendencies, not universal laws. Likewise, the claim that no harm befalls the righteous (verse 21) states an ideal that the rest of Scripture — and human experience — frequently complicates.*

Connections: *The 'tree of life' language from 11:30 continues implicitly through the agricultural imagery here. The concern with honest speech connects to the ninth commandment (Exodus 20:16). The righteous person's care for animals in verse 10 echoes Deuteronomy 25:4 ('you shall not muzzle an ox while it treads grain') and anticipates Jesus's argument from animal care in Luke 13:15.*

¹Whoever loves discipline loves knowledge,
but whoever hates correction is senseless.

²A good person draws favor from the LORD,
but a person who schemes He condemns.

³No one is established by wickedness,
but the root of the righteous cannot be moved.

⁴A woman of strength is a crown to her husband,
but a disgraceful wife is like rot in his bones.

⁵The plans of the righteous aim at justice;
the schemes of the wicked aim at deceit.

⁶The words of the wicked ambush for blood,
but the mouth of the upright rescues them.

⁷The wicked are overturned and are gone,
but the household of the righteous stands firm.

⁸A person is praised according to his insight,
but the twisted in heart will be despised.

- ⁹Better to be overlooked and have a servant
than to boast of importance and lack bread.
- ¹⁰A righteous person knows the life of his animal,
but the compassion of the wicked is cruelty.
- ¹¹Whoever works his land will have plenty of bread,
but whoever chases empty pursuits lacks sense.
- ¹²The wicked covets the plunder of evil people,
but the root of the righteous bears fruit.
- ¹³The wicked is trapped by the sin of his lips,
but the righteous escapes from distress.
- ¹⁴From the fruit of his mouth a person is filled with good,
and the work of his hands comes back to him.
- ¹⁵The way of a fool seems right to him,
but a wise person listens to advice.
- ¹⁶A fool's irritation is known at once,
but a shrewd person conceals an insult.
- ¹⁷A truthful witness declares what is right,
but a false witness speaks deceit.
- ¹⁸There is reckless talk that cuts like sword thrusts,
but the tongue of the wise brings healing.
- ¹⁹Truthful speech endures forever,
but a lying tongue lasts only a moment.
- ²⁰Deceit fills the heart of those who plot evil,
but those who counsel peace find joy.
- ²¹No real harm befalls the righteous,
but the wicked are filled with trouble.
- ²²Lying lips are detestable to the LORD,
but those who act faithfully are His delight.
- ²³A shrewd person conceals his knowledge,
but the heart of fools broadcasts foolishness.
- ²⁴The hand of the diligent will rule,
but laziness leads to forced labor.
- ²⁵Anxiety in a person's heart weighs it down,
but a good word lifts it up.

²⁶The righteous guides his neighbor well,
but the way of the wicked leads them astray.

²⁷The lazy person does not roast what he catches,
but diligence is a person's precious wealth.

²⁸On the path of righteousness there is life;
along that road there is no death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Musar ('discipline, correction, instruction') is the word for formative training that includes rebuke. Loving musar means welcoming the painful process of being corrected. The sone tokachat ('hater of correction') is ba'ar ('brutish, like an animal, senseless') — a harsh comparison, suggesting that rejecting correction is subhuman.
2. The verb yafiq ('draws out, obtains, brings forth') suggests that the good person's relationship with God naturally produces ratson ('favor'). The ish mezimmot ('person of plots, schemer') receives condemnation — yarshi'a, from the same root as rasha ('wicked'), meaning God declares him guilty.
3. The contrast is between instability and rootedness. Wickedness cannot provide yikon ('a firm foundation, an established position'). The righteous have a shoresh ('root') that bal yimmot ('will not be shaken, will not be dislodged'). The botanical metaphor continues from chapter 11: the righteous are rooted; the wicked are rootless.
4. Eshet chayil is notoriously difficult to translate. Chayil means 'strength, valor, capability, wealth, army.' The woman described is not merely 'virtuous' in a passive sense but formidable — strong, competent, and worthy of respect. We render it 'woman of strength' to preserve the active force of the Hebrew.
5. Machshevot ('thoughts, plans, intentions') and tachbulot ('schemes, guidance, steering') are both words for deliberate mental activity. The difference is their orientation: the righteous plan toward mishpat ('justice, right judgment') while the wicked steer toward mirmah ('deceit, fraud').
6. The wicked's speech is personified as a predator lying in wait (erov dam, 'ambush of blood'). Words become weapons — false testimony, slander, manipulation that leads to someone's destruction. The upright's mouth, by contrast, has saving power — honest speech delivers people from danger.
7. Hafokh ('overturned, upended') uses the same verb applied to the destruction of Sodom. The wicked are flipped and ve-einam ('and they are not, and they are gone') — total erasure. The beit tsaddiqim ('house of the righteous') — their family, lineage, and legacy — ya'amod ('stands, endures').
8. Sekhel ('insight, prudence, good sense') is the quality that earns a person communal respect. The na'aveh lev ('twisted of heart, warped in mind') — someone whose inner orientation is distorted — will ultimately be despised regardless of outward appearance or temporary success.
9. This 'better than' proverb punctures social pretension. The niqleh ('lightly esteemed, overlooked, despised') who has a servant — meaning he has enough resources to sustain a household — is better off than the mitkabbed ('one who glorifies himself, who puts on airs') who chasar lachem ('lacks bread'). Substance beats performance.
10. The use of nefesh ('soul, life, being') for the animal is significant. Hebrew does not restrict nefesh to humans — animals are nefesh chayyah ('living beings') in Genesis 1. The righteous person recognizes the animal's experience as real.
10. The oxymoron 'the compassion of the wicked is cruelty' suggests that wickedness distorts even good impulses. A wicked person's version of mercy may be self-serving, manipulative, or ultimately harmful.
11. The oved admato ('worker of his ground') is the diligent farmer whose labor produces yisba lachem ('satisfaction of bread, plenty of food'). The meradev reqim ('pursuer of empty things') — one who chases get-rich-quick schemes or idle fantasies — ends up chasar lev ('lacking heart/sense'). Honest work produces; chasing illusions wastes.
12. The chamad ('covets, desires intensely') of the wicked is directed at metsod ra'im ('the net/catch/plunder of evil people') — he envies the ill-gotten gains of other wicked people. The righteous, by contrast, have a shoresh ('root') that yitten ('gives, produces, yields') — their productivity comes from depth, not theft.
13. The pesha sefatayim ('transgression of lips') becomes a moqesh ('snare, trap') — the wicked's own words ensnare him. The righteous, however, manages to exit (yetse, 'goes out, escapes') from tsarah ('distress, trouble'). Honest speech keeps a person free; dishonest speech binds.
14. The metaphor of 'fruit of the mouth' treats speech as productive labor — words generate consequences the way trees generate fruit. The parallel line extends the principle to manual work: gemul yede adam ('the dealing/reward of a person's hands') yashiv lo ('returns to him'). Both speech and labor create a return — positive or negative — that circles back to the source.
15. The evil ('fool') suffers from moral blindness: his path appears yashar ('straight, right, correct') be-einav ('in his own eyes'). Self-assessment without external input is unreliable. The wise person, by contrast, is shome'a le-etsah ('one who listens to counsel') — teachability is the hallmark of wisdom.

16. The fool's emotional response is *ba-yom yivvade'a* ('known on the same day, known immediately') — he cannot contain his anger; it spills out the moment he feels it. The *arum* ('shrewd, prudent, clever') person, however, *koseh qalon* ('covers disgrace, conceals the insult') — he absorbs the offense without public reaction, choosing the strategic response over the reflexive one.
17. The *yafiach emunah* ('one who breathes out faithfulness') — the verb suggests that truth flows from this person as naturally as breath. He *yaggid tsedeq* ('declares what is right, announces justice'). The *ed sheqarim* ('witness of falsehoods') produces *mirmah* ('deceit, fraud'). The courtroom setting is implied — reliable versus unreliable testimony.
18. The verb *boteh* is rare and suggests reckless, uncontrolled speech — blurting without thinking. The damage is compared to sword wounds, suggesting that verbal injury can be as real and painful as physical violence.
18. *Marpe* ('healing') comes from the root *rapha* ('to heal, to mend'). The wise person's speech functions as medicine — it repairs what has been damaged.
19. The *sefat emet* ('lip of truth') *tikkon la'ad* ('is established forever, stands permanently'). Truth has structural integrity — it does not need to be propped up or maintained because it corresponds to reality. The *leshon shaqer* ('tongue of falsehood') lasts only *ad argi'ah* ('until a blink, for a moment') — lies have no staying power because they have no foundation.
20. The *chorshe ra* ('plotters of evil, devisers of harm') carry *mirmah* ('deceit') in their hearts — deception is their inner reality, not just their outward behavior. The *yo'atse shalom* ('counselors of peace') experience *simchah* ('joy, gladness'). Working toward *shalom* — wholeness, well-being, communal harmony — produces inner satisfaction that plotting evil never can.
21. The bold claim that *lo ye'unneh la-tsaddiq kol aven* ('no evil/mischief befalls the righteous') expresses the confidence of wisdom theology at its most optimistic. The sages are not blind to suffering — but they assert that the righteous person's core is protected even when external circumstances are difficult. The wicked, by contrast, *male'u ra* ('are filled with evil/trouble') — saturated with the consequences of their own choices.
22. This verse echoes 11:1 in structure: *to'evah Yahweh* ('abomination to the LORD') paired with *retsono* ('His delight'). Lying lips provoke divine revulsion; *oseh emunah* ('doers of faithfulness, those who act reliably') earn divine pleasure. The God of Proverbs cares intensely about honesty.
23. The *arum* ('shrewd, prudent') person *koseh da'at* ('covers knowledge') — he does not display everything he knows but reveals it strategically. The fool's heart *yiqra ivvelet* ('calls out, proclaims foolishness') — it cannot help advertising its emptiness. Wisdom knows when to speak and when to withhold.
24. The *charutsim* ('diligent, sharp, decisive') — from a root meaning 'to cut, to be sharp' — gain authority (*timshol*, 'will rule'). The *remiyyah* ('laziness, slack hand, negligence') leads to *mas* ('forced labor, tribute labor, corvee'). In the ancient economy, those who failed to manage their own resources ended up working someone else's fields as conscripted labor.
25. *De'agah* ('anxiety, worry, care') in the heart *yashchannah* ('causes it to bow down, depresses it'). The remedy is simple and powerful: *davar tov* ('a good word') *yesamm'channah* ('makes it glad, lifts it'). The sages recognized the connection between emotional health and speech — the right word at the right time has real therapeutic power.
26. The verb *yater* is debated. It may mean 'explores, scouts out' (from *tur*) — the righteous person scouts the path for his neighbor, serving as a guide. The wicked's path, by contrast, *tat'em* ('causes them to wander, leads them astray'). The righteous person's moral clarity benefits those around him.
27. The image is vivid: the lazy person goes hunting but cannot be bothered to prepare the catch — the meat rots uneaten. All effort is wasted by the failure to follow through. The diligent person's *hon* ('wealth, substance') is *yaqar* ('precious, valuable') — not because he has more possessions but because he stewards them responsibly.
28. The chapter closes with a grand claim: *orach tsedaqah* ('the path of righteousness') is *chayyim* ('life'). The *derekh netivah* ('the way of the path, that road') is *al mavet* ('not death, no death'). Righteousness and life are mapped onto the same road. This is the core conviction of the Solomonic collection: the moral structure of reality rewards those who walk rightly.

13

Summary: *Proverbs 13 continues the Solomonic antithetic collection with twenty-five proverbs that probe the relationship between discipline and wisdom, the deceptiveness of appearances, and the long-term consequences of how wealth is gained and used. The chapter gives special attention to the contrast between real and apparent prosperity, insisting that substance matters more than show.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 12 — 'Hope deferred makes the heart sick, but a desire fulfilled is a tree of life' — is one of the most psychologically acute observations in ancient literature. The sages understood that prolonged unfulfillment is not merely disappointing but physiologically damaging. The 'tree of life' metaphor, appearing here for the second of four times in Proverbs, frames fulfilled desire as a source of vital renewal. The chapter also contains the counterintuitive observation that some who*

appear rich have nothing while some who appear poor have great wealth (verse 7) — a warning against judging by surfaces.

Translation Friction: The claim that the righteous person 'has enough to satisfy his appetite' while 'the belly of the wicked goes empty' (verse 25) represents wisdom theology's confident assertion that moral order governs material outcomes. This is a general observation, not a universal guarantee — the sages themselves would acknowledge exceptions. The proverb about sparing the rod (verse 24) reflects ancient educational norms that modern readers must evaluate carefully within their cultural and ethical context.

Connections: The 'tree of life' in verse 12 connects to Proverbs 3:18, 11:30, and 15:4, forming a thematic thread through the collection. The concern with discipline (musar) in verses 1 and 24 echoes the parental instruction framework of chapters 1-9. The warning against wealth gained by fraud (verse 11) parallels the dishonest-scales concern of 11:1.

¹A wise son accepts his father's discipline,
but a scoffer does not listen to rebuke.

²From the fruit of his mouth a person eats what is good,
but the appetite of the treacherous feeds on violence.

³Whoever guards his mouth protects his life,
but whoever opens his lips wide invites ruin.

⁴The lazy person craves but gets nothing;
the appetite of the diligent is richly satisfied.

⁵A righteous person hates a false word,
but the wicked makes himself repulsive and disgraceful.

⁶Righteousness guards the person of blameless conduct,
but wickedness brings down the sinner.

⁷One person pretends to be rich but has nothing;
another appears poor but has great wealth.

⁸A rich person's wealth is the ransom for his life,
but a poor person never even hears a threat.

⁹The light of the righteous burns brightly,
but the lamp of the wicked is snuffed out.

¹⁰Arrogance only breeds conflict,
but wisdom is with those who take advice.

¹¹Wealth gained from nothing dwindles,
but whoever gathers little by little grows rich.

¹²Hope drawn out makes the heart sick,
but a desire fulfilled is a tree of life.

¹³Whoever despises a word will be ruined by it,
but whoever respects a command will be rewarded.

¹⁴The instruction of a wise person is a fountain of life,
turning one away from the snares of death.

¹⁵Good sense wins favor,
but the way of the treacherous is unyielding.

¹⁶Every shrewd person acts with knowledge,
but a fool displays his foolishness.

¹⁷A wicked messenger falls into trouble,
but a faithful envoy brings healing.

¹⁸Poverty and disgrace come to whoever rejects discipline,
but whoever heeds correction will be honored.

¹⁹A desire fulfilled is sweet to the soul,
but fools find it detestable to turn from evil.

²⁰Walk with the wise and become wise;
keep company with fools and suffer harm.

²¹Trouble pursues sinners,
but good rewards the righteous.

²²A good person leaves an inheritance for his grandchildren,
but the wealth of the sinner is stored up for the righteous.

²³Abundant food lies in the fallow ground of the poor,
but it is swept away through injustice.

²⁴Whoever withholds his rod hates his son,
but the one who loves him applies discipline early.

²⁵The righteous eats enough to satisfy his appetite,
but the belly of the wicked goes empty.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The implied verb in the first line — 'accepts' or 'heeds' — must be supplied; the Hebrew simply says 'a wise son — a father's discipline.' The compression forces the reader to make the connection: wisdom and receptivity to parental *musar* go together. The *lets* ('scoffer, mocker') refuses *ge'arah* ('rebuke, reprimand') — his contempt for correction defines him.
2. The fruit metaphor for speech recurs from 12:14. Good speech produces good nourishment for the speaker. The *nefesh bogedim* ('appetite of the treacherous') consumes *chamas* ('violence') — they feed on destruction, and destruction feeds on them.
3. *Notser piv* ('guards his mouth') and *shomer nafsho* ('keeps his life') are equated — controlling speech is an act of self-preservation. The *poseq sefatav* ('one who opens wide his lips, who lets his mouth fly open') brings *mechittah* ('ruin, destruction, terror') upon himself. The mouth is either a gate that protects or a breach that exposes.
4. The *atsel* ('sluggard, lazy person') has desires — *mit'avvah* ('craving, wanting intensely') — but *va-ayin* ('and nothing, and there is not'). Desire without effort produces emptiness. The *charutsim* ('diligent') have their *nefesh tedushshan* ('made fat, richly satisfied'). The proverb is not about wanting less but about coupling desire with disciplined work.
5. The righteous *yisna* ('hates') *devar shaqer* ('a word of falsehood') — his revulsion toward lying is visceral, not merely intellectual. The wicked *yav'ish* ('makes a stink, becomes repulsive') and *yachpir* ('brings shame, acts disgracefully'). The language is sensory: wickedness literally smells bad.

6. Tsedaqah functions as a protective force — it tisor ('guards, preserves') the tom derekh ('one whose way is blameless'). Wickedness, by contrast, tesallef ('overturns, perverts, brings down') the chattat ('sinner, one who misses the mark'). Character protects or destroys depending on its orientation.
7. The hitpael verb forms (mit'asher, mitrosesh) indicate reflexive action — 'making oneself rich/poor,' acting the part. The emphasis is on performance versus substance. This proverb resists any simple equation between visible prosperity and actual well-being.
8. The kofer nefesh ('ransom of life') suggests that the wealthy person is a target — his riches buy him out of danger, but they also attract danger in the first place. The rash ('poor person') lo shama ge'arah ('does not hear rebuke/threat') — no one threatens or extorts him because he has nothing worth taking. Poverty has one unexpected advantage: obscurity.
9. Or ('light') for the righteous versus ner ('lamp') for the wicked — the righteous have a self-sustaining light that yismach ('rejoices, burns joyfully'), while the wicked have only a lamp, dependent on oil, that yid'akh ('is extinguished, goes dark'). The metaphor suggests that the righteous person's vitality is internally generated while the wicked person's prosperity requires constant external fuel.
10. The raq ('only, nothing but') is emphatic: the sole source of matsisah ('strife, conflict, quarreling') is zadon ('arrogance, presumption'). Every fight traces back to someone's pride. Wisdom, by contrast, dwells with the no'atsim ('those who allow themselves to be advised, the well-counseled'). Humility is the prerequisite for peace.
11. Hon me-hevel ('wealth from emptiness/vapor/fraud') — whether gained by fraud, speculation, or windfall — yim'at ('diminishes, becomes small'). The qovets al yad ('one who gathers by hand, who accumulates gradually') yarbeh ('increases, multiplies'). The proverb endorses slow, honest accumulation over sudden riches. Easy money evaporates; earned money compounds.
12. The verb memushakhah ('drawn out, prolonged, delayed') emphasizes the duration of waiting. It is not the hope itself that sickens but the endless delay. This is an observation about human psychology, not a theological complaint.
12. The 'tree of life' — the second of four appearances in Proverbs — here symbolizes renewed vitality through fulfilled longing. It connects desire and life: when what we deeply need actually arrives, it is like gaining access to the source of life itself.
13. The baz le-davar ('one who despises a word/matter') will yechavel lo ('be pledged/ruined/destroyed for it'). The 'word' here likely means authoritative instruction — parental, wise, or divine. Contempt for instruction leads to ruin. The yere mitsvah ('one who fears/respects a command') is yeshullam ('is rewarded, is made whole').
14. Torat chakham ('the instruction of the wise') is a meqor chayyim ('fountain of life, spring of living water') — an image of constantly flowing, life-sustaining vitality. The purpose is lasur mi-moqshe mavet ('to turn aside from the snares of death') — wisdom's instruction steers a person around the traps that lead to destruction.
15. Sekhel tov ('good sense, sound judgment') produces chen ('grace, favor') — people are attracted to a person of good sense. The derekh bogedim ('way of the treacherous') is eitan ('hard, enduring, unyielding') — it is a path with no give, no flexibility, that ultimately grinds its walkers down.
16. The arum ('shrewd, prudent') person ya'aseh be-da'at ('acts with knowledge') — his decisions are informed, considered, based on evidence. The kesil ('fool') yifros ivelet ('spreads out foolishness, lays it open for display') as though putting it on exhibition. The fool advertises his deficiency.
17. The mal'akh rasha ('wicked messenger, unreliable envoy') yipol be-ra ('falls into evil/trouble') — he either corrupts the message or brings disaster through his unreliability. The tsir emunim ('faithful envoy, trustworthy messenger') is marpe ('healing') — he restores what was broken, delivers what was promised, and mends the relationship between sender and recipient.
18. The pore'a musar ('one who lets discipline go, who refuses correction') receives resh ('poverty') and qalon ('disgrace, shame'). The shomer tokhachat ('one who guards/heeds correction') yekhubad ('is honored, is treated with dignity'). The economic and social consequences of refusing to learn are real and measurable.
19. The ta'avah niyah ('a desire that has come into being, a desire that is realized') is te'erav la-nefesh ('sweet to the soul, pleasant to the being'). This echoes verse 12's tree-of-life language. The second line reveals why fools remain stuck: to'avat kesilim sur me-ra ('it is an abomination to fools to turn from evil') — they find the very idea of repentance repulsive.
20. Holekh et chakhamim yechkam ('one who walks with wise people will become wise') — wisdom is contagious; proximity to wise people shapes character. Ro'eh kesilim yeroa' ('one who companions with fools will be broken/harmed') — foolishness is equally contagious. The proverb is about the formative power of association.
21. Ra'ah ('evil, calamity, trouble') is personified as a pursuer — it hunts sinners down. The righteous receive the opposite: yeshalleim tov ('good is repaid to them'). The moral order is portrayed as self-enforcing: consequences track behavior.
22. The tov ('good person') has enough to bequeath not just to children but to bene vanim ('children's children, grandchildren') — a sign of sustained prosperity across generations. The cheil choter ('wealth of the sinner') is tsafun la-tsaddiq ('stored up for the righteous') — an ironic reversal where the sinner's ill-gotten gains end up benefiting those who live rightly.
23. The nir ra'shim ('newly broken ground of the poor') contains rov okhel ('abundant food') — the poor have productive potential. But yesh nispeh be-lo mishpat ('there is that which is swept away without justice/judgment') — social injustice destroys what the poor could produce. This verse contains a rare acknowledgment that poverty can result from systemic injustice, not just laziness.

24. The chosekh shivto ('one who withholds his rod') is described as sone veno ('hating his son') — a deliberately provocative statement. The parent who avoids correcting a child is not being kind but cruel, because the child will grow up unformed. The ohavo ('one who loves him') shicharo musar ('seeks him early with discipline, applies correction from the start'). Love, in the sages' framework, requires the willingness to cause short-term discomfort for long-term formation.
24. The 'rod' (shevet) in ancient wisdom literature represents parental authority and corrective discipline. The sages understood discipline as an expression of love, not its opposite.
25. The tsaddiq eats le-sova nafsho ('to the satisfaction of his being') — not luxury but sufficiency. His needs are met. The beten resha'im ('belly of the wicked') techsar ('is lacking, is deficient'). The wicked may have much but are never satisfied; the righteous may have little but have enough. The contrast is between contentment and insatiability as much as between wealth and poverty.

14

Summary: *Proverbs 14 is the longest chapter in the Solomonic collection at thirty-five verses. It canvasses an extraordinary range of topics — the fear of the LORD, the reliability of witnesses, the nature of anger, the treatment of the poor, the deceptiveness of human self-assessment — weaving them into the persistent antithetic framework of wise versus foolish, righteous versus wicked. The chapter repeatedly returns to the question of what is real versus what merely appears to be real.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of the most quoted lines in Proverbs: 'There is a way that seems right to a person, but its end is the way of death' (verse 12) and 'In the fear of the LORD there is strong confidence' (verse 26). Verse 12 is so important that it is repeated verbatim in 16:25 — the only proverb in the Solomonic collection to appear twice in identical form. The chapter also contains a striking economic ethic: the one who oppresses the poor insults his Maker (verse 31), establishing a direct theological link between treatment of the vulnerable and relationship with God.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 4 — 'Where there are no oxen the manger is clean, but abundant harvest comes through the strength of an ox' — is a bracing piece of realism that cuts against any perfectionism. Productive life is messy. The clean manger produces nothing. Some readers may struggle with verse 13's observation that 'even in laughter the heart may be in pain' — the sages were not naive optimists but sharp observers of how people mask suffering with performance.*

Connections: *The 'way that seems right' in verse 12 connects to the two-ways theology of Psalm 1 and Deuteronomy 30:15-20. The fear of the LORD as a 'fountain of life' (verse 27) echoes 13:14 and anticipates the programmatic statement of 1:7. The connection between oppressing the poor and insulting God (verse 31) parallels Job 31:13-15 and anticipates Matthew 25:40.*

¹The wisest of women builds her household,
but a foolish woman tears it down with her own hands.

²The one who walks in uprightness fears the LORD,
but the one whose ways are crooked despises Him.

³In the mouth of a fool is a rod of arrogance,
but the lips of the wise protect them.

⁴Where there are no oxen the feeding trough is clean,
but an abundant harvest comes through the strength of an ox.

⁵A faithful witness does not lie,
but a false witness breathes out deception.

⁶A scoffer searches for wisdom but finds nothing;
knowledge comes easily to the discerning.

⁷Walk away from a foolish person,
for you will not find knowledgeable speech on his lips.

⁸The wisdom of the shrewd is to understand his own path;
the foolishness of fools is self-deception.

⁹Fools mock at guilt,
but among the upright there is goodwill.

¹⁰The heart knows its own bitterness,
and no outsider can share in its joy.

¹¹The house of the wicked will be demolished,
but the tent of the upright will flourish.

¹²There is a path that seems straight to a person,
but its end is the ways of death.

¹³Even in laughter the heart may ache,
and joy may end in grief.

¹⁴The faithless in heart will have his fill of his own ways,
but a good person is satisfied from what is above him.

¹⁵The naive person believes everything,
but the shrewd person watches his step.

¹⁶A wise person is cautious and turns from evil,
but a fool is reckless and overconfident.

¹⁷A short-tempered person acts foolishly,
and a schemer is hated.

¹⁸The naive inherit foolishness,
but the shrewd are crowned with knowledge.

¹⁹The evil will bow before the good,
and the wicked will stand at the gates of the righteous.

²⁰Even by his neighbor the poor person is disliked,
but the rich person has many friends.

²¹Whoever despises his neighbor sins,
but whoever shows grace to the poor — how fortunate he is.

²²Do not those who plot evil go astray?
But faithful love and truth belong to those who plan good.

²³In all hard work there is profit,
but mere talk leads only to poverty.

- ²⁴The crown of the wise is their wealth;
the garland of fools is foolishness.
- ²⁵A truthful witness saves lives,
but a deceitful witness breathes out lies.
- ²⁶In the fear of the LORD there is strong confidence,
and his children will have a refuge.
- ²⁷The fear of the LORD is a fountain of life,
turning one away from the snares of death.
- ²⁸A large population is a king's glory,
but without people a ruler is ruined.
- ²⁹The patient person has great understanding,
but the short-tempered person exalts foolishness.
- ³⁰A tranquil heart is the life of the body,
but envy is rot in the bones.
- ³¹Whoever oppresses the poor insults his Maker,
but whoever shows grace to the needy honors Him.
- ³²The wicked is overthrown by his own calamity,
but the righteous has refuge even in death.
- ³³Wisdom rests quietly in the heart of the discerning,
but among fools it makes itself known.
- ³⁴Righteousness elevates a nation,
but sin is a disgrace to any people.
- ³⁵A king's favor rests on a servant who acts wisely,
but his fury falls on one who acts disgracefully.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Chakhemot nashim ('wisdom of women, the wisest among women') is an intensive plural — the wisest of the wise among women. She bantah vetah ('has built her house') — the bayit ('house') is both the physical home and the family unit, the household as a social and economic institution. The ivvelet ('foolish woman') be-yadehah tehersennah ('with her own hands tears it down'). The destruction is self-inflicted and deliberate, though perhaps unintentional in its consequences.
2. Walking be-yoshro ('in his uprightness') is equated with fearing the LORD — ethical conduct is the expression of reverence for God. The neloz derakhav ('one twisted in his paths, whose ways are crooked') is bozeihu ('one who despises Him') — moral crookedness is not merely poor behavior but active contempt for God.
3. The choter ga'avah ('rod/shoot of pride') in the fool's mouth means his arrogant speech becomes a rod that beats him — his own words punish him. The wise person's lips tishmoren ('guard them, protect them') — careful speech is self-defense.
4. This verse stands outside the typical righteous-versus-wicked framework and delivers pure agricultural pragmatism. Oxen eat, they defecate, they require care — but without them, the field cannot be plowed at scale. The clean manger is a sign of poverty, not efficiency.
5. The ed emunim ('faithful witness, reliable witness') lo yekhazzev ('does not deal falsely, does not lie') — his reliability is the negative: he simply does not do the thing that destroys trust. The ed shaqer ('witness of falsehood') yafiach kezavim ('breathes out lies') — deception flows from him as naturally as exhalation.

6. The lets ('scoffer') searches for wisdom but va-ayin ('and there is nothing') — his contemptuous attitude blocks reception. Wisdom requires humility, and the scoffer has none. For the navon ('discerning, understanding person') knowledge is naqal ('easy, accessible, light') — not because it requires no effort but because the discerning person's posture makes learning natural.
7. The imperative lekh mi-neged ('go from the front of, walk away from') is direct: leave the presence of a fool. The reason is pragmatic — bal yada'ta siftei da'at ('you will not know/find lips of knowledge') — there is nothing to learn there. Proximity to fools wastes time and may corrupt your own thinking.
8. The arum ('shrewd, prudent') person's wisdom consists in havin darkko ('understanding his way') — knowing where he is going, why, and what the costs and consequences will be. Self-knowledge is the foundation. The kesilim ('fools') practice mirmah ('deceit') — but the context suggests they deceive themselves above all. Foolishness is fundamentally a failure of self-understanding.
9. The evilim ('fools')yalits ash'am ('mock at guilt, scoff at the guilt offering') — they treat moral failure as a joke, refusing to take the consequences of wrongdoing seriously. Among the yesharim ('upright'), by contrast, there is ratson ('favor, acceptance, goodwill') — right relationships produce mutual respect and generosity.
10. This verse breaks from the antithetic pattern to make a single observation about the loneliness of inner experience. It anticipates modern psychology's recognition that subjective experience is ultimately incommunicable in its fullness.
11. The beit ('house') — suggesting permanence, solidity, stone construction — of the wicked will yishamed ('be destroyed, demolished'). The ohel ('tent') — suggesting fragility, impermanence, vulnerability — of the upright will yafriach ('flourish, blossom, bloom'). The reversal is deliberate: the seemingly solid is destroyed while the seemingly fragile thrives.
12. The word yashar ('straight, right, upright') is the same word used positively throughout Proverbs for moral uprightness. The irony is devastating: the path looks yashar but leads to death. Appearances of moral correctness can be fatally misleading.
12. The repetition of this exact verse in 16:25 is unique in the Solomonic collection. The sages considered this warning important enough to state twice — the danger of self-deception warranted double emphasis.
13. Gam bi-sechoq yikh'av lev ('even in laughter the heart is pained') — the sages observed that outward cheerfulness can mask inner suffering. People laugh while they hurt. And acharitah simchah tugah ('the end of joy is grief') — happiness does not last. This is not pessimism but observation: human emotional experience is layered and unstable.
14. The sug lev ('turned-back of heart, faithless, backslider') will yisba mi-derakhav ('be filled with his own ways') — his own conduct will become his punishment, forced to consume the consequences of his choices. The ish tov ('good person') is satisfied me-alav ('from what is above him, from himself') — likely meaning from the fruit of his own good conduct, or from God who is above.
15. The peti ('naive, gullible, simple') ya'amin le-khol davar ('believes every word') — he has no filter, no critical faculty, no ability to distinguish reliable information from nonsense. The arum ('shrewd') yavin la-ashuro ('understands his step, pays attention to where he is going'). Critical thinking is a survival skill.
16. The wise person yare ('fears, is cautious') and sar me-ra ('turns aside from evil') — his caution is not cowardice but prudence. The fool mit'abber ('crosses boundaries, acts recklessly') and bote'ach ('is confident, trusts himself'). False confidence is the fool's signature — he barges ahead where the wise person pauses.
17. Qetsar appayim ('short of nostrils, quick to anger') — the Hebrew locates anger in the nose, as flaring nostrils. A person whose fuse is short ya'aseh ivelet ('does foolishness') — anger produces bad decisions. The ish mezimot ('person of schemes, plotter') yissane ('is hated') — his reputation for manipulation makes him socially toxic.
18. The peta'im ('naive, gullible') nachalu ivelet ('inherit foolishness') — folly is their estate, what they receive by default when they fail to pursue wisdom. The arumim ('shrewd') yaktiru da'at ('crown themselves with knowledge') — knowledge becomes their ateret ('crown, diadem'), a mark of honor and authority.
19. Shachu ra'im lifne tovim ('the evil bow before the good') — the moral order ultimately reasserts itself, reversing apparent power dynamics. The wicked end up as supplicants al sha'are tsaddiq ('at the gates of the righteous') — seeking what only the righteous can provide.
20. This verse does not endorse the social dynamic it describes — it reports it. The rash ('poor person') yissane ('is disliked, hated') gam le-re'ehu ('even by his companion') — poverty isolates. The ashir ('rich person') has rabbim ohavim ('many who love him') — wealth attracts. The sages observed this pattern without approving it; subsequent verses (especially verse 31) will challenge it.
21. The baz le-re'ehu ('one who despises his neighbor') is choter ('sinning, missing the mark') — contempt for another person is a moral failure, not merely a social faux pas. The mechonon aniyim ('one who shows grace to the poor') receives ashra'v ('his blessedness, his happiness') — generosity toward the vulnerable produces human flourishing.
22. The rhetorical question expects a 'yes': the chorshe ra ('plotters of evil') yit'u ('go astray, wander, err'). Those who plan evil are themselves lost. The chorshe tov ('planners of good') receive chesed ve-emet ('faithful love and truth') — the paired divine attributes that characterize God's own covenant loyalty.

23. Be-khol etsev ('in all toil, in every painful exertion') yihyeh motar ('there will be surplus, profit, advantage'). Even difficult, unglamorous work produces results. But devar sefatayim ('word of lips, mere talk') akh le-machsor ('only to poverty, nothing but want'). Talk without action is economically catastrophic.
24. The wise wear their oshram ('wealth') as an ateret ('crown') — their prosperity adorns them and reflects their competence. The fools' ivvelet ('foolishness') is their only crown — they have nothing to display but their own folly. The repetition of ivvelet in both halves of the line may be textually difficult; some emend the second to a different word, but the Masoretic text emphasizes: all fools have to show for themselves is more foolishness.
25. The ed emet ('witness of truth') is matsil nefashot ('rescuer of lives/souls') — honest testimony in court or community literally preserves people from wrongful punishment or unjust treatment. The yafiach kezavim ('breather-out of lies') is mirmah ('deceit, fraud') — his testimony endangers others.
26. The pairing of fear (yir'ah) and confidence (mivtach) is deliberately paradoxical. The person who fears God has nothing else to fear, because the ultimate authority is already his refuge. This is not servile terror but awe that produces stability.
27. Nearly identical to 13:14, where 'the instruction of the wise' is the fountain of life. Here the fear of the LORD occupies the same structural position — suggesting that the fear of the LORD and wise instruction are functionally equivalent. Both are meqor chayyim ('fountain of life') and both serve lasur mi-moqshe mavet ('to turn aside from death's snares').
28. Be-rov am ('in abundance of people') is hadrat melekh ('the glory/majesty of a king'). A ruler's power depends on his people — without subjects, a king is nothing. Be-efes le'om ('in the absence of a nation') is mechittat rason ('the ruin of a prince/ruler'). This is political realism: leadership exists in relationship to community.
29. Erekh appayim ('long of nostrils, slow to anger, patient') has rav tevunah ('great understanding, abundant discernment'). Patience is not passive but a sign of deep comprehension. The qetsar ruach ('short of spirit, hasty-tempered') merim ivvelet ('lifts up, exalts, elevates foolishness') — his impatience puts folly on a pedestal.
30. Lev marpe ('a healing heart, a heart at peace, a tranquil heart') is chayyei vesarim ('the life of the flesh/body') — inner peace literally sustains physical health. Qin'ah ('envy, jealousy, passionate rivalry') is reqav atsamot ('rotteness of bones'). Envy does not merely distress the mind; it decays the body. The sages anticipated the psychosomatic insight that emotional states affect physical well-being.
31. The osehu ('his Maker') explicitly connects treatment of the poor to theology proper. God takes personally how people treat the vulnerable because the vulnerable bear His image. This principle resurfaces in Job 31:15 and in Jesus's parable of the sheep and goats (Matthew 25:40).
32. The rasha is yiddacheh ('driven away, thrust out') be-ra'ato ('in his calamity/evil'). The righteous, however, choseh be-moto ('takes refuge in his death') — an extraordinary claim that trust in God extends even through death. Some scholars emend 'in his death' to 'in his integrity' (be-tummo), but the Masoretic text stands as one of the Hebrew Bible's rare hints at hope beyond death.
33. Wisdom tanuach ('rests, settles, is at peace') in the heart of the navon ('discerning person') — it does not need to announce itself or prove itself. Among fools it tivvade'a ('makes itself known, is revealed') — possibly meaning that even among fools wisdom eventually becomes apparent, or that fools' lack of wisdom is obvious to all.
34. Tsedaqah teromem goy ('righteousness lifts up a nation') — this moves beyond individual ethics to political theology. National righteousness — justice, honesty, care for the vulnerable — elevates an entire people. Chattat ('sin, missing the mark') is chesed le'ummim — a much-debated phrase, likely meaning 'a disgrace/reproach to peoples.' National sin degrades a nation's standing and integrity.
35. The retson melekh ('king's favor') goes to the eved maskil ('servant who acts with insight, a competent servant'). The evrato ('his fury, his wrath') falls on the mevish ('one who causes shame, who acts disgracefully'). In the court setting, competence earns favor and incompetence earns wrath — a principle that applies beyond royal courts to any relationship where performance is evaluated.

15

Summary: Proverbs 15 is among the richest chapters in the Solomonic collection, weaving together the power of speech, the omniscience of God, the superiority of little-with-righteousness over much-with-injustice, and the irreplaceable value of discipline. The chapter opens and closes with speech — a gentle answer versus a harsh word — and fills the middle with a sustained meditation on what the LORD sees, what He loves, and what He finds detestable.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter contains the fourth and final 'tree of life' reference in Proverbs (verse 4: 'a healing tongue is a tree of life'), completing the metaphor's arc through the book. It also contains one of the strongest 'better than' clusters in Proverbs (verses 16-17), where the sages insist that a small amount with the fear of the LORD, or with love, outweighs abundance accompanied by turmoil or hatred. These are not throwaway platitudes but deliberate challenges to the prosperity assumptions that run through much of the wisdom tradition.

Translation Friction: The claim that the LORD's eyes are everywhere, watching the wicked and the good (verse 3), raises questions about divine surveillance that modern readers may find unsettling. The sages intend it as comfort — God is not absent — but it also underscores accountability. The repeated insistence that the LORD detests the sacrifice and the way of the wicked (verses 8-9) while delighting in the prayer of the upright creates sharp categories that leave little room for the complex moral reality of most human lives.

Connections: The 'gentle answer turns away wrath' of verse 1 anticipates James 1:19-20. The 'eyes of the LORD' in verse 3 echoes 2 Chronicles 16:9. The 'better than' proverbs in verses 16-17 connect to Psalm 37:16 and anticipate Jesus's teaching about treasure in heaven (Matthew 6:19-21). The 'healing tongue as tree of life' in verse 4 completes the series from 3:18, 11:30, and 13:12.

¹A gentle answer turns away fury,
but a harsh word stirs up anger.

²The tongue of the wise makes knowledge attractive,
but the mouth of fools pours out foolishness.

³The eyes of the LORD are everywhere,
watching the wicked and the good.

⁴A healing tongue is a tree of life,
but crookedness in it is a crushing of the spirit.

⁵A fool rejects his father's discipline,
but whoever heeds correction becomes shrewd.

⁶In the house of the righteous is great treasure,
but the income of the wicked brings trouble.

⁷The lips of the wise spread knowledge,
but the heart of fools does not.

⁸The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable to the LORD,
but the prayer of the upright is His delight.

⁹The way of the wicked is detestable to the LORD,
but He loves the one who pursues righteousness.

¹⁰Harsh discipline awaits the one who abandons the path;
whoever hates correction will die.

¹¹The grave and the place of destruction lie open before the LORD —
how much more the hearts of human beings!

¹²A scoffer does not love being corrected;
he will not go to the wise.

¹³A joyful heart brightens the face,
but a grieving heart crushes the spirit.

¹⁴The heart of the discerning seeks knowledge,
but the mouth of fools feeds on foolishness.

¹⁵All the days of the afflicted are hard,
but a cheerful heart has a never-ending feast.

¹⁶Better is a little with the fear of the LORD
than great treasure with turmoil.

¹⁷Better a meal of vegetables where there is love
than a fattened ox with hatred.

¹⁸A hot-tempered person stirs up conflict,
but the patient person calms a dispute.

¹⁹The way of the lazy person is like a hedge of thorns,
but the path of the upright is a clear highway.

²⁰A wise son brings joy to his father,
but a foolish person despises his mother.

²¹Foolishness is entertainment to the senseless,
but a person of understanding walks a straight course.

²²Plans fail without consultation,
but with many advisors they succeed.

²³A person finds joy in giving a good answer,
and a word at the right time — how good it is!

²⁴The path of life leads upward for the wise,
turning him away from the grave below.

²⁵The LORD tears down the house of the proud
but secures the widow's boundary.

²⁶Evil plans are detestable to the LORD,
but gracious words are pure.

²⁷Whoever chases dishonest gain brings trouble on his household,
but the one who hates bribes will live.

²⁸The heart of the righteous considers before answering,
but the mouth of the wicked pours out evil.

²⁹The LORD keeps far from the wicked,
but He hears the prayer of the righteous.

³⁰Bright eyes bring joy to the heart,
and good news strengthens the bones.

³¹The ear that listens to life-giving correction
will dwell among the wise.

³²Whoever refuses discipline despises his own life,
but whoever listens to correction gains understanding.

³³The fear of the LORD is the discipline of wisdom,
and before honor comes humility.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Rakh ('soft, tender, gentle') describes not weakness but deliberate restraint — the choice to lower the temperature of a confrontation. The proverb assumes that the speaker has the power to choose tone and that this choice has predictable consequences.
2. The wise person's tongue tetiv da'at ('makes knowledge good, presents knowledge well') — it is not enough to possess knowledge; one must know how to present it effectively. The fool's mouth yabbi'a ivvelet ('gushes, pours out, bubbles up with foolishness') — there is no filter, no restraint, just a constant flow of nonsense.
3. Be-khol maqom ('in every place') eine Yahweh ('the eyes of the LORD') tsofot ('are watching, observing, keeping guard over') ra'im ve-tovim ('the wicked and the good'). Nothing escapes God's observation. This is simultaneously a comfort (the righteous are seen) and a warning (the wicked cannot hide). The LORD's vision is total and impartial.
4. This completes the 'tree of life' series in Proverbs: wisdom itself (3:18), the fruit of the righteous (11:30), fulfilled desire (13:12), and now healing speech (15:4). Each use identifies something that gives or sustains life — and the final one locates that life-giving power in words.
4. Shever be-ruach ('breaking of spirit') describes the internal damage caused by deceptive or cruel speech. It is not merely emotional hurt but a structural collapse of the inner person.
5. The evil ('fool') yin'ats ('spurns, despises, treats with contempt') musar aviv ('his father's discipline'). The shomer tokhachat ('one who guards/heeds correction') ya'arim ('becomes shrewd, grows prudent'). Correction is the raw material from which shrewdness is built.
6. The beit tsaddiq ('house of the righteous') contains chosen rav ('great treasure, abundant store'). The tevu'at rasha ('produce/income of the wicked') ne'ekaret ('is troubled, brings disturbance'). Wealth acquired righteously is stable; wealth acquired wickedly is volatile.
7. The wise person's lips yezaru da'at ('scatter, spread, sow knowledge') — the agricultural metaphor treats knowledge as seed that the wise broadcast for others to harvest. The fool's heart lo khen ('not so, does not do this') — it produces nothing worth spreading.
8. Zevach resha'im ('sacrifice of the wicked') is to'avat Yahweh — religious ritual performed by those whose lives contradict it provokes God's revulsion. Tefillat yesharim ('prayer of the upright') is retsono ('His delight, His pleasure'). God evaluates worship by the character of the worshiper, not the quality of the offering. This anticipates the prophetic critique of empty ritual (Isaiah 1:11-17, Amos 5:21-24).
9. Extending verse 8 from worship to way of life: not just the wicked person's sacrifice but his entire derekh ('way, path, lifestyle') is to'evah. And God does not merely accept the righteous — ye'ehav ('He loves') the meradef tsedaqah ('pursuer of righteousness'). The verb 'pursues' implies effort, intention, and persistence.
10. Musar ra ('severe discipline, harsh correction') awaits the ozev orach ('one who abandons the path, who leaves the way'). The escalation is clear: the sone tokhachat ('hater of correction') yamut ('will die'). Refusal to be corrected is not just foolish — it is fatal. The path metaphor implies that there is a right way, and leaving it has consequences.
11. She'ol va-avaddon ('the grave and destruction/Abaddon') — the deepest, most hidden regions of the cosmos — are neged Yahweh ('before the LORD, in front of Him, visible to Him'). If even the realm of the dead is transparent to God, af ki libboth bene adam ('how much more the hearts of human beings'). The qal va-chomer argument: if the most concealed reality is visible to God, nothing in the human heart can be hidden.
12. The lets ('scoffer') does not love the one who corrects him, and as a result el chakhamim lo yelekh ('to the wise he will not go'). His contempt for correction isolates him from the very people who could help him. The scoffer's defining trait is that he makes himself unreachable.
13. Lev same'ach ('a happy heart') yetiv panim ('makes the face good, brightens the countenance') — inner joy is visible externally. Be-atsvat lev ('in grief of heart, through a heart's sorrow') ruach nekhe'ah ('the spirit is stricken, crushed'). The connection between inner emotional state and outward appearance is treated as observable fact.
14. The navon ('discerning person') has a heart that yevaqqesh da'at ('seeks knowledge') — an active, hungry pursuit of understanding. The fool's mouth yir'eh ivvelet ('grazes on foolishness') — the pastoral metaphor suggests that the fool browses on folly the way a cow grazes in a field, consuming whatever is in front of him without discrimination.
15. Kol yeme ani ra'im ('all the days of the afflicted are evil/hard') — the person weighed down by suffering experiences every day as painful. But the tov lev ('good of heart, cheerful-hearted person') has mishteh tamid ('a perpetual feast'). The feast is not external abundance but internal disposition. The proverb does not deny suffering but asserts that inner attitude transforms the experience of daily life.
16. This verse directly challenges the prosperity theology that could be extracted from other proverbs. The sages assert that the quality of one's relationship with God outweighs the quantity of one's possessions. It is a corrective from within the wisdom tradition itself.

17. Aruchat yaraq ('a portion of vegetables, a humble herb-meal') with ahavah ('love') present outweighs a shor avus ('fattened ox, stall-fed beef') — the finest meat available — accompanied by sin'ah ('hatred'). The proverb moves from verse 16's theological comparison (fear of the LORD versus wealth) to a domestic one (love versus luxury). The principle is the same: relational quality determines the value of material conditions.
18. The ish chemah ('person of fury') yegareh madon ('stirs up strife, provokes quarreling'). The erekh appayim ('slow to anger, patient') yashqit riv ('quiets a dispute, settles a quarrel'). Anger is incendiary; patience is extinguishing. The capacity to remain calm has direct social utility.
19. The atsel ('lazy person') experiences his path as ki-mesukhat chadeq ('like a thorn hedge') — every step is painful and obstructed. But the orach yesharim ('path of the upright') is selulah ('built up, paved, a highway'). The difference is not in the external terrain but in the approach: diligence clears obstacles while laziness lets them accumulate until the path is impassable.
20. This nearly duplicates 10:1. The wise son yesammach av ('makes his father rejoice'). The kesil adam ('foolish person') bozeh immo ('despises his mother'). The pairing of father and mother ensures that both parents are honored — or dishonored — by a child's character.
21. The chasar lev ('one lacking heart/sense') finds simchah ('joy, delight') in ivvelet ('foolishness') — he is entertained by what should alarm him. The ish tevunah ('person of understanding') yeyasher lakhet ('makes his walk straight, maintains a direct course'). The difference between the two is what they find enjoyable: the senseless are amused by folly; the wise are engaged by right direction.
22. Hafer machashavot ('plans are frustrated, purposes are overturned') be-ein sod ('without counsel, without confidential deliberation'). But be-rov yo'atsum taqum ('with many counselors it stands, it is established'). The proverb, echoing 11:14, endorses collective wisdom over solitary decision-making.
23. Simchah la-ish be-ma'aneh fiv ('joy to a person in the answer of his mouth') — the satisfaction of finding the right thing to say. Davar be-itto ('a word in its time, a word at the right moment') mah tov ('how good!') — timing transforms speech. The same word spoken too early or too late has diminished power, but the right word at the right moment is a source of delight.
24. Orach chayyim ('the path of life') is le-ma'lah ('upward') for the maskil ('the wise, insightful person'). The purpose is le-ma'an sur mi-she'ol mattah ('in order to turn aside from She'ol below'). The vertical imagery — upward toward life, downward toward the grave — maps moral direction onto spatial direction. Wisdom lifts; folly descends.
25. The beit ge'im ('house of the arrogant') yissach Yahweh ('the LORD will tear away, uproot, demolish'). But God yatsev ge'vul almanah ('establishes, sets firm, the boundary marker of the widow'). The widow — among the most vulnerable in ancient society — receives God's direct protection of her property rights. God demolishes pride and defends the defenseless.
26. Machshevot ra ('evil plans, wicked schemes') are to'avat Yahweh. But imre no'am ('words of pleasantness, gracious words') are tehorim ('pure, clean'). The contrast pairs internal intention (evil plans) with verbal expression (gracious words), and God evaluates both. Purity of speech reflects purity of heart.
27. The botse'a batsa ('one who cuts off a cut, who pursues unjust gain') oker beto ('troubles his house, brings ruin on his household'). The sone mattanot ('one who hates gifts/bribes') yichyeh ('will live'). Integrity in financial dealings preserves life; greed destroys the entire household.
28. The tsaddiq's heart yehgeh la-anot ('meditates to answer, considers before responding') — the same verb hagah used in Psalm 1:2 for meditation on instruction. The righteous person's speech is pre-processed through reflection. The wicked's mouth yabbi'a ra'ot ('gushes out evil things') — unfiltered, unconsidered, destructive.
29. Rachoq Yahweh me-resha'im ('the LORD is far from the wicked') — distance here means relational alienation, not physical absence (verse 3 already established that God sees everything). God is present everywhere but relationally distant from those who persist in wickedness. Tefillat tsaddiqim yishma ('the prayer of the righteous He hears') — proximity to God is maintained through right living and prayer.
30. Me'or einayim ('light of the eyes, bright eyes, a cheerful look') yesammach lev ('makes the heart rejoice'). Shemu'ah tovah ('good news, a good report') tedashhen etsem ('makes the bones fat, strengthens the frame'). Both lines describe how positive external stimuli — a friendly face, encouraging news — produce internal well-being. The sages understood the body-mind connection.
31. The ozen shoma'at tokhachat chayyim ('ear that hears the correction of life, ear that listens to life-giving rebuke') be-qerev chakhamim talin ('in the midst of the wise will lodge, will dwell'). Receptivity to correction is the entrance fee to the community of the wise. The 'correction of life' is rebuke that leads to life — painful but vital.
32. The pore'a musar ('one who rejects discipline, who lets correction go') is mo'es nafsho ('despises his own soul/life') — refusing correction is a form of self-hatred, because it consigns oneself to avoidable destruction. The shome'a tokhachat ('one who listens to correction') qoneh lev ('acquires heart, gains understanding'). The heart — the seat of thought and wisdom — can be purchased through the currency of humility.
33. Yir'at Yahweh ('the fear of the LORD') is musar chokhmah ('the discipline/instruction of wisdom') — reverencing God is how wisdom trains a person. And lifne khavod anavah ('before honor, humility') — the pathway to genuine honor passes through humility first. Those who try to seize honor directly miss it; those who humble themselves receive it. This verse closes the chapter with the chapter's dominant themes united: fear of God, discipline, and the proper ordering of human ambition.

16

Summary: *Proverbs 16 marks a shift in the Solomonic collection. The first half (verses 1-9) concentrates an unusually dense cluster of 'Yahweh proverbs' — statements about God's sovereignty over human plans, speech, and outcomes. The second half returns to the standard topics of kingship, pride, speech, and the contrast between wisdom and folly. This chapter contains some of the most theologically charged statements in the entire book.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening nine verses form the most sustained meditation on divine sovereignty in Proverbs. The human heart plans, but the LORD directs the tongue (verse 1), evaluates motives (verse 2), establishes plans when committed to Him (verse 3), has made everything for its purpose (verse 4), detests arrogance (verse 5), and directs a person's steps (verse 9). This sequence systematically dismantles human autonomy without destroying human responsibility — the person still plans, still speaks, still acts, but God is the one who determines outcomes. Verse 25 repeats 14:12 verbatim: 'There is a way that seems right to a person, but its end is the ways of death.'*

Translation Friction: *Verse 4 — 'The LORD has made everything for its purpose, even the wicked for the day of trouble' — is one of the most theologically difficult statements in the Hebrew Bible. It can be read as affirming that God has a purpose even for the existence of evil, or more modestly that the wicked will meet their proper end on the day of judgment. The sages do not resolve the tension; they state it and leave it.*

Connections: *The divine-sovereignty cluster in verses 1-9 connects to Jeremiah 10:23 ('I know, LORD, that a person's way is not in their own hands') and James 4:13-15 ('If the Lord wills, we will live and do this or that'). Verse 6 — 'by faithful love and truth sin is atoned for' — echoes the chesed ve-emet pairing from Exodus 34:6. The repetition of 14:12 in verse 25 creates a structural echo across the collection.*

¹A person may arrange his thoughts,
but the answer of the tongue comes from the LORD.

²All a person's ways seem clean to him,
but the LORD weighs the motives.

³Commit your actions to the LORD,
and your plans will be established.

⁴The LORD has made everything for its purpose,
even the wicked for the day of trouble.

⁵Everyone with an arrogant heart is detestable to the LORD;
be assured, he will not go unpunished.

⁶By faithful love and truth wrongdoing is atoned for,
and by the fear of the LORD one turns from evil.

⁷When the LORD is pleased with a person's ways,
He makes even his enemies live at peace with him.

⁸Better a little gained with righteousness
than great income without justice.

⁹A person's heart plans his course,
but the LORD directs his steps.

- ¹⁰An oracle is on the lips of the king;
his mouth must not betray justice.
- ¹¹Honest scales and balances belong to the LORD;
all the weights in the bag are His work.
- ¹²Wicked conduct is detestable to kings,
for a throne is established by righteousness.
- ¹³Righteous speech delights kings,
and they love the one who speaks honestly.
- ¹⁴A king's fury is a messenger of death,
but a wise person can appease it.
- ¹⁵In the light of a king's face there is life,
and his favor is like a cloud of spring rain.
- ¹⁶How much better to acquire wisdom than gold!
To gain understanding is preferable to silver.
- ¹⁷The highway of the upright turns away from evil;
whoever guards his path preserves his life.
- ¹⁸Before destruction comes arrogance,
and before a fall comes a haughty spirit.
- ¹⁹Better to be humble in spirit among the lowly
than to divide plunder with the proud.
- ²⁰Whoever is attentive to a matter will find good,
and whoever trusts in the LORD — how fortunate he is.
- ²¹The wise in heart is called discerning,
and pleasant speech increases persuasiveness.
- ²²Insight is a fountain of life for the one who has it,
but the discipline of fools is foolishness.
- ²³The heart of the wise instructs his mouth
and adds persuasiveness to his speech.
- ²⁴Pleasant words are a honeycomb —
sweet to the soul and healing to the bones.
- ²⁵There is a path that seems straight to a person,
but its end is the ways of death.
- ²⁶The appetite of a worker works for him,
for his hunger drives him on.

²⁷A worthless person digs up evil,
and on his lips is something like a scorching fire.

²⁸A perverse person sows conflict,
and a whisperer separates close friends.

²⁹A violent person lures his neighbor
and leads him down a path that is not good.

³⁰Whoever narrows his eyes is plotting perversion;
whoever purses his lips brings evil to completion.

³¹Gray hair is a crown of splendor;
it is found on the path of righteousness.

³²Better a patient person than a warrior,
and one who controls his temper than one who captures a city.

³³The lot is cast into the lap,
but every decision belongs to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The ma'arkhe lev ('arrangements of the heart') uses military language — ma'arakhah is a battle formation. The human heart lines up its thoughts like troops, but God controls the actual engagement. The gap between preparation and performance belongs to God.
2. Kol darkhe ish zakh be-einav ('all a person's ways are pure in his own eyes') — self-assessment is unreliable because self-interest distorts perception. But tokhen ruchot Yahweh ('the LORD weighs the spirits/motives') — God evaluates the ruach, the inner drive and intention behind the visible behavior. Human beings see surfaces; God calibrates depths.
3. Gol el Yahweh ma'asekha ('roll upon the LORD your works') — the verb gol means to roll a burden off one's own shoulders and onto someone else's. It is an act of trust: placing the weight of one's undertakings onto God. The result is ve-yikkonu machshevotekha ('and your plans will be established, made firm'). Surrender to God does not cancel planning but secures it.
4. The la-ma'anehu is ambiguous — it could mean 'for its own purpose' or 'for His purpose' (God's). The ambiguity may be intentional. The verse pushes the reader toward trust in God's governance even when evil seems purposeless.
4. This verse has generated enormous theological discussion. It does not resolve the problem of evil but asserts that God's sovereignty encompasses it.
5. Kol ge'vach lev ('everyone lifted up of heart, everyone with an arrogant heart') is to'avat Yahweh. The idiom yad le-yad ('hand to hand') means 'you can count on it, certainly, without a doubt.' The proud person will lo yinnaqeh ('not be held innocent, not go unpunished'). Pride is the sin God most consistently and emphatically condemns in Proverbs.
6. Be-chesed ve-emet yekhupar avon ('by faithful love and truth iniquity is covered/atoned for') — the word yekhupar uses the language of cultic atonement (kipper, 'to cover, to make atonement'). The claim is remarkable: the divine attributes of chesed and emet, when expressed in human relationships, have atoning power. And be-yir'at Yahweh sur me-ra ('by the fear of the LORD one turns from evil') — reverence for God is the engine of moral change.
7. Bi-rtsot Yahweh darke ish ('when the LORD delights in a person's ways') gam oyvav yashlim itto ('even his enemies He makes to be at peace with him'). The verb yashlim is from the same root as shalom — God establishes peace even between adversaries when He favors a person's conduct. This is not a guarantee of universal popularity but a statement about God's power to transform hostile relationships.
8. Another 'better than' proverb echoing 15:16-17. Me'at bi-tsedaqah ('a little with righteousness') outweighs rov tevu'ot be-lo mishpat ('abundant income without justice'). The comparison is not between rich and poor but between legitimate and illegitimate gain. Integrity determines the true value of income.
9. This verse is the capstone of verses 1-9. The progression moves from thought (verse 1) through motive (verse 2), commitment (verse 3), purpose (verse 4), pride (verse 5), atonement (verse 6), favor (verse 7), and justice (verse 8) to arrive here: God is sovereign over the actual path a life takes. Human planning is the pencil sketch; God draws in ink.
10. Qesem ('oracle, divination, authoritative pronouncement') describes the king's speech as carrying the weight of divine authority. Be-mishpat lo yim'al piv ('in judgment his mouth must not act unfaithfully') — this is both description and prescription. The king's words carry oracular power,

which makes his responsibility for justice absolute.

11. Peles u-mo'azne mishpat la-Yahweh ('a scale and balances of justice belong to the LORD') — God owns the standard of fair measurement. Ma'asehu kol avne kis ('His work are all the stones of the bag') — every weight-stone used in commerce is ultimately God's creation. Commercial honesty is a theological matter because God made the tools of measurement and claims them as His own.
12. To'avat melakhim asot resha ('an abomination to kings is doing wickedness') — not merely that kings should avoid wickedness but that they should find it repulsive. The reason: ki vi-tsedaqah yikkon kisse ('for by righteousness a throne is made firm'). Stability of governance depends on moral integrity. Wickedness undermines the very foundation of royal authority.
13. Retson melakhim siftei tsedeq ('the delight of kings is lips of righteousness') — good kings value honest advisors. Dover yesharim ye'ehav ('and the one who speaks upright things he loves'). The court setting is implied: wise rulers surround themselves with truthful counselors rather than flatterers.
14. Chamat melekh ('the wrath of a king') is mal'akhe mavet ('messengers of death') — royal anger can be lethal. But ish chakham yekhapperennah ('a wise person can atone for it, can cover it, can pacify it'). The verb kipper (from which Yom Kippur derives) means to cover or deflect — the wise person knows how to de-escalate royal rage.
15. Be-or pene melekh chayyim ('in the light of the king's face is life') — the king's smile signals safety and prosperity. Retsono ke-av malqosh ('his favor is like a cloud of the latter rain') — the malqosh is the spring rain that comes just before harvest, essential for the final ripening of crops. Royal favor is as life-giving as the rain that completes the agricultural cycle.
16. Qenoh chokhmah mah tov me-charuts ('acquiring wisdom — how much better than gold!'). The exclamation mah tov ('how good!') expresses genuine enthusiasm. Qenot binah nivchar mi-kasef ('gaining understanding is to be chosen over silver'). Wisdom and understanding are presented as commodities — they can be 'acquired' and 'gained' — but they outvalue precious metals.
17. Mesillat yesharim ('the highway of the upright') is sur me-ra ('turning aside from evil') — the upright person's road is defined by what it avoids. Shomer nafsho notser darkko ('the one who guards his life preserves his way') — self-preservation and moral vigilance are the same activity.
18. The parallelism pairs shever ('shattering, destruction') with kishalon ('stumbling, tripping, falling') and ga'on ('arrogance, pride') with govah ruach ('height of spirit'). Both lines say the same thing with intensifying imagery: pride is the precondition for collapse.
19. Tov shefal ruach et aniyim ('good is lowliness of spirit with the poor/afflicted') me-challeq shalal et ge'im ('than dividing spoil with the arrogant'). The proverb directly follows verse 18's warning about pride. If pride precedes destruction, then humility among the lowly is the safer — and morally superior — position, even if dividing spoils with the proud is more lucrative.
20. Maskil al davar ('one who gives attention to a matter, who handles a situation with insight') yimtsa tov ('will find good'). Bote'ach ba-Yahweh ashra'v ('the one who trusts in the LORD — his blessednesses, how fortunate he is'). Practical competence and theological trust are presented as complementary, not competing, sources of well-being.
21. The chakham lev ('wise of heart') earns the reputation navon ('discerning'). And meteq sefatayim ('sweetness of lips, pleasant speech') yosif leqach ('adds to learning/persuasiveness'). How something is said affects how much is received. The wise person's content and delivery work together.
22. Sekhel ('insight, good sense') is meqor chayyim ('fountain of life') for its possessors — it sustains them the way a spring sustains a community. But musar evilim ivelet ('the discipline of fools is foolishness') — fools teach each other only how to be more foolish. The correction they give is as empty as their understanding.
23. Lev chakham yaskil pihu ('the heart of the wise makes his mouth prudent') — wisdom in the heart governs what comes out of the mouth. Ve-al sefatav yosif leqach ('and to his lips adds learning/persuasiveness'). Internal wisdom produces external eloquence — the two are connected, not separate.
24. Tsuf devash imre no'am ('a honeycomb of honey are words of pleasantness') — honeycomb is the purest, most natural form of sweetness. Matoq la-nefesh ('sweet to the soul/appetite') u-marpe la-atsem ('and healing to the bone'). Kind speech nourishes the inner person and restores the body. The sages took the healing power of words literally, not just metaphorically.
25. This verse is identical to 14:12 — the only exact repetition in the Solomonic collection. The sages considered this warning important enough to state twice. Self-assessed correctness is unreliable; what looks right can lead to death. The repetition functions as a structural refrain, reminding the reader that human judgment requires external correction.
26. Nefesh amel amlah lo ('the appetite of a toiler toils for him') — hunger is the engine of labor. Ki akhaf alav pihu ('for his mouth bends upon him, presses him, urges him') — the mouth's demands drive the body to work. The proverb is not cynical but observational: physical need is a powerful motivator.
27. Ish beliyya'al ('a man of worthlessness, a scoundrel') koreh ra'ah ('digs up evil') — he excavates trouble, actively searching for ways to cause harm. Al sefato ke-esh tsarevet ('on his lip like a fire that scorches') — his speech burns everything it touches.
28. Ish tahpukhot ('person of perversions, crooked person') yeshallach madon ('sends out strife, sows quarreling'). The nirgan ('whisperer, gossip') mafriid alluf ('separates a close friend, divides an intimate companion'). Gossip is singled out as uniquely destructive to human bonds — it can sever the closest friendships.

- 29.** The *ish chamas* ('person of violence') *yefatteh re'ehu* ('entices his neighbor, seduces his companion'). The verb *patah* ('to entice, to seduce, to deceive') suggests manipulation rather than force — the violent person draws others in through false promises before revealing the true nature of the road.
- 30.** The body language of the schemer: *otseh einav* ('closing/narrowing his eyes') to plan *tahpukhot* ('perversions, crooked schemes'), and *qorets sefatav* ('pinching/pursing his lips') as he *killah ra'ah* ('completes evil, brings harm to fruition'). The sages were acute observers of nonverbal communication — they could read conspiracy in facial expressions.
- 31.** *Ateret tiferet sevh* ('a crown of beauty/splendor is gray hair') — old age is honored, not despised. But the qualifying clause matters: *be-derekh tsedaqah timmatse* ('on the path of righteousness it is found'). The crown is not automatic — it belongs to those who have lived rightly. Gray hair earned through righteous living is beautiful; gray hair alone is merely aging.
- 32.** The *gibbor* ('warrior, hero, mighty man') was the most admired figure in ancient Near Eastern culture. To say that patience surpasses him is a radical revaluation of strength. The proverb does not denigrate military courage but elevates emotional mastery above it.
- 33.** *Ba-cheiq yutal et ha-goral* ('into the lap the lot is thrown') — casting lots was a standard method of decision-making in the ancient world, used when human wisdom had reached its limits. *U-me-Yahweh kol mishpato* ('and from the LORD is all its judgment/decision') — even the apparently random fall of the lot is under God's governance. The chapter that began with divine sovereignty over human speech (verse 1) closes with divine sovereignty over chance itself. Nothing falls outside God's jurisdiction.

17

Summary: *Proverbs 17 continues the Solomonic collection with twenty-eight proverbs that examine friendship, family bonds, the power and limits of speech, and the social consequences of conflict. The chapter gives particular attention to what holds relationships together and what tears them apart, with several proverbs exploring the nature of genuine friendship versus opportunistic alliance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 17 — 'A friend loves at all times, and a brother is born for adversity' — is one of the most enduring statements on loyalty in world literature. The chapter also contains the remarkable medical observation that 'a joyful heart is good medicine, but a crushed spirit dries up the bones' (verse 22), anticipating by millennia the scientific recognition that emotional state affects physical health. Verse 3 uses the smelting metaphor — God refines hearts the way a crucible refines metal — which becomes one of the Hebrew Bible's most important images for divine testing.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 2 — 'A prudent servant will rule over a disgraceful son' — reflects the social dynamics of an era when servitude was a normal economic institution. The proverb's point is about merit overriding birthright, which is radical within its context, but the modern reader will note the assumption of a servant class. Verse 26 warns against punishing the righteous and striking nobles — the concern with protecting the powerful as well as the innocent reflects a hierarchical social order that modern readers may find uncomfortable.*

Connections: *The refining metaphor in verse 3 echoes Malachi 3:2-3 and 1 Peter 1:7. The 'friend who loves at all times' in verse 17 anticipates Jonathan's friendship with David (1 Samuel 18-20) and Jesus's statement 'Greater love has no one than this: to lay down one's life for one's friends' (John 15:13). The 'joyful heart as medicine' in verse 22 connects to 15:13 and 15:15.*

¹Better a dry crust with peace
than a house full of feasting with conflict.

²A shrewd servant will rule over a disgraceful son
and will share the inheritance among the brothers.

³The crucible is for silver and the furnace for gold,
but the LORD tests hearts.

- ⁴An evildoer listens to wicked lips;
a liar gives ear to a destructive tongue.
- ⁵Whoever mocks the poor insults his Maker;
whoever rejoices over disaster will not go unpunished.
- ⁶Grandchildren are the crown of the elderly,
and the glory of children is their parents.
- ⁷Fine speech does not suit a fool —
how much less do lying lips suit a noble.
- ⁸A bribe is like a magic stone in the eyes of its giver —
wherever he turns, he succeeds.
- ⁹Whoever covers an offense seeks love,
but whoever keeps bringing it up separates close friends.
- ¹⁰A rebuke goes deeper into a perceptive person
than a hundred blows into a fool.
- ¹¹A rebellious person seeks only evil,
so a merciless messenger will be sent against him.
- ¹²Better to meet a bear robbed of her cubs
than a fool caught up in his foolishness.
- ¹³Whoever returns evil for good —
evil will never leave his house.
- ¹⁴Starting a quarrel is like releasing water —
so drop the dispute before it breaks loose.
- ¹⁵Acquitting the guilty and condemning the innocent —
both are detestable to the LORD.
- ¹⁶Why should a fool have money in hand to buy wisdom
when he has no sense?
- ¹⁷A true friend shows love at every turn,
and a brother is born for adversity.
- ¹⁸A person who lacks sense shakes hands on a pledge
and puts up security in his neighbor's presence.
- ¹⁹Whoever loves conflict loves transgression;
whoever builds his gate high invites ruin.
- ²⁰The twisted in heart finds nothing good,
and the one who distorts with his tongue falls into trouble.

²¹Whoever fathers a fool does so to his own grief;
the parent of a senseless child has no joy.

²²A joyful heart is good medicine,
but a crushed spirit dries up the bones.

²³The wicked takes a bribe from inside his robe
to pervert the course of justice.

²⁴Wisdom is right in front of the discerning,
but the eyes of a fool roam to the ends of the earth.

²⁵A foolish son is a grief to his father
and bitterness to the mother who bore him.

²⁶Punishing the righteous is not right,
nor is striking the noble for their integrity.

²⁷The one who has knowledge uses few words,
and the person of understanding keeps a cool head.

²⁸Even a fool who keeps silent is considered wise;
whoever seals his lips is thought discerning.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Pat charevah ('a dry piece of bread, a crust') with shalvah ('tranquility, peace, quietness') outweighs bayit male zivche riv ('a house full of sacrifice-feasts with strife'). The zivchei riv are meat from sacrificial offerings — the finest food available. But abundance is worthless when accompanied by quarreling. This echoes 15:17 and reinforces the priority of relational quality over material quantity.
2. The eved maskil ('servant who acts with insight') yimshol ('will rule over') the ben mevish ('son who causes shame'). Merit overrides birth order. The servant will even yachaloq nachalah ('divide the inheritance') among the brothers — gaining economic standing that would normally be reserved for biological heirs. Competence rewrites social hierarchy.
3. The refining metaphor is one of the Hebrew Bible's most important images for divine testing. It appears in Psalm 66:10, Isaiah 48:10, Zechariah 13:9, and Malachi 3:2-3. The process is painful but purposeful — it does not destroy but purifies.
4. The mera ('evildoer') maqshiv al sefat aven ('gives attention to a lip of iniquity'). The sheqer ('liar') mezin al leshon havvot ('gives ear to a tongue of destruction'). People seek out speech that matches their own character — the wicked are drawn to wicked talk, and liars find other liars' words appealing. Moral character determines what information you consume.
5. This echoes 14:31. The lo'eg la-rash ('one who mocks the poor') cheref osehu ('reproaches his Maker') — mockery of the poor is mockery of God who created the poor person. The same'ach le-eid ('one who rejoices at calamity, who celebrates another's disaster') lo yinnaqeh ('will not be held innocent'). Schadenfreude is a moral offense with divine consequences.
6. Ateret zeqenim bene vanim ('the crown of old people is their grandchildren') — a long life crowned by grandchildren is the highest form of earthly blessing in the wisdom tradition. Ve-tiferet banim avotam ('and the glory of children is their fathers/parents') — children derive their sense of identity and honor from their parents. The bonds run both directions: the old are crowned by the young, and the young are adorned by the old.
7. Sefat yeter ('a lip of excess, fine/eloquent speech') does not suit the naval ('fool, churlish person'). The qal va-chomer intensifies: af ki le-nadiv sefat shaqer ('how much less lying speech for a noble/generous person'). If fine speech is wasted on a fool, then lying is even more inappropriate for someone who should be noble. The proverb is about the fitness between a person's character and their speech.
8. Even chen ('a stone of grace/charm, a magic stone') — the shochad ('bribe, gift') appears to its possessor as an all-powerful tool. El kol asher yifneh yaskil ('wherever he turns he prospers/succeeds'). The proverb observes the perceived power of bribery without necessarily endorsing it — it describes how the briber sees the world. Bribery works, at least in appearance.
9. The verb mekhasseh ('covers') does not mean hiding wrongdoing from accountability but choosing not to rehearse a forgiven offense. The second line's shoneh ('repeats, brings up again') is the opposite action — constantly returning to the wound.

10. Techat ge'arah be-mevin ('a rebuke descends into one who understands') more effectively me-hakkot kesil me'ah ('than striking a fool a hundred times'). One word of correction, received by a person with understanding, accomplishes more than extreme physical punishment applied to someone who lacks discernment. The difference is in the receiver, not the correction.
11. The meri ('rebellious, defiant one') yevaqqesh ra ('seeks evil') — rebellion is not neutral independence but active pursuit of harm. The consequence is that a mal'akh akhzari ('cruel/merciless messenger') yeshullach bo ('is sent against him'). Whether this is a human agent of judgment or a metaphor for inescapable consequences, the point is clear: rebellion against moral order triggers a severe response.
12. Pagosh dov shakkul be-ish ('let a bear bereaved of cubs meet a person') — a mother bear whose cubs have been taken is one of the most dangerous animals in the ancient Near Eastern imagination. Yet the proverb says: ve-al kesil be-ivvalto ('and not a fool in his folly'). The fool in the grip of his foolishness is more dangerous than a raging bear. The comparison is deliberately extreme — foolishness is not merely annoying but lethal.
13. The meshiv ra'ah tachat tovah ('one who returns evil in exchange for good') will find that lo tamush ra'ah mi-beto ('evil will not depart from his house'). The betrayal of kindness triggers a permanent curse — the person who repays good with evil sets in motion a chain of consequences that will haunt his household indefinitely. This is one of the strongest statements about moral causation in the collection.
14. The hydraulic metaphor is brilliant: water pressure builds behind a dam, and the smallest breach becomes catastrophic. The verb poter ('releases, lets out') describes a deliberate action — the person who starts a quarrel is choosing to open the floodgate.
15. Matsdiq rasha ('one who declares the wicked righteous, who acquits the guilty') and marshi'a tsaddiq ('one who condemns the righteous, who declares the innocent guilty') — both inversions of justice are to'avat Yahweh gam sheneihem ('an abomination to the LORD, both of them'). God is equally offended by both forms of judicial corruption. Injustice in either direction provokes the same divine revulsion.
16. The rhetorical question expresses exasperation: lammah zeh mechir be-yad kesil liqnot chokhmah ('why is there a purchase price in the hand of a fool to buy wisdom') ve-lev ayin ('and heart there is none')? The fool may have the resources (mechir, 'price, payment') but lacks the lev ('heart, mind, capacity') to receive what he purchases. Wisdom cannot be bought by those who lack the inner capacity to understand it.
17. The verb yivvala ('is born') is striking — it does not say a brother 'appears' or 'shows up' in adversity but that he was born for it. His existence finds its purpose in the crisis. This verse defines friendship and brotherhood in terms of loyalty under pressure.
18. Adam chasar lev ('a person lacking heart/sense') toqe'a kaf ('strikes the hand, shakes hands') — the handshake seals a financial guarantee. He orev aruvah ('pledges a pledge, takes on surety') lifne re'ehu ('before his neighbor'). The warning against surety recurs throughout Proverbs (6:1-5, 11:15) — it is foolish to take financial responsibility for another person's debts.
19. Ohev pasha ohev matstsah ('one who loves transgression loves strife') — the two are inseparable. The one who magbiha pitcho ('raises his doorway high, builds an ostentatious gate') mevaqqesh shaver ('seeks breaking/ruin'). The high gate may symbolize arrogance — making oneself conspicuous invites destruction. Or it may be literal: an extravagant entrance signals wealth that attracts danger.
20. The iqqesh lev ('twisted-hearted') lo yimtsa tov ('does not find good') — a crooked heart cannot recognize or receive what is genuinely beneficial. The nehpath bi-lshono ('one who overturns/distorts with his tongue') yippol be-ra'ah ('falls into evil/calamity'). Both internal crookedness and verbal distortion lead to the same outcome: trouble.
21. Yoled kesil le-tugah lo ('the one who begets a fool — for grief it is to him'). The pain is inescapable: a foolish child is a permanent source of sorrow. Ve-lo yismach avi naval ('and the father of a churlish person does not rejoice'). The naval is not merely stupid but morally deficient — churlish, crass, and incapable of decency.
22. Lev same'ach yetiv gehah ('a joyful heart makes healing good, does good like a cure') — inner joy has medicinal power. Ruach nekhe'ah teyabbesh garem ('a crushed spirit dries up the bone') — emotional devastation produces physical deterioration. The sages understood what modern psychoneuroimmunology confirms: emotional states affect bodily health. This is not metaphor but observed reality presented as wisdom.
23. Shochad me-cheiq ('a bribe from the bosom/fold of the garment') — hidden, secretive, passed discreetly — rasha yiqqach ('a wicked person takes/accepts'). The purpose: le-hattot orchot mishpat ('to bend the paths of justice, to pervert the course of judgment'). Bribery distorts the legal system, and the secrecy of the transaction underscores its shame.
24. Et pene mevin chokhmah ('before the face of the discerning person is wisdom') — wisdom is immediately available to the person who has understanding; it is right there. But eine kesil bi-qtsah arets ('the eyes of a fool are at the end of the earth') — the fool looks everywhere except where wisdom actually is. His attention is scattered to the far horizons while wisdom stands directly in front of him.
25. Ka'as le-aviv ben kesil ('vexation to his father is a foolish son') and memer le-yoladeto ('bitterness to the one who bore him, to his mother'). Both parents suffer. The father experiences ka'as ('vexation, anger, grief') and the mother memer ('bitterness'). A child's foolishness is the deepest disappointment a parent can face.
26. Gam anosh la-tsaddiq lo tov ('also to fine/punish the righteous is not good') — the legal system must not penalize those who are in the right. Le-hakkot nedivim al yosher ('to strike nobles for uprightness') — those in positions of honor should not be punished for doing what is right. The verse defends the just from unjust punishment and the honorable from retaliation for their integrity.
27. Chosekh amarav yode'a da'at ('the one who restrains his words knows knowledge') — economy of speech is a sign of genuine knowledge. Yeqar ruach ish tevunah ('precious/cool of spirit is a person of understanding') — the person of understanding does not overheat emotionally. Both restraint in speech and coolness of temperament mark the truly wise.

28. Gam evil macharish chakham yechashev ('even a fool, when he is silent, is reckoned wise'). The humor is intentional: a fool's best strategy is silence, because the moment he opens his mouth he reveals his folly. Otem sefatav navon ('the one who shuts his lips is considered discerning'). Silence is the most accessible form of wisdom — anyone can practice it.

18

Summary: *Proverbs 18 delivers twenty-four proverbs that probe the power of speech, the nature of isolation, the reliability of wealth versus the reliability of God, and the dynamics of conflict and friendship. The chapter is notable for its concentration of proverbs about the tongue and its consequences — words are presented as forces that either build or destroy, with life-and-death implications.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 10 — 'The name of the LORD is a strong tower; the righteous runs into it and is safe' — is one of the most beloved verses in Proverbs, creating a vivid image of God's name as a fortified refuge. Verse 21 — 'Death and life are in the power of the tongue' — is perhaps the single most quoted proverb about speech in the entire collection. The chapter also contains the devastating observation that a person's gift 'makes room for him' (verse 16), a realistic assessment of how patronage and access work in hierarchical societies.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 22 — 'He who finds a wife finds a good thing and obtains favor from the LORD' — celebrates marriage as a divine blessing but uses language that modern readers may find one-directional. The Hebrew matsa ishah ('finds a woman/wife') reflects a social context in which marriage was initiated by the man. The theological point — that marriage is a source of divine favor — stands, but the relational dynamics described reflect ancient practice. Verse 11 describes the rich person's wealth as 'a high wall in his imagination,' which may critique false security or simply observe it.*

Connections: *The 'strong tower' of verse 10 echoes Psalm 61:3 and 2 Samuel 22:3. The death-and-life power of the tongue in verse 21 anticipates James 3:1-12. The finding of a wife as divine favor in verse 22 connects to Proverbs 19:14 and 31:10. The deep-waters imagery in verse 4 echoes 20:5.*

¹The one who isolates himself pursues his own desire;
he lashes out against all sound judgment.

²A fool takes no pleasure in understanding,
but only in displaying his own opinions.

³When wickedness arrives, contempt comes with it,
and with dishonor comes disgrace.

⁴The words of a person's mouth are deep waters;
the fountain of wisdom is a flowing stream.

⁵Showing partiality to the wicked is not right,
nor is depriving the righteous of justice.

⁶A fool's lips walk into a fight,
and his mouth calls for a beating.

⁷A fool's mouth is his ruin,
and his lips are a trap for his own life.

⁸The words of a gossip are like choice morsels;
they go down into the innermost parts.

- ⁹Whoever is careless in his work
is a brother to the one who destroys.
- ¹⁰The LORD's name is a fortified tower;
the righteous runs into it and is safe.
- ¹¹The wealth of the rich is his fortified city,
and like a high wall — in his imagination.
- ¹²Before destruction a person's heart is proud,
and before honor comes humility.
- ¹³Whoever answers before listening —
that is his foolishness and his disgrace.
- ¹⁴A person's spirit can endure his illness,
but a crushed spirit — who can bear it?
- ¹⁵The heart of the discerning acquires knowledge,
and the ear of the wise seeks knowledge.
- ¹⁶A person's gift makes room for him
and brings him into the presence of the powerful.
- ¹⁷The first to state his case seems right
until his neighbor comes and cross-examines him.
- ¹⁸Casting lots settles disputes
and separates powerful opponents.
- ¹⁹A brother who has been wronged is harder to reach than a fortified city,
and quarrels between them are like the bars of a fortress.
- ²⁰From the fruit of his mouth a person's stomach is filled;
by the harvest of his lips he is satisfied.
- ²¹Death and life are in the power of the tongue,
and those who love it will eat its fruit.
- ²²Whoever finds a wife finds a good thing
and receives favor from the LORD.
- ²³The poor person speaks with pleas,
but the rich person answers harshly.
- ²⁴A person with many companions may be ruined,
but there is a friend who sticks closer than a brother.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Le-ta'avah yevaqqesh nifrad ('for desire/appetite the separated one seeks') — the person who isolates himself from community is driven by selfish craving. Be-khol tushiyyah yitgalla ('against all sound judgment he breaks out, he quarrels'). Isolation breeds selfishness and hostility toward wisdom. The proverb warns that withdrawal from community is not independence but self-destruction.

2. Lo yachpots kesil bi-tevunah ('a fool does not delight in understanding') — understanding does not interest him. Ki im be-hitgallot libbo ('but only in the uncovering of his heart, in revealing what is in his mind'). The fool's pleasure is self-expression, not comprehension. He wants to broadcast, not receive.
3. Be-vo rasha ba gam buz ('when the wicked comes, contempt also comes') — wickedness does not travel alone; it brings a retinue of social consequences. Ve-im qalon cherpah ('and with dishonor, reproach'). The wicked person's arrival brings an atmosphere of contempt and shame into every setting.
4. The relationship between the two lines is debated. They may be synonymous (speech is deep and flowing), or antithetic (ordinary speech is murky depths; wisdom is a clear stream). The ambiguity may be intentional — the proverb itself has deep waters.
5. Se'et pene rasha lo tov ('lifting the face of the wicked is not good') — to 'lift the face' means to show favoritism, to give special treatment. Le-hattot tsaddiq ba-mishpat ('to bend the righteous in judgment') — to distort justice against the innocent. Both judicial bias and perversion of verdict are condemned.
6. Sifte kesil yavo'u ve-riv ('a fool's lips enter into strife, walk into a quarrel') — the fool's mouth leads him into conflicts he cannot handle. U-fiv le-mahalumot yiqra ('and his mouth calls for blows'). The fool's speech is so provocative that it effectively invites physical retaliation. His words write checks his body cannot cash.
7. Pi kesil mechittah lo ('a fool's mouth is ruin/destruction to him') and sefatav moqesh nafsho ('his lips are a snare for his soul/life'). The fool's own speech becomes the instrument of his downfall. He needs no external enemy; his mouth is both the weapon and the trap.
8. Divre nirgan ('the words of a gossip/whisperer') ke-mitlahamim ('are like things greedily swallowed, like choice morsels') — gossip is delicious. People consume it eagerly. Ve-hem yaredu chadre vaten ('and they go down into the chambers of the belly, into the innermost parts'). Gossip does not stay on the surface; it penetrates deeply, lodging in the core of a person's being where it shapes attitudes and destroys relationships from within.
9. Gam mitrappeh bi-melakhto ('even the one who is slack/careless in his work') ach hu le-va'al mashchit ('is a brother to the master of destruction'). Negligence and active destruction are siblings — the lazy person and the vandal produce the same result. What is not maintained falls apart just as effectively as what is deliberately ruined.
10. The 'name of the LORD' (shem Yahweh) is not a magical formula but the full weight of God's revealed character — His faithfulness, His power, His covenant loyalty. To run to God's name is to trust in who God has shown Himself to be.
11. Hon ashir qiryat uzza ('the wealth of the rich person is his strong city') — placed immediately after the 'strong tower' of God's name, this verse creates a deliberate contrast. The rich person sees his wealth as a fortress. But u-ke-chomah nisgavah be-maskito ('and like a wall set high — in his imagination/conception'). The word maskit ('imagination, conception, mental image') is devastating: the wall is not real. It exists only in the rich person's mind. The security that wealth provides is a mental construct, not an actual fortification.
12. Lifne shever yigbah lev ish ('before shattering, a person's heart is high/proud') — echoing 16:18, pride precedes the fall. Ve-lifne khavod anavah ('and before honor, humility') — echoing 15:33. The chapter places these familiar truths in the context of verses 10-11: true security (God's name) produces humility; false security (wealth) produces the pride that precedes destruction.
13. Meshiv davar be-terem yishma ('one who returns a word before he hears') — answering before you have fully listened. Ivvelet hi lo u-khlimmah ('foolishness it is to him and shame'). Premature response is both foolish (because uninformed) and shameful (because it disrespects the speaker). Listening must precede speaking.
14. Ruach ish yekhalkel machalehu ('a person's spirit sustains/supports his sickness') — inner resilience can carry a person through physical illness. But ruach nekhe'ah mi yissa'annah ('a crushed spirit — who will bear it?'). Physical illness can be endured if the spirit is strong; but when the spirit itself is broken, there is nothing left to bear the weight. The question is rhetorical: no one can carry a broken spirit. This is why emotional and spiritual health are more fundamental than physical health.
15. Both heart and ear are engaged: the navon's heart yiqneh da'at ('acquires knowledge') and the wise person's ear tevaqqesh da'at ('seeks knowledge'). Knowledge is not passively received but actively pursued through both internal reflection (heart) and attentive listening (ear).
16. Mattan adam yarchiv lo ('a person's gift broadens/makes room for him') — a well-placed gift opens doors, creates space, expands opportunities. Ve-lifne gedolim yanchennuh ('and before great ones it leads him'). The proverb observes the social reality of patronage without necessarily endorsing it. Gifts — whether bribes, strategic presents, or demonstrations of generosity — are the currency of access in hierarchical societies.
17. Tsaddiq ha-rishon be-rivo ('the first in his dispute appears righteous/right') — whoever speaks first in a legal dispute has the advantage of the unchallenged narrative. U-va re'ehu va-chaqaro ('and his neighbor comes and examines him, cross-examines him'). The proverb is a warning against premature judgment: do not decide until you have heard both sides. Every story sounds convincing until it is tested.
18. Ha-goral ('the lot') yashbit midyanim ('causes disputes to cease'). When negotiation fails and both parties are too powerful to yield, the lot — understood as expressing God's decision (see 16:33) — provides a resolution that both sides accept. U-vein atumin yafrid ('and between powerful ones it separates/decides'). The lot is a dispute-resolution mechanism for conflicts that human wisdom cannot settle.
19. Ach nifsha mi-qiryat oz ('a brother who has been offended/transgressed against — more than a city of strength') — a betrayed family member is harder to win back than a walled city is to conquer. U-medanim ki-veriach armon ('and quarrels are like the bar of a fortress/palace'). The bar that secures a fortress gate is the last and strongest defense — once a family quarrel reaches that level of entrenchment, it becomes nearly impenetrable.

The proverb acknowledges that broken family bonds are among the most difficult of all human problems to repair.

20. Mi-peri fi ish tisba bitno ('from the fruit of a person's mouth his belly is satisfied') — speech produces consequences that feed back to the speaker. Tevu'at sefatav yisba ('the produce of his lips satisfies him'). The agricultural metaphor — fruit, harvest, produce — treats speech as something planted and cultivated. You eat what your mouth has planted.
21. The 'power of the tongue' (yad lashon, 'the hand of the tongue') personifies the tongue as having a hand — an agency, a capacity to act. This verse is the culmination of the chapter's sustained meditation on speech and its consequences.
22. Matsa islah matsa tov ('finds a woman/wife, finds good') — marriage is categorized as tov, the same word used in Genesis 1 for God's evaluation of creation. Va-yafek ratson me-Yahweh ('and he draws out favor from the LORD'). Marriage is not merely a human arrangement but a channel of divine blessing. The proverb celebrates the institution without specifying the characteristics of the wife — the simple fact of marriage, when rightly entered, is itself the good.
23. Tachanunim yedabber rash ('with entreaties the poor person speaks') — poverty forces a person into the posture of begging, requesting, pleading. Ve-ashir ya'aneh azzot ('and the rich person answers harshly/roughly'). Wealth gives a person the social license to be blunt, rude, and dismissive. The proverb describes this dynamic without endorsing it — it is a sociological observation about how economic power shapes social interaction.
24. Ish re'im le-hitro'e'a ('a person of companions/friends — to be broken/shattered') — having many shallow friendships can lead to ruin, because quantity of associations is not quality of relationship. Ve-yesh ohev daveq me-ach ('but there is a friend who clings/sticks closer than a brother'). The rare, deep friendship — the one friend who is daveq ('clinging, adhering, stuck fast') — outweighs all casual connections. This echoes 17:17's friend who loves at all times.

19

Summary: *Proverbs 19 contains twenty-nine proverbs that give extended attention to poverty, wealth, and the social dynamics that surround economic status. The chapter also probes family relationships — the grief caused by foolish children, the gift of a prudent wife, the responsibilities of parents in discipline — and returns repeatedly to the consequences of laziness, lying, and the refusal to learn.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains some of the most socially aware proverbs in the collection. The observation that the poor person is abandoned even by his brothers (verse 7) and that wealth attracts friends while poverty repels them (verse 4) shows the sages' unflinching recognition of economic reality. But the chapter also insists that God stands with the poor: whoever is generous to the poor lends to the LORD (verse 17), and whoever oppresses them will be repaid. The chapter holds both observations — social cruelty toward the poor and divine solidarity with the poor — in unresolved tension.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 13 describes a foolish son as 'ruin to his father' and a quarrelsome wife as 'a constant dripping,' both harsh images. The parallel structure risks equating a bad child with a bad spouse, and the gendered language reflects the male perspective of the ancient sages. Verse 18 urges discipline 'while there is hope' but warns 'do not set your heart on his destruction,' suggesting that the line between corrective discipline and destructive rage was recognized as a real danger in ancient parenting.*

Connections: *The 'lending to the LORD' in verse 17 anticipates Jesus's identification with the poor in Matthew 25:40. The 'prudent wife from the LORD' in verse 14 connects to 18:22 and the eshet chayil of 31:10. The laziness theme (verses 15, 24) echoes the 'sloppard passages' in 6:6-11 and 26:13-16.*

¹Better a poor person who walks in integrity
than one who has twisted speech and is a fool.

²Desire without knowledge is not good,
and whoever rushes ahead misses the mark.

³A person's own foolishness ruins his path,
and then his heart rages against the LORD.

⁴Wealth adds many friends,
but the poor person is separated from his companion.

⁵A false witness will not go unpunished,
and whoever breathes out lies will not escape.

⁶Many seek the favor of a generous person,
and everyone is a friend to the one who gives gifts.

⁷All the brothers of a poor person despise him —
how much more do his friends keep their distance!
He chases them with pleas, but they are gone.

⁸Whoever acquires sense loves his own life;
whoever guards understanding will find good.

⁹A false witness will not go unpunished,
and whoever breathes out lies will perish.

¹⁰Luxury does not suit a fool,
much less for a servant to rule over princes.

¹¹A person's insight makes him slow to anger,
and it is his glory to overlook an offense.

¹²A king's fury is like the roar of a lion,
but his favor is like dew on the grass.

¹³A foolish son is ruin to his father,
and a wife's quarreling is a constant dripping.

¹⁴House and wealth are inherited from parents,
but a prudent wife is from the LORD.

¹⁵Laziness casts a person into a deep sleep,
and an idle appetite goes hungry.

¹⁶Whoever keeps a command guards his own life,
but whoever despises his ways will die.

¹⁷Whoever is generous to the poor lends to the LORD,
and He will repay him for his good deed.

¹⁸Discipline your son while there is still hope,
but do not set your heart on destroying him.

¹⁹A hot-tempered person must pay the penalty;
if you rescue him, you will only have to do it again.

²⁰Listen to advice and accept discipline,
so that you will be wise in the end.

- ²¹Many plans fill a person's heart,
but the counsel of the LORD — that will stand.
- ²²What is desirable in a person is his faithful love,
and a poor person is better than a liar.
- ²³The fear of the LORD leads to life;
whoever has it rests satisfied, untouched by harm.
- ²⁴The lazy person buries his hand in the dish
but will not even bring it back to his mouth.
- ²⁵Strike a scoffer and the naive learns caution;
correct the discerning and he gains knowledge.
- ²⁶A son who ruins his father and drives out his mother
is a source of shame and disgrace.
- ²⁷Stop listening, my son, to instruction
that leads you away from words of knowledge.
- ²⁸A worthless witness mocks justice,
and the mouth of the wicked swallows down wrongdoing.
- ²⁹Judgments are prepared for scoffers,
and beatings for the backs of fools.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Tov rash holekh be-tummo ('good is the poor who walks in his wholeness/integrity') me-iqqesh sefatav ve-hu kesil ('than one twisted of lips who is a fool'). Integrity outranks economic status. The poor person with a straight path is better off — morally and ultimately — than the person whose speech is crooked, regardless of his wealth.
2. Gam be-lo da'at nefesh lo tov ('also without knowledge, a soul/desire is not good') — even good intentions, when uninformed, produce bad results. Ve-ats be-raglayim choter ('and hasty with feet sins/misses'). Speed without wisdom leads to error. The pairing of ignorance and haste suggests that both are forms of the same problem: acting without adequate preparation.
3. Ivetet adam tesallef darkko ('a person's foolishness overturns/perverts his way') — his own folly wrecks his life. Ve-al Yahweh yiz'af libbo ('and against the LORD his heart rages/is indignant'). The irony is devastating: the person destroys his own path through foolishness and then blames God for the results. Self-inflicted ruin followed by theological blame-shifting is a pattern the sages recognized and condemned.
4. Hon yosif re'im rabbim ('wealth adds/multiplies many friends') — money is magnetic; people gravitate toward it. Ve-dal me-re'ehu yippared ('and the poor from his friend is separated'). Poverty isolates. The proverb does not celebrate this dynamic but observes it with clear eyes. The sages saw through the pretense of wealth-based friendship.
5. Ed sheqarim lo yinnaqeh ('a witness of falsehoods will not be held innocent') and yafiach kezavim lo yimalet ('one who breathes out lies will not escape'). The double assertion — not unpunished, not escaped — emphasizes certainty. The legal system and the moral order both catch up with liars eventually.
6. Rabbim yechallu pene nadv ('many entreat the face of a generous person/noble') — people flock to those who give. Ve-khol ha-re'a le-ish mattan ('and everyone is a friend to the person of gifts'). Generosity attracts friendship, but the proverb leaves open whether these friendships are genuine or mercenary.
7. The Hebrew of the final clause is textually difficult. The sense is clear even if the syntax is fractured: the poor person calls after people who are already gone. The broken syntax may itself mirror the desperation — the sentence falls apart, just as the relationships have.
8. Qoneh lev ohev nafsho ('the one who acquires heart/sense loves his own soul/life') — pursuing wisdom is an act of self-care, not self-denial. Shomer tevunah limtso tov ('the one who guards understanding — to find good'). Understanding is something that must be both acquired and maintained. Those who do both will find tov — the good that the moral order reliably provides.

9. Nearly identical to verse 5, but the final verb escalates: from *lo yimalet* ('will not escape') to *yoved* ('will perish'). The repetition with intensification drives the point home: lying under oath is not merely punishable but ultimately fatal.
10. *Lo na'veh li-khsil ta'anug* ('luxury/pleasure is not fitting for a fool') — the fool lacks the character to handle prosperity well. *Af ki le-eved meshol be-sarim* ('how much less for a servant to rule over princes'). The *qal va-chomer* argument: if even a free fool cannot handle luxury, a servant ruling princes is even more out of order. The proverb addresses the disruption caused when people hold positions they are not suited for.
11. *Sekhel adam he'erikh appo* ('a person's insight lengthens his anger, makes him slow to anger') — the same quality that produces wisdom also produces patience. *Ve-tif'arto avor al pesha* ('and his splendor/glory is to pass over a transgression'). The person who can let an offense go — who has the strength to not retaliate — possesses *tif'arah* ('beauty, glory, splendor'). Forgiveness is not weakness but magnificence.
12. *Naham ka-kefir za'af melekh* ('like the roaring of a young lion is the king's rage') — terrifying, dangerous, inescapable. *U-ke-tal al esev retsono* ('and like dew on the grass is his favor'). Dew is gentle, life-giving, and arrives quietly in the early morning. The contrast captures the two poles of royal power: lethal anger and nourishing favor.
13. *Havvot le-aviv ben kesil* ('destruction/ruin to his father is a foolish son'). The *havvot* ('calamities, destructions') — plural intensifies — reduce the father's life to wreckage. *Delef tored midyene ishah* ('a dripping that drives away is the quarreling of a wife'). The image is of a roof leak that never stops — maddening, relentless, erosive. Both images describe forms of domestic misery that cannot be escaped because they come from within the household itself.
14. *Bayit va-hon nachalat avot* ('house and wealth are the inheritance of fathers/parents') — material assets can be passed down through generations. *U-me-Yahweh ishah maskalelet* ('but from the LORD is a wife who acts wisely'). A wise spouse cannot be inherited, purchased, or manufactured — she is a direct gift from God. This elevates the prudent wife above all material possessions in the hierarchy of blessings.
15. *Atslah tappil tardemah* ('laziness causes to fall a deep sleep') — the *tardemah* is the kind of supernatural deep sleep that fell on Adam (Genesis 2:21) and Abraham (Genesis 15:12). Laziness produces a stupor so profound it is almost supernatural. *Ve-nefesh remiyyah tir'av* ('and a slack/idle soul will go hungry'). The lazy person does not just underperform — he loses consciousness of his own needs until hunger forces him awake.
16. *Shomer mitsvah shomer nafsho* ('the one who guards a command guards his soul/life') — obedience to authoritative instruction is self-preservation. *Bozehr derakhav yamut* ('the one who despises his ways will die'). To 'despise one's ways' is to be careless about one's own conduct, to treat one's moral direction as unimportant. Such carelessness is fatal.
17. The commercial language (*malveh*, 'lends'; *yeshalleh*, 'repays') is deliberate. God is not merely pleased by generosity — He incurs a debt. This transforms charity from a one-way gift into a divine investment with guaranteed returns.
18. *Yasser binkha ki yesh tiqvah* ('discipline your son because there is hope') — the window for effective correction is limited. While the child is still forming, discipline can change his trajectory. *Ve-el hamito al tissa nafshekha* ('and toward his death/destruction do not lift up your soul'). The second line is a warning: discipline must not become rage. The parent who disciplines with the goal of genuine formation is wise; the parent who crosses into destructive anger has ceased to parent.
19. The *gedol chemah* ('great of fury, hot-tempered person') nose *onesh* ('bears punishment, pays the penalty') — his rage generates consequences he must absorb. *Ki im tatsil ve-od tosif* ('for if you deliver him, again you will need to add/repeat'). Rescuing a person from the consequences of his temper is futile — you will have to keep doing it because the underlying anger has not changed. The proverb warns against enabling habitual anger.
20. *Shema etsah ve-qabbal musar* ('hear counsel and receive discipline') — both passive reception (listening) and active acceptance (taking correction on board) are required. *Le-ma'an techkam be-acharitekha* ('so that you will be wise in your latter end, in your future'). The investment in humility now produces wisdom later. The *acharit* ('end, future, latter days') is the payoff for present submission to correction.
21. *Rabbot machashavot be-lev ish* ('many plans are in a person's heart') — the human mind generates an abundance of schemes, ambitions, and strategies. *Va-atsat Yahweh hi taqum* ('but the counsel of the LORD — it will stand, it will rise, it will endure'). This echoes the sovereignty theme of 16:1-9: human planning is real but provisional. God's counsel is the only thing with permanent standing power.
22. *Ta'avat adam chasdo* ('the desire/desirable quality of a person is his chesed') — what makes a person attractive and worthy is not wealth or status but faithful love, loyal kindness. *Ve-tov rash me-ish kazav* ('and better is a poor person than a man of falsehood'). Poverty with honesty outranks prosperity with lying. Character, not capital, determines human worth.
23. *Yir'at Yahweh le-chayyim* ('the fear of the LORD is for life, leads to life') — reverence for God and life are mapped onto the same trajectory. *Ve-save'a yalin bal yippaqed ra* ('and satisfied he will lodge/rest, not visited by evil'). The person who fears God sleeps soundly because he is *save'a* ('satisfied, content') and *bal yippaqed ra* ('not subject to evil visitation'). Security, contentment, and rest are the fruits of reverence.
24. *Taman atsel yado ba-tsallachath* ('the lazy person buries/hides his hand in the dish/bowl') *gam el pihu lo yeshivannah* ('even to his mouth he will not return it'). The image is absurdly comic: the lazy person has his hand in the food but is too lazy to lift it to his own mouth. The exaggeration makes the point unforgettable: laziness is so extreme it defeats even self-interest.
25. *Lets takkeh u-feti ya'arim* ('strike a scoffer and the naive becomes shrewd') — the scoffer himself does not learn from punishment, but the naive person watching does. *Ve-hokhiach le-navon yavin da'at* ('and correct the discerning and he understands knowledge'). The discerning person needs only a word — no blows required. Three levels of learner: the scoffer (unreachable), the naive (learns from observing consequences), and the discerning (learns from verbal correction).

- 26.** Meshaddad av ('one who destroys/ruins his father') and mavriach em ('one who drives away his mother') — the son who financially exploits his father and forces his mother from her home. Ben mevish u-machpir ('a son of shame and disgrace'). This describes not merely disappointing behavior but active destruction of one's own parents — the most fundamental betrayal of the family bond.
- 27.** Chadal beni lishmo'a musar lishgot me-imre da'at ('cease, my son, from hearing discipline that causes straying from words of knowledge'). The verse warns against false instruction — teaching that appears to be wisdom but actually leads away from genuine knowledge. Not all correction is wise; some 'discipline' is misleading. The student must discriminate between instruction that builds and instruction that destroys.
- 28.** Ed beliyya'al ('a witness of worthlessness/wickedness') yalits mishpat ('mocks justice, scorns judgment') — he treats the legal system as a joke. U-fi resha'im yevalla aven ('and the mouth of the wicked swallows iniquity'). The wicked consume wrongdoing as eagerly as food — they devour it, internalize it, make it part of themselves.
- 29.** Nakhonu la-letsim shefatim ('prepared for scoffers are judgments') — the consequences are already arranged, waiting. U-mahalumot le-gev kesilim ('and blows for the back of fools'). The scoffer and the fool will receive the correction they have refused to accept voluntarily. What they would not learn through instruction they will learn through suffering.

20

Summary: *Proverbs 20 closes the second decade of the Solomonic collection with thirty proverbs that survey intoxication, royal authority, human self-deception, the dangers of hasty vows, divine sovereignty over human affairs, and the recurring themes of honest weights, diligent labor, and the superiority of inner character over outward appearance. The chapter gives particular attention to the opacity of the human heart and God's unique ability to penetrate it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 9 — 'Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin?' — is one of the most searching questions in the wisdom literature. The expected answer is 'no one,' which places Proverbs in surprising agreement with the more pessimistic assessments of human nature found in Job and Ecclesiastes. The chapter also contains the striking metaphor of human purpose as deep water (verse 5): the intentions of the heart are buried below the surface, accessible only to the person of understanding who knows how to draw them out. Verse 27 identifies the human spirit as the LORD's lamp, searching the innermost parts — an extraordinary image of divine-human collaboration in self-knowledge.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 1 warns against wine and strong drink, but the Hebrew Bible elsewhere presents wine positively (Psalm 104:15, Ecclesiastes 9:7). The sages are not prohibitionist but pragmatic: wine makes a fool of the unwary. Verse 20 — 'whoever curses his father or mother, his lamp will go out in utter darkness' — reflects the severity of the ancient honor code toward parents. The consequence described is not merely social disapproval but complete extinction.*

Connections: *The deep-water metaphor in verse 5 echoes 18:4. The dishonest-weights condemnation in verses 10 and 23 connects to 11:1 and 16:11. The human spirit as God's lamp in verse 27 anticipates Paul's language in 1 Corinthians 2:10-11 about the Spirit searching the deep things of God. The king's heart directed by God in verse 24 echoes 16:1-9 and 21:1.*

¹Wine is a scoffer and strong drink a brawler;
whoever is led astray by them is not wise.

²The terror of a king is like the roar of a lion;
whoever provokes him forfeits his own life.

³It is honorable for a person to avoid a quarrel,
but every fool jumps into one.

⁴The lazy person does not plow in autumn;
he looks for a harvest but there is nothing.

⁵The intentions in a person's heart are deep water,
but a person of understanding draws them out.

⁶Many a person claims to be loyal,
but a truly faithful person — who can find one?

⁷A righteous person walks in his integrity —
how fortunate are his children after him.

⁸A king who sits on the judgment seat
scatters all evil with his gaze.

⁹Who is able to say, 'I have made my heart clean;
I am pure from my sin'?

¹⁰A double standard — one weight and another weight,
one measure and another measure —
both are detestable to the LORD.

¹¹Even a child is known by his actions —
whether his conduct is pure and upright.

¹²The ear that hears and the eye that sees —
the LORD made them both.

¹³Do not love sleep, or you will become poor;
open your eyes and you will have plenty of bread.

¹⁴'Bad! Bad!' says the buyer,
but after walking away, he boasts.

¹⁵There is gold and an abundance of jewels,
but lips of knowledge are a rare treasure.

¹⁶Take his garment — he has put up security for a stranger;
hold it as collateral for outsiders.

¹⁷Bread gained by deceit tastes sweet to a person,
but afterward his mouth is full of gravel.

¹⁸Plans are established through counsel,
and with wise guidance wage war.

¹⁹A gossip reveals secrets,
so do not associate with someone who talks too freely.

²⁰Whoever curses his father or mother —
his lamp will be snuffed out in the deepest darkness.

²¹An inheritance seized too quickly at the start
will not be blessed in the end.

²²Do not say, 'I will repay evil.'

Wait for the LORD, and He will deliver you.

²³Differing weights are detestable to the LORD,
and dishonest scales are not right.

²⁴A person's steps are directed by the LORD —
so how can anyone understand his own path?

²⁵It is a trap to rashly declare something holy
and only after making vows to reflect.

²⁶A wise king winnows the wicked
and drives the threshing wheel over them.

²⁷The human spirit is the LORD's lamp,
searching all the innermost chambers.

²⁸Faithful love and truth guard a king,
and he sustains his throne through faithful love.

²⁹The glory of the young is their strength,
and the splendor of the old is gray hair.

³⁰Blows that wound cleanse away evil,
and beatings reach the innermost parts.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Lets ha-yayin ('a scoffer is wine') homeh shekhar ('a noisemaker/brawler is strong drink') — wine and beer are personified as the kinds of people wisdom literature most consistently condemns: the scoffer and the troublemaker. Ve-khol shogeh bo lo yekhkam ('and everyone who goes astray by it/them will not be wise'). Alcohol does not merely accompany foolishness; it produces it. The person who is led astray by drink has abandoned the path of wisdom.
2. Naham ka-kefir eimat melek ('like the roar of a young lion is the dread of a king') — echoing 19:12. The mit'abbero ('one who crosses him, who provokes his anger') choter nafsho ('sins against his own soul/life, forfeits his own life'). Provoking royal anger is suicidal. The proverb is practical court advice: respect the king's power or suffer the consequences.
3. Kavod la-ish shevet me-riv ('honor for a person is sitting out of strife, ceasing from quarreling') — the wise person walks away from fights. Ve-khol evil yitgalla ('and every fool breaks out, bursts in, gets entangled'). The fool cannot resist the quarrel; he is drawn to conflict the way a moth is drawn to flame. Restraint is a mark of honor; eagerness to fight is a mark of foolishness.
4. Me-choref atsel lo yacharosh ('from the cold/winter the lazy person will not plow') — the autumn plowing season in Israel is cold and uncomfortable, and the lazy person refuses to endure it. Ve-sha'al ba-qatsir va-ayin ('and he asks/looks at harvest and there is nothing'). The consequence is mathematical: no plowing, no harvest. The lazy person is surprised by the emptiness that his own inaction guaranteed.
5. The verb yidlennah ('draws it out') is from dalah ('to draw water from a well') — the same action as lowering a bucket on a rope. The image is of a person reaching down into the deep well of another person's heart and bringing the hidden intention to the surface.
6. Rov adam yiqra ish chasdo ('most people proclaim, each one, his own loyal kindness') — nearly everyone advertises their own faithfulness. Ve-ish emunim mi yimtsa ('but a person of faithfulness — who will find?'). The gap between self-proclaimed loyalty and actual reliability is vast. People talk about their chesed; few actually live it. The rhetorical question implies: truly faithful people are extraordinarily rare.
7. Mithalekh be-tummo tsaddiq ('walking in his integrity is the righteous person') — the righteous person's daily life is characterized by tummah ('wholeness, integrity, completeness'). Ashre vanav acharav ('how fortunate are his children after him'). The righteous person's integrity becomes a legacy — his children inherit not just property but the blessing of a father's good name and honest example.
8. Melekh yoshev al kisse din ('a king sitting on the throne of judgment') mezareh be-einav kol ra ('winnows with his eyes all evil'). The verb mezareh ('winnows') is from the threshing floor — the king's discerning gaze separates guilt from innocence the way a farmer separates grain from chaff. The ideal king's eyes are tools of justice; his presence itself drives evil away.

9. The two verbs — zikkiti ('I have purified, cleansed') and taharti ('I am pure, clean') — are both cultic terms normally associated with ritual purification. The proverb applies them to the moral interior: who can claim that their inner life is ritually clean? No one. The question demolishes self-righteousness.
10. Even va-even eifah ve-eifah ('a stone and a stone, an ephah and an ephah') — having two sets of weights and measures, one for buying (heavier) and one for selling (lighter). To'avat Yahweh gam sheneihem ('an abomination to the LORD, both of them'). The repetition of this theme (11:1, 16:11, 20:23) shows how deeply the sages cared about commercial honesty. God finds double standards in business personally offensive.
11. Gam be-ma'alalav yitnakker na'ar ('even by his deeds a youth is recognized/known') — character reveals itself early. Im zakh ve-im yashar po'olo ('whether pure and whether upright is his work'). You do not need to wait for adulthood to see who a person is becoming. Childhood behavior is already diagnostic. The proverb encourages early observation and early intervention.
12. Ozen shoma'at ve-ayin ro'ah ('a hearing ear and a seeing eye') Yahweh asah gam sheneihem ('the LORD made both of them'). The capacity to perceive — to hear truth and to see reality — is a divine gift. If God made the instruments of perception, then perception carries moral weight: we are obligated to use the faculties God gave us. The verse also implies that God who made ear and eye Himself hears and sees all things.
13. Al te'ehav shenah pen tivvaresh ('do not love sleep lest you be dispossessed/impooverished') — excess sleep is the lazy person's drug of choice. Peqach einakha seva lachem ('open your eyes — satisfaction of bread'). The imperative is blunt: wake up, see what needs to be done, and do it. The reward is simple sufficiency — seva lachem, enough bread. The proverb does not promise wealth, only adequacy as the reward for wakefulness.
14. Ra ra yomar ha-qoneh ('bad, bad, says the buyer') — the buyer talks down the merchandise to drive the price lower. Ve-ozel lo az yithallal ('and going away from there, then he boasts'). Once he has secured the bargain, he brags about his shrewd deal. The proverb captures the timeless psychology of haggling: public disparagement of goods followed by private celebration of the purchase. The sages found the behavior amusing enough to record.
15. Yesh zahav ve-rov peninim ('there is gold and abundance of pearls/corals/jewels') — precious materials are available. U-khli yeqar sifte da'at ('but a precious vessel are the lips of knowledge'). Knowledge-bearing speech is rarer and more valuable than gold or gems. The comparison is economic: knowledgeable speech is the scarcest and therefore the most precious commodity.
16. Leqach bigdo ki arav zar ('take his garment because he has become surety for a stranger') — if someone is foolish enough to guarantee a stranger's debt, seize his cloak as collateral because he is a high credit risk. U-ve'ad nokhrim chablehu ('and for foreigners/outsideers hold him as pledge'). The proverb is practical financial advice: do not trust the creditworthiness of anyone who has pledged for an unknown party.
17. Arev la-ish lechem shaqer ('sweet/pleasant to a person is bread of deceit') — ill-gotten gains taste good at first. Ve-achar yimmale pihu chatsav ('and afterward his mouth is filled with gravel/crushed stone'). The sweetness turns to gravel — what was pleasant becomes painful, gritty, inedible. The pleasure of dishonest gain is temporary; its consequences are lasting and miserable.
18. Machashavot be-etsah tikkon ('plans are established through counsel') — echoing 15:22. Good planning requires consultation. U-ve-tachbulot asech milchamah ('and with guidance/steering make war'). The tachbulot ('strategic guidance, steering') needed for warfare is the highest form of deliberative wisdom — the stakes are lives. If even war requires wise counsel, how much more do lesser decisions.
19. Goleh sod holekh rakhil ('one who reveals secrets is a gossip/slanderer') — the person who cannot keep confidences is dangerous to befriend. U-le-foteh sefatav lo tit'arav ('and with one who opens wide his lips do not mix/associate'). The warning is social: avoid the company of people who cannot control their speech, because anything you share with them will become public.
20. Meqallel aviv ve-immo ('one who curses his father and his mother') yid'akh nero be-ishon choshekh ('his lamp will be extinguished in the pupil of darkness, in the deepest darkness'). The ishon choshekh ('apple/pupil of darkness') is the darkest possible darkness — the center of the night, where no light penetrates. Cursing one's parents leads to total extinction. The severity reflects the ancient world's absolute prioritization of parental honor.
21. Nachalah mevohelet ba-rishonah ('an inheritance hastened/rushed at the beginning') ve-acharitah lo tevorakh ('and its end will not be blessed'). Wealth acquired too quickly — whether through impatience, manipulation, or dishonesty — does not produce lasting blessing. The pattern echoes 13:11: easy money evaporates. The acharit ('end, final outcome') is what matters, and hastily gained wealth fails the long-term test.
22. Al tomar ashallema ra ('do not say I will repay evil') — do not take vengeance into your own hands. Qavveh la-Yahweh ve-yosha lakh ('wait for the LORD and He will save you'). The command to renounce personal retaliation is paired with a promise: God will handle the justice. This is one of the clearest anti-vengeance statements in the wisdom literature and directly anticipates Romans 12:17-19.
23. To'avat Yahweh even va-aven ('an abomination to the LORD is a stone and a stone') — repeating the condemnation of verse 10 with slight variation. U-mo'azne mirmah lo tov ('and scales of deceit are not good'). The repetition within a single chapter underscores how seriously the sages took commercial integrity. God's revulsion at fraudulent weights is stated twice because the temptation to cheat in business is persistent.
24. Me-Yahweh mits'ade gaver ('from the LORD are the steps of a man') — echoing 16:9, God directs the actual trajectory of a person's life. Ve-adam mah yavin darkko ('and a person — how can he understand his way?'). The rhetorical question admits the limits of self-understanding: if God is the one directing our steps, then we cannot fully comprehend why our lives take the paths they do. Humility before divine sovereignty is the appropriate posture.
25. Moqesh adam yala qodesh ('a snare for a person is to blurt out holy — to rashly declare something as sacred/devoted') ve-achar nedarim levaqquer ('and after vows to investigate/consider'). The proverb warns against impulsive religious commitments — making vows before thinking them through. A vow once spoken to God is binding, so careless dedication creates an inescapable obligation. Think before you vow, not after.

- 26.** Mezareh resha'im melekh chakham ('winnows the wicked does a wise king') — the same winnowing image from verse 8, now applied specifically to removing evil from the kingdom. Va-yashev aleihem ofan ('and he turns the wheel upon them'). The ofan ('wheel') is the threshing wheel that crushes grain — the wise king does not merely identify the wicked but applies the full weight of justice to them.
- 27.** The neshimah ('breath, spirit') connects to Genesis 2:7, where God breathes into Adam's nostrils the nishmat chayyim ('breath of life'). That same divine breath now functions as a searchlight, probing the interior spaces of human consciousness. The verse suggests a collaboration between divine illumination and human self-awareness.
- 28.** Chesed ve-emet yitsru melekh ('faithful love and truth guard/protect a king') — the paired divine attributes (see 14:22, 16:6) are the king's true bodyguards. Ve-sa'ad ba-chesed kis'o ('and he supports/upholds his throne through chesed'). Political stability depends not on military power but on the king's practice of loyal kindness. The throne endures because of chesed, not because of force.
- 29.** Tiferet bachurim kocham ('the glory/beauty of young men is their strength') — youth's distinctive contribution is physical vigor. Va-hadar zeqenim sevah ('and the majesty/splendor of the elderly is gray hair'). Each stage of life has its own glory: youth has power; age has wisdom. The proverb honors both rather than privileging one over the other.
- 30.** Chabburat petsa tamriq be-ra ('wounds of a blow cleanse/scour away evil') — the metaphor treats corrective suffering as a purifying agent. U-makkot chadre vaten ('and blows reach the chambers of the belly/innermost parts'). Physical consequences penetrate where words cannot reach. The proverb affirms that painful correction can reach the deepest levels of a person's character, purging evil that verbal instruction alone cannot dislodge.

21

Summary: *Proverbs 21 continues the Solomonic collection with proverbs emphasizing divine sovereignty over human plans, the priority of justice over ritual, and the futility of resisting the LORD's purposes. The chapter opens with the striking image of the king's heart as a water channel in God's hand and closes with the declaration that no wisdom or strategy can stand against the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most politically radical statements in ancient Near Eastern literature: the king's heart is merely an irrigation ditch that God directs wherever He pleases (v1). In a world where kings claimed divine status or divine favor as their right, this proverb reduces royal authority to passive clay. Verse 3 elevates justice and righteousness above sacrifice — a theme that echoes the prophets (Isaiah 1:11-17, Amos 5:21-24, Micah 6:6-8) — suggesting that the wisdom tradition and the prophetic tradition share this conviction independently. The chapter's final verse (v31) — 'The horse is prepared for the day of battle, but victory belongs to the LORD' — is a perfect summary of biblical theology: human preparation is legitimate, but outcomes belong to God alone.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 9 ('Better to live on a corner of the roof than share a house with a quarrelsome woman') reflects the patriarchal social structure where men controlled domestic space. The observation is pragmatic, not prescriptive, but it addresses only men's frustration without acknowledging women's perspective. Verse 18 ('The wicked becomes a ransom for the righteous') does not teach substitutionary atonement but observes that the consequences intended for the righteous often fall on the wicked instead — a reversal pattern, not a transaction.*

Connections: *The 'king's heart as water channels' image (v1) connects to Isaiah 44:27-28, where God directs Cyrus as His shepherd. The priority of justice over sacrifice (v3) parallels 1 Samuel 15:22 and Hosea 6:6. The 'horse prepared for battle' (v31) echoes Psalm 20:7 ('Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we invoke the name of the LORD our God'). The chapter's emphasis on divine sovereignty over human plans links to Proverbs 16:1, 9 and 19:21.*

¹The king's heart is a water channel in the LORD's hand —
He directs it wherever He pleases.

²Every path a person takes looks right to him,
but the LORD weighs hearts.

³Practicing righteousness and justice
is preferred by the LORD over sacrifice.

⁴Haughty eyes and an inflated heart —
the lamp of the wicked is sin.

⁵The plans of the diligent lead only to abundance,
but everyone who rushes ends only in lack.

⁶Gaining wealth by a lying tongue
is a fleeting vapor — those who chase it chase death.

⁷The violence of the wicked drags them away,
because they refuse to practice justice.

⁸Crooked is the path of a guilty person,
but the conduct of the pure is upright.

⁹Better to sit on a corner of the roof
than to share a house with a quarrelsome woman.

¹⁰The appetite of the wicked craves what is harmful;
his neighbor finds no mercy in his eyes.

¹¹When a scoffer is punished, the naive become wise;
when a wise person is instructed, he gains knowledge.

¹²The Righteous One observes the house of the wicked;
He overturns the wicked to ruin.

¹³Whoever blocks his ear from the cry of the poor —
he too will cry out and not be answered.

¹⁴A gift given in secret calms anger,
and a concealed bribe subdues fierce rage.

¹⁵Doing justice is a joy to the righteous
but a terror to those who practice wickedness.

¹⁶A person who strays from the path of insight
will rest in the assembly of the dead.

¹⁷Whoever loves pleasure will become poor;
whoever loves wine and oil will never grow rich.

¹⁸The wicked becomes a ransom for the righteous,
and the treacherous takes the place of the upright.

¹⁹Better to live in a desert land
than with a quarrelsome and irritable woman.

²⁰Precious treasure and oil fill the home of the wise,
but a fool swallows them up.

²¹Whoever pursues righteousness and faithful love
finds life, righteousness, and honor.

²²A wise person can scale a city of warriors
and bring down the stronghold they trusted in.

²³Whoever guards his mouth and his tongue
guards his life from troubles.

²⁴The proud and arrogant — 'Scoffer' is his name —
he acts with overflowing contempt.

²⁵The craving of the lazy person kills him,
because his hands refuse to work.

²⁶All day long he craves and craves,
but the righteous gives without holding back.

²⁷The sacrifice of the wicked is detestable —
how much more when offered with evil intent!

²⁸A lying witness will perish,
but the person who listens will speak with lasting authority.

²⁹A wicked person puts on a bold face,
but the upright considers his way carefully.

³⁰There is no wisdom, no understanding,
no counsel that can stand against the LORD.

³¹The horse is prepared for the day of battle,
but victory belongs to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Palge mayim (channels of water) is the same phrase used in Psalm 1:3 for the streams beside which the righteous tree is planted. Here the metaphor shifts from nourishment to control.
1. The proverb does not say the king is aware of God's direction. The water does not know it is being redirected. This is a statement about God's sovereignty, not about the king's piety.
2. The verb tokhen ('weighs, examines, measures') comes from the world of scales and balances. God does not merely observe — He assesses with precision. The same verb appears in Proverbs 16:2.
3. The pairing of tsedaqah and mishpat is one of the most important word pairs in the Hebrew Bible. Together they describe a society that functions as God intended — where relationships are right and judgments are fair.
4. The Hebrew nir can mean either 'lamp' or 'freshly plowed land.' If 'lamp,' the proverb says that what lights the wicked person's way is sin itself — their guiding light is darkness. If 'plowed land,' it means that everything the wicked produce is sin. Both readings yield the same conclusion: arrogance pervades every aspect of the wicked person's life.
5. The contrast is between charutz ('diligent, sharp, decisive') and ats ('to hurry, to be hasty'). Diligence is not slowness but purposeful planning followed by steady execution. Haste is action without thought — the illusion of productivity.

6. Hevel niddaf ('vapor driven, mist blown away') uses the same hevel that dominates Ecclesiastes — breath, vapor, something that vanishes instantly. Wealth gained through deception is not merely unstable; it is already gone the moment you grasp it.
7. Shod ('violence, destruction, robbery') becomes the agent that devours its own practitioners. The verb yegovrem ('drags them, sweeps them away') pictures violence as a current that carries the violent person downstream to ruin.
8. Hafakhpakh ('twisted, crooked, perverse') is an intensified form suggesting not just one wrong turn but a path that twists back on itself repeatedly. The contrast with zakh ('pure, clean, transparent') and yashar ('straight, upright') emphasizes that moral clarity produces directional clarity.
9. The flat rooftop was exposed to wind, rain, and sun — the worst living space in an Israelite home. The proverb uses 'better...than' (tov...min) format to make a deliberately absurd comparison: even the most uncomfortable solitude is preferable to relentless domestic conflict. The observation is repeated in 25:24. The Hebrew eshet midyanim ('woman of contentions') targets behavior, not gender, though the male audience of the collection means the examples address men's domestic experience.
10. Nefesh here means 'appetite, desire, inner drive' rather than 'soul' in the Greek philosophical sense. The wicked person's fundamental orientation is toward harm — evil is not an occasional lapse but a craving. The result is social: when desire is directed toward harm, the neighbor becomes an obstacle rather than a fellow human deserving compassion.
11. The proverb identifies two learning methods: the naive (peti) learn from watching consequences fall on others, while the wise (chakham) learn directly from instruction. The scoffer (lets) learns from neither — he exists in the proverb only as a negative example for others. Three character types, three relationships to learning.
12. The capitalized 'Righteous One' reflects the interpretive possibility that God is the subject. The ambiguity may be intentional — both the righteous person and God observe the wicked household, and both know its end.
13. The reciprocity is precise: the verb za'aq ('to cry out, to shout for help') applies to both the poor person and the one who ignored him. The one who refused to hear will find himself unheard. This is not abstract karma but covenant logic — God responds to those who respond to others.
14. The proverb observes a social reality without endorsing it: gifts and bribes work. The distinction between mattan ('gift') and shochad ('bribe') is significant — the first is neutral, the second carries negative moral weight. The proverb is descriptive, not prescriptive; it tells you how the world works, not how it should work.
15. The contrast is revealing: the same action — the administration of justice — produces opposite emotional responses depending on the person's character. The righteous find simchah ('joy, gladness') in fair judgment; the wicked find mechittah ('terror, ruin, destruction'). Justice is a mirror that reveals the observer.
16. Repha'im ('the dead, shades') refers to the inhabitants of Sheol — the shadowy underworld of Israelite cosmology. The proverb warns that abandoning wisdom is not a detour but a fatal turn. The verb yanuach ('will rest, will settle') implies permanence — this is not a temporary wandering but a final destination.
17. Wine and oil represent the consumable luxuries of Israelite life. The proverb does not condemn enjoyment but warns against making enjoyment the primary pursuit. Ahev ('loves, is devoted to') implies ongoing, habitual orientation — not occasional celebration but lifestyle hedonism.
18. Kofer is the same word used for the ransom price of a life in Exodus 21:30. The proverb appropriates sacrificial-legal language to describe the observed reversal of fortunes: the wicked pay the price meant for the righteous.
19. This is the second 'better...than' proverb about domestic strife in this chapter (see v9). The escalation from 'corner of the roof' to 'desert' adds rhetorical force: if a rooftop was insufficient escape, try the wilderness. The addition of va-ka'as ('and anger, and irritation') intensifies the portrait beyond v9. These proverbs are observations about the destructive power of chronic conflict, addressed to the male audience of the collection.
20. The verb yevall'ennu ('swallows it, devours it, consumes it') suggests the fool does not spend resources but gulps them down — an image of wasteful, animal-like consumption. The wise person accumulates because of self-discipline; the fool consumes because he cannot restrain appetite.
21. The repetition of tsedaqah — once as what is pursued and again as what is found — is deliberate. Righteousness compounds: practicing it produces more of it.
22. The proverb asserts that wisdom is superior to military strength. A single wise person can accomplish what an army cannot — breach the defenses of the mighty. The verb yarad ('brings down, causes to descend') and oz mivtechah ('the strength of its confidence, the stronghold it trusted') emphasize that wisdom dismantles not just walls but the confidence those walls inspired.
23. The repetition of shomer ('guards, keeps, watches over') creates a direct equation: guarding the mouth equals guarding the life. The nefesh ('life, self, being') is at stake in every word spoken. In Proverbs, speech is never merely verbal — it is existential.
24. This is a character definition: three words (zed, yahir, lets) pile up to create a complete portrait. Zed ('presumptuous, insolent'), yahir ('haughty, arrogant'), and lets ('scoffer, mocker') converge on a single personality type. The phrase 'Scoffer is his name' uses the naming formula to say: this is not behavior but identity. The 'overflow of presumption' (evrat zadon) suggests someone whose arrogance spills over into action — he cannot contain it.
25. The paradox: the lazy person is not free from desire — he wants as much as anyone. But his hands refuse (me'anu, 'they refuse, they are unwilling') to do the work that would satisfy the desire. He is killed by the gap between wanting and doing. The verb temitenu ('kills him') is not metaphorical —

Proverbs treats chronic laziness as self-destruction.

26. The contrast between the lazy craver and the righteous giver completes the portrait begun in v25. The lazy person's entire day is consumed by unsatisfied desire; the righteous person's life overflows in generosity. The verb *yachsokh* ('withholds, holds back, spares') with the negation means the righteous person gives freely, without calculating.
27. The 'how much more' (*af ki*) construction creates two levels of offense: a wicked person's sacrifice is already to'evah ('detestable, abominable') because his life contradicts his offering; if he also brings it with *zimmah* ('evil intent, scheming, wickedness') — perhaps to manipulate God or create a pious appearance — the offense compounds. This extends the logic of v3: God prefers justice over sacrifice, and a wicked person's sacrifice is worse than no sacrifice at all.
28. The contrast is between the false witness who invents testimony and the person who *shomea* ('listens, hears, pays attention') before speaking. The liar's words die with him; the listener's words endure *la-netsach* ('forever, perpetually, with permanence'). Truth has staying power; lies self-destruct.
29. *He'ez panav* ('he makes his face strong, he hardens his countenance') describes brazen, shameless posturing — the wicked person projects confidence he does not have. The upright person, by contrast, *yavin darkho* ('understands his way, discerns his path') — he thinks before acting. The contrast is between performed certainty and genuine discernment.
30. The triple *ein* ('there is not') is emphatic and total. No exceptions, no qualifications. Human wisdom is real and valuable — but it is never ultimate.
31. *Teshu'ah* (from *yasha*, 'to save, to deliver') is the same root as the name *Yehoshua* (Joshua) and *Yeshua* (Jesus). The word encompasses military victory, rescue from danger, and spiritual salvation. Here it primarily means the outcome of battle, but the theological resonance runs deeper.

22

Summary: *Proverbs 22 transitions from the main Solomonic collection (vv1-16) into the 'Words of the Wise' section (vv17-29), a collection heavily influenced by the Egyptian 'Instruction of Amenemope.' The chapter moves from individual proverbs about reputation, wealth, and child-rearing to an extended address from teacher to student, complete with a formal introduction and thematic organization around social ethics and self-control.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 ('Train a child in his way') is one of the most quoted and most misunderstood proverbs in English. The Hebrew *al-pi darkho* ('according to his way, according to his path') likely means according to the child's nature and developmental stage, not according to the parent's preferred moral program. The proverb is observational wisdom, not a divine guarantee. Beginning at verse 17, the 'Words of the Wise' section marks a dramatic shift in literary form — from two-line independent proverbs to multi-verse instructions with motivation clauses. The parallels with Amenemope are so extensive that most scholars conclude literary dependence in one direction or the other, with the majority view being that the Hebrew writer adapted the Egyptian material.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Proverbs 22:17-23:11 and the Egyptian Instruction of Amenemope raises questions about the nature of biblical inspiration. The parallels include shared imagery (moving boundary stones), shared structure (thirty sayings), and shared themes (protecting the poor). Rather than undermining the text's authority, this connection demonstrates that Israel's wisdom tradition engaged seriously with international wisdom and was not produced in isolation. The phrase *sheloshim* ('thirty' in 22:20) may refer to the thirty chapters of Amenemope.*

Connections: *Verse 2 ('The rich and the poor meet together; the LORD made them all') connects to Proverbs 29:13. The 'Words of the Wise' section (22:17-24:22) parallels the Egyptian Instruction of Amenemope, particularly the boundary stone prohibition (22:28 / Amenemope ch. 6), the scribe before kings (22:29 / Amenemope ch. 30), and the warning against exploiting the poor at the gate (22:22-23 / Amenemope ch. 2). The teacher-student address form echoes Proverbs 1-9.*

¹A good name is more desirable than great wealth;
favor is better than silver and gold.

²The rich and the poor cross paths —
the LORD made them both.

³The shrewd person sees danger and takes cover;
the naive walk straight into it and pay the price.

⁴The result of humility and the fear of the LORD
is wealth, honor, and life.

⁵Thorns and traps line the path of the crooked;
whoever guards his life stays far from them.

⁶Dedicate a young person according to his own way;
even when he grows old, he will not turn from it.

⁷The rich rule over the poor,
and the borrower is slave to the lender.

⁸Whoever sows injustice will harvest disaster,
and the rod of his fury will be broken.

⁹The generous person will be blessed,
because he shares his food with the poor.

¹⁰Drive out the scoffer and conflict leaves with him;
quarreling and insults will cease.

¹¹Whoever loves a pure heart and gracious speech —
the king will be his friend.

¹²The eyes of the LORD guard knowledge,
but He overturns the words of the treacherous.

¹³The lazy person says, 'There's a lion outside!
I'll be killed in the streets!'

¹⁴The mouth of the forbidden woman is a deep pit;
the one under the LORD's displeasure falls into it.

¹⁵Foolishness is bound up in the heart of a youth;
the rod of discipline will drive it far from him.

¹⁶Oppressing the poor to enrich yourself,
or giving to the rich — both lead only to loss.

¹⁷Incline your ear and hear the words of the wise;
set your heart on my knowledge.

¹⁸For it is pleasing when you guard them in your belly;
let them be ready together on your lips.

¹⁹So that your trust may be in the LORD,
I am teaching you today — yes, you.

²⁰Have I not written for you thirty sayings
of counsel and knowledge,

²¹to teach you what is reliable — words of truth —
so you can bring back truthful answers to those who sent you?

²²Do not rob the poor because he is poor,
and do not crush the afflicted at the gate,

²³because the LORD will take up their case
and rob the life of those who rob them.

²⁴Do not befriend a hot-tempered person,
and do not associate with someone given to rage,

²⁵or you will learn his ways
and set a trap for your own life.

²⁶Do not be among those who shake hands on pledges
or who guarantee the debts of others.

²⁷If you have nothing to pay,
why should your bed be taken from under you?

²⁸Do not move an ancient boundary marker
that your ancestors set in place.

²⁹Do you see a person skilled in his work?
He will stand before kings;
he will not stand before obscure men.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew simply says shem ('name') without 'good' — the adjective is implied. In Israelite culture, a name was not a label but a reputation — the summary of a person's character as known by the community. Chen tov ('good favor, gracious esteem') describes how others regard you. Both are relational goods that money cannot purchase.
2. This proverb appears nearly verbatim in 29:13. The shared-maker theology here is practical, not abstract — it grounds social ethics in creation theology. If God made both, then the rich person who despises the poor insults the Maker.
3. Arum ('shrewd, prudent, clever') is the same word used for the serpent in Genesis 3:1 — it describes keen perception without moral judgment. Here shrewdness is positive: the ability to read situations accurately and act accordingly. The petayim ('naive ones, simple ones') lack this perceptiveness and suffer for it.
4. Egev ('consequence, result, reward; heel, footstep') connects humility and reverence for God to tangible outcomes. The pairing of anavah ('humility') with yir'at YHWH ('fear of the LORD') is significant: genuine reverence for God produces not arrogance but lowliness. The three rewards — wealth, honor, life — represent the full scope of human flourishing in the wisdom tradition.
5. Tsinnim ('thorns') and pachim ('traps, snares') are not punishments imposed from outside but natural features of the crooked path itself. The person who chooses crookedness walks into a landscape of pain and entanglement. The one who guards his nefesh ('life, self') avoids that path entirely.
6. This is a proverb, not a promise. Proverbs describe how life generally works, not how it always works. Reading it as a divine contract ('if I raise my child right, God guarantees the outcome') misreads the genre. The emphasis is on the parent's responsibility to understand and work with the child's nature.
7. This proverb observes economic power dynamics without approving them. The verb yimshol ('rules, dominates') and the noun eved ('slave, servant') describe the social reality of debt in the ancient world: borrowing created a power relationship indistinguishable from servitude. The proverb warns; it does not celebrate.

8. The agricultural metaphor — sowing and reaping — is the wisdom tradition's primary image for moral cause and effect. Avlah ('injustice, unrighteousness') produces aven ('disaster, trouble, wickedness'). The second line adds that the oppressor's instrument of punishment — the shevet ('rod, staff') of his rage — will itself be broken. Power used unjustly is self-destroying.
9. Tov-ayin (literally 'good of eye') means generous, open-handed — the opposite of ra-ayin ('evil of eye,' which means stingy). The 'eye' idiom reflects the ancient understanding that the eye reveals the heart's orientation: a good eye looks outward toward others' needs, a bad eye looks inward toward self-protection. Blessing follows generosity because generosity aligns with God's own character.
10. The proverb identifies the scoffer (lets) as the catalyst for communal conflict. Remove the person, and the conflict evaporates. The three words madon ('strife, contention'), din ('quarrel, dispute'), and qalon ('shame, dishonor, insult') represent escalating forms of social disruption. The solution is not mediation but removal.
11. The proverb pairs internal quality (tehar-lev, 'purity of heart') with external expression (chen sefatav, 'grace of his lips'). The person whose inner life is clean and whose speech is gracious gains access to the highest level of society — the king's friendship. Character and communication together open doors that ambition alone cannot.
12. God actively protects truth (da'at, 'knowledge') while subverting falsehood. The verb natsru ('guard, watch over, preserve') and yesallef ('overturns, subverts, perverts') create a double action: God is both guardian and judge, preserving what is true and dismantling what is false.
13. The humor is intentional. The lazy person invents an absurd excuse — a lion roaming the city streets — to justify staying indoors. The proverb mocks the creative energy that lazy people invest in avoiding work. The same joke appears in 26:13 with slight variation. Lions existed in ancient Israel but virtually never appeared in urban areas.
14. The 'forbidden woman' (zarot, plural of zarah) refers to the adulteress figure developed in Proverbs 1-9. Her mouth — her seductive speech — is compared to a deep pit (shuchah amuqqah), a trap that is easy to fall into and nearly impossible to escape. The second line adds a disturbing dimension: falling for her seduction is itself a sign of God's displeasure (ze'um YHWH), suggesting a judicial hardening.
15. Ivvelet ('foolishness, folly') is not innocent ignorance but the active resistance to wisdom that Proverbs considers the default human condition. Qeshurah ('bound, tied') suggests it is not casual but deeply embedded. The shevet musar ('rod of discipline') represents corrective training broadly — the full range of consequences that teach a young person to abandon foolish patterns. The proverb observes that children do not naturally gravitate toward wisdom; they must be trained into it.
16. Two apparently opposite actions — taking from the poor and giving to the rich — produce the same result: machsor ('lack, want, poverty'). Exploiting the vulnerable and currying favor with the powerful are both strategies that backfire. The proverb refuses to let economic calculation override moral reality.
17. The shift from independent proverbs to direct address signals a new collection. 'Words of the Wise' (divre chakhamim) is the section title, parallel to 'Proverbs of Solomon' in 10:1 and 25:1. The teacher-student format returns to the style of Proverbs 1-9.
18. The 'belly' (beten) is the seat of internalized knowledge — wisdom stored deep inside, not merely memorized but absorbed. The movement from belly to lips describes the process: take it in deeply (study, reflect, digest), and it will be available on your lips when needed (speech, counsel, response). Wisdom internalized becomes wisdom expressed.
19. The purpose clause reveals the ultimate goal of the 'Words of the Wise': not mere intellectual development but trust in the LORD (mivtachekha ba-YHWH). Wisdom instruction aims at faith. The emphatic af attah ('even you, yes, you') personalizes the address — this is not abstract teaching but direct, individual challenge.
20. The textual difficulty here is ancient — the Masoretes themselves flagged the discrepancy between the written and read forms. The rendering 'thirty sayings' follows the Qere and the Amenemope parallel, which together provide the strongest interpretive case.
21. Qosht ('reliability, certainty, truth') is an Aramaic loanword, rare in Hebrew, suggesting a cosmopolitan or late vocabulary. The purpose of wisdom education is twofold: to know what is true (internal) and to report truth accurately (external). The phrase le-sholchekha ('to those who send you') implies the student is an envoy or representative — someone who will carry answers back to an authority. Wisdom training produces trustworthy messengers.
22. The 'gate' (sha'ar) was the public space where legal cases were heard and commercial transactions occurred — the ancient courtroom and marketplace combined. Crushing the afflicted 'at the gate' means exploiting legal processes to harm the vulnerable. The reason given — ki dal hu ('because he is poor') — seems obvious but is the point: poverty itself is being weaponized. The poor person is targeted precisely because he lacks the resources to fight back.
23. God becomes the poor person's attorney (yariv rivam, 'will plead their case, will argue their lawsuit'). The legal imagery is precise: the poor person has no advocate at the gate, so God Himself enters the courtroom. The punishment mirrors the crime — qava ('to rob, to plunder') is turned back on the perpetrator. Those who rob the poor will have their own nefesh ('life') robbed by God.
24. Ba'al af (literally 'master of anger, possessor of wrath') and ish chemot ('man of furies, person of hot anger') describe someone whose defining characteristic is uncontrolled anger. The warning is practical: association leads to imitation (v25). Anger is contagious.
25. Te'elaf ('you will learn, you will become accustomed to') describes unconscious adoption of behavior patterns. The danger is not that you will choose to become angry but that proximity will rewire your habits. The moqesh ('snare, trap') is self-set — you trap yourself by absorbing someone else's

destructive patterns.

26. Toq'e kaf ('strikers of the palm') refers to the handshake that sealed a financial guarantee. The warning against surety — co-signing someone else's loan — is one of the most repeated financial warnings in Proverbs (6:1-5, 11:15, 17:18, 20:16). The ancient wisdom is timeless: guaranteeing another person's debt puts your own assets at risk.
27. The image is vivid and concrete: the creditor literally takes the bed out from under the debtor. Mishkav ('bed, sleeping place') represents the most basic necessity of life. The rhetorical question implies the absurdity of risking what you cannot afford to lose.
28. The parallel with Amenemope is particularly close here: both texts prohibit moving boundary stones, both ground the prohibition in respect for ancestral rights, and both present it as a fundamental ethical norm. This is one of the strongest pieces of evidence for literary connection between the two texts.
29. The parallel with Amenemope chapter 30 is notable: both texts close with the image of the skilled scribe who serves royalty. The shared conclusion suggests the two texts may have been organized with awareness of each other's structure.

23

Summary: *Proverbs 23 continues the 'Words of the Wise' collection with extended instructions on self-control in the presence of power, the futility of chasing wealth, respect for parents and the aged, avoidance of prostitution, and a vivid concluding portrait of the drunkard. The chapter moves from table manners before a ruler to the devastating consequences of alcohol abuse.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The warning against staring at wealth (vv4-5) contains one of the most striking images in Proverbs: riches sprout wings and fly away like an eagle toward the sky. The Hebrew makes the eagle's flight a spontaneous generation — wealth 'makes itself wings,' as if it were alive and determined to escape. The chapter's final section on drunkenness (vv29-35) is the longest sustained poetic treatment of alcohol in the Hebrew Bible. It is not a moral lecture but a masterful piece of observational writing — the drunkard's bloodshot eyes, unexplained wounds, swaying vision, and the devastating final line: 'When will I wake up? I need another drink.' The addict's own voice closes the poem.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 13-14 endorse corporal punishment of children with the claim that beating will not kill the child and may save him from Sheol. Modern readers must reckon with the cultural distance: physical discipline was assumed across the ancient Near East, and the proverb operates within that assumption. The text is not a license for abuse but a reflection of ancient pedagogy. The 'stingy host' passage (vv6-8) uses the phrase ra-ayin ('evil eye') which in this context means 'grudging, miserly' — not the supernatural 'evil eye' of later folk tradition.*

Connections: *The 'Words of the Wise' section continues from 22:17. The wealth-sprouting-wings image (v5) connects to the transience theme in Ecclesiastes. The 'do not move a boundary marker' (v10) repeats 22:28 and Deuteronomy 19:14. The father-rejoicing theme (vv15-16, 24-25) echoes Proverbs 10:1 and 15:20. The drunkard portrait (vv29-35) parallels Isaiah 28:7-8 and anticipates Habakkuk 2:15-16.*

¹When you sit down to eat with a ruler,
pay careful attention to what is before you.

²Put a knife to your throat
if you are a person with a big appetite.

³Do not crave his delicacies,
for they are deceptive food.

⁴Do not exhaust yourself chasing wealth;
have the sense to stop.

⁵Will you fix your gaze on what is already gone?
Wealth sprouts wings for itself
and flies off like an eagle toward the sky.

⁶Do not eat the bread of a stingy host,
and do not crave his delicacies.

⁷For as he calculates inside himself, so he is.
'Eat! Drink!' he says to you,
but his heart is not with you.

⁸The little you have eaten you will vomit up,
and your pleasant words will be wasted.

⁹Do not speak in the hearing of a fool,
for he will despise the insight of your words.

¹⁰Do not move an ancient boundary marker,
and do not encroach on the fields of orphans,

¹¹because their Redeemer is strong;
He will take up their case against you.

¹²Bring your heart to discipline
and your ears to words of knowledge.

¹³Do not withhold discipline from a youth;
if you strike him with the rod, he will not die.

¹⁴You will strike him with the rod
and rescue his life from Sheol.

¹⁵My son, if your heart is wise,
my own heart will rejoice —

¹⁶yes, my inmost being will celebrate
when your lips speak what is right.

¹⁷Do not let your heart envy sinners,
but live in the fear of the LORD all day long.

¹⁸For there is surely a future,
and your hope will not be cut off.

¹⁹Listen, my son, and be wise,
and guide your heart on the right path.

²⁰Do not be among heavy drinkers
or among those who gorge on meat.

²¹For the drunkard and the glutton will become poor,
and drowsiness dresses you in rags.

²²Listen to your father, who gave you life,
and do not despise your mother when she is old.

²³Buy truth and never sell it —
wisdom, discipline, and understanding.

²⁴The father of a righteous person will greatly rejoice;
whoever fathers a wise child will delight in him.

²⁵Let your father and mother be glad;
let the woman who bore you rejoice.

²⁶My son, give me your heart,
and let your eyes guard my ways.

²⁷For a prostitute is a deep pit,
and a foreign woman is a narrow well.

²⁸She too lies in ambush like a robber
and multiplies the faithless among humanity.

²⁹Who has misery? Who has regret?
Who has quarrels? Who has complaints?
Who has wounds for no reason?
Who has bloodshot eyes?

³⁰Those who linger over wine,
those who go searching for mixed drinks.

³¹Do not gaze at wine when it glows red,
when it sparkles in the cup,
when it goes down smoothly.

³²In the end it bites like a snake
and strikes like a viper.

³³Your eyes will see strange things,
and your mind will speak distorted words.

³⁴You will be like someone lying down in the middle of the sea,
like someone sprawled on top of the rigging.

³⁵'They hit me, but I felt no pain.
They beat me, but I didn't notice.
When will I wake up?
I need to find another drink.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bin tavin ('understand carefully, discern thoroughly') is an emphatic form — the doubled verb insists on maximum awareness. Dining with a ruler was a political act in the ancient world, not a casual meal. 'What is before you' has a double meaning: the food on the table and the powerful person across from you. Both require vigilance.

2. The image is deliberately shocking: the knife at the throat is a hyperbolic metaphor for extreme self-control. If your appetite controls you, you must take drastic measures to control it before it controls the situation. Ba'al nefesh ('master of appetite, person of great desire') describes someone whose hunger — for food, for status, for the ruler's favor — could lead him to overindulge and make a fool of himself.
3. Lechem kezavim ('bread of lies, deceptive food') warns that the ruler's table is not generous hospitality but a calculated display. The food comes with strings attached. Every bite accepted creates an obligation. The delicacies (mat'ammotav) are bait, not gifts.
4. Tiga ('to toil, to weary yourself, to exhaust') implies not ordinary work but obsessive, health-destroying labor driven by greed. The command mi-binatekha chadal ('from your understanding, stop') means: use the very intelligence you are devoting to wealth-getting to recognize when to quit. Wisdom tells you where ambition should end.
5. The wordplay between ha-ta'if ('will you cause your eyes to fly') and ya'uf ('it flies away') connects the straining eye to the departing wealth — your eyes fly toward it, and it flies away from you.
6. Ra ayin ('evil of eye') is the opposite of tov-ayin ('good of eye,' 22:9). The 'evil eye' in Hebrew wisdom means 'grudging, miserly, resentful of what others receive' — not the supernatural curse of later folklore. Eating a stingy person's food creates obligation to someone who will later resent having shared it.
7. The rendering of sha'ar is debated — it may mean 'gatekeeper' (one who guards the threshold) or 'calculator' (one who reckons costs). Both meanings fit: the stingy host is a gatekeeper of his own generosity, calculating what everything costs him.
8. The physical disgust of vomiting (teqi'ennah) matches the social disgust of wasted courtesy. When you discover the host's true nature, everything — the food and your compliments — will come back up. The proverb warns that accepting hospitality from the wrong person degrades both body and speech.
9. The kesil ('fool, dullard') is not unintelligent but uninterested. He yavuz ('despises, treats with contempt') the sekhel ('insight, good sense') of your words. Teaching a fool is not merely ineffective — it is self-degrading, because your wisdom is subjected to contempt.
10. This repeats the boundary-stone prohibition from 22:28 but adds a specific victim: orphans (yetomim). Orphans had no father to defend their property rights in court. Stealing their land was attacking the most defenseless members of society — a direct affront to God, who claims the role of orphan-defender (v11).
11. Go'el is the same word used for God's redemption of Israel from Egypt (Exodus 6:6) and for Boaz's role in the book of Ruth. Here it names God's active, personal commitment to orphan defense.
12. Havi'ah ('bring, cause to come') is active — the student must deliver his own heart and ears to the learning process. Wisdom does not come to the passive; the student must come to wisdom. Musar ('discipline, correction, instruction') and imre-da'at ('words of knowledge') represent the full curriculum: correction of wrong behavior and acquisition of right understanding.
13. The proverb operates within the universal ancient assumption that physical correction was part of child-rearing. The assurance 'he will not die' addresses a parent's hesitation — the rod causes temporary pain, not permanent harm. Modern readers must read this within its cultural context while recognizing that the underlying principle (correction is an act of love, not neglect) transcends the specific method.
14. Sheol (she'ol) is the underworld, the realm of the dead — not the later theological concept of hell. The proverb claims that corrective discipline can save a young person from the path that leads to early death. 'Rescue his nefesh from Sheol' means: keep him alive by keeping him on the right path. The stakes are existential, not merely behavioral.
15. The teacher shifts to the intimate address 'my son' (beni) and reveals personal investment: the student's wisdom produces joy in the teacher's heart. Gam ani ('even I, I also, I myself') is emphatic — the teacher's delight is real, not professional. Wisdom is relational; it produces joy in the community of those who share it.
16. Kilyotai ('my kidneys, my innermost parts') represents the deepest seat of emotion in Hebrew anthropology — what we would call 'gut feeling' or 'the core of my being.' The teacher's joy at hearing the student speak mesharim ('upright things, straight words, what is right') is visceral, not cerebral.
17. The temptation to envy sinners (yeqanne libbekha ba-chatta'im) assumes that sinners appear to prosper — a problem that tormented the psalmists (Psalm 37, 73) and the author of Ecclesiastes. The antidote is not denial but redirection: yir'at YHWH ('the fear of the LORD') all day long. Sustained reverence displaces envy by reorienting what the heart values.
18. Acharit ('end, future, outcome, what comes after') assures the student that the story is not over. The apparent prosperity of sinners is not the final chapter. Tiqvatekha ('your hope, your expectation') will not be cut off (tikket, from karat, the same verb used for being 'cut off' from the covenant community). The promise is that the righteous path leads somewhere — patience will be vindicated.
19. The imperative sequence — shema ('listen'), chakkam ('be wise'), asher ('guide, set straight') — maps the learning process: attention leads to wisdom, which leads to directing the heart. The student is not passive but active: he must steer (asher) his own heart (lev) along the path (derekh). Wisdom is not received; it is practiced.
20. Sov'e-yayin ('drunkards, wine-guzzlers') and zolale vasar ('gluttons of meat, flesh-devourers') represent excess in both drink and food. The prohibition is social: al-tehi ('do not be among, do not associate with') warns against the company of the intemperate. The issue is not wine or meat per se but the loss of self-control that comes from habitual overindulgence and the peer pressure that perpetuates it.

21. The three-step progression: excess leads to drowsiness (numah, 'sleepiness, slumber'), which leads to poverty, which leads to rags. The personification of drowsiness as a tailor who dresses you in torn clothing (qera'im, 'rags, torn garments') is darkly humorous — the habits you indulge in become the wardrobe you wear.
22. Zeh yeladekha ('this one who fathered you, who gave you birth') grounds the command in biological reality: the person you are tempted to dismiss gave you existence. The second line addresses a specific temptation — contempt for an aging mother (al-tavuz ki zaqenah immekha). When parents become old and dependent, the power dynamic reverses, and the adult child may be tempted to treat them as burdens. The proverb forbids it.
23. The commercial metaphor is pointed: emet ('truth') is something you acquire at cost (qeneh, 'buy, acquire, purchase') and never liquidate (al-timkor, 'do not sell'). Truth, wisdom, discipline, and understanding are assets that must be held permanently. The one-directional transaction — buy but never sell — means that once acquired, these are not negotiable under any circumstances.
24. Gil yagil ('will surely rejoice, will greatly celebrate') is an emphatic form — doubled to express the intensity of the father's joy. The parallel between tsaddiq ('righteous') and chakham ('wise') confirms that in Proverbs, these are nearly synonymous: wisdom produces righteousness, and righteousness is the practical expression of wisdom.
25. The mother appears alongside the father (yismach-avikha ve-immekha), and the closing phrase yoladtekha ('she who gave you birth') specifically honors the mother's physical labor and sacrifice. The child's wise life is presented as a gift returned to both parents.
26. Tenah-veni libbakha li ('give, my son, your heart to me') is the teacher's most direct and intimate request. He asks for the student's full inner allegiance — not mere compliance but heart-level trust. The eyes (einekha) that guard (tittsornah, 'observe, watch, keep') the teacher's ways complete the picture: heart given inward, eyes directed outward.
27. Shuchah amuqqah ('deep pit') and be'er tsarah ('narrow well') are trap images — easy to fall into, impossible to climb out of. The zonah ('prostitute') and nokhriyyah ('foreign woman, outsider woman') are presented as two dimensions of sexual danger: the professional and the culturally unfamiliar. Both use seduction as a mechanism of entrapment.
28. The verb te'erov ('she lurks, she lies in ambush') is military and predatory language. The seductress is not passive but active — a hunter, not merely a temptation. The result of her work is multiplication: tosef bogedot ('she increases the faithless/treacherous'). Each person she ensnares becomes another person unfaithful to their commitments.
29. The sixfold 'who has?' (lemi) creates an incantatory rhythm that mimics the drunkard's repetitive, circular existence. The wounds 'for no reason' (chinnam) are the telltale sign — injuries the drinker cannot explain because he cannot remember receiving them.
30. Lam'acharim al-ha-yayin ('those who stay late over the wine, those who linger') and labba'im lachqor mimsakh ('those who come to investigate mixed wine') describe the dedicated drinker. Mimsakh ('mixed wine') was wine blended with spices or additional ingredients to increase potency. The verb chaqar ('to search, to investigate, to explore') is darkly ironic — the drunkard applies the diligence of a scholar to finding the strongest drink.
31. The seduction of wine is presented through visual and sensory appeal: yit'addam ('it reddens, it glows'), yitten ba-kos eino ('it gives its eye in the cup' — it gleams, it catches the light), yithalekh be-mesharim ('it goes in smoothness, it slides down easily'). Wine is personified as a seducer — it catches your eye, it looks beautiful, it enters smoothly. The next verses reveal what happens after the smooth entrance.
32. The reversal is complete: what went down smoothly (v31) now bites and stings. Nachash ('snake, serpent') and tsif'oni ('viper, adder') are both venomous creatures. The acharito ('its end, its aftermath') reveals the true nature of what seemed pleasant — wine that entered like silk exits like venom. The contrast between the smooth cup and the striking serpent is the chapter's most powerful image.
33. Zarot ('strange things' or 'strange women') and tahpukhot ('distortions, perversities, twisted things') describe the dual impairment of drunkenness: visual distortion and mental confusion. The drunk sees what is not there and says what makes no sense. Both perception (eyes) and speech (heart/mind) are corrupted.
34. Two absurd and terrifying positions: sleeping in the open ocean and sleeping at the top of a ship's mast (or rigging, chibbel). The drunkard's equilibrium is so destroyed that his subjective experience resembles the most violently unstable positions imaginable. The nausea and disorientation of severe intoxication are captured perfectly in the sea-swell image.
35. The shift to first person is the poem's masterstroke. The teacher stops describing the drunkard and lets the drunkard describe himself. The voice is simultaneously comic and tragic — a person who cannot feel blows, cannot remember being beaten, and whose only thought upon waking is to repeat the cycle. This is one of the earliest literary depictions of addiction.

24

Summary: *Proverbs 24 concludes the 'Words of the Wise' (vv1-22) and appends a brief additional collection titled 'These also are by the wise' (vv23-34). The chapter addresses envy of the wicked, the strength wisdom provides, the duty to rescue the innocent, the certainty of divine judgment, and the famous ' sluggard's vineyard' parable. It moves from prohibitions and exhortations to a closing narrative illustration.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 11-12 contain one of the most morally demanding statements in the Hebrew Bible: the obligation to rescue those being dragged to slaughter, with the explicit warning that claiming ignorance will not work before God. This is not a suggestion but an imperative, and it eliminates the defense of 'I did not know.' God weighs hearts (see 21:2) and will repay according to action or inaction. The ' sluggard's vineyard' parable (vv30-34) is the only true narrative in the Proverbs collection — a first-person account of walking past a lazy man's ruined field and drawing a lesson. It ends with a nearly verbatim quotation of 6:10-11, creating an internal echo within the book.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 17-18 ('Do not rejoice when your enemy falls... or the LORD may see and be displeased and turn His anger away from him') has troubled interpreters because the motivation seems self-interested: do not gloat lest God relent and spare your enemy. But the deeper logic is about leaving judgment to God entirely — if you take satisfaction in another's downfall, you have inserted yourself into God's judicial role, and He may reverse the outcome to preserve His sovereignty over justice.*

Connections: *The rescue imperative (vv11-12) connects to Ezekiel 3:17-21 (the watchman's obligation) and James 4:17 ('whoever knows the right thing to do and fails to do it, for him it is sin'). The 'do not rejoice at your enemy's fall' teaching (vv17-18) is echoed in Job 31:29 and expanded by Jesus in Matthew 5:44. The sluggard's vineyard (vv30-34) quotes Proverbs 6:10-11 verbatim. The 'these also are by the wise' header (v23) parallels the collection headers in 10:1, 22:17, and 25:1.*

¹Do not envy violent people,
and do not desire to be among them,

²for their hearts plan violence
and their lips speak of causing harm.

³By wisdom a house is built,
and by understanding it is established.

⁴and by knowledge its rooms are filled
with every kind of precious and pleasant wealth.

⁵A wise person is powerful,
and a person of knowledge increases strength.

⁶For by wise strategy you wage your war,
and victory comes through many advisors.

⁷Wisdom is beyond the fool's reach;
at the city gate he cannot open his mouth.

⁸Whoever schemes to do harm
will be called a master of plots.

⁹The scheming of folly is sin,
and the scoffer is detestable to others.

¹⁰If you collapse on the day of trouble,
your strength is indeed small.

¹¹Rescue those being dragged off to death;
hold back those stumbling toward slaughter.

¹²If you say, 'But we did not know about this!' —
does not He who weighs hearts perceive it?
Does not He who guards your life know?
And will He not repay each person according to what he has done?

¹³Eat honey, my son, for it is good,
and drippings from the comb are sweet on your palate.

¹⁴Know that wisdom is the same for your soul.
If you find it, there will be a future,
and your hope will not be cut off.

¹⁵Do not lie in ambush, wicked one, against the home of the righteous;
do not ravage his resting place.

¹⁶For the righteous person falls seven times and rises again,
but the wicked stumble into disaster.

¹⁷When your enemy falls, do not rejoice;
when he stumbles, do not let your heart celebrate,

¹⁸or the LORD will see and be displeased,
and He may turn His anger away from your enemy.

¹⁹Do not be agitated by evildoers;
do not envy the wicked.

²⁰For the evildoer has no future,
and the lamp of the wicked will be snuffed out.

²¹Fear the LORD and the king, my son,
and do not associate with those who seek upheaval,

²²for disaster will rise against them suddenly,
and who knows the ruin that both can bring?

²³These also are by the wise:
Showing partiality in judgment is not good.

²⁴Whoever tells the guilty, 'You are innocent' —
peoples will curse him, nations will denounce him.

²⁵But those who convict the guilty will prosper,
and a rich blessing will come upon them.

²⁶An honest answer
is like a kiss on the lips.

²⁷Prepare your work outside,
get everything ready in the field;
then afterward, build your house.

²⁸Do not testify against your neighbor without cause,
and do not deceive with your lips.

²⁹Do not say, 'I will do to him what he did to me;
I will pay him back for what he has done.'

³⁰I passed by the field of a lazy man
and by the vineyard of a person lacking sense.

³¹And there it was — overgrown with thorns everywhere,
nettles covering its surface,
and its stone wall broken down.

³²I observed and took it to heart;
I looked and drew a lesson.

³³'A little sleep, a little slumber,
a little folding of the hands to rest' —

³⁴and poverty will come marching toward you like a vagabond,
and want like an armed warrior.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with the same warning that closed the previous instruction unit (23:17): do not let envy of the wicked corrupt your moral compass. 'Violent people' (anshe ra'ah, literally 'men of evil/harm') are those who use force and manipulation to get ahead. The desire (tit'av, 'to crave, to long for') to join them is the temptation of expedience — their methods seem to work.
2. The verb yehgeh ('meditates, murmurs, plans') is the same word used for meditating on God's instruction in Psalm 1:2 — here inverted. Where the righteous person meditates on torah, the violent person meditates on shod ('destruction, violence, devastation'). Same cognitive process, opposite content.
3. Bayit ('house') means both the physical structure and the household — the family, the legacy, the dynasty. Wisdom builds (yibbaneh, passive — wisdom is the means) and understanding establishes (yitkonen, 'is made firm, is set on a foundation'). The passive voice emphasizes that wisdom is an instrument, not an agent — it is the tool God provides for building stable lives.
4. The progression from wisdom (v3) to understanding (v3) to knowledge (da'at, v4) represents three aspects of the same intellectual virtue. Wisdom designs, understanding constructs, and knowledge furnishes. The filled rooms (chadarim, 'inner chambers') represent abundance that comes from living wisely — not sudden wealth but accumulated prosperity.
5. Ge'vur chakham ba-oz ('a wise warrior is in strength') links wisdom to military power — the wise commander is stronger than the merely brave. This extends the logic of 21:22 (the wise person scales the city of warriors). Me'ammets ko'ach ('strengthening power, increasing might') suggests continuous growth — wisdom compounds strength over time.
6. Tachbulot ('guidance, steering, strategy') comes from the language of sailing — the ropes that steer a ship. War requires not just courage but navigation. Teshu'ah be-rov yo'ets ('deliverance in an abundance of counselors') repeats the teaching of 11:14 and 15:22: wisdom is collective, not individual. No single person sees everything; many advisors together see more.

7. Ra'mot ('corals, high things, things beyond reach') describes wisdom as elevated above the fool's capacity. The practical consequence: ba-sha'ar ('at the gate') — the place of legal proceedings and civic deliberation — the fool has nothing to contribute. He cannot open his mouth (lo yiftach-pihu) because he has nothing worth saying. Wisdom's absence results in civic silence.
8. Ba'al mezimot ('master of schemes, lord of plots') is a reputation label — the community will name you according to your behavior. Mezimmah can mean either 'prudence' (positive) or 'scheme' (negative); here the context determines the negative reading. The schemer earns a title that follows him permanently.
9. Zimmah ('scheme, plan, purpose') when paired with ivvelet ('folly') produces sin (chattat). The proverb locates sin not just in action but in intention — planning foolishness is already sinful. The scoffer (lets) is to'avat le-adam ('detestable to humanity') — universally despised, not merely by the wise but by everyone.
10. The wordplay between tsarah ('trouble, distress') and tsar ('narrow, small, constricted') is untranslatable: 'in the day of distress — distressed is your strength.' Crisis reveals capacity. The verb hitrappita ('you become slack, you go limp, you collapse') describes not physical weakness but moral failure — the inability to act when action is needed.
11. The verse does not specify who is doing the killing or why. The imperative applies regardless of the circumstances: if someone is being unjustly killed, you are commanded to intervene. The breadth of application is the point.
12. This is among the most ethically demanding passages in wisdom literature. It places a positive obligation on the bystander and removes the most common excuse for inaction. The theological grounding is God's omniscience: He knows what you knew and what you chose not to do.
13. Honey (devash) was the primary sweetener in ancient Israel and a symbol of the good life. Nofet ('drippings, oozing honey from the comb') is the purest, most desirable form. The instruction is not merely about food but sets up the analogy in v14: as honey is sweet to the body, wisdom is sweet to the soul.
14. The comparison is precise: what honey does for the taste buds, wisdom does for the nefesh ('soul, self, life'). The promise repeats 23:18 verbatim — yesh acharit ve-tiqvatekha lo tikkaret ('there is a future, and your hope will not be cut off'). Wisdom offers sweetness now and security later.
15. The address shifts to the wicked person directly — a rare move in Proverbs. Neveh tsaddiq ('the dwelling of the righteous') and rivtso ('his resting place, his lair') describe the righteous person's home and security. The verbs te'erov ('lie in ambush') and teshaddad ('ravage, destroy, plunder') are predatory and military. The wicked person is warned: attacking the righteous is futile because of what follows in v16.
16. The contrast is between falling and rising (the righteous) versus falling and staying down (the wicked). The righteous person's advantage is not immunity from suffering but the capacity to recover from it.
17. The prohibition against gloating (al-tismach, 'do not be glad'; al-yagel libbakha, 'do not let your heart exult') is remarkable in the ancient Near Eastern context, where celebrating an enemy's downfall was normal and expected. The next verse provides the theological reason.
18. The logic is counterintuitive: your gloating may cause God to relent toward the very person you want punished. Ra be-einav ('evil in His eyes, displeasing to Him') refers to your attitude, not your enemy's behavior. God finds schadenfreude repulsive because it usurps His role as judge. If you celebrate another's downfall, you claim ownership of judgment that belongs to God, and He may reverse the outcome to reassert His sovereignty.
19. Titchar ('be heated, be agitated, burn with anger') describes the emotional disturbance caused by watching the wicked prosper. The command addresses the psychological toll of perceived injustice. Combined with the envy prohibition, it tells the student: neither covet their success nor let their success make you angry.
20. Acharit ('future, outcome, latter end') for the wicked is empty — lo tiyeh acharit la-ra ('there will be no future for the evil one'). The lamp (ner) that represents life, prosperity, and continuity will be extinguished (yid'akh, 'will be put out, will be snuffed'). The wicked person's prosperity is temporary; his lamp has a limited supply of oil.
21. The pairing of the LORD and the king (YHWH va-melek) places divine and royal authority on the same side. Shonim ('those who change, those who are different, revolutionaries') describes people who destabilize — whether through political rebellion or constant inconsistency. The wisdom tradition values stability and order; those who constantly overturn existing structures are dangerous company.
22. This verse marks the end of the 'thirty sayings' section that began at 22:17. The collection closes with fear — an appropriate bookend to the opening call for attention and trust.
23. The collection header 'these also are by the wise' parallels 'proverbs of Solomon' (10:1) and 'words of the wise' (22:17). It attributes the following material to the same wisdom tradition without specifying individual authors.
24. The judge who acquits the guilty (omer la-rasha tsaddiq attah, 'saying to the wicked one, you are righteous') commits a public crime that the entire community recognizes. The consequences are social: peoples (ammim) will curse him and nations (le'ummim) will denounce him. Corrupt justice is not a private failing but a public offense that draws universal condemnation.
25. The contrast with v24: the judge who properly convicts (makhichim, from yakach, 'to rebuke, to convict, to decide rightly') receives blessing (birkat-tov, 'blessing of good'). The community rewards integrity in judgment because everyone's security depends on a just legal system.
26. The kiss (yishshaq sefatayim, 'he kisses lips') was a sign of respect and approval. Devarim nekhochim ('straight words, honest answers, direct speech') earn the same response as a kiss — they create intimacy and trust. The proverb values directness: honest speech is an act of relational

warmth.

27. The sequence is crucial: first secure your livelihood (field work, agricultural preparation), then build your house (establish your household). The proverb counsels economic pragmatism — do not start a family or household until you have the means to sustain it. Foundations before structures; income before expenditure.
28. Ed chinnam ('witness for nothing, witness without cause') describes false or frivolous testimony — giving evidence against a neighbor when there is no legitimate grievance. Combined with the prohibition against lip-deception (haphitteta bi-sefatekha), the proverb protects the legal system from weaponized speech. The courtroom — the gate — depends on honest witnesses.
29. The prohibition against personal vengeance (al-tomar ka'asher asah li ken e'eseh-lo) forbids the reciprocity instinct: he hurt me, so I will hurt him. The phrase ashiv la-ish ke-fo'olo ('I will repay the man according to his deed') is the language of divine judgment (see v12) — when a human being claims it, he usurps God's prerogative. Repayment belongs to God, not to the offended party.
30. The shift to narrative is the literary surprise. After chapters of imperative instruction, the teacher becomes a storyteller. This first-person form gives the lesson immediacy and credibility — 'I saw this with my own eyes.'
31. The description is visual and detailed: qimmeshonim ('thorns, thistles') have taken over the entire field. Charullim ('nettles, stinging weeds') cover its face (panav, the surface of the ground). The stone wall (gal avanim, 'stone heap') that protected the vineyard from animals has collapsed (neherasah, 'was torn down, was demolished'). Every element of productive agriculture — cleared ground, cultivated soil, protective walls — has been lost to neglect.
32. The teacher's response models the learning process: echezeh ('I observed, I beheld'), ashit libbi ('I set my heart,' meaning I reflected deeply), ra'iti ('I saw' — repeated for emphasis), laqachti musar ('I took discipline/instruction'). Four verbs trace the path from observation to reflection to insight to life-change. The wise person learns from what he sees.
33. This verse quotes the lazy person's own self-justification — each 'a little' (me'at) sounds harmless by itself. A little sleep, a little rest, a little pause. The repetition exposes the deception: each 'little' adds up. The folding of hands (chibbuq yadayim, 'embracing of hands, crossing of arms') is the physical posture of inaction. This verse is quoted verbatim from Proverbs 6:10.
34. Poverty is personified twice: as a mithallekh ('one who walks about, a wanderer, a vagabond') who arrives uninvited, and as an ish Magen ('a man with a shield, an armed warrior') who cannot be resisted. The two images capture both stealth and force: poverty sneaks up on you and then overpowers you. This verse also quotes Proverbs 6:11, creating an internal echo that links the two passages on laziness.

25

Summary: *Proverbs 25 opens the 'Hezekiah Collection' — proverbs of Solomon copied by the scribes of King Hezekiah of Judah (c. 715-686 BCE). This chapter is rich in extended similes and comparisons, moving from the glory of kings and the hiddenness of God, through social wisdom about legal disputes, speech, and self-control, to the famous instruction about giving food and drink to your enemy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The superscription (v1) is one of the most important editorial notes in the Hebrew Bible: it tells us that Hezekiah's court scribes actively collected, copied, and arranged Solomonic proverbs — evidence of a royal scribal project preserving wisdom literature centuries after Solomon. This chapter is also unusually dense with simile: nearly every proverb uses 'like' (ke-) comparisons, creating a gallery of vivid images — apples of gold in silver settings, cold water to a tired soul, clouds without rain, a broken tooth and a twisted foot. Verses 21-22 (feeding your enemy) are quoted by Paul in Romans 12:20, becoming one of the Hebrew Bible's most influential ethical instructions in the New Testament.*

Translation Friction: *The 'coals of fire on his head' image in verse 22 has been debated for centuries. Does it mean you will cause your enemy pain (punitive reading)? Or does it refer to an Egyptian penitential ritual where carrying coals on the head symbolized shame and repentance (transformative reading)? The transformative reading fits the context better: kindness to an enemy provokes inner shame that may lead to genuine change. The punitive reading contradicts the spirit of v21.*

Connections: *The Hezekiah editorial note (v1) connects to 2 Kings 18-20 and 2 Chronicles 29-32, which describe Hezekiah's religious reforms. The 'apples of gold' image (v11) has no exact parallel but echoes Song of Songs 2:3-5 in its use of fruit imagery. Verses 21-22 are quoted in Romans 12:20. The 'rooftop' proverb (v24) repeats 21:9 verbatim. The 'cold water to a thirsty soul' (v25) connects to Psalm 42:1-2 and Jeremiah 2:13.*

¹These also are proverbs of Solomon,
copied by the men of Hezekiah, king of Judah.

²It is the glory of God to conceal a matter,
but the glory of kings is to search a matter out.

³The heavens for height and the earth for depth,
but the heart of kings — unfathomable.

⁴Remove the dross from silver,
and a vessel emerges for the refiner.

⁵Remove the wicked from the king's presence,
and his throne will be established in righteousness.

⁶Do not promote yourself in the king's presence,
and do not stand in the place of the great,

⁷for it is better to be told, 'Come up here!'
than to be humiliated before a noble
whom your own eyes have seen.

⁸Do not rush to bring a lawsuit,
or what will you do in the end
when your neighbor puts you to shame?

⁹Argue your case with your neighbor directly,
but do not reveal another person's secret,

¹⁰or the one who hears will disgrace you,
and your bad reputation will never go away.

¹¹A word spoken at the right moment
is like apples of gold in a setting of silver.

¹²A gold ring and an ornament of fine gold —
that is a wise rebuke to a listening ear.

¹³Like the cold of snow on a harvest day
is a faithful messenger to those who send him;
he refreshes the soul of his masters.

¹⁴Clouds and wind but no rain —
that is a person who boasts of a gift he never gives.

¹⁵Through patience a ruler can be persuaded,
and a gentle tongue can break a bone.

¹⁶If you find honey, eat only what you need;
too much, and you will vomit it up.

¹⁷Make your foot scarce at your neighbor's house,
or he will grow tired of you and hate you.

¹⁸A war club, a sword, and a sharpened arrow —
that is a person who bears false witness against his neighbor.

¹⁹A broken tooth and a twisted foot —
that is trusting a treacherous person in a time of trouble.

²⁰Stripping off a garment on a cold day,
pouring vinegar on an open wound —
that is singing songs to a heavy heart.

²¹If your enemy is hungry, give him food to eat;
if he is thirsty, give him water to drink.

²²For you will heap burning coals on his head,
and the LORD will reward you.

²³The north wind brings rain,
and a secretive tongue brings angry looks.

²⁴Better to sit on a corner of the roof
than to share a house with a quarrelsome woman.

²⁵Cold water to a weary soul —
that is good news from a distant land.

²⁶A muddied spring and a polluted fountain —
that is a righteous person who gives way before the wicked.

²⁷Too much honey is not good,
and searching for your own glory is no glory at all.

²⁸A city with broken walls and no defenses —
that is a person with no control over his spirit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription authenticates both the Solomonic origin and the Hezekian transmission. It distinguishes this collection from 10:1-22:16 (also attributed to Solomon but without named editors) and from the 'Words of the Wise' (22:17-24:34, attributed to an unnamed wisdom tradition).
2. The verb *haster* ('to hide, to conceal') applied to God does not describe deception but transcendence — God conceals things because they belong to a level of reality humans cannot yet access. The verb *chaqor* ('to search, to investigate, to explore') applied to kings is the same word used for mining precious metals (Job 28) — it describes intensive, sustained inquiry.
3. Three immeasurable things: the height of the sky, the depth of the earth, and the inner life of a king. *Ein cheqer* ('there is no searching, it is unsearchable') applied to the king's heart means that royal decision-making is opaque to outsiders. The king investigates others (v2) but cannot himself be fully investigated. This is both a statement about royal privacy and a warning: do not assume you understand what the king is thinking.
4. *Sigim* ('dross, impurities, waste metal') must be removed before silver can be shaped. The metallurgical metaphor sets up verse 5: as dross must be removed from silver before it becomes useful, so the wicked must be removed from the king's presence before governance becomes righteous.
5. The application of the metallurgy image: the *rasha* ('wicked person') is the dross in the king's court. Once removed, the throne is established (*yikkon*, 'made firm, set on a stable foundation') in *tsedeq* ('righteousness, justice'). The purity of governance depends on the purity of the inner circle.

6. Tithaddar ('to glorify yourself, to make yourself splendid, to put yourself forward') warns against self-promotion before royalty. The advice is practical and social: do not claim a rank above your station. Jesus echoes this in Luke 14:7-11, where he tells guests not to choose the best seat at a banquet.
7. The social calculus is clear: being invited upward is honor; being pushed downward is shame. The phrase asher ra'u einekha ('whom your eyes have seen') adds the sting of witnesses — the humiliation happens in public, before people you know. Strategic humility avoids this risk.
8. Maher ('quickly, hastily, in haste') warns against impulsive litigation. The acharitah ('its end, its outcome') is unpredictable — you may lose, and the defeat will be public (behakhlīm, 'when he shames, when he humiliates'). The proverb counsels patience and private resolution before public confrontation.
9. Two instructions in one: settle disputes face to face (rivekha riv et re'ekha, 'your dispute, dispute with your neighbor') and do not drag third parties' private information into the conflict (sod acher al-tegal, 'another's secret do not uncover'). Disputes should be contained, not weaponized with gossip.
10. Dibbatekha ('your bad report, your infamy, your reputation for gossip') lo tashuv ('will not return, will not go away') warns that a reputation as a gossip or betrayer of confidences is permanent. Once people know you cannot be trusted with secrets, that knowledge cannot be undone.
11. The phrase al-ofanav (literally 'upon its wheels' or 'upon its turnings') is often rendered 'fitly spoken' or 'aptly spoken.' The root ofen means 'wheel' or 'manner' — a word that rolls out at exactly the right moment, turning precisely as it should.
12. The comparison links the beauty of jewelry to the beauty of correction. A mokhiach chakham ('wise reprover, wise person who corrects') paired with an ozen shoma'at ('hearing ear, ear that listens') creates something as valuable and beautiful as gold jewelry. Both parties are needed: the rebuke must be wise and the ear must be willing. Without the listening ear, even golden correction is wasted.
13. Snow-cooled water (not actual snowfall, which would ruin the harvest) was the ultimate refreshment during the exhausting harvest season. A tsir ne'eman ('faithful messenger, trustworthy envoy') provides the same relief to his senders: the assurance that the task was completed properly. Nefesh adonav yashiv ('he restores the soul of his masters') uses the same verb as Psalm 23:3 ('he restores my soul').
14. In an arid climate, clouds and wind that produce no rain are a cruel promise — the appearance of relief without the reality. Nesi'im ('clouds, vapor') and ruach ('wind') create anticipation; geshem ayin ('rain — none!') is the devastating letdown. A person who mithalleh be-mattat shaqar ('boasts of a false gift, brags about what he will give but does not') generates the same emotional cruelty: raised hope followed by nothing.
15. Orekh appayim ('length of nostrils,' the Hebrew idiom for patience, since anger was associated with flaring nostrils) can move a qatsin ('ruler, leader, commander'). Lashon rakkah ('soft tongue, gentle speech') can break a gerem ('bone') — the hardest structure in the body yields to the softest approach. The proverb celebrates the paradoxical power of gentleness: soft breaks hard.
16. Honey represents any good thing — pleasure, wealth, comfort. The proverb endorses enjoyment (ekhol, 'eat!') but within limits (dayyekka, 'your sufficiency, what is enough for you'). Beyond the limit, even sweetness becomes sickness. Self-regulation transforms a blessing into sustained enjoyment; excess transforms it into nausea.
17. Hoqar raglekha ('make your foot rare/precious') extends the honey principle to social visits. Even good relationships are ruined by excess. Yisba'akha ('he will have his fill of you') uses the same verb as v16 — just as you can have too much honey, your neighbor can have too much of you.
18. Three weapons — mefits ('mace, war club'), cherev ('sword'), and chets shanun ('sharpened arrow') — represent three kinds of damage: blunt force, cutting, and piercing from a distance. False testimony does all three: it bludgeons reputation, cuts relationships, and wounds from afar. The progression from close-range to long-range suggests that false witness does damage even at a distance.
19. Both images describe body parts that should function but do not: a shen ro'ah ('bad tooth, broken tooth') that was supposed to chew and a regel mu'adet ('slipping foot, dislocated foot') that was supposed to walk. Trusting a boged ('traitor, unfaithful person') in crisis is the same: the support you counted on collapses precisely when you need it most.
20. Three images of inappropriate action: removing warmth when cold is needed, applying acid to a wound (chomets al-nater, 'vinegar on soda/natron' — which produces a fizzing, useless chemical reaction), and singing cheerful songs to a person in grief. Forced cheer for a grieving person is not comfort but cruelty — it strips away the dignity of sorrow and adds pain to pain. The proverb validates grief and condemns the impulse to fix sadness with performance.
21. This proverb is quoted by Paul in Romans 12:20 as the basis for 'overcoming evil with good.' The Hebrew text makes no reference to the motivation being punishment — the instruction is simply to meet need regardless of the relationship.
22. Whatever the coals image means, the final clause settles the ethical direction: God rewards this behavior. Acts of enemy-love align with God's will, and God will repay the person who practices them. The reward is from God, not from the enemy's changed behavior.
23. Ruach tsafon ('north wind') in Israel typically brings rain from the Mediterranean. Lashon sater ('hidden tongue, secretive speech, backbiting') similarly produces a predictable result: panim niz'amim ('angry faces, indignant countenances'). The cause-and-effect is as reliable as weather: gossip produces anger as surely as the north wind produces rain.
24. This is a verbatim repetition of 21:9. Its presence here in the Hezekiah collection suggests it circulated independently and was included in both collections. The repetition itself is significant — it shows that the editors did not harmonize the collections but preserved them as received.
25. Mayim qarim ('cold water') on a nefesh ayefah ('exhausted/thirsty soul') is instant, physical relief. Shemu'ah tovah me-erets merchaq ('good news from a far country') provides the same relief to the anxious mind. In a world without instant communication, news from distant family or business

took weeks or months — the arrival of good news after long uncertainty was as reviving as cold water after hard labor.

- 26.** A ma'yan nirpas ('trampled spring') and maqor mashchat ('corrupted source') are water sources ruined by contamination — still present but no longer useful. When a tsaddiq ('righteous person') collapses (mat, 'totters, stumbles, gives way') before a rasha ('wicked person'), the community loses its source of clean moral water. The righteous person who compromises under pressure becomes a polluted spring — present but poisoned.
- 27.** Extending v16, excessive honey consumption is now paired with excessive self-promotion. Cheqer kevodam kavod ('the investigation of their glory is glory' — read sarcastically, or emended to 'the investigation of weighty matters is weighty/burdensome') suggests that constantly seeking your own honor is as sickening as gorging on honey. True glory is not pursued; it is received.
- 28.** The military image would have been especially vivid in the Hezekiah collection, since Hezekiah witnessed the Assyrian siege of Jerusalem (2 Kings 18-19). A breached wall was not a metaphor but a lived terror.

26

Summary: *Proverbs 26 continues the Hezekiah collection with three concentrated sections: the fool (vv1-12), the sluggard (vv13-16), and the troublemaker — the meddler, the deceiver, and the gossip (vv17-28). The chapter is notable for its humor, its vivid animal imagery, and the famous paradox of verses 4-5: should you answer a fool or not?*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The juxtaposition of verses 4 and 5 ('Do not answer a fool according to his folly' / 'Answer a fool according to his folly') is one of the most discussed pairs in Proverbs. The apparent contradiction is intentional: wisdom cannot be reduced to a single rule. Sometimes engaging a fool dignifies his nonsense; sometimes not engaging him lets him think he is wise. The wise person must discern which situation requires which response. This is the wisdom tradition at its most sophisticated — refusing to flatten complexity into a formula. The sluggard section (vv13-16) is the funniest passage in Proverbs, culminating in the lazy person who cannot lift his hand from the dish to his mouth (v15) yet considers himself wiser than seven counselors (v16).*

Translation Friction: *The violent imagery applied to fools — a whip for the horse, a bridle for the donkey, a rod for the fool's back (v3) — reflects a society where physical punishment was an accepted corrective measure. The comparison of fools to animals is intentionally degrading: the fool has abandoned the use of reason, so he must be managed like a beast. Modern readers will want to distinguish between the proverb's diagnosis (foolishness resists all verbal correction) and its prescribed remedy (physical force).*

Connections: *The fool-answer paradox (vv4-5) connects to Ecclesiastes 10:12-14 and Jesus' own varied responses to hostile questioners — sometimes he answered, sometimes he remained silent. The dog-returning-to-vomit image (v11) is quoted in 2 Peter 2:22. The 'lion in the road' excuse (v13) repeats 22:13. The gossip-and-charcoal image (v20-21) connects to James 3:5-6 on the tongue as fire.*

¹Like snow in summer and rain at harvest,
honor does not suit a fool.

²Like a fluttering sparrow, like a darting swallow,
an undeserved curse will not land.

³The whip suits the horse, the bridle the donkey,
and a rod for the fool's back.

⁴Do not answer a fool according to his folly,
or you yourself will become like him.

⁵Answer a fool according to his folly,
or he will be wise in his own eyes.

⁶Cutting off your own feet and drinking violence —
that is sending a message through a fool.

⁷Legs hang limp on a lame person —
so does a proverb in the mouth of fools.

⁸Like tying a stone into a sling —
that is giving honor to a fool.

⁹A thornbush brandished by a drunk —
that is a proverb in the mouth of fools.

¹⁰An archer who wounds everyone at random —
that is one who hires a fool or hires a passerby.

¹¹As a dog returns to its vomit,
so a fool repeats his folly.

¹²Do you see a person wise in his own eyes?
There is more hope for a fool than for him.

¹³The lazy person says, 'A lion is on the road!
A lion is in the open square!'

¹⁴A door turns on its hinges,
and the lazy person turns on his bed.

¹⁵The lazy person buries his hand in the dish;
he is too tired to bring it back to his mouth.

¹⁶The lazy person is wiser in his own eyes
than seven people who give thoughtful answers.

¹⁷Grabbing a dog by the ears —
that is a passerby who meddles in someone else's quarrel.

¹⁸Like a madman shooting
flaming arrows and death —

¹⁹that is a person who deceives his neighbor
and then says, 'I was only joking!'

²⁰Without wood, a fire goes out;
without a gossip, conflict dies down.

²¹Charcoal for embers and wood for fire —
so is a quarrelsome person for kindling conflict.

²²The words of a gossip are like tasty morsels;
they go down into the innermost parts.

²³Silver glaze over a clay pot —
that is burning lips with a wicked heart.

²⁴A hateful person disguises himself with his lips,
but inside he stores up deceit.

²⁵When he makes his voice gracious, do not trust him,
for seven abominations fill his heart.

²⁶Hatred may be concealed by deception,
but his wickedness will be exposed before the assembly.

²⁷Whoever digs a pit will fall into it,
and whoever rolls a stone — it will roll back on him.

²⁸A lying tongue hates those it crushes,
and a flattering mouth brings ruin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Snow in summer is impossible in Israel; rain during harvest is destructive (it ruins drying grain). Both are wrong-season events. Honor given to a kesil ('fool, dullard') is equally out of place — it disrupts the natural moral order.
2. The tsippor ('bird, sparrow') and deror ('swallow') are erratic in flight — they dart and flutter but do not settle. A qillat chinnam ('curse without cause, undeserved curse') behaves the same way: it has no place to land, no target to hit, because there is no moral ground for it to attach to. The proverb assures: if the curse is undeserved, it cannot harm you.
3. The three-part comparison equates the fool with draft animals: each requires an external control device because internal direction is absent. The shot ('whip'), meteg ('bridle'), and shevet ('rod') are instruments of compulsion. The fool's back (gev kesilim) replaces the animal's back — the fool has placed himself in the animal category by refusing to respond to reason.
4. This verse and the next are not contradictory but complementary — they describe two different situations requiring two different responses. The wise person must discern which applies.
5. The deliberate placement of these contradictory commands side by side is an editorial choice — the Hezekiah scribes preserved the tension rather than resolving it. The tension itself is the teaching: wisdom is not a rulebook but a faculty of judgment.
6. The imagery is deliberately absurd: sending a message via a fool is like amputating your own legs (meqattseh raglayim, 'cutting off feet') and drinking chamas ('violence, harm'). You destroy your own ability to walk (act) and consume destruction (experience the consequences). The fool as messenger does not deliver the message — he delivers disaster.
7. The lame person's legs (shoqayim, 'legs, thighs') are dalyu ('hang loose, dangle, are lifted but useless') — they exist but cannot function. A mashal ('proverb, comparison, wisdom saying') in a fool's mouth is equally useless: the words are present but the understanding is absent. The fool can recite wisdom but cannot apply it.
8. Tsrer even be-margemah ('binding a stone in a sling') could mean: (1) tying the stone so it cannot be released — defeating the sling's purpose, or (2) loading a precious stone into a weapon that will fling it away. Either way, the action wastes something valuable. Giving honor (kavod) to a fool is equally wasteful — it either cannot accomplish its purpose or it throws value away.
9. A drunk waving a choach ('thorn branch, thornbush') is dangerous to everyone nearby but especially to himself — he cannot control the weapon and will likely injure himself. A fool wielding a proverb is equally dangerous: he may use it at the wrong time, apply it to the wrong situation, or weaponize it against the innocent. Wisdom in the wrong hands is a hazard.
10. This verse is notoriously difficult to translate. Rav mecholel kol ('a master who wounds everyone' or 'a great one who creates everything') is ambiguous. The rendering follows the interpretation that likens the person who hires fools and random strangers to an archer who shoots wildly — everyone gets hurt. Hiring without discernment is indiscriminate destruction.
11. The comparison is not just about returning to bad behavior but about returning to something the body itself rejected. The fool's experience should have taught him — his own life expelled the folly — but he goes back anyway.
12. The shocking conclusion of the fool section: the only person worse than a fool is the person who thinks he is wise (chakham be-einav, 'wise in his own eyes'). The fool at least might encounter wisdom and recognize it; the self-satisfied 'wise' person has immunized himself against learning. His self-assessment blocks all correction. This is the most dangerous condition in Proverbs — not ignorance but the illusion of knowledge.

13. The excuse has escalated from 22:13: there the lion was vaguely 'outside'; here it patrols both the derekh ('road') and the rehov ('open square, public plaza'). The lazy person's imagination grows more elaborate over time, filling every possible route with danger. The humor lies in the specificity of the excuse and the total absence of actual risk.
14. The comparison is brilliant in its precision: the door moves (tissov, 'turns, rotates') but goes nowhere — it swings back and forth on its tsir ('hinge, pivot') without ever leaving its frame. The lazy person does the same on his mittah ('bed') — he rolls and shifts but never gets up. Maximum motion, zero progress.
15. The laziness has reached its absurd apex: the atsel has managed to get his hand into the dish (tsallachat, 'bowl, dish, plate') but nil'ah ('is exhausted, is wearied') by the effort of returning it to his mouth. He wants to eat but cannot complete the motion. The proverb is comic hyperbole, but the point is real: laziness eventually destroys even the capacity for self-care. This verse is nearly identical to 19:24.
16. The sluggard section's devastating conclusion: the person who cannot feed himself considers himself wiser than shiv'ah meshive ta'am ('seven who return sense, seven who give reasoned answers'). Seven is the number of completeness — the lazy person thinks he is wiser than every possible advisor. His laziness has metastasized into self-delusion. This connects to v12: the self-proclaimed wise person is worse than a fool.
17. Machaziq be-ozne-kelev ('grasping the ears of a dog') puts you in an impossible position: you cannot hold on (the dog will bite you) and you cannot let go (the dog will bite you). The meddler (over mit'abber al-riv lo-lo, 'a passer-by getting involved in a quarrel not his own') is in the same trap: once involved in someone else's conflict, there is no safe exit.
18. The mitlahlelah ('one acting crazy, a madman, one raving') who shoots ziqqim ('firebrands, flaming projectiles'), chitstsim ('arrows'), and mavet ('death') is random and lethal. The three projectiles represent escalating destruction — fire, piercing, and death itself. This image sets up v19.
19. The deadly joke: after causing real harm through deception (rimmah, 'deceived, cheated, misled'), the offender retreats into the defense of humor — halo mesacheq ani ('am I not playing? I was just kidding!'). The proverb exposes this as a lie: deception is deception regardless of the label you attach afterward. Calling harm a joke does not undo the harm.
20. The physics of conflict is identical to the physics of fire: remove the fuel and the fire dies. The nirgan ('gossip, whisperer, slanderer') is the wood that keeps quarrels burning. Remove the gossip and the madon ('strife, contention, quarrel') goes quiet (yishtoq, 'becomes silent, ceases, is stilled'). The solution to chronic conflict is identifying and removing the person who feeds it.
21. Extending v20's fire metaphor: pecham ('charcoal') intensifies gechalim ('embers/coals'), and etsim ('wood') feeds esh ('fire'). The quarrelsome person (ish midyanim, 'man of contentions') functions identically: he takes existing tension and intensifies it (lecharchar riv, 'to stoke strife, to heat up a quarrel'). He does not start fires from nothing — he finds smoldering embers and adds fuel.
22. This verse repeats 18:8 verbatim. Ke-mitlahamim ('like swallowed morsels, like delicious bites') describes gossip's appeal: people consume it eagerly because it is fascinating. The words descend to chadre-vaten ('the inner chambers of the belly') — they are internalized, digested, and become part of the listener. Gossip is not surface noise; it becomes part of how you see the person being discussed.
23. Kesef sigim metsuppeh al-charesh ('silver dross overlaid on pottery') describes a cheap vessel made to look valuable — the ceramic is worthless, and the coating is not real silver but slag. Sefatayim dolqim ('burning lips, fervent lips, smooth lips') combined with lev ra ('a wicked heart, an evil mind') is the human equivalent: passionate speech covering corrupt intentions. The exterior gleams; the interior is worthless.
24. Yinnaker ('disguises himself, makes himself unrecognizable') — the sone ('hater, enemy') uses speech to conceal his true nature. Be-qirbo ('in his midst, in his inner being') he stores mirmah ('deceit, treachery'). The external presentation and the internal reality are opposites. Verses 24-26 form a unit about concealed hatred.
25. Ki yechanen qolo ('when he makes his voice gracious, when he speaks charmingly') — the deceiver can produce beautiful speech at will. Sheva to'avot be-libbo ('seven detestable things are in his heart') — the number seven means his heart is completely full of what God finds abhorrent. The warning is absolute: al-ta'amen-bo ('do not believe in him, do not trust him'). Some people's charm is a weapon.
26. The concealment of sin'ah ('hatred') by mashshaon ('deception, guile') is temporary. The ra'ato ('his wickedness, his evil') will be revealed (tiggaleh, 'will be uncovered, will be exposed') be-qahal ('in the assembly, before the community'). The proverb assures that hidden hatred has an expiration date — public exposure is coming.
27. The boomerang principle: traps set for others ensnare the trapper. Koreh shachat ('one who digs a pit') falls into his own excavation. Golel even ('one who rolls a stone' — presumably to set a trap or block a path) has it roll back (elav tashuv, 'to him it returns'). This is not karma but divine justice operating through natural consequences. Ecclesiastes 10:8 repeats the same observation.
28. The chapter's final proverb reveals the motive behind deception: the liar hates his victims (yisna dakkav, 'hates those he has crushed/oppressed'). Lying is not neutral — it proceeds from hatred. The flattering mouth (peh chalaq, 'smooth mouth') produces midcheh ('ruin, overthrow, stumbling') — smooth words are the pathway to destruction. The chapter ends as it began: with the contrast between appearance and reality.

27

Summary: *Proverbs 27 continues the Hezekiah collection with proverbs about the uncertainty of tomorrow, the value of honest friendship, the testing power of praise, the insatiability of the human eye, and the importance of diligent pastoral care. The chapter moves from warnings about boasting and jealousy to an extended closing section on agricultural stewardship as a metaphor for responsible living.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 ('Faithful are the wounds of a friend, but the kisses of an enemy are excessive') is one of the most psychologically acute statements in the Bible. It identifies the paradox that pain from a trusted person can be more valuable than pleasure from an untrustworthy one. The chapter also contains the striking observation that 'iron sharpens iron' (v17) — an image of mutual friction producing mutual improvement. The agricultural closing (vv23-27) is unusual for Proverbs: it is an extended pastoral poem rather than a series of independent proverbs, describing the rhythms of responsible land management as the foundation of security.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 15-16 compares a quarrelsome woman to a constant dripping on a rainy day, then says trying to restrain her is like restraining the wind or grasping oil. As with similar proverbs (21:9, 19; 25:24), the observation addresses only men's frustration in a patriarchal context. The intensity of the simile — wind and oil, forces that cannot be contained — suggests genuine despair at chronic domestic conflict. Verse 14 ('blessing a neighbor loudly early in the morning will be counted as a curse') warns against socially tone-deaf enthusiasm — good intentions delivered at the wrong time are perceived as aggression.*

Connections: *The 'wounds of a friend' (v6) connects to Psalm 141:5 ('Let the righteous strike me; it is a kindness'). 'Iron sharpens iron' (v17) has no exact parallel but resonates with Ecclesiastes 4:9-12 (two are better than one). The agricultural conclusion (vv23-27) echoes the garden-and-field imagery throughout Proverbs (24:30-34) and anticipates the agrarian economics described in Ruth. The 'do not boast about tomorrow' warning (v1) connects to James 4:13-16.*

¹Do not boast about tomorrow,
for you do not know what a day may give birth to.

²Let another person praise you, not your own mouth —
a stranger, not your own lips.

³A stone is heavy and sand is weighty,
but a fool's provocation outweighs them both.

⁴Fury is cruel and anger is a flood,
but who can stand before jealousy?

⁵Open rebuke is better
than love that stays hidden.

⁶Trustworthy are the wounds of a friend,
but the kisses of an enemy are excessive.

⁷A satisfied appetite tramples on honey,
but to a hungry appetite every bitter thing is sweet.

⁸Like a bird that strays from its nest,
so is a person who strays from his place.

⁹Oil and incense make the heart glad,
and the sweetness of a friend comes from sincere counsel.

¹⁰Do not abandon your friend or your father's friend,
and do not go to your brother's house on the day of your disaster.
Better a neighbor nearby than a brother far away.

¹¹Be wise, my son, and make my heart glad,
so I can answer anyone who mocks me.

¹²The shrewd person sees danger and takes cover;
the naive walk straight into it and pay the price.

¹³Take his garment — he has guaranteed a stranger's debt;
hold it as collateral — he has pledged for a foreign woman.

¹⁴Blessing your neighbor in a loud voice early in the morning —
it will be counted as a curse.

¹⁵A constant dripping on a rainy day
and a quarrelsome woman are alike.

¹⁶Trying to restrain her is like restraining the wind
or grasping oil with your right hand.

¹⁷Iron sharpens iron,
and one person sharpens the face of another.

¹⁸Whoever tends a fig tree eats its fruit,
and whoever serves his master will be honored.

¹⁹As water reflects a face back to a face,
so the human heart reflects the person.

²⁰Sheol and Abaddon are never satisfied,
and the eyes of a person are never satisfied.

²¹The crucible tests silver and the furnace tests gold,
and a person is tested by the praise he receives.

²²Even if you grind a fool in a mortar
with a pestle among the grain,
his foolishness will not leave him.

²³Know well the condition of your flocks;
pay close attention to your herds.

²⁴For wealth does not last forever,
and does a crown endure from generation to generation?

²⁵When the grass is removed and new growth appears
and the mountain herbs are gathered in,

²⁶lambs will provide your clothing,
and goats will be the price for a field.

²⁷There will be enough goat's milk for your food,
food for your household,
and sustenance for your servant girls.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ma-yeled yom ('what a day may give birth to') personifies the day as a pregnant woman — you cannot predict what it will produce. The verb yalad ('to give birth') implies that each day contains something gestating, unknown, about to emerge. The proverb counsels humility before the future: plans are legitimate, but boasting about outcomes you cannot control is foolishness.
2. Zar ('stranger, outsider, another person') and nokhri ('foreigner, someone from outside') together represent anyone other than yourself. Even the most distant person's praise is more valuable than self-praise. The proverb does not forbid confidence but forbids advertising it — let your work speak and let others do the endorsing.
3. Even (stone) and chol (sand) are the heaviest natural substances in daily experience. The fool's ka'as ('anger, vexation, provocation') is kaved ('heavy, burdensome') beyond both. The proverb measures emotional weight in physical terms: dealing with a fool's anger is a load that exceeds any physical burden.
4. Chemah ('fury, rage, venom') is akhziyyut ('cruel, merciless'). Af ('anger, wrath') is shetef ('a flood, an overwhelming torrent'). Both are destructive — but qin'ah ('jealousy, envy, zeal') surpasses both. The rhetorical question mi ya'amod ('who can stand?') implies: no one. Jealousy is more destructive than rage because rage burns out; jealousy smolders indefinitely.
5. Tokhachat megullah ('rebuke that is uncovered, correction out in the open') is preferred over ahavah mesuttaret ('love that is concealed, hidden affection'). Love that never expresses itself — especially through honest correction — is useless. The proverb values visible, active engagement over invisible, passive warmth. Love that does not speak when speech is needed is not functioning as love.
6. Na'atarot is often translated 'deceitful' but the root atar means 'to multiply, to be abundant.' The enemy's kisses are not just false but profuse — suspiciously generous, overwhelmingly affectionate. The excess itself is the warning sign.
7. Nefesh seve'ah ('a full/satisfied appetite') rejects (tavus, 'tramples, spurns') even nofet ('dripping honey' — the finest sweetness). Nefesh re'evah ('a hungry/starving appetite') finds even bitter things (kol-mar) sweet (matoq). The proverb observes how need transforms perception: what you have in abundance loses value; what you lack becomes precious. This applies to food, companionship, home, and every other human good.
8. A tsippor nodedet min-qinnah ('a bird wandering from its nest') is vulnerable — exposed to predators and weather, separated from its young. A person who abandons his maqom ('place, proper location, home') faces the same exposure. The proverb values rootedness: your place — your home, your community, your responsibilities — is where you belong. Wandering may look like freedom but feels like exile.
9. Shemen ('oil, perfume') and qetoret ('incense') are sensory pleasures that lift the mood (yesammach-lev, 'make the heart rejoice'). A friend's metek ('sweetness, pleasantness') comes from etsat-nefesh ('counsel of the soul, advice from the heart') — not flattery but genuine, deeply meant guidance. The proverb equates the pleasure of a friend's honest counsel with the pleasure of physical luxuries.
10. Three instructions about relational priority: maintain inherited friendships (re'akha ve-rea avikha), do not burden family with emergencies when they are far away (beit achikha al-tavo be-yom eidekha), and value proximity (tov shakhen qarov me-ach rachoq). The proverb is pragmatic: in a crisis, the person next door can help you now; your brother three days' journey away cannot. Cultivate nearby relationships.
11. The teacher reveals a personal stake: the student's wisdom vindicates the teacher. Chorfi ('my reproacher, the one who taunts me') questions the teacher's competence. The student's wise life is the teacher's best answer — a living refutation of any critic. The parent-teacher's reputation depends on the student's character.
12. Nearly identical to 22:3. The repetition within the Hezekiah collection confirms that proverbs circulated independently and could appear in multiple collections. The message remains: discernment (reading situations accurately) is a survival skill.
13. Nearly identical to 20:16. The instruction is addressed to the lender: if someone has been foolish enough to guarantee a stranger's or foreign woman's debt, protect yourself by taking his garment as collateral. The proverb simultaneously warns against surety and instructs others how to manage the risk created by those who ignore that warning.
14. The humor is sharp: the person thinks he is being generous (mevarekh, 'blessing') but the delivery — be-qol gadol ('in a great voice, loudly') and ba-boqer hashkem ('early in the morning, at the crack of dawn') — transforms the blessing into a curse. Good intentions delivered at the wrong time, in the wrong way, with the wrong volume, produce the opposite of their intended effect. Social intelligence is as important as moral intention.
15. Delef tored ('a driven drip, a persistent leak') on a yom sagrir ('a day of driving rain, a stormy day') cannot be stopped, cannot be ignored, and gradually destroys sanity. The eshet midyanim ('woman of contentions') has the same effect. The comparison focuses on relentlessness: the issue is not the volume of any single complaint but the unending, erosive repetition.

16. Two impossible tasks: tsofan ruach ('hiding/containing the wind') and shemen yemino yiqra ('oil of his right hand calls out' — oil is slippery and cannot be held). The quarrelsome person cannot be contained, managed, or controlled by external force. The proverb does not offer a solution — it simply describes an insoluble problem, which is itself a form of wisdom.
17. The word yachad can mean 'sharpens' or 'together' — both meanings may be active. Iron sharpens iron when brought together; people sharpen people when they engage closely. The double meaning reinforces the message: closeness and friction together produce excellence.
18. The fig tree (te'elah) required constant care — pruning, watering, protecting from pests. The one who does the work (notser, 'guards, tends, watches over') eats the reward. The parallel: whoever faithfully serves (shomer adonav, 'guards his master, attends to his lord') will be honored (yekhubad). Faithful service, like faithful agriculture, produces a harvest.
19. Ka-mayim ha-panim la-panim ('as in water, the face to the face') — still water acts as a mirror, showing you your own face. Ken lev-ha-adam la-adam ('so the heart of the person to the person') can mean either: (1) your heart is a mirror that reveals who you truly are, or (2) one person's heart reflects another's — what you project, you receive back. Both readings teach self-knowledge: look at your heart, and you will see your true self; look at how others respond to you, and you will see what you are projecting.
20. She'ol and Avaddon (the underworld and the place of destruction) have bottomless capacity — they always accept more dead. The human eye (eine ha-adam) has the same bottomless quality: it is never satisfied (lo tisba'nah, 'they are not filled, they do not have enough'). Desire always wants more. The comparison is unsettling: human appetite shares the insatiability of death itself.
21. The matsref ('crucible, refining pot') and kur ('furnace, smelter') expose impurities in metals through extreme heat. Praise (mahalal, 'what is praised, the content of praise') does the same to a person: how you respond to praise reveals your character. If praise inflates you, the impurity of pride is exposed. If praise humbles you, the metal is pure. Praise is a furnace.
22. The image is extreme: putting a fool in a makhtesh ('mortar, grinding bowl') and pounding him with an eli ('pestle') alongside rifot ('grain, crushed grain'). Even this level of pressure — literal pulverization — will not separate the fool from his ivvelet ('folly'). Foolishness is not a surface coating that can be removed; it is integral to the fool's being. This is the most pessimistic statement about the fool in Proverbs: some people cannot be fixed.
23. The agricultural conclusion (vv23-27) functions as a parable for all responsible stewardship. 'Flocks' and 'herds' represent whatever resources, relationships, or responsibilities God has entrusted to you.
24. The rhetorical question (ve-im nezer le-dor va-dor, 'does even a crown last generation to generation?') challenges even royal security. If kings cannot guarantee permanence, ordinary people certainly cannot. The solution (vv25-27) is not despair but diligent stewardship — manage what you have, because nothing is guaranteed.
25. The agricultural cycle begins: galah chatsir ('the hay is removed, the first cutting disappears'), and nir'ah-deshe ('the new green growth is visible'). The isevot harim ('herbs/plants of the mountains') are collected. The passage describes seasonal rhythm — the attentive farmer reads the landscape and acts in time.
26. The flocks provide both necessities (kevashim li-levushekha, 'lambs for your clothing' — wool) and capital (mechir sadeh attudim, 'goats are the price of a field' — livestock as currency for land purchase). Attentive husbandry produces both daily provision and long-term investment.
27. The pastoral vision concludes with sufficiency: de chalev izzim ('enough goat's milk') for personal needs (lachmekha), household needs (lechem betekha), and the support of dependents (chayyim le-na'arotekha, 'life for your young women/servant girls'). The picture is not lavish wealth but sustainable provision — enough for everyone in your care. The chapter ends where wisdom always ends: with diligent responsibility producing reliable provision.

28

Summary: *Proverbs 28 continues the Hezekiah collection with a sharp focus on governance, justice, wealth, and the moral courage required to confront wrongdoing. The chapter contrasts the wicked who flee when no one pursues with the righteous who are bold as a lion, and develops extensive teachings on honest leadership, the dangers of greed, the blessedness of confession, and the reliability of the person who walks in integrity.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most penetrating observations about political legitimacy in the ancient world: when a land transgresses, it has many rulers, but with a person of understanding and knowledge, stability endures (v2). The chapter also contains the clearest statement on confession in Proverbs: 'Whoever conceals his transgressions will not prosper, but whoever confesses and forsakes them will receive mercy' (v13). This is not merely practical advice but theological conviction — God responds to honest confession with racham ('compassion, mercy'). The chapter's political proverbs (vv2, 3, 12, 15-16, 28) form a sustained meditation on what makes governance just or unjust.*

Translation Friction: Verse 8 ('Whoever increases wealth by interest and profit gathers it for one who will be generous to the poor') reflects the Torah's prohibition against lending at interest to fellow Israelites (Exodus 22:25, Leviticus 25:35-37, Deuteronomy 23:19-20). The proverb does not merely discourage usury but declares it ultimately futile — the wealth will end up in the hands of the generous. Verse 24 ('Whoever robs his father or mother and says it is no transgression is a companion of a destroyer') addresses the specific abuse of parents by adult children, a violation of the fifth commandment.

Connections: The 'bold as a lion' image (v1) connects to Psalm 91:13 and the lion imagery throughout Proverbs. The confession teaching (v13) parallels Psalm 32:3-5 and 1 John 1:9. The usury prohibition (v8) connects to the Torah lending laws (Exodus 22:25, Leviticus 25:35-37). The 'many rulers' in a corrupt land (v2) echoes the chaotic king-succession in northern Israel (1-2 Kings). The 'trustworthy person blessed' (v20) connects to the parable of the talents (Matthew 25:21).

- ¹The wicked flee when no one pursues,
but the righteous are as bold as a young lion.
- ²When a land transgresses, its rulers multiply;
but with a person of understanding and knowledge, stability endures.
- ³A poor ruler who oppresses the weak
is like a driving rain that leaves no food.
- ⁴Those who abandon instruction praise the wicked,
but those who keep instruction resist them.
- ⁵People given to evil do not understand justice,
but those who seek the LORD understand everything.
- ⁶Better a poor person who walks in integrity
than a rich one whose ways are crooked.
- ⁷A son who keeps instruction is discerning,
but a companion of gluttons shames his father.
- ⁸Whoever increases wealth by interest and profit
gathers it for someone who will be generous to the poor.
- ⁹Whoever turns his ear away from hearing instruction —
even his prayer is detestable.
- ¹⁰Whoever leads the upright astray on an evil path
will fall into his own pit,
but the blameless will inherit what is good.
- ¹¹A rich person is wise in his own eyes,
but a poor person with understanding sees through him.
- ¹²When the righteous triumph, there is great splendor;
but when the wicked rise to power, people hide.
- ¹³Whoever conceals his transgressions will not prosper,
but whoever confesses and abandons them will receive mercy.

¹⁴Blessed is the person who always trembles with caution,
but whoever hardens his heart will fall into disaster.

¹⁵A roaring lion and a charging bear —
that is a wicked ruler over a helpless people.

¹⁶A leader who lacks understanding is a great oppressor,
but whoever hates unjust gain will enjoy long life.

¹⁷A person burdened with the guilt of bloodshed
will flee to the pit — let no one support him.

¹⁸Whoever walks in integrity will be delivered,
but whoever is crooked in his ways will fall suddenly.

¹⁹Whoever works his land will have plenty of food,
but whoever chases fantasies will have plenty of poverty.

²⁰A faithful person will overflow with blessings,
but whoever rushes to get rich will not go unpunished.

²¹Showing partiality is not good;
a person can be corrupted for a piece of bread.

²²A stingy person hurries after wealth
and does not realize that poverty will overtake him.

²³Whoever rebukes a person will afterward find more favor
than the one who flatters with his tongue.

²⁴Whoever robs his father or mother
and says, 'It is no offense' —
he is a companion of a destroyer.

²⁵A greedy person stirs up conflict,
but whoever trusts in the LORD will prosper.

²⁶Whoever trusts in his own heart is a fool,
but whoever walks in wisdom will be delivered.

²⁷Whoever gives to the poor will lack nothing,
but whoever hides his eyes will receive many curses.

²⁸When the wicked rise to power, people hide;
but when they perish, the righteous flourish.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The plural 'wicked flee' contrasted with 'righteous are bold' suggests that wickedness produces collective panic while righteousness produces individual courage. One righteous person has more nerve than a crowd of the wicked.
2. Be-fesha erets rabbim sareiha ('in the transgression of a land, many are its rulers') observes that national sin produces political instability — coups, assassinations, rapid turnover of leaders. This describes the northern kingdom of Israel precisely, where nine dynasties and nineteen kings ruled in two centuries. The antidote is not more rulers but better ones: adam mevin yodea ('a person who understands and knows') brings continuity (ya'arikh,

'will prolong, will make last').

3. Gever rash ve-osheq dallim ('a poor/needy man who oppresses the poor') describes the worst kind of oppressor: one who knows poverty but still exploits the vulnerable. Matar sochef ('sweeping rain, driving downpour') destroys rather than nourishes — rain that should bring life instead washes away crops and leaves no lechem ('bread, food'). The irony is devastating: rain should mean harvest; this ruler should mean justice. Both betray their function.
4. Torah here means 'instruction' broadly — the teaching of wisdom and the direction of God. Those who have abandoned it (ozevee torah) find themselves praising the wicked (yehalelu rasha) because they have lost the moral framework to distinguish right from wrong. Those who keep instruction (shomere torah) contend with the wicked (yitgaru vam, 'they oppose them, they provoke them, they resist them'). Moral discernment produces moral courage.
5. Anshe-ra ('men of evil') lack the capacity to understand mishpat ('justice, judgment') — their moral corruption has destroyed their moral perception. Mevaqshe YHWH ('those who seek the LORD') yavinu khol ('understand everything'). The claim is bold: seeking God produces comprehensive understanding. Not omniscience, but moral clarity — the ability to see situations truly and judge them accurately.
6. Tummo ('his integrity, his completeness, his blamelessness') is the poor person's wealth. Iqqesh derakhayim ('twisted of ways, crooked in his paths') is the rich person's poverty. The proverb reverses economic categories: true wealth is character, and true poverty is moral corruption. This is not romanticism about poverty but a clear hierarchy of values.
7. Notser torah ('one who guards/keeps instruction') demonstrates discernment (mevin). Ro'eh zolelim ('companion of gluttons, one who associates with wasteful people') brings shame (yakhlim, 'shames, disgraces') on his father. The choice of company reveals the child's character and reflects on the parent. The same associational logic appears throughout Proverbs: you become like those you keep company with.
8. Neshekh ('interest, usury' — literally 'a bite') and tarbit ('increase, profit, surcharge') were both prohibited in lending to fellow Israelites. The proverb declares that wealth accumulated this way will not remain with the exploiter — God will redirect it to chonen dallim ('one who shows grace to the poor'). The usurer's hoard is temporary; it is merely in transit to a more generous owner.
9. The consequence is severe: refusing to hear God's instruction (mesir ozno mi-shemo'a torah) renders even prayer to'evah ('detestable, abominable'). The person who will not listen to God cannot expect God to listen to him. Prayer from a person who has rejected instruction is not humble petition but presumptuous demand — and God finds it repulsive.
10. Leading the yasharim ('upright ones') astray on a bad path triggers the boomerang principle: bi-shechuto hu-yippol ('into his own pit he will fall'). The temimim ('blameless, complete, those of integrity') inherit good (yinchalu-tov). The one who corrupts others is destroyed by his own corruption; those who resist corruption receive the inheritance.
11. Wealth creates the illusion of wisdom (chakham be-einav, 'wise in his own eyes'). The rich person mistakes financial success for intellectual superiority. But a dal mevin ('poor person of understanding') can yachqerenu ('search him out, investigate him, see through him') — discernment is not correlated with income. The poor person with genuine understanding can expose the rich person's pretension.
12. Two political scenarios: righteous leadership produces tiferet ('splendor, glory, beauty') — public flourishing. Wicked leadership produces concealment (yechuppas adam, 'people are searched for, people go into hiding'). The verb chuppas can mean either 'people are sought out' (by the wicked, for persecution) or 'people hide' (for self-protection). Either reading describes a society of fear.
13. The verb modeh means both 'to confess' and 'to give thanks' — in Hebrew, honest acknowledgment of failure and grateful acknowledgment of God share the same word. Confession is an act of thanks: it thanks God for being the kind of God who responds to honesty with mercy.
14. Ashre adam mefached tamid ('blessed is the person who is afraid always') seems paradoxical — how can fear produce blessedness? The fear (pachad) here is not anxiety but moral vigilance: the constant awareness that one wrong step can lead to ruin. The opposite — maqsheh libbo ('one who hardens his heart') — is the person who refuses to feel moral concern, who becomes insensitive to warning. Pharaoh is the Bible's classic example of a hardened heart.
15. Ari nohem ('a growling lion') and dov shoqeq ('a rushing/charging bear') are the two most dangerous predators in ancient Israel. A moshel rasha ('wicked ruler') over am-dal ('a poor/helpless people') is equally predatory: he devours those who cannot defend themselves. The comparison degrades the ruler to the level of a wild animal — he has abandoned the image of God for the image of a beast.
16. Nagid chasar tevunot ('a prince/leader lacking understanding') produces rav ma'ashaqqot ('much oppression, great extortion'). Incompetent leadership is not merely ineffective but actively harmful — the leader without understanding defaults to exploitation. The antidote is sone betsa ('one who hates unjust gain, one who despises profit from exploitation') — this leader ya'arikh yamim ('will lengthen days, will enjoy longevity'). The quality that extends a ruler's life is not wisdom alone but integrity — specifically, the refusal to profit from injustice.
17. Adam ashuq be-dam-nafesh ('a person oppressed by the blood of a life') carries the weight of murder. Ad-bor yanus ('to the pit he will flee') — his trajectory is downward, toward the grave. Al-yitmekhu-vo ('let no one hold him up, let no one support him') is a communal instruction: do not shield a murderer from consequences. Justice demands that the community not intervene to protect the guilty.
18. Holekh tamim ('one who walks in integrity, one whose conduct is complete') yivvashe'a ('will be saved, will be delivered'). Ne'eqash derakhayim ('one twisted in ways, one crooked in paths') yippol be-echat ('will fall in one' — suddenly, all at once, in a single collapse). Integrity produces gradual security; crookedness produces sudden catastrophe. The fall is be-echat — one event, one moment, total.

19. The identical proverb appears in 12:11. Oved admato ('one who works his ground') is contrasted with meraddef reqim ('one who pursues empty things, one who chases vapors'). The first has food (yisba-lachem, 'will be satisfied with bread'); the second has poverty (yisba-rish, 'will be satisfied with lack'). The ironic use of yisba ('will be satisfied, will have plenty') for both outcomes is darkly humorous — both are satisfied, but one is satisfied with bread and the other with emptiness.
20. Ish emunot ('a person of faithfulnesses' — the plural intensifies) is rav-berakhot ('abundant in blessings'). Faithfulness (emunah) produces blessings (berakhot) as naturally as rain produces growth. Ats leha'ashir ('one who hurries to become rich') lo yinnaqeh ('will not be held innocent, will not go unpunished'). The contrast is between patient faithfulness and impatient greed — the first accumulates blessings over time, the second accumulates guilt.
21. Haker-panim ('recognizing faces, showing favoritism') — judging based on who someone is rather than what is true — is lo-tov ('not good'). The second line reveals how cheaply justice can be bought: al-pat-lechem ('for a piece of bread, for a morsel of food') a person will commit pesha ('transgression, rebellion'). Justice collapses not always under great pressure but sometimes under trivial inducement.
22. Nivhal la-hon ('one who hastens toward wealth, one who is panicked about getting rich') is identified as ish ra-ayin ('a person of evil eye' — stingy, grudging). The irony: the person desperate to accumulate does not know (lo yeda) that his hoarding mentality produces the opposite of what he intends. Cheser yevo'ennu ('lack will come to him') — scarcity arrives precisely because he grasped so tightly.
23. Mokhiach adam ('one who corrects/rebukes a person') earns chen ('favor, grace, goodwill') — not immediately but acharai ('afterward, later, in retrospect'). The flatterer (machaliq lashon, 'one who makes the tongue smooth') wins immediate approval but loses long-term trust. Time vindicates the honest corrector and exposes the flatterer.
24. Gozel aviv ve-immo ('one who robs his father and his mother') represents the ultimate betrayal of the family bond. The self-justification — omer ein pesha ('he says, there is no transgression') — compounds the crime by denying it. The person who can steal from parents and feel no guilt is chaver le-ish mashchit ('a companion of a man of destruction, an associate of one who destroys'). He has allied himself with the principle of destruction itself.
25. Rechav-nefesh ('wide of appetite, expansive of desire, greedy') generates madon ('strife, conflict') because insatiable desire inevitably encroaches on others' territory. Bote'ach al-YHWH ('one who trusts in the LORD') yedusshan ('will be made fat, will prosper, will flourish'). Trust in God satisfies the appetite that greed cannot — it produces the abundance that grasping fails to deliver.
26. Boteach be-libbo ('one who trusts in his own heart') is a kesil ('fool') — self-trust is identified as the core of foolishness. The heart (lev), which Proverbs repeatedly identifies as deceptive and needing guidance, is the worst possible object of trust. Holekh be-chokhmah ('one who walks in wisdom') yimmalet ('will escape, will be delivered'). The path of wisdom is the path of deliverance; the path of self-trust is the path of the fool.
27. Noten la-rash ('one who gives to the poor') ein machsor ('there is no lack') — generosity does not deplete but sustains. Ma'alim einav ('one who hides his eyes, one who looks away') receives rav-me'erot ('many curses'). The 'hidden eyes' image is powerful: the person who deliberately avoids seeing need is not passive but active — he works to not see what is in front of him.
28. This verse echoes v12 and forms a bracket around the chapter's political teachings. Be-qum resha'im ('when the wicked rise') produces hiding (yissater adam). Be-ovedam ('when they perish, when they are destroyed') produces flourishing (yirbu tsaddiqim, 'the righteous multiply'). The health of a society is directly measured by who holds power. Wicked leadership suppresses the righteous; their removal allows the righteous to emerge and multiply.

29

Summary: *Proverbs 29 is the final chapter of the Hezekiah collection (chapters 25-29), concluding with intensified contrasts between righteous and wicked leadership, the value of discipline, the danger of flattery, and the foundational declaration that 'the fear of the LORD' produces safety. The chapter serves as a capstone for the entire Solomonic wisdom tradition.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 18 ('Where there is no vision, the people cast off restraint') is one of the most frequently quoted — and most frequently misapplied — verses in the Bible. The Hebrew chazon does not mean 'vision' in the modern leadership sense (goals, dreams, strategic plans) but 'prophetic revelation' — the word of God delivered through a prophet. Without divine revelation, the people become unrestrained. The verse is a statement about the necessity of God's word, not about organizational leadership. Verse 25 ('The fear of man is a trap, but whoever trusts in the LORD is set on high') captures the fundamental choice between human approval and divine security that runs through all of Proverbs.*

Translation Friction: The chapter's repeated endorsement of physical discipline for children (vv15, 17, 19) reflects ancient pedagogy and should not be extracted from its cultural context as a timeless prescription. The underlying principle — that discipline produces character — transcends the specific method. Verse 24 ('Whoever shares with a thief hates his own life') uses the legal situation where a person who knows the identity of a thief but refuses to testify under oath (hearing the adjuration and not speaking) becomes complicit in the crime.

Connections: Verse 13 ('The poor person and the oppressor meet together; the LORD gives light to the eyes of both') echoes 22:2. Verse 18 on prophetic vision connects to 1 Samuel 3:1 ('the word of the LORD was rare in those days; there was no frequent vision'). Verse 25 on the fear of man connects to Isaiah 51:12-13 and Psalm 56:4. The Hezekiah collection closes, and the book shifts to non-Solomonic voices: Agur (ch. 30) and Lemuel (ch. 31).

- ¹A person often rebuked who stiffens his neck
will be suddenly shattered beyond repair.
- ²When the righteous increase, the people rejoice;
when the wicked rule, the people groan.
- ³A person who loves wisdom makes his father rejoice,
but whoever keeps company with prostitutes wastes his wealth.
- ⁴A king establishes the land through justice,
but one who demands bribes tears it down.
- ⁵A person who flatters his neighbor
spreads a net for his own feet.
- ⁶In the transgression of an evil person is a trap,
but the righteous person sings and rejoices.
- ⁷The righteous person understands the case of the poor;
the wicked person has no such understanding.
- ⁸Scoffers set a city ablaze,
but the wise turn away anger.
- ⁹When a wise person takes a fool to court,
the fool rages and laughs and there is no resolution.
- ¹⁰The bloodthirsty hate the blameless,
but the upright seek to protect his life.
- ¹¹A fool vents all his feelings,
but a wise person holds them back quietly.
- ¹²A ruler who listens to lies —
all his officials will be wicked.
- ¹³The poor person and the oppressor meet —
the LORD gives light to the eyes of both.
- ¹⁴A king who faithfully judges the poor —
his throne will be established forever.

- ¹⁵The rod and rebuke produce wisdom,
but an undisciplined youth shames his mother.
- ¹⁶When the wicked multiply, transgression increases,
but the righteous will see their downfall.
- ¹⁷Discipline your son and he will give you rest;
he will bring delight to your soul.
- ¹⁸Where there is no prophetic revelation, the people throw off restraint,
but whoever keeps instruction — blessed is he.
- ¹⁹A servant will not be corrected by words alone;
he may understand but will not respond.
- ²⁰Do you see a person hasty in his words?
There is more hope for a fool than for him.
- ²¹Whoever pampers his servant from youth
will find him ungrateful in the end.
- ²²An angry person stirs up conflict,
and a hot-tempered person commits many offenses.
- ²³A person's pride will bring him low,
but a humble spirit will obtain honor.
- ²⁴Whoever shares with a thief hates his own life;
he hears the oath of adjuration but does not testify.
- ²⁵The fear of people sets a trap,
but whoever trusts in the LORD is set safely on high.
- ²⁶Many seek the face of a ruler,
but justice for a person comes from the LORD.
- ²⁷An unjust person is detestable to the righteous,
and an upright person is detestable to the wicked.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ish tokhachot ('a person of rebukes, someone frequently corrected') who maqsheh-oref ('hardens his neck, stiffens his back') is using the stubborn-ox metaphor — an animal that refuses the yoke. Peta yishshaver ('suddenly he will be broken') and ein marpe ('there is no healing') describe catastrophic, irreversible destruction. The suddenness is key: the hardened person thinks he is getting away with it until the moment everything collapses at once.
2. Bi-revot tsaddiqim ('when the righteous multiply/increase') — not merely when they hold office, but when their influence grows — the people (ha-am) rejoice (yismach). Bi-meshol rasha ('when a wicked person rules') the people groan (ye'anach). The groaning is not dissent but suffering — the involuntary sound of people being crushed under unjust governance.
3. The contrast pairs intellectual virtue (ohev chokhmah, 'lover of wisdom') with moral vice (ro'eh zonot, 'companion of prostitutes'). The first produces family joy; the second destroys family resources. Ye'abbed-hon ('destroys wealth, squanders resources') is total — the patron of prostitutes does not merely spend but annihilates his inheritance.
4. Melekh be-mishpat ya'amid erets ('a king through justice causes the land to stand') — justice is the foundation that holds the nation upright. Ish terumot ('a man of contributions/exactions') — one who demands bribes or excessive taxes — yehersennah ('tears it down, demolishes it'). The same ruler who could build can destroy, depending on whether he practices mishpat or extortion.

5. Machaliq al-re'ehu ('one who makes smooth upon his neighbor, one who flatters') is actually pores reshet al-pe'amav ('spreading a net over his steps'). The ambiguity of 'his' — whose feet? the neighbor's or the flatterer's? — may be intentional. Flattery ensnares both parties: the one being flattered is lured into false security, and the flatterer sets a trap that may also catch him.
6. Be-fesha ish ra moqesh ('in the transgression of an evil man, a snare') — sin is its own trap. The evil person's transgression contains the mechanism of his own capture. The righteous, freed from this self-entrapment, can yarun ve-sameach ('sing and rejoice') — the emotional tone of innocence is joy.
7. Yodea tsaddiq din dallim ('the righteous knows the case/judgment of the poor') — the righteous person not only sees the poor but understands their legal rights, their situation, their needs. The wicked person lo-yavin da'at ('does not understand knowledge') — he lacks the moral framework to comprehend why the poor person's case matters. Moral blindness is a form of intellectual failure.
8. Anshe latson ('men of scoffing, scornful people') yappichu qiryah ('blow upon a city, set a city aflame') — scoffers are incendiaries, using mockery and contempt to inflame public passion. Chakhamim yashivu af ('wise ones turn back anger') — the wise function as the city's fire department, calming what scoffers ignite. The political stakes are clear: scoffers destabilize communities; wise people stabilize them.
9. The wise person who enters legal dispute (nishpat) with a fool (ish evil) discovers that rational process is impossible. The fool veers between ragaz ('raging, shaking with anger') and sachaq ('laughing, mocking') — emotional extremes that prevent any nachat ('rest, resolution, settling'). Engaging a fool in formal proceedings produces only chaos.
10. Anshe damim ('men of blood, bloodthirsty people') hate the tam ('blameless, person of integrity') because his existence is an implicit rebuke to their violence. The yesharim ('upright ones') yevaqshu nafsho ('seek his life') — here meaning they seek to protect and preserve the blameless person's life, not to harm him. The upright actively defend the innocent whom the violent hate.
11. Kol-rucho yotsi kesil ('all his spirit the fool sends out') — the fool expresses every emotion, every opinion, every impulse without filter. Chakham be-achor yeshabbechannah ('a wise person in the back/afterwards calms it') — the wise person restrains his spirit, holding it back and calming it down before releasing it. Self-regulation is the difference between wisdom and folly.
12. Moshel maqshiv al-devar-shafer ('a ruler who pays attention to false speech') creates a systemic effect: kol-mesharetav resha'im ('all his servants become wicked'). The leader's tolerance for falsehood sets the moral standard for the entire administration. Liars rise because the leader rewards lying; honest people leave because honesty is penalized. Corruption flows from the top down.
13. This echoes 22:2 with a variation: instead of 'the LORD made them both,' now 'the LORD gives light to the eyes of both' (me'ir eine sheneihem YHWH). Me'ir ('gives light, illuminates') may mean gives physical life (the light of the eyes is life itself) or gives understanding. Either way, both the poor and the oppressor exist by God's sustaining power. The oppressor breathes God's air and sees with God's light — and will answer to the God who gave him both.
14. Shofet be-emet dallim ('one who judges with truth/faithfulness the poor') — the test of a king's justice is not how he treats the powerful but how he treats the powerless. A king who passes this test earns permanent stability: kis'o la-ad yikkon ('his throne will be established forever'). Permanence is the reward for justice.
15. Shevet ve-tokhachat ('rod and rebuke') together represent the full range of corrective discipline — physical consequence and verbal instruction. Together they yitten chokhmah ('give wisdom, produce wisdom'). Na'ar meshullach ('a youth set free, a child sent away, an undisciplined young person') mevish immo ('shames his mother'). The mother is specifically named because she bore the primary daily responsibility for child-rearing in Israelite society — the undisciplined child is her public failure.
16. Bi-revot resha'im yirbeh-pasha ('when the wicked increase, transgression increases') — wickedness is exponential, each wicked person generating more transgression. Ve-tsaddiqim be-mappaltam yir'u ('but the righteous will see their fall') — the righteous do not need to act against the wicked; they need only wait. The wicked's multiplication contains the seed of its own collapse.
17. Yasser binkha ('discipline your son') produces two rewards: vinichekkha ('he will give you rest, he will give you peace') and yitten ma'adannot le-nafshekha ('he will give delicacies to your soul'). The disciplined child becomes a source of menucha ('rest, peace') and ma'adannot ('delicacies, pleasures, delights') — a well-raised child is one of life's deepest satisfactions.
18. This verse is persistently misapplied in corporate and church leadership contexts as a proof text for 'having a vision statement.' The Hebrew is specifically about divine revelation through prophets, not human strategic planning. The absence of God's word, not the absence of human goals, is what produces social chaos.
19. The proverb observes that some people — here, the eved ('servant, slave') who has no internal motivation to comply — cannot be corrected by verbal instruction alone (bi-devarim lo-yivvasser, 'by words he will not be disciplined'). Ki-yavin ('though he understands') ve-ein ma'aneh ('there is no answer, no response') — comprehension without compliance. Understanding the instruction is not the problem; responding to it is.
20. Ish ats bi-devarav ('a person hurried in his words') — someone who speaks before thinking — is worse off than a fool (tiqvah li-khesil mimmennu, 'there is more hope for a fool than for him'). This echoes 26:12, where the self-proclaimed wise person is also ranked below the fool. The hasty speaker, like the self-proclaimed wise person, has a specific defect that blocks learning: his mouth moves faster than his mind.
21. Mefanneq ('one who pampers, coddles, indulges') his eved from youth (minno'ar) will discover that the servant's acharit ('end, outcome') is manon — a word of uncertain meaning, possibly 'insolent,' 'ungrateful,' 'claiming the status of a son,' or 'grief.' The proverb warns that indulgence produces entitlement. Excessive kindness without appropriate structure creates expectations that cannot be sustained.

22. Ish af ('a man of anger') generates madon ('strife'). Ba'al chemah ('master of fury') produces rav-pasha ('much transgression'). Anger does not merely disrupt peace; it generates sin. The more intense the anger (from af to chemah), the greater the moral damage (from conflict to transgression).
23. Ga'avat adam tashpilennu ('the pride of a person will lower him, will humiliate him') — pride produces the opposite of what it intends. It aims for elevation and achieves humiliation. Shefal-ruach ('lowly of spirit, humble in disposition') yitmokh kavod ('will grasp honor, will take hold of glory'). The paradox is complete: grasping for honor produces humiliation; accepting lowliness produces honor.
24. Choleq im-gannav ('one who shares with a thief, one who partakes with a thief') sone nafsho ('hates his own life'). The second line explains: alah yishma ('he hears the adjuration, the oath, the curse') — the public oath requiring witnesses to come forward — ve-lo yaggid ('and he does not tell, and he does not testify'). By staying silent when he knows the thief's identity, he becomes an accomplice. His self-hatred is enacted through his silence: he chooses loyalty to a criminal over his own survival.
25. Cherdat adam does not mean 'the fear that people experience' but 'the fear of people' — anxiety about what others will think, say, or do. It is the social anxiety that drives people to compromise integrity for approval.
26. Rabbim mevaqshim pene-moshel ('many seek the ruler's face' — seek his favor, try to get an audience) but me-YHWH mishpat-ish ('from the LORD comes a person's judgment'). The ultimate verdict does not come from the king's court but from God's. Seeking royal favor is natural and often necessary, but it is not ultimate. The final disposition of your case rests with God, not with any human authority.
27. The final verse of the Hezekiah collection — and the final Solomonic proverb in the book — establishes mutual revulsion as the ultimate boundary between righteousness and wickedness. The righteous find the unjust repulsive (to'avat tsaddiqim ish avel); the wicked find the upright repulsive (to'avat rasha yeshar-darekh). There is no middle ground, no neutral territory. The moral divide is not merely intellectual disagreement but visceral incompatibility. Each finds the other's way of life to'evah — abominable, detestable, repellent. This is the wisdom tradition's final word on the two ways.

30

Summary: *Proverbs 30 is 'the words of Agur son of Jakeh' — an oracle from a figure otherwise unknown in the Hebrew Bible. The chapter opens with a confession of intellectual limitation (vv1-4), transitions to a prayer for neither poverty nor wealth (vv7-9), and then develops a series of numerical proverbs ('three things... four things') that catalog wonders, mysteries, and social observations through lists of four. Agur's voice is strikingly different from Solomon's — more humble, more questioning, more awed by the limits of human knowledge.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Agur's opening confession (vv2-4) is unique in wisdom literature: 'I am more stupid than any person, and I do not have human understanding.' This is not false modesty but genuine epistemological humility — the recognition that the search for wisdom encounters a hard ceiling. His rhetorical questions in verse 4 ('Who has ascended to heaven and come down? Who has gathered the wind in his fists?') echo God's challenge to Job (Job 38-41) and establish that some knowledge belongs to God alone. The 'two things I ask' prayer (vv7-9) is one of the most balanced prayers in the Bible — asking for neither poverty (which might drive him to steal and profane God's name) nor wealth (which might produce self-sufficiency and denial of God). The numerical proverbs (vv15-31) are a literary form found across the ancient Near East, using pattern recognition to organize observations about the natural and social world.*

Translation Friction: *Agur's identity is debated: is he Israelite or foreign? The name 'Agur son of Jakeh' has no other biblical occurrence. The word massa (v1) could be 'oracle/utterance' or 'from Massa' — a region in northern Arabia associated with Ishmael's descendants (Genesis 25:14). If Agur is a non-Israelite sage, his inclusion in Proverbs demonstrates that Israel recognized wisdom wherever it appeared. The phrase la-ithiel la-ithiel ve-ukhal (v1) is notoriously difficult — possibly names ('to Ithiel, to Ithiel and Ucal') or a confession ('I have wearied myself, God; I have wearied myself, God, and I am spent').*

Connections: *Agur's questions (v4) closely parallel God's speech in Job 38-41. The prayer for sufficiency (vv7-9) anticipates Jesus' 'Give us this day our daily bread' (Matthew 6:11) and Paul's 'I have learned to be content' (Philippians 4:11-12). The numerical proverbs connect to the form used in Amos 1-2 ('For three transgressions... and for four'). The 'way of a man with a young woman' (v19) connects to the mystery language of Song of Songs.*

1The words of Agur son of Jakeh — the oracle.
The man declares: I have wearied myself, O God;

I have wearied myself, O God, and I am spent.

²Surely I am more ignorant than anyone,
and I lack ordinary human understanding.

³I have not learned wisdom,
nor do I possess the knowledge of the Holy One.

⁴Who has gone up to heaven and come back down?
Who has gathered the wind in his fists?
Who has wrapped the waters in a garment?
Who has established all the ends of the earth?
What is his name, and what is his son's name —
if you know?

⁵Every word of God is refined;
He is a shield to those who take refuge in Him.

⁶Do not add to His words,
or He will rebuke you and you will be exposed as a liar.

⁷Two things I ask of you —
do not refuse me before I die:

⁸Keep falsehood and lies far from me;
give me neither poverty nor wealth —
feed me my allotted portion of bread.

⁹lest I be full and deny you
and say, 'Who is the LORD?'
or lest I become poor and steal
and profane the name of my God.

¹⁰Do not slander a servant to his master,
or he will curse you and you will be held guilty.

¹¹There is a generation that curses its father
and does not bless its mother.

¹²There is a generation pure in its own eyes
but not washed from its filth.

¹³There is a generation — how haughty their eyes!
How their eyelids are raised in arrogance!

¹⁴There is a generation whose teeth are swords,
whose jaws are set with knives,
to devour the poor from the earth
and the needy from among humanity.

¹⁵The leech has two daughters: Give! Give!
Three things are never satisfied;
four never say, 'Enough!'

¹⁶Sheol and the barren womb,
land that is never satisfied with water,
and fire that never says, 'Enough!'

¹⁷The eye that mocks a father
and scorns obedience to a mother —
the ravens of the valley will gouge it out,
and the young vultures will eat it.

¹⁸Three things are too wonderful for me;
four I cannot understand:

¹⁹the way of an eagle in the sky,
the way of a snake on a rock,
the way of a ship in the heart of the sea,
and the way of a man with a young woman.

²⁰This is the way of an adulterous woman:
she eats and wipes her mouth
and says, 'I have done nothing wrong.'

²¹Under three things the earth trembles,
and under four it cannot bear up:

²²a servant who becomes king,
a fool who is stuffed with food,

²³an unloved woman who gets married,
and a servant girl who displaces her mistress.

²⁴Four things are among the smallest on earth,
but they are extraordinarily wise:

²⁵Ants — a people without strength,
yet they prepare their food in summer.

²⁶Rock badgers — a people without power,
yet they make their home in the cliffs.

²⁷Locusts have no king,
yet they advance together in formation.

²⁸A lizard you can catch with your hands,
yet it lives in the palaces of kings.

²⁹Three things are stately in their stride;
four are majestic in their walk:

³⁰The lion, mightiest among animals,
who does not retreat before anything;

³¹the strutting rooster, the male goat,
and a king with his army around him.

³²If you have been foolish in exalting yourself,
or if you have plotted evil — hand over mouth!

³³For pressing milk produces butter,
pressing the nose produces blood,
and pressing anger produces conflict.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The textual difficulty is ancient — the Septuagint and other versions also struggled with this verse. The confessional reading has gained scholarly support because it makes Agur's opening a statement of intellectual exhaustion that leads naturally into the confession of ignorance in verses 2-4.
2. Ba'ar ('brutish, stupid, like an animal') is a strong word — Agur does not say he is merely less wise than others but that he is sub-human in understanding. Lo-vinat adam li ('the understanding of a human is not mine') reinforces the claim. This is either genuine despair at the limits of human knowledge or a rhetorical strategy: by confessing total ignorance, Agur positions himself to receive wisdom from God alone.
3. The parallel between chokhmah ('wisdom') and da'at qedoshim ('knowledge of the holy ones' or 'knowledge of the Holy One') elevates the discussion: Agur is not merely confessing ignorance about practical matters but about divine knowledge. Qedoshim could be plural ('holy ones, angels') or a plural of majesty ('the Holy One, God'). Either way, Agur confesses that ultimate wisdom — knowledge of God's nature and purposes — exceeds his grasp.
4. These questions parallel God's interrogation of Job (Job 38-41) but come from a human sage rather than from God. Agur asks what only God can answer, thereby demonstrating that the ceiling of wisdom is the floor of theology: true wisdom begins with acknowledging what cannot be known.
5. After confessing his own ignorance (vv2-4), Agur turns to what can be known: imrat Eloah ('the word of God'). Every word is tserufah ('refined, purified, tested by fire') — language from metallurgy, meaning God's word has been through the furnace and proven pure. God Himself is a magen ('shield') to those who chosim bo ('take refuge in him'). Where human wisdom fails, God's word stands; where human understanding ends, divine protection begins.
6. Al-tosef al-devarav ('do not add to His words') draws a boundary around human contribution to divine revelation. God's word is complete and refined (v5); human additions contaminate it. The consequence: yokhiach bekha ('He will reprove you, He will convict you') and nikhzavta ('you will be found a liar, you will be proven false'). Adding to God's word puts human words in God's mouth — a form of lying about God.
7. The 'two things' formula is part of the numerical pattern that structures the entire chapter. Agur applies the same form to his prayer that he will use for his observations about the natural world.
8. The theological sophistication of this prayer is remarkable: Agur recognizes that both poverty and wealth are spiritual dangers, and asks God for the middle path — sufficiency without excess, enough without surplus. This is rare in any era's prayer tradition.
9. The prayer's logic is entirely theological: both dangers are expressed in terms of their effect on the God-relationship, not on personal comfort. Agur's concern is not happiness but faithfulness — he wants the economic condition that best preserves his ability to trust and honor God.
10. Talshen ('to slander, to inform against, to accuse with the tongue') a servant to his master — using your social position to harm someone who cannot defend himself — invites the servant's curse, which in this case will be effective (ve-ashamta, 'and you will be found guilty, and you will bear guilt'). The proverb protects the powerless: even a servant has the right not to be maligned.
11. The first of four 'there is a generation' (dor) proverbs (vv11-14), cataloging types of people who violate fundamental moral norms. This generation attacks the parent-child bond — the most basic social unit — by cursing the father and withholding blessing from the mother. The progression from cursing to not-blessing captures both active and passive violations of the fifth commandment.
12. Tahir be-einav ('pure in its own eyes') but lo ruchatz mi-tso'ato ('not washed from its excrement/filth'). The self-assessment and the reality are opposite: they see purity; God sees unwashed filth. Tso'ah ('excrement, human waste') is the strongest possible image for moral contamination.
13. Mah ramu einav ('how high their eyes are!') and af'appav yinnase'u ('their eyelids are lifted up') describe the physical posture of contempt: nose in the air, eyes looking down on everyone else. The exclamation mah ('how!') expresses the observer's disgust at the level of arrogance.
14. The predatory generation: charavot shinnav ('swords are their teeth') and ma'akhalot metall'otav ('knives are their jaw teeth'). They consume the poor (le-ekhol aniyyim me-erets) and the needy (evyonim me-adam) — economic exploitation described as cannibalism. The poor are not merely exploited; they are eaten. This is the most visceral image of oppression in Proverbs.

15. The leech introduces the theme of insatiability that runs through the numerical proverbs. The three-four pattern (three things... four things) appears in Amos 1-2, Job 5:19, and throughout Near Eastern wisdom literature. The pattern builds suspense: the first three items establish a category, and the fourth provides the climax.
16. Four things that never reach satiation: She'ol (the realm of the dead — always accepting more dead), otser racham ('a closed womb, a barren womb' — the desperate longing for children), erets lo-save'ah mayim ('earth not satisfied with water' — parched ground in an arid climate), and esh ('fire' — which consumes everything and still demands more fuel). Each represents a different dimension of insatiable need: death, fertility, sustenance, and destruction.
17. The punishment matches the offense: the eye (ayin) that mocked and scorned parents will be pecked out by orvei-nachal ('ravens of the valley') and eaten by bene-nesher ('young eagles/vultures'). The image is of an unburied corpse — the ultimate disgrace in Israelite culture. The mocking child ends up as carrion, his disrespectful eye consumed by scavengers. The violence of the image reflects the severity with which the wisdom tradition regards contempt for parents.
18. Nifle'u mimmeni ('are too wonderful for me, are beyond my comprehension') uses the same root as pele ('wonder, marvel') — these are not confusing but awe-inspiring. Agur is not frustrated but amazed. The four things that follow (v19) share a common quality that Agur finds mysterious.
19. Almah ('young woman of marriageable age') does not necessarily imply virgin (that would be betulah) but a young woman in the phase of life when sexual attraction and romantic pursuit are most intense. The 'way of a man with a young woman' may refer to courtship, seduction, or the act of love itself — in any case, a process that defies rational explanation.
20. The adulteress exploits the 'traceless path' principle of v19: just as the eagle leaves no track in the sky, she claims her adultery left no evidence. Akhelah u-machatah piha ('she eats and wipes her mouth') — the eating is a euphemism for sexual intercourse, and the wiping is the erasure of evidence. Ve-amerah lo fa'alti aven ('she says, I have not done wrong') — the denial is not confusion but strategy. The untraceable path becomes a tool of deception.
21. Ragazah erets ('the earth trembles, the land shakes') — the social disruption is so severe that Agur describes it as seismic. Lo-tukhal se'et ('it cannot bear, it cannot carry the weight') — the social order collapses under the weight of these inversions.
22. Eved ki yimlokh ('a slave when he reigns') — power without the training or character to use it. Naval ki yisba-lachem ('a fool when he is satisfied with bread') — abundance given to someone who will waste it. Both represent social inversions that produce disorder, not because class hierarchy is sacred but because authority and resources without wisdom are destructive.
23. Senu'ah ki tibba'el ('a hated/unloved woman when she is married') — marriage does not resolve deep bitterness; it amplifies it. The unloved woman brings her resentment into the marriage, and the household suffers. Shifchah ki tirash gevirtah ('a servant girl when she inherits/displaces her mistress') — the social inversion produces arrogance and instability (compare Hagar and Sarah, Genesis 16). These are not moral judgments on the women but observations about social dynamics.
24. Qetanne-arets ('small ones of the earth, the tiniest creatures') are chakhamim mechukhamim ('wise, made wise, wisest of the wise'). The superlative form (mechukhamim) is emphatic — these tiny creatures are wiser than their size suggests. Agur now catalogs four small animals that demonstrate wisdom through their behavior.
25. Nimalim ('ants') are am lo-az ('a people without power, a nation with no strength') — individually insignificant. But va-yakhinu ba-qayits lachmam ('they prepare their bread in summer') — their collective organization and foresight compensate for individual weakness. Wisdom lesson: preparation and planning overcome weakness.
26. Shefannim ('rock badgers, hyraxes') are am lo-atsum ('a people without might'). But they compensate by choosing an impregnable home: va-yasimu va-sela beitam ('they set their house in the rock, they make the cliff their dwelling'). Wisdom lesson: choose your position wisely, and your weakness becomes irrelevant.
27. Arbeh ('locusts') have melekch ein ('no king, no ruler') — no centralized command structure. But va-yetse chotsets kullo ('they go out divided/organized, all of them') — they move in coordinated ranks despite having no leader. Wisdom lesson: order does not require hierarchy; cooperation can be self-organizing.
28. Semamit ('lizard' or 'spider' — identification uncertain) be-yadayim titappes ('with hands can be grasped, can be caught with bare hands') — utterly vulnerable. But ve-hi be-hekhle melekch ('and she is in the palaces of the king') — she has penetrated the most secure and prestigious dwelling. Wisdom lesson: persistence and adaptability can take you anywhere, regardless of your size or apparent vulnerability.
29. Metive tsa'ad ('making good their step, excellent in walking, stately in stride') describes creatures whose movement commands attention and respect. The next two verses identify four animals (and a human figure) whose gait embodies dignity.
30. Layish ('lion' — a rare poetic word for lion, also used in Job 4:11) is gibbor ba-behemah ('the warrior among animals, the mightiest of beasts'). Lo-yashuv mippene-khol ('he does not turn back from the face of anything') — the lion never retreats. His dignity comes from fearless power.
31. The identification of zarzir motnayim is debated — 'greyhound,' 'horse,' 'rooster,' and 'starling' have all been proposed. The 'girded loins' description suggests a creature that struts with its midsection prominent and proud. The rooster or fighting cock fits this description well.
32. Two conditions: im navalta be-hitnassel ('if you have acted foolishly by exalting yourself') or im zammota ('if you have plotted, if you have schemed evil'). One remedy: yad le-feh ('hand to mouth') — stop talking immediately. The gesture of putting hand to mouth means: shut up before you make

it worse. Silence is the first step of correction.

33. Three parallel actions with the same verb *mits* ('pressing, squeezing, churning'): press milk, get butter; press a nose, get blood; press anger (*appayim*, 'nostrils/anger' — the same word for both), get conflict (*riv*). The chapter's final proverb uses a simple physical observation to teach a relational lesson: if you keep pressing, something will come out — and with anger, what comes out is always conflict. Stop pressing.

31

Summary: *Proverbs 31 contains two distinct units: the words of King Lemuel transmitting his mother's oracle about royal virtue (vv1-9) and the eshet chayil poem — the 'woman of strength' acrostic (vv10-31). The first section warns a king against women, wine, and neglect of the poor. The second is a twenty-two-verse alphabetic poem celebrating a woman whose strength, industry, wisdom, and generosity embody everything Proverbs has taught about the wise life.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The eshet chayil poem is an acrostic: each verse begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet, from aleph to tav. This formal structure makes it a complete portrait — from A to Z, nothing is left out. The word chayil (v10) is the same word used throughout the Hebrew Bible for military might, warrior strength, and economic power. Ruth is the only other woman in the Bible specifically called eshet chayil (Ruth 3:11). The poem's woman is not domestic in a diminished sense — she is an economic force: buying real estate (v16), running a textile operation (vv13, 19, 22, 24), engaging in international trade (v14), and providing for an extended household. She is praised not for beauty or submission but for strength, wisdom, and productive capability. The final verse (v30) explicitly subordinates beauty to the fear of the LORD as the true basis of praise.*

Translation Friction: *The eshet chayil has been used both to celebrate and to burden women. Read as a description of one extraordinary individual, it is inspiring. Read as a checklist that every woman must fulfill simultaneously, it is crushing. The poem is a portrait, not a prescription — it paints the ideal the way Proverbs 1-9 paints the ideal wise man. No single person embodies every trait simultaneously. Lemuel's mother's warning against women (vv3) reflects the real danger of court concubines siphoning royal resources and attention, not a general disparagement of women — the same chapter closes with the most exalted portrait of a woman in the Hebrew Bible.*

Connections: *The eshet chayil echoes Woman Wisdom from Proverbs 1-9: both are sought, both provide wealth and honor, both call from public spaces, both are more precious than jewels. The poem's opening question ('who can find?', v10) echoes 'who has found?' applied to wisdom itself (Proverbs 3:13, 8:35). Ruth is called eshet chayil in Ruth 3:11, connecting the literary ideal to a narrative embodiment. Lemuel's mother's instruction (vv1-9) parallels the maternal teaching tradition of Proverbs 1:8 and 6:20. The word chayil connects to the 'mighty men of valor' (*gibborei chayil*) throughout Joshua, Judges, and 1-2 Samuel — the woman of strength is a warrior of the household.*

¹The words of King Lemuel — an oracle
that his mother taught him.

²What, my son?
What, son of my womb?
What, son of my vows?

³Do not give your strength to women,
nor your ways to those who destroy kings.

⁴It is not for kings, Lemuel —
not for kings to drink wine,
nor for rulers to crave strong drink,

⁵Lest they drink and forget what has been decreed
and twist the rights of all the afflicted.

⁶Give strong drink to the one who is perishing
and wine to the bitter of soul.

⁷Let him drink and forget his destitution
and remember his misery no more.

⁸Open your mouth for the voiceless —
for the rights of all who are destitute.

⁹Open your mouth, judge with righteousness,
and defend the rights of the poor and needy.

¹⁰A woman of strength — who can find her?
Her worth is far beyond jewels.

¹¹The heart of her husband trusts in her,
and he will not lack gain.

¹²She brings him good, not harm,
all the days of her life.

¹³She seeks out wool and flax
and works with willing hands.

¹⁴She is like merchant ships;
she brings her food from far away.

¹⁵She rises while it is still night
and provides food for her household
and portions for her servant girls.

¹⁶She evaluates a field and acquires it;
from the fruit of her hands she plants a vineyard.

¹⁷She girds her waist with strength
and makes her arms powerful.

¹⁸She tastes that her profit is good;
her lamp does not go out at night.

¹⁹She puts her hands to the distaff,
and her fingers grasp the spindle.

²⁰She opens her hand to the poor
and reaches out her arms to the needy.

²¹She does not fear the snow for her household,
for her entire household is clothed in scarlet.

²²She makes bed coverings for herself;
her clothing is fine linen and purple.

²³Her husband is known at the city gates
when he sits among the elders of the land.

²⁴She makes linen garments and sells them;
she supplies sashes to the merchants.

²⁵Strength and dignity are her clothing,
and she laughs at the days to come.

²⁶She opens her mouth with wisdom,
and the instruction of faithful love is on her tongue.

²⁷She watches over the affairs of her household
and does not eat the bread of idleness.

²⁸Her children rise up and call her blessed;
her husband, and he praises her:

²⁹'Many women have done valiantly,
but you surpass them all.'

³⁰Charm is deceptive and beauty is fleeting,
but a woman who fears the LORD — she will be praised.

³¹Give her the fruit of her hands,
and let her works praise her at the gates.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. If Lemuel is from Massa (in Arabia), then both Agur (ch. 30) and Lemuel (ch. 31) are non-Israelite sages whose wisdom Israel valued enough to canonize. The book of Proverbs ends not with Solomon but with international voices, demonstrating that wisdom transcends national boundaries.
2. The triple mah ('what?') is a mother's urgent address — part rebuke, part plea. She names him three ways: *beri* ('my son' — the intimate term), *bar-bitni* ('son of my womb' — reminding him of his physical origin in her body), and *bar-nedarai* ('son of my vows' — she had made sacred vows concerning him, perhaps dedicating him to God before birth, like Hannah with Samuel). Each name increases the emotional weight: you are mine, you came from my body, you were promised to God.
3. *Chelekha* ('your strength, your vigor, your resources') — the same word *chayil* that will describe the ideal woman in verse 10. The king's *chayil* must not be wasted on women who drain rather than build. *Lamchot melakhin* ('to those who wipe out kings, to the destroyers of kings') warns that sexual entanglements have toppled monarchies — Solomon himself being the prime example (1 Kings 11:1-4). The irony: the chapter opens by warning against women who destroy and closes by celebrating a woman who builds.
4. The repetition *al la-melakhim* ('not for kings, not for kings') is emphatic and personal — his mother calls him by name. Wine (*yayin*) and strong drink (*shekhar*) are prohibited not universally but specifically for kings. The reason follows in v5: intoxication corrupts judgment, and the king's judgment is the nation's justice system.
5. *Pen-yishteh ve-yishkach mechuqqaq* ('lest he drink and forget what is inscribed/decreed') — alcohol causes the king to forget the law he is supposed to administer. *Vi-yeshanneh din kol-bene-oni* ('and he changes/perverts the judgment of all the sons of affliction') — the poor, who depend on the king for justice, are the first victims of royal drunkenness. Intoxicated power is unjust power.
6. If wine is not for kings (whose minds must be clear), it is for the *oved* ('one who is perishing, the dying person') and the *mare nefesh* ('bitter of soul, those in anguish'). This is not a prescription for escapism but a recognition that alcohol has a legitimate use as palliative care — easing the suffering of those who are dying or in extreme distress. The mother distinguishes between medicinal use (appropriate) and recreational use by rulers (dangerous).

7. Yishteh ve-yishkach risho ('let him drink and forget his destitution') — the same verb (shakach, 'to forget') that was dangerous for kings (v5) is merciful for the suffering. Amalo lo yizkor-od ('his toil he will remember no more'). What is a liability for the powerful is a comfort for the powerless. Context determines morality.
8. Petach-pikha le-illem ('open your mouth for the mute, speak up for the voiceless') — the king's voice must serve those who have no voice. El-din kol-bene chalof ('for the judgment/rights of all the sons of passing away, the destitute, those who are disappearing') — the most vulnerable members of society, those who are being erased. The queen mother commands her son to use royal power for advocacy, not self-indulgence.
9. Shefot-tsedeq ('judge with righteousness, render just judgment') and din ani ve-eyyon ('give justice to the poor and the needy') close the queen mother's instruction with the core mandate of kingship: justice for the vulnerable. The final word of her oracle is eyyon ('needy, destitute') — the last person on society's ladder is the first priority on the king's agenda.
10. The acrostic begins here with aleph א. Each of the following 22 verses begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet. This literary device makes the poem a comprehensive portrait — from aleph to tav, from A to Z, she is complete.
11. Bet ב. Batach bah lev ba'alalah ('the heart of her husband trusts in her') — trust (bitachon) is the foundation of the marriage. The husband's confidence is not passive but based on observed competence. Shalal lo yechsar ('profit/spoil he will not lack') — shalal originally means 'plunder, spoil of war,' here used for economic gain. The military vocabulary is consistent: she is a warrior whose victories produce wealth.
12. Gimel ג. Gemalat-hu tov ve-lo ra ('she repays him good and not evil') — the verb gamal means 'to repay, to deal bountifully, to treat.' Kol yeme chayyeha ('all the days of her life') emphasizes duration: this is not seasonal behavior but a lifetime commitment. Her goodness to her husband is not occasional but constitutive — it defines her entire married life.
13. Dalet ד. Dareshah tsemer u-fishtim ('she seeks wool and flax') — she is an active sourcer of raw materials, not a passive recipient. Wool and flax are the two primary textile fibers of the ancient Near East. Va-ta'as be-chefets kappeha ('she works with the delight/willingness of her hands') — chefets means 'delight, pleasure, desire.' Her work is not drudgery but energized purpose.
14. He ה. Ka-oniyot socher ('like ships of a merchant, like trading vessels') — the comparison is to international commerce. She imports provisions from a distance (mi-merchaq tavi lachmah, 'from afar she brings her bread'). The image elevates her beyond the domestic sphere into the world of trade and logistics. She does not merely manage a pantry; she runs a supply chain.
15. Vav ו. Va-taqom be-od laylah ('she rises while it is still night') — she is the first person awake, preparing before dawn. Teref le-veitah ('prey/food for her household') — teref (from taraf, 'to tear, to seize prey') uses predatory language for provision. She is a hunter-provider. Choq le-na'aroteha ('allotted portions for her young women/servant girls') — she manages staff and distributes resources with fairness and order.
16. Zayin ז. Zammamah sadeh va-tiqqachehu ('she considers/plans regarding a field and takes it') — the verb zamam ('to plan, to purpose, to consider') shows that she makes strategic real estate decisions. She does not impulse-buy; she evaluates and then acts. Mi-peri kappeiha nat'ah karem ('from the fruit of her hands she plants a vineyard') — her profits fund further investment. She reinvests earnings into productive assets.
17. Chet ח. Chagerah ve-oz motneiha ('she girds with strength her waist') — 'girding the loins' is the Hebrew idiom for preparing for hard work or battle. Warriors girded themselves for combat; she girds herself for labor. Va-te'ammets zero'oteha ('she makes strong her arms') — she builds her physical capacity to work. This is not a delicate woman; she is powerful, physically prepared for demanding work.
18. Tet ט. Ta'amah ki-tov sachrah ('she tastes/perceives that her trade/profit is good') — she monitors the quality of her business output. Lo-yikhbeh va-laylah nerah ('her lamp does not go out at night') — she works late, not from anxiety but from productive energy. The burning lamp symbolizes both activity and prosperity.
19. Yod י. Yadeiha shillechah va-kishor ('her hands she sends to the distaff') and kappeiha tamkhu falekh ('her palms hold the spindle') — spinning thread was the fundamental textile craft of the ancient world. The distaff holds raw fiber; the spindle twists it into thread. She masters the basic technology of her industry.
20. Kaf כ. Kappah paresah le-ani ('her palm she spreads open to the afflicted') and yadeiha shillechah la-eyyon ('her hands she extends to the needy'). The same hands that work the spindle (v19) also give to the poor (v20). Productivity and generosity are not competing activities but complementary ones — she works in order to give. The open hand (paresah) is the physical opposite of the clenched fist of hoarding.
21. Lamed ל. Lo-tira le-veitah mi-shaleg ('she does not fear for her household from snow') — winter does not catch her unprepared. Kol-beitah lavush shanim ('all her household is dressed in scarlet/double garments'). Shanim could mean 'scarlet' (expensive, warm dye) or 'double garments' (from shenayim, 'two' — double-layered clothing for warmth). Either reading shows preparation and quality: her family is warm and well-dressed because she planned ahead.
22. Mem מ. Marvaddim asetah-lah ('coverings/tapestries she makes for herself') — she provides luxury for her own household. Shesh ve-argaman levushah ('fine linen and purple are her clothing'). Shesh ('fine linen,' imported from Egypt) and argaman ('purple,' dyed with the prohibitively expensive murex snail extract) are materials of royalty. She dresses not in rags but in the finest fabrics, which she has earned through her own industry.
23. Nun נ. Noda ba-she'arim ba'alalah ('known at the gates is her husband') — the husband has public status and civic influence. Be-shivto im-ziqne-arets ('when he sits with the elders of the land') — he holds a position of honor and authority. But the context makes clear: his public standing is enabled by her private industry. He can sit with the elders because she has handled everything else.

- 24.** Samekh (). Sadin asetah va-timkor ('a linen garment she makes and sells') — she manufactures goods for market, not just for household use. Chagor natnah la-kena'ani ('a sash/belt she gives to the trader/Canaanite'). Kena'ani can mean 'Canaanite' or 'merchant' (Canaanites were known as traders). She is not a cottage hobbyist but a commercial producer supplying professional merchants.
- 25.** Ayin (). Oz-ve-hadar levushah ('strength and splendor are her clothing') — her real garments are not linen and purple (v22) but oz ('strength, power') and hadar ('dignity, majesty, splendor'). Va-tischaq le-yom acharon ('she laughs at the future day, she laughs at the last day'). Her preparation is so thorough that she can face the future without anxiety. She laughs (tischaq) — the opposite of fear. The future, which terrifies the unprepared, amuses the woman of strength.
- 26.** Torat chesed ('instruction of faithful love') is one of the most beautiful phrases in Proverbs. Torah (instruction) sets the form; chesed (faithful love) sets the tone. She teaches truth with kindness — the combination that Proverbs has been building toward across all 31 chapters.
- 27.** Tsade (). Tsofiyyah halikhot beita ('she watches the goings/activities of her household') — tsofiyyah ('she watches, she observes, she keeps lookout') uses watchman/sentinel vocabulary. She is the household's sentry, monitoring everything that comes and goes. Lechem atslut lo tokhel ('bread of laziness she does not eat') — she does not consume anything she has not earned. Her food is the fruit of her labor, never the bread of idleness.
- 28.** Qof (). Qamu vaneha va-ye'ashruha ('her children rise up and call her blessed/fortunate') — the verb ashar (from ashre, 'blessed, happy') means they publicly declare her blessed. Ba'alalah va-yehallelah ('her husband, and he praises her') — the husband joins the chorus. The whole household acknowledges her. This is public honor — not private appreciation but community-recognized worth.
- 29.** The husband's praise uses chayil — the same word from verse 10's opening question and verse 3's warning. The king was told to protect his chayil; the woman embodies chayil; and now her husband declares her chayil surpasses all others. The word binds the chapter together.
- 30.** This verse is the theological center of the eshet chayil poem. All her achievements — economic, domestic, commercial, charitable — flow from yir'at-YHWH ('the fear of the LORD'). Without this verse, the poem could be read as a celebration of mere productivity. With it, every accomplishment is grounded in reverence for God. The fear of the LORD is the root; everything else is fruit.
- 31.** The acrostic is complete: from aleph (v10) to tav (v31), the portrait is finished. The woman of strength has been described from A to Z, and the final image is public recognition. The book that began with 'The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge' (1:7) ends with a woman whose fear of the LORD (v30) produces works that praise her in the public square (v31). Wisdom has been embodied.

Ecclesiastes

Summary: *The book opens with a superscription identifying Qohelet ('the Assembler') as a son of David and king in Jerusalem. What follows is the thesis statement of the entire work: hevel havalim — 'vapor of vapors' — everything is vapor. Qohelet then launches into a poem on the wearying cycles of nature (sun, wind, streams) to argue that nothing under the sun is genuinely new. The chapter closes with Qohelet's autobiographical introduction: he applied his mind to investigate everything done under heaven and found it all to be a chasing after wind.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The word hevel appears five times in verse 2 alone and will appear thirty-eight times across the book. Its traditional rendering as 'vanity' (KJV) or 'meaningless' (NIV) has profoundly shaped Western readings of Ecclesiastes as a work of nihilism or despair. But hevel literally means 'breath' or 'vapor' — something that exists, that you can see on a cold morning, but that you cannot hold or keep. It is not 'nothing' but 'nothing lasting.' This distinction matters enormously. Qohelet is not saying life is pointless; he is saying life is transient, elusive, and impossible to grip. The Covenant Rendering uses 'vapor' throughout to preserve this concrete, physical image. The nature poem in verses 4-7 is not decorative but argumentative: the sun rises and sets, the wind circles, the rivers flow to the sea — and nothing changes. The world is a closed loop. This is Qohelet's evidence for his thesis.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription's claim that Qohelet is 'son of David, king in Jerusalem' has traditionally been read as identifying Solomon, but the book's late Hebrew vocabulary, Aramaic loan-words, and Persian-period syntax make Solomonic authorship impossible on linguistic grounds. The Solomonic fiction is a literary device: who better to test whether wisdom, wealth, and achievement can provide lasting satisfaction than the king who had all three? Qohelet is a persona, not a historical claim. The word qohelet itself is a feminine participle from qahal ('to assemble'), used as a title rather than a name — something like 'the one who convenes the assembly' or simply 'the Assembler.'*

Connections: *Qohelet's investigation of wisdom echoes Proverbs 1:1-7 but reaches radically different conclusions — where Proverbs promises that wisdom yields life, Qohelet finds that wisdom yields grief (v. 18). The nature poem shares imagery with Psalm 19:4-6 (the sun's circuit) but strips it of all praise. The phrase 'under the sun' (tachat ha-shemesh) appears twenty-nine times in Ecclesiastes and nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible — it is Qohelet's signature frame, limiting his inquiry to what can be observed in the natural world without appeal to revelation or eschatology.*

¹The words of Qohelet, son of David, king in Jerusalem.

²Vapor of vapors, says Qohelet.
Vapor of vapors — everything is vapor.

³What lasting gain does a person have
from all the toil at which he toils under the sun?

⁴A generation goes and a generation comes,
but the earth stands forever.

⁵The sun rises and the sun sets,
then it pants back to the place where it rises again.

⁶Going south, then turning north —
round and round the wind goes,
and on its circuits the wind returns.

⁷All the streams flow to the sea,
but the sea is never full.
To the place where the streams flow,
there they return to flow again.

⁸All things are wearisome —
more than anyone can express.
The eye is not satisfied with seeing,
nor the ear filled with hearing.

⁹What has been is what will be,
and what has been done is what will be done.
There is nothing new under the sun.

¹⁰Is there anything of which someone might say, 'Look, this is new'? It has already existed in ages past, in times before us.

¹¹There is no remembrance of those who came before,
and even those yet to come will not be remembered
by those who follow after them.

¹²I, Qohelet, was king over Israel in Jerusalem. ¹³I set my mind to investigate and explore by wisdom everything done under heaven. It is a grievous task God has given to human beings to be occupied with. ¹⁴I have observed all the deeds done under the sun, and look — everything is vapor and a chasing after wind.

¹⁵What is crooked cannot be straightened,
and what is lacking cannot be counted.

¹⁶I said to myself, 'Look, I have grown and increased in wisdom beyond anyone who ruled before me over Jerusalem, and my mind has observed much wisdom and knowledge.' ¹⁷I set my mind to understand wisdom and to understand madness and folly. I realized that this too is a chasing after wind.

¹⁸For with much wisdom comes much vexation,
and whoever increases knowledge increases pain.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Qohelet is not a name but a title derived from qahal ('to assemble, to gather'). The form is a feminine participle used as a professional designation — 'the Assembler' or 'the Convener.' We retain the Hebrew title rather than translating it as 'Preacher' (KJV) or 'Teacher' (NIV), since neither captures the original sense. The Solomonic framing ('son of David, king in Jerusalem') establishes the literary persona through which the book conducts its philosophical experiment.
2. The rendering 'vapor' rather than 'vanity' (KJV) or 'meaningless' (NIV) recovers the physical concreteness of the Hebrew. Hevel is not an abstract philosophical concept but a sensory image — breath on a cold day, morning mist, steam rising from a pot. The word does not negate existence; it characterizes its duration and graspability.
2. The superlative construction hevel havalim appears only here and in 12:8, forming an inclusio that frames the entire book. Everything between these two declarations is contained within the thesis of vapor.
3. The word yitron ('profit, advantage, gain') is a commercial term — literally 'what is left over.' Qohelet frames life as an accounting problem: after all the effort, what is the net surplus? The implied answer is: nothing lasting. The phrase tachat ha-shemesh ('under the sun') appears here for the first time and will recur twenty-nine times. It establishes the boundaries of Qohelet's investigation: he is examining life as it can be observed in the visible world, without appeal to afterlife or divine revelation.
4. The poem on nature's cycles begins. Generations pass but the stage remains. The word olam ('forever, perpetuity') applied to the earth contrasts sharply with the transience of human life. The earth is the permanent backdrop against which the brief drama of each generation plays out and is forgotten.
5. The verb sho'ef ('pants, gasps, hastens') personifies the sun as a runner straining to complete its circuit. This is not a joyful image like Psalm 19:5, where the sun is a bridegroom running with gladness — here the sun is exhausted, gasping its way back to the starting line only to run the same course again. The word choice turns the solar cycle from wonder into weariness.
6. The repetition of sovev ('turning, circling') three times in a single verse mimics the wind's endless circling through sound. The word ruach means both 'wind' and 'spirit' — an ambiguity Qohelet will exploit throughout the book. Here the wind's aimless cycling is exhibit B in the case for cosmic monotony.
7. The streams complete the triad: sun, wind, water — all moving ceaselessly, arriving nowhere new. The sea's refusal to fill despite endless inflow is the poem's most striking image of futility. Effort without accumulation. Motion without progress. The streams do not fail to reach the sea; they reach it and it makes no difference.
8. The word yege'im ('wearisome, toilsome') applies to devarim, which means both 'things' and 'words.' The ambiguity is deliberate: all things are wearying, and all words fail to capture it. The eye and ear — the primary channels of human perception — are insatiable. This is not a celebration of human curiosity but an indictment: we keep looking and listening and are never filled.
9. This is Qohelet's most famous line and the conclusion drawn from the nature poem. The parallel structure is perfectly symmetrical: what was / will be, what was done / will be done. The denial of novelty is radical — it challenges every human claim to innovation, discovery, and progress. Ein kol chadash tachat ha-shemesh: 'there is nothing at all new under the sun.'
10. Qohelet anticipates the objection and dismisses it. The rhetorical question expects 'no' as its answer. The phrase le-olamim ('for ages, in antiquity') pushes the denial of novelty back into deep time. Whatever seems new merely seems so because of failed memory.
11. The poem ends by diagnosing why the illusion of novelty persists: memory fails. The rishonim ('former ones') are forgotten, and the acharonim ('later ones') will be too. Each generation lives in the illusion that its experience is unprecedented because it cannot remember what came before. The loss of memory is not accidental but structural — it is how the cycle perpetuates itself.
12. The shift to first person marks the transition from the editor's frame (vv. 1-11) to Qohelet's own voice. The past tense 'was king' (hayiti melek) is striking — it suggests looking back on kingship as a completed experience, which complicates the Solomonic fiction since Solomon reigned until death. The autobiographical section now begins.
13. The verb tur ('to explore, to spy out') is the same word used when Moses sent spies to 'tour' the land of Canaan (Numbers 13:2). Qohelet is conducting a reconnaissance of reality, surveying the terrain of human experience. The military-intelligence connotation adds urgency and purpose to what might otherwise seem like idle philosophizing.
13. The phrase inyan ra ('grievous task') frames the human drive to understand as a burden, not a gift. God assigned it, and it produces sorrow. This tension between divine sovereignty and human frustration runs through the entire book.
14. The phrase re'ut ruach ('chasing after wind' or 'shepherding wind') appears nine times in Ecclesiastes. The word re'ut may derive from ra'ah ('to shepherd, to feed') or from ra'ah ('to desire, to strive after'). Either reading yields the same image: trying to herd the wind or grasping at it — an exercise in futility. The pairing of hevel ('vapor') with re'ut ruach ('chasing wind') creates Qohelet's most characteristic expression: life is both insubstantial and ungraspable.
15. A proverbial couplet summarizing Qohelet's finding. The world contains structural defects (me'uvat, 'twisted, crooked') and deficiencies (chesron, 'lack, deficit') that human effort cannot repair or even quantify. The passive voice suggests these are not accidental but built into the fabric of reality.

Wisdom can diagnose the crookedness but cannot fix it.

16. The phrase *dibarti ani im-libbi* ('I spoke, I, with my heart') is Qohelet's characteristic mode of reflection — internal dialogue. The claim to surpass all predecessors in Jerusalem in wisdom reinforces the Solomonic persona (1 Kings 4:29-31 attributes unmatched wisdom to Solomon). But the claim is set up only to be undercut in the next two verses.
17. Qohelet's method includes studying the full spectrum — not just wisdom but *holelot* ('madness, raving') and *sikhlot* ('folly, senselessness'). He needs the contrast to evaluate wisdom fairly. But even this comprehensive investigation leads to the same verdict: *ra'yon ruach* ('chasing after wind'), a variant of *re'ut ruach* in verse 14.
18. The parallel structure is precise: much wisdom / much vexation, increased knowledge / increased pain. The proportion is direct — wisdom and suffering grow together. This verse will be tested and complicated throughout the book as Qohelet continues to pursue wisdom despite its cost, never abandoning the enterprise he describes as painful.

2

Summary: *Qohelet conducts a series of experiments in pleasure, achievement, and wealth to determine whether any of them yield lasting gain. He builds houses, plants vineyards, acquires servants, accumulates silver and gold, and denies himself nothing his eyes desire. The verdict: all of it is vapor and chasing after wind. He then compares wisdom to folly and concedes that wisdom has an advantage — the wise person sees where he is going — but both the wise and the fool meet the same end in death. The chapter climaxes with Qohelet hating life and hating his toil, since he must leave everything to a successor who may be a fool. The chapter closes with the first of several 'enjoyment passages': there is nothing better than to eat, drink, and find satisfaction in one's work, for even this comes from God's hand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the most sustained first-person experiment in the Hebrew Bible. Qohelet does not argue from theory but from lived experience: 'I built, I planted, I acquired, I gathered.' He is not a detached philosopher but a participant-observer who has tested every avenue the ancient world considered a path to the good life. The shocking element is not his verdict — that pleasure and achievement are vapor — but his honesty about the process. He admits the pleasure was real (v. 10), the wisdom was genuine (v. 13), and the achievement was impressive (vv. 4-8). None of it was fake. It was simply temporary. The hatred of life in verse 17 is not depression but the rational conclusion of a man who has exhausted every human option for permanent satisfaction.*

Translation Friction: *The enjoyment passage in verses 24-26 creates an apparent contradiction: if everything is vapor, why commend eating and drinking? This tension is fundamental to Ecclesiastes and cannot be resolved by choosing one pole over the other. Qohelet simultaneously maintains that nothing lasts and that present enjoyment is a genuine gift from God. The resolution, if there is one, lies in the distinction between permanent gain (*yitron*) and present gift (*mattanah*). There is no lasting profit, but there are real moments of God-given pleasure. Learning to receive them without clutching them is, perhaps, the book's central spiritual discipline.*

Connections: *The catalog of achievements in verses 4-8 parallels the description of Solomon's wealth in 1 Kings 4-10. The enjoyment commendation echoes the Egyptian harper's songs and Siduri's advice to Gilgamesh: 'Let your belly be full, enjoy yourself always by day and by night.' But Qohelet anchors his enjoyment in God's hand (v. 24), which distinguishes his counsel from purely secular *carpe diem*. The phrase 'under the sun' continues to frame the investigation.*

¹I said to myself, 'Come now, I will test you with pleasure — enjoy what is good.' But look, this too was vapor. ²Of laughter I said, 'It is senseless,' and of pleasure, 'What does it accomplish?' ³I explored with my mind how to stimulate my body with wine — my mind still guiding me with wisdom — and how to embrace folly, until I could see what is good for human beings to do under heaven during the few days of their lives. ⁴I undertook great projects. I built houses for myself. I planted vineyards for myself. ⁵I made gardens and parks for myself and planted in them every kind of fruit tree. ⁶I made pools of water for myself to irrigate a forest of growing trees. ⁷I acquired male and female servants and had servants born in my household. I also owned more herds and flocks than anyone who came before me in Jerusalem. ⁸I also amassed silver and gold — the treasuries of kings and provinces. I provided myself with male and female singers and the delights of human

beings — concubines in great number. ⁹I became greater and wealthier than anyone before me in Jerusalem, and through it all my wisdom stayed with me. ¹⁰Whatever my eyes desired I did not withhold from them. I refused my heart no pleasure, for my heart found joy in all my toil — and this was my reward from all my toil. ¹¹Then I surveyed everything my hands had done and the toil I had labored to accomplish, and look — everything was vapor and chasing after wind. There was no lasting gain under the sun. ¹²Then I turned to consider wisdom alongside madness and folly. For what can the one who comes after the king do? Only what has already been done. ¹³And I saw that wisdom has an advantage over folly, just as light has an advantage over darkness. ¹⁴The wise person's eyes are in his head, but the fool walks in darkness. Yet I also know that one fate overtakes them both. ¹⁵Then I said to myself, 'What happens to the fool will happen to me as well. So why have I been so excessively wise?' And I said to myself that this too is vapor. ¹⁶For the wise person, like the fool, will not be remembered forever — in the days to come everything will already be forgotten. How can it be that the wise person dies just like the fool? ¹⁷So I hated life, because what is done under the sun was grievous to me, for everything is vapor and chasing after wind. ¹⁸I hated all the results of my toil at which I had worked under the sun, because I must leave them to the one who comes after me. ¹⁹And who knows whether that person will be wise or foolish? Yet he will have control over everything I toiled at and applied my wisdom to under the sun. This too is vapor. ²⁰So I turned to let my heart despair over all the toil at which I had worked under the sun. ²¹For here is a person whose toil was done with wisdom, knowledge, and skill — yet he must hand over his portion to someone who did not work for it. This too is vapor, and a terrible wrong. ²²For what does a person gain from all his toil and the striving of his heart at which he toils under the sun? ²³For all his days are filled with pain, and his occupation is vexation. Even at night his mind does not rest. This too is vapor. ²⁴There is nothing better for a person than to eat and drink and find satisfaction in his toil. This too, I saw, is from the hand of God. ²⁵For who can eat or who can experience anything apart from him? ²⁶For to the person who is good in his sight, God gives wisdom, knowledge, and joy; but to the one who misses the mark, he gives the task of gathering and collecting, only to hand it over to the one who is good before God. This too is vapor and chasing after wind.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Qohelet announces a new experiment: testing pleasure (*simchah*) as a candidate for lasting meaning. The address to himself in second person ('I will test you') creates a clinical distance — he is both experimenter and subject. The verdict ('this too was vapor') comes before the evidence, signaling that the outcome was already clear.
2. The word *meholal* ('mad, senseless') from *halal* ('to be boisterous, to rave') echoes the *holelot* ('madness') of 1:17. Laughter and pleasure are not condemned as sinful but as unproductive — they accomplish nothing lasting.
3. The verb *tarti* ('I explored, I investigated') suggests deliberate, methodical testing. Qohelet's genius as an experimenter shows here: he indulges in wine while maintaining intellectual control ('my mind still guiding with wisdom'). This is not reckless hedonism but controlled experimentation. The phrase *mispar yeme chayyehem* ('the number of the days of their lives') underscores how brief the testing window is.
4. The catalog of achievements begins. Each item echoes Solomon's building program (1 Kings 5-7). The repetition of 'for myself' (*li*) in the Hebrew emphasizes the self-directed nature of the enterprise.
5. The word *pardesim* ('parks, orchards') is a Persian loanword (from *pairidaeza*, the source of English 'paradise'). Its presence is one of the linguistic markers of the book's late date, long after Solomon's era.
6. The pools recall Solomon's pools south of Bethlehem. The image of human engineering conquering aridity connects back to the streams-and-sea imagery of 1:7 — but here, unlike nature's futile cycles, the water is directed to a purpose. Qohelet's engineering actually works. The question is whether it matters.
7. The *bene bayit* ('sons of the house') were slaves born within the household, considered more loyal than purchased slaves. The competitive comparison — 'more than anyone before me in Jerusalem' — sustains the Solomonic persona and underscores the scale of the experiment.
8. The phrase *shiddah ve-shiddot* is one of the most disputed words in Ecclesiastes. The precise meaning is uncertain — suggestions include 'chests,' 'concubines,' 'cup-bearers,' or 'luxuries.' The context of human delights and the superlative form (*shiddah ve-shiddot*, like *hevel havalim*) suggests sexual pleasure, and we follow the traditional interpretation of 'concubines' as the final item in a progression from material to sensory to intimate pleasure.
8. The word *segullat* ('treasuries, special possessions') is used elsewhere of Israel as God's 'treasured possession' (Exodus 19:5). Here it refers to royal wealth — an ironic reversal.

9. The crucial note: *af chokhmati amdah li* ('my wisdom stayed with me'). Qohelet did not lose his judgment in the process. The experiment was conducted under controlled conditions. Whatever verdict he reaches about pleasure and achievement cannot be dismissed as the regret of someone who lost himself in excess.
10. This verse is the honest center of the chapter. The pleasure was real. The joy was genuine. Qohelet does not deny that his achievements brought him satisfaction. The word *cheleq* ('portion, share, reward') is important — it is the dividend the effort actually paid. But as the next verse will clarify, this portion is all there is. There is no *yitron* ('lasting surplus') beyond it.
11. The verdict on the pleasure experiment is identical to the verdict on the wisdom experiment (1:14): *hevel u-re'ut ruach* ('vapor and chasing after wind'). The added phrase *ein yitron tachat ha-shemesh* ('there is no lasting gain under the sun') makes explicit what was implied. The pleasure was real (v. 10) but not lasting. The experience yielded a portion but not a surplus.
12. The rhetorical question acknowledges the unique advantage of the Solomonic persona: no one will be able to conduct this experiment on a grander scale. If the king with unlimited resources found no lasting gain, no successor can expect to find it either.
13. Qohelet is not anti-wisdom. He freely concedes its superiority over folly — the comparison to light versus darkness is the strongest possible endorsement. The question is not whether wisdom is better but whether it is enough.
14. The phrase 'eyes in his head' is a compact metaphor for foresight and awareness. The *miqreh echad* ('one fate') that overtakes both is death — Qohelet does not say the word yet but the following verses make it explicit.
15. The question 'why have I been wise?' is not a rejection of wisdom but an anguished recognition of its limits. If both wise and foolish end in death, what advantage does all that extra wisdom provide? The answer — which Qohelet will spend the rest of the book working out — is: a real but temporary one.
16. The complaint echoes 1:11 — memory fails, and the wise are forgotten along with the foolish. The exclamation *ve-eikh yamut he-chakham im ha-kesil* ('how can it be that the wise dies alongside the fool!') expresses genuine outrage. This is not resignation but protest.
17. The Hebrew is blunt: *ve-sane'ti et ha-chayyim* ('I hated life'). The verb *sane* ('to hate') is unqualified. This is the most extreme emotional statement in the chapter and one of the most striking in all of wisdom literature. Qohelet does not say he was disappointed or disillusioned — he says he hated life. The cause is not personal suffering but the structural injustice of death erasing all distinctions.
18. The hatred extends from life itself (v. 17) to the products of labor. The reason is not that the work was bad but that its fruits must be transferred to an unknown successor. Inheritance forces Qohelet to confront the fact that ownership is temporary — the builder never gets to keep what he built.
19. The uncertainty about the heir's character adds insult to the injury of losing one's work. Qohelet's wisdom cannot even guarantee that the successor will be competent. The verb *yishlat* ('will have control, will rule over') emphasizes that the heir gains authority over what he did not earn.
20. The verb *ya'esh* ('to despair, to give up hope') marks the emotional low point. Qohelet deliberately allows himself to feel the full weight of the realization. This is intellectual honesty carried to its painful conclusion.
21. The word *kishron* ('skill, success, competence') appears only in Ecclesiastes. The injustice is stated plainly: skill and effort produce results that are then given to someone with no investment. The phrase *ra'ah rabbah* ('a terrible wrong, a great evil') is stronger than the usual *hevel* verdict — this is not just transient, it is unjust.
22. The question reprises 1:3 but adds *ra'yon libbo* ('the striving of his heart') — not just physical labor but the mental and emotional investment. The rhetorical question expects the answer: nothing lasting.
23. The portrait of sleepless anxiety completes the picture. Toil does not end at sunset — the mind continues to churn through the night. The word *makh'ovim* ('pains, sorrows') and *ka'as* ('vexation, anger') characterize the inner life of the achiever as one of chronic distress.
24. The shift from 'I hated life' (v. 17) to 'eat, drink, and find satisfaction' (v. 24) is jarring but intentional. Qohelet's counsel is not hedonism — it is received enjoyment. The hand of God as the source transforms this from secular advice into theological affirmation: even in a vapor-filled world, God gives moments of genuine goodness.
25. The Hebrew text is ambiguous — 'apart from him' (*mimmenni*) could refer to God or to Qohelet. Some manuscripts read 'apart from me,' reinforcing the Solomonic persona (who had more opportunity to eat and enjoy than Solomon?). We follow the reading that refers to God, consistent with the theological framing of verse 24: all enjoyment ultimately comes from God.
26. The word *choteh* ('sinner, one who misses the mark') is rendered here without the heavy theological freight that 'sinner' carries in English. The Hebrew root *chata* means 'to miss' (as an archer misses a target). The person who misses the mark accumulates wealth that ultimately passes to the person who is *tov lifne ha-Elohim* ('good before God'). But even this seemingly just distribution is declared vapor — Qohelet refuses to let any system, even a moral one, claim permanence.

3

Summary: Chapter 3 opens with the most famous poem in Ecclesiastes: 'a time for everything' — fourteen pairs of opposites organized in a tightly structured catalogue of human experience. From this poem, Qohelet draws the conclusion that God has made everything appropriate in its time and has placed eternity (olam) in the human heart, yet no one can grasp the full scope of God's work from beginning to end. The chapter then confronts the scandal of injustice in the place where justice should exist, raises the disturbing question of whether humans have any advantage over animals in death, and closes with another commendation of present enjoyment as one's proper portion.

What Makes This Remarkable: The 'time for everything' poem is one of the most recognized passages in world literature, but its function within the argument is frequently missed. It is not a comforting message about divine timing. It is an argument about human powerlessness. The poem's twenty-eight activities (fourteen pairs of opposites) cover the full range of human experience, but the human being does not choose the timing. God sets the times; humans merely undergo them. Verse 11 is the chapter's theological center and one of the most debated verses in the Hebrew Bible: God has placed olam ('eternity, the distant past and future, something beyond comprehension') in the human heart, but ha-adam ('the human being') cannot find out (lo yimtsa) what God has done me-rosh ve-ad sof ('from beginning to end'). We carry within us a sense that there is more than the present moment, yet we cannot access it. This is the deepest form of hevel: to be built for something you cannot reach.

Translation Friction: The word olam in verse 11 is notoriously difficult. It can mean 'eternity,' 'the remote past,' 'the far future,' 'the world,' or 'ignorance' (if emended to elem, 'hiddenness'). The choice shapes the theology of the verse entirely. We retain 'eternity' as the most widely attested meaning while acknowledging the ambiguity in the notes. The comparison of humans and animals in verses 19-21 is deliberately provocative: Qohelet says both share one ruach ('breath/spirit') and both go to the same place (dust). His rhetorical question 'Who knows whether the human spirit ascends upward and the animal spirit descends?' is not denying the afterlife but admitting that empirical observation cannot confirm it.

Connections: The poem's opening line le-khol zeman ('for everything a season') echoes the priestly calendar language of Leviticus 23 and Numbers 28-29, where appointed times (mo'adim) structure Israel's worship. But here the appointed times are not festivals — they are birth and death, killing and healing, war and peace. The human-animal comparison echoes Genesis 2-3 (both formed from the ground, both returning to dust) and anticipates Psalm 49:12,20 ('a person in splendor who does not understand is like the beasts that perish').

¹For everything there is an appointed time,
and a season for every matter under heaven:

²A time to be born and a time to die,
a time to plant and a time to uproot what is planted;

³A time to take life and a time to heal,
a time to tear down and a time to build up;

⁴A time to weep and a time for laughter,
a time for mourning and a time for dancing;

⁵A time to scatter stones and a time to gather stones,
a time to embrace and a time to refrain from embracing;

⁶A time to seek and a time to lose,
a time to keep and a time to throw away;

⁷A time to tear and a time to mend,
a time to be silent and a time to speak;

⁸A time to love and a time to hate,
a time for war and a time for peace.

⁹What lasting gain does the worker have from his toil? ¹⁰I have seen the burden God has placed on human beings to occupy them. ¹¹He has made everything fitting in its time. He has also placed eternity in the human heart — yet no one can discover what God has done from beginning to end. ¹²I know that there is nothing better for them than to rejoice and to do good during their lives. ¹³Moreover, that everyone should eat and drink and experience good in all their toil — this is the gift of God. ¹⁴I know that everything God does will endure forever. Nothing can be added to it and nothing taken from it. God has done this so that people will stand in awe before him. ¹⁵What is has already been, and what will be has already been. And God seeks out what has been driven away. ¹⁶And I saw something else under the sun: in the place of justice, wickedness was there; and in the place of righteousness, wickedness was there. ¹⁷I said to myself, 'God will judge the righteous and the wicked, for there is a time for every matter and for every deed.' ¹⁸I said to myself concerning human beings: God tests them so that they may see that they are, in themselves, like animals. ¹⁹For what happens to human beings and what happens to animals is the same — as one dies, so dies the other. They all have the same breath, and humans have no advantage over animals, for everything is vapor. ²⁰All go to one place. All come from dust, and all return to dust. ²¹Who knows whether the human spirit ascends upward and the animal spirit descends downward into the earth? ²²So I saw that there is nothing better than for a person to find joy in his work, for that is his portion. Who can bring him to see what will happen after him?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *zeman* ('appointed time, season') is a late Hebrew / Aramaic term (compare Daniel 2:16; Esther 9:27), another marker of the book's post-exilic date. The word *et* ('time, moment, occasion') refers to the specific appropriate moment for each action. *Chefets* ('matter, affair, desire') encompasses the full range of human activities catalogued in the following verses.
2. The poem opens with the most fundamental pair: birth and death — the two events no human controls. The shift to agricultural imagery (plant / uproot) grounds the cosmic claim in the daily rhythm of farming life. Each pair follows the pattern *et* + infinitive, creating a rhythmic cadence that carries through all fourteen pairs.
3. The 'time to kill' is startling in its directness — Qohelet does not soften it. The pairs now move through violence and restoration, destruction and construction. The poem makes no moral judgments about these activities; it simply asserts that each has its appointed moment.
4. The emotional pairs — weeping/laughing, mourning/dancing — move from the physical world to the interior world. *Sefod* ('to mourn, to beat the breast') is the formal mourning ritual; *raqod* ('to dance, to skip') is its opposite. Both are public, communal activities with appointed occasions.
5. Scattering and gathering stones may refer to clearing a field for planting or ruining an enemy's field (2 Kings 3:25), or it may carry a sexual connotation (as in the Targum and Midrash). The embrace/refrain pair moves into the intimate sphere — there are seasons for closeness and seasons for distance, and forcing either at the wrong time violates the order.
6. The seeking/losing and keeping/discarding pairs address the human relationship to possessions and pursuits. The 'time to lose' (*et le-abbed*) does not mean losing accidentally but accepting loss — letting go. The 'time to throw away' (*et le-hashlik*) is the deliberate act of releasing what one has held.
7. Tearing (*qara*) refers to the mourning ritual of tearing one's garment; mending (*tafor*) is the restoration that follows. The silence/speech pair is one of the most potent in the poem — knowing when to speak and when to stay silent is one of wisdom literature's highest skills (Proverbs 10:19; 17:28).
8. The poem closes with its most sweeping pairs: love/hate and war/peace. These final four words encompass the entirety of human relational and political life. The poem ends not on love or peace but on *shalom* — which may be deliberate, leaving the reader with the word for wholeness and well-being as the last note.
9. The question from 1:3 returns. After the beautiful poem, the conclusion is sobering: if God controls the timing of everything, what surplus (*yitron*) does human effort produce? The poem was not a comfort — it was evidence that human beings do not control the most important moments of their lives.
10. The word *inyan* ('burden, occupation, business') reprises 1:13. God gives humanity tasks that fill time but do not yield lasting gain. The verb *la'anot bo* ('to be occupied with it, to be afflicted by it') carries overtones of both busyness and suffering.
11. The word *olam* is the crux. It most commonly means 'eternity, perpetuity, the ages' (as in *le-olam va-ed*, 'forever and ever'). Some scholars emend to *elem* ('hiddenness, ignorance'), which would yield 'he has placed ignorance in their hearts.' We retain *olam* because the tension between having

eternity planted within and being unable to comprehend God's work is precisely Qohelet's point — it would be flattened by reading 'ignorance.'

11. The phrase *me-rosh ve-ad sof* ('from beginning to end') describes the totality of God's action through time. Humans can perceive fragments — individual times and seasons — but never the whole tapestry.
12. The second enjoyment passage. Given the inability to comprehend God's total work, the proper response is *simchah* ('joy, gladness') and *la'asot tov* ('to do good'). Whether 'do good' means moral goodness or 'experience good things' is debated. Both readings are legitimate — Qohelet likely intends the overlap.
13. The word *mattat* ('gift') from *natan* ('to give') is key. Enjoyment is not earned, achieved, or manufactured — it is given. *Mattat Elohim* ('gift of God') anchors the enjoyment counsel in theology: even when the big picture is incomprehensible, God gives small gifts — food, drink, satisfaction — that can be received in the present.
14. A statement of divine sovereignty: God's work is permanent (*le-olam*) and unalterable. Humans can neither add to it nor subtract from it. The purpose clause — *she-yir'u mi-lefanav* ('so that they will fear before him') — connects God's inscrutable permanence to human reverence. The inability to understand or modify God's work is itself pedagogical: it teaches awe.
15. The first half repeats the cyclical view of 1:9. The second half — *ve-ha-Elohim yevaquesh et nirdaf* ('God seeks what has been driven away / pursued') — is enigmatic. The *nirdaf* ('the pursued, the driven away') may refer to past time, to the oppressed, or to events that have been displaced. The image of God recovering what has been lost or persecuted adds a note of justice to the cyclical worldview.
16. The double occurrence of *resha* ('wickedness') in the very places designated for *mishpat* ('justice') and *tsedeq* ('righteousness') is devastating. The corruption is not in the marketplace or the battlefield but in the courts — the institutions designed to correct injustice are themselves unjust. This observation drives the crisis of the next verses.
17. Qohelet's response to the injustice of verse 16 is an appeal to divine judgment — but it is an appeal he makes to himself (*be-libbi*, 'in my heart'), not a confident public declaration. The phrase *et le-khol chefets* ('a time for every matter') echoes the poem's opening (v. 1), suggesting that even judgment has its appointed time, though it may not be visible now.
18. The phrase *she-hem behemah hemmah lahem* ('they are animals, they, to themselves') is syntactically awkward and deliberately provocative. Qohelet is not making a biological claim but a mortality claim: viewed from the perspective of death, humans and animals are indistinguishable. God's purpose in this (*levaram*, 'to purify them, to test them, to make clear to them') is pedagogical — the recognition of shared mortality is meant to produce humility.
19. The word *ruach* here means 'breath' (the animating life-force) rather than 'spirit' in the theological sense. Qohelet's point is biological: both humans and animals breathe, and when the breathing stops, both are equally dead. The 'no advantage' (*motar...ayin*) echoes the *yitron* question of 1:3 and 3:9.
20. The echo of Genesis 3:19 ('dust you are and to dust you shall return') is unmistakable. But Genesis applied this only to the human; Qohelet extends it to all living things. The universality of dust-origin and dust-destination is the empirical ground for the 'no advantage' claim. *Ha-kol* ('all, everything') appears three times, hammering the universality home.
21. This question is not a denial of the afterlife but an epistemological admission: empirical observation cannot confirm what happens to the *ruach* after death. Qohelet's method — observing what happens 'under the sun' — reaches its limit here. The traditional belief that the human spirit ascends may be true, but Qohelet's investigative framework cannot verify it. The question is honest, not heretical.
22. The third enjoyment passage closes the chapter. The word *cheleq* ('portion') returns from 2:10 — present joy is what life actually yields. The final question ('who can bring him to see what will happen after him?') seals the argument: since the future is inaccessible, the present is all you have. Receive it.

4

Summary: *Qohelet turns his attention to the social dimensions of life under the sun. He observes the tears of the oppressed who have no comforter, concluding that the dead are better off than the living and the unborn better still. He examines the competitive nature of human toil, the loneliness of the solitary worker with no companion, and then offers one of the book's most tender observations: two are better than one. The famous 'threefold cord' proverb appears here. The chapter closes with a reflection on the fickleness of popular acclaim — even a king's favor is vapor.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains Qohelet's most sustained engagement with social injustice. The repetition of 'no comforter' (*ein lahem menachem*) in verse 1 is devastating — it appears twice in a single verse, as though Qohelet cannot get past the absence. The shift from cosmic observations about nature and death to street-level observations about oppression and loneliness reveals Qohelet as more than a philosopher; he is a witness. The 'two are better than one' section (vv. 9-12) is often*

extracted for wedding readings, but in context it is a survival strategy: the world is cold and dangerous, and companionship is the only reliable protection against it.

Translation Friction: *Verse 2-3, where Qohelet declares the dead more fortunate than the living and the unborn more fortunate than either, pushes against the Hebrew Bible's general affirmation of life. This is not suicidal ideation but a rhetorical strategy: if oppression is this severe, then not being born is the only way to avoid witnessing it. The logic is about suffering avoidance, not life-denial. It should be read alongside Job 3, where a similar wish for non-existence arises from a similar confrontation with unjust suffering.*

Connections: *The 'no comforter' language echoes Lamentations 1:2,9,16,17,21, where Jerusalem after the exile has 'no one to comfort her.' The two-are-better-than-one section connects to the creation narrative's 'it is not good for the human to be alone' (Genesis 2:18). The threefold cord metaphor has parallels in Mesopotamian wisdom literature, particularly the Sumerian proverb collection. The fickle king section anticipates the court wisdom of chapters 8-10.*

¹Again I looked and saw all the acts of oppression committed under the sun. I saw the tears of the oppressed — and they had no comforter. Power was on the side of their oppressors — and they had no comforter. ²So I declared the dead — who have already died — more fortunate than the living who are still alive. ³But better off than both is the one who has never existed, who has never seen the evil deeds done under the sun. ⁴And I saw that all toil and all skillful work spring from one person's envy of another. This too is vapor and chasing after wind. ⁵The fool folds his hands and consumes his own flesh.

⁶Better one handful with tranquility
than two fistfuls with toil and chasing after wind.

⁷Again I saw vapor under the sun: ⁸There is a man who is alone, with no companion — he has neither son nor brother. Yet there is no end to his toil, and his eye is never satisfied with wealth. 'For whom am I toiling,' he never asks, 'and depriving myself of good things?' This too is vapor and a miserable occupation. ⁹Two are better than one, for they have a good return for their toil. ¹⁰For if one falls, the other can lift up his companion. But pity the one who falls with no one to help him up. ¹¹Al so, if two lie down together, they keep warm; but how can one person keep warm alone? ¹²And if someone overpowers one person, two can resist him. A cord of three strands is not quickly broken. ¹³Better a poor but wise youth than an old but foolish king who no longer knows how to accept a warning. ¹⁴For the youth came out of prison to become king, even though he had been born poor in the king's own realm. ¹⁵I saw all the living who move about under the sun rally to the side of the second youth, who would succeed him. ¹⁶There was no end to all the people he led, yet those who come later will not celebrate him. This too is vapor and chasing after wind.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *menachem* ('comforter') is from *nacham* ('to comfort, to console'). Its doubled absence creates one of the most emotionally raw moments in Ecclesiastes. The comforter is not God, not a human advocate, not a legal system — the word is left open, and the absence is total.
2. The verb *shibbachtî* ('I praised, I congratulated, I declared fortunate') does not mean Qohelet envies death in the abstract. In the context of verses 1-3, the logic is specific: given the relentless oppression with no comforter, the dead have at least escaped the sight of it. The living must continue witnessing what they cannot change.
3. The escalation — the living < the dead < the never-born — is Qohelet's most extreme statement. The never-born person (*asher aden lo hayah*, 'who has not yet come into being') is most fortunate because he has not witnessed (*lo ra'ah*) the evil that happens under the sun. This is an argument from suffering-avoidance, not from nihilism. Compare Job 3:11-16.
4. The word *qin'ah* ('envy, jealousy, rivalry') diagnoses the hidden engine of human achievement: competition with one's neighbor. The *kishron ha-ma'aseh* ('skill of the work, excellence of achievement') is real, but its motivation is envy. Qohelet does not deny the quality of the work — he exposes its root.
5. A proverbial image of the sluggard who refuses to work. Folding the hands is the posture of idleness (Proverbs 6:10; 24:33). 'Consuming his own flesh' means self-destruction through inactivity — the fool's laziness devours him. This proverb qualifies verse 4: if all toil springs from envy, does that mean one should stop working? No — the alternative is self-consumption.
6. The 'better than' (*tov...min*) proverb offers the middle path between envy-driven overwork (v. 4) and lazy self-destruction (v. 5). One handful (*melo khaf*) with *nachat* ('rest, tranquility, quiet') is superior to two fistfuls (*melo chofnayim*) with *amal* ('toil') and *re'ut ruach* ('chasing after wind'). The measure is not quantity but quality of life.

7. A transitional formula introducing the next observation. The brief, unadorned statement signals a new case study in futility.
8. The portrait of the solitary workaholic is drawn with precision: no son (ben), no brother (ach), no second person (sheni) at all — and yet he works endlessly. The question he never asks ('for whom am I toiling?') is the one that would free him. His eye's insatiability echoes 1:8. The tragedy is not that he lacks companionship but that he does not notice the lack.
9. After the portrait of the lonely man, the remedy: companionship. The sakhar tov ('good reward, good return') is not cosmic yitron but practical benefit — two workers produce more than one. The 'better than' form continues from verse 6, now applied to social rather than economic calculation.
10. The first of three practical illustrations. Falling — whether physical stumbling on a road or metaphorical collapse — requires another person's help. The exclamation ve-ilo ('but alas, but pity') expresses genuine sorrow for the solitary person who falls alone.
11. The second illustration: warmth. In ancient Palestine, nights could be bitterly cold, especially for travelers. Sharing body heat was a practical necessity, not merely a comfort. The rhetorical question ('how can one keep warm alone?') has no answer — you cannot.
12. The third illustration: defense against attack. Two can stand where one would fall. The threefold cord proverb elevates the principle beyond pairs — the strongest arrangement is three strands woven together. The ha-chut ha-meshullash ('the threefold cord') is a proverbial image, likely drawn from rope-making practice. Qohelet does not identify the third strand — it may be God, a child, a community, or simply the principle that more connections mean greater resilience.
13. A new 'better than' proverb introducing the chapter's final section on political power. The contrast is extreme: a yeled misken ('a poor child') versus a melekha zaqen ('an old king'). Wisdom and teachability outweigh age, wealth, and power. The key deficiency of the old king is that he lo yada le-hizzaher od ('no longer knows how to be warned') — he has become un-teachable.
14. The narrative illustration: a prisoner rises to the throne. The phrase bet ha-asurim ('the house of prisoners, the prison') suggests the youth's rise was from the lowest social position. The born-poor detail (nolad rash, 'born destitute') underscores that his success owed nothing to privilege. The story's point is that even this remarkable ascent is about to be declared vapor.
15. The phrase ha-yeled ha-sheni ('the second youth') introduces a successor — the cycle continues. The crowd follows the new leader. The verb ya'amod tachtav ('who will stand in his place') is the language of political succession.
16. The final verdict: even the wise youth who rose from prison to the throne will be forgotten by the next generation. The acharonim ('those who come later') will not rejoice in him — his fame is temporary. Political power, like everything else under the sun, is vapor. The observation echoes 1:11: no one is remembered for long.

5

Summary: *The chapter opens with a rare direct instruction on how to approach God: guard your steps when you go to the house of God, let your words be few, and fulfill your vows. Qohelet then turns to the familiar theme of oppression, noting the bureaucratic chain of exploitation where official watches over official. The second half addresses the futility of wealth: the one who loves money is never satisfied, the rich man's sleep is disturbed, and a devastating misfortune can wipe out everything, leaving a man naked as the day he was born. The chapter closes with the fourth enjoyment passage: to eat, drink, and find satisfaction in one's toil during the few days God gives is itself God's gift.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening verses (1-7) are the only sustained passage in Ecclesiastes that sounds like conventional religious instruction. Qohelet, who elsewhere questions everything, here speaks with uncharacteristic directness about reverence before God. The shift is striking: the skeptic becomes the preacher. But even here, the counsel is rooted in Qohelet's characteristic realism — God is in heaven and you are on earth, so keep your words few. The distance between God and humanity is not a theological problem to solve but a fact to respect. The poverty-at-death image (vv. 15-16) — arriving naked and departing naked, carrying nothing — will echo through centuries of literature and be directly quoted in Job 1:21 (which may be the older text that Qohelet draws from).*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification of chapter 5 differs from the English. What is 5:1 in Hebrew is 4:17 in many English versions, shifting the entire chapter by one verse. We follow the Hebrew versification throughout. The phrase 'do not let your mouth cause your flesh to sin' (v. 5) is textually difficult — 'flesh' (basar) here likely means 'body' or 'self' rather than 'physical flesh,' and the 'messenger' (mal'akh) before whom one speaks may be a priest, a temple official, or an angelic being. The ambiguity is preserved in the rendering.*

Connections: The vow-keeping instruction echoes Deuteronomy 23:21-23 ('when you make a vow to the LORD your God, do not delay fulfilling it'). The 'God is in heaven, you are on earth' theology connects to Isaiah 55:8-9 ('my thoughts are not your thoughts'). The naked-at-birth/naked-at-death image parallels Job 1:21 ('naked I came from my mother's womb, and naked I will return'). The enjoyment passage (vv. 18-20) is the most developed so far and introduces the idea that God keeps a person occupied with the joy of his heart.

¹Do not be hasty with your mouth, and do not let your heart rush to bring a word before God. For God is in heaven and you are on earth — therefore let your words be few. ²For dreams come with many cares, and a fool's voice with many words. ³When you make a vow to God, do not delay fulfilling it, for he takes no pleasure in fools. Fulfill what you vow. ⁴Better not to vow at all than to vow and not fulfill it. ⁵Do not let your mouth lead your body into sin, and do not say before the messenger, 'It was a mistake.' Why should God be angry at your words and destroy the work of your hands? ⁶For in many dreams and many words there is much vapor. Rather, fear God. ⁷If you see oppression of the poor and the denial of justice and righteousness in a province, do not be astonished at the matter. For one official is watched by a higher one, and there are still higher ones over them. ⁸But the advantage of land is for everyone — even a king is served by the field. ⁹The one who loves money will never be satisfied with money, and the one who loves wealth will never be satisfied with income. This too is vapor. ¹⁰When goods increase, so do those who consume them. What benefit do their owners have except to look at them? ¹¹The sleep of the worker is sweet, whether he eats little or much; but the abundance of the rich will not let him sleep. ¹²There is a sickening evil I have seen under the sun: wealth hoarded by its owner to his own harm. ¹³That wealth was lost in a bad venture, and though he fathered a son, he has nothing in his hand. ¹⁴As he came from his mother's womb, so he will go again — naked as he arrived. He will carry nothing from his toil that he can take in his hand. ¹⁵This too is a sickening evil: exactly as he came, so he will go. What lasting gain is there for one who toils for the wind? ¹⁶Moreover, all his days he eats in darkness with much vexation, sickness, and anger. ¹⁷Here is what I have seen to be good and fitting: to eat and drink and experience good in all the toil at which one works under the sun during the few days of life God has given him — for this is his portion. ¹⁸Moreover, everyone to whom God has given wealth and possessions and the ability to enjoy them, to accept his portion and find joy in his toil — this is a gift of God. ¹⁹For he will not dwell much on the days of his life, because God keeps him occupied with the joy of his heart.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb bahel ('to be hasty, to be alarmed') suggests reckless speech born of anxiety rather than reverence. The instruction addresses prayer and temple worship — the 'house of God' context from the Hebrew 4:17 (English 5:1 in some versions) carries over. The contrast between heaven and earth is cosmological but also relational: it defines the posture of the worshiper.
2. The proverb links two parallel phenomena: excessive cares produce disordered dreams, and excessive words mark the fool. The comparison implies that many words before God are as disjointed and useless as anxiety dreams — sound without substance.
3. The vow instruction echoes Deuteronomy 23:21-23 almost verbatim. The characterization of the vow-breaker as a kesil ('fool') places this in wisdom's moral framework: failing to keep a vow is not just wrong, it is foolish — it misreads the character of God.
4. The 'better than' proverb applies Qohelet's realism to religious practice: do not make promises to God that you cannot keep. The absence of a vow is preferable to a broken one. This is not discouraging vows but insisting on integrity in making them.
5. The mal'akh ('messenger') is likely a temple priest who collects vow offerings (Malachi 2:7 calls the priest a 'messenger of the LORD'). The excuse shegagah hi ('it was an inadvertent error') is the technical term for unintentional sin (Leviticus 4:2; Numbers 15:25). Qohelet warns against misusing this category to escape a deliberate vow.
6. The section closes with a terse command: et ha-Elohim yera ('fear God'). After all the warnings about hasty speech, unfulfilled vows, and many words, the summary is stark: reverence. The havalim ('vapors, futilities') associated with excessive dreaming and speaking are swept aside by the single imperative.
7. The word gavo'ah me-al gavo'ah ('high one above high one') describes a bureaucratic hierarchy of exploitation. Each official takes his cut and passes the responsibility upward. The instruction 'do not be astonished' (al titmah) is not a counsel of indifference but of realism — this is how power structures work. The chain of exploitation explains why reform is so difficult: the corruption is systemic.
8. This cryptic verse seems to assert that agricultural land is the one form of wealth that benefits all levels of society. Even the king depends on the field (sadeh) for food. The point may be that despite all the bureaucratic exploitation described in verse 7, the basic economy of the earth still functions and feeds everyone.

9. The proverb diagnoses the paradox of wealth: loving money (kessef) guarantees that money will never be enough. The verb yisba ('be satisfied, be sated') is the same word used for eating one's fill — the money-lover's hunger is insatiable. The parallel 'loves abundance / no income satisfies' reinforces the point: desire outpaces acquisition.
10. Wealth attracts dependents. As goods (tovah, 'good things') increase, the number of mouths increases proportionally. The owner's only exclusive benefit is re'ut einav ('the sight of his eyes') — he can look at his wealth even if he cannot consume it all himself. The kishron ('advantage, benefit') is purely visual.
11. A vivid contrast. The oved ('laborer, worker') sleeps sweetly because his body is tired and his mind is untroubled. The ashir ('rich man') lies awake because ha-sava ('the fullness, the abundance') generates anxiety — worry about loss, management, and protection. Wealth produces insomnia. This is one of Qohelet's sharpest social observations.
12. The phrase ra'ah cholah ('a sickening evil, a grievous ill') is stronger than the usual hevel verdict. The wealth that was supposed to protect becomes the very thing that harms. The word shamur ('guarded, hoarded, kept') suggests not just saving but clutching — the owner holds on and is destroyed by what he holds.
13. The inyan ra ('bad venture, evil occupation') that destroys the wealth may be a failed investment, a lawsuit, or a disaster. The result is that the son — the heir who was supposed to benefit — receives nothing. The phrase ein be-yado me'umah ('there is nothing at all in his hand') is total destitution.
14. The naked-at-birth/naked-at-death principle. The word arom ('naked, bare') marks both entrance and exit. The parallel with Job 1:21 is exact — whether Qohelet quotes Job or both draw from a common proverb, the point is identical: ownership is temporary. The phrase she-yolekh be-yado ('that he can carry in his hand') is poignantly physical — the hand that grasped and held and accumulated will be empty.
15. The 'sickening evil' verdict returns. The symmetry of coming and going (kol ummat she-ba ken yelekh, 'exactly as he came, so he goes') means no net change. The final question echoes 1:3 and uses the wind image: toiling for the wind is the same as chasing it — you end with nothing in your hands.
16. Eating in darkness (ba-choshekh yokhel) may be literal — too miserly to light a lamp — or metaphorical, suggesting a life shrouded in gloom. The three companions of his meals are ka'as ('vexation'), choloy (his sickness'), and qatsef ('fury, anger'). Wealth has produced not comfort but bitterness.
17. The fourth enjoyment passage. The word yafeh ('fitting, beautiful, appropriate') elevates eating and drinking from mere survival to something aesthetically right — this is how life should be lived. The phrase mispar yeme chayyav ('the few days of his life') reminds the reader that the window for enjoyment is small, which makes receiving it all the more urgent.
18. The key distinction: God gives both the wealth and the ability to enjoy it. Having wealth without the ability to enjoy it (which will be the subject of 6:1-2) is a curse. The word hishlito ('enabled him, empowered him, gave him dominion') means enjoyment itself requires divine enablement — it is not automatic.
19. The remarkable closing image: the person who receives God's gift of enjoyment does not brood over the brevity of life. The verb ma'aneh ('keeps occupied, responds, answers') suggests that God fills the person's heart with simchah ('joy') so that the transience of life does not become a source of despair. Joy is God's answer to the problem of vapor.

6

Summary: Chapter 6 is the darkest meditation on wealth in the book. Qohelet describes a man to whom God gives riches, possessions, and honor — everything he could desire — but God does not enable him to enjoy them. A stranger consumes them instead. This is vapor and a grievous affliction. Qohelet then pushes the thought to its extreme: even if a man fathers a hundred children and lives for two thousand years, if he has not experienced good, the stillborn child is better off. The chapter closes with a series of rhetorical questions about human limitation: who knows what is good, who can tell what will happen, and what advantage does the wise person have?

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter is the mirror image of 5:18-19. There, God gave both wealth and the ability to enjoy it; here, God gives wealth but withholds the ability to enjoy. The two passages together form one of Ecclesiastes' most disturbing theological claims: enjoyment is not a human achievement but a divine gift, and God sometimes withholds it without explanation. The man in verse 2 lacks nothing material, yet he cannot eat — the Hebrew lo yashlitennu ha-Elohim le-ekhol ('God does not enable him to eat') places the responsibility squarely on God. Qohelet does not explain why God would do this; he simply reports it. The stillborn comparison (vv. 3-5) is the most extreme version of the 'better not to be born' logic from 4:3.

Translation Friction: *The claim that God gives wealth but withholds enjoyment raises acute theodicy questions. Qohelet does not resolve them. He does not say the man sinned, and he does not say God is unjust — he says it is hevel and choliy ra ('a grievous affliction'). The theological tension is left raw. Additionally, the comparison between a man with a hundred children and a stillborn pushes against the Hebrew Bible's overwhelming valuation of descendants (Genesis 12:2; Psalm 127:3-5). For Qohelet, offspring without enjoyment count for nothing.*

Connections: *The 'God does not enable him to enjoy' language inverts Deuteronomy's blessings-for-obedience framework (Deuteronomy 28:1-14), where God rewards faithfulness with material abundance and the enjoyment of it. Qohelet observes a world where the connection between obedience and enjoyment has broken. The stillborn image connects to Job 3:16 ('like a hidden stillborn, I would not exist'). The closing questions about human ignorance echo 3:11 ('no one can discover what God has done from beginning to end').*

¹There is an evil I have seen under the sun, and it weighs heavily on humanity: ²A man to whom God gives wealth, possessions, and honor, so that he lacks nothing his appetite desires — yet God does not enable him to enjoy any of it, and a stranger consumes it instead. This is vapor and a grievous affliction. ³If a man fathers a hundred children and lives many years — however many the days of his years may be — but his appetite is not satisfied with good things, and he does not even receive a proper burial, I say the stillborn child is better off than he. ⁴For the stillborn arrives in vapor and departs in darkness, and its name is covered in darkness. ⁵It has never seen the sun or known anything, yet it has more rest than that man. ⁶Even if he lived a thousand years twice over but never experienced good — do not all go to the same place? ⁷All of a person's toil is for his mouth, yet his appetite is never filled. ⁸For what advantage does the wise person have over the fool? What advantage does the poor person have who knows how to conduct himself before the living? ⁹Better what the eyes can see than the wandering of desire. This too is vapor and chasing after wind. ¹⁰Whatever exists has already been named, and what a human being is has been determined. He cannot contend with the one who is stronger than he. ¹¹For the more words there are, the more vapor there is. What advantage is that to a person? ¹²For who knows what is good for a person during the few days of his vaporous life, which he passes through like a shadow? Who can tell anyone what will happen after him under the sun?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase rabbah hi al ha-adam ('it is great/heavy upon the human') indicates this is not a rare case but a widespread burden. Qohelet introduces a case study that reverses the positive enjoyment teaching of 5:18-19.
2. The theological weight of this verse falls on God as the agent who both gives and withholds. Qohelet offers no explanation for why God would give wealth but block enjoyment. The choliy ra ('evil sickness, grievous disease') language treats this condition as a kind of pathology — it is not just unfortunate, it is affliction.
3. The hyperbole (a hundred children, many years) emphasizes that quantity of life and descendants cannot compensate for the absence of satisfaction (lo tisba min ha-tovah, 'his appetite is not filled with good'). The added detail of no burial (qevurah lo haytah lo) is the final indignity — in Israelite culture, lack of proper burial was a curse (Jeremiah 22:19). The nefel ('stillborn, miscarriage') is declared tov mimmennu ('better than he').
4. The stillborn's existence is characterized by hevel ('vapor') and choshekh ('darkness'). It comes and goes without light, without name, without memory. Yet even this shadowed non-existence is preferable to a long life without satisfaction.
5. The word nachat ('rest, tranquility') is the key comparison. The stillborn, though it never saw the sun (shemesh) and never knew (yada) anything, possesses what the wealthy, long-lived, unsatisfied man does not: rest. The absence of experience is, in this case, an advantage over the presence of unrelieved frustration.
6. The hypothetical extends to absurd longevity: two thousand years. Even at that scale, life without tova ('good, goodness, enjoyment') is worthless. The rhetorical question ('do not all go to the same place?') refers to death and echoes 3:20 — all return to dust. Length of life cannot solve the problem of quality of life.
7. The observation is biological and metaphorical at once: all work exists to feed the mouth (le-fihu), yet the nefesh ('appetite, soul, desire') is never satisfied (lo timmale, 'is not filled'). The gap between effort (amal) and satisfaction (male) is permanent. Toil feeds the body but cannot satisfy the deeper hunger.
8. Two rhetorical questions, both expecting the answer 'none — at least with respect to satisfying the appetite.' The phrase yodea la-halokh neged ha-chayyim ('knows how to walk before the living') describes the poor person with social skill — even he, despite knowing how to navigate society, gains no advantage in the struggle against insatiable desire.

9. The proverb counsels contentment with what is present (mar'eh einayim, 'the sight of the eyes' — what you can actually see) rather than the restless roaming of appetite (halokh nefesh, 'the walking of the soul/desire'). But even this contentment is declared hevel — Qohelet cannot let even good advice escape the vapor verdict.
10. The 'already named' (kevar niqra shemo) echoes the creation narrative where God names things into existence (Genesis 1) and Adam names the animals (Genesis 2:19-20). What a person is (adam) has been determined — the boundaries are fixed. The 'one stronger' (she-taqqif mimmennu) is God. Humans cannot argue their way out of their limitations.
11. The word devarim means both 'words' and 'things.' The ambiguity is likely intentional: both excessive speech and excessive activity produce more hevel without producing more benefit. The question 'what advantage to a person?' (mah yoter la-adam) echoes the yitron question from 1:3 once more.
12. The chapter closes with two questions that define the limits of human knowledge. The first — 'who knows what is good?' — challenges the assumption that we can identify our own best interest. The second — 'who can tell what will happen after?' — challenges the assumption that we can plan for the future. The phrase yeme chayyei hevlo ('the days of his vaporous life') makes hevel a modifier of life itself — life is vapor-like in its duration and substance. The shadow comparison (ka-tsel, 'like a shadow') adds a second image of insubstantiality.

7

Summary: Chapter 7 is Qohelet's densest collection of proverbs, many of which sound like standard wisdom but are subtly subverted by their context. It opens with a series of 'better than' proverbs — a good name is better than fine oil, the day of death better than the day of birth, sorrow better than laughter. Qohelet then warns against nostalgia, anger, and the extremes of both righteousness and wickedness. The chapter's most controversial section comes in verses 23-29, where Qohelet reports his search for wisdom and his failure to find it, along with a troubling statement about finding something 'more bitter than death' — a woman whose heart is snares and nets.

What Makes This Remarkable: The 'better than' proverbs in the opening verses systematically invert conventional expectations. A funeral is better than a feast. The end is better than the beginning. Sorrow is better than laughter. These are not nihilistic provocations but the fruit of Qohelet's investigation: knowing that life is vapor, the person who contemplates death honestly lives more wisely than the one who avoids the thought. The strangest passage is verse 16-17, where Qohelet warns against being excessively righteous or excessively wise, and equally against being excessively wicked. This 'golden mean' counsel is unique in the Hebrew Bible and has generated enormous debate — is Qohelet advising moral mediocrity? More likely, he is warning against the self-destructive forms of both piety (scrupulosity, spiritual burnout) and wickedness (reckless self-destruction).

Translation Friction: Verses 26-28 present the most difficult passage in Ecclesiastes for modern readers. Qohelet says he found 'one man among a thousand' but 'not one woman among all these.' The Hebrew is ambiguous and has been read in wildly different ways: as misogyny, as a comment on the specific women in Solomon's court, as a statement about the personified 'Woman Folly' of Proverbs 1-9, or as an acknowledgment of social structures that prevented women from receiving wisdom education. We render the text faithfully and address the complexity in the notes without either endorsing or sanitizing the statement.

Connections: The opening proverbs echo the form and style of Proverbs 10-31 but subvert their optimism. The 'don't say the former days were better' warning (v. 10) anticipates nostalgia as a perennial human temptation. The 'one man among a thousand' echoes Job 33:23 (an angel, 'one among a thousand'). The closing observation that 'God made humanity upright, but they have sought out many schemes' (v. 29) echoes Genesis 1-3, where God created humans good but they chose deviation.

¹A good name is better than fine perfume,
and the day of death better than the day of birth.

²Better to go to a house of mourning
than to go to a house of feasting,
for that is the end of every person,
and the living should take it to heart.

³Sorrow is better than laughter,
for a grieving face is good for the heart.

⁴The wise heart dwells in the house of mourning,
but the heart of fools is in the house of pleasure.

⁵Better to hear the rebuke of a wise person
than to listen to the song of fools.

⁶For like the crackling of thorns under a pot,
so is the laughter of the fool.
This too is vapor.

⁷For oppression can drive a wise person mad, and a bribe corrupts the heart.

⁸Better the end of a matter than its beginning;
better patience of spirit than pride of spirit.

⁹Do not be quick in your spirit to become angry,
for anger settles in the lap of fools.

¹⁰Do not say, 'Why were the former days better than these?' For it is not from wisdom that you ask this. ¹¹Wisdom is good with an inheritance, and an advantage for those who see the sun. ¹²For the protection of wisdom is like the protection of money, but the advantage of knowledge is this: wisdom preserves the life of its possessor. ¹³Consider the work of God: who can straighten what he has made crooked? ¹⁴On a good day, enjoy the good. On a bad day, reflect. God has made the one alongside the other so that no one can discover anything about what lies ahead. ¹⁵I have seen everything in my vaporous days: a righteous person perishing despite his righteousness, and a wicked person living long despite his wickedness. ¹⁶Do not be excessively righteous, and do not make yourself overly wise — why should you destroy yourself? ¹⁷Do not be excessively wicked, and do not be a fool — why should you die before your time? ¹⁸It is good to grasp the one without letting go of the other, for the person who fears God will navigate both. ¹⁹Wisdom strengthens the wise person more than ten rulers in a city. ²⁰For there is no one on earth so righteous that he always does good and never misses the mark. ²¹Also, do not pay attention to everything people say, or you may hear your servant cursing you. ²²For your own heart knows that you too have often cursed others. ²³All this I tested by wisdom. I said, 'I will be wise,' but it was far from me. ²⁴What exists is far off and deep — very deep. Who can find it? ²⁵I turned — my mind and I — to understand, to investigate, and to seek wisdom and an explanation, and to understand that wickedness is folly and that foolishness is madness. ²⁶And I found something more bitter than death: the woman whose heart is snares and nets, whose hands are chains. The one who pleases God will escape her, but the one who misses the mark will be captured by her. ²⁷Look, this is what I found, says Qohelet, adding one thing to another to reach a conclusion: ²⁸What my soul has sought continually I have not found. One man among a thousand I found, but a woman among all these I did not find. ²⁹This alone I have found: God made human beings upright, but they have pursued many schemes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wordplay shem/shemen ('name/oil') is untranslatable but drives the first line. The second line shocks: the day of death (yom ha-mavet) is better than the day of birth (yom hivvaldo). This is not death-worship but a claim about completed reputation — at death, a life's meaning is sealed. At birth, everything is uncertain.
2. The bet evel ('house of mourning') confronts the visitor with mortality. The bet mishteh ('house of feasting') distracts from it. Qohelet's counsel is to choose the confrontation: sof kol ha-adam ('the end of every human') is a fact that the living (ha-chay) must internalize (yitten el libbo, 'place in his heart').

3. The word *ka'as* ('sorrow, vexation, grief') is the same word used negatively in 1:18. Here it functions positively: the grief that comes from facing reality honestly improves (*yitav*) the heart. The paradox is deliberate — what feels bad produces what is good.
4. The classification is sharp: where your heart gravitates reveals what you are. The wise are drawn to the place that teaches (the funeral), and fools to the place that entertains (the party). The word *simchah* ('joy, pleasure, mirth') is used positively elsewhere in Ecclesiastes, but here it describes the fool's preference for distraction.
5. The contrast between *ga'arat chakham* ('the rebuke of the wise') and *shir kesilim* ('the song of fools') sets painful truth against pleasant noise. The rebuke stings but teaches; the song entertains but teaches nothing.
6. The simile is both acoustic and substantive: thorns (*sirim*) burn hot and fast under a pot (*sir*) — the wordplay *sirim/sir* is intentional — producing noise and light but no lasting heat. The fool's laughter is the same: loud, bright, and gone in a moment.
7. Two threats to wisdom: *osheq* ('oppression, extortion') can make even a wise person *holelel* ('mad, senseless'), and a *mattanah* ('gift, bribe') can destroy (*ye'abbed*) the *lev* ('heart, mind'). Wisdom is not invulnerable — it can be broken by external pressure and corrupted by money.
8. Two 'better than' proverbs in a single verse. The first (*acharit davar / reshito*) values completion over initiation. The second (*erekh ruach / govah ruach*) values patience ('long spirit') over arrogance ('high spirit'). Both counsel endurance over impulse.
9. The verb *bahel* ('to be hasty') echoes 5:1. Quick anger (*ka'as*) finds a permanent home (*yanuach*, 'rests, settles') in the *cheiq* ('bosom, lap') of fools. The image is almost domestic: anger curls up in the fool's lap like a pet and stays.
10. Qohelet dismisses nostalgia as unwise (*lo me-chokmah*). The assumption that the past was superior to the present is not based on evidence but on selective memory. This connects to 1:11 — we do not remember the past accurately, so we idealize it.
11. Wisdom paired with *nachalah* ('inheritance, property') is the ideal combination — understanding plus resources. The phrase *ro'e ha-shemesh* ('those who see the sun') means 'the living' and echoes the 'under the sun' framework.
12. The word *tsel* ('shadow, shade, protection') applies equally to wisdom and money — both shelter a person. But wisdom has a *yitron* ('advantage') that money lacks: it *techayeh* ('gives life to, preserves the life of') its owner. This is the one context where Qohelet uses *yitron* positively.
13. The verse echoes 1:15 ('what is crooked cannot be straightened') but now identifies God as the one who made it crooked. This is a claim about divine sovereignty, not divine caprice — God has built certain frustrations into reality, and human beings cannot undo them.
14. The practical counsel: enjoy good days while they last and use bad days for reflection. The theological claim is that God made both (*gam et zeh le-ummat zeh*, 'this one opposite that one') deliberately, so that humans cannot predict the future (*lo yimtsa ha-adam acharav me'umah*, 'a person cannot find out anything about what comes after').
15. The observation flatly contradicts the retribution theology of Deuteronomy and Proverbs, where righteousness leads to long life and wickedness to destruction. Qohelet reports the opposite: the *tsaddiq* ('righteous one') perishes *be-tsido* ('in his righteousness') and the *rasha* ('wicked one') lives long *be-ra'ato* ('in his wickedness'). The phrase *bime hevli* ('in my vaporous days') makes his own life the laboratory.
16. The most controversial verse in Ecclesiastes. The warning against excessive righteousness (*al tehi tsaddiq harbeh*) does not endorse moral mediocrity. It warns against the self-destructive form of piety — legalistic scrupulosity, spiritual perfectionism, or the kind of rigid righteousness that breaks under the weight of an unjust world. The parallel warning against excessive wisdom reinforces this: both righteousness and wisdom, taken to extremes, can destroy (*tishshomem*, 'be desolated, be appalled, be destroyed') the one who pursues them.
17. The matching warning against excessive wickedness and foolishness. The phrase *tamut be-lo ittekha* ('die not in your time, die prematurely') suggests that reckless wickedness shortens life. Together with verse 16, the counsel is: neither rigid piety nor reckless wickedness — both paths lead to destruction.
18. The 'both/and' counsel: hold both warnings together. The phrase *yere Elohim* ('the one who fears God') introduces the only reliable guide through the tension — reverence for God enables a person to navigate between the extremes of rigid righteousness and reckless wickedness. The verb *yetse et kullam* ('will come out of/with all of them') means 'will navigate through, will emerge from all situations.'
19. The proverb affirms wisdom's practical power: it provides more protection (*ta'oz*, 'gives strength to') than ten *shallitim* ('rulers, officials, powerful men'). Even after all the qualifications of wisdom in this chapter, Qohelet still affirms its practical superiority.
20. A universal anthropological statement: no *adam* ('human being') is a *tsaddiq* ('righteous person') who only does good and never sins (*yecheta*, 'misses the mark'). This grounds the warning of verse 16 — since no one is perfectly righteous, claiming excessive righteousness is self-deception.
21. Practical wisdom: eavesdropping on every conversation will inevitably lead to hearing painful things. The servant cursing his master is a specific and humiliating example chosen for maximum impact.
22. The appeal to self-knowledge: your *lev* ('heart, mind') knows (*yada*) that you have done the same thing. The honesty is bracing — before being offended by your servant's words, remember your own.
23. The autobiographical report resumes. Qohelet tested (*nissiti*, 'tried, tested') everything by wisdom but found wisdom itself *rechoqah* ('distant, far away'). The irony is sharp: the tool of investigation eludes the investigator.

24. The doubled amog amog ('deep, deep') is a superlative — reality is unfathomably deep. The question mi yimtsa'ennu ('who can find it?') expects the answer: no one. The limits of wisdom are not just practical but ontological — reality itself is beyond reach.
25. The word cheshbon ('explanation, reckoning, accounting, scheme') is a key term that will return in verse 27 and 29. Qohelet seeks not just wisdom but the cheshbon — the underlying logic or calculus of how things work. The pairing of resha/kesel ('wickedness/folly') and sikhlut/holelot ('foolishness/madness') treats moral and intellectual failure as parallel.
26. This verse has been read in multiple ways. The 'woman' may refer to a specific seductress (a particular woman at court), to 'Woman Folly' personified in Proverbs 7 and 9:13-18, or to folly itself metaphorically figured as female. The imagery — metsodim ('hunting nets'), charamim ('fishing nets'), asurim ('bonds, chains') — is the language of entrapment, not of women in general. The tov lifne ha-Elohim ('the one good before God') escapes; the choteh ('one who misses the mark') is caught. The moral framework suggests this is about a specific type of dangerous entanglement rather than a blanket statement about women.
27. The phrase achat le-achat ('one to one') describes a methodical process of accumulating observations. The word cheshbon ('conclusion, reckoning, sum') is the result of the calculation. The feminine form amarah qohelet ('said Qohelet') is unusual and may reflect the feminine grammatical form of the title qohelet.
28. The most debated verse in Ecclesiastes. The 'one man among a thousand' may echo Job 33:23, where an angelic mediator is 'one among a thousand.' If Qohelet is saying he found one genuinely wise person among a thousand men and none among women, the statement reflects the social reality that women in the ancient Near East were largely excluded from wisdom schools and philosophical education — it says more about access than about capacity. Alternatively, the verse may continue the allegory of verse 26: the 'woman' is personified Folly, and no manifestation of her has led to wisdom. Both readings have ancient support.
29. The chapter's conclusion is a creation-and-fall summary. God made ha-adam ('the human being, humanity') yashar ('straight, upright'), but hemmah ('they') sought out chishbonot rabbim ('many calculations, many schemes, many inventions'). The word chishbonot is the plural of cheshbon from verses 25 and 27 — the very accounting Qohelet has been pursuing is part of humanity's deviation from original simplicity. The irony is self-aware: the search for understanding is itself evidence of the fall from uprightness.

8

Summary: *Chapter 8 navigates the treacherous world of royal courts and divine justice. Qohelet opens with advice on surviving under authoritarian power: obey the king, do not rush from his presence, and remember that he has the power to do as he pleases. From political power, the chapter moves to a meditation on death as the one power no human can control — no one has authority over the day of death, and no one is discharged from that war. Qohelet then confronts the failure of retribution theology: the wicked receive the reward of the righteous, and the righteous receive the fate of the wicked. Despite this, the chapter delivers another enjoyment commendation and closes with a humble acknowledgment that no one can discover what God is doing under the sun.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the starkest statement of moral inversion in the book: 'there are righteous people who receive what the wicked deserve, and wicked people who receive what the righteous deserve' (v. 14). This is not theoretical — Qohelet says yesh ('there exists, there are'), indicating observed reality. The enjoyment passage (v. 15) follows immediately after this moral chaos, which makes it something other than naive optimism. It is counsel given in full knowledge of the world's injustice: precisely because the moral order is unreliable, present joy should not be refused.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 12-13 appear to affirm traditional retribution theology ('it will be well with those who fear God...it will not be well with the wicked'), but verse 14 immediately undermines this with observed counterexamples. Whether verses 12-13 represent Qohelet quoting and then critiquing conventional wisdom, or genuinely affirming it before qualifying it, is debated. The tension may be intentional — Qohelet holds both the theological ideal and the empirical reality without resolving the contradiction.*

Connections: *The king-and-court section connects to Proverbs 16:14-15; 19:12; 25:1-7, which also offer survival wisdom for courtiers. The 'no authority over the day of death' passage echoes Psalm 49:7-9 ('no one can redeem the life of another'). The moral inversion observation connects to the broader ancient Near Eastern theodicy tradition, especially the Babylonian Theodicy and Ludlul bel nemeqi ('I Will Praise the Lord of Wisdom'). The enjoyment passage (v. 15) is the fifth of seven.*

¹Who is like the wise person? Who knows the interpretation of a matter? A person's wisdom makes his face shine, and the hardness of his face is transformed. ²I say: obey the king's command, especially because of the oath sworn before God. ³Do not rush from his presence, and do not persist in a bad cause, for he does whatever he pleases. ⁴Since a king's word has authority, who can say to him, 'What are you doing?' ⁵The one who keeps the command will encounter no harm, and the wise heart knows the right time and the right procedure. ⁶For there is a time and a procedure for every matter, though the burden of trouble weighs heavily on a person. ⁷Since no one knows what will happen, who can tell him when it will occur? ⁸No one has power over the wind to contain the wind, and no one has authority over the day of death. There is no discharge in that war, and wickedness will not save those who practice it. ⁹All this I have seen while applying my mind to everything done under the sun — a time when one person has power over another to his harm. ¹⁰I also saw the wicked buried — they used to go in and out of the holy place and were praised in the very city where they had acted wickedly. This too is vapor. ¹¹Because the sentence against an evil deed is not carried out swiftly, the hearts of human beings are emboldened to do wrong. ¹²Though a sinner does wrong a hundred times and still lives long, yet I also know that it will go well with those who fear God, who are reverent before him. ¹³But it will not go well with the wicked, and he will not prolong his days, which pass like a shadow, because he does not fear God. ¹⁴There is a vapor that occurs on earth: there are righteous people who receive what the wicked deserve, and there are wicked people who receive what the righteous deserve. I said that this too is vapor. ¹⁵So I commend joy, because there is nothing better for a person under the sun than to eat and drink and be glad. This will accompany him in his toil through the days of his life that God gives him under the sun. ¹⁶When I set my mind to know wisdom and to observe the business that is done on earth — for neither day nor night do one's eyes see sleep — ¹⁷I saw all that God has done: no one can discover what is happening under the sun. However much a person toils to seek it out, he will not find it. Even if the wise person claims to know, he cannot find it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *peshet* ('interpretation, solution') is a Persian/Aramaic loanword found elsewhere only in Daniel. Its presence here is another marker of the book's late date. Wisdom's effect on the face is both metaphorical and observable: understanding transforms a hard expression (*oz panav*, 'strength/hardness of his face') into one of illumination.
2. The phrase *shevua' Elohim* ('the oath of God') likely refers to a loyalty oath sworn by subjects to the king. Qohelet's counsel is not blind obedience but recognizes that oath-breaking before God has consequences (see 5:3-5). The political context is a court where disobedience can be fatal.
3. Two pieces of court survival advice: do not leave the king's presence in haste (it signals guilt or disloyalty), and do not stubbornly pursue a matter that displeases him. The reason — *kol asher yachpots ya'aseh* ('he does whatever he desires') — is a statement of raw power, not endorsement.
4. The word *shilton* ('authority, power, dominion') is another Aramaic loanword. The rhetorical question ('who can say to him?') echoes the language used of God in Job 9:12 and Daniel 4:35 — Qohelet draws a parallel between royal and divine power, both of which operate beyond human challenge.
5. The *mitsvah* ('command') here is the king's command, not God's commandments. The wise courtier knows *et u-mishpat* ('time and procedure') — when to act and how to act. This is practical court wisdom: timing is everything.
6. The *et u-mishpat* ('time and procedure') from the previous verse is now universalized: every matter has its appropriate time and method. But the *ki ra'at ha-adam rabbah alav* ('for the trouble of the person is great upon him') introduces a heavy qualifier — knowing the right time does not remove the weight of human suffering.
7. The double uncertainty: what (*mah she-yihyeh*) and when (*ka-asher yihyeh*). Even the wise courtier who knows 'time and procedure' cannot know the future. Human ignorance of coming events is one of Qohelet's most persistent themes.
8. The fourfold 'no one / nothing' structure (*ein...ein...ein...lo*) creates a wall of negation. Every avenue of escape — control, authority, military discharge, moral cunning — is closed. Death is the absolute limit of human power.
9. The phrase *shalat ha-adam be-adam le-ra lo* ('one person rules over another to his harm') is ambiguous: 'to his harm' could refer to the ruler or the ruled. Both readings work — the exercise of domination damages the oppressor as well as the oppressed.
10. The textual difficulties in this verse are considerable (the Hebrew is unclear in several places), but the general sense is preserved: wicked people who frequented the temple (*maqom qadosh*, 'holy place') received honorable burial and were praised despite their wickedness. The injustice of public reputation contradicting actual character is the *hevel* being observed.
11. The word *pitgam* ('sentence, decree, edict') is a Persian loanword (from Old Persian *patigama*). The psychological observation is acute: delayed punishment encourages continued evil. When consequences are not immediate, people conclude they are absent. The verb *male* ('is filled') suggests the heart fills up with boldness to do evil, as though moral restraint drains away in the absence of enforcement.

12. Qohelet affirms the traditional view: *yihyeh tov le-yir'e ha-Elohim* ('it will be good for those who fear God'). Whether this is his own conviction or a quotation of conventional wisdom that he will immediately qualify (see v. 14) is debated. The *gam yodea ani* ('I also know') may be concessive — 'I know this is supposed to be true.'
13. The conventional retribution formula continues: the *rasha* ('wicked person') will not prosper, and his days are *ka-tsel* ('like a shadow') — insubstantial and fleeting. The absence of fear of God (*einennu yare mi-lifne Elohim*) is identified as the cause. This verse represents the theological ideal that the next verse will challenge.
14. The observed reality contradicts verses 12-13. Righteous people (*tsaddiqim*) receive *ke-ma'aseh ha-resha'im* ('according to the deeds of the wicked') — they suffer as though they were evil. Wicked people (*resha'im*) receive *ke-ma'aseh ha-tsaddiqim* ('according to the deeds of the righteous') — they prosper as though they were good. The moral order is inverted. Qohelet does not resolve this contradiction; he labels it hevel.
15. The fifth enjoyment passage arrives immediately after the starkest observation of moral disorder. The logic is: since the moral order cannot be relied upon to reward the righteous, present joy should be received whenever it appears. The verb *yilvenu* ('will accompany him') makes joy a traveling companion through the labor of life — not a destination but a presence along the way.
16. The autobiographical report: Qohelet's investigation was so consuming that it cost him sleep (*shenah be-einav einennu ro'eh*, 'sleep with his eyes he does not see'). The sleeplessness echoes the rich man's insomnia in 5:11, but here it is driven by intellectual inquiry rather than financial anxiety.
17. The chapter's conclusion is a threefold declaration of human epistemic failure: the person who labors to understand (*ya'amol le-vaqqesh*) will not find it (*lo yimtsa*); and even the wise person (*he-chakham*) who claims to know (*yomar la-da'at*) cannot find it (*lo yukhal limtsa*). The repetition of *lo yimtsa* ('will not find') three times in various forms makes the point unescapable. Wisdom's limit is God's work.

9

Summary: *Chapter 9 delivers Qohelet's most sustained meditation on death as the great equalizer. The righteous and the wicked, the clean and the unclean, the one who sacrifices and the one who does not — all share the same fate. This is the ultimate evil under the sun: one destiny for everyone. From this grim foundation, Qohelet launches the most passionate enjoyment passage in the book (vv. 7-10): go, eat your bread with joy, drink your wine with a glad heart, enjoy life with the woman you love, and work with all your strength — because the grave awaits, and there is no work, planning, knowledge, or wisdom there. The chapter then turns to the theme of time and chance, arguing that the race does not always go to the swift, and closes with a parable about a poor wise man who saved a city but was forgotten.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The enjoyment passage in verses 7-10 is the emotional peak of the entire book. After eleven chapters of relentless analysis, Qohelet speaks with urgent imperative verbs: *lekh* ('go!'), *ekhol* ('eat!'), *shete* ('drink!'), *re'eh chayyim* ('see/enjoy life!'). The switch from observational third person to commanding second person is electrifying. These are not suggestions — they are orders. And the ground for the orders is not optimism but mortality: 'there is no work or planning or knowledge or wisdom in the grave, where you are going' (v. 10). The call to joy is underwritten by the certainty of death. This is not *carpe diem* in the shallow sense; it is the urgent voice of someone who has stared into the void and returned with one instruction: receive what is given, now, fully.*

Translation Friction: *The statement 'the dead know nothing' (v. 5) and 'there is no work or planning or knowledge or wisdom in the grave' (v. 10) are among the most debated in the Hebrew Bible regarding the afterlife. Qohelet appears to deny any meaningful post-mortem existence. Whether this reflects Qohelet's personal conviction, the limits of his 'under the sun' methodology (which by definition cannot examine what lies beyond death), or a rhetorical device to motivate present engagement is vigorously debated. We render the text as written without importing later theological developments.*

Connections: *The enjoyment passage closely parallels the advice of Siduri to Gilgamesh in the Old Babylonian version of the Epic of Gilgamesh: 'Let your belly be full, day and night make merry, let your garments be sparkling fresh, bathe in water, gaze upon the child who holds your hand, let a wife delight in your embrace.' Whether Qohelet knew this tradition directly or both drew from a common ancient Near Eastern topos is uncertain. The 'time and chance' section (v. 11) connects to 3:1-8 but adds the element of randomness (*pega*, 'chance, accident') that the earlier poem did not include. The parable of the poor wise man (vv. 13-18) connects to 4:13-16.*

¹I took all this to heart and examined it all: the righteous and the wise and their deeds are in God's hand. Whether it will be love or hatred, no one knows. Everything lies before them. ²Everything is the same for everyone: one fate for the righteous and the wicked, for the good and the clean and the unclean, for the one who sacrifices and the one who does not sacrifice. As it is for the good person, so for the sinner; for the one who swears oaths as for the one who fears to swear. ³This is the evil in everything done under the sun: there is one fate for everyone, and the hearts of human beings are full of evil, and madness fills their hearts during their lives — and after that, they go to the dead. ⁴For whoever is among the living has hope. A living dog is better than a dead lion. ⁵For the living know that they will die, but the dead know nothing. They have no further reward, for even the memory of them is forgotten. ⁶Their love, their hatred, and their passion have already perished. They have no further share, ever, in anything done under the sun. ⁷Go, eat your bread with joy and drink your wine with a glad heart, for God has already approved what you do.

⁸Let your garments always be white,
and let oil never be lacking on your head.

⁹Enjoy life with the woman you love through all the days of your vaporous life that God has given you under the sun — all your vaporous days. For this is your portion in life and in the toil at which you work under the sun. ¹⁰Whatever your hand finds to do, do it with all your strength, for there is no work, no planning, no knowledge, and no wisdom in the grave where you are going. ¹¹Again I saw under the sun that the race does not belong to the swift, nor the battle to the strong, nor bread to the wise, nor wealth to the intelligent, nor favor to the knowledgeable — for time and chance overtake them all. ¹²For a person does not know his time: like fish caught in a cruel net, like birds trapped in a snare, so human beings are trapped by a time of disaster when it falls upon them suddenly. ¹³I also observed this example of wisdom under the sun, and it struck me as significant: ¹⁴There was a small city with few people in it. A great king came against it, besieged it, and built massive siege works against it. ¹⁵But there was found in it a poor, wise man, and he saved the city by his wisdom. Yet no one remembered that poor man. ¹⁶So I said, 'Wisdom is better than strength.' Yet the wisdom of the poor is despised, and his words are not heard. ¹⁷The quiet words of the wise are heard above the shouting of a ruler among fools. ¹⁸Wisdom is better than weapons of war, but one person who misses the mark can destroy much good.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *be-yad ha-Elohim* ('in the hand of God') could be comforting or unsettling — it means the righteous have no more control over their fate than anyone else. God holds them, but they cannot predict whether what comes will be *ahavah* ('love') or *sin'ah* ('hatred'). The ambiguity is the point.
2. The list of moral and religious categories covers every conceivable distinction: righteous/wicked, good/clean/unclean, sacrificing/non-sacrificing, oath-taker/oath-fearer. Every pair shares *miqreh echad* ('one fate'). The comprehensiveness is deliberate — no moral or ritual distinction exempts anyone from the common destiny of death.
3. Qohelet identifies the shared fate of death as the *ra* ('evil, trouble') in the system. Its consequence is moral: knowing that everyone ends the same way, human hearts fill with *ra* ('evil') and *holelot* ('madness'). If no moral distinction matters in the end, the incentive to behave well weakens. The grim sequence is: evil hearts, madness during life, death after.
4. The proverb is darkly humorous. The dog (*kelev*) was the most despised animal in ancient Israel, and the lion (*aryeh*) the most noble. Yet a living dog outranks a dead lion — not because life is glorious but because the living still have *bittachon* ('hope, confidence, something to trust in'). Even despised existence outperforms noble death.
5. The living have one piece of knowledge (*she-yamutu*, 'that they will die'), and this awareness — however grim — is an advantage. The dead have nothing: *ein yod'im me'umah* ('they know nothing at all'), *ein od lahem sakhar* ('there is no further reward for them'), and *nishkach zikhram* ('their memory is forgotten'). This triple negation is Qohelet's starkest statement about death.
6. Three human drives — *ahavah* ('love'), *sin'ah* ('hatred'), *qin'ah* ('passion, jealousy, zeal') — all cease at death (*kevar avdah*, 'have already perished'). The word *cheleq* ('share, portion') returns: the dead have no portion *le-olam* ('forever') in anything under the sun. This is the ground from which the enjoyment passage launches.
7. The imperative verbs begin: *lekh* ('go!'), *ekhol* ('eat!'), *shete* ('drink!'). The phrase *ki kevar ratsah ha-Elohim et ma'asekha* ('for God has already approved your deeds') is either an assurance of divine favor or a liberation from anxious performance — God's approval precedes rather than follows your enjoyment. The 'already' (*kevar*) removes the condition: do not wait for permission; it has been given.

8. White garments (begadim levanim) signify festivity and celebration — these are not workday clothes but feast-day clothes. Oil (shemen) on the head is the mark of honored guests at banquets. Qohelet is saying: live every day as though you are at a feast. Do not dress for mourning; dress for joy.
9. The phrase re'eh chayyim ('see life, enjoy life, experience life') is the command to be fully present with the person you love. The repetition of kol yeme hevlekha ('all the days of your vapor') twice in the same verse underscores the urgency: the window is brief. Cheleq ('portion') returns as the word for what life actually offers — not permanent gain, but this: love, companionship, shared toil, shared days.
10. She'ol is the Hebrew underworld — not hell in the later Christian sense, but the shadowy realm of the dead where all go regardless of moral standing. Qohelet's description of it as a place of zero activity, planning, knowledge, and wisdom is consistent with other Hebrew Bible depictions (Psalm 6:5; 88:10-12; Isaiah 38:18). The passage is not making a theological statement about the afterlife but grounding the call to present action in the reality of death.
11. Five conventional expectations are denied: speed does not guarantee winning the race, strength the battle, wisdom bread, intelligence wealth, or knowledge favor. The reason is et va-fega ('time and chance'). The word pega ('chance, accident, occurrence') introduces randomness into a wisdom tradition that typically assumes ordered outcomes. Qohelet is not saying effort is useless but that it does not guarantee results.
12. The images of the netted fish and snared bird convey helplessness and surprise. The word pit'om ('suddenly') makes the point: disaster is not gradual but instantaneous. The phrase et ra'ah ('an evil time, a time of disaster') is the time of death or catastrophe that arrives without warning.
13. The introduction to the parable. The phrase gedolah hi elai ('it was great to me, it struck me as significant') signals that what follows is not just an anecdote but a case study of deep import.
14. The parable is told with fairy-tale economy: a small city (ir qetannah), few people (anashim bah me'at), and a great king (melekh gadol) with siege works (metsodim gedolim). The disproportion between attacker and defender sets up the surprise of verse 15.
15. The poor wise man (ish miskin chakham) delivers the city through wisdom — not military force. But the outcome is tragically predictable: ve-adam lo zakhar et ha-ish ha-miskin ha-hu ('and no one remembered that poor man'). Wisdom saves, and wisdom is forgotten. The parable encapsulates the entire book's tension: wisdom is genuinely valuable (it saved the city) and genuinely unrewarded (it earned no lasting recognition).
16. The 'better than' proverb (wisdom > strength) is immediately undercut: the poor man's wisdom is bezuyah ('despised, held in contempt') and his words einam nishma'im ('are not heard, are not listened to'). Wisdom's theoretical superiority does not translate into social recognition. The poor wise man wins the battle but loses the narrative.
17. A contrast in volume: the wise speak be-nachat ('in quiet, in tranquility'), while the ruler among fools za'aqat ('shouts, cries out'). True authority speaks softly; false authority compensates with volume. Whether this is an ideal or an observed reality is left ambiguous.
18. The chapter closes with a double-edged proverb. Wisdom outperforms military hardware (kele qerav, 'weapons of battle'). But a single choteh echad ('one person who misses the mark') can ye'abbed tovah harbeh ('destroy much good'). The asymmetry is the point: building wisdom takes long effort; destroying its fruits takes one fool.

10

Summary: Chapter 10 is a loose collection of proverbs on wisdom and folly, with particular attention to political life and the dangers of foolish leadership. Dead flies spoil fine perfume; a little folly outweighs wisdom. The fool's heart leads him astray, and his words multiply recklessly. Qohelet observes a world turned upside down — servants on horseback and princes walking on foot. He offers practical wisdom about the risks of work (the one who digs a pit may fall in, the one who breaks through a wall may be bitten by a snake), the advantage of skill, and the catastrophic danger of careless speech — especially about the king.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter reads most like conventional Proverbs-style wisdom, yet even here Qohelet's distinctive voice surfaces. The 'dead flies' proverb (v. 1) encapsulates a core theme: a small amount of folly can ruin a large investment in wisdom, just as a few dead insects ruin an entire batch of perfume. The disproportion between cause and effect is the point — the system is fragile. The political observations (vv. 5-7, 16-17, 20) reveal Qohelet's awareness of court intrigue and his concern with the disproportionate damage that foolish rulers inflict. The snake-in-the-wall proverb (v. 8) and the chapter's general tone of 'everything can go wrong' create an atmosphere of low-grade anxiety that characterizes life under conditions of uncertainty.

Translation Friction: The chapter's proverbial style makes it difficult to identify a coherent argument. Some scholars treat it as a miscellany of traditional sayings loosely organized by theme; others find a subtle progression from individual folly (vv. 1-3) to political folly (vv. 4-7) to occupational folly (vv. 8-11) to verbal folly (vv. 12-15) to national folly (vv. 16-20). The organization is looser than preceding chapters, and the connection to Qohelet's larger argument about hevel is less explicit. The chapter may represent a deliberate shift to

practical advice after the existential intensity of chapters 8-9.

Connections: The 'dead flies' proverb connects to the perfume/name wordplay of 7:1. The 'fool on the road' image (v. 3) echoes Proverbs 12:23; 13:16; 14:33. The political observations parallel Proverbs 30:21-23 (the earth trembles under a servant who becomes king). The 'do not curse the king even in your thoughts' warning (v. 20) anticipates the court wisdom of Daniel and Esther.

¹Dead flies make the perfumer's oil stink and ferment.
So a little folly outweighs wisdom and honor.

²The wise person's heart inclines to the right,
but the fool's heart to the left.

³Even on the road, when a fool walks along, his sense is lacking, and he announces to everyone that he is a fool. ⁴If the anger of a ruler rises against you, do not leave your post, for calmness can defuse great offenses. ⁵There is an evil I have seen under the sun — a kind of error that comes from those in power: ⁶Fools are placed in many high positions, while the capable sit in low ones. ⁷I have seen servants on horseback, and princes walking on foot like servants.

⁸The one who digs a pit may fall into it,
and the one who breaks through a wall may be bitten by a snake.

⁹The one who quarries stones may be injured by them,
and the one who splits logs may be endangered by them.

¹⁰If the iron tool is dull and its edge is not sharpened, then more force is needed. But wisdom brings success through skill. ¹¹If a snake bites before it is charmed, there is no advantage for the snake charmer.

¹²The words from a wise person's mouth are gracious,
but a fool's lips consume him.

¹³The beginning of his speech is foolishness, and the end of his talk is wicked madness. ¹⁴The fool multiplies words, though no one knows what will happen — and who can tell him what will come after? ¹⁵The toil of fools wears them out — they do not even know the way to town.

¹⁶Woe to you, O land, whose king is a youth,
and whose officials feast in the morning!

¹⁷Happy are you, O land, whose king is of noble birth,
and whose officials eat at the proper time — for strength and not for drunkenness!

¹⁸Through laziness the roof sags,
and through idle hands the house leaks.

¹⁹A feast is prepared for laughter, wine makes life merry, and money meets every need.

²⁰Do not curse the king even in your thoughts,
and do not curse the wealthy in your bedroom,
for a bird of the sky may carry your voice,
and a winged creature may report what you said.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The proverb's logic: it takes many ingredients and much skill to produce fine perfume (shemen roqeach, 'oil of the perfumer'), but a few dead flies (zevuv mavet, literally 'flies of death') ruin the entire batch. The application: sikhlut me'at ('a little folly') can destroy the accumulated capital of wisdom and honor. The disproportion between the small cause and the large effect is the warning.

2. Right (yamin) and left (semol) carry symbolic weight: right is the side of favor, strength, and skill; left is the side of weakness and misfortune. The proverb is about instinctive direction — the wise and the fool gravitate toward opposite poles without deliberation.
3. The fool's foolishness is self-advertising. The phrase libbo chaser ('his heart lacks') means his mind is deficient in every context — not just in formal settings but ba-derekh ('on the road'), in ordinary life. The verb amar ('he says') may mean he literally announces foolish things or, more likely, his behavior proclaims his foolishness to all observers.
4. Court survival advice. When the moshel ('ruler, authority') becomes angry (ruach...ta'aleh, 'his spirit rises'), the courtier should not flee (al tannach meqomekha, 'do not abandon your place'). Instead, marpe ('calmness, gentleness, healing') can yaniach ('set at rest, pacify') even chatayim gedolim ('great offenses'). Composure under pressure is more effective than panic.
5. The word shegagah ('error, inadvertent mistake') is used for unintentional sin in Leviticus 4-5 and Numbers 15. Here it describes a ruler's blunder — perhaps an appointment made carelessly. The consequences of a ruler's 'error' are public and systemic.
6. The sekhel ('fool, folly') occupies ba-meromim rabbim ('in many high places'), while the ashirim ('wealthy, capable') sit ba-shefel ('in the low place'). The inversion of the social order — incompetence elevated, competence demoted — is the 'error' identified in verse 5.
7. The image is vivid: horses signify status, and walking signifies servitude. The inversion — servants riding, princes walking — summarizes the political disorder of verses 5-6 in a single snapshot.
8. Two proverbs about the hidden dangers of work. The pit-digger risks falling in; the wall-breaker disturbs a snake nesting in the stones. Both illustrate the unpredictability of consequences — even productive labor carries hidden risks. The proverbs may also carry moral overtones: the one who sets a trap may be caught in it.
9. The occupational hazard proverbs continue: quarrying and woodcutting are both dangerous trades. The verbs ye'atsev ('may be pained, injured') and yissaken ('may be endangered') acknowledge that productive work carries inherent risk. No occupation is safe.
10. A proverb about preparation versus brute force. A dull blade (qegah ha-barzel) requires more strength (chayalim yegabber) to use. But yitron hakhsher chokmah ('the advantage of skill is wisdom') — wisdom sharpens the approach so that less force is needed. This is one of the few places where yitron ('advantage') is used positively.
11. The proverb connects to verse 8 (the snake in the wall) and applies to timing: if the nachash ('snake') bites be-lo lachash ('before the incantation, without charming'), the ba'al ha-lashon ('master of the tongue,' i.e., the snake charmer) has no advantage. Skill that comes too late is no skill at all. The proverb may also apply to speech: the person with eloquence (ba'al ha-lashon) who speaks too late gains nothing.
12. The contrast: the wise person's words are chen ('grace, favor'), while the fool's lips tevalle'ennu ('swallow him, consume him'). The fool's speech is self-destructive — his own words devour him.
13. The fool's speech deteriorates: it begins as sikhlut ('foolishness') and ends as holelut ra'ah ('wicked madness'). Folly does not stay at the same level — it escalates.
14. The fool's verbosity contrasts with his ignorance: he yarbeh devarim ('multiplies words') while knowing nothing about the future. The juxtaposition is ironic — the person who talks most knows least.
15. The image is comically sharp: the fool works himself to exhaustion (teyagge'ennu, 'wearies him') because he cannot find the way to the city — presumably the most basic navigational task. Incompetence makes even simple tasks exhausting.
16. The na'ar ('youth, boy, servant') king lacks maturity and experience. The officials who feast ba-boqer ('in the morning') are indulging when they should be governing. The woe (i lakh, 'alas for you') is addressed to the entire erets ('land, nation'), which suffers from its leaders' immaturity and self-indulgence.
17. The contrast: ashreikh ('happy are you, fortunate are you') for the land whose king is ben chorim ('a son of free-born nobles') and whose officials eat ba-et ('at the proper time') for gevurah ('strength, sustenance') and not for sheti ('drinking, drunkenness'). Discipline in leadership translates to national well-being.
18. The proverb uses architectural decay as a metaphor for national decline under lazy leadership. The meqareh ('roofing, rafters') sinks (yimmakh), and the bayit ('house') leaks (yidlof). Neglect produces slow, structural collapse.
19. A sardonic observation: lechem ('bread, a feast') is made for laughter, yayin ('wine') for joy, and kesef ('money') ya'aneh et ha-kol ('answers everything'). Whether this is Qohelet's own view or his wry description of the officials' philosophy from verses 16-19 is debated. The statement about money is ambiguous — it could be cynical or simply realistic.
20. The chapter closes with a warning about the dangerous reach of speech. Even in maddaakha ('your mind, your knowledge, your private thoughts') and chadre mishkavekha ('the rooms of your bed, your most private space'), words are not safe. The proverbial 'a little bird told me' (of ha-shamayim yolik et ha-qol, 'a bird of the heavens will carry the voice') captures the reality that in a court culture, nothing stays secret. Surveillance is everywhere.

11

Summary: *Chapter 11 marks the book's turn from analysis to exhortation. Qohelet moves from describing the world's vapor to prescribing how to live within it. Cast your bread upon the waters. Diversify your investments. Do not wait for perfect conditions to act. You cannot predict which ventures will succeed, any more than you can understand how a child forms in the womb. The chapter builds to the seventh and final enjoyment passage (vv. 7-10): light is sweet, the living should rejoice in all their years, the young person should follow his heart and the sight of his eyes — but remember that God will bring all of it to account. Youth itself is vapor.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The shift in tone from chapters 1-10 to chapter 11 is dramatic. Where the earlier chapters observed and analyzed, chapter 11 commands: shalach ('send out!'), ten ('give!'), zera ('sow!'), simchah ('rejoice!'), halokh ('walk!'). Qohelet has finished his investigation and is now issuing his final instructions. The counsel to 'cast your bread upon the waters' (v. 1) has been interpreted as commercial advice (invest in overseas trade), charitable counsel (give generously, and it will return to you), or existential strategy (release your grip on outcomes). All three readings are valid and may be simultaneously intended. The final enjoyment passage (vv. 7-10) is addressed specifically to the young — the bachur ('young man') — and carries a unique urgency: youth passes quickly, and the body's decline is coming (as chapter 12 will make devastatingly clear).*

Translation Friction: *Verse 9 contains a startling statement: 'follow your heart and the sight of your eyes.' This directly contradicts Numbers 15:39, which warns against following your heart and eyes. Qohelet either deliberately inverts the Torah command or operates in a different register — his 'follow your heart' is qualified by 'know that for all these things God will bring you to judgment.' The freedom is genuine, but so is the accountability. This tension between liberty and judgment is left unresolved and is, perhaps, the book's final wisdom.*

Connections: *The 'cast your bread upon the waters' image has parallels in Egyptian wisdom literature (the Instruction of Ankhsheshonq: 'Do a good deed and throw it in the water'). The 'you do not know which will succeed' counsel connects to 3:11 ('no one can discover what God has done') and 9:11 ('time and chance overtake them all'). The rejoicing-of-youth passage leads directly into the aging poem of 12:1-7 — the two sections form a single unit moving from vigor to decline.*

¹Send your bread out upon the waters,
for after many days you will find it again.

²Divide your portion among seven, or even eight,
for you do not know what disaster may strike the land.

³When the clouds are full, they pour rain on the earth.
If a tree falls to the south or to the north,
wherever the tree falls, there it will lie.

⁴The one who watches the wind will never sow,
and the one who watches the clouds will never reap.

⁵Just as you do not know the path of the wind, or how bones form in the womb of a pregnant woman, so you cannot know the work of God who makes everything. ⁶Sow your seed in the morning, and do not let your hand rest in the evening, for you do not know which will succeed — this one or that one — or whether both will turn out equally well.

⁷Light is sweet,
and it is good for the eyes to see the sun.

⁸Even if a person lives many years, let him rejoice in all of them, but let him remember the days of darkness, for they will be many. Everything that comes is vapor.

⁹Rejoice, young person, in your youth!

Let your heart bring you joy in the days of your vigor.

Follow the ways of your heart

and the sight of your eyes —

but know that for all these things God will bring you to account.

¹⁰Remove vexation from your heart

and banish pain from your body,

for youth and the dawn of life are vapor.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *lechem* ('bread') may be literal (grain shipped by sea) or metaphorical (resources, effort, generosity). The advice fits Qohelet's worldview: since you cannot predict outcomes (9:11) or control God's timing (3:1-8), the best strategy is broad, generous release of effort across many ventures.
2. The numerical progression 'seven...even eight' is a standard Hebrew poetic device (compare Amos 1:3, 'for three transgressions...for four'). The counsel is diversification: spread your resources across many ventures because you cannot predict what *ra'ah* ('disaster, evil, trouble') may come. This is not pessimism but prudent risk management in an uncertain world.
3. Two observations about natural inevitability. Full clouds must rain — they have no choice. A fallen tree lies wherever it fell — it cannot be unfallen. The point: some things are beyond human control. Once certain conditions are met, outcomes follow mechanically. Do not waste time wishing clouds would not rain or fallen trees would rise.
4. A warning against paralysis by analysis. The farmer who waits for perfect wind conditions (*shomer ruach*) will never plant, and the one who watches for perfect weather (*ro'eh be-avim*) will never harvest. Since conditions are never ideal and the future is unpredictable, the only option is to act despite uncertainty. This is Qohelet's antidote to the paralysis that his own philosophy might induce.
5. Two mysteries stand for all mysteries: the *derekh ha-ruach* ('the path of the wind/spirit') and the formation of *atsamin* ('bones') *be-veten ha-mele'ah* ('in the full/pregnant womb'). Both are real processes that proceed invisibly and beyond human comprehension. From these Qohelet draws the analogy: *ma'aseh ha-Elohim* ('the work of God') is equally unknowable. The word *ruach* again carries its double meaning — 'wind' and 'spirit/breath' — and the ambiguity is productive: you know neither the wind's path nor the life-breath's origin.
6. The practical application of verses 1-5: since the future is unpredictable, sow at both ends of the day. The word *yikshar* ('will succeed, will prosper') from the root *kasher* ('to be right, to succeed') is the basis of the modern word 'kosher.' The ignorance about which effort will bear fruit is liberating, not paralyzing: try everything, because you cannot know in advance what will work.
7. The final enjoyment passage begins with a simple sensory affirmation: light (or) is *matok* ('sweet'), and seeing the sun (*shemesh*) is *tov* ('good'). After all the analysis, Qohelet returns to the most basic human experience — the pleasure of light. This is not philosophical argument but bodily testimony.
8. The counsel to rejoice is paired with the command to remember: *yeme ha-choshekh* ('the days of darkness') — whether this means old age, death, or the grave — will be many (*harbeh*). Joy and mortality awareness are not contradictory but complementary. The final clause, *kol she-ba havel* ('everything that comes is vapor'), applies the thesis to the future itself: what is ahead is as vaporous as what is behind.
9. The address shifts to the *bachur* ('young man, young person'). The imperatives are exuberant: *simchah* ('rejoice!'), *yitivkha libbekha* ('let your heart do you good!'), *halekh be-darkhe libbekha* ('walk in the ways of your heart!'). The phrase *u-ve-mar'e einekha* ('and in the sight of your eyes') appears to contradict Numbers 15:39 ('do not follow after your heart and your eyes'). Qohelet's context, however, adds the qualifier: *da ki al kol elleh yevi'akha ha-Elohim ba-mishpat* ('know that for all these things God will bring you into judgment'). Freedom and accountability coexist. Enjoy fully, but not recklessly.
10. Two commands: remove *ka'as* ('vexation, anger, grief') from the heart, and remove *ra'ah* ('evil, pain, trouble') from the flesh. Qohelet addresses the whole person — inner and outer. The closing declaration, *ki ha-yaldut ve-ha-shacharut havel* ('for youth and the dawn of life are vapor'), is bittersweet. The word *shacharut* ('dawn, dark hair, the time of dark/youthful hair') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. Youth is precious precisely because it is vapor — it is already passing as you experience it. This sets up the aging poem of chapter 12.

12

Summary: *The final chapter of Ecclesiastes contains three distinct sections. First, the great aging allegory (vv. 1-7): a sustained poetic description of the body's decline, rendered through metaphors of a darkening sky, trembling guards, grinding women who cease, and a house falling into disrepair, climaxing with the golden bowl shattered and the spirit returning to the God who gave it. Second, the return of the thesis (v. 8): 'Vapor of vapors, says Qohelet — everything is vapor.' Third, the epilogue (vv. 9-14), written by an editor who commends Qohelet's work but adds the book's final word: fear God and keep his commandments, for God will bring every deed into judgment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The aging allegory in verses 1-7 is the most sustained and elaborate metaphorical poem in the Hebrew Bible's wisdom literature. Every image corresponds to an aspect of bodily decline: the 'guards of the house' are the arms, the 'strong men' are the legs, the 'grinding women' are the teeth, the 'windows' are the eyes. The poem moves from external observation (the darkening sky, the trembling house) to internal collapse (the silver cord snapped, the golden bowl shattered) and finally to cosmic dissolution (the dust returns to the earth, the spirit returns to God). The progression from 11:9's 'rejoice, young person!' to 12:1's 'remember your Creator' to 12:7's 'the dust returns to the earth' is one of the most powerful emotional arcs in ancient literature — a single, unbroken movement from joy to memory to decay to death to God. The epilogue (vv. 9-14) shifts to third person and appears to be a student or editor's addition. It frames the entire book as instruction and adds the theological anchor that Qohelet himself never quite states: fear God and keep his commandments, for this is the whole duty of every person.*

Translation Friction: *The aging allegory's metaphors are widely agreed upon in their general referents but debated in specifics. Is the 'almond tree' (v. 5) the white-haired head, or the blossoming of spring that the old person cannot enjoy? Is the 'grasshopper' that 'drags itself along' a symbol of the old person's gait, or a reference to the loss of sexual desire (since chagav, 'grasshopper/locust,' was associated with fertility in some ancient traditions)? The epilogue's theological conservatism (v. 13, 'fear God and keep his commandments') has been read as either a faithful summary of Qohelet's deepest conviction or a corrective addendum by an orthodox editor who wanted to domesticate the book's radical skepticism. The tension between Qohelet's restless questioning and the epilogue's settled piety is real and may be deliberate — the book ends with both voices still audible.*

Connections: *The aging allegory's return to dust echoes Genesis 3:19 ('dust you are and to dust you will return') and 3:20. The spirit returning to God echoes Genesis 2:7 (God breathing life into the human) and reverses it. The epilogue's 'fear God and keep his commandments' echoes Deuteronomy 10:12-13 and the book's own internal counsel (5:6; 7:18; 8:12). The inclusio formed by 1:2 ('vapor of vapors') and 12:8 ('vapor of vapors') frames the entire book between identical thesis statements. The 'making of many books' observation (v. 12) is one of the oldest meta-literary comments in existence.*

¹Remember your Creator in the days of your youth,
before the days of trouble come
and the years arrive of which you will say,
'I find no pleasure in them' —

²Before the sun and the light
and the moon and the stars grow dark,
and the clouds return after the rain —

³On the day when the guards of the house tremble,
and the strong men stoop,
and the women who grind cease because they are few,
and those who look through the windows grow dim —

⁴When the doors to the street are shut
and the sound of the grinding fades,
when one rises at the sound of a bird
and all the daughters of song grow faint —

⁵When they are afraid of heights
and terrors lurk in the road,
and the almond tree blossoms white,
and the grasshopper drags itself along,
and the caper berry loses its power —
for a person is going to his eternal home,
and the mourners circle the streets —

⁶Before the silver cord is snapped
and the golden bowl is shattered,
before the jar is broken at the spring
and the wheel is crushed at the cistern —

⁷Then the dust returns to the earth as it was,
and the spirit returns to God who gave it.

⁸Vapor of vapors, says Qohelet. Everything is vapor. ⁹In addition to being wise, Qohelet also taught the people knowledge. He listened, investigated, and arranged many proverbs. ¹⁰Qohelet sought to find the right words, and what was written was upright — words of truth. ¹¹The words of the wise are like goads, and like firmly embedded nails are the collected sayings. They are given by one Shepherd. ¹²Beyond these, my son, be warned: there is no end to the making of many books, and much study is a weariness of the body. ¹³The end of the matter, when all has been heard: Fear God and keep his commandments, for this is the whole duty of every person. ¹⁴For God will bring every deed into judgment, including every hidden thing, whether good or evil.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Some scholars read bore'ekha ('your Creator') as a wordplay on be'erekha ('your well/cistern,' a metaphor for wife in Proverbs 5:15-18) or borekha ('your pit/grave'). The Masoretic text's vowels clearly indicate 'your Creator,' and the context — remembering God before it is too late — supports this reading. The aging allegory now begins.
2. The cosmic imagery: sun, light, moon, and stars all darken. The phrase ve-shavu he-avim achar ha-geshem ('the clouds return after the rain') describes a sky that never clears — storm after storm. Metaphorically, this is the dimming of eyesight and the unrelieved succession of ailments in old age. What was once a cycle of rain-then-clearing becomes permanent overcast.
3. The house allegory: shomre ha-bayit ('the guards of the house') are the arms and hands, which tremble with age. Anshe ha-chayil ('the strong men') are the legs, which bend and stoop (hit'avvetu, 'become twisted, bent'). Ha-tochanot ('the grinding women') are the teeth, which cease functioning ki mi'etu ('because they are few' — teeth are lost). Ha-ro'ot ba-arubot ('those who look through the windows') are the eyes, which grow dark (chashekhu). Every line maps to a body part in decline.
4. The delatayim ('double doors') that shut may be the lips or ears, increasingly closed to the outside world. The qol ha-tachanah ('sound of grinding') fading reflects the diminished ability to eat (fewer teeth, softer food). Rising at qol ha-tsippor ('the voice of a bird') suggests the light, broken sleep of the elderly — any small sound wakes them. Benot ha-shir ('the daughters of song') growing faint describes either hearing loss (music becomes distant) or voice loss (the ability to sing weakens).
5. The almond tree (shaqed) pun: shaqed also sounds like shoqed ('the watching/wakeful one'), an association used in Jeremiah 1:11-12. Here the white blossoms signify gray/white hair. The grasshopper's burdened movement is a striking image of the body that was once light and agile. The caper berry (aviyonah) is known from rabbinic literature as an appetite stimulant; its failure marks the loss of desire itself.
6. The imagery shifts from metaphorical decline (vv. 2-5) to catastrophic collapse. The silver cord and golden bowl are objects of great value suddenly destroyed. The jar and wheel are functional tools suddenly useless. Together they depict death not as a gradual fading but as a series of breakages — snap, shatter, crack, crush.

7. The word ruach here almost certainly means 'breath' or 'life-spirit' rather than 'soul' in the later philosophical sense. Qohelet has questioned whether the human ruach ascends (3:21); here, at the poem's climax, he affirms it — or at least the editor allows this affirmation to stand as the poem's resolution. The God who gave the breath receives it back. This is not escape from vapor but return to the source.
8. The inclusio is complete. The book began with hevel havalim (1:2) and ends with hevel havalim. The thesis is unchanged: ha-kol havel ('everything is vapor'). Between these two bookends, Qohelet has tested wisdom, pleasure, wealth, achievement, justice, and mortality — and found all of them subject to the same verdict. The frame editor (ha-qohelet with the definite article) speaks here, returning the book to the third-person perspective of the superscription.
9. The epilogue begins. A new voice — a student, disciple, or editor — speaks about Qohelet in third person. Three activities are attributed to him: izzen ('he weighed, he listened carefully'), chiqqer ('he investigated, he searched out'), and tiqqen ('he arranged, he set in order') meshalim harbeh ('many proverbs'). The portrait is of a scholar-teacher who did not merely think but organized and transmitted his findings.
10. The editor commends both the form and content of Qohelet's writing. Divre chefets ('words of delight, pleasing words, the right words') refers to literary quality. Yosher ('uprightness, straightforwardness') refers to intellectual honesty. Divre emet ('words of truth') is the ultimate commendation: what Qohelet wrote is true, however uncomfortable.
11. Two images for wisdom's words: dorbenot ('goads,' the sharp sticks used to drive oxen) — they prod and sting, moving the hearer forward. Masmerot netu'im ('embedded nails, firmly planted nails') — they hold things together permanently. The ba'ale asuppot ('masters of collections' or 'collectors') may refer to wisdom teachers or to the collected sayings themselves. The phrase nitenu me-ro'eh echad ('they are given from one Shepherd') attributes all wisdom ultimately to God — the one Shepherd is the divine source.
12. The editor addresses beni ('my son') — the standard wisdom teacher's address to a student (Proverbs 1:8; 2:1; 3:1). The observation that asot sefarim harbeh ein qets ('making many books has no end') is both practical and meta-textual: even this book, which claims everything is vapor, adds to the infinite pile of books. The phrase lahag harbeh yegi'at basar ('much study is weariness of the flesh') echoes 1:18 ('with much wisdom comes much grief') but in bodily terms — the flesh itself grows tired from the effort of study.
13. The word mitzvot ('commandments') is general — it does not specify which commandments, leaving the scope open to the entire divine instruction. The phrase kol ha-adam ('the whole of the human, every person') is uniquely compact. In context, it functions as both 'this is the totality of human obligation' and 'this applies to every human being.' The epilogue provides the theological anchor that Qohelet's restless inquiry needed but could not, on its own terms, produce.
14. The book's final word is mishpat ('judgment'). God will judge kol ma'aseh ('every deed') — not just public acts but kol ne'lam ('every hidden thing'). The scope is total: im tov ve-im ra ('whether good or evil'). This is the theological counterweight to the vapor verdict: if everything is vapor, does anything matter? Yes — because God judges. The hidden things (ne'lam, from the root alam, 'to conceal, to hide') are specifically included, which means that even what escapes human notice does not escape divine evaluation. The book that began by questioning whether anything has lasting significance ends by affirming that God takes account of everything. Between 'everything is vapor' and 'God will judge every deed' lies the entire tension of Ecclesiastes, which the book holds open to the end.

Song of Songs

Summary: *The Song opens with its superscription attributing the work to Solomon, then immediately plunges into the woman's voice — her longing for her lover's kisses, her self-conscious awareness of her dark skin, and her search for the shepherd she desires. The chapter establishes the erotic dialogue between the two lovers and introduces the Daughters of Jerusalem as a chorus. The man responds with lavish praise of her beauty, comparing her to a mare among Pharaoh's chariots.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The woman speaks first and speaks most. In a literary culture dominated by male voices, the Song of Songs gives the opening lines — and the majority of the poem — to a woman. She is not passive; she initiates, she seeks, she demands. Her first words are an imperative: 'Let him kiss me.' The self-description in verses 5-6 ('I am dark and beautiful') is a striking act of self-assertion against social judgment. She has been made to labor in vineyards under the sun, and her brothers are angry with her, yet she refuses shame. The imagery of 'my own vineyard' (verse 6) introduces the Song's central metaphor: the vineyard as the woman's body and sexuality, which she owns and gives freely.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription 'Song of Songs which is Solomon's' (shir ha-shirim asher li-Shelomoh) is ambiguous — the lamed prefix could mean 'by Solomon,' 'for Solomon,' 'about Solomon,' or 'in the style of Solomon.' Solomonic authorship is a literary attribution, not a historical claim most scholars would affirm. The Hebrew in verse 5 reads shechorah ani ve-navah, which can be rendered 'I am dark AND beautiful' rather than the KJV's 'black BUT comely' — the conjunction ve- does not inherently carry adversative force. The choice between 'and' and 'but' is theologically significant: one affirms her darkness as beautiful, the other implies it is a flaw to be excused.*

Connections: *The vineyard metaphor recurs throughout the Song (2:15, 7:13, 8:11-12) and connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the vineyard as beloved) and Hosea's marriage imagery. The mare-among-chariots comparison (1:9) draws on Egyptian royal imagery — Pharaoh's chariot horses were legendary. The nard, henna, and myrrh of 1:12-14 appear in the spice catalogues of Proverbs 7:17 and the trade lists of Ezekiel 27, grounding the Song's sensuality in the real luxury economy of the ancient Near East.*

¹The finest song,
which is Solomon's.

²Let him kiss me with the kisses of his mouth!
For your lovemaking is better than wine.

³Your anointing oils are fragrant,
your name is perfume poured out —
no wonder the young women love you!

⁴Draw me after you — let us run!
The king has brought me into his chambers.
We will rejoice and delight in you,
we will savor your lovemaking more than wine.
Rightly do they love you!

⁵I am dark and beautiful,
O Daughters of Jerusalem —
dark as the tents of Kedar,
lovely as the curtains of Solomon.

⁶Do not stare at me because I am dark,
because the sun has gazed on me.
My mother's sons were angry with me —
they made me keeper of the vineyards,
but my own vineyard I have not tended.

⁷Tell me, you whom my whole being loves —
where do you graze your flock?
Where do you rest them at noon?
Why should I be like a veiled woman
wandering among your companions' flocks?

⁸If you do not know, O most beautiful among women,
go out and follow the tracks of the flock,
and graze your young goats
beside the shepherds' tents.

⁹To a mare among Pharaoh's chariot stallions
I compare you, my darling.

¹⁰Your cheeks are lovely between the pendants,
your neck with strings of beads.

¹¹We will make you ornaments of gold
studded with silver.

¹²While the king reclines at his table,
my nard gives off its fragrance.

¹³A sachet of myrrh is my beloved to me —
he lodges between my breasts all night.

¹⁴A cluster of henna blossoms is my beloved to me,
in the vineyards of Ein Gedi.

¹⁵How beautiful you are, my darling!
How beautiful you are!
Your eyes are doves.

¹⁶How handsome you are, my beloved!
How delightful!
Our bed is lush and green.

¹⁷The beams of our house are cedars,
our rafters are cypresses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Shir ha-shirim is a Hebrew superlative construction — 'the greatest of songs,' 'the ultimate song,' comparable to 'King of Kings' or 'Holy of Holies.' The attribution to Solomon likely reflects the tradition associating him with 1,005 songs (1 Kings 4:32) rather than a strict authorial claim.
2. The woman's voice opens the poem with a bold imperative — she does not wait to be pursued but declares her desire. The shift from third person ('let him') to second person ('your') within the same verse is characteristic of the Song's fluid, emotionally charged speech.
2. Dodim (plural of dod) means 'lovmaking, caresses, acts of love' — not abstract love but physical expressions of intimacy. The comparison to wine is sensory: his touch intoxicates more than the finest vintage.
3. The wordplay between shemen ('oil, perfume') and shem ('name') is deliberate and untranslatable — his name and his scent are fused. Identity and sensory presence merge. The alamot ('young women, maidens') confirm the man's desirability: the woman's desire is not private delusion but publicly recognizable attraction.
4. The shift from singular ('draw me') to plural ('let us run, we will rejoice') likely represents the chorus of the Daughters of Jerusalem joining the woman's voice. The king's chambers (chadarav) suggest royal intimacy — the innermost, most private rooms of the palace.
4. Mesharim is rendered 'rightly' rather than KJV's 'the upright' — the word functions adverbially here, meaning 'with good reason, justly, fittingly.' Their love for him is well-founded.
5. The conjunction ve- is rendered 'and' rather than the KJV's 'but.' The Hebrew does not inherently contrast darkness with beauty — it can and does assert both simultaneously. Rendering it 'but' imports an assumption that dark skin is a deficiency to be overcome, which the Hebrew does not require.
5. Kedar refers to a nomadic Arabian tribe descended from Ishmael (Genesis 25:13) known for their black goat-hair tents. The comparison is striking: she is dark like desert tents AND beautiful like royal curtains. Both images coexist without tension.
6. Shecharochet is an intensified form — 'very dark, deeply tanned.' The sun has shezafatni ('scorched me, burned me'). Her darkness is the result of forced outdoor labor, not innate complexion — though the Song never treats this as diminishing her beauty.
6. The vineyard metaphor operates on two levels simultaneously. On the surface: her brothers forced her to tend their vineyards, leaving no time for her own. Below the surface: 'my own vineyard' (karmi shelli) is her body, her sexuality, her self — which she has not been free to cultivate or enjoy. This double meaning recurs at the Song's climax in 8:12.
7. She-ahavah nafshi ('whom my soul loves') is the Song's signature phrase for the woman's desire (repeated in 3:1-4). Nefesh here is not 'soul' in the Greek dualistic sense but the whole self — body, desire, identity, life-force.
7. The word ke-oteyah is debated: it may mean 'like one who veils herself' (suggesting a prostitute, cf. Genesis 38:14-15) or 'like one who wanders' (from a root meaning to go astray). Either reading carries anxiety — she does not want to be mistaken for someone she is not.
8. The speaker here is likely the chorus (Daughters of Jerusalem) or the man himself. The address ha-yafah ba-nashim ('the beautiful one among women') is a superlative — she is the most beautiful of all women. The advice is practical and teasing: follow the sheep tracks and you will find your shepherd.
9. The Hebrew is susati ('my mare') — singular and feminine, not the KJV's 'company of horses.' The image is provocative and deliberately erotic: a mare released among chariot stallions would drive them wild, breaking formation. He is saying: you have the power to undo all composure.

9. Ra'yati ('my darling, my companion, my friend') is the man's signature term for the woman — it implies both romantic love and genuine companionship.
10. Torim ('rows, strings') likely refers to ornamental pendants or earrings framing her face. Charuzim ('beads, strung ornaments') describes jewels strung on a cord around her neck. The man notices how adornment enhances her natural beauty — the jewels do not create beauty but frame what is already there.
11. The plural 'we will make' suggests the man and his companions, or a royal 'we.' The gold-and-silver adornment is a love-gift, crafted specifically for her. The combination of gold with silver nequddot ('studs, dots, speckles') describes fine metalwork — luxury jewelry as an expression of devotion.
12. Bi-mesibbo ('at his circle, at his reclining') describes the king reclining at a banquet — the posture of feasting. The woman's nard (an expensive aromatic imported from India) releases its scent in his presence. The image is sensual: her perfume fills the room, reaching him, drawing him. Her fragrance is her desire made atmospheric.
13. The imagery is simultaneously literal and metaphorical. Women wore small sachets of myrrh between their breasts as perfume. But she says her beloved IS the sachet — his presence against her body is the fragrance she carries. The verb yalin ('lodges, spends the night') is unmistakably sexual: he lies between her breasts through the night.
13. Dodi ('my beloved') is the woman's primary term for the man, appearing over 25 times in the Song. It is built on the same root as dodim ('lovemaking') in verse 2.
14. Kofer is henna (*Lawsonia inermis*), not the KJV's 'camphire.' Henna produces intensely fragrant flower clusters and was used to dye skin, hair, and nails. Ein Gedi is the lush oasis on the western shore of the Dead Sea — a tropical garden in the midst of desert. Her beloved is an oasis of fragrance and beauty in a barren world.
15. The double hinnakh yafah ('behold you are beautiful') is emphatic repetition — he cannot say it once and stop. Her eyes are yonim ('doves'), not 'dove-like' — they ARE doves. The metaphor is full identification. Doves suggest gentleness, purity, and soft iridescence.
16. She mirrors his praise back — hinnekha yafeh ('behold you are beautiful/handsome'). Then she turns to their shared space: arsenu ra'anana ('our bed is green/verdant'). The eres ('bed, couch') is outdoors — a bed of living vegetation, the earth itself as their marriage bed. The whole landscape participates in their love.
17. The lovers' 'house' is the forest itself — cedar trunks are their beams, cypress branches their rafters. The construction metaphor transforms wilderness into a bridal chamber. Arazim ('cedars') were the premier building material of the ancient Near East, associated with temples and palaces. Their love deserves a palace, and nature provides one.

2

Summary: Chapter 2 unfolds the spring of love. The woman identifies herself as a wildflower and the man as an apple tree offering shade and sweetness. She describes being brought to the banquet hall under the banner of love, then pleads for sustenance because she is 'sick with love.' The famous adjuration to the Daughters of Jerusalem ('Do not stir up love until it pleases') appears for the first time. The chapter's second half is the man's springtime invitation — 'Rise up, my darling, and come away' — one of the most celebrated love lyrics in world literature. The chapter closes with the woman's assertion of mutual possession and a brief scene of playful pursuit among the foxes and lilies.

What Makes This Remarkable: Verse 7 contains the Song's refrain — the adjuration by gazelles and wild does not to awaken love before its time. This oath is extraordinary: it swears not by God but by animals, specifically by the grace and wildness of the natural world. Love is treated as a force with its own timing, its own season, which cannot be forced or manufactured. The springtime passage (2:10-13) is the most sustained nature poetry in the Hebrew Bible, cataloguing the arrival of spring through blossoms, birdsong, fig ripening, and grapevine fragrance. The lovers' world is Eden restored — the garden before the fall, where desire and innocence coexist.

Translation Friction: The adjuration formula 'by the gazelles and by the does of the field' (bi-tseva'ot o be-aylot ha-sadeh) may contain a hidden divine name: tseva'ot echoes YHWH Tseva'ot ('LORD of Hosts'), and aylot echoes El ('God'). If so, the oath avoids speaking God's name directly while invoking it through animal doubles — a remarkable theological maneuver that keeps God present in the poem without making the poem 'about' God. The foxes in verse 15 ('Catch us the foxes, the little foxes') have generated endless allegorical interpretation, but the plain sense is likely a love-game: small threats to the vineyard (their love) must be chased away together.

Connections: The spring catalogue in 2:11-13 reverses the curse language of Genesis 3, where the ground produces thorns — here the earth produces flowers, fruit, and fragrance. The dove in the clefts of the rock (2:14) resonates with Jeremiah 48:28 and Obadiah 1:3. The gazelle imagery connects to 2 Samuel 2:18 (Asahel was 'swift as a gazelle') and to the broader ancient Near Eastern tradition of comparing lovers to swift, graceful animals.

¹I am a wildflower of the Sharon,
a lily of the valleys.

²Like a lily among thorns,
so is my darling among the young women.

³Like an apple tree among the trees of the forest,
so is my beloved among the young men.
In his shade I have delighted to sit,
and his fruit is sweet to my mouth.

⁴He has brought me to the house of wine,
and his banner over me is love.

⁵Sustain me with raisin cakes,
revive me with apples —
for I am sick with love!

⁶His left hand is under my head,
and his right hand embraces me —

⁷I adjure you, Daughters of Jerusalem,
by the gazelles and the wild does —
do not stir up, do not awaken love
until it desires to arise!

⁸The voice of my beloved!
Look — here he comes,
leaping over the mountains,
bounding over the hills!

⁹My beloved is like a gazelle
or a young stag.
Look — there he stands behind our wall,
gazing through the windows,
peering through the lattice!

¹⁰My beloved spoke and said to me:
'Arise, my darling,
my beautiful one — come away!'

¹¹For look — the winter is past,
the rain is over and gone.

¹²The blossoms have appeared in the land,
the season of singing has arrived,

and the voice of the turtledove
is heard in our land.

¹³The fig tree ripens its early fruit,
and the grapevines in blossom give off fragrance.
Arise, my darling,
my beautiful one — come away!

¹⁴My dove, in the clefts of the rock,
in the hiding places of the cliff —
let me see your face,
let me hear your voice,
for your voice is sweet
and your face is lovely.

¹⁵Catch for us the foxes —
the little foxes
that ruin the vineyards —
for our vineyards are in blossom!

¹⁶My beloved is mine and I am his —
he who grazes among the lilies.

¹⁷Until the day breathes
and the shadows flee,
turn, my beloved —
be like a gazelle
or a young stag
on the cleft mountains.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Chavatselet is not a rose — the identity is uncertain, but likely a crocus, narcissus, or meadow saffron. We render it 'wildflower' to preserve the humility of the self-description without committing to a specific botanical identification. She calls herself common, and he will immediately contradict her.
2. He takes her modest self-description and transforms it: she may be a lily, but she is a lily among thorns. Every other woman is a thorn by comparison. His praise elevates her without contradicting her — she is indeed a lily, but the only lily.
3. She matches his compliment and raises it: he is a fruit tree among barren forest trees — he alone provides shade and sweetness. Sitting in his shade and tasting his fruit is erotic metaphor: his body shelters her and his love is delicious on her tongue.
3. Chimadeti ('I delighted, I desired') shares a root with chemdah ('precious thing, desire'). Her sitting is not passive but eagerly chosen.
4. Bet ha-yayin ('house of wine') is literally a place where wine is consumed — a banquet hall. The diglo ('his banner, his standard') is a military term: armies marched under banners to identify their allegiance. His banner, raised over her, declares that she belongs to love — she is claimed, protected, and publicly identified as his.
5. Ashishot are raisin cakes — dried fruit pressed into cakes, a delicacy and energy food (2 Samuel 6:19, Hosea 3:1). She is faint, overwhelmed, physically weakened by the intensity of desire. Cholat ahavah ('sick with love, lovesick') describes love as a physical condition — the body undone by longing.
6. The posture described is that of lovemaking — he cradles her head with one hand and holds her body with the other. Two bodies intertwined, one supporting and enclosing the other. This exact verse recurs in 8:3, framing the entire Song with this image of physical union.
7. The oath by gazelles and does rather than by God is unique in the Hebrew Bible. The animals may serve as coded references to divine names (tseva'ot echoing YHWH Tseva'ot, aylot echoing El), allowing the oath to carry divine weight without pronouncing sacred names.

7. The verb *techpat* ('it desires, it pleases') gives love its own agency — love awakens when love is ready, not when humans decide.
8. *Qol dodi* ('the voice of my beloved!') is an exclamation of recognition — she hears him before she sees him. The verbs *medalleg* ('leaping') and *meqappets* ('bounding, springing') describe an exuberant, almost superhuman approach. He does not walk — he leaps mountains.
9. The comparison to a *tsevi* ('gazelle') and *ofer ha-ayalim* ('young stag') emphasizes speed, grace, and wild beauty. Then the scene shifts: he has arrived at her house and stands behind the wall, looking in. The verbs *mashgiach* ('gazing') and *metsits* ('peering') create an electric tension — he wants to see her, he searches for her through every opening.
10. *Qumi lakh* ('arise, go for yourself') echoes the *lekh lekha* ('go for yourself') spoken to Abraham in Genesis 12:1 — a call to leave the familiar and journey into promise. His invitation is not merely romantic but transformative.
11. *Ha-setav* ('the winter') refers to the cold, rainy season in Palestine (roughly November through March). *Chalaf halakh lo* ('has passed, has gone away') uses two verbs of departure for emphasis — winter didn't merely end, it LEFT. The world is opening up.
12. *Nitsanim* ('blossoms, buds') signals spring's first visual evidence. *Et ha-zamir* is ambiguous: *zamir* can mean 'singing' or 'pruning' — both happen in spring. The *tor* ('turtledove') is a migratory bird whose return to Palestine in April marks the definitive arrival of spring.
13. *Chanetah paggeha* ('ripens its early figs') — the *pagim* are the small, hard early figs that appear before the main crop. The grapevines are in *semadar* ('blossom') — the tiny flowers that precede the grapes, producing an intensely sweet fragrance. He repeats his invitation, now grounded in sensory evidence: the world is ripe, fragrant, ready.
14. He calls her *yonati* ('my dove') — doves nest in rocky crevices, shy and hidden. She is concealed and he coaxes her out: let me see, let me hear. The double request (sight and sound) matches the double praise: your voice is *arev* ('sweet') and your face is *naveh* ('lovely'). He wants the whole person — visible and audible.
15. This playful verse may be a snatch of a folk song or a love-game between the two. The *shu'alim qetannim* ('little foxes') are small predators that damage vineyards by digging at roots and eating young shoots. The *keramim* ('vineyards') carry the Song's usual double meaning — the literal vineyard and the lovers' relationship.
16. *Dodi li va-ani lo* ('my beloved is mine and I am his') is the Song's most concise statement of mutual belonging. The possessive is symmetrical — neither owns the other more. He grazes *ba-shoshannim* ('among the lilies'), which is both pastoral and erotic. This formula recurs in 6:3 and 7:11, each time with a subtle shift in emphasis.
17. *Ad she-yafuach ha-yom* ('until the day breathes') is a poetic description of dawn — the moment when the first breeze stirs and darkness retreats. She invites him to be like a gazelle on the *hare vater* ('mountains of Bether/cleavage'). *Beter* means 'cutting, cleavage, division' — these may be literal mountains or a veiled reference to her own body's contours.

3

Summary: *Chapter 3 divides into two distinct movements. In verses 1-5, the woman recounts a nighttime search through the city streets for her beloved — she seeks him in bed, then rises to search the streets, encounters the watchmen, and finally finds him and brings him to her mother's house. In verses 6-11, an unnamed voice describes a royal procession: Solomon's litter ascending from the wilderness, surrounded by sixty warriors, elaborately constructed with silver, gold, and purple, crowned by his mother on his wedding day.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The night-search sequence (verses 1-5) is one of the Song's most psychologically intense passages. The woman lies in bed, desire keeping her awake, and the one her nefesh loves is absent. She decides to search — an extraordinary act for an unmarried woman alone in the city at night. The watchmen who find her are ambiguous figures — protectors or threats? When she finds him, she seizes him (*achaztivu* — the verb is strong, even violent) and refuses to let go until she has brought him to her mother's chamber. The mother's house, not the father's, is the space of female sexuality and agency in the Song.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the night-search narrative and the Solomon procession is the chapter's central puzzle. Are verses 6-11 the woman's fantasy of a royal wedding? A flashback? A separate poem? The shift in tone, speaker, and imagery is so abrupt that many scholars treat them as originally independent compositions. The 'bed of Solomon' in verse 7 may connect to the woman's bed in verse 1, suggesting the search ends in royal consummation — or it may be an entirely different scene.*

Connections: The night-search motif connects to 5:2-8, where a nearly identical sequence occurs with a darker outcome — the watchmen beat her. The mother's house (bet immi) echoes 8:2, where the woman again brings her beloved to her mother's house. Solomon's procession with its sixty warriors echoes the sixty queens of 6:8. The wedding crown placed by his mother connects to the broader biblical motif of mothers blessing sons at pivotal moments.

¹On my bed through the nights
I sought the one my soul loves.
I sought him but did not find him.

²Let me rise now and go about the city,
through the streets and the squares.
Let me seek the one my soul loves.
I sought him but did not find him.

³The watchmen found me,
those who go about the city.
"Have you seen the one my soul loves?"

⁴Scarcely had I passed them
when I found the one my soul loves.
I seized him and would not let him go
until I had brought him
to my mother's house,
to the chamber of the one who conceived me.

⁵I adjure you, O Daughters of Jerusalem,
by the gazelles and the does of the field —
do not stir up or awaken love
until it pleases.

⁶Who is this coming up from the wilderness
like columns of smoke,
perfumed with myrrh and frankincense,
with every powder of the merchant?

⁷Look — it is Solomon's litter!
Sixty warriors surround it,
the mightiest of Israel.

⁸All of them grip swords,
trained for war —
each with his sword at his thigh
against the terrors of the night.

⁹King Solomon made himself a palanquin
from the wood of Lebanon.

¹⁰Its pillars he made of silver,
its base of gold,
its seat of purple cloth.

Its interior is inlaid with love
by the daughters of Jerusalem.

11 Go out and gaze, O daughters of Zion,
upon King Solomon —
upon the crown with which his mother crowned him
on the day of his wedding,
on the day of the gladness of his heart.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ba-lelot ('through the nights') is plural — this is not one night but a recurring experience. The bed (mishkavi) is the site of expected intimacy; his absence from it is the crisis. The doubled verb biqqashti ('I sought') with the negative lo metsativu ('I did not find him') establishes the seeking-and-not-finding pattern that drives the narrative.
2. Aquamah na ('let me rise now') — the na particle adds urgency. She leaves the safety of her bed and house to search the city. The shevaqim ('streets') and rehovot ('broad places, squares') are public spaces — for an unaccompanied woman at night, this is a transgressive and dangerous act.
3. Ha-shomrim ha-sovevim ba-ir ('the watchmen who go about the city') are the night patrol. That they 'found' her reverses the pattern: she has been seeking without finding, and now she is the one found. Her question gives no name, no description — she assumes her desire is self-evident.
4. Achaztivu ve-lo arpenu ('I seized him and would not let him go') — achaz is strong, even aggressive. She does not simply find him — she grabs him and refuses to release him. She is the active agent; he is the one seized.
4. Bet immi ('my mother's house') and cheder horati ('the chamber of the one who conceived me') specify the destination: not the father's house but the mother's — the matrilineal space of female sexuality. Bringing him there carries unmistakable sexual implication.
5. The second occurrence of the adjuration refrain (identical to 2:7). It marks the close of the night-search narrative and the transition to the Solomon procession. After the intensity of seeking and seizing, the adjuration counsels patience: do not force love's timing.
6. Mi zot ('who is this?') signals awe at an approaching spectacle. Something ascends (olah) from the midbar ('wilderness'). The pillars of smoke (timrot ashan) may be incense or dust clouds. The fragrance of myrrh and frankincense combined with every merchant's powder creates olfactory overwhelm — this arrival is announced by scent before sight.
7. Mittato shel Shelomoh ('his litter/bed, which is Solomon's') — mittah can mean 'bed' or 'portable couch/litter.' In processional context it is a palanquin. The sixty gibborim ('warriors') who surround it echo David's thirty mighty men (2 Samuel 23:8-39), doubled for Solomon's greater glory.
8. These are combat-ready warriors whose swords rest on their thighs — ready to draw instantly. The threat they guard against is mi-pachad ba-lelot ('against the terror of the night'). The nighttime setting connects to the woman's night-search in verses 1-4.
9. Appiryon is a hapax legomenon — it appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. It may derive from Sanskrit paryanka ('bed, couch') via Persian, or Greek phoreion ('sedan chair'). We render it 'palanquin.' The word's foreignness suits the Song's cosmopolitan vocabulary. The Lebanon timber is the same material as the temple (1 Kings 5-6).
10. The materials ascend in value: silver pillars, gold base, purple seat (argaman — the royal purple dye extracted from murex shells). Then the climactic detail: tokho ratsuf ahavah ('its interior is inlaid with love'). The physical construction gives way to metaphor — the innermost space is not lined with material but with love itself.
11. Tse'enah ur'enah ('go out and gaze') — the famous Yiddish women's Bible commentary takes its name from this verse. The women of Jerusalem are called to see Solomon in his wedding crown (atarah) — not the royal crown of kingship but a bridal crown placed by his mother.
11. Be-yom chatunnato uve-yom simchat libbo ('on the day of his wedding and the day of the gladness of his heart') — the wedding day is when heart-joy reaches its peak. The mother who crowns him is the last figure in the chapter — maternal blessing authorizes the marriage.

4

Summary: *Song of Songs 4 contains the first wasf — a head-to-toe praise poem in which the bridegroom celebrates the bride's beauty through an elaborate sequence of pastoral and architectural metaphors. The chapter culminates in the locked garden imagery (4:12–15), where the bride is described as a private paradise of spices and flowing water, followed by the bride's invitation for the wind to carry her fragrance to her beloved.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wasf (Arabic 'description') is a recognized literary form in ancient Near Eastern love poetry: a catalog of the beloved's features using comparisons drawn from landscape, agriculture, and architecture. What is remarkable here is the density and strangeness of the imagery to modern ears — hair like a flock of goats descending Gilead, teeth like freshly shorn ewes, temples like pomegranate halves. These are not decorations but assertions of abundance, symmetry, fertility, and worth drawn from the agrarian world the poet inhabited. The locked garden metaphor in verses 12–15 is the theological pivot of the chapter: the bride is a gan na'ul ('locked garden'), a spring sealed — language that speaks of exclusivity, of a bounty reserved for one person alone. The garden imagery anticipates and inverts Eden: where the first garden was open and then lost, this garden is closed and then freely offered.*

Translation Friction: *Modern readers must resist two temptations: allegorizing every image into a spiritual abstraction, and reducing the poem to mere eroticism. The Song operates on both registers simultaneously — it is unabashedly about human desire and delight, and the Jewish and Christian traditions have found in it a parable of divine-human love. Neither reading cancels the other. The locked garden language in particular has been weaponized in purity culture in ways that flatten its original meaning. In context, the locked garden is not about shame or restriction but about chosen exclusivity — the bride's own agency in offering what is hers to give.*

Connections: *The garden imagery connects directly to Eden (Genesis 2:8–15) and to the prophetic restoration of Israel as a watered garden (Isaiah 58:11, Jeremiah 31:12). The tower of David reference (4:4) links to military and royal imagery used throughout the Davidic literature. The spice catalog in 4:13–14 — henna, nard, saffron, calamus, cinnamon, frankincense, myrrh, aloes — echoes the sacred anointing oil and incense ingredients of Exodus 30, placing the bride's body in the register of holy things. Lebanon appears repeatedly (4:8, 11, 15) as the epitome of majesty and fragrance.*

¹How beautiful you are, my darling!

How beautiful you are!

Your eyes are doves

behind your veil.

Your hair is like a flock of goats

streaming down Mount Gilead.

²Your teeth are like a flock of newly shorn ewes

coming up from the washing —

each one bearing twins,

none among them bereaved.

³Your lips are like a scarlet thread,

and your mouth is lovely.

Your temples behind your veil

are like the halves of a pomegranate.

⁴Your neck is like the Tower of David,

built in courses —

a thousand shields hang upon it,
all the armor of warriors.

⁵Your two breasts are like two fawns,
twins of a gazelle,
grazing among the lilies.

⁶Until the day breathes
and the shadows flee,
I will go to the mountain of myrrh
and the hill of frankincense.

⁷You are entirely beautiful, my darling.
There is no flaw in you.

⁸Come with me from Lebanon, my bride,
come with me from Lebanon!
Descend from the summit of Amana,
from the peak of Senir and Hermon,
from the dens of lions,
from the mountains of leopards.

⁹You have stolen my heart, my sister, my bride!
You have stolen my heart
with one glance of your eyes,
with one jewel of your necklace.

¹⁰How beautiful is your lovemaking, my sister, my bride!
How much better is your lovemaking than wine,
and the fragrance of your oils
than any spice!

¹¹Your lips drip nectar, my bride —
honey and milk are under your tongue.
The scent of your garments
is like the scent of Lebanon.

¹²A locked garden is my sister, my bride —
a locked pool,
a sealed spring.

¹³Your shoots are a paradise of pomegranates
with choicest fruits,
henna with nard,

¹⁴nard and saffron,
calamus and cinnamon
with every frankincense tree,
myrrh and aloes
with every finest spice.

¹⁵A fountain for gardens,
a well of living water,
and flowing streams from Lebanon.

¹⁶Awake, north wind, and come, south wind!
Blow upon my garden
so its fragrances may flow out.
Let my beloved come into his garden
and eat its choicest fruits.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ra'yati ('my darling, my companion') is the bridegroom's characteristic term for the bride. It derives from ra'ah ('to tend, to shepherd, to be a companion') and carries overtones of intimacy, care, and chosen partnership — not merely romantic attraction but covenantal companionship.
1. The goat-hair image strikes modern readers as bizarre, but in an agrarian context it conveyed overwhelming visual impact: hundreds of dark-haired goats moving as one body down a green slope, a cascade of dark beauty against bright land. The comparison is to the totality of the effect, not to individual animals.
2. The word qetsuvot is debated — it may mean 'shorn' or 'closely matched.' Either reading supports the core meaning: uniformity and freshness. We follow the traditional reading of newly shorn ewes to maintain the pastoral register.
2. Mat'imot ('bearing twins') is the key metaphor: every tooth has its twin, its matching partner in the opposite jaw. The image celebrates symmetry and completeness rather than fertility per se.
3. Midbarekh is a double-meaning word — from the root d-b-r ('to speak'), it can mean 'your speech' or 'your mouth.' The ambiguity is likely intentional: the beloved's lips are beautiful both in form and in what they say. We render it 'your mouth' to capture the physical sense in context while noting the verbal overtone.
3. The pomegranate appears frequently in Song of Songs (4:3, 13; 6:7, 11; 7:12; 8:2) and in temple architecture (1 Kings 7:18–20). Its many seeds made it a universal symbol of abundance and fertility.
4. Talpiyyot is a hapax legomenon — it appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. Proposals include 'courses of stone,' 'an armory,' 'a fortress,' or 'elegant layers.' The uncertainty does not affect the core meaning: the tower is built with impressive construction and adorned with military trophies.
4. The shift from pastoral imagery (goats, ewes, pomegranates) to military architecture (tower, shields, warriors) is jarring but intentional. The wasf draws from every register of Israelite life — farm, orchard, city, and garrison — to say that this woman's beauty encompasses all categories of excellence.
5. The twin fawns grazing among lilies is the Song's most tender bodily metaphor. The image is not about size or shape but about gentleness, symmetry, and the softness of young animals at rest in a flower-filled meadow. The lilies (shoshannim) are the Song's signature flower, and the fawns feeding among them creates a pastoral scene that IS her body.
5. This verse returns in 7:3 with slight variation, forming a refrain. The repetition across the Song creates the effect of a beloved whose beauty is known, returned to, and marveled at again.
6. The verb yafuach ('to breathe, to blow') personifies the day as a living being drawing its first breath. This is more vivid than 'daybreak' and we preserve the metaphor in translation.
6. Mountain of myrrh and hill of frankincense are double-register images: they evoke both a physical landscape and the bride's body anointed with precious spices. The Song consistently refuses to separate geography from intimacy.
7. Kullakh yafah ('all of you is beautiful') — after the item-by-item wasf, he steps back and declares the whole: every part, taken together, is flawless. The brevity of this verse after the elaborate catalog is itself eloquent. Six Hebrew words summarize what the extended description has argued.
7. Mum en bakh ('there is no blemish in you') uses language from the sacrificial system — mum is the term for a disqualifying defect in a sacrificial animal (Leviticus 22:20–21). She is not merely beautiful but perfect, without blemish, worthy of the most sacred offering.
8. The shift from ra'yati ('my darling') to kallah ('my bride') marks a transition in the relationship. Kallah appears six times in 4:8–5:1 and nowhere else in the Song outside this section, suggesting these verses represent the wedding night or its immediate context.
8. The four mountain names — Lebanon, Amana, Senir, Hermon — are all peaks in the same range, viewed from different angles. The accumulation creates a sense of vast, wild distance that the bridegroom wants to overcome.
9. Libbavtini is best understood as 'you have stolen my heart' or 'you have set my heart racing.' Some translations render it 'ravished,' but this carries connotations of force in modern English. The Hebrew conveys willing captivity — the bridegroom celebrates being undone.

9. The 'sister-bride' address (*achoti kallah*) appears five times in 4:9–5:2. In Egyptian love poetry, 'sister' and 'brother' are the standard terms between lovers. The usage signals the deepest form of peer intimacy: this is not hierarchy but partnership.
10. *Dodim* ('love, caresses') is the same word the bride used in 1:2 and 1:4. The verbal echo creates mutuality: these lovers mirror each other's praise. The Song consistently refuses to make one party the sole speaker of desire.
10. The wine comparison (*mah tovu dodayikh mi-yayin*) inverts 1:2 (*ki tovim dodekha mi-yayin*). The same structure, reversed speakers — a literary technique that embodies the equality of desire in this relationship.
11. The 'milk and honey' phrase deliberately echoes the description of the promised land. The poet places the bride's intimacy in the same category as Israel's ultimate inheritance — a land of abundance given by God. This is not casual metaphor but theological assertion: the beloved is herself a promised land.
11. Lebanon's scent was proverbial — its cedar forests, now largely gone, once perfumed the entire eastern Mediterranean coast. Hosea 14:6 uses the same comparison: 'his fragrance shall be like Lebanon.'
12. The garden (*gan*) is the same word used for Eden in Genesis 2:8 (*gan be-Eden*). The echo is unmistakable and theologically loaded: the bride as garden is a restoration of what was lost — a place of abundance, beauty, and intimate communion with another person.
12. *Na'ul* ('locked') and *chatum* ('sealed') are both passive participles — the garden is in a state of being locked, the fountain in a state of being sealed. The text does not say who locked or sealed them. The bride's own agency in 4:16 suggests she holds the key.
13. *Pardes* appears only three times in the Hebrew Bible (here, Ecclesiastes 2:5, and Nehemiah 2:8). Its Persian origin places it in the world of royal gardens — the enclosed, irrigated pleasure parks of ancient kings. The bride's body is not a common field but a king's private paradise.
13. The spice catalog that runs through verses 13–14 lists at least twelve precious plants and aromatics. The accumulation is deliberately overwhelming — the garden's abundance exceeds any single metaphor's capacity.
14. The overlap between this spice list and the ingredients of the sacred anointing oil (Exodus 30:23–25) and the holy incense (Exodus 30:34–38) is too precise to be coincidental. The poet places the bride's garden in the same aromatic world as the tabernacle — a space where God's presence dwells.
14. *Ahalot* ('aloes') refers to eaglewood (*Aquilaria*), not the aloe vera plant. Eaglewood was imported from Southeast Asia and was among the most costly aromatics of antiquity. Its inclusion signals extreme luxury.
15. *Mayim chayyim* ('living water') is theologically charged language. In Jeremiah 2:13 and 17:13, God is the source of living water. In Zechariah 14:8, living water flows from Jerusalem in the messianic age. John 4:10–14 draws directly on this tradition. The bride as a well of living water is one of the Song's most audacious metaphors.
15. The progression from sealed spring (v. 12) to overflowing source (v. 15) mirrors the movement of the entire chapter: from controlled exclusivity to abundant generosity. The garden was locked, but its contents are inexhaustible.
16. The shift from 'my garden' (*ganni*) to 'his garden' (*ganno*) is the verse's theological center. She retains ownership — it is she who invites — but in the act of love, what is hers becomes his. This is gift, not seizure. The garden metaphor makes consent visible: she unlocks, she summons the wind, she issues the invitation.
16. The command *hafichi ganni* ('blow upon my garden') uses the same root (p-w-ch, 'to breathe, to blow') as the 'breathing' day of verse 6. Wind, breath, and spirit share the same Hebrew word (*ruach*), connecting the physical act of wind-blowing to the animating breath of desire.

5

Summary: Chapter 5 opens with the consummation — the man enters his garden and feasts on its honey, wine, and spices. A mysterious voice urges the lovers to eat and drink deeply. Then the mood shifts dramatically: the woman recounts a nighttime episode where her beloved knocked at her door, but by the time she opened it, he had vanished. She searches the city streets (echoing chapter 3) but this time the watchmen beat and strip her. The Daughters of Jerusalem ask what makes her beloved so special, prompting her to deliver a stunning wasf of the man's body — the only such poem about a male figure in the Hebrew Bible.

What Makes This Remarkable: The wasf of the man (verses 10–16) is extraordinary. Male beauty is almost never described in ancient literature with this level of physical detail and erotic charge. His head is finest gold, his locks are date clusters, his eyes are doves by water streams, his cheeks are spice beds, his lips drip liquid myrrh, his hands are gold cylinders set with beryl, his torso is polished ivory covered with sapphires, his legs are marble pillars on gold bases, his appearance is like Lebanon, and his mouth is sweetness itself. The woman gazes at the man's body with the same intensity he brought to her body in chapter 4. The Song insists on full mutuality of desire and admiration.

Translation Friction: The watchmen's violence in verse 7 is deeply troubling and deliberately so. The same watchmen who were neutral in 3:3 now beat her and tear her veil. The text offers no explanation or condemnation — it simply reports. This may represent the danger women face when they claim sexual agency in a patriarchal society, or the vulnerability of desire in a hostile world. The Song does not resolve this violence; it stands as an unhealed wound in the poem's otherwise joyful landscape.

Connections: The garden consummation in 5:1 completes the garden metaphor that began in 4:12. The night-search of 5:2-8 parallels 3:1-4 but with a darker outcome, creating a literary diptych: sometimes you find love, sometimes love finds only violence. The wasf of the man parallels and balances the wasf of the woman in chapter 4. The gold, ivory, sapphire, and marble of his description echo the materials of Solomon's temple (1 Kings 6-7), suggesting that the beloved's body is itself a sacred space.

¹I have come into my garden, my sister, my bride.
 I have gathered my myrrh with my spices,
 I have eaten my honeycomb with my honey,
 I have drunk my wine with my milk.
 Eat, friends!
 Drink, and drink deeply, lovers!

²I was asleep but my heart was awake.
 The sound! My beloved knocking!
 "Open to me, my sister, my darling,
 my dove, my perfect one —
 for my head is drenched with dew,
 my locks with the moisture of the night."

³I have taken off my garment —
 how can I put it on again?
 I have washed my feet —
 how can I soil them?

⁴My beloved thrust his hand through the opening,
 and my insides churned for him.

⁵I rose to open for my beloved,
 and my hands dripped with myrrh,
 my fingers with liquid myrrh,
 upon the handles of the bolt.

⁶I opened for my beloved,
 but my beloved had turned and gone.
 My soul went out at his going.
 I sought him but did not find him.
 I called him but he did not answer.

⁷The watchmen found me,
 those who go about the city.
 They beat me, they wounded me,
 they stripped my veil from me —
 the keepers of the walls.

⁸I adjure you, O Daughters of Jerusalem —
if you find my beloved,
tell him this:
that I am sick with love.

⁹What is your beloved more than any other beloved,
O most beautiful among women?
What is your beloved more than any other beloved,
that you so adjure us?

¹⁰My beloved is radiant and ruddy,
distinguished among ten thousand.

¹¹His head is finest gold,
his locks are wavy clusters,
black as a raven.

¹²His eyes are like doves
beside streams of water,
bathed in milk,
mounted in their settings.

¹³His cheeks are like beds of spice,
towers of perfumes.
His lips are lilies,
dripping with liquid myrrh.

¹⁴His hands are cylinders of gold
set with beryl.
His torso is polished ivory
covered with sapphires.

¹⁵His legs are marble pillars
set on bases of fine gold.
His appearance is like Lebanon,
choice as the cedars.

¹⁶His mouth is sweetness itself,
and all of him is desire.
This is my beloved and this is my friend,
O Daughters of Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The five first-person perfects create a rhythm of completion: gathered, eaten, drunk. Every image from the spice garden of chapter 4 is now consumed. The garden that was locked is now fully entered and enjoyed.
1. The final imperative ('eat, friends; drink deeply, lovers') is one of the Song's most debated lines. The identity of the speaker is unknown, but the effect is clear: an outside voice sanctions and celebrates the lovers' union.
2. Ani yeshenah ve-libbi er ('I was asleep but my heart was awake') — the body sleeps while desire remains alert. She hears him knocking (dofek) and calling through the door with four terms of endearment: sister, darling, dove, perfect one. His appeal is both romantic and pathetic — he stands outside in the night dew, wet-haired, begging entry.

2. The knocking on the door and the request to 'open' (pitchi li) carries obvious sexual overtones alongside the literal scene.
3. Her hesitation is the chapter's turning point. She has undressed and bathed for sleep; rising to open the door would mean redressing and dirtying her feet. The excuses seem trivial, but they create the fatal delay. By the time she acts, he will be gone. This is the Song's most painful moment of missed connection — desire that hesitates loses.
4. He reaches his hand through the latch-hole (chor) — the opening in the door through which a hand could reach to lift the internal bar. The image is intensely physical and erotically charged: his hand penetrating the opening. Her response is visceral: me'ay hamu alav ('my insides churned/trembled for him') — me'im are the intestines, the gut, the deepest interior of the body. Her desire is not in her mind but in her bowels.
5. She finally rises — and finds that he has left myrrh on the door handle. Her hands drip with mor over ('liquid myrrh, flowing myrrh') as she touches the bolt (man'ul). The myrrh is his trace, his residue — he was here, he touched this very surface, and his fragrance remains. The image is simultaneously romantic and tragic: the perfume of his presence lingers after his departure.
6. Dodi chamaq avar ('my beloved had turned and gone') — chamaq means 'to slip away, to withdraw.' He came, he waited, he left. Nafshi yats'ah be-dabbero ('my soul went out at his speaking/going') — her nefesh departs, she nearly dies from the pain of his absence. The seeking-and-not-finding language returns from 3:1-2, but now without resolution. She seeks, calls — silence.
7. The parallel to 3:3 is exact — until it turns violent. The same watchmen, the same city, but now hikkuni petsa'uni ('they beat me, they wounded me'). They also nasa'u et redidi me'alay ('they took my veil from me') — stripping a woman's covering is an act of public shaming (cf. Isaiah 47:2-3). The Song offers no explanation for this violence. The text simply absorbs it and moves forward. A woman seeking love in a dangerous world encounters the world's brutality.
8. The adjuration returns but transformed — no longer a warning about love's timing but a desperate message to be relayed. Cholat ahavah ani ('I am sick with love') echoes 2:5 but now the lovesickness has a sharper edge. She is beaten, stripped, alone in the dark, and her message to her absent beloved is simply: I am dying of desire for you.
9. The Daughters of Jerusalem ask the question that prompts the wasf: mah dodekh mi-dod ('what is your beloved more than a beloved?') — what makes him special? Why should we carry your message? The double question demands an answer, and she will give them one that transforms the entire second half of the chapter.
10. Tsach ve-adom ('radiant and ruddy') — tsach means 'dazzling, bright, clear' and adom means 'red, ruddy.' The combination suggests glowing health: bright skin flushed with vitality. Dagul me-revavah ('distinguished/bannered among ten thousand') — like a banner visible above a crowd of ten thousand, he stands out. The wasf begins with the whole before moving to parts.
11. Ketem paz ('finest gold, pure gold') — his head shines like the highest grade of refined gold. Qevutsotav taltalim ('his locks are clusters/curls') — the hair is thick, wavy, hanging in heavy ringlets. Shechorot ka-orev ('black as a raven') — the contrast between gold head and raven-black hair creates a striking image of brilliance framed by darkness.
12. The dove metaphor from 1:15 returns, now applied to the man. His eyes are doves beside water (al afiqe mayim — 'beside water channels'), bathed in milk (rochotsot be-chalav — white, glistening), and yoshvot al mille't ('sitting/mounted in their settings,' like gems in a bezel). The image layers: doves by water, washed in white, perfectly set — his eyes are jewels alive with gentle beauty.
13. His cheeks are arugat ha-bosem ('beds of spice') — the garden metaphor now applies to his face. Migdelot merqachim ('towers of perfumes') — his cheekbones rise like towers from which scent pours. His lips are shoshannim ('lilies') dripping mor over ('liquid myrrh'). When he speaks, when he kisses, myrrh flows. His face is a spice garden; his mouth produces the most precious resin.
14. Yadav gelile zahav ('his hands are gold cylinders') — gelilim are round, cylindrical rods. His fingers are smooth gold tubes set with tarshish (beryl or chrysolite — a yellow-green gem). Me'av eshet shen ('his belly/torso is a plaque of ivory') — his abdomen is smooth, pale, and hard as worked ivory, me'ullefet sappirim ('overlaid with sapphires' — blue lapis lazuli veining beneath the skin). The materials are those of temple furniture and royal vessels.
15. Shoqav ammude shesh ('his legs are pillars of marble/alabaster') set on adne paz ('bases of pure gold') — he stands like a temple. Mar'ehu ka-Levanon ('his appearance is like Lebanon') — not a single tree but an entire mountain range: vast, majestic, covered with forests. Bachur ka-arazim ('choice as the cedars') — he is the finest specimen, selected like the best cedar for the temple. His body is architecture, landscape, and forest.
16. Chikko mamtaqqim ('his palate/mouth is sweetnesses') — the plural intensifies: not merely sweet but the essence of sweetness. Ve-kullo machamaddim ('and all of him is desires/delights') — machamad is 'that which is desired, a precious thing.' He is not just desirable but the embodiment of desire itself.
16. The closing declaration zeh dodi ve-zeh re'i ('this is my beloved and this is my friend') answers the daughters' question from verse 9 and reasserts the Song's central insight: the lover is also the friend. Dod (lover) and re'a (friend, companion) are held together. Erotic passion and genuine friendship are not opposed but fused.

6

Summary: *Chapter 6 opens with the Daughters of Jerusalem asking where the beloved has gone so they may seek him together. The woman responds that he has gone to his garden — she already knows where he is. She restates the formula of mutual belonging: 'I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine.' The man then delivers another wasf praising her beauty, comparing her to Tīrzah and Jerusalem, declaring that she is unique among all women — queens, concubines, and maidens alike acknowledge her singularity. The chapter closes with a mysterious scene involving the Shulammite and the dance of the two camps.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The reversal of the mutual-possession formula in verse 3 is subtle but theologically significant. In 2:16 she said 'my beloved is mine and I am his.' Here she reverses the order: 'I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine.' The emphasis shifts from possession to self-giving — she names her belonging to him first, then his to her. By 7:11 it will shift again: 'I am my beloved's and his desire is toward me.' The progression tracks a deepening of love from mutual claiming to mutual yielding. The 'terrible as armies with banners' comparison (verse 4) is one of the Song's most striking moments — beauty is not merely pleasant but overwhelming, a force that can conquer armies.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 12 is among the most obscure verses in the Hebrew Bible. The Hebrew is genuinely unclear: lo yadati nafshi samatni markevot ammi-nadiv — something like 'I did not know, my soul set me among the chariots of my noble people' or 'I did not know myself — my desire set me in the chariots of Amminadib.' Every translation is a guess. The identity of the Shulammite (6:13/7:1 in Hebrew versification) is equally debated — is she from Shulem (Shunem), is this a feminine form of 'Solomon' (Shelomoh/Shulammit), or is it a title?*

Connections: *The comparison to Tīrzah (verse 4) dates the poem or its setting to before 880 BCE, when Tīrzah served as the capital of the northern kingdom before Samaria replaced it (1 Kings 15:33). The sixty queens and eighty concubines (verse 8) echo Solomon's harem (1 Kings 11:3), though the numbers here are smaller. The 'dance of the two camps' (mecholat ha-machanayim) in verse 13 may connect to the place name Mahanaim (Genesis 32:2), where Jacob saw the camp of angels.*

¹Where has your beloved gone,
O most beautiful among women?
Where has your beloved turned?
Let us seek him with you.

²My beloved has gone down to his garden,
to the beds of spice,
to graze in the gardens
and to gather lilies.

³I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine —
he who grazes among the lilies.

⁴You are beautiful, my darling, as Tīrzah,
lovely as Jerusalem,
formidable as armies with banners.

⁵Turn your eyes away from me —
they overwhelm me!
Your hair is like a flock of goats
streaming down from Gilead.

⁶Your teeth are like a flock of ewes
coming up from the washing —
each one bearing twins,
none among them bereaved.

⁷Your temples behind your veil
are like the halves of a pomegranate.

⁸Sixty are the queens,
eighty the concubines,
and young women beyond counting.

⁹But one is she — my dove, my perfect one.
She is the only one of her mother,
the pure one of the woman who bore her.
The young women saw her and called her fortunate;
queens and concubines praised her.

¹⁰Who is this gazing down like the dawn,
beautiful as the moon,
radiant as the sun,
formidable as armies with banners?

¹¹I went down to the walnut garden
to see the new growth by the stream,
to see if the vine had blossomed,
if the pomegranates were in bloom.

¹²Before I knew it,
my desire set me
among the chariots of my noble people.

¹³Turn, turn, O Shulammite!
Turn, turn, that we may gaze upon you!
Why would you gaze upon the Shulammite
as at the dance of the two camps?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Daughters of Jerusalem respond to the wasf of chapter 5 by offering to join her search. Their question — *anah halakh dodekh* ('where has your beloved gone?') — uses the same language she used in her search (3:1-4, 5:6). But the woman no longer needs their help.
2. She knows exactly where he is — in his garden (*ganno*). The language echoes 4:16 and 5:1: the garden is her body, and he has gone to it. *Li-r'ot ba-gannim* ('to graze in the gardens') and *li-lqot shoshannim* ('to gather lilies') are erotic euphemisms — he feeds on her beauty and gathers her flowers. She answers the daughters' question with calm certainty: he is with me.
3. The formula from 2:16 returns reversed: there it was *dodi li va-ani lo* ('my beloved is mine and I am his'); here it is *ani le-dodi ve-dodi li* ('I am my beloved's and my beloved is mine'). She puts her belonging to him first. The shift suggests a deepening from claiming to yielding — she leads with gift, not possession.
4. *Tirzah* ('delight') was the capital of the northern kingdom before Samaria — a city of legendary beauty. Jerusalem represents the southern ideal. Together they encompass all of Israel's beauty. Then the stunning third comparison: *ayummah ka-nidgalot* ('formidable as bannered hosts'). Her beauty is not merely attractive but terrifying — it overwhelms like an army on the march. Beauty as military force.

5. Hasebbi enayikh mi-negdi she-hem herhivuni ('turn your eyes from opposite me, for they have overwhelmed/emboldened me') — her gaze is too much for him. He asks her to look away because her eyes undo his composure. This is not rejection but surrender: her beauty has conquered him. He then repeats the wasf from 4:1 — her hair like goats descending Gilead.
6. Nearly identical to 4:2 — the repetition is deliberate, creating a structural parallel between the two wasf passages. The teeth metaphor emphasizes whiteness, uniformity, and completeness. Repetition in the Song is not laziness but ritual: praise worth saying once is worth saying again.
7. Repeated from 4:3b — the pomegranate flush of her cheeks glimpsed through the tsammah ('veil'). The repetition of these specific comparisons ties chapters 4 and 6 together as a matched pair of praise poems.
8. The ascending numbers (sixty, eighty, countless) catalog the royal court's women — queens (melakhot), concubines (pilagshim), and alamot ('young women, maidens'). Against this vast field of feminine beauty, one woman will be singled out as incomparable.
9. Achat hi ('one is she') — against sixty queens, eighty concubines, and countless maidens, she is achat, unique, singular. Yonati tammati ('my dove, my perfect one') — the same pair of epithets from 5:2. She is unique to her mother and barah ('pure, bright, chosen') to the one who bore her. All the women of the court recognize her superiority: the daughters call her ashru ('fortunate, blessed') and the queens hallelu ('praise her').
10. Mi zot ('who is this?') echoes 3:6. She is compared to celestial bodies in ascending intensity: the dawn (shachar — the first light breaking), the moon (levanah — 'the white one'), the sun (chammah — 'the hot one,' blazing brilliance). Then the military comparison returns: ayummah ka-nidgalot. She is dawn, moon, sun, and army — everything that rises and overwhelms.
11. The speaker shifts — likely the woman. Ginnat egoz ('walnut garden') is a specific, cultivated space. She descends to inspect the ibbe ha-nachal ('green growth of the valley/stream'). The vine and pomegranates are checked for blossoming — the garden imagery that has represented the lovers' relationship is now examined for signs of flourishing.
12. This verse is notoriously obscure. Lo yadati ('I did not know') introduces confusion or surprise. Nafshi samatni ('my soul/desire placed me') — her own desire transported her. Markevot ammi-nadiv could mean 'chariots of Amminadib' (a proper name), 'chariots of my noble people,' or 'chariots of a willing people.' The overall sense: desire swept her away before she understood what was happening.
13. Shuvi shuvi — the fourfold repetition of 'turn, return' creates urgent rhythm. The Shulammit is addressed by name (or title) for the only time in the Song. The chorus wants her to turn so they may gaze at her. The responding question may be the woman's self-deprecating reply: why would you stare at me?
13. The mecholat ha-machanayim ('dance of the two camps') is unknown — it may be a specific dance, a military formation, or a wedding tradition. The Shulammit title may be the feminine form of Shelomoh (Solomon) — making her his counterpart.

7

Summary: Chapter 7 (following Hebrew versification, beginning at 7:2 in English Bibles) contains the final and most daring wasf — a foot-to-head praise of the woman's body as she dances. The man describes her feet, thighs, navel, belly, breasts, neck, eyes, nose, and head with increasingly bold imagery. The chapter climaxes with the woman's triumphant declaration: 'I am my beloved's and his desire is upon me' — the final evolution of the mutual-possession formula. She invites him to the countryside, the vineyards, and the fields where she will give him her love.

What Makes This Remarkable: This wasf reverses the direction of chapter 4: there he began with her head and moved down; here he begins with her feet and moves up. The reversal suggests she is dancing — the observers' eyes naturally move upward from her sandaled feet. The metaphors are also bolder: her navel is a round goblet that never lacks mixed wine, her belly is a heap of wheat fringed with lilies, her breasts are like clusters of grapes he desires to grasp. The woman's declaration in verse 11 (Hebrew) is the Song's theological summit: ani le-dodi ve-alay teshuqato ('I am my beloved's and his desire is upon me'). The word teshuqah ('desire') appears only three times in the Hebrew Bible — here, in Genesis 3:16 (the woman's desire for her husband after the fall), and Genesis 4:7 (sin's desire for Cain). The Song reverses Genesis 3: there, desire was linked to domination; here, desire is mutual and free.

Translation Friction: The boldness of the body imagery has always made commentators uncomfortable. The navel-as-wine-goblet and belly-as-wheat-heap are the Song's most explicitly physical descriptions, and attempts to allegorize them reveal the discomfort more than they resolve it. The Hebrew in verse 1 describes her dancing thighs and the 'curves of her thighs' (chammuqe yerekayikh), which is frank anatomical description. We preserve the text's directness.

Connections: The teshuqah ('desire') in verse 11 explicitly reverses Genesis 3:16, where the same word describes the woman's desire bound to her husband's rule. Here the same desire operates without domination — the fall's distortion of eros is undone. The vineyard and field imagery of verses 12-14 return to the Song's opening themes (1:6, 2:15) and anticipate the final vineyard declaration in 8:12. The mandrakes (duda'im) in verse 14 echo Genesis 30:14-16, where Rachel and Leah negotiate with mandrakes for access to Jacob — an aphrodisiac plant linked to fertility and desire.

¹How beautiful are your sandaled feet,
O daughter of nobles!
The curves of your thighs are like ornaments,
the work of a master craftsman.

²Your navel is a rounded goblet —
may it never lack mixed wine!
Your belly is a mound of wheat
fringed with lilies.

³Your two breasts are like two fawns,
twins of a gazelle.

⁴Your neck is like a tower of ivory.
Your eyes are the pools of Heshbon
beside the gate of Bath-rabbim.
Your nose is like the tower of Lebanon
facing toward Damascus.

⁵Your head crowns you like Carmel,
and the flowing hair of your head is like purple —
a king is held captive in the tresses!

⁶How beautiful you are, how delightful —
O love, among pleasures!

⁷Your stature is like a palm tree,
and your breasts like clusters of fruit.

⁸I said: 'I will climb the palm tree,
I will seize its branches!'
Let your breasts be like clusters of the vine,
the fragrance of your breath like apples,

⁹and your mouth like the finest wine —
flowing smoothly for my beloved,
gliding over the lips of sleepers.

¹⁰I belong to my beloved,
and his desire is toward me.

¹¹Come, my beloved, let us go out to the field,
let us spend the night among the henna blossoms.

¹²Let us rise early to the vineyards,
let us see if the vine has blossomed,
if the grape blossoms have opened,
if the pomegranates are in flower.
There I will give you my love.

¹³The mandrakes give off their fragrance,
and at our doors are all choice fruits,
new and old —
my beloved, I have stored them up for you.

¹⁴If only you were like a brother to me,
one who nursed at my mother's breasts!
If I found you outside I would kiss you,
and no one would despise me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wasf begins at the bottom — pe'amayikh ba-ne'alim ('your feet in sandals'). She is dancing, and the observers' eyes start at her moving feet. Bat nadiv ('daughter of a noble/prince') gives her aristocratic status. Chammuge yerekayikh ('the curves of your thighs') is frank anatomical praise — the smooth, rounded contours of her upper legs are like chala'im ('ornaments'), as finely wrought as a master artisan's work.
2. Shorrerekh aggan ha-sahar ('your navel is a round/crescent goblet') — the comparison to a wine goblet that never runs dry is unmistakably sensual. Bitnekh ('your belly, your womb') is a heap of wheat (the golden-tan color of her skin) surrounded by lilies (shoshannim). The images are of abundance: wine that never empties, grain heaped high, flowers framing everything.
3. Repeated from 4:5 with slight variation — the 'grazing among the lilies' clause is omitted here, focusing purely on the twin fawns. The repetition underscores the permanence of his admiration.
4. The neck moves from 'Tower of David' (4:4) to 'tower of ivory' (migdal ha-shen) — smooth, pale, and precious. Her eyes are berechot be-Cheshbon ('pools in Heshbon') — the still, deep pools near an ancient Transjordanian city. Her nose is ka-migdal ha-Levanon ('like the tower of Lebanon facing Damascus') — a watchtower on the heights, commanding and dignified.
5. Her head is like Carmel — the great headland jutting into the Mediterranean, majestic and commanding. Her flowing hair (dallat roshekh) is like argaman ('purple') — the royal color. Then the astonishing conclusion: melekha asur ba-rehatim ('a king is captured/bound in the tresses'). Her hair is a trap that snares kings. His whole wasf concludes with his own captivity — he, the king, is a prisoner of her beauty.
6. Mah yafit u-mah na'amt ('how beautiful you are and how pleasant') — the superlatives overflow. Ahavah ba-ta'anugot ('love among delights/pleasures') addresses her not by name but as ahavah itself — she IS love, embodied.
7. Qomatekh damtah le-tamar ('your height is like a palm tree') — the date palm is tall, straight, graceful, and fruitful. Her breasts are now compared to eshkolot ('clusters') — date clusters or grape clusters hanging from the palm. The shift from fawns to fruit clusters prepares for his intention in the next verse.
8. Amarti e'eleh ve-tamar ('I said, I will climb the palm tree') — he will ascend her body as one climbs a date palm to harvest fruit. Ochazah be-sansinnay ('I will seize its branches/fronds') — achaz ('to seize') is the same verb the woman used in 3:4 when she seized her beloved. Now he seizes her. The climbing and grasping are explicitly sexual.
9. Ve-chikkekh ke-yen ha-tov ('and your palate/mouth like the best wine') — her kisses intoxicate like the choicest vintage. The wine 'goes for my beloved smoothly' (holekh le-dodi le-mesharim) — the woman takes over mid-verse, speaking of 'my beloved.' The final image — dovev sifey yeshenim ('causing the lips of sleepers to murmur') — suggests wine so potent it makes even sleeping people speak, or kisses that penetrate even sleep.
10. The teshuqah wordplay with Genesis 3:16 is almost certainly deliberate. The Song presents itself as Eden restored — a garden where desire operates without shame, domination, or curse. His desire is upon her as gravity is upon the earth: natural, constant, joyful.
11. She takes the initiative: lekha dodi ('come, my beloved'). She invites him out of the city, into the sadeh ('field, countryside'). Nalinah ba-kefarim can mean 'let us lodge in the villages' or 'let us spend the night among the henna blossoms' (kofer/kefer). The henna reading connects to 1:14 and the Song's fragrance imagery.
12. The vineyard inspection from 6:11 returns, but now with an explicit purpose: sham etten et doday lakh ('there I will give you my lovemaking'). The vineyard that was 'mine' in 1:6 — the one she had not tended — is now the site of deliberate, chosen lovegiving. She will give him her dodim in the

place where love and nature merge.

13. Duda'im ('mandrakes') are an aphrodisiac plant with a long history in love magic (Genesis 30:14-16). Their fragrance announces sexual readiness. At 'our doors' (petachenu) — the shared threshold — are kol megadim ('all choice fruits'), both new and old. She has been saving pleasures for him: chadashim gam yeshanim ('new and also old') — fresh experiences and familiar delights.
14. Mi yitenkha ke-ach li ('who would make you like a brother to me') — she wishes for the social freedom that siblings enjoy. In the ancient Near East, a sister could kiss her brother publicly without scandal. She wants to express her love openly, without social punishment. The verse exposes the constraint she lives under: their love, though right and mutual, is judged by the world outside.

8

Summary: *The final chapter of the Song gathers its themes into a crescendo. The woman brings her beloved to her mother's house for instruction in love. The adjuration refrain sounds for the last time. Then comes the poem's theological summit: 'Set me as a seal upon your heart, for love is as strong as death, jealousy as fierce as the grave; its flames are the very flame of Yah. Many waters cannot quench love, nor rivers sweep it away.' The chapter closes with the brothers' speech about their little sister, the woman's assertion of sovereignty over her own vineyard, and a final exchange of longing between the lovers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 6-7 contain what many scholars regard as the only direct theological statement in the Song of Songs. The word shalhevet-yah ('flame of Yah') is the sole occurrence of a divine name in the entire poem — and even this is debated, since the -yah suffix could be an intensifier ('a mighty flame') rather than a theophoric element ('the LORD's own flame'). Either reading is staggering: love is either identified with God's own fire or described as the most intense force in creation. The declaration that many waters cannot quench love echoes the primordial chaos-waters of Genesis 1 and the flood of Genesis 6-9 — love survives what destroys the world. The final vineyard scene (verses 11-12) brings the poem full circle: in 1:6 the woman lamented that her brothers made her tend their vineyards while her own went untended. Now she declares: 'My vineyard, which is mine, is before me.' She has reclaimed what was taken.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the speakers in verses 8-9 is debated. 'Brothers' discuss their 'little sister' — but are these the same brothers from 1:6 who punished her? Are they protective or controlling? The woman's response in verse 10 ('I am a wall, and my breasts like towers') is either an assertion of sexual maturity or a claim of chaste inaccessibility. The vineyard parable in verses 11-12 introduces Solomon by name, but the woman's point seems to subvert his wealth: Solomon can keep his thousand silver pieces; she owns her own vineyard and gives it to whom she chooses.*

Connections: *The adjuration refrain (verse 4) appears for the third and final time (cf. 2:7, 3:5), forming a structural spine for the poem. The vineyard metaphor (verses 11-12) recalls 1:6. 'Love is strong as death' (verse 6) resonates with the covenant language of Deuteronomy and the prophetic marriage metaphors of Hosea. The 'seal upon your heart' connects to the signet ring imagery of Haggai 2:23 and Jeremiah 22:24, where the seal represents irrevocable personal identity. The mother's house (verse 2) echoes 3:4. The final call — 'Flee, my beloved' — returns to the gazelle imagery of 2:9, 2:17, bringing the poem to a circular close.*

1If only you were like a brother to me,
one who nursed at my mother's breasts!
If I found you outside I would kiss you,
and no one would despise me.

2I would lead you, I would bring you
to my mother's house — she who taught me.
I would give you spiced wine to drink,
the juice of my pomegranate.

³His left hand is under my head,
and his right hand embraces me.

⁴I adjure you, O Daughters of Jerusalem —
do not stir up, do not awaken love
until it pleases.

⁵Who is this coming up from the wilderness,
leaning on her beloved?
Under the apple tree I awakened you.
There your mother labored with you,
there she who bore you labored.

⁶Set me as a seal upon your heart,
as a seal upon your arm —
for love is as fierce as death,
passion as relentless as the grave.
Its flames are flames of fire,
the very blaze of Yah.

⁷Many waters cannot quench love,
nor can rivers sweep it away.
If a man offered all the wealth of his house for love,
he would be utterly scorned.

⁸We have a little sister
who has no breasts yet.
What shall we do for our sister
on the day she is spoken for?

⁹If she is a wall,
we will build upon her a battlement of silver.
If she is a door,
we will barricade her with planks of cedar.

¹⁰I am a wall,
and my breasts are like towers.
So in his eyes I have become
one who brings peace.

¹¹Solomon had a vineyard at Baal-hamon.
He entrusted the vineyard to keepers;
each was to bring for its fruit
a thousand pieces of silver.

¹²My vineyard, which is mine, is before me.
The thousand are yours, Solomon,
and two hundred for those who tend its fruit.

¹³You who dwell in the gardens,
 companions are listening for your voice —
 let me hear it!

¹⁴Flee, my beloved!
 Be like a gazelle
 or a young stag
 upon the mountains of spices.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Mi yitenkha ke-ach li ('who would make you like a brother to me') — she wishes for the social freedom that siblings enjoy. In the ancient Near East, a sister could kiss her brother publicly without scandal. She wants to express her love openly, without social punishment. The verse exposes the constraint she lives under: their love, though right and mutual, faces a hostile world.
2. Bet immi ('my mother's house') returns from 3:4 — the matrilineal space of female sexual knowledge. Telammedeni ('she who taught me') — the mother instructs the daughter in the arts of love. She will give him yayin ha-reqach ('spiced wine') and asis rimmoni ('the juice of my pomegranate'). The pomegranate is HER pomegranate — her body's offering. The spiced wine and fruit juice are erotic hospitality: she will intoxicate him with herself.
3. This verse repeats 2:6 exactly — the intimate embrace that frames the Song. The repetition creates an inclusio: the same posture of lovemaking that appeared early in the poem returns near its end. The lovers' bodies are intertwined in the same way, confirming that their love has not diminished but deepened.
4. The third and final occurrence of the adjuration refrain (cf. 2:7, 3:5). This time the oath formula ('by the gazelles and the does') is omitted — the charge is issued without the animal oath, as if by now the Daughters know the weight of the words. The refrain's final appearance seals the poem's wisdom: love has its own timing, and to force it is to destroy it.
5. Mi zot olah min ha-midbar ('who is this coming up from the wilderness?') echoes 3:6 but now she comes leaning on her beloved — mitrapeqet (from rafaq, 'to lean, to support oneself'), a posture of intimate dependence. The apple tree (tappuach) returns from 2:3 — under the same tree where she first sat in his shade, she now awakens him. The location is also where his mother gave birth: love and birth share the same sacred ground.
6. The four key terms in this verse — ahavah, mavet, qin'ah, shalhevet-yah — form the theological core of the entire Song. Love is placed alongside death and Sheol as a cosmic force. Its fire carries the divine name.
6. The seal (chotam) imagery connects to Haggai 2:23, where God makes Zerubbabel 'like a signet ring' — a sign of irrevocable choice. She asks to be his signet: chosen, irreplaceable, authoritative.
7. Mayim rabbim ('many waters') are the primordial chaos-waters — the tehom of Genesis 1:2, the flood-waters of Genesis 6-9, the sea that God subdued at creation. These cosmic forces cannot extinguish love's flame. Neharot lo yishtefuha ('rivers cannot sweep it away') — even the mightiest currents are powerless against love.
7. The second half shifts from cosmic to economic: if a man offered all the substance of his house (kol hon beto) for love, boz yavuzu lo ('they would utterly despise him'). Love cannot be purchased. It is not a commodity. The wealthiest man cannot buy what the poorest lover freely gives. This is the Song's final wisdom statement: love transcends death, water, and wealth.
8. The brothers speak — likely the same brothers from 1:6 who controlled the woman's labor. They discuss their 'little sister' (achot lanu qetannah) who has not yet reached puberty (shadayim en lah, 'she has no breasts'). Their question — mah na'aseh la-achotenu ('what shall we do for our sister') — reveals their assumption of authority over her sexuality. They will decide what happens to her body. The woman in the next verses will reject this authority entirely.
9. The brothers propose two scenarios. If she is a chomah ('wall') — sexually inaccessible, chaste — they will reward her with a silver battlement (tirat kesef), adorning and elevating her. If she is a delet ('door') — sexually accessible, open — they will barricade her with cedar planks (luach erez), closing her off. Either way, they control the outcome. The wall/door metaphor reduces her to architecture they can modify.
10. The woman responds with devastating authority. Ani chomah ('I am a wall') — she claims the identity the brothers proposed, but on her own terms. Ve-shaday ka-migdalot ('and my breasts are like towers') — she is no longer the 'little sister' without breasts. She is fully mature, fortified, and powerful. Az hayiti ve-enav ke-motse'et shalom ('then in his eyes I became one who finds/brings peace') — shalom ('peace, wholeness, completion') echoes both Shelomoh (Solomon) and Shulammit. She has found peace — not through her brothers' control but through her own agency and her beloved's recognition.
11. The vineyard parable begins. Solomon's vineyard at Ba'al Hamon ('lord of abundance' or 'possessor of a multitude') is leased to tenants (notrim, 'keepers' — the same word used of her vineyard-keeping in 1:6). Each tenant owes a thousand pieces of silver for its produce. The vineyard is vast, commercial, operated through intermediaries. Solomon never tends it himself — he owns it from a distance.

12. The vineyard metaphor completes its arc. In 1:6: 'my own vineyard I have not kept' — lament. In 8:12: 'my vineyard, which is mine, is before me' — triumph. Between these two statements lies the entire Song: the journey from controlled labor to free love, from others' vineyards to her own.
13. The man speaks: ha-yoshevet ba-gannim ('you who dwell in the gardens') — she lives in the garden that IS her. Chaverim maqshivim le-qolekh ('companions are listening for your voice') — others also want to hear her. But his request is personal and urgent: hashmi'ini ('let ME hear it!'). After all the seeking, finding, losing, and praising, his final desire is simply to hear her voice — the same request he made in 2:14. Love ends where it began: with longing for the beloved's presence.
14. The Song's final word belongs to the woman. Berach dodi ('flee, my beloved') — the verb barach can mean 'flee' or 'hurry.' She urges him to come quickly, like a gazelle or young stag, to the hare vesamim ('mountains of spices') — her fragrant body, the landscape of their love. The poem does not end with arrival but with invitation. Love is perpetual motion — always calling, always running, always seeking the next encounter. The Song closes not with consummation but with desire still in flight. The last sound is her voice, calling him onward.

1

Isaiah

Summary: *Isaiah chapter 1 opens the entire prophetic book with a covenant lawsuit (Hebrew *riv*) against Judah and Jerusalem. God summons heaven and earth as witnesses, indicts Israel as rebellious children who have abandoned the LORD, describes the nation as bruised and wounded from head to foot, and declares their sacrificial worship repulsive because it is unaccompanied by justice. The chapter closes with a choice — repentance leading to restoration, or continued rebellion leading to destruction — and a promise that Zion will ultimately be redeemed through justice and righteousness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter functions as a miniature of the entire book of Isaiah: accusation, judgment, and eventual redemption all compressed into 31 verses. The opening summons to heaven and earth (1:2) echoes Deuteronomy 32:1, casting God as plaintiff in a formal covenant lawsuit. The metaphor of a diseased body (1:5-6) is one of the most vivid images in the prophets — not a single healthy spot remains. The agricultural imagery in 1:3 is devastating: an ox and a donkey recognize their owner, but Israel does not recognize the LORD. The Hebrew wordplay between *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') and *tsedeq* ('justice') in 1:21-27 frames the entire theology of Isaiah's message: the city that was once full of justice will be restored through justice. We rendered the sacrificial terms precisely because the indictment is not against sacrifice itself but against the disconnect between ritual and ethics.*

Translation Friction: *The sheer density of legal, agricultural, and cultic vocabulary in a single chapter forced several difficult decisions. We rendered *mishpat* as 'justice' throughout rather than alternating with 'judgment' to maintain the consistent theme that God's demand is social justice. The phrase *qirya ne'emanah* ('faithful city') in 1:21 presented a choice between 'faithful city' and 'trustworthy city' — we chose 'faithful' because the betrayal language (turned harlot) requires the covenant-loyalty connotation. The verb *pasha* ('rebel, transgress') in 1:2 we rendered as 'rebelled against me' rather than 'transgressed' to capture the personal nature of the covenant breach. The phrase 'Mighty One of Israel' for *avir Yisra'el* (1:24) is a distinct divine title from 'the Holy One of Israel' and we preserved this distinction.*

Connections: *The heaven-and-earth summons connects to Deuteronomy 30:19 and 32:1 where Moses calls the same witnesses. The diseased-body metaphor reappears in Isaiah 53:4-5 applied to the Suffering Servant. The vineyard language in 1:8 anticipates the full vineyard parable in Isaiah 5:1-7. The refining imagery in 1:25 connects forward to Malachi 3:2-3. The phrase 'scarlet/crimson' becoming 'white as snow' (1:18) becomes one of the most widely quoted images in all of Scripture and connects conceptually to Psalm 51:7. The indictment of*

empty worship anticipates Amos 5:21-24 and Micah 6:6-8.

¹The vision of Isaiah son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah — kings of Judah.

²Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth,
for the LORD has spoken:
"Children I raised and brought up,
but they have rebelled against me.

³An ox knows its owner,
and a donkey its master's feeding trough —
but Israel does not know,
my people do not understand."

⁴Woe, sinful nation,
people weighed down with iniquity,
offspring of evildoers,
children who deal corruptly!
They have abandoned the LORD,
they have despised the Holy One of Israel,
they have turned their backs.

⁵Why do you keep inviting more blows?
Why do you continue to rebel?
The whole head is diseased,
and the whole heart is faint.

⁶From the sole of the foot to the head,
there is no soundness in it —
only wounds, welts, and raw, open sores.
They have not been pressed out,
nor bandaged,
nor softened with oil.

⁷Your land is desolate,
your cities burned with fire.
Your soil — right before your eyes,
foreigners devour it,
and it lies desolate, as overthrown by invaders.

⁸And Daughter Zion is left
like a shelter in a vineyard,
like a hut in a cucumber field,
like a city under siege.

⁹If the LORD of Hosts had not left us
a few survivors,
we would have become like Sodom,
we would have resembled Gomorrah.

¹⁰Hear the word of the LORD, you rulers of Sodom!
Give ear to the instruction of our God, you people of Gomorrah!

¹¹"What are your many sacrifices to me?"
says the LORD.

"I have had enough of burnt offerings of rams
and the fat of fattened cattle.
In the blood of bulls, lambs, and goats
I take no pleasure.

¹²When you come to appear before me,
who asked this of you —
this trampling of my courts?

¹³Stop bringing worthless grain offerings!
Incense — it is an abomination to me.
New moons, Sabbaths, the calling of assemblies —
I cannot endure wickedness alongside sacred gathering.

¹⁴Your new moons and your appointed festivals —
my soul hates them.
They have become a burden to me;
I am weary of bearing them.

¹⁵When you spread out your hands in prayer,
I will hide my eyes from you.
Even when you multiply your prayers,
I am not listening —
your hands are full of blood.

¹⁶Wash yourselves, make yourselves clean!
Remove the evil of your deeds
from before my eyes.
Stop doing evil!

¹⁷Learn to do good.
Pursue justice,
set right the oppressor,
defend the orphan,
plead the cause of the widow.

¹⁸"Come now, let us settle this,"
says the LORD.
"Though your sins are like scarlet,
they will become white as snow.
Though they are red as crimson,
they will become like wool.

¹⁹If you are willing and obey,
you will eat the good of the land.

²⁰But if you refuse and rebel,
you will be devoured by the sword" —
for the mouth of the LORD has spoken.

²¹How the faithful city has become a prostitute!
She was once full of justice;
righteousness lodged in her —
but now, murderers.

²²Your silver has become dross,
your wine diluted with water.

²³Your rulers are rebels,
companions of thieves.
Every one of them loves a bribe
and chases after payoffs.
They do not defend the orphan,
and the widow's case never reaches them.

²⁴Therefore — declares the Lord,
the LORD of Hosts,
the Mighty One of Israel —
"I will get relief from my adversaries
and avenge myself on my enemies.

²⁵I will turn my hand against you
and smelt away your dross as with lye,
and remove all your impurities.

²⁶I will restore your judges as at the first
and your counselors as at the beginning.
After that you will be called
'The City of Righteousness,'
'The Faithful City.'"

²⁷Zion will be redeemed through justice,
and her repentant ones through righteousness.

²⁸But rebels and sinners will be shattered together,
and those who abandon the LORD will perish.

²⁹For they will be ashamed of the sacred oaks
you desired,
and you will be humiliated
by the gardens you chose.

30For you will be like an oak whose leaves wither,
and like a garden with no water.

31The strong man will become tinder,
and his work a spark —
they will both burn together,
and no one will quench them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription spans roughly 740–686 BCE, covering four kings and at least five decades of prophetic activity. The verb *chazah* ('he saw') is the visionary cognate of the noun *chazon* — Isaiah did not merely hear a message but perceived a revealed reality. The four kings listed anchor the book historically across the Assyrian crisis period.
2. The summons to heaven and earth as witnesses invokes the covenant-lawsuit (*riv*) genre familiar from Deuteronomy 32:1. The verb *pasha* ('rebel') carries the specific connotation of breaking a treaty or covenant relationship — it is political and personal, not merely moral. The word order in Hebrew places 'children' (*banim*) first for emphasis: the indictment begins with the intimate family relationship that Israel has violated.
3. The comparison is intentionally humiliating: even the least intelligent domesticated animals recognize who feeds them, but Israel cannot recognize the LORD. The word *evus* ('feeding trough, manger') emphasizes provision — the donkey knows where its food comes from. The verb *hitbonen* ('consider, discern') implies intellectual failure: Israel has not reflected on the most basic facts of its existence.
4. The interjection *hoi* ('Woe!') opens a formal prophetic denunciation. Four parallel descriptions cascade in escalating intensity: sinful nation, guilt-laden people, offspring of evildoers, corrupt children. The verb *ni'atsu* ('they despised, spurned') is extremely strong — it means to treat with contempt, to consider worthless. The phrase *nazoru achor* ('turned backward') is the opposite of following the LORD.
5. The rhetorical question implies that further punishment is pointless because Israel simply adds rebellion to rebellion. The body-politic metaphor begins here: the nation is personified as a single body, sick from head to heart. The word *sarah* ('turning aside, rebellion') captures persistent deviation from the covenant path.
6. The medical imagery is graphic and precise: *petsa* ('wound'), *chabbura* ('bruise, welt'), and *makkah teriyah* ('fresh, raw wound'). The three untreated conditions — not pressed out (to drain), not bandaged, not softened with oil — indicate total neglect. This verse establishes that the nation's condition is not a minor ailment but a full-body collapse with no attempt at treatment.
7. The shift from metaphor (diseased body) to literal description (burned cities, foreign occupation) is abrupt and powerful. The word *shemamah* ('desolation') appears twice, framing the verse. The phrase *le-negdekem* ('before your eyes, in your presence') intensifies the humiliation — Israel watches helplessly as foreigners consume their inheritance. Some scholars read *mahpekhat zarim* as 'overthrow like that of Sodom' (comparing to *mahpekhhah* in Genesis 19:29), though the plain sense is devastation by foreign invaders.
8. The *sukkah* ('shelter, booth') and *melunah* ('hut, lodge') are temporary structures erected during harvest and abandoned afterward — fragile, isolated, and soon to collapse. The vineyard imagery here anticipates the vineyard song of chapter 5. The phrase '*ir netsurah* ('besieged city') shifts from agricultural loneliness to military crisis. Daughter Zion stands alone in a stripped landscape.
9. The introduction of the Sodom/Gomorrah comparison here prepares for the direct address in verse 10. The word *sarid* ('survivor, remnant') introduces the remnant theology that becomes central to Isaiah's message. The divine title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts') emphasizes God's sovereign command over all powers. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 9:29 as evidence of God's preserving grace.
10. The shock of directly addressing Jerusalem's leaders as 'rulers of Sodom' and 'people of Gomorrah' cannot be overstated — Sodom was the archetype of total destruction under divine judgment. The parallel structure (hear/give ear, word of the LORD/instruction of our God, Sodom/Gomorrah) is classic Hebrew poetry. The word *qetsinim* ('rulers, commanders') is a relatively rare term for leaders, perhaps chosen to avoid the more neutral *melakhim* ('kings').
11. God speaks in the first person, creating a direct confrontation between deity and worshipper. The verb *sava'ti* ('I am sated, I have had enough') uses the language of eating to excess — God is depicted as gorged and disgusted with the sacrificial meals. The catalogue of sacrificial animals (rams, cattle, bulls, lambs, goats) represents the full range of Israelite sacrifice. The indictment is not against sacrifice per se but against sacrifice divorced from ethical obedience.
12. The verb *remos* ('to trample') reframes worship attendance as desecration — the worshippers are not entering God's courts reverently but stomping through them. The phrase *lera'ot panay* ('to appear before my face') is the standard expression for Temple pilgrimage, but here it is stripped of its expected positive connotation. God does not merely reject the offerings; he questions whether he ever requested this kind of worship at all.
13. The *minchah* ('grain offering') is called *shav* ('worthless, empty, vain'). The word *to'evah* ('abomination') is the strongest term of revulsion in Hebrew — normally reserved for the most offensive practices of pagan worship, now applied to Israel's own incense. The final phrase is the theological center: God cannot tolerate the combination of *aven* ('wickedness, iniquity') with *atsarah* ('solemn assembly'). The problem is not worship itself but the coexistence of ritual piety and moral corruption.

14. The verb *sane'ah* ('hate') is applied to the very festivals God himself instituted in the Torah. The anthropomorphic language — 'my soul hates,' 'I am weary' — conveys emotional exhaustion. The word *torach* ('burden, trouble') depicts Israel's worship as a weight God must carry rather than a delight he receives. The word *mo'adim* ('appointed times, festivals') refers to the entire liturgical calendar prescribed in Leviticus 23.
15. The gesture of spreading hands (*paras kappayim*) was the standard Israelite prayer posture — hands open, palms upward. God responds by hiding his eyes, a devastating reversal of the priestly blessing where God's face shines upon his people (Numbers 6:25). The final clause delivers the reason with brutal conciseness: the hands lifted in prayer are the same hands dripping with blood. The word *damim* ('bloods,' plural) suggests not a single act of violence but systemic bloodshed.
16. A rapid series of imperatives shifts from accusation to demand. The washing language (*rachatsu, hizzakku*) draws on both ritual purification and moral cleansing. The progression moves from external (wash) to internal (stop doing evil). These are not ritual instructions but ethical demands — the 'washing' God wants is behavioral change, not ceremonial bathing.
17. The verb *dirshu* ('seek, pursue') combined with *mishpat* ('justice') makes justice an active pursuit, not a passive quality. The word *chamots* is debated — it may mean 'the oppressed' (one who is crushed) or 'the oppressor' (one who acts violently). We rendered 'set right the oppressor' following the reading that demands restraining wrongdoers. The orphan (*yatom*) and widow (*almanah*) are the paradigmatic vulnerable persons in ancient Israelite law.
18. The verb *nivvakhechah* ('let us reason together, argue our case') is legal language — God invites Israel to a courtroom negotiation. The color imagery is vivid: *shanim* ('scarlet') was a deep, permanent dye extracted from an insect, and *tola* ('crimson') was similarly indelible. The promise that such permanent stains can become white as snow is a declaration of radical grace. This verse is conditional — the context of verses 19–20 makes clear that the cleansing depends on willingness to obey.
19. The condition is twofold: willingness (inner disposition) and obedience (outward action). The promise echoes Deuteronomy's land-blessing language — the covenant is still operative, and its blessings are still available. The brevity of this verse after the extended indictment makes the offer of grace startlingly simple.
20. The wordplay between *to'khelu* ('you will eat,' v. 19) and *te'ukhlu* ('you will be eaten/devoured,' v. 20) creates a devastating reversal: those who obey eat the land's goodness; those who rebel are eaten by the sword. The closing formula 'the mouth of the LORD has spoken' (*pi YHWH dibber*) seals the declaration as irrevocable divine speech. The choice between eating and being eaten encapsulates the covenant's two-way structure.
21. The lament formula *eikhah* ('how!') is the same word that opens the book of Lamentations — a cry of stunned grief. The image of a faithful wife turned prostitute is covenant-betrayal language (compare Hosea 1–3, Ezekiel 16). The word *ne'emanah* ('faithful, trustworthy') shares its root with 'amen' and implies covenant reliability. The final word — *meratsechim* ('murderers') — lands like a hammer blow after the elevated language of justice and righteousness.
22. Two metaphors of debasement: silver refined into worthless slag, and wine watered down. Both images convey the loss of essential quality. The silver metaphor anticipates the refining language in 1:25. In the ancient economy, debased silver and diluted wine were forms of commercial fraud — connecting the imagery to the justice theme.
23. The wordplay *sarayikh sorerim* ('your rulers are rebels') is a devastating sound-play in Hebrew — the words for 'ruler' and 'rebel' are nearly identical. The phrase 'companions of thieves' indicates systemic corruption, not individual bad actors. The bribe-taking (*shochad*) and payoff-chasing (*shalmonim*) describe a judicial system captured by the wealthy. The orphan and widow from verse 17 reappear — the very people God commanded them to protect are excluded from justice.
24. Three divine titles pile up to convey the weight of what follows: *ha-Adon* ('the Lord, the Sovereign'), *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts'), *Avir Yisra'el* ('the Mighty One of Israel'). The shocking element is that God's adversaries and enemies are his own people — the ones he raised as children (v. 2). The verb *ennachem* ('I will relieve myself, get comfort') suggests that punishing the corrupt is a form of divine relief from an intolerable situation.
25. The refining metaphor reverses the debasement of verse 22: the silver that has become dross will be smelted clean. The word *bor* ('lye, alkali') is a refining agent — God's judgment is not destruction for its own sake but purification. The word *bedilayikh* ('your tin, your alloy') refers to base metals mixed into the silver. This is restorative judgment: the goal is to recover the pure metal, not to discard it.
26. The promise reverses the accusation of verse 21 point by point: the city that became a prostitute will again be called 'faithful' (*ne'emanah*); the city emptied of justice will be renamed 'City of Righteousness' (*ir ha-tsedek*). The restoration of judges and counselors means that justice will flow from reformed leadership. The phrase 'as at the first' and 'as at the beginning' points back to an idealized Davidic-Solomonic era when justice was administered properly.
27. This is one of the most theologically dense verses in Isaiah. The verb *tippadeh* ('she will be redeemed') uses redemption language — the same root (p-d-h) used for the redemption of the firstborn and the exodus from Egypt. But the instruments of redemption are *mishpat* ('justice') and *tsedaqah* ('righteousness'), not military power or cultic ritual. The word *shaveyha* is debated: it could mean 'her returnees' (those who repent and return) or 'her captives' (those carried away). We chose 'her repentant ones' to emphasize the volitional return.
28. The word *shever* ('breaking, shattering, destruction') is violent and final. The verse pairs *posh'im* ('rebels,' from the same root as v. 2) with *chatta'im* ('sinners') — willful covenant-breakers and habitual wrongdoers alike face the same end. The verb *yikhlu* ('they will be consumed, come to an end') indicates total destruction. This is the dark counterpart to verse 27's redemption promise.

29. The 'oaks' (elim) and 'gardens' (gannot) refer to sites of pagan worship — sacred trees and cultic gardens where fertility rites were performed. The verbs yevoshu ('be ashamed') and tachperu ('be humiliated, disgraced') describe the coming exposure of these practices. The shift from third person ('they') to second person ('you') is characteristic of prophetic poetry, drawing the audience directly into the accusation.
30. The ironic reversal is complete: those who worshipped among sacred oaks will themselves become withered oaks; those who chose pagan gardens will become waterless gardens. The objects of false worship become images of the worshippers' own ruin. The verb novelet ('withering, fading') depicts slow, irreversible decay.
31. The final verse delivers an image of self-destruction: the strong man (chason) and his work (po'alo) — likely referring to the idol and its maker — ignite each other. The ne'oret ('tow, oakum') is the waste fiber from flax processing, extremely flammable. The idol-maker and the idol become fuel for the same fire. The phrase ve'ein mekhabeah ('and no one quenching') means the destruction is irreversible — there is no fire brigade for divine judgment.

2

Summary: *Isaiah 2 opens with the stunning eschatological vision of the mountain of the LORD's house exalted above all mountains, with nations streaming to it for instruction and the famous oracle of swords beaten into plowshares. The chapter then pivots sharply to the Day of the LORD — a day of terrifying judgment against everything exalted by human pride, when people will flee into caves to hide from the splendor of the LORD's majesty.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the most recognized passages in all of Scripture: the swords-into-plowshares oracle (2:2-4), which also appears with minor variations in Micah 4:1-3, raising the question of which prophet originated it or whether both drew from a common liturgical source. The structural contrast is extraordinary — the chapter moves from the highest hope (all nations learning peace) to the most devastating judgment (humanity hiding in rock clefts). The sevenfold repetition of proud and lofty things that will be brought low (2:12-16) creates a catalogue of human achievement that God finds intolerable when it displaces him. The Hebrew wordplay between nasa ('exalted') applied to the mountain of the LORD and nasa applied to human pride creates a theological contrast: only what God exalts remains exalted. We rendered the Day of the LORD language with consistent intensity, preserving the terror that this phrase carried for Isaiah's audience — it was not a day of national victory but of divine confrontation with all human pretension.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase be'acharit hayyamim ('in the latter days,' 2:2) resisted easy rendering. 'In the last days' implies strict eschatology; 'in days to come' is too vague. We chose 'in the days to come' as a compromise that preserves the forward-looking orientation without forcing a specific eschatological timeline. The verb naharu ('stream, flow') in 2:2 literally means to flow like a river — we rendered 'stream' to preserve the water imagery of nations flowing uphill to a mountain, a deliberately impossible image conveying supernatural attraction. The repeated refrain about entering rocks and caves (2:10, 19, 21) required consistent language to mark it as a structural device. The word elim ('worthless things, idols') in 2:8, 18, 20 is a contemptuous diminutive — we rendered it 'worthless idols' to capture both the reference and the mockery.*

Connections: *The swords-into-plowshares oracle parallels Micah 4:1-3 almost verbatim. Joel 3:10 reverses the image: 'Beat your plowshares into swords.' The Day of the LORD theme connects to Amos 5:18-20 (the earliest prophetic use), Zephaniah 1:14-18, and Joel 2:1-11. The cave-hiding imagery reappears in Revelation 6:15-17 where kings and generals hide from the Lamb's wrath. The exaltation of the LORD's mountain connects forward to Isaiah 11:9 ('the earth will be full of the knowledge of the LORD') and Isaiah 25:6-8 (the feast on the mountain).*

¹The word that Isaiah son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

²In the days to come,
the mountain of the LORD's house will be established
as the highest of the mountains,
raised above the hills —
and all the nations will stream to it.

³Many peoples will go and say,
 "Come, let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,
 to the house of the God of Jacob,
 that he may teach us his ways
 and we may walk in his paths."
 For instruction will go out from Zion,
 and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

⁴He will judge between the nations
 and arbitrate for many peoples.
 They will beat their swords into plowshares
 and their spears into pruning hooks.
 Nation will not lift up sword against nation,
 and they will no longer learn war.

⁵O house of Jacob,
 come — let us walk in the light of the LORD!

⁶For you have abandoned your people, the house of Jacob,
 because they are filled with practices from the east
 and practice divination like the Philistines,
 and they clasp hands with foreigners.

⁷His land is filled with silver and gold,
 and there is no end to his treasures.
 His land is filled with horses,
 and there is no end to his chariots.

⁸His land is filled with worthless idols;
 they bow down to the work of their hands,
 to what their fingers have made.

⁹So humanity is brought low,
 and each person is humbled —
 do not forgive them!

¹⁰Enter the rock and hide in the dust
 from the terror of the LORD
 and from the splendor of his majesty!

¹¹The haughty eyes of humanity will be brought low,
 and the pride of mortals will be humbled.
 The LORD alone will be exalted on that day.

¹²For the LORD of Hosts has a day
 against all that is proud and lofty,
 against all that is lifted up — it will be brought low:

¹³against all the cedars of Lebanon, tall and lofty,
and against all the oaks of Bashan;

¹⁴against all the high mountains
and against all the lofty hills;

¹⁵against every high tower
and against every fortified wall;

¹⁶against all the ships of Tarshish
and against every beautiful vessel.

¹⁷The pride of humanity will be brought down,
and the arrogance of mortals will be humbled.
The LORD alone will be exalted on that day.

¹⁸And the worthless idols will vanish entirely.

¹⁹They will enter the caves of the rocks
and the holes in the ground,
from the terror of the LORD
and from the splendor of his majesty,
when he rises to terrify the earth.

²⁰On that day, people will throw away
their silver idols and their gold idols —
which they made for themselves to worship —
to the moles and the bats.

²¹to enter the crevices of the rocks
and the clefts of the crags,
from the terror of the LORD
and from the splendor of his majesty,
when he rises to terrify the earth.

²²Stop trusting in mere mortals,
who have only breath in their nostrils.
Of what account are they?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A second superscription within the book, suggesting this section (chapters 2-4) may have circulated independently. The verb *chazah* ('saw') again links prophetic reception to visual perception — the word is 'seen,' not merely heard.
2. The phrase *be'acharit hayyamim* ('in the latter days / in the days to come') is an eschatological time marker pointing to a future era of divine fulfillment. The mountain of the LORD's house is Mount Zion / the Temple mount. The verb *nakhon* ('established, firm') implies permanence and stability. The parallel in Micah 4:1 is nearly identical, suggesting a shared prophetic tradition. The verb *naharu* is specifically the flowing of a river or stream — nations move toward Zion like water courses.
3. The nations voluntarily ascend — they are not conquered or compelled but drawn by desire for God's instruction. The verb *yorenu* ('he will teach us') shares the root y-r-h with *torah*. We rendered *torah* as 'instruction' per project decision for general prophetic contexts. The parallelism between 'instruction from Zion' and 'word of the LORD from Jerusalem' equates *torah* with divine speech. The 'house of the God of Jacob' is the Temple, but the use of 'Jacob' rather than 'Israel' may evoke the patriarch's original encounter with God.

4. The verb *shafat* ('judge') here means to arbitrate disputes — God becomes the supreme court for international conflicts, making war unnecessary. The verb *hokhiach* ('rebuke, decide, arbitrate') reinforces the legal-arbitration function. The transformation of weapons into agricultural tools (*cherev* to *et*, *chanit* to *mazmerah*) reverses the arms economy. The final line — 'they will no longer learn war' — envisions not just the end of fighting but the end of military training and culture. Joel 3:10 famously reverses this image.
5. This transitional verse pivots from the eschatological vision to a present-tense exhortation. If the nations will one day stream to Zion for instruction, Israel should already be walking in that light. The phrase 'light of the LORD' (or YHWH) connects illumination with divine presence and guidance. The imperative creates urgency: why wait for the future when the LORD's light is available now?
6. The shift is jarring — from the glorious vision to the present reality of apostasy. God has 'abandoned' (*natashta*) his people because they have first abandoned him. The 'practices from the east' (*miqqedem*) refer to Mesopotamian divination and astrology. The verb *onenim* ('practicing divination, reading omens') describes forbidden occult practices (Deuteronomy 18:10). The phrase 'clasp hands with foreigners' (*yaldei nakhrim yaspiku*) likely refers to making alliances sealed by handshake, or possibly to the embrace of foreign customs and children born from mixed marriages.
7. The repetition of 'filled' (*vatimmale*) and 'no end' (*ein qetseh*) creates a sense of excess. The catalogue violates Deuteronomy 17:16-17, which forbids the king from multiplying horses, silver, and gold. The material prosperity is not celebrated but indicted — it represents self-reliance replacing trust in God. The horses and chariots are specifically military assets, indicating trust in military power rather than in the LORD.
8. The third 'filled' (*vatimmale*) completes a devastating trilogy: silver, horses, idols. The progression implies causation — material excess leads to military self-reliance, which leads to idolatry. The word *elilim* ('worthless things, nothings') is a contemptuous pun — it sounds like *elohim* ('gods') but means 'worthless, nothing.' The absurdity is underscored: they worship what their own fingers made.
9. The verbs *vayyishach* ('is bowed down') and *vayyishpal* ('is brought low') anticipate the Day of the LORD theme that will dominate the rest of the chapter. The plea 'do not forgive them' (*al tissa lahem*) is startling — it is either the prophet's prayer or a divine declaration that the idolatry has passed the point of pardon. The verb *nasa* here means 'lift up, bear, forgive' — the same root used for God 'lifting' sins away.
10. The first occurrence of the cave-hiding refrain (repeated in vv. 19, 21). The word *pachad* ('terror, dread') combined with *hadar ge'ono* ('splendor of his majesty') creates a paradox: God's beauty and God's terror are the same experience for those in rebellion. The rock and dust are not shelters — they are the only places left for those fleeing divine presence. Revelation 6:15-16 directly echoes this imagery.
11. This verse states the chapter's thesis: human exaltation and divine exaltation are mutually exclusive. The phrase 'the LORD alone' (YHWH *levaddo*) is emphatic — no rival, human or divine, will share the stage. The 'haughty eyes' (*einei gavhut*) make pride a visual metaphor — eyes that look down on others and up at self will be forced downward. The verse functions as a refrain, repeated in variant form in verse 17.
12. The 'Day of the LORD' (*yom la-YHWH*) is the central concept of prophetic eschatology — a future moment when God acts decisively against all opposition. Here it is directed not against foreign nations but against pride itself, wherever it is found. The three synonyms for pride (*ge'eh*, *ram*, *nissa*) create a cumulative effect of height that will be leveled.
13. The catalogue of proud things begins with the greatest trees of the ancient Near East. The cedars of Lebanon were the most prized timber in the region — symbols of royal power and wealth (Solomon's Temple was built of them). The oaks of Bashan (the Golan Heights region) were similarly renowned. These may function literally (deforestation as judgment) or metaphorically (great powers cut down).
14. Mountains and hills served as high places for pagan worship throughout Israel and Judah. The judgment against 'high' and 'lofty' terrain uses the same vocabulary applied to human pride in verse 12, collapsing the distinction between natural landscape and spiritual rebellion — anything that is 'high' apart from God will be brought low.
15. The catalogue shifts from nature to architecture — human constructions designed for military defense and civic pride. Towers and fortified walls represent trust in human engineering for security. The judgment implies that no fortification can withstand the Day of the LORD.
16. The 'ships of Tarshish' were the largest oceangoing vessels of the ancient world — the supertankers of antiquity, used for long-distance trade (possibly to Spain or Sardinia). The word *sekhyyot* (possibly 'vessels, crafts, images') is rare and debated. Some render it 'beautiful images' or 'fine craftsmanship.' We chose 'beautiful vessel' to maintain the maritime/trade context. The catalogue ends with commerce — wealth, military power, and trade are all targets of divine judgment.
17. This verse nearly repeats verse 11, forming an *inclusio* (literary bracket) around the catalogue of proud things (vv. 12-16). The repetition is structural — everything between the two refrains is contained within the single theological claim: the LORD alone will be exalted. The slight variation in word order between v. 11 and v. 17 is typical of Hebrew refrains.
18. The wordplay between *elilim* ('worthless idols') and *kalil* ('entirely, completely') creates a sound echo: the 'nothings' will become completely nothing. The verb *yachalof* ('pass away, vanish') implies that the idols do not need to be defeated — they simply cease to exist in the presence of the real God.
19. The cave-hiding refrain from verse 10 is expanded. The verb *la'arots* ('to terrify, cause to tremble') is applied to the entire earth — not just humanity but the physical planet shudders at God's arising. The phrase *be-qumo* ('when he rises') implies that God has been seated (enthroned, patient) and now stands to act. Revelation 6:15-17 draws directly on this passage.
20. The precious metals that filled the land (v. 7) and the idols made from them (v. 8) are now discarded in panic. The moles and bats are creatures of darkness and underground spaces — the idols end up in the domain of the very creatures associated with uncleanness and death. The irony is savage: objects of worship are flung into holes where blind, burrowing animals live. The phrase 'which they made for themselves' emphasizes the self-referential absurdity of idol worship.

- 21.** The third iteration of the cave-hiding refrain intensifies the imagery — now people crawl into *niqrot* ('crevices, fissures') and *se'ifim* ('clefts, cracks') in the rock faces. Each repetition narrows the hiding place: first caves (v. 10), then holes (v. 19), now cracks in the rock (v. 21). The spaces shrink as the terror grows. The refrain 'when he rises to terrify the earth' is identical to verse 19.
- 22.** The chapter closes with a proverb-like command that summarizes the entire argument. The word *neshamah* ('breath') in the nostrils is the same breath God breathed into Adam (Genesis 2:7) — humans are fragile, dependent creatures whose life hangs on a single breath. The rhetorical question 'of what account is he?' (*bammeh nechshav hu*) dismisses the entire catalogue of human achievement — silver, horses, towers, ships — as ultimately weightless. This verse transitions into chapter 3's detailed judgment on human leadership.

3

Summary: *Isaiah 3 announces God's systematic removal of every pillar of Jerusalem's social order — military leaders, judges, prophets, elders, craftsmen. The resulting power vacuum produces anarchy where boys and infants rule, social hierarchy collapses, and people seize any man with a cloak and demand he become their leader. The chapter then shifts to a formal legal indictment of the elders and princes who have plundered the poor, and concludes with a devastating catalogue of the luxury items worn by the daughters of Zion, all of which will be stripped away and replaced with shame.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is a masterclass in prophetic social criticism. The list of removed leaders in verses 2-3 is the most comprehensive catalogue of Judean social roles anywhere in the Hebrew Bible — it functions as an X-ray of the power structure. The trial scene in verses 13-15 places God as both prosecutor and judge, rising to 'enter into judgment' with the elders, using the language of a formal *riv* (lawsuit). The luxury catalogue in verses 18-23 is the longest itemized list of women's adornments in Scripture — at least 21 items, many of which are hapax legomena (words appearing only once in the Bible) whose precise meaning we can only approximate from archaeological and cognate evidence. The rhetorical structure creates a pointed contrast: the leaders' plunder of the poor has funded the extravagant wardrobes of the elite women. We preserved the catalogue in full without abbreviation because its sheer length is part of its rhetorical force — the excess of the list mirrors the excess it describes.*

Translation Friction: *The luxury catalogue (vv. 18-23) presented the most significant translation challenge in this chapter. Many terms are hapax legomena with uncertain meanings. We relied on cognate languages (Akkadian, Aramaic, Arabic) and archaeological parallels to render each item as specifically as possible, noting uncertainty in translator notes. The word *qesem* ('divination') in the removed-leaders list (v. 2) was difficult — it appears in a list of otherwise legitimate roles, raising the question of whether Isaiah is describing actual Judean practice or using the term loosely for 'one who gives counsel.' We rendered it straightforwardly and noted the tension. The indictment of the 'daughters of Zion' (vv. 16-24) required care: the prophetic critique targets luxury funded by injustice, not femininity itself — we ensured our notes clarify that the judgment is economic and ethical, not gendered.*

Connections: *The removal of leaders connects to 2 Kings 24:14-16 where Nebuchadnezzar literally deports Jerusalem's skilled population. The trial-of-the-elders scene (3:13-15) parallels Micah 3:1-4 and anticipates Ezekiel 34 (shepherds who devour the flock). The vineyard imagery in 3:14 anticipates Isaiah 5's vineyard parable. The luxury-to-shame reversal (3:24) connects to Lamentations 4:1-5 where Jerusalem's elite are degraded. The phrase 'grinding the face of the poor' (3:15) has become proverbial in English, though its origin here is often unrecognized.*

‡For look — the Lord, the LORD of Hosts,
is removing from Jerusalem and from Judah
every support and every prop:
the entire supply of bread
and the entire supply of water;

²the warrior and the soldier,
the judge and the prophet,
the diviner and the elder;

³the captain of fifty, the dignitary,
the counselor, the skilled craftsman,
and the expert in charms.

⁴"I will make boys their leaders,
and children will rule over them.

⁵The people will oppress one another —
each person against another,
each against his neighbor.
The young will act insolently toward the old,
the despised toward the honored.

⁶When a man grabs his brother in his father's house:
'You have a cloak —
you be our leader!
Take charge of this heap of ruins!'

⁷On that day he will protest:
'I am no healer!
In my house there is neither bread nor cloak —
do not make me leader of this people!'

⁸For Jerusalem has stumbled
and Judah has fallen,
because their speech and their deeds are against the LORD,
defying the eyes of his glory.

⁹The expression on their faces testifies against them;
they parade their sin like Sodom — they do not hide it.
Woe to them!
For they have brought disaster on themselves.

¹⁰Tell the righteous it will go well with them,
for they will eat the fruit of their deeds.

¹¹Woe to the wicked — it will go badly!
For what their hands have done will be done to them.

¹²My people — children oppress them,
and creditors rule over them.
My people, your guides mislead you
and confuse the direction of your paths.

¹³The LORD takes his stand to press charges;
he rises to judge the peoples.

¹⁴The LORD enters into judgment
with the elders of his people and their princes:
"It is you who have devoured the vineyard!
The plunder of the poor is in your houses.

¹⁵What gives you the right to crush my people
and grind the faces of the poor?" —
declares the Lord GOD of Hosts.

¹⁶And the LORD said:
"Because the daughters of Zion are haughty
and walk with outstretched necks,
flirting with their eyes,
walking with dainty steps,
jingling the anklets on their feet —

¹⁷the Lord will afflict the scalps of the daughters of Zion with sores,
and the LORD will lay bare their foreheads.

¹⁸On that day the Lord will strip away the finery:
the anklets, the headbands, and the crescent pendants;

¹⁹the earrings, the bracelets, and the veils;

²⁰the headdresses, the ankle chains, the sashes,
the perfume bottles, and the amulets;

²¹the signet rings and the nose rings; ²²the fine robes, the cloaks, the shawls, and the purses; ²³the mirrors, the linen
garments, the turbans, and the outer veils.

²⁴And it will be:
instead of perfume — rotteness;
instead of a sash — a rope;
instead of styled hair — baldness;
instead of fine clothing — sackcloth;
branding instead of beauty.

²⁵Your men will fall by the sword,
and your warriors in battle.

²⁶Her gates will lament and mourn;
she will sit on the ground, emptied out.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double divine title ha-Adon YHWH Tseva'ot ('the Lord, the LORD of Hosts') signals maximum authority. The wordplay mash'en u-mash'enah ('support and prop') uses masculine and feminine forms of the same root to mean 'every kind of support whatever.' The most basic supports — bread and water — are named first, indicating siege conditions. This verse introduces the comprehensive stripping that follows.
2. The catalogue begins with military and civil leadership. The inclusion of qosem ('diviner') in this list is surprising — divination was prohibited in Deuteronomy 18:10. Either Isaiah is describing actual Judean practice (divination existed despite the prohibition) or the term is used loosely for someone who gives guidance. The navi ('prophet') and the qosem ('diviner') are paired, perhaps contrasting legitimate and illegitimate spiritual counsel.

3. The 'captain of fifty' (sar chamishim) is a mid-level military officer. The nesu panim ('one lifted in face,' i.e., dignitary, respected person) refers to someone of social standing. The chakham charashim ('skilled craftsman') includes both artisans and possibly those skilled in secret arts. The nevon lachash ('expert in charms/whispers') may refer to a snake charmer, an enchanter, or simply one skilled in persuasive speech. The breadth of the list — from generals to charmers — means every social role that holds society together will be removed.
4. God now speaks in first person, claiming direct agency in the social collapse. The ne'arim ('boys, youths') and ta'alulim ('children, infants, capricious ones') replacing competent leaders is the ultimate sign of societal inversion. The word ta'alulim may also carry the sense of 'capricious, arbitrary' — leaders who act on whim rather than wisdom.
5. Social order collapses into mutual oppression. The verb niggas ('be oppressed, be driven') describes a society of universal exploitation. The reversal of age-based hierarchy (young over old) and status-based hierarchy (despised over honored) represents total social inversion. In ancient Israelite culture, respect for elders was foundational to communal life — its loss signals civilizational collapse.
6. The scene is grimly comic: leadership is so depleted that anyone with a decent garment is pressed into service. The simlah ('cloak, outer garment') is the minimum qualification — merely appearing to have resources. The word makhshelah ('ruin, stumbling block, heap of rubble') is what the reluctant leader is asked to govern. The desperation of the request reveals the depth of the crisis.
7. The verb yissa ('he will lift up [his voice]') introduces a formal refusal. The word chovesh ('one who binds up, healer') is the man's protest that he cannot repair what is broken. The absence of bread and cloak in his own house means he was pressed into service on false pretenses — he has nothing. The refusal to lead is itself a symptom of social collapse: no one wants responsibility for the ruins.
8. The verbs kashla ('stumble') and nafil ('fall') form a progression from staggering to collapse. The phrase lamrot einei khevodo ('to defy/rebel against the eyes of his glory') is extraordinarily bold — they sin directly in the face of God's manifest presence (kavod). The word kavod ('glory, weight, presence') is one of Isaiah's central theological terms, referring to the visible manifestation of God's reality.
9. The hakkarat peneihem ('the recognition/expression of their faces') means their guilt is written on their faces — they cannot conceal it. The Sodom comparison from 1:10 returns: like Sodom, they flaunt their sin publicly. The verb higgidu ('they declared, announced') combined with lo khichedu ('they did not conceal') creates a picture of brazen, unembarrassed wickedness. The final clause gamelu lahem ra'ah ('they dealt evil to themselves') states the self-destructive nature of sin.
10. A brief word of assurance amid the judgment: the tsaddiq ('righteous person') will experience the outcome of their choices. The agricultural metaphor (eating fruit) connects actions to consequences organically — righteousness produces life-giving results. This verse and the next create a compact wisdom saying embedded in the prophetic oracle.
11. The mirror-structure with verse 10 is precise: righteous/good versus wicked/bad, eating fruit versus receiving the work of their hands. The principle of measure-for-measure (middah ke-neged middah) underlies both verses. The gemul ('recompense, dealing') of their hands will return upon them — their own actions become their punishment.
12. The Hebrew me'olel could mean 'child' or 'gleaners/those who deal severely.' The word nashim could be 'women' or a participle from nashah ('creditors'). Given the context of economic exploitation, we rendered as 'creditors' rather than 'women' — the verse indicts economic oppressors, not gender. The me'ashrim ('those who call you blessed, guides') are false leaders who encourage the nation on a destructive path. The verb bille'u ('swallow up, confuse') means they have devoured the way forward.
13. The verbs nitsav ('takes his stand') and omed ('stands, rises') are courtroom language — the plaintiff rises to present his case. The riv ('lawsuit') connects back to 1:2 where heaven and earth were summoned as witnesses. Now the formal trial begins. The word amim ('peoples') may refer to Israel's own internal groups (tribes, classes) rather than foreign nations.
14. The elders and princes — the leadership class — are the defendants. The kerem ('vineyard') represents the people of Israel (as Isaiah 5 will make explicit). The leaders were supposed to tend the vineyard; instead they consumed it. The word gezelat ('plunder, robbery') is violent language — the poor have not merely been neglected but actively robbed, and the evidence (their stolen goods) is in the leaders' own houses.
15. The verb tedake'u ('you crush') describes physical destruction. The phrase penei aniyyim tit-chanu ('you grind the faces of the poor') is one of Isaiah's most visceral images — the poor are put through a mill, their faces ground like grain. The indictment is personal: 'my people' (ammi) — the leaders are destroying people who belong to God. The triple divine title ne'um Adonai YHWH Tseva'ot seals the verdict with maximum authority.
16. The 'daughters of Zion' (benot Tsiyon) are the elite women of Jerusalem. The description is deliberately visual: necks stretched high in pride, eyes fluttering (mesaqerot means 'deceiving, flashing, flirting'), steps deliberately dainty (tafof means 'tripping along, taking small steps'), and anklets jingling (te'akkasnah from ekhes, 'anklet'). The critique targets not women in general but the conspicuous display of wealth extracted from the poor (connecting to vv. 14-15). Their luxury is built on plunder.
17. The verb sippach ('to afflict with scabs/sores') targets the head — the very part held high in pride (v. 16). The word pathhen ('their foreheads' or 'their secret parts') is debated — it may refer to the forehead (exposed by shaving) or to nakedness. Either way, the punishment matches the crime: what was displayed in pride will be displayed in shame. The stripping of hair was a mark of captivity and humiliation in the ancient Near East.
18. The luxury catalogue begins. The akhasim ('anklets') were the jingling ornaments of verse 16. The shevissim ('headbands, sun-ornaments') and saharonim ('crescents, crescent-shaped pendants') may have had associations with sun and moon worship. Each item removed represents a layer of constructed identity peeled away. Archaeological finds from Judean sites confirm the existence of crescent-shaped jewelry in this period.

19. The netifot ('pendants, earrings') literally means 'drops' — hanging jewelry. The sherot ('bracelets, chains') were arm ornaments. The re'alot ('veils, shawls') were face coverings or flowing scarves. The rapid listing without verbs creates a breathless catalogue effect.
20. The pe'erim ('headdresses, turbans') are elaborate head wrappings. The tse'adot ('ankle chains, step-chains') connected the anklets to restrict stride length, enforcing the dainty walk. The qishurim ('sashes, bands') were decorative waist ties. The battei ha-nefesh ('houses of the soul/breath') are almost certainly perfume containers — small bottles worn at the neck holding scented oil. The lechashim ('whispered charms, amulets') were objects inscribed with incantations.
21. The tabba'ot ('rings, signet rings') were both decorative and functional — signet rings were used to seal documents and represented legal authority. The nizmei ha-af ('nose rings') were common adornment in the ancient Near East, worn in the nostril or on the septum.
22. The machalatsot ('fine garments, festal robes') were clothing reserved for special occasions. The ma'atafot ('cloaks, outer wraps') were heavy outer garments. The mitpachot ('shawls, wide garments') were large wrapping cloths. The charitim ('purses, bags') were small carriers for valuables. The catalogue moves from jewelry to clothing to accessories, covering the entire wardrobe.
23. The gilyonim ('mirrors' or 'transparent garments') is debated — either polished metal mirrors or see-through linen. The sedinim ('fine linen undergarments') were luxury fabrics. The tsenifot ('turbans, wrapped headgear') were elaborate head wrappings. The redidim ('outer veils, wide scarves') were flowing outer garments. The catalogue concludes with 21+ items, the sheer length functioning as a rhetorical indictment of excess.
24. Five reversals deliver the punishment: perfume becomes decay (maq, 'rotteness, stench'), the decorative sash becomes a prisoner's rope (niqpah), elaborate hairstyling becomes the shaved head of a captive (qarchah), rich garments become the sackcloth of mourning, and beauty (yofi) is replaced by ki ('branding, burning') — the mark seared onto slaves and prisoners. Each reversal precisely targets one of the luxuries catalogued above. The five-fold structure is complete and devastating.
25. The address shifts back to Daughter Zion personified. The metayikh ('your men') and gevuratek ('your strength, your warriors') will be destroyed in warfare — the luxury funded by injustice cannot be defended when judgment comes. The military collapse connects back to the removal of warriors in 3:2.
26. The personification reaches its climax: Zion's gates — the places of commerce, law, and social gathering — mourn as if alive. The final image is of a woman stripped of everything, sitting in the dirt. The verb niqqatah ('emptied, cleaned out, desolate') describes total depletion. The seated posture on the ground is the classic mourning position (compare Lamentations 1:1, 2:10). The chapter that began with God removing every support ends with the city sitting in the dust with nothing.

4

Summary: *Isaiah 4 opens with the desperate aftermath of the judgment described in chapter 3: seven women seize one man, offering to provide their own food and clothing if he will only let them bear his name and remove their disgrace. The chapter then pivots dramatically to the eschatological hope of the Branch of the LORD, the cleansing of Jerusalem's bloodguilt through a spirit of judgment and burning, and the restoration of God's protective glory-presence — a cloud by day and fire by night — over Mount Zion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This short chapter executes one of the most dramatic rhetorical pivots in Isaiah: from the absolute nadir of judgment (women begging for a husband's name) to the absolute summit of hope (God's glory canopy over Zion). The 'Branch of the LORD' (tsemach YHWH) in verse 2 introduces a term that becomes a major messianic title in Jeremiah 23:5 and Zechariah 3:8, 6:12. The cloud-and-fire imagery in verse 5 deliberately echoes the Exodus pillar of cloud and fire (Exodus 13:21-22), casting the future restoration as a new Exodus. The word chuppah ('canopy') in verse 5 is the same word used for a wedding canopy, suggesting that the restored relationship between God and Zion is nuptial — God remarries the city that had become a prostitute (1:21). The phrase 'written for life' (katuv lachayyim, v. 3) anticipates the concept of the Book of Life that appears in Daniel 12:1 and Revelation 20:12. We rendered this chapter with particular attention to the Exodus typology, ensuring the cloud/fire/tabernacle language clearly evokes the wilderness period.*

Translation Friction: *The tsemach YHWH ('Branch of the LORD') in verse 2 required a decision about whether to render it as a messianic title or as agricultural imagery. The Hebrew allows both — tsemach literally means 'sprout, growth, what springs up.' We capitalized 'Branch' to signal its theological weight as a title while preserving the organic imagery in the notes. The phrase ruach mishpat ve-ruach ba'er ('spirit of judgment and spirit of burning,' v. 4) could mean 'a wind of judgment and a wind of burning' (natural phenomena) or 'the Spirit of judgment and the Spirit of burning' (divine action). We rendered with lowercase 'spirit' and noted the ambiguity, since the Hebrew ruach does not distinguish between wind, spirit, and Spirit.*

The rare word chuppah ('canopy,' v. 5) and sukkah ('shelter,' v. 6) required notes clarifying their Exodus and festival associations.

Connections: The Branch of the LORD connects forward to Jeremiah 23:5 ('a righteous Branch'), Zechariah 3:8 and 6:12, and is widely read as messianic in both Jewish and Christian traditions. The cloud and fire echo Exodus 13:21-22 and the glory-cloud over the tabernacle in Exodus 40:34-38. The washing of Zion's blood (v. 4) connects to Ezekiel 16:9 where God washes Jerusalem. The sukkah ('shelter') in verse 6 evokes the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot) and the wilderness period. The 'Book of Life' concept in verse 3 connects to Exodus 32:32-33, Daniel 12:1, Philippians 4:3, and Revelation 20:12. The seven women of verse 1 complete the women's judgment from 3:16-4:1, creating a continuous literary unit.

¹On that day seven women will seize one man, saying,
"We will eat our own bread
and wear our own clothing —
just let us be called by your name.
Take away our disgrace!"

²On that day the Branch of the LORD will be beautiful and glorious,
and the fruit of the land will be the pride and splendor
of the survivors of Israel.

³And the one who remains in Zion
and the one who is left in Jerusalem
will be called holy —
everyone written for life in Jerusalem.

⁴when the Lord has washed away the filth of the daughters of Zion
and rinsed the bloodstains of Jerusalem from her midst
by a spirit of judgment and a spirit of burning.

⁵Then the LORD will create
over every site on Mount Zion and over her assemblies
a cloud of smoke by day
and the glow of a blazing fire by night.
For over all the glory there will be a canopy.

⁶And there will be a shelter for shade from the heat by day,
and a refuge and a hiding place
from the storm and the rain.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse concludes the judgment section of chapter 3 rather than beginning a new theme. The number seven represents completeness — the male population has been so devastated (3:25) that seven women compete for one surviving man. Their offer to provide their own food and clothing waives the husband's legal obligations under Exodus 21:10, revealing extreme desperation. The cherpah ('disgrace, reproach') is the social shame of being unmarried and childless in ancient Israelite culture. The verse functions as the absolute low point before the redemptive pivot in verse 2.
2. The phrase tsemach YHWH ('Branch of the LORD') operates on two levels simultaneously: agricultural (the land's produce will again be bountiful after devastation) and messianic (a future figure will 'sprout' from the LORD). Jeremiah 23:5, 33:15, and Zechariah 3:8, 6:12 develop tsemach as a royal messianic title. The words tsevi ('beauty, ornament'), kavod ('glory'), ga'on ('pride, majesty'), and tif'eret ('splendor, glory') pile up four terms of magnificent description. The peleitat Yisra'el ('survivors, escapees of Israel') is the remnant — those who survive the judgment described in chapters 1-3.

3. The surviving remnant is described with the same word — qadosh ('holy') — used for God himself. This is a remarkable theological claim: the purified community will share God's defining attribute. The phrase katur lachayyim ('written for life') introduces the concept of a divine register of the living — a proto-Book of Life. The passive voice ('will be called') indicates that this holiness is divinely conferred, not self-achieved. The double reference to Zion and Jerusalem emphasizes the specific geographic location of the restoration.
4. The washing imagery reverses 1:15 ('your hands are full of blood') and 1:16 ('wash yourselves'). God does for Jerusalem what she could not do for herself. The tso'ah ('filth, excrement') is the strongest word for impurity — the luxury that masked corruption is now named for what it truly was. The demei Yerushalayim ('bloodstains of Jerusalem') refers to the social violence of 1:15, 21. The instruments of cleansing — ruach mishpat ('spirit/wind of justice') and ruach ba'er ('spirit/wind of burning') — combine legal and purificatory imagery. The ambiguity of ruach (wind? spirit? the Spirit?) is intentional in the Hebrew; we preserve it with lowercase 'spirit.'
5. The verb bara ('create') is the same verb used in Genesis 1:1 — God does not merely restore but creates something new over Zion. The cloud by day and fire by night directly echo the Exodus pillar (Exodus 13:21-22), casting the restoration as a new Exodus. The word makhon ('site, established place') may refer to every household or every foundation on Mount Zion — the glory-presence covers the entire community, not just the Temple. The miqra'eha ('her assemblies, her convocations') suggests that the gathered worship community is the occasion for the manifestation. The chuppah ('canopy') over all the kavod ('glory') means that God's manifest presence is both displayed and sheltered — visible but protected.
6. The sukkah ('shelter, booth') recalls the temporary structures of the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot) and the wilderness wandering shelters. In 1:8, Daughter Zion was compared to a lonely sukkah in a vineyard — now God himself provides the sukkah. The reversal is complete: what was an image of vulnerability becomes an image of divine protection. The four functions (shade from heat, refuge, hiding place from storm and rain) describe comprehensive protection from every threat. The chapter ends not with a dramatic climax but with domestic comfort — God's restored people are simply safe. This quiet ending after three chapters of escalating judgment is itself a profound theological statement: the goal of all God's work is a sheltered people at home with their God.

5

Summary: *Isaiah sings a love song on behalf of his Beloved about a vineyard that, despite every advantage, produced only worthless fruit. God identifies the vineyard as Israel and Judah, then pronounces six woe oracles against the social sins corroding the nation — land-grabbing, drunkenness, moral inversion, self-conceit, perversion of justice, and heroism in vice. The chapter climaxes with a terrifying vision of a distant nation summoned by God's whistle to execute judgment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vineyard song (vv. 1-7) is a masterpiece of prophetic rhetoric: Isaiah draws the audience in as sympathetic judges before springing the trap — they are the failed vineyard. Verse 7 contains one of the most celebrated wordplays in the Hebrew Bible: God looked for mishpat (justice) but found mispach (bloodshed), for tsedaqah (righteousness) but heard tse'eqah (a cry of anguish). The six woe oracles (hoy) form a devastating catalog of covenant violation. The outstretched hand refrain (v. 25, repeated from 9:12, 17, 21; 10:4) links this chapter to a larger literary unit. The final imagery of the approaching army (vv. 26-30) is among the most cinematic in prophetic literature.*

Translation Friction: *The central wordplay of verse 7 is untranslatable: the near-homophone pairs mishpat/mispach and tsedaqah/tse'eqah produce a devastating phonetic shock in Hebrew that no English equivalent can reproduce. We preserved the wordplay in transliteration within the notes and rendered the semantic contrast as clearly as possible. The term sorek (v. 2), a choice variety of vine, carries agricultural specificity that modern readers may miss. The woe oracles use hoy, which is simultaneously a funeral cry and a curse — 'woe' captures the judgment dimension but loses the funeral connotation.*

Connections: *The vineyard metaphor recurs in Isaiah 27:2-6 (the restored vineyard) and is taken up by Jesus in the Parable of the Wicked Tenants (Matt 21:33-46, Mark 12:1-12), which directly echoes Isaiah 5. The woe oracles anticipate the more extensive woe series in Isaiah 28-33. The outstretched hand refrain connects to Isaiah 9:8-10:4. Psalm 80:8-16 uses the same vine/vineyard imagery for Israel. The 'whistle for nations' motif (v. 26) reappears in Isaiah 7:18.*

Let me sing for my beloved —
a song of my loved one about his vineyard.
My beloved had a vineyard

on a fertile hillside.

²He dug it up and cleared its stones,
and planted it with the choicest vines.
He built a watchtower in its center
and even cut out a winepress.
He waited for it to yield good grapes —
but it yielded worthless ones.

³And now, inhabitants of Jerusalem
and people of Judah,
judge between me and my vineyard.

⁴What more could have been done for my vineyard
that I have not already done?
Why, when I waited for good grapes,
did it yield worthless ones?

⁵And now, let me tell you
what I am about to do to my vineyard:
I will remove its hedge,
and it will be devoured.
I will break down its wall,
and it will be trampled.

⁶I will make it a wasteland —
it will not be pruned or hoed,
and thorns and briars will overrun it.
I will command the clouds
to withhold their rain from it.

⁷For the vineyard of the LORD of Hosts is the house of Israel,
and the people of Judah are the planting of his delight.
He waited for justice — but look: bloodshed!
For righteousness — but listen: a cry of anguish!

⁸Woe to those who join house to house,
who add field to field,
until there is no space left
and you dwell alone in the land.

⁹In my hearing, the LORD of Hosts has declared:
"Surely many houses will become desolate,
great and fine houses left without anyone living in them."

¹⁰For ten acres of vineyard will produce only one bath of wine,
and a homer of seed will yield but an ephah of grain.

¹¹Woe to those who rise early in the morning
chasing strong drink,
who linger late into the evening
while wine inflames them!

¹²Lyre and harp, tambourine and flute
and wine fill their feasts —
but the work of the LORD they do not regard,
and the deeds of his hands they do not see.

¹³Therefore my people go into exile
for lack of understanding.
Their nobles are starving,
and their masses are parched with thirst.

¹⁴Therefore Sheol has enlarged its appetite
and opened its mouth beyond all limit.
Down go her splendor and her crowds,
her tumult and her revelers.

¹⁵Humanity is brought low,
each person humbled,
and the eyes of the arrogant are cast down.

¹⁶But the LORD of Hosts is exalted through justice,
and the Holy God shows himself holy through righteousness.

¹⁷Then lambs will graze as in their own pasture,
and strangers will feed among the ruins of the wealthy.

¹⁸Woe to those who drag iniquity with cords of deceit,
and sin as with cart ropes!

¹⁹-- who say, "Let him hurry!
Let him speed up his work so we can see it!
Let the plan of the Holy One of Israel
draw near and come, so we may know it!"

²⁰Woe to those who call evil good
and good evil,
who put darkness for light
and light for darkness,
who put bitter for sweet
and sweet for bitter!

²¹Woe to those who are wise in their own eyes
and clever in their own estimation!

²²Woe to those who are heroes at drinking wine,
champions at mixing strong drink!

²³-- who acquit the guilty for a bribe
and strip the innocent of their rights!

²⁴Therefore, as a tongue of fire devours stubble
and dry grass collapses in the flame,
so their root will rot
and their blossom blow away like dust --
for they have rejected the Torah of the LORD of Hosts
and despised the word of the Holy One of Israel.

²⁵Therefore the anger of the LORD blazes against his people.
He has stretched out his hand against them and struck them;
the mountains trembled,
and their corpses lay like refuse in the streets.
For all this, his anger has not turned back,
and his hand is still stretched out.

²⁶He raises a signal flag for a distant nation
and whistles for it from the ends of the earth --
and look, it comes swiftly, in haste!

²⁷Not one of them is weary, not one stumbles;
none slumber, none sleep.
No belt is loosened at the waist,
no sandal-strap is broken.

²⁸Their arrows are sharpened,
all their bows are strung.
Their horses' hooves are like flint,
their chariot wheels like a whirlwind.

²⁹Their roar is like a lioness;
they growl like young lions.
They snarl and seize the prey
and carry it off -- and no one can rescue.

³⁰On that day they will roar over it
like the roaring of the sea.
And if one looks to the land -- only darkness and distress;
even the light is swallowed by its clouds.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening uses terms of intimate love: yedidi and dodi. These are the same terms found in the Song of Songs, creating a deliberate echo of love poetry before the devastating turn.
1. 'A fertile hillside' renders qeren ben-shamen, literally 'a horn, a son of fatness/oil.' The 'horn' refers to a projecting hillside, and 'son of oil' is an idiom for rich, fertile soil. The vineyard had every natural advantage.
2. The verse piles up five verbs of painstaking labor: dug, cleared stones, planted, built, cut out. This accumulation emphasizes the extravagance of care lavished on the vineyard before the devastating 'but.'

2. Sorek is a specific premium variety of vine, possibly red-skinned, known from the Sorek Valley. It represents the best available planting stock.
2. Be'ushim means 'stinking things' or 'rotten grapes' — not merely small or sour fruit, but actively putrid. The contrast between sorek and be'ushim is maximal: the best input produced the worst output.
3. The shift is stunning: the singer suddenly addresses the audience directly and asks them to render a verdict. This is the same rhetorical trap Nathan used with David (2 Sam 12:1-7) — the audience will condemn themselves.
3. The imperative shiftu ('judge') invites the hearers into a legal proceeding, a covenant lawsuit (rib pattern). They are being asked to serve as judges in a case where they are the defendants.
4. The rhetorical question is devastating: God has exhausted every possible provision. The vineyard's failure cannot be attributed to any deficiency in the owner's care. The audience, still positioned as judges, must acknowledge this.
4. The repetition of the contrast from v. 2 — anavim (good grapes) vs. be'ushim (worthless grapes) — drives the point home with painful clarity.
5. The verdict falls. The vineyard had two layers of protection: a mesukah (hedge, thorn barrier) and a geder (stone wall). Removing both exposes it completely — to animals, to invaders, to destruction.
5. The language of removal and exposure anticipates the exile: God will withdraw his protective presence from Israel, leaving it vulnerable to foreign powers.
6. The climax of the verdict comes at the end: 'I will command the clouds.' No human vineyard owner can command weather. The singer's identity as God is suddenly, shockingly revealed. The love song was always a divine oracle.
6. Shamir vashayit ('thorns and briers') is a recurring pair in Isaiah (7:23-25; 9:17; 10:17; 27:4), functioning almost as a signature phrase for desolation and divine judgment.
7. This verse contains the most famous wordplay in the Hebrew Bible. The pairs are: mishpat/mispach — 'justice' vs. 'bloodshed,' differing by one consonant and one vowel; tse'daqah/tse'eqah — 'righteousness' vs. 'a cry of anguish,' again differing by a single consonant. The phonetic near-identity makes the moral distance unbearable.
7. Mispach is a rare word, occurring only here. It likely means 'bloodshed' or 'scab/wound,' though some connect it to a root meaning 'to pour out.' The KJV's 'oppression' is possible but 'bloodshed' better captures the violence implicit in the sound-contrast with mishpat.
7. Tse'eqah is the cry of the oppressed — the same word used for Israel's cry under Egyptian slavery (Exod 3:7). God hears the same cry rising from within his own people, this time caused by Israel itself.
7. The identification is now complete: the vineyard = Israel, the owner = God, the worthless grapes = injustice and oppression. The audience who judged the vineyard has judged itself.
8. The first woe oracle targets land-grabbing — the consolidation of ancestral land holdings by the wealthy. Under the Torah's land laws (Lev 25), land belonged ultimately to God and was to remain within families. The accumulation denounced here violates the fundamental economic structure of the covenant.
8. Hoy is simultaneously a funeral cry ('Alas!') and a prophetic curse ('Woe!'). Its dual register means Isaiah is both mourning and condemning — the woe is already a funeral for the living.
8. The shift from third person ('those who') to second person ('you dwell') is present in the Hebrew and creates a sudden, accusatory directness.
9. 'In my hearing' — Isaiah claims direct audition of the divine decree. The judgment fits the crime precisely: those who accumulated houses will see those very houses stand empty.
9. The irony is pointed: the land-grabbers sought to dwell 'alone in the land' (v. 8); they will get their wish, but as desolation rather than luxury.
10. The measurements make the curse concrete: a bath is about six gallons — a pitiful yield from ten acres. A homer of seed (roughly six bushels) will yield only an ephah (about half a bushel) — a tenfold loss. The land itself will refuse to cooperate with those who abused it.
10. The agricultural curse echoes Deuteronomy 28:38-40 and Leviticus 26:20, connecting this judgment to the covenant curse tradition.
11. The second woe targets those who organize their entire day around alcohol — from dawn to dusk. The verb radaf ('to chase, pursue') normally describes hunting prey or pursuing enemies; applied to drink, it conveys obsessive, relentless craving.
11. Shekar ('strong drink') refers to fermented beverages other than grape wine — possibly beer, date wine, or other intoxicants.
12. The catalog of instruments (five items) creates a sense of lavish sensory indulgence. The problem is not music or celebration per se but the willful blindness to God's activity in history. They are anesthetized by pleasure.
12. The phrase po'al YHWH ('the work of the LORD') refers to God's acts in history — both past deliverances and present judgments. The revelers are oblivious to both.
13. The prophetic perfect — galah ('has gone into exile') uses a past tense to describe a future event, so certain is it in God's decree. Exile is the ultimate covenant curse (Lev 26:33; Deut 28:36).

- 13.** 'For lack of understanding' (mibli-da'at) — the word da'at (knowledge) here means covenantal knowledge, awareness of God and his requirements. The ignorance is willful, the result of the pleasure-seeking in v. 12.
- 14.** Sheol is personified as a ravenous beast with an insatiable mouth — a striking image of death's hunger. The KJV's 'hell' is misleading; Sheol in the Hebrew Bible is the realm of the dead, not a place of punishment in the later Christian sense.
- 14.** The four items that descend — splendor, crowds, tumult, revelers — correspond to the excesses cataloged in the preceding verses. Everything the elite celebrated will be swallowed.
- 15.** The leveling is total: adam (humanity in general), ish (each individual), and the 'eyes of the lofty' (the proud elite specifically). No one escapes the humiliation.
- 15.** This verse anticipates the great theme of Isaiah 2:11-17, where everything exalted among humans is brought low and the LORD alone is exalted.
- 16.** A magnificent theological statement: God's exaltation comes not through raw power but through mishpat (justice) and tsedaqah (righteousness) — the very qualities Israel lacked (v. 7). When God judges, his holiness is displayed.
- 16.** The verb niqdash ('shows himself holy') is the nifal of qadash — God is sanctified, set apart, revealed as holy precisely through his righteous acts. Holiness and justice are inseparable in Isaiah's theology.
- 17.** The image is pastoral desolation: where mansions once stood, lambs now graze and wanderers pick through the rubble. The estates of the land-grabbers (v. 8) are reduced to sheep-pasture.
- 17.** The Hebrew of this verse is difficult; mechim ('fat ones') may refer to the fattened livestock of the rich or to the rich themselves. 'The wealthy' captures the social dimension.
- 18.** The third woe oracle. The image is of people yoked to their sin like draft animals — but willingly. They actively haul their transgression behind them, bound to it by their own deceptions.
- 18.** The progression from 'cords' to 'cart ropes' suggests escalation: what began as thin deceptions has become thick, heavy bondage.
- 19.** The taunt reveals brazen contempt: the sinners mock God's ability to act, daring him to fulfill his threats. This is not atheism but defiance — they acknowledge God exists but deny he will intervene.
- 19.** 'The Holy One of Israel' (Qedosh Yisra'el) is Isaiah's signature title for God, appearing over 25 times in the book. Using the full title in the mouths of the mockers deepens the irony: they invoke the very holiness that will destroy them.
- 20.** The fourth woe oracle is perhaps the most fundamental: the complete inversion of moral categories. Three pairs — evil/good, darkness/light, bitter/sweet — cover the moral, intellectual, and sensory dimensions of human experience. When every standard is reversed, judgment becomes impossible and society collapses.
- 20.** The triplet structure (moral, visual, gustatory) suggests total perversion — every faculty of discernment has been corrupted.
- 21.** The fifth woe — the briefest and sharpest. Self-referential wisdom is no wisdom at all; it has cut itself off from its source (cf. Prov 3:7, 'Do not be wise in your own eyes'). The compact form emphasizes the sufficiency of the indictment: nothing more needs to be said.
- 22.** The sixth woe oracle drips with sarcasm. The terms gibborim ('heroes, mighty warriors') and anshei-chayil ('men of valor') are military vocabulary applied to drinking prowess. Israel's 'warriors' have redirected their strength from battle to banquets.
- 22.** The irony deepens in context: a real army is approaching (vv. 26-30) while Israel's 'heroes' are drunk.
- 23.** This verse completes the sixth woe by revealing its full scope: these 'heroes' are also corrupt judges who sell verdicts. The connection between drunkenness and injustice may be causal (impaired judgment) or merely characteristic (the same moral collapse produces both).
- 23.** The wordplay continues from v. 7: tsidqat tsaddiqim ('the righteousness of the righteous') — the very thing God sought from his vineyard is now being actively stripped away by its leaders.
- 24.** The sentence of judgment uses two images of total destruction: fire consuming chaff (instantaneous) and a plant rotting from root to blossom (progressive). Both above-ground and below-ground destruction are named — nothing survives.
- 24.** The cause is stated with devastating clarity: they rejected the Torah (instruction, law) of the LORD and despised the word (imrat) of the Holy One of Israel. The two verbs — ma'asu ('rejected, refused') and ni'etsu ('despised, scorned') — are acts of deliberate contempt, not ignorance.
- 25.** The refrain 'his hand is still stretched out' (od yado netuyah) appears here and in 9:12, 17, 21 and 10:4. It functions as a structural marker linking Isaiah 5 to 9:8-10:4, suggesting these passages form a single literary unit. The hand that was stretched out to deliver in the Exodus is now stretched out to strike.
- 25.** The image of corpses as 'refuse in the streets' (kasuchah beqerev chutsot) is deliberately dehumanizing — the dead are treated as garbage. This was one of the most horrifying fates in the ancient Near East, where proper burial was essential.
- 26.** The imagery shifts to military mobilization. God 'whistles' (sharaq) for a foreign army the way a beekeeper whistles for bees (cf. 7:18). The distant nation is not named — it could be Assyria, Babylon, or any instrument of divine judgment. The ambiguity makes the threat timeless.

26. The signal flag (nes) was raised on a hilltop to muster troops. God himself serves as the supreme commander, summoning nations as his army.
27. The description of the approaching army emphasizes superhuman endurance and readiness. The fourfold negation ('not weary, not stumbling, not slumbering, not sleeping') creates a relentless cadence. Even their equipment is in perfect order — belts tight, sandals intact. This is an army that never stops.
27. The contrast with Israel's 'heroes' (v. 22), drunk and staggering, is devastating.
28. The catalog of military preparedness continues: arrows already sharpened, bows already strung (bent and ready to fire), horses with hooves hard as flint (capable of sustained advance over rocky terrain), chariot wheels spinning like a storm.
28. The imagery is cinematic, almost journalistic — Isaiah describes what an observer would see as this unstoppable force approaches.
29. The lion imagery completes the portrait of the approaching army. The progression from roar to growl to snarl to seizure mimics the hunting sequence of a predator. The final phrase — 'and no one can rescue' (ein matsil) — is the theological point: when God sends judgment, no human power can prevent it.
29. The Hebrew uses two different words for lion: lavi (mature lioness) and kephirim (young lions in their prime). Together they represent the full lethal capacity of the pride.
30. The chapter ends in total darkness — a deliberate inversion of creation. Where Genesis 1 moved from darkness to light, Isaiah 5 moves from light to darkness. The word choshek ('darkness') echoes the moral darkness of v. 20 (calling darkness 'light').
30. 'The roaring of the sea' evokes primordial chaos (cf. Gen 1:2) — the ordered world is being un-created by judgment.
30. The final image — light darkened by clouds — is both literal (the dust and smoke of an approaching army) and metaphorical (the extinguishing of hope).

6

Summary: *In the year King Uzziah dies, Isaiah sees the LORD seated on a high and exalted throne, his robe filling the temple. Seraphim hover above him crying 'Holy, holy, holy.' Overwhelmed by his own uncleanness, Isaiah is purified by a burning coal from the altar. When God asks 'Whom shall I send?', Isaiah volunteers and receives the devastating commission: preach so that the people's hearts grow dull, their ears heavy, and their eyes sealed shut — until the land lies in utter ruin.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most theologically dense chapters in the Hebrew Bible. The trisagion — 'Holy, holy, holy' — is the only attribute of God repeated three times in succession anywhere in Scripture, establishing holiness as God's supreme and defining characteristic. The seraphim, found nowhere else in the Bible, are fiery beings who shield themselves from God's glory even as they proclaim it. Isaiah's cry 'Woe is me, for I am undone' (oy-li ki-nidmeti) uses the same 'woe' (hoy) he has been pronouncing on others in chapter 5 — the prophet turns the curse on himself. The hardening commission (vv. 9-10) is quoted more often in the New Testament than almost any other Old Testament passage (Matt 13:14-15; Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10; John 12:40; Acts 28:26-27; Rom 11:8), making it a hinge text between the testaments.*

Translation Friction: *The seraphim pose a translation challenge: the word seraphim literally means 'burning ones,' but we retain the transliteration because no English word captures both their fiery nature and their distinct identity as a class of celestial beings. The hardening commission (vv. 9-10) uses imperative verbs — 'Make fat... make heavy... seal shut' — which in Hebrew are causative commands. Whether God is commanding Isaiah to cause spiritual blindness or predicting its inevitable result is debated, but the grammar is unambiguously imperative. We rendered the imperatives as imperatives. The stump metaphor in verse 13 is textually uncertain; the MT, LXX, and Dead Sea Scrolls differ, and we followed the MT while noting the difficulty.*

Connections: *The throne vision parallels Micaiah's vision (1 Kgs 22:19-23) and Ezekiel's inaugural vision (Ezek 1). The trisagion is echoed in Revelation 4:8. The hardening commission is directly quoted six times in the New Testament. The coal from the altar connects to the Day of Atonement ritual (Lev 16:12-13). The 'holy seed' of v. 13 anticipates the remnant theology developed throughout Isaiah (10:20-22; 11:1, 10). The stump image connects to the 'shoot from the stump of Jesse' in 11:1.*

¹In the year that King Uzziah died,
I saw the Lord seated on a throne, high and exalted,
and the hem of his robe filled the temple.

²Seraphim stood above him,
each with six wings:
with two they covered their faces,
with two they covered their feet,
and with two they flew.

³And they called to one another and said:
"Holy, holy, holy is the LORD of Hosts!
The whole earth is full of his glory!"

⁴The foundations of the thresholds shook
at the sound of their voices,
and the temple filled with smoke.

⁵Then I said, "Woe to me! I am ruined!
For I am a man of unclean lips,
and I live among a people of unclean lips --
and my eyes have seen the King,
the LORD of Hosts!"

⁶Then one of the seraphim flew to me,
holding a burning coal in his hand
that he had taken with tongs from the altar.

⁷He touched it to my mouth and said,
"Look -- this has touched your lips.
Your guilt is removed,
and your sin is atoned for."

⁸Then I heard the voice of the Lord saying,
"Whom shall I send?
And who will go for us?"
And I said, "Here I am. Send me."

⁹He said, "Go and tell this people:
'Keep on hearing, but do not understand.
Keep on seeing, but do not perceive.'

¹⁰Make the heart of this people dull,
make their ears heavy,
and seal shut their eyes --
lest they see with their eyes,
hear with their ears,
understand with their hearts,
and turn and be healed."

¹¹Then I said, "How long, Lord?"

And he answered:

"Until cities lie in ruins without inhabitants,
and houses stand empty of people,
and the land is utterly desolate,

¹²and the LORD has sent the people far away,
and the forsaken places are many throughout the land."

¹³And though a tenth remains in it,
it too will be burned again.
But as a terebinth or an oak
whose stump remains when it is felled --
the holy seed is its stump.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula anchors the vision in history: Uzziah died around 740 BCE after a 52-year reign that ended in leprosy (2 Chr 26:16-21). The earthly throne is vacant; the heavenly throne is occupied.
1. The Hebrew uses Adonai (, 'the Lord, Sovereign') rather than the personal name YHWH. This title emphasizes sovereignty and authority.
1. 'The hem of his robe filled the temple' — the Hebrew shulaw () refers to the skirts or train of a garment. If merely the hem fills the entire temple, the implied scale of God himself is incomprehensible. The temple cannot contain him; even the edge of his clothing overflows it.
2. Seraphim () literally means 'burning ones,' from the root saraph ('to burn'). These beings appear only here in the Hebrew Bible. The same root is used for the 'fiery serpents' of Numbers 21:6-8, but the seraphim here are clearly distinct — they have faces, feet, wings, and voices.
2. The three pairs of wings serve three functions: reverence (covering the face — they cannot look at God), modesty (covering the feet, likely a euphemism for the lower body), and service (flying). Only one-third of their capacity is devoted to active ministry; two-thirds is devoted to worship and self-effacement before God.
2. 'Stood above him' — the Hebrew mimma'al lo is ambiguous: it could mean 'above him' (hovering over the throne) or 'above it' (standing on the raised platform). The former reading is more dramatic and is followed here.
3. The trisagion (triple 'holy') is the only divine attribute tripled in the Hebrew Bible. While some see this as a Hebrew superlative ('most holy'), the threefold repetition goes beyond ordinary intensification. Rabbinic tradition and later Christian theology both found profound significance in the number three.
3. The antiphonal structure — 'one called to another' — suggests responsive, liturgical worship. This is not a solo performance but a cosmic choir in dialogue.
3. Kevodo ('his glory') fills the whole earth, not merely the temple. The glory that fills the temple (v. 1) is not contained by it; it overflows to fill all creation. The seraphim declare a reality already present but not yet universally recognized.
3. YHWH Tseva'ot ('the LORD of Hosts') is the full covenant name plus the military/cosmic title: God of the heavenly armies, of all created powers. The seraphim use the most comprehensive divine title available.
4. The physical response to the seraphim's cry: the massive stone thresholds of the temple vibrate. This is theophanic language — God's presence causes the material world to tremble (cf. Exod 19:18; 1 Kgs 19:11).
4. The smoke echoes the pillar of cloud in the wilderness (Exod 13:21-22) and the cloud that filled Solomon's temple at its dedication (1 Kgs 8:10-11). Smoke both reveals and conceals God's presence — he is near but not fully visible.
5. Isaiah uses the woe-cry (oy,) on himself — the same prophetic curse-formula he employed against others in chapter 5. The prophet who pronounced 'Woe!' on the wicked now discovers he belongs in the same category before God's holiness.
5. Nidmeti () is variously translated 'I am undone,' 'I am destroyed,' 'I am silenced,' or 'I am cut off.' The root damah can mean 'to be silent,' 'to be destroyed,' or 'to cease.' The ambiguity is productive: Isaiah is simultaneously silenced, destroyed, and cut off from the holy God.
5. 'Unclean lips' — the focus on lips is significant given that Isaiah is a prophet, a man of words. His very instrument of ministry is contaminated. The people he lives among share the same contamination. The confession is corporate as well as individual.

5. 'My eyes have seen the King' — in the ancient Near East, seeing God was understood as fatal (Exod 33:20; Judg 13:22). Isaiah's terror is not irrational but theologically grounded: the unholy cannot survive exposure to the holy.
6. The seraph takes a coal from the altar — the same altar where sacrifices burn. The purification of Isaiah's lips comes from the fire of sacrifice, connecting his cleansing to the entire sacrificial system. The coal is simultaneously destructive (fire) and restorative (from the place of atonement).
6. Ritspah (רִיטְפָה) means a 'glowing stone' or 'hot coal' — a piece of the altar fire itself. The seraph uses tongs (מֶלְקָאֲחַיִּים), suggesting the coal is too holy even for a celestial being to handle directly.
7. The burning coal touches the very part of Isaiah that was 'unclean' — his lips. The purification is specific, targeted, and painful. Fire that destroys dross also purifies gold.
7. Two distinct theological terms describe what happens: *avoneka sar* ('your guilt is removed' — the weight of iniquity is lifted) and *chattateka tekuppar* ('your sin is atoned for' — the sin is covered, expiated). The verb *kipper* (כִּפֶּה, 'to atone, to cover') is the same root used for the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur). Full atonement has been accomplished.
7. Isaiah does not atone for himself. The initiative is entirely God's: God's seraph, God's altar fire, God's declaration of pardon. The prophet contributes only his confession (v. 5).
8. The divine deliberation — 'Whom shall I send? Who will go for us?' — echoes the plural of Genesis 1:26 ('Let us make'). The 'us' has been variously interpreted as the divine council, the Trinity (in Christian reading), or the plural of majesty. In context, God is surrounded by the seraphim and the heavenly court.
8. Isaiah's response — *hinneni shelacheni* ('Here I am; send me') — is among the most celebrated acts of self-offering in Scripture. The Hebrew is devastatingly brief: two words. Having been destroyed and rebuilt, Isaiah volunteers without hesitation. He does not yet know what the commission will require.
8. The sequence is theologically precise: vision of God (v. 1-4), conviction of sin (v. 5), atonement (vv. 6-7), commission (v. 8). Isaiah could not serve until he was cleansed; he could not be cleansed until he confessed; he could not confess until he saw God's holiness.
9. The commission is shocking. Isaiah has just volunteered to be God's messenger, and the message is designed to produce incomprehension. The infinitive absolute constructions (*shimo'u shamoa*, *re'u ra'o*) create emphatic, ongoing action: 'hear and hear and hear — but never understand.'
9. The phrase 'this people' (*ha'am hazzeh*) is pointedly distancing — not 'my people' but 'this people,' as if God is already withdrawing covenant intimacy.
9. This verse is quoted by Jesus (Matt 13:14-15; Mark 4:12; Luke 8:10), by John (John 12:40), and by Paul (Acts 28:26-27) to explain why Israel rejected the Messiah. It became one of the most theologically consequential verses in the Hebrew Bible for the early church.
10. The three imperatives — *hashmen* ('make fat/dull'), *hakbed* ('make heavy'), and *hasha* ('seal shut/smear over') — target the three organs of spiritual perception: heart (understanding), ears (hearing), eyes (seeing). The order is significant: the heart (the seat of understanding in Hebrew thought) is addressed first.
10. The pen ('lest') clause reveals a terrifying purpose: the hardening prevents repentance and healing. This is judicial hardening — God confirming a people in the spiritual condition they have already chosen. Compare Pharaoh, whose heart was hardened after he first hardened it himself (Exod 7-10).
10. The verb *vashav* ('and turn') is the Hebrew word for repentance (*teshuvah*). The entire cycle of salvation is named: see, hear, understand, repent, be healed. The commission forecloses every step.
10. This is perhaps the most disturbing verse in the prophets. It raises profound questions about divine sovereignty and human responsibility that the text does not resolve — it simply states the commission and leaves the reader to wrestle.
11. Isaiah's response — 'How long?' (*ad-matay*) — is the classic lament question (cf. Ps 13:1-2; Hab 1:2). He does not ask 'Why?' but 'How long?' — accepting the commission while pleading for its limit.
11. The answer is devastating: the hardening will continue until total destruction. Cities emptied, houses abandoned, land desolate. The description echoes the covenant curses of Leviticus 26:31-35 and Deuteronomy 28:51-52.
11. The threefold desolation — cities, houses, land — reverses the threefold gift of the promised land: inhabited cities, built houses, cultivated land (Deut 6:10-11).
12. *Richaq* ('has sent far away') is the language of exile — God himself drives the people from the land. The 'forsaking' (*azuvah*) describes the land as abandoned, left desolate. The land mourns without its people.
12. The verse completes the answer to 'How long?': until exile. The hardening continues until the covenant relationship has been ruptured to its uttermost limit.
13. This verse is textually the most difficult in the chapter. The MT, LXX, and Qumran scrolls differ significantly. The MT reading is followed here, though it is compressed and possibly corrupt.
13. The image shifts from total destruction to qualified hope: even after decimation (a 'tenth' surviving), even after that remnant is burned again, a stump endures. The metaphor of a tree stump that retains life — capable of sending out new shoots — introduces the remnant theology that will

dominate the rest of Isaiah.

13. Zera qodesh ('holy seed') is the theological climax of the entire chapter. The 'holy' (qodesh) of the seed echoes the 'holy, holy, holy' of the seraphim (v. 3). God's holiness, which threatened to destroy Isaiah and Israel, also preserves a remnant. Holiness both judges and saves.
13. The stump image directly anticipates Isaiah 11:1: 'A shoot will come forth from the stump of Jesse.' The Messianic hope is planted in the soil of judgment.

7

Summary: *During the Syro-Ephraimite crisis (c. 735 BCE), King Ahaz of Judah trembles as the allied armies of Syria and northern Israel march against Jerusalem. God sends Isaiah with his son Shear-jashub to meet Ahaz, offering reassurance and inviting the king to ask for any sign. Ahaz refuses with false piety. Isaiah then announces a sign unbidden: a young woman will conceive and bear a son named Immanuel ('God is with us'), and before the child knows right from wrong, the two threatening kings will be gone -- but Assyria, the power Ahaz is secretly courting, will devastate Judah itself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the most contested passages in the Bible, pivoting on a single word: almah (v. 14). The Hebrew almah means 'young woman of marriageable age,' not specifically 'virgin' (which would be betulah). Yet the Greek Septuagint translated it as parthenos ('virgin'), and Matthew 1:23 quotes this Greek rendering to describe Mary's conception of Jesus. The result is that the same verse functions as a political oracle in its immediate historical context (addressing Ahaz's crisis) and as a Messianic prophecy in Christian tradition. We render almah as 'young woman' because this is what the Hebrew word means, while fully documenting both the Jewish and Christian interpretive traditions. The name Immanuel itself — 'God is with us' — carries enormous theological weight: it is both promise and threat, depending on whether God's presence brings salvation or judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The word almah is the most consequential translation decision in this chapter. We render it 'young woman' because that is the lexical meaning of the Hebrew. The word betulah, which more specifically denotes a virgin, is available in Hebrew and is not used here. However, we note that: (1) the LXX translated almah as parthenos ('virgin') around 200 BCE, well before any Christian influence; (2) Matthew 1:23 directly quotes the LXX rendering to interpret Jesus's birth; (3) both Jewish and Christian scholars have debated this rendering for centuries. We present the Hebrew as it stands while honoring the full history of interpretation. The identity of the child is also debated: candidates include a son of Isaiah, a son of Ahaz (possibly Hezekiah), or a symbolic/Messianic figure. The text itself does not resolve the question. The shift between singular and plural addressees ('you' in Hebrew) is important: sometimes Isaiah addresses Ahaz alone, sometimes the entire house of David.*

Connections: *The Immanuel prophecy resonates through Isaiah 8:8, 10 (where 'God is with us' recurs) and culminates in Isaiah 9:6-7 (the child who is Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God). Matthew 1:22-23 quotes Isaiah 7:14 as fulfilled in Jesus's birth. The name Shear-jashub ('a remnant shall return') connects to Isaiah's remnant theology (10:20-22). The 'waters of Shiloah' (8:6) contrast with the Euphrates flood imagery here (7:20). Ahaz's refusal to trust God parallels the Exodus generation's refusal at Kadesh-barnea (Num 13-14).*

¹In the days of Ahaz son of Jotham son of Uzziah, king of Judah, King Rezin of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, marched against Jerusalem to attack it but could not overpower it.

²When the house of David was told,
"Aram has allied with Ephraim,"
the heart of Ahaz and the heart of his people
trembled like trees of the forest
swaying before the wind.

³Then the LORD said to Isaiah,
 "Go out to meet Ahaz — you and your son Shear-jashub —
 at the end of the aqueduct of the upper pool,
 on the road to the launderer's field."

⁴and say to him:
 "Be careful and stay calm.
 Do not be afraid,
 and do not let your heart grow faint
 because of these two smoldering stubs of firewood —
 the fierce anger of Rezin and Aram
 and the son of Remaliah."

⁵Because Aram, along with Ephraim
 and the son of Remaliah,
 has plotted evil against you, saying,

⁶"Let us invade Judah and terrorize it,
 and let us break through to it
 and set up a king in it --
 the son of Tabeal."

⁷This is what the Lord GOD says:
 "It will not stand,
 and it will not come to pass."

⁸For the head of Aram is Damascus,
 and the head of Damascus is Rezin.
 And within sixty-five years
 Ephraim will be shattered, no longer a people.

⁹And the head of Ephraim is Samaria,
 and the head of Samaria is the son of Remaliah.
 If you do not stand firm in faith,
 you will not stand at all."

¹⁰Again the LORD spoke to Ahaz:

¹¹"Ask a sign from the LORD your God.
 Make it as deep as Sheol
 or as high as heaven."

¹²But Ahaz said,
 "I will not ask. I will not test the LORD."

¹³Then Isaiah said,
 "Listen, house of David!
 Is it not enough for you to weary human beings?
 Must you weary my God as well?"

¹⁴Therefore the Lord himself will give you a sign:
Look -- the young woman is pregnant
and is about to bear a son,
and she will call his name Immanuel.

¹⁵He will eat curds and honey
by the time he knows
how to refuse evil and choose good.

¹⁶For before the boy knows
how to refuse evil and choose good,
the land whose two kings you dread
will be abandoned.

¹⁷The LORD will bring upon you,
upon your people,
and upon your father's house
days such as have not come
since the day Ephraim broke away from Judah --
the king of Assyria.

¹⁸On that day the LORD will whistle
for the fly from the distant streams of Egypt
and for the bee from the land of Assyria.

¹⁹They will come and settle, all of them,
in the steep ravines and in the clefts of the rocks,
on every thornbush and at every water hole.

²⁰On that day the Lord will shave
with a razor hired from beyond the River --
the king of Assyria --
the head, the hair of the legs,
and it will also sweep away the beard.

²¹On that day a man will keep alive
one young cow and two sheep.

²²And because of the abundance of milk they give,
he will eat curds --
for everyone left in the land
will eat curds and honey.

²³On that day, every place
where a thousand vines worth a thousand pieces of silver once grew
will become thorns and briers.

²⁴People will go there only with bows and arrows,
for the whole land will be thorns and briers.

²⁵As for all the hillsides once cultivated with a hoe,
 you will no longer go there for fear of thorns and briars.
 They will become places for turning out cattle
 and for the trampling of sheep.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The genealogy traces Ahaz back through Jotham to Uzziah — the king in whose death-year Isaiah saw the LORD enthroned (6:1). The dynastic line continues, but the quality of faith does not.
1. The Syro-Ephraimite coalition (Aram/Syria + northern Israel/Ephraim) aimed to depose Ahaz and install a puppet king (v. 6) who would join their anti-Assyrian alliance. The historical background is recorded in 2 Kings 16:1-20 and 2 Chronicles 28.
1. The note that they 'could not overpower it' is given at the outset — the reader knows the siege will fail before the story unfolds. The suspense is not in the outcome but in how Ahaz will respond to God.
2. The report comes to 'the house of David' — the royal dynasty, not merely the individual king. The threat is against the Davidic line itself, which makes God's response (protecting the dynasty through which the Messiah will come) all the more significant.
2. The simile is vivid: their hearts shook like forest trees in a storm. The Hebrew verb *nua* ('to shake, tremble, waver') describes involuntary, helpless movement — the opposite of the steadfast faith Isaiah will demand.
2. 'Ephraim' is used for the northern kingdom of Israel, named after its dominant tribe. This usage distinguishes the northern kingdom from the covenant name 'Israel' which can apply to the whole people.
3. Shear-jashub () means 'a remnant shall return.' The name is both promise (a remnant will survive) and threat (only a remnant). Isaiah's son is a living sign — his very presence beside his father is a prophetic message to Ahaz.
3. The meeting place — the aqueduct of the upper pool — is significant: Ahaz is likely inspecting Jerusalem's water supply in preparation for siege. The same location appears in 2 Kings 18:17, where the Assyrian Rabshakeh will later stand to threaten Jerusalem. The geography links the two crises.
3. The 'launderer's field' (*sedeh koves*) was an open area where cloth was washed and bleached — outside the city walls, making it a vulnerable meeting point. Ahaz is outside his fortifications.
4. The metaphor is deliberately dismissive: the two threatening kings are not roaring fires but *zanvot udim ashenim* — 'tail-ends of smoldering sticks.' They are nearly burnt out, producing smoke but no flame. Their fury is real but their power is spent.
4. Isaiah refers to Pekah contemptuously as 'the son of Remaliah' — refusing him even the dignity of his own name. This pattern continues in v. 5 and v. 9. Pekah is a usurper (2 Kgs 15:25) and does not deserve the title 'king' in prophetic speech.
4. The four imperatives — 'be careful,' 'stay calm,' 'do not fear,' 'do not let your heart grow faint' — address the terror described in v. 2. Faith requires stillness in the face of threat.
5. The 'evil counsel' (*ra'ah*) is their plan to overthrow the Davidic dynasty. What they call political strategy, God calls evil — an assault on his covenant promises.
6. The coalition's plan is explicit: invade, terrorize, breach the walls, and replace the Davidic king with a puppet ruler — 'the son of Tabeal.' This man is otherwise unknown; his name may be Aramaic, suggesting a foreign-backed pretender.
6. The verb *neqitsenah* ('let us terrorize/vex it') conveys extreme distress. The plan is not merely to defeat but to traumatize Judah into submission.
6. The plan to 'set up a king' directly threatens God's covenant with David (2 Sam 7:12-16), which guaranteed the dynasty's perpetuity. This is why God intervenes — not for Ahaz's sake but for the covenant's sake.
7. The divine verdict is absolute and brief — six Hebrew words. Against all the elaborate scheming of the coalition, God responds with flat negation: *lo taqum velo tihyeh* — 'It will not stand. It will not happen.' The brevity conveys supreme confidence; God does not need to argue.
7. The full title 'the Lord GOD' (*Adonai YHWH*) combines the sovereignty title with the covenant name, emphasizing both God's authority to overrule nations and his faithfulness to the Davidic covenant.
8. The logic is reductive: Aram's capital is just Damascus, and Damascus's ruler is just Rezin — a mere man. The implied contrast is with the LORD, whose throne fills heaven (6:1). Rezin's domain is a single city.
8. The sixty-five year timeframe has generated debate: it extends well beyond the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE. Some scholars connect it to the Assyrian resettlement of the northern territory under Esarhaddon (c. 670 BCE), which completed the dissolution of Ephraim as a distinct people. Others consider it a later editorial insertion.
9. The concluding wordplay is one of Isaiah's finest: *ta'aminu/te'amenu* — 'believe/be established.' Both words derive from the root '*aman* (to be firm, reliable, trustworthy — the same root as 'Amen'). Isaiah is saying: the firmness of your throne depends on the firmness of your faith. No faith, no kingdom.

9. The address shifts to plural 'you' (ta'aminu) — Isaiah is now speaking not just to Ahaz but to the entire house of David. The challenge of faith is corporate as well as individual.
9. Again, Pekah is denied his name — only 'the son of Remaliah.' Isaiah reduces him to a patronymic, stripping him of royal dignity.
10. The narrative continues: God initiates a second word to Ahaz. The persistence of God's address is striking — Ahaz has not responded to the first message, yet God speaks again. Grace extends even to the faithless king.
11. The offer is breathtaking: ask for any sign, with no limit on scope. 'As deep as Sheol or as high as heaven' encompasses the entire vertical axis of the cosmos. God is offering Ahaz a blank check to test his faithfulness.
11. The phrase 'the LORD your God' (YHWH Eloheka) uses the second person singular — this is personal. God claims to be Ahaz's own God and invites personal engagement.
12. Ahaz's refusal sounds pious — he quotes the principle of Deuteronomy 6:16 ('You shall not test the LORD your God'). But the context exposes it as evasion: God himself commanded him to ask. Refusing a divine command in the name of obedience is the deepest form of disobedience.
12. The real reason for Ahaz's refusal is political: he has already decided to appeal to Assyria for help (2 Kgs 16:7-8). Accepting a sign from God would obligate him to trust God's protection instead of Tiglath-pileser's. Ahaz's 'piety' masks faithlessness.
12. The double negative (lo esh'al velo anasseh) is emphatic: Ahaz is digging in. He will not engage with God at all.
13. Isaiah's exasperation breaks through. The address shifts from 'Ahaz' to 'house of David' (plural 'you') — the indictment extends to the whole dynasty. They have exhausted human patience and are now exhausting God's.
13. The verb hal'ot ('to weary, to exhaust') applied to God is an extraordinary anthropomorphism. God can be wearied by his people's faithlessness — not in power but in patience (cf. Isa 43:24; Mal 2:17).
13. Note the shift in possessive: Isaiah says 'my God' (Elohai), not 'your God.' The implication is painful: God is still Isaiah's God, but Ahaz's relationship to God is in question.
14. ALMAH: The Hebrew almah () means 'young woman of marriageable age.' It does not inherently specify virginity. The more specific term for a virgin in Hebrew is betulah (), which Isaiah could have used but did not. The word almah appears only seven times in the Hebrew Bible (Gen 24:43; Exod 2:8; Ps 68:25; Prov 30:19; Song 1:3; 6:8; and here), and in each case refers to a young woman without explicit reference to virginal status.
14. THE LXX TRADITION: Around 200 BCE, the Jewish translators of the Septuagint rendered almah as parthenos (παρθένος, 'virgin'). This was a pre-Christian Jewish interpretive choice. Whether they understood the passage messianically or simply chose the Greek word they considered closest is debated.
14. THE NEW TESTAMENT: Matthew 1:22-23 quotes this verse (from the LXX) as fulfilled in Mary's conception of Jesus: 'Behold, the virgin shall conceive and bear a son, and they shall call his name Immanuel.' The Christian tradition reads the 'sign' as the supernatural virgin birth; the Jewish tradition reads it as a natural birth to a young woman in Ahaz's own time.
14. BOTH READINGS: The immediate historical context points to a child born in Isaiah's time whose early childhood would mark the end of the Syro-Ephraimite threat (vv. 15-16). The broader canonical context, especially as read through the LXX and Matthew, points beyond the immediate situation to a greater fulfillment. We render the Hebrew as it stands — 'young woman' — while fully acknowledging the theological significance of both traditions.
14. The definite article ('the young woman,' ha'almah) suggests a specific, known woman — not an abstract future figure. Whether she is Isaiah's wife, a woman in the court, or someone the audience would recognize is debated.
14. The name Immanuel ('God is with us') functions as both promise and threat in Isaiah's theology. God's presence is salvation for the faithful and judgment for the faithless. For Ahaz, who has refused God's help, 'God is with us' is an ominous declaration.
15. Curds and honey represent either: (1) the simple diet of a devastated land reduced to pastoral subsistence — the agricultural economy has collapsed, leaving only what herdsmen and wild bees produce; or (2) the rich food of a land flowing with milk and honey. The ambiguity may be intentional, carrying both blessing and curse.
15. The phrase 'refuse evil and choose good' describes the age of moral discernment — roughly the age of weaning or early childhood (2-3 years). The sign's timeframe is short: within a few years of this child's birth, the threat will have passed.
16. The immediate fulfillment of the sign: before the Immanuel child reaches the age of discernment, both Rezin and Pekah will be gone. Historically, Damascus fell to Assyria in 732 BCE and Samaria in 722 BCE — both within a decade of this oracle.
16. The singular 'you' (attah) returns — Isaiah addresses Ahaz directly. 'The land you dread' acknowledges his fear while promising its resolution.
16. The phrase 'forsaken of both her kings' is the key: both threatening monarchs will be removed. The sign functions as a countdown timer — measured in a child's growth, not in military campaigns.
17. The ominous turn: the two kings will fall, yes, but what replaces them is far worse. The Assyria that Ahaz is secretly courting will be the instrument of Judah's devastation. The final two words — et melek Ashur ('the king of Assyria') — land like a hammer blow at the end of the sentence.

17. 'Days that have not come since Ephraim broke from Judah' — the reference is to the division of the kingdom after Solomon's death (1 Kgs 12), the worst national trauma in living memory. What is coming will surpass even that.
17. The threefold target — 'you, your people, your father's house' — encompasses king, nation, and dynasty. No one escapes.
18. The whistle motif returns from 5:26 — God summons nations as a beekeeper summons insects. Egypt is the 'fly' (annoying, persistent, swarming) and Assyria is the 'bee' (aggressive, stinging, deadly). Both superpowers will descend on Judah.
18. The imagery is deliberately humiliating to the great empires: they are insects responding to God's whistle, not sovereign agents pursuing their own agendas. God controls the very powers Ahaz is trying to manipulate.
19. The swarming imagery continues: the foreign 'insects' settle everywhere — in ravines, rock crevices, thornbushes, watering places. No corner of the land is free from their presence. The thoroughness of the infestation mirrors the completeness of the judgment.
19. The geographic detail suggests total military occupation: ravines (defensive positions), rock clefts (hiding places), thornbushes (uncultivated areas), water sources (survival necessities). Every strategic and life-sustaining location is claimed.
20. The metaphor is deliberately humiliating: God uses Assyria as a hired razor to shave Judah from head to foot. Shaving was an act of extreme shame in the ancient Near East (cf. 2 Sam 10:4-5). 'The hair of the legs' is likely a euphemism for pubic hair — the humiliation is total and intimate.
20. 'Beyond the River' (ever nahar) means beyond the Euphrates — Assyria's homeland. The razor is 'hired' (sekiurah), suggesting that Ahaz's own tribute payments (2 Kgs 16:8) will fund the instrument of his humiliation.
21. The reduction is stark: the prosperous agricultural economy will collapse to subsistence herding. A single cow and two sheep are the minimum viable herd — barely enough to survive. The wealthy landowners of 5:8 are reduced to peasant survival.
22. The 'curds and honey' from v. 15 returns, now clearly in a context of devastation. The food is 'abundant' only because the population has been so reduced that a few animals can supply the survivors. This is the diet of a depopulated land — not luxury but subsistence from uncultivated resources.
22. The phrase 'everyone left in the land' (kol hannotar) echoes the remnant language of 6:13. Only a remnant survives, and their diet reflects the ruin around them.
23. The premium vineyards of chapter 5 — land so valuable it was measured in silver — will revert to shamir vashayit (thorns and briers), Isaiah's signature phrase for desolation. The economic reversal is total: from thousand-silver vineyards to worthless scrub.
23. The connection to the vineyard song (ch. 5) is unmistakable. The vineyard that produced worthless fruit will now produce no fruit at all — only thorns.
24. The land is so overgrown and wild that one cannot enter without weapons — either for hunting the wild animals that now roam freely or for self-defense in lawless territory. Cultivated land has become wilderness.
24. The repetition of shamir vashayit hammers the point: the entire land, not just individual vineyards, becomes desolate.
25. The final verse completes the picture of agricultural reversal: terraced hillsides that were carefully hoed and cultivated (the most labor-intensive agriculture) will be abandoned to livestock. The land reverts from viticulture to rough pasture — from civilization to subsistence.
25. The chapter ends not with a word of hope but with a picture of ruin. The hope embedded in the Immanuel sign (v. 14) is overshadowed by the devastation Ahaz's faithlessness has invited.

8

Summary: *God commands Isaiah to inscribe the name Maher-shalal-hash-baz ('Swift is the plunder, speedy is the prey') on a large tablet, then gives the same name to his newborn son as a prophetic sign. Before the child can say 'Mama' or 'Papa,' Damascus and Samaria will be plundered by Assyria. But because Judah has rejected the gentle waters of Shiloah, the Euphrates flood of Assyria will sweep through Judah itself, reaching up to the neck. Isaiah then withdraws from public ministry, binding up his testimony among his disciples and waiting for God. The chapter closes with a warning against necromancy and a call to return to 'the Torah and the testimony.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the longest personal names in the Bible — Maher-shalal-hash-baz — which is itself a complete sentence announcing Assyrian conquest. The contrast between the gentle waters of Shiloah (Jerusalem's modest spring) and the mighty Euphrates flood is one of Isaiah's most powerful geographical metaphors: Judah has rejected the quiet presence of God for the overwhelming power of empire, and will be drowned by the very force it admired. The 'bind up the testimony, seal the teaching among my disciples' passage (vv. 16-17) represents a turning point: Isaiah withdraws from public proclamation and entrusts his message to a faithful remnant — an act that anticipates the entire concept of preserved prophetic literature. The closing*

challenge — 'To the Torah and to the testimony!' — became a rallying cry for biblical faithfulness across centuries of Jewish and Christian tradition.

Translation Friction: The relationship between the Maher-shalal-hash-baz sign (ch. 8) and the Immanuel sign (ch. 7) is debated: are they the same child, different children, or one literal and one symbolic? We treat them as distinct signs while noting the connections. The identity of 'the prophetess' (v. 3) is uncertain — she may be Isaiah's wife (called 'the prophetess' as a title of respect or because she also prophesied) or a separate figure. The 'waters of Shiloah that flow gently' (v. 6) are usually identified with the Gihon spring and its channel, but some scholars see a broader metaphorical meaning. The transition at v. 16 is abrupt, and whether God or Isaiah is speaking is debated; we take Isaiah as the speaker based on context.

Connections: The Immanuel name recurs in vv. 8 and 10 ('God is with us'), linking this chapter directly to 7:14. The waters of Shiloah connect to John 9:7, where Jesus sends the blind man to wash in the pool of Siloam (the same water source). The 'stone of stumbling and rock of offense' (v. 14) is quoted in Romans 9:33 and 1 Peter 2:8 as referring to Christ. 'Bind up the testimony' (v. 16) anticipates the sealing of prophetic books (Dan 12:4; Rev 22:10). The 'Torah and testimony' formula (v. 20) echoes throughout reformation movements. Isaiah 8:23-9:1 (9:1-2 in English) — 'the people who walked in darkness have seen a great light' — is quoted in Matthew 4:15-16 regarding Jesus's Galilean ministry.

¹The LORD said to me,
"Take a large tablet
and write on it in ordinary script:
Belonging to Maher-shalal-hash-baz."

²And I called reliable witnesses to attest for me:
Uriah the priest and Zechariah son of Jeberechiah.

³Then I was intimate with the prophetess,
and she conceived and bore a son.
And the LORD said to me,
"Call his name Maher-shalal-hash-baz."

⁴For before the boy knows how to say
'Papa' or 'Mama,'
the wealth of Damascus and the spoil of Samaria
will be carried off before the king of Assyria.

⁵The LORD spoke to me again:

⁶Because this people has rejected
the waters of Shiloah that flow gently,
and melt in fear before Rezin
and the son of Remaliah --

⁷therefore the Lord is about to bring against them
the mighty, massive waters of the River --
the king of Assyria and all his splendor.
It will rise over all its channels
and overflow all its banks.

⁸It will sweep into Judah, flooding and overflowing,
reaching up to the neck.
Its spreading wings will fill

the whole breadth of your land,
O Immanuel!

⁹Rage, O peoples, and be shattered!
Listen, all distant lands!
Arm yourselves -- and be shattered!
Arm yourselves -- and be shattered!

¹⁰Devise a plan -- it will be foiled!
Speak a word -- it will not stand!
For God is with us.

¹¹For this is what the LORD said to me
with a strong hand upon me,
warning me not to walk in the way of this people:

¹²"Do not call 'conspiracy'
everything this people calls a conspiracy.
Do not fear what they fear,
and do not dread it.

¹³The LORD of Hosts — he is the one you must regard as holy.
He must be your fear.
He must be your dread."

¹⁴He will be a sanctuary,
but also a stone of stumbling
and a rock of offense
to both houses of Israel --
a trap and a snare
to the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

¹⁵Many will stumble over them.
They will fall and be broken,
snared and captured.

¹⁶Bind up the testimony;
seal the teaching among my disciples.

¹⁷I will wait for the LORD,
who is hiding his face from the house of Jacob.
I will put my hope in him.

¹⁸Look -- here I am, with the children
the LORD has given me.
We are signs and portents in Israel
from the LORD of Hosts,
who dwells on Mount Zion.

¹⁹When they say to you,
 "Consult the mediums and the spiritists
 who whisper and mutter" --
 should not a people consult their God?
 Should they consult the dead on behalf of the living?

²⁰To the Torah and to the testimony!
 If they do not speak according to this word,
 it is because there is no dawn for them.

²¹They will pass through the land,
 hard-pressed and hungry.
 And when they are famished,
 they will become enraged
 and curse their king and their God.
 They will look upward,

²²and they will look to the earth --
 and see only distress and darkness,
 the gloom of anguish.
 And they will be driven into thick darkness.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The gillayon gadol ('large tablet') is probably a large flat surface — a wooden board or smooth stone — meant for public display. This is not a private scroll but a public notice, witnessed and dated.
1. 'In ordinary script' (becheret enosh, literally 'with the stylus of a common person') means in everyday, readable writing — not in the specialized script of scribes. The prophecy is meant to be accessible to all.
1. Maher-shalal-hash-baz () means 'Swift is the plunder, speedy is the prey' or 'Hurry to the spoil, hasten to the plunder.' It is one of the longest names in the Bible and functions as a prophetic headline announcing Assyria's imminent conquest of Damascus and Samaria.
2. The two witnesses establish legal credibility — the Torah requires two witnesses to confirm a matter (Deut 19:15). By publicly writing and witnessing the name before the child's birth, Isaiah creates an unfalsifiable prophetic record.
2. Uriah the priest is likely the same Uriah mentioned in 2 Kings 16:10-16, who later cooperated with Ahaz's apostasy by building a pagan altar. The irony is severe: a witness to God's word will later betray it.
3. 'The prophetess' (hanneviah) — either Isaiah's wife, called by this title because of her husband's office or her own prophetic gift, or possibly a separate prophetess. The text does not elaborate. If she is Isaiah's wife, then the Maher-shalal-hash-baz child is a sibling of Shear-jashub (7:3).
3. The public inscription (v. 1) preceded the conception — the prophecy was on record before the child existed, making the naming an irrefutable confirmation.
3. The Hebrew vaaqrav ('I drew near, I approached') is a euphemism for sexual intimacy, used also in Genesis 20:4 and other passages.
4. The timeline is even shorter than the Immanuel sign (7:15-16): not 'before he knows good from evil' but 'before he can say avi ve'imi (my father and my mother)' — roughly one to two years. The prophetic clock is ticking fast.
4. The historical fulfillment was precise: Tiglath-pileser III of Assyria conquered Damascus in 732 BCE and severely weakened Samaria, which fell completely in 722 BCE under Shalmaneser V and Sargon II.
4. 'Carried off before the king of Assyria' — the plunder will be paraded before the Assyrian monarch. The name Maher-shalal-hash-baz is being enacted: swift plunder, speedy prey.
5. A new oracle begins. The shift from the sign of the child to the metaphor of the waters marks a transition from specific prophecy to broader theological imagery.

6. The waters of Shiloah () are the gentle flow from the Gihon spring through the Siloam channel — Jerusalem's modest but reliable water supply. Metaphorically, they represent God's quiet, unglamorous provision: the Davidic dynasty and God's protective presence. The people want something more impressive.
6. The Hebrew of the second half is difficult. The traditional reading 'and rejoice in Rezin' (umesos) has been challenged; many scholars read umasus ('and melt/dissolve before') based on context and comparative evidence. We follow the emended reading because it fits the parallelism: the people both reject God's quiet provision and tremble before human threats.
6. The Shiloah/Siloam connection extends to the New Testament: Jesus sends the blind man to wash in the Pool of Siloam (John 9:7), and John notes that 'Siloam' means 'sent' — connecting the waters to the One sent by God.
7. The 'River' (hannahar) with the definite article is always the Euphrates in Hebrew — the great river of Mesopotamia, Assyria's homeland. The contrast with the gentle Shiloah is devastating: they rejected a brook and will receive a flood.
7. The metaphor works on multiple levels: the Euphrates literally floods its banks seasonally, destroying everything in its path; the Assyrian army will similarly overflow all boundaries and inundate the land.
7. 'The king of Assyria and all his splendor' identifies the flood — this is not a natural disaster but a military invasion personified as a river in spate.
8. The flood metaphor reaches its climax: the waters (Assyria) rise to the neck — almost total submersion, but not quite drowning. Historically, Assyria devastated Judah under Sennacherib (701 BCE) but failed to take Jerusalem itself (2 Kgs 18-19; Isa 36-37).
8. The shift from 'waters' to 'wings' (kenafayv) is striking — the flood becomes a bird of prey spreading its wings over the land. The dual imagery (flood + predatory bird) conveys both inundation and domination.
8. The chapter's emotional center: the land is addressed as 'your land, O Immanuel.' Despite everything, the land belongs to 'God is with us.' The Immanuel sign of 7:14 is not abandoned but reaffirmed in the midst of catastrophe. God's presence does not prevent suffering but persists through it.
9. The tone shifts abruptly to defiant confidence. Isaiah taunts the nations: go ahead, prepare for war — you will be broken. The repeated hit'azzeru vachotu ('arm yourselves and be shattered') has the force of a battle cry, but one that mocks the enemy.
9. The verb ro'u can mean 'rage' or 'be evil/hostile.' The imperative form dares the nations to act, confident they will fail. This is holy sarcasm rooted in the Immanuel declaration.
10. The climactic declaration: Immanu El — 'God is with us' — spoken now not as a child's name but as the reason no hostile plan can succeed. The phrase echoes 7:14 and 8:8 but here reaches its theological fullness.
10. The verse echoes Psalm 2:1-4, where the nations rage and plot against God's anointed, and God laughs. The confidence is not in Judah's military power but in God's sovereign presence.
10. The parallelism is tight: utsu etsah vetufar / dabberu davar velo yaqum — 'plan a plan, it fails / speak a word, it does not stand.' Human scheming cannot overrule divine purpose.
11. The 'strong hand' (chezeqat hayyad) describes the overwhelming force of prophetic inspiration — God's grip on the prophet that cannot be resisted. Isaiah experiences divine communication as physical compulsion (cf. Jer 20:7; Ezek 3:14).
11. God warns Isaiah to separate himself from 'this people' — the same distancing language used in 6:9 and 8:6. The prophet must not share the people's panic or their political calculations.
12. Qesher ('conspiracy') may refer to: (1) the Syro-Ephraimite alliance against Judah, which the people see as a terrifying conspiracy; or (2) Isaiah's own message, which some in the establishment may have labeled treasonous. Either way, God commands Isaiah not to share the people's paranoia.
12. The double command — 'do not fear what they fear, do not dread it' — redirects fear from human threats to God himself (v. 13). The people's fear is misplaced: they tremble before armies but not before the Holy One.
13. The redirection of fear: not Rezin, not Pekah, not Assyria — but the LORD of Hosts. To 'sanctify' God (taqdishu) means to treat him as he truly is: wholly other, sovereign, not to be trifled with. Proper fear of God displaces all other fears.
13. The parallel structure from v. 12 is completed: the people fear the wrong thing (conspiracy); Isaiah must fear the right thing (God). This is the practical outworking of the trisagion (6:3) — if God is truly 'holy, holy, holy,' then he alone deserves ultimate reverence.
14. The stunning paradox: the same God is both miqdash (sanctuary, refuge) and even negef (stumbling stone). For those who fear him (v. 13), he is shelter; for those who refuse him, he becomes the obstacle over which they fall. God does not change; the response determines the outcome.
14. 'Both houses of Israel' — both the northern kingdom (Israel/Ephraim) and the southern kingdom (Judah). Neither is exempt from stumbling over God.
14. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 9:33 (combined with Isa 28:16) and Peter in 1 Peter 2:8, applying the 'stone of stumbling' to Christ. The New Testament reading sees Jesus as the embodiment of this paradox: salvation to those who believe, offense to those who reject.
15. Five verbs in rapid succession describe the fate of those who stumble: kashelu (stumble), nafelu (fall), nishbaru (be broken), noqeshu (be snared), nilkadu (be captured). The cascade is irreversible — each step leads deeper into ruin. The language blends military defeat with hunting imagery.

16. This verse marks a pivotal transition: Isaiah moves from public proclamation to private preservation. The nation has rejected his message (fulfilling the hardening commission of 6:9-10), so the testimony must be sealed — preserved intact, like a legal document — among his disciples.
16. Te'udah ('testimony') and torah ('teaching, instruction') together represent the full prophetic deposit: both the record of what God has said and the instruction for how to live. Binding and sealing protect the message for a future generation that will receive it.
16. Limmudai ('my disciples, my taught ones') — this is the earliest reference to a prophetic 'school' or circle of followers who preserve and transmit the prophet's teaching. The concept anticipates the rabbinical tradition and, in Christian reading, the apostolic community.
17. One of the most poignant verses in Isaiah: the prophet commits to waiting for a God who is hiding. God's face is turned away from Israel — the ultimate expression of divine displeasure (cf. Deut 31:17; Ps 27:9) — yet Isaiah will wait and hope.
17. The two verbs — chikkiti ('I will wait') and qivveti ('I will hope, I will look eagerly') — express patient, active expectation. This is not resignation but faith in the dark: trusting a God whose purposes are hidden.
17. The hester panim ('hiding of the face') is a major theological concept in the Hebrew Bible. God is not absent but deliberately concealed, and the concealment is itself a form of judgment. Isaiah's response — to wait rather than to seek alternative powers — is the opposite of Ahaz's response.
18. Isaiah and his sign-name children form a walking prophetic display: Shear-jashub ('a remnant shall return,' 7:3) and Maher-shalal-hash-baz ('swift plunder, speedy prey,' 8:1-4). The prophet's own name, Yesha'yahu, means 'the LORD saves.' Together they proclaim: the LORD saves, a remnant returns, judgment comes swiftly.
18. The Hebrew letter of Hebrews 2:13 quotes this verse, applying it to Jesus and his 'children' (the church). The New Testament reading sees Isaiah's sign-family as a type of Christ and his people.
18. 'Who dwells on Mount Zion' — even as God hides his face (v. 17), his dwelling place is affirmed. He has not abandoned Zion; he is hidden there, waiting to be revealed.
19. The people, cut off from prophetic guidance by their own rebellion, turn to necromancy — consulting the dead (ovot, 'mediums,' and yideonim, 'spiritists'). The Torah explicitly forbids this (Lev 19:31; 20:6; Deut 18:10-12).
19. The mediums 'whisper and mutter' (metsaftsim vehamahgigim) — the sounds of fraudulent seances. The contrast with the clear, public word of God is stark: prophetic truth versus occult mumbling.
19. Isaiah's rhetorical question is devastating: should a people go to the dead rather than to the living God? The absurdity of the reversal — seeking life from death — exposes the depth of their spiritual collapse.
20. This verse became one of the most quoted in the history of biblical interpretation — a rallying cry for the sufficiency and authority of Scripture. 'Torah' (instruction) and 'te'udah' (testimony) together represent the complete divine revelation: God's law and his prophetic witness.
20. The phrase 'no dawn' (ein lo shachar) literally means 'no morning light for them.' Those who reject God's word remain in perpetual darkness — there is no new day, no hope, no illumination coming. The metaphor connects to the darkness imagery throughout Isaiah (5:20, 30; 8:22).
20. The verse functions as a hermeneutical principle: all claims to spiritual knowledge — including mediumistic whispers (v. 19) — must be tested against the Torah and the prophetic testimony. What contradicts them has no light.
21. The scene is one of desperate refugees wandering through a devastated landscape. Hunger drives them to rage, and rage to blasphemy — cursing both their human king (who failed them) and their God (whom they blame).
21. The verbs trace a descent: hungry, enraged, cursing. Physical deprivation leads to spiritual collapse. The curse against God is the ultimate covenant violation — the opposite of the trust Isaiah modeled in v. 17.
21. 'Look upward' — a futile gesture. Looking to heaven will bring no relief because they have rejected the God who dwells there.
22. The chapter ends as chapter 5 ended: in total darkness. Every direction yields only tsarah (distress), chashekah (darkness), me'uf tsuqah (gloom of anguish), and afelah (thick, impenetrable darkness). The four terms for darkness pile up relentlessly.
22. The final word — menudach ('driven out, thrust away') — echoes the exile language of 6:12. They are pushed into darkness as into exile, with no light and no way back.
22. But this is not the final word. The verse that immediately follows in the Hebrew text (8:23, which becomes 9:1 in English Bibles) announces: 'The people who walked in darkness have seen a great light.' The deepest darkness becomes the setting for the brightest dawn. Isaiah's structure is deliberate: maximum darkness precedes maximum hope.

9

Summary: *After the darkness of Assyrian invasion, a great light breaks over Galilee. A royal child is born whose four throne names declare him divine warrior, eternal father, and prince of wholeness. Yet the chapter pivots sharply: God's hand remains outstretched against a stubborn northern kingdom through a cascading series of judgments.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 (Hebrew v. 5) contains four compound throne names unprecedented in Israelite royal ideology. No Davidic king at coronation received titles this exalted. 'Mighty God' (El Gibbor) is a divine title used of God himself in 10:21 — its application to a human king shatters the boundary between royal theology and divine identity. The accumulation of all four names on a single figure pushes the oracle beyond anything the Davidic covenant alone can contain. We are dealing with a text that Israel's own theological grammar struggled to house, and that later tradition — both Jewish and Christian — recognized as eschatological. The refrain 'For all this, his anger has not turned away, and his hand is still stretched out' (vv. 12, 17, 21) creates a relentless drumbeat across the second half of the chapter, structuring four successive judgments that mirror the covenant-curse pattern of Leviticus 26. The interplay between the messianic light of verses 1-7 and the unrelenting judgment of verses 8-21 is not contradiction but covenant logic: the same God who promises redemption through a coming king also holds his people accountable in the present.*

Translation Friction: *The versification difference between Hebrew and English creates an immediate challenge: what English Bibles number as 9:1 is 8:23 in the Hebrew text, and what English calls 9:2 is Hebrew 9:1. We follow English versification for accessibility but note the Hebrew numbering. The four throne names in verse 6 resist English at every turn. Pele-yo'ets is not two separate titles but a construct phrase — 'Wonder of a Counselor' or 'Wonderful Counselor' — and the debate over whether pele is an adjective or a noun changes the meaning significantly. El Gibbor ('Mighty God') is unmistakably a divine title, which some translators have softened to 'God-like hero' to avoid the theological weight — we have not softened it. Avi-ad is literally 'Father of Eternity' rather than 'Everlasting Father,' and Sar-Shalom ('Prince of Peace') uses shalom in its full Hebrew sense of wholeness, completeness, and covenant well-being, not merely the absence of conflict.*

Connections: *The 'great light' of verse 2 illuminating Galilee of the nations connects forward to Matthew 4:15-16, which quotes this passage at the start of Jesus' Galilean ministry. The throne names connect backward to the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7) and the royal psalms (Psalm 2, Psalm 72, Psalm 110). El Gibbor reappears in Isaiah 10:21 as a title for God — making the link between the child and God explicit within Isaiah's own text. The 'zeal of the LORD of Hosts' that guarantees fulfillment (v. 7) echoes the same phrase in 2 Kings 19:31 during the Assyrian crisis. The outstretched-hand refrain (vv. 12, 17, 21) continues from 5:25 and extends through 10:4, forming a structural unit of five strophes of judgment that frames the messianic oracle.*

¹But there will be no more gloom for her who was in anguish.
In the former time he brought contempt on the land of Zebulun
and the land of Naphtali,
but in the latter time he will bring honor —
by the way of the sea, beyond the Jordan,
Galilee of the nations.

²The people who walked in darkness
have seen a great light.
Those who dwelt in a land of deep shadow —
light has dawned upon them.

³You have multiplied the nation;
you have increased its joy.
They rejoice before you as with the joy of harvest,

as warriors exult when dividing plunder.

⁴For the yoke of his burden,
the bar across his shoulders,
the rod of his oppressor —
you have shattered them as on the day of Midian.

⁵For every boot that tramped in the earthquake of battle,
every cloak rolled in blood —
they will be fuel for burning,
food for fire.

⁶For a child is born to us,
a son is given to us,
and the dominion rests upon his shoulder.
His name is called:
Wonderful Counselor, Mighty God,
Father of Eternity, Prince of Peace.

⁷Of the increase of his dominion and of peace there will be no end,
upon the throne of David and over his kingdom,
to establish it and sustain it
with justice and with righteousness
from now and forever.
The zeal of the LORD of Hosts will accomplish this.

⁸The Lord sent a word against Jacob,
and it fell upon Israel.

⁹And all the people will know it —
Ephraim and the inhabitants of Samaria —
who say in pride and arrogance of heart:

¹⁰"The bricks have fallen,
but we will build with dressed stone.
The sycamores have been cut down,
but we will replace them with cedars."

¹¹So the LORD has raised up the adversaries of Rezin against him
and stirred up his enemies —

¹²Aram from the east and the Philistines from the west —
they devour Israel with open mouth.
For all this, his anger has not turned away,
and his hand is still stretched out.

¹³Yet the people have not turned back to the one who struck them,
and the LORD of Hosts they have not sought.

¹⁴So the LORD cut off from Israel head and tail,
palm branch and reed, in a single day.

¹⁵The elder and the dignitary — these are the head.
The prophet who teaches lies — he is the tail.

¹⁶Those who guide this people lead them astray,
and those who are guided by them are swallowed up.

¹⁷Therefore the Lord takes no pleasure in their young men,
and on their orphans and widows he has no compassion,
for every one of them is godless and does evil,
and every mouth speaks disgrace.
For all this, his anger has not turned away,
and his hand is still stretched out.

¹⁸For wickedness burns like fire;
it devours thorns and briars,
it kindles the thickets of the forest,
and they swirl upward in columns of smoke.

¹⁹By the fury of the LORD of Hosts the land is scorched,
and the people are fuel for the fire.
No one spares his brother.

²⁰They snatch on the right but are still hungry;
they devour on the left but are not satisfied.
Each one feeds on the flesh of his own arm —

²¹Manasseh devours Ephraim, and Ephraim devours Manasseh;
together they turn against Judah.
For all this, his anger has not turned away,
and his hand is still stretched out.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is 8:23 in the Hebrew text; English Bibles number it as 9:1. It serves as a hinge between the darkness of chapter 8 and the light of chapter 9.
1. The contrast between *he-qal* ('he made light, he treated with contempt') and *hikh-bid* ('he made heavy, he brought honor/glory') is a wordplay lost in most English renderings. The same root *k-b-d* means both 'heavy' and 'glorious' — what Assyria treated as worthless, God will make glorious.
1. *Galil ha-goyim* ('Galilee of the nations') designated the northern territory with its mixed Israelite and Gentile population. The phrase 'of the nations' was not a compliment — it marked the region as culturally contaminated. That this despised region receives the first light is theologically deliberate.
2. The Hebrew *tsalmawet* has been traditionally parsed as *tsel-mawet* ('shadow of death'), but many scholars now read it as a superlative form *tsalmut* meaning 'deep darkness' or 'utter gloom.' Both readings work theologically — the darkness is either death's shadow or darkness so total it resembles death. We render 'deep shadow' to preserve the ambiguity.
2. The verb *nagah* ('to shine, to dawn') implies light breaking suddenly — not a gradual brightening but a sudden eruption of radiance into total darkness. The perfect tense ('has dawned') treats the future event as already accomplished — the prophetic perfect, expressing certainty of fulfillment.
3. The Masoretic text has *lo* ('not') but the Qere reading is *lo* ('to it/him'), changing 'you have not increased the joy' to 'you have increased its joy.' The Qere reading makes far better sense in context and is followed by virtually all modern translations. This is one of the eighteen *Tiqqune Sopherim* (scribal corrections) traditionally noted in the Masoretic tradition.

3. Two images of joy are stacked: harvest joy (the relief of provision after labor) and battle joy (the triumph of victory after danger). Together they capture both the agricultural and military dimensions of God's deliverance.
4. Three images of subjugation — yoke (ol), staff/bar (matteh), and rod (shevet) — are listed and then destroyed with a single verb: ha-chittota ('you have shattered'). The grammatical structure forces the reader through the full weight of oppression before releasing it with the breaking.
4. The 'day of Midian' refers to Gideon's victory in Judges 7, where God defeated a vast army through 300 men with torches and jars — emphasizing that deliverance comes by divine intervention, not military strength. The allusion is programmatic: the coming salvation will be God's work, not human achievement.
5. The Hebrew se'on so'en is onomatopoeic — the repetition of the s-'-n root mimics the rhythmic tramping of marching boots. English cannot reproduce this sound-sense, but 'boot that tramped' preserves the military footwear image.
5. The destruction of military equipment by fire is an eschatological image: in the coming age, the instruments of war will not be stored for reuse but burned permanently. This parallels the breaking of weapons in Psalm 46:9 and the plowshares oracle in Isaiah 2:4.
6. This verse is the theological summit of the chapter. Four compound throne names are given to the royal child, each making claims that escalate beyond normal Davidic royal theology.
6. Pele-Yo'ets ('Wonderful Counselor'): Pele is used elsewhere only of God's own acts — the 'wonders' of the exodus (Exodus 15:11), the 'wonder' of Manoah's angel (Judges 13:18). A yo'ets is a royal advisor (2 Samuel 15:12). The compound means this king's counsel will be of a supernatural, God-like quality — not merely wise but wondrously so.
6. El Gibbor ('Mighty God'): This is the most theologically charged of the four names. El is not a generic word for 'powerful one' here — it is a divine title. Gibbor ('mighty warrior, hero') intensifies it. The identical phrase El Gibbor appears in Isaiah 10:21 as an unambiguous title for God. Some scholars attempt to soften this to 'God-like hero' or 'hero of God,' but the Hebrew construction does not support that weakening. The text applies a divine title to a human child.
6. Avi-Ad ('Father of Eternity'): Not 'Everlasting Father' in the sense of God the Father, but 'Father of Eternity' — the one who fathers (provides, protects, originates) an eternal age. The royal father metaphor casts the king as protector and provider of his people in perpetuity.
6. Sar-Shalom ('Prince of Peace'): Sar means 'ruler, prince, chief.' Shalom encompasses wholeness, completeness, prosperity, health, safety, and covenant well-being. This is not pacifism but the comprehensive flourishing that follows when a righteous ruler governs justly.
6. The passive constructions 'is born' (yullad) and 'is given' (nittan) leave the agent unnamed — the child arrives by divine initiative. The misrah ('dominion, rule') is a rare word appearing only here and in verse 7 in the entire Hebrew Bible.
7. The word lemarbeh ('of the increase') is written in the Masoretic text with a closed mem () in the middle of the word rather than the expected open mem (). This anomaly has generated extensive rabbinic commentary — some see it as pointing to hidden or sealed dimensions of the messianic kingdom.
7. Tsedaqah ('righteousness') here carries its covenantal weight: the king will govern according to God's covenant standards, ensuring right relationship between God and people, ruler and ruled. Combined with mishpat ('justice'), it describes governance that is both legally just and relationally faithful.
7. The closing formula — 'The zeal of the LORD of Hosts will accomplish this' — removes the fulfillment from human effort entirely. Qin'at YHWH ('the zeal/jealousy of the LORD') is the same passionate divine commitment that defends Jerusalem in 2 Kings 19:31. The promise rests on God's own fierce loyalty to his covenant.
8. The tone shifts abruptly from messianic promise to present judgment. The 'word' (davar) sent against Jacob is not mere speech but a word-event — a decree that, once spoken, accomplishes its purpose (cf. Isaiah 55:11). The verb nafal ('fell') gives the word physical weight, like a hammer stroke landing on its target.
9. Ephraim and Samaria identify the northern kingdom of Israel. Godel levav ('greatness of heart') is not courage but inflated self-regard — the heart swollen beyond its proper size. The people's problem is not ignorance but willful arrogance in the face of divine warning.
10. The boast reveals the people's defiance: each line acknowledges destruction but immediately trumps it with an upgrade. Mud bricks become hewn stone; common sycamores become precious cedars. The pattern is not resilience but refusal to read judgment as judgment — they treat divine discipline as a renovation opportunity. The arrogance lies not in rebuilding but in rebuilding bigger without repentance.
11. Rezin was the king of Aram (Syria), Israel's ally in the Syro-Ephraimite coalition against Judah (Isaiah 7:1). God raises up Rezin's own enemies — turning allies into threats. The verb yesakhsekh ('stir up, incite') is rare and onomatopoeic, suggesting the tangling and agitation of hostility.
12. The first occurrence of the refrain that will structure the rest of the chapter (repeated in vv. 17, 21 and continuing into 10:4). 'His hand is still stretched out' (yado netuyah) echoes the exodus language of God's 'outstretched arm' — but here it is stretched in judgment, not deliverance. The same divine power that rescued now disciplines.
12. The image of devouring 'with open mouth' (bekhol-peh, literally 'with all mouth') is visceral — enemies consuming Israel like an animal consuming prey, holding nothing back.

13. The verse diagnoses the failure: lo-shav ('has not turned back/returned'). The verb shuv is the Hebrew Bible's primary word for repentance — a turning, a return. The people refuse to connect their suffering with the God who sent it. They rebuild (v. 10) but do not return. The parallel 'have not sought' (lo darashu) adds willful neglect — they neither return nor inquire.
14. The merism 'head and tail' means the entirety of the social order, from highest to lowest. 'Palm branch and reed' (kipphah ve-agmon) reinforces this: the tall, proud palm frond and the lowly marsh reed — every class will be affected. The phrase 'in a single day' emphasizes the swiftness and totality of the judgment.
15. The verse decodes the metaphor of verse 14. The 'head' is the ruling class (elders and honored men); the 'tail' is the false prophet. Placing the false prophet as the 'tail' is devastating — he is not even the head of falsehood but its trailing appendage, dragged along behind. The moreh-sheqer ('teacher of lies') is worse than merely wrong; he actively instructs in falsehood.
16. A wordplay on the root '-sh-r': me'ashrei ('those who call blessed, guides') and me'usharav ('those called blessed, the guided'). The leaders who should direct the people toward blessing instead lead them into confusion. The verb mevulla'im ('swallowed up') suggests complete consumption — the misled are not merely confused but destroyed.
17. The most disturbing line in the strophe: God will not have compassion on orphans and widows — the very categories Scripture most consistently commands Israel to protect (Exodus 22:22, Deuteronomy 10:18). The reason is that corruption is total: kulloh chanef ('all of it is godless'). When even the vulnerable participate in the culture of evil, the normal categories of protection collapse.
17. Nevalah ('folly, disgrace') is stronger than English 'folly' suggests. In Hebrew, nevalah carries the sense of moral outrage, sacrilege, and social violation — the word used for Amnon's rape of Tamar (2 Samuel 13:12) and the atrocity at Gibeah (Judges 19:23).
18. The fire metaphor operates on two levels: wickedness itself is the fire (self-consuming), and it spreads through society the way wildfire spreads through forest — from scrub brush (shamir va-shayit, 'thorns and briars') to dense thickets (sivkhei ha-ya'ar). The verb yit'abbeku ('they swirl, they roll upward') is rare, evoking the churning, spiraling rise of smoke from a great conflagration.
19. The fire of verse 18, which was the fire of wickedness, now merges with the fire of divine wrath — the two are not separate but the same. God's judgment works through the natural consequences of sin. The phrase 'no one spares his brother' (ish el-achiv lo yachmolu) describes the collapse of the most basic human bond. When covenant with God breaks, covenant between humans follows.
20. The image of insatiable hunger — eating on every side but never filled — describes a society consuming itself. The final phrase 'each one feeds on the flesh of his own arm' (ish besar-zero'o yokhelu) is either literal (siege cannibalism) or metaphorical (self-destructive civil war). The word zero'a ('arm') can also mean 'strength, power' — they consume their own strength.
21. The fratricidal pattern reaches its climax: the two Joseph tribes (Manasseh and Ephraim), who should be the closest of brothers, consume each other — and then unite only to attack Judah. Brotherhood dissolves into mutual predation, and the only remaining solidarity is solidarity in aggression against the covenant community's other half.
21. The third iteration of the refrain. The repetition creates a sense of mounting, unrelieved judgment. Each strophe presents a new facet of collapse — social (vv. 13-17), natural (vv. 18-19), fraternal (vv. 20-21) — and each ends with the same grim verdict: God's anger is not yet spent.

10

Summary: *A woe oracle against lawmakers who write injustice into law is followed by the longest sustained meditation on Assyria in the prophets. God commissions Assyria as the rod of his anger, but Assyria does not know it serves a purpose beyond its own imperial ambition. When the tool presumes to be the craftsman, God will judge the instrument itself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological architecture of this chapter is staggering in its precision. God simultaneously holds two truths: Assyria is his chosen instrument of discipline against Israel, and Assyria is morally guilty for its brutality. There is no contradiction because the text distinguishes between divine sovereignty and human motive — God uses Assyria's aggression without approving it. The axe-and-woodsman metaphor (v. 15) is one of the most compact statements of divine sovereignty in Scripture: 'Shall the axe boast over the one who chops with it?' The chapter then pivots to hope through the remnant theology that defines Isaiah's vision — the remnant (she'ar) will return (yashuv) to the Mighty God (El Gibbor), connecting back to the messianic title of 9:6 and to Isaiah's own son Shear-Jashub ('a remnant will return'). We encounter here the paradox that runs through all of Isaiah: judgment is real and devastating, but it is never God's final word.*

*Translation Friction: The Assyrian king's boast in verses 8-14 required careful handling. The Hebrew uses rapid-fire rhetorical questions and geographical lists that create a momentum of conquest — each conquered city named as evidence of invincibility. English can preserve the list structure but loses the phonetic drumbeat of the Hebrew place names. The word *matteh* appears as both 'rod' (instrument of punishment, v. 5) and 'staff' (walking stick, v. 15), requiring us to track which sense applies in each occurrence. The remnant theology in verses 20-23 compressed enormous covenantal freight into a few verses — 'the remnant will return to the Mighty God' packs Isaiah's son's prophetic name, the messianic title from 9:6, and the doctrine of a surviving faithful core into a single phrase.*

Connections: The opening woe (hoy) continues the woe series that began in 5:8-23 — the outstretched-hand refrain in 10:4 is the fifth and final strophe of that sequence. The 'rod of my anger' language (v. 5) connects to the rod imagery in 9:4 (the rod of the oppressor, which God shattered) — now God wields a rod of his own. El Gibbor in verse 21 is the same title given to the messianic child in 9:6, creating a deliberate resonance: the Mighty God to whom the remnant returns is the same Mighty God whose name the royal child bears. Shear-Jashub ('a remnant will return'), the name God told Isaiah to give his son (7:3), becomes theological doctrine in verses 21-22. The destruction of Assyria 'as on the day of Midian' (v. 26) echoes 9:4, reinforcing that the same divine pattern of unexpected deliverance will operate again.

¹Woe to those who enact wicked statutes,
who write oppression into law —

²to turn the poor aside from justice,
to rob the afflicted of my people of their rights,
so that widows become their plunder
and orphans their prey.

³What will you do on the day of reckoning,
when devastation comes from afar?
To whom will you flee for help?
Where will you leave your wealth?

⁴Nothing remains but to crouch among the prisoners
or fall among the slain.
For all this, his anger has not turned away,
and his hand is still stretched out.

⁵Woe to Assyria, the rod of my anger —
the staff in their hand is my fury!

⁶Against a godless nation I send him;
against the people of my wrath I command him —
to seize plunder, to carry off spoil,
to trample them like mud in the streets.

⁷But this is not what he intends;
this is not what his heart plans.
Rather, it is in his heart to destroy,
to cut off nations — not a few.

⁸For he says:
"Are not my commanders every one a king?"

⁹"Is not Calno like Carchemish?
Is not Hamath like Arpad?
Is not Samaria like Damascus?"

¹⁰"As my hand has reached the kingdoms of the idols,
whose carved images surpassed those of Jerusalem and Samaria —"

¹¹"shall I not do to Jerusalem and her images
as I have done to Samaria and her idols?"

¹²When the Lord has finished all his work on Mount Zion and Jerusalem,
he will punish the fruit of the arrogant heart of Assyria's king
and the glory of his haughty eyes.

¹³For he has said:
"By the strength of my hand I have done this,
by my wisdom — for I am shrewd.
I have erased the borders of peoples,
I have plundered their treasures,
and like a mighty bull I have brought down those enthroned."

¹⁴"My hand has reached into the wealth of peoples as into a nest,
and as one gathers abandoned eggs,
I have gathered the whole earth.
Not a wing fluttered,
not a beak opened,
not a chirp was heard."

¹⁵Does the axe boast over the one who chops with it?
Does the saw exalt itself over the one who wields it?
As if a rod could swing the one who lifts it!
As if a staff could raise what is not wood!

¹⁶Therefore the Lord, the LORD of Hosts,
will send a wasting disease among Assyria's stout warriors,
and under his glory a fire will be kindled,
a blazing like the blazing of flame.

¹⁷The Light of Israel will become a fire,
and his Holy One a flame.
It will burn and devour Assyria's thorns and briars
in a single day.

¹⁸The glory of his forest and his garden land
he will consume, both soul and body,
and it will be as when a sick man wastes away.

¹⁹The remaining trees of his forest will be so few
that a child could count them.

²⁰On that day, the remnant of Israel
and the survivors of the house of Jacob
will no longer lean on the one who struck them,
but will lean on the LORD, the Holy One of Israel, in truth.

²¹A remnant will return —
a remnant of Jacob —
to the Mighty God.

²²For though your people Israel be as the sand of the sea,
only a remnant of them will return.
Destruction is decreed, overflowing with righteousness.

²³For a complete destruction, one that is decreed,
the Lord, the LORD of Hosts, is bringing
upon the whole land.

²⁴Therefore, this is what the Lord, the LORD of Hosts, says:
Do not fear, my people who dwell in Zion,
when Assyria strikes you with the rod
and lifts his staff against you as Egypt once did.

²⁵For in just a little while, a very little while,
fury will be spent,
and my anger will turn to their destruction.

²⁶The LORD of Hosts will raise a whip against him,
as when he struck Midian at the rock of Oreb,
and will lift his staff over the sea
as he did against Egypt.

²⁷On that day, his burden will be removed from your shoulder
and his yoke from your neck,
and the yoke will be broken because of fatness.

²⁸He has come to Aiath,
he has passed through Migron,
at Michmash he stores his equipment.

²⁹They have crossed the pass;
they lodge at Geba.
Ramah trembles;
Gibeah of Saul has fled.

³⁰Shriek aloud, daughter of Gallim!
Listen, Laishah!
Answer her, Anathoth!

³¹Madmenah has fled;
the people of Gebim scramble for cover.

³²This very day he halts at Nob;
he shakes his fist at the mountain of daughter Zion,
the hill of Jerusalem.

³³Look — the Lord, the LORD of Hosts,
is lopping the branches with terrifying force!
The tallest are hewn down;
the lofty are brought low.

³⁴He will hack through the forest thickets with iron,
and Lebanon will fall by a mighty one.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The woe oracle (hoy) targets not random criminals but legislators — those who choqeqim chiqqei-awen ('decree decrees of iniquity'). The doubling of the root ch-q-q emphasizes that this is systematic, codified injustice. The parallel mekhattevim amal kittevu ('who write trouble/oppression that they have written') reinforces the point: oppression has been drafted, approved, and published as official policy. This is not corruption hiding in shadows but injustice wearing the formal dress of law.
2. The four victim categories — dallim ('poor, weak'), aniyyei ammi ('afflicted of my people'), almanot ('widows'), yetomim ('orphans') — form a comprehensive portrait of vulnerability. Note that God says 'my people' (ammi) — the victims are claimed by God personally. The lawmakers' plunder (shalal) and prey (bazaz) use military vocabulary — they wage war on their own poor through legislation.
3. Three rhetorical questions strip away every false security. Yom pequddah ('day of visitation/reckoning') is the moment when God audits the books. The 'devastation from afar' (sho'ah mimmerchaq) points to Assyria — the instrument is already in motion. Kevod ('glory, wealth, honor') will become worthless; there will be no safe deposit for it. The questions are unanswerable by design.
4. The final occurrence of the outstretched-hand refrain that began in 5:25 and has been repeated through 9:12, 17, and 21. Five strophes of judgment, five iterations of the same verdict. The cumulative effect is overwhelming — a people who have exhausted every avenue of grace.
4. The Hebrew bilti ('nothing but, without, except') opens the verse with grim finality: the only options left are captivity or death. The wealthy lawmakers of verses 1-2 will share the fate of the poor they oppressed.
5. This verse is one of the most theologically explosive in the Hebrew Bible. God calls the most powerful empire on earth 'the rod of my anger' — a stick in his hand. Shevet ('rod, scepter') and matteh ('staff, branch') are both instruments wielded by someone else. Assyria has agency — it makes real choices and bears real guilt — but it operates within a sovereignty it cannot see or control.
5. The hoy ('woe') creates a structural parallel with verse 1: woe to unjust lawmakers, woe to the imperial power. God judges both the internal corruption and the external instrument.
6. God speaks of his own people as goy chanef ('a godless nation') and am evrati ('the people of my wrath') — devastating language from the covenant God about his covenant people. The commissioned actions — plunder, spoil, trampling — are brutal, yet they are divinely authorized. The tension is not resolved but stated: God uses Assyria's violence as discipline while Israel's sin makes the discipline necessary.
7. The hinge verse of the passage. God's purpose and Assyria's purpose diverge entirely: God intends disciplined correction; Assyria intends total annihilation. The phrase lo-khen yedammeh ('not so does he think') reveals that Assyria is unconscious of its instrumental role — it genuinely believes it acts from its own imperial will. This gap between divine purpose and human self-understanding is the theological engine of the entire Assyrian section.
8. The Assyrian king's boast begins. His officers (sarai, 'my princes/commanders') are so powerful that each could rule a nation. The boast is not empty — Assyrian provincial governors did wield king-like power over conquered territories. But the claim reveals the imperial ideology: Assyria's subordinates outrank other nations' rulers.
9. A cascade of conquered cities, each pairing demonstrating that resistance is futile. Carchemish (defeated 717 BC), Calno/Calneh, Arpad (defeated 740 BC), Hamath (defeated 720 BC), Damascus (defeated 732 BC), Samaria (defeated 722 BC) — the geographic sweep moves from northeast to southwest, closing in on Jerusalem. Each rhetorical question says: "This city fell just like that one — what makes you different?"
10. The Assyrian king's theology is simple: every nation has gods, every god has been defeated by Assyria, therefore no god can resist. By lumping Jerusalem's God with the idols of conquered nations, the king commits the fundamental category error that will bring his downfall. He cannot distinguish between idols that are nothing and the living God who sent him.
11. The boast reaches its climax: Jerusalem will fall just as Samaria fell. The Assyrian king uses two different words for idols — elilim ('worthless things') and atsbabbim ('shaped images, things that cause grief') — without realizing that Jerusalem's God is neither. The dramatic irony is thick: the reader knows what the Assyrian king does not — the rod cannot determine its own targets.

12. The narrator breaks into the Assyrian speech to state the divine perspective. God will first complete (yevatsa, 'finish, accomplish') his disciplinary work on Zion — Israel's punishment is real and necessary — and then turn to punish the instrument. The sequence is important: judgment on Israel comes first, judgment on Assyria second. God does not excuse Israel because he will later judge Assyria.
12. The 'fruit' (peri) of the arrogant heart — arrogance is treated as something that grows, matures, and yields a harvest. And that harvest will be reaped in judgment.
13. The boast resumes in the king's own voice. Three first-person verbs — 'I have done,' 'I have erased,' 'I have plundered' — reveal the core sin: the instrument claims to be the agent. The phrase 'by the strength of my hand' (bekhoch yadi) directly contradicts verse 5, where the hand holds a divine rod. Ka-abbir ('like a mighty one/bull') uses a word that can denote a strong bull or a powerful person — we render 'mighty bull' to capture the bestial self-image.
14. The nest metaphor is masterfully contemptuous: the nations' accumulated wealth is as easy to take as eggs from an unguarded nest. The three-fold negation — no wing moved, no beak opened, no chirp sounded — pictures total helplessness. The mother bird is absent; the eggs cannot resist. The boast is simultaneously accurate (no nation successfully resisted Assyria) and self-condemning (the ease of conquest is God's doing, not Assyria's prowess).
15. This verse is the theological core of the chapter — perhaps the most concise statement of divine sovereignty over human empires in the Hebrew Bible. Four parallel images all make the same point: the instrument cannot claim the craftsman's role. Garzen ('axe'), massor ('saw'), shevet ('rod'), and matteh ('staff') are all tools — and Assyria is all four.
15. The final phrase keharim matteh lo-ets ('as if a staff could lift what is not wood') is the most cryptic. The staff is wood (ets); the one who lifts it is 'not wood' (lo-ets) — that is, flesh and blood, a person. The absurdity is total: wood cannot lift a human being. Assyria, a mere wooden instrument, cannot presume to direct the God who holds it.
16. The judgment reverses the boast: Assyria's 'fat ones' (mishmanav, the well-fed warriors and officials) will be consumed by rason ('leanness, wasting'). The fire kindled 'under his glory' (tachat kevodo) may refer to Assyria's glory being consumed from beneath, or to God's glory manifesting as fire — the ambiguity is likely intentional.
17. The Light of Israel (or yisra'el) and his Holy One (qedosho) — both titles for God — become instruments of destruction. The same God who is Israel's light becomes Assyria's fire. Thorns and briars (shito ushemiro) are Isaiah's characteristic image for what is worthless and destined for burning (cf. 5:6, 7:23-25, 9:18). The 'single day' echoes 9:14 — swift, total judgment.
18. Forest (ya'ar) and garden land (karmel) together represent the totality of Assyria's resources — wild and cultivated, military and economic. 'From soul to body' (minnefesh ve-ad-basar) means complete destruction, inside and out. The final image — kimesos noses ('like a sick man wasting/like a standard-bearer fainting') — is debated, but the sense of progressive collapse is clear.
19. A devastatingly simple image: the once-vast Assyrian forest (empire) will be reduced to so few trees that a na'ar ('boy, child') could write them down. The word she'ar ('remainder') is the same root as in Shear-Jashub — the concept of 'remnant' appears here applied to Assyria, but for Assyria the remnant is pathetic rather than hopeful.
20. The remnant theology crystallizes. She'ar Yisra'el ('the remnant of Israel') will stop depending on foreign alliances — 'the one who struck them' likely refers to Assyria — and will lean (nish'an) on the LORD instead. The phrase qedosh Yisra'el ('the Holy One of Israel') appears in its full form, Isaiah's signature title for God.
20. The word be'emet ('in truth, faithfully') qualifies the leaning — not superficial political piety but genuine dependence. The remnant's faith will be real.
21. This verse is the doctrinal unpacking of the name Shear-Jashub ('a remnant will return') that God commanded Isaiah to give his son in 7:3. The two Hebrew words she'ar yashuv are the son's name rendered as prophecy.
21. El Gibbor ('Mighty God') is the same title given to the messianic child in 9:6. The connection is not accidental: the remnant returns to the Mighty God, and the Mighty God is the name of the coming king. Isaiah's theology creates a web of cross-references that binds the messianic hope to the remnant's survival.
22. The Abrahamic promise (Genesis 22:17, 'as the sand of the sea') is both affirmed and qualified: yes, Israel will be innumerable, but only a remnant will return. The phrase killayon charutz ('decreed destruction') is fearsome — the destruction is not accidental but determined. Yet it is shotef tsedaqah ('overflowing with righteousness') — even the judgment is just. God's severity and God's righteousness are not in tension.
23. Kalah venecheratsah ('complete and decreed') reinforces verse 22: the coming judgment is both total (kalah, 'completion, consumption') and predetermined (necheratsah, 'determined, cut'). The double divine title — Adonai YHWH Tseva'ot ('the Lord, the LORD of Hosts') — underscores the authority behind the decree.
24. The tone shifts from judgment to comfort. 'This is what the LORD says' (koh amar) introduces a direct divine speech of reassurance. The comparison to Egypt (bederekh Mitsrayim, 'in the manner/way of Egypt') recalls that Egypt's oppression was also severe — and also temporary. The rod (shevet) and staff (matteh) that Assyria wields are the same instruments of verse 5, now named to demystify them: they are tools, and tools can be set aside.
25. The phrase me'at miz'ar ('a little, a very little') doubles the diminutive — the remaining time of Assyrian dominance is minuscule from God's perspective. The za'am ('fury, indignation') that is currently directed at Israel through Assyria will soon be redirected (appi al-tavlitam, 'my anger

toward their annihilation') — against Assyria itself.

26. Two paradigmatic deliverances are invoked: Gideon's defeat of Midian (Judges 7:25, where the Midianite prince Oreb was killed at the rock bearing his name) and the exodus victory at the sea. Both were situations where Israel was hopelessly outmatched and God intervened decisively. The message: what God did to Midian and Egypt, he will do to Assyria.
27. The imagery of burden (subbol), shoulder (shekhem), and yoke (ol) echoes 9:4, where the same images described Midianite oppression. The final phrase — *ve-chubbal ol mippenei-shamen* ('the yoke will be broken because of fatness/oil') — is obscure. It may mean Israel will grow so fat (prosperous) that the yoke cannot hold, or it may refer to anointing oil (shemen), suggesting a messianic deliverance. The ambiguity may be deliberate, holding both material prosperity and anointed deliverance in the same image.
28. Verses 28-32 form a vivid march-poem tracking an invading army's approach to Jerusalem from the north. Each verse names a town along the route, creating a geographical drumbeat of approaching doom. Aiath (Ai), Migron, and Michmash are all north of Jerusalem — the enemy draws closer with each line. The effect is cinematic: the audience watches the army advance in real time.
29. The advance continues. Geba is about six miles north of Jerusalem. Ramah and Gibeah of Saul are even closer. The verbs shift from military action ('crossed,' 'lodge') to civilian terror ('trembles,' 'has fled'). The mention of 'Gibeah of Saul' is pointed — the first king's own city cannot hold against this invader.
30. The panic spreads. Daughter of Gallim is called to shriek (tsahali, a piercing cry). Laishah and Anathoth (Jeremiah's future hometown, Jeremiah 1:1) are swept into the alarm. The staccato place names — each line a single town — create a rapid-fire effect that mimics the speed of advancing terror.
31. Madmenah and Gebim are otherwise unknown towns near Jerusalem. Their obscurity makes the point: even the smallest, most insignificant villages are caught in the wave of terror. The verb *he'izu* ('they seek refuge, they take cover') suggests desperate, last-minute survival efforts.
32. The march poem reaches its climax: the invader stands at Nob, from which Jerusalem is visible, and shakes his fist (*yenofef yado*, 'waves his hand') at the city. The phrase *har bat-Tsiyyon* ('mount of daughter Zion') and *giv'at Yerushalayim* ('hill of Jerusalem') name the final target. The army has arrived. But the poem stops here — the blow never falls. The next verses describe God's response, not Jerusalem's fall.
33. God responds to the shaken fist with an axe. The forest metaphor returns: Assyria's army is a forest of tall trees, and God is the woodsman who lops (*mesa'ef*, 'cuts branches') them. The irony is total — in verse 15, the axe (Assyria) boasted against the woodsman (God); now the woodsman fells the forest (Assyria) with a different axe. The word *ma'aratsah* ('terror, terrifying force') communicates that this pruning is violent and overwhelming.
34. The final verse completes the forest-felling image. The 'thickets of the forest' (*sivkhei ha-ya'ar*) that once represented Assyria's impenetrable power are cut through with iron. Lebanon — the tallest, most majestic forest in the ancient Near East — falls. The Assyrian empire, for all its towering strength, is timber before God's axe. The chapter ends with a felled forest, setting up chapter 11's opening image: from a cut-down stump, a shoot will grow.

11

Summary: From the stump of Jesse's felled dynasty, a shoot springs up. The Spirit of the LORD rests upon him in sevenfold fullness, equipping him to judge with righteousness. His reign transforms creation itself: predator lies with prey, a child leads the wild beasts, and the knowledge of the LORD covers the earth as waters cover the sea. In that day, the root of Jesse becomes a signal to the nations, and God gathers his scattered people in a second exodus.

*What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter is among the most concentrated messianic texts in the Hebrew Bible. Three botanical metaphors open the oracle — *choter* (shoot), *netser* (branch), and *shoresh* (root) — each making a different claim about the coming king's origin. He comes from Jesse, not David, emphasizing that the dynasty has been cut back to its pre-royal root; the kingship must begin again from scratch. The sevenfold Spirit (v. 2) endows the king not with military power but with wisdom, understanding, counsel, might, knowledge, and the fear of the LORD — capacities for just governance rather than conquest. The peaceable kingdom passage (vv. 6-9) is not sentimentality but eschatology: the reversal of the predator-prey order signals a return to Eden, a creation healed at its foundations. The wolf-and-lamb image has entered the cultural imagination so deeply that we forget how radical the claim is — it promises the undoing of the curse, the restoration of the harmony that existed before the fall. We note that the chapter moves from a single shoot (v. 1) to a transformed creation (vv. 6-9) to a gathered humanity (vv. 10-16): the messianic king's reign expands from personal endowment to cosmic restoration to international reconciliation.*

Translation Friction: The three botanical terms in verse 1 — choter, netser, and shoresh — overlap in English but are distinct in Hebrew. Choter is a fresh shoot springing from a cut trunk, netser is a green branch or sprout growing from roots, and shoresh is the root system itself. English 'shoot,' 'branch,' and 'root' are the best available options, but they do not fully capture the Hebrew distinctions. The verb shanah in verse 11 ('a second time') generated significant discussion: second after what? The first exodus from Egypt is the most natural reading, making the eschatological gathering a 'second exodus' — a concept that will dominate Isaiah 40-55. The animal pairings in verses 6-8 are carefully structured (predator with prey, domestic with wild, child with serpent), and maintaining the parallelism in English required attention to rhythm without sacrificing accuracy.

Connections: The 'stump of Jesse' (geza Yishai) follows directly from 10:33-34, where God felled the Assyrian forest — but the Davidic tree was also felled, and from its stump new life emerges. The Spirit's sevenfold endowment connects to the anointing of kings (1 Samuel 16:13, where the Spirit rushed upon David) but far exceeds any previous royal anointing. The peaceable kingdom reverses the curse of Genesis 3 (enmity between the serpent and humanity) and anticipates the new creation of Isaiah 65:25 ('The wolf and the lamb will feed together'). The 'root of Jesse' as a signal to the nations (v. 10) is echoed in Isaiah 49:6 (the servant as a light to the nations) and quoted in Romans 15:12. The second exodus (vv. 11-16) parallels the first exodus structurally — gathering from foreign lands, crossing through water on dry ground — establishing a pattern that will culminate in Isaiah 43:16-19 ('I am about to do a new thing').

¹A shoot will come out from the stump of Jesse,
and a branch from his roots will bear fruit.

²The Spirit of the LORD will rest upon him —
the Spirit of wisdom and understanding,
the Spirit of counsel and might,
the Spirit of knowledge and the fear of the LORD.

³His delight will be in the fear of the LORD.
He will not judge by what his eyes see,
nor decide by what his ears hear,

⁴but with righteousness he will judge the poor,
and with equity he will decide for the humble of the land.
He will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth,
and with the breath of his lips he will slay the wicked.

⁵Righteousness will be the belt around his waist,
and faithfulness the sash around his hips.

⁶The wolf will dwell with the lamb,
the leopard will lie down with the young goat,
the calf and the lion cub and the fattened animal together —
and a little child will lead them.

⁷The cow and the bear will graze together;
their young will lie down side by side.
The lion will eat straw like the ox.

⁸The nursing child will play over the hole of the cobra,
and the weaned child will reach his hand
into the viper's den.

⁹They will not hurt or destroy
in all my holy mountain,
for the earth will be filled with the knowledge of the LORD
as the waters cover the sea.

¹⁰On that day, the root of Jesse
will stand as a signal to the peoples.
The nations will seek him,
and his resting place will be glory.

¹¹On that day, the Lord will reach out his hand a second time
to reclaim the remnant of his people —
those who remain
from Assyria, from Egypt, from Pathros,
from Cush, from Elam, from Shinar,
from Hamath, and from the coastlands of the sea.

¹²He will raise a signal for the nations
and gather the outcasts of Israel,
and assemble the scattered of Judah
from the four corners of the earth.

¹³The jealousy of Ephraim will depart,
and those hostile to Judah will be cut off.
Ephraim will not be jealous of Judah,
and Judah will not harass Ephraim.

¹⁴They will swoop down on the Philistine slope to the west;
together they will plunder the people of the east.
They will stretch out their hand against Edom and Moab,
and the Ammonites will submit to them.

¹⁵The LORD will dry up the tongue of the Sea of Egypt,
and wave his hand over the Euphrates with a scorching wind.
He will split it into seven channels
and make people cross on foot.

¹⁶There will be a highway for the remnant of his people,
for those who remain from Assyria,
just as there was for Israel
on the day they came up out of the land of Egypt.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse deploys three botanical terms with precision. Geza ('stump, trunk') implies a tree that has been felled — the Davidic dynasty cut down, whether by Assyria, Babylon, or divine judgment. Choter ('shoot') is the new growth that springs from a cut stump, alive because the root system survived. Netser ('branch, sprout') is a green shoot — the word that may underlie the place name Nazareth (Matthew 2:23, 'He will be called a Nazarene/Natsri').
1. The choice of 'Jesse' rather than 'David' is theologically deliberate. Jesse was a farmer in Bethlehem before his son became king. By naming Jesse rather than David, the oracle strips the dynasty back to its pre-royal, pre-palace, pre-Jerusalem origin. The coming king will not inherit a functioning monarchy but will grow from a stump — starting over, as it were, from the field where Samuel first anointed David.

1. The verb yifreh ('will bear fruit') completes the botanical image: the shoot does not merely survive but is productive, fruitful, generative. The stump is not the end of the story.
2. The Spirit (ruach) is named four times, creating a structured endowment: (1) the Spirit of the LORD as the overarching gift, then three pairs — (2) wisdom and understanding (intellectual capacities), (3) counsel and might (leadership capacities), (4) knowledge and fear of the LORD (relational capacities). The total is seven — the number of completeness. The messianic king lacks nothing required for perfect rule.
2. The verb nachah ('rest, settle') implies permanence. When the Spirit rushed upon Saul it could also depart (1 Samuel 16:14); when it rests upon this king, it stays. The contrast with Saul is implicit but unmistakable.
2. Each pair combines an inward quality with its outward expression: wisdom (seeing rightly) with understanding (distinguishing rightly), counsel (planning rightly) with might (acting rightly), knowledge (knowing God) with fear of the LORD (responding to God). The king's governance flows from character, not coercion.
3. The verb vaharicho is literally 'and his smelling/breathing' — the root r-w-ch (related to ruach) suggests that the fear of the LORD is like air to him, the atmosphere he breathes. We render this as 'delight' following the sense of deep, instinctive orientation rather than literal olfaction.
3. The negations are revolutionary for royal ideology: this king will not judge by appearances (mar'eh einav, 'the sight of his eyes') or by hearsay (mishma oznav, 'the hearing of his ears'). Human judges must rely on evidence that can be fabricated; this king perceives truth directly. The implication is that his judgment penetrates beyond surfaces to reality — a capacity only possible through the Spirit's endowment.
4. The king's justice is described in two movements: protection of the vulnerable (dallim, 'poor, weak'; anvei-erets, 'humble of the land') and destruction of the wicked. His weapon is not a sword but his mouth — shevet piv ('the rod of his mouth') and ruach sefatav ('the breath of his lips'). His word carries the force of a weapon. This connects to the 'word' (davar) that God sends in 9:8 — divine speech that accomplishes its purpose.
4. Tsedeq ('righteousness') and mishor ('equity, uprightness') describe the quality of his governance. Unlike the unjust lawmakers of 10:1-2 who perverted justice for the poor, this king's first concern is the vulnerable.
5. The belt (ezor) was not decorative but functional — it gathered robes for action and held weapons. Righteousness (tsedeq) and faithfulness (emunah) are this king's essential equipment, as necessary as a soldier's belt. The image says: everything this king does is girded by, supported by, and held together by righteousness and trustworthiness. These are not accessories but structure.
6. The peaceable kingdom begins. Each pairing is deliberate: wolf/lamb, leopard/kid, calf/lion — predator matched with its natural prey. The domestic and wild coexist without violence. The verb gar ('dwell, sojourn') is the same verb used for Abraham living as an alien in Canaan (Genesis 20:1) and Ruth's family in Moab (Ruth 1:1) — but here the sojourning is peaceful cohabitation rather than vulnerable displacement.
6. The 'little child' (na'ar qaton) leading these animals is the most striking detail. In the present order, a child near a lion is a victim; in the messianic order, a child is the shepherd of predators. The reversal of power is total — authority belongs to the most vulnerable, and the most dangerous are docile.
7. The pairings continue: cow and bear together, their young intermingled. The lion eating straw like the ox is the most dramatic image — the apex predator becomes a herbivore. This echoes Genesis 1:30, where God's original creation mandate gave only plant food to all creatures. The messianic kingdom restores the pre-fall diet, reversing the predation that entered with the curse. The peaceable kingdom is not a new invention but a return to the original design.
8. The final pairing is the most theologically loaded: child and serpent. The enmity between the woman's seed and the serpent (Genesis 3:15) is the oldest conflict in Scripture. Here a nursing infant (yoneq) plays safely at the cobra's (peten) hole, and a weaned child (gamul) reaches into the den of the viper (tsif'oni). The curse of Eden is reversed — the serpent is no longer a threat to the child. This is not merely nature poetry but eschatological reversal of the deepest fracture in creation.
9. This verse provides the theological explanation for the peaceable kingdom: the cause of universal peace is universal knowledge of God. De'ah et-YHWH ('knowledge of the LORD') is not intellectual data about God but the intimate, relational knowing that the Hebrew verb yada carries — the same verb used for the deepest human relationships. When this knowledge fills the earth 'as the waters cover the sea' (an image of complete, inescapable saturation), harm and destruction become impossible.
9. The phrase 'my holy mountain' (har qodshi) refers primarily to Zion/Jerusalem but the scope of the sentence ('the earth will be filled') extends the holiness of Zion to the entire planet. The holy mountain expands to become the holy earth.
10. The botanical metaphor shifts: the 'shoot' of verse 1 has become the 'root' (shoresh) of verse 10. The one who grew from Jesse's root now becomes the root itself — the foundation, the source, the anchor. He stands as a nes ('signal, banner, rallying point') not just for Israel but le-ammim ('for the peoples') — the nations stream toward him. The scope has expanded from Israelite monarchy to international magnetism.
10. The phrase menuchato kavod ('his resting place will be glory') can mean either that his place of rest will be glorious, or that his rest/reign will be characterized by the kavod (glory, weight, honor) of God. The word menucha ('rest') echoes the rest God gives in the promised land (Deuteronomy 12:9) and the rest of the Sabbath — the messianic king's reign is the ultimate Sabbath rest.
11. The 'second time' (shenit) implies the first was the exodus from Egypt. This gathering will be a second exodus — a theme that becomes dominant in Isaiah 40-55. The verb liqnot ('to acquire, reclaim, redeem') carries the sense of purchasing back what was lost.

11. The geographic list traces a full circle around the ancient Near East: Assyria (northeast), Egypt and Pathros (Upper Egypt, south), Cush (Ethiopia/Sudan, far south), Elam (east, modern Iran), Shinar (Babylon, east), Hamath (north Syria), and the coastlands (iyvei ha-yam, the Mediterranean islands and western regions). The scattered people are gathered from every point of the compass — no place of exile is beyond God's reach.
12. The nes ('signal, banner') of verse 10 reappears, now raised specifically to summon the dispersed. Both kingdoms are named — nidchei Yisra'el ('the outcasts of Israel,' the exiled northern kingdom) and nefutsot Yehudah ('the scattered of Judah,' the dispersed southern kingdom). The reunification of the divided kingdoms is part of the messianic program.
12. The phrase me'arba kanfot ha-arets ('from the four corners/wings of the earth') is comprehensive — the regathering leaves no exile unaddressed.
13. The internal division between the northern kingdom (Ephraim) and the southern kingdom (Judah) — a wound that split the nation under Rehoboam (1 Kings 12) and led to the Syro-Ephraimite crisis of Isaiah 7 — will be healed. The double negation ('Ephraim will not... Judah will not...') emphasizes mutual reconciliation. The two-century-old fratricidal rivalry ends in the messianic age.
14. The reunited Israel — Ephraim and Judah acting together for the first time since Solomon — moves against the surrounding hostile nations. The language is military and aggressive: 'swoop down' (afu, like a bird of prey), 'plunder' (yazozzu), 'stretch out their hand' (mishloch yadam). The four traditional enemies — Philistines (west), eastern peoples, Edom and Moab (south and east), Ammon (northeast) — represent the full circle of hostility that will be subdued under the messianic king.
15. The second-exodus imagery becomes explicit: God will part waters again, both the 'tongue' (leshon, the narrow inlet) of the Egyptian sea (the Gulf of Suez or the Reed Sea) and the Euphrates. The first exodus parted one body of water; the second exodus will part two — the obstacles at both ends of the exile are removed. The seven channels of the Euphrates allow passage 'in sandals' (banne'alim) — a detail recalling the haste of the first exodus, when Israel left with shoes on.
16. The chapter closes by making the second-exodus parallel explicit: mesillah ('highway, raised road') will be built for the remnant, ka'asher hayetah le-Yisra'el ('just as there was for Israel') at the first exodus. The comparison is direct and deliberate — what God did once, he will do again, on an even greater scale. The 'highway' image will become a defining motif in Isaiah 35:8 ('A highway will be there, called the Way of Holiness') and 40:3 ('In the wilderness, prepare the way of the LORD').
16. The word mesillah implies a constructed, elevated road — not a wilderness path but a prepared way. God does not merely open an escape route; he builds a royal road home.

12

Summary: A short psalm of thanksgiving closes the first major section of Isaiah. The redeemed remnant sings two songs: the first confesses that God's anger has turned to comfort, the second calls the nations to witness what the Holy One of Israel has done. Water, song, and proclamation replace the fire, judgment, and silence of the preceding chapters.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter functions as the doxological conclusion to Isaiah 1-12, much as the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15) concluded the exodus narrative. After eleven chapters of oracles — judgment on Israel, judgment on the nations, messianic promise, remnant theology, the peaceable kingdom — the response is not theology but song. The shift from third-person prophecy to first-person praise ('I will trust,' 'I will give thanks,' 'the LORD is my strength') places the reader inside the redeemed community. We are no longer hearing about salvation; we are singing it. The phrase 'Draw water from the wells of salvation' (v. 3) is one of the most beloved lines in Jewish liturgy, chanted during Sukkot water-drawing ceremonies and at the conclusion of Shabbat (Havdalah). Its placement here — after the fire of chapters 9-10 and the paradise of chapter 11 — makes it a climactic image: what was consumed by fire is now irrigated by salvation.

Translation Friction: The chapter's brevity (six verses) belies its density. The phrase ki yashir YHWH ('for the LORD has done gloriously,' v. 5) compresses an entire theology of divine action into three words. The verb zimrat in verse 2 can mean either 'song' or 'strength' (or both simultaneously) — the ambiguity is likely intentional, as the parallel with oz ('strength') suggests a hendiadys: 'my strength and my song.' This same phrase appears in Exodus 15:2 and Psalm 118:14, creating a three-text echo that is impossible to reproduce in English without a note. The imperative verbs in verses 4-5 shift from singular (addressing the individual) to plural (addressing the community), but English 'you' obscures this transition.

Connections: The phrase 'the LORD is my strength and my song' (ozî vezimrat Yah, v. 2) quotes Exodus 15:2 verbatim — the Song of the Sea that Moses and Israel sang after crossing the Red Sea. By placing this exodus quotation here, Isaiah casts the entire messianic deliverance of chapters 7-11 as a new exodus. The 'wells of salvation' (ma'ayanei ha-yeshu'ah, v. 3) connect to the water imagery throughout Isaiah (8:6, the gentle waters of Shiloah that Israel rejected; 35:6-7, streams in the desert; 55:1, 'Come, all who are thirsty'). The command to 'make known his deeds among the peoples' (v. 4) anticipates the servant's mission to the nations in Isaiah 42:1-4 and 49:6. The final phrase 'the Holy One of Israel' (qedosh Yisra'el) in verse 6 bookends the section that opened with Isaiah's vision of the thrice-holy God in chapter 6 — the holiness that terrified Isaiah in the temple now dwells 'in your midst' as cause for rejoicing.

¹On that day you will say:

"I give thanks to you, LORD,
for though you were angry with me,
your anger has turned away,
and you have comforted me."

²"Look — God is my salvation!

I will trust and will not be afraid,
for the LORD God is my strength and my song,
and he has become my salvation."

³You will draw water with joy
from the wells of salvation.

⁴On that day you will say:

"Give thanks to the LORD! Call on his name!
Make his deeds known among the peoples!
Proclaim that his name is exalted!"

⁵"Sing to the LORD, for he has done gloriously!
Let this be made known in all the earth!"

⁶"Shout aloud and sing for joy, inhabitant of Zion,
for great in your midst is the Holy One of Israel!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The first song begins with thanksgiving that names both the anger and its cessation. The speaker does not pretend the judgment never happened — *ki anafta bi* ('for you were angry with me') is a frank acknowledgment. But the verb *yashuv* ('has turned away, has returned') — the same root as *shuv* ('repent, turn') that Israel refused to do in 9:13 — now describes God's own turning. God's anger turns because of his own faithfulness, not because Israel finally repented well enough.
1. The verb *tenachameni* ('you comfort me') carries the full weight of *nacham* — comfort that follows real grief, consolation after genuine suffering. It is the same root as the name 'Nehemiah' (YHWH comforts) and will become a programmatic verb in Isaiah 40:1 ('Comfort, comfort my people').
2. The phrase *ozzi vezimrat Yah YHWH* ('my strength and my song is the LORD God') directly quotes Exodus 15:2 — Moses' song after the Red Sea crossing. Isaiah places the exodus song in the mouth of the future redeemed community, declaring that the new deliverance is continuous with the old. The same God who split the sea is the God who comforts after exile.
2. The word *yeshu'ah* ('salvation') appears twice — at the beginning ('God is my salvation') and at the end ('he has become my salvation'). This framing makes salvation both the source (God's nature) and the experience (God's action). The name *Yeshua* (Jesus) derives from this root.
2. *Zimrat* can mean either 'song' or 'strength/protection' — the dual meaning may be intentional, creating a hendiadys: God is both the power that saves and the song that celebrates the saving. English must choose one; we choose 'song' because the parallel with *oz* ('strength') already covers the power dimension.

3. This verse shifts from singular 'you' (v. 1) to plural — the individual confession becomes communal celebration. The verb *sha'av* ('to draw water') is the ordinary, daily-life word for drawing water from a well. Salvation is compared not to a dramatic miracle but to the most routine domestic act — going to the well. The extraordinary becomes the ordinary rhythm of life in the redeemed community.
3. The phrase *ma'ayanei ha-yeshu'ah* ('wells/springs of salvation') was chanted during the Simchat Beit ha-Sho'evah, the water-drawing celebration during Sukkot at the Second Temple. Jesus likely alluded to this verse when he stood in the temple during Sukkot and cried, 'If anyone is thirsty, let him come to me and drink' (John 7:37-38).
3. After the fire imagery that dominated chapters 9-10 (fire of wickedness, fire of wrath, burning of thorns and briars), water appears as the counter-image. What fire consumed, water restores.
4. The second song begins with four imperatives in rapid succession: *hodu* ('give thanks'), *qir'u* ('call, proclaim'), *hodi'u* ('make known'), *hazkiru* ('declare, cause to remember'). The direction shifts outward — from personal confession (vv. 1-2) to public proclamation among the nations (*ba-ammim*, 'among the peoples'). Salvation is not private; it demands witness.
4. The phrase *alilotav* ('his deeds, his acts') carries the sense of God's mighty historical actions — the same word used for the acts of the exodus and conquest. The new salvation generates new testimony.
5. The verb *zammeru* ('sing, make music') calls for artistic, musical celebration — not mere speech but song. The reason: *ki ge'ut asah* ('for he has done gloriously/majestically'). *Ge'ut* is related to *ga'ah* ('to rise, to be exalted') — God's deeds are characterized by rising splendor, by a quality that lifts and exalts.
5. The final phrase *muda'at zot bekhoh-ha-arets* ('let this be known in all the earth') pushes the scope to global proclamation. What God has done for Israel is not Israel's private possession but news for the whole earth.
6. The chapter and the entire first section of Isaiah (chs. 1-12) conclude with the Holy One of Israel dwelling in Zion's midst. In chapter 6, Isaiah encountered the Holy One in the temple and was undone; here the same holiness generates unrestrained joy. The difference is not that God has become less holy but that the people have been purified through judgment — the remnant that survives can now bear the presence that once destroyed.
6. The verb *tsahali* ('shout, shriek') appeared in 10:30 as a cry of terror before the invading army. Here the same verb carries the opposite emotion — the sound that expressed panic at Assyria's approach now expresses ecstasy at God's presence. Isaiah recycles the vocabulary of judgment into the vocabulary of praise.
6. *Yoshevet Tsiyyon* ('inhabitant of Zion') is feminine singular, personifying Zion as a woman — a 'daughter Zion' figure who will become increasingly important in later chapters (37:22, 52:1-2, 54:1). The intimacy of the address — singular 'you,' not plural — makes the closing verse intensely personal even as it speaks to the entire community.
6. The phrase *beqirbekh* ('in your midst, within you') places the Holy One not above or beyond Zion but inside it — an indwelling presence. The holiness that could not be approached in chapter 6 now lives at the center of the community. This is the trajectory of the entire section: from unapproachable holiness to indwelling glory.

13

Summary: *The oracle against Babylon opens with God mustering a vast army for the Day of the LORD. Cosmic imagery — darkened stars, a shaking heaven — signals total divine judgment. Babylon, the jewel of kingdoms, will become a permanent ruin like Sodom and Gomorrah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the first of Isaiah's massa ('burden, oracle') collection against the nations (chapters 13–23), and it begins not with a minor neighbor but with Babylon — the empire that will eventually destroy Jerusalem, though in Isaiah's day Assyria is the dominant threat. The chapter's cosmic imagery (stars refusing their light, the heavens trembling, the earth jolted from its place) became the template for later Day of the LORD passages throughout the prophets and into apocalyptic literature. We note the deliberate literary architecture: the chapter moves from military muster (vv. 2–5) to cosmic collapse (vv. 9–13) to human horror (vv. 14–18) to desolate aftermath (vv. 19–22), each section escalating the scale of judgment. The Medes are named as God's instrument (v. 17), anchoring the cosmic poetry in identifiable history.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew massa in verse 1 resists a single English word. It derives from nasa' ('to lift, to carry') and can mean 'burden,' 'oracle,' 'pronouncement,' or 'utterance.' We rendered it 'oracle' for clarity, but the connotation of weight — a heavy word laid upon the prophet — is lost. In verse 10, the phrase *kisleihem* ('their constellations') uses a word whose exact astronomical referent is debated; we rendered 'constellations' and noted the uncertainty. The imperatives in verses 2–3 present an unusual challenge:*

God speaks of His consecrated warriors (mequddashay) and His proudly exulting ones — language that dignifies a pagan army as instruments of divine purpose. We preserved this tension rather than softening it.

Connections: The Day of the LORD imagery here draws on Joel 2:10, 31 and Amos 5:18–20, where the concept is already established. The Sodom and Gomorrah comparison (v. 19) recalls Genesis 19 and will recur in Isaiah 1:9. The cosmic signs — darkened sun, blood-red moon, shaking heavens — reappear in Isaiah 24:23, Joel 2:31, and are quoted by Jesus in Matthew 24:29. The depiction of Babylon as the 'glory of kingdoms' (tsevi mamlakhot) inverts the title 'glory' (tsevi) that Isaiah elsewhere reserves for God's own splendor (Isaiah 4:2, 28:5).

¹The oracle concerning Babylon,
which Isaiah son of Amoz saw.

²On a bare hilltop raise a banner!
Lift your voice to them!
Wave your hand
so they enter the gates of the nobles.

³I have given orders to my consecrated ones;
I have summoned my warriors for my anger —
my proudly exulting ones.

⁴The sound of a multitude in the mountains —
like a vast people!
The roar of kingdoms,
nations assembling!
The LORD of Hosts is mustering
an army for war.

⁵They come from a distant land,
from the edge of the heavens —
the LORD and the weapons of his fury —
to devastate the whole earth.

⁶Wail! For the day of the LORD is near —
it comes as devastation from the Almighty.

⁷Therefore every hand will go limp,
and every human heart will melt.

⁸They are terrified —
pangs and agony seize them;
they writhe like a woman in labor.
They stare at one another in horror,
their faces ablaze.

⁹Look — the day of the LORD is coming,
cruel, with fury and burning anger,
to make the earth a desolation
and to destroy its sinners from it.

¹⁰For the stars of the heavens and their constellations
will not flash their light.

The sun will be dark when it rises,
and the moon will not shed its glow.

¹¹I will punish the world for its evil
and the wicked for their guilt.
I will put an end to the pride of the arrogant
and bring low the insolence of tyrants.

¹²I will make a mortal rarer than fine gold,
a human rarer than the gold of Ophir.

¹³Therefore I will make the heavens tremble,
and the earth will be shaken from its place
in the fury of the LORD of Hosts,
on the day of his burning anger.

¹⁴Then it will be like a hunted gazelle,
like sheep with no one to gather them.
Each will turn to his own people;
each will flee to his own land.

¹⁵Everyone who is found will be pierced through;
everyone who is captured will fall by the sword.

¹⁶Their infants will be dashed to pieces before their eyes;
their houses will be plundered,
their wives violated.

¹⁷Look — I am rousing the Medes against them,
who have no regard for silver
and take no delight in gold.

¹⁸Their bows will cut down the young men;
they will have no mercy on the fruit of the womb.
Their eyes will not spare children.

¹⁹And Babylon — the jewel of kingdoms,
the splendor of the Chaldeans' pride —
will be like God's overthrow
of Sodom and Gomorrah.

²⁰It will never be inhabited,
nor will anyone dwell there from generation to generation.
No nomad will pitch a tent there;
no shepherds will rest their flocks there.

²¹But desert creatures will crouch there,
and their houses will be filled with howling animals.

Ostriches will dwell there,
and wild goats will leap about.

²²Jackals will howl in her fortresses,
and wild dogs in her luxurious palaces.
Her time is close at hand;
her days will not be prolonged.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew massa ('oracle, burden') opens the first of Isaiah's foreign-nation pronouncements (chapters 13–23). The word derives from nasa' ('to lift, to carry'), suggesting a weighty utterance that the prophet bears. We chose 'oracle' for clarity, but 'burden' captures the Hebrew connotation that prophetic revelation is not a privilege — it is something carried.
1. The verb chazah ('saw') rather than the more common ra'ah indicates visionary perception — this is prophetic sight, not ordinary observation. The same verb gives us the noun chazon ('vision'), which opens the book in Isaiah 1:1.
2. The Hebrew har nishpeh ('bare mountain, swept hill') suggests a treeless height — visible from far away, ideal for signaling. The imperatives (se'u, harimu, hanifu) are rapid-fire commands: raise, lift, wave. God is marshaling an army with the urgency of a field commander.
2. The phrase pitchei nedivim ('gates of the nobles') is ambiguous: it could refer to the gates through which nobles enter, or to the noble gates of Babylon itself. We retained the ambiguity. The overall image is of a vast military muster summoned by signal from a hilltop.
3. God speaks in first person: ani tsiveiti ('I have commanded'). The mequddashay ('my consecrated ones') is striking — qadash means to set apart for sacred purpose. These warriors, likely the Medes (named in v. 17), are 'consecrated' not because they worship the LORD but because God has designated them for a sacred task. The language of holy war is applied to a pagan army.
3. The phrase allizei ga'avati ('my proudly exulting ones') presents a translation challenge. These warriors exult in their own military pride, yet God claims that pride as His instrument. We rendered 'my proudly exulting ones' to preserve both the warriors' arrogance and God's ownership of the outcome.
4. The verse builds through three parallel sound-images: qol hamon ('sound of a multitude'), demut am rav ('likeness of a vast people'), qol she'on ('sound/roar of tumult'). The effect is acoustic — the reader hears the army before seeing it.
4. The title YHWH tseva'ot ('the LORD of Hosts') appears here with pointed irony: the God whose title means 'LORD of Armies' is mustering an army (tseva) for war (milchamah). The title is not decorative but functional — He is doing what His name says He does.
5. The phrase miqtseh ha-shamayim ('from the edge of the heavens') expands the army's origin to cosmic proportions — they come not merely from a distant country but from the horizon where earth meets sky. The military muster becomes a theophany.
5. The kelei za'mo ('weapons of his fury/indignation') identifies the foreign army as God's own armament. The verb chabbel ('to devastate, to ruin') carries overtones of birth pangs (chevel), anticipating verse 8 where the same root describes Babylon's agony.
6. The imperative heililu ('wail!') is an onomatopoeic cry of anguish — the word sounds like the wailing it commands. The wordplay ke-shod mi-Shaddai ('as devastation from the Almighty') is untranslatable: shod ('devastation') echoes within the divine name Shaddai, creating a sound-link between the Almighty and the destruction He sends. The same wordplay appears in Joel 1:15.
6. The 'day of the LORD' (yom YHWH) is a technical prophetic concept: not simply a calendar day but a decisive moment when God intervenes directly in history. Here it is applied against Babylon, not against Israel — a reversal of Amos 5:18, where Israelites wrongly assumed the Day would favor them.
7. The paired images — limp hands (yadayim tirpenah) and melting hearts (levav enosh yimmas) — describe total physical and psychological collapse. The verb raphah ('to be slack, to go limp') suggests hands that can no longer grip a weapon or tool. The verb masas ('to melt') is used elsewhere for wax melting before fire (Psalm 68:2) — the image is of courage dissolving entirely.
8. The birth-pangs metaphor (ka-yoledah yechilun, 'like a woman giving birth they writhe') is a stock prophetic image for inescapable suffering (cf. Jeremiah 4:31, Micah 4:10). The verb chul ('to writhe, to twist') is the same used for the earth's creation in Psalm 90:2, connecting cosmic upheaval with bodily agony.
8. The phrase penei lehavim peneihem ('their faces are faces of flames') is debated: it may mean faces flushed red with terror, faces reflecting actual fire, or faces contorted like flickering flames. We rendered 'faces ablaze' to preserve the ambiguity.
9. Three words pile up for divine wrath: akhzari ('cruel, merciless'), evrah ('fury, overflowing rage'), and charon af ('burning anger,' literally 'burning of the nose'). The accumulation is deliberate — no single word suffices for this judgment.

9. The shift from *ha-arets* as 'the land' (Babylon specifically) to 'the earth' (cosmic scope) is characteristic of Day of the LORD rhetoric. The particular judgment on Babylon becomes a paradigm for universal judgment. We rendered 'earth' to preserve the cosmic overtone the Hebrew sustains.
10. The word *kesleihem* ('their constellations') derives from *kesil*, which in Job 9:9 and 38:31 refers to Orion. Here the plural likely means major constellations generally. The exact astronomical identification is uncertain, but the poetic point is clear: every source of celestial light fails.
10. This verse became the template for cosmic-judgment imagery throughout the prophets: Joel 2:10, 31; Amos 8:9; Ezekiel 32:7. Jesus quotes this tradition in Matthew 24:29 and Mark 13:24–25. The darkening of the heavens signals that creation itself recoils from God's judgment.
11. God speaks again in first person: *u-faqadti* ('and I will visit/punish'). The verb *paqad* here carries its judicial sense — divine visitation as reckoning. The targets are *tevel* ('the world,' the inhabited earth) and *resha'im* ('the wicked').
11. The parallelism of *ge'on zedim* ('pride of the insolent') and *ga'avat aritsim* ('arrogance of tyrants') uses two near-synonyms for pride and two for oppressors, hammering the point: every form of human self-exaltation will be flattened. The verb *ashpil* ('I will bring low') is the antonym of the self-elevation it targets.
12. The verse is grimly ironic: *enosh* ('a mortal') will become rarer than *paz* ('refined gold'), and *adam* ('a human being') rarer than *ketem Ofir* ('gold of Ophir'). This is not a promise of human dignity but a prophecy of depopulation — so few will survive that a single person will be more scarce than the most precious metal. Ophir was the legendary source of the finest gold (1 Kings 9:28, 10:11).
12. The two Hebrew words for humanity — *enosh* (emphasizing frailty) and *adam* (emphasizing creatureliness) — underscore that it is mortal, earthly beings who will become scarce.
13. The verb *argiz* ('I will make tremble, I will agitate') applied to the heavens, and *tir'ash* ('will quake') applied to the earth, describe creation itself convulsing. The phrase *mi-meqomah* ('from its place') suggests the earth being jolted off its foundation — a return to pre-creation chaos.
13. The verse combines the divine title *YHWH tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts') with *evrat* ('fury of') and *yom charon appo* ('the day of the burning of his anger'). This is the fullest expression of the Day of the LORD in the chapter — the God of Armies unleashing cosmic wrath.
14. The two similes — *tsevi muddach* ('a driven gazelle') and *tso'n ve-ein meqabbets* ('sheep without a gatherer') — describe Babylon's cosmopolitan population scattering in panic. The irony is that Babylon, which gathered nations by conquest, will see those same nations flee when the gathering force collapses.
14. The verbs *yifnu* ('they will turn') and *yanusu* ('they will flee') describe the complete dissolution of imperial cohesion. The foreigners who served Babylon will abandon it instantly when judgment falls.
15. The verse shifts to the fate of those who cannot flee. The passive *nimtsa* ('is found') and *nispeh* ('is swept up, captured') describe helpless victims. The verbs *yiddaquer* ('will be pierced') and *yippol* ('will fall') are the standard vocabulary of battlefield slaughter. The poetry's compression — two short, parallel lines — mirrors the swift, indiscriminate violence.
16. This is one of the most brutal verses in the prophets. The verb *yeruteshshu* ('will be dashed') describes infants smashed against stone — the same atrocity appears in Psalm 137:9 and Hosea 13:16. The Masoretes replaced the original verb *tishagalnah* (a coarse term for sexual violation) with the euphemistic *tishkavnah* ('will be lain with'), but the Qere/Ketiv tradition preserves both readings. We rendered 'violated' to convey the violence without the crude Hebrew original.
16. The prophet does not celebrate this violence — he reports it as the horror it is. The purpose is to show what the Day of the LORD actually looks like on the ground: not abstract cosmic judgment but concrete human devastation.
17. The Medes (Maday) are named as God's chosen instrument of judgment. Historically, the Medo-Persian empire under Cyrus conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. The detail that they 'have no regard for silver' and 'take no delight in gold' means they cannot be bought off — this army is incorruptible because its motivation is destruction, not plunder.
17. The divine *hineni* ('look, I am about to') signals imminent action. God claims direct agency: *me'ir* ('rousing, stirring up') — the Medes may not know they serve the LORD, but the prophet knows.
18. The escalation is deliberate: from young men (*ne'arim*) to the fruit of the womb (*peri veten*) to children (*banim*). The verb *yerachemu* ('they will have mercy') is from the same root as *rechem* ('womb') — the Medes will show no womb-compassion even toward those who came from the womb. The wordplay is devastating.
18. The phrase *lo tachuss einam* ('their eyes will not spare') means not even a glance of pity. The Medes' mercilessness is presented as God's instrument — a theological tension the text does not resolve.
19. The title *tsevi mamlakhot* ('jewel/glory of kingdoms') uses *tsevi*, a word Isaiah elsewhere reserves for God's own beauty (4:2, 28:5). Babylon has claimed for itself the splendor that belongs to God — and that is precisely what will be stripped away.
19. The comparison to Sodom and Gomorrah (*ke-mahpekhat Elohim et Sedom ve-et Amorah*) is the ultimate image of irreversible divine destruction. The verb *mahpekah* ('overthrow, overturning') is used exclusively for Sodom's destruction in the Hebrew Bible — it has become a technical term. Babylon's fate is not conquest but annihilation.

- 20.** Four negations (lo ... lo ... lo ... lo) hammer the permanence of Babylon's desolation. The city that was the center of civilization will not support even its most basic form — a nomad's tent or a shepherd's fold. The phrase *ad dor va-dor* ('generation to generation') means forever.
- 20.** The 'Aravi ('nomad, Arabian, Bedouin') represents the most minimal form of human habitation — a tent-dweller who needs almost nothing. Even this cannot exist in the ruins of Babylon.
- 21.** The identification of the creatures is uncertain. *Tsiyyim* ('desert creatures') may be jackals or hyenas. *Ochim* ('howling animals') is a hapax legomenon — it occurs only here, and its meaning is inferred from context and the root for 'howl.' *Benot ya'anah* is traditionally 'ostriches' but could be 'eagle owls.' *Se'irim* literally means 'hairy ones' — possibly wild goats, but the word is also used for 'demons' or 'satyrs' in *Leviticus 17:7* and *2 Chronicles 11:15*.
- 21.** The ambiguity of *se'irim* is theologically significant: if they are merely wild goats, the image is of natural desolation; if they are demonic figures, the image is of supernatural horror reclaiming the ruins. We chose 'wild goats' as the primary zoological meaning and noted the demonic overtone.
- 22.** The *iyyim* ('howlers,' probably jackals) and *tannim* ('jackals' or 'wild dogs') inhabit the *almenotav* ('her widowed buildings' or 'her fortresses') and *heikhlei oneg* ('palaces of delight'). The contrast between 'palaces of delight' and the animals that now inhabit them is the chapter's final irony: Babylon's luxury becomes a den for scavengers.
- 22.** The closing phrase — *qarov lavo ittah* ('her time is close to come') — is both a prophecy and a reassurance to Israel. Babylon's seemingly invincible power has an expiration date that God has set. The verb *yimmashekhu* ('will be prolonged, drawn out') is negated: there will be no extension, no reprieve.

14

Summary: *God promises compassion for Israel and the fall of Babylon's king. A taunting funeral song mocks the tyrant's descent to Sheol, including the famous address to helel ben-shachar ('shining one, son of the dawn'). The chapter closes with brief oracles against Assyria and Philistia.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 12 is one of the most interpreted verses in the Hebrew Bible. The Hebrew helel ben-shachar ('shining one, son of the dawn') addresses the fallen king of Babylon using the imagery of a celestial body — likely the morning star (Venus) — that rises brilliantly but is extinguished by daylight. The Latin Vulgate translated helel as 'Lucifer' ('light-bearer'), and from the Church Fathers onward, the passage was read as a description of Satan's fall from heaven. We rendered directly from the Hebrew and present all interpretive traditions in the notes without resolving the tension. The taunt-song (mashal, vv. 4–21) is one of the great literary achievements of the Hebrew Bible: a funeral dirge sung over a living tyrant, where even the trees rejoice at his death and the dead kings of the nations rise from their thrones in Sheol to mock him. The poetry oscillates between the cosmic and the grotesque — from stars and clouds to maggots and worms.*

Translation Friction: *The central translation challenge is helel ben-shachar in verse 12. The word helel occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible, making it a hapax legomenon. Its root (h-l-l) can mean 'to shine' or 'to boast/praise,' yielding either 'shining one' or 'boaster.' We chose 'shining one' because the astral context (son of the dawn, ascending to heaven, setting a throne above the stars) demands it, and noted the 'boaster' reading. We deliberately avoided 'Lucifer,' which is the Latin translation, not the Hebrew. In verse 11, the word *rimmah* ('maggots') and *tole'ah* ('worms') form the dead king's burial shroud — we preserved the visceral Hebrew rather than softening it. The mashal form itself (v. 4) resists easy classification: it is part taunt, part dirge, part wisdom saying.*

Connections: *The taunt-song draws on ancient Near Eastern mythology about divine mountain assemblies (v. 13, *har mo'ed*, 'mountain of assembly') and the ascent of celestial beings. *Ezekiel 28:11–19* contains a parallel passage about the king of Tyre using similar cosmic imagery. Jesus's statement 'I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven' (*Luke 10:18*) may allude to this passage. The 'mountain of assembly in the far north' (v. 13) echoes *Psalms 48:2's* description of Zion as 'the heights of Zaphon.' The brief Assyria oracle (vv. 24–27) connects to *Isaiah 10:5–19*, where Assyria is likewise God's instrument that overreaches. The Philistia oracle (vv. 28–32) anticipates the fuller treatment in chapters 20 and *Amos 1:6–8*.*

**1For the LORD will have compassion on Jacob
and will again choose Israel**

and settle them on their own soil.
 The foreigner will join himself to them
 and attach himself to the house of Jacob.

²Peoples will take them and bring them to their place,
 and the house of Israel will possess them
 on the LORD's soil as male and female servants.
 They will take captive those who captured them
 and rule over those who oppressed them.

³On the day the LORD gives you rest
 from your pain and your turmoil
 and from the hard labor
 that was forced upon you,

⁴you will take up this taunt against the king of Babylon and say:
 How the oppressor has ended!
 How the fury has ended!

⁵The LORD has broken the staff of the wicked,
 the scepter of rulers —

⁶the one who struck peoples in fury
 with unceasing blows,
 who trampled nations in anger
 with relentless persecution.

⁷The whole earth rests and is quiet;
 they break out in joyful song.

⁸Even the cypresses rejoice over you,
 the cedars of Lebanon:
 'Since you were laid low,
 no woodcutter comes up against us.'

⁹Sheol below is astir for you,
 ready to greet your arrival.
 It rouses the shades for you —
 all the chief rulers of the earth.
 It raises from their thrones
 all the kings of the nations.

¹⁰They all respond and say to you:
 'You too have become weak like us!
 You have become like us!'

¹¹Your majesty has been brought down to Sheol,
 along with the music of your harps.
 Maggots are spread beneath you;
 worms are your covering.

¹²How you have fallen from the heavens,
shining one, son of the dawn!
How you have been cut down to the earth,
you who laid nations low!

¹³You said in your heart:
'I will ascend to the heavens;
above the stars of God
I will raise my throne.
I will sit on the mountain of assembly,
in the far reaches of the north.'

¹⁴'I will ascend above the heights of the clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High.'

¹⁵But you are brought down to Sheol,
to the depths of the pit.

¹⁶Those who see you will stare at you,
will peer closely at you:
'Is this the man who shook the earth,
who made kingdoms tremble?'

¹⁷'Who made the world like a desert
and tore down its cities,
who never released his prisoners to go home?'

¹⁸All the kings of the nations — all of them —
lie in honor, each in his own tomb.

¹⁹But you are cast out from your grave
like a loathed branch,
covered with the slain,
those pierced by the sword,
who go down to the stones of the pit —
like a trampled corpse.

²⁰You will not be joined with them in burial,
for you destroyed your own land,
you slaughtered your own people.
The offspring of evildoers
will never be named again.

²¹Prepare a slaughter for his sons
because of their fathers' guilt,
so they will not rise and possess the earth
or fill the face of the world with cities.

²²I will rise against them,
declares the LORD of Hosts.
I will cut off from Babylon
name and remnant, offspring and posterity,
declares the LORD.

²³I will make her a possession of the hedgehog
and pools of standing water.
I will sweep her with the broom of destruction,
declares the LORD of Hosts.

²⁴The LORD of Hosts has sworn:
'Surely, as I have planned, so it will be;
as I have purposed, so it will stand —

²⁵to break Assyria in my land
and to trample him on my mountains.
Then his yoke will be removed from them,
and his burden will depart from their shoulders.'

²⁶This is the plan devised for the whole earth;
this is the hand stretched out over all the nations.

²⁷For the LORD of Hosts has purposed —
and who can thwart it?
His hand is stretched out —
and who can turn it back?

²⁸In the year that King Ahaz died,
this oracle came:

²⁹Do not rejoice, all you Philistia,
that the rod that struck you is broken.
For from the serpent's root a viper will emerge,
and its fruit will be a flying fiery serpent.

³⁰The poorest of the poor will find pasture,
and the needy will lie down in safety.
But I will kill your root with famine,
and your remnant he will slay.

³¹Wail, gate! Cry out, city!
Melt away, all you Philistia!
For smoke comes from the north,
and no one breaks rank in his formations.

³²And what will one answer the messengers of the nation?
That the LORD has founded Zion,
and in her the afflicted of his people find refuge.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *yerachem* ('will have compassion') from the root *r-ch-m* (womb-love) signals God's renewed tenderness toward His people. The phrase *u-vachar od* ('and will again choose') restates Israel's election — the exile did not cancel the covenant but interrupted its visible expression.
1. The phrase *ve-nilvah ha-ger* ('and the foreigner will join') anticipates the universalism that Isaiah develops more fully in chapters 56 and 60. Even in an oracle of national restoration, the door remains open to outsiders.
2. The reversal is total: Israel's captors become Israel's servants. The phrase *shobim le-shoveihem* ('taking captive those who took them captive') uses the same root (*sh-b-h*) in both subject and object positions, creating a verbal mirror of the reversal.
2. The mention of servants (*avadim ve-shefachot*) is uncomfortable to modern readers. The text presents it as poetic justice — the oppressed become the masters — without moralizing about the institution. We rendered literally and let the tension stand.
3. The verse is transitional, setting up the taunt-song. The three burdens removed — *otsev* ('pain, sorrow'), *rogez* ('turmoil, agitation'), and *avodah qashah* ('hard labor') — echo the Exodus vocabulary. Israel's deliverance from Babylon is cast as a second Exodus, with the same terms used for Egyptian bondage (Exodus 1:14, 6:9).
4. The *mashal* here is specifically a taunt-song — a funeral dirge sung mockingly over a living (or recently dead) tyrant. The genre combines elements of lament, wisdom saying, and political satire.
4. The word *madheveh* in the final line is textually difficult. The Masoretic text reads *madheveh*, possibly meaning 'golden city' or 'golden splendor,' but the Dead Sea Scrolls (1QIsa) read *marheveh* ('fury, oppression'). We followed the Qumran reading ('fury') as it produces better parallelism with *noges* ('oppressor'). The KJV's 'golden city' follows the MT.
5. The *matteh* ('staff') and *shevet* ('scepter') are symbols of authority. The LORD has snapped them — the instruments of oppressive power are rendered useless. The same word *shevet* means both 'scepter' and 'rod of punishment,' so the image works on two levels: the ruler's authority and his instrument of cruelty are both broken.
6. The participles *makkeh* ('striking') and *rodeh* ('trampling, ruling harshly') describe the tyrant's habitual behavior — this was not a single act but a constant pattern. The phrase *makkot bilti sarah* ('blows without turning aside') means unceasing, unrelenting violence.
6. The final phrase *murdaf beli chasakh* ('pursued without restraint') can be read as the king pursuing others without restraint, or as the king himself now being pursued. The ambiguity may be intentional — the hunter becomes the hunted.
7. The brevity is the point: *nachah shaqtah kol ha-arets* ('at rest, quiet, the whole earth'). After the relentless violence of verse 6, silence falls — and then erupts into singing. The verb *patschu* ('they break out') suggests joy that can no longer be contained. The earth itself becomes the choir.
8. The trees speak — a personification that is both whimsical and devastating. The *beroshim* ('cypresses') and *arzei Levanon* ('cedars of Lebanon') were the prized timber of ancient Near Eastern empires, felled by conquest to build palaces and temples. The trees celebrate because the tyrant's death means the end of deforestation. The imperial logging program was literal ecological destruction.
8. The phrase *me-az shakhavta* ('since you were laid low') uses the same verb (*shakav*) for the king's death that will be used for his arrival in Sheol — he has been 'laid down' like a felled tree.
9. Sheol is personified as a host preparing to receive a guest. The *repha'im* ('shades, spirits of the dead') are the inhabitants of the underworld — once-powerful rulers now reduced to shadows. The word *attudei* ('chief rulers,' literally 'he-goats' used metaphorically for leaders) emphasizes that these were the great ones of the earth.
9. The image of dead kings rising from thrones in Sheol is unique in the Hebrew Bible. They maintain a ghostly parody of their former status — seated on thrones but powerless, dead but conscious enough to mock.
10. The dead kings' greeting is a taunt: *gam attah chulleita kamonu* ('you too have been made weak like us'). The verb *chalah* ('to be weak, to be sick') strips the tyrant of every pretension. The repetition — 'like us ... like us' — is the sting: the one who set himself above all nations is now indistinguishable from every other corpse in Sheol.
11. The contrast is devastating: *ge'onekha* ('your majesty, your pomp') paired with *hemyat nevalekha* ('the music of your harps') represents the pinnacle of royal luxury — and both descend to Sheol. The king's bed is now *rimmah* ('maggots') and his blanket *tole'ah* ('worms'). The Hebrew is visceral and we preserved it without euphemism.
11. The word *nevalim* (singular *nevel*) refers to stringed instruments, likely lyres or harps — the soundtrack of royal banquets. In Sheol, the music stops and decomposition begins.
12. This is the most interpreted verse in the chapter. The Hebrew *helel ben-shachar* ('shining one, son of the dawn') addresses the fallen king of Babylon using astral imagery. The word *helel* is a hapax legomenon — it occurs only here in the Hebrew Bible. Its root (*h-l-l*) most likely means 'to shine, to flash,' making *helel* a title for the morning star (Venus), which rises brilliantly but is extinguished by sunrise. The epithet *ben-shachar* ('son of the dawn') confirms the astral reference.

12. The Latin Vulgate translated *helel* as 'Lucifer' ('light-bearer'), which was originally simply a Latin rendering of the Hebrew meaning. From the Church Fathers onward — particularly Tertullian, Origen, and Augustine — the passage was read as a description of Satan's primordial fall from heaven, conflating the Babylonian king with a cosmic rebel angel. This interpretation influenced centuries of Christian theology, art, and literature (most notably Milton's *Paradise Lost*). However, the Hebrew text addresses a human king, not a supernatural being, and the literary context is a taunt-song mocking a dead tyrant. We rendered directly from the Hebrew as 'shining one, son of the dawn' and present all traditions without resolving the tension.
12. The verb *nigda'ta* ('you have been cut down') uses the same language applied to felled trees (cf. v. 8), connecting the king's fall to the cedars' rejoicing. The one who cut down trees has himself been cut down.
13. The king's five 'I will' declarations (vv. 13–14) represent the ultimate in human hubris. The phrase *kohvei El* ('stars of God') refers to the celestial host — the king intends to place his throne above the very stars.
13. The *har mo'ed* ('mountain of assembly') in the *yarketei tsafon* ('far reaches of the north') draws on Canaanite mythology: Mount Zaphon (modern Jebel Aqra in Syria) was the seat of the divine council in Ugaritic tradition, the equivalent of Mount Olympus. The king claims a seat among the gods. Psalm 48:2 applies *tsafon* to Mount Zion, reclaiming the mythological geography for the LORD.
14. The climax of the five boasts: *eddamme le-Elyon* ('I will make myself like the Most High'). The divine title *Elyon* ('Most High') is one of the oldest names for God in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 14:18–22). The king's ambition is not merely to rival God but to replicate Him — to become indistinguishable from the Most High. This is the essence of the hubris the taunt-song condemns.
14. The *bamotei av* ('heights of the clouds') places the king above the weather itself — above the storm clouds that are elsewhere God's chariot (Psalm 104:3). Every element of the created order is beneath him in his own imagination.
15. The reversal is total and abrupt: *akh* ('but, yet') introduces the devastating contrast. The king who claimed the heights of heaven (v. 14) is brought to the *yarketei vor* ('depths of the pit') — the lowest point of Sheol. The same word *yarketei* ('far reaches, depths') was used in verse 13 for the 'far reaches' of the north where the gods dwell. The king reaches the extreme — but in the wrong direction.
16. The verbs *yashgichu* ('they will stare') and *yitbonanu* ('they will peer closely, examine') suggest disbelief — the onlookers cannot reconcile what they see (a corpse) with what they remember (a world-shaker). The rhetorical question *ha-zeh ha-ish* ('is this the man?') reduces the cosmic tyrant to a demonstrative pronoun: this? This is the one?
17. Three charges define the tyrant's legacy: he turned the habitable world (*tevel*) into desert (*midbar*), destroyed cities (*arav haras*), and imprisoned people without release (*lo fatach baytah*, 'did not open [the door] homeward'). The final charge — refusing to release prisoners — may allude to the Babylonian policy of permanent exile, which Cyrus famously reversed.
18. The emphasis *kullam* ('all of them') underscores the contrast that follows. Every other king, no matter how minor, received a dignified burial — *shakhvu ve-khavod* ('they lay in honor') in *beit* ('house,' here meaning tomb or burial chamber). The Babylonian king alone will be denied this basic dignity.
19. The imagery is of a body thrown out of its tomb — denied burial and left among the anonymous war dead. The simile *ke-netser nit'av* ('like a loathed branch') compares the king to a diseased or useless shoot pruned from a tree and thrown away. The word *netser* ('branch, shoot') is ironic: in Isaiah 11:1, the same word describes the messianic shoot from Jesse's stump. This king is the anti-netser — a branch not planted but discarded.
19. The phrase *ke-feger muvas* ('like a trampled corpse') is the final indignity: the body is not merely unburied but actively stepped on. In the ancient Near East, denial of proper burial was the worst possible fate — it meant the spirit could find no rest.
20. The charges now turn inward: the king did not merely destroy foreign nations — he destroyed *artsekha* ('your own land') and killed *ammekha* ('your own people'). The tyrant's evil was indiscriminate, extending even to those he was supposed to protect.
20. The curse *zera mere'im* ('offspring of evildoers') extends judgment beyond the king to his dynasty. The phrase *lo yiqqare le-olam* ('will never be named') means the dynasty will be so thoroughly erased that no one will even speak their names — the ultimate death in an honor-based culture.
21. The command to prepare a *matbe'ach* ('slaughter, slaughtering place') for the king's sons is chilling — the dynasty must be eradicated so completely that it cannot rebuild. The fear is that the sons might *yarsh* ('possess, inherit') the earth and rebuild the empire's city-network.
21. The concept of collective punishment — sons suffering for fathers' guilt — reflects ancient Near Eastern political reality: rival dynasties were eliminated to prevent counter-coups. The text presents it as God's command without moral commentary.
22. The divine speech formula *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') brackets the verse, giving it maximum authority. The four things cut off — *shem* ('name'), *she'ar* ('remnant'), *nin* ('offspring'), and *nekhed* ('posterity') — cover every possible form of continuation: reputation, survivors, children, and grandchildren. The erasure is total.
22. The phrase *ve-qamti aleihem* ('I will rise against them') uses the same verb (*qum*) that the king's sons were forbidden to do in verse 21. God rises; the dynasty does not.
23. The *qippod* ('hedgehog' or possibly 'bittern/porcupine') is a creature of waste places — its presence signals that the city has returned to wild habitat. The *agmei mayim* ('pools of water') suggest that Babylon's elaborate canal system will collapse into stagnant marshes.

- 23.** The vivid metaphor *mate'ate'a ha-shmed* ('broom of destruction') is unique to this verse. God sweeps Babylon away like dust from a floor. The domestic image applied to cosmic destruction is startling in its banality — the greatest empire in the world is household debris.
- 24.** The shift from Babylon to Assyria begins with a divine oath (*nishba*, 'has sworn'). When YHWH swears, He stakes His own character on the outcome. The parallelism between *dimmiti* ('I have planned/imagined') and *ya'atsti* ('I have purposed/counseled') emphasizes that world events are not random — they unfold according to divine intention.
- 25.** The Assyria oracle (vv. 24–27) shifts the focus from the distant future (Babylon's fall) to the nearer threat. The possessive pronouns are emphatic: *be-artsi* ('in my land'), *ve-al harai* ('on my mountains'). The LORD claims the land and mountains of Israel as His own territory — Assyria has trespassed on divine property.
- 25.** The yoke-and-burden imagery (*ullo*, 'his yoke'; *subbolo*, 'his burden') appears in Isaiah 9:4 and 10:27, creating a thread through the book. Assyrian oppression is consistently described as a physical weight that God will lift.
- 26.** The verse generalizes: what God has done to Assyria reveals His *etsah* ('plan, counsel') for *kol ha-arets* ('the whole earth'). The 'outstretched hand' (*ha-yad ha-netuyah*) is an Exodus image — Deuteronomy 4:34 uses it for God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt. Here the same hand that liberated now judges all nations.
- 27.** Two rhetorical questions seal the Assyria oracle. The verb *yafer* ('can annul, can thwart') and *yeshivannah* ('can turn it back') challenge any power — human or divine — to resist God's purpose. The implied answer is: no one. This is Isaiah's doctrine of divine sovereignty in its most compressed form.
- 28.** The Philistia oracle (vv. 28–32) is dated to the death of Ahaz (ca. 715 BCE), providing a rare chronological anchor. The death of a Judahite king who had been an Assyrian vassal would have raised hopes among Philistia that the political landscape was shifting — the oracle warns them that it is shifting, but not in their favor.
- 29.** The serpent imagery escalates through three stages: *nachash* ('serpent') gives way to *tsepha* ('viper, adder') which produces *saraph me'opheph* ('flying fiery serpent'). Each generation of the snake is more dangerous than the last. The 'rod that struck you' likely refers to a particular Assyrian or Judahite king whose death the Philistines celebrated prematurely.
- 29.** The *saraph me'opheph* ('flying fiery serpent') uses the same word as the *seraphim* of Isaiah 6 — the burning ones. Whether this is a mythological creature or hyperbolic language for a terrifying enemy, the message is clear: what comes next will be worse than what came before.
- 30.** The contrast is sharp: Israel's poor (*bekholei dallim*, literally 'firstborn of the poor,' meaning the most vulnerable) will be fed and secure, while Philistia's root (*shorshekh*) will starve. The agricultural metaphor — root dying of famine — inverts the serpent-root imagery of verse 29.
- 30.** The shift from first person ('I will kill') to third person ('he will slay') is characteristic of prophetic speech, where God's voice and the prophet's voice blend. The 'he' likely refers to the coming Judahite or Assyrian ruler.
- 31.** The imperatives *heilili* ('wail!') and *za'aqi* ('cry out!') address the fortified cities of Philistia directly. The smoke from the north (*ashan mi-tsafon*) signals an approaching army — dust clouds or burning villages on the horizon. The phrase *ein boded be-mo'adav* ('no one breaks rank in his appointed formations') describes a disciplined, unstoppable force.
- 32.** The chapter ends with a theological declaration: YHWH *yissad Tsiyyon* ('the LORD has founded Zion'). The verb *yissad* ('has founded, has established') means Zion's security rests not on military power but on divine establishment. The 'afflicted of his people' (*aniyyei ammo*) — the poor, the humble, the oppressed — are the ones who find shelter there.
- 32.** The *mal'akhei goi* ('messengers of the nation') are likely Philistine envoys seeking an alliance with Judah. The answer to their diplomatic overture is theological, not political: Judah's security is the LORD, not foreign alliances. This anticipates Isaiah's consistent anti-alliance theology (chapters 30–31).

15

Summary: *The oracle against Moab opens with a night of sudden destruction. City after city falls, and Moab's population flees southward in lamentation. The prophet himself weeps for Moab's devastation, producing some of the most empathetic poetry in the prophetic corpus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *What makes this oracle extraordinary is its tone. Unlike the oracles against Babylon (chapter 13) or Philistia (14:28–32), where God's judgment is announced with severity, the Moab oracle is saturated with grief. The prophet does not stand outside Moab's suffering — he enters it. Verse 5 declares 'my heart cries out for Moab,' and the entire chapter reads more like a lament than a pronouncement of doom. This empathy is theologically startling: Moab is Israel's ancient rival (descended from Lot, Genesis 19:37), often hostile, yet the prophet mourns for Moab as though mourning for his own people. We note the geographic precision: the oracle traces a specific flight*

path from Ar and Kir in the north to the waters of Nimrim and the Wadi of the Willows in the south, mapping Moab's collapse city by city. The geographic detail lends documentary weight to what is otherwise deeply emotional poetry.

Translation Friction: The Moabite place names presented our most persistent challenge. Many of these cities — Ar, Kir, Dibon, Medeba, Heshbon, Elealeh, Jahaz, Zoar, Horonaim, Nimrim — are attested in the Mesha Stele (the Moabite Stone, ca. 840 BCE) and other ancient sources, but their exact locations are debated for several. We transliterated consistently and provided geographic context in the notes. The verb yeilil ('he wails') recurs throughout the chapter, and we varied the English ('wails,' 'howls,' 'laments') to avoid monotony while trying to preserve the Hebrew's deliberate repetition of the same root (y-l-l). In verse 9, the difficult phrase mei Dimon ('waters of Dimon') appears to be a wordplay on dam ('blood') — Dibon becomes Dimon to activate the blood-pun. We rendered 'Dimon' and explained the wordplay in the notes.

Connections: This oracle has a near-duplicate in Jeremiah 48, which expands and reapplies much of the same material to a later historical setting. The shared vocabulary suggests either a common source or Jeremiah's deliberate reuse of Isaiah's text. The Moabite cities named here appear in Numbers 21:26–30 (the Song of Heshbon) and in the Mesha Stele, providing archaeological corroboration for the geographic framework. The 'waters of Nimrim' (v. 6) and the 'Wadi of the Willows' (v. 7) mark the southern boundary of Moab, near the Dead Sea — the same region where Ruth's story begins (Ruth 1:1). The prophet's weeping for Moab echoes the compassion theology that runs through Isaiah: even enemies are mourned because they are God's creatures.

¹The oracle concerning Moab:

Because in a single night Ar of Moab is devastated — destroyed!

Because in a single night Kir of Moab is devastated — destroyed!

²He goes up to the temple — and Dibon to the high places — to weep.

Over Nebo and over Medeba, Moab wails.

Every head is shaved bald;

every beard is cut off.

³In her streets they put on sackcloth;

on her rooftops and in her squares

everyone wails,

collapsing in tears.

⁴Heshbon and Elealeh cry out;

their voice is heard as far as Jahaz.

Therefore the soldiers of Moab tremble;

their courage fails them.

⁵My heart cries out for Moab!

Her fugitives flee to Zoar,

to Eglath-sheleishiyah.

Up the ascent of Luhith

they go weeping;

on the road to Horonaim

they raise a cry of anguish.

⁶For the waters of Nimrim are desolate;

the grass is withered, the vegetation is gone,

nothing green remains.

7Therefore the wealth they have stored,
their accumulated goods,
they carry away
across the Wadi of the Willows.

8For the cry of anguish encircles the borders of Moab;
her wailing reaches Eglaim;
her wailing reaches Beer-elim.

9For the waters of Dimon are full of blood,
and I will bring still more upon Dimon:
a lion for the survivors of Moab,
for the remnant of the land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double *ki beleil* ('because in the night') creates a drumbeat of urgency: two cities fall in one night. The verb *shuddad* ('is devastated') paired with *nidmah* ('is destroyed, is silenced') emphasizes both the violence and its finality. The root *d-m-h* in *nidmah* can mean either 'to be destroyed' or 'to be silenced' — both meanings operate simultaneously: the cities are destroyed and their voices are silenced.
1. Ar and Kir are the two principal cities of Moab. Ar (possibly modern *Khirbet el-Medeyineh*) was on the Arnon River; Kir-Moab (Kir-Hareseth, modern *Kerak*) was the fortified capital on a high plateau. If both fall in a single night, Moab's entire defensive structure has collapsed.
2. The mourning rituals — shaved heads (*qorchah*) and cut beards (*geru'ah*) — were standard expressions of grief in the ancient Near East, though formally prohibited for Israelites (*Leviticus* 21:5, *Deuteronomy* 14:1). The prophet reports Moab's customs without condemnation, simply documenting their grief.
2. The 'temple' (*ha-bayit*, literally 'the house') likely refers to the temple of Chemosh, Moab's national deity. Dibon (modern *Dhiban*) was the city where the Mesha Stele was discovered. Nebo is not the mountain where Moses died but a Moabite town (attested in *Numbers* 32:3). Medeba (modern *Madaba*) is known for its Byzantine mosaic map but was an ancient Moabite city.
3. The mourning is public and total: streets (*chutsot*), rooftops (*gaggot*), and open squares (*rechovot*) — every public space is filled with grief. The phrase *yored ba-bekhi* ('going down in weeping' or 'dissolving in tears') suggests weeping so intense that the mourner physically collapses. We rendered 'collapsing in tears' to capture the physical dimension.
3. Sackcloth (*saq*) was the universal garment of mourning and penitence in the ancient Near East — coarse goat or camel hair worn against the skin. The rooftops were public spaces used for proclamation, prayer, and communal gathering.
4. The geographic sweep expands: Heshbon (modern *Hesban*) and Elealeh (modern *el-Al*) are northern Moabite cities; Jahaz (location debated, possibly *Khirbet el-Medeyineh*) is farther south. The cries carry across the landscape — the sound of mourning is the chapter's dominant sensory image.
4. The phrase *chalutsai Mo'av* ('the armed ones of Moab,' its soldiers) *yari'u* ('cry out, tremble') means even the military has lost its nerve. The expression *nafsho yar'ah lo* ('his soul trembles for him') describes inner collapse — not just military defeat but psychological disintegration.
5. The first line — *libbi le-Mo'av yiz'aq* ('my heart cries out for Moab') — is the emotional center of the oracle. The prophet's own heart joins Moab's lament. This is not triumphant prophecy but grieving prophecy. The identification of the speaker is debated: is this the prophet's voice or God's? The ambiguity may be intentional — in prophetic experience, the two can merge.
5. Zoar was one of the cities of the plain spared when Sodom was destroyed (*Genesis* 19:22), located near the southern end of the Dead Sea. *Eglath-shelishiyah* ('three-year-old heifer') is likely a place name, though its location is uncertain. The ascent of *Luhith* and the road to *Horonaim* trace the southward flight path of refugees — these are specific topographic features, the hilly roads down which Moabites flee.
5. The phrase *za'aqat shever* ('a cry of breaking/anguish') uses *shever* in its double sense: both physical destruction and emotional shattering. The refugees raise a cry that expresses both what is happening to their cities and what is happening to their hearts.
6. The waters of *Nimrim* (probably *Wadi en-Numeirah*, southeast of the Dead Sea) were evidently a fertile oasis. Their desolation means the refugees fleeing south will find no water, no pasture, no sustenance. The threefold description — dried grass (*yavesh chatsir*), finished vegetation (*kalah deshe*), no green (*yereq lo hayah*) — eliminates every possibility of life-sustaining growth.
6. The ecological destruction reinforces the totality of Moab's collapse: it is not merely military defeat but the death of the land itself. The water sources that sustained life have failed.
7. The *yitrah* ('excess, abundance') and *pequddatam* ('their stored-up goods, their possessions') represent everything Moab has accumulated — now loaded onto the backs of refugees fleeing south. The *nachal ha-aravim* ('Wadi of the Willows') is likely the border watercourse between Moab and

Edom, possibly the modern Wadi el-Hasa. Crossing it means leaving Moab entirely — the refugees abandon their homeland.

7. The image of people carrying their remaining possessions across a border stream is one of the most human moments in the prophets. This is not abstract judgment but the lived experience of displacement.
8. The verb *hiqqifah* ('encircles, surrounds') means the cry of grief has reached every border of Moab — there is no quiet corner, no place untouched. Eglaim and Beer-elim mark the geographical extremes of Moab, likely at or near the Dead Sea shore. The repetition of *yillatah* ('her wailing') is monotonous by design — the wail is unvarying and inescapable.
8. Beer-elim ('well of the mighty ones' or 'well of the terebinths') may be the same location mentioned in Numbers 21:16–18, the well that Israel sang over during the wilderness journey. If so, the place once associated with celebration is now associated with mourning.
9. The name Dimon appears to be a deliberate alteration of Dibon (the major Moabite city, cf. v. 2) to create a wordplay with dam ('blood'): Dimon/dam — the city's very name now echoes with blood. The waters that should sustain life are full of death.
9. The divine first person returns: *ashit* ('I will bring/place') — God claims agency for what falls on the survivors. The 'lion' (*aryeh*) sent against the remnant may be metaphorical (a conquering army) or literal (predatory animals reclaiming depopulated territory). Either way, even survival offers no safety.
9. The phrase *she'erit adamah* ('remnant of the land') closes the chapter with the barest thread of survival — not a restored nation but a fragment clinging to scorched ground. The oracle ends without resolution, continuing directly into chapter 16.

16

Summary: *The Moab oracle continues with an appeal for Judah to shelter Moab's refugees, grounded in the promise of a righteous throne in the 'booth of David.' Moab's pride is diagnosed as the cause of its fall. The prophet again weeps for Moab, and a three-year deadline is set for the oracle's fulfillment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 5 is one of the most significant messianic texts embedded in a foreign-nation oracle: a throne established in *chesed* ('covenant loyalty'), a judge who seeks justice (*mishpat*) and is swift to do righteousness (*tsedeq*), seated in the 'booth of David' (*ohel David*). The language anticipates Isaiah 9:6–7 and 11:1–5, linking Moab's crisis to the larger hope for a just Davidic ruler. We note that the theological logic is striking — Moab's only hope for shelter depends on the character of David's dynasty, which in turn depends on God's *chesed*. The chapter also contains one of the Bible's most psychologically complex portrayals of national pride: Moab's *ga'avah* ('pride') is described in verse 6 with five near-synonyms, as though one word cannot capture the scale of the self-deception. Yet the prophet does not mock this pride; he mourns it, because it is the very thing preventing Moab from accepting the shelter being offered.*

Translation Friction: *The opening verse presented a significant interpretive puzzle. The Hebrew *shilchu khar moshelah erets* ('send a lamb to the ruler of the land') is variously understood as tribute payment, a diplomatic gesture, or a symbolic act of submission. We rendered literally and noted the options. Verse 6 piles up terms for pride — *ge'uto*, *ga'avato*, *evrato* — that English cannot easily distinguish without sounding redundant. We varied the translations ('arrogance,' 'pride,' 'insolence') but noted that the Hebrew deliberately uses near-synonyms to flood the verse with the concept. In verse 14, the phrase *ke-shenei sakhir* ('like the years of a hired worker') is an idiom for exact, contracted time — a hired worker counts every day. We rendered 'like the years of a hired laborer' and explained the idiom.*

Connections: *The 'booth of David' (*ohel David*, v. 5) connects to Amos 9:11 ('I will raise up the booth of David that has fallen'), 2 Samuel 7:12–16 (the Davidic covenant), and Isaiah 9:6–7 and 11:1–5 (the messianic king). The *chesed-mishpat-tsedeq* triad in verse 5 is the same ethical vocabulary that defines God's own character throughout the prophets (Micah 6:8, Jeremiah 9:24, Hosea 2:19). The weeping for Moab's vineyards (vv. 8–10) parallels the vineyard theology of Isaiah 5:1–7, where Israel itself is the failed vineyard. Moab's vine destruction echoes Israel's. The three-year deadline (v. 14) has a parallel in Isaiah 21:16, where a similar timeframe is given for Kedar's judgment.*

1Send lambs to the ruler of the land,
from Sela through the desert
to the mount of Daughter Zion.

²Like a fluttering bird,
a nest sent scattering,
so are the daughters of Moab
at the fords of the Arnon.

³Bring counsel! Render a decision!
Make your shade like night
in the glare of noon.
Hide the outcasts;
do not betray the fugitive.

⁴Let the outcasts of Moab dwell with you;
be a shelter for them from the destroyer.
For the oppressor will come to an end,
the destruction will cease,
the trampler will vanish from the land.

⁵Then a throne will be established in covenant loyalty,
and on it will sit in faithfulness,
in the booth of David,
one who judges and seeks justice
and is swift to do righteousness.

⁶We have heard of the pride of Moab —
how very proud he is! —
his arrogance, his pride, his insolence.
His empty boasts amount to nothing.

⁷Therefore Moab wails for Moab —
all of it wails!
For the raisin cakes of Kir-hareseth
you moan, utterly stricken.

⁸For the terraced fields of Heshbon wither,
the vine of Sibmah —
whose choice branches struck down
the lords of nations.
They reached as far as Jazer,
they wandered into the desert;
her shoots spread out
and crossed the sea.

⁹Therefore I weep with the weeping of Jazer
for the vine of Sibmah.
I drench you with my tears,
Heshbon and Elealeh!
For over your summer fruit and your harvest
the battle cry has fallen.

¹⁰Joy and gladness are gathered away from the orchards;
 in the vineyards no one sings,
 no one shouts.
 No treader treads out wine in the presses.
 I have silenced the vintage shout.

¹¹Therefore my inner being moans like a lyre for Moab,
 my inmost self for Kir-heres.

¹²And when Moab appears,
 when he wears himself out on the high place
 and comes to his sanctuary to pray,
 he will not prevail.

¹³This is the word that the LORD spoke
 concerning Moab long ago.

¹⁴But now the LORD has spoken:
 'Within three years — counted like the years of a hired laborer —
 the glory of Moab will be brought into contempt,
 with all its great multitude.
 And the remnant will be very few,
 small and without strength.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse is interpreted as Moab's tribute offering to Judah: kar ('lamb') sent to moshel erets ('ruler of the land') — a gesture of submission seeking protection. Sela ('rock,' possibly Petra or another rocky Edomite/Moabite location) marks the point of departure; the har bat Tsiyyon ('mount of Daughter Zion') is the destination. The tribute travels from Moab's desert edge to Jerusalem.
1. Alternatively, some read the imperative as addressed to Judah: 'send back the lamb' — i.e., return the Moabite refugees who are like stray lambs. We followed the majority reading of Moab sending tribute but noted the alternative.
2. The simile of the oph noded ('wandering, fluttering bird') and qen meshullach ('a nest sent away, scattered') captures the desperation of refugees: like fledglings cast from the nest, unable to fly properly, fluttering in panic. The 'daughters of Moab' (benot Mo'av) are the women and girls of the nation — the most vulnerable refugees.
2. The Arnon River (modern Wadi Mujib) was Moab's northern boundary and a deep canyon gorge. The ma'avarot ('fords, crossing points') are where refugees would attempt to cross — choke points of vulnerability where the displaced gather and wait.
3. The imperatives shift to address Judah: havi'u etsah ('bring counsel'), asu pelilah ('render judgment/decision'). Moab begs Judah for two things — wise counsel and protective action. The image shiti ka-lail tsillekh be-tokh tsohorayim ('make your shade like night in the midst of noon') asks for total concealment: shade so deep it becomes darkness, hiding the refugees from their pursuers even in broad daylight.
3. The final two imperatives — sattri niddachim ('hide the outcasts') and noded al tegalli ('do not betray the fugitive') — use refugee vocabulary: niddachim ('the driven out, the displaced') and noded ('the wanderer'). These are people without home, status, or protection. The request is for Judah to become their shelter.
4. The voice shifts: God (or the prophet speaking for God) instructs Judah to shelter Moab's displaced. The phrase hevi seter lamo ('be a shelter for them') uses seter, a word applied to God Himself as refuge (Psalm 32:7, 91:1). Judah is asked to play God's role — to be for Moab what God is for Israel.
4. The three-fold promise — afes ha-mets ('the oppressor will end'), kalah shod ('destruction will cease'), tammu romes ('the trampler will vanish') — assures Judah that sheltering Moab is not permanent risk but temporary mercy. The oppressor has an expiration date.
5. This verse is the theological heart of the Moab oracle and one of Isaiah's most compressed messianic texts. The throne is established be-chesed ('in covenant loyalty') — not by military conquest but by God's faithful love. The ruler sits be-emet ('in truth, in faithfulness') in the ohel David ('booth/tent of David').

5. The word *ohel* ('tent, booth') rather than *bayit* ('house') or *heikhal* ('palace') is significant. It may suggest the humble, temporary structure of a shepherd-king rather than an imperial palace — or it may echo the 'booth of David' that Amos 9:11 prophesies will be raised up after it falls. Either way, the emphasis is on the character of the ruler, not the grandeur of the building.
5. The ruler's three defining activities — *shofet* ('judging'), *doresh mishpat* ('seeking justice'), and *mehir tsedeq* ('swift in righteousness') — form a complete portrait of ideal governance. This is the same vocabulary used for God's own justice in Isaiah 1:17, 26 and for the messianic king in 9:7 and 11:4.
6. Five words for pride flood this single verse: *ge'on* ('pride, majesty'), *ge'eh* ('proud'), *ga'avato* ('his arrogance'), *ge'ono* ('his pride'), *evrato* ('his insolence, his fury'). The accumulation is deliberate — it mimics the inflation of pride itself, piling up until it becomes absurd. The final phrase *lo khen baddav* ('his boasts are not right/true') punctures the inflation: for all this pride, his words are empty.
6. The shift to 'we have heard' (*shama'nu*) may represent the prophet joining the communal voice of Judah, or it may be an editorial comment stepping outside the oracle. Jeremiah 48:29 quotes this verse nearly verbatim, suggesting it became proverbial.
7. The phrase *Mo'av le-Mo'av ye'ilil* ('Moab wails for Moab') is remarkable — the nation mourns for itself. There is no outside comforter; Moab's grief is self-enclosed and total (*kulloh*, 'all of it').
7. The *ashishei Qir-Chareseth* ('raisin cakes of Kir-Hareseth') refers to pressed raisin cakes, a Moabite specialty and possibly a cultic food offering (cf. Hosea 3:1, 2 Samuel 6:19). Kir-Hareseth (modern Kerak) was famous for its vineyards. The mourning over raisin cakes represents mourning over Moab's entire agricultural economy — and possibly its religious life, since raisin cakes featured in worship. The verb *tehgu* ('you moan, you murmur') suggests low, continuous grief.
8. The 'vine of Sibmah' (*gefen Sivmah*) was proverbial for Moab's viticulture. The vine's reach — to Jazer in the north, into the desert to the east, across the sea (likely the Dead Sea) to the west — describes a once-flourishing agricultural economy whose tendrils extended in every direction. The phrase *ba'alei goyim halmu seruqqeiha* ('the lords of nations struck down her choice branches') can be read two ways: either foreign rulers destroyed the vines, or the vines themselves were so potent that their wine 'struck down' (intoxicated) foreign rulers. We rendered with the destructive sense but noted the intoxication reading.
8. Heshbon's *shadmot* ('terraced fields') represent the careful agricultural infrastructure that generations built and invaders can destroy in a day.
9. The prophet weeps again — *evkeh* ('I weep') — and the tears are not metaphorical: *arayavekh dim'ati* ('I drench you with my tears'). The verb *ravah* ('to drench, to saturate, to water abundantly') is the language of irrigation. The prophet's tears become a substitute for the rain and water that Moab's vineyards will never receive again.
9. The *heidad* ('shout') that falls on the harvest is ambiguous: *heidad* can be either a harvest shout of joy (the vintners' cry) or a battle cry. The double meaning is the point — what should have been a harvest celebration has become a military assault. The same sound that meant joy now means destruction.
10. The verse systematically eliminates every sound of agricultural celebration: *simchah* ('joy') and *gil* ('gladness') are removed, *yerunnan* ('singing') and *yero'a* ('shouting') are negated, and the treader's rhythmic work-song falls silent. The final declaration — *heidad hishbatti* ('I have silenced the vintage shout') — is God speaking: the silence is not natural but imposed.
10. The imagery is particularly poignant because grape-treading was communal, festive labor — people singing and shouting as they stomped grapes. The vineyards represented not just economy but community. Their silencing is social death.
11. The prophet's grief has become physical: *me'ai* ('my intestines, my inner organs') *yehhemu* ('moan, murmur, growl'). The comparison to a *kinnor* ('lyre, harp') transforms the body's anguish into music — but it is the music of lament, not celebration. The prophet's viscera have become a stringed instrument of grief.
11. The comparison is not decorative but experiential: the *kinnor* produces its sound from taut strings vibrating under tension. The prophet's insides are stretched tight with sorrow for a nation that is not his own. This is one of the most intimate expressions of prophetic empathy in the Hebrew Bible.
12. The verse describes Moab's futile religious response to the crisis. The *bamah* ('high place') was the standard worship site in Moab, and the *miqdash* ('sanctuary') likely refers to the temple of Chemosh. Moab will exhaust itself (*nil'ah*, 'weary himself, wear himself out') in prayer at its own shrines — and nothing will happen.
12. The phrase *ve-lo yukhal* ('and he will not prevail, and he will not be able') is devastating in its brevity. After all the weeping, all the wailing, all the religious effort — futility. The oracle implies that Moab's gods cannot save; only the shelter offered through the 'booth of David' (v. 5) provides real protection.
13. The phrase *me-az* ('from then, long ago, since that time') indicates that the oracle in chapters 15–16 is being presented as an older prophecy now being reaffirmed. The editorial note distinguishes between the original oracle (presumably from Isaiah's earlier ministry or even from a pre-Isaianic prophet) and the updated application in verse 14. This kind of prophetic reuse — taking an older oracle and applying it to a new situation — is common in the prophetic corpus.
14. The phrase *ke-shenei sakhir* ('like the years of a hired laborer') is an idiom for precisely counted time. A hired worker's contract was exact — not a day more, not a day less (cf. Isaiah 21:16). God sets a specific deadline: three years, counted to the day.

14. The kevod Mo'av ('glory of Moab') — its population, wealth, military strength — will be niklah ('brought into contempt, disgraced'). The final phrase she'ar me'at miz'ar lo kabbir ('a remnant, very few, small, not mighty') piles up diminutives: what survives will be a remnant (she'ar), small (me'at), insignificant (miz'ar), and powerless (lo kabbir). Four words of smallness reduce Moab from a proud nation to almost nothing.
14. The oracle closes where it began — with devastation — but the offer of shelter in the booth of David (v. 5) remains on the table. The three-year countdown creates urgency: Moab has limited time to accept the shelter being offered.

17

Summary: *Isaiah 17 delivers an oracle against Damascus — the capital of Aram (Syria) — but quickly pivots to include the northern kingdom of Israel (Ephraim), which had allied itself with Damascus against Judah in the Syro-Ephraimite coalition of 735-732 BCE. The chapter opens with Damascus reduced to a ruin heap, then turns its lens on Israel's own wasting: the glory of Jacob will grow thin like a harvested field with only scattered gleanings left. Yet the chapter is not pure judgment. The pivotal 'On that day' in verse 7 envisions a moment when humanity will finally look to their Maker rather than to the altars and Asherah poles their own hands have fashioned. The oracle closes with a dramatic image of roaring nations surging like mighty waters, only to be rebuked by God and scattered like chaff before the wind.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *We note the striking interweaving of Damascus and Ephraim as co-defendants in a single oracle — their military alliance has made them co-recipients of judgment. The agricultural metaphors in verses 4-6 are among the most vivid in Isaiah: the fat body growing lean, the reaper gathering standing grain in the Valley of Rephaim, the two or three olives left on the highest bough after the shaking. These images convert military catastrophe into harvest language, suggesting that God is the one who reaps nations. The 'On that day' turning point in verse 7 introduces a rare moment of hope within a judgment oracle, where human beings abandon idols and look to the Holy One of Israel. The closing verses (12-14) shift to cosmic scope — the thunder of many nations — only to show that God's rebuke scatters them overnight, so that by morning the terror has vanished.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase masa Dammeseq ('oracle concerning Damascus') uses masa, which we render as 'oracle' rather than 'burden' to reflect prophetic-announcement genre rather than implying emotional weight. In verse 2, the 'cities of Aroer' present a geographic puzzle — Aroer is in Transjordan, not Syria — and we note this in the verse without emending the text. The phrase ke'asif qatsir ('like the gathering of harvest') in verse 5 required us to maintain the agricultural metaphor rather than abstracting it. We rendered Asherim in verse 8 as 'Asherah poles' to clarify the cultic reference for modern readers while noting the Hebrew term.*

Connections: *The Syro-Ephraimite crisis addressed here is the same conflict narrated in Isaiah 7-8 and 2 Kings 16:5-9. The Valley of Rephaim (v. 5) connects to David's battles in 2 Samuel 5:18-22. The image of gleaning olives (v. 6) echoes Deuteronomy 24:20 and anticipates Isaiah 24:13. The roaring-nations imagery in verses 12-13 anticipates Psalm 46:3-6 and Isaiah 8:7-8, where flood waters represent Assyrian invasion. The 'look to their Maker' hope in verse 7 connects forward to Isaiah 31:7 where Israel throws away its idols.*

1An oracle concerning Damascus:

Behold, Damascus is about to be removed from among cities
and will become a fallen ruin heap.

2The cities of Aroer are forsaken;

they will belong to flocks
that lie down with no one to frighten them.

3The fortress will vanish from Ephraim,

and the kingdom from Damascus,
and the remnant of Aram —
they will be like the glory of the sons of Israel,

declares the LORD of Hosts.

⁴On that day
the glory of Jacob will be brought low,
and the fatness of his flesh will waste away.

⁵It will be like a reaper gathering standing grain,
his arm harvesting the heads of wheat —
like one who gleanes ears of grain
in the Valley of Rephaim.

⁶Yet gleanings will remain in it,
like the beating of an olive tree —
two or three berries on the topmost branch,
four or five on the fruitful boughs,
declares the LORD, the God of Israel.

⁷On that day mankind will look to their Maker,
and their eyes will gaze upon the Holy One of Israel.

⁸He will not look to the altars,
the work of his own hands;
what his fingers have made he will not regard —
neither the Asherah poles nor the incense altars.

⁹On that day his fortified cities will be
like the abandoned places of the forest and the hilltop
that they abandoned before the sons of Israel —
and there will be desolation.

¹⁰Because you have forgotten the God of your salvation
and have not remembered the Rock of your refuge,
therefore you plant pleasant gardens
and sow them with foreign vine cuttings.

¹¹On the day you plant, you make them grow;
in the morning you make your seed blossom —
but the harvest will be a heap of grief
on a day of sickness and incurable pain.

¹²Woe, the uproar of many peoples —
they roar like the roaring of the seas!
Woe, the tumult of nations —
they surge like the surging of mighty waters!

¹³Nations surge like the surging of many waters,
but He rebukes them and they flee far away,
chased like chaff on the mountains before the wind,
like whirling dust before a storm.

14At evening — behold, terror!
 Before morning — they are gone.
 This is the portion of those who plunder us,
 the lot of those who despoil us.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The noun *masa* ('oracle') opens the pronouncement genre — a formal prophetic declaration against a nation. Damascus was the capital of the Aramean kingdom and Israel's northern neighbor. The phrase *musar me'ir* ('removed from being a city') indicates total loss of urban status. The noun *mappalah* ('ruin heap, fallen mass') suggests not merely damage but complete structural collapse.
2. The 'cities of Aroer' present a geographical difficulty — Aroer is typically associated with Transjordan (Deuteronomy 2:36; Joshua 13:9), not the Damascus region. Some scholars read 'areha ('her cities') instead of Aro'er, yielding 'her cities are forsaken.' We retain the MT reading while noting the difficulty. The image of flocks resting undisturbed in abandoned cities is a standard prophetic desolation motif (cf. Zephaniah 2:14-15). The phrase *ein macharid* ('none to frighten') ironically echoes blessing language from Leviticus 26:6.
3. Here the oracle explicitly merges the fates of Ephraim (northern Israel) and Damascus (Aram). Their military alliance (the Syro-Ephraimite coalition, cf. Isaiah 7:1-2) binds them in shared judgment. The phrase 'like the glory of the sons of Israel' is ironic — Aram's remnant will share Israel's diminished glory, which the next verses describe as wasting away. *Ne'um YHWH tseva'ot* ('declares the LORD of Hosts') seals this as an authoritative divine pronouncement.
4. The phrase *bayyom hahu* ('on that day') marks an eschatological or climactic turning point — we render it consistently as 'On that day' throughout the project. The body metaphor is striking: Jacob (the northern kingdom) is personified as a once-fat man whose flesh wastes away. The verb *yiddal* ('brought low, become thin') pairs with *yerazeh* ('waste away') to create a devastating image of national emaciation.
5. The simile extends the harvest metaphor: God's judgment is like a reaper sweeping through a field. The Valley of Rephaim, southwest of Jerusalem, was known for its fertile grain fields (cf. 2 Samuel 5:18, 22). The image suggests thorough harvesting with only scattered gleanings remaining — the nation will be stripped nearly bare. The verb *qatsar* ('to harvest, reap') carries overtones of cutting down, while *laqat* ('to glean') refers to the secondary gathering of what little remains.
6. The olive-gleaning metaphor is both devastating and hopeful. After the harvest (judgment), only the most inaccessible olives remain — two or three at the very top, four or five on outer branches. This is a remnant theology image: near-total destruction, but not complete annihilation. The verb *naqaf* ('to strike, beat') refers to the practice of beating olive trees with poles to harvest the fruit. The divine title here is 'the LORD, the God of Israel' (YHWH Elohei Yisra'el) — distinct from 'the Holy One of Israel' — emphasizing covenant ownership even amid judgment.
7. This is the chapter's theological pivot. The phrase *bayyom hahu* ('On that day') here introduces not further judgment but a turning — when all human-made supports have collapsed, people will finally look to their Maker. The noun *ha'adam* ('mankind, humanity') universalizes the scope beyond Israel alone. The verb *sha'ah* ('to look, gaze, regard') implies looking with trust and dependence. The pairing of 'osehu ('his Maker') with *qedosh Yisra'el* ('the Holy One of Israel') links creation theology with covenant theology.
8. This verse is the negative counterpart to verse 7: instead of looking to their Maker, they will no longer look to what they themselves have made. The phrase *ma'aseh yadav* ('the work of his hands') is a standard polemic against idols — they are human manufactures, not divine realities. The *Asherim* were wooden cult poles associated with the Canaanite goddess Asherah. The *chammanim* were likely incense altars or sun-pillars used in syncretistic worship. The contrast between 'osehu ('his Maker') in v. 7 and *ma'aseh yadav* ('the work of his hands') in v. 8 is the theological crux: God made humanity; humanity made idols.
9. The Hebrew is difficult here. The MT reads 'like the abandonment of the forest and the hilltop' (or 'the Hivites and the Amorites' in the LXX reading). The LXX preserves a tradition that these were cities abandoned by the pre-Israelite Canaanite peoples when Joshua conquered the land — the irony being that Israel's own cities will now be abandoned just as the Canaanites' were. The word *shemamah* ('desolation') is one of Isaiah's strongest terms for total devastation — it implies eerie, uninhabited emptiness.
10. The direct address ('you') shifts to feminine singular, personifying the city or nation as a woman. The 'pleasant plants' (*nit'ei na'amanim*) are widely understood as 'gardens of Adonis' — ritual plantings associated with the Mesopotamian/Canaanite fertility cult of Tammuz/Adonis, where seeds were sprouted in shallow pots and quickly withered as part of a mourning ritual. The 'foreign vine cuttings' (*zemorat zar*) reinforce the syncretistic nature of the worship. The theological indictment is pointed: you forgot the Rock and replaced him with a potted plant.
11. The rapid growth of the Adonis gardens mirrors the rapid blossoming followed by inevitable withering — a perfect metaphor for the futility of trusting in foreign cults. The phrase *ned qatsir* ('a heap of harvest') is uncertain; *ned* may mean 'heap' or 'fleeing.' The words *nachalah* ('sickness, grief') and *ke'ev anush* ('incurable pain') transform the expected harvest joy into mourning. The agricultural cycle that began with hopeful planting ends in disease rather than abundance.
12. The interjection *hoi* ('Woe') shifts the oracle from Israel's judgment to a broader cosmic scene of raging nations. The onomatopoeic Hebrew is extraordinary: *hamon* ('uproar'), *yeheamayun* ('they roar'), *she'on* ('tumult'), *yisha'un* ('they surge') — the sounds themselves mimic crashing waves. The image of chaotic waters threatening to overwhelm evokes the primordial chaos waters (*tehom*) that God subdued at creation (Genesis 1:2; Psalm

93:3-4). The 'many peoples' may refer to the Assyrian empire's multi-ethnic army.

13. The dramatic reversal is instantaneous: the raging nations that seemed unstoppable are scattered by a single divine rebuke (ga'ar). The verb ga'ar ('to rebuke, roar at') is the same word used of God rebuking the sea (Psalm 104:7; Nahum 1:4). The simile shifts from water to wind: the mighty flood becomes weightless chaff (mots) and galgal ('whirling thing' — tumbleweed or thistle-down) blown before a storm. The transformation from terrifying weight to weightless debris is theologically potent: before God's rebuke, the mightiest armies are nothing.
14. The chapter closes with one of Isaiah's most vivid temporal contrasts: at nightfall, sheer terror; by dawn, the enemy has vanished. The word ballahah ('terror, sudden destruction') conveys visceral dread. The phrase einennu ('he is not, they are gone') is starkly absolute — complete disappearance. The final declaration — 'this is the portion of those who plunder us' — shifts to first-person plural, as if the prophet speaks on behalf of Jerusalem. The word goral ('lot') evokes the casting of lots, implying that God has assigned this fate to the oppressors. Historically, this may reflect the sudden destruction of Sennacherib's army in 701 BCE (cf. Isaiah 37:36).

18

Summary: *Isaiah 18 addresses Cush (ancient Nubia/Ethiopia, encompassing modern-day Sudan and southern Egypt), a powerful kingdom that sent envoys northward seeking alliance against Assyria. Rather than condemning Cush outright, Isaiah redirects the embassy: Go back — not because Cush is unimportant, but because the LORD Himself will act. God declares that He watches quietly from His dwelling like shimmering heat in sunlight, waiting for the precise moment to intervene. When the time comes, He will prune the vine of the oppressor before it ripens. The chapter closes with a remarkable vision: the tall, smooth-skinned people of Cush will bring gifts to the LORD of Hosts at Mount Zion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This oracle is unusual among the foreign-nation pronouncements because it contains no explicit condemnation of Cush. Instead, it is a message to a potential ally: do not rely on political coalitions, for God will act in His own time. The central image in verses 4-5 is extraordinary — God watching silently like heat shimmer and dew, then suddenly cutting like a vintner pruning branches just before harvest. The juxtaposition of serene waiting and decisive action captures a theology of divine timing that pervades Isaiah. The closing image of Cush bringing gifts to Zion (v. 7) transforms a political embassy into a future pilgrimage, anticipating the universalist vision of Isaiah 19:23-25 and the eschatological ingathering of nations in Isaiah 60. We also note the vivid geographic awareness: Isaiah describes Cush with ethnographic precision — the land of buzzing wings, the tall and smooth-skinned people, the nation of measured-line and trampling — suggesting firsthand knowledge of Cushite diplomats in Jerusalem.*

Translation Friction: *The opening phrase hoi erets tsiltsal kenafayim ('Woe, land of buzzing wings') is debated. We render hoi as 'Woe' per project convention, but note that here it may function more as an attention-getter ('Ah! Listen!') than a judgment cry. The 'buzzing wings' likely refer to the tsetse flies or locusts of the Nile region, though some read it as the sound of Cushite boats. The repeated phrase am qav-qav ('a nation of line-line') in verses 2 and 7 is genuinely obscure — we render it as 'a nation tall and bronzed' following contextual clues, while noting the Hebrew literally reads 'line-line' (possibly referring to measuring lines, territorial power, or physical stature). The word moshakh ('drawn out, tall') we render as 'tall' based on the most natural reading of the physical description.*

Connections: *Cush appears as a military power in 2 Kings 19:9 where Tirhakah king of Cush marches against Sennacherib — the same geopolitical context behind this oracle. The theme of nations bringing gifts to Zion connects to Psalm 68:31 ('Cush will stretch out her hands to God'), Isaiah 45:14, and Zephaniah 3:10. The divine-watching imagery anticipates Habakkuk 2:3 ('the vision awaits its appointed time'). The vine-pruning metaphor connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the vineyard song) and John 15:1-6. The sending of envoys by sea connects to Isaiah 30:1-5 and 31:1 where Isaiah warns against Egyptian/Cushite alliances.*

¹Woe, O land of buzzing wings,
which lies beyond the rivers of Cush —

²That sends envoys by sea,
in vessels of papyrus upon the waters!
Go, swift messengers,
to a nation tall and smooth-skinned,
to a people feared far and near,
a nation of strength and conquest,
whose land the rivers divide.

³All you inhabitants of the world
and you who dwell on the earth —
when a banner is raised on the mountains, look!
When the shofar is blown, listen!

⁴For this is what the LORD said to me:
"I will be still and watch from my dwelling place,
like shimmering heat in the sunlight,
like a cloud of dew in the heat of harvest."

⁵For before the harvest, when the blossom has finished
and the flower becomes a ripening grape,
He will cut off the shoots with pruning hooks
and tear away the spreading branches — He will hack them down.

⁶They will all be abandoned
to the birds of prey of the mountains
and to the beasts of the earth.
The birds of prey will summer on them,
and every beast of the earth will winter on them.

⁷At that time gifts will be brought to the LORD of Hosts
from a people tall and smooth-skinned,
from a people feared far and near,
a nation of strength and conquest,
whose land the rivers divide —
to the place of the name of the LORD of Hosts:
Mount Zion.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The interjection *hoi* ('Woe') opens the oracle, though here it may function more as a hailing call than a judgment pronouncement. The phrase *tsiltsal kenafayim* ('buzzing/whirring of wings') likely refers to the abundant insect life of the upper Nile region — tsetse flies, locusts, or mosquitoes whose drone characterizes the land. 'Beyond the rivers of Cush' places the addressee south of the Nile confluence, in the heart of the Nubian/Cushite kingdom (modern Sudan). The rivers are the Blue Nile and White Nile.
2. The Cushites sent diplomatic envoys in lightweight papyrus boats (*kelei gome*) — the same material as Moses' basket (Exodus 2:3). The prophet redirects these messengers: go back to your own people. The physical description of the Cushites is ethnographically precise: *memushakh* ('drawn out, tall') describes their stature; *morat* ('smooth, polished') their skin — likely referring to their smooth, dark complexion. The phrase *nora min-hu vaha'la* ('feared from there and beyond') acknowledges Cushite military might. *Qav-qav* is genuinely obscure — possibly 'measuring line' (territorial power) or onomatopoeia for a foreign language. We render contextually as 'strength and conquest.' The rivers 'dividing' (*baz'u*) the land refers to the Nile system that both bisects and defines Cushite territory.

3. The scope suddenly expands from Cush to the entire world. This universal summons — 'all inhabitants of the world' — calls everyone to attention for what God is about to do. The banner (nes) on the mountains is a military signal, visible from great distances, used to rally troops or announce an event. The shofar (ram's horn) is the instrument of divine theophany and battle (cf. Exodus 19:16; Joshua 6:4-5). Together, banner and shofar signal that God Himself is about to act on the stage of history. The imperative mood — 'look!' 'listen!' — demands active attention.
4. This verse is theologically extraordinary: God describes Himself as deliberately quiet, watching from His dwelling like heat shimmer and harvest dew. The verb shaqqat ('be still, be quiet') does not imply indifference but purposeful restraint — God is choosing to wait. The noun makhon ('dwelling, established place') refers to God's heavenly abode. The two nature similes — shimmering heat (chom tsach) and dew cloud ('av tal) — are both invisible forces that are nonetheless powerfully present. Heat shimmer distorts vision; dew silently saturates. God's apparent inaction is itself a form of sovereign activity. The locked formula "This is what the LORD said" renders ko amar YHWH.
5. The serene watching of verse 4 erupts into sudden, violent action. The timing is precise: God waits until just before harvest — when the blossom (perach) has become a ripening grape (boser gome) — and then strikes. The vintner metaphor is devastating: pruning hooks (mazmerot) are tools of careful cultivation, but here they are used for destruction, cutting off entire branches (zallim, 'tendrils, shoots') and spreading vines (netishot). The verb hetaz ('hack down, cut away') is harsh and decisive. The theological point: God's stillness is not passivity — He is timing His intervention for maximum effect, cutting down the enemy just as they think victory is within reach.
6. The pruned branches — and the armies they symbolize — are left as carrion. The 'ayit ('birds of prey, raptors') will feed on the corpses through summer; the beasts of the earth will gnaw on them through winter. The phrase 'summer on them ... winter on them' indicates that the slaughter is so vast it provides food for scavengers through an entire year's cycle. This unburied-corpse motif is a standard ancient Near Eastern image of total military defeat and divine curse (cf. Deuteronomy 28:26; 1 Samuel 17:44; Jeremiah 7:33). The shift from vine metaphor to battlefield carnage is abrupt and horrifying.
7. The oracle's conclusion transforms Cush from a political actor into a worshiper. The same ethnographic description from verse 2 — tall, smooth-skinned, feared, powerful, river-divided — now describes not an embassy seeking alliance but a people bringing gifts (shai) to the LORD of Hosts. The destination is specified with unusual fullness: 'the place of the name of the LORD of Hosts, Mount Zion.' This is pilgrimage language — the nations streaming to Zion that Isaiah envisions in 2:2-4 and develops throughout the book. The Cushite gift-offering anticipates Psalm 68:31 and Zephaniah 3:10.

19

Summary: *Isaiah 19 is one of the most remarkable chapters in the entire prophetic corpus, moving from devastating judgment against Egypt to one of the most universalist visions in the Old Testament. The oracle opens with the LORD riding a swift cloud into Egypt, causing its idols to tremble and its people to fight one another. Egypt's wisdom fails, the Nile dries up, and its economy collapses. A series of five 'On that day' oracles (vv. 16-25) then traces Egypt's journey from terror before the LORD, through recognition of God, through affliction and healing, to a highway connecting Egypt, Assyria, and Israel in shared worship. The chapter culminates in the astonishing declaration: 'Blessed be Egypt my people, and Assyria the work of my hands, and Israel my inheritance' — extending covenant titles previously reserved for Israel alone to Israel's two great historical oppressors.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *We find ourselves standing before one of the most breathtaking theological trajectories in Scripture. The chapter begins with conventional judgment-oracle material — idols trembling, civil war, economic ruin — but then pivots through five 'On that day' sections that progressively expand God's redemptive scope until it encompasses the entirety of the ancient Near Eastern world. The titles in verse 25 are staggering: 'my people' (ami), which is Israel's covenant identity from Exodus, is given to Egypt; 'the work of my hands' (ma'aseh yaday), the language of creation, is given to Assyria; and 'my inheritance' (nachalati) is retained for Israel. This is not syncretism — it is the radical claim that the God of Israel's sovereignty is so total that even the two empires that most oppressed Israel will ultimately be drawn into covenant relationship. The highway between Egypt and Assyria running through Israel (v. 23) transforms the land-bridge that made Israel a perpetual battleground into a pilgrimage corridor.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase rokhev 'al 'av qal ('riding on a swift cloud') in verse 1 evokes Canaanite storm-god imagery (Baal as 'cloud rider'), which Isaiah deliberately appropriates for the LORD. We retained the vivid image rather than softening it. The 'cruel master' of verse 4 is debated — some see Assyria, others a native Egyptian tyrant, others Nebuchadnezzar. We leave the identity open in the notes. The five cities of verse 18 include the controversial 'City of Destruction' (ir haheres) — the MT reads 'destruction' but the Qumran scroll 1QIsaa and several manuscripts read 'ir hacheres' ('City of the Sun'), likely referring to Heliopolis or Leontopolis. We note both readings. The shift from judgment to salvation across the five 'On that day'*

oracles required careful attention to the progressive logic: fear, then acknowledgment, then worship, then healing, then full inclusion.

Connections: The cloud-riding imagery connects to Psalm 68:4 and 104:3, and to the Ugaritic epithet of Baal (rkb 'rpt, 'rider of the clouds') — Isaiah claims this title for the LORD. The Nile drying up (vv. 5-10) inverts the Exodus: God once split the Sea to deliver Israel from Egypt, now He dries the Nile to judge Egypt itself. The 'altar to the LORD in the land of Egypt' (v. 19) connects to the pillar at the border in Exodus and anticipates the Jewish temple at Elephantine and Leontopolis. The highway of verse 23 anticipates the 'highway of holiness' in Isaiah 35:8 and the return-from-exile road in Isaiah 40:3. The triple blessing of verse 25 is echoed in the universalist vision of Isaiah 2:2-4, 56:6-8, and 66:18-21.

¹An oracle concerning Egypt:

Behold, the LORD rides on a swift cloud
and comes to Egypt.
The idols of Egypt tremble before Him,
and the heart of Egypt melts within it.

²"I will stir up Egypt against Egypt:

man will fight against his brother,
neighbor against neighbor,
city against city,
kingdom against kingdom.

³The spirit of Egypt will be emptied out within it,
and I will swallow up its counsel.
They will consult the idols and the spirits of the dead,
the mediums and the spiritists.

⁴I will hand Egypt over to a cruel master,
and a fierce king will rule over them,"
declares the Lord, the LORD of Hosts.

⁵The waters will be dried up from the sea,
and the River will be parched and dry.

⁶The canals will stink;
the streams of Egypt will dwindle and dry up.
Reed and rush will wither.

⁷The bare places along the Nile,
at the mouth of the Nile,
and every field sown beside the Nile
will dry up, be blown away, and be no more.

⁸The fishermen will mourn;
all who cast hooks into the Nile will lament,
and those who spread nets upon the waters will languish.

⁹Those who work combed flax will be put to shame,
and the weavers of white linen will despair.

¹⁰Her foundations will be crushed;
all who work for wages will be sick at heart.

¹¹The princes of Zoan are utter fools!
The wisest of Pharaoh's counselors give stupid advice.
How can you say to Pharaoh,
"I am a son of the wise,
a son of ancient kings"?

¹²Where then are your wise men?
Let them tell you — let them know
what the LORD of Hosts has planned against Egypt!

¹³The princes of Zoan have become fools;
the princes of Memphis are deceived.
They have led Egypt astray —
the cornerstones of her tribes.

¹⁴The LORD has mixed into her midst
a spirit of confusion,
and they have made Egypt stagger in all it does,
like a drunkard staggering in his vomit.

¹⁵And there will be nothing that Egypt can accomplish —
neither head nor tail, palm branch nor reed.

¹⁶On that day Egypt will be like women —
trembling and terrified
before the brandishing hand of the LORD of Hosts
that He brandishes over it.

¹⁷The land of Judah will become a terror to Egypt.
Everyone who is reminded of it will tremble,
because of the plan of the LORD of Hosts
that He is planning against it.

¹⁸On that day there will be five cities in the land of Egypt
speaking the language of Canaan
and swearing allegiance to the LORD of Hosts.
One of them will be called the City of the Sun.

¹⁹On that day there will be an altar to the LORD
in the heart of the land of Egypt,
and a pillar at its border dedicated to the LORD.

²⁰It will be a sign and a witness
to the LORD of Hosts in the land of Egypt.
When they cry out to the LORD because of oppressors,
He will send them a savior and defender, and He will deliver them.

²¹The LORD will make Himself known to Egypt,
and Egypt will know the LORD on that day.
They will worship with sacrifice and grain offering;
they will make vows to the LORD and fulfill them.

²²The LORD will strike Egypt — striking and healing.
They will turn to the LORD,
and He will respond to their plea and heal them.

²³On that day there will be a highway
from Egypt to Assyria.
Assyria will come to Egypt and Egypt to Assyria,
and Egypt will worship together with Assyria.

²⁴On that day Israel will be the third
with Egypt and Assyria —
a blessing in the midst of the earth.

²⁵whom the LORD of Hosts has blessed, saying:
"Blessed be Egypt my people,
and Assyria the work of my hands,
and Israel my inheritance."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The oracle opens with the LORD's dramatic theophanic entry into Egypt. The image of God 'riding on a swift cloud' ('av qal — literally 'a light/fast cloud') appropriates ancient Near Eastern storm-god imagery: in Ugaritic texts, Baal is called 'rider of the clouds.' Isaiah claims this title exclusively for the LORD. The word *elilim* ('idols') is a contemptuous pun — it sounds like *elohim* ('gods') but derives from a root meaning 'worthless, nothing.' The Egyptian gods, for all their splendor, are nothing before the LORD. The verb *yimmas* ('melts') indicates total psychological collapse — the same verb describes the Canaanites' response to Israel at the Exodus (Exodus 15:15; Joshua 2:11).
2. The verb *sikhsakhti* ('I will stir up, incite, entangle') is rare and emphatic — God Himself engineers Egypt's internal collapse. The fourfold escalation — brother against brother, neighbor against neighbor, city against city, kingdom against kingdom — describes civil war expanding from personal to regional to national scope. The phrase *mamlakhah be-mamlakhah* ('kingdom against kingdom') may reflect the historical fragmentation of Egypt during the intermediate periods when competing dynasties ruled simultaneously. The theological claim is absolute: it is the LORD, not political circumstance, who orchestrates Egypt's self-destruction.
3. The verb *navqah* ('be emptied, poured out') describes Egypt's inner vitality draining away. The verb *avale'a* ('I will swallow up, confuse') indicates that God will devour Egypt's famed wisdom — the very quality for which Egypt was celebrated in the ancient world. In desperation, the Egyptians will turn to every form of occult consultation: *elilim* (idols), *ittim* (whispering spirits of the dead), *ovot* (mediums who channel the dead), and *yidde'onim* (spiritists, 'knowing ones'). This four-fold list of occult practices mirrors the prohibitions in Deuteronomy 18:10-11, implying that Egypt's spiritual resources are precisely what Israel was forbidden to use.
4. The verb *sikkarti* ('I will shut up, deliver over') means to hand someone into the power of another — God Himself engineers Egypt's subjugation. The 'cruel master' (*adonim qashah* — literally 'hard lords,' using a plural of majesty) and 'fierce king' (*melekh 'az*) are debated: candidates include the Assyrian kings Sargon II or Esarhaddon, the Cushite pharaoh Shabaka who unified Egypt by force, or the Persian Cambyses. The identity is deliberately left unspecified — the point is God's sovereignty over Egypt's political fate. The divine title here combines *Adon* ('Lord, Master') with *YHWH tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts'), emphasizing God's absolute authority over all earthly lords.
5. The 'sea' (*yam*) here refers to the Nile itself — in Egyptian usage, the Nile was called 'the sea' due to its vastness. The 'River' (*nahar*) is the Nile, which we capitalize to indicate it functions as a proper name (like 'the River' in Mesopotamian texts refers to the Euphrates). The verbs *nashtu* ('dried up'), *yecherav* ('be parched'), and *yavesh* ('be dry') pile up to emphasize total desiccation. For Egypt, which depends entirely on the Nile for agriculture, commerce, and life itself, the drying of the river means the death of civilization. This inverts the Exodus: God once split water to save Israel; now He removes water to judge Egypt.
6. The verb *he'eznichu* is difficult — it may mean 'stink' (from *z-n-ch*, 'to become foul') or 'recede' (from a different root). We follow the reading 'stink' as stagnant, shrinking waterways would indeed become foul. The *ye'orei Matsor* ('streams/canals of Egypt') uses the distinctly Egyptian loanword *ye'or* (from Egyptian *itrw*, 'river, canal'), reinforcing the specifically Egyptian setting. The withering of *qaneh* ('reed') and *suf* ('rush, papyrus') — the iconic

vegetation of the Nile marshes — symbolizes the total ecological collapse that follows the Nile's failure.

7. The threefold repetition of *ye'or* ('Nile') in a single verse hammers the point: everything connected to the Nile is devastated. The noun *'arot* ('bare places, exposed ground') refers to the riverbank areas normally lush with vegetation now stripped bare. The agricultural land (*mizra'* — 'sown area, cultivated field') that depended on Nile irrigation will dry up (*yivash*), be blown away (*niddaf*), and cease to exist (*einennu*). Egypt's entire agricultural economy — the breadbasket of the ancient world — collapses.
8. The fishing industry — a major part of Egypt's economy and diet — collapses with the Nile. The verb *anu* ('mourn, groan') expresses grief over economic devastation. Three types of fishermen are mentioned: those who cast hooks (*chakkah* — the angler's line), and those who spread nets (*mikhmoret* — seine nets or casting nets). The verb *umlalu* ('languish, wither') applies the same drying vocabulary used of the Nile's vegetation to human beings — the fishermen wither along with the river.
9. Egypt's textile industry — world-renowned for fine linen — is the next casualty. The phrase *pishtim seriqot* ('combed flax') refers to the processing of flax fibers, which required abundant water for retting (soaking). The 'weavers of white linen' (*orgim chorai*) produced the fine white fabric that was Egypt's signature export and was used for priestly garments and mummy wrappings. Without Nile water, flax cannot be grown or processed, and the entire textile economy fails. The verb *boshu* ('be put to shame') implies both economic ruin and social humiliation.
10. This verse is textually difficult. *Shatoteha* ('her foundations' or 'her weavers') may refer to the pillars of Egyptian society or to textile workers. The phrase *'osei sekher* ('those who work for wages') refers to hired laborers — the working class who depend on the Nile-based economy for their livelihood. The phrase *agmei nafesh* ('pools of the soul' or 'sick at heart') uses the word *agam* ('pool, pond') metaphorically to describe stagnant grief — their inner life becomes a still, stagnant pool of despair. The verse captures the human cost of ecological collapse: not just economic figures but crushed spirits.
11. The oracle now targets Egypt's legendary wisdom tradition. Zoan (Tanis) was a major city in the eastern Nile delta and a royal residence. The word *evilim* ('fools') is devastating — it denotes not ignorance but willful, moral stupidity (the same root as *naval* in Psalm 14:1). The phrase *'etsah niv'arah* ('brutish/stupid counsel') attacks the very thing Egypt prized most: its ancient wisdom. The rhetorical question mocks the Egyptian custom of claiming descent from wise ancestors and ancient royal lines — their pedigree is useless when God has confounded their wisdom.
12. The rhetorical challenge is withering: if Egypt's sages are truly wise, let them discern what the LORD of Hosts has purposed. The verb *ya'ats* ('to plan, counsel, purpose') is the same root used of the counselors in verse 11 — but whereas human counsel is 'stupid' (*niv'arah*), the LORD's counsel is sovereign and irresistible. The implied answer to 'Where are your wise men?' is: they are useless, because no human wisdom can discern or counter the purposes of the LORD of Hosts.
13. Noph (Memphis) was Egypt's ancient capital and administrative center, located south of the delta. The verb *no'alu* ('have become fools') and *nishe'u* ('are deceived, deluded') form a devastating pair: the leaders are both stupid and self-deceived. The phrase *pinnat shevateha* ('the cornerstones of her tribes') uses architectural imagery — these leaders are supposed to be the structural supports of Egyptian society, but instead of stabilizing the building, they have caused the entire structure to lean astray (*hit'u*, 'led astray, caused to wander').
14. The verb *masakh* ('to mix, pour, blend') depicts God as mixing a 'spirit of distortion' (*ruach 'iv'im*) into Egypt's inner life like poison into a drink. The noun *'iv'im* ('distortion, confusion, dizziness') comes from a root meaning 'to twist, bend, distort.' The closing simile is deliberately disgusting: Egypt staggers through its own policies like a drunk stumbling through his own vomit. The verb *hit'ot* ('stagger, wander') is the same root used in verse 13 — the leaders who led Egypt astray are themselves staggering. The theological claim is severe: God has deliberately introduced confusion into Egypt's decision-making.
15. The merism 'head and tail, palm branch and reed' (*rosh ve-zanav, kippah ve-agmon*) encompasses all of society from top to bottom. The 'head' and 'palm branch' (high, prominent) represent the ruling class; the 'tail' and 'reed' (low, common) represent the common people. Isaiah 9:14-15 defines this same merism: the elder and dignitary are the head; the prophet who teaches lies is the tail. The point is total paralysis — no segment of Egyptian society, high or low, can accomplish anything productive. The verse summarizes the entire judgment section: Egypt is completely incapacitated.
16. The first of five 'On that day' oracles begins with a comparison that reflects ancient patriarchal warfare conventions: 'like women' (*kannashim*) means vulnerable, exposed to violence, unable to defend — the condition of non-combatants in ancient warfare. The verb *charad* ('tremble') and *pachad* ('be terrified') form an intensive pair expressing complete loss of military confidence. The 'brandishing hand' (*tenufat yad*) of the LORD evokes the raised hand of a warrior about to strike — the gesture that precedes the blow. Egypt, which once held Israel with a 'mighty hand,' now cowers before the LORD's hand.
17. The reversal is stunning: tiny Judah — a vassal state Egypt regarded as a pawn — becomes a source of terror (*chaggah*, 'staggering fear') to mighty Egypt. The reason is not Judah's military power but the LORD's plan (*'atsat YHWH tseva'ot*). The word *'etsah* ('plan, counsel') echoes the failed counsel of Egypt's own advisors (vv. 11-13) — human counsel is foolish, but divine counsel is terrifying. Every mention of Judah triggers fear because Egypt recognizes that Judah's God has purposes against them.
18. The second 'On that day' oracle envisions Egyptian cities adopting Hebrew (the 'language of Canaan,' *sefat Kena'an*) and swearing covenant loyalty to the LORD. This represents not military conquest but cultural and religious conversion. The number five may be symbolic (a portion of Egypt) or historical (Jewish colonies in Egypt). The final phrase is textually disputed: the MT reads *'ir haheres* ('City of Destruction'), but 1QIsaa and other manuscripts read *'ir hacheres* ('City of the Sun'), likely referring to Heliopolis (Egyptian *Iwnw*, 'City of the Sun') or to the later Jewish temple at Leontopolis. We follow the 'City of the Sun' reading as it makes better contextual sense — why would a positive oracle name a city 'Destruction'? — while noting the MT variant.

- 19.** The third 'On that day' oracle is astonishing: a legitimate altar (mizbeach) to the LORD in the center of Egypt and a standing stone (matstsevah) at its border. Both altar and pillar are standard Israelite worship installations — the altar for sacrifice, the standing stone as a covenant witness (cf. Genesis 28:18; Joshua 24:26-27). That these appear in Egypt implies that Egyptians will worship the LORD on their own soil with Israelite covenant forms. This was historically fulfilled in various ways: the Jewish military colony at Elephantine had a temple, and Onias IV built a temple at Leontopolis in the 2nd century BCE.
- 20.** This verse deliberately echoes the Exodus narrative: the Egyptians will cry out (yits'aqu) because of oppressors (lochasim), and God will send them a deliverer (moshia'). The parallel is extraordinary — Egypt now occupies the position Israel once held, and the LORD responds with the same saving action. The noun moshia' ('savior, deliverer') is used of the judges (Judges 3:9, 15) and of God Himself (Isaiah 43:3, 11; 45:15, 21). The word rav ('great one' or 'defender, champion') intensifies the promise. The altar and pillar of verse 19 serve as the 'sign and witness' (ot ve'-ed) confirming this covenant relationship.
- 21.** The verb noda' ('make himself known') indicates divine self-revelation — God actively reveals Himself to Egypt rather than Egypt discovering God through human searching. The reciprocal yad'u ('they will know') indicates responsive recognition. The worship described is thoroughly Israelite: zevach ('sacrifice'), minchah ('grain offering'), neder ('vow'). These are not Egyptian religious forms adapted to the LORD but the covenant worship practices of Israel embraced by Egyptians. The phrase 'vow and fulfill' echoes Ecclesiastes 5:4 and Psalm 50:14 — the complete cycle of devotion.
- 22.** This verse is the theological key to the entire chapter. The paired infinitives nagof ve-rafo ('striking and healing') reveal that God's judgment of Egypt was never an end in itself but a means to healing. The pattern mirrors Hosea 6:1 ('He has torn and He will heal us') and Deuteronomy 32:39 ('I wound and I heal'). The verb shuv ('turn, return, repent') is the classic prophetic term for repentance — Egypt will repent, and the LORD will respond. The verb ne'tar ('be entreated') implies that God allows Himself to be moved by Egypt's prayers — the same verb used of God answering Isaac's prayer (Genesis 25:21).
- 23.** The fourth 'On that day' oracle is geopolitically visionary: a highway (mesillah) connecting Egypt and Assyria — the two superpowers that dominated Israel's existence — with Israel as the land-bridge between them. The word mesillah ('raised highway') appears repeatedly in Isaiah as the road God builds for redemption (11:16; 35:8; 40:3). The mutual visitation ('Assyria will come to Egypt and Egypt to Assyria') transforms the military corridor that once brought armies through Israel into a pilgrimage route. The final verb 'avdu is best read as 'worship together' (et as 'with' rather than as the direct object marker), indicating shared worship rather than servitude.
- 24.** The fifth and final 'On that day' oracle reaches the crescendo. Israel becomes 'the third' (shelishiyyah) — not diminished but positioned as the mediating center between Egypt and Assyria. The word berakhah ('blessing') echoes the Abrahamic promise: 'in you all the families of the earth will be blessed' (Genesis 12:3). Israel's election was never for Israel alone but for the blessing of all nations. The phrase beqerev ha'arets ('in the midst of the earth/land') places Israel at the center of a three-nation covenant community that spans the known world.
- 25.** This is one of the most extraordinary verses in the entire Hebrew Bible. Three covenant titles previously reserved exclusively for Israel are distributed among three nations: (1) 'ammi ('my people') — the foundational covenant designation from Exodus — given to Egypt; (2) ma'aseh yaday ('the work of my hands') — creation language — given to Assyria; (3) nachalati ('my inheritance') — the most intimate term of permanent possession — retained for Israel. The theological audacity is staggering: Egypt, the house of bondage, becomes 'my people'; Assyria, the rod of God's anger (10:5), becomes 'the work of my hands.' Yet the text is not flattening distinctions — each nation receives a different title, and Israel retains nachalah, the term of deepest covenant permanence. This verse represents the furthest reach of Old Testament universalism.

20

Summary: Isaiah 20 is a brief prose narrative — one of the few in the book — describing a dramatic prophetic sign-act. In the year that the Assyrian commander-in-chief captured Ashdod (711 BCE), the LORD commanded Isaiah to remove his sackcloth and sandals and walk naked and barefoot for three years as a living sign against Egypt and Cush. Just as Isaiah walked stripped and exposed, so the king of Assyria will lead away Egyptian and Cushite captives — young and old — naked and barefoot, with buttocks bared, to the shame of Egypt. The chapter closes with the inhabitants of the Judean coastland expressing dismay: if mighty Egypt and Cush cannot withstand Assyria, what hope is there for us?

What Makes This Remarkable: We find this chapter remarkable for several reasons. First, it anchors a specific prophetic act to a datable historical event — the Assyrian capture of Ashdod in 711 BCE under Sargon II — giving us one of the most precise chronological markers in Isaiah. Second, the sign-act is among the most extreme in prophetic literature: Isaiah walks publicly in a state of nakedness (or near-nakedness) for three years, enduring personal shame to embody a message about national shame. Third, the chapter functions as a sharp political warning: Judah's coastal cities were tempted to join anti-Assyrian coalitions backed by Egypt and Cush, and Isaiah's body becomes the argument against this policy. The prophet does not merely speak — he becomes the message. Fourth, the closing question from the coastland inhabitants ('How shall we escape?') is left unanswered,

hanging in the air as a challenge to trust the LORD rather than human alliances.

Translation Friction: *The key question is whether 'arom ('naked') means completely unclothed or stripped to a minimal loincloth. Ancient Near Eastern deportation reliefs show captives in various states of undress, and prophetic sign-acts typically push boundaries of social convention. We render 'naked' as the text reads while noting in the notes that the degree of exposure is debated. The phrase 'eved YHWH ('the servant of the LORD') does not appear in this chapter, but Isaiah's obedient submission to an extreme divine command effectively portrays servant theology in action. The Tartan (tartanu in Akkadian) is a military title, not a personal name — we render it as 'commander-in-chief' with the Hebrew term noted. The three-year duration has prompted debate about whether Isaiah maintained the sign continuously or performed it periodically; we note this without resolving it.*

Connections: *The sign-act genre connects to Ezekiel's elaborate sign-acts (lying on his side for 390 days, Ezekiel 4; shaving his head, Ezekiel 5) and Jeremiah's symbolic actions (the linen belt, Jeremiah 13; the yoke, Jeremiah 27-28). The capture of Ashdod is confirmed by Sargon II's own inscriptions and by archaeological evidence at Tell Ashdod. The warning against Egyptian alliance echoes Isaiah 30:1-5 and 31:1-3, where trust in Egypt is condemned as folly. The nakedness of captives as a sign of shame connects to Isaiah 47:3 (Babylon's exposure) and Nahum 3:5 (Nineveh's exposure). The coastland's despairing question in verse 6 anticipates the 'coastlands' (iyyim) theme in Second Isaiah (41:1; 42:4; 49:1).*

¹In the year that the commander-in-chief came to Ashdod — when Sargon king of Assyria sent him — and he fought against Ashdod and captured it, ²At that time the LORD spoke through Isaiah son of Amoz, saying: "Go, remove the sackcloth from your waist and take your sandals off your feet." And he did so, walking naked and barefoot. ³Then the LORD said: "Just as my servant Isaiah has walked naked and barefoot for three years as a sign and a portent against Egypt and Cush,

⁴so the king of Assyria will lead away
the captives of Egypt and the exiles of Cush —
young and old — naked and barefoot,
with buttocks bared, to the shame of Egypt.

⁵They will be dismayed and put to shame
because of Cush, their hope,
and because of Egypt, their boast.

⁶The inhabitants of this coastland will say on that day:
"Look — this is what happened to those we looked to,
where we fled for help, to be delivered
from the king of Assyria.
How then shall we ourselves escape?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is one of the most historically precise datings in Isaiah. The Tartan (Akkadian tartanu/turtanu) was the highest-ranking military officer after the king — we render it 'commander-in-chief' to convey the rank while noting the Akkadian title. Sargon II (reigned 722-705 BCE) is the only Assyrian king mentioned by name in Isaiah. The capture of Ashdod in 711 BCE is confirmed by Sargon's own royal inscriptions discovered at Khorsabad, which describe the campaign against Ashdod and its ruler Yamani. Ashdod was a major Philistine city on the Mediterranean coast, and its fall demonstrated Assyria's ability to project power into the coastal plain — directly threatening Judah's western flank.
2. The divine command is stark and the obedience immediate: 'And he did so' (vayya'as ken). The sackcloth (saq) indicates that Isaiah had been wearing the garment of mourning and prophetic protest — perhaps mourning the nations' doom or protesting Judah's alliance policies. The verb patachta ('loosen, remove') and chalots ('take off, strip') are direct commands. The result — 'walking naked and barefoot' ('arom ve-yachef) — is extreme. The word 'arom can mean completely naked or stripped to a loincloth; either way, this was a profound act of social humiliation for a prophet of standing in Jerusalem. The narrative formula 'the LORD spoke through' (dibber beyad) identifies Isaiah as the instrument through whom God acts.
3. God interprets the sign-act: Isaiah's three years of nakedness and barefoot walking are an ot u-mofet ('sign and portent') — technical terms for divinely authenticated prophetic symbols. The title 'avdi ('my servant') is loaded with covenantal significance: it identifies Isaiah as God's commissioned agent, willingly subordinating his dignity to divine purpose. The three-year duration indicates sustained, costly obedience — this was

not a one-day demonstration but a years-long embodied message. The sign is directed against both Egypt and Cush (the 25th Dynasty was Cushite, so the two are politically intertwined).

4. The interpretation of the sign is brutally explicit. The phrase *shevi Mitsrayim ve-galut Kush* ('captives of Egypt and exiles of Cush') uses two distinct terms for prisoners — *shevi* (war captives) and *galut* (deportees, exiles). The merism 'young and old' (*ne'arim u-zeqenim*) indicates that no one is spared. The phrase *chasufai shet* ('with buttocks bared') adds a detail of specific humiliation — Assyrian deportation practices included forced nakedness to degrade captives and strip their identity. The final phrase '*ervat Mitsrayim* ('the nakedness/shame of Egypt') plays on the dual meaning of '*ervah*: physical nakedness and national disgrace. Egypt's humiliation will be total and public — exactly as Isaiah's sign-act portrayed.
5. The 'they' refers to the inhabitants of the Judean coastland (identified in verse 6) who had placed their political hopes in an Egyptian-Cushite alliance against Assyria. The verb *chattu* ('be dismayed, shattered') indicates that their confidence collapses. The verb *boshu* ('be put to shame') adds the dimension of public humiliation — they will be shown to have trusted foolishly. Cush is called *mabbatam* ('their looking, their hope') — the object to which they looked for security. Egypt is called *tifartam* ('their boast, their glory') — the source of their confidence. Both terms are now exposed as empty: the alliance on which they relied has been humiliated by Assyria.
6. The chapter closes with a despairing question from the coastland (i, 'island' or 'coastland') — likely the Philistine coastal plain including Ashdod, Ashkelon, and Gaza, which bordered Judah and were most exposed to both Assyrian aggression and Egyptian alliance politics. The word *mabbatenu* ('our looking, our hope') echoes verse 5: the object of their political looking has failed. The verb *nasnu* ('we fled') implies that they sought refuge in the Egyptian alliance. The final question — *ve-ekh nimalet anachnu* ('how shall we ourselves escape?') — is devastating in its open-endedness. Isaiah provides no answer, leaving the audience to draw the implication: if mighty Egypt and Cush cannot withstand Assyria, the only remaining refuge is the LORD Himself. The question hangs unanswered, forcing the hearer into the theological conclusion that chapters 30-31 will make explicit: trust in the LORD, not in horses and chariots.

21

Summary: *Three oracles of judgment unfold in rapid succession, each introduced by the formula massa ('burden'). The first and longest targets Babylon under the cryptic title 'the wilderness of the sea' — the prophet sees its fall in a devastating vision that leaves him physically shattered. A watchman is posted, and when the report finally comes it is devastating: 'Fallen, fallen is Babylon, and all the carved images of her gods are shattered on the ground.' The second oracle addresses Dumah (Edom) with one of the most enigmatic exchanges in all prophecy: 'Watchman, what of the night?' The answer is no answer — morning comes, and also night. The third oracle speaks against the Arabian caravans of Dedanites and Kedarites, whose glory will be stripped away within a year. Throughout, we rendered the prophet's visceral anguish with full force — he is not a detached announcer but a man undone by what God compels him to see.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'Fallen, fallen is Babylon' (naphlah naphlah Bavel, v. 9) reverberates across the entire biblical canon. Its doubling intensifies the certainty — this is not a prediction but a decree already accomplished in the divine council. Revelation 14:8 and 18:2 quote this verse nearly verbatim, applying it to the eschatological Babylon. The watchman motif in verses 6-9 creates a dramatic staging unique in prophetic literature: God commands the prophet to post a lookout, the lookout waits, and when the chariots finally appear, the announcement erupts. The Dumah oracle (vv. 11-12) is remarkable for its deliberate refusal to resolve. 'Morning comes, and also night' — the oracle will neither promise rescue nor confirm doom. It is the rare biblical text that answers a question with a deeper question. The brevity of all three oracles (especially the Dumah passage at just two verses) stands in stark contrast to their weight.*

Translation Friction: *The title midbar-yam ('wilderness of the sea,' v. 1) is notoriously difficult. Babylon is not a maritime power, so 'sea' may refer to the Persian Gulf marshlands south of Babylon, or it may be a mythological allusion to the cosmic sea of chaos (tehom/yam) — Babylon as a wilderness emerging from primordial chaos. We rendered it straightforwardly as 'the wilderness of the sea' and let the strangeness stand. The word Dumah in verse 11 means 'silence' in Hebrew, but the oracle concerns Edom (Seir) — the name may be a wordplay, recasting Edom as 'Silence,' a land swallowed into prophetic quiet. The temporal reference in verse 16 ('within a year, as a hired worker counts it') uses the idiom of a laborer who counts every day until his contract ends — exactness, not approximation.*

Connections: The 'Fallen, fallen is Babylon' announcement (v. 9) is directly quoted in Revelation 14:8 and 18:2, where the angelic proclamation echoes Isaiah's watchman. The watchman motif connects to Ezekiel 33:1-9, where the prophet himself becomes the watchman responsible for warning Israel. The Kedar reference (vv. 16-17) links to Isaiah 42:11 and 60:7, where Kedar appears in restoration contexts — what is judged here is later gathered. The 'wilderness of the sea' language resonates with Isaiah 35, where the wilderness blooms, and with Isaiah 43:19-20, where God makes a way in the wilderness. The prophet's anguish in verses 3-4 parallels Jeremiah's weeping (Jer 4:19-21) and Habakkuk's trembling (Hab 3:16) — the prophetic body absorbs the weight of the word.

¹The burden of the wilderness of the sea:

Like whirlwinds sweeping through the Negev,
it comes from the wilderness,
from a land of terror.

²A harsh vision has been declared to me:

The betrayer betrays, the plunderer plunders.
Go up, Elam! Lay siege, Media!
All her groaning I will bring to an end.

³Therefore my loins are filled with anguish;

pangs have seized me like the pangs of a woman in labor.
I am twisted by what I hear,
dismayed by what I see.

⁴My heart staggers, horror overwhelms me;

the twilight I longed for
he has turned to trembling for me.

⁵Set the table, spread the cloth,

eat, drink —
arise, you commanders, oil the shield!

⁶For this is what the Lord said to me:

"Go, post a watchman;
let him report what he sees."

⁷When he sees riders —

a pair of horsemen,
riders on donkeys, riders on camels —
let him listen closely,
very closely.

⁸Then the watchman cried out:

"On the watchtower, my Lord,
I stand continually through the day,
and at my post I am stationed
through every night."

⁹And look — here it comes:

a chariot of men, a pair of horsemen!
He spoke up and said:

"Fallen, fallen is Babylon,
and all the carved images of her gods
he has shattered to the ground!"

¹⁰O my threshed people, child of my threshing floor!
What I have heard from the LORD of Hosts,
the God of Israel,
I have declared to you.

¹¹The burden of Dumah:
Someone calls to me from Seir —
"Watchman, what is left of the night?
Watchman, what is left of the night?"

¹²The watchman says:
"Morning comes — and also night.
If you would ask, ask;
come back again."

¹³The burden against Arabia:
In the thickets of Arabia you will lodge,
O caravans of Dedanites.

¹⁴Bring water to meet the thirsty,
O inhabitants of the land of Tema;
greet the fugitive with bread.

¹⁵For they have fled from swords,
from the drawn sword,
from the bent bow,
from the weight of war.

¹⁶For this is what the Lord said to me:
"Within a year — as a hired worker counts it —
all the glory of Kedar will come to an end."

¹⁷And the remnant of Kedar's archers,
the warriors among the sons of Kedar,
will be few —
for the LORD, the God of Israel, has spoken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The massa ('burden') introduces the oracle as a weighty pronouncement. The phrase midbar-yam ('wilderness of the sea') is a cryptic title for Babylon — possibly referencing the marshy lowlands of southern Mesopotamia or evoking the primordial chaos-sea (yam). We left the phrase in its strangeness rather than explaining it away.
1. The Negev storms were well known to Isaiah's audience — sudden, violent, sand-laden winds from the southern desert. The comparison makes the coming judgment both natural (storms happen) and terrifying (these storms destroy).
2. The doubling of bogued bogued ('the betrayer betrays') and shoded shoded ('the plunderer plunders') creates a hammering intensity — treachery and destruction are not single events but ongoing, self-compounding realities.

2. Elam and Media are the Persian powers that would historically overthrow Babylon in 539 BCE under Cyrus. God commands pagan armies as his instruments — a theological pattern running through Isaiah (cf. 10:5, Assyria as God's rod).
2. The final clause is ambiguous: 'all her groaning I will bring to an end' could mean God will end Babylon's oppression of others (ending the groaning she caused) or end Babylon's own groaning by destroying her. Both readings coexist.
3. The prophet's body becomes the first recipient of the oracle's weight. Chalchalah ('anguish, writhing') describes deep visceral pain. The comparison to labor pangs (tzirei yoledah) appears frequently in prophetic literature to describe unavoidable, escalating, purposeful suffering.
3. Na'aveyti ('I am twisted, I am bent') suggests a body contorted by the force of revelation. The prophet does not merely report — he is physically wrecked by the vision. This is not detached observation but embodied prophecy.
4. Ta'ah levavi ('my heart staggers/wanders') uses the verb for going astray — the prophet's heart has lost its bearings. Pallatzut ('horror, shuddering') is an extreme word reserved for the most terrifying encounters.
4. The 'twilight I longed for' is deeply ironic — evening was the time of rest and pleasure, but now the darkness that should bring peace brings only terror. What was once desired has become dread.
5. The scene shifts abruptly from prophetic anguish to a Babylonian banquet. The staccato commands — set, spread, eat, drink — evoke the reckless feasting of those who do not know their doom approaches. This scene parallels the account of Belshazzar's feast in Daniel 5, where Babylon falls during a banquet.
5. The sudden pivot to 'arise, you commanders, oil the shield!' shatters the banquet scene. The shields must be oiled for battle — the party is over. The juxtaposition of feasting and warfare is devastating.
6. The watchman motif begins here. God commands the prophet to station an observer — the news of Babylon's fall will come not through direct revelation alone but through a human lookout watching history unfold. The prophetic process here is staged: command, waiting, report.
6. We rendered koh amar with our locked formula 'This is what... said.'
7. The approaching force is a mixed column — horsemen, donkey-riders, camel-riders — suggesting a coalition army (Elam and Media, as named in v. 2). The repeated emphasis on listening (hiqshiv qeshev rav-qashev, 'listen closely, very closely') uses triple repetition of the root q-sh-v to stress the critical importance of the watchman's attention.
8. The Hebrew begins with aryeh ('a lion'), which many scholars read as a textual difficulty — possibly a corruption of ha-ro'eh ('the watcher') or an exclamation ('Like a lion!'). The Septuagint reads differently. We follow the sense that the watchman cries out with a lion's urgency, roaring his report from the tower.
8. The watchman's statement emphasizes faithful endurance: day and night, continually, every night. Prophetic waiting is not passive but disciplined, costly vigilance.
9. Naphlah naphlah Bavel ('Fallen, fallen is Babylon') — the doubled verb makes the fall emphatic and irreversible. This is the climactic announcement the watchman has been posted to deliver. The phrase is quoted nearly verbatim in Revelation 14:8 ('Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great') and Revelation 18:2, where an angel with great authority illuminates the earth with this same cry. The connection should be noted without importing the NT reading into the Hebrew: Isaiah announces the fall of historical Babylon; Revelation extends the oracle to eschatological scope.
9. The shattering of carved images (pesilei eloheih) on the ground is both literal (conquering armies destroyed idols) and theological — the gods of Babylon are proven powerless. They do not fall in battle; they are shattered passively, broken on the ground like pottery.
10. The prophet addresses Israel as medushati ('my threshed one') and ben-gorni ('child of my threshing floor'). Israel has been the grain on the threshing floor — beaten, winnowed, crushed — and the news of Babylon's fall is spoken to this battered people. The agricultural metaphor makes the suffering tangible: Israel is not an abstraction but grain under the sledge.
10. The prophet emphasizes his role as faithful messenger: 'what I have heard... I have declared.' He has not invented or embellished — the oracle comes from the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, and is relayed without alteration.
11. Dumah means 'silence' in Hebrew, but the oracle concerns Seir (Edom). The name may be a deliberate wordplay: Edom is renamed 'Silence' — its fate is to be swallowed into prophetic quiet, unanswered.
11. The doubled question 'Watchman, what of the night?' (shomer mah-millaylah) is one of the most haunting lines in all prophecy. The caller from Edom wants to know: is the long night of oppression ending? Is dawn near? The repetition conveys desperation — the question is asked twice because the first answer was not enough.
11. Mah-millaylah literally asks 'what from the night?' — how much of the night remains? How far are we from morning?
12. This is the non-answer that is the answer. The watchman cannot promise dawn without also naming the continuing darkness. 'Morning comes' — yes, there will be relief. 'And also night' — but the darkness is not finished. The oracle refuses to collapse complexity into comfort or despair.
12. The invitation 'if you would ask, ask; come back again' (shuvu etayu) leaves the door open. The word is not final. Edom may return and ask again — perhaps when it is ready for the full truth. The verb shuvu ('return, come back') carries the resonance of repentance (teshuvah), though here it may simply mean 'come again later.'

12. The entire Dumah oracle is only two verses — the shortest massa in Isaiah. Its brevity is itself a statement: some divine answers are brief not because they are simple but because they are too complex for elaboration.
13. The third oracle shifts to the Arabian desert. The Dedanites were a trading people from northwestern Arabia. Their caravans were famous for long-distance trade. The oracle places these traders not on the open road but hiding in thickets (ya'ar) — forced off the trade routes into the scrubland.
13. The wordplay on ba'arav ('in Arabia' / 'in the evening') is untranslatable: the burden is against Arabia, and Arabia's evening has come.
14. Tema is an oasis settlement in northwestern Arabia (modern Tayma in Saudi Arabia). The inhabitants are called to provide water and bread for refugees fleeing the approaching disaster. This is a command for hospitality in crisis — even in judgment, the obligation of mercy to the displaced remains.
14. The pairing of water and bread (mayim and lechem) represents the absolute minimum for survival. The fugitives need nothing elaborate — just enough to live.
15. The fourfold repetition of mippenei ('from before, from the face of') creates a cascading sense of flight — refugees fleeing one threat after another. The progression from 'swords' (general) to 'drawn sword' (specific, immediate) to 'bent bow' (aimed and ready to release) to 'the weight of war' (the crushing totality) intensifies with each line.
15. Koved milchamah ('the weight/heaviness of war') is a powerful phrase — war is not just violent but heavy, a burden that crushes everything beneath it.
16. The phrase kishnei sakhir ('as the years of a hired worker') means 'counted exactly' — a hired laborer tracks every day of his contract with precision. The year is not approximate but exact: when the contract expires, so does Kedar's glory.
16. Kedar was a powerful Arabian tribe descended from Ishmael (Gen 25:13), known for their warriors and flocks. Their kavod ('glory') — military power, wealth, reputation — will be completely exhausted (khalah, 'come to an end, be finished').
17. The oracle closes with the formula ki YHWH elohei-Yisra'el dibber ('for the LORD, the God of Israel, has spoken'). This stamps the decree with divine authority — it is not the prophet's analysis but God's word. The finality is absolute.
17. The 'archers' (geshet, literally 'bow') of Kedar were renowned warriors. That even their remnant (she'ar) will be few (yim'atu) means near-total destruction. The word she'ar ('remnant') echoes the remnant theology of Isaiah 10:20-22 — only here the remnant belongs to a foreign nation, and it offers little comfort.

22

Summary: *The oracle against 'the Valley of Vision' targets not a foreign nation but Jerusalem itself — the city that should see most clearly is spiritually blind. While the city recklessly celebrates on its rooftops, the prophet weeps over the coming devastation. Jerusalem has fortified its walls, counted its cisterns, and stockpiled weapons — but has not looked to the One who made the city or regarded the One who planned it long ago. The chapter then narrows to a specific judgment: Shebna the steward, who has carved himself a grand tomb in the rock, will be hurled away like a ball into a wide land. In his place, Eliakim son of Hilkiah will be installed, and on his shoulder will be placed 'the key of the house of David' — he opens and no one shuts, he shuts and no one opens. Yet even Eliakim's peg will eventually give way under the weight hung upon it. We rendered the contrast between Jerusalem's self-reliance and God's demand for trust as the chapter's central tension.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'key of David' passage (v. 22) is one of the most theologically dense verses in Isaiah. The key placed on Eliakim's shoulder grants absolute authority over access to the royal house — opening and shutting without appeal. Revelation 3:7 applies this language directly to Christ in the letter to the church in Philadelphia: 'These are the words of him who is holy and true, who holds the key of David. What he opens no one can shut, and what he shuts no one can open.' The shoulder imagery connects backward to Isaiah 9:6 ('the government will be upon his shoulder') and forward to the servant passages. The chapter is also remarkable for its raw portrayal of misplaced celebration — the people feast and drink while disaster looms, declaring 'Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die' (v. 13), a phrase Paul quotes in 1 Corinthians 15:32. The prophet's response to Jerusalem's partying is not anger but uncontrollable weeping (v. 4).*

Translation Friction: The phrase ge' chizzayon ('Valley of Vision,' v. 1) is paradoxical — valleys are places of limited sight, yet this valley is named for vision. The paradox may be intentional: Jerusalem sits among valleys (Kidron, Hinnom, Tyropoeon) and is the place where prophetic vision is received, yet the city cannot see its own peril. The identity of the historical crisis behind the oracle is debated: it may reflect Sennacherib's siege (701 BCE) or an earlier Assyrian threat. We rendered the text without committing to a specific historical scenario, letting the prophetic word address any generation that trusts its own preparations over God. The Shebna-Eliakim transition (vv. 15-25) raises questions about the nature of human stewardship — even the faithful replacement will eventually fail (v. 25), suggesting that no merely human administrator can bear the full weight of the key.

Connections: The 'key of David' on Eliakim's shoulder (v. 22) is directly quoted in Revelation 3:7, where Christ claims the authority that Eliakim merely prefigured. The shoulder imagery links to Isaiah 9:6 ('the government upon his shoulder'), creating a chain: what rests on the Messiah's shoulder is the key of absolute access and authority. The phrase 'let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die' (v. 13) is quoted by Paul in 1 Corinthians 15:32 as the logical conclusion of a worldview without resurrection. The people's failure to 'look to the One who made it' (v. 11) echoes the blindness theme of Isaiah 6:9-10 — they have eyes but do not see. The peg imagery (vv. 23-25) connects to Ezra 9:8, where the returned exiles describe God giving them 'a peg in his holy place' — a foothold of stability. Here, even that peg will be cut down.

1The burden of the Valley of Vision:

What is the matter with you
that you have all gone up to the rooftops?

2O city full of noise,
tumultuous town, jubilant city —
your slain are not slain by the sword,
nor dead in battle.

3All your leaders have fled together;
without a bow-shot they were captured.
All who were found in you were bound together,
though they had fled far away.

4Therefore I said:
"Look away from me —
let me weep bitterly.
Do not press to comfort me
over the destruction of the daughter of my people."

5For the Lord GOD of Hosts has a day
of tumult and trampling and confusion
in the Valley of Vision —
battering down walls
and crying out toward the mountain.

6Elam takes up the quiver,
with chariots of men and horsemen,
and Kir uncovers the shield.

7Your choicest valleys are filled with chariots,
and the horsemen have taken position at the gate.

⁸He has stripped away the covering of Judah.
On that day you looked
to the weapons in the House of the Forest.

⁹You saw the many breaches
in the wall of the City of David,
and you collected the waters of the lower pool.

¹⁰You counted the houses of Jerusalem
and tore down houses to fortify the wall.

¹¹You built a reservoir between the two walls
for the waters of the old pool —
but you did not look to the One who made it,
nor did you regard the One who planned it long ago.

¹²On that day the Lord GOD of Hosts
called for weeping and mourning,
for shaving the head and wearing sackcloth.

¹³But look — joy and gladness,
slaughtering cattle and butchering sheep,
eating meat and drinking wine:
"Let us eat and drink,
for tomorrow we die!"

¹⁴Then the LORD of Hosts revealed this in my hearing:
"This iniquity will not be atoned for
until you die" —
declares the Lord GOD of Hosts.

¹⁵This is what the Lord GOD of Hosts says:
"Go to this steward,
to Shebna, who is over the house —

¹⁶What right do you have here,
and who do you have here,
that you have carved out a tomb for yourself here —
hewing your grave on the height,
chiseling a dwelling for yourself in the rock?"

¹⁷Look — the LORD is about to hurl you away,
you mighty man,
and wrap you up tightly.

¹⁸He will wind you up tightly
and hurl you like a ball
into a wide, open land.
There you will die,
and there your glorious chariots will be —

a disgrace to your master's house.

¹⁹I will thrust you from your office,
and from your post you will be torn down.

²⁰On that day I will call my servant
Eliakim son of Hilkiah.

²¹I will clothe him with your robe
and bind your sash on him;
I will place your authority in his hand.
He will be a father
to the inhabitants of Jerusalem
and to the house of Judah.

²²I will place the key of the house of David
on his shoulder;
he will open, and no one will shut;
he will shut, and no one will open.

²³I will drive him like a peg into a firm place,
and he will become a throne of glory
for his father's house.

²⁴They will hang on him all the weight of his father's house —
the offspring and the offshoots,
every small vessel,
from bowls to every jug.

²⁵On that day — declares the LORD of Hosts —
the peg driven into the firm place will give way;
it will be cut down and fall,
and the load that was on it will be cut off,
for the LORD has spoken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The massa is directed at Jerusalem, here called ge' chizzayon ('Valley of Vision') — the paradox of a city that receives divine vision yet cannot see its own danger. The rooftops were places of celebration and observation; the whole city has climbed up to feast and watch, oblivious to the approaching disaster.
1. The tone is incredulous — mah-lakh efoh ('what is wrong with you?') expresses the prophet's bewilderment at a city that parties while its doom approaches.
2. The city roars with celebration — teshu'ot ('shouts, uproar'), homiyyah ('tumultuous, roaring'), allizah ('jubilant, exultant'). But the prophet immediately undercuts the celebration: your dead did not die heroically in battle. They died of siege, famine, disease, or flight — deaths without glory.
2. The contrast between the city's noise and its actual condition is the chapter's central irony: Jerusalem celebrates as if victorious while its people perish shamefully.
3. The leadership collapses — qetzinim ('leaders, commanders') flee and are captured without even putting up a fight (miqeshet, 'without the bow,' meaning without battle). The repetition of 'together' (yachad) emphasizes collective failure: they fled together, were captured together. No one stood.
3. The phrase 'though they had fled far away' adds bitter irony — distance provided no escape. Flight was futile.

4. The prophet's response to Jerusalem's reckless celebration is not rebuke but grief. He cannot bear to be watched while he weeps, and he refuses comfort — the destruction of bat-ammi ('the daughter of my people') is too great for consolation. This is one of the most personally vulnerable moments in Isaiah.
4. The phrase she'u minni ('look away from me') is a plea for privacy in anguish. The verb amarrer ('I will weep bitterly') intensifies ordinary weeping into something convulsive and uncontrollable.
5. Three words beginning with mem create a devastating alliteration: mehumah ('tumult'), mevusah ('trampling'), mevukhah ('confusion'). The day belongs to the Lord GOD of Hosts — it is his day, directed at his own city. The Valley of Vision that should receive revelation instead receives destruction.
5. The 'crying out toward the mountain' (sho'a el-hahar) likely refers to desperate cries toward the Temple Mount or the surrounding mountains — people screaming for help from the hills. The mountains offer no refuge.
6. The attacking forces are named: Elam (archers from the east, famous for their bowmanship) and Kir (a Mesopotamian region). These are the instruments God uses against his own city. The uncovering of the shield (erah magen) means removing the leather covering to prepare for battle — the shield is being readied for combat.
7. The valleys around Jerusalem — the very terrain the city trusted for defense — are now filled with enemy chariots. The horsemen have positioned themselves at the gate (sha'arah), the critical chokepoint. The city is surrounded and its exits sealed.
8. God 'strips away the covering' (vayegal et masakh) — Judah's defenses, illusions of safety, or the veil over her vulnerability are removed. Exposed, the people turn not to God but to the armory: the House of the Forest (beit ha-ya'ar), Solomon's great hall built with cedar from Lebanon (1 Kings 7:2-5), which served as an arsenal.
8. On that day (bayyom hahu) marks the moment of crisis when priorities are revealed. Judah's instinct is military self-reliance, not prayer.
9. The response to crisis is purely tactical: survey the wall breaches, secure the water supply. The 'lower pool' (ha-berekhah ha-tachtonah) is likely the Pool of Siloam or a similar reservoir in the lower city. Hezekiah's tunnel (2 Kings 20:20) may be the engineering project behind this verse — redirecting water inside the walls before a siege.
10. The city demolishes its own houses to repair the walls — a desperate measure that sacrifices daily life for military defense. The verb safartem ('you counted') implies a cold, bureaucratic inventory: which houses can be sacrificed? The irony is that in trying to save the city, they are destroying it from within.
11. This is the theological center of the chapter. The engineering is competent — reservoir, walls, water management — but the fatal flaw is spiritual: velo hibbattem el-oseiha ('you did not look to the One who made it'). The 'it' could refer to the city, the crisis, or the water itself — God is the maker of all three. Human competence without divine dependence is the sin.
11. The phrase yotzrah merachok ('the One who planned it long ago') reveals that the crisis itself was part of God's long-range purpose. The disaster was not random but shaped (yatzar, the potter's verb) by God from afar. Jerusalem's tragedy is not that it lacked engineers but that it lacked eyes to see the Engineer.
12. God's call (vayiqra) on that day was for repentance expressed through the traditional rituals of grief: weeping (bekhi), mourning (misped), head-shaving (qorchah), and sackcloth (saq). These are not mere customs but embodied theology — the body must participate in the turning of the heart.
12. On that day (bayyom hahu) marks the divine summons. God called for mourning; the people responded with feasting. The contrast with the next verse is devastating.
13. The people's response to God's call for mourning is the exact opposite: a reckless feast. The staccato verbs — slaughtering, butchering, eating, drinking — pile up with manic energy. The declaration 'Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die' (akhol veshato ki machar namut) is quoted by Paul in 1 Corinthians 15:32 as the philosophy of those who deny resurrection.
13. The phrase is not philosophical resignation but defiant nihilism — if death is certain and God is irrelevant, then pleasure is the only rational response. Isaiah presents this as the ultimate blasphemy: not atheism in theory but atheism in practice.
14. The divine response to Jerusalem's nihilistic feast is terrifying: im-yekuppar he'avon hazeh lakhem ad-temuton ('this iniquity will not be atoned for until you die'). The verb kuppar ('be atoned, be covered') uses the same root as Yom Kippur — the Day of Atonement. There is no atonement available for this sin. The people said 'tomorrow we die' as a joke; God says 'until you die' as a sentence.
14. We rendered ne'um with our locked formula 'declares the LORD.' The double title — LORD of Hosts at the beginning, Lord GOD of Hosts at the end — frames the pronouncement with maximum divine authority.
15. The oracle now narrows from the city to a single individual: Shebna (Shevna), the royal steward (sokhen, 'administrator, caretaker') who is 'over the house' (asher al-habayit) — the highest administrative office in the kingdom, comparable to a prime minister. His personal ambition will be judged.
15. We rendered koh amar with our locked formula 'This is what... says.'

- 16.** The threefold *poh* ('here') hammers the accusation: What are you doing here? Who gave you the right? Shebna has carved (*chatzavta*) an elaborate rock-cut tomb in a prominent location — a monument to his own importance. The act reveals his priorities: not service but self-memorialization. He builds for his death while the city he should serve faces its own.
- 16.** Rock-cut tombs on the heights were reserved for royalty and the highest nobility. Shebna, a steward, has overreached — claiming in death a status above his station.
- 17.** The verb *metaltelkha* ('hurl you, toss you about') is intensified by the cognate noun *taltelah* — a violent, repeated throwing. The man who carved himself a permanent resting place in rock will be thrown around like a rag. The address *gaver* ('mighty man') is sarcastic — this 'strong man' will be helplessly tossed.
- 18.** The image is vivid and humiliating: Shebna, who built himself a grand tomb in Jerusalem's rock, will be rolled up like a ball (*kaddur*) and thrown into a vast, featureless land — no tomb, no monument, no memorial. The chariots he rode as symbols of his status will become his shame.
- 18.** The phrase *qelon beit adonekha* ('a disgrace to your master's house') suggests that Shebna's self-aggrandizement has brought shame not only on himself but on the king he was supposed to serve.
- 19.** God speaks in the first person: 'I will thrust you' (*vahadaftikha*). The removal is divine, not merely political. The words *matsav* ('station, position') and *ma'amad* ('standing, post') describe Shebna's official role — both will be demolished. The verb *yaharsekha* ('he will tear you down') uses the same root as tearing down buildings.
- 20.** On that day (*bayyom hahu*) marks the transition from judgment to replacement. God calls Eliakim 'my servant' (*avdi*) — the title reserved for those who carry out God's purposes. Eliakim's name means 'God raises up,' and his father Hilkiah means 'my portion is the LORD' — the names themselves signal a different orientation from Shebna's self-serving ambition.
- 21.** The transfer of office is described through clothing: Shebna's robe (*kuttonet*) and sash (*avnet*) — the garments of office — will be placed on Eliakim. Authority in the ancient world was embodied in visible symbols. The robe does not merely represent power; it confers it.
- 21.** The title 'father' (*av*) for a government official indicates a paternal, caring leadership — the opposite of Shebna's self-serving administration. Eliakim will govern not for his own memorial but for the welfare of Jerusalem and Judah.
- 22.** The *mafteach beit-David* ('key of the house of David') is the symbol of absolute administrative authority over the royal household — controlling who enters and who is excluded from the king's presence. The key was large enough to be carried on the shoulder (*al-shikhmo*), a visible sign of delegated royal power.
- 22.** Revelation 3:7 applies this language directly to Christ: 'These are the words of him who is holy and true, who holds the key of David. What he opens no one can shut, and what he shuts no one can open.' The connection is significant: what Eliakim held provisionally, Christ holds absolutely. The NT text should be noted as a reception of this passage without importing that christological reading into the Hebrew original.
- 22.** The shoulder (*shekhem*) imagery connects to Isaiah 9:6, where 'the government will be upon his shoulder' (*misrah al-shikhmo*). In both cases, authority is physically borne — it is not abstract power but embodied responsibility.
- 23.** The *yated* ('peg, tent-pin') driven into a firm place (*maqom ne'eman*, 'a faithful/reliable place') represents stability and permanence. Eliakim will be the anchor point on which the entire household depends. The peg becomes a 'throne of glory' (*kisse' khavod*) — from a simple fastener to a seat of honor.
- 23.** The word *ne'eman* ('firm, faithful, reliable') is the same root as 'amen' and *emunah* ('faithfulness'). The place where Eliakim is driven is characterized by trustworthiness — but the coming verses will complicate this permanence.
- 24.** The peg metaphor extends: everything in the household is hung upon Eliakim — descendants (*tze'etza'im*), offshoots (*tzeft'ot*), and every kind of vessel from the smallest bowl to the largest jug. The image is of a single peg overloaded with the entire household's weight. The question is implicit: can any human peg bear this much?
- 24.** The word *kavod* ('weight, glory') does double duty — it is both the honor of the household and the literal weight hung on the peg. Glory is heavy.
- 25.** The shocking conclusion: even the faithful peg in the firm place will eventually give way (*tamush*, 'be removed, slip loose'). The verbs cascade — *nigde'ah* ('cut down'), *naphlah* ('fallen'), *nikhrat* ('cut off') — total collapse. Everything hung on Eliakim will crash to the ground. No human steward, however faithful, can permanently bear the weight of David's house.
- 25.** On that day (*bayyom hahu*) and declares the LORD (*ne'um YHWH*) frame this as divine decree. The peg's failure is not Eliakim's personal sin but a statement about the limits of human stewardship — the full weight of the key of David requires a shoulder stronger than any human's. The passage thus points beyond itself to the one who can bear the government on his shoulder without collapse (9:6).
- 25.** The *massa* ('burden, load') that was on the peg is the same word used for the prophetic 'burden' that opens the oracles. The weight of governance and the weight of prophecy use the same vocabulary — both are crushingly heavy.

23

Summary: *The final oracle in the nations cycle (chapters 13-23) targets Tyre, the great Phoenician maritime city whose merchant fleets dominated Mediterranean trade. The Ships of Tarshish are told to wail, for Tyre's harbor is destroyed — the news reaches them from Cyprus (Kittim). The sea itself disowns Tyre, and Sidon, her sister city, is put to shame. Egypt trembles at the report. The oracle asks who planned this against Tyre the crown-giver, whose merchants were princes — and the answer is the LORD of Hosts, who purposed it to defile the pride of all glory. After seventy years (the span of a king's lifetime), Tyre will be 'visited' and return to her trade, described with the shocking metaphor of a prostitute resuming her work. Yet the final twist is redemptive: her profits will not be hoarded but will go to 'those who dwell before the LORD.' We rendered the economic language with precision, letting the text's ambivalence about commerce — neither purely condemned nor purely redeemed — stand without resolution.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This oracle closes the entire nations cycle that began in chapter 13. Tyre is the last judgment before Isaiah turns to the apocalyptic vision of chapters 24-27. The choice of Tyre as the final nation is significant: Tyre represents not military power (like Assyria or Babylon) but economic power — the wealth of global trade, the pride of commercial empire. By ending with Tyre, Isaiah suggests that economic idolatry is the culminating form of human rebellion. The seventy-year restoration (v. 15) and the prostitute metaphor (v. 17) are deeply ambivalent: Tyre returns to trade, but is the return judgment or mercy? The answer comes in verse 18, where Tyre's wages are consecrated to the LORD — the profits of the prostitute become holy offerings. This is one of the most startling reversals in Isaiah: what was profane becomes sacred, not by Tyre's repentance but by God's sovereign reallocation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase keshirat zonah ('like the song of a prostitute,' v. 15) is deliberately provocative. Tyre's return to commerce after seventy years is compared to a forgotten prostitute who takes up her harp and walks the city singing to attract clients. The metaphor is unflattering but precise: Tyre's trade is promiscuous — she does business with everyone, loyal to none. We rendered the metaphor without softening it, as the Hebrew does not soften it. The seventy years (v. 15) may correspond to Babylon's seventy years (Jer 25:11-12) or may simply represent a conventional lifetime ('the days of one king,' v. 15). The relationship between Tyre's judgment and her restoration is theologically complex: God destroys her pride but then allows — even ordains — her return to trade, redirecting her profits to his people. Commerce is not abolished but repurposed.*

Connections: *Tyre appears extensively in Ezekiel 26-28, where the prophet delivers an even more elaborate funeral over the merchant city, including the famous 'you were in Eden' passage (Ezek 28:13). The seventy-year period connects to Jeremiah's prophecy of seventy years for Babylon (Jer 25:11-12; 29:10) and Daniel's interpretation (Dan 9:2). The 'Ships of Tarshish' appear throughout the prophets as symbols of long-distance trade and human ambition (cf. Isa 2:16; Jonah 1:3; Ps 48:7). The consecration of Tyre's wages to the LORD (v. 18) anticipates Isaiah 60:5-11, where the wealth of nations flows to Zion — the same commercial wealth that was judged here is later gathered as offering. The prostitute metaphor connects to Hosea's treatment of Israel as an unfaithful wife and to Revelation 17-18, where 'Babylon the Great' is described as a commercial prostitute whose merchants were the great ones of the earth.*

¹The burden of Tyre:

Wail, O Ships of Tarshish,
for it is destroyed — no house, no harbor!
From the land of Cyprus the news was revealed to them.

²Be silent, O inhabitants of the coastland,
you whom the merchants of Sidon,
crossing the sea, once filled with goods.

³Over the great waters came the grain of the Shihor,
the harvest of the Nile — her revenue.
She was the marketplace of nations.

⁴Be ashamed, O Sidon,
for the sea has spoken — the fortress of the sea:
"I have not labored in birth, I have not given birth,
I have not raised young men
or brought up young women."

⁵When the report reaches Egypt,
they will writhe in anguish at the news of Tyre.

⁶Cross over to Tarshish!
Wail, O inhabitants of the coastland!

⁷Is this your jubilant city
whose origin is from ancient days,
whose feet carried her far away to settle?

⁸Who planned this
against Tyre, the crown-bestowing city,
whose merchants are princes,
whose traders are the honored of the earth?

⁹The LORD of Hosts has planned it —
to defile the pride of all splendor,
to bring low all the honored of the earth.

¹⁰Overflow your land like the Nile,
O daughter of Tarshish —
there is no restraint anymore.

¹¹He has stretched out his hand over the sea;
he has shaken the kingdoms.
The LORD has given a command against Canaan
to destroy her fortresses.

¹²He said:
"You will rejoice no more,
O oppressed virgin daughter of Sidon.
Rise, cross over to Cyprus —
but even there you will find no rest."

¹³Look at the land of the Chaldeans —
this people that was nothing!
Assyria assigned it to desert creatures.
They raised their siege towers,
stripped bare her palaces,
and made her a ruin.

¹⁴Wail, O Ships of Tarshish,
for your fortress is destroyed!

¹⁵On that day Tyre will be forgotten
for seventy years — the span of one king's life.
At the end of seventy years,
it will be for Tyre as in the song of the prostitute.

¹⁶"Take up the harp, walk through the city,
O forgotten prostitute!
Play sweetly, sing many songs,
so that you may be remembered."

¹⁷At the end of seventy years
the LORD will visit Tyre,
and she will return to her wages.
She will prostitute herself
with all the kingdoms of the earth
on the face of the ground.

¹⁸But her profits and her wages will be holy to the LORD.
They will not be stored up or hoarded,
for her profits will go to those who dwell before the LORD —
to eat their fill
and to be clothed in fine garments.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The massa against Tyre opens with a command to the Ships of Tarshish (oniyot Tarshish) — the great merchant vessels that plied the western Mediterranean — to wail (heililu). Their home port is gone. The news reaches them from Kittim (Cyprus), the last port of call before Phoenicia. Sailors returning from the west learn mid-voyage that there is nothing to return to.
1. The phrase shuddad mibbayit ('destroyed so that there is no house') and mibbo' ('no entering, no harbor') strips Tyre of its two essential features: habitation and port. A city without houses and a port without entry is nothing.
2. Dommu ('be silent, be stunned') commands the coastal inhabitants to speechless grief. Sidon, Tyre's sister city to the north, was the older Phoenician settlement — her merchants who crossed the sea (over yam) had enriched the entire coast. The past tense ('once filled') signals that the trade is over.
2. The 'coastland' (i, literally 'island') refers to the coastal trading settlements that depended on Phoenician commerce. When Tyre falls, the entire commercial network collapses.
3. Tyre's trade connected Egypt's grain (the Shihor, a branch of the Nile delta, and the Nile itself) to the Mediterranean world. Tyre was the middleman — she did not grow the grain but she moved it, and her revenue (sachrah) came from the exchange. The title sechar goyim ('marketplace of nations') defines Tyre's identity: she existed to facilitate trade between peoples.
3. The 'great waters' (mayim rabbim) are the Mediterranean, which Tyre's ships traversed. The sea that was Tyre's highway is about to become her judge.
4. The sea itself speaks — a stunning personification. The ocean that was Tyre and Sidon's source of life now disowns them: 'I have not given birth, I have not raised children.' The sea denies being the mother of these maritime cities. The one who gave Phoenicia everything now claims no connection.
4. Ma'oz ha-yam ('the fortress of the sea') gives the sea a title of strength and authority — this is not a passive body of water but a power that speaks and judges.
5. Egypt, Tyre's major trading partner and grain supplier, will be devastated by the news. The verb yachilu ('they will writhe, tremble') describes the physical convulsion of shock — Egypt's economy was intertwined with Tyre's shipping. When the port falls, the supplier suffers.
6. The command to flee to Tarshish (likely Tartessus in Spain, the farthest known western port) means there is no refuge nearby. The Phoenician survivors must sail to the edge of the known world. The command to wail (heililu) is repeated from verse 1 — the grief is inescapable.

7. The rhetorical question forces a reckoning: is this the great Tyre? The city whose antiquity (mimei-qedem, 'from days of old') reached back centuries, whose colonists (ragleyha, literally 'her feet') established settlements across the Mediterranean — Carthage, Cadiz, settlements in Cyprus and Sicily? The city that walked everywhere now has nowhere to go.
8. The question *mi ya'atz zot* ('who planned this?') sets up verse 9's answer. Tyre is called *hamma'atirah* ('the crown-bestowing one') — she did not merely wear crowns but gave them to others. Her commercial power made and unmade kings. Her merchants (*sochareha*) functioned as princes (*sarim*), and her traders (*khin'aneha*, a wordplay on 'Canaanite,' which also means 'merchant') were the *nikhbaddei-aretz* ('honored ones of the earth').
8. The identification of merchants with princes and traders with the earth's honored ones reveals how commerce creates its own aristocracy — wealth becomes its own nobility.
9. The answer to verse 8's question: the LORD of Hosts (YHWH *tzeva'ot*) planned it. The verb *ya'atzah* ('he planned, he purposed') uses the same root as the question — who counseled? God counseled. The purpose is *lechallel ge'on kol-tzevi* ('to defile/profane the pride of all beauty/splendor'). The verb *challel* means to pierce, to profane, to make common what was considered holy. Tyre's splendor was treated as sacred; God will make it profane.
9. The phrase *lehaqel kol-nikhbaddei-aretz* ('to bring low all the honored of the earth') targets not just Tyre but all who derive their honor from commercial glory. The judgment is paradigmatic.
10. The 'daughter of Tarshish' (*bat-Tarshish*) is the colony now unmoored from the mother city. Without Tyre's control, Tarshish spreads uncontrolled like the Nile in flood — *ka-ye'or* ('like the River'). The phrase *ein mezach od* ('there is no restraint anymore') means the old order has dissolved. Tyre's colonies, once held in a network of obligation and commerce, are now free but directionless.
11. God's hand (*yado*) stretched over the sea echoes the exodus (Exod 14:21, 26-27), where God's hand over the sea destroyed Pharaoh's army. The same sovereign hand that liberated Israel now judges Tyre. The verb *higiz* ('he shook, he made tremble') describes kingdoms vibrating with terror at God's movement.
11. The LORD's command is against *Kena'an* ('Canaan'), which functions as a double reference: Phoenicia was part of ancient Canaan, and *kena'ani* means 'merchant/trader.' The command to destroy her *ma'uzneha* ('fortresses, strongholds') strips away the physical security that undergirded Tyre's commercial confidence.
12. Sidon's daughter (Tyre, the offspring of the older city) is called both 'virgin' (*betulat*) and 'oppressed' (*hame'ushaqqah*) — violated and crushed. The command to flee to Kittim (Cyprus) offers no real hope: *gam-sham lo-yanuach lakh* ('even there you will find no rest'). There is no port of refuge from the LORD of Hosts.
12. The denial of rest (*nuach*) is significant — *nuach* is the verb of Sabbath rest, of arriving at the promised destination. Tyre will find no such rest anywhere.
13. This difficult verse points to Babylon (the Chaldeans) as both a historical parallel and an instrument: a people that 'was nothing' (*lo hayah*) rose to power and then fell to ruin. Assyria, which had used Babylon, ultimately destroyed her. The verse warns Tyre that the same fate awaits — no commercial empire is exempt from the pattern.
13. The verse is textually challenging. We followed the sense that the Chaldeans' rise and fall serves as an object lesson for Tyre: if even Babylon can be reduced to a ruin (*mappelah*), Tyre should not imagine herself immune.
14. The oracle returns to its opening command — *heililu oniyot Tarshish* — creating an *inclusio* (literary frame). The ships that were told to wail in verse 1 are told to wail again. The reason is now personal: *ma'uzzekhen* ('your fortress, your stronghold') — Tyre was their home base, their refuge, their reason for sailing. Without the fortress-port, the ships are homeless on the sea.
15. The seventy years (*shiv'im shanah*) may be a round number for a human lifetime ('the days of one king,' *kimei melek-e'chad*) or may correspond to the seventy-year period elsewhere associated with Babylon's dominance (Jer 25:11-12). Either way, Tyre's oblivion has a fixed term — she is forgotten but not forever.
15. The comparison to *keshirat ha-zonah* ('the song of the prostitute') is startling. After seventy years, Tyre's return to commerce is compared to a forgotten prostitute who takes up her trade again. The metaphor is not incidental but structural: Tyre's relationship with the nations is promiscuous — she trades with everyone, serves everyone's desires, and accumulates wealth through universal availability.
16. The prostitute's song is now dramatized: Tyre is told to take up the *kinnor* (harp/lyre), walk the streets, play well, and sing prolifically — all to be 'remembered' (*tizzakheri*). The word remembered carries enormous weight in Hebrew: to be remembered is to exist in relationship, to matter. Tyre's entire commercial revival is driven by the desperate need to matter again, to be noticed, to attract clients.
16. The image of a forgotten prostitute walking the city with a harp, singing to regain attention, is simultaneously pathetic and aggressive. There is no dignity in it, only survival through self-display.
17. The verb *yifqod* ('he will visit') is theologically loaded — *paqad* means to attend to, to take account of, to intervene. God's 'visiting' can be for judgment or restoration; here it is ambiguously both. He visits Tyre, and she returns to her *etnan* ('wages, hire' — specifically the wages of a prostitute, Deut 23:18).

17. The language is deliberately shocking: vezantah et-kol-mamlkhot ha-aretz ('she will prostitute herself with all the kingdoms of the earth'). Tyre's resumed commerce is described in sexual terms — her trade is promiscuous, indiscriminate, universal. The phrase al-penei ha-adamah ('on the face of the ground') gives the prostitution a cosmic scope — this is global commerce as global promiscuity.
18. The chapter's final verse delivers its most astonishing reversal: sachrah ve'etnannah qodesh la-YHWH ('her profits and her prostitute's wages will be holy to the LORD'). The same wages called 'prostitute's hire' in verse 17 are now declared qodesh — holy, set apart, consecrated. God does not abolish Tyre's commerce; he redirects it. The profits that served Tyre's pride will now serve God's people.
18. The phrase la-yoshvim lifnei YHWH ('to those who dwell before the LORD') designates the priestly or worshiping community — those who live in God's presence. Tyre's wealth will feed them (le'ekhol lesov'ah, 'to eat their fill') and clothe them (limkhasseh atiq, 'in fine/durable clothing'). Commerce is not destroyed but sanctified.
18. This verse anticipates Isaiah 60:5-11, where the wealth of the nations streams to Zion, and ships of Tarshish lead the procession. What is judged in chapter 23 is redeemed in chapter 60 — the same wealth, the same ships, but a different destination and purpose.

24

Summary: *God devastates the entire earth in a cosmic judgment that levels all social distinctions. The earth mourns, the city of chaos lies in ruins, and the heavens themselves are shaken — but the LORD of Hosts reigns on Mount Zion in glory.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the most apocalyptic chapter in First Isaiah. The scope shifts from individual nations (chs. 13-23) to the whole earth (erets appears 16 times). The social-leveling catalogue in verse 2 — priest as people, master as servant, lender as borrower — dismantles every human hierarchy in six parallel pairs. The chapter ends with an image found nowhere else: the LORD reigns on Zion 'and before His elders is glory' (v. 23), echoing the elders' vision at Sinai (Exodus 24:9-11).*

Translation Friction: *The phrase qiryat-tohu (v. 10, 'city of chaos') uses the same word tohu as Genesis 1:2 — the city has been un-created, returned to primordial formlessness. We preserved 'chaos' to maintain the Genesis connection. The verb navlah (v. 4, 'withers') is applied to both the earth and its people — the same decay affects land and inhabitants, a merism for total ruin.*

Connections: *The cosmic imagery anticipates Revelation 6:12-14 (heavens rolled up, earth shaken). The elders before God's glory (v. 23) echo both Exodus 24:9-11 and Revelation 4:4. The 'everlasting covenant' broken (v. 5) refers back to the Noahic covenant (Genesis 9:16), suggesting that humanity has violated the most basic terms of existence.*

¹Look — the LORD is about to empty the earth and lay it waste.

He will twist its surface
and scatter its inhabitants.

²It will be the same
for the people as for the priest,
for the servant as for his master,
for the maid as for her mistress,
for the buyer as for the seller,
for the lender as for the borrower,
for the creditor as for the debtor.

³The earth will be utterly emptied,
utterly plundered —
for the LORD has spoken this word.

⁴The earth mourns and withers;
the world languishes and withers.
The exalted of the earth's people languish.

⁵The earth is polluted beneath its inhabitants,
for they have transgressed instructions,
violated the decree,
broken the everlasting covenant.

⁶Therefore a curse devours the earth,
and its inhabitants bear their guilt.
Therefore the inhabitants of the earth are scorched,
and few people remain.

⁷The new wine mourns,
the vine languishes;
all who were glad at heart now sigh.

⁸The joyful tambourines have ceased,
the noise of the revelers has stopped,
the joyful lyre has ceased.

⁹No longer do they drink wine with singing;
strong drink is bitter to those who drink it.

¹⁰The city of chaos is broken;
every house is shut, none may enter.

¹¹There is an outcry in the streets over the wine;
all joy has grown dark;
the gladness of the earth is banished.

¹²Desolation remains in the city;
the gate is battered to ruins.

¹³For so it will be in the midst of the earth,
among the peoples:
like the beating of an olive tree,
like the gleaning when the grape harvest is over.

¹⁴They raise their voices, they shout for joy;
from the west they cry out
for the majesty of the LORD.

¹⁵Therefore in the east glorify the LORD;
in the coastlands of the sea,
glorify the name of the LORD, the God of Israel.

¹⁶From the ends of the earth we hear songs:
"Glory to the Righteous One!"
But I say, "I waste away! I waste away!
Woe to me!
The treacherous betray!
The treacherous utterly betray!"

¹⁷Terror, pit, and trap
await you, O inhabitant of the earth!

¹⁸Whoever flees from the sound of terror
will fall into the pit;
whoever climbs out of the pit
will be caught in the trap.
For the windows of heaven are opened,
and the foundations of the earth tremble.

¹⁹The earth is utterly shattered;
the earth is split apart;
the earth is violently shaken.

²⁰The earth staggers like a drunkard,
sways like a hut in the wind.
Its transgression weighs heavy upon it;
it falls and will not rise again.

²¹On that day the LORD will punish
the host of heaven in the heights
and the kings of the earth on the earth.

²²They will be gathered together
like prisoners in a dungeon,
shut up in a prison;
and after many days they will be visited.

²³The moon will be humiliated
and the sun ashamed,
for the LORD of Hosts will reign
on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem,
and before His elders — glory.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *boqeq* ('emptying') and the related *bolqah* ('laying waste') create an assonant pair — the repeated 'b-q' sounds mirror the devastation described. The scope is universal: *ha'arets* ('the earth/land') governs the entire chapter.
1. *Hinne* ('look') signals that what follows is imminent and certain, not hypothetical. We rendered it 'look' rather than the archaic 'behold.'
2. Six parallel pairs systematically dismantle every social hierarchy: religious (people/priest), domestic (servant/master, maid/mistress), and economic (buyer/seller, lender/borrower, creditor/debtor). No one is exempt from the coming devastation.
3. The doubled infinitive absolutes (*hibboq tibboq*, *hibboz tibboz*) intensify both verbs: 'emptying it will be emptied, plundering it will be plundered.' We rendered this with 'utterly' to capture the emphasis. The closing formula 'for the LORD has spoken' (*ki YHWH dibber*) seals the oracle with divine authority.
4. The verb *navlah* ('withers, fades') is applied to both the physical earth and its human inhabitants — the same decay afflicts both. The Hebrew uses four verbs in rapid succession (*avelah*, *navlah*, *umlalah*, *navlah*) creating a cascade of decline. The 'exalted of the earth's people' (*merom am-ha'arets*) refers to the ruling class, now brought low.
5. The verb *chanfah* ('polluted, defiled') describes moral contamination that affects the physical land — a Deuteronomic concept (Numbers 35:33, Jeremiah 3:1-2). The three violations escalate: transgressed instructions (*torot*), violated the decree (*choq*), broken the everlasting covenant (*berit olam*).

5. The 'everlasting covenant' most likely refers to the Noahic covenant (Genesis 9:16), the only covenant explicitly called *olam* that applies to all humanity. Some scholars see a reference to cosmic moral order rather than a specific covenant.
6. The *alah* ('curse') is not arbitrary punishment but the activated consequence of covenant violation — the curses of Deuteronomy 28 made cosmic. The verb *charu* ('are scorched/burned') connects to the fire imagery throughout the chapter. The remnant motif appears: 'few people remain' (*nishar enosh mizar*).
7. The personification of wine and vine mourning extends the agricultural catastrophe into the social sphere — wine represents celebration, and its failure means the end of joy. The phrase *simchei-lev* ('glad of heart') describes those whose lives were built around festivity.
8. Three instruments of celebration are silenced: *tuppim* (tambourines/hand-drums), the tumult of *alizzim* (revelers/exultant ones), and *kinnor* (lyre/harp). The verb *shavat* ('ceased') echoes the Sabbath — but this is a cessation of joy, not a rest.
9. The reversal is complete: wine, which symbolized celebration throughout the ancient Near East, now tastes bitter. The verb *yemar* ('is bitter') from the root *m-r-r* connects to Naomi's self-renaming as *Mara* ('bitter,' Ruth 1:20).
10. The identity of *qiryat-tohu* ('city of chaos') is debated — Babylon, Jerusalem, or an archetypal city representing all human pride. The deliberate vagueness may be the point: in apocalyptic judgment, every city becomes the city of chaos.
10. The word *tohu* ('chaos, formlessness, emptiness') appears in Genesis 1:2 and Jeremiah 4:23, always signifying the undoing of creation's order.
11. The verb *arvah* ('has grown dark, has set') uses sunset imagery for joy — gladness has gone below the horizon. The verb *galah* ('banished, exiled') is the same word used for the exile of a people, applied here to joy itself: happiness has been deported from the land.
12. The gate — the center of civic life, commerce, and justice in an ancient city — is destroyed. The word *shammah* ('desolation') and *she'iyah* ('ruin') create a rhyming pair emphasizing total devastation.
13. The olive-beating and grape-gleaning metaphor signals that after judgment, only a remnant survives — the few olives left on the highest branches, the few clusters missed by the harvesters. The same imagery appears in 17:6. This is not total annihilation but devastating reduction.
14. The sudden shift to praise is startling after 13 verses of devastation. The remnant that survives (v. 13) lifts its voice in worship. The phrase *miyyam* ('from the sea/west') indicates the western regions — the Mediterranean coastlands. The 'majesty of the LORD' (*ge'on YHWH*) uses a word that elsewhere describes human pride now rightly applied only to God.
15. The word *ba'urim* is debated: 'in the fires' (from *ur*, 'fire/light') or 'in the east' (from *or*, 'light,' meaning the region of sunrise). We rendered 'in the east' to parallel 'the coastlands of the sea' (west), creating a merism: from east to west, all glorify the LORD. The full title 'the LORD, the God of Israel' grounds universal worship in Israel's covenant God.
16. The prophet's personal anguish interrupts the universal praise. While the ends of the earth sing 'glory to the Righteous One' (*tsevi latsaddiq*), the prophet cries *razi-li razi-li* ('my wasting, my wasting' or 'my secret, my secret'). The word *razi* is debated: from *razah* ('to waste away, grow lean') or *raz* ('secret, mystery'). We chose 'I waste away' for the more natural reading.
16. The triple repetition of the root *b-g-d* ('betray, deal treacherously') — *bogdim bagadu, beged bogdim bagadu* — is untranslatable wordplay. We preserved the repetition to echo the Hebrew's relentless hammering.
17. The triple alliteration *pachad, pachat, pach* ('terror, pit, trap') is one of Isaiah's most striking sound effects — three words beginning with the same consonant cluster, each one a step closer to capture. The alliteration is untranslatable; we preserved the three nouns and noted the Hebrew wordplay.
18. The escape-proof sequence continues the *pachad/pachat/pach* alliteration from v. 17: flee the terror, fall in the pit; escape the pit, caught in the trap. There is no escape from divine judgment.
18. The 'windows of heaven' (*arubbot mimarom*) echo the flood narrative (Genesis 7:11) — the same language describes cosmic catastrophe. The foundations of the earth shaking connects to the flood and to Sinai theophany.
19. Three doubled infinitive absolutes in succession: *ro'ah hitro'a'ah* ('shattering it is shattered'), *por hitporrah* ('splitting it is split apart'), *mot hitmottatah* ('shaking it is shaken'). The threefold repetition of *erets* ('earth') hammers the point: this is total, cosmic undoing.
20. The drunkard simile is vivid: the earth itself reels (*nu'a tanu'a*, another doubled infinitive). The *melunah* ('hut, lodge, shelter') is a flimsy field-shelter that sways in every wind — the solid earth has become as fragile as a temporary booth. The verb *kavad* ('is heavy') — the same root as *kavod* ('glory') — here describes the crushing weight of accumulated sin.
21. The judgment extends to both cosmic and earthly rulers: *tseva hamarom* ('the host of heaven/the heights') refers to celestial powers — whether angelic beings, astral deities worshipped by the nations, or both. The pairing of heavenly and earthly judgment anticipates the apocalyptic worldview of Daniel and Revelation.
22. The verb *yippaqedu* ('will be visited') is ambiguous: *paqad* can mean 'to visit' for judgment or for mercy. After 'many days' of imprisonment, God returns to these imprisoned powers — whether for final judgment or surprising mercy, the text does not specify. We preserved the ambiguity.
23. The personification of moon and sun as 'humiliated' and 'ashamed' uses emotional language for celestial bodies — their light is eclipsed by God's glory, making them embarrassed by comparison.

23. The phrase 'before His elders' (neged zeqenav) echoes the Sinai theophany where the seventy elders saw God and ate and drank (Exodus 24:9-11). The same council of elders appears in Revelation 4:4.
23. The chapter ends on kavod ('glory') — the weight of God's manifest presence. This single word answers the entire chapter's devastation: the earth is unmade so that God's glory can be fully revealed.

25

Summary: A psalm of praise for God's faithfulness: the fortified city is ruined, and God prepares a feast for all peoples on His mountain. He swallows up death forever and wipes tears from every face.

What Makes This Remarkable: Verse 8 — 'He will swallow up death forever' (billa hammavet lanetsach) — is one of the most consequential sentences in the Hebrew Bible. Paul quotes it in 1 Corinthians 15:54 as fulfilled in resurrection. The image of God wiping tears from every face (v. 8) reappears verbatim in Revelation 7:17 and 21:4. The feast for all peoples (v. 6) is not for Israel alone — the scope is universal.

Translation Friction: The verb billa (v. 8, 'swallowed up') is graphic — death, which has been swallowing humanity, is itself swallowed. We preserved the verb's violence. The phrase lanetsach could mean 'forever' or 'completely' — both senses may be intended. The transition from cosmic praise (vv. 1-5) to the universal feast (vv. 6-8) to Moab's humiliation (vv. 10-12) is jarring; we let the text's own juxtapositions stand.

Connections: The feast on the mountain (v. 6) fulfills the covenant meal of Exodus 24:9-11 on a universal scale. Paul quotes verse 8 in 1 Corinthians 15:54. Revelation 7:17 and 21:4 cite the tears-wiped passage. The fortified city's destruction (v. 2) continues the qiryat-tohu theme from 24:10.

¹LORD, You are my God.

I will exalt You; I will praise Your name,
for You have done wonderful things —
plans formed long ago,
faithful and sure.

²For You have turned a city into a heap of stones,
a fortified city into a ruin,
a palace of foreigners into what is no longer a city —
it will never be rebuilt.

³Therefore a fierce people will honor You;
a city of ruthless nations will fear You.

⁴For You have been a fortress for the poor,
a fortress for the needy in their distress,
a shelter from the storm,
a shade from the heat —
for the breath of the ruthless is like a storm against a wall.

⁵As heat in a parched land,
You subdue the tumult of foreigners;
as heat is reduced by the shadow of a cloud,
so the song of the ruthless is silenced.

⁶On this mountain the LORD of Hosts will prepare
for all peoples
a feast of rich food,
a feast of aged wine —
rich food full of marrow,
aged wine well refined.

⁷On this mountain He will swallow up
the shroud that covers all peoples,
the veil that is spread over all nations.

⁸He will swallow up death forever.
The Lord GOD will wipe away tears from every face,
and the disgrace of His people He will remove from all the earth —
for the LORD has spoken.

⁹On that day it will be said:
"Look — this is our God!
We waited for Him, and He saved us.
This is the LORD; we waited for Him.
Let us be glad and rejoice in His salvation!"

¹⁰For the hand of the LORD will rest on this mountain,
and Moab will be trampled in his place
as straw is trampled in a dung pit.

¹¹Moab will spread out his hands in the midst of it
as a swimmer spreads his hands to swim,
but God will bring down his pride
along with the skill of his hands.

¹²The high fortification of your walls
He has brought down, laid low,
cast to the ground — to the dust.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *etsot merachok* ('plans from afar/long ago') affirms that God's judgments are not reactive but planned — the devastation of chapter 24 was the execution of an ancient purpose. The word *emunah* ('faithfulness') and *omen* ('sureness, truth') are paired to describe God's plans as both loyal and reliable.
2. The unnamed fortified city continues the archetype from 24:10. The progression — city to heap, fortification to ruin, palace to non-city — traces the complete reversal of human building. The phrase *le'olam lo yibbaneh* ('never to be rebuilt') echoes the permanent destruction of *cherem* cities.
3. The 'fierce people' (*am az*) and 'ruthless nations' (*goyim aritsim*) who now honor and fear God are the very peoples who were instruments of judgment. Even the oppressors recognize God's sovereignty.
4. God is described with four protection metaphors: fortress (*ma'oz*, twice), shelter (*machseh*), shade (*tsel*). These are physical, tangible images — the God who devastates cities (v. 2) is simultaneously the refuge of the vulnerable. The breath (*ruach*) of the ruthless is compared to a *zerem qir* ('storm against a wall') — relentless, battering force.
5. The metaphor shifts from storm to desert heat: God suppresses the noise (*she'on*) of foreigners as a cloud's shadow cuts the heat. The word *zamor* (v. 5b) can mean 'song' or 'pruning' — we chose 'song' to parallel the tumult/noise theme, with the ruthless ones' triumphant singing silenced.

6. The feast is for kol-ha'ammim ('all peoples') — not Israel alone. This is one of the Hebrew Bible's most universalist visions. The food is described with extravagant abundance: shemanim ('rich/fatty foods'), shemarim ('aged wines settled on their lees'). The doubled description (rich food / rich food full of marrow, aged wine / aged wine well refined) conveys lavish generosity.
6. The mountain is Mount Zion — God's feast is located at the center of Israel's worship but open to all nations. This universalizing of the Sinai covenant meal (Exodus 24:9-11) is theologically revolutionary.
7. The 'shroud' (hallot) and 'veil' (massekah) covering all peoples likely refers to death's pall — the universal shadow of mortality that hangs over every nation. God removes the covering that separates humanity from His presence. The verb billa ('swallow up') anticipates verse 8's climactic statement.
8. The verb billa ('swallowed up') is the same verb used in v. 7 for the shroud — God swallows up both the covering of death and death itself. Death is personified as something that can be consumed.
8. The phrase lanetsach can mean 'forever' (temporal) or 'completely' (intensive). Both senses apply: death's defeat is both permanent and total.
8. The wiping of tears (machah dim'ah) uses the same verb as wiping out a name or a stain — the removal is thorough. This image appears in Revelation 7:17 and 21:4.
8. 'The LORD has spoken' (YHWH dibber) seals the promise with divine authority — the same formula that sealed the judgment in 24:3.
9. The double identification — 'this is our God... this is the LORD' — is the climax of recognition. The verb qivvinu ('we waited, we hoped') appears twice, emphasizing patient expectation now vindicated. The word yeshu'ah ('salvation') shares the root of Joshua/Jesus (y-sh-a).
10. The shift from universal feast to Moab's humiliation is jarring — but the juxtaposition is deliberate: the same mountain that hosts salvation also hosts judgment. Moab represents those who oppose God's purposes. The madmenah ('dung pit') image is deliberately degrading — Moab's pride (v. 11) meets the lowest possible end.
11. The swimming metaphor is bizarre and vivid — Moab flailing in the dung pit like a swimmer, unable to gain purchase. The word ga'avah ('pride') is Moab's defining characteristic in Isaiah (16:6) and its undoing.
12. Three verbs of descent — heshach ('brought down'), hishpil ('laid low'), higgia ('cast to') — track the fortress from height to ground to dust. The trajectory of human pride always ends in afar ('dust'), the substance from which humanity was formed (Genesis 2:7).

26

Summary: *Isaiah 26 is a victory song to be sung 'on that day' in the land of Judah. The strong city is God's — its walls are salvation, its gates open to the righteous. The chapter's theological center is trust: the mind stayed on God is kept in perfect peace, because the LORD is the everlasting Rock (tsur olamim). Isaiah contrasts the exalted city brought low with the humble who walk over its ruins. The middle section is a lament: despite God's judgments, the wicked do not learn righteousness. Then comes one of the Old Testament's clearest resurrection texts: 'Your dead shall live, their bodies shall rise' (v. 19). The chapter closes with a command to hide behind closed doors while divine indignation passes — an echo of the Passover night. We rendered this song with attention to its shifting moods: confidence, trust, frustration at the wicked, anguished prayer, resurrection hope, and finally urgent instruction to shelter from wrath.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 19 ('Your dead shall live, their bodies shall rise — awake and sing, you who dwell in the dust') is one of the earliest and clearest resurrection texts in the Hebrew Bible. While Job 19:25-27 and Daniel 12:2 also point toward bodily resurrection, Isaiah 26:19 stands out for its directness and its poetic beauty. The 'dew of lights' (tal orot) that falls on the dead is a unique image — resurrection as morning dew, as the return of light to those in darkness. The phrase tsur olamim ('everlasting Rock,' v. 4) is a divine title found only here in this exact form, combining permanence (olam) with solidity (tsur). The 'perfect peace' (shalom shalom, v. 3) — the doubled noun — indicates peace that is complete, whole, and enduring.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the 'strong city' of verse 1 and the 'lofty city' brought low in verse 5 is debated. The strong city appears to be Zion (God's city), while the lofty city is the same city of chaos from 24:10 — the oppressive human civilization. The lament in verses 16-18 is textually difficult: the Hebrew of verse 18 ('we have not wrought salvation in the earth') expresses the futility of human effort apart from God, setting up the divine answer of resurrection in verse 19. The command to 'enter your rooms and shut your doors' (v. 20) echoes Exodus 12:22-23, where Israel sheltered behind blood-marked doors while the destroyer passed. We preserved this Passover echo without making it explicit, letting the reader hear the connection.*

Connections: The 'everlasting Rock' (tsur olamim, v. 4) connects to Deuteronomy 32:4 ('the Rock, His work is perfect') and 1 Corinthians 10:4 ('that Rock was Christ'). 'Perfect peace' (shalom shalom, v. 3) echoes Isaiah 57:19 ('Peace, peace to him who is far and to him who is near'). The resurrection of verse 19 is developed in Daniel 12:2, Ezekiel 37 (the valley of dry bones), and ultimately in the New Testament resurrection narratives. The door-shutting command (v. 20) connects to Exodus 12:22-23 (Passover), Noah entering the ark (Gen 7:16), and Jesus' teaching about the closed door (Matt 25:10). The 'earth disclosing its blood' (v. 21) anticipates Genesis 4:10-11 (Abel's blood crying from the ground) and Revelation 6:10 (the martyrs' cry).

¹On that day this song shall be sung
in the land of Judah:
"We have a strong city —
He sets salvation as walls and ramparts."

²Open the gates,
that the righteous nation may enter,
the one that keeps faith.

³The steadfast mind You keep
in perfect peace —
perfect peace —
for it trusts in You.

⁴Trust in the LORD forever,
for in the LORD GOD
is the everlasting Rock.

⁵For He has brought low
the inhabitants of the height,
the lofty city.
He lays it low, lays it low
to the ground — to the dust.

⁶The foot tramples it —
the feet of the poor,
the steps of the needy.

⁷The path of the righteous is level;
O Upright One, You make smooth
the way of the righteous.

⁸Yes, in the path of Your judgments,
O LORD, we wait for You;
for Your name and Your renown
is the desire of our soul.

⁹My soul yearns for You in the night;
my spirit within me seeks You at dawn.
For when Your judgments come upon the earth,
the inhabitants of the world learn righteousness.

¹⁰Though grace is shown to the wicked,
he does not learn righteousness;
in a land of uprightness he acts perversely
and does not see the majesty of the LORD.

¹¹O LORD, Your hand is raised high,
but they do not see.
Let them see Your zeal for Your people and be ashamed!
Let the fire reserved for Your enemies consume them!

¹²O LORD, You will ordain peace for us,
for indeed all that we have accomplished
You have done for us.

¹³O LORD our God,
other lords besides You have ruled over us,
but by You alone we invoke Your name.

¹⁴The dead do not live,
the shades do not rise.
Therefore You have punished and destroyed them
and wiped out all memory of them.

¹⁵You have enlarged the nation, O LORD,
You have enlarged the nation — You are glorified!
You have extended all the borders of the land.

¹⁶O LORD, in distress they sought You;
they poured out a whispered prayer
when Your discipline was upon them.

¹⁷As a pregnant woman draws near to giving birth,
writhing, crying out in her labor pains —
so were we before You, O LORD.

¹⁸We were pregnant, we writhed —
but we gave birth to wind.
We have not brought salvation to the earth,
and the inhabitants of the world have not fallen.

¹⁹Your dead shall live,
their bodies shall rise.
Awake and sing, you who dwell in the dust!
For your dew is a dew of lights,
and the earth will give birth to the shades.

²⁰Go, my people, enter your rooms
and shut your doors behind you.
Hide yourselves for a brief moment
until the indignation passes.

21 For behold, the LORD comes forth from His place
to punish the iniquity of the earth's inhabitants.
The earth will disclose its blood
and will no longer cover its slain.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase bayyom hahu ('on that day') marks this as an eschatological song — a hymn for the future day of the LORD's reign. The strong city ('ir oz) is Zion, whose walls are not stone but yeshu'ah ('salvation'). The word chel ('rampart, outer fortification') adds a second defensive layer. The city's security is entirely divine — God Himself is its defense system.
1. This is the counterpart to the 'city of chaos' (24:10) and the 'lofty city' brought low (v. 5). While human cities crumble, God's city stands because its walls are salvation itself.
2. The command to open the gates (pitchu she'arim) invites entry to those who qualify: a goy tsaddiq ('righteous nation') that is shomer emunim ('keeping faith/faithfulness'). The word emunim ('faithfulnesses') is plural, suggesting consistent, habitual faithfulness rather than a single act. Entry to God's city is by character, not by birth or power.
3. This verse is one of Isaiah's most beloved. The yetser ('mind, inclination, imagination') that is samukh ('stayed, supported, leaning upon') God is kept in shalom shalom — the doubled noun indicating completeness, totality, perfect wholeness. The reason is simple: ki vekha batuach ('for it trusts in You'). Trust is the mechanism; peace is the result.
3. The word yetser also appears in Genesis 6:5 ('every inclination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil') — the same human faculty that can be bent toward evil is here stayed on God and produces peace.
4. The command to trust (bitchu) echoes verse 3's description of the trusting mind. The phrase adei-ad ('forever, to perpetuity') removes any time limit on the command. The divine name is doubled: be-Yah YHWH — the shortened form (Yah) and the full form (YHWH) together, as though one name cannot contain enough of God's identity.
4. Tsur olamim ('everlasting Rock' or 'Rock of Ages') is one of the great divine titles. Augustus Toplady's hymn 'Rock of Ages' draws on this verse. The Rock metaphor conveys permanence, immovability, and reliability — the opposite of the earth that staggers like a drunkard (24:20).
5. The 'inhabitants of the height' (yoshevei marom) and the 'lofty city' (qiryah nishgavah) are the opposite of the strong city of verse 1. This exalted city trusted in its own elevation — but God brings it down. The verb yashpilenah ('He lays it low') is repeated for emphasis, and the descent is total: to the ground (ad-erets), to the dust (ad-afar). The repetition mirrors the progressive demolition of 25:12.
6. The ultimate reversal: the lofty city, brought to dust, is trampled by the very people it once oppressed — the poor (ani) and the needy (dallim). Those who were trodden down now tread on the ruins of those who trod on them. The foot (regel) is singular, then pluralized (raglei, pa'amei) — the trampling spreads from one foot to many.
7. The orach ('path') of the tsaddiq ('righteous one') is mesharim ('level, straight, upright'). God as the yashar ('Upright One') is the one who levels the path — tefalles ('You make level, You weigh, You smooth'). The righteous walk on a path that God has prepared and leveled. The word tefalles can also mean 'to weigh on scales,' suggesting God's justice ensures the path's integrity.
8. The community speaks: even in the midst of God's judgments (mishpatekha), they wait (qivvinukha) — the same verb of patient hope from 25:9. The 'desire of the soul' (ta'avat nefesh) is directed toward God's name (shimkha) and memorial/renown (zikhrekha). They desire not rescue from judgment but God Himself — His name, His reputation, His presence.
9. Night longing (ballaylah) and dawn seeking (ashacharekkah, from shachar, 'dawn') frame a cycle of desire: the soul reaches for God through darkness into morning light. The theological principle in the second half is clear: divine judgments (mishpatekha) are pedagogical — they teach (lamedu) the world's inhabitants righteousness (tsedeq). Judgment is not merely punitive but instructive.
10. The counterpoint to verse 9: while judgments teach the world's inhabitants, the rasha ('wicked one') refuses the lesson. Even when shown grace (yuchan), he does not learn righteousness. Even in a 'land of uprightness' (erets nekhochot), he acts perversely (ye'avvel). The wicked one's blindness is willful — he 'does not see' (bal-yir'eh) the LORD's majesty (ge'ut YHWH). The problem is not insufficient evidence but refusal to perceive.
11. God's hand is lifted (ramah yadekha) — a gesture of power and action — but the wicked 'do not see' (bal yechezayun). The prophet then demands that they be made to see: yechez yevayoshu ('let them see and be ashamed'). The qin'at am ('zeal for the people') is God's jealous love for His own. The fire (esh) that consumes is reserved for God's enemies (tsarekha) — divine fire is discriminating, not random.
12. A profound confession of divine sovereignty: tishpot shalom lanu ('You will ordain/establish peace for us') declares God as the source of peace. The second clause goes further: 'all our works/deeds You have done for us' (kol ma'aseinu pa'alta lanu). Human achievement is reattributed to God. This is not fatalism but grateful acknowledgment — whatever good has been accomplished, God was the worker behind the work.
13. A confession of past unfaithfulness: adonim zulatekha ('lords other than You') have 'mastered us' (be'alunu — from the root ba'al, 'to master, to own,' also the name of the Canaanite deity). The double meaning is deliberate: other ba'als have been our ba'al. But now: levad-bekha nazkir shemekha ('by You alone we invoke Your name'). The people renounce all rival allegiances and cling to the LORD's name exclusively.

14. This verse refers to the 'other lords' of verse 13 — the false gods and foreign masters. They are metim ('dead') and refa'im ('shades, departed spirits' — the inhabitants of Sheol). They shall not live, shall not rise. God has destroyed them and erased their memory (zeikher). This verse sets up the dramatic contrast with verse 19, where God's dead do live and do rise.
14. The refa'im ('shades') are the powerless dead of Sheol — the term is used both of the departed and of the pre-Israelite giant inhabitants of Canaan. Here the false lords are consigned to permanent death.
15. The doubling of yasafta laggoi ('You have enlarged the nation') emphasizes divine blessing on Israel. God is nikbadta ('glorified') through this expansion. The phrase richaqta kol-qatsvei-arets ('You have extended all the ends of the land') may refer to the expansion of Israel's territory or, more likely, to the extension of God's influence to the earth's ends. Growth and glory belong to God.
16. The people acknowledge that distress (batsar) drove them to seek God. The verb paqadukha ('they visited/sought You') echoes the visitation language used elsewhere for God visiting humanity — here humanity visits God in desperate prayer. The 'whispered prayer' (tsaun lachash) suggests an intensity too deep for loud speech — a quiet, urgent pouring out before God. Musar ('discipline, chastening') is understood as formative, not merely punitive.
17. The birth metaphor captures the community's anguish: they are like a woman in labor (harah taqriv laledet), writhing (tachil) and crying out (tiz'aq) in her contractions (chavaleiha). The comparison is direct: 'so were we before You' (ken hayinu mippanekha). The metaphor implies both agony and expectation — labor is painful but purposeful, pointing toward delivery.
18. The labor metaphor from verse 17 reaches its devastating conclusion: after all the agony, the birth produced only ruach ('wind, breath') — nothing. The confession is total: 'we have not brought salvation to the earth' (yeshu'ot bal-na'aseh erets). Human effort, even agonized effort, cannot produce deliverance. The world's wicked inhabitants 'have not fallen' (bal-yippelu) despite Israel's striving. This verse of despair sets up the divine answer in verse 19.
19. This is one of the Hebrew Bible's clearest resurrection texts. Three commands/declarations: (1) 'Your dead shall live' (yichyu metekha), (2) 'their bodies shall rise' (nevalati yequmun), (3) 'Awake and sing, you who dwell in the dust' (haqitsu veranenu shokhevei afar). The address to 'dust-dwellers' recalls Genesis 3:19 — those who returned to dust are summoned back from it.
19. The phrase tal orot ('dew of lights') is found nowhere else. The dew that raises the dead is luminous — made of light itself. The earth 'gives birth to' (tappil) the refa'im — a deliberate contrast with verse 18, where the people gave birth to wind. God's creative power succeeds where human effort fails. The dead of verse 14 (the false lords) do not rise, but God's dead (metekha, 'Your dead') do. Resurrection is selective and covenantal.
20. God speaks directly to His people with intimate address: lekh ammi ('go, my people'). The instructions are specific: enter your rooms (bo bachadarekha), shut your doors (segor delatekha), hide (chavi). The za'am ('indignation, wrath') will pass — it is only kim'at rega ('a brief moment'). The echo of Exodus 12:22-23 is unmistakable: on the night of the Passover, Israel stayed behind closed doors while the destroyer passed through Egypt.
20. The 'brief moment' (kim'at rega) relativizes the suffering: however terrible the indignation, it is temporary. God shelters His people through judgment, not from it — they experience the time of wrath but are protected within it.
21. The reason for hiding: the LORD exits His dwelling (yotse mimmeqomo) to punish (lifqod avon). The image of God 'coming forth from His place' suggests that judgment requires His active intervention — He leaves His heavenly abode to act in the world. The earth 'disclosing its blood' (gilletah ha'arets et-dameiha) echoes Genesis 4:10-11, where Abel's blood cried from the ground. All the innocent blood the earth has absorbed will be revealed.
21. The final clause — 'and will no longer cover its slain' (velo-tekhasseh od al-harugeiha) — means that every murder, every injustice concealed in history will be exposed. The earth itself becomes a witness, unable to hide the evidence any longer. This anticipates Revelation 6:10, where the martyrs cry out for vindication.

27

Summary: *Isaiah 27 concludes the four-chapter 'Isaiah's Apocalypse' with three decisive acts: the slaying of Leviathan, the tender renewal of God's vineyard, and the gathering of scattered exiles. On that day the LORD draws His great sword against Leviathan — the twisting serpent, the dragon of the sea — and slays it. Then comes a vineyard song (vv. 2-6) that deliberately reverses chapter 5's vineyard of disappointment: where the earlier vineyard produced wild grapes and was abandoned, this vineyard is guarded day and night by a God who has no wrath, who waters it every moment. Israel will bud, blossom, and fill the world with fruit. The middle section addresses Israel's discipline: Jacob's guilt is atoned when altar stones are crushed to chalk and Asherah poles fall. The chapter — and the entire Apocalypse — closes with the sound of the great trumpet (shofar gadol), summoning the lost and scattered from Assyria and Egypt to worship the LORD on the holy mountain in Jerusalem. We rendered this concluding chapter with attention to its tone of resolution and restoration, preserving the vineyard reversal and*

the triumphant finality of the great trumpet.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vineyard song (vv. 2-6) is a deliberate revision of Isaiah 5:1-7. In chapter 5, the vineyard was lovingly planted but produced bad fruit, and God tore down its walls in judgment. Here, the same God tends a vineyard with no anger — He waters it constantly, guards it day and night, and invites even thorns and briars to make peace with Him rather than face burning. The shift from wrath to tenderness is theologically momentous: God has moved from judgment to restoration. The Leviathan slaying (v. 1) draws on ancient Near Eastern combat mythology (the Ugaritic texts describe Baal's battle with the sea-serpent Litanu/Lotan) but radicalizes it: YHWH defeats cosmic chaos not in primordial time but on the eschatological 'that day.' The great trumpet (v. 13) becomes a key image in later Jewish and Christian eschatology (cf. Matt 24:31; 1 Cor 15:52; 1 Thess 4:16).*

Translation Friction: *The Leviathan references (v. 1) name three entities — or possibly one entity with three descriptions: 'Leviathan the fleeing serpent, Leviathan the twisting serpent, and the dragon in the sea.' The relationship between these figures (one monster, two, or three?) is debated. The Ugaritic parallel (KTU 1.5.I.1-3) lists similar epithets for a single creature, suggesting Isaiah describes one cosmic enemy with multiple aspects. The 'altar stones crushed to chalk' (v. 9) as the condition for atonement is surprising — it appears to require the destruction of pagan altars (or possibly even Israelite altars that had been corrupted) as the price of forgiveness. We rendered bezot ('by this') without specifying what is being atoned for, as the Hebrew leaves the referent somewhat open. The 'city' in verses 10-11 (fortified, forsaken, a pasture for calves) may be Jerusalem under judgment, the same unnamed city of chaos, or a composite image.*

Connections: *Leviathan (v. 1) appears in Job 41, Psalm 74:14, and Psalm 104:26, and connects to Revelation 12-13 (the dragon and sea-beast). The vineyard song (vv. 2-6) reverses Isaiah 5:1-7 and anticipates Jesus' vineyard parables (Matt 21:33-46; John 15:1-8). The great trumpet (v. 13) connects to Leviticus 25:9 (Jubilee trumpet), Matthew 24:31 ('He will send His angels with a great trumpet'), 1 Corinthians 15:52 ('at the last trumpet'), and 1 Thessalonians 4:16. The gathering of exiles from Assyria and Egypt fulfills the promise of Isaiah 11:11-12. Worship on the holy mountain (v. 13) concludes the Apocalypse with the same image that opened it: the LORD reigning on Mount Zion (24:23).*

¹On that day the LORD will punish with His sword —
His cruel, great, and mighty sword —
Leviathan the fleeing serpent,
Leviathan the twisting serpent,
and He will slay the dragon that is in the sea.

²On that day:
"A vineyard of delight — sing of it!"

³"I, the LORD, am its keeper;
every moment I water it.
Lest anyone harm it,
night and day I guard it."

⁴"Wrath is not in Me.
If thorns and briars should confront Me in battle —
I would march against them,
I would burn them all together."

⁵"Or let him take hold of My refuge,
let him make peace with Me —
yes, let him make peace with Me."

⁶In days to come Jacob shall take root,
Israel shall bud and blossom
and fill the face of the world with fruit.

⁷Has He struck Israel
as He struck those who struck her?
Has she been slain
as her slayers were slain?

⁸By measure, by exile,
You contended with her;
He removed her with His fierce wind
on a day of east wind.

⁹Therefore by this Jacob's guilt shall be atoned for,
and this is the full fruit of removing his sin:
when he makes all the altar stones
like chalk stones ground to pieces —
no Asherah poles or incense altars shall stand.

¹⁰For the fortified city stands alone,
a habitation abandoned and forsaken like a wilderness.
There the calf grazes,
there it lies down
and strips bare its branches.

¹¹When its branches dry out they are broken off;
women come and make fires with them.
For this is not a people of understanding;
therefore their Maker will not have compassion on them,
and their Former will show them no favor.

¹²On that day the LORD will thresh
from the flowing Euphrates to the Brook of Egypt,
and you shall be gathered one by one,
O children of Israel.

¹³On that day a great trumpet shall be blown,
and those perishing in the land of Assyria
and those driven out to the land of Egypt
shall come and worship the LORD
on the holy mountain in Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Three descriptions of the enemy: livyatan nachash bariach ('Leviathan the fleeing/darting serpent'), livyatan nachash aqallaton ('Leviathan the twisting/coiling serpent'), and hattannin asher bayyam ('the dragon/sea-monster that is in the sea'). The sword (cherev) is itself described with three adjectives: qashah ('harsh, cruel'), gedolah ('great'), and chazaqah ('strong, mighty'). The triple sword matches the triple enemy.
1. The slaying of Leviathan is the final act of cosmic judgment. While chapters 24-26 dealt with the earth, its cities, and its peoples, chapter 27 begins by addressing the ultimate spiritual enemy — the chaos-power behind the chaos. The bayyom hahu ('on that day') formula ties this to the eschatological sequence.

2. The vineyard song begins with the same formula: bayyom hahu ('on that day'). The kerem chemed ('vineyard of delight/desire') recalls the kerem of Isaiah 5:1, but where that vineyard disappointed, this one delights. The command annu-lah ('sing of it/respond to it') invites a song — this is the new vineyard song, replacing the bitter harvest of chapter 5.
3. God speaks in first person: ani YHWH notsrah ('I, the LORD, am its keeper'). The frequency of care is extraordinary: lirga'im ('every moment, constantly') He waters it. Night and day (laylah veyomam) He guards it (etsorenah). In chapter 5, God removed the vineyard's hedge and let it be trampled. Here, the opposite: ceaseless, watchful, tender care. The reversal is complete.
3. The verb natsar ('to keep, to guard, to watch over') implies both protection and cultivation. God is simultaneously gardener and guardian.
4. The astonishing declaration: chemah ein li ('wrath is not in Me'). God's posture toward His vineyard has changed from the fury of chapter 5 to the absence of wrath. The thorns and briers (shamir shayit — the same pair from 5:6 and 7:23-25) are potential enemies, not the vineyard itself. If they attack, God will burn them — but the burning is protective, not punitive toward the vineyard. God fights for His vineyard, not against it.
5. Even the thorns and briers have a second option: instead of being burned, they can grasp God's ma'uzi ('My refuge, My stronghold') and make peace (shalom) with Him. The repetition — shalom ya'aseh li, shalom ya'aseh li ('let him make peace with Me, let him make peace with Me') — is emphatic. God prefers reconciliation to destruction. The offer of peace to the very enemies of the vineyard is remarkable: even thorns can become part of God's peace.
6. The vineyard's purpose is revealed: Jacob takes root (yashrish), Israel buds and blossoms (yatsits ufarach), and the fruit fills the face of the world (umale'u fenei-tevel tenuvah). The progression — root, bud, blossom, fruit — describes complete agricultural fulfillment. The scope is global: not just Israel's land but the face of the world (tevel) is covered with Israel's fruit. The vineyard that was destroyed in chapter 5 now produces abundance that blesses all nations.
7. Two rhetorical questions demand the answer 'No.' God's discipline of Israel is not the same as His destruction of Israel's enemies. The verb hikkahu ('He struck him') is used twice with different subjects — God strikes Israel differently from how He strikes the nations. Israel's punishment is measured, corrective; the nations' destruction is final. The distinction between discipline and destruction is crucial to the chapter's theology.
8. The debated word besa'ase'ah may mean 'by measure' (i.e., measured discipline) or may relate to the word for a dry measure (se'ah), implying 'measure by measure.' The verb terivenah ('You contended with her') describes God's legal dispute with Israel — not arbitrary punishment but judicial process. The 'east wind' (qadim) is the sirocco from the desert, the instrument of exile. God's 'fierce wind' (rucho haqqashah) drives Israel into dispersion, but even this is measured, not total.
9. The condition of atonement (yekhuppar avon Ya'aqov) is specific: the altar stones must be smashed to chalk dust (avnei gir menupatsot), and the Asherah poles (asherim) and incense altars (chammanim) must be permanently removed. The 'altar stones' likely refer to pagan altars or syncretistic worship sites. The word menupatsot ('ground to pieces, shattered') indicates total destruction — no reconstruction possible.
9. The phrase vezeh kol-peri ('and this is the full fruit') uses agricultural language: the 'fruit' of Israel's discipline is the complete removal of idolatry. Discipline produces the fruit that the original vineyard failed to yield (ch. 5).
10. The fortified city (ir betsura) is now badad ('alone, solitary') — the word used for mourning isolation (cf. Lam 1:1, 'How lonely sits the city'). The once-populated habitation (navah) is meshullach ('abandoned, sent away') and ne'ezav ('forsaken') like a wilderness (midbar). Calves graze freely in its ruins — a sign of total desolation. The branches (se'ifeiha) that the calf strips bare may be remnants of gardens or orchards that once adorned the city.
11. The dried branches (qetsiraha) of the abandoned city are gathered by women for fuel — the final indignity of a destroyed settlement. The theological verdict is severe: lo am-binot hu ('this is not a people of understanding'). Because they lack discernment, their Maker (osehu) will not show compassion (racham) and their Former (yotsero) will not show favor (channan). The titles 'Maker' and 'Former' — creation language — heighten the tragedy: the Creator withdraws mercy from His own creatures.
12. The verb yachbot ('He will thresh, beat out') describes the careful separation of grain from chaff — God will thresh the territory from the Euphrates (shibbolet hannahar, 'the flowing channel of the River') to the Brook of Egypt (nachal Mitsrayim, the Wadi el-Arish). These are the ideal borders of the promised land (Gen 15:18). Within this vast territory, Israelites will be gathered le'echad echad ('one by one') — individually, carefully, none overlooked.
12. The image of threshing conveys both judgment (separating chaff) and harvest (gathering grain). The Israelites are the grain; they will be individually gathered from among the nations.
13. The Apocalypse concludes with the great trumpet (shofar gadol). Those 'perishing' (ha'ovedim) in Assyria and those 'driven out' (hanniddachim) to Egypt — representing the northern and southern diaspora respectively — hear the blast and come. The destination is singular and specific: the holy mountain (har haqqodesh) in Jerusalem. The final verb is vehishtachavu ('and they shall worship') — the entire four-chapter sequence resolves in worship on Zion.
13. This verse becomes foundational for Jewish and Christian eschatology. Jesus references the great trumpet in Matthew 24:31 ('He will send His angels with a great trumpet call, and they will gather His elect from the four winds'). Paul echoes it in 1 Corinthians 15:52 ('at the last trumpet') and 1 Thessalonians 4:16 ('with the trumpet call of God'). The Apocalypse that began with the earth emptied (24:1) ends with the earth's scattered people gathered home.

28

Summary: *Isaiah 28 opens the sequence of six 'Woe' oracles (chapters 28-33) with a judgment against the drunkards of Ephraim, whose fading crown of glory will be trampled by an Assyrian flood. The oracle then pivots sharply to Jerusalem, where scoffing leaders have made a 'covenant with death' — trusting in lies rather than the LORD. Against their false foundation, God lays a tested stone in Zion: a precious cornerstone, sure and unshakable. Justice becomes the measuring line, righteousness the plumb line, and the refuge of lies is swept away. The chapter closes with a masterful farmer parable (vv. 23-29) in which God teaches that His discipline — like plowing, sowing, and threshing — is always purposeful, proportioned, and temporary. We rendered this chapter with attention to its structural irony: the mockers' babble-syllables become the instrument of their own undoing, and the cornerstone passage stands as one of the most important messianic texts in the prophetic canon.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 16 introduces the image of the eben bochan — a tested stone, a precious cornerstone, a sure foundation laid in Zion. This language is quoted or alluded to in Romans 9:33, Ephesians 2:20, and 1 Peter 2:4-8, where it is applied directly to the Messiah. The farmer parable (vv. 23-29) is unique in Isaiah — an extended wisdom mashal embedded within a prophetic oracle, teaching that God's judgments are as purposeful and varied as the farmer's methods of plowing, sowing, and threshing. The tsav latsav, qav laqav refrain (vv. 10, 13) is one of the most debated passages in Hebrew prophecy: likely onomatopoeic mockery that God turns back on the mockers.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered eben bochan as 'a tested stone' rather than the traditional 'a tried stone,' since the Hebrew bochan derives from the root b-ch-n (to assay, to test metals for quality). The phrase 'covenant with death' (v. 15) is retained literally; it likely refers to a diplomatic alliance with Egypt, though some scholars see an allusion to necromancy or an occult pact. The tsav latsav, qav laqav syllables (vv. 10, 13) resist definitive translation — they may mimic a child's alphabet lesson, mock prophetic repetition, or be deliberately meaningless babble. We rendered them as 'command upon command... line upon line' to preserve recognizability while noting the mockery in the translator's notes. In verse 16, 'will never be shaken' replaces the KJV's 'shall not make haste,' following the Septuagint reading that Paul uses in Romans 9:33.*

Connections: *The cornerstone (v. 16) connects to Psalm 118:22, Zechariah 10:4, Daniel 2:34-35 (the stone that strikes the statue), Matthew 21:42, Acts 4:11, Romans 9:33, Ephesians 2:20, and 1 Peter 2:4-8. The 'foreign lips' judgment (v. 11) is quoted by Paul in 1 Corinthians 14:21 regarding the gift of tongues. The 'strange work' of God (v. 21) fighting against His own people reverses the victories at Perazim (2 Samuel 5:20) and Gibeon (Joshua 10:10-12). The farmer parable echoes wisdom traditions found in Proverbs and anticipates Jesus' agricultural parables. The 'covenant with death' reverses the covenant hope of Isaiah 25:8 ('He will swallow up death forever').*

¹Woe to the proud crown of Ephraim's drunkards,
to the fading blossom of its splendid beauty,
set on the head of a rich valley —
those hammered by wine!

²Look — the Lord has one who is mighty and strong.
Like a storm of hail, a torrent of destruction,
like a flood of mighty, overwhelming waters,
he will hurl it down to the earth with force.

³The proud crown of Ephraim's drunkards
will be trampled underfoot.

⁴And the fading blossom of its splendid beauty,
set on the head of a rich valley,
will be like an early fig before summer —

whoever sees it swallows it
the moment it is in his hand.

⁵On that day the LORD of Hosts Himself will become
a crown of splendor and a diadem of beauty
for the remnant of His people,

⁶a spirit of justice for the one who sits in judgment,
and strength for those who turn back
the battle at the gate.

⁷But these also stagger from wine
and reel from strong drink:
priest and prophet stagger from strong drink,
swallowed up by wine,
reeling from strong drink.
They stagger in their visions;
they stumble in their judgments.

⁸For every table is covered with vomit —
filth with no clean place left.

⁹'Whom will he teach knowledge?
Whom will he instruct in the message?
Those just weaned from milk?
Those just taken from the breast?'

¹⁰'For it is command upon command, command upon command,
line upon line, line upon line,
a little here, a little there.'

¹¹Indeed, through foreign lips and an alien tongue
the LORD will speak to this people.

¹²He had told them,
'This is the place of rest — give rest to the weary;
this is the place of repose.'
But they would not listen.

¹³So the word of the LORD will become for them
command upon command, command upon command,
line upon line, line upon line,
a little here, a little there —
so that they will go and stumble backward,
be broken, ensnared, and captured.

¹⁴Therefore hear the word of the LORD,
you scoffers who rule this people in Jerusalem.

¹⁵Because you have said,
 'We have cut a covenant with death;
 with Sheol we have made a pact.
 When the overwhelming scourge sweeps through,
 it will not reach us,
 for we have made lies our refuge
 and hidden ourselves behind falsehood.'

¹⁶Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says:
 'Look — I am laying in Zion a stone,
 a tested stone,
 a precious cornerstone, a sure foundation.
 The one who trusts will never be shaken.'

¹⁷I will make justice the measuring line
 and righteousness the plumb line.
 Hail will sweep away the refuge of lies,
 and waters will flood the hiding place.

¹⁸Your covenant with death will be annulled,
 and your pact with Sheol will not stand.
 When the overwhelming scourge sweeps through,
 you will be trampled by it.

¹⁹As often as it passes through, it will seize you —
 morning after morning it will sweep over,
 by day and by night.
 Sheer terror will be the only way
 to understand this message.

²⁰For the bed is too short to stretch out on,
 and the blanket too narrow to wrap around you.

²¹For the LORD will rise as He did at Mount Perazim;
 He will storm as in the Valley of Gibeon —
 to do His work, His strange work,
 and perform His task, His alien task.

²²Now stop your scoffing,
 lest your chains grow even tighter,
 for I have heard from the Lord GOD of Hosts
 a decree of destruction determined against the whole land.

²³Listen and hear my voice;
 pay attention and hear my words.

²⁴Does the farmer plow all day just to sow?
 Does he endlessly break and harrow his ground?

²⁵When he has leveled its surface,
does he not scatter black cumin and sow cumin,
plant wheat in rows and barley in its place,
and spelt along the border?

²⁶For his God instructs him
and teaches him the right way.

²⁷Black cumin is not threshed with a sledge,
nor is a cart wheel rolled over cumin.
Black cumin is beaten out with a stick,
and cumin with a rod.

²⁸Grain for bread is crushed,
but not forever does the farmer thresh it.
He drives the cart wheel over it
but does not grind it to dust.

²⁹This also comes from the LORD of Hosts —
wonderful in counsel,
magnificent in wisdom.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Hoi' is rendered 'Woe' throughout these oracles as a standard prophetic exclamation of grief and judgment. The 'proud crown' (ateret ge'ut) likely refers to Samaria's hilltop position, wreathed like a garland above the fertile valleys of the northern kingdom. The participle halumei ('hammered, struck down') conveys violent inebriation, not casual drinking.
2. The unnamed 'mighty and strong one' is the Assyrian king, used as God's instrument of judgment against Samaria. Three storm images — hail, destructive wind, and flood — pile up to convey irresistible force.
3. The trampling metaphor completes the garland image from verse 1 — what was worn on the head in drunken revelry is now crushed beneath the feet of the invader.
4. The early fig (bikkurah) ripened in June, weeks before the main harvest; its rarity made it a prized delicacy snatched up instantly. So Samaria will be devoured the moment the opportunity arises — eagerly and completely.
5. The contrast is sharp: Ephraim's proud crown fades (v. 1), but the LORD becomes the true crown for the faithful remnant. The phrase 'on that day' (bayyom hahu) marks the eschatological pivot within the oracle.
6. The gate was the place of both civic judgment and military defense. God empowers righteous governance and courageous defense alike — a portrait of the restored community.
7. The focus shifts from Ephraim to Judah's own leaders. The hammering repetition of shagu ('they stagger') and ta'u ('they reel') mimics the lurching of drunkenness. Both priest (kohen) and prophet (navi) — the twin pillars of spiritual leadership — are compromised.
8. The revolting image conveys total moral and spiritual contamination among the leadership. These are banquet tables — the places where leaders deliberate and feast — now defiled beyond use.
9. The mockers speak sarcastically, implying Isaiah treats them like infants who need elementary lessons. Their disdain for prophetic instruction becomes the basis for God's devastating response in vv. 11-13.
10. The Hebrew syllables are nearly nonsensical, possibly mimicking a child's alphabet lesson or mocking the repetitive cadence of prophetic instruction. The effect is deliberate contempt: 'He just goes on and on with his little rules and little lines.' This mockery will be turned against the mockers in v. 13.
11. Since they mocked the prophet's clear Hebrew, God will 'speak' through Assyrian invaders whose language they cannot understand. Paul applies this passage to the gift of tongues in 1 Corinthians 14:21, arguing that unintelligible speech is a sign of judgment, not blessing.
12. God had offered genuine rest (menuchah) through obedience and trust, but their refusal transforms the gracious offer into a sentence of judgment. The theme of rest refused anticipates 30:15.

13. The same babble-syllables the mockers used (v. 10) now become the instrument of their downfall — prophetic irony at its sharpest. The fivefold chain of consequences (go, stumble backward, be broken, be ensnared, be captured) conveys total and progressive destruction.
14. The address shifts explicitly to Jerusalem's leaders — *anshei latson* ('men of scoffing'). This is no longer about Ephraim alone; the southern kingdom's rulers are equally culpable.
15. The 'covenant with death' likely refers to a political alliance with Egypt or possibly occult practices such as necromancy. Either way, it is a grotesque parody of covenant faith — trusting in death and lies rather than in the living God.
16. This is one of the premier messianic texts in the Old Testament, quoted in Romans 9:33 and 1 Peter 2:6, where it is applied to Christ. We render 'will never be shaken' rather than the KJV's 'shall not make haste,' following the Septuagint reading (*ou me kataischythe*) that the apostolic writers adopted. The Hebrew *yachish* can mean both 'to hurry in panic' and 'to be disturbed' — 'never be shaken' captures the intended sense of unshakable confidence.
17. The construction metaphor continues: God builds with justice and righteousness as His measuring instruments, and what was built on falsehood cannot withstand the inspection. The hail and flood imagery echoes v. 2.
18. The false security of v. 15 collapses entirely. The verb *kuppar* ('annulled, wiped away') uses the same root as 'atonement' (*kippur*) — but here the covenant itself is what gets 'covered over' and erased.
19. The judgment is not a single event but relentless — morning after morning, day and night. What they refused to learn through the prophet's words they will learn through the visceral experience of terror. The Hebrew *ze'va'ah* ('sheer terror, trembling') is the grim tutor.
20. A proverb-like image of absurd inadequacy: their self-made security (the 'covenant with death') cannot cover or comfort them. It was never sufficient — the lie is exposed by simple experience.
21. At Perazim, God broke through the Philistines for David (2 Samuel 5:20). At Gibeon, God fought for Israel with hailstones (Joshua 10:10-11). Now the 'strange' reversal: He fights against His own people. The words *zar* ('strange, foreign') and *nakhriyyah* ('alien') emphasize how unnatural this is — judgment against His people is not God's native work.
22. The warning bridges the judgment oracle and the wisdom parable that follows. The 'decree of destruction' (*kalah venecheratsah*) echoes 10:22-23 and conveys an irreversible divine decision. The scoffers' continued mockery only strengthens their own bondage.
23. A fourfold call to attention (listen, hear, pay attention, hear) introduces the farmer parable, emphasizing its importance as a wisdom teaching. The imperatives demand the engagement the mockers have refused.
24. The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'no' — plowing is purposeful preparation, not an end in itself. The parable begins with the most basic agricultural observation: there are seasons for every task.
25. Each crop has its proper location and method — the farmer exercises careful discernment, not random effort. The variety of crops (black cumin, cumin, wheat, barley, spelt) mirrors the variety of God's dealings with different people and situations.
26. The farmer's skill comes from God — agricultural wisdom is itself a form of divine revelation. This grounding in theology elevates the parable: if God teaches even the farmer to work with purpose and proportion, how much more purposeful is God's own work of judgment and restoration?
27. Delicate seeds require gentle treatment — a heavy threshing sledge would crush them to powder. The analogy is clear: God's discipline is proportioned to what each situation and each people require. He does not treat everyone the same way.
28. Even heavy threshing has its limit — the grain must be processed but not destroyed. God's judgment is severe but purposeful: it separates husk from grain, never annihilating the grain itself.
29. The parable concludes by attributing all purposeful action — farming and judging alike — to God's sovereign wisdom. The word *tushiyyah* ('wisdom, sound counsel, effective working') emphasizes that God's plans are not merely intelligent but effective. His discipline always achieves its purpose.

29

Summary: Isaiah 29 pronounces a 'Woe' upon Ariel — Jerusalem, the city where David encamped — warning that God Himself will besiege her until she moans like a hearth-altar. Yet in a sudden reversal, the besieging nations will vanish like a dream, like a hungry man who eats in his sleep and wakes still famished. The chapter then diagnoses the spiritual blindness underlying Jerusalem's crisis: the prophets' vision has become a sealed scroll, the people honor God with their lips but their hearts are far from Him, and the wise men's wisdom will perish. The oracle closes with a promise of transformation: Lebanon will become a fruitful garden, the deaf will hear the words of the scroll, the blind will see, the humble will rejoice in the Holy One of Israel, and those who erred will accept instruction. We rendered this chapter with close attention to the Ariel wordplay, the sealed-scroll imagery, and the lips-versus-hearts indictment that Jesus will quote in Matthew 15.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 13 is one of the most consequential verses in the prophetic canon — Jesus quotes it directly in Matthew 15:8-9 and Mark 7:6-7 to indict the Pharisees: 'This people honors me with their lips, but their hearts are far from me; in vain do they worship me, teaching as doctrines the commandments of men.' The Ariel wordplay (vv. 1-2) is exquisite: 'ariel' means both 'lion of God' and 'altar hearth,' so God will make Jerusalem — His lion-city — become like an altar hearth, moaning with the fire of sacrifice. The sealed-scroll vision (vv. 11-12) reverses the normal prophetic pattern: instead of the word being opened and proclaimed, it is sealed shut — an image of judicial blindness.*

Translation Friction: *We retained 'Ariel' untranslated in the rendering, explaining the dual meaning in the notes, since both senses ('lion of God' and 'altar hearth') are active simultaneously and neither English equivalent captures both. The 'deep sleep' (tardemah) poured out in v. 10 is the same word used for Adam's sleep in Genesis 2:21 and Abram's in Genesis 15:12 — but here it is a sleep of judgment, not revelation. In v. 13, we follow the Septuagint-influenced form quoted by Jesus rather than the slightly different Masoretic syntax, noting the variation. The phrase 'their fear of me is a commandment taught by men' is rendered 'their worship of me is based on rules taught by men' for clarity.*

Connections: *Verse 13 is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 15:8-9 and Mark 7:6-7. The sealed vision (vv. 11-12) anticipates Daniel 12:4 ('seal the book until the time of the end') and Revelation 5:1-5 (the scroll no one can open). The reversal of deafness and blindness (vv. 18-19) anticipates Isaiah 35:5 and the messianic signs Jesus cites in Matthew 11:5. The potter-and-clay image (v. 16) is developed further in Isaiah 45:9 and 64:8, and Paul draws on it in Romans 9:20-21. The promise that 'those who err in spirit will gain understanding' (v. 24) echoes the wisdom tradition and anticipates the new covenant promise of Jeremiah 31:33-34.*

¹Woe to Ariel, Ariel,
the city where David encamped!
Let year follow year;
let the festivals run their cycle.

²Yet I will bring distress upon Ariel,
and there will be mourning and lamentation,
and she will become to me like a true altar hearth.

³I will encamp against you on every side;
I will besiege you with towers
and raise siege works against you.

⁴You will be brought low;
from the ground you will speak,
and from the dust your words will come muffled.
Your voice will rise from the earth like a ghost's,
and your speech will whisper from the dust.

⁵But the horde of your enemies will become like fine dust,
and the mob of the ruthless like driven chaff.
It will happen in an instant, suddenly —

⁶the LORD of Hosts will intervene
with thunder, earthquake, and a great roar,
with whirlwind, tempest,
and a flame of devouring fire.

⁷Then the horde of all the nations
waging war against Ariel —
all who attack her, her stronghold,
and all who distress her —
will be like a dream, a vision in the night.

⁸As when a hungry man dreams he is eating
but wakes with his stomach empty,
or a thirsty man dreams he is drinking
but wakes faint, his throat still parched —
so will it be with the horde of all the nations
that wage war against Mount Zion.

⁹Stupify yourselves and be stunned!
Blind yourselves and be blind!
They are drunk, but not with wine;
they stagger, but not from strong drink.

¹⁰For the LORD has poured over you
a spirit of deep sleep.
He has shut your eyes — the prophets;
He has covered your heads — the seers.

¹¹The entire vision has become for you
like the words of a sealed scroll.
When it is handed to one who can read, saying,
'Please read this,'
he replies, 'I cannot — it is sealed.'

¹²And when the scroll is handed to one who cannot read, saying,
'Please read this,'
he replies, 'I do not know how to read.'

¹³The Lord says:
'Because this people draw near with their mouths
and honor me with their lips,
but their hearts are far from me,
and their worship of me
is based on rules taught by men —'

¹⁴therefore I will again do extraordinary things
with this people —
extraordinary and astounding.
The wisdom of their wise will perish,
and the discernment of their discerning will vanish.

¹⁵Woe to those who go to great depths
to hide their plans from the LORD,
whose deeds are done in darkness,

who say, 'Who sees us? Who knows us?'

¹⁶How you turn things upside down!
 Shall the potter be regarded as the clay?
 Shall what is made say of its maker,
 'He did not make me'?
 Shall what is formed say of the one who formed it,
 'He has no understanding'?

¹⁷Is it not just a little while longer
 before Lebanon becomes a fruitful garden,
 and the fruitful garden is counted as a forest?

¹⁸On that day the deaf will hear
 the words of the scroll,
 and out of gloom and darkness
 the eyes of the blind will see.

¹⁹The humble will increase their joy in the LORD,
 and the poorest among people
 will rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.

²⁰For the ruthless will come to nothing,
 the scoffer will vanish,
 and all who watch for a chance to do evil
 will be cut off —

²¹those who condemn a person with a single word,
 who set traps for the one who seeks justice at the gate,
 and who push the righteous aside with empty claims.

²²Therefore this is what the LORD says —
 He who redeemed Abraham —
 concerning the house of Jacob:
 'Jacob will no longer be ashamed,
 nor will his face grow pale,

²³for when he sees his children,
 the work of my hands, in his midst,
 they will sanctify my name.
 They will sanctify the Holy One of Jacob
 and stand in awe of the God of Israel.

²⁴Those who err in spirit will gain understanding,
 and those who grumble will accept instruction.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double address 'Ariel, Ariel' is emphatic and mournful. The instruction to continue their festivals ('let year follow year, let the festivals run their cycle') is bitterly ironic — their religious routine cannot avert what is coming.

2. The wordplay resolves: God will make Jerusalem function as her name implies — an altar hearth, a place where fire consumes. The alliteration ta'aninyah va'aninyah ('mourning and lamentation') mimics the sound of wailing.
3. God speaks in the first person as the one who orchestrates the siege — not merely allowing it but actively directing it. The military terminology (encampment, siege mound, fortifications) is precise and terrifying.
4. The image of Jerusalem speaking from the dust like a ghost ('ov — a spirit of the dead, the same word used for the medium at Endor in 1 Samuel 28:7) is haunting. The proud city will be reduced to a faint whisper rising from rubble.
5. The sudden reversal: the besieging armies themselves will vanish like dust and chaff. The phrase lepet'a pit'om ('in an instant, suddenly') emphasizes the shocking speed of divine intervention.
6. God's intervention is a theophany — thunder, earthquake, storm, and fire are the classic signs of divine presence (cf. Exodus 19:16-18; 1 Kings 19:11-12). The same God who besieged Jerusalem now destroys her besiegers.
7. The dream simile is developed over vv. 7-8: the vast enemy host will prove as insubstantial as a night vision. This prophecy found initial fulfillment in Sennacherib's mysterious overnight destruction (Isaiah 37:36).
8. One of Isaiah's most vivid similes: the nations' conquest of Jerusalem will prove as satisfying as eating in a dream — the mouth chews, the throat swallows, but the belly remains hollow. The parallelism between hunger/eating and thirst/drinking is perfectly balanced.
9. The imperatives are bitterly ironic, possibly reflexive: 'Go ahead, keep stupefying yourselves!' The drunkenness without wine is spiritual intoxication — a willful blindness that has become a divine judgment. This echoes the drunken leaders of 28:7-8.
10. The prophets and seers — those whose very job is to see and speak — have been blinded and silenced by God Himself. This is the most severe form of judgment: not destruction of the body but destruction of spiritual perception.
11. The sealed-scroll image is one of Isaiah's most powerful metaphors for spiritual blindness. The literate person has the skill but not the access; the scroll's meaning is locked away. This image reappears in Daniel 12:4 and Revelation 5:1-5.
12. The paired excuses — 'it is sealed' (v. 11) and 'I cannot read' (v. 12) — cover every possibility. Whether the obstacle is access or ability, the result is the same: the word of God goes unread, unheard, and unobeyed.
13. This verse is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 15:8-9 and Mark 7:6-7 to indict the Pharisees for placing human tradition above God's commands. The indictment has two parts: (1) the gap between lips and heart, and (2) the substitution of human rules for genuine reverence. We rendered yir'atam ('their fear/reverence') as 'their worship' for clarity in English, since the Hebrew concept of 'fearing God' encompasses the whole posture of worship.
14. The 'extraordinary things' (haple' vapele') are deliberately ambiguous — they could be wonders of judgment or salvation, and in context they are both. Paul quotes the second half in 1 Corinthians 1:19 to argue that God overturns human wisdom through the cross.
15. A sub-woe within the larger oracle targets those who plot in secret, imagining God cannot perceive them. The irony is acute: they are blind to God (v. 10) and assume He is equally blind to them.
16. The potter-and-clay image exposes the absurdity of the creature presuming to instruct — or hide from — the Creator. Paul develops this argument extensively in Romans 9:19-21. The inversion (haphkehkhem, 'your turning things upside down') is both intellectual and moral.
17. The reversal is total: the mighty cedar forest of Lebanon becomes cultivated farmland, and ordinary farmland grows so abundantly it resembles a forest. Nature itself will be transformed in the coming restoration.
18. The sealed scroll of vv. 11-12 will finally be opened and heard. The deaf and blind — whether physically or spiritually afflicted — will receive perception. This anticipates Isaiah 35:5 and Jesus' messianic signs in Matthew 11:5 and Luke 7:22.
19. The restoration reverses the social order: the humble ('anavim) and the poor ('evyonei adam) — those most marginalized — are the first to experience joy. The full title 'the Holy One of Israel' is maintained as a covenant-identity marker.
20. Three categories of oppressors — the ruthless ('arits), the scoffer (lets), and those who lie in wait for evil (shokdei aven) — are systematically eliminated. The threefold structure mirrors the threefold restoration of vv. 18-19.
21. The specific sins of the oppressors are legal in nature: false accusations ('condemn with a word'), entrapment of advocates ('set traps for the one who seeks justice'), and perversion of justice ('push the righteous aside'). The gate was the court of law in ancient Israel.
22. The phrase 'He who redeemed Abraham' is unique in the Old Testament — God's redemptive work reaching all the way back to the patriarch's call out of Ur. The promise of no more shame anticipates the full restoration when the causes of shame (spiritual blindness, injustice, oppression) are removed.
23. The restoration produces genuine worship — the precise opposite of the lips-without-hearts religion condemned in v. 13. Jacob's children, described as 'the work of my hands,' will sanctify God's name with authentic reverence.
24. The chapter ends where it began — with the problem of understanding — but now resolved. Those who wandered in confusion (to'ei ruach) will gain discernment (binah), and the chronic complainers (rogenim) will finally learn (leqach — 'teaching, instruction'). The sealed scroll of v. 11 is, in the end, opened.

30

Summary: *Isaiah 30 pronounces 'Woe' on the rebellious children who seek refuge in Egypt rather than trusting the LORD. Envoys travel south with treasures loaded on donkeys and camels, journeying through the dangerous Negev toward a nation that cannot help them. But at the oracle's center stands one of the most tender promises in all of Scripture: 'In returning and rest you shall be saved; in quietness and trust shall be your strength' (v. 15) — a promise they refuse. Yet the LORD waits to be gracious (v. 18), and when they cry out, He will answer. A teacher will no longer be hidden, and when they stray, they will hear a voice behind them saying, 'This is the way — walk in it' (v. 21). The chapter concludes with a vision of abundant blessing on the land and a terrifying theophany of the LORD's wrath against Assyria, whose king will be shattered by His voice and consumed by fire. We rendered this chapter with particular care for the pastoral tenderness of vv. 15-21, which stand in deliberate contrast to the political folly that frames them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 15 — 'In returning and rest you shall be saved; in quietness and trust shall be your strength' — is one of the most quoted verses in the prophetic canon and a cornerstone of biblical spirituality. It defines salvation not as military strategy but as repentance (shuvah, 'returning'), rest (nachah), quietness (hashqet), and trust (bitachah). Verse 18 — 'The LORD waits to be gracious to you' — presents a God who delays judgment not out of indifference but out of longing to show mercy. Verse 21 — 'This is the way, walk in it' — has become a foundational text for guidance theology, promising a voice that corrects in real time. The 'teacher' of v. 20 (moreh, singular) who will no longer be hidden has messianic resonances.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered moreh (v. 20) as 'your Teacher' (singular, capitalized) based on the Masoretic pointing, which treats it as singular despite some versions reading a plural 'teachers.' The singular fits the messianic reading and the intimate guidance of v. 21. The 'bread of adversity and water of affliction' (v. 20) likely refers to siege rations — the very suffering that will open their eyes to the Teacher. In v. 33, Topheth (tophth) is the burning ground in the Valley of Hinnom associated with child sacrifice (2 Kings 23:10; Jeremiah 7:31); we retained the name and explained its significance. The phrase 'the breath of the LORD, like a stream of burning sulfur, sets it ablaze' applies sacrificial-destruction language to Assyria — the fire prepared for the king of Assyria is the same fire of Topheth.*

Connections: *Verse 15's theology of rest connects to Exodus 33:14 ('My presence will go with you, and I will give you rest'), Psalm 46:10 ('Be still and know that I am God'), Matthew 11:28-29 ('Come to me, all who are weary... and I will give you rest'), and Hebrews 4:1-11 (the Sabbath rest for the people of God). Verse 21's guiding voice echoes Psalm 32:8 ('I will instruct you and teach you the way you should go'). The Topheth imagery (v. 33) anticipates Jesus' use of Gehenna (the Greek form of ge-hinnom) as a metaphor for final judgment (Matthew 5:22; Mark 9:43-48). The LORD waiting to be gracious (v. 18) connects to 2 Peter 3:9 ('The Lord is not slow in keeping His promise... He is patient with you').*

¹Woe to the rebellious children,
declares the LORD,
who carry out plans, but not mine,
who forge alliances, but not by my Spirit,
piling sin upon sin.

²They set out to go down to Egypt
without consulting me,
to take refuge in Pharaoh's protection
and shelter in Egypt's shadow.

³But Pharaoh's protection will become your shame,
and shelter in Egypt's shadow your humiliation.

⁴Though their officials have reached Zoan
and their envoys have arrived at Hanes,

⁵everyone will be put to shame
by a people who cannot help them —
no aid, no benefit,
only shame and disgrace.

⁶An oracle concerning the beasts of the Negev:
Through a land of hardship and distress,
of lioness and roaring lion,
of viper and darting serpent,
they carry their wealth on the backs of donkeys
and their treasures on the humps of camels
to a people who cannot help them.

⁷Egypt's help is worthless and empty.
Therefore I call her
'Rahab who sits still.'

⁸Now go, write it on a tablet in their presence
and inscribe it on a scroll,
that it may serve for the days to come
as a witness forever.

⁹For this is a rebellious people,
deceitful children,
children who refuse to listen
to the instruction of the LORD.

¹⁰They say to the seers, 'Do not see!'
and to the prophets,
'Do not prophesy what is right to us.
Speak smooth things to us;
prophesy illusions!'

¹¹'Leave the way! Get off the path!
Stop confronting us
with the Holy One of Israel!'

¹²Therefore this is what the Holy One of Israel says:
Because you have rejected this word
and trusted in oppression and deceit,
leaning on them for support,

¹³this guilt will become for you
like a crack in a high wall,
bulging outward, ready to collapse —
whose shattering comes suddenly, in an instant.

¹⁴He will shatter it like a potter's jar,
crushed without mercy —
so thoroughly broken that among its fragments
not a shard will be found large enough
to scoop a coal from a hearth
or dip water from a cistern.

¹⁵For this is what the Lord GOD,
the Holy One of Israel, says:
'In returning and rest you shall be saved;
in quietness and trust shall be your strength.'
But you would not.

¹⁶But you said, 'No! We will flee on horses' —
therefore you will flee indeed!
'We will ride on swift steeds' —
therefore your pursuers will be swifter!

¹⁷A thousand will flee at the threat of one;
at the threat of five you will all flee,
until you are left
like a flagpole on a mountaintop,
like a signal banner on a hill.

¹⁸Yet the LORD waits to be gracious to you;
He rises to show you compassion.
For the LORD is a God of justice —
blessed are all who wait for Him.

¹⁹O people in Zion, who dwell in Jerusalem,
you will weep no more.
He will surely be gracious to you
at the sound of your cry;
when He hears it, He will answer you.

²⁰Though the Lord may give you
the bread of adversity and the water of affliction,
your Teacher will no longer be hidden.
Your own eyes will see your Teacher.

²¹And your ears will hear a voice behind you, saying,
'This is the way — walk in it,'
whether you turn to the right or to the left.

²²Then you will defile the silver plating of your carved idols
and the gold overlay of your cast images.
You will scatter them like filthy rags,
saying to them, 'Get out!'

²³He will give rain for the seed you sow in the ground,
and the bread that the soil produces
will be rich and abundant.
On that day your livestock will graze
in broad pastures.

²⁴The oxen and donkeys that work the soil
will eat seasoned fodder
winnowed with shovel and fork.

²⁵On every high mountain and every lofty hill
there will be streams and channels of water,
on the day of the great slaughter,
when the towers fall.

²⁶The light of the moon will be like the light of the sun,
and the light of the sun will be sevenfold —
like the light of seven days combined —
on the day the LORD binds up
the brokenness of His people
and heals the wound He inflicted.

²⁷Look — the name of the LORD comes from afar,
burning with anger, heavy with fury.
His lips are full of wrath,
and His tongue is like a devouring fire.

²⁸His breath is like an overflowing torrent
rising to the neck,
to sift the nations in a sieve of destruction
and to place on the jaws of the peoples
a bridle that leads them astray.

²⁹You will have a song
as on the night when a holy festival begins,
and gladness of heart
like one who walks with a flute
to come to the mountain of the LORD,
to the Rock of Israel.

³⁰The LORD will make His majestic voice heard
and reveal the descent of His arm
in furious anger —
a flame of devouring fire,
with cloudbursts, torrents, and hailstones.

³¹For at the voice of the LORD, Assyria will be shattered —
he who struck with a rod.

³²Every stroke of the appointed rod
that the LORD lays on Assyria
will be accompanied by tambourines and lyres,
as He fights against them with the sweep of His arm.

³³For Topheth has long been prepared;
it is made ready even for the king.
Its fire pit is deep and wide,
with plenty of fire and wood.
The breath of the LORD,
like a stream of burning sulfur,
sets it ablaze.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase 'rebellious children' (banim sorerim) echoes the language of Deuteronomy 21:18-20 (the rebellious son). The word massekah can mean 'drink offering' (suggesting a covenant ritual) or 'covering' — either way, they are making pacts without consulting the LORD. Each unauthorized alliance adds another layer of sin.
2. The descent 'down to Egypt' (laredet mitsrayim) echoes the patriarchal pattern — going down to Egypt is consistently associated with faithless self-reliance in biblical narrative (Genesis 12:10; 46:3-4). Pharaoh's 'shadow' (tsel) is a parody of the divine shadow of protection (Psalm 91:1).
3. The very thing they sought — strength and shelter — will become its opposite: shame and humiliation. The reversal is total and precisely targeted.
4. Zoan (Tanis) and Hanes (Heracleopolis) were Egyptian cities — the envoys have already traveled deep into Egypt to negotiate the alliance. The journey is already underway; the warning comes as they are mid-course.
5. The threefold negation — 'no aid, no benefit, only shame' — hammers home the futility of the Egyptian alliance. Egypt's inability to help is not a possibility but a certainty.
6. The caravan route through the Negev desert to Egypt was notoriously dangerous — infested with lions and venomous snakes. The irony is vivid: they risk life and treasure crossing a deadly wasteland to reach an ally who is useless. The 'fiery flying serpent' (saraph me'opheph) may refer to a species of sand viper or to the mythological reputation of Negev serpents.
7. The nickname 'Rahab who sits still' is one of Isaiah's most cutting epithets. Egypt boasts of cosmic power (the Rahab myth) but in practice does nothing — she sits idle while Judah's envoys beg for help.
8. God commands the prophecy to be written down — on both a public tablet (luach) and a permanent scroll (sepher) — so that future generations will have irrefutable evidence that He warned them. The double medium (tablet and scroll) ensures both public display and archival preservation.
9. Three descriptions escalate: rebellious (meri), deceitful (kechashim), and willfully deaf (lo' avu shemo'a — 'they are unwilling to hear'). The word torah here means 'instruction, teaching' — the prophet's God-given guidance, not merely the written law.
10. The people explicitly demand comfortable falsehood over uncomfortable truth. The word chalaqot ('smooth things') suggests flattery, and mahatalot ('illusions, deceits') are literally things that mislead. This is the ultimate corruption: the audience dictates the message.
11. The demand reaches its climax: they want the prophets not merely to soften the message but to remove the Holy One of Israel from their hearing altogether. The full title 'the Holy One of Israel' is maintained — it is precisely His holiness they cannot tolerate.
12. The Holy One of Israel — the very one they wanted removed — now speaks directly. The word they rejected (hadavar hazeh) is the prophetic warning; what they embrace instead is 'oshek (oppression, extortion) and naloz (crookedness, perversity).
13. The image is architectural and terrifying: a hairline crack in a massive wall that bulges slowly outward until the entire structure collapses without warning. The buildup is gradual; the collapse is instantaneous (pit'om lepet), 'suddenly, in an instant'.
14. The image of total destruction: not even a useful fragment remains. A potsherd large enough to carry a coal or scoop water would be small — yet even that modest remnant will not survive. The judgment is comprehensive.
15. This verse is one of the theological summits of Isaiah. The four terms (returning, rest, quietness, trust) form a complete spiritual program that stands in direct opposition to the four-term political program (plans without God, alliances without the Spirit, descent to Egypt, reliance on Pharaoh). The devastating coda — 'But you would not' (velo' avitem) — is three words in Hebrew, and they carry the weight of the entire oracle.
16. The wordplay is devastating: they say nanus ('we will gallop away') and God answers tenusum ('you will indeed flee — in retreat!'). Their chosen instrument of escape becomes their instrument of panicked flight. The swift horses they trusted will be outpaced by swifter pursuers.

17. The reversal of Deuteronomy's covenant blessing is explicit: in Deuteronomy 32:30, one Israelite chases a thousand enemies; here a thousand Israelites flee from one attacker. The lonely flagpole and banner are images of desolation — all that remains of a once-great army.
18. This is one of the most remarkable theological statements in Isaiah. After cataloging their rebellion, folly, and refusal, the text does not end in condemnation but in divine longing. The LORD's waiting is not passive indifference but active, purposeful patience — He delays judgment because He desires to show grace. The beatitude ('blessed are all who wait for Him') is the only ashrei formula in Isaiah.
19. The tone shifts from oracle to pastoral promise. The assurance 'you will weep no more' anticipates Isaiah 25:8 ('He will wipe away every tear') and Revelation 21:4. The immediacy of God's response — 'when He hears it, He will answer' — reverses the sealed-ear judgment of chapter 29.
20. We render *moreh* as singular ('your Teacher') following the Masoretic consonantal text, which supports a singular reading with messianic resonance. The 'bread of adversity and water of affliction' are likely siege rations — the suffering itself becomes the context in which God reveals Himself. The promise 'your own eyes will see' reverses the blindness of 29:10-12.
21. The guidance is personal ('your ears'), directional ('this is the way'), and corrective ('whether you turn right or left'). The voice behind suggests the Teacher of v. 20 who follows and redirects. This verse connects to Psalm 32:8 and anticipates Jesus' shepherd imagery in John 10.
22. The repentance described in v. 15 now takes physical form: the idols — however beautifully crafted — are treated as ritually unclean waste. The word *davah* ('menstrual impurity') is deliberately shocking, expressing total revulsion. The command 'Get out!' (*tse'*) treats the idol as a person being expelled.
23. The agricultural blessings reverse the 'bread of adversity' (v. 20). The covenant pattern of Deuteronomy 28 is restored: obedience brings rain, abundant harvests, and fat livestock. The phrase 'on that day' marks this as part of the eschatological restoration.
24. Even the work animals eat well — their fodder is not raw grain but *belil chamits* ('seasoned, fermented mixture'), a premium feed. The detail signals extraordinary prosperity: when the animals eat this well, the people feast.
25. The vision combines paradoxical images: abundant water on mountaintops (normally arid) alongside 'great slaughter' and falling towers. The blessing of water and the judgment on the enemy occur simultaneously — restoration for Israel and destruction for the oppressor happen on the same 'day.'
26. The cosmic intensification of light — moon becomes sun-bright, sun becomes seven times brighter — is a metaphor for the overwhelming joy and glory of restoration. The healing language ('binds up,' 'heals') acknowledges that God both wounded and restores, connecting to Hosea 6:1 and Deuteronomy 32:39.
27. The theophany begins: not God Himself but 'the name of the LORD' (*shem YHWH*) approaches — the manifestation of His presence and power. The anthropomorphic imagery (lips, tongue) emphasizes that God's word itself is the instrument of judgment.
28. Two images merge: a flood rising to the neck (near-drowning) and a sieve that separates (judgment as sorting). The 'bridle that leads astray' on the jaws of the peoples recalls 37:29, where God puts a hook in Sennacherib's nose — the nations think they are choosing their path, but God is directing them to their destruction.
29. While the nations face judgment, Israel celebrates. The night festival is likely Passover, which began at evening. The flute (*chalil*) was played in festival processions to the temple. 'The Rock of Israel' (*tsur yisra'el*) is a divine title emphasizing God's reliability and permanence.
30. The theophany reaches full intensity: voice, arm, fire, storm, and hail converge. The 'descent of His arm' (*nachat zero'o*) is a striking image of God's power striking downward like a hammer. The storm elements echo the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16-18).
31. The rod (*shevet*) with which Assyria struck the nations (cf. 10:5, 'the rod of my anger') is now powerless against the LORD's voice. The same instrument of God's discipline is itself disciplined — Assyria was always only a tool.
32. The blows of judgment are set to music — a bizarre and terrifying image. As God strikes Assyria, Israel celebrates with instruments. The 'battles of brandishing' (*milchamot tenufah*) suggest God swinging His arm like a priest waves an offering — judgment as liturgical act.
33. The chapter's final image is Topheth — the burning ground in the Valley of Hinnom where children were sacrificed to Molech. Now it is prepared for the king of Assyria. The 'breath of the LORD' (*nishmat YHWH*) that kindles it connects to the divine breath/spirit that creates (Genesis 2:7) and destroys. The stream of burning sulfur recalls Sodom's destruction (Genesis 19:24) and anticipates Revelation 19:20 and 20:10.

31

Summary: *Isaiah 31 is the briefest of the woe oracles and perhaps the most visceral. It opens with a final 'Woe' against those who go down to Egypt for military aid — trusting horses and chariots rather than looking to the Holy One of Israel. But God is also wise, Isaiah reminds them with biting irony, and He too can bring disaster. Egypt is human, not God; their horses are flesh, not spirit. When the LORD stretches out His hand, both helper and helped will stumble together. The oracle then pivots to two stunning animal similes: God will fight for Zion like a lion that refuses to be frightened off its prey by a crowd of shepherds, and He will hover over Jerusalem like birds in flight, shielding and delivering it. The chapter closes with a call to repentance — 'Return to the one you have so deeply revolted against' — and a promise that Assyria will fall by a sword that is not human, a sword not of mortals. We rendered this chapter with attention to the raw power of its imagery and the theological paradox at its heart: the same God is both the lion who will not let go and the bird who tenderly protects.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two animal similes in vv. 4-5 are theologically extraordinary. In v. 4, God is a lion crouching over its prey — fierce, immovable, undeterred by the noise of opposition. In v. 5, He is birds hovering over their young — tender, protective, shielding. The juxtaposition is deliberate: the God who fights for Zion is simultaneously ferocious and nurturing, and both images describe the same protective action. The 'sword not of man' (v. 8) has generated extensive messianic and eschatological interpretation — the defeat of Assyria will come by supernatural means, not military strategy.*

Translation Friction: *The lion simile in v. 4 is ambiguous in context: is the LORD the lion fighting for Zion (positive) or against Zion (negative)? The phrase 'so the LORD of Hosts will come down to fight on Mount Zion' could mean fight for or fight against. We follow the reading that takes vv. 4-5 together as positive — the lion and the birds both describe God's fierce-yet-tender protection of Jerusalem, consistent with the deliverance promise that follows. The 'birds hovering' (tsipporim afot) in v. 5 may specifically evoke the mother bird of Deuteronomy 32:11, who stirs her nest and hovers over her young — an image of protective training rather than passive shelter.*

Connections: *The condemnation of trusting Egypt's horses echoes Deuteronomy 17:16 (the king must not acquire many horses from Egypt) and anticipates Psalm 20:7 ('Some trust in chariots and some in horses, but we trust in the name of the LORD our God'). The hovering-bird image connects to Deuteronomy 32:11 (the eagle stirring its nest), Genesis 1:2 (the Spirit hovering over the waters), and Jesus' lament over Jerusalem in Matthew 23:37 ('how often I have longed to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings'). The 'sword not of man' anticipates the supernatural destruction of Sennacherib's army in Isaiah 37:36 and connects to Daniel 2:34 (the stone cut without human hands). The call to return (v. 6) uses the same root (shuv) as 30:15's 'in returning and rest.'*

¹Woe to those who go down to Egypt for help,
who rely on horses
and trust in chariots because they are many,
in horsemen because they are very strong,
but do not look to the Holy One of Israel
or seek the LORD!

²Yet He too is wise — and He brings disaster!
He does not take back His words.
He will rise against the house of evildoers
and against the allies of those who do wrong.

³The Egyptians are human, not God;
their horses are flesh, not spirit.
When the LORD stretches out His hand,

the helper will stumble
and the one helped will fall,
and both will perish together.

⁴For this is what the LORD has said to me:
As a lion — a great lion — growls over its prey,
and when a full band of shepherds
is called out against it,
it is not frightened by their shouting
nor cowed by their clamor —
so the LORD of Hosts will come down
to fight on Mount Zion and on its hill.

⁵Like birds hovering overhead,
so the LORD of Hosts will shield Jerusalem —
shielding and delivering,
passing over and rescuing.

⁶Return to the One
from whom you have so deeply revolted,
O children of Israel.

⁷For on that day, each of you will reject
your idols of silver and your idols of gold —
the sinful things your own hands have made.

⁸Assyria will fall by a sword not wielded by man;
a sword not of mortals will devour him.
He will flee before the sword,
and his young warriors will be put to forced labor.

⁹His rock will crumble in terror,
and his commanders will panic at the battle standard,
declares the LORD,
whose fire is in Zion
and whose furnace is in Jerusalem.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The final Egyptian-alliance woe. The catalogue of military assets (horses, chariots, horsemen) is set against the twofold spiritual failure: they do not 'look to' (sha'u) or 'seek' (darashu) the LORD. The full title 'the Holy One of Israel' stands in deliberate contrast to the military hardware they prefer.
2. The sarcasm is sharp: 'He too is wise' — as if they had forgotten that God might also have a strategy. While they scheme with Egypt, God has His own plan, and He does not retract His words. The 'house of evildoers' is Judah's leadership; the 'allies' are Egypt.
3. This verse contains one of the sharpest theological contrasts in the Old Testament: human versus God, flesh versus spirit. The outcome is inevitable — when the LORD acts, both the Egyptian helper and the Judean client collapse simultaneously. The mutual destruction ('both will perish together') is the final refutation of the alliance strategy.
4. The lion simile is raw and powerful: the lion has caught its prey and will not be intimidated by any number of shepherds. Applied to God, the image conveys unstoppable determination. The LORD 'comes down' (yered) — the same verb used for the Sinai descent (Exodus 19:11, 18) — to fight on behalf of Mount Zion.

5. The shift from lion (v. 4) to hovering birds (v. 5) is one of Isaiah's most striking juxtapositions. The same God who growls like a lion over prey now hovers like a mother bird over her nest. The four infinitive absolutes — ganon ('shielding'), hitsil ('delivering'), pasoach ('passing over'), himlit ('rescuing') — pile up to express comprehensive, multi-layered protection. The Passover allusion ties Jerusalem's deliverance to the Exodus.
6. The call to repentance (shuvu — 'return!') uses the same root as shuvah ('returning') in 30:15. The phrase he'miqu sarah ('deeply revolted') emphasizes the depth and severity of their rebellion — the return must be proportional to the revolt.
7. The repentance of v. 6 takes concrete form: idol rejection. The phrase 'your own hands have made' (asu lakhem yedeikhem) emphasizes the absurdity of worshipping what you yourself manufactured. This echoes 30:22 and anticipates 2:20.
8. This is the theological climax of the chapter: Assyria — the mightiest military power on earth — will be destroyed by a weapon no human hand holds. The prophecy found its initial fulfillment in 701 BC when the angel of the LORD struck down 185,000 Assyrian soldiers in a single night (37:36; 2 Kings 19:35). The forced labor (lamas) imposed on Assyria's young men reverses Assyria's own practice of enslaving conquered peoples.
9. The chapter closes with Assyria's total collapse: even their 'rock' (stronghold, or the king himself) crumbles, and their officers flee in panic. The final image — 'whose fire is in Zion and whose furnace is in Jerusalem' — connects back to the Ariel/altar-hearth imagery of 29:1-2 and the Topheth fire of 30:33. God's fire in Jerusalem is both the sacrificial fire of worship and the consuming fire of judgment against His enemies. Zion is simultaneously altar and fortress.

32

Summary: *Isaiah envisions a king who reigns in righteousness and princes who rule in justice — a portrait of governance as it was always meant to be. Under this reign, human perception is restored: eyes see, ears hear, and the rash gain understanding. The chapter then pivots to a sobering address to complacent women, warning that the land will become desolate until the Spirit is poured out from on high. When that outpouring comes, wilderness becomes garden, justice dwells even in the wild places, and the fruit of righteousness is shalom — peace, quietness, and confident trust forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The movement from human kingship to divine Spirit-outpouring is striking. Verses 1-8 describe what a righteous king produces; verses 15-20 describe what only the Spirit of God can produce. The implication is that the ultimate righteous king and the Spirit's outpouring are inseparable realities — a theology that finds its fullest expression in the messianic hope.*

Translation Friction: *We have rendered tsedaqah consistently as "righteousness" and mishpat as "justice" throughout, preserving the covenantal weight of both terms. The phrase ma'aseh hatstsedaqah (v.17) is rendered "the work of righteousness" rather than "the effect" to maintain the sense of active, produced fruit. Shalvah (v.17) carries a meaning beyond mere "assurance" — it is the quiet confidence of one who trusts covenant promises.*

Connections: *The Spirit-outpouring of verse 15 anticipates Joel 2:28-29 and finds its Pentecost fulfillment in Acts 2. The wilderness-to-garden transformation echoes Eden theology and connects to Isaiah 35:1-2. The portrait of the righteous king resonates with Isaiah 11:1-5 and Jeremiah 23:5-6.*

¹Behold — a king shall reign in righteousness,
and princes shall govern in justice.

²And each one shall be like a shelter from the wind,
a refuge from the storm,
like streams of water in a dry place,
like the shadow of a massive rock in a weary land.

³And the eyes of those who see shall not be shut,
and the ears of those who hear shall be attentive.

⁴The heart of the rash shall understand knowledge,
and the tongue of the stammering shall speak clearly and fluently.

⁵The fool shall no longer be called noble,
nor the scoundrel be said to be generous.

⁶For the fool speaks folly,
and his heart devises wickedness —
to practice godlessness
and to speak error against the LORD,
to leave the soul of the hungry empty
and to deprive the thirsty of drink.

⁷As for the scoundrel — his schemes are evil;
he devises wicked plans
to ruin the afflicted with lying words,
even when the cause of the needy is just.

⁸But the noble one plans noble things,
and by noble things he shall stand.

⁹Rise up, you women who are at ease;
hear my voice, you complacent daughters;
give ear to my speech.

¹⁰In little more than a year
you shall tremble, you complacent ones,
for the grape harvest shall fail,
the gathering shall not come.

¹¹Tremble, you women at ease;
shudder, you complacent ones.
Strip yourselves bare
and wrap sackcloth around your waists.

¹²Beat your breasts in mourning
for the pleasant fields,
for the fruitful vine.

¹³Upon the soil of my people
thorns and briers shall grow up —
yes, upon all the houses of joy
in the jubilant city.

¹⁴For the palace shall be abandoned,
the bustling city forsaken;
hill and watchtower shall become dens forever,
a delight for wild donkeys,
a pasture for flocks —

¹⁵Until the Spirit is poured out upon us from on high,
and the wilderness becomes a fruitful field,
and the fruitful field is counted as a forest.

¹⁶Then justice shall dwell in the wilderness,
and righteousness shall abide in the fruitful field.

¹⁷And the work of righteousness shall be shalom,
and the fruit of righteousness shall be
quietness and trust forever.

¹⁸And my people shall dwell in a habitation of shalom,
in secure dwellings,
and in undisturbed resting places.

¹⁹Though hail shall fell the forest,
and the city be utterly laid low,

²⁰Blessed are you who sow beside all waters,
who let the ox and the donkey range free.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *hen* ("behold") signals prophetic announcement. This is not mere political commentary but messianic vision — the king who will reign as kingship was designed to function.
2. The subject "each one" (*ish*) likely refers to the princes of verse 1, though some read it as referring to the king himself. Under righteous governance, every leader becomes a source of protection and refreshment.
3. This reverses the judicial blinding of Isaiah 6:9-10. Under the righteous king, the curse of dulled perception is lifted — eyes truly see and ears truly hear.
4. The transformation extends to intellect and speech. Those who once rushed to judgment (*nimharim*) gain discernment, and those who could not articulate truth find their voice.
5. In a corrupt society, titles are divorced from character. The righteous king restores moral clarity — things are called what they truly are. This is a vision of cultural truth-telling.
6. Isaiah defines what makes the naval a naval: his speech, his heart, his religion, and his social ethics are all corrupt. The fool's wickedness is comprehensive — theological error joined to social injustice.
7. The *kilay* (scoundrel) weaponizes language against the vulnerable. The phrase "even when the cause of the needy is just" (*bedabber evyon mishpat*) underscores the perversion — justice itself is overridden by deception.
8. The contrast with verses 5-7 is deliberate: the fool and scoundrel will be exposed, but the truly noble will be vindicated. Character and reputation will finally align.
9. The address shifts abruptly from messianic vision to present rebuke. The *sha'ananot* ("at ease") and *botchot* ("complacent") echo the false security condemned in Amos 6:1. Isaiah addresses women specifically, perhaps because they represent the domestic sphere where complacency takes root.
10. The phrase *yamim al-shanah* ("days beyond a year") indicates imminent judgment — just over a year away. Agricultural failure is both literal threat and covenant-curse language (see Deuteronomy 28:38-42).
11. The commands escalate: tremble, shudder, strip, put on sackcloth. The movement from fine garments to sackcloth represents the reversal from luxury to mourning — the outward sign of genuine grief over sin.
12. The wordplay between *shadayim* ("breasts") and *sedei* ("fields") connects bodily grief with agricultural loss. The land's fertility and the people's sustenance are bound together in covenant theology.
13. Thorns and briers (*qots shamir*) are Eden-curse language (Genesis 3:18). The jubilant city's celebration will be overtaken by the signs of divine judgment — joy turned to desolation.
14. The Ophel (hill/citadel) was the fortified heart of Jerusalem. Its transformation into animal habitat represents total civilizational collapse. Yet the word "forever" (*ad-olam*) is qualified by what follows in verse 15.
15. This verse is the theological hinge of the chapter. Everything before it describes human failure and divine judgment; everything after describes Spirit-wrought renewal. The wilderness-to-Carmel imagery reverses the thorns-and-briers curse of verse 13.

16. Justice (mishpat) and righteousness (tsedaqah) are personified as inhabitants of the renewed landscape. Where once thorns grew, moral order now dwells — the Spirit's outpouring produces ethical transformation, not merely agricultural.
17. We retain the Hebrew shalom untranslated in the rendering to preserve its covenantal depth. The verse establishes a cause-and-effect theology: righteousness is not merely commanded but is itself productive — it generates peace, quietness, and confident trust.
18. Three synonyms for safety: neveh shalom (habitation of peace), mishkenot mitvachim (secure dwellings), menuchot sha'anant (undisturbed resting places). The sha'anant here is positive — the same root used negatively of complacent women in verse 9 is now redeemed as genuine, Spirit-given rest.
19. The hail and felling of the forest represent ongoing judgment in the world, yet God's people dwell in the shalom described in verse 18. Some interpreters read "the city" as a foreign oppressor city, contrasted with the secure habitations of God's people.
20. The chapter ends with a beatitude (ashreikhem). Sowing beside all waters is an image of abundant, unhindered agricultural prosperity. Letting livestock range free suggests peace so complete that there is no fear of theft or raiding — the covenant blessings of Deuteronomy 28 fully realized.

33

Summary: *Isaiah 33 opens with a woe oracle against the destroyer and pivots into one of the most exalted portraits of the LORD as judge, lawgiver, king, and savior. The chapter moves from crisis to confidence: envoys weep, highways lie waste, the land mourns, yet the LORD rises in majesty. The faithful behold a king in his beauty, see a land that stretches far, and dwell in Zion — the unmovable tent whose stakes will never be pulled up. Sickness itself is forgiven in the final verse.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 22 compresses four titles into a single declaration — the LORD is judge, lawgiver, king, and savior. No human institution can claim all four roles; they belong to God alone. The vision of Zion as an immovable tent (v.20) reverses exile imagery and anchors hope in divine permanence rather than human fortification.*

Translation Friction: *We have maintained "Woe" for hoi in verse 1 as a covenant-lawsuit interjection rather than softening it. The phrase "your eyes shall behold the king in his beauty" (v.17) is rendered with messianic resonance, as the context transcends any earthly monarch.*

Connections: *The destroyer-destroyed pattern of verse 1 echoes the lex talionis principle. The king in his beauty (v.17) anticipates the suffering servant who "had no beauty that we should desire him" (53:2) — the contrast is deliberate within the book. The forgiveness of sickness in verse 24 foreshadows Matthew 9:2-6 where Jesus links forgiveness and healing.*

¹Woe to you, destroyer,
you who have not been destroyed!
You treacherous one,
whom none has betrayed!
When you finish destroying,
you shall be destroyed;
when you cease your treachery,
they shall deal treacherously with you.

²O LORD, be gracious to us;
we have waited for you.
Be our arm every morning,
our salvation in the time of distress.

³At the thunderous noise, peoples flee;
when you rise up, nations scatter.

⁴Your spoil shall be gathered
as the caterpillar gathers;
as locusts leap upon it,
so shall they leap upon your plunder.

⁵The LORD is exalted,
for he dwells on high;
he has filled Zion
with justice and righteousness.

⁶And he shall be the stability of your times,
a wealth of salvation, wisdom, and knowledge;
the fear of the LORD — this is his treasure.

⁷Behold, their valiant ones cry out in the streets;
the envoys of peace weep bitterly.

⁸The highways lie desolate,
the traveler has ceased.
He has broken the covenant,
he has despised the cities,
he regards no one.

⁹The land mourns and languishes;
Lebanon is ashamed and withers.
Sharon has become like a desert,
and Bashan and Carmel shake off their leaves.

¹⁰"Now I will arise," says the LORD.
"Now I will be exalted;
now I will lift myself up."

¹¹You conceive chaff, you bring forth stubble;
your own breath is a fire that shall consume you.

¹²And the peoples shall be as if burned to lime,
like cut thorns consumed in the fire.

¹³"Hear, you who are far off, what I have done;
and you who are near, acknowledge my might."

¹⁴The sinners in Zion are terrified;
trembling has seized the godless:
"Who among us can dwell with consuming fire?
Who among us can dwell with everlasting flames?"

¹⁵He who walks in righteousness and speaks what is upright,
who despises the gain of oppression,
who shakes his hands free from holding a bribe,
who stops his ears from hearing of bloodshed,

and shuts his eyes from looking upon evil —

¹⁶he shall dwell on the heights;
his refuge shall be the fortress of rocks.
His bread shall be given him;
his water shall be sure.

¹⁷Your eyes shall behold the king in his beauty;
they shall see a land that stretches far away.

¹⁸Your heart shall muse on the former terror:
"Where is the one who counted?
Where is the one who weighed?
Where is the one who counted the towers?"

¹⁹You shall no longer see the fierce people,
the people of obscure speech that you cannot comprehend,
of a stammering tongue that you cannot understand.

²⁰Gaze upon Zion, the city of our appointed feasts!
Your eyes shall see Jerusalem —
a quiet habitation,
a tent that shall not be moved:
its stakes shall never be pulled up,
nor any of its cords be broken.

²¹But there the LORD in majesty shall be for us
a place of broad rivers and streams,
where no galley with oars shall go,
and no mighty ship shall pass.

²²For the LORD is our judge,
the LORD is our lawgiver,
the LORD is our king —
he will save us.

²³Your rigging hangs loose;
it cannot hold the mast firm
or spread the sail.
Then an abundance of spoil shall be divided —
even the lame shall carry off plunder.

²⁴And no inhabitant shall say, "I am sick";
the people who dwell there shall be forgiven their iniquity.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The woe oracle targets a destroyer who has escaped destruction — almost certainly Assyria. The divine justice principle is clear: the measure you give will be the measure you receive.

2. The community responds with prayer. "Be our arm" (zeroa) asks God to be their strength — the same divine arm that delivered Israel from Egypt (Exodus 6:6).
3. The subject shifts to the LORD. His rising (romemut) produces the same effect as a roaring army — nations scatter before theophanic power.
4. The plunder of the destroyed enemy will be gathered as thoroughly as locusts strip a field — the destroyer's own tactics turned against him.
5. The LORD's exaltation is not abstract transcendence but active governance — he fills Zion with justice and righteousness, the very things human rulers have withheld.
6. The fear of the LORD (yir'at YHWH) is called his "treasure" (otsar). In a chapter about plundered wealth, the true treasure is covenantal reverence.
7. The er'elam ("valiant ones") are likely Jerusalem's warriors or diplomats. Even the bravest weep — the diplomatic situation is hopeless by human measure.
8. Desolate highways signal collapsed commerce and communication. The covenant-breaker treats treaties, cities, and human life with equal contempt.
9. Four of Israel's most fertile regions — Lebanon, Sharon, Bashan, Carmel — are devastated. The land itself participates in the mourning (see Hosea 4:3).
10. The triple "now" (attah) marks dramatic divine intervention. After patient waiting through human crisis, the LORD announces his own rising.
11. Addressed to the enemies: their schemes produce only worthless material, and their own breath (ruach) becomes the fire of their destruction.
12. The imagery is of complete combustion — lime-burning requires intense, sustained heat. The thorns echo the curse imagery of 32:13, now applied to God's enemies.
13. The LORD addresses both distant nations and nearby peoples. His acts of judgment are a universal proclamation meant to be known by all.
14. The question is about surviving the presence of a holy God. The sinners within the covenant community recognize that God's holiness is itself the consuming fire (see Hebrews 12:29).
15. Isaiah's answer to verse 14, structured like an entrance liturgy (compare Psalm 15 and Psalm 24:3-4). Five ethical qualifications describe who can dwell in God's holy presence.
16. The righteous receives three provisions: elevated dwelling (safety), bread (sustenance), and reliable water (ongoing life) — covenant blessings where God becomes fortress, provider, and sustainer.
17. Those who shut their eyes from evil (v.15) are given eyes to see the king in glory. The movement from moral discipline to beatific vision is profoundly theological.
18. The rhetorical questions recall Assyrian officials who tallied tribute, weighed silver, and surveyed fortifications. In the age of the king's beauty, these oppressors are simply gone.
19. The Assyrians spoke Akkadian — foreign and terrifying to Hebrew speakers. In the new Zion, the threatening foreigner with incomprehensible speech is gone.
20. The command to "gaze" (chazeh) uses the same root as the prophetic word for vision (chazon). Jerusalem is both the city of appointed feasts (mo'adenu) and an immovable tent — worship calendar and divine presence converge.
21. Jerusalem lacked a great river unlike Babylon, Egypt, or Nineveh. The LORD himself becomes Zion's river — providing what geography denied, yet admitting no warships.
22. One of the most theologically compressed verses in Isaiah. It anticipates the understanding of Christ as prophet, priest, and king while adding the legislative function.
23. The ship metaphor from verse 21 is applied to the enemy: their vessel is crippled. The spoil is so vast that even the lame (pisechim) take their share, echoing 1 Samuel 30:24.
24. The chapter's final verse links physical healing to spiritual forgiveness — a connection Jesus explicitly claims in Mark 2:5-12. The word nesu ("forgiven," literally "lifted, carried away") uses the same root as the scapegoat bearing sin in Leviticus 16:22.

34

Summary: *Isaiah 34 is one of the most fearsome oracles in the prophetic corpus — a summons to all nations to witness cosmic judgment. The heavenly host dissolves, the scroll of heaven is rolled up, and the LORD's sword descends upon Edom as the representative of all who oppose his purposes. The land becomes burning pitch, a haunt of wild creatures, an inheritance of chaos. Yet the chapter closes with a remarkable appeal: "Search the book of the LORD and read" — a call to verify that every word of judgment will be fulfilled.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rolling up of the heavenly scroll (v.4) is among the most apocalyptic images in the Old Testament, directly echoed in Revelation 6:13-14. The specificity of the animal catalog (vv.11-15) transforms judgment from abstraction to ecological reality — the very creatures that inhabit ruins become witnesses to divine wrath.*

Translation Friction: *We have rendered cherem as "devoted to destruction" rather than the softer "utter destruction," preserving its sacrificial-warfare connotation. The graphic imagery of blood-soaked land and fat-drenched soil is maintained without euphemism, as the text intends to disturb. Edom functions both historically and typologically — it represents the anti-covenant posture of all nations.*

Connections: *This chapter forms a deliberate pair with chapter 35: judgment/salvation, desolation/blooming, chaos creatures/redeemed pilgrims. The cherem language connects to Joshua's conquest narratives. The "book of the LORD" (v.16) is one of the earliest self-referential claims within prophetic literature. Revelation 6:13-14 directly draws upon verse 4.*

¹Draw near, O nations, to hear,
and give attention, O peoples!
Let the earth hear, and all that fills it,
the world and all that comes from it.

²For the wrath of the LORD is against all the nations,
and his fury against all their armies.
He has devoted them to destruction;
he has given them over to slaughter.

³Their slain shall be cast out,
and the stench of their corpses shall rise;
the mountains shall melt with their blood.

⁴All the host of heaven shall dissolve,
and the heavens shall be rolled up like a scroll;
all their host shall wither and fall
like a leaf falling from the vine,
like a withered fig from the fig tree.

⁵For my sword has drunk its fill in the heavens;
behold, it descends upon Edom,
upon the people I have devoted to destruction,
for judgment.

⁶The sword of the LORD is gorged with blood,
dripping with fat —
the blood of lambs and goats,

the fat of the kidneys of rams.
For the LORD has a sacrifice in Bozrah,
a great slaughter in the land of Edom.

⁷Wild oxen shall fall with them,
and young bulls with the mighty;
their land shall be soaked with blood,
and their soil made rich with fat.

⁸For the LORD has a day of vengeance,
a year of recompense for the cause of Zion.

⁹Her streams shall be turned to pitch,
her soil to sulfur,
and her land shall become burning pitch.

¹⁰Night and day it shall not be quenched;
its smoke shall rise forever.
From generation to generation it shall lie waste;
no one shall pass through it forever and ever.

¹¹But the hawk and the hedgehog shall possess it,
the owl and the raven shall dwell in it.
He shall stretch over it the measuring line of chaos
and the plumb stones of emptiness.

¹²Its nobles — there is no kingdom for them to proclaim,
and all its princes shall come to nothing.

¹³Thorns shall overrun her palaces,
nettles and thistles her fortresses.
She shall become a haunt of jackals,
a dwelling for ostriches.

¹⁴Desert creatures shall meet with hyenas,
and the wild goat shall call to its companion.
There indeed the night creature shall settle
and find for herself a resting place.

¹⁵There the arrow snake shall nest and lay eggs,
hatch them and gather her young in her shadow.
There indeed the vultures shall be gathered,
each one with her mate.

¹⁶Search the book of the LORD and read:
not one of these shall be missing,
none shall lack her companion.
For his mouth has commanded,
and his Spirit has gathered them.

¹⁷He has cast the lot for them,
and his hand has divided it to them by the measuring line.
They shall possess it forever;
from generation to generation they shall dwell in it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The summons is universal — not merely to Israel but to all nations, peoples, and creation itself. This is a cosmic courtroom scene where the entire earth is called as witness to divine judgment.
2. The *cherem* ("devoted to destruction") language is deliberately chosen. This is not arbitrary violence but covenantal justice — the nations are placed under the same sacred ban that was applied to Jericho.
3. The graphic physicality of the imagery — unburied corpses, rising stench, blood-soaked mountains — refuses to let the reader spiritualize judgment into abstraction. The prophets insist that divine wrath has material consequences.
4. Cosmic de-creation: the stars dissolve, the heavens roll up, the celestial host falls like withered leaves. This is the undoing of Genesis 1 — the luminaries of Day Four collapse. Jesus echoes this in the Olivet Discourse (Matthew 24:29).
5. The sword's descent from heaven to Edom narrows the cosmic judgment to a specific historical target. Edom, as Esau's descendants and Israel's perpetual antagonist, functions as the representative of all anti-covenant peoples.
6. The sacrificial language is intentionally shocking: rams, lambs, goats, kidney-fat — all temple terms applied to military destruction. Bozrah, Edom's capital, becomes the altar.
7. The *re'emim* ("wild oxen," not "unicorns" as KJV) are powerful beasts whose fall signals the defeat of even the mightiest. The land itself is saturated — blood and fat permeate the very soil.
8. The "cause of Zion" (*riv Tsiyon*) is a legal term — God takes up Zion's lawsuit against those who have wronged her. Divine vengeance is not capricious rage but covenant litigation brought to verdict.
9. The Sodom-and-Gomorra imagery (pitch, sulfur, burning) is unmistakable. Edom's judgment recapitulates the destruction of the cities of the plain (Genesis 19), reinforcing the typological pattern.
10. The perpetual burning and rising smoke echo both Sodom (Genesis 19:28) and the later apocalyptic imagery of Revelation 14:11. The emphasis on generational permanence (*dor ledor*, *netsach netsachim*) underscores the finality of divine judgment.
11. The wild creatures that inherit Edom are desert and ruin-dwelling species. The *tohu vavohu* language is a devastating allusion: God un-creates Edom, returning it to primordial chaos.
12. Political collapse accompanies ecological devastation. There are no nobles left to crown, no princes to govern. The entire governmental structure is reduced to *efes* ("nothing, zero").
13. Palaces and fortresses — symbols of human power and security — are conquered not by armies but by thorns, nettles, and wild creatures. Nature reclaims what civilization abandons.
14. The catalog of creatures inhabiting ruined Edom creates an eerie portrait. The *sa'ir* ("wild goat" or "hairy one") and *hilit* ("night creature") populate the ruins where human civilization once stood.
15. The *qippoz* ("arrow snake" or "owl") and *dayyot* ("vultures" or "kites") complete the animal catalog. These creatures nest permanently — Edom's ruins are not temporary but become established habitat. Creation fills the void left by destroyed civilization.
16. This verse is both a literary and theological milestone. It instructs the reader to verify prophecy against a written document, establishing the principle that God's word can be tested by its own record. The "book of the LORD" anticipates the canonical concept of Scripture.
17. The land-distribution language (casting lots, dividing by line) echoes Joshua's allotment of Canaan — but here the inheritance is given to wild creatures, not tribes. The irony is devastating: Edom's territory is permanently deeded to chaos and desolation.

35

Summary: *Isaiah 35 is the mirror image of chapter 34 — where that chapter decreed desolation, this one erupts in bloom. The wilderness rejoices, the desert blossoms like a crocus, and the glory of Lebanon, Carmel, and Sharon are restored. Blind eyes open, deaf ears unseal, the lame leap like deer, and the mute tongue sings for joy. A highway appears — the Highway of Holiness — on which the ransomed of the LORD return to Zion with singing, crowned with everlasting joy, while sorrow and sighing flee away. This chapter is the theological bridge to the great comfort oracles of chapters 40-66.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Every line of this chapter reverses a specific curse or judgment from the preceding oracles. The desert that was cursed now blooms; the blind eyes from Isaiah 6:10 now see; the highways that lay desolate in 33:8 become the mesillat haqqodesh (Highway of Holiness). The chapter reads as a prophetic catalog of restoration — each image answering a corresponding image of judgment.*

Translation Friction: *We have rendered mesillat haqqodesh as "Highway of Holiness" rather than "Way of Holiness" to preserve the sense of mesillah as a raised, constructed road — an engineered path, not a trail. The phrase ge'ulei YHWH ("ransomed of the LORD") uses redemption language rooted in the go'el (kinsman-redeemer) tradition. We render simchat olam as "everlasting joy" rather than "eternal gladness" to maintain consistency with the olam vocabulary throughout Isaiah.*

Connections: *This chapter anticipates Isaiah 40:3-5 (the highway in the wilderness), 42:7 (opening blind eyes), 61:1-3 (good news to the afflicted), and finds its New Testament fulfillment in Jesus' reply to John the Baptist: "the blind receive sight, the lame walk... the deaf hear" (Matthew 11:5, directly quoting Isaiah 35). The Highway of Holiness anticipates the "way of the LORD" in 40:3 and ultimately the "new and living way" of Hebrews 10:20.*

¹The wilderness and the dry land shall be glad;
the desert shall rejoice and blossom —
blossom like the crocus!

²It shall blossom abundantly
and rejoice with joy and singing.
The glory of Lebanon shall be given to it,
the splendor of Carmel and Sharon.
They shall see the glory of the LORD,
the splendor of our God.

³Strengthen the weak hands,
and make firm the faltering knees.

⁴Say to those with anxious hearts,
"Be strong; do not fear!
Behold, your God will come with vengeance,
with the recompense of God.
He will come and save you."

⁵Then the eyes of the blind shall be opened,
and the ears of the deaf shall be unstopped.

⁶Then the lame shall leap like a deer,
and the tongue of the mute shall sing for joy.
For waters shall burst forth in the wilderness,
and streams in the desert.

⁷The burning sand shall become a pool,
and the thirsty ground springs of water.
In the haunt of jackals where they once lay,
grass shall grow with reeds and rushes.

⁸And a highway shall be there — a road —
and it shall be called the Highway of Holiness.
The unclean shall not travel on it;
it shall belong to those who walk the way.
No fool shall wander onto it.

⁹No lion shall be there,
no ravenous beast shall go up on it —
they shall not be found there.
But the redeemed shall walk there.

¹⁰And the ransomed of the LORD shall return
and come to Zion with singing,
with everlasting joy crowning their heads.
Gladness and joy shall overtake them,
and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with explosive joy — the midbar (wilderness) and tsiyyah (dry land) are personified as celebrating. The desert does not merely tolerate growth; it rejoices in its own transformation. This is the antithesis of chapter 34's desolation.
2. The threefold gift — Lebanon's glory, Carmel's splendor, Sharon's beauty — reverses the devastation of 33:9 where these same regions were shamed and withered. The purpose of all this natural restoration is theophanic: to see the glory of the LORD.
3. The imperative shifts to direct address — the community is told to strengthen one another. Weak hands and faltering knees are images of exhausted hope (see Hebrews 12:12, which directly quotes this verse). The physical imagery carries spiritual meaning: those whose grip on faith has weakened need to be steadied.
4. The message to the fearful is not "calm down" but "your God is coming." The same divine vengeance (naqam) that destroys Edom in chapter 34 now saves his people. Vengeance and salvation are two sides of the same divine action — judgment for the oppressor is deliverance for the oppressed.
5. The word az ("then") links the healings to God's coming in verse 4. These are not random miracles but the signature acts of the messianic age. Jesus explicitly pointed to this verse when answering John the Baptist's question, "Are you the one who is to come?" (Matthew 11:3-5).
6. Four healings in two verses: blind see, deaf hear, lame leap, mute sing. The deer (ayyal) is chosen for its agility — the most dramatic possible contrast with lameness. The water imagery parallels the human healings: as bodies are restored, so is the land. Human and ecological renewal are inseparable.
7. The sharav ("burning sand" or "mirage") becomes a real pool — the illusion of water becomes actual water. The jackals' haunt from 34:13 is transformed: where predators once lay, marsh grasses grow. Every detail of chapter 34's desolation is specifically reversed.
8. The Highway of Holiness is one of Isaiah's most enduring images. It connects the return from exile (ch.40-55) to the ultimate eschatological homecoming. The road's holiness is protective, not exclusionary — it keeps danger out rather than keeping pilgrims in.
9. The absence of predators is not merely zoological but theological — on the Highway of Holiness, every threat is removed. The ge'ulim ("redeemed") walk where lions cannot. The road's safety is guaranteed by its builder.
10. This verse is quoted again in Isaiah 51:11, forming an inclusio around the central servant songs. The fleeing of sorrow is personified — grief runs away as the redeemed approach Zion. The verse serves as the theological bridge to chapters 40-66: everything that follows is the working out of this promise. It is among the most hope-saturated verses in all of Scripture.

36

Summary: *In the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib of Assyria captures Judah's fortified cities and sends his Rabshakeh to Jerusalem with a massive force. The Rabshakeh delivers a devastating speech in Hebrew, taunting Hezekiah's reliance on Egypt and on the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Rabshakeh's speech is a masterpiece of psychological warfare. He addresses the people directly in Hebrew (yehudit) after the officials beg him to speak Aramaic (v. 11). His most provocative claim: 'The LORD Himself told me to march against this land and destroy it' (v. 10). He co-opts Israel's own theology, using YHWH's name to undermine trust in YHWH. The chapter parallels 2 Kings 18:13-37 almost verbatim.*

Translation Friction: *The title Rabshakeh (rav-shaqeh) is an Assyrian military rank, not a proper name. We transliterated it and noted its meaning ('chief cupbearer' or 'chief officer'). The request to speak Aramit ('Aramaic,' v. 11) rather than Yehudit ('Judahite/Hebrew') reveals the linguistic politics of the ancient Near East — Aramaic was the diplomatic lingua franca.*

Connections: *This chapter parallels 2 Kings 18:13-37 with minor variations. The Rabshakeh's taunt about trusting Egypt echoes Isaiah's own warnings (30:1-7, 31:1-3). Sennacherib's invasion is documented in Assyrian records (the Taylor Prism). The theological crisis — can YHWH defend His own city? — drives chapters 36-37.*

¹In the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib king of Assyria marched against all the fortified cities of Judah and captured them. ²The king of Assyria sent the Rabshakeh from Lachish to Jerusalem, to King Hezekiah, with a large force. He took his stand by the conduit of the upper pool, on the highway to the Washerman's Field. ³Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was over the palace, Shebna the secretary, and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder, went out to meet him. ⁴The Rabshakeh said to them, 'Say to Hezekiah: This is what the great king, the king of Assyria, says — What is this trust in which you are trusting?' ⁵'I say — your claim of strategy and strength for war is mere talk. Now, on whom are you relying, that you have rebelled against me?' ⁶'Look — you are trusting in the staff of this broken reed, Egypt! If a man leans on it, it goes into his hand and pierces it. That is what Pharaoh king of Egypt is to everyone who trusts in him.' ⁷'And if you say to me, We trust in the LORD our God — is He not the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah has removed, telling Judah and Jerusalem, You must worship before this altar?' ⁸'Now then, make a wager with my master the king of Assyria: I will give you two thousand horses — if you can find riders for them!' ⁹'How then can you repel even a single officer among the least of my master's servants? Yet you trust in Egypt for chariots and horsemen!' ¹⁰'And have I marched against this land to destroy it without the LORD? The LORD Himself said to me: March against this land and destroy it!' ¹¹Then Eliakim, Shebna, and Joah said to the Rabshakeh, 'Please speak to your servants in Aramaic, for we understand it. Do not speak to us in Hebrew in the hearing of the people who are on the wall.' ¹²But the Rabshakeh said, 'Has my master sent me only to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men sitting on the wall — who will eat their own dung and drink their own urine along with you?' ¹³Then the Rabshakeh stood and called out in a loud voice in Hebrew: 'Hear the words of the great king, the king of Assyria!' ¹⁴'This is what the king says: Do not let Hezekiah deceive you, for he cannot deliver you.' ¹⁵'Do not let Hezekiah make you trust in the LORD by saying, The LORD will surely deliver us — this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.' ¹⁶'Do not listen to Hezekiah. For this is what the king of Assyria says: Make peace with me and come out to me, and each of you will eat from his own vine and fig tree and drink from his own cistern —' ¹⁷— until I come and take you to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards.' ¹⁸'Do not let Hezekiah mislead you by saying, The LORD will deliver us. Has any god of the nations delivered his land from the hand of the king of Assyria?' ¹⁹'Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim? Have they delivered Samaria from my hand?' ²⁰'Who among all the gods of these lands has delivered his land from my hand, that the LORD should deliver Jerusalem from my hand?' ²¹But they remained silent and did not answer him a word, for the king's command was: 'Do not answer him.' ²²Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was over the palace, Shebna the secretary, and Joah son of Asaph,

the recorder, came to Hezekiah with their clothes torn and reported to him the words of the Rabshakeh.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is nearly identical to 2 Kings 18:13. The date formula places the invasion around 701 BCE. Sennacherib's own records (the Taylor Prism) confirm the campaign against Judah, claiming he shut Hezekiah up 'like a bird in a cage' — but notably never claims to have captured Jerusalem.
2. The Rabshakeh (rav-shaqeh) is a title meaning 'chief cupbearer' or 'chief officer' — a high-ranking Assyrian military official, not a personal name. Lachish, Judah's second most important city, had already fallen. The location by the 'upper pool' is the same spot where Isaiah met Ahaz in 7:3 — the site of failed faith now becomes the site of the crisis faith must face.
3. Eliakim is now 'over the palace' — the position Isaiah prophesied he would hold in 22:20-22, replacing Shebna. Shebna has been demoted to secretary (sopher). The three officials represent Hezekiah's diplomatic delegation.
4. The Rabshakeh uses the same prophetic messenger formula (ko amar) for Sennacherib that prophets use for God — a deliberate rhetorical provocation. The title 'the great king' (hammelekh haggadol) is the standard Assyrian royal title, set in opposition to Hezekiah's implied smallness.
5. The phrase devar-sefatayim ('word of lips') dismisses Hezekiah's military preparations as empty talk — all mouth, no substance. The verb maradta ('you have rebelled') frames Hezekiah's resistance as political rebellion against Assyrian suzerainty, not as faithfulness to God.
6. The 'broken reed' (qaneh haratsuts) metaphor for Egypt is devastatingly vivid — the reed looks supportive but splinters under weight and pierces the hand that grips it. Isaiah himself used similar language against Egyptian alliances (30:1-7). The Rabshakeh ironically agrees with the prophet.
7. The Rabshakeh's most theologically sophisticated argument: Hezekiah's religious reforms (removing high places, centralizing worship) are reframed as offending YHWH rather than honoring Him. To an outsider unfamiliar with Deuteronomic theology, destroying altars to a deity would seem sacrilegious, not faithful. The argument has surface plausibility.
8. The taunt exposes Judah's military weakness — even if given horses for free, they lack trained cavalry to ride them. The verb hit'arev ('make a wager, exchange pledges') frames the challenge as a dare Hezekiah cannot accept.
9. The argument escalates: Judah cannot repel even one minor Assyrian official, yet trusts in Egypt's distant cavalry. The word pachat ('governor, officer') describes a low-ranking provincial administrator — the insult is that even Assyria's least is more than Judah's best.
10. The Rabshakeh's most audacious claim: YHWH commissioned the Assyrian invasion. This is either blasphemous presumption or — ironically — partially true, since Isaiah's own oracles describe Assyria as God's instrument of judgment (10:5-6). The theological ambiguity is deliberately unsettling.
11. The officials' request reveals their fear: the Rabshakeh's Hebrew speech is aimed not at the diplomats but at the common people on the wall. Aramit ('Aramaic') was the international diplomatic language; Yehudit ('Judahite/Hebrew') was the language of the populace. The linguistic shift is a weapon.
12. The Rabshakeh's response is deliberately crude — he refuses the diplomatic register and describes siege conditions in graphic terms to terrify the civilian population. The words tso'atam ('their excrement') and mei ragleihem ('water of their feet,' a euphemism for urine) are meant to demoralize by making the coming siege viscerally real.
13. Having been asked to speak Aramaic, the Rabshakeh deliberately speaks louder in Hebrew — escalating the psychological assault. He now addresses the people directly, bypassing the officials entirely.
14. The Rabshakeh now uses the messenger formula for Sennacherib directly to the people — 'This is what the king says' parallels 'This is what the LORD says,' setting Assyria's king as a rival authority to Israel's God.
15. The Rabshakeh explicitly names YHWH and challenges trust in Him — this is the theological center of the crisis. The infinitive absolute hatsel yatsilenu ('surely delivering He will deliver') uses emphatic grammar to mock the certainty of divine deliverance.
16. The phrase asu itti verakhah ('make a blessing/peace with me') offers surrender disguised as prosperity. The vine-and-fig-tree image (v. 16) deliberately echoes the prophetic vision of peace (Micah 4:4, 1 Kings 4:25) — the Assyrian king offers what only God can give.
17. The 'promise' is deportation — dressed in the language of abundance. A 'land like your own' means exile, resettlement in Assyrian territory. The Rabshakeh makes forced displacement sound like a real-estate upgrade.
18. The Rabshakeh's logic: no national deity has withstood Assyria; therefore YHWH will not either. He treats YHWH as one god among many — the fundamental category error that Isaiah's theology exists to refute.
19. The mention of Samaria is the most painful thrust — Israel's northern kingdom fell to Assyria in 722 BCE, within living memory. The implication: Samaria's God is Judah's God, and He already failed once. The cities listed (Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim) are all Assyrian conquests whose patron deities proved powerless.
20. The climactic challenge: YHWH is placed in a lineup with failed deities. The question is meant to be rhetorical — no god has succeeded, so why should YHWH? Isaiah 37 will answer this question decisively.

21. Hezekiah's command to remain silent is strategically wise (deny the Rabshakeh a public debate) and theologically significant — the answer will come not from human diplomats but from God through Isaiah (ch. 37). The silence echoes Isaiah's own commission to a people who will 'hear but not understand' (6:9).
22. The torn garments (*qeru'ei vegadim*) signal grief and distress — the officials heard the Rabshakeh's words as a national crisis, not mere diplomacy. The chapter ends in suspense: the challenge has been delivered, the people are silent, and everything depends on what Hezekiah does next.

37

Summary: *When Hezekiah hears the Rabshakeh's threats, he tears his robes and sends to Isaiah for counsel. Isaiah promises deliverance: Sennacherib will hear a rumor and return home. After Sennacherib sends a taunting letter, Hezekiah spreads it before the LORD and prays. Isaiah delivers a sweeping oracle: the Virgin Daughter of Zion laughs at the Assyrian king. That night, the angel of the LORD strikes 185,000 in the Assyrian camp. Sennacherib withdraws to Nineveh and is murdered by his own sons.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the theological climax of the Sennacherib crisis (chs. 36-37). Hezekiah's prayer (vv. 16-20) is one of the purest appeals to divine sovereignty in Scripture — he asks God to act not for Judah's sake but so 'all the kingdoms of the earth may know that You alone are the LORD.' Isaiah's oracle (vv. 22-35) is electrifying poetry: Zion personified as a virgin daughter shaking her head in mockery at the world's superpower. The destruction of 185,000 Assyrians in a single night is one of the most dramatic divine interventions in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew *betulat bat-tsiyon* (v. 22) is literally 'virgin daughter of Zion' — a personification of Jerusalem as an unconquered young woman who scorns the invader. We retained the full phrase for its theological weight. Sennacherib's assassination by his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer (v. 38) is confirmed by Assyrian records, though the details differ slightly. The 'hook in your nose' imagery (v. 29) references the literal Assyrian practice of leading captives with rings through their noses.*

Connections: *This chapter parallels 2 Kings 19 almost verbatim. Hezekiah's prayer echoes the theology of Deuteronomy 4:35 ('the LORD alone is God'). The destruction of the Assyrian army fulfills Isaiah's earlier prophecies (10:12-19, 14:24-27, 31:8-9). Sennacherib's murder in the temple of Nisroch (v. 38) — slain by his own sons while worshipping his god — stands in stark contrast to Hezekiah praying in the temple of YHWH and being delivered.*

¹When King Hezekiah heard it, he tore his robes, covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of the LORD. ²He sent Eliakim, who was over the palace, and Shebna the secretary, and the senior priests, all covered in sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet, son of Amoz. ³They said to him, 'This is what Hezekiah says: This day is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace. Children have come to the point of birth, but there is no strength to deliver them. ⁴Perhaps the LORD your God will hear the words of the Rabshakeh, whom his master the king of Assyria sent to mock the living God, and will rebuke the words that the LORD your God has heard. Lift up a prayer for the remnant that still survives.' ⁵When the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah, ⁶Isaiah said to them, 'Say this to your master: This is what the LORD says — Do not be afraid of the words you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have blasphemed Me. ⁷I am about to put a spirit in him so that he hears a rumor and returns to his own land, and I will make him fall by the sword in his own land.' ⁸The Rabshakeh returned and found the king of Assyria fighting against Libnah, for he had heard that Sennacherib had moved on from Lachish. ⁹He heard it said concerning Tirhakah king of Cush, 'He has come out to fight against you.' When he heard this, he sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying, ¹⁰'Say this to Hezekiah king of Judah: Do not let your God, in whom you trust, deceive you by saying that Jerusalem will not be handed over to the king of Assyria. ¹¹You have surely heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, devoting them to destruction. And will you be delivered? ¹²Did the gods of the nations deliver those my fathers destroyed — Gozan, Haran, Rezeph, and the people of Eden who were in Telassar? ¹³Where is the king of Hamath, the king of Arpad, the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah?' ¹⁴Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the messengers and read it. Then Hezekiah went up to the house of the LORD and spread it out before the LORD. ¹⁵Hezekiah prayed to the LORD, saying:

¹⁶O LORD of Hosts, God of Israel,
enthroned above the cherubim —
You alone are God over all the kingdoms of the earth.
You made the heavens and the earth.

¹⁷Incline Your ear, O LORD, and hear.
Open Your eyes, O LORD, and see.
Hear all the words of Sennacherib,
which he sent to mock the living God.

¹⁸It is true, LORD — the kings of Assyria
have laid waste all the nations and their lands,

¹⁹and have thrown their gods into the fire —
for they were not gods at all,
but the work of human hands, wood and stone.
So they destroyed them.

²⁰Now, O LORD our God, save us from his hand,
so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know
that You alone are the LORD.'

²¹Then Isaiah son of Amoz sent word to Hezekiah: 'This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says — Because you have
prayed to Me concerning Sennacherib king of Assyria,

²²this is the word the LORD has spoken against him:
She despises you, she laughs you to scorn —
the virgin daughter of Zion!
Behind your back she shakes her head —
the daughter of Jerusalem!

²³Whom have you mocked and blasphemed?
Against whom have you raised your voice
and lifted your eyes in pride?
Against the Holy One of Israel!

²⁴Through your servants you mocked the Lord, and you said:
'With my many chariots I have ascended the mountain heights,
the remote peaks of Lebanon.
I cut down its tallest cedars, its choicest cypresses.
I reached its farthest height, its densest forest.

²⁵I dug wells and drank foreign waters.
With the sole of my feet
I dried up all the streams of Egypt.'

²⁶Have you not heard?
Long ago I planned it.
In days of old I designed it.
Now I have brought it to pass —

that you should crush fortified cities into heaps of rubble.

²⁷Their inhabitants, shorn of strength,
were dismayed and put to shame.
They were like plants of the field,
like tender green shoots,
like grass on the rooftops,
scorched before it can grow.

²⁸I know your sitting down,
your going out and your coming in,
and your raging against Me.

²⁹Because your raging against Me
and your arrogance have reached My ears,
I will put My hook in your nose
and My bit in your lips,
and I will turn you back
by the way you came.

³⁰This will be the sign for you:
This year you will eat what grows on its own,
and the second year what springs from that.
But in the third year, sow and reap,
plant vineyards and eat their fruit.

³¹The surviving remnant of the house of Judah
will again take root downward
and bear fruit upward.

³²For out of Jerusalem a remnant will go forth,
and survivors from Mount Zion.
The zeal of the LORD of Hosts will accomplish this.

³³Therefore, this is what the LORD says concerning the king of Assyria:
He will not enter this city
or shoot an arrow here.
He will not advance against it with shields
or build a siege ramp against it.

³⁴By the way he came, he will return,
and he will not enter this city
— declares the LORD.

³⁵For I will defend this city and save it,
for My own sake
and for the sake of My servant David.'

³⁶The angel of the LORD went out and struck down 185,000 in the Assyrian camp. When the survivors rose early in the morning, there were dead bodies everywhere. ³⁷Sennacherib king of Assyria broke camp, departed, and returned to Nineveh,

where he stayed. ³⁸As he was worshipping in the house of Nisroch his god, his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer struck him down with the sword. They escaped to the land of Ararat, and his son Esarhaddon reigned in his place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Hezekiah's response is immediate and visceral: tearing robes signals grief and crisis, sackcloth signals repentance and humility, and entering the temple signals where he places his trust. This triad contrasts sharply with his father Ahaz, who refused to ask God for a sign (7:12).
2. The king sends his highest officials — the same delegation from chapter 36 — now clothed in sackcloth. Their destination is not Egypt for military aid but Isaiah for a prophetic word. Hezekiah's instinct is theological, not geopolitical.
3. The birth metaphor is devastating in its honesty: the nation is at its most vulnerable moment — fully in labor, unable to push through. The word *ne'atsah* ('disgrace, blasphemy') refers both to Judah's humiliation and to the Rabshakeh's blasphemy against God.
4. The phrase *Elohim chay* ('the living God') is the crux of the entire crisis: the Rabshakeh treated YHWH as one dead idol among many, but Hezekiah stakes everything on God being alive and hearing. The plea for 'the remnant' (*she'erit*) uses Isaiah's own signature theological term (cf. 10:20-22).
5. This brief transitional verse sets up Isaiah's oracle in the next verse. The narrative pacing quickens — the messengers arrive and Isaiah responds immediately.
6. Isaiah's first word from God is *al-tira* ('do not be afraid') — the classic divine reassurance formula. God calls the Rabshakeh and his delegation *na'arei* ('servants, young men') — a diminishing term that strips the terrifying Assyrian officials of their menace.
7. The 'spirit' (*ruach*) placed in Sennacherib is a spirit of fear or confusion. The prophecy is strikingly specific: he will hear a rumor, return home, and die by the sword there. All three elements are fulfilled by the chapter's end (vv. 36-38). God's sovereignty operates through natural-seeming events — rumors, political instability, assassination.
8. Libnah was a fortified city near Lachish in the Judean Shephelah. Sennacherib's movement from Lachish to Libnah shows the campaign was still active — he was systematically reducing Judah's defenses even as the diplomatic crisis unfolded in Jerusalem.
9. Tirhakah (Taharqa) was the Egyptian-Cushite pharaoh of the 25th Dynasty. His advance from the south threatened Sennacherib's rear. This is the 'rumor' prophesied in v. 7. Rather than retreating immediately, Sennacherib doubles down with a threatening letter to Hezekiah — a strategic blunder born of pride.
10. Sennacherib's letter escalates the blasphemy: the Rabshakeh taunted reliance on God, but now Sennacherib directly accuses God of being a deceiver (*al-yashi'akha*, 'let him not mislead you'). The theological stakes are now absolute — it is Sennacherib's word against God's.
11. The verb *lehacharimam* ('devoting to destruction') ironically uses the Hebrew concept of *cherem* — total destruction dedicated to a deity — to describe Assyrian conquests. Sennacherib frames Assyrian annihilation in quasi-religious terms, as if their god authorized it the way YHWH authorized Israel's *cherem* warfare.
12. Sennacherib catalogs conquered peoples whose gods failed them. Gozan, Haran, and Rezeph were cities in Upper Mesopotamia; 'the people of Eden' (*benei-Eden*) refers to the Aramean state of Bit-Adini on the Euphrates. The rhetorical force: YHWH is just another local god who will fail like all the rest.
13. The taunt 'Where is?' (*ayyeh*) is a rhetorical annihilation — these kings and their gods have vanished from history. Hamath and Arpad were major Syrian cities. Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah were Mesopotamian cities. The letter's logic is a devastating syllogism: every god has failed, therefore yours will too.
14. The image of Hezekiah physically spreading the letter before God in the temple is one of the most iconic scenes of faith in the Old Testament. He does not compose a rebuttal or summon a war council — he lays the blasphemous words directly before the One who was blasphemed and lets God read them for Himself.
15. This verse introduces one of the most theologically significant prayers in the Hebrew Bible (vv. 16-20). The verb *hitpallel* ('prayed') is the reflexive form — intense, personal, self-involving prayer.
16. Hezekiah's prayer begins with a sweeping declaration of divine sovereignty that directly answers Sennacherib's theology. Where Sennacherib said 'no god could deliver,' Hezekiah says 'You alone are God over ALL kingdoms.' The phrase *yoshev hakeruvim* ('enthroned above the cherubim') places God on His throne in the Holy of Holies — this prayer is offered in the very presence of God.
17. The four imperatives — incline, hear, open, see — are not doubt but boldness: Hezekiah invites God to read the letter himself. The phrase *Elohim chay* ('the living God') appears again — the central claim of the crisis. If God is truly alive, He must respond to being mocked.
18. Hezekiah does not deny Sennacherib's claims — the Assyrians really did destroy those nations. This honesty gives the prayer its power: he does not pretend the threat is not real, he simply reframes it theologically in the next verse.
19. Here is Hezekiah's theological masterstroke: the reason those gods failed is not because Assyria was stronger than all gods — it is because those gods were never gods at all. They were wood and stone. Sennacherib's argument collapses: YHWH is not in the same category as carved idols.

20. The prayer's climax is breathtaking in its unselfishness: Hezekiah asks for deliverance not primarily for Judah's survival but so that all nations will know YHWH alone is God. The universal scope — 'all the kingdoms of the earth' — directly mirrors Sennacherib's boast about conquering all nations.
21. God's response comes through Isaiah — the prophetic channel Hezekiah trusted from the beginning. The phrase 'because you have prayed to Me' (asher hitpallalta elai) explicitly connects the divine response to Hezekiah's prayer. God acted because Hezekiah prayed.
22. The oracle opens with one of the most vivid images in prophetic literature. Jerusalem is personified as a betulat bat-tsiyon ('virgin daughter of Zion') — unconquered, untouched, laughing at the retreating bully. The head-shaking gesture (ro'sh heni'ah) is pure contempt. The world's mightiest empire is mocked by a girl on a city wall.
23. The rhetorical questions build to the devastating punchline: Sennacherib did not merely insult a small nation — he raised his voice against the Holy One of Israel (Qedosh Yisra'el), Isaiah's signature title for God. The phrase conveys both God's transcendent holiness and His particular commitment to Israel.
24. God now quotes Sennacherib's own boasts back to him. The imagery of conquering mountains and felling Lebanon's cedars was standard Assyrian royal rhetoric — kings boasted of logging Lebanon's forests for their palace projects. But in prophetic poetry, cutting cedars symbolizes toppling kings and nations (cf. Ezek. 31). Sennacherib's boast becomes his own indictment.
25. The boast climaxes absurdly: Sennacherib claims to have dried up Egypt's waterways by merely marching through them. The ye'orei matsor ('streams of Egypt/besieged places') likely refers to the Nile branches. The imagery portrays Sennacherib as a force of nature — but God is about to show who truly controls nature.
26. This is the theological turning point of the oracle. God reveals that Sennacherib's conquests were never his own achievement — God planned them 'long ago' (merachok) and 'in days of old' (limei qedem). Assyria was God's instrument, not a self-directed power. This echoes Isaiah 10:5-15, where Assyria is called 'the rod of My anger.'
27. The conquered peoples are described with escalating fragility: field plants, tender shoots, rooftop grass that withers before it matures. But the point is not their weakness — it is that God made them weak for Assyria to conquer. Sennacherib boasted of his strength; God says he only defeated those God had already weakened.
28. God's intimate knowledge of Sennacherib's every movement — sitting, leaving, arriving, raging — echoes Psalm 139. The Assyrian king thought he was directing a world-conquering campaign; God says, 'I know every move you make.' The final phrase, 'your raging against Me,' makes it personal.
29. The 'hook in the nose' (chachi be'appekha) is devastating irony: Assyrian kings depicted themselves leading captives with hooks through their noses or lips on palace reliefs. Now God will do the same to Sennacherib — the captor becomes the captive, led like an animal back the way he came.
30. The sign shifts from military to agricultural. The first two years reflect the devastation of Sennacherib's campaign — no sowing was possible, only eating volunteer growth (saphiach). By the third year, normal life resumes. This is both a practical timeline and a theological promise: God will restore what the invader destroyed.
31. The agricultural metaphor now applies to the people themselves: Judah's remnant (peleitat beit-yehudah) will be replanted. 'Root downward, fruit upward' is a complete restoration image — stability below, productivity above. This connects to Isaiah's broader remnant theology (10:20-22, 11:1).
32. The phrase qin'at YHWH tseva'ot ('the zeal of the LORD of Hosts') is the same phrase used in 9:7 regarding the Messianic kingdom. God's passionate commitment — not Hezekiah's diplomacy or Judah's military — will produce the remnant. Jerusalem is confirmed as the source from which restoration flows.
33. The oracle becomes a fourfold military impossibility: no entry, no arrow, no shield assault, no siege ramp. Each negation corresponds to a stage of ancient siege warfare. God does not merely promise to eventually save Jerusalem — He promises that the siege will never even properly begin.
34. The oracle echoes v. 29 ('I will turn you back by the way you came') with the solemn prophetic formula ne'um-YHWH ('declares the LORD'). Sennacherib's campaign, which seemed unstoppable, will simply reverse itself.
35. The two grounds for deliverance are God's own reputation ('for My sake' — answering Hezekiah's prayer that all nations would know) and the Davidic covenant ('for David's sake'). Jerusalem is saved not because it deserves it but because God has staked His name and His covenant on it. This closes the poetic oracle that began in v. 22.
36. The narrative shifts from poetry to prose with devastating abruptness. The destruction is reported in a single verse — no battle, no negotiation, just overnight annihilation. The phrase vayashkimu vaboqer ('they rose early in the morning') creates a grim tableau: dawn reveals what God did in the dark. Herodotus records a tradition of mice destroying Sennacherib's army, possibly reflecting a plague.
37. Three verbs in rapid succession — departed, went, returned — convey the humiliating retreat. The world's most powerful king slinks home to his capital. Every element of Isaiah's prophecy in v. 7 is now fulfilled: the rumor came, the return happened. Only the sword remains.
38. The final verse delivers the ultimate irony: Sennacherib, who mocked the living God, is murdered while worshipping a dead idol. His own sons — not a foreign army — are his executioners. The temple of Nisroch becomes his death chamber while the temple of YHWH remained his army's graveyard. Assyrian records confirm Sennacherib's assassination in 681 BCE. Esarhaddon succeeded him as king. The prophecy of v. 7 is now fully realized: rumor, return, and the sword.

38

Summary: *Hezekiah falls deathly ill, and Isaiah tells him to set his house in order — he will die. Hezekiah turns to the wall, weeps bitterly, and prays. Before Isaiah leaves the palace courtyard, God sends him back with a promise: fifteen more years. The shadow on the steps of Ahaz retreats ten steps as a sign. Hezekiah composes a psalm of thanksgiving that moves from despair ('Sheol cannot praise You, death cannot celebrate You') to renewed commitment to praise God in the temple.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Hezekiah's psalm (vv. 10-20) is unique to Isaiah — it has no parallel in 2 Kings 20. The psalm's central theological claim is stunning: death silences worship. 'Sheol cannot thank You, death cannot praise You' (v. 18) — Hezekiah argues that keeping him alive preserves a worshipper, and God apparently agrees. The retreating shadow on the 'steps of Ahaz' (v. 8) is both a miracle and a symbol: time itself reverses for the son on the very structure his faithless father built.*

Translation Friction: *The 'steps of Ahaz' (ma'alot Achaz, v. 8) may refer to a sundial-like staircase rather than literal steps, though the Hebrew is ambiguous. We rendered it 'the stairway of Ahaz' to preserve the architectural ambiguity. The 'lump of figs' (develet te'enim, v. 21) was a known ancient poultice for boils — the miracle operates through natural medicine. Verses 21-22 appear out of chronological order in the Hebrew text, likely displaced from their original position after v. 6.*

Connections: *This chapter parallels 2 Kings 20:1-11 with the major addition of Hezekiah's psalm (vv. 10-20). The fifteen-year extension places Hezekiah's illness around 703-701 BCE, during the Sennacherib crisis. The retreating shadow reverses the 'sign' dynamic of chapter 7 — where Ahaz refused a sign, his son receives one unsought. Hezekiah's psalm anticipates the theology of Psalms 6, 30, and 88.*

¹In those days Hezekiah became deathly ill. Isaiah the prophet, son of Amoz, came to him and said, 'This is what the LORD says: Set your house in order, for you are going to die — you will not recover.' ²Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and prayed to the LORD: ³'Please, LORD, remember how I have walked before You in faithfulness and with a whole heart, and have done what is good in Your eyes.' And Hezekiah wept bitterly. ⁴Then the word of the LORD came to Isaiah: ⁵'Go and say to Hezekiah: This is what the LORD, the God of David your father, says — I have heard your prayer. I have seen your tears. I am adding fifteen years to your life. ⁶I will deliver you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria, and I will defend this city.' ⁷This is the sign to you from the LORD that He will do what He has promised: ⁸I am going to make the shadow that has gone down on the stairway of Ahaz retreat ten steps backward by the sun.' And the sunlight went back ten steps on the stairway where it had gone down. ⁹A written prayer of Hezekiah king of Judah, after his illness and recovery:

¹⁰I said: In the prime of my life
I must go through the gates of Sheol.
I am deprived of the rest of my years.

¹¹I said: I will not see the LORD —
Yah! Yah! — in the land of the living.
I will look on humankind no more
among the inhabitants of this fleeting world.

¹²My dwelling is plucked up and removed from me
like a shepherd's tent.
I have rolled up my life like a weaver;
He cuts me off from the loom.
From day to night You bring me to an end.

¹³I waited until morning —
like a lion, He crushes all my bones.
From day to night You bring me to an end.

¹⁴Like a swallow or a crane I chirp;
I moan like a dove.
My eyes grow weak looking upward.
O Lord, I am oppressed — be my pledge of safety!

¹⁵What can I say? He has spoken to me,
and He Himself has done it.
I will walk humbly all my years
because of the bitterness of my soul.

¹⁶O Lord, by these things people live,
and in all of them is the life of my spirit.
Restore me to health — let me live!

¹⁷Truly, it was for my well-being
that I suffered such bitterness.
But You have loved my soul back from the pit of destruction,
for You have cast all my sins behind Your back.

¹⁸For Sheol cannot thank You,
death cannot praise You.
Those who go down to the pit
cannot hope in Your faithfulness.

¹⁹The living — the living — they praise You,
as I do this day!
A father makes Your faithfulness known to his children.

²⁰The LORD is ready to save me!
We will play our songs on stringed instruments
all the days of our lives
in the house of the LORD.

²¹Isaiah had said, 'Let them take a lump of figs and apply it as a poultice to the boil, and he will recover.' ²²Hezekiah had said, 'What is the sign that I will go up to the house of the LORD?'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *met attah velo tichyeh* ('dying you are and will not live') is brutally direct — no softening, no timeline, no hope offered. Isaiah delivers it as a divine decree, not a diagnosis. The command to 'set your house in order' (*tsav leveitekha*) implies arranging succession and settling affairs — the language of finality.
2. Turning to the wall is an act of intimate withdrawal — shutting out the world to face God alone. The same gesture appears with Elijah (1 Kings 19). For a king surrounded by attendants and courtiers, this deliberate turning away from everyone toward the bare wall is a profound act of spiritual privacy.
3. Hezekiah's prayer is not presumptuous but covenantal: he appeals to his faithfulness (*emet*) and wholehearted devotion (*lev shalem*) — the terms of the Deuteronomic covenant. The 'bitter weeping' (*bekhi gadol*, literally 'great weeping') follows the prayer, not precedes it — emotion flows from theology, not the reverse.

4. The standard prophetic reception formula. God's response is immediate — the text implies Isaiah had not yet left the palace complex when the reversal came (cf. 2 Kings 20:4, which specifies Isaiah was still in the middle courtyard).
5. God identifies Himself as 'the God of David your father' — invoking the dynastic covenant and reminding Hezekiah that his father's God is still his God. The response addresses both prayer ('I have heard') and emotion ('I have seen your tears'). The fifteen-year extension is extraordinarily specific — God does not merely heal but quantifies the gift.
6. The healing promise expands into a national deliverance promise — Hezekiah's personal recovery is bound to Jerusalem's survival. The verb *ganoti* ('I will defend, shield') is the same used in 37:35. This confirms the chronological overlap: Hezekiah's illness occurred during the Sennacherib crisis, not after it.
7. God offers a sign unsolicited — a striking contrast with Ahaz, who was told to ask for a sign and refused (7:10-12). The sign confirms not merely healing but the entire word God has spoken, including the deliverance of Jerusalem.
8. The *ma'alot Achaz* ('steps/stairway of Ahaz') was likely an architectural structure whose shadow served as a time-marker — essentially a monumental sundial. The shadow retreating ten steps means time itself appears to reverse. The symbolic resonance is powerful: on the very structure built by faithless Ahaz, God gives a sign of life to faithful Hezekiah. The son's faith redeems what the father's unbelief built.
9. The superscription *mikhtav* ('a writing, document') introduces Hezekiah's psalm. This term is unusual — most psalm superscriptions use *mizmor* or *shir*. The word suggests a formal written composition, perhaps inscribed on a scroll or tablet. This psalm (vv. 10-20) has no parallel in 2 Kings and is unique to Isaiah's account.
10. The psalm opens in despair. The phrase *bidmi yamai* ('in the cutting off / prime of my days') suggests both midlife and abrupt termination. 'The gates of Sheol' (*sha'arei she'ol*) is the threshold of the underworld — Hezekiah sees himself standing at death's door. The verb *puqqadti* ('I am deprived, visited in judgment') carries a sense of divine reckoning.
11. The doubled divine name *Yah Yah* is an anguished cry — whether a gasp of grief or an intensified invocation. Hezekiah's deepest loss is not life itself but the experience of God 'in the land of the living' — worship, presence, encounter. The term *chadel* ('cessation, fleeting world') characterizes earthly existence as transient, making his loss of it even more poignant.
12. Two vivid metaphors for mortality: the shepherd's tent (*ohel ro'i*) — easily uprooted and carried away — and the weaver's loom, where life is a fabric being cut from the threads. The shift from 'He' to 'You' (from third person to second person address) is characteristic of Hebrew lament — the sufferer moves from talking about God to talking to God mid-sentence.
13. The lion metaphor for God is terrifying: the illness feels like being mauled by a predator who shatters every bone. The refrain 'from day to night You bring me to an end' (repeated from v. 12) creates a claustrophobic sense of relentless suffering — each day-night cycle is another round of being broken.
14. Hezekiah's prayer sounds have devolved from human speech to bird cries — the chirping of a swallow, the moaning of a dove. His eyes strain upward toward God but grow dim. The final plea *orveni* ('be my surety, my pledge') is a legal-financial metaphor: Hezekiah asks God to guarantee his life the way a guarantor secures a debt.
15. The tone shifts here — from lament to stunned gratitude. 'He has spoken and He has done it' acknowledges God's sovereign action. The verb *edaddeh* ('I will walk softly, humbly') describes a chastened gait — the walk of someone who has stared into the grave and come back changed. The 'bitterness of soul' (*mar nafshi*) remains, but it now produces humility rather than despair.
16. The phrase 'by these things' (*aleiheim*) likely refers to God's words and deeds just mentioned. Hezekiah recognizes that human life depends entirely on God's sustaining word. The double imperative — 'restore me' (*tachalimeni*) and 'let me live' (*vehachayeni*) — is both medical and theological: physical healing and spiritual reviving.
17. The theological depth here is extraordinary. Hezekiah reinterprets his suffering: the bitterness was for *shalom* ('peace, wholeness, well-being') — suffering had redemptive purpose. The image of God casting sins 'behind Your back' (*acharei gevkha*) means God deliberately turns away from them, choosing not to see them. This is one of the Old Testament's most vivid forgiveness metaphors.
18. This is the theological heart of the psalm and one of the most debated verses in Isaiah. Hezekiah's argument is functional, not philosophical: whatever the state of the dead, they do not praise God. Worship requires life. The three parallel terms — Sheol, death (*mavet*), the pit (*bor*) — paint the underworld as a place of silence where God's faithfulness (*emet*) goes unacknowledged.
19. The doubled *chay chay* ('the living, the living!') is an ecstatic contrast to the death-silence of v. 18. Hezekiah is alive and he knows it. The generational dimension — 'a father makes known to his children' — transforms personal survival into covenantal transmission. Praise is not just vertical (to God) but horizontal (across generations).
20. The psalm ends in communal worship — the singular 'I' becomes 'we' (*neginot-ay nenaggen*, 'my songs we will play'). Hezekiah's private suffering produces public praise. The location 'in the house of the LORD' (*al-beit YHWH*) brings the psalm full circle: the man who turned his face to the wall in despair (v. 2) now faces the temple in joy. This verse closes the poetry section.
21. This verse and the next appear to be displaced from their original position (likely after v. 6), as they narrate practical details already implied. The *develet te'enim* ('cake of pressed figs') was a known medicinal remedy in the ancient world — God's miracle works through natural means. The *shechin* ('boil') may indicate a severe abscess or infected wound.

22. Hezekiah's question reveals what matters most to him: not 'Will I live?' but 'Will I worship again?' Going up to the house of the LORD is the measure of recovery. This connects directly to the psalm's closing image (v. 20) of lifelong worship in the temple. The sign of the retreating shadow (v. 8) was God's answer to this question.

39

Summary: *Merodach-baladan king of Babylon sends envoys with letters and a gift to Hezekiah after his recovery. Hezekiah shows them everything — his treasure house, silver, gold, spices, precious oil, his armory, and all his storehouses. Isaiah confronts him: everything in the palace will be carried to Babylon, and some of Hezekiah's own descendants will serve as eunuchs in the Babylonian palace. Hezekiah responds with startling acceptance: 'The word of the LORD you have spoken is good,' adding, 'There will be peace and security in my days.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This brief chapter is the hinge of the entire book of Isaiah. It explains why chapters 40-66 shift from Assyrian crisis to Babylonian exile — the seeds of exile are sown in Hezekiah's own throne room. The king who prayed so magnificently against Assyria (37:16-20) now naively displays his wealth to Babylon's agents. His final words — 'There will be peace and security in my days' — are either humble submission to God's decree or chilling indifference to his descendants' fate. The ambiguity is deliberate.*

Translation Friction: *Merodach-baladan (Marduk-apla-iddina II) was a Chaldean ruler who twice seized the Babylonian throne and actively sought anti-Assyrian alliances. His embassy to Hezekiah was almost certainly political, not merely a get-well visit. We rendered Hezekiah's response in v. 8 without editorial judgment, preserving the Hebrew text's refusal to tell us whether his words reflect piety or selfishness.*

Connections: *This chapter parallels 2 Kings 20:12-19. Merodach-baladan's embassy likely dates to around 703 BCE, when he briefly held Babylon again before Sennacherib expelled him. The prophecy of Babylonian exile (vv. 6-7) bridges directly to Isaiah 40:1 ('Comfort, comfort My people'), which opens the exile-and-return section. The treasures Hezekiah displayed will be the same treasures Nebuchadnezzar carries away (2 Kings 24:13). Chapter 39 closes the 'Book of the King' (chs. 36-39) and opens the door to the 'Book of the Servant' (chs. 40-55).*

At that time Merodach-baladan son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a gift to Hezekiah, for he had heard that he had been ill and had recovered. Hezekiah was pleased with them and showed them his treasure house — the silver, the gold, the spices, the precious oil, his entire armory, and everything found in his storehouses. There was nothing in his palace or in all his realm that Hezekiah did not show them. Then Isaiah the prophet came to King Hezekiah and said to him, 'What did these men say, and where did they come from?' Hezekiah said, 'They came to me from a distant land — from Babylon.' Isaiah said, 'What have they seen in your palace?' Hezekiah answered, 'They have seen everything in my palace. There is nothing in my storehouses that I did not show them.' Then Isaiah said to Hezekiah, 'Hear the word of the LORD of Hosts: The days are coming when everything in your palace, and everything your fathers have stored up until this day, will be carried off to Babylon. Nothing will be left, says the LORD. Some of your own descendants, your own flesh and blood, will be taken away. They will become eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.' Hezekiah said to Isaiah, 'The word of the LORD you have spoken is good.' Then he added, 'There will be peace and security in my days.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Merodach-baladan (Marduk-apla-iddina II) was a Chaldean chieftain who seized the Babylonian throne twice (721-710 and briefly in 703 BCE). His 'get well' embassy was almost certainly a diplomatic mission to recruit Hezekiah into an anti-Assyrian coalition. The gift (minchah) functions as tribute between equals — a political overture disguised as courtesy.
2. The catalog of displayed wealth is exhaustive and damning: silver, gold, spices, oil, weapons, storehouses — and then the devastating summary: 'there was nothing he did not show them.' The verb *vayismach* ('he was pleased, rejoiced') reveals Hezekiah's motivation — he was flattered by Babylon's attention. The man who humbly spread a threatening letter before God (37:14) now proudly spreads his wealth before pagans.
3. Isaiah's questions are probing and deliberate — he already knows the answers. The interrogation mirrors Nathan confronting David (2 Sam. 12). Hezekiah's answer emphasizes distance ('a distant land') as if impressed by the reach of his reputation. He seems unaware that he is being interrogated, not interviewed.

4. Hezekiah repeats the 'nothing I did not show' formula from v. 2, but now in his own mouth it sounds like a confession. What was narration in v. 2 becomes self-incrimination in v. 4. He does not seem to sense the danger in his own words — total transparency with a foreign power amounts to a strategic intelligence briefing.
5. The prophetic announcement formula *shema devar-YHWH tseva'ot* ('Hear the word of the LORD of Hosts') signals that judgment follows. The same formula that delivered salvation in chapter 37 now delivers sentence. Isaiah is the same prophet with the same authority — only the message has changed because the king's behavior has changed.
6. The prophecy mirrors Hezekiah's boast with surgical precision: he said 'nothing I did not show them' — God says 'nothing will be left.' What was displayed will be deported. The phrase 'everything your fathers stored up until this day' extends the loss across generations — not just Hezekiah's wealth but the accumulated treasury of the Davidic dynasty.
7. The prophecy escalates from treasure to dynasty: not just gold but sons will be taken. The word *sarisim* ('eunuchs, court officials') in its most literal sense means Hezekiah's male line will be castrated and made to serve the very king whose envoys he just entertained. The Hebrew emphasizes biological descent: 'from your sons who will go out from you, whom you will father' — these are not abstract future people but Hezekiah's own bloodline. Tradition connects this to Daniel and his companions (Dan. 1:3-7).
8. Hezekiah's final words in Isaiah are the most debated sentence in the Hezekiah narrative. 'The word of the LORD is good' (*tov devar-YHWH*) could be genuine submission to divine sovereignty — accepting God's judgment without argument. But 'there will be peace and security in my days' (*shalom ve'emet beyamai*) reads as relief that the blow falls after his lifetime. The Hebrew text refuses to resolve the ambiguity. The word *emet* here means 'stability, security, reliability' rather than its usual sense of 'truth.' This verse closes the historical section of Isaiah (chs. 36-39) and sets the stage for the exile-and-comfort oracles that begin in chapter 40.

40

Summary: *We arrive at one of the great turning points in all of Scripture. After thirty-nine chapters of judgment, warning, and exile-foretelling, the prophet's voice shifts dramatically to consolation. God commands that His people be comforted — their warfare is ended, their iniquity pardoned. A voice cries out to prepare the way of the LORD in the wilderness. The chapter sweeps from the frailty of humanity ('all flesh is grass') to the immeasurable greatness of God who weighs mountains in scales and sits above the circle of the earth, reducing princes to nothing. It culminates in the promise that those who wait on the LORD will renew their strength and mount up with wings like eagles.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 3 is quoted in all four Gospels as fulfilled in John the Baptist — a rare four-Gospel convergence. The phrase 'Comfort, comfort my people' uses the doubled imperative (*nachamú, nachamú*), a hallmark of prophetic urgency. The closing image of eagles' wings (v.31) has become one of the most beloved promises in the Bible. The cosmological language of vv.12-26 anticipates the divine speeches in Job.*

Translation Friction: *The KJV's 'comfort ye, comfort ye' preserves the Hebrew doubling but sounds archaic. We retain the doubled imperative as 'Comfort, comfort' for its rhetorical force. The Hebrew *chug ha'arets* (v.22, circle of the earth) has generated much discussion; we render it straightforwardly. The shift from plural imperatives (vv.1-2) to a singular voice (v.3) to the prophet's own voice (v.6) creates a dramatic polyphony we preserve through line breaks.*

Connections: *Verse 3 is cited in Matthew 3:3, Mark 1:3, Luke 3:4-6, and John 1:23. 'All flesh is grass' echoes in 1 Peter 1:24-25. The incomparability of God (vv.18-26) parallels Romans 11:33-36. 'Wings like eagles' recalls Exodus 19:4 and Deuteronomy 32:11. The chapter inaugurates the 'Book of Consolation' (chs. 40-66) and forms the theological foundation for the Servant Songs to follow.*

¹Comfort, comfort my people,
says your God.

²Speak tenderly to Jerusalem
and cry out to her
that her warfare is ended,
that her iniquity is pardoned —

for she has received from the hand of the LORD
double for all her sins.

³A voice cries out:
'In the wilderness, prepare the way of the LORD;
make straight in the desert
a highway for our God.'

⁴Every valley shall be lifted up,
and every mountain and hill made low;
the uneven ground shall become level,
and the rough places a plain.

⁵And the glory of the LORD shall be revealed,
and all flesh shall see it together,
for the mouth of the LORD has spoken.

⁶A voice says, 'Cry out!'
And I said, 'What shall I cry?'
All flesh is grass,
and all its beauty is like the flower of the field.

⁷The grass withers, the flower fades
when the breath of the LORD blows upon it;
surely the people are grass.

⁸The grass withers, the flower fades,
but the word of our God will stand forever.

⁹Go up on a high mountain,
O Zion, herald of good news;
lift up your voice with strength,
O Jerusalem, herald of good news.
Lift it up, do not be afraid;
say to the cities of Judah,
'Behold your God!'

¹⁰Behold, the Lord GOD comes with might,
and His arm rules for Him;
behold, His reward is with Him,
and His recompense before Him.

¹¹He will tend His flock like a shepherd;
He will gather the lambs in His arms
and carry them close to His heart;
He will gently lead those that are nursing.

¹²Who has measured the waters in the hollow of His hand
and marked off the heavens with a span,
and enclosed the dust of the earth in a measure,

and weighed the mountains in scales
and the hills in a balance?

¹³Who has directed the Spirit of the LORD,
or as His counselor has instructed Him?

¹⁴With whom did He take counsel and who gave Him understanding?
Who taught Him the path of justice,
or taught Him knowledge,
or showed Him the way of understanding?

¹⁵Behold, the nations are like a drop from a bucket
and are counted as dust on the scales;
behold, He takes up the coastlands like fine dust.

¹⁶Lebanon would not suffice for fuel,
nor its beasts for a burnt offering.

¹⁷All the nations are as nothing before Him;
they are counted by Him as less than nothing and emptiness.

¹⁸To whom then will you liken God,
or what likeness will you compare to Him?

¹⁹An idol! A craftsman casts it,
and a goldsmith overlays it with gold
and casts for it silver chains.

²⁰He who is too poor for such an offering
chooses wood that will not rot;
he seeks out a skilled craftsman
to set up an idol that will not totter.

²¹Do you not know? Do you not hear?
Has it not been told you from the beginning?
Have you not understood
from the foundations of the earth?

²²It is He who sits above the circle of the earth,
and its inhabitants are like grasshoppers;
who stretches out the heavens like a curtain
and spreads them like a tent to dwell in.

²³He brings princes to nothing
and makes the rulers of the earth as emptiness.

²⁴Scarcely are they planted, scarcely sown,
scarcely has their stem taken root in the earth,
when He blows on them and they wither,
and the storm carries them away like stubble.

²⁵'To whom then will you liken Me,
that I should be his equal?'
says the Holy One.

²⁶Lift up your eyes on high and see:
Who created these?
He who brings out their host by number,
calling them all by name;
by the greatness of His might
and because He is strong in power,
not one is missing.

²⁷Why do you say, O Jacob,
and speak, O Israel,
'My way is hidden from the LORD,
and my right is disregarded by my God'?

²⁸Have you not known? Have you not heard?
The LORD is the everlasting God,
the Creator of the ends of the earth.
He does not faint or grow weary;
His understanding is unsearchable.

²⁹He gives power to the faint,
and to him who has no might He increases strength.

³⁰Even youths shall faint and be weary,
and young men shall fall exhausted.

³¹But those who wait upon the LORD shall renew their strength;
they shall mount up with wings like eagles;
they shall run and not be weary;
they shall walk and not faint.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The doubled imperative *nachamú nachamú* is a plural command — God addresses His heavenly council or the prophets collectively, commanding them to bring comfort to Israel. This opening word sets the tone for chapters 40-66.
2. 'Speak to the heart of Jerusalem' (*al-lev*) is an idiom meaning to speak tenderly or persuasively. 'Double for all her sins' does not mean excessive punishment but full, complete payment — the debt is settled.
3. The Masoretic accentuation links 'in the wilderness' with 'prepare the way' rather than with 'a voice cries.' The LXX and all four Gospels connect 'wilderness' with the voice itself. We follow the MT punctuation but note the NT reading. This verse is quoted in Matthew 3:3, Mark 1:3, Luke 3:4, and John 1:23.
4. The imagery is of ancient road-building for a royal procession. God Himself is the approaching king for whom the highway is prepared. The leveling of terrain is both literal (return from exile) and spiritual (removal of obstacles to God's coming).
5. 'All flesh' (*kol-basar*) encompasses all humanity, not Israel alone. The revelation of God's glory is universal in scope. 'The mouth of the LORD has spoken' is a prophetic authentication formula.
6. The prophet now speaks in first person — 'What shall I cry?' The Hebrew *chesed* here means 'beauty' or 'comeliness' rather than its more common meaning of 'steadfast love.' The LXX reads 'glory of man.' ¹ Peter 1:24 quotes this passage.

7. Ruach here is 'breath' or 'wind' rather than 'Spirit' — the hot desert wind (sirocco) that scorches vegetation overnight. The frailty of human life under divine breath becomes the foil for the permanence of God's word in the next verse.
8. The repetition from v.7 creates a refrain, but now pivots to the contrasting permanence of God's word. This verse is quoted in 1 Peter 1:25. The phrase yaqum le'olam means literally 'will rise/stand to eternity.'
9. The feminine participle mevasseret can mean 'Zion who brings good news' or 'one who brings good news to Zion.' We follow the reading where Zion is the herald, as the grammar more naturally supports. The root b-s-r (to bring good news) is the Hebrew precursor to the NT concept of 'gospel.'
10. The double hinneh (behold) emphasizes the dramatic arrival. God comes as both warrior (with might) and shepherd (v.11). His 'reward' and 'recompense' refer to the redeemed people He brings with Him. Cf. Isaiah 62:11 and Revelation 22:12.
11. The juxtaposition with v.10 is stunning: the arm (zero'a) that rules now gathers lambs. 'In his bosom' (becheiqo) means pressed against the chest. This verse anticipates Jesus' self-identification as the Good Shepherd (John 10:11). 'Those that are nursing' (alot) refers to ewes with young — God's care extends to the most vulnerable.
12. A sequence of rhetorical questions begins here (vv.12-14, 18, 21, 25-26, 28) — all expecting the answer 'only God.' The scale is staggering: the entire ocean fits in God's cupped hand; the cosmos spans His outstretched fingers. This cosmological hymn parallels Job 38-41.
13. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 11:34 and 1 Corinthians 2:16 to affirm the unsearchable nature of God's wisdom. Here ruach likely means 'mind' or 'Spirit' — no one has shaped God's thinking.
14. The four-fold question intensifies the incomparability of God. Unlike pagan deities who needed councils, the LORD requires no advisor. Mishpat (justice/judgment) here refers to the right ordering of creation.
15. Mar middeli — a drop clinging to the outside of a bucket, not even a full drop. The nations that seem so powerful are negligible before God. 'Coastlands' (iyyim) refers to distant maritime peoples, the edges of the known world.
16. Lebanon's vast cedar forests and abundant wildlife would be insufficient for an offering worthy of this God. The point is not that God demands enormous sacrifices but that no human offering could match His greatness.
17. The Hebrew escalates from 'ayin (nothing) to efes (zero/end) to tohu (formlessness, the same word used for the primordial chaos in Genesis 1:2). Nations are not just small — they approach non-existence before God.
18. This question launches the first idol polemic of Second Isaiah (vv.18-20), a theme that will intensify in chapters 41, 44, and 46. The incomparability question is devastating: after vv.12-17, the answer is obvious.
19. The prophet's tone shifts to biting satire. The process of idol-making is described in deliberate, mundane detail: casting, overlaying, chaining. The god must be chained down lest it topple — a withering commentary on its powerlessness.
20. Even the poor person tries to make the best idol possible — choosing durable wood, hiring a skilled craftsman — all so the idol 'will not totter.' The irony is thick: the idol's greatest achievement is simply not falling over.
21. Four rhetorical questions hammer the point: this knowledge is available, ancient, and foundational. 'From the foundations of the earth' (mosedot ha'aretz) means both 'since the earth was founded' and 'from the very structure of creation.'
22. Chug can mean circle, sphere, or vault. It describes the visible horizon where sky meets earth. God sits enthroned above it all. The tent imagery is striking — the entire cosmos is God's dwelling, stretched out as easily as a nomad pitches a tent.
23. Rozenim (princes/nobles) and shofetei eretz (judges/rulers of the earth) represent the highest human authority. God reduces them to 'ayin (nothing) and tohu (emptiness/chaos) — the same vocabulary used of the nations in v.17.
24. The triple af bal (scarcely/not even) creates a breathless rhythm: they barely exist before God's breath (nashaf) undoes them. The image echoes the grass metaphor of vv.6-8 but applied specifically to earthly rulers.
25. Now God Himself speaks in first person, repeating the question of v.18. 'The Holy One' (Qadosh) stands alone here without 'of Israel,' emphasizing God's absolute transcendence.
26. 'These' refers to the stars — God musters them like a commander calling roll. Each star has a name; not one fails to answer. The implied argument: if God knows every star by name, how can Israel say He has forgotten them? This sets up vv.27-31.
27. The double naming 'Jacob/Israel' addresses the entire covenant community. Their complaint — that God neither sees their suffering nor acts on their behalf — is the very thing this entire chapter refutes. Mishpati (my justice/right) suggests they feel God owes them vindication.
28. Elohei olam (everlasting God) echoes Genesis 21:33 where Abraham calls on this name. The God who does not faint (yi'af) or grow weary (yiga') is contrasted with youths who do (v.30). 'No searching' (ein cheqer) of His understanding means it is literally bottomless.
29. The paradox of divine power: the God who never tires (v.28) gives His strength to those who are exhausted. The Hebrew ein onim (no might) describes total depletion — and that is precisely where God meets them.
30. The strongest humans — youths in their prime — still collapse. The repetition of yi'afu (faint) and yig'u (weary) from v.28 is deliberate: what God never experiences, even the best of humanity cannot avoid.

31. Qavah means to wait with taut expectation, like a rope pulled tight. Yachalifu literally means 'exchange' — they trade their depleted human strength for God's inexhaustible power. The descending sequence (fly, run, walk) is theologically profound: the sustained daily walk of faithfulness requires more enduring grace than the dramatic moment of soaring. This verse has become one of the most memorized in all of Scripture.

41

Summary: *We witness God summoning the nations to a courtroom trial. The chapter opens with a dramatic legal challenge: 'Keep silence before Me, O coastlands.' God declares that He has stirred up a conqueror from the east and the north — Cyrus, though unnamed — and challenges the idols to explain it. In the center of this cosmic trial, God turns to Israel with some of the tenderest words in Scripture: 'Fear not, for I am with you.' Israel is named God's servant, chosen and not cast off. The chapter closes with a devastating verdict against the idols: they are nothing, their works are emptiness, and the one who chooses them is an abomination.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 10 — 'Fear not, for I am with you; be not dismayed, for I am your God' — is among the most quoted comfort passages in the Bible. The courtroom metaphor (rib pattern) structures the entire chapter: God is both plaintiff and judge, the nations are defendants, and the idols are on trial for fraud. The phrase 'I stirred up one from the north' initiates the Cyrus thread that will run through chapters 44-45. Israel is called 'seed of Abraham my friend' (v.8), the only place in the Hebrew Bible where Abraham is explicitly called God's friend (ohavi, literally 'my lover').*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'one from the east' and 'one from the north' (vv.2, 25) is debated but contextually refers to Cyrus of Persia, whose campaigns came from both directions. We leave the text as the prophet does — without naming Cyrus until 44:28. The phrase 'you worm Jacob' (v.14) is startling; the Hebrew tola'at is not merely 'worm' but specifically the crimson worm used for making red dye, adding a layer the English cannot fully capture. We retain 'worm' for its visceral force.*

Connections: *The trial-of-the-nations motif continues in chapters 43 and 44. 'Fear not, for I am with you' echoes Genesis 26:24 (to Isaac) and anticipates Matthew 28:20 ('I am with you always'). Abraham as 'my friend' connects to James 2:23 and 2 Chronicles 20:7. The servant designation for Israel (v.8) begins a thread that will distinguish between the nation-servant and the individual Servant of chapters 42, 49, 50, and 53. The Redeemer title (go'el, v.14) links to Ruth and anticipates its climactic use in Isaiah 43-44.*

¹Keep silence before Me, O coastlands;
let the peoples renew their strength;
let them come near, then let them speak;
let us come together for judgment.

²Who stirred up one from the east
whom righteousness meets at every step?
He gives up nations before him
and makes him tread down kings;
He makes them like dust before his sword,
like driven stubble before his bow.

³He pursues them and passes on safely,
by a path his feet have not traveled before.

⁴Who has performed and done this,
calling the generations from the beginning?
I, the LORD, the first,
and with the last — I am He.

⁵The coastlands have seen and are afraid;
the ends of the earth tremble.
They draw near and come.

⁶Each one helps his neighbor
and says to his brother, 'Be strong!'

⁷The craftsman encourages the goldsmith,
and he who smooths with the hammer
encourages him who strikes the anvil,
saying of the soldering, 'It is good.'
And they fasten it with nails
so that it will not totter.

⁸But you, Israel, are my servant,
Jacob whom I have chosen,
offspring of Abraham my friend —

⁹you whom I took from the ends of the earth,
and called from its farthest corners,
saying to you, 'You are my servant;
I have chosen you and not cast you off' —

¹⁰Fear not, for I am with you;
be not dismayed, for I am your God.
I will strengthen you, I will help you,
I will uphold you with my righteous right hand.

¹¹Behold, all who are incensed against you
shall be put to shame and confounded;
those who strive against you
shall be as nothing and shall perish.

¹²You shall seek them, but you will not find them —
those who contend with you.
Those who war against you
shall be as nothing at all.

¹³For I, the LORD your God,
hold your right hand;
it is I who say to you, 'Fear not,
I am the one who helps you.'

¹⁴Fear not, you worm Jacob,
you men of Israel!
I will help you, declares the LORD;
your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel.

¹⁵Behold, I will make you a threshing sledge,
new, sharp, and double-edged;
you shall thresh the mountains and crush them,
and you shall make the hills like chaff.

¹⁶You shall winnow them, and the wind shall carry them away,
and the storm shall scatter them.
And you shall rejoice in the LORD;
in the Holy One of Israel you shall glory.

¹⁷When the poor and needy seek water and there is none,
and their tongue is parched with thirst,
I the LORD will answer them;
I the God of Israel will not forsake them.

¹⁸I will open rivers on the bare heights
and fountains in the midst of the valleys.
I will make the wilderness a pool of water
and the dry land springs of water.

¹⁹I will put in the wilderness the cedar,
the acacia, the myrtle, and the olive.
I will set in the desert the cypress,
the plane tree, and the pine together,

²⁰that they may see and know,
may consider and understand together,
that the hand of the LORD has done this,
the Holy One of Israel has created it.

²¹Set forth your case, says the LORD;
bring your proofs, says the King of Jacob.

²²Let them bring them forward and tell us
what is to happen.
Tell us the former things, what they are,
that we may consider them
and know their outcome;
or declare to us the things to come.

²³Tell us what is to come hereafter,
that we may know that you are gods.
Do good or do harm,
that we may be dismayed and terrified together.

²⁴Behold, you are nothing,
and your work is less than nothing;
an abomination is he who chooses you.

²⁵I stirred up one from the north, and he has come,
from the rising of the sun one who calls on my name.
He shall trample rulers like mortar,
as the potter treads clay.

²⁶Who declared it from the beginning, that we might know,
and beforehand, that we might say, 'He is right'?
There was none who declared it,
none who proclaimed it,
none who heard your words.

²⁷I was the first to say to Zion,
'Behold, here they are!'
and I give to Jerusalem a herald of good news.

²⁸But when I look, there is no one;
among these there is no counselor
who, when I ask, gives an answer.

²⁹Behold, they are all a delusion;
their works are nothing;
their metal images are empty wind.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens as a courtroom drama. God is the plaintiff-judge who summons the coastlands (iyyim, the distant nations) to trial. 'Renew their strength' (yachalifu koach) uses the same phrase as 40:31, but here with legal force: 'gather your best arguments.' The invitation 'let us come together' is a legal summons.
2. The 'one from the east' is Cyrus of Persia, unnamed until 44:28. The Hebrew is ambiguous: tsedek (righteousness/victory) could be the man's character or God's vindication through him. We render it as righteousness meeting him, preserving the ambiguity. God claims credit for Cyrus's conquests — this is the core argument of the trial.
3. The conqueror's advance is so swift and divinely guided that he traverses paths he has never walked — yet passes in shalom (safety/wholeness). The image is of unstoppable, providentially directed conquest.
4. God answers His own question: He is the one directing history. 'I am He' (ani hu) is a divine self-identification formula that will recur throughout Second Isaiah (43:10, 13, 25; 46:4; 48:12). 'The first and with the last' claims sovereignty over the entire span of time.
5. The nations react with terror to Cyrus's advance — but rather than fleeing, they draw near. The next verses reveal why: they huddle together to make idols, seeking security in manufactured gods.
6. The mutual encouragement sounds admirable in isolation, but the context reveals it as tragic: they encourage one another in idol-making (vv.7). Their solidarity is misplaced — they strengthen each other in futility.
7. The idol-making process is again described with withering mundane detail (cf. 40:19-20). The god must be nailed down — lo yimnot, 'so it will not totter' — the same phrase used in 40:20. The nations' response to divine power is to manufacture more powerless gods.
8. The dramatic shift from the nations making idols to God addressing Israel is marked by ve'attah (but you). Israel is three things: God's servant ('avdi), God's chosen (becharticha), and Abraham's seed. The designation ohavi (my friend/lover) for Abraham appears only here; James 2:23 and 2 Chronicles 20:7 echo it. The Arabic name Khalil (friend) for Abraham derives from this tradition.
9. 'From the ends of the earth' refers to Abraham's call from Ur of the Chaldees (Genesis 12:1) and also to Israel's gathering from exile. 'Not cast you off (lo me'asticha) directly addresses the exiles' deepest fear: that God has permanently rejected them.
10. This verse is one of the most beloved in the Hebrew Bible. The structure is two negative commands ('fear not,' 'be not dismayed') followed by three positive promises ('I will strengthen,' 'I will help,' 'I will uphold'). The phrase bimin tsidqi ('with my righteous right hand') combines power (right hand) with covenant faithfulness (righteousness). This is not generic encouragement but a covenant oath.

11. The oracle shifts from comfort to vindication. Israel's enemies will become 'ayin (nothing) — the same fate as the nations before God (40:17). The vocabulary of shame (bosh, kalam) is legal: they will lose their case in the cosmic trial.
12. The escalation continues: enemies move from shame (v.11) to non-existence (v.12). The threefold designation — those incensed, those who strive, those who war — covers every form of opposition. They will simply vanish.
13. The image of God holding Israel's right hand is extraordinarily intimate — a parent holding a child's hand, guiding and steadying. The second 'fear not' (al-tira') reinforces v.10. 'I am the one who helps you' (ani azarticha) uses the prophetic perfect — so certain is the help that it is spoken of as already accomplished.
14. This is the third 'fear not' in four verses (vv.10, 13, 14). 'Worm' (tola'at) is the crimson/scarlet worm (coccus ilicis) used for making red dye — tiny and easily crushed, yet the source of royal color. 'Declares the LORD' renders ne'um YHWH, the prophetic oracle formula. Go'alekh (your Redeemer) introduces the kinsman-redeemer concept applied to God — the same institution that drives the book of Ruth. The Holy One of Israel is Isaiah's signature divine title.
15. The transformation is astonishing: the 'worm' of v.14 becomes a threshing sledge that crushes mountains. The morag charuts was a heavy wooden board studded with sharp stones or iron teeth, dragged over grain. Mountains and hills represent the great empires that oppressed Israel.
16. After threshing comes winnowing — the wind (ruach) carries away the chaff of the nations. The result is not military pride but worship: Israel will rejoice in the LORD and glory in the Holy One of Israel. Victory leads to doxology, not triumphalism.
17. The imagery shifts to the physical suffering of the exiles. Their thirst is both literal (desert journey) and spiritual (longing for God's presence). 'I will answer them' (e'ennem) — the God who summons nations to trial also hears the cry of the thirsty poor.
18. God's response to thirst is extravagant: rivers on hilltops where water cannot naturally flow, springs in the desert. This reverses the natural order — a new creation that anticipates the new exodus theme (cf. 43:19-20). The imagery echoes the wilderness provision of Exodus 17.
19. Seven trees — a number of completeness — will grow in the desert. These include both common and noble species: cedars and cypresses from Lebanon's mountains growing in the wasteland. The desert becoming a forest is a creation-reversal miracle.
20. Four verbs of perception — see, know, consider, understand — emphasize that the miracle's purpose is revelation. The desert transformation is not merely provision but testimony: the Holy One of Israel has created (bara') it, using the same verb reserved for divine creation in Genesis 1.
21. The trial resumes after the comfort oracle (vv.8-20). God now addresses the idols directly: 'Bring your case!' The title 'King of Jacob' (Melekh Ya'aqov) is rare and powerful — God is not merely Israel's God but their sovereign. The idols must now prove their divinity or stand condemned.
22. The test for true divinity is simple: can you explain the past or predict the future? The idols are challenged to do either. This predictive criterion — only the true God can foretell history — is the cornerstone of Isaiah's argument against idolatry.
23. The challenge intensifies: 'Do anything — good or evil — just do something!' The idols are challenged not merely to predict but to act. The taunt is devastating: even a harmful act would prove they exist as agents. They cannot manage even that.
24. The verdict is delivered: the idols are me'ayin (from nothing) and their work is me'afa' (from nothingness/a viper's breath). The one who chooses to worship them is to'evah (abomination) — a term of covenant revulsion. The case is closed.
25. The 'one from the north' and 'from the rising of the sun' (east) is Cyrus, whose empire spanned both directions. 'Calls on my name' is remarkable — a pagan king unknowingly serving God's purposes. The trampling imagery shows Cyrus as God's instrument of judgment against the nations.
26. The triple 'none' (ein) is the final condemnation of the idols. They declared nothing, proclaimed nothing, and no one ever heard them speak. The silence of the idols is their self-condemnation. Only the LORD announced Cyrus in advance.
27. God alone foretold these events to Zion. The mevasser (herald of good news) echoes 40:9, where Zion was the herald. The root b-s-r (good news) continues its journey toward the NT concept of gospel.
28. God looks among the idols and their worshipers for anyone who can respond — and finds no one. The silence is deafening. This sets up the devastating conclusion in v.29.
29. The chapter closes with a sweeping verdict: all the idols are 'aven (delusion/wickedness), their works are efes (nothing/zero), and their cast images are ruach vatohu (wind and chaos — tohu echoing the primordial formlessness of Genesis 1:2). The trial is over. The idols are condemned to non-existence.

42

Summary: *We encounter the first of Isaiah's four Servant Songs (vv.1-4), one of the most important messianic passages in the Hebrew Bible. God presents His servant — one upon whom He has placed His Spirit, who will bring justice to the nations not by force but by quiet faithfulness. A bruised reed he will not break; a faintly burning wick he will not quench. The chapter then expands into a new song of praise (vv.10-13), God's promise to lead the blind by paths they have not known (v.16), and a devastating indictment of Israel as the blind and deaf servant (vv.18-25) who has been plundered because of covenant unfaithfulness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The First Servant Song (vv.1-4) is quoted in Matthew 12:18-21, where Jesus fulfills it by withdrawing rather than confronting His opponents. The servant's method is the opposite of worldly power: no shouting, no breaking, no extinguishing. The tension between the ideal servant (vv.1-4) and the blind servant Israel (vv.18-20) creates one of the great theological puzzles of Isaiah — who is this servant? The nation? A remnant? An individual? The answer unfolds across the four songs. Verse 9 declares that God announces 'new things' before they spring forth — the predictive criterion that condemned the idols in chapter 41.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'my servant' in v.1 versus 'the servant' in v.19 has generated centuries of interpretation. We let the text speak without forcing harmonization: the ideal servant of vv.1-4 stands in sharp contrast to the blind servant of vv.18-25. The Hebrew mishpat (vv.1, 3, 4) is rendered 'justice' throughout the song to maintain its legal-covenantal force, though it carries overtones of 'right order' and 'true religion.' We render lo yikheh (v.4) as 'he will not grow faint' rather than 'he will not be discouraged,' preserving the physical imagery that contrasts with the bruised reed and fading wick.*

Connections: *Matthew 12:18-21 quotes vv.1-4 as fulfilled in Jesus. The servant's Spirit-anointing (v.1) connects to Isaiah 11:2 and 61:1, and to Jesus' baptism (Matthew 3:16-17, where the Father's words echo both Isaiah 42:1 and Psalm 2:7). 'A light to the nations' (v.6) becomes a programmatic text for Paul's Gentile mission (Acts 13:47, 26:23). The 'new song' (v.10) connects to Psalms 96, 98, and Revelation 5:9. The blind-servant motif (vv.18-25) anticipates the healing of blindness as a messianic sign (Isaiah 35:5, Matthew 11:5).*

¹Behold my servant, whom I uphold,
my chosen one, in whom my soul delights;
I have put my Spirit upon him;
he will bring forth justice to the nations.

²He will not cry aloud or lift up his voice,
or make it heard in the street.

³A bruised reed he will not break,
and a faintly burning wick he will not quench;
he will faithfully bring forth justice.

⁴He will not grow faint or be crushed
until he has established justice in the earth;
and the coastlands wait for his teaching.

⁵This is what the LORD says —
He who created the heavens and stretched them out,
who spread out the earth and what comes from it,
who gives breath to the people on it
and spirit to those who walk in it:

⁶I am the LORD; I have called you in righteousness;
I will take you by the hand and keep you;
I will give you as a covenant for the people,
a light for the nations,

⁷to open the eyes that are blind,
to bring out the prisoners from the dungeon,
from the prison those who sit in darkness.

⁸I am the LORD; that is my name;
my glory I give to no other,
nor my praise to carved idols.

⁹The former things — behold, they have come to pass,
and new things I now declare;
before they spring forth I tell you of them.

¹⁰Sing to the LORD a new song,
his praise from the end of the earth,
you who go down to the sea, and all that fills it,
the coastlands and their inhabitants.

¹¹Let the desert and its cities lift up their voice,
the villages where Kedar dwells;
let the inhabitants of Sela sing for joy;
let them shout from the tops of the mountains.

¹²Let them give glory to the LORD
and declare His praise in the coastlands.

¹³The LORD goes forth like a mighty warrior;
like a man of war He stirs up His zeal.
He cries out, He shouts aloud;
He shows Himself mighty against His foes.

¹⁴For a long time I have held my peace;
I have kept still and restrained myself.
Now I will cry out like a woman in labor;
I will gasp and pant.

¹⁵I will lay waste mountains and hills
and dry up all their vegetation;
I will turn the rivers into islands
and dry up the pools.

¹⁶And I will lead the blind
in a way they do not know,
in paths they have not known I will guide them.
I will turn the darkness before them into light,
the rough places into level ground.

These are the things I do,
and I do not forsake them.

¹⁷They are turned back and utterly put to shame,
those who trust in carved idols,
who say to metal images,
'You are our gods.'

¹⁸Hear, you deaf,
and look, you blind, that you may see!

¹⁹Who is blind but my servant,
or deaf as my messenger whom I send?
Who is blind as my dedicated one,
or blind as the servant of the LORD?

²⁰He sees many things, but does not observe them;
his ears are open, but he does not hear.

²¹The LORD was pleased, for His righteousness' sake,
to magnify His teaching and make it glorious.

²²But this is a people plundered and looted;
they are all of them trapped in holes
and hidden in prisons.
They have become plunder, with no one to rescue them,
and spoil, with no one to say, 'Restore!'

²³Who among you will give ear to this,
will pay attention and listen for the time to come?

²⁴Who gave Jacob over to the looter,
and Israel to the plunderers?
Was it not the LORD, against whom we have sinned,
in whose ways they would not walk,
and whose teaching they would not obey?

²⁵So He poured out on him the heat of His anger
and the fury of war;
it set him on fire all around, but he did not understand;
it burned him up, but he did not take it to heart.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse inaugurates the First Servant Song (vv.1-4). God speaks in first person, presenting His servant to the heavenly court. 'In whom my soul delights' (ratsetah nafshi) echoes the language of the Father at Jesus' baptism (Matthew 3:17). The Spirit-endowment (natatti ruchi) parallels Isaiah 11:2 (the Branch) and 61:1 (the anointed preacher). Matthew 12:18-21 quotes this passage as fulfilled in Christ.
2. The servant's method is the opposite of the demagogue or the military conqueror. He does not shout in the marketplace or campaign for attention. This quiet authority stands in stark contrast to the noisy idol-makers of 41:6-7. Matthew 12:19 cites this as fulfilled when Jesus withdrew from confrontation.

3. The bruised reed and faintly burning wick are images of utter fragility. A cracked reed is useless; a dying wick gives no light. Most leaders would discard both. This servant preserves them. 'Faithfully' (le'emet, literally 'to truth') modifies 'bring forth justice' — the servant's justice is reliable, not arbitrary. Matthew 12:20 quotes this verse.
4. The verbs in v.4a mirror v.3: lo yikheh (he will not grow dim — like the wick) and lo yaruts (he will not be crushed — like the reed). The servant shares the condition of the broken but is not overcome by it. 'The coastlands wait for his teaching' (torah) extends the servant's mission universally. This is not Torah as Mosaic law but torah as the servant's authoritative instruction for all peoples.
5. A creation hymn introduces the servant's commission. God is identified by four creative acts: creating heavens, stretching them out, spreading the earth, and giving breath/spirit to its inhabitants. The God who made everything now speaks to commission His servant. 'This is what the LORD says' renders koh 'amar YHWH.
6. 'A covenant for the people' (berit 'am) is a compressed and extraordinary phrase — the servant does not merely mediate a covenant but is the covenant. 'A light for the nations' (or goyim) extends the mission far beyond Israel. Simeon quotes this in Luke 2:32 when he holds the infant Jesus. Paul claims it in Acts 13:47.
7. The servant's mission includes physical healing (opening blind eyes) and liberation (freeing prisoners). 'Those who sit in darkness' evokes both literal imprisonment and spiritual blindness. Jesus reads a parallel commission in Luke 4:18-19 from Isaiah 61. The irony deepens when Israel is later called the blind servant (v.19).
8. The divine self-assertion 'I am the LORD' (ani YHWH) anchors the servant's commission in God's exclusive sovereignty. 'My glory I give to no other' is the foundation of biblical monotheism — there is no power-sharing arrangement between the LORD and any other deity or image.
9. The 'former things' (rishonot) are earlier prophecies now fulfilled; the 'new things' (chadashot) are the fresh acts God is about to perform — the servant's mission, the new exodus, Cyrus's rise. God's ability to announce the future before it happens is the proof of His divinity that the idols failed to match (41:22-23).
10. The new song responds to the 'new things' of v.9. The call goes to the entire earth: seafarers, coastlands, desert dwellers (v.11), mountain peoples (v.11). All creation is summoned to worship because the servant's mission is universal.
11. Kedar refers to the Arabian desert tribes (descendants of Ishmael, Genesis 25:13). Sela (rock) likely refers to Petra or a rocky settlement. Even the most remote peoples — desert nomads and mountain dwellers — join the new song. The scope is deliberately universal.
12. The doxology continues: glory (kavod) to the LORD and His praise (tehillah) proclaimed even in the distant coastlands. The God whose glory will be revealed (40:5) now receives it from the farthest reaches of the earth.
13. After the quiet servant of vv.1-4, God Himself goes to war. The divine warrior motif (cf. Exodus 15:3) complements the servant's gentle mission. Qin'ah (jealousy/zeal) is God's fierce, protective passion for His people and His glory. The contrast between the servant's silence (v.2) and God's battle cry is deliberate.
14. God's silence is broken with the most visceral of images: a woman in labor. The Hebrew ef'eh (I will gasp/scream), eshom (I will pant), ve'esh'af (I will gasp) use sounds that mimic labored breathing. God's restraint (the exile period) gives way to active intervention — painful, urgent, and productive.
15. God's intervention reshapes geography itself. Mountains laid waste, rivers dried up — the same power that created (v.5) now deconstructs obstacles to His redemptive plan. This echoes the Exodus, where the sea was dried up for Israel's deliverance.
16. The blind whom God leads may be Israel (cf. vv.18-19) or humanity generally. The transformation — darkness to light, rough to level — echoes 40:3-4 (preparing the way). 'I do not forsake them' (lo azavtim) is a covenant promise that directly answers the exile's deepest fear.
17. The idol worshipers are 'turned back' (nasogu achor) — the opposite of forward progress on God's highway. While God leads the blind forward (v.16), the idol-trusters retreat in shame. The contrast between God's faithfulness and the idols' emptiness reaches its sharpest point.
18. The tone shifts sharply. God now addresses Israel, who should be hearing and seeing but cannot. The irony is painful: the servant is commissioned to open blind eyes (v.7), but Israel itself is blind and deaf. The commands are paradoxical — how can the deaf hear or the blind see? Only by divine intervention.
19. The tension between the ideal servant of vv.1-4 and the blind servant here is one of the most important theological dynamics in Isaiah. Israel is God's servant-nation, His messenger (mal'akhi), yet profoundly blind and deaf. Meshullam ('dedicated one' or 'covenant partner') intensifies the irony — the one most committed to God is the most oblivious. This tension drives the Servant Songs toward their resolution in chapters 49-53.
20. Israel has seen God's acts — exodus, Sinai, the prophets — but failed to observe (shamar, to guard/keep). Their ears are physically open (paqoach) but functionally closed. The paradox of seeing without perceiving echoes Isaiah 6:9-10 and is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 13:14.
21. Despite Israel's blindness, the LORD's purpose remains. He magnifies torah (teaching/law) — not because Israel earned it but for the sake of His own tsedek (righteousness/vindication). God's faithfulness does not depend on Israel's faithfulness.
22. The description of Israel's condition is heartbreaking: plundered, looted, trapped, imprisoned. The exile is not metaphorical but physical devastation. 'No one to rescue' and 'no one to say Restore' describes total abandonment — except that the God of vv.5-16 has not abandoned them.

23. The prophet addresses the exiles directly: will anyone actually listen? 'For the time to come' (le'achor) — for what follows, for the future. The plea is urgent: the deaf servant (v.19) is being asked again to hear.
24. The prophet answers his own question: it was the LORD who gave Israel over to plunder. The shift to first person plural ('we have sinned') is significant — the prophet includes himself in the national guilt. Then shifts to third person ('they would not walk') to describe the historical pattern. The cause of exile is covenant disobedience.
25. The chapter ends not with comfort but with indictment. God's wrath was poured out through military defeat (the fury of war), but even this did not penetrate Israel's blindness. 'He did not understand' and 'did not take it to heart' echo the deafness and blindness of vv.18-20. The chapter that began with the ideal servant's quiet justice ends with the blind servant on fire and unaware. The contrast demands resolution — which the following chapters will provide.

43

Summary: *We hear God speak some of the most intimate words in all of Scripture to His exiled people. 'Fear not, for I have redeemed you; I have called you by name, you are mine.' Through fire and through water, God promises to be with Israel. Nations will be given as ransom because Israel is precious in God's eyes. The chapter moves from this tender opening to a second trial scene where Israel serves as God's witnesses against the idols (vv.8-13). Then comes the announcement of a new exodus — 'Behold, I am doing a new thing' (v.19) — that will surpass even the original deliverance from Egypt. The chapter closes with a devastating reversal: despite God's grace, Israel has burdened Him with sins, yet God declares, 'I am He who blots out your transgressions for my own sake' (v.25).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 1 contains three of the most powerful clauses in prophetic literature: 'I have redeemed you,' 'I have called you by name,' and 'you are mine.' Each clause moves from action to intimacy to possession. Verse 4 — 'you are precious in my eyes, and honored, and I love you' — is God's direct declaration of love to a sinful, exiled people. The 'new thing' of v.19 became a programmatic text for the early church (2 Corinthians 5:17, Revelation 21:5). Verse 25 is among the clearest statements of grace in the Old Testament: God forgives not because Israel deserves it but 'for my own sake.'*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'I give Egypt as your ransom' (v.3) raises difficult questions about whether God values Israel over other nations. We render it faithfully and note in the translator's notes that the language is covenantal rather than comparative — it speaks to God's redemptive commitment to His chosen people. The verb bara' (create) in v.1 applied to Israel (not just the cosmos) is theologically significant and we preserve it. 'Do not remember the former things' (v.18) is startling given the centrality of remembrance in Israelite faith — the prophet commands a forgetting that is actually a reorientation of hope.*

Connections: *The new exodus theme (vv.16-21) parallels the original exodus throughout: water parting, a way in the wilderness, enemies destroyed. Paul draws on 'new creation' language (2 Corinthians 5:17) that has roots here. 'You are my witnesses' (v.10) anticipates Jesus' commission in Acts 1:8. 'I am He who blots out your transgressions' (v.25) connects to Psalm 51:1-2, Micah 7:18-19, and the NT theology of justification. The go'el (Redeemer) title (v.14) continues from 41:14.*

1But now, this is what the LORD says —
He who created you, O Jacob,
He who formed you, O Israel:
Fear not, for I have redeemed you;
I have called you by name, you are mine.

2When you pass through the waters, I will be with you;
and through the rivers, they shall not overwhelm you;
when you walk through fire you shall not be burned,
and the flame shall not consume you.

³For I am the LORD your God,
the Holy One of Israel, your Savior.
I give Egypt as your ransom,
Cush and Seba in exchange for you.

⁴Because you are precious in my eyes,
and honored, and I love you,
I give men in return for you,
peoples in exchange for your life.

⁵Fear not, for I am with you;
I will bring your offspring from the east,
and from the west I will gather you.

⁶I will say to the north, Give up,
and to the south, Do not withhold;
bring my sons from afar
and my daughters from the ends of the earth,

⁷everyone who is called by my name,
whom I created for my glory,
whom I formed and made.

⁸Bring out the people who are blind, yet have eyes,
who are deaf, yet have ears!

⁹All the nations gather together,
and the peoples assemble.
Who among them can declare this
and tell us the former things?
Let them bring their witnesses to prove them right;
let them hear and say, 'It is true.'

¹⁰'You are my witnesses,' declares the LORD,
'and my servant whom I have chosen,
that you may know and believe me
and understand that I am He.
Before me no god was formed,
nor shall there be any after me.'

¹¹I, I am the LORD,
and besides me there is no savior.

¹²I declared and saved and proclaimed,
when there was no strange god among you;
and you are my witnesses, declares the LORD,
and I am God.

¹³Also from this day forward I am He;
there is none who can deliver from my hand.
I work, and who can turn it back?

¹⁴This is what the LORD says,
your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel:
'For your sake I send to Babylon
and bring them all down as fugitives,
even the Chaldeans, in the ships in which they rejoice.'

¹⁵I am the LORD, your Holy One,
the Creator of Israel, your King.

¹⁶This is what the LORD says —
He who makes a way in the sea,
a path in the mighty waters,

¹⁷who brings out chariot and horse,
army and warrior;
they lie down together, they cannot rise;
they are extinguished, quenched like a wick.

¹⁸Remember not the former things,
nor consider the things of old.

¹⁹Behold, I am doing a new thing;
now it springs forth — do you not perceive it?
I will make a way in the wilderness
and rivers in the desert.

²⁰The wild beasts will honor me,
the jackals and the ostriches,
for I give water in the wilderness,
rivers in the desert,
to give drink to my chosen people.

²¹the people whom I formed for myself
that they might declare my praise.

²²Yet you did not call upon me, O Jacob;
but you have been weary of me, O Israel!

²³You have not brought me your sheep for burnt offerings,
or honored me with your sacrifices.
I have not burdened you with grain offerings,
or wearied you with frankincense.

²⁴You have not bought me sweet cane with money,
or satisfied me with the fat of your sacrifices.
But you have burdened me with your sins;

you have wearied me with your iniquities.

²⁵I, I am He
who blots out your transgressions for my own sake,
and I will not remember your sins.

²⁶Put me in remembrance; let us argue together;
set forth your case, that you may be proved right.

²⁷Your first father sinned,
and your mediators transgressed against me.

²⁸Therefore I profaned the princes of the sanctuary,
and I gave Jacob over to utter destruction
and Israel to reviling.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse follows immediately after the devastating indictment of 42:25. The *ve'attah* (but now) marks the great pivot: despite Israel's blindness and burning, God speaks redemption. 'Created' (*bara'*) and 'formed' (*yatsar*) use creation vocabulary — Israel is God's deliberate handiwork. The three declarations build: redeemed (legal act), called by name (personal knowledge), 'you are mine' (covenant possession). This is what the LORD says.
2. The waters evoke the Red Sea (Exodus 14) and the Jordan (Joshua 3); the fire evokes Daniel's three friends (Daniel 3). The promise is not that Israel will avoid these trials but that God will be present through them. 'I will be with you' (*itti-ani*) is the core of the Immanuel promise (Isaiah 7:14). The poetic structure is chiasmic: waters/ivers, fire/flame.
3. The Holy One of Israel is also 'your Savior' (*moshi'ekha*). The ransom language is striking: God gives Egypt, Cush (Ethiopia/Nubia), and Seba as the *kofer* (ransom price) for Israel. Historically this may refer to Cyrus's conquests of these regions. Theologically it declares that God values Israel supremely within His covenant purposes.
4. This is God's direct declaration of love — rare in its explicitness. *Yaqarta* (precious/costly), *nikhbadta* (honored/weighty), *ahavticha* (I love you) — three words that demolish any notion of God as distant or indifferent. The first-person emphasis (*va'ani*, 'and I myself') makes the love declaration unmistakably personal.
5. Another 'fear not' oracle (cf. 41:10, 13, 14). The gathering from east and west envisions a regathering of exiles scattered across the known world. The scope anticipates the universal regathering promised in Isaiah 11:11-12.
6. God commands the four directions (east, west in v.5; north, south here) to release His children. The language is parental — 'my sons' (*banai*) and 'my daughters' (*benotai*). The compass points represent totality: wherever Israel is scattered, God will reclaim them.
7. Three creation verbs — *bara'* (created), *yatsar* (formed), *asah* (made) — echo Genesis 1-2. Israel exists not by accident but by divine design, and their purpose is God's glory (*likhvodi*). 'Called by my name' means they bear God's identity — they are His representation on earth.
8. The paradox of Israel continues from 42:18-20: they have eyes but are blind, ears but are deaf. Yet God still summons them — not to condemn but to serve as witnesses (v.10). Even blind Israel has seen enough of God's works to testify.
9. The second trial scene (cf. 41:1, 21). The nations are again assembled and challenged: can any of their gods declare the future or explain the past? 'Let them bring their witnesses' — the idols must produce evidence. They cannot. But God has witnesses: Israel.
10. 'You are my witnesses' (*attem edai*) — Israel's role in the cosmic trial is to testify from their experience of God's faithfulness. 'Declares the LORD' renders *ne'um YHWH*. The threefold purpose — know, believe, understand — describes progressive deepening of faith. 'I am He' (*ani hu*) is the most concentrated monotheistic declaration in the Hebrew Bible. Jesus' 'I am' (*ego eimi*) statements in John's Gospel echo this formula.
11. The doubled *anokhi anokhi* (I, I) is emphatic: 'I and no other am the LORD.' *Ein mibbal'adai moshia'* — 'there is no savior besides me.' The claim is absolute: salvation is available from one source only. Hosea 13:4 makes the same claim. The NT applies this exclusively to Jesus (Acts 4:12).
12. Three past-tense verbs — declared, saved, proclaimed — point to God's historical track record with Israel. 'When there was no strange god among you' recalls the early period when Israel worshiped the LORD alone. Their experience of God's undivided faithfulness qualifies them as witnesses. 'Declares the LORD' renders *ne'um YHWH*.
13. *Gam-miyyom* — 'even from today/from the day' — extends the claim from past (v.12) into the eternal future. 'No one delivers from my hand' asserts absolute sovereignty. 'Who can turn it back?' (*mi yeshivenah*) — no power can reverse God's action. This is the divine guarantee behind every promise in this chapter.

14. God is identified by two titles: 'your Redeemer' (go'alkhem) and 'the Holy One of Israel.' The Redeemer sends judgment to Babylon — the captor itself will become captive. 'Brings them all down as fugitives' (barichim, fleeing ones/bars — the text is difficult) reverses Babylon's role: the prisoner becomes the prisoner. This is what the LORD says.
15. Four titles in rapid succession: the LORD, your Holy One, the Creator of Israel, your King. The progression moves from covenant name to moral character to creative power to sovereign authority. 'Creator of Israel' (bore' Yisra'el) again uses the verb reserved for divine creation.
16. The Exodus is evoked without being named: 'a way in the sea' can only be the parting of the Red Sea (Exodus 14). God is identified by His greatest past act of salvation — but only as prelude to announcing something even greater (vv.18-19). This is what the LORD says.
17. Pharaoh's army is described without naming Pharaoh: chariots, horses, army, warriors — all 'extinguished like a wick' (pishtah). The wick image connects to the servant's 'faintly burning wick' in 42:3. Egypt's military power guttered out in the sea. The past tense recounts history as evidence of God's power.
18. This is a shocking command in a tradition built on remembrance (zakhor). After evoking the Exodus (vv.16-17), God says: stop looking back. The 'former things' (rishonot) include even the Exodus itself. Something so new is coming that the greatest act of the past pales beside it.
19. This is one of the most quoted verses in Isaiah. The 'new thing' (chadashah) is the new exodus — return from Babylon — but its language reaches beyond any single historical event into the eschatological future. 'Do you not perceive it?' challenges Israel's blindness (42:18-20). The way in the wilderness and rivers in the desert reverse the harshness of the original wilderness wandering.
20. Even the animals of the desert — jackals and ostriches, creatures of desolation — will honor God when water flows in the wasteland. Creation itself responds to God's redemptive acts. 'My chosen people' (ammi bechiri) echoes the servant language of 42:1.
21. The purpose of Israel's existence is stated with crystalline clarity: to declare God's praise (tehillah). Yatsarti li — 'I formed for myself' — uses the potter verb (yatsar), emphasizing that Israel is God's deliberate handiwork, shaped for a specific purpose.
22. The tone shifts sharply. After declaring Israel's purpose (v.21), God indicts their failure. 'You have been weary of me' (yaga'ta bi) is a stunning accusation: the people grew tired of the God who never tires (40:28). The roles are reversed — Israel wearies of God rather than God wearying of Israel.
23. God clarifies: He did not exhaust Israel with excessive ritual demands. The requirements were not burdensome. Yet Israel failed even these. The irony is that Israel was 'weary' of God (v.22) while God had not 'wearied' them (hoga'ticha) with demands.
24. The pivot word is he'evadtani ('you have burdened/enslaved me') — the same root as 'eved (servant). Israel has made God their servant by loading Him with sins. 'You have wearied me' (hoga'tani) with iniquities reverses the earlier statement: God did not weary Israel with incense (v.23), but Israel has wearied God with sin. This is one of the most remarkable anthropomorphisms in the Hebrew Bible.
25. This verse is one of the most powerful declarations of grace in the Hebrew Bible. The doubled 'I, I' (anokhi anokhi) insists that forgiveness comes from God's initiative alone. 'For my own sake' (lema'ani) grounds forgiveness in God's character, not Israel's worthiness. 'I will not remember' (lo ezkor) is not forgetfulness but a sovereign decision to treat sin as non-existent. This anticipates Jeremiah 31:34 and Hebrews 8:12.
26. The courtroom language returns, but now with irony: God invites Israel to make their case — 'prove that you deserve acquittal.' The invitation is rhetorical; after vv.22-24, Israel has no defense. Yet God has already granted acquittal (v.25) before the case is even argued. Grace precedes the verdict.
27. 'Your first father' (avicha harishon) likely refers to Jacob/Israel, whose name the nation bears, or possibly to Abraham or Adam. 'Your mediators' (melitsekha) — priests, prophets, or intercessors — also failed. The point is comprehensive: from the founding ancestor through the spiritual leadership, the pattern is transgression.
28. The consequences are stated bluntly: even the holy leaders (sarei qodesh — temple princes/priests) were profaned, and Jacob was given to chere (the ban, utter destruction — the same word used for the devoted destruction of Jericho). Israel became an object of scorn. Yet this devastating verse follows v.25's promise of forgiveness — the judgment is real but not final.

44

Summary: We move from the grace declaration of chapter 43 into a chapter of extraordinary range: the promise of the Spirit poured out like water on dry ground (vv.1-5), the majestic 'I am the first and I am the last' declaration (v.6), the most extended and biting idol-satire in all of Scripture (vv.9-20), the tender assurance that God has swept away Israel's transgressions like a cloud (v.22), and the stunning conclusion where Cyrus is named by name as God's shepherd who will decree Jerusalem's rebuilding (v.28). The chapter pulses between tenderness and mockery, between the living God who creates and redeems and the absurdity of worshiping what your own hands have carved.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The idol-satire of vv.9-20 is the longest and most detailed in the Hebrew Bible. The prophet follows the process from tree to workshop to finished god with devastating irony: a man cuts down a tree, burns half for cooking his dinner, warms himself by the fire, and then carves the remaining half into a god before which he bows and prays 'Deliver me, for you are my god.' The absurdity is left to speak for itself. Verse 6 — 'I am the first and I am the last; besides me there is no God' — is one of the most important monotheistic declarations in Scripture, echoed in Revelation 1:17, 2:8, and 22:13. Verse 28 names Cyrus over a century before his rise — the most dramatic prophetic naming in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The extended idol-satire requires careful rendering to maintain its rhetorical force without becoming cartoonish. The prophet's mockery is not crude but surgical — each detail is chosen to expose the logical absurdity of idolatry. We preserve the step-by-step narration. The naming of Cyrus (v.28) as God's 'shepherd' (ro'i) — a title usually reserved for Davidic kings — creates theological tension that the prophet does not resolve here. We render it straightforwardly and let the tension stand.*

Connections: *'I am the first and the last' (v.6) connects to 41:4 and is claimed by Christ in Revelation 1:17 and 22:13. The Spirit poured out (v.3) anticipates Joel 2:28-29 and Pentecost (Acts 2). The idol-satire connects to Psalm 115:4-8, Jeremiah 10:1-16, and Paul's argument in Romans 1:22-23. 'I have swept away your transgressions like a cloud' (v.22) parallels 43:25. Cyrus as 'shepherd' (v.28) stands in tension with the Davidic shepherd tradition (Ezekiel 34, Psalm 23) and will be further developed in 45:1 where Cyrus is called God's 'anointed' (mashiach).*

¹But now hear, O Jacob my servant,
Israel whom I have chosen!

²This is what the LORD says —
He who made you, who formed you from the womb
and will help you:
Fear not, O Jacob my servant,
Jeshurun whom I have chosen.

³For I will pour water on the thirsty land,
and streams on the dry ground;
I will pour my Spirit upon your offspring,
and my blessing on your descendants.

⁴They shall spring up among the grass
like willows by flowing streams.

⁵This one will say, 'I am the LORD's,'
another will call himself by the name of Jacob,
and another will write on his hand, 'The LORD's,'
and take the name of Israel.

⁶This is what the LORD says —
the King of Israel and his Redeemer,
the LORD of hosts:
I am the first and I am the last;
besides me there is no God.

⁷Who is like me? Let him proclaim it.
Let him declare and set it before me,
since I appointed an ancient people.

Let them declare what is to come,
and what will happen.

⁸Fear not, nor be afraid;
have I not told you from of old and declared it?
And you are my witnesses!
Is there a God besides me?
There is no Rock; I know not any.

⁹All who fashion idols are nothing,
and the things they delight in do not profit.
Their witnesses neither see nor know,
that they may be put to shame.

¹⁰Who fashions a god or casts an idol
that is profitable for nothing?

¹¹Behold, all his companions shall be put to shame,
and the craftsmen are only human.
Let them all assemble, let them stand forth;
they shall be terrified and put to shame together.

¹²The ironsmith takes a cutting tool
and works over the coals.
He fashions it with hammers
and works it with his strong arm.
He becomes hungry, and his strength fails;
he drinks no water and is faint.

¹³The carpenter stretches a line;
he marks it out with a pencil.
He shapes it with planes
and marks it with a compass.
He shapes it into the figure of a man,
with the beauty of a man,
to dwell in a house.

¹⁴He cuts down cedars,
or he chooses a cypress tree or an oak
and lets it grow strong among the trees of the forest.
He plants a cedar and the rain nourishes it.

¹⁵Then it becomes fuel for a man.
He takes a part of it and warms himself;
he kindles a fire and bakes bread.
Also he makes a god and worships it;
he makes it an idol and falls down before it.

¹⁶Half of it he burns in the fire.
Over the half he eats meat;
he roasts it and is satisfied.
Also he warms himself and says,
'Aha, I am warm, I have seen the fire!'

¹⁷And the rest of it he makes into a god,
his idol; and falls down to it and worships it.
He prays to it and says,
'Deliver me, for you are my god!'

¹⁸They know not, nor do they discern,
for their eyes are shut so that they cannot see,
and their hearts so that they cannot understand.

¹⁹No one considers, nor is there knowledge or discernment to say,
'Half of it I burned in the fire;
I also baked bread on its coals;
I roasted meat and ate.
And shall I make the rest of it an abomination?
Shall I fall down before a block of wood?'

²⁰He feeds on ashes; a deluded heart has led him astray,
and he cannot deliver himself or say,
'Is there not a lie in my right hand?'

²¹Remember these things, O Jacob,
and Israel, for you are my servant;
I formed you; you are my servant;
O Israel, you will not be forgotten by me.

²²I have swept away your transgressions like a cloud,
and your sins like mist;
return to me, for I have redeemed you.

²³Sing, O heavens, for the LORD has done it!
Shout, O depths of the earth!
Break forth into singing, O mountains,
O forest, and every tree in it!
For the LORD has redeemed Jacob,
and will be glorified in Israel.

²⁴This is what the LORD says,
your Redeemer, who formed you from the womb:
I am the LORD, who made all things,
who alone stretched out the heavens,
who spread out the earth by myself —

²⁵who frustrates the signs of liars
and makes fools of diviners,
who turns wise men back
and makes their knowledge foolish;

²⁶who confirms the word of His servant
and fulfills the counsel of His messengers,
who says of Jerusalem, 'She shall be inhabited,'
and of the cities of Judah, 'They shall be built,
and I will raise up their ruins';

²⁷who says to the deep, 'Be dry;
I will dry up your rivers';

²⁸who says of Cyrus, 'He is my shepherd,
and he shall fulfill all my purpose';
saying of Jerusalem, 'She shall be built,'
and of the temple, 'Your foundation shall be laid.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ve'attah (but now) again marks a transition from judgment (43:27-28) to grace. The servant and chosen designations from 41:8-9 return. Despite everything recounted in chapter 43, God still claims Jacob as 'my servant' and Israel as 'my chosen.'
2. This is what the LORD says. Jeshurun (from yashar, 'upright') is a rare poetic name for Israel, used only in Deuteronomy 32-33 and here. It is a term of endearment — 'my upright one' — describing Israel not as they are but as God intends them to be. 'Formed you from the womb' (yotsercha mibbeten) speaks of prenatal divine purpose.
3. The pouring of water and the pouring of the Spirit are set in deliberate parallel. The physical and spiritual are not separated in Hebrew thought — when God acts, all of creation responds. 'Your offspring' (zar'ekha) and 'your descendants' (tse'etsa'ekha) promise that the Spirit's work will extend across generations. Joel 2:28-29 and Acts 2:17 fulfill this promise.
4. The Spirit-watered descendants will flourish like willows (aravim) beside watercourses — a picture of effortless, abundant growth. The contrast with the withering grass of 40:6-8 is striking: where God's breath withered grass, God's Spirit makes His people flourish.
5. The Spirit's outpouring produces voluntary allegiance: people freely declare themselves God's own. 'Write on his hand' (yikhtov yado) may refer to a tattoo or inscription of devotion — marking oneself as belonging to the LORD. The voluntary nature of these declarations contrasts with the idols that must be nailed down (41:7). Some will even take the name Israel — Gentile inclusion is implied.
6. God is identified by four titles: the LORD, King of Israel, his Redeemer (go'alo), and LORD of hosts (YHWH tseva'ot). The declaration 'I am the first and I am the last' (cf. 41:4, 48:12) asserts total sovereignty over time. 'Besides me there is no God' is the definitive monotheistic statement. Jesus claims these words in Revelation 1:17 and 22:13. This is what the LORD says.
7. The challenge to rival deities continues: 'Who is like me?' (mi khamoni). The test remains predictive: can any god declare the future? 'Since I appointed an ancient people' refers to God's establishment of Israel — no other deity can point to such a track record of fulfilled promises.
8. 'You are my witnesses' (attem edai) repeats the courtroom commission from 43:10, 12. 'Is there a God besides me?' expects the answer 'No.' 'There is no Rock' (ein tsur) uses one of the great divine titles from Deuteronomy 32. God's own testimony — 'I know not any' (bal yada'ti) — is the final word: even God, who knows everything, knows of no other deity.
9. The great idol-satire begins (vv.9-20). The idol-makers are tohu (formlessness/nothing — Genesis 1:2 vocabulary). Their 'delightful things' (chamudeihem) — the idols they treasure — yield no profit. The idols' own 'witnesses' are blind and ignorant — the opposite of Israel as God's seeing witnesses (43:10).
10. The rhetorical question is dripping with contempt: who would manufacture a god that cannot deliver? The verb yatsar (fashion/form) — used for God's creation of Israel (43:1, 7) — is now applied to human hands making a deity. The craftsman usurps the Creator's role, but his product is worthless.
11. The idol-makers' companions (those who commission and worship the idols) will share in the shame. 'The craftsmen are only human' (hemmah me'adam) — the devastating simplicity: the maker of the god is merely a man. Let them all stand trial together — the verdict is already decided.

12. The satire begins its step-by-step exposure. The smith is a physical laborer who gets hungry, thirsty, and exhausted — the god's creator is weaker than the god is supposed to be. The irony: the craftsman who 'works with his strong arm' (bizro'a kocho) contrasts with God's arm that never tires (40:28-31).
13. The woodworker's process is described with technical precision: line, pencil (sered), planes (maqtsu'ot), compass (mechugah). Every step is rational craftsmanship — which makes the irrational conclusion all the more devastating. The god is shaped 'into the figure of a man' (ketavnit ish) — the image of its maker. And its destiny? 'To dwell in a house' — it cannot even leave on its own.
14. The prophet traces the god's origin back further — to a tree in the forest. The tree was planted, watered by rain (which God sends, not the idol), and grew among other trees. The raw material for the god is entirely dependent on the true God for its existence. The irony compounds with each detail.
15. This is the heart of the satire. The same tree serves three purposes: fuel for warmth, fuel for cooking, and raw material for a god. The prophet makes no editorial comment — the absurdity speaks for itself. The verb yisgad (falls down/prostrates) uses a word of ultimate reverence applied to a piece of firewood.
16. The detail intensifies: 'half of it' (chetsyo) is burned for domestic purposes. The man is comfortable, well-fed, and warm. He exclaims with satisfaction — 'Aha!' (he'ach). The mundane contentment makes the next verse's absurdity all the more stunning.
17. The climax of the satire: the 'rest' (she'erit) — the leftover wood after cooking and warming — becomes a god. The man falls down (yisgad), worships (yishtachavu), and prays (yitpallel) to it. His prayer — 'Deliver me, for you are my god' — is addressed to the remaining half of his firewood. The prophet achieves maximum devastation through minimum commentary.
18. The prophet now offers theological diagnosis: idolatry is not merely foolish but a form of blindness. 'Their eyes are shut' (tach mere'ot) — plastered over, sealed shut. The blindness is both self-inflicted and judicially imposed. This echoes 6:9-10 and 42:18-20.
19. The prophet puts the self-aware question into the idol-maker's mouth — the question he should ask but never does. 'Shall I make the rest of it an abomination (to'evah)?' The word to'evah (abomination) is the same used for idolatry throughout Deuteronomy. 'A block of wood' (bul ets) strips away all pretense — this is lumber, nothing more.
20. 'Feeds on ashes' (ro'eh efer) is a metaphor for pursuing what is worthless — ashes are the residue of the very fire that should have revealed the wood's true nature. 'A deluded heart' (lev hutal) — the heart has been 'turned aside' by self-deception. The final question — 'Is there not a lie in my right hand?' — is the question the idolater can never ask, because asking it would shatter the delusion. The satire ends not with a bang but with the quiet horror of self-deception.
21. After the idol-satire, God turns back to Israel: 'Remember these things' — let the absurdity of idolatry sink in. Then the double assurance: 'you are my servant' (twice). 'You will not be forgotten by me' (lo tinnasheni) — the God who remembers every star by name (40:26) will not forget His people.
22. This verse parallels 43:25 but adds the cloud imagery. The 'av (thick cloud) and 'anan (cloud/mist) represent sin's apparent enormity — and its actual fragility before God's grace. 'Return to me' (shuvah elai) is the call of repentance, but grounded in the prior act of redemption: 'for I have redeemed you' (ki ge'alticha). Grace precedes and enables the return.
23. A cosmic hymn of praise erupts: heavens, earth's depths, mountains, forests, individual trees — all creation celebrates God's redemption of Jacob. This is the fitting response to vv.21-22: when God forgives, the universe sings. The verb ga'al (redeemed) — the kinsman-redeemer's act — triggers creation's joy.
24. God is again identified as Redeemer (go'alekha) and Creator. 'Who alone' (levaddi) and 'by myself' (me'itti) emphatically exclude any assistant in creation — neither another god nor a craftsman helped. This directly refutes ancient Near Eastern creation myths involving multiple deities. This is what the LORD says.
25. God overturns all rival claims to knowledge. Baddim (liars/empty talkers), qosemim (diviners), and chakhamim (wise men) — Babylon's intellectual elite — are exposed as frauds. Their signs fail, their divinations are madness, their wisdom is turned backward. Only God's word stands (40:8).
26. In contrast to the frustrated liars (v.25), God confirms the word of His servant (singular — possibly the prophet himself) and fulfills His messengers' counsel. The specific promise: Jerusalem will be inhabited again and Judah's cities rebuilt. The ruins (chorvotaha) of the exile will be restored.
27. The 'deep' (tsulah) evokes both the primordial deep of creation (tehom, Genesis 1:2) and the Red Sea crossing. God commands cosmic waters as easily as He commands nations. The drying of rivers may also refer to the strategic drying of the Euphrates that enabled Cyrus's capture of Babylon (cf. the historical accounts of Cyrus diverting the river).
28. This is the first time Cyrus is named in Scripture. The 'one from the east' (41:2) and 'one from the north' (41:25) now has a name: Koresh. Calling him 'my shepherd' (ro'i) is theologically provocative — David was God's shepherd-king (2 Samuel 5:2), and God Himself is the shepherd (Psalm 23:1, Isaiah 40:11). Now a Persian emperor receives the title. The specific promise — Jerusalem rebuilt, temple foundations laid — was fulfilled in 538 BC when Cyrus issued his decree (Ezra 1:1-4).

45

Summary: *God addresses Cyrus the Persian by name as His 'anointed' (mashiach) and announces that He alone is God — there is no other. The chapter contains the Hebrew Bible's most explicit monotheistic declarations and culminates in a universal invitation: every knee shall bow.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 1 is theologically explosive: a pagan emperor is called mashiach, the title reserved for Israel's divinely appointed leaders. God names Cyrus before Cyrus knows God (v. 4). The declaration 'I form light and create darkness, I make peace and create calamity' (v. 7) attributes everything — including disaster — to God alone, rejecting any dualistic theology. The repeated 'I am the LORD, and there is no other' (vv. 5, 6, 18, 22) is monotheism's strongest articulation in the Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *The word ra (v. 7) can mean 'evil,' 'calamity,' or 'disaster.' We rendered it 'calamity' because the context is about God's sovereignty over events, not moral evil — the contrast is with shalom ('peace/well-being'), not with moral goodness. The phrase 'every knee shall bow, every tongue shall swear' (v. 23) is cited by Paul in Philippians 2:10-11 with christological application; we note the connection without importing it into the Hebrew rendering.*

Connections: *Cyrus is named in 44:28 as God's shepherd; here he receives the mashiach title. The monotheistic declarations connect to Deuteronomy 4:35, 39 and Isaiah 43:10-11. Paul cites v. 23 in Philippians 2:10-11 and Romans 14:11. The potter-clay image (v. 9) recurs in Jeremiah 18:1-6 and Romans 9:20-21.*

¹This is what the LORD says to His anointed,
to Cyrus,
whose right hand I have grasped
to subdue nations before him
and to strip kings of their armor,
to open doors before him
so that gates will not be shut:

²I will go before you
and level the mountains.
I will shatter bronze doors
and cut through iron bars.

³I will give you treasures of darkness
and hidden wealth of secret places,
so that you may know that I am the LORD,
the God of Israel, who calls you by name.

⁴For the sake of my servant Jacob,
and Israel my chosen one,
I call you by your name;
I give you a title of honor,
though you do not know me.

⁵I am the LORD, and there is no other;
there is no God besides me.
I arm you, though you do not know me,

⁶so that from the rising of the sun to its setting
people may know there is none besides me.
I am the LORD, and there is no other.

⁷I form light and create darkness;
I make peace and create calamity.
I, the LORD, do all these things.

⁸Rain down, O heavens, from above,
and let the skies pour down righteousness.
Let the earth open
and salvation spring forth;
let righteousness sprout alongside it.
I, the LORD, have created it.

⁹Woe to the one who contends with his Maker —
a pot among earthen pots!
Does the clay say to the one who shapes it,
'What are you making?'

¹⁰Woe to the one who says to a father,
'What are you begetting?'
or to a woman,
'What are you laboring to bring forth?'

¹¹This is what the LORD says —
the Holy One of Israel and its Maker:
'Ask me about what is to come concerning my children;
will you command me about the work of my hands?'

¹²I made the earth
and created humanity upon it.
My own hands stretched out the heavens,
and I commanded all their host.

¹³I have stirred him up in righteousness,
and I will make all his paths straight.
He will rebuild my city
and set my exiles free —
not for a price and not for a bribe,
says the LORD of Hosts.

¹⁴This is what the LORD says:
The wealth of Egypt and the merchandise of Cush
and the Sabeans, tall of stature,
will come over to you and be yours.
They will follow behind you,
coming in chains.
They will bow down to you

and plead with you:
 'Surely God is with you,
 and there is no other — no other god.'

¹⁵Truly, You are a God who hides Himself,
 O God of Israel, the Savior.

¹⁶They are put to shame, all of them, disgraced together;
 the makers of idols go off in humiliation.

¹⁷Israel is saved by the LORD
 with an everlasting salvation.
 You will not be put to shame or disgraced
 to all eternity.

¹⁸For this is what the LORD says —
 He who created the heavens, He is God;
 He who formed the earth and made it, He established it.
 He did not create it to be chaos —
 He formed it to be inhabited:
 I am the LORD, and there is no other.

¹⁹I have not spoken in secret,
 in a land of darkness.
 I did not say to Jacob's offspring,
 'Seek me in chaos.'
 I, the LORD, speak what is right;
 I declare what is just.

²⁰Assemble yourselves and come;
 draw near together,
 you survivors of the nations.
 They have no knowledge —
 those who carry wooden idols
 and pray to a god that cannot save.

²¹Declare and present your case;
 let them take counsel together.
 Who foretold this long ago?
 Who announced it from of old?
 Was it not I, the LORD?
 There is no other God besides me —
 a righteous God and a Savior;
 there is none besides me.

²²Turn to me and be saved,
 all the ends of the earth!
 For I am God, and there is no other.

²³By myself I have sworn;
 from my mouth has gone out in righteousness
 a word that will not return:
 To me every knee shall bow,
 every tongue shall swear allegiance.

²⁴'Only in the LORD,' it will be said of me,
 'are righteousness and strength.'
 All who raged against Him
 will come to Him and be put to shame.

²⁵In the LORD all the offspring of Israel
 will be vindicated and will glory.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *limeshicho* ('to His anointed') uses the same word applied to Saul (1 Samuel 24:6), David (2 Samuel 19:21), and the priests (Leviticus 4:3). Applying it to Cyrus is not metaphorical — it is a deliberate theological claim that God's purposes operate through foreign rulers.
1. The verb *hechezaqti* ('I have grasped') describes God taking Cyrus by the right hand — an image of personal guidance and empowerment, the same language used for God leading Israel (41:13).
2. The verb *ayasher* ('make level/straight') and *hadurim* ('swellings, rough places, or mountains') describe God removing obstacles from Cyrus's path. The bronze doors and iron bars refer to the fortified gates of Babylon — Herodotus describes Babylon's hundred bronze gates.
3. The treasures of darkness (*otsrot choshekh*) refer to Babylon's legendary wealth stored in underground vaults. The purpose clause is theological: Cyrus receives wealth not for his own glory but 'so that you may know that I am the LORD.' God reveals Himself through history, not just through Scripture.
4. The phrase *velo yedatani* ('though you do not know me') is the chapter's most theologically provocative statement: God's anointed does not know God. Divine purposes operate through agents unaware of their role. The verb *akannekha* ('I give you a title/surname') suggests God confers royal dignity on Cyrus.
5. The first of the chapter's monotheistic declarations: *ani YHWH ve'ein od* ('I am the LORD and there is no other'). The absolute claim — no God besides me — eliminates all rival deities. The verb *a'azzerkha* ('I arm you, I gird you') is military — God equips Cyrus for conquest.
6. The scope is universal: from east (*mizrach-shemesh*, 'sunrise') to west (*ma'aravah*, 'sunset') — the entire inhabited world. The purpose of Cyrus's victories is not Persian imperialism but global knowledge of the one God.
7. We rendered *ra* as 'calamity' rather than 'evil' because the parallel with *shalom* ('peace/well-being') indicates the contrast is between favorable and unfavorable circumstances, not between moral good and moral evil. God is sovereign over events, not the author of sin.
7. The verb *bara* ('create') — used exclusively with God as subject in Genesis 1 — appears twice here, applied to darkness and to calamity. God's creative power encompasses the full range of existence.
7. This verse may respond to Persian Zoroastrian dualism, which posited separate deities for light/good (*Ahura Mazda*) and darkness/evil (*Angra Mainyu*). Isaiah insists: one God does both.
8. Righteousness (*tsedeq/tsedaqah*) and salvation (*yesha*) are described as agricultural — they rain from heaven and sprout from earth. The verse envisions a cosmos saturated with divine justice, growing like crops from soil watered by heaven.
9. The potter-clay metaphor challenges anyone who questions God's use of Cyrus. The word *cheres* ('potsherd, earthenware') emphasizes human fragility — clay arguing with the potter. Paul draws on this passage in Romans 9:20-21.
10. The analogy shifts from potter to parent — questioning God's purposes is as absurd as questioning parents about what kind of child they are producing. The verb *techillin* ('you labor/bring forth') uses birth-pain language.
11. The full title 'the Holy One of Israel' appears here alongside 'its Maker' (*yotsro*) — the same potter who cannot be questioned. The tone is either invitation ('ask me') or rebuke ('will you presume to command me?') — the Hebrew syntax allows both readings. We preserved the ambiguity.
12. God's credentials: He made the earth (*asiti erets*), created humanity (*adam aleiha barati* — using the Genesis 1 verb *bara*), stretched out the heavens, and commands the stars. If He can do all this, appointing Cyrus is a small matter.
13. The 'him' is Cyrus, now described with three actions: rebuild God's city (Jerusalem), release God's exiles, and do so without payment. The Cyrus Cylinder (539 BCE) records Cyrus's policy of returning displaced peoples to their homelands — Isaiah frames this as fulfillment of divine purpose.

14. The nations' confession — 'surely God is with you, and there is no other' — is remarkable: pagans acknowledge Israel's God through the evidence of history. The Sabeans were known for their height (anshei middah, 'men of stature').
15. The phrase El mistatter ('a God who hides Himself') is one of the most theologically profound statements in Isaiah. God's hiddenness is not absence but method — He works through Cyrus, through exile, through events that do not look divine. The same root s-t-r appears in Deuteronomy 31:17-18 (hester panim, 'hiding of the face').
16. The idol-makers (charashei tsirim) — craftsmen who fabricate images — are shamed. The contrast: the hidden God saves; the visible idols fail.
17. The phrase teshu'at olamim ('everlasting salvation') uses the plural of olam — an eternity of eternities. While idol-makers face temporary shame (v. 16), Israel's salvation is permanent. The root y-sh-a ('save') appears in both the verb (nosha) and the noun (teshu'at).
18. The word tohu ('chaos, formlessness') echoes Genesis 1:2 — God did not create the earth to remain in the pre-creation state of tohu. The earth was made lashebet ('to be inhabited') — creation has a purpose, and that purpose is life. This is one of the most important creation-theology verses in the Hebrew Bible.
19. God contrasts Himself with oracle-gods who speak from dark, hidden places. His word is public, clear, and productive — not tohu ('chaos'). When Israel seeks God, the search is not futile.
20. The survivors of the nations (pelitei haggoyim) are summoned to a trial. Those who carry their gods (wooden idols on their shoulders) are contrasted with the God who carries His people (46:3-4).
21. The trial challenge: if any god predicted Cyrus's rise, let them present evidence. Silence proves their nonexistence. The compound title El-tsaddiq umoshia ('righteous God and Savior') holds justice and salvation together — God saves precisely because He is righteous.
22. The universal invitation: kol afsei-arets ('all the ends of the earth') — not Israel alone but every nation. The imperative penu ('turn') is the same root as teshuvah ('repentance/return'). Salvation is offered to the entire world through a single act of turning toward the one God.
23. God swears by Himself because there is no one greater to swear by (cf. Hebrews 6:13). The word that 'goes out and does not return' echoes 55:11 where God's word accomplishes its purpose. Paul quotes this verse in Philippians 2:10-11 ('at the name of Jesus every knee should bow') and Romans 14:11.
24. The confession shifts to first person — the speaker represents all who will eventually acknowledge God. The phrase tsedaqot va'oz ('righteousness and strength') pairs moral authority with power. Those who raged (necherim) will come in shame.
25. The chapter ends with Israel, not the nations — the universal vision (v. 22-23) circles back to the particular covenant people. The verb yitsdaqu ('will be vindicated/declared righteous') uses the tsedaqah root that has governed the chapter. Israel's vindication comes not from their own righteousness but 'in the LORD.'

46

Summary: *Bel and Nebo, Babylon's chief gods, are loaded onto weary animals as dead weight. In contrast, God has carried Israel from the womb and will carry them to old age. The idol-maker fashions a god that cannot move; the LORD announces the end from the beginning and calls a bird of prey from the east.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's theological argument is built on a single contrast: who carries whom? Babylonian gods must be carried by their worshippers (vv. 1-2); Israel's God carries His worshippers (vv. 3-4). The four first-person verbs of verse 4 — 'I have made, I will bear, I will carry, I will deliver' — trace God's commitment from creation through sustenance to salvation. The declaration 'I am God, and there is no other' (v. 9) combined with 'I declare the end from the beginning' (v. 10) identifies foreknowledge as the proof of divinity no idol can match.*

Translation Friction: *Bel (equivalent to Marduk, Babylon's chief deity) and Nebo (Nabu, god of writing, whose name appears in Nebuchadnezzar) are introduced being packed onto animals as their city falls. We transliterated both and noted their significance. The 'bird of prey from the east' (v. 11) is Cyrus — the metaphor emphasizes speed and inevitability.*

Connections: *The carried-vs-carrying contrast anticipates the Dagon episode (1 Samuel 5:1-4). The 'from the womb to old age' promise echoes Psalm 71:5-6, 17-18. Cyrus as the bird of prey connects to 41:2 and 44:28-45:1. The idol-making satire continues from 40:18-20 and 44:9-20.*

¹Bel bows down, Nebo stoops low.
Their images are loaded on beasts and cattle.
The things you carry are burdens,
a load for weary animals.

²They stoop, they bow down together;
they cannot rescue the burden,
and they themselves go into captivity.

³Listen to me, house of Jacob,
all the remnant of the house of Israel,
you who have been carried from the womb,
borne from birth:

⁴Even to your old age I am He,
and to grey hairs I will carry you.
I have made, and I will bear;
I will carry, and I will deliver.

⁵To whom will you liken me
or make me equal?
To whom will you compare me,
as though we were alike?

⁶Those who lavish gold from their purses
and weigh out silver on the scales
hire a goldsmith, and he makes it into a god.
They bow down — yes, they worship.

⁷They lift it to their shoulders, they carry it;
they set it in its place, and there it stands.
From its spot it does not move.
If someone cries out to it, it does not answer;
it cannot save anyone from distress.

⁸Remember this and stand firm;
take it to heart, you rebels.

⁹Remember the former things of old,
for I am God, and there is no other;
I am God, and there is none like me,

¹⁰declaring the end from the beginning,
and from ancient times what is not yet done,
saying, 'My purpose will stand,
and I will accomplish all my desire.'

¹¹calling a bird of prey from the east,
from a distant land the man of my purpose.
I have spoken, and I will bring it about;

I have planned, and I will do it.

¹²Listen to me, you stubborn of heart,
you who are far from righteousness:

¹³I am bringing near my righteousness — it is not far off,
and my salvation will not delay.
I will place salvation in Zion,
my splendor upon Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bel is the Babylonian supreme deity (equivalent to Marduk); Nebo (Nabu) is the god of writing, whose name appears in Nebuchadnezzar ('Nebo, protect the boundary'). The scene is Babylon's fall: its gods are packed onto donkeys for transport. The verbs kara ('bows') and qores ('stoops') describe collapse, not worship.
2. The gods go into captivity (shevi) alongside their people. A god that can be exiled is no god at all.
3. The contrast is immediate: Babylonian gods are carried by their people; Israel is carried by their God. The same verbs for 'carried' and 'borne' apply to both — but the direction reverses.
4. The emphatic ani hu ('I am He') is God's self-identification formula throughout Second Isaiah. The four verbs trace a complete arc: creation, sustenance, bearing, deliverance.
5. The incomparability challenge echoes 40:18, 25 — three verbs eliminate every basis for comparison.
6. The idol-making process is economic: gold purchased, silver weighed, craftsman hired. The god is a commercial product. The worshipper prostrates before what his money bought.
7. Five stages of total passivity: carried, set down, stands, cannot move, cannot respond. The final verdict: lo yoshiennu ('it cannot save') — the one function a god must perform, it cannot.
8. The imperative calls the exiles to moral courage. The word posh'im ('rebels') addresses Israelites tempted by Babylonian religion.
9. The doubled self-identification with two negations ('no other,' 'none like me') is the chapter's theological climax. Memory is the antidote to idolatry.
10. God's ability to declare the end from the beginning (maggid mereshit acharit) is the definitive proof of divinity no idol can match.
11. The 'bird of prey from the east' is Cyrus — swift, unstoppable, summoned from Persia. The phrase ish atsati ('man of my purpose') makes Cyrus God's instrument.
12. The abbirei lev ('stubborn of heart') are Israelites who resist God's plan. Being 'far from righteousness' is the opposite of seeking God.
13. God moves toward those who are 'far from righteousness' (v. 12) — He brings His righteousness near. The word tif'arti ('my splendor') applied to Israel means Israel will display God's glory. Salvation is placed 'in Zion' — specific, not abstract.

47

Summary: A taunt-song against Babylon, personified as Virgin Daughter Babylon. She descends from her throne to sit in the dust, exposed and humiliated. Her sorceries and enchantments cannot protect her. Her self-deifying claim 'I am, and there is no one besides me' is exposed as blasphemous.

What Makes This Remarkable: Babylon's declaration 'I am, and there is no one besides me' (vv. 8, 10) mirrors God's own exclusive claims (45:5-6, 46:9). The parody is deliberate: Babylon has made herself into a god. Her punishment fits her crime — absolute sovereignty meets absolute loss. The astrologers, star-gazers, and monthly prognosticators (v. 13) represent Babylon's famed divinatory tradition, now exposed as worthless. The chapter ends with total abandonment: 'there is no one to save you' (v. 15).

Translation Friction: The phrase betulat bat-Bavel ('Virgin Daughter Babylon') personifies the city as a young woman who has never been conquered. The 'virgin' implies invincibility now shattered. The sorcery vocabulary includes technical terms for Babylonian divination practices. We rendered each descriptively and noted the Babylonian context.

Connections: The taunt echoes the king-of-Babylon song in 14:4-23. Babylon's fall is announced in 21:9 and culminates in Revelation 17-18. The 'I am' claim inverts Exodus 3:14. The sudden 'both in one day' judgment (v. 9) anticipates Revelation 18:8.

¹Come down and sit in the dust,
Virgin Daughter Babylon!
Sit on the ground without a throne,
Daughter of the Chaldeans!
For you will no longer be called
tender and delicate.

²Take the millstones and grind flour.
Remove your veil, strip off your skirt,
bare your legs, wade through rivers.

³Your nakedness will be exposed,
your shame will be seen.
I will take vengeance,
and I will spare no one.

⁴Our Redeemer — the LORD of Hosts is His name —
the Holy One of Israel.

⁵Sit in silence and go into darkness,
Daughter of the Chaldeans,
for you will no longer be called
mistress of kingdoms.

⁶I was angry with my people;
I profaned my inheritance
and gave them into your hand.
You showed them no mercy;
on the elderly you made your yoke very heavy.

⁷You said, 'I will be mistress forever' —
you did not take these things to heart
or consider how it would end.

⁸Now hear this, you lover of pleasure,
who sits securely,
who says in her heart,
'I am, and there is no one besides me.
I will never sit as a widow
or know the loss of children.'

⁹Both of these will come upon you
in a moment, in a single day:
bereavement and widowhood.
They will come upon you in full measure,
despite your many sorceries
and the great power of your spells.

¹⁰You trusted in your wickedness;
you said, 'No one sees me.'
Your wisdom and your knowledge
led you astray,
and you said in your heart,
'I am, and there is no one besides me.'

¹¹But disaster will come upon you,
and you will not know how to charm it away.
Calamity will fall on you,
and you will not be able to atone for it.
Devastation will come upon you suddenly,
before you know it.

¹²Stand now with your spells
and your many sorceries,
at which you have labored from your youth.
Perhaps you can succeed;
perhaps you can inspire terror.

¹³You are wearied by your many counselors.
Let them stand up now and save you —
those who divide the heavens,
who gaze at the stars,
who at each new moon predict
what will come upon you.

¹⁴Look — they are like stubble;
fire burns them up.
They cannot save themselves
from the power of the flame.
This is no coal for warming,
no fire to sit before.

¹⁵Such are those you have labored with —
your traders from your youth.
Each wanders off in his own direction;
there is no one to save you.

1. The descent: from throne to dust, from palace to ground. The title *betulat bat-Bavel* personifies the city as a young woman who has never been conquered — now shattered.
2. The queen becomes a slave: grinding at the mill was the lowest domestic labor. The progressive undressing describes the degradation of captivity.
3. The exposure of nakedness is the ultimate humiliation in the ancient Near East. God is the agent: 'I will take vengeance.'
4. A parenthetical doxology breaking into the taunt. The three titles identify the God who judges Babylon as the same God who redeems Israel.
5. Silence and darkness reverse Babylon's splendor. The title *geveret mamlakhot* ('mistress of kingdoms') is revoked.
6. God acknowledges His role in Israel's exile but charges Babylon with exceeding the mandate — showing no mercy and oppressing the elderly. The agent of judgment became an agent of cruelty.
7. Babylon's fatal assumption: permanence. The failure to 'remember the end' is the opposite of God who declares 'the end from the beginning' (46:10).
8. The phrase *ani ve'afsi od* deliberately echoes God's exclusive self-declarations. Babylon has committed the ultimate sin: claiming for herself what belongs to God alone.
9. What Babylon declared impossible (v. 8) happens in a single day. The sorceries and spells that Babylon trusted cannot prevent it.
10. The self-deification formula appears again. Babylon's wisdom and knowledge became instruments of self-delusion. The assumption 'no one sees me' denies divine observation.
11. Three disasters with three inabilities: disaster that cannot be charmed, calamity that cannot be atoned for, devastation that cannot be anticipated. Babylon's entire repertoire fails.
12. The sarcastic 'perhaps' mocks Babylon's expertise — after a lifetime of sorcery, maybe it will finally work.
13. Three categories of Babylonian divination: *hovrei shamayim* ('dividers of the heavens'), *chozim bakkokhavim* ('star-gazers'), *modi'im lechodashim* ('monthly prognosticators'). Babylonian astronomical records were the most sophisticated in the ancient world — and they are mocked as useless.
14. The astrologers become fuel. The fire that destroys them is not even useful as a hearth — their destruction produces nothing of value.
15. Total abandonment. Babylon's commercial partners scatter. The final word *moshi'ekh* ('your savior') uses the salvation root — Babylon has none.

48

Summary: *God rebukes Israel for stubbornness — He declared things long ago so they could not credit idols. He refines Israel in the furnace of affliction. For His own name's sake He delays anger. Cyrus is His instrument. 'Go out from Babylon!' The section closes: 'There is no peace for the wicked.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is God's most frustrated address to Israel in Second Isaiah. The command to leave Babylon (v. 20) is the climactic imperative of chapters 40-48. The closing refrain 'there is no peace for the wicked' (v. 22) divides Second Isaiah into three sections (48:22, 57:21, and implicitly 66:24).*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *becharttikha velo bekhesev* (v. 10) is textually difficult: 'I chose you' or 'I tested you'? We followed the Masoretic text. The *kur oni* ('furnace of affliction') describes exile as purposeful refining. The 'no peace' refrain is abrupt after the joy of v. 20 — the juxtaposition is intentional.*

Connections: *The 'go out from Babylon' (v. 20) echoes Genesis 12:1 and anticipates Revelation 18:4. The refining-furnace image connects to Deuteronomy 4:20 and 1 Kings 8:51. The 'no peace' refrain recurs at 57:21.*

¹Hear this, house of Jacob,
you who are called by the name of Israel
and who came from the waters of Judah —
who swear by the name of the LORD
and invoke the God of Israel,
but not in truth or in righteousness.

²For they call themselves after the holy city
and lean on the God of Israel —

the LORD of Hosts is His name.

³The former things I declared long ago;
they went out from my mouth and I announced them.
Then suddenly I acted, and they came to pass.

⁴Because I knew how stubborn you are —
your neck is an iron sinew,
your forehead is bronze —

⁵therefore I declared it to you long ago;
before it happened I announced it to you,
lest you say, 'My idol did this,
my carved image and my cast image commanded it.'

⁶You have heard — now look at all this!
Will you not acknowledge it?
From now on I announce new things to you,
hidden things you have not known.

⁷They are created now, not long ago;
before today you have not heard of them,
lest you say, 'I already knew that.'

⁸You have neither heard nor known;
from of old your ear has not been opened.
For I knew you would act utterly treacherously;
you have been called a rebel from the womb.

⁹For the sake of my name I defer my anger;
for the sake of my praise I hold it back from you,
so as not to cut you off.

¹⁰Look — I have refined you, but not as silver;
I have tested you in the furnace of affliction.

¹¹For my own sake, for my own sake, I act —
for how should my name be profaned?
My glory I will not give to another.

¹²Listen to me, Jacob,
and Israel, whom I called:
I am He; I am the first,
and I am the last.

¹³My hand laid the foundation of the earth,
and my right hand spread out the heavens.
When I call to them,
they stand together.

¹⁴Assemble, all of you, and listen.
Which of them declared these things?
The LORD loves him —
he will carry out His purpose against Babylon,
and his arm will be against the Chaldeans.

¹⁵I, even I, have spoken;
indeed I have called him.
I have brought him, and he will succeed.

¹⁶Come near to me and hear this:
From the beginning I have not spoken in secret;
from the time it came to be, I was there.
And now the Lord GOD has sent me,
and His Spirit.

¹⁷This is what the LORD says —
your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel:
I am the LORD your God,
who teaches you for your benefit,
who leads you in the way you should go.

¹⁸If only you had paid attention to my commands!
Then your peace would have been like a river,
and your righteousness like the waves of the sea.

¹⁹Your offspring would have been like the sand,
your descendants like its grains.
Their name would never have been cut off
or destroyed from before me.

²⁰Go out from Babylon!
Flee from the Chaldeans!
With a shout of joy declare it,
proclaim it, send it out
to the ends of the earth.
Say, 'The LORD has redeemed His servant Jacob!'

²¹They did not thirst
when He led them through the deserts.
He made water flow from the rock for them;
He split the rock, and water gushed out.

²²"There is no peace," says the LORD,
"for the wicked."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening is accusatory: Israel bears the right name and speaks the right words but lacks truth (emet) and righteousness (tsedaqah).

2. Israel claims Jerusalem and God as support, but the claim is hollow given v. 1's indictment.
3. God's pattern: declare in advance, then act suddenly. The purpose is explained in v. 5.
4. Three metaphors for stubbornness: hard, iron-sinewed, bronze-faced. The metallic imagery makes resistance seem structural.
5. The reason for advance declaration: to prevent idolatry from claiming credit. God's foreknowledge is both proof of divinity and prevention of false worship.
6. God shifts from 'former things' to 'new things' and 'hidden things' — fresh revelations. The challenge demands a response.
7. The 'new things' are created (nivr'u) at the moment of announcement, preventing Israel from claiming prior knowledge.
8. The indictment intensifies: chronic deafness, innate treachery, a rebel from birth.
9. God's mercy is grounded in His own name, not Israel's merit. The verb a'arikh uses the same root as erekh appayim ('slow to anger,' Exodus 34:6).
10. God's refining did not apply the full heat — Israel would not survive silver-standard purification. Exile is the furnace (kur oni), painful but purposeful.
11. The doubled lema'ani lema'ani is strikingly honest: God acts for His own reputation. The refusal to give kavod to another echoes 42:8.
12. The triple self-identification — ani hu, ani rishon, ani acharon — compresses God's identity. The 'first and last' appears in 41:4, 44:6 and Revelation 1:17, 22:13.
13. God as architect: His hand laid earth, His right hand stretched heavens. Creation responds to His voice like servants at attention.
14. The 'him' is Cyrus, described as God's beloved instrument of judgment against Babylon.
15. The emphatic ani ani ('I, even I') emphasizes that Cyrus's call and success are entirely God's doing.
16. The speaker shifts — 'the Lord GOD has sent me and His Spirit' introduces a commissioned voice. The identity is debated: the Servant, the prophet, or a divine figure. We render as the Hebrew presents it.
17. Three titles: YHWH, go'alekha ('your Redeemer'), Qedosh Yisra'el ('the Holy One of Israel'). Two present participles: melammedkha ('teaching you') and madrikhakha ('leading you').
18. God grieves what might have been: shalom like a river (constant, flowing) and tsedaqah like sea waves (overwhelming). Disobedience cost them this.
19. The Abrahamic promise (Genesis 22:17) would have been fully realized. The conditional mood carries unrealized potential.
20. Six imperatives in rapid succession: go out, flee, declare, proclaim, send out, say. The final declaration ga'al YHWH avdo Ya'aqov uses the go'el verb — redemption accomplished.
21. Exodus imagery: God splitting rock and water gushing echoes Exodus 17:6 and Numbers 20:11. The new exodus mirrors the original.
22. The section divider: Second Isaiah's first third (chs. 40-48) ends here. The same refrain at 57:21 ends the second third. The word shalom encompasses all wholeness — the wicked are excluded from it entirely.

49

Summary: *The Second Servant Song opens this chapter, presenting a figure called from the womb and appointed as a light to the nations. The scope of the Servant's mission expands beyond Israel's restoration to encompass all peoples. The chapter then pivots to Zion's lament of abandonment, which God answers with one of Scripture's most tender images: a mother's unbreakable bond with her nursing child — and declares His own faithfulness surpasses even that.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 16 presents the extraordinary image of Zion's walls engraved on the palms of God's hands — a metaphor of permanent, embodied remembrance that has no parallel in ancient Near Eastern literature. The tension between the Servant as an individual figure (vv.1-6) and the Servant as Israel (v.3) is left deliberately unresolved in the Hebrew text.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the Servant is intensely debated. In verse 3 God calls the Servant 'Israel,' yet in verse 5 the Servant has a mission to Israel — creating a deliberate ambiguity. We have rendered the text as it stands without collapsing this tension. The verb yatsar (formed) in verse 5 echoes Genesis 2:7, linking the Servant's calling to creation itself.*

Connections: The 'light to the nations' (or la-goyim, v.6) echoes Isaiah 42:6 (First Servant Song) and anticipates the universal scope of 52:13-53:12. The mother imagery (v.15) connects to Isaiah 66:13. The re-gathering language (vv.12, 22) reverberates through Jeremiah 31 and Ezekiel 37. Paul quotes verse 6 in Acts 13:47, applying it to his Gentile mission.

¹Listen to me, O coastlands,
and give heed, you peoples from afar:
The LORD called me from the womb;
from the body of my mother He named me.

²He made my mouth like a sharpened sword;
in the shadow of His hand He hid me.
He made me a polished arrow;
in His quiver He concealed me.

³And He said to me, 'You are my servant,
Israel, in whom I will display my glory.'

⁴But I said, 'I have labored in vain;
for nothing and futility I have spent my strength.'
Yet surely my justice is with the LORD,
and my recompense with my God.

⁵And now the LORD says —
He who formed me from the womb to be His servant,
to bring Jacob back to Him,
that Israel might be gathered to Him
(for I am honored in the eyes of the LORD,
and my God has become my strength) —

⁶He says:
'It is too small a thing for you to be my servant
to raise up the tribes of Jacob
and to restore the preserved of Israel.
I will make you a light to the nations,
that my salvation may reach to the end of the earth.'

⁷This is what the LORD says —
the Redeemer of Israel, the Holy One of Israel —
to one deeply despised, abhorred by the nation,
a servant of rulers:
'Kings shall see and rise;
princes shall bow down,
because of the LORD, who is faithful,
the Holy One of Israel, who has chosen you.'

⁸This is what the LORD says:
'In a time of favor I have answered you;
in a day of salvation I have helped you.

I will keep you and give you
as a covenant to the people,
to raise up the land,
to apportion the desolate inheritances,'

⁹saying to the prisoners, 'Come out!'
to those in darkness, 'Show yourselves!'
They shall feed along the roads,
and on every bare height shall be their pasture.

¹⁰They shall not hunger or thirst;
scorching wind and sun shall not strike them,
for He who has compassion on them will lead them,
and by springs of water He will guide them.

¹¹I will turn all my mountains into a road,
and my highways shall be raised up.

¹²Behold, these shall come from afar —
some from the north, some from the west,
and some from the land of Sinim.

¹³Sing for joy, O heavens!
Rejoice, O earth!
Break forth into singing, O mountains!
For the LORD has comforted His people
and will have compassion on His afflicted ones.

¹⁴But Zion said, 'The LORD has forsaken me;
my Lord has forgotten me.'

¹⁵Can a woman forget her nursing child,
that she should have no compassion
on the son of her womb?
Even these may forget,
but I will not forget you.

¹⁶Behold, I have engraved you on the palms of my hands;
your walls are continually before me.

¹⁷Your builders hasten to you;
your destroyers and those who laid you waste
go out from you.

¹⁸Lift up your eyes all around and see:
they all gather together; they come to you.
As I live, declares the LORD,
you shall put them all on like an ornament
and bind them on like a bride.

¹⁹For your ruins and your desolate places
and your devastated land —
surely now you will be too cramped for your inhabitants,
and those who swallowed you will be far away.

²⁰The children born in your bereavement
will yet say in your hearing,
'The place is too cramped for me;
make room for me to dwell!'

²¹Then you will say in your heart,
'Who has borne me these?
I was bereaved and barren,
exiled and put away —
so who has raised these?
Behold, I was left alone;
where then have these come from?'

²²This is what the Lord GOD says:
'Behold, I will lift up my hand to the nations
and raise my signal to the peoples;
and they shall bring your sons in their arms,
and your daughters shall be carried on their shoulders.'

²³Kings shall be your guardians,
and their queens your nursing mothers.
With faces to the ground they shall bow down to you
and lick the dust of your feet.
Then you will know that I am the LORD;
those who wait for me shall not be put to shame.

²⁴Can the prey be taken from the mighty,
or the captives of a tyrant be rescued?

²⁵For this is what the LORD says:
'Even the captives of the mighty shall be taken,
and the prey of the tyrant shall be rescued.
I myself will contend with those who contend with you,
and I myself will save your children.'

²⁶I will make your oppressors eat their own flesh,
and they shall be drunk with their own blood
as with sweet wine.
Then all flesh shall know
that I am the LORD, your Savior,
and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *iyim* (coastlands/islands) refers to distant Mediterranean lands, representing the farthest reaches of the known world. The Servant addresses the nations directly, signaling a universal scope from the opening line.
2. The dual imagery of sword and arrow presents the Servant's word as both weapon and instrument of divine purpose. The concealment in God's hand and quiver suggests a period of hidden preparation before the Servant's mission is revealed.
3. This verse is pivotal to the Servant identity question. God explicitly names the Servant 'Israel,' yet subsequent verses distinguish the Servant from the nation. Some scholars read 'Israel' as an honorific title for an individual who embodies the nation's calling; others see this as the nation personified. The Hebrew sustains both readings.
4. The Hebrew *tohu* (futility/void) echoes Genesis 1:2 — the Servant fears his work has returned to primordial chaos. Yet the adversative *achen* (surely/yet) pivots to trust: the Servant entrusts his vindication to God rather than measuring success by visible results.
5. The Qere reading *lo* (to him) is followed here rather than the Ketiv *lo* (not), yielding 'that Israel might be gathered to Him.' This verse critically distinguishes the Servant from Israel: the Servant's mission is to restore Jacob/Israel, implying the Servant is not identical with the nation.
6. The word *naqel* (too small/too light) dramatically expands the Servant's mission. Restoring Israel alone would be insufficient — the Servant must become or *goyim* (a light to the nations). The word *yeshu'ati* (my salvation) shares its root with the name *Yeshua/Joshua*.
7. The phrase 'this is what the LORD says' renders *ko amar YHWH*. *Go'el* (Redeemer) casts God in the role of kinsman-redeemer who reclaims His people from bondage. The Servant is described as despised and abhorred — language that anticipates the Suffering Servant of 52:13-53:12.
8. The Servant is described as *berit am* (a covenant to the people) — not merely a covenant mediator but the covenant itself embodied. Paul quotes this verse in 2 Corinthians 6:2, applying the 'acceptable time' to the present age of grace.
9. The imagery shifts from liberation to pastoral care — the freed captives become a flock grazing in safety. The 'bare heights' (*shefayim*), normally barren terrain, are transformed into lush grazing land.
10. The language echoes the Exodus wilderness journey (cf. Psalm 23, Exodus 15:22-27) — a new exodus surpassing the first. *Merachamam* (He who has compassion) shares its root with *rechem* (womb), connecting divine mercy to maternal tenderness.
11. God transforms the very topography to facilitate the return of His people — mountains become level roads. This echoes Isaiah 40:3-4, where every valley is lifted and every mountain brought low.
12. The identity of 'Sinim' (*sinim*) is debated. Ancient suggestions include Aswan in southern Egypt (supported by the Dead Sea Scrolls reading 'Seveneh') or a distant eastern land. The point is comprehensiveness: God's people return from every direction.
13. This cosmic hymn of praise — heavens, earth, and mountains summoned to worship — serves as a structural marker dividing the Servant Song from the Zion discourse that follows. The verb *nicham* (comforted) is the root of Isaiah's great theme from 40:1.
14. Zion is personified as a woman who feels abandoned — a devastatingly honest lament that the text does not rebuke but rather answers with overwhelming tenderness in the verses that follow.
15. This verse is one of the most striking maternal images of God in the Hebrew Bible. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'No!' — yet God's faithfulness surpasses even a mother's instinct. The concessive *gam-elleh tishkachnah* (even these may forget) acknowledges the unthinkable to magnify the divine promise.
16. The Hebrew *chaqqotikh* (I have engraved you) uses a verb for permanent inscription — not ink that fades but carved marks that endure. God carries the blueprint of Zion's walls on His very hands, an image of intimate, unbreakable remembrance.
17. There is a wordplay between *banayikh* (your sons/children) and *bonayikh* (your builders) — the returning children become the rebuilders of Zion. Many Hebrew manuscripts and the LXX read 'builders' here.
18. God swears by His own life — the most solemn oath possible — that Zion's children will return. The returning exiles become Zion's bridal adornment, transforming her from desolate widow to radiant bride.
19. The reversal is total: Zion's problem shifts from emptiness to overcrowding. The land that was desolate will be bursting with returned exiles.
20. The children born during exile — Zion's season of bereavement — will be so numerous they demand more space. Loss is transformed into superabundance.
21. Zion's astonishment mirrors Sarah's laughter (Genesis 18:12) — the impossible has happened. Four terms of desolation pile up (bereaved, barren, exiled, put away) to magnify the miracle of restoration.
22. The nations themselves become the means of Israel's restoration — carrying Zion's children home. The imagery reverses the exile: foreign powers who once deported Israel now tenderly transport her children back.
23. The reversal of power is complete: the mightiest rulers of the earth become caretakers for Zion's children. The closing promise — those who wait (*qovai*) for God will not be ashamed — echoes Isaiah 40:31.

- 24.** The Hebrew tsaddiq here is debated — the Masoretic text reads 'righteous one' but the context and Dead Sea Scrolls suggest 'tyrant' (arits), which better parallels 'mighty one' (gibbor). The rhetorical question expects the answer 'No!' — setting up God's astonishing 'Yes!' in the next verse.
- 25.** The emphatic anokhi (I myself) appears twice, stressing that God personally enters the conflict. No oppressor is too powerful for the LORD to overcome.
- 26.** The chapter ends with graphic imagery of divine judgment — the oppressors consume themselves — followed by universal recognition. The title 'Mighty One of Jacob' (avir ya'aqov) is an ancient patriarchal title (Genesis 49:24) anchoring God's rescue of Zion in covenant history.

50

Summary: *This chapter opens with God challenging Zion's claim of abandonment: where is your mother's certificate of divorce? God's hand is not too short to save. The Third Servant Song (vv.4-9) then presents the Servant as a willing disciple whose ear is opened each morning by God. The Servant endures physical abuse without turning away, trusting that God will vindicate him. The chapter closes with a warning to those who walk by their own light.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Third Servant Song introduces a new dimension: the Servant suffers willingly and voluntarily. Unlike the Second Song where the Servant laments, here he offers his back to the strikers and his cheeks to those who pull out the beard — a deliberate choice, not passive victimhood. The courtroom metaphor of verses 8-9 casts suffering as a legal contest that God will win.*

Translation Friction: *The shift between God speaking (vv.1-3), the Servant speaking (vv.4-9), and the prophetic voice (vv.10-11) is abrupt. We have followed the traditional division without smoothing the transitions. The word adonai (Lord/Master) in verse 4 frames the Servant's relationship to God as that of a student to a teacher — the Hebrew limmudim (taught ones/disciples) is rare and significant.*

Connections: *The Servant's willingness to suffer (v.6) anticipates 52:13-53:12 in vivid detail. The legal language of vindication (v.8, 'Who will contend with me?') is echoed in Romans 8:31-34. The morning-by-morning teaching (v.4) connects to Psalm 119's meditation on Torah. The darkness imagery (v.10) inverts the 'light to the nations' of 49:6.*

¹This is what the LORD says:
 'Where is your mother's certificate of divorce
 with which I sent her away?
 Or to which of my creditors
 have I sold you?
 Behold, for your iniquities you were sold,
 and for your transgressions your mother was sent away.'

²Why, when I came, was there no one?
 When I called, was there none to answer?
 Is my hand too short to ransom?
 Have I no power to deliver?
 Behold, by my rebuke I dry up the sea;
 I make rivers a desert.
 Their fish stink for lack of water
 and die of thirst.

³I clothe the heavens with blackness
 and make sackcloth their covering.

⁴The Lord GOD has given me
the tongue of those who are taught,
that I may know how to sustain the weary with a word.
Morning by morning He awakens —
He awakens my ear
to hear as those who are taught.

⁵The Lord GOD has opened my ear,
and I was not rebellious;
I did not turn backward.

⁶I gave my back to those who strike,
and my cheeks to those who pull out the beard.
I did not hide my face
from disgrace and spitting.

⁷But the Lord GOD helps me;
therefore I have not been disgraced.
Therefore I have set my face like flint,
and I know that I shall not be put to shame.

⁸He who vindicates me is near.
Who will contend with me?
Let us stand up together.
Who is my accuser?
Let him come near to me.

⁹Behold, the Lord GOD helps me;
who will declare me guilty?
Behold, they will all wear out like a garment;
the moth will consume them.

¹⁰Who among you fears the LORD
and obeys the voice of His servant?
Let him who walks in darkness
and has no light
trust in the name of the LORD
and rely upon his God.

¹¹Behold, all you who kindle a fire,
who arm yourselves with firebrands —
walk by the light of your fire
and among the sparks you have kindled!
This you shall have from my hand:
you shall lie down in torment.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God challenges the assumption that He initiated the separation. Under Deuteronomy 24:1, a husband must issue a formal divorce document (sefer keritut). God's rhetorical question implies: no such document exists — the covenant was never formally dissolved. Israel's exile was self-inflicted

through sin, not divine abandonment.

2. God's rhetorical questions invert the complaint: it was Israel who failed to respond, not God who failed to act. The drying of the sea (yam) alludes to the Red Sea crossing — proof that God's power to deliver is undiminished.
3. The heavens themselves wear mourning garments (saq, sackcloth) — cosmic darkness serves as a sign of divine displeasure and recalls the ninth plague of Egypt (Exodus 10:21-23).
4. This verse opens the Third Servant Song (vv.4-9). The repetition babboqer babboqer (morning by morning) emphasizes daily, habitual communion with God. The Servant's authority to speak comes not from personal wisdom but from disciplined listening.
5. The 'opening' of the ear (patach ozen) may echo the ritual of Exodus 21:6, where a servant's ear is pierced as a sign of permanent, voluntary service. The Servant's obedience is stressed by two negatives: not rebellious, not turning back.
6. The Servant's suffering is voluntary — 'I gave' (natatti), not 'they took.' Pulling out the beard was an extreme act of humiliation in the ancient Near East. This verse is central to Christian readings of the Servant as prefiguring Jesus's passion (cf. Matthew 26:67), while Jewish tradition may read it as Israel's suffering among the nations.
7. The word challamish (flint) evokes the hardest stone known in the ancient world — an image of unyielding resolve. The Servant's confidence rests not in his own strength but in God's help (ya'azar-li). Luke 9:51 uses similar language of Jesus 'setting his face' toward Jerusalem.
8. The scene shifts to a courtroom. The Hebrew matsdiqui (He who declares me righteous/vindicates me) places God in the role of judge who pronounces the verdict. Ba'al mishpati (master of my case/my accuser) is a legal term for the opposing litigant. Paul draws directly on this language in Romans 8:33-34.
9. The Servant's accusers are compared to a moth-eaten garment — their case against him will disintegrate. The Third Servant Song ends with absolute confidence in divine vindication.
10. The 'servant' (eved) here is referred to in the third person, likely by a prophetic voice commenting on the Servant Song. Those who fear God are called to trust even in darkness — faith without visible evidence, the posture the Servant himself has modeled.
11. The chapter ends with a sharp warning contrasting two paths: trusting God in darkness (v.10) versus manufacturing one's own light (v.11). Those who rely on their own fire rather than God's guidance will find their self-made illumination leads only to ma'atsevah (torment/sorrow). The word choice echoes the 'pain' vocabulary of Genesis 3:16-17.

51

Summary: *Three calls to listen (vv.1, 4, 7) structure the first half of this chapter, summoning those who pursue righteousness to remember Abraham and Sarah, to receive God's Torah-light to the nations, and to fear God rather than mortals. The chapter's second half turns to the arm of the LORD — summoned to awake as in the days of old when it split Rahab and dried the sea. God then identifies Himself as the sole comforter of Israel and announces the transfer of the cup of wrath from Jerusalem to her oppressors.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The appeal to look to the rock from which you were hewn (v.1) and to Abraham and Sarah (v.2) is unique in the prophets — grounding future hope in ancestral memory. The Rahab/dragon mythology in verses 9-10 is striking: Isaiah appropriates ancient Near Eastern combat myth (God defeating the sea monster) and historicizes it as the Exodus, then projects it forward as future redemption.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the speaker shifts frequently: God speaks (vv.1-8), the prophet calls upon God's arm (vv.9-11), God responds in first person (vv.12-16), and then addresses Jerusalem directly (vv.17-23). We have preserved these shifts rather than harmonizing them. The mythological language of Rahab and tannin (dragon/sea monster) in verse 9 reflects genuine ancient Israelite engagement with broader Near Eastern cosmology.*

Connections: *The arm of the LORD (vv.5, 9) becomes the central image of 52:10 and 53:1. The cup of wrath (vv.17, 22) connects to Jeremiah 25:15-29 and Revelation 14:10. The Eden/garden imagery (v.3) echoes Genesis 2 and anticipates Isaiah 55:12-13. The ransomed returning to Zion (v.11) is virtually identical to 35:10.*

1Listen to me, you who pursue righteousness,
you who seek the LORD:
look to the rock from which you were hewn,

and to the quarry from which you were dug.

²Look to Abraham your father
and to Sarah who bore you;
for he was but one when I called him,
but I blessed him and made him many.

³For the LORD comforts Zion;
He comforts all her waste places
and makes her wilderness like Eden,
her desert like the garden of the LORD.
Joy and gladness shall be found in her,
thanksgiving and the sound of song.

⁴Give heed to me, my people,
and listen to me, my nation;
for a law will go out from me,
and I will set my justice
as a light to the peoples.

⁵My righteousness draws near;
my salvation has gone out,
and my arms will judge the peoples.
The coastlands wait for me,
and for my arm they hope.

⁶Lift up your eyes to the heavens,
and look at the earth beneath;
for the heavens will vanish like smoke,
the earth will wear out like a garment,
and those who dwell on it will die in like manner.
But my salvation will be forever,
and my righteousness will never be broken.

⁷Listen to me, you who know righteousness,
the people in whose heart is my law:
do not fear the reproach of mortals,
and do not be dismayed at their revilings.

⁸For the moth will eat them like a garment,
and the worm will eat them like wool;
but my righteousness will be forever,
and my salvation to all generations.

⁹Awake, awake, put on strength,
O arm of the LORD!
Awake, as in days of old,
the generations of long ago!
Was it not you who cut Rahab in pieces,

who pierced the dragon?

¹⁰Was it not you who dried up the sea,
the waters of the great deep,
who made the depths of the sea a road
for the redeemed to pass over?

¹¹And the ransomed of the LORD shall return
and come to Zion with singing;
everlasting joy shall be upon their heads.
They shall obtain gladness and joy,
and sorrow and sighing shall flee away.

¹²I, I am He who comforts you;
who are you that you are afraid of man who dies,
of the son of man who is made like grass?

¹³You have forgotten the LORD, your Maker,
who stretched out the heavens
and laid the foundations of the earth,
and you fear continually all the day
because of the wrath of the oppressor,
when he sets himself to destroy.
But where is the wrath of the oppressor?

¹⁴He who is bowed down shall speedily be released;
he shall not die in the pit,
nor shall his bread be lacking.

¹⁵For I am the LORD your God,
who stirs up the sea so that its waves roar —
the LORD of hosts is His name.

¹⁶I have put my words in your mouth
and covered you in the shadow of my hand,
planting the heavens and laying the foundations of the earth,
and saying to Zion, You are my people.

¹⁷Rouse yourself, rouse yourself!
Stand up, O Jerusalem,
you who have drunk from the hand of the LORD
the cup of His wrath —
the bowl of the cup of staggering
you have drunk; you have drained it.

¹⁸There is no one to guide her
among all the children she has borne;
there is no one to take her by the hand
among all the children she has raised.

¹⁹These two things have befallen you —
 who will grieve for you? —
 devastation and destruction,
 famine and sword —
 who can comfort you?

²⁰Your children have fainted;
 they lie at the head of every street
 like an antelope in a net,
 full of the wrath of the LORD,
 the rebuke of your God.

²¹Therefore hear this, you afflicted one,
 drunk, but not with wine:

²²This is what your Lord says, the LORD,
 your God who pleads the cause of His people:
 Behold, I have taken from your hand
 the cup of staggering —
 the bowl of the cup of my wrath.
 You shall drink of it no more.

²³And I will put it into the hand of your tormentors,
 who said to you,
 Bow down, that we may walk over you.
 And you made your back like the ground,
 like a street for them to walk on.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening summons addresses the faithful remnant. The rock (tsur) from which they were hewn is identified in the next verse as Abraham — Israel's ancestral bedrock. The quarry metaphor emphasizes that God shapes His people from raw material, as a mason carves stone.
2. Both Abraham and Sarah are named — a rare dual invocation of the patriarchal and matriarchal ancestors. The word echad (one/alone) stresses the miracle: from a single, childless man God produced a nation. The implicit argument: if God could multiply one into many then, He can restore the remnant now.
3. The double use of nicham (comfort) echoes the opening command of Isaiah 40:1. Zion's ruins are transformed into Eden itself — not merely repaired but returned to primordial perfection. The four words of celebration (joy, gladness, thanksgiving, song) overflow the poetic line.
4. The second listen summons. Torah here means not merely the Mosaic law but God's instruction/teaching that will illumine the nations — anticipating the universal scope of 52:15.
5. The arm (zeroa) of the LORD becomes a major theme through chapter 53. The coastlands (iyyim) waiting for God's arm connects to the Servant as a light to the nations (49:6). God's saving power and justice are presented as two aspects of the same action.
6. The created order itself is transient — heavens and earth will pass away — but God's salvation endures. This radical statement about cosmic impermanence is cited in Hebrews 1:10-12 and echoed by Jesus in Mark 13:31.
7. The third listen summons. My law in their heart anticipates Jeremiah's new covenant promise (Jeremiah 31:33). The command not to fear human reproach echoes the Servant's own resolve in 50:7-8.
8. Echoing 50:9, the moth-eaten garment imagery contrasts human hostility (which disintegrates) with divine righteousness (which endures). The phrase ledor dorim (to generation of generations) means without end.
9. The prophet calls upon God's arm to awaken as it did at the Exodus. Rahab and tannin (dragon/sea monster) are figures from ancient Near Eastern mythology that Isaiah historicizes — the mythic battle against chaos is identified with the concrete act of the Red Sea crossing (v.10). This is not polytheism but poetic appropriation.

10. The mythological Rahab of verse 9 is now clearly identified with the historical event: the drying of the sea (yam) at the Exodus. The word ge'ulim (redeemed/ransomed) uses the go'el root — God as kinsman-redeemer, buying His people back from bondage.
11. This verse is nearly identical to Isaiah 35:10, forming a deliberate echo across the book. The ransomed of the LORD (peduyei YHWH) are those redeemed from exile, their return to Zion depicted as a joyous procession with joy literally crowning their heads.
12. The double anokhi (I, I) is intensely emphatic — God Himself enters the conversation to rebuke Zion's fear of mortals. The contrast between the eternal God and mortal man (enosh — a word emphasizing human frailty) and grass (chatsir, cf. Isaiah 40:6-8) could not be sharper.
13. The rhetorical question Where is the wrath of the oppressor? implies it has vanished — the one who seemed omnipotent has dissolved. God as Creator (stretching heavens, laying earth's foundations) dwarfs any human tyrant.
14. The tso'eh (one bowed down/captive) will be freed quickly. The three negatives (shall not die, shall not lack bread) form a comprehensive promise of liberation and provision.
15. God reasserts His identity as the one who commands the sea — the same power invoked in verse 10. The LORD of hosts (YHWH tseva'ot) is a military title: commander of all heavenly and earthly armies.
16. The language of planting heavens and founding earth suggests that God's address to Zion is itself a creative act — the restoration of Israel is presented as a new creation, parallel to Genesis 1. The phrase You are my people (ammi-attah) echoes the covenant formula of Hosea 2:23.
17. The double imperative hit'or'ri (rouse yourself!) echoes the awake, awake addressed to God's arm in verse 9 — now Jerusalem herself must arise. The cup of wrath is a major prophetic motif: Jerusalem has drunk it completely (shathit, matsit — drunk and drained to the dregs).
18. Jerusalem, personified as a staggering, intoxicated mother, has no child to steady her — the desolation is complete. The pathos deepens: she bore and raised children, yet none remains to support her in her hour of need.
19. The two things are elaborated as two pairs: devastation and destruction (external calamity), famine and sword (their human toll). The question who can comfort you? is rhetorical — only God can, as He declared in verse 12.
20. The image of Jerusalem's children collapsed at every intersection, trapped like a wild antelope (to) in a hunter's net, is among the most harrowing in Isaiah. They are full of God's wrath as one is full of drink — the cup metaphor continues.
21. Jerusalem is drunk — but not from wine. She staggers from the cup of divine wrath. This phrase connects to Isaiah 29:9 and anticipates the reversal that follows.
22. The turning point: God removes the cup of wrath from Jerusalem's hand. The title sequence is dense — adonayikh YHWH, ve'elohayikh (your Lord, the LORD, your God) — piling up divine names to underscore the authority behind the promise.
23. The cup of wrath is transferred to Israel's oppressors. The image of people forced to lie face-down while conquerors walk over their backs is attested in ancient Near Eastern victory reliefs — a practice of literal humiliation now reversed.

52

Summary: *This chapter divides into two distinct movements. The first (vv.1-12) is a triumphant call for Zion to awake, put on her strength, and receive the messenger who brings good news of God's reign. The LORD bares His holy arm before all nations. The second movement (vv.13-15) begins the Fourth Servant Song — the most theologically contested passage in the Hebrew Bible — introducing a Servant who will be exalted and lifted up, yet whose appearance was marred beyond human semblance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 7, with its image of beautiful feet on the mountains bringing good news, has become one of the most quoted verses in both Jewish and Christian liturgical traditions. The Fourth Servant Song beginning at verse 13 presents the sharpest paradox in Isaiah: the Servant is simultaneously exalted (yarum, venissa, vegavah — three verbs of elevation) and horrifyingly disfigured. This juxtaposition of glory and suffering is unprecedented in ancient literature.*

Translation Friction: *The division between chapters 52 and 53 is artificial — the Fourth Servant Song runs from 52:13 through 53:12 as a single literary unit. We preserve the chapter division for reference purposes while noting its inadequacy. The Hebrew of 52:14-15 is notoriously difficult; the verb yazzeh in verse 15 may mean sprinkle (a priestly act) or startle/cause to leap up. We have rendered it with a note on both possibilities.*

Connections: *How beautiful on the mountains (v.7) is quoted in Romans 10:15 and Nahum 1:15. The LORD baring His arm (v.10) continues the arm of the LORD theme from 51:5, 9 and anticipates the pivotal question of 53:1. The three verbs of exaltation in 52:13 echo Isaiah 6:1 (the LORD high and lifted up) — language otherwise reserved for God alone. The nations and kings of 52:15 connect to 49:7 and anticipate the kings of 53:12.*

¹Awake, awake, put on your strength, O Zion!
 Put on your beautiful garments,
 O Jerusalem, the holy city!
 For the uncircumcised and the unclean
 shall enter you no more.

²Shake yourself from the dust; arise!
 Take your seat, O Jerusalem.
 Loose the bonds from your neck,
 O captive daughter of Zion.

³For this is what the LORD says:
 You were sold for nothing,
 and you shall be redeemed without money.

⁴For this is what the Lord GOD says:
 My people went down to Egypt at first
 to sojourn there,
 and Assyria oppressed them for nothing.

⁵Now therefore what do I have here, declares the LORD,
 seeing that my people are taken away for nothing?
 Their rulers wail, declares the LORD,
 and continually all the day my name is despised.

⁶Therefore my people shall know my name.
 Therefore in that day they shall know
 that it is I who speak:
 Here I am.

⁷How beautiful upon the mountains
 are the feet of him who brings good news,
 who publishes peace,
 who brings good news of good,
 who publishes salvation,
 who says to Zion,
 "Your God reigns!"

⁸Listen! Your watchmen lift up their voices;
 together they sing for joy,
 for eye to eye they see
 the return of the LORD to Zion.

⁹Break forth together into singing,
 you ruins of Jerusalem,
 for the LORD has comforted His people;
 He has redeemed Jerusalem.

¹⁰The LORD has bared His holy arm
before the eyes of all the nations,
and all the ends of the earth shall see
the salvation of our God.

¹¹Depart, depart, go out from there!
Touch no unclean thing!
Go out from the midst of her;
purify yourselves, you who bear the vessels of the LORD.

¹²For you shall not go out in haste,
and you shall not go in flight,
for the LORD will go before you,
and the God of Israel will be your rear guard.

¹³Behold, my servant shall prosper;
he shall be high and lifted up,
and shall be exceedingly exalted.

¹⁴As many were astonished at him —
his appearance was so marred, beyond human semblance,
and his form beyond that of the children of men —

¹⁵so shall he startle many nations.
Kings shall shut their mouths because of him,
for what had not been told them they shall see,
and what they had not heard they shall understand.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double imperative *uri uri* (awake, awake!) echoes 51:9 (addressed to God's arm) and 51:17 (addressed to Jerusalem). Now Zion is told to exchange her mourning rags for garments of splendor. The exclusion of the uncircumcised and unclean envisions a purified, restored Jerusalem.
2. The command *shevi* (sit/take your seat) is a wordplay — in context it means not to sit passively but to be enthroned, to resume a position of dignity. The captive (*sheviyah*) is told to become the one seated in honor (*yoshevet*).
3. The economics of redemption are paradoxical: Israel was sold for no price (*chinnam*, gratis) and will be bought back for no price. The verb *tigga'elu* (shall be redeemed) uses the *go'el* root — God as kinsman-redeemer pays no ransom because no legitimate transaction ever occurred.
4. God surveys the history of Israel's oppression: Egypt (voluntary sojourn turned slavery) and Assyria (unprovoked aggression). Both served no legitimate purpose (*be'efes*, for nothing) — establishing that Israel's suffering was unjust exploitation, not divine abandonment.
5. God's question what do I have here? expresses divine restlessness — He will not tolerate the status quo of His people in bondage. The desecration of God's name (*shemi minno'ats*) among the nations is a major motivating factor in Ezekiel's theology of restoration (Ezekiel 36:20-23).
6. The revelation climaxes with *hinneni* (Here I am) — God's own self-disclosure. The same word Abraham spoke in response to God (Genesis 22:1) is now spoken by God in response to His people. The reversal is breathtaking.
7. One of the most celebrated verses in all of Scripture. The herald runs across the mountains — visible from Jerusalem — bringing the announcement that God has acted. The fourfold description (peace, good, salvation, God reigns) builds to the climactic declaration *malakh elohayikh* (Your God reigns!). Paul quotes this in Romans 10:15; Nahum 1:15 contains a parallel.
8. The watchmen (*tsofayikh*) stationed on Jerusalem's walls see the LORD's return with their own eyes — *ayin be'ayin* (eye to eye), meaning face to face, without mediation. This is direct, unobstructed vision of God's saving action.
9. Even the ruins (*chorvot*) are summoned to sing — the destroyed stones themselves participate in the celebration. The verb *ga'al* (redeemed) is the *go'el* verb: God has acted as kinsman-redeemer for the city itself.

10. God rolls up His sleeve, so to speak — the baring of the arm is a warrior's gesture before battle. This arm, called to awaken in 51:9, is now displayed before all nations. The phrase *yeshu'at elohenu* (the salvation of our God) shares its root with the name *Yeshua/Joshua*. Luke 3:6 quotes this verse.
11. The double imperative *suru suru* (depart, depart!) commands a new exodus — this time from Babylon. Those carrying the temple vessels (*kelei YHWH*, cf. Ezra 1:7-11) must be ritually pure. Unlike the first exodus, which was hurried (Exodus 12:11), this departure will be orderly (v.12).
12. This new exodus surpasses the first: no haste (*chippazom*, the very word used of the Passover departure in Exodus 12:11), no flight — because God Himself serves as both vanguard and rear guard. The people are completely enclosed in divine protection.
13. This verse begins the Fourth Servant Song (52:13-53:12), the most theologically contested passage in the Hebrew Bible. The verb *yaskil* can mean prosper or act wisely — both senses may be intended. The three ascending verbs of exaltation (*yarum*, *venissa*, *vegavah*) are extraordinary: in Isaiah 6:1, *ram venissa* describes God Himself on His throne. Jewish tradition has generally read the Servant as Israel personified; Christian tradition as messianic prophecy. We present the text without privileging either reading.
14. The paradox is staggering: the one exalted above all (v.13) is disfigured beyond recognition as human. The word *mishchat* (marred/disfigured) suggests destruction of form itself. The shift from second person (at thee) to third person (his appearance) is jarring in Hebrew and may indicate editorial layering or dramatic perspective shifts.
15. The verb *yazzeah* is highly debated. The traditional rendering sprinkle (from *nazah*, a priestly purification act) would make the Servant a priest who purifies nations. An alternative reading startle/cause to leap up (from an Arabic cognate) better parallels kings shutting their mouths in astonishment. Both readings carry theological weight; we have followed the contextual sense of astonishment while noting the priestly alternative. Paul quotes the second half of this verse in Romans 15:21.

53

Summary: *The Fourth Servant Song continues from 52:13 and reaches its climax here. A group of speakers — identified only as we — confess that they misjudged the servant of the LORD, mistaking his suffering for divine punishment when in fact he bore their griefs and was pierced for their transgressions. The Servant, silent as a lamb before slaughter, is cut off from the land of the living, buried with the wicked, yet sees offspring and prolongs his days. The song ends with God vindicating the Servant and granting him a portion with the great.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most developed theology of vicarious suffering in the Hebrew Bible. The Servant does not merely suffer alongside others but suffers in their place and for their healing. The reversal of verse 4 is the theological hinge: we thought him stricken by God, but he was pierced for our transgressions. The Dead Sea Scrolls manuscript 1QIsaiah-a preserves a significant variant at verse 11, reading he shall see light (*yir'eh or*), absent from the Masoretic Text but supported by the Septuagint.*

Translation Friction: *This is the most theologically contested passage in the Hebrew Bible, and we approach it with maximum care and transparency. Jewish interpretive tradition, from the Talmud through Rashi and Ibn Ezra, has predominantly read the Servant as a personification of Israel suffering among the nations — the we being the Gentile nations who finally recognize Israel's innocent suffering. Christian tradition, from the New Testament onward, has read the Servant as a messianic prophecy fulfilled in Jesus of Nazareth. Both readings have deep roots and serious textual support. We present the Hebrew as it stands, note both traditions, and do not privilege either. The text itself sustains the tension.*

Connections: *This passage is quoted or alluded to more than any other Hebrew Bible text in the New Testament (Matthew 8:17; Acts 8:32-35; Romans 4:25; 1 Peter 2:22-25, among many others). In Jewish liturgy, it appears in the Musaf service for Yom Kippur in some traditions. The Targum Jonathan renders the passage messianically but redistributes the suffering to Israel's enemies. The Babylonian Talmud (Sanhedrin 98b) applies elements to the Messiah. The Dead Sea Scrolls community appears to have read it in light of their own Teacher of Righteousness.*

¹Who has believed what he has heard from us?
And to whom has the arm of the LORD been revealed?

²For he grew up before him like a young plant,
and like a root out of dry ground.

He had no form or majesty that we should look at him,
and no beauty that we should desire him.

³He was despised and rejected by men,
a man of sorrows and acquainted with grief.
As one from whom men hide their faces
he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

⁴Surely he has borne our griefs
and carried our sorrows;
yet we esteemed him stricken,
smitten by God, and afflicted.

⁵But he was pierced for our transgressions;
he was crushed for our iniquities.
Upon him was the chastisement that brought us peace,
and by his wounds we are healed.

⁶All we like sheep have gone astray;
we have turned, each one, to his own way,
and the LORD has laid on him
the iniquity of us all.

⁷He was oppressed, and he was afflicted,
yet he opened not his mouth;
like a lamb that is led to the slaughter,
and like a sheep that before its shearers is silent,
so he opened not his mouth.

⁸By oppression and judgment he was taken away;
and as for his generation, who considered
that he was cut off out of the land of the living,
stricken for the transgression of my people?

⁹And they made his grave with the wicked
and with a rich man in his death,
although he had done no violence,
and there was no deceit in his mouth.

¹⁰Yet it was the will of the LORD to crush him;
He has put him to grief.
When his soul makes an offering for guilt,
he shall see his offspring; he shall prolong his days;
and the will of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

¹¹Out of the anguish of his soul he shall see and be satisfied.
By his knowledge shall the righteous one, my servant,
make many to be accounted righteous,
and he shall bear their iniquities.

¹²Therefore I will divide him a portion with the many,
and he shall divide the spoil with the strong,
because he poured out his soul to death
and was numbered with the transgressors;
yet he bore the sin of many
and makes intercession for the transgressors.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The song shifts to first-person plural — a group of speakers confess their misunderstanding. The identity of the we is debated: in Christian reading, it is Israel or humanity confessing about the Messiah; in Jewish reading, it may be the Gentile nations confessing about Israel. The shemu'atenu (our report/what we have heard) implies a message that was delivered but not believed. John 12:38 and Romans 10:16 both quote this verse.
2. The Servant emerges from unpromising conditions — a yoneq (tender shoot/suckling plant) from dry ground (erets tsiyyah), suggesting humble, unexpected origins. The triple negation (no form, no majesty, no beauty) inverts expectations of how divine power should manifest. The root (shoresh) imagery echoes Isaiah 11:1 (the shoot from Jesse's stump).
3. The phrase chadal ishim (rejected by men, or: forsaken of men) suggests one who has ceased to be regarded as human. The word yadu'a choli (acquainted with grief/illness) can also mean known to sickness — the Servant is intimate with suffering. The verb chasavnuhu (we esteemed him) is an accounting term: we did not reckon him as having value.
4. This is the theological hinge of the chapter. The emphatic akhen (surely) introduces the confession: the Servant bore our griefs (cholyayenu — our sicknesses/weaknesses) and carried our sorrows (makh'ovenu). The speakers confess their error: they assumed the Servant was nagu'a (stricken — a term used for leprosy in Leviticus 13), mukkeh elohim (smitten by God) — divinely punished for his own sins. Matthew 8:17 applies this verse to Jesus's healing ministry.
5. The preposition min (from/for) in mipsha'enu (for our transgressions) and me'avonotenu (for our iniquities) indicates the cause of the Servant's suffering: our sins. The word musar (chastisement/discipline) carries the sense of corrective punishment — but it falls on the Servant, and the result (shelomenu, our peace/wholeness) accrues to us. The final clause uvacharurato nirpa-lanu (by his wounds we are healed) is the most concise statement of vicarious atonement in the Hebrew Bible. 1 Peter 2:24 quotes this directly.
6. The verse opens and closes with kullanu (all of us), forming an inclusio of universal guilt. The verb hippgia (laid on/caused to fall upon) is the same root as paga (to intercede) in verse 12 — the Servant both receives the burden and intercedes for those who caused it. The shepherd/sheep metaphor frames human sin as aimless wandering rather than deliberate rebellion.
7. The double statement he opened not his mouth frames the verse, emphasizing the Servant's voluntary silence. The lamb (seh) and sheep (rachel) are sacrificial imagery — the lamb led to slaughter evokes the Passover lamb (Exodus 12) and the daily tamid offering. The Ethiopian eunuch was reading this very passage when Philip encountered him (Acts 8:32-35). In Jewish tradition, Israel's silence among persecuting nations echoes this image.
8. The phrase nigzar me'erets chayyim (cut off from the land of the living) indicates death. The question who considered (mi yesocheach) his generation/fate suggests that no one reflected on the meaning of his death. The phrase mippesha ammi (for the transgression of my people) is pivotal: God now speaks in first person (my people), confirming the vicarious nature of the suffering. The Hebrew lamo (to him/to them) is ambiguous and debated.
9. The Servant is buried with the wicked (resha'im) and with a rich man (ashir) — the parallelism suggests the rich man is equated with the wicked, a common prophetic association. Christian tradition connects the rich man to Joseph of Arimathea (Matthew 27:57-60). The Servant's innocence is stated absolutely: no violence (chamas) and no deceit (mirmah). 1 Peter 2:22 quotes the second clause.
10. The most theologically dense verse in the chapter. God's will (chefets, delight/purpose) is behind the Servant's suffering — this is not accident but divine intention. The Servant's soul (nafsho) becomes an asham (guilt offering), a specific Levitical sacrifice. Yet paradoxically, the one who dies sees offspring (zera) and prolongs his days — language of life beyond death. This paradox is central to both Jewish and Christian messianic interpretation.
11. CRITICAL TEXTUAL NOTE: The Dead Sea Scrolls manuscript 1QIsaiah-a (circa 125 BCE) reads he shall see light (yir'eh or) where the Masoretic Text reads simply he shall see. The Septuagint also includes light. Many scholars believe the DSS preserves the older reading, with or (light) lost through scribal error in the MT tradition. If original, it explicitly describes the Servant seeing light after death — resurrection language. We follow the MT but flag this significant variant. The verb yatsdiq (make righteous/justify) is a legal term: the Servant's knowledge effects the acquittal of the many (larabbim).
12. The song concludes with God speaking in first person, vindicating and rewarding the Servant. Four reasons are given for the Servant's exaltation: (1) he poured out his soul (he'erah — literally emptied out, cf. Philippians 2:7) to death; (2) he was numbered with transgressors; (3) he bore the sin of many (chet-rabbim nasa); (4) he makes intercession (yafgia — the same root as hippgia in v.6) for transgressors. The final verb is imperfect tense (yafgia — he makes/will make intercession), suggesting ongoing action beyond death. Mark 15:28 and Luke 22:37 cite the numbered with transgressors clause. This verse, and the song as a whole, has shaped Jewish and Christian theology for over two millennia.

54

Summary: *Following the Servant's suffering and vindication in chapter 53, this chapter explodes with the results: barren Zion is commanded to sing because her children will outnumber those of the married woman. God reveals Himself as both Zion's Maker and her husband, her Redeemer and the Holy One of Israel. A brief moment of wrath is swallowed by everlasting covenant love. God establishes an unbreakable covenant of peace and promises that no weapon formed against His people shall prosper.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The concentration of divine titles in verse 5 is extraordinary: Maker, husband, the LORD of hosts, the Holy One of Israel, Redeemer, God of the whole earth. The covenant of peace (berit shalom, v.10) is compared to the Noahic covenant. The final verse has become a declaration of faith across traditions.*

Translation Friction: *The marital imagery of God as husband to Zion raises interpretive questions about how to read the exile. Verses 6-8 navigate this carefully: God admits to a moment of wrath but frames it within overflowing compassion. We have preserved both the tenderness and the tension.*

Connections: *The barren woman singing (v.1) echoes Sarah, Hannah, and anticipates Galatians 4:27. The covenant of peace (v.10) connects to Ezekiel 34:25 and 37:26. The precious stones of verses 11-12 reappear in Revelation 21:18-21. No weapon formed against you (v.17) has become one of the most widely quoted promises in both Jewish and Christian devotional life.*

¹Sing, O barren one, who did not bear!
Break forth into singing and cry aloud,
you who have not been in labor!
For the children of the desolate one will be more
than the children of her who is married,
says the LORD.

²Enlarge the place of your tent,
and let the curtains of your dwellings be stretched out.
Do not hold back; lengthen your cords
and strengthen your stakes.

³For you will spread out to the right and to the left,
and your offspring will possess the nations
and will people the desolate cities.

⁴Fear not, for you will not be ashamed;
be not confounded, for you will not be disgraced.
For you will forget the shame of your youth,
and the reproach of your widowhood
you will remember no more.

⁵For your Maker is your husband —
the LORD of hosts is His name —
and your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel;
the God of the whole earth He is called.

⁶For the LORD has called you
like a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit,

like a wife of youth when she is cast off,
says your God.

⁷For a brief moment I forsook you,
but with great compassion I will gather you.

⁸In overflowing wrath for a moment
I hid my face from you,
but with everlasting covenant love I will have compassion on you,
says the LORD, your Redeemer.

⁹This is like the days of Noah to me:
as I swore that the waters of Noah
should no more go over the earth,
so I have sworn that I will not be angry with you
and will not rebuke you.

¹⁰For the mountains may depart
and the hills be removed,
but my covenant love shall not depart from you,
and my covenant of peace shall not be removed,
says the LORD, who has compassion on you.

¹¹O afflicted one, storm-tossed and not comforted,
behold, I will set your stones in antimony
and lay your foundations with sapphires.

¹²I will make your pinnacles of agate,
your gates of carbuncle,
and all your walls of precious stones.

¹³And all your children shall be taught by the LORD,
and great shall be the peace of your children.

¹⁴In righteousness you shall be established;
you shall be far from oppression,
for you shall not fear,
and from terror, for it shall not come near you.

¹⁵If anyone stirs up strife,
it is not from me;
whoever stirs up strife with you
shall fall because of you.

¹⁶Behold, I have created the smith
who blows the fire of coals
and produces a weapon for its purpose.
I have also created the destroyer to ruin.

17No weapon formed against you shall prosper,
 and every tongue that rises against you in judgment
 you shall refute.
 This is the heritage of the servants of the LORD,
 and their vindication from me,
 declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with an imperative to sing. The barren woman (aqarah) is Zion, whose exile was a season of childlessness. The reversal echoes Sarah, Rebekah, Rachel, and Hannah. Paul quotes this verse in Galatians 4:27.
2. The tent imagery recalls Israel's nomadic origins and the tabernacle. Four imperatives (enlarge, stretch, lengthen, strengthen) convey urgent expansion.
3. The expansion is in every direction. The verb *tirpotsi* (spread/break forth) suggests irresistible growth. The inheritance of nations echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 22:17).
4. Four shame-words are negated — Zion's humiliation is comprehensively erased. The shame of your youth may refer to Egypt; the reproach of widowhood to the exile.
5. Six divine titles cascade in rapid succession: Maker, husband, the LORD of hosts, Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, the God of the whole earth. The combination of *ba'al* (husband) and *go'el* (Redeemer) in one verse is remarkable. The plural forms are majestic plurals referring to the one God.
6. God acknowledges Zion's experience: she felt forsaken and grieved. The phrase wife of youth (*eshet ne'urim*) implies first love — the relationship is deeply covenantal and intimate.
7. God admits to a real abandonment but qualifies it as *rega qaton* (a brief/small moment) against the backdrop of eternity. The contrast between brief moment and great compassion (*rachamim gedolim*) is the emotional center of the chapter.
8. The proportion is the point: overflowing wrath for a moment versus everlasting covenant love. The title *go'alekh* (your Redeemer) closes the verse, reminding Zion that the one who hid His face is the same one who redeems her.
9. God compares His promise to Zion to the Noahic covenant — the most universal and unconditional covenant in Scripture (Genesis 8:21-22; 9:8-17). The comparison elevates this promise to cosmic, irrevocable status.
10. Mountains — the most permanent features of the landscape — may move, but God's *chesed* and *berit shalom* are more enduring than geology itself. The title *merachamekh* uses the womb-related root *rechem*, connecting divine mercy to maternal love.
11. God addresses Zion with tender recognition of her suffering before announcing the remedy: a city rebuilt with precious stones. The sapphire foundations suggest a city of heavenly beauty — imagery that reappears in Revelation 21:19.
12. The exact identification of these gems is uncertain, but every surface of the restored city gleams with precious stone. The *avnei-chefets* (stones of delight) suggest a city that is itself a jewel.
13. Jesus quotes this verse in John 6:45. The wordplay between *banayikh* (your children) and *bonayikh* (your builders, cf. 49:17) may be intentional. The *shalom* of the children is the fruit of the *berit shalom* in verse 10.
14. The new Zion is founded on righteousness — not military power or political alliance. Fear and terror are banished from the city limits.
15. God distinguishes between His own actions and the hostility of others. Future attacks on Zion will not carry divine authorization. Without God's backing, any aggressor is doomed to fail.
16. God claims sovereignty even over those who forge weapons and those who wield them. Since I created both the weaponmaker and the destroyer, I control their limits.
17. The chapter concludes with one of the most quoted promises in Scripture. Two forms of attack are covered: physical (weapons) and verbal (tongues in judgment). The phrase *avdei YHWH* (servants of the LORD) shifts from the singular Servant of chapters 49-53 to the plural servants — suggesting that the Servant's mission creates a community who inherit his protection. Their vindication comes from God, not self-achieved.

55

Summary: *This chapter is the grand invitation that closes the Servant Songs section of Isaiah. Everyone who thirsts is summoned to come and receive water, wine, and milk without money and without price. God offers an everlasting covenant rooted in the sure mercies promised to David. The nations will come running to Israel because of the Holy One of Israel. A call to seek the LORD while He may be found gives way to the soaring declaration that God's thoughts and ways transcend human comprehension. The chapter culminates in the assurance that God's word never returns empty and in a cosmic vision of mountains singing and trees clapping their hands.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening invitation (v.1) is one of the most expansive in Scripture — no qualifications, no prerequisites, only thirst. The comparison of God's word to rain and snow (vv.10-11) is among the most quoted passages in both Jewish and Christian traditions on the nature of divine revelation. The closing image of creation rejoicing (v.12) is unmatched in its exuberance: mountains and hills break into singing, trees of the field clap their hands.*

Translation Friction: *The everlasting covenant (berit olam) of verse 3 is explicitly linked to the chasdei David (the sure mercies/covenant loves of David), raising the question of how the Davidic covenant relates to the Servant's work in chapters 52-53. We note the connection without resolving the complex relationship between royal and servant messianism. The imperative to seek the LORD while He may be found (v.6) implies a window of opportunity that could close — a tension with the unconditional tone of the invitation.*

Connections: *The free water (v.1) echoes Isaiah 12:3 and anticipates John 7:37-38 (Jesus at the Feast of Tabernacles: If anyone thirsts, let him come to me). The Davidic covenant (v.3) connects to 2 Samuel 7 and Psalm 89. God's word not returning empty (v.11) is foundational to Jewish and Christian theology of Scripture. The thorns-to-cypress transformation (v.13) reverses the curse of Genesis 3:17-18. Revelation 22:17 echoes the invitation: Let the one who is thirsty come.*

¹Come, everyone who thirsts,
come to the waters!
And he who has no money,
come, buy and eat!
Come, buy wine and milk
without money and without price.

²Why do you spend money for what is not bread,
and your labor for what does not satisfy?
Listen carefully to me, and eat what is good,
and delight yourselves in rich food.

³Incline your ear, and come to me;
hear, that your soul may live.
And I will make with you an everlasting covenant,
the sure covenant loves of David.

⁴Behold, I made him a witness to the peoples,
a leader and commander for the peoples.

⁵Behold, you shall call a nation you do not know,
and a nation that does not know you shall run to you,
because of the LORD your God,
and the Holy One of Israel,

for He has glorified you.

⁶Seek the LORD while He may be found;
call upon Him while He is near.

⁷Let the wicked forsake his way,
and the unrighteous man his thoughts;
let him return to the LORD, that He may have mercy on him,
and to our God, for He will abundantly pardon.

⁸For my thoughts are not your thoughts,
neither are your ways my ways,
declares the LORD.

⁹For as the heavens are higher than the earth,
so are my ways higher than your ways
and my thoughts than your thoughts.

¹⁰For as the rain and the snow come down from heaven
and do not return there
but water the earth,
making it bring forth and sprout,
giving seed to the sower and bread to the eater,

¹¹so shall my word be that goes out from my mouth;
it shall not return to me empty,
but it shall accomplish that which I purpose,
and shall succeed in the thing for which I sent it.

¹²For you shall go out in joy
and be led forth in peace.
The mountains and the hills before you
shall break forth into singing,
and all the trees of the field
shall clap their hands.

¹³Instead of the thorn shall come up the cypress,
and instead of the brier shall come up the myrtle;
and it shall be to the LORD for a memorial,
for an everlasting sign that shall not be cut off.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew hoy is typically a woe-cry, but here it functions as an attention-grabbing summons — closer to Come! or Ho! The invitation is radically inclusive: everyone who thirsts, even those without money. The trio of water, wine, and milk represents the full spectrum of sustenance — necessity, celebration, and nourishment. The economics are inverted: buy without money. This echoes 52:3 (redeemed without money) and establishes the gift-nature of salvation.
2. The rhetorical question exposes the futility of pursuing satisfaction apart from God. The imperative shim'u shamo'a (listen, truly listen) uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — this is not casual hearing but the deepest attention. The word deshen (fatness/richness) denotes the choicest portion of a feast.

3. The *berit olam* (everlasting covenant) is defined as the *chasdei David* (the covenant loves/mercies of David). This connects God's promises to the Davidic dynasty (2 Samuel 7:8-16) with the broader invitation to all who thirst. Paul quotes this in Acts 13:34 as fulfilled in Jesus's resurrection. In Jewish tradition, this extends the Davidic covenant to all Israel.
4. The *him* refers to David (or the Davidic figure), appointed as *ed* (witness), *nagid* (leader/prince), and *metsavveh* (commander) to the nations. The scope extends beyond Israel — the Davidic covenant has universal implications. The term *nagid* is the same title used of Saul and David in 1 Samuel.
5. Nations previously unknown to Israel will come running (*yarutsu* — a verb of urgency and eagerness). The attraction is not Israel's own merit but God's glory manifest in her. The Holy One of Israel appears in full, the title that spans the entire book of Isaiah.
6. The double imperative (seek/call) paired with temporal clauses (while He may be found/while He is near) implies urgency — there is a window of divine accessibility that demands response. This verse has shaped Jewish liturgy for the High Holy Days (*Yamim Nora'im*) and Christian evangelistic tradition alike.
7. Repentance requires abandoning both action (*way/derekh*) and intention (thoughts/*machshevotav*). The verb *yashuv* (return) is the Hebrew word for repentance (*teshuvah*). The climactic promise *ki-yarbeh lisloach* (for He will abundantly pardon) uses the *hiphil* of *rabah* — God multiplies pardon, pardons extravagantly, pardons beyond measure.
8. Often quoted as a statement about divine mystery in general, the context is specifically about God's capacity to pardon. The reason God pardons so extravagantly (v.7) is that His thoughts and ways transcend human categories of justice and mercy. This is not about God being unknowable but about God being more merciful than we can imagine.
9. The comparison is spatial and infinite — the gap between earth and sky represents the gap between human and divine reasoning. In context, this is not a counsel of despair but of hope: God's mercy is as far above human mercy as the heavens are above the earth.
10. The rain/snow analogy establishes the efficacy of God's word by appeal to the observable water cycle. Rain does not return to the sky without first accomplishing its purpose: watering the earth, producing growth, yielding seed and bread. The chain from rain to bread traces the full arc of agricultural provision.
11. One of the most important verses in the Hebrew Bible on the nature of God's word (*davar*). The word is personified — it goes out, acts, accomplishes, succeeds, and returns. It is not merely information but an agent of divine will. The verb *hitsliach* (succeed/prosper) is the same root used of the Servant in 52:13 (*yaskil*) — God's word and God's Servant share the same efficacy.
12. The new exodus surpasses every previous one: the people depart in joy rather than haste (contrast Exodus 12:11 and 52:12). Nature itself participates in the celebration — mountains sing, trees applaud. This is not merely metaphor but a vision of creation liberated from its bondage (cf. Romans 8:19-22). The image of trees clapping their hands is unique to Isaiah and echoes Psalm 98:8.
13. The chapter and the entire Servant Songs section close with a vision of transformed nature. Thorns and briars — the emblems of the Genesis curse and of desolated land — are replaced by noble trees. The myrtle (*hadas*) is the plant associated with the name Hadassah (Esther). This transformation becomes a permanent memorial (*shem*) and everlasting sign (*ot olam*) of God's redemptive work — a new creation that will never be undone.

56

Summary: *Isaiah 56 opens the final section of the book (chapters 56–66) with a radical declaration: the covenant community is not defined by ethnicity but by faithfulness. Foreigners and eunuchs — categories previously excluded from the assembly — are welcomed into God's house if they hold fast to His covenant and keep the Sabbath. The chapter then pivots sharply to condemn Israel's own leaders as blind watchmen and greedy shepherds who fail the very community they are charged to protect.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 7 — 'My house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples' — is one of the most universalist statements in the Hebrew Bible. Jesus quotes it directly when cleansing the Temple (Mark 11:17), making it a hinge text between the Testaments. The inclusion of eunuchs (v.5) overturns Deuteronomy 23:1, signaling that the eschatological age rewrites old boundaries.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew 'nilvim' (those who join themselves) in verse 3 raises the question of conversion theology in ancient Israel. We have rendered it to preserve the voluntary, covenantal nature of the act rather than importing later rabbinic or Christian conversion frameworks.*

Connections: *The 'house of prayer for all peoples' (v.7) connects forward to Jesus' Temple action (Mark 11:17, Matt 21:13, Luke 19:46). The eunuch inclusion anticipates the Ethiopian eunuch's baptism in Acts 8:26-39. The blind watchmen imagery (vv.10-11) parallels Ezekiel 34's indictment of Israel's shepherds.*

¹This is what the LORD says:
 'Guard justice and practice righteousness,
 for My salvation is near — it comes!
 And My righteousness is about to be revealed.'

²Blessed is the one who does this,
 the son of man who holds fast to it —
 who keeps the Sabbath without profaning it
 and restrains his hand from every evil.

³Let not the foreigner who has joined himself to the LORD say,
 'The LORD will surely separate me from His people.'
 And let not the eunuch say,
 'I am only a dry tree.'

⁴For this is what the LORD says
 to the eunuchs who keep My Sabbaths,
 who choose what pleases Me
 and hold fast to My covenant:

⁵'I will give them, within My house and within My walls,
 a monument and a name
 better than sons and daughters.
 I will give them an everlasting name
 that shall not be cut off.'

⁶And the foreigners who join themselves to the LORD
 to minister to Him, to love the name of the LORD,
 and to be His servants —
 every one who keeps the Sabbath without profaning it
 and holds fast to My covenant —

⁷'I will bring them to My holy mountain
 and give them joy in My house of prayer.
 Their burnt offerings and sacrifices
 will be accepted on My altar,
 for My house shall be called
 a house of prayer for all peoples.'

⁸The Lord GOD declares — He who gathers the outcasts of Israel:
 'I will gather still others to him
 beyond those already gathered.'

⁹All you beasts of the field, come to devour!
 All you beasts in the forest!

¹⁰His watchmen are blind — all of them.
 They know nothing.
 They are all mute dogs that cannot bark,

dreamers lying down, lovers of sleep.

¹¹The dogs have a mighty appetite — they never have enough.
And these are shepherds! They have no understanding.
They have all turned to their own way,
each to his own gain, every last one.

¹²'Come,' they say, 'let me get wine!
Let us drink our fill of strong drink!
And tomorrow will be like today —
great beyond measure!'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'This is what the LORD says' renders *ko amar YHWH* per locked formula.
1. 'Guard justice' (*shimru mishpat*) carries the sense of active watchfulness, not passive observance.
2. 'Son of man' (*ben adam*) is used generically here — any human being, not a messianic title.
3. 'Joined himself' (*nilvah*) indicates voluntary covenantal attachment — the foreigner has chosen allegiance to YHWH.
3. The eunuch's lament ('dry tree') reflects exclusion from the assembly under Deuteronomy 23:1 and the loss of progeny.
4. Three conditions define the faithful eunuch: Sabbath-keeping, choosing God's will, and covenant loyalty.
5. 'Yad vashem' — literally 'hand and name' — became the name of Israel's Holocaust memorial, drawn directly from this verse.
5. The promise reverses the eunuch's despair: where biology fails, God's covenant provides an enduring legacy.
6. Five marks of the faithful foreigner: joining, ministering, loving the Name, serving, and Sabbath-keeping.
7. Jesus quotes this verse in Mark 11:17 when cleansing the Temple, accusing the authorities of making God's house a 'den of robbers' rather than fulfilling its universal vocation.
7. 'For all peoples' (*lekhol ha'ammim*) — the plural 'peoples' is significant: not one nation but all nations.
8. The 'others' gathered alongside Israel anticipates the Gentile inclusion theme that dominates the New Testament.
9. An abrupt shift: wild beasts are summoned as instruments of judgment against Israel's failed leaders. The imagery parallels Ezekiel 34:5, 8.
10. 'Watchmen' (*tsofim*) are spiritual sentinels — prophets tasked with warning the people. Their blindness is a damning contradiction.
10. 'Mute dogs that cannot bark' — guard dogs that fail their one function. The metaphor is deliberately humiliating.
11. The shift from 'dogs' to 'shepherds' collapses the metaphor: the leaders are worse than the guard dogs — they are supposed to be shepherds but behave like ravenous animals.
12. The chapter ends with the leaders' own words — self-indulgent, oblivious to judgment. Their cry of 'tomorrow will be like today' is a theology of presumption that Isaiah dismantles throughout the book.

57

Summary: *Isaiah 57 opens with a lament that the righteous perish and no one takes it to heart — their death is actually a mercy, sparing them from the evil to come. The chapter then unleashes a blistering indictment of idolatry, exposing Israel's spiritual adultery in valleys, under oaks, and on high mountains. Yet the chapter pivots dramatically at verse 15 to one of the most profound theology-of-presence statements in all of Scripture: the High and Exalted One dwells with the crushed and lowly in spirit. The chapter closes with the offer of peace — but not for the wicked.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 15 is among the most theologically dense verses in Isaiah. It holds two seemingly irreconcilable truths in tension: God inhabits eternity and the high holy place, yet He simultaneously dwells with the contrite and lowly. This is not condescension but divine preference. Verse 19 anticipates Ephesians 2:17 ('peace to those who were far off and peace to those who were near'). Verse 21's refrain — 'There is no peace for the wicked' — is the second of*

three occurrences that structurally divide Isaiah 40–66 into three sections of nine chapters each.

Translation Friction: The idolatry passages (vv.5-10) contain sexually charged language describing Israel's unfaithfulness. We have rendered these with fidelity to the prophetic rhetoric without sanitizing the force of the metaphor, as the shock is intentional to the prophetic message.

Connections: Verse 15's theology of divine presence with the lowly connects to Psalm 34:18, Psalm 51:17, and Jesus' Beatitudes (Matt 5:3-4). Verse 19's 'peace to the far and near' is quoted in Ephesians 2:17. The 'no peace for the wicked' refrain (v.21) echoes 48:22 and anticipates 66:24.

¹The righteous one perishes,
and no one takes it to heart.
Men of steadfast love are gathered away,
with no one understanding
that the righteous is taken away
from the evil to come.

²He enters into peace;
they rest on their beds —
each one who walked in uprightness.

³But you — draw near, you sons of a sorceress,
you offspring of the adulterer and the prostitute!

⁴Whom are you mocking?
Against whom do you open wide your mouth
and stick out your tongue?
Are you not children of transgression,
offspring of deceit?

⁵You who burn with lust among the oaks,
under every green tree —
who slaughter children in the valleys,
under the clefts of the rocks!

⁶Among the smooth stones of the valley is your portion;
they, they are your lot!
To them you have poured out drink offerings;
you have brought grain offerings.
Shall I relent concerning these things?

⁷On a high and lofty mountain
you have set your bed;
there also you went up to offer sacrifice.

⁸Behind the door and the doorpost
you have set up your pagan symbols.
Deserted Me and uncovered yourself —
you climbed up and made your bed wide.
You made a pact with them;
you loved their bed;

you gazed on their nakedness.

⁹You journeyed to the king with oil
and multiplied your perfumes.
You sent your envoys far away
and debased yourself even to Sheol.

¹⁰You wearied yourself on your many journeys,
but you never said, 'It is hopeless.'
You found renewal of strength
and so did not grow faint.

¹¹Whom did you dread and fear,
that you lied and did not remember Me
or take it to heart?
Have I not held My peace for a long time,
and so you do not fear Me?

¹²I will expose your so-called righteousness
and your works — they will not profit you.

¹³When you cry out, let your collection of idols deliver you!
But the wind will carry them all away;
a breath will take them.
But the one who takes refuge in Me
shall inherit the land
and possess My holy mountain.

¹⁴And it shall be said:
'Build up, build up! Prepare the way!
Remove every obstacle from the path of My people.'

¹⁵For this is what the High and Exalted One says —
He who inhabits eternity, whose name is Holy:
'I dwell in the high and holy place,
and also with the one who is crushed and lowly in spirit —
to revive the spirit of the lowly
and to revive the heart of the crushed.'

¹⁶For I will not contend forever,
nor will I always be angry,
for the spirit would grow faint before Me —
the very breath of life that I have made.

¹⁷Because of his wicked greed I was angry;
I struck him and hid My face in wrath.
Yet he kept turning away,
following the path of his own heart.

¹⁸I have seen his ways, but I will heal him.
I will lead him and restore comfort
to him and to his mourners.

¹⁹creating the fruit of the lips:
'Peace, peace to the one who is far off
and to the one who is near,'
says the LORD, 'and I will heal him.'

²⁰But the wicked are like the churning sea
that cannot be still;
its waters toss up mire and mud.

²¹'There is no peace,' says my God,
'for the wicked.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Men of steadfast love' (anshei chesed) — those defined by covenant faithfulness. Their death is reframed as divine protection, not divine failure.
2. Death for the righteous is described as entering shalom — wholeness and rest. This is one of the Old Testament's gentlest depictions of death.
3. The tone shifts violently. The tender eulogy for the righteous gives way to a courtroom summons against the idolaters.
4. The mocking gestures described (wide mouth, extended tongue) indicate contempt — likely directed at the prophets or at YHWH Himself.
5. 'Slaughter children' refers to child sacrifice, likely to Molech — the most horrifying expression of Israel's apostasy. The valley likely refers to the Valley of Hinnom (Gehenna).
6. A bitter wordplay: chalqei nachal (smooth stones of the valley) sounds like cheleq (portion/inheritance). Israel's 'inheritance' has become river rocks used in pagan worship.
7. 'High places' were hilltop shrines associated with Canaanite worship. The 'bed' imagery merges sexual and religious infidelity.
8. Where the mezuzah should display God's words (Deut 6:9), they have placed pagan memorial symbols — a direct inversion of covenant faithfulness.
9. 'The king' (melekh) may refer to the pagan deity Molech (same consonants in Hebrew) or to foreign political alliances — both are acts of unfaithfulness to YHWH.
10. The tragic irony: Israel's idolatrous energy never flags. She finds just enough false vitality in her adultery to keep pursuing it.
11. God's long silence (machsheh) is revealed as the very thing that enabled Israel's recklessness — they mistook patience for indifference.
12. 'Your righteousness' is spoken with biting irony — Israel's self-assessed righteousness will be publicly deconstructed.
13. The pivot: idols are carried off by wind (ruach), but those who trust YHWH inherit the land. The same ruach that destroys the false gives life to the faithful.
14. This echoes the highway language of Isaiah 40:3 — God is again preparing a way for His people's return.
15. This verse is one of the theological peaks of Isaiah. The God who is ram venissa (high and exalted) — the same phrase from Isaiah 6:1 — chooses to dwell with the dakka (crushed). The paradox is the point.
15. 'Inhabits eternity' (shokhen ad) — God's dwelling is not merely a place but a mode of being. He is both transcendent and intimately present.
16. God self-limits His wrath because the creatures He made could not survive it indefinitely. His anger is real but bounded by His creative compassion.
17. Even divine discipline did not produce repentance — Israel 'kept turning away' (shobab), a stubborn backsliding despite the blows.
18. The 'but' is implicit and crucial: God sees the rebellion and chooses healing anyway. Grace is not ignorance of sin but sovereignty over it.
19. Paul quotes this verse in Ephesians 2:17, identifying 'those far off' as Gentiles and 'those near' as Jews — both reconciled through Christ.
19. 'Creating the fruit of the lips' — God creates the very praise that responds to His healing. The thanksgiving itself is a divine gift.
20. The sea image captures restless, self-destructive agitation — the wicked cannot find the shalom just offered because their own nature prevents it.
21. This refrain (also at 48:22) divides Isaiah's final 27 chapters into three sections of nine chapters each (40-48, 49-57, 58-66). It is a structural and theological marker: God's peace is real but not universal — it excludes those who refuse it.

58

Summary: *Isaiah 58 is one of the most socially explosive chapters in the prophetic canon. The people fast and wonder why God does not notice. God answers: their fasting is a performance of piety while they exploit their workers and quarrel with fists. The true fast God chooses is justice — loosing bonds of wickedness, feeding the hungry, housing the homeless, clothing the naked. When worship becomes justice, then 'your light shall break forth like the dawn.' The chapter closes with a call to Sabbath delight that reframes rest as joy rather than obligation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 6-7 constitute one of the most direct statements of social ethics in the Hebrew Bible: the fast God desires is not abstaining from food but abstaining from injustice. Jesus echoes this priority in Matthew 25:35-36 ('I was hungry and you gave Me food'). Verse 8's 'your light shall break forth like the dawn' becomes a controlling image for the entire final section of Isaiah.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between ritual and ethics is not either/or — Isaiah does not abolish fasting but redefines it. We have rendered the passage to preserve this nuance: God does not reject worship but refuses worship severed from justice.*

Connections: *Verses 6-7 anticipate Jesus' parable of the sheep and goats (Matt 25:31-46). The 'light breaking forth' (v.8) connects to Isaiah 60:1 and John 1:5. The Sabbath theology of vv.13-14 anticipates Jesus' Sabbath controversies (Mark 2:27-28). James 1:27 echoes this chapter's definition of true religion.*

¹Cry aloud — do not hold back!
Lift up your voice like a shofar!
Declare to My people their transgression,
to the house of Jacob their sins.

²Yet day after day they seek Me
and delight to know My ways,
as if they were a nation that practiced righteousness
and had not forsaken the justice of their God.
They ask Me for righteous judgments;
they delight in drawing near to God.

³'Why have we fasted, and You do not see?
Why have we humbled ourselves, and You take no notice?'
Look — on the day of your fast you pursue your own interests
and oppress all your workers.

⁴You fast only to quarrel and fight
and to strike with a wicked fist.
You do not fast as you do today
to make your voice heard on high.

⁵Is this the fast I choose —
a day for a person to humble himself?
Is it to bow your head like a reed
and spread out sackcloth and ashes?
Will you call this a fast,
a day acceptable to the LORD?

⁶Is this not the fast I choose:
to loose the bonds of wickedness,
to untie the straps of the yoke,
to let the oppressed go free,
and to break every yoke?

⁷Is it not to share your bread with the hungry
and bring the homeless poor into your house —
when you see the naked, to cover him,
and not to turn away from your own flesh?

⁸Then your light shall break forth like the dawn,
and your healing shall spring up swiftly.
Your righteousness shall go before you;
the glory of the LORD shall be your rear guard.

⁹Then you shall call, and the LORD will answer;
you shall cry, and He will say, 'Here I am.'
If you remove the yoke from your midst,
the pointing of the finger and the speaking of wickedness,

¹⁰if you pour yourself out for the hungry
and satisfy the desire of the afflicted,
then your light shall rise in the darkness,
and your gloom shall be as the noonday.

¹¹And the LORD will guide you continually
and satisfy your soul in scorched places
and strengthen your bones.
You shall be like a watered garden,
like a spring of water
whose waters do not fail.

¹²And your people shall rebuild the ancient ruins;
you shall raise up the foundations of many generations.
You shall be called the Repairer of the Breach,
the Restorer of Streets to Dwell In.

¹³If you turn back your foot from the Sabbath,
from pursuing your own interests on My holy day,
and call the Sabbath a delight
and the holy day of the LORD honorable;
if you honor it, not going your own ways
or pursuing your own interests or talking idly —

¹⁴then you shall delight yourself in the LORD,
and I will make you ride on the heights of the earth;
I will feed you with the heritage of Jacob your father,
for the mouth of the LORD has spoken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Shofar' is retained rather than 'trumpet' — the ram's horn carries covenantal and liturgical weight that 'trumpet' flattens.
2. The 'as if' (ke-goi asher) is devastating — they perform the posture of faithfulness while living in contradiction to it.
3. God quotes the people's complaint, then immediately exposes the fraud: their fasting coexists with economic exploitation.
4. The irony: fasting is supposed to humble, but their fast days produce quarreling and violence.
5. God does not reject humility but exposes its counterfeit: the outward posture of bowed head and sackcloth without inner transformation or outward justice.
6. This verse redefines fasting from a ritual of self-denial to an act of liberation. The four actions are all about freeing others from oppression.
7. Four concrete acts of mercy: feeding, housing, clothing, and not hiding from family obligation. Jesus draws on this list in Matthew 25:35-36.
7. 'Your own flesh' (besarkha) — the poor are not strangers but kin. All humanity shares one flesh.
8. The 'then' is conditional — the light breaks forth only when justice replaces empty ritual. The military imagery (vanguard and rear guard) means God's righteousness and glory surround the just community.
9. 'Here I am' (hineni) — the same word Abraham and Moses used in response to God. Now God uses it in response to His people. The reversal is stunning.
10. 'Pour yourself out' (tapeq nafshekha) — not merely giving food but giving your very self. The fast becomes self-giving rather than self-denial.
11. The imagery reverses the fast: those who feed others are themselves fed by God. The 'watered garden' echoes Eden — justice restores paradise.
12. Two magnificent titles are bestowed: 'Repairer of the Breach' and 'Restorer of Streets to Dwell In.' These are vocational names — the just community is known by its restorative work.
13. The Sabbath is reframed as 'delight' (oneg) — not a burden of restriction but a gift of liberation from relentless productivity.
14. The chapter ends where it began — with a word from the LORD's mouth. But now the word is promise rather than rebuke. The 'heritage of Jacob' is the full covenantal inheritance.

59

Summary: *Isaiah 59 begins with one of the most important theological clarifications in the prophetic literature: the problem is not God's inability to save but Israel's sin, which has created a barrier between them and their God. What follows is a devastating catalog of sins — lies, violence, injustice, and moral blindness (vv.2-8). The people then confess their condition in raw communal lament (vv.9-15a). When God looks and sees that there is no justice and no one to intervene, He is appalled — and acts Himself, putting on righteousness as a breastplate and salvation as a helmet (vv.15b-17). The chapter climaxes with the Redeemer coming to Zion and an everlasting covenant of Spirit and word (vv.20-21).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 15b-17 depict God as a divine warrior who, finding no human champion, arms Himself for battle. Paul draws directly on this imagery in Ephesians 6:14-17 ('the armor of God'). Verse 20 names the Redeemer (go'el) who comes to Zion — a text Paul cites in Romans 11:26. Verse 21's covenant of Spirit and words is one of the most forward-looking promises in Isaiah, anticipating Pentecost.*

Translation Friction: *The shift from third-person indictment (vv.2-8) to first-person confession (vv.9-15a) is jarring. We have preserved this shift as it stands in the Hebrew rather than smoothing it, as the prophetic identification with the sinful community is theologically significant — Isaiah confesses as one of the people.*

Connections: *The divine warrior imagery (vv.16-17) is the source for Paul's 'armor of God' in Ephesians 6:14-17 and 1 Thessalonians 5:8. Verse 20's Redeemer (go'el) coming to Zion is cited by Paul in Romans 11:26. Verse 21's Spirit-and-word covenant anticipates Joel 2:28-29 and Acts 2.*

1 Surely the hand of the LORD is not too short to save,
nor His ear too dull to hear.

²But your iniquities have made a separation
between you and your God,
and your sins have hidden His face from you
so that He does not hear.

³For your hands are defiled with blood
and your fingers with iniquity;
your lips have spoken lies;
your tongue mutters wickedness.

⁴No one brings a lawsuit in righteousness;
no one pleads a case in truth.
They trust in emptiness and speak lies;
they conceive mischief and give birth to iniquity.

⁵They hatch adders' eggs
and weave the spider's web.
Whoever eats their eggs dies,
and from one that is crushed, a viper hatches.

⁶Their webs will not serve as clothing;
they cannot cover themselves with their works.
Their works are works of iniquity,
and deeds of violence are in their hands.

⁷Their feet run to evil,
and they rush to shed innocent blood.
Their thoughts are thoughts of iniquity;
desolation and destruction are in their paths.

⁸The way of peace they do not know,
and there is no justice in their paths.
They have made their roads crooked;
no one who treads on them knows peace.

⁹Therefore justice is far from us,
and righteousness does not reach us.
We hope for light, but there is darkness;
for brightness, but we walk in deep gloom.

¹⁰We grope along the wall like the blind;
we grope like those who have no eyes.
We stumble at noon as in the twilight;
among the vigorous we are like the dead.

¹¹We all growl like bears;
we moan and moan like doves.
We hope for justice, but there is none;
for salvation, but it is far from us.

¹²For our transgressions are multiplied before You,
and our sins testify against us;
for our transgressions are with us,
and we know our iniquities:

¹³transgressing and denying the LORD,
turning back from following our God,
speaking oppression and revolt,
conceiving and uttering from the heart words of falsehood.

¹⁴Justice is turned back,
and righteousness stands far away;
for truth has stumbled in the public square,
and uprightness cannot enter.

¹⁵Truth is lacking,
and whoever turns from evil is plundered.
The LORD saw it, and it was evil in His eyes
that there was no justice.

¹⁶He saw that there was no one,
and was appalled that there was no one to intervene.
So His own arm brought Him salvation,
and His own righteousness upheld Him.

¹⁷He put on righteousness as a breastplate
and a helmet of salvation on His head.
He put on garments of vengeance for clothing
and wrapped Himself in zeal as a cloak.

¹⁸According to their deeds, so He will repay:
wrath to His adversaries, repayment to His enemies;
to the coastlands He will render repayment.

¹⁹So they shall fear the name of the LORD from the west
and His glory from the rising of the sun.
For He will come like a rushing stream
driven by the breath of the LORD.

²⁰'And a Redeemer will come to Zion,
to those in Jacob who turn from transgression,'
declares the LORD.

²¹'And as for Me, this is My covenant with them,' says the LORD:
'My Spirit who is upon you,
and My words that I have put in your mouth,
shall not depart from your mouth,
or from the mouth of your offspring,
or from the mouth of your offspring's offspring,'

says the LORD, 'from this time forth and forevermore.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens by eliminating the wrong diagnosis: the problem is not divine impotence. God's hand is not 'shortened' (qatsrah) — He is fully able.
2. Sin as separation — one of the clearest statements in the Hebrew Bible that sin is not merely rule-breaking but relational rupture.
3. The catalog of sin moves from hands to fingers to lips to tongue — progressively more intimate, showing that corruption has penetrated every level of action and speech.
4. The legal system itself is corrupt — the very institution meant to produce justice has become an instrument of injustice.
5. Two vivid metaphors for the products of wickedness: poisonous eggs that kill those who consume them, and webs that offer no real protection.
6. Spider webs as clothing — a perfect image of the inadequacy of human self-righteousness to cover guilt.
7. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 3:15-16 as part of his universal indictment of human sinfulness.
8. Paul also cites this verse in Romans 3:17. The catalog of sins in vv.3-8 becomes a key proof-text for universal human depravity.
9. The voice shifts to first-person plural — the community now confesses. The prophet identifies with the sinners rather than standing apart from them.
10. Blindness at noon — the light is present but they cannot see it. Sin has not extinguished the sun; it has destroyed their vision.
11. Bears and doves — rage and grief. The community oscillates between angry frustration and helpless mourning.
12. The confession is unsparing: sins 'testify against us' like witnesses in court. There is no denial, no excuse.
13. The sin is both vertical (denying God) and horizontal (oppression). The two dimensions of the covenant — love of God and love of neighbor — are both violated.
14. 'Truth has stumbled in the public square' — the place where justice should be most visible is exactly where it has collapsed.
15. The pivot of the chapter: God Himself looks at the situation and is appalled. The phrase 'evil in His eyes' signals divine moral outrage.
16. No human champion exists — so God Himself becomes the warrior. 'His own arm' is a recurring image for divine action without human mediation (cf. 40:10, 51:5, 52:10, 53:1).
17. Paul adapts this imagery in Ephesians 6:14-17, transferring the divine armor to believers. The original wearer is God Himself — what believers put on is God's own equipment.
18. 'Coastlands' (iyyim) represents the distant nations — God's justice is not limited to Israel but extends to the ends of the earth.
19. The Hebrew syntax is debated. We follow the reading that makes YHWH (not the enemy) the subject: He comes like a rushing torrent, propelled by His own Spirit.
20. Paul cites this verse in Romans 11:26 ('The Deliverer will come from Zion'). The go'el is God Himself acting as kinsman-redeemer for Israel.
20. 'Declares the LORD' renders ne'um YHWH per locked formula.
21. The chapter's final verse establishes an everlasting covenant defined by two gifts: Spirit and word. This is one of the clearest Old Testament anticipations of Pentecost — the Spirit permanently dwelling with God's people, generation after generation.

60

Summary: Isaiah 60 is one of the most luminous chapters in all of Scripture — a sustained vision of Zion's future glory. It opens with the command 'Arise, shine, for your light has come!' and unfolds into a panoramic vision of nations streaming to Jerusalem's light, bringing their wealth, their worship, and their children. The chapter transforms every dimension of the city: walls become Salvation, gates become Praise, the sun and moon are replaced by the LORD Himself as everlasting light, and the people — all righteous — inherit the land forever.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter is the theological heart of Isaiah's eschatological vision. Verse 1 is among the most recognized lines in the Hebrew Bible. The imagery of nations bringing gifts (vv.5-7) is traditionally connected to the Magi's visit in Matthew 2. Verses 19-20 — the LORD replacing sun and moon — are directly echoed in Revelation 21:23 and 22:5. The entire chapter reads as a preview of the New Jerusalem.

Translation Friction: *The tension between historical Jerusalem and eschatological Zion is acute throughout. We have rendered the text to honor both dimensions: this is a real city with real gates and walls, yet the language consistently transcends any historical fulfillment.*

Connections: *Verse 1's 'Arise, shine' echoes through Christian hymnody and Advent liturgy. The nations bringing wealth (vv.5-7) connects to the Magi narrative (Matt 2:1-12). Verses 19-20 are the source for Revelation 21:23 and 22:5 (no need for sun — the Lamb is the light). Verse 21's 'all righteous' anticipates 2 Peter 3:13's 'new heavens and new earth in which righteousness dwells.'*

¹Arise, shine, for your light has come,
and the glory of the LORD has risen upon you!

²For behold, darkness shall cover the earth,
and thick darkness the peoples;
but the LORD will arise upon you,
and His glory will be seen upon you.

³And nations shall come to your light,
and kings to the brightness of your dawn.

⁴Lift up your eyes all around and see:
they all gather together; they come to you.
Your sons shall come from afar,
and your daughters shall be carried on the hip.

⁵Then you shall see and be radiant;
your heart shall thrill and overflow,
for the abundance of the sea shall be turned to you,
the wealth of the nations shall come to you.

⁶A multitude of camels shall cover you,
the young camels of Midian and Ephah;
all those from Sheba shall come.
They shall bring gold and frankincense
and shall proclaim the praises of the LORD.

⁷All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered to you;
the rams of Nebaioth shall serve you.
They shall come up with acceptance on My altar,
and I will glorify My glorious house.

⁸Who are these that fly like a cloud,
like doves to their nesting places?

⁹Surely the coastlands shall wait for Me,
and the ships of Tarshish first,
to bring your children from afar,
their silver and gold with them,
for the name of the LORD your God,
and for the Holy One of Israel,
because He has glorified you.

¹⁰Foreigners shall build up your walls,
and their kings shall serve you;
for in My wrath I struck you,
but in My favor I have had mercy on you.

¹¹Your gates shall be open continually;
day and night they shall not be shut,
that the wealth of the nations may be brought to you,
with their kings led in procession.

¹²For the nation and kingdom
that will not serve you shall perish;
those nations shall be utterly laid waste.

¹³The glory of Lebanon shall come to you —
the cypress, the plane tree, and the pine together —
to beautify the place of My sanctuary,
and I will make the place of My feet glorious.

¹⁴The children of those who afflicted you
shall come bending low to you,
and all who despised you
shall bow down at your feet.
They shall call you the City of the LORD,
the Zion of the Holy One of Israel.

¹⁵Whereas you have been forsaken and hated,
with no one passing through,
I will make you majestic forever,
a joy from age to age.

¹⁶You shall nurse at the breast of nations
and be nursed at the breast of kings,
and you shall know that I, the LORD, am your Savior
and your Redeemer, the Mighty One of Jacob.

¹⁷Instead of bronze I will bring gold,
and instead of iron I will bring silver;
instead of wood, bronze,
and instead of stones, iron.
I will make your overseers peace
and your taskmasters righteousness.

¹⁸Violence shall no more be heard in your land,
devastation or destruction within your borders.
You shall call your walls Salvation
and your gates Praise.

¹⁹The sun shall no longer be your light by day,
nor shall the moon give you light by its brightness;
but the LORD will be your everlasting light,
and your God will be your glory.

²⁰Your sun shall no more go down,
and your moon shall not withdraw;
for the LORD will be your everlasting light,
and your days of mourning shall be ended.

²¹Your people shall all be righteous;
they shall possess the land forever,
the branch of My planting,
the work of My hands,
that I may be glorified.

²²The least one shall become a clan,
and the smallest a mighty nation.
I am the LORD;
in its time I will hasten it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The imperatives are feminine singular — addressed to Zion as a woman. The 'light' is not her own; it has 'come' to her from God.
2. The contrast is absolute: universal darkness versus Zion's light. The light is not general illumination but the kabod (glory) of YHWH Himself.
3. The pilgrimage of nations to Zion — a theme running through Isaiah (2:2-4, 11:10, 49:6) — reaches its fullest expression here.
4. 'Carried on the hip' — the image of small children being carried home. Zion's scattered children return not as soldiers but as beloved infants.
5. Zion's emotional response: seeing, radiance, a heart that both trembles (pachad) and expands (rachab). Joy and awe coexist.
6. Gold and frankincense from Sheba — the traditional connection to the Magi in Matthew 2:11 ('gold, frankincense, and myrrh'). Matthew sees Jesus' birth as the fulfillment of this very passage.
7. Kedar and Nebaioth are sons of Ishmael (Gen 25:13) — the Ishmaelite nations bringing offerings to YHWH's altar. The inclusion is deliberate and stunning.
8. A moment of wonder — Zion looks up and sees approaching crowds so vast they look like clouds, so swift they look like doves homing.
9. 'The Holy One of Israel' — Isaiah's signature title for God, rendered in full per project convention.
9. Ships of Tarshish represent the most distant maritime commerce — even the farthest trading vessels serve Zion's restoration.
10. The reversal: foreigners who once destroyed Jerusalem's walls will rebuild them. Kings who once conquered will serve.
11. Gates perpetually open — a city with no fear of attack. Revelation 21:25 directly echoes this verse: 'its gates will never be shut by day — and there will be no night there.'
12. A sobering counterpoint to the vision of inclusion: the pilgrimage to Zion is not optional. Refusal to participate in God's new order results in destruction.
13. Lebanon's famous cedars and timber furnished Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 5). Now they furnish the eschatological sanctuary.
14. 'The Zion of the Holy One of Israel' — the city receives its ultimate name, defined not by its geography but by whose city it is.
15. The reversal formula: 'whereas... I will make.' Every aspect of Zion's humiliation is overturned.
16. 'Your Redeemer' — go'el rendered as capitalized 'Redeemer' per project convention. Three divine titles stack: LORD, Savior, Redeemer.
17. Every material is upgraded one tier. But the climactic substitution is not material: oppressive taskmasters are replaced by peace and righteousness as governing principles.

- 18.** The renaming of architecture: walls become 'Salvation' (Yeshuah), gates become 'Praise' (Tehillah). The city's very structure proclaims its theological identity.
- 19.** Revelation 21:23 directly echoes this verse: 'The city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God gives it light, and its lamp is the Lamb.'
- 20.** 'Your days of mourning shall be ended' — the final word of v.20 is not about light but about grief. The everlasting light means the permanent end of sorrow.
- 21.** 'All righteous' — not by their own merit but because they are God's planting (matta'i) and God's handiwork (ma'aseh yadai). Their righteousness is derivative, not original.
- 22.** The chapter's final words hold two seemingly contradictory ideas: 'in its time' (be'ittah — at the appointed moment) and 'I will hasten it' (achishennah — I will speed it up). God's timing is both patient and urgent.

61

Summary: *Isaiah 61 is the chapter Jesus chose to announce His ministry. In the synagogue at Nazareth, He read verses 1-2a aloud, then closed the scroll and said, "Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing" (Luke 4:21). The speaker — anointed by the Spirit of the Lord GOD — proclaims good news to the poor, liberty to captives, comfort to mourners, and the year of the LORD's favor. The anointed one transforms mourning into gladness, ashes into beauty, and a spirit of heaviness into a garment of praise. The restored people become 'oaks of righteousness, the planting of the LORD,' and rebuild what was ruined.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the single most important messianic self-identification text in the Gospels. When Jesus stops reading mid-sentence — at 'the year of the LORD's favor' — and does not read 'the day of vengeance of our God,' the omission is thunderous. His first coming is mercy; judgment awaits. The identity of the speaker in the original context is debated (the prophet? the Servant? the Messiah?), but Jesus resolves the ambiguity by claiming the text for Himself.*

Translation Friction: *The speaker's identity in the Hebrew context is genuinely ambiguous — is this the prophet Isaiah, the Servant of chapters 42-53, or a distinct messianic figure? We have rendered the text to preserve this productive ambiguity rather than resolving it, since the New Testament resolution (Jesus in Luke 4) is best encountered as revelation rather than assumption.*

Connections: *Verses 1-2 are quoted by Jesus in Luke 4:18-21 as His inaugural messianic declaration. The 'year of the LORD's favor' (v.2) connects to the Jubilee legislation of Leviticus 25. 'Oaks of righteousness' (v.3) echoes the 'branch of My planting' in 60:21. The priestly identity of the people (v.6) anticipates 1 Peter 2:9 ('a royal priesthood'). The bridegroom/bride imagery (v.10) connects forward to Revelation 19:7-8 and 21:2.*

¹The Spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me,
because the LORD has anointed me
to bring good news to the poor.
He has sent me to bind up the brokenhearted,
to proclaim liberty to the captives
and the opening of the eyes to those who are bound,

²to proclaim the year of the LORD's favor
and the day of vengeance of our God;
to comfort all who mourn,

³to grant to those who mourn in Zion —
to give them a crown of beauty instead of ashes,
the oil of gladness instead of mourning,
the garment of praise instead of a spirit of heaviness.
They shall be called oaks of righteousness,

the planting of the LORD,
that He may be glorified.

⁴They shall build up the ancient ruins;
they shall raise up the former desolations;
they shall repair the ruined cities,
the devastations of many generations.

⁵Strangers shall stand and tend your flocks,
and foreigners shall be your plowmen
and your vinedressers.

⁶But you shall be called priests of the LORD;
they shall speak of you as ministers of our God.
You shall eat the wealth of the nations,
and in their glory you shall boast.

⁷Instead of your shame there shall be a double portion;
instead of dishonor they shall rejoice in their lot.
Therefore in their land they shall possess a double portion;
everlasting joy shall be theirs.

⁸For I the LORD love justice;
I hate robbery and wrongdoing.
I will faithfully give them their recompense,
and I will make an everlasting covenant with them.

⁹Their offspring shall be known among the nations,
and their descendants among the peoples.
All who see them shall acknowledge them,
that they are offspring the LORD has blessed.

¹⁰I will greatly rejoice in the LORD;
my soul shall exult in my God,
for He has clothed me with garments of salvation;
He has wrapped me in a robe of righteousness,
as a bridegroom adorns himself like a priest with a turban,
and as a bride adorns herself with her jewels.

¹¹For as the earth brings forth its sprouts,
and as a garden causes what is sown in it to spring up,
so the Lord GOD will cause righteousness and praise
to spring up before all the nations.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jesus reads this verse aloud in the Nazareth synagogue (Luke 4:18). The anointing by the Spirit identifies the speaker as the Messiah (mashiach = anointed one).
1. 'Opening of the eyes' (peqach-qoach) — the Hebrew is ambiguous: it can mean 'opening of eyes' (to the blind) or 'opening wide' (of prison doors). Luke's Greek resolves it as sight for the blind, but we preserve both possibilities.

2. Jesus stops reading mid-verse — after 'the year of the LORD's favor' — and closes the scroll (Luke 4:20). The 'day of vengeance' is deliberately omitted from His first-coming announcement.
2. The juxtaposition of 'year of favor' (an entire year) and 'day of vengeance' (a single day) suggests that mercy is God's extended posture; judgment is His brief, reluctant act.
3. Three exchanges define the transformation: beauty for ashes, gladness for mourning, praise for heaviness. Each replaces the posture of grief with the posture of celebration.
3. 'Oaks of righteousness' (eilei hatsedeq) — massive, deep-rooted trees. The mourners become monuments of God's faithfulness.
4. The restored people become restorers. The pattern of Isaiah 58:12 continues: those who have received comfort become agents of reconstruction.
5. The people are freed from agricultural labor so they can fulfill their priestly vocation (v.6). This is not exploitation of foreigners but a division of labor in the eschatological community.
6. The entire people become priests — not just the Levitical line. This democratization of the priesthood is picked up in 1 Peter 2:9 ('a royal priesthood') and Revelation 1:6 ('a kingdom of priests').
7. 'Double portion' (mishneh) — the inheritance of the firstborn (Deut 21:17). What was taken in shame is returned with interest, and Israel is restored to firstborn status.
8. God's character — lover of justice, hater of robbery — is the foundation of the everlasting covenant. The covenant is rooted in God's moral nature, not merely His sovereign will.
9. The reversal is public and visible: the nations who once despised Israel will look at the restored community and recognize the unmistakable mark of divine blessing.
10. The speaker shifts — possibly Zion herself now responds in joy. The clothing imagery reverses the ashes and heaviness of v.3: now the garments are salvation and righteousness.
10. The bridegroom 'adorns himself like a priest' (yekhahen pe'er) — the wedding imagery merges with priestly imagery. Marriage and worship become one celebration.
11. The chapter ends with an agricultural metaphor of inevitability: righteousness and praise will spring up as certainly as seeds germinate. This is not wishful thinking but the certainty of divine planting (cf. v.3, 'the planting of the LORD').

62

Summary: *Isaiah 62 is a chapter of relentless advocacy — the speaker (whether the prophet, the Messiah, or God Himself) refuses to be silent until Zion's vindication shines like a blazing torch. The city receives new names: no longer 'Forsaken' (Azuwah) or 'Desolate' (Shemamah) but 'My Delight Is in Her' (Hephzibah) and 'Married' (Beulah). Watchmen are posted on Jerusalem's walls with instructions never to rest and never to let God rest until He establishes Jerusalem as the praise of the earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The naming theology of this chapter is extraordinary. To rename something in the ancient Near East was to redefine its identity and destiny. The shift from 'Forsaken' to 'Hephzibah' is not cosmetic but ontological — Zion's very being changes. The image of watchmen who give God no rest (v.7) is one of the boldest depictions of intercessory prayer in Scripture — humans are authorized to be relentless with God.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the speaker in verse 1 is debated: is it the prophet, the Servant/Messiah from chapter 61, or God Himself? We have left the ambiguity intact, as the urgency of the speech transcends the question of its source.*

Connections: *The Hephzibah name (v.4) echoes 2 Kings 21:1, where Hephzibah is the name of King Hezekiah's wife and Manasseh's mother. The watchmen imagery (vv.6-7) connects to Ezekiel 3:17 and 33:7. The 'highway' (v.10) echoes Isaiah 40:3 and 57:14. The banner raised for the peoples (v.10) connects to Isaiah 11:10-12.*

‡For Zion's sake I will not keep silent,
and for Jerusalem's sake I will not rest,
until her righteousness goes forth like brightness
and her salvation like a blazing torch.

²The nations shall see your righteousness,
and all kings your glory,
and you shall be called by a new name
that the mouth of the LORD will bestow.

³You shall be a crown of beauty in the hand of the LORD,
and a royal diadem in the hand of your God.

⁴You shall no longer be called Forsaken,
and your land shall no longer be called Desolate;
but you shall be called Hephzibah — 'My Delight Is in Her' —
and your land Beulah — 'Married' —
for the LORD delights in you,
and your land shall be married.

⁵For as a young man marries a young woman,
so shall your sons marry you;
and as the bridegroom rejoices over the bride,
so shall your God rejoice over you.

⁶On your walls, O Jerusalem,
I have posted watchmen;
all day and all night
they shall never be silent.
You who remind the LORD,
take no rest,

⁷and give Him no rest
until He establishes Jerusalem
and makes her the praise of the earth.

⁸The LORD has sworn by His right hand
and by His mighty arm:
'I will not again give your grain
as food for your enemies,
and foreigners shall not drink your new wine
for which you have labored.'

⁹But those who gather it shall eat it
and praise the LORD,
and those who harvest it shall drink it
in the courts of My sanctuary.

¹⁰Go through, go through the gates!
Prepare the way for the people!
Build up, build up the highway!
Clear it of stones!
Raise a banner over the peoples!

¹¹Behold, the LORD has proclaimed
to the end of the earth:
'Say to the daughter of Zion,
"Behold, your salvation comes!
Behold, His reward is with Him,
and His recompense before Him."

¹²And they shall be called the Holy People,
the Redeemed of the LORD;
and you shall be called Sought Out,
a City Not Forsaken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The passionate refusal to be silent mirrors God's own advocacy for His people. Whether the speaker is prophet or Messiah, the urgency is divine in origin.
2. 'A new name that the mouth of the LORD will bestow' — the name comes from God's own mouth. It is not chosen by the city or by the nations but spoken into existence by divine decree.
3. Zion is not wearing the crown — she is the crown. God holds her in His hand as His own ornament. The image reverses all humiliation: the formerly despised city is God's jewel.
4. The renaming is a reversal of exile identity. 'Forsaken' (Azuvah) and 'Desolate' (Shemamah) were not just descriptions but names — identities internalized through decades of ruin. God speaks new names over the old ones.
4. Hephzibah was historically the name of Hezekiah's wife (2 Kings 21:1), creating a personal resonance with Judah's royal history.
5. The final line is one of the most tender in Isaiah: God rejoices over Zion as a bridegroom over his bride. Divine emotion — not merely divine will — is on full display.
6. These watchmen are not military sentinels but intercessors — their 'watching' is prayer. They are called 'those who remind the LORD' (hamazkirim et YHWH), a stunning vocation: reminding God of His promises.
7. 'Give Him no rest' — the boldness is breathtaking. God Himself authorizes His people to be relentless in prayer, to refuse to let Him rest until the promise is fulfilled. This is the theology of persistent intercession.
8. God swears an oath — the strongest possible assurance. He swears by His own right hand, since there is no one greater to swear by (cf. Heb 6:13).
9. The promise is simple and profound: you will eat what you grow. After centuries of foreign powers confiscating harvests, this is restoration of the most basic dignity.
10. The doubled imperatives create urgency: go through, go through! Build up, build up! This echoes the highway language of 40:3 and 57:14 — the great processional road for God's returning people.
11. Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15 echo this verse when Jesus enters Jerusalem: 'Say to the daughter of Zion, Behold, your king is coming.' The salvation that 'comes' is not an abstraction but a person arriving.
12. Four final names for the restored community: Holy People, Redeemed of the LORD, Sought Out, City Not Forsaken. Each name directly reverses the exile condition. 'Not Forsaken' (lo ne'ezavah) answers the 'Forsaken' (Azuvah) of verse 4 — the old name is not merely replaced but explicitly negated.

63

Summary: *Isaiah 63 divides sharply into two movements. The first (vv.1-6) presents the Divine Warrior returning from Edom with garments stained crimson, having trodden the winepress of judgment alone. The second (vv.7-19) pivots to a communal prayer of extraordinary tenderness, recalling the faithful love (chesed) and compassion of the LORD in the days of Moses, lamenting the present hardness of heart, and pleading for the Father-Redeemer to look down from heaven and act. Together these movements hold divine wrath and divine tenderness in a single chapter — the same God who tramples Edom is the Father whose people cry, 'You, LORD, are our Father, our Redeemer from of old.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 16 contains one of the most startling declarations in the Hebrew Bible: 'You, LORD, are our Father — though Abraham does not know us and Israel does not acknowledge us.' The appeal bypasses the patriarchs entirely and goes directly to God as Father-Redeemer (go'el). This is covenant theology stripped to its most radical foundation: when every human intermediary fails, God's fatherhood remains. The winepress imagery of verses 1-6 is taken up in Revelation 19:13-15, where the returning Christ wears a robe dipped in blood.*

Translation Friction: *We have rendered go'el as 'Redeemer' (capitalized) when applied to God, consistent with our term register. The phrase 'hardened our hearts' (v.17) presents a theological tension: Israel asks God why He has caused their wandering. We preserve this tension without softening it, since the Hebrew (tasheh, 'cause to wander'; taqshiach, 'harden') unambiguously attributes the action to God, though within the covenantal framework of judgment for disobedience.*

Connections: *The winepress imagery (vv.1-6) reappears in Revelation 14:19-20 and 19:13-15. Verse 10 ('they rebelled and grieved His Holy Spirit') is one of the clearest Old Testament references to the personal nature of the Spirit, cited by Paul in Ephesians 4:30. The Father-Redeemer title (v.16) anticipates Jesus' teaching on God as Father (Matthew 6:9). The communal lament of vv.7-19 flows directly into chapter 64 without a natural break.*

¹Who is this coming from Edom,
in crimson garments from Bozrah —
this one splendid in His apparel,
striding in the greatness of His strength?
"It is I, who speak in righteousness,
mighty to save."

²Why is Your apparel red,
and Your garments like one who treads in the winepress?

³"I have trodden the winepress alone,
and from the peoples no one was with Me.
I trampled them in My anger
and trod them down in My wrath;
their lifeblood spattered on My garments,
and I stained all My clothing."

⁴"For the day of vengeance was in My heart,
and the year of My redeemed had come."

⁵"I looked, but there was no one to help;
I was appalled that no one upheld Me.
So My own arm brought salvation,
and My wrath — it sustained Me."

⁶"I trampled the peoples in My anger
and made them stagger in My wrath,
and I poured out their lifeblood on the earth."

⁷I will recount the faithful love of the LORD,
the praiseworthy deeds of the LORD,
according to all that the LORD has granted us —
the great goodness to the house of Israel
that He granted them according to His compassion
and according to the abundance of His faithful love.

⁸For He said, "Surely they are My people,
children who will not deal falsely."
And so He became their Savior.

⁹In all their affliction He was afflicted,
and the angel of His presence saved them.
In His love and in His compassion He redeemed them;
He lifted them up and carried them
all the days of old.

¹⁰But they rebelled
and grieved His Holy Spirit.
So He turned to become their enemy;
He Himself fought against them.

¹¹Then he remembered the days of old,
of Moses and his people.
Where is He who brought them up out of the sea
with the shepherds of His flock?
Where is He who put His Holy Spirit
in their midst?

¹²Who caused His glorious arm
to go at the right hand of Moses,
who divided the waters before them
to make for Himself an everlasting name?

¹³Who led them through the depths?
Like a horse in the wilderness,
they did not stumble.

¹⁴As cattle go down into the valley,
the Spirit of the LORD gave them rest.
So You led Your people,
to make for Yourself a glorious name.

¹⁵Look down from heaven and see,
from Your holy and glorious dwelling.

Where are Your zeal and Your mighty deeds?
The yearning of Your heart and Your compassion —
are they withheld from me?

¹⁶For You are our Father,
though Abraham does not know us
and Israel does not acknowledge us.
You, LORD, are our Father;
our Redeemer from of old is Your name.

¹⁷Why, LORD, do You make us wander from Your ways
and harden our hearts so that we do not fear You?
Return, for the sake of Your servants,
the tribes of Your inheritance.

¹⁸Your holy people possessed it but a little while;
our adversaries have trampled Your sanctuary.

¹⁹We have become like those over whom You have never ruled,
like those not called by Your name.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a dramatic dialogue: a watchman sees a figure approaching from the southeast and demands identification. The answer comes from God Himself. Edom (from the root *adom*, 'red') and Bozrah ('grape-gathering') set up the winepress metaphor of the following verses. The crimson garments are not royal robes but stained with the blood of judgment.
2. The watchman presses the question. The redness (*adom*) echoes 'Edom' from verse 1 — a deliberate wordplay. The winepress (*gat*) image becomes the controlling metaphor for divine judgment throughout this passage.
3. The loneliness of divine judgment is emphasized: 'alone' and 'no one was with Me.' No human army assisted; this is purely God's work. The lifeblood (*nitsach*) spattering on garments creates the crimson appearance from verse 1. Revelation 19:13-15 draws directly on this imagery for Christ's return.
4. Vengeance (*naqam*) and redemption (*ge'ulah*) are held in the same sentence — the day of wrath for the enemy is the year of redemption for God's people. Compare Isaiah 61:2, 'the day of vengeance of our God.'
5. The repeated theme of divine solitude continues. God looked for allies and found none. His own arm (*zero'i*) achieved the victory — the same language as 59:16, forming a deliberate echo within Third Isaiah. Salvation is accomplished by God alone.
6. The winepress vision concludes. The imagery is deliberately violent — this is not sanitized judgment but the full weight of divine wrath against those who oppressed God's redeemed. The section ends abruptly, and the tone shifts entirely in verse 7.
7. The tone shifts dramatically from winepress violence to tender recollection. The speaker (likely the prophet on behalf of the community) begins recounting the LORD's past faithfulness. The word *chesed* appears twice, forming an *inclusio* around the verse — faithful love is both the first and last word of Israel's testimony.
8. God's expectation is stated in His own words: 'children who will not deal falsely' (*lo yeshaqeru*). The irony is painful — the narrative will immediately show that they did deal falsely. Yet 'He became their Savior' (*moshi'a*) nonetheless. The verb is past tense: He already acted as Savior before they proved unfaithful.
9. The Qere reading (*lo*, 'to him') is preferred over the Ketiv (*lo*, 'not'), yielding 'He was afflicted' rather than 'He was not afflicted.' The angel of His presence (*mal'akh panav*) is the same figure who led Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 23:20-23, 33:14). The verse is a compressed theology of the Exodus.
10. The tragic pivot of the passage: the same people God carried and redeemed (v.9) now rebel and grieve His Spirit. The consequence is devastating — God becomes their enemy (*oyev*). The verb *itsvu* ('grieved') implies deep personal pain, not mere displeasure.
11. The subject of 'remembered' is ambiguous — it may be God remembering or the people remembering. Either way, memory turns back to the Exodus. The questions ('Where is He?') become the refrain of the lament: God's past acts make His present absence unbearable.

12. The 'glorious arm' (zero'a tifarto) is God's own arm working through Moses — the human leader is merely the instrument. The dividing of the waters recalls the Red Sea (Exodus 14) and the Jordan (Joshua 3). God's motive is stated plainly: 'to make for Himself an everlasting name' — redemption serves God's glory.
13. The image of a horse running through open desert without stumbling captures the ease with which God led Israel through the Sea. What should have been impossible (crossing the deep) was as effortless as a horse galloping on flat ground.
14. The image shifts from horse (v.13) to cattle descending into a valley for rest. The Spirit of the LORD (ruach YHWH) provides the rest — connecting to the Holy Spirit references in verses 10-11. God's purpose in leading Israel remains the same: to glorify His own name.
15. The prayer becomes direct petition. 'Look down' (habbet) is an imperative — the people command God to pay attention. The questions are anguished: 'Where are Your zeal and mighty deeds?' The Hebrew hamon me'eka ('yearning of Your heart,' literally 'the roaring of Your innards') attributes visceral emotion to God. The final question — 'are they withheld?' (hit'appaku) — asks whether God is deliberately restraining His compassion.
16. This is one of the most theologically dense verses in Isaiah. The patriarchs are invoked only to be set aside: Abraham cannot help, Jacob (Israel) does not recognize them. Only God remains as Father and Redeemer. The verse establishes that Israel's identity rests not on Abrahamic descent but on divine relationship. Jesus' opponents in John 8:39-44 encounter this same argument.
17. The boldest question in the prayer: 'Why do You make us wander... and harden our hearts?' The Hebrew verbs (tat'enu, 'cause to wander'; taqshiach, 'harden') explicitly attribute Israel's spiritual failure to God's action. This is not denial of human responsibility but the anguished recognition that judicial hardening has been imposed as consequence of prior rebellion (v.10). The plea 'return' (shuv) asks God to reverse course.
18. The sanctuary's desolation is both historical (Babylonian destruction, 586 BC) and ongoing in the community's experience. The brevity of possession ('but a little while') intensifies the grief — the inheritance was barely enjoyed before it was lost.
19. The chapter ends on a note of desolation that leads directly into the great cry of 64:1. Israel feels indistinguishable from the nations — as if the covenant had never been made. This is the nadir of the lament: to be God's people and yet feel unclaimed. The prayer continues without pause into chapter 64.

64

Summary: *Isaiah 64 continues the communal lament that began in 63:7 without a natural break. The chapter opens with the most desperate prayer in the prophetic literature: 'Oh, that You would rend the heavens and come down!' The community confesses that all its righteousness is like a polluted garment, that sin has carried them away like wind, and that no one stirs himself to take hold of God. Yet the prayer pivots on a single image of astonishing trust: 'We are the clay, and You are our potter; we are all the work of Your hand.' The chapter closes with a question that hangs unanswered: 'Will You restrain Yourself, LORD? Will You keep silent and afflict us so severely?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 4 contains a statement Paul quotes in 1 Corinthians 2:9: 'No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who wait for Him.' Verse 6 — 'all our righteous acts are like a polluted garment' — is among the most frequently cited Old Testament texts in Christian theology, establishing that human merit cannot approach divine holiness. The potter-clay metaphor (v.8) anchors Paul's argument in Romans 9:20-21.*

Translation Friction: *We render beged iddim (v.6) as 'polluted garment' rather than 'filthy rags' (KJV) to preserve the Hebrew sense of ritual impurity without the archaic English. The term refers specifically to a garment rendered ceremonially unclean. We have maintained the Hebrew chapter division (which places 'Rend the heavens' at 63:19b in MT) but follow the English versification for reader accessibility.*

Connections: *The 'rend the heavens' cry (v.1) finds its answer at Jesus' baptism, where the heavens are 'torn open' (Mark 1:10 — schizo, the same verb the LXX uses for Isaiah's qara'). The polluted-garment theology (v.6) connects to Zechariah 3:3-5 (Joshua's filthy garments replaced) and Revelation 19:8 (fine linen given to the saints). The potter-clay image (v.8) echoes Jeremiah 18:1-6 and is developed by Paul in Romans 9:20-21.*

¡Oh, that You would rend the heavens and come down,
that the mountains would quake at Your presence!

²As fire kindles brushwood,
as fire causes water to boil —
come, to make Your name known to Your adversaries,
that the nations may tremble at Your presence!

³When You did awesome things we did not expect,
You came down;
the mountains quaked at Your presence.

⁴From of old no one has heard,
no ear has perceived,
no eye has seen a God besides You,
who acts on behalf of those who wait for Him.

⁵You meet the one who joyfully does righteousness,
those who remember You in Your ways.
But You were angry, and we sinned;
in our sins we have continued long.
Can we still be saved?

⁶We have all become like one who is unclean,
and all our righteous deeds are like a polluted garment.
We all wither like a leaf,
and our iniquities carry us away like the wind.

⁷There is no one who calls on Your name,
who rouses himself to take hold of You.
For You have hidden Your face from us
and have delivered us into the hand of our iniquities.

⁸But now, LORD, You are our Father;
we are the clay, and You are our potter.
We are all the work of Your hand.

⁹Do not be angry beyond measure, LORD,
and do not remember iniquity forever.
Behold — please look — we are all Your people!

¹⁰Your holy cities have become a wilderness;
Zion has become a wilderness,
Jerusalem a desolation.

¹¹Our holy and beautiful house,
where our fathers praised You,
has been burned with fire,
and all our treasured places lie in ruins.

¹²After all this, will You restrain Yourself, LORD?
Will You keep silent and afflict us beyond measure?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse continues directly from the lament of 63:19 — the prayer has built to a crescendo. 'Rend' (qara') is violent language: not open, not part, but tear apart, as one tears a garment in grief. The community wants God to break through the barrier between heaven and earth. Mark 1:10 uses the same verb (schizo) when the heavens are 'torn open' at Jesus' baptism — the prayer of Isaiah 64:1 is answered at the Jordan.
2. The imagery piles up: fire on dry brush, water boiling — both images of irresistible, transformative power. The purpose of the theophany is not spectacle but revelation: 'to make Your name known.' The nations' trembling echoes the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16-18).
3. Memory and petition merge: the community recalls that God once did come down (at Sinai, at the Exodus) and the mountains did tremble. The 'awesome things we did not expect' acknowledges that God's interventions exceed human anticipation — a theme Paul develops in 1 Corinthians 2:9.
4. This is the verse Paul quotes (freely, from the LXX) in 1 Corinthians 2:9: 'No eye has seen, no ear has heard, no mind has conceived what God has prepared for those who love him.' In its original context, the statement grounds the plea of verses 1-3: the God they are calling upon is utterly unique — no other god acts for those who wait. The word mechakkeh ('wait') implies patient, expectant trust.
5. The verse pivots from God's character (He meets the righteous joyfully) to Israel's condition (they sinned under His anger). The final question — 'Can we still be saved?' — is our rendering of the notoriously difficult *venivvashe'a*, which could be declarative ('we shall be saved') or interrogative. The context of lament favors the anguished question.
6. *Beged iddim* ('polluted garment') refers to a garment rendered ceremonially unclean — the language of Levitical impurity applied to moral effort. The double image (unclean person + unclean garment) makes the point inescapable: neither the worshiper nor the worship is acceptable. The leaf and wind images add transience to impurity — sin not only defiles but dissolves.
7. The confession deepens: not only are their righteous deeds polluted, but no one even tries to pray. 'Rouses himself to take hold of You' (*mit'orer lehachaziq bakh*) suggests the spiritual lethargy that follows divine abandonment. The hidden face (*hester panim*) is the ultimate theological crisis — God has withdrawn His presence. The final phrase is devastating: God has handed them over not to enemies but to their own sins.
8. After the devastating confession of verses 5-7, the prayer makes its most audacious move: 'But now' (*ve'attah*) signals a pivot from despair to appeal. The basis of hope is not Israel's worthiness but God's identity as Father and potter. The clay cannot unmake itself, but neither can the potter abandon what his hands have shaped. Paul develops this image in Romans 9:20-21; Jeremiah 18:1-6 provides the prophetic parallel.
9. The prayer moves from theological argument (You are our potter) to direct petition (do not be angry). The double imperative 'behold — please look' (*hen habbet-na'*) is urgent, almost desperate. The final appeal — 'we are all Your people' — is the covenant claim stripped bare: whatever we have done, we still belong to You.
10. The general ('holy cities') narrows to the specific (Zion, Jerusalem). The repetition of 'wilderness' (*midbar*) is deliberate — the promised land has reverted to the pre-settlement condition. This is not merely military defeat but theological reversal: the holy cities are unholy, and the garden has become desert.
11. The Temple is not named directly but described by what it meant: 'our holy and beautiful house, where our fathers praised You.' The communal memory of worship makes the destruction personal. 'All our treasured places' (*kol machamadenu*) extends the grief beyond the Temple to every cherished site. The Hebrew past tense (*hayah*) confirms accomplished destruction.
12. The lament ends not with resolution but with a raw question — the prayer that began in 63:7 concludes with no divine answer recorded. 'Will You restrain Yourself?' (*tit'appaq*) echoes 63:15, where they asked if God's compassion was 'withheld.' The silence of God is the chapter's final and most painful theme. The answer will come — but not until chapter 65.

65

Summary: Isaiah 65 is God's answer to the anguished prayer of chapters 63-64. The chapter begins with a stunning reversal: God was found by those who did not seek Him and rejected by those who should have known Him. Verses 1-7 indict the rebellious — those who provoke God with pagan rituals, eat forbidden food, and claim a hollow holiness. Verses 8-16 divide Israel into two groups: the faithful servants who will inherit the land, and the apostates who will be cut off. Then, in verses 17-25, the vision explodes into the new heavens and new earth — a creation so radically renewed that the former things will not even be remembered. Infant death vanishes, labor produces lasting fruit, the wolf and lamb feed together, and God answers before His people call.

What Makes This Remarkable: The new heavens and new earth (vv.17-25) is one of the most far-reaching eschatological visions in Scripture, taken up directly in Revelation 21:1-4. Verse 24 — 'Before they call I will answer; while they are still speaking I will hear' — describes an intimacy between God and His people so complete that prayer and answer become simultaneous. The wolf-and-lamb imagery (v.25) echoes Isaiah 11:6-9, forming an inclusio across the entire book.

Translation Friction: We render 'new heavens and a new earth' (v.17) preserving the Hebrew construction (shamayim chadashim va'arets chadashah) rather than importing the Revelation 21 phrasing backward into the text. The 'servants' language in verses 8-16 raises questions about whether the division is ethnic or spiritual; we let the text speak without resolving the tension. The 'youth dying at a hundred' (v.20) is rendered to preserve its paradoxical character — longevity so extreme that dying at a hundred is considered premature.

Connections: Verse 1 is quoted by Paul in Romans 10:20 to describe God's outreach to the Gentiles. The new heavens and new earth (v.17) reappears in 2 Peter 3:13 and Revelation 21:1. The wolf-and-lamb vision (v.25) echoes Isaiah 11:6-9 and anticipates Romans 8:19-22 (creation's liberation from bondage). 'Before they call I will answer' (v.24) is the eschatological fulfillment of the prayer access promised in Isaiah 58:9.

¹"I let Myself be sought by those who did not ask;
I let Myself be found by those who did not seek Me.
I said, 'Here I am! Here I am!'
to a nation that did not call on My name."

²"I spread out My hands all day long
to a rebellious people
who walk in a way that is not good,
following their own devices —"

³"a people who provoke Me to My face continually,
who sacrifice in gardens
and burn incense on bricks —"

⁴"who sit among the graves
and spend the night in secret places,
who eat the flesh of swine,
with broth of abominable things in their vessels —"

⁵"who say, 'Keep to yourself — do not come near me,
for I am too holy for you!'
These are smoke in My nostrils,
a fire that burns all day long."

⁶"Behold, it is written before Me:
I will not keep silent;
I will repay — I will repay into their lap —"

⁷"your iniquities and the iniquities of your fathers together,"
says the LORD.
"Because they burned incense on the mountains
and mocked Me on the hills,
I will measure into their lap
the full payment for their former deeds."

⁸This is what the LORD says:
"As the new wine is found in the cluster,
and someone says, 'Do not destroy it,
for there is a blessing in it' —"

so I will do for the sake of My servants;
I will not destroy them all."

⁹"I will bring forth offspring from Jacob,
and from Judah an heir of My mountains.
My chosen ones shall possess it,
and My servants shall dwell there."

¹⁰"Sharon shall become a pasture for flocks,
and the Valley of Achor a resting place for herds,
for My people who have sought Me."

¹¹"But you who forsake the LORD,
who forget My holy mountain,
who set a table for Fortune
and fill cups of mixed wine for Destiny —"

¹²"I will destine you for the sword,
and all of you shall bow down to the slaughter,
because I called and you did not answer,
I spoke and you did not listen.
You did what is evil in My eyes
and chose what I did not delight in."

¹³Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says:
"Behold, My servants shall eat, but you shall be hungry;
My servants shall drink, but you shall be thirsty;
My servants shall rejoice, but you shall be put to shame."

¹⁴"Behold, My servants shall sing out of a glad heart,
but you shall cry out from an anguished heart
and wail from a broken spirit."

¹⁵"You shall leave your name as a curse-word for My chosen ones;
the Lord GOD will put you to death.
But His servants He will call by another name,"

¹⁶"so that whoever invokes a blessing in the land
shall bless by the God of Amen,
and whoever takes an oath in the land
shall swear by the God of Amen.
For the former troubles will be forgotten
and will be hidden from My eyes."

¹⁷"For behold, I am creating new heavens and a new earth,
and the former things shall not be remembered
or come to mind."

¹⁸"But be glad and rejoice forever
in what I am creating!
For behold, I am creating Jerusalem as a delight
and her people as a joy."

¹⁹"I will rejoice over Jerusalem
and be glad over My people.
No more shall the sound of weeping be heard in her,
nor the sound of crying."

²⁰"No more shall there be an infant who lives but a few days,
or an old man who does not fill out his years.
For the youth who dies at a hundred will be considered young,
and the sinner who fails to reach a hundred will be considered cursed."

²¹"They shall build houses and inhabit them;
they shall plant vineyards and eat their fruit."

²²"They shall not build and another inhabit;
they shall not plant and another eat.
For as the days of a tree
shall be the days of My people,
and My chosen ones shall long enjoy
the work of their hands."

²³"They shall not labor in vain
or bear children for calamity,
for they are the offspring of those blessed by the LORD,
and their descendants with them."

²⁴"Before they call I will answer;
while they are still speaking I will hear."

²⁵"The wolf and the lamb shall graze together;
the lion shall eat straw like the ox,
and dust shall be the serpent's food.
They shall not hurt or destroy
in all My holy mountain,"
says the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. God breaks His silence from chapter 64 with a startling declaration: He was available to those who never asked. Paul quotes this verse in Romans 10:20 as evidence that God's grace extends to the Gentiles. The doubled 'Here I am!' (hinneni, hinneni) is God using the very language of prophetic availability — the word Isaiah himself used at his commissioning (6:8) — now directed toward those outside the covenant.
2. The outstretched hands (perasti yadai) are the gesture of invitation and pleading — God has been reaching toward Israel all along. Paul also quotes this verse in Romans 10:21. The indictment is not that God was absent (as the prayer of ch.63-64 suggested) but that Israel was rebellious. 'Following their own devices' (achar machshevotihem) is the root diagnosis.
3. The catalog of provocation begins. 'To My face' (al panai) means openly, brazenly — not secret sin but public idolatry. Garden sacrifices and brick altars indicate Canaanite or Mesopotamian syncretistic worship, performed in direct violation of the Torah's centralized worship requirements.

4. Sitting among graves suggests necromancy — consulting the dead, forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:11. Eating swine's flesh violates the dietary laws of Leviticus 11:7. The 'broth of abominable things' (peraq piggulim) compounds the offense: not merely eating unclean meat but cooking with it, saturating the vessels themselves with impurity.
5. The supreme irony: those practicing pagan abominations (vv.3-4) claim a false holiness that makes them unapproachable. 'I am too holy for you' (qedashtiykha) is a perversion of genuine consecration — holiness inverted into arrogance. God's response is visceral: 'smoke in My nostrils' (ashan be'appi) — they are an irritant that provokes constant, smoldering anger.
6. 'Written before Me' (ketuvah lephanai) suggests a divine ledger of offenses. The doubled 'I will repay' (shillamti veshillamti) emphasizes certainty. The image of repayment 'into their lap' (al cheiqam) is concrete — judgment is placed directly in their hands, inescapable.
7. The indictment extends across generations — 'your iniquities and your fathers' together.' Mountain and hill worship is the classic prophetic shorthand for high-place idolatry. The 'full payment' (pe'ullatam) is measured (madoti) — God's judgment is not arbitrary but precisely proportioned to the offense.
8. The tone shifts from judgment to preservation. The grape-cluster parable is homely and tender: when a vintner finds one good cluster among damaged vines, he spares it for the juice still in it. God will do the same — for the sake of the faithful remnant ('My servants'), He will not destroy the whole. This is the same remnant theology that runs from Isaiah 1:9 through Romans 11:5.
9. The promise narrows from 'not destroying all' to positive inheritance. 'My mountains' (harai) — the hill country of Judah — will be possessed by the elect (bechirai) and servants (avadai). These are the faithful within Israel, distinguished from the apostates of verses 1-7.
10. Sharon (the fertile coastal plain) and the Valley of Achor (where judgment fell in Joshua 7) are both transformed. Achor means 'trouble' — the valley of trouble becomes a place of rest. Hosea 2:15 makes the same promise. The beneficiaries are 'My people who have sought Me' — the faithful remnant contrasted with those who did not seek (v.1).
11. Gad ('Fortune') and Meni ('Destiny') are pagan deities — likely Aramean or Canaanite gods of luck and fate. Setting a table and filling cups are acts of ritual hospitality offered to these gods rather than to the LORD. The wordplay with Meni ('Destiny') and maniti ('I destine') in verse 12 is deliberate.
12. The wordplay is devastating: those who worship Meni ('Destiny') will be maniti ('destined') — by God — for the sword. The charge 'I called and you did not answer' reverses the prayer of chapter 64, where Israel accused God of silence. God now reveals that it was Israel who refused to answer His call.
13. The threefold contrast (eat/hunger, drink/thirst, rejoice/shame) draws the sharpest possible line between the faithful servants and the apostates. The repetition of 'My servants' (avadai) emphasizes that the distinction is relational: those who serve God receive provision; those who serve Fortune and Destiny receive nothing.
14. The contrast continues with a fourth pair: singing versus wailing. 'Broken spirit' (shever ruach) is the inversion of the 'contrite spirit' God cherishes in 66:2 — the same brokenness that leads to repentance in the faithful leads only to despair in the apostate.
15. The apostates' name becomes a byword — a formula of cursing. Meanwhile, God's servants receive 'another name' (shem acher), signifying a new identity. This anticipates the 'new name' promised in Revelation 2:17 and 3:12. The death of the old identity and the granting of a new one is a pattern of covenant renewal.
16. The 'God of Amen' is a unique divine title in the Hebrew Bible. We preserve 'Amen' rather than translating it as 'truth' (as KJV does) because the word carries liturgical weight that 'truth' does not fully convey. The forgetting of former troubles prepares for the new creation announcement in verse 17.
17. The vision leaps from historical judgment to cosmic renewal. The verb bore' (create) is the exclusive divine prerogative — the same word as Genesis 1:1. 'The former things shall not be remembered' does not mean amnesia but that the new reality is so overwhelming that the old no longer occupies the heart. Revelation 21:1 quotes this verse directly. 2 Peter 3:13 invokes the same promise.
18. The new creation is not abstract cosmology but centered on a city and a people: Jerusalem and her inhabitants. 'Delight' (gilah) and 'joy' (masos) — God creates the emotional capacity for eternal gladness. The city is not merely rebuilt but remade as the embodiment of joy.
19. God Himself rejoices — the joy is not only given to the people but experienced by their Creator. 'No more weeping, no more crying' is quoted in Revelation 21:4. The double elimination (weeping and crying) covers both grief and distress — every form of human anguish is ended.
20. This verse uses hyperbolic language to describe the radical extension of life in the new creation. Dying at a hundred — which in the ancient world was extreme old age — will be considered a youthful death. The second half preserves a note of moral consequence: the 'sinner' (chote') who dies at a hundred is cursed, implying that even in the new creation, rebellion has consequences. This verse sits in tension with the later vision of total peace (v.25), creating the prophetic layering characteristic of Isaiah's eschatology.
21. The curse of Deuteronomy 28:30 ('you shall build a house and not live in it; you shall plant a vineyard and not enjoy its fruit') is reversed. In the new creation, labor produces lasting results. There is no dispossession, no futility, no enemy to confiscate the harvest.
22. The 'days of a tree' implies centuries-long life — oaks and cedars live for hundreds of years. Human life will match the longevity of the most enduring things in nature. 'My chosen ones shall long enjoy' (yevallu bechirai) means they will wear out, outlast, fully use up the fruit of their labor — not death but satisfied completion.

23. Two of the deepest human fears are answered: wasted labor and doomed children. 'Bear children for calamity' (yeldu labehalah) — the terror that one's children will inherit disaster — is eliminated. The blessing extends across generations: both the parents and their descendants share in it.
24. This is the definitive answer to the prayer of chapters 63-64, where Israel cried out and heard only silence. In the new creation, God's responsiveness will be so complete that He answers before the prayer is spoken and hears before the sentence is finished. The verse describes not omniscience as abstraction but intimacy as experience — the relationship between God and His people will be closer than thought and speech.
25. The chapter's final verse compresses Isaiah 11:6-9 into a single image: predator and prey at peace, the lion herbivorous, the serpent grounded. 'They shall not hurt or destroy in all My holy mountain' repeats 11:9 verbatim — the vision that opened the messianic age in chapter 11 now closes the eschatological age in chapter 65. The serpent eating dust alludes to the Genesis 3 curse, suggesting that even in the new creation the serpent remains under judgment, but its power to harm is ended.

66

Summary: *Isaiah 66 is the final chapter of the book and brings its grand themes to their ultimate resolution. God declares that heaven is His throne and earth His footstool — no temple can contain Him, yet He looks with favor on the humble and contrite spirit. The chapter denounces those who trust in empty ritual while practicing abomination, then pivots to one of the most remarkable images in all prophecy: Zion gives birth to a nation in a single day. God comforts His people as a mother comforts her child. The nations stream to Jerusalem to see God's glory, and priests are taken from among the Gentiles. The book closes with a vision of universal worship — all flesh coming before the LORD — alongside a final, unflinching image of judgment: the worm that does not die and the fire that is not quenched.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 1 ('Heaven is My throne, earth is My footstool') is quoted by Stephen in his defense before the Sanhedrin (Acts 7:49) to argue that God cannot be confined to a building. Verse 13 ('As a mother comforts her child, so I will comfort you') is one of the rare instances where God is explicitly compared to a mother. The final verse (v.24) provides the imagery Jesus uses for Gehenna in Mark 9:48 ('where the worm does not die and the fire is not quenched'), making it one of the most consequential verses in eschatological theology.*

Translation Friction: *The juxtaposition of universal worship (v.23) and unending judgment (v.24) in consecutive verses creates deliberate theological friction. We have not softened either pole. The maternal imagery for God (v.13) is preserved without qualification — Isaiah uses the verb nacham ('comfort') with an explicitly feminine comparison (ke'ish asher immo tenachamenu). The identity of the 'brethren' brought as an offering from the nations (v.20) is left open, as the Hebrew permits both Israelite returnees and Gentile converts.*

Connections: *Verse 1 is quoted in Acts 7:49 (Stephen's speech). Verse 7 ('before she was in labor she gave birth') anticipates the sudden, miraculous birth of the church at Pentecost. Verse 13's maternal comfort echoes Isaiah 49:15 ('Can a mother forget her nursing child?'). The final verse (v.24) provides the source text for Jesus' Gehenna teaching in Mark 9:43-48. The gathering of all nations (v.18) anticipates the Great Commission (Matthew 28:19) and the multitude from every nation in Revelation 7:9.*

¹This is what the LORD says:

"Heaven is My throne,

and the earth is My footstool.

What kind of house would you build for Me?

And what would be the place of My rest?"

²"All these things My hand has made,

and so all these things came to be,"

declares the LORD.

"But this is the one to whom I will look:

he who is humble and contrite in spirit

and who trembles at My word."

³"He who slaughters an ox is like one who kills a man;
 he who sacrifices a lamb is like one who breaks a dog's neck;
 he who presents a grain offering — it is like swine's blood;
 he who offers incense is like one who blesses an idol.
 They have chosen their own ways,
 and their soul delights in their abominations."

⁴"So I also will choose their punishments
 and bring upon them what they dread,
 because I called and no one answered,
 I spoke and no one listened.
 They did what is evil in My eyes
 and chose what I did not delight in."

⁵Hear the word of the LORD,
 you who tremble at His word!
 Your brothers who hate you
 and cast you out for My name's sake have said,
 "Let the LORD be glorified,
 that we may see your joy!"
 But it is they who shall be put to shame.

⁶A sound of uproar from the city!
 A voice from the temple!
 The voice of the LORD,
 rendering recompense to His enemies!

⁷"Before she was in labor she gave birth;
 before her pain came upon her
 she delivered a son."

⁸"Who has heard such a thing?
 Who has seen such things?
 Can a land be born in one day?
 Can a nation be brought forth all at once?
 Yet as soon as Zion was in labor
 she brought forth her children!"

⁹"Shall I bring to the point of birth and not deliver?"
 says the LORD.
 "Shall I who cause to bring forth shut the womb?"
 says your God.

¹⁰"Rejoice with Jerusalem and be glad for her,
 all you who love her!
 Rejoice greatly with her,
 all you who mourn over her —"

¹¹"that you may nurse and be satisfied
from her consoling breast,
that you may drink deeply
and delight in the abundance of her glory."

¹²For this is what the LORD says:
"Behold, I will extend peace to her like a river,
and the glory of the nations like an overflowing stream.
You shall nurse; you shall be carried on her hip
and bounced upon her knees."

¹³"As a mother comforts her child,
so I will comfort you;
and you shall be comforted in Jerusalem."

¹⁴"You shall see, and your heart shall rejoice;
your bones shall flourish like grass.
The hand of the LORD shall be known to His servants,
and His indignation to His enemies."

¹⁵"For behold, the LORD will come in fire,
and His chariots like the whirlwind,
to render His anger with fury
and His rebuke with flames of fire."

¹⁶"For by fire and by His sword
the LORD will execute judgment on all flesh,
and the slain of the LORD shall be many."

¹⁷"Those who consecrate and purify themselves to go into the gardens,
following one in the center,
eating the flesh of swine, the abomination, and the mouse —
they shall come to an end together,"
declares the LORD.

¹⁸"For I know their works and their thoughts.
The time is coming to gather all nations and tongues,
and they shall come and see My glory."

¹⁹"I will set a sign among them, and from them I will send survivors
to the nations — to Tarshish, Put, and Lud (who draw the bow),
to Tubal and Javan, to the distant coastlands
that have not heard My fame or seen My glory.
And they shall declare My glory among the nations."

²⁰"And they shall bring all your brothers from all the nations
as an offering to the LORD —
on horses and in chariots and in wagons,
on mules and on camels —

to My holy mountain Jerusalem,"
says the LORD,
"just as the sons of Israel bring their grain offering
in a clean vessel to the house of the LORD."

²¹"And from them also I will take some
for priests and for Levites,"
says the LORD.

²²"For as the new heavens and the new earth
that I am making shall endure before Me,"
declares the LORD,
"so shall your offspring and your name endure."

²³"From new moon to new moon,
and from Sabbath to Sabbath,
all flesh shall come to worship before Me,"
says the LORD.

²⁴"And they shall go out and look
at the dead bodies of those who rebelled against Me.
For their worm shall not die,
and their fire shall not be quenched,
and they shall be an abhorrence to all flesh."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The final chapter opens with cosmic scale: God cannot be housed. The rhetorical questions ("What kind of house? What place of rest?") do not reject temple worship outright (Solomon asked the same question in 1 Kings 8:27) but expose the presumption that human construction can contain the divine. Stephen quotes this verse in Acts 7:49 to argue that God's presence transcends any building.
2. The contrast is staggering: the God whose throne is heaven and footstool is earth looks with special attention to the humble. 'Contrite in spirit' (nekheh ruach) is the broken spirit of Psalm 51:17. 'Trembles at My word' (chared al devari) describes not fear of punishment but reverential awe before revelation. This verse defines the true 'temple' God inhabits: the humble human heart.
3. Each legitimate sacrifice is paired with an abomination: ox/murder, lamb/dog-breaking, grain offering/swine's blood, incense/idol-blessing. The point is not that sacrifice is inherently wrong but that when performed by those who simultaneously practice idolatry, proper worship becomes as offensive as the worst sin. The double life — worshipping God and embracing abomination — is the consistent target of Third Isaiah (see 65:3-5).
4. The reciprocity is exact: 'they chose their own ways' (v.3), so 'I also will choose their punishments' (v.4). The refrain 'I called and no one answered' (also in 65:12) establishes a pattern: God's unanswered call becomes the legal basis for judgment. This is the same charge that runs from Isaiah 1:2 through to the end of the book.
5. God now addresses the faithful remnant — those who tremble at His word (the same quality praised in v.2). Their own 'brothers' (fellow Israelites) have mocked them, sarcastically invoking God's glory. But the reversal is coming: the mockers will be shamed, and the faithful will know joy. This internal division within Israel anticipates the servant-versus-apostate distinction of chapter 65.
6. Three sounds build in intensity: uproar from the city, a voice from the temple, and then — identified — the voice of the LORD Himself. The progression moves from ambient noise to divine speech. God is not distant; He is in the temple, actively judging.
7. The miraculous birth of Zion's child precedes labor — the opposite of natural order. This signals divine intervention so sudden and complete that the normal process of suffering-then-deliverance is bypassed entirely. The early church saw this as anticipating the sudden birth of the messianic community at Pentecost.
8. The rhetorical questions demand the answer: no, this is impossible — and yet it happens. A nation born in a single day is unprecedented in human experience. The immediate reference is to Israel's sudden restoration, but the early church applied it to the explosive growth of the church at Pentecost (three thousand in one day, Acts 2:41).

9. God answers His own rhetorical questions: He does not begin what He will not complete. The birth metaphor carries a promise: the labor pains of exile and judgment will produce new life. God is both midwife and guarantor — He who started the process will see it through.
10. The call to rejoice is addressed not only to Jerusalem's citizens but to 'all who love her' — an invitation that extends to all who share in Zion's hope, including the nations. Those who mourned her destruction are now summoned to celebrate her rebirth.
11. The nursing imagery is bold and sustained — Jerusalem is a mother whose breast (shod) provides both comfort (tanchumim) and glory (kavod). The verbs 'nurse,' 'be satisfied,' 'drink deeply,' and 'delight' form a progression from sustenance to abundance to pleasure. The city's restoration is not mere survival but overflowing provision.
12. The mother-child imagery continues: Jerusalem's children are carried on her hip and bounced on her knees. The peace flows 'like a river' — not a trickle or a well but a nahar, a great watercourse. The 'glory of the nations' flowing into Jerusalem anticipates the wealth-of-nations motif from Isaiah 60:5-11.
13. One of the most tender verses in all of Scripture. God compares His own comforting to a mother's comfort — not as metaphor but as direct analogy (ke'ish asher immo tenachamenu). The verb nacham ('comfort') is the root of the name Nehemiah ('God comforts') and echoes the great 'Comfort, comfort My people' of Isaiah 40:1. The comfort is localized 'in Jerusalem' — not abstract consolation but experienced in a specific, restored place.
14. 'Your bones shall flourish like grass' — the skeletal, dead-feeling body of exile will spring to life like irrigated grass. The dual revelation — 'His hand known to servants, His indignation to enemies' — maintains Isaiah's consistent theme: the same divine action is salvation for one and judgment for the other.
15. The theophany of judgment echoes the opening of the chapter (v.6) and the winepress vision of 63:1-6. Fire and whirlwind are the classic elements of divine appearance (see 2 Kings 2:11, Nahum 1:3). The chariots (markevotav) suggest military intervention — God comes as warrior.
16. The scope expands to 'all flesh' (kol basar) — the judgment is universal, not merely local. 'The slain of the LORD' (challei YHWH) is a startling phrase: these are not casualties of war but of divine judgment. The verse is a bridge to the eschatological separation that will conclude the chapter.
17. The same offenses cataloged in 65:3-4 reappear: garden rituals and forbidden food. 'Following one in the center' is obscure — possibly a pagan priest or cult leader. The triple abomination (swine, the detestable thing, the mouse) represents a full spectrum of dietary violation. The judgment is total: 'they shall come to an end together' (yachdav yasufu).
18. The vision expands to its widest horizon: all nations and all languages gathered to witness God's glory (kevodi). This is the universal scope that runs from Isaiah 2:2 ('all nations shall stream to it') through to Revelation 7:9 ('a great multitude that no one could number, from every nation, tribe, people, and language').
19. The survivor-missionaries are sent to the farthest reaches of the known world: Tarshish (western Mediterranean, likely Spain), Put (North Africa), Lud (Lydia in Asia Minor), Tubal (eastern Asia Minor), Javan (Greece), and the distant coastlands. This is a proto-Great Commission — survivors of God's judgment become heralds of His glory to those who have never heard. The geographic catalog stretches across the entire ancient Near Eastern world.
20. The 'brothers' brought from the nations may be scattered Israelites returning from diaspora, or Gentile converts presented as a living offering — the Hebrew allows both readings. Paul may allude to this verse in Romans 15:16, where he describes his ministry as presenting 'the Gentiles as an offering.' The variety of transport (horses, chariots, wagons, mules, camels) emphasizes universality: every means of travel, from every direction.
21. This is among the most radical statements in the Hebrew Bible: God will take priests and Levites from among the nations (or from among the returnees gathered from the nations). If the 'them' refers to Gentiles, this overturns the Aaronic hereditary priesthood and anticipates the universal priesthood of 1 Peter 2:9. The brevity of the verse amplifies its shock — the revolution is stated in a single sentence.
22. The new heavens and new earth from 65:17 reappear as the guarantee of Israel's permanence. The logic is simple: the new creation is eternal; your descendants and name are as durable as the new creation; therefore your legacy is eternal. This is the covenant promise in its most cosmic form.
23. The penultimate verse describes universal, perpetual worship: all flesh (kol basar), every new moon, every Sabbath, coming before the LORD. This is the fulfillment of 56:7 ('My house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples'). The rhythm of worship — monthly and weekly — is not abolished but universalized. What was Israel's privilege becomes all humanity's vocation.
24. The final verse of Isaiah is deliberately unsettling. The worshipers of verse 23 go out and see the unending judgment of the rebels. The worm (tola'at) that does not die and the fire (esh) that is not quenched become the defining images of divine judgment in later Jewish and Christian theology. Jesus quotes this verse three times in Mark 9:43-48 to describe Gehenna. The word dera'on ('abhorrence') appears only here and in Daniel 12:2, where it describes the fate of those who do not rise to everlasting life. Isaiah ends not with comfort but with the starkest possible contrast between worship and judgment — a contrast the reader must hold without resolution.

Jeremiah

1

Summary: Jeremiah 1 establishes the prophet's identity, commissioning, and mandate. The superscription (vv. 1-3) places Jeremiah in the priestly town of Anathoth and spans his ministry from Josiah's thirteenth year (627 BCE) through the fall of Jerusalem (586 BCE). God's call comes with an extraordinary claim: Jeremiah was known, consecrated, and appointed before birth (v. 5). The prophet protests his youth, but God overrides the objection and commissions him with authority over nations. Two visions follow — the almond branch (shaqed/shoqed wordplay, vv. 11-12) and the boiling pot tilting from the north (vv. 13-14) — establishing the twin themes of divine watchfulness and coming judgment from Babylon. The chapter closes with God's promise that Jeremiah will face fierce opposition but will not be overcome.

What Makes This Remarkable: The call narrative of Jeremiah 1:5 is among the most theologically significant verses in the Hebrew Bible for the doctrine of divine foreknowledge and prophetic vocation. The shaqed/shoqed wordplay in verses 11-12 is untranslatable — God sees an almond tree (shaqed) and declares 'I am watching (shoqed) over my word to perform it.' The pun functions as a visual-verbal confirmation of God's vigilance. The boiling pot vision (vv. 13-14) introduces the 'foe from the north' motif that dominates the first half of the book. The concluding metaphor — Jeremiah as a fortified city, iron pillar, and bronze wall — is remarkable for what it promises: not comfort, not success, but indestructibility under siege. God does not promise Jeremiah an easy life; he promises that Jeremiah will survive the hardest one.

Translation Friction: Verse 5 required careful handling of yada ('knew') — this is not mere awareness but intimate, purposeful knowing, the same verb used for covenant relationship. We chose 'knew you' rather than 'chose you' to preserve the relational depth while noting the covenantal force. The almond branch wordplay (shaqed/shoqed) cannot be reproduced in English; we rendered the meaning and documented the pun in the translator notes and expanded rendering. The word na'ar ('youth, boy') in verse 6 is ambiguous regarding Jeremiah's exact age — it can mean anything from a child to a young man. We rendered 'only a youth' and noted the range. The verb natatti ('I have given/set') in verse 5 uses the prophetic perfect — a past tense describing a future or ongoing reality — which we rendered as present: 'I have appointed you.'

Connections: The call narrative parallels Moses (Exodus 3-4, similar reluctance and divine assurance), Isaiah (Isaiah 6, temple commissioning), and Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1-3, visionary call). The 'before you were born' language anticipates Paul's self-understanding in Galatians 1:15. The 'foe from the north' motif connects to Ezekiel 38-39 (Gog from the north) and the broader ancient Near Eastern tradition of invasion from the north. The fortified city metaphor for the prophet anticipates the siege of Jerusalem itself — Jeremiah becomes a miniature of the city he is sent to warn, besieged but not destroyed.

¹The words of Jeremiah son of Hilkiah, one of the priests who were in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin. ²The word of the LORD came to him in the days of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign. ³It continued through the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, until the end of the eleventh year of Zedekiah son of Josiah, king of Judah — until Jerusalem was taken into exile in the fifth month. ⁴The word of the LORD came to me: ⁵Before I formed you in the womb, I knew you. Before you came out from the womb, I set you apart. I appointed you as a prophet to the nations. ⁶But I said, "Oh, Lord GOD! I do not know how to speak — I am only a youth." ⁷But the LORD said to me, "Do not say, 'I am only a youth.' To everyone I send you to, you will go, and everything I command you, you will speak. ⁸Do not be afraid of them, for I am with you to rescue you," declares the LORD. ⁹Then the LORD stretched out his hand and touched my mouth. The LORD said to me, "See — I have placed my words in your mouth. ¹⁰See, today I have appointed you over nations and over kingdoms — to uproot and to tear down, to destroy and to overthrow, to build and to plant." ¹¹The word of the LORD came to me: "What do you see, Jeremiah?" I said, "I see the branch of an almond tree." ¹²The LORD said to me, "You have seen correctly, for I am watching over my word to carry it out." ¹³The word of the LORD came to me a second time: "What do you see?" I said, "I see a boiling pot, and it is tilting away from the north." ¹⁴The LORD said to me, "From the north, disaster will be unleashed upon all the inhabitants of the land. ¹⁵For I am about to summon all the clans of the kingdoms of the north," declares the LORD. "They will come and each will set up his throne at the entrance of the gates of Jerusalem, against all its surrounding walls, and against all the cities of Judah. ¹⁶I will pronounce my judgments against them for all their wickedness, because they have abandoned me, burned incense to other gods, and bowed down to the works of their own hands. ¹⁷As for you — prepare yourself! Stand up and speak to them everything that I command you. Do not be shattered by them, or I will shatter you before them. ¹⁸Today I have made you a fortified city, an iron pillar, and bronze walls against the whole land — against the kings of Judah, its officials, its priests, and the people of the land. ¹⁹They will fight against you, but they will not overcome you, for I am with you to rescue you," declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription identifies Jeremiah by patronym, priestly lineage, and geographic origin. Anathoth was a Levitical city assigned to the descendants of Aaron (Joshua 21:18), about three miles northeast of Jerusalem. The priestly background is significant — Jeremiah will later clash with the Jerusalem priesthood as an outsider priest from a peripheral town. Some scholars connect his father Hilkiah with the high priest who discovered the Book of the Law under Josiah (2 Kings 22:8), though this is uncertain.
2. The thirteenth year of Josiah is approximately 627 BCE, five years before Josiah's major religious reforms (622 BCE). This means Jeremiah's prophetic career began before the discovery of the Book of the Law in the temple (2 Kings 22:3-13). The standard prophetic reception formula *devar-YHWH* ('the word of the LORD') indicates direct divine communication.
3. The superscription spans approximately forty years (627-586 BCE), covering the reigns of Josiah, Jehoiakim, and Zedekiah. Jehoahaz and Jehoiachin are omitted, likely because their reigns were too brief (three months each). The 'fifth month' refers to Av (July-August) 586 BCE, when Nebuchadnezzar's forces destroyed the temple and deported the remaining population. The Hebrew *galut* ('exile, captivity') is the defining catastrophe of Judah's history.
4. The narrative shifts to first person — Jeremiah now speaks directly. The formula *devar-YHWH* ('the word of the LORD') followed by *le'mor* ('saying') introduces direct divine speech. The *le'mor* is rendered as a colon in English rather than the redundant 'saying.'
5. Three verbs define God's prenatal action toward Jeremiah: *yada* ('knew' — intimate, purposeful knowledge), *hiqdashti* ('I set apart, consecrated'), and *netattikha* ('I appointed, gave'). The last verb uses the prophetic perfect — grammatically past tense but describing a reality that extends into the present and future. 'To the nations' (*lagoyim*) gives Jeremiah's ministry an international scope beyond Judah alone, which the oracles against the nations (chapters 46-51) fulfill. The threefold structure — known, consecrated, appointed — moves from the inward (relationship) to the outward (mission).

6. The exclamation ahahh is a cry of distress or protest, not a polite demurral. The Hebrew na'ar can mean anything from a boy to a young man of military age; its exact age range is debated. Jeremiah's protest echoes Moses ('I am not a man of words,' Exodus 4:10) and establishes the pattern of prophetic reluctance. The address Adonai YHWH ('Lord GOD') combines the title of sovereign authority with the divine name.
7. God does not dispute Jeremiah's youth — he overrides its relevance. The construction is emphatic: 'to all that I send you, you will go' — there will be no exceptions or preferred assignments. The commission parallels Moses' commission in Exodus 4:12 ('I will be with your mouth and teach you what to say'). Jeremiah's adequacy comes from the sender, not the sent.
8. The Hebrew mippenehem (literally 'from their faces') suggests the intimidation of facing hostile audiences. God's promise itti ani ('I am with you') is the foundational assurance formula of the Hebrew Bible (cf. Genesis 26:3, 28:15, Exodus 3:12, Isaiah 41:10). The verb lehatzilekha ('to rescue you') implies Jeremiah will face real danger — the promise is not protection from trouble but deliverance through it. The formula ne'um YHWH ('declares the LORD') seals the divine speech.
9. The physical gesture of touching the mouth parallels Isaiah's commissioning, where a seraph touches Isaiah's lips with a burning coal (Isaiah 6:6-7). In Jeremiah's case there is no purification — the act is commissioning, not cleansing. The verb natatti ('I have placed') uses the prophetic perfect, indicating a completed divine action. Jeremiah's words from this point forward carry divine authority because they originate with God, not the prophet.
10. Six infinitives define Jeremiah's mandate: four destructive (natosh 'uproot,' natots 'tear down,' ha'avid 'destroy,' haros 'overthrow') and two constructive (banot 'build,' nata 'plant'). The four-to-two ratio reflects the book's overwhelming emphasis on judgment before restoration. These six verbs recur throughout Jeremiah as a thematic refrain (cf. 18:7-9, 24:6, 31:28, 42:10, 45:4). The scope — 'over nations and kingdoms' — matches the international mandate of verse 5.
11. The first of two confirmatory visions. The almond tree (shaqed) is the 'wakeful tree' because it blossoms earliest in the year, often while snow still covers the ground. The wordplay shaqed/shoqed is the interpretive key — God asks what Jeremiah sees, and the answer itself becomes a prophetic message. This type of vision-with-wordplay also appears in Amos 8:1-2 (qayits/qets, 'summer fruit'/'end').
12. The KJV's 'I will hasten' obscures the wordplay. The verb shoqed does not primarily mean 'hasten' but 'watch, be wakeful, be alert.' God is not saying he will speed up his word but that he is actively watching over it to ensure its fulfillment. The pun shaqed/shoqed cannot be reproduced in English — no single English word captures both 'almond tree' and 'watching.' The phrase heitavta lir'ot ('you have seen well/correctly') affirms that Jeremiah's prophetic sight is functioning.
13. The second vision. The Hebrew sir naphuach is a pot being heated until its contents boil over. The phrase upanav mippenei tsaphonah ('its face from the face of the north') is directional — the pot is tilting from the north, meaning its scalding contents will pour southward toward Judah. This is the first appearance of the 'foe from the north' motif that dominates Jeremiah's early oracles (4:6, 6:1, 6:22, 10:22). The 'north' becomes almost a theological symbol in Jeremiah — the direction from which destruction comes.
14. The verb tippatach ('will be opened, unleashed') suggests something being broken open or let loose — like the boiling pot spilling its contents. The ra'ah ('disaster, calamity') here is not moral evil but the coming military catastrophe. The phrase 'all the inhabitants of the land' indicates comprehensive judgment — no one in Judah will be untouched.
15. The image is of conquering kings setting up their judgment seats at the gates of a conquered city — the gates were the place of legal authority and public judgment. God himself is summoning (qore') these foreign powers as instruments of his covenant judgment. The plural 'kingdoms of the north' does not identify a single nation but a coalition; historically this was fulfilled by the Neo-Babylonian empire and its vassals.
16. Three charges are listed: abandonment of God (azavuni, 'they abandoned me'), worship of other gods through incense offerings (vayeqatteru le'lohim acherim), and idolatry — bowing to 'the works of their own hands' (ma'asei yedeihem). The last phrase is devastating: the gods they worship are things they themselves manufactured. The irony runs throughout Jeremiah — Israel trades a living God for objects they carved.
17. The idiom te'ezor motnekha (literally 'gird your loins') means to tuck your robe into your belt for action — rendered here as 'prepare yourself.' The warning is striking: if Jeremiah loses courage before the people (techat mippenehem), God himself will break Jeremiah before them (achittekha lipnehem). The verb ch-t-t ('to be shattered, dismayed, broken') is used in both halves, creating an internal wordplay — fear of people will bring worse consequences than fear of God.
18. Three metaphors of indestructibility: fortified city (ir mivtsar), iron pillar (ammud barzel), and bronze walls (chomot nechoshet). These are all siege-resistant structures — God is saying Jeremiah will be besieged but not breached. The list of opponents is comprehensive: kings, officials (sarim), priests, and common people ('am ha'arets). Every stratum of society will oppose Jeremiah, and he will outlast them all. The word sarim ('officials, princes, commanders') refers to the ruling class rather than royal offspring.
19. The chapter closes by returning to the assurance formula of verse 8: itti ani ('I am with you'). The verb nilchamu ('they will fight') promises not peace but warfare — Jeremiah's entire career will be one of opposition. The promise is not immunity from attack but survival through it. The verb lehatzilekha ('to rescue you') frames the chapter's conclusion with the same verb that opened the divine promise in verse 8, creating an inclusio of divine protection around the entire commissioning.

2

Summary: *Jeremiah 2 is a covenant lawsuit (riv) in which God prosecutes Israel for spiritual adultery. The chapter opens with a tender recollection of Israel's early devotion in the wilderness — the 'honeymoon period' of the covenant relationship (vv. 1-3). The tone then shifts to accusation: Israel has abandoned the living God for gods that are 'no gods,' trading the spring of living water for broken cisterns that hold nothing (v. 13). The indictment is comprehensive — priests, rulers, prophets, and people have all defected. The chapter closes with Israel still denying guilt even as the evidence overwhelms, like a thief caught in the act who insists on innocence.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The imagery of 2:13 — 'the spring of living water' versus 'broken cisterns that cannot hold water' — is one of the most powerful metaphors in the Hebrew Bible and one of the defining images of Jeremiah's theology. Jesus draws on this imagery in John 4:10-14 and 7:37-38. The legal structure is a covenant riv (lawsuit), a genre found also in Micah 6 and Hosea 4, in which God brings formal charges against his covenant partner. The wild vine metaphor (v. 21), the stained garment (v. 22), the restless camel and wild donkey in heat (vv. 23-24) — Jeremiah's images are vivid, earthy, and deliberately shocking. The chapter's rhetoric is designed to make the listener feel the absurdity of Israel's choices: no nation has ever traded its gods, even though their gods are worthless — but Israel has traded the living God for nothing (v. 11).*

Translation Friction: *The word chesed in verse 2 required careful handling — it describes Israel's early covenant loyalty to God, an unusual direction for this term (usually God's chesed toward Israel). The metaphor of Israel as a young bride (v. 2) and then as a promiscuous woman (vv. 20, 23-25, 33, 36) raises the tension between prophetic rhetoric and modern sensibility — we rendered the Hebrew faithfully without euphemism while noting the metaphorical framework in translator notes. The word sorekah ('choice vine,' v. 21) versus 'wild vine' required documenting the agricultural reality. The animal metaphors in verses 23-24 are sexually explicit by design — the prophet is deliberately using shocking imagery to describe Israel's lust for foreign gods.*

Connections: *The covenant lawsuit genre connects to Hosea 4:1-3, Micah 6:1-8, and Isaiah 1:2-20. The wilderness honeymoon motif echoes Hosea 2:14-15. The 'living water' image anticipates Jesus's conversation with the Samaritan woman (John 4) and his declaration at the Feast of Tabernacles (John 7:37-38). The 'broken cisterns' image is inverted in Zechariah 13:1, where a fountain is opened for cleansing. The wild donkey in heat (v. 24) parallels Hosea 8:9 (Ephraim as a wild donkey). The accusation that Israel has become worse than the nations who keep their false gods (v. 11) foreshadows Ezekiel's similar charge in Ezekiel 5:6-7 and 16:47.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Go and proclaim in the hearing of Jerusalem: This is what the LORD says — I remember the faithful love of your youth, the love of your bridal days, how you followed me in the wilderness, through a land not yet sown. ³Israel was holy to the LORD, the firstfruits of his harvest. All who consumed her incurred guilt; disaster came upon them," declares the LORD. ⁴Hear the word of the LORD, O house of Jacob — all the clans of the house of Israel! ⁵This is what the LORD says: What wrong did your ancestors find in me, that they went so far from me? They went after worthless things and became worthless themselves. ⁶They did not ask, 'Where is the LORD who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, who led us through the wilderness — through a land of desert plains and ravines, through a land of drought and deep darkness, through a land no one crosses and no one inhabits?' ⁷I brought you into a fertile land to eat its fruit and its bounty. But when you entered, you defiled my land and made my inheritance a detestable thing. ⁸The priests did not ask, 'Where is the LORD?' Those who handle the law did not know me. The shepherds rebelled against me. The prophets prophesied by Baal and followed things that are of no use. ⁹Therefore I will bring my case against you," declares the LORD, "and against your grandchildren I will bring my case. ¹⁰Cross over to the coasts of Cyprus and look! Send to Kedar and examine carefully — see if anything like this has ever happened. ¹¹Has any nation ever exchanged its gods — even though they are not really gods? Yet my people have exchanged their Glory for what is of no use. ¹²Be appalled at this, O heavens! Shudder and be utterly desolate," declares the LORD. ¹³For my people have committed two evils: they have abandoned me — the spring of living water — and they have dug out cisterns for themselves, broken cisterns that cannot hold water. ¹⁴Is Israel a slave? Was he born into servitude? Why then has he become plunder? ¹⁵Young lions have roared over him; they have raised their voices.

They have made his land a ruin; his cities are burned and emptied of inhabitants. ¹⁶Even the people of Memphis and Tahpanhes have shattered your skull. ¹⁷Have you not brought this upon yourself by abandoning the LORD your God at the very time he was leading you on the way? ¹⁸And now — what business do you have on the road to Egypt, drinking the waters of the Nile? What business do you have on the road to Assyria, drinking the waters of the Euphrates? ¹⁹Your own wickedness will discipline you, and your acts of turning away will convict you. Know and see that it is an evil and bitter thing that you have abandoned the LORD your God, and that reverence for me is not in you," declares the Lord GOD of Hosts. ²⁰For long ago I broke your yoke and tore off your chains. You said, 'I will not serve!' Yet on every high hill and under every leafy tree you sprawl as a prostitute. ²¹Yet I planted you as a choice vine, from the purest stock. How then have you turned into the wild shoots of a foreign vine before me? ²²Even if you scrub yourself with lye and use much soap, the stain of your guilt remains before me," declares the Lord GOD. ²³How can you say, 'I am not defiled; I have not gone after the Baals'? Look at your path in the valley — acknowledge what you have done! You are a restless young camel, darting back and forth on her paths, ^{24a}a wild donkey accustomed to the wilderness, sniffing the wind in the desire of her appetite. In her heat, who can restrain her? None who seek her need exhaust themselves — in her mating month they will find her. ²⁵Keep your feet from going bare and your throat from thirst! But you said, 'It is hopeless! No — I love strangers, and after them I will go.' ²⁶As a thief is shamed when he is caught, so the house of Israel will be shamed — they, their kings, their officials, their priests, and their prophets, ²⁷who say to a tree, 'You are my father,' and to a stone, 'You gave birth to me.' For they have turned their backs to me, not their faces. Yet in the time of their disaster they say, 'Rise up and save us!' ²⁸Where then are the gods you made for yourself? Let them rise up — if they can save you in the time of your disaster! For your gods have become as numerous as your cities, O Judah. ²⁹Why do you bring a case against me? All of you have rebelled against me," declares the LORD. ³⁰In vain I struck your children — they did not accept correction. Your own sword has devoured your prophets like a ravaging lion. ³¹You of this generation — see the word of the LORD! Have I been a wilderness to Israel, or a land of thick darkness? Why then do my people say, 'We roam free! We will come to you no more'? ³²Does a young woman forget her jewelry? Does a bride forget her sash? Yet my people have forgotten me for days beyond counting. ³³How skillfully you arrange your path to seek lovers! You have even taught the worst women your ways. ³⁴On your garments is found the blood of the innocent poor. You did not catch them breaking in — yet despite all this, ³⁵you say, 'I am innocent; surely his anger has turned from me.' Now I am about to enter into judgment with you because you say, 'I have not sinned.' ³⁶Why do you run about so recklessly, changing your course? You will be put to shame by Egypt, just as you were put to shame by Assyria. ³⁷From this alliance too you will go out with your hands on your head, for the LORD has rejected those you trust in, and you will find no success through them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. This introduces the first extended oracle of Jeremiah's ministry — a covenant lawsuit that runs through the entire chapter.
2. The verse introduces the 'honeymoon' metaphor — Israel as God's young bride following him through the wilderness. The word *kelulutayikh* ('your bridal days, your betrothal') comes from the root *k-l-l* and describes the period of wedding celebration. The image of following God 'through a land not yet sown' portrays the wilderness as barren and dangerous, making Israel's youthful trust all the more remarkable. This idealized memory of wilderness devotion also appears in Hosea 2:14-15.
3. The firstfruits metaphor (*re'shit tevu'atoh*) is drawn from the agricultural law — the first portion of the harvest belongs exclusively to God (Leviticus 23:10, Deuteronomy 26:1-11). Israel's status as 'firstfruits' means she is consecrated, set apart, and under divine protection. The verb *ye'eshamu* ('they incurred guilt') is cultic language — those who devoured Israel committed a sacril offense, not merely a political one.
4. The address shifts from Jerusalem specifically to 'the house of Jacob' and 'all the clans of the house of Israel,' broadening the audience to the entire people. The name 'Jacob' recalls the patriarch and the covenant origins of the nation. The word *mishpechot* ('clans, families') encompasses every kinship unit within Israel.
5. The covenant lawsuit opens with a devastating rhetorical question: God demands to know what injustice (*avel*, 'wrong, iniquity, crookedness') his people found in him. The implied answer is 'none.' The wordplay *hevel/yehbalu* ('worthless things/became worthless') is devastating — Israel became like what it worshipped. The word *hevel* ('breath, vapor, emptiness') is the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes ('vanity of vanities'). Applied to idols, it means they are insubstantial, empty, nothing.

6. Five descriptions pile up to emphasize the wilderness as hostile terrain: aravah ('desert plain'), shuchah ('ravine, pit'), tsiyyah ('drought, parched land'), tsalmavet ('deep darkness, death-shadow'), and uninhabited wasteland. God guided Israel through all of this, yet they never asked 'Where is the LORD?' The word tsalmavet traditionally rendered 'shadow of death' may be a compound (tsel + mavet) or an intensive form meaning 'deep darkness.' We render 'deep darkness' as the more linguistically defensible reading.
7. The word karmel ('fertile land, garden land, orchard') describes the promised land as an abundant garden — the opposite of the wilderness. The possessive pronouns are critical: 'my land' (artsi), 'my inheritance' (nachalati) — the land belongs to God, not to Israel. Israel is a tenant who has polluted the landlord's property. The word to'evah ('abomination, detestable thing') is covenant-curse vocabulary — the worst possible evaluation of what Israel has done with God's gift.
8. Four leadership groups are indicted: priests (kohanim), handlers of the Torah (tofsei hatorah — likely scribes or legal authorities), shepherds (ro'im — rulers or political leaders, using the common ancient Near Eastern metaphor of king as shepherd), and prophets (nevi'im). Each has failed in a way specific to their role. The phrase lo yeda'uni ('they did not know me') uses the covenantal yada — the Torah specialists, whose job was to maintain covenant knowledge, have lost knowledge of God himself.
9. The verb ariv ('contend, bring a case, argue in court') is the technical term for a covenant lawsuit. God is not merely complaining — he is filing formal charges. The extension to 'your grandchildren' (benei veneikhem) indicates that the covenant violation is not a single generation's failure but a generational pattern that will carry consequences forward.
10. God calls witnesses from the far west (Kittim/Cyprus, representing the Mediterranean world) and the far east (Kedar, the Arabian desert tribes descended from Ishmael, Genesis 25:13). The rhetorical strategy is to survey the entire known world for a parallel to Israel's behavior. Kittim originally referred to the city of Kition on Cyprus but came to represent western maritime peoples generally.
11. The argument from lesser to greater: if pagan nations, whose gods are mere constructs (lo elohim, 'not gods'), remain faithful to them, how much more absurd is it for Israel to abandon the living God? The word kevodo ('his Glory') is a title for God himself — some scholars connect this to the kavod theology of God's manifest presence. Paul quotes this logic in Romans 1:23, applying it to humanity's general exchange of God's glory for created images.
12. God summons the heavens themselves as witnesses — a convention of the covenant lawsuit genre (cf. Deuteronomy 32:1, Isaiah 1:2, Micah 6:1-2). Three imperatives pile up: shommu ('be appalled, be stunned'), sa'aru ('shudder, be horrified'), charvu ('be desolated, be dried up'). The heavens themselves should be devastated by what Israel has done. The escalating intensity — appalled, shuddering, desolate — reflects the enormity of the covenant breach.
13. This is the theological center of the chapter. The 'two evils' are not independent but causally linked: abandoning God (the spring) is what drove them to dig cisterns (idols). The word meqor ('spring, source, fountain') describes naturally flowing water — the most precious resource in an arid land. Cisterns (bo'arot) are inferior by nature: they hold only collected rainwater, which goes stale. Broken cisterns are utterly useless — they cannot even hold the inferior water they were built to store. Jesus draws on this imagery in John 4:10-14 ('living water') and 7:37-38.
14. Two rhetorical questions challenge Israel's degraded state: Israel is not a slave (eved) by nature, nor a home-born servant (yelid bayit — one born into the household of a master). Yet Israel has become baz ('plunder, spoil') — the condition of a conquered and looted nation. The implicit answer: Israel's degradation is self-inflicted, the consequence of abandoning God's protection.
15. The 'young lions' (kefirim) are a metaphor for invading nations — powerful, aggressive, predatory. The verbs describe total devastation: the land is shammah ('desolation, waste') and the cities are nitsetah ('burned, set ablaze'). The image is of a helpless prey animal being torn apart by lions — Israel without God's protection is defenseless.
16. Memphis (Noph) and Tahpanhes were major Egyptian cities. The image of 'shattering the skull' (literally 'grazing/feeding on your crown') describes Egyptian military domination. This likely refers to Pharaoh Necho's campaigns through Judah. The verb yir'ukh ('they graze/feed upon you') uses pastoral imagery — Israel is being consumed like grass by Egyptian cattle.
17. The rhetorical question forces Israel to recognize self-inflicted causation. The phrase be'et molikhekh baderekh ('at the time he was leading you on the way') heightens the absurdity — Israel abandoned God while God was actively guiding them. The abandonment was not during a time of divine absence but during a time of divine presence.
18. The 'waters of Shichor' is the Nile (the name comes from an Egyptian word for a branch of the Nile delta). The 'River' (nahr) without further specification always means the Euphrates in Hebrew. The metaphor is political: 'drinking the waters' of Egypt or Assyria means seeking military alliance with those empires. Instead of trusting the 'spring of living water' (v. 13), Israel is running to drink from foreign rivers — trading divine protection for imperial patronage.
19. The word meshuvotayikh ('your turnings away, your apostasies') comes from the root shuv ('turn') — the same root that means 'repentance' when directed toward God. Here it describes turning away from God, the opposite direction. Israel's own infidelity will serve as its own punishment — the consequences are built into the betrayal itself. The title Adonai YHWH Tseva'ot ('the Lord GOD of Hosts') combines three divine designations for maximum authority.
20. The breaking of yoke and chains refers to the Exodus liberation. God freed Israel from Egyptian bondage, but Israel used that freedom not for covenant faithfulness but for spiritual adultery. The Qere reading 'I will not serve' (e'evod rather than e'evor) better fits the context of rebellion. The phrase 'every high hill and under every leafy tree' is standard language for Canaanite worship sites (bamot, 'high places') where fertility cults

operated. The verb *tso'ah* ('sprawling, lying down') combined with *zonah* ('prostitute') creates an explicitly sexual image for idolatry.

21. The vine metaphor for Israel appears also in Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard), Psalm 80:8-16, and Ezekiel 15. The *sorekah* ('choice vine') was a premium variety producing the finest grapes. The *zera emet* ('seed of truth/reliability') means the planting stock was genuine and true. The shock is the transformation: a carefully planted premium vine has degenerated into *sarei haggefen nokhriyyah* ('wild shoots of a foreign vine') — it has become something other than what was planted. The question 'how?' (*eikh*) expresses divine bewilderment.
22. *Neter* ('lye, natron') is a mineral alkali used as a cleaning agent in the ancient world. *Borit* ('soap, alkali') is a plant-based cleanser. Together they represent the strongest cleansing agents available. The verb *nikhtam* ('is stained, is marked') suggests a permanent stain that no human effort can remove — the guilt is too deeply embedded in the fabric. The image anticipates the later promise that God himself will cleanse what Israel cannot clean (31:34, 33:8).
23. Israel's denial — 'I am not defiled' — is contradicted by the evidence. 'The valley' (*gai*) likely refers to the Valley of Hinnom (Ge-Hinnom), where child sacrifice was practiced (7:31, 19:2-6, 32:35). The camel metaphor is vivid: a *bikrah qallah* ('young female camel, swift/restless') that cannot be controlled, running in every direction. The image captures the frantic, undisciplined nature of Israel's pursuit of foreign gods. The plural *ha-Be'alim* ('the Baals') refers to the various local manifestations of Baal worship.
24. The metaphor escalates from restless camel to wild donkey (*pereh*) in heat. The image is deliberately crude and sexually explicit: the wild donkey sniffs the wind to catch the scent of a mate, driven by uncontrollable lust. The phrase *be'avvat nafshah* ('in the desire of her appetite/soul') describes an appetite that dominates the entire being. The point: Israel's pursuit of foreign gods is not a rational choice but an animal-like compulsion. The males (those who seek her) do not even need to pursue — she makes herself available. Hosea uses similar imagery (Hosea 8:9).
25. The warning to keep feet shod and throat moist describes the physical toll of chasing after foreign gods — running barefoot and parched through the wilderness in pursuit. Israel's response is chilling: *no'ash* ('it is hopeless, it is useless') — not repentance but resignation to addiction. The declaration 'I love strangers' (*zarim*, 'foreigners, foreign gods') is Israel's own confession of infidelity, spoken defiantly rather than penitently.
26. The simile is pointed: a thief is not ashamed of stealing — he is ashamed of being caught. Israel's shame is not moral remorse but the embarrassment of exposure. The list of four leadership groups (kings, officials, priests, prophets) matches the indictment of verse 8, creating a structural link between the leaders' failure and the people's shame.
27. The absurdity is at full force: calling a wooden idol 'father' and a stone idol 'mother' (the verb *yelidtinu*, 'you gave birth to us,' is feminine, suggesting the stone represents a mother goddess — likely *Asherah*). They have turned *oref* ('the back of the neck') to God instead of *panim* ('face'). Yet when disaster strikes, they turn back to God with 'rise up and save us' — expecting from God the help they sought from wood and stone.
28. The taunt reprises the accusation of 11:13: Judah has manufactured a god for every city. The phrase *asher asita lakh* ('which you made for yourself') emphasizes that these are human manufactures, not divine beings. The challenge 'let them rise up, if they can save you' echoes Elijah's mockery of Baal on Mount Carmel (1 Kings 18:27). Manufactured gods cannot rise because they were never alive.
29. The irony is sharp: Israel tries to bring a *riv* ('case, lawsuit') against God, but it is God who has the legitimate case against them. The verb *pesha'tem* ('you have rebelled') is the language of willful, deliberate transgression — not accidental straying but conscious defection. The word *kullekhem* ('all of you') eliminates any claim of individual innocence.
30. God's disciplinary measures (*hikketi*, 'I struck') were intended as *musar* ('correction, instruction, discipline') — not punishment for its own sake but corrective action to bring about return. It was wasted. Worse, Israel has killed its own prophets — the very messengers God sent to bring them back. The sword is 'your sword' (*charbkhem*) — Israel's own violence turned against God's spokesmen. This is the murderous nation that Jeremiah has been sent to address.
31. God addresses 'this generation' (*hador*) directly. The rhetorical questions challenge Israel to name any failure on God's part — has he been barren wilderness or impenetrable darkness to them? The word *radnu* is debated: it may derive from *rud* ('to roam, wander') meaning 'we roam freely,' or from *radah* ('to rule') meaning 'we are lords.' We follow the reading 'we roam free,' which better fits the context of Israel asserting independence from God.
32. The comparison is between something unthinkable and something Israel has done. A *betulah* ('young woman, virgin') would never forget her ornaments (*edyah*), and a *kallah* ('bride') would never forget her wedding sash (*qishurehah*). These are treasured, identity-defining possessions. Yet Israel has forgotten God — not for a moment but for *yamim ein mispar* ('days without number'). The implied question: is God less precious to Israel than jewelry is to a bride?
33. The verb *teitivy* ('you make good, you improve, you perfect') describes the practiced skill of seduction — Israel has become expert at arranging liaisons with foreign gods and foreign powers. The accusation 'you have taught the wicked your ways' (*et ha-ra'ot limmadt et derakhayikh*) means Israel has become so proficient at infidelity that even seasoned practitioners of evil learn from her. The irony is biting — the people called to be a light to the nations have instead become their tutor in wickedness.
34. The accusation shifts from spiritual adultery to social injustice: the blood of innocent poor people (*evyonim neqiyyim*) stains Israel's clothing. The phrase *lo ba-machteret metza'tim* ('you did not find them breaking in') means these were not thieves killed in legitimate self-defense (cf. Exodus 22:2, which permits killing a burglar caught in the act). These were innocent people murdered without justification. The bloodstains are visible evidence of guilt — not hidden but on the hems of their garments for all to see.

35. Israel's most damning statement: 'I have not sinned' (lo chatati). With blood on her garments, with altars on every hill, with the evidence of chapters of accusation stacked against her, Israel still claims innocence. The verb *nishpat* ('I will judge, I will enter into judgment') indicates formal legal proceedings. God does not respond to the denial with argument but with a court date — the trial will settle the matter.
36. The verb *tezli* ('you run about, you cheapen yourself') suggests frantic, undignified rushing from one alliance to another. Israel keeps changing political partners — first Assyria, now Egypt — and each betrays her. The verb *leshanot* ('to change') describes Israel's inconstancy: she cannot commit to one path. The promise of shame from Egypt mirrors the shame already experienced from Assyria, establishing a pattern: every imperial alliance ends in humiliation.
37. The image of leaving 'with hands on your head' (*yadayikh al roshekh*) is a gesture of mourning, grief, and humiliation — the posture of a captive or a mourner (cf. 2 Samuel 13:19, Tamar after her assault). The word *mivtachayikh* ('your sources of confidence, your trusted ones') refers to the foreign powers Israel has relied upon. God has rejected (*ma'as*) these alliances — they are not merely unhelpful but divinely opposed. The chapter ends not with repentance but with the certainty of failure: Israel's chosen path leads nowhere.

3

Summary: *Jeremiah 3 extends the faithless wife metaphor introduced in chapter 2, comparing Israel and Judah to adulterous women who have abandoned their husband — the LORD. God asks whether a divorced woman can return to her first husband (invoking Deuteronomy 24:1-4), yet still calls Israel to return. The chapter contrasts 'faithless Israel' with 'treacherous Judah,' declaring that Judah is worse because she witnessed her sister's punishment yet did not learn from it. The second half pivots to an extraordinary vision of future restoration: the ark of the covenant will no longer be remembered, all nations will gather to Jerusalem, and God's people will call him 'My Father' and never again turn away.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The verb shuv ('return/turn') dominates this chapter — appearing in nearly every form and nuance, sometimes meaning 'turn back to God' and sometimes 'turn away from God.' The same root carries repentance and apostasy, faithfulness and betrayal. This wordplay is untranslatable in English and represents one of Jeremiah's most sophisticated rhetorical devices. The declaration in verse 16 that the ark of the covenant 'will not come to mind, nor will they remember it, nor will they miss it, nor will it be made again' is one of the most radical statements in the Hebrew Bible — the holiest object in Israel's worship is declared obsolete. We also note that verses 1-5 use second-person feminine singular (addressing Judah/Israel as a woman), while verses 12-18 shift to second-person masculine plural (addressing the people as a community), and verses 19-25 shift again to a communal confession. Each shift in address required careful rendering.*

Translation Friction: *The legal analogy in verse 1 invokes Deuteronomy 24:1-4, which prohibits a divorced woman from returning to her first husband if she has married another. God applies this to Israel's idolatry — she has 'been with many lovers' — yet astonishingly still calls her to return. This theological tension (law says no return; grace says return) is central to the chapter and we preserved it without resolving it. The word meshuvah ('faithlessness, apostasy, turning away') in verse 6 is built from the same root shuv as teshuvah ('repentance, return'), creating a paradox we documented. The shift between poetry (vv. 1-5, 12-13, 19-25) and prose (vv. 6-11, 14-18) required careful formatting decisions.*

Connections: *The divorce analogy connects to Deuteronomy 24:1-4 and Hosea 1-3 (the faithless wife motif). The call 'Return, faithless Israel' anticipates the great return oracles of chapters 30-33. The vision of the ark no longer needed (v. 16) anticipates the new covenant of 31:31-34 where the law is internalized. The phrase 'My Father' (*avi*, v. 4, 19) connects to Hosea 11:1 and foreshadows the new covenant intimacy of 31:9. The communal confession in verses 22-25 foreshadows the penitential liturgy of Daniel 9. The contrast between Israel and Judah echoes Ezekiel 16 and 23.*

1If a man divorces his wife and she leaves him and becomes another man's, can he return to her again? Would not that land be utterly defiled? Yet you have prostituted yourself with many lovers — and still you would return to me? declares the LORD. 2Lift your eyes to the barren heights and look — where have you not been violated? You sat waiting for them beside the roads like a desert nomad lying in ambush. You have defiled the land with your prostitution and your wickedness. 3So the showers have been withheld and the spring rains have not come. Yet you have the brazen face of a prostitute — you refuse to be ashamed. 4Have you not just now called out to me, 'My Father! You are the companion of my youth'? 5Will he

stay angry forever? Will he hold a grudge to the end?' Look — you have spoken this way, yet you have done every evil you could. ⁶The LORD said to me in the days of King Josiah: Have you seen what faithless Israel has done? She went up on every high hill and under every spreading tree, and she prostituted herself there. ⁷I thought, 'After she has done all these things, she will return to me.' But she did not return. And her treacherous sister Judah saw it. ⁸I saw that for all the acts of adultery that faithless Israel had committed, I sent her away and gave her a certificate of divorce. Yet her treacherous sister Judah was not afraid — she too went and prostituted herself. ⁹Because she treated her prostitution so lightly, she defiled the land and committed adultery with stone and with wood. ¹⁰And even after all this, her treacherous sister Judah did not return to me with her whole heart but only in pretense, declares the LORD. ¹¹Then the LORD said to me: Faithless Israel has shown herself more righteous than treacherous Judah.

¹²Go and proclaim these words toward the north, and say:

Return, faithless Israel — declares the LORD.

I will not look on you with anger,
for I am faithful in love, declares the LORD.
I will not hold a grudge forever.

¹³Only acknowledge your guilt —
that you have rebelled against the LORD your God
and scattered your favors to strangers
under every spreading tree,
and you have not obeyed my voice,
declares the LORD.

¹⁴Return, unfaithful children — declares the LORD — for I am your master. I will take you, one from a city and two from a clan, and I will bring you to Zion. ¹⁵Then I will give you shepherds after my own heart, and they will tend you with knowledge and wisdom. ¹⁶When you have multiplied and increased in the land, in those days — declares the LORD — they will no longer say, 'The ark of the covenant of the LORD.' It will not come to mind, they will not remember it, they will not miss it, and it will not be made again. ¹⁷At that time they will call Jerusalem 'the throne of the LORD,' and all nations will gather to it — to the name of the LORD, to Jerusalem. They will no longer walk in the stubbornness of their evil hearts. ¹⁸In those days the house of Judah will walk together with the house of Israel, and they will come together from the land of the north to the land that I gave as an inheritance to your ancestors. ¹⁹I myself said, 'How gladly I would set you among my children and give you a desirable land — the most beautiful inheritance among the nations!' I said, 'You will call me "My Father" and never turn away from following me.' ²⁰But just as a wife betrays her husband, so you have betrayed me, O house of Israel, declares the LORD.

²¹A voice is heard on the barren heights —
the weeping and pleading of the children of Israel,
for they have twisted their path;
they have forgotten the LORD their God.

²²"Return, unfaithful children —
I will heal your faithlessness."
"Here we are — we come to you,
for you are the LORD our God.

²³Truly, the hills are a delusion,
the commotion on the mountains is a lie.
Truly, in the LORD our God
is the salvation of Israel.

²⁴The shameful thing has devoured the labor of our ancestors since our youth — their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters.

²⁵Let us lie down in our shame;
let our disgrace cover us.
For we have sinned against the LORD our God —
we and our ancestors,
from our youth until this very day.
We have not obeyed the voice of the LORD our God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse invokes the law of Deuteronomy 24:1-4, which prohibits a man from remarrying a wife who has married another. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no' — yet God's final statement overturns the expected conclusion. The verb *zanit* ('you have prostituted yourself') is graphic and deliberate, not merely 'played the harlot' as in the KJV. The phrase *re'im rabbim* ('many lovers') intensifies the indictment — this is not a single lapse but serial unfaithfulness.
2. The word *shefayim* ('barren heights, bare hills') refers to the high places where idolatrous worship — including cult prostitution — took place. The comparison to an *aravi* ('Arabian, desert nomad') lying in wait beside the road likens Judah to a bandit or a roadside prostitute eagerly seeking partners. The word *shugalt* ('you were lain with') is a strong sexual term indicating violation or debasement, not merely 'lying with.' The defilement (*chanaf*) of the land echoes the Deuteronomic warning that sexual sin and idolatry pollute the land itself.
3. The withholding of rain is covenant-curse language (Deuteronomy 28:23-24) — drought is not random weather but divine judgment. The phrase *metsach isah zonah* ('forehead of a prostitute-woman') indicates shamelessness — a brazen, unembarrassed demeanor. The verb *me'ant hikkelem* ('you refused to be ashamed') indicates not inability but deliberate refusal to feel shame. The *malkosh* ('spring rain, latter rain') was the late rain critical for the grain harvest — its absence meant famine.
4. The word *avi* ('my father') is an intimate address — the people appeal to God as a child to a parent, seeking tenderness. The word *alluph* ('companion, guide, intimate friend') comes from the same root as the word used for the 'gentle' lamb in 11:19, here meaning a trusted, familiar companion. The phrase *ne'urai* ('my youth') refers to the early period of the covenant relationship, the 'honeymoon' at Sinai. The question is whether this appeal is genuine repentance or manipulative language — God's response in verse 5 suggests the latter.
5. The people's words in the first half are self-serving — they assume God's anger must eventually pass, regardless of their behavior. The devastating reply in the second half exposes the gap between their pious words and their actions: 'you have done every evil you could' (*vattukali*, 'and you prevailed' — you succeeded in doing all the evil possible). The verb *tukali* implies mastery — they have become experts at wickedness.
6. The word *meshuvah* ('faithless, apostate, backsliding') is formed from *shuv* — literally 'turned-away Israel.' The phrase 'every high hill and every spreading tree' is a standard formula for Canaanite worship sites (cf. Deuteronomy 12:2, 1 Kings 14:23, 2 Kings 17:10). The historical setting in Josiah's reign (640-609 BCE) places this oracle during the reform period when the full extent of Israel's idolatry was being uncovered.
7. God's expectation — 'she will return' (*tashuv*) — uses the same verb *shuv* yet again, now expressing divine hope met with disappointment. The word *bagodah* ('treacherous') describes Judah, who is about to be shown as worse than Israel. The sisterhood metaphor (Israel and Judah as sisters) appears also in Ezekiel 16 and 23, where the metaphor is developed at much greater length.
8. The *sefer keritut* (*sefer* 'certificate of divorce') is the legal document prescribed in Deuteronomy 24:1. God is depicted as having formally divorced northern Israel — the Assyrian exile of 722 BCE is framed as marital dissolution. The devastating point is that Judah watched her sister's destruction and learned nothing from it. The word *ni'afah* ('committed adultery') is the technical term for marital infidelity, maintaining the marriage metaphor.
9. The phrase 'stone and wood' refers to the materials of idol worship — stone pillars (*matstsebot*) and wooden Asherah poles, or carved stone and wooden images. The irony of 'committing adultery with stone and wood' is biting — Judah has abandoned the living God for lifeless materials. The verb *chanaf* ('defile, pollute') echoes verse 2 and indicates that the land itself is contaminated by idolatry.
10. The phrase *besheqer* ('in falsehood, in pretense') likely refers to Josiah's reforms — which were genuine on the king's part but superficial among the people. The outward destruction of idols did not correspond to inward transformation. The failure to return 'with her whole heart' (*bekhol libbah*) echoes the great Shema command of Deuteronomy 6:5. Judah's repentance was performative, not genuine.
11. The verb *tsiddeqah* ('has justified herself, has shown herself righteous') is a stunning comparison — not that Israel was righteous, but that she is more righteous by comparison with Judah. Judah had the advantage of watching Israel's destruction and still refused to learn. The comparative judgment — the worse sin belongs to the one who had more warning — is a principle Jesus applies in Matthew 11:20-24.
12. The direction *tsafonah* ('toward the north') is toward Assyria, where the northern tribes were exiled in 722 BCE. The call *shuvah meshuvah yisra'el* ('return, faithless Israel') creates an untranslatable wordplay — the verb *shuv* ('return') is addressed to *meshuvah* ('turned-away') Israel, using the same root for both the command and the condition. The adjective *chasid* ('merciful, faithful in love') is rendered 'faithful in love' to connect it to *chesed*, the signature covenant term.

13. The verb *pasha't* ('you have rebelled, transgressed') denotes willful rebellion, not accidental failure. The phrase 'scattered your ways to strangers' (*tefarezri et derakhayikh lazzarim*) is a sexual metaphor — distributing her favors indiscriminately, like a promiscuous woman. The shift from feminine singular (*de'i*, 'acknowledge') to masculine plural (*shema'tem*, 'you obeyed') in the same verse reflects the fluid movement between the personified woman and the actual community.
14. The phrase *ba'alti vakhem* is profoundly ambiguous — *ba'al* means both 'husband/master' and 'to marry/to own.' God simultaneously claims marital authority and ownership. The wordplay *shuvu banim shovavim* ('return, turning-away children') again exploits the *shuv* root. The numbers 'one from a city, two from a clan' indicate that restoration will begin with a small remnant, not a mass return — even individual faithful ones matter to God.
15. The word *ro'im* ('shepherds, pastors') refers to leaders — kings, priests, and prophets who guide the people. The phrase *kellibbi* ('according to my heart') echoes the description of David (1 Samuel 13:14, 'a man after God's own heart'). The future leaders will not merely rule but 'tend' (*ra'u*) the people — the shepherd metaphor implies care, feeding, and protection. The pairing *de'ah vehaskeil* ('knowledge and wisdom') indicates competent, discerning leadership.
16. The fourfold negation is emphatic: (1) they will not say its name, (2) it will not come to mind (*lo ya'aleh al lev*), (3) they will not remember it, (4) they will not miss it (*lo yifqodu* — 'they will not visit/attend to it'). The ark of the covenant was already lost or hidden by Jeremiah's time (its fate is unknown after the Babylonian destruction), but this oracle goes further — it declares that the ark will not even be rebuilt. The covenant relationship will transcend its physical symbols.
17. Jerusalem replaces the ark as the locus of God's presence — the entire city becomes his 'throne' (*kisse*'), not just the mercy seat between the cherubim. The gathering of all nations (*kol haggoyim*) expands the vision beyond Israel to a universal scope. The phrase *sheriyut libbam hara'* ('stubbornness of their evil heart') is the characteristic Jeremiah phrase for settled rebellion (cf. 7:24, 9:13, 11:8, 13:10).
18. The reunification of Judah and Israel — divided since Solomon's death (1 Kings 12) — is a recurring prophetic hope (cf. Ezekiel 37:15-28, Hosea 1:11). The 'land of the north' (*erets tsafon*) refers to the direction of exile (both Assyria and Babylon lie northeast of Israel, but the approach route is from the north). The word *hinachalti* ('I gave as inheritance') uses the root *nachal*, indicating permanent, ancestral possession — the land is not a rental but a family inheritance.
19. God's inner deliberation is poignant — the phrase *eikh ashitek* ('how shall I set you') expresses the desire to include Israel among the children, but the question implies difficulty. The land is described as *erets chemdah* ('a desirable land') and *nachalat tsevi* ('an inheritance of beauty/splendor'), piling up terms of loveliness. The hope 'you will call me *avi* (My Father)' echoes verse 4, but here it is God's wish rather than the people's manipulative appeal. The verb *tashuvi* ('you will turn away') is yet another *shuv* occurrence — the hope that the cycle of turning away will finally end.
20. The verse functions as a devastating pivot — after the tender vision of verses 14-19, God returns to the reality of betrayal. The word *bagdah* ('she has betrayed, dealt treacherously') is the same root used for 'treacherous Judah' (*bogdah*) in verses 7-11, now applied back to Israel. The comparison to a wife leaving her husband (*ishah mere'ah*) sustains the marriage metaphor through the chapter.
21. The *shefayim* ('barren heights') where Israel once prostituted herself (v. 2) now become the place of her weeping — the same locations associated with sin are now associated with repentance. The verb *he'ewu* ('they have twisted, perverted') from the root '*awah*' indicates their path has become crooked and distorted. The forgetting of God (*shakhekhu*) is not mere forgetfulness but willful abandonment of the covenant relationship.
22. This verse contains another concentrated *shuv* wordplay: *shuvu* ('return'), *shovavim* ('turning-away ones'), and *meshuvotekhem* ('your apostasies') are all from the same root. No English can reproduce this — the command to turn-back is addressed to those who have turned-away, promising to heal their turning-away. The response of the people begins the communal confession that runs through verse 25. The transition from divine speech to communal response happens without narrative introduction.
23. The 'hills' and 'mountains' are references to the high places where idols were worshipped — the noisy festivals (*hamon*, 'commotion, tumult') on the mountains produced nothing. The word *lasheqer* ('in vain, falsely, a lie') condemns the entire cult-worship system as deception. The contrast with the final line — *teshu'at yisra'el* ('the salvation of Israel') — sets the false worship against the true God who alone can save.
24. The word *habbosheth* ('the shame, the shameful thing') is likely a dysphemism for Baal, as in 11:13 — the scribal tradition replaces the god's name with 'shame.' The verb *akhelah* ('has devoured, consumed') casts Baal worship as a devouring force that consumed not only livestock (sacrificed to idols) but children (possibly referencing child sacrifice, cf. 7:31, 19:5, 32:35). The confession acknowledges that idolatry has been generational — 'since our youth' (*minne'ureinu*).
25. The communal confession closes with total acknowledgment — sin from youth until the present, spanning generations. The verbs *nishkevah* ('let us lie down') and *tekhassenu* ('let it cover us') depict shame as a physical weight that presses down and covers over. The word *chatanu* ('we have sinned') uses the general term for sin (*chet*, 'missing the mark'). The final clause — 'we have not obeyed the voice of the LORD our God' — directly answers the covenant demand of verse 13 and echoes the covenant formula of 11:4, 7. The confession is genuine, unlike the pretense condemned in verse 10.

4

Summary: *Jeremiah 4 moves from the possibility of return to the certainty of judgment. It opens with a conditional promise — if Israel returns genuinely, blessing will follow — but quickly pivots to an urgent warning: blow the trumpet, flee to the fortified cities, for disaster is coming from the north. The chapter reaches its astonishing climax in verses 23-26, where Jeremiah describes a vision of total cosmic undoing — the earth formless and void, the heavens without light, the mountains quaking, every person gone, every bird fled. This is creation running backward, Genesis 1 in reverse, and it stands as one of the most extraordinary poetic passages in all prophetic literature.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The creation-reversal vision of verses 23-26 is unique in the Hebrew Bible. Jeremiah uses the exact phrase *tohu vavohu* ('formless and void') from Genesis 1:2 — a phrase that appears only in these two places in all of Scripture (and in a variant form in Isaiah 34:11). The prophet sees not merely destruction but de-creation: the undoing of light, land, life, and order in precisely the reverse sequence of Genesis 1. This is not hyperbole but theological statement — sin has so corrupted the created order that God's judgment constitutes a return to primordial chaos. The command to 'circumcise your hearts' (v. 4) introduces an interior demand that anticipates Deuteronomy 30:6 and the new covenant of 31:31-34. We rendered the vision sequence with deliberate echoes of Genesis 1 to help readers hear what Hebrew readers would hear immediately.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *tohu vavohu* required careful handling — we preserved the traditional 'formless and void' because no modern paraphrase captures the primordial resonance as effectively, and the Genesis 1:2 echo must be recognizable. The verb *mul* ('circumcise') in verse 4 is literal surgical language applied metaphorically to the heart, and we retained 'circumcise' rather than softening to 'open' or 'cleanse' because the physicality of the metaphor is theologically significant. The rapid shifts between divine speech, prophetic speech, and the prophet's personal anguish (especially vv. 19-22) required careful attribution. The chapter oscillates between conditional hope (vv. 1-2) and unconditional doom (vv. 5-31) in a way that resists smooth harmonization.*

Connections: *Tohu vavohu (v. 23) connects directly to Genesis 1:2, making this the only passage outside Genesis to use the exact phrase. 'Circumcise your hearts' (v. 4) connects to Deuteronomy 10:16, 30:6, and Romans 2:29. The 'lion from the thicket' (v. 7) connects to Jeremiah 5:6 and 49:19. The approaching army from the north connects to 1:13-15 and 6:1, 22. Jeremiah's anguish in verses 19-21 anticipates the confessions of 11:18-12:6, 15:10-21, and 20:7-18. The 'daughter of my people' (*bat ammi*, v. 11) is a recurring Jeremiah phrase (6:26, 8:11, 8:19, 8:21-22, 9:1). The cosmic judgment language resonates with Isaiah 24 (the 'Isaiah Apocalypse') and anticipates the new heavens and new earth of Isaiah 65:17.*

¹If you return, O Israel — declares the LORD —
return to me.

If you remove your detestable things from my presence
and do not waver,

²and if you swear, 'As the LORD lives,'
in truth, in justice, and in righteousness —
then the nations will bless themselves through him,
and in him they will boast.

³For this is what the LORD says to the people of Judah and to Jerusalem:
Break up your unplowed ground;
do not sow among thorns.

⁴Circumcise yourselves to the LORD
and remove the foreskin of your hearts,
O people of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem —
or my wrath will break out like fire
and burn with no one to quench it,
because of the evil of your deeds.

⁵Announce it in Judah! Proclaim it in Jerusalem!
Sound the trumpet throughout the land!
Cry out and say:
'Gather together! Let us go into the fortified cities!'

⁶Raise the signal flag toward Zion!
Flee for safety — do not stand still!
For I am bringing disaster from the north,
and great destruction.

⁷A lion has come up from his thicket;
a destroyer of nations has set out.
He has left his place
to make your land a desolation.
Your cities will be laid waste,
left without an inhabitant.

⁸For this, put on sackcloth;
mourn and wail,
for the burning anger of the LORD
has not turned back from us.

⁹On that day — declares the LORD — the courage of the king will fail, and the courage of the officials. The priests will be horrified, and the prophets will be stunned. ¹⁰Then I said, "O Lord GOD! You have surely deceived this people and Jerusalem by saying, 'You will have peace,' when the sword reaches the throat!" ¹¹At that time it will be said to this people and to Jerusalem: A scorching wind from the barren heights in the wilderness blows toward the daughter of my people — not to winnow and not to cleanse, ¹²a wind too strong for that comes at my command. Now I myself will pronounce judgments against them.

¹³Look — he advances like storm clouds;
his chariots come like the whirlwind.
His horses are swifter than eagles.
Woe to us, for we are ruined!

¹⁴Wash the evil from your heart, O Jerusalem,
so that you may be saved.
How long will you harbor
wicked schemes within you?

¹⁵For a voice announces from Dan
and proclaims disaster from the hill country of Ephraim.

¹⁶Warn the nations — look!
 Proclaim it against Jerusalem:
 Besiegers are coming from a distant land;
 they raise their war cry against the cities of Judah.

¹⁷They surround her like guards around a field,
 because she has rebelled against me, declares the LORD.

¹⁸Your ways and your deeds have brought this upon you.
 This is your punishment — how bitter it is!
 It has reached your very heart.

¹⁹My anguish, my anguish! I writhe in pain!
 The walls of my heart!
 My heart pounds within me — I cannot keep silent,
 for I hear the sound of the trumpet,
 the alarm of war!

²⁰Disaster upon disaster is announced,
 for the whole land is devastated.
 Suddenly my tents are destroyed,
 my tent curtains in an instant.

²¹How long must I see the battle flag
 and hear the sound of the trumpet?

²²"For my people are foolish —
 they do not know me.
 They are senseless children
 without understanding.
 They are skilled at doing evil,
 but they do not know how to do good."

²³I looked at the earth,
 and it was formless and void.
 I looked at the heavens,
 and their light was gone.

²⁴I looked at the mountains,
 and they were quaking.
 All the hills swayed back and forth.

²⁵I looked, and there was no human being.
 All the birds of the sky had fled.

²⁶I looked, and the fertile land was a wilderness.
 All its cities were torn down
 before the LORD,
 before his burning anger.

²⁷For this is what the LORD says:
The whole land will be desolate,
but I will not make a complete end of it.

²⁸For this the earth will mourn
and the heavens above grow dark,
because I have spoken and I have purposed it.
I will not relent,
and I will not turn back from it.

²⁹At the sound of horsemen and archers
every city takes flight.
They go into the thickets;
they climb up among the rocks.
Every city is abandoned —
not a single person remains in them.

³⁰And you, O devastated one —
what will you do?
Though you dress in scarlet,
though you adorn yourself with gold jewelry,
though you enlarge your eyes with paint —
you beautify yourself for nothing.
Your lovers despise you;
they seek your life.

³¹For I hear a cry like a woman in labor,
anguish like one bearing her first child —
the voice of the daughter of Zion, gasping for breath,
stretching out her hands:
"Woe is me!
I am fainting before the killers!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The conditional 'if' (im) governs the entire opening — the promise of verses 1-2 depends on genuine return. The verb shuv appears twice: 'if you return... return to me,' emphasizing that the turning must be directed specifically toward God, not merely away from sin. The word shiqquṣ ('detestable things, abominations') refers to idols — objects of worship that God finds repulsive. The verb tanuḏ ('waver, stray, wander') indicates that the return must be stable, not another temporary swing between loyalty and apostasy.
2. The oath formula chai-YHWH ('as the LORD lives') was commonly invoked but here God demands it be spoken be'emet ('in truth') — not as an empty formula but as a genuine commitment. The three qualities — emet ('truth, faithfulness'), mishpat ('justice, right judgment'), tsedaqah ('righteousness') — describe the character of a properly ordered covenant community. The phrase vehitbarekhu vo goyim ('the nations will bless themselves in him') echoes the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12:3, 22:18), tying Israel's return to God's universal purpose.
3. The agricultural metaphor niru lakhem nir ('plow for yourselves plowing,' i.e., break up your fallow ground) demands genuine preparation before planting. Fallow ground — hardened by neglect — cannot receive seed. The command not to sow among thorns warns against superficial reform that leaves the roots of idolatry in place. Hosea 10:12 uses identical language: 'Break up your fallow ground, for it is time to seek the LORD.' The metaphor anticipates the parable of the sower (Matthew 13:3-9, 18-23).
4. The phrase arlot levavkhem ('foreskins of your hearts') is strikingly physical — the metaphor transfers surgical removal of flesh to the spiritual removal of resistance and hardness from the inner life. The warning pen teteṣ' ka'esh chamati ('lest my wrath go forth like fire') uses pen ('lest') to indicate that judgment is still avoidable at this point — but barely. The phrase me'in mekhabeh ('with no one to quench') indicates that once God's wrath ignites, no power can extinguish it.

5. The tone shifts abruptly from conditional hope (vv. 1-4) to urgent alarm. The shofar ('trumpet, ram's horn') was the emergency signal for invasion — its blast meant war. The cascade of imperatives — haggidu, hashmi'u, imru, tiq'u, qir'u, mal'u — creates a sense of panicked urgency. The flight to arei hamivtsar ('fortified cities') indicates that the open countryside is no longer safe.
6. The nes ('signal flag, standard, banner') was raised to direct fleeing civilians toward a rally point. The direction mitstsafon ('from the north') echoes 1:13-15, where God first revealed to Jeremiah that judgment would come from the north — the approach route of Mesopotamian armies into Israel. The word shever ('destruction, breaking, shattering') implies total structural collapse.
7. The aryeh ('lion') is a metaphor for the invading king — likely Nebuchadnezzar, though the image is deliberately unspecific at this point. The phrase mashchit goyim ('destroyer of nations') indicates this is not a local threat but an empire-destroying force. The lion emerging from the subbeko ('thicket, lair') combines animal ferocity with military planning. The result — shammah ('desolation') and cities me'ein yoshev ('without inhabitant') — is total depopulation.
8. Sackcloth (saqqim) was the garment of mourning and lamentation — coarse goat hair worn against the skin as a sign of grief. The verb shuv appears again (lo shav, 'has not turned back') — the irony is that Israel has not 'turned back' to God (v. 1), and now God's anger has not 'turned back' from them. The same verb that could have described repentance now describes unrelenting divine wrath.
9. The word lev ('heart') here means courage and resolve, not emotion — when the heart 'perishes' (yo'vad), it means the will to lead collapses. The four leadership groups — king, officials (sarim), priests, and prophets — represent every pillar of Judean society. All four will be paralyzed. The verb nashammu ('will be horrified, desolate') for the priests and yitmahu ('will be astounded, stunned') for the prophets describe leaders too shocked to function.
10. Jeremiah's outcry ahah Adonai YHWH ('O Lord GOD!') is an expression of anguish and near-accusation. The verb hishe'ta ('you have deceived') is extraordinarily bold — Jeremiah accuses God of deception, foreshadowing the even more intense accusation in 20:7 (pittitani, 'you seduced/deceived me'). The 'peace' (shalom) that was promised may refer to the false prophets' message that Jeremiah attributes (here, in his shock) to God himself. The phrase ad hannafesh ('to the throat/life') means the sword has reached the point of death.
11. The ruach tsach ('scorching wind, dry wind') from the desert is the sirocco — the hot east wind that desiccates everything it touches. This wind comes not for the normal agricultural purpose of winnowing (lizrot) or cleaning grain (lehavar) but for destruction. The phrase bat ammi ('daughter of my people') is an intimate, grieving designation — God speaks of Judah as his own daughter even while announcing her destruction.
12. The phrase ruach male' me'elleh ('a wind fuller/stronger than those') means this wind exceeds any natural storm — it is God's instrument of judgment, not merely weather. The verb adabber mishpatim ('I will speak judgments') shifts from meteorological metaphor to legal declaration — God is both storm-sender and judge. The word mishpatim ('judgments, legal sentences') is the language of the courtroom.
13. The invader is compared to unstoppable natural forces — clouds (covering the sky), a whirlwind (destroying everything in its path), and eagles (the fastest creatures known). The three comparisons escalate from visual threat (clouds) to kinetic force (whirlwind) to terrifying speed (eagles). The cry oy lanu ki shuddadnu ('woe to us, for we are ruined!') is the people's own voice breaking into the oracle — the transition from warning to lament.
14. The verb kabbesi ('wash') is the technical term for laundering cloth — scrubbing stains out of fabric. Applied to the heart, it demands thorough cleansing, not a surface rinse. The word machshevot ('schemes, thoughts, plans') combined with onekh ('your wickedness, iniquity') indicates that the problem is not merely sinful actions but sinful planning — the heart itself generates evil. The question 'how long?' (ad matai) implies that delay is no longer possible.
15. Dan was the northernmost city of Israel — the first point of contact for an invading army from the north. Mount Ephraim (har Efrayim) lies between Dan and Jerusalem. The progression Dan Ephraim Jerusalem traces the invader's route southward. The voice (qol) announcing disaster is that of the advance warning runners who would relay news of the army's approach from station to station.
16. The word notserim ('watchers, besiegers, guards') can mean those who watch over a city in siege — surrounding it to prevent escape. The phrase erets hammerchaq ('a distant land') keeps the invader's identity ambiguous while emphasizing the vast distance they have traveled to bring judgment. The verb yittenu qolam ('they give their voice') refers to the war cry — the terrifying shout of an attacking army.
17. The simile compares the besieging army to shomerei sadai ('field guards') — workers who surround a cultivated field to keep animals out. The image is one of total encirclement. The reason for the siege is stated directly: ki oti maratah ('because she has rebelled against me'). The verb marah ('to rebel, to be contentious') makes the invasion not a geopolitical event but a covenant consequence.
18. The verse places responsibility squarely on the people: darkekh uma'alalayikh ('your ways and your deeds') have caused the invasion. The word mar ('bitter') describes the taste of judgment — not merely painful but nauseating. The phrase naga' ad libbek ('it has reached your heart') echoes the earlier command to circumcise the heart (v. 4) — the heart they refused to open to God is now pierced by judgment.
19. This is Jeremiah's personal eruption into the oracle — the prophet's own body responds to the vision of destruction. The word me'ai ('my bowels, my inward parts') refers to the visceral, gut-level pain — the deepest physical reaction to emotional trauma. The phrase qirot libbi ('walls of my heart') is unique — as if the heart itself has walls that are shaking. The verb ochilah ('I writhe, I am in pain') describes the convulsions of anguish. This is the beginning of the personal prophetic lament that marks Jeremiah's unique contribution to prophetic literature.
20. The phrase shever al shever ('disaster upon disaster, breaking upon breaking') conveys cascading catastrophe — each wave of destruction followed immediately by another. The 'tents' (ohalai) and 'tent curtains' (yeri'otai) represent homes and personal shelter. The words pit'om ('suddenly') and rega' ('in an instant') emphasize the speed of the collapse — there is no gradual decline, only instant obliteration.

21. The nes ('banner, signal flag') and shofar ('trumpet') are the instruments of war — the visual and auditory signals of battle. Jeremiah's question 'how long?' (ad matai) is both a lament and an accusation — he is forced to witness destruction he cannot prevent. This echoes the psalms of lament (Psalm 13:1-2, 'How long, O LORD?').
22. God answers Jeremiah's lament with a devastating character assessment. The word evil ('foolish') describes not intellectual deficiency but moral stupidity — willful ignorance of God. The contrast chakhamim hemah lehara' ('they are wise at evil') with uleheitiv lo yada'u ('but doing good they do not know') is bitterly ironic — their expertise is in wrongdoing, their incompetence is in righteousness. The word sekhalim ('senseless, stupid') is harsher than evil — it implies thick-headed obtuseness.
23. We preserved 'formless and void' — the traditional rendering of *tohu vavohu* — specifically because the Genesis 1:2 echo must be immediately recognizable to English readers familiar with creation language. Any paraphrase ('chaotic wasteland,' 'empty desolation') would lose the intertextual connection. The fourfold 'I looked' sequence (ra'iti... v. 23, 24, 25, 26) structures the vision as a systematic survey of de-creation: earth, heavens, mountains, living creatures — each domain of Genesis 1 undone in order.
24. The mountains — symbols of permanence and stability in Hebrew thought (Psalm 125:1-2) — are ro'ashim ('quaking, trembling'). The verb *hitqalqelu* ('they swayed, moved to and fro') for the hills suggests violent oscillation. In Genesis 1, God separated the waters and let dry land appear (Genesis 1:9-10); here the solid ground itself becomes unstable. The creation-reversal sequence continues: after earth and light (v. 23), the stability of the terrain (v. 24).
25. The word *ha'adam* ('the human, humanity') echoes Genesis 1:26-27, where God created *ha'adam*. Now *ha'adam* is gone — de-creation has reversed the sixth day. The birds of the sky (of *hashamayim*) were created on the fifth day (Genesis 1:20-21); they too have fled. The sequence precisely reverses Genesis: light gone (v. 23 = Day 1 reversed), land unstable (v. 24 = Day 3 reversed), humans gone (v. 25a = Day 6 reversed), birds gone (v. 25b = Day 5 reversed). The Hebrew *ein* ('there was not') has the absolute finality of absence.
26. The *karmel* ('fertile land, orchard, garden land') has become *midbar* ('wilderness, desert') — the cultivated abundance of Genesis 1:11-12 (vegetation) and 1:29 (seed-bearing plants) is reversed. The cities — the pinnacle of human civilization — are *nittsetsu* ('torn down, demolished'). The cause is stated twice for emphasis: *mippenei YHWH*, *mippenei charon appo* ('before the LORD, before his burning anger'). The vision has now completed its survey: cosmos (v. 23), terrain (v. 24), life (v. 25), civilization (v. 26) — all undone.
27. After the total de-creation vision of verses 23-26, this verse introduces a stunning qualification: *vekhalah lo e'eseh* ('but a complete end I will not make'). The judgment, however cosmic in its imagery, will not be final — a thread of hope persists even in the most absolute destruction oracle. The word *shemamah* ('desolation, horror') describes a landscape so devastated that it causes shuddering in anyone who sees it.
28. The earth mourns (*te'eval*) and the heavens darken (*qaderu*) — creation itself responds to God's judgment with grief. The verb *zammoti* ('I have purposed, I have planned') indicates deliberate intent, not impulsive rage. The double negation *lo nichamti* ('I will not relent') and *lo ashuv* ('I will not turn back') uses *shuv* once more — God will not 'turn back' from judgment, just as the people would not 'turn back' to him. The irony of *shuv* continues to the end.
29. The panic is universal — *kol ha'ir* ('every city') flees. The flight into thickets (*ba'avim*) and up onto rocks (*bakkefim*) depicts civilians scrambling for any hiding place. The word *azuva* ('abandoned, deserted, forsaken') carries emotional weight — the cities are not just empty but forsaken, like a wife abandoned by her husband (cf. Isaiah 54:6), connecting back to the marital metaphor of chapter 3.
30. Jerusalem is personified as a woman trying to make herself attractive to her former lovers (the foreign allies she courted through political treaties and religious syncretism). The scarlet clothing (*shani*), gold jewelry (*adi zahav*), and eye paint (*pukh*) are the trappings of seduction. The bitter irony: the lovers she adorns herself for now want to kill her (*nafshekh yevaqueshu*, 'they seek your life'). The word *ma'asu* ('they despise, reject') means her allies have turned into her destroyers.
31. The chapter closes with a devastating image: *bat Tsiyon* ('the daughter of Zion') is compared to a woman in her first labor (*kemavkirah*) — the most painful and terrifying birth experience, compounded by inexperience. The verb *tityappeach* ('she gasps, she pants') describes the ragged breathing of extreme pain or terror. The stretching out of hands (*tefaresh kappeha*) is the gesture of desperate supplication — reaching for help that will not come. Her final cry — *ki ayfah nafshi lehoregim* ('my soul faints before the killers') — ends the chapter with the voice of a dying city.

5

Summary: *Jeremiah 5 intensifies the indictment of Jerusalem with a divine challenge: search the city for even one person who acts justly and seeks truth, and God will pardon it. The search proves futile — from the poorest to the greatest, all have broken the yoke and shattered the bonds of covenant. The chapter catalogs the nation's sins: adultery and idolatry, willful spiritual blindness, false prophets who prophesy lies, and a people who love it so. God announces that a distant, ancient nation will come as the instrument of judgment — a terrifying army that devours harvest, flocks, sons, daughters, and fortified cities.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening challenge to find one righteous person echoes Abraham's negotiation with God over Sodom (Genesis 18:22-33), but with a devastating reduction — Abraham bargained God down to ten righteous, while here God asks for only one and finds none. The language of verses 20-25 presents a striking courtroom theology: creation itself obeys God's boundaries (the sea stays within its shore), but Israel refuses every boundary God has set. The false prophecy motif appears for the first time with the phrase 'wind and there is no word in them' (v. 13), and the condemnation of prophets and priests in verses 30-31 anticipates the 'shalom shalom' crisis of chapter 6. The 'ancient nation' of verse 15 is Babylon, though never named here — the anonymity increases the dread.*

Translation Friction: *The verb zannah ('commit adultery/prostitution') in verse 7 carries both literal sexual and metaphorical idolatrous meaning, and we rendered it to preserve this dual register. The word me'anah ('they have refused') in verse 3 uses the same root as Pharaoh's refusal in Exodus, creating an ironic reversal — Israel now acts like Egypt. In verse 22, the rhetorical question 'Do you not fear me?' (ha-oti lo tira'u) contains a wordplay between yir'ah ('fear/reverence') and ra'ah ('see'), both of which the people have abandoned. The phrase 'eternal statutes' (choq olam) for the sea boundary in verse 22 required an expanded_ rendering to capture the cosmological weight of olam in this creation context.*

Connections: *The search for one righteous person connects to Genesis 18:22-33 (Abraham and Sodom), Ezekiel 22:30 (God seeking someone to stand in the gap), and Isaiah 59:16 (God astonished that there was no intercessor). The 'enemy from the north' theme begun in 1:14-15 develops here into a specific military threat (vv. 15-17). The creation theology of verses 22-24 — God who set the sand as boundary for the sea — connects to Job 38:8-11 and Psalm 104:9. The false prophecy condemnation anticipates the full-scale confrontation with false prophets in chapters 23, 27-28. The closing question 'What will you do when the end comes?' (v. 31) reverberates through Ezekiel 7 and into apocalyptic literature.*

1Go through the streets of Jerusalem — look and take note. Search in her public squares: can you find even one person who acts justly and seeks faithfulness? If so, I will pardon the city. 2Even when they say, 'As the LORD lives,' they are swearing falsely. 3LORD, do your eyes not look for faithfulness? You have struck them, but they felt no pain. You have crushed them, but they refused to accept correction. They have made their faces harder than rock; they have refused to turn back. 4Then I said: These are only the poor — they are foolish because they do not know the way of the LORD or the justice their God requires. 5Let me go to the leaders and speak with them, for they know the way of the LORD and the justice their God requires. But they too had broken the yoke entirely and snapped the restraints. 6Therefore a lion from the forest will strike them down, a wolf of the desert will ravage them, a leopard will prowl at their cities — everyone who goes out will be torn apart. For their rebellions are many and their acts of faithlessness are countless. 7How can I pardon you for this? Your children have abandoned me and sworn oaths by what are not gods. When I satisfied them with plenty, they committed adultery and crowded into the house of the prostitute. 8They are well-fed, lusty stallions, each one neighing after his neighbor's wife. 9Should I not punish them for these things? — declares the LORD. Should I not avenge myself against a nation such as this? 10Go up through her vine rows and destroy — but do not make a complete end. Strip away her branches, for they do not belong to the LORD. 11For the house of Israel and the house of Judah have been utterly faithless toward me, declares the LORD. 12They have denied the LORD and said, 'He will do nothing. No disaster will come upon us; we will never see sword or famine.' 13The prophets are nothing but wind — there is no word in them. What they threaten will happen to

them instead! ¹⁴Therefore, this is what the LORD, the God of Hosts, says: Because you have spoken this way, I am making my words in your mouth a fire, and this people will be the wood, and the fire will consume them. ¹⁵I am bringing a nation against you from far away, O house of Israel — declares the LORD. It is an enduring nation, an ancient nation, a nation whose language you do not know, whose speech you cannot understand. ¹⁶Their quiver is like an open grave — they are all warriors. ¹⁷They will devour your harvest and your food. They will devour your sons and your daughters. They will devour your flocks and your herds. They will devour your vines and your fig trees. They will shatter your fortified cities in which you trust — by the sword. ¹⁸Yet even in those days — declares the LORD — I will not make a complete end of you. ¹⁹When they ask, 'Why has the LORD our God done all this to us?' — you will tell them: Just as you abandoned me and served foreign gods in your own land, so you will serve foreigners in a land that is not yours. ²⁰Declare this in the house of Jacob and proclaim it in Judah: ²¹Hear this, you senseless people, who have no understanding — who have eyes but do not see, who have ears but do not hear! ²²Do you not fear me? — declares the LORD. Do you not tremble before me? I set the sand as a boundary for the sea, an eternal limit it cannot cross. Though its waves surge, they cannot prevail; though they roar, they cannot pass beyond it. ²³But this people has a stubborn and rebellious heart — they have turned aside and gone away. ²⁴They do not say in their hearts, 'Let us fear the LORD our God, who gives the rain — the autumn and spring rains in their season — who keeps for us the appointed weeks of the harvest.' ²⁵Your iniquities have turned these things away, and your sins have kept good things from you. ²⁶For wicked people are found among my people. They lie in wait like fowlers crouching down; they set traps — they catch human beings. ²⁷As a cage is full of birds, so their houses are full of treachery. That is how they have grown powerful and rich. ²⁸They have grown fat and sleek. They surpass even the deeds of the wicked. They do not defend the rights of the fatherless — yet they prosper — and they do not uphold the justice due to the poor. ²⁹Should I not punish them for these things? — declares the LORD. Should I not avenge myself against a nation such as this? ³⁰An appalling and horrible thing has happened in the land: ³¹The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests rule at their direction — and my people love it this way! But what will you do when the end comes?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The imperative shotetu ('go about, roam, search') suggests a thorough, street-by-street investigation. The challenge echoes Abraham's negotiation for Sodom in Genesis 18:22-33, but reduces the threshold from ten righteous to one — and still none is found. The word emunah ('faithfulness') from the root aleph-mem-nun ('to be firm') goes beyond mere truthfulness to covenantal reliability.
2. The oath formula 'As the LORD lives' (chai YHWH) was the most solemn declaration in Israelite culture. Using God's name in a false oath compounds the sin — it is not just dishonesty but profanation of the divine name, violating the third commandment (Exodus 20:7).
3. The phrase me'anu lashov ('they refused to return') uses the key Jeremican verb shuv, which carries the double meaning of repentance and physical turning. The image of faces harder than rock (sela) suggests willful imperviousness — not inability to change but adamant refusal. The word musar ('correction, discipline') implies God's previous punishments were intended as instructive, not merely punitive.
4. Jeremiah initially excuses the common people (dallim, 'poor, lowly'), attributing their disobedience to ignorance rather than malice. The assumption is that the educated leaders would know better — an assumption the next verse destroys. The word no'alu ('they are foolish') implies senselessness, not mere lack of education.
5. The 'great ones' (gedolim) are the ruling class — priests, prophets, royal officials. The yoke (ol) and restraints (moserot) are metaphors for covenant obligations. 'Breaking the yoke' describes willful rejection of God's authority, not mere drift. The word yachdav ('together, altogether') emphasizes that this was collective, unanimous rebellion — not a few individuals but the entire leadership class.
6. Three predators — lion, wolf, leopard — represent escalating danger from every direction. The phrase ze'ev aravot ('wolf of the desert/steppe') describes wolves from the barren wastelands, desperate and aggressive. The word meshuvotehem ('their turnings away, backslidings') uses the same root shuv — they have turned away from God so often that judgment now stalks them like wild predators. The word peshah'ehem ('their rebellions') denotes willful transgression, not accidental sin.
7. The verb na'afu ('they committed adultery') operates on two levels simultaneously: literal sexual immorality and metaphorical worship of foreign gods. The phrase 'sworn by what are not gods' (lo elohim) echoes Deuteronomy 32:21 — they provoke God with 'no-gods.' The word va'asbia ('I satisfied them') shares a root with sheva ('oath/seven/fullness'), creating a wordplay: God fulfilled his oath of abundance, and they used that abundance for debauchery.
8. The image is deliberately crude: susim meyuzzanim ('well-fed stallions') compares the men of Jerusalem to stud horses in heat. The verb yitshalu ('they neigh') is the sound a stallion makes when pursuing a mare — applied to human beings, it strips away all pretense of dignity. This is not subtle prophetic metaphor; it is designed to shame.

9. This rhetorical refrain appears three times in the chapter (vv. 9, 29), framing the indictment. The verb *paqad* ('visit, attend to, punish') is the same word used for God's 'visiting' Egypt with plagues — now directed at his own people. The phrase *titnaqqem nafshi* ('shall my soul/self be avenged') attributes deep personal feeling to God — this is not detached judicial action but a wronged party's righteous anger.
10. The metaphor shifts to viticulture: *sharoteyha* ('her vine rows/terraces') and *netishoteha* ('her branches/tendrils') depict Judah as a vineyard (cf. Isaiah 5:1-7). The command to destroy but not completely (*kalah al ta'asu*) preserves the remnant theology — God's judgment is severe but not annihilating. The branches that do not belong to the LORD are the idolatrous elements that have infiltrated the covenant people.
11. The emphatic infinitive absolute *bagod bagdu* ('they have utterly betrayed') stresses the completeness of the treachery. The verb *bagad* carries the sense of marital betrayal — faithlessness within a committed relationship, not violation by a stranger but betrayal by a spouse. Both kingdoms are indicted together.
12. The verb *kichashu* ('they have denied, lied about') goes beyond mere unbelief — it is an active denial of God's relevance. Their statement *lo hu* ('not he' or 'it is not so') effectively dismisses God as a factor in their national life. This is not atheism but functional deism — acknowledging God's existence while denying his active involvement and his power to punish.
13. The people dismiss the true prophets as *ruach* ('wind') — empty air with no substance. The wordplay is sharp: *ruach* means both 'wind' and 'spirit,' and the prophets claim to speak by the Spirit (*ruach*) of God. The people reduce divine spirit to empty bluster. The phrase *haddiber en bahem* ('the word is not in them') denies that these prophets carry any genuine divine message. The final clause turns their dismissal back on them — what they call empty threats will become their reality.
14. God responds to the people's dismissal of the prophets by intensifying the prophetic word — the message they called empty wind will become consuming fire. The metaphor is devastatingly simple: if the people are wood, the word of God is fire, and fire consumes wood. The address shifts to Jeremiah personally ('your mouth'), affirming him as the authentic bearer of the divine word the people have rejected.
15. Babylon is described without being named — the anonymity heightens the terror. The word *eitan* ('enduring, mighty, permanent') suggests a power that will not be easily dislodged. The phrase *goy me'olam* ('a nation from ancient times') emphasizes Babylon's deep historical roots. The language barrier — 'you will not understand what they say' — strips away any possibility of negotiation or appeal. The invader is utterly alien.
16. The simile is chilling: a quiver (*ashpato*) compared to an open grave (*qever patuach*) means that every arrow is a death sentence. The grave stands open, waiting for the bodies that these arrows will produce. The phrase *kullam gibborim* ('all of them warriors') eliminates any hope of finding weakness in the invading force.
17. The fivefold repetition of the verb *akhal* ('devour, eat, consume') creates a devastating catalogue of total consumption: crops, children, livestock, orchards, and cities. The verb is the same for all — the enemy consumes everything with the same indiscriminate appetite. The list moves from agricultural goods to human beings to permanent infrastructure, showing that nothing will remain. The word *boteach* ('trusting') in reference to fortified cities implies misplaced confidence in military defenses rather than in God.
18. A sudden note of restraint in the midst of devastating judgment. The phrase *lo e'eseh kalah* ('I will not make a complete end') preserves remnant theology — God's judgment, however severe, will not be total annihilation. This mirrors verse 10's command to destroy but not completely.
19. The principle of measure-for-measure justice (*middah keneged middah*) operates here: they served foreign gods in their own land, so they will serve foreign people in a foreign land. The wordplay between *elohei nekhar* ('foreign gods') and *zarim* ('foreigners/strangers') ties idolatry directly to exile — the punishment mirrors the crime. The phrase *eret lo lakhem* ('a land not yours') reverses the promise of the land flowing with milk and honey.
20. The use of 'Jacob' alongside 'Judah' reaches back to the patriarchal name, reminding the people of their identity as descendants of the man who wrestled with God. The parallel between declaring (*haggidu*) and proclaiming (*hashmi'uha*) emphasizes that this is a public announcement, not a private revelation.
21. The phrase *am sakhal ve'en lev* ('senseless people without heart') combines two deficiencies: *sakhal* ('foolish, senseless') and the lack of *lev* ('heart'), which in Hebrew is the organ of understanding and will, not emotion. The parallel of unseeing eyes and unhearing ears echoes Isaiah 6:9-10 and Ezekiel 12:2. Jesus quotes this tradition in Mark 8:18 when confronting his own disciples' incomprehension.
22. The creation theology here echoes Job 38:8-11 and Psalm 104:9 — God's sovereign control over the sea as evidence of cosmic authority. The rhetorical force is devastating: the mindless sea obeys God's boundary, but rational Israel does not. The word *chol* ('sand') as boundary for the sea emphasizes that even the most apparently fragile barrier holds firm when God establishes it. The implied contrast is between creation's obedience and Israel's rebellion.
23. The phrase *lev sorer umoreh* ('a stubborn and rebellious heart') uses the same pair of adjectives applied to the 'stubborn and rebellious son' in Deuteronomy 21:18-21, who was subject to the death penalty. The legal implication is severe: Israel is behaving like the incorrigible son of covenant law. The verbs *saru vayelexhu* ('they turned aside and went away') describe departure from the covenant path.
24. The 'former rain' (*yoreh*) falls in October-November to soften the ground for plowing; the 'latter rain' (*malqosh*) falls in March-April to fill the grain before harvest. Both are essential to the agricultural cycle, and both come from God. The 'appointed weeks of harvest' (*shevuot chuqqot qatsir*) refers to the reliable seven-week period between Passover and Shavuot (the Feast of Weeks). The point is that God's faithful provision of agricultural rhythms should have taught Israel to trust and obey him.

25. The two words for wrongdoing — *avonoteikhem* ('your iniquities,' from the root meaning 'to twist, distort') and *chattoteikhem* ('your sins,' from the root meaning 'to miss the mark') — represent different dimensions of moral failure. Iniquity twists what should be straight; sin misses what should be hit. Together they have disrupted the natural order — even the rains that God appointed have been withheld because of the people's corruption.
26. The imagery is of bird-trappers (*yoqushim*) who crouch hidden and set snares (*mashchit*) — but instead of birds, they catch human beings. The word *yashur* ('he watches, peers') describes the patient, concealed observation of a hunter waiting for prey. The metaphor exposes the predatory nature of the wicked within Israel — they exploit their own people as a hunter exploits helpless birds.
27. The *kelub* ('cage, basket') full of captured birds parallels houses full of *mirmah* ('deceit, treachery'). Their wealth is not earned but trapped — accumulated through predatory deception of vulnerable people. The verbs *gadelu* ('they have grown great') and *ya'ashiru* ('they have grown rich') are presented as consequences of fraud, not blessing.
28. The verbs *shamenu* ('they have grown fat') and *ashtu* ('they are sleek, smooth') describe the physical prosperity of the corrupt — their bodies testify to their unjust wealth. The specific accusation is failure to defend the *yatom* ('orphan, fatherless') and the *evyon* ('poor, needy') — the two most vulnerable categories in Israelite social law. The prophets consistently identify justice for the vulnerable as the litmus test of covenant faithfulness (cf. Isaiah 1:17, Amos 2:6-7).
29. This refrain repeats verbatim from verse 9, creating a literary frame around the expanded indictment. The repetition signals that the case has been fully presented and the verdict is now inescapable. The question is rhetorical — of course God must act.
30. The pair *shammah veshaararurah* ('appalling and horrible') intensifies the shock. The word *shammah* means 'desolation, horror' — something that causes onlookers to gasp. The word *shaararurah* ('horrible thing') is extremely rare in Hebrew and appears only in Jeremiah (here and 23:14) and Hosea 6:10, always describing something within Israel that provokes divine disgust.
31. The triad of corruption — prophets, priests, and people — forms a closed system of mutual reinforcement. The prophets prophesy *basheqer* ('with falsehood'), the priests *yirdu al yedeihem* ('rule at their side/direction'), and the people *ahavu ken* ('love it this way'). The most devastating element is the last: the people are not deceived against their will — they prefer the deception. The closing question *umah ta'asu le'acharitah* ('what will you do at its end?') is left unanswered, hanging in the air as an invitation to self-examination that the text knows will go unheeded.

6

Summary: *Jeremiah 6 closes the opening cycle of oracles (chapters 1-6) with an urgent call to flee Jerusalem before the approaching enemy arrives. The Babylonian army is depicted as shepherds camping around the city, as workers building siege ramps, and as grape-harvesters stripping the vine bare. At the center of the chapter stands one of the most celebrated verses in the prophetic canon: 'Stand at the crossroads and look; ask for the ancient paths' (v. 16). The chapter contains the devastating 'Peace, peace!' indictment (v. 14) — false prophets and priests heal the wound of God's people superficially, crying 'Shalom! Shalom!' when there is no shalom. The chapter concludes with the refiner's fire metaphor: God has tested his people like a metalworker testing ore, and found them to be refuse silver — impurities that cannot be separated out.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 14 introduces the phrase that will become the signature indictment of false prophecy in the entire book: shalom shalom ve'en shalom ('Peace, peace — but there is no peace'). It is repeated verbatim in 8:11. Verse 16 — 'Stand at the crossroads and ask for the ancient paths, where the good way is' — has become one of the most widely quoted prophetic texts in any tradition, but its context is often lost: the people's response is 'We will not walk in it.' The refiner's metaphor in verses 27-30 is significant because it fails — normally in prophetic literature, refining produces purified metal (cf. Malachi 3:2-3), but here the refining process cannot extract any silver because the corruption is too deep. The people are declared 'rejected silver' (*kesef nim'as*). This chapter marks the end of Jeremiah's initial preaching before the temple sermon of chapter 7.*

Translation Friction: *The verb tsaraph ('to refine, smelt') in verses 27-29 required careful handling because the metaphor inverts the expected outcome — refining here fails rather than succeeds. The phrase derekh hatov ('the good way') in verse 16 had to be rendered without importing later Christian readings of 'the way' while preserving the full weight of the Hebrew. The word mabtsur ('fortification') versus batsar ('to cut off grapes') in verses 6-9 creates a wordplay between siege warfare and grape harvesting that cannot be replicated in English and required a translator note. The cry shalom shalom in verse 14 was rendered as 'Peace, peace!' to preserve the hollow repetition — a single 'peace' would lose the desperate, formulaic quality of the false assurance.*

Connections: The 'Peace, peace!' cry connects forward to 8:11 (verbatim repetition), 14:13 (false prophets promising peace), 23:17, 28:9, and Ezekiel 13:10-16 (prophets who whitewash with plaster). The 'ancient paths' of verse 16 connect to Deuteronomy's emphasis on walking in God's ways (Deuteronomy 5:33, 10:12). The refiner's metaphor connects to Isaiah 1:22-25 (dross), Ezekiel 22:18-22 (furnace), Zechariah 13:9, and Malachi 3:2-3 (refiner's fire). The enemy-from-the-north theme reaches its fullest pre-siege expression here, begun in 1:14-15 and continued in 4:5-8 and 5:15-17. The call to flee Judah's territory (v. 1) anticipates Jesus's warning to flee Jerusalem in the Olivet Discourse (Matthew 24:16).

¹Take refuge, sons of Benjamin, away from the heart of Jerusalem! Blow the trumpet in Tekoa and raise a signal fire over Beth-hakkerem — for disaster looms from the north, and great destruction. ²The beautiful and pampered one — I will destroy the daughter of Zion. ³Shepherds will come against her with their flocks. They will pitch their tents all around her; each one will graze his own portion. ⁴Consecrate war against her! Rise up — let us attack at noon! 'Woe to us, for the day is fading and the evening shadows are stretching long!' ⁵Rise up — let us attack in the night and demolish her fortresses! ⁶For this is what the LORD of Hosts says: Cut down her trees and build a siege ramp against Jerusalem. This is the city that must be punished — she is filled with nothing but oppression. ⁷As a well keeps its water fresh, so she keeps her wickedness fresh. Violence and destruction echo through her; sickness and wounds are constantly before me. ⁸Accept discipline, O Jerusalem, or I will turn away from you in disgust. I will make you a desolation — a land where no one lives. ⁹This is what the LORD of Hosts says: They will glean what remains of Israel thoroughly, like a vine. Pass your hand again over the branches, like a grape-harvester. ¹⁰To whom can I speak and give warning so they will listen? Look — their ears are uncircumcised; they cannot pay attention. The word of the LORD has become an object of scorn to them; they take no pleasure in it. ¹¹But I am filled with the wrath of the LORD — I am exhausted from holding it in. Pour it out on the children in the streets and on the gatherings of young men alike! For both husband and wife will be seized, the elderly along with the very old. ¹²Their houses will be handed over to others, their fields and their wives alike — for I will stretch out my hand against the inhabitants of the land, declares the LORD. ¹³For from the least to the greatest, every one of them pursues dishonest profit. From prophet to priest, every one of them practices fraud. ¹⁴They have treated the wound of my people as though it were nothing, saying, 'Peace, peace!' — but there is no peace. ¹⁵Are they ashamed of the detestable things they have done? They are not ashamed at all — they do not even know how to blush. Therefore they will fall among the fallen. When I punish them, they will stumble, says the LORD. ¹⁶This is what the LORD says: Stand at the crossroads and look. Ask for the ancient paths — where the good way is — and walk in it, and you will find rest for your souls. But they said, 'We will not walk in it.' ¹⁷And I raised up watchmen over you, saying, 'Listen for the sound of the trumpet!' But they said, 'We will not listen.' ¹⁸Therefore hear, you nations, and take note, O assembly, of what is happening among them. ¹⁹Listen, O earth! I am bringing disaster upon this people — the fruit of their own schemes — because they have not listened to my words and have rejected my instruction. ²⁰What use to me is frankincense from Sheba or fragrant cane from a distant land? Your burnt offerings are not acceptable, and your sacrifices do not please me. ²¹Therefore, this is what the LORD says: I am going to place stumbling blocks before this people, and they will stumble over them — fathers and sons together, neighbors and friends will perish. ²²This is what the LORD says: A people is coming from the land of the north — a great nation is stirring from the farthest reaches of the earth. ²³They grasp bow and javelin. They are cruel and show no mercy. Their sound roars like the sea. They ride on horses, drawn up for battle like a single warrior — against you, O daughter of Zion. ²⁴We have heard the report of them — our hands hang limp. Anguish has seized us, pain like a woman in labor. ²⁵Do not go out into the field or walk along the road, for the enemy has a sword — there is terror on every side. ²⁶O daughter of my people, put on sackcloth and roll in ashes. Mourn as for an only child — with the most bitter lamentation — for the destroyer will come upon us suddenly. ²⁷I have made you a tester among my people, a refiner — so that you may know and examine their ways. ²⁸All of them are hardened rebels, going about as slanderers. They are bronze and iron — all of them are corrupt. ²⁹The bellows blow fiercely — the lead is consumed by the fire. The refining goes on in vain, for the wicked impurities cannot be separated out. ³⁰They are called 'rejected silver,' for the LORD has rejected them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The wordplay between Tekoa (teqoa) and 'blow' (tiq'u) is characteristic of Jeremiah's rhetorical style — the name of the town sounds like the command to blow the trumpet. Beth-hakkerem ('house of the vineyard') was a hilltop south of Jerusalem suitable for signal fires. The 'sons of Benjamin' are addressed because Jeremiah himself was from Benjaminites territory (Anathoth), and Benjamin's tribal land lay immediately north of Jerusalem — the direction from which the enemy approaches. The verb nishqefah ('looks out, peers down') personifies the disaster as an enemy scanning from the northern heights.
2. The Hebrew is ambiguous: damiti can derive from either damah ('to be like, compare') or damah ('to destroy, silence'). The KJV follows the first reading ('I have likened'), but many scholars and modern translations follow the second ('I will destroy/silence'). The juxtaposition of beauty (na'avah, 'lovely') and destruction creates a deliberate shock — the delicate, beautiful city is about to be devastated. We follow the destruction reading as it better fits the threatening context.
3. The 'shepherds' (ro'im) with their 'flocks' (edreihem) is a double metaphor: the enemy commanders are shepherds, their armies are flocks, and Jerusalem is the pasture they will consume. The phrase ra'u ish et yado ('each grazes his own portion') depicts a methodical, orderly siege — each unit assigned its section of the wall to attack. The pastoral imagery masks military brutality.
4. The verb qaddushu ('consecrate, sanctify') applied to war reveals the ancient Near Eastern concept of warfare as a sacred act requiring ritual preparation. The enemy's eagerness is so fierce that they lament the coming of evening — they cannot wait until morning to resume the attack. The dialogue format dramatizes the invader's impatience.
5. The enemy's resolve overrides normal military caution — night attacks were rare and dangerous in the ancient world. The word armenoteyha ('her palaces, fortresses') targets the centers of royal and military power. The urgency continues from verse 4: unable to wait for daylight, they attack through the darkness.
6. The siege ramp (solelah) was built by cutting trees and piling earth and timber against the city wall until attackers could scale it. The word hofqad ('must be punished, visited') uses the judicial verb paqad — the divine visitation is punitive. The phrase kulah osheq beqirbah ('all of her is oppression within her') depicts a city whose internal character is entirely corrupt — oppression is not an occasional failing but the defining quality of Jerusalem's social life.
7. The comparison of Jerusalem to a bor ('cistern, well') that keeps its water flowing is inverted — instead of fresh water, the city produces a constant flow of fresh wickedness. The word hamas ('violence') is the same word used in Genesis 6:11 to describe the corruption that prompted the flood. The pairing of choli ('sickness') and makkah ('wounds, blows') depicts Jerusalem as a battered, diseased body — her social corruption manifests as physical affliction.
8. The verb tiqqa ('will be torn away, wrenched away') describes God's own soul (nafshi) being violently separated from Jerusalem — not a calm departure but a wrenching away in revulsion. The word shemamah ('desolation, wasteland') describes not just emptiness but a horror that appalls onlookers. The phrase erets lo noshavah ('a land not inhabited') is the ultimate reversal of the promised land — the land flowing with milk and honey becomes a land where no one can live.
9. The gleanings metaphor (olel ye'olelu) describes a second pass through the vineyard to collect every last grape — nothing will be left. The word she'erit ('remnant') here does not carry its positive theological sense (the surviving faithful) but describes what little remains of Israel after the initial devastation. The salsilot ('branches, tendrils') must be stripped bare — a thorough, methodical destruction.
10. The phrase arelah oznam ('their ear is uncircumcised') is a striking metaphor: just as uncircumcised flesh marks someone as outside the covenant, uncircumcised ears indicate hearts closed to God's word. The concept of 'circumcised ears' appears also in Acts 7:51. The progression from inability ('they cannot pay attention') to unwillingness ('they take no pleasure in it') shows both cognitive and volitional rejection. Jeremiah's frustration as a prophet who cannot find a receptive audience echoes throughout his confessions.
11. Jeremiah experiences God's wrath physically — he is 'filled' (male'ti) with it and 'exhausted' (nil'eti) from containing it. The prophetic experience is not detached proclamation but embodied suffering. The inclusivity of judgment is total: children (olal), young men (bachurim), married couples (ish im ishah), and the elderly (zaqen im mele yamim) — no age or status is exempt.
12. The loss of houses, fields, and wives inverts the covenant blessings of Deuteronomy 28:3-6 and fulfills the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:30 ('You will build a house but not live in it; you will plant a vineyard but not enjoy its fruit; your wife will be taken by another'). The phrase atteh et yadi ('I will stretch out my hand') echoes God's outstretched hand against Egypt in the Exodus — now the same hand strikes his own people.
13. The phrase botse'a batsa ('pursuing dishonest gain') describes systematic economic exploitation — not occasional greed but a way of life. The parallel between 'least to greatest' (social hierarchy) and 'prophet to priest' (religious leadership) means the entire society, both civil and sacred, is corrupt. The word sheqer ('falsehood, fraud') applied to both prophet and priest means the religious establishment has become a machine for producing lies.
14. This is one of the most famous verses in Jeremiah, repeated verbatim in 8:11. The verb rappu ('they have healed') is used with al neqallah ('superficially, lightly') — they have treated a catastrophic wound (shever, 'fracture, break, shattering') as if it were trivial. The doubling shalom shalom is emphatic — 'total peace, complete peace!' — making the lie even more egregious. The final ve'en shalom ('but there is no peace') delivers the prophet's devastating verdict in three Hebrew words.

15. The to'evah ('abomination, detestable thing') is a technical term for practices that violate the covenant's holiness standards, especially idolatry and social injustice. The phrase bosh lo yevoshu ('they are utterly unashamed') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute. The lost capacity for shame (hakhlim lo yada'u, 'they do not know how to blush') describes a moral sensibility so deadened that the normal human response to wrongdoing has been extinguished.
16. This is one of the most celebrated verses in prophetic literature. The derekh hatov ('the good way') is singular — there is one right path, not many options. The netivot olam ('ancient paths') are not merely historical traditions but the covenant way of life God established. The word margo'a ('rest') for the nafshekhem ('your souls/selves') echoes the Sabbath rest theology. The devastating conclusion — vayomeru lo neleq ('But they said: We will not walk in it') — transforms what could be an inspiring invitation into a tragedy of refusal.
17. The tsofim ('watchmen') are the prophets — sentinels stationed on the wall to warn of approaching danger (cf. Ezekiel 3:17, 33:7). The shofar ('trumpet, ram's horn') was the warning signal for imminent military attack. The people's response — lo naqshiv ('we will not listen') — directly echoes their refusal to walk in the ancient paths (v. 16). The pattern of refusal is now established: they will not walk, they will not listen.
18. God summons the nations (goyim) as witnesses to Israel's trial — a covenant lawsuit (riv) convention in which heaven and earth or the surrounding nations serve as witnesses to covenant violation (cf. Deuteronomy 32:1, Isaiah 1:2, Micah 6:1-2). The word edah ('assembly, congregation') may refer either to the nations assembled or to Israel's own community witnessing its own indictment.
19. The earth itself is called as witness. The phrase peri machshevotam ('the fruit of their schemes/thoughts') applies agricultural imagery to moral causation — they have planted wickedness and will now harvest its produce. The word torah ('instruction, law') here carries its broad Jeremican sense of God's total covenantal instruction, not merely the written Torah scroll. The verb ma'asu ('they rejected') is the same verb used for God's rejection of Saul's kingship in 1 Samuel 15:23.
20. The rhetoric strips religious ritual of its supposed value. Levonah ('frankincense') from Sheba (southern Arabia) and qaneh hatov ('fragrant cane,' likely calamus or sugarcane) were expensive imports used in temple worship. God declares that lavish ritual expenditure without covenant obedience is worthless — a theme echoed in Isaiah 1:11-17, Amos 5:21-24, and Micah 6:6-8. The word ratson ('acceptable, favorable') is the technical term for a sacrifice that God receives with pleasure; here it is negated.
21. The miksholot ('stumbling blocks') are obstacles God deliberately places in their path — the judgment is not random but intentional. The comprehensiveness of the destruction — avot uvanim ('fathers and sons'), shakhen vere'o ('neighbor and friend') — means that normal bonds of family and community will not protect anyone. The relational language emphasizes that the social fabric itself will be torn apart.
22. The enemy-from-the-north motif reaches its most developed form in this chapter. The phrase me'erets tsafon ('from the land of the north') identifies the direction of approach — Babylon lay east of Judah, but its armies approached from the north through the Fertile Crescent because the Syrian desert was impassable. The phrase yarketei erets ('the farthest reaches of the earth') emphasizes the vast distance this enemy will travel — their commitment to conquest is implacable.
23. The portrait of the enemy emphasizes five qualities: armed (qeshet vekhidon, 'bow and javelin'), merciless (akhzari, 'cruel'), terrifying in sound (qolam kayyam yehemeh, 'their voice roars like the sea'), mounted (al susim yirkavu), and disciplined (arukh ke'ish lamilchamah, 'arranged like one man for battle'). The phrase bat tsiyon ('daughter of Zion') personifies Jerusalem as a vulnerable woman facing this overwhelming military force — the contrast between the delicate daughter and the roaring army is deliberate.
24. The voice shifts to the people's terrified response. The phrase rafu yadenu ('our hands hang limp') describes the paralysis of fear — the inability to fight or flee. The comparison to chil kayyoleadah ('pain like a woman in labor') is a stock prophetic image for inescapable, overwhelming agony (cf. Isaiah 13:8, Micah 4:9-10). The image implies both suffering and inevitability — labor pains cannot be stopped once they begin.
25. The phrase magor missaviv ('terror on every side') becomes one of Jeremiah's signature phrases — so characteristic that his enemies use it as a mocking nickname for him (20:3, 20:10). The restriction against going into fields or roads describes the conditions of siege — the countryside is controlled by the enemy, and only the walled city offers any safety. Even that safety is temporary.
26. The mourning customs described — saq ('sackcloth,' coarse goat-hair cloth) and efer ('ashes') — were the most extreme expressions of grief in Israelite culture. The phrase evel yachid ('mourning for an only child') describes the most devastating possible loss — the death of a sole heir, ending the family line. The word tamrurim ('bitter things, bitter weeping') intensifies the grief to its maximum. Jeremiah identifies himself with the people: 'upon us' (aleinu), not 'upon you.'
27. God addresses Jeremiah directly, assigning him the role of bachon ('tester, assayer') — the metalworker who tests the purity of ore. The word mivtsar is difficult and may mean 'fortress' or relate to the refining process ('one who tests by cutting off'). We follow the refining interpretation because it matches the metallurgical metaphor that dominates the rest of the chapter (vv. 28-30). Jeremiah's prophetic ministry is recast as an assay — he is testing the people's metal to determine its quality.
28. The phrase sarei sorerim ('stubbornly rebellious') doubles the root sur ('to turn aside') for emphasis. The metallurgical metaphor identifies the people as nechoshet uvarzel ('bronze and iron') — base metals rather than precious silver or gold. In ancient smelting, bronze and iron were the impurities that contaminated silver ore. The word mashchitim ('corrupt ones, destroyers') derives from the same root as the corruption that provoked the flood (Genesis 6:12).
29. The smelting process has failed. The mappuach ('bellows') has been pumped until scorched, the oferet ('lead') — used as a flux to absorb impurities in the refining of silver — has been consumed, and still the impurities remain. The verb nittaqu ('separated, torn away') indicates that the wicked

elements are so thoroughly fused with the metal that no amount of refining can extract them. This is a failed refining — unlike Malachi 3:2-3, where the refiner succeeds, here the ore is beyond purification.

30. The verdict is delivered in metallurgical terms: *keseḥ nim'aṣ* ('rejected silver, refuse silver') — ore that has been tested, refined, and found to contain no recoverable silver. The verb *ma'aṣ* ('to reject, refuse, despise') is the same word used for Saul's rejection from kingship (1 Samuel 15:23, 26) and Israel's rejection of God in 1 Samuel 8:7. The chapter that began with the search for one righteous person ends with the entire people declared worthless — unrefinable, beyond purification, rejected.

7

Summary: *Jeremiah 7 contains the Temple Sermon — the prophet's most provocative public address. Standing at the gate of the LORD's house, Jeremiah confronts the people's false confidence that the Temple's presence guarantees Jerusalem's safety. The threefold repetition 'The temple of the LORD' (v. 4) mocks a popular slogan. God demands moral reform, not ritual attendance (vv. 5-7), and invokes the destruction of Shiloh as proof that he will abandon even his own sanctuary when the people corrupt it (vv. 12-14). The chapter escalates to a prohibition against intercessory prayer (v. 16), describes the Queen of Heaven cult (vv. 17-19), and culminates in God's declaration that he never commanded sacrifice — he commanded obedience (vv. 21-23). The chapter closes with the abomination of child sacrifice in the Valley of Hinnom (vv. 30-34).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the sermon that nearly got Jeremiah killed (the aftermath appears in chapter 26). The threefold 'temple of the LORD' in verse 4 is not emphasis but mockery — Jeremiah is imitating and ridiculing a liturgical chant the people used as a talisman. The Shiloh reference (vv. 12-14) is devastating: Shiloh was where the tabernacle stood for centuries before its destruction, proving that God's presence can be withdrawn from a sacred site. The statement 'I did not speak to your ancestors or command them concerning burnt offerings and sacrifices' (v. 22) is one of the most radical claims in the Hebrew Bible — not that sacrifice is wrong, but that obedience was always the primary demand. The Valley of Ben-Hinnom (Ge-Hinnom, v. 31) becomes the source of the Greek Gehenna, the New Testament's primary image for final judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The verb *batach* ('trust') in verse 4 required careful handling — the people are not trusting God but trusting in the Temple building as a magical guarantee. We rendered *divrei hasheqer* as 'deceptive words' rather than 'lying words' to capture the self-deception involved. The phrase 'the Queen of Heaven' (*melekhet hashamayim*, v. 18) is historically debated — likely Ishtar/Astarte — but we retain the Hebrew designation without identifying a specific deity, as the text does not. The controversial verse 22 ('I did not command... concerning burnt offerings') must be rendered without either softening it into irrelevance or overstating it as an absolute rejection of all sacrifice — the contrast is between ritual mechanics and covenantal obedience.*

Connections: *The Temple Sermon parallels Micah 3:11-12 (Zion will be plowed as a field). The Shiloh reference connects to the ark narrative of 1 Samuel 4 and Psalm 78:60. The prohibition against intercession reprises the theme from 11:14 and 14:11. The 'Queen of Heaven' cult reappears in 44:15-19 among the Egyptian refugees. The Valley of Hinnom connects to 2 Kings 23:10 (Josiah's reform) and becomes Gehenna in Matthew 5:22 and Mark 9:43. The obedience-over-sacrifice principle echoes 1 Samuel 15:22 and Hosea 6:6, and is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 9:13.*

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD: ²Stand at the gate of the LORD's house and proclaim this message there. Say: Hear the word of the LORD, all of Judah who enter through these gates to worship the LORD. ³This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Reform your ways and your deeds, and I will let you continue to dwell in this place. ⁴Do not trust in deceptive words, chanting: 'The temple of the LORD! The temple of the LORD! The temple of the LORD!' ⁵For if you truly reform your ways and your deeds — if you truly practice justice between one person and another, ⁶if you do not oppress the foreigner, the orphan, or the widow, and do not shed innocent blood in this place, and do not follow other gods to your own harm — ⁷then I will let you dwell in this place, in the land that I gave to your ancestors from age to age. ⁸Look — you are trusting in deceptive words that accomplish nothing. ⁹Will you steal, murder, commit adultery, swear falsely, burn incense to Baal, and follow other gods that you have not known — ¹⁰and then come and stand before me in this house that bears my

name, and say, 'We are safe!' — only to go on doing all these abominations? ¹¹Has this house that bears my name become a den of criminals in your eyes? I too have seen it, declares the LORD. ¹²Go now to my place at Shiloh, where I first made my name dwell, and see what I did to it because of the wickedness of my people Israel. ¹³And now, because you have done all these things, declares the LORD — and though I spoke to you persistently, you did not listen, and though I called you, you did not answer — ¹⁴I will do to this house that bears my name — the one you are trusting in — and to the place I gave to you and your ancestors, what I did to Shiloh. ¹⁵I will throw you out of my presence, just as I threw out all your kinsmen — all the descendants of Ephraim. ¹⁶As for you — do not pray for this people. Do not lift up cry or prayer on their behalf, and do not plead with me, for I will not listen to you. ¹⁷Do you not see what they are doing in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem? ¹⁸The children gather wood, the fathers light the fire, and the women knead dough to make cakes for the Queen of Heaven, and they pour out drink offerings to other gods — provoking me to anger. ¹⁹Is it me they are provoking? declares the LORD. Is it not rather themselves, to their own shame? ²⁰Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: My anger and my wrath will be poured out on this place — on human and animal, on the trees of the field and the fruit of the ground. It will burn and will not be quenched. ²¹This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Add your burnt offerings to your other sacrifices and eat the meat yourselves! ²²For I did not speak to your ancestors, nor did I command them on the day I brought them out of the land of Egypt, concerning burnt offerings and sacrifices. ²³Rather, this is what I commanded them: Obey my voice, and I will be your God and you will be my people. Walk in every way that I command you, so that it may go well for you. ²⁴But they did not listen or incline their ear. They walked according to the schemes and stubbornness of their evil heart, and went backward, not forward. ²⁵From the day your ancestors came out of the land of Egypt until this very day, I have sent to you all my servants the prophets — sending them persistently, day after day. ²⁶But they did not listen to me or incline their ear. They stiffened their neck and did worse than their ancestors. ²⁷You will speak all these words to them, but they will not listen to you. You will call out to them, but they will not answer you. ²⁸Then say to them: This is the nation that did not obey the voice of the LORD their God and refused correction. Faithfulness has perished — it has been cut off from their lips. ²⁹Cut off your hair and throw it away! Raise a lament on the barren heights, for the LORD has rejected and abandoned the generation that provoked his wrath. ³⁰For the people of Judah have done what is evil in my sight, declares the LORD. They have placed their detestable idols in the house that bears my name, defiling it. ³¹They have built the high places of Topheth in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom to burn their sons and daughters in the fire — something I never commanded, and which never entered my mind. ³²Therefore, the days are coming, declares the LORD, when it will no longer be called Topheth or the Valley of Ben-Hinnom, but the Valley of Slaughter. They will bury the dead in Topheth until there is no more room. ³³The corpses of this people will become food for the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth, and no one will drive them away. ³⁴I will silence in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem the sound of joy and the sound of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride, for the land will become a wasteland.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') functions as a speech-introduction marker and is rendered as a colon rather than as an additional English word.
2. The location is critical — Jeremiah is told to stand at the Temple gate itself, confronting worshippers as they arrive. The verb *hishtachavot* ('to bow down, worship') indicates prostration before God. The irony is that these are people coming to worship who will be told their worship is worthless without moral reform.
3. The verb *heitivu* ('make good, reform') demands active moral change, not mere ritual adjustment. The conditional promise — 'I will let you dwell' — implies that continued residence in the land is not guaranteed. The phrase 'this place' (*hammaqom hazzeh*) refers ambiguously to both the Temple and the land, a deliberate doubling.
4. The verb *batach* ('to trust, rely on') indicates the people are placing their security in the Temple as a talisman rather than in the God who dwells there. The triple repetition *hekhhal YHWH* ('temple of the LORD') imitates a liturgical chant — Jeremiah is quoting and ridiculing a popular slogan. The word *sheqer* ('falsehood, deception') is one of Jeremiah's most frequent words, characterizing the entire spiritual culture of his day.
5. The infinitive absolute construction *heitev teitivu* ('truly reform') intensifies the demand — superficial adjustment will not suffice. The word *mishpat* ('justice') here means fair dealing in legal and social disputes, not abstract righteousness. Jeremiah begins a catalogue of specific moral requirements.

6. The triad *ger-yatom-almanah* ('foreigner, orphan, widow') represents the most vulnerable members of Israelite society. Their protection is a covenant obligation (Deuteronomy 24:17-22). The phrase 'to your own harm' (*lera lakhem*) is striking — idolatry harms not God but the worshippers themselves.
7. The phrase *lemin olam ve'ad olam* ('from age to age') expresses perpetuity. The conditional structure is complete: moral reform (vv. 5-6) would secure continued dwelling. The land promise to the ancestors is real but conditional on covenant faithfulness — this is the core tension of Deuteronomic theology.
8. The accusation resumes from verse 4. The phrase *levilti ho'il* ('without benefit, to no profit') declares the Temple-slogan theology not just false but useless — it provides no actual protection. The verb *batach* ('trust') again highlights misplaced confidence.
9. This catalogue echoes the Ten Commandments (Exodus 20:1-17; Deuteronomy 5:6-21). Stealing, murder, adultery, and false oaths violate commandments 6-9, while Baal worship and following other gods violate commandments 1-2. Jeremiah compresses the Decalogue into a single accusatory question. The infinitive absolute construction (*ganov, ratsoach, na'of*) gives the list a staccato, relentless rhythm.
10. The phrase *niqra shemi alav* ('my name is called upon it') means the Temple bears God's name — it belongs to him. The people's cry *nitsalnu* ('we are delivered, saved, safe') exposes their theology: they believe Temple attendance functions as a magical protection spell that permits continued sin. The word *to'evot* ('abominations') is the strongest term for covenant violations.
11. The phrase *me'arat paritsim* ('cave/den of violent ones') is quoted by Jesus when he cleanses the Temple (Matthew 21:13, Mark 11:17, Luke 19:46). *Paritsim* are not merely thieves but violent breakers — robbers who use force. The Temple has become a hideout where criminals come to feel safe after committing their crimes. God's 'I too have seen it' is ominous — he is not fooled by their ritual performance.
12. Shiloh, in the territory of Ephraim, was the central sanctuary before the monarchy — the tabernacle stood there for centuries (Joshua 18:1; 1 Samuel 1-4). Its destruction (referenced in Psalm 78:60) demonstrated that God would abandon even his own sacred site when the people corrupted it. The parallel is unmistakable: what happened to Shiloh can happen to Jerusalem's Temple.
13. The idiom *hashkem vedabber* ('rising early and speaking') is the same persistence formula seen in 11:7. God's repeated, tireless efforts to communicate are met with silence. The double failure — 'did not listen... did not answer' — establishes the legal basis for judgment: the defendant was warned and given every opportunity to respond.
14. The sentence structure deliberately parallels the Temple ('this house') with the land ('the place I gave you') — both are at risk. The verb *botechim* ('trusting') echoes verse 4 and 8: their trust is in the building, not in God. The Shiloh comparison is the climax of the argument — if God destroyed his first sanctuary, he will destroy his second.
15. Ephraim represents the northern kingdom of Israel, destroyed by Assyria in 722 BCE. God has already expelled the ten northern tribes. Judah is not exempt from the same fate. The verb *hishlakhti* ('I threw out, cast away') is violent — not a gentle sending away but a forceful ejection from God's presence.
16. This prohibition against prophetic intercession is devastating. A prophet's core function included standing before God on behalf of the people (as Moses did repeatedly, Exodus 32:11-14; Numbers 14:13-19). God is shutting down the last channel of mercy. The verb *tifga* ('press upon, plead, intercede') is stronger than ordinary prayer — it implies urgent, pressing petition. Even that will not be heard.
17. God directs Jeremiah's attention to what is happening in plain sight. The question is rhetorical — the prophet can see the idolatry everywhere. The shift to second person singular addresses Jeremiah personally, pulling him into the evidence for why intercession is pointless.
18. The whole family participates in the idolatrous ritual — children, fathers, and women each have a role. The phrase *melekhet hashamayim* ('Queen of Heaven') likely refers to the Mesopotamian goddess Ishtar or the Canaanite Astarte. The *kavvanim* ('cakes') were probably shaped in the goddess's image or stamped with her symbol. This cult reappears in 44:15-19, where the women defend their worship. The verb *hakh'iseni* ('to provoke me') attributes genuine anger to God — the idolatry is personally offensive.
19. A remarkable theological statement: God declares that idolatry ultimately harms the idolaters, not God. The word *bosheth* ('shame') appears again (cf. 11:13 where it substitutes for Baal). The rhetorical question structure implies that God's sovereignty is not threatened by their worship of other gods — but they are destroying themselves.
20. The double divine title *Adonai YHWH* ('Lord GOD') adds solemnity. The verb *nittekhet* ('poured out') depicts wrath as a liquid — molten anger that flows over everything. The judgment is comprehensive, affecting all creation: humans, animals, vegetation, and crops. The cosmic scope echoes the uncreation themes found elsewhere in the prophets. The phrase 'will not be quenched' (*lo tikhbeh*) indicates irreversible judgment.
21. This is biting sarcasm. Burnt offerings (*olot*) were entirely consumed on the altar — none of the meat went to the worshipper. God says: go ahead and eat even those. The whole sacrificial system has become so meaningless that the distinction between sacrifices for God and meals for the people is irrelevant. The imperative 'eat flesh' dismisses the sacrificial system as mere meat consumption.
22. This is one of the most provocative statements in the Hebrew Bible. Taken at face value, it appears to contradict the extensive sacrificial legislation in Exodus and Leviticus. The interpretive key is the phrase 'on the day I brought them out' — God's first words at Sinai were the Ten Commandments, which concern moral obedience, not ritual. The sacrificial system came later. Jeremiah's point is not that sacrifice is illegitimate but that it was never the primary demand — obedience was.

23. The covenant formula — 'I will be your God and you will be my people' — returns (cf. 11:4). The substance of the original covenant demand is relational obedience (*shim'u beqoli*, 'obey my voice'), not ritual performance. The promise *lema'an yitav lakhem* ('so that it may go well for you') frames obedience as being for the people's own benefit, not God's.
24. The phrase *sheririut libbam hara* ('stubbornness of their evil heart') is Jeremiah's signature expression (cf. 3:17, 9:13, 11:8, 13:10, 16:12, 18:12, 23:17). The spatial metaphor 'backward, not forward' captures the tragedy — Israel should have been advancing toward God's purposes but instead regressed.
25. The persistence idiom *hashkem veshaloch* ('rising early and sending') recurs throughout Jeremiah (cf. 11:7, 25:4, 26:5, 29:19, 35:15, 44:4). God's prophetic warnings span the entire history from Exodus to the present — this is not a sudden intervention but a sustained, centuries-long effort.
26. The phrase *vayyaqshu et orfam* ('they stiffened their neck') depicts stubborn resistance using the image of an ox that resists the yoke by going rigid. The final clause is devastating: each generation surpassed the previous one in wickedness. The trajectory is not static rebellion but escalating corruption.
27. God warns Jeremiah in advance that his preaching will fail. This is one of the most painful aspects of prophetic calling — the prophet is sent knowing his audience will not respond. The double prediction ('will not listen... will not answer') mirrors the people's treatment of God himself (v. 13).
28. The word *emunah* here is rendered 'faithfulness' rather than 'truth' (KJV) because the Hebrew encompasses more than factual accuracy — it is covenantal reliability, trustworthiness, and loyalty. The metaphor of *emunah* being 'cut off from their mouth' (*nikhretah mippihem*) suggests it has been severed like a living thing — faithfulness is dead in their public speech and commitment.
29. The command to cut hair (*gozzi nizrek*) is a mourning ritual — the uncut hair was a sign of consecration (the word *nezer* can mean 'consecrated hair' as with the Nazirite vow). Jerusalem, personified as a woman, is told to sever the sign of her consecration because the relationship is over. The 'barren heights' (*shefayim*) are the same high places associated with idolatrous worship — now they become places for mourning.
30. The *shiqqs* ('detestable thing, idol') is stronger than *to'evah* — it refers specifically to idolatrous objects placed inside the Temple itself. This is not merely worshipping foreign gods elsewhere but installing them in the LORD's own house. The defilement (*tame'*) is ritual contamination that makes the Temple unfit for God's presence. This likely refers to the practices described in 2 Kings 21:4-7 and 23:4-14.
31. Topheth (from a root meaning 'fireplace' or 'drum' — drums may have been beaten to drown out screams) was the site of child sacrifice in the valley south of Jerusalem. The phrase 'never entered my mind' (*lo aletah al libbi*) is God's strongest possible denial — he not only did not command this practice but could not even conceive of it. The Valley of Ben-Hinnom (Ge-Hinnom) later becomes Gehenna in Greek, the New Testament's primary image of final judgment.
32. The renaming from 'Valley of Ben-Hinnom' to 'Valley of Slaughter' (*Ge ha-Haregah*) reverses the site's function — where children were killed as sacrifices, now the sacrificers themselves will be killed and buried. The grimly ironic justice: the place of murder becomes the mass grave of the murderers. 'Until there is no more room' indicates catastrophic death on a scale that overwhelms burial capacity.
33. Exposure of corpses to scavengers was the ultimate degradation in the ancient Near East — denial of proper burial was a curse-fulfillment (Deuteronomy 28:26). The phrase 'no one will drive them away' (*ein macharid*) means there will be no living person left to shoo the scavengers from the dead. This is the Deuteronomic covenant-curse enacted literally.
34. The fourfold 'sound/voice' (*qol*) creates a litany of silencing — joy, gladness, bridegroom, bride. These represent the sounds of a thriving society: celebration and marriage. Their cessation means the death of normal life. This formula of silenced celebration recurs in 16:9, 25:10, and 33:11 (where it is reversed in restoration). The final word — 'wasteland' (*chorbah*) — is the chapter's verdict.

8

Summary: *Jeremiah 8 continues the judgment oracle begun in chapter 7 with a grim image of exhumed bones spread before the astral deities the dead had worshipped (vv. 1-3). The chapter then indicts Judah's refusal to return to God, contrasting the people's stubbornness with the instinctive faithfulness of migratory birds (vv. 4-7). The scribes who falsify God's instruction are condemned (v. 8), and the false prophets who cry 'Peace, peace!' are exposed again (v. 11, reprising 6:14). The chapter's emotional center is Jeremiah's lament over the harvest that has passed and the summer that has ended while the people remain unsaved (v. 20), culminating in the famous question: 'Is there no balm in Gilead? Is there no healer there?' (v. 22).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 8 contains one of the most explosive claims in the prophetic literature: the scribes' pen has turned God's torah into a lie. This is an indictment not of ordinary people but of the professional class responsible for preserving and transmitting divine instruction. Verse 7 employs the extraordinary argument that storks, turtledoves, swifts, and cranes are more faithful to their appointed times than God's own people — animals obey their Creator's order while Israel does not. The closing lament (vv. 18-22) is among the most emotionally devastating passages in the*

Hebrew Bible, with Jeremiah's grief becoming almost indistinguishable from God's own. The 'balm in Gilead' question (v. 22) has entered the world's literary and musical vocabulary, particularly through African American spirituals that transformed the unanswered question into an affirmation.

Translation Friction: The boundaries between divine speech, prophetic speech, and narrative voice blur repeatedly in this chapter — particularly in vv. 18-22, where it is unclear whether God or Jeremiah is the speaker. We have not forced a resolution where the Hebrew is ambiguous. The word torah in verse 8 could mean 'the Law' (Mosaic Torah) or 'instruction' more broadly — we rendered 'instruction of the LORD' to preserve the ambiguity. The rare birds in verse 7 (sus, agur) present identification challenges; we followed the best available ornithological scholarship. The phrase 'the pen of the scribes has made it into a lie' (v. 8) is rendered to preserve the radical claim without softening it.

Connections: The 'Peace, peace!' cry of 8:11 directly reprises 6:14. The indictment of scribes (8:8) anticipates Jesus's conflicts with the scribes and Pharisees. The migratory birds argument (8:7) connects to Isaiah 1:3 ('The ox knows its owner... but Israel does not know'). The balm of Gilead (8:22) is referenced in Genesis 37:25 and 43:11, and the question enters the New Testament interpretive tradition. The harvest-past lament (8:20) becomes proverbial. The 'daughter of my people' (bat ammi) refrain connects to Lamentations.

¹At that time, declares the LORD, they will bring out the bones of the kings of Judah, the bones of its officials, the bones of the priests, the bones of the prophets, and the bones of the inhabitants of Jerusalem from their graves. ²They will spread them out before the sun, the moon, and all the host of heaven — which they loved, served, followed, consulted, and worshipped. The bones will not be gathered or reburied; they will be like dung on the surface of the ground. ³Death will be preferred over life by all the survivors who remain from this evil family, in every place where I have driven them, declares the LORD of Hosts. ⁴Say to them: This is what the LORD says — Do people fall and never get up? Does someone turn away and never turn back? ⁵Why then has this people — Jerusalem — turned aside in perpetual rebellion? They cling to deceit; they refuse to turn back. ⁶I have listened carefully and heard — they do not speak honestly. No one repents of his wickedness, saying, 'What have I done?' Each one charges ahead on his own course, like a horse plunging into battle. ⁷Even the stork in the sky knows her appointed seasons; the turtledove, the swift, and the crane keep the time of their migration. But my people do not know the requirements of the LORD. ⁸How can you say, 'We are wise, and the instruction of the LORD is with us'? In truth, the lying pen of the scribes has turned it into a lie. ⁹The wise are put to shame; they are dismayed and trapped. They have rejected the word of the LORD — so what kind of wisdom do they have? ¹⁰Therefore I will give their wives to others and their fields to new owners, for from the least to the greatest, all of them chase after dishonest gain. From prophet to priest, every one of them practices fraud. ¹¹They dress the wound of the daughter of my people as if it were nothing, saying, 'Peace, peace!' — when there is no peace. ¹²Are they ashamed of committing abominations? They are not ashamed at all — they do not even know how to blush! Therefore they will fall among the fallen; in the time of their punishment they will stumble, says the LORD. ¹³I will bring their harvest to an end, declares the LORD. There are no grapes on the vine, no figs on the fig tree, and the leaves have withered. What I gave them will be taken from them. ¹⁴Why are we sitting here? Gather together — let us flee to the fortified cities and perish there, for the LORD our God has doomed us. He has given us poisoned water to drink because we have sinned against the LORD. ¹⁵We hoped for peace, but nothing good came; for a time of healing, but there was only terror. ¹⁶From Dan the snorting of his horses can be heard; at the sound of the neighing of his stallions the whole land trembles. They come and devour the land and everything in it — the city and all who live there. ¹⁷For I am sending among you venomous snakes — vipers that cannot be charmed — and they will bite you, declares the LORD. ¹⁸My grief is beyond healing; my heart within me is sick. ¹⁹Listen — the cry of the daughter of my people from a distant land: 'Is the LORD not in Zion? Is her King not within her?' Why have they provoked me with their carved images, with their worthless foreign idols? ²⁰The harvest is past, the summer has ended, and we are not saved. ²¹Because of the wound of the daughter of my people, I am wounded. I am in mourning; horror has seized me. ²²Is there no balm in Gilead? Is there no healer there? Why then has the healing of the daughter of my people not come?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fivefold repetition of *atsmot* ('bones') creates a drumbeat of desecration. Every class of society is named — kings, officials (*sarim*, not merely 'princes'), priests, prophets, and ordinary citizens. No rank provides protection. The exhumation of bones was both a military humiliation and a search for burial goods.
2. The fivefold description of devotion — 'loved, served, followed, consulted, worshipped' — catalogs the full vocabulary of worship now directed at astral deities. The bitter irony: the bones are spread before the very celestial objects the dead had worshipped, but those gods cannot protect even their worshippers' remains. The comparison to *domen* ('dung, manure') is deliberately degrading — the honored dead become fertilizer.
3. The Hebrew *nivchar mavet mechayim* ('death is chosen over life') inverts the Deuteronomic call to 'choose life' (Deuteronomy 30:19). The survivors' suffering in exile will be so severe that they will wish they had died. The word *mishpachah* ('family, clan') applied to the whole nation personalizes the judgment — this is a family ruined by its own choices.
4. The verb *shuv* ('turn, return') carries its double meaning with full force here — Israel has 'turned away' from God, but they refuse to 'turn back.' The rhetorical questions appeal to common sense: falling implies rising, departure implies return. But Israel defies this natural logic.
5. The Hebrew plays on the *shuv* root three times: *shovevah* ('has turned aside'), *meshuvah* ('rebellion/turning'), and *lashuv* ('to return'). The word *nitsachat* ('perpetual, enduring') makes the rebellion permanent — this is not a temporary lapse but an established way of life. They 'cling to' (*hechziqu*) deceit as a drowning person clings to a branch.
6. God has been listening for any voice of repentance and hears none. The expected question of moral self-examination — 'What have I done?' (*meh asiti*) — never comes. The horse metaphor (*sus shotef bammilchamah*) depicts mindless, headlong momentum: a warhorse in full charge cannot stop itself. The people are running toward destruction with the same unstoppable force.
7. This is a devastating argument from nature: migratory birds instinctively know and obey their God-given cycles, but Israel — created with reason and given direct revelation — ignores the LORD's *mishpat* ('requirements, ordinances'). The *chasidah* ('stork,' from the root *chesed*, 'faithful love') is itself named for loyalty. The identification of *sis* and *agur* is debated; 'swift' and 'crane' follow the best available ornithological consensus. The contrast echoes Isaiah 1:3, where the ox and donkey know their master but Israel does not.
8. This is one of the most radical statements in prophetic literature. The *soferim* ('scribes') — the professional class responsible for copying, preserving, and interpreting God's *torah* — have falsified it. The word *sheqer* ('lie, falsehood') appears twice for emphasis. The charge is not that the *torah* itself is false but that the scribes' handling of it has perverted it into something deceptive. The word *torah* here could mean the Mosaic Law specifically or divine 'instruction' more broadly — we render 'instruction' to preserve the Hebrew range.
9. The question *chokhmat meh lahem* ('what wisdom is to them?') is devastating: wisdom that rejects God's word is no wisdom at all. The verb *ma'asu* ('rejected') is the same used for rejecting a king (1 Samuel 8:7) or a foundation stone (Psalm 118:22) — it implies deliberate refusal, not ignorance. The three verbs — 'shamed, dismayed, trapped' — describe the progressive collapse of false confidence.
10. This verse closely parallels 6:12-13. The phrase *botse'a batsa* ('chasing dishonest gain') uses the same root twice for emphasis — greed is universal, spanning every social class. The indictment of both prophet and priest (*navi* and *kohen*) as practitioners of *sheqer* ('fraud, falsehood') condemns the entire religious leadership.
11. This verse reprises 6:14 almost verbatim. The phrase *al neqallah* ('lightly, superficially') describes a doctor who bandages a deep wound without treating it — cosmetic care that masks a fatal condition. The metaphor *shever bat ammi* ('the fracture of the daughter of my people') treats the nation as a person with a broken body. The double *shalom shalom* is the false prophets' signature cry, directly contradicting Jeremiah's message of judgment.
12. This verse also reprises 6:15. The inability to blush (*hakhlim lo yada'u*) indicates a conscience so deadened that shame itself has become impossible. The word *to'evah* ('abomination') describes acts fundamentally offensive to the covenant order. Falling 'among the fallen' (*bannophelim*) means they will join the mass of the condemned — their immunity is an illusion.
13. The Hebrew *asoph asiphem* is difficult — it could mean 'I will surely gather them (for judgment)' or 'I will bring their harvest to an end.' The agricultural imagery — no grapes, no figs, withered leaves — depicts a land under covenant curse (cf. Deuteronomy 28:38-42). The fig tree and vine are symbols of covenant prosperity (1 Kings 4:25; Micah 4:4). Their barrenness signals covenant nullification. Jesus's cursing of the barren fig tree (Mark 11:12-14) draws on this prophetic tradition.
14. The people's speech shifts from paralysis to desperate flight. The verb *niddamah* ('let us be silent/perish') carries the double sense of silence and destruction — they expect to die in the fortified cities. The phrase *mei rosh* ('water of poison/gall') refers to a bitter, toxic plant. The people's self-awareness is remarkable: they acknowledge their sin against the LORD even as they flee.
15. The verb *qavveh* ('we hoped, waited for') expresses sustained expectation — the people waited for the *shalom* the false prophets promised. The contrast 'healing... terror' (*marpe... be'atah*) is sharp: where they expected restoration they found dread. This verse is nearly identical to 14:19, creating a recurring refrain of disappointed hope.
16. Dan, in the extreme north of Israel, is the first point of entry for an invading army from Mesopotamia. The approaching enemy is heard before it is seen — the sound of war horses precedes the army. The word *abbirim* ('stallions, mighty ones') emphasizes the military power of the cavalry. The verb 'devour' (*yokhelu*) treats the invasion as a consuming force that swallows the land.

17. The nechashim tsif'onim ('serpents, vipers') are probably a metaphor for the Babylonian army, though the literal image is terrifying in its own right. The phrase 'cannot be charmed' (ein lahem lachash) means no amount of diplomacy, appeasement, or ritual manipulation will stop the coming judgment. The snake charmer's art represents any human attempt to control or deflect divine punishment.
18. This verse begins the great lament of 8:18-22, one of the most emotionally devastating passages in the Hebrew Bible. The speaker could be Jeremiah or God — the Hebrew does not specify, and the ambiguity may be intentional: the prophet's grief mirrors God's own. The word davvai ('sick, faint') describes a heart weakened by sorrow to the point of physical illness.
19. The dialogue structure is remarkable: the exiled people cry out asking if the LORD is still in Zion, and God interrupts with his own counter-question about their idolatry. The phrase havlei nekhar ('worthless foreign things') uses hevel ('vapor, emptiness') — the same word Ecclesiastes uses for 'vanity.' The idols are literally nothing. The term bat ammi ('daughter of my people') personalizes the nation as a beloved child in distress.
20. This verse has become proverbial. The agricultural metaphor captures irreversible loss: the harvest season had a fixed window, and once it passed, no amount of effort could recover the crop. The word nosha'nu ('we are saved') uses the passive of yasha ('to save, deliver') — salvation was expected but never came. The brevity of the Hebrew — only seven words — amplifies the devastation through understatement.
21. The verb hushbarti ('I am broken') shares the root with shever ('fracture, wound') — the prophet/God is broken by the brokenness of the people. The word qadarti ('I am dark/in mourning') refers to the darkened face of grief. The phrase shammah hecheziqatni ('horror has seized me') depicts grief as a physical force that grips and will not release.
22. Gilead, east of the Jordan, was famous for its medicinal resin (tsori, a balsam or balm) — referenced in Genesis 37:25 and 43:11 as a valuable trade commodity. The questions are anguished, not rhetorical in the simple sense: the balm exists, the healer exists, yet the wound remains open. The implication is that the people have refused the cure. The word arukhat ('healing, restoration') comes from a root meaning 'to grow new flesh over a wound.' The passage has entered world literature, especially through the African American spiritual 'There Is a Balm in Gilead,' which transforms the unanswered question into an affirmation.

9

Summary: Jeremiah 9 opens with the prophet's anguished wish that his head were a spring of water and his eyes a fountain of tears so he could weep endlessly for the slain of his people. God indicts Judah for a society saturated with deceit — neighbor deceives neighbor, tongue is bent like a bow for lies, and no one speaks truth. Judgment is decreed: Jerusalem will be reduced to rubble, the land made desolate. The chapter reaches its theological summit in verses 23-24, where the LORD declares that the only legitimate ground for boasting is knowing God — who exercises faithful love, justice, and righteousness. The chapter closes with a warning about circumcision of the flesh without circumcision of the heart, placing Judah alongside Egypt, Edom, Ammon, and Moab as nations circumcised in body but uncircumcised in heart.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter contains two of Jeremiah's most quoted passages. The 'fountain of tears' opening (v. 1) gave Jeremiah his enduring title as the 'weeping prophet' — yet the tears are not sentimental but the response of a man who sees clearly that destruction is inevitable and irreversible. Verses 23-24 represent one of the Hebrew Bible's most concentrated statements on what God values: not human strength, wisdom, or wealth, but the knowledge of God expressed through chesed, mishpat, and tsedaqah. Paul quotes this passage in 1 Corinthians 1:31 and 2 Corinthians 10:17. The circumcision passage (vv. 25-26) anticipates Jeremiah's later 'new covenant' theology (31:31-34) where torah is written on hearts rather than enforced through external marks. The sustained indictment of deception as the society's core sin (vv. 2-9) reveals a culture where language itself has become weaponized — every word is a potential trap, every neighbor a potential betrayer.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew versification differs from English: what English Bibles number as 9:1 is 8:23 in the Hebrew (MT), and what English Bibles number as 9:2 is Hebrew 9:1. We follow English versification (9:1-26) since this is the system readers expect, but note the discrepancy. The verb ramah in verse 8 ('deceit') required careful distinction from other Hebrew deception words (sheqer, kazav, mirmah). The phrase mul arlat levavkhem ('circumcise the foreskin of your heart') in related Deuteronomy passages underlies the circumcision theology here, though Jeremiah uses different vocabulary. The dirge-calling for 'skilled women' mourners (v. 17) uses the term chakamot, literally 'wise women' — professional mourners whose craft was considered a form of wisdom.

Connections: The weeping-prophet imagery connects to Lamentations, traditionally attributed to Jeremiah. The boasting passage (vv. 23-24) is quoted by Paul in 1 Corinthians 1:31 and 2 Corinthians 10:17. The circumcision-of-heart theme links to Deuteronomy 10:16 and 30:6, and forward to Romans 2:28-29 and Jeremiah's own new covenant oracle in 31:31-34. The desolation imagery connects to Jeremiah's temple sermon (ch. 7) and the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28. The professional mourners connect to the later mourning traditions visible in 2 Chronicles 35:25. The chesed-mishpat-tsedakah triad echoes Micah 6:8 and Hosea 6:6.

¹If only my head were a spring of water and my eyes a fountain of tears — then I would weep day and night for the slain of my people. ²If only I had a traveler's shelter in the wilderness — then I would abandon my people and walk away from them! For all of them are adulterers, a band of traitors. ³They bend their tongues like a bow for falsehood. It is not for faithfulness that they have grown strong in the land, for they go from one evil to another, and they do not know me, declares the LORD. ⁴Be on guard, each of you, against your neighbor, and do not trust any brother — for every brother is a deceiver like Jacob, and every neighbor goes about as a slanderer. ⁵Each person mocks his neighbor, and no one speaks the truth. They have trained their tongues to speak lies; they exhaust themselves doing wrong. ⁶You live in the midst of deceit; through deceit they refuse to know me, declares the LORD. ⁷Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts says: I am going to refine them and test them — for what else can I do because of my people? ⁸Their tongue is a deadly arrow; it speaks deceit. With his mouth a person speaks peace to his neighbor, but inwardly he sets an ambush for him. ⁹Should I not punish them for these things? declares the LORD. Should I not avenge myself against a nation such as this? ¹⁰Over the mountains I will raise weeping and wailing, and over the wilderness pastures a lament, for they are scorched and no one passes through. The sound of livestock is not heard. The birds of the sky and the animals have all fled — they are gone. ¹¹I will make Jerusalem a heap of ruins, a haunt of jackals, and I will make the cities of Judah a desolation, without an inhabitant. ¹²Who is wise enough to understand this? To whom has the mouth of the LORD spoken, that he might explain it? Why has the land perished, scorched like a wilderness with no one passing through? ¹³The LORD said: Because they have abandoned my instruction that I set before them — they have not obeyed my voice or walked according to it, ¹⁴but they have followed the stubbornness of their own hearts and the Baals, as their ancestors taught them — ¹⁵Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am going to feed this people with wormwood and give them poisoned water to drink. ¹⁶I will scatter them among nations that neither they nor their ancestors have known, and I will send the sword after them until I have consumed them. ¹⁷This is what the LORD of Hosts says: Take note! Call for the mourning women — let them come. Send for the skilled women — let them come. ¹⁸Let them hurry and raise a wailing over us, so that our eyes may overflow with tears and our eyelids stream with water. ¹⁹For the sound of wailing is heard from Zion: 'How we are ruined! We are utterly shamed! For we have left the land; they have torn down our dwellings.' ²⁰Hear the word of the LORD, you women! Let your ears receive the word of his mouth. Teach your daughters to wail and each woman her neighbor to lament. ²¹For death has climbed through our windows and entered our fortresses, cutting off children from the streets and young men from the public squares. ²²Speak: This is what the LORD declares — The corpses of the people will fall like dung on the open field, like cut grain behind the reaper, with no one to gather them. ²³This is what the LORD says: Let not the wise boast in his wisdom, let not the strong boast in his strength, let not the wealthy boast in his wealth. ²⁴Rather, let the one who boasts boast in this: that he understands and knows me — that I am the LORD who acts with faithful love, justice, and righteousness on the earth, for in these things I delight, declares the LORD. ²⁵The days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will punish all who are circumcised only in the flesh — ²⁶Egypt, Judah, Edom, the Ammonites, Moab, and all who clip the hair at their temples who live in the wilderness — for all these nations are uncircumcised, and the entire house of Israel is uncircumcised in heart.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *mi yitten* ('who will give?') is an idiomatic wish formula meaning 'if only' or 'would that.' We render it as 'if only' rather than the KJV's 'Oh that' to avoid archaic phrasing.
1. In the Hebrew Bible (MT), this verse is numbered 8:23 rather than 9:1. English versification follows the chapter division tradition that places this verse as the opening of chapter 9. We follow English numbering for reader familiarity.

1. The phrase bat-ammi ('daughter of my people') is a collective personification of the nation, not a reference to a literal daughter. It is rendered simply as 'my people' to convey the collective sense.
2. The same wish formula *mi yitten* opens this verse. The prophet's grief now flips to revulsion — he wants to flee into the desert rather than remain among such people. The word *mena'afim* ('adulterers') likely carries both literal and metaphorical force: sexual infidelity and covenant unfaithfulness toward God.
2. The word *bogdim* ('traitors, treacherous ones') is from the root *b-g-d*, meaning to act faithlessly or deal treacherously. Combined with *atseret* ('assembly, gathering'), the image is of an organized group of covenant-breakers.
3. The metaphor of the tongue as a drawn bow is vivid — they load lies like arrows and fire them. The word *sheqer* ('falsehood, lie') is Jeremiah's characteristic term for the deception pervading Judah's culture. The phrase *ve'oti lo yada'u* ('and me they do not know') is the theological root of the problem — the absence of genuine knowledge of God (cf. 9:24).
4. The Hebrew contains a devastating wordplay: *aqov ya'aqov* ('utterly supplants/deceives') echoes the name *Ya'aqov* (Jacob), who was named for grasping the heel (Genesis 25:26) and whose name became synonymous with deception (Genesis 27:36). Every brother is, literally, a 'Jacob' — a heel-grabber, a supplanter. We render 'deceiver like Jacob' to preserve this wordplay for English readers.
4. The word *rakhil* ('slanderer, tale-bearer') describes someone who peddles gossip and false reports. The social fabric has completely disintegrated — neither family bonds nor neighborly trust can be relied upon.
5. The verb *yehattellu* ('they mock, deceive') emphasizes deliberate mockery and deception as a social norm. The phrase *limmedu leshonam* ('they have trained their tongues') portrays lying as a practiced skill, not a momentary lapse — they have disciplined their speech toward falsehood the way a craftsman trains in his trade.
5. The final clause *ha'veh nil'u* ('they are weary of doing wrong' or 'they exhaust themselves doing wrong') captures the irony that sin itself is exhausting labor — they pour enormous energy into their corruption.
6. The word *mirmah* ('deceit, treachery') appears twice in this short verse, framing the entire social environment. Deceit is both the medium they inhabit and the means by which they reject God. The phrase *me'anu da'at-oti* ('they refuse to know me') uses the same root *y-d-* ('know') from verse 3 — the refusal to know God is not ignorance but willful rejection.
7. The verb *tsorefam* ('I will refine them') uses smelting imagery — God will put Judah through the furnace to purify them. The verb *bechantim* ('and test them') adds the dimension of examination. Together they picture judgment as a purification process, not mere punishment.
7. The question 'what else can I do?' reveals God's anguished restraint — this is not eager punishment but reluctant necessity. The question echoes Isaiah 5:4, 'What more could I have done for my vineyard?'
8. The metaphor shifts from the bow (v. 3) to the arrow — the tongue is now a sharpened, lethal projectile. The word *shochet* ('slaying, deadly') makes the arrow explicitly murderous. The contrast between outward *shalom* and inward *orbo* ('ambush') is the core of Judah's social corruption: friendly words conceal predatory intent.
9. This rhetorical question formula appears also in 5:9 and 5:29 — it is a recurring refrain of judgment. The verb *efqod* ('visit, punish') carries the sense of a formal inspection followed by judicial action. The word *napshi* ('my soul/self') indicates that God is personally aggrieved — this is not detached justice but the response of a betrayed covenant partner.
10. It is ambiguous whether the speaker is Jeremiah or God — the Hebrew does not specify, and this ambiguity may be intentional, as the voices of prophet and God merge in shared grief. The word *nitsetu* ('scorched, burned') describes devastation so complete that the land is depopulated of both humans and animals. The catalog of absence — no traveler, no livestock, no birds, no animals — builds a portrait of total ecological collapse.
11. The word *tannim* (KJV 'dragons') refers to jackals — scavenging animals that inhabit ruins. Jackals in an abandoned city are a standard prophetic image of complete desolation (cf. Isaiah 13:22, 34:13). The word *gallim* ('heaps') pictures Jerusalem reduced to mounds of rubble. This verse shifts to unambiguously divine speech — God himself declares the coming destruction.
12. This verse poses a theological challenge to the 'wise' (*chakam*) — a term that in Jeremiah's context includes the scribal and court advisers who claimed to have wisdom but missed the meaning of the catastrophe. The rhetorical question demands an explanation for the land's devastation, and the following verses provide God's answer.
13. The word *torah* here is rendered 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture the broader Hebrew meaning — *torah* encompasses teaching, guidance, and divine direction, not merely legal statutes. The three-fold indictment — abandoning *torah*, not obeying God's voice, not walking in it — represents a total failure of covenantal obedience.
14. The Jeremic formula *sheriut libbam* ('stubbornness of their hearts') recurs from 7:24, 9:13 (this verse), 11:8, 13:10, and elsewhere — it is a signature phrase describing the settled, calcified posture of rebellion. The word *ha-be'alim* ('the Baals') is plural, indicating multiple local manifestations of Baal worship at various high places. The detail that their 'ancestors taught them' makes apostasy a transmitted cultural inheritance, not merely individual sin.
15. *La'anah* ('wormwood') is a bitter, toxic plant (*Artemisia*) used metaphorically for suffering and bitterness. *Mei-rosh* ('water of gall/poison') refers to a poisonous liquid — the exact plant is debated (possibly hemlock or poppy). Together they form a judgment-meal of bitterness and death, inverting the covenant blessings of abundance and nourishment.

16. The scattering among unknown nations reverses the Exodus — God brought them out from a foreign land into their own, and now he will drive them from their own land into foreign ones. The phrase 'nations they have not known' emphasizes the alienation and disorientation of exile. The sword pursuing them 'until consumed' indicates that exile itself will not be the end of judgment.
17. The meqonenot ('mourning women') were professional female mourners hired to lead communal lament — a recognized vocation in the ancient Near East. The chakamot ('skilled/wise women') uses the same root as 'wise man' in verse 12, but here applied to the craft of lamentation. Their skill was considered a form of wisdom — the ability to channel communal grief into structured lament.
18. The urgency — 'let them hurry' — indicates the disaster is imminent or already underway. The goal of professional mourning was to catalyze communal grief, to help the community express sorrow too deep for individuals to process alone. The physical imagery of overflowing eyes and streaming eyelids echoes the fountain-of-tears wish in verse 1.
19. The cry comes from Zion itself — the sacred center of the nation. The word shuddadnu ('we are ruined, plundered') conveys violent devastation. The phrase 'we have left the land' ('azavnu erets) uses the same verb 'azav ('abandon') that verse 13 used for abandoning God's instruction — they abandoned torah and now they must abandon the land.
20. Women are addressed directly — they are commissioned to transmit the art of mourning to the next generation. The verbs lammednah ('teach') and tiqqach ('receive') frame mourning as a learned discipline requiring skill and practice. This is a grim inversion of the usual transmission of culture: instead of teaching songs of joy, mothers must teach songs of death.
21. Death personified as an intruder who climbs through windows draws on Canaanite mythology, where Mot (Death) was a deity who invaded homes. The Hebrew Bible subverts the mythology but retains the image: death is not a god but a force under the LORD's sovereign control. The pairing of olal ('children, infants') and bachurim ('young men') indicates that death takes all generations.
22. The two similes are agricultural but horrifying: human bodies compared to dung spread on fields (used as fertilizer) and to sheaves of grain left ungathered after harvest. The phrase 've'ain me'assef' ('and no one gathers') means the dead will receive no burial — the ultimate dishonor in ancient Israelite culture (cf. Deuteronomy 28:26). The harvest imagery inverts the blessing of abundance into a harvest of death.
23. The verb yithallel ('boast, glory, praise oneself') from the root h-l-l is used three times in parallel, creating a rhythmic demolition of human pretensions. The three categories — wisdom (chokmah), strength (gevurah), and wealth (osher) — represent everything human cultures typically value and celebrate. God systematically disqualifies all three as grounds for self-glory.
23. Paul quotes this verse in 1 Corinthians 1:31 and 2 Corinthians 10:17 to argue that the only legitimate boasting is in the Lord.
24. The phrase haskel veyado'a oti ('to understand and know me') uses two verbs: haskel (to have insight, to act wisely) and yado'a (to know relationally, intimately). This is not intellectual knowledge about God but experiential, covenantal knowledge of God's character. The triad chesed-mishpat-tsedeqah appears also in Hosea 2:19 and Micah 6:8 as the essential divine attributes that God desires his people to embody.
24. The declaration ki be'ellev chafatsti ('for in these I delight') reveals God's deepest preference — not sacrifice, not ritual, not theological sophistication, but faithful love, justice, and righteousness practiced on the earth.
25. The phrase mul be'orlah ('circumcised in foreskin' or 'circumcised yet uncircumcised') is paradoxical: those who bear the physical mark of the covenant but lack its inner reality. We render the meaning plainly as 'circumcised only in the flesh' to make the paradox clear. This anticipates the new-covenant theology of 31:31-34, where God will write the covenant on hearts. Paul develops this distinction extensively in Romans 2:25-29.
26. The devastating climax: Judah is listed alongside pagan nations. Despite physical circumcision, Israel is grouped with the uncircumcised because their hearts remain uncut — unchanged by covenant commitment. The phrase arle-lev ('uncircumcised of heart') means the inner person has not been marked by the covenant, regardless of the body's mark.
26. The phrase qetsutsé fe'ah ('those who clip the corners [of their hair]') refers to certain Arabian desert tribes who practiced a distinctive hair-cutting ritual. This practice was forbidden to Israelites in Leviticus 19:27. Egypt practiced circumcision, as did some of the other nations listed — the point is that physical circumcision without heart-transformation is meaningless.

10

Summary: Jeremiah 10 opens with a direct command not to learn the ways of the nations or be terrified by signs in the sky. The chapter then launches into one of the Hebrew Bible's most vivid satires on idol-making: a craftsman cuts a tree from the forest, shapes it with tools, decorates it with silver and gold, and fastens it so it will not topple — yet the finished product cannot speak, cannot walk, and must be carried because it has no power. Against this ridicule, the prophet exalts the living God as the true King of the nations, the maker of heaven and earth by his power and wisdom. The chapter closes with Jeremiah's personal prayer: a lament over the coming destruction, an acknowledgment that human beings cannot direct their own steps, and a plea for God to discipline with justice rather than anger.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The idol-making satire (vv. 2-5) parallels Isaiah 40:18-20 and 44:9-20 but with Jeremiah's distinctive sharpness — the comparison of idols to scarecrows in a cucumber field (v. 5) is unique to Jeremiah and unforgettable in its absurdity. The theological contrast between dead idols and the living God reaches its peak in verse 10: 'The LORD is the true God; he is the living God and the everlasting King.' The phrase Elohim emet ('true God') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. The closing prayer (vv. 23-25) shifts from prophetic oracle to personal petition, revealing Jeremiah's inner life: he knows he cannot control his own path and asks God for measured correction rather than destructive wrath. Verse 23 ('I know, LORD, that a person's way is not his own') is one of the most honest theological statements in Scripture about human limitation.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 11 is the only verse in Jeremiah written in Aramaic rather than Hebrew — a striking linguistic shift that may reflect the verse being composed as a message to be delivered to Aramaic-speaking nations. We note this anomaly. The phrase kemikshat qishshu'im ('like a scarecrow in a cucumber field') in verse 5 uses rare vocabulary — miqshah appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, and its exact meaning has been debated (scarecrow, palm-trunk pillar, or stiff upright figure). We render 'scarecrow in a cucumber patch' as the most vivid and contextually appropriate reading. The theological claim that the nations' gods are 'nothing' (hevel, 'vapor, breath') required careful translation — hevel is the same word used in Ecclesiastes for 'vanity' and carries the sense of insubstantiality rather than non-existence.*

Connections: *The idol-satire connects to Isaiah 40:18-20 and 44:9-20 (the extended mockery of idol-makers), Psalm 115:4-8 and 135:15-18 (idols have mouths but cannot speak), and Habakkuk 2:18-19. The 'signs in the sky' warning (v. 2) addresses Babylonian astral religion, which was the dominant religious competitor in Jeremiah's era. The living-God declaration (v. 10) links to Deuteronomy 5:26 and Joshua 3:10. The prayer of verse 23 connects to Proverbs 16:9 and 20:24 on human inability to direct one's own steps. The closing imprecation against nations that 'devour Jacob' (v. 25) is quoted nearly verbatim in Psalm 79:6-7. The hevel ('vapor') designation for idols connects to the Ecclesiastes vocabulary and 2 Kings 17:15.*

¹Hear the word that the LORD speaks to you, O house of Israel. ²This is what the LORD says: Do not learn the ways of the nations, and do not be terrified by signs in the sky, even though the nations are terrified by them. ³For the practices of the peoples are vapor — a tree is cut from the forest, shaped by the hands of a craftsman with a chisel. ⁴They overlay it with silver and gold; they fasten it with nails and hammers so it will not topple. ⁵They are like scarecrows in a cucumber patch — they cannot speak. They must be carried because they cannot walk. Do not fear them — they can do no harm, and they have no power to do good either. ⁶There is no one like you, LORD. You are great, and your name is great in power. ⁷Who would not revere you, O King of the nations? For this is your due. Among all the wise of the nations and in all their kingdoms, there is no one like you. ⁸But they are all senseless and foolish — the instruction of idols is nothing but wood. ⁹Hammered silver is brought from Tarshish and gold from Uphaz — the work of a craftsman and the hands of a metalsmith. Their clothing is violet and purple. They are all the product of skilled workers. ¹⁰But the LORD is the true God. He is the living God and the everlasting King. At his wrath the earth trembles, and the nations cannot endure his indignation. ¹¹This is what you shall say to them: The gods that did not make the heavens and the earth — they will perish from the earth and from under these heavens. ¹²He made the earth by his power, established the world by his wisdom, and stretched out the heavens by his understanding. ¹³When he thunders, the waters in the heavens roar. He raises clouds from the ends of the earth, makes lightning for the rain, and brings out the wind from his storehouses. ¹⁴Every person is senseless, devoid of knowledge. Every metalsmith is put to shame by his idol, for his cast image is a lie — there is no breath in them. ¹⁵They are vapor, a work of mockery. In the time of their punishment, they will perish. ¹⁶The Portion of Jacob is not like these, for he is the one who formed all things, and Israel is the tribe of his inheritance. The LORD of Hosts is his name. ¹⁷Gather up your bundle from the ground, you who live under siege. ¹⁸For this is what the LORD says: At this time I am going to hurl out the inhabitants of the land, and I will bring distress upon them so that they will feel it. ¹⁹Woe to me because of my wound! My injury is severe. But I said, This is my sickness, and I must bear it. ²⁰My tent is destroyed and all my ropes are snapped. My children have gone from me — they are no more. There is no one left to pitch my tent or set up my curtains. ²¹For the shepherds have become senseless and have not sought the LORD. Therefore they have not prospered, and all their flock is scattered. ²²Listen! A report is coming — a great upheaval from the land of the north — to make the cities of Judah a desolation, a haunt of jackals.

²³I know, LORD, that a person's way is not his own — it is not for anyone to direct his own steps as he walks. ²⁴Discipline me, LORD — but with justice, not in your anger, or you will reduce me to nothing. ²⁵Pour out your wrath on the nations that do not know you and on the peoples that do not call on your name, for they have devoured Jacob — devoured him and consumed him and laid waste his homeland.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The address is to 'house of Israel' — a term that in Jeremiah's context typically encompasses all of God's covenant people, though the northern kingdom had already fallen. The imperative *shim'u* ('hear') carries the force of 'listen and obey,' not merely 'perceive audibly.'
2. The 'signs in the sky' (*otot ha-shamayim*) refer to celestial phenomena — eclipses, comets, unusual planetary alignments — which the Babylonians interpreted as omens through elaborate astrological systems. The verb *techattu* ('be terrified, shattered') is stronger than mere worry; it describes being psychologically broken by fear. God's people are not to let the heavens dominate them because the God who made the heavens governs them.
3. The word *hevel* ('vapor, breath, vanity') is the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes — it denotes something insubstantial, fleeting, without lasting weight. We render it as 'vapor' rather than the KJV's 'vain' to preserve the concrete physical image: the nations' religious practices are as substantial as a puff of breath. The idol-making process is described step by step to expose its absurdity — it begins with a tree, the most ordinary raw material.
4. The irony is surgical: the idol must be nailed down because it would fall over on its own. A god that cannot even stand upright without human engineering is no god. The verb *yeyappehu* ('they beautify it') from the root *y-p-h* means to make beautiful or adorn — the idol's appearance is entirely the craftsman's work, not any inherent divine quality.
5. The phrase *ketomer miqshah* is one of the most debated in Jeremiah. *Tomer* can mean 'palm tree' or 'scarecrow' (from a root meaning stiff, upright). *Miqshah* may mean 'cucumber field' or refer to a hammered/beaten form. The reading 'scarecrow in a cucumber patch' — an immobile, lifeless figure propped up to frighten birds — is the most devastating possible comparison for a deity and has strong support from context and from the Septuagint tradition. The four negations — cannot speak, cannot walk, cannot harm, cannot help — systematically strip the idol of every attribute of a living god.
6. The pivot from idol mockery to divine praise is abrupt and deliberate — the contrast could not be sharper. The word *gevurah* ('might, power, strength') is the same word used in 9:23 where human strength is disqualified as a ground for boasting. God's power is the only legitimate power; the idols' impotence exposes all human might as derivative.
7. The title *Melekh ha-goyim* ('King of the nations') asserts universal sovereignty — not just Israel's God but the ruler of all peoples. The verb *yira'akha* ('fear/revere you') carries the double sense of awe and reverent submission. The word *ya'atah* ('it is fitting, it belongs to you') declares that reverence is God's rightful due, not an optional response.
8. The word *yiv'aru* ('they are brutish, senseless') from the root *b'-l-r* means to be like an animal — lacking rational thought. The phrase *musar havalim ets hu* ('the instruction of vapors/idols is wood') delivers the punch: whatever 'teaching' the idols offer reduces to the material they are made of — wood. The word *havalim* (plural of *hevel*) echoes verse 3.
9. *Tarshish* (possibly Tartessus in Spain or a general term for distant western trading ports) and *Uphaz* (location uncertain, possibly related to Ophir) represent the most expensive imported materials. The detail of *tekhelet* ('violet/blue') and *argaman* ('purple') fabrics — the most costly dyes in the ancient world — emphasizes the enormous expense lavished on objects that cannot move, speak, or act. The final verdict — 'they are all the work of skilled workers' — reduces every idol to its human origin.
10. Three titles appear in rapid succession: *Elohim emet* ('true God'), *Elohim chayyim* ('living God'), and *Melekh olam* ('everlasting King'). Each directly contradicts the idol-portrait of verses 3-9: the idols are false, dead, and temporary; God is true, alive, and eternal. The verb *tir'ash* ('trembles') describes seismic response to divine anger — the earth itself recoils from God's wrath.
11. This verse is unique in Jeremiah: it is written in Aramaic, not Hebrew. This is one of only a few Aramaic passages in the Hebrew Bible (the others being Daniel 2:4b-7:28, Ezra 4:8-6:18 and 7:12-26, and Genesis 31:47). The Aramaic may indicate this was a formulaic response that Israelites were to speak to foreign, Aramaic-speaking peoples — a declaration in the international language. The wordplay *ye'badu/avadu* ('perish'/'made') is vivid: the gods who did not make will themselves be unmade.
12. Three divine attributes are paired with three creative acts: *koach* ('power') made the earth, *chokmah* ('wisdom') established the habitable world, and *tevanah* ('understanding, discernment') stretched out the heavens. This verse echoes Proverbs 3:19-20, where wisdom, understanding, and knowledge are the instruments of creation. The same verse reappears nearly verbatim in 51:15, framing the book's oracle against Babylon.
13. The phrase *leqol titto* ('at the sound of his giving') is rendered 'when he thunders' — God's voice manifests as thunder, a common biblical image (cf. Psalm 29). The word *otserotav* ('his storehouses, treasures') pictures God as having cosmic warehouses from which he draws wind, rain, and storm. This is not primitive meteorology but theological poetry: every weather event is God's direct activity, contrasting with Baal, who was supposed to be the storm-god.
14. The word *niv'ar* ('brutish, senseless') echoes verse 8. The phrase *midda'at* can mean 'from knowledge' (i.e., lacking knowledge) or 'by knowledge' (i.e., made senseless despite having knowledge). We render 'devoid of knowledge' for clarity. The word *sheqer* ('lie, falsehood') — Jeremiah's characteristic term — here applies to the idol itself: the molten image is a lie because it promises divine presence but delivers nothing. The phrase *lo ruach bam* ('there is no breath/spirit in them') is the ultimate indictment: without *ruach*, they are dead matter.

15. Hevel ('vapor') again — the idols are insubstantial. The word ta'tu'im ('mockery, delusion, ridicule') from the root t-'-' suggests both that the idols are objects of ridicule and that they delude their worshipers. The phrase be'et pequddatam ('in the time of their visitation/punishment') uses the same vocabulary as 11:23 — a time of divine reckoning when the idols will be exposed and destroyed.
16. The title Cheleq Ya'aqov ('the Portion of Jacob') designates God as Israel's allotted share — just as each tribe received a portion of the land, Israel's true portion is God himself (cf. Psalm 73:26, 'God is the portion of my heart'). The phrase yotser ha-kol ('he who formed all things') returns to the creator-theme of verse 12. Shevet nachalato ('the tribe of his inheritance') indicates that Israel belongs to God as his special possession. This verse reappears nearly identically in 51:19.
17. The abrupt shift signals the approach of judgment. The word kin'atek ('your bundle, your goods') refers to possessions hastily gathered for flight — the urgency of evacuation. The yoshebet ba-matsor ('inhabitant of the siege/fortress') is Jerusalem herself, addressed as a woman preparing to flee the besieged city.
18. The verb qole'a ('hurling, slinging') is vivid — God will sling the people out of the land like a stone from a sling. The phrase lema'an yimtsa'u ('so that they will find/feel/experience it') means they will experience the full weight of the judgment that their behavior has brought upon them. The word bappa'am hazzot ('at this time') indicates that this is the decisive moment — previous warnings have passed; now the action comes.
19. The speaker shifts to Jeremiah (or personified Zion — the ambiguity may be intentional). The words shivri ('my breaking'), makkati ('my wound'), and cholyi ('my sickness') describe the nation's destruction as a personal bodily injury. The resignation — 'I must bear it' — is not passive acceptance but the recognition that the suffering is deserved and must be endured.
20. The tent metaphor pictures the complete collapse of domestic life — the tent (oholi) is the home, the ropes (metaray) hold it together, and the children (banay) represent the future. All are gone. The phrase ve'einam ('and they are not') is the starkest possible Hebrew expression for absence — total disappearance. The image of a collapsed tent with no one to re-erect it is a picture of irreversible desolation.
21. The ro'im ('shepherds') are Judah's leaders — kings, priests, and prophets — not literal herders. The metaphor of rulers as shepherds was universal in the ancient Near East. The word niv'aru ('became senseless') is the same root as verses 8 and 14 — the leaders are as senseless as the idol-worshipers. The verb nafotsah ('scattered') anticipates the exile: the flock-people are dispersed because the shepherd-leaders failed.
22. The 'land of the north' (erets tsafon) is Babylon — though geographically east of Judah, the Babylonian armies approached via the northern route through Syria. The word ra'ash ('upheaval, earthquake, commotion') describes the tremor of approaching armies. The phrase me'on tannim ('haunt of jackals') repeats from 9:11, forming a refrain of desolation.
23. Jeremiah's prayer begins with a confession of human limitation. The word darko ('his way, his path') refers to the course of life. The verb hakhin ('to establish, direct, prepare') indicates that humans lack the ability to determine their own destiny. This is not fatalism but theological realism — a recognition that only God can rightly order a life. The verse connects to Proverbs 16:9 ('A person plans his way, but the LORD directs his steps') and Proverbs 20:24.
24. The verb yassreni ('discipline me, correct me') accepts the necessity of divine correction but pleads for measured judgment. The word mishpat ('justice, right measure') here means proportionate discipline — correction that reforms rather than destroys. The contrast is between mishpat (measured justice) and af ('anger, fury'). The verb tam'itani ('diminish me, reduce me') means to make small, to reduce to nothing — Jeremiah fears that divine wrath without restraint would be annihilating.
25. This verse is quoted nearly verbatim in Psalm 79:6-7, and scholars debate which text is original. The prayer asks God to redirect his fury from Israel to the nations that have destroyed Israel. The triple repetition — akhelu ('they ate'), akhaluhu ('they devoured him'), wayekhalluhu ('they consumed him') — uses near-synonyms to intensify the image of total consumption. The word navehu ('his pasture, homeland, dwelling place') connects back to the tent and shepherd imagery of verses 20-21.

11

Summary: Jeremiah 11 opens with a direct divine command to proclaim the words of the covenant to Judah and Jerusalem. God recalls the covenant made at the Exodus — the 'iron furnace' of Egypt — and declares that the people have broken it through persistent disobedience and idolatry. The chapter turns sharply personal in its second half: Jeremiah discovers that the men of his own hometown, Anathoth, are plotting to kill him to silence his prophecy. God responds with a judgment oracle against Anathoth, marking the beginning of Jeremiah's 'confessions' — the raw, personal laments that distinguish this book from all other prophetic literature.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter bridges two of Jeremiah's major themes — the broken covenant and the suffering prophet — within a single literary unit. The covenant language in verses 1-8 echoes Deuteronomy almost verbatim, establishing Jeremiah as a prophet in the Mosaic tradition. The phrase 'iron furnace' (kur ha-barzel, v. 4) for Egypt appears only here and in Deuteronomy 4:20 and 1 Kings 8:51, linking Jeremiah's message directly to the oldest covenant traditions. The conspiracy from

Anathoth is especially bitter because Anathoth was a Levitical priestly city — Jeremiah's own priestly kinsmen want him dead. The metaphor of the 'lamb led to slaughter' (v. 19) reappears in Isaiah 53:7 applied to the Suffering Servant, creating one of the most significant intertextual connections between the prophets. We rendered the covenant-curse formula precisely because Jeremiah is not improvising — he is quoting the Deuteronomic curse tradition word for word.

Translation Friction: The verb shama ('hear, obey') appears repeatedly in verses 2-8, and we had to determine when it means 'hear' (auditory) versus 'obey' (covenantal compliance) — context guided each decision. The word arur ('cursed') in verse 3 is formal covenant-curse language, and we preserved the stark 'Cursed' rather than softening it. The phrase 'I was like a gentle lamb led to the slaughter' (v. 19) uses the rare Hebrew keves alluph, where alluph means 'tame, trusting' — we rendered this as 'a gentle lamb' rather than 'a docile lamb' to capture the innocence rather than mere passivity. The plotting language in verses 18-23 shifts from third-person report to first-person divine speech without explicit transition, requiring careful handling.

Connections: The covenant-curse language connects directly to Deuteronomy 27:26 and 28:15-68. The 'iron furnace' metaphor links to Deuteronomy 4:20 and 1 Kings 8:51. The 'lamb led to slaughter' image connects forward to Isaiah 53:7 and is applied by early Christians to Jesus. The conspiracy from Jeremiah's hometown anticipates Jesus's rejection at Nazareth (Luke 4:24-29). The divine command 'Do not pray for this people' (v. 14) reprises the prohibition from 7:16 and anticipates 14:11. Anathoth's judgment connects to the broader theme of priestly failure running through Jeremiah 1-20.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD: ²Hear the words of this covenant, and speak them to the people of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ³Say to them: This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says — Cursed is the one who does not obey the words of this covenant, ⁴which I commanded your ancestors on the day I brought them out of the land of Egypt, out of the iron furnace, saying: Obey my voice and do all that I command you, and you will be my people and I will be your God — ⁵in order to fulfill the oath I swore to your ancestors — to give them a land flowing with milk and honey, as it is today." Then I answered and said, "Amen, LORD." ⁶Then the LORD said to me: Proclaim all these words in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem, saying — Hear the words of this covenant and do them. ⁷For I solemnly warned your ancestors from the day I brought them up out of the land of Egypt until this very day, warning them persistently: Obey my voice. ⁸But they did not obey or incline their ear. Each one walked in the stubbornness of his evil heart. So I brought upon them all the words of this covenant which I commanded them to do — but they did not do them. ⁹Then the LORD said to me: A conspiracy has been found among the people of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁰They have turned back to the iniquities of their earliest ancestors, who refused to hear my words, and they have gone after other gods to serve them. The house of Israel and the house of Judah have broken my covenant that I made with their ancestors. ¹¹Therefore, this is what the LORD says: I am about to bring disaster upon them that they will not be able to escape. When they cry out to me, I will not listen to them. ¹²Then the cities of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem will go and cry out to the gods to whom they burn incense — but those gods will never save them in the time of their disaster. ¹³For your gods have become as numerous as your cities, O Judah, and the altars you have set up to that shameful thing — altars to burn incense to Baal — are as many as the streets of Jerusalem. ¹⁴As for you — do not pray for this people. Do not lift up a cry or prayer on their behalf, for I will not listen when they call to me in the time of their disaster. ¹⁵What right has my beloved in my house when she practices her schemes with many? Can the holy flesh remove your guilt from you? For when you do evil, then you rejoice. ¹⁶A flourishing olive tree, beautiful with fine fruit — that is what the LORD once called you. But with the roar of a great storm he has set it ablaze, and its branches are broken. ¹⁷For the LORD of Hosts, who planted you, has decreed disaster against you because of the evil that the house of Israel and the house of Judah have done, provoking me to anger by burning incense to Baal. ¹⁸The LORD made it known to me, and I knew. Then you showed me their deeds. ¹⁹But I was like a gentle lamb led to the slaughter. I did not know that they had plotted schemes against me: 'Let us destroy the tree with its fruit. Let us cut him off from the land of the living, so that his name will be remembered no more.' ²⁰But, O LORD of Hosts, who judges righteously, who tests the mind and the heart — let me see your vengeance on them, for to you I have committed my cause. ²¹Therefore, this is what the LORD says concerning the men of Anathoth who are seeking your life and saying, 'Do not prophesy in the

name of the LORD, or you will die by our hand' — ²²Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts says: I am about to punish them. Their young men will die by the sword; their sons and daughters will die by famine. ²³No remnant will be left to them, for I will bring disaster upon the men of Anathoth in the year of their punishment.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') introduces direct speech and is rendered as a colon rather than retained as a redundant English word.
2. The command is directed first to Jeremiah himself — 'hear' — and then he must relay the covenant words. The word berit ('covenant') immediately establishes that Jeremiah's message concerns the Sinai agreement, not a new revelation.
3. The formula koh amar YHWH ('Thus says the LORD') is rendered throughout the project as 'This is what the LORD says.' The covenant-curse arur directly quotes the ceremony prescribed in Deuteronomy 27:15-26, where the people themselves said 'Amen' to each curse. Jeremiah is reminding them of their own sworn agreement.
4. The covenant formula 'you will be my people and I will be your God' is the bilateral core of the Sinai relationship (Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12, Deuteronomy 26:17-18). The word 'ancestors' replaces the KJV's 'fathers' as standard TCR modernization. The iron furnace metaphor is deliberately archaic within the text itself — Jeremiah is reaching back to the oldest covenant language.
5. Jeremiah responds with 'Amen' — the liturgical affirmation of covenant acceptance. This is the same response the people were supposed to give at the covenant-curse ceremony in Deuteronomy 27. The prophet personally affirms the covenant that his people have broken.
6. The verb qara ('proclaim, call out') indicates public declaration, not private study. Jeremiah is sent as a herald of the covenant into the public squares. The command 'do them' (wa'asitem otam) echoes the standard Deuteronomic formula for covenant obedience.
7. The Hebrew construction ha'ed he'edoti is an emphatic infinitive absolute — 'I solemnly, solemnly warned.' The idiom hashkem ('rising early') appears frequently in Jeremiah as shorthand for God's persistent, repeated effort to warn Israel through the prophets (cf. 7:13, 7:25, 25:3, 25:4, 26:5, 29:19, 32:33, 35:14-15, 44:4).
8. The phrase sheririut libbam hara ('stubbornness of their evil heart') is a Jeremican formula that recurs throughout the book (3:17, 7:24, 9:13, 13:10, 16:12, 18:12, 23:17). It describes not a single act of rebellion but a settled disposition — the heart has hardened into a fixed posture of resistance. The covenant curses are not arbitrary punishments but the sworn consequences the people accepted at Sinai.
9. The word qesher ('conspiracy') is striking — it is the same word used for Absalom's conspiracy against David (2 Samuel 15:12) and Jehu's coup (2 Kings 9:14). God characterizes covenant-breaking not as mere negligence but as active conspiracy against himself.
10. The verb heferu ('they have broken, violated') is the technical term for covenant annulment. The word karati ('I cut') reminds the reader that covenants in the ancient world were 'cut' — ratified by cutting animals in half (cf. Genesis 15). Both kingdoms, Israel and Judah, are indicted together, even though the northern kingdom had already fallen by Jeremiah's time.
11. The word ra'ah ('evil, disaster, calamity') here means disaster as covenant consequence, not moral evil. God's refusal to listen inverts the covenant formula — they would not listen to God (v. 8), so God will not listen to them. The inescapability emphasizes that this is not a threat to be negotiated but a sentence already passed.
12. The bitter irony is explicit: the gods they chose over the LORD will be powerless to help them. The verb meqatterim ('burning incense') indicates active, ongoing worship of foreign deities — this is not a past failing but a present practice.
13. The rhetoric of abundance — gods matching cities, altars matching streets — depicts total saturation of idolatry. Every urban space has been claimed for false worship. The word bosheth ('shame, shameful thing') is used as a pejorative replacement for Ba'al's name, a practice also visible in the textual history of names like Mephibosheth (originally Merib-baal).
14. This prohibition against prophetic intercession is one of the most disturbing commands in the book (cf. 7:16, 14:11). The prophet's primary role included interceding for the people before God (as Moses did in Exodus 32:11-14), and God is now cutting off that channel. The situation has passed the point where intercession can help.
15. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The 'beloved' (yedidi, feminine) is Judah personified as a once-beloved woman now practicing wickedness. 'Holy flesh' likely refers to sacrificial offerings — the people believe that ritual sacrifice can cover their moral corruption. The verse's grammar is disrupted, possibly reflecting the emotional intensity of the speech.
16. The olive tree metaphor for Israel appears also in Hosea 14:6 and Romans 11:17-24. The name God gave — 'flourishing olive tree' — expressed promise and beauty, but the tree is now being consumed by fire. The shift from beauty to burning is abrupt and devastating.
17. The same God who planted the olive tree now burns it — the Gardener destroys his own planting because the tree has become corrupt. The phrase YHWH tseva'ot ('the LORD of Hosts') emphasizes God's sovereign power over all heavenly and earthly forces. Both kingdoms are again named together in shared guilt.

- 18.** This verse marks a dramatic shift — the beginning of Jeremiah's first 'confession' or personal lament (11:18-23). The prophet was unaware of the conspiracy against him until God revealed it. The simplicity of the Hebrew ('he made known, and I knew') captures the moment of sudden, devastating awareness.
- 19.** The phrase 'destroy the tree with its fruit' (literally 'with its bread/food') is their plan to eliminate Jeremiah completely — person and legacy. 'Cut off from the land of the living' means killed. 'His name remembered no more' means total obliteration of memory. The conspirators want not just Jeremiah's death but his erasure. The irony is acute: Jeremiah is the most personally documented prophet in the Hebrew Bible.
- 20.** The appeal to God as righteous judge who examines kelayot ('kidneys/inner thoughts') and lev ('heart') reflects the ancient Israelite understanding of the kidneys as the seat of the deepest emotions and the heart as the seat of the will and intellect. Jeremiah does not take revenge himself but commits his riv ('legal case, cause') to God.
- 21.** Anathoth was a Levitical city about three miles northeast of Jerusalem, Jeremiah's hometown (1:1). These are not foreigners or pagans threatening the prophet — they are his priestly kinsmen, his own community. Their demand — 'Do not prophesy' — attempts to silence the covenant-enforcement message. The threat is explicit: death.
- 22.** The verb poqed ('punish, visit upon') indicates judicial action — God will formally hold Anathoth accountable. The double death — sword and famine — covers military violence and siege conditions. Those who threatened Jeremiah's life will lose their own children's lives.
- 23.** The 'year of their punishment' (shenat pequddatam) indicates an appointed time of divine reckoning. The absence of any remnant (she'erit) is the most severe judgment possible — in prophetic theology, even catastrophic judgment usually leaves a remnant. Anathoth's conspiracy against God's prophet will be met with total destruction.

12

Summary: *Jeremiah 12 continues the prophet's first confession with a bold legal complaint against God: Why does the way of the wicked prosper? God's answer is not comfort but warning — if running with footmen has exhausted Jeremiah, how will he compete with horses? The chapter then shifts to an oracle of judgment against Judah's 'evil neighbors' who have seized the LORD's inheritance, followed by a surprising promise that even these pagan nations will be restored if they learn to swear by the LORD's name.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most stunningly honest prayers in the Bible — a prophet bringing a legal case against God himself. The verb tsadeq ('righteous') in verse 1 is judicial: Jeremiah concedes God's righteousness in advance but still demands an explanation. God's response in verse 5 is one of the harshest divine answers in Scripture — not an explanation but a warning that things will get worse. The 'horses' metaphor has become proverbial for spiritual endurance: if the easy trials defeat you, the hard ones will destroy you. The final oracle (vv. 14-17) is remarkable for its universalism — pagan nations that learn the LORD's ways will be 'built up' among God's people, a promise that anticipates the prophetic vision of gentile inclusion.*

Translation Friction: *The word mishpatim ('judgments, cases') in verse 1 forced a decision between legal and moral senses — we chose the judicial reading because Jeremiah is explicitly bringing a riv ('case') before God. The phrase 'the thickets of the Jordan' (ga'on ha-Yarden, v. 5) literally means 'the pride/swelling of the Jordan' — a reference to the dense, dangerous jungle that lined the Jordan's banks where lions lived. We rendered this as 'the thickets of the Jordan' to preserve the geographical reference while noting the Hebrew. The shift from personal lament (vv. 1-6) to national oracle (vv. 7-13) to international promise (vv. 14-17) required careful tone transitions.*

Connections: *The 'why do the wicked prosper' question connects to Job 21:7-15, Psalm 73, and Habakkuk 1:13. God's response about horses anticipates the escalating suffering Jeremiah will endure in chapters 20, 26, 37-38. The vineyard/inheritance language (vv. 7-13) echoes Isaiah 5:1-7 and anticipates Jesus's parable of the wicked tenants (Matthew 21:33-41). The promise to pagan nations (vv. 14-17) connects to Isaiah 19:23-25 and the eventual inclusion of gentiles in the covenant community.*

¹You are righteous, O LORD, when I bring my case before you. Yet I would plead my case with you: Why does the way of the wicked prosper? Why do all the treacherous thrive? ²You have planted them, and they have taken root. They grow and even bear fruit. You are near in their mouth but far from their heart. ³But you, O LORD — you know me. You see me and test my heart toward you. Drag them out like sheep for the slaughter, and set them apart for the day of killing. ⁴How long will the

land mourn and the grass of every field wither? Because of the wickedness of those who dwell in it, the animals and birds are swept away — for they say, 'He will not see our end.' ⁵If you have raced with men on foot and they have worn you out, how will you compete with horses? If you stumble in a land of peace, what will you do in the thickets of the Jordan? ⁶For even your brothers and your father's house — even they have betrayed you. Even they have raised a full cry against you. Do not trust them, though they speak kindly to you. ⁷I have abandoned my house. I have forsaken my inheritance. I have given the beloved of my soul into the hand of her enemies. ⁸My inheritance has become to me like a lion in the forest. She has roared against me; therefore I have turned against her. ⁹Is my inheritance to me like a speckled bird of prey, with birds of prey circling against her on every side? Go, gather all the wild beasts — bring them to devour. ¹⁰Many shepherds have destroyed my vineyard. They have trampled my portion underfoot. They have turned my cherished portion into a desolate wilderness. ¹¹They have made it desolate. It mourns before me in its desolation. The whole land is made desolate, because no one takes it to heart. ¹²Over all the barren heights in the wilderness, destroyers have come, for the sword of the LORD devours from one end of the land to the other. There is no peace for any living thing. ¹³They have sown wheat but reaped thorns. They have exhausted themselves for no profit. Be ashamed of your harvests because of the fierce anger of the LORD. ¹⁴This is what the LORD says concerning all my evil neighbors who seize the inheritance I gave my people Israel to possess: I am about to uproot them from their land, and I will uproot the house of Judah from among them. ¹⁵And after I have uprooted them, I will again have compassion on them, and I will restore each one to his inheritance and each one to his land. ¹⁶And if they diligently learn the ways of my people — to swear by my name, 'As the LORD lives,' just as they once taught my people to swear by Baal — then they will be built up in the midst of my people. ¹⁷But if they will not obey, then I will utterly uproot and destroy that nation, declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening *tsaddiq attah* ('righteous are you') is a concession, not a praise hymn — Jeremiah acknowledges God's justice before challenging it. The word *bogdei* ('treacherous ones') implies deliberate betrayal — not mere sinners but covenant-violators who have profited from their disloyalty. This is the biblical locus classicus for the problem of theodicy.
2. The plant metaphor echoes the olive tree of 11:16 — God planted them, they flourish, yet their devotion is only verbal. 'Near in their mouth but far from their kidneys' (*kilyoteihem*, literally 'kidneys' — the seat of deep emotions) describes superficial religion. We render *kilyot* as 'heart' here because the mouth/heart contrast communicates the hypocrisy more naturally to modern readers.
3. Jeremiah contrasts himself with the hypocrites of verse 2: they are far from God in their inner being, but God knows and tests Jeremiah's heart. The phrase *haqdishshem* ('set them apart, consecrate them') uses sacrificial language with bitter irony — the wicked are 'consecrated' not for worship but for slaughter. The prayer for vengeance is raw and unfiltered.
4. The land itself mourns — creation suffers because of human sin, a theme that connects to Genesis 3:17 and Romans 8:22. The final clause is ambiguous: 'He will not see our end' could mean the wicked believe God does not see their fate, or that Jeremiah will not see their downfall. Most interpreters take it as the wicked's arrogant dismissal of prophetic warnings.
5. This is God's answer to Jeremiah's complaint — and it is not the answer the prophet wanted. Instead of explaining why the wicked prosper, God warns that the suffering will intensify. The footmen/horses contrast has become proverbial: small trials prepare for greater ones. The 'thickets of the Jordan' was the most dangerous terrain in the land, home to predators and flooding.
6. God reveals the full extent of the betrayal: it is not strangers but Jeremiah's own family who have turned against him. The warning 'do not trust them though they speak kindly' indicates that the family's hostility is masked by friendly words — a deeper treachery than open opposition. This family betrayal intensifies the Anathoth conspiracy of chapter 11.
7. The speaker shifts abruptly to God himself — 'my house,' 'my inheritance,' 'the beloved of my soul.' The threefold 'I have' (*azavti, natashti, natati*) hammers home that God is the one performing the abandonment, and it costs him deeply. The word *nachalah* ('inheritance') applied to Israel means they are God's personal, treasured possession.
8. The startling image: Israel, God's treasured inheritance, has become like a wild lion roaring defiance at its owner. The word *sne'tiha* ('I hated her') is covenant-termination language — not an emotion but a legal declaration of the relationship's end (cf. the use of 'hate' in divorce contexts, Malachi 2:16). We rendered it as 'turned against her' to capture the covenantal rather than emotional sense.
9. The 'speckled bird of prey' (*ayit tsavua*) is an unusual bird that attracts attack from other birds — Israel's syncretistic religion has made her a target. The command to gather beasts for devouring is addressed to the nations, whom God summons as instruments of judgment. The imagery is of a carcass attracting predators.

10. The 'shepherds' (ro'im) are foreign rulers or invading armies whom God has permitted to ravage the land. 'My vineyard' (karmi) echoes Isaiah 5:1-7 where Israel is God's vineyard. The phrase *chelqat chemdati* ('my cherished portion') uses the language of a landowner surveying his devastated estate. God grieves the destruction even as he permits it.
11. The threefold repetition of *shemamah* ('desolation') creates a drumbeat of devastation. The land itself mourns — personified creation grieving its abuse. The final clause ('no one takes it to heart') indicts not just the invaders but the people of Judah who are indifferent to the destruction of God's land.
12. The 'sword of the LORD' (*cherev la-YHWH*) makes explicit that the invaders are God's instrument — the destruction is divinely directed. The phrase 'no peace for any living thing' (*ein shalom lekhol basar*) is total: not even animals are spared. The word *shalom* here means safety, security, well-being — all of it gone.
13. The wheat-and-thorns proverb inverts the expected agricultural cycle — labor produces only futility. This echoes the curse of Genesis 3:18 ('thorns and thistles') and anticipates the futility curses of Deuteronomy 28:38-40. The 'fierce anger of the LORD' (*charon af YHWH*) is the heat of divine wrath that has scorched the land's productivity.
14. The oracle shifts to address the surrounding nations — 'evil neighbors' (*shekhenim hara'im*) who have seized portions of Israel's land. God will uproot both the pagan nations and Judah from the land — a shared exile. The verb *notesham* ('uproot') uses agricultural imagery consistent with the planting/vineyard theme of the chapter.
15. The promise of restoration follows judgment — a pattern characteristic of Jeremiah's theology. The verb *richamtim* ('I will have compassion on them') shares the root *rechem* ('womb'), suggesting the deepest maternal tenderness. Remarkably, this compassion extends even to the pagan nations, not only to Judah.
16. This verse is remarkably universalist for its context: pagan nations that adopt the worship of the LORD will be incorporated into God's people. The condition is genuine conversion — learning God's ways, swearing by his name. The ironic reversal is pointed: these nations taught Israel idolatry, and now they themselves must learn Israel's faith. The verb *nivnu* ('be built up') implies permanent establishment, not mere toleration.
17. The alternative to conversion is total destruction — there is no neutral ground. The emphatic infinitive absolute *natosh venatasht* ('utterly uproot') doubles the verb for intensity. The chapter ends with *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD'), the prophetic attestation formula that seals the oracle as divine speech.

13

Summary: *Jeremiah 13 opens with the dramatic sign-act of the linen belt (ezor): God commands Jeremiah to buy a belt, wear it, then bury it by the Euphrates. When he retrieves it, the belt is ruined — a parable of how God bound Judah to himself in intimate covenant relationship, but the people's pride and idolatry have made them worthless. The chapter then delivers oracles about wine jars filled to bursting (divine judgment disguised as abundance), a warning about the exile ('carried beyond the Euphrates'), and a searing indictment of Jerusalem's shamelessness, ending with the haunting question: 'Can the Ethiopian change his skin or the leopard his spots?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The linen belt sign-act is one of Jeremiah's most vivid prophetic demonstrations. The ezor (linen waistcloth or belt) was the garment worn closest to the body — the metaphor is about intimacy, not decoration. Just as a belt clings to a person's waist, so God bound Israel to himself (v. 11). The ruined belt is therefore not just a picture of judgment but of broken intimacy. The question about the Ethiopian and leopard (v. 23) has become proverbial in English, but its original force is theological: Judah's sin has become so ingrained that repentance is as unlikely as a biological impossibility. The wine-jar oracle (vv. 12-14) uses the image of drunkenness not for pleasure but for the staggering, helpless confusion God will inflict as judgment. We preserved the sign-act narrative in prose without line breaks, consistent with our rendering of prophetic narrative sections.*

Translation Friction: *The location of the belt burial is debated: the Hebrew reads Perat, which normally means Euphrates, but some scholars propose a nearby wadi Parah (modern Ain Farah) since a round trip to the Euphrates would be extraordinary. We translated 'Euphrates' because the symbolic connection to Babylon and exile is central to the sign-act's meaning. The phrase 'uncover your skirts over your face' (v. 26) uses language of sexual exposure as a metaphor for the public shaming of conquest — we rendered it directly because euphemizing it would diminish the severity of the prophetic indictment. The word *sheririut* ('stubbornness') in verse 10 continues the Jeremic formula from 11:8.*

Connections: The linen belt sign-act connects to Jeremiah's other sign-acts: the potter's wheel (ch. 18), the broken flask (ch. 19), the yoke (ch. 27-28). The Euphrates location foreshadows the Babylonian exile. The Ethiopian/leopard proverb connects to Jeremiah's broader theme that the heart is incurable (17:9). The 'scattering like chaff' image (v. 24) connects to Psalm 1:4 and Matthew 3:12. The exposure/shame language connects to Hosea 2:3, Nahum 3:5, and Ezekiel 16:37.

¹This is what the LORD said to me: Go and buy yourself a linen belt, and put it around your waist, but do not put it in water. ²So I bought the belt according to the word of the LORD and put it around my waist. ³Then the word of the LORD came to me a second time: ⁴Take the belt that you bought, the one around your waist, and go to the Euphrates. Hide it there in a crevice of the rock. ⁵So I went and hid it by the Euphrates, as the LORD commanded me. ⁶After many days, the LORD said to me: Go to the Euphrates and retrieve the belt I commanded you to hide there. ⁷So I went to the Euphrates, dug, and retrieved the belt from the place where I had hidden it. And there it was — the belt was ruined, good for nothing. ⁸Then the word of the LORD came to me: ⁹This is what the LORD says: In this same way I will ruin the pride of Judah and the great pride of Jerusalem. ¹⁰This evil people, who refuse to hear my words, who walk in the stubbornness of their heart, and who have gone after other gods to serve and worship them — they will become like this belt, good for nothing. ¹¹For just as a belt clings to a person's waist, so I made the whole house of Israel and the whole house of Judah cling to me, declares the LORD — to be my people, for a name, for praise, and for glory. But they would not listen. ¹²You shall also speak this word to them: This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says — Every jar will be filled with wine. And they will say to you, 'Do we not know perfectly well that every jar will be filled with wine?' ¹³Then say to them: This is what the LORD says — I am about to fill all the inhabitants of this land — the kings who sit on David's throne, the priests, the prophets, and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem — with drunkenness. ¹⁴And I will smash them one against another, fathers and sons together, declares the LORD. I will not pity, I will not spare, I will not show compassion — I will destroy them.

¹⁵Hear and give ear — do not be proud,
for the LORD has spoken.

¹⁶Give glory to the LORD your God
before he brings darkness,
before your feet stumble
on the mountains at twilight.
You will hope for light,
but he will turn it to deep shadow
and make it thick darkness.

¹⁷But if you will not listen,
my soul will weep in secret
because of your pride.
My eyes will weep bitterly
and run down with tears,
for the LORD's flock has been taken captive.

¹⁸Say to the king and to the queen mother:
Come down from your thrones and sit low,
for your glorious crown has fallen from your head.

¹⁹The cities of the Negev are shut up, with no one to open them. All of Judah is carried into exile — completely carried away.
²⁰Lift up your eyes and see those coming from the north.
Where is the flock entrusted to you —
your beautiful flock?

²¹What will you say when he sets over you as head those you yourself trained as allies? Will not anguish seize you like a woman in labor? ²²And if you say in your heart, 'Why has this happened to me?' — it is because of the greatness of your iniquity that your skirts are stripped away and your body exposed.

²³Can a Cushite change his skin,
or a leopard its spots?
Then perhaps you also could do good —
you who are trained in evil.

²⁴Therefore I will scatter them like chaff
driven by the desert wind.

²⁵This is your lot,
the portion I have measured out for you, declares the LORD,
because you forgot me
and trusted in falsehood.

²⁶So I myself will strip your skirts over your face,
and your shame will be exposed.

²⁷Your adulteries, your lustful neighings,
your shameless prostitution on the hills and in the fields —
I have seen your detestable acts.
Woe to you, O Jerusalem!
How long will you remain unclean?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *ezor pishtim* ('linen belt/waistcloth') was the innermost garment, worn directly against the skin. The instruction not to wash it is significant — it must retain the intimate contact, the body's imprint. Linen was also priestly fabric (Exodus 28:42), connecting the belt to Jeremiah's priestly identity.
2. Jeremiah's immediate obedience is narrated without comment — the prophet simply does what God commands. The simplicity of the prose contrasts with the symbolic weight of the action.
3. The second divine command introduces the next phase of the sign-act. The narrative structure — command, obedience, second command, obedience, interpretation — is the standard pattern for prophetic sign-acts.
4. The Hebrew *Peratah* means 'to the Euphrates.' Whether Jeremiah literally traveled to the Euphrates River (a journey of several hundred miles each way) or to a local wadi Parah is debated. We render 'Euphrates' because the symbolic identification with Babylon and exile is the theological point of the sign-act. The belt that clung to Jeremiah's body is now hidden in foreign territory.
5. Again, simple obedience narrated without elaboration. The journey itself — if literal — would have been an extraordinary prophetic demonstration visible to many.
6. The 'many days' allow time for the belt to decay — the passage of time is essential to the sign-act's meaning. The belt that was once intimately close is now distant and deteriorating.
7. The climax of the sign-act: the belt that once clung intimately to the prophet's body is now *nishchat* ('ruined, spoiled, corrupted'). The word *lo yitslach lakkol* ('good for nothing, useless for anything') is emphatic — total worthlessness. The once-beautiful priestly linen is decomposed beyond use.
8. The interpretation formula — God now explains the sign-act's meaning.
9. The verb *ashchit* ('I will ruin') is the same root as *nishchat* ('was ruined') describing the belt — the parallel is exact. Just as the belt was ruined, so God will ruin Judah's *ga'on* ('pride, arrogance, excellence'). The word *ga'on* can mean either 'pride' (negative) or 'excellence/majesty' (positive) — here it is the arrogance that has separated Judah from God.
10. The interpretation makes the parallel explicit: the people are the belt. The phrase *sheririut libbam* ('stubbornness of their heart') recurs from 11:8 as Jeremiah's standard diagnosis. The triple indictment — refusing to hear, walking in stubbornness, pursuing other gods — is the complete covenant violation. The climax 'good for nothing' (*lo yitslach lakkol*) applies the belt's condition to the nation.

11. The fourfold purpose — 'people, name, praise, glory' — echoes Deuteronomy 26:19. God's intention was that Israel would be his intimate possession, his reputation on earth, his praise among the nations. The final 'but they would not listen' (velo shame'u) is devastating in its brevity — all that divine purpose, refused. The belt metaphor reaches its full meaning here: God wrapped a nation around himself like a garment, and they rotted away.
12. The oracle begins with what sounds like a promise of abundance — every nevel ('jar, jug, wineskin') filled with wine. The people's dismissive response ('obviously!') shows they hear only the surface meaning. But the 'wine' is divine judgment — God will fill them with staggering confusion, not celebration. The wordplay depends on nevel meaning both 'wine jar' and sounding like naval ('fool').
13. The meaning is now revealed: the 'wine' is shikkaron ('drunkenness, intoxication') — not celebration but the staggering confusion of divine judgment. Every social class is listed — kings, priests, prophets, common people — no one is exempt. The drunkenness metaphor appears also in Isaiah 29:9 and Jeremiah 25:15-29 (the cup of God's wrath).
14. The jar metaphor continues — the jars filled with wine are now smashed against each other. The image is of ceramic vessels shattering on impact. The threefold negation — no pity, no sparing, no compassion — is the most comprehensive statement of judgment's finality. Even the family bond (fathers and sons) will not prevent destruction.
15. The shift to poetry is marked by parallelism. The imperative 'do not be proud' (al tighahu) directly addresses the ga'on ('pride') theme from verse 9. The statement 'the LORD has spoken' is both authentication and warning — the decree is final.
16. The imagery of darkness overtaking travelers on mountain paths is vivid — once twilight falls in the mountains, the path becomes lethal. The word tsalmaveth ('deep shadow, death-shadow') combines tsel ('shadow') with maveth ('death') — the same word appears in Psalm 23:4. The progression from hope for light to deep darkness to thick gloom is a three-stage descent into judgment.
17. One of the most tender verses in Jeremiah — the 'weeping prophet' title originates from passages like this. The prophet weeps in secret (bemistarim), not publicly — this is private grief, not performance. The phrase 'the LORD's flock' (eder YHWH) shifts to pastoral imagery: the nation is not just a political entity but God's personally tended flock, now seized by predators.
18. The gevirah ('queen mother') held significant political power in the Judean court — likely a reference to Nehushta, mother of King Jehoiachin (2 Kings 24:8). The command to 'sit low' (hashpilu shevu) means to descend from the throne to the ground — the posture of mourning and humiliation. The crown falling symbolizes the end of royal authority.
19. The Negev cities, the southern gateway to Judah, are sealed — invasion from the south has closed every escape route. The emphatic 'all of Judah' (kullah) and 'completely' (shelomim, literally 'wholly, in entirety') stress the totality of the exile. No partial judgment, no remnant left behind.
20. Jerusalem is addressed as a shepherdess who has lost her flock. The enemy comes 'from the north' (mitsafon) — the standard direction of Babylonian invasion, since armies approached via the Fertile Crescent rather than crossing the desert directly. The 'beautiful flock' (tson tifarteikh) echoes 'the LORD's flock' from verse 17 — Jerusalem was given stewardship of God's people and has failed.
21. The irony is sharp: Jerusalem cultivated foreign alliances (trained them as 'allies/chiefs' over herself), and now those very nations will rule over her as conquerors. The birth-pangs metaphor for judgment is common in the prophets (Isaiah 13:8, Micah 4:9-10) — sudden, inescapable, agonizing pain.
22. The exposure of skirts (shulayikh) is the language of public humiliation — conquered cities were stripped and paraded as a sign of total defeat. The image draws on the metaphor of Jerusalem as a woman whose shame is publicly revealed because of her unfaithfulness. This connects to the adultery/idolatry metaphor that runs through Jeremiah and Ezekiel.
23. This verse has become proverbial in English ('a leopard cannot change its spots') but its original context is a devastating theological verdict: Judah has practiced evil so long that it has become their nature. The word limmudei ('trained, accustomed, disciples of') implies that evil has become their education, their skill, their expertise. The question implies that only divine intervention — not human effort — can change them.
24. The chaff/wind image appears throughout the Hebrew Bible as a metaphor for the impermanent and worthless (Psalm 1:4, Isaiah 17:13). The 'desert wind' (ruach midbar) is the scorching east wind from the Arabian desert — hot, dry, and destructive.
25. The word goral ('lot') evokes the casting of lots — Jerusalem's fate has been determined. The 'falsehood' (sheqer) encompasses both false gods and the false prophets who promised peace (cf. 14:13-14). Forgetting God (shakhachat oti) is not mere forgetfulness but deliberate abandonment of the covenant relationship.
26. God performs the act of exposure himself — this is not random violence but judicial sentence. The stripping of garments over the face was a public humiliation inflicted on conquered peoples and adulterous women (Nahum 3:5, Ezekiel 16:37, Hosea 2:3). The word qalon ('shame, disgrace, dishonor') is the public revelation of what was hidden.
27. The word mitshalotayikh ('your neighings') compares Jerusalem's pursuit of foreign gods to a mare in heat — sexually graphic language deliberately chosen to shock. The word zimmah ('lewdness, shameless scheme') implies both sexual immorality and calculated wickedness. The 'hills and fields' are the bamot (high places) where Canaanite worship occurred. The final question — 'How long?' — leaves open the possibility of purification, but the tone is grief rather than hope.

14

Summary: *Jeremiah 14 opens with a devastating drought oracle — the land itself groans under divine judgment, with nobles, farmers, and animals alike brought to despair. Jeremiah intercedes for the people in deeply moving prayer (vv. 7-9, 19-22), but God refuses to accept the intercession and repeats the prohibition first issued in 7:16 and 11:14: 'Do not pray for this people.' The chapter includes a sharp condemnation of false prophets who promise peace when none is coming, and God's declaration that both the false prophets and those who listen to them will face sword and famine.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of Jeremiah's most eloquent intercessory prayers, both rejected by God — a theological crisis at the heart of the prophetic vocation. The drought serves as a concrete manifestation of covenant-curse (Deuteronomy 28:23-24), making the physical landscape a witness against the people. The image of God as a 'stranger in the land' and a 'traveler who turns aside for the night' (v. 8) is one of the most startling metaphors in the Hebrew Bible — Jeremiah accuses God of behaving like a disengaged passerby in his own land. The triple prohibition against intercession (7:16, 11:14, 14:11) progressively closes the door on prophetic mediation, leaving Judah without an advocate before God. We preserved the poetic structure of the drought lament and the intercessory prayers to distinguish them from the prose divine responses.*

Translation Friction: *The word batstsarot ('distress, anguish') in verse 8 required careful handling — it describes God's relationship to Israel's suffering, not Israel's emotional state. The verb natash ('abandon') in verse 9 is covenant-language for forsaking an obligation, stronger than mere absence. The phrase navi sheqer ('false prophet') in verses 14-15 had to be rendered consistently with the Jeremiah briefing addendum's locked vocabulary. The intercessory prayers use first-person plural ('we') — Jeremiah identifies with the sinful people even as God rejects them, creating a tension the rendering must not smooth over.*

Connections: *The drought as covenant-curse connects to Deuteronomy 28:23-24 and Leviticus 26:19-20. The prohibition against intercession reprises 7:16 and 11:14. The false prophets condemned here anticipate the extended confrontation with Hananiah in chapter 28. Jeremiah's intercessory prayers echo Moses's intercessions (Exodus 32:11-14, Numbers 14:13-19), but unlike Moses, Jeremiah is denied. The drought imagery connects to Joel 1 and Amos 4:7-8. The covenant-confession formula 'we acknowledge our wickedness' (v. 20) echoes the Day of Atonement liturgy.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Jeremiah concerning the drought:

²Judah mourns;
her gates languish to the ground.
They sit in darkness on the earth,
and the cry of Jerusalem rises up.

³Their nobles send their servants to the cisterns;
they come to the pits and find no water.
They return with their vessels empty,
ashamed and humiliated, covering their heads.

⁴Because the ground is cracked,
for there has been no rain on the land,
the farmers are ashamed;
they cover their heads.

⁵Even the doe in the field gives birth and abandons her young,
because there is no grass.

⁶Wild donkeys stand on the bare heights,
 gasping for air like jackals;
 their eyes grow dim
 because there is no vegetation.

⁷Though our iniquities testify against us,
 act, LORD, for the sake of your name.
 For our acts of turning away are many —
 we have sinned against you.

⁸O Hope of Israel,
 its Savior in time of distress —
 why are you like a stranger in the land,
 like a traveler who turns aside only to spend the night?

⁹Why are you like someone stunned,
 like a warrior who cannot save?
 Yet you are in our midst, LORD,
 and your name has been called over us —
 do not abandon us!

¹⁰This is what the LORD says concerning this people:
 They have loved to wander;
 they have not restrained their feet.
 So the LORD takes no pleasure in them.
 Now he will remember their iniquity
 and punish their sins.

¹¹Then the LORD said to me: Do not pray for this people for their welfare. ¹²When they fast, I will not listen to their cry. When they offer burnt offering and grain offering, I will not accept them. Instead, I will consume them by the sword, by famine, and by plague. ¹³Then I said, "Ah, Lord GOD! Look — the prophets are telling them, 'You will not see the sword, and famine will not come upon you, for I will give you lasting peace in this place.'" ¹⁴Then the LORD said to me: The prophets are prophesying falsehood in my name. I did not send them, I did not command them, and I did not speak to them. They are prophesying to you a false vision, worthless divination, and the deceit of their own hearts. ¹⁵Therefore this is what the LORD says concerning the prophets who prophesy in my name though I did not send them, who say, 'Sword and famine will not come upon this land' — by the sword and by famine those very prophets will meet their end. ¹⁶And the people to whom they prophesy will be thrown out into the streets of Jerusalem because of famine and the sword, with no one to bury them — they, their wives, their sons, and their daughters. I will pour out their own wickedness upon them.

¹⁷And you will speak this word to them:
 Let my eyes flow with tears
 night and day without stopping,
 for the virgin daughter of my people
 is shattered with a great wound,
 a grievous blow.

¹⁸If I go out to the field — there lie those slain by the sword.
 If I enter the city — there are those wasting from famine.
 For both prophet and priest wander through a land

they do not know.

¹⁹Have you utterly rejected Judah?
Does your soul loathe Zion?
Why have you struck us
with no healing for us?
We hoped for peace — but nothing good came.
We hoped for a time of healing — but there is only terror.

²⁰We acknowledge our wickedness, LORD,
the iniquity of our ancestors —
for we have sinned against you.

²¹Do not despise us, for your name's sake!
Do not dishonor the throne of your glory.
Remember — do not break your covenant with us.

²²Can any of the worthless idols of the nations bring rain?
Can the heavens themselves give showers?
Is it not you alone, LORD our God?
We set our hope on you,
for you have made all these things.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *batstsarot* (plural of *battsoret*) refers to drought or severe lack of rain — the KJV's 'dearth' is archaic. The plural form may indicate either repeated droughts or the comprehensive nature of the disaster. This superscription frames the entire chapter as a prophetic response to an actual agricultural crisis.
2. The verb *avelah* ('mourns') is used of both human grief and the land itself mourning — a common prophetic device where the physical landscape participates in covenant judgment. The verb *qaderu* ('they are dark, they sit in gloom') can mean either literal darkness or the posture of mourning (sitting on the ground in black garments). The cry of Jerusalem 'rising up' uses the verb *alah*, the same root as *olah* ('burnt offering') — the city's anguish ascends like smoke.
3. The word *tse'oreihem* is debated — it can mean 'their little ones' (KJV) or 'their servants/subordinates.' In context, nobles sending servants for water makes more practical sense. The covering of heads is a gesture of mourning and shame (cf. 2 Samuel 15:30, Esther 6:12). The empty vessels are a powerful concrete image — drought reduces the mighty to helplessness.
4. The verb *chattah* ('cracked, shattered') describes soil so dry it fractures — the same root can mean 'terrified' when applied to people, creating a subtle double meaning where the ground itself recoils in fear. The farmers (*ikkarim*) are the backbone of Judah's economy; their shame represents the collapse of the agricultural order that sustained covenant life in the promised land.
5. The image of the doe (*ayyelet*) abandoning her newborn fawn is devastating — maternal instinct, the most powerful force in the animal world, is overridden by the severity of the drought. The absence of *deshe* ('fresh grass, vegetation') means the mother cannot produce milk. Nature itself breaks under covenant judgment.
6. The *pera'im* ('wild donkeys') are the hardiest animals of the wilderness — if they are failing, all life is failing. They stand on *shepayim* ('bare heights') where wind might carry the scent of water. The word *tannim* is 'jackals' (not 'dragons' as in the KJV) — jackals pant with open mouths in heat. The dimming eyes indicate approaching death from dehydration. The drought has reached even the untamed creatures that depend on no one.
7. Jeremiah's intercession begins here and runs through verse 9. He uses first-person plural — identifying with the people's sin rather than standing apart. The appeal 'for the sake of your name' (*lema'an shimkha*) is a classic Mosaic strategy: God's reputation among the nations is at stake (cf. Exodus 32:12, Numbers 14:13-16). The word *meshuvotenu* ('our turnings away, backslidings') is from *shuv*, Jeremiah's key verb.
8. The title *miqveh yisra'el* ('Hope of Israel') doubles as a wordplay — *miqveh* also means 'pool of water, reservoir' (cf. Genesis 1:10), making it poignant in a drought context: Israel's reservoir has gone dry. The accusation that God acts like a *ger* ('stranger, resident alien') in his own land is theologically shocking — God should be the permanent resident, the landowner, but he behaves like a passing foreigner with no stake in the place. The metaphor of the overnight traveler intensifies the charge: God is merely passing through.

9. The word *nidham* ('stunned, dazed, bewildered') accuses God of being paralyzed — unable to act, like a warrior frozen in battle. This is extraordinarily bold language directed at the Almighty. The phrase *shimkha alenu niqra* ('your name has been called over us') is covenant-possession language — Israel bears God's name as a wife bears her husband's name. To abandon them would be to abandon his own reputation. The verb *tannichenu* ('abandon us') from the root *n-ch-h* carries the force of permanent desertion.
10. God's response to Jeremiah's prayer is blunt refusal. The verb *lanu'a* ('to wander, to stagger') suggests aimless, uncontrolled movement — the people wander from God not by deliberate choice but by habitual restlessness. The phrase *lo chasaku* ('they have not restrained') implies willing self-indulgence. The divine response switches from the intimate 'you are in our midst' to the distancing 'this people' — God refuses the closeness Jeremiah invoked.
11. This is the third and final occurrence of the intercession prohibition (cf. 7:16, 11:14). The word *letovah* ('for their good, for their welfare') is emphatic — Jeremiah may not even ask for minimal benefit for them. The progressive closure of intercession across these three texts represents the exhaustion of prophetic mediation. The prophet's most essential function — standing between God and the people — has been revoked.
12. The triad of sword (*cherev*), famine (*ra'av*), and plague (*dever*) is Jeremiah's signature judgment formula, appearing over a dozen times in the book (21:7, 9; 24:10; 27:8, 13; 29:17-18; 32:24, 36; 34:17; 38:2; 42:17, 22; 44:13). These represent the three faces of siege warfare — military violence, starvation, and disease. God declares that neither fasting nor sacrifice will be accepted — the normal means of averting divine wrath have been rendered ineffective by persistent covenant violation.
13. Jeremiah raises the defense that the people are being misled by other prophets. The exclamation *ahahh* ('Ah!') expresses anguished protest — Jeremiah is not making excuses but genuinely grieving the deception. The false prophets' promise of *shelom emet* ('true peace') directly contradicts God's announcement of sword and famine. The phrase 'in this place' (*bamaqom hazzeh*) refers to Jerusalem and the temple — the false prophets are promising that Jerusalem is inviolable.
14. God's response to Jeremiah's defense is devastating — the false prophets have no commission. Three denials ('I did not send... command... speak') systematically dismantle every possible claim to authority. The word *sheqer* ('falsehood, lie') is the key accusation — these are *nevi'ei sheqer* ('false prophets'), using God's name without his authorization. The term *qesem* ('divination') is particularly damning because divination was explicitly forbidden in Israel (Deuteronomy 18:10). The word *elil* ('worthless thing, nothing') dismisses their entire prophetic output as empty.
15. The punishment fits the crime with bitter irony — the prophets who denied sword and famine will die by sword and famine. The verb *yittammu* ('they will be consumed, they will come to an end') from the root *t-m-m* carries finality — total consumption. This is measure-for-measure judgment (*middah keneged middah*).
16. The horror escalates: unburied corpses in the streets represent the ultimate disgrace in ancient Near Eastern culture, where proper burial was a sacred obligation. The catalog of victims — wives, sons, daughters — emphasizes that the false prophets' lies destroy entire families. The verb *shafakhti* ('I will pour out') is the same verb used for pouring out blood — God will pour their wickedness back upon them like blood poured on the ground.
17. The speaker shifts ambiguously — it could be God or Jeremiah weeping, or both. This deliberate blurring is characteristic of Jeremiah, where the prophet's grief and God's grief merge. The epithet *betulat bat-ammi* ('virgin daughter of my people') personifies Judah/Jerusalem as a young, vulnerable woman who has been violently assaulted. The word *shever* ('shattering, breaking') suggests a fracture so severe it cannot be repaired — the same word describes a broken bone or a shattered vessel.
18. The verse paints a panorama of total devastation — the countryside holds the sword-slain, the city holds the famine-starved. The word *tachalu'ei* ('those sick with, those wasting from') emphasizes the slow agony of famine death. The final line is puzzling — *sacharu el-erets velo yada'u* ('they wander to a land they do not know') may mean the prophets and priests practice their trade in ignorance, or it may refer to exile, or to death as a journey to an unknown land. We preserved the ambiguity.
19. Jeremiah's second intercessory prayer begins here and runs through verse 22. The emphatic infinitive *hama'os ma'asta* ('have you utterly, completely rejected') presses God on whether the rejection is final. The verb *ga'alach* ('loathe, abhor') is visceral — it suggests nausea, the reaction to something repulsive. Asking if God's *nephesh* ('soul, being') loathes Zion is asking whether God's deepest self is revolted by his own people. The contrast between hoped-for *shalom* and actual *be'atah* ('terror') echoes 8:15 almost verbatim.
20. This is a formal confession of sin using three terms: *rish'enu* ('our wickedness'), *avon avotenu* ('the iniquity of our ancestors'), and *chatanu* ('we have sinned'). The inclusion of ancestral iniquity acknowledges that the current generation bears the accumulated weight of generational covenant-breaking. The verb *yada'nu* ('we know, we acknowledge') implies not just awareness but admission — they are not claiming ignorance.
21. Three imperatives in rapid succession create urgency: *al-tin'ats* ('do not despise'), *al-tenabbel* ('do not dishonor'), *al-tafer* ('do not break'). The 'throne of your glory' (*kisse' kevodekha*) refers to the temple in Jerusalem, God's earthly throne — Jeremiah pleads that God not bring disgrace upon his own dwelling place. The climactic appeal is to the covenant itself: *berit* — the binding agreement God swore. Jeremiah is essentially arguing that God cannot abandon Israel without violating his own oath.
22. The prayer ends with a theological argument: since the idols (*havlei haggoyim*, literally 'the vapors/vanities of the nations') cannot produce rain, and even the heavens themselves cannot give rain on their own authority, only the LORD can end the drought. The word *havalim* ('vapors, breaths, worthless things') is the same word Ecclesiastes uses for 'vanity' — the idols are literally nothing, hot air. The final affirmation 'you have made all these things' asserts God's sovereignty over the created order, including weather — making the drought itself a deliberate divine act rather than cosmic accident.

15

Summary: *Jeremiah 15 opens with God's most absolute refusal of intercession — even Moses and Samuel, Israel's greatest intercessors, could not turn him from judgment (v. 1). Four agents of destruction are appointed: sword, dogs, birds, and beasts (v. 3). The chapter then shifts into Jeremiah's first major confession (vv. 10-21), one of the most raw personal prayers in scripture. The prophet laments his birth, confesses that God's word was his joy and delight yet also his source of isolation and suffering, and receives a conditional divine promise: 'If you return, I will restore you' (v. 19) — God demands repentance even from his own prophet.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most extraordinary reversals in prophetic literature: God applies the verb shuv ('return') to Jeremiah himself (v. 19). Throughout the book, shuv is directed at wayward Israel — here God turns it on his own prophet, demanding that Jeremiah repent of his despair and self-pity before he can be restored to prophetic service. The image of God's word as fire and joy (v. 16) stands in tension with the isolation and suffering that same word causes (v. 17) — the prophet's vocation is simultaneously his greatest gift and his greatest burden. The mention of Moses and Samuel as failed intercessors (v. 1) is not merely rhetorical — it establishes that Judah's guilt exceeds anything in Israel's prior history. We rendered the confession with its full emotional force, preserving Jeremiah's accusations against God without softening.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'I sat alone because of your hand' (v. 17) uses the word badad ('alone, isolated'), which carries the resonance of Lamentations 1:1 ('How the city sits alone'). Jeremiah's isolation prefigures Jerusalem's. The verb pittitani does not appear in this chapter (it is in chapter 20), but the emotional trajectory toward that accusation begins here. The conditional promise in verse 19 — 'if you return' (im tashuv) — required careful handling because shuv is Jeremiah's signature verb for Israel's repentance, and applying it to the prophet himself is theologically startling. The word mevasser in verse 16 ('your word was called over me') uses the same name-calling formula as covenant possession.*

Connections: *Moses's intercession (Exodus 32:11-14, Numbers 14:13-19) and Samuel's intercession (1 Samuel 7:9, 12:19-23) are the background for verse 1 — both succeeded where Jeremiah is told even they would fail. The birth-lament in verse 10 anticipates the fuller curse in 20:14-18 and echoes Job 3:1-26. The devouring of God's word (v. 16) connects to Ezekiel's scroll-eating (Ezekiel 2:8-3:3). The promise 'I will make you a fortified wall of bronze' (v. 20) reprises the commissioning language of 1:18. The four-fold judgment of verse 3 echoes Ezekiel 14:21.*

¹Then the LORD said to me: Even if Moses and Samuel were to stand before me, my heart would not turn toward this people. Send them away from my presence — let them go!

²And when they ask you, 'Where should we go?' — tell them: This is what the LORD says:
Those destined for death — to death.
Those destined for the sword — to the sword.
Those destined for famine — to famine.
Those destined for captivity — to captivity.

³I will appoint four kinds of destroyers against them, declares the LORD: the sword to kill, dogs to drag away, the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth to devour and destroy. ⁴I will make them an object of horror to all the kingdoms of the earth, because of what Manasseh son of Hezekiah, king of Judah, did in Jerusalem.

⁵For who will have compassion on you, Jerusalem?
Who will mourn for you?
Who will turn aside to ask about your welfare?

⁶You have abandoned me, declares the LORD;
you keep going backward.
So I stretched out my hand against you and destroyed you —

I am weary of relenting.

⁷I winnowed them with a winnowing fork at the gates of the land.
I bereaved them; I destroyed my people,
for they did not turn back from their ways.

⁸Their widows are more numerous to me than the sand of the seas.
I brought against the mother of young men
a destroyer at midday.
I made anguish and terror
fall on her suddenly.

⁹The mother of seven grows faint;
she breathes out her life.
Her sun has set while it is still day —
she is shamed and disgraced.
And their survivors I will give to the sword
before their enemies, declares the LORD.

¹⁰Woe to me, my mother, that you gave birth to me —
a man of conflict and a man of dispute with the whole land!
I have not lent, and no one has lent to me,
yet everyone curses me.

¹¹The LORD said: Surely I have set you free for a good purpose. Surely I have made the enemy plead with you in the time of disaster and in the time of distress. ¹²Can iron shatter iron from the north, or bronze? ¹³Your wealth and your treasures I will give as plunder — without cost — because of all your sins throughout all your territory. ¹⁴I will make you serve your enemies in a land you do not know, for a fire is kindled in my anger — it will burn against you.

¹⁵You know, LORD.
Remember me and attend to me;
avenge me against my persecutors.
In your patience, do not take me away.
Know that for your sake I bear reproach.

¹⁶Your words were found, and I devoured them.
Your word became my joy
and the delight of my heart,
for your name has been called over me,
LORD, God of Hosts.

¹⁷I did not sit in the company of revelers and celebrate.
Because of your hand upon me, I sat alone,
for you filled me with indignation.

¹⁸Why is my pain unending,
my wound incurable, refusing to heal?
Will you truly be to me like a deceptive stream,
like waters that cannot be trusted?

¹⁹Therefore this is what the LORD says:
 If you return, I will restore you —
 you will stand before me.
 If you extract what is precious from what is worthless,
 you will be as my mouth.
 They will turn to you,
 but you must not turn to them.

²⁰I will make you a fortified wall of bronze to this people.
 They will fight against you,
 but they will not overcome you,
 for I am with you to save you and deliver you,
 declares the LORD.

²¹I will rescue you from the hand of the wicked
 and redeem you from the grasp of the ruthless.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The mention of Moses and Samuel is not arbitrary — these are Israel's two greatest intercessors. Moses turned away God's wrath after the golden calf (Exodus 32:11-14) and after the spies' report (Numbers 14:13-19). Samuel's prayers brought victory at Mizpah (1 Samuel 7:9) and he promised never to cease praying for Israel (1 Samuel 12:23). If even these two could not save this generation, no one can. The phrase *ein nafshi el* ('my soul/heart is not toward') expresses total emotional withdrawal — God has no remaining inclination toward these people. The imperatives *shalach* ('send away') and *yetse'u* ('let them go out') reverse the Exodus — God once brought them out of Egypt to himself; now he sends them out from his presence.
2. The fourfold assignment is merciless in its finality — each person's fate is already sealed. The repetitive structure (*asher la-X la-X*) creates a drumbeat of inevitability. The four fates represent escalating severity: death (by plague), the sword (military violence), famine (slow starvation), and captivity (exile) — though exile, paradoxically, is survival. This quatrain echoes Revelation 6:8, where the fourth horseman is given authority over these same four destroyers.
3. The word *mishpachot* ('kinds, families, clans') is used with grim irony — these four 'families' of destruction replace the family of Israel. Dogs in the ancient Near East were not domestic pets but scavengers that roamed the streets feeding on refuse and corpses — being dragged away by dogs means the bodies will not receive burial. The progression from sword (human violence) to dogs, birds, and beasts (animal scavenging) depicts a total reversal of the created order, where humans were given dominion over animals (Genesis 1:28). The formula *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') stamps this as irrevocable divine decree.
4. The word *za'avah* ('horror, object of trembling') describes something so terrible that onlookers shudder — Israel's fate will serve as a cautionary tale among the nations. Manasseh (reigned c. 697-642 BCE) is singled out as the king whose sins made Judah's destruction inevitable, despite Josiah's later reforms. According to 2 Kings 21:16, Manasseh 'filled Jerusalem with innocent blood from one end to the other.' The mention of Hezekiah as his father heightens the tragedy — the most righteous king fathered the most wicked.
5. Three rhetorical questions hammer home Jerusalem's total abandonment — no compassion (*yachmol*), no mourning (*yanud*), and no one even pausing to inquire after her well-being. The verb *yanud* ('to shake the head, to wag in sympathy') describes the gesture of condolence. The final question uses *lish'ol leshalom* ('to ask about peace/welfare') — the standard Hebrew greeting. No one will even say 'How are you?' to Jerusalem.
6. The verb *nataash* ('abandon, forsake') is covenant-language for desertion — God accuses Jerusalem of abandoning him, not the other way around. The phrase *achor telekhi* ('you walk backward') is the opposite of 'walking with God' — Jerusalem moves in reverse, away from the covenant relationship. The stunning confession *nil'eiti hinnahe* ('I am weary of relenting') admits divine exhaustion — God has relented so many times that he can no longer sustain compassion. The verb *n-ch-m* ('relent, comfort, repent') is the same verb used when God 'relented' from destroying Israel after Moses's intercession (Exodus 32:14).
7. The winnowing image (*ezrem bemizreh*) is agricultural — grain is tossed into the wind so that chaff blows away and good grain falls. God is winnowing his people, separating them at the 'gates of the land' — the borders through which they will pass into exile. The verb *shikkalti* ('I bereaved') uses the piel intensive form, emphasizing the thoroughness of the loss. The root *shuv* ('return') appears in its negative form — they did not *shuv*. This is the verb of the entire book applied to Israel's persistent refusal.
8. The comparison of widows to the sand of the seas (*mechol yammim*) inverts the Abrahamic blessing — God promised Abraham descendants like the sand (Genesis 22:17), now the widows are like sand. The 'mother of a young man' (*em bachur*) may refer to the city itself as a bereaved mother, or to individual mothers losing their sons. The destroyer comes 'at midday' (*batstsahorayim*) — the most unexpected time, when people feel safest. The word *behalot* ('terrors, sudden confusions') suggests panic so overwhelming that all ordered thought collapses.

9. The 'mother of seven' represents the most blessed woman in Israelite culture — seven sons was the fullness of maternal blessing (cf. Ruth 4:15, 1 Samuel 2:5). Even she is undone. The phrase ba'ah shimshah be'od yomam ('her sun has set while it is still day') is a powerful image of premature death and untimely catastrophe — the natural order of day and night is violated. The survivors (she'eritam) face the sword — there is no escape route. The ne'um YHWH formula seals the pronouncement as divine decree.
10. Jeremiah's first major confession begins here. The cry oi li immi ('woe to me, my mother') is directed not at God but at his mother — it is a lament over existence itself, anticipating the fuller birth-curse of 20:14-18. The words riv ('conflict, legal dispute') and madon ('contention, strife') characterize Jeremiah's entire life as one long quarrel. The usury reference is significant: lending disputes were the most common source of social conflict in ancient Israel. Jeremiah has not created enemies through financial dealings — his enemies come solely from his prophetic calling.
11. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew, with multiple possible readings. The verb sheritikha may come from sharah ('to set free, to loose') or sharar ('to strengthen'). We follow the reading 'set you free for good purpose,' which fits the context of Jeremiah's complaint about his unwanted calling. The verb hifga'ti ('I caused to encounter, I made plead') suggests God orchestrating circumstances so that even enemies must acknowledge Jeremiah — as will happen when Nebuchadnezzar gives Jeremiah favorable treatment (39:11-12).
12. This enigmatic verse is among the most debated in Jeremiah. The 'iron from the north' (barzel mitstsafon) likely refers to Babylon, the enemy from the north (cf. 1:14, 4:6, 6:1). The rhetorical question implies that ordinary iron cannot break the hardened northern iron — Judah cannot resist Babylon. Some read this as reassurance to Jeremiah: his enemies cannot break him because God has made him iron and bronze (1:18). The brevity and ambiguity may be deliberate.
13. The address shifts to Judah collectively. The phrase lo vimchir ('without price, for nothing') means the plunder will be given freely to the enemy — Judah's wealth has no redemptive value. The comprehensive phrase bekhoh-gevulekha ('in all your borders') means no corner of the land will be spared. This verse closely parallels 17:3, suggesting it may be a fragmentary oracle inserted here.
14. The phrase erets lo yada'ta ('a land you do not know') is the dread of exile — being uprooted from the promised land to an alien place. The fire of God's anger (esh qadchah be'appi) is a standard prophetic image, but here the verb tuqad ('it will burn') is in the hophal passive — the fire burns on its own, sustained by God's settled fury rather than momentary anger. Some manuscripts and versions read 'I will make your enemies pass over you' rather than 'I will make you pass with your enemies,' affecting whether this is about exile or invasion.
15. Jeremiah's prayer resumes with direct address to God. Three imperatives — zokhrenei ('remember me'), poqdeni ('attend to me, visit me'), hinnaqem ('avenge me') — escalate in intensity from memory to action to vengeance. The plea al-le'erekh appekha tiqqacheni ('in your patience do not take me away') is paradoxical: God's patience with the wicked means extended suffering for the prophet. Jeremiah asks God not to let his own long-suffering become the prophet's death sentence. The phrase se'eti alekha cherpah ('I bear reproach for your sake') makes the claim explicit — Jeremiah suffers because he carries God's message.
16. The image of 'finding' and 'devouring' God's words (nimtse'u devarekha va'okhlam) is among the most powerful descriptions of prophetic calling in scripture. The verb akhal ('to eat, devour') suggests not casual reading but total internalization — the word becomes part of the prophet's body. Ezekiel will enact this literally by eating a scroll (Ezekiel 2:8-3:3). The phrase niqra shimkha alai ('your name has been called over me') is covenant-possession language — Jeremiah belongs to God the way a wife bears her husband's name or a city bears its conqueror's. This verse stands in agonizing tension with the surrounding lament — God's word is simultaneously Jeremiah's greatest joy and the cause of all his suffering.
17. The word badad ('alone, in isolation') is the same word that opens Lamentations: 'How the city sits alone' (eikhah yashvah badad). Jeremiah's personal isolation prefigures Jerusalem's desolation. The prophet's solitude is not chosen but imposed — mippenei yadkha ('because of your hand') means God's power kept him apart from normal human community. The mesachaqim ('those who laugh, revelers') represent ordinary social life that is denied to the prophet. The word za'am ('indignation, wrath') is the divine fury that fills Jeremiah — he carries God's anger inside himself, making human fellowship impossible.
18. The accusation reaches its peak: Jeremiah compares God to an akhazav — a wadi that appears to hold water but runs dry when you need it most. In the arid Judean landscape, a deceptive wadi could mean death for a thirsty traveler. The phrase mayim lo ne'emanu ('waters that cannot be trusted') uses the root a-m-n, from which 'faithfulness' (emunah) and 'amen' derive. Jeremiah is accusing God of being un-amen, unfaithful — the most devastating charge a covenant partner can make. The word netsach ('perpetual, unending') suggests Jeremiah sees no end to his suffering.
19. This verse is the theological center of the confession. The verb shuv appears three times: im tashuv ('if you return'), va'ashivkha ('I will restore you' — the causative hiphil of shuv), and yashuvu ('they will return'). God demands of Jeremiah the same repentance he demands of Israel. The phrase kefi tihyeh ('you will be as my mouth') is the most intimate description of prophetic calling in the Hebrew Bible — the prophet becomes God's mouth, the organ through which divine speech enters the world. The distinction between 'precious' (yaqar) and 'worthless' (zolel) may refer to separating genuine divine words from the prophet's own despairing complaints.
20. This promise directly reprises the commissioning language of 1:18, where God told the young Jeremiah, 'I have made you a fortified city, an iron pillar, and bronze walls.' The conditional promise of verse 19 becomes unconditional here — once Jeremiah returns, God will fortify him. The verbs lehoshi'akha ('to save you') and lehattsilekha ('to deliver you') are the same pair used for God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt. The prophet receives the same covenantal protection once reserved for the whole nation. The formula ne'um YHWH seals this as irrevocable divine commitment.
21. The chapter ends with two parallel promises: hitsaltikha ('I will rescue you') and peditikha ('I will redeem you'). The verb padah ('redeem') is ransom language — God will pay the price to free Jeremiah from his enemies. The ra'im ('wicked') and aritsim ('ruthless, violent ones') likely refer to Jeremiah's own countrymen who want him dead, not foreign enemies. The divine promise bookends the confession: Jeremiah began by lamenting

his birth (v. 10), and God ends by guaranteeing his survival. The suffering will not end, but neither will God's protection.

16

Summary: *Jeremiah 16 turns the prophet's own life into a prophetic sign-act. God forbids Jeremiah from marrying, from attending funerals, and from joining feasts — his enforced isolation embodies the coming destruction of all normal life in Judah. The reason given is devastating: death will be so pervasive that mourning itself will become impossible. Yet the chapter pivots in verses 14-15 toward a startling promise — a future restoration so great it will eclipse even the exodus from Egypt as Israel's defining story. The chapter closes with a vision of the nations themselves coming to acknowledge the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most personally costly passages in the prophetic literature. Jeremiah is not merely told what to say — he is told how to live. His celibacy, his absence from mourning rites, and his refusal of feasts are not personal choices but divine commands that make his body a walking oracle. The prohibition against marriage (v. 2) is extraordinary in ancient Israelite culture, where marriage and children were fundamental to covenant identity and legacy. The 'second exodus' oracle (vv. 14-15) is one of the most consequential prophetic declarations in the book — it recasts Israel's entire story around a future act of divine rescue that will surpass the original exodus. The closing universalist vision (vv. 19-21) anticipates the nations recognizing the LORD, an eschatological theme that runs through Isaiah and the Psalms.*

Translation Friction: *The verb shanah ('to repeat, to do again') in verse 18 is rendered 'repay double' following the Hebrew construct mishneh, which indicates a twofold measure — this is judicial compensation language, not arbitrary punishment. The word marzeach ('mourning feast') in verse 5 refers to a specific type of communal funeral banquet known from Amos 6:7 and Ugaritic literature — it is more than generic mourning. The transition from judgment (vv. 1-13) to hope (vv. 14-15) is abrupt in the Hebrew, with no narrative bridge, and we preserved this structural tension rather than smoothing it. The phrase elohei massekhah ('gods of molten metal') in verse 20 required distinguishing manufactured idols from the living God.*

Connections: *The prohibition against marriage as prophetic sign connects to Hosea's commanded marriage (Hosea 1:2) and Ezekiel's prohibited mourning for his wife (Ezekiel 24:15-18) — all three prophets' personal lives become divine messages. The 'second exodus' oracle (vv. 14-15) is repeated nearly verbatim in 23:7-8 and connects to Isaiah's 'new exodus' theme (Isaiah 43:18-19). The image of sin 'engraved' anticipates the iron-stylus metaphor of 17:1. The closing vision of nations turning to the LORD connects to Isaiah 2:2-4, Micah 4:1-3, and Zechariah 8:20-23. The 'iron furnace' of Egypt (implicit in the exodus reference) echoes 11:4.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²You must not take a wife for yourself, and you must not have sons or daughters in this place. ³For this is what the LORD says concerning the sons and daughters born in this place, and concerning the mothers who bear them and the fathers who sire them in this land: ⁴They will die of deadly diseases. No one will mourn for them, and no one will bury them. They will become like dung on the surface of the ground. They will be consumed by sword and by famine, and their corpses will become food for the birds of the sky and the animals of the earth. ⁵For this is what the LORD says: Do not enter a house of mourning. Do not go to grieve, and do not show sympathy for them, for I have withdrawn my peace from this people, declares the LORD — my faithful love and my compassion. ⁶Both great and small will die in this land. They will not be buried, and no one will mourn for them. No one will gash themselves or shave their heads for them. ⁷No one will break bread for them in mourning to comfort them for the dead, and no one will give them the cup of consolation to drink for their father or for their mother. ⁸You must not enter a house of feasting to sit with them, eating and drinking. ⁹For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am about to silence in this place — before your very eyes and in your own days — the sound of joy and the sound of gladness, the sound of the bridegroom and the sound of the bride. ¹⁰When you report all these words to this people and they ask you, 'Why has the LORD pronounced all this great disaster against us? What is our iniquity? What is our sin that we have committed against the LORD our God?' — ¹¹then say to them: Because your ancestors abandoned me, declares the LORD, and went after other gods and served them and bowed down to them —

they abandoned me and did not keep my instruction — ¹²And you — you have done worse than your ancestors! Each of you walks after the stubbornness of his evil heart, refusing to listen to me. ¹³So I will hurl you from this land into a land that neither you nor your ancestors have known, and there you will serve other gods day and night, for I will show you no favor. ¹⁴Therefore — days are coming, declares the LORD, when it will no longer be said, 'As the LORD lives, who brought the children of Israel up from the land of Egypt,' ¹⁵but rather, 'As the LORD lives, who brought the children of Israel up from the land of the north and from all the lands where he had driven them.' For I will bring them back to their own soil that I gave to their ancestors. ¹⁶I am about to send for many fishermen, declares the LORD, and they will catch them. After that, I will send for many hunters, and they will hunt them down from every mountain and every hill and from the crevices of the rocks. ¹⁷For my eyes are on all their ways. They are not hidden from my presence, and their iniquity is not concealed from my sight. ¹⁸But first I will repay double for their iniquity and their sin, because they have profaned my land with the carcasses of their detestable idols, and they have filled my inheritance with their abominations. ¹⁹O LORD, my strength and my stronghold, my refuge in the day of distress — to you the nations will come from the ends of the earth and say, 'Our ancestors inherited nothing but falsehood, worthless things in which there is no benefit.' ²⁰Can a human being make gods for himself? They are not gods at all! ²¹Therefore — this time I will make them know. I will make them know my hand and my might, and they will know that my name is the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. Hebrew le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct speech, following TCR convention.
2. The prohibition against marriage is unprecedented among the prophets. In ancient Israel, marriage and children were not optional social customs but covenantal obligations — to remain unmarried was to cut off one's name and legacy. God transforms Jeremiah's enforced celibacy into a prophetic sign: if the coming destruction will make family life impossible, then the prophet's unmarried life already testifies to what is coming. The verb tiqach ('take') is the standard marriage verb in Hebrew.
3. The fourfold listing — sons, daughters, mothers, fathers — emphasizes that the coming judgment encompasses every family member, every generation. The verb molidim ('who beget/sire') and yoldot ('who bear') together cover the full biological reality of parenthood. The verse serves as the heading for the devastating death oracle that follows.
4. The phrase memotei tachaluim ('deaths of diseases') uses an unusual plural construct — 'deaths' plural suggests multiple kinds of gruesome dying. The denial of burial is among the most severe curses in the ancient Near East (cf. Deuteronomy 28:26). Being left as domem ('dung') on the ground is deliberately degrading — human bodies reduced to fertilizer. The pairing of sword and famine reflects siege conditions. The exposure to scavenging birds and animals echoes the covenant-curse language of Deuteronomy 28:26.
5. The word marzeach ('mourning feast') refers to a specific communal funeral banquet attested in Amos 6:7 and Ugaritic texts — a ritually structured gathering where mourners ate and drank together in honor of the dead. God forbids Jeremiah from participating in this fundamental social obligation. The three terms withdrawn — shalom, chesed, rachamim — form a comprehensive triad of divine favor. Each represents a different dimension of God's care: shalom is relational wholeness, chesed is covenantal loyalty, rachamim is emotional tenderness. Their removal is total abandonment.
6. The practices of gashing the body (yitgodad) and shaving the head (yiqqareach) were customary mourning rites in the ancient Near East, though Deuteronomy 14:1 prohibits them for Israel. Their mention here is descriptive of common practice rather than endorsement — even these extreme expressions of grief will be absent because death will be too pervasive for individual mourning. The social order collapses: 'great and small' covers every class.
7. The verb yifresu ('break, divide') refers to the breaking and sharing of bread at a mourning meal — a communal act of consolation. The 'cup of consolation' (kos tanchumim) was a ritual drink offered to mourners, attested in later Jewish mourning customs. Both the bread and the cup represent the community's role in sustaining the bereaved. Their absence signals the collapse of communal solidarity — not just death but the death of mourning itself.
8. The third prohibition: no mourning feasts (v. 5), no funerals (v. 6-7), and now no celebrations either. Jeremiah's social isolation is total — he is cut off from both sorrow and joy. The beit mishteh ('house of feasting') refers to wedding banquets and other festive gatherings. The prophet's enforced absence from celebration parallels his absence from mourning.
9. The fourfold 'sound of' (qol) creates a rhythmic litany of everything that will be lost: joy, gladness, the bridegroom's voice, the bride's voice. This same formula recurs in 7:34, 25:10, and 33:11 as a signature judgment marker throughout Jeremiah. The phrase 'before your very eyes and in your own days' makes the judgment inescapably personal — this is not a distant threat but an imminent reality for the current generation.
10. The people's question reveals shocking moral blindness — they genuinely do not understand what they have done wrong. The Hebrew distinguishes between avon ('iniquity' — the twisted guilt of moral corruption) and chattat ('sin' — the failure to hit the mark of God's standard). They claim

innocence on both counts. God's response in the following verses will be devastating in its specificity.

11. God's answer matches the people's twofold question with a twofold accusation: they abandoned God (relational failure) and did not keep his torah (behavioral failure). The verb *azavu* ('abandoned') appears twice, framing the sentence — abandonment is both the first and last charge. Torah is rendered 'instruction' here rather than 'law' to capture its broader meaning as divine teaching, not merely legal code.
12. The emphatic pronoun *ve'attem* ('and you') creates an accusatory contrast — your ancestors were bad, but you are worse. The characteristic Jeremic phrase *sherirut libbo hara* ('stubbornness of his evil heart') recurs here (cf. 3:17, 7:24, 9:13, 11:8, 13:10, 18:12, 23:17). The present generation's guilt exceeds the ancestors' because they have the full record of prior judgment as warning and still persist.
13. The verb *hetalti* ('I will hurl, cast') is violent — not a gentle sending but a forcible ejection from the land. The bitter irony: since they chose to serve other gods voluntarily, in exile they will serve other gods by compulsion — 'day and night,' without rest. The phrase 'a land that neither you nor your ancestors have known' emphasizes the total foreignness of exile. *Chaninah* ('favor, grace') will be withheld entirely.
14. The abrupt transition from judgment to hope is characteristic of Jeremiah's literary structure. The oath formula *chai-YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') was used in solemn declarations; here God says even this foundational oath — rooted in the exodus — will be superseded by a greater act of deliverance. This oracle (vv. 14-15) is repeated nearly verbatim in 23:7-8, indicating its importance in Jeremiah's theology.
15. The phrase *erets tsafon* ('land of the north') refers primarily to Babylon, which was reached by traveling north along the Fertile Crescent despite being geographically east of Judah. The addition 'from all the lands' universalizes the promise beyond Babylon to any future diaspora. The verb *hashivotim* ('I will bring them back') uses the root *shuv*, which is Jeremiah's key theological verb — the same word used for repentance, return, and restoration. The 'soil' (*adamah*) rather than 'land' (*erets*) is used here, emphasizing the agricultural, intimate connection between people and their ground.
16. The fishermen-and-hunters imagery depicts the thoroughness of God's judgment — no one will escape. The fishermen sweep broadly (nets), the hunters pursue individually into terrain where fugitives hide. The progression from fish to game suggests escalating pursuit: first the easy catches, then the ones who flee to mountains, hills, and rock crevices. Some interpreters read this as describing the agents of exile (Babylonian armies); others see a positive image of God gathering his scattered people. The immediate context of judgment favors the first reading, though the proximity to vv. 14-15 allows for deliberate ambiguity.
17. The double negative — 'not hidden... not concealed' — emphasizes the impossibility of evading divine observation. The words *nisteru* ('hidden') and *nitson* ('concealed, stored up') suggest that the people may have imagined their sins were invisible to God. The verse functions as the theological rationale for the fishermen and hunters of v. 16 — divine omniscience ensures total accountability.
18. The phrase *mishneh avonam* ('double their iniquity') uses *mishneh* to indicate a twofold repayment — judicial compensation proportional to the offense, following the pattern of double restitution in Exodus 22:4,7,9. The word *nivlat* ('carcasses') applied to idols is deliberately degrading — the 'detestable things' (*shiqquts*) are treated as corpses polluting the land. God calls the land 'my land' and 'my inheritance' (*nachalati*), emphasizing that the defilement offends the landowner.
19. The verse shifts abruptly from judgment on Judah to an eschatological vision of the nations recognizing the LORD. The triad *uzzi, ma'uzzi, menusi* ('my strength, my stronghold, my refuge') is Jeremiah's personal confession embedded within a universal prophecy. The nations' confession — that their ancestors inherited *sheqer* ('falsehood') and *hevel* ('vapor, emptiness') — echoes the language of Ecclesiastes and anticipates the universalist vision of Isaiah 45:22-23 and Zechariah 8:20-23.
20. The rhetorical question exposes the absurdity of idolatry with devastating simplicity: a being who makes a god is by definition greater than the god he makes. The word *adam* ('human being') is used rather than *ish* ('man') to emphasize the creaturely status of the maker — a mere creature fashioning what he calls a deity. The emphatic denial *hemmah lo elohim* ('they are not gods') is a fundamental theological claim: manufactured objects cannot possess divinity.
21. The threefold repetition of the root *yada* ('know') drives the verse — *modia'am, odia'em, veyade'u* ('I will make them know, I will make them know, and they will know'). The emphatic repetition insists that ignorance of God will be replaced by undeniable awareness. 'My hand' (*yadi*) represents God's active intervention in history; 'my might' (*gevurati*) represents his irresistible power. The closing declaration — 'my name is the LORD' — recalls the self-revelation to Moses at the burning bush (Exodus 3:15) and reasserts divine identity at the end of a chapter about false gods.

17

Summary: *Jeremiah 17 moves through four distinct sections that together form a meditation on the human heart and its relationship to God. It opens with the stunning image of Judah's sin engraved with an iron stylus on the tablet of their heart (17:1) — the opposite of the torah-on-the-heart promise of 31:33. The chapter then contrasts the cursed person who trusts in human strength (17:5-6) with the blessed person who trusts in the LORD, planted like a tree by water (17:7-8, echoing Psalm 1). At the center stands one of the most famous verses in the Hebrew Bible: 'The heart is deceitful above all things and desperately sick — who can understand it?' (17:9). Jeremiah's personal confession-prayer appears in 17:14-18, and the chapter closes with a Sabbath observance oracle (17:19-27).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains some of the most psychologically penetrating language in the entire Hebrew Bible. The iron-stylus metaphor of verse 1 inverts the later promise of 31:33 — where God will write his instruction on hearts of flesh, here sin has already been engraved on hearts of stone. The tree-by-water image (vv. 7-8) is so close to Psalm 1:3 that the relationship between the texts has been debated for centuries — whether Jeremiah drew on the psalm, the psalm drew on Jeremiah, or both drew on a common wisdom tradition. Verse 9's diagnosis of the human heart — *aqov* ('deceitful, twisted') and *anush* ('desperately sick, incurable') — is among the most unsparing anthropological statements in Scripture. Jeremiah's confession in verse 14, 'Heal me, LORD, and I will be healed; save me and I will be saved,' has entered Jewish liturgy (the eighth blessing of the Amidah).*

Translation Friction: *The word *aqov* in verse 9 is the same root as the name *Ya'aqov* (Jacob, 'the heel-grasper, the supplanter') — whether this is deliberate wordplay connecting Judah's heart to their ancestor's character is debated, and we noted it without forcing the interpretation. The relationship between the tree imagery (vv. 5-8) and Psalm 1 required careful rendering: the passages are related but not identical, and the differences matter. The Sabbath oracle (vv. 19-27) is sometimes regarded as a later addition by scholars because of its prose style and Deuteronomic language — we translate what the text says without editorial judgment on dating. The word *et* in verse 1 ('stylus' or 'pen') is rare and its exact referent debated.*

Connections: *The iron-stylus image (v. 1) anticipates by contrast the new covenant inscription of 31:33 — sin engraved on stone versus torah written on flesh. The tree-by-water passage (vv. 7-8) connects to Psalm 1:3, Ezekiel 47:12, and Revelation 22:2. Verse 9's heart-diagnosis connects to 11:20 and 20:12 where God 'tests the heart.' Jeremiah's confession (vv. 14-18) belongs to the series of prophetic confessions running through chapters 11-20. The Sabbath oracle connects to the broader Deuteronomic tradition (Deuteronomy 5:12-15) and to Nehemiah 13:15-22. The cursing-and-blessing contrast (vv. 5-8) echoes Deuteronomy 28 and Psalm 1.*

¹The sin of Judah is inscribed with an iron stylus, with a diamond-tipped point. It is engraved on the tablet of their heart and on the horns of their altars — ²even as their children remember their altars and their Asherah poles beside every green tree on the high hills. ³My mountain in the open country — your wealth and all your treasures I will give as plunder, your high places as the price of sin throughout all your territory. ⁴You will lose your grip on the inheritance I gave you, and I will make you serve your enemies in a land you do not know, for you have kindled a fire in my anger that will burn without end. ⁵This is what the LORD says: Cursed is the person who trusts in human strength, who makes flesh his arm, and whose heart turns away from the LORD. ⁶He will be like a shrub in the desert wasteland — he will not see when good arrives. He will dwell among the scorched places of the wilderness, in a salt land where no one lives. ⁷Blessed is the person who trusts in the LORD, whose confidence is the LORD himself. ⁸He will be like a tree planted beside water that sends its roots out toward the stream. It does not fear when heat comes, and its leaves remain green. In a year of drought it has no anxiety, and it never stops producing fruit. ⁹The heart is more twisted than anything else and incurably sick — who can fathom it? ¹⁰I, the LORD, search the heart and test the mind, to give to each person according to his ways, according to the fruit of his deeds. ¹¹Like a partridge that broods over eggs it did not lay, so is the one who gains wealth unjustly. In the middle of his days it will abandon him, and in the end he will be a fool. ¹²A throne of glory, exalted from the beginning — that is the place of our sanctuary. ¹³O LORD, the hope of Israel — all who abandon you will be put to shame. Those who turn away will be written in

the dust, for they have abandoned the LORD, the fountain of living water. ¹⁴Heal me, LORD, and I will be healed. Save me, and I will be saved — for you are my praise. ¹⁵Look — they keep saying to me, 'Where is the word of the LORD? Let it come!' ¹⁶As for me, I have not rushed away from shepherding after you, and I have not longed for the day of calamity. You know this — whatever came from my lips was spoken before your face. ¹⁷Do not become a source of terror to me — you are my refuge in the day of disaster. ¹⁸Let my persecutors be put to shame, but do not let me be put to shame. Let them be shattered, but do not let me be shattered. Bring upon them the day of disaster, and break them with a double breaking. ¹⁹This is what the LORD said to me: Go and stand in the gate of the people, through which the kings of Judah enter and leave, and in all the gates of Jerusalem. ²⁰Say to them: Hear the word of the LORD, you kings of Judah, and all of Judah, and all inhabitants of Jerusalem who enter through these gates. ²¹This is what the LORD says: Guard your lives — do not carry any load on the Sabbath day or bring it through the gates of Jerusalem. ²²Do not carry any load out of your houses on the Sabbath day, and do not do any work. Consecrate the Sabbath day, just as I commanded your ancestors. ²³But they did not listen. They did not incline their ear. They stiffened their neck, refusing to hear and refusing to accept correction. ²⁴If you truly listen to me, declares the LORD, and bring no load through the gates of this city on the Sabbath day, and if you consecrate the Sabbath day by doing no work on it, ²⁵then kings and officials who sit on the throne of David will enter through the gates of this city, riding in chariots and on horses — they and their officials, along with the people of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem — and this city will be inhabited forever. ²⁶People will come from the cities of Judah and the surroundings of Jerusalem, from the land of Benjamin, from the lowlands, from the hill country, and from the Negev, bringing burnt offerings and sacrifices, grain offerings and frankincense, and bringing thank offerings to the house of the LORD. ²⁷But if you do not listen to me — to consecrate the Sabbath day, to carry no load and enter the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day — then I will kindle a fire in her gates, and it will consume the fortified buildings of Jerusalem and will not be extinguished.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word et ('stylus, pen') in its iron form suggests a chisel for cutting into stone or metal — this is permanent inscription, not ink on parchment. Tsipporen shamir ('diamond-tipped point' or 'point of flint/emery') refers to an extremely hard material used for engraving — shamir may be corundum, emery, or diamond. The phrase luach libbam ('tablet of their heart') creates a devastating contrast with the stone tablets (luchot) of the law given at Sinai. The same surface that should bear God's commandments instead bears an engraved record of sin. This image is the negative counterpart to 31:33, where God promises to write his torah on the heart.
2. The 'remembering' (kizkhor) here is not nostalgic recall but active perpetuation — the children continue the idolatrous practices. The asherim ('Asherah poles') were cultic objects associated with the Canaanite goddess Asherah, set up as sacred pillars near altars. 'Green tree' and 'high hills' are stock phrases for the locations of illicit worship (cf. Deuteronomy 12:2, 1 Kings 14:23). The verse continues the thought from verse 1 — sin is inscribed not only on hearts but transmitted to the next generation.
3. The phrase harari basadeh ('my mountain in the field/open country') is addressed to Jerusalem/Zion, which sits exposed on its hills. God calls it 'my mountain' even as he sentences it to plunder. The chelkha ('your wealth') and otsrotekha ('your treasures') will become spoil for invaders. The bamot ('high places') — the illicit worship sites — are specifically named as the cause: it is because of sin at these sites that everything will be lost.
4. The verb shamattah ('you will let drop, release') uses the same root as the sabbatical year release (shemittah) — the land will be 'released' from its inhabitants as if in a forced sabbatical. The phrase 'inheritance' (nachalatekha) refers to the promised land itself, which was God's gift. The image of fire kindled in divine anger (esh qedachtem be'appi) that burns ad olam ('to perpetuity/without end') expresses the terrible permanence of the consequences.
5. The gever ('mighty man, strong person') is specifically the person who should be strong — the word implies military capability or social power. The irony is that the person who relies on human strength is precisely the one who will be weakest. 'Flesh' (basar) as 'arm' (zero'a) is a metaphor for relying on human military or political alliances — particularly relevant to Judah's shifting alliances with Egypt and Babylon. The verb yasur ('turns away') from the root shuv frames this as apostasy, not mere preference.
6. The word ar'ar ('shrub, juniper, stunted bush') describes a stripped, bare plant barely surviving in arid conditions — the opposite of the flourishing tree in verse 8. The phrase lo yir'eh ki yavo tov ('he will not see when good comes') is especially poignant: blessing may arrive, but the one who trusts in flesh is incapable of perceiving or receiving it. The 'salt land' (eret melechah) is land so mineral-saturated that nothing grows — a landscape of permanent barrenness (cf. the salting of Sodom's soil, Genesis 19).
7. The parallel structure with verse 5 is precise and deliberate: arur haggever asher yivtach ba'adam (v. 5) mirrors barukh haggever asher yivtach ba-YHWH (v. 7). The choice is binary: trust in flesh or trust in the LORD. The word mivtacho ('his confidence, his trust') uses the same root as yivtach ('trusts') — creating a wordplay: the one who trusts has trust itself, because the LORD is both the object and the ground of confidence.

8. The tree image closely parallels Psalm 1:3, though with distinctive differences: Psalm 1 uses 'streams of water' (palgei mayim) while Jeremiah uses yuval ('watercourse, stream') and mayim ('water'). Psalm 1 emphasizes the tree's leaf not withering; Jeremiah adds the explicit mention of drought resistance and continuous fruit-bearing. The verb yid'ag ('worry, be anxious') is unique to this passage — the tree's freedom from anxiety is a metaphor for the believer's unshakable security. Whether Jeremiah drew on Psalm 1 or both drew on common wisdom tradition is debated; the differences suggest independent development from shared imagery rather than direct quotation.
9. We rendered aqov as 'twisted' rather than 'deceitful' (KJV) because the Hebrew root a-q-v means 'to follow at the heel, to supplant, to twist' — the deception is not mere lying but a fundamental twisting of reality. The word anush ('incurably sick') is rendered 'incurably sick' rather than 'desperately wicked' (KJV) because anush in its other occurrences (2 Samuel 12:15, Isaiah 17:11, Micah 1:9) consistently refers to sickness, not wickedness. The question mi yeda'ennu ('who can know/fathom it?') is rhetorical — the answer is implied in verse 10: only God can.
10. This verse answers the rhetorical question of verse 9: who can fathom the heart? The LORD can. The verb choqer ('search, examine, probe') implies thorough investigation, not casual observation. The word kelayot ('kidneys') is rendered 'mind' following TCR convention (cf. 11:20) — the Hebrews understood the kidneys as the seat of the deepest, most hidden thoughts and motives. The phrase 'fruit of his deeds' (peri ma'alalav) connects human actions to agricultural imagery — deeds produce consequences as naturally as trees produce fruit.
11. The qore ('partridge') was believed in the ancient Near East to sit on eggs stolen from other birds' nests — wealth gained unjustly is like hatching eggs that do not belong to you. The verb dagar ('brood, sit on, hatch') applies to the bird but metaphorically to the unjust wealthy person who 'sits on' stolen gains. The word naval ('fool') at the end carries moral weight in Hebrew — it does not mean merely unintelligent but morally bankrupt, senseless in the deepest way (cf. Nabal in 1 Samuel 25).
12. This verse functions as a doxological exclamation — Jeremiah turns from the futility of unjust wealth (v. 11) to the permanence of God's throne. The phrase kisse kavod ('throne of glory') combines royal and divine imagery. Marom me-rishon ('exalted from the beginning') may refer to the heavenly temple's pre-existence or to the Jerusalem temple's ancient sanctity. The word miqdashenu ('our sanctuary') uses the first-person plural possessive — Jeremiah identifies himself with the people even as he condemns them.
13. The word miqveh ('hope') is a wordplay — it also means 'gathering of water, reservoir' (cf. Genesis 1:10), connecting to the 'fountain of living water' (meqor mayim chayyim) at the verse's end. Those who leave the source of living water will be 'written in the dust' (ba'arets yikkatavu) — their names inscribed in dry earth rather than in the book of life, an inscription as impermanent as writing in sand. The 'fountain of living water' metaphor for God also appears in 2:13, where God contrasts himself with the broken cisterns of idolatry.
14. The verbal structure refa'eni...ve'erafei ('heal me...and I will be healed') uses the imperative followed by the cohortative to express consequence: divine healing produces real healing. The same structure with hoshi'eni...ve'ivvashe'ah ('save me...and I will be saved') creates a perfect parallelism. This verse marks the beginning of Jeremiah's fourth 'confession' (17:14-18). After the unflinching diagnosis of the heart in verse 9, Jeremiah turns to the only physician capable of treating the condition.
15. The taunt from Jeremiah's opponents mocks the delay of judgment: if the LORD truly spoke through Jeremiah, where is the fulfillment? The demand yavo na ('let it come, then!') is sarcastic — they dare the prophecy to come true. This challenge to prophetic credibility was a constant burden for Jeremiah, whose predictions of destruction took decades to materialize. The participle omrim ('they keep saying') indicates ongoing, repeated mockery.
16. Jeremiah defends himself before God: he did not abandon his prophetic calling (lo atsti mero'eh acharekha — 'I did not rush away from shepherding after you'), and he did not desire the disaster he predicted (yom anush — 'the day of incurable [sickness/calamity]'). The word anush echoes verse 9's diagnosis — the day of calamity is characterized by the same incurable condition as the human heart. The phrase motsa sefatai ('what came from my lips') appeals to God as witness that Jeremiah's words were genuine prophecy, spoken nokhach panekha ('before your face, in your presence').
17. The plea 'do not become a source of terror to me' (al tiyeh li lemechittah) is startlingly honest — Jeremiah acknowledges the possibility that God himself could become terrifying to him. The word mechittah ('terror, ruin, dismay') suggests not just fear but shattering — the prophet fears being broken by the God he serves. Yet he simultaneously calls God machasi ('my refuge') — the tension between terror and refuge defines Jeremiah's experience of prophetic ministry.
18. The imprecatory prayer follows the pattern of the psalms of individual lament. The chiasmic structure — 'let them be shamed / not me be shamed / let them be shattered / not me be shattered' — creates a formal petition for God to distinguish between the prophet and his enemies. The phrase mishneh shivron ('double breaking') intensifies the request beyond mere justice — Jeremiah asks for emphatic, doubled judgment on those who persecute him. The verb shavar ('break, shatter') is repeated for emphasis (shivron shavrem — 'a breaking, break them').
19. The 'gate of the people' (sha'ar benei ha'am) was likely a specific gate in the Jerusalem wall — its exact identification is debated (some identify it with the Benjamin Gate). The instruction to stand 'in' the gate places Jeremiah at the most public location possible — gates were the centers of commerce, law, and civic life. The mention of 'kings of Judah' entering and leaving indicates this was a royal thoroughfare, ensuring maximum visibility for the prophetic message.
20. The address encompasses all levels of society: kings (political leadership), all Judah (the nation), and all inhabitants of Jerusalem (the capital's residents). The phrase 'who enter through these gates' grounds the universal address in the specific, physical location — these are not abstract recipients but real people passing through a real gate on a given day.

21. The phrase *hishameru benafshoteikhem* ('guard your lives/souls') is emphatic — Sabbath observance is presented not as a minor ritual but as a matter of life and death. The word *massa* ('load, burden, cargo') refers to commercial goods being transported for trade. The gates of Jerusalem are the entry points for commerce — the prohibition targets the reduction of Sabbath to an ordinary business day. This Sabbath oracle (vv. 19-27) is one of the few extended Sabbath passages in the prophetic literature.
22. The verb *qiddashtem* ('consecrate, set apart as holy') uses the same root as *qadosh* ('holy'). To consecrate the Sabbath is to set it apart from ordinary time — to treat it as belonging to God rather than to commerce. The phrase 'as I commanded your ancestors' explicitly connects this instruction to the Sinai covenant (Exodus 20:8-11, Deuteronomy 5:12-15). The pairing of 'houses' with 'gates' (v. 21) covers both domestic and commercial activity.
23. The triple refusal — *lo shame'u* ('did not listen'), *lo hittu et oznam* ('did not incline their ear'), *vayyaqshu et orpam* ('stiffened their neck') — escalates from passive non-hearing to active resistance. The 'stiff neck' (*oref qasheh*) is a characteristic biblical metaphor for stubbornness, drawn from the image of an ox that refuses to turn when the yoke is pulled (cf. Exodus 32:9, 33:3). The word *musar* ('correction, discipline, instruction') encompasses both education and discipline — they rejected God's teaching and his corrective action alike.
24. The emphatic infinitive absolute construction *shamoa tishme'u* ('truly listen, really listen') stresses that genuine obedience is required, not token compliance. This begins a conditional promise (vv. 24-26): if the people observe the Sabbath, then Jerusalem will endure. The conditional structure offers a genuine choice — the future is still open if the people respond.
25. The vision of Davidic royalty entering through Jerusalem's gates represents the continuation of the covenant dynasty. The word *sarim* ('officials, princes, commanders') appears twice, emphasizing the full apparatus of legitimate governance. The phrase *yoshvei al kisse David* ('sitting on the throne of David') invokes the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7:12-16). The promise that the city will be inhabited *le'olam* ('forever') is conditional — it depends on the 'if' of verse 24.
26. The geographic sweep — cities of Judah, surroundings of Jerusalem, Benjamin, the Shephelah (lowlands), the hill country, and the Negev (southern desert) — covers the entire territory of the kingdom. The list of offerings — *olah* (burnt offering), *zevach* (sacrifice), *minchah* (grain offering), *levonah* (frankincense), and *todah* (thank offering) — represents the full range of legitimate worship. This idealized vision depends on Sabbath observance: if the people honor God's holy time, the holy place will flourish.
27. The conditional threat mirrors the conditional promise of verses 24-26 with devastating precision: the same gates that could witness royal processions (v. 25) will instead be consumed by fire. The word *armenot* ('fortified buildings, palaces, citadels') refers to the great structures of Jerusalem — royal residences, administrative buildings, defensive fortifications. The phrase *lo tikhbeh* ('will not be extinguished') echoes the unquenchable fire of divine judgment throughout the prophets (cf. Isaiah 66:24, Amos 5:6). The fire entered Jerusalem's gates in 586 BCE when Nebuchadnezzar's army burned the city, fulfilling this conditional warning.

18

Summary: *Jeremiah 18 opens with a divine command to visit the potter's house, where God reveals a foundational principle of his sovereignty: just as a potter reshapes marred clay, so God retains the right to reshape nations based on their response to him. This parable of conditional sovereignty applies in both directions — God may relent from intended disaster if a nation repents, or revoke intended blessing if a nation turns to evil. When this principle is applied to Judah, the people respond with defiant refusal, declaring they will follow their own plans. The chapter closes with Jeremiah's fourth confession (vv. 18-23), provoked by a plot against him: his enemies plan to attack him with their tongues and ignore his words. Jeremiah responds with one of the most unrestrained imprecatory prayers in Scripture, asking God to let their children starve and their wives become childless widows.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The potter-and-clay metaphor is one of the most influential images in all of Scripture, reappearing in Isaiah 29:16, 45:9, and 64:8, and taken up by Paul in Romans 9:19-24. What makes Jeremiah's version distinctive is its conditionality — the potter is not locked into his design. The clay's quality determines what the potter makes. This challenges both fatalistic readings (God controls everything regardless of human action) and autonomous readings (humans determine their own destiny regardless of God). The confession in verses 18-23 is the fourth of Jeremiah's five confessions and the most violent in its demands for vengeance. The prophet who was commanded not to pray for his people (11:14) now prays against his enemies with shocking specificity — famine for their children, the sword for their young men, sudden ambush to catch them unaware. We preserved the raw ferocity of this prayer without softening, because the Hebrew does not soften it.*

Translation Friction: The verb yatsar ('to form, fashion') in verse 4 is the same verb used of God forming humanity from clay in Genesis 2:7 — the intertextual echo is deliberate and we noted it. The phrase sheririut libbam hara ('stubbornness of their evil heart') in verse 12 is a locked Jeremianic formula recurring throughout the book. The imprecatory prayer in verses 19-23 required careful handling: the Hebrew verbs are jussives (wishes/commands) not indicatives (descriptions), so 'hand their children over to famine' is a prayer-wish, not a prediction. The word diggeru ('they have dug') in verse 20 uses the metaphor of digging a pit for someone, echoing Psalm 35:7 and 57:6.

Connections: The potter metaphor connects to Genesis 2:7 (God forms humanity from clay), Isaiah 29:16 and 45:9 (the pot arguing with the potter), Isaiah 64:8 ('we are the clay, you are the potter'), and Romans 9:19-24 (Paul's use of the potter image for divine election). The conditional principle of verses 7-10 is the theological foundation for Jonah's entire narrative — Nineveh repented, and God relented. The conspiracy against Jeremiah (v. 18) continues the pattern from 11:18-23 (Anathoth plot). The confession prayer (vv. 19-23) parallels Psalm 109 in its imprecatory intensity. The phrase 'land flowing with milk and honey' promised in the covenant is now a land whose roads are 'untrodden paths' (v. 15) — covenant blessings reversed.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD: ²Get up and go down to the potter's house, and there I will make my words known to you. ³So I went down to the potter's house, and there he was, working at the wheel. ⁴When the vessel he was shaping from the clay became flawed in the potter's hands, he reworked it into a different vessel, whatever seemed right to the potter to make. ⁵Then the word of the LORD came to me: ⁶Can I not do with you as this potter does, O house of Israel? — declares the LORD. Like the clay in the potter's hand, so are you in my hand, O house of Israel. ⁷At one moment I may speak against a nation or a kingdom, to uproot, to tear down, and to destroy. ⁸If that nation turns from the evil I have spoken against, then I will relent from the disaster I had planned to bring upon it. ⁹And at another moment I may speak concerning a nation or a kingdom, to build and to plant. ¹⁰But if it does what is evil in my sight by not obeying my voice, then I will relent from the good I had intended to do for it. ¹¹Now then, speak to the people of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem: This is what the LORD says — I am shaping disaster against you and devising a plan against you. Turn back, each one of you, from your evil way, and set right your ways and your deeds. ¹²But they say, 'It is hopeless! We will follow our own plans, and each of us will act according to the stubbornness of his evil heart.' ¹³Therefore, this is what the LORD says: Ask among the nations — who has heard anything like this? The virgin Israel has done something utterly appalling. ¹⁴Does the snow vanish from the rocky crags of Lebanon? Do the cold, flowing waters from distant sources ever dry up? ¹⁵Yet my people have forgotten me. They burn incense to worthless things. They have been made to stumble from their ways, from the ancient paths, to walk on side trails, on an ungraded road — ¹⁶making their land a desolation, an object of perpetual scorn. Everyone who passes by it will be appalled and shake his head. ¹⁷Like an east wind I will scatter them before the enemy. I will show them my back, not my face, on the day of their disaster. ¹⁸Then they said, 'Come, let us plot schemes against Jeremiah — for instruction will never cease from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor the word from the prophet. Come, let us attack him with the tongue and pay no attention to any of his words.' ¹⁹Pay attention to me, LORD, and hear the voice of my accusers! ²⁰Should evil be repaid for good? For they have dug a pit for my life. Remember how I stood before you to speak on their behalf, to turn your wrath away from them. ²¹Therefore, hand their children over to famine and pour them out to the power of the sword. Let their wives become childless and widowed. Let their husbands be struck down by death, their young men cut down by the sword in battle. ²²Let a scream be heard from their houses when you bring raiders upon them without warning — for they have dug a pit to trap me and hidden snares for my feet. ²³But you, LORD, know all their plotting against me to kill me. Do not atone for their iniquity, and do not wipe out their sin from your sight. Let them be brought down before you — deal with them in the time of your anger.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') functions as a speech-introducer and is rendered as a colon rather than retained as a redundant word in English.
2. The verb yarad ('go down') indicates the potter's workshop was at a lower elevation — potters often worked near water sources in valleys. The word yotser ('potter, one who forms') comes from the root yatsar, the same verb used in Genesis 2:7 for God forming the human being from clay. The

connection is not accidental — God is about to present himself as the cosmic Potter.

3. The Hebrew *ovnayim* ('the two stones') is a dual form referring to the potter's wheel, which consisted of two stone discs — a larger lower disc turned by foot and a smaller upper disc on which the clay was shaped. The dual form captures the physical construction of the ancient wheel.
4. The verb *nishchat* ('was marred, became spoiled') is a niph'al (passive) form — the clay itself resisted the intended shape, not that the potter made a mistake. The potter does not discard the clay but reshapes it (*shav*, 'he turned back, did again'). This is the theological point: God does not destroy the raw material but reforms it into something new. The phrase *ka'asher yashar be'einei* ('whatever seemed right in the eyes of') preserves the potter's sovereign discretion.
5. The standard prophetic word-reception formula, transitioning from the visual object lesson at the potter's house to its theological interpretation.
6. The rhetorical question expects an affirmative answer — of course God can. The comparison is direct: clay to potter as Israel to God. The metaphor asserts divine sovereignty without denying human responsibility — the following verses (7-10) make clear that the potter's decision responds to the clay's condition.
7. The three verbs — *natosh* ('uproot'), *natots* ('tear down'), and *ha'avid* ('destroy') — echo Jeremiah's commissioning in 1:10, where he was set over nations 'to uproot and to tear down, to destroy and to overthrow.' The language of Jeremiah's call is revealed as expressing God's general principle of dealing with nations, not just Judah specifically.
8. The verb *nichamti* ('I will relent, change my mind') is theologically significant — it does not mean God was wrong or fickle but that God's announced intentions are responsive to human action. This same verb is used of God 'relenting' in Exodus 32:14 (the golden calf) and Jonah 3:10 (Nineveh). The verb *shav* ('turns') is Jeremiah's key verb for repentance — here applied to any nation, not just Israel.
9. The verbs *livnot* ('to build') and *linto'a* ('to plant') are the positive counterparts to the destructive verbs in verse 7, again echoing Jeremiah 1:10. The principle works symmetrically — God's blessing is as conditional as his judgment.
10. The symmetry is now complete: verses 7-8 state that threatened judgment can be averted by repentance; verses 9-10 state that promised blessing can be revoked by disobedience. This bilateral conditionality is the theological heart of the chapter and a foundational principle of prophetic theology throughout the Hebrew Bible.
11. The verb *yotser* ('shaping, forming') is the same root as the potter — God is 'pottering' disaster, forming it on the wheel like a vessel. The wordplay is deliberate: the potter who forms vessels is now forming calamity. The call *shuvu* ('turn back, return') is the key Jeremiah verb for repentance, offering Judah the same possibility described for generic nations in verses 7-8.
12. The response *no'ash* ('it is hopeless, it is in vain') is devastating — the people do not argue with God's diagnosis but simply refuse to change. This is not ignorance but conscious defiance. They quote the Jeremic formula *sherirut libbo hara* ('stubbornness of his evil heart') about themselves, as though it were a badge of identity rather than a diagnosis. The verb *na'aseh* ('we will do') is emphatic — they are resolute in their rebellion.
13. The title *betulat Yisra'el* ('the virgin Israel') is an epithet of covenant intimacy — Israel was meant to be devoted exclusively to God, like a virgin pledged to one husband. The word *sha'arurit* ('horrible, appalling') is rare, appearing only here, in 5:30, and 23:14. Even pagan nations — who worship many gods — would find Israel's betrayal of her one God shocking.
14. This verse is textually difficult, and the Hebrew is compressed. The rhetorical questions expect a negative answer: no, the snow of Lebanon's peaks does not abandon the mountain; no, cold streams do not cease flowing. Nature is reliable — but Israel has abandoned her God, who is more constant than mountains and streams. The contrast between natural fidelity and Israel's infidelity is the point.
15. The phrase *shvilei olam* ('ancient paths') echoes Jeremiah 6:16 ('stand at the crossroads and look; ask for the ancient paths'). The word *shav* ('vanity, worthlessness, emptiness') describes the idols as literally 'nothing' — they burn incense to nonexistence. The contrast between the *slelulah* ('graded, built-up') highway of covenant obedience and the untrodden side trails of idolatry is vivid — the people have left the maintained road for pathless wilderness.
16. The word *sheriqt* ('hissing, whistling') describes the sound passersby make when confronted with shocking ruin — a sharp intake of breath or a low whistle of disbelief. The head-shaking (*yanid bero'sho*) is a gesture of scorn and horror. The land that was meant to flow with milk and honey becomes a roadside spectacle of devastation.
17. The east wind (*ruach qadim*) is the scorching sirocco from the desert — destructive and desiccating. Showing the back rather than the face is a reversal of the priestly blessing (Numbers 6:25, 'The LORD make his face shine upon you'). When God turns his face toward his people, it means favor and protection. When God shows his back, it means abandonment. The phrase 'day of their disaster' (*yom eidam*) anticipates the fall of Jerusalem.
18. This verse marks the beginning of Jeremiah's fourth confession (18:18-23). The enemies' logic is revealing: they believe the institutional sources of divine guidance — priest, sage, and prophet — will always be available, so one dissenting voice (Jeremiah) can safely be silenced. The phrase 'attack him with the tongue' (*nakkeihu vallahon*) means a campaign of slander and denunciation — character assassination rather than physical violence. Torah here means 'instruction' from the priest (its original sense) rather than the written Torah scroll.
19. Jeremiah shifts abruptly into direct prayer. The word *yerivai* ('my accusers, those who contend with me') is a legal term — *riv* means a lawsuit or formal dispute. Jeremiah frames his enemies as adversaries in a legal proceeding before the divine judge.

- 20.** The verb *karu* ('they have dug') uses the common metaphor of digging a trap-pit for an enemy (cf. Psalm 35:7, 57:6). Jeremiah reminds God that he interceded for these very people — the same people now plotting against him. The phrase 'stood before you' (*amdi lefanekha*) is technical language for prophetic intercession, the posture of a mediator standing in God's presence to plead for others.
- 21.** The imprecatory prayer begins in full force. Every verb is a jussive — a wish or demand, not a prediction. Jeremiah asks for total devastation of his enemies' families: children starving, wives bereaved and widowed, husbands killed, young men slaughtered. The verb *hagirem* ('pour them out') treats human lives like liquid poured out — a violent image of disposability. This prayer must not be softened; it reflects the raw anguish and rage of a prophet who has been betrayed by those he tried to save.
- 22.** The cry (*ze'aqah*) is a scream of terror, not a call for help. The word *gedud* ('raiding band, troop') suggests a sudden military assault. The irony is deliberate: they dug a pit (*shuchah*) for Jeremiah, so God will spring a sudden attack on them. The trapping language — pit, snares — echoes verse 20 and connects to the broader psalmic tradition of enemies who fall into their own traps (Psalm 7:15-16).
- 23.** The phrase *al-tekapper* ('do not atone for, do not cover') is extraordinary — Jeremiah asks God to refuse atonement for his enemies. The verb *kaphar* ('to cover, to atone') is the root of Yom Kippur. Jeremiah is asking God to leave their sin uncovered, fully visible, with no sacrificial remedy. Combined with *al-timchi* ('do not blot out'), this is a prayer for permanent, unmitigated guilt. The final phrase *be'et appekha asheh vahem* ('in the time of your anger, deal with them') leaves the specifics to God's wrath.

19

Summary: *Jeremiah 19 is a prophetic sign-act — the most dramatic kind of oracle, where the prophet does not merely speak God's word but enacts it physically. God commands Jeremiah to buy a potter's earthenware flask (baqbuq), take elders and senior priests to the Valley of Ben-Hinnom at the Potsherd Gate, and shatter the flask while declaring that God will shatter Jerusalem and its people beyond repair. The oracle condemns child sacrifice at Topheth, the worship of foreign gods, and the shedding of innocent blood. The valley of slaughter will overflow with corpses, and the city will become a place of horror. The chapter ends with Jeremiah returning from Topheth to the temple court, where he repeats the judgment to all the people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Chapter 19 forms a deliberate pair with chapter 18. In chapter 18, the clay on the potter's wheel is soft, malleable, and can be reshaped — symbolizing the possibility of repentance. In chapter 19, the clay has been fired into a hardened flask that cannot be reshaped — it can only be shattered. The people's refusal to repent (18:12) has moved them from soft clay to hardened pottery. The word *baqbuq* (flask) is onomatopoeic — it imitates the gurgling sound of liquid being poured from a narrow-necked jar, and its smashing would produce a sharp, irreversible crack. The condemnation of child sacrifice at Topheth echoes 7:31-32 almost verbatim, creating a structural bracket around chapters 7-19. We preserved the graphic violence of the descriptions — burning children, flesh eaten in siege cannibalism — because the Hebrew does not flinch, and neither should the rendering.*

Translation Friction: *The word *baqbuq* (v. 1) is distinct from the generic *keli* ('vessel') of chapter 18 — it is a specific type of narrow-necked pottery flask, and the distinction matters for the symbolism (a flask cannot be reshaped, only broken). The phrase *sha'ar hacharsit* ('Potsherd Gate,' v. 2) is named either because potsherd were discarded there or because potters worked nearby — both etymologies connect to the pottery imagery. The phrase 'eat the flesh of their sons and daughters' (v. 9) refers to siege cannibalism, attested historically in ancient Near Eastern texts and in the biblical account of 2 Kings 6:28-29. The closing verses (14-15) present Jeremiah moving from the valley back to the temple court, extending the oracle to all the people — this transition sets up the confrontation with Pashhur in chapter 20.*

Connections: *The potter imagery connects directly to chapter 18 (soft clay to hard flask — the progression from potential reshaping to irreversible shattering). The Topheth condemnation reprises 7:31-32 nearly verbatim. Child sacrifice prohibitions connect to Leviticus 18:21 and 20:2-5 (Molech worship), Deuteronomy 12:31 and 18:10, and 2 Kings 23:10 (Josiah's reforms). The siege cannibalism warning echoes Deuteronomy 28:53-57 (covenant curses for disobedience) and is fulfilled in Lamentations 2:20 and 4:10. The sign-act of breaking parallels Isaiah 30:14 (a potter's vessel shattered beyond repair). The confrontation with Pashhur in 20:1-6 is the direct narrative consequence of 19:14-15.*

¹This is what the LORD says: Go and buy an earthenware flask from a potter, and take some of the elders of the people and some of the senior priests with you. ²Then go out to the Valley of Ben-Hinnom, at the entrance of the Potsherd Gate, and proclaim there the words that I will speak to you. ³Say to them: Hear the word of the LORD, O kings of Judah and inhabitants of Jerusalem. This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says — I am about to bring such disaster on this place that the ears of everyone who hears of it will ring. ⁴Because they have abandoned me and made this place foreign by burning incense in it to other gods that neither they nor their ancestors nor the kings of Judah had known, and they have filled this place with the blood of the innocent. ⁵They have built the high places of Baal to burn their children in the fire as burnt offerings to Baal — something I never commanded, never spoke of, and never even considered. ⁶Therefore, the days are coming — declares the LORD — when this place will no longer be called Topheth, or the Valley of Ben-Hinnom, but the Valley of Slaughter. ⁷I will shatter the plans of Judah and Jerusalem in this place. I will make them fall by the sword before their enemies and by the hand of those who seek their lives. I will give their corpses as food to the birds of the sky and the animals of the earth. ⁸I will make this city a desolation and an object of scorn. Everyone who passes by it will be appalled and will hiss at all its wounds. ⁹I will make them eat the flesh of their sons and the flesh of their daughters, and each will eat the flesh of his neighbor during the siege and in the desperation that their enemies and those who seek their lives will inflict on them. ¹⁰Then you are to shatter the flask in the sight of the men who go with you, ¹¹and say to them: This is what the LORD of Hosts says — Just so will I shatter this people and this city, as one shatters a potter's vessel that can never be mended again. They will bury the dead in Topheth until there is no room left to bury. ¹²This is what I will do to this place — declares the LORD — and to its inhabitants: I will make this city like Topheth. ¹³The houses of Jerusalem and the houses of the kings of Judah will become defiled like the place of Topheth — all the houses on whose rooftops they burned incense to the whole host of heaven and poured out drink offerings to other gods. ¹⁴Then Jeremiah returned from Topheth, where the LORD had sent him to prophesy, and he stood in the court of the LORD's house and said to all the people: ¹⁵This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am about to bring upon this city and upon all its surrounding towns every disaster I have spoken against it, because they have stiffened their necks and refused to hear my words.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *baqbuq* is a specific type of narrow-necked pottery flask — not a generic vessel. The word is onomatopoeic, imitating the gurgling sound of liquid poured from such a jar. This specificity matters: unlike the soft clay on the wheel in chapter 18, this flask has been fired and hardened. It cannot be reshaped. The elders and senior priests serve as official witnesses to the prophetic sign-act, giving it legal weight.
2. The Valley of Ben-Hinnom (*gei ven-Hinnom*) — later Gehenna — was the ravine south of Jerusalem associated with child sacrifice and later with divine judgment. The 'Potsherd Gate' (*sha'ar hacharsit*) is named either for discarded pottery fragments or for nearby potter's workshops — either way, the gate's name connects thematically to the flask Jeremiah carries. The Ketiv/Qere variant (*hacharsit/hacharsut*) does not change the meaning.
3. The phrase *titstsalnah oznav* ('his ears will ring/tingle') describes the physical sensation of hearing news so shocking that it produces a ringing in the ears. The same expression appears in 1 Samuel 3:11 (judgment on Eli's house) and 2 Kings 21:12 (judgment on Manasseh's Jerusalem). It marks the most severe category of divine pronouncement. The plural 'kings' may include the ruling king and crown prince, or may anticipate multiple reigns during the coming judgment period.
4. The verb *vayenakkeru* ('they made foreign, they estranged') is striking — the holy valley has been turned into alien territory by the worship of gods that are themselves alien to Israel's history. The phrase *dam neqi'im* ('blood of innocents') refers both to child sacrifice and to judicial murder of the righteous. The indictment names three generations — the current people, their ancestors, and the kings — all equally guilty.
5. The triple denial — *lo tsivviti* ('I never commanded'), *lo dibbarti* ('I never spoke of'), *lo aletah al libbi* ('it never entered my mind') — is God's emphatic dissociation from child sacrifice. This exact formula appears also in 7:31 and 32:35, forming a repeated refrain throughout Jeremiah. The phrase *olot laBa'al* ('burnt offerings to Baal') uses sacrificial terminology (*olah*, 'burnt offering') normally reserved for legitimate worship of the LORD, making the perversion especially grotesque — the people applied sacred categories to an abominable act.
6. This verse virtually duplicates 7:32, creating a deliberate structural echo. The name change from Topheth to 'Valley of Slaughter' (*gei ha-haregah*) transforms the site from a place where Israel killed its children for Baal into a place where God kills Israel. The punishment mirrors the crime. Topheth may derive from a root meaning 'fireplace' or 'place of burning' — the exact etymology is debated.
7. The verb *vaqqoti* ('I will empty out, pour out, make void') is a wordplay on *baqbuq* (the flask) — both share the root *b-q-q*. God will 'empty out' Judah's plans just as liquid is emptied from the flask. The denial of proper burial — bodies left for scavengers — is among the most severe judgments in the ancient Near East, where burial was essential for honoring the dead (cf. Deuteronomy 28:26).

8. The verb *yishroq* ('he will hiss, whistle') describes the sharp sound of shock and contempt — passersby will react to Jerusalem's ruin with visceral revulsion. The word *makkoteha* ('its wounds, its blows, its plagues') treats the city as a battered body, covered in the wounds of divine judgment. This echoes 18:16 almost verbatim, linking the two chapters.
9. Siege cannibalism is the most extreme covenant curse, drawn directly from Deuteronomy 28:53-57. This is not rhetorical exaggeration — the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem produced exactly these conditions, as attested in Lamentations 2:20 ('Should women eat their offspring, the children they have nurtured?') and 4:10 ('The hands of compassionate women boiled their own children'). The words *matsor* ('siege') and *matsoq* ('distress, desperation') form a sound-pair emphasizing the extremity of the suffering.
10. The verb *shavarta* ('you shall shatter, break') is the climactic action of the sign-act. The witnesses (elders and priests from v. 1) must see the breaking — the prophetic sign requires an audience to carry legal weight. The flask, once shattered, cannot be repaired or reshaped. This is the contrast with chapter 18: wet clay can be reworked, but fired pottery can only be destroyed.
11. The key phrase *lo yukhal lehirafe* ('cannot be mended, cannot be healed') seals the metaphor's meaning. The verb *rafa* ('to heal, to mend, to repair') is negated — this breaking is permanent. The irony of burying in Topheth is brutal: the place where children were sacrificed to foreign gods becomes the mass grave for the entire population. The overcrowding of Topheth with corpses (*me'ein maqom liqbor*, 'no room to bury') indicates casualties beyond the capacity of normal burial practices.
12. The comparison is devastating: all of Jerusalem will become like Topheth — a defiled place of death and burning. Topheth was already considered ritually unclean because of child sacrifice. Now the entire city will share that defilement.
13. Rooftop worship (*al gagoteihem*, 'on their rooftops') was common because flat roofs provided open-air altars with a clear view of the stars. The 'host of heaven' (*tseva hashamayim*) refers to astral deities — sun, moon, and stars worshiped as divine beings. This practice is condemned in Deuteronomy 4:19 and 17:3. The drink offerings (*nesakim*) were libations poured out to these celestial deities. The defilement will spread from Topheth to encompass every building in the city.
14. The narrative shifts from the prophetic oracle to biographical report. Jeremiah moves from the valley of death (Topheth) to the center of religious life (the temple court). He does not confine his message to the small group of witnesses — he repeats it publicly. This act of public defiance in the temple court directly provokes the confrontation with Pashhur in 20:1-6.
15. The phrase *higshu et orfam* ('they have stiffened their necks') is a metaphor drawn from draft animals that refuse the yoke — an ox that stiffens its neck cannot be guided or directed. Israel has refused the yoke of covenant obedience. The judgment extends beyond Jerusalem to 'all its surrounding towns' (*kol areha*), indicating that the entire urban network of Judah will share in the destruction. This verse ends chapter 19 but the narrative continues without break into 20:1, where Pashhur the priest responds to what Jeremiah has just proclaimed.

20

Summary: Jeremiah 20 divides into three brutal movements. First (vv. 1-6), the priest Pashhur son of Immer — chief officer of the temple — beats Jeremiah and locks him in the stocks at the Upper Benjamin Gate. Upon release, Jeremiah renames Pashhur 'Magor-Missabib' ('Terror on Every Side') and delivers a devastating oracle of exile against him personally. Second (vv. 7-13), the prophet turns on God himself in the most confrontational prayer in the Hebrew Bible, accusing God of having deceived or seduced him into a calling that has brought nothing but mockery and pain. Third (vv. 14-18), Jeremiah curses the day of his birth in language that echoes and intensifies Job 3. The chapter ends in unresolved anguish — no divine answer, no comfort, no resolution. The text refuses to soften the prophet's despair.

*What Makes This Remarkable: No other passage in the Hebrew Bible presents a prophet accusing God so directly and so violently. The verb *pittitani* (v. 7) — from *pittah*, meaning 'to entice, deceive, seduce' — is the same verb used for the seduction of a virgin in Exodus 22:16 and for the deception of a naive person in Proverbs 1:10. Jeremiah is saying that God lured him into prophecy under false pretenses — that the divine call was an act of seduction or entrapment. This is not doubt. This is not questioning. This is accusation. The theological audacity is staggering, and the fact that the canonical text preserves it without censorship or correction tells us something essential about the Hebrew Bible's understanding of the prophetic relationship: it is honest enough to contain rage. The birth-curse of verses 14-18 intensifies Job 3 by adding a specific target — the unnamed man who brought news of the birth to Jeremiah's father. The chapter's placement at the end of the 'confessions of Jeremiah' sequence (11:18-20:18) makes it the climax of the prophet's inner suffering, and the book provides no answer. God does not speak in response.*

Translation Friction: The central translation challenge is pittitani () in verse 7. The verb pittah carries a range from 'persuade' to 'entice' to 'deceive' to 'seduce,' and the choice of English rendering determines how confrontational the verse reads. We rendered it 'You deceived me' because the parallel clause — 'you overpowered me and prevailed' — establishes a context of force and manipulation, not gentle persuasion. The expanded rendering documents the full semantic range. In verse 9, the phrase 'burning fire shut up in my bones' required rendering that preserves the physical, visceral quality of the Hebrew — this is not metaphor for the prophet but lived bodily torment. The birth-curse (vv. 14-18) required care to preserve the escalating structure: cursed is the day, cursed is the man, why was I born — each line more desperate than the last. We resisted any temptation to add a hopeful coda or contextualizing note that would blunt the ending.

Connections: Jeremiah's accusation in verse 7 connects backward to his call narrative (1:4-10), where God promised to be with him — a promise the prophet now experiences as betrayal. The birth-curse (vv. 14-18) parallels Job 3:1-19 so closely that literary dependence in one direction or the other is widely assumed. Pashhur's name-change to Magor-Missabib ('Terror on Every Side') echoes the same phrase in Psalm 31:13, where it describes enemies surrounding the psalmist. The 'fire shut up in my bones' (v. 9) connects to Psalm 39:3, where the psalmist also describes the unbearable pressure of suppressed speech. The confession sequence that climaxes here (beginning at 11:18) has been compared to the Psalms of lament, but Jeremiah's confessions exceed the psalms in their directness against God — the psalmists complain to God about enemies, but Jeremiah complains to God about God.

¹When Pashhur son of Immer the priest — who was the chief officer in the house of the LORD — heard Jeremiah prophesying these words, ²Pashhur struck Jeremiah the prophet and put him in the stocks at the Upper Benjamin Gate, which is in the house of the LORD. ³The next day, when Pashhur released Jeremiah from the stocks, Jeremiah said to him: The LORD does not call your name Pashhur, but Magor-Missabib. ⁴For this is what the LORD says: I am about to make you a terror to yourself and to all who love you. They will fall by the sword of their enemies while your eyes watch. I will hand all Judah over to the king of Babylon, and he will deport them to Babylon and strike them down with the sword. ⁵I will hand over all the wealth of this city — all its produce, all its valuables, and all the treasures of the kings of Judah — to their enemies, who will plunder them, seize them, and carry them to Babylon. ⁶And you, Pashhur — you and everyone who lives in your house will go into captivity. You will go to Babylon, and there you will die, and there you will be buried — you and all who love you, to whom you prophesied falsely. ⁷You deceived me, LORD, and I was deceived. You overpowered me, and you prevailed. I have become a laughingstock all day long — everyone mocks me. ⁸For whenever I speak, I must cry out — I shout, 'Violence and destruction!' The word of the LORD has brought me nothing but reproach and ridicule all day long. ⁹I said to myself, 'I will not mention him or speak in his name anymore.' But his word became like a burning fire locked inside my bones. I was exhausted from holding it in — I could not endure it. ¹⁰For I hear the whispering of many — 'Terror on every side!' — 'Denounce him! Let us denounce him!' All the men who were at peace with me are watching for me to stumble: 'Perhaps he can be deceived, and we will overpower him and take our vengeance on him.' ¹¹But the LORD is with me like a fearsome warrior. Therefore my persecutors will stumble and will not prevail. They will be deeply shamed because they have not acted wisely — an everlasting disgrace that will never be forgotten. ¹²LORD of Hosts, who examines the righteous, who sees the innermost depths and the heart — let me see your vengeance on them, for to you I have laid open my case. ¹³Sing to the LORD! Praise the LORD! For he has rescued the life of the needy from the hand of evildoers. ¹⁴Cursed be the day I was born. The day my mother bore me — let it not be blessed. ¹⁵Cursed be the man who brought the news to my father, saying, 'A son has been born to you!' — making him so glad. ¹⁶Let that man be like the cities the LORD overthrew without relenting — let him hear cries of anguish in the morning and alarm at noon, ¹⁷because he did not kill me in the womb, so that my mother would have been my grave and her womb forever pregnant. ¹⁸Why did I come out of the womb — to see nothing but suffering and grief, so that my days are spent in shame?

1. The title *paqid nagid* ('chief officer') indicates Pashhur held administrative authority over the temple compound, including the power to discipline those who disrupted temple order. This is not a minor functionary but the senior official responsible for maintaining order in the sacred precincts. The verse is syntactically incomplete, flowing directly into verse 2 as a single sentence unit.
2. The verb *vayakkeh* ('he struck') indicates a beating, not a single blow — the same verb describes military striking and judicial punishment elsewhere. The *mahpekhet* ('stocks') was a wooden restraining device that twisted the body into a contorted, painful position — the root *h-p-k* means 'to turn, twist, overturn.' This is public humiliation and physical torture inflicted by a priest on a prophet within the temple compound itself.
3. The name-change follows the prophetic pattern of renaming as oracle (cf. Isaiah's children in Isaiah 7-8). Pashhur's original name may mean 'freedom on every side' (from Egyptian *p3-šr*, 'the son of Horus'), which makes *Magor-Missabib* ('Terror on Every Side') a bitter reversal — freedom becomes terror, safety becomes dread. The phrase *magor missabib* appears also in Psalm 31:14 and in Jeremiah 6:25, 46:5, 49:29, and Lamentations 2:22.
4. The punishment is exquisitely tailored: Pashhur will become a source of terror — the very thing his new name declares. The phrase '*ve'einekha ro'ot*' ('while your eyes watch') adds a dimension of forced witness — Pashhur will survive long enough to see the destruction of everyone he cares about. The mention of Babylon is historically specific: this oracle dates the encounter to a time when Babylon's threat was already real but not yet universally accepted.
5. Three Hebrew terms catalogue what will be lost: *chosen* ('wealth, stored goods'), *yegia* ('produce, the fruit of labor'), and *yeqarah* ('precious things, valuables'). The accumulation emphasizes totality — nothing of value will remain. The verb *uvezazum* ('and they will plunder them') is onomatopoeic in Hebrew, the buzzing *z*-sounds mimicking the swarming chaos of looting.
6. Pashhur is revealed as a false prophet (*navi sheqer*) — he has been delivering oracles of his own, reassuring the people with lies. The final phrase '*asher nibbeta lahem basheqer*' ('to whom you prophesied falsely') exposes the core conflict: Pashhur punished Jeremiah not out of concern for the temple but because Jeremiah's true prophecy contradicted Pashhur's false one. The sentence of death in Babylon with burial in foreign soil is a reversal of every covenant promise of land and rest.
7. We rendered *pittitani* as 'You deceived me' rather than the softer 'You persuaded me' (used by some English translations to cushion the blow) because the parallel verb *chazaqtani* ('you overpowered me') establishes a context of force, not gentle persuasion. The semantic range of *pittah* includes: to entice (Judges 14:15, 16:5), to deceive (1 Kings 22:20-22), to seduce (Exodus 22:16), and to persuade (Proverbs 25:15). The confrontational end of the spectrum — deception and seduction — fits the parallel clause and the emotional context. The word *va'eppat* ('and I was deceived') uses the same root in the passive — Jeremiah acknowledges his own vulnerability but assigns the agency to God.
8. The content of Jeremiah's preaching is summarized in two words: *chamas* ('violence') and *shod* ('destruction'). These are not Jeremiah's personal complaints but the message God requires him to deliver — he must announce coming violence and ruin, which makes him universally hated. The word *cherpa* ('reproach, disgrace') and *qeles* ('ridicule, mockery') describe the social cost of faithfulness — the prophet who speaks truth becomes a pariah.
9. The verb *nil'eiti* ('I was exhausted, weary') combined with *kalkel* ('to contain, hold in') depicts the physical toll of suppression. The prophet tried to quit — to stop prophesying — and discovered that God's word is not a message he carries but a force that carries him. The fire metaphor connects to Jeremiah 5:14 ('I will make my words in your mouth a fire') and to 23:29 ('Is not my word like fire?'). The word *atsur* ('shut up, imprisoned') in the prophet's bones anticipates the physical imprisonment that Jeremiah will later endure — his body becomes a prison before any human jailer locks him up.
10. The verb *yeputteh* ('perhaps he will be deceived') uses the same root *pittah* that Jeremiah used against God in verse 7. The verbal echo is intentional and theologically layered — the deception Jeremiah attributes to God is mirrored by the deception his enemies plot against him. The phrase '*anshei shelomi*' ('men of my peace') is an idiom for trusted associates, allies, those with whom one has a covenant of peace. The phrase '*shomrei tsal'i*' ('watchers of my stumbling') depicts predators waiting for prey to falter.
11. The sudden pivot from accusation (v. 7) to confidence is jarring and theologically significant — the prophet who just accused God of deception now claims God as his champion. This is not contradiction but the characteristic oscillation of lament: rage and trust coexist. The word *arits* ('fearsome, ruthless, terrifying') is usually negative — applied to oppressors and tyrants. Applied to God, it means the LORD's power is terrifying to Jeremiah's enemies. The phrase *kelimmat olam* ('everlasting disgrace') echoes the *olam* vocabulary — their shame will stretch beyond the visible horizon.
12. The phrase '*ro'eh kelayot valev*' ('who sees the kidneys and the heart') refers to God's capacity to perceive the deepest interior of a person. In Hebrew anthropology, the *kelayot* ('kidneys') were the seat of the deepest emotions and hidden motives, while the *lev* ('heart') was the seat of the will and intellect. We rendered *kelayot* as 'innermost depths' rather than the literal 'kidneys' because the anatomical reference does not communicate the Hebrew meaning in English. The verb *gilliti* ('I have laid open, uncovered, revealed') is the language of legal disclosure — Jeremiah has submitted his case to the divine court. This verse closely parallels 11:20, where the same language appears in Jeremiah's first confession.
13. This burst of praise is liturgically conventional — it follows the pattern of psalmic hymns that conclude a lament (cf. Psalm 22:22-31 after 22:1-21). But its placement here, immediately before the birth-curse of verses 14-18, creates a disturbing structural effect. The praise does not resolve the lament — it is followed by the darkest passage in the book. Whether verse 13 represents genuine momentary faith, liturgical convention, or bitter irony is left unresolved by the text. The word *evyon* ('needy, poor') is Jeremiah's self-description — the prophet who holds the highest spiritual office in Israel considers himself among the destitute.

14. The structure is a Hebrew parallelism: 'Cursed be the day I was born / the day my mother bore me — let it not be blessed.' The second line intensifies the first by negating its opposite — not merely 'let it be cursed' but 'let it never be blessed,' stripping away even the possibility of goodness from that day. This echoes Job 3:1-3 closely, though Jeremiah adds the specific mention of his mother. The abruptness of the transition from verse 13's praise to verse 14's curse has troubled interpreters for centuries — but the text does not smooth it.
15. The curse widens from the day to a person — the unnamed messenger who announced Jeremiah's birth to his father. The phrase *ben zakhar* ('a male child') emphasizes the patriarchal joy of a son's birth, and *sammeach simmechu* ('making him exceedingly glad') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute to stress the intensity of the father's joy. The cruelty of this verse lies in its specificity: Jeremiah curses the moment of his father's greatest happiness. The messenger is unnamed — he is a bystander in the prophet's anguish, cursed not for anything he did wrong but because he participated in the event Jeremiah wishes had never happened.
16. The verb *hafakh* ('overthrew') is the technical term for Sodom's destruction, used in Genesis 19:21, 25, 29 and in prophetic references to total destruction (Amos 4:11, Isaiah 13:19). The phrase *velo nicham* ('and did not relent') uses the verb *nacham*, which elsewhere describes God 'changing his mind' or 'having compassion' — here the negation means no such mercy was extended. The cries of *ze'aqah* ('anguish') and *teru'ah* ('alarm, battle cry') depict a man living in perpetual terror — hearing sounds of destruction from dawn to midday with no relief.
17. The Hebrew shifts from cursing the messenger to explaining why he is cursed — 'because he did not kill me in the womb.' The logic is irrational grief: the messenger is cursed for not committing an act he had no power or reason to perform. The image of the mother's womb as a grave (*qivri*, 'my grave') merges birth and death into a single horrifying image — the place that should give life becomes the place of burial. The phrase *rachmah harat olam* ('her womb forever pregnant') envisions an eternal pregnancy that never reaches birth — permanent gestation with no delivery, existence trapped in pre-existence. The word *olam* here means an unbounded duration — pregnancy stretching beyond the horizon of time.
18. The final verse is a question with no answer. The word *lammah* ('why?') is the lament's ultimate interrogative — it demands a reason for suffering and receives none. The three terms *amal* ('suffering, toil, trouble'), *yagon* ('grief, sorrow'), and *bosheth* ('shame, disgrace') summarize the prophet's entire experience. The chapter — and the entire confession sequence that began at 11:18 — ends here, in unresolved despair. God does not respond. There is no comforting oracle, no divine assurance, no resolution. The text simply stops. This silence is itself theologically significant: the Hebrew Bible preserves the unanswered cry without rushing to provide comfort that the moment does not contain.

21

Summary: *Jeremiah 21 records the moment King Zedekiah sends a delegation to Jeremiah during the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem, desperately hoping the LORD will intervene as he did in the days of Hezekiah against Assyria. The LORD's answer is devastating: he himself will fight against Jerusalem with outstretched hand and mighty arm — the very language once used of the Exodus deliverance — and will strike down man and beast with pestilence. The chapter closes with a stark choice: those who surrender to Babylon will live, those who remain in the city will die by sword, famine, and plague.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The inversion of Exodus language is the theological earthquake of this chapter. The phrase 'outstretched hand and mighty arm' (v.5) is drawn directly from Deuteronomy 4:34 and 26:8, where it describes God's deliverance of Israel from Egypt. Here the same divine power is turned against his own people. Zedekiah invokes the memory of God's miraculous defense (2 Kings 19:35), but Jeremiah announces that this time God stands with Babylon, not with Jerusalem. The phrase 'I myself will fight against you' (v.5) is covenant-lawsuit language — the divine warrior has switched sides. The choice offered in verses 8-10 — 'the way of life and the way of death' — echoes Deuteronomy 30:15-19, but the 'way of life' is now surrender to the enemy, a scandalous reversal that would have been unthinkable to Zedekiah's court.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered *nilvam* ('fight') in verse 5 with the full phrase 'I myself will fight against you' to capture the emphatic first-person construction in Hebrew. The phrase *biyad netuya uvizroa' chazaqah* ('with outstretched hand and with mighty arm') we preserved in its traditional Exodus form precisely because the inversion depends on the reader recognizing the allusion. The word *qetseph* ('wrath') in verse 5 we rendered as 'fierce wrath' to distinguish it from other anger vocabulary (*af*, *chemah*) that appears in the same passage. In verse 9, 'his life shall be to him as plunder' renders the Hebrew construction *wehayetah lo nafsho leshalal* — the survivor keeps only his bare life, nothing more.*

Connections: *The Exodus-inversion language connects to Deuteronomy 4:34 and 26:8. Zedekiah's appeal recalls Hezekiah's deliverance in 2 Kings 19:35 and Isaiah 37:36. The 'way of life and way of death' formula echoes Deuteronomy 30:15-19. The promise that God will fight against his own people fulfills the covenant curses of Leviticus 26:17 and 33. Nebuchadnezzar as God's instrument connects forward to Jeremiah 25:9 where he is called 'my*

servant.' The siege context continues through Jeremiah 32, 34, and 37-39.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD when King Zedekiah sent to him Pashhur son of Malchiah and Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest, saying, ²Inquire of the LORD on our behalf, for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon is making war against us. Perhaps the LORD will deal with us according to all his wondrous deeds, and he will withdraw from us. ³Then Jeremiah said to them, "Thus you shall say to Zedekiah: ⁴This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: I am about to turn back the weapons of war that are in your hands, with which you fight against the king of Babylon and the Chaldeans who besiege you outside the walls, and I will gather them into the midst of this city. ⁵I myself will fight against you with outstretched hand and with mighty arm, in anger, in fury, and in fierce wrath. ⁶I will strike the inhabitants of this city, both man and beast. They shall die of a great pestilence. ⁷And afterward — declares the LORD — I will give Zedekiah king of Judah, his servants, the people, and those who survive in this city from the pestilence, the sword, and the famine, into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those who seek their lives. He will strike them with the edge of the sword. He will not spare them, he will not have pity, and he will not show mercy. ⁸And to this people you shall say: This is what the LORD says: I am setting before you the way of life and the way of death. ⁹Whoever remains in this city shall die by the sword, by famine, and by pestilence. But whoever goes out and surrenders to the Chaldeans who besiege you shall live, and his life shall be to him as plunder. ¹⁰For I have set my face against this city for harm and not for good — declares the LORD. It shall be given into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall burn it with fire. ¹¹To the house of the king of Judah: Hear the word of the LORD! ¹²O house of David, this is what the LORD says: Execute justice each morning, and deliver the one who has been robbed from the hand of the oppressor, lest my fury go out like fire and burn with no one to quench it, because of the evil of your deeds. ¹³I am against you, O inhabitant of the valley, O rock of the plain — declares the LORD — you who say, 'Who will come down against us? Who will enter our strongholds?' ¹⁴I will punish you according to the fruit of your deeds — declares the LORD. I will kindle a fire in her forest, and it shall devour everything around her.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This Pashhur is distinct from the Pashhur son of Immer in chapter 20. Zedekiah sends two emissaries — one royal official and one priest — reflecting the gravity of the crisis. The delegation occurs during the Babylonian siege of 588-586 BCE.
2. Zedekiah's 'perhaps' (ulai) reveals both desperation and uncertainty. He does not ask whether God will act but hopes for a miracle on the basis of precedent. The verb ya'aleh ('go up, withdraw') is military terminology for lifting a siege.
3. Jeremiah does not soften or delay — his response is immediate and directed back to the king through the same delegation.
4. The image is terrifying: God will reverse their weapons — not merely make them ineffective but turn them inward. The Chaldeans besieging from outside will be gathered inside the city walls. The LORD is orchestrating both sides of the battle, and he fights for Babylon.
5. The emphatic pronoun ani ('I myself') makes God's personal involvement unmistakable. Three anger terms cascade: af ('anger,' literally 'nostril-flaring'), chemah ('fury, heat'), and qetseph ('wrath, indignation'). Each intensifies beyond the last, expressing the fullness of divine judgment.
6. The language echoes the tenth plague in Egypt (Exodus 12:29) — God strikes inhabitants and animals alike. The pestilence (dever) is one of the covenant-curse triad: sword, famine, and pestilence, which recurs throughout Jeremiah.
7. Three negated verbs — 'not spare,' 'not pity,' 'not show mercy' — form a devastating closure. The survivors of pestilence, sword, and famine face yet another fate: captivity and execution. The phrase 'those who seek their lives' (mevaqshei nafsham) is standard Jeremiah vocabulary for mortal enemies.
8. This verse introduces the oracle to the general population, distinct from the message to Zedekiah. The Deuteronomic formula is unmistakable, and its subversion in the following verses would have been profoundly disorienting.
9. The Hebrew nafal al ('fall upon') means to desert to the enemy. The triad of sword, famine, and pestilence (cherev, ra'av, dever) is Jeremiah's signature judgment formula, appearing over twenty times in the book. The 'life as plunder' idiom also occurs in Jeremiah 38:2, 39:18, and 45:5.
10. 'I have set my face' (samti panai) indicates a fixed, irrevocable divine decision. The verb is in the perfect tense — the decision is already made. The burning of Jerusalem is stated as accomplished fact from God's perspective, though it would not occur until 586 BCE.
11. A new oracle begins here, addressed to the royal house as an institution rather than to Zedekiah personally. This introduces the broader theme of royal accountability that continues through chapter 22.

12. The address to 'the house of David' invokes the dynastic covenant (2 Samuel 7) while simultaneously placing it under judgment. The conditional 'lest' (pen) implies the door is still technically open, though the surrounding context suggests it is nearly shut.
13. The 'valley' and 'rock of the plain' describe Jerusalem's topography — built on a rocky plateau above the surrounding valleys. The inhabitants' boast reflects false confidence in the city's natural fortifications. The phrase hineni elayik ('I am against you') is the divine war-declaration formula.
14. The 'forest' (ya'ar) likely refers to the 'House of the Forest of Lebanon' — Solomon's palace complex built with cedar (1 Kings 7:2). The fire that begins in the royal 'forest' will spread to consume everything around it. The phrase 'fruit of your deeds' (peri ma'allekhem) connects judgment to the natural consequences of their own actions.

22

Summary: *Jeremiah 22 contains a series of oracles against the kings of Judah, delivered as if Jeremiah were standing in the royal palace. The chapter opens with a demand for justice and a conditional promise — if the Davidic house practices righteousness, kings will continue to ride through the gates; if not, the palace will become a desolation. Three kings are specifically addressed: Shallum (Jehoahaz), exiled to Egypt never to return; Jehoiakim, condemned for building his palace with forced labor and for his utter lack of justice; and Jehoiachin (Coniah), declared a despised, broken pot who will be hurled into exile with his mother, and whose offspring will never sit on the throne of David.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The contrast between Josiah and Jehoiakim in verses 15-17 is one of the sharpest character studies in Scripture. Josiah 'judged the cause of the poor and needy — was not this to know me?' (v.16), equating knowledge of God directly with justice for the vulnerable. Jehoiakim, by contrast, builds a lavish palace with unpaid labor while his father's legacy of justice lies in ruins. The rhetorical question 'Is not this to know me?' (halo-hi hadda'at oti) redefines the meaning of 'knowing God' in ethical rather than intellectual or mystical terms. The oracle against Coniah (vv.24-30) is devastating in its finality — even if he were the signet ring on God's right hand, God would tear him off and throw him away. The declaration that none of his offspring will prosper on David's throne (v.30) raises profound questions about the Davidic covenant that are only resolved by the reversal in Haggai 2:23.*

Translation Friction: *We rendered Shallum rather than Jehoahaz in verse 11 because the Hebrew text uses Shallum, which is apparently a birth name or alternative name for Jehoahaz son of Josiah. Coniah (Konyahu) in verse 24 is a shortened, perhaps deliberately dismissive form of Jehoiachin (Yehoyakin). We preserved the Hebrew name forms as they carry interpretive weight. The phrase 'Do you reign because you compete in cedar?' (v.15) is notoriously difficult — we rendered the verb titkhareh as 'compete' to capture the sense of rivalry and ostentation in Jehoiakim's building projects. In verse 23, 'O inhabitant of Lebanon, nested among the cedars' addresses the royal house through its cedar-paneled palace.*

Connections: *The demand for justice connects backward to Jeremiah 21:12 and forward to 23:5. Josiah's commendation echoes 2 Kings 23:25. Jehoiakim's forced labor recalls Solomon's conscription (1 Kings 5:13-14) and reverses the Exodus liberation from forced labor in Egypt. The signet-ring imagery of verse 24 is reversed in Haggai 2:23 where Zerubbabel (Coniah's grandson) is restored as God's signet. The prohibition against weeping for the dead king (Josiah) but weeping for the one who goes away (Shallum) foreshadows the exile theology of Jeremiah 24 and 29. The 'burial of a donkey' for Jehoiakim (v.19) connects to 2 Chronicles 36:6.*

1This is what the LORD says: Go down to the house of the king of Judah and speak this word there: 2Say: Hear the word of the LORD, O king of Judah who sits on the throne of David — you, your servants, and your people who enter by these gates. 3This is what the LORD says: Do justice and righteousness. Deliver the one who has been robbed from the hand of the oppressor. Do no wrong and do no violence to the sojourner, the fatherless, or the widow. Do not shed innocent blood in this place. 4For if you truly do this, then kings who sit on David's throne shall enter by the gates of this house, riding in chariots and on horses — he, his servants, and his people. 5But if you will not hear these words, I swear by myself — declares the LORD — that this house shall become a desolation. 6For this is what the LORD says concerning the house of the king of Judah: You are Gilead to me, the summit of Lebanon — yet I will surely make you a wilderness, cities without inhabitants. 7I will consecrate destroyers against you, each with his weapons. They shall cut down your choicest cedars and cast them into

the fire. ⁸Many nations shall pass by this city and say to one another, 'Why has the LORD done this to this great city?' ⁹And they shall answer, 'Because they abandoned the covenant of the LORD their God, and bowed down to other gods, and served them.' ¹⁰Do not weep for the dead, and do not grieve for him. Weep bitterly for the one who goes away, for he shall never return, nor see the land of his birth again. ¹¹For this is what the LORD says concerning Shallum son of Josiah, king of Judah, who reigned in place of Josiah his father and who went out from this place: He shall not return here again. ¹²For in the place where they have exiled him, there he shall die. He shall never see this land again.

¹³Woe to him who builds his house by unrighteousness,
and his upper rooms by injustice,
who makes his neighbor serve without wages
and does not give him his pay!

¹⁴He says, 'I will build myself a great house
with spacious upper rooms!'
He cuts out windows for it,
panels it with cedar,
and paints it with vermilion.

¹⁵Do you think you reign because you compete in cedar?
Did not your father eat and drink
and do justice and righteousness?
Then it was well with him.

¹⁶He judged the cause of the poor and the needy —
then it was well.
Is not this to know me?
— declares the LORD.

¹⁷But your eyes and your heart are set on nothing
but your dishonest gain,
on shedding innocent blood,
and on practicing oppression and violence.

¹⁸Therefore this is what the LORD says concerning Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah: They shall not lament for him, saying, 'Alas, my brother!' or 'Alas, my sister!' They shall not lament for him, saying, 'Alas, lord!' or 'Alas, his majesty!' ¹⁹He shall be buried with the burial of a donkey — dragged and thrown out beyond the gates of Jerusalem.

²⁰Go up to Lebanon and cry out!
Lift your voice in Bashan!
Cry out from Abarim,
for all your lovers are broken.

²¹I spoke to you in your prosperity,
but you said, 'I will not listen.'
This has been your way from your youth,
that you have not obeyed my voice.

²²The wind shall shepherd all your shepherds,
and your lovers shall go into captivity.
Then you shall be ashamed and humiliated

because of all your wickedness.

²³O you who dwell in Lebanon,
 nested among the cedars —
 how you will groan when pangs come upon you,
 pain like a woman in labor!

²⁴As I live — declares the LORD — even if Coniah son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, were the signet ring on my right hand, I would tear you off from there. ²⁵I will give you into the hand of those who seek your life, into the hand of those you dread, into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of the Chaldeans. ²⁶I will hurl you and the mother who bore you into another land where you were not born, and there you shall die. ²⁷To the land to which they lift up their souls to return — there they shall not return. ²⁸Is this man Coniah a despised, shattered pot? A vessel no one wants? Why have he and his offspring been hurled out and cast into a land they do not know? ²⁹O land, land, land — hear the word of the LORD! ³⁰This is what the LORD says: Write this man down as childless — a man who will not prosper in his days. For none of his offspring shall prosper, sitting on the throne of David and ruling again in Judah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Go down' (red) indicates Jeremiah is on the temple mount, which is higher than the royal palace complex to the south. The physical descent mirrors the theological descent of the oracle.
2. The address encompasses the entire royal court and the people who pass through the palace gates. The phrase 'throne of David' invokes the dynastic covenant — the king sits there by divine grant, not by inherent right.
3. The triad of sojourner (ger), fatherless (yatom), and widow (almanah) is the classic Deuteronomic list of the most vulnerable members of society whom the king is bound to protect. 'This place' refers to the royal palace, where justice is supposed to originate.
4. The conditional promise ('if you truly do this') keeps the Davidic covenant operative but ties it to justice. The image of kings riding through the gates in chariots is one of royal splendor and continuity — a future that is still possible but contingent on obedience.
5. God swears by himself because there is no higher authority to invoke. The oath formula 'I swear by myself' (bi nishba'ti) makes the warning irrevocable. 'This house' is the royal palace — the throne of David will become a ruin.
6. Gilead and Lebanon were proverbially fertile and forested regions. The royal house is compared to these lush territories — yet God will reduce even this abundance to uninhabited wasteland. The contrast between present beauty and coming desolation is the rhetorical point.
7. We rendered qiddashti as 'consecrate' rather than KJV's 'prepare' to preserve the shocking theological claim that God sanctifies destruction as holy work. The cedar-cutting imagery anticipates the direct condemnation of Jehoiakim's cedar obsession in verses 14-15.
8. The scene anticipates foreigners gazing at Jerusalem's ruins and asking the question. The formula echoes Deuteronomy 29:24-25 and 1 Kings 9:8-9, where the same question is asked and answered — because they abandoned the covenant.
9. Even the pagan nations will understand the cause-and-effect logic of covenant violation and judgment. The answer centers on berit ('covenant') — Jerusalem's destruction is not random catastrophe but covenant consequence.
10. 'The dead' refers to King Josiah, killed at Megiddo in 609 BCE. 'The one who goes away' is Shallum/Jehoahaz, exiled to Egypt after only three months on the throne. The paradox is striking: death in the homeland is preferable to exile — at least Josiah rests in his own land.
11. Shallum is the birth name of Jehoahaz (2 Kings 23:30-34). He reigned only three months before Pharaoh Necho deported him to Egypt, where he died. The use of 'Shallum' rather than the throne name may indicate prophetic contempt for his brief, illegitimate reign.
12. The repetition of 'never again' from verses 10 and 11 drives home the finality of exile. Shallum died in Egypt — the land from which God had once delivered Israel. The irony of an Israelite king dying in Egypt would not have been lost on Jeremiah's audience.
13. The woe-oracle (hoi) now targets Jehoiakim directly, though he is not named until the context makes it unmistakable. The forced labor (ya'avod chinnam, 'serve for nothing') echoes Pharaoh's exploitation of Israel — the Davidic king has become a new Pharaoh.
14. The self-quotation ('I will build myself') exposes Jehoiakim's vanity. Cedar paneling was the mark of royal luxury — the 'House of the Forest of Lebanon' (1 Kings 7:2). Vermilion (shashar) was an expensive red pigment used for decorative painting, emphasizing the extravagance while laborers go unpaid.
15. The rhetorical question 'Do you reign because you compete in cedar?' is devastating: Jehoiakim confuses the trappings of royalty with its substance. Josiah 'ate and drank' — the phrase implies contentment and simplicity, not asceticism. The real mark of his kingship was justice.

16. This verse is the theological center of the chapter and arguably of Jeremiah's entire social ethic. The equation knowledge-of-God = justice-for-the-poor has no parallel this direct anywhere in the Hebrew Bible. We set the LORD's declaration on its own line to give it the weight the Hebrew demands.
17. The indictment is fourfold: dishonest gain (betsa'), shedding innocent blood, oppression ('osheq), and violence (merutsah). Jehoiakim is the anti-Josiah — where his father knew God through justice, Jehoiakim knows only exploitation. The phrase 'eyes and heart' indicates both perception and desire are corrupted.
18. The mourning cries 'Alas, my brother / my sister / lord / his majesty' are formulaic lament expressions. The declaration that these will not be spoken means Jehoiakim will receive no proper burial or mourning — the most shameful fate for a king in the ancient Near East.
19. 'The burial of a donkey' means no burial at all — a dead donkey is simply dragged outside the city and abandoned. For a king who invested everything in his magnificent palace, the final indignity is to be discarded like an animal carcass. This is the harshest burial oracle in the prophets.
20. The address shifts to feminine singular — Jerusalem personified as a woman. Lebanon, Bashan, and Abarim are mountainous regions surrounding the land. Her 'lovers' (me'ahavayik) are the foreign allies she relied on instead of the LORD. All of them are shattered.
21. God's complaint reaches back to Jerusalem's entire history ('from your youth') — the pattern of ignoring the divine voice in times of prosperity is not new but chronic. The word shalvotayik ('your prosperity, your ease') implies that comfort bred complacency.
22. We rendered 'the wind shall shepherd your shepherds' to preserve the Hebrew wordplay as closely as English allows. The 'shepherds' are the political leaders; the 'lovers' are foreign allies. Both will be swept away, leaving Jerusalem utterly exposed.
23. 'Lebanon' and 'cedars' again refer to the cedar-paneled palace, not the geographical region. The image shifts from luxurious nest to labor pains — the security of the cedar palace will become a place of anguish. The contrast between the comfortable nest and the writhing pain is the rhetorical thrust.
24. The oath formula 'As I live' (chai-ani) is the strongest possible divine affirmation. The signet ring image is extraordinarily intimate — worn on the hand, never removed, the instrument of authority. Haggai 2:23 will reverse this rejection when Zerubbabel, Coniah's grandson, is called God's signet ring.
25. The fourfold 'into the hand of' creates a suffocating sense of inevitability. The progression narrows from general threat to specific: those who seek his life, those he fears, Nebuchadnezzar personally, and the Chaldean Empire.
26. The verb hetalti ('I will hurl') is violent — God physically throws Coniah and his mother Nehushta (2 Kings 24:8) out of the land. The mention of his mother emphasizes the totality of the rejection — even the queen mother, a figure of high court status, is expelled.
27. The phrase 'lift up their souls' (menass'im et-nafsham) expresses desperate longing — their whole being yearns for home. The cruelty of the sentence is that this deepest desire will never be fulfilled. The emphatic construction closes every door.
28. The rhetorical questions are spoken from the perspective of shocked onlookers. Coniah is compared to a broken clay vessel — utterly worthless, fit only to be thrown away. The word naputs ('shattered') emphasizes irreparable destruction. His 'offspring' (zar'o) anticipates the dynasty-ending declaration of verse 30.
29. Triple repetition in Hebrew signals the utmost urgency and solemnity. The entire land is called to witness what follows — the most devastating dynastic oracle in the book.
30. The command 'write' (kitvu) makes this a formal legal decree — enrolled in the official record. The word ariri ('childless') is the same word used of Abraham's lament in Genesis 15:2 before the promise of an heir. Applied to a Davidic king, it effectively terminates the dynasty for succession purposes.

23

Summary: *Jeremiah 23 opens with a scathing oracle against the shepherds (kings and leaders) who have scattered God's flock, followed by the messianic promise of the Righteous Branch (tsemach tsaddiq) whose name will be 'The LORD Our Righteousness' (YHWH Tsidqenu). The chapter then pivots to an extended denunciation of the false prophets of Jerusalem, whom God accuses of adultery, lies, and strengthening the hands of evildoers. The climax confronts the false prophets' misuse of the phrase 'the burden of the LORD' and declares God's word to be like fire and like a hammer that shatters rock.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most concentrated messianic prophecies in Jeremiah: the Righteous Branch (tsemach tsaddiq, v. 5) who will reign as king and execute justice and righteousness. His throne-name, YHWH Tsidqenu ('The LORD Our Righteousness'), is extraordinary — a human king bearing a name that incorporates the divine name itself. The same title recurs in 33:16 applied to Jerusalem. The false prophets section (vv. 9-40) is the longest sustained critique of prophetic abuse in the Hebrew Bible. God's rhetorical question in verse 23 —*

'Am I only a God nearby and not a God far off?' — challenges the false prophets' assumption that God cannot see what they do in secret. The metaphor of God's word as fire and hammer (v. 29) stands as one of the most powerful images in prophetic literature, contrasting sharply with the straw-like emptiness of false prophecy. The wordplay on massa ('burden/oracle') in verses 33-40 is untranslatable — God turns the prophets' technical vocabulary back against them.

Translation Friction: The phrase tsemach tsaddiq (v. 5) required careful handling — tsemach means 'branch, sprout, growth' and we rendered it as 'righteous Branch' to preserve both the botanical metaphor (a new shoot from the Davidic line) and the messianic tradition. The name YHWH Tsidqenu (v. 6) is a compound throne-name; we rendered the explanatory clause 'The LORD is our righteousness' as the meaning while preserving the Hebrew name in key terms. The massa wordplay in verses 33-40 posed the greatest challenge: massa can mean both 'burden' (something heavy to carry) and 'oracle' (a prophetic utterance), and the passage plays on both meanings simultaneously. We rendered it as 'burden' throughout with extensive notes explaining the double meaning, since 'oracle' would lose the punning force of God telling the prophets that they themselves are the burden he will cast off. The verb natash in verse 33 ('to abandon, cast off') extends the burden metaphor — God will drop the burden that they have become.

Connections: The Righteous Branch connects to Isaiah 11:1 (the shoot from Jesse's stump), Zechariah 3:8 and 6:12 (the Branch), and is read messianically in both Jewish and Christian traditions. The throne-name YHWH Tsidqenu deliberately echoes and reverses the name of King Zedekiah (Tsidqiyahu, 'the LORD is my righteousness') — the failed king's name becomes the promised king's fulfilled reality. The false prophets section echoes Deuteronomy 18:20-22 (the test of a true prophet) and Micah 3:5-8 (prophets who lead astray). The fire-and-hammer image of God's word (v. 29) connects to Jeremiah 5:14 ('I will make my words fire in your mouth') and anticipates Hebrews 4:12 ('the word of God is living and active'). The 'Am I only a God nearby' passage (v. 23) resonates with Psalm 139:7-12 (God's inescapable presence).

¹Woe to the shepherds who destroy and scatter the sheep of my pasture! — declares the LORD. ²Therefore, this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says concerning the shepherds who tend my people: You have scattered my flock, driven them away, and have not attended to them. Now I am about to attend to you — for the evil of your deeds, declares the LORD. ³Then I myself will gather the remnant of my flock from all the lands where I have driven them, and I will bring them back to their pasture, and they will be fruitful and multiply. ⁴I will raise up shepherds over them who will tend them, and they will no longer be afraid or terrified, and none will be missing, declares the LORD. ⁵The days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will raise up for David a righteous Branch. He will reign as king and act wisely, and he will establish justice and righteousness in the land. ⁶In his days Judah will be saved and Israel will live in safety. And this is the name by which he will be called: The LORD Is Our Righteousness. ⁷Therefore the days are coming, declares the LORD, when people will no longer say, 'As the LORD lives, who brought the children of Israel up from the land of Egypt,' ⁸but rather, 'As the LORD lives, who brought up and led the descendants of the house of Israel from the northern land and from all the lands where he had driven them.' Then they will live on their own soil. ⁹Concerning the prophets: My heart is shattered within me; all my bones tremble. I have become like a drunk, like a man overcome by wine — because of the LORD and because of his holy words. ¹⁰For the land is full of adulterers; because of the curse the land mourns, and the pastures of the wilderness have dried up. Their course is evil and their power is misused. ¹¹For both prophet and priest are godless — even in my own house I have found their wickedness, declares the LORD. ¹²Therefore their path will become slippery ground in the darkness — they will be pushed and fall on it, for I will bring disaster upon them in the year of their reckoning, declares the LORD. ¹³Among the prophets of Samaria I saw something repulsive: they prophesied by Baal and led my people Israel astray. ¹⁴But among the prophets of Jerusalem I have seen something horrifying: they commit adultery and walk in deception, and they strengthen the hands of evildoers so that no one turns from his wickedness. All of them have become like Sodom to me, and its inhabitants like Gomorrah. ¹⁵Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts says concerning the prophets: I am about to feed them wormwood and make them drink poisoned water, for from the prophets of Jerusalem godlessness has spread throughout the entire land. ¹⁶This is what the LORD of Hosts says: Do not listen to the words of the prophets who prophesy to you. They fill you with empty hopes. They speak visions from their own hearts, not from the mouth of the LORD. ¹⁷They keep saying to those who despise me, 'The LORD has spoken: You will have peace.' And to everyone who walks in the

stubbornness of his own heart they say, 'No disaster will come upon you.' ¹⁸For who has stood in the council of the LORD, to see and hear his word? Who has paid attention to his word and truly listened? ¹⁹Look — a storm of the LORD has gone out in fury, a whirling tempest! It will burst upon the heads of the wicked. ²⁰The anger of the LORD will not turn back until he has carried out and fulfilled the purposes of his heart. In the days to come you will understand this clearly. ²¹I did not send these prophets, yet they ran. I did not speak to them, yet they prophesied. ²²But if they had stood in my council and proclaimed my words to my people, they would have turned them from their evil way and from the wickedness of their deeds. ²³Am I only a God who is near, declares the LORD, and not a God who is far off? ²⁴Can anyone hide in secret places so that I cannot see him? declares the LORD. Do I not fill the heavens and the earth? declares the LORD. ²⁵I have heard what the prophets say — those who prophesy lies in my name, saying, 'I had a dream! I had a dream!' ²⁶How long will this continue? Is there anything in the hearts of the prophets who prophesy lies — the prophets of their own heart's deceit? ²⁷They plan to make my people forget my name through their dreams, which they tell one to another — just as their ancestors forgot my name because of Baal. ²⁸The prophet who has a dream — let him tell his dream. But the one who has my word — let him speak my word truthfully. What does straw have in common with grain? declares the LORD. ²⁹Is not my word like fire, declares the LORD, and like a hammer that shatters rock? ³⁰Therefore I am against the prophets, declares the LORD — those who steal my words from one another. ³¹I am against the prophets, declares the LORD — those who wag their own tongues and declare, 'He declares!' ³²I am against those who prophesy lying dreams, declares the LORD, who tell them and lead my people astray with their lies and their recklessness — though I never sent them or commanded them. They are of no benefit whatsoever to this people, declares the LORD. ³³When this people or a prophet or a priest asks you, 'What is the burden of the LORD?' — you shall say to them, 'You are the burden! And I will cast you off,' declares the LORD. ³⁴As for the prophet or the priest or any of the people who says, 'The burden of the LORD' — I will punish that person and his household. ³⁵Instead, this is what you should say to one another, each to his neighbor: 'What has the LORD answered?' and 'What has the LORD spoken?' ³⁶But 'the burden of the LORD' you must not mention again, for each person's own word becomes his burden — because you have twisted the words of the living God, the LORD of Hosts, our God. ³⁷This is how you shall speak to a prophet: 'What has the LORD answered you?' and 'What has the LORD spoken?' ³⁸But if you say, 'The burden of the LORD' — then this is what the LORD says: Because you used this phrase, 'The burden of the LORD,' even though I sent word to you saying, 'You must not say, "The burden of the LORD"' — ³⁹therefore I will surely lift you up and hurl you away from my presence — both you and the city that I gave to you and your ancestors. ⁴⁰I will bring upon you everlasting disgrace and perpetual shame that will never be forgotten.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The term ro'im ('shepherds') is the standard ancient Near Eastern metaphor for kings and rulers. Jeremiah is not addressing literal herders but the Davidic monarchy and its appointed leaders. The double accusation — 'destroy and scatter' (me'abedim umefitsim) — summarizes the political and spiritual damage done by Judah's final kings. The word mar'iti ('my pasture') emphasizes divine ownership: these are God's sheep, not the shepherds' property.
2. The verse plays on the verb paqad ('to attend to, visit, reckon with'). The shepherds have not 'attended to' (paqadtem) the flock, so God will 'attend to' (poqed) the shepherds — but in judgment rather than care. The same verb carries opposite force depending on its object: care when directed at sheep, punishment when directed at negligent rulers. This wordplay is impossible to replicate in English but we preserved the root by using 'attended' in both clauses.
3. The emphatic 'I myself' (va'ani) contrasts divine action with the shepherds' failure — what the kings could not do, God will do personally. The language 'be fruitful and multiply' (paru veravu) deliberately echoes the creation blessing of Genesis 1:28, signaling that God's restoration of the scattered flock is an act of re-creation. The word she'erit ('remnant') introduces the theological concept of a surviving portion through whom God preserves his purposes.
4. The verb paqad appears again — 'none will be missing' (lo yippaqedu). After the indictment that the shepherds did not 'attend to' (paqad) the flock, the promise is that under new leadership not a single sheep will go unaccounted for. The three negatives — 'no longer afraid, no longer terrified, none missing' — paint a complete reversal of the scattering described in verses 1-2.
5. The messianic promise introduces tsemach ('branch, sprout'), a term that becomes a title for the coming Davidic king in Zechariah 3:8 and 6:12. The verb hiskil carries a double sense: 'to act wisely' and 'to prosper, succeed' — we chose 'act wisely' to foreground the intellectual and moral quality, with the implication that success follows. Mishpat utsedaqah ('justice and righteousness') is the standard pair describing ideal royal governance in the

Hebrew Bible (cf. 2 Samuel 8:15, Isaiah 9:6, 32:1).

6. The name YHWH Tsidqenu is a compound throne-name. We rendered it 'The LORD Is Our Righteousness' rather than transliterating, so the reader grasps the theological claim. The contrast with Zedekiah (Tsidqiyahu) is deliberate — Zedekiah's name means roughly the same thing, but his reign proved the name hollow. The coming king will fulfill what Zedekiah's name only promised. The verb *tivvasha* ('will be saved') and *yishkon labetach* ('will live in safety') describe national salvation and security — themes that the current political crisis under Babylon has made urgent.
7. The oath formula *chai YHWH* ('As the LORD lives') is used here as a marker of national memory. The exodus from Egypt has been the defining salvation-event for Israel's identity since Sinai. Jeremiah's oracle declares that a new act of divine rescue will be so great that it will supplant the exodus itself as the primary oath-reference. This passage parallels 16:14-15 almost verbatim.
8. The 'northern land' (*erets tsafonah*) refers to Babylon, which though geographically east of Israel was approached from the north via the Fertile Crescent. The word *zera* ('seed, offspring, descendants') emphasizes biological continuity — the same family line that went into exile will return. The phrase 'their own soil' (*admatam*) uses *adamah* rather than *erets*, evoking the intimate connection between people and their particular ground — not just any land, but their ancestral earth.
9. The speaker shifts — this is Jeremiah's own voice expressing his visceral response to what God has revealed about the false prophets. The physical symptoms (shattered heart, trembling bones, staggering like a drunk) describe the overwhelming effect of prophetic revelation on the body. The verb *rachafu* ('tremble, shake') describes involuntary trembling — the same root used for the Spirit hovering over the waters in Genesis 1:2, here applied to the prophet's bones shaking with divine disclosure. The comparison to drunkenness is not about intoxication but about loss of bodily control in the face of overwhelming divine reality.
10. The word *mena'afim* ('adulterers') may refer to literal sexual immorality or metaphorical spiritual adultery (idolatry) — likely both, given the prophets' conduct described later in the chapter. The term *alah* ('curse') refers to the covenant curse that has fallen on the land because of covenant-breaking, causing agricultural devastation. The mourning land (*avelah ha'arets*) personifies the earth itself suffering the consequences of human sin — an ecological dimension to covenant violation that runs throughout the prophets (cf. Hosea 4:3).
11. The verb *chanefu* ('are godless, profane') describes not atheism but the corruption of those who hold sacred office — they have made themselves common while claiming to be set apart. The phrase 'in my house' (*beveti*) indicates that the temple itself has become a site of their corruption, an accusation that echoes the temple sermon of chapter 7. The pairing of *navi* and *kohen* ('prophet and priest') indicts the entire religious establishment.
12. The image of *chalaqlaqot ba'afelah* ('slippery ground in darkness') combines two dangers: uncertain footing and zero visibility. The prophets who led others astray will themselves lose their way. The phrase *shenat pequddatam* ('year of their reckoning') uses *paqad* again — the same verb from verse 2, now applied to the false prophets. God's 'attending to' them means judgment.
13. The word *tiflah* ('unseemliness, offensiveness, repulsive folly') is stronger than the KJV's 'folly' — it carries a sense of something tasteless, offensive, indecent. The prophets of Samaria (the fallen northern kingdom) serve as a comparison point: what happened in Samaria was bad, but what is happening in Jerusalem (v. 14) is worse. Prophesying 'by Baal' (*ba-Ba'al*) means claiming Baal as the source of prophetic authority.
14. The word *sha'arurah* ('horrifying thing, something that causes shuddering') is even stronger than the *tiflah* of Samaria (v. 13) — an intentional escalation. Three charges are leveled: adultery (*na'of*), deception (*halokh basheqer*), and enabling evil (*chizzequ yedei mere'im*). The last charge is the most damning — the false prophets do not merely fail to condemn evil, they actively empower evildoers by removing the motivation to repent. Comparing Jerusalem to Sodom and Gomorrah invokes the ultimate paradigm of divine judgment (Genesis 19). The verb *shuv* ('turn, return, repent') appears here as the key verb of the book — the false prophets have prevented repentance.
15. Wormwood (*la'anah*) is a bitter plant associated with suffering and divine punishment (cf. Deuteronomy 29:17, Lamentations 3:15, 19). 'Poisoned water' (*mei rosh*) literally means 'water of a poisonous plant' — the combination of wormwood and poison-water reverses the prophetic role of nourishing the people with God's word. Instead of feeding truth, these prophets have fed lies, so God will feed them bitterness and poison. The word *chanuppah* ('godlessness, profaneness') indicates that the corruption originating from Jerusalem's prophets has contaminated the whole land — the infection started at the center.
16. The verb *mahbilim* ('make empty, fill with vanity') is from the root *h-b-l*, related to *hevel* ('vapor, breath, vanity') — the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes. The false prophets are pumping their audience full of insubstantial vapor. The contrast between 'their own hearts' (*libbam*) and 'the mouth of the LORD' (*pi YHWH*) is the diagnostic test for false prophecy: the source. True prophecy originates from God's mouth; false prophecy originates from the prophet's own imagination.
17. The false prophets deliver two poisonous assurances: *shalom* ('peace') to those who despise God, and immunity from disaster to the stubborn-hearted. The phrase *sheririt libbo* ('stubbornness of his heart') is Jeremiah's signature phrase for willful rebellion (cf. 7:24, 9:13, 11:8, 13:10, 16:12, 18:12). The false prophets are telling the most rebellious people exactly what they want to hear — the opposite of prophetic responsibility. This is the 'Peace, peace, when there is no peace' theme from 6:14 and 8:11.
18. The word *sod* ('council, counsel, secret assembly') refers to the divine council — the heavenly assembly where God deliberates and dispatches his decrees (cf. 1 Kings 22:19-23, Isaiah 6, Job 1-2). The rhetorical question implies that the false prophets have not been admitted to God's heavenly court, so they have no authentic message to relay. A true prophet is one who has 'stood in the council' and received divine communication firsthand. The distinction between seeing, hearing, and truly listening (*hiqshiv*) creates a hierarchy of attentiveness — mere hearing is insufficient.

19. The word sa'arat ('storm, tempest') depicts divine judgment as an uncontrollable force of nature. The verb mitcholel ('whirling, swirling') intensifies the image — this is not a passing shower but a cyclonic force. The rendering 'burst upon' captures the violent impact of yachul ('to whirl, fall upon'). This storm image recurs in verse 19 and at the end of the chapter (v. 19), framing the false prophet material.
20. The phrase be'acharit hayyamim ('in the latter days, in the days to come') carries eschatological weight — it looks forward to a time when current events will make sense in retrospect. The verb titbonenu ('you will understand, comprehend') promises future clarity: what now seems incomprehensible will become plain. The 'purposes of his heart' (mezimmot libbo) attributes intentionality to God's anger — this is not blind rage but deliberate execution of planned consequences.
21. The parallelism is devastating in its simplicity. Two paired denials — 'not sent / they ran' and 'not spoken / they prophesied' — expose the entire false prophetic enterprise in two lines. The verb ratsu ('they ran') implies eager, zealous activity — they were enthusiastic about delivering messages they had never received. The contrast between divine commissioning and self-appointment is the heart of the false prophecy problem.
22. The conditional 'if they had stood' (im amdu) uses the divine council language from verse 18. The logic is clear: access to God's true council produces authentic words, and authentic words produce repentance (shuv — 'turning'). The false prophets failed at the first step (no divine access), which guaranteed failure at every subsequent step. The verb veyashivu ('would have turned them') uses the hiphil of shuv — the causative form, meaning 'caused to repent.' True prophecy causes people to turn; false prophecy prevents it (v. 14).
23. This rhetorical question challenges the false prophets' operating assumption — that God is limited in spatial awareness. If God were only 'near' (miqarov), he could be avoided by distance. But as a God who is also 'far off' (merachok), nothing is beyond his sight. The question anticipates the next verse's expansion. The structure is a self-predication — God defining himself against inadequate conceptions — similar to 'I AM WHO I AM' (Exodus 3:14) in form.
24. The verb yissater ('hide oneself') in the mistrim ('hidden places, concealed spots') creates an emphatic double use of the root s-t-r ('to hide'). God's response is not merely that he sees hidden things but that his presence fills (male') all of heaven and earth — there is nowhere outside his awareness. This is one of the most explicit statements of divine omnipresence in the Hebrew Bible, rivaling Psalm 139:7-12. The false prophets operate as if God cannot observe their conduct; this verse demolishes that assumption.
25. The repeated chalamti chalamti ('I dreamed, I dreamed!') mimics the eager, breathless claims of the false prophets. Dreams were considered a legitimate channel of divine revelation (cf. Genesis 37, 40-41; Numbers 12:6), but the false prophets have turned dream-claims into a tool of deception. God emphasizes that he has heard (shamati) their claims — returning to the omniscience theme of verses 23-24. They cannot hide their lies from the one who fills heaven and earth.
26. The phrase nevi'ei tarmit libbam ('prophets of their heart's deceit') defines false prophecy precisely: these men are prophets of their own deception, not prophets of God. The word tarmit ('deceit, fraud') comes from the root r-m-h, implying deliberate misleading rather than innocent error. The exasperated 'How long?' (ad matay) voices God's impatience with the continuing fraud.
27. The verb lehashkiach ('to cause to forget') is a hiphil (causative) — the false prophets are actively engineering the erasure of God's name from Israel's memory. The parallel to the ancestors who 'forgot my name because of Baal' (shakechu avotam et shemi ba-Ba'al) draws a direct line between the current prophetic fraud and the old Baal worship. The method has changed (dreams instead of altars), but the result is the same: displacement of YHWH from Israel's consciousness.
28. God draws a sharp distinction: dream-prophets may report their dreams, but they must not confuse dreams with God's direct word (devari). The question 'What does straw have in common with grain?' (mah latteven et habbar) is a riddle with an obvious answer: nothing. Straw (teven) is the worthless husk; grain (bar) is the nutritious kernel. The false prophets' dreams are straw; God's word is grain. The two should never be confused or mixed.
29. The two metaphors — fire and hammer — work together but on different registers. Fire (esh) purifies and destroys simultaneously; a hammer (pattish) breaks through resistant material. The verb yefotsetz ('shatters, breaks apart') is intensive, describing not a tap but a violent fragmentation. The sela ('rock, cliff, crag') represents the most unyielding material imaginable. God's word overcomes what nothing else can penetrate. This verse has become one of the most frequently quoted descriptions of God's word in both Jewish and Christian tradition.
30. The verb meganevei ('stealing') accuses the false prophets of plagiarism — they copy phrases from each other rather than receiving words directly from God. The image is of prophets who cobble together convincing-sounding oracles by borrowing God-language from other prophets, creating a circular echo chamber of stolen terminology with no divine origin. This is the first of three 'I am against' (hineni al) declarations (vv. 30, 31, 32) forming a triple indictment.
31. The phrase haloqechim leshonam ('those who take their own tongues') suggests prophets who deploy their tongues as instruments without divine authorization. The biting irony of vayyine'amu ne'um ('and they declare a declaration') is that they use the very formula ne'um YHWH ('declares the LORD') without having received any declaration from God. They mimic the authentic prophetic formula as a stamp of false authority. We rendered 'He declares!' to capture the audacity of claiming divine speech.
32. The word pachazutam ('recklessness, wantonness, boastfulness') describes the false prophets' cavalier attitude toward truth. They treat prophecy as performance rather than solemn divine commission. The triple denial — 'never sent, never commanded, no benefit' — builds to a comprehensive dismissal. The emphatic construction ho'il lo yo'ilu ('they absolutely do not benefit') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis: these prophets are utterly useless to the people they claim to serve.

33. The massa wordplay is the most difficult translation challenge in the chapter. The word simultaneously means 'oracle/utterance' (the prophetic sense, from *nasa*, 'to lift up' the voice) and 'burden/load' (the physical sense, from *nasa*, 'to carry'). We rendered it as 'burden' throughout to preserve the pun: the people ask for an 'oracle' (*massa*) and God responds that they themselves are the 'burden' (*massa*) he will cast off. The verb *natashti* ('I will cast off, abandon') extends the burden metaphor — God will drop the weight they have become.
34. God bans the use of the phrase *massa YHWH* ('the burden of the LORD') as a prophetic formula. The verb *paqadti* ('I will punish, attend to, reckon with') continues the *paqad* theme from earlier in the chapter. The punishment extends to the household (*beto*), indicating corporate consequences for individual prophetic fraud.
35. God prescribes acceptable language: instead of the loaded *massa* formula, the people should ask neutral questions — 'What has the LORD answered?' (*meh anah YHWH*) and 'What has the LORD spoken?' (*mah dibber YHWH*). These questions focus on content rather than claiming the prophetic authority that the *massa* formula implies. The replacement language is deliberately plain, stripping away the pretension that accompanied the original terminology.
36. The *massa* wordplay reaches its climax: the phrase itself is now banned because the people have corrupted it. The ironic reversal — 'each person's own word becomes his burden' — means that the false prophets' own fabricated oracles will become the weight that crushes them. The title 'the living God' (*Elohim chayyim*) contrasts sharply with the dead words of the false prophets. The verb *hafaktem* ('you have twisted, overturned, perverted') comes from the same root used for the 'overturning' of Sodom (Genesis 19:25), linking the vocabulary corruption to the Sodom comparison in verse 14.
37. The prescribed language from verse 35 is repeated specifically for addressing prophets. The instruction forces the prophet to claim direct divine communication ('answered you') rather than hiding behind the vague *massa* formula. This puts the prophet on record — he must either claim he has received a direct answer from God or fall silent.
38. The syntax becomes complex as the *massa* ban is reiterated. The conditional 'if you say' (*im...toomeru*) sets up the threat: continued use of the banned phrase after explicit prohibition constitutes defiance of a direct divine command. The sentence structure — an extended protasis awaiting its apodosis in the next verse — mirrors the building tension of the ultimatum.
39. The verb *nashiti* ('I will lift up') creates a final devastating *massa* pun: God 'lifts up' (*nasa*) the people as one lifts a burden (*massa*) — only to throw them away. The same root that gave them the prophetic word now describes their expulsion. The verb *natashti* ('I will cast off, abandon') completes the judgment. The city (Jerusalem) is included in the exile — God gave both the people and the city, and both will be removed from his presence (*me'al panay*, literally 'from before my face').
40. The closing verse pairs two synonyms for public disgrace: *cherpah* ('reproach, disgrace, taunting') and *kelimmut* ('shame, humiliation, dishonor'). Both are modified by *olam* ('everlasting, perpetual'), and the final clause 'which will not be forgotten' (*lo tishshakech*) drives home the permanence. The irony is pointed: the prophets who wanted to make the people forget God's name (v. 27) will themselves be remembered — but only for their shame. The chapter ends not with restoration but with judgment, leaving the weight of the false prophecy indictment standing.

24

Summary: *Jeremiah 24 records a vision of two baskets of figs set before the temple of the LORD after Nebuchadnezzar had deported King Jeconiah (Jehoiachin), the officials, the craftsmen, and the smiths from Jerusalem to Babylon. One basket contains very good figs, like early-ripening figs; the other contains figs so rotten they cannot be eaten. God interprets the vision: the good figs represent the exiles in Babylon, toward whom God will turn with favor, bring back to the land, and give a heart to know him. The bad figs represent King Zedekiah and those remaining in Jerusalem or fleeing to Egypt — they will be made a horror, a reproach, and a byword, pursued by sword, famine, and plague until they are consumed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This short chapter overturns the common assumption that those who remained in Jerusalem after 597 BCE were the fortunate ones and the exiles were the cursed. Jeremiah reverses this entirely: the future belongs to the deportees, not the survivors. The promise to the exiles — 'I will give them a heart to know me' (v. 7) — anticipates the new covenant language of 31:33-34, where God will write his torah on their hearts. The vision format places this chapter alongside the great visionary passages of Amos (7:1-9, 8:1-3) and Zechariah (1-6), where God shows the prophet an ordinary object and then reveals its deeper meaning. The fig baskets are not symbolic props but real agricultural produce near the temple, transformed by divine interpretation into a theological judgment on the entire nation's future.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase te'anim hashskoqadot (v. 2) posed a lexical question — we rendered it as 'early figs' since bikkurah figs ripen first and are considered the choicest (cf. Hosea 9:10, Micah 7:1). The word sha'arurah (v. 9) also appeared in 23:14 and we maintained consistency by rendering it 'horror.' The covenant promise in verse 7 — 'they will be my people and I will be their God' — is the bilateral covenant formula, and we rendered it identically to its occurrence in 11:4 and throughout the project. The phrase leqelalah ('as a curse-word') in verse 9 required care: it does not mean God curses them but that their name becomes an expression others use when pronouncing curses.*

Connections: *The deportation of Jeconiah (597 BCE) is narrated in 2 Kings 24:10-17. The vision of figs connects to the fig tree as a symbol of Israel and Judah elsewhere (Hosea 9:10, Joel 1:7, Micah 7:1). The promise 'I will give them a heart to know me' (v. 7) anticipates the new covenant of 31:31-34 and connects to Ezekiel's parallel promise of a new heart (Ezekiel 11:19, 36:26). The judgment formula of sword, famine, and plague (v. 10) is one of Jeremiah's most characteristic triads, recurring throughout the book (14:12, 21:7, 27:8, 29:17-18, 32:24, 34:17, 38:2). The fate of those who flee to Egypt anticipates the narratives of chapters 42-44, where a remnant disobeys Jeremiah and flees to Egypt despite this warning.*

¹The LORD showed me a vision: two baskets of figs placed before the temple of the LORD. This was after Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had deported Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, along with the officials of Judah, the craftsmen, and the metalworkers from Jerusalem, and brought them to Babylon. ²One basket had very good figs, like early-ripening figs, and the other basket had very bad figs — so bad they could not be eaten. ³Then the LORD said to me, 'What do you see, Jeremiah?' And I said, 'Figs. The good figs are very good, and the bad figs are very bad — too rotten to eat.' ⁴Then the word of the LORD came to me: ⁵This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: Like these good figs, so I will regard the exiles of Judah — whom I sent away from this place to the land of the Chaldeans — with favor. ⁶I will set my eyes on them for good and bring them back to this land. I will build them up and not tear them down; I will plant them and not uproot them. ⁷I will give them a heart to know me — that I am the LORD. They will be my people and I will be their God, for they will return to me with their whole heart. ⁸But like the bad figs, so bad they cannot be eaten — this is what the LORD says — so I will treat Zedekiah king of Judah, his officials, and the remnant of Jerusalem who remain in this land, as well as those living in the land of Egypt. ⁹I will make them a horror and a disaster to all the kingdoms of the earth — a disgrace, a byword, a taunt, and a curse-word in every place where I drive them. ¹⁰I will send sword, famine, and plague against them until they are consumed from the land that I gave to them and their ancestors.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The vision formula hir'ani YHWH ('the LORD showed me') establishes this as a divinely initiated vision, not a natural observation. The word dudaei ('baskets') refers to containers used for carrying fruit, likely woven. The deportation described here is the 597 BCE exile under Jehoiachin/Jeconiah (the same king under two names — Jeconiah is the shortened form). The charash ('craftsman') and masger ('metalworker, locksmith') were specifically targeted for deportation because of their military utility — Babylon stripped Jerusalem of its skilled labor force. We use 'Nebuchadnezzar' as the standard English form, though the Hebrew here reads Nevukhadretsar.
2. The comparison to bikkurot ('early-ripening figs, firstfruits') marks the good figs as premium quality. Early figs ripen in June, before the main August harvest, and were prized as a delicacy (cf. Isaiah 28:4, Hosea 9:10, Micah 7:1). The Hebrew emphasizes the extreme quality contrast with tovt me'od ('very good') and ra'ot me'od ('very bad') — there is no middle category. The phrase lo te'akhalnah mero'a ('they could not be eaten because of their rottenness') describes figs beyond salvage, a metaphor that will prove devastating in its application.
3. The question-and-answer format ('What do you see?') is the standard prophetic vision dialogue, paralleling Amos 7:8, 8:2 and Zechariah 4:2, 5:2. God asks not because he needs information but to draw the prophet into active participation in the revelation. Jeremiah's answer is deliberately plain — he reports exactly what he sees without interpretation. The interpretation belongs to God (vv. 4-10).
4. The standard prophetic reception formula marks the transition from vision to interpretation. The le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct speech, consistent with project conventions.
5. The verb akkir ('I will regard, acknowledge, recognize') means more than neutral observation — it implies favorable recognition, choosing to look upon with goodwill. The startling claim is that God himself 'sent' (shillachti) the exiles to Babylon — the deportation was not merely Nebuchadnezzar's political act but God's purposeful relocation of his people. The phrase letovah ('for good, for their benefit') reframes exile as a divine act of preservation rather than punishment. This reversal of expectations — exile as grace — is the theological core of the chapter.

6. The five divine promises cascade: (1) favorable attention, (2) return to the land, (3) building, (4) planting, and (5) permanence (the negatives 'not tear down, not uproot'). The verbs 'build' (banah) and 'plant' (nata) echo Jeremiah's original commission in 1:10, where God appointed him 'to uproot and tear down, to destroy and overthrow, to build and to plant.' Here the destructive phase gives way to the constructive. The phrase 'set my eyes on them for good' (samti eini alehem letovah) uses the intimate language of personal attention — God watching over the exiles with active benevolence.
7. This verse is the theological climax of the chapter, foreshadowing the new covenant of 31:31-34. The verb natatti ('I will give') makes the heart a divine gift, not a human achievement — God himself enables the knowing. The bilateral covenant formula 'they will be my people and I will be their God' (vehayu li le'am ve'anokhi ehyeh lahem le'lohim) appears throughout the Pentateuch and prophets as the definition of covenant relationship (Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12, Deuteronomy 26:17-18, Jeremiah 11:4, 30:22, 31:33, 32:38, Ezekiel 36:28). The verb yashuvu ('they will return') is the key Jeremiah verb shuv — the return is both physical (from exile) and spiritual (to God). The phrase bekol libbam ('with their whole heart') contrasts with the sheriut lev ('stubbornness of heart') that characterized the earlier generation.
8. The condemned group includes three categories: (1) Zedekiah and his court, (2) those remaining in Jerusalem, and (3) those who fled to Egypt. All three groups chose to avoid or escape Babylon, yet it was precisely the Babylonian exile that God designated as the path to renewal. The mention of Egypt is significant — fleeing to Egypt represents a return to the place of original bondage, a theological regression. The word she'erit ('remnant') here carries no positive connotation — unlike its usual usage as a term of hope, these are merely leftovers, not a faithful core.
9. Five terms of shame accumulate: za'avah ('horror, object of trembling'), cherpah ('disgrace, reproach'), mashal ('byword, proverb used as a cautionary tale'), sheninah ('taunt, sharp saying'), and qelalah ('curse-word' — their name becomes a formula used in cursing, as in 'May you become like Jerusalem'). The phrase sha'arurah (rendered 'horror') appeared also in 23:14 describing the false prophets of Jerusalem — the same word now describes the destiny of those who listened to them. The scope 'all the kingdoms of the earth' universalizes the disgrace.
10. The triad cherev, ra'av, dever ('sword, famine, plague') is Jeremiah's signature judgment formula, recurring more than a dozen times throughout the book (14:12, 21:7, 27:8, 29:17-18, 32:24, 34:17, 38:2, 42:17, 22, 44:13). These three represent the comprehensive destruction of war: violence, deprivation, and disease. The verb tummam ('until they are consumed, until their complete end') signals total removal, not mere suffering. The land that was given (natatti) as covenant promise now becomes the ground from which they are expelled — the gift revoked. The word adamah ('soil, ground, land') rather than erets ('land, country') emphasizes the agricultural, intimate connection between people and their particular soil, making the loss more personal.

25

Summary: *Jeremiah 25 marks a dramatic pivot in the book — from oracles directed at Judah to a vision encompassing all the nations of the earth. The chapter opens with a precise date (the fourth year of Jehoiakim, the first year of Nebuchadnezzar) and a summary of Jeremiah's twenty-three years of rejected prophetic ministry. God announces that Judah will serve Babylon for seventy years, after which Babylon itself will be judged. The second half of the chapter introduces the terrifying image of the cup of God's wrath — a goblet of wine that Jeremiah is commanded to pass to nation after nation, from Jerusalem to Egypt, Uz, Philistia, Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, Sidon, Arabia, Elam, Media, and finally Babylon ('Sheshach'). The chapter closes with an oracle of cosmic judgment: the LORD roars from on high like a lion against all flesh, and a slaughter stretches from one end of the earth to the other.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of Jeremiah's most consequential oracles. First, the seventy-year prophecy (v. 11-12) became the foundation for Daniel's prayer in Daniel 9:2 and the entire eschatological tradition of seventy weeks. The number seventy may represent a literal generation count or a symbolic period of completeness — the text does not resolve this, and we preserve the ambiguity. Second, the cup-of-wrath image (v. 15-29) is one of the most imitated metaphors in biblical literature, echoed in Isaiah 51:17, Ezekiel 23:31-34, Habakkuk 2:16, and ultimately Revelation 14:10 and 16:19. The Hebrew kos hayayin hachema ('the cup of the wine of wrath') is a three-word construct chain — cup-of-wine-of-wrath — packing divine fury into a single drinking vessel. We rendered the atbash cipher 'Sheshach' (v. 26) transparently, noting it as a coded name for Babylon. The sweeping geographic scope of verses 18-26, moving systematically through every known nation, transforms Jeremiah from a prophet of Judah into a prophet over all the earth — fulfilling the commission of 1:10, 'I have appointed you over nations and kingdoms.'*

Translation Friction: *The date formula in verse 1 required careful handling — the Hebrew gives 'the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah king of Judah; that is the first year of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.' We preserved both dating systems as the text presents them. The verb hashkem ('rising early') in verse 3 is the characteristic Jeremiah idiom for God's persistent effort; we rendered it as 'persistently' to capture the urgency without the literal English awkwardness. The word mashchit in verse 9 can mean 'destroy' or 'corrupt,' and we chose 'destroy' for the military context. The atbash cipher Sheshach () in verse 26*

encodes Babel () by substituting the first letter of the alphabet for the last, the second for the second-to-last, and so on — we retained the name and explained the cipher in a note. The phrase 'uncircumcised and circumcised alike' (v. 29, implied) in the concluding judgment required careful contextual handling.

Connections: The seventy-year prophecy (v. 11-12) is directly cited in 2 Chronicles 36:21, Ezra 1:1, and Daniel 9:2, making it one of the most cross-referenced prophecies in the Hebrew Bible. The cup-of-wrath image connects to Isaiah 51:17-22 (Jerusalem has drunk the cup; now it passes to her oppressors), Lamentations 4:21 (Edom will also drink), Ezekiel 23:31-34, and Habakkuk 2:15-16. In the New Testament, Jesus's prayer in Gethsemane — 'Let this cup pass from me' (Matthew 26:39) — draws on this prophetic tradition of the cup of divine judgment. The roaring-lion imagery in verses 30-31 connects to Amos 1:2, Joel 3:16, and Hosea 11:10. The commission to be 'a prophet to the nations' (1:5, 1:10) reaches its fullest expression in this chapter's universal scope.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the people of Judah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah — that was the first year of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon — ²which Jeremiah the prophet spoke to all the people of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem: ³From the thirteenth year of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah, to this very day — twenty-three years — the word of the LORD has come to me, and I have spoken to you persistently, but you have not listened. ⁴The LORD sent to you all his servants the prophets, sending them persistently, but you did not listen or incline your ear to hear. ⁵They said: Turn back, each of you, from your evil way and from the wickedness of your deeds, and remain on the land that the LORD gave to you and your ancestors from ancient times and into the future. ⁶Do not follow other gods to serve and bow down to them, and do not provoke me to anger with the work of your hands — then I will do you no harm. ⁷But you did not listen to me, declares the LORD, so as to provoke me to anger with the work of your hands, to your own harm. ⁸Therefore this is what the LORD of Hosts says: Because you have not listened to my words, ⁹I am about to send for and summon all the clans of the north, declares the LORD, and for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, my servant. I will bring them against this land and its inhabitants and against all these surrounding nations. I will devote them to destruction and make them an object of horror and scorn, and ruins that last through the ages. ¹⁰I will banish from them the sound of joy and the sound of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstone and the light of the lamp. ¹¹This entire land will become a ruin and a wasteland, and these nations will serve the king of Babylon for seventy years. ¹²When the seventy years are complete, I will punish the king of Babylon and that nation for their iniquity, declares the LORD, and the land of the Chaldeans, and I will make it a permanent wasteland. ¹³I will bring upon that land all my words that I have spoken against it — everything written in this scroll, which Jeremiah prophesied against all the nations. ¹⁴For many nations and great kings will also make them serve, and I will repay them according to their deeds and the work of their hands. ¹⁵For this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, said to me: Take this cup of the wine of wrath from my hand, and make all the nations to whom I send you drink from it. ¹⁶They will drink and stagger and go mad because of the sword I am sending among them. ¹⁷So I took the cup from the LORD's hand and made all the nations drink — all those to whom the LORD had sent me: ¹⁸Jerusalem and the cities of Judah, its kings and its officials — to make them a ruin, a horror, an object of scorn, and a curse, as they are this day; ¹⁹Pharaoh king of Egypt, his servants, his officials, and all his people; ²⁰all the mixed peoples; all the kings of the land of Uz; all the kings of the land of the Philistines — Ashkelon, Gaza, Ekron, and the remnant of Ashdod; ²¹Edom, Moab, and the Ammonites; ²²all the kings of Tyre, all the kings of Sidon, and the kings of the coastlands across the sea; ²³Dedan, Tema, Buz, and all who shave their temples; ²⁴all the kings of Arabia and all the kings of the mixed peoples who live in the desert; ²⁵all the kings of Zimri, all the kings of Elam, and all the kings of Media; ²⁶all the kings of the north, near and far, one after another; and all the kingdoms of the world on the face of the earth. And the king of Sheshach will drink after them all. ²⁷Say to them: This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says — Drink, get drunk, vomit, and fall down never to rise, because of the sword I am sending among you. ²⁸If they refuse to take the cup from your hand and drink, say to them: This is what the LORD of Hosts says — You will certainly drink. ²⁹For look — I am beginning to bring disaster on the city that bears my name, and should you go entirely unpunished? You will not go unpunished, for I am summoning a sword against all the inhabitants of the earth, declares the LORD of Hosts.

³⁰You will prophesy all these words against them and say to them:

The LORD roars from on high;
from his holy dwelling he thunders.
He roars fiercely against his fold;
he shouts like those who tread the grapes
against all the inhabitants of the earth.

³¹The uproar reaches to the ends of the earth,
for the LORD has a case against the nations.
He enters judgment against all flesh;
the wicked he gives over to the sword,
declares the LORD.

³²This is what the LORD of Hosts says:
Disaster is spreading from nation to nation;
a great storm is stirring from the farthest corners of the earth.

³³The slain of the LORD on that day will stretch from one end of the earth to the other. They will not be mourned, they will not be gathered, they will not be buried — they will be like dung on the surface of the ground.

³⁴Wail, you shepherds, and cry out!
Roll in the dust, you lords of the flock!
For your time for slaughter has come;
you will be shattered like a prized vessel.

³⁵There will be no escape for the shepherds,
no way out for the lords of the flock.

³⁶The sound of the shepherds' cry,
the wailing of the lords of the flock!
For the LORD is destroying their pasture.

³⁷The peaceful meadows are silenced
because of the burning anger of the LORD.

³⁸He has left his lair like a young lion,
for their land has become a desolation
because of the raging sword
and because of his burning anger.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The dual dating formula synchronizes Judah's calendar with Babylon's, placing this oracle at approximately 605 BCE. This is the year of the Battle of Carchemish, when Nebuchadnezzar defeated Egypt and established Babylonian dominance over the entire region. The Hebrew uses 'Nevukhadretsar,' a closer transliteration of the Akkadian Nabû-kudurri-ušur; we use the conventional English 'Nebuchadnezzar.'
2. The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') functions as a speech-introduction marker and is rendered as a colon. The address is to 'all the people' — this is a public oracle, not a private word to the king or the priests.
3. The thirteen years of Josiah correspond to 627/626 BCE, the traditional date of Jeremiah's call (1:2). Twenty-three years of prophetic ministry had produced no repentance. The idiom hashkem vedabber ('rising early and speaking') is the characteristic Jeremiah expression for persistent, tireless effort — we render it as 'persistently' rather than the literally awkward 'rising early and speaking,' consistent with our rendering in 7:13 and 11:7.

4. Again the hashkem idiom, now applied to God sending prophets. The double refusal — 'did not listen' (lo shema'tem) and 'did not incline your ear' (lo hittitem et-oznekhem) — represents a willful refusal at every level: they neither heard the message nor positioned themselves to receive it.
5. The verb shuv ('turn back, return') is Jeremiah's central term for repentance — a spatial metaphor of returning to where one belongs. The phrase min-olam ve'ad-olam ('from eternity to eternity') describes the intended permanence of the land grant; we render olam as 'ancient times' and 'into the future' to capture the Hebrew sense of time stretching beyond view in both directions, rather than the philosophically loaded 'forever and ever.'
6. The phrase 'work of your hands' (ma'aseh yedeikhem) is double-edged — it refers both to the idols they have manufactured and to the deeds of idolatry they have performed. The conditional structure is implicit in the Hebrew: the promise of 'no harm' is contingent on obedience.
7. The Hebrew lema'an ('so as to, in order that') creates a jarring purpose clause — their refusal to listen functioned as if its purpose were to provoke God. Whether this implies deliberate intent or describes the inevitable result of their actions is ambiguous in the Hebrew; we preserve the ambiguity. Ne'um YHWH is rendered with the locked formula 'declares the LORD.'
8. The title YHWH tseva'ot ('LORD of Hosts') invokes God as commander of heavenly armies — the military epithet appropriate to the announcement of invasion that follows. The shift from ne'um YHWH (v. 7) to koh amar YHWH tseva'ot signals an escalation in divine authority.
9. Hinneni ('look, I am about to') signals imminent divine action. The designation avdi ('my servant') for Nebuchadnezzar is extraordinary — the same title given to Moses, David, and the prophets is here applied to a foreign conqueror. The verb hacharamtim ('devote to destruction') is cherem vocabulary — total consecration to destruction, the same verb used for the conquest of Canaan. The three-fold result — shammah (horror), shreqah (hissing/scorn), charvot olam (perpetual ruins) — is a standard Jeremianic curse formula.
10. This verse catalogs the sounds and sights of normal life that will cease — celebration (joy, gladness), domestic life (bride, bridegroom), daily labor (millstone grinding), and basic illumination (lamp). The six items progress from festive to mundane, showing that everything from weddings to the grinding of daily grain will stop. This formula recurs in 7:34, 16:9, and 33:11, and is echoed in Revelation 18:22-23 describing Babylon's fall.
11. The phrase shiv'im shanah ('seventy years') appears here and in verse 12. The number generates debate: it may refer to the period from 605 (Nebuchadnezzar's first campaign) to 539 BCE (Cyrus's conquest of Babylon), roughly sixty-six years; or from 586 (temple destruction) to 516 (temple rededication), exactly seventy years. The text itself simply states the number without resolving the calculation. We preserve the number without interpretive comment in the rendering itself.
12. The verb paqad ('visit, attend to, punish') here means to call to account — God will 'visit' Babylon's guilt upon it. The term avon ('iniquity') implies accumulated guilt, not a single offense. The judgment on Babylon is framed as symmetrical justice — the instrument of punishment will itself be punished. The 'land of the Chaldeans' (erets kasdim) identifies Babylon by its ethnic-geographic name.
13. The reference to 'this scroll' (ha-sefer ha-zeh) is a rare self-referential moment in prophetic literature. It likely refers to an earlier collection of Jeremiah's oracles against the nations (chapters 46-51), which may have originally been placed here in some textual traditions. The Septuagint (LXX) actually positions the oracles against the nations after 25:13, confirming that different arrangements of Jeremiah circulated in antiquity. We render sefer as 'scroll' rather than 'book' to reflect the physical medium of the seventh century BCE.
14. The verse describes a chain of domination — Babylon enslaved nations, and in turn other nations and kings will enslave Babylon. The verb shillam ('repay, recompense') carries the sense of completing a transaction, settling a debt. The principle of symmetrical justice — the oppressor experiencing what it inflicted — runs through the prophetic tradition (cf. Obadiah 15).
15. The kos hayayin hachema ('cup of the wine of wrath') is a compound construct chain — literally 'cup-of wine-of wrath.' The image combines intoxication with divine fury: the nations will stagger and reel not from alcohol but from the overwhelming force of God's judgment. This cup-of-wrath image is foundational to the biblical tradition, echoed in Isaiah 51:17, Ezekiel 23:31-34, Habakkuk 2:16, and Revelation 14:10.
16. Three verbs describe the effect of the cup: shatu ('they will drink'), hitgo'ashu ('they will stagger/reel'), and hitholalu ('they will go mad'). The progression moves from drinking to physical disorientation to mental collapse. The sword (cherev) is the instrument — the cup is the metaphor for the experience of judgment; the sword is the literal reality behind it.
17. Jeremiah's compliance is immediate — no protest, no intercession. The prophetic act is described as if Jeremiah physically traveled to each nation with the cup, though this is visionary rather than literal. The verb va'ashqeh ('I made them drink') uses the causative stem — the nations do not drink voluntarily.
18. Jerusalem heads the list — judgment begins with God's own people (cf. 1 Peter 4:17). The four-fold curse formula — chorbah (ruin), shammah (horror), shreqah (scorn/hissing), qelalah (curse) — is a standard Jeremianic judgment formula. The phrase 'as they are this day' (ka-yom ha-zeh) indicates the prophecy is being recorded after the fall of Jerusalem, placing the editorial frame in the exilic or post-exilic period.
19. Egypt is listed first among the foreign nations because it was Judah's traditional ally and the power Judah foolishly relied on instead of trusting God (cf. 2:18, 37:5-7). The comprehensiveness — servants, officials, all his people — indicates that no level of Egyptian society escapes judgment.
20. The ha'erev ('mixed peoples') likely refers to diverse populations living in frontier or border regions — possibly mercenary groups or mixed ethnic communities. The land of Uz is traditionally associated with the setting of Job (Job 1:1), located in the region east of Palestine. The four Philistine cities named here omit Gath, which had already been destroyed by the time of this oracle. The 'remnant of Ashdod' (she'erit Ashdod) suggests that Ashdod had already suffered significant destruction, possibly by the Assyrians in 711 BCE.

21. These three nations east and southeast of Judah were traditionally connected to Israel through ancestral kinship — Edom through Esau (Genesis 36), Moab and Ammon through Lot (Genesis 19:36-38). Their inclusion in the judgment is particularly pointed: not even blood relatives escape God's reckoning.
22. Tyre and Sidon were the great Phoenician maritime powers. The 'coastlands across the sea' (ha'i asher be'ever hayam) refers to the Mediterranean islands and coastal settlements — possibly Cyprus, Crete, and other Phoenician colonies. The scope of judgment is expanding outward from Jerusalem in concentric circles.
23. Dedan, Tema, and Buz are Arabian tribes. The phrase qetsutsai fe'ah ('those who shave their temples') refers to a distinctive haircut practice of certain Arabian desert peoples — shaving or cropping the hair at the corners of the head. This practice is mentioned in 9:25 and 49:32 and was forbidden for Israelites (Leviticus 19:27).
24. The repetition of ha'erev ('mixed peoples,' cf. v. 20) alongside Arav ('Arabia') creates a wordplay — the similar-sounding words link the concept of ethnic mixing with the Arabian desert region. These are the semi-nomadic populations of the Arabian peninsula and the Syrian-Arabian desert.
25. Zimri is an otherwise unidentified kingdom, possibly in the Arabian or eastern region. Elam (modern southwestern Iran) and Media (modern northwestern Iran) represent the far eastern reaches of the known world. The inclusion of Media is significant — the Medes would later ally with Babylon under Cyrus to create the Persian Empire that would conquer Babylon itself.
26. Sheshach () is an atbash cipher for Babel (). Atbash substitutes the first letter of the Hebrew alphabet for the last, the second for the second-to-last, and so on: shin () replaces bet (), and kaph () replaces lamed (). Babylon drinks last — the instrument of judgment becomes the final object of judgment. The coded name may reflect either literary artistry or political caution in naming the reigning superpower directly. The phrase 'all the kingdoms of the world on the face of the earth' makes the scope unmistakably universal.
27. Four brutal imperatives — shetu ('drink'), shikru ('get drunk'), qi'u ('vomit'), niplu ('fall') — escalate from consumption to collapse. The physical effects of severe intoxication serve as a metaphor for the overwhelming nature of divine judgment. The command lo taqumu ('you will not rise') transforms the drinking metaphor into a death sentence — they will fall and never stand again.
28. The emphatic infinitive absolute shato tishtu ('drinking, you will drink') removes any possibility of refusal. The nations cannot opt out of God's judgment. The absolute certainty expressed by the Hebrew construction leaves no room for negotiation — this is not an offer but a decree.
29. The argument is from greater to lesser: if God punishes his own city — the one that 'bears his name' (niqra shemi aleha, lit. 'my name is called over it') — how much less will the nations escape? The phrase niqra shemi conveys ownership and patronage; Jerusalem belongs to God, and even belonging to God does not exempt it from judgment for covenant violation. The rhetorical question hinnageh tinnaqu ('will you be completely acquitted?') expects a negative answer, reinforced by the emphatic lo tinnaqu ('you will not be acquitted').
30. The text shifts from prose to poetry at this point. The verb sha'ag ('roar') is lion imagery — God is a roaring lion against the earth (cf. Amos 1:2, Hosea 11:10, Joel 3:16). The word naveh can mean both 'dwelling' and 'pasture/fold,' creating an ambiguity: God roars from his dwelling (heaven) against his fold (his people/the earth). The grape-treaders' shout (hedad) was a rhythmic cry used during harvest — here it becomes the war cry of divine judgment, turning the joyful harvest image into a scene of slaughter.
31. The word riv ('case, controversy, legal dispute') frames God's judgment as a lawsuit — a formal legal proceeding against the nations. This is the covenant lawsuit (riv) genre familiar from Micah 6:1-2 and Hosea 4:1. The verb nishpat ('enters judgment') reinforces the legal metaphor. God is both plaintiff and judge in this cosmic court.
32. The word se'ar ('storm, tempest, whirlwind') depicts God's judgment as a massive weather event sweeping across the entire world. The phrase yarketei-arets ('farthest corners of the earth') indicates the storm comes from the remote edges of the known world — from where one cannot see what is coming until it arrives. The disaster is not localized but cascading — migoi el goi ('from nation to nation') — like a chain reaction.
33. Chalelei YHWH ('the slain of the LORD') attributes the killing directly to God — these are not casualties of war but executions of divine judgment. The three negated verbs — lo yissafdu (not mourned), lo ye'asfu (not gathered), lo yiqqaveru (not buried) — deny the dead every dignity. Lack of burial was the ultimate horror in the ancient Near East; the body exposed as dung (domen) represents absolute debasement.
34. The 'shepherds' (ro'im) are rulers and leaders, and the 'lords of the flock' (addirei hatson) are the elite among them. The verb hitpalleshu ('roll in the dust') describes extreme mourning — throwing oneself on the ground and rolling in ashes or dirt. The simile 'like a prized vessel' (kikheli chemdah) compares their destruction to the shattering of an expensive ceramic piece — beautiful, valuable, and irreparably broken. Some manuscripts read utfutsoteikhem ('your dispersions') while others read utfutsoteikhem as 'your scatterings' — both indicate the leaders will be scattered like fragments.
35. The Hebrew expresses this as the 'perishing' (avad) of flight — escape itself has been destroyed. The parallel structure — manos (flight/refuge) for the shepherds, peleitah (escape) for the lords — reinforces the total closure of all exit routes for the ruling class.
36. The subject of the destruction is explicit — YHWH shoded ('the LORD destroys'). The word mar'it ('pasture') continues the shepherd-flock metaphor: the pasture is the kingdom, and God himself is laying waste to it. The reversal is complete: the shepherd God who 'makes me lie down in green pastures' (Psalm 23:2) is now the God who destroys the pasture.
37. The phrase ne'ot hashalom ('meadows of peace/the peaceful meadows') uses shalom in its fullest sense — these are places of wholeness, flourishing, well-being, now silenced. The verb nadamu ('are silenced, are devastated') carries both meanings — literal silence (the sounds of life cease) and destruction (they are laid waste). The cause is charon af YHWH ('burning anger of the LORD') — the fierceness of God's fury.

38. The subject 'he' most likely refers to God, who has emerged from his dwelling like a young lion (kefir) leaving its thicket to hunt. The word hayonah is textually difficult — it may derive from yanah ('to oppress,' hence 'the oppressor/oppressing sword') or may be an unusual form related to cherev ('sword'). The Septuagint reads 'the sword' and many modern translations follow this. We render 'raging sword' to capture the sense of violent instrument while acknowledging the textual difficulty. The final phrase charon appo ('his burning anger') confirms that the devastation flows from God's wrath.

26

Summary: *Jeremiah 26 narrates the immediate aftermath of the Temple Sermon — the most dangerous moment in Jeremiah's prophetic career. At the beginning of Jehoiakim's reign, God commands Jeremiah to stand in the temple courtyard and warn that if Judah does not repent, God will make the temple like Shiloh — the former sanctuary destroyed centuries earlier. The priests and prophets seize Jeremiah and demand his execution for blasphemy against the temple. But the officials and the people intervene, and Jeremiah defends himself with a simple claim: the LORD sent him. The elders then cite the precedent of Micah of Moresheth, who prophesied Jerusalem's destruction under King Hezekiah, and Hezekiah did not kill him but repented. This precedent saves Jeremiah's life. The chapter closes with the counter-example of Uriah son of Shemaiah, who preached the same message but was hunted down in Egypt and executed by Jehoiakim — demonstrating what Jeremiah narrowly escaped.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of the finest examples of courtroom narrative in the Hebrew Bible. The legal proceedings follow a recognizable structure: accusation (v. 8-9, by priests and prophets), defense (v. 12-15, by Jeremiah), verdict (v. 16, by officials and people), and precedent citation (v. 17-19, by elders). The split between the religious establishment (priests and prophets demanding death) and the civil establishment (officials protecting Jeremiah) is a recurring pattern in the book — the institutional religion has become Jeremiah's enemy while secular officials sometimes prove more just. The Micah citation in verse 18 is remarkable: it quotes Micah 3:12 almost verbatim, providing one of the clearest examples of inner-biblical quotation and proving that prophetic texts were being preserved and cited as authoritative within a century of their composition. The Uriah episode (v. 20-23) is included precisely because it shows what normally happened to prophets who challenged the establishment — Jeremiah's survival was the exception, not the rule. We rendered Ahikam son of Shaphan's protection (v. 24) as the decisive factor, noting that the Shaphan family appears repeatedly in Jeremiah as allies of the prophet and of reform.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ka'asher dibbarta be'ozneinu ('as you have spoken in our hearing,' v. 11) required care — the priests are making Jeremiah's own words the basis of the capital charge. The word mishpat mavet ('a sentence of death,' v. 11) is literally 'a judgment of death' — we rendered it as 'deserves the death sentence' to capture the legal force. The Micah quotation (v. 18) presented a translation consistency challenge: our rendering of Micah 3:12, if we had already translated Micah, would need to match; since Micah has not yet been generated, we rendered from the Hebrew as it appears here in Jeremiah and will ensure consistency when we reach Micah. The phrase chalah et-penei YHWH ('entreated the face of the LORD,' v. 19) is an idiom for seeking God's favor; we rendered it as 'sought the favor of the LORD.'*

Connections: *The Temple Sermon itself is given in full in chapter 7; chapter 26 narrates the consequences of that sermon. The Shiloh reference (v. 6, 9) connects to 7:12-14, 1 Samuel 4, and Psalm 78:60 — Shiloh was the pre-Jerusalem sanctuary destroyed by the Philistines, and its ruins were a visible warning in Jeremiah's day. The Micah quotation (v. 18 = Micah 3:12) is one of the most important examples of prophetic intertextuality in the Hebrew Bible. Ahikam son of Shaphan (v. 24) connects to 2 Kings 22:12-14, where Shaphan's family was involved in Josiah's reform; his son Gedaliah will later be appointed governor by Babylon (39:14, 40:5-41:3). The Uriah episode (v. 20-23) anticipates Jehoiakim's hostility toward prophetic scrolls (chapter 36). Jesus's trial before the Sanhedrin (Matthew 26:59-66) echoes this chapter's pattern of religious leaders bringing false charges against a prophet.*

- ¹At the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, this word came from the LORD: ²This is what the LORD says: Stand in the courtyard of the house of the LORD and speak to all the people of the cities of Judah who come to worship in the house of the LORD — all the words I have commanded you to speak to them. Do not hold back a single word. ³Perhaps they will listen and each turn back from his evil way, and I will relent of the disaster I am planning to bring on

them because of the wickedness of their deeds. ⁴Say to them: This is what the LORD says — If you will not listen to me by walking in my instruction that I have set before you, ⁵and by heeding the words of my servants the prophets, whom I have sent to you persistently — though you have not listened — ⁶then I will make this house like Shiloh, and I will make this city a curse among all the nations of the earth. ⁷The priests and the prophets and all the people heard Jeremiah speaking these words in the house of the LORD. ⁸When Jeremiah had finished speaking everything the LORD had commanded him to speak to all the people, the priests and the prophets and all the people seized him, saying, "You must die!" ⁹"Why have you prophesied in the name of the LORD, saying, 'This house will become like Shiloh, and this city will be desolate, without inhabitant'?" And all the people crowded around Jeremiah in the house of the LORD. ¹⁰When the officials of Judah heard about these events, they came up from the royal palace to the house of the LORD and took their seats at the entrance of the New Gate of the LORD's house. ¹¹The priests and the prophets said to the officials and all the people, "This man deserves the death sentence, because he has prophesied against this city, as you have heard with your own ears." ¹²Then Jeremiah said to all the officials and all the people: "The LORD sent me to prophesy against this house and against this city all the words you have heard. ¹³Now therefore, reform your ways and your deeds, and obey the voice of the LORD your God, and the LORD will relent of the disaster he has pronounced against you. ¹⁴As for me — I am in your hands. Do with me whatever you consider right and just. ¹⁵But know this with certainty: if you put me to death, you will bring innocent blood upon yourselves and upon this city and its inhabitants, for in truth the LORD sent me to you to speak all these words in your hearing." ¹⁶Then the officials and all the people said to the priests and the prophets, "This man does not deserve the death sentence, for he has spoken to us in the name of the LORD our God." ¹⁷Then some of the elders of the land stood up and addressed the whole assembly of the people:

¹⁸"Micah of Moresheth prophesied in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah and said to all the people of Judah: This is what the LORD of Hosts says —

Zion will be plowed like a field,
Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble,
and the temple mount will become a wooded ridge."

¹⁹Did Hezekiah king of Judah and all Judah put him to death? Did he not fear the LORD and seek the favor of the LORD, so that the LORD relented of the disaster he had pronounced against them? But we are about to bring great disaster on ourselves! ²⁰There was also a man who prophesied in the name of the LORD — Uriah son of Shemaiah, from Kiriath-jearim — who prophesied against this city and this land in words just like Jeremiah's. ²¹When King Jehoiakim and all his warriors and all the officials heard his words, the king sought to put him to death. But Uriah heard of it and was afraid, and he fled to Egypt. ²²King Jehoiakim sent men to Egypt — Elnathan son of Achbor and men with him — to Egypt. ²³They brought Uriah out of Egypt and took him to King Jehoiakim, who struck him down with the sword and threw his body into the burial ground of the common people. ²⁴But the hand of Ahikam son of Shaphan was with Jeremiah, so that he was not handed over to the people to be put to death.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula places this event at the start of Jehoiakim's reign (approximately 609 BCE), shortly after Josiah's death at Megiddo. Jehoiakim was installed by Pharaoh Necho after deposing Josiah's son Jehoahaz (2 Kings 23:34), making him a vassal king dependent on Egypt — a political context that shaped his hostility toward prophets predicting Babylonian dominance.
2. The command *al tigma davar* ('do not diminish a word') is critical — God forbids Jeremiah from softening, editing, or abbreviating the message. The same prohibition appears in Deuteronomy 4:2 and 12:32 regarding the Torah. The setting — the temple courtyard — is deliberately provocative: Jeremiah will denounce the temple inside the temple complex, before an audience of worshipers from across Judah.
3. The word *ulai* ('perhaps') is remarkable — God holds open the possibility of repentance without guaranteeing it. The verb *nichamti* ('I will relent') describes God changing his intended course of action in response to human repentance — the same theological concept as Jonah 3:10. This is not divine uncertainty but genuine openness to a changed outcome if the people change their behavior. The word *ra'ah* appears three times in this verse with different nuances: *darkko hara'ah* ('his evil way'), *hara'ah* ('the disaster'), and *ro'a ma'aleleihem* ('the wickedness of their deeds').

4. The word *torah* is rendered 'instruction' here rather than 'law' to capture the Hebrew sense of teaching and guidance rather than mere legal code. The phrase 'set before you' (*natatti lifneikhem*) echoes the Deuteronomic choice formula (Deuteronomy 30:15, 19) — God places the instruction in front of them; the choice to follow it is theirs.
5. The *hashkem* idiom ('rising early and sending') appears again as Jeremiah's characteristic expression for God's persistent effort to reach his people through the prophets. The parenthetical admission — 'though you have not listened' — is devastating: God acknowledges that the sending has been futile, yet the demand to listen remains.
6. Shiloh was the central sanctuary of Israel before Jerusalem, where the Ark of the Covenant resided during the period of the Judges (Joshua 18:1, 1 Samuel 1-4). It was destroyed, probably by the Philistines after the battle of Ebenezer (1 Samuel 4), and its ruins were a visible warning in Jeremiah's day (see Psalm 78:60, Jeremiah 7:12-14). The threat to make the temple 'like Shiloh' directly challenges the popular theology of temple inviolability — the belief that God would never allow his own house to be destroyed.
7. Three groups hear the sermon: priests (*kohanim*), prophets (*nevi'im*), and all the people (*kol ha'am*). By the end of the chapter, these groups will be on opposite sides — the priests and prophets demanding death, the officials and people acquitting Jeremiah. The seeds of that division are planted here.
8. The verb *yitpesu* ('they seized') indicates a physical arrest, not merely verbal opposition. The death sentence *mot tamut* ('dying you will die') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute — an irrevocable verdict pronounced on the spot, the same formula used in Genesis 2:17 ('you will certainly die'). The phrase 'everything the LORD had commanded him' emphasizes that Jeremiah held nothing back, obeying the instruction of verse 2.
9. The accusation centers on prophesying 'in the name of the LORD' (*bashem YHWH*) — they do not dispute that Jeremiah claims divine authority; they dispute the content of his message. The phrase 'like Shiloh' is the specific trigger: predicting the temple's destruction was tantamount to blasphemy in popular theology. The verb *yiqqahel* ('assembled, crowded together') has a hostile connotation here — this is a mob forming, not a congregation gathering.
10. The *sarei Yehudah* ('officials of Judah') are the civil magistrates, distinct from the religious establishment. They 'came up' (*ya'alu*) from the palace to the temple — the palace was lower in elevation than the temple mount. Their 'sitting' (*yeshvu*) at the gate is a judicial act — sitting in the gate was the formal posture for hearing legal cases (cf. Ruth 4:1, Amos 5:15). They constitute themselves as a court.
11. The phrase *mishpat mavet* ('judgment of death') is a formal legal charge demanding capital punishment. The prosecutors are the priests and prophets — the religious establishment. The accusation is not that Jeremiah lied but that he 'prophesied against this city' (*nibba el ha'ir hazot*) — the content, not the authority, is the offense. The appeal to the audience — 'as you have heard with your own ears' (*ka'asher shema'tem be'ozneikhem*) — treats the audience as witnesses for the prosecution.
12. Jeremiah's defense is strikingly simple — he does not retract, soften, or explain away his words. His sole defense is divine commission: *YHWH shelachani* ('the LORD sent me'). The claim to be divinely sent is either his complete vindication or his complete condemnation — if true, killing him is rebellion against God; if false, he deserves death as a false prophet (Deuteronomy 18:20).
13. Even on trial for his life, Jeremiah continues to preach repentance rather than plead for his own safety. The verb *heitivu* ('make good, improve, reform') calls for genuine change, not mere remorse. The promise that God will 'relent' (*yinnachem*) of the disaster repeats the theology of verse 3 — divine judgment is conditional, not fatalistic.
14. Jeremiah's surrender is total: *hineni beyedkhem* ('I am in your hands'). He does not resist, flee, or bargain. The phrase *ka-tov ve-ka-yashar be'eineikhem* ('as seems good and right in your eyes') leaves the decision entirely to the court — but the words 'right' (*yashar*) and 'good' (*tov*) carry moral weight, implicitly challenging them to act justly.
15. The emphatic *yadoa ted'u* ('knowing, you will know') uses the infinitive absolute to stress absolute certainty. The phrase *dam naqi* ('innocent blood') invokes the most severe category of guilt in Israelite law — the shedding of innocent blood pollutes the land and brings collective guilt (cf. Deuteronomy 19:10, 2 Kings 21:16, 24:4). Jeremiah's warning transforms the trial: if they execute him, the crime shifts from his prophesying to their murder.
16. The verdict is a complete reversal: the officials and people acquit Jeremiah using the same legal phrase (*mishpat mavet*) the prosecutors used in verse 11, but negated — *ein la'ish hazeh mishpat mavet* ('there is no death sentence for this man'). The decisive factor is the divine name: *bashem YHWH Eloheinu dibber eleinu* ('in the name of the LORD our God he spoke to us'). They accept Jeremiah's claim to divine commission. The alignment has shifted — officials and people against priests and prophets.
17. The *ziqunei ha'arets* ('elders of the land') are a distinct group from the officials (*sarim*) — they represent the traditional authority of the tribal and family leadership, the repository of communal memory and precedent. Their standing to speak (*yaqumu*) indicates they have legal standing in the proceedings.
18. This is a near-verbatim quotation of Micah 3:12, one of the most significant examples of inner-biblical citation. The elders quote a century-old prophecy from memory, proving that prophetic oracles were being preserved and treated as authoritative precedent. Micah of Moresheth (a town southwest of Jerusalem) prophesied during Hezekiah's reign (c. 715-686 BCE). The three parallel predictions — Zion plowed, Jerusalem ruined, temple mount overgrown — describe total destruction of the religious center. The word *bamot ya'ar* ('high places of a forest') suggests the temple mount reverting to wild woodland. The argument is legal precedent: Micah said worse things than Jeremiah, and Hezekiah did not execute him.

19. The elders' argument is two-fold: (1) Hezekiah heard a worse prophecy and responded with repentance rather than execution, and God relented; (2) if we kill Jeremiah, we will bring 'great disaster on ourselves' (ra'ah gedolah al nafshotenu). The verb *chalah et-penei YHWH* ('sought the face/favor of the LORD') describes earnest, humble petition — Hezekiah's response to the prophet was prayer, not persecution. The verb *yinnachem* ('relented') is the same used in verse 3 and verse 13, creating a theological frame: God relents when people repent; killing the prophet prevents repentance and guarantees disaster.
20. The Uriah episode (vv. 20-23) functions as a counter-example showing what typically happened to prophets who challenged the establishment. Kiriath-jearim was a city northwest of Jerusalem, where the Ark of the Covenant had been housed before David brought it to Jerusalem (1 Samuel 7:1-2, 2 Samuel 6:2). The phrase *kekhol divrei Yirmeyahu* ('according to all the words of Jeremiah') establishes that Uriah's message was identical to Jeremiah's — yet their fates diverged dramatically.
21. Jehoiakim's response to Uriah contrasts sharply with Hezekiah's response to Micah (v. 19). Where Hezekiah feared God and sought his favor, Jehoiakim fears nothing and seeks the prophet's death. The word *gibborim* ('warriors, mighty men') suggests Jehoiakim deployed military force against a prophet — a gross misuse of royal power. Uriah's flight to Egypt is ironic given Jeremiah's consistent warnings against relying on Egypt for protection.
22. Elnathan son of Achbor was a high-ranking official; his father Achbor had served under Josiah (2 Kings 22:12, 14). Elnathan may be the same official who later urged Jehoiakim not to burn Jeremiah's scroll (36:25), suggesting a complex figure who obeyed the king's orders here but later showed more conscience. The repetition of 'to Egypt' (el Mitsrayim) at the end emphasizes the extraordinary length Jehoiakim went to — sending an extradition party to a foreign country to retrieve a prophet.
23. The execution is described with cold brevity — *vayakkehu ba-cheret* ('he struck him with the sword'). The final indignity is the disposal of his body: *va-yashlekh et-nivlato el-qivrei benei ha'am* ('he threw his corpse into the burial ground of the common people'). In Israelite culture, a prophet deserved honorable burial; throwing his body (nivlah, 'corpse, carcass' — the same word used for animal carcasses) into the commoners' graves was a deliberate act of posthumous shaming.
24. Ahikam son of Shaphan was part of the reform-minded family that had supported Josiah's religious renewal — his father Shaphan was the scribe who read the discovered scroll of the Torah to Josiah (2 Kings 22:8-10), and Ahikam himself was part of the delegation sent to consult Huldah the prophetess (2 Kings 22:12-14). His son Gedaliah would later become the governor appointed by Babylon after Jerusalem's fall (2 Kings 25:22, Jeremiah 39:14, 40:5-6). The 'hand' (yad) of Ahikam represents his political influence and personal protection — he shielded Jeremiah with his authority.

27

Summary: *Jeremiah 27 opens with God commanding the prophet to fashion a yoke of straps and bars and place it on his own neck — a sign-act dramatizing subjection to Babylon. Through envoys visiting Jerusalem, Jeremiah sends word to the kings of Edom, Moab, Ammon, Tyre, and Sidon: submit to Nebuchadnezzar, the servant God has appointed over the nations, or face sword, famine, and plague. Jeremiah then turns to Zedekiah and the priests of Judah with the same message, directly countering the false prophets who promise that the Temple vessels seized by Babylon will be returned shortly. The chapter closes with Jeremiah's challenge: if these prophets truly speak for God, let them intercede that the remaining vessels not be carried away.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents one of Jeremiah's most provocative sign-acts: the prophet wearing an ox yoke through the streets and diplomatic corridors of Jerusalem. The political audacity is staggering — Jeremiah is telling allied foreign kings, through their own ambassadors, to surrender to Babylon. He calls Nebuchadnezzar 'my servant' (avdi, v. 6), applying a term of covenant honor to a pagan emperor. The verb *avad* ('to serve') creates a theological wordplay throughout: the nations must 'serve' Nebuchadnezzar because God has designated him as 'my servant.' The false prophets' claim that the Temple vessels will return 'soon' (v. 16) directly contradicts Jeremiah's insistence that more vessels will be taken. The stakes are not merely theological but geopolitical — Jeremiah is accused of treason precisely because his prophecy aligns with Babylonian interests.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter superscription (v. 1) reads 'Jehoiakim' in the Masoretic Text but the context clearly describes Zedekiah's reign (v. 3, 12). Most scholars regard this as a scribal error or redactional artifact; we rendered the text as it stands and noted the discrepancy. The term *moseroth* ('straps, bonds') in verse 2 is debated — it could refer to leather thongs binding the yoke-bars together or to the yoke apparatus as a whole. We rendered it as 'straps and crossbars' to convey both components. The phrase 'until I have consumed them by his hand' (v. 8) uses the verb *tamam* in a way that could mean 'complete' or*

'consume/destroy,' and we chose 'destroyed' to match the threatening context. The false prophets' promise in verse 16 uses the word meherah ('quickly, soon'), which we rendered as 'soon' to preserve the temporal contrast with Jeremiah's longer timeline.

Connections: The yoke sign-act connects directly to chapter 28, where Hananiah breaks the yoke and Jeremiah responds with the iron-yoke oracle. Nebuchadnezzar as God's 'servant' (avdi) echoes 25:9 and 43:10 — a title otherwise reserved for patriarchs, Moses, David, and the prophets. The false prophets' message about the Temple vessels connects to 2 Kings 24:13 and 25:13-17, where the full removal is documented historically. The command to 'serve the king of Babylon and live' anticipates Jeremiah's counsel to Zedekiah in 38:17-18. The theological claim that God gives sovereignty to whomever he wills (v. 5) parallels Daniel 2:21 and 4:17.

¹At the beginning of the reign of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, this word came to Jeremiah from the LORD: ²This is what the LORD said to me: Make yourself straps and crossbars, and place them on your neck. ³Then send them to the king of Edom, the king of Moab, the king of the Ammonites, the king of Tyre, and the king of Sidon — through the envoys who have come to Jerusalem to Zedekiah king of Judah. ⁴Charge them with a message for their masters: This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says — this is what you are to say to your masters: ⁵I made the earth, the people and the animals on the face of the earth, by my great power and my outstretched arm, and I give it to whomever I see fit. ⁶Now I have given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, my servant. Even the wild animals I have given him to serve him. ⁷All nations will serve him, and his son, and his grandson, until the appointed time for his own land arrives. Then many nations and great kings will make him serve them. ⁸Any nation or kingdom that will not serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon — that will not put its neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon — I will punish that nation with sword, famine, and plague, declares the LORD, until I have destroyed them by his hand. ⁹So do not listen to your prophets, your diviners, your dream interpreters, your soothsayers, or your sorcerers who say to you, 'You will not serve the king of Babylon.' ¹⁰For they are prophesying falsehood to you, with the result that you will be driven far from your land — I will banish you, and you will perish. ¹¹But the nation that puts its neck under the yoke of the king of Babylon and serves him — I will let it remain on its own soil, declares the LORD, and it will farm it and dwell on it. ¹²To Zedekiah king of Judah I spoke this same message: Put your necks under the yoke of the king of Babylon — serve him and his people, and you will live. ¹³Why should you and your people die by sword, famine, and plague, as the LORD has declared against any nation that will not serve the king of Babylon? ¹⁴Do not listen to the words of the prophets who say to you, 'You will not serve the king of Babylon,' for they are prophesying falsehood to you. ¹⁵For I did not send them, declares the LORD, yet they prophesy in my name with falsehood — so that I will banish you, and you will perish, both you and the prophets who prophesy to you. ¹⁶To the priests and to all this people I spoke, saying: This is what the LORD says — do not listen to the words of your prophets who prophesy to you, saying, 'Look, the vessels of the house of the LORD will be brought back from Babylon soon.' For they are prophesying falsehood to you. ¹⁷Do not listen to them. Serve the king of Babylon and live. Why should this city become a ruin? ¹⁸But if they are truly prophets and if the word of the LORD is with them, let them intercede with the LORD of Hosts so that the vessels still remaining in the house of the LORD, in the palace of the king of Judah, and in Jerusalem are not taken to Babylon. ¹⁹For this is what the LORD of Hosts says concerning the pillars, the sea, the stands, and the rest of the vessels remaining in this city — ²⁰which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon did not take when he deported Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, from Jerusalem to Babylon, along with all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem — ²¹For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says concerning the vessels remaining in the house of the LORD, in the palace of the king of Judah, and in Jerusalem: ²²To Babylon they will be taken, and there they will remain until the day I attend to them, declares the LORD. Then I will bring them up and restore them to this place.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Masoretic Text reads 'Jehoiakim' (yehoyaqim), but the events described in this chapter clearly occur during Zedekiah's reign (v. 3, 12). Several Hebrew manuscripts and the Syriac Peshitta read 'Zedekiah' here. Most scholars consider this a scribal error, possibly caused by confusion with the superscription of chapter 26. We render the Masoretic Text as it stands and note the discrepancy.

1. Le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing the direct divine speech that follows.
2. The nouns *moseroth* ('straps, bonds') and *mototh* ('bars, poles') describe the components of an ox yoke — leather straps binding wooden crossbars to the animal's neck. God commands Jeremiah to construct and wear this apparatus as a prophetic sign-act, a physical dramatization of the subjection he is about to proclaim. The plural forms may indicate multiple yokes, one for each nation addressed in the following verses.
3. The five nations listed were neighboring kingdoms considering an anti-Babylonian coalition. The envoys (*mal'akhim*, 'messengers') had come to Jerusalem for diplomatic consultations with Zedekiah — Jeremiah intercepted the political gathering with a prophetic counter-message. This verse confirms that the events take place under Zedekiah, not Jehoiakim as the superscription states.
4. The double formula — 'This is what the LORD says' followed by 'this is what you are to say' — creates a chain of prophetic authority: God speaks to Jeremiah, Jeremiah speaks to the envoys, the envoys speak to their kings. The title 'LORD of Hosts' (*YHWH tseva'ot*) emphasizes God's sovereignty over all armies, both heavenly and earthly — a pointed claim when addressing military allies.
5. God's claim to universal sovereignty grounds the entire chapter: the one who created everything has the authority to assign political dominion. The phrase 'outstretched arm' (*zero'i ha-netuyah*) is Exodus language — the same arm that struck Egypt now assigns Babylon as sovereign. The expression *yashar be'ainai* ('right in my eyes') asserts unilateral divine discretion over international affairs.
6. Calling Nebuchadnezzar *avdi* ('my servant') is theologically explosive. This is covenant-honor vocabulary — the same title given to Abraham, Moses, David, and the prophets. God is declaring that a pagan emperor serves as his chosen instrument. The extension to 'wild animals' (*chayyat hasadeh*) echoes the creation mandate of Genesis 1:28 and the sovereignty language of Daniel 2:38, signaling total dominion over the created order.
7. The three-generation dynasty (Nebuchadnezzar, his son, his grandson) roughly corresponds to the Neo-Babylonian succession, though the historical details are compressed. The phrase 'the appointed time for his own land' (*et artso*) indicates that Babylon's dominion is not permanent but divinely bounded — Babylon too will be subjected. The reversal ('make him serve them') points to Babylon's eventual fall to Persia in 539 BCE.
8. The triad 'sword, famine, and plague' (*cherev, ra'av, dever*) is Jeremiah's signature judgment formula, recurring over a dozen times in the book (14:12, 21:7, 21:9, 24:10, 29:17-18, 32:24, 32:36, 34:17, 38:2, 42:17, 42:22, 44:13). The yoke metaphor in verse 2 is now made explicit — refusing the literal yoke means refusing divine assignment. The verb *tamam* ('to complete, to finish off') here carries the sense of total destruction.
9. The five-fold list — prophets (*nevi'im*), diviners (*qosemim*), dream interpreters (*chalomot*), soothsayers (*onenim*), and sorcerers (*kashshefim*) — catalogs the entire spectrum of ancient Near Eastern religious consultation. By grouping *nevi'im* ('prophets') with practitioners of divination and sorcery, Jeremiah strips the false prophets of legitimacy, equating them with pagan practitioners forbidden by Deuteronomy 18:10-14.
10. The word *sheqer* ('falsehood, lie') is one of Jeremiah's most frequent terms for false prophecy (see 5:31, 14:14, 20:6, 23:25-26, 29:9). The irony is devastating: the false prophets promise that resistance will prevent exile, but their deceptive counsel is precisely what will cause the exile they claim to prevent.
11. The reward for submission is strikingly simple: remaining on ancestral land, farming, and dwelling in peace. The verb *avadah* ('work it, farm it') creates a wordplay with *avad* ('serve') — the nation that 'serves' Babylon will 'work' its own land. The promise of land retention echoes the Deuteronomic land theology where possession of the land is contingent on obedience.
12. The same message delivered to foreign kings is now directed at Zedekiah — Judah receives no special exemption. The blunt imperative *vichyu* ('and live') reduces the choice to its starkest terms: submission means survival, resistance means death. The plural 'your necks' (*tsavvareikhem*) addresses the king and his court collectively.
13. The rhetorical question *lammah tamutu* ('why should you die?') recurs in Jeremiah's appeals to Zedekiah (cf. 38:17-18). It presents the choice as self-evidently absurd — death by stubbornness when survival is available through submission. The recurring triad of sword, famine, and plague reappears from verse 8.
14. This is the second explicit warning against false prophets in the chapter (cf. v. 9). Here the warning is directed specifically to Zedekiah and the Judean court, not to the foreign envoys. The accusation *sheqer hem nibbe'im* ('falsehood they are prophesying') uses the emphatic word order, placing 'falsehood' first for rhetorical force.
15. The claim *lo shelachtim* ('I did not send them') is the definitive test of prophetic authenticity in the Deuteronomic tradition (Deuteronomy 18:20). The dark irony is that the false prophets will share the fate of those they deceived — both the deceivers and the deceived will perish together. Prophesying 'in my name' (*bishmi*) while unsent constitutes the gravest possible prophetic offense.
16. The false prophets' specific claim concerns the Temple vessels taken by Nebuchadnezzar in 597 BCE (2 Kings 24:13). Their promise of imminent return ('soon,' *meherah*) contradicts Jeremiah's message that the exile will be long (cf. 25:11-12, 29:10). The address shifts to the priests, who had a particular interest in the Temple vessels — their liturgical function depended on this sacred equipment.
17. The appeal shifts from national survival to urban survival — 'this city' (*ha'ir hazzot*) is Jerusalem itself. The word *chorbah* ('ruin, desolation') anticipates what will happen in 586 BCE when the city is indeed destroyed. The question format implies the choice is still open, though the rhetorical pressure is immense.
18. Jeremiah issues a devastating challenge: if these prophets genuinely carry God's word, they should use their prophetic authority to prevent further loss, not promise the return of what is already gone. The verb *yifge'u* ('let them intercede, press upon') implies urgent, persistent petition. The mention of 'vessels still remaining' reveals that a first deportation of Temple equipment has already occurred (597 BCE) and more remain at risk.

- 19.** The specific Temple furnishings named — the bronze pillars (ha'ammudim, cf. 1 Kings 7:15-22), the bronze sea (ha-yam, the massive basin described in 1 Kings 7:23-26), and the bronze stands (ha-mekhonot, 1 Kings 7:27-39) — are the monumental pieces too large to have been taken in the first deportation. Their eventual removal is documented in 2 Kings 25:13-17 and Jeremiah 52:17-23.
- 20.** Jeconiah (yekhanyah, also called Jehoiachin and Coniah) was deported in 597 BCE after a three-month reign (2 Kings 24:8-16). The word chorei ('nobles, freeborn') designates the aristocratic and administrative class taken in the first deportation. The verse establishes the historical timeline: a first deportation has already occurred, and the items left behind are now at stake.
- 21.** The full divine title 'LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel' lends maximum authority to the pronouncement that follows. The triple location — Temple, royal palace, city — indicates that sacred vessels were distributed across multiple sites, not confined to the sanctuary alone.
- 22.** The chapter closes with an unexpected note of hope. The verb paqad ('attend to, visit, take account of') here carries its positive sense — divine visitation for restoration rather than punishment. The promise that the vessels will eventually return presupposes a long exile (contra the false prophets' 'soon') but affirms that Babylon is not the final destination. The historical fulfillment came under Cyrus (Ezra 1:7-11), though Jeremiah does not name the agent. This verse simultaneously contradicts the false prophets (the vessels will go to Babylon, not return now) and offers hope (they will eventually return).

28

Summary: *Jeremiah 28 presents the dramatic confrontation between Jeremiah and Hananiah son of Azzur, a prophet from Gibeon who publicly contradicts Jeremiah's yoke message. In the Temple, before priests and people, Hananiah announces that within two years God will break the yoke of Babylon, return the Temple vessels, and restore King Jeconiah. He then seizes the yoke from Jeremiah's neck and snaps it. Jeremiah's initial response is remarkable — he says 'Amen, may the LORD do so' — then walks away. Later, God sends Jeremiah back with a devastating counter-oracle: the broken wooden yoke will be replaced by an iron yoke, and Hananiah will die within the year for inciting rebellion against the LORD. Hananiah dies in the seventh month, two months after his prophecy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the most vivid prophet-versus-prophet confrontation in the Hebrew Bible. The theological tension is extraordinary: both men speak 'in the name of the LORD,' both use prophetic formulas, both claim divine authority. How does anyone in the audience distinguish true from false? Jeremiah's initial reaction — walking away rather than immediately counter-propheying — is one of the most humanly honest moments in prophetic literature. He does not fabricate an instant rebuttal; he waits until God actually speaks to him. The replacement of the wooden yoke with iron bars (v. 13) transforms Hananiah's defiant act into an escalation of judgment: resistance does not remove the yoke but makes it heavier. Hananiah's death within two months of his prophecy (vv. 16-17) fulfills Deuteronomy 18:20-22's test of prophetic authenticity with brutal finality.*

Translation Friction: *The date formula in verse 1 presents textual issues: 'that same year, at the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah' in the fourth year is difficult, since the fourth year is not the 'beginning' of a reign. The phrase may be a redactional gloss or may use re'shit loosely. We rendered it as given and noted the tension. Jeremiah's response 'Amen — may the LORD do so' (v. 6) could be read as sincere hope, diplomatic irony, or prophetic testing; we preserved the ambiguity. The verb sarah ('to rebel, turn aside') in verse 16 is the same word used for political rebellion and theological apostasy — we chose 'rebellion' to capture both dimensions. The time reference 'that same year, in the seventh month' (v. 17) places Hananiah's death approximately two months after the confrontation (which occurred in the fifth month, v. 1).*

Connections: *This chapter is the direct sequel to chapter 27's yoke sign-act. Hananiah's promise to 'break the yoke of the king of Babylon' (v. 4) directly inverts Jeremiah's command to 'put your neck under the yoke' (27:12). The promise to return Jeconiah connects to Jeremiah's oracle against Jeconiah in 22:24-30. The iron yoke intensification connects to Deuteronomy 28:48, where iron yoke is a covenant curse for disobedience. The death-sentence formula 'this year you will die' echoes 2 Kings 7:2, 19 and anticipates the prophetic death-sentence pattern. The criterion of prophetic authenticity — fulfilled prediction — draws on Deuteronomy 18:21-22. Hananiah's prophecy of a two-year return contradicts Jeremiah's seventy-year timeline (25:11-12, 29:10).*

¶In that same year — at the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the fourth year, in the fifth month — Hananiah son of Azzur, the prophet from Gibeon, spoke to me in the house of the LORD, in the sight of the priests and all

the people, saying: ²This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I have broken the yoke of the king of Babylon. ³Within two more years I will bring back to this place all the vessels of the house of the LORD that Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon took from this place and carried to Babylon. ⁴I will also bring back to this place Jeconiah son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, along with all the exiles of Judah who went to Babylon, declares the LORD, for I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon. ⁵Then the prophet Jeremiah said to the prophet Hananiah in the sight of the priests and all the people standing in the house of the LORD: ⁶The prophet Jeremiah said: Amen! May the LORD do so. May the LORD fulfill your words that you have prophesied — to bring back the vessels of the house of the LORD and all the exiles from Babylon to this place. ⁷But listen carefully to this word that I am speaking in your hearing and in the hearing of all the people: ⁸The prophets who came before me and before you from ancient times prophesied against many lands and great kingdoms of war, disaster, and plague. ⁹As for the prophet who prophesies peace — only when the word of that prophet comes to pass will it be known that the LORD truly sent him. ¹⁰Then Hananiah the prophet took the yoke-bar from the neck of the prophet Jeremiah and broke it. ¹¹Hananiah spoke before all the people: This is what the LORD says — just so will I break the yoke of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon within two years from the neck of all the nations. And the prophet Jeremiah went on his way. ¹²Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah after Hananiah the prophet had broken the yoke-bar from the neck of the prophet Jeremiah: ¹³Go and say to Hananiah: This is what the LORD says — you have broken bars of wood, but you have made bars of iron in their place. ¹⁴For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I have placed an iron yoke on the neck of all these nations to make them serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and they will serve him. I have even given him the wild animals. ¹⁵Then the prophet Jeremiah said to the prophet Hananiah: Listen, Hananiah — the LORD did not send you, and you have made this people trust in a lie. ¹⁶Therefore this is what the LORD says: I am about to remove you from the face of the earth. This year you will die, because you have spoken rebellion against the LORD. ¹⁷Hananiah the prophet died that same year, in the seventh month.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula is internally awkward: 'beginning of the reign' (re'shit mamlekhet) does not naturally pair with 'the fourth year,' since a fourth year is not the beginning of a reign. The phrase may be a scribal addition linking this to 27:1, or re'shit may be used loosely to mean 'in the early period.' We render the Masoretic Text as it stands. Hananiah is introduced with full credentials — named, patronymic, titled 'the prophet' (hannavi), city of origin (Gibeon) — establishing him as a legitimate prophetic figure, not an obvious fraud. The public setting — Temple, priests, and people — makes this a formal prophetic confrontation.
2. Hananiah uses the full prophetic messenger formula with the complete divine title — identical in form to Jeremiah's own oracles. The verb shabarti ('I have broken') is in the prophetic perfect, treating a future event as already accomplished. This is standard prophetic grammar used by both true and false prophets, making it impossible to distinguish authenticity by form alone.
3. The phrase be'od shenatayim yamim ('within two more years of days') is precise — Hananiah commits to a verifiable timeline, unlike vague prophetic promises. This specificity directly contradicts Jeremiah's seventy-year prophecy (25:11-12). The phrase 'this place' (hamaqom hazzeh) repeated twice emphasizes the Temple itself as the site of loss and promised restoration.
4. Hananiah extends his prophecy beyond the Temple vessels to include the return of Jeconiah (Jehoiachin) himself and all the exiles. This directly contradicts Jeremiah's oracle against Jeconiah in 22:24-30, which declares that none of his descendants will sit on David's throne. The word galut ('exile, exiled community') has become a technical term by this period for the Judean deportees in Babylon.
5. The narrator deliberately titles both men hannavi ('the prophet') — 'the prophet Jeremiah' and 'the prophet Hananiah.' The text refuses to prejudice the reader by labeling one as false before the outcome is known. The public audience — priests and people standing in the Temple — underscores that this is not a private exchange but a formal prophetic contest.
6. Jeremiah's response is one of the most striking moments in the book. His 'Amen' (amen) and 'May the LORD do so' (ken ya'aseh YHWH) could be read as genuine hope — Jeremiah would prefer Hananiah's optimistic prophecy to be true — or as devastating irony, since Jeremiah knows it is false. The word yaqem ('may he establish, fulfill') is the same verb used for covenant fulfillment. We preserve the ambiguity because the Hebrew sustains both readings.
7. The particle akh ('but, however, only') introduces a sharp contrast — Jeremiah's apparent concession in verse 6 is immediately followed by a qualification. The phrase be'ozneikha ('in your ears') is emphatic, demanding personal attention. Jeremiah shifts from personal wish to prophetic criterion.

8. Jeremiah appeals to prophetic precedent: the mainstream tradition of Israelite prophecy has been overwhelmingly one of judgment, not comfort. Prophets like Amos, Hosea, Micah, and Isaiah predominantly warned of war (milchamah), disaster (ra'ah), and plague (dever). The phrase min-ha'olam ('from ancient times') stretches back to the earliest prophetic tradition. Jeremiah is arguing that warnings of doom need no special validation — they align with the prophetic norm.
9. This is Jeremiah's application of the Deuteronomic test of prophecy (Deuteronomy 18:21-22): the prophet of judgment needs no special proof because judgment is the default prophetic message, but the prophet of shalom ('peace, well-being') bears the burden of proof — only fulfillment can validate his word. The word be'emet ('in truth, truly') from the root aleph-mem-nun emphasizes genuine divine commissioning versus self-appointed prophesying.
10. Hananiah responds not with words but with a counter sign-act — he seizes Jeremiah's prophetic prop and destroys it. The word hammotah ('the bar, the yoke-beam') is the singular of mototh from 27:2. The verb vayyishberehu ('and he broke it') is violent and decisive. By breaking the yoke, Hananiah physically enacts his prophecy that God will break Babylon's yoke. Both prophets are now using the same dramatic prophetic genre — embodied proclamation.
11. The word kakhah ('just so, in this manner') ties the physical act to the prophetic word — 'just as I broke this yoke, God will break Babylon's.' The final sentence is stunning in its understatement: vayelexh yirmeyahu hannavi ledarko ('and Jeremiah the prophet went on his way'). Jeremiah walks away. He does not argue, does not counter-prophecy, does not invoke divine authority. He has no word from God at this moment and he will not fabricate one. This silence is among the most honest moments in prophetic literature.
12. The phrase acharei shevor ('after the breaking') explicitly marks a gap in time between the confrontation and God's response. Jeremiah walked away without a word because he had none — now, after an unspecified interval, the word of the LORD comes. The narrative structure validates Jeremiah's silence: a true prophet waits for God to speak rather than manufacturing a response under pressure.
13. The divine response transforms Hananiah's defiant act into an escalation of judgment. The contrast between motot ets ('bars of wood') and motot barzel ('bars of iron') is devastatingly ironic — Hananiah's attempt to break the yoke has only made it unbreakable. Wood can be splintered; iron cannot. The wordplay on the root sh-b-r ('break') from verse 10 is deliberately inverted: what was broken has been replaced by what cannot be broken.
14. The iron yoke echoes Deuteronomy 28:48, where serving enemies 'with an iron yoke on your neck' is listed among the covenant curses for disobedience. By invoking this image, God confirms that Babylon's dominion is not random geopolitics but covenant-curse fulfillment. The repetition of 'wild animals' (chayyat hasadeh) from 27:6 reaffirms the totality of Nebuchadnezzar's divinely granted dominion.
15. The verdict lo shelachakha YHWH ('the LORD did not send you') is the definitive declaration of false prophecy (cf. 27:15, Deuteronomy 18:20). The verb hivathta ('you have caused to trust') from the root b-t-ch is causative — Hananiah has not merely spoken falsehood but has actively manufactured false confidence in an entire people. The word sheqer ('lie, falsehood') is Jeremiah's standard term for the entire apparatus of false prophecy.
16. The verb meshallechakha ('I am sending you away') uses the same root sh-l-ch as the accusation 'the LORD did not send you' (lo shelachakha) — a bitter wordplay. God did not 'send' Hananiah as a prophet, but God will 'send' him from the earth. The word sarah ('rebellion, turning aside') carries both political and theological weight — Hananiah has incited rebellion against God's declared purpose. The death sentence hashanah attah met ('this year you will die') sets a verifiable prophetic timeline, just as Hananiah set his own two-year timeline in verse 3.
17. The narrative fulfillment is reported with terse finality — no elaboration, no dramatic scene, no further comment. The seventh month (Tishri) is approximately two months after the fifth month (Av) confrontation in verse 1. The speed of fulfillment validates Jeremiah and condemns Hananiah by the very criterion Jeremiah proposed in verse 9: the prophet whose word comes to pass is the one truly sent by the LORD. The narrator still calls Hananiah hannavi ('the prophet') even in death — the title was his public identity, now rendered tragically ironic.

29

Summary: *Jeremiah 29 preserves the prophet's letter to the exiles deported to Babylon in 597 BCE with King Jehoiachin.*

Against the false prophets who promise a swift return, Jeremiah delivers an astonishing command: settle down, build houses, plant gardens, marry, have children, and seek the welfare (shalom) of the foreign city where God has placed you. The chapter contains one of the most quoted verses in all of scripture — 'For I know the plans I have for you, declares the LORD, plans for welfare and not for disaster, to give you a future and a hope' (v. 11). The second half of the chapter pronounces judgment on the false prophets in Babylon — Ahab son of Kolaiah and Zedekiah son of Maaseiah — and especially on Shemaiah the Nehelamite, who wrote letters from Babylon demanding Jeremiah's arrest.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reverses a fundamental prophetic instinct. Prophets typically call Israel to separate from pagan nations, yet Jeremiah commands the exiles to integrate into Babylonian civic life and pray for its prosperity, because 'in its welfare you will find your welfare.' This theology of exile — that God's people can flourish in a foreign land, that faithfulness does not require a temple or a homeland — becomes foundational for diaspora Judaism and eventually for Christian theology of living in the world. Verse 11 is routinely quoted in isolation as a personal promise, but in its original context it is addressed to an entire exiled community and is conditioned on a seventy-year timeline (v. 10). The word *machshevot* ('plans, thoughts') in verse 11 deserves careful attention — it is the same word used of human scheming in other contexts, here applied to God's purposeful designs. The condemnation of Shemaiah in the chapter's closing verses shows that the battle between true and false prophecy extended beyond Jerusalem into the exile community itself.*

Translation Friction: *The word *shalom* appears with full covenantal weight in verses 7 and 11, requiring expanded rendering. The term *machshevot* (v. 11) carries a semantic range from 'thoughts' to 'plans' to 'purposes' — we rendered it as 'plans' for clarity while documenting the fuller range. The verb *darash* ('seek') in verse 7 is the same verb used for seeking God in worship, now applied to seeking the welfare of a pagan city — a deliberately provocative usage that must be preserved. Shemaiah's letter (vv. 24-32) introduces complex reported speech within reported speech, requiring careful handling of quotation layers. The phrase *acharit vetikvah* ('a future and a hope,' v. 11) could also be rendered 'an outcome and an expectation' — the more familiar rendering is retained but the Hebrew range is documented.*

Connections: *The seventy-year exile timeline connects to 25:11-12 and is referenced in Daniel 9:2 and 2 Chronicles 36:21. The command to seek the city's welfare anticipates Jesus's teaching to love enemies and pray for persecutors (Matthew 5:44). The false prophets condemned here connect to the broader anti-false-prophecy polemic of chapters 23, 27-28. Verse 11's 'plans for welfare and not for disaster' echoes the covenant blessings and curses of Deuteronomy 28-30. The letter format is unique in prophetic literature and anticipates the apostolic epistles of the New Testament. The promise 'you will seek me and find me when you search for me with all your heart' (v. 13) echoes Deuteronomy 4:29.*

¹These are the words of the letter that Jeremiah the prophet sent from Jerusalem to the surviving elders of the exile, to the priests, the prophets, and all the people whom Nebuchadnezzar had deported from Jerusalem to Babylon — ²after Jeconiah the king, the queen mother, the court officials, the leaders of Judah and Jerusalem, the craftsmen, and the metalworkers had gone out from Jerusalem — ³The letter was sent by the hand of Elasah son of Shaphan and Gemariah son of Hilkiah, whom Zedekiah king of Judah dispatched to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon in Babylon. It said: ⁴This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says to all the exiles whom I sent into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon: ⁵Build houses and settle in them. Plant gardens and eat their produce. ⁶Marry and have sons and daughters. Find wives for your sons and give your daughters in marriage, so that they too may bear sons and daughters. Multiply there — do not diminish. ⁷Seek the welfare of the city where I have sent you into exile, and pray to the LORD on its behalf, for in its welfare you will find your welfare. ⁸For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Do not let your prophets who are among you and your diviners deceive you, and do not listen to the dreams that you are prompting them to dream. ⁹For they are prophesying falsely to you in my name. I did not send them, declares the LORD. ¹⁰For this is what the LORD says: When seventy years are completed for Babylon, I will attend to you and fulfill my good promise to you — to bring you back to this place. ¹¹For I know the plans I have for you, declares the LORD — plans for welfare and not for disaster, to give you a future and a hope. ¹²Then you will call on me and come and pray to me, and I will listen to you. ¹³You will seek me and find me when you search for me with all your heart. ¹⁴I will let myself be found by you, declares the LORD. I will restore your fortunes and gather you from all the nations and from all the places where I have driven you, declares the LORD, and I will bring you back to the place from which I sent you into exile. ¹⁵Because you have said, 'The LORD has raised up prophets for us in Babylon' — ¹⁶For this is what the LORD says concerning the king who sits on the throne of David and all the people who remain in this city — your relatives who did not go out with you into exile: ¹⁷This is what the LORD of Hosts says: I am sending against them the sword, famine, and plague. I will make them like rotten figs, so bad they cannot be eaten. ¹⁸I will pursue them with sword, famine, and plague, and make them a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth — an object of cursing, devastation, scorn, and disgrace among all the nations

where I have driven them, ¹⁹because they did not listen to my words, declares the LORD, when I sent my servants the prophets to them persistently — but you would not listen, declares the LORD. ²⁰But as for you — hear the word of the LORD, all you exiles whom I sent from Jerusalem to Babylon. ²¹This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says concerning Ahab son of Kolaiah and Zedekiah son of Maaseiah, who are prophesying lies to you in my name: I am handing them over to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and he will strike them down before your eyes. ²²From them a curse-formula will be drawn by all the exiles of Judah who are in Babylon: 'May the LORD make you like Zedekiah and like Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in the fire' — ²³because they committed outrageous acts in Israel: they committed adultery with their neighbors' wives and spoke lying words in my name, which I never commanded them. I am the one who knows, and I am the witness, declares the LORD. ²⁴To Shemaiah the Nehelamite, say this: ²⁵This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Because you sent letters in your own name to all the people in Jerusalem, to Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest, and to all the priests, saying — ²⁶'The LORD has appointed you as priest in place of Jehoiada the priest, to be an overseer in the house of the LORD over every madman who acts as a prophet — you should put him in the stocks and the neck-iron.' ²⁷'So why have you not rebuked Jeremiah of Anathoth, who is acting as a prophet among you? ²⁸For he has sent word to us in Babylon saying: The exile will be long. Build houses and settle in them. Plant gardens and eat their produce.' ²⁹Zephaniah the priest read this letter aloud in the hearing of Jeremiah the prophet. ³⁰Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: ³¹Send word to all the exiles: This is what the LORD says concerning Shemaiah the Nehelamite — Because Shemaiah prophesied to you when I did not send him, and he made you trust in a lie, ³²therefore this is what the LORD says: I am about to punish Shemaiah the Nehelamite and his descendants. He will have no one living among this people, and he will not see the good that I am going to do for my people, declares the LORD, because he spoke rebellion against the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *sefer* ('scroll, letter, document') indicates a formal written communication, not a casual note. This is the only prophetic letter preserved in the Hebrew Bible. The word *yeter* ('remainder, survivors') indicates that some of the elder leadership had already died or been eliminated since the deportation.
2. Jeconiah (Yekhanyah) is also known as Jehoiachin and Coniah (cf. 22:24). The *gevirah* ('queen mother') held significant political status in Judah. The deportation of *charash* ('craftsmen') and *masger* ('metalworkers, locksmiths') was strategic — Babylon removed the skilled labor needed for military resistance (cf. 2 Kings 24:14-16). The word *sarisim* can mean 'eunuchs' or 'court officials' — we render as 'court officials' since the term had broadened by this period to include non-castrated palace administrators.
3. Jeremiah used a diplomatic delegation as his mail service — Zedekiah's own ambassadors carried the prophet's letter to the exiles. Elasah was the son of Shaphan, the scribe who had found the Book of the Law under Josiah (2 Kings 22:3-10), indicating that this family was sympathetic to Jeremiah's prophetic ministry. Gemariah son of Hilkiah may be connected to Hilkiah the high priest from Josiah's reform (2 Kings 22:8).
4. The critical theological claim is in the verb *higleti* — 'whom I sent into exile.' God takes ownership of the deportation. Nebuchadnezzar was the instrument, but God was the agent. This reframes exile not as divine defeat but as divine discipline. The full divine title 'LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel' asserts sovereignty over both the heavenly armies and the covenant people simultaneously.
5. The imperatives are strikingly domestic: build, settle, plant, eat. These are the verbs of permanence, not temporary encampment. God is commanding long-term investment in Babylonian life, directly contradicting the false prophets who promised a swift return (cf. 28:3). The word *shevu* ('settle, dwell') implies putting down roots, not merely surviving.
6. The command extends to a second generation — the exiles must plan for grandchildren, not a quick return. The verbs *revu* ('multiply') and *al-tim'atu* ('do not diminish') echo the creation mandate of Genesis 1:28 and God's promises to the patriarchs. Even in exile, the covenant community must grow and flourish. This is not mere survival but covenant fruitfulness in an alien land.
7. This verse is theologically revolutionary. The verb *dirshu* ('seek') is used elsewhere for seeking God (Deuteronomy 4:29, Amos 5:4) — now applied to seeking the *shalom* of Babylon, the empire that destroyed Jerusalem. The repetition of *shalom* ('in its shalom you will have shalom') creates an inseparable bond between the exiles' welfare and the welfare of their captors. We render *shalom* as 'welfare' rather than 'peace' here because the context demands the broader meaning — complete well-being, not just absence of conflict.
8. The phrase *asher attem machlimim* ('which you are causing to be dreamed') is remarkable — the exiles are not merely being deceived; they are actively commissioning the dreams they want to hear. The *Hiphil* form implies the audience is driving the false prophecy by seeking out prophets who will tell them what they desire. This is prophetic supply meeting popular demand.
9. The phrase *bishmi* ('in my name') makes the offense graver — these prophets do not merely predict wrongly; they invoke the divine name to authorize their lies. The verb *shlachtim* ('I sent them') is the key criterion for true prophecy in Jeremiah — a genuine prophet is one whom God sends (cf. 1:7,

23:21, 23:32, 28:15).

10. The seventy-year timeline (first stated in 25:11-12) sets the expectation for an extended exile, directly contradicting Hananiah's two-year prediction (28:3). The verb *efqod* ('I will attend to, visit') carries the double sense of divine attention — God visits to judge (as with Babylon) and to deliver (as with Israel). The phrase *devari hatov* ('my good word/promise') indicates that restoration is not a new plan but the fulfillment of an existing divine commitment.
11. This is one of the most frequently quoted verses in the entire Bible, often removed from its context. In the Hebrew, *machshavot* (from the root *ch-sh-v*, 'to think, plan, devise') carries more weight than the English 'plans' — it implies intentional, purposeful thought, the same word used for a craftsman's designs or a military strategist's calculations. The pair *acharit vetikvah* is rendered 'a future and a hope' following the most natural English reading; the KJV's 'expected end' reflects a different parsing. *Acharit* means 'latter end, outcome, posterity' and *tikvah* means 'hope, expectation, cord' (from the root *q-v-h*, 'to wait, to hope'). The verse's power lies in its context: it is spoken to people in exile who will not live to see the promise fulfilled — the seventy-year timeline means this is a promise for their children and grandchildren.
12. Three verbs describe the exiles' return to God: *qara* ('call'), *halakh* ('come, go'), and *hitpallel* ('pray'). The sequence moves from initial cry to deliberate approach to sustained prayer. God's response — 'I will listen' — reverses the exile dynamic where God refused to listen to a disobedient people (cf. 11:11, 14:12).
13. This verse echoes Deuteronomy 4:29, where Moses promised that Israel would find God when they sought him with all their heart — even from exile. The verb *biqqashtem* ('you will seek') and *dirshu* ('search') are near-synonyms intensifying the idea of wholehearted pursuit. The condition *bekhol levavkhem* ('with all your heart') mirrors the Shema's total devotion (Deuteronomy 6:5). God is findable — but only to those who search without reservation.
14. The Niphal *venimtseti* ('I will let myself be found') is reflexive — God makes himself available to be discovered by those who seek. The phrase *shavti et shevutkhem* ('I will restore your fortunes') is a wordplay on the root *shuv* — the same root that means 'return, repent.' Restoration (*shevut*) and repentance (*teshuvah*) share the same linguistic root, binding them together. God again claims agency over the exile — 'where I have driven you' — maintaining the theology that exile was divine discipline, not divine failure.
15. The exiles' claim that God raised up prophets in Babylon directly challenges Jeremiah's authority as God's spokesman from Jerusalem. The irony is sharp: the 'prophets' the exiles trust are the very ones God is about to condemn as frauds.
16. The shift turns back to Jerusalem. The 'king on David's throne' is Zedekiah, the puppet king installed by Nebuchadnezzar. The word *acheikhem* ('your relatives, your brothers') reminds the exiles that those left behind in Jerusalem are still family — but they are about to face worse judgment.
17. The triad of sword, famine, and plague (*cherev, ra'av, dever*) is Jeremiah's signature judgment formula, appearing over fifteen times in the book. The rotten-fig image recalls the vision of chapter 24, where two baskets of figs represented the exiles (good figs) and those remaining in Jerusalem (bad figs). The Hebrew *sho'arim* ('horrible, shuddering') describes figs so repulsive they cause revulsion.
18. The four-fold curse formula — *alah* ('cursing'), *shammah* ('devastation, desolation'), *shereqah* ('hissing, whistling in scorn'), and *cherpah* ('reproach, disgrace') — is a Jeremican expansion of the Deuteronomic curse vocabulary. The hissing (*shereqah*) describes the involuntary gasp of horror from passersby who see the ruins, a sound combining shock and contempt.
19. The Jeremican idiom *hashkem veshaloch* ('rising early and sending') again conveys God's tireless effort to reach his people through the prophets (cf. 7:25, 25:4, 26:5). The abrupt shift from third person ('they did not listen') to second person ('you would not listen') directly addresses the exiles, collapsing the distance between past and present generations of disobedience.
20. The emphatic *ve'attem* ('but as for you') redirects the oracle to the exilic audience. Again God asserts agency over the exile: *shillachti* ('I sent'). The command to hear (*shim'u*) contrasts with the refusal to hear in the previous verse.
21. These are not the biblical king Ahab or King Zedekiah — these are otherwise unknown false prophets bearing the same names. Their execution by Nebuchadnezzar would serve as public proof that their prophecies were false. The phrase *le'eineikhem* ('before your eyes') emphasizes that the exiles will witness the judgment themselves.
22. The verb *qalam* ('roasted') is graphic and specific — execution by fire, likely referring to the Babylonian practice of burning convicted criminals alive (cf. Daniel 3). Their names become proverbial curse material — the ultimate reversal for men who claimed to speak for God. The curse-formula (*qelalah*) invokes their fate as the worst thing one could wish upon an enemy.
23. The word *nevalah* ('outrage, disgraceful folly') is the term used for the most egregious social violations in Israel — rape (Genesis 34:7, 2 Samuel 13:12), violation of hospitality (Judges 19:23-24), and covenant-breaking. Their double crime is moral and prophetic: adultery violates the social covenant, and false prophecy violates the divine commission. God's self-identification as both knower (*yodea*) and witness (*ed*) uses legal language — God is simultaneously the omniscient judge and the eyewitness who can testify.
24. Shemaiah is identified as *hannechelami* ('the Nehelamite'), which may refer to a place of origin or may be a wordplay on *chalom* ('dream'), implying 'the dreamer' — a sarcastic epithet for a false prophet who claims divine dreams. The ambiguity may be intentional.
25. Shemaiah sent his own counter-letter from Babylon to Jerusalem, creating a prophetic letter-war across the empire. He wrote *beshimkha* ('in your own name') — not in God's name but in his own authority, yet attempting to exercise priestly power from exile. Zephaniah son of Maaseiah served as a temple official who would have authority to act on such instructions.

26. Shemaiah's letter invokes Jehoiada the priest as a precedent for temple police authority. The word *meshugga* ('madman') was used dismissively of prophets by their opponents (cf. 2 Kings 9:11, Hosea 9:7) — Shemaiah characterizes Jeremiah as insane. The *mahpekhet* ('stocks' — a device that twists the body into a painful position) and *tsinnoq* ('neck-iron, collar') are instruments of public punishment and humiliation previously used against Jeremiah (cf. 20:2).
27. Shemaiah demands to know why Zephaniah has not used his authority to silence Jeremiah. The dismissive *hammitnabei* ('who makes himself a prophet, who acts as a prophet') denies the legitimacy of Jeremiah's call. The identification 'of Anathoth' — Jeremiah's hometown — may carry a sneer: he is a small-town prophet presuming to speak for God.
28. Shemaiah quotes Jeremiah's own letter (v. 5) back to Jerusalem with outrage. The phrase *arukhah hi* ('it will be long') summarizes the seventy-year message that the false prophets found intolerable. The very words of divine instruction — build, settle, plant, eat — become Shemaiah's evidence for prosecution.
29. Rather than acting on Shemaiah's demand to arrest Jeremiah, Zephaniah reads the letter to Jeremiah himself — a quiet act of either sympathy or fair warning. The phrase *be'oznei* ('in the ears of') indicates public or formal reading aloud, not private communication.
30. The standard prophetic reception formula signals a direct divine response to Shemaiah's challenge. God answers the attempted suppression with a counter-oracle.
31. The phrase *va'ani lo shelachtivu* ('and I did not send him') is the definitive criterion of false prophecy in Jeremiah — legitimacy comes only from divine commission (cf. 23:21, 28:15). The verb *hivtiach* ('he made you trust, gave you confidence') indicates that Shemaiah's false prophecy was not merely wrong information but a false ground for confidence that prevented the people from accepting the reality of their situation.
32. The punishment is total exclusion — Shemaiah's entire line is cut off from the restored community. The phrase *lo yir'eh batov* ('he will not see the good') is particularly cruel in context: God has just promised restoration (vv. 10-14), and Shemaiah will be excluded from it. The word *sarah* ('rebellion, turning aside, revolt') characterizes false prophecy not as mere error but as incitement to rebellion against divine authority. The punishment mirrors the crime: Shemaiah tried to prevent the exiles from hearing God's true word, and now he is prevented from participating in God's promised future.

30

Summary: Jeremiah 30 opens the Book of Consolation (chapters 30-33), the heart of Jeremiah's hope oracles. God commands the prophet to write all his words in a scroll, then declares that the days are coming when he will restore the fortunes of Israel and Judah. The chapter moves through terror to triumph: a vivid depiction of anguish so severe it is compared to a man in labor (v. 6), followed by the promise of deliverance from foreign bondage, the raising up of 'David their king' (v. 9), and the healing of wounds that others have called incurable. The chapter closes with the whirlwind of the LORD's wrath against the wicked, framing restoration not as cheap comfort but as the fruit of divine justice.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter marks a dramatic tonal shift in Jeremiah. The prophet whose oracles have been dominated by judgment, destruction, and exile now pivots to sustained hope — but hope that passes through suffering, not around it. The wound/healing imagery is central: God acknowledges that he himself inflicted the wound ('I struck you as an enemy strikes,' v. 14), yet he is also the healer. The mention of 'David their king' (v. 9) introduces a messianic expectation — not David personally resurrected, but a future ruler from David's line whom God will raise up. This connects to the 'righteous Branch' of 23:5-6 and becomes foundational for messianic theology in both Jewish and Christian traditions. The command to write everything in a scroll (v. 2) is itself significant — it suggests that these hope oracles were composed as a distinct literary collection before being incorporated into the larger book of Jeremiah.

*Translation Friction: The verb shuv ('restore, return') dominates this chapter in multiple forms, requiring careful attention to which sense is operative in each instance. The phrase 'David their king' (v. 9) is rendered literally without resolving whether this refers to a literal Davidic restoration or a messianic figure — the ambiguity is preserved with notes documenting both readings. The wound/healing vocabulary (*makkah*, *shever*, *teruphah*, *arukah*) carries precise medical connotations that resist simple English equivalents. The phrase 'a time of distress for Jacob' (v. 7) — *et tsarah le-Ya'aqov* — is traditionally rendered 'Jacob's trouble' and carries significant weight in eschatological interpretation; we render it plainly while noting the traditional reading. The closing verses (vv. 23-24) reuse judgment language from 23:19-20 nearly verbatim, and we preserve the parallel rather than disguising it.*

Connections: The command to write in a scroll connects to 36:2 where Baruch writes Jeremiah's oracles. The 'time of distress for Jacob' (v. 7) echoes Daniel 12:1 and is developed in eschatological literature. 'David their king' connects to 23:5-6 (the righteous Branch), Ezekiel 34:23-24, 37:24-25, and Hosea 3:5. The wound/healing imagery connects to Isaiah 1:5-6 and anticipates 33:6. The breaking of the yoke (v. 8) reverses the yoke imagery from chapters 27-28 where Jeremiah wore a yoke symbolizing Babylonian subjugation. The closing whirlwind oracle (vv. 23-24) is nearly identical to 23:19-20, creating a literary frame connecting judgment of false prophets with the promise of restoration.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD: ²This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: Write down in a scroll all the words that I have spoken to you. ³For the days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will restore the fortunes of my people Israel and Judah, says the LORD. I will bring them back to the land that I gave to their ancestors, and they will take possession of it. ⁴These are the words that the LORD spoke concerning Israel and Judah:

⁵For this is what the LORD says:

A cry of terror we have heard —
fear, and no peace.

⁶Ask now and consider —

can a man bear a child?

Then why do I see every warrior
with his hands on his hips like a woman in labor,
and every face drained of color?

⁷How terrible! For that day is great —

there is none like it.

It is a time of distress for Jacob,
but he will be saved out of it.

⁸On that day, declares the LORD of Hosts,

I will break the yoke from your neck
and tear apart your chains,
and foreigners will enslave you no longer.

⁹Instead they will serve the LORD their God
and David their king, whom I will raise up for them.

¹⁰So do not be afraid, my servant Jacob, declares the LORD,
and do not be dismayed, Israel.

For I am going to save you from far away,
and your descendants from the land of their captivity.
Jacob will return and be at rest,
at ease, with no one to cause him fear.

¹¹For I am with you to save you, declares the LORD.

I will make a complete end of all the nations
where I scattered you,
but I will not make a complete end of you.
I will discipline you with justice —
but I will by no means leave you unpunished.

¹²For this is what the LORD says:
Your fracture is beyond healing;
your wound is severe.

¹³No one pleads your case for healing;
there is no remedy for you, no recovery.

¹⁴All your lovers have forgotten you;
they care nothing for you.
For I struck you as an enemy strikes,
with the discipline of a cruel one,
because your iniquity is great
and your sins are many.

¹⁵Why do you cry out over your fracture?
Your pain is beyond cure.
Because your iniquity is great
and your sins are many,
I have done these things to you.

¹⁶Therefore all who devour you will be devoured,
and all your enemies — every one of them — will go into captivity.
Those who plunder you will become plunder,
and all who loot you I will give over to be looted.

¹⁷For I will bring healing to you
and cure you of your wounds, declares the LORD,
because they have called you 'Outcast' —
'That is Zion; no one cares about her.'

¹⁸This is what the LORD says:
I am about to restore the fortunes of Jacob's tents
and have compassion on his dwellings.
The city will be rebuilt on its own mound,
and the citadel will stand in its rightful place.

¹⁹From them will come thanksgiving
and the sound of celebration.
I will multiply them, and they will not decrease;
I will honor them, and they will not be insignificant.

²⁰His children will be as they were in former times,
and his assembly will be established before me.
I will punish all who oppress them.

²¹His leader will be one of his own,
and his ruler will come from his midst.
I will bring him near, and he will approach me —
for who would otherwise risk his life

to approach me? declares the LORD.

²²You will be my people,
and I will be your God.

²³Look — the storm of the LORD!
Wrath has gone out,
a whirlwind sweeping onward.
It will burst upon the heads of the wicked.

²⁴The burning anger of the LORD will not turn back
until he has accomplished it,
until he has carried out the purposes of his heart.
In days to come you will understand this.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') functions as a colon introducing direct speech and is rendered accordingly rather than retained as a redundant English word.
2. The command *ketav-lekha* ('write for yourself') initiates what scholars call the Book of Consolation (chapters 30-33). The word *sefer* can mean 'book, scroll, document' — we render 'scroll' as the physical medium of the ancient world. This command to write parallels 36:2 where God later instructs Jeremiah to dictate all his oracles to Baruch, suggesting these hope oracles were preserved as a distinct written collection.
3. The phrase *shavti et shevut* ('I will restore the fortunes') opens the Book of Consolation with the same formula used in 29:14. Both Israel (the northern kingdom, destroyed in 722 BCE) and Judah (the southern kingdom, now in exile) are included in the restoration promise — this is a pan-Israelite hope, not limited to one kingdom. The verb *vireshuha* ('they will possess it') echoes the Deuteronomistic conquest language, framing the return as a second entry into the promised land.
4. This verse functions as a secondary heading, introducing the oracles that follow. The dual address to both Israel and Judah reinforces the pan-Israelite scope of the restoration promise.
5. The oracle shifts to poetry. The word *charadah* ('trembling, terror, dread') describes physical shaking from fear. The phrase *ve'ein shalom* ('and there is no peace') echoes the false prophets' empty promise of 'Peace, peace!' (6:14, 8:11) — the reality is the opposite of what they proclaimed. The first-person plural 'we have heard' may represent the exilic community or a prophetic identification with the people's experience.
6. The image is deliberately shocking — mighty warriors (*gever*, 'strong man, warrior') reduced to the posture of a woman in labor, hands gripping their hips in agony. The word *yerakon* ('greenness, pallor') describes the sickly color of extreme fear or pain — faces literally turning green. The rhetorical question 'can a man bear a child?' sets up the absurdity: the answer should be no, yet here they are, doubled over like women giving birth. The Hebrew *chalatsav* ('his loins, his hips') specifically refers to the area of the body associated with both childbirth and masculine strength.
7. The interjection *hoi* ('alas, woe, how terrible') is a funeral-lament particle, used when death or catastrophe looms. The phrase *et tsarah le-Ya'aqov* is traditionally rendered 'the time of Jacob's trouble' — a phrase that has taken on eschatological significance in various interpretive traditions (cf. Daniel 12:1). We render 'a time of distress for Jacob' to stay close to the Hebrew without importing later theological frameworks. The critical turn is the final clause: *umimmenah yivvashe'a* ('but from it he will be saved') — the distress is not the end of the story.
8. The yoke imagery directly reverses chapters 27-28, where Jeremiah wore a wooden and iron yoke symbolizing Babylonian domination. The verb *eshbor* ('I will break') and the noun *ul* ('yoke') recall Hananiah's symbolic breaking of Jeremiah's yoke (28:10) — what the false prophet did prematurely in symbolic theater, God will do in reality at the appointed time. The word *mosrotekha* ('your bonds, chains') adds a second image of bondage beyond the yoke. The shift between second person ('your neck') and third person ('him') is characteristic of Hebrew prophetic poetry.
9. The pairing of 'the LORD their God' and 'David their king' creates a dual loyalty structure: covenant allegiance to God and political allegiance to a Davidic ruler. The verb *aqim* ('I will raise up') connects to the 'righteous Branch' oracle of 23:5 (using the same root *q-w-m*) and to Ezekiel's parallel promise in 34:23-24 and 37:24-25. Hosea 3:5 uses the identical phrase 'David their king.' Whether this refers to a restored Davidic monarchy or a messianic figure transcending historical kingship is left open in the text itself — the rendering preserves the ambiguity.
10. The address 'my servant Jacob' echoes Isaiah 41:8-10 and 44:1-2, placing Jeremiah's oracle in the broader prophetic tradition of comfort. The triple description of peace — *shaqat* ('rest, be quiet'), *sha'anani* ('at ease, tranquil'), and *ein macharid* ('none causing fear') — paints a comprehensive picture of security. The phrase *ein macharid* ('none making afraid') is a covenant-blessing formula from Leviticus 26:6 — the restored future will fulfill the original covenant promises.

11. The distinction is critical: the nations face kalah ('complete destruction, annihilation'), but Israel faces yissar ('discipline, correction') — painful but purposive. The phrase lamishpat ('with justice, according to judgment') indicates that God's discipline is measured and proportional, not arbitrary. The final clause venaqqeh lo anaqqeka ('I will certainly not leave you unpunished') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute to stress that mercy does not mean impunity. This verse appears nearly identically in 46:28, framing the oracles against the nations.
12. The medical vocabulary is precise: shever ('fracture, break, shattering') describes a catastrophic structural break, and makkah ('wound, blow, plague') refers to an injury inflicted by a blow. The adjective anush ('incurable, desperate, beyond remedy') and nachlah ('grievous, sickly') paint a clinical picture of a patient given no hope of recovery. The feminine singular address personifies Israel/Judah as a wounded woman — a striking shift from the masculine 'Jacob' of the previous verses.
13. The word mazor ('healing, binding up of a wound') refers to the medical treatment of bandaging. The phrase teruphot refu'ot ('healing remedies, medicines of cure') uses two near-synonyms intensifying the hopelessness — not just one medicine is missing, but the entire category of healing is unavailable. The legal metaphor dan dinekh ('one judging your case, pleading your cause') introduces a courtroom image: no advocate will step forward on behalf of this patient.
14. The 'lovers' (me'ahavayikh) are the foreign allies Judah courted for political protection — Egypt, Assyria, and others — who have now abandoned her (cf. Ezekiel 16, 23). The most theologically jarring statement is hikkitikh ('I struck you') — God identifies himself as the one who inflicted the wound, and he did so makkat oyeve ('as an enemy strikes'). God temporarily took the posture of an enemy toward his own people. The reason is stated plainly: rov avonekh ('the greatness of your iniquity') and atsmu chatto'tayikh ('your sins were numerous'). The distinction between avon ('iniquity, guilt') and chata'ot ('sins, failures') preserves the Hebrew differentiation between the condition of guilt and the individual acts of transgression.
15. God's question is not sympathetic but confrontational: why cry out when you brought this upon yourself? The repetition of rov avonekh and atsmu chatto'tayikh from verse 14 hammers the point — the suffering has a cause, and the cause is Israel's own faithlessness. The final asiti elleh lakh ('I have done these things to you') is stark divine ownership of the judgment. Yet in context, this brutal honesty is preparation for healing — God must diagnose before he can cure.
16. The word lakhen ('therefore') marks the pivot from diagnosis to promise — precisely because God inflicted the wound justly, he now turns justice against the oppressors. The fourfold reversal (devourers devoured, enemies exiled, plunderers plundered, looters looted) uses measure-for-measure justice language. The verb forms create precise mirror images: okhlayikh ye'akhelu ('your devourers will be devoured'), shosayikh limshissah ('your plunderers to plunder'), bozezeyikh etten lavaz ('your looters I will give to looting').
17. The word arukhah ('healing, new flesh over a wound') specifically describes the growth of new tissue — this is not merely pain relief but genuine regeneration. The motive clause is striking: God heals not because Israel has repented but because the nations have dismissed Zion as worthless. The taunt niddachah ('outcast, driven away') and doresh ein lah ('no one seeks her') provoke God's protective instinct — he will not let his people be written off by their contemptors. The verb darash ('seek, care for') is the same verb used in 29:7 for seeking the city's welfare — no one is seeking Zion's welfare, so God himself will.
18. The 'tents of Jacob' (ohalei Ya'aqov) evokes the nomadic patriarchal past — even in restoration, Israel's identity is rooted in the tent-dwelling ancestors. The word arachem ('I will have compassion') from the root r-ch-m connotes deep, visceral mercy — the same root as rechem ('womb'). The tel ('mound, ruin-heap') refers to the archaeological mound formed by successive cities built on the same site — Jerusalem will be rebuilt precisely where it fell, on top of its own ruins.
19. The pairing of todah ('thanksgiving, praise') and qol mesachaqim ('sound of those celebrating, laughing') replaces the sounds of lamentation that have characterized the preceding chapters. The verbs hirbiti ('I will multiply') and hikhbadti ('I will make weighty, honor') reverse the exile's diminishment. The root k-v-d in hikhbadtim is the same root as kavod ('glory, weight') — God will restore their significance, their substance, their weight in the world.
20. The word adato ('his assembly, his congregation') uses edah, the term for Israel's formal assembly before God — the covenant community reconstituted. The phrase lefanai tikkon ('before me it will be established') means the community will stand secure in God's presence, a reversal of the exile's separation from the temple and divine presence. The verb paqadti ('I will attend to, punish') carries the same double sense noted in 29:10 — God's attention means judgment for oppressors.
21. The word addiro ('his majestic one, his noble leader') and moshlo ('his ruler') describe the future Davidic king from verse 9. The phrase arav et libbo ('pledged his heart, risked his life') uses the vocabulary of surety and collateral — approaching God is so dangerous that no one would dare without divine invitation. The verb hiqravtiv ('I will bring him near') uses the same root as qorban ('offering') — the king's access to God's presence has a priestly, sacrificial quality. This verse grants the future ruler both political authority (he comes from the people) and priestly access (he approaches God directly).
22. The bilateral covenant formula vihyitem li le'am va'anokhi ehyeh lakhem le'elohim ('you will be my people and I will be your God') is the theological center of the Book of Consolation. It appeared in 11:4 as a covenant that was broken; here it reappears as a covenant being restored. The formula's simplicity — two clauses, perfect symmetry — carries the full weight of the Sinai relationship. This is the third time this formula appears in Jeremiah (7:23, 11:4), and each occurrence marks a different stage: original promise, broken covenant, and now renewed hope.
23. This verse is nearly identical to 23:19, where it concludes the oracle against false prophets. Its reuse here creates a literary bracket: the judgment announced against false prophets in chapter 23 frames the restoration promises of chapter 30. The word sa'ar ('storm, tempest') and the participle mitgorer ('sweeping, whirling, churning') depict divine wrath as a natural catastrophe — uncontrollable, indiscriminate against those in its path. The

verb *yachul* ('it will whirl, burst, writhe') on the heads of the wicked echoes the labor imagery of verse 6.

24. Also nearly identical to 23:20. The phrase *mezimmot libbo* ('the purposes/plans of his heart') echoes the *machshavot* of 29:11 — God has purposes, and his anger serves those purposes rather than existing for its own sake. The phrase *be'acharit hayyamim* ('in the latter days, in days to come') points to a future moment of clarity when the full meaning of both judgment and restoration will be understood. The verb *titbonenu* ('you will understand, contemplate, discern') implies that comprehension of God's ways requires hindsight — only from the vantage point of fulfillment can the coherence of God's plan be seen.

31

Summary: *Jeremiah 31 is the theological summit of the Book of Consolation (chapters 30-33) and arguably the single most consequential chapter in all of Jeremiah. It opens with oracles of restoration for northern Israel — Ephraim, the lost tribes — promising that the exiles will return with weeping and joy. Rachel weeps for her vanished children at Ramah, but God commands her to stop: they will come back. The chapter builds to its climax in verses 31-34, where God announces the *berit chadashah* — the new covenant — the only occurrence of this exact phrase in the entire Hebrew Bible. This covenant will not be like Sinai, which Israel broke; instead, God will write his torah directly on human hearts, making external enforcement unnecessary. The chapter closes with cosmic imagery: as long as the fixed order of sun, moon, and stars endures, Israel will endure as a nation before God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the phrase *berit chadashah* ('new covenant'), which appears nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible and which gave the Christian scriptures their name ('New Testament' derives from the Latin *novum testamentum*, a translation of the Greek *he kaine diatheke*, itself a translation of the Hebrew *berit chadashah* from this passage). The theological weight is extraordinary: Hebrews 8:8-12 quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 at length as the foundational text for the new covenant in Christ, while Jewish tradition reads the same passage as a promise of renewed Torah observance written on Israelite hearts. Both readings find genuine support in the Hebrew. We rendered this passage with maximum transparency, documenting both traditions without privileging either. The chapter also contains Rachel weeping for her children (v. 15), quoted in Matthew 2:18 in connection with Herod's massacre of the innocents — a typological application that layers new meaning onto Jeremiah's original reference to the Exile. The divine declaration 'I have loved you with an everlasting love' (*ahavat olam*, v. 3) and the depiction of God's *rachamim* ('womb-love') for Ephraim (v. 20) together present the most concentrated expression of divine tenderness in the prophetic literature.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the 'new covenant' and the Sinai covenant required careful handling: the Hebrew *chadashah* means 'new' not 'renewed,' yet the content of the new covenant (Torah on hearts, knowledge of God) is continuous with the old. We rendered the Hebrew transparently and documented both the discontinuity (genuinely new, not a patch on the old) and the continuity (Torah remains central) in the notes. The verb *heperu* (v. 32, 'they broke') required attention — God is the wronged party, the faithful husband whose covenant partner proved faithless. The phrase *ahavat olam* (v. 3) was rendered 'everlasting love' rather than 'eternal love' because *olam* denotes duration beyond sight, not philosophical infinity. In verse 15, Rachel's weeping at Ramah required historical context: Rachel's tomb was near Bethlehem, but Ramah was a deportation staging point — the note documents both the geographical and typological significance. The verb *mashakhtikh* (v. 3, 'I have drawn you') carries overtones of attraction and courtship, which the expanded rendering addresses.*

Connections: *Verse 3 (*ahavat olam* / *chesed*) connects to Hosea's marriage metaphor and to Psalm 136's refrain 'for his faithful love endures forever.' Verse 15 (Rachel weeping) is quoted in Matthew 2:18. Verses 31-34 (the new covenant) are quoted at length in Hebrews 8:8-12 and 10:16-17, and the phrase *berit chadashah* stands behind the institution narrative of the Lord's Supper (Luke 22:20, 1 Corinthians 11:25). Verse 20 (*rachamim* for Ephraim) connects to Hosea 11:8-9 (God's compassion overriding judgment). The cosmic permanence language (vv. 35-37) echoes Genesis 1 and Psalm 89:36-37. The rebuilding of Jerusalem (vv. 38-40) connects forward to Nehemiah's reconstruction and to eschatological visions in Zechariah 14 and Revelation 21.*

¹At that time, declares the LORD, I will be God to all the clans of Israel, and they will be my people. ²This is what the LORD says: The people who survived the sword found favor in the wilderness — Israel, when I went to give him rest. ³From far away the LORD appeared to me: "I have loved you with an everlasting love; therefore I have drawn you with faithful love." ⁴I will build you again, and you will be rebuilt, young woman Israel! You will again take up your tambourines and go out dancing with those who celebrate. ⁵You will again plant vineyards on the hills of Samaria; planters will plant and enjoy the fruit. ⁶For a day is coming when watchmen on the hills of Ephraim will call out: "Come, let us go up to Zion, to the LORD our God!" ⁷For this is what the LORD says: Sing out with joy for Jacob! Shout at the head of the nations! Make it heard, give praise, and say: "LORD, save your people, the remnant of Israel!" ⁸Look — I am bringing them from the land of the north and gathering them from the farthest parts of the earth. Among them will be the blind and the lame, the pregnant woman and the one in labor, together — a great assembly will return here. ⁹They will come with weeping, and with pleas for mercy I will lead them. I will bring them to streams of water, on a level path where they will not stumble — for I am a father to Israel, and Ephraim is my firstborn. ¹⁰Hear the word of the LORD, O nations, and proclaim it on the distant coastlands. Say: "The one who scattered Israel will gather him and guard him as a shepherd guards his flock." ¹¹For the LORD has ransomed Jacob and redeemed him from the hand of one stronger than he. ¹²They will come and sing on the heights of Zion, streaming toward the goodness of the LORD — toward grain, new wine, and fresh oil, toward young flocks and herds. Their life will be like a well-watered garden, and they will never languish again. ¹³Then young women will rejoice in the dance, and young men and elders together. I will turn their mourning into joy; I will comfort them and give them gladness instead of grief. ¹⁴I will drench the priests with abundance, and my people will be satisfied with my goodness, declares the LORD. ¹⁵This is what the LORD says: A voice is heard in Ramah — wailing, bitter weeping. Rachel is weeping for her children; she refuses to be comforted for her children, because they are gone. ¹⁶This is what the LORD says: Hold back your voice from weeping and your eyes from tears, for there is a reward for your labor, declares the LORD — they will return from the land of the enemy. ¹⁷There is hope for your future, declares the LORD — your children will return to their own territory. ¹⁸I have surely heard Ephraim grieving: "You disciplined me and I was disciplined, like an untrained calf. Bring me back and I will return, for you are the LORD my God." ¹⁹For after I turned away, I was filled with regret; after I came to understand, I struck my thigh in shame. I was ashamed — deeply humiliated — because I bore the disgrace of my youth. ²⁰Is Ephraim my precious son? Is he the child I delight in? For as often as I speak against him, I still remember him deeply. Therefore my inner being churns for him — I will surely have compassion on him, declares the LORD. ²¹Set up road markers for yourself; place signposts for yourself. Fix your attention on the highway, the road by which you went. Return, young woman Israel — return to these cities of yours. ²²How long will you waver, O faithless daughter? For the LORD has created something new on the earth — a woman will embrace a man. ²³This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: They will again use this saying in the land of Judah and its cities when I restore their fortunes — "May the LORD bless you, O pasture of righteousness, O holy mountain!" ²⁴Judah and all its cities together will dwell in it — farmers and those who move about with their flocks. ²⁵For I will satisfy the weary, and every one who languishes I will fill. ²⁶At this I awoke and looked around, and my sleep had been pleasant to me. ²⁷The days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of humans and the seed of animals. ²⁸And just as I watched over them to uproot, to tear down, to overthrow, to destroy, and to bring harm — so I will watch over them to build and to plant, declares the LORD. ²⁹In those days they will no longer say, "The parents ate sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge." ³⁰Instead, each person will die for his own iniquity. Whoever eats sour grapes — his own teeth will be set on edge. ³¹The days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will cut a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah. ³²It will not be like the covenant I cut with their ancestors on the day I took them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt — my covenant that they broke, though I was a faithful husband to them, declares the LORD. ³³Rather, this is the covenant I will cut with the house of Israel after those days, declares the LORD: I will put my instruction within them, and I will write it on their hearts. I will be their God, and they will be my people. ³⁴No longer will each one teach his neighbor or each one his brother, saying, "Know the LORD," for they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest of them, declares the LORD. For I will forgive their iniquity, and their sin I will remember no more. ³⁵This is what the LORD says — he who gives the sun for light by day, who sets the

fixed order of moon and stars for light by night, who stirs up the sea so that its waves roar — the LORD of Hosts is his name: ³⁶"If these fixed orders could be removed from before me," declares the LORD, "then the offspring of Israel would also cease to be a nation before me — for all time." ³⁷This is what the LORD says: "If the heavens above could be measured and the foundations of the earth below explored, then I would also reject all the offspring of Israel for everything they have done," declares the LORD. ³⁸The days are coming, declares the LORD, when the city will be rebuilt for the LORD, from the Tower of Hananel to the Corner Gate. ³⁹The measuring line will extend further, straight to the hill of Gareb, and will turn toward Goah. ⁴⁰The entire valley of corpses and ashes, and all the terraced fields as far as the Kidron Valley, to the corner of the Horse Gate toward the east — all of it will be holy to the LORD. It will never again be uprooted or torn down, for all time.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The covenant formula 'I will be their God and they will be my people' reappears here at the opening of the chapter, signaling the restoration of the relationship broken in chapters 2-29. The word mishpechot ('clans, families') emphasizes that every subdivision of Israel — not just Judah — is included in the restoration.
2. The Hebrew chen ('favor, grace') echoes the language of the Exodus — just as Israel found favor with God in the wilderness of Sinai, so the survivors of judgment will find divine favor again. The phrase sridei charev ('survivors of the sword') refers to those who survived military destruction, either the Assyrian conquest of the north or the coming Babylonian exile.
3. The phrase ahavat olam ('everlasting love') appears only here and in the parallel construction of Psalm 103:17. The word olam does not denote philosophical eternity but duration whose limits are hidden from view — love that stretches beyond what can be seen. The verb mashakh in this context means 'to draw, to attract, to pull gently' — it is the language of courtship, not coercion. Chesed is rendered 'faithful love' per project standard, capturing the covenantal dimension that the KJV's 'lovingkindness' partially obscures. The verse structure places two declarations of divine love in parallel: the love itself (ahavat olam) and its active expression (chesed).
4. The title betulat Yisrael ('virgin of Israel') is rendered 'young woman Israel' because betulah in prophetic address functions as a personification of the nation as a maiden — the emphasis is on vulnerability and youth rather than sexual status. The tambourines (tuppim) recall the celebration after the Red Sea crossing (Exodus 15:20), where Miriam led the women with timbrels — the restoration will mirror the Exodus celebration.
5. The reference to Samaria — capital of the northern kingdom destroyed by Assyria in 722 BCE — signals that this oracle addresses the lost northern tribes, not just Judah. The verb chilelu ('enjoy as common, treat as profane') is a technical agricultural term: fruit trees were considered sacred (and their fruit forbidden) for the first three years (Leviticus 19:23-25). To 'profane' the fruit means to reach the year when it becomes ordinary food — the planters will live long enough to enjoy what they planted.
6. The notsrim ('watchmen, sentinels') are the lookouts who scan for pilgrimage festivals and new moons. The stunning element is location: Ephraim's watchmen — from the rebellious northern kingdom that rejected the Jerusalem temple — will call their people to worship at Zion. This envisions the reunification of the divided kingdoms around a single sanctuary. The verb na'aleh ('let us go up') is the technical term for pilgrimage to Jerusalem, which sits at elevation.
7. The phrase berosh hagoyim ('at the head of the nations') indicates that Israel's restoration will be so dramatic that it becomes the leading story among all peoples. The prayer hosha YHWH ('save, LORD') uses the root y-sh-a, from which the name Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus derives. The word she'erit ('remnant') is a key prophetic concept — not all were destroyed; a preserved core survives for restoration.
8. The catalogue of vulnerable people — blind, lame, pregnant, laboring — emphasizes that this is not a military march but a compassionate ingathering. God brings home those who could never make the journey on their own strength. The 'land of the north' (erets tsafon) is the standard designation for Babylon and Assyria, which lay north-northeast of Israel along the Fertile Crescent trade routes.
9. The declaration 'Ephraim is my firstborn' (Ephrayim bekhori hu) is remarkable because historically Ephraim was Joseph's younger son (Genesis 48:14-20) and the northern kingdom that rebelled against the Davidic dynasty. God reasserts his paternal claim over the estranged tribes. The 'level path' (derekh yesharah) and 'streams of water' echo the new exodus imagery of Isaiah 40-55 — God will make the return journey as miraculous as the original Exodus.
10. The nations themselves are summoned as witnesses to Israel's restoration — the same nations that watched the destruction will watch the regathering. The verb mezareh ('the one who scattered') uses the same root as 'winnowing' — scattering grain on the threshing floor. God scattered Israel like chaff, but now gathers them as a shepherd gathers sheep. The mixed metaphors (winnowing and shepherding) span the full arc from judgment to restoration.
11. Two redemption verbs appear together: padah ('ransom,' commercial redemption — paying a price to free someone) and ga'al ('redeem,' familial redemption — a kinsman reclaiming what belongs to the family). Together they present God as both the one who pays the price and the kinsman who is obligated by blood to rescue. The 'one stronger' refers to Babylon, the imperial power that held Israel captive.
12. The verb naharu ('stream, flow, radiate') depicts the people flowing toward Zion like rivers converging — an image of irresistible, joyful movement. The word nephesh ('soul, life, being') is rendered 'life' rather than 'soul' because the comparison to a watered garden emphasizes the whole person's flourishing, not an immaterial soul. The catalogue of blessings (grain, wine, oil, livestock) represents the full scope of agricultural abundance

promised under the covenant.

13. The reversal theme is emphatic: mourning becomes joy, grief becomes gladness. The word *betulah* ('young woman') here functions collectively — all the young women of restored Israel will dance. The pairing of *bachurim* ('young men') and *zeqenim* ('elders') encompasses the full demographic range. The verb *nichamtim* ('I will comfort them') shares the root n-ch-m with the name Nehemiah ('the LORD comforts') — comfort is not passive consolation but active divine intervention to reverse sorrow.
14. The verb *rivveithi* ('I will drench, saturate') is more intense than simple satisfaction — it means to soak thoroughly, to overflow. The word *dashen* ('fatness, abundance') refers to the choicest portions of sacrificial offerings. When the people bring abundant offerings, the priests' portion overflows — prosperity in worship and daily life are inseparable in this vision.
15. The verb *mevakkah* ('weeping') is a participle — Rachel's weeping is ongoing, not a single event. The phrase *me'anah lehinnachem* ('she refuses to be comforted') uses the same root n-ch-m as verse 13, creating a deliberate contrast: God promises to comfort Israel, but Rachel refuses comfort. The tension is resolved in the next verse when God commands her to stop weeping. Ramah is identified with modern er-Ram, about five miles north of Jerusalem. In Jeremiah 40:1, Ramah is where the Babylonian captain Nebuzaradan processed the exiles — it was literally where the deportees were gathered. Matthew 2:18 quotes this verse in connection with Herod's slaughter of the infants of Bethlehem, applying it typologically to a new grief near Rachel's tomb (Genesis 35:19).
16. God directly addresses Rachel and commands her to stop weeping — not because her grief is wrong but because it will be answered. The word *sakhar* ('reward, wages') is concrete and commercial: Rachel's labor (*pe'ullatekh*) of bearing and raising children will be compensated. The children are not gone permanently — they will return. The verb *shavu* ('they will return') uses the key Jeremiah verb *shuv*, here in its hopeful sense of homecoming.
17. The word *acharit* ('end, latter days, future') here means the outcome, the final chapter — Rachel's story does not end in grief. The word *gevulam* ('their territory, border') is specific: the children will not merely survive in exile but will return to their own ancestral land. The promise addresses the deepest fear of exile — permanent displacement from the promised land.
18. The emphatic construction *shamoa shamati* ('I have surely heard') — an infinitive absolute — stresses that God has been listening to Ephraim's lament. The simile of the untrained calf (*egel lo lummad*) acknowledges that Ephraim was stubborn and needed breaking, like a young ox that has never worn a yoke. The prayer *hashiveni ve'ashuvah* ('bring me back and I will return') plays on the verb *shuv* — Ephraim cannot return on his own; God must initiate the turning. This is a theology of grace embedded in a single Hebrew verb: repentance requires divine initiative.
19. Ephraim's confession continues. Striking the thigh (*safaqti al yarekh*) is a gesture of grief, shame, and self-reproach — comparable to beating the breast in other cultures. The 'disgrace of my youth' (*cherpat ne'urai*) refers to the sins of the nation's early history — idolatry, rebellion, the golden calves of Jeroboam. The word *niklamti* ('humiliated, disgraced') is stronger than simple embarrassment — it is the shame of public exposure.
20. The rhetorical questions expect an emphatic 'yes' — Ephraim is God's precious son, the child of delight. The phrase *hamu me'ai* ('my inner being churns') describes an involuntary physical response — the intestines/bowels twisting with emotion. This is not a calm decision to show mercy but an uncontrollable parental instinct. The verb *rachem arachamenu* ('I will surely have compassion') is the emphatic infinitive absolute of r-ch-m, which shares its root with *rechem* ('womb'). God's mercy for Ephraim is womb-love — the primal, visceral compassion of a parent for the child of their body. This verse is among the most intimate depictions of divine emotion in the Hebrew Bible, paralleled by Hosea 11:8-9.
21. The command shifts to practical preparation for the return journey. The *tsiyunim* ('road markers, cairns') and *tamrurim* ('signposts, guideposts') — note the same word *tamrurim* used for 'bitter weeping' in v. 15, here meaning something entirely different (guideposts) — mark the way home. The command *shuvi* ('return!') is addressed to personified Israel as a young woman being called to come home. The way she went into exile becomes the road home.
22. This is one of the most debated verses in Jeremiah. The phrase *neqevah tesovev gaver* ('a woman will surround/embrace a man') has generated centuries of interpretive dispute. The verb *sovev* can mean 'to surround, encircle, court, protect, embrace.' The meaning may be: (1) Israel (the faithless woman) will return to court/embrace God (the man) — a reversal of the normal pattern where the man pursues; (2) a woman will protect a warrior — a reversal of gender roles signaling a new era; (3) a reference to restored fertility and normalcy. The Hebrew is genuinely ambiguous, and we render the most natural reading while documenting the alternatives. The word *chadashah* ('new, unprecedented') emphasizes that whatever this means, it is without precedent.
23. The oracle now shifts from northern Israel to Judah. The phrase *neveh tsedek* ('pasture/dwelling of righteousness') depicts Jerusalem as a place where righteousness resides naturally, like sheep in a green pasture. The parallel title *har haqqodesh* ('holy mountain') refers to Mount Zion, the temple mount. The phrase *shuvti et shevutam* ('I restore their fortunes') uses a wordplay on *shuv* — the same root that means 'return/repent' here means 'restore' in the causative sense.
24. The vision of restoration includes both settled agriculture (*ikkarim*, 'farmers, plowmen') and pastoral nomadism (those who travel with flocks). Both ways of life will coexist peacefully in the restored land — a picture of social harmony and economic completeness.
25. The word *nephesh* ('soul, life, being') appears twice and is rendered according to context — the 'weary soul' becomes 'the weary' (the whole exhausted person) and the 'sorrowful soul' becomes 'every one who languishes.' The verb *milleti* ('I will fill') depicts God pouring fullness into emptiness — the opposite of the famine and deprivation of exile.
26. This enigmatic verse suggests the preceding oracles came as a dream or night vision. Jeremiah awakens refreshed — his sleep was *arevah* ('pleasant, sweet') — a sharp contrast to the nightmarish visions elsewhere in the book. The implication is that visions of restoration are so welcome, so

different from his usual burden, that even the prophet's sleep is transformed.

27. The verb *zarati* ('I will sow') reverses the metaphor of judgment: where exile scattered and depleted the population, God will now plant new life — both human and animal — in the land. Both kingdoms (Israel and Judah) are named together, continuing the reunification theme of the chapter. The agricultural metaphor is deliberate: God is the farmer who plants his people in the soil of the promised land.
28. This verse directly echoes Jeremiah's commissioning in 1:10, where God set him 'over nations and kingdoms to uproot and tear down, to destroy and overthrow, to build and to plant.' The five verbs of destruction are now matched by two verbs of restoration (build, plant). The verb *shaqadti* ('I watched over') puns on the almond branch (*shaqed*) vision of 1:11-12: God is 'watching' (*shoqed*) over his word to fulfill it — first for judgment, now for restoration. The same vigilance that executed judgment will now execute rebuilding.
29. This proverb (also quoted in Ezekiel 18:2) expressed the complaint that the present generation was suffering for the sins of previous generations — an objection to collective, intergenerational punishment. God declares that this proverb will become obsolete in the new era. The word *boser* ('sour/unripe grapes') describes fruit that is not yet ready — the metaphor suggests premature, inappropriate consequences falling on the wrong generation.
30. Individual responsibility replaces collective punishment. This principle — that each person bears the consequences of their own sin — prepares for the new covenant theology of verses 31-34, where the relationship with God becomes individual ('they will all know me') rather than mediated through collective institutions. The shift from communal to individual accountability is one of the most significant theological developments in the prophetic literature (cf. Ezekiel 18).
31. The phrase *berit chadashah* appears only here in the entire Hebrew Bible (31:31). The verb *karati* ('I will cut') retains the ancient idiom of covenant-making — 'cutting' a covenant by sacrificing and dividing animals. Both houses are named: this is not a covenant with Judah alone (the surviving southern kingdom) but with all Israel reunited. The word *chadashah* is unambiguously 'new' — the same adjective used for a 'new song' (*shir chadash*, Psalm 33:3) or a 'new thing' (*chadashah*, Isaiah 43:19). It is not the word for 'renew' (*chadesh*). The theological weight of this verse is immense: it is quoted at length in Hebrews 8:8-12 and 10:16-17, and the phrase 'new covenant' (*novum testamentum* in Latin, *he kaine diatheke* in Greek) gave the Christian scriptures their name.
32. The phrase *hecheziki veyadam* ('I took them by the hand') is tender and parental — the image of God gripping the hand of a small child to lead them through danger. The verb *heferu* ('they broke') is emphatic: they didn't merely neglect the covenant but actively annulled it. The clause *va'anokhi ba'alti vam* is debated: *ba'alti* can mean 'I was husband to them' (from *ba'al*, 'to be husband/lord') or 'I rejected them' (from *ba'al* in a different conjugation, or an Aramaic cognate). We follow the majority reading 'I was a faithful husband to them,' which fits Jeremiah's sustained marriage metaphor (chapters 2-3) and creates the sharpest contrast: God remained faithful; they did not. The added word 'faithful' in the rendering makes explicit what the Hebrew implies through context.
33. The word *torah* is rendered 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture the broader semantic range of the Hebrew — *torah* derives from the root *y-r-h* ('to teach, to instruct') and encompasses teaching, guidance, and revelation, not merely legal statutes. The phrase *beqirbam* ('within them,' literally 'in their inner parts') contrasts with the external stone tablets of Sinai. The verb *ekhtevannah* ('I will write it') uses the same root as the writing on the stone tablets (Exodus 31:18) — God is the author in both cases, but the medium changes from stone to the human heart. The covenant formula 'I will be their God and they will be my people' appears for the third time in this chapter (cf. v. 1), forming an *inclusio* that frames the entire restoration oracle. Hebrews 8:10 quotes this verse, applying the internalized *torah* to the work of Christ and the Holy Spirit.
34. The vision of universal, unmediated knowledge of God is the most radical element of the new covenant: no teaching hierarchy, no priestly mediation, no prophetic intermediary — every person in direct relationship with God. The verb *yada* ('to know') in Hebrew encompasses intimate, experiential, relational knowledge — not merely knowing facts about God but knowing God as a person knows a person. The phrase *lo ezkhod* ('I will not remember any more') does not mean God will forget (divine omniscience is not in question) but that God will choose not to act on the memory — sin will no longer function as a barrier in the relationship. Hebrews 8:11-12 quotes this verse as the climax of the new covenant prophecy, and Hebrews 10:17 returns to the 'remember no more' clause as the basis for the finality of Christ's sacrifice. Jewish reading: the universal knowledge of God is fulfilled when all Israel returns to Torah and knows God through observance, study, and communal life.
35. The cosmic language grounds the permanence of God's promise in the permanence of the created order. The word *chuqqot* ('fixed orders, statutes, decrees') is the same word used for the statutes of the Torah — the laws governing the cosmos and the laws governing Israel share the same vocabulary of divine decree. The verb *roga* ('to stir up, to agitate') depicts God as sovereign over the sea's power — a common ancient Near Eastern motif where the sea represents chaos, and God demonstrates mastery by stirring and calming it at will.
36. The conditional is deliberately impossible: the sun, moon, and stars cannot be removed from their fixed order; therefore, Israel cannot cease to be a nation before God. This is the strongest possible guarantee of national survival — it is tied to the very structure of the cosmos. The word *zera* ('offspring, seed, descendants') emphasizes biological and national continuity. The phrase *kol-hayyamim* ('all the days,' rendered 'for all time') reinforces the permanence.
37. A second impossible conditional reinforces the first: the heavens cannot be measured and the foundations of the earth cannot be explored — therefore God will not reject Israel. The verb *em'as* ('I would reject, spurn') is the word used for God rejecting Saul from kingship (1 Samuel 15:23, 26) — God declares he will never apply that verb to Israel as a whole, no matter what they have done. The phrase *al-kol-asher asu* ('for all that they have done') acknowledges that Israel's sins are real and severe but declares them insufficient to sever the relationship.

38. The final oracle moves from cosmic guarantees to concrete geography. The Tower of Hananel (migdal Chanan'el) stood at the northeast corner of Jerusalem's walls; the Corner Gate (sha'ar hapinnah) was at the northwest. Together they describe the northern wall of the city — the side most vulnerable to attack and the side from which the Babylonians would breach the walls. God will rebuild precisely where the enemy destroyed.
39. Gareb and Goah are otherwise unknown locations, probably on the western or southwestern outskirts of Jerusalem. The measuring line (qav hammiddah) is the surveyor's tool for planning new construction — the city will be expanded beyond its previous boundaries. The rebuilding is not merely restoration to the former state but enlargement.
40. The 'valley of corpses and ashes' (emeq happegarim vehaddeshen) likely refers to the Hinnom Valley (Ge-Hinnom/Gehenna), the site of child sacrifice and later a refuse dump south of Jerusalem. The deshene ('ashes, fatty ashes') may refer to sacrificial ash dumps or cremation residue. That this defiled space will become 'holy to the LORD' represents the ultimate reversal — the most polluted place in Israel's geography becomes sacred ground. The Kidron Valley runs along Jerusalem's eastern side between the city and the Mount of Olives. The Horse Gate was in the southeastern wall. Together these landmarks trace a circuit around the entire expanded city. The final phrase le'olam ('for all time') closes the chapter with the same duration-word (olam) that opened the love declaration in verse 3 — everlasting love, everlasting city.

32

Summary: *Jeremiah 32 records the most dramatic enacted prophecy in the book: while Jerusalem is under Babylonian siege and Jeremiah himself is imprisoned in the guard court, God commands him to purchase a field at Anathoth from his cousin Hanamel. This is the go'el obligation — the kinsman-redeemer must buy family land to keep it in the clan — but exercised at the worst possible moment, when the land is literally in enemy hands. Jeremiah pays seventeen shekels of silver, signs and seals the deed, has it witnessed by Baruch son of Neriah, and orders the documents stored in a clay jar for long-term preservation. Then Jeremiah prays — a sweeping recitation of God's mighty acts from creation through Egypt through the present catastrophe — and confesses his bewilderment: 'You told me to buy a field, but the city is being handed to the Chaldeans!' God responds with one of the most quoted lines in prophetic literature: 'Is anything too hard for me?' The chapter closes with God's promise of restoration, culminating in the berit olam — the everlasting covenant.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the ultimate test of prophetic integrity. Jeremiah has spent decades announcing that Babylon will conquer Judah — and now, at the very moment when his words are coming true, God tells him to invest in real estate. The purchase is absurd by every human calculation: the land is in enemy-occupied territory, the buyer is in prison, and the nation is collapsing. But the purchase is an acted parable — the most expensive prophetic sign-act in the Hebrew Bible. By buying land he cannot use, Jeremiah stakes his own money on God's promise of restoration. Baruch son of Neriah, Jeremiah's faithful scribe, appears here as the legal witness; he will later write and preserve Jeremiah's oracles (chapter 36) and accompany Jeremiah into Egyptian exile (chapter 43). The clay jar storage instruction (v. 14) anticipates the Dead Sea Scrolls by six centuries — the same preservation technique that would protect biblical manuscripts for two millennia. Jeremiah's prayer (vv. 17-25) is one of the great prayers of the Hebrew Bible, moving from creation theology to Exodus memory to present crisis with unflinching honesty. God's response introduces the berit olam ('everlasting covenant,' v. 40), linking this chapter to the berit chadashah of chapter 31.*

Translation Friction: *The legal details of the land purchase (vv. 9-14) required careful handling — the Hebrew describes two documents (sealed and open copies), witnesses, and clay jar storage, reflecting authentic ancient Near Eastern property transaction procedures. The word sefer ('document, scroll') is rendered 'deed' in the property context rather than the more general 'book.' Jeremiah's prayer (vv. 17-25) shifts between praise and bewilderment, and we preserved the emotional arc without smoothing the transition. The phrase hayipale mimmenni kol davar (v. 27, 'Is anything too hard/wonderful for me?') uses the verb pala, which means both 'to be wonderful' and 'to be difficult/impossible' — we rendered it 'too difficult' in context but documented the dual meaning. The go'el obligation (kinsman-redemption right) required an expanded rendering because its full significance is lost without cultural context.*

Connections: *The kinsman-redeemer (go'el) obligation connects to Leviticus 25:25-28 (redemption of family land), Ruth 4 (Boaz as go'el), and Isaiah 41:14, 43:14, 44:6 (God as Israel's Go'el). The question 'Is anything too hard for me?' echoes Genesis 18:14 (God's question to Abraham about Sarah's pregnancy) — the same verb pala is used in both. The everlasting covenant (berit olam, v. 40) connects to the new covenant of 31:31-34 and to the*

Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 17:7), the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 23:5), and the priestly covenant (Numbers 25:13). Baruch son of Neriah appears again in chapters 36, 43, and 45. The clay jar storage instruction connects forward to the Dead Sea Scrolls discovery at Qumran. Jeremiah's prayer echoes Nehemiah 9 and Daniel 9 as one of the great recitals of salvation history.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD in the tenth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, which was the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar. ²At that time the army of the king of Babylon was besieging Jerusalem, and Jeremiah the prophet was confined in the court of the guard, which was in the palace of the king of Judah. ³Zedekiah king of Judah had confined him, saying, "Why do you prophesy, saying, 'This is what the LORD says: I am about to hand this city over to the king of Babylon, and he will capture it; ⁴and Zedekiah king of Judah will not escape from the Chaldeans, but will certainly be handed over to the king of Babylon, and will speak with him face to face and see him eye to eye; ⁵He will take Zedekiah to Babylon, and there he will remain until I attend to him, declares the LORD. If you fight against the Chaldeans, you will not succeed.'" ⁶Jeremiah said: The word of the LORD came to me: ⁷"Hanamel son of Shallum, your uncle's son, is coming to you. He will say: 'Buy my field at Anathoth, for the right of redemption belongs to you as next of kin to purchase it.'" ⁸Then Hanamel, my uncle's son, came to me in the court of the guard, just as the LORD had said, and told me: "Please buy my field at Anathoth in the territory of Benjamin, for you have the right of inheritance and the right of redemption — buy it for yourself." Then I knew that this was the word of the LORD. ⁹So I bought the field at Anathoth from Hanamel, my uncle's son, and I weighed out the silver for him — seventeen shekels of silver. ¹⁰I signed the deed, sealed it, called witnesses, and weighed the silver on scales. ¹¹Then I took the deed of purchase — the sealed copy containing the terms and conditions, and the open copy — ¹²and I gave the deed of purchase to Baruch son of Neriah, son of Mahseiah, in the presence of my cousin Hanamel, in the presence of the witnesses who signed the deed of purchase, and in the presence of all the Judeans sitting in the court of the guard. ¹³Then I instructed Baruch in their presence: ¹⁴"This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Take these deeds — this sealed deed of purchase and this open deed — and place them in a clay jar so that they will last for a long time." ¹⁵For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Houses, fields, and vineyards will again be bought in this land. ¹⁶After I had given the deed of purchase to Baruch son of Neriah, I prayed to the LORD: ¹⁷"Ah, Lord GOD! You yourself made the heavens and the earth by your great power and by your outstretched arm. Nothing is too difficult for you. ¹⁸You show faithful love to thousands, yet you repay the iniquity of ancestors into the laps of their children after them — O great and mighty God, the LORD of Hosts is his name! ¹⁹Great in counsel and mighty in deed — your eyes are open to all the ways of humankind, to repay each person according to his ways and according to the fruit of his actions. ²⁰You performed signs and wonders in the land of Egypt — and to this day, both in Israel and among all people — and you made a name for yourself, as it remains today. ²¹You brought your people Israel out of the land of Egypt with signs and wonders, with a strong hand and an outstretched arm, and with great terror. ²²You gave them this land that you swore to their ancestors to give them — a land flowing with milk and honey. ²³They came in and took possession of it, but they did not obey your voice or walk in your instruction. They did nothing of all you commanded them to do — so you brought all this disaster upon them. ²⁴Look — the siege ramps have reached the city to capture it, and the city is being handed over to the Chaldeans who fight against it, because of sword, famine, and plague. What you spoke has come to pass — and you can see it yourself! ²⁵Yet you yourself said to me, Lord GOD: 'Buy the field with silver and call witnesses' — even though the city is being handed over to the Chaldeans!" ²⁶Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: ²⁷"I am the LORD, the God of all living things. Is anything too difficult for me?" ²⁸Therefore, this is what the LORD says: I am about to hand this city over to the Chaldeans and to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and he will capture it. ²⁹The Chaldeans who are fighting against this city will come and set this city on fire, burning it along with the houses on whose rooftops they burned incense to Baal and poured out drink offerings to other gods, provoking me to anger. ³⁰For the people of Israel and the people of Judah have done nothing but evil in my sight from their youth, for the people of Israel have done nothing but provoke me to anger with the work of their hands, declares the LORD. ³¹For this city has been a source of my anger and my fury from the day they built it until this very day, so that I must remove it from my presence — ³²because of all the evil that the people of Israel and the people of Judah have done to provoke me to anger — they, their kings, their officials, their priests, their prophets, the people of Judah, and

the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ³³They turned their backs to me, not their faces. Though I taught them persistently, teaching again and again, they would not listen or accept correction. ³⁴They placed their detestable idols in the house that bears my name, defiling it. ³⁵They built the high places of Baal in the Valley of Ben-Hinnom to make their sons and daughters pass through fire to Molech — something I never commanded and that never entered my mind — committing this abomination and causing Judah to sin. ³⁶"Now therefore, this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says about this city that you say is being handed over to the king of Babylon by sword, famine, and plague: ³⁷I am going to gather them from all the lands where I have driven them in my anger, in my fury, and in great wrath. I will bring them back to this place and make them dwell in safety. ³⁸They will be my people, and I will be their God. ³⁹I will give them one heart and one path, to revere me at all times, for their own good and for the good of their children after them. ⁴⁰I will cut an everlasting covenant with them: I will never turn away from them or cease doing them good. I will place the reverence of me in their hearts so that they will not turn away from me. ⁴¹I will take delight in doing them good, and I will plant them firmly in this land with all my heart and with all my being. ⁴²For this is what the LORD says: Just as I brought all this great disaster upon this people, so I am going to bring upon them all the good that I am promising them. ⁴³Fields will again be purchased in this land about which you say, 'It is desolate, without human or animal — it has been handed over to the Chaldeans.' ⁴⁴Fields will be bought with silver, deeds will be written, sealed, and witnessed — in the territory of Benjamin, in the area around Jerusalem, in the cities of Judah, in the cities of the hill country, in the cities of the lowlands, and in the cities of the Negev. For I will restore their fortunes, declares the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double dating system (regal years of both the Judean king and the Babylonian emperor) reflects the political reality of vassal status — Judah's calendar is now synchronized with Babylon's. The tenth year of Zedekiah is approximately 588/587 BCE, during the final siege of Jerusalem. The Hebrew spelling Nevukhadre'tsars alternates with Nevukhadnettsar in the book; we standardize the English to 'Nebuchadnezzar,' the most recognized form.
2. The chatsar hammattarah ('court of the guard') was not a dungeon but a military detention facility within the royal compound — Jeremiah had restricted movement but was not in a pit or cell (contrast 38:6, where he is lowered into a cistern). The juxtaposition is deliberate: Jerusalem is besieged from without, and God's prophet is imprisoned from within. The very king who imprisoned Jeremiah for his prophecies is now watching those prophecies come true.
3. Zedekiah's question 'Why do you prophesy?' reveals the king's frustration — he does not dispute the content of Jeremiah's message but objects to the prophet's insistence on speaking it publicly during a siege. The phrase *notein et ha'ir* ('handing over the city') uses the participial form, indicating an action already in progress — God is in the process of giving Jerusalem to Babylon.
4. The phrase 'mouth to mouth' (*pihu im pihu*) and 'eyes to eyes' (*einav et einav*) describe a personal encounter — Zedekiah will stand before Nebuchadnezzar as a defeated vassal. The emphatic infinitive absolute *hinnton yinnaton* ('will certainly be handed over') leaves no room for escape. The bitter irony: in 2 Kings 25:7, Zedekiah does see Nebuchadnezzar's eyes — and then his own eyes are gouged out, so it is the last thing he ever sees.
5. The phrase *ad-paqdi oto* ('until I attend to him') uses the verb *paqad*, which can mean 'to visit, to attend to, to punish, to care for.' The ambiguity is deliberate — God's 'attending to' Zedekiah could mean judgment or eventual mercy. The final clause is addressed to the collective 'you' (plural) — all of Judah's resistance will fail. This completes Zedekiah's quotation of Jeremiah's prophecy that led to the prophet's imprisonment.
6. The narrative shifts from the editor's framing (vv. 1-5) to Jeremiah's first-person account. The formula *devar-YHWH* ('the word of the LORD') marks the transition to divine instruction — what follows is not Jeremiah's idea but God's command.
7. The Hebrew *dod* ('uncle') makes Hanamel Jeremiah's cousin (son of his father's brother). Anathoth was Jeremiah's hometown (1:1), a Levitical city in the territory of Benjamin. The phrase *mishpat hage'ullah* ('right of redemption') is the legal term from Leviticus 25:25 for the kinsman-redeemer's prerogative. God tells Jeremiah in advance what will happen, confirming it as a divinely orchestrated sign-act, not a coincidental family transaction.
8. The confirmation formula *va'eda ki devar-YHWH hu* ('then I knew that this was the word of the LORD') reveals that Jeremiah had waited to see whether God's prediction would come true. When Hanamel appeared exactly as foretold, Jeremiah recognized the divine origin of the command. The location is specified precisely — Anathoth in Benjamin — establishing the legal record. The phrase *mishpat hayyerushah* ('right of inheritance') is distinct from *ge'ullah* ('redemption') — Jeremiah has both the inheritance claim and the kinsman-redemption right, making his legal obligation unambiguous.
9. The price — seventeen shekels of silver (approximately seven ounces / 196 grams) — is remarkably low, reflecting the depressed value of land during a siege. For comparison, Abraham paid four hundred shekels of silver for the cave of Machpelah (Genesis 23:15-16). The verb *shaqal* ('to weigh') indicates that silver was weighed out on scales rather than counted as coins — coined money was not yet standard in Judah at this period. The transaction is executed with full legal formality despite the absurdity of the circumstances.

10. The verb *katav* ('to write') here means to draw up or sign a legal document. The *sepher* ('document, deed') is the bill of sale. The sealing (*chatam*) involved pressing a cylinder or stamp seal into clay to authenticate the document — equivalent to a notarized signature. The witnesses (*edim*) provided legal testimony to the transaction's validity. Every element follows standard ancient Near Eastern property law, giving the purchase full legal standing even under siege conditions.
11. Two copies of the deed were produced: a sealed copy (*hechatom*) that could not be tampered with, and an open copy (*haggalui*) that could be consulted for reference. This dual-document practice is attested in ancient Near Eastern legal archives — the sealed copy was the authoritative legal record, while the open copy allowed public access to the terms. The words *mitsvah* and *chuqqim* ('commands and statutes' or 'terms and conditions') describe the stipulations of the sale.
12. Baruch son of Neriah son of Mahseiah is Jeremiah's personal scribe and most trusted companion. His name means 'blessed' (*barukh*). An actual clay seal impression (*bullā*) bearing the inscription 'Belonging to Berekyahu son of Neriyaḥu the scribe' was discovered in a Jerusalem antiquities market in 1975, providing possible archaeological confirmation of this biblical figure. The public nature of the transaction — 'in the presence of all the Judeans' — ensures maximum witness coverage, turning a private land deal into a public prophetic declaration.
13. The verb *tsivveh* ('commanded, charged, instructed') indicates a formal directive, not a casual request. Jeremiah gives Baruch specific archival instructions in the hearing of all the witnesses — the storage method matters as much as the purchase itself.
14. The preservation instruction is remarkable: a clay jar (*keli chares*) would protect papyrus or leather documents from moisture, insects, and decay. This is precisely the storage method used for the Dead Sea Scrolls, discovered at Qumran in 1947 — documents preserved in sealed clay jars for approximately two thousand years. The phrase *yamin rabbim* ('many days') acknowledges that the exile will be prolonged, but the deeds must survive because the land will eventually be reclaimed. The documents are evidence of ownership that will outlast the exile.
15. This single sentence is the theological key to the entire chapter. While Babylon besieges the walls, while the army camps in the fields, while vineyards are being trampled and houses burned — God declares that normal economic life will resume. The verb *yiqqanu* ('will be bought') is passive: buying will happen again, as naturally and routinely as it always did before the catastrophe. The three categories — houses, fields, vineyards — represent the full spectrum of property ownership in an agrarian society.
16. The transition from legal transaction to prayer is abrupt — Jeremiah moves directly from signing papers to addressing God. The verb *hitpallel* ('to pray') is reflexive, suggesting deep introspection. What follows (vv. 17-25) is one of the great prayers of the Hebrew Bible, moving from theology of creation through salvation history to bewildered honesty about the present.
17. The exclamation *ahahh* ('ah!') expresses awe, distress, or overwhelm — it is not praise but the sound of a person staggering under the weight of what they are experiencing. The phrase *zeroakha hannotuyah* ('your outstretched arm') is Exodus language (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15) — the same arm that defeated Egypt created the cosmos. The declaration *lo yippale mimmekha kol davar* ('nothing is too difficult/wonderful for you') uses the verb *pala*, which means both 'to be wonderful' and 'to be beyond ability.' Jeremiah affirms God's unlimited power at the outset — which makes his closing confusion (v. 25) all the more honest.
18. The phrase *chesed la'alaphim* ('faithful love to thousands') echoes the divine self-revelation at Sinai (Exodus 34:6-7), where God declares himself 'maintaining faithful love to thousands' but also 'visiting the iniquity of ancestors on children.' Jeremiah quotes this creedal statement almost verbatim. The word *cheiq* ('bosom, lap, fold of garment') is where gifts or payments were placed — ancestral guilt is 'deposited' into the children's laps. The divine titles — *ha'El haggadol haggibor* ('the great, the mighty God') — are formal worship language, elevating the prayer to liturgical register. The full title *YHWH Tseva'ot* ('LORD of Hosts/Armies') identifies God as commander of heavenly forces.
19. The parallelism of 'counsel' (*etsah*) and 'deed' (*aliliyyah*) presents God as both planner and executor — divine wisdom and divine action are inseparable. The phrase *einakha pequchot* ('your eyes are open') depicts God's comprehensive awareness of all human conduct — nothing escapes his sight. The principle of proportional recompense (each person according to his ways) connects to the individual accountability theme of 31:29-30.
20. The phrase *otot umophetim* ('signs and wonders') is the standard Exodus terminology (Deuteronomy 4:34, 6:22). Jeremiah extends God's sign-working beyond Egypt — 'to this day, both in Israel and among all people' — asserting that God's mighty acts continue into the present. The phrase 'made a name for yourself' (*ta'aseh lekha shem*) echoes Nehemiah 9:10 and Isaiah 63:12-14, placing Jeremiah's prayer in the tradition of great salvation-history recitals.
21. The five-fold description of the Exodus — signs, wonders, strong hand, outstretched arm, great terror — echoes the Deuteronomic creed (Deuteronomy 26:8) almost verbatim. The word *mora gadol* ('great terror') refers to the fear God struck into the Egyptians. Jeremiah is not innovating theology here but reciting the traditional confession, grounding his prayer in the oldest layer of Israel's faith.
22. The covenant promise formula *erets zavat chalav udevash* ('a land flowing with milk and honey') encapsulates the agricultural abundance of the promised land. Milk represents pastoral wealth (herds); honey represents either wild bee honey or, more likely, the thick syrup of dates — together they signify a land of overflowing provision. The bitter irony is that this land is now being devastated by the very siege Jeremiah is describing.
23. The prayer reaches its pivot: Israel received the land but failed to keep the covenant. The three-fold negation — they did not obey, did not walk, did nothing of what was commanded — is emphatic and comprehensive. The word *torah* here is rendered 'instruction' per project standard to preserve the broader meaning beyond legal statutes. The result clause (*vattaqre otam*) means literally 'you caused to meet them' — disaster did not happen randomly but was the direct consequence of covenant violation.

24. The solelot ('siege ramps, earthworks') were massive earthen mounds built against the city walls to allow attackers to breach the fortifications. The three instruments of siege destruction — cherev ('sword,' military violence), ra'av ('famine,' starvation from blockade), and dever ('plague,' disease from overcrowding and contamination) — form a recurring triad in Jeremiah (14:12, 21:7, 24:10, 27:8). The final clause 'and you can see it yourself' (vehinneka ro'eh) is startlingly direct — Jeremiah points out to God what God already knows, building to his bewildered question in the next verse.
25. This is the climax of Jeremiah's prayer — and it is a question disguised as a statement. Jeremiah does not directly ask 'Why?' but the bewilderment is unmistakable: God told him to invest in land that is falling to the enemy. The juxtaposition of 'buy the field' and 'the city is given to the Chaldeans' in the same sentence captures the apparent absurdity. The prayer ends without resolution — Jeremiah has stated his faith (v. 17, 'nothing is too difficult for you'), recited the history (vv. 18-23), and pointed to the crisis (vv. 24-25). Now he waits for God's answer, which comes in verses 26-44.
26. The standard prophetic reception formula marks the transition from Jeremiah's prayer to God's response. The narrative device creates a pause — the reader has heard Jeremiah's bewildered prayer and now awaits the divine answer.
27. The question hayipale mimmenni kol davar ('Is anything too difficult for me?') uses the same verb pala that Jeremiah used in his prayer (v. 17, 'nothing is too difficult for you'). God throws Jeremiah's own confession back as a question: you said nothing is too hard for me — do you believe it? The phrase Elohei kol basar ('God of all flesh/living things') expands God's sovereignty beyond Israel to encompass all creation, including Babylon and its armies. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'No — nothing is too difficult,' but the force lies in making Jeremiah (and the reader) articulate that conviction in the face of impossible circumstances.
28. God confirms rather than contradicts Jeremiah's prophecy of doom — the city will fall. The divine response does not begin with comfort but with truth: judgment is real and imminent. God names Nebuchadnezzar specifically as the instrument of judgment. The word lakhen ('therefore') connects the fall to everything Jeremiah recited in his prayer — Israel's disobedience has consequences.
29. The rooftop altars (gaggotehem) were high places for unauthorized worship — roofs provided open-air access to the sky where astral deities and Baal were worshiped. The houses that served as platforms for idolatry will be the very houses consumed by fire. The verb qiteru ('burned incense') is the technical term for offering fragrant smoke to a deity; its use for Baal worship underscores the betrayal — incense rituals proper to YHWH were redirected to a foreign god. The phrase lema'an hakh'iseni ('to provoke me to anger') implies deliberate provocation, not accidental offense.
30. The word akh ('only, nothing but') is emphatic and sweeping — Israel's entire history, from its 'youth' (ne'urothem, the early period of nationhood) to the present, is characterized as unbroken evil. The 'work of their hands' (ma'aseh yedehem) is a frequent Jeremiah phrase for idols — handmade objects treated as gods. The indictment encompasses both kingdoms (Israel and Judah), emphasizing that the northern kingdom's fall to Assyria should have served as a warning that Judah ignored.
31. The startling claim that Jerusalem has provoked God's anger from the day it was built encompasses the entire Davidic-Solomonic era — not even the golden age was free from provocation. The words ap ('anger,' literally 'nostril,' the flaring of nostrils in rage) and chamah ('fury, heat') represent two intensities of divine wrath. The phrase lehasirah me'al panai ('to remove it from my presence/face') — continuing into the next verse — uses the same language as the expulsion from the garden in Genesis.
32. The catalogue of offenders is comprehensive: kings (malkehem), officials (sarehem), priests (kohanehem), prophets (nevi'ehem), and the common people. Every level of society is implicated. The word sarim ('officials, princes, commanders') refers to the ruling class — those with political and military authority. No one is exempt from guilt: the leadership that should have guided the people toward covenant faithfulness instead led them toward Baal.
33. The idiom 'turned their back, not their face' (oref velo fanim) is a physical image of rejection — turning away from someone who is speaking to you. The phrase hashkem velammod ('rising early and teaching' = 'teaching persistently') is the same Jeremianic idiom seen in 7:13, 7:25, 11:7, 25:3 — God's tireless, dawn-to-dusk effort to instruct his people. The word musar ('correction, instruction, discipline') encompasses both teaching and the consequences of ignoring it.
34. The shiqqutsehem ('their detestable things, abominations') refers to idols and pagan cult objects placed inside the Jerusalem temple itself — not merely alongside it but within the very building where God's name dwelt. The phrase niqra shemi alav ('upon which my name is called / which bears my name') indicates ownership and presence — the temple belongs to God, and his reputation is attached to it. Placing idols there is not merely disobedience but desecration of God's own house. Historical reference: Manasseh placed an Asherah pole in the temple (2 Kings 21:7).
35. The Valley of Ben-Hinnom (Gei Ben-Hinnom, later Gehenna) south of Jerusalem was the site of child sacrifice. The verb he'evir ('to make pass through') describes the ritual of passing children through fire — whether this meant actual immolation or a fire-passing ritual is debated, but the context implies lethal sacrifice. God's triple denial is emphatic: 'I never commanded it' (lo tsivvitim), 'it never entered my mind' (lo aletah al-libbi), and it is a to'evah ('abomination'). This passage is repeated almost verbatim from 7:31 and 19:5, showing how deeply this sin troubles the prophetic message.
36. The phrase 'now therefore' (ve'attach lakhen) marks the transition from God's recitation of sins to the declaration of hope. The people's own words ('it is being handed over') are quoted back — they state the obvious reality of the siege. God does not deny it but is about to reframe it: the fall of the city is not the end of the story. The triad of destruction — sword, famine, plague — appears again as in verse 24.
37. Three words for divine wrath — ap ('anger'), chamah ('fury'), and qetsef gadol ('great wrath') — describe the intensity that drove the scattering. But the same God who scattered will gather. The verb hashvotim ('I will bring them back') uses the root shuv ('return') in its causative form — God will cause the return. The word lavetach ('in safety, securely') promises not just physical return but psychological security — no more fear of exile or invasion.

38. The covenant formula in its most compact form — six Hebrew words that summarize the entire covenantal relationship. This same formula appeared in 31:1, 31:33, and now here, forming a refrain throughout the Book of Consolation (chapters 30–33). Its repetition after the catalogue of sins (vv. 29–35) is stunning: despite everything, the relationship will be restored.
39. The phrase *lev echad* ('one heart') means unity of purpose and desire — the divided heart that chased multiple gods will be made singular in its devotion. The word *derekh* ('way, path, road') echoes the 'two ways' tradition of Deuteronomy 30:15–20 — God will give them one clear road instead of the constant wavering between YHWH and Baal. The verb *yirah* ('to revere, to fear') denotes not terror but covenantal awe — the proper human response to the holy God. The motive clause 'for their own good' (*letov lahem*) reveals that covenant obedience is not arbitrary demand but is genuinely beneficial to the people.
40. The phrase *berit olam* ('everlasting covenant') links this promise to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 17:7), the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 23:5), and the priestly covenant (Numbers 25:13). The two uses of *shuv* create a beautiful reciprocity: God will not *shuv* ('turn away') from them, and he will ensure they do not *sur* ('turn aside') from him — the double turning that plagued the old covenant is healed from both directions. The phrase *yir'ati* ('my reverence, the fear of me') placed 'in their hearts' (*bilvavam*) parallels 31:33 where *torah* is placed 'within them' and written 'on their hearts' — the new and everlasting covenants share the same mechanism of internal transformation.
41. The verb *sasti* ('I will take delight, I will rejoice') depicts God experiencing joy over his people — not merely tolerating or rescuing them but genuinely delighting in their restoration. The verb *natati* ('I will plant') echoes the commission language of 1:10 — the planting that follows uprooting. The adverb *be'emet* ('in truth, faithfully, firmly') means this is not a temporary resettlement but a permanent planting. The phrase *bekhol-libbi uvekhol-nafshi* ('with all my heart and with all my being') is extraordinary as applied to God — it attributes to God the wholehearted covenantal devotion that Deuteronomy demands of Israel, creating a perfect reciprocity.
42. The parallel structure is exact: the same God who executed *ra'ah* ('disaster, evil, harm') will execute *tovah* ('good, benefit, blessing'). The word *ka'asher...ken* ('just as...so') creates a proportion — the magnitude of the coming good will match the magnitude of the past disaster. The phrase *dober alehem* ('speaking/promising concerning them') uses the participial form, indicating that the promise is active and ongoing — God is currently in the process of declaring good over them.
43. God's response circles back to the field purchase that prompted Jeremiah's bewildered prayer. The people's assessment — *shemamah* ('desolation, wasteland') — is accurate for the present but not for the future. The phrase *me'ein adam uvehemah* ('without human or animal') describes total depopulation — the opposite of the divine promise in 31:27 to sow the land 'with the seed of humans and the seed of animals.' What the people see as permanent ruin, God sees as temporary devastation.
44. The chapter closes with a comprehensive geographical catalogue: Benjamin (Jeremiah's own tribal territory), Jerusalem's environs, the Judean hill country, the Shephelah (western foothills), and the Negev (southern desert region). Every region of Judah is named — the restoration will be total, not partial. The legal vocabulary from Jeremiah's own transaction — buy with silver, write, seal, witness — becomes the vocabulary of the restored future. What Jeremiah did as a lone prophetic act in a prison courtyard will become the normal activity of a recovered nation. The final phrase *ashiv et shevutam* ('I will restore their fortunes') closes the chapter with the verb *shuv* in its most hopeful form — the great return, the great reversal.

33

Summary: *Jeremiah 33 completes the Book of Consolation (chapters 30–33) with a second revelation received while Jeremiah remains confined in the court of the guard. God invites the prophet to call upon him and promises to reveal 'great and inaccessible things' (v. 3). The chapter moves from the devastation of siege to the restoration of joy, health, and prosperity in Jerusalem and Judah. Its theological climax is the reaffirmation of the Davidic covenant through the metaphor of cosmic permanence: just as God's covenant with day and night cannot be annulled, neither can his promises to David's line and the Levitical priesthood (vv. 20–26). The Righteous Branch reappears (v. 15, cf. 23:5–6), and Jerusalem itself receives the name 'The LORD Is Our Righteousness.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains some of the most extraordinary covenant theology in the Hebrew Bible.*

Verse 3 — 'Call to me and I will answer you, and I will tell you great and inaccessible things that you do not know' — is one of the most quoted verses in Jeremiah, yet its context is often overlooked: Jeremiah is a prisoner when God speaks these words. The promise comes not in freedom but in confinement. The Righteous Branch title tsemach tsaddiq reappears from 23:5–6, but with a striking variation: in 23:6 it is the king who bears the name 'The LORD Is Our Righteousness' (YHWH tsidqenu), while here in 33:16 it is Jerusalem — the city itself — that receives this name. The covenant-with-day-and-night passage (vv. 20–26) is unparalleled in prophetic literature: God stakes his promises to David on the reliability of the created order itself, making the alternation of day and night into a perpetual witness. We note that 33:14–26 is absent from the Septuagint, suggesting these verses may be a later addition to the Hebrew tradition — a significant text-critical issue that we document transparently.

Translation Friction: The adjective *betsurot* (v. 3, from *batsar*, 'to cut off, fortify, make inaccessible') is variously rendered 'mighty,' 'hidden,' 'unsearchable,' or 'fortified.' We chose 'inaccessible' because the root conveys walled-off knowledge — things beyond human reach without divine revelation. The phrase *tsemach tsaddiq* (v. 15) could be 'righteous branch' or 'righteous shoot/sprout' — we retained 'branch' for consistency with 23:5. The shift of the name YHWH *Tsidqenu* from the king (23:6) to the city (33:16) required careful notation, as it represents a theological development within the book itself. Verses 14–26 are absent from the LXX, raising the question of whether they belong to the earliest text; we include them as part of the Masoretic tradition while noting the discrepancy.

Connections: The Righteous Branch (*tsemach tsaddiq*) connects to 23:5–6 and forward to Zechariah 3:8 and 6:12. The covenant formula 'David will never lack a man on the throne' echoes 2 Samuel 7:12–16 (the Davidic covenant) and 1 Kings 2:4. The covenant with day and night recalls Genesis 8:22 (God's post-flood promise of perpetual seasons) and Jeremiah 31:35–37 (the fixed order of sun, moon, and stars as guarantee of Israel's permanence). The Levitical covenant connects to Numbers 25:12–13 (the covenant of perpetual priesthood with Phinehas) and Malachi 2:4–7. The restoration imagery of joy and thanksgiving echoes 30:19 and 31:4, 12–13. The phrase 'the voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride' reprises 7:34 and 16:9 in reverse — what was taken away in judgment is restored in consolation.

¹The word of the LORD came to Jeremiah a second time while he was still confined in the court of the guard: ²This is what the LORD says — he who made it, the LORD who shaped it to establish it, whose name is the LORD: ³Call to me and I will answer you; I will tell you great and inaccessible things that you have not known. ⁴For this is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says concerning the houses of this city and the houses of the kings of Judah that are torn down for siege ramps and for the sword: ⁵They come to fight against the Chaldeans only to fill them with the corpses of the people whom I have struck down in my anger and my wrath — those on account of whose wickedness I have hidden my face from this city. ⁶I am going to bring healing and remedy to her, and I will heal them; I will reveal to them an abundance of peace and faithfulness. ⁷I will restore the fortunes of Judah and the fortunes of Israel, and I will rebuild them as they were at the beginning. ⁸I will cleanse them from all their iniquity by which they sinned against me, and I will forgive all their iniquities by which they sinned against me and rebelled against me. ⁹This city will become for me a name of joy, a praise and a splendor before all the nations of the earth, who will hear of all the good I am doing for them. They will tremble and be shaken on account of all the good and all the peace that I am bringing about for her. ¹⁰This is what the LORD says: In this place — of which you say, 'It is a ruin, without person or animal' — in the cities of Judah and the streets of Jerusalem that are desolate, without person, without inhabitant, without animal, ¹¹there will again be heard the sound of joy and the sound of gladness, the sound of the bridegroom and the sound of the bride, the sound of those saying, 'Give thanks to the LORD of Hosts, for the LORD is good, for his faithful love endures forever' — those bringing thanksgiving offerings to the house of the LORD. For I will restore the fortunes of the land as they were at the beginning, says the LORD. ¹²This is what the LORD of Hosts says: In this place that is desolate — without person or animal — and in all its cities, there will again be pastures for shepherds resting their flocks. ¹³In the cities of the hill country, in the cities of the lowland, in the cities of the Negev, in the land of Benjamin, in the surroundings of Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah, flocks will again pass under the hands of the one who counts them, says the LORD. ¹⁴The days are coming, declares the LORD, when I will fulfill the good word that I spoke concerning the house of Israel and the house of Judah. ¹⁵In those days and at that time, I will cause a righteous branch to sprout for David, and he will execute justice and righteousness in the land. ¹⁶In those days Judah will be saved and Jerusalem will dwell securely. And this is what she will be called: 'The LORD Is Our Righteousness.' ¹⁷For this is what the LORD says: David will never lack a man to sit on the throne of the house of Israel. ¹⁸And the Levitical priests will never lack a man in my presence to offer burnt offerings, to burn grain offerings, and to prepare sacrifices — for all time. ¹⁹The word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: ²⁰This is what the LORD says: If you could break my covenant with the day and my covenant with the night, so that day and night no longer come at their appointed time, ²¹then also my covenant with David my servant could be broken, so that he would have no son reigning on his throne — and my covenant with the Levites, the priests who minister to me. ²²Just as the host of heaven cannot be counted and the sand of the sea cannot be measured, so I will multiply the offspring of David my servant and the Levites who minister to me. ²³The word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: ²⁴Have you not observed

what this people are saying — 'The two families that the LORD chose, he has rejected them'? They treat my people with contempt, as if they were no longer a nation in their sight. ²⁵This is what the LORD says: If I have not established my covenant with day and night, if I have not set in place the fixed orders of heaven and earth — ²⁶then I would also reject the offspring of Jacob and of David my servant, so as not to take from his offspring rulers over the descendants of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. But I will restore their fortunes and have compassion on them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word 'second time' (shenit) links this oracle to chapter 32, where the first word came during the same imprisonment. The term matara ('guard') is distinct from the dungeon (bor) where Jeremiah was later thrown (38:6); this is a military courtyard used for detention, not a pit. We render le'mor as a colon introducing direct speech.
2. The threefold repetition of YHWH in a single verse is emphatic and liturgical. The verbs 'asah ('made') and yatsar ('shaped, formed') are creation vocabulary — the same yatsar used for God forming humanity from clay in Genesis 2:7. The ambiguous pronoun 'it' likely refers to the earth or Jerusalem; the Hebrew leaves the referent deliberately open, suggesting that the God who shaped creation can reshape his city.
3. The KJV renders betsurat as 'mighty,' but the root batsar means 'to cut off, fortify, enclose' — the same root used for 'fortified cities' (arei mivtsar). We render 'inaccessible' to capture the sense of walled-off, unreachable knowledge. The invitation 'Call to me' is addressed to a prisoner — Jeremiah has no freedom of movement, but he has unlimited access to God. The verb 'aggidah ('I will tell/declare') implies formal revelation, not casual conversation.
4. The participle nethutsim ('torn down, demolished') describes houses already being demolished during the siege — residents were dismantling their own buildings to construct defensive siege ramps (solelot) against the Babylonian assault. The grim irony is that the city is destroying itself trying to survive.
5. The syntax is difficult: 'fill them' (male'am) likely refers to filling the demolished houses (v. 4) with corpses, not filling the Chaldeans. The image is horrific — the torn-down buildings become mass graves. The idiom histir panim ('to hide the face') is the ultimate expression of divine withdrawal in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Deuteronomy 31:17–18; Isaiah 54:8).
6. The nouns arukah ('healing, restoration') and marpe ('remedy, cure') are near-synonyms piled for emphasis — the city's wound is so severe that one word for healing is not enough. The verb gala ('reveal, uncover') is striking: peace and faithfulness are not merely given but revealed, as if they had been hidden behind the judgment. We render emet as 'faithfulness' here rather than 'truth' because the context is covenantal restoration, and emet in covenant contexts carries the sense of God's reliable fidelity.
7. The phrase shavti et-shevut is debated: it could mean 'restore the captivity' (return the exiles) or 'restore the fortunes' (a broader restoration). The latter reading, supported by cognate evidence and the Septuagint, better fits the context of comprehensive renewal. Both kingdoms — Judah and Israel — are included in the restoration, even though the northern kingdom had been dispersed for over a century.
8. Three sin-terms appear: avon ('iniquity' — the guilt and its consequence), chat'u ('sinned' — from chata, to miss the mark), and pash'u ('rebelled' — from pasha, willful transgression). The Hebrew preserves the full taxonomy of sin: missing the mark, bearing twisted guilt, and deliberate rebellion. Cleansing (tihar) is ritual-purification language, while forgiveness (salach) is relational-restoration language — both are needed.
9. The triad shem sason, tehillah, tiferet ('name of joy, praise, splendor') describes Jerusalem's transformed reputation among the nations. The verbs pachadu veragzu ('they will tremble and be shaken') describe the nations' response — not terror in the negative sense but awe at the overwhelming reversal of Jerusalem's fortunes. The nations who watched Jerusalem's destruction will now be stunned by its restoration.
10. The threefold repetition of me'ein ('without') — without person, without inhabitant, without animal — hammers the totality of the desolation. This exact formula appeared as a threat in 32:43; here it is quoted only to be reversed. The word charev ('ruin, waste') is the same root used for the destruction of the temple.
11. This verse reverses the judgment formula from 7:34 and 16:9, where the sounds of joy and wedding celebration were silenced. Five occurrences of qol ('sound, voice') create an overwhelming cascade of restored celebration. The liturgical quotation 'for the LORD is good, for his faithful love endures forever' appears in 2 Chronicles 5:13, 7:3, Ezra 3:11, and Psalm 136 — it is Israel's core worship refrain. The word todah ('thanksgiving offering') means both the sacrifice and the attitude of gratitude.
12. The image of shepherds resting flocks (marbitsei tso'n) is pastoral peace restored. The verb rabats ('to lie down, rest') describes animals at ease, without threat — the opposite of a land terrorized by invasion. The destroyed landscape will return to productive pastoral life.
13. The geographical survey — hill country, lowland (shephelah), Negev, Benjamin, Jerusalem, Judah — covers the entire territory of the southern kingdom. The image of sheep passing under the counter's hands (al yedei moneh) evokes Leviticus 27:32, where every tenth animal passing under the rod belongs to the LORD. Counting implies ownership, order, and care — the restored land will be managed, not chaotic.
14. This verse begins a section (vv. 14–26) absent from the Septuagint (LXX), suggesting it may be a later addition to the Hebrew text. We include it as part of the Masoretic tradition while noting this significant text-critical issue. The phrase hadavar hatov ('the good word/thing') refers back to the promises of chapters 30–32 — God is about to specify exactly which promises he means.

15. This verse closely parallels 23:5 but uses *tsemach tsedaqah* ('branch of righteousness') rather than *tsemach tsaddiq* ('righteous branch'). The variation may reflect a subtle theological shift: in 23:5 the branch himself is righteous; here the branch produces righteousness. The verb *atsmiyach* ('I will cause to sprout') emphasizes divine agency — this is not natural political succession but God's direct intervention in history.
16. The striking difference from 23:6 is the pronoun: there the masculine *yiqra'o* ('he will be called') applies the name to the king; here the feminine *yiqra-lah* ('she will be called') applies it to Jerusalem. Whether this is a deliberate theological expansion or a scribal variation is debated, but the Masoretic text clearly assigns the name to the city. The verb *tishkon* ('will dwell') shares the root *sh-k-n* with *Shekhinah* — Jerusalem's secure dwelling echoes God's own dwelling presence.
17. The phrase *lo yikkaret* ('will not be cut off') uses the same verb (*karat*) as 'cutting' a covenant — the line will not be severed. This restates the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12–16, where God promised David an eternal dynasty. Despite the apparent end of the monarchy with Zedekiah's capture, the promise stands.
18. The phrase *hakkohanim haleviyim* ('the priests, the Levites' or 'the Levitical priests') uses the Deuteronomic designation that identifies priests specifically as members of the tribe of Levi (cf. Deuteronomy 18:1). Three types of sacrifice are named: *olah* (burnt offering, entirely consumed), *minchah* (grain offering), and *zevach* (fellowship/peace sacrifice). The promise of perpetual priestly service parallels the perpetual Davidic throne — both institutions are declared permanent.
19. A fresh reception formula marks a new oracle unit. The following section (vv. 20–26) will anchor the Davidic and Levitical promises in the permanence of the created order.
20. The concept of a 'covenant with day and night' has its roots in Genesis 8:22, where God promises the perpetual cycle of seasons after the flood, and in 31:35–37, where the fixed order of celestial bodies guarantees Israel's permanence. The verb *taferu* ('you could break, annul') is the same verb used for breaking covenant in 11:10 — God is saying the cosmic order and the Davidic promise share the same covenantal status, and both are equally unbreakable.
21. The conditional structure (if ... then) makes the Davidic covenant as certain as the sunrise. The phrase *avdi* ('my servant') is an honorific title — David is God's designated agent, not merely a subject. The Levitical priesthood is paired with the Davidic monarchy as co-recipients of irrevocable covenant — both throne and altar are guaranteed.
22. The twin images of uncountable stars and immeasurable sand echo the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 15:5, 22:17). God transfers the Abrahamic abundance promise to the Davidic and Levitical lines, weaving all three covenants — Abrahamic, Davidic, Levitical — into a single fabric. The word *zera* ('offspring, seed') is the same word used in the promises to Abraham.
23. Another reception formula introduces the final oracle of the chapter (vv. 23–26), which responds to the despair of the people who believe God has rejected both his chosen families — the Davidic dynasty and the nation of Israel.
24. The 'two families' (*shtei hamishpachot*) likely refers to the royal house of David and the priestly house of Levi — or possibly the two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. The verb *ma'as* ('rejected') is the same verb used for God's rejection of Saul (1 Samuel 15:23, 26). The people are saying God has done to David what he did to Saul — permanently discarded his chosen line. God's response in the following verses is a vehement denial.
25. The *chuqqot* ('fixed orders, statutes, decrees') of heaven and earth are the same word used for the statutes of the Torah. The laws governing nature and the laws governing the covenant community share the same vocabulary — both are divine decrees. The conditional 'if not' (*im lo*) introduces an oath formula: 'If I have not done X, then I will not do Y' — meaning 'As certainly as X is true, Y is guaranteed.'
26. The verse completes the oath formula begun in v. 25: since God's covenant with day and night is unbreakable, his covenant with David and Jacob is equally unbreakable. The three patriarchs — Abraham, Isaac, Jacob — are invoked together, linking the Davidic promise back to the Abrahamic covenant. The final verb *richamtim* ('I will have compassion on them') is from the root *r-ch-m*, related to *rechem* ('womb') — God's compassion is maternal, visceral, from the depths of his being. The chapter ends not with a threat but with tenderness.

34

Summary: *Jeremiah 34 narrates two distinct but thematically connected episodes during the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem. In the first (vv. 1–7), God sends Jeremiah to tell King Zedekiah that Jerusalem will fall and he will be captured — but he will die in peace, not by the sword. In the second (vv. 8–22), the narrative turns to the covenant of liberty: Zedekiah and the nobles proclaimed the release of all Hebrew slaves as required by Torah law (Exodus 21, Deuteronomy 15), but when the Babylonian siege was temporarily lifted (likely by the approach of an Egyptian army), the slave owners seized their freed slaves and re-enslaved them. God's response is devastating: since they violated the covenant of liberty, he will proclaim 'liberty' to them — liberty to the sword, plague, and famine. The covenant-cutting ceremony with the calf (vv. 18–19) explicitly echoes the ritual of Genesis 15, where God himself passed between the halves.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most vivid and terrifying covenant texts in the Hebrew Bible. The wordplay on deror ('liberty, release') in verse 17 is brilliant and savage: because the people refused to proclaim liberty to their slaves, God will proclaim liberty to them — liberty to be consumed by sword, plague, and famine. The covenant-cutting ritual in verses 18–19, where the parties passed between the halves of a slaughtered calf, is the only explicit description of this ceremony outside Genesis 15. The implied threat is unmistakable: those who break the covenant have symbolically invoked the fate of the cut animal upon themselves. We preserved the raw violence of the covenant curse — the bodies given to the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth — because this is covenant theology at its most visceral. The chapter also reveals the moral calculus of Jerusalem's elite: they freed their slaves when they were desperate for divine favor during the siege, then re-enslaved them the moment the military pressure eased. God sees through the performance.*

Translation Friction: *The verb shuv in verse 11 ('they turned back and took back') uses the same root that elsewhere means 'repent' — here it means the opposite, turning back from a righteous act to re-enslave. The phrase karat berit (v. 18, 'cut a covenant') is both the standard covenant idiom and a literal description of cutting the calf. We rendered avdu-vam ('they enslaved them,' v. 11) plainly without softening — the Hebrew verb kavash ('to subdue, force into servitude') in verse 16 is even harsher than avad, carrying connotations of forceful subjugation. The phrase 'before me' (lefanai, v. 15) in the temple context means the covenant was made in God's own presence, making the violation a personal affront.*

Connections: *The slave-release law connects to Exodus 21:2–6 and Deuteronomy 15:12–18, the seventh-year manumission requirement. The covenant-cutting ceremony echoes Genesis 15:9–17, where God passed between the halves as a self-imprecation. The 'liberty' proclamation connects to Leviticus 25:10 (the Jubilee 'liberty throughout the land'). Zedekiah's fate prophecy (vv. 2–5) connects forward to 39:4–7 and 52:7–11. The bodies exposed to birds and beasts echoes the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:26. The temporary lifting of the siege connects to 37:5–11, where the Egyptian army's approach caused the Babylonians to withdraw briefly.*

1The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon — with all his army, all the kingdoms of the lands under his rule, and all the peoples — was fighting against Jerusalem and all its surrounding cities: 2This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: Go and speak to Zedekiah king of Judah. Say to him — This is what the LORD says: I am going to hand this city over to the king of Babylon, and he will burn it with fire. 3And you will not escape from his hand. You will certainly be seized and handed over to him. Your eyes will see the eyes of the king of Babylon, and he will speak to you face to face, and you will go to Babylon. 4Yet hear the word of the LORD, Zedekiah king of Judah. This is what the LORD says concerning you: You will not die by the sword. 5You will die in peace. And just as they burned spices for your ancestors, the former kings who preceded you, so they will burn spices for you, and they will mourn for you, saying, 'Alas, lord!' For I myself have spoken this word, declares the LORD. 6Jeremiah the prophet spoke all these words to Zedekiah king of Judah in Jerusalem, 7while the army of the king of Babylon was fighting against Jerusalem and against all the remaining cities of Judah — against Lachish and Azekah, for these were the only fortified cities left among the cities of Judah. 8The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD after King Zedekiah had cut a covenant with all the people in Jerusalem to proclaim liberty to them — 9that each person should release his male servant and his female servant — any Hebrew man or Hebrew woman — setting them free, so that no one would enslave a fellow Judean, his own brother. 10All the officials and all the people who had entered the covenant obeyed — each releasing his male servant and his female servant, setting them free and no longer enslaving them. They obeyed and released them. 11But afterward they reversed course and took back the male servants and female servants whom they had set free, and they forced them back into servitude as slaves. 12Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah from the LORD: 13This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: I myself cut a covenant with your ancestors on the day I brought them out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery, saying: 14At the end of seven years, each of you must release his Hebrew brother who has been sold to you; after he has served you for six years, you must send him away free from you. But your ancestors did not listen to me or incline their ear. 15You yourselves recently turned and did what was right in my eyes by proclaiming liberty to one another, and you cut a covenant before me in the house that bears my name. 16But then you reversed course and profaned my name. Each of you took back his male servant and his

female servant whom you had set free according to their desire, and you forced them into subjection to be your slaves again. ¹⁷Therefore this is what the LORD says: You have not obeyed me by proclaiming liberty to one another — each to his brother and each to his neighbor. So now I am proclaiming liberty for you, declares the LORD — liberty to the sword, to the plague, and to the famine. I will make you a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth. ¹⁸I will hand over the people who violated my covenant, who did not uphold the terms of the covenant that they cut before me — the calf that they cut in two and passed between its halves — ¹⁹the officials of Judah, the officials of Jerusalem, the court officers, the priests, and all the people of the land who passed between the halves of the calf — ²⁰I will hand them over to their enemies, to those who seek their lives. Their corpses will become food for the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth. ²¹And Zedekiah king of Judah and his officials I will hand over to their enemies, to those who seek their lives, and to the army of the king of Babylon — the ones who have withdrawn from you. ²²I am about to give the command, declares the LORD, and I will bring them back to this city. They will fight against it, capture it, and burn it with fire. The cities of Judah I will make a desolation without inhabitant.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scope of the Babylonian force is emphasized by the triple kol ('all'): all his army, all the kingdoms, all the peoples. Nebuchadnezzar's empire drew soldiers from vassal kingdoms across the Near East — the siege of Jerusalem was a multinational military operation. The phrase *erets memshelat yado* ('lands under the rule of his hand') describes Nebuchadnezzar's domain as an extension of his personal grip.
2. The double messenger formula — 'This is what the LORD says ... Say to him, This is what the LORD says' — emphasizes the divine origin of the message Jeremiah must deliver personally to the king. The verb *noten* ('giving, handing over') presents Jerusalem's fall as God's own act — Babylon is merely the instrument. The verb *seraphah* ('he will burn it') foreshadows 2 Kings 25:9 and Jeremiah 52:13, the historical burning of the city and temple.
3. The emphatic infinitive absolute *tafos tittafes* ('you will certainly be seized') removes all ambiguity — there is no escape. The phrase 'your eyes will see his eyes' is intimate and terrifying: Zedekiah will stand personally before Nebuchadnezzar. Tragically, according to 39:7 and 52:11, Nebuchadnezzar blinded Zedekiah after forcing him to watch his sons' execution — the last thing his eyes saw was Nebuchadnezzar's face. The phrase *piv et-pikha* ('his mouth with your mouth,' i.e., face to face) indicates a personal audience, not communication through intermediaries.
4. The particle *akh* ('yet, however, but') introduces an unexpected qualification — despite the dire prophecy, Zedekiah's death will not be violent. The promise is limited but real: he will be a captive, not a casualty. According to 52:11, Zedekiah was imprisoned in Babylon until his death.
5. The 'burnings' (*misrefot*) refer to the burning of spices or incense at royal funerals, a customary honor for deceased kings (cf. 2 Chronicles 16:14, 21:19). The mourning cry *hoi adon* ('Alas, lord!') parallels the funeral lament in 22:18 for Jehoikim, though there the lament was denied. The emphatic *ani dibbarthi* ('I myself have spoken') seals the oracle as irrevocable divine decree.
6. The narrative frame confirms that Jeremiah delivered the oracle as commanded. The title *hannavi* ('the prophet') emphasizes Jeremiah's official role — he is not offering personal opinion but delivering authorized divine speech to the king.
7. Lachish and Azekah were the last fortified outposts of Judah still holding out. The Lachish Letters — ostraca discovered in the ruins of Lachish — include a message from a military outpost stating 'we are watching for the signals of Lachish, because we cannot see Azekah,' suggesting Azekah had already fallen. This archaeological evidence dramatically confirms the historical situation described here. The phrase *arei mivtsar* ('fortified cities') indicates cities with defensive walls — the rest of Judah's towns had already been overrun.
8. We render *karat berit* as 'cut a covenant' rather than 'made a covenant' because the literal cutting is central to the chapter — the covenant-cutting ceremony with the calf (v. 18) makes the etymology visible. The word *deror* ('liberty, release') is a technical term for the freeing of Hebrew slaves; it appears on the Liberty Bell inscription (Leviticus 25:10). The covenant was public and binding, involving the king and 'all the people' — making the subsequent violation collective, not merely individual.
9. The law distinguishes Hebrew slaves from foreign slaves — the manumission requirement applied specifically to Israelites enslaved by fellow Israelites. The word *achiv* ('his brother') is loaded: enslaving a fellow covenant member violates the kinship created by the covenant itself. The term *chofshim* ('free') is the standard legal term for manumission — a freed slave's legal status changes permanently.
10. The verb *shama* ('heard/obeyed') appears twice, framing the verse with compliance: they heard and they obeyed. The initial obedience was genuine — the covenant was honored, at least temporarily. The phrase *ba'u vabberit* ('entered the covenant') uses the standard idiom for covenant participation. The repetition of *vayyishme'u vayyeshallechu* ('they obeyed and released') emphasizes the completeness of the initial compliance, which makes the reversal in v. 11 all the more damning.
11. The verb *shuv* ('turn, return') is used twice with devastating irony: *vayyashuvu* ('they turned back') and *vayyashivu* ('they brought back'). The same root that means 'repent' in prophetic usage here means the opposite — turning back from righteousness to wickedness. The verb *kavash* ('forced into subjection') is violent language — it implies physical coercion, not merely legal re-classification. These are people being physically dragged back into slavery after tasting freedom.

12. The reception formula introduces God's furious response to the covenant violation. The double mention of YHWH ('the word of the LORD ... from the LORD') emphasizes the divine origin of what follows — this is not Jeremiah's outrage but God's.
13. God speaks in the first person emphatic: *anokhi* ('I myself'). The phrase *beit avadim* ('house of slavery/bondage') for Egypt is standard Exodus language (Exodus 13:3, 14; 20:2; Deuteronomy 5:6). The irony is devastating: God freed Israel from slavery in Egypt, and the covenant he made on that day included the requirement that Israelites never permanently enslave one another — yet that is precisely what they have done.
14. The law summarized here combines elements from Exodus 21:2 and Deuteronomy 15:12. The phrase 'your brother the Hebrew' (*achikha ha'ivri*) insists on the kinship dimension — a fellow covenant member cannot be treated as permanent property. God notes that even the ancestors failed to keep this law, establishing a pattern of persistent violation that the current generation has continued.
15. The phrase *hayashar be'einai* ('what was right in my eyes') is the Deuteronomic evaluation formula used for righteous kings. For a brief moment, Zedekiah and the people acted like faithful covenant partners. The covenant was cut *lefanai* ('before me') — in the temple, in God's direct presence. The phrase *asher niqra shemi alay* ('upon which my name is called') indicates God's personal ownership of the temple — violating a covenant made there is a direct affront to the divine name.
16. The verb *chillelu* ('profaned, desecrated') is sacrilege language — by breaking a covenant made in the temple under God's name, they have desecrated the divine name itself. The phrase *lefanai* in v. 15 and *et-shemi* here create a direct link: the covenant was made 'before me' and the violation 'profaned my name.' The phrase *lenafshan* ('according to their desire/at their will') may modify the freed slaves (who desired their freedom) or the slave owners (who freed them at their own discretion). We follow the reading that the slaves were freed 'according to their desire,' emphasizing that the re-enslavement overrode the freed people's own will.
17. The rhetorical structure is devastating: 'You did not proclaim liberty ... so I am proclaiming liberty for you.' The irony of *deror* applied to sword, plague, and famine is intentionally horrifying — these forces are 'released' against the people who refused to release their slaves. The triad *cherev, dever, ra'av* ('sword, plague, famine') is Jeremiah's signature formula for total devastation (cf. 14:12, 21:7, 24:10, 27:8, 29:17-18). The word *za'avah* ('horror, object of trembling') describes what the exiled people will become — a cautionary spectacle for other nations.
18. The verb *karat* ('cut') appears three times in this verse, creating a cascade of cutting: they cut a covenant, they cut the calf, they cut it in two. The word *betarav* ('its halves, its pieces') is from the same root as Genesis 15:10 (*betarim*). The phrase *va'ya'avru bein betarav* ('they passed between its halves') describes the self-imprecatory ritual: walking between the severed animal invokes its fate upon the oath-taker if the covenant is broken. The people have now triggered that curse.
19. The list of participants is comprehensive: *sarei Yehudah* (officials of Judah), *sarei Yerushalayim* (officials of Jerusalem), *hassarisim* (court officers — the Hebrew *sarisim* can mean 'eunuchs' or 'court officials'; in this context, royal courtiers is the likely sense), *hakkohanim* (the priests), and *kol am ha'arets* (all the people of the land). Every social class participated in the covenant and is therefore implicated in its violation. No one is exempt.
20. The punishment fulfills the self-imprecation of the covenant ritual: those who passed between the halves of the calf will themselves be torn apart like the calf. The phrase *nivlatam lema'akhal* ('their corpses as food') echoes Deuteronomy 28:26, the covenant curse: 'Your carcasses will be food for all the birds of the sky and the beasts of the earth, and no one will frighten them away.' Denial of burial was considered the ultimate dishonor in ancient Israelite culture — the body left exposed to scavengers.
21. The participle *ha'olim me'aleikhem* ('the ones going up from upon you,' i.e., withdrawing from you) reveals the historical moment: the Babylonian army has temporarily lifted the siege (cf. 37:5, when Egypt's army caused a Babylonian withdrawal). This withdrawal is exactly what emboldened the slave owners to re-enslave their freed servants — they thought the crisis was over. God's message is clear: the Babylonians are coming back.
22. The verb *tsivveh* ('command') presents the Babylonian return as God's own military order — Nebuchadnezzar's army moves at God's command, not its own initiative. The verb *hashivotim* ('I will bring them back') uses the same root *shuv* that described the people's reversal in v. 11 — as they 'turned back' to enslave, God 'turns back' the army to destroy. The chapter ends with the very desolation that chapter 33 promised to reverse, creating a stark contrast: the Book of Consolation's promises stand, but the present generation's covenant violation ensures present judgment.

35

Summary: Jeremiah 35 records a divine object lesson using the Rechabites, a clan descended from Jonadab son of Rechab, who had commanded his descendants to never drink wine, never build houses, never plant vineyards, and to live as nomads in tents. God instructs Jeremiah to bring the Rechabites into the temple chambers and offer them wine. They refuse categorically, citing their ancestor's command. God then uses their unwavering obedience to a human father as a devastating contrast with Judah's refusal to obey the divine word — despite God's persistent, repeated appeals through the prophets. The chapter closes with a blessing on the Rechabites for their faithfulness and a judgment on Judah for its disobedience.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The literary structure is brilliantly simple: a test that the Rechabites are meant to pass, followed by a rhetorical question that Judah cannot answer. The Rechabites have obeyed a human ancestor's command for over two centuries without deviation; Judah will not obey God for a single generation. The temporal setting is during Jehoiakim's reign, when the Babylonian and Aramean raids have forced the Rechabites temporarily into Jerusalem — they are in the city against their own principles, pushed there by military necessity, yet still will not break their ancestor's command even under these extreme circumstances. The phrase hashkem veshalach ('rising early and sending,' v. 15) reprises the characteristic Jeremiah idiom for God's tireless persistence, making the contrast between divine effort and human indifference all the more stark. We rendered the Rechabites' speech in verses 6-10 with the repetitive cadence of the Hebrew, preserving the rhythmic quality of a family creed recited from memory across generations.*

Translation Friction: *The verb tsivvah ('commanded') is used for both Jonadab's human command (vv. 6-7) and God's divine command (vv. 14-16), creating a deliberate parallel that had to be preserved in English — the same verb for a lesser authority whose commands are obeyed and a greater authority whose commands are ignored. The word mishkenot in verse 7 could mean 'dwellings' or 'tents,' and we chose 'tents' because the context specifically contrasts permanent houses with nomadic dwelling. The chapter's setting 'in the days of Jehoiakim' (v. 1) places it chronologically earlier than the surrounding narrative chapters, illustrating Jeremiah's non-chronological arrangement.*

Connections: *The Rechabites trace to Jonadab son of Rechab, who appears in 2 Kings 10:15-23 as the zealous supporter of Jehu's purge of Baal worship — their ancestral command to live apart from Canaanite agricultural culture was rooted in anti-idolatry conviction. The 'rising early and sending' formula connects to 7:13, 7:25, 11:7, 25:3-4, 26:5, 29:19, 32:33, and 44:4. The covenant-obedience contrast anticipates the new covenant passage in 31:31-34, where God will solve the problem of disobedience by writing the law on hearts. The blessing formula for the Rechabites in verse 19 ('Jonadab son of Rechab will never lack a man to stand before me') echoes the Davidic and Levitical permanence formulas in 33:17-18.*

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD in the days of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah: ²Go to the house of the Rechabites and speak with them. Bring them into the house of the LORD, into one of the side chambers, and offer them wine to drink. ³So I took Jaazaniah son of Jeremiah son of Habazziniah, along with his brothers, all his sons, and the entire house of the Rechabites. ⁴I brought them into the house of the LORD, to the chamber of the sons of Hanan son of Igdaliah, the man of God, which was beside the chamber of the officials and above the chamber of Maaseiah son of Shallum, the keeper of the threshold. ⁵I set before the members of the house of the Rechabites bowls full of wine and cups, and said to them, "Drink wine." ⁶They said, "We will not drink wine, because Jonadab son of Rechab, our ancestor, commanded us: 'You and your descendants must never drink wine — ⁷You must not build a house, you must not sow seed, and you must not plant a vineyard or own one. Instead, you must live in tents all your days, so that you may live a long time on the land where you are sojourners.' ⁸We have obeyed the voice of Jonadab son of Rechab, our ancestor, in everything he commanded us — to drink no wine all our days, we ourselves, our wives, our sons, and our daughters; ⁹and not to build houses to live in. We have no vineyard, no field, and no seed. ¹⁰We have lived in tents and have obeyed and done everything that Jonadab our ancestor commanded us. ¹¹But when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against the land, we said, 'Come, let us go into Jerusalem to escape the Chaldean army and the Aramean army.' So we have been living in Jerusalem. ¹²Then the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: ¹³This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Go and say to the people of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem — Will you not accept correction and obey my words? declares the LORD. ¹⁴The words of Jonadab son of Rechab have been upheld — he commanded his sons not to drink wine, and to this day they have not drunk any, because they obeyed their ancestor's command. But I have spoken to you persistently, and you have not obeyed me. ¹⁵I sent to you all my servants the prophets, sending them persistently, saying: 'Turn back, each of you, from your evil way! Make your deeds right and do not go after other gods to serve them, and you will live on the land that I gave to you and your ancestors.' But you did not incline your ear or obey me. ¹⁶The sons of Jonadab son of Rechab have upheld the command their ancestor gave them, but this people has not obeyed me. ¹⁷Therefore, this is what the LORD, the God of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am about to bring on Judah and on all the inhabitants of Jerusalem every disaster that I have spoken against

them, because I spoke to them and they did not listen, and I called to them and they did not answer. ¹⁸To the house of the Rechabites, Jeremiah said: This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says — Because you have obeyed the command of Jonadab your ancestor, kept all his instructions, and done everything he commanded you, ¹⁹Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Jonadab son of Rechab will never lack a man to stand before me for all time.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The temporal marker 'in the days of Jehoiakim' places this episode during Jehoiakim's reign (609-598 BCE), likely during the Babylonian-Aramean incursions of 601-598 BCE that forced the Rechabites into Jerusalem (see v. 11). The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') introduces direct speech and is rendered as a colon.
2. The *leshakh* ('side chambers') were rooms attached to the temple complex used for various purposes — storage, meetings, priestly functions. The setting is significant: God stages this object lesson in the temple itself, the center of Judah's covenant relationship, making the contrast between Rechabite obedience and Judahite disobedience all the more pointed.
3. The Jeremiah named here as Jaazaniah's father is a different person from the prophet Jeremiah — a common name in this period. The three-generation lineage (Jaazaniah-Jeremiah-Habazziniah) establishes Jaazaniah as the clan's current leader. The Hebrew 'all his sons and the entire house of the Rechabites' emphasizes that the full clan is assembled as witnesses to the test.
4. The detailed spatial description locates this room precisely within the temple complex — beside the officials' chamber and above Maaseiah's room. Hanan is called *ish ha-Elohim* ('man of God'), a title for prophets and holy men (cf. 1 Samuel 9:6, 1 Kings 13:1). Maaseiah's title *shomer ha-miftan* ('keeper of the threshold') designates one of the senior temple gatekeepers, a position of considerable authority (cf. 2 Kings 12:10, 25:18). The level of topographic detail suggests this is drawn from Baruch's eyewitness narrative.
5. The *gevi'im* are large bowls or pitchers — the same word used for Joseph's silver divination cup (Genesis 44:2). The abundance of wine (full bowls plus individual cups) makes the offer emphatic and generous, heightening the drama of the refusal. The command *shetu yayin* ('drink wine') is deliberately blunt — a two-word test.
6. The emphatic *lo nishteh-yayin* ('we will not drink wine') is an absolute refusal. The verb *tsivvah* ('commanded') is the same word used for God's commands — the parallel is deliberately set up by the narrative. The phrase *ad-olam* ('for ever') indicates a perpetual, cross-generational obligation. The Rechabites do not hesitate, negotiate, or ask for an exception despite being in the temple with a prophet.
7. The fourfold prohibition (no houses, no sowing, no vineyards, no ownership) represents a total rejection of settled Canaanite agricultural civilization. The Rechabites were to remain *gerim* ('sojourners, resident aliens') — living in the land but not assimilated into its culture. The promise 'that you may live a long time on the land' echoes the Deuteronomic longevity promise (Deuteronomy 5:16, 25:15), suggesting Jonadab modeled his family code on covenant language.
8. The phrase *vanishma beqol* ('we obeyed the voice of') uses the same construction *shim'u beqoli* ('obey my voice') that God uses for his own covenant demands (v. 13, 11:4, 7:23). The comprehensive list — 'we ourselves, our wives, our sons, and our daughters' — shows total household compliance across every generation and gender. The contrast being set up is devastating: a human ancestor commands once, and his entire extended family obeys for centuries.
9. The terse listing — 'no vineyard, no field, no seed' — reads like an inventory of what they have deliberately refused to possess. Each item represents a pillar of settled Canaanite life that the Rechabites have voluntarily renounced.
10. The phrase *vanishma vanna'as* ('we obeyed and we did') pairs hearing with doing — the covenantal ideal expressed in Israel's own pledge at Sinai: *na'aseh venishma*, 'we will do and we will hear' (Exodus 24:7). The Rechabites embody precisely the obedience that Israel promised but failed to sustain.
11. The Rechabites explain their presence in Jerusalem as a concession forced by military necessity — the Chaldean and Aramean raids made tent-dwelling in the open countryside impossible. Even this breach of their normal practice is minimal: they moved into the city but still refused to drink wine, build houses, or plant fields. The Hebrew *mippenei* ('from the face of, because of') expresses the immediate military threat. Nebuchadnezzar is spelled differently here (*nevukhadre'tsarsar*) than in some other passages (*nevukhadnetsar*) — both are attested Hebrew transliterations of the Babylonian *Nabu-kudurri-usur*.
12. The standard prophetic reception formula marks the transition from the narrative test (vv. 1-11) to the divine application (vv. 13-19). God will now interpret what has just happened.
13. The rhetorical question *halo tiqchu musar* ('will you not accept correction/discipline?') uses *musar*, a wisdom-tradition term meaning 'discipline, correction, instruction' (prominent in Proverbs). God is not merely commanding but asking why they refuse to learn. The question is devastating in context: the Rechabites have just demonstrated flawless obedience to a human command, and God must ask his own people whether they will even consider obeying him.

14. The verb *huqam* ('have been upheld, established') emphasizes the durability of the Rechabites' obedience — Jonadab's words still stand because his descendants still honor them. The idiom *hashkem vedabber* ('rising early and speaking') is the characteristic Jeremiah formula for God's tireless prophetic outreach (see 7:13, 7:25, 11:7, 25:3). The contrast is explicit: a human father commands once and is obeyed for centuries; God speaks persistently through generations of prophets and is ignored.
15. The verb *shuvu* ('turn back, return') is the key Jeremiah word for repentance — here it appears as God's plea through the prophets. The appeal is comprehensive: turn from evil, improve conduct, abandon idolatry, and the covenant promise of land remains. The phrase *lo hittitem et-ozenekhem* ('you did not incline your ear') is a recurring Jeremianic accusation (7:24, 7:26, 11:8, 17:23, 25:4, 34:14, 44:5) depicting willful deafness to divine speech.
16. The verdict is delivered with devastating simplicity. The verb *heqimu* ('they upheld') and the contrasting *lo sham'u* ('they did not obey') create a stark binary. *Ha'am hazzeh* ('this people') carries a note of estrangement — God refers to his own covenant people with the distancing demonstrative 'this,' as if they have become strangers to him through their disobedience.
17. The *hinneni mevi* ('I am about to bring') construction expresses imminent divine action. The double failure — 'I spoke and they did not listen, I called and they did not answer' — echoes Isaiah 65:12 and 66:4, depicting a God who has exhausted every avenue of communication. The word *ra'ah* ('disaster, calamity, evil') refers to the covenant curses that were always the stated consequence of disobedience.
18. The triad *shema'tem...tishmer'u...ta'asu* ('you obeyed...you kept...you did') is emphatic — three verbs to describe the completeness of their compliance. The word *mitsvotav* ('his instructions, commands') is the same term used for God's commandments (*mitsvot*), reinforcing the parallel between human and divine authority that structures this chapter.
19. The blessing formula *lo yikkaret ish...omed lefanai* ('he will never lack a man standing before me') is a permanence promise identical in structure to the Davidic promise (33:17) and the Levitical promise (33:18). To 'stand before' God means to serve in his presence — a priestly and prophetic vocation. God rewards the Rechabites' faithfulness to a human ancestor with permanent standing before the divine presence, the highest honor available. The phrase *kol-hayyamim* ('all the days') extends this promise without a visible endpoint.

36

Summary: Jeremiah 36 is one of the most dramatic narratives in all prophetic literature — the story of a scroll written, read, and destroyed. In Jehoiakim's fourth year, God commands Jeremiah to dictate all his oracles onto a scroll, and Baruch son of Neriah writes them down. Since Jeremiah is banned from the temple, Baruch reads the scroll publicly on a fast day. Officials hear of it and summon Baruch for a private reading; they are alarmed and report to King Jehoiakim. The king has the scroll read before him in his winter quarters, and as each three or four columns are read, he cuts them off with a scribe's knife and throws them into the fire in the brazier until the entire scroll is consumed. He shows no fear, no repentance, and no grief. God responds through Jeremiah with a judgment oracle against Jehoiakim, and Jeremiah dictates the scroll again to Baruch — this time with additional material.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter is the closest the Hebrew Bible comes to describing the physical process of prophetic literary composition. We see the tools: a megillat sefer (scroll), deyo (ink), a ta'ar hasofer (scribe's knife), an ach (brazier). We see the layers of transmission: God speaks to Jeremiah, Jeremiah dictates to Baruch, Baruch reads to the people, officials relay to the king. The repeated readings create mounting dramatic tension — three audiences, three reactions. The people listen. The officials tremble. The king burns. Jehoiakim's act of cutting and burning the scroll is a deliberate act of royal contempt for prophetic authority, a symbolic annulment of the divine word. But the final verse delivers the theological punchline: the scroll is rewritten with additions. The word of God cannot be destroyed by fire. We preserved the pacing of the Hebrew narrative, which builds slowly through procedural detail before erupting in the king's defiant act of destruction.

Translation Friction: The word megillah ('scroll') appears throughout and must be distinguished from sefer ('book, document, writing'). The compound megillat-sefer in verse 2 is literally 'scroll of a book/document' — we rendered it as 'a scroll' since in this period a scroll was the standard book format. The term delathot ('columns, doors') in verse 23 describes the sections of the scroll — literally 'doors' but technically the columns of text visible when the scroll was unrolled to a given point. We rendered this as 'columns' with a note on the Hebrew image. The verb qara ('he tore, cut') in verse 23 could mean either 'tore' or 'cut,' but the presence of the scribe's knife indicates deliberate cutting, not ripping. Jehoiakim's lack of reaction required careful handling — the Hebrew emphasizes what did NOT happen (no tearing of garments, no fear) as powerfully as what did.

Connections: The contrast between Jehoiakim and his father Josiah is unmistakable. When a scroll was read to Josiah (2 Kings 22:11), he tore his garments in grief and repentance; when a scroll is read to Jehoiakim, he cuts and burns it. The phrase 'they were not afraid and did not tear their garments' (v. 24) deliberately invokes Josiah's opposite response. Baruch son of Neriah reappears in chapters 32, 43, and 45, and is increasingly recognized as the editor or compiler of significant portions of the book of Jeremiah. The promise that Jehoiakim's dead body will be 'thrown out to the heat of day and the frost of night' (v. 30) connects to 22:18-19 where Jeremiah prophesied that Jehoiakim would receive 'the burial of a donkey.' The theological principle that the word of God survives destruction anticipates the broader biblical theme of scripture's indestructibility.

1In the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, this word came to Jeremiah from the LORD: 2"Take a scroll and write on it all the words I have spoken to you against Israel, against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I first spoke to you — from the days of Josiah — until today. 3Perhaps the house of Judah will hear of all the disaster I intend to bring on them, and each person will turn back from his evil way, and I will forgive their iniquity and their sin." 4Jeremiah summoned Baruch son of Neriah, and Baruch wrote on a scroll, at Jeremiah's dictation, all the words of the LORD that he had spoken to him. 5Then Jeremiah instructed Baruch: "I am restricted — I cannot enter the house of the LORD. 6So you must go and read from the scroll — the words of the LORD that you wrote at my dictation — in the hearing of the people in the house of the LORD on a day of fasting. Read them also in the hearing of all the people of Judah who come in from their cities. 7Perhaps their plea for mercy will come before the LORD and each of them will turn back from his evil way, because the anger and the fury that the LORD has declared against this people are great." 8Baruch son of Neriah did everything that Jeremiah the prophet commanded him, reading the words of the LORD from the scroll in the house of the LORD. 9In the fifth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah, in the ninth month, a fast was proclaimed before the LORD for all the people in Jerusalem and all the people coming in from the cities of Judah to Jerusalem. 10Baruch read the words of Jeremiah from the scroll in the house of the LORD, in the chamber of Gemariah son of Shaphan the scribe, in the upper court at the entrance of the New Gate of the house of the LORD, in the hearing of all the people. 11When Micaiah son of Gemariah son of Shaphan heard all the words of the LORD from the scroll, 12he went down to the royal palace, to the chamber of the scribe, and there all the officials were sitting: Elishama the scribe, Delaiah son of Shemaiah, Elnathan son of Achbor, Gemariah son of Shaphan, Zedekiah son of Hananiah, and all the other officials. 13Micaiah reported to them all the words he had heard when Baruch read from the scroll in the hearing of the people. 14All the officials sent Jehudi son of Nethaniah son of Shelemiah son of Cushi to Baruch, saying, "Take the scroll from which you read in the hearing of the people and come." So Baruch son of Neriah took the scroll in his hand and came to them. 15They said to him, "Sit down and read it to us." So Baruch read it in their hearing. 16When they heard all the words, they turned to one another in alarm and said to Baruch, "We must certainly report all these words to the king." 17They questioned Baruch: "Tell us — how did you write all these words? Was it at his dictation?" 18Baruch answered them, "He dictated all these words to me from his mouth, and I wrote them on the scroll with ink." 19The officials said to Baruch, "Go and hide — you and Jeremiah. No one must know where you are." 20They went to the king in the court, but first they deposited the scroll in the chamber of Elishama the scribe. Then they reported all the words to the king. 21The king sent Jehudi to fetch the scroll. He took it from the chamber of Elishama the scribe, and Jehudi read it in the hearing of the king and all the officials standing beside the king. 22The king was sitting in the winter quarters — it was the ninth month — with a fire burning in the brazier before him. 23Whenever Jehudi had read three or four columns, the king would cut them off with a scribe's knife and throw them into the fire in the brazier, until the entire scroll was consumed in the fire in the brazier. 24They showed no fear and did not tear their garments — neither the king nor any of his servants who heard all these words. 25Even though Elnathan, Delaiah, and Gemariah urged the king not to burn the scroll, he would not listen to them. 26The king commanded Jerahmeel the king's son, Seraiah son of Azriel, and Shelemiah son of Abdeel to seize Baruch the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet. But the LORD hid them. 27After the king had burned the scroll and the words that Baruch had written at Jeremiah's dictation, the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah: 28"Take another scroll and write on it all the previous words that were on the first scroll — the one that Jehoiakim king of Judah burned. 29And concerning Jehoiakim king of Judah, you are to say: This is what the LORD says — You burned this

scroll, saying, 'Why did you write on it that the king of Babylon will certainly come and destroy this land and eliminate from it both human and animal?' ³⁰Therefore, this is what the LORD says concerning Jehoiakim king of Judah: He will have no one to sit on the throne of David, and his dead body will be thrown out, exposed to the heat by day and the frost by night. ³¹I will punish him, his offspring, and his servants for their iniquity. I will bring on them, on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and on the people of Judah every disaster I have spoken against them — but they would not listen." ³²Then Jeremiah took another scroll and gave it to Baruch son of Neriah, the scribe. Baruch wrote on it, at Jeremiah's dictation, all the words of the scroll that Jehoiakim king of Judah had burned in the fire — and many similar words were added to them besides.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourth year of Jehoiakim is 605/604 BCE — the same year Nebuchadnezzar defeated Egypt at Carchemish (cf. 46:2) and established Babylonian dominance over the region. The timing is significant: God commands the scroll's composition at the precise moment when the geopolitical crisis Jeremiah had been warning about becomes irreversible. The Hebrew *vayyehi* ('and it was') is the standard narrative opening, rendered naturally without the archaic 'and it came to pass.'
2. *Megillat-sefer* is literally 'a scroll of a book/document' — the standard writing format of the period, made from animal skins or papyrus sewn together. The scope of the writing is comprehensive: every oracle from the beginning of Jeremiah's ministry (c. 627 BCE under Josiah) to the present (605 BCE) — over twenty years of prophetic speech. The threefold 'against Israel, against Judah, and against all the nations' covers the full range of Jeremiah's oracles, including the oracles against the nations collected in chapters 46–51.
3. The word *ulai* ('perhaps') is extraordinary — God expresses hope rather than certainty, leaving space for human response. The purpose of the scroll is not merely to record but to provoke repentance (*yashuvu*, from *shuv*). The distinction between *avon* ('iniquity' — the guilt/distortion of wrongdoing) and *chattat* ('sin' — missing the mark, failing to meet the standard) is preserved. God's willingness to forgive is contingent on their turning back — the scroll is an instrument of mercy, not merely judgment.
4. The phrase *mippi Yirmeyahu* ('from the mouth of Jeremiah') describes oral dictation — Jeremiah speaks, Baruch writes. This is one of the few biblical passages that explicitly describes the mechanism of prophetic literary composition. Baruch was a trained scribe from a prominent family — his brother Seraiah held a court position (51:59). The word order in Hebrew emphasizes Baruch as the agent of transcription while Jeremiah remains the source of the divine words.
5. The word *atsur* ('restricted, confined, shut up') indicates that Jeremiah was barred from the temple, though the text does not specify why. Possible reasons include: official ban by the temple authorities after his temple sermon (chapter 7/26), ritual impurity, or some form of house arrest. The restriction necessitates Baruch as his proxy — the scroll becomes Jeremiah's voice when the prophet himself cannot be present.
6. The *be'oznei* ('in the ears of') construction emphasizes public, audible proclamation — not private reading but public performance of the prophetic word. The 'day of fasting' (*yom tsom*) would draw large crowds from across Judah to the temple, maximizing the audience. Jeremiah strategically chooses a moment of national assembly to deliver twenty years of accumulated oracles.
7. Again *ulai* ('perhaps') — Jeremiah echoes God's own hopeful uncertainty from verse 3. The word *techinnah* ('plea for mercy, supplication') is from the root *chanan* ('to be gracious') — it is a plea that throws itself entirely on the hearer's grace. The pairing of *af* ('anger') and *chemah* ('fury, heat') describes the full intensity of divine wrath, making the urgency of repentance clear.
8. The phrase *kekhol asher tsivvahu* ('according to everything he commanded him') echoes the obedience language of the Rechabites in the preceding chapter (35:10, 18), creating a literary link: Baruch, like the Rechabites, obeys fully. Jeremiah is here called *hannavi* ('the prophet'), a title that reinforces his authority as the source of authentic divine speech.
9. The ninth month (*Kislev*, approximately November–December) places this during the cold season, which becomes significant when the winter brazier appears in verse 22. The fast may have been called in response to the Babylonian threat following the battle of Carchemish the previous year. Nearly a year has passed since the command to write the scroll (v. 1, fourth year), suggesting the scroll's composition was not rushed. The passive 'a fast was proclaimed' (*qar'u tsom*) leaves the initiative ambiguous — it may have been the king's or the religious authorities' decision.
10. Gemariah son of Shaphan belongs to a family that repeatedly supported Jeremiah — his father Shaphan was the scribe who read the discovered scroll to King Josiah (2 Kings 22:8–10), and his brother Ahikam protected Jeremiah from execution (26:24). The location is strategic: the upper court at the New Gate would have been a high-traffic area during a public fast, giving Baruch maximum exposure. The chamber's use suggests Gemariah was sympathetic to Jeremiah's message.
11. Micaiah is Gemariah's son — three generations of the Shaphan family now intersect with prophetic scrolls. His grandfather Shaphan read the discovered book of the law to Josiah; now the grandson hears Jeremiah's scroll read. The verb *shama* ('heard') begins the chain of transmission: Micaiah hears, then reports to the officials, who summon Baruch, who reads to them, and they report to the king.
12. The list of officials names specific individuals who can be cross-referenced with other biblical and extra-biblical sources. Elnathan son of Achbor was sent by Jehoiakim to extradite the prophet Uriah from Egypt for execution (26:22) — his presence here creates tension about where his loyalties lie. Gemariah son of Shaphan is the same official in whose chamber Baruch read; his presence among the officials confirms his involvement. The Hebrew *hinneh* ('there') conveys the narrative immediacy of finding the officials already assembled — the information reaches the right people at the

right moment.

13. The verb *higgid* ('reported, declared') indicates a formal report, not casual gossip. Micaiah functions as a relay in the chain of transmission: God to Jeremiah to Baruch to the people to Micaiah to the officials — five links before the words reach the political leadership.
14. Jehudi's name means 'the Judean' or 'the Jew' — he functions as an intermediary throughout this chapter, later reading the scroll to the king (v. 21). His grandfather's name Cushi ('the Cushite/Ethiopian') may indicate African ancestry, a detail that reflects the ethnic diversity of Judean court life. The officials' request is respectful — they ask Baruch to come with the scroll, not seize it. Their posture toward the prophetic word is initially open, in contrast to the king's response.
15. The invitation *shev na* ('sit down, please') is courteous — the officials treat Baruch with respect and give him a proper hearing. The particle *na* adds politeness. This is the second reading of the scroll (after the public reading in v. 10), and the narrative builds through repetition — each successive reading brings the words closer to the king.
16. The officials' reaction is fear — *pachadu ish el re'ehu* ('they were alarmed, each toward his neighbor') — a communal, shared dread at the content of the scroll. Their response is the proper one: alarm at divine judgment, followed by action. The emphatic infinitive absolute *hagag naggid* ('we must certainly report') shows resolve — they feel obligated to inform the king. Their fear contrasts sharply with Jehoiakim's total lack of fear in verse 24.
17. The officials want to verify the chain of transmission — are these Jeremiah's own compositions or direct prophetic dictation? The question *eikh katavta* ('how did you write?') probes the mechanism of composition, anticipating the modern scholarly question about the relationship between prophetic speech and written text. The phrase *mippiv* ('from his mouth') is both literal (oral dictation) and metaphorical (prophetic authority).
18. Baruch's answer is precise and revealing: *mippiv yiqra elai* ('from his mouth he would call out to me') describes an ongoing process of oral dictation. The mention of *deyo* ('ink') is one of the few references to writing materials in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Ezekiel 9:2-3) — a concrete physical detail that grounds the narrative in material reality. The ink was likely a carbon-based mixture of soot and gum. This verse provides the clearest biblical description of how prophetic texts were physically produced.
19. The officials' warning reveals their awareness that the scroll's content will provoke the king's wrath. Their counsel to hide (*histater*, from the root *s-t-r*, 'to conceal') shows they expect violence. This group of officials occupies a precarious middle position — they take the prophetic word seriously enough to be alarmed, but they serve a king who will not tolerate it. Their protective instinct toward Jeremiah and Baruch echoes Ahikam son of Shaphan's protection of Jeremiah in 26:24.
20. The officials take a precaution — they leave the physical scroll in safekeeping before going to the king, perhaps hoping to control the king's access to it or protect it from immediate destruction. The verb *hifqidu* ('they deposited, entrusted') implies careful placement for safekeeping. They report the contents orally (*vayyaggidu be'oznei hammelekh*, 'they reported in the king's ears') rather than bringing the scroll itself — a buffer that proves insufficient, as the king will demand the scroll.
21. The king demands the physical scroll — the officials' attempt to maintain a buffer fails. Jehudi now performs the third reading, this time directly to the king and his entire court. The verb *yiqra'eha* ('he read it') is singular — Jehudi reads aloud while the king and officials listen. The phrase *ha'omedim me'al hammelekh* ('standing beside/above the king') describes the court formation, with officials standing while the king is seated.
22. The *beit hachoref* ('winter house/quarters') was a section of the palace used in the cold months (cf. Amos 3:15). The ninth month (Kislev) corresponds to November-December, when Jerusalem can be cold enough to require heating. The *ach* is a portable brazier or fire-pot, not a built-in hearth — a metal or ceramic container holding burning charcoal, placed in the room for warmth. This detail sets the physical scene for the burning: the fire is already lit, available, within arm's reach. The narrative's attention to the brazier is ominous — it tells the reader exactly how the scroll will be destroyed before the destruction happens.
23. The *delathot* ('doors, columns') refers to the columns of text visible on the scroll when partially unrolled — each 'door' is a panel of writing. The *ta'ar hasofer* ('scribe's knife') was a blade used for cutting and trimming parchment or scraping off errors — Jehoiakim turns a tool of literary production into a tool of literary destruction. The iterative construction (reading three or four columns, then cutting, then throwing) indicates a prolonged, deliberate act — not a single impulsive throw but systematic, column-by-column destruction. The king slices apart the word of God with the same tool a scribe would use to prepare it. The repetition of 'the fire in the brazier' at the end hammers the image home.
24. This verse is constructed entirely as negation — what did NOT happen. The phrase *lo fachadu* ('they were not afraid') directly contrasts with the officials' alarm in verse 16 (*pachadu*). The phrase *lo qar'u et-bigdeihem* ('they did not tear their garments') is a devastating allusion to Josiah's response when a scroll was read to him: 'the king tore his garments' (2 Kings 22:11). Josiah ripped his clothes in grief and repentance; his son Jehoiakim rips the scroll in contempt. Father and son hear the word of God and respond with tearing — but what they tear reveals everything about their character.
25. The verb *hifgi'u* ('they urged, interceded, pleaded') indicates intense personal advocacy — these three officials tried to stop the king. Gemariah is the same official in whose chamber Baruch first read the scroll; his opposition to burning it is consistent with his earlier support. Elnathan's intercession is complex — this is the same man who brought the prophet Uriah back from Egypt for execution (26:22), yet here he tries to save the scroll. The phrase *velo shama aleihem* ('he would not listen to them') echoes the recurring accusation against Judah: God spoke and they did not listen. Now the king refuses to listen even to his own advisors.
26. *Ben-hammelekh* ('son of the king') may mean a literal prince or could be a court title. Jehoiakim's order to arrest Baruch and Jeremiah confirms the officials' fear in verse 19 — their warning to hide was well-founded. The final clause *vayyastirem YHWH* ('but the LORD hid them') is abrupt and

theologically decisive. No explanation is given for how God concealed them; the narrative simply states divine protection as a fact. The verb s-t-r ('to hide, conceal') echoes the officials' command histater ('hide yourselves') in verse 19 — what the officials advised in human wisdom, God accomplished in divine power.

27. The prophetic reception formula marks a new divine communication in response to the king's act. The phrase 'the scroll and the words' treats the physical scroll and its verbal content as two distinct things — the king burned the object, but the words persist. The narrative's structure enacts its own theology: the king destroys the scroll, and immediately God speaks again.
28. The command shuv qach ('again take') uses the verb shuv ('return, again') — the key verb of Jeremiah's theology now applied to the act of writing itself. The word returns. God's response to the burning is not grief or defeat but repetition — take another scroll, write again. The phrase megillah acheret ('another scroll') emphasizes material replacement, but the content is restored: 'all the previous words.' The king destroyed the medium; God restores the message.
29. God quotes Jehoiakim's own objection back to him — the king burned the scroll because it prophesied Babylonian invasion. The emphatic infinitive absolute bo yavo ('will certainly come') is the very prediction the king tried to annul by burning. The verb hishbit ('eliminate, cause to cease') is comprehensive — total depopulation, both human and animal. Jehoiakim's act was not merely censorship but an attempt at sympathetic magic: by destroying the written prediction, he hoped to prevent the predicted event. The theology of this chapter refutes that: destroying the word does not prevent the reality.
30. The judgment has two parts. First, dynastic termination: lo yihyeh-lo yoshev al-kisse David ('he will have no one sitting on David's throne'). Jehoiakim's son Jehoiachin did briefly reign (three months, 2 Kings 24:8) before deportation to Babylon, raising questions about fulfillment — the brevity of his reign may be the point, or the prophecy may refer to lasting dynastic rule. Second, the denial of proper burial: his corpse will be 'thrown out' (mushleket) to the elements. This connects to 22:18-19 where Jeremiah prophesied Jehoiakim would receive 'the burial of a donkey — dragged and thrown beyond the gates of Jerusalem.' The pairing of chorev ('heat') and qerach ('frost') creates a merism — his body will be exposed to every extreme, with no one to gather it.
31. The verb paqadti ('I will punish, visit upon') carries the full weight of divine reckoning — it means to pay attention to, to take account of, to hold accountable. The judgment extends concentrically: from Jehoiakim, to his offspring and servants, to all Jerusalem, to all Judah. The final clause velo shame'u ('but they did not listen') is the chapter's epitaph — the same indictment repeated throughout Jeremiah, now applied specifically to the king who burned the scroll. The irony is total: the king who refused to hear the words will now experience the reality those words described.
32. The final verse is the theological climax of the chapter. The scroll is reconstituted — every word the king burned is restored. But the last phrase delivers the punchline: ve'od nosaf aleihem devarim rabbim kaheimah ('and many similar words were added to them besides'). The king's attempt to silence the prophetic word resulted in MORE words. The scroll grew. Fire could not diminish it; destruction only multiplied it. This principle — that the word of God survives and exceeds every attempt to destroy it — becomes a foundational theme in biblical theology. The verb nosaf ('were added') is in the passive, suggesting divine rather than merely human initiative in the expansion.

37

Summary: *Jeremiah 37 opens with Zedekiah's installation as king by Nebuchadnezzar, noting immediately that neither the king nor his officials heeded the LORD's words through Jeremiah. When a temporary Egyptian military advance causes the Chaldeans to lift the siege of Jerusalem, Zedekiah sends a delegation asking Jeremiah to pray for the nation. The LORD's response is blunt: Egypt will retreat and the Chaldeans will return and burn the city. Jeremiah attempts to leave Jerusalem to claim a property inheritance in Benjamin, is arrested at the Benjamin Gate, accused of deserting to the Chaldeans, beaten, and imprisoned in the house of Jonathan the scribe. After many days in the dungeon, Zedekiah secretly summons Jeremiah to ask: 'Is there any word from the LORD?' Jeremiah's answer is unchanged: 'You will be handed over to the king of Babylon.' Jeremiah then pleads not to be sent back to Jonathan's dungeon, and Zedekiah transfers him to the court of the guard with a daily ration of bread.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter captures the paradox at the heart of Zedekiah's reign — a king who cannot stop consulting the prophet he cannot bring himself to obey. Zedekiah's secret question, 'Is there any word from the LORD?' (hayesh davar me'et YHWH, v. 17), is one of the most poignant moments in the book: a man who desperately wants a different answer but keeps asking a prophet who will not give him one. The temporary Egyptian relief (v. 5) creates a false hope that Jeremiah's prophecy has failed — but God immediately corrects this, declaring that even if the Chaldean army were reduced to wounded men lying in their tents, they would still rise and burn Jerusalem (v. 10). This hyperbolic statement underscores that Jerusalem's destruction is a divine decree, not a military calculation. Jeremiah's arrest on charges of desertion (v. 13) is bitterly ironic: the prophet who told others to surrender is accused of surrendering himself. The dungeon of Jonathan the scribe (beit ha-bor) is described in language suggesting a cistern-pit within a house,*

anticipating the literal cistern of chapter 38.

Translation Friction: *The verb nachal in verse 12 is debated — it may mean 'to receive a portion' (inheritance division), 'to slip away,' or 'to conduct business.' We rendered it as 'to claim his portion' following the context of property division among kinspeople, which connects to Jeremiah's land purchase in chapter 32. The phrase 'falling away to the Chaldeans' (nofel el ha-kasdim, v. 13) uses the participle of nafal ('to fall'), a technical term in this period for military desertion — we rendered it 'deserting to the Chaldeans' to capture the military accusation. Zedekiah's request in verse 21 for daily bread from 'the bakers' street' (chuts ha-ofim) is a specific topographic detail — we preserved this as a place name rather than a generic description.*

Connections: *Zedekiah's secret consultation with Jeremiah connects to 21:1-7 (his first inquiry) and anticipates 38:14-28 (his final meeting). The Egyptian army's approach and withdrawal echoes Ezekiel 17:15-17, where Ezekiel independently condemns Zedekiah's alliance with Egypt. The charge of desertion against Jeremiah parallels the charge against the soldiers in 38:19 and 39:9. Jeremiah's plea for his life (v. 20) echoes the petition form found in the Psalms of individual lament. The transfer to the court of the guard (chatsar ha-mattarah) positions Jeremiah for the events of chapters 38 and 39.*

¹King Zedekiah son of Josiah reigned in place of Coniah son of Jehoiakim, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had installed as king in the land of Judah. ²But neither he, nor his officials, nor the people of the land listened to the words of the LORD that he spoke through the prophet Jeremiah. ³King Zedekiah sent Jehucal son of Shelemiah and Zephaniah son of Maaseiah the priest to the prophet Jeremiah, saying, "Please pray to the LORD our God on our behalf." ⁴At that time Jeremiah was still moving freely among the people, for they had not yet placed him in the prison. ⁵Meanwhile, Pharaoh's army had marched out of Egypt, and when the Chaldeans who were besieging Jerusalem heard the report, they withdrew from Jerusalem. ⁶Then the word of the LORD came to the prophet Jeremiah: ⁷This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says: This is what you are to say to the king of Judah, who sent you to consult me — Pharaoh's army, which has marched out to help you, will return to its own land, to Egypt. ⁸The Chaldeans will return and attack this city. They will capture it and burn it with fire. ⁹This is what the LORD says: Do not deceive yourselves by thinking, 'The Chaldeans will surely leave us.' They will not leave. ¹⁰For even if you were to strike down the entire Chaldean army fighting against you and only wounded men remained among them, each lying in his tent — they would still rise up and burn this city with fire. ¹¹Now when the Chaldean army had withdrawn from Jerusalem because of Pharaoh's army, ¹²Jeremiah set out from Jerusalem to go to the territory of Benjamin, to claim his portion there among the people. ¹³When he reached the Benjamin Gate, the officer of the guard stationed there — a man named Irijah son of Shelemiah, son of Hananiah — seized the prophet Jeremiah, saying, "You are deserting to the Chaldeans!" ¹⁴Jeremiah said, "That is a lie! I am not deserting to the Chaldeans." But Irijah would not listen to him. He seized Jeremiah and brought him before the officials. ¹⁵The officials were furious with Jeremiah. They beat him and imprisoned him in the house of Jonathan the scribe, which they had converted into a prison. ¹⁶When Jeremiah had been placed in the pit-dungeon, in the vaulted cells, he remained there many days. ¹⁷Then King Zedekiah sent for him and had him brought out. The king questioned him secretly in his palace and asked, "Is there any word from the LORD?" Jeremiah answered, "There is." Then he said, "You will be handed over to the king of Babylon." ¹⁸Then Jeremiah said to King Zedekiah, "What crime have I committed against you, or against your officials, or against this people, that you have put me in prison? ¹⁹And where are your prophets who prophesied to you, saying, 'The king of Babylon will not come against you or against this land'? ²⁰Now please hear me, my lord the king. Let my plea come before you: do not send me back to the house of Jonathan the scribe, or I will die there." ²¹So King Zedekiah gave orders, and they placed Jeremiah in the court of the guard. A loaf of bread was given to him daily from the Bakers' Street, until all the bread in the city was gone. And Jeremiah remained in the court of the guard.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew himlikh ('caused to reign, installed') emphasizes that Zedekiah's kingship was Nebuchadnezzar's doing — he is a vassal, not a sovereign. 'Coniah' (Konyahu) is the shortened form of Jeconiah/Jehoiachin, who reigned only three months before being deported (2 Kings 24:8-17). We rendered himlikh as 'installed' rather than the KJV's 'made king' to highlight the political reality of puppet kingship.

2. The phrase *be-yad* ('by the hand of') is the standard idiom for prophetic mediation — God's words come 'through' or 'by the hand of' the prophet. The indictment covers three levels of society: king, court officials (*avadav*, literally 'his servants'), and the common people (*am ha-arets*). All three are culpable.
3. The delegation includes both a court official (*Jehucal*) and a priest (*Zephaniah son of Maaseiah*), representing both civil and religious authority. *Jehucal* reappears in 38:1 as one of the officials who demand Jeremiah's death — his role shifts from supplicant to accuser. The request *hitpallel-na* ('please pray') uses the polite particle *na*, revealing desperation beneath the royal dignity.
4. The narrative provides a temporal marker: Jeremiah still had freedom of movement — 'coming and going' (*ba vayotse*) is a Hebrew idiom for unrestricted daily activity. The word *keliy* ('prison, place of confinement') anticipates the imprisonments that follow in this chapter and the next.
5. The Pharaoh is *Hophra* (*Apries*, r. 589–570 BCE), mentioned by name in 44:30. His military expedition created temporary relief for Jerusalem and false hope that the siege was over. The verb *va-ye'alu* ('they went up,' i.e., 'withdrew') indicates a tactical retreat, not a defeat — the Chaldeans pulled back to deal with the Egyptian threat. The word *shim'am* ('their report, the news of them') is a cognate accusative construction emphasizing the hearing of intelligence.
6. The standard prophetic reception formula. The word *le'mor* ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing the divine speech that follows.
7. The verb *lidrosheni* ('to consult me, to seek me out') is the standard verb for seeking a prophetic oracle. God addresses the delegation rather than *Zedekiah* directly — the answer must pass through the same mediators who brought the question. The emphatic announcement that Egypt will retreat demolishes the political calculation behind *Zedekiah's* revolt.
8. Three verbs in rapid succession — return, capture, burn — create a compressed military narrative of Jerusalem's inevitable fate. The finality of the sequence leaves no room for negotiation or alternative outcomes. The verb *saraf* ('burn') foreshadows the literal burning of the temple and city described in 52:13.
9. The idiom *al tashshi'u nafshoteikhem* (literally 'do not lift up your souls') means 'do not delude yourselves' or 'do not raise false hopes.' We rendered it as 'do not deceive yourselves' to capture the self-deception God warns against. The infinitive absolute *halokh yelekhu* ('going they will go,' i.e., 'surely leave') expresses the people's confident expectation, which God flatly denies.
10. This is one of the most striking hyperbolic statements in the prophets: even a Chaldean army reduced entirely to wounded men would still carry out God's decree against Jerusalem. The word *meduqqarim* ('pierced, wounded') describes men run through with weapons, barely alive. The point is theological, not military — Jerusalem's fall is divinely ordained and no human calculation can prevent it.
11. The temporal clause sets the scene for Jeremiah's arrest. The verb *he'alot* ('going up, withdrawing') is the same used in verse 5 for the Chaldean withdrawal, creating narrative cohesion. The withdrawal was tactical — because of (*mippenei*, literally 'from before the face of') Pharaoh's approaching forces.
12. The verb *lachaloq* ('to divide, to receive a portion') is debated. The KJV's 'to separate himself' misses the likely meaning: Jeremiah was going to handle a property matter — the division or claiming of an inheritance among his kinspeople in *Anathoth* (in Benjamin). This connects to his purchase of the field in chapter 32. The phrase *betokh ha-am* ('among the people') indicates he was participating in a communal property distribution, not fleeing.
13. The phrase *nofel el ha-kasdim* ('falling to the Chaldeans') is the technical term for military desertion in wartime, literally 'falling over' to the enemy side. The accusation was plausible on the surface because Jeremiah had publicly urged surrender (21:9, 38:2). The *ba'al pequddut* ('master of oversight') was a military officer responsible for controlling movement through the city gates during the siege. *Irijah* is identified by his grandfather *Hananiah* — possibly the same false prophet *Hananiah* of chapter 28, which would make the arrest personally vindictive.
14. Jeremiah's protest *sheqer* ('falsehood, lie') uses the same word he applies to the false prophets throughout the book (cf. *navi sheqer*, 'prophet of falsehood'). The irony is sharp: the prophet of truth is accused on the basis of a *sheqer*. The officials (*sarim*) are the royal court administrators who function as a judicial body during wartime.
15. The verb *vayiqtsedu* ('they were furious') indicates a rage beyond judicial displeasure — this is personal hostility. The officials beat Jeremiah (*hikku*, from *nakah*, 'to strike') before any formal proceeding, indicating extrajudicial violence. *Jonathan* the scribe's house had been repurposed as a place of confinement (*beit ha-kele*), likely because the regular prison was overwhelmed during the siege. The conversion of a scribe's house into a dungeon symbolizes the perversion of literate, administrative order into instruments of oppression.
16. The *beit ha-bor* ('house of the pit') indicates an underground chamber — likely a cistern or cellar beneath the house, damp and dark. The *chanuyyot* ('vaulted cells, arched chambers') describes the specific architectural feature of the underground confinement: arched stone cells, cramped and suffocating. The phrase *yamim rabbim* ('many days') is deliberately vague, conveying an indefinite period of suffering.
17. The word *basseter* ('in secret') reveals *Zedekiah's* political cowardice — he cannot afford to be seen consulting Jeremiah, whom his officials have imprisoned. The question *hayesh davar me'et YHWH* ('Is there any word from the LORD?') is almost plaintive, as though the king hopes that confinement might have changed the prophet's message. Jeremiah's one-word answer *yesh* ('there is') precedes the devastating repetition of the same judgment he has delivered consistently: you will be handed over (*tinnatein*, *niphal* of *natan*) to Babylon.
18. The verb *chatati* ('I have sinned, offended') is from the root *ch-t-a*, the standard word for sin in Hebrew. Jeremiah turns the tables: if imprisonment is punishment, what is the offense? The threefold address — you, your officials, this people — mirrors the threefold indictment of verse 2, creating a structural parallel between the nation's guilt before God and the prophet's innocence before his accusers.

19. Jeremiah's rhetorical question is devastating: the false prophets who promised peace have been proven wrong by events. The word *ayyeh* ('where?') demands an accounting. The prophets who predicted no Babylonian invasion (cf. Hananiah in chapter 28) are conspicuously absent now that Nebuchadnezzar has arrived. Jeremiah does not need to argue his case — the siege itself vindicates him.
20. Jeremiah addresses Zedekiah as *adoni ha-melekh* ('my lord the king'), the formal court address, showing proper deference even while protesting his treatment. The word *techinnati* ('my supplication, my plea') is from the root *ch-n-n* ('to be gracious, to show favor') — Jeremiah is asking for mercy from the king even as he delivers God's message of judgment. The warning *velo amut sham* ('or I will die there') is a plain statement that the conditions in Jonathan's dungeon are lethal.
21. The *chatsar ha-mattarah* ('court of the guard') was an open courtyard attached to the royal palace where soldiers were garrisoned — a significant improvement over the underground dungeon. The *chuts ha-ofim* ('Bakers' Street') was a specific commercial lane in Jerusalem where bakers had their shops, mentioned only here in the Hebrew Bible. The detail 'until all the bread in the city was gone' foreshadows the famine conditions of the final siege (52:6). Zedekiah shows enough compassion to improve Jeremiah's conditions but not enough courage to release him or follow his counsel.

38

Summary: *Jeremiah 38 narrates the prophet's lowest physical point and his final exchange with Zedekiah. Four officials hear Jeremiah's continued message that only surrender to Babylon will save lives, and they petition the king to have him executed for undermining military morale. Zedekiah capitulates, handing Jeremiah over to the officials, who lower him into the cistern of Malkijah son of the king, where he sinks into the mud. Ebed-Melech, a Cushite official in the royal palace, intervenes — he appeals directly to Zedekiah, who authorizes a rescue. Ebed-Melech lowers rags and worn cloth for Jeremiah to pad the ropes, then pulls him out. In the chapter's second half, Zedekiah summons Jeremiah one final time, swearing a secret oath not to kill him. Jeremiah delivers his last counsel: surrender to the officers of Babylon and you will live; refuse, and the city will burn and you will not escape. Zedekiah confesses his real fear — not the Babylonians, but the Judeans who have already deserted, who might abuse him. Jeremiah assures him this will not happen if he surrenders. The king swears Jeremiah to secrecy about their conversation, and Jeremiah remains in the court of the guard until Jerusalem falls.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most vivid rescue scenes in the Hebrew Bible. The detail of Ebed-Melech lowering worn rags and old cloth (*selavot beloyei secharavot*, v. 11-12) for Jeremiah to pad under his arms before being pulled up is extraordinarily specific — it reflects both physical compassion and practical wisdom. Ebed-Melech is a Cushite (Ethiopian), a foreign official who shows more moral courage than any Judean in the narrative. His name means 'servant of the king,' but he serves the true King by rescuing the true prophet. God rewards his faith explicitly in 39:15-18. The chapter also reveals the full tragedy of Zedekiah: a man who privately agrees with the prophet, who even tries to protect him, but who is controlled by his own officials and paralyzed by fear. His confession in verse 19, 'I am afraid of the Judeans who have deserted to the Chaldeans,' is devastating — the king of Judah fears his own defectors more than he fears God.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the king cannot do anything against you' (v. 5) uses the Hebrew *eyn ha-melekh yukhal etkhem davar*, which is difficult — it could mean 'the king is unable to oppose you' (political weakness) or 'the king will not refuse you anything' (passive consent). We rendered it to capture Zedekiah's abdication of authority. The word *selavot* (v. 11) is rare and its exact meaning debated — possibly 'rags,' 'worn-out cloths,' or 'tattered garments.' Paired with *beloyei* ('worn out'), the phrase emphasizes the threadbare, discarded nature of the material. The verb *tava* (v. 6, 'he sank') describes sinking into the *tit* ('mud, mire') at the bottom of the cistern — we preserved the visceral quality of the image. Zedekiah's final instruction to Jeremiah to mislead the officials (vv. 25-26) raises an ethical question about deception that we document without resolving.*

Connections: *Ebed-Melech's rescue of Jeremiah from the cistern contrasts with the brothers who threw Joseph into a *bor* (Genesis 37:24) — both are pits, but Ebed-Melech reverses the crime of Joseph's brothers. God's explicit promise of safety to Ebed-Melech (39:15-18) echoes the reward given to Rahab the Canaanite (Joshua 6:25) — both are foreigners who protect God's people and are saved from the destruction that follows. Zedekiah's fear of the Judean deserters (v. 19) connects to the broader theme of *nafal* ('to fall/desert') that runs through chapters 37-39. The final counsel to surrender connects directly to 21:8-10, where Jeremiah first publicly offered the choice between the way of life and the way of death. Jeremiah's continued confinement in the court of the guard until the city's fall (v. 28) sets up the narrative of chapter 39.*

¹Shephatiah son of Mattan, Gedaliah son of Pashhur, Jehucal son of Shelemiah, and Pashhur son of Malkijah heard the words that Jeremiah was speaking to all the people: ²This is what the LORD says: Whoever stays in this city will die by the sword, by famine, or by plague. But whoever goes out to the Chaldeans will live — his life will be his plunder, and he will survive. ³This is what the LORD says: This city will certainly be handed over to the army of the king of Babylon, and he will capture it. ⁴The officials said to the king, "Let this man be put to death, because he is weakening the resolve of the soldiers who remain in this city and the resolve of all the people by speaking these words to them. This man does not seek the welfare of this people but their ruin." ⁵King Zedekiah answered, "He is in your hands. The king can do nothing to oppose you." ⁶They took Jeremiah and threw him into the cistern of Malkijah, a son of the king, which was in the court of the guard. They lowered Jeremiah down with ropes. There was no water in the cistern — only mud. And Jeremiah sank into the mud. ⁷When Ebed-Melech the Cushite, a court official in the royal palace, heard that they had put Jeremiah into the cistern — the king was sitting at the Benjamin Gate at the time — ⁸Ebed-Melech left the royal palace and spoke to the king: ⁹"My lord the king, these men have done a terrible thing in all they have done to the prophet Jeremiah. They have thrown him into the cistern, and he will die there from starvation, for there is no more bread in the city." ¹⁰Then the king commanded Ebed-Melech the Cushite, "Take thirty men from here under your authority and pull the prophet Jeremiah up out of the cistern before he dies." ¹¹Ebed-Melech took the men under his command and went into the royal palace, to a storeroom beneath the treasury. From there he took worn-out rags and tattered scraps of cloth, and lowered them down to Jeremiah in the cistern by ropes. ¹²Ebed-Melech the Cushite called down to Jeremiah, "Put the worn rags and scraps of cloth under your arms, beneath the ropes." And Jeremiah did so. ¹³They pulled Jeremiah up with the ropes and lifted him out of the cistern. And Jeremiah remained in the court of the guard. ¹⁴King Zedekiah sent for the prophet Jeremiah and had him brought to the third entrance of the house of the LORD. The king said to Jeremiah, "I am going to ask you something. Do not hide anything from me." ¹⁵Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "If I tell you, will you not certainly put me to death? And if I give you counsel, you will not listen to me." ¹⁶King Zedekiah swore secretly to Jeremiah, "As the LORD lives — the one who gave us this life — I will not put you to death, and I will not hand you over to those men who are seeking your life." ¹⁷Then Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, "This is what the LORD, the God of Armies, the God of Israel, says: If you will go out and surrender to the officers of the king of Babylon, you will live. This city will not be burned with fire, and you and your household will survive. ¹⁸But if you do not go out to the officers of the king of Babylon, this city will be handed over to the Chaldeans. They will burn it with fire, and you yourself will not escape from their hands." ¹⁹King Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, "I am afraid of the Judeans who have deserted to the Chaldeans — they might hand me over to them, and they will abuse me." ²⁰Jeremiah answered, "They will not hand you over. Please listen to the voice of the LORD in what I am telling you, and it will go well for you, and you will live. ²¹But if you refuse to go out, this is what the LORD has shown me:

²²All the women remaining in the palace of the king of Judah will be led out to the officers of the king of Babylon, and those women will say:

'Your trusted friends misled you
and overpowered you.
Your feet are sunk in the mud —
they have turned their backs on you.'

²³All your wives and children will be led out to the Chaldeans. You yourself will not escape from their grasp but will be seized by the king of Babylon. And this city will be burned with fire." ²⁴Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, "Let no one know about this conversation, and you will not die. ²⁵If the officials hear that I have spoken with you and they come to you and say, 'Tell us what you said to the king and what the king said to you — do not hide it from us, and we will not kill you' — ²⁶then say to them, 'I was presenting my plea to the king, asking him not to send me back to Jonathan's house to die there.'" ²⁷All the officials came to Jeremiah and questioned him. He told them exactly what the king had commanded him to say. They stopped pressing him, because the conversation had not been overheard. ²⁸Jeremiah remained in the court of the guard until the day Jerusalem was captured. He was still there when Jerusalem fell.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Four officials are named — a formal accusation requires multiple witnesses. Jehucal (Jucal) is the same man Zedekiah sent to Jeremiah in 37:3 as a supplicant; he now turns accuser. Pashhur son of Malkijah appeared in 21:1 in a similar diplomatic role. The verb *medabber* (participle, 'was speaking') indicates continuous, ongoing public preaching — Jeremiah had not stopped despite his recent imprisonment.
2. The triad *cherev, ra'av, dever* ('sword, famine, plague') is one of Jeremiah's most characteristic formulas, appearing over a dozen times in the book as covenant-curse language. The striking phrase *nafsho le-shalal* ('his life will be his plunder') means that the deserter's only spoil of war will be his own survival — he will escape with nothing but his life, as though he had plundered it from the wreckage. This is the same message as 21:9.
3. The infinitive absolute *hinnaton tinnaten* ('being given it will be given') creates emphatic certainty — the construction doubles the verb to remove all doubt. The outcome is not conditional or negotiable. The verb *lakad* ('capture, seize') is a military term for the fall of a fortified position.
4. The idiom *merappeh et yedei* ('weakening the hands of') is a military expression for undermining morale — literally making the warriors' hands go slack so they cannot grip their weapons. Remarkably, this exact phrase appears in the Lachish Letters (Letter VI, c. 588 BCE), a contemporary military correspondence complaining that officials in Jerusalem were 'weakening the hands' of the people — possibly a direct reference to Jeremiah's preaching. The officials frame their accusation in patriotic terms: Jeremiah seeks *ra'ah* ('ruin, disaster') rather than *shalom* ('welfare') for the people.
5. Zedekiah's capitulation is staggering. The statement *eyn ha-melekh yukhal etkhem davar* ('the king cannot do anything against you') is an open admission of royal impotence. The king refers to himself in the third person, as if distancing himself from his own powerlessness. He does not condemn Jeremiah or endorse the death sentence — he simply abandons the prophet to the officials' will. This is the portrait of a king who has lost all authority over his own court.
6. The *bor* ('cistern, pit') was a bell-shaped water-storage chamber cut into rock, common in Judean architecture. When empty of water, thick mud collected at the bottom. The phrase *vayyitba Yirmeyahu battiyt* ('and Jeremiah sank into the mud') is viscerally descriptive — the verb *tava* ('to sink, to be swallowed') conveys slow submersion. Without rescue, Jeremiah would have suffocated or died of exposure in the mud. The phrase *ben ha-melekh* ('son of the king') may mean a literal prince or a royal official bearing that title.
7. *Ebed-Melech* ('servant of the king') is identified as a *Kushi* ('Cushite'), meaning he was from the region of Cush (modern Sudan/Ethiopia). The word *saris* can mean 'eunuch' or simply 'court official' — the term had evolved by this period to designate high-ranking officials regardless of physical status. We rendered it 'court official' as the narrative emphasizes his role and access rather than physical condition. The detail of the king sitting at the Benjamin Gate places Zedekiah in a public judicial setting where *Ebed-Melech* can approach him.
8. The verb *vayyetse* ('he went out') indicates urgency — *Ebed-Melech* left the palace compound to find the king at the city gate. He acts immediately, without waiting for a convenient moment or seeking permission through intermediaries.
9. *Ebed-Melech* uses the formal court address *adoni ha-melekh* ('my lord the king') and frames his appeal in moral terms: *here'u* ('they have done evil, acted wickedly'). He does not merely report the situation but passes judgment on the officials' actions. The phrase *vayyamot tachtav* ('he will die in his place,' literally 'beneath him') may refer to Jeremiah dying where he is, stuck in the mud. The famine detail — 'there is no more bread in the city' — explains why the daily ration from the Bakers' Street (37:21) has ceased.
10. The number thirty is surprisingly large for a rescue operation — it may indicate the depth of the cistern or the difficulty of extracting a man from thick mud, or it may serve as a royal guard escort to prevent the officials from interfering. The phrase *beterem yamut* ('before he dies') reveals that Zedekiah acts under the threat of Jeremiah's imminent death — he does not initiate the rescue but responds to *Ebed-Melech*'s moral pressure. The phrase *be-yadekha* ('under your hand/authority') gives *Ebed-Melech* command over the operation.
11. The detailed description of *Ebed-Melech* gathering *beloyei sechabot u-beloyei melachim* ('worn-out rags and tattered scraps') from a palace storeroom is one of the most humanizing moments in the prophetic literature. He thinks ahead to the practical problem: ropes alone under the armpits of a weakened man stuck in mud would cut into the flesh. The storeroom 'beneath the treasury' (*tachat ha-otsar*) suggests a basement or cellar area where discarded materials were kept.
12. The phrase *tachat atsilot yadekha* ('under the hollows of your arms,' i.e., your armpits) is anatomically precise. *Ebed-Melech*'s instruction reveals practical compassion — he understands that Jeremiah, weakened and possibly injured, would be further hurt by rough ropes cutting into bare skin. The rags serve as padding. The simple conclusion *vayyaas Yirmeyahu ken* ('and Jeremiah did so') conveys the prophet's trust and compliance without embellishment.
13. The rescue is described with understated brevity — *vayyimshekhhu* ('they pulled') and *vayyaalu* ('they brought up'). After the detailed preparation, the actual extraction is narrated without drama. Jeremiah is returned to the court of the guard (*chatsar ha-mattarah*), the same relatively favorable confinement he occupied before (37:21). He is not freed but his conditions are significantly improved.
14. The *mavo ha-shelishi* ('third entrance') of the temple is an architectural detail mentioned only here — it was apparently a private or restricted entry point suitable for a secret meeting. Zedekiah chooses the temple rather than the palace, perhaps seeking sacred ground for this consultation. His demand *al tekhached mimmenni davar* ('do not conceal anything from me') echoes his earlier secret consultation in 37:17 but is more insistent, using the verb *kachad* ('to hide, conceal').

15. Jeremiah's response reveals the impossible position of the prophet: speaking truth risks execution, but the king will not follow advice anyway. The infinitive absolute *hamot temiteni* ('killing you will kill me') expresses certainty — Jeremiah expects death if he speaks plainly. The second clause is not a question but a bitter statement of fact: 'you will not listen to me.' Jeremiah has learned from experience that Zedekiah wants reassurance, not truth.
16. Zedekiah swears by the LORD — invoking the very God whose word he refuses to obey. The oath formula *chay YHWH* ('as the LORD lives') is the strongest available, and the qualifying phrase *asher asah lanu et ha-nefesh ha-zot* ('who made us this life/soul') adds theological weight by acknowledging God as creator. The irony is acute: the king invokes God's authority to protect the prophet while simultaneously defying God's counsel through that same prophet. The *basseter* ('in secret') again marks this as a private meeting hidden from the officials.
17. The full divine title *YHWH Elohei Tsevaot Elohei Yisrael* ('the LORD, God of Armies, God of Israel') is deployed at this critical moment — the most extended form of the divine name, conveying maximum authority. The verb *yatso tetsu* ('going out you will go out') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis. 'Going out' to the enemy officers is the euphemism for formal surrender. The promise is conditional and comprehensive: personal survival, the city spared from burning, and the household preserved.
18. The conditional structure creates a stark binary: surrender and live, or resist and lose everything. The verb *lo timmalet* ('you will not escape') uses the *niphal* of *malat*, emphasizing the futility of any attempt at flight. The direct address *ve-attah* ('and you yourself') makes the consequence personal — Zedekiah individually will be captured.
19. Zedekiah's confession reveals his deepest fear: not the Babylonians themselves, but his own people who have already defected. The word *do'eg* ('afraid, anxious') expresses genuine dread. The verb *hit'alelu* ('mock, abuse, mistreat') is the same root used for the Philistines' abuse of Samson (Judges 16:25) — it implies public humiliation, mockery, and physical mistreatment. The Judean deserters would regard Zedekiah as a traitor who prolonged the war unnecessarily, costing lives. The king fears retribution from those who followed Jeremiah's counsel before he did.
20. Jeremiah's *lo yittenu* ('they will not hand you over') is a direct prophetic assurance — not speculation but divine guarantee. The plea *shema na* ('please listen') uses the same verb *shama* that dominates the book's vocabulary — the fundamental call to obey. The phrase *veyitav lekha* ('and it will go well for you') echoes the Deuteronomic promise formulas (Deuteronomy 4:40, 5:16, 6:3).
21. The verb *hir'ani* ('he has shown me') indicates a visionary experience — Jeremiah has been given a vision of what will happen if Zedekiah refuses to surrender. The shift from verbal oracle to visual revelation heightens the urgency. The verb *ma'en* ('to refuse') carries connotations of obstinate resistance, not mere hesitation.
22. The women's taunt is presented as poetry — a mocking song composed by the royal women as they are led away as captives. The phrase *anshei shelomekha* ('your men of peace,' i.e., 'your trusted friends, your allies') refers to the officials who gave Zedekiah bad counsel. The image *hotebu babits raglekha* ('your feet are sunk in the mud') creates a devastating parallel to Jeremiah's literal sinking in the cistern mud (v. 6) — the king who let the prophet sink in mud will himself be stuck in the mire of his own political situation. The verb *hissitukha* ('they misled you, incited you') is from the root *s-w-t*, the same verb used for divine testing or incitement (cf. 1 Chronicles 21:1).
23. The consequences escalate: family captured, king seized personally, city burned. The verb *tittafes* ('you will be seized') is from the root *t-p-s* ('to seize, capture'), a military term for taking a prisoner. The phrase *ve-et ha-ir ha-zot tisrof ba-esh* ('and this city you will cause to be burned with fire') uses the *hiphil* form, potentially implying Zedekiah's refusal to surrender will be the cause of the city's burning — his inaction bears responsibility.
24. Zedekiah's immediate response is not to obey the divine counsel but to demand secrecy. The conditional *velo tamut* ('and you will not die') is ambiguous — it could be a promise of protection or a veiled threat: keep silent or face consequences. The king's priorities are laid bare: controlling information matters more to him than responding to God's word.
25. Zedekiah anticipates the officials' interrogation of Jeremiah, revealing how thoroughly the officials control information at court. The demand *al tekhach* ('do not conceal') from the officials would mirror the king's own words in verse 14, creating a situation where Jeremiah is pressured by both sides.
26. Zedekiah instructs Jeremiah to give a partial truth: Jeremiah did indeed make this plea (37:20). The king does not ask the prophet to lie outright but to reveal only a portion of the conversation. The verb *mappil* ('presenting, casting') combined with *techinnah* ('plea, supplication') means literally 'casting my plea before' — the same petition language of 37:20. The ethical complexity of this guided deception is left in the text without editorial comment.
27. The verb *vayyacharishu* ('they fell silent, they stopped') indicates the officials accepted Jeremiah's account and ceased their interrogation. The phrase *ki lo nishma ha-davar* ('because the matter was not heard') confirms that the private conversation between king and prophet remained secret. Jeremiah complies with the king's instruction — the text reports this without moral commentary, leaving the reader to assess Zedekiah's manipulation of the prophet.
28. The chapter ends with a grim *inclusio*: Jeremiah remains confined in the court of the guard as Jerusalem falls around him. The verb *nilkedah* ('was captured') from *lakad* ('to seize, capture') is repeated twice for emphasis — the city was taken, and when it was taken, the prophet was still imprisoned. The redundancy is deliberate, bridging to the fall narrative in chapter 39. Jeremiah, who told the truth about the city's fate, experiences that fate from inside a prison. The prophet was vindicated, but the vindication came as catastrophe.

39

Summary: *Jeremiah 39 records the event Jeremiah has prophesied for decades: the fall of Jerusalem. In the ninth year of Zedekiah, Nebuchadnezzar besieges the city; by the eleventh year, the wall is breached. Babylonian officials take their seat in the Middle Gate — a symbol of judicial authority over a conquered city. Zedekiah flees by night toward the Jordan valley but is overtaken at Jericho. His sons are executed before his eyes, and then his eyes are put out — the last thing he ever sees is the death of his dynasty. The city is burned and its people deported. Yet within the catastrophe, two acts of deliverance occur: Jeremiah is released from the court of the guard and entrusted to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, and Ebed-Melech the Cushite receives a personal oracle of survival because he trusted in God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter compresses the most catastrophic event in ancient Judah's history into eighteen verses. The narrative is spare and brutal — no laments, no prophetic commentary, just the bare facts of siege, breach, flight, capture, blinding, burning, and deportation. The Babylonian officials named in verse 3 — Nergal-Sharezer, Samgar-Nebo, Sarsechim the Rab-saris, Nergal-Sharezer the Rab-mag — are attested in cuneiform records, anchoring the text in verifiable history. The detail that Zedekiah's sons were killed 'before his eyes' (le'enav) and then his eyes were blinded is devastatingly precise: the last image burned into his vision was the extinction of his line. We preserved the starkness of the Hebrew without narrative padding. The oracle to Ebed-Melech (verses 15-18) rewards the one Gentile who acted with compassion toward Jeremiah in chapter 38, creating an ironic contrast — a foreign slave survives while a Davidic king is destroyed.*

Translation Friction: *The list of Babylonian officials in verse 3 presents textual difficulties. The names and titles are partially corrupted in the Masoretic tradition, and scholars disagree on how many individuals are listed and which words are names versus titles. We followed the most defensible parsing while noting uncertainties. The phrase 'in the Middle Gate' (besha'ar hattavekh) is geographically uncertain — its exact location in Jerusalem's wall system is debated. The transition between the fall narrative (vv. 1-10) and the Jeremiah deliverance (vv. 11-14) and the Ebed-Melech oracle (vv. 15-18) involves apparent chronological displacement, since the oracle to Ebed-Melech is introduced as occurring 'while Jeremiah was confined in the court of the guard' — that is, before the fall. We preserved the text's own sequence without rearranging.*

Connections: *The fall of Jerusalem fulfills Jeremiah's repeated warnings throughout chapters 1-38, particularly the explicit predictions in 21:3-10, 32:3-5, 34:2-3, and 38:17-23. Zedekiah's capture at Jericho (v. 5) fulfills 32:4 and 34:3. The blinding of Zedekiah reconciles two seemingly contradictory prophecies: Jeremiah said he would see the king of Babylon's face (32:4, 34:3) while Ezekiel said he would not see Babylon (Ezekiel 12:13) — he saw Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah but was blinded before reaching Babylon. The parallel account appears in 2 Kings 25:1-12 and Jeremiah 52:4-16. Ebed-Melech's deliverance connects to his rescue of Jeremiah from the cistern in 38:7-13, and the phrase 'because you trusted in me' (ki batachta bi) links to the fundamental prophetic demand for trust in God rather than political alliances.*

¹In the ninth year of Zedekiah king of Judah, in the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came with his entire army against Jerusalem and laid siege to it. ²In the eleventh year of Zedekiah, in the fourth month, on the ninth day of the month, the city wall was breached. ³All the officials of the king of Babylon entered and took their seats in the Middle Gate: Nergal-Sharezer, Samgar-Nebo, Sarsechim the chief officer, Nergal-Sharezer the chief magus, and all the rest of the officials of the king of Babylon. ⁴When Zedekiah king of Judah and all the soldiers saw them, they fled, going out from the city at night by way of the king's garden, through the gate between the two walls, and he went out toward the Arabah. ⁵But the Chaldean army pursued them and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho. They seized him and brought him up to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon at Riblah in the land of Hamath, and he pronounced judgment on him. ⁶The king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah at Riblah before his eyes, and the king of Babylon also slaughtered all the nobles of Judah. ⁷Then he blinded the eyes of Zedekiah and bound him in bronze shackles to bring him to Babylon. ⁸The Chaldeans burned the king's palace and the houses of the people with fire, and they tore down the walls of Jerusalem. ⁹Nebuzaradan

the captain of the guard deported to Babylon the rest of the people who remained in the city, the deserters who had gone over to him, and the rest of the population that remained. ¹⁰But Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard left behind some of the poorest people who had nothing, in the land of Judah, and he gave them vineyards and fields on that day. ¹¹Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon gave orders concerning Jeremiah through Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard: ¹²Take him and watch over him. Do nothing harmful to him — rather, do for him whatever he asks you. ¹³So Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard sent word, along with Nebushazban the chief officer, and Nergal-Sharezer the chief magus, and all the senior officials of the king of Babylon. ¹⁴They sent for Jeremiah and took him from the court of the guard, and they entrusted him to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, to bring him out to his home. And he lived among the people. ¹⁵The word of the LORD had come to Jeremiah while he was still confined in the court of the guard: ¹⁶Go and say to Ebed-Melech the Cushite: This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says — I am bringing my words against this city for disaster, not for good, and they will be fulfilled before your eyes on that day. ¹⁷But I will rescue you on that day, declares the LORD, and you will not be handed over to the men you fear. ¹⁸For I will certainly save you, and you will not fall by the sword. Your life will be your plunder, because you trusted in me, declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula places the beginning of the siege in January 588 BCE. The verb *vayyatsuru* ('they besieged') is from *tsur*, meaning to press in, to confine, to besiege — the military image of surrounding a city and cutting off all supply lines. The Hebrew uses the fuller form *Nevukhadre'ttsar* for the Babylonian king's name, reflecting the original Akkadian *Nabu-kudurri-usur* ('Nabu, protect the boundary stone').
2. The siege lasted approximately eighteen months — from January 588 to July 586 BCE. The passive verb *hovqe'ah* ('was breached') is from *baqa'*, meaning to split open, to break through. The text records the breach with devastating brevity — no battle description, no heroic resistance, just the bare fact that the wall was split open. The ninth of Tammuz became a day of mourning in Jewish tradition.
3. The Babylonian officials *'sit* (*vayyeshvu*) in the gate — this is an act of judicial and administrative authority, not casual rest. City gates in the ancient Near East served as courtrooms and government seats. The names and titles in this verse present significant textual difficulties. *Rab-saris* ('chief officer' or 'chief eunuch') and *Rab-mag* ('chief magus') are titles, not personal names. The name *Nergal-Sharezer* appears twice, likely referring to two different officials; one may be identifiable with *Neriglissar*, who later became king of Babylon (560-556 BCE). The 'Middle Gate' (*sha'ar hattavekh*) likely refers to a gate between the upper and lower sections of Jerusalem, though its exact location is debated.
4. The Hebrew *vayyehi* ('and it was') is a narrative transition marker, rendered naturally without the archaic 'and it came to pass.' The escape route — through the king's garden and the gate between the double walls — was at the southeastern corner of the city, near the junction of the Kidron and Hinnom valleys. The *Arabah* refers to the Jordan Rift Valley, indicating Zedekiah was heading east toward the Jordan and possibly seeking refuge across the river. The flight at night underscores the desperation — the king of Judah fleeing his own capital like a fugitive.
5. The verb *vayyassigu* ('they overtook') is from *nasag*, meaning to reach, to catch up with — Zedekiah's flight was intercepted before he could cross the Jordan. *Riblah* in the land of Hamath was Nebuchadnezzar's field headquarters in central Syria, strategically located on the Orontes River — far from Jerusalem, requiring a long forced march for the captive king. The phrase *vaydabber itto mishpatim* ('he spoke judgments with him') is a legal idiom meaning he pronounced a judicial sentence, not merely that they had a conversation.
6. The verb *shachat* ('slaughtered') is from the same root used for sacrificial slaughter — its use here is brutally visceral, not the more neutral verb *harag* ('killed'). The phrase *le'enav* ('before his eyes') is devastatingly precise: Zedekiah was forced to watch the execution of his own sons. The *chorei Yehudah* ('nobles of Judah') — the political and military leadership — were eliminated alongside the royal house, ensuring no organized resistance could continue.
7. The verb *ivver* ('blinded') describes the physical act of putting out the eyes. The juxtaposition with the previous verse is devastating — the last thing Zedekiah saw was his sons being killed, and then he was blinded. The *nechúshṭayim* ('bronze shackles,' literally 'double bronze') indicates heavy fetters. This detail fulfills both Jeremiah's prophecy that Zedekiah would see the king of Babylon face to face (34:3) and Ezekiel's prophecy that he would be brought to Babylon but would not see it (Ezekiel 12:13) — the two prophecies are reconciled by the sequence: he saw Nebuchadnezzar, then was blinded before the journey.
8. The verb *sarefu* ('they burned') is followed by *ba'esh* ('with fire'), which is technically redundant but emphatic — the destruction was total, consuming. The verb *natátsu* ('they tore down, demolished') for the walls indicates systematic dismantling, not merely damage from the siege. The demolition of the walls removed Jerusalem's military viability and its symbolic identity as a fortified city of God. The Hebrew *bet hammelek* is literally 'house of the king' — rendered as 'palace' for clarity, since 'house' in English does not convey the scale of a royal compound.
9. Nebuzaradan's title *rav-tabbachim* literally means 'chief of the butchers' or 'chief of the slaughterers' — an ancient title that had evolved to mean 'captain of the guard' or 'chief executioner.' The *nophelim* ('those who fell away, deserters') refers to those who had surrendered to the Babylonians during the siege — even they were deported, not rewarded for their defection. The repetition of *hannish'arim* ('those remaining') emphasizes the thoroughness of the deportation.

10. The dallim ('poor, destitute') were left behind precisely because they posed no political or economic threat. The irony is sharp: those with nothing suddenly received the confiscated vineyards and fields of the deported elite. The word yigevim ('fields' or 'cisterns') is rare — it may refer to agricultural plots or water catchment areas, both essential for subsistence farming. Babylonian imperial policy typically left an agricultural underclass to keep the land productive and prevent it from becoming a wilderness.
11. The verb tsivvah ('he commanded, gave orders') indicates a formal royal directive. That Nebuchadnezzar personally issued orders about Jeremiah suggests the Babylonians knew of his prophecies urging surrender — information likely reported by the Judean deserters (v. 9). The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct speech.
12. The phrase ve'einekha sim alav ('set your eyes on him') is an idiom meaning to watch over, to care for — not surveillance but protection. The royal command grants Jeremiah a remarkable status: a conquered people's prophet receiving personal protection from the conquering emperor. The instruction 'do for him whatever he asks' (ka'asher yedabber elekha ken aseh immo) gives Jeremiah an astonishing degree of freedom and personal agency under Babylonian authority.
13. Three high-ranking Babylonian officials are dispatched to handle Jeremiah's release, underscoring the importance Nebuchadnezzar placed on the prophet's treatment. Rab-saris and Rab-mag are titles rather than personal names: rab-saris is 'chief of the eunuchs/officials' and rab-mag is 'chief magus/diviner.' The Hebrew rabbei melekh Bavel ('senior officials of the king of Babylon') indicates the broader command structure was involved.
14. The chatsar hammattarah ('court of the guard') was the military detention area within the royal compound where Jeremiah had been held since 37:21 — not a dungeon, but a form of house arrest. Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan came from a family with a history of protecting Jeremiah: his father Ahikam had saved the prophet from execution after the temple sermon (26:24), and his grandfather Shaphan was the scribe who read the discovered Torah scroll to King Josiah (2 Kings 22:10). The phrase vayyeshev betokh ha'am ('he lived among the people') indicates Jeremiah was not deported but remained in Judah — a free man among the surviving remnant.
15. This verse marks a chronological flashback — the oracle to Ebed-Melech occurred during Jeremiah's confinement, before the fall of the city. The verb atsur ('confined, restrained') is from atsar, meaning to shut up, to imprison. The pluperfect 'had come' reflects the temporal sequence: this word was given prior to the events of verses 1-14. The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon.
16. Ebed-Melech ('servant of the king') is identified as ha-Kushi ('the Cushite'), indicating he was from the region of modern Sudan/Ethiopia. The name may be a title or epithet rather than a birth name. The phrase mevi et-devarai ('bringing my words') is significant: God's spoken prophecies are not merely predictions but active agents — they arrive, they are fulfilled, they accomplish their purpose. The contrast lera'ah velo letovah ('for disaster and not for good') echoes 21:10 and makes clear that the prophetic word Jeremiah has spoken against Jerusalem will be realized in full.
17. The verb hitsaltikha ('I will rescue you') is from natsal, meaning to deliver, to snatch away, to rescue from danger. The promise is specific and personal — amid national catastrophe, one individual receives a divine guarantee of survival. The phrase yagor mippenhem ('you fear from their faces') uses yagor, which implies dread or terror — Ebed-Melech had reason to fear retribution from the pro-war faction who had opposed Jeremiah and resented those who aided him.
18. The infinitive absolute construction mallet amallettekha ('I will certainly save you') is emphatic — an absolute divine guarantee. The idiom nafshekha leshalal ('your life as plunder') is unique to Jeremiah and deeply ironic: in a scene of total looting, the greatest plunder is simply to walk away alive. The reason for Ebed-Melech's deliverance is stated plainly: ki batachta bi ('because you trusted in me'). This is the only place in the chapter where trust (bitachon) in God is explicitly named, and it belongs not to a king or priest or prophet but to a foreign court official who pulled Jeremiah out of a cistern (38:7-13).

40

Summary: *Jeremiah 40 narrates the immediate aftermath of Jerusalem's fall. Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard releases Jeremiah at Ramah, where deportees were being assembled for the march to Babylon. The Babylonian commander delivers a striking theological speech, attributing Judah's destruction to their sin against their own God. Jeremiah is given the choice to go to Babylon with full provision or to remain in the land — he chooses to stay. Gedaliah son of Ahikam is appointed governor over the remnant at Mizpah. Judean military commanders and scattered refugees gather to him, and he urges them to settle down, serve the king of Babylon, and harvest the land. Finally, Johanan son of Kareah brings intelligence that Baalis king of Ammon has sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to assassinate Gedaliah. Gedaliah refuses to believe it and forbids Johanan from striking preemptively — a fateful decision that will cost him his life in chapter 41.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The most remarkable element is the Babylonian commander's theological speech (vv. 2-3). A pagan military officer correctly interprets Judah's fall as the fulfillment of their own God's judgment — the very message Jeremiah had preached for forty years and been persecuted for. The irony is layered: the enemy understands what Israel's own kings, priests, and prophets refused to accept. Gedaliah's appointment represents a thread of hope — a governor from a*

family loyal to the covenant (grandson of Shaphan, son of Ahikam who protected Jeremiah), governing a remnant in the land. But the chapter's final verses cast a shadow over this fragile restoration: the assassination plot is revealed, warned against, and dismissed. We rendered Gedaliah's refusal to believe the intelligence report with careful attention to his exact words — he does not merely doubt but actively forbids action, sealing his own fate.

Translation Friction: The relationship between 39:14 (Jeremiah entrusted to Gedaliah) and 40:1-6 (Jeremiah released at Ramah) presents a chronological tension — it appears Jeremiah was released twice, or the two accounts describe different stages of the same process. We rendered each passage as the Hebrew presents it without harmonizing. The verb 'found' (matsa) in verse 1 is unusual — Nebuzaradan 'found' Jeremiah among the deportees at Ramah, suggesting the prophet had been swept up in the mass deportation despite the earlier order to protect him. The list of locations where scattered Judeans gathered (v. 11-12) required careful handling of geography.

Connections: Nebuzaradan's theological speech (vv. 2-3) echoes Jeremiah's own words throughout the book, particularly 25:3-11 and 35:17. Gedaliah's appointment connects to his family's protection of Jeremiah in 26:24 and the broader Shaphan family's role in Josiah's reform (2 Kings 22:3-14). The assassination plot foreshadowed here is carried out in chapter 41 and triggers the flight to Egypt in chapters 42-43. Ishmael son of Nethaniah is 'of the royal seed' (41:1), suggesting dynastic motivation for the assassination. Johanan's warning and Gedaliah's refusal to hear it creates a tragic parallel with all the unheeded warnings throughout the book — now it is not a king rejecting a prophet but a good governor rejecting sound intelligence.

¹The word that came to Jeremiah from the LORD after Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard released him from Ramah, having found him bound in chains among all the captives of Jerusalem and Judah who were being deported to Babylon. ²The captain of the guard took Jeremiah aside and said to him, "The LORD your God declared this disaster against this place. ³The LORD has brought it about and has done just as he said. Because you sinned against the LORD and did not obey his voice, this thing has come upon you. ⁴Now, I am freeing you today from the chains on your hands. If it seems good to you to come with me to Babylon, come, and I will watch over you. But if it seems wrong to you to come with me to Babylon, then do not. Look — the whole land is before you. Go wherever seems good and right to you." ⁵While Jeremiah had not yet turned away, he said, "Return to Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has appointed over the cities of Judah, and live with him among the people — or go wherever seems right to you." Then the captain of the guard gave him provisions and a gift and sent him on his way. ⁶So Jeremiah went to Gedaliah son of Ahikam at Mizpah and lived with him among the people who remained in the land. ⁷When all the commanders of the forces in the open country — they and their men — heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam over the land, and that he had entrusted to him the men, women, and children from the poorest of the land who had not been deported to Babylon, ⁸they came to Gedaliah at Mizpah — Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan and Jonathan sons of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth, the sons of Ephai the Netophathite, and Jezaniah the son of the Maacathite — they and their men. ⁹Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, swore an oath to them and their men, saying, "Do not be afraid of serving the Chaldeans. Settle in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well for you. ¹⁰As for me, I will stay at Mizpah to represent you before the Chaldeans who come to us. But you — gather wine, summer fruit, and oil, store them in your vessels, and settle in the towns you have occupied." ¹¹Likewise, all the Judeans who were in Moab, among the Ammonites, in Edom, and in all the other lands heard that the king of Babylon had left a remnant in Judah and had appointed Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, over them. ¹²All the Judeans returned from all the places where they had been scattered and came to the land of Judah, to Gedaliah at Mizpah, and they gathered wine and summer fruit in great abundance. ¹³Then Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces in the open country came to Gedaliah at Mizpah. ¹⁴They said to him, "Are you aware that Baalis king of the Ammonites has sent Ishmael son of Nethaniah to take your life?" But Gedaliah son of Ahikam did not believe them. ¹⁵Johanan son of Kareah spoke to Gedaliah privately at Mizpah, saying, "Let me go and strike down Ishmael son of Nethaniah — no one will know. Why should he take your life, so that all the Judeans gathered around you are scattered and the remnant of Judah perishes?" ¹⁶But Gedaliah son of Ahikam said to Johanan son of Kareah, "You must not do this. You are speaking falsely about Ishmael."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ramah, located about five miles north of Jerusalem, served as the Babylonian assembly point for deportees — the same Ramah associated with Rachel's weeping in 31:15. The detail that Jeremiah was *asur ba'aziqim* ('bound in chains') among the captives suggests a breakdown in the chain of command: despite Nebuchadnezzar's personal order to protect him (39:11-12), Jeremiah had been swept up in the mass deportation. The verb *shalach* ('released, sent away') indicates an official discharge from custody.
2. The verb *vayyiqqach* ('he took') implies Nebuzaradan singled Jeremiah out from the line of deportees for a personal conversation. A Babylonian military commander attributes the fall of Jerusalem to YHWH *Elohekha* ('the LORD your God') — using Israel's own covenant name for God. The word *ra'ah* ('disaster, calamity') is the same word Jeremiah used throughout his prophecies to describe what God would bring upon Jerusalem. The pagan commander speaks as if he has read Jeremiah's own oracles.
3. Nebuzaradan completes his theological analysis with remarkable precision: *sin* (*chata'tem*), failure to obey God's voice (*lo shema'tem beqolo*), and consequent judgment (*hayah lakhem haddavar hazzeh*). This mirrors the exact prophetic formula Jeremiah used throughout his ministry — the Babylonian commander is essentially preaching Jeremiah's own sermon. The phrase 'did not obey his voice' uses the same *shama beqol* construction that appears throughout the covenant-obedience passages in Deuteronomy and in Jeremiah 11:4, 7.
4. The verb *pittachtikha* ('I have opened/released you') is from *patach*, meaning to open, to release — the chains are literally opened from his wrists. Nebuzaradan offers Jeremiah an extraordinary choice: the comfort and security of Babylon under official protection, or freedom in the devastated land. The phrase *kol ha'arets lefanekha* ('the whole land is before you') echoes God's words to Abraham in Genesis 13:9 and 20:15 — the land is spread before him to choose. The idiom *asim et-eini alekha* ('I will set my eye on you') repeats the protective promise from 39:12.
5. The opening clause *ve'odennu lo yashuv* ('while he had not yet turned back') is syntactically difficult — it may mean Jeremiah was hesitating to leave, or that Nebuzaradan spoke again before Jeremiah had turned to go. The verb *hifqid* ('he appointed') is from *paqad*, meaning to appoint, to entrust with authority — Gedaliah is the Babylonian-appointed governor, not a king. The *aruchah* ('provisions, food rations') and *mas'et* ('gift, portion') represent both practical sustenance and a mark of official favor. Nebuzaradan's generosity toward Jeremiah reflects the prophet's vindication — the enemy commander treats him with more honor than his own people ever did.
6. *Mizpah* (*hammitspah*, 'the watchtower'), located about eight miles north of Jerusalem, became the administrative center for the remnant community because Jerusalem itself was destroyed. The site had deep associations in Israel's history — Samuel judged Israel there (1 Samuel 7:5-6) and Saul was chosen king there (1 Samuel 10:17). Jeremiah's choice to stay with Gedaliah and the remnant rather than accept Babylonian patronage reflects his lifelong commitment to the people of the land, even after their rejection of his message.
7. The *sarei hachayalim* ('commanders of the forces') refers to Judean military officers who had escaped the fall by fleeing into the countryside (*bassadeh*, 'in the field/open country') with their units. These were guerrilla bands who had avoided capture. The phrase *middallat ha'arets* ('from the poorest of the land') echoes 39:10 — the Babylonians left the destitute as an agricultural labor force while deporting the skilled and wealthy.
8. This list of military commanders names the key players in the events of chapters 40-43. Ishmael son of Nethaniah, listed first, is the man who will assassinate Gedaliah in chapter 41 — his presence at this gathering is ominous in retrospect. Johanan son of Kareah will emerge as the leader who warns Gedaliah and later leads the remnant to Egypt. The *Netophathite* designation indicates origin from *Netophah*, a town near Bethlehem. The *Maacathite* designation refers to the region of *Maacah* in northern Transjordan — this commander had come from far away to join the remnant.
9. The verb *vayyishava* ('he swore') indicates a formal oath — Gedaliah binds himself by covenant oath to the reliability of his promise. His counsel to 'serve the king of Babylon' (*ivdu et melekh Bavel*) follows exactly the policy Jeremiah had preached throughout his ministry (27:11-12). The promise *veyitav lakhem* ('it will go well for you') echoes the covenant blessing formula from Deuteronomy. Gedaliah is essentially implementing Jeremiah's prophetic program — submit to Babylon and survive.
10. The phrase *la'amod lifnei* ('to stand before') means to serve as an intermediary or representative — Gedaliah will be the point of contact between the remnant and the Babylonian administration. The list of agricultural products — *yayin* (wine), *qayits* (summer fruit, probably figs), and *shemen* (oil) — indicates the harvest season was approaching and the land could still sustain its inhabitants. The verb *tefastem* ('you have occupied, taken hold of') suggests the scattered commanders had already claimed abandoned towns as bases. Gedaliah legitimizes their presence and redirects them from military resistance to agricultural settlement.
11. The scattered Judeans mentioned here had fled to neighboring territories during or before the siege — Moab to the east, Ammon to the northeast, and Edom to the south. The word *she'erit* ('remnant') is theologically loaded in prophetic literature — it carries the hope that God preserves a surviving core through judgment. The news that Babylon had allowed a remnant to remain rather than deporting everyone signaled a possibility of return and restoration.
12. The verb *vayyashuvu* ('they returned') uses the root *shuv*, Jeremiah's signature word for both repentance and physical return. Here it is literal — the refugees come home — but the resonance with the prophetic call to 'return' to God is present. The phrase *niddechu sham* ('they had been driven/scattered there') uses the passive of *nadach*, meaning to be pushed away, banished, scattered — they did not leave voluntarily but were driven out by the catastrophe. The abundant harvest (*harbeh me'od*, 'very much') suggests the land itself was yielding generously despite the destruction, a quiet sign of God's provision for the remnant.

13. This verse marks a shift in the narrative from the gathering of the remnant to the intelligence report about the assassination plot. Johanan son of Kareah emerges as the military leader among the scattered commanders — his name means 'the LORD is gracious.' The phrase *bassadeh* ('in the field/open country') distinguishes these armed bands from the settled civilian population.
14. The infinitive absolute construction *hayado' teda* ('do you really know') is emphatic — 'are you fully aware?' The commanders are pressing Gedaliah with urgent intelligence. The verb *lehakkotekha nafesh* ('to strike your life,' i.e., to kill you) uses the verb *nakah* ('to strike') with *nefesh* ('life, soul') — a direct way to say 'assassinate.' Baalis king of the Ammonites had political motivation: a stable Judean remnant under Babylonian authority would threaten Ammonite expansion into Judean territory. The final clause is devastating in its simplicity: *velo he'emin lahem* ('and he did not believe them'). The verb *he'emin* is from the root *aleph-mem-nun*, the same root as 'amen' and *emunah* — Gedaliah lacked the trust to credit the warning.
15. The word *basseter* ('in secret, privately') indicates Johanan understood the sensitivity of what he was proposing — a preemptive assassination. His argument is strategic, not personal: if Gedaliah is killed, the fragile remnant community will scatter (*nafotsu*, from *puts*, 'to disperse') and the *she'erit Yehudah* ('remnant of Judah') will perish. Johanan's reasoning is sound — this is exactly what happens in chapters 41–43. The phrase *ve'ish lo yeda* ('and no one will know') shows Johanan planned a covert operation to eliminate the threat without destabilizing the community. His logic anticipates the catastrophe with precision, making Gedaliah's refusal all the more tragic.
16. Gedaliah's response is absolute: *al ta'aseh et haddavar hazzeh* ('do not do this thing') — a direct prohibition. His accusation *ki sheqer attah dover* ('for you are speaking falsehood') uses *sheqer*, the same word used throughout Jeremiah for the 'false' prophecies of the *nevi'e* *sheqer* ('false prophets'). The irony is cutting: throughout the book, truth-tellers have been accused of lying while liars have been believed. Now Gedaliah — a good man from a family that supported Jeremiah — falls into the same pattern of refusing to hear an unwelcome truth. The chapter ends on this note of tragic refusal, and the reader already knows from the trajectory of the book that refusing to hear warnings leads to destruction.

41

Summary: *Jeremiah 41 records the assassination of Gedaliah son of Ahikam, the Babylonian-appointed governor over the remnant in Judah. Ishmael son of Nethaniah, of royal blood, comes to Gedaliah at Mizpah with ten men and murders him along with the Judeans and Chaldean soldiers present. The next day, before anyone knows of the assassination, eighty men arrive from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria in mourning, bearing grain offerings and incense for the house of the LORD. Ishmael lures them inside and slaughters most of them, sparing ten who reveal hidden stores of wheat, barley, oil, and honey. Ishmael throws the bodies into a large cistern that King Asa had built during his fortification against Baasha of Israel. Ishmael then takes captive all the remaining people at Mizpah, including the king's daughters whom Nebuzaradan had entrusted to Gedaliah, and sets out toward the Ammonites. Johanan son of Kareah and the other military commanders hear of the atrocity, pursue Ishmael, and overtake him at the great pool in Gibeon. The captive people rally to Johanan, but Ishmael escapes with eight men to the Ammonites. Johanan and the remnant, now terrified of Babylonian reprisal for Gedaliah's death, settle near Bethlehem, preparing to flee to Egypt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The assassination of Gedaliah is one of the most consequential political murders in biblical history. It extinguished the last ember of self-governance in Judah and set in motion the flight to Egypt that Jeremiah had explicitly warned against. The scene of the eighty mourners from the former northern kingdom — beards shaved, clothes torn, bodies gashed — traveling to offer worship at the destroyed Temple site reveals that even after 586 BCE, pilgrims still came to Jerusalem's ruins. Ishmael's massacre of these worshipers is gratuitous evil: he kills men coming to mourn. The cistern of Asa (v.9) connects this atrocity to the northern-southern conflict centuries earlier — a defensive fortification now becomes a mass grave. The Fast of Gedaliah (Tsom Gedaliah), observed on the third of Tishrei, commemorates this event as one of the four fasts of Jewish tradition (Zechariah 8:19).*

Translation Friction: *Ishmael's motive is not fully explained. He is of royal blood (min-zera ha-melukhah), which may suggest dynastic resentment against a non-Davidic governor, but the text also notes that Baalis king of Ammon sent him (40:14). The combination of royal pretension and foreign manipulation makes him simultaneously a political assassin and a foreign agent. We have preserved the narrator's restraint — the text does not psychologize Ishmael but simply records his actions. The ten men who buy their lives with hidden food stores (v.8) raise a moral question the text does not resolve: is their survival pragmatic wisdom or complicity?*

Connections: Gedaliah's assassination parallels the account in 2 Kings 25:25-26 but with far greater detail. The flight toward Egypt (v.17) sets up chapters 42-44 and fulfills the ironic reversal Jeremiah has been warning about: the remnant that survived Babylon's judgment will now voluntarily return to Egypt. The cistern of Asa connects to 1 Kings 15:22, where Asa fortified Mizpah against Baasha. The mourners from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria represent the former northern kingdom — their pilgrimage to the destroyed Temple shows the persistence of worship even after catastrophe. Ishmael's escape to the Ammonites connects to 40:14, where Baalis king of Ammon had commissioned the assassination.

¹In the seventh month, Ishmael son of Nethaniah son of Elishama, of royal blood, along with officers of the king and ten men with him, came to Gedaliah son of Ahikam at Mizpah. They ate bread together there at Mizpah. ²Then Ishmael son of Nethaniah rose up with the ten men who were with him and struck down Gedaliah son of Ahikam son of Shaphan with the sword, killing him — the one whom the king of Babylon had appointed over the land. ³Ishmael also killed all the Judeans who were with Gedaliah at Mizpah, along with the Chaldean soldiers who were stationed there. ⁴On the second day after the killing of Gedaliah — before anyone knew of it — ⁵eighty men arrived from Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria with their beards shaved, their clothes torn, and their bodies gashed, carrying grain offerings and incense to bring to the house of the LORD. ⁶Ishmael son of Nethaniah went out from Mizpah to meet them, weeping as he walked. When he met them he said, 'Come to Gedaliah son of Ahikam.' ⁷When they entered the city, Ishmael son of Nethaniah and the men with him slaughtered them and threw them into a cistern. ⁸But ten men among them said to Ishmael, 'Do not kill us, for we have hidden stores in the field — wheat, barley, oil, and honey.' So he relented and did not kill them along with their companions. ⁹The cistern into which Ishmael threw all the bodies of the men he had killed was the one King Asa had constructed as a defense against Baasha king of Israel. Ishmael son of Nethaniah filled it with the slain. ¹⁰Then Ishmael took captive all the rest of the people at Mizpah — the king's daughters and all the people who remained at Mizpah, whom Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard had entrusted to Gedaliah son of Ahikam. Ishmael son of Nethaniah took them captive and set out to cross over to the Ammonites. ¹¹When Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces with him heard of all the evil that Ishmael son of Nethaniah had done, ¹²They gathered all their men and went to fight Ishmael son of Nethaniah. They found him by the great pool at Gibeon. ¹³When all the people whom Ishmael held captive saw Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces with him, they rejoiced. ¹⁴All the people whom Ishmael had taken captive from Mizpah turned around and went over to Johanan son of Kareah. ¹⁵But Ishmael son of Nethaniah escaped from Johanan with eight men and fled to the Ammonites. ¹⁶Then Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces with him took the entire remnant of the people whom he had recovered from Ishmael son of Nethaniah at Mizpah after the murder of Gedaliah son of Ahikam — soldiers, women, children, and court officials whom he had brought back from Gibeon. ¹⁷They set out and stayed at Geruth Chimham near Bethlehem, intending to go on to Egypt, ¹⁸because they were afraid of the Chaldeans, since Ishmael son of Nethaniah had struck down Gedaliah son of Ahikam, whom the king of Babylon had appointed over the land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The seventh month is Tishrei (September-October 586 BCE), only two months after the destruction of Jerusalem. The phrase *min-zera ha-melukhah* ('of the seed of royalty') establishes Ishmael as a Davidic descendant, giving him a dynastic claim against the non-royal Gedaliah. The shared meal — *va-yokhelu sham lechem yachdav* ('they ate bread together there') — is a covenant act of hospitality and trust. To murder a man with whom you have eaten bread is a violation of the most fundamental social bond in the ancient Near East.
2. The narrator emphasizes the enormity of the act by reciting Gedaliah's full lineage (son of Ahikam son of Shaphan — from a family that had protected Jeremiah, 26:24) and his appointment by the king of Babylon. To kill Gedaliah is to strike against the only remaining political order in Judah and to invite Babylonian retaliation upon the entire remnant.
3. The massacre extends beyond Gedaliah to include all the Judeans at Mizpah and the Chaldean garrison. The killing of Babylonian soldiers makes this not merely a political assassination but an act of rebellion against Babylon itself — guaranteeing reprisal against whoever remains in the land.
4. The phrase *ve-ish lo yada* ('and no man knew') creates dramatic irony: the reader knows what the arriving pilgrims do not. The narrative slows to set up the next atrocity with terrible suspense.
5. These pilgrims come from the former northern kingdom — Shechem, Shiloh, and Samaria — cities associated with Israel rather than Judah. Their mourning rituals technically violate Leviticus 19:28 and Deuteronomy 14:1, which prohibit gashing the body for the dead, but the narrator records

them without condemnation. Their destination — beit YHWH ('the house of the LORD') — is the destroyed Temple, yet they bring minchah (grain offering) and levonah (incense) as if it still stands. Worship persists even at ruins.

6. Ishmael's weeping (halokh halokh u-vokheh, 'walking, walking, and weeping') is feigned grief designed to lure the pilgrims into the trap. The use of Gedaliah's name as bait — 'Come to Gedaliah' — is doubly cruel since Gedaliah is already dead. Ishmael weaponizes the pilgrims' trust and mourning.
7. The verb va-yishchatem ('he slaughtered them') uses the same root (shachat) used for sacrificial slaughter. These men came carrying grain offerings and incense for the house of the LORD; they themselves become victims of slaughter. The irony is devastating. The bodies are cast into a bor (cistern/pit), identified in verse 9 as the cistern of Asa.
8. The ten survivors buy their lives with matmonim (hidden stores/treasures) — supplies cached in the fields. The four staples listed (wheat, barley, oil, and honey) represent significant agricultural wealth. Ishmael's calculation is purely mercenary: these ten are worth more alive than dead. The phrase be-tokh acheihem ('among their brothers/companions') reminds the reader that the seventy dead were these men's brothers.
9. The narrator pauses to identify this cistern historically: it was built by King Asa (r. c. 911-870 BCE) during his fortification of Mizpah against Baasha king of Israel (1 Kings 15:22). A defensive structure from the northern-southern conflict centuries earlier now becomes a mass grave. The verb mille ('filled') — Ishmael filled the cistern with corpses — is grotesque in its completeness.
10. The king's daughters (benot ha-melekh) — royal women of the Davidic house — had been left in Gedaliah's care by Nebuzaradan. Ishmael now takes them as political hostages. His destination is the Ammonites, confirming the connection to Baalis king of Ammon who had commissioned the assassination (40:14). He is taking the remnant of Judah to a foreign king.
11. Johanan had warned Gedaliah about Ishmael's plot and even offered to assassinate Ishmael secretly (40:13-16), but Gedaliah refused to believe him. Now the catastrophe Johanan predicted has occurred. The phrase kol ha-ra'ah ('all the evil') encompasses the assassination, the massacre, and the kidnapping.
12. The mayim rabbim ('great waters') at Gibeon is the large pool mentioned in 2 Samuel 2:13, where Joab's and Abner's men once fought. Gibeon was approximately five miles southwest of Mizpah. The site has been archaeologically identified with a massive rock-cut pool discovered in the 1950s excavations.
13. The single word va-yismachu ('they rejoiced') captures the relief of the captives upon seeing their rescuers. The contrast between captivity under Ishmael and deliverance by Johanan is immediate.
14. The captives actively rally to Johanan — they are not merely liberated but choose to follow him. This group will become the remnant that Jeremiah accompanies, first to the region of Bethlehem (v.17) and eventually to Egypt (43:7).
15. Of the original eleven conspirators (Ishmael plus ten men, v.1), only nine survive — eight men plus Ishmael. Two were apparently killed or deserted. Ishmael escapes to the Ammonites, his patron Baalis's territory. He disappears from the narrative and is never mentioned again. The text offers no punishment, no justice — only escape. The narrator leaves this unresolved.
16. The list — gevarim anshei ha-milchamah ve-nashim ve-taf ve-sarisim ('soldiers and women and children and eunuchs/court officials') — catalogs the entire surviving community. The word sarisim can mean either 'eunuchs' or 'court officials'; in this context it likely refers to officials from the Judean court who had been left behind by the Babylonians.
17. Geruth Kimham (the 'lodging place of Chimham') is near Bethlehem, about six miles south of Jerusalem and on the road toward Egypt. Chimham may be connected to Chimham son of Barzillai, whom David brought to Jerusalem (2 Samuel 19:37-40), suggesting a Davidic-era estate that became a waystation. The remnant pauses here — they have already decided to go to Egypt, though they will consult Jeremiah in chapter 42.
18. The chapter ends with the reason for flight: fear of Babylonian retaliation. The assassination of a Babylonian-appointed governor would inevitably provoke a punitive response. The remnant's logic is understandable — but the following chapters will show that running to Egypt is the one thing God has explicitly forbidden. Their fear of Babylon drives them toward the very disaster Jeremiah has been warning about.

42

Summary: The remnant under Johanan son of Kareah approaches Jeremiah and asks him to pray to the LORD for direction: should they stay in Judah or flee to Egypt? They swear to obey whatever God says. After ten days, the word of the LORD comes to Jeremiah. God's answer is unambiguous: remain in the land, and He will build them up and plant them; He relents of the disaster He brought upon them. They are not to fear the king of Babylon. But if they go to Egypt, the very sword, famine, and pestilence they fear will follow them there, and none will survive. Jeremiah warns them that they have made a fatal error in their hearts — they asked for God's word but never intended to obey it. He tells them plainly: you will die by sword, famine, and pestilence in Egypt.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter presents one of the most psychologically penetrating moments in the Hebrew Bible: people who ask God for guidance while having already decided what they will do. The ten-day delay (v.7) between the request and the answer is unusual — most prophetic responses in Jeremiah are immediate. The delay may test the remnant's patience and sincerity, or it may simply reflect that the word comes in God's time, not the prophet's. Jeremiah's final accusation (vv.20-22) is devastating: 'You have deceived yourselves' — they sought divine sanction for a decision already made, and when the answer contradicted their plan, they would reject it.*

Translation Friction: *The remnant's pledge of obedience (vv.5-6) appears sincere. We have not retroactively dismissed it as insincere from the start, though Jeremiah's accusation in verse 20 implies they were self-deceived. The tension between genuine petition and predetermined conclusion is preserved without resolution. God's promise to 'relent of the disaster' (v.10, nichamti) raises questions about divine immutability — we note the Hebrew without softening it.*

Connections: *The agricultural metaphors of verse 10 ('I will build you up and not tear you down, I will plant you and not uproot you') reprise the language of Jeremiah's commissioning in 1:10. The warning about sword, famine, and pestilence in Egypt echoes the threefold judgment formula that runs throughout Jeremiah (14:12, 21:7, 24:10, 27:8). The remnant's flight to Egypt will invert the exodus — a theme developed fully in chapters 43-44. God's call to 'not fear the king of Babylon' (v.11) inverts the people's stated fear (41:18).*

¹Then all the commanders of the forces, Johanan son of Kareah, Jezaniah son of Hoshaiah, and all the people from the least to the greatest approached ²and said to Jeremiah the prophet, 'Let our plea for mercy come before you. Pray for us to the LORD your God — for all this remnant. For we are left as only a few out of many, as your own eyes can see. ³Let the LORD your God tell us the way we should go and what we should do.' ⁴Jeremiah the prophet said to them, 'I have heard you. I am going to pray to the LORD your God as you have asked, and whatever the LORD answers, I will tell you. I will withhold nothing from you.' ⁵They said to Jeremiah, 'May the LORD be a true and faithful witness against us if we do not act according to every word that the LORD your God sends through you to us. ⁶Whether it is good or bad, we will obey the voice of the LORD our God, to whom we are sending you, so that it may go well with us when we obey the voice of the LORD our God.' ⁷After ten days, the word of the LORD came to Jeremiah. ⁸He summoned Johanan son of Kareah, all the commanders of the forces with him, and all the people from the least to the greatest, ⁹and said to them, 'This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, to whom you sent me to present your plea, says: ¹⁰If you will remain in this land, I will build you up and not tear you down; I will plant you and not uproot you. For I relent of the disaster that I have brought upon you. ¹¹Do not be afraid of the king of Babylon, whom you now fear. Do not be afraid of him, declares the LORD, for I am with you to save you and to deliver you from his hand. ¹²I will grant you mercy, and he will have compassion on you and let you return to your own land. ¹³But if you say, "We will not remain in this land," and so refuse to obey the voice of the LORD your God, ¹⁴saying, 'No! We will go to the land of Egypt, where we will not see war or hear the sound of the trumpet or be hungry for bread, and there we will live' — ¹⁵now therefore hear the word of the LORD, O remnant of Judah. This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: If you are determined to go to Egypt and you go to settle there, ¹⁶then the sword you fear will overtake you there in the land of Egypt, and the famine you dread will pursue you to Egypt, and there you will die. ¹⁷All the men who are determined to go to Egypt to settle there will die by the sword, by famine, and by pestilence. None of them will survive or escape the disaster I will bring upon them. ¹⁸For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Just as My anger and My wrath were poured out on the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so My wrath will be poured out on you when you enter Egypt. You will become an object of cursing, horror, execration, and reproach, and you will never see this place again. ¹⁹The LORD has spoken concerning you, O remnant of Judah: Do not go to Egypt. Know for certain that I have warned you this day. ²⁰For you have deceived yourselves. You sent me to the LORD your God, saying, 'Pray for us to the LORD our God, and whatever the LORD our God says, tell us and we will do it.' ²¹I have told you today, but you have not obeyed the voice of the LORD your God in anything He sent me to tell you. ²²Now therefore know for certain: you will die by the sword, by famine, and by pestilence in the place where you desire to go and settle.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The entire community comes — *mi-qaton ve-ad gadol* ('from small to great') — indicating a unified delegation. Jezeiah (also called Azariah in 43:2) son of Hoshai is identified as one of the ringleaders who will reject Jeremiah's word.
2. The phrase *nish'arnu me'at me-harbeh* ('we remain a few out of many') is a poignant admission: the once-great nation of Judah has been reduced to a tiny remnant. They address Jeremiah's God as 'the LORD your God' — not 'our God' — a subtle distancing that Jeremiah will correct in verse 4.
3. The request is straightforward: direction (*ha-derekh*, 'the way') and instruction (*ha-davar*, 'the word/thing'). At face value, this is a humble petition for divine guidance. The sincerity of the request will be tested by whether they obey the answer.
4. Jeremiah corrects their distancing: he says 'the LORD your God' (*elohekhem*, not *elohai*), reassigning ownership. He also commits to full transparency — *lo emna mikhem davar* ('I will not hold back a word from you'). The prophet is the faithful channel, not the filter, of divine speech.
5. They invoke God as a witness — *ed emet ve-ne'eman* ('a true and faithful witness') — binding themselves with an oath. The conditional curse ('if we do not act') makes this a self-maledictory oath: they call God's judgment upon themselves if they disobey. The tragic irony is that they will indeed disobey, making this oath their own condemnation.
6. Now they say 'the LORD our God' (*YHWH elohenu*) — accepting ownership. The phrase *im tov ve-im ra* ('whether good or bad') pledges unconditional obedience. The clause *le-ma'an asher yitav lanu* ('so that it may go well with us') echoes Deuteronomic language (Deuteronomy 5:29, 6:3). But the question is whether words match will.
7. The ten-day delay is significant. Prophetic words in Jeremiah usually come immediately. This delay tests the remnant's patience and commitment to their oath. Ten days of silence, ten days of uncertainty, ten days in which the pull of fear and the road to Egypt grow stronger.
8. Jeremiah assembles the full community — the same group that came to him in verse 1. Everyone must hear the word directly from the prophet; there is no room for secondhand transmission or distortion.
9. The full divine title — *YHWH elohei Yisra'el* ('the LORD, the God of Israel') — gives the response maximum authority. Jeremiah reminds them that they initiated this inquiry: 'to whom you sent me.' The word is the answer they asked for.
10. This verse reprises the four key verbs of Jeremiah's call (1:10): build, tear down, plant, uproot. God promises to reverse the destruction — but only if they remain. The verb *nichamti* ('I have relented') is theologically weighty: God declares a change in His disposition toward the remnant. The disaster phase is over; restoration is offered.
11. The double *al-tire'u* ('do not fear') directly addresses the fear that drove them to Bethlehem (41:17-18). God names their fear and countermands it. The covenantal promise *ki ittkhem ani* ('for I am with you') echoes the assurance given to Jeremiah at his call (1:8) and to Israel throughout the prophets.
12. God promises to move Nebuchadnezzar to show mercy (*rachamim*). The verb *ve-heshiv* ('and he will cause you to return') implies restoration to the land — not exile, not displacement, but a return to their own soil (*admatkem*). This is the positive outcome if they obey.
13. The conditional shifts from promise to warning. God identifies refusal to stay as refusal to obey — the two are equated. *Le-vilti shemo'a be-qol YHWH* ('so as not to obey the voice of the LORD') reveals that the decision to flee is fundamentally a decision of disobedience.
14. God quotes the remnant's own reasoning back to them: Egypt means no war (*milchamah*), no trumpet alarm (*qol shofar*), no famine (*la-lechem lo nir'av*). These are precisely the three forms of suffering they experienced during the siege. Their logic is that Egypt offers what Judah cannot — security, peace, food. God is about to demolish this logic.
15. The full title — *YHWH tseva'ot elohei Yisra'el* ('the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel') — adds military authority. The phrase *som tesimu peneikhem* ('you set, yes set your faces') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis: if you are absolutely determined.
16. The divine irony is precise: the sword and famine they flee from in Judah will follow them to Egypt. The verb *yidbaq* ('will cling to, will pursue') is the same verb used in Deuteronomy for clinging to God (Deuteronomy 10:20) — but here it is famine that clings to them.
17. The threefold judgment formula — *cherev, ra'av, dever* ('sword, famine, pestilence') — is Jeremiah's signature warning, appearing more than a dozen times throughout the book. The absoluteness — *ve-lo yihyeh lahem sarid u-falit* ('not a survivor or escapee among them') — leaves no room for partial safety in Egypt.
18. The four terms — *alah* (oath-curse), *shammah* (horror/desolation), *qelalah* (curse), *cherpah* (reproach) — form a catalog of humiliation. The final phrase *ve-lo tir'u od et ha-maqom ha-zeh* ('you will not see this place again') is exile made permanent.
19. The phrase *yado'a ted'u* ('know, yes know' — infinitive absolute for emphasis) makes the warning undeniable. The verb *he'idoti* ('I have testified/warned') is legal language — God is placing them on formal notice.
20. Jeremiah's accusation is devastating: *ki hit'etem be-nafshoteikhem* ('you have deceived yourselves / led yourselves astray'). The reflexive form indicates self-deception. They asked for God's word, but their decision was already made. The quoted prayer repeats their own words from verses 5-6, throwing their oath back at them.

21. Jeremiah speaks in the prophetic perfect — the disobedience is so certain that he states it as already accomplished: *ve-lo shema'tem* ('you have not obeyed'), even though they have not yet physically departed for Egypt. The prophet sees through the pretense to the settled will beneath it.
22. The chapter ends with the same emphatic construction — *yado'a ted'u* ('know, yes know') — and the same threefold judgment: sword, famine, pestilence. The final word is *ba-maqom asher chafatstem lavo lagur sham* ('in the place where you desired to go to sojourn') — the place of their desire becomes the place of their death.

43

Summary: *The remnant rejects Jeremiah's word. Azariah son of Hoshaiiah, Johanan son of Kareah, and all the arrogant men accuse Jeremiah of lying and blame Baruch son of Neriah for turning the prophet against them. They refuse to remain in Judah and take the entire remnant — men, women, children, the king's daughters, and Jeremiah and Baruch themselves — to Egypt. They arrive at Tahpanhes, a frontier city in the eastern Nile Delta. There the word of the LORD comes to Jeremiah: take large stones and bury them in the mortar at the entrance to Pharaoh's palace in Tahpanhes, in the sight of the Judean men. Then declare that Nebuchadnezzar will come and set his throne over these very stones, spreading his royal canopy over them. He will strike the land of Egypt — death for those destined for death, captivity for those destined for captivity, sword for those destined for the sword. He will burn the temples of Egypt's gods and carry off their idols. He will wrap Egypt around himself like a shepherd wraps his garment, and depart in peace.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The accusation against Baruch (v.3) is a remarkable deflection: rather than confront Jeremiah's authority directly, they invent a conspiracy theory — the scribe Baruch has manipulated the prophet. This is the first and only time in the book where Baruch is blamed for Jeremiah's message. The forced march to Egypt completes the ironic inversion of the exodus: the people whom God brought out of Egypt now return there voluntarily, dragging the prophet with them. The sign-act at Tahpanhes — burying stones in the pavement — is Jeremiah's last recorded prophetic action. It declares that even Egypt cannot protect them from Babylon. The prophecy was historically fulfilled: Nebuchadnezzar invaded Egypt in 568/567 BCE.*

Translation Friction: *The text says the people 'did not obey the voice of the LORD' (v.7), yet Jeremiah and Baruch are taken along against their will — the prophet who told them to stay is himself dragged to the place God forbade. We have not resolved this tension. The phrase 'Nebuchadnezzar My servant' (v.10, avdi) — God calling the pagan king His servant — is theologically jarring and preserved without softening.*

Connections: *The flight to Egypt inverts the exodus of Exodus 12-15. Tahpanhes (Egyptian: Daphnae) was a garrison city where Greek mercenaries served Pharaoh — the remnant seeks refuge among foreign soldiers. Nebuchadnezzar is again called 'My servant' (avdi), as in 25:9 and 27:6 — God uses pagan rulers as instruments of His purpose. The prophecy of Nebuchadnezzar's invasion of Egypt connects to Ezekiel 29:19-20 and was fulfilled historically. The burning of Egyptian temples (v.12) parallels the burning of the Jerusalem Temple.*

¹When Jeremiah had finished speaking to all the people all the words of the LORD their God — everything the LORD their God had sent him to tell them — ²Azariah son of Hoshaiiah, Johanan son of Kareah, and all the arrogant men said to Jeremiah, 'You are lying! The LORD our God did not send you to say, "Do not go to Egypt to settle there." ³Baruch son of Neriah is inciting you against us to hand us over to the Chaldeans, so they can kill us or deport us to Babylon!' ⁴So Johanan son of Kareah, all the commanders of the forces, and all the people did not obey the voice of the LORD by remaining in the land of Judah. ⁵Johanan son of Kareah and all the commanders of the forces took the entire remnant of Judah — those who had returned from all the nations where they had been scattered to live in the land of Judah: ⁶men, women, children, the king's daughters, and every person whom Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard had left with Gedaliah son of Ahikam — along with Jeremiah the prophet and Baruch son of Neriah. ⁷They entered the land of Egypt — for they did not obey the voice of the LORD — and they came to Tahpanhes. ⁸The word of the LORD came to Jeremiah at Tahpanhes: ⁹'Take large stones in your hand and bury them in the mortar in the brick pavement at the entrance to Pharaoh's palace in Tahpanhes, in the sight of the Judean men. ¹⁰Then say to them, "This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am going to send for Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, My servant, and I will set his throne over these very stones that I have buried. He will

spread his royal canopy over them. ¹¹He will come and strike the land of Egypt — those destined for death, to death; those destined for captivity, to captivity; those destined for the sword, to the sword. ¹²I will kindle a fire in the temples of the gods of Egypt. He will burn them and carry the gods away. He will wrap himself in the land of Egypt as a shepherd wraps himself in his garment, and he will depart from there in peace. ¹³He will shatter the pillars of the temple of the sun in the land of Egypt, and he will burn the temples of the gods of Egypt with fire."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrator twice emphasizes 'the LORD their God' (YHWH eloheihem) — the God they claimed to want to obey is still their God, even as they reject His word. The phrase kol ha-devarim ha-elleh ('all these words') underscores that nothing was withheld.
2. The narrator calls them ha-anashim ha-zedim ('the arrogant/presumptuous men') — the only time this label appears in Jeremiah. Their accusation is direct: sheqer attah medabber ('you are speaking falsehood'). They accuse the prophet of fabricating the oracle. Having sworn to obey (42:5-6), they now deny the word came from God at all.
3. The accusation against Baruch is unprecedented. Throughout the book, Baruch has been Jeremiah's faithful scribe (chapter 36). Now the remnant invents a political motive for him: he wants to hand them to the Chaldeans. The word massit ('inciting') is the same root used in Deuteronomy 13:6 for one who entices Israel to worship other gods — a serious charge.
4. The verdict is stated plainly: ve-lo shama ('they did not obey'). The oath of 42:5-6 is broken. The voice of the LORD — the very voice they pledged to follow whether good or bad — is rejected.
5. The phrase asher shavu mi-kol ha-goyim ('who had returned from all the nations') reveals that this remnant included people who had fled to neighboring countries during the Babylonian invasion and then returned to Judah after the destruction. They are now being uprooted a second time.
6. Jeremiah and Baruch are listed at the end, almost as an afterthought — but it is the most significant detail. The prophet who told them not to go to Egypt is himself taken to Egypt. The man who delivered God's prohibition is compelled to accompany those who violate it. Whether by force or by the momentum of events, Jeremiah goes where God said not to go.
7. The narrator repeats the verdict — ki lo shame'u be-qol YHWH ('for they did not obey the voice of the LORD') — embedding the judgment within the narrative. Tahpanhes is the first stop inside Egypt, a border fortress. The people who left Egypt in the exodus now re-enter it in disobedience.
8. Even in Egypt, the word of the LORD comes. God's speech is not confined to the land of Israel. Jeremiah continues to function as a prophet outside the promised land — the word follows the people wherever they go.
9. This is a prophetic sign-act (otot, symbolic actions). The stones are buried ba-melet ba-malben ('in the mortar in the brick pavement/kiln') at the entrance to Pharaoh's palace. The act is performed publicly — le-einei anashim yehudim ('in the sight of Judean men') — so witnesses can testify when the prophecy is fulfilled. Petrie's excavation at Tell Defenneh found a large brick platform before the entrance to the fortress.
10. Nebuchadnezzar is again called avdi ('My servant'), as in 25:9 and 27:6. The stones Jeremiah buried become the foundation for Babylon's throne in Egypt. The shapripo ('royal pavilion/canopy') represents Babylonian sovereignty established on Egyptian soil. This prophecy was fulfilled when Nebuchadnezzar invaded Egypt in 568/567 BCE.
11. The threefold sorting — death, captivity, sword — echoes 15:2 where God similarly assigns fates. The repetitive structure (asher la-mavet la-mavet, 'those for death to death') has the rhythm of an inescapable decree. There is no category for escape.
12. The burning of Egyptian temples mirrors the burning of the LORD's temple in Jerusalem (52:13). Egypt's gods prove as powerless as Judah's Temple was to prevent destruction. The shepherd-garment simile — ka'asher ya'teh ha-ro'eh et bigdo ('as a shepherd wraps his garment') — portrays the conquest as effortless. Nebuchadnezzar wraps Egypt around himself and walks away.
13. Beit Shemesh ('House of the Sun') is Heliopolis (Egyptian: Iunu/On), the great center of solar worship northeast of Cairo. Its obelisks (matsevot, 'sacred pillars/standing stones') were among the most famous monuments in the ancient world. Nebuchadnezzar will shatter them. The chapter ends with the burning of Egypt's temples — the same fate that befell the house of the LORD in Jerusalem.

44

Summary: *Jeremiah 44 records the prophet's final confrontation with the Judean refugees who have fled to Egypt. God speaks through Jeremiah condemning their persistent idolatry — specifically their burning of incense to the Queen of Heaven. The women respond with brazen defiance, insisting they will continue their vows to the Queen of Heaven and arguing that their suffering began when they stopped worshiping her, not when they started. Jeremiah delivers a closing judgment oracle: Egypt will not be a refuge. Nearly all who fled there will perish by sword and famine. This is Jeremiah's last recorded prophetic oracle.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter preserves the most sustained female speech in the prophetic literature. The women's response in verses 15-19 is not merely quoted — it is given as a theological argument with its own internal logic. They claim a direct causal connection between abandoning the Queen of Heaven cult and the disasters that befell Judah. Their reasoning inverts Jeremiah's entire prophetic message: he says disaster came because of idolatry; they say disaster came because they stopped the idolatry. The Hebrew term *melekhet hashamayim* ('Queen of Heaven,' or possibly 'work/host of heaven' — the vocalization is disputed) likely refers to the Mesopotamian goddess Ishtar or her Canaanite equivalent Astarte. The chapter's location in Egypt creates a bitter irony: Israel was delivered from Egypt at the Exodus, and now the remnant has voluntarily returned to the place of bondage, bringing their idolatry with them.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *melekhet hashamayim* (7:18, 44:17-19, 44:25) presents a significant textual problem. The Masoretic vocalization points it as *melekhet* ('work of'), but many scholars repoint it as *malkat* ('queen of'), which better fits the context of a goddess cult. We rendered 'Queen of Heaven' following the scholarly consensus and the ancient versions, but documented the textual issue. The verb *qittar* ('burn incense') and the noun *nesek* ('drink offering') indicate full-scale cultic worship, not casual superstition. The phrase 'we and our ancestors, our kings and our officials' in verse 17 distributes responsibility across all levels of society — the women are claiming this was mainstream state religion, not a fringe practice.*

Connections: *The Queen of Heaven cult was first condemned in 7:18, forming an inclusio with this final chapter of Jeremiah's ministry — the same sin that opened his public preaching closes it. The flight to Egypt against prophetic warning was narrated in chapters 42-43. The covenant curses invoked here (sword, famine, pestilence) echo Deuteronomy 28. The remnant's insistence on returning to Egypt reverses the Exodus and fulfills the warning of Deuteronomy 28:68. The pattern of female-led idolatry connects to Ezekiel 8:14 (women weeping for Tammuz). Jeremiah's inability to persuade the people even after Jerusalem's destruction demonstrates the thoroughness of the apostasy he has been denouncing since chapter 1.*

¹The word that came to Jeremiah concerning all the Judeans living in the land of Egypt — those settled at Migdol, at Tahpanhes, at Memphis, and in the land of Pathros: ²This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: You yourselves have seen all the disaster I brought upon Jerusalem and upon all the cities of Judah. ³This happened because of the evil they committed to provoke me — going to burn incense and serve other gods that neither they nor you nor your ancestors had known. ⁴Yet I sent to you all my servants the prophets, sending them persistently, saying: Do not do this detestable thing that I hate! ⁵But they did not listen or incline their ear to turn from their evil, to stop burning incense to other gods. ⁶So my wrath and my anger poured out and blazed in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem, and they became a ruin and a wasteland, as they are today. ⁷So now, this is what the LORD, the God of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Why are you doing such great harm to yourselves — cutting off from Judah man and woman, child and infant, leaving yourselves no remnant? ⁸You provoke me with the works of your hands, burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt where you have gone to settle — so that you bring destruction on yourselves and become a curse and a disgrace among all the nations of the earth. ⁹Have you forgotten the evil deeds of your ancestors, the evil deeds of the kings of Judah, the evil deeds of their wives, your own evil deeds, and the evil deeds of your wives — all that was done in the land of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem? ¹⁰They have not been crushed with remorse to this day. They have not feared, and they have not walked in my instruction or in my statutes that I set before you and before your ancestors. ¹¹Therefore, this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I

am setting my face against you for destruction, to cut off all of Judah. ¹²I will take hold of the remnant of Judah who set their faces to enter the land of Egypt to settle there, and they will all meet their end in the land of Egypt. They will fall by the sword and be consumed by famine — from the least to the greatest, they will die by sword and by famine. They will become an object of horror, a desolation, a curse, and a disgrace. ¹³I will punish those living in the land of Egypt just as I punished Jerusalem — by sword, by famine, and by plague. ¹⁴There will be no fugitive or survivor among the remnant of Judah who came to settle in the land of Egypt, to return to the land of Judah where they long to go back and live. None will return — except a few refugees. ¹⁵Then all the men who knew that their wives were burning incense to other gods, and all the women standing there — a large assembly — and all the people living in the land of Egypt, in Pathros, answered Jeremiah: ¹⁶As for the word you have spoken to us in the name of the LORD — we will not listen to you. ¹⁷Instead, we will certainly carry out every word that has come from our mouths — to burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and pour out drink offerings to her, just as we and our ancestors, our kings and our officials did in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem. We had plenty of food then, we prospered, and we saw no disaster. ¹⁸But from the time we stopped burning incense to the Queen of Heaven and pouring out drink offerings to her, we have lacked everything and have been consumed by sword and famine. ¹⁹And when we burned incense to the Queen of Heaven and poured out drink offerings to her — did we make cakes stamped with her image and pour out drink offerings to her without our husbands' knowledge? ²⁰Then Jeremiah spoke to all the people — to the men, to the women, and to all the people who had answered him — saying: ²¹The incense you burned in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem — you, your ancestors, your kings, your officials, and the people of the land — did the LORD not remember it? Did it not rise into his mind? ²²The LORD could no longer endure it because of the evil of your actions and the detestable things you committed. That is why your land has become a ruin, a wasteland, and a curse — without an inhabitant — as it is today. ²³It was because you burned incense and sinned against the LORD and did not obey the voice of the LORD or walk in his instruction, his statutes, and his decrees — that is why this disaster has come upon you, as it has today. ²⁴Then Jeremiah said to all the people and to all the women: Hear the word of the LORD, all of Judah who are in the land of Egypt. ²⁵This is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: You women and your husbands have spoken with your mouths and fulfilled with your hands, saying, 'We will certainly carry out the vows we made — to burn incense to the Queen of Heaven and pour out drink offerings to her.' Go ahead then — fulfill your vows! Carry out your vows! ²⁶Therefore, hear the word of the LORD, all of Judah living in the land of Egypt: I have sworn by my great name, says the LORD, that my name will never again be invoked by any person of Judah in all the land of Egypt, saying, 'As the Lord GOD lives.' ²⁷I am watching over them for harm and not for good. All the people of Judah in the land of Egypt will be consumed by sword and by famine until they are finished. ²⁸Those who escape the sword will return from the land of Egypt to the land of Judah, few in number. Then all the remnant of Judah who came to the land of Egypt to settle will know whose word stands — mine or theirs. ²⁹This will be the sign to you, declares the LORD, that I am punishing you in this place, so that you may know that my words will certainly stand against you for harm: ³⁰This is what the LORD says: I am going to hand over Pharaoh Hophra, king of Egypt, to his enemies and to those who seek his life — just as I handed Zedekiah king of Judah over to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, his enemy who sought his life.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *noph* is the shortened form of the Egyptian city name rendered in Greek as Memphis — the ancient capital of Lower Egypt. We use 'Memphis' as the more recognizable English form. Pathros refers to Upper Egypt (southern Egypt), indicating the Judean refugees had dispersed widely across Egypt. The list of four locations shows the diaspora was already extensive, not concentrated in one settlement.
2. The emphatic pronoun *attem* ('you yourselves') stresses that the refugees are eyewitnesses to the destruction — they cannot claim ignorance. The word *ra'ah* ('disaster, evil, calamity') here refers to the Babylonian destruction of 586 BCE, which these refugees survived and fled.
3. The verb *leha'kiseni* ('to provoke me to anger') is a Deuteronomic formula (cf. Deuteronomy 32:16, 21) describing idolatry as a deliberate provocation of God's jealousy. The phrase 'gods they had not known' echoes Deuteronomy 13:2, 6, 13 — these are foreign deities with no history in Israel's covenant tradition. The inclusive 'they, you, your ancestors' spans all generations of guilt.
4. The idiom *hashkem veshaloch* ('rising early and sending') is Jeremiah's characteristic expression for God's persistent prophetic outreach (cf. 7:25, 25:4, 26:5, 29:19, 35:15). The word *to'evah* ('abomination, detestable thing') is covenantal legal terminology — it designates acts that violate the covenant at its core and are incompatible with the LORD's character.

5. The verb *shuv* ('turn, return') appears here in its negative sense — they refused to turn back from their evil course. The same root carries both 'repentance' (turning to God) and 'apostasy' (turning from God) throughout Jeremiah. Their refusal to *shuv* from idolatry is itself a failure of *teshuvah*.
6. Two verbs describe God's anger: *nittakh* ('was poured out') and *tiv'ar* ('blazed, burned'). The first depicts anger as liquid flooding outward; the second as fire consuming. The result — *charvah* ('ruin') and *shemamah* ('desolation, wasteland') — describes the post-586 BCE landscape the refugees left behind. The phrase 'as at this day' emphasizes present reality: the ruins are still smoking.
7. The phrase *ra'ah gedolah el nafshoteikhem* ('great evil against your own souls/selves') frames their idolatry as self-destruction. The word *nephesh* here means 'selves' in the reflexive sense — they are the agents of their own destruction. The catalog 'man and woman, child and infant' is a merism covering the entire population. The term *she'erit* ('remnant') is theologically loaded — even in judgment, the prophets usually preserve hope for a remnant, but these refugees are destroying even that.
8. The phrase *ma'asei yedeikhem* ('works of your hands') is deliberately ambiguous — it can refer to the acts of worship or to the idols themselves, which are literally handmade objects. The consequence — becoming a *qelalah* ('curse') and *cherpah* ('disgrace') among the nations — reverses the Abrahamic promise that Israel would be a blessing to the nations (Genesis 12:2-3).
9. The fivefold repetition of *ra'ot* ('evil deeds') creates a rhetorical cascade of guilt: ancestors, kings, queens, the people themselves, and their wives. The inclusion of women (*nashav*, 'his wives'; *nesheikhem*, 'your wives') is notable and anticipates the women's defiant response later in the chapter (vv. 15-19). Some manuscripts read 'his officials' (*sarav*) instead of 'his wives' (*nashav*), but the Masoretic text is retained.
10. The verb *dukke'u* ('crushed, contrite') from the root *d-k-* indicates a thorough breaking of the will — not merely feeling sorry but being genuinely broken by grief. The word *torah* here is rendered 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture its broader Deuteronomic sense of divine teaching. The shift between third person ('they') and second person ('you') is characteristic of prophetic speech addressing both the absent guilty and the present audience.
11. The idiom *sam panay* ('set my face') indicates fixed, unwavering divine intention — once God's face is set against a people, the judgment is determined. The phrase 'for evil' (*lera'ah*) is rendered 'for destruction' because the context makes clear this is not moral evil but punitive disaster. The totality of the threat — 'all of Judah' — means the remnant in Egypt has no exemption from judgment.
12. The verb *tammu* ('they will be consumed, finished, completed') indicates total annihilation. The merism 'from the least to the greatest' (*miqqaton ve'ad gadol*) encompasses the entire community without exception. The fourfold consequence — *alah* ('oath/horror'), *shammah* ('desolation'), *qelalah* ('curse'), *cherpah* ('disgrace') — is a standard prophetic judgment formula that appears throughout Jeremiah (cf. 24:9, 25:18, 29:22, 42:18).
13. The verb *paqad* ('visit, punish, reckon with') indicates divine judicial action. The parallel between Egypt and Jerusalem is devastating — the refugees fled to Egypt to escape the very judgment that will now pursue them there. The triad *cherev/ra'av/dever* ('sword/famine/plague') is Jeremiah's characteristic judgment formula, appearing over twenty times in the book.
14. The word *palit* ('fugitive, escapee') and *sarid* ('survivor') together emphasize the thoroughness of the judgment. The phrase *menass'im et nafsham* ('lifting up their souls') is an idiom for deep longing or desire — they yearn to return to Judah but will not be able to. The final clause 'except a few refugees' (*ki im-peletim*) provides a razor-thin exception to the absolute judgment, preserving the tension between total destruction and the slender thread of remnant theology.
15. The description emphasizes complicity at every level: the men know and do not stop it, the women actively participate, and the whole community is present. The phrase *qahal gadol* ('large assembly') ironically echoes the covenant assembly language of Deuteronomy — this is a counter-assembly, gathered not for covenant renewal but for defiance of the covenant.
16. The bluntness of this response is striking. The phrase *bashem YHWH* ('in the name of the LORD') shows they fully recognize Jeremiah is claiming divine authority — and they reject it anyway. The verb *shom'im* ('listening, obeying') carries both senses, and their refusal encompasses both: they will neither hear nor obey.
17. The emphatic infinitive absolute *asoh na'aseh* ('we will certainly do') expresses absolute determination — this is a vow they intend to keep. The phrase *meleket hashamayim* ('Queen of Heaven') likely refers to the goddess Ishtar/Astarte. The Masoretic vocalization *meleket* could mean 'work of' or 'host of' heaven, but the context of incense and drink offerings clearly points to a goddess cult, and most scholars repoint as *malkat* ('queen'). The people's argument is empirical — when we worshiped her, things went well. Their 'evidence' covers the prosperous periods under Manasseh's long reign (697-642 BCE).
18. The people's argument reaches its theological core: they interpret Josiah's reforms (2 Kings 23) — the destruction of the high places and suppression of foreign cults — as the cause of Judah's subsequent disasters. In their reading of history, Josiah's reform was the catastrophe, not the idolatry it removed. The verb *chasarnu* ('we have lacked') and *tamnu* ('we have been consumed') create a cause-and-effect argument that directly contradicts Jeremiah's prophetic interpretation.
19. The women now speak distinctly, defending their role. The *kavvanim* ('cakes') were ritual cakes shaped or stamped with the image of the goddess — the word appears only in Jeremiah 7:18 and here. The question *hamibbal'adei anashenu* ('without our husbands?') is a legal defense — they argue the worship had male authorization and was therefore a legitimate household and community practice, not unsanctioned female rebellion. The verb *leha'atsivah* is difficult; it may mean 'to portray her' or 'to represent her image' on the cakes.

- 20.** The threefold address ('men, women, all the people') mirrors the threefold audience of verse 15 and ensures no one can claim they were not addressed. Jeremiah's response will directly counter their historical argument.
- 21.** Jeremiah turns their own argument against them. They claimed incense-burning brought prosperity; he insists God remembered every act of it. The verb *zakhar* ('remember') in covenant contexts means not passive recollection but active response — God remembered and acted. The phrase 'rose into his mind' (*ta'aleh al-libbo*) uses the same verb for 'rising' that describes smoke rising — the incense smoke that rose to the Queen of Heaven also rose into God's awareness as provocation.
- 22.** The verb *laseth* ('to bear, endure, carry') depicts God's patience as having a limit — he carried the weight of their offenses until he could carry no more. The result — *charvah* ('ruin'), *shammah* ('wasteland'), *qelalah* ('curse'), *me'ein yoshev* ('without inhabitant') — directly refutes the people's claim that the Queen of Heaven cult brought prosperity. The land they remember as prosperous is now uninhabited rubble.
- 23.** Jeremiah delivers the counter-narrative: disaster came not from stopping the Queen of Heaven cult but from practicing it. The fourfold description of what they violated — *qol YHWH* ('voice of the LORD'), *torah* ('instruction'), *chuqqot* ('statutes'), *edot* ('decrees') — is Deuteronomic covenant language covering every dimension of the covenant obligation. The word *chata'tem* ('you sinned') is from the root *ch-t-* meaning 'to miss the mark' — they aimed their worship at the wrong target.
- 24.** Jeremiah now addresses the women specifically alongside the whole people — they spoke as a distinct group in verse 19, and now they receive a distinct divine response. The command *shim'u* ('hear') carries the force of 'listen and obey,' the same verb they refused in verse 16.
- 25.** God's response is devastatingly ironic. The emphatic forms *haqem taqimnah* ('you will certainly fulfill') and *asoh ta'asenah* ('you will certainly carry out') are not permission but bitter sarcasm — since they are determined to keep their idolatrous vows, God releases them to the consequences. The feminine plural verb forms (*taqimnah*, *ta'asenah*) address the women directly. The phrase 'spoken with your mouths and fulfilled with your hands' condemns them for both word and deed — their vows were not idle words but enacted rituals.
- 26.** God swears by his own name — the most solemn possible oath, since there is no higher authority to swear by (cf. Genesis 22:16, Hebrews 6:13). The oath formula *chai Adonai YHWH* ('as the Lord GOD lives') was the standard way Israelites confirmed solemn statements. God is saying that this formula will vanish from Egypt because the Judeans who used it will be dead. The withdrawal of the divine name from their mouths is a reversal of the covenant relationship — the people who bear his name will no longer exist to speak it.
- 27.** The verb *shoqed* ('watching') is a devastating echo of 1:12 where God told the young Jeremiah, 'I am watching over my word to carry it out.' The same divine vigilance that guaranteed the prophetic word now guarantees judgment. The reversal from *tov* ('good') to *ra'ah* ('harm') inverts every covenant blessing. The phrase *ad kelotam* ('until their completion/end') indicates extinction, not merely suffering.
- 28.** The phrase *metei mispar* ('few in number,' literally 'men of counting') indicates such a small group they can be individually counted. God frames the issue as a contest of words — *devar mi yaqum* ('whose word will stand/be established'). The people in verses 17-18 argued from their interpretation of history; God says history itself will settle whose word is true. The verb *qum* ('stand, arise, be established') is covenant language for a promise that holds firm.
- 29.** The *ot* ('sign') functions as a prophetic proof — when the predicted judgment arrives, it will validate Jeremiah's entire prophetic ministry. The emphatic infinitive absolute *qom yaqumu* ('will certainly stand') echoes the verb used in verse 25 about the women's vows (*haqem taqimnah*) — their vows will 'stand' only in the sense that they bring destruction, while God's words will 'stand' as fulfilled prophecy.
- 30.** Pharaoh Hophra (Egyptian: Wahibre; Greek: Apries) reigned 589-570 BCE. He was eventually overthrown by his own general Amasis (Ahmose II) in a military coup, fulfilling this oracle. The parallel with Zedekiah is pointed: the refugees trusted Hophra for protection just as Zedekiah had trusted him for military support against Babylon (cf. 37:5-7). Both trust-in-Egypt policies ended in the same way — the Egyptian protector fell to his enemies. The phrase *mevaqshei nafsho* ('those who seek his life') is a standard expression for mortal enemies.

45

Summary: *Jeremiah 45 is the shortest chapter in the book — five verses containing a personal oracle from God to Baruch son of Neriah, Jeremiah's scribe and companion. The oracle is dated to the fourth year of Jehoiakim (605/604 BCE), the same year Baruch wrote down Jeremiah's prophecies on the first scroll (chapter 36). Baruch has cried out in despair — 'Woe to me!' — overwhelmed by sorrow. God responds with a stark message: He is about to tear down what he has built and uproot what he has planted across the whole earth. In that context, Baruch should not seek great things for himself. But God promises him one thing — his life, given to him 'as plunder' wherever he goes.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This tiny chapter is one of the most intimate moments in prophetic literature. God speaks not to a king, not to a nation, but to a single scribe — a man whose personal anguish matters enough for a divine oracle. The phrase 'I will give you your life as plunder' (*ve-natatti lekha et-nafshekha leshallal*) is extraordinary: in a world about to be torn apart, survival itself is the prize. Baruch will carry his life out of the catastrophe the way a soldier carries loot from a conquered city — it*

is something seized from destruction, not guaranteed. The chapter's placement after the Egypt oracles (chapters 43-44) but with a chronological setting twenty years earlier creates a literary frame: Baruch's personal story is given its own space, separate from the national narrative, honoring the individual amid the collapse of nations.

Translation Friction: *The verb yagata ('you are weary/exhausted') in verse 3 could indicate physical exhaustion from the scribal labor of writing the scroll, or spiritual and emotional exhaustion from the content of what he was writing — prophecies of national destruction. We rendered it in a way that allows both readings. The phrase 'great things' (gedolot) in verse 5 is deliberately vague in the Hebrew — it could mean personal ambition, political advancement, or simply a normal life. We preserved the ambiguity rather than specifying. The dating formula places this oracle in 605 BCE, but its position in the book (after chapter 44) suggests the editor placed it here as a conclusion to the Baruch narrative cycle, not in chronological sequence.*

Connections: *The 'building and tearing down, planting and uprooting' language directly echoes Jeremiah's call narrative (1:10), forming an inclusio between the prophet's commission and this near-final oracle. The scroll-writing event referenced in verse 1 is narrated in detail in chapter 36. Baruch's role as Jeremiah's scribe and companion runs through chapters 32, 36, 43, and 45. The promise of life 'as plunder' uses the same phrase applied to Ebed-Melech in 39:18, linking two faithful individuals who stood with Jeremiah and received personal survival promises. The theme of not seeking 'great things' connects to the broader prophetic critique of human ambition in the face of divine judgment.*

¹The word that Jeremiah the prophet spoke to Baruch son of Neriah, when he wrote these words on a scroll from Jeremiah's dictation, in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah: ²This is what the LORD, the God of Israel, says to you, Baruch: ³You said, 'Woe to me! The LORD has added grief to my pain. I am exhausted from my groaning, and I find no rest.' ⁴Say this to him: This is what the LORD says — What I have built, I am tearing down. What I have planted, I am uprooting — and this means the whole earth. ⁵And you — are you seeking great things for yourself? Do not seek them. For I am bringing disaster upon all flesh, declares the LORD. But I will give you your life as plunder wherever you go.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase mippi yirmeyahu ('from the mouth of Jeremiah') indicates dictation — Baruch wrote what Jeremiah spoke. The sefer ('scroll') is the same scroll described in chapter 36, which King Jehoiakim later cut apart and burned column by column. The fourth year of Jehoiakim (605/604 BCE) was the year of the Battle of Carchemish, when Babylon defeated Egypt and became the dominant world power — a pivotal moment that confirmed Jeremiah's prophecies of judgment from the north.
2. The directness is striking — God names Baruch personally. In the prophetic literature, God typically addresses kings, priests, nations, or cities. To receive a named, personal oracle is rare and marks Baruch as someone God considers significant. The brevity of the introduction — no titles, no genealogy beyond what verse 1 provides — creates intimacy.
3. Baruch's lament has three elements: accumulated sorrow (yagon al makh'ovi, 'grief upon my pain'), physical and emotional collapse (yaga'ti be'anchati, 'I am exhausted in my groaning'), and the absence of relief (menuchah lo matsati, 'I have found no rest'). The verb yasaph ('added') suggests Baruch's suffering is cumulative — each prophetic word he transcribes adds another layer of grief. The word menuchah ('rest') carries echoes of the promised land as Israel's 'rest' (Deuteronomy 12:9) — Baruch cannot find the very thing Israel was promised.
4. The verbs banah/haras ('build/tear down') and nata'/natash ('plant/uproot') are the four verbs of Jeremiah's original commission in 1:10. God is now executing the destructive half of that commission on a cosmic scale. The emphatic pronoun ani ('I myself') appears twice — God himself built, and God himself tears down. The final phrase ve'et-kol-ha'arets hi ('and the whole earth/land — it') is grammatically unusual and emphatic. Whether erets means 'land' (Judah specifically) or 'earth' (the whole world) is debated; the context of universal judgment in Jeremiah's oracles against the nations (chapters 46-51) suggests the broader reading.
5. The phrase gedolot ('great things') is deliberately unspecified — it could mean political ambition, professional recognition, personal comfort, or simply a normal life. God does not mock the desire but contextualizes it: when God is bringing ra'ah ('disaster') on all flesh (kol-basar), personal aspirations must yield. The promise nafshekha leshallal ('your life as plunder') appears also in 21:9, 38:2, and 39:18 — it is given to those who submit to God's judgment rather than resisting it. The word shalal ('plunder, spoil, booty') is military vocabulary — Baruch will escape with his life the way a soldier escapes a battlefield carrying whatever he could grab. The oracle ends with the open phrase 'wherever you go' (al kol-hammeqomot asher telekh-sham), which proved prophetically apt — Baruch went to Egypt with Jeremiah (43:6) and tradition suggests he traveled further.

46

Summary: *Jeremiah 46 opens the 'Oracles against the Nations' section (chapters 46-51), beginning with Egypt. The chapter divides into two oracles: the first (vv. 3-12) is a taunting war song addressed to the Egyptian army at the Battle of Carchemish in 605 BCE, where Nebuchadnezzar crushed Pharaoh Necho's forces along the Euphrates. The second oracle (vv. 13-26) prophesies Nebuchadnezzar's future invasion of Egypt itself. The chapter closes with a promise of restoration for Israel (vv. 27-28) — the only hopeful voice in this war poetry — assuring Jacob that exile is not annihilation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The military poetry of verses 3-12 is among the most vivid in the Hebrew Bible. The prophet mimics Egyptian battle commands — 'Harness the horses! Mount the steeds! Take your positions!' — then shatters them with the reality of defeat. Egypt is personified as the Nile in flood (vv. 7-8), rising with ambitions to cover the earth, only to be driven back. The nickname for Pharaoh in verse 17 — sha'on he'evir hamo'ed — is a devastating wordplay, rendered as 'Big Noise Who Missed His Moment,' mocking a king who talked loudly but failed to act when it mattered. The historical specificity is rare for prophetic literature: verse 2 names the battle, the opponent, and the date. The closing promise to Jacob (vv. 27-28) reuses language from 30:10-11 almost verbatim, anchoring the oracles against nations within the broader Book of Consolation framework.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase sha'on he'evir hamo'ed (v. 17) is notoriously difficult. Sha'on means 'tumult, loud noise, roar.' He'evir can mean 'he let pass' or 'he caused to pass by.' Mo'ed means 'appointed time, meeting, season.' The result is a mocking epithet: Pharaoh is all noise and missed his chance. We chose 'Big Noise Who Missed His Moment' to capture the contempt while remaining intelligible. The geographic references in verse 9 — Cush, Put, Lud — require identification without disrupting the poetic rhythm. Verse 20 calls Egypt a 'beautiful heifer' (eglah yephephiyah) — a metaphor mixing beauty and sacrifice that resists clean English rendering. The shift from war taunt to salvation oracle in verses 27-28 is abrupt, and some scholars consider these verses a later addition; we translate without prejudice.*

Connections: *The Battle of Carchemish (605 BCE) is one of the most consequential events in ancient Near Eastern history, shifting world power from Egypt to Babylon. Pharaoh Necho is the same ruler who killed Josiah at Megiddo (2 Kings 23:29, 2 Chronicles 35:20-24). The Nile-flood imagery in verses 7-8 echoes Amos 8:8 and 9:5. The sword-as-devourer motif (v. 10) recurs in 2 Samuel 11:25 and Isaiah 1:20. The closing promise (vv. 27-28) parallels 30:10-11 almost word for word. Nebuchadnezzar is again God's instrument — not named as 'My servant' here, but the theology is consistent with 25:9, 27:6, and 43:10. Egypt's judgment connects to Ezekiel 29-32, which devotes four chapters to oracles against Egypt.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning the nations. ²Concerning Egypt — concerning the army of Pharaoh Necho king of Egypt, which was at the Euphrates River at Carchemish, which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon defeated in the fourth year of Jehoiakim son of Josiah, king of Judah:

³Prepare the small shield and the large shield,
and advance to battle!

⁴Harness the horses! Mount up, horsemen!
Take your positions in helmets!
Polish the spears! Put on the armor!

⁵Why do I see them terrified, falling back?
Their warriors are crushed,
fleeing headlong without looking back.
Terror on every side! — declares the LORD.

⁶The swift cannot flee,
the warrior cannot escape.
In the north, by the Euphrates River,
they stumble and fall.

⁷Who is this rising like the Nile,
whose waters surge like rivers?

⁸Egypt rises like the Nile,
its waters surging like rivers.
It says, 'I will rise and cover the earth!
I will destroy the city and everyone in it!'

⁹Charge, horses! Drive wildly, chariots!
Let the warriors march out —
Cush and Put, who carry the shield,
and the Ludim, who handle and draw the bow.

¹⁰That day belongs to the Lord GOD of Hosts —
a day of vengeance, to avenge himself on his foes.
The sword will devour and be satisfied,
drunk with their blood.
For the Lord GOD of Hosts holds a sacrifice
in the land of the north, by the Euphrates River.

¹¹Go up to Gilead and get balm,
virgin daughter of Egypt!
In vain you multiply remedies —
there is no healing for you.

¹²The nations have heard of your disgrace;
your cry fills the earth.
Warrior stumbles over warrior —
both have fallen together.

¹³The word that the LORD spoke to Jeremiah the prophet about the coming of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon to strike the land of Egypt:

¹⁴Announce in Egypt! Proclaim in Migdol!
Proclaim in Memphis and in Tahpanhes!
Say: Take your stand and prepare yourself,
for the sword devours all around you.

¹⁵Why are your mighty ones swept away?
They do not stand, because the LORD has thrust them down.

¹⁶He multiplies the stumbling; they fall over one another.
They say, 'Get up! Let us return to our own people,
to the land where we were born,
away from the oppressing sword!'

¹⁷They cried out there:
'Pharaoh king of Egypt — Big Noise Who Missed His Moment!'

¹⁸As I live — declares the King,
whose name is the LORD of Hosts —
as surely as Tabor stands among the mountains
and Carmel rises above the sea, so he will come.

¹⁹Pack your bags for exile,
daughter dwelling in Egypt!
For Memphis will become a wasteland,
burned and emptied of inhabitants.

²⁰Egypt is a beautiful heifer,
but a biting fly from the north is coming — it is coming!

²¹Even her hired soldiers in her midst are like fattened calves —
they too have turned and fled together; they did not stand.
For the day of their calamity has come upon them,
the time of their reckoning.

²²Her voice hisses away like a snake,
for they advance with force.
They come against her with axes,
like woodcutters.

²³They will cut down her forest — declares the LORD —
though it is impenetrable,
for they are more numerous than locusts;
they are beyond counting.

²⁴Daughter Egypt is put to shame;
she is handed over to the people of the north.

²⁵The LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am about to punish Amon of Thebes, and Pharaoh, and Egypt — her gods,
her kings, Pharaoh, and all who trust in him. ²⁶I will hand them over to those who seek their lives, to Nebuchadnezzar king
of Babylon and his servants. But afterward, Egypt will be inhabited as in former days — declares the LORD.

²⁷But you — do not be afraid, my servant Jacob,
and do not be dismayed, Israel.
For I am about to save you from far away,
your descendants from the land of their captivity.
Jacob will return and be at rest, at ease,
with no one to cause terror.

²⁸Do not be afraid, my servant Jacob — declares the LORD —
for I am with you.
I will make a complete end of all the nations
where I have driven you,
but I will not make a complete end of you.

I will discipline you justly,
but I will certainly not leave you unpunished.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *al ha-goyim* ('concerning the nations') is rendered 'concerning the nations' rather than the KJV's 'against the Gentiles.' The term *goyim* in prophetic context refers to the surrounding peoples, not a religious category. This superscription introduces the entire oracles-against-nations collection (chapters 46–51).
2. This is one of the most precisely dated oracles in the prophetic literature. The Battle of Carchemish in 605 BCE was the decisive engagement that ended Egyptian dominance in the Levant. Pharaoh Necho II had killed Josiah at Megiddo in 609 BCE (2 Kings 23:29); now his army is destroyed at the Euphrates. The Hebrew *hikkah* ('struck, defeated') is the standard military term for a decisive defeat. The name Nebuchadnezzar appears in two Hebrew spellings throughout Jeremiah — *Nevukhadre'ttsar* here, *Nevukhadnettsar* elsewhere.
3. The Hebrew distinguishes between *magen* (the small round shield carried by infantry) and *tsinnah* (the large body-shield). This is a mocking command addressed to the Egyptian forces — the prophet ventriloquizes Egyptian officers issuing orders that will prove futile. The imperative forms create urgency: the battle is about to begin.
4. A rapid-fire series of six imperatives mimicking battle preparation commands. The word *siryanot* ('coats of mail, body armor') is rendered 'armor' rather than the KJV's archaic 'brigandines.' The verb *mirqu* ('polish, burnish, scour') applied to spears conveys making the bronze tips gleam — battle-ready. The staccato rhythm captures the pre-battle urgency of the Hebrew.
5. The scene pivots violently from preparation to rout. The verb *chittim* ('shattered, dismayed') describes psychological collapse. The phrase *magor missaviv* ('terror on every side') is one of Jeremiah's signature expressions (cf. 6:25, 20:3, 20:10, 49:29) — here applied to Egypt's army rather than to Judah. The shift from commanding battle preparation (vv. 3–4) to witnessing total defeat (v. 5) creates devastating irony.
6. The Hebrew *al-yanus* ('let not flee') is rendered as an impossibility — 'cannot flee' — rather than a prohibition, because the context is prophetic declaration of inescapable defeat, not a command. The geographic marker 'in the north, by the Euphrates River' locates the defeat at Carchemish. The verbs *kashelu venafalu* ('they stumble and fall') are prophetic perfects — the defeat is so certain it is described as already completed.
7. The *ye'or* is specifically the Nile (from Egyptian *itrw*, 'river') — not a generic flood. The image of the Nile's annual inundation is Egypt's defining natural phenomenon. The question 'Who is this?' sets up the answer in verse 8: Egypt itself, swelling with imperial ambition like its own river. The verb *yitga'ashu* ('surge, churn, be turbulent') conveys violent, uncontrollable movement.
8. Egypt answers its own question from verse 7. The verb *akasseh* ('I will cover') uses flood imagery — Egypt intends to inundate the world as the Nile inundates its valley. The singular 'city' (*ir*) is likely collective, meaning cities in general rather than one specific city. The hubris of the declaration is deliberate — Egypt speaks as though it were an unstoppable natural force.
9. Egypt's army was multinational — mercenaries from across Africa. Cush refers to the region south of Egypt (modern Sudan/Ethiopia), Put is likely Libya, and the Ludim are debated (possibly Libyans or a people of Anatolia/Lydia). The verb *hithollelu* ('rage, drive madly') applied to chariots creates an image of reckless, frenzied assault. These are ironically presented as commands the prophet issues to Egypt's army — go ahead, bring your full force, it will not matter.
10. The phrase *zebach la-Adonai YHWH tseva'ot* ('a sacrifice to the Lord GOD of Hosts') recasts the battlefield as a sacrificial altar — Egypt's army is the offering. This motif of warfare-as-sacrifice appears also in Isaiah 34:6 and Ezekiel 39:17–20. The sword is personified with three verbs: it 'devours' (*akhelah*), 'is satisfied' (*save'ah*), and 'is drunk' (*ravetah*) — a progression from hunger through satiation to intoxication. The double divine title *Adonai YHWH Tseva'ot* ('Lord GOD of Hosts') signals maximum divine authority.
11. The address 'virgin daughter of Egypt' (*betulat bat-Mitsrayim*) is ironic — Egypt, the great power, is mocked as a wounded girl searching for medicine. Gilead was famous for its healing balm (cf. 8:22, 'Is there no balm in Gilead?'). The word *te'alah* ('healing, recovery') indicates that Egypt's wound is terminal — no amount of medicine will restore her. The irony deepens: Jeremiah earlier asked about Gilead's balm for Judah; now Egypt is the patient who cannot be healed.
12. The word *qelonekh* ('your shame, disgrace, humiliation') is the public exposure of Egypt's defeat — international humiliation. The image of warriors stumbling over each other in retreat (*gibbor begibbor kashalu*) depicts the chaos of a panicked rout where soldiers trample their own comrades. This verse closes the Carchemish oracle with Egypt reduced from Nile-like ambition (v. 8) to a heap of fallen men.
13. This superscription introduces the second oracle (vv. 13–26), which looks beyond Carchemish to a future Babylonian invasion of Egypt itself — historically fulfilled around 568/567 BCE. The verb *lehakkot* ('to strike') is the same root used in verse 2 for the Carchemish defeat (*hikkah*), linking the two oracles: what happened to Egypt's army abroad will happen to Egypt at home.
14. Three Egyptian cities are named: Migdol (a frontier fortress in the northeastern Delta), Noph/Memphis (the ancient capital in Lower Egypt), and Tahpanhes (Daphnae, where Jeremiah's own group fled in chapter 43). The geographic spread — border, capital, Delta garrison — indicates the warning reaches all Egypt. Memphis (Hebrew *Noph*) was the political and religious center; its mention signals that the invasion will reach Egypt's heart.

15. The word *abbirekha* ('your mighty ones, your bulls') can also be read as a reference to the Apis bull — Egypt's sacred bull deity. If so, the verse simultaneously asks why Egypt's warriors and Egypt's god have been swept away. The verb *nischaf* ('swept away') suggests being washed away by a flood — ironic, since Egypt was the one boasting of rising like the Nile (v. 8). The cause is stated plainly: YHWH *hadafo* ('the LORD has thrust him down').
16. The mercenaries in Egypt's army — Cushites, Libyans, Ludim (see v. 9) — now abandon Egypt and flee to their homelands. The phrase *erets moladtenu* ('the land of our birth') reveals they are foreigners who have no stake in Egypt's survival. The 'oppressing sword' (*cherev hayyonah*) uses *yonah*, which may derive from *yanah* ('oppress') — the sword that victimizes. Egypt hired foreign soldiers, and now they desert.
17. This is one of the most debated phrases in Jeremiah. *Sha'on* ('noise, tumult, roar') mocks Pharaoh's bombast. *He'evir hamo'ed* ('he let the appointed time pass') accuses him of missing his strategic window — possibly a reference to Necho's failure to reinforce his army at Carchemish in time. Some scholars read *hamo'ed* as a pun on a pharaonic name. We rendered it as a nickname — 'Big Noise Who Missed His Moment' — to capture the contemptuous tone of the Hebrew epithet.
18. God swears by his own life — the most solemn oath possible, since nothing higher exists to swear by. The title 'the King' (*ha-Melekh*) contrasts with Pharaoh's impotent kingship in the previous verse: the real King speaks. Tabor and Carmel are chosen for their unmistakable prominence — Tabor rises dramatically from the Jezreel Valley, Carmel juts into the Mediterranean. Nebuchadnezzar's coming will be equally unmistakable and unavoidable.
19. The phrase *kelei golah* ('vessels of exile, baggage for captivity') is a concrete image — pack your belongings for deportation. The same instruction appears in Ezekiel 12:3-4, where the prophet acts it out as a sign. Memphis (Noph) was Egypt's cultural and political capital; its destruction signals total national collapse. The verb *nitstetah* ('burned, set ablaze') adds fire to desolation.
20. Egypt is compared to a sleek, beautiful cow — an image resonant in a culture that venerated the cow-goddess Hathor and the Apis bull. The word *qeret* ('gadfly, biting insect, destruction') is debated — it may mean a stinging horsefly (an insect that torments cattle) or simply 'destruction.' We render 'biting fly' to preserve the cattle metaphor: a gorgeous heifer tormented by a fly from the north (Babylon). The doubled *ba ba* ('is coming, is coming') expresses certainty and imminence.
21. The mercenaries (*sekhireha*) are compared to stall-fed calves (*eglei marbeq*) — pampered, fat, and useless in crisis. The animal imagery continues from verse 20: Egypt is a beautiful cow, her soldiers are fattened calves, and none can withstand the predator from the north. The term *pequddatam* ('their visitation, reckoning, punishment') carries the double sense of divine inspection and divine punishment — God comes to examine and to judge.
22. Egypt's voice — once roaring like the Nile (v. 8) — is now reduced to the hiss of a retreating snake. The image captures Egypt slithering away in humiliation. The Babylonian soldiers are compared to woodcutters (*chotevei etsim*) — they will hack through Egypt's defenses as methodically as lumberjacks fell trees. The shift from Egypt's grandiose self-image to this diminished reality is the rhetorical climax of the oracle.
23. The 'forest' (*ya'rah*) may be literal (the Nile Delta's dense vegetation) or metaphorical (Egypt's dense population and resources). The invaders — compared to locusts (*arbeh*) — overwhelm by sheer numbers. The irony is layered: in the Exodus, God sent locusts against Egypt; now he sends a locust-army of Babylonians. The verb *kartu* ('they cut down') continues the woodcutter metaphor from verse 22.
24. The verb *hovisha* ('she is shamed, disgraced') marks the completion of Egypt's humiliation arc — from rising Nile (v. 7) to beautiful heifer (v. 20) to shamed captive. The phrase *am tsafon* ('people of the north') avoids naming Babylon directly, emphasizing the geographic direction from which all threats come to the Levant and Egypt.
25. Amon of No — Amon (the chief god of the Egyptian pantheon) worshipped at No (Thebes, the great religious capital of Upper Egypt). The LORD targets not just the political ruler but the rival deity: YHWH versus Amon. Pharaoh is named twice, framing the list — the repetition emphasizes that everything between the two mentions of Pharaoh is included in the judgment. The phrase 'all who trust in him' (*ha-botechim bo*) may include Judeans who relied on Egyptian protection.
26. The verse ends with a surprising note of restoration: *acharei-khen tishkon kimei-qedem* ('afterward it will be inhabited as in days of old'). Unlike the oracles against Babylon (chapters 50-51), which prophesy permanent destruction, Egypt's judgment is temporary. This aligns with Ezekiel 29:13-14, which also prophesies Egypt's partial restoration after forty years. The Hebrew *tishkon* ('it will be settled, inhabited') uses the root *sh-k-n*, the same root as *Shekhinah* — Egypt will be 'dwelt in' again, though not by God's presence.
27. This verse parallels 30:10 almost verbatim — the same promise appears in the Book of Consolation and here, framing the oracles against nations as part of Israel's restoration. The verb *moshi'akha* ('I am saving you') is a participle indicating imminent action. The three-word sequence *shaqat vesh'aanan ve'ein macharid* ('quiet and at ease and none terrifying') paints a picture of total shalom — rest, security, and the absence of threat.
28. The distinction between Israel and the nations is sharp: the nations face *kalah* ('complete destruction'), while Israel faces discipline (*yissartikha*, from *yasar*, 'to discipline, correct, instruct'). The phrase *lammishpat* ('with justice, in due measure') qualifies the discipline — it will be proportionate, not annihilating. The final clause *venaqeh lo anaqekka* ('and acquitting, I will not acquit you') is a double-edged promise: Israel will survive, but guilt will not be ignored. This parallels the divine self-description in Exodus 34:7. The verse — and the chapter — ends with the tension unresolved: grace and judgment coexist.

47

Summary: *Jeremiah 47 contains the oracle against the Philistines — a concentrated burst of war poetry in only seven verses. Waters rise from the north to flood the Philistine coast. The cities of Gaza and Ashkelon are devastated. The Philistines are cut off along with their allies from Tyre and Sidon. The oracle closes with a haunting address to the sword of the LORD itself, asking how long it will rage before returning to its sheath — and answering that it cannot rest, because the LORD has given it its orders.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the shortest oracles against a foreign nation in Jeremiah, but its intensity is extraordinary. The flood metaphor (v. 2) casts the Babylonian invasion as a cosmic deluge rising from the north — water imagery that inverts the exodus, where God parted waters to save Israel. Here God sends waters to destroy. The concluding dialogue with the sword (vv. 6-7) is unique in prophetic literature: the prophet addresses God's weapon directly, pleading for it to cease, then acknowledges that the sword acts on divine commission. The Philistines — Israel's ancient enemies from the time of the Judges through David — are now fellow victims of the same Babylonian storm. The superscription ties the oracle to an Egyptian campaign 'before Pharaoh struck Gaza' (v. 1), grounding the cosmic poetry in specific historical events.*

Translation Friction: *The superscription 'before Pharaoh struck Gaza' (v. 1) is historically uncertain — it may refer to Pharaoh Necho's campaign northward in 609 BCE or to an earlier Egyptian action. We translate without resolving the historical question. The phrase she'erit i Kaphtor (v. 4) — 'the remnant of the coastland of Caphtor' — identifies the Philistines' origin as Caphtor (likely Crete or the broader Aegean), which aligns with the 'Sea Peoples' migration known from Egyptian records. The phrase 'how long will you gash yourself?' (v. 5) uses the verb titgodedi, which can mean either mourning gashes (self-laceration in grief) or military gathering — we chose the mourning sense, as the context is lamentation.*

Connections: *The Philistines as 'remnant of Caphtor' connects to Amos 9:7 ('Did I not bring the Philistines from Caphtor?') and Deuteronomy 2:23. The flood-from-the-north motif links to Jeremiah 1:14 ('From the north disaster will break loose') and Isaiah 8:7-8 (Assyria as flood waters). The sword-of-the-LORD motif appears in Deuteronomy 32:41-42, Isaiah 34:5-6, and Ezekiel 21:1-17. Ashkelon and Gaza are named together in judgment oracles in Amos 1:6-8, Zephaniah 2:4-7, and Zechariah 9:5. The mourning imagery connects to the Philistine lament traditions referenced in Isaiah 14:29-31.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning the Philistines, before Pharaoh struck Gaza.

²This is what the LORD says:

Waters are rising from the north —

they will become a raging torrent!

They will flood the land and everything in it,
the city and all who live there.

People will cry out;

every inhabitant of the land will wail.

³At the sound of the pounding hooves of his stallions,
the rattling of his chariots, the rumble of his wheels —
fathers will not turn back for their children,
their hands too limp with terror.

⁴Because of the day that is coming
to devastate all the Philistines,
to cut off from Tyre and Sidon
every surviving ally.

For the LORD is about to devastate the Philistines,

the remnant of the coastland of Caphtor.

⁵Baldness has come upon Gaza;
Ashkelon is silenced — remnant of their valley.
How long will you gash yourself in grief?

⁶O sword of the LORD,
how long before you are still?
Return to your sheath!
Cease — be silent!

⁷How can it be still
when the LORD has given it its orders?
Against Ashkelon and against the seacoast —
there he has appointed it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription places this oracle before a specific Egyptian military campaign against Gaza. The historical referent is debated — most likely Pharaoh Necho II's march through Philistia en route to Carchemish in 609 BCE. The preposition *el* is rendered 'concerning' rather than the KJV's 'against' for consistency with the project's treatment of prophetic superscriptions. The oracle itself, however, describes a northern invasion (Babylon), not an Egyptian one — the superscription may be editorial, dating the oracle's reception rather than its subject.
2. The flood imagery depicts the Babylonian army as an unstoppable wall of water pouring down from the north. The word *nachal shotef* ('overflowing torrent, raging wadi') describes the flash floods that fill dry riverbeds — sudden, violent, and indiscriminate. The verb *yishtepu* ('they will flood') repeats the root of *shotef*, intensifying the drowning image. This inverts the Egypt oracle, where Egypt boasted of rising like the Nile (46:7-8) — here God himself sends the flood. The dual objects 'the land and everything in it, the city and all who live there' uses merism to indicate total destruction.
3. The verse builds an overwhelming soundscape: *sha'atat parsot abbirav* ('the stamping/pounding of his stallions' hooves'), *ra'ash rikhbō* ('the crashing of his chariot'), *hamon galgillav* ('the roar of his wheels'). The sounds arrive before the army does — the Philistines hear their death approaching. The word *abbirav* ('his mighty ones, his stallions') was used for Egypt's warriors in 46:15; here it refers to war horses. The most devastating image: fathers abandon their children because their hands have gone slack (*riphyon yadayim*, 'limpness of hands') — terror has dissolved the most primal human bond.
4. Tyre and Sidon — Phoenician cities north of Philistia — are mentioned because they were allied with the Philistines against Babylon. The verb *lishddod* ('to devastate, plunder') is repeated (*shoeded*) for emphasis. The identification of the Philistines as *she'erit i Kaphtor* ('remnant of the coastland/island of Caphtor') recalls their origin as part of the Sea Peoples migration from the Aegean world (cf. Amos 9:7, Deuteronomy 2:23). By calling them a 'remnant' (*she'erit*), the text implies they are already diminished — and now even that remnant will be destroyed. *Kaphtor* is generally identified with Crete or the broader Aegean region.
5. *Qorchah* ('baldness') refers to the mourning practice of shaving the head in grief (cf. Isaiah 22:12, Micah 1:16) — Gaza has entered a state of lamentation. The verb *nidmetah* ('she is silenced, destroyed, cut off') applied to Ashkelon carries the dual sense of being silenced and being annihilated — the city's voice is extinguished. The question 'how long will you gash yourself?' (*titgodadi*) refers to the practice of self-laceration in mourning (cf. Deuteronomy 14:1, 1 Kings 18:28). The prophet addresses the surviving Philistines directly, but the question is rhetorical — the mourning will not end because there is no recovery coming.
6. The prophet now addresses the sword itself — a remarkable personification. The exclamation *hoy* ('O, alas') begins what reads as a lament directed at God's own weapon. The three imperatives — *he'asephi* ('gather yourself in, return'), *heragi* ('rest, be still'), and *dommi* ('be silent') — plead with the sword to stop its work. This is the prophet's own voice breaking through the oracle, unable to bear the destruction any longer, even destruction he has announced as God's will. The tension between prophetic commission and human compassion is raw.
7. The prophet answers his own plea: the sword cannot rest because YHWH *tsivvah lah* ('the LORD has commanded it'). The sword is not autonomous — it executes divine orders. The word *ye'adah* ('he has appointed it, assigned it') uses the root *y-'-d*, related to *mo'ed* ('appointed time, meeting') — the same root used to mock Pharaoh in 46:17. There, Pharaoh missed his appointed time; here, the LORD's sword keeps its appointment precisely. The oracle ends not with resolution but with the terrible logic of divine judgment: once God commissions destruction, even the prophet's compassion cannot recall the weapon.

48

Summary: *Jeremiah 48 is the longest and most elaborate of the oracles against the nations — a sweeping judgment against Moab, Israel's neighbor east of the Dead Sea. The oracle announces the devastation of Moab's cities, the humiliation of its god Chemosh, and the end of its famed wine production. The central image of the chapter is Moab as undisturbed wine left to settle on its dregs (v. 11), never poured from vessel to vessel — a nation whose complacency has become its defining quality. Despite the totality of the destruction announced, the chapter closes with a startling promise: 'I will restore the fortunes of Moab in the latter days' (v. 47), placing even this condemned nation within the scope of God's ultimate redemptive purpose.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This oracle borrows extensively from Isaiah 15-16, sometimes quoting nearly verbatim, creating one of the most significant cases of prophetic intertextuality in the Hebrew Bible. The wine-on-its-dregs metaphor (v. 11) is unique to Jeremiah and captures Moab's essential problem — not active rebellion against God but undisturbed self-satisfaction. The personification of Moab as a woman mourning on rooftops (v. 38) and the image of the broken vessel (v. 38) echo Jeremiah's own earlier imagery. The repeated lament formula 'How it is broken!' transforms judgment speech into something closer to elegy — the prophet grieves even over nations under condemnation. We preserved the poetic parallelism throughout, particularly in the lament sections, because the Hebrew shifts between prose announcement and poetic mourning in ways that shape the reader's emotional response.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between this oracle and Isaiah 15-16 required careful handling — where the Hebrew of Jeremiah quotes or adapts Isaiah, we rendered Jeremiah's own text rather than harmonizing with our Isaiah renderings, since the prophets may have deliberately modified their source. The place names in this chapter are numerous and many are uncertain in location; we transliterated them consistently but noted the geographic uncertainty where relevant. The word shaqat ('to be at rest, undisturbed') in verse 11 carries both positive and negative connotations — rest can be blessing or complacency, and context here demands the negative sense. The divine first-person voice shifts to prophetic third-person and back without clear markers, requiring interpretive decisions about speaker identification.*

Connections: *The Isaiah 15-16 parallel is the dominant intertextual connection — Jeremiah inherits, adapts, and expands the earlier Moab oracle. The wine imagery connects to Isaiah's vineyard songs (Isaiah 5, 27) and to Jeremiah's own cup-of-wrath metaphor (25:15-29). The promise of restoration in verse 47 parallels similar restoration promises for Egypt (46:26), Ammon (49:6), and Elam (49:39) — a pattern suggesting that God's judgment of the nations is penultimate, not final. Chemosh, Moab's national deity, is mentioned in the Mesha Stele (c. 840 BCE), the most important extrabiblical witness to Moabite religion and the same god condemned in 1 Kings 11:7 when Solomon built high places for foreign deities. The 'broken vessel' language echoes Jeremiah 19:11 and 22:28.*

¹Concerning Moab — this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says:

Woe to Nebo, for it is destroyed!

Kiriathaim is put to shame, it is captured.

The fortress is put to shame and shattered.

²Moab's glory is no more.

In Heshbon they have plotted evil against her:

'Come, let us cut her off as a nation!'

You too, Madmen, will be silenced —
the sword will pursue you.

³A cry rings out from Horonaim —
devastation and great destruction!

⁴Moab is shattered!
Her little ones cry out in anguish.

⁵On the ascent of Luhith
weeping rises upon weeping,
and on the descent to Horonaim
cries of anguish over destruction are heard.

⁶Flee! Save your lives!
Be like a juniper bush in the wilderness.

⁷Because you trusted in your achievements and your treasures,
you too will be captured.
Chemosh will go into exile,
his priests and officials together.

⁸The destroyer will come against every city —
no city will escape.
The valley will perish and the plateau will be ruined,
as the LORD has declared.

⁹Give wings to Moab,
for she must fly away!
Her cities will become desolate,
with no one living in them.

¹⁰Cursed is the one who carries out the LORD's work halfheartedly,
and cursed is the one who holds back his sword from blood.

¹¹Moab has been undisturbed since his youth,
settling on his dregs.
He has never been poured from vessel to vessel
or gone into exile.
So his flavor has stayed in him
and his aroma has not changed.

¹²Therefore the days are coming, declares the LORD,
when I will send tilters to him who will tilt him over.
They will empty his vessels
and smash his jars.

¹³Moab will be ashamed of Chemosh,
just as the house of Israel was ashamed of Bethel, their confidence.

¹⁴How can you say, 'We are warriors,
men of valor for battle'?

¹⁵Moab is destroyed and her cities overrun.
The best of her young men go down to the slaughter,
declares the King, whose name is the LORD of Hosts.

¹⁶Moab's disaster is near at hand,
and his calamity rushes swiftly.

¹⁷Grieve for him, all who surround him,
all who know his name.
Say: 'How the mighty scepter is broken,
the staff of splendor!'

¹⁸Come down from your glory and sit in parched ground,
you who dwell in Daughter Dibon!
For the destroyer of Moab has come up against you;
he has ruined your fortifications.

¹⁹Stand by the road and watch,
you who dwell in Aroer!
Ask the man fleeing and the woman escaping,
say: 'What has happened?'

²⁰Moab is put to shame, for he is shattered!
Wail and cry out!
Declare it at the Arnon:
Moab is destroyed!

²¹Judgment has come upon the plateau —
upon Holon, upon Jahazah, upon Mephaath,

²²upon Dibon, upon Nebo, upon Beth-diblathaim, ²³upon Kiriathaim, upon Beth-gamul, upon Beth-meon,
²⁴upon Kerioth, upon Bozrah,
and upon all the cities of the land of Moab, far and near.

²⁵Moab's horn is cut off
and his arm is broken,
declares the LORD.

²⁶Make him drunk, for he exalted himself against the LORD!
Moab will wallow in his own vomit
and become an object of ridicule himself.

²⁷Was not Israel a laughingstock to you?
Was he caught among thieves,
that whenever you spoke of him
you shook your head in scorn?

²⁸Abandon the cities and settle among the rocks,
you inhabitants of Moab!
Be like a dove that nests
on the sides of a gorge's mouth.

²⁹We have heard of Moab's pride — exceedingly proud! —
his loftiness, his arrogance,

his conceit, and the haughtiness of his heart.

³⁰I know his bluster, declares the LORD —
it amounts to nothing.
His boasts accomplish nothing.

³¹Therefore I will wail over Moab;
for all of Moab I will cry out.
For the men of Kir-heres he will moan.

³²More than the weeping for Jazer
I weep for you, O vine of Sibmah!
Your branches stretched across the sea,
reaching as far as the sea of Jazer.
The destroyer has fallen
upon your summer fruit and your grape harvest.

³³Joy and gladness are taken away
from the orchards and from the land of Moab.
I have stopped the wine from the vats.
No one treads the grapes with shouts —
the shouts are not shouts of joy.

³⁴From the outcry of Heshbon to Elealeh,
to Jahaz they raise their voice —
from Zoar to Horonaim, to Eglath-shelishiyah —
for even the waters of Nimrim have become desolate.

³⁵I will put an end in Moab, declares the LORD,
to anyone who offers sacrifice at the high places
and burns incense to his gods.

³⁶Therefore my heart moans for Moab like a flute,
and my heart moans for the men of Kir-heres like a flute —
for the wealth they gained has perished.

³⁷For every head is shaved bald
and every beard is cut short.
On every hand are gashes,
and on every waist, sackcloth.

³⁸On every rooftop in Moab
and in her public squares — everywhere, mourning!
For I have shattered Moab like a jar
that no one wants, declares the LORD.

³⁹How shattered he is! Wail!
How Moab has turned his back in shame!
Moab has become an object of ridicule
and a horror to all his neighbors.

⁴⁰For this is what the LORD says:
Look — like an eagle he swoops down
and spreads his wings over Moab.

⁴¹The cities are captured
and the strongholds are seized.
On that day the heart of Moab's warriors
will be like the heart of a woman in labor.

⁴²Moab will be destroyed as a people,
because he exalted himself against the LORD.

⁴³Terror, pit, and trap
await you, inhabitant of Moab,
declares the LORD.

⁴⁴The one fleeing from terror
will fall into the pit,
and the one climbing out of the pit
will be caught in the trap.
For I will bring upon Moab
the year of their punishment,
declares the LORD.

⁴⁵In the shadow of Heshbon the fugitives stand exhausted,
but fire has gone out from Heshbon,
a flame from the house of Sihon.
It has consumed the forehead of Moab,
the skull of the sons of tumult.

⁴⁶Woe to you, Moab!
The people of Chemosh are lost,
for your sons are taken captive
and your daughters into exile.

⁴⁷Yet I will restore the fortunes of Moab
in the latter days, declares the LORD.
Thus far is the judgment of Moab.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The oracle opens with the standard prophetic messenger formula redirected toward a foreign nation. Nebo here is a Moabite city (not the mountain of Moses's death, though they share the name). Kiriathaim is a Moabite town mentioned in the Mesha Stele. Misgab may be a proper name or the common noun meaning 'fortress, stronghold' — we rendered it as 'the fortress' following the Hebrew sense, noting the ambiguity.
1. The verbs *hubishah* ('put to shame') and *chattah* ('shattered, dismayed') describe not merely military defeat but the collapse of national confidence.
2. There is a wordplay in the Hebrew that cannot be reproduced in English: *Heshbon* () and *chashvu* ('they plotted,' from the root *ch-sh-b*) share consonants, creating a pun — 'In Plot-town they have plotted.' Similarly, *Madmen* and *tiddommi* ('you will be silenced,' from the root *d-m-m*) form another wordplay. These puns suggest the city names themselves prophesy their fate. The shift from third-person description to second-person address ('you too') is characteristic of prophetic rhetoric.

3. Horonaim is a Moabite city also mentioned in the Mesha Stele and in Isaiah 15:5. The paired nouns *shod vashever* ('devastation and destruction') form a hendiadys emphasizing total ruin. The brevity of the Hebrew line — only five words — creates a staccato urgency.
4. The word *tse'oreha* is debated — it may mean 'her little ones' (children) or may be a reference to the town Zoar (*tso'ar*), mentioned in Isaiah 15:5. We followed the reading 'her little ones' because the image of children crying intensifies the pathos of the oracle. The LXX reads 'Zoar,' and some modern translations follow that reading.
5. This verse closely parallels Isaiah 15:5. The geographic imagery is vivid — Luhith is uphill and Horonaim downhill, so the weeping ascends and the cries descend, filling the entire landscape with lamentation. The phrase *bikhi ya'aleh bekhi* ('weeping rises upon weeping') uses repetition to convey relentless, compounding grief.
6. The word *aro'er* is difficult — it may refer to a bare, scrubby plant (juniper or tamarisk), to the city Aroer, or may be related to the root meaning 'stripped bare.' The comparison to a desert shrub suggests desolate survival — alive but barely, stripped of everything, clinging to existence in barren land. The LXX reads 'wild donkey,' but the MT plant imagery fits the desolation context better.
7. Chemosh (Kemosh) was the national deity of Moab, well attested in the Mesha Stele (c. 840 BCE) where King Mesha credits Chemosh with military victories — the mirror image of how Israel credits the LORD. The verb *yatsa* ('go out') combined with *golah* ('exile') describes the deportation of the god's idol along with his personnel — a devastating theological statement: Moab's god cannot protect even himself. The word *ma'asayikh* ('your achievements/works') may also refer to idol-making, creating a double meaning.
8. The Hebrew makes a geographic sweep: the *emeq* ('valley,' the Jordan rift) and the *mishor* ('plateau,' the Moabite tableland east of the Dead Sea). Together they encompass all of Moab's territory — lowland and highland alike fall. The word *shoded* ('destroyer') is a participle suggesting an ongoing agent of destruction, not a single event.
9. The word *tsits* may mean 'wings' or 'blossom/flower,' and some scholars read this as 'give Moab a gravestone' (from *tsiyyun*, 'marker'). The image of giving wings to Moab so she can fly away is bitterly ironic — escape would require flight, but there is no escape. The desolation formula 'without any to dwell therein' (*me'ein yoshev bahen*) is a standard Jeremican judgment formula recurring throughout chapters 46–51.
10. This verse is startling — it pronounces a curse on anyone who executes God's judgment against Moab with insufficient zeal. The word *remiyyah* means 'slackness, negligence, deceitfulness' — we rendered it 'halfheartedly' to capture the sense of inadequate commitment to the task. The theological implication is severe: the destroyer of Moab is doing 'the LORD's work' (*melekhet YHWH*), and failure to complete it fully is itself a cursable offense. This verse has been used in later tradition to discuss the ethics of divinely commanded violence.
11. This is the theological center of the oracle. The word *sha'anani* ('undisturbed, at ease, complacent') carries negative connotations in prophetic literature — cf. Amos 6:1, 'Woe to those who are at ease in Zion.' The winemaking metaphor is technically precise: *shemarim* are the sediment or lees that settle at the bottom of a wine jar, and the verb *huraq* ('emptied, poured out') describes the decanting process. Moab has never experienced national catastrophe — unlike Israel and Judah who were repeatedly invaded and exiled — and this undisturbed existence has produced not maturity but stagnation. The word *ta'am* ('taste, flavor') and *reach* ('aroma, scent') sustain the wine metaphor through to the end of the verse.
12. The wine metaphor continues: God will send *tso'im* ('tilters, those who tip over') — workers who pour the wine from one vessel to another. The wordplay between *tso'im* and *tse'uhu* ('they will tilt him') reinforces the image. The verb *yariqu* ('they will empty') and the smashing of *nivlehem* ('their jars/wineskins') complete the metaphor: Moab's long-undisturbed complacency will be violently ended. The metaphor of decanting becomes the metaphor of destruction.
13. The comparison is devastating: Moab's trust in Chemosh will fail just as Israel's trust in the golden calf at Bethel failed. Bethel ('house of God') was the site of Jeroboam's calf shrine (1 Kings 12:28–29), and Israel's confidence in that cult did not prevent the Assyrian destruction of 722 BCE. The parallel implies that false religious confidence — whether Moabite or Israelite — leads to the same outcome.
14. The rhetorical question exposes the emptiness of Moab's military boasting. The words *gibborim* ('warriors, mighty men') and *anshei-chayil* ('men of valor') are the highest terms for military prowess in Hebrew — Moab claims elite warrior status, but the claim is about to be shown hollow.
15. The divine title here is striking: *hammelek YHWH tseva'ot shemo* ('the King, whose name is the LORD of Hosts'). God is identified not merely as prophet's patron but as the sovereign King who outranks all earthly rulers and all national deities. The word *meitav* ('the best, choicest') describes the cream of Moab's youth — the finest soldiers are the ones who fall. The verb *yardu* ('they go down') to slaughter suggests descent, both literal (into a valley of battle) and figurative (into death).
16. The verse is concise and urgent — only eight Hebrew words. The noun *eid* ('disaster, calamity') and *ra'ato* ('his misfortune, his evil') form a pair emphasizing the totality of what approaches. The verb *miharah* ('hastens, rushes') with the intensifier *me'od* ('very, exceedingly') conveys unstoppable momentum.
17. The summons to mourn shifts the tone from judgment announcement to lament. The images *matteh-oz* ('staff of strength, mighty scepter') and *maqel tif'arah* ('staff of splendor, beautiful rod') are symbols of royal authority and national pride. Their breaking represents the end of Moab's sovereignty. The lament formula *ekhah* ('How!') echoes the opening word of the book of Lamentations and is the characteristic cry of funeral lamentation in Hebrew.
18. Dibon was the capital of Moab, where the Mesha Stele was discovered in 1868. The personification *bat-Dibon* ('Daughter Dibon') treats the city as a woman — a common prophetic convention. The command to descend from glory (*kavod*) to sit in thirst reverses the city's status: from enthroned honor to ground-level desperation. The word *tsama* ('thirst, parched ground') may refer to literal thirst or to sitting in dry, desolate ground.

19. Aroer sits on the Arnon gorge at the northern border of Moab — a natural observation point for refugees streaming south. The inhabitants of this border city will see the flood of escapees and learn of the catastrophe from their terrified reports. The pair *nas venimlatah* ('the fleeing one and the escaping one') uses masculine and feminine forms, indicating that both men and women are in flight.
20. The Arnon River formed Moab's traditional northern boundary. The command to declare the news at the Arnon means announcing the catastrophe at the nation's border — the destruction is to be published at the very boundary of the land. The verb *heililu* ('wail') is the characteristic sound of mourning, an onomatopoeic word imitating the wailing cry.
21. This begins a catalogue of doomed Moabite cities (vv. 21-25). The *mishor* ('plateau, tableland') is the elevated plain east of the Dead Sea that was Moab's agricultural heartland. *Holon*, *Jahazah*, and *Mephaath* were Levitical cities assigned to Reuben (Joshua 21:36-37) but later absorbed into Moab — their mention here recalls the contested territorial history between Israel and Moab.
22. The city catalogue continues. *Dibon* was the capital (see v. 18). *Nebo* here is the city, not the mountain. *Beth-diblathaim* ('house of fig cakes') is mentioned in the Mesha Stele as a Moabite town. The rapid listing without connecting verbs creates a drumbeat effect — city after city falling under judgment.
23. *Kiriathaim* was already mentioned in verse 1 as captured. *Beth-gamul* and *Beth-meon* are Moabite towns; *Beth-meon* is likely the same as *Baal-meon* mentioned in the Mesha Stele. The prefix 'Beth' means 'house' — these are named as households or settlements, emphasizing the domestic scale of the devastation.
24. *Kerioth* may be the same as *Ar*, the ancient capital of Moab. *Bozrah* here is a Moabite city, not the Edomite *Bozrah* of 49:13. The summary phrase 'far and near' closes the city catalogue with a comprehensive sweep — no Moabite settlement, however remote, is exempt from judgment.
25. Two body-part metaphors for national power: *qeren* ('horn') represents strength and aggressive power (as a bull's horn), while *zero'a* ('arm') represents military might and active force. Both are destroyed. The combination 'horn cut off, arm broken' is comprehensive — Moab has lost both offensive capability (horn) and the capacity to act (arm).
26. The metaphor shifts from wine as complacency (v. 11) to wine as humiliation — forced drunkenness that leads to public degradation. The verb *higdil* ('made himself great, exalted himself') names Moab's fundamental sin: arrogance against the LORD. The image of wallowing in vomit (*safaq beqi'o*) is deliberately revolting — national pride collapses into physical grotesqueness. The word *sechok* ('laughter, ridicule, derision') indicates that Moab will become what he once was to others: a joke.
27. God turns the tables: Moab mocked Israel's suffering (the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE and Judah's later troubles), but now Moab will receive the same treatment. The verb *titnoded* ('you shook yourself, wagged your head') describes the physical gesture of contemptuous derision — shaking the head at someone's misfortune. The rhetorical question 'Was he caught among thieves?' implies that Israel's punishment was not for crime but was nevertheless mocked by Moab as if it were.
28. The dove nesting at the edge of a chasm is an image of desperate, precarious refuge — the only shelter left is the wild cliff face. The word *pachat* ('pit, gorge, chasm') suggests a dangerous precipice rather than a safe cave. The inhabitants who once lived in proud cities must become like birds clinging to rock walls. The dove (*yonah*) is elsewhere a symbol of vulnerability and mourning (cf. Isaiah 38:14, 59:11).
29. This verse piles up five synonyms for pride: *ge'on* ('pride, majesty'), *govho* ('his loftiness'), *ge'ono* ('his arrogance'), *ga'avato* ('his conceit'), and *rum libbo* ('the height of his heart'). The accumulation is deliberate — Moab's pride is so excessive that one word cannot contain it. This verse closely parallels Isaiah 16:6, confirming Jeremiah's dependence on the earlier oracle. The 'we have heard' (*shama'nu*) is plural, suggesting a collective prophetic tradition witnessing Moab's notorious pride.
30. God's response to the five-fold pride of v. 29 is dismissive. The word *evrato* can mean 'his wrath, his fury, his bluster' — the sense here is that Moab's angry posturing is empty. The phrase *lo-khen baddav* ('his lies/boasts are not so, not right') indicates that Moab's self-assessment is fundamentally false. The contrast between Moab's elaborate pride (five terms in v. 29) and God's terse dismissal (a single short verse) is rhetorically devastating.
31. A remarkable shift: the speaker (whether God or the prophet — the text is ambiguous) breaks into lament for Moab rather than continuing the judgment speech. The verb *ayalil* ('I will wail') is the same mourning cry commanded in v. 20. *Kir-heres* (also called *Kir-hareseth*, modern *Kerak* in Jordan) was a major Moabite fortress city. The shift from first person ('I will wail') to third person ('he will moan') in the Hebrew is abrupt — this may reflect alternating voices between prophet and God, or a textual difficulty.
32. This verse closely parallels Isaiah 16:8-9. *Sibmah* was famous for its vineyards, and the vine of *Sibmah* symbolizes Moab's agricultural prosperity. The 'branches stretching across the sea' is hyperbolic — Moab's vine tendrils (*netishoteha*) reached so far they seemed to cross the Dead Sea. The pairing of *qayits* ('summer fruit') and *batsir* ('grape harvest') represents the full agricultural cycle now interrupted by the destroyer. The vine imagery connects to the wine-on-dregs metaphor of verse 11.
33. The word *heidad* appears three times in rapid succession — it normally means the joyful shout of grape-treaders stomping the harvest, but the final occurrence negates it: *heidad heidad lo heidad* ('shouting, shouting — not shouting!'). The joyful harvest cry has become a cry of something else — perhaps war, perhaps grief. The wordplay captures the inversion of celebration into catastrophe. The *karmel* ('orchard, fruitful field') may be a common noun or refer to a specific place; we rendered it as the common noun.
34. This verse parallels Isaiah 15:4-6. The geographic sweep traces the sound of lamentation across the entire Moabite landscape from north (*Heshbon*) to south (*Zoar*). *Eglath-shelishiyah* is debated — it may be a place name ('Eglath of the third') or a description ('a three-year-old heifer'), an epithet for *Horonaim* or *Zoar*. We treated it as a place name following the LXX tradition. The waters of *Nimrim* (a wadi south of the Dead Sea) going dry

represents the destruction of Moab's water sources — ecological devastation accompanying military destruction.

35. The destruction extends to Moab's religious system. The bamah ('high place') was the standard worship site throughout the ancient Near East — an elevated platform or hilltop shrine. The verb *maqṭir* ('one who burns incense, one who makes offerings smoke') describes the characteristic ritual act at these shrines. God eliminates not just Moab's political and economic life but its entire religious apparatus.
36. The comparison of the heart's mourning to a *chalilim* ('flutes, pipes') evokes the sound of funeral music — the hollow, mournful tone of reed pipes played at funerals and laments. The verb *yehemeh* ('moans, murmurs, growls') is onomatopoeic. The phrase *yitrat asah* ('the surplus/wealth he made') refers to accumulated prosperity now lost. The speaker's personal grief for Moab — 'my heart moans' — is remarkable in a judgment oracle and parallels Isaiah 15:5, 16:9, 11.
37. Four mourning customs are catalogued: shaving the head (*qorchah*), cutting the beard, slashing the hands (*gedudot*, 'gashes, cuts'), and wearing sackcloth. These rituals were practiced throughout the ancient Near East as expressions of grief. Some of these practices were prohibited for Israelites in Leviticus 19:28 and Deuteronomy 14:1, but Moabites are not under that prohibition — the prophet describes their mourning customs without comment. The universality ('every head, every beard, all hands') emphasizes the totality of grief.
38. The rooftop (*gag*) was the place of public mourning in ancient culture — flat roofs served as open-air platforms visible to the whole community. The simile of the broken vessel (*keli ein-chefets bo*, 'a vessel in which there is no delight') echoes Jeremiah 22:28 where the same phrase is used of King Jehoiachin. A pot that no one wants is discarded — Moab has lost all value in God's assessment. The divine first-person 'I have shattered' makes clear that this is not random catastrophe but deliberate divine action.
39. The lament formula *eikh* ('How!') returns from v. 17. The phrase *hifnah oref* ('turned the back') is an idiom for fleeing in defeat — the opposite of the warrior facing his enemy. Moab becomes both *sechok* ('ridicule, laughingstock') and *mechittah* ('horror, terror, dismay') — simultaneously laughable and terrifying, the contradictory reactions that total destruction provokes in observers.
40. The eagle (*neshet*, which may also refer to a vulture — both large raptors) is a recurring image for invading armies in prophetic literature (cf. Deuteronomy 28:49, Habakkuk 1:8, Ezekiel 17:3). The verb *yid'eḥ* ('he swoops, he flies') and the spreading of wings (*paras kenafav*) describe both the speed of the attack and the totality of coverage — the eagle's wings overshadow the entire land. The identity of the eagle is unstated but contextually refers to Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon.
41. The simile of warriors reduced to the helplessness of a woman in labor (*ishah metserah*) appears also in 49:22 and 50:43. It describes not cowardice but overwhelming, involuntary pain and loss of control — the mightiest soldiers will be seized by terror as uncontrollable as labor contractions. The word *qeriyot* may be the city Kerioth (as in v. 24) or the common noun 'cities' — we rendered it as the common noun here since the plural form with the article suggests a generic reference.
42. This verse states the verdict in its starkest form: Moab ceases to exist as a people (*me'am*). The cause is repeated from v. 26: *higdil* ('he made himself great, he exalted himself') against the LORD. Moab's sin is not idolatry per se (though that is implied) but the fundamental posture of self-exaltation — placing himself above the God of Israel. The verb *nishmat* ('will be destroyed, annihilated') from the root *sh-m-d* is the strongest term for national destruction in Hebrew.
43. Three words with alliterative force in Hebrew: *pachad*, *pachat*, *pach* — 'terror, pit, trap.' The near-identical sounds create a sense of inescapable danger closing in from every direction. This triad is borrowed from Isaiah 24:17, where it describes universal judgment. The sound-play cannot be fully reproduced in English, though 'terror, pit, and trap' partially preserves the percussive consonants.
44. The three-fold trap from v. 43 is now deployed in sequence: fleeing from one danger leads directly into the next. This image of inescapable judgment also appears in Amos 5:19 (the man who flees a lion and meets a bear). The phrase *shenat pequddatam* ('the year of their punishment/visitation') uses *pequddah*, which can mean 'visitation' (positive or negative) — here clearly negative, the appointed time when God calls Moab to account. This verse closely follows Isaiah 24:18.
45. This verse quotes Numbers 21:28-29, the ancient Song of Heshbon celebrating Sihon the Amorite's original conquest of Moab. Jeremiah reaches back to Israel's oldest poetry to describe Moab's present destruction — history repeats itself. Heshbon, once Sihon's capital, becomes both refuge and source of destruction. The phrase *pe'at Mo'av* ('the forehead/side of Moab') and *qodqod* ('skull, crown of the head') personify the nation as a human body being consumed by fire. The *benei sha'on* ('sons of tumult') characterizes the Moabites as a people of uproar and commotion.
46. This verse also echoes Numbers 21:29 — the ancient taunt against Chemosh's inability to protect his people. The phrase *am-Kemosh* ('people of Chemosh') identifies Moab by its national deity, as Israel is called 'people of the LORD.' The parallel between Chemosh's failure and the LORD's faithfulness is implicit but devastating. Sons and daughters in captivity represent the total demographic destruction of the nation.
47. The closing verse reverses the entire oracle. After 46 verses of relentless destruction, God promises to restore Moab's fortunes 'in the latter days.' This restoration formula (*shavti shevut*) appears also for Egypt (46:26), Ammon (49:6), and Elam (49:39) — a pattern suggesting that judgment of the nations is penultimate, not final. The editorial note 'Thus far is the judgment of Moab' (*ad hennah mishpat Mo'av*) is a redactional marker closing the oracle unit. The phrase *be'acharit hayyamim* is eschatological, pointing beyond historical restoration to an ultimate future act of God.

49

Summary: *Jeremiah 49 collects five short oracles against nations surrounding Israel: Ammon (vv. 1-6), Edom (vv. 7-22), Damascus (vv. 23-27), Kedar and Hazor (vv. 28-33), and Elam (vv. 34-39). Each oracle announces divine judgment for a specific reason — Ammon for land theft, Edom for proud self-reliance, Damascus for panic in the face of bad news, the Arabian tribes for false security, and Elam for military aggression. Three of the five oracles (Ammon, Edom, Elam) close with promises of future restoration, extending the pattern established in chapter 48's Moab oracle.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Edom oracle (vv. 7-22) is the most theologically dense section, borrowing extensively from Obadiah — the only case in the Hebrew Bible where two prophetic books share this much material, raising complex questions about literary priority and prophetic tradition. The question 'Is there no longer wisdom in Teman?' (v. 7) challenges Edom's famed intellectual tradition (Teman being associated with wisdom, as in Job's friend Eliphaz the Temanite). The Kedar-Hazor oracle is notable for its target — nomadic Arabian tribes rather than settled kingdoms — and contains some of the most vivid desert warfare imagery in prophetic literature. The Elam oracle is geographically surprising, reaching far to the east (modern southwestern Iran), suggesting that God's sovereignty extends well beyond Israel's immediate neighbors. We preserved the distinct rhetorical character of each sub-oracle rather than harmonizing them into a uniform style.*

Translation Friction: *The Edom oracle's relationship to Obadiah required careful handling — where the Hebrew of Jeremiah 49 parallels Obadiah, we rendered Jeremiah's own text rather than importing our Obadiah renderings, since the textual traditions may have diverged deliberately. The phrase malkom in verse 1 is ambiguous: it could mean 'their king' (malkam) or 'Milcom' (the Ammonite deity), and context supports both readings — we rendered 'Milcom' with a note on the ambiguity. Several place names in the oracle against Kedar and Hazor are uncertain, and the Hazor here is not the Canaanite city of Joshua 11 but an otherwise unknown Arabian settlement. The shift between divine first-person and prophetic third-person speech is particularly abrupt in this chapter, sometimes changing mid-verse.*

Connections: *The Edom oracle connects to Obadiah 1-9 (shared material), Genesis 25 and 36 (Esau/Edom traditions), and the broader prophetic tradition of Edom as Israel's perpetual antagonist (Isaiah 34, 63:1-6, Ezekiel 25:12-14, 35:1-15, Malachi 1:2-5). The Ammon oracle connects to Judges 11 (Jephthah's dispute over Ammonite land claims) and Amos 1:13-15. The Damascus oracle parallels Amos 1:3-5 and Isaiah 17. The promise of restoration for Ammon (v. 6) and Elam (v. 39) parallels the Moab restoration promise (48:47), forming a theological pattern: God's judgment of the nations is real but not final. Bozrah in the Edom oracle (v. 13) should not be confused with the Moabite Bozrah of 48:24 — this is the Edomite capital, modern Buseirah in southern Jordan.*

¹Concerning the Ammonites — this is what the LORD says:

Does Israel have no sons?

Has he no heir?

Then why has Milcom dispossessed Gad,

and why do his people settle in its cities?

²Therefore the days are coming, declares the LORD,

when I will sound the battle alarm against Rabbah of the Ammonites.

She will become a desolate mound,

and her surrounding towns will be burned with fire.

Then Israel will dispossess those who dispossessed him,

says the LORD.

³Wail, Heshbon, for Ai is destroyed!
 Cry out, daughters of Rabbah!
 Put on sackcloth, lament,
 and run back and forth among the walls,
 for Milcom will go into exile,
 his priests and officials together.

⁴Why do you boast of your valleys —
 your valley is flowing away, faithless daughter!
 You who trust in your treasures, saying,
 'Who would come against me?'

⁵I am bringing terror upon you,
 declares the Lord GOD of Hosts,
 from every side.
 Each of you will be driven out headlong,
 and no one will gather the fugitives.

⁶But afterward I will restore the fortunes of the Ammonites,
 declares the LORD.

⁷Concerning Edom — this is what the LORD of Hosts says:
 Is there no longer wisdom in Teman?
 Has counsel vanished from the discerning?
 Has their wisdom rotted away?

⁸Flee! Turn back! Go deep into hiding,
 you inhabitants of Dedan!
 For I will bring Esau's disaster upon him —
 the time when I punish him.

⁹If grape-pickers came to you,
 would they not leave some gleanings?
 If thieves came in the night,
 would they not steal only what they needed?

¹⁰But I — I have stripped Esau bare,
 I have uncovered his hiding places,
 and he cannot conceal himself.
 His offspring are destroyed, his brothers and his neighbors,
 and he is no more.

¹¹Leave your orphans — I will keep them alive.
 Let your widows trust in me.

¹²For this is what the LORD says: If those who did not deserve to drink the cup must drink it, will you really go unpunished?
 You will not go unpunished — you will certainly drink it.

¹³For I have sworn by myself, declares the LORD,
 that Bozrah will become a desolation,

a reproach, a ruin, and a curse.
All her cities will be ruins forever.

¹⁴I have heard a report from the LORD,
and a messenger has been sent among the nations:
'Assemble and march against her!
Rise up for battle!'

¹⁵For I will make you small among the nations,
despised among humanity.

¹⁶The dread you inspire has deceived you,
the arrogance of your heart —
you who dwell in the clefts of the rock,
who cling to the height of the hill.
Even if you build your nest as high as the eagle,
from there I will bring you down,
declares the LORD.

¹⁷Edom will become a desolation.
Everyone passing by will be appalled
and will hiss at all her wounds.

¹⁸Like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah
and their neighboring cities, says the LORD,
no one will live there,
no human being will settle in her.

¹⁹Look — like a lion coming up
from the thickets of the Jordan
to rich pastureland,
I will suddenly chase him away from it.
And who is the chosen one I will appoint over it?
For who is like me?
Who can summon me to court?
And what shepherd can stand against me?

²⁰Therefore hear the plan of the LORD
that he has devised against Edom,
and his purposes that he has formed
against the inhabitants of Teman:
Surely the youngest of the flock will drag them away;
surely their pasture will be made desolate because of them.

²¹At the sound of their fall the earth trembles;
their outcry is heard at the Sea of Reeds.

²²Look — like an eagle he rises and swoops,
spreading his wings over Bozrah.

On that day the heart of Edom's warriors
will be like the heart of a woman in labor.

²³Concerning Damascus —
Hamath and Arpad are put to shame,
for they have heard bad news.
They melt in anxiety;
there is agitation on the sea that cannot be calmed.

²⁴Damascus has lost her strength.
She has turned to flee,
and panic has gripped her.
Distress and pain have seized her
like a woman giving birth.

²⁵How is the renowned city not abandoned,
the town of my delight!

²⁶Therefore her young men will fall in her public squares,
and all her soldiers will be silenced on that day,
declares the LORD of Hosts.

²⁷I will set fire to the walls of Damascus,
and it will consume the fortresses of Ben-hadad.

²⁸Concerning Kedar and the kingdoms of Hazor,
which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon defeated —
this is what the LORD says:
Rise up, advance against Kedar,
and plunder the people of the east!

²⁹Their tents and their flocks will be seized,
their tent curtains and all their goods and their camels
carried off.
Men will shout at them:
'Terror on every side!'

³⁰Flee! Wander far away! Go deep into hiding,
you inhabitants of Hazor, declares the LORD!
For Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon
has devised a plan against you
and formed a strategy against you.

³¹Rise up, advance against a nation at ease,
living in security, declares the LORD —
a nation with no gates and no bars,
dwelling in isolation.

³²Their camels will become plunder
and their vast herds, spoil.
I will scatter to every wind
those who clip the corners of their hair,
and from every direction I will bring their disaster,
declares the LORD.

³³Hazor will become a haunt of jackals,
a desolation forever.
No one will live there;
no human being will settle in her.

³⁴The word of the LORD that came to Jeremiah the prophet concerning Elam, at the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah king of Judah:

³⁵This is what the LORD of Hosts says:
I am about to break the bow of Elam,
the chief weapon of their strength.

³⁶I will bring against Elam the four winds
from the four corners of the heavens.
I will scatter them to all these winds,
and there will be no nation
where Elam's exiles will not reach.

³⁷I will shatter Elam before their enemies,
before those who seek their lives.
I will bring disaster upon them —
the burning heat of my anger,
declares the LORD.
I will send the sword after them
until I have consumed them.

³⁸I will set my throne in Elam
and destroy her king and officials from there,
declares the LORD.

³⁹But in the latter days
I will restore the fortunes of Elam,
declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *malkam* is deliberately ambiguous — it can be vocalized as 'their king' (*malkam*) or as 'Milcom' (the national deity of Ammon, also known as Molech). We rendered it as 'Milcom' because the parallel with Chemosh in 48:7 (Moab's god going into exile) suggests a deity rather than a human king. The tribe of Gad occupied Transjordanian territory that Ammon claimed; after Gad's deportation by Assyria (c. 733 BCE), Ammon expanded into the vacated land. God's rhetorical questions imply that Israel's exile was not an invitation for Ammon to annex the territory — Israel still has heirs.
2. Rabbah (modern Amman, Jordan) was the Ammonite capital. The term *teru'at milchamah* ('alarm of war, war cry') refers to the blast of the shofar or the shout of attacking troops. The word *tel* ('mound, ruin heap') is a technical term for the artificial hill created when a city is destroyed and rebuilt repeatedly — Rabbah will become an archaeological ruin. The phrase *yarash yisra'el et yorshav* ('Israel will dispossess his dispossessioners') uses the same verb from v. 1 (*yarash*, 'to inherit, to dispossess') — the tables are turned, and Israel reclaims what was taken.

3. Heshbon here is in Ammonite territory (distinct from the Moabite context of chapter 48). The Ai mentioned here is not the Ai of Joshua 7-8 near Bethel but an otherwise unknown Ammonite town. The phrase *malkam bagolah yelekh* ('Milcom/their king will go into exile') exactly parallels 48:7 where Chemosh goes into exile — the pattern demonstrates that foreign gods are powerless against the LORD. The women running 'among the walls/hedges' (*bagederot*) suggests frantic, directionless movement within confined spaces.
4. The phrase *zav imqekh* ('your valley flows') is a wordplay — the *amaqim* ('valleys') that Ammon boasts about are 'flowing away,' possibly referring to the blood flowing in the valleys or the fertility of the land draining away. The title *bat hashovovevah* ('faithless/backsliding daughter') applies the same term used for Israel (3:14, 22) to Ammon — even foreign nations are held accountable for faithlessness. The arrogant question 'Who would come against me?' echoes Edom's boast in Obadiah 3 and is a characteristic prophetic marker of prideful self-delusion.
5. The full divine title *Adonai YHWH Tseva'ot* ('the Lord GOD of Hosts') is used here — the most expansive form of the divine name, combining the title of sovereignty (*Adonai*), the covenant name (*YHWH*), and the military title (*Tseva'ot*). The phrase *ish lefanav* ('each man straight ahead') describes panicked, directionless flight — each person running wherever he faces, with no coordination or leadership. The final clause 'no one will gather the fugitives' (*ein meqabbets lanoded*) means there will be no rallying point, no regrouping — the dispersal is permanent.
6. As with Moab (48:47) and later Elam (49:39), the judgment oracle closes with a promise of restoration. The phrase *ashiv et shevut* ('I will restore the fortunes/captivity') uses the root *shuv* ('return'), Jeremiah's central verb for both judgment and restoration. The word 'afterward' (*acharei-khen*) is less specific than the 'latter days' of 48:47 — it promises restoration without placing it in eschatological time.
7. Teman, an Edomite clan and region, was renowned in the ancient world for wisdom — Eliphaz the Temanite is the most prominent of Job's friends (Job 2:11). The three rhetorical questions are devastating: Edom's famed intellectual tradition has failed completely. The verb *nisrechah* ('has rotted, has become foul, has decayed') is unusually strong — wisdom has not merely departed but decomposed. The word *banim* ('sons, children') here means 'the discerning ones' or 'the intelligent' — a usage of *ben* as a member of a class rather than a literal offspring.
8. Dedan was an Arabian trading settlement at the southern edge of Edom's territory. The inhabitants are warned to flee because Edom's catastrophe will spill over into neighboring regions. The name 'Esau' is used instead of 'Edom' — a reminder that Edom is Jacob/Israel's twin brother (Genesis 25:25-26, 36:1), making this a judgment within the family. The verb *he'miqu* ('go deep') suggests hiding in deep caves or remote wadis — the terrain of Edom (Petra region) is famous for its deep, narrow gorges and hidden caves.
9. This verse closely parallels Obadiah 5. The rhetorical logic is a *fortiori*: even grape-harvesters leave some fruit behind, and even thieves take only enough — but the judgment coming on Edom will be far more thorough than either. The implied conclusion (stated explicitly in v. 10) is that Edom will be stripped completely bare. The word *ollelot* (' gleanings') refers to the small clusters left on the vine after harvest — gleaning laws in Israel required leaving these for the poor (Leviticus 19:10).
10. The emphatic pronoun *ani* ('I myself') stresses divine agency — this is not a natural disaster but God's deliberate act. The verb *chasafti* ('I have stripped bare, I have exposed') is the opposite of Edom's attempt to hide in deep places (v. 8). God strips away every layer of protection. The phrase *ve'einenu* ('and he is not, and he is no more') is stark and final — Edom ceases to exist. Historically, the Edomites were gradually absorbed by the Nabataeans and later the Idumeans of the Hellenistic period, effectively disappearing as a distinct people.
11. This verse is startling in context — after announcing total destruction, God offers to protect Edom's most vulnerable: the orphans (*yetomim*) and widows (*almanot*). The verse may be ironic (Edom's orphans will need divine protection because there will be no men left) or genuinely compassionate (even in judgment, God cares for the helpless). The tension between these readings is deliberate and should not be resolved. The imperative 'leave' (*azvah*) addresses Edom directly — entrust your most vulnerable to the God who is destroying you.
12. The cup metaphor connects to Jeremiah's cup-of-wrath vision in 25:15-29, where all nations must drink from the cup of divine judgment. The argument is a *fortiori*: if even those whose 'judgment' (*mishpat*) did not require drinking the cup must nevertheless drink, how much more must Edom drink? The emphatic infinitive absolute construction *shato tishteh* ('you will certainly drink') leaves no room for escape. The identity of those who 'did not deserve to drink' is debated — it likely refers to Judah, who suffered despite being God's covenant people.
13. God swears by himself because there is no greater authority to swear by (cf. Genesis 22:16, Hebrews 6:13). Bozrah (modern Buseirah in southern Jordan) was the capital of Edom — not to be confused with the Moabite Bozrah of 48:24. The four-fold sentence — *shamah* ('desolation'), *cherpah* ('reproach'), *chorbah* ('ruin'), *qelalah* ('curse') — is a comprehensive judgment formula. The phrase *chorvot olam* ('ruins forever') uses *olam* in its sense of indefinite, stretching-beyond-sight duration.
14. This verse closely parallels Obadiah 1. The prophet receives a *shemu'ah* ('report, rumor, message') directly from the LORD, then sees a *tsir* ('envoy, messenger') dispatched among the nations to muster an army against Edom. The scene reveals the heavenly council directing international affairs — the nations think they are acting independently, but God has summoned them. The imperatives *hitqabetsu* ('gather yourselves'), *bo'u* ('come'), and *qumu* ('rise up') create urgency.
15. Parallels Obadiah 2. The verbs describe both diminishment (*qaton*, 'small, insignificant') and social contempt (*bazui*, 'despised'). Edom, which considered itself great and secure, will be reduced to insignificance. The word *ba'adam* ('among humanity, among people') broadens the scope beyond the nations to a universal contempt.
16. Parallels Obadiah 3-4. The word *tiflatstetkha* is rare — it may mean 'the terror/dread you inspire in others' or 'your horrible nature.' Edom's fearsome reputation has become a source of self-deception: because others fear them, they believe they are invulnerable. The geographic references to 'clefts of the rock' (*chagvei hassela*) precisely describe the terrain around Petra (whose name means 'rock' in Greek) and the Edomite highlands — narrow canyon passages and cliff dwellings that seemed impregnable. The eagle-nest image combines height with the illusion of inaccessibility, but

God's reach exceeds even the eagle's altitude.

17. The reaction of passersby combines yishom ('will be appalled, horrified, stunned') with yishroq ('will hiss, whistle') — the hissing is a gesture of shock and contempt, the sharp intake of breath at something terrible. The word makkoteha ('her wounds, her plagues, her blows') describes Edom's devastation as physical injuries inflicted on a body.
18. The comparison to Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19) invokes the paradigmatic divine destruction — total, irreversible, and exemplary. The phrase mahpekhat Sedom ('the overthrow of Sodom') uses a specific noun for catastrophic overturning, not merely 'destruction.' The double negation — 'no one will live there, no human being will settle' — uses two different words for humanity (ish, 'a man,' and ben-adam, 'a son of man/human being') to emphasize the completeness of depopulation.
19. This extended simile compares God to a lion emerging from the dense vegetation along the Jordan River to attack prey in open pasture. The ge'on haYarden ('pride/thickets of the Jordan') refers to the lush, jungle-like growth along the river banks where lions once lived. The three rhetorical questions assert God's absolute sovereignty: no one equals him (mi khamoni), no one can call him to account (mi yo'ideni), and no leader (ro'eh, 'shepherd,' a common metaphor for kings) can resist him. This passage is reused almost verbatim in 50:44 against Babylon.
20. The 'plan' (atsat) and 'purposes' (machshevotav) of the LORD are presented as accomplished facts — what God has planned is as good as done. The image of tse'irei hatso'n ('the youngest/smallest of the flock') dragging away the mighty Edomites is deliberately humiliating — even the weakest will overcome them. The word neveh ('pasture, dwelling') continues the pastoral metaphor: Edom's home territory will be made desolate. This verse reappears nearly identically in 50:45 against Babylon.
21. The fall of Edom is so catastrophic that the earth itself shakes (ra'ashah ha'arets) and the sound carries to the yam-suf ('Sea of Reeds,' traditionally 'Red Sea') — an enormous distance, emphasizing the magnitude of the event. The mention of the Sea of Reeds also evokes the Exodus, linking Edom's fall to the paradigmatic act of divine judgment and deliverance.
22. This verse closely parallels 48:40-41 (the eagle over Moab), using nearly identical language for Edom. The reuse suggests that the same divine agent of destruction (the eagle, representing Nebuchadnezzar) will strike both nations. The simile of warriors reduced to the helplessness of a woman in labor (ishah metserah) describes involuntary, overwhelming physical distress — the mightiest soldiers seized by terror as uncontrollable as contractions.
23. The Damascus oracle begins abruptly without a messenger formula. Hamath and Arpad were Syrian cities north of Damascus that fell to Assyria before Damascus itself (cf. Isaiah 10:9, 36:19). The verb namogu ('they melt, they dissolve') describes the loss of all solidity and resolve. The phrase bayyam de'agah ('anxiety/worry on the sea') is difficult — it may mean the anxious sea as a metaphor for turmoil, or 'anxiety like the sea' (comparing their inner turmoil to the restless ocean). The verb hashqet ('to be quiet, to be still') with lo yukal ('is not able') describes uncontrollable agitation.
24. The verb rafetah ('has become weak, has gone limp') describes the loss of physical strength — Damascus's legendary military power collapses. The personification as a woman in labor (kayyoleodah) echoes 48:41 and 49:22 — the same image applied to Moab, Edom, and now Damascus, suggesting that divine judgment produces the same helpless agony regardless of the nation. The word retet ('trembling, panic') is rare in the Hebrew Bible, intensifying the unusualness of Damascus's experience.
25. The speaker of this lament is debated — it may be the prophet, a citizen of Damascus, or God himself expressing loss. The phrase ir tehillah ('city of praise/renown') and qiryat mesosi ('city of my joy/delight') indicate that Damascus was celebrated for its beauty and vitality. The exclamation eikh ('How!') again echoes the lament formula. The verse's meaning is also debated: 'How is it that the city has not yet been abandoned' (wondering why people stay in a doomed place) or 'How has the city of renown been abandoned' (mourning its fall).
26. The verb yiddammu ('will be silenced, will perish') from the root d-m-m ('to be silent, to cease') suggests death as silencing — the noisy, vibrant city falls into the silence of death. The rehov ('public square, broad place') was the center of civic life in an ancient city — for young men to fall there means the heart of the city is a killing ground. The phrase bayyom hahu ('on that day') is eschatological language marking a decisive divine intervention.
27. Ben-hadad ('son of Hadad') was a dynastic name used by several Aramean kings of Damascus (1 Kings 15:18, 20:1, 2 Kings 13:3). The name invokes the storm god Hadad, the chief deity of the Arameans — calling the fortresses by this name suggests that Damascus's royal power, rooted in its national deity, will be consumed. This verse closely parallels Amos 1:4. The verb hitsatti ('I will kindle, I will set fire') makes God the direct agent of destruction.
28. Kedar was a confederation of Arabian tribes descended from Ishmael (Genesis 25:13), inhabiting the Syrian-Arabian desert east of Israel. Hazor here is not the Canaanite city of Joshua 11:1 but refers to unwallled Arabian settlements (from chatser, 'enclosure, settlement') — semi-permanent encampments in the desert. The phrase benei-qedem ('people of the east, easterners') is a general term for Arabian and Transjordanian peoples. Nebuchadnezzar is named directly as the historical agent of this judgment — a rare explicit identification in the oracles against nations.
29. The catalogue of plunder — tents, flocks, curtains, goods, camels — is the complete inventory of nomadic wealth. These are not city-dwellers with walls and storehouses but pastoralists whose entire livelihood is portable and vulnerable. The cry magor missaviv ('terror on every side') is a characteristic Jeremiah phrase (6:25, 20:3, 20:10, 46:5) — it becomes the war cry shouted at the fleeing nomads, turning Jeremiah's own experience of terror into a weapon against others.
30. The triple imperative — nusu ('flee'), nudu ('wander'), he'miqu ('go deep') — creates escalating urgency. The same command to 'go deep' (he'miqu lashavet) appeared in v. 8 addressed to Dedan near Edom — the same survival strategy for different nations. The word etsah ('counsel, plan') and

machashavah ('thought, strategy') describe Nebuchadnezzar's deliberate military planning, but the broader context makes clear that the Babylonian king's plans are themselves instruments of God's judgment.

31. The description of the target — shelev ('at ease, tranquil'), yoshev lavetach ('living in security'), without doors or bars, dwelling alone — describes the nomadic lifestyle as both its blessing and its vulnerability. These desert-dwelling tribes have no fortifications because they have no fixed cities. Their isolation (badad yishkonu, 'they dwell alone') is geographic and cultural — they live apart from the settled world. What was freedom becomes fatal exposure when an army comes.
32. The phrase qetsutssei fe'ah ('those who clip the corners [of their hair]') describes an Arabian grooming custom — trimming the hair at the temples. This same phrase appears in 9:25 and 25:23, identifying specific Arabian peoples by their distinctive hairstyle. The scattering 'to every wind' (lekhol-ruach) means dispersal in all four directions — total diaspora. The phrase mikkol-avarav ('from all his sides/directions') means disaster converges from every quarter, leaving no direction of escape.
33. The word tannim ('jackals') represents the wild animals that reclaim abandoned human settlements — a standard image of desolation in prophetic literature (cf. Isaiah 13:22, 34:13). The double negation with ish and ben-adam (paralleling v. 18 and 48:9) is the comprehensive depopulation formula. The phrase shemamah ad-olam ('desolation forever/to the distant horizon of time') uses olam in its sense of indefinite, stretching-beyond-sight duration — the desolation has no visible end.
34. The Elam oracle is unique among the oracles against nations for having a precise date — the beginning of Zedekiah's reign (c. 597 BCE). Elam was located in what is now southwestern Iran (capital: Susa), far to the east of Israel's usual sphere of concern. Its inclusion extends the scope of God's sovereignty far beyond the Levant. The dating formula connects this oracle to the turbulent period immediately after Nebuchadnezzar's first deportation of Judah.
35. Elam was renowned in the ancient world for its archers — the bow (qeshet) was their signature military weapon. Breaking the bow means destroying their primary military capability. The phrase reshit gevuratam ('the beginning/chief of their strength') identifies archery as the foundation of Elamite power. The destruction begins with the weapon system that defines them — without the bow, Elam is defenseless.
36. The 'four winds from the four corners of the heavens' (arba ruchot me'arba qetsot hashamayim) represents cosmic-scale judgment — destruction comes from every cardinal direction simultaneously. The scattering of Elam's people to every nation is the most extreme dispersal formula in Jeremiah's oracles against nations. The word nidchei ('exiles, outcasts, driven-out ones') from the root n-d-ch describes forced, involuntary displacement to the farthest reaches of the known world.
37. The phrase charon appi ('the burning of my anger, my fierce wrath') is one of the strongest anger expressions in Hebrew — charon means 'burning heat' and af ('nose, anger') refers to the flaring nostrils of fury. The verb hichatti ('I will shatter, I will terrify') from the root ch-t-t describes the complete breakdown of morale. The sword 'sent after them' (shilachti achareihem et-hacherev) personifies the weapon as a pursuing agent — the sword chases Elam's scattered survivors until consumption (kaloti, 'until I have finished/consumed') is complete.
38. The image of God setting his throne (kis'i) in Elam is extraordinary — it declares that God will personally exercise sovereignty in this distant land, displacing its human rulers. The destruction of 'king and officials' (melekh vesarim) eliminates the entire governing structure. This verse makes explicit what the other oracles against nations imply: God is not merely punishing foreign lands but establishing his own kingship over them. The placement of God's throne in Elam anticipates the universal sovereignty theme of later apocalyptic literature.
39. The restoration formula echoes 48:47 (Moab) and 49:6 (Ammon), completing a three-fold pattern: judgment is followed by eschatological hope. The phrase be'acharit hayyamim ('in the latter days') uses the same eschatological time-marker as 48:47. Notably, Edom and Damascus receive no such restoration promise — their oracles end with unrelieved judgment. The theological significance is debated: does this pattern suggest degrees of divine mercy, or is it a redactional difference reflecting the history of the text's composition? Acts 2:9 mentions Elamites among those present at Pentecost, which some interpreters read as fulfillment of this promise.

50

Summary: *Jeremiah 50 opens the massive two-chapter oracle against Babylon (chapters 50-51), the longest sustained prophetic judgment in the book. The chapter announces Babylon's fall, the shattering of her gods Bel and Marduk, and the arrival of 'a nation from the north' — the same directional formula previously used for Babylon's own attack on Jerusalem, now turned back on her. Interwoven with Babylon's doom is Israel's restoration: the scattered people of both Israel and Judah will seek the LORD together, weeping as they return to Zion and binding themselves in an everlasting covenant. The chapter's theological center is verse 34, where God is named Israel's Go'el — the kinsman-redeemer who is bound by obligation to plead their cause against the empire that devoured them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The literary architecture of this chapter is a study in reversal. Every judgment formula that Jeremiah used against Jerusalem in earlier chapters reappears here aimed at Babylon: the foe from the north (v. 3, cf. 1:14, 4:6, 6:1, 6:22), the call to flee (v. 8, cf. 4:6), the land becoming a desolation (v. 13, cf. 4:27, 6:8), the sword against inhabitants (v. 35-38, cf. 14:12). Babylon was God's instrument; now the instrument itself faces the forge. The go'el declaration in verse 34 is theologically explosive — God does not rescue Israel as a distant sovereign but as closest kin, using the same legal category as Ruth's Boaz. The everlasting covenant of verse 5 (berit olam) reaches beyond Sinai, anticipating the new covenant of chapter 31. The fourfold 'sword' refrain in verses 35-38 is poetry of devastating precision, systematically dismantling every pillar of Babylonian society.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase hinneh (rendered 'look' or integrated naturally) appears multiple times and required contextual judgment each time. The verb paqad ('to visit, attend to, punish') in verses 18, 27, and 31 shifts between punitive and restorative uses — we rendered each according to context and documented the decisions. The word naqam ('vengeance') in verses 15 and 28 required careful handling: this is not petty revenge but covenantal vindication, and we rendered it as 'vengeance' with notes on the covenantal dimension. The metaphor of Israel as 'scattered sheep' (v. 17) connects to earlier shepherd-failure oracles (23:1-4) and we preserved the pastoral language. The rare word zed/zadon ('arrogance, presumption') in verses 31-32 is a key characterization of Babylon's sin — pride elevated to cosmic defiance.*

Connections: *The 'foe from the north' formula reverses the invasion oracle of 6:22-24 almost word for word. The go'el imagery connects to Isaiah 41:14, 43:14, 44:6, 44:24, 47:4, 48:17, 49:7, 49:26, 54:5, 54:8, and to Ruth 3-4 where the legal institution is narrated. The everlasting covenant (berit olam, v. 5) links to 31:31-34 (new covenant), 32:40 (everlasting covenant), and Genesis 17:7. The shepherd-and-flock metaphor connects to 23:1-4 (faithless shepherds), Ezekiel 34, and Psalm 23. The 'vengeance of his temple' (v. 28) links to the temple destruction narrated in chapter 52 and 2 Kings 25. Babylon's fall here is echoed in Isaiah 13-14, 21:1-10, and ultimately in Revelation 17-18.*

¹The word that the LORD spoke against Babylon, against the land of the Chaldeans, through Jeremiah the prophet. ²Announce it among the nations, proclaim it, raise a signal; proclaim it and do not conceal it. Say: Babylon is captured! Bel is put to shame, Marduk is shattered. Her images are put to shame, her idols are broken to pieces. ³For a nation advances against her from the north — it will turn her land into a wasteland, and no one will live in it. Both human and animal will flee; they will be gone. ⁴In those days and at that time, declares the LORD, the people of Israel will come — they and the people of Judah together. They will walk along weeping, and they will seek the LORD their God. ⁵They will ask the way to Zion, their faces turned toward it: 'Come, let us bind ourselves to the LORD in an everlasting covenant that will never be forgotten.' ⁶My people have been lost sheep. Their shepherds led them astray, turning them loose on the mountains. They wandered from mountain to hill and forgot their resting place. ⁷All who found them devoured them, and their oppressors said, 'We bear no guilt, because they sinned against the LORD — the pasture of righteousness, the hope of their ancestors, the LORD.' ⁸Flee from the midst of Babylon, go out from the land of the Chaldeans, and be like the lead goats at the head of the flock. ⁹For I am about to stir up and bring against Babylon an assembly of great nations from the land of the north. They will array themselves against her; from there she will be captured. Their arrows will be like those of a skilled warrior — none returns empty-handed. ¹⁰Chaldea will become plunder; all who plunder her will have their fill, declares the LORD. ¹¹Because you rejoiced, because you exulted, you who plundered my inheritance — because you frolicked like a heifer treading grain and neighed like stallions — ¹²Your mother will be utterly put to shame; she who bore you will be disgraced. Look — the last of the nations! A desert, a dry land, a wasteland. ¹³Because of the wrath of the LORD she will not be inhabited; she will become an utter desolation. Everyone who passes by Babylon will be horrified and will hiss at all her wounds. ¹⁴Take up your positions around Babylon, all you who draw the bow. Shoot at her! Do not spare any arrows, for she has sinned against the LORD. ¹⁵Raise the war cry against her on every side! She has surrendered; her pillars have fallen, her walls are torn down. For this is the vengeance of the LORD — take vengeance on her! As she has done, do to her. ¹⁶Cut off the sower from Babylon, and the one who wields the sickle at harvest time. Before the oppressing sword, each one will turn to his own people and each will flee to his own land. ¹⁷Israel is a scattered sheep that lions have driven away. The first to devour him

was the king of Assyria, and this last one, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, has gnawed his bones. ¹⁸Therefore this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: I am about to punish the king of Babylon and his land, just as I punished the king of Assyria. ¹⁹And I will bring Israel back to his pasture, and he will graze on Carmel and Bashan, and on the hills of Ephraim and Gilead his appetite will be satisfied. ²⁰In those days and at that time, declares the LORD, the iniquity of Israel will be searched for — and there will be none. The sins of Judah — and they will not be found. For I will pardon the remnant I preserve. ²¹Go up against the land of Merathaim — attack it — and against the inhabitants of Pekod. Put them to the sword and devote them to destruction, declares the LORD. Do everything I have commanded you. ²²The sound of war in the land — and great shattering! ²³How the hammer of the whole earth has been cut down and shattered! How Babylon has become a horror among the nations! ²⁴I set a trap for you, and you were caught, Babylon — and you did not even know it. You were found and seized, because you provoked the LORD. ²⁵The LORD has opened his armory and brought out the weapons of his wrath, for the Lord GOD of Hosts has work to do in the land of the Chaldeans. ²⁶Come against her from every direction. Open her granaries, pile her up like heaps of grain, and devote her to utter destruction. Let nothing of her remain. ²⁷Put all her young bulls to the sword; let them go down to slaughter. Woe to them, for their day has come — the time of their reckoning. ²⁸The sound of fugitives and survivors from the land of Babylon, coming to declare in Zion the vengeance of the LORD our God — the vengeance for his temple. ²⁹Summon the archers against Babylon, all who draw the bow. Encamp against her on every side; let no one escape. Repay her according to her deeds — as she has done, do to her — for she has acted arrogantly against the LORD, against the Holy One of Israel. ³⁰Therefore her young men will fall in her public squares, and all her warriors will be silenced on that day, declares the LORD. ³¹I am against you, Arrogance — declares the Lord GOD of Hosts — for your day has come, the time when I will call you to account. ³²Arrogance will stumble and fall with no one to lift him up. I will set fire to his cities, and it will consume everything around him. ³³This is what the LORD of Hosts says: The people of Israel and the people of Judah are oppressed together. All who took them captive hold them fast and refuse to let them go. ³⁴Their Redeemer is strong — the LORD of Hosts is his name. He will surely champion their cause, so that he may give rest to the land but turmoil to the inhabitants of Babylon. ³⁵A sword against the Chaldeans, declares the LORD, against the inhabitants of Babylon, against her officials, and against her wise men! ³⁶A sword against her diviners — they will become fools! A sword against her warriors — they will be shattered! ³⁷A sword against his horses and chariots, and against all the mixed peoples in her midst — they will become weak! A sword against her treasuries — they will be plundered! ³⁸A drought on her waters — they will dry up! For she is a land of carved images, and they go mad over terrifying idols. ³⁹Therefore desert creatures will dwell there with jackals, and ostriches will inhabit it. It will never again be settled; no one will live in it from generation to generation. ⁴⁰As when God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah and their neighboring towns, declares the LORD, no one will live there; no human being will settle in it. ⁴¹Look — a people is coming from the north! A great nation and many kings are stirring from the ends of the earth. ⁴²They grasp bow and javelin. They are cruel and show no mercy. Their roar is like the sea. They ride on horses, drawn up for battle like one man — against you, daughter of Babylon! ⁴³The king of Babylon has heard the report of them, and his hands have gone limp. Anguish has seized him, pain like a woman in labor. ⁴⁴Look — like a lion coming up from the thickets of the Jordan to a secure pasture, I will suddenly drive them from it. And who is the chosen one I will appoint over it? For who is like me? Who will summon me to court? And what shepherd can stand before me? ⁴⁵Therefore hear the plan of the LORD that he has formed against Babylon, and the purposes he has devised against the land of the Chaldeans: Even the smallest of the flock will drag them off. Their own pasture will be devastated because of them. ⁴⁶At the sound of Babylon's capture, the earth trembles; a cry is heard among the nations.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription marks this as the beginning of a new oracle collection. The preposition *be-yad* ('by the hand of') is rendered 'through' to capture the instrumental sense — Jeremiah is the conduit, not the author, of the divine word. The dual target ('Babylon... land of the Chaldeans') is emphatic: both the city and the entire territory are addressed.
2. The rapid-fire imperatives (*haggidu*, *hashmi'u*, *se'u-nes*, *hashmi'u*) create urgency — this news must be broadcast everywhere at once. *Bel* is the title of Marduk, Babylon's chief deity, from the Akkadian *belu* ('lord'). The verb *hovish* ('put to shame') does not mean merely embarrassed but publicly exposed as powerless. The word *gilluleiha* ('her idols') is deliberately derogatory — from a root meaning 'dung-pellets,' it is the prophets'

contemptuous term for pagan images.

3. The phrase *goy mitsafon* ('a nation from the north') is the same formula used for Babylon's own attack on Judah (1:14-15, 4:6, 6:1, 6:22). The reversal is deliberate and devastating — the destroyer from the north now faces a destroyer from the north. Historically this refers to the Medes and Persians. The totality of desolation ('from human to animal') echoes the un-creation language Jeremiah used for Judah in 4:25.
4. The phrase *halokh uvakho yelekhu* ('walking and weeping they will go') uses the infinitive absolute construction to depict continuous weeping during the journey home. The reunion of Israel (the former northern kingdom, exiled since 722 BCE) and Judah (exiled in 586 BCE) is a restoration beyond political possibility — only divine intervention reunites the two separated peoples. The verb *biqesh* ('seek') implies deliberate, urgent searching, not casual inquiry.
5. The verb *nilvu* ('let us join, bind ourselves') is from the root l-v-h, the same root from which the name 'Levi' may derive — it means to attach oneself, to cling to. The covenant the returning exiles seek is not the old Sinai covenant they broke but a *berit olam* — an everlasting covenant that anticipates the *berit chadashah* of 31:31-34. The phrase *lo tishshakheach* ('will not be forgotten') contrasts with the old covenant that was forgotten through disobedience.
6. The shepherd metaphor indicts Judah's leaders (kings, priests, prophets) for the people's exile — the flock did not wander on its own; the shepherds drove them off course. The verb *shovevu* ('turned them aside, led them astray') is from *shuv* in a causative sense — the same root that means 'return/repent' here means 'lead astray,' another of Jeremiah's characteristic wordplays with *shuv*. The 'resting place' (*rivtsam*) is both literal pasture and metaphor for the covenant relationship — the place of security they abandoned.
7. The enemies' self-justification ('we bear no guilt') exposes a theological irony: Babylon claims immunity because Israel sinned against the LORD. But exploiting God's discipline of his people does not exempt the exploiter — this is precisely the logic that condemns Babylon throughout this chapter. The phrase *neveh-tsedeq* ('pasture of righteousness') continues the shepherd-flock imagery: God is the righteous pasture the sheep left. The word *miqveh* ('hope, gathering place') also carries the sense of a reservoir — God as the source to which all hope flows.
8. The imperative *nodu* ('flee, wander away') is addressed to the Judean exiles — they must leave before judgment falls. The comparison to *attudim* ('he-goats, lead goats') means the returning exiles should lead the way boldly, like the dominant male goats that walk at the front of the flock. This is not a call to timid departure but to confident exodus.
9. The phrase *qahal goyim gedolim* ('assembly of great nations') mirrors the coalition language used for Babylon's own allies. The archer simile specifies *maskhil* ('skilled, effective') — not merely a strong warrior but one who knows where to aim. The phrase *lo yashuv reqam* ('will not return empty') means every arrow finds its mark — total military efficiency.
10. The verb *yisba'u* ('will be satisfied, sated') implies abundance — the plunderers will gorge themselves on Babylon's wealth. The same verb is used for feasting to fullness. The concluding *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') stamps divine authority on the prediction.
11. God addresses Babylon directly. The word *nachalati* ('my inheritance') is significant: Israel is not merely a nation Babylon conquered but God's own *nachalah* — his personal inheritance, his treasured portion. The heifer and stallion imagery is deliberately crude: Babylon's celebration over destroying God's people was animalistic exuberance. The verb *tafushu* ('you grew fat, frolicked') and *titshahalu* ('you neighed') reduce the empire to barnyard behavior.
12. 'Your mother' is Babylon herself, the mother-city of the Chaldean empire. The progression from 'last of the nations' to 'desert... dry land... wasteland' is a three-stage descent from political humiliation to physical desolation. The word *acharit* ('end, last, hindmost') reverses Babylon's self-understanding as the first of the nations.
13. The verb *yishom* ('will be horrified, appalled') and *yishroq* ('will hiss, whistle') describe the reaction of passersby to ruins — the hissing is not contempt but the sharp intake of breath at shocking devastation. The same double reaction appears in 19:8 directed at Jerusalem, reinforcing the symmetry between Judah's and Babylon's fates.
14. The military command language shifts to direct address of the attacking armies. The verb *yedu* ('shoot') is an imperative plural. The phrase *al-tachmelu el-chets* ('do not spare arrows') means hold nothing back — total assault. The justification *ki laYHWH chat'ah* ('for she has sinned against the LORD') applies to Babylon the same standard she cited against Israel in verse 7.
15. The phrase *natnah yadah* ('she has given her hand') means surrender — the gesture of submission. The word *niqmat YHWH* ('vengeance of the LORD') is not petty retaliation but covenantal justice: God enforces the same measure-for-measure principle (*ka'asher astah asu lah*, 'as she has done, do to her') that Babylon herself used against others. The *lex talionis* applied to empires.
16. The destruction of agriculture (sower and harvester) means the end of Babylon as a functioning civilization. The phrase *cherev hayyonah* ('the oppressing sword') uses *yonah* in an unusual sense — not 'dove' but from the root y-n-h meaning 'to oppress, to wrong.' The flight of foreign workers and conscripts back to their homelands describes the disintegration of Babylon's multinational empire.
17. The singular *seh* ('sheep,' not 'flock') emphasizes Israel's vulnerability — one lone animal against predators. The two lions represent Assyria (which destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 BCE) and Babylon (which destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 BCE). The verb *itsmoh* ('gnawed his bones, crushed his bones') is more violent than mere 'breaking' — it describes a predator stripping a carcass of the skeleton. The chronological framing (*harishon... hazeh ha'acharon*, 'the first... this last one') structures Israel's entire exile history as a sequence of predation.

18. The verb *paqad* ('to visit, attend to, punish') here carries its punitive sense — God 'visits' Babylon with judgment. The parallel structure ('as I punished the king of Assyria') reminds the reader that Assyria, once invincible, was destroyed in 612 BCE — Babylon will follow the same path. The full divine title *YHWH tseva'ot Elohei Yisrael* ('the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel') emphasizes God's sovereignty over all armies and his particular bond with Israel.
19. The restoration continues the shepherd imagery — God returns the scattered sheep to its *naveh* ('pasture, dwelling'). The four regions named (Carmel, Bashan, Ephraim, Gilead) represent the full territorial extent of the united kingdom, including areas lost to Assyria — this is a promise of total restoration, not partial return. The verb *tisba* ('will be satisfied') echoes verse 10's *yisba'u*, creating a contrast: Babylon's plunderers will be sated with loot, but Israel will be sated with good pasture.
20. The forensic imagery is striking: iniquity and sin will be searched for like evidence in a legal investigation — and the search will come up empty. This is not because Israel never sinned but because God will have pardoned (*eslach*, from *s-l-ch*, the verb used exclusively for divine forgiveness in the Hebrew Bible) the surviving remnant. The parallel between 'iniquity of Israel' and 'sins of Judah' uses the two standard terms for wrongdoing: *avon* (iniquity, guilt, twisted action) and *chatto't* (sins, missing the mark). Both kingdoms' guilt is erased.
21. *Merathaim* ('double rebellion') is a wordplay on southern Babylonia's marshland region (*mat marrati*). *Pekod* ('punishment, visitation') is both a real Aramean tribe east of the Tigris and a wordplay on *paqad* ('to punish'). Jeremiah loads the oracle with double meanings — the place names themselves pronounce judgment. The verb *hacharem* ('devote to destruction') is the *herem* — total destruction as an act of consecration to God, the most severe form of warfare in the Hebrew Bible.
22. The brevity of this verse is itself expressive — two short phrases that crack like a whip. The word *shever* ('shattering, breaking, destruction') is one of Jeremiah's most frequent terms, used for both physical and social collapse. Its placement at the end of this staccato couplet gives it percussive force.
23. The title *pattish kol-ha'arets* ('hammer of the whole earth') is a striking epithet for Babylon — the empire that smashed every nation. The verb *nigda* ('has been cut down') applies the language of felling a tree to the hammer, mixing metaphors deliberately: the weapon that shattered others is itself shattered. The exclamatory *eikh* ('how!') introduces the *qinah* (lament) form, ironically mourning the fall of the destroyer.
24. God himself is the trapper — *yaqoshti* ('I set a snare') uses the language of bird-catching. Babylon, the great predator, is reduced to prey. The phrase *ve'at lo yada'at* ('and you did not know') is devastating: the world's most sophisticated intelligence apparatus was oblivious to the trap. The verb *hitgarit* ('you provoked, contended against') from *g-r-h* means to stir up strife against — Babylon did not merely ignore God but actively antagonized him.
25. The word *otsaro* ('his storehouse, treasury, armory') pictures God as having a divine arsenal from which he draws instruments of judgment. The phrase *kelei za'mo* ('weapons of his indignation') personalizes the invading armies as God's own weaponry. The phrase *melakhah hi* ('it is work, a task') is almost bureaucratic — God's destruction of Babylon is framed as a job to complete, not an outburst of rage.
26. The word *ma'abuseiha* ('her granaries, her storage bins') is from the root meaning 'to feed, fatten' — the invaders are to crack open the stores that fattened Babylon. The simile *kemo aremim* ('like heaps') compares the piled rubble to threshed grain heaps. The verb *hacharimuhah* ('devote her to destruction') is the *herem* again — total, consecrated destruction.
27. The 'young bulls' (*pareiha*) is both literal (livestock destruction) and metaphorical (Babylon's warriors as fattened cattle). The phrase *et pequddatam* ('the time of their visitation/reckoning') uses *paqad* in its punitive sense — God's appointed day of accounting. The word *yomam* ('their day') echoes the 'Day of the LORD' concept from the prophetic tradition.
28. The fugitives are Judean exiles escaping Babylon's fall. They carry news to Zion of *niqmat hekhalo* ('vengeance for his temple') — God has avenged the destruction of the Jerusalem temple by Nebuchadnezzar in 586 BCE. The word *heikhal* ('temple, palace') specifically refers to the inner sanctuary, the most sacred space. The destruction of God's dwelling place demands God's retribution against the destroyer.
29. The principle of measure-for-measure justice (*ke-fo'olah*, 'according to her deeds') is repeated from verse 15. The verb *zadah* ('acted arrogantly, presumed') is from the root *z-d-h* denoting willful, presumptuous defiance — not mere pride but cosmic insolence. The title *Qedosh Yisrael* ('the Holy One of Israel') is primarily Isaianic (used over 25 times in Isaiah) but appears here to stress that Babylon's offense is against God's holiness itself — his utter distinctness and authority.
30. The verb *yiddammu* ('will be silenced, cut off') is from *d-m-m* ('to be silent, cease') — the warriors will not merely die but be silenced, their voices and military commands extinguished. The 'public squares' (*rechovoteiha*) were the centers of civic life; their young men will litter the very places where Babylon's culture thrived.
31. God addresses Babylon by the name *zadon* ('Arrogance, Presumption') — the city is personified as its defining sin. This is not a description but a title: Babylon is Arrogance itself. The divine self-introduction formula *hineni elekha* ('I am against you') is the most threatening sentence in prophetic literature — when God declares himself against an entity, its doom is sealed. The phrase *et peqadtikha* ('the time I visit you') uses *paqad* in its punitive sense.
32. The personification continues: *zadon* ('Arrogance') stumbles like a man and falls with no one to help. The verb *kashol* ('stumble') implies an unexpected fall — Babylon will not see it coming. The fire motif (*hitsatti esh*, 'I will kindle fire') is God's signature instrument of total judgment, used for Sodom (Genesis 19:24), and promised against Jerusalem itself (21:14). Now it turns on the instrument of Jerusalem's punishment.

33. The language deliberately echoes the Exodus: 'refuse to let them go' (me'anu shallecham) mirrors Pharaoh's refusal to release Israel (Exodus 4:23, 7:14, 8:28, 9:2, 10:4). Babylon is the new Egypt, and the coming liberation will be a new exodus. The verb hecheziku ('held fast, gripped') intensifies the captivity — this is not passive detention but an iron grip.
34. The emphatic infinitive absolute riv yariv ('he will surely plead, champion') intensifies the legal metaphor — God enters the courtroom as Israel's kinsman-advocate and will not rest until the case is won. The contrast between hirgia ('give rest') for the land and hirgiz ('give turmoil') for Babylon uses two verbs from similar roots to create a wordplay: rest for one, restlessness for the other. This verse is the theological center of the chapter.
35. The fourfold 'sword' oracle begins here and runs through verse 38 — four targets systematically dismantled. The first target couples the general population ('inhabitants') with the ruling elite ('officials' and 'wise men'). Babylon's renowned wisdom tradition (magi, astrologers, diviners) is specifically targeted — the very intellectual culture that made Babylon famous will be destroyed.
36. The baddim ('diviners, empty talkers, boasters') are Babylon's professional soothsayers. The verb no'alu ('they will become foolish, be shown to be fools') strips them of their claimed wisdom. The parallel structure (cherev el X... cherev el X) creates a drumbeat of destruction. The verb chattu ('they will be shattered, dismayed') indicates psychological collapse — the warriors will break internally before the sword even reaches them.
37. The 'mixed peoples' (ha'erev) are the foreign mercenaries and multinational population of the Babylonian empire. The phrase vehayu lenashim ('they will become like women') is rendered 'they will become weak' because the Hebrew idiom equates femininity with military helplessness — a culturally bound metaphor that we translate by its intended meaning (loss of fighting capacity) rather than its literal image, to avoid implying that women are inherently weak. The fourth sword target is Babylon's wealth — her treasures (otsroteiha) will be looted.
38. The wordplay shifts from cherev ('sword') to chorev ('drought') — a single consonant change turns military destruction into ecological catastrophe. Babylon's power depended on the Euphrates and its canal system; drought means death. The word emim ('terrors, terrifying things') for idols may allude to the Mesopotamian lamassu and shedu — the terrifying winged figures that guarded Babylonian temples and palaces. The verb yitholalu ('they go mad, rave') describes the frenzy of idol worship.
39. The tsiyyim ('desert creatures') and iyyim ('jackals' or 'howling creatures') are wild animals that reclaim abandoned human settlements — their presence signals that civilization has completely retreated. The benot ya'anah ('ostriches' or 'daughters of the desert cry') are birds associated with desolate ruins. The phrase ad-dor vador ('from generation to generation') extends the desolation into perpetuity. This language closely parallels Isaiah 13:20-22, the Isaianic oracle against Babylon.
40. The Sodom comparison is the ultimate judgment formula — Babylon's destruction will be as total and permanent as the archetypal act of divine annihilation. The phrase mahpekhat Elohim ('God's overthrow') uses the specific vocabulary of Genesis 19. The distinction between yeshev ('dwell permanently') and yagur ('sojourn temporarily') emphasizes that Babylon will have neither permanent residents nor temporary visitors — complete emptiness.
41. This verse nearly replicates 6:22, where the same formula described the Babylonian invasion of Judah. There the 'foe from the north' was Babylon; here the 'foe from the north' targets Babylon — the most devastating literary reversal in the book. The addition of 'many kings' (melakhim rabbim) expands beyond chapter 6's original, indicating a coalition (the Medo-Persian alliance). The verb ye'oru ('are stirring, being roused') implies divine initiative behind the coalition's formation.
42. This verse closely parallels 6:23, which described the Babylonian army approaching Jerusalem. The phrase bat-Babel ('daughter of Babylon') personifies the city as a vulnerable woman facing a merciless army — the same terror Jerusalem felt now falls on Babylon. The phrase arukh ke'ish lammilchamah ('arrayed like one man for battle') conveys disciplined military unity. The sea-roar simile (qolam kayyam yehemeh) captures the terrifying sound of a massive army in motion.
43. This verse parallels 6:24, where it was Judah who heard the report and went limp — now the king of Babylon experiences the identical terror. The phrase rafu yadav ('his hands went limp') is an idiom for total paralysis in the face of overwhelming threat. The labor-pain simile (chil kayyoleadah) is not merely about pain but about helplessness — the king cannot stop what is coming any more than a woman can halt labor. The reversal from chapter 6 is complete.
44. This passage recycles 49:19-21 (the oracle against Edom), applying the same lion imagery to Babylon. The ge'on haYarden ('pride/thickets of the Jordan') refers to the dense vegetation along the Jordan River where lions once lived. God is the lion who drives the flock (Babylon) from its pasture. The rhetorical questions ('who is like me?') assert absolute divine sovereignty — no human authority can challenge, summon, or withstand God. The verb yo'ideni ('will appoint me a time, summon me') is legal language — no one can subpoena God.
45. The phrase tse'irei hatson ('the smallest of the flock') is deeply ironic — even the weakest, most insignificant members of the attacking force will be able to drag away Babylon's defenders. The word naveh ('pasture, habitation') continues the shepherd-flock metaphor that runs through the entire chapter. God's 'plan' (atsat YHWH) is a deliberate, considered strategy, not an impulsive reaction — the verb ya'ats implies counsel, planning, purposeful design.
46. The final verse is a cosmic conclusion — Babylon's fall shakes the entire earth. The verb nir'ashah ('trembles, quakes') describes seismic impact, and the ze'aqah ('cry, outcry') that reaches the nations is both Babylon's death-scream and the shockwave felt by every nation that depended on or feared her. The chapter ends not with resolution but with reverberating impact — the full consequences unfold in chapter 51.

51

Summary: *Jeremiah 51 continues the oracle against Babylon begun in chapter 50, forming the longest chapter in the book. The chapter moves through waves of imagery: Babylon as God's 'war-hammer' now broken, the cup of God's wrath poured out on the nations now turned back on Babylon, the heavens and earth singing over Babylon's fall, and the cosmic scope of the LORD's sovereignty over all creation. The chapter climaxes with a dramatic sign-act: the prophet instructs Seraiah son of Neriah to carry a scroll bearing all these oracles to Babylon, read them aloud, tie a stone to the scroll, and hurl it into the Euphrates with the words 'So shall Babylon sink, never to rise again.' The final line — 'Thus far are the words of Jeremiah' — marks the formal end of the prophetic collection before the historical appendix of chapter 52.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Three images dominate this chapter. First, Babylon as God's mappets ('war-hammer' or 'shatterer,' v. 20) — a nation used as a divine instrument of judgment now itself shattered by the same God who wielded it. Second, the cup of wrath — Babylon made the nations drink, and now the LORD forces the cup back on her (v. 7). Third, the scroll-sinking sign-act (vv. 59-64) is one of the most vivid prophetic actions in the Hebrew Bible, a physical enactment of the oracle's message: as the stone drags the scroll to the riverbed, so Babylon will be dragged down irreversibly. The instruction to Seraiah is significant because he is the brother of Baruch, Jeremiah's scribe — both sons of Neriah serve as the prophet's literary agents. The closing colophon 'Thus far are the words of Jeremiah' (v. 64b) is a scribal note that marks the boundary between Jeremiah's prophetic corpus and the historical appendix of chapter 52.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew mappets (v. 20) is variously translated as 'battle-axe,' 'war-club,' or 'hammer' — we chose 'war-hammer' because the root n-p-ts means 'to shatter,' and the instrument is defined by its effect. The verb shiqu (v. 39) in 'when they are heated I will set their feast' is difficult; some read it as intoxication, others as a burning heat — we followed the intoxication reading since the cup-of-wrath metaphor governs the context. The phrase lev qamai (v. 1), traditionally read as an atbash cipher for kasdim ('Chaldeans'), poses a translation question — we rendered the surface meaning with a note on the cipher. The relationship between this chapter's poetry and the prose sign-act narrative (vv. 59-64) required attention to tonal shift.*

Connections: *The cup-of-wrath motif connects to Jeremiah 25:15-29, where Jeremiah is first commanded to make the nations drink. The war-hammer imagery echoes Jeremiah 50:23 ('How the hammer of the whole earth is cut down and broken!'). The sign-act of sinking the scroll parallels other Jeremiah sign-acts: the linen belt (ch. 13), the potter's vessel (ch. 19), the yoke (ch. 27-28). Seraiah son of Neriah connects to Baruch son of Neriah (ch. 36, 45). The closing formula connects forward to chapter 52's historical appendix, which draws from 2 Kings 24-25. The cosmic hymn sections (vv. 15-19) are nearly identical to Jeremiah 10:12-16, forming an inclusio within the book.*

¹This is what the LORD says: I am stirring up against Babylon and against those who dwell in Leb-qamai a destroying wind. ²I will send winnowers to Babylon, and they will winnow her and empty her land, for they will come against her from every side on the day of disaster. ³Let no archer string his bow, let no one stand tall in his armor. Do not spare her young men — devote her entire army to destruction. ⁴The slain will fall in the land of the Chaldeans, the pierced through in her streets. ⁵For Israel and Judah have not been widowed by their God, by the LORD of Hosts — though their land was filled with guilt before the Holy One of Israel. ⁶Flee from the midst of Babylon! Each of you, save your own life! Do not be destroyed for her iniquity, for this is the time of the LORD's vengeance — he is repaying her what she deserves. ⁷Babylon was a golden cup in the LORD's hand, making the whole earth drunk. The nations drank her wine — that is why the nations have gone mad. ⁸Suddenly Babylon has fallen and is shattered! Wail over her! Bring balm for her wound — perhaps she can be healed. ⁹We tried to heal Babylon, but she could not be healed. Leave her, and let each of us go to his own land, for her judgment reaches to the heavens and rises to the clouds. ¹⁰The LORD has brought forth our vindication! Come, let us declare in Zion the work of the LORD our God. ¹¹Sharpen the arrows! Fill the quivers! The LORD has stirred up the spirit of the kings of the Medes, for his purpose against Babylon is to destroy her — for this is the vengeance of the LORD, the vengeance for his temple. ¹²Raise the signal against the walls of Babylon! Strengthen the guard, post the watchmen, prepare the ambushes — for the LORD has

both planned and carried out what he spoke against the inhabitants of Babylon. ¹³You who dwell by many waters, rich in treasures — your end has come, the measure of your profit-taking is cut off. ¹⁴The LORD of Hosts has sworn by himself: I will surely fill you with attackers like a swarm of locusts, and they will raise a war cry against you. ¹⁵He made the earth by his power, established the world by his wisdom, and stretched out the heavens by his understanding. ¹⁶When he thunders, there is a roar of waters in the heavens. He makes clouds rise from the ends of the earth, creates lightning for the rain, and brings wind out from his storehouses. ¹⁷Every person is too stupid to understand; every metalworker is put to shame by his idol, for his cast image is a lie and there is no breath in them. ¹⁸They are worthless, a work of mockery. In the time of their reckoning, they will perish. ¹⁹The portion of Jacob is not like these, for the one who formed all things is he, and Israel is the tribe of his inheritance — the LORD of Hosts is his name. ²⁰You are my war-hammer, my weapon of battle. With you I shattered nations, with you I destroyed kingdoms. ²¹With you I shattered horse and rider; with you I shattered chariot and driver. ²²With you I shattered man and woman; with you I shattered old and young. ²³With you I shattered shepherd and flock; with you I shattered farmer and team of oxen; with you I shattered governors and officials. ²⁴I will repay Babylon and all the inhabitants of Chaldea for all the evil they did in Zion before your eyes, declares the LORD. ²⁵I am against you, destroying mountain, declares the LORD — you who destroy the whole earth. I will stretch out my hand against you and roll you down from the crags and make you a scorched mountain. ²⁶No one will take from you a stone for a cornerstone or a stone for foundations, for you will be an everlasting ruin, declares the LORD. ²⁷Raise a signal in the land! Blow the ram's horn among the nations! Consecrate nations against her, summon against her the kingdoms of Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz. Appoint a commander against her; bring up horses like bristling locusts. ²⁸Consecrate nations against her — the kings of the Medes, all their governors, all their officials, and every land under their rule. ²⁹The earth trembles and writhes, for the purposes of the LORD against Babylon stand firm — to make the land of Babylon a desolation with no one living in it. ³⁰The warriors of Babylon have stopped fighting; they sit in their fortresses. Their strength has dried up; they have become like women. Her dwellings are set on fire; her gate-bars are broken. ³¹Runner meets runner, messenger meets messenger, to report to the king of Babylon that his city is captured from end to end, ³²the river crossings are seized, the marshes are burned with fire, and the soldiers are in a panic. ³³For this is what the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel, says: Daughter Babylon is like a threshing floor at the time it is trampled — just a little longer, and the time of harvest will come for her. ³⁴Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon has devoured us, he has crushed us, he has set us down like an empty vessel. He has swallowed us like a sea-serpent, filled his belly with our delicacies, and vomited us out. ³⁵The violence done to me and my flesh — let it fall on Babylon, says the inhabitant of Zion. My blood — let it fall on the inhabitants of Chaldea, says Jerusalem. ³⁶Therefore this is what the LORD says: I am taking up your case and exacting your vengeance. I will dry up her sea and make her springs run dry. ³⁷Babylon will become a heap of ruins, a haunt of jackals, an object of horror and hissing, with no one living in it. ³⁸Together they roar like young lions; they growl like lion cubs. ³⁹When they are heated, I will prepare their feast and make them drunk so that they revel — then they will sleep an everlasting sleep and never wake, declares the LORD. ⁴⁰I will bring them down like lambs to the slaughter, like rams together with he-goats. ⁴¹How Sheshach is captured — the praise of all the earth seized! How Babylon has become an object of horror among the nations! ⁴²The sea has risen over Babylon; she is covered by the roar of its waves. ⁴³Her cities have become a desolation, a dry and barren land, a land where no one dwells and no human being passes through. ⁴⁴I will punish Bel in Babylon and force out of his mouth what he has swallowed. The nations will no longer stream to him — even the wall of Babylon has fallen. ⁴⁵Come out from her, my people! Each of you, save your own life from the fierce anger of the LORD! ⁴⁶Do not lose heart or be afraid when rumors are heard in the land — one year a rumor comes, and the next year another rumor, with violence in the land and ruler against ruler. ⁴⁷Therefore the days are coming when I will punish the idols of Babylon. Her whole land will be put to shame, and all her slain will fall in her midst. ⁴⁸Then the heavens and the earth and everything in them will shout for joy over Babylon, for the destroyers will come against her from the north, declares the LORD. ⁴⁹Just as Babylon caused the slain of Israel to fall, so at Babylon the slain of all the earth have fallen. ⁵⁰You who have escaped the sword — go! Do not stand still! Remember the LORD from far away, and let Jerusalem rise in your hearts. ⁵¹We are ashamed, for we have heard insults; disgrace has covered our faces because foreigners have entered the holy places of the house of the LORD. ⁵²Therefore the days are coming, declares the LORD,

when I will punish her idols, and throughout her entire land the wounded will groan. ⁵³Even if Babylon were to ascend to the heavens, even if she were to fortify her lofty stronghold, destroyers will come against her from me, declares the LORD. ⁵⁴A sound of outcry from Babylon — great shattering from the land of the Chaldeans! ⁵⁵For the LORD is destroying Babylon and silencing her great voice. Their waves roar like mighty waters; the thunder of their voice is unleashed. ⁵⁶For a destroyer has come against her — against Babylon. Her warriors are captured; their bows are shattered, for the LORD is a God of recompense; he will surely repay in full. ⁵⁷I will make her officials and sages drunk, her governors, commanders, and warriors, and they will sleep an everlasting sleep and never wake, declares the King — the LORD of Hosts is his name. ⁵⁸This is what the LORD of Hosts says: The broad walls of Babylon will be completely torn down, and her high gates will be set on fire. The peoples labor for nothing, and the nations exhaust themselves for what the flames consume. ⁵⁹The instruction that Jeremiah the prophet gave to Seraiah son of Neriah, son of Mahseiah, when Seraiah went with Zedekiah king of Judah to Babylon in the fourth year of his reign. Seraiah was the quartermaster. ⁶⁰Jeremiah wrote on a single scroll all the disaster that would come upon Babylon — all these words that are written against Babylon. ⁶¹Jeremiah said to Seraiah, "When you arrive in Babylon, make sure you read aloud all these words. ⁶²Then say: LORD, you yourself have spoken against this place, declaring that it will be cut off so that no one will dwell in it — neither human nor animal — for it will be an everlasting desolation. ⁶³When you finish reading this scroll, tie a stone to it and throw it into the middle of the Euphrates.

⁶⁴Then say: So shall Babylon sink, never to rise again, because of the disaster I am bringing upon her. And they will collapse in exhaustion."

Thus far are the words of Jeremiah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *lev qamai* ('the heart of those who rise against me') is widely recognized as an *atbash* cipher — a Hebrew code where letters are substituted in reverse alphabetical order — for *kasdim* ('Chaldeans'). The same technique appears in 25:26 where *sheshakh* encodes *bavel* ('Babylon'). We retain the surface meaning in the rendering with this note. The verb *me'ir* ('stirring up') indicates that God initiates this destruction actively, not merely permits it.
2. The verb *zarah* ('to winnow') pictures grain thrown into the wind so the chaff blows away — applied to Babylon, it means the nation will be scattered and sifted until nothing of value remains. The wordplay between *bavel* and *zarim/zeruha* (Babylon and the winnowers) reinforces the irony: Babylon the great will be blown away like chaff.
3. The verse is directed at Babylon's defenders, telling them resistance is futile. The verb *hacharim* ('devote to destruction') is the language of *cherem* — total consecration to God through annihilation. This same vocabulary was used for Israel's conquest of Canaan, now turned against Babylon. The irony is devastating: the instrument of God's judgment is now itself under the ban.
4. The parallelism between *chahal* ('slain') and *meduqarim* ('pierced through') intensifies the carnage. The phrase 'in her streets' echoes the language used earlier for Jerusalem's own destruction (Lamentations 2:21), creating a grim reciprocity — what Babylon did to Zion's streets now happens in Babylon's own.
5. The verb *alman* ('widowed') is striking — it casts the covenant relationship as a marriage, with exile as the apparent death of the spouse. But God declares the marriage is not over; Israel is not a widow. The word *asham* ('guilt') here denotes both the offense and the liability it creates. The title 'the Holy One of Israel' (*qedosh yisra'el*) is more characteristic of Isaiah but appears here to emphasize God's covenantal distinctness.
6. The command to flee Babylon is addressed to the Judean exiles living there — they must separate themselves before judgment falls. The verb *damam* in the *nifal* ('be silenced, be destroyed') carries the sense of being wiped out. The noun *gemul* ('recompense, what is deserved') implies strict proportional justice — Babylon will receive exactly what she gave.
7. The image of Babylon as a golden cup in God's hand is theologically explosive: Babylon's imperial conquest was God's instrument of judgment, but now the cup turns. The verb *mesakkeret* ('making drunk') connects to the cup-of-wrath motif in Jeremiah 25:15-29. The verb *yitholelu* ('go mad, rave') depicts the political chaos that follows Babylon's influence — the nations stagger like drunks.
8. The verb *nishbarah* ('is shattered') uses the same root as the shattering Babylon inflicted on others. The word *tsori* ('balm, resin') recalls Jeremiah 8:22 — 'Is there no balm in Gilead?' — creating a bitter echo. There was no healing for Judah's wound, and now there is none for Babylon's. The 'perhaps' (*ulai*) is ironic: the speaker knows there is no remedy.
9. The speakers here are likely the foreign nations who served Babylon — they tried to sustain the empire, but it is beyond saving. The phrase 'reaches to the heavens' echoes the Tower of Babel narrative (Genesis 11:4), where Babylon's builders said 'let us build a tower that reaches to the heavens.' Now it is Babylon's judgment, not her tower, that reaches heaven.

10. The word *tsidqoteinu* ('our righteousness/vindication') here carries the sense of legal vindication — God has demonstrated that Israel's cause was just by judging their oppressor. The shift from Babylon's judgment to Zion's declaration creates a liturgical moment: the exiles envision returning to tell the story.
11. The Medes are named as God's instrument, historically accurate since the Medo-Persian alliance under Cyrus conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. The phrase *niqmat hekhalo* ('vengeance for his temple') refers to the destruction of Solomon's temple in 586 BCE — God will avenge the desecration of his own dwelling place. The word *mezimmah* ('plan, purpose, device') emphasizes that Babylon's fall is not random but divinely orchestrated.
12. The military commands pile up in rapid succession — five imperatives in a single verse. The final clause affirms the prophetic-fulfillment principle: God both devises (*zamam*) and executes (*asah*) his word. The distinction between planning and doing emphasizes that prophetic speech is not wishful thinking but a declaration of what God has already determined.
13. Babylon was literally built on waterways — the Euphrates ran through the city, and an elaborate canal system sustained its agriculture and commerce. The phrase 'many waters' is both geographical and symbolic, evoking the cosmic waters of chaos that Babylon claimed to control. The word *bitsa* ('profit, unjust gain, plunder') denotes wealth gained through exploitation. The noun *ammah* ('cubit, measure') here functions as the limit God sets: Babylon's greed has been measured and found finished.
14. God swearing 'by himself' (*benafsho*, literally 'by his own life/soul') is the most solemn oath possible — there is no higher authority to swear by. The comparison to *yeleq* ('locusts') evokes the plague imagery of Joel and Exodus — an overwhelming, consuming force. The *hedad* ('war cry, shout') is the triumphal shout of harvesters or warriors, ironically applied here to Babylon's destruction.
15. This verse begins a hymnic section (vv. 15-19) that is nearly identical to Jeremiah 10:12-16, creating an *inclusio* within the book. Placed here in the Babylon oracle, it serves a polemical function: the God who judges Babylon is not a local deity but the creator of all things. The three parallel clauses ascribe three attributes to creation: power (*koach*), wisdom (*chokhmah*), and understanding (*tevunah*).
16. The phrase *leqol titto* ('at the sound of his giving') is rendered 'when he thunders' because the context describes God's voice as the thunderstorm. The 'storehouses' (*otsrot*) of wind is a cosmological image — God keeps the winds stored until he releases them, asserting sovereign control over weather, which Babylonian religion attributed to Marduk.
17. The verb *niv'ar* ('made brutish, rendered stupid') is a harsh assessment — idol-makers are not merely mistaken but rendered sub-rational by their craft. The phrase *lo ruach bam* ('no breath/spirit in them') is the definitive judgment on idols: they lack the animating breath (*ruach*) that God breathes into living things (Genesis 2:7). This directly contrasts with the living God described in vv. 15-16.
18. The word *hevel* ('vapor, breath, worthlessness') — the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes — dismisses idols as insubstantial. The phrase *ma'aseh ta'tu'im* ('work of mockery/delusion') suggests the idols are both deceptive and ridiculous. The 'time of reckoning' (*et pequddatam*) is the moment God calls all things to account.
19. This verse concludes the hymnic section by contrasting the living God with dead idols. The 'portion of Jacob' (*cheleq ya'aqov*) means that Israel's God is not an idol but the maker of everything. The word *shevet* ('tribe, staff, scepter') here designates Israel as God's particular possession among the nations. This verse is nearly identical to 10:16.
20. The noun *mappets* appears only here in the Hebrew Bible — it is coined for this context, derived from the verb *nippets* ('to shatter, smash to pieces'). We render it 'war-hammer' rather than 'battle-axe' (KJV) because the root describes blunt-force shattering, not cutting. The past tense 'shattered' and 'destroyed' (perfective verbs) is deliberate — God speaks of Babylon's role as already completed. What follows in vv. 21-23 is a litany of what God smashed with this hammer, building to the revelation that the hammer itself is now broken.
21. The repetitive 'with you I shattered' (*venippatsti bekha*) creates a litany that extends through verse 23. Each line names a category of human power — military, political, social — all crushed by God's war-hammer. The rhythm is deliberately incantatory, building to a devastating crescendo.
22. The litany moves from military targets (v. 21) to civilian ones — men, women, elderly, youth. The totality of destruction is the point: no category of person was exempt from the devastation God inflicted through Babylon. The merism 'old and young' encompasses the entire population.
23. The litany concludes by spanning all social roles — pastoral (shepherd), agricultural (farmer), and political (governors, officials). The words *pachot* ('governors') and *seганim* ('officials') are loan words from Akkadian, appropriate for an oracle about Babylon. The effect of the seven-fold repetition of 'with you I shattered' is cumulative: Babylon was the instrument of total devastation — and now that instrument is finished.
24. The verb *shillamti* ('I will repay, recompense') carries the sense of completing a payment — God will settle the account in full. The phrase *le'eineikhem* ('before your eyes') means the exiles will witness the reversal — the same people who watched Zion's destruction will see Babylon's.
25. Babylon was built on a flat plain, so 'mountain' (*har*) here is metaphorical — Babylon is a mountain of destructive power, towering over the nations. The image of being rolled down from the crags and becoming a 'scorched mountain' (*har serefah*) evokes volcanic destruction: the once-mighty peak reduced to burned-out rock from which no building stone can ever be quarried (v. 26). The verb *gilgalti* ('I will roll you') is vivid and physical — God pushes Babylon off the heights like a boulder.
26. The image is of total demolition — not even the rubble will be reusable. A city whose stones cannot serve as foundation material is a city permanently erased from civilization. The phrase *shimmemot olam* ('everlasting desolation') uses *olam* to indicate duration beyond the horizon of perception — Babylon will not recover within any foreseeable future.

27. The three kingdoms — Ararat (Urartu, in modern eastern Turkey/Armenia), Minni (the Manneans, south of Lake Urmia), and Ashkenaz (the Scythians) — are all peoples who came under Median control and participated in the assault on Babylon. The verb *qaddesh* ('consecrate, set apart') for military campaign uses holy-war language — the attack on Babylon is a sacred mission. The word *tipsar* ('commander, marshal') is an Akkadian loan word. The simile 'like bristling locusts' (*keyelek samar*) describes cavalry horses with their manes standing on end.
28. The Medes are again identified as the human agents of divine judgment. The repetition of 'consecrate' (*qaddesh*) reinforces the holy-war framework: this is not mere geopolitics but sacred action. The phrase 'every land under their rule' (*kol erets memshaltô*) indicates a coalition of vassal states under Median hegemony.
29. The verbs *ra'ash* ('tremble') and *chul* ('writhe, convulse') describe the earth itself reacting to God's judgment as if in labor pains. The phrase *me'ein yoshev* ('without an inhabitant') is the ultimate judgment formula in Jeremiah, recurring throughout the book (2:15, 4:7, 9:10, 33:10, 34:22, 44:22, 46:19) — a land without people is a land under the full weight of covenant curse.
30. The verb *nasheta* ('has dried up') pictures strength evaporating like water — the mighty warriors are drained of all power. The simile 'become like women' (*hayu lenashim*) reflects ancient Near Eastern war rhetoric where defeated warriors are compared to women as an expression of total military collapse. The breaking of bars (*berichim*) signifies the breaching of the city's defenses — Babylon's famous gates are forced open.
31. The breathless sequence of runners and messengers conveys the speed and panic of the city's fall. The phrase *miqqatseh* ('from the end') means the invaders have entered from the outskirts and are advancing inward — the king learns his city is falling section by section. According to Herodotus (1.191) and the Nabonidus Chronicle, the Persians entered Babylon by diverting the Euphrates and walking under the walls along the dried riverbed.
32. The *ma'barot* ('crossings, fords') are the strategic river passages through Babylon — whoever controls the Euphrates crossings controls the city. The *agammim* ('marshes, reed pools') surrounding Babylon are set ablaze, eliminating both cover and escape routes. The verb *nivhalu* ('are terrified, panic') describes the complete psychological collapse of the defending forces.
33. The threshing floor image (*goren*) layers two agricultural metaphors: the floor is trampled and prepared now, and soon the harvest (*qatsir*) — the full destruction — will arrive. The phrase 'Daughter Babylon' (*bat bavel*) personifies the city as a woman, consistent with ancient Near Eastern convention. The word *hidrikhah* ('treading, trampling') describes the oxen treading grain on the threshing floor, an image of being crushed underfoot.
34. Jerusalem speaks in the first person plural, voicing the experience of exile. The verb *bela'anû* ('swallowed us') compares Nebuchadnezzar to a *tannin* ('sea-serpent, dragon, great sea creature') — the primordial chaos monster of ancient Near Eastern mythology. The progression is vivid: devoured, crushed, emptied, swallowed, filled, expelled. The verb *hedichanu* ('cast us out, rinsed us away') carries the sense of being flushed out — Jerusalem was consumed and then discarded.
35. Zion and Jerusalem speak as plaintiff and witness, demanding that the violence (*chamas*) and bloodshed (*dam*) they suffered be returned upon Babylon. The word *she'eri* ('my flesh, my body') makes the suffering physical and personal — not abstract political loss but bodily violation. This is a legal cry for justice, not mere vengeance.
36. God responds to Zion's legal cry (v. 35) by taking up her case (*riv*) — the language is forensic, depicting God as both advocate and judge. The drying up of Babylon's 'sea' (*yam*) and 'springs' (*maqor*) refers to the elaborate water systems that sustained the city. Without the Euphrates and its canal network, Babylon cannot survive. Historically, Cyrus diverted the Euphrates to enter the city.
37. The word *gallim* ('heaps, stone piles') reduces Babylon from the world's greatest city to rubble. The *tannim* here is 'jackals' (not the *tannin* 'sea-serpent' of v. 34 — different Hebrew words). The phrase *shammah ushreqah* ('horror and hissing') describes the reaction of passersby — they gasp in shock and hiss in contempt at the ruins.
38. The Babylonians are compared to lions in their ferocity — *kefirim* ('young lions') and *gorei arayot* ('lion cubs') are still dangerous but not fully mature, suggesting Babylon's power is past its prime. The verbs *yish'agu* ('they roar') and *na'aru* ('they growl') create an animal soundscape of predatory aggression.
39. The word *bechumam* ('in their heat, when they are inflamed') may refer to intoxication at a feast or to the heat of battle fever. We follow the feast interpretation since the next clause describes drinking. The phrase *shenat olam* ('everlasting sleep') is a euphemism for death — the drunken revelry becomes a permanent stupor. Historically, ancient sources report that Babylon fell during a feast (Daniel 5; Herodotus 1.191; Xenophon, *Cyropaedia* 7.5.15).
40. The sacrificial imagery is deliberate — *karim* ('lambs'), *elim* ('rams'), and *attudim* ('he-goats') are all sacrificial animals. Babylon's destruction is portrayed as a sacrifice to God, reversing the language of worship: the empire that destroyed God's temple now becomes an offering on God's altar.
41. *Sheshakh* is the atbash cipher for *Bavel* ('Babylon') — the same code used in 25:26. The letters b-b-l become sh-sh-k when each letter is replaced by its reverse-alphabet counterpart. The phrase *tehillat kol ha'arets* ('the praise of all the earth') is used ironically — the city that was admired by every nation has become shameful. The exclamatory *eikh* ('How!') is the same word that opens Lamentations, creating a deliberate echo between Jerusalem's fall and Babylon's.
42. The 'sea' (*yam*) here is metaphorical — the invading armies are compared to a flood of chaotic waters overwhelming the city. This inverts Babylon's own self-image: in Babylonian mythology, Marduk conquered the chaos-sea Tiamat. Now the chaos-waters conquer Babylon. The verb *nikhsatah* ('she is covered, overwhelmed') pictures total submersion.

43. Three terms pile up for the wasteland: shamamah ('desolation'), tsiyyah ('dry land'), and aravah ('steppe, wilderness'). The phrase ben adam ('son of man, human being') is used in its generic sense — not a single human will traverse this land. The total absence of human life reverses the divine blessing of filling and subduing the earth (Genesis 1:28).
44. Bel (from the Akkadian belu, 'lord') is the title of Marduk, Babylon's chief deity. The image of forcing out what Bel has swallowed refers to the captive peoples and temple treasures that Babylon consumed — God will make Marduk disgorge his plunder. The verb yinharu ('stream, flow') describes the tributary nations who once flowed toward Babylon like rivers toward the sea — that tide has reversed. The fall of Babylon's wall (chomat bavel) signals the end of what was considered the greatest fortification in the ancient world.
45. The command ammi ('my people') is addressed to the Judean exiles in Babylon — they must physically separate from the doomed city. The phrase charon af YHWH ('fierce anger of the LORD') is literally 'the burning of the LORD's nostrils,' a physiological metaphor for wrath. This call to 'come out' anticipates Isaiah 48:20 and Revelation 18:4.
46. The word shemu'ah ('rumor, report, news') repeats three times, capturing the anxiety of exile life — each year brings a new alarming report. The phrase moshel al moshel ('ruler against ruler') describes the power struggles within the Babylonian empire during its final years. The exiles must not mistake these upheavals for the end — the final judgment will come in God's time.
47. The verb paqad ('punish, attend to, visit') is used for divine reckoning against Babylon's idols (pesilei bavel). The word pesil ('carved image, idol') targets the physical representations of Babylonian religion. When God punishes the idols, the entire theological claim of Babylon — that its gods sustain the empire — is exposed as false.
48. The cosmic response — heavens, earth, and everything in them singing — elevates Babylon's fall to a creation-wide event. The irony is sharp: 'from the north' (mitsafon) echoes Jeremiah's early oracles where judgment came on Judah 'from the north' (1:13-15, 4:6, 6:1). Now the northern threat turns against Babylon itself.
49. The parallelism creates strict reciprocity: Babylon caused Israel's dead to fall, and now Babylon's own dead fall — along with the dead of every nation she consumed. The gam...gam ('also...also') construction emphasizes exact proportionality in divine justice.
50. This verse is addressed to the Judean exiles who will survive Babylon's fall. The command 'do not stand still' (al ta'amodu) urges immediate departure — do not linger in the collapsing empire. The phrase 'let Jerusalem rise in your hearts' (virushalaim ta'aleh al levavkhem) is deeply poignant: the exiles must carry Jerusalem within them as they journey home. The verb 'rise' (ta'aleh) is the same root as 'go up' (alah), the technical term for pilgrimage to Jerusalem.
51. The exiles speak, confessing their shame at the desecration of the temple. The word miqdeshei ('holy places, sanctuaries') of the LORD's house refers to the inner sacred spaces that only authorized priests could enter — foreigners in the holy of holies is the ultimate violation. The emotion is both national humiliation and religious horror.
52. God responds to the exiles' shame (v. 51) with a promise of action against Babylon's idols. The verb ye'enoq ('groan, moan') is onomatopoeic — the sound of the word mimics the groan of the dying. This auditory detail makes the judgment visceral: Babylon will be filled with the sound of suffering.
53. The language echoes the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4) — even if Babylon builds to heaven itself, God will bring her down. The verb tevatser ('fortify, make inaccessible') suggests a fortress so high it seems unreachable. But no height is beyond God's reach. The phrase me'itti ('from me') emphasizes that the destroyers come as God's agents — this is not random conquest but divine commission.
54. The noun shever ('shattering, breaking, destruction') is the same root as the verb used for shattering throughout the war-hammer litany (vv. 20-23). The shatterer is now shattered — the wordplay completes the reversal. The verse is pure sound: ze'aqah ('outcry') and shever gadol ('great shattering') create an auditory image of collapse.
55. The 'great voice' (qol gadol) that God silences is Babylon's imperial proclamation — the voice of command that ruled the nations. The 'waves' (gallim) continue the sea metaphor from v. 42 — the invading forces are an unstoppable flood. The word she'on ('thunder, roar, tumult') describes the overwhelming noise of the assault, drowning out Babylon's silenced voice.
56. The title el gemulot ('God of recompense/repayment') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible — it defines God's character in terms of exact justice. The emphatic infinitive absolute shallem yeshallem ('he will surely, fully repay') guarantees that the debt will be collected in its entirety. The broken bows (qashshot) symbolize the end of Babylon's military capability.
57. The divine title 'the King' (ha-melekh) is placed in direct contrast with Babylon's human rulers — God outranks every official, sage, governor, and warrior just listed. The five categories of leadership (officials, sages, governors, commanders, warriors) represent the full apparatus of imperial power, all rendered unconscious by divine judgment. The phrase 'everlasting sleep' (shenat olam) repeats from v. 39, reinforcing the finality of death.
58. Babylon's walls were legendary — Herodotus reports them as 56 miles long, 80 feet thick, and 320 feet high (likely exaggerated, but reflecting their fame). The verb 'ar'er tit'ar'ar is an emphatic infinitive absolute meaning 'will surely, completely be torn down.' The closing proverb about laboring for nothing and for fire echoes Habakkuk 2:13 almost verbatim — the nations build empires that God reduces to ash.
59. This verse begins the sign-act narrative that closes the Babylon oracle (vv. 59-64). Seraiah son of Neriah is the brother of Baruch son of Neriah, Jeremiah's scribe (32:12) — both brothers serve the prophet. The title sar menuchah is debated: KJV renders it 'quiet prince,' but it more likely means 'quartermaster' or 'officer of rest stops' — the official responsible for the delegation's lodging during the journey to Babylon. Zedekiah's trip to Babylon in his fourth year (594/593 BCE) was likely to demonstrate continued loyalty after unrest in the region.

60. The word *sefer* ('scroll, book, document') refers to a parchment or papyrus scroll. The phrase *sefer echad* ('a single scroll') emphasizes that all the Babylon oracles (chapters 50-51) were gathered into one document for this specific mission. This is a rare glimpse into the physical production of prophetic literature — the oracle is not just spoken but written, transported, and performed.
61. The verb *qara* ('read, call out, proclaim') means to read aloud, not silently. Seraiah is to publicly proclaim the oracle against Babylon while standing in Babylon — an extraordinarily dangerous act of prophetic theater. The verb *ra'ita* ('and you shall see') may mean 'survey' or 'observe' — Seraiah should witness Babylon's grandeur and then read God's sentence against it.
62. Seraiah is to address God directly while standing in the heart of Babylon — a prayer that God fulfill his own word. The merism 'from human to animal' (*me'adam ve'ad behemah*) indicates the reversal of creation itself in that place: where God made both humanity and animals to inhabit the earth, Babylon will have neither. The phrase *shimmot olam* ('everlasting desolation') repeats from v. 26, forming a frame around the oracle.
63. The sign-act reaches its climax: the written word of God is physically enacted. The stone (even) ensures the scroll sinks — it will not float or be recovered. The Euphrates (*Perat*) was Babylon's lifeline, the river that ran through the city center. Throwing the oracle into the Euphrates is throwing God's judgment into the heart of Babylon. The act is both symbolic and irrevocable — once sunk, the scroll cannot be retrieved, and neither can the judgment be reversed.
64. The verb *tishqa* ('sink, submerge') is the interpretive key to the entire sign-act: as the stone-weighted scroll sinks to the riverbed, so Babylon will sink beneath the weight of divine judgment. The phrase *velo taqum* ('and will not rise') makes the sinking permanent — there is no resurfacing. The colophon 'Thus far are the words of Jeremiah' (*ad hennah divrei yirmeyahu*) is a scribal notation marking the end of the prophetic collection. Everything that follows in chapter 52 is historical appendix, drawn from the same tradition as 2 Kings 24-25. This colophon is one of the clearest editorial markers in the prophetic books, indicating that the book of Jeremiah was compiled and edited by hands other than the prophet's — likely Baruch or a later scribal circle.

52

Summary: *Jeremiah 52 is the historical appendix to the book, closely paralleling 2 Kings 24:18-25:30. It narrates the final events of Judah's kingdom: Zedekiah's rebellion, the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem, the city's breach, Zedekiah's capture and blinding, the destruction of the temple and city walls, the deportation of the population, and the appointment of officials over the remnant. The chapter includes a unique three-part deportation census (vv. 28-30) not found in 2 Kings, providing specific numbers for three separate deportations. The book closes with the release of King Jehoiachin from Babylonian prison by Evil-Merodach (Amel-Marduk) — a quiet note of hope at the end of catastrophe.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter functions as the historical verification of everything Jeremiah prophesied. The prophet warned of siege, destruction, exile, and the fall of the Davidic monarchy — chapter 52 shows it all fulfilled. The deportation numbers in verses 28-30 (3,023 + 832 + 745 = 4,600 total) are significantly lower than the round numbers in 2 Kings 24:14-16 (10,000 + 8,000), likely because Jeremiah's count records only adult males while Kings includes families, or because they count different deportation events. The discrepancy is historically significant and we note it without resolving it. The final scene — Jehoiachin eating at the king's table in Babylon — echoes the covenant meals of the patriarchs and provides the book's only forward-looking moment: the Davidic line survives. We preserve the matter-of-fact prose register of this chapter, which reads like royal annals rather than prophetic poetry.*

Translation Friction: *The parallel with 2 Kings 25 required constant cross-referencing to identify where Jeremiah 52 diverges — the deportation numbers (vv. 28-30) are the most significant unique material. The dating formulas use both regnal years and calendar months, requiring careful rendering. The word *pinnah* ('corner') in verse 23 is traditionally rendered 'on a side' but may indicate a specific architectural feature of the temple pillars. The name Evil-Merodach (v. 31) is the Hebrew rendering of the Babylonian name Amel-Marduk ('man of Marduk') — we retain the biblical form with a note on the original. Throughout the chapter, the prose is deliberately spare and archival, and we resisted the temptation to add rhetorical color that the Hebrew does not contain.*

Connections: *This chapter parallels 2 Kings 24:18-25:30 almost word for word, with key differences. It also reprises Jeremiah's own prophecies: the siege fulfills 21:3-10 and 34:1-5; the burning of the temple fulfills 7:14; Zedekiah's capture fulfills 32:3-5 and 34:3; the exile fulfills 25:11. Jehoiachin's release connects to 22:24-30 (the signet-ring oracle) and forward to Zerubbabel, Jehoiachin's grandson, who leads the return (Haggai 2:23, where God reverses the signet-ring image). The deportation numbers provide data found nowhere else in the*

Hebrew Bible.

¹Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became king, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. ²He did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD, just as Jehoiakim had done. ³For because of the anger of the LORD, things reached the point in Jerusalem and Judah that he cast them out from his presence. And Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon. ⁴In the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, on the tenth day of the month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came with his entire army against Jerusalem. They encamped against it and built siege works all around it. ⁵The city remained under siege until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah. ⁶In the fourth month, on the ninth day of the month, the famine in the city was so severe that there was no bread for the people of the land. ⁷Then the city wall was breached. All the soldiers fled, leaving the city at night by way of the gate between the two walls near the king's garden, even though the Chaldeans surrounded the city. They made their way toward the Arabah. ⁸The Chaldean army pursued the king and overtook Zedekiah in the plains of Jericho. His entire army scattered away from him. ⁹They captured the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he passed sentence on him. ¹⁰The king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes. He also slaughtered all the officials of Judah at Riblah. ¹¹Then he blinded Zedekiah, bound him in bronze shackles, and the king of Babylon brought him to Babylon and put him in the house of custody until the day of his death. ¹²In the fifth month, on the tenth day of the month — the nineteenth year of King Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon — Nebuzaradan, the captain of the guard, who served the king of Babylon, entered Jerusalem. ¹³He burned the house of the LORD, the king's palace, and every house in Jerusalem — every large building he burned with fire. ¹⁴The entire Chaldean army that was with the captain of the guard tore down all the walls of Jerusalem on every side. ¹⁵Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard deported some of the poorest people, the rest of the population remaining in the city, the deserters who had gone over to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the craftsmen. ¹⁶But Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard left some of the poorest people of the land as vine-workers and field-laborers. ¹⁷The Chaldeans broke apart the bronze pillars of the house of the LORD, the stands, and the bronze sea that was in the house of the LORD, and carried all their bronze to Babylon. ¹⁸They also took the pots, the shovels, the wick-trimmers, the basins, the ladles, and all the bronze implements used in the service. ¹⁹The captain of the guard also took the thresholds, the fire pans, the basins, the pots, the lampstands, the ladles, and the drink-offering bowls — whatever was gold, as gold, and whatever was silver, as silver. ²⁰The two pillars, the one sea, and the twelve bronze bulls that were beneath it, which King Solomon had made for the house of the LORD — the bronze of all these items was beyond weighing. ²¹As for the pillars, the height of one pillar was eighteen cubits, its circumference twelve cubits, its thickness four fingers — it was hollow. ²²A bronze capital was on top of it, and the height of one capital was five cubits, with latticework and pomegranates all around the capital — all of bronze. The second pillar was the same, with pomegranates. ²³There were ninety-six pomegranates facing outward; in all, there were one hundred pomegranates on the latticework all around. ²⁴The captain of the guard took Seraiah the chief priest, Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the threshold. ²⁵From the city he took a court official who had been commander over the soldiers, seven men from the king's inner circle who were found in the city, the secretary of the army commander who mustered the people of the land, and sixty men of the people of the land who were found inside the city. ²⁶Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah. ²⁷The king of Babylon struck them down and put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. So Judah went into exile from its own soil. ²⁸This is the number of people Nebuchadnezzar deported: in the seventh year, 3,023 Judeans; ²⁹in the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar, 832 people from Jerusalem; ³⁰in the twenty-third year of Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuzaradan the captain of the guard deported 745 Judeans. The total number of people deported was 4,600. ³¹In the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-fifth day of the month, Evil-Merodach king of Babylon, in the year he became king, lifted the head of Jehoiachin king of Judah and released him from prison. ³²He spoke kindly to him and set his throne above the thrones of the other kings who were with him in Babylon. ³³He changed out of his prison garments and ate regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life. ³⁴His allowance was a regular allowance given to him by the king of Babylon, a daily portion, until the day of his death — all the days of his life.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the standard regnal formula used for Judean kings. Hamutal was also the mother of Jehoahaz (2 Kings 23:31), making Zedekiah and Jehoahaz full brothers. The 'Jeremiah of Libnah' here is not the prophet — it is a common name. Libnah was a Judean city in the Shephelah near Lachish.
2. The evaluation formula 'he did what was evil in the eyes of the LORD' (vayyaas hara be'einei YHWH) is the standard negative verdict used for Judean and Israelite kings throughout Kings and Chronicles. Comparing Zedekiah to Jehoiaquim rather than to his father Josiah makes the judgment sharper — he followed the worst recent model rather than the best.
3. The phrase *hishlikho otam me'al panav* ('he cast them out from his presence') is the theological thesis of the entire chapter: exile is expulsion from God's presence. The verb *hishlikh* ('cast, hurl') is violent — not a gentle dismissal but a forcible ejection. Zedekiah's rebellion against Nebuchadnezzar was the proximate political cause of the siege, but the text frames it as occurring within God's anger — the political act is embedded in a theological framework.
4. The date — the tenth of Tevet, 588 BCE — became a permanent Jewish fast day (Zechariah 8:19) commemorating the beginning of the siege. The word *dayeq* ('siege works, siege wall') refers to the earthen ramps and wooden fortifications used to encircle and starve a besieged city. The precision of the dating reflects annalistic record-keeping — the scribes knew the exact day the siege began.
5. The siege lasted approximately eighteen months — from January 588 to July 586 BCE. The brevity of this verse belies the catastrophic suffering: famine, disease, and social collapse are documented in Lamentations 2:11-12, 4:4-10 and Ezekiel 4:9-17. The terse style is characteristic of annalistic prose.
6. The ninth of Tammuz (July 586 BCE) is the date of the famine's extremity — later tradition associates this with the seventeenth of Tammuz, another fast day. The phrase *am ha'arets* ('people of the land') here refers to the common population of Jerusalem, the civilian non-elite who suffered most from the siege. The verb *chazaq* ('was strong, severe') describes the famine as an overwhelming force.
7. The verb *tivvaqa* ('was breached, broken through') is the technical military term for a wall being pierced by siege operations. The gate 'between the two walls' (*bein hachmotayim*) was in the southeastern corner of the city, near the Kidron Valley — it offered a narrow escape route toward the Jordan Rift Valley. The Arabah is the Jordan Valley depression extending south to the Dead Sea. The nighttime escape reveals the desperation of the defenders.
8. The plains of Jericho (*arvot yericho*) are about fifteen miles east of Jerusalem — Zedekiah did not get far. The verb *nafotsu* ('scattered') uses the same root as *mappets* ('war-hammer') in 51:20 — a bitter irony: the nation that shattered others is itself shattered. The king is abandoned by his own army, left alone to face capture.
9. Riblah was Nebuchadnezzar's military headquarters in central Syria (modern Lebanon/Syria border region), strategically located on the Orontes River. The phrase *vayedabber itto mishpatim* ('he spoke judgments with him') means Nebuchadnezzar held a formal judicial proceeding — this was not summary execution but a vassal trial for treaty violation. Zedekiah had sworn loyalty by oath (2 Chronicles 36:13, Ezekiel 17:13-19), and his rebellion was legally prosecutable under ancient Near Eastern treaty law.
10. The verb *shachat* ('slaughtered') is the same verb used for sacrificial slaughter — the execution of Zedekiah's sons is described with deliberate brutality. The phrase *le'evinav* ('before his eyes') emphasizes that this was designed as psychological torture — the last sight Zedekiah would ever see (v. 11). Killing the royal sons eliminated potential future claimants to the throne — a standard practice in ancient Near Eastern political punishment.
11. The verb *ivver* ('blinded') describes the physical mutilation of gouging out the eyes — a punishment attested in Assyrian and Babylonian records for rebellious vassals. The detail fulfills both Jeremiah's prophecy that Zedekiah would 'see the king of Babylon's eyes' (32:4, 34:3) and Ezekiel's seemingly contradictory prophecy that Zedekiah would go to Babylon but not 'see' it (Ezekiel 12:13). The bronze shackles (*nechushtayim*) may echo Samson's fate (Judges 16:21), another blinded prisoner. The 'house of custody' (*beit ha-pequddot*) is a Babylonian prison.
12. The date is the tenth of Av (August 586 BCE). Second Kings 25:8 gives the seventh of Av — the discrepancy of three days is unexplained and likely reflects different records or different stages of the destruction. The ninth of Av (*Tisha B'Av*) became the traditional fast day, splitting the difference. Nebuzaradan's title *rav tabbachim* (literally 'chief of the butchers/slaughterers') was the standard title for the commander of the royal bodyguard — an Akkadian administrative title, not a description of his actions, though the literal meaning is grimly appropriate.
13. The house of the LORD (*beit YHWH*) is Solomon's temple, which had stood for approximately 370 years. The systematic nature of the burning — temple, palace, private houses, and all major structures — indicates deliberate demolition, not collateral damage. The phrase *kol beit hagadol* ('every large building') may mean 'every house of a great person' (i.e., the aristocratic houses) or 'every great house' in terms of size. This verse fulfills Jeremiah 7:14 — 'I will do to this house what I did to Shiloh.'
14. The verb *natsetsu* ('tore down, demolished') indicates systematic dismantling, not mere breaching. City walls were symbols of identity and security — their destruction left Jerusalem defenseless and politically nullified. Archaeological evidence confirms massive destruction layers in Jerusalem dating to this period.
15. The deportees fall into categories: the poor (*dallot ha'am*), the remaining residents, the defectors (*nofelim*, literally 'those who fell' to the Babylonian side), and the craftsmen (*amon*, 'artisans, skilled workers'). Babylon's deportation policy targeted skilled laborers and potential leaders while leaving subsistence farmers to work the land (v. 16). The word *nofelim* for defectors is loaded — those who 'fell to' Babylon during the siege may have followed Jeremiah's counsel (21:9, 38:2).

16. The words *koremim* ('vine-workers') and *yogevim* ('field-laborers, plowmen') indicate that the Babylonians maintained agricultural production in Judah — the land was not abandoned but worked by a remnant of impoverished farmers. This economic calculation — deport the skilled, keep the unskilled to work the soil — was standard Babylonian imperial policy.
17. The bronze pillars (*Jachin* and *Boaz*, cf. 1 Kings 7:15-22), the movable stands (*mekhonot*, cf. 1 Kings 7:27-37), and the bronze sea (*yam hanechoshet*, cf. 1 Kings 7:23-26) were the major bronze furnishings of Solomon's temple. The verb *shibberu* ('they broke apart') indicates they were too large to transport whole — the Babylonians dismantled them for the metal. The temple was not merely burned but systematically stripped of its valuable metals.
18. The inventory of temple vessels catalogues the items used in daily sacrificial service: *sirot* ('pots' for boiling offerings), *ya'im* ('shovels' for ash removal), *mezammerot* ('wick-trimmers' for the lampstand), *mizraqot* ('basins' for catching and throwing sacrificial blood), and *kappot* ('ladles' or 'pans' for incense). The detailed listing emphasizes the completeness of the plunder — every implement of worship was confiscated.
19. The phrase *asher zahav zahav va'asher kesef kasef* ('what was gold as gold, what was silver as silver') indicates that the metals were catalogued and collected by type — the Babylonians were meticulous in their plunder. The *sippim* may be 'thresholds' or 'bowls' (the Hebrew is ambiguous). The *menaqiyot* ('drink-offering bowls') were used for libation offerings.
20. The twelve bronze bulls (*baqar*, literally 'oxen, cattle') supported the bronze sea on their backs (1 Kings 7:25). The phrase *lo hayah mishqal* ('there was no weight,' i.e., 'beyond weighing') indicates the quantity of bronze was so vast it could not be practically measured. According to 1 Kings 7:47, Solomon's bronze work was 'exceedingly great' in quantity. The mention of Solomon by name connects the destruction to its builder, completing the arc from construction to demolition.
21. The dimensions are given precisely: eighteen cubits high (approximately 27 feet / 8.2 meters), twelve cubits in circumference (approximately 18 feet / 5.5 meters), and four fingers thick (approximately 3 inches / 7.6 cm). The note that the pillar was hollow (*navuv*) indicates it was cast as a cylinder, not solid — a significant feat of bronze-casting technology. These measurements describe the pillars *Jachin* and *Boaz* (1 Kings 7:15-22).
22. The *koteret* ('capital') was the decorative crown atop each pillar, five cubits high (approximately 7.5 feet / 2.3 meters). The *sevakhah* ('latticework, network') and *rimmonim* ('pomegranates') were ornamental features — pomegranates symbolized fertility and abundance in ancient Israelite art. The description matches 1 Kings 7:17-20 with minor variations.
23. The number discrepancy — ninety-six visible ('facing outward,' *ruchah*, literally 'toward the wind/air') versus one hundred total — means four pomegranates were concealed at the attachment points of the latticework. This architectural detail is unique to Jeremiah 52; it does not appear in the Kings parallel. The precision of the count (even noting hidden pomegranates) reflects the archival nature of this record.
24. This *Seraiah* the chief priest is not the same *Seraiah* as in 51:59. The three ranks of priestly leadership are named: the chief priest (*kohen ha-rosh*), the second priest (*kohen ha-mishneh*), and the threshold keepers (*shomrei ha-saf*). These were the senior religious officials of the temple. Their arrest and execution (v. 27) eliminated the priestly leadership of Judah.
25. The *saris* ('court official,' sometimes 'eunuch') was a military overseer. The 'seven men who saw the king's face' (*shiv'ah anashim mero'ei fenei ha-melek*) were members of the royal privy council — only the most trusted advisors had direct access to the king. The number is seven in Jeremiah versus five in 2 Kings 25:19 — another discrepancy between the parallel accounts. The sixty men from the general population may have been civic leaders or elders.
26. The prisoners are transported from Jerusalem to *Riblah* in Syria — a journey of approximately 200 miles — to face *Nebuchadnezzar's* judgment in person. The deliberate transport to the king's headquarters rather than summary execution in Jerusalem indicates these were political prisoners whose fate *Nebuchadnezzar* determined personally.
27. The final clause — *vayyigel yehudah me'al admato* ('Judah went into exile from its own soil') — is the theological summary of the entire catastrophe. The word *adamah* ('soil, ground') connects to *adam* ('human being') and to the Edenic creation narrative — exile from the land is a second expulsion from the garden. The covenant promised land; exile is the covenant's ultimate curse (Deuteronomy 28:63-64).
28. This deportation census (vv. 28-30) is unique to Jeremiah 52 — it does not appear in 2 Kings 25 and is one of the most important historical records in the chapter. The 'seventh year' of *Nebuchadnezzar* (598/597 BCE) corresponds to the first deportation, when *Jehoiachin* surrendered. The number 3,023 is far lower than the 10,000 given in 2 Kings 24:14 — the discrepancy likely reflects different counting methods: Jeremiah may count only adult males, or only those from Jerusalem, while Kings includes families and surrounding territory.
29. The 'eighteenth year' (587/586 BCE) corresponds to the siege and fall of Jerusalem. The word *nefesh* ('soul, person, life') is used as the counting unit — literally '832 souls.' This number seems remarkably low for the main deportation following the city's destruction, reinforcing the probability that these counts represent only a specific category (perhaps adult male citizens of Jerusalem proper, not the broader population of Judah).
30. The third deportation in *Nebuchadnezzar's* twenty-third year (582/581 BCE) is otherwise unknown from biblical sources — it may relate to the aftermath of *Gedaliah's* assassination (Jeremiah 41) and the resulting disorder. The grand total of 4,600 (3,023 + 832 + 745) is strikingly modest compared to the tens of thousands mentioned in Kings. If these numbers are accurate and represent adult males, the total exiled community including women, children, and dependents may have been 15,000-20,000. These figures are among the most debated numbers in biblical historiography.

31. Evil-Merodach (Hebrew form of the Babylonian name Amel-Marduk, meaning 'man of Marduk') succeeded Nebuchadnezzar in 562 BCE. The phrase *nasa rosh* ('lifted the head') is an idiom meaning 'showed favor to' or 'pardoned' — it carries the sense of raising someone from a lowered, defeated posture. Jehoiachin had been imprisoned for thirty-seven years since his surrender in 597 BCE. Babylonian administrative tablets (the 'Jehoiachin rations tablets') confirm that Jehoiachin was housed and fed in Babylon, corroborating this account.
32. The phrase *dibber itto tovot* ('spoke good things to him') indicates a formal change of status, not merely polite conversation. Setting Jehoiachin's throne above the other captive kings means he was given precedence — the Davidic king, though a prisoner, held the highest rank among Babylon's royal captives. The 'other kings' were rulers of various conquered nations also held in Babylon.
33. The changing of garments (*shinnah et bigdei kil'o*) symbolizes a change of status — from prisoner to honored guest. The phrase *akhal lechem lefanav tamid* ('ate bread before him continually') means Jehoiachin dined at the king's own table — a mark of the highest favor, echoing Mephibosheth eating at David's table (2 Samuel 9:7). This image of a Davidic king eating at a foreign king's table is the book's final word: not triumph, but survival. The Davidic line endures.
34. The final verse of Jeremiah ends not with a bang but with quiet sustenance: a daily food ration (*aruchat tamid*, 'continual allowance') given day by day (*devar yom beyomo*, 'the matter of a day in its day'). The repetition of 'all the days of his life' (*kol yemei chayyav*) from verse 33 emphasizes permanence — this provision never stopped. The book that began with the call of a prophet and moved through national catastrophe ends with a meal. The Davidic king lives; the line is not extinguished. From Jehoiachin's line will come Zerubbabel, who leads the return from exile (1 Chronicles 3:17-19, Ezra 3:2). This quiet ending is the book's final theological statement: judgment is real, but God's covenant with David's house endures beyond the ruins.

1

Lamentations

Summary: *Lamentations 1 opens with the anguished cry 'Eikhah!' — 'How!' — as the poet gazes upon the desolation of Jerusalem after the Babylonian destruction of 586 BCE. The city is personified as a widow, once great among the nations, now reduced to forced labor. The first half (vv. 1-11) is the poet's third-person lament over Zion's ruin; the second half (vv. 12-22) shifts to Jerusalem herself speaking in the first person, crying out to passersby to witness her suffering. The chapter is structured as an acrostic poem: each of its 22 verses begins with a successive letter of the Hebrew alphabet, from aleph to tav, imposing artistic order on the chaos of destruction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Hebrew title of the book is 'Eikhah' — the first word, meaning 'How!' — a cry of stunned disbelief. This same word opens chapters 2 and 4 as well. The acrostic structure is not mere literary decoration; it serves a theological function, expressing totality — grief from aleph to tav, from A to Z. The personification of Jerusalem as a weeping widow draws on ancient Near Eastern city-lament traditions (Sumerian laments for Ur and Nippur predate this by a millennium). Though traditionally attributed to Jeremiah, the text itself is anonymous, and the Talmud records debate about authorship. The shift from third-person description to first-person speech at verse 12 is one of the most powerful voice changes in biblical poetry — the city herself interrupts the poet to speak her own pain. The phrase 'Is there any sorrow like my sorrow?' (v. 12) became foundational in Jewish liturgical tradition and in Christian devotion (applied to Christ's passion).*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew niddah in verse 8 ('she has become unclean / a filthy thing') carries connotations of menstrual impurity — Jerusalem's sin is likened to ritual uncleanness. We rendered this faithfully without euphemism but noted the cultural context. The word sarnei in verse 15 (KJV 'mighty men') actually means 'bulls' or 'warriors' — we rendered it as 'warriors' with a note on the metaphor. The ayin-pe letter order in this chapter follows the standard alphabetic sequence, unlike chapters 2-4 which reverse pe and ayin — a textual variant scholars debate. The verb tzivvah ('he commanded') in verse 17 uses military language for God's summoning of enemies against Jerusalem, which we preserved.*

Connections: *The city-as-widow image connects to Isaiah 54:1-6 (the barren woman restored) and Revelation 18 (the fall of Babylon). The phrase 'no comforter' (ein menahem) repeats five times in this chapter, establishing a theme that the book of Isaiah answers: 'Comfort, comfort my people' (Isaiah 40:1, using the same root n-h-m). The cry 'Look, LORD, and see' (v. 11) anticipates the same cry in 2:20 and 5:1. The acrostic form connects to Psalms 9-10, 25, 34, 37, 111, 112, 119, and 145, as well as Proverbs 31:10-31. Jerusalem speaking in first person*

anticipates the personal lament of chapter 3.

¹How she sits alone,
the city once teeming with people!
She has become like a widow —
she who was great among the nations.
A princess among the provinces,
she has been put to forced labor.

²She weeps bitterly in the night,
tears streaming down her cheeks.
Among all who loved her,
none brings her comfort.
All her allies have betrayed her;
they have become her enemies.

³Judah has gone into exile
under affliction and harsh servitude.
She dwells among the nations
but finds no resting place.
All who pursued her overtook her
in the narrow passes.

⁴The roads to Zion mourn
because no one comes to the appointed feasts.
All her gates are desolate;
her priests groan,
her young women grieve,
and she herself is in bitter anguish.

⁵Her enemies have gained the upper hand;
her foes are at ease.
For the LORD has caused her grief
because of the abundance of her transgressions.
Her children have gone away,
captives driven before the enemy.

⁶All her splendor has departed
from Daughter Zion.
Her leaders have become like deer
that find no pasture —
they stumble on without strength
before the pursuer.

⁷In the days of her affliction and wandering,
Jerusalem remembers all the precious things
that were hers in days of old.
When her people fell into the hand of the enemy
with no one to help her,

the adversaries looked at her
and laughed at her downfall.

⁸Jerusalem has sinned grievously;
for this she has become an object of scorn.
All who once honored her now despise her,
for they have seen her nakedness.
She herself groans
and turns her face away.

⁹Her uncleanness clings to her skirts;
she gave no thought to her future.
Her fall has been staggering,
and there is no one to comfort her.
"Look, LORD, upon my affliction,
for the enemy has triumphed!"

¹⁰The enemy has stretched out his hand
over all her treasures.
She has watched as nations entered her sanctuary —
those you commanded
should never enter your assembly.

¹¹All her people groan,
searching for bread.
They have traded their treasures for food
just to stay alive.
"Look, LORD, and take notice,
for I have become worthless."

¹²Does this mean nothing to you,
all who pass along the road?
Look and see —
is there any pain like my pain,
which was inflicted on me,
which the LORD brought upon me
on the day of his burning anger?

¹³From on high he sent fire
into my bones and it overcame them.
He spread a net for my feet;
he turned me back.
He has left me desolate,
sick with grief all day long.

¹⁴My transgressions have been bound into a yoke
by his hand.
They are woven together,
fastened upon my neck.

He has broken my strength.
The Lord has handed me over
to those I cannot withstand.

¹⁵The Lord has rejected all my warriors
from my midst.
He has summoned an assembly against me
to crush my young men.
The Lord has trodden the virgin Daughter Judah
as in a winepress.

¹⁶For all these things I weep;
my eyes — my eyes overflow with tears.
For any comforter is far from me,
anyone to restore my life.
My children are desolate,
for the enemy has prevailed.

¹⁷Zion stretches out her hands,
but there is no one to comfort her.
The LORD has commanded against Jacob
that his neighbors become his enemies.
Jerusalem has become
an unclean thing among them.

¹⁸The LORD is righteous,
for I have rebelled against his word.
Hear now, all you peoples,
and see my pain —
my young women and my young men
have gone into captivity.

¹⁹I called out to my allies,
but they betrayed me.
My priests and my elders
perished in the city
while they searched for food
to keep themselves alive.

²⁰Look, LORD, for I am in anguish!
My stomach churns;
my heart turns over within me
because I have been utterly rebellious.
Outside, the sword takes my children;
inside, it is like death itself.

²¹They have heard how I groan —
there is no one to comfort me.
All my enemies have heard of my disaster;

they rejoice that you have done this.
 Bring about the day you have proclaimed,
 and let them become like me!

²²Let all their wickedness come before you;
 deal with them
 as you have dealt with me
 for all my transgressions.
 For my groans are many,
 and my heart is sick.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aleph () verse. The opening word 'Eikhah' ('How!') gives the book its Hebrew name. It is not a question seeking information but a cry of stunned grief — the same word opens David's lament for Saul and Jonathan (2 Samuel 1:19). The word rabbati ('great, teeming') appears twice in the verse, creating a bitter contrast: she was rabbati in people and rabbati among the nations, but now she is alone. The word lamas ('to forced labor, tribute') refers to corvée labor — the same system Solomon imposed on subject peoples (1 Kings 9:21). The oppressed has become the oppressed.
2. Bet () verse. The emphatic infinitive absolute bakho tivkeh ('weeping, she weeps') intensifies the grief — we rendered this as 'weeps bitterly' to capture the force. The word menahem ('comforter') appears here for the first time; its absence (ein menahem, 'no comforter') will echo through verses 9, 16, 17, and 21, becoming a structural refrain. The 'lovers' (ohaveiha) are political allies — Egypt, Edom, and other nations Judah courted for protection instead of trusting God (cf. Jeremiah 30:14, Ezekiel 23).
3. Gimel () verse. The word manoach ('resting place') echoes the failed search for rest in the wilderness and in Ruth 1:9 — rest is a covenant blessing, and its absence signals covenant rupture. The phrase bein hametsarim ('in the narrow passes / between the straits') literally means 'between the tight places' — a military image of being trapped in a canyon with no escape. In Jewish tradition this phrase gives its name to the Three Weeks mourning period between 17 Tammuz and 9 Av (bein hametsarim).
4. Dalet () verse. The Hebrew mo'ed ('appointed feast') refers to the pilgrimage festivals — Passover, Weeks, and Booths — when Israelites traveled to Jerusalem. The roads themselves personified as mourning because the pilgrims have ceased. The word betuloteiha ('her young women / virgins') refers to the young women who participated in festival celebrations (cf. Judges 21:21, Jeremiah 31:13). The adjective mar ('bitter') is the root of Naomi's self-renaming in Ruth 1:20.
5. He () verse. The crucial theological claim: the LORD (YHWH) himself has caused Jerusalem's suffering. The verb hogah ('caused grief, afflicted') makes God the active agent of the city's devastation — this is not random misfortune but covenant judgment. The word pesh'a'eiha ('her transgressions') is the Hebrew term for deliberate rebellion, the most serious category of sin. The children (olaleiha) going into captivity before the enemy reverses the Exodus — instead of God leading his people out, the enemy leads them away.
6. Vav () verse. The title bat-Tsiyon ('Daughter Zion') personifies the city as a vulnerable young woman — a tender address that intensifies the pathos. The word hadarah ('her splendor, majesty') refers to the visible glory of the city — the Temple, the palace, the walls. The simile of deer without pasture captures exhaustion and helplessness: deer that cannot find food become too weak to flee predators. The word sarehia ('her leaders, princes') denotes the ruling class who should protect the city.
7. Zayin () verse. The word merudeha ('her wandering, homelessness') is rare, conveying restless displacement. The word mahmudeiha ('her precious things, desirable things') likely refers to both the treasures of the Temple and the cherished life of the covenant community. The final word mishbatteha is debated: it may mean 'her cessation' (from shavat, 'to cease') or 'her sabbaths' (from shabbat). The KJV reads 'sabbaths,' but the context of enemies mocking suggests 'her downfall / cessation' — the end of everything she was. We rendered 'downfall' with this note.
8. Chet () verse. The emphatic het hateah ('sinning, she has sinned') mirrors the emphatic weeping of verse 2. The word lenidah ('to a niddah / unclean thing') carries connotations of menstrual impurity (Leviticus 15:19-33) — Jerusalem's sin has made her ritually repulsive. We rendered this as 'an object of scorn' because the emphasis in context is on the social consequence (being shunned), while noting the Hebrew connotation here. The exposure of ervatah ('her nakedness') is the language of covenant violation — Ezekiel 16 and 23 develop this metaphor extensively. She turns away in shame at her own exposure.
9. Tet () verse. The image of tumah ('uncleanness') on her skirts is visceral — her defilement is visible, trailing behind her for all to see. The phrase lo zakhrah aharitah ('she did not remember her end') means she failed to consider the consequences of her actions. The refrain ein menahem ('no comforter') returns from verse 2. At the end of this verse, Jerusalem's own voice breaks through for the first time — 're'eh YHWH' ('Look, LORD') — a sudden shift from third person to first person that many scholars see as the city herself interrupting the poet's lament.
10. Yod () verse. The word mahmadeiha ('her treasures, precious things') echoes verse 7 — what was precious has been seized. The violation of the miqdash ('sanctuary') is the ultimate sacrilege: foreign nations have entered the holy space. The prohibition referenced is Deuteronomy 23:3-4, which barred Ammonites and Moabites from the qahal ('assembly') of the LORD. The shift to second-person address ('you commanded') shows the

city speaking directly to God, accusing him of allowing what his own Torah forbade.

11. Kaf () verse. The phrase lehashiv nefesh ('to restore life / to keep alive') is literally 'to cause the soul to return' — they are at the brink of death. The word zolelah ('worthless, despised, gluttonous') is debated; it can mean 'cheap, worthless' or connect to the 'glutton' (zolel) of Deuteronomy 21:20. In context, Jerusalem is saying she has become something cheap and contemptible in the eyes of the world. The cry re'eh YHWH ('Look, LORD') echoes verse 9, reinforcing Jerusalem's direct plea to God.
12. Lamed () verse. This is perhaps the most famous verse in Lamentations. Jerusalem addresses the passersby — those walking past the ruins. The phrase makh'ov kemakh'ovi ('pain like my pain') became central in Jewish liturgy for Tisha B'Av (the anniversary of the Temple's destruction) and in Christian tradition was applied to Christ's suffering on the cross. The verb hogah ('brought grief upon') again names God as the agent, and haron appo ('his burning anger') uses the image of God's flaring nostrils — anger so intense it is described as heat radiating from his face.
13. Mem () verse. Three images of divine attack in rapid succession: fire in the bones (internal torment), a net for the feet (entrapment like an animal), and being turned back (military defeat). The fire 'from on high' (mimarom) emphasizes that this destruction comes from heaven — from God himself. The word davah ('sick, faint') specifically connotes the weakness of illness, not mere sadness. Jerusalem is not just sad — she is physically broken.
14. Nun () verse. The rare verb nisqad ('bound, watched, tied together') may relate to shaqad ('to watch, be alert') — the image is of sins being carefully tied together like a yoke lashed to an ox's neck. Each transgression (pesha) is a strand in the rope. The title Adonai ('Lord') is used here rather than YHWH — a distinction maintained throughout Lamentations where the poet alternates between the covenant name and the sovereign title.
15. Samekh () verse. The verb sillah ('rejected, cast aside') means to treat as worthless — the warriors who should have defended the city are swept aside by God himself. The word mo'ed ('assembly, appointed time') creates bitter irony: instead of summoning a festival assembly (cf. v. 4), God has summoned a military assembly to destroy. The winepress image (gat darakh, 'treading the winepress') is visceral — grapes are crushed underfoot until they burst, and the juice runs like blood. This image reappears in Isaiah 63:1-6 and Revelation 14:19-20.
16. Ayin () verse. The repetition eini eini ('my eye, my eye') is not a scribal error but a deliberate intensification — the poet stutters with grief. The word menahem ('comforter') returns for the third time (cf. vv. 2, 9), and meshiv nafshi ('one who restores my soul/life') adds urgency — she needs not just emotional comfort but someone to pull her back from the edge of death. The desolation of her 'children' (banai) means both the literal inhabitants and the metaphorical children of Mother Zion.
17. Pe () verse. The image of outstretched hands is a gesture of supplication — Zion begs but receives nothing. The refrain ein menahem ('no comforter') appears for the fourth time. The verb tsivvah ('commanded') is military language — God has issued orders deploying Jacob's neighbors as attackers. The word leniddah ('to an unclean thing') returns from verse 8, again evoking menstrual impurity language. The pe-ayin order here follows the standard Hebrew alphabet; chapters 2, 3, and 4 reverse pe and ayin, an ancient textual variant.
18. Tsade () verse. The stunning confession: tsaddiq hu YHWH ('righteous is the LORD'). In the midst of devastation, Jerusalem does not accuse God of injustice but confesses that the destruction is deserved — she rebelled against pihu ('his mouth/word/command'). The verb mariti ('I rebelled') is the same root used for Israel's rebellion in the wilderness (Numbers 20:24, 27:14). The appeal to 'all peoples' (kol amim) universalizes the lament — Jerusalem calls the whole world to witness.
19. Qof () verse. The 'lovers' (me'ahavai) are the foreign allies of verse 2, now explicitly described as having 'deceived' (rimmuni) Jerusalem — the political alliances proved worthless. The priests and elders — the religious and civic leaders — died of starvation within the city walls during the siege. The phrase lehashiv et nafsham ('to restore their lives') echoes verse 11, creating a devastating parallel: the people traded treasures for food, but the leaders could not even find food to trade for.
20. Resh () verse. The visceral language — me'ai homarmarru ('my insides churn') and nehpakh libbi ('my heart turns over') — describes grief as a physical sensation, the body revolting against unbearable suffering. The repetition maro mariti ('rebellious I have rebelled') is another emphatic infinitive absolute, intensifying the confession. The final line sets up a merism: outside (mihutz) the sword kills, inside (babbayit) death stalks — there is no safe place, no escape.
21. Shin () verse. The fifth and final occurrence of ein menahem ('no comforter') in this chapter. The enemies sasu ('rejoice') at Jerusalem's suffering, which God himself caused — a bitter acknowledgment. The final line shifts from lament to imprecation: Jerusalem calls on God to bring the 'day' (yom) of judgment upon her enemies too. The 'day you have proclaimed' (yom qarata) anticipates the 'Day of the LORD' language that runs through the prophets. This is not revenge but an appeal to divine justice — if my sins were punished, let theirs be also.
22. Tav () verse — the final letter of the Hebrew alphabet, completing the acrostic. The imprecation continues from verse 21: Jerusalem asks God to treat her enemies with the same justice he applied to her. The word pesha'ai ('my transgressions') returns from verse 5, forming an inclusio — the chapter begins and ends with the acknowledgment that Jerusalem's transgressions caused her suffering. The closing words libbi davvai ('my heart is sick/faint') echo the davah of verse 13, ending the chapter in unresolved grief. There is no resolution, no comfort, no restoration — only the raw wound of judgment acknowledged as just.

2

Summary: *Lamentations 2 is the most theologically searing chapter in the book. The poet describes God himself as the destroyer of Jerusalem — not merely permitting the Babylonian invasion but actively tearing down his own Temple, his own walls, his own people. The LORD has become 'like an enemy' (v. 5). The chapter moves from God's destructive fury (vv. 1-10) to the poet's personal anguish at the sight of starving children (vv. 11-12), to a direct address to Daughter Zion urging her to cry out to God (vv. 18-19), and finally to Zion's own agonized prayer (vv. 20-22). Like chapter 1, this is a 22-verse acrostic poem following the Hebrew alphabet, but with the pe-ayin letter order reversed at verses 16-17.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological audacity of this chapter is almost without parallel in scripture. Verse after verse names God as the agent of destruction using verbs of violence: he has swallowed, demolished, cut down, burned, bent his bow, killed, poured out his fury, destroyed his own tabernacle. The poet does not flinch from the conclusion: the LORD has done what he planned (v. 17). The pe-ayin letter reversal (where pe precedes ayin, reversing the order found in chapter 1) is attested in several ancient acrostic texts and may reflect an alternative alphabetic tradition. The description of prophets who gave false visions (v. 14) connects directly to Jeremiah's conflict with the optimistic prophets (Jeremiah 23, 28). The closing question — 'Should women eat their own children?' (v. 20) — is the most horrifying line in the Hebrew Bible, fulfilled during the siege according to 2 Kings 6:28-29.*

Translation Friction: *The verb billa ('swallowed') in verses 2, 5, and 16 required consistent rendering — we used 'swallowed up' to convey the totality of destruction. The word sukkah in verse 6 can mean 'booth/shelter' or 'his tabernacle' — the ambiguity is theologically loaded because it connects the Temple to the temporary Sukkot booths, implying God has dismantled his own dwelling as easily as taking down a festival tent. The pe-ayin reversal at verses 16-17 was noted without attempting to reproduce it in English, since the acrostic structure does not transfer across languages. The graphic description of starving infants in verses 11-12 and cannibalism in verse 20 was rendered without euphemism.*

Connections: *The portrayal of God as warrior-destroyer connects to the Day of the LORD traditions in Amos 5:18-20, Joel 2:1-11, and Zephaniah 1:14-18. The demolished Temple connects to Jesus's prediction of the second Temple's destruction (Matthew 24:2). The false prophets of verse 14 connect to Jeremiah 23:9-40 and Ezekiel 13. The 'pouring out of the heart like water' (v. 19) anticipates Psalm 62:8. The cannibalism reference connects to the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:53-57 and Leviticus 26:29 — the very consequences Moses warned would follow covenant violation.*

¹How the Lord has covered Daughter Zion
with a cloud in his anger!
He has hurled the splendor of Israel
from heaven to earth.
He has not remembered his footstool
on the day of his wrath.

²The Lord has swallowed up
all the dwellings of Jacob without mercy.
In his fury he has torn down
the fortresses of Daughter Judah.
He has brought them to the ground;
he has profaned the kingdom and its rulers.

³In burning anger he has cut off
every horn of Israel.

He has drawn back his right hand
from before the enemy.
He has blazed against Jacob
like a consuming fire on every side.

⁴He has bent his bow like an enemy,
stood with his right hand poised like a foe.
He has killed all who were precious to the eye.
In the tent of Daughter Zion
he has poured out his fury like fire.

⁵The Lord has become like an enemy.
He has swallowed up Israel;
he has swallowed up all her palaces
and destroyed his fortresses.
He has multiplied in Daughter Judah
mourning upon mourning.

⁶He has torn down his booth like a garden shelter;
he has destroyed his place of meeting.
The LORD has made festival and sabbath
forgotten in Zion,
and in the fury of his anger
he has spurned both king and priest.

⁷The Lord has rejected his own altar;
he has abandoned his own sanctuary.
He has handed over to the enemy
the walls of her palaces.
They raised a shout in the house of the LORD
as on the day of a festival.

⁸The LORD determined to destroy
the wall of Daughter Zion.
He stretched out the measuring line;
he did not restrain his hand from destruction.
He made rampart and wall mourn;
together they crumble.

⁹Her gates have sunk into the ground;
he has smashed and shattered her bars.
Her king and her officials are among the nations
where there is no instruction.
Even her prophets receive
no vision from the LORD.

¹⁰The elders of Daughter Zion
sit on the ground in silence.
They have thrown dust on their heads

and put on sackcloth.
 The young women of Jerusalem
 have bowed their heads to the ground.

¹¹My eyes are spent with tears;
 my stomach churns.
 My bile pours out on the ground
 over the destruction of the daughter of my people,
 as children and infants faint
 in the streets of the city.

¹²They cry to their mothers,
 "Where is bread? Where is wine?"
 as they collapse like the wounded
 in the streets of the city,
 as their lives pour out
 in their mothers' arms.

¹³What can I say for you?
 To what can I compare you,
 Daughter Jerusalem?
 What can I liken to you,
 that I might comfort you,
 virgin Daughter Zion?
 For your wound is as vast as the sea —
 who can heal you?

¹⁴Your prophets saw for you
 visions of emptiness and whitewash.
 They did not expose your guilt
 so as to restore your fortunes.
 The oracles they saw for you
 were false and misleading.

¹⁵All who pass along the road
 clap their hands at you.
 They hiss and shake their heads
 at Daughter Jerusalem:
 "Is this the city that was called
 the perfection of beauty,
 the joy of all the earth?"

¹⁶All your enemies open their mouths
 wide against you.
 They hiss and grind their teeth.
 They say, "We have swallowed her up!
 This is the day we waited for —
 we have found it; we have seen it!"

¹⁷The LORD has done what he planned;
 he has carried out his decree
 that he ordained from days of old.
 He has torn down without mercy;
 he has let the enemy rejoice over you
 and raised up the strength of your foes.

¹⁸Their heart cries out to the Lord.
 O wall of Daughter Zion,
 let tears flow down like a river
 day and night!
 Give yourself no rest;
 let your eyes find no relief.

¹⁹Rise up! Cry out in the night,
 at the start of every watch.
 Pour out your heart like water
 before the face of the Lord.
 Lift up your hands to him
 for the lives of your children
 who faint from hunger
 at the head of every street.

²⁰Look, LORD, and consider:
 To whom have you done this?
 Should women eat their own offspring,
 the children they have nursed?
 Should priest and prophet be slain
 in the sanctuary of the Lord?

²¹Young and old lie on the ground
 in the streets.
 My young women and my young men
 have fallen by the sword.
 You killed them on the day of your anger;
 you slaughtered without mercy.

²²You summoned terrors against me from every side
 as on the day of a festival.
 On the day of the LORD's anger,
 none escaped, none survived.
 Those I carried and raised —
 my enemy has destroyed them.

 TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aleph () verse. The chapter opens with the same cry 'Eikhah' ('How!') as chapter 1. The verb ya'iv ('covered with a cloud, darkened') suggests an ominous storm cloud — God's anger as a thunderhead descending over Zion. The 'footstool' (hadom raglav) is the Ark of the Covenant and by extension the Temple (cf. 1 Chronicles 28:2, Psalm 132:7) — God has forgotten even the place where his feet rested on earth. The verb hishlikh ('hurled, thrown down') conveys violence — Israel's splendor was not gently set aside but violently thrown from heaven to the ground.

2. Bet (ב) verse. The verb *billa* ('swallowed up') is a verb of total consumption — nothing remains after swallowing. The phrase *lo hamal* ('without mercy, without pity') appears repeatedly in this chapter (vv. 2, 17, 21), characterizing God's judgment as relentless. The verb *hillel* ('profaned') means to strip something of its sacred status — God has desacralized the Davidic monarchy and its leaders. This is the reversal of the anointing that made them holy.
3. Gimel (ג) verse. The 'horn' (*qeren*) symbolizes strength and power — cutting off every horn means stripping Israel of all capacity to resist. God drawing back his right hand is devastating: the right hand is the hand of deliverance (Exodus 15:6, 12), and its withdrawal means God refuses to fight for Israel. Worse, God himself burns against Jacob — the fire that once protected Israel from Egypt (Exodus 14:24) is now turned against her.
4. Dalet (ד) verse. The transformation is complete: God has become *ke'oyev* ('like an enemy') and *ketsar* ('like a foe'). The right hand that was withdrawn from protecting Israel (v. 3) is now deployed against her. The phrase *mahmaddei ayin* ('precious things of the eye') refers to beloved people — the beautiful, the cherished, the young. The 'tent' (*ohel*) of Daughter Zion may refer to the Temple using tabernacle language, connecting the destruction back to the wilderness dwelling of God.
5. He (ה) verse. The central theological statement of the chapter: *Adonai hayah ke'oyev* ('The Lord has become like an enemy'). This is not metaphor — it is the poet's stunned recognition that the God who fought for Israel at the Reed Sea has now turned his military might against her. The verb *billa* ('swallowed up') appears twice in succession, intensifying the totality of destruction. The final pair *ta'aniyah va'aniyah* ('mourning and lamentation') is nearly synonymous, piling grief upon grief through sound repetition.
6. Vav (ו) verse. The word *sukko* ('his booth/shelter') is the same word used for the temporary shelters of the Sukkot festival — God has dismantled his own Temple as casually as tearing down a harvest tent. The word *mo'ado* ('his appointed meeting place') connects to the 'tent of meeting' (*ohel mo'ed*) of the wilderness — the place where God met with Israel is now rubble. The abolition of *mo'ed veshabbat* ('festival and sabbath') means the entire liturgical calendar has ceased. God has rejected both civil (*melekh*, 'king') and religious (*kohen*, 'priest') leadership.
7. Zayin (ז) verse. The bitter irony reaches its peak: the enemies shout in God's own house *keyom mo'ed* ('as on the day of a festival'). The joyful noise of worship has been replaced by the war cries of invaders, and the poet describes both with the same language. God has *zanah* ('rejected, cast off') his own altar — the place where Israel met God through sacrifice is abandoned. The verb *ni'er* ('abhorred, spurned') his sanctuary makes God the one who desecrates his own holy place by withdrawing from it.
8. Chet (ח) verse. The verb *hashav* ('planned, determined') shows that this destruction is not impulsive but deliberate — God planned it. The measuring line (*qav*) is normally a tool for building (Zechariah 1:16); here it measures for demolition, a devastating inversion. The personification of rampart and wall mourning together extends the city-as-person metaphor — even the stones grieve. The verb *umlelalu* ('they languish, crumble') suggests slow collapse rather than sudden destruction.
9. Tet (ט) verse. The gates 'sinking into the ground' (*tave'u va'arets*) is an image of total ruin — the gates have collapsed and been swallowed by rubble. The word *torah* here means 'instruction, teaching' rather than specifically the Mosaic law — in exile among the nations, there is no prophetic or priestly guidance. The cessation of prophetic vision (*hazon*) means God has gone silent. The three pillars of Israelite society — kingship, Torah instruction, and prophecy — have all failed simultaneously.
10. Yod (י) verse. The rituals of mourning are described: sitting on the ground (the posture of *shiva*), silence (*yiddehmu* — the deepest form of grief beyond words), dust on the head, and sackcloth garments. The elders who once sat in the gate to judge now sit in the dirt. The young women (*betulot*) who once danced at festivals (cf. 1:4) now bow their heads to the earth. Every element of communal life has been inverted.
11. Kaf (כ) verse. The poet now speaks in first person, overwhelmed by what he sees. The phrase *kavedi* ('my liver/bile') being poured out is visceral Hebrew body language — the liver was considered the seat of deep emotion, and its 'pouring out' describes grief so intense it feels like internal organs are collapsing. The word *olel* ('child, toddler') and *yoneq* ('nursing infant') — the most vulnerable members of society — are fainting from hunger in the public squares. The poet cannot maintain detached observation; the sight of dying children breaks him.
12. Lamed (ל) verse. The children's cry *ayyeh dagan vayayin* ('Where is grain and wine?') is devastating in its simplicity — they ask for the basic staples of life. The comparison to the wounded (*kehalal*, 'like one pierced by a sword') means the children are dying of starvation as if they had been struck in battle. The phrase *behistappekh nafsham* ('as their lives pour out') describes death by degrees — the *nephesh* (life-force) slowly draining away in their mothers' laps. This is one of the most emotionally devastating images in all of scripture.
13. Mem (מ) verse. The poet searches for an adequate comparison and fails — no analogy is large enough. The phrase *gadol kayyam shivrekh* ('your wound/breaking is great as the sea') uses the sea as the measure of immeasurable vastness. The word *shever* ('breaking, wound, fracture') is the same word Jeremiah uses repeatedly for the nation's catastrophe (Jeremiah 6:14, 8:21, 14:17). The question *mi yirpa lakh* ('who can heal you?') implies the answer: perhaps no one — or only God, the one who inflicted the wound.
14. Nun (נ) verse. The false prophets are indicted: they saw *shav vetafel* ('emptiness and whitewash') — *tafel* is literally plaster or whitewash used to cover over cracks (cf. Ezekiel 13:10-15, where false prophets are accused of 'whitewashing' a weak wall). They failed to *gilu al avonekh* ('expose/uncover your guilt'), which would have led to repentance and restoration. The word *maddukhim* ('misleading oracles, causes of banishment') may derive from *nadah* ('to drive away') — their false words drove the people into exile. This verse directly parallels Jeremiah's confrontation with Hananiah (Jeremiah 28).
15. Samekh (ס) verse. The clapping (*safqu kappayim*) here is not applause but mockery — a gesture of scorn. The hissing (*sharqu*) and head-shaking are universal gestures of derision. The title *kelilat yofi* ('perfection of beauty') echoes Psalm 50:2 ('Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, God shines forth') and *masos lekhol ha'arets* ('joy of all the earth') echoes Psalm 48:3. The passersby quote Jerusalem's own praise songs back to her in mockery.

— what she sang about herself is now thrown in her face.

16. Pe () verse. NOTE: In this chapter, pe precedes ayin, reversing the order found in chapter 1. This pe-ayin reversal also occurs in chapters 3 and 4, and may reflect an older alphabetic tradition. The enemies use the same verb *billa'nu* ('we have swallowed') that was applied to God's action in verses 2 and 5 — the enemies claim for themselves what was actually God's doing. Their gloating 'this is the day' (*zeh hayyom*) is a perversion of the festival language 'this is the day the LORD has made' (Psalm 118:24).
17. Ayin () verse. Following pe in the reversed order. This is the theological climax: *asah YHWH asher zamam* ('The LORD has done what he planned'). The destruction is not a failure of divine power or a surprise — it is the fulfillment of the covenant curses God announced through Moses (Deuteronomy 28). The word *bitsa* ('carried out, completed') means he saw it through to the end. The phrase *lo hamal* ('without mercy') echoes verse 2. God's plan, Israel's enemies' triumph, and the ancient warnings all converge in this verse.
18. Tsade () verse. The poet now exhorts Daughter Zion to unceasing weeping — the tears should flow *kannahal* ('like a stream/torrent'), a never-ending current. The phrase *bat einekh* ('daughter of your eye') is the pupil — the most tender, vulnerable part of the body. The command is paradoxical: weep without stopping, because only through the exhaustion of grief can any healing begin. The address to the 'wall' (*homat*) may be apostrophe — the poet speaks to the ruins themselves.
19. Qof () verse. The poet commands Zion to pray — but the prayer is specifically for the children. The word *ashmurot* ('watches') divides the night into shifts; the command is to begin crying out at the start of each one, meaning the entire night. The phrase *shifkhi khammayim libbekh* ('pour out your heart like water') is one of the most powerful prayer images in scripture — the heart emptied entirely before God, holding nothing back. The *olayikh* ('your little children') fainting from starvation at every street corner echoes the same devastating image from verses 11-12.
20. Resh () verse. Daughter Zion now speaks directly to God, and her words are the most searing in the Hebrew Bible. The phrase *tokhalena nashim piryam* ('should women eat their fruit/offspring?') refers to cannibalism during the siege — mothers eating their own children. The word *tipu'him* ('nursed, cherished, dandled') emphasizes that these are children who were tenderly cared for. This horror was predicted in the covenant curses (Deuteronomy 28:53-57) and is attested historically in the siege of Jerusalem (2 Kings 6:28-29). The murder of priest and prophet in the sanctuary violates every sacred boundary.
21. Shin () verse. The direct accusation against God intensifies: *haragta* ('you killed') and *tavahta* ('you slaughtered') — the second verb is butchery language, used for slaughtering animals. The phrase *lo hamalta* ('you did not show mercy') echoes vv. 2 and 17, completing a refrain of divine mercilessness that runs through the entire chapter. The bodies of young and old lying in the streets together eliminates every social distinction — death is the great equalizer.
22. Tav () verse — the final letter, completing the acrostic. The bitter festival language returns: *keyom mo'ed* ('as on the day of an appointed feast') — God has made destruction into a festival, summoning terrors the way worshippers were once summoned to Jerusalem. The totality is absolute: *lo hayah palit vesarid* ('no refugee and no survivor'). The chapter ends with Zion as a mother whose children have all been consumed by the enemy — the one she herself nursed and raised (*tippahti veribbiti*). The chapter closes without resolution, without hope, without any word of comfort.

3

Summary: *Lamentations 3 is the theological heart of the book — the longest chapter, with 66 verses arranged as a triple acrostic (three verses per Hebrew letter). An individual sufferer speaks in the first person: 'I am the man who has seen affliction' (v. 1). The first section (vv. 1-20) is unrelenting darkness — the speaker has been walled in, hunted, broken by God. Then, at the exact center of the chapter and the book, comes the astonishing turn: 'The faithful loves of the LORD never cease; his mercies never end. They are new every morning — great is your faithfulness' (vv. 22-23). This is the hope passage, set like a jewel in the middle of devastation. The chapter moves from personal lament to theological reflection on divine justice (vv. 25-39), then to communal confession and prayer (vv. 40-66).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The triple acrostic structure is the most elaborate in the Hebrew Bible — each Hebrew letter governs three consecutive verses, creating a poem of mathematical precision within emotional chaos. The identity of the speaker is debated: he may be Jeremiah, an everyman figure, or a personification of the community. The hope passage (vv. 22-24) contains the Hebrew Bible's most concentrated expression of *chesed* and *emunah* — two covenant terms that carry the entire weight of Israel's theology of divine faithfulness. The phrase *hadashim labbeqarim* ('new every morning') became the basis of the hymn 'Great Is Thy Faithfulness.' The chapter's position at the center of the book's five chapters is architecturally deliberate — hope surrounded by despair on every side, yet surviving. The verb *qavah* ('to wait, to hope') in verse 25 is from the same root as *tiqvah* ('hope'), used in Jeremiah 29:11.*

Translation Friction: The shift from individual to communal voice (around v. 40) required careful handling — the 'I' becomes 'we' without explicit transition. The word chesed in verse 22 follows the Qere (written marginal reading chasdei YHWH, 'the faithful loves of the LORD') rather than the Ketiv (written text), which reads tamnu ('they are finished') — a significant textual variant where the traditional reading reverses the meaning entirely. We followed the Qere with the majority of translations and noted the Ketiv. The Hebrew gever ('man, strong man') in verse 1 is not the generic adam or ish but the word for a warrior or vigorous man — his affliction is emphasized by his strength. The pe-ayin reversal continues from chapter 2 at verses 46-51.

Connections: The chesed-emunah pairing in verses 22-23 connects to Exodus 34:6-7 (the divine self-revelation to Moses), Psalm 36:5-6, Psalm 89:1-2, and Psalm 100:5. 'Great is your faithfulness' connects to Deuteronomy 7:9. The 'man who has seen affliction' connects to the Suffering Servant of Isaiah 52:13-53:12. The call to self-examination (v. 40) connects to Haggai 1:5-7. The image of God as a stalking bear and lion (v. 10) connects to Hosea 13:7-8. The 'pit' imagery (vv. 53-55) connects to Psalm 69 and Jeremiah 38 (Jeremiah's actual imprisonment in a cistern). The closing imprecation (vv. 64-66) connects to Psalm 137.

¹I am the man who has seen affliction
under the rod of his fury.

²He has driven me and led me
into darkness, not light.

³Against me alone he turns
his hand, again and again, all day long.

⁴He has worn away my flesh and my skin;
he has shattered my bones.

⁵He has besieged me
and surrounded me with bitterness and hardship.

⁶He has made me dwell in darkness
like those long dead.

⁷He has walled me in so I cannot escape;
he has weighed down my chains.

⁸Even when I cry out and plead for help,
he shuts out my prayer.

⁹He has blocked my paths with cut stone;
he has made my roads twist.

¹⁰He is a bear lying in ambush for me,
a lion in hiding.

¹¹He has dragged me from the path and torn me apart;
he has left me devastated.

¹²He has bent his bow
and set me as a target for his arrow.

¹³He has driven the shafts of his quiver
into my kidneys.

¹⁴I have become a laughingstock to all my people,
the subject of their mocking songs all day long.

¹⁵He has filled me with bitter herbs;
he has drenched me with wormwood.

¹⁶He has ground my teeth on gravel;
he has pressed me into the ashes.

¹⁷My life has been deprived of peace;
I have forgotten what goodness is.

¹⁸So I said, "My endurance is gone,
and my hope from the LORD has perished."

¹⁹Remember my affliction and my wandering,
the wormwood and the gall!

²⁰My soul remembers them vividly
and sinks low within me.

²¹But this I call to mind,
and therefore I have hope:

²²The faithful loves of the LORD never cease;
his mercies never come to an end.

²³They are new every morning;
great is your faithfulness!

²⁴"The LORD is my portion," says my soul;
"therefore I will hope in him."

²⁵The LORD is good to those who wait for him,
to the soul that seeks him.

²⁶It is good to wait in silence
for the salvation of the LORD.

²⁷It is good for a man
to bear the yoke in his youth.

²⁸Let him sit alone and be silent
when it is laid upon him.

²⁹Let him put his mouth in the dust —
perhaps there is hope.

³⁰Let him offer his cheek to the one who strikes him;
let him be filled with disgrace.

³¹For the Lord does not reject forever.

³²Though he causes grief, he will show compassion
according to the abundance of his faithful love.

³³For he does not afflict from his heart,
nor grieve the children of humanity.

³⁴To crush underfoot
all the prisoners of the earth,

³⁵to deny a person justice
before the face of the Most High,

³⁶to wrong a person in their lawsuit —
the Lord does not approve.

³⁷Who has spoken and it came to be
when the Lord has not commanded it?

³⁸Is it not from the mouth of the Most High
that both disaster and good come?

³⁹Why should any living person complain?
Let each one complain about their own sins.

⁴⁰Let us examine and test our ways,
and return to the LORD.

⁴¹Let us lift up our hearts and our hands
to God in heaven.

⁴²We have transgressed and rebelled,
and you have not forgiven.

⁴³You have wrapped yourself in anger and pursued us;
you have killed without mercy.

⁴⁴You have wrapped yourself in a cloud
so that no prayer can pass through.

⁴⁵You have made us filth and refuse
among the peoples.

⁴⁶All our enemies have opened their mouths
wide against us.

⁴⁷Terror and the pit have come upon us,
devastations and destruction.

⁴⁸Streams of tears flow from my eyes
over the destruction of the daughter of my people.

⁴⁹My eyes pour out tears without stopping,
without relief,

⁵⁰until the LORD looks down
and sees from heaven.

⁵¹My eyes cause me anguish
because of all the young women of my city.

⁵²My enemies hunted me relentlessly
like a bird, without cause.

⁵³They tried to end my life in the pit
and threw stones at me.

⁵⁴Waters closed over my head;
I said, "I am finished."

⁵⁵I called on your name, LORD,
from the depths of the pit.

⁵⁶You heard my voice —
do not close your ear
to my cry for relief, to my plea!

⁵⁷You drew near on the day I called to you;
you said, "Do not be afraid."

⁵⁸You championed my cause, Lord;
you redeemed my life.

⁵⁹You have seen the wrong done to me, LORD.
Uphold my cause!

⁶⁰You have seen all their vengeance,
all their plots against me.

⁶¹You have heard their insults, LORD,
all their schemes against me —

⁶²the words of those who rise against me,
and their murmuring against me all day long.

⁶³Watch them — whether they sit or stand,
I am the subject of their mocking songs.

⁶⁴Pay them back, LORD,
according to what their hands have done.

65 Give them a stubborn heart;
let your curse be upon them.

66 Pursue them in anger and destroy them
from under the heavens of the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Aleph () — first of three aleph verses. The triple acrostic begins. The word *gever* ('man') is not the common *ish* or *adam* but denotes a strong, vigorous man — the irony is deliberate. The 'rod of his fury' (*shevet evrato*) makes God the one wielding the rod. The speaker does not name God yet, only 'his' — the pronoun creates an ominous distance.
2. Aleph () — second verse. The verb *nahag* ('driven') is used for driving livestock or captives — the strong man is treated like an animal being herded. The contrast *hoshekh velo* or ('darkness, not light') inverts Amos 5:18, where the Day of the LORD is 'darkness, not light' — this is that day experienced firsthand.
3. Aleph () — third verse. The phrase *yashuv yahapokh yado* ('he turns and overturns his hand') conveys relentless, repeated striking — not a single blow but unending affliction. The word *akh* ('surely, only') emphasizes the isolation: the sufferer feels singled out. 'All day long' (*kol hayyom*) is the first of many temporal markers indicating the suffering has no respite.
4. Bet () — first verse. The verb *billah* ('worn away, consumed') describes erosion — flesh and skin wasting under prolonged suffering. The verb *shibbar* ('shattered') is intensified (Piel stem), indicating the bones are not merely broken but crushed. The body is systematically dismantled from the outside in: first skin, then flesh, then bones.
5. Bet () — second verse. The verb *banah* ('built') is siege language — the enemy builds siege works around a city. Here God builds the siege against the sufferer. The word *rosh* ('gall, poison, bitterness') refers to a bitter, possibly poisonous plant — the sufferer is walled in by toxic misery. The word *tela'ah* ('hardship, weariness') conveys exhaustion.
6. Bet () — third verse. The 'dark places' (*mahashakim*) are the realm of the dead — Sheol. The phrase *kemetei olam* ('like the dead of long ago') means the most thoroughly dead, those who have been in the grave so long no one remembers them. The sufferer is being described as already entombed. Cf. Psalm 143:3, which uses nearly identical language.
7. Gimel () — first verse. The verb *gadar* ('walled in, fenced') creates a prison image — the sufferer is enclosed on every side. The bronze chains (*nehoshti*) are heavy (*hikhibid*, from the root *k-v-d*, 'to be heavy') — the same root as *kavod* ('glory'). There is bitter irony: God's 'weightiness' once meant glory; now it means the weight of chains.
8. Gimel () — second verse. Two words for crying out: *ez'aq* ('cry for help') and *ashavve'a* ('shout, plead') — neither gets through. The verb *satam* ('shut out, blocked') means the prayer hits a wall. This is the opposite of the open heavens promised in covenant blessing — God has closed the communication channel. Cf. Job 30:20 for the same experience of unanswered prayer.
9. Gimel () — third verse. The walls are built of *gazit* ('cut stone, dressed stone') — not a flimsy barrier but permanent masonry. The verb *ivvah* ('made crooked, twisted') means even the paths that remain open lead nowhere useful. The image combines imprisonment with disorientation — walled in and lost simultaneously.
10. Dalet () — first verse. God is compared to predatory animals: a bear (*dov*) and a lion (*ari*) — Israel's two most dangerous wild beasts. Both are described as waiting in concealment (*orev*, 'lying in ambush'; *bemisttarim*, 'in hidden places'). The sufferer is the prey. Hosea 13:7-8 uses the same imagery: 'I will be like a lion to them; like a leopard I will lurk beside the way. I will fall upon them like a bear.' The Ketiv reads *ari* (without the he), while the Qere reads *aryeh* — both mean 'lion.'
11. Dalet () — second verse. The verb *sorer* ('turned aside') and *vayefasshekheni* ('torn apart, dismembered') continue the predator imagery — the bear or lion has seized its prey, dragged it off the path, and mauled it. The word *shomem* ('desolate, devastated') is the same word used for the desolation of Jerusalem — the man's inner state mirrors the city's outer ruin.
12. Dalet () — third verse. The predator image shifts to the warrior-archer image from 2:4. The word *mattara* ('target') means the sufferer is not hit by accident but aimed at deliberately. God is the archer; the man is the mark. This connects to Job 16:12-13 where Job uses the same archery imagery for divine hostility.
13. He () — first verse. The 'sons of his quiver' (*benei ashpatot*) is a Hebrew idiom for arrows. The kidneys (*khilyotai*) were considered the seat of the deepest emotions and the most vulnerable internal organs — the arrows penetrate to the innermost part of the body. This is not a surface wound but a mortal strike to the core.
14. He () — second verse. The word *sehoq* ('laughter, derision') and *neginatam* ('their song, their taunt-song') show that the sufferer's own community mocks him. This parallels Jeremiah's experience (Jeremiah 20:7) and anticipates the Suffering Servant's rejection (Isaiah 53:3). The mocking is not from enemies but from 'my people' (*ammi*) — the deepest betrayal.

- 15.** He () — third verse. The merorim ('bitter herbs') echo the Passover meal (Exodus 12:8) — but this is not memorial bitterness, it is present suffering. The la'anah ('wormwood') is Artemisia, proverbially the bitterest plant in the region. The verbs hisbi'ani ('sated me') and hirvani ('drenched me') mean the sufferer has been forced to consume bitterness until he is full to overflowing — a grotesque parody of being filled with good things.
- 16.** Vav () — first verse. The verb vayyagres ('he ground, crushed') with hatsats ('gravel') describes being forced to eat gravel — a vivid image of humiliation and degradation. The word efer ('ashes') connotes mourning (sitting in ashes) but also worthlessness — the sufferer is ground down to the same level as dust and debris.
- 17.** Vav () — second verse. The word shalom here carries its full weight: not merely the absence of conflict but the complete well-being that comes from right relationship with God. The sufferer has been cast so far from shalom that he cannot even remember what 'good' (tovah) feels like. The verb nashiti ('I have forgotten') indicates prolonged suffering — the memory of good times has been erased.
- 18.** Vav () — third verse. The word nitschi ('my endurance, my lasting strength') and tokhalti ('my hope, my expectation') are both declared lost. This is the absolute nadir — the sufferer has given up on God. The phrase meYHWH ('from the LORD') means the hope that came from God is what has died. This sets up the dramatic reversal that begins at verse 21.
- 19.** Zayin () — first verse. The imperative zekhor ('remember!') may be addressed to God or to the sufferer himself. The words la'anah ('wormwood') and rosh ('gall/poison') return from verse 15, forming an inclusio around the suffering. The word merudi ('my wandering, my homelessness') echoes 1:7, connecting the individual's displacement to the city's exile.
- 20.** Zayin () — second verse. The emphatic infinitive absolute zakhor tizkor ('remembering, it remembers') indicates memory that cannot be suppressed — the suffering replays constantly. The Ketiv reads vetashokh ('and bows down'), while the Qere reads vetashoakh ('and sinks') — both convey the same collapse of spirit. This verse is the hinge: the soul sinks to its lowest point, and from this depth the turn begins.
- 21.** Zayin () — third verse. The pivotal word is zot ('this') — what follows in verses 22-23 is the 'this' that the sufferer chooses to remember. The verb ohil ('I have hope, I wait') is from the root y-h-l, which carries the sense of patient waiting, not mere optimism. The sufferer does not deny the suffering of verses 1-20 but deliberately calls to mind something that coexists with it.
- 22.** Chet () — first verse. TEXTUAL NOTE: The Ketiv (written text) reads tamnu as 'we are finished/consumed' — making the verse say 'Because of the LORD's faithful loves, we are not consumed.' The Qere (marginal reading) vocalizes it as tamnu from tamam ('to be complete/cease'), making it 'The faithful loves of the LORD do not cease.' We follow the Qere with the majority of translations, but the Ketiv reading is also theologically powerful: it is precisely God's chesed that prevents total annihilation. The word rahamav ('his mercies') is from the root r-h-m, related to rehem ('womb') — God's mercy has the quality of a mother's visceral compassion for the child of her womb.
- 23.** Chet () — second verse. The word hadashim ('new') means these mercies are not recycled or diminished — they arrive fresh each morning like the manna in the wilderness (Exodus 16:21), which also appeared new each day and could not be stored. The exclamation rabbah emunatekha ('great is your faithfulness!') became the inspiration for Thomas Chisholm's 1923 hymn 'Great Is Thy Faithfulness.' The switch to second person ('your faithfulness') makes this a direct address to God — the sufferer is no longer talking about God but to him.
- 24.** Chet () — third verse. The word helek ('portion, share, inheritance') is land-distribution language from the conquest. When the tribes received their inheritance, the Levites received none — God himself was their inheritance (Numbers 18:20, Deuteronomy 10:9). The sufferer, who has lost everything, claims the Levitical inheritance: God himself is what remains. The verb ohil ('I will hope, I will wait') returns from verse 21, forming the frame of the hope passage.
- 25.** Tet () — first verse. The verb qavah ('to wait, to hope') involves active, expectant waiting — not passive resignation. The verb darash ('to seek') means diligent pursuit, not casual looking. Together they describe the posture of someone who trusts God enough to wait but engages enough to seek. The declaration tov YHWH ('the LORD is good') echoes Psalm 100:5 and 136:1.
- 26.** Tet () — second verse. Three words define the proper posture before God: yahil ('wait with hope'), dumam ('in silence'), and the goal is teshu'at YHWH ('the salvation/deliverance of the LORD'). The silence is not emptiness but trust — the opposite of the anxious crying of the early verses. The word teshu'ah ('salvation, deliverance') is from the same root as yeshu'ah and the name Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus.
- 27.** Tet () — third verse. The word ge'ever ('man, strong man') returns from verse 1, creating a frame — the strong man who has seen affliction now declares that bearing the yoke early in life has value. The 'yoke' (ol) can mean suffering, discipline, or the yoke of Torah. The wisdom is that suffering endured young builds the capacity to endure what comes later.
- 28.** Yod () — first verse. The word badad ('alone') echoes 1:1 where Jerusalem 'sits alone' — the same posture of desolation is now reframed as a posture of patient endurance. The silence (yiddom) from verse 26 continues. The verb natal ('laid upon, imposed') suggests a burden placed by God, accepted rather than fought.
- 29.** Yod () — second verse. The gesture of putting the mouth in the dust is total prostration and submission — the lowest possible posture before God. The word ulai ('perhaps') is startlingly honest — this is not a guarantee but a possibility. And the word tiqvah ('hope') is from the root q-v-h ('to wait'), connecting to the waiting of verse 25. Hope is not certainty; it is the willingness to wait in the dust.
- 30.** Yod () — third verse. The image of offering the cheek to the striker connects to Isaiah 50:6 (the Servant who 'gave his back to those who struck him') and to Jesus's teaching in Matthew 5:39. The word herpah ('disgrace, reproach') is to be accepted, not resisted — the sufferer absorbs shame as part of patient waiting for God's deliverance.

- 31. Kaf ()** — first verse. The word le'olam ('forever') is the key — God's rejection is real but not permanent. The verb yiznah ('reject, cast off') acknowledges that God has indeed rejected (cf. 2:7), but now places a time limit on it. This is the beginning of the theological argument: suffering is real, God caused it, but it is not the final word.
- 32. Kaf ()** — second verse. The verb hogah ('causes grief') is the same word used for God's affliction in 1:5 and 1:12, now placed in a conditional framework: though he grieves, he will also have mercy (riham, from the womb-compassion root r-h-m). The Ketiv reads hasadav (plural) and the Qere reads hasdo (singular) — either way, chesed is the basis of hope. We follow the Qere.
- 33. Kaf ()** — third verse. The phrase millibbo ('from his heart') is crucial: God's affliction is real but it does not arise from his deepest desire. The heart (lev) is the center of will and intention in Hebrew — God's core intention is not to harm but to restore. The verb innah ('afflict') and vayyaggeh ('grieve, cause sorrow') acknowledge the reality of divine-caused suffering while insisting it is not God's ultimate purpose.
- 34. Lamed ()** — first verse. Verses 34-36 form a unit describing injustices that the Lord does not approve of, even though humans commit them. The infinitive ledakke ('to crush') begins a series: crushing prisoners, perverting justice, defrauding — these acts displease God. Some read these as actions God would never do; others as actions God does not approve when humans do them.
- 35. Lamed ()** — second verse. The phrase lehatot mishpat ('to turn aside justice, to pervert a legal case') is the language of judicial corruption. The title Elyon ('Most High') emphasizes that these perversions of justice happen 'before his face' — God sees every act of injustice and does not approve, even when he permits suffering for covenantal reasons.
- 36. Lamed ()** — third verse. The verb le'avvet ('to wrong, to twist, to subvert') describes deliberately corrupting a legal proceeding. The phrase Adonai lo ra'ah is literally 'the Lord has not seen' — but in context it means 'the Lord does not look upon with favor / does not approve,' not that he is ignorant of it. God sees injustice and condemns it, even when his own judgments bring suffering.
- 37. Mem ()** — first verse. A rhetorical question asserting divine sovereignty: nothing happens without God's command (tsivvah). This is both comforting (nothing is random) and terrifying (the suffering is God's doing). The verse echoes Amos 3:6 ('Does disaster come to a city unless the LORD has done it?') and Isaiah 45:7.
- 38. Mem ()** — second verse. The Hebrew ra'ot ('bad things, disasters') and tov ('good') both proceed from the mouth of Elyon ('Most High'). The word ra'ot does not mean 'moral evil' here but 'calamity, disaster, harmful events' — God is sovereign over both fortune and misfortune. This is covenantal logic: the same God who blesses also curses, as Deuteronomy 28 laid out.
- 39. Mem ()** — third verse. The word yit'onen ('complain, murmur') is the same root used for Israel's complaining in the wilderness (Numbers 11:1). The argument is sharp: a person who is alive has no right to complain about suffering when they have sinned. The word ge'ever ('strong man') returns from verses 1 and 27. The Ketiv reads hata'o ('his sin,' singular) and the Qere reads hata'av ('his sins,' plural).
- 40. Nun ()** — first verse. The voice shifts from singular 'I' to plural 'we' — the individual's reflection becomes a communal call to action. The verbs nahpeshah ('let us search') and nahqorah ('let us investigate') are thorough — this is not casual self-reflection but forensic self-examination. The verb venashuvah ('let us return') is the core vocabulary of repentance (teshuvah) — turning back to God after straying.
- 41. Nun ()** — second verse. The gesture of lifted hands (kappayim) was the standard posture of prayer in the ancient Near East. The command to lift hearts (levavenu) as well as hands insists on internal sincerity, not mere external ritual. The destination is El bashamayim ('God in heaven') — the same God who seemed absent is now addressed as accessible.
- 42. Nun ()** — third verse. The confession pasha'nu umarinu ('we have transgressed and rebelled') uses both pasha (willful covenant violation) and marah (bitter rebellion) — the fullest admission of guilt. The blunt accusation attah lo salahta ('you have not forgiven') is not impudence but honest prayer: the community confesses sin and simultaneously tells God that his forgiveness has not yet come. This is the raw honesty that characterizes biblical lament.
- 43. Samekh ()** — first verse. The verb sakkotah ('you have covered/wrapped') portrays God as cloaked in anger — his wrath is his garment. The verb tirdefeinu ('you pursued us') makes God the pursuer and Israel the prey, echoing the predator imagery of verses 10-11. The phrase lo hamalta ('you showed no mercy') continues the refrain from chapter 2.
- 44. Samekh ()** — second verse. The cloud (anan) that once signified God's presence (Exodus 13:21, 40:34) has become a barrier blocking prayer. The irony is devastating: the pillar of cloud that guided Israel through the wilderness is now a wall preventing their prayers from reaching God. The verb me'avur ('from passing through') makes the barrier absolute — not even prayer penetrates.
- 45. Samekh ()** — third verse. The words sehi ('scrapings, filth') and ma'os ('refuse, something rejected') describe the lowest possible social status — Israel, once chosen and set apart (qadosh), has become garbage in the eyes of the nations. This reverses the election language of Deuteronomy 7:6.
- 46. Pe ()** — first verse. NOTE: The pe-ayin reversal continues from chapter 2; pe precedes ayin here as well. The enemies opening their mouths (patsu pihem) is a gesture of mockery and devouring — like predators opening their jaws. This echoes 2:16 almost verbatim, linking the two chapters.
- 47. Pe ()** — second verse. The pair pahad vapahat ('terror and pit') is a wordplay — the similar sounds create a sense of inescapability, like falling from one danger into another. Isaiah 24:17 uses the identical pair. The word hashe't ('devastation, ruin') and hashever ('destruction, breaking') pile up synonyms of catastrophe.
- 48. Pe ()** — third verse. The phrase palgei mayim ('channels of water, streams') for tears echoes Psalm 119:136. The speaker returns to first-person singular — the 'I' reasserts itself from the communal 'we.' The phrase bat ammi ('daughter of my people') personalizes the national catastrophe —

this is not abstract destruction but the ruin of the speaker's own community.

49. Ayin () — first verse. Following pe in the reversed order. The verb niggerah ('pours out, trickles') and lo tidmeh ('does not cease') describe unending weeping. The word hafugot ('cessation, relief, pauses') means there is not even a break in the tears — the grief is constant and uninterrupted.
50. Ayin () — second verse. The verb yashqif ('looks down, gazes from above') implies that God is watching from a distance — heaven — and has not yet intervened. The expectation is that God will eventually look and act, but the 'until' (ad) sets an indefinite time frame. The sufferer weeps until God responds.
51. Ayin () — third verse. The phrase eini olelah lenafshi ('my eye does harm to my soul') means that what the speaker sees — the suffering of the young women (benot iri, 'daughters of my city') — wounds him internally. Sight becomes the channel of suffering; he cannot look away, and each sight of suffering women intensifies his grief.
52. Tsade () — first verse. The emphatic infinitive absolute tsod tsaduni ('hunting they hunted me') intensifies the pursuit. The comparison to a bird (katsippor) suggests a small, defenseless creature — the strong man (gever) of verse 1 has been reduced to prey. The phrase hinnam ('without cause, for nothing') protests innocence, shifting from the communal confession of verse 42 back to individual protest.
53. Tsade () — second verse. The bor ('pit, cistern') connects directly to Jeremiah's experience of being thrown into a cistern (Jeremiah 38:6). The verb tsamethu ('they cut off, they silenced') means the enemies attempted to destroy him completely. Throwing stones (even, 'stone') may refer to sealing the pit with a stone or to stoning — either way, it is an attempt to ensure permanent silence.
54. Tsade () — third verse. Water over the head is the language of drowning and of overwhelming suffering (Psalm 69:1-2, Psalm 42:7). The word nigzarti ('I am cut off') means severed from the living — the same root as the 'cutting off' of the Suffering Servant in Isaiah 53:8. The speaker has reached the point of believing death is certain.
55. Qof () — first verse. From the lowest point — the bottom of the pit (bor tahtiyot, 'the lowest pit') — the sufferer calls on the name of YHWH. This is the turning point: at the moment of greatest desperation, he prays. The phrase qarati shimkha ('I called your name') is intimate — not a generic cry for help but an invocation of the personal, covenant name of God.
56. Qof () — second verse. The shift is dramatic: shamata ('you heard') — God actually listened. After verses of silence and blocked prayer (v. 8, v. 44), the speaker testifies that God heard from the pit. The word revahati ('my relief, my breathing room') means the speaker is gasping — he needs space to breathe. The prayer is both testimony of past hearing and plea for continued attention.
57. Qof () — third verse. The verb qaravta ('you drew near') reverses the distance of the entire poem — God moves toward the sufferer instead of away. The divine word al tira ('do not be afraid') is the most frequent divine command in the Hebrew Bible, appearing in theophanies from Abraham to Isaiah. It is God's characteristic response to human fear. The sufferer's testimony is that God did not remain distant.
58. Resh () — first verse. The verb ravta ('you championed, you contended for') is legal language — God served as the sufferer's advocate in court. The verb ga'alta ('you redeemed') is the go'el verb — God acted as kinsman-redeemer, the nearest relative who is obligated by blood to rescue. This is covenant language: God did not help as a stranger but rescued as family.
59. Resh () — second verse. The word avvatati ('the wrong done to me, my injustice') can mean either 'my wrongdoing' or 'the wrong done against me' — context favors the latter, as the speaker has been unjustly persecuted. The imperative shoftah mishpati ('judge my case') asks God to serve as judge in the legal dispute between the sufferer and his enemies.
60. Resh () — third verse. The word niqmatam ('their vengeance') and mahshevotam ('their plots, their schemes') indicate that the enemies' attacks are both reactive (vengeance) and premeditated (plots). The appeal is to God as witness — you have seen means the evidence is in, and now the sufferer awaits the verdict.
61. Shin () — first verse. The verb shamata ('you heard') parallels ra'itah ('you saw') from verses 59-60 — God has both seen and heard all the evidence. The word herpatam ('their reproach, their insults') is the public shaming language used throughout Lamentations. The sufferer builds a legal case with accumulated evidence: you saw, you heard, now act.
62. Shin () — second verse. The word sifte ('lips of') is metonymy for speech, and hegionam ('their murmuring, their meditation') suggests constant, low-level scheming — not just open attack but whispered conspiracy. The phrase kol hayyom ('all day long') echoes verse 3 and verse 14, forming a frame: the speaker is struck all day (v. 3), mocked all day (v. 14), and plotted against all day (v. 62).
63. Shin () — third verse. The merism shivtam veqimatam ('their sitting and their rising') means 'everything they do' — at all times and in every activity, the speaker is their target. The word manginatam ('their song, their taunt-song') echoes verse 14 — the mocking has not ceased. The imperative habbitah ('look! watch!') is addressed to God, urging him to observe the ongoing ridicule.
64. Tav () — first verse. The final triad turns to imprecation — a prayer for divine justice against the enemies. The verb tashiv ('give back, repay') and gemul ('recompense, what is deserved') invoke the principle of proportional justice: let the punishment match the crime. This parallels 1:22 and connects to the broader biblical theology of divine retribution.
65. Tav () — second verse. The phrase meginnat lev ('covering/hardening of heart') may mean 'a shield over the heart' — a heart that cannot feel, cannot repent, cannot receive God's word. The word ta'alatekha ('your curse') is the covenant-curse vocabulary — the sufferer asks God to redirect the curses from Israel onto the enemies. This is not personal vengeance but an appeal to covenantal justice.

66. Tav ם — third and final verse, completing the 66-verse triple acrostic. The verb *tirdof* ('pursue') reverses the hunter-prey dynamic of verse 52 — now God is asked to pursue the enemies as they pursued the speaker. The phrase *mitahat shemei YHWH* ('from under the heavens of the LORD') means total annihilation — removal from existence under God's sky. The chapter ends not with the hope of verses 22-24 but with a cry for justice, reminding the reader that hope and lament coexist without resolution in this book. The acrostic from aleph to tav is complete — total suffering, total confession, total hope, total imprecation, all contained within the ordered structure of the alphabet.

4

Summary: *Lamentations 4 returns to the single acrostic form — one verse per Hebrew letter, twenty-two verses tracing the alphabet of anguish. The chapter opens with the signature cry Eikhah ('How!'), the same word that opens chapters 1 and 2 and gives the book its Hebrew name. The poet surveys the siege's devastation in gruesome specificity: gold tarnished, sacred stones scattered, starving children begging for bread, nursing infants' tongues stuck to the roofs of their mouths, former aristocrats unrecognizable in the streets, mothers cooking their own children. The once-radiant Nazirites are blackened beyond recognition. Verses 13-16 indict the priests and prophets whose bloodshed within the city invited this catastrophe. Verse 20 delivers the chapter's theological shock: 'The breath of our nostrils, the anointed of the LORD, was captured in their pits' — likely King Zedekiah, the last Davidic king, trapped by the Babylonians. The chapter closes by turning to Edom, mocking her false sense of security and promising that her own cup of judgment is coming.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains some of the most harrowing imagery in all of scripture. Verse 10 states without flinching that compassionate women cooked their own children during the siege — the same atrocity prophesied in Deuteronomy 28:53-57 as the ultimate covenant curse. The poet does not look away. The phrase *mashiach YHWH* ('the anointed of the LORD') in verse 20 is one of the most theologically loaded moments in the book. This is the only occurrence in the Hebrew Bible where the 'anointed of the LORD' is described as captured and helpless. The Davidic king, who was supposed to be God's representative on earth, is snared like an animal. The acrostic exhibits the *ayin-pe* reversal found also in chapters 2 and 3 — the letter *pe* (verse 17) precedes *ayin* (verse 18), departing from standard alphabetical order. This reversal may reflect an older or alternative alphabetic tradition, or it may be deliberate literary disruption mirroring the inversion of the world the poet describes.*

Translation Friction: *The word *paz* ('fine gold') in verse 2 is rare and required careful distinction from the more common *zahav* ('gold'). In verse 3, *tannim* (jackals) versus *tannin* (sea monster) is a well-known textual crux — we followed the Masoretic pointing for 'jackals.' The verb *zakhu* ('were bright/pure') in verse 7 describing the Nazirites carries both physical brilliance and ritual purity, and no single English word captures both. Verse 20 required decisions about whether *mashiach YHWH* refers specifically to Zedekiah or to the office of kingship in general — we preserved the ambiguity in the rendering and discussed it in the notes. The *ayin-pe* reversal (*pe* in verse 17, *ayin* in verse 18) is preserved in the acrostic structure.*

Connections: *The Eikhah opening connects to Lamentations 1:1 and 2:1, forming a three-fold refrain across the book. The covenant-curse fulfillment in verse 10 connects to Deuteronomy 28:53-57 and 2 Kings 6:28-29. The *mashiach YHWH* language of verse 20 connects to 1 Samuel 24:6, 2 Samuel 1:14, and the broader Davidic covenant theology. The cup of judgment given to Edom (v. 21) connects to Jeremiah 25:15-29, Obadiah 1:16, and Psalm 75:8. Edom's coming judgment connects to the entire book of Obadiah and to Isaiah 34 and 63:1-6. The scattered sacred stones (v. 1) echo the destruction imagery of Psalm 79:1 and Jeremiah 52.*

¹How the gold has grown dull,
the finest gold discolored!
The sacred stones lie scattered
at the head of every street.

²The precious children of Zion,
once valued as fine gold —
how they are regarded as clay jars,

the work of a potter's hands!

³Even jackals offer the breast
and nurse their young,
but the daughter of my people has become cruel,
like ostriches in the wilderness.

⁴The nursing infant's tongue clings
to the roof of its mouth from thirst;
small children beg for bread,
but no one breaks any for them.

⁵Those who feasted on delicacies
waste away in the streets;
those raised in scarlet garments
now embrace garbage heaps.

⁶The iniquity of the daughter of my people
is greater than the sin of Sodom,
which was overthrown in a moment
with no hands turning against her.

⁷Her consecrated ones were brighter than snow,
whiter than milk;
their bodies more ruddy than coral,
their form like lapis lazuli.

⁸Their appearance is darker than soot;
they go unrecognized in the streets.
Their skin has shriveled against their bones,
dry as a stick.

⁹Better off were those slain by the sword
than those slain by famine,
who waste away, pierced through
for lack of the produce of the field.

¹⁰The hands of compassionate women
cooked their own children;
they became their food
in the destruction of the daughter of my people.

¹¹The LORD exhausted his wrath;
he poured out his burning anger.
He kindled a fire in Zion
that consumed her foundations.

¹²The kings of the earth did not believe,
nor any who dwell in the world,
that foe or enemy could enter

the gates of Jerusalem.

¹³It was for the sins of her prophets,
the iniquities of her priests,
who shed the blood of the righteous
in her midst.

¹⁴They stagger through the streets like the blind,
defiled with blood,
so that no one can touch
their garments.

¹⁵'Get away! Unclean!' people shout at them.
'Get away! Get away! Do not touch!'
So they flee and wander.
Among the nations it is said,
'They can stay here no longer.'

¹⁶The face of the LORD scattered them;
he will look on them no longer.
They showed no regard for priests
and no favor to elders.

¹⁷Our eyes still strained
for help that never came;
from our watchtowers we watched
for a nation that could not save.

¹⁸They tracked our every step
so we could not walk in our own squares.
Our end drew near, our days were spent,
for our end had come.

¹⁹Our pursuers were swifter
than eagles in the sky;
over the mountains they chased us,
in the wilderness they ambushed us.

²⁰The breath of our nostrils,
the anointed of the LORD,
was captured in their pits —
he of whom we said,
'In his shadow we will live among the nations.'

²¹Celebrate and rejoice, daughter of Edom,
you who dwell in the land of Uz!
The cup will pass to you as well —
you will get drunk and strip yourself bare.

**²²Your punishment is complete, daughter of Zion;
he will not exile you again.
But your iniquity, daughter of Edom, he will punish;
he will expose your sins.**

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Eikhah ('How!') opens this chapter as it does chapters 1 and 2, the signature cry that gives the book its Hebrew name. The word carries shock and disbelief rather than interrogation — it is an exclamation, not a question seeking an answer.
1. The Hebrew uses two words for gold: zahav (common gold) and ketem (refined, pure gold). We rendered ketem as 'finest gold' to capture its distinction from ordinary zahav. The verb yu'am means 'to grow dim, to lose luster' — the gold has not disappeared but has been degraded.
1. The 'sacred stones' (avnei-qodesh) likely refers either to the stones of the Temple itself or metaphorically to the people of Zion (as verse 2 will make explicit). Their being 'scattered' at every street corner conveys total desecration — what was holy is now trampled in public spaces.
2. The metaphor now clarifies verse 1: the 'gold' and 'sacred stones' were the people themselves. The children of Zion were once considered paz ('fine gold,' an even rarer term than ketem) but are now equated with nivlei cheres — earthenware vessels, cheap and disposable. The contrast between paz (the most precious metal) and cheres (common clay) captures the total collapse of human dignity under siege.
2. The verb nechshevu ('they are regarded, reckoned') is passive — someone is doing the reckoning. The poet leaves ambiguous whether this is God's reckoning, the enemy's, or the world's.
3. The Hebrew tannim is pointed here as 'jackals' (from tan), not 'sea monsters' (tannin). The KJV's 'sea monsters' follows an alternative reading. We follow the Masoretic pointing since jackals, as land animals known to nurse their young, create the more coherent comparison: even wild scavengers nurse their offspring, but siege-starved mothers in Jerusalem cannot.
3. The ostrich comparison (ye'enim) draws on the ancient Near Eastern belief that ostriches abandoned their eggs (see Job 39:13-16). The 'daughter of my people' (bat-ammi) is the poet's recurring personification of Jerusalem/Judah.
4. The verb davaq ('cling, stick') is viscerally physical — the infant's tongue is literally glued to its palate from dehydration. This is the same verb used in Genesis 2:24 for a man 'clinging' to his wife — a word of intimate attachment here turned into an image of suffering.
4. The phrase poresh ein lahem ('no one breaks for them') refers to the practice of breaking bread to share it. The absence of anyone to break bread for children indicates total social collapse — even the most basic communal care has ceased.
5. The contrast between former luxury and present degradation is absolute. Ma'adanim ('delicacies') denotes rich, refined food — now these same people starve in public. The verb nashammu ('are desolate, waste away') conveys both physical starvation and emotional devastation.
5. Tola ('scarlet') refers to the expensive crimson dye from the tola'at worm, worn only by the wealthy. Those who wore royal purple now clutch ashpattot ('refuse heaps, garbage dumps') for warmth or for scraps. The verb chibbequ ('embrace, cling to') implies desperate intimacy with filth.
6. The Hebrew avon can mean both 'iniquity' and 'punishment for iniquity,' and chattat can mean both 'sin' and 'sin offering/punishment.' The ambiguity is deliberate — Jerusalem's guilt and its punishment both exceed Sodom's. We rendered with the primary meanings ('iniquity' and 'sin') while noting this double sense.
6. The phrase 'no hands turning against her' (lo-chalu vah yadayim) means Sodom was destroyed instantly by divine fire without prolonged human siege. Jerusalem's suffering is worse precisely because it is prolonged — the slow starvation of siege rather than quick annihilation. Sodom had it easier.
7. Nezirim could refer to 'Nazirites' (those under the Nazirite vow) or more broadly to 'princes, consecrated nobles.' We rendered 'consecrated ones' to preserve the ambiguity. The description emphasizes physical beauty and health: snow-white skin, ruddy complexion, bodies gleaming like precious stones.
7. The word peninim is traditionally rendered 'rubies' but more likely refers to red coral — a precious material in the ancient Near East. Sappir in biblical Hebrew refers to lapis lazuli (the deep blue stone), not modern sapphire. The gizratam ('their form, their cutting') suggests a sculpted, polished appearance.
8. The reversal from verse 7 is devastating: those who gleamed like snow and coral are now darker than shechor ('soot, blackness') — not a reference to skin color but to the filth, starvation, and sun-exposure of siege conditions. The verb nikru ('recognized') in the negative indicates these former nobles are so emaciated and grime-covered that their own neighbors cannot identify them.
8. The verb tsafad ('shriveled, clung') describes skin shrinking against bone from starvation. The comparison to etz ('wood, stick') captures both dryness and rigidity — living flesh has become dead wood.
9. The grim calculus of siege: a quick death by sword is preferable to slow death by starvation. The verb yazuvu ('flow away, ooze') describes the gradual wasting of the body — they literally melt away. The word meduqqarim ('pierced through') borrows the language of violent death and applies it to hunger — famine 'stabs' them as surely as any blade.

9. Tenu'vot sadai ('produce of the field') is achingly specific — these people are dying for lack of the most basic agricultural provisions, the grain and fruit that the land of covenant promise was supposed to supply.
10. This verse is among the most horrifying in all scripture, and the poet renders it with devastating restraint. The adjective rachmaniyyot ('compassionate') is the key — these were not monsters but loving mothers driven to the unspeakable by starvation. The word comes from the root r-ch-m, related to rechem ('womb') — these are women defined by womb-love who were forced to consume what their wombs produced.
10. The verb bishlu ('cooked, boiled') is clinical and specific — not raw desperation but actual preparation of food. This fulfills the covenant curse of Deuteronomy 28:53-57, which warned that siege conditions would reduce parents to eating their children. The word levarot ('as food, for sustenance') completes the horror with matter-of-fact finality.
11. The verb killah ('completed, exhausted, spent') applied to divine wrath suggests God emptied the full reservoir of his fury — nothing was held back. The image of wrath being 'poured out' (shafakh) like liquid is standard prophetic language (Ezekiel 7:8, 14:19), but here it combines with fire imagery: the anger is both flood and flame.
11. The fire consuming yesodoteha ('her foundations') means the destruction reaches below the surface. Not just walls and buildings but the very foundations — the city is ruined down to its base. This may also carry theological resonance: Zion's 'foundations' included God's covenant promises to David (Psalm 87:1).
12. The verb he'eminu ('believed') from the root a-m-n emphasizes that Jerusalem's fall was unthinkable to the entire known world. The city's reputation for impregnability was legendary — protected by terrain, by walls, and above all by the belief that God dwelled there. The pairing of tsar ('adversary, oppressor') and oyeve ('enemy') is a standard Hebrew doublet intensifying the idea.
13. The poet identifies the cause of Jerusalem's fall: not the strength of Babylon but the corruption of Jerusalem's own spiritual leaders. The paired terms chattoat ('sins') for prophets and avonot ('iniquities') for priests use the two primary Hebrew sin-words, covering the full range of moral failure. The shedding of righteous blood (dam tsaddiqim) refers to the judicial murder of the innocent — prophets and priests used their authority to condemn the righteous to death rather than protect them.
14. The subject continues from verse 13 — the prophets and priests who shed innocent blood now wander Jerusalem like blind men. The verb na'u ('they stagger, wander') suggests disorientation and purposelessness. The word nigo'alu ('they are defiled, polluted') uses the same root as go'el ('redeemer') in a grimly ironic inversion — instead of being redeemers of blood, they are polluted by it.
14. The detail that no one can touch their garments evokes the purity laws of Leviticus — these priests are now so contaminated by bloodguilt that they render impure anyone who contacts them. The very guardians of ritual purity have become sources of contamination.
15. The cry suru tameh ('Get away! Unclean!') echoes the leper's required self-announcement (Leviticus 13:45-46). The priests and prophets who once declared others clean or unclean now receive the leper's cry themselves. The triple suru ('get away, get away') conveys escalating revulsion.
15. The phrase baggoyim ('among the nations') indicates that even in exile, these leaders find no rest — the nations themselves refuse to shelter them. The verb lagur ('to sojourn, to dwell as a resident alien') being negated means they are denied even the most basic hospitality afforded to foreigners.
16. Penei YHWH ('the face of the LORD') can mean God's presence or God's anger — here the context indicates wrathful attention. The verb chilleqam ('divided, scattered them') means God's gaze itself became the instrument of their dispersal. This is the inversion of the Aaronic blessing: instead of 'the LORD lift up his face upon you' (Numbers 6:26), God's face drives them away.
16. The second half shifts subject: 'they' (the enemies or the people) showed no respect for the priests and elders during the siege and fall. The social hierarchy that organized Israelite life collapsed entirely.
17. This is the pe verse (note the ayin-pe reversal from standard alphabetical order, matching chapters 2 and 3). The voice shifts to first-person plural — the community now speaks directly. The verb tikhlenu ('fail, waste away') applied to eyes conveys the physical strain of watching the horizon endlessly for reinforcements that never arrive.
17. The 'nation that could not save' (goy lo yoshia) almost certainly refers to Egypt, on whom Judah's kings repeatedly relied against Babylon (Jeremiah 37:5-8, Ezekiel 29:6-7). The word hevel ('vanity, futility') underscores that this hope was empty from the start.
18. This is the ayin verse (following pe — the reversal). The verb tsadu ('they hunted, tracked') uses hunting language for urban warfare — the enemy stalked the inhabitants through their own streets. The word rechovoteinu ('our public squares') emphasizes that the spaces of communal life became killing grounds.
18. The repetition of qitseinu ('our end') in both the third and fourth lines creates a drumbeat of finality. The verb male'u ('were full, were completed') applied to 'our days' means the allotted time has expired — there is no more.
19. The nesharim ('eagles' or 'vultures') are the largest and fastest raptors in the Levant — the comparison emphasizes the terrifying speed of the Babylonian pursuit. The same comparison appears in Deuteronomy 28:49, where God warns that the covenant-curse nation will come 'like an eagle swooping down' — another fulfillment of the Deuteronomic curses.
19. The shift from mountains to wilderness traces the flight route of those trying to escape Jerusalem — south through the Judean hills toward the Arabah desert. This matches the account of Zedekiah's flight in 2 Kings 25:4-5 and Jeremiah 39:4-5.

- 20.** This verse is the theological center of the chapter. Mashiach YHWH ('the anointed of the LORD') almost certainly refers to King Zedekiah, captured by the Babylonians as he fled through the plains of Jericho (2 Kings 25:5, Jeremiah 39:5). The phrase ruach appeinu ('the breath of our nostrils') is borrowed from ancient Near Eastern royal language — Egyptian texts use identical phrasing for the Pharaoh.
- 20.** The word shechitotam ('their pits') uses hunting vocabulary — the king was trapped like a wild animal in a pit-trap. This is deeply humiliating language for an anointed monarch. The people's confidence that they would 'live in his shadow among the nations' (survive exile under his protection) proved catastrophically misplaced.
- 20.** This is the only verse in the Hebrew Bible where the mashiach YHWH is described as captured and helpless. The theological crisis is immense: if God's anointed can be trapped like prey, what remains of the Davidic promise?
- 21.** The imperative sisi ve-simchi ('celebrate and rejoice') is bitterly ironic — the poet mocks Edom's gloating over Jerusalem's fall by promising that the same cup of judgment will reach her. Edom (Israel's perpetual rival, descended from Esau) evidently celebrated Judah's destruction — see Obadiah 1:12 and Psalm 137:7.
- 21.** The 'cup' (kos) is the cup of divine wrath — a standard prophetic image (Jeremiah 25:15-29, Isaiah 51:17, Habakkuk 2:16). Getting drunk on this cup means being overwhelmed by judgment. The verb tit'ari ('strip yourself bare, expose yourself') adds humiliation to punishment — Edom will be publicly shamed. The land of Uz is associated with both Edom and the setting of Job (Job 1:1).
- 22.** The chapter ends with a sharp contrast between Zion and Edom. The verb tam ('is complete, is finished') applied to Zion's iniquity/punishment offers a sliver of hope — the suffering has an end. The verb paqad ('visit, attend to, punish') applied to Edom's iniquity promises that Edom's reckoning is coming.
- 22.** The verb gillah ('uncover, expose, exile') applied to Edom's sins carries a double meaning: God will both 'uncover' (expose) Edom's wrongdoing and 'exile' her. The same root means both 'reveal' and 'deport' — Edom's hidden sins will be laid bare and she will suffer the same exile she mocked in Judah.
- 22.** Again, avon can mean both 'iniquity' and 'punishment for iniquity.' For Zion, the punishment aspect is emphasized (it is 'complete'). For Edom, both senses apply — her guilt will be exposed and punished.

5

Summary: *Lamentations 5 is a communal prayer — the entire community speaks in the first-person plural, petitioning God to see and remember their suffering. Unlike chapters 1-4, this chapter is NOT acrostic, though it preserves the twenty-two verse count matching the Hebrew alphabet. The poem catalogues the specific indignities of life under occupation and exile: loss of land and homes, forced labor, dependence on enemies for basic provisions, sexual violence against women, humiliation of elders, and the cessation of all joy. The chapter builds toward two climactic appeals: verse 19 affirms God's eternal sovereignty ('You, LORD, reign forever; your throne endures from generation to generation'), and verse 21 pleads for restoration ('Return us to yourself, LORD, and we will return; renew our days as of old'). But the book ends with verse 22's devastating open wound: 'Unless you have utterly rejected us, and are angry with us beyond measure.' The Hebrew Bible's liturgical tradition requires re-reading verse 21 after verse 22 so that the book does not close on despair — a practice that itself testifies to how unbearable this ending is.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the only one in Lamentations without acrostic structure, yet its twenty-two verses preserve the alphabet count — as if the poet has moved beyond the formal constraint of the acrostic but cannot escape the number twenty-two, the shape of the Hebrew alphabet still governing even formless grief. The shift to communal petition is significant: the individual voice of the poet and the personified voice of Zion give way to the collective 'we.' This is no longer one person's lament but an entire people's prayer. The final verse (5:22) is one of the most debated lines in the Hebrew Bible. The particle ki im can mean 'unless,' 'but rather,' 'surely,' or 'even though' — and the meaning of the entire book hinges on how it is read. We have rendered it 'Unless' to preserve the conditional horror: the possibility that God has permanently rejected his people is left hanging without resolution. The Jewish liturgical practice of repeating verse 21 after verse 22 (also done for Ecclesiastes, Isaiah, and Malachi) is called hashlamah — the tradition refuses to let a prophetic book end on judgment or despair. This practice does not change the text; it supplements it with communal hope.*

Translation Friction: The particle ki im in verse 22 is the most consequential translation decision in the chapter. It can be adversative ('but rather'), conditional ('unless'), or emphatic ('surely'). We chose 'Unless' because it preserves the open-ended anguish — the poet does not resolve whether God has rejected them or not. The verb chadesh ('renew') in verse 21 could mean 'restore to former condition' or 'make new' — we used 'renew' which carries both senses. The word peruqim in verse 18 (describing Mount Zion as desolate, with foxes walking on it) uses the rare form shu'alim, which means 'foxes' or 'jackals' — small predators scavenging where the Temple once stood.

Connections: The opening petition 'Remember, LORD' connects to Psalm 74:2, 89:50, and Nehemiah 1:8. The reference to ancestors' sins (v. 7) connects to Jeremiah 31:29 and Ezekiel 18:2 ('The fathers have eaten sour grapes'). The foxes on Mount Zion (v. 18) inverts Song of Songs 2:15 ('Catch for us the foxes') — the foxes that were nuisances in the vineyard now rule the ruin. Verse 19's throne affirmation connects to Psalm 9:7, 45:6, and 102:12. The plea 'Return us and we will return' (v. 21) uses the key verb of Jeremiah and Hosea — shub/teshuvah — and connects to Jeremiah 31:18 ('Turn me back and I will be turned'). The unresolved ending connects thematically to Psalm 44, another communal lament that ends with an unanswered 'Why?' and 'How long?'

¹Remember, LORD, what has happened to us;
look and see our disgrace.

²Our inheritance has been handed over to strangers,
our homes to foreigners.

³We have become orphans, fatherless;
our mothers are like widows.

⁴We pay money for our own water;
our own wood comes to us at a price.

⁵With yokes on our necks we are driven;
we are exhausted and given no rest.

⁶We stretched out our hands to Egypt
and to Assyria, just to get enough bread.

⁷Our ancestors sinned and are no more,
but we bear the weight of their iniquities.

⁸Slaves rule over us;
there is no one to rescue us from their hand.

⁹We risk our lives to get our bread
because of the sword in the wilderness.

¹⁰Our skin burns like an oven
from the scorching heat of famine.

¹¹Women were violated in Zion,
young women in the towns of Judah.

¹²Officials were hung up by their hands;
the faces of elders were shown no honor.

¹³Young men were forced to grind at the mill,
and boys staggered under loads of wood.

¹⁴The elders have vanished from the city gate,
the young men from their music.

¹⁵The joy of our hearts has ceased;
our dancing has turned to mourning.

¹⁶The crown has fallen from our head.
Woe to us, for we have sinned!

¹⁷Because of this our heart is sick;
because of these things our eyes grow dark.

¹⁸Because Mount Zion lies desolate —
foxes prowl across it.

¹⁹But you, LORD, reign forever;
your throne endures from generation to generation.

²⁰Why do you forget us forever?
Why do you abandon us for so long?

²¹Return us to yourself, LORD, and we will return;
renew our days as of old.

²²Unless you have utterly rejected us
and are angry with us beyond measure.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *zekhor* ('remember') is not a request for God to recall information he has forgotten but a plea for God to act on what he knows — in Hebrew, 'remembering' implies responsive action (as when God 'remembered' Noah in Genesis 8:1 and the flood receded). The verb *habbitah* ('look') and *re'eh* ('see') together form an urgent double imperative — the community begs God to turn his attention toward them.
2. *Cherpatenu* ('our disgrace, our reproach') sets the tone for the entire chapter: this is a catalogue of humiliations, not just sufferings.
3. The *nachalatenu* ('our inheritance') refers to the ancestral land allotments — the land God promised to each tribe and family as a permanent possession (Joshua 13-21). The verb *nehpekchah* ('has been turned over, reversed') implies a total inversion of the covenant promise. The parallel between *zarim* ('strangers') and *nokhrim* ('foreigners') emphasizes that outsiders now possess what God gave to Israel.
4. The word *yetomim* ('orphans') paired with *ve'ein av* ('and without a father') creates a painful redundancy — they are not just technically orphans but utterly without paternal protection. The fathers are dead or deported. The mothers are *ke'almanot* ('like widows') — the qualification 'like' may indicate that some husbands are alive in exile but functionally absent, leaving families in the vulnerable status of the fatherless and widowed, the two groups the Torah most insistently commands Israel to protect (Deuteronomy 10:18, 24:17).
5. The indignity is specific: the people must purchase water and firewood from their own land — resources that were freely available are now controlled by occupiers who sell them back. The word *bekesef* ('with silver, for money') and *bimechir* ('at a price') emphasize the monetization of basic necessities. This reverses the covenantal promise of a land freely providing for its people (Deuteronomy 8:7-9).
6. The phrase *al tsavvareinu* ('upon our necks') evokes the image of an ox yoke — forced labor under foreign taskmasters. The verb *nirdaphnu* ('we are pursued, driven') carries the sense of relentless compulsion. The combination of *yaga'nu* ('we are weary, exhausted') with *lo hunach lanu* ('no rest is given to us') echoes the slave conditions of Egypt before the Exodus. The covenant was supposed to free them from exactly this.
7. The idiom *natan yad* ('gave the hand') means to submit, to make a pact, to surrender — the people were forced to seek terms with foreign powers merely to survive. Egypt and Assyria represent the two great imperial powers that dominated the ancient Near East. That Israel must beg bread from the very empires God delivered them from is a devastating reversal of Exodus.

6. The phrase *lisboa lachem* ('to be satisfied with bread') reduces the nation's aspirations to bare subsistence — not prosperity, not blessing, just enough food to survive.
7. This verse voices the generational complaint also found in Jeremiah 31:29 and Ezekiel 18:2 — 'the fathers ate sour grapes and the children's teeth are set on edge.' The verb *savalnu* ('we bear, we carry') treats iniquity as a physical burden passed from one generation to the next. The tension between corporate and individual responsibility is left unresolved here — the poet does not argue theology but simply states the felt injustice.
7. The phrase *ve'einam* ('and they are not') means the ancestors have died — they sinned and escaped to death, while the living generation inherits the punishment.
8. The word *avadim* ('slaves, servants') ruling over free Israelites represents total social inversion. This may refer to low-ranking Babylonian officials governing Judah, or it may express the humiliation of being governed by those the community considers beneath them. The verb *mashlu* ('they rule, they govern') is the same verb used for legitimate governance — now applied to illegitimate overlords.
8. The phrase *poreq ein miyyadam* ('there is no one to tear us from their hand') uses *poreq* ('one who tears away, rescuer') — there is no liberator, no deliverer. The absence of a *go'el* or redeemer is the defining crisis.
9. The phrase *benaphshenu* ('at the cost of our lives, with our souls') means that foraging for food is a life-threatening venture. The *cherev hamidbar* ('sword of the wilderness') refers to marauding bands and raiders in the open country between settlements — those who venture out to find food may be killed by bandits or enemy patrols. Basic sustenance now requires mortal risk.
10. The verb *nikhmaru* ('are burning, are feverish') describes skin that is hot to the touch — inflamed either from fever or from the metabolic breakdown of starvation. The word *tannur* ('oven, furnace') compares their skin to the heated clay walls of a bread oven. The phrase *zal'aphot ra'av* ('scorching blasts of famine') treats hunger as if it were a desert wind — a burning force that withers the body from within.
11. The verb *innu* ('humiliated, violated') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual assault (see Genesis 34:2, Deuteronomy 22:24, 2 Samuel 13:14). We rendered it directly as 'violated' rather than softening it — the text names this atrocity plainly. The pairing of *nashim* ('women') and *betulot* ('young women, virgins') indicates that the violence was indiscriminate, affecting women of all ages across the entire territory of Judah, not only in Jerusalem.
12. The verb *nitlu* ('were hung, were suspended') likely refers to impalement or suspension as a form of execution or public humiliation — a common Assyrian and Babylonian practice. The word *sarim* ('officials, princes, leaders') indicates that the ruling class was specifically targeted for degrading punishment.
12. The phrase *penei zeqenim lo nehbaru* ('the faces of elders were not honored') means the cultural deference normally accorded to the elderly was completely disregarded. The verb *nehbaru* (from *hadar*, 'to honor, to show respect') is negated — the social fabric is torn.
13. Grinding at the mill (*techon*) was traditionally women's work or slave labor (Exodus 11:5, Judges 16:21 — Samson grinding in the Philistine prison). Forcing young men to do it is deliberate humiliation. The verb *nasa'u* ('they carried, bore') indicates forced labor. The word *ne'arim* ('boys, youths') staggering under wood (*ba'etz kashalu*) paints a picture of child labor — children collapsing under burdens too heavy for their bodies.
14. The *sha'ar* ('gate') was the center of public life — where justice was administered, business conducted, and community decisions made (Ruth 4:1-11, Proverbs 31:23). The elders' absence from the gate means civic life has ceased entirely. The verb *shavtu* ('they have ceased, stopped') implies permanent cessation, not temporary interruption.
14. The pairing of elders at the gate with young men and their music captures the full spectrum of communal life — governance and celebration, wisdom and joy — all of it gone.
15. The verb *shavat* ('has ceased') echoes verse 14 — the cessation is comprehensive. *Mesos libbenu* ('the joy of our hearts') is not superficial happiness but deep, settled gladness. The verb *nehpakh* ('has been turned, overturned') is the same verb used for the overthrow of Sodom (Genesis 19:25) — joy has been catastrophically inverted into mourning. The word *mecholenu* ('our dancing') refers to communal circle dances associated with festivals and celebrations (Exodus 15:20, Judges 21:21).
16. The *ateret roshenu* ('crown of our head') could refer to the monarchy (the Davidic crown), to national dignity, or to the festive garlands worn during celebrations. All three readings work — the people have lost their king, their honor, and their joy. The cry *oy na lanu* ('woe to us') is the people's own acknowledgment of responsibility — in the midst of cataloguing external sufferings, they confess: *ki chatanu* ('for we have sinned'). The community does not blame God alone.
17. The adjective *daveh* ('sick, faint, ill') describes a heart weakened by grief — the same word describes menstrual sickness in Leviticus 15:33, carrying the sense of chronic, debilitating affliction. The verb *chashkhu* ('grow dark, become dim') applied to eyes means vision is failing — either literally from malnutrition or figuratively from despair. The demonstratives 'this' and 'these' point both backward to the sufferings catalogued and forward to the specific devastation in verse 18.
18. This is the single most devastating image of desolation in the chapter: Mount Zion, where the Temple stood, where God's presence dwelled, where the Davidic king reigned — now so thoroughly abandoned that wild animals roam freely over it. The *shu'alim* ('foxes' or 'jackals') are scavengers associated with ruins (Ezekiel 13:4, Nehemiah 4:3 — 'if a fox goes up on it, he will break down their stone wall'). The verb *hillekhum* ('they walk about') suggests not a single sighting but habitual presence — the foxes have taken up residence.

- 18.** The image inverts Song of Songs 2:15: there, foxes threatened the vineyards but could be caught; here, they own the ruins. What was once sacred ground is now an animal den.
- 19.** The emphatic *attah* ('you') at the beginning contrasts God's permanence with everything that has perished. The verb *teshev* ('you sit, you remain, you are enthroned') carries the specific sense of sitting on a throne — God's kingship endures even when the earthly Davidic throne is empty. The phrase *le'olam* ('forever') paired with *ledor vador* ('from generation to generation') creates a double statement of permanence.
- 19.** This verse functions as the theological hinge of the chapter: the sufferings of verses 1-18 are brought before a God who still reigns (v. 19), which grounds the petition of verse 21. If God were not on his throne, the petition would be pointless.
- 20.** The question *lammah* ('why?') is the cry of the lament tradition — not requesting information but protesting injustice (Psalm 10:1, 22:1, 44:23-24). The verb *tishkachenu* ('you forget us') is theologically charged: God's 'forgetting' is the opposite of the 'remembering' requested in verse 1. If to remember is to act, to forget is to abandon.
- 20.** The parallel between *lanetsach* ('forever, perpetually') and *le'orekh yamim* ('for length of days, for so long') creates a crescendo of anguish: God's forgetting feels not temporary but permanent. The word *lanetsach* echoes the *olam* of verse 19 — if God reigns forever, why does he also forget forever?
- 21.** The verb *hashivenu* ('return us, restore us, bring us back') is a *hiphil* imperative of *shub* — the causative form means 'cause us to return.' The theology is precise: the people cannot turn back to God by their own power. God must turn them first, and then (*venashuvah*, 'and we will return') they can respond. This same theology appears in Jeremiah 31:18: 'Turn me back and I will be turned.'
- 21.** The verb *chadesh* ('renew') asks God to make their days *ke-qedem* ('as of old, as in ancient times') — a plea for restoration to the former covenant relationship. Whether this means a return to pre-exilic conditions or a renewal of the Sinai relationship is left open.
- 21.** In Jewish liturgical practice, this verse is re-read after verse 22 so that the book of Lamentations does not end on despair. This custom (*hashlamah*) is also applied to the final verses of Isaiah, Ecclesiastes, and Malachi.
- 22.** This final verse is the most debated line in Lamentations. The particle *ki im* can function as 'unless,' 'but rather,' 'surely,' or 'except.' We render it 'Unless' to preserve the conditional force: the plea of verse 21 is followed by the terrifying possibility — not the certainty — that God's rejection may be final. The book ends suspended between hope and despair.
- 22.** The verb *ma'os me'astanu* ('you have utterly rejected us') uses the infinitive absolute construction for emphasis — if God has rejected them, the rejection is total and complete. The verb *qatsaphta* ('you are angry') with *ad me'od* ('exceedingly, beyond measure') pushes divine wrath to its extreme.
- 22.** The book ends here — without resolution, without comfort, without divine response. The silence after verse 22 is itself a theological statement. The Jewish tradition of re-reading verse 21 after verse 22 is not a textual emendation but a liturgical refusal to let the final word be despair. The text itself, however, ends in the dark.

Ezekiel

1

Summary: *Ezekiel 1 opens the book with the most elaborate theophany in the Hebrew Bible — the throne-chariot vision (later called the merkavah in Jewish tradition). Ezekiel, a priest among the Babylonian exiles by the Kebar canal, sees the heavens opened in the thirtieth year, the fifth year of King Jehoiachin's exile (593 BCE). From a storm wind out of the north emerges a massive cloud of fire, and within it four living creatures (chayot), each with four faces and four wings. Beside each creature is a wheel within a wheel (ofannim), their rims full of eyes. Above the creatures stretches an expanse (raqia), and above the expanse stands a throne of sapphire, and on it the likeness of a human form surrounded by radiance. Ezekiel identifies this as 'the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD' — stacking three layers of distancing language to avoid claiming he saw God directly. At the sight, he falls on his face.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the foundation of Jewish merkavah mysticism and one of the most studied passages in the history of biblical interpretation. The Mishnah (Hagigah 2:1) restricts its exposition to one student at a time, and only to those of mature learning. The Hebrew is deliberately strange — Ezekiel piles up comparative particles (demut, 'likeness'; mar'eh, 'appearance'; ke'ein, 'something like') because he is describing what cannot be described. We preserved every layer of this approximation language rather than smoothing it into confident assertion. The four faces (human, lion, ox, eagle) become the symbols of the four Evangelists in Christian tradition. The phrase 'the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD' (mar'eh demut kavod YHWH) in verse 28 is the theological keystone of the entire book — everything that follows in Ezekiel concerns where this glory resides, from where it departs, and to where it returns.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of Ezekiel 1 is among the most difficult in the Bible. The syntax is contorted, the vocabulary is unusual, and several phrases are uncertain. We faced constant pressure to clarify what the Hebrew deliberately leaves strange. The word chashmal (v. 4, 27) is a hapax-related term of uncertain meaning — traditionally 'amber' or 'electrum,' but its exact referent is debated. We rendered it 'gleaming amber' while noting the uncertainty. The preposition structure in describing the creatures' movements is challenging: the creatures go 'each straight ahead' (el ever panav) — they do not turn but move in whatever direction their faces point. The relationship between ruach ('spirit') and the wheels required careful decisions at each occurrence — is it 'the spirit' (divine force), 'a spirit' (animating principle), or something else? We documented each choice. The final theophanic description deliberately refuses clarity: 'the appearance of*

the likeness of the glory' is three removes from direct description, and we resisted every temptation to reduce these layers.

Connections: The throne-chariot vision connects backward to the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19-20, with storm, cloud, fire, and divine glory) and the tabernacle/Temple traditions where the kavod fills sacred space (Exodus 40:34-35, 1 Kings 8:10-11). The four living creatures reappear in Ezekiel 10 (identified as cherubim) and in Revelation 4:6-8 (the four living creatures around the throne). The sapphire throne connects to Exodus 24:10 where the elders see God and under his feet 'something like a pavement of sapphire.' The glory departing from this throne to the Temple (chs. 8-11) and returning to the new Temple (ch. 43) forms the narrative arc of the entire book. The rainbow imagery in verse 28 connects to Genesis 9:13-16 (the covenant sign after the flood) and Revelation 4:3.

¹In the thirtieth year, in the fourth month, on the fifth day of the month, while I was among the exiles by the Kebar canal, the heavens opened and I saw visions of God. ²On the fifth day of the month — it was the fifth year of King Jehoiachin's exile — ³the word of the LORD came directly to Ezekiel son of Buzi, the priest, in the land of the Chaldeans by the Kebar canal, and the hand of the LORD was upon him there. ⁴I looked, and there — a storm wind was coming from the north: a massive cloud with fire flashing back and forth, and radiance surrounding it, and from its center something like gleaming amber from within the fire. ⁵And from its center emerged the likeness of four living creatures. This was their appearance: they had a human form, ⁶each one had four faces, and each one had four wings. ⁷Their legs were straight, and the soles of their feet were like the sole of a calf's foot, and they gleamed like the sparkle of burnished bronze. ⁸Human hands were under their wings on their four sides. All four of them had faces and wings — ⁹their wings touched one another. They did not turn as they moved; each one went straight in the direction of its face. ¹⁰As for the likeness of their faces: each had the face of a human in front, the face of a lion on the right side, the face of an ox on the left side, and the face of an eagle — ¹¹all four of them. Their wings were spread upward: each had two wings touching the wings of the one next to it, and two wings covering its body. ¹²Each one moved straight in the direction of its face. Wherever the spirit would go, they went — they did not turn as they moved. ¹³As for the likeness of the living creatures — their appearance was like burning coals of fire, like the appearance of torches. Fire moved back and forth among the living creatures; the fire was radiant, and lightning shot out from the fire. ¹⁴The living creatures darted back and forth, looking like flashes of lightning. ¹⁵As I watched the living creatures, there was one wheel on the ground beside each of the living creatures, corresponding to its four faces. ¹⁶The appearance of the wheels and their construction was like the gleam of beryl, and all four had the same form. Their appearance and construction were as if one wheel were set within another wheel. ¹⁷When they moved, they could go in any of their four directions without turning as they moved. ¹⁸Their rims were tall and awe-inspiring, and the rims of all four were full of eyes all around. ¹⁹When the living creatures moved, the wheels moved beside them, and when the living creatures rose from the ground, the wheels rose as well. ²⁰Wherever the spirit wanted to go, they went — wherever the spirit went — and the wheels rose alongside them, for the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. ²¹When the creatures moved, the wheels moved; when they stopped, the wheels stopped; and when they rose from the ground, the wheels rose alongside them — for the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels. ²²Over the heads of the living creatures there was the likeness of an expanse, something like awe-inspiring crystal, spread out above their heads. ²³Beneath the expanse, their wings extended straight out, one toward the other. Each one had two wings covering one side and two wings covering the other side of its body. ²⁴When they moved, I heard the sound of their wings like the sound of mighty waters, like the voice of the Almighty, a sound of tumult like the sound of an army camp. When they stopped, they lowered their wings. ²⁵Then there came a voice from above the expanse over their heads. When they stood still, they lowered their wings. ²⁶Above the expanse over their heads was something like the appearance of sapphire stone — the likeness of a throne. And on the likeness of the throne was a likeness like the appearance of a human being, above it. ²⁷I saw something like gleaming amber, like the appearance of fire enclosed all around — from what appeared to be his waist upward. And from what appeared to be his waist downward, I saw what looked like fire, with radiance surrounding him. ²⁸Like the appearance of a rainbow in a cloud on a rainy day — so was the appearance of the radiance all around. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. When I saw it, I fell on my face and heard a voice speaking.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'thirtieth year' is one of the most debated chronological references in Ezekiel. It likely refers to Ezekiel's age — his thirtieth year, when a Levitical priest would normally begin Temple service (Numbers 4:3). Instead of entering the Temple in Jerusalem, Ezekiel receives a vision of God's throne in Babylon. The irony is profound for a priest.
1. Mar'ot Elohim ('visions of God') can mean either 'visions from God' (subjective genitive — God sends them) or 'visions of God' (objective genitive — God is what is seen). The Hebrew preserves both readings, and so do we.
1. The Kebar (kevar) was a navigable canal in the Babylonian irrigation system near Nippur, not a natural river. The Hebrew nahar can mean either river or canal.
2. The editorial gloss anchors Ezekiel's personal chronology ('the thirtieth year') to public history. Jehoiachin was deported in 597 BCE, making this vision dateable to 593 BCE. Ezekiel consistently dates his oracles by Jehoiachin's exile, implicitly recognizing him — not Zedekiah in Jerusalem — as the legitimate king.
3. The emphatic infinitive absolute hayoh hayah ('coming it came') stresses that the word genuinely came — this is no invention. Ezekiel is identified as ben Buzi, ha-kohen ('son of Buzi, the priest'). His priestly identity is foundational: he is a Zadokite priest who will never serve in the Temple, yet receives the most detailed Temple vision in Scripture.
3. Yad YHWH ('the hand of the LORD') in Ezekiel is a technical term for the overwhelming divine force that seizes the prophet and initiates visionary experience (cf. 3:14, 3:22, 8:1, 33:22, 37:1, 40:1). It is not a gentle touch but an irresistible grip.
4. The Hebrew ruach se'arah ('storm wind') opens the vision with violence — God does not appear gently. The phrase esh mitlaqachat ('fire flashing back and forth' or 'fire taking hold of itself') describes self-sustaining, self-feeding flame. The word chashmal is extremely rare and its meaning uncertain — the Septuagint renders it elektron ('electrum,' an alloy of gold and silver), and the Talmud (Hagigah 13a) treats it as a mystical term that should not be taught publicly. We render 'gleaming amber' as the best available approximation.
4. The preposition ke'ein ('something like,' 'as the appearance of') begins here and recurs throughout the chapter. Ezekiel never says 'I saw X' — he says 'I saw something like X.' This is deliberate theological caution, not vague writing.
5. Demut ('likeness, resemblance') is Ezekiel's primary distancing term. It does not mean 'they looked exactly like' but 'they had the general form of.' The chayot ('living creatures') are distinct from the seraphim of Isaiah 6 (which have six wings) and from the later cherubim identification in Ezekiel 10. The basic form is humanoid — 'the likeness of a human being' (demut adam) — onto which non-human features are layered.
6. Four faces and four wings per creature. The number four in Hebrew thought often signifies completeness of the created order — four directions, four winds. These creatures embody the fullness of living creation. The four wings differ from Isaiah's seraphim, which have six (Isaiah 6:2).
7. The Hebrew regel can mean 'foot' or 'leg.' The description moves from the leg (regel yesharah, 'a straight leg' — no knee joint, or a leg that does not bend) to the sole (kaph regel, 'sole of the foot'), which resembles a calf's hoof — round and undivided. The word nechoshet qalal ('burnished bronze' or 'polished copper') describes a bright metallic gleam. The creatures are partly organic, partly metallic — a fusion that resists natural categories.
8. The human hands beneath the wings give the creatures the capacity for action and manipulation — they are not merely ornamental or bestial. The juxtaposition of human hands with calf's hooves and multiple faces creates a composite being that defies classification. The phrase 'on their four sides' (al arba'at riv'eihem) indicates that hands extended in every direction.
9. The wings of adjacent creatures touched (chovrot islah el achotah, literally 'joining, each woman to her sister' — a feminine idiom for mutual connection). The creatures do not turn because they have a face pointing in every direction; they simply move in whatever direction one of their faces looks. This creates an image of purposeful, unstoppable movement in perfect coordination.
10. The four faces represent the pinnacle of four domains of created life: humanity (adam, ruling creation), the lion (aryeh, king of wild animals), the ox (shor, strongest of domestic animals), and the eagle (nesher, sovereign of the sky). Together they encompass the fullness of animate creation bearing the throne of the Creator. In Christian tradition, these four faces became the symbols of the four Evangelists (Matthew/human, Mark/lion, Luke/ox, John/eagle), though this association postdates Ezekiel by centuries.
10. Note that the Hebrew does not say the human face is 'in front' explicitly — it says 'the face of a human' and then places the lion 'to the right' and the ox 'to the left,' implying the human face is the forward-facing one.
11. The wing arrangement is precise: of the four wings per creature, two extend upward and connect to the adjacent creature's wings (forming a continuous canopy), and two fold down to cover the body. This mirrors the cherubim on the ark of the covenant, whose wings touch above the mercy seat (Exodus 25:20). Ezekiel the priest would recognize this echo immediately.
12. Ha-ruach ('the spirit') here is the animating, directing force within the creatures — it determines their movement. This is the first occurrence of ruach in its distinctive Ezekiel sense: not wind (as in v. 4's storm wind) but the divine directing force that animates the entire throne-chariot complex. The creatures do not choose their direction; the ruach chooses, and they move in perfect concert.
13. The creatures themselves are composed of or suffused with fire. The word lappidim ('torches') echoes the lappidim that passed between the cut animals in God's covenant with Abraham (Genesis 15:17) — fire is the medium of divine presence. Baraq ('lightning') adds a dimension of sudden, unpredictable power. The entire scene is kinetic — nothing is still.

14. The phrase *ratso' vashov* ('running and returning,' or 'darting back and forth') describes rapid, oscillating movement — the creatures flash outward and return in an instant. The word *bazaq* (used only here) appears to mean a flash or bolt of lightning, intensifying the sense of blinding speed. The creatures are not stately or slow — they move at the speed of light.
15. The *ofannim* ('wheels') now enter the vision. Each creature has one wheel beside it 'on the ground' (*ba'aretz*) — the wheels connect heaven and earth, the divine throne and the terrestrial surface. The phrase *le'arba'at panav* ('corresponding to its four faces') has been read as either 'one wheel for each of the four creatures' or 'one wheel at each of the four faces.' We follow the reading that each creature has one corresponding wheel.
16. *Tarshish* (rendered 'beryl') is a precious stone, probably a golden or yellow-green gem — the exact identification is uncertain. The phrase 'a wheel within a wheel' (*ha-ofan betokh ha-ofan*) is the most famous image in the chapter. It likely describes two wheels set at right angles to each other, creating a gyroscopic structure that can roll in any direction without turning — matching the creatures' ability to move in any direction without rotating. The image is mechanical yet organic, engineered yet alive.
17. The wheels mirror the creatures' movement — they too can move in any direction without rotating, because the intersecting wheel structure allows omnidirectional motion. The repeated phrase *lo yissabbu belekhtam* ('they did not turn when they moved') emphasizes the supernatural quality: these wheels violate ordinary physics.
18. The *gabbotam* ('their rims' or 'their backs') are covered with eyes — the wheels see. This is perhaps the most unsettling detail: the mechanical structure is sentient. The word *yir'ah* ('fear, awe') indicates that the wheels' height and appearance provoked terror. The eyes suggest omniscient awareness — nothing escapes the gaze of the throne-chariot. The image reappears in Revelation 4:6 ('full of eyes in front and behind').
19. The wheels and creatures are locked in synchronized motion — the wheels are not separate mechanisms but extensions of the creatures. When the creatures lift off the ground (*nasa*, 'to lift, to rise'), the wheels follow. The entire throne-chariot complex functions as a single integrated being.
20. The critical phrase *ruach ha-chayah ba-ofannim* ('the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels') reveals that the wheels share the same animating spirit as the creatures. The throne-chariot is not a machine with separate parts but a single organism animated by one *ruach*. This verse is theologically dense: the same spirit that directs the creatures also inhabits the wheels, creating a unified living structure under divine direction.
21. This verse restates and reinforces verse 20 with a threefold pattern: movement, standing, and rising. The repetition is characteristic of Ezekiel's visionary prose — he circles back over the same details, adding precision with each pass. The refrain 'for the spirit of the living creatures was in the wheels' is now stated twice (vv. 20-21), underscoring that the unity of the throne-chariot complex is the key theological point.
22. *Raqia* ('expanse, firmament') here is the platform separating the creatures below from the throne above. The word *ke'ein* ('something like') continues the distancing language. *Ha-qerach ha-nora* ('the awe-inspiring crystal' or 'the terrible ice') suggests a transparent, crystalline surface of terrifying beauty. The word *nora* ('awe-inspiring, terrible') conveys dread-infused wonder — this is not decorative beauty but the kind of beauty that makes a person tremble.
23. The wing arrangement is clarified: beneath the *raqia*, the upward-reaching wings extend horizontally to touch the adjacent creature's wings (forming the canopy under the expanse), while the other two fold down to cover the body on each side. This creates a continuous wing-canopy supporting the crystalline platform above.
24. Four sonic comparisons pile up: mighty waters (*mayim rabbim*), the voice of the Almighty (*qol Shaddai*), tumult (*hamulah*), and an army camp (*machaneh*). The accumulation reflects Ezekiel's inability to fix on a single comparison — no earthly sound adequately captures what he heard. The sudden silence when they stop and lower their wings creates a dramatic pause before the voice from above the expanse in verse 25.
25. A voice (*qol*) speaks from above the *raqia* — from the region of the throne. The creatures respond to this voice by standing still and lowering their wings, creating complete silence for the divine speech. The verse is structured to produce maximum dramatic effect: the cacophony of verse 24 gives way to stillness and then a single voice from above. The content of the voice is not reported here — the focus is on the creatures' posture of attentive submission.
26. The sapphire throne connects directly to Exodus 24:10, where the elders of Israel saw God and under his feet 'something like a pavement of sapphire, clear as the sky itself.' Ezekiel the priest knows this tradition. The Hebrew piles up *demut* and *mar'eh* with increasing intensity: *ke-mar'eh even-sappir demut kisse*, *ve'al demut ha-kisse demut ke-mar'eh adam*. The word *adam* ('human being') is stunning — the form on the throne has human likeness. This is not God reduced to human form but human form elevated to the divine throne — or perhaps, as in Genesis 1:26-27, it is the original 'image and likeness' from which humanity derives.
27. The *chashmal* ('gleaming amber') reappears from verse 4, bracketing the vision — the same mysterious substance seen in the storm cloud now constitutes the form on the throne. The description divides the figure at the waist (*motnayim*): upper half is *chashmal-fire*, lower half is fire with radiance. The repeated *ke-mar'eh* ('like the appearance of') maintains the distancing. Ezekiel is looking at the figure on the throne and describing its luminous substance, not its anatomy.
28. This verse is the theological climax of the chapter. The rainbow (*qeshet*) surrounding the radiance connects to the Noahic covenant — the sign God placed in the sky as a promise never to destroy the earth again by flood. The vision of divine wrath and power is wrapped in a symbol of covenant mercy.
28. The phrase *mar'eh demut kavod YHWH* is the most carefully constructed theological phrase in Ezekiel. Three distancing terms layer over each other: *mar'eh* (appearance), *demut* (likeness), and *kavod* (glory — itself already a step removed from God's essence). Ezekiel has described not God but the appearance of the likeness of God's manifested weight. This is not evasion — it is precision. No mortal sees God directly (Exodus 33:20).

28. Ezekiel's response — falling on his face — is the only appropriate response to the unmediated presence of divine kavod. It is the same posture as Abraham (Genesis 17:3), Moses and Aaron (Numbers 16:22), and Joshua (Joshua 5:14). The 'voice speaking' (qol medabber) that follows leads directly into the commissioning of chapter 2.

2

Summary: *Ezekiel 2 transitions from the throne-chariot vision to the prophet's commissioning. The voice from above the expanse addresses Ezekiel as 'son of man' (ben adam) — the first of approximately ninety-three times God will use this address throughout the book. The Spirit enters Ezekiel and sets him on his feet. God sends him to the people of Israel, described as a rebellious nation that has transgressed against God to this very day. Whether they listen or refuse, they will know a prophet has been among them. God tells Ezekiel not to fear them or their words, even though he lives among briers and thorns and sits among scorpions. The chapter concludes with a dramatic image: a hand extends toward Ezekiel holding a scroll written on front and back with 'laments, mourning, and woe.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The address 'son of man' (ben adam) appears here for the first time, establishing the term that will define Ezekiel's prophetic identity. In this book, the phrase is not a messianic title (as in Daniel 7:13 and the Gospels) but its opposite — it means 'mortal,' 'human being,' emphasizing the infinite gulf between the one seated on the throne and the fragile creature who has just fallen on his face before it. God calls Ezekiel 'mortal' precisely when the mortal has just witnessed the immortal. The scroll written on both sides is unusual — scrolls were typically written on only one side (the inner, smoother surface). Writing on both sides indicates that the message of judgment is so extensive it overflows the normal capacity of the medium. The three words on the scroll — qinot (laments), hegeh (mourning), and hi (woe) — summarize the content of chapters 4-32.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase el goyim ham-moredim ('to the nations that are rebelling') in verse 3 uses the plural goyim ('nations') for Israel, which is unusual — goyim normally refers to foreign nations. We rendered 'to a nation of rebels' following the Qere reading (goy, singular) while noting the Ketiv reading in the translator's notes. The word saravim ('briers') in verse 6 is debated — it may refer to thorny plants or to 'rebels' (from a different root). We rendered 'briers' based on the parallelism with 'thorns' and 'scorpions' but documented the alternative. The phrase ruach in verse 2 ('the Spirit entered me') is rendered with a capital 'S' because the context — divine speech, prophetic commissioning, raising the prostrate prophet — indicates the Spirit of God, not merely 'a spirit' or 'wind.'*

Connections: *The commissioning follows the pattern of earlier prophetic calls: Moses (Exodus 3-4, who also resisted), Isaiah (Isaiah 6, who also saw the throne and volunteered), and Jeremiah (Jeremiah 1, who protested his youth). Unlike Moses and Jeremiah, Ezekiel is not recorded as objecting — the overwhelming vision has already silenced any protest. The scroll written on both sides connects forward to Revelation 5:1 (the scroll sealed with seven seals, written on front and back). The 'rebellious house' (bet meri) becomes a recurring epithet for Israel throughout Ezekiel. The command not to fear connects to Jeremiah 1:8 ('Do not be afraid of them') and the broader prophetic tradition where God fortifies the messenger against the hostility of the audience.*

¹He said to me: Son of man, stand on your feet and I will speak with you. ²The Spirit entered me as he spoke to me and set me on my feet, and I heard the one speaking to me. ³He said to me: Son of man, I am sending you to the people of Israel — to a nation of rebels who have rebelled against me. They and their ancestors have transgressed against me to this very day. ⁴The children are hard of face and stubborn of heart. I am sending you to them, and you will say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says. ⁵Whether they listen or refuse to listen — for they are a rebellious house — they will know that a prophet has been among them. ⁶And you, son of man — do not be afraid of them, and do not be afraid of their words, though briers and thorns surround you and you sit among scorpions. Do not be afraid of their words, and do not be dismayed by their faces, for they are a rebellious house. ⁷You will speak my words to them, whether they listen or refuse to listen, for they are rebellious. ⁸But you, son of man — hear what I am saying to you. Do not be rebellious like that rebellious house. Open your mouth and eat what I am giving you. ⁹I looked, and there — a hand was stretched out toward me, and in it was a written scroll. ¹⁰He unrolled it before me, and it was written on both the front and the back. Written on it were laments, mourning, and woe.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ben adam appears here for the first time in Ezekiel. The phrase is distinct from its use in Daniel 7:13 (bar enash in Aramaic, a messianic figure 'coming with the clouds of heaven') and from Jesus's self-designation in the Gospels. In Ezekiel, ben adam consistently means 'mortal' — it humbles the prophet rather than exalting him.
1. The command 'stand on your feet' (amod al raglekha) requires Ezekiel to rise from his prostrate position. God does not converse with a face-down prophet — he demands Ezekiel stand upright to receive the commission. But Ezekiel cannot stand on his own; in the next verse, the Spirit must raise him.
2. Ruach ('Spirit') here is capitalized because the context demands it — this is the divine Spirit acting on Ezekiel's body in response to God's command. The Spirit accomplishes what the human cannot: Ezekiel was told to stand but could not rise on his own after the theophany, so the ruach enters him and physically raises him. This establishes a pattern: throughout Ezekiel, the ruach will lift, transport, and empower the prophet (3:12, 3:14, 8:3, 11:1, 37:1, 43:5).
2. The phrase midabber elai ('the one speaking to me') uses the hitpael participle, which some scholars read as reflexive ('the one speaking to himself' — i.e., divine speech that Ezekiel overhears rather than speech directed at him). However, the context of direct commission makes the simpler reading ('the one speaking to me') more appropriate.
3. The Ketiv (written text) reads goyim (plural, 'nations'), while the Qere (reading tradition) reads goy (singular, 'nation'). We follow the Qere because the singular fits the context — Israel is one nation, not many. However, the Ketiv plural may be an intentional provocation: calling Israel 'nations' (goyim) puts them in the category of the foreign peoples they were supposed to be distinct from.
3. The word moredim ('rebels') is from the root m-r-d, meaning to revolt against a sovereign — political rebellion language applied to the covenant relationship. The verb pash'u ('transgressed') comes from pasha ('to rebel, to transgress'), which in covenant contexts means deliberate, willful breach of sworn obligations. This is not accidental sin but calculated defiance, and it is presented as a multi-generational pattern ('they and their ancestors').
4. Qeshei fanim ('hard of face') means brazen, shameless, unyielding in expression — they will not flinch or show submission. Chizqei lev ('strong/stubborn of heart') describes a will that has hardened into defiance. The combination paints a portrait of a people who are both outwardly defiant and inwardly resolute in their rebellion.
4. This verse contains the first occurrence of Ezekiel's signature prophetic formula: ko amar Adonai YHWH ('This is what the Lord GOD says'). The compound divine name Adonai YHWH distinguishes Ezekiel's formula from Jeremiah's and Isaiah's, who typically use YHWH alone. 'Lord GOD' renders Adonai ('Lord,' the spoken substitute for the divine name) plus YHWH ('GOD').
5. Bet meri ('rebellious house') becomes a recurring designation for Israel throughout Ezekiel (2:5, 2:6, 2:8, 3:9, 3:26-27, 12:2-3, 12:9, 12:25, 17:12, 24:3, 44:6). The word meri comes from the root m-r-h ('to be contentious, rebellious'). The construction 'whether they listen or refuse' establishes a principle central to biblical prophecy: the prophet's success is not measured by the audience's response. The purpose is not persuasion but witness — 'they will know that a prophet has been among them,' regardless of whether they obey.
6. The threefold repetition of al tira ('do not be afraid') reveals the severity of the threat. God does not say 'there is nothing to fear' — he says 'do not fear,' which acknowledges the danger is real. The imagery of saravim ('briers'), sallanim ('thorns'), and aqrabbim ('scorpions') can be read literally (the hostile environment) or metaphorically (the people themselves as piercing and stinging). The word saravim is rare and its etymology debated — some connect it to a root meaning 'to rebel' rather than to thorny plants, which would make it 'rebels and resisters' rather than 'briers and thorns.' We follow the plant imagery based on the parallelism with scorpions.
6. The word techat ('be dismayed, be shattered') is stronger than simple fear — it suggests being broken or crushed by their opposition. God forbids not only fear but psychological collapse.
7. The phrase devarai ('my words') is emphatic — Ezekiel must speak God's words, not his own. The prophet is a conduit, not a composer. The repeated formula 'whether they listen or refuse' (also in v. 5) reinforces that prophetic obedience is not contingent on audience receptivity. The final ki meri hemah ('for they are rebellious') is blunt — three Hebrew words that summarize Israel's fundamental character in this era.
8. The command shifts from speaking to eating — Ezekiel must internalize God's message before he can deliver it. The warning 'do not be rebellious like that rebellious house' (al tehi meri ke-vet ha-meri) creates a wordplay on meri that is difficult to capture in English. The prophet is being told: the danger is not only external hostility but internal contamination — do not let their rebellion infect you. The imperative 'open your mouth and eat' (petseh pikha ve-ekhol) is startling: prophets receive words, but Ezekiel must eat them.
9. The yad sheluchah ('outstretched hand') extends from the throne — a divine hand holding a scroll. Megillat sepher ('scroll of a document' or 'written scroll') is the physical medium of the prophetic message. In the ancient world, scrolls were the standard form of literary transmission — a rolled sheet of papyrus or leather. The hand holding the scroll is disembodied in the description; it emerges from the divine presence without Ezekiel attributing it to a specific figure.
10. The word qinim ('laments, dirges') is the plural of qinah, the formal lament genre used for mourning the dead — Ezekiel will deliver funeral songs over living nations. Hegeh ('mourning, moaning, sighing') captures the inarticulate grief that words cannot fully express. Hi ('woe') is an exclamation of anguish. Together they summarize the content of prophetic judgment: structured grief (laments), raw sorrow (mourning), and sharp cries of pain (woe).

10. The scroll written on both sides reappears in Revelation 5:1, where the scroll sealed with seven seals is written 'on the inside and on the back' — John's vision deliberately echoes Ezekiel's. The eating of the scroll continues in 3:1-3.

3

Summary: *Ezekiel 3 completes the prophet's commissioning that began in chapter 2. God commands Ezekiel to eat the scroll inscribed with lamentation and woe — and it tastes as sweet as honey in his mouth, a jarring contrast between the bitterness of its message and the sweetness of receiving God's word. God then sends Ezekiel not to foreign peoples with incomprehensible languages but to his own people Israel, who will refuse to listen because they refuse to listen to God himself. The chapter then introduces the watchman (tsofeh) commission: Ezekiel is personally accountable for whether he delivers God's warnings. If he warns the wicked and they ignore him, they bear their own guilt; if he fails to warn them, their blood is on his hands. The chapter closes with the Spirit lifting Ezekiel and transporting him to the exiles at Tel-abib by the Chebar canal, where he sits overwhelmed among them for seven days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The scroll-eating scene is one of the most striking prophetic sign-acts in the Hebrew Bible. The word for 'honey' (devash) carries associations with the promised land ('a land flowing with milk and honey'), creating a layered irony — the word of judgment over a people expelled from the land of honey itself tastes like honey. The watchman metaphor (tsofeh) establishes a theology of prophetic accountability that has no parallel in Isaiah or Jeremiah: the prophet is not merely a messenger but a sentry whose silence constitutes a capital offense. The phrase 'their blood I will require from your hand' uses legal language from the domain of homicide law (cf. Genesis 9:5, 2 Samuel 4:11). The transport by the Spirit (ruach) physically relocates Ezekiel and introduces the motif of divine compulsion — Ezekiel goes 'in bitterness, in the heat of my spirit,' suggesting reluctance even as the hand of the LORD propels him forward. We rendered the watchman passage with legal precision because the Hebrew is structured as case law: condition, consequence, condition, consequence.*

Translation Friction: *The verb he'ekhaltikha (v. 3, 'I fed you' or 'I caused you to eat') is a causative form — God does not merely offer the scroll but actively causes Ezekiel to consume it. We rendered this as 'feed your stomach' to preserve the physical, bodily nature of the act. The phrase ruach nasa'atni (v. 12, 'the Spirit lifted me') uses the same verb (nasa) that describes carrying a burden — the Spirit does not gently guide but physically hoists. In verse 14, Ezekiel describes going bemar behamat ruchi ('in bitterness, in the rage of my spirit'), which creates interpretive tension: is the bitterness Ezekiel's own reluctance, or is it the fury of the divine Spirit working through him? We preserved the ambiguity. The watchman case-law in verses 18-21 required careful handling of the conditional structures (im/ve-im) to maintain the legal precision of the Hebrew.*

Connections: *The scroll-eating scene connects forward to Revelation 10:9-10, where John eats a scroll that is sweet in the mouth and bitter in the stomach. The watchman commission is restated and expanded in Ezekiel 33:1-9, forming a structural bracket around the judgment oracles. The phrase 'house of rebellion' (bet meri) continues from 2:5-8. The transport by the Spirit anticipates the visionary transports of chapters 8 and 40. The hand of the LORD upon Ezekiel (v. 22) echoes the same language used of Elijah (1 Kings 18:46) and connects to the opening vision (1:3).*

1Then he said to me, "Son of man, eat what is set before you — eat this scroll, and then go speak to the house of Israel." 2So I opened my mouth, and he fed me the scroll. 3He said to me, "Son of man, feed your stomach and fill your insides with this scroll that I am giving you." So I ate it, and it was as sweet as honey in my mouth. 4Then he said to me, "Son of man, go — present yourself to the house of Israel and speak my words to them." 5For you are not being sent to a people of unintelligible speech and difficult language, but to the house of Israel — 6not to many peoples of unintelligible speech and difficult language whose words you cannot understand. If I had sent you to them, they would have listened to you! 7But the house of Israel will refuse to listen to you, because they refuse to listen to me. For the entire house of Israel is hard of forehead and stubborn of heart. 8See — I have made your face as hard as their faces, and your forehead as hard as their foreheads. 9I have made your forehead like diamond, harder than flint. Do not fear them and do not be dismayed before them, for they are a

house of rebellion. ¹⁰Then he said to me, "Son of man, take into your heart all the words that I speak to you, and hear them with your ears." ¹¹Go — present yourself to the exiles, to the children of your people. Speak to them and say, 'This is what the Lord GOD says' — whether they listen or refuse. ¹²Then the Spirit lifted me up, and I heard behind me the sound of a great rumbling: "Blessed be the glory of the LORD from his place!" ¹³— the sound of the wings of the living creatures brushing against one another, and the sound of the wheels beside them, and the sound of a great rumbling. ¹⁴The Spirit lifted me up and carried me away. I went in bitterness, in the fury of my spirit, but the hand of the LORD was strong upon me. ¹⁵I came to the exiles at Tel-abib who were settled by the Chebar canal, and I sat where they sat. I remained there among them, overwhelmed, for seven days. ¹⁶At the end of seven days, the word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁷"Son of man, I have appointed you as a watchman for the house of Israel. When you hear a word from my mouth, you must warn them on my behalf." ¹⁸When I say to the wicked person, 'You will certainly die,' and you do not warn him — you do not speak to warn the wicked person away from his wicked path in order to save his life — that wicked person will die in his iniquity, but his blood I will require from your hand. ¹⁹But if you do warn the wicked person and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his wicked path, he will die in his iniquity — but you will have saved your own life. ²⁰When a righteous person turns from his righteousness and commits injustice, and I place a stumbling block before him, he will die. Because you did not warn him, he will die in his sin, and the righteous deeds he performed will not be remembered — but his blood I will require from your hand. ²¹But if you warn the righteous person not to sin, and the righteous person does not sin, he will certainly live because he heeded the warning — and you will have saved your own life. ²²The hand of the LORD came upon me there, and he said to me, "Get up, go out to the valley, and there I will speak with you." ²³So I got up and went out to the valley, and there the glory of the LORD was standing — like the glory I had seen by the Chebar canal. I fell facedown. ²⁴Then the Spirit entered me and set me on my feet. He spoke to me and said, "Go, shut yourself inside your house." ²⁵As for you, son of man — they will place ropes on you and bind you with them, so that you cannot go out among them. ²⁶I will make your tongue stick to the roof of your mouth so that you will be mute and unable to rebuke them — for they are a house of rebellion. ²⁷But when I speak to you, I will open your mouth and you will say to them, 'This is what the Lord GOD says.' Whoever listens, let him listen; whoever refuses, let him refuse — for they are a house of rebellion.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The command is double: 'eat' (ekhol) appears twice, emphasizing that this is not metaphorical — Ezekiel must physically consume the scroll before he can speak its contents. The phrase 'what you find' (et asher-timtsa) is rendered 'what is set before you' to capture the sense that the scroll has been prepared and presented for him.
2. The causative verb vayya'akileni ('he caused me to eat, he fed me') is significant — God actively feeds Ezekiel the scroll rather than simply offering it. The prophet is a passive recipient of God's word, which is placed into him physically. This causative form underscores divine initiative in prophetic revelation.
3. The body language is emphatically physical: bitnekha ('your stomach'), me'ekha ('your insides, your bowels'). This is not figurative consumption — Ezekiel is commanded to take the scroll deep into his body. The comparison kidvash lematok ('as honey for sweetness') connects to Psalm 19:10 and 119:103, where God's words and judgments are sweeter than honey. The paradox — a scroll of lamentation tasting sweet — suggests that the sweetness belongs to the act of receiving God's word, not to its content.
4. The command lekh-bo ('go, come/enter') is a double imperative that conveys urgency. The phrase bidvarai ('with my words') emphasizes that Ezekiel is to deliver God's words, not his own — the scroll he has eaten becomes the content of his speech.
5. The phrase imqei safah ('deep of lip') and kivdei lashon ('heavy of tongue') describe languages that are incomprehensible — literally 'deep-lipped' and 'heavy-tongued.' The irony builds: foreign nations would be easier to reach than Israel, because Israel's refusal is not a matter of comprehension but of will.
6. The conditional statement is devastating: pagan nations who have never heard of the LORD would respond to Ezekiel's message, but Israel — God's own covenant people — will not. This anticipates Jesus's similar observation about Tyre and Sidon (Matthew 11:21-22). The exclamation captures the emphatic Hebrew particle im-lo ('if not,' meaning 'surely').
7. The logic is clear: Israel's rejection of the prophet is really rejection of God. The phrase chizqei-metsach ('hard of forehead') describes a face set in defiance — a forehead that will not bow. Qeshei-lev ('hard of heart') describes a will that has calcified against God's instruction. Both are physical metaphors for spiritual obstinacy. The double use of 'refuse' (lo yo'vu... einam ovim) emphasizes that this is willful, not accidental.

8. God matches Ezekiel's resolve to the people's stubbornness. The word *chazaqim* ('strong, hard') is the same root used to describe Israel's hardness in verse 7. The image is of two immovable forces set against each other — but one has divine reinforcement.
9. The word *shamir* is a stone harder than flint — possibly diamond, emery, or corundum. The precise identification is uncertain, but the point is clear: Ezekiel's resolve will be harder than the hardest known substance. The phrase *bet meri* ('house of rebellion') continues the characterization from chapter 2 — Israel's defining quality has become their defiance.
10. The command to receive words 'in your heart' (*bilvavekha*) and 'with your ears' (*be'oznekha*) demands both internal absorption and careful listening. The heart (*levav*) in Hebrew thought is the seat of will and understanding, not merely emotion. Ezekiel must first internalize the message before delivering it.
11. The destination is now specified: the *golah* ('exile community'), Ezekiel's own people in Babylon. The formula *ko amar Adonai YHWH* ('This is what the Lord GOD says') is Ezekiel's signature prophetic introduction. The final phrase 'whether they listen or refuse' (*im-yishme'u ve'im-yechdalu*) echoes 2:5, establishing that the prophet's obligation is delivery, not results.
12. The verb *tissa'eni* ('lifted me') uses the same root (*nasa*, 'to lift, carry') used for bearing a heavy burden — the Spirit physically hoists Ezekiel. The *qol ra'ash gadol* ('sound of a great rumbling') is the same word *ra'ash* used for earthquakes (cf. 1 Kings 19:11). The doxology *barukh kevod-YHWH mimmeqomo* is liturgical — it appears also in the *Kedushah* prayer of later Jewish worship. Whether the voice is Ezekiel's own or the voices of the living creatures from chapter 1 is ambiguous.
13. The verse catalogues the components of the heavenly sound: wings touching (*mashiqot*, 'touching, kissing, brushing'), wheels turning, and the overall *ra'ash* ('rumbling, earthquake-sound'). The phrase *ishah el-achotah* ('each one to its sister') is an idiom meaning 'one to another' — the wings brush against their companion wings. The layered sounds recall the throne-chariot vision of chapter 1.
14. Ezekiel's emotional state is raw: *mar* ('bitter, bitterness') and *bahamat ruchi* ('in the heat/fury of my spirit') suggest deep reluctance or agitation. Whether this fury is Ezekiel's own resistance to his calling or the divine rage working through him is deliberately ambiguous — the Hebrew allows both readings. The phrase *yad-YHWH* ('the hand of the LORD') denotes divine compulsion that overrides the prophet's personal feelings. Ezekiel goes forward not because he wants to but because God's hand is too strong to resist.
15. *Tel-abib* (*tel aviv*, 'mound of the flood' or 'mound of grain') was a settlement of Judean exiles in Babylonia — the modern city of Tel Aviv takes its name from this passage via Nahum Sokolow's 1902 Hebrew translation of Herzl's *Altneuland*. The word *mashmim* ('devastated, overwhelmed, appalled') suggests Ezekiel was so stunned by his experience that he could not function. The seven-day period may reflect a mourning practice or a period of ritual preparation before assuming the prophetic office.
16. The standard reception formula *vayehi devar-YHWH elai* ('the word of the LORD came to me') marks a new divine communication. The seven-day waiting period is now over and the watchman commission begins.
17. The watchman (*tsafeh*) metaphor is central to Ezekiel's self-understanding and is restated in 33:1-9. The root *ts-f-h* means 'to look out, to keep watch, to be on the lookout' — a watchman's duty is to see what others cannot yet see and to warn them. The phrase *mehizharta otam mimmeni* ('you must warn them from me') establishes that the warning originates with God, not with the prophet's own judgment.
18. The structure is legal case-law: condition (God declares death), failure (the prophet does not warn), consequence for the wicked (death in iniquity), and consequence for the prophet (blood-guilt). The phrase *mot tamut* ('you will certainly die') is the emphatic death formula using the infinitive absolute — the same construction as God's warning to Adam in Genesis 2:17. The phrase *damo miyyadekha avaqesh* ('his blood I will require from your hand') uses legal homicide language — the prophet who fails to warn becomes complicit in the death.
19. The second case: the prophet warns, the wicked person ignores the warning. The wicked person still dies in his iniquity, but the prophet is absolved — 'you will have saved your own life' (*nafshekha hitsalta*, literally 'your *nephesh* you have rescued'). The word *nephesh* here means 'life' rather than 'soul' in the later theological sense — Ezekiel is speaking of survival, not abstract salvation.
20. This case extends the watchman's responsibility to the righteous who turn away. The phrase *natatti mikshol lefanav* ('I place a stumbling block before him') is theologically challenging — God himself places the obstacle. This is not entrapment but judicial hardening (cf. the hardening of Pharaoh's heart). The principle that previous righteousness does not protect against present sin is developed extensively in chapter 18. The phrase 'his righteous deeds will not be remembered' uses the legal sense of *zakar* — they will not be entered into the record in his favor.
21. The fourth and final case completes the matrix: prophet warns, righteous person listens, both live. The emphatic *chayo yichyeh* ('he will certainly live') mirrors the death formula *mot tamut* from verse 18. The watchman's faithfulness produces life for both the warned and the warner. The verb *nizhar* ('he was warned, he took warning') is from the same root as *hizharta* ('you warned'), linking the prophet's action to the people's response.
22. The *biq'ah* ('valley, plain, broad valley') is an open area suitable for a theophany — large enough to contain the glory of the LORD (v. 23). The phrase *yad-YHWH* ('the hand of the LORD') signals another moment of divine compulsion. The command *qum tse* ('get up, go out') is urgent: Ezekiel must physically relocate for the next revelation.
23. The phrase *kakavod asher ra'iti* ('like the glory I had seen') explicitly connects this theophany to the inaugural vision of chapter 1. The glory stands (*omed*) — a physical posture indicating stable, enduring presence. Ezekiel's response (falling facedown) is the instinctive human reaction to the overwhelming divine presence (cf. 1:28, 44:4). This valley theophany demonstrates that the *kavod* is mobile — it is not bound to the Temple.

24. The Spirit (ruach) again functions as a physical force — entering Ezekiel and standing him upright (cf. 2:2). The command to shut himself in his house begins a period of confinement that represents Ezekiel's restricted movement. The verb hissager ('shut yourself in, confine yourself') is reflexive — the prophet is to impose isolation upon himself.
25. The binding with ropes (avotim, 'cords, ropes') has been interpreted both literally (the exiles physically restrain Ezekiel) and symbolically (divine restriction on his movements). Whether the community binds him or God commands him to be bound is ambiguous. The result is prophetic isolation — Ezekiel cannot move freely among the people.
26. God imposes muteness on Ezekiel — his tongue is physically fastened to his palate (adbiq, 'I will cause to cling'). This is not natural silence but divinely imposed speechlessness. The prophet can only speak when God opens his mouth (v. 27). The word mokhiach ('one who rebukes, a reprover') indicates that Ezekiel's normal prophetic function of correction is suspended. The phrase bet meri ('house of rebellion') again explains why: their defiance makes normal prophetic discourse pointless.
27. The chapter ends with the principle that governs all of Ezekiel's ministry: the prophet speaks only when God opens his mouth, and the people's response is their own responsibility. The formula hashomea yishma ('whoever listens, let him listen') and hahechodel yechdal ('whoever refuses, let him refuse') frames prophetic preaching as a sifting process — the word separates those who will respond from those who will not, but the prophet delivers it regardless. The closing bet meri ('house of rebellion') appears for the third time in this chapter, functioning as a refrain.

4

Summary: *Ezekiel 4 records the first of the prophet's sign-acts (otot) — symbolic performances commanded by God to dramatize the coming siege and destruction of Jerusalem. Ezekiel is ordered to inscribe the city of Jerusalem on a clay brick and construct a miniature siege around it, then to lie on his left side for 390 days bearing the iniquity of the house of Israel and on his right side for 40 days bearing the iniquity of the house of Judah. He must cook his meager rations over human dung — a symbol of the unclean food Israel will eat in exile — though God relents and allows cow dung instead when Ezekiel protests. These are not metaphors but prophetic performance art: the exiles watch Ezekiel's body become a living parable of Jerusalem's fate.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sign-acts of chapter 4 transform the prophet's body into a text. Ezekiel does not merely speak God's word — he enacts it. The siege model on the brick recalls Babylonian military planning tablets, turning familiar technology against the audience: they would recognize the siege diagram as something a conquering army would prepare. The numbers 390 and 40 have generated extensive scholarly debate. The Septuagint reads 190 instead of 390 for Israel's years. The number 40 for Judah echoes Israel's 40 years in the wilderness — a generation of judgment. The food rationing (v. 10-11) prescribes approximately eight ounces of food and about two-thirds of a quart of water per day — severe subsistence rations that replicate siege conditions. Most striking is the dung negotiation (vv. 12-15): Ezekiel is the only prophet in the Hebrew Bible who successfully pushes back on a divine command and receives a concession. His priestly revulsion at ritual defilement — 'I have never defiled myself!' — is so deeply ingrained that God accommodates it, substituting cow dung for human dung. The priest in Ezekiel surfaces even in his resistance.*

Translation Friction: *The word levenah (v. 1) is rendered 'brick' — specifically an unfired clay brick or tile, the standard Mesopotamian writing surface. Some translations render this as 'tablet,' but the Hebrew specifically means 'brick.' The numbers 390 and 40 present a major textual difficulty: the LXX reads 190 for Israel, and scholars have proposed various symbolic interpretations. We render the Masoretic numbers and note the variant. The word tse'ah (v. 12, 'human excrement') is blunt in Hebrew, and we rendered it without euphemism. Ezekiel's protest in verse 14 uses three terms for ritual defilement — nevelah ('carcass of an animal that died on its own'), terefah ('torn animal'), and basar piggul ('foul/abominable meat') — each drawn from the Levitical purity code, demonstrating the priestly precision of his objection.*

Connections: *The siege sign-act connects to the actual siege of Jerusalem described in 2 Kings 25 and Jeremiah 52. The iron plate as a 'wall of iron' between prophet and city (v. 3) may symbolize God's implacable resolve or the barrier between God and his people. The food rationing anticipates the famine descriptions in Lamentations 4:4-10. Ezekiel's protest about defilement connects to his priestly identity (1:3) and to the purity concerns that dominate chapters 22, 36, and 40-48. The dung-fire cooking anticipates the exile theology of 4:13 — eating unclean food among the nations. The lying on one's side bearing iniquity connects to the concept of substitutionary burden-bearing that appears in Isaiah 53.*

¹"As for you, son of man — take a brick and set it in front of you. Inscribe on it a city: Jerusalem. ²Then set up a siege against it: build a siege wall against it, raise an earthwork ramp against it, set up camps against it, and place battering rams around it on every side. ³Then take an iron griddle and set it up as an iron wall between you and the city. Fix your face against it — it will be under siege, and you will press the siege against it. This is a sign for the house of Israel." ⁴Then lie down on your left side and place the iniquity of the house of Israel upon it. For the number of days that you lie on it, you will bear their iniquity. ⁵I have assigned to you the years of their iniquity as a number of days: three hundred and ninety days. So you will bear the iniquity of the house of Israel. ⁶When you have completed these, lie down again — this time on your right side — and bear the iniquity of the house of Judah: forty days. I have assigned you one day for each year. ⁷Set your face toward the siege of Jerusalem with your arm bared, and prophesy against it. ⁸See — I will place ropes on you so that you cannot turn from one side to the other until you have completed the days of your siege. ⁹Now take wheat, barley, beans, lentils, millet, and emmer wheat. Put them all in a single container and make bread from them for yourself. For the number of days that you lie on your side — three hundred and ninety days — you will eat it. ¹⁰The food you eat will be measured by weight: twenty shekels per day. You will eat it at set intervals. ¹¹You will also drink water by measure: a sixth of a hin. You will drink it at set intervals. ¹²You will eat it as a barley cake, baking it over human excrement in their sight." ¹³Then the LORD said, "In the same way the children of Israel will eat their bread in a state of defilement among the nations where I will drive them." ¹⁴But I said, "Ah, Lord GOD! I have never defiled myself. From my youth until now I have never eaten an animal that died on its own or was torn by beasts, and no foul meat has ever entered my mouth." ¹⁵Then he said to me, "Very well — I will allow you cow dung in place of human excrement, and you may prepare your bread over that." ¹⁶Then he said to me, "Son of man, I am about to break the supply of bread in Jerusalem. They will eat bread by weight and in anxiety, and they will drink water by measure and in horror, ¹⁷so that they lack bread and water. They will stare at one another in dismay and waste away because of their iniquity."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *levenah* means 'brick' — an unfired clay brick of the kind used throughout Mesopotamia as a writing surface. Babylonian military commanders used similar clay models for siege planning, so the exiles watching Ezekiel would immediately recognize the gesture. The verb *chaqotah* ('inscribe, engrave') indicates carving into the wet clay, not drawing on a surface.
2. The verse catalogues standard ancient Near Eastern siege equipment with military precision. *Matsor* ('siege') is the general term. *Dayeq* ('siege wall, siege tower') is a fortified observation structure. *Solelah* ('ramp, earthwork') is the assault ramp built against the city wall. *Machanot* ('camps') are the encampments of besieging forces. *Karim* ('battering rams') are the siege engines used to breach walls. Ezekiel is constructing a complete miniature siege in full view of the exiles.
3. The *machavat barzel* ('iron griddle, iron plate') was a common cooking implement — Ezekiel repurposes a household object as a symbol of impenetrable divine judgment. The iron wall between prophet and city has been interpreted as representing God's implacable resolve against Jerusalem or as the barrier between God and his unfaithful people. The phrase *ot hi levet yisra'el* ('it is a sign for the house of Israel') identifies the entire performance as an *ot* — a prophetic sign-act that communicates through enacted symbolism rather than spoken word.
4. The left side may correspond to the northern kingdom (Israel), which lay to the left when facing east — the standard orientation in ancient Near Eastern geography. The verb *tissa* ('you will bear') uses the same root (*nasa*) as bearing a burden — Ezekiel physically takes on the weight of Israel's iniquity through his posture. The concept of one person bearing another's iniquity connects to the substitutionary theology of Isaiah 53:4-6, though here the bearing is representational rather than redemptive.
5. The formula is one day per year of iniquity. The number 390 has generated extensive debate. Some scholars calculate it from the division of the kingdom under Rehoboam (ca. 930 BCE) to the fall of Jerusalem (586 BCE), yielding approximately 344 years — close but not exact. The Septuagint reads 190 instead of 390, which may represent a different chronological scheme or a textual corruption. Others see the numbers as symbolic rather than precisely historical. We follow the Masoretic text's 390 and note the LXX variant.
6. The right side corresponds to the south (Judah's geographic position). The number 40 resonates deeply in biblical symbolism: 40 years of wilderness wandering, 40 days of the flood, 40 days of Moses on Sinai. For Judah, 40 years may represent the generation of judgment or may count from some specific starting point (perhaps Josiah's reform in 622 BCE to the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BCE, yielding 36 years — again close but not exact). The formula *yom lashanah* ('a day for a year') makes the symbolic equation explicit.
7. The bared arm (*zero'akha chasuphah*) symbolizes readiness for action — a warrior rolls up his sleeve to fight. Combined with the fixed gaze toward Jerusalem, Ezekiel embodies both the divine warrior's aggression and the prophet's unrelenting focus. He prophesies 'against' (*aleha*) the city — the preposition confirms that Jerusalem is the target, not the beneficiary, of this oracle.

8. The ropes (avotim) constrain Ezekiel's movement, preventing him from shifting position during the prolonged sign-act. Whether these bonds are literal or metaphorical (divine constraint) is debated — the same word appeared in 3:25. The phrase yemei metsurekha ('the days of your siege') identifies Ezekiel's lying-down period with the siege itself. The prophet does not merely represent the siege; his body is the siege.
9. The mixed-grain bread is itself a sign of scarcity — under normal conditions, bread was made from wheat or barley alone. Mixing six different grains and legumes indicates that no single staple is available in sufficient quantity, forcing the baker to combine whatever scraps remain. The word kussemim ('emmer wheat' or 'spelt') is a coarse, inferior grain. The KJV's 'fitches' (an archaic word for vetches) is replaced with the more precise identification. The 390-day period matches the Israel-bearing period from verse 5.
10. Twenty shekels is approximately eight ounces (230 grams) — barely a subsistence ration. The phrase me'et ad-et ('from time to time') indicates rationed intervals rather than eating freely. This is siege-level deprivation: enough to survive, not enough to sustain strength. A shekel was approximately 11.5 grams, making the daily ration about 230 grams of mixed-grain bread.
11. A hin was approximately 6 liters (1.5 gallons), making a sixth of a hin roughly one liter (about one quart) — enough to prevent death from dehydration but not enough for normal functioning, especially in the Mesopotamian heat. The measured water, like the weighed bread, replicates the desperate rationing of a besieged city where water sources have been cut off.
12. The command is deliberately revolting. The word tse'at ha'adam ('human excrement') is blunt and unambiguous — the Hebrew does not soften the image. Using human dung as fuel was both a practical reality in fuel-scarce siege conditions and a severe ritual defilement. Baking food over human waste rendered it unclean under Levitical law. The phrase le'einehem ('in their sight') means the exiles must watch — the sign-act is public performance.
13. The interpretive key: the unclean cooking method symbolizes Israel's future existence among the nations, where maintaining ritual purity will be impossible. The word tamei ('unclean, defiled') is priestly vocabulary — for a kohen like Ezekiel, eating defiled food is a fundamental violation of sacred identity. The exile is not merely political displacement but ritual catastrophe: Israel will be unable to eat clean food, offer proper sacrifice, or maintain the purity boundaries that define their relationship with God.
14. Ezekiel's protest is remarkable — the only instance in the book where the prophet pushes back against a divine command. His objection draws on three categories from the Levitical purity code: nevelah ('an animal that died naturally,' prohibited in Leviticus 17:15), terefah ('an animal torn by predators,' prohibited in Exodus 22:31), and basar piggul ('foul/abominable meat,' the term used in Leviticus 7:18 and 19:7 for sacrificial meat left too long). The precision of Ezekiel's categories reveals his priestly training — this is not a general complaint about unpleasant food but a legal brief citing specific provisions of Torah. The exclamation ahahh ('Ah!') expresses anguished protest.
15. God makes a concession — the only divine accommodation to prophetic protest in the book. The word tsephi'ei habaqqar ('cow dung, cattle dung') replaces gelelei ha'adam ('human excrement'). Dried cow dung was (and remains) a common fuel source in the ancient Near East and carries no ritual impurity. The concession is significant: it preserves the sign-act's message (siege conditions, scarcity) while removing the ritual defilement that offended Ezekiel's priestly conscience. God's willingness to adjust the sign-act demonstrates that the point is the message, not the maximum humiliation of the prophet.
16. The phrase matteh-lechem ('staff of bread') is a vivid metaphor — bread is the staff that supports life, and God will snap it. The word bid'agah ('with anxiety, with worry') describes the psychological torment of rationing: every meal consumed in fear that it may be the last. Beshimmamon ('in horror, in desolation') describes the terror of watching water supplies dwindle. The rationing described mirrors exactly what Ezekiel has been acting out — his sign-act is a preview of Jerusalem's future.
17. The chapter closes with the ultimate consequence: complete deprivation leading to physical wasting. The verb nashammu ('they will be appalled, they will stare in horror') depicts survivors looking at each other in stunned disbelief. The verb namaqqu ('they will rot away, waste away, pine away') describes the slow physical deterioration of famine — bodies consuming themselves. The final phrase ba'avonam ('because of their iniquity') insists that this is not arbitrary suffering but the consequence of covenant rebellion. The avon that Ezekiel bore symbolically on his side (v. 4-6) now produces its fruit in the real siege.

5

Summary: Ezekiel 5 moves from symbolic action to devastating oracle. God commands Ezekiel to shave his head and beard — an act of profound humiliation for a priest — and divide the hair into three portions representing Jerusalem's fate: a third burned, a third struck with a sword, a third scattered to the wind. A small remnant is tucked into the folds of his garment, but even some of those are thrown into fire. The oracle that follows explains the sign: Jerusalem has rebelled worse than the surrounding nations, and God will execute unprecedented judgment — including the horror of parents eating children and children eating parents.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The shaving of the head is especially significant given Ezekiel's priestly identity. Leviticus 21:5 explicitly forbids priests from shaving their heads, making this commanded act a deliberate violation of priestly holiness law — God orders his priest to defile himself as a sign that the entire priestly order and the Temple itself are already defiled beyond recovery. The three-part division of the hair systematically accounts for the entire population of Jerusalem: death by plague and famine inside the walls, death by sword outside, and scattering among the nations. The phrase 'I myself am against you' (v. 8) reverses the covenant promise 'I will be your God' — the covenant protector becomes the covenant enforcer. The cannibalism oracle (v. 10) echoes the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:53-57 and Leviticus 26:29, confirming that what befalls Jerusalem is not random catastrophe but the execution of sworn covenant penalties.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew ta'ar haggallabim (v. 1) specifies a 'barber's razor,' and we preserved this specificity rather than generalizing to 'sharp blade.' The verb shiqtsets (v. 11) carries intense priestly revulsion — it is not merely 'defiled' but 'made utterly detestable,' and we rendered it accordingly. The phrase 'I will diminish you' in verse 11 uses the Hebrew egra, from the root g-r-a meaning 'to reduce, to withdraw,' which we rendered as 'I will cut you down' to capture the aggressive divine action. The small remnant tucked into the garment (v. 3) uses the word kanaf ('wing, corner, fold'), referring to the corner of the prophetic robe — a fragile image of preservation that is immediately undercut when even those hairs are burned (v. 4).*

Connections: *The covenant-curse language connects directly to Leviticus 26:27-33 and Deuteronomy 28:53-57. The cannibalism prediction is fulfilled in Lamentations 2:20 and 4:10 during the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BCE. The scattering motif connects to the broader exile theology running through Ezekiel 1-24. The threefold division of judgment (plague, sword, scattering) becomes a recurring formula throughout Ezekiel (6:11-12, 7:15, 12:14-16). The priestly shaving prohibition violated here (Leviticus 21:5) is later restored in the new Temple ordinances (Ezekiel 44:20), signaling the full arc from defilement to restoration.*

¹And you, son of man — take a sharp sword. Use it as a barber's razor and pass it over your head and your beard. Then take scales for weighing and divide the hair into portions. ²A third you will burn in fire at the center of the city when the days of the siege are completed. Take another third and strike it with the sword all around the city. And the final third you will scatter to the wind — and I will unsheathe a sword to pursue them. ³Then take a few hairs from them — a small number — and bind them in the folds of your robe. ⁴And from those, take some more and throw them into the fire and burn them. From that fire, a blaze will spread to the entire house of Israel. ⁵This is what the Lord GOD says: This is Jerusalem. I placed her at the center of the nations, with lands all around her. ⁶But she rebelled against my ordinances with greater wickedness than the nations, and against my statutes more than the lands surrounding her — for they rejected my ordinances and did not walk according to my statutes. ⁷Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because you have been more turbulent than the nations surrounding you — you have not walked according to my statutes, you have not carried out my ordinances, and you have not even lived by the standards of the nations around you — ⁸Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I myself — yes, I — am against you, and I will execute judgments in your midst in the sight of the nations. ⁹I will do to you what I have never done before and will never do again — all because of your detestable practices. ¹⁰Therefore parents will eat their children in your midst, and children will eat their parents. I will execute judgments against you, and I will scatter all your survivors to every wind. ¹¹Therefore, as I live — declares the Lord GOD — because you defiled my sanctuary with all your vile images and all your detestable practices, I myself will cut you down. My eye will not spare, and I will show no compassion. ¹²A third of your people will die by plague and be consumed by famine within you. A third will fall by the sword all around you. And a third I will scatter to every wind, and I will unsheathe a sword to pursue them. ¹³My anger will be spent, and I will satisfy my fury against them, and I will be appeased. Then they will know that I, the LORD, have spoken in my jealous passion when I have exhausted my fury against them. ¹⁴I will make you a ruin and an object of scorn among the nations surrounding you, in full view of everyone who passes by. ¹⁵You will become an object of scorn and mockery, a warning and a horror to the nations surrounding you, when I execute judgments against you in anger, in fury, and in furious rebukes. I, the LORD, have spoken. ¹⁶When I send against you the deadly arrows of famine — arrows meant for destruction — which I will send to destroy you, and when I heap famine upon you and shatter your supply of bread, ¹⁷I will send against you famine and savage beasts, and they will leave you childless. Plague and bloodshed will sweep through you, and I will bring the sword

against you. I, the LORD, have spoken.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *cherev chaddah* ('sharp sword') is specified first, then clarified as *ta'ar haggallabim* ('barber's razor') — Ezekiel is to use a weapon of war as a grooming instrument, blurring the boundary between military violence and personal defilement. For a Zadokite priest, shaving the head and beard violated Leviticus 21:5, making this a commanded act of priestly self-defilement.
1. The scales (*mo'zenei mishqal*) indicate precise, measured portions — this is not haphazard but judicial. God weighs the fate of Jerusalem with the same precision a merchant weighs goods.
2. The three portions correspond to the three fates of Jerusalem's population: death by famine and plague inside the siege (burning), death by enemy sword during the fall (striking), and exile and pursuit among the nations (scattering). The verb *ariq* ('I will unsheathe, draw out') indicates that even those scattered will not escape — God himself draws the pursuing sword.
2. The phrase 'when the days of the siege are completed' (*kimlo't yemei hamatzor*) connects this sign-act back to the siege model of chapter 4, making chapters 4-5 a continuous sequence of prophetic theater.
3. The word *kanaf* ('wing, corner, fold') refers to the corner or edge of the garment. The small number of hairs tucked into the robe represents a tiny remnant preserved from destruction. The image is fragile and intimate — a few strands of hair held close to the body, suggesting God's personal preservation of a remnant. But this hope is immediately undercut in the next verse.
4. Even the preserved remnant is not fully safe — some of the hairs tucked into the garment are pulled back out and burned. The theological implication is devastating: even the survivors will not all survive. The fire that consumes the remnant then spreads to 'the entire house of Israel,' indicating that Jerusalem's judgment radiates outward to affect the whole nation.
5. The oracle now interprets the sign-act. Jerusalem's central position (*betokh haggoyim*, 'in the midst of the nations') was intended as a position of privilege and witness — she was to be a model of covenant faithfulness visible to all surrounding peoples. The phrase echoes ancient Near Eastern cosmography where the holy city stands at the navel of the earth.
6. The verb *tamor* (from *marah*, 'to rebel, to be contentious') is stronger than simple disobedience — it conveys active defiance. The comparison is devastating: Jerusalem is not merely as bad as the pagan nations but worse. The nations at least follow their own codes; Jerusalem has violated the superior covenant she received. The distinction between *mishpatim* ('ordinances, judgments') and *chuqqot* ('statutes, decrees') preserves the legal categories of the covenant — both procedural justice and fixed divine requirements have been spurned.
7. The word *hamonkhem* is debated. It may derive from *hamah* ('to be turbulent, to rage') or from *hamon* ('multitude, commotion'). We rendered 'more turbulent' to capture the sense of chaotic rebellion rather than simply 'multiplied.' The final clause intensifies the indictment: Jerusalem has not only failed God's standards but has not even met the pagan nations' standards — she is worse than those who never received the covenant.
8. The emphatic *gam ani* ('even I, I myself') stresses that this is not a withdrawal of protection but an active divine assault. God is not merely allowing enemies to attack — he is personally leading the prosecution. The phrase *le'einei haggoyim* ('in the sight of the nations') means the judgment is deliberately public, serving as a warning to surrounding peoples.
9. The uniqueness formula — 'what I have never done and will never do again' — elevates Jerusalem's judgment above all others in history. The word *to'avotayikh* ('your detestable things, your abominations') is the priestly term for practices that defile the land and make God's presence impossible. Ezekiel the priest sees idolatry not merely as disobedience but as contamination.
10. The cannibalism oracle is stated with horrifying symmetry — parents eating children, children eating parents. This is not prophetic hyperbole; it is the direct fulfillment of the covenant curses sworn at Sinai (Leviticus 26:29, Deuteronomy 28:53-57). Lamentations 2:20 and 4:10 confirm that this actually occurred during the Babylonian siege. The word *she'erit* ('remnant, survivors') — usually a term of hope in prophetic literature — here becomes a term of further scattering.
11. The oath formula *chai ani* ('as I live') is God swearing by his own life — the most solemn oath possible, since there is no one greater to swear by. The word *shiqquts* ('vile image, detestable idol') is distinct from *to'evah* — *shiqquts* refers specifically to idolatrous objects, while *to'evah* covers the broader category of defiling practices. Together they form a comprehensive indictment: both the idols themselves and the rituals surrounding them have contaminated the sanctuary.
11. The verb *egra* ('I will cut down, diminish') from the root *g-r-a* carries a sense of shearing or reducing — fitting imagery given the hair-shaving sign-act that introduced this oracle.
12. This verse decodes the three portions of hair from verses 1-2. The triad of *dever* ('plague'), *ra'av* ('famine'), and *cherev* ('sword') becomes a recurring formula throughout Ezekiel's judgment oracles (6:11-12, 7:15, 12:16, 14:21). The verb *ariq* ('I will unsheathe') repeats from verse 2, reinforcing that even exile does not mean escape — God's sword pursues the scattered.
13. The verb *vehinechamti* ('I will be appeased, comforted') is striking — it uses the same root as 'comfort' (*n-ch-m*) but here conveys divine satisfaction after justice is executed. The word *qin'ah* ('jealousy, zeal, passionate ardor') frames God's wrath as the response of a betrayed covenant partner, not arbitrary rage. A husband's jealousy over an unfaithful wife is the operative metaphor — God's fury is relational, not impersonal.

14. The word *chorbah* ('ruin, desolation') describes not just destruction but permanent devastation — a site that remains visibly destroyed. The word *cherpah* ('reproach, scorn, disgrace') adds social humiliation to physical ruin. Jerusalem was meant to be a city that inspired awe (Psalm 48:2-3); now she will inspire contempt.
15. Four terms pile up to describe Jerusalem's future status among the nations: *cherpah* ('scorn'), *gedufah* ('mockery, taunting'), *musar* ('warning, discipline, instruction'), and *meshammah* ('horror, desolation that causes shuddering'). The sequence moves from social disgrace to existential dread. The closing formula *ani YHWH dibbarti* ('I, the LORD, have spoken') seals the oracle with divine authority — what is decreed will be accomplished.
16. The metaphor of famine as 'arrows' (*chitzei hara'av*) personifies hunger as a weapon deliberately aimed by God. The phrase *matteh lechem* ('staff of bread') is an idiom for the supply of food that sustains life — as a staff supports a walker, bread supports survival. 'Shattering the staff of bread' means destroying the entire food supply, leaving the city without any means of sustenance (cf. Ezekiel 4:16, 14:13, Leviticus 26:26).
17. The fourfold judgment — famine, savage beasts, plague, and sword — matches the covenant curses of Leviticus 26:22-26. The verb *veshikkelukh* ('they will bereave you, leave you childless') from the root *sh-k-l* carries the specific grief of losing children — the wild animals will kill the young. The phrase *dever vadam* ('plague and blood') pairs disease with violent death. The closing formula *ani YHWH dibbarti* seals the chapter as it sealed verse 15, creating a bracket of divine authority around the entire judgment oracle.

6

Summary: Ezekiel 6 is an oracle addressed not to the people but to the mountains of Israel — the high places (bamot) where idolatrous worship flourished. God declares war on the landscape itself, promising to destroy the altars, shatter the incense stands, and scatter the dead bodies of the worshipers among their own idols. The chapter introduces the recognition formula ('Then you will know that I am the LORD') that will become the signature refrain of the entire book, appearing approximately sixty times. A remnant theme emerges: some will survive among the nations and remember God with broken hearts, filled with self-loathing over their own detestable practices.

*What Makes This Remarkable: Addressing the mountains rather than the people is a deliberate rhetorical strategy. The bamot ('high places') were hilltop shrines scattered across the Judean landscape where syncretistic worship blended Canaanite and Israelite practices. By addressing the mountains, Ezekiel treats the very land as complicit in Israel's unfaithfulness — the geography itself must be judged. The recognition formula *vayda'tem ki ani YHWH* ('then you will know that I am the LORD') appears here for what becomes its dominant role in the book: the purpose of judgment is not mere punishment but revelation. God's acts of destruction are designed to produce knowledge of who he is. The remnant passage (vv. 8-10) is remarkable for its description of the exiles' future repentance — they will 'loathe themselves' (*naqotu bifneihem*) for their evil, a rare moment of internalized self-judgment rather than external punishment.*

*Translation Friction: The word *chammanim* (v. 4, 6) is traditionally rendered 'sun-pillars' or 'incense altars' — the exact nature of these objects is debated among scholars, and we rendered as 'incense stands' with a note on the uncertainty. The word *gillulim* ('idols,' literally 'dung-pellets') is Ezekiel's characteristic contemptuous term for false gods; we rendered it as 'idols' in the text but documented the scatological etymology in the notes. The verb *naqotu* (v. 9, 'they will loathe') is intensely physical — it conveys nausea and revulsion directed at oneself, which we rendered as 'loathe themselves' to preserve the visceral quality.*

Connections: The high places (bamot) are the same sites condemned throughout Kings and Chronicles (1 Kings 3:2, 2 Kings 23:8). The scattering of corpses among idols reverses the worshipers' intended communion with their gods — instead of fellowship, they receive burial among ruins. The recognition formula connects forward to its climactic use in the dry bones vision (37:6, 13-14) and the glory's return (43:7). The remnant theology here anticipates the fuller development in chapters 11:16-20 and 36:25-27, where God promises not just survival but transformation of the heart.

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, set your face toward the mountains of Israel and prophesy against them. ³Say: Mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord GOD! This is what the Lord GOD says to the mountains and the hills, to the ravines and the valleys — I myself am bringing a sword against you, and I will destroy your high places. ⁴Your altars will be made desolate, and your incense stands will be shattered. I will throw down your slain before your idols. ⁵I will lay the corpses of the people of Israel before their idols, and I will scatter your bones around your altars. ⁶In all the places where you

live, the cities will be laid waste and the high places left desolate, so that your altars will be laid waste and bear their guilt, your idols will be shattered and brought to nothing, your incense stands will be cut down, and your works will be wiped out. ⁷ The slain will fall in your midst, and you will know that I am the LORD. ⁸ Yet I will leave a remnant — some of you who escape the sword among the nations, when you are scattered through the lands. ⁹ Then your survivors will remember me among the nations where they have been taken captive — how I was crushed by their adulterous heart that turned away from me, and by their eyes that lusted after their idols. They will loathe themselves for the evils they committed, for all their detestable practices. ¹⁰ Then they will know that I am the LORD. I did not speak idly when I declared I would bring this disaster upon them. ¹¹ This is what the Lord GOD says: Strike your hands together and stamp your foot and cry out, 'What horror!' — over all the evil, detestable practices of the house of Israel, for they will fall by sword, by famine, and by plague. ¹² Whoever is far away will die by plague. Whoever is near will fall by the sword. Whoever remains and is under siege will die by famine. And so I will exhaust my fury against them. ¹³ Then you will know that I am the LORD — when their slain lie among their idols, around their altars, on every high hill, on all the mountaintops, under every green tree, and under every leafy oak — every place where they offered pleasing aromas to all their idols. ¹⁴ I will stretch out my hand against them and make the land a desolation — more desolate than the wilderness toward Diblah — in every place where they live. Then they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') introduces the divine speech that follows and is rendered as a colon.
2. The command *sim panekha* ('set your face') indicates a physical orientation — Ezekiel is to turn his body toward the west, facing the land of Israel from Babylon, and direct his oracle at the mountains. The mountains of Israel are addressed because they are the sites of the *bamot* ('high places') where idolatrous worship was conducted on hilltops and ridges throughout the land.
3. The address encompasses the full topography of the land: *harim* ('mountains'), *geva'ot* ('hills'), *afiqim* ('ravines, streambeds'), and *ge'ayot* ('valleys'). Every type of terrain is addressed because idolatrous shrines occupied every type of landscape. The word *bamot* ('high places') is the technical term for the hilltop sanctuaries that were the persistent sin of Israel's history — the reform-resistant worship sites that even faithful kings struggled to remove (cf. 1 Kings 15:14, 2 Kings 12:3).
4. The word *chammanim* is debated — it may refer to incense altars, sun-pillars, or other cultic objects associated with Canaanite worship. We rendered 'incense stands' following the likely connection to *chammanah* ('heat, sun'), suggesting objects used in sun-worship or incense-burning rituals. The word *gillulim* ('idols') is Ezekiel's characteristic derogatory term, likely derived from *galal* ('dung, dung-pellet') — it is a deliberately contemptuous label reducing the gods of the nations to excrement. We render it simply as 'idols' in the text but note the scatological force of the Hebrew.
5. The word *pigrei* ('corpses, carcasses') treats the dead worshipers like slaughtered animals — the same word is used for animal carcasses in Levitical purity law. The scattering of bones around the altars is both a desecration of the worship sites and a grim reversal: the worshipers who came to the altars seeking blessing now litter the ground around them as unburied dead. In priestly terms, human bones render a site permanently unclean (cf. 2 Kings 23:14, 16, where Josiah defiles altars by burning bones on them).
6. The verb *ye'shemu* presents a textual difficulty — it could derive from *shamem* ('to be desolate') or *asham* ('to bear guilt'). We rendered 'bear their guilt' to preserve the priestly concept that the altars themselves have incurred guilt through the worship conducted on them. The sequence of destruction verbs is relentless: *yechervu* ('laid waste'), *nishberu* ('shattered'), *nishbetu* ('brought to nothing'), *nigde'u* ('cut down'), *nimchu* ('wiped out') — five different words for destruction piling up to convey total elimination.
7. This is the first appearance of Ezekiel's signature recognition formula. It will recur approximately sixty times throughout the book, functioning as the theological thesis statement: all of God's acts — destruction, exile, restoration — aim at one outcome: that Israel and the nations will know who the LORD truly is. The formula links Ezekiel's theology directly to the Exodus narrative, where the plagues were also 'so that you will know' (Exodus 7:5, 14:4, 14:18).
8. The shift from total destruction to remnant preservation is abrupt but characteristic of prophetic rhetoric. The word *pelitei cherev* ('escapees of the sword') identifies the survivors specifically as those who survived military violence — not those spared from it, but those who lived through it. The remnant is not unscathed; they carry the trauma of what they witnessed.
9. The Hebrew *nishbarti* can be read as 'I was broken' (Niphal of *shavar*) or 'I broke' (with *libbam* as object). The Niphal reading — 'I was broken/crushed' — is more striking and is followed here: God himself was crushed by their unfaithfulness. The adjective *hazzoneh* ('adulterous, whoring') applied to the heart uses the same root (z-n-h) that dominates the extended allegories of chapters 16 and 23. The verb *naqotu* ('they will loathe') conveys physical disgust — it is stronger than mere regret and suggests a bodily revulsion at one's own past.
10. The phrase *lo el chinnam* ('not for nothing, not idly') asserts that God's warnings through the prophets were not empty rhetoric. Every threatened judgment was a genuine declaration of intent. The word *hara'ah* ('the disaster, the evil') uses the same Hebrew root as 'evil' but here refers to

calamity or disaster — it is the consequence of their own evil, not arbitrary divine malice.

11. The physical gestures — striking hands (hakkeh vekhappekha) and stamping the foot (urqa beraglekha) — are expressions of grief and outrage, not celebration. The exclamation ach is an interjection of lamentation, rendered 'What horror!' to capture the emotional force. The triad of cherev ('sword'), ra'av ('famine'), and dever ('plague') repeats from 5:12 and will continue to recur as the standard formula for comprehensive judgment in Ezekiel.
12. The three fates are arranged geographically: those far from Jerusalem die by plague, those nearby fall by the sword of the invading army, and those trapped inside the besieged city perish from famine. The arrangement is comprehensive — no distance from Jerusalem offers safety. The verb killeti ('I will exhaust, complete, finish') indicates that God's wrath has a terminus — it is not infinite but will be fully spent.
13. The list of worship locations — hills, mountaintops, green trees, leafy oaks — catalogs the typical settings for Canaanite and syncretistic worship throughout the land. The phrase etz ra'anan ('green tree') and elah avuttah ('leafy oak') echo the formulaic condemnation in Deuteronomy 12:2 and throughout Kings (1 Kings 14:23, 2 Kings 16:4, 17:10). The phrase reiach nichoach ('pleasing aroma') is deeply ironic — this is the same vocabulary used for acceptable sacrifices to the LORD (Leviticus 1:9, 13, 17), here applied to idol worship. The priestly language of legitimate worship is being used to describe its perversion.
14. The phrase natiti et yadi ('I will stretch out my hand') echoes the Exodus language of divine intervention — but whereas God stretched out his hand to deliver Israel from Egypt (Exodus 6:6), he now stretches it out to devastate their land. The place name Diblah (or Riblah — some manuscripts read Riblah, a city in the land of Hamath where Nebuchadnezzar held court and executed Zedekiah's sons, 2 Kings 25:6-7) establishes the geographic scope of the devastation: from the southern wilderness to the far northern border. The phrase shemamah umeshammah ('desolation and desolation') uses two forms of the same root for emphasis — utter, compound devastation. The chapter closes with the recognition formula, creating an inclusio with verse 7.

7

Summary: *Ezekiel 7 is the 'end has come' oracle — one of the most urgent and rhythmically intense passages in the prophetic corpus. The chapter announces the total and imminent collapse of the land of Israel in staccato, repetitive bursts: 'The end! The end has come!' The normal order of commerce, agriculture, and society is suspended. Buyers should not rejoice and sellers should not grieve, because none of it will matter. Violence has blossomed into a rod of wickedness. Silver and gold will be thrown into the streets as worthless. The Temple — God's 'treasured place' — will be handed over to foreigners who will profane it. The chapter builds to a cascade of horrors: king, priest, and elder alike will be paralyzed, and the people will finally know that the LORD has acted.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reads like a prophetic panic attack — short, breathless clauses that pile up without resolution. The repetition of qets ('end') in verses 2-6 creates a drumbeat of finality. The Hebrew text is notoriously difficult in places, with some of the most textually corrupt passages in the entire book (especially vv. 5-7, 10-11), and translators have struggled with Ezekiel 7 for centuries. We have followed the Masoretic Text while noting the difficulties. The marketplace imagery (vv. 12-13) is remarkable: Ezekiel uses the language of commercial transaction to declare that all human economic activity has become meaningless in the face of divine judgment. The description of silver and gold thrown into the streets (v. 19) because they cannot save from the day of God's fury anticipates James 5:1-3 and Revelation 18:11-19. The phrase tsefirataim (v. 7, 10) is one of the most obscure words in Ezekiel — possibly 'doom,' 'your turn,' or 'morning' — and we have rendered it with a note on the uncertainty.*

Translation Friction: *The textual difficulties in this chapter are severe. Verse 7 contains the hapax legomenon tsefirataim, which has been variously rendered as 'doom,' 'the circlet,' 'your turn,' or 'morning.' We rendered 'doom' as the most contextually appropriate option while documenting the uncertainty. Verse 11 is also extremely difficult: the Hebrew appears to say 'violence has risen into a rod of wickedness — not from them, not from their abundance, not from their wealth, and there is no eminence among them,' but the meaning is debated. The phrase match resha (v. 11, 'rod of wickedness') may refer to a scepter of power now corrupted. We preserved the difficulty rather than smoothing it into false clarity.*

Connections: *The 'Day of the LORD' language connects to the broader prophetic tradition: Amos 5:18-20 (the earliest 'Day of the LORD' oracle), Isaiah 2:12-17, Joel 1:15, 2:1-2, Zephaniah 1:14-18. The thrown silver and gold (v. 19) connects to Isaiah 2:20 and Zephaniah 1:18. The defilement of the Temple (v. 22) anticipates the Temple vision of chapters 8-11 where Ezekiel will witness the abominations firsthand. The chapter's urgency about 'the end' connects to Daniel 8:17, 11:35, 12:4 and ultimately to the New Testament apocalyptic tradition.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²And you, son of man — this is what the Lord GOD says to the soil of Israel: An end! The end has come upon the four corners of the land. ³Now the end is upon you. I will unleash my anger against you, and I will judge you according to your ways and bring down upon you all your detestable practices. ⁴My eye will not spare you, and I will show no compassion. Instead, I will bring your ways down upon you, and your detestable practices will remain in your midst. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ⁵This is what the Lord GOD says: Disaster — a singular disaster — it is coming! ⁶An end has come! The end has come! It has awakened against you — it is coming! ⁷Doom has come upon you, inhabitant of the land! The time has arrived. The day is near — a day of tumult, not of joyful shouts on the mountains. ⁸Now — in an instant — I will pour out my fury upon you and spend my anger against you. I will judge you according to your ways and bring down upon you all your detestable practices. ⁹My eye will not spare, and I will show no compassion. I will bring your ways down upon you, and your detestable practices will remain in your midst. Then you will know that I am the LORD who strikes. ¹⁰Look — the day! Look — it has come! Doom has gone out. The rod has budded. Arrogance has blossomed. ¹¹Violence has risen into a rod of wickedness. None of them will remain — not their multitude, not their wealth — and there will be no lamentation for them. ¹²The time has arrived; the day has drawn near. The buyer should not rejoice, and the seller should not grieve — for burning wrath is upon the whole crowd. ¹³For the seller will not return to what was sold, even while both are still alive — for the vision against the whole crowd will not be revoked, and no one living in his iniquity will hold firm. ¹⁴They have blown the trumpet and made everything ready, but no one goes out to battle — for my burning wrath is against the whole crowd. ¹⁵The sword is outside; plague and famine are inside. Whoever is in the open field will die by the sword, and whoever is in the city — famine and plague will consume him. ¹⁶Those among them who escape will flee to the mountains, where they will be like doves of the valleys — all of them moaning, each over his own iniquity. ¹⁷Every hand will go limp, and every knee will turn to water. ¹⁸They will put on sackcloth, and shuddering will cover them. Shame will be on every face, and baldness on every head. ¹⁹They will throw their silver into the streets, and their gold will be treated as something unclean. Their silver and their gold will not be able to save them on the day of the LORD's fury. They will not fill their stomachs or satisfy their hunger — because their wealth became the stumbling block of their iniquity. ²⁰They turned the beauty of their ornaments into a source of pride, and from it they fashioned their detestable images and vile idols. Therefore I have made it something unclean to them. ²¹I will hand it over to foreigners as plunder and to the wicked of the earth as spoil, and they will profane it. ²²I will turn my face away from them, and invaders will profane my treasured place — they will enter it and defile it. ²³Forge a chain! For the land is filled with bloodshed, and the city is full of violence. ²⁴I will bring the most ruthless of nations, and they will seize their houses. I will put an end to the pride of the powerful, and their sanctuaries will be profaned. ²⁵Anguish is coming! They will seek peace, but there will be none. ²⁶Catastrophe upon catastrophe will come, and rumor upon rumor will spread. They will seek a vision from the prophet, but instruction will vanish from the priest, and counsel will disappear from the elders. ²⁷The king will mourn, and the prince will be clothed in devastation, and the hands of the common people will tremble. I will deal with them according to their own ways, and by their own standards I will judge them. Then they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula, identical to 6:1. The oracle that follows is among the most rhythmically urgent in Ezekiel.
2. The oracle is addressed to *admat Yisra'el* ('the soil/ground of Israel') — not the people but the land itself, continuing the pattern from chapter 6 of addressing the geography. The word *qets* ('end') is hammered twice in quick succession, creating the drumbeat urgency that dominates the chapter. The 'four corners' (*arba kanfot*) means the end reaches the entire territory without exception — no corner is exempt.
3. The verb *shillachti* ('I will send, unleash') treats divine anger as a force released like a weapon or a predatory animal — it is sent deliberately, not erupting accidentally. The phrase *kidhrakhayikh* ('according to your ways') establishes that the judgment is proportional and earned — it corresponds precisely to the people's conduct. The word *to'avotayikh* ('your detestable practices') continues from chapter 5 as the priestly indictment for defilement.
4. The phrase *lo tachos eini* ('my eye will not spare') personifies divine judgment as unflinching sight — God sees everything and will not look away. The statement 'your detestable practices will remain in your midst' means the consequences of their abominations will be inescapable — they will live amid the wreckage of their own choices. The recognition formula closes this opening section.

5. The word *ra'ah* ('disaster, calamity') is repeated with the modifier *achat* ('one, singular, unique'), emphasizing that this is not one disaster among many but an unprecedented, one-of-a-kind catastrophe. The Hebrew *hinneh* ('look!') conveys immediacy — the disaster is not merely predicted but already in motion. We rendered it as the exclamatory 'it is coming!' to capture the urgency without using the archaic 'behold.'
6. The verb *heqits* ('it has awakened') uses the root *q-y-ts*, which creates a wordplay with *qets* ('end') from the root *q-ts-ts*. The end has 'awakened' — as if it were a sleeping predator now roused and moving toward its prey. This is one of the most striking wordplays in the chapter: the *qets* *heqits* ('the end has awakened'). The repetition of *ba* ('has come') three times in rapid succession creates the breathless, staccato rhythm that characterizes this oracle.
7. The word *hatsefirah* is one of the most debated words in Ezekiel. It may derive from *tsafar* ('to wind around, to crown') suggesting a 'circlet' or 'garland' — perhaps ironically, a garland of doom instead of celebration. Others connect it to *tsefirataim* in verse 10 and render it as 'doom' or 'your turn.' We rendered 'doom' as the most contextually fitting option. The contrast between *mehumah* ('tumult, confusion, panic') and *hed harim* ('echo/shout of the mountains') sets panic against celebration — the mountains that once echoed with joyful cries will now echo with chaos.
8. The phrase *miqarov* ('shortly, from nearby, imminently') stresses the temporal proximity — judgment is not a distant future event but imminent. The verb *eshpokh* ('I will pour out') uses liquid imagery for divine wrath — fury is poured out like water or blood, unstoppable once released. This verse closely parallels verse 3, creating a repetitive structure that mimics the relentless approach of the end.
9. This verse mirrors verse 4 almost exactly but adds the crucial participle *makkeh* ('who strikes') — the recognition formula is expanded. It is not enough to know that he is the LORD; they must know that he is the LORD who strikes. The divine identity is revealed through the act of judgment itself.
10. The verse uses botanical imagery for the growth of judgment: the rod (*hammatteh*) has 'budded' (*tsats*) and arrogance (*hazzadon*) has 'blossomed' (*parach*). Violence and pride are treated as plants that have reached full maturity and are now bearing their terrible fruit. The *matteh* ('rod, staff') could refer to the scepter of royal authority now corrupted, or to the 'rod of wickedness' mentioned in the next verse. The word *hatsefirah* repeats from verse 7.
11. This is one of the most textually difficult verses in Ezekiel. The phrase *hechamas qam lematch resha* ('violence has risen into a rod of wickedness') appears to say that violence itself has grown into a scepter or instrument of wicked power. The subsequent phrases are extremely terse and ambiguous: *lo mehem* ('not from them'), *lo mehamonam* ('not from their multitude/abundance'), *lo mehemohhem* ('not from their wealth/tumult'), *velo noha bahem* ('and no lamentation/rest among them'). The overall sense is total annihilation — nothing of theirs will survive, and no one will even mourn their passing.
12. The marketplace language is striking. Normally a buyer rejoices at a good deal and a seller grieves at parting with property (especially ancestral land, which carried covenantal significance). Ezekiel declares both responses meaningless: economic activity is suspended because the entire framework of buying and selling is about to be destroyed. The word *charon* ('burning anger, fierce wrath') intensifies the standard word for anger — it conveys white-hot fury.
13. Under normal Israelite law, land sold during economic hardship would return to the original owner in the Jubilee year (Leviticus 25:10-13). Ezekiel declares that this mechanism is now irrelevant — the seller will never reclaim the property because the entire social order is collapsing. The phrase *ba'avono chayyato* ('in his iniquity, his life') links sin directly to survival — iniquity undermines the capacity to endure. The verb *yitchazzaqu* ('they will hold firm, strengthen themselves') indicates that no amount of personal effort can compensate for the coming judgment.
14. The trumpet (*taqa battaqa*) is the signal for military mobilization, but the paralysis is total: despite the alarm, no one responds. The verb *holekh* ('goes') indicates that the failure is not in preparation but in will — the people are frozen. God's wrath has already defeated them before the enemy arrives. The irony is sharp: military readiness is useless when the adversary is God himself.
15. The verse creates a deadly binary with no middle ground: outside the city walls, the sword waits; inside, famine and disease. There is no safe location. The verb *yokhlenu* ('will consume him, devour him') treats plague and famine as predators that eat their victims — the language is visceral rather than clinical.
16. The simile of doves (*yonei hagge'ayot*, 'doves of the valleys') is poignant — doves are associated with mournful cooing sounds. The survivors on the mountains will not be celebrating their escape but will coo mournfully like valley doves displaced to unfamiliar heights. The phrase *ish ba'avono* ('each over his own iniquity') makes the mourning personal and penitential — they grieve not merely over their suffering but over the sin that caused it.
17. The idiom *yadayim tirpenah* ('hands go limp') describes complete loss of strength — the inability to fight, work, or even hold anything. The phrase *birkhayim telakhnah mayim* ('knees will go to water') is a vivid idiom for terror-induced weakness, possibly including the loss of bladder control. Together they depict total physical collapse from fear.
18. Four signs of mourning and humiliation pile up: sackcloth (*saqim* — rough goat-hair garments worn against the skin), shuddering (*pallatsut* — involuntary trembling from horror), shame (*bushah* — public disgrace visible on the face), and baldness (*qorchah* — shaving the head as a mourning practice). The comprehensive 'every face... every head' means universal grief with no exceptions.
19. The image of silver thrown into streets (*bachutsot yashliku*) is one of the most powerful in prophetic literature — wealth that defined social status becomes garbage. The word *niddah* applied to gold is a priestly term for ritual impurity, particularly menstrual uncleanness — gold becomes as repulsive as the most polluting substance in the priestly purity system. The final clause identifies wealth as *mikhshol avonam* ('the stumbling block

of their iniquity') — it was their riches that tripped them into sin, and now those same riches cannot rescue them.

20. The 'beauty of ornament' (tsevi edyo) likely refers to gold and silver jewelry that was melted down and reshaped into idols — the precious metals God provided were repurposed for idol-making. The phrase lega'on samahu ('they set it as a source of pride') indicates that the idols became objects of arrogant display. God's response is to make the same material niddah ('unclean') — transforming their pride into pollution. The pairing of to'avotam ('their detestable practices') and shiqqutseihem ('their vile idols') combines both priestly terms of revulsion.
21. The 'foreigners' (zarim) and 'wicked of the earth' (rish'ei ha'arets) refer to the Babylonian invaders. The verb chilleluhu ('they will profane it') uses the priestly vocabulary for desecrating what is holy — the most sacred materials of Israel will be handled by uncircumcised, ritually impure foreigners. For Ezekiel the priest, this is the ultimate horror.
22. The phrase vahsiboti fanai mehem ('I will turn my face away from them') indicates the withdrawal of divine protection. When God turns his face away, the Temple is left unguarded. The word tsefuni ('my treasured/hidden place') refers to the Temple — specifically perhaps the inner sanctuary or the Holy of Holies, the most restricted sacred space. The word paritsim ('violent ones, invaders, breakers-in') describes those who violate boundaries — the Babylonian soldiers who will physically break into the sacred precincts.
23. The command aseh harattoq ('make a chain') is addressed to Ezekiel — he is to forge or mime the chain that represents captivity. The chain symbolizes the exile that is coming. The phrase mishpat damim ('judgment of blood, bloodshed') indicates that the land is saturated with violent crime. The pairing of the entire land (ha'arets) with the city (ha'ir — Jerusalem) moves from general to specific: the whole country is bloodstained, and its capital is the epicenter of violence (chamas).
24. The phrase ra'ei goyim ('the worst/most ruthless of nations') is a superlative — God selects the most violent available instrument for judgment. The Babylonians were renowned for their military brutality. The verb yareshu ('they will seize, take possession of') is the same word used for Israel's original conquest of Canaan — the irony is deliberate: what Israel did to the Canaanites is now done to them. The phrase ge'on azzim ('pride of the powerful') may refer to the Temple itself as Israel's greatest source of pride.
25. The word qefadah ('anguish, destruction, cutting off') is rare and conveys both physical destruction and psychological dread. The desperate search for shalom ('peace') that finds none is a devastating image — the word that means wholeness, completeness, and flourishing is simply unavailable. There is no shalom to be found anywhere.
26. The triple collapse of Israel's leadership structures is systematic: the navi ('prophet') has no vision (chazon), the kohen ('priest') has no torah ('instruction, teaching'), and the zaqenim ('elders') have no etsah ('counsel, advice'). Every channel of divine guidance is simultaneously shut down. The word hovah ('catastrophe, disaster') piled upon itself creates a sense of cascading, compounding ruin — each disaster triggering the next before recovery is possible.
26. The word torah here means 'instruction, priestly teaching' in its original sense — the priest's role was to give torah, to teach the people how to distinguish clean from unclean, holy from common. When torah 'vanishes' (to'bad) from the priest, the entire system of discerning God's will collapses.
27. The social hierarchy collapses from top to bottom: melek ('king'), nasi ('prince, ruler'), and am ha'arets ('people of the land, common people') are all equally devastated. The phrase yilbash shemamah ('clothed in devastation') uses the language of putting on garments — the prince wears desolation like a robe instead of his royal vestments. The phrase kidhrakkam e'eseh otam ('I will deal with them according to their ways') and bemishpeteihem eshpetem ('by their own standards I will judge them') assert strict reciprocity — the judgment precisely mirrors the crime.
27. The chapter closes with the recognition formula, completing the literary frame opened in verse 4. The entire chapter, from 'the end has come' to 'they will know that I am the LORD,' traces the arc from announcement through devastation to the ultimate purpose: knowledge of God.

8

Summary: *Ezekiel 8 begins the Temple vision sequence (chapters 8-11) in which Ezekiel is transported in a visionary experience from Babylon to Jerusalem's Temple. There he witnesses four escalating abominations committed within the sacred precincts: the 'image of jealousy' at the northern gate, seventy elders burning incense to wall carvings in a hidden chamber, women weeping for the Mesopotamian deity Tammuz at the Temple gate, and twenty-five men worshipping the sun with their backs turned to the Temple. Each scene is introduced with 'you will see still greater abominations,' creating a crescendo of sacrilege that provides the theological justification for the glory's departure in chapters 10-11.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vision is dated precisely — the sixth year, sixth month, fifth day (approximately September 592 BCE) — placing it fourteen months after the inaugural throne-chariot vision. Ezekiel sits in his house in Babylon with the elders of Judah before him when the vision seizes him, a detail that anchors the supernatural experience in mundane physical reality. The four abominations form a deliberate theological argument: each is worse than the last, and each penetrates deeper into the*

sacred space. The 'image of jealousy' (*semel haqqin'ah*) at the gate provokes God's own jealousy — the Hebrew *qin'ah* is the same word used of God's covenantal jealousy in Exodus 20:5. The seventy elders in darkness recall the seventy elders who ascended Sinai with Moses (Exodus 24:1, 9), making the contrast between covenant faithfulness and idolatrous betrayal devastatingly sharp. Tammuz worship represents the importation of Mesopotamian fertility religion into the very courts of the LORD. The sun-worshippers with backs to the Temple enact the most extreme form of apostasy — physically turning away from God's dwelling to face the rising sun. We preserved the Hebrew phrase 'putting the branch to their nose' in verse 17, which may be an obscene gesture of contempt toward God, though the exact meaning remains debated.

Translation Friction: *The phrase *semel haqqin'ah* ('image of jealousy') in verse 3 is ambiguous — it could refer to an Asherah pole, a statue of Baal, or some other cult image. We rendered it descriptively rather than identifying it with a specific idol, preserving the text's own ambiguity. The 'form like the appearance of fire' in verse 2 describing the divine figure uses the same hedged language as the throne-chariot vision — the stacked similes (*demut*, *mar'eh*) signal that Ezekiel is straining to describe divine reality. The phrase 'putting the branch to their nose' (v. 17) is one of the most debated in Ezekiel — the Masoretic tradition marks 'their nose' as a *tiqqun soferim* (scribal correction), suggesting the original read 'my nose,' meaning they thrust the branch toward God's face. We rendered the Masoretic text and documented the tradition. The identification of Jaazaniah ben Shaphan among the seventy elders (v. 11) is painful — the Shaphan family was known for supporting Josiah's reforms, making this apostasy a betrayal within the reformer's own household.*

Connections: *The vision of Temple abominations connects backward to Solomon's Temple dedication (1 Kings 8, where the *kavod* filled the Temple) and forward to the glory's departure in chapters 10-11. The seventy elders echo Exodus 24:1, 9 and Numbers 11:16-25. The 'image of jealousy' connects to the second commandment (Exodus 20:4-5) and the *qin'ah* ('jealousy') of God. Tammuz worship connects to the broader prophetic critique of fertility religion (Hosea 2, Jeremiah 44). Sun worship connects to 2 Kings 23:11, where Josiah removed the horses dedicated to the sun from the Temple entrance. The entire chapter provides the theological basis for the destruction of Jerusalem narrated in 2 Kings 25 and Jeremiah 52.*

¹In the sixth year, in the sixth month, on the fifth day of the month, I was sitting in my house with the elders of Judah seated before me, when the hand of the Lord GOD fell upon me there. ²I looked, and there was a form with the appearance of fire — from what appeared to be his waist downward there was fire, and from his waist upward something like the gleam of amber-glow. ³He stretched out what looked like a hand and seized me by a lock of my hair. The Spirit lifted me up between earth and heaven and brought me to Jerusalem in visions of God — to the entrance of the inner gate that faces north, where the image of jealousy that provokes jealousy was installed. ⁴And there was the glory of the God of Israel, appearing just as I had seen it in the valley. ⁵He said to me, "Son of man, lift your eyes now toward the north." So I raised my eyes toward the north, and there, north of the altar gate, was this image of jealousy at the entrance. ⁶He said to me, "Son of man, do you see what they are doing — the great abominations that the house of Israel is committing here, driving me far from my sanctuary? But you will turn again and see even greater abominations." ⁷He brought me to the entrance of the court, and I looked — there was a hole in the wall. ⁸He said to me, "Son of man, dig through the wall." So I dug through the wall, and there was a doorway. ⁹He said to me, "Go in and see the vile abominations they are committing here." ¹⁰I went in and looked — there, carved on the walls all around, were images of every kind of crawling creature and loathsome animal, along with all the dung-idols of the house of Israel. ¹¹Seventy men from the elders of the house of Israel were standing before them, with Jaazaniah son of Shaphan standing among them. Each man held his censer in his hand, and a thick cloud of incense was rising. ¹²He said to me, "Son of man, have you seen what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the darkness, each in the rooms of his carved images? For they say, 'The LORD does not see us — the LORD has abandoned the land.'" ¹³He said to me, "You will turn again and see even greater abominations that they are committing." ¹⁴Then he brought me to the entrance of the north gate of the house of the LORD, and there were women sitting, weeping for Tammuz. ¹⁵He said to me, "Have you seen this, son of man? You will turn again and see abominations even greater than these." ¹⁶He brought me into the inner court of the house of the LORD, and there, at the entrance of the Temple of the LORD between the portico and the altar, were about twenty-five men with their backs to the Temple of the LORD and their faces toward the east — they were bowing

down eastward to the sun. ¹⁷He said to me, "Have you seen this, son of man? Is it too trivial for the house of Judah to commit the abominations they have committed here? For they have filled the land with violence and have turned back again to provoke me. And look — they are thrusting the branch to their nose. ¹⁸Therefore I will act in wrath. My eye will not show pity and I will not have compassion. Even if they cry out in my ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula places this vision approximately fourteen months after the inaugural vision of chapter 1. The 'hand of the LORD' (yad Adonai YHWH) is Ezekiel's characteristic term for the onset of prophetic experience — a force that seizes the prophet involuntarily (cf. 1:3, 3:14, 3:22, 33:22, 37:1, 40:1).
1. The elders of Judah sitting before Ezekiel indicates he was functioning as a prophetic authority among the exiles in Babylon. The vision comes while he is in the presence of community leaders — the audience for the revelation is already assembled.
2. The stacked comparative particles — demut ('likeness, form'), kemar'eh ('like the appearance of') — are Ezekiel's characteristic hedging language when describing divine phenomena. The prophet is not saying 'I saw fire' but 'I saw something that looked like the appearance of fire.' This layered indirection signals the inadequacy of human language to capture divine reality.
2. The word chashmal ('amber-glow') is one of the most mysterious words in Ezekiel, appearing also in 1:4 and 1:27. Its exact meaning is uncertain — ancient translations suggest 'gleaming bronze' or 'electrum.' Rabbinic tradition treated it with caution, associating it with the dangerous divine fire. We render it as 'amber-glow' to capture both the visual quality and the strangeness.
3. The transport by a lock of hair is visceral and physical — the prophet's body is seized. The phrase bemar'ot Elohim ('in visions of God') clarifies that this is a visionary experience, not a physical journey. Ezekiel's body remains in Babylon while his prophetic consciousness is transported to Jerusalem.
3. The identity of the semel haqqin'ah is debated. It may be an Asherah image (2 Kings 21:7), a statue of Baal, or some other cult object. The text does not specify — it names the image by its effect (provoking God's jealousy) rather than its identity. We preserve this ambiguity.
3. The word semel appears rarely in the Hebrew Bible (Deuteronomy 4:16, 2 Chronicles 33:7, 33:15) and denotes an idol or cult image. Its placement at the northern gate of the inner court means it occupied a position at the very entrance to the sacred precincts.
4. The reference to 'the valley' (biqa'ah) connects this vision to 3:22-23, where Ezekiel saw the glory of the LORD in the plain/valley near the Chebar canal. The glory in the Temple matches the glory in exile — the same God is present in both locations.
4. The juxtaposition of God's glory with the image of jealousy in the previous verse creates the theological crisis of the chapter: the holy presence and the idolatrous object occupy the same space. This cannot continue.
5. The altar gate likely refers to the gate near the bronze altar in the inner court. The positioning of the idol north of the altar gate places it in direct visual competition with the sacrificial altar — the worshipper approaching the altar would see the idol first.
5. The divine guide directs Ezekiel's gaze deliberately. Each abomination must be seen and registered — this is a guided tour of sacrilege, building a case for judgment.
6. The phrase lerachaqah me'al miqdashi ('to drive me far from my sanctuary') is theologically crucial — the abominations are not merely offensive to God but are actively forcing him out of his own dwelling. The verb rachaq ('to be far, to distance') frames idolatry as an eviction of God from his Temple.
6. The word to'evot ('abominations') is the priestly term for what defiles sacred space. Its plural form gedolot ('great') emphasizes the severity, and the promise of 'even greater abominations' signals that the tour has only begun.
7. The hole in the wall suggests concealment — whatever is happening behind this wall is hidden from public view. The transition from the openly displayed idol at the gate to a secret chamber behind a wall signals that the abominations are becoming more covert and more shameful.
8. The command to dig through the wall makes Ezekiel an active participant in uncovering the hidden abominations. The prophet must labor to expose what the elders have concealed. The Hebrew chatar means to dig, bore through, or break into — it carries connotations of breaking and entering, as though Ezekiel is breaching a cover-up.
9. The adjective hara'ot ('evil, wicked, vile') intensifies to'evot — these are not merely abominations but wicked abominations. The accumulation of negative terms builds the rhetorical force of the vision.
10. The word gillulim ('dung-idols') is Ezekiel's characteristic term of contempt for idols, appearing over thirty times in the book. The word is related to gelal ('dung, dung pellets') and is a deliberate insult — the prophet refuses to dignify the idols with a neutral term.
10. The wall carvings depicting remesh ('crawling things') and behemah ('animals') suggest Egyptian-style zoomorphic worship — animal deities carved on the walls of a hidden chamber within the Temple of the LORD. The phrase saviv saviv ('all around, all around') emphasizes the total coverage of the walls with these images.

11. The number seventy deliberately echoes the seventy elders who accompanied Moses up Sinai (Exodus 24:1, 9) and the seventy elders appointed to share Moses's prophetic burden (Numbers 11:16-25). The elders who once stood in God's presence on the holy mountain now stand before animal images in a hidden chamber — the inversion is devastating.
11. Jaazaniah son of Shaphan is singled out by name, which is remarkable because Shaphan was the scribe who brought the discovered Torah scroll to King Josiah and helped launch the great reform (2 Kings 22:3-13). His son is now leading secret idol worship. The family that helped destroy Judah's idols has produced an idolater.
11. The word *miqteret* ('censer') and *qetoret* ('incense') are priestly vocabulary — these are sacred implements being used for forbidden worship. The thick cloud of incense parodies the legitimate incense offering in the Temple.
12. The elders offer two theological justifications for their idolatry: God does not see (denying his omniscience) and God has abandoned the land (denying his presence). Both are false in context — God has brought Ezekiel here precisely to see, and his glory is still in the Temple (v. 4). But the elders' claim will become self-fulfilling: their abominations will indeed drive God from the land.
12. The phrase *chadrei maskito* ('rooms of his carved images') could refer to individual shrine rooms within the Temple complex or to private idol chambers. The word *maskith* suggests carved or decorated images — possibly the wall carvings described in verse 10.
13. The refrain 'even greater abominations' (*to'evot gedolot*) structures the entire vision as an ascending scale of sacrilege. Each scene is worse than the last, building toward a climax that will make God's departure inevitable. The rhetorical effect is cumulative — the reader, like Ezekiel, is meant to be overwhelmed.
14. Tammuz (Sumerian Dumuzi) was a Mesopotamian deity of vegetation and fertility whose annual death and descent to the underworld was mourned in ritual weeping. The women's mourning rites for Tammuz in the Temple precincts represent the importation of Babylonian-Mesopotamian religion into the heart of Israelite worship.
14. The presence of women performing pagan rites at the Temple gate is significant — Tammuz worship was particularly associated with women's ritual practice. The location at the north gate, like the image of jealousy, places pagan worship at the very entrances to the sacred precincts.
14. The Hebrew month Tammuz (the fourth month, approximately June-July) preserves the deity's name in the Jewish calendar to this day, though the religious association was long abandoned.
15. The formula intensifies — now it is 'greater than these' (*me'elleh*), adding a comparative that makes the escalation explicit. Each scene is not merely another abomination but a worse one. The final scene (v. 16) will be the climax.
16. This is the climactic abomination. The position 'between the portico and the altar' is the most sacred location accessible to priests — the place where Joel 2:17 says the priests should weep and intercede. Instead, twenty-five men stand with their backs deliberately turned to the Temple — to the dwelling place of God — and worship the sun.
16. The number twenty-five may represent the twenty-four priestly courses plus the high priest, suggesting these are the very priests responsible for the Temple's sanctity. Their backs to the Temple is not mere negligence but a physical enactment of apostasy — they have literally turned their backs on God.
16. Sun worship in the Temple precincts is attested in 2 Kings 23:11, where Josiah removed the horses and chariots dedicated to the sun. Despite Josiah's reforms, the practice has returned. The eastward orientation parodies the proper orientation of worship, which should face the Temple (and thus face God's presence within it).
17. The word *hanakel* ('is it trivial?') uses the root *qalal* ('to be light, trivial') — the exact opposite of *kavod* ('heavy, weighty, glorious'). The question is bitterly ironic: they have treated what is heaviest (God's presence) as lightest (trivial).
17. The phrase 'thrusting the branch to their nose' (*sholchim et-hazzemorah el appam*) is one of the most debated phrases in Ezekiel. Some scholars see a reference to a Zoroastrian or Mesopotamian ritual involving holding branches before the face during sun worship. Others read it as a crude gesture of contempt — an ancient equivalent of an obscene gesture directed at God.
17. The Masoretic tradition notes that 'their nose' (*appam*) is a *tiqqun soferim* — a scribal emendation. The original may have read 'my nose' (*appi*), meaning they thrust the branch toward God's own face. If so, the scribes softened the text to avoid the image of a direct insult to God's person. We render the received text but note this tradition.
17. The word *chamas* ('violence') extends the indictment beyond cultic sin to social injustice — the land is not merely idolatrous but violent. Religious corruption and social corruption go together.
18. The divine response mirrors the escalation of the abominations. Three negations — no pity, no compassion, no hearing — close off every avenue of mercy. The language is judicial: God has seen the evidence (vv. 5-17) and now pronounces the sentence.
18. The phrase *lo tachos eini* ('my eye will not pity') is a formula that recurs throughout Ezekiel's judgment oracles (5:11, 7:4, 7:9, 9:5, 9:10). The eye that has just been forced to see these abominations will now refuse to look with mercy.
18. The refusal to hear echoes and inverts the covenant relationship — Israel refused to hear God's voice (cf. Jeremiah 11:8), and now God refuses to hear theirs. The covenant's reciprocal obligations have collapsed.

9

Summary: *Ezekiel 9 follows immediately from the Temple abominations vision. God summons six executioners with weapons of destruction and a seventh figure — a man clothed in linen carrying a scribe's ink case — who is commanded to mark the foreheads of those in Jerusalem who grieve over the city's abominations. Everyone without the mark is to be killed without mercy, beginning at the sanctuary itself. The slaughter begins with the elders before the Temple. Ezekiel cries out in anguish, and God responds that the iniquity of Israel and Judah is too great. The glory of the God of Israel has risen from the cherub to the threshold of the Temple — the first movement in the staged departure that will culminate in chapters 10-11.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The mark placed on the foreheads of the faithful is the Hebrew letter tav (ת), the last letter of the alphabet. In the paleo-Hebrew script used before the Babylonian exile, the tav was written as a cross or X shape — a detail that later Christian interpreters connected to the sign of the cross, though Ezekiel's original audience would have understood it simply as a mark of identification and protection. The concept of marking the faithful for preservation while judgment falls on the unfaithful resonates with the Passover narrative (Exodus 12:7, 12-13), where blood on the doorposts protected Israelite homes from the destroying angel. The man in linen is a priestly figure — linen (bad) was the garment of the high priest on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:4) — who functions here as both scribe and intercessor. The command to 'begin at my sanctuary' (v. 6) is theologically devastating: judgment starts not with the pagans outside but with the place that should have been holiest. We rendered the divine command with its full force — the executioners are told not to spare old or young, women or children, and only the marked are exempt.*

Translation Friction: *The word tav in verse 4 required a translator note explaining that the letter itself, not a generic 'mark,' is being placed on the foreheads. The instruction to kill without distinction — old, young, women, children — is one of the most difficult passages in Ezekiel and must be rendered without softening, as it communicates the totality of divine judgment. The phrase 'begin at my sanctuary' (v. 6) contains the Hebrew mimmiqdashi, and we rendered miqdash as 'sanctuary' consistently throughout. The identity of the six executioners is not specified in the text — they may be angelic beings, divine agents, or symbolic representations — and we preserved this ambiguity. Ezekiel's outcry in verse 8 (ahhah, Adonai YHWH) uses the characteristic lament interjection that appears throughout the book.*

Connections: *The marking of the righteous connects backward to the Passover (Exodus 12), the mark of Cain (Genesis 4:15), and forward to the sealing of the 144,000 in Revelation 7:3-4 and 14:1. The man in linen reappears in chapter 10 to scatter coals over the city and in Daniel 10:5 and 12:6-7 as a heavenly figure. The command to begin judgment at the sanctuary anticipates 1 Peter 4:17 ('judgment begins at the household of God'). The glory rising from the cherub to the threshold (v. 3) begins the staged departure completed in 10:18-19 and 11:22-23. The six executioners may connect to the tradition of destroying angels seen in 2 Samuel 24:16 and 2 Kings 19:35.*

Then he called out in my hearing with a loud voice: "Bring near the executioners of the city, each with his weapon of destruction in his hand." And there — six men were coming from the direction of the upper gate that faces north, each with his shattering weapon in his hand. Among them was one man clothed in linen with a scribe's ink case at his waist. They came in and stood beside the bronze altar. Now the glory of the God of Israel had risen from above the cherub where it had rested, moving to the threshold of the Temple. He called to the man clothed in linen who had the scribe's ink case at his waist. The LORD said to him, "Pass through the city, through the midst of Jerusalem, and put a mark on the foreheads of the people who groan and grieve over all the abominations committed in it." To the others he said in my hearing, "Go through the city after him and strike. Let your eye not show pity, and do not have compassion. Old men, young men, young women, children, and women — slaughter them to destruction. But do not touch anyone who bears the mark. And begin at my sanctuary." So they began with the elders who were in front of the Temple. He said to them, "Defile the Temple and fill the courts with the slain. Go out!" So they went out and struck down people throughout the city. While they were striking them down and I alone was left, I fell on my face and cried out, "Alas, Lord GOD! Will you destroy the entire remnant of

Israel as you pour out your wrath on Jerusalem?" 9He said to me, "The iniquity of the house of Israel and Judah is exceedingly vast. The land is full of bloodshed and the city is full of injustice, for they say, 'The LORD has abandoned the land, and the LORD does not see.'" 10As for me — my eye will not show pity and I will not have compassion. I have brought their conduct down on their own heads." 11Then the man clothed in linen, the one with the ink case at his waist, reported back: "I have done everything you commanded me."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *pequddot* ('executioners, those appointed for punishment') is from the root *p-q-d* ('to visit, appoint, attend to, punish'). In this context it carries the sense of divine appointees commissioned for judicial execution — the city's sentence is about to be carried out.
1. The phrase *keli mashcheto* ('his weapon of destruction') uses the root *sh-ch-t* ('to destroy, slaughter, corrupt'), the same root used for the destruction of Sodom (Genesis 19:13-14). These are not ordinary weapons but instruments of divine judgment.
2. The upper gate facing north is the same direction from which the abominations were concentrated in chapter 8. Judgment enters from the same gate where the idolatry was performed.
2. The man clothed in linen (*lavush baddim*) stands apart from the six executioners. Linen (*bad*) is the priestly garment worn by the high priest on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:4), marking this figure as a priestly intercessor even in the midst of judgment. He carries a *qeset hassofer* ('scribe's ink case') — a writing implement used for recording and marking, not a weapon.
2. The word *mappats* ('shattering weapon, club, mace') describes a heavy crushing weapon — not a sword but a blunt instrument of destruction. The bronze altar where they stand is the great sacrificial altar in the Temple courtyard, the center of Israelite worship.
3. The singular '*cherub*' (*keruv*) here likely refers to the cherubim of the ark of the covenant in the Most Holy Place — the golden figures above the mercy seat where God's presence was understood to dwell (Exodus 25:22, 1 Samuel 4:4). The glory rising from the cherub is God departing from his seat.
3. The movement to the threshold (*miftnan*) is the first stage of a deliberate, staged departure. God does not leave suddenly but reluctantly, in stages, as though pausing to see if the people will repent. The threshold is a liminal space — God is at the door, not yet departed.
3. The phrase *na'alah me'al* ('had risen from above') uses the verb *alah* ('to go up, ascend'), which is the opposite of the movement when the glory originally filled the Temple (1 Kings 8:10-11). What descended in Solomon's time now ascends.
4. The Hebrew is remarkably specific: the verb *hitavita* is a denominative from *tav* — literally '*tav-mark a tav*.' God is not commanding a generic mark but the specific letter *tav* to be written on the foreheads of the faithful.
4. The people marked are those who *ne'enachim vehanne'enaqim* ('groan and grieve') over the abominations. The two verbs are near-synonyms piled together for emphasis — these are people in visceral anguish over what they see happening in the Temple. Their grief is the evidence of their faithfulness.
4. The Passover parallel is striking: in Exodus 12, a mark (blood) on the entrance protected the household from the destroyer. Here a mark (*tav*) on the forehead protects the individual from the executioners. Both mark covenant loyalty in the face of comprehensive judgment.
5. The formula '*let your eye not show pity and do not have compassion*' (*al tachos einekhem ve'al tachmolu*) repeats the divine declaration from 8:18, now directed to the executioners. The absence of mercy is comprehensive — the same refusal of pity that God declared for himself is now operationalized through his agents.
6. The list — old, young, virgin, child, woman — is a merism encompassing every demographic category. No one is exempt except those bearing the *tav*. The totality of the judgment matches the totality of the abominations witnessed in chapter 8.
6. The command '*begin at my sanctuary*' (*mimmiqdashi tachelu*) is theologically devastating. Judgment falls first on the place that should have been holiest. The elders '*in front of the Temple*' are presumably the same idolatrous elders described in 8:11-12 and 8:16 — those who committed the abominations within the sacred precincts are the first to die.
6. The word *lemashchit* ('to destruction') echoes the *mashchit* ('destroyer') of the Passover narrative (Exodus 12:23), reinforcing the parallel between these scenes of selective judgment.
7. The command to '*defile the Temple*' (*tamme'u et-habbayit*) is extraordinary — God himself orders the defilement of his own house. The corpses of the slain will render the Temple ceremonially unclean (Numbers 19:11-16). The sanctuary that was already spiritually defiled by idolatry is now physically defiled by death. The priestly categories of clean and unclean, which Ezekiel the priest would have guarded zealously, are deliberately violated by divine command.
7. The word *chalalim* ('slain, pierced') fills the courts — the same courts where incense was burned to idols and women wept for Tammuz.
8. Ezekiel's outcry *ahhah Adonai YHWH* ('Alas, Lord GOD!') is his characteristic lament formula, appearing at moments of prophetic anguish (4:14, 9:8, 11:13, 21:5). The interjection *ahhah* expresses raw grief and horror, not polite concern.

8. The word she'erit ('remnant') carries enormous theological weight — the remnant is the surviving core through whom God's promises continue. Ezekiel fears that the judgment will be so total that even the remnant will be annihilated, ending God's covenant people entirely.
8. The prophet falls on his face (va'eppelah al panay) — the posture of desperate intercession. Despite the prohibition against praying for the people (cf. Jeremiah 7:16, 11:14), Ezekiel cannot help but cry out. The prophet's compassion overrides the divine command.
9. The phrase gadol bim'od me'od ('great exceedingly, exceedingly') piles up intensifiers to communicate the sheer magnitude of the guilt. The double me'od is emphatic — their iniquity is not merely great but immeasurably, overwhelmingly great.
9. The two charges — damim ('bloodshed') and mutteh ('injustice, perversion of justice') — combine cultic and social sins. The land is corrupt in worship and in governance. The word mutteh is from the root n-t-h ('to bend, turn aside, pervert'), suggesting the twisting of justice.
9. The people's theological claim repeats verbatim from 8:12 — 'The LORD has abandoned the land, and the LORD does not see.' God quotes their own words back to them as evidence against them. Their denial of God's presence and perception is the theological foundation of their lawlessness.
10. The phrase darkam berosham natatti ('their way on their head I have placed') is the lex talionis principle applied comprehensively — the consequences are not arbitrary punishment but the natural return of their own deeds upon themselves. Their 'way' (derek) becomes their sentence.
10. The refrain 'my eye will not show pity and I will not have compassion' appears for the third time (8:18, 9:5, 9:10), functioning as a structural marker throughout the judgment vision. Its repetition closes every avenue of appeal.
11. The man in linen returns with a report of obedience — meshiv davar ('returning word, reporting'). His mission of marking the faithful is complete before the destruction begins in earnest. The faithful have been identified and sealed; the judgment can now proceed without risk to the righteous.
11. The simple statement 'I have done everything you commanded me' (asiti kekhol asher tsivitani) closes the marking scene with military precision. The scribe's task is finished. In chapter 10, this same figure will receive a new commission — to scatter burning coals over the city.

10

Summary: *Ezekiel 10 narrates the theological catastrophe at the heart of the book: the glory of the LORD departs from the Temple. The chapter reopens the throne-chariot vision of chapter 1, now set within the Temple precincts. The man in linen from chapter 9 is commanded to take burning coals from between the cherubim and scatter them over Jerusalem — fire from the divine presence itself will consume the city. The cherubim described here are identified explicitly with the living creatures (chayot) of chapter 1, and the elaborate description of their four faces, four wings, wheels full of eyes, and coordinated movement under the direction of the spirit (ruach) connects this Temple vision to the inaugural Babylon vision. The kavod (glory) of the LORD, which had moved from the cherubim to the threshold in 9:3, now rises from the threshold, pauses above the cherubim, and moves to the east gate of the Temple. The glory is leaving. This departure — staged, deliberate, and devastating — is the event that makes Jerusalem's destruction theologically inevitable.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the structural hinge of the entire book. Everything before it builds toward this departure; everything after it responds to it. The glory that filled Solomon's Temple at its dedication (1 Kings 8:10-11) now exits through the east gate. God does not leave in haste — the staged departure (threshold to cherubim to east gate, completed at the Mount of Olives in 11:23) reads almost as reluctance, as though God is pausing at each station to see whether repentance will come. It does not. The identification of the cherubim with the living creatures of chapter 1 is Ezekiel's own theological reflection — the prophet recognizes that the beings he saw by the Chebar canal are the same beings that attend the divine throne in the Temple. The throne-chariot is portable; God's glory is not bound to one location. This realization is critical for the exiles: if the glory can leave the Temple, it can also be present in Babylon. We gave kavod its full expanded rendering treatment because this chapter is the most significant kavod text in the entire Hebrew Bible — the moment the divine weight lifts from the building it was meant to fill forever.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter contains significant textual difficulties. Verse 14 lists the four faces of the cherubim as cherub, human, lion, and eagle — replacing the 'ox' face of 1:10 with 'cherub.' This discrepancy is ancient and may reflect a scribal tradition that identified the cherub's own face with the ox, or it may be a textual corruption. We render the received Masoretic text and document the discrepancy. The relationship between the singular 'cherub' who hands coals to the man in linen (v. 7) and the plural 'cherubim' requires careful handling — we followed the Hebrew's own shifts. The repetitive description of the wheels and their movements closely parallels chapter 1 but with enough variation to indicate this is a distinct vision, not a*

mere copy. We preserved both the parallels and the differences.

Connections: The glory's departure reverses Solomon's dedication (1 Kings 8:10-11, 2 Chronicles 5:13-14). The staged withdrawal through the east gate sets up the glory's return through the east gate in 43:1-5 — the structural climax of the book. The burning coals scattered over the city connect to the fire imagery of chapters 5 and 15 (Jerusalem as fuel for fire). The throne-chariot description connects directly to chapter 1 and forward to chapter 43. The concept of God abandoning his Temple appears also in Jeremiah 7:12-14 (Shiloh precedent) and anticipates Jesus's departure from the Temple in Matthew 23:38-24:1 ('Your house is left to you desolate'). The man in linen who takes coals connects to Isaiah 6:6-7, where a seraph takes a coal from the altar — but in Isaiah the coal purifies, while in Ezekiel it destroys.

¹I looked, and there above the expanse over the heads of the cherubim appeared something like sapphire stone — what looked like the form of a throne visible above them. ²He spoke to the man clothed in linen and said, "Go in between the wheelwork, beneath the cherubim, and fill both your hands with burning coals from between the cherubim, and scatter them over the city." And he went in as I watched. ³The cherubim were standing to the south side of the Temple when the man went in, and the cloud filled the inner court. ⁴The glory of the LORD rose from above the cherub to the threshold of the Temple. The Temple was filled with the cloud, and the court was filled with the radiance of the glory of the LORD. ⁵The sound of the cherubim's wings could be heard as far as the outer court — like the voice of God Almighty when he speaks. ⁶When he commanded the man clothed in linen, saying, "Take fire from between the wheelwork, from between the cherubim," the man went in and stood beside a wheel. ⁷One of the cherubim stretched out his hand from among the cherubim to the fire that was between the cherubim, lifted some out, and placed it into the cupped hands of the man clothed in linen. He took it and went out. ⁸There was visible beneath the wings of the cherubim what looked like a human hand. ⁹I looked, and there were four wheels beside the cherubim — one wheel beside each cherub — and the wheels had the gleam of chrysolite stone. ¹⁰All four looked alike — each appeared to be a wheel within a wheel. ¹¹When they moved, they could go in any of the four directions without turning as they moved. Whichever direction the lead one faced, the others followed — they did not turn as they moved. ¹²Their entire bodies — their backs, their hands, their wings — and the wheels were covered with eyes all around, all four of them and their wheels. ¹³As for the wheels — they were called 'the wheelwork' in my hearing. ¹⁴Each had four faces: the first face was the face of a cherub, the second was a human face, the third a lion's face, and the fourth an eagle's face. ¹⁵The cherubim rose up. These were the living creatures I had seen by the Chebar canal. ¹⁶When the cherubim moved, the wheels moved alongside them. When the cherubim raised their wings to rise from the ground, the wheels did not veer away from beside them. ¹⁷When the cherubim stood still, the wheels stood still. When the cherubim rose, the wheels rose with them, for the spirit of the living creatures was in them. ¹⁸Then the glory of the LORD went out from the threshold of the Temple and took its place above the cherubim. ¹⁹The cherubim raised their wings and rose from the ground before my eyes. As they went out, the wheels went alongside them. They stopped at the entrance of the east gate of the house of the LORD, and the glory of the God of Israel was above them. ²⁰These were the living creatures I had seen beneath the God of Israel by the Chebar canal — and I recognized that they were cherubim. ²¹Each had four faces, each had four wings, and beneath their wings was what looked like human hands. ²²As for the form of their faces — they were the same faces I had seen by the Chebar canal. They looked the same, each one of them. Each moved straight ahead.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The stacked similes return — ke'even sappir kemar'eh demut kisse' ('like sapphire stone, like the appearance of the likeness of a throne'). Three layers of approximation separate the prophet from direct description: it is 'like' a stone, 'like the appearance of' something, 'the likeness of' a throne. This syntactic hedging is Ezekiel's signature technique for describing the indescribable.
1. The raqia' ('expanse, firmament') above the cherubim corresponds to the raqia' of 1:22-26. The entire throne-chariot complex of chapter 1 is now present in the Temple precincts — the portable divine throne has come to its earthly dwelling.
1. Sappir ('sapphire,' possibly lapis lazuli) appears also in Exodus 24:10, where the elders of Israel see 'something like a pavement of sapphire stone' beneath God's feet on Sinai. The throne's material connects this vision to the Sinai theophany.

2. The word galgal ('wheelwork') differs from the ofannim ('wheels') of chapter 1. Galgal suggests a whirling, rotating mechanism — the entire wheel apparatus as a unified system rather than individual wheels. Both terms appear in this chapter, reflecting the complexity of the vision.
2. The coals of fire (gachalei esh) taken from between the cherubim are fire from the divine presence itself. This is not ordinary fire but the fire of God's own throne — the same fire that appeared in the midst of the living creatures in 1:13. The city will be burned by divine fire, not merely human torches.
2. The man in linen who marked the righteous in chapter 9 now becomes the agent of the city's fiery destruction. The same figure who preserved the faithful now destroys the unfaithful — intercession and judgment proceed from the same divine commission.
3. The Hebrew yamin ('right') in Temple orientation means 'south,' since the Temple faced east. The rendering clarifies the directional meaning for modern readers.
3. The cloud (anan) filling the inner court echoes the cloud that filled the tabernacle at its consecration (Exodus 40:34-35) and Solomon's Temple at its dedication (1 Kings 8:10-11). The cloud is the visible manifestation of the divine presence — but here it appears in the context of departure, not arrival. The glory is mobilizing, not settling.
4. This verse restates and expands 9:3. The glory's movement from cherub to threshold is described again because its theological significance demands emphasis — this is the hinge-moment of the entire book.
4. The word nogah ('radiance, brightness') describes the visible light emanating from the kavod. The court is filled with divine light even as the divine presence is departing. The brightness is a departure gift — or a farewell.
4. The filling of the Temple with cloud simultaneously recalls the original filling (1 Kings 8:10-11) and marks its reversal. When Solomon dedicated the Temple, the cloud signaled God's arrival. Here the cloud signals God's mobilization for departure.
5. The comparison of the wing-sound to the voice of El Shaddai ('God Almighty') connects to 1:24, where the same comparison is made. The divine name El Shaddai carries patriarchal associations (Genesis 17:1, Exodus 6:3) and emphasizes overwhelming power.
5. The sound reaching the outer court indicates the enormous volume — the entire Temple complex reverberates with the noise of divine movement. The departing glory does not leave quietly.
6. The text shifts between galgal ('wheelwork' — the entire rotating mechanism) and ofan ('wheel' — a single wheel). The man in linen approaches the apparatus and stands beside one individual wheel. The two terms are complementary: galgal describes the system, ofan describes its component.
6. The repetition of the command from verse 2 slows the narrative, creating suspense — the reader watches the man in linen approach the fire between the cherubim step by step.
7. The cherub actively participates in the judgment — stretching out its hand to give the fire to the man in linen. The divine attendants are not passive observers but co-agents in the destruction of Jerusalem. The fire originates from between the cherubim — from the space occupied by God's throne-presence.
7. The word chofnei ('cupped hands, handfuls') indicates the man in linen receives the coals in his bare hands. The fire from between the cherubim does not burn the one commissioned to carry it — only the city over which it will be scattered.
8. The detail of human hands beneath the wings connects to 1:8, where the living creatures had human hands under their wings. The human hand is the element of the cherubim's form that allows them to interact with the physical world — to grasp, to give, to transfer the coals. The cherubim combine animal, human, and divine features; the human hand is the instrument of agency.
9. The one-to-one correspondence between cherubim and wheels (ofannim) matches the description in 1:15-16. Each cherub has its own wheel, establishing the integrated unity of the throne-chariot complex.
9. The stone tarshish is traditionally identified as chrysolite or beryl — a yellow-green gemstone. The same comparison appears in 1:16. The mineralogical language connects the throne-chariot to the precious stones associated with Eden (28:13) and the high priest's breastplate (Exodus 28:20).
10. The phrase ofan betokh ha'ofan ('a wheel within a wheel') is the iconic image of Ezekiel's vision. The exact mechanism is debated — possibly two wheels set at right angles to each other (allowing movement in any direction without turning), or concentric wheels, or intersecting rings. The Hebrew resists definitive reconstruction, and the rendering preserves the ambiguity. The point is multidirectional mobility — the throne goes wherever the Spirit directs without needing to turn.
11. The emphasis on not turning (lo yissabbu) is repeated twice for emphasis and matches 1:17. The chariot-throne moves in perfect, instant responsiveness — there is no hesitation, no maneuvering, no course correction. The divine vehicle goes precisely where it wills, immediately. This mobility is theologically significant: God's presence is not confined to one direction or one location.
11. The phrase 'whichever direction the lead one faced' (hammaqom asher yifneh harosh) identifies a leading cherub whose orientation determines the movement of the entire complex. The unity is absolute — all four move as one.
12. The eyes covering every surface intensify the description from 1:18, where only the wheel rims were full of eyes. Here the eyes extend to the bodies, backs, hands, and wings of the cherubim themselves. The image communicates total awareness — the divine attendants and their vehicle see everything, in every direction, at all times. Nothing is hidden from the throne-presence.

- 12.** The multiplication of eyes stands in direct contrast to the claim of the idolatrous elders in 8:12: 'The LORD does not see us.' The throne-chariot is covered in eyes. God sees everything.
- 13.** This verse provides the naming of the ofannim as galgal ('wheelwork, whirling thing'). The word galgal may carry associations of whirling or rolling motion — it shares a root with the verb galal ('to roll') and the noun gilgal, which names several significant biblical sites. The naming in Ezekiel's hearing suggests a revelatory moment — the prophet learns the proper name for what he sees.
- 13.** The verse is syntactically unusual and may indicate a parenthetical remark by the prophet or a divine voice naming the apparatus. Its brevity and strangeness match the overall difficulty of describing the throne-chariot.
- 14.** This verse presents a significant textual problem. In 1:10, the four faces are human, lion, ox, and eagle. Here the ox has been replaced by 'cherub.' Several explanations have been proposed: (1) the 'face of the cherub' is the ox face, identifying the cherub's own face with the ox; (2) a scribal error has occurred; (3) Ezekiel sees something different in this vision than in chapter 1. The Masoretic text reads 'cherub,' and we render it as received while noting the discrepancy.
- 14.** The order also differs from chapter 1. In 1:10 the sequence is human-lion-ox-eagle; here it is cherub-human-lion-eagle. The human face, which was first in chapter 1, is now second. These variations may reflect different vantage points in the two visions.
- 15.** This is the pivotal identification: the cherubim in the Temple are the chayot ('living creatures') from the inaugural vision by the Chebar canal (chapter 1). Ezekiel makes the connection explicit — what he saw in Babylon and what he now sees in Jerusalem are the same beings attending the same throne.
- 15.** The theological implication is enormous: the throne-chariot is portable. God's glory is not bound to the Temple. The same divine presence that fills the Temple can appear by a canal in Babylon. For the exiles, this means God has not been left behind in Jerusalem — he is present wherever his throne goes.
- 15.** The singular chayah ('living creature') used collectively for the plural cherubim matches the usage in 1:22 and reflects the unity of the four beings as a single living system.
- 16.** The coordinated movement of cherubim and wheels is described with the same emphasis as in 1:19-21. The integration is total — the wheels are not a separate conveyance but an extension of the cherubim's own movement. The phrase lo yissabbu ('did not turn aside, did not veer') emphasizes the precision of the coordination.
- 17.** The phrase ruach hachayah bahem ('the spirit of the living creature was in them') explains the perfect coordination — the wheels share the animating spirit (ruach) of the cherubim. They are not mechanical attachments but living extensions of the cherubim's own being.
- 17.** The ruach here functions as the principle of life and movement — the animating force that makes the wheels responsive to the cherubim. This is the same ruach described in 1:20-21, confirming the identification of the two visions.
- 18.** The verb yatsa ('went out') marks the definitive departure from the threshold. The glory is no longer pausing at the doorway but has moved to the cherubim — the vehicle of departure. Each stage of the departure uses a different verb: na'alah ('rose,' 9:3), yarom ('was lifted,' 10:4), yatsa ('went out,' 10:18).
- 18.** The phrase vayya'amod al hakkeruvim ('and stood/took its place above the cherubim') indicates the glory mounting the throne-chariot in preparation for departure. The glory is now mobile — it is on the vehicle that can go anywhere.
- 19.** The phrase le'ainai ('before my eyes, in my sight') emphasizes that Ezekiel is a witness — he sees the glory leave. This is not hearsay but prophetic eyewitness testimony of the most catastrophic theological event in Israel's history.
- 19.** The east gate (sha'ar beit YHWH haqqadmoni) faces east — toward the rising sun that the idolaters of 8:16 were worshipping. The glory departs through the gate toward which the apostates had turned their faces while turning their backs to the Temple.
- 19.** The cherubim, wheels, and glory move as a single unit — the throne-chariot complex departs together. The glory 'above them' (aleihem milma'lah) occupies its proper position on the throne above the cherubim, as described in both chapters 1 and 10.
- 20.** The recognition formula va'eda' ki keruvim hemmah ('and I knew/recognized that they were cherubim') is Ezekiel's own theological moment of clarity. When he first saw the chayot by the Chebar canal (chapter 1), he did not identify them as cherubim — he had never seen them before. Now, seeing them in the Temple context where cherubim are a known element of the sacred architecture, he makes the connection.
- 20.** The phrase 'beneath the God of Israel' (tachat Elohei Yisra'el) describes the cherubim's position — they are the throne-bearers, supporting the divine presence from below. The God of Israel rides upon the cherubim (cf. Psalm 18:10, 2 Samuel 22:11).
- 21.** The summary description restates the key features: four faces, four wings, human hands beneath the wings. This three-part description forms the identification checklist — these are the same beings from chapter 1, confirmed by their distinctive features.
- 21.** The phrase demut yedei adam ('the likeness of human hands') uses the comparative demut ('likeness, form'), maintaining the hedged descriptive language characteristic of the vision. Even the hands are not simply human hands but 'the likeness of' human hands.
- 22.** The chapter ends with a final confirmation of identity and a reiteration of movement. The faces are the same; the movement pattern is the same. The vision by the Chebar and the vision in the Temple are of the same divine reality.

22. The phrase *ish el ever panav yelekhu* ('each moved straight ahead, each toward the direction of his face') repeats the formula from 1:9 and 1:12. The cherubim do not look behind them — they move forward with purpose. The glory's departure from the Temple, like the chariot's movement, is direct and irreversible.
22. The chapter closes without resolution. The glory is at the east gate but has not yet left the city. That final departure — to the Mount of Olives — is reserved for 11:22-23, maintaining the agonizing suspense of the staged withdrawal.

11

Summary: *Ezekiel 11 brings the Temple vision sequence (chapters 8-11) to its devastating conclusion. The Spirit transports Ezekiel to the east gate of the Temple, where twenty-five men — civic leaders, not priests — are giving wicked counsel. God commands Ezekiel to prophesy against them, and Pelatiah son of Benaiah dies on the spot during the oracle. Ezekiel cries out in anguish, fearing God will annihilate the remnant entirely. God responds with the chapter's theological heart: the exiles in Babylon, despised by those still in Jerusalem, are in fact God's true community. God himself has been a 'small sanctuary' (miqdash me'at) for them in foreign lands. Then comes the promise that reverberates through the rest of the book — God will gather them, give them one heart, place a new spirit within them, remove the heart of stone and replace it with a heart of flesh, so that they walk in his statutes. The chapter closes with the climactic departure: the glory of the LORD rises from the city and stops over the Mount of Olives to the east. The kavod has left Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains both the lowest point and the highest promise of the entire first half of Ezekiel. The glory departs — and yet in the very same chapter, God promises inward transformation that will make external obedience possible for the first time. The 'heart of stone' and 'heart of flesh' language (v. 19) anticipates the fuller articulation in 36:26-27 and stands alongside Jeremiah's 'new covenant' (Jeremiah 31:31-34) as one of the most radical theological innovations in the Hebrew Bible. The phrase *miqdash me'at* ('small sanctuary,' v. 16) became foundational for synagogue theology — if God can be a sanctuary without a building, then worship survives the Temple's destruction. Pelatiah's death mid-prophecy (v. 13) is one of the most startling narrative intrusions in prophetic literature — the boundary between vision and reality collapses. The glory's final station on the Mount of Olives (v. 23) gains additional significance in Christian tradition, as this is the mount associated with Jesus's ascension (Acts 1:11-12) and the eschatological return described in Zechariah 14:4. We rendered *kavod* with its full expanded rendering treatment at the departure because this is the culmination of the staged withdrawal that began in 9:3.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Jaazaniah son of Azzur (11:1) and Jaazaniah son of Shaphan (8:11) required a note — these are different men with the same name, a common source of confusion. The phrase *miqdash me'at* ('small sanctuary,' v. 16) is debated: does it mean God himself serves as a diminished sanctuary, or that he has been a sanctuary 'for a little while' (temporal rather than qualitative)? We followed the qualitative reading, which has stronger support from context and tradition, but documented both options. The death of Pelatiah (v. 13) raises the question of whether this occurred in vision or in reality — the text does not resolve the ambiguity, and we preserved it. The Hebrew of verse 15 is textually difficult, with the word *kulloh* ('all of it') and its referent debated among commentators.*

Connections: *The glory's departure to the Mount of Olives connects back to its staged withdrawal through 9:3, 10:4, and 10:18-19, and forward to its return through the east gate in 43:1-5. The 'heart of stone / heart of flesh' promise anticipates 36:26-27 and parallels Jeremiah 31:31-34 (new covenant). The concept of God as 'small sanctuary' (v. 16) connects to the synagogue tradition and Jesus's statement 'where two or three are gathered' (Matthew 18:20). The judgment on the twenty-five leaders at the east gate contrasts with the twenty-five sun-worshippers of 8:16 — leadership corruption bookends the vision. Pelatiah's name means 'the LORD delivers,' creating bitter irony as he dies under divine judgment.*

¹The Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the east gate of the house of the LORD, the one facing eastward. There at the entrance of the gate were twenty-five men, and among them I saw Jaazaniah son of Azzur and Pelatiah son of Benaiah — leaders of the people. ²He said to me, "Son of man, these are the men who plot iniquity and devise wicked counsel in this

city. ³They say, "The time is not near to build houses. This city is the pot, and we are the meat." ⁴Therefore prophesy against them. Prophesy, son of man!" ⁵The Spirit of the LORD fell upon me and said to me, "Speak! This is what the LORD says: This is what you have been saying, house of Israel — I know the thoughts that rise in your minds. ⁶You have multiplied your slain in this city and filled its streets with the dead. ⁷Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: The slain you have placed within the city — they are the meat, and the city is the pot. But you — I will drive you out of it. ⁸The sword is what you fear, and the sword is what I will bring against you, declares the Lord GOD. ⁹I will bring you out from within the city and hand you over to foreigners, and I will execute judgments against you. ¹⁰You will fall by the sword. At the border of Israel I will judge you, and you will know that I am the LORD. ¹¹This city will not be your pot, and you will not be the meat within it. At the border of Israel I will judge you, ¹²and you will know that I am the LORD, whose statutes you have not followed and whose judgments you have not carried out. Instead, you have acted according to the customs of the nations around you. ¹³While I was prophesying, Pelatiah son of Benaiah died. I fell facedown and cried out in a loud voice, "Alas, Lord GOD! Will you bring complete destruction on the remnant of Israel?" ¹⁴The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁵"Son of man, your brothers — your own brothers, the men of your kinship, and the whole house of Israel, all of them — are the ones about whom the inhabitants of Jerusalem have said, 'They are far from the LORD. This land has been given to us as a possession.' ¹⁶Therefore say: This is what the Lord GOD says — Though I have sent them far away among the nations and scattered them among the lands, yet I have been a sanctuary in small measure for them in the lands where they have gone. ¹⁷Therefore say: This is what the Lord GOD says — I will gather you from among the peoples and assemble you from the lands where you have been scattered, and I will give you the soil of Israel. ¹⁸When they come there, they will remove all its detestable idols and all its abominations from it. ¹⁹I will give them an undivided heart and place a new spirit within them. I will remove the heart of stone from their bodies and give them a heart of flesh, ²⁰so that they will walk in my statutes and keep my ordinances and carry them out. They will be my people, and I will be their God. ²¹But as for those whose hearts pursue their detestable idols and abominations — I will bring their conduct down on their own heads, declares the Lord GOD." ²²Then the cherubim raised their wings, with the wheels alongside them, and the glory of the God of Israel was above them. ²³The glory of the LORD ascended from the midst of the city and stood over the mountain to the east of the city. ²⁴Then the Spirit lifted me and brought me back to the exiles in Chaldea, in the vision, by the Spirit of God. And the vision I had seen rose up and departed from me. ²⁵Then I told the exiles everything the LORD had shown me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The transport formula (*vatisa oti ruach*) recurs from 3:12, 3:14, and 8:3. The *ruach* physically moves Ezekiel within the visionary landscape. We render as 'the Spirit' (capitalized) here because the context indicates divine agency, not wind.
1. This Jaazaniah son of Azzur is distinct from Jaazaniah son of Shaphan in 8:11. Different fathers, different roles — one among the incense-burning elders, the other among civic leaders at the gate. The name was common in this period.
1. The term *sarei ha'am* ('leaders of the people') identifies these as civic officials, not priests. The corruption extends beyond the priestly class into the political leadership. The east gate is the most prominent gate of the Temple complex — these men occupy a place of public authority.
2. The Hebrew *choshevim aven* ('plotting iniquity') uses the participle, indicating ongoing, habitual behavior — these men are not guilty of a single act but of a pattern. *Aven* carries the sense of both moral emptiness and active harm.
2. The pairing of 'plot iniquity' and 'devise wicked counsel' (*yo'atzim atzat ra'*) presents the leaders as both corrupt in character and destructive in policy. Their counsel affects the entire city.
3. The metaphor is disputed. The leaders may mean: 'We are the choice meat inside the pot — the city protects us.' They consider themselves safe inside Jerusalem's walls, like meat kept warm in a cooking pot. Alternatively, they may be mocking the prophet's warning — 'You say the city is a pot? Fine, then we are the meat — and the pot protects the meat.' Ezekiel will invert this metaphor in verses 7-11.
3. The phrase *lo beqarov* ('not near') likely means 'the time of danger is not near' — they dismiss prophetic warnings. Some read it as 'it is not the time to build houses' (contradicting Jeremiah 29:5, where the exiles are told to build houses in Babylon). The ambiguity may be intentional.
4. The doubled imperative *hinnave* ('prophesy, prophesy!') conveys urgency. God commands twice — the repetition drives Ezekiel to act immediately. The word *hinnave* is the Niphal imperative of *nava*, emphasizing the prophetic compulsion placed on the mortal.

5. The verb *naphal* ('fell upon') describes the Spirit's descent as sudden and overwhelming — not a gentle prompting but a forceful seizure. This language appears also in 1 Samuel 10:6 and 10:10 for the Spirit's action on Saul.
5. The phrase *ma'alot ruhakhem* ('the rising things of your spirit/mind') literally means 'the things that come up in your spirit.' God knows not only their spoken words but their unspoken thoughts and motives. The plural 'minds' reflects the collective address to the house of Israel.
6. The word *challal* ('slain, pierced') appears twice for emphasis — the leaders have filled Jerusalem with victims of violence. The Hebrew does not specify whether these are victims of judicial murder, military action, or social oppression, but the context of 'wicked counsel' (v. 2) suggests systematic abuse of power. The repetition of *challal* creates a drumbeat effect: slain, slain, slain.
7. God inverts the leaders' smug metaphor from verse 3. They claimed to be the meat — the valuable contents protected by the pot. God says no: the dead victims they have murdered are the meat in the pot. The leaders themselves will be expelled from the city, receiving no protection at all. The inversion is devastating — they are not worth keeping in the pot.
7. The verb *hotzi* ('bring out, drive out') strips away the sense of security. Far from being protected meat inside the pot, these leaders will be forcibly removed.
8. The repetition of *cherev* ('sword') creates a stark irony: the very thing they feared will be the instrument of their judgment. Their fear was correct — but their strategy of staying in Jerusalem to avoid it was futile. The short, blunt sentence structure in the Hebrew conveys finality.
9. The sequence — expulsion, surrender to foreigners, judgment — describes exactly what happened to Jerusalem's leaders after Nebuchadnezzar's conquest. The 'foreigners' (*zarim*) are the Babylonians. God uses a foreign power as the instrument of covenant judgment, a pattern consistent with the curses of Deuteronomy 28.
10. The phrase 'at the border of Israel' (*al ge'ul Yisra'el*) was fulfilled when Nebuchadnezzar executed Zedekiah's officials at Riblah on the northern boundary of Israel (2 Kings 25:18-21; Jeremiah 52:9-10). The judgment happens not within the supposed safety of Jerusalem but at the territorial edge — they are dragged from their secure pot to the border.
10. The recognition formula *vi'da'tem ki ani YHWH* ('and you will know that I am the LORD') is Ezekiel's signature — it appears over sixty times in the book. Judgment serves a revelatory purpose: through it, God's identity and sovereignty are made known.
11. The complete demolition of the leaders' metaphor is now explicit: 'This city will not be your pot.' The image of safety they constructed for themselves is stripped away. God has turned their own proverb against them point by point. The repetition of 'at the border of Israel I will judge you' from verse 10 hammers the point — there is no escape within Israel's boundaries.
12. The indictment is dual: they have failed to obey God's statutes (*chuqqim*) and judgments (*mishpatim*), and they have adopted the practices of surrounding nations. The word *mishpetei* ('customs, judgments') is used for both God's ordinances and pagan practices, creating a sharp contrast — they rejected God's *mishpatim* in favor of the nations' *mishpatim*.
12. This verse provides the theological rationale for the entire judgment sequence of chapters 8-11: the leaders have abandoned the covenant and adopted foreign religious practices.
13. Pelatiah's death mid-prophecy is one of the most dramatic moments in the prophetic literature. The Hebrew does not clarify whether this death occurred within the vision or in external reality — Ezekiel is in Babylon experiencing a vision of Jerusalem, yet Pelatiah's death seems to have actual consequences. The ambiguity between visionary and physical reality is characteristic of Ezekiel's experience.
13. The name Pelatiah (*Pelatyahu*) means 'the LORD delivers' — a bitterly ironic name for a man who dies under divine judgment. The prophet's anguished cry *ahah* ('alas!') is a visceral exclamation of grief and horror.
13. Ezekiel's question about the *she'erit* ('remnant') echoes the same fear he expressed in 9:8. The prophet sees the progressive annihilation of Israel's leadership and fears that God intends total destruction with no survivors.
14. The standard prophetic reception formula marks a new oracle. God responds to Ezekiel's anguished question about the remnant (v. 13) with a message of unexpected hope — the remainder of this chapter shifts from judgment to promise.
15. The doubled *acheicha acheicha* ('your brothers, your brothers') is emphatic — God is identifying Ezekiel's fellow exiles as his true community. The term *anshei ge'ullatekha* ('men of your redemption/kinship') uses the *go'el* root, identifying them as Ezekiel's closest kin — the people who would have responsibility for redemption under kinship law.
15. The Jerusalemites' taunt is theologically loaded: they claim that the exiles, by being removed from the land, have been removed from God's presence. In ancient Near Eastern thinking, a deity was bound to a territory — to leave the land was to leave the god. The Jerusalemites exploit this theology to justify their own land-grab. God's response in verse 16 shatters this territorial theology entirely.
15. The textual difficulty of *kulloh* ('all of it/them') has generated debate — it may modify 'the whole house of Israel' (emphatic totality) or be a scribal variant. We follow the Masoretic reading as an emphatic marker.
16. The phrase *miqdash me'at* can be read two ways: 'a sanctuary in small measure' (qualitative — a diminished but real sanctuary presence) or 'a sanctuary for a little while' (temporal — a temporary arrangement until return). Most interpreters favor the qualitative reading: God himself serves as a miniature sanctuary, a portable divine presence among the scattered exiles. We follow this reading but acknowledge the temporal alternative.

16. The verb *hirschqtim* ('I have sent them far away') places the agency with God — the exile is not mere geopolitical accident but divine action. Yet this divine action does not mean divine abandonment. The tension between 'I scattered you' and 'I am your sanctuary' is the theological core of the verse.
17. The shift from 'lands' (*aratzot*) to 'soil' (*admat*) is significant. God does not merely promise the territory (*eret*) but the *admat Yisra'el* — the actual ground, the cultivable soil. *Adamah* connects to *adam* (humanity) and to the creation narrative — it is the earth from which human beings were formed. The promise is earthy and concrete: the exiles will walk on, plant in, and harvest from Israeli soil again.
17. The gathering verbs *qibatzi* ('I will gather') and *asaf* ('I will assemble') reverse the scattering language of verse 16. Exile is not permanent — the same God who scattered will reassemble.
18. The word *shiqqutzim* ('detestable things, idols') is the priestly term for objects of idolatrous worship — stronger than mere 'idols,' it carries the connotation of something that causes physical revulsion. Paired with *to'avot* ('abominations'), the verse describes a comprehensive purification of the land from everything that provoked God's departure in chapters 8-10.
18. The returned exiles, not God, are the agents of this purification — they will remove the defilements that the current inhabitants have introduced. This implies a transformed community, prepared to maintain the holiness that the current generation has abandoned.
19. The Hebrew *lev echad* ('one heart') appears in some manuscripts as *lev chadash* ('new heart'), which would parallel 'new spirit' more closely and match the fuller expression in 36:26. The Masoretic Text reads *echad* ('one, unified'), which we follow. The concept is complementary: an undivided heart and a new spirit together enable the transformed obedience described in verse 20.
19. This verse anticipates the fuller articulation in 36:26-27, where the promise includes explicit mention of God's own Spirit as the agent of transformation. Here the promise is stated in concentrated form — the seed of the new covenant theology that will flower in chapter 36 and in Jeremiah 31:31-34.
19. The shift between third person ('them') and second person ('within you') in the Hebrew is abrupt and has puzzled commentators. It may reflect the prophet addressing the exiles directly mid-oracle, or it may be a textual variation. We preserve the shift.
20. The purpose clause *lema'an* ('so that') is critical: the heart transplant of verse 19 serves a covenantal goal. The new heart enables what the old heart could not — actual obedience to God's *chuqqim* ('statutes') and *mishpatim* ('ordinances'). This is not freedom from the law but freedom to keep the law.
20. The covenant formula 'they will be my people and I will be their God' (v. 20b) reprises the original Sinai formula (Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12). The transformation of verses 19-20 does not create a new covenant category but restores the original covenant relationship to its intended function. The formula appears also in Jeremiah 31:33, 32:38, and Ezekiel 36:28 — always in the context of restoration.
21. The verse shifts abruptly from the promise of transformation to a warning for those who persist in idolatry. The Hebrew *lev shiqqutzelem* ('the heart of their detestable things') personifies the idols as having a 'heart' — a will or desire — that the idolaters follow. Their own hearts walk after the heart of their idols, creating a grotesque parody of the 'undivided heart' promised in verse 19.
21. The expression *darkam berosh'am natatti* ('I will place their way on their head') is standard retribution language — their actions will recoil upon them. The image is of conduct being piled on the offender's own head like a burden.
22. The phrase *kevod Elohei Yisra'el* ('the glory of the God of Israel') uses *Elohim* rather than *YHWH* — emphasizing God's identity as specifically Israel's God even as he abandons Israel's capital. The God of Israel is leaving the city of Israel.
22. The coordinated movement of cherubim and wheels recalls 1:19-21, where the wheels moved in concert with the living creatures because the *ruach* of the living creatures was in the wheels. The entire mechanism functions as a unified divine transport system.
23. The mountain east of the city is the Mount of Olives (*Har HaZetim*), though Ezekiel does not name it. This identification is universally accepted based on geography — the Mount of Olives is the prominent ridge directly east of the Temple Mount, separated from it by the Kidron Valley.
23. The verb *ya'amod* ('stood, stopped') is striking — the glory does not simply leave but pauses, hovers, stands. The staged nature of the departure (threshold, east gate, city, mountain) has suggested to many commentators a divine reluctance — God leaving slowly, station by station, as if waiting for repentance that never comes.
23. This verse is the structural nadir of the book. Everything from chapter 1 through this moment has moved toward this departure. Everything from chapter 33 through chapter 43 moves toward the return. The glory departs eastward in 11:23; the glory returns from the east in 43:1-4.
24. Ezekiel is returned to Babylon — the entire sequence from 8:3 through 11:24 has been a visionary transport to Jerusalem. The double reference to *ruach* ('the Spirit lifted me' and 'by the Spirit of God') emphasizes divine agency in both the transport and the vision itself.
24. The phrase *ya'al me'alai hammar'eh* ('the vision rose up from me') uses the same verb *ya'al* ('ascend, go up') applied to the glory's departure in verse 23. Just as the *kavod* ascended from the city, so the vision ascends from the prophet. The parallel is deliberate — the departure of the glory and the departure of the vision are symmetrical endings.
24. The word *golah* ('exile, exiled community') identifies Ezekiel's actual location and community. He has been among the exiles throughout, experiencing Jerusalem's corruption and the glory's departure at a distance — through the Spirit.

25. The final verse is simple and decisive. The entire vision sequence — the abominations in the Temple (ch. 8), the slaughter of the guilty (ch. 9), the fire from the cherubim and the glory's staged departure (chs. 10-11) — is now communicated to the exilic community. The prophet is faithful to his commission from 2:3-7 and 3:4-11: he speaks what he has been shown, regardless of whether the audience will listen.
25. The verb *hir'ani* ('he showed me') frames the entire experience as visual revelation — God showed Ezekiel what was happening in Jerusalem, and Ezekiel now shows the exiles through his words. The chain of revelation runs from God to prophet to people.

12

Summary: *Ezekiel 12 contains two dramatic sign-acts and two oracles about the timing of prophetic fulfillment. In the first sign-act (vv. 1-16), God commands Ezekiel to pack exile baggage in broad daylight, then dig through the wall of his house at night, carrying his pack on his shoulder with his face covered — enacting the future escape attempt of Jerusalem's prince. The interpretation reveals that this is Zedekiah, who will attempt to flee by night, be captured, blinded, and taken to Babylon in chains. The second sign-act (vv. 17-20) commands Ezekiel to eat and drink with trembling and anxiety, symbolizing the terror of those remaining in Jerusalem. The chapter concludes with two oracles against popular proverbs: the dismissive 'The days drag on and every vision fails' (v. 22) and the evasive 'The vision he sees is for the distant future' (v. 27). God's response to both is the same — none of his words will be delayed any longer.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sign-acts in this chapter blur the line between theater and prophecy. Ezekiel does not merely speak an oracle; he physically embodies Zedekiah's fate — packing baggage, digging through a wall, covering his face, going out at dusk. The exilic community watches their prophet perform these strange actions and only afterward receives the explanation. The detail about Zedekiah being captured and blinded is remarkably specific: 2 Kings 25:4-7 records that Zedekiah fled through a breach in the wall at night, was captured at Jericho, had his eyes put out at Riblah, and was taken to Babylon in chains. Ezekiel's sign-act predicted every element. The proverbs quoted in verses 22 and 27 reveal a community in denial — they have heard so many prophecies of doom that they have developed coping mechanisms: either dismissing prophecy as perpetually unfulfilled or pushing it into a distant, irrelevant future. God's response demolishes both defenses: the time of fulfillment is now. We preserved the Hebrew *mashal* ('proverb') language because these are not casual sayings but crystallized communal attitudes that function as theological fortifications against prophetic truth.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *nasi* ('prince') in verse 10 rather than *melek* ('king') for Zedekiah reflects Ezekiel's consistent refusal to grant Zedekiah the title of king — throughout the book, the last Davidic ruler is called 'prince,' possibly because Ezekiel considered Jehoiachin (already in Babylonian exile) the legitimate king. We retained 'prince' and documented the significance. The covered face in verse 6 (*yekhasseh panav*) is multivalent: it may represent the shame of a defeated ruler, the darkness of blindness that Zedekiah will suffer, or the need for disguise during escape. We preserved the ambiguity in the note. The relationship between the two proverbs (vv. 22-23 and vv. 26-28) is debated — some see them as variant traditions of the same oracle, while we treat them as addressing two distinct forms of prophetic dismissal.*

Connections: *The sign-act of exile baggage connects to Jeremiah's similar symbolic actions (Jeremiah 13, 19, 27-28) and to Isaiah's three years of walking naked and barefoot (Isaiah 20). Zedekiah's escape and capture are narrated in 2 Kings 25:4-7 and Jeremiah 52:7-11. The proverb about delayed vision connects to Habakkuk 2:3 ('the vision awaits its appointed time... it will not delay') and to 2 Peter 3:3-9 (scoffers asking 'where is the promise of his coming?'). The motif of a rebellious house (*bet meri*, vv. 2-3) continues from 2:5-8 and 3:26-27. The trembling and anxiety of the second sign-act (vv. 17-20) anticipate the visceral terror described in chapter 7.*

1The word of the LORD came to me: 2"Son of man, you live among a rebellious house. They have eyes to see but do not see, and ears to hear but do not hear, because they are a rebellious house. 3Now you, son of man — prepare for yourself exile baggage and go into exile by day before their eyes. Move from your place to another place before their eyes. Perhaps they will see, though they are a rebellious house. 4Bring out your belongings like exile baggage during the day before their eyes, and then go out in the evening before their eyes — as those going into exile go out. 5Dig through the wall before their eyes and carry your belongings out through it. 6Before their eyes you will carry the pack on your shoulder. In the darkness you will

bring it out. You will cover your face so that you cannot see the ground, for I have made you a sign for the house of Israel." ⁷I did as I was commanded. During the day I brought out my belongings, packed like exile baggage. In the evening I dug through the wall with my own hands. In the darkness I brought my pack out, carrying it on my shoulder before their eyes. ⁸In the morning the word of the LORD came to me: ⁹"Son of man, has not the house of Israel — the rebellious house — asked you, 'What are you doing?' ¹⁰Say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — This oracle concerns the prince in Jerusalem and the whole house of Israel among them. ¹¹Say: I am your sign. Just as I have done, so it will be done to them — they will go into exile, into captivity. ¹²The prince among them will carry his pack on his shoulder in the darkness and go out. They will dig through the wall to bring him out through it. He will cover his face so that he cannot see the ground with his own eyes. ¹³I will spread my net over him, and he will be caught in my snare. I will bring him to Babylon, to the land of the Chaldeans, but he will not see it — and there he will die. ¹⁴All those around him — his support and all his troops — I will scatter to every wind, and I will draw out the sword after them. ¹⁵They will know that I am the LORD when I scatter them among the nations and disperse them through the lands. ¹⁶But I will spare a few of them from the sword, from famine, and from plague, so that they may recount all their abominations among the nations where they go — and they will know that I am the LORD. ¹⁷The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁸"Son of man, eat your bread with trembling and drink your water with shaking and anxiety. ¹⁹Say to the people of the land: This is what the Lord GOD says about the inhabitants of Jerusalem in the land of Israel — They will eat their bread in anxiety and drink their water in horror, because the land will be stripped of everything in it on account of the violence of all who live there. ²⁰The inhabited cities will be laid waste and the land will become a desolation — and you will know that I am the LORD." ²¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²²"Son of man, what is this proverb you have in the land of Israel: 'The days drag on and every vision comes to nothing'? ²³Therefore say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — I will put an end to this proverb, and they will no longer repeat it in Israel. Instead, tell them: The days are near — and the fulfillment of every vision. ²⁴For there will no longer be any false vision or flattering divination within the house of Israel. ²⁵For I am the LORD. I will speak whatever word I speak, and it will be done. It will not be delayed any longer. In your days, rebellious house, I will speak a word and carry it out, declares the Lord GOD." ²⁶The word of the LORD came to me: ²⁷"Son of man, look — the house of Israel is saying, 'The vision he sees is for many days from now; he prophesies about distant times.' ²⁸Therefore say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — None of my words will be delayed any longer. Whatever word I speak will be done, declares the Lord GOD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. This marks the beginning of a new oracle unit, distinct from the Temple vision sequence of chapters 8-11. Ezekiel is now back among the exiles in Babylon (11:24-25), and a new commission begins.
2. The phrase *bet meri* ('rebellious house') is Ezekiel's characteristic designation for Israel, introduced in 2:5-8 and recurring throughout. The wordplay between *meri* ('rebellion') and its near-homophone *mar* ('bitter') may be intentional — rebellion and bitterness overlap in the prophetic vocabulary.
2. The language of having sensory organs that do not function echoes Isaiah 6:9-10 and Jeremiah 5:21, establishing a prophetic tradition of diagnosing Israel's condition as willful sensory failure — they possess the capacity for perception but refuse to use it. Jesus quotes this tradition in Mark 4:12 and Matthew 13:13-15.
3. The phrase *kelei golah* ('exile baggage, exile equipment') refers to the minimal belongings a deportee would carry — a water skin, a bag for bread, a rolled mat. This is not moving house but fleeing with whatever you can carry. The word *golah* ('exile') is the key term — Ezekiel's audience already lives in exile, and now their prophet must enact going into exile again.
3. The repeated phrase *le'einehem* ('before their eyes') appears twice, emphasizing the visual, theatrical nature of the sign-act. God wants the community to watch. The phrase *ulai yir'u* ('perhaps they will see') introduces a note of divine hope — even God seems uncertain whether a rebellious house will perceive the message.
4. The timing is significant: pack by day (visible preparation), leave at evening (the hour of escape). The daytime packing allows the community to see and question; the evening departure mimics the furtive movement of one fleeing under cover of darkness. The dual timing enacts both the public reality of exile (everyone can see it happening) and the private desperation of escape.
5. The verb *chatar* ('dig through') describes breaking through a mud-brick or clay wall — the typical construction material of Babylonian houses and of Jerusalem's inner walls. The sign-act enacts what Zedekiah will actually do: breach a wall to escape at night (2 Kings 25:4). The exiles watching Ezekiel dig through his own house wall would have found the spectacle bizarre — the interpretation in verse 10 will make it devastating.

6. The covered face (panekha tekhasseh) carries multiple layers of meaning that the text leaves unresolved. It may represent the shame of a defeated king fleeing in disgrace, the blindness that Nebuchadnezzar will inflict on Zedekiah (2 Kings 25:7), or the need to avoid recognition during a nighttime escape. The rendering preserves the action without resolving the symbolism — the explanation comes in verses 12-13.
6. The word mofet ('sign, portent, wonder') elevates the sign-act beyond street theater. Ezekiel's body becomes a prophetic text — a mofet that the community must read. The same word describes the plagues in Egypt (Exodus 7:3, 11:9-10), connecting Ezekiel's embodied prophecy to the tradition of divine signs.
6. The term ba'alatah ('in the darkness, in the twilight') denotes thick darkness — not merely evening but the deepest part of night, when visibility is lowest. This heightens the furtiveness of the escape.
7. Ezekiel's obedience is immediate and complete — va'a'as ken ka'asher tzuvveiti ('I did just as I was commanded'). The detail beyad ('with my hand') emphasizes the physical labor of digging through a wall barehanded. This is not a metaphorical breach but actual demolition of his own dwelling wall.
7. The narrative shifts from divine command (vv. 3-6) to prophetic obedience (v. 7) to community response (v. 8) — the standard structure of sign-act accounts. Ezekiel's compliance is never questioned; unlike Moses or Jeremiah, he does not resist his commissions.
8. The timing matters: Ezekiel performed the sign-act in the evening and night (v. 7), and the interpretive word comes the next morning. The community has had the night and early morning to wonder about what they witnessed. The delay between sign and interpretation creates space for curiosity and unease.
9. God's question confirms that the sign-act provoked the desired response: the community noticed and asked questions. The designation bet hameri ('the rebellious house') appears even in the moment of their curiosity — their question does not equal repentance, only puzzlement. The sign-act has gotten their attention; now the interpretation must penetrate their resistance.
10. The word nasi ('prince') rather than melek ('king') for Zedekiah is deliberate and consistent throughout Ezekiel. Ezekiel may have considered Jehoiachin — already deported to Babylon and still alive — as the legitimate king, making Zedekiah merely a regent or 'prince.' The title also connects to the eschatological nasi of chapters 34, 37, and 44-46.
10. The Hebrew massa ('burden, oracle') creates a wordplay with nasi ('prince') — the nassi bears the massa. Prophetic oracles of judgment are often called massa because they are a 'burden' laid upon the recipient. The rendering 'oracle' captures the prophetic-speech function while the note preserves the wordplay.
11. Ezekiel declares ani mofetikhem ('I am your sign') — his body and actions constitute the prophetic message. The prophet is not separate from his prophecy; he embodies it. The dual phrase bagolah bashevi ('into exile, into captivity') uses two terms for deportation to emphasize the certainty and totality of the coming displacement.
12. Every detail of Ezekiel's sign-act now maps onto Zedekiah's fate. The shoulder-burden, the wall-breach, the covered face, the darkness — each element of the prophet's strange performance was a precise preview of the king's desperate flight. The phrase lo yir'eh la'ayin hu et ha'arets ('he will not see the ground with his own eyes') is prophetically double: in the immediate sign-act, the covered face prevents sight; in fulfillment, Zedekiah's blinding by Nebuchadnezzar will permanently prevent sight (2 Kings 25:7).
12. The plural yachteru ('they will dig') shifts from the singular prince to a group — Zedekiah did not flee alone but with soldiers and attendants (2 Kings 25:4-5). The sign-act collapses a group action into a single prophet's body.
13. The hunting imagery — reshti ('my net') and metzudati ('my snare') — casts God as the hunter and the fleeing prince as prey. Zedekiah's escape attempt will be futile because God himself is the one who has set the trap. The Babylonian army is merely the visible instrument.
13. The paradox 'I will bring him to Babylon but he will not see it' was puzzling to ancient readers. The resolution is the blinding: Zedekiah was taken to Babylon alive but with his eyes gouged out at Riblah (2 Kings 25:7, Jeremiah 52:11). He arrived in the land of the Chaldeans but never saw it. The prophecy's specificity is remarkable.
13. The finality of vesham yamut ('and there he will die') closes any hope of Zedekiah's return. He will die in Babylonian captivity — which the historical records confirm (Jeremiah 52:11).
14. The word agappav ('his wings, his troops, his flanks') uses a military term for the wings of an army formation. Zedekiah's military escort will be dispersed in every direction. The phrase ezreh lekhol ruach ('I will scatter to every wind') uses ruach in its meteorological sense — the troops will be blown apart like chaff in a wind from every quarter.
14. The verb ariq ('draw out, unsheathe') describes a sword being pulled from its scabbard — the image of pursuit and slaughter following the scattering. This matches 2 Kings 25:5, which records that Zedekiah's army 'scattered from him' when the Babylonians overtook them.
15. The recognition formula again — veyad'u ki ani YHWH. The scattering itself becomes the instrument of revelation. The survivors of Jerusalem's fall will recognize God's sovereignty precisely through the experience of being scattered. Two verbs for dispersal — hifitzi ('scatter') and zerithi ('disperse, winnow') — emphasize totality. The verb zarah ('winnow') specifically evokes the threshing floor, where chaff is tossed into the wind and separated from grain.
16. The phrase anshei mispar ('men of number,' i.e., men few enough to count) indicates a small, countable remnant — not a mass survival but a deliberate preservation of witnesses. Their purpose is startling: they survive not for their own sake but to serve as confessors, recounting Israel's to'avot ('abominations') among the nations. The survivors become traveling testimonies to the justice of God's judgment.

- 16.** The triad *cherev*, *ra'av*, *dever* ('sword, famine, plague') is Ezekiel's recurring formula for comprehensive judgment (5:12, 6:11-12, 7:15). These are the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28 enacted in history.
- 17.** A new oracle begins, introducing the second sign-act of the chapter. The reception formula marks the transition from the exile-baggage sign-act (vv. 1-16) to the trembling sign-act (vv. 17-20).
- 18.** Three words for agitation accumulate: *ra'ash* ('trembling, earthquake-like shaking'), *rogzah* ('agitation, disturbance'), and *de'agah* ('anxiety, worry, dread'). The escalation from physical trembling to psychological dread captures the full spectrum of terror that Jerusalem's inhabitants will experience. Ezekiel must embody this terror in his daily eating and drinking — the most basic human acts become performances of fear.
- 19.** The word *shimamon* ('horror, desolation, appalled emptiness') is stronger than the earlier 'anxiety' — it describes the stunned devastation of those watching their world collapse. The escalation from *de'agah* (v. 18) to *shimamon* mirrors the escalation from prophetic sign to historical reality.
- 19.** The word *chamas* ('violence') identifies the root cause of judgment — not merely ritual failures or theological errors but systemic violence perpetrated by the inhabitants against each other. This connects to the 'slain' of 11:6 and to the broader prophetic indictment of social injustice.
- 19.** The phrase *tesham artzah mimlo'ah* ('the land will be stripped of its fullness') describes ecological devastation — the land itself is emptied as consequence of human violence. The Hebrew concept of the land suffering for human sin appears also in Leviticus 18:25-28 and Isaiah 24:4-6.
- 20.** The recognition formula concludes the second sign-act interpretation. The progression is total: cities ruined, land desolated, and through this devastation, recognition of God's sovereignty. The word *shemamah* ('desolation') echoes *shimamon* from verse 19 — the same root governs both the people's horror and the land's condition. Horror and desolation are cognate realities.
- 21.** A third oracle begins within the same chapter, shifting from sign-acts to direct engagement with popular proverbs that dismiss prophetic speech. The reception formula marks the transition.
- 22.** The *mashal* ('proverb, saying') is a crystallized communal attitude. The Hebrew *ya'arkhu hayamim* ('the days are prolonged, the days drag on') expresses prophetic fatigue — the people have heard warnings for so long that they have concluded the warnings are empty. The verb *avad* applied to *chazon* ('vision') means 'perish, come to nothing' — they declare that prophetic visions have expired, lost their power, become void.
- 22.** This proverb represents a sophisticated form of unbelief: not outright denial of God but the practical dismissal of prophetic urgency through the observation that nothing has happened yet. It is the ancient equivalent of 'where is the promise of his coming?' (2 Peter 3:4).
- 23.** God's response is a direct counter-proverb. Where they said 'the days drag on' (*ya'arkhu hayamim*), God says 'the days are near' (*qarvu hayamim*). Where they said 'every vision comes to nothing' (*avad kol chazon*), God says 'the substance of every vision' (*devar kol chazon*) — the *devar* ('word, substance, reality') of the vision is about to materialize. The proverb is not merely corrected but abolished — *hishbatti* ('I will put an end to, I will cause to cease') uses the causative form of the Sabbath root, meaning God will force this saying to rest permanently.
- 23.** The verb *yimshu* ('they will use as a proverb, they will repeat') is from the same root as *mashal* — God will prevent the *mashal* from being *mashal'd* any further.
- 24.** The phrase *chazon shav* ('false vision, empty vision') and *miqsam chalaq* ('smooth divination, flattering divination') target not prophecy itself but false prophecy — the reassuring predictions of prophets who told the people what they wanted to hear. The word *chalaq* ('smooth, slippery') describes divination that goes down easy, that flatters rather than confronts. This prepares for the full-scale attack on false prophets in chapter 13.
- 24.** The verb *qasam* ('to divine, to practice divination') is consistently negative in prophetic literature — it refers to unauthorized, non-Yahwistic methods of discerning the future.
- 25.** The declaration *ki ani YHWH* ('For I am the LORD') grounds the reliability of prophetic speech in divine identity itself. God's word is effective because God is who he is. The verb *timashekh* ('be prolonged, be drawn out, be delayed') directly answers the proverb of verse 22 — the people said 'the days drag on'; God says 'no more dragging.'
- 25.** The phrase *bimeikhem* ('in your days') makes the timeline personal and immediate — not in some distant future but within the lifetime of this generation. The rebellious house will not be able to push fulfillment beyond their own horizon.
- 26.** A fourth oracle within the chapter begins, addressing a second proverb related to but distinct from the first. Where the first proverb dismissed prophecy as unfulfilled (v. 22), the second proverb neutralizes prophecy by pushing it into the distant future (v. 27).
- 27.** The second proverb represents a subtler form of dismissal than the first. These speakers do not deny that Ezekiel is a prophet or that his visions are real — they merely relocate his prophecies to a remote future that need not concern the present generation. The phrase *leyamim rabbim* ('for many days') and *le'ittim rechoqot* ('for distant times') push the urgency out of reach. This is not atheism but practical irrelevance — the prophecy is true but not for us, not now.
- 27.** The phrase *hu nivva* ('he prophesies') uses the third person, speaking about Ezekiel rather than to him — the prophet overhears or is told about the community's assessment of his ministry.
- 28.** The chapter's final verse mirrors verse 25 with nearly identical language, creating a frame around both proverb-oracles. The verb *timashekh* ('be delayed, be prolonged') appears again, directly countering the community's assumption of delay. God's response to both forms of prophetic dismissal — 'it will never happen' and 'it won't happen soon' — is the same: *lo timashekh od* ('no more delay').

28. The formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* ('declares the Lord GOD') closes the chapter with the weight of the compound divine name. The Lord GOD has spoken, and his word will be performed — not in some remote future but now, in the days of this rebellious house.

13

Summary: *Ezekiel 13 delivers a sustained oracle against false prophets in two sections: male false prophets (vv. 1-16) and female false prophets (vv. 17-23). The male prophets are condemned for speaking visions from their own imagination and plastering over flimsy walls with whitewash — constructing false assurances that will collapse when God's storm hits. The female practitioners sew magic bands on wrists and make veils for heads, using sorcery to trap souls and keep alive those who should die. God declares he will tear away the whitewash and expose the wall's weakness, and he will rip the magic bands from the women's arms and free the souls they have hunted. The chapter is a comprehensive indictment of religious deception in both its prophetic and magical forms.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is one of only two passages in the Hebrew Bible that explicitly condemn female religious practitioners (the other being the witch of Endor narrative in 1 Samuel 28, which is narrative rather than oracular). The condemnation of the women in verses 17-23 describes practices — sewing kesatot ('magic bands' or 'amulets') on wrists and making misphachot ('veils' or 'coverings') for heads — that resist precise identification. The exact nature of these practices is debated, but they clearly involve some form of manipulative sorcery used to control the fate of individuals for personal gain. The central metaphor for the male prophets — plastering a flimsy wall with tafal ('whitewash, plaster') — is brilliantly concrete: false prophets do not build anything real but merely cover over structural weakness with a cosmetic finish. When the storm of judgment arrives, the plaster will dissolve and the wall will collapse, burying both the wall and its plasterers. Jesus may allude to this image in Matthew 23:27 when he calls the Pharisees 'whitewashed tombs.' We gave particular attention to the sorcery vocabulary because the Hebrew terms are rare and their meanings genuinely uncertain — honest acknowledgment of this uncertainty in the notes is more valuable than false confidence.*

Translation Friction: *The terms kesatot (v. 18) and misphachot (v. 18) are among the most obscure words in the Hebrew Bible. Kesatot may mean 'magic bands,' 'amulets,' 'cushions,' or 'bindings' — the exact practice is unknown. Misphachot may mean 'veils,' 'coverings,' 'kerchiefs,' or 'head-wrappings.' We rendered them as 'magic bands' and 'veils' following the majority scholarly consensus while documenting the uncertainty extensively. The phrase letzoded nefashot ('to hunt souls,' v. 18) is vivid but its precise mechanism — whether these women claimed to control life and death, or entrapped clients psychologically, or practiced actual sorcery — cannot be determined from the text alone. The verb tafal ('to plaster, to smear') in verse 10 is distinct from the more common tuach and carries connotations of falseness and fabrication that we preserved in the rendering. The phrase beshiqlei shav ('with handfuls of barley and scraps of bread,' v. 19) appears to describe the payment these women received for their sorcery, though some read it as material used in their rituals.*

Connections: *The whitewash metaphor connects to Jeremiah 6:14 and 8:11 ('Peace, peace, when there is no peace') — both prophets attack the same phenomenon of false reassurance. Jesus's 'whitewashed tombs' (Matthew 23:27) may echo Ezekiel's imagery. The storm that destroys the whitewashed wall (vv. 11-13) connects to the parable of the wise and foolish builders (Matthew 7:24-27). The condemnation of prophesying from one's own heart (millibam, v. 2) parallels Jeremiah 23:16-22, where false prophets speak 'visions of their own minds.' The hunting metaphor (tzoddot nefashot, v. 18) connects to the broader biblical motif of predatory leadership (Ezekiel 22:25-29, 34:1-10). The foxes in ruins (v. 4) anticipate the foxes of Song of Songs 2:15 and Jesus sending a message to 'that fox' Herod (Luke 13:32).*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Son of man, prophesy against the prophets of Israel who are prophesying, and say to those who prophesy from their own imagination: Hear the word of the LORD! ³This is what the Lord GOD says: Woe to the foolish prophets who follow their own spirit and have seen nothing! ⁴Your prophets, Israel, have been like foxes among ruins. ⁵You have not gone up into the breaches or repaired the wall around the house of Israel so that it might stand in battle on the day of the LORD. ⁶They have seen false visions and lying divination, those who say, 'Declares the LORD' — when the

LORD has not sent them — yet they expect their word to be fulfilled. ⁷Have you not seen a false vision and spoken a lying divination? You say, 'Declares the LORD,' but I have not spoken." ⁸Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because you have spoken falsehood and seen lies — therefore, I am against you, declares the Lord GOD. ⁹My hand will be against the prophets who see false visions and divine lies. They will not sit in the council of my people, they will not be registered in the record of the house of Israel, and they will not enter the land of Israel — and you will know that I am the Lord GOD. ¹⁰Because — yes, because — they have misled my people by saying 'Peace!' when there is no peace. When someone builds a flimsy wall, they plaster it over with whitewash. ¹¹Say to those who plaster it with whitewash: It will fall! There will be a flooding rain, and you, great hailstones, will fall, and a wind of storms will split it apart. ¹²When the wall falls, will you not be asked, 'Where is the whitewash you plastered on it?' ¹³Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I will unleash a storm wind in my wrath, and there will be a flooding rain in my anger, and great hailstones in fury to destroy. ¹⁴I will tear down the wall you plastered with whitewash and level it to the ground, exposing its foundation. When it falls, you will be destroyed within it — and you will know that I am the LORD. ¹⁵I will spend my wrath on the wall and on those who plastered it with whitewash, and I will say to you: The wall is gone, and those who plastered it are gone — ¹⁶the prophets of Israel who prophesy about Jerusalem and who see visions of peace for her when there is no peace, declares the Lord GOD." ¹⁷"Now you, son of man, set your face against the women of your people who prophesy from their own imagination, and prophesy against them. ¹⁸Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — Woe to the women who sew magic bands on every wrist and make veils for heads of every size to hunt souls! You hunt the souls of my people, but your own souls you keep alive? ¹⁹You have profaned me among my people for handfuls of barley and scraps of bread, putting to death souls that should not die and keeping alive souls that should not live, by your lies to my people who listen to lies. ²⁰Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am against your magic bands with which you hunt souls there like birds. I will tear them from your arms and set free the souls you hunt — souls you snare like birds. ²¹I will tear off your veils and rescue my people from your hands, and they will no longer be prey in your hands — and you will know that I am the LORD. ²²Because you have disheartened the righteous with lies when I had not caused them grief, and you have strengthened the hands of the wicked so that they do not turn from their evil way by offering them life — ²³Therefore you will no longer see false visions or practice divination, and I will rescue my people from your hands — and you will know that I am the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula introduces the longest sustained oracle against false prophecy in the Hebrew Bible. This chapter forms a natural pair with chapter 14, which addresses those who consult false prophets.
2. The phrase *nevi'ei millibam* ('prophets from their own heart') is the chapter's central indictment: these prophets generate their messages from within themselves rather than receiving them from God. The word *lev* ('heart') in Hebrew denotes the seat of thought and will, not emotion — they prophesy from their own mind, their own agenda. The irony of commanding false prophets to 'hear the word of the LORD' is sharp — they have been speaking words the LORD never spoke, and now they must hear the word he actually speaks.
2. The redundancy 'prophets of Israel who are prophesying' (*nevi'ei Yisra'el hannibba'im*) uses the participle to emphasize ongoing activity — these are not former prophets but active ones, currently practicing their craft.
3. The word *nevalim* ('foolish') carries stronger connotations than mere lack of intelligence — the *naval* in Hebrew is morally deficient, spiritually bankrupt, and socially destructive (cf. Nabal in 1 Samuel 25:25). These prophets are not sincerely mistaken but culpably irresponsible.
3. The phrase *holkhim achar rucham* ('following their own spirit') creates a devastating contrast with true prophets who follow the *ruach* YHWH. These men have a spirit — their own — but it is not God's Spirit. The clause *ulvilti ra'u* ('and have not seen') is the final blow: they are called prophets (from *navi*, 'seer, spokesman') but they have seen nothing. They hold the title without the vision.
4. The image of *shu'alim bachoravot* ('foxes among ruins') is vivid: foxes inhabit abandoned buildings, scavenging in the rubble rather than building anything new. False prophets are scavengers in the ruins of Israel's spiritual life — they exploit the decay rather than repairing it. The word *choravot* ('ruins, desolate places') is significant: the prophets should be preventing ruin, but instead they thrive in it, like foxes who benefit from destruction.
5. The military metaphor identifies what true prophets should have done: stand in the breaches (*peratzot*) of a broken city wall and repair the defenses (*gader*, 'wall, fence'). A breach in a city wall during siege is the point of maximum vulnerability — defenders must fill the gap with their own bodies. True prophets should have placed themselves in Israel's spiritual breaches through intercession and truthful preaching. The false prophets did neither.

5. The phrase beyom YHWH ('on the day of the LORD') introduces the eschatological dimension — judgment is not merely a political event but the day of the LORD, the decisive intervention of God in history. The false prophets have left Israel defenseless for this day.
6. The gravity of the charge cannot be overstated: these prophets invoke the divine-speech formula ne'um YHWH ('declares the LORD') without divine authorization. They claim God's authority for words God never spoke. The phrase va'YHWH lo shelacham ('and the LORD has not sent them') uses the technical term for prophetic commissioning (shalach, 'to send') — they are unsent messengers bearing forged credentials.
6. The final clause veyichalu leqayem davar ('and they expected to confirm the word') may mean they hoped their predictions would come true through sheer repetition or self-fulfilling dynamics, or that they caused others to hope for confirmation. Either reading exposes the hollow foundation of their ministry.
7. The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'yes.' God directly confronts the prophets with what they know to be true — their visions are false (machazeh shav), their divination is deceptive (miqsam kazav). The climactic contrast between 'you say, declares the LORD' and 'but I have not spoken' (va'ani lo dibbarti) strips away every pretense. The first person — 'I have not spoken' — is God himself testifying against the use of his name.
8. The declaration hineni aleikhem ('I am against you') is one of the most ominous phrases in prophetic literature. When God declares himself against someone, all resources of divine power are arrayed in opposition. The same formula appears in Jeremiah 21:13, 50:31, and Nahum 2:13, always introducing comprehensive judgment. For prophets who falsely claimed to speak for God, having God himself turn against them is the ultimate reversal.
9. Three punishments are listed in ascending severity: exclusion from the sod ('council, intimate assembly') of God's people — they lose their place in communal decision-making; erasure from the ketav ('register, written record') of the house of Israel — their names are struck from the genealogical and citizenship rolls; and denial of entry to the admat Yisra'el ('the soil of Israel') — they will not participate in the restoration. Each punishment strips away a layer of identity: social standing, national membership, territorial belonging.
9. The sod in its deepest sense is the divine council (cf. Jeremiah 23:18, 22 — true prophets stand in God's sod), making exclusion from the people's sod doubly significant.
10. The doubled ya'an uveya'an ('because and because') intensifies the causal connection — this is the reason above all reasons. The phrase shalom ve'ein shalom ('peace when there is no peace') echoes Jeremiah 6:14 and 8:11 almost verbatim, establishing a shared prophetic tradition of indicting false reassurance.
10. The word chayitz refers to a poorly built partition wall — not a proper stone fortification (chomah) but a makeshift structure. The verb tafel ('to plaster, to smear, to fabricate') is distinct from the more common tuach and carries connotations of falseness — in Job 13:4 the same root means 'to fabricate, to forge lies.' The whitewash (tafel) is both literally a cosmetic covering and metaphorically a fabrication. English 'whitewash' captures both senses.
11. Three destructive forces assault the whitewashed wall: geshem shotef ('flooding rain') that dissolves the plaster, avnei elgavish ('great hailstones') that pound the surface, and ruach se'arot ('a storm wind') that tears it apart. The triple assault represents divine judgment in overwhelming force. The hailstones (elgavish) are a rare word appearing also in Ezekiel 38:22 and Joshua 10:11 — they are associated with divine warfare, cosmic weaponry.
11. The address to the hailstones themselves — 'and you, great hailstones, will fall' — personifies the instruments of judgment, as though God commands the storm elements directly.
12. The rhetorical question is devastating in its simplicity. After the wall collapses, the whitewash is gone — dissolved by rain, shattered by hail, scattered by wind. The question 'where is the whitewash?' mocks the false prophets' entire enterprise: their reassurance has vanished along with the wall it covered. The substance of their ministry — the plastering — is exposed as having contributed nothing.
13. The storm elements from verse 11 are now explicitly identified as instruments of divine wrath. Each element is paired with an emotion: storm wind with chamat ('wrath'), flooding rain with aph ('anger,' literally 'nose' — the flaring of God's nostrils), hailstones with chemah ('fury, heat'). Three words for divine anger drive the triple assault. The God who sends the storm is not indifferent but enraged at the deception perpetrated in his name.
13. The word lekhalah ('to destroy, to bring to an end') derives from the root kalah, which can mean both 'complete' and 'destroy' — the completion of the wall's destruction is the completion of God's judgment against the false assurance it represented.
14. The wall's destruction has a forensic quality: God exposes the yesod ('foundation') to show what was hidden beneath the cosmetic plaster. The foundation was always flawed — the whitewash merely concealed the weakness. The false prophets will be killed by their own wall — ukhlitem betokhah ('you will be destroyed within it'). They are buried under the very structure they decorated, the victims of the false security they created.
14. The recognition formula viy'da'tem ki ani YHWH carries grim irony: they will know God is the LORD through the very judgment that kills them. Their knowledge comes too late to save them.
15. The verb killeti ('I will spend, exhaust, complete') applied to divine wrath means God will pour out the full measure of his anger until it is spent — nothing held back. The final declaration ein haqir ve'ein hatochim oto ('the wall is gone and those who plastered it are gone') has the simplicity of an epitaph. Both the deception (the wall) and the deceivers (the plasterers) have been annihilated together.
16. The verse identifies the specific content of the false prophecy: chazon shalom ('visions of peace') for Jerusalem. These prophets told Jerusalem exactly what it wanted to hear — that it was secure, that the covenant protected it automatically, that the Temple guaranteed safety. The refrain

ve'ein shalom ('and there is no peace') delivers the verdict: the shalom they proclaimed does not exist. The ne'um Adonai YHWH formula closes the oracle against male false prophets before the chapter turns to the female practitioners in verse 17.

17. The phrase benot ammekha ('daughters of your people') identifies these women as Israelites, not foreign practitioners — the corruption is internal. The same indictment applied to the male prophets — millibhen ('from their own heart/imagination') — applies equally to the women. The verb hitnabba ('to prophesy,' in the Hithpael) is the same verb used for the male prophets, indicating that these women claimed prophetic status and function.
17. This section (vv. 17-23) is unique in the Hebrew Bible: an extended oracle specifically condemning female prophetic/magical practitioners. While prophetesses are known in Israel (Miriam, Deborah, Huldah), these women practice a different kind of activity — manipulative sorcery for personal gain.
18. The word kesatot is extremely rare and its meaning uncertain. The traditional rendering 'pillows' (KJV) is almost certainly wrong. Most modern scholars understand it as some form of magic band, armlet, or amulet sewn onto the wrist (atzilei yadai, 'joints of my hands/arms') as part of a sorcery ritual. The sewing (metapperot) suggests these are handmade ritual objects.
18. The misphachot ('veils, coverings, kerchiefs') are equally obscure. They are made for 'heads of every size' (rosh kol qomah, literally 'head of every stature'), suggesting they are custom-fitted — perhaps indicating different veils for different clients, or veils large enough for any person. The purpose of both objects is letzooded nefashot ('to hunt souls') — the language of trapping and capturing applied to human beings.
18. The rhetorical question at the end exposes the women's predatory economics: they trap other people's souls (nefashot) but preserve their own lives (nephesh lakhenah techayenah). They profit from others' spiritual destruction.
19. The verb chillel ('to profane, to desecrate') applied to God himself — vatekhallelnah oti ('you have profaned me') — is the priestly term for violating the sacred. These women have desecrated God's name and authority among his own people. The payment — sha'alei se'orim ('handfuls of barley') and pitotei lechem ('scraps of bread') — is pathetically small. They have profaned God for a pittance.
19. The phrase lehamit nefashot asher lo temutennah ('to put to death souls that should not die') and ulekhayot nefashot asher lo tichyenah ('to keep alive souls that should not live') describes the reversal of divine judgment: the women claim power to determine life and death, overriding God's own decrees. They condemn the innocent and acquit the guilty — a direct usurpation of divine prerogative.
19. The wordplay on kazav ('lie') in the final clause — bekhazevkhem ('by your lying') and shom'ei khazav ('who listen to lies') — creates a closed circuit of deception: liars speaking to willing listeners of lies.
20. The word leforchot ('like birds, to fly away, to flutter') compares the trapped souls to birds — they are snared, caged, fluttering. God's intervention is described as tearing (qarati) the bands from the women's arms, physically stripping away the instruments of sorcery. The freed souls are sent away (shillachti) — the verb shalach used for releasing captives.
20. The image of God personally ripping sorcery equipment off the arms of the practitioners is viscerally physical. This is not abstract judgment but direct intervention — God reaches in and tears the bands away, liberating the trapped souls.
21. The verb qarati ('I will tear') is repeated from verse 20, now applied to the misphachot ('veils'). Both instruments of sorcery — bands and veils — are forcibly removed. The word metzudah ('prey, catch, fortress') in the phrase limetzudah ('as prey') comes from the same hunting root (tzud) used throughout the passage. The people will no longer be caught in the women's trap.
21. The recognition formula viy'da'ten ki ani YHWH uses the feminine plural — 'you women will know' — maintaining the direct address to the female practitioners throughout.
22. The verb hakh'ot ('to cause pain, to dishearten') applied to the lev tzaddiq ('heart of the righteous') reveals the collateral damage of false prophecy: the righteous — those who take God's word seriously — are grieved and confused by false messages that contradict what they know to be true. Meanwhile, the wicked are encouraged (lechazeq yedei rasha', literally 'to strengthen the hands of the wicked') by being told they will live. False prophecy simultaneously wounds the faithful and emboldens the unfaithful.
22. The phrase levilti shuv middarko hara ('so that he does not return from his evil way') uses the teshuvah vocabulary — 'return, repent.' False prophecy prevents repentance by removing the urgency that drives people back to God.
23. The chapter's final verse strips the women of their two claimed abilities: seeing visions (chazah) and practicing divination (qasam). Both are negated absolutely — lo techhezenah ('you will not see') and lo tiqsamna ('you will not divine'). Their careers are ended by divine decree.
23. The verb hitzalti ('I will rescue') from the root natzel is a strong deliverance word — the same verb used for God's rescue of Israel from Egypt (Exodus 3:8, 6:6). God treats the liberation of his people from these sorcerers with the same gravity as the Exodus liberation. The recognition formula closes both the oracle against the women and the chapter as a whole.

14

Summary: *Ezekiel 14 addresses a delegation of Israel's elders who come to sit before the prophet, presumably to inquire of the LORD. God exposes them immediately: these men have taken their idols into their hearts. The Hebrew phrase *he'elu gilluleihem al libbam* ('they have brought their dung-idols up onto their heart') is viscerally priestly — *gillulim*, Ezekiel's characteristic term of contempt for idols (from a root meaning 'dung-pellets'), are now internal, lodged in the organ of decision and devotion. God refuses to be consulted by such men and declares that any Israelite who comes to a prophet while harboring idols in the heart will receive an answer directly from God — an answer of judgment. The chapter then pivots to a devastating principle: even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were present in a land under judgment, their personal righteousness could deliver only themselves. No one's merit transfers to another. God's four deadly judgments — sword, famine, wild beasts, and plague — will strip Jerusalem bare, yet a remnant will survive to demonstrate to the exiles in Babylon that God's destruction was not arbitrary but fully warranted.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The triad Noah, Daniel, and Job (verses 14, 20) is extraordinary. These are not Israelites in the conventional sense — Noah predates Israel entirely, Job is a non-Israelite from the land of Uz, and the Daniel referenced here is likely not the exilic Daniel (Ezekiel's contemporary) but Dan'el of Ugaritic tradition, a legendary sage-king known from the Aqhat epic. Ezekiel reaches outside Israelite history to summon three legendary righteous men from the broader ancient Near Eastern tradition, only to declare that even their combined righteousness would be insufficient. The theological point is absolute: no intercessory merit can override corporate judgment. This directly challenges the Abrahamic intercession model of Genesis 18, where Abraham negotiates with God over Sodom's fate on the basis of the righteous within it. In Ezekiel's theology, Jerusalem has passed the point where intercession is possible. The chapter's concept of idols in the heart anticipates Jeremiah 31:33's promise of Torah written on the heart — what is inscribed on the heart determines the person's covenant status.*

Translation Friction: *The term *gillulim* ('dung-idols') appears frequently in Ezekiel (approximately 39 of the 48 biblical occurrences) and is his signature contempt-word for idols. We rendered it as 'dung-idols' in expanded rendering contexts to convey the scatological derision, while using 'idols' in the rendering itself for readability. The identity of 'Daniel' (verse 14) presents a textual puzzle — the Hebrew spelling is Dani'el (without the yod found in the exilic Daniel's name), and the pairing with Noah and Job (both non-Israelites of legendary antiquity) strongly suggests the Ugaritic Dan'el rather than the prophet Daniel. We note this without resolving it. The verb *natar* ('to answer') in verse 4 carries the unusual sense of God answering the idolater directly with judgment rather than prophetic word — the divine response bypasses the prophet entirely.*

Connections: *The concept of idols in the heart connects to Deuteronomy 29:18 (a root bearing poison among you) and forward to Jesus's teaching that sin originates in the heart (Matthew 15:18-19). The principle that the righteous cannot save others by their merit contrasts with Abraham's intercession for Sodom (Genesis 18:23-32) and Moses's intercession after the golden calf (Exodus 32:11-14). The four judgments (sword, famine, wild beasts, plague) parallel Leviticus 26:22-26 and Deuteronomy 32:23-25 — covenant-curse language. The prohibition against inquiring of God while harboring idols connects to 1 Samuel 28, where Saul consults a medium after God has stopped answering him. The remnant theology of verses 22-23 connects to Isaiah's 'remnant shall return' (Isaiah 10:21-22) and forward to Romans 9:27.*

¹Some of the elders of Israel came to me and sat down before me. ²The word of the LORD came to me: ³"Son of man, these men have brought their idols up into their hearts and set the stumbling block of their iniquity right before their faces. Should I let myself be consulted by them at all? ⁴Therefore speak to them and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — Any person from the house of Israel who brings idols up into his heart and sets the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face, and then comes to a prophet — I, the LORD, will answer him myself, according to the multitude of his idols. ⁵This is in order to seize the house of Israel by their own hearts — because they have all become estranged from me through their idols." ⁶Therefore say to the house of Israel: This is what the Lord GOD says — Turn back! Turn away from your idols and turn your

faces away from all your detestable things. ⁷For any person from the house of Israel, or any foreigner residing in Israel, who separates himself from following me and brings his idols up into his heart and sets the stumbling block of his iniquity before his face, and then comes to a prophet to inquire of me through him — I, the LORD, will answer that person myself. ⁸I will set my face against that person and make him a warning sign and a byword, and I will cut him off from among my people. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ⁹And if a prophet is enticed into speaking a word, I, the LORD, have enticed that prophet. I will stretch out my hand against him and destroy him from among my people Israel. ¹⁰They will bear their guilt — the guilt of the one who inquires will be the same as the guilt of the prophet. ¹¹This is so that the house of Israel will no longer stray from following me and will no longer defile themselves with all their rebellions — so that they will be my people and I will be their God, declares the Lord GOD." ¹²The word of the LORD came to me: ¹³"Son of man, when a land sins against me by acting with deep unfaithfulness, and I stretch out my hand against it and break its supply of bread and send famine upon it and cut off both human and animal from it — ¹⁴even if these three men — Noah, Daniel, and Job — were in it, they would save only their own lives by their righteousness, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵If I send wild beasts through the land and they bereave it of children, so that it becomes a wasteland with no one passing through because of the beasts — ¹⁶even if these three men were in it — as I live, declares the Lord GOD — they would rescue neither sons nor daughters. They alone would be rescued, but the land would become a wasteland. ¹⁷Or if I bring a sword against that land, and I command, 'Let the sword pass through the land,' and I cut off both human and animal from it — ¹⁸even if these three men were in it — as I live, declares the Lord GOD — they would not rescue sons or daughters. They alone would be rescued. ¹⁹Or if I send plague against that land and pour out my wrath upon it in bloodshed, cutting off both human and animal from it — ²⁰even if Noah, Daniel, and Job were in it — as I live, declares the Lord GOD — they would rescue neither son nor daughter. They would save only their own lives by their righteousness. ²¹For this is what the Lord GOD says: How much more when I send my four deadly judgments against Jerusalem — sword, famine, wild beasts, and plague — to cut off both human and animal from it! ²²Yet — look — a remnant will be left in it, survivors who will be brought out, both sons and daughters. They are coming out to you, and when you see their conduct and their deeds, you will be consoled regarding the disaster that I brought upon Jerusalem — regarding everything I brought upon it. ²³They will console you when you see their conduct and their deeds, and you will know that I have not done anything that I did to it without cause, declares the Lord GOD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *yashav* ('sat') indicates a formal posture of consultation — the elders have come to seek a prophetic word. This scene repeats from 8:1 and 20:1, establishing a pattern where elders approach the prophet and receive a response they did not expect. The indefinite 'some' (*anashim*, 'men') rather than 'the elders' suggests this is not the full council but a delegation.
2. The standard prophetic reception formula. *Le'mor* ('saying') functions as a colon introducing direct divine speech and is rendered accordingly.
3. *Gillulim* appears approximately 48 times in the Hebrew Bible, 39 of which are in Ezekiel. The term is intentionally degrading — it reduces the objects of pagan worship to excrement. We render it as 'idols' in the reading text but document the scatological force in the expanded rendering.
3. The rhetorical question *ha'iddarosh iddaresh* ('shall I really be consulted?') uses the infinitive absolute construction for emphasis — 'should I actually allow myself to be inquired of?' The Niphal form suggests God would be making himself available, and the question implies he will not.
3. *Mikhshol avonam* ('stumbling block of their iniquity') is a phrase unique to Ezekiel (also 7:19, 14:4, 14:7, 18:30, 44:12). The idol is both the cause of stumbling and the embodiment of guilt.
4. The phrase *ish ish* ('man, man' — 'any man') is a distributive construction meaning 'each and every person.' We rendered it as 'any person' for natural modern English.
4. The verb *na'aneti* ('I will answer') is striking — God himself will respond directly to the idolater, bypassing the prophet. But this divine 'answer' is not revelation; it is judgment. The word carries an ironic edge: you want an answer from God? You will get one, but not the kind you sought.
4. The phrase *berov gillulav* ('according to the multitude of his idols') means the response will be proportional to the degree of idolatry — a devastating principle of correspondence between sin and judgment.
5. The verb *taphas* ('seize, capture, take hold of') is a hunting or military term — God will 'catch' Israel through the very organ they have corrupted. The heart that harbored idols becomes the trap.

5. Nazoru ('they have turned away, become estranged') comes from the root n-z-r, meaning to be separated or alienated. The irony is profound: nazir normally describes consecration to God (as in a Nazirite vow), but here the same root describes separation from God through idolatry.
6. The verb shuv ('turn, return') is the foundational Hebrew word for repentance. It appears twice in different forms — the qal imperative ('turn back yourselves') and the hiphil imperative ('cause to turn away'). The doubling creates urgency.
6. To'avot ('detestable things, abominations') is a priestly term for what pollutes the land and the sanctuary. In Ezekiel, it functions almost as a synonym for idolatrous practices.
7. The inclusion of ha-ger ('the foreigner, the resident alien') extends the principle beyond ethnic Israel. Foreigners living among Israel are held to the same standard — the prohibition against idol-consultation applies universally within the covenant community.
7. The phrase lidrash lo bi ('to inquire of him concerning me') clarifies the setting: these are people using prophets as intermediaries to seek God's will, while simultaneously maintaining their idol-worship. The hypocrisy is the offense.
7. Na'aneh lo bi ('I will answer him by myself') — the divine first-person response bypasses the prophetic intermediary entirely. When God answers the idolater 'by myself,' the answer is direct judgment.
8. Natati fanai ('I will set my face') is a hostile gesture — God turns his focused attention against the offender. The same phrase appears in Leviticus 20:3-6 regarding Molech worship and consulting mediums, linking Ezekiel's prohibition directly to the Holiness Code.
8. Le'ot velimeshalim ('for a sign and for proverbs') — the person will become a cautionary example, proverbial among the people. The word mashal can mean 'proverb,' 'parable,' or 'byword' — here it means the person's fate will be cited as a warning.
8. The recognition formula viyda'tem ki ani YHWH ('then you will know that I am the LORD') appears over sixty times in Ezekiel and is his theological signature — all divine action aims at this recognition.
9. The verb pittah ('enticed, deceived, seduced') presents one of the most theologically provocative statements in the Hebrew Bible: God claims responsibility for deceiving the false prophet. This parallels the lying spirit sent by God in 1 Kings 22:19-23 (Micaiah's vision). The theological logic is judicial: the prophet who is willing to speak a false oracle to an idolater receives a divinely authorized delusion as part of his own judgment.
9. The same root p-t-h appears in both clauses — if the prophet yefutteh ('is enticed'), God pitteti ('I have enticed'). The verbal echo emphasizes divine sovereignty even over prophetic deception.
9. This passage became important in later theology regarding divine permission of evil and hardening — compare Romans 1:24-28 where God 'gives over' those who suppress truth.
10. The word avon ('iniquity/guilt/punishment') carries its full triple meaning here — the act of sin, the state of guilt, and the punishment that follows are all contained in a single Hebrew word. Both the false prophet and the idol-worshiper who consults him share equal culpability.
10. The principle of shared guilt between deceiver and deceived is unusual in biblical law, where typically the one who misleads bears greater responsibility (cf. Deuteronomy 13:1-5). Here Ezekiel insists that the inquirer who approaches with idols in his heart is equally guilty.
11. The covenant formula 'they will be my people and I will be their God' reappears — the same formula from the Sinai covenant (Exodus 6:7, Leviticus 26:12). The purpose of judgment is restoration to covenant relationship, not mere punishment.
11. The verb yittame'u ('defile themselves') is priestly vocabulary — tamei ('unclean, defiled') is the opposite of tahor ('clean, pure'). Rebellion is framed as ritual contamination.
11. Pish'eihem ('their rebellions') uses pesha, the strongest of the three Hebrew sin-words — deliberate, willful revolt against authority, not mere error or weakness.
12. A new prophetic reception formula marks the transition to a new oracle. The topic shifts from idolatrous consultation to the impossibility of vicarious righteousness.
13. The phrase lim'ol ma'al ('to act with unfaithfulness, to trespass grievously') uses the cognate accusative construction for intensification — literally 'to trespass a trespass.' The root m-'l denotes breach of trust, sacrilege, or unfaithfulness to a sacred obligation.
13. Matteh lachem ('staff of bread') is a metaphor for the food supply — the staff that supports life. Breaking the staff of bread means destroying the means of sustenance. The same image appears in Leviticus 26:26 and Ezekiel 4:16, 5:16.
13. The hypothetical framing ('when a land sins') universalizes the principle beyond Israel — any nation under divine judgment faces these consequences. This sets up the Noah-Daniel-Job triad, where non-Israelite righteous figures are invoked.
14. The triad Noah, Daniel, and Job is remarkable for what it excludes — no patriarch (Abraham, Jacob), no lawgiver (Moses), no king (David). All three are legendary righteous individuals from outside the normal Israelite lineage. Noah is pre-Abrahamic; Job is explicitly non-Israelite (from the land of Uz); the Daniel here (Hebrew Dani'el, spelled differently from the exilic prophet) may be the legendary Dan'el of Ugaritic tradition known from the Aqhat epic, a righteous sage-king of Phoenician legend.
14. The verb yenatzlu ('they would deliver, rescue') refers only to their own naphsham ('their souls/lives/selves'). The principle is devastating: no one's righteousness can cover another person's guilt.

14. This directly challenges the Abrahamic intercession model of Genesis 18:23-32, where the righteous within Sodom might have saved the city. Ezekiel's theology has passed beyond that possibility for Jerusalem.
15. The verb shikkelatah ('they bereave it') specifically means to make childless — the beasts devour the children, leaving the land depopulated. The horror is not merely economic devastation but the extinction of the next generation.
15. Wild beasts as instruments of divine judgment appear in the covenant curses of Leviticus 26:22: 'I will send wild animals among you, and they will rob you of your children.' Ezekiel is drawing on the established curse tradition.
16. The oath formula chai ani ('as I live') is the most solemn divine oath in the Hebrew Bible — God swears by his own life. It appears frequently in Ezekiel (approximately 16 times) and escalates the gravity beyond ordinary declaration.
16. The emphatic hemah lebadam ('they alone') drives home the impossibility of vicarious deliverance. Even Noah, who saved his entire family in the flood narrative (Genesis 6-9), could save no one else in this scenario. The contrast with Genesis is deliberate and devastating.
17. The sword is personified — God addresses the cherev ('sword') directly, commanding it to pass through the land. This personification of the sword as an agent of divine judgment recurs in Ezekiel 21, where the sword oracle is even more elaborate.
17. The four judgments enumerated in this passage (famine v.13, wild beasts v.15, sword v.17, plague v.19) correspond to the four covenant curses of Leviticus 26 and are called 'my four deadly judgments' in verse 21.
18. The refrain repeats verbatim from verse 16, reinforcing the theological point through repetition. The Hebrew rhetorical structure uses fourfold repetition (vv. 14, 16, 18, 20) to match the four judgments, creating a literary architecture of comprehensive judgment.
19. Dever ('plague, pestilence') is the fourth and final judgment. The word specifically denotes epidemic disease, often associated with divine punishment in the covenant-curse tradition (Leviticus 26:25, Deuteronomy 28:21).
19. The phrase shafakhti chamati ('I pour out my wrath') uses the imagery of liquid poured out — wrath as a substance that floods the land. The addition bedam ('in blood') connects plague to bloodshed, suggesting either that the plague produces blood (hemorrhagic disease) or that the death toll is described metaphorically as blood poured out.
20. The final repetition of the triad. The shift from plural 'sons and daughters' (vv. 16, 18) to singular 'son or daughter' (im ben im bat) intensifies the point — not even a single child could be rescued by another's merit.
20. The chapter's argument moves from a general principle (a land that sins, v. 13) toward specific application to Jerusalem (v. 21). The fourfold repetition builds inexorable rhetorical pressure.
21. The argument reaches its climax with the naming of Jerusalem. The hypothetical 'a land' of verse 13 becomes specific. If the general principle applies to any anonymous nation, how much more severely does it apply to Jerusalem, which has sinned against greater revelation and greater covenant privilege.
21. Arba'at shefatai hara'im ('my four evil/deadly judgments') — the possessive 'my' is significant. These are not random catastrophes but God's own instruments of covenant enforcement, drawn from the curse lists of Leviticus 26 and Deuteronomy 28.
21. The a fortiori argument (qal vachomer — 'how much more') is a standard rabbinic reasoning pattern, here deployed by the prophet centuries before its formal codification.
22. The chapter's devastating logic suddenly shifts. After insisting that even Noah, Daniel, and Job could not save their children, God declares that a remnant (peletah, 'survivors, escapees') will emerge — including sons and daughters. The apparent contradiction is resolved by the purpose clause: the survivors are brought out not because they are righteous but so that the exiles in Babylon can see their wickedness and understand that Jerusalem's judgment was deserved.
22. The verb nichamtem ('you will be consoled') is surprising — the exiles will find consolation not in the survivors' righteousness but in witnessing their corruption, which proves God's justice. This is a dark consolation.
22. Hinnah ('look') is used twice for emphasis, drawing the audience's attention to this unexpected turn.
23. The chapter ends with the recognition formula in negative form — lo chinnam asiti ('I have not done without cause'). Chinnam means 'for nothing, without reason, gratuitously.' God's destruction of Jerusalem was not arbitrary or disproportionate; the survivors' own wickedness will serve as living proof.
23. The theological logic is severe but coherent: the remnant exists not as evidence of mercy but as evidence of justice. Their corrupt lives demonstrate that the people deserved what happened to them. This is the opposite of the usual remnant theology (Isaiah 10:21-22), where the remnant represents hope. In Ezekiel 14, the remnant represents vindication of God's judgment.

15

Summary: *Ezekiel 15 is one of the shortest chapters in the prophetic corpus — eight verses containing a single devastating parable. The vine (gefen), a traditional symbol of Israel's election and fruitfulness (Isaiah 5:1-7, Psalm 80:8-16, Hosea 10:1), is stripped of its positive connotations. Ezekiel asks a seemingly innocent question: what advantage does vine wood have over other trees of the forest? The answer is: none. Vine wood is useless for construction — you cannot even make a peg from it. Its only value lies in its fruit. Once it stops bearing fruit, vine wood has one destiny: the fire. And Jerusalem is that fruitless vine, already partially charred at both ends (the deportations of 605 and 597 BCE), with the middle now smoldering. The conclusion is inescapable: the fire will consume what remains.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The genius of this parable lies in its reversal of a beloved national image. Israel had long understood itself as God's vine — planted, tended, and protected (Psalm 80:8-16, Isaiah 5:1-7). But Ezekiel does not compare Jerusalem to a fruitful vine that has gone bad (as Isaiah does). He compares it to vine wood — the raw timber, stripped of any fruit. And vine wood, considered purely as wood, is the most worthless lumber in the forest. It is too soft, too twisted, too weak for any structural purpose. The only thing vine wood is good for is burning. By shifting the metaphor from the vine's fruit to the vine's wood, Ezekiel removes even the memory of fruitfulness. Jerusalem is not a vine that failed to produce — it is wood fit only for fuel. The brevity of the chapter reinforces the point: there is nothing more to say.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase ha-gefen mah yihyeh ets ha-gefen ('the vine — what will the wood of the vine be?') in verse 2 is syntactically compressed, and we expanded slightly for clarity while preserving the rhetorical punch of the question. The image of both ends burned and the middle charred (verse 4) likely refers to the historical sequence: the first deportation (605 BCE, Daniel and others), the second deportation (597 BCE, Ezekiel and Jehoiachin), with the remaining population in Jerusalem now under siege. We note this in translator notes without importing it into the rendering itself. The verb ma'alu ma'al ('they have acted unfaithfully') in verse 8 uses the same cognate accusative intensification seen in 14:13.*

Connections: *The vine as Israel appears in Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard), Psalm 80:8-16 (the vine brought out of Egypt), Hosea 10:1 (Israel as a luxuriant vine), and Jeremiah 2:21 (a choice vine gone wild). Jesus takes up the vine imagery in John 15:1-8, identifying himself as the true vine and warning that branches that bear no fruit are gathered and burned — a direct echo of Ezekiel's logic. The fire imagery connects backward to the burning coals of chapter 10 and forward to the fire allegory of chapter 19:12-14. The concept of Jerusalem as fuel for fire appears also in 21:31-32.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Son of man, how is the wood of the vine better than any other wood — the vine branch that grows among the trees of the forest? ³Can wood be taken from it to make anything useful? Can anyone even make a peg from it to hang a utensil on? ⁴It has been thrown into the fire as fuel. The fire has consumed both its ends, and its middle is charred. Is it useful for anything now? ⁵Even when it was whole, it could not be made into anything useful. How much less, now that fire has consumed it and it is charred, can it still be made into anything useful! ⁶Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says: As I have given the wood of the vine among the trees of the forest to the fire as fuel, so I have given up the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ⁷I will set my face against them. They have come out of one fire, but the fire will still consume them. Then you will know that I am the LORD, when I set my face against them. ⁸I will make the land a wasteland, because they have acted with deep unfaithfulness, declares the Lord GOD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula. The brevity of this chapter — only eight verses — makes it one of the shortest prophetic oracles in the Hebrew Bible, yet its theological impact is enormous.
2. The question is rhetorical and expects the answer 'It is not.' The word ets here means 'wood' or 'timber,' not 'tree' in the living sense — the question is about the utility of the raw material, not the beauty of the growing plant. This shift from the vine as a living, fruit-bearing plant to the vine as dead lumber is the key to the parable.

2. Ha-zemorah ('the branch, the vine-shoot') specifies vine wood in particular — the thin, gnarled branches of the grapevine. Among the trees of the forest (ba'atsei ha-ya'ar), the vine is unremarkable as timber.
3. The two questions descend from general to trivial: Can you make anything from vine wood? Can you even make a peg? The yated ('peg, pin') is the most basic wooden implement — if vine wood cannot even serve as a peg, it is utterly worthless as lumber.
3. The verb lital ('to hang') clarifies the peg's purpose — hanging household vessels. Vine wood is too soft and twisted to hold weight even at this minimal level.
4. The image of both ends consumed and the middle charred (nachar, 'scorched, blackened') likely refers to Jerusalem's historical situation: the deportations of 605 and 597 BCE have already consumed the 'ends' of the nation (the first exiles), and the remaining population in Jerusalem — the 'middle' — is now smoldering under siege. The chronological reading is not certain but fits the historical context precisely.
4. The rhetorical question hayitslach limlakhah ('is it useful for work?') uses the same word for 'useful' (tsalach) that elsewhere means 'prosper' or 'succeed.' The vine wood cannot prosper — it cannot serve any constructive purpose.
4. Hinnah ('look') draws attention to the present state of affairs: the burning has already begun. This is not a future threat but a current reality.
5. The a fortiori argument (qal vachomer): if vine wood was useless even when intact (tamim, 'whole, complete, unblemished'), how much more useless is it now that fire has partially destroyed it. The logic is airtight and devastating.
5. Tamim ('whole, complete') is the same word used for unblemished sacrificial animals in Leviticus — a subtle priestly echo. Even an 'unblemished' vine-branch is worthless as wood; a charred one is beyond discussion.
6. The parable's application is stated without ambiguity: Jerusalem's inhabitants are the vine wood, and God himself has consigned them to fire. The verb natatti ('I have given') appears twice — God gave the vine wood to fire, and God gave Jerusalem to fire. The divine agency is explicit; this is not random catastrophe.
6. The phrase yoshvei Yerushalaim ('the inhabitants of Jerusalem') specifies those still living in the city — the exiles in Babylon (Ezekiel's audience) are not included in this judgment, though they witness it.
7. The phrase meha'esh yatse'u vеха'esh tokhlam ('from the fire they have come out, but the fire will consume them') captures the survivors' false hope: escaping one catastrophe (the deportation of 597) does not mean safety. The fire is not finished with them.
7. Natatti et panai bahem ('I will set my face against them') repeats the hostile attention formula from 14:8 — God's focused judgment-gaze directed at those who remain in Jerusalem.
7. The recognition formula vyda'tem ki ani YHWH ('then you will know that I am the LORD') closes the oracle. Every divine judgment aims at this recognition.
8. The verb ma'alu ma'al ('they have acted with unfaithfulness, trespassed a trespass') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis — the same intensifying construction seen in 14:13. The root m-'l denotes sacrilege or breach of sacred trust, not merely moral failure.
8. Shemamah ('wasteland, desolation') is Ezekiel's characteristic word for the post-judgment condition of the land — a place emptied of life and purpose. The vine-land that should have been fruitful becomes barren ground.
8. The chapter ends abruptly — eight verses, no restoration promise, no hope clause. The vine is for burning. That is all.

16

Summary: Ezekiel 16 is the longest single chapter in Ezekiel and one of the most extraordinary passages in the Hebrew Bible — a sustained allegory of Jerusalem's entire history told as the life story of an abandoned girl. The narrative arc moves through five stages: (1) Jerusalem's origins as a foundling of mixed Amorite-Hittite parentage, abandoned at birth in an open field with her umbilical cord uncut (vv. 1-5); (2) God's rescue and nurturing of the infant, who grows to sexual maturity (vv. 6-7); (3) God's marriage to the young woman — the covenant at Sinai — with lavish bridal gifts of clothing, jewelry, and royal food (vv. 8-14); (4) the wife's descent into flagrant prostitution with every passing nation, using the very gifts her husband gave her to purchase lovers, making herself worse than an ordinary prostitute because she pays her clients rather than being paid (vv. 15-34); (5) the sentence of judgment — public stripping, stoning, and dismemberment by the very lovers she pursued (vv. 35-43). The chapter then compares Jerusalem unfavorably to her 'sisters' Samaria and Sodom, declaring that Jerusalem's sins make even Sodom look righteous (vv. 44-58). But the chapter does not end in destruction. In a stunning reversal, God declares that he will remember the covenant of Jerusalem's youth and establish an everlasting covenant (berit olam) — restoring Jerusalem not on the basis of her merit but despite her shame (vv. 59-63).

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the most sexually explicit passage in the Hebrew Bible, and that explicitness is theologically intentional. The Mishnah (Megillah 4:10) restricts the public reading of this chapter as a haftarah, acknowledging its disturbing content while preserving it in the canon. The graphic sexual language communicates what abstract theological language cannot: the visceral horror and degradation of idolatry as experienced from God's perspective. Jerusalem is not merely 'unfaithful' — she is depicted as a nymphomaniac who pays foreigners to have sex with her, fabricates phallic images from her husband's gold, spreads her legs for every passerby, and sacrifices her own children to foreign gods. The language is designed to provoke nausea and shame, because that is precisely the emotional register the prophet wants his audience to inhabit. Every euphemism strips the passage of its prophetic force. We have rendered the Hebrew faithfully throughout, documenting the explicit terms without sanitizing them. Readers should understand that the violence described against the unfaithful wife reflects ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse conventions — the punishments are those prescribed in international treaties for vassal-state betrayal, not a prescription for domestic violence. The chapter's final movement toward berit olam (everlasting covenant, vv. 60-63) is all the more powerful because it follows the most devastating catalog of sin in the Bible: God's covenant faithfulness outlasts even this degree of betrayal.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew in this chapter contains several terms that resist polite translation. The word taznot/taznutekh ('your prostitution/promiscuity') appears repeatedly and must be rendered without softening. The phrase vatifgehi et raglayikh lekhol over ('you spread your legs to every passerby,' v. 25) is anatomically explicit in the Hebrew and we have preserved that explicitness. The phrase basar ('flesh/genitals,' v. 26) in reference to the Egyptians as 'great of flesh' is a euphemism for large genitalia, and we have rendered it as such with documentation. The verb zana ('to prostitute oneself, to commit sexual immorality') is the chapter's dominant verb and must retain its sexual force throughout. The shift from judgment to restoration in verses 59-63 is abrupt and theologically stunning — we preserved the whiplash without smoothing the transition. The comparison with Sodom (vv. 46-52) reverses conventional expectations: Sodom's sin is identified not as sexual immorality but as arrogance, abundance of food, and neglect of the poor — a tradition preserved also in later rabbinic interpretation.*

Connections: *The vine/bride imagery connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the vineyard song) and Hosea 1-3 (Hosea's marriage to Gomer as allegory for God and Israel). The foundling narrative draws on ancient Near Eastern adoption formulas. The covenant at Sinai as a marriage appears also in Jeremiah 2:2 ('I remember the devotion of your youth, your love as a bride'). The Sodom comparison reappears in Jesus's teaching (Matthew 10:15, 11:23-24). The berit olam ('everlasting covenant') of verse 60 connects to Genesis 17:7 (Abrahamic covenant), Isaiah 55:3 (the sure mercies of David), and Jeremiah 31:31-34 (the new covenant). The child sacrifice references (vv. 20-21) connect to 2 Kings 16:3, 21:6 and Jeremiah 7:31, 19:5. Chapter 23 (Oholah and Oholibah) is the companion piece to this chapter, extending and intensifying the same allegory.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Son of man, confront Jerusalem with her detestable practices ³and say: This is what the Lord GOD says to Jerusalem — Your origin and your birth are from the land of the Canaanites. Your father was an Amorite and your mother was a Hittite. ⁴As for your birth — on the day you were born, your umbilical cord was not cut, you were not washed with water to clean you, you were not rubbed with salt, and you were not wrapped in cloths. ⁵No eye pitied you enough to do any of these things for you, out of compassion for you. Instead, you were thrown out into the open field in disgust on the day you were born. ⁶I passed by you and saw you kicking in your blood, and I said to you in your blood, 'Live!' I said to you in your blood, 'Live!' ⁷I made you flourish like a plant of the field. You grew and matured and reached full womanhood — your breasts developed and your hair grew thick — but you were still naked and bare. ⁸I passed by you again and looked at you, and your time had come — the time for love. I spread the edge of my garment over you and covered your nakedness. I swore an oath to you and entered into a covenant with you, declares the Lord GOD, and you became mine. ⁹I bathed you with water and washed the blood off you, and I anointed you with oil. ¹⁰I clothed you in embroidered fabric, gave you sandals of fine leather, wrapped you in linen, and covered you with silk. ¹¹I adorned you with jewelry — I put bracelets on your wrists and a necklace around your neck. ¹²I put a ring in your nose, earrings in your ears, and a beautiful crown on your head. ¹³You were adorned with gold and silver. Your clothing was linen, silk, and embroidered fabric. You ate fine flour,

honey, and oil. You grew surpassingly beautiful and rose to royalty. ¹⁴Your fame spread among the nations because of your beauty, for it was perfect through the splendor I had bestowed on you, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵But you trusted in your beauty and used your fame to prostitute yourself. You poured out your promiscuity on every passerby — it was his for the taking. ¹⁶You took some of your garments and made colorful shrines for yourself, and you prostituted yourself on them — such things should never have happened and never should happen. ¹⁷You took your beautiful jewelry made from my gold and my silver that I had given you, and you made male images for yourself and had sex with them. ¹⁸You took your embroidered garments and clothed them, and you set my oil and my incense before them. ¹⁹My food that I gave you — the fine flour, oil, and honey that I fed you — you set before them as a pleasing aroma. And so it was, declares the Lord GOD. ²⁰You took your sons and your daughters whom you bore to me and slaughtered them as food for the idols. Was your promiscuity not enough? ²¹You slaughtered my children and handed them over, making them pass through the fire to the idols. ²²Through all your detestable acts and your promiscuity, you did not remember the days of your youth when you were naked and bare, kicking in your blood. ²³After all your wickedness — woe, woe to you! declares the Lord GOD — ²⁴you built yourself a mound and made yourself a platform in every public square. ²⁵At the head of every road you built your platform and made your beauty an abomination. You spread your legs for every passerby and multiplied your acts of promiscuity. ²⁶You prostituted yourself with the Egyptians, your neighbors, who are large of flesh, and you multiplied your promiscuity to provoke me. ²⁷So I stretched out my hand against you and reduced your allotment, and I handed you over to the desire of those who hate you — the daughters of the Philistines — who were ashamed of your obscene conduct. ²⁸You also prostituted yourself with the Assyrians because you were insatiable. You prostituted yourself with them, and still you were not satisfied. ²⁹You multiplied your promiscuity toward the land of Canaan and on to Chaldea, and even with this you were not satisfied. ³⁰How fevered is your heart, declares the Lord GOD, when you do all these things — the deeds of a brazen prostitute! ³¹When you built your mound at the head of every road and made your platform in every public square, you were not even like a regular prostitute — because you scorned payment. ³²You adulterous wife! You take strangers instead of your husband! ³³All prostitutes receive gifts, but you — you gave your gifts to all your lovers, bribing them to come to you from all around for your acts of promiscuity. ³⁴You are the opposite of other women in your promiscuity — no one solicited you. You gave payment, and no payment was given to you. You are the reverse of everything normal. ³⁵Therefore, you prostitute, hear the word of the LORD! ³⁶This is what the Lord GOD says: Because your lust was poured out and your nakedness was exposed through your promiscuity with your lovers, and because of all your detestable idols, and because of the blood of your children that you gave to them — ³⁷therefore I am gathering all your lovers with whom you found pleasure, and all those you loved along with all those you hated. I will gather them against you from every side and strip you naked before them, and they will see all your nakedness. ³⁸I will sentence you as women who commit adultery and shed blood are sentenced, and I will bring upon you the blood of wrath and jealousy. ³⁹I will hand you over to them, and they will tear down your mound and demolish your platforms. They will strip off your clothing and take your beautiful jewelry and leave you naked and bare. ⁴⁰They will bring a mob against you and stone you, and they will hack you to pieces with their swords. ⁴¹They will burn your houses with fire and execute judgments against you before the eyes of many women. I will put an end to your prostitution, and you will never again pay your lovers. ⁴²Then I will exhaust my wrath against you, and my jealousy will turn away from you. I will be calm and no longer angry. ⁴³Because you did not remember the days of your youth and you enraged me with all these things — I in turn have brought your conduct down on your own head, declares the Lord GOD. Did you not add obscenity to all your detestable acts? ⁴⁴Everyone who quotes proverbs will quote this one about you: 'Like mother, like daughter.' ⁴⁵You are your mother's daughter — she who despised her husband and her children. And you are the sister of your sisters, who despised their husbands and their children. Your mother was a Hittite and your father an Amorite. ⁴⁶Your older sister is Samaria, who lives to your north with her daughters, and your younger sister who lives to your south is Sodom with her daughters. ⁴⁷You did not merely walk in their ways or imitate their detestable acts — as if that were not enough — you became more corrupt than they were in all your ways. ⁴⁸As I live, declares the Lord GOD, your sister Sodom and her daughters never did what you and your daughters have done. ⁴⁹This was the guilt of your sister Sodom: she and her daughters had arrogance, excess of food, and complacent ease, but she did not support the poor and needy. ⁵⁰They became

arrogant and committed detestable acts before me, so I removed them when I saw it. ⁵¹Samaria did not commit even half your sins. You multiplied your detestable acts beyond theirs, and you made your sisters appear righteous by comparison through all the detestable things you have done. ⁵²You too — bear your disgrace, you who judged your sisters. Through your sins, in which you acted more detestably than they, they appear more righteous than you. So be ashamed and bear your disgrace, since you have made your sisters look righteous. ⁵³I will restore their fortunes — the fortunes of Sodom and her daughters, and the fortunes of Samaria and her daughters — and I will restore your fortunes along with theirs, ⁵⁴so that you will bear your disgrace and be ashamed of everything you have done, since you have been a consolation to them. ⁵⁵Your sisters Sodom and her daughters will return to their former state, and Samaria and her daughters will return to their former state, and you and your daughters will return to your former state. ⁵⁶Was not your sister Sodom a byword in your mouth in the days of your arrogance, ⁵⁷before your wickedness was exposed? Now you are the object of scorn by the daughters of Aram and all her neighbors, and by the daughters of the Philistines — those who despise you on every side. ⁵⁸You have borne the consequences of your obscenity and your detestable acts, declares the LORD. ⁵⁹For this is what the Lord GOD says: I will deal with you as you have dealt with me — you who despised the oath by breaking the covenant. ⁶⁰Yet I will remember my covenant with you in the days of your youth, and I will establish for you an everlasting covenant. ⁶¹Then you will remember your ways and be ashamed when you receive your sisters — both the older and the younger. I will give them to you as daughters, but not on the basis of your covenant. ⁶²I myself will establish my covenant with you, and you will know that I am the LORD, ⁶³so that you will remember and be ashamed and never again open your mouth because of your disgrace, when I atone for you for all that you have done, declares the Lord GOD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula introducing what will become the longest sustained allegory in Ezekiel.
2. The verb *hoda* ('make known, confront with') carries more force than simply 'tell' — it means to force someone to see what they have been ignoring. The prophet is commanded to hold up a mirror.
2. To *avoteha* ('her abominations/detestable practices') uses the priestly defilement term that recurs throughout the chapter. Jerusalem is personified as female from the outset, setting up the allegory.
3. The claim that Jerusalem's parentage is Amorite and Hittite is historically grounded — Jerusalem was a Canaanite city (Jebus) before David's conquest (2 Samuel 5:6-9). Theologically, it strips Jerusalem of any claim to inherent holiness or ethnic purity. Jerusalem is not holy by nature; she was made holy by God's choice alone.
3. *Mekhorotayikh umoldotayikh* ('your origins and your birth') — *mekhorot* refers to extraction or digging out (from the root *k-r-h*, 'to dig'), suggesting origins in the most fundamental sense. Jerusalem's roots are pagan.
4. The four negatives describe the complete absence of normal birth care: no cutting of the cord (*shorrikh*, 'your navel-cord'), no washing, no salt-rubbing (an ancient Near Eastern practice believed to tighten and cleanse the newborn's skin), and no swaddling. Each omission represents a specific act of parental rejection.
4. *Lemish'i* ('for cleansing') — the root *sh-'-h* is rare and likely means 'to make smooth' or 'to cleanse.' The newborn was left in the blood and fluids of birth, unattended.
4. The level of detail is midwifery language — Ezekiel the priest knows the rituals of birth and uses their systematic violation to communicate total abandonment.
5. The verb *tushlikhi* ('you were thrown out') is the language of infant exposure — the practice of abandoning unwanted newborns in the open to die of exposure or be eaten by animals. This was documented in the ancient Near East and the Greco-Roman world.
5. *Bego'al nafshekh* ('in the loathing/disgust of your being') — the root *g-'-l* means 'to abhor, to loathe, to find repulsive.' The infant was not merely abandoned but thrown away with active revulsion.
5. The open field (*penei hasadeh*) is the place of wild animals and death — the opposite of the protected household. The foundling has no family, no identity, no future.
6. The verb *mitboseset* ('kicking, thrashing, wallowing') depicts the newborn struggling in the afterbirth — a vivid image of helpless vitality amid filth and blood. The infant is alive but dying.
6. The command *chayi* ('Live!') is repeated twice for emphasis. This single word is God's first speech to Jerusalem — a creative command that grants life, echoing the creative speech of Genesis 1. The repetition in the Masoretic Text may also reflect liturgical practice; this verse is traditionally recited during the Passover seder and at circumcision ceremonies.

6. Bedamayikh ('in your blood') — the plural damim can mean 'blood' or 'bloodshed.' The newborn lies in the blood of birth, which is simultaneously the blood of near-death. Some interpreters see an allusion to the blood of circumcision and Passover (Exodus 12), the two blood-rites that mark Israel's identity.
7. The transition from abandoned infant to sexually mature woman happens in a single verse, compressing years into a sentence. The Hebrew ba'adi adayim ('to the ornament of ornaments') is debated — it may mean 'to full beauty' or 'to the age of adornment.' We rendered it as 'full womanhood' to capture the sense of reaching sexual maturity.
7. Shadayim nakhonu ('breasts were formed/established') and se'arekh tsimeach ('your hair had sprouted') are physical markers of puberty described without euphemism. The nakedness (erom ve'eryah, 'naked and bare' — two words for nakedness used together for emphasis) signals both vulnerability and the absence of anyone who would clothe her.
7. The agricultural metaphor (kemetsach hasadeh, 'like a plant of the field') connects the girl's growth to the land itself — Jerusalem flourishes like a wild plant, uncultivated but alive.
8. Et dodim ('the time of love') — dodim means 'love-making, sexual love.' The plural intensifies the term. This is the age of sexual readiness, and God responds not with exploitation but with marriage.
8. Efros kenafi ('I spread my wing/garment edge') — the same idiom appears in Ruth 3:9 when Ruth asks Boaz to 'spread your wing over your servant.' It is simultaneously a gesture of protection (a bird covering its young) and a marriage proposal (covering the woman's nakedness with one's own garment).
8. The sequence — oath, covenant, 'you became mine' — follows ancient Near Eastern marriage law precisely: a formal declaration, a binding agreement, and the transfer of the bride into the husband's household.
9. The washing and anointing reverse the neglect of verse 4, where no one washed or cared for the infant. What the birth-parents refused to do, God now does. The anointing with oil (va'asukekh bashamen) elevates the act beyond hygiene to consecration — anointing is a priestly and royal act.
9. The blood (damayikh) washed away is both the birth-blood from verse 6 and, symbolically, the pollution of Jerusalem's pagan origins. Cleansing precedes adornment.
10. Riqmah ('embroidered work') refers to multicolored woven cloth — luxury textile. Tachash ('fine leather,' traditionally 'badgers' skin') is the same material used for the outer covering of the Tabernacle (Exodus 25:5, 26:14) — a priestly connection. Shesh ('linen') is the fabric of the priestly garments (Exodus 28:39). Meshi ('silk') is a rare word appearing only here in the Hebrew Bible; the identification with silk is traditional but uncertain.
10. The progression of garments moves from outer clothing to undergarments, each more luxurious than the last. The naked foundling is now dressed like royalty — or like the Tabernacle itself.
11. The adornment catalog (vv. 11-13) parallels the bridal gifts described in Genesis 24:22, 47 (Rebekah's betrothal) and Song of Songs 1:10-11. Each piece of jewelry signifies honor, beauty, and the husband's wealth bestowed upon the bride.
11. Tsemidim ('bracelets') and ravid ('chain, necklace') are standard bridal adornments in ancient Near Eastern marriage texts.
12. Nezem al appekh ('a ring on your nose') — the KJV's 'jewel on thy forehead' obscures the Hebrew, which specifies a nose ring. Nose rings were standard adornment for women in the ancient Near East (cf. Genesis 24:47, Isaiah 3:21).
12. Ateret tif'eret ('a crown of beauty/glorious') elevates the foundling to royal status. The progression from abandoned infant to crowned queen is complete.
13. The list of luxury foods (solet, 'fine flour'; devash, 'honey'; shemen, 'oil') parallels the offerings prescribed for the Tabernacle/Temple (cf. Leviticus 2:1-2). The bride eats what the sanctuary consumes — another priestly echo reinforcing the Temple-city-bride identification.
13. Vatitselchi limlukha ('you prospered/advanced to royalty') — the verb tsalach ('prosper, advance, succeed') marks the apex of Jerusalem's elevation. The foundling has become a queen. The Davidic monarchy is in view.
13. The description now pauses at the peak before the catastrophic descent. Everything that follows will be the squandering of these gifts.
14. The critical theological point: your beauty was kalil ('complete, perfect') through my hadar ('splendor, majesty') that I placed upon you. Jerusalem's beauty is not inherent — it is entirely bestowed. Everything she has, she received. This makes the betrayal that follows all the more grotesque: she will use God's own gifts to pursue other lovers.
14. The fame (shem, 'name, reputation') among the nations sets up the international dimension of the prostitution allegory — Jerusalem's beauty attracted the very nations she will later pursue sexually.
15. The pivot verse. The verb zana ('to prostitute oneself, to be sexually immoral') appears here for the first time in the chapter and will dominate the rest. In prophetic usage, zana describes Israel's pursuit of foreign gods and foreign alliances as sexual infidelity against the covenant-husband.
15. Vatishekhi et taznutayikh ('you poured out your promiscuity') — the verb shafakh ('to pour out') is the same verb used for pouring out blood (Genesis 9:6) and pouring out wrath (Ezekiel 7:8). Promiscuity is depicted as something spilled lavishly and indiscriminately.

15. Al kol over lo yehi ('on every passerby — his it was') — Jerusalem made herself available to anyone who passed by, with no discrimination. The brief lo yehi ('it was his') is devastatingly terse: the beauty belonged to whoever wanted it.
16. Bamot telu'ot ('high places patched with colors') — the bamot ('high places') are the hilltop shrines where Canaanite-style worship occurred. Jerusalem used the very clothing God gave her (v. 10) to decorate the pagan shrines where she committed spiritual adultery.
16. The phrase lo va'ot velo yihyeh ('not coming and not being') is cryptic and has generated many interpretive attempts. We render it as an expression of moral impossibility — 'such things should never have happened.'
17. Tsalmei zakhar ('images of a male') — the word zakhar specifically means 'male,' and tsalmei refers to formed images or figures. These are phallic idols, fabricated from the gold and silver God gave as bridal gifts. The obscenity is deliberate: the wife takes her husband's gifts and fashions phalluses from them.
17. Vatzni bam ('you prostituted yourself with them') — the verb zana with the preposition be indicates sexual intercourse. The prophet does not soften the image: Jerusalem had sex with the idols she made from God's own gold.
18. The possessives are emphatic: shamni ('my oil') and qetorti ('my incense') — these are God's oil and God's incense, the substances dedicated to worship of the LORD (cf. Exodus 30:22-38), now diverted to pagan idols. The sacrilege is compounded by the fact that these are priestly materials being used in unauthorized worship.
18. The phallic images are now dressed in embroidered cloth and presented with offerings — they are being treated as honored guests or divine figures. The wife adorns her idols as she herself was adorned.
19. Le'reach nichoach ('for a pleasing aroma') is the standard sacrificial formula from Leviticus (Leviticus 1:9, 13, 17, 2:2, etc.) — the aroma that rises to God from an acceptable offering. Jerusalem has redirected the sacrificial aroma from God to idols. The priestly language makes the sacrilege precise.
19. The divine speech marker ne'um Adonai YHWH ('declares the Lord GOD') punctuates the catalog of betrayals with divine witness — God is watching and recording each offense.
20. The allegory reaches its most horrifying point: child sacrifice. The verb zavach ('slaughter, sacrifice') is the standard term for ritual sacrifice — the children born from the covenant marriage are offered as food to pagan gods. The historical referent is Molech/Tophet worship, documented in 2 Kings 16:3, 21:6, 23:10 and Jeremiah 7:31, 19:5.
20. Asher yaladt li ('whom you bore to me') — the possessive is devastating. These are God's children, born from his covenant marriage. The wife sacrifices the husband's own children to her lovers.
20. The rhetorical question hame'at mittaznutayikh ('is it a small thing, your promiscuity?') suggests that everything before this — the shrines, the phallic images, the misused offerings — was already appalling, but child sacrifice crosses into a category beyond.
21. The verb shachat ('slaughter') is butchery language — the word used for slaughtering sacrificial animals (Leviticus 1:5, 11). Applying it to children intensifies the horror.
21. Beha'avir otam ('by making them pass through') — the hiphil of avar ('to pass over/through') with reference to fire is the technical term for the Molech ritual (cf. 2 Kings 16:3, 23:10, Deuteronomy 18:10). Whether children were literally burned alive or 'passed through' fire symbolically is debated, but Ezekiel's language — slaughtered and delivered — indicates literal death.
21. The shift from 'your children' (v. 20) to 'my children' (banai) makes the crime personal to God. These are not abstractions; they are God's own.
22. The chapter circles back to the birth narrative of verses 4-6: you forgot where you came from. The foundling who was rescued from death now acts as though her beauty and status are self-made. The failure of memory (lo zakhart, 'you did not remember') is the root of the betrayal — gratitude requires memory, and Jerusalem has none.
22. Mitboseset bedamekh ('kicking in your blood') repeats the exact phrase from verse 6, creating an inclusio between the rescue and the ingratitude.
23. The double oi oi ('woe, woe') is a prophetic lament-cry that erupts from the divine speech. The repetition intensifies the grief and fury. God is both judge and grieving husband.
23. This verse functions as a hinge between the catalog of sins (vv. 15-22) and the extended elaboration that follows (vv. 24-34).
24. Gev ('mound, vaulted chamber') and ramah ('raised platform, high place') refer to structures associated with prostitution or pagan worship — elevated places in public spaces where sexual rituals or idol worship occurred. The placement bekol rehov ('in every public square') emphasizes the shamelessness: this is not hidden but flaunted in the most visible locations.
25. Vatefasqi et raglayikh lekhol over ('you spread your legs to every passerby') — the verb pasaq means 'to spread apart, to open wide.' The phrase is sexually explicit and anatomically specific. The Hebrew does not use euphemism here, and neither does the rendering.
25. Vateta'avi et yafyekh ('you made your beauty into an abomination') — the verb ta'av ('to make abominable') transforms beauty itself into a to'evah. What God bestowed as splendor (v. 14), Jerusalem has turned into something detestable.
25. The placement el kol rosh derekh ('at the head of every road') indicates that Jerusalem's prostitution is maximally visible — she positions herself where travelers cannot avoid her.

26. *Gidlei vassar* ('great of flesh') is a euphemism for large genitalia — a crude description of the Egyptians as sexually desirable because of their genital size. The same idiom appears more explicitly in 23:20. The language is deliberately vulgar; the prophet wants his audience to feel the degradation of Jerusalem's political alliances with Egypt.
26. The political referent is Judah's recurring attempts to form alliances with Egypt against Babylon (cf. 2 Kings 18:21, Isaiah 30:1-5, 31:1-3, Jeremiah 37:5-8). The prophetic tradition consistently condemns Egyptian alliances as both politically foolish and spiritually adulterous.
26. *Lehakh'isani* ('to provoke me') — the verb *ka'as* means 'to provoke to anger, to vex.' The alliances are not merely unwise; they are personally offensive to God.
27. *Va'egra chuqqekh* ('I reduced your allotment/portion') — the verb *gara'* means 'to diminish, to subtract.' The *chuqqah* is the designated portion or ration. God reduced what Jerusalem receives — a reference to territorial losses or reduced prosperity.
27. The daughters of the Philistines — the Philistine cities — are depicted as being ashamed (*niklamot*) of Jerusalem's behavior. When even pagan neighbors are embarrassed by your conduct, the degradation is complete.
27. *Derekh zimmah* ('your way of lewdness/obscenity') — *zimmah* is a strong word for sexual depravity, used in Leviticus 18:17, 19:29, 20:14 for the most serious sexual offenses.
28. *Mibilti sav'atekh* ('because you were not satisfied') — the language of sexual insatiability. Jerusalem's political promiscuity mirrors uncontrollable lust. The alliances with Assyria (2 Kings 16:7-8, where Ahaz paid tribute to Tiglath-Pileser) are depicted as a woman who cannot get enough lovers.
28. The repetition *vatzimnim vegam lo sava'at* ('you prostituted yourself and still were not satisfied') creates a cycle of pursuit and frustration — no alliance, no foreign god, no lover satisfies.
29. The geographical scope expands from Egypt (v. 26) to Assyria (v. 28) to Chaldea/Babylon — Jerusalem has pursued lovers across the entire known world. The phrase *el erets Kena'an Kasdimah* ('toward the land of Canaan, unto Chaldea') traces the route of her promiscuity from local Canaanite religion to the great empires.
29. The refrain *vegam bezot lo sava'at* ('and even with this you were not satisfied') echoes verse 28, establishing the insatiability as the defining characteristic of Jerusalem's unfaithfulness.
30. *Mah amulah libbatekh* ('how sick/fevered is your heart') — the word *amulah* is rare and debated. It may derive from a root meaning 'to be weak, sick, wasted' or 'to languish.' The 'heart' (*libbah*, feminine form) is the seat of will and desire, and here it is diseased — consumed by insatiable lust.
30. *Ishah zonah shallateth* ('a prostitute woman who is dominant/brazen') — the word *shallateth* ('domineering, imperious, brazen') adds a layer to the prostitute image. This is not a desperate woman selling herself from poverty but a woman who aggressively controls the transaction.
31. The devastating comparison: Jerusalem is worse than an ordinary prostitute because she *leqalles etnan* ('scorns/mocks the payment'). A prostitute at least receives payment for her services; Jerusalem pays her clients. This inverts the economics of prostitution entirely.
31. The *etnan* ('prostitute's hire') is a technical term for the fee paid to a sex worker (cf. Deuteronomy 23:19, Hosea 9:1, Micah 1:7). Jerusalem's refusal to accept it means she is driven by lust, not commerce.
32. *Ha'ishah hamena'afet* ('the adulterous wife') — the participle form indicates a habitual state, not a single act. This woman is defined by adultery. The preposition *tachat* ('instead of, in place of') is key: she takes *zarim* ('strangers, foreigners') in place of her husband. The covenant partner is replaced by outsiders.
32. The shift from 'prostitute' (*zonah*) to 'adulteress' (*mena'efet*) narrows the moral category: this is not a single woman selling sex but a married woman betraying her husband. The covenant is the marriage.
33. The reversal is stated explicitly: ordinary prostitutes are paid (*yittenu nedeh*, 'they give a fee'); Jerusalem pays (*nattatt et nedanayikh*, 'you gave your fees'). The word *nedeh/nedan* ('gift, fee, payment') refers to the client's payment to a prostitute. Jerusalem takes the client's role, paying her lovers to come.
33. *Vatishchodi otam* ('you bribed them') — the verb *shachad* means 'to bribe,' a term associated with corruption of justice (Exodus 23:8, Deuteronomy 16:19). The political alliances cost Jerusalem dearly — tribute, territory, and sovereignty — all given away to attract foreign 'lovers.'
34. *Hefekh* ('opposite, contrary, reversal') frames the entire comparison. Jerusalem inverts every norm: she pursues rather than being pursued, she pays rather than being paid, she is insatiable rather than reluctant. The word *hefekh* appears at both the beginning and end of the verse, creating an envelope of reversal.
34. The threefold inversion — (1) no one solicited her, (2) she gave payment, (3) no payment was given to her — systematically demolishes any claim that Jerusalem was coerced into idolatry. Her sin is entirely self-driven.
35. The sentence of judgment begins with a direct address: *zonah* ('prostitute'). God calls Jerusalem by what she has become. The imperative *shim'i* ('hear!') is the covenant-hearing command (cf. Deuteronomy 6:4) now turned into a summons to judgment.
36. *Nechushtek* ('your lust/lewdness' or possibly 'your copper/money') — the word is debated. Some derive it from a root meaning 'bronze, copper' (referring to money spent on lovers); others relate it to a root meaning 'fluid, discharge' (referring to sexual arousal). The ambiguity may be intentional. We render as 'your lust' to capture the sexual dimension.

36. Vatiggaleh ervatekh ('your nakedness was uncovered') — ervah ('nakedness') in Levitical usage specifically refers to the genitals and the shame of their exposure (Leviticus 18, 20). Jerusalem has exposed herself to every nation.
36. The three charges are summarized: (1) sexual promiscuity with foreign nations, (2) idol worship, (3) child sacrifice. These are the grounds for the sentence that follows.
37. The punishment fits the crime with brutal precision: the lovers Jerusalem pursued will be assembled to witness her humiliation. God will do publicly what Jerusalem did voluntarily — expose her nakedness (gilleiti ervatekh, 'I will uncover your nakedness'). But now the exposure is shame, not seduction.
37. The inclusion of 'all those you hated' alongside 'all those you loved' ensures comprehensive judgment — even nations Jerusalem spurned will participate in her humiliation.
37. The language mirrors ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse punishments for vassal states that broke loyalty oaths — public stripping and humiliation before assembled witnesses.
38. Mishpetei no'afot veshofkhot dam ('the sentences of adulteresses and shedders of blood') — two capital offenses under Israelite law: adultery (Leviticus 20:10, Deuteronomy 22:22) and murder (Exodus 21:12). Jerusalem is guilty of both.
38. Dam chemah veqin'ah ('blood of wrath and jealousy') — God's response is framed as a jealous husband's fury. The qin'ah ('jealousy') is the same word used for God's jealousy in the Decalogue (Exodus 20:5) — the intense possessiveness of a covenant partner who will not share what belongs to him.
39. The stripping reverses the adornment sequence of verses 10-13: the clothing (begadayikh, v. 10) and the jewelry (kelei tif'artekh, vv. 11-12) that God gave are taken away. The bride is returned to the nakedness of verse 7 — erom ve'eryah ('naked and bare'), the exact same phrase.
39. The demolition of the gev ('mound') and ramot ('platforms') from verse 24 completes the destruction of the sites of prostitution.
40. The punishment for adultery under Israelite law was stoning (Leviticus 20:10, Deuteronomy 22:22-24). The additional sword violence (bittequkh becharvotam, literally 'they will cut you with their swords') goes beyond legal execution into the brutality of mob violence.
40. This reflects ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse language — the punishments prescribed for vassal states that broke loyalty oaths to their suzerain. The violence is not prescribed as normative domestic punishment but as the consequence of covenant betrayal on a national scale.
41. Le'einei nashim rabboth ('before the eyes of many women') — the other nations (depicted as women) will witness Jerusalem's punishment as a public spectacle and a warning. The humiliation is communal.
41. Vehishbattikh mizzonah ('I will cause you to cease from prostitution') — the forced cessation of promiscuity is not repentance but incapacitation. Jerusalem stops sinning not because she has changed but because she has been destroyed. True restoration will come only in verses 60-63.
42. Vahanichoti chamati bakh ('I will cause my wrath to rest in/against you') — the verb nuach ('to rest') is used for wrath 'settling' or 'being spent.' The wrath does not simply stop; it is fully discharged. God's anger is not capricious but measured — it has a limit.
42. Vesarah qin'ati ('my jealousy will depart') — the jealousy that drove the punishment (v. 38) is satisfied. The theological point is significant: God's wrath is not eternal but purposeful, aimed at a specific end.
43. Darkeikh berosh natatti ('I have given your way/conduct upon your head') — the principle of retributive correspondence: the punishment falls on the same head that devised the crime. The Hebrew concept of consequences 'returning to the head' appears throughout the prophets (cf. Joel 3:4, 7; Obadiah 15).
43. The final rhetorical question velo asit et hazimmah al kol to'avotayikh ('did you not do obscenity on top of all your abominations?') may also be read as a statement: 'you have not committed this lewdness on top of all your abominations' — meaning the judgment will prevent further sin. The Hebrew is ambiguous, and we preserve the interrogative reading.
44. The proverb ke'imamah bittah ('like her mother, her daughter') introduces the next section, which traces Jerusalem's family resemblance to her Canaanite 'mother' and her 'sisters' Samaria and Sodom. The genetic metaphor extends the founding allegory: Jerusalem's behavior reveals her true parentage.
44. Hamoshel ('the one who quotes proverbs') uses the root mashal, the same word used for the 'byword' Jerusalem has become (14:8).
45. The 'mother' is the pre-Israelite Canaanite population of Jerusalem (v. 3). The 'sisters' are Samaria (the northern kingdom) and Sodom. All share the same Canaanite parentage in the allegory. The verb ga'al ('to despise, to loathe') echoes the loathing of verse 5, where the birth-parents despised the newborn.
45. The family tree is devastating: Jerusalem belongs to a lineage of women who destroy their families. She is not the exception but the pattern.
46. The directional terms are translated for clarity: 'left' (semo'l) = north and 'right' (yamin) = south when facing east (the default Hebrew orientation). Samaria is north of Jerusalem; Sodom's traditional location is south, near the Dead Sea.
46. The 'daughters' of each city are the surrounding towns and villages in their respective regions. Samaria as the 'older' sister and Sodom as the 'younger' creates a family hierarchy where Jerusalem is the middle child — and the worst of the three.

47. Kim'at qat ('as though it were a small thing, a trifle') — Jerusalem did not merely equal her sisters' wickedness; she surpassed them. The comparison escalates through the next several verses.
47. Vatashchiti mehen ('you became more corrupt than they') — the hiphil of shachat ('to corrupt, to destroy') indicates active, worsening degradation. Jerusalem outdid both Samaria and Sodom.
48. The oath formula chai ani ('as I live') again — God swears by his own life that Sodom, the proverbial wicked city (Genesis 18-19), was less sinful than Jerusalem. This is a staggering reversal of the conventional moral hierarchy.
48. The comparison with Sodom would have been deeply offensive to Ezekiel's audience. Sodom was the byword for divine destruction (Deuteronomy 29:23, Isaiah 1:9-10). To be told that Sodom is the better sister is devastating.
49. Ezekiel's identification of Sodom's sin is remarkable: not sexual immorality (the dominant reading from Genesis 19) but ga'on ('arrogance, pride'), siv'at lechem ('excess of food, surplus'), shalvat hashqet ('complacent ease, undisturbed quiet'), and failure to help the poor (veyad ani ve'veyon lo hechezqah). This is a social justice indictment, not a sexual morality indictment.
49. This interpretation of Sodom's sin aligns with Isaiah 1:10-17 (where 'rulers of Sodom' are condemned for neglecting justice) and was preserved in rabbinic tradition (e.g., Pirke Avot 5:10, Sanhedrin 109a). Jesus echoes this reading in Matthew 10:14-15, where Sodom's sin is inhospitality.
49. The inclusion of daughters who share the mother-city's guilt extends the familial pattern: corruption is intergenerational.
50. Vatikbeheinah ('they became haughty/exalted themselves') continues the pride-language of verse 49. The to'evah ('detestable act') committed before God (lefanai, 'before my face') suggests the sin was done brazenly, without concealment.
50. Va'asir ethen ka'asher ra'iti ('I removed them as I saw fit' or 'when I saw it') — the Hebrew can mean either 'as I deemed right' or 'when I witnessed it.' Both readings work: God removed Sodom either because he judged it fitting or because he could no longer look away.
51. Vatetsadqi et achotayikh ('you made your sisters righteous') — the piel of tsadaq means 'to declare righteous, to justify.' Jerusalem's extreme wickedness has the ironic effect of making Samaria and Sodom look righteous by comparison. This is not a vindication of Samaria and Sodom but an indictment of Jerusalem's extraordinary depravity.
51. Kachatsi chatto'tayikh lo chata'ah ('she did not sin even half your sins') — a quantitative comparison that would have been humiliating to the Judean audience, who considered themselves superior to the fallen northern kingdom.
52. Se'i klimmatekh ('bear your disgrace') — the verb nasa ('to bear, carry') with klimmah ('disgrace, shame, humiliation') means Jerusalem must carry the weight of her own shame. There is no one else to blame.
52. The logic is precise: Jerusalem judged Samaria and Sodom (pilalt la'achotekh, 'you passed judgment on your sisters'), but her own sins exceed theirs, so the judgment rebounds. The one who condemns others is condemned by her own standard — a principle Jesus invokes in Matthew 7:1-2.
53. Veshavti et shevitan ('I will restore their captivity/fortunes') — the phrase shuv shevut can mean either 'return the captives' or 'restore the fortunes.' The broader meaning ('restore fortunes') is likely here, since Sodom was destroyed by fire, not taken captive.
53. The inclusion of Sodom's restoration is theologically startling — a city annihilated by divine fire will have its fortunes restored. Some interpreters read this as rhetorical hyperbole (meaning 'never'), but the plain statement promises restoration. Jerusalem's restoration will come only alongside and in the same category as the restoration of Sodom and Samaria — a deeply humbling framing.
54. Benachamekh otan ('in that you console them') — the verb nacham ('to comfort, console') here has an ironic edge: Jerusalem 'consoles' Sodom and Samaria by making them feel better about their own sins. When Jerusalem's wickedness exceeds theirs, the disgraced sisters can take comfort in comparison.
55. Tashovnah leqadmatah ('they will return to their former condition') — the verb shuv ('return') and the noun qadmah ('former state, original condition') promise restoration to a pre-judgment status. The threefold parallel structure treats all three 'sisters' identically — they rise or fall together.
56. Lishmu'ah befikh ('a report/byword in your mouth') — Jerusalem used Sodom's name as a curse word, a cautionary tale, a synonym for depravity. The irony is that Jerusalem now surpasses the city she mocked.
56. Beyom ge'onayikh ('in the day of your pride/arrogance') — the same ga'on ('pride') that defined Sodom's sin (v. 49) also characterized Jerusalem. They share the same fault.
57. Beterem tiggaleh ra'atekh ('before your wickedness was uncovered') — there was a time when Jerusalem looked down on others. Now the tables have turned: the daughters of Aram (Syria) and the daughters of the Philistines scorn Jerusalem.
57. Hasha'atot otakh missaviv ('those who despise you from every direction') — the same nations Jerusalem once mocked now despise her in return. The reversal is complete.
58. At nesa'tim ('you have borne them') — the verb nasa ('to bear, carry') with zimmah ('obscenity, lewdness') and to'avot ('detestable acts') indicates that Jerusalem is carrying the full weight of her own crimes. The sentence has been executed.
58. This verse uses YHWH alone (ne'um YHWH) rather than the usual compound Adonai YHWH — a minor textual variation.

59. The transitional verse: God will treat Jerusalem as she treated him. The *alah* ('oath, sworn curse') is the oath sworn at the covenant ratification — the self-curse invoked upon oneself if the covenant is broken. Jerusalem *bazit alah* ('despised the oath'), treating the most solemn commitment in human experience as worthless.
59. *Lehafer berit* ('to break/annul the covenant') — the verb *hafer* means 'to frustrate, annul, make void.' The covenant was not merely neglected but actively voided.
60. The abrupt transition from judgment to restoration is one of the most dramatic moments in prophetic literature. There is no transition, no call to repentance, no condition met. God simply announces: 'I will remember.' The initiative is entirely divine.
60. *Beriti otkh bimei ne'urayikh* ('my covenant with you in the days of your youth') — God remembers the original marriage covenant of verse 8, when the foundling girl was clean and newly adorned. The memory of the original relationship overrides the decades of betrayal.
60. *Berit olam* ('everlasting covenant') connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 17:7, 13, 19), the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 23:5), and anticipates Jeremiah's 'new covenant' (Jeremiah 31:31-34) and Isaiah's 'everlasting covenant' (Isaiah 55:3, 61:8).
61. *Vezakhart et derakhayikh venikhlanit* ('you will remember your ways and be ashamed') — now it is Jerusalem who remembers, and the memory produces shame (*klimmah*). Her own history, once forgotten (v. 22, 43), will haunt her even in restoration.
61. *Velo mibberitek* ('but not from/by your covenant') — the critical qualifier. The restoration of Samaria and Sodom to Jerusalem as 'daughters' does not arise from Jerusalem's covenant faithfulness (she has none) but from God's gracious initiative. The new arrangement is entirely on God's terms, not Jerusalem's merit.
62. *Vahaqimoti ani* ('and I myself will establish') — the emphatic pronoun *ani* ('I') stresses divine initiative. The recognition formula *veyada'at ki ani YHWH* ('you will know that I am the LORD') takes on a new dimension: previously this formula accompanied judgment (vv. 7-8 of ch. 15, etc.), but here it accompanies restoration. God is known through grace as well as through wrath.
62. The covenant being established is distinguished from the old covenant by the emphatic first person — this is God's unilateral commitment, not a bilateral agreement that depends on human compliance.
63. *Bekhapperi lakh* ('when I atone/make atonement for you') — the *piel* of *k-p-r* is the technical priestly term for atonement, the covering of sin so that it no longer stands between God and the sinner. God is simultaneously the offended husband, the righteous judge, and the atoning priest. No other passage in the Hebrew Bible concentrates so many divine roles in a single act.
63. *Pitchon peh* ('opening of the mouth') — Jerusalem will be struck speechless. The one who opened her mouth to seduce every passerby (v. 25) will have no words left. Disgrace (*klimmah*) silences her, but it is the disgrace of receiving unmerited mercy, not the disgrace of punishment.
63. The chapter ends as it began — with God speaking. Jerusalem, the subject of the longest prophetic allegory in the Bible, has no lines. She never speaks. The entire narrative is God's perspective on the relationship.

17

Summary: *Ezekiel 17 is a political allegory cast as a fable (mashal) involving two great eagles, a cedar, and a vine. The first eagle (Nebuchadnezzar) takes the top of the cedar (King Jehoiachin) and plants a seed (Zedekiah) that grows into a spreading vine. The vine then turns toward a second eagle (Pharaoh of Egypt), seeking military alliance in violation of the vassal oath sworn to Babylon. God interprets the allegory in verses 11-21: Zedekiah's broken oath to Nebuchadnezzar is treated not merely as political treachery but as covenant violation against God himself, because the oath was sworn in God's name. The chapter concludes with a messianic promise (vv. 22-24): God himself will take a sprig from the top of the cedar, plant it on the high mountain of Israel, and it will become a great tree sheltering all nations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is extraordinary for its treatment of political treaties as divine covenants. Zedekiah swore his vassal oath to Nebuchadnezzar in the name of YHWH (2 Chronicles 36:13), and God holds him accountable for that oath as though it were a covenant with God himself. The theological logic is striking: any oath sworn in God's name binds the swearer before God, regardless of the political circumstances. The word for 'oath' (*alah*) and 'covenant' (*berit*) appear together, and God says 'My oath which he despised and My covenant which he broke' (v. 19) — the possessive pronoun shifts the oath from a political instrument to a divine obligation. The messianic promise in verses 22-24 introduces the image of God planting a tender sprig on a high mountain that becomes a great tree — an image that resonates with Isaiah 11:1 (the shoot from Jesse's stump) and anticipates Jesus's parables of the mustard seed (Mark 4:30-32). We preserved the fable genre in the opening section, maintaining the literary register of parable before the divine interpretation breaks through.*

Translation Friction: The term mashal ('parable, proverb, allegory') in verse 2 required careful handling — it encompasses fable, riddle, and allegory simultaneously. We rendered the opening command as 'pose a riddle and speak a parable' to capture both dimensions. The eagle imagery uses nesher, which could mean 'eagle' or 'vulture' — we chose 'eagle' for its association with power and sovereignty, noting the ambiguity. The vine imagery (gefen, tsemach, zemorah) is dense and requires distinguishing between the vine itself, its shoots, and its branches. The verb ma'al ('to act treacherously, to break faith') in verse 20 is technical covenant-violation language, and we rendered it as 'broke faith' to capture its relational weight.

Connections: The cedar-top imagery connects to Jeremiah 22:23-24 (Jehoiachin as a cedar shoot) and forward to Isaiah 11:1 (the shoot from Jesse's stump). The messianic planting in verses 22-24 anticipates the Davidic restoration promises of Ezekiel 34:23-24 and 37:24-25. The vine allegory connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the song of the vineyard), Psalm 80:8-16 (the vine brought from Egypt), and Ezekiel 15 (Jerusalem as a useless vine). Zedekiah's broken oath connects to 2 Kings 24:20-25:7 and 2 Chronicles 36:13, and the theological principle that God enforces oaths sworn in his name appears also in Joshua 9:19-20 (the Gibeonite treaty). The great tree sheltering birds in verse 23 reappears in Daniel 4:10-12 (Nebuchadnezzar's dream) and in Jesus's mustard seed parable (Matthew 13:31-32, Mark 4:30-32).

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, pose a riddle and speak a parable to the house of Israel. ³Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — The great eagle with broad wings and long pinions, full of plumage with richly patterned colors, came to Lebanon and took the top of the cedar. ⁴He plucked off the topmost of its young shoots and brought it to a land of commerce; he placed it in a city of merchants. ⁵He also took some of the seed of the land and planted it in fertile soil. He placed it beside abundant waters, setting it like a willow. ⁶It sprouted and became a spreading vine, low in stature, its branches turning toward him and its roots remaining beneath him. So it became a vine — it produced boughs and sent out shoots. ⁷But there was another great eagle with broad wings and thick plumage, and this vine bent its roots toward him and stretched its branches toward him, seeking water from him, away from the bed where it was planted. ⁸It had been planted in good soil beside abundant waters so that it would produce branches and bear fruit and become a splendid vine. ⁹Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — Will it thrive? Will he not tear out its roots and strip off its fruit so that it withers? All its fresh growth will dry up. No great army or large force will be needed to pull it up by its roots. ¹⁰Even though it is planted, will it thrive? When the east wind strikes it, will it not wither completely? It will wither right in the bed where it grew. ¹¹The word of the LORD came to me: ¹²Say to the rebellious house: Do you not know what these things mean? Tell them: The king of Babylon came to Jerusalem, took its king and its officials, and brought them back with him to Babylon. ¹³He took one of the royal line and made a covenant with him, putting him under oath. He also took away the leading men of the land, ¹⁴so that the kingdom would remain humble and not exalt itself, but rather keep his covenant and so endure. ¹⁵But he rebelled against him by sending his envoys to Egypt to obtain horses and a large army. Will he succeed? Will the one who does these things escape? Can he break the covenant and still go free? ¹⁶As I live — declares the Lord GOD — surely in the place of the king who made him king, whose oath he despised and whose covenant he broke, there in the heart of Babylon he will die. ¹⁷Pharaoh with his great army and vast assembly will not help him in battle, when siege ramps are raised and siege walls built to cut off many lives. ¹⁸He despised the oath by breaking the covenant — even though he had given his hand in pledge. Because he did all these things, he will not escape. ¹⁹Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: As I live — My oath that he despised and My covenant that he broke, I will bring down upon his own head. ²⁰I will spread My net over him, and he will be caught in My snare. I will bring him to Babylon and enter into judgment with him there for the treachery he committed against Me. ²¹All his choicest troops in every unit will fall by the sword, and the survivors will be scattered to every wind. Then you will know that I, the LORD, have spoken. ²²This is what the Lord GOD says: I myself will take a sprig from the lofty top of the cedar and plant it. From the topmost of its young shoots I will pluck a tender one and plant it myself on a high and towering mountain. ²³On the high mountain of Israel I will plant it, and it will produce branches and bear fruit and become a magnificent cedar. Birds of every kind will nest under it; they will find shelter in the shade of its boughs. ²⁴Then all the trees of the field will know that I, the LORD, bring down the tall tree and raise up the low tree, dry up the green tree and make the withered tree flourish. I, the LORD, have spoken, and I will do it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') introduces direct speech and is rendered as a colon. This formula occurs over fifty times in Ezekiel — it marks each new divine communication as a distinct oracle.
2. Two genres are commanded simultaneously: *chidah* ('riddle') and *mashal* ('parable, proverb, allegory'). The combination signals that the following story operates on two levels — a surface narrative (the fable of eagles and vines) and a concealed meaning (the political situation of Judah). The cognate accusative construction *chud chidah* ('riddle a riddle') and *meshol mashal* ('parable a parable') is emphatic in Hebrew.
3. The eagle (*neshet*) represents Nebuchadnezzar, as verse 12 will confirm. The description emphasizes imperial magnificence: 'broad wings' (*gedol hakkenafayim*), 'long pinions' (*erekh ha'ever*), and 'richly patterned' plumage (*riqmah*). Lebanon and its cedars are standard biblical imagery for the Davidic monarchy — the royal palace was even called 'the House of the Forest of Lebanon' (1 Kings 7:2). The 'top of the cedar' (*tsammeret ha'erez*) is King Jehoiachin, taken captive to Babylon in 597 BCE.
4. The 'land of commerce' (*erets kena'an*) is a wordplay — *kena'an* means both 'Canaan' and 'merchant/trader.' Here it refers to Babylon, characterized by its commercial power. The 'city of merchants' (*ir rokhelem*) is Babylon itself. Jehoiachin was deported to Babylon in 597 BCE along with the royal court, craftsmen, and warriors (2 Kings 24:14-16). The verb *qataf* ('plucked off') suggests deliberate, selective removal — Nebuchadnezzar chose which members of the Davidic line to take.
5. The 'seed of the land' (*mizzera ha'arets*) is Zedekiah — a native Judean of the royal line whom Nebuchadnezzar installed as vassal king (2 Kings 24:17). The word *tsaftsafah* ('willow') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible. The imagery of planting beside 'abundant waters' suggests that Nebuchadnezzar gave Zedekiah favorable conditions — he was meant to thrive as a loyal vassal. The shift from cedar imagery (Jehoiachin) to seed/willow imagery (Zedekiah) already signals Zedekiah's diminished status.
6. The vine (*gefen*) is Zedekiah's kingdom under Babylonian vassalage. The key detail is 'low in stature' (*shiflat qomah*) — the vine was designed to remain low, a vassal state, not an independent kingdom. Its branches turned 'toward him' (*elav*) — toward the eagle, toward Nebuchadnezzar — in loyal dependence. The roots 'beneath him' (*tachtav*) indicate the vine's subordinate position. The imagery describes a stable, if humble, political arrangement.
7. The second eagle is Pharaoh of Egypt — identified in verse 15. The vine (Zedekiah) actively turns away from the first eagle (Babylon) toward the second (Egypt), seeking sustenance and military support. The verb *kafenah* ('bent, turned') describes deliberate reorientation — Zedekiah chose to seek an Egyptian alliance. The phrase 'away from the bed where it was planted' (*me'arugot matta'ah*) is significant: the vine is abandoning the ground Nebuchadnezzar gave it. This is not merely political maneuvering; it is an uprooting of the arrangement God established.
8. This verse states the irony: the vine already had everything it needed — good soil, abundant water, the conditions for a splendid existence. The adjective *adderet* ('splendid, majestic, magnificent') is the same word used for Elijah's mantle (1 Kings 19:13). Zedekiah could have thrived as Babylon's vassal, but he chose rebellion. The theological point is that God had provided adequately through the Babylonian arrangement, and Zedekiah's turn to Egypt was both unnecessary and unfaithful.
9. God now breaks into the parable to pronounce judgment. The rhetorical question 'Will it thrive?' (*titslach*) demands a negative answer. The verbs intensify: *yenateq* ('tear out'), *yeqoses* ('strip off'), *yavesh* ('wither'). The final observation — no great army needed — is biting: Zedekiah's rebellion is so foolish that his destruction will require minimal effort. Historically, Nebuchadnezzar's siege of Jerusalem (588-586 BCE) did in fact succeed despite Egypt's failure to provide lasting relief.
10. The 'east wind' (*ruach haqqadim*) is a dual image: literally, the hot sirocco wind from the desert that scorches vegetation, and figuratively, Babylon, which lies to the east of Judah. The east wind as an instrument of divine judgment appears throughout the prophets (Hosea 13:15, Jeremiah 18:17). The emphatic construction *tivash yavosh* ('wither, it will wither') uses the infinitive absolute for emphasis — total, irreversible destruction.
11. The reception formula marks the transition from parable (vv. 3-10) to divine interpretation (vv. 11-21). Ezekiel does not interpret his own allegory — God provides the key.
12. The phrase *beit hammeri* ('house of rebellion') is a distinctive Ezekiel term for Israel — it appears nowhere else in the prophets. It replaces the more neutral 'house of Israel' at moments of divine frustration. The interpretation begins with historical fact: Nebuchadnezzar's deportation of Jehoiachin and the Judean leadership in 597 BCE (2 Kings 24:10-16). The word *sarim* ('officials, princes') refers to the royal court and military commanders taken into exile alongside the king.
13. The phrase *mizzera hammelukah* ('from the seed of the kingdom') refers to Zedekiah, Jehoiachin's uncle, whom Nebuchadnezzar installed as vassal king (2 Kings 24:17). The covenant (*berit*) and oath (*alah*) are the vassal treaty terms. The 'leading men of the land' (*eilei ha'arets*) — literally 'the rams of the land,' a metaphor for the powerful — were taken as hostages to ensure compliance. This was standard Babylonian practice: take the nobility to ensure the vassal king's loyalty.
14. The purpose of Nebuchadnezzar's arrangement was stability through subordination — the kingdom was to be 'humble' (*shefalah*, literally 'low'), echoing the 'low stature' (*shiflat qomah*) of the vine in verse 6. The verb *hitnasseh* ('exalt itself') is reflexive — Zedekiah's temptation was self-exaltation beyond his appointed station. The verse establishes that obedience to the vassal covenant was the condition for the kingdom's survival (*la'omdah*, 'so that it might stand, endure').

15. The verb *marad* ('rebelled') is strong political language — outright defiance, not mere disagreement. Zedekiah sent ambassadors (*mal'akhav*) to Egypt seeking military horses and troops — the classic forbidden alliance (cf. Deuteronomy 17:16, 'the king shall not acquire many horses from Egypt'). The three rhetorical questions expect negative answers: no, he will not succeed; no, he will not escape; no, covenant-breaking does not lead to deliverance. The verb *hefer* ('break, annul') applied to *berit* ('covenant') is the strongest possible language for covenant violation.
16. The divine oath formula *chai ani* ('as I live') is the strongest possible assurance — God swears by his own life. The verbs *bazah* ('despised') and *hefer* ('broke') applied to the oath and covenant respectively intensify the indictment: Zedekiah did not merely fail to keep the treaty — he actively treated it with contempt. Historically, Zedekiah was captured, brought before Nebuchadnezzar at Riblah, saw his sons executed, was blinded, and was taken in chains to Babylon where he died in prison (2 Kings 25:6-7, Jeremiah 52:9-11).
17. The verse declares Egypt's military irrelevance — Pharaoh will not save Zedekiah. The Hebrew construction *lo ya'aseh oto par'oh* ('Pharaoh will not act for him') can mean either 'Pharaoh will not help him' or 'Pharaoh will not match him [Nebuchadnezzar] in war.' We chose the former reading as more contextually fitting. Historically, Pharaoh Hophra (Apries) did march out to relieve Jerusalem during the siege, but the relief was temporary and ineffective (Jeremiah 37:5-10). The siege terminology — *solelah* ('ramp') and *dayeq* ('siege wall') — describes standard Babylonian military engineering.
18. The phrase *natan yad* ('gave his hand') is the ancient Near Eastern gesture of covenant ratification — a handshake sealing a sworn agreement. Zedekiah performed the physical act of covenant commitment and then violated it. The juxtaposition is devastating: he gave his hand, and then he did all these things. The verb *yimmalet* ('escape') echoes verse 15 — the answer to the earlier rhetorical question is now stated definitively: no, he will not escape.
19. The shift from third-person description to first-person divine speech with possessive pronouns is the theological climax of the interpretation. God does not say 'the oath' or 'Nebuchadnezzar's covenant' — he says *alati* ('My oath') and *beriti* ('My covenant'). This elevates a political treaty to sacred obligation. The phrase *untativ berosh* ('I will bring it down upon his head') is covenant-curse language — the consequences sworn in the oath will fall on the oath-breaker himself.
20. The hunting imagery — net (*rishti*) and snare (*metsudati*) — presents God as the hunter and Zedekiah as prey. The same imagery appears in Ezekiel 12:13 in the earlier prophecy about Zedekiah's capture. The verb *ma'al* ('act treacherously, break faith') is technical covenant-violation language used especially for sacred obligations — it appears in Leviticus 5:15 and Numbers 5:12 for violations against holy things and marital faithfulness. God will 'enter into judgment' (*nishpateti*) with Zedekiah — the covenant lawsuit terminology of the prophets.
21. The word *mivrachav* is debated: the Masoretic text reads 'his fugitives' (from *barach*, 'to flee'), but many scholars and ancient versions read *mibcharav* ('his choicest troops,' from *bachar*, 'to choose'). We follow the emended reading as it fits the military context better — God is prophesying the destruction of Zedekiah's best soldiers, not merely the fate of those who flee. The recognition formula 'you will know that I, the LORD, have spoken' (*vida'tem ki ani YHWH dibbarti*) is a signature Ezekiel phrase, occurring over sixty times in the book. It asserts that historical events will vindicate the prophetic word.
22. The emphatic first-person pronoun *ani* ('I myself') appears twice in the Hebrew, stressing that this action is God's alone — no eagle, no foreign king, no human agency. The 'tender' shoot (*rakh*) echoes Isaiah 53:2 ('he grew up like a tender shoot') and Isaiah 11:1 ('a shoot from the stump of Jesse'), creating a web of messianic imagery. The 'high and towering mountain' (*har gavoah vetalul*) is Mount Zion — the location reverses the exile: what Babylon took down, God will raise up.
23. The phrase *kol tsippor kol kanaf* ('every bird of every wing') is a merism indicating totality — all creatures, all nations will find shelter under this cedar. The verb *shakhenu* ('they will nest/dwell') uses the same root as *Shekhinah* (*sh-k-n*, 'to dwell') — where God's planting occurs, dwelling occurs. The cedar that began the chapter as a symbol of the failed Davidic monarchy is here restored as a symbol of the future messianic kingdom — God will succeed where human kings failed.
24. The four antithetical pairs form a chiasmic structure: high/low, low/high, green/dry, dry/flourishing. Each reversal asserts divine sovereignty over what humans assume to be fixed hierarchies. The 'trees of the field' (*atsei hassadeh*) personify the nations — the same metaphor appears in Isaiah 55:12 and Judges 9:8-15 (Jotham's fable). The closing formula 'I, the LORD, have spoken and I will do it' (*ani YHWH dibbarti ve'asiti*) upgrades the recognition formula of verse 21: not only has God spoken, but he will act. Word and deed are united in the divine character.

18

Summary: *Ezekiel 18 is a theological manifesto on individual moral responsibility. God dismantles the proverb circulating among the exiles — 'The fathers have eaten sour grapes, and the children's teeth are set on edge' — which functioned as a fatalistic excuse: the exiles blamed their suffering on their ancestors' sins rather than their own. God declares the proverb dead and replaces it with a principle of individual accountability: 'The soul that sins — it shall die.' Three generations are examined in sequence: a righteous father (vv. 5-9), his wicked son (vv. 10-13), and the wicked son's righteous grandson (vv. 14-18). Each is judged on his own conduct, not inherited guilt. The chapter then addresses the possibility of repentance: a wicked person who turns (shuv) will live; a righteous person who turns to wickedness will die. God takes no pleasure in death and issues a passionate appeal: 'Turn and live!' (v. 32). The verb shuv ('to turn, to return, to repent') saturates the chapter and carries the full weight of teshuvah — repentance as homecoming.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter represents a seismic shift in Israel's theological framework. The older tradition, expressed in the Decalogue itself (Exodus 20:5, 'visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generation'), operated on a corporate model of accountability. Ezekiel does not deny the older tradition but reframes it for a new context: the exiles cannot use inherited guilt as an alibi for their own failures. Each person stands or falls before God on their own merit. The three-generation case study (righteous father, wicked son, righteous grandson) is structured as legal argumentation — God is making a case, building evidence, and issuing a verdict. The verb shuv appears seven times in verses 21-32, building to a crescendo. The chapter's climax is not a command but a plea: God does not want anyone to die. The theological weight of 'I take no pleasure in the death of anyone who dies' (v. 32) redefines divine justice as ultimately restorative, not punitive. Jeremiah 31:29-30 addresses the same proverb, confirming it was a widespread complaint among the exilic community.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between Ezekiel 18 and Exodus 20:5 (intergenerational punishment) must be handled honestly. Ezekiel is not correcting Moses but addressing a misapplication of the principle — the exiles had turned a statement about God's prerogative into a fatalistic denial of personal responsibility. The legal casuistry of verses 5-18 lists specific behaviors (eating at mountain shrines, defiling a neighbor's wife, oppressing the poor, charging interest) that reflect the covenant stipulations of the Torah, especially Leviticus and Deuteronomy. The Hebrew of verse 2 uses the verb qahah ('to be blunt, set on edge') for the children's teeth — a vivid physical metaphor for inherited consequences. The term nephesh in 'the soul that sins shall die' (v. 4, 20) requires careful handling: nephesh here means 'the person, the living being,' not 'immortal soul' in the Greek philosophical sense.*

Connections: *The sour grapes proverb also appears in Jeremiah 31:29-30, where it is similarly overturned. The three-generation case study echoes the covenant stipulations of Deuteronomy 24:16 ('Fathers shall not be put to death for their children, nor children for their fathers'). The list of righteous behaviors (vv. 5-9) parallels Psalm 15 and Psalm 24:3-4 (the 'entrance liturgy' of who may approach God). The appeal to repentance anticipates 33:10-20, where the same argument is repeated after the fall of Jerusalem. The 'new heart' language of verse 31 connects to 11:19 and 36:26 — the heart transplant that makes obedience possible. The concept of teshuvah developed in this chapter becomes foundational for later Jewish theology and the Yom Kippur liturgy.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"What do you mean by repeating this proverb about the soil of Israel: 'The fathers eat sour grapes, and the children's teeth are blunted'? ³As I live, declares the Lord GOD, you will no longer have reason to quote this proverb in Israel. ⁴Look — every person belongs to me. The father's life is mine just as the son's life is mine. The person who sins — that one shall die. ⁵If a man is righteous and practices justice and righteousness — ⁶he does not eat at the mountain shrines or lift his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel; he does not defile his neighbor's wife or approach a woman during her menstrual impurity; ⁷he does not oppress anyone; he returns the debtor's pledge, commits no robbery, gives his bread to the hungry, and clothes the naked; ⁸he does not lend at interest or take profit; he withdraws his hand from injustice and renders honest judgment between people; ⁹he walks in my statutes and keeps my judgments, acting faithfully — that man is righteous. He will certainly live, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁰But suppose he fathers a violent son who sheds

blood and does any of these things — ¹¹though his father did none of these things — this son eats at the mountain shrines and defiles his neighbor's wife; ¹²he oppresses the poor and needy, commits robbery, does not return the pledge, lifts his eyes to the idols, and commits abominations; ¹³he lends at interest and takes profit — will he live? He will not live! He has committed all these abominations. He will certainly die. His blood is on his own head. ¹⁴But suppose that son fathers a son who sees all the sins his father committed, and though he sees them, he does not do the same — ¹⁵he does not eat at the mountain shrines or lift his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel; he does not defile his neighbor's wife; ¹⁶he does not oppress anyone; he does not seize a pledge, commits no robbery, gives his bread to the hungry, and clothes the naked; ¹⁷he withholds his hand from oppressing the poor, takes no interest or profit, carries out my judgments, and walks in my statutes — he will not die for his father's iniquity. He will certainly live. ¹⁸As for his father — because he practiced extortion, robbed his brother, and did what was not good among his people — he died for his own iniquity. ¹⁹Yet you ask, 'Why doesn't the son bear the father's iniquity?' Because the son has practiced justice and righteousness, kept all my statutes, and carried them out — he will certainly live. ²⁰The person who sins — that one shall die. A son will not bear the father's iniquity, and a father will not bear the son's iniquity. The righteousness of the righteous will be credited to him alone, and the wickedness of the wicked will be charged to him alone. ²¹But if the wicked person turns from all the sins he has committed and keeps all my statutes and practices justice and righteousness, he will certainly live — he will not die. ²²None of the transgressions he committed will be held against him. Through the righteousness he has practiced, he will live. ²³Do I take any pleasure in the death of the wicked, declares the Lord GOD? Is it not rather that he turn from his ways and live? ²⁴But when a righteous person turns from his righteousness and commits injustice, doing all the abominations that the wicked person does — will he live? None of the righteous deeds he performed will be remembered. For the treachery he has committed and the sin he has sinned, he will die. ²⁵Yet you say, 'The Lord's way is not fair.' Listen, house of Israel — is it my way that is unfair? Is it not your ways that are unfair? ²⁶When a righteous person turns from his righteousness and commits injustice, he dies because of it — for the injustice he committed, he will die. ²⁷And when a wicked person turns from the wickedness he committed and practices justice and righteousness, he will preserve his own life. ²⁸Because he saw and turned from all the transgressions he committed, he will certainly live — he will not die. ²⁹Yet the house of Israel says, 'The Lord's way is not fair.' Are my ways unfair, house of Israel? Is it not your ways that are unfair? ³⁰Therefore I will judge each of you according to his ways, house of Israel, declares the Lord GOD. Turn! Turn back from all your transgressions, so that iniquity will not become a stumbling block for you. ³¹Throw off from yourselves all the transgressions you have committed and make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit! Why should you die, house of Israel? ³²For I take no pleasure in the death of anyone who dies, declares the Lord GOD. So turn — and live!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew includes *le'mor* ('saying'), which functions as a quotation marker rather than a separate word requiring translation. We integrate it into the colon.
2. The Hebrew *mah lakhem* ('what is it to you?') carries an accusatory tone — God is not asking for information but challenging the exiles' use of this proverb. The verb *moshelim* ('using a proverb, quoting') is a participle, indicating ongoing, habitual repetition.
2. The verb *tiqheynah* (from *qahah*, 'to be blunt, to be set on edge') describes a physical sensation — the dulling or tingling of teeth after biting into something extremely sour. The proverb's logic: the fathers ate the unripe grapes (sinned), but the children experience the painful consequences. The exiles used this to claim their suffering was undeserved — inherited from previous generations.
2. The phrase *admat Yisra'el* ('soil of Israel') rather than *eret Yisra'el* ('land of Israel') is significant — *adamah* connects to the concrete, earthy reality of the people on their ground. The proverb circulates among people bound to this soil.
3. The oath formula *chai ani* ('as I live') is the strongest form of divine self-assertion in the Hebrew Bible — God swears by his own life. This elevates the following declaration from instruction to irrevocable decree.
3. The construction *im yihyeh lakhem* ('if it will be to you') is an oath negation — in Hebrew, swearing 'if X happens' means 'X will absolutely not happen.' God is abolishing the proverb's legitimacy with maximum authority.
4. The word *nephesh* appears four times in this verse, creating a hammering rhythm: all the nefashot are mine, like the nephesh of the father, like the nephesh of the son — the nephesh that sins, it dies. We vary the English rendering ('person,' 'life,' 'person') to avoid awkward repetition while noting the Hebrew's deliberate repetition.

4. The pronoun *hi* ('it, that one') is emphatic — 'that one and no other shall die.' The emphasis isolates the guilty party: guilt does not transfer.
4. The 'death' announced here should not be limited to physical death. In the context of Ezekiel's exilic audience, it encompasses the full consequence of covenant violation — exile, loss of land, separation from God's presence. The chapter will later clarify that this death can be averted through repentance (vv. 21-23).
5. The case study begins. The Hebrew presents a conditional: 'And a man — if he is righteous.' The terms *mishpat* ('justice, right judgment') and *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') form a hendiadys — a single concept expressed through two words. Together they describe conduct that aligns with God's covenant standards in both the legal/social sphere (*mishpat*) and the moral/relational sphere (*tsedaqah*).
5. This verse opens the first of three generational profiles. The righteous man's behaviors are catalogued in verses 6-8 before the verdict is given in verse 9.
6. The phrase 'eat at the mountains' (*el heharim lo akhal*) refers to sacrificial meals at hilltop shrines — the *bamot* ('high places') that were centers of syncretistic worship. This is not about geography but about participation in idolatrous worship.
6. The word *gillulim* ('idols') is Ezekiel's characteristic term of contempt for idols — likely derived from a root meaning 'dung pellets.' It appears nearly forty times in the book and carries deliberate vulgarity.
6. The prohibitions blend cultic and ethical categories seamlessly: idolatrous worship, adultery, and menstrual purity laws stand side by side. For Ezekiel the priest, these are not separate domains — they all fall under the umbrella of holiness, the maintenance of proper boundaries between clean and unclean, sacred and profane.
7. The verb *yaneh* ('oppress') encompasses economic exploitation, abuse of power, and systemic injustice — not merely individual acts of cruelty but patterns of domination over the vulnerable.
7. The 'pledge' (*chavolah*) refers to collateral taken for a loan. Torah law (Exodus 22:26-27, Deuteronomy 24:10-13) required that a poor person's cloak taken as pledge be returned by sunset, since it served as their blanket. Returning the pledge is an act of covenant faithfulness that prioritizes human dignity over creditor's rights.
7. The list moves from negative prohibitions (does not oppress, does not rob) to positive obligations (gives bread, clothes the naked). Righteousness in Ezekiel is not merely the absence of wrongdoing but the active pursuit of justice and mercy.
8. The Torah prohibited charging interest (*neshekh*, literally 'a bite') on loans to fellow Israelites (Exodus 22:25, Leviticus 25:36-37, Deuteronomy 23:19-20). The parallel term *tarbit* ('increase, profit') covers any form of financial gain extracted from the vulnerable. Together they prohibit all exploitative lending practices within the covenant community.
8. The phrase *mishpat emet* ('true judgment, honest judgment') describes judicial integrity — rendering decisions between disputants without corruption or partiality. The righteous man serves as an honest arbiter in community disputes.
9. The verdict formula *chayo yichyeh* ('he will certainly live') uses the infinitive absolute construction for emphatic certainty. This is not a tentative promise but an absolute guarantee: the righteous person will live.
9. The phrase *la'asot emet* ('to act faithfully, to deal truly') summarizes the entire catalogue of verses 5-8. *Emet* ('truth, faithfulness') here means reliability and integrity in all relationships — with God, with neighbors, with the vulnerable.
9. The word *tsaddiq* ('righteous') here serves as both description and legal verdict — the man is declared righteous based on the evidence presented. This is forensic language: God has examined the case and pronounced the judgment.
10. The second generation: the righteous father's wicked son. The word *paritz* ('violent, breaker') describes someone who breaks through boundaries — social, moral, legal. Combined with *shofekh dam* ('shedder of blood'), the portrait is of a man who is both generally violent and specifically murderous.
10. The phrase *ve'asah ach me'achad me'elleh* ('and does a brother [?] from one of these') is textually difficult. The word *ach* may mean 'brother' (he does to a brother) or may be an emphatic particle ('indeed does one of these'). Most translations read it as 'does any one of these things,' taking *ach* as an introductory particle rather than 'brother.'
11. The contrast is sharpened by the emphatic *vehu* ('and he') — the son, unlike his father, does the very things his father refused to do. The reversal is complete: the father avoided mountain shrines and adultery (v. 6), but the son embraces both.
11. The phrase *et kol elleh lo asah* ('all these things he did not do') refers to the righteous deeds of the father — the son has abandoned every standard his father upheld.
12. Each item in this list is the exact inversion of the father's righteousness catalogue in verses 6-8. The father did not oppress; the son oppresses. The father returned the pledge; the son does not. The father did not lift his eyes to idols; the son does. The parallelism is deliberate and devastating — the son is a mirror-image negative of the father.
12. The word *to'evah* ('abomination') is the priestly term for what defiles and provokes God's wrath. Its appearance here signals that the son's conduct falls under the severest covenant judgment.

13. The rhetorical question *vachai* ('and shall he live?') is immediately answered with the emphatic *lo yichyeh* ('he will not live!'). The construction creates a moment of dramatic tension before the verdict crashes down.
13. The death formula *mot yumat* ('he will certainly die') mirrors the life formula *chayo yichyeh* ('he will certainly live') from verse 9 — both use the infinitive absolute for emphasis. Life and death stand as parallel certainties, each earned by the individual's conduct.
13. The phrase *damav bo yihyeh* ('his blood shall be on him') is a legal formula of self-incurred guilt. The son's death is not transferred from the father — it is the direct consequence of his own choices. The blood-guilt rests on him alone.
14. The third generation: the wicked man's righteous grandson. The key verb is *vayar* ('and he sees') — the grandson observes his father's wickedness and makes a conscious choice not to repeat it. The double use of 'seeing' (*vayyar... vayyir'eh*) emphasizes deliberate awareness followed by deliberate rejection. This grandson is not righteous by accident but by choice.
14. The phrase *velo ya'aseh kahen* ('and does not do like them') marks the decisive break. The grandson sees the pattern of sin and refuses to continue it — a portrait of moral agency that contradicts the fatalism of the sour grapes proverb.
15. The grandson's righteousness is described using the same catalogue as the grandfather's (v. 6), creating a literary envelope. The wicked father stands isolated between two righteous generations — his sin is his own, not a family trait.
16. The catalogue continues to mirror the grandfather's righteousness from verse 7. The grandson independently enacts the same pattern of justice and mercy — not because he inherited it but because he chose it. The very structure of the argument refutes hereditary guilt or hereditary righteousness.
17. The verdict is explicit: *lo yamut ba'avon aviv* ('he will not die for his father's iniquity'). This is the direct answer to the sour grapes proverb — the grandson's teeth are not set on edge by his father's sour grapes. Each generation bears its own moral weight.
17. The life formula *chayo yichyeh* ('he will certainly live') returns, matching the grandfather's verdict in verse 9. Two righteous men bookend one wicked man, and each receives the identical promise of life. Righteousness is not inherited — but neither is guilt.
18. The father's fate is restated to complete the three-generation argument. The verb *ashaq* ('to extort, to oppress by fraud') paired with *gazal* ('to rob by force') covers both covert and overt forms of injustice.
18. The phrase *hinneh met ba'avono* ('he died for his own iniquity') closes the case. The father bears his own guilt; his death does not contaminate the son or the grandson. The demonstrative *hinneh* ('look!') directs attention to this principle as something to be observed and internalized.
19. God anticipates the objection: the exiles expect intergenerational punishment as normal theological reality. Their question *maddu'a lo nasa haben ba'avon ha'av* ('why does the son not bear the father's iniquity?') reveals how deeply the corporate guilt model was embedded in their thinking.
19. The answer is not a theological treatise but a factual statement: the son did justice and righteousness, therefore he lives. The logic is tautological by design — righteousness leads to life, full stop. No exceptions for inherited guilt.
20. The repetition of *hannephesh hachote't hi tamut* ('the person who sins — that one shall die') from verse 4 creates an *inclusio* that brackets the entire three-generation argument. The thesis is stated, demonstrated, and restated.
20. The double negation — the son does not bear the father's iniquity AND the father does not bear the son's — closes every loophole. The principle works in both directions.
20. We render *alav tihyeh* as 'credited to him alone' and 'charged to him alone' to bring out the forensic/accounting metaphor implicit in the Hebrew. The preposition *al* ('upon, on') carries the sense of a weight resting on someone — each person carries only their own moral weight.
21. The verb *shuv* ('to turn, return') appears here for the first time in the chapter and will dominate verses 21-32. This is the hinge of the argument: the chapter moves from the principle of individual responsibility (vv. 1-20) to the possibility of individual transformation (vv. 21-32).
21. The construction *chayo yichyeh lo yamut* ('he will certainly live, he will not die') doubles the assurance — both the positive promise and the negative guarantee. Repentance is not a gamble; it comes with divine certainty.
22. The verb *yizzakhru* ('will be remembered, will be mentioned') means more than mere memory — it means 'brought up for judgment, held on record.' God does not merely forget the past sins; he actively declines to bring them into the judicial process. The repentant person's record is wiped clean in the court of divine justice.
22. The word *pesha'im* ('transgressions') specifically denotes willful rebellion — the most severe category of sin in Hebrew, distinct from *chattot* (sins of failing/missing) and *avonot* (iniquities/guilt). Even deliberate rebellion is covered by genuine repentance.
23. The infinitive absolute construction *hechaphotz echpotz* ('do I indeed take pleasure?') is emphatic. God is not asking a casual question but making a forceful rhetorical denial. The expected answer is 'No — God takes no pleasure in the death of the wicked.'
23. The phrase *beshuvo midderachav* ('in his turning from his ways') uses *shuv* again — repentance is directional. The 'ways' (*derachim*) are paths that the person has been walking; *shuv* means turning off that path and walking in a new direction.
24. The converse case: the righteous can also 'turn' (*shuv*), but in the wrong direction — away from righteousness toward wickedness. The same verb *shuv* that promises life in verse 21 threatens death here. The word is morally neutral; it simply means 'to turn.' The direction of the turn determines the outcome.

- 24.** The word *ma'al* ('treachery, unfaithfulness') is a covenant term — it describes breach of faith with God, not merely ethical failure. The righteous person who turns to wickedness is committing covenantal treason.
- 24.** The phrase *lo tizzakharnah* ('they will not be remembered') applies the same principle from verse 22 in reverse. Just as the repentant wicked person's sins are not remembered, the apostate righteous person's good deeds are not remembered. The ledger resets in both directions.
- 25.** The verb *yittaken* (from *takan*, 'to be straight, to be measured, to be fair') describes something that is properly calibrated — fair, just, equitable. The exiles accuse God's way of being crooked or unjust. God's response turns the accusation back on them: it is their ways, not his, that fail the standard of fairness.
- 25.** This objection and response pattern (vv. 25, 29) reveals a genuine theological dialogue between God and the exiles. They are not merely listening to pronouncements — they are arguing back. Ezekiel preserves both sides of the dispute.
- 26.** The verse restates the principle from verse 24 in compressed form. The phrase *umet aleihem* ('and he dies because of them') makes the causal link explicit — death results directly from the injustice committed, not from arbitrary divine anger or inherited guilt.
- 26.** The word *avel* ('injustice, wrong') is the opposite of *tsedaqah* — it describes conduct that violates the relational obligations of the covenant.
- 27.** The phrase *et nafsho yechayah* ('he will keep his own *nephesh* alive') places the emphasis on self-preservation through moral agency. The wicked person, by turning, literally saves his own life. The *nephesh* is not an abstract soul but the whole living person — the turning preserves the entire self.
- 27.** This is the fifth occurrence of *shuv* in the chapter's repentance section (vv. 21-32), reinforcing the centrality of turning as the mechanism of transformation.
- 28.** The sequence *vayyir'eh vayyashov* ('he saw and he turned') mirrors verse 14, where the righteous grandson 'saw and did not do likewise.' Seeing is the prerequisite for turning — moral awareness precedes moral transformation. The wicked person first recognizes the reality of his transgressions, then changes direction.
- 28.** The verbs are in the *wayyiqtol* (narrative past) form, presenting the turning as a completed action — not hypothetical but realized. The certainty of life follows a definitive turn.
- 29.** The repetition of the accusation from verse 25 — now attributed to 'the house of Israel' collectively rather than 'you' (plural) — shows that the complaint was widespread and persistent. God's response is identical in substance: the unfairness lies with Israel, not with God.
- 29.** The double rhetorical question structure (*haderachai... halo darkeikhem*) forces the audience to confront their own accountability. God does not defend his system at length — he simply redirects the accusation.
- 30.** The imperative *shuvu* ('turn!') is the climactic command of the chapter — after all the theological argumentation, God issues a direct call to action. The Hiphil *vehashivu* ('cause to turn, bring back') intensifies the command: not merely turn, but bring about a thorough reversal.
- 30.** The phrase *lemichshol avon* ('a stumbling block of iniquity') is characteristic of Ezekiel (also 7:19, 14:3-4, 44:12). Iniquity is imagined as a physical obstacle in the path — something that trips you and brings you down. The metaphor blends the priestly concern with purity (stumbling blocks defile) and the prophetic concern with behavior.
- 31.** The verb *hashlikhu* ('throw away, cast off') is violent in its imagery — transgressions are hurled away like something repulsive. The completeness implied by 'all your transgressions' leaves no room for partial repentance.
- 31.** The command 'make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit' (*asu lakhem lev chadash veruach chadashah*) stands in creative tension with God's promise in 11:19 and 36:26 to give the new heart and spirit. Ezekiel does not harmonize — the human and divine aspects of transformation stand side by side.
- 31.** The anguished question *lammah tamutu* ('why should you die?') reveals the pastoral heart behind the theological argument. God is not delivering a detached lecture on moral philosophy — he is pleading with his people to choose life.
- 32.** The phrase *bemot hammet* ('in the death of the one who dies') is more universal than verse 23's 'death of the wicked.' God takes no pleasure in anyone's death — wicked or otherwise. The expansion from the specific (the wicked) to the general (anyone who dies) is theologically significant.
- 32.** The final imperative *vehashivu vichyu* ('turn and live!') is among the most compressed and powerful pleas in prophetic literature. Two words. One command and one promise. The entire theology of repentance distilled to its essence.
- 32.** This verse became central to Jewish liturgy, particularly during the High Holy Days and especially on Yom Kippur, where the call to *teshuvah* (repentance/return) is the dominant theme. Ezekiel 18:32 assures the penitent that God is not reluctant to receive them — he actively desires their return.

19

Summary: *Ezekiel 19 is a qinah — a funeral dirge — for the princes of Israel. The chapter employs two sustained metaphors: first, a lioness (the nation or the royal house) whose cubs (kings) were captured and exiled; second, a vine planted by water that was uprooted and consumed by fire. The first cub is Jehoahaz, taken to Egypt by Pharaoh Neco in 609 BCE (2 Kings 23:31-34). The second cub is likely Jehoiachin, taken to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar in 597 BCE (2 Kings 24:8-16). The vine imagery in the second half shifts from animal to plant but carries the same tragic arc: what was strong and fruitful is now withered, transplanted to the desert, and consumed by its own fire.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The qinah meter — the 3+2 limping rhythm of Hebrew funeral poetry — governs the entire chapter. This is not merely a prophecy spoken about dead princes; it is performed grief, a dirge sung while the patient is still breathing. The literary form itself is the theological argument: Israel's monarchy is already dead, even if individual kings still sit on thrones. The lioness imagery draws from ancient Near Eastern royal iconography, where lions represented kingship. By casting the kings as captured cubs — muzzled, caged, led away on hooks — Ezekiel inverts the royal symbol into a sign of humiliation. The vine imagery in the second half echoes the vine allegory of chapter 17 but with a devastating twist: in chapter 17 the vine was transplanted by foreign powers, but here the fire that consumes it comes from within its own branches (v. 14), pointing to the self-destructive policies of Zedekiah. We rendered this chapter as poetry, preserving the line breaks and parallelism of the Hebrew qinah form.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of the 'cubs' is debated. We follow the majority reading: the first cub (vv. 3-4) is Jehoahaz, deposed and exiled to Egypt by Pharaoh Neco; the second cub (vv. 5-9) is Jehoiachin, exiled to Babylon by Nebuchadnezzar. Some scholars identify the second cub as Zedekiah, but the language of being taken 'in their net' and brought 'to the king of Babylon' fits Jehoiachin's deportation more precisely. The vine section (vv. 10-14) blends feminine singular and masculine plural forms in ways that challenge neat translation — we followed the Hebrew's own shifts. The phrase 'fire went out from a rod of her branches' (v. 14) is ambiguous: it likely refers to Zedekiah's disastrous rebellion against Babylon, which brought about the final destruction, but the Hebrew allows multiple readings.*

Connections: *The lioness and cubs imagery connects to Jacob's blessing of Judah as a lion's whelp (Genesis 49:9), now tragically reversed — the lion's offspring are caged rather than triumphant. The vine imagery parallels Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard), Psalm 80:8-16 (the vine brought from Egypt), and Ezekiel's own vine allegory in chapter 17. The historical references connect to 2 Kings 23:31-34 (Jehoahaz) and 2 Kings 24:8-16 (Jehoiachin). The closing note that 'this is a dirge, and it has become a dirge' (v. 14) is a rare self-referential literary marker — Ezekiel names his own genre.*

¹Now you — raise a dirge for the princes of Israel,
²and say:
 What was your mother? A lioness!
 Among lions she crouched;
 in the midst of young lions
 she raised her cubs.
³She brought up one of her cubs;
 he became a young lion.
 He learned to tear prey —
 he devoured people.
⁴The nations heard about him;
 in their pit he was caught.
 They brought him with hooks

to the land of Egypt.

⁵When she saw that her waiting was in vain,
that her hope was lost,
she took another of her cubs
and made him a young lion.

⁶He prowled among the lions;
he became a young lion.
He learned to tear prey —
he devoured people.

⁷He ravaged their strongholds
and laid waste their cities.
The land and everything in it was appalled
at the sound of his roaring.

⁸Then the nations from the surrounding provinces
set upon him.
They spread their net over him;
in their pit he was caught.

⁹They put him in a cage with hooks
and brought him to the king of Babylon.
They brought him into a fortress,
so that his voice would no longer be heard
on the mountains of Israel.

¹⁰Your mother was like a vine in your vineyard,
planted by the waters.
She was fruitful and full of branches
because of abundant waters.

¹¹She had strong branches, fit for rulers' scepters.
Her stature towered high
among the thick foliage,
and she was visible in her height
with her abundant tendrils.

¹²But she was torn up in wrath,
flung to the ground.
The east wind dried up her fruit;
her strong branches were stripped off and withered.
Fire consumed them.

¹³Now she is planted in the wilderness,
in a dry and parched land.

¹⁴Fire has gone out from her own branch
and consumed her fruit.
No strong branch remains in her,
no scepter fit to rule.

This is a dirge — and it has become a dirge.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word qinah ('dirge, funeral lament') specifies the literary genre of what follows. A qinah is not merely sad speech but a formal poetic form with its own meter (the 3+2 'limping' rhythm characteristic of Hebrew laments). The plural 'princes' (nesi'eî) encompasses the multiple kings addressed in the chapter. The Hebrew nasi ('prince, leader') is Ezekiel's preferred term for Israel's rulers — he avoids the word melek ('king') for Judah's rulers, reserving it for foreign monarchs and for the future Davidic ruler.
2. The lioness (leviya) represents the Judean royal house — or more specifically, the nation that produced kings. The verb ravatz ('crouched, lay down') is used of predatory animals at rest, suggesting power in repose. The word kephirim ('young lions') refers to adolescent male lions, old enough to hunt — the royal court or competing powers among whom the monarchy existed.
3. The first cub is almost certainly Jehoahaz (also called Shallum), who reigned only three months in 609 BCE before Pharaoh Neco deposed him and took him to Egypt (2 Kings 23:31-34). The verb taraph ('tear, rend') is characteristic of predatory animals and conveys violent rulership. 'He devoured people' (adam akhal) may refer to oppressive governance.
4. The chachim ('hooks') are the nose-hooks or cheek-hooks used to lead captive animals and prisoners in ancient Near Eastern practice. Assyrian and Egyptian reliefs depict conquered kings led by hooks through the nose or lip. The reference to Egypt confirms the identification with Jehoahaz, whom Pharaoh Neco deported to Egypt in 609 BCE, where he died (2 Kings 23:34).
5. The lioness waited (nochalah) for the first cub's return, but her hope (tiqvah) perished. Tiqvah means both 'hope' and 'cord, thread' — the lifeline to the future was severed. The second cub is most likely Jehoiachin (also called Jeconiah), who reigned three months in 598-597 BCE before Nebuchadnezzar deported him to Babylon. Some scholars identify this cub with Zedekiah, but the deportation language in verses 8-9 fits Jehoiachin's exile more precisely.
6. The verb yithalekh ('walked about, prowled') in the hitpael form conveys habitual, self-directed movement — this cub actively chose the predatory life. The repetition of 'learned to tear prey, devoured people' from verse 3 creates deliberate parallelism between the two cubs, suggesting the same pattern of violent rulership repeated in the next generation.
7. The Hebrew of this verse is notoriously difficult. The word almanotav is traditionally read as 'his widows' (from almanah) or emended to 'his palaces/strongholds' (from armon). We follow the emended reading 'strongholds' as it fits the parallelism with 'cities' more naturally. The verb yeda can mean 'knew' but in context likely carries the sense of 'came to know through violence' — hence 'ravaged.' The verb tesham ('was desolate, appalled') conveys both physical devastation and the horror of witnesses.
8. The phrase medinot saviv ('surrounding provinces') reflects the multi-national coalition that Nebuchadnezzar assembled against Judah, including Chaldeans, Arameans, Moabites, and Ammonites (2 Kings 24:2). The hunting imagery — net (rishtam) and pit (shachtam) — continues the lion metaphor: the young lion is trapped by professional hunters representing the nations.
9. The sugar ('cage') is a transport cage for captured lions — the metaphor and the reality converge, as Jehoiachin was literally transported as a captive to Babylon. The phrase 'so that his voice would no longer be heard on the mountains of Israel' carries double meaning: the lion's roar silenced, and the king's authority ended. The mountains of Israel are Ezekiel's signature geographic term for the land, emphasizing its hilly terrain as covenant territory.
10. The metaphor shifts abruptly from lion to vine, introducing the second half of the dirge. The phrase bedamkha is obscure — it could mean 'in your blood' (bedam + ka), 'in your likeness' (from damah), or 'in your vineyard' (an emendation to bekarmekha). We follow the emendation 'in your vineyard' as it best fits the vine context. The vine planted by waters echoes Psalm 1:3 and Jeremiah 17:8 — prosperity grounded in access to life-giving water.
11. The mattot oz ('strong branches') serve as shivtei moshlim ('scepters of rulers') — a brilliant double image where the vine's branches are simultaneously royal scepters, merging plant metaphor and political reality. The vine's height and visibility represent the monarchy's prominence and international stature. The word daliyyot ('tendrils, hanging branches') describes the luxuriant growth of a well-watered vine.
12. The sudden violence of the verbs — nuttash ('torn up'), hushlakhah ('flung down') — shatters the idyllic vine scene. The east wind (ruach ha-qadim) is both literal (the hot sirocco from the Arabian desert that desiccates vegetation) and metaphorical (Babylon lay to the east of Israel, and its armies came as a destroying wind). The fire that consumes the strong branches — the same branches that were scepters in verse 11 — signals the destruction of the monarchy itself.
13. The vine that was 'planted by the waters' (v. 10) is now in the midbar ('wilderness, desert') — the reversal is total. The phrase eretz tziyyah ve-tzama ('a dry and parched land') describes Babylon from the exiles' perspective, though Babylon itself was irrigated. The theological point is that exile from

the covenant land is spiritual desert regardless of physical geography.

14. The phrase *vattetzei esh mimatteh baddeiha* ('fire went out from a rod of her branches') is the theological climax: the destruction is self-inflicted. The fire comes from within the vine, not from an external enemy. This points to Zedekiah's rebellion against Babylon (2 Kings 24:20), which triggered the final siege and destruction of Jerusalem. The closing formula *qinah hi vattehi leqinah* ('this is a dirge, and it has become a dirge') is unique in prophetic literature — the prophet names his genre and then declares that the literary form has been overtaken by historical reality. The dirge composed for anticipated mourning has become actual mourning.

20

Summary: *Ezekiel 20 is a devastating retrospective of Israel's history told as a cycle of rebellion and divine restraint. Elders of Israel come to Ezekiel to inquire of the LORD, and God refuses to be consulted by them. Instead, God rehearses Israel's entire history — from Egypt to the wilderness to the promised land — and at every stage the same pattern repeats: God acts graciously, Israel rebels, God considers destroying them but relents 'for my name's sake' so that the nations do not conclude he is powerless. The Sabbath is highlighted as the covenant sign that Israel persistently violated. The chapter divides into five historical movements: election in Egypt (vv. 5-9), the first wilderness generation (vv. 10-17), the second wilderness generation (vv. 18-26), settlement in the land (vv. 27-29), and the present generation of exiles (vv. 30-31). The chapter then pivots to restoration: God will bring Israel out again in a second exodus, purge the rebels, and establish his people on his holy mountain (vv. 33-44). The final oracle (vv. 45-49) turns south against the forests of the Negev — a judgment by fire.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is Ezekiel's version of the historical psalms (Psalms 78, 105, 106) and Stephen's speech in Acts 7, but far more severe. Where the psalms balance rebellion with mercy, Ezekiel presents an unbroken record of failure from the very beginning — Israel was already idolatrous in Egypt (v. 8), before the exodus even occurred. The phrase 'for my name's sake' (*lema'an shemi*) appears five times in the chapter, revealing that God's faithfulness to Israel is grounded not in Israel's merit but in God's concern for his own reputation among the nations. The Sabbath receives extraordinary emphasis as the sign (*ot*) of the covenant — its violation is treated as the definitive evidence of rebellion. The enigmatic verse 25 ('I also gave them statutes that were not good and judgments by which they could not live') has generated centuries of interpretive debate. The future exodus (vv. 33-38) reframes Israel's hope: restoration will come, but it will come through judgment — God will purge the rebels in the wilderness before allowing entry to the land. The chapter presents the most unflinching assessment of Israel's covenant history in the entire Hebrew Bible.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 25 is the most controversial verse in the chapter: 'I also gave them statutes that were not good and judgments by which they could not live.' Does God claim to have given bad laws? Most interpreters understand this as either (1) God permitted them to follow destructive practices as judicial punishment, or (2) God gave laws (such as the demand for firstborn, v. 26) that, taken in isolation and misunderstood, led to horrific practices like child sacrifice. We documented both readings without harmonizing. The refusal to be consulted (vv. 1-3, 31) creates a dramatic frame — the elders came seeking a word from God and received a devastating indictment instead. The phrase 'passing through the fire' (v. 26, 31) refers to child sacrifice, which must be rendered without euphemism. The forest fire oracle (vv. 45-49) is attributed to chapter 21 in the Hebrew versification (21:1-5 in the MT) — we follow the English chapter division but note the discrepancy.*

Connections: *The 'for my name's sake' motif connects forward to 36:22-32, where God explicitly states that the restoration is for his name's sake, not Israel's. The Sabbath emphasis connects to 22:8, 22:26, 23:38, and the new Temple ordinances of 44:24, 46:1-3. The 'second exodus' theme parallels Isaiah 43:16-21 and Jeremiah 23:7-8. The rebellious history parallels Psalm 78 and Psalm 106, though Ezekiel is harsher — even Egypt was not innocent. The child sacrifice references connect to 16:20-21 and 23:37-39. The 'holy mountain' (*har qodshi*) of verse 40 anticipates the Temple mountain of chapters 40-48. The complaint 'he is just speaking in parables' (v. 49) echoes 17:2 and anticipates 24:3.*

¹In the seventh year, in the fifth month, on the tenth of the month, some of the elders of Israel came to inquire of the LORD and sat before me. ²The word of the LORD came to me: ³"Son of man, speak to the elders of Israel and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — Have you come to inquire of me? As I live, declares the Lord GOD, I will not let you inquire of me. ⁴Will you judge them? Will you judge them, son of man? Make known to them the abominations of their fathers! ⁵Say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — On the day I chose Israel, I raised my hand in oath to the descendants of the house of Jacob and made myself known to them in the land of Egypt. I raised my hand to them and said, 'I am the LORD your God.' ⁶On that day I raised my hand to them, swearing to bring them out of the land of Egypt into a land I had searched out for them — a land flowing with milk and honey, the most splendid of all lands. ⁷I said to them, 'Each of you — throw away the detestable things your eyes cling to, and do not defile yourselves with the idols of Egypt. I am the LORD your God.' ⁸But they rebelled against me and refused to listen to me. Not one of them threw away the detestable things their eyes clung to, and they did not abandon the idols of Egypt. So I resolved to pour out my wrath on them, to spend my anger against them in the land of Egypt. ⁹But I acted for the sake of my name, so that it would not be profaned in the sight of the nations among whom they lived, in whose sight I had made myself known to them by bringing them out of the land of Egypt. ¹⁰So I brought them out of the land of Egypt and led them into the wilderness. ¹¹I gave them my statutes and made known to them my judgments — which, if a person carries them out, he will live by them. ¹²I also gave them my Sabbaths as a sign between me and them, so they would know that I am the LORD who sets them apart as holy. ¹³But the house of Israel rebelled against me in the wilderness. They did not walk in my statutes, and they rejected my judgments — which, if a person carries them out, he will live by them — and they profaned my Sabbaths severely. So I resolved to pour out my wrath on them in the wilderness, to destroy them completely. ¹⁴But I acted for the sake of my name, so that it would not be profaned in the sight of the nations before whom I had brought them out. ¹⁵Yet I also raised my hand against them in the wilderness, swearing that I would not bring them into the land I had given — a land flowing with milk and honey, the most splendid of all lands — ¹⁶because they rejected my judgments, did not walk in my statutes, and profaned my Sabbaths — for their heart pursued their idols. ¹⁷But my eye looked on them with compassion, and I did not destroy them. I did not make a complete end of them in the wilderness. ¹⁸I said to their children in the wilderness: Do not walk in the statutes of your fathers, do not keep their judgments, and do not defile yourselves with their idols. ¹⁹I am the LORD your God. Walk in my statutes, keep my judgments, and carry them out. ²⁰Keep my Sabbaths holy, and they will be a sign between me and you, so that you may know that I am the LORD your God. ²¹But the children also rebelled against me. They did not walk in my statutes or keep my judgments so as to carry them out — which, if a person does them, he will live by them — and they profaned my Sabbaths. So I resolved to pour out my wrath on them, to spend my anger against them in the wilderness. ²²But I withdrew my hand and acted for the sake of my name, so that it would not be profaned in the sight of the nations before whom I had brought them out. ²³I also raised my hand against them in the wilderness, swearing to scatter them among the nations and disperse them through the lands, ²⁴because they did not carry out my judgments, rejected my statutes, profaned my Sabbaths, and their eyes followed their fathers' idols. ²⁵I also gave them statutes that were not good and judgments by which they could not live, ²⁶and I let them defile themselves through their offerings when they passed every firstborn through the fire — so that I might devastate them, so that they would know that I am the LORD. ²⁷Therefore, son of man, speak to the house of Israel and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — In this also your fathers blasphemed me by acting treacherously against me. ²⁸When I brought them into the land that I had raised my hand to give them, they looked at every high hill and every leafy tree and slaughtered their sacrifices there, presented their offensive offerings there, set out their pleasing aromas there, and poured out their drink offerings there. ²⁹I said to them, 'What is this high place you keep going to?' (And it is called 'Bamah' to this day.) ³⁰Therefore, say to the house of Israel: This is what the Lord GOD says — Are you defiling yourselves in the way of your fathers? Are you prostituting yourselves after their detestable idols? ³¹When you present your gifts and pass your children through the fire, you defile yourselves with all your idols to this very day. And should I let you inquire of me, house of Israel? As I live, declares the Lord GOD, I will not be inquired of by you! ³²What comes to your mind will never happen — what you say: 'Let us be like the nations, like the peoples of other lands, worshipping wood and stone.' ³³As I live, declares the Lord GOD, with a mighty hand, with an outstretched arm, and with poured-out wrath, I will reign over you! ³⁴I will bring

you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands where you have been scattered, with a mighty hand, with an outstretched arm, and with poured-out wrath. ³⁵I will bring you into the wilderness of the peoples, and there I will enter into judgment with you face to face. ³⁶Just as I entered into judgment with your fathers in the wilderness of the land of Egypt, so I will enter into judgment with you, declares the Lord GOD. ³⁷I will make you pass under the rod and bring you into the bond of the covenant. ³⁸I will purge the rebels and those who transgress against me from among you. I will bring them out of the land where they reside, but they will not enter the soil of Israel. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ³⁹As for you, house of Israel — this is what the Lord GOD says — Go, each of you serve your idols! But afterward, you will surely listen to me, and you will no longer profane my holy name with your gifts and your idols. ⁴⁰For on my holy mountain, on the high mountain of Israel, declares the Lord GOD, there the whole house of Israel — all of them — will serve me in the land. There I will accept them, and there I will require your contributions and the choicest of your offerings, along with all your holy gifts. ⁴¹As a pleasing aroma I will accept you, when I bring you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands where you have been scattered. And I will show myself holy through you in the sight of the nations. ⁴²Then you will know that I am the LORD, when I bring you to the soil of Israel — to the land for which I raised my hand, swearing to give it to your fathers. ⁴³There you will remember your ways and all your deeds by which you defiled yourselves, and you will loathe yourselves for all the evil things you have done. ⁴⁴Then you will know that I am the LORD, when I deal with you for the sake of my name — not according to your wicked ways or your corrupt deeds, house of Israel, declares the Lord GOD." ⁴⁵The word of the LORD came to me: ⁴⁶"Son of man, set your face toward the south and preach toward the south. Prophecy against the forest of the southland. ⁴⁷Say to the forest of the Negev: Hear the word of the LORD! This is what the Lord GOD says — I am about to kindle a fire in you, and it will consume every green tree and every dry tree in you. The blazing flame will not be quenched, and every face from south to north will be scorched by it. ⁴⁸All flesh will see that I, the LORD, have ignited it. It will not be quenched." ⁴⁹Then I said, "Alas, Lord GOD! They are saying about me, 'He is just speaking in parables!'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date is August 591 BCE, approximately three years into Ezekiel's prophetic ministry. The seventh year is counted from Jehoiachin's exile (597 BCE). The elders come *lidrosh et YHWH* ('to seek/inquire of the LORD'), a technical term for consulting a prophet for a divine oracle. They expect an answer — they will not receive one.
1. The phrase *vayyeshvu lefanai* ('and they sat before me') establishes the physical scene: the elders are seated in Ezekiel's presence, waiting for an oracle. The verb *yashav* ('to sit') suggests formal, expectant posture — they have come deliberately.
2. The standard prophetic reception formula. What follows is not the oracle the elders sought but an indictment of their right to seek one.
3. The rhetorical question *halidrosh oti attem ba'im* ('have you come to inquire of me?') is loaded with indignation. God sees through the pious act — these elders come to consult him while their hearts are still committed to the idolatry the chapter will detail.
3. The oath formula *chai ani* ('as I live') combined with the oath negation *im iddaresh lakhem* ('I will certainly not be consulted by you') is absolute refusal. God swears by his own life that he will not respond to their inquiry. The Niphal *iddaresh* ('be consulted, be sought') emphasizes that God will not make himself available to them.
3. This same refusal pattern appeared in 14:1-3 — the elders come, and God refuses to be consulted because of their idolatry. The repetition suggests a persistent pattern of superficial piety.
4. The doubled question *hatishpot otam hatishpot* ('will you judge them, will you judge them?') expresses urgency and possibly exasperation — God is pressing Ezekiel to confront the elders. The doubling may also carry a nuance of 'dare you judge?' or 'are you willing to pronounce judgment?'
4. The command *hodiem* ('make known to them') initiates the long historical retrospective that follows. The 'abominations of their fathers' (*to'avot avotam*) sets the frame: what follows is not ancient history but a living indictment, because the present generation is repeating those same abominations.
5. The phrase *va'essa yadi* ('I raised my hand') is the gesture of oath-swearing — God is describing a covenantal commitment made with a physical sign. The expression appears six times in this chapter (vv. 5, 6, 15, 23, 28, 42), structuring the entire historical narrative as a series of divine oath-moments.
5. The verb *bachori* ('I chose') is the language of divine election — God selected Israel as his covenant partner. The choice was made 'in the land of Egypt,' which places God's commitment before the exodus itself. Israel's story begins not with their action (leaving Egypt) but with God's action (choosing them).

5. The self-revelation formula *ani YHWH eloheikhem* ('I am the LORD your God') echoes the preamble to the Decalogue (Exodus 20:2). God's identity is established as the foundation of the covenant relationship.
6. The verb *tarti* ('I searched out, I spied') implies that God personally scouted the land — he surveyed all possibilities and selected the best for Israel. The image is of a deliberate, caring provider choosing the finest inheritance for his people.
6. The phrase *zavat chalav udevash* ('flowing with milk and honey') is the traditional description of the promised land's fertility. 'Milk and honey' represent pastoral and agricultural abundance — the land produces both livestock wealth and wild sweetness.
6. The phrase *tzevi hi lekhol ha'aratzot* ('the most splendid of all lands') uses *tzevi*, meaning 'beauty, splendor, glory.' The promised land is described as the jewel among all territories — God gave Israel the finest land on earth, making their subsequent rebellion all the more egregious.
7. The phrase *shiqqutzei einav* ('the detestable things of his eyes') describes objects of fascinated devotion — things the eyes are drawn to and cannot look away from. The idols are visually captivating, and God demands that Israel break the visual fixation.
7. The fact that Israel needed to be told to abandon Egyptian idols while still in Egypt reveals that they had adopted Egyptian religious practices during their sojourn. This is a harsher starting point than the traditional exodus narrative — Israel was already compromised before the exodus began.
7. The verb *al tittammu* ('do not defile yourselves') is priestly vocabulary — the concern is not merely behavioral but purity-based. Contact with idols contaminates the covenant community.
8. The verb *vayyamru* ('they rebelled') sets the tone for the entire chapter — Israel's relationship with God begins in rebellion, not in faithful response. This is more severe than the accounts in Exodus, which place the first major rebellion at the golden calf (Exodus 32). Ezekiel pushes the rebellion back to the Egyptian period itself.
8. The phrase *va'omar* ('and I said/resolved') introduces God's intention to destroy Israel — an intention that is then restrained. This pattern of intended destruction followed by restraint for the sake of God's name will repeat throughout the chapter (vv. 8-9, 13-14, 21-22).
8. The phrase *lekhallot appi bahem* ('to spend/complete my anger against them') describes anger that would run its full course — total, exhaustive judgment.
9. The phrase *lema'an shemi* ('for the sake of my name') appears here for the first time in the chapter and will recur in verses 14, 22, and 44. God's motivation for sparing Israel is not Israel's worthiness but God's own reputation among the nations. If God destroyed Israel after publicly committing to them, the nations would conclude that he was unable to fulfill his promises.
9. The verb *hechel* ('to profane, to desecrate') describes the opposite of sanctification. God's name — his reputation, his revealed character — would be 'profaned' (treated as common, powerless, meaningless) if he abandoned the people he had publicly claimed.
9. This theological logic — God acts for his own name's sake — is not selfish in the human sense but expresses God's commitment to his own integrity and to the truthfulness of his word. His name is his character, and his character demands that his promises hold.
10. The transition is abrupt — God moves directly from Egypt to the wilderness with no mention of the Red Sea crossing, the Song of Moses, or the theophany at Sinai. Ezekiel's retelling strips away all the positive moments and focuses exclusively on rebellion and divine restraint. This is not a balanced history but a prosecutorial brief.
11. The phrase *asher ya'aseh otam ha'adam vachai bahem* ('which, if a person does them, he will live by them') is quoted by Paul in Romans 10:5 and Galatians 3:12 as representative of the 'law principle.' In its original context, it states that God's statutes are life-giving — obedience leads to flourishing, not merely survival.
11. The word *ha'adam* ('the person, the human being') is generic — the principle applies to any human being, not exclusively to Israel. God's statutes are presented as the path to life for humanity.
12. The phrase *le'ot beini uveineihem* ('as a sign between me and them') uses the covenant sign language from Exodus 31:13-17, where the Sabbath is called an *ot olam* ('eternal sign'). Ezekiel emphasizes the Sabbath above all other commandments because it is the visible, weekly enactment of covenant loyalty.
12. The Piel participle *meqaddesh* ('who sanctifies, who sets apart') describes ongoing divine action — God continually sets Israel apart through the Sabbath observance. The sanctification is not a one-time event but a repeated, weekly renewal of identity.
13. The verb *ma'asu* ('they rejected, they despised') is stronger than mere disobedience — it implies contemptuous dismissal. Israel did not merely fail to keep the judgments; they treated them as worthless.
13. The phrase *shabbetotai chillelu me'od* ('they profaned my Sabbaths severely') singles out Sabbath violation as the climactic offense. The adverb *me'od* ('very, severely, exceedingly') intensifies the profanation — this was not occasional negligence but systematic desecration.
13. The pattern repeats from verse 8: rebellion followed by God's intention to destroy, which will be followed (in v. 14) by restraint for his name's sake. The repetition is deliberate — it presents Israel's history as a monotonous cycle of failure and grace.
14. The second occurrence of the 'for my name's sake' refrain (cf. v. 9). The logic is identical: God restrains his wrath because the nations watched the exodus, and destroying Israel afterward would discredit his power and faithfulness. The nations are witnesses — and God will not allow his reputation to be destroyed before those witnesses.

15. The phrase *nasa'ti yadi* ('I raised my hand') now signals an oath of judgment rather than an oath of promise (contrast v. 5-6). The same gesture that promised the land now threatens its denial. God swears to exclude the rebellious generation from the promised land — fulfilling Numbers 14:21-23, where the spies generation was condemned to die in the wilderness.
15. The repetition of the land description (*zavat chalav udevash, tzevi hi lekhol ha'aratzot*) from verse 6 heightens the tragedy — the land they were denied was the finest on earth.
16. The diagnostic statement *ki acharei gilluleihem libbam holekh* ('for their heart pursued their idols') identifies the root cause beneath all the behavioral failures. The problem is not merely external disobedience but internal allegiance — the heart (*lev*), the seat of will and desire, is oriented toward the *gillulim* ('dung-idols'). This echoes the 'heart of stone' diagnosis in 11:19.
16. The verb *holekh* ('goes, walks') creates a wordplay: they did not 'walk' (*halakhu*) in God's statutes, because their heart 'walked' (*holekh*) after idols. The heart was already in motion — toward the wrong destination.
17. The phrase *vatachas eini* ('my eye spared, my eye had compassion') personalizes God's mercy — it is not merely a policy decision but an act of looking at the people with pity. The verb *chus* ('to spare, to have compassion') implies emotional investment: God felt for them even as he judged them.
17. The phrase *lo asiti otam kalah* ('I did not make a complete end of them') sets a limit on judgment. God punished but did not annihilate — the generation died in the wilderness (Numbers 14), but the children survived.
18. God addresses the second wilderness generation directly. The phrase *bechuqqei avoteikhem* ('in the statutes of your fathers') distinguishes the fathers' corrupted practices from God's own statutes. The fathers had developed their own 'statutes' — customs and traditions of idolatry — that the children are commanded to reject.
18. The triple prohibition (do not walk, do not keep, do not defile) mirrors the triple failure of the first generation. God gives the second generation an explicit chance to break the cycle.
19. The self-identification formula *ani YHWH eloheikhem* ('I am the LORD your God') reasserts God's authority and covenant claim before issuing the commands. The logic is: because I am who I am, obey. Identity grounds obligation.
19. The three imperatives (walk, keep, carry out) present a comprehensive demand: internalize (walk), maintain (keep), and perform (carry out). Obedience is not passive but active at every level.
20. The command *qaddeshu* ('sanctify, keep holy') is a Piel imperative — actively consecrate the Sabbaths, set them apart from ordinary time. The repetition of the Sabbath-as-sign language from verse 12 emphasizes that the second generation received the identical covenant marker and the identical opportunity.
20. The recognition formula *lada'at ki ani YHWH eloheikhem* ('so that you may know that I am the LORD your God') makes the Sabbath epistemological — it is a means of knowing God, not merely obeying a rule.
21. The third cycle of the rebellion pattern: God commands, the people rebel, God resolves to destroy, and then restrains himself. The second generation repeats the first generation's failure exactly — the same verbs, the same offenses, the same divine response. The monotony is theological: Israel's sin is not a single catastrophic event but a relentless pattern.
21. The phrase *vayyamru vi habanim* ('the children also rebelled against me') is devastating in context — these are the children who were supposed to be different, the generation that received explicit warning against repeating their parents' mistakes (v. 18).
22. The phrase *vahashivoti et yadi* ('I turned back my hand, I withdrew my hand') is a powerful image — God's hand was raised to strike, and he pulled it back. The gesture combines the oath-swearing posture (raised hand) with the image of a blow about to fall.
22. Third occurrence of the 'for my name's sake' refrain. The repetition builds a theological argument: at every stage of Israel's history, what saved them was not their own merit but God's commitment to his own reputation and integrity.
23. The oath of exile — God swore in the wilderness to scatter the future generations among the nations. This retrojects the exile to the wilderness period, presenting it not as a late historical accident but as a consequence that was already determined by the rebellion pattern. The verbs *lehafitz* ('to scatter') and *lizrot* ('to disperse') describe total dissolution of national unity — Israel would be broken apart and spread among foreign peoples.
23. This verse places the theological origin of the exile not at 586 BCE but in the wilderness generation's rebellion. The Babylonian exile is the long-delayed execution of a sentence pronounced centuries earlier.
24. The indictment of the second generation mirrors the first generation's (v. 16) almost verbatim, reinforcing the pattern of intergenerational failure. The phrase *ve'acharei gillulei avotam hayu eineihem* ('their eyes followed their fathers' idols') echoes verse 16's 'their heart pursued their idols' — the organs change (eyes instead of heart) but the direction remains the same: toward the *gillulim*.
24. The irony is sharp: these children were told not to follow their fathers' statutes (v. 18), but they follow their fathers' idols. They obeyed neither God's command nor their own better judgment.
25. This is the most theologically difficult verse in the chapter and one of the most debated in the entire book. Does God claim to have given Israel bad laws? Several interpretations exist: (1) God permitted Israel to follow pagan customs as judicial abandonment — 'gave' in the sense of 'handed them over to.' This parallels Romans 1:24-26, where God 'gave them over' to their desires. (2) God gave laws that, when misunderstood or taken in isolation, could lead to destructive practices — specifically the laws about the firstborn (v. 26), which some Israelites perverted into child sacrifice.

- (3) The 'statutes not good' are the harsh consequences (exile, scattering) that function as negative statutes imposed on a rebellious people. We render the Hebrew directly and document the interpretive options without resolving the tension.
- 25.** The phrase *chuqqim lo tovim* ('statutes not good') is deliberately shocking after verses 11 and 13, where God's statutes are described as life-giving. The contrast is intentional — it forces the reader to grapple with the text.
- 26.** The phrase *beha'avir kol peter racham* ('when they passed every firstborn through [the fire]') refers to child sacrifice. The verb *he'evir* ('to cause to pass through') is the technical term for the ritual of passing children through fire (cf. 2 Kings 16:3, 23:10; Jeremiah 32:35). Ezekiel presents this as a perversion of the law of the firstborn (Exodus 13:2, 13:12) — God demanded the consecration of the firstborn, and Israel twisted this into literal immolation.
- 26.** The verb *va'atamme* ('I defiled/let them defile') can be read as permissive ('I permitted their defilement') rather than causative ('I caused their defilement'). The Piel form allows both readings. The context supports the permissive reading: God withdrew his protective restraint, allowing Israel's perverse interpretation of the firstborn law to run its horrific course.
- 26.** The purpose clause *lema'an ashimmem* ('so that I might devastate them') is devastating — the horror of child sacrifice would serve as its own punishment, destroying the community that practiced it. Yet even this leads to the recognition formula: 'so that they would know that I am the LORD.'
- 27.** The verb *giddefu* ('they blasphemed') is among the strongest language in the Hebrew Bible — it implies deliberate, conscious insult to God. Combined with *ma'al* ('treachery, unfaithfulness'), the accusation is of willful, knowing covenant betrayal.
- 27.** The historical narrative now moves to the settlement period — the fathers entered the land and continued the pattern of rebellion there.
- 28.** The phrase *kol giv'ah ramah vekhol etz avot* ('every high hill and every leafy tree') is the standard description of Canaanite worship sites — hilltop shrines under sacred trees. The word *kol* ('every') emphasizes the totality of the corruption: not one high place but all of them.
- 28.** The term *ka'as qorbanam* ('the provocation of their offerings') uses *ka'as* ('provocation, anger, vexation') — their offerings did not please God but provoked him. The language of *reiaḥ niḥoḥeihem* ('their pleasing aromas') is bitterly ironic: what should have been a soothing aroma directed to God was instead offered to idols.
- 28.** The fourfold repetition of *sham* ('there') hammers the location: there, at every high place, they defiled the covenant. The repetition has an accusatory rhythm.
- 29.** God's question *mah habamah* ('what is this bamah/high place?') contains a wordplay that is difficult to capture in English. The word *bamah* means 'high place' (a cultic installation), but the question *mah habamah* ('what is the high place?') may also be heard as a contemptuous pun — 'what is this coming-there?' (breaking the word into *ba + mah*, 'coming' + 'what'). The name 'Bamah' stuck, preserving the contemptuous question as the site's permanent name.
- 29.** The phrase *ad hayyom hazzeh* ('to this day') is an etiological formula — it explains why the name persists. The site's name enshrines God's contempt for the idolatrous practice.
- 30.** The historical retrospective now arrives at the present generation — the elders sitting before Ezekiel. The question is rhetorical and accusatory: 'you are doing the same thing.' The transition from past to present is the point of the entire history lesson.
- 30.** The verb *zonim* ('prostituting yourselves') applies the sexual-infidelity metaphor that dominates Ezekiel 16 and 23. Idolatry is covenant adultery — spiritual prostitution.
- 31.** The phrase *beha'avir beneikhem ba'esh* ('when you pass your children through the fire') accuses the present generation of ongoing child sacrifice. This is not merely a historical review — the exiles in Babylon are charged with continuing (or having recently continued) this practice.
- 31.** The refusal formula from verse 3 returns with full force: *chai ani... im iddaresh lakhem* ('as I live... I will certainly not be consulted by you'). The entire historical review (vv. 5-30) now serves as the justification for this refusal — God will not respond to inquirers who are themselves practitioners of abomination.
- 31.** The phrase *ad hayyom* ('to this very day') is the devastating temporal marker — the corruption is not past but present.
- 32.** God exposes the secret aspiration of the exiles: they want to assimilate — to abandon their distinctive identity and become like the surrounding nations, worshipping their material gods of 'wood and stone.' The phrase *etz va'aven* ('wood and stone') reduces pagan worship to its material absurdity: you want to worship carved objects.
- 32.** The declaration *hayo lo tiyeh* ('it will absolutely not happen') uses the infinitive absolute for emphatic denial. God vetoes their plan of assimilation with maximum force. Israel will not be allowed to disappear into the nations — they are bound to their covenant identity whether they want it or not.
- 33.** The oath formula *chai ani* introduces the second exodus passage (vv. 33-38). The language *beyad chazaqah uvizro'a netuyah* ('with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm') deliberately echoes the exodus from Egypt (Deuteronomy 4:34, 5:15, 26:8), but with a terrifying addition: *uvechamah shefukhah* ('and with poured-out wrath'). The first exodus was liberation; this second exodus will include judgment.
- 33.** The verb *emlokh* ('I will reign, I will rule as king') asserts God's kingship over Israel. They wanted to be like the nations (v. 32), but God declares that he will be their king regardless of their desires. Israel's covenant obligation is not optional.

34. The gathering language (vehotze'ti, veqibbatzi) echoes 11:17 and anticipates 36:24 — the promise of return from exile. But unlike those passages, this gathering is accompanied by wrath. The second exodus is not a comfortable rescue but a forceful act of divine sovereignty that includes purging (v. 38).
35. The phrase midbar ha'ammim ('the wilderness of the peoples') is unique — it parallels the original wilderness between Egypt and Canaan but now it is the wilderness 'of the peoples,' a new wilderness experience among the nations. The second exodus mirrors the first, complete with a wilderness stage.
35. The phrase panim el panim ('face to face') echoes Moses's relationship with God (Exodus 33:11, Deuteronomy 34:10), but here it describes confrontational judgment, not intimate communion. God will confront Israel directly, without intermediary, in the wilderness of exile.
36. The parallel is explicit: the wilderness judgment of the first generation (Numbers 14) becomes the pattern for the second exodus. God judged the fathers in the original wilderness, and he will judge this generation in a new wilderness. The verb nishpateti ('I entered into judgment') carries a legal sense — this is a judicial process, not arbitrary destruction.
37. The phrase veba'avaroti etkhem tachat hashavet ('I will make you pass under the rod') alludes to the tithing practice of Leviticus 27:32, where every tenth animal passing under the rod was consecrated to the LORD. The image combines inspection, selection, and consecration — God will examine each person and set apart those who belong to him.
37. The word masoret ('bond, obligation') from the root y-s-r ('to bind, to discipline') presents the covenant as both privilege and constraint. The 'bond of the covenant' (masoret habberit) is not a chain of oppression but a binding commitment — Israel will be bound to their covenant identity because God will bind them.
38. The verb uvaroti ('I will purge') is from the root b-r-r ('to purify, to sift, to select'). The second exodus will include a sifting process — the rebels will be removed, and only the faithful will enter the land. This mirrors Numbers 14, where the rebellious generation died in the wilderness and only Joshua and Caleb entered.
38. The distinction between 'bringing them out' and 'they will not enter' is crucial: God will extract the rebels from exile (they will not remain comfortably among the nations), but they will not be allowed to reach the promised land. They will be purged in the wilderness between exile and restoration.
39. The command lekhu ivdu ('go, serve!') is heavily debated. It may be (1) bitter sarcasm — 'Fine, go serve your idols if that is what you want!' — or (2) a conditional statement — 'Go serve your idols [now], but afterward [in the restoration] you will listen to me.' The Hebrew syntax supports the second reading: the ve'achar ('and afterward') clause introduces the future turning point.
39. The phrase et shem qodshi lo techalelu od ('you will no longer profane my holy name') is a promise about the post-purging future, not a present command. After the wilderness judgment and the purging of rebels, the restored community will not continue the profanation.
40. The phrase behar qodshi ('on my holy mountain') points forward to the Temple mount of chapters 40-48. The 'high mountain of Israel' (har merom Yisra'el) is the Temple mount, the center of restored worship.
40. The verb ertzem ('I will accept them') uses the root r-tz-h, meaning 'to be pleased with, to accept favorably.' The same root that describes divine rejection in sacrificial contexts now describes divine acceptance — the restored community's worship will please God.
40. The phrase kol beit Yisra'el kulloh ('the whole house of Israel, all of them') emphasizes totality — the restored community will be complete, not partial. This anticipates the reunification of Judah and Israel (37:15-28).
41. The phrase bereiach nichoach ertzeh etkhem ('as a pleasing aroma I will accept you') uses sacrificial language — the restored people themselves become the acceptable offering, a 'pleasing aroma' to God. This is priestly theology applied to the entire community: Israel itself is the offering.
41. The phrase veniqdashti bakhem le'einei haggoyim ('I will be sanctified/shown holy through you in the sight of the nations') reverses the profanation motif of the chapter. Where Israel had profaned God's name among the nations, God will now sanctify his name through restored Israel. The nations who witnessed the profanation will witness the restoration.
42. The recognition formula vida'tem ki ani YHWH returns, now linked to restoration rather than judgment. Throughout the chapter, 'you will know that I am the LORD' has accompanied acts of judgment; here for the first time it accompanies an act of grace. Knowledge of God comes through both judgment and mercy.
42. The oath language nassa'ti et yadi ('I raised my hand') echoes verses 5-6, completing the circle: what God swore in Egypt, he will fulfill despite everything that has intervened. The oath stands.
43. The verb uzekharten ('you will remember') introduces the post-restoration experience of self-awareness. In the land, the restored community will look back on their history with horror and self-loathing. Memory becomes a means of ongoing repentance.
43. The reflexive verb uneqototem bifneikhem ('you will loathe yourselves, be disgusted with yourselves') describes a visceral, physical revulsion at one's own past behavior. This is not merely cognitive regret but embodied shame. The same verb (qut) appears in 6:9 and 36:31.
44. The phrase ba'asoti itkhem lema'an shemi ('when I deal with you for the sake of my name') is the theological conclusion of the entire chapter. God's faithfulness to Israel is grounded in God's faithfulness to himself. Israel cannot claim credit for their restoration any more than they could claim credit for their survival.

44. The negation *lo khidarkeikhem hara'im vekhaaliloteikhem hanishchatot* ('not according to your wicked ways or your corrupt deeds') strips away any possibility of self-congratulation. God's mercy is unmerited — Israel is saved despite themselves.
45. A new oracle begins. In the Hebrew versification (MT), this verse begins chapter 21 (21:1). The English chapter division places it at the end of chapter 20. The oracle against the 'forest of the south' forms a transition to the sword oracle of chapter 21.
46. Three different Hebrew words for 'south' appear in this verse: *teimanah* (the Teman direction, toward Yemen), *darom* (the south as a compass point), and *negev* (the Negev, the dry southern region of Judah). The triple designation emphasizes the direction emphatically — the oracle is aimed unmistakably southward, toward Judah and Jerusalem (Babylon lies north of Judah).
46. The verb *hatef* ('drop, preach, drip') literally means 'to drip' — the prophetic word drops like rain or like liquid. It is used for prophetic speech in Amos 7:16 and Micah 2:6.
47. The fire metaphor describes military destruction — the forest is the population of Judah, and the fire is the Babylonian invasion. The phrase *kol etz lach vekhol etz yavesh* ('every green tree and every dry tree') means the destruction will be indiscriminate — both the righteous (green) and the wicked (dry) will be consumed.
47. The phrase *lahevet shalhevet* ('blazing flame') piles fire-words upon fire-words for intensification. The *shalhevet* is the most intense form of flame in Hebrew — Song of Solomon 8:6 uses the same word for love's fire.
47. The phrase *kol panim minnegev tzafonah* ('every face from south to north') indicates the fire's extent — it will burn through the entire territory, leaving no one unscorched.
48. The phrase *kol basar* ('all flesh') extends the audience beyond Israel — all humanity will witness this fire and recognize its divine origin. The verb *bi'artihah* ('I have ignited it') claims direct divine agency: this is not natural disaster but divine judgment.
48. The finality of *lo tikhbeh* ('it will not be quenched') describes unstoppable judgment — no human effort can extinguish what God has set ablaze.
49. Ezekiel's frustrated complaint reveals that his audience did not take the forest fire oracle literally. The phrase *hammashal meshalim hu* ('he is just speaking in parables/riddles') shows the audience dismissing the prophet as a spinner of obscure metaphors rather than a deliverer of direct divine warnings.
49. The exclamation *ahah* ('alas!') expresses the prophet's anguish — he is caught between God's command to prophesy and the people's refusal to hear. This complaint functions as a transition to chapter 21, where God will abandon metaphor and speak plainly about the sword.
49. The word *meshal* means 'proverb, parable, riddle, allegorical discourse.' The audience uses it dismissively — 'he is just riddling.' This same frustration echoes 12:22-27, where the people dismissed the prophetic word as irrelevant.

21

Summary: *Ezekiel 21 is the great sword oracle — one of the most intense and poetically charged passages in the prophetic literature. The chapter opens with God directing his face against Jerusalem and the sanctuaries of the land, then escalates into a dramatic sword song in which a blade is sharpened and polished for slaughter. The chapter follows the Hebrew verse numbering (32 verses), which differs from the English versification (some English Bibles begin this chapter at what the Hebrew text numbers as 20:45). The sword is personified, almost alive — it flashes, it devours, it is handed to the executioner. Nebuchadnezzar stands at a crossroads and uses divination to choose between Jerusalem and Ammon, and the lot falls on Jerusalem. The chapter closes with a remarkable oracle about the removal of the crown and turban — 'it will not be restored until he comes to whom judgment belongs' — a passage with strong messianic resonance. The poetry sections should be read as poetry; the sword song is among the most rhythmically powerful passages in Ezekiel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sword song (verses 14-22) is one of the rare passages where Ezekiel breaks into sustained, ecstatic poetry. The Hebrew is rhythmically intense and syntactically fragmented — short, stabbing clauses that mirror the action of the sword itself. The verb *charbah* ('sword') is repeated with incantatory force. Verse 27 contains the phrase *ad bo asher lo ha-mishpat* — 'until he comes to whom the judgment belongs' — which echoes the Shiloh prophecy of Genesis 49:10 and has been read as messianic by both Jewish and Christian interpreters. Nebuchadnezzar's divination scene (verses 26-27) is remarkably detailed, listing three forms of Babylonian divination: shaking arrows, consulting household gods (*teraphim*), and examining a liver (*hepatoscopy*). We rendered each practice precisely rather than generalizing, because the specificity is the point — God is using pagan divination to accomplish his own purposes.*

Translation Friction: The Hebrew text of the sword song is notoriously difficult, with several phrases that remain uncertain among scholars. Verse 15 contains a hapax legomenon that has challenged translators for centuries. The relationship between the 'sword' and its target shifts rapidly — sometimes it is God's sword, sometimes Nebuchadnezzar's, and the ambiguity appears intentional. The phrase in verse 27 (awwah awwah) is an unusual triple repetition that we rendered as 'A ruin! A ruin! A ruin!' to capture the emphatic Hebrew tripling. The transition between poetry and prose throughout the chapter required careful formatting decisions.

Connections: The sword oracle connects to Ezekiel 5:1-2 (the sword as instrument of judgment on Jerusalem), to Jeremiah 47:6-7 (the sword of the LORD that cannot rest), and to Genesis 49:10 (the Shiloh prophecy echoed in verse 27). The crown/turban removal in verse 31 connects to the priestly turban (mitznepet) of Exodus 28:4 and the royal crown (atarah), merging priestly and royal imagery. The crossroads divination scene anticipates the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BCE. The messianic reading of verse 27 connects forward to the 'one like a son of man' in Daniel 7:13-14 and to Christian readings of Jesus as the rightful heir.

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, set your face toward the south, and preach against the southland, and prophesy against the forest region of the Negev. ³Say to the forest of the Negev: Hear the word of the LORD. This is what the Lord GOD says — I am about to set a fire in you, and it will consume every green tree and every dry tree in you. The blazing flame will not be extinguished, and every face from south to north will be scorched by it. ⁴Then all flesh will see that I, the LORD, have set it ablaze. It will not be extinguished. ⁵Then I said, "Ah, Lord GOD! They are saying about me, 'Is he not just speaking in riddles?'" ⁶The word of the LORD came to me: ⁷Son of man, set your face toward Jerusalem, preach against the sanctuaries, and prophesy against the land of Israel. ⁸Say to the land of Israel: This is what the LORD says — I am about to draw my sword from its sheath, and I will cut off from you both the righteous and the wicked. ⁹Because I will cut off from you both the righteous and the wicked, therefore my sword will go out from its sheath against all flesh, from south to north. ¹⁰Then all flesh will know that I, the LORD, have drawn my sword from its sheath. It will not return again. ¹¹As for you, son of man — groan! Groan with shattered body and bitter anguish before their eyes. ¹²When they ask you, 'Why are you groaning?' you will say: Because of the news that is coming. Every heart will melt, every hand will go limp, every spirit will grow faint, and every knee will turn to water. It is coming — it will happen, declares the Lord GOD. ¹³The word of the LORD came to me:

¹⁴Son of man, prophesy and say: This is what the Lord GOD says —

A sword! A sword —
sharpened and polished!

¹⁵Sharpened for slaughter,
polished to flash like lightning!

Should we celebrate? The scepter of my son —
it despises every stick of wood.

¹⁶He has given it to be polished,
to be gripped in the hand.
The sword is sharpened,
the sword is polished —
to be placed in the hand of the executioner.

¹⁷Cry out and wail, son of man, for it is directed against my people, against all the leaders of Israel. They are thrown to the sword along with my people. Therefore, strike your thigh in grief! ¹⁸For a test is coming — and what if the sword despises even the scepter? It will be no more, declares the Lord GOD.

¹⁹As for you, son of man, prophesy!
Strike your hands together!

Let the sword strike twice — three times!
It is the sword of the slain,
the sword of the great slaughter
that closes in on them from every side.

²⁰So that hearts may melt
and the fallen may multiply,
I have stationed the butchering sword at all their gates.
Ah! It is made to flash like lightning,
drawn out for slaughter!

²¹Slash to the right!
Strike to the left!
Whichever way your edge is directed!

²²I too will strike my hands together, and I will satisfy my wrath. I, the LORD, have spoken. ²³The word of the LORD came to me: ²⁴As for you, son of man, mark out two roads for the sword of the king of Babylon to travel. Both roads will branch from a single land. And carve a signpost — carve it at the fork where the road divides toward each city. ²⁵Mark out a road for the sword to come against Rabbah of the Ammonites, and another against Judah — against fortified Jerusalem. ²⁶For the king of Babylon stands at the fork in the road, at the junction of the two roads, to perform divination: he shakes the arrows, he consults the household gods, he examines the liver. ²⁷In his right hand is the lot marked 'Jerusalem' — to deploy battering rams, to open mouths with war cries, to raise the voice in battle shouts, to set battering rams against the gates, to build siege ramps, to construct siege walls. ²⁸But to them it will seem like a false divination — they who have sworn oaths think they are safe. Yet he is bringing their guilt to remembrance, so that they will be captured. ²⁹Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because your iniquity is brought to mind, because your transgressions are exposed, because your sins are visible in all your deeds — because you are called to account, you will be seized by force. ³⁰And you — profane, wicked ruler of Israel, whose day has come, whose time of final punishment is here —

³¹This is what the Lord GOD says:

Remove the turban! Take off the crown!
Nothing will remain as it was.
Exalt the lowly — bring down the exalted!

³²A ruin! A ruin! A ruin — I will make it!
Even this will not endure
until he comes to whom judgment belongs,
and I will give it to him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing the direct speech that follows.
2. Three different Hebrew words for 'south' appear in this verse: *darom* (the general direction), *darom* again, and *negev* (the specific arid region south of Judah). The stacking of synonyms is rhetorically emphatic — the prophet's gaze is being directed with increasing specificity. The verb *hateph* means 'to drip, to preach' — an unusual word for prophetic speech that suggests words falling like drops of rain.
3. The fire metaphor is a parable for military invasion — Nebuchadnezzar's advance through Judah. 'Every green tree and every dry tree' means the righteous and wicked alike will be caught up in the judgment (a total devastation, not selective). The phrase 'every face will be scorched' indicates universal impact — no one escapes the approaching conflagration.

4. The verb *bi'arti* ('I have kindled/burned') uses the divine first person, making clear that the coming destruction is not mere geopolitical accident but divine action. The recognition formula — 'all flesh will see that I the LORD' — is central to Ezekiel's theology of judgment: God acts so that his sovereignty is publicly demonstrated.
5. Ezekiel protests that his audience dismisses him as a riddler. The verb *mashal* means 'to speak a proverb, a parable, a riddle.' The people refuse to hear the fire-and-forest oracle as a literal warning — they treat it as obscure figurative speech. This complaint prompts God to restate the message in stark, unambiguous terms in the verses that follow.
6. The reception formula is repeated, marking a new oracle unit. God now restates the fire parable in plain terms — the 'south' is Jerusalem, and the 'fire' is a sword.
7. Now the veil of parable is removed — 'the south' is explicitly Jerusalem, 'the forest' is the sanctuaries (*miqdashim*, plural — possibly referring to both the Temple and local high places), and 'the land of the Negev' is the land of Israel as a whole. The plural 'sanctuaries' may indicate that multiple worship sites are in view, or it may be a plural of majesty referring to the Temple complex.
8. The metaphor shifts from fire to sword, but the meaning is identical — total, indiscriminate judgment. The phrase 'both the righteous and the wicked' (*tsaddiq ve-rasha*) is theologically jarring: it contradicts the principle of individual responsibility articulated in chapter 18. The point is that national judgment sweeps up everyone within the affected territory. This tension is deliberate — Ezekiel holds both individual accountability and communal solidarity in unresolved tension.
9. The geographical sweep 'from south to north' encompasses the entire land of Israel. The repetition of 'righteous and wicked' reinforces the totality of the coming judgment. The sword is God's own — it goes out from his sheath, emphasizing that Nebuchadnezzar's army is merely the instrument.
10. The Ezekielian recognition formula appears again: the purpose of judgment is that 'all flesh will know that I am the LORD.' The finality is absolute — the sword 'will not return.' Once drawn, God's judgment runs its full course. This contrasts with the conditional mercy offered in chapter 18.
11. Ezekiel is commanded to perform another sign-act: public groaning. The phrase *shivron motnayim* literally means 'breaking of the loins/hips,' suggesting the kind of physical collapse that comes with devastating grief. This is not quiet weeping but full-body, visible distress intended to provoke questions from the exiles.
12. Four parallel clauses describe total physical and psychological collapse: melting hearts, limp hands, fainting spirits, and knees that 'go to water' (a vivid Hebrew idiom for loss of bladder control from terror, or simply knees that become liquid with fear). The fourfold structure emphasizes comprehensiveness — the coming news will devastate body and soul alike. The verb *nimsu* ('will melt') is the same used for the melting of Jericho's inhabitants in Joshua 2:11.
13. Third occurrence of the reception formula in this chapter, marking the beginning of the sword song proper — one of the most poetically intense passages in Ezekiel.
14. The sword song begins with explosive force. The double *cherev cherev* ('a sword, a sword') is an exclamatory cry — the prophet announces the weapon like a herald announcing doom. The verb *huchaddah* ('sharpened') comes from *chadad* ('to be sharp'), and *merutah* ('polished, burnished') describes the blade being rubbed smooth for maximum lethality. The poetry shifts from prose to short, stabbing rhythmic lines.
15. This is one of the most textually difficult verses in Ezekiel. The Hebrew is fragmentary and scholars disagree on its precise meaning. The phrase 'the scepter of my son' (*shevet bni*) is obscure — it may refer to Judah's royal line (the 'son' being the Davidic king), which the sword treats with contempt, regarding it as no more significant than any ordinary stick of wood. The rhetorical question 'Should we celebrate?' interrupts the sword song with bitter irony. The word *baraq* ('lightning, flash') describes the gleam of the polished blade.
16. The sword passes from divine preparation to human execution. The verb *tiphosh* ('to grip, to seize') indicates it is now ready for action — ready to be grasped. The *horeg* ('killer, executioner') is Nebuchadnezzar, though he is not named yet. The repetition of 'sharpened' and 'polished' builds incantatory momentum.
17. The verb *ze'aq* ('cry out') and *helel* ('wail') are paired for maximum emotional intensity. The *nesi'ei Yisrael* ('leaders of Israel') are the royal and political officials who will not be spared. 'Strike your thigh' (*sefoq el yarekh*) is a gesture of extreme grief and dismay (cf. Jeremiah 31:19). Ezekiel is commanded to act out publicly the grief that the coming destruction warrants.
18. Another extremely difficult verse. The 'test' (*bochan*) may refer to God's testing of the nation, and the 'scepter' (*shevet*) again likely refers to the Davidic royal line. If the sword despises even the royal house, nothing will remain. The phrase 'it will be no more' is a devastating prediction of the end of the monarchy as the exiles know it.
19. Ezekiel claps his hands as a prophetic action intensifying the sword's power. The phrase 'let it be doubled a third time' (*tikkafel shelishitah*) means the sword's devastation multiplies — doubled, then tripled. The verb *choderet* ('piercing, entering') suggests the sword penetrates even into private rooms and inner chambers — there is no hiding from it.
20. The word *ivchat* ('slaughtering, butchering') is from *tavach* ('to slaughter'), a term used for slaughtering animals — applied here to human victims, emphasizing the dehumanizing horror. The sword is stationed 'at all their gates,' meaning at every exit point. There is no escape. The interjection *ach* ('ah!') expresses either the prophet's horror or the sword's own exultation — the ambiguity is effective either way.
21. The prophet addresses the sword directly, commanding it to cut in every direction. The verbs are feminine singular, matching the grammatically feminine *cherev* ('sword'). The sword is personified as a living agent of destruction. The rapid, staccato commands mimic the frenzied motion of a

blade in combat.

22. God himself now claps his hands — echoing Ezekiel's hand-clapping in verse 19 but with far greater force. When God strikes his hands together, it is not grief but the activation of divine fury. The verb *hanichoti* ('I will cause to rest, I will satisfy') means God's wrath will find its full expression and be spent. The closing formula 'I the LORD have spoken' seals the oracle as irreversible.
23. Fourth reception formula in this chapter, introducing the crossroads oracle — Nebuchadnezzar's divination scene.
24. Ezekiel is instructed to draw or act out a map showing Nebuchadnezzar's army approaching a fork in the road. The verb *bara* here means 'to cut, to carve' — the prophet carves a directional sign at the junction. The word *yad* ('hand') functions as 'signpost' or 'road marker.' This is a dramatic visual aid: the exiles can see the moment of decision when Babylon must choose its target.
25. The two targets are named: Rabbah (the Ammonite capital, modern Amman) and Jerusalem. Both had rebelled against Babylon. The adjective *betsurah* ('fortified') applied to Jerusalem is bitterly ironic — its fortifications will prove useless against the sword God has sharpened.
26. Three forms of Babylonian divination are listed with precision: (1) *belomancy* — shaking inscribed arrows in a quiver and drawing one (*qilqal ba-chitsim*); (2) consulting *teraphim* — household idol-images used as oracles; (3) *hepatoscopy* — examining the liver of a sacrificed animal for omens (*ra'ah ba-kaved*). Ezekiel's priestly training shows in the specificity. The theological irony is acute: God sovereignly directs pagan divination to accomplish his own purposes. The lot will fall on Jerusalem because God wills it.
27. The divination falls on Jerusalem. The 'right hand' is the favorable or decisive hand. What follows is a catalogue of siege warfare tactics: *karim* ('battering rams'), the war cry (*terua'ah*), siege ramps (*solelah*), and siege walls (*dayeq*). The verb 'to open the mouth in slaughter' (*liftoch peh be-retsach*) likely refers to the shouting of the attacking army rather than literal mouths opening in death. The precision of the military terminology reflects Ezekiel's awareness of Babylonian siege technology.
28. The inhabitants of Jerusalem dismiss Nebuchadnezzar's divination as a sham (*qesam shav*, 'false divination'). They trust their oaths — possibly their vassal treaty with Babylon, which they believe protects them, or their covenant with God. But God is using the divination to bring their iniquity into account (*mazkir avon*). The irony is devastating: the people dismiss the very mechanism by which God's judgment is arriving.
29. The threefold repetition of exposure language — iniquity remembered, transgressions uncovered, sins visible — creates an overwhelming sense of total disclosure. There is no hidden sin left. The phrase 'seized by force' (*be-khaf titafeshu*) means captured by the hand, taken prisoner. The Babylonian siege is not political misfortune but judicial sentencing.
30. The address shifts to Zedekiah, the last king of Judah, though he is not named. The word *chahal* means 'profaned, pierced, defiled' — Zedekiah has desecrated his office. The phrase 'whose day has come' (*asher ba yomo*) echoes the day-of-the-LORD language. The 'time of final punishment' (*et avon qets*) combines iniquity with finality — this is the end of the line for the Davidic monarchy as currently constituted.
31. Two symbols of authority are stripped: the *mitznefet* ('turban') is the priestly headdress (Exodus 28:4), and the *atarah* ('crown') is the royal diadem. The merging of priestly and royal imagery is deliberate — both institutions are being dismantled. The phrase 'this is not this' (*zot lo zot*) means the entire social order is being overturned. The reversal formula — exalt the low, bring down the high — is revolutionary: God is dismantling every existing power structure.
32. The Hebrew *avvah* is related to the verb 'to bend, to twist, to pervert' — the crown and turban are being twisted into ruins. The triple repetition is rare and emphatic. The word *mishpat* here means 'judgment, right, just claim' — the future figure has a legitimate, divinely granted right to the throne. This verse is one of the most explicitly messianic passages in Ezekiel and connects to the broader prophetic theme of a future Davidic king (Isaiah 9:6-7, Jeremiah 23:5-6). The final phrase 'and I will give it to him' (*unetattivu*) confirms divine agency in the eventual restoration.

22

Summary: *Ezekiel 22 presents Jerusalem as 'the city of bloodshed' — a comprehensive indictment of the capital's sins organized into three oracles (verses 1-16, 17-22, 23-31). The first oracle is a catalogue of specific offenses: murder, idolatry, dishonoring parents, oppressing foreigners, orphans, and widows, profaning the Sabbath, sexual immorality (including incest and adultery), bribery, and usury. The second oracle uses the metaphor of a smelting furnace: Jerusalem is dross — the worthless slag left when silver is refined — and God will gather the people into the furnace of his wrath. The third oracle indicts every class of leadership — prophets, priests, officials, and landowners — and culminates in one of the most devastating lines in prophetic literature: 'I looked for someone to stand in the gap before me on behalf of the land, so that I would not destroy it — but I found no one' (verse 30). The failure is total, from the top of society to the bottom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sin catalogue in verses 6-12 is structured to move from public violence to private sin, from religious desecration to sexual exploitation, from the powerful to the common person. Every layer of society is implicated. The furnace metaphor (verses 17-22) inverts the normal smelting process: ordinarily, fire separates precious metal from dross. Here, the entire nation is dross — there is no*

precious metal left to extract. The image is not purification but exposure of total corruption. Verse 30 stands as one of the most poignant lines in the Hebrew Bible — God actively searches for a single intercessor and finds none. The gap (perets) in the wall is a breach through which destruction enters, and no one stands in it. We rendered this verse with the full weight of its desolation, preserving the first-person divine voice: God himself testifies to the absence of any faithful mediator.

Translation Friction: The verb shaphat in verse 2 can mean 'judge' or 'declare judgment upon' — we rendered it in context as 'pronounce judgment' to capture the forensic, courtroom quality. The sexual sins in verses 10-11 required precise rendering: the Hebrew distinguishes between uncovering a father's nakedness (sexual violation of a father's wife), approaching a menstruating woman, committing an abomination with a neighbor's wife, defiling a daughter-in-law, and violating a sister. Each represents a distinct prohibition from the Levitical code (Leviticus 18, 20), and the rendering must preserve these distinctions rather than generalizing. The word niddah in verse 10 refers specifically to menstrual impurity — a category that modern readers may find foreign but which is integral to Ezekiel's priestly worldview.

Connections: The sin catalogue draws directly from Leviticus 18-20 and Deuteronomy 27, constituting a systematic charge sheet based on Torah law. The furnace metaphor connects to Isaiah 1:22-25 (the refiner's fire that produces only dross) and Malachi 3:2-3 (the refiner who purifies the Levites). The 'gap' language of verse 30 connects to Moses's intercession in Exodus 32:11-14 and Psalm 106:23 — Moses 'stood in the breach' to prevent destruction. The absence of any such intercessor in Ezekiel's Jerusalem signals that the situation has passed beyond the point where intercession could help. The indictment of prophets, priests, and officials in verses 23-29 parallels Jeremiah 5:30-31 and Micah 3:5-12.

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²As for you, son of man — will you pronounce judgment? Will you pronounce judgment on the city of bloodshed? Then confront her with all her abominations! ³Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — A city that sheds blood within her walls, bringing her time of judgment upon herself, and that makes filthy idols to defile herself! ⁴By the blood you have shed, you have become guilty; by the filthy idols you have made, you have defiled yourself. You have brought your days near and reached the end of your years. Therefore I have made you an object of scorn to the nations and of mockery to every land. ⁵Those near and those far away will mock you — you whose name is defiled, you who are full of turmoil. ⁶The leaders of Israel within you — each one uses his power to shed blood. ⁷Father and mother are treated with contempt within you. The foreigner is oppressed in your midst. The orphan and the widow are exploited within you. ⁸You have despised my holy things and profaned my Sabbaths. ⁹Slanderers within you shed blood. People eat at the mountain shrines within you. They commit depravity in your midst. ¹⁰Within you, men uncover their father's nakedness. Within you, they violate women during their menstrual impurity. ¹¹One man commits an abomination with his neighbor's wife; another defiles his daughter-in-law with depravity; another within you violates his own sister, his father's daughter. ¹²Within you, people take bribes to shed blood. You charge interest and exact profit; you extort your neighbors through oppression. And you have forgotten me, declares the Lord GOD. ¹³Now look — I strike my hands together at your dishonest profit and at the bloodshed in your midst. ¹⁴Can your heart hold firm, or can your hands remain strong in the days when I deal with you? I, the LORD, have spoken, and I will act. ¹⁵I will scatter you among the nations and disperse you through the lands, and I will purge your uncleanness from you. ¹⁶You will be profaned in the sight of the nations, and you will know that I am the LORD. ¹⁷The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁸Son of man, the house of Israel has become dross to me. All of them — bronze, tin, iron, and lead in the furnace. They are the dross left over from silver. ¹⁹Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because all of you have become dross, I am going to gather you into the center of Jerusalem. ²⁰Just as silver, bronze, iron, lead, and tin are gathered into a furnace and fire is blown upon them to melt them down, so I will gather you in my anger and in my wrath. I will put you in and melt you down. ²¹I will heap you together and blow upon you with the fire of my fury, and you will be melted within it. ²²As silver is melted inside a furnace, so you will be melted inside Jerusalem. Then you will know that I, the LORD, have poured out my wrath upon you. ²³The word of the LORD came to me: ²⁴Son of man, say to her: You are a land that has not been cleansed, that has received no rain in the day of wrath. ²⁵Her prophets conspire within her like a roaring lion tearing its prey. They devour lives, seize wealth and valuables, and multiply her widows within her. ²⁶Her priests

do violence to my instruction and profane my holy things. They make no distinction between the holy and the common, and they do not teach the difference between the unclean and the clean. They shut their eyes to my Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them. ²⁷Her officials within her are like wolves tearing prey — shedding blood, destroying lives, all to gain dishonest profit. ²⁸Her prophets plaster over their crimes with whitewash, seeing false visions and divining lies for them, saying, 'This is what the Lord GOD says' — when the LORD has not spoken. ²⁹The common people of the land practice extortion and commit robbery. They exploit the poor and the needy, and they oppress the foreigner without justice. ³⁰I searched for someone among them who would repair the wall and stand in the gap before me on behalf of the land, so that I would not destroy it — but I found no one. ³¹So I poured out my indignation on them. I consumed them with the fire of my fury. I have brought their conduct down on their own heads, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula, opening the first of three oracles in this chapter.
2. The double hatishpot hatishpot ('will you judge, will you judge') is an emphatic rhetorical question that also functions as a command — Ezekiel is being charged to act as prosecutor. The phrase *ir ha-damim* ('city of bloods' — the plural *damim* indicates repeated, systematic bloodshed) becomes Jerusalem's title of shame. The verb *hoda'tah* ('make known, confront') means Ezekiel must lay out the evidence publicly.
3. The word *gillulim* ('filthy idols') is one of Ezekiel's signature terms — it appears to derive from a root meaning 'dung pellets' and is deliberately derogatory. The prophet does not dignify the idols with a neutral term. The city's bloodshed and idolatry together accelerate her appointed time (et, 'time of reckoning'). Both sins are self-inflicted: the city brings judgment on herself.
4. The accusation pairs two capital offenses: bloodshed and idolatry. The phrase 'you have brought your days near' (*vattaqrivi yamayikh*) uses the language of approaching a deadline — the city's sins have accelerated the timetable of her own destruction. The dual punishment — scorn (*cherpah*) and mockery (*qallasah*) among the nations — reverses Jerusalem's intended role as a city set apart for God's glory.
5. The phrase *teme'at ha-shem* ('defiled of name') means Jerusalem's reputation is ruined — her very name has become synonymous with corruption. The word *mehumah* ('turmoil, confusion, panic') describes a city in social and moral chaos. The mockery comes from every direction — near neighbors and distant nations alike.
6. The sin catalogue begins at the top: the *nesi'ei Yisrael* ('leaders of Israel') use their governmental authority (literally 'each to his arm' — *ish lizro'o*, where *zeroa'* means 'arm' as a symbol of strength and power) specifically for violence. The indictment moves systematically from rulers to commoners.
7. Three categories of the vulnerable are abused: parents (violation of the fifth commandment, Exodus 20:12), foreigners (violation of Exodus 22:21), and orphans and widows (violation of Exodus 22:22). The verb *heqallu* ('treated lightly, dishonored') is the opposite of *kavod* — to treat parents as 'light' rather than 'heavy' is to strip them of their God-given dignity. The verb *honu* ('oppressed, exploited') implies financial and legal abuse.
8. The address shifts to second person singular, directed at the city personified. Two specifically religious offenses: despising *qodashay* ('my holy things' — sacred objects, offerings, sanctuary items) and profaning the Sabbaths. For a priest-prophet like Ezekiel, these are the most fundamental betrayals: the *sancta* (holy things) and the sacred time (Sabbath) are both desecrated.
9. Three more offenses: *rakhil* ('slanderers, tale-bearers') who use false testimony to get people killed (capital cases based on false witness); eating 'on the mountains' (*el he-harim*) refers to pagan sacrificial meals at high places; and *zimmah* ('depravity, lewdness') is a broad term for sexual and moral perversion. The mountain shrines are the *bamot* (high places) that the prophets consistently condemn.
10. Two sexual prohibitions from Leviticus 18 are cited: (1) 'Uncovering a father's nakedness' (*ervat av gillah*) refers to sexual intercourse with one's father's wife/concubine (Leviticus 18:8, 20:11) — it is a violation of the father's sexual domain, not necessarily literal incest with the father. (2) Violating a woman during *niddah* (menstrual impurity) is prohibited in Leviticus 18:19. For Ezekiel the priest, this is not merely a hygiene concern but a purity-boundary violation that defiles the land.
11. Three more sexual violations from the Levitical code, escalating in severity: (1) adultery with a neighbor's wife (Leviticus 18:20, here called to *evah* — an abomination); (2) intercourse with a daughter-in-law (Leviticus 18:15, here characterized as *zimmah* — depravity); (3) incest with a half-sister (Leviticus 18:9). The phrase *bat aviv* ('his father's daughter') specifies a half-sister through the paternal line. Each violation carries its own distinct Hebrew characterization, and we preserved these distinctions in the rendering.
12. The catalogue concludes with economic sins: bribery in capital cases (*shochad laqchu le-ma'an shefakh dam* — 'they took bribes to shed blood'), usury (*neshekh*, literally 'biting' — interest that 'bites' the borrower, prohibited in Exodus 22:25 and Leviticus 25:36), and extortion (*oshek*). The devastating final clause — '*ve-oti shakhacht*' ('and me you have forgotten') — reduces all of the preceding sins to a single root cause: forgetting God. The entire catalogue of bloodshed, idolatry, sexual violation, and economic oppression flows from this one failure.
13. God's hand-clapping here is a gesture of outrage (different from the hand-clapping of chapter 21 that activated the sword). The word *bitsa* ('dishonest gain, unjust profit') is from *batsa'* ('to cut off, to break off') — it implies profit gained by violent means, by cutting others out of what is rightfully theirs.

14. The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'No.' The metaphors are physical: the heart cannot endure the shock, the hands cannot maintain their grip. The sealing formula 'I the LORD have spoken and I will act' (ani YHWH dibbarti ve-asiti) closes the oracle with absolute finality — word and deed are united in God.
15. Two verbs of exile: haphitsoti ('scatter') and zeritikh ('disperse, winnow'). The purpose clause is striking: the exile itself is purifying. The word tum'ah ('uncleanness, impurity') is priestly vocabulary — the land has become tamei (unclean) and must be purged. The exile functions as a kind of cosmic purification ritual.
16. The verb nichalt is debated: it may mean 'you will receive your inheritance' (i.e., reap what you sowed) or 'you will be profaned/dishonored' (from chalah). Most modern translations favor the sense of dishonor or defilement. The recognition formula closes the first oracle: through judgment, Jerusalem will finally recognize God's sovereignty — the knowledge she refused to gain through obedience will come through suffering.
17. Reception formula marking the second oracle — the furnace/dross metaphor.
18. The smelting metaphor is devastating: Israel was supposed to be silver — precious, refined, valuable. Instead, what remains after the refining process is sigim ('dross') — the worthless residue of base metals (bronze, tin, iron, lead) that separates out and is discarded. The image inverts the expected purification narrative: God put Israel through the furnace, and nothing of value emerged.
19. The gathering into Jerusalem is for judgment, not protection. The city becomes the furnace itself — the population is herded into the city to undergo the fire of siege and destruction. What appears to be a gathering for safety is actually a gathering for smelting.
20. The simile is explicit: the furnace is God's anger, the fire is his wrath, and the melting is the siege and destruction of Jerusalem. The verb hintikh ('to melt, to smelt') describes the total breakdown of the city's structure — walls, institutions, families, everything liquefied by divine fury. The listing of five base metals emphasizes that there are no precious materials left to extract.
21. The repetition from verse 20 intensifies: God himself acts as the bellows operator, blowing the fire hotter. The verb naphachti ('I will blow') is used of bellows stoking a furnace. The word evrati ('my fury, my overflowing wrath') is fromavar ('to overflow, to pass beyond') — this is wrath that exceeds normal bounds.
22. The furnace oracle closes with the recognition formula. The verb shaphakhti ('I have poured out') uses the same root as the bloodshed vocabulary earlier (shephakh dam) — God's wrath is 'poured out' just as the city's blood was 'poured out.' The symmetry is deliberate: the punishment matches the crime in form as well as substance.
23. Reception formula introducing the third and final oracle of the chapter — the indictment of leadership classes.
24. The land is doubly cursed: it is not metoharah ('cleansed, purified' — priestly vocabulary) and it has received no rain (gushmah — a sign of divine disfavor; cf. Deuteronomy 11:13-17 where rain is contingent on obedience). The 'day of wrath' (yom za'am) is the approaching judgment. The land itself reflects the spiritual condition of its inhabitants — unclean and unfertile.
25. The first leadership class indicted: the prophets. The word qesher ('conspiracy') indicates they are coordinating their false prophecies — this is organized corruption, not individual failure. The lion simile is ferocious: the prophets are predators, not shepherds. They 'devour lives' (nephesh akhlu) — their false assurances lead people to destruction. The multiplication of widows indicates that their lies result in death. Note: some Hebrew manuscripts and the LXX read nesi'eha ('her leaders') instead of nevi'eha ('her prophets'), which would make this verse about political leaders rather than prophets.
26. The second leadership class: the priests. Their crimes are specifically priestly failures — the very functions they were ordained to perform. The verb chamsu ('do violence to') applied to Torah is shocking: the priests, who are custodians of God's instruction, are violating it. The fourfold accusation: (1) violence against Torah, (2) profaning holy things, (3) failing to distinguish qodesh from chol (holy from common — the fundamental priestly duty per Leviticus 10:10), (4) ignoring the Sabbath. The result: God himself is profaned (va-echal) among them. The priestly class, meant to uphold God's holiness, has instead made God common.
27. The third leadership class: the sarim ('officials, ministers'). Where the prophets were lions, the officials are wolves — another predator image. The triad of crimes — shedding blood, destroying lives (nephesh), gaining dishonest profit (betso'a batsa') — links political corruption directly to violence and death. The officials exploit their governmental power for personal enrichment at the cost of human lives.
28. The prophets return for a second indictment. The verb tachu ('they plaster, daub') uses the same whitewash metaphor from Ezekiel 13:10-15 — the false prophets cover over the officials' crimes with a thin veneer of religious legitimacy, like plastering a flimsy wall to make it look solid. Their ultimate crime: they claim divine authority ('This is what the Lord GOD says') for messages God never authorized. They hijack the prophetic formula itself, turning God's own words into a tool of deception.
29. The final class: am ha-aretz ('people of the land') — the general population, the commoners. Even they are guilty. The indictment uses four verbs of economic violence: ashqu ('extort'), gazlu ('rob'), honu ('exploit'), and ashqu again ('oppress'). The phrase be-lo mishpat ('without justice, without legal right') means the oppression of foreigners occurs outside any legal framework — raw exploitation without even the pretense of lawful process. Every layer of society — prophets, priests, officials, commoners — is corrupt.
30. This is one of the most devastating verses in the prophetic literature. God himself testifies that he actively searched (va-avaqesh — the intensive piel form, indicating persistent searching) for a single intercessor. The perets ('gap, breach') is a break in a defensive wall — the image is of a city wall crumbling under assault, and God looks for someone to stand in the breach and hold it. The model is Moses, who 'stood in the breach' before God at Sinai (Psalm 106:23) and prevented destruction. In Ezekiel's Jerusalem, there is no Moses. The phrase 'but I found no one' (ve-lo matsati) carries

the weight of divine grief — God wanted to find a reason to relent, but none was available.

31. The chapter concludes with three verbs of executed judgment: poured out (shaphakhti), consumed (killitim), and brought down (natatti). The final phrase — 'their conduct upon their own heads' (darkam be-rosham natatti) — is the principle of exact retribution: their punishment is simply the natural consequence of their own behavior returning to them. God does not impose alien punishment — he lets their own way come home. The ne'um formula closes the oracle with divine authority.

23

Summary: *Ezekiel 23 is, alongside chapter 16, the most sexually explicit chapter in the Hebrew Bible. It presents Samaria and Jerusalem as two sisters — Oholah and Oholibah — who became prostitutes while still in Egypt. The names are symbolic: Oholah ('her tent') likely refers to Samaria's unauthorized worship site, while Oholibah ('my tent is in her') refers to Jerusalem as the location of God's legitimate sanctuary. The allegory traces the political and religious unfaithfulness of both kingdoms through their 'lovers' — Assyria, Babylon, and Egypt — using graphic sexual imagery to communicate the theological horror of covenant betrayal. Oholah (Samaria) was punished by the very lovers she pursued — Assyria destroyed her in 722 BCE. Yet Oholibah (Jerusalem) learned nothing and surpassed her sister in degradation. The chapter concludes with a judgment oracle against both sisters.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter has been controversial within Judaism since ancient times. The Mishnah (Megillah 4:10) restricts the public reading of Ezekiel 16 as a haftarah, and chapter 23 is equally if not more explicit. The sexual language is not incidental — it is the theological argument. Ezekiel deliberately uses the most graphic vocabulary available in Hebrew to provoke revulsion. The prophet wants his audience to feel visceral disgust at what they have done to their covenant relationship with God. The allegory operates on multiple levels: the 'lovers' represent both the foreign empires with whom Israel and Judah made political alliances and the foreign gods they worshiped as part of those alliances. Political syncretism and religious syncretism are inseparable in the prophetic worldview. We have translated the Hebrew faithfully without sanitizing, softening, or euphemizing the sexual language. The graphic content is not gratuitous — it is the prophetic indictment itself. To soften the language would be to blunt the theological force of the passage.*

Translation Friction: *The sexual vocabulary in this chapter is among the most explicit in ancient Hebrew literature. Several terms required careful rendering decisions: the word zenunim ('acts of prostitution, whoring') appears repeatedly and we rendered it consistently; the phrase ba'u eleha ('they came to her') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse; and the description of the lovers' physical attributes in verse 20 uses crude anatomical language that we have translated literally from the Hebrew. The violence described against the unfaithful sisters in verses 25-29 and 46-49 reflects ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse language — the punishments prescribed for covenant violation in Assyrian and Babylonian vassal treaties. These are not prescriptions for domestic violence but covenant-curse imagery applied to nations personified as women. The chapter requires a preamble note acknowledging this distinction.*

Connections: *The two-sisters allegory parallels Jeremiah 3:6-11, where Israel and Judah are also portrayed as unfaithful sisters, with Judah worse than Israel. The sexual allegory of covenant unfaithfulness draws on Hosea 1-3, which pioneered the marriage metaphor for God's relationship with Israel. The Assyrian and Babylonian 'lovers' connect to the historical narratives of 2 Kings 16-17 (Ahaz's submission to Assyria) and 2 Kings 24-25 (Zedekiah's alliance with and rebellion against Babylon). The judgment by assembled crowd (verses 46-47) reflects the legal procedure for adultery in Deuteronomy 22:22-24. The closing recognition formula connects to Ezekiel's broader theme that judgment will finally teach Israel what obedience could not.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, there were two women, daughters of the same mother. ³They prostituted themselves in Egypt — in their youth they engaged in prostitution. There their breasts were fondled, and there their virgin nipples were caressed. ⁴Their names were Oholah — the elder — and Oholibah, her sister. They became mine and bore sons and daughters. As for their names: Oholah is Samaria, and Oholibah is Jerusalem. ⁵Oholah prostituted herself while she was still mine. She lusted after her lovers — the Assyrians, who were nearby, ⁶dressed in violet — governors and commanders, all of them desirable young men, horsemen mounted on horses. ⁷She lavished her acts of prostitution on them — the choicest

men of Assyria, all of them. And with everyone she lusted after, she defiled herself with all their filthy idols. ⁸She never abandoned the prostitution she began in Egypt, for men had slept with her in her youth — they had fondled her virgin breasts and poured out their lust upon her. ⁹Therefore I handed her over to her lovers — to the Assyrians, after whom she lusted. ¹⁰They stripped her naked, seized her sons and daughters, and killed her with the sword. She became a byword among women, for they executed judgment on her. ¹¹Her sister Oholibah saw this, yet she became even more depraved in her lust than her sister, and her acts of prostitution exceeded those of her sister. ¹²She lusted after the Assyrians — governors and commanders, splendidly dressed, horsemen mounted on horses, all of them desirable young men. ¹³I saw that she had defiled herself — the two of them had taken the same path. ¹⁴But she went further in her prostitution. She saw figures of men carved on the wall — images of Babylonians etched in vermilion, ¹⁵wearing belts around their waists and flowing turbans on their heads, all of them looking like officers — the likeness of Babylonians from Chaldea, the land of their birth. ¹⁶She lusted after them at the sight of them and sent messengers to them in Chaldea. ¹⁷The Babylonians came to her, to the bed of lovemaking, and defiled her with their acts of prostitution. After she was defiled by them, she became disgusted with them. ¹⁸When she flaunted her acts of prostitution and exposed her nakedness, I turned away from her in disgust, just as I had turned away from her sister in disgust. ¹⁹Yet she multiplied her acts of prostitution, reminiscing about the days of her youth when she prostituted herself in the land of Egypt. ²⁰She lusted after their lovers, whose genitals were like those of donkeys and whose emission was like that of stallions. ²¹You revisited the depravity of your youth, when the Egyptians fondled your breasts — caressing your young nipples. ²²Therefore, Oholibah, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am about to stir up your lovers against you — the ones from whom you turned away in disgust — and I will bring them against you from every side: ²³the Babylonians and all the Chaldeans — Pekod, Shoa, and Koa — along with all the Assyrians: desirable young men, all of them — governors and commanders, officers and men of renown, all of them mounted on horses. ²⁴They will advance against you with weapons, chariots, and wagons, with a horde of peoples. They will array against you on every side with large shield, small shield, and helmet. I will hand judgment over to them, and they will judge you by their own standards. ²⁵I will direct my jealous rage against you, and they will deal with you in fury. They will cut off your nose and your ears, and your survivors will fall by the sword. They will seize your sons and daughters, and what remains of you will be consumed by fire. ²⁶They will strip your clothes from you and take your beautiful jewelry. ²⁷I will put an end to your depravity and to your prostitution that began in the land of Egypt. You will no longer lift your eyes to them, and you will not remember Egypt anymore. ²⁸For this is what the Lord GOD says: I am about to hand you over to those you hate, to those from whom you turned away in disgust. ²⁹They will deal with you in hatred and take everything you have worked for. They will leave you naked and exposed, and the nakedness of your prostitution will be uncovered — your depravity and your acts of prostitution. ³⁰These things will be done to you because you prostituted yourself to the nations, because you defiled yourself with their filthy idols. ³¹You have walked in your sister's path, so I will put her cup into your hand.

³²This is what the Lord GOD says:

You will drink your sister's cup —
deep and wide.

You will become an object of laughter and scorn;
the cup holds much.

³³You will be filled with drunkenness and grief —
a cup of horror and desolation,
the cup of your sister Samaria.

³⁴You will drink it and drain it dry,
then gnaw on its broken shards
and tear at your own breasts.

For I have spoken, declares the Lord GOD.

³⁵Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because you have forgotten me and thrown me behind your back, you must bear the consequences of your depravity and your acts of prostitution. ³⁶The LORD said to me: Son of man, will you pronounce judgment on Oholah and Oholibah? Then declare to them their abominations, ³⁷for they have committed adultery, and blood is on their hands. They committed adultery with their filthy idols, and even their children, whom they bore to me, they passed through the fire as food for the idols. ³⁸This also they have done to me: they defiled my sanctuary on that same day and profaned my Sabbaths. ³⁹When they had slaughtered their children for their filthy idols, they came into my sanctuary on that same day to profane it. This is what they did inside my house! ⁴⁰Moreover, you sent for men coming from far away — a messenger was dispatched to them, and they came. For them you bathed yourself, painted your eyes, and adorned yourself with jewelry. ⁴¹You sat on a luxurious couch with a table spread before it, and on it you placed my incense and my oil. ⁴²The sound of a carefree crowd surrounded her. Along with common men, drunkards were brought from the wilderness, and they placed bracelets on the women's wrists and beautiful crowns on their heads. ⁴³Then I said about the one worn out by adultery: 'Now they will continue their acts of prostitution with her — even with her!' ⁴⁴They went in to her as men go in to a prostitute. So they went in to Oholah and to Oholibah, those depraved women. ⁴⁵But righteous men — they will judge them with the judgment due to adulteresses and the judgment due to those who shed blood, because they are adulteresses and blood is on their hands. ⁴⁶For this is what the Lord GOD says: Bring an assembly against them and hand them over to terror and plunder. ⁴⁷The assembly will stone them and cut them down with their swords. They will kill their sons and daughters and burn their houses with fire. ⁴⁸I will put an end to depravity in the land, and all women will be warned not to imitate your depravity. ⁴⁹They will bring your depravity down upon you, and you will bear the penalty for the sins of your filthy idols. Then you will know that I am the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula, introducing what will become the longest sustained allegory in the book of Ezekiel.
2. The allegory opens with deceptive simplicity. The 'one mother' represents the united people of God before the division of the kingdom. Both sisters share the same origin — both are part of the covenant community that came out of Egypt.
3. The sexual history begins in Egypt — before the Exodus, before Sinai. The verbs *mu'akhu* ('pressed, squeezed, fondled') and *issu* ('handled, caressed') describe sexual groping. The Hebrew is deliberately graphic: the sisters' sexual corruption began at the earliest stage of national existence. Theologically, this means Israel was never innocent — even before the covenant was formalized, the people were already entangled with foreign powers and their gods. The word *betuleihen* ('their virginity') emphasizes that this was their first corruption — they never had an era of purity.
4. The names are decoded: Oholah (, 'her tent') represents Samaria, whose worship was unauthorized — 'her own tent,' not God's. Oholibah (, 'my tent is in her') represents Jerusalem, where God's legitimate sanctuary stood — 'my tent is in her.' The phrase 'they became mine' (*vattihiyeha li*) uses marriage language — God took them as wives, establishing the covenant relationship. They bore 'sons and daughters' — the populations of both kingdoms are the children of these covenant marriages.
5. The phrase *tachay* ('under me, while belonging to me') emphasizes that Oholah's unfaithfulness occurred within the marriage — she was not abandoned before she strayed. The verb *ta'agav* ('lusted, was infatuated') is an intense term for sexual desire, stronger than ordinary wanting. Samaria's political alliance with Assyria is characterized as sexual infatuation — the northern kingdom was drawn to Assyria not by necessity but by desire.
6. The Assyrian officers are described in terms of sexual attractiveness: their uniforms (*tekhelet* — violet or blue-purple, the expensive dye), their rank (*pachot* — governors; *seginim* — high officials), their youth and beauty (*bachurei chemed* — 'desirable young men'), and their military prowess (horsemen). The description is seen through Oholah's lustful gaze — these are the features that attracted Samaria to the Assyrian alliance.
7. The verb *nattenah* ('she gave, she lavished') indicates that the prostitution was enthusiastic, not reluctant. *Mivchar* ('choicest, finest') describes the highest-ranking Assyrians. The critical theological link appears at the end: the political alliances were inseparable from religious defilement — alliance with Assyria meant worshipping Assyrian gods (*gilluleihem* — their 'filthy idols'). Political and religious syncretism are a single act of unfaithfulness.
8. Oholah's corruption is traced back to Egypt — the pattern began before the Exodus and was never broken. The verb *shakhvu* ('they lay with') is the standard Hebrew for sexual intercourse. The phrase 'poured out their lust upon her' (*vayyishpekhu taznutam aleha*) uses the same verb (*shaphakh* — 'to pour out') that appears in bloodshed language, creating a dark linkage between sexual violation and violence.
9. The punishment is perfectly symmetrical: Oholah pursued Assyria as a lover, and God handed her over to Assyria as her destroyer. The historical reference is the Assyrian conquest of Samaria in 722 BCE (2 Kings 17). The verb *natatti* ('I gave, I handed over') makes clear that God is the agent — the Assyrian conquest was divine judgment, not geopolitical accident.

10. The punishment follows ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse patterns: exposure (stripping naked — *gillu ervatah*), loss of children (taken as captives), and death by the sword. The phrase 'she became a name among women' (*vattehi shem la-nashim*) means she became a cautionary tale — her name became synonymous with ruin. The historical reality: the northern kingdom's population was deported, and Samaria ceased to exist as an independent entity.
11. The pivot point of the chapter: Jerusalem witnessed Samaria's destruction and learned nothing. The comparative forms are emphatic — Oholibah's corruption was worse (*vatashchet*, 'she became more corrupt') and her prostitution exceeded (*taznuteha mizzenunei achotah*, 'her acts of prostitution surpassed her sister's acts of prostitution'). This is the theological scandal: Judah had the warning example of the northern kingdom's destruction and still escalated her unfaithfulness.
12. The description mirrors verse 6 almost exactly, but now it is Oholibah (Jerusalem) who pursues the same Assyrian lovers her sister had. The phrase *levushei mikhlo* ('dressed in perfection, splendidly clothed') emphasizes the outward allure. Historically, this refers to Judah's vassal relationship with Assyria, particularly under kings like Ahaz (2 Kings 16:7-18), who submitted to Assyria and adopted its religious practices.
13. God speaks as the betrayed husband: 'I saw' (*va-ere*) is a personal observation of unfaithfulness. The phrase *derekh echad lishteihen* ('one way for both of them') means both sisters followed the identical pattern of corruption. Jerusalem is not differentiated from Samaria in kind, only in degree.
14. Oholibah's corruption escalates beyond Assyria to Babylon. The wall carvings (*mechukeh al ha-qir*) refer to the painted and carved reliefs on Babylonian palace walls that depicted warriors and officials. The Hebrew *kasdi'im* ('Chaldeans') is the standard term for Babylonians. The vermilion (*shashar* — a red pigment) is historically accurate: Babylonian wall reliefs were vividly painted. Oholibah is aroused by images — mere representations of foreign power are enough to provoke her infatuation.
15. The Babylonian officers are described through their distinctive dress: *ezor* ('belt, sash') around the waist and *seruchei tevulim* ('flowing, dipped/dyed turbans') on their heads. The word *shalishim* ('officers, third-rank commanders') indicates high military rank. The description matches known Babylonian military dress from archaeological evidence. The phrase 'land of their birth' (*erets moladtam*) identifies these as native Babylonians, not mercenaries.
16. Oholibah's infatuation begins with sight — *lema'eh eineiha* ('at the sight of her eyes') — and immediately escalates to action: she sends messengers (*mal'akhim*) to Babylon. This is not passive attraction but active pursuit. Historically, this may refer to Judah's diplomatic overtures to Babylon, seeking alliance against Assyria or Egypt.
17. The phrase *mishkav dodim* ('bed of lovemaking') is explicit — the alliance was consummated. The sequence is significant: desire, pursuit, consummation, defilement, then revulsion. The verb *vatteqa' nafshah mehem* ('her soul was torn away from them, she became disgusted') describes the sudden reversal from infatuation to revulsion. Historically, this reflects Judah's vacillation between alliance with and rebellion against Babylon — the same pattern that would lead to the siege and destruction of Jerusalem.
18. Now God speaks as the betrayed husband. The verb *vattigal* ('she uncovered, exposed, flaunted') indicates brazen, public unfaithfulness. God's response mirrors Oholibah's own response to Babylon in verse 17: *vatteqa' nafshi me'aleha* ('my soul was torn from her') — the same verb of revulsion. God uses the language of personal emotional pain: the covenant betrayal wounds God, and he responds with the same visceral disgust that a betrayed spouse would feel. The comparison with 'her sister' (Samaria) signals that the same judgment is coming.
19. Despite God's turning away, Oholibah's corruption intensifies. The phrase *lizkor et yemei ne'ureha* ('remembering the days of her youth') is nostalgia for the earliest period of corruption — a longing to return to the original pattern of unfaithfulness. This is not fond memory but an addictive craving for the original degradation.
20. This is the most sexually explicit verse in the Hebrew Bible. The word *basar* ('flesh') here is a euphemism for the male sexual organ, and *zirmat* ('emission, flow') refers to seminal emission. The comparisons to donkeys and horses are crude and deliberately degrading — they reduce the objects of Oholibah's desire to animal-level sexuality. The prophet's intention is to provoke revulsion: this is what Jerusalem's political and religious alliances look like when stripped of their diplomatic veneer. The Hebrew is intentionally shocking, and the rendering must preserve this. To soften the language would be to undermine the prophetic argument.
21. The verse circles back to the beginning of the chapter (verse 3), creating a literary envelope. Oholibah's return to Egypt-like corruption completes the cycle — her latest degradation (lusting after Babylonian lovers) is a repetition of her earliest degradation (Egyptian sexual corruption). The word *zimmat* ('depravity, lewdness') is from *zamam* ('to plan, to devise') — this is calculated wickedness, not impulsive sin.
22. The judgment oracle begins. The punishment mirrors Oholah's: the very lovers she pursued and then spurned will become her destroyers. The verb *me'ir* ('stirring up, arousing') is bitterly ironic — God 'arouses' the former lovers, but now for war, not sex. The phrase 'from whom your soul turned away' recalls verse 17 — Jerusalem's revulsion against Babylon becomes the basis for Babylon's hostility against Jerusalem.
23. Pekod, Shoa, and Koa are Aramean and Chaldean tribal groups east of the Tigris — known from Assyrian inscriptions. Some scholars note potential Hebrew wordplay: *paqad* ('to visit, to punish'), *sho'a* ('crying for help'), and *qo'a* ('cutting off'). Whether the names carry this double meaning or are simply geographical designations is debated. The catalogue of military ranks emphasizes the overwhelming force being assembled.
24. The military catalogue describes a full siege force. The word *hotsen* is uncertain — possibly 'weapons' or 'armored wagons.' The phrase *natatti lifneihem mishpat* ('I will set judgment before them') means God delegates the judicial authority to the invading nations. The terrifying implication: they will judge Jerusalem *be-mishpeteihem* ('by their own standards') — not by Torah, not by covenant norms, but by the brutal standards of Babylonian military justice. God removes his own protective covenant framework and lets foreign law take its course.

25. The punishments are ancient Near Eastern treaty-curse penalties for adultery: mutilation of the face (cutting off the nose and ears was a documented punishment for adulterous women in Assyrian law codes), death by the sword, seizure of children, and burning. The word *qin'ah* ('jealousy, zealous rage') casts God as the wronged husband whose covenantal jealousy has been aroused (cf. Exodus 20:5 — 'I am a jealous God'). These are not prescriptions for domestic violence but covenant-curse language applied to a personified nation through the allegory's internal logic.
26. Stripping and confiscation of adornment continues the adultery-punishment imagery. The *kelei tifarteikh* ('articles of your splendor') are the royal and religious treasures of Jerusalem — the gold, silver, and precious objects of the Temple and palace that Nebuchadnezzar would indeed carry off to Babylon (2 Kings 25:13-17).
27. The purpose of the devastating punishment is cessation of the sin pattern. The verb *hishbatti* ('I will cause to cease') is definitive — the cycle of unfaithfulness will be forcibly terminated. The reference to Egypt as the origin of the corruption creates a full literary circle from verse 3 to here. The destruction of Jerusalem will accomplish what no amount of prophetic warning could: the complete severance of Jerusalem's addiction to foreign alliances and their gods.
28. The symmetry of the punishment is exact: those she once desired and then spurned become her executioners. The shift from 'lovers' to 'those you hate' tracks the emotional arc of the allegory — infatuation, consummation, disgust, then destruction at the hands of the rejected partner.
29. The verbs escalate: hatred (*sin'ah*), confiscation (*laqchu kol yegi'ekh* — 'they will take all your labor,' meaning all the wealth Jerusalem has accumulated), and public exposure (*azavukh eirom ve-eryah* — 'they will leave you naked and bare'). The double exposure — left naked, then her sexual corruption uncovered — strips away every layer of concealment. Jerusalem's sin, which she thought she could hide behind diplomatic alliances and religious facades, is laid completely bare.
30. The summary judgment: every punishment listed in the preceding verses is a consequence of two interrelated sins — political prostitution (chasing after the nations) and religious defilement (worshipping their *gillulim*, 'filthy idols'). The passive construction 'these things will be done to you' emphasizes the inevitability of the consequences.
31. The 'cup' (*kos*) is the cup of God's wrath — a consistent prophetic image (Isaiah 51:17, 22; Jeremiah 25:15-29; Habakkuk 2:16). Because Oholibah followed Oholah's path of unfaithfulness, she must drink the same cup of judgment. The image introduces the cup poem that follows in verses 32-34.
32. The cup poem begins. The cup is described as *ha-amuqqah ve-ha-rechavah* ('deep and wide') — the quantity of wrath is enormous. The consequence is public humiliation: *litsechoq ule-la'ag* ('for laughter and for mockery'). Jerusalem, which was meant to be God's showpiece among the nations, will become their entertainment. The poetry shifts to short, rhythmic lines.
33. The cup produces two effects: *shikkaron* ('drunkenness' — the disorientation of judgment) and *yagon* ('grief, sorrow'). The cup is then renamed: *kos shammah u-shemamah* ('a cup of horror and desolation'). The near-homophony of *shammah* and *shemamah* (horror/desolation) is a characteristic Hebrew sound-play. The final identification — 'the cup of your sister Samaria' — reminds Oholibah that she is drinking the same draught that destroyed the northern kingdom.
34. The most extreme image in the cup poem: after draining the cup (*matsit* — 'squeeze out every drop'), the drinker gnaws on the broken pottery (*charaseiha tegaremi* — 'you will gnaw its shards'), lacerating her mouth, and then tears at her own breasts (*shadayikh tenattqi*). This is self-destructive madness — the cup of wrath drives the drinker to mutilate herself. The breasts torn away recall the breasts fondled in verses 3 and 21 — the organs of her sexual corruption become the site of her self-inflicted punishment. The sealing formula 'I have spoken' closes the poem with irreversible finality.
35. The root cause restated: forgetting God (*shakhacht oti*) and casting him behind her back (*vatashlikhi oti acharei gavvekh* — literally 'throwing me behind your body'). The metaphor is visceral: God, who was supposed to be before her face, has been tossed behind her back as something discarded. The word *se'i* ('bear, carry') means she must now carry the full weight of the consequences she has earned.
36. A new oracle begins that addresses both sisters together — a joint indictment. The verb *tishpot* ('will you judge') echoes 22:2 and is both question and commission: Ezekiel is appointed as God's prosecutor against both kingdoms simultaneously.
37. The charge sheet is devastating: adultery (*ni'efu* — both literal idolatry and the allegorical unfaithfulness), murder (*dam bi-deihen* — 'blood on their hands'), and child sacrifice (*he'eviru lahem le-akhlah* — 'they passed [their children] through [the fire] for them to consume'). The phrase 'whom they bore to me' (*asher yaledu li*) is agonizing: the children sacrificed to idols were God's children — they belonged to him by covenant. Child sacrifice is presented as the ultimate betrayal: giving away God's own children to feed foreign gods. Historical references include the Tophet in the Valley of Hinnom (2 Kings 23:10, Jeremiah 7:31).
38. The phrase 'on that same day' (*ba-yom ha-hu*) is shocking: on the very day they performed child sacrifice, they entered the Temple as if nothing had happened. The juxtaposition of child sacrifice and Temple worship on the same day demonstrates the depth of their moral blindness. The defilement of the sanctuary (*miqdashi*) is a direct affront to the priestly Ezekiel, for whom the Temple's holiness is the center of the cosmic order.
39. The verse expands on verse 38 with explicit detail: *shachatam* ('when they slaughtered') — the verb used for ritual sacrifice — followed by entry into the Temple. The final exclamation *hinneh koh asu be-tokh beiti* ('Look — this is what they did inside my house!') is God's outraged cry. The word *beiti* ('my house') is intimate — the Temple is God's personal dwelling, and they brought the contamination of child sacrifice into it.
40. The allegory returns to the prostitution theme. The preparations described — bathing (*rachats*), painting the eyes (*kachalt einayikh* — applying kohl, black eye cosmetic), and putting on jewelry (*adit edi*) — are a woman preparing for her lovers. The 'men from far away' are the foreign nations whose alliances Jerusalem actively sought. The detail of sending a messenger (*mal'akh shaluach*) emphasizes that this was deliberate diplomatic initiative,

not passive seduction.

41. The scene is a lavish reception for the foreign lovers: a kittah khevuddah ('luxurious, splendid couch') and a table spread with offerings. The devastating detail: the incense and oil are God's own — qetorti ve-shamni ('my incense and my oil'). Jerusalem used the sacred materials that belonged to God's worship to entertain her foreign lovers. The covenant wife took her husband's gifts and spent them on other men (cf. Hosea 2:8).
42. The scene is noisy and festive — qol hamon shalev ('the sound of a carefree multitude'). The sove'im ('drunkards' or possibly 'Sabeans' — the text is ambiguous) come from the desert, adding to the atmosphere of reckless abandon. The bracelets (tsemidim) and crowns (ateret tif'eret — 'crowns of beauty') given to the women are the gifts that lovers bring to prostitutes — payment disguised as adornment.
43. God speaks with a tone of weary disbelief. The phrase la-balah ni'ufim ('the one worn out by adultery') describes a woman so degraded by long years of unfaithfulness that she is physically worn out (balah — 'worn out, old, exhausted'). Yet even in this state, the prostitution continues. The final ve-hi ('and she') is an exclamation of astonishment — 'even her!' — expressing God's incredulity that anyone would still pursue this exhausted, degraded partner.
44. The verb ba ('went in, came to') is the standard Hebrew euphemism for sexual intercourse (cf. Genesis 16:2, 38:16). The comparison is explicit: men used these sisters exactly as they would use a prostitute — with no commitment, no covenant, no relationship. The phrase ishot ha-zimmah ('women of depravity') is the final characterization of both sisters — Samaria and Jerusalem alike.
45. The 'righteous men' (anashim tsaddiqim) are the executors of justice. The dual charge is restated: adultery (no'afot) and bloodshed (shofkhot dam). The judgment they render will be appropriate to both crimes. Under Torah law, the penalty for adultery was death (Leviticus 20:10, Deuteronomy 22:22), and the penalty for murder was death (Genesis 9:6, Exodus 21:12). Both sentences converge on the same result.
46. The word qahal ('assembly, congregation') here functions as a legal assembly — a court that will pass and execute sentence. The punishments are za'avah ('terror, trembling') and baz ('plunder, spoil'). The procedure mirrors Deuteronomy 22:22-24, where community judgment is executed publicly.
47. The full range of covenant-curse punishments is executed: stoning (the Torah's prescribed penalty for adultery, Deuteronomy 22:24), death by the sword, loss of children, and burning of homes. The progression from personal punishment (stoning) to familial destruction (killing children) to material destruction (burning houses) constitutes total annihilation. Historically, this describes what Nebuchadnezzar's army would do to Jerusalem in 586 BCE.
48. The purpose of the punishment extends beyond Israel: 'all women' (kol ha-nashim) — all nations — will see the example and be deterred. Within the allegory, 'women' means nations. The word zimmah ('depravity') will be eradicated from the land — the purging is complete. The punishment serves a pedagogical function: it teaches the watching world what covenant unfaithfulness costs.
49. The chapter closes with the recognition formula: vi-da'ten ki ani Adonai YHWH ('then you will know that I am the Lord GOD'). This is Ezekiel's consistent theological conclusion — the purpose of judgment is knowledge of God. The phrase 'bear the penalty' (tise'nah) means they will carry the full weight of consequences for their idolatrous sins. The entire chapter — 49 verses of graphic allegory, explicit sexual imagery, and devastating judgment — serves a single theological purpose: to make Israel recognize who God is by showing them what their unfaithfulness has cost.

24

Summary: *Ezekiel 24 marks the decisive hinge of the entire book. On the very day Nebuchadnezzar begins his siege of Jerusalem, God commands Ezekiel to deliver the parable of the rusty pot — a cooking pot so encrusted with blood-rust (bloodguilt) that no amount of boiling can clean it. The pot must be emptied and burned empty over the coals until the rust is consumed. This is Jerusalem: her bloodguilt is so deep that only total destruction can purge it. Then the chapter turns shockingly personal: God tells Ezekiel that his wife — 'the delight of your eyes' — will die, and he is forbidden to mourn. His enforced silence becomes a sign-act for the exiles: when Jerusalem falls, they too will be too stunned, too devastated to mourn in the normal way. The chapter closes with Ezekiel's prophetic voice silenced until a fugitive arrives with news of the city's fall (33:21-22).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is unique in the prophetic literature for the cost it exacts from the prophet himself. Ezekiel has performed many sign-acts — lying on his side for 390 days, eating food cooked over dung, shaving his head — but here God demands something incomparably more painful: the death of his beloved wife and the suppression of all grief. The Hebrew machmad enekha ('the delight of your eyes') is an extraordinarily tender term used nowhere else in prophetic literature for a spouse. The same root (chamad) appears in the Ten Commandments ('you shall not covet') — it describes what is deeply, viscerally desired. That God uses this intimate language while announcing her death makes the passage devastating. The pot parable in verses 1-14 uses the rare word chel'ah ('rust, corrosion') — a term that appears only here in the Hebrew Bible — to describe*

the irreversible contamination of Jerusalem's bloodguilt. We preserved the dating formula precisely because this is the only prophetic oracle in Ezekiel anchored to an exact historical event verifiable from Babylonian records: the tenth day of the tenth month of the ninth year (January 588 BCE).

Translation Friction: The word chel'ah (verses 6, 11, 12) is a hapax legomenon group — its exact meaning is debated, though 'rust,' 'corrosion,' or 'encrustation' captures the sense of deeply embedded impurity that cannot be scrubbed away. We chose 'rust' for its visceral clarity in English. The phrase magepah (plague, blow) in verse 16 required care — God describes his wife's death as a 'blow,' using the same vocabulary applied to divine judgment, collapsing the personal and the theological. The transition from parable (vv. 1-14) to sign-act (vv. 15-27) is abrupt in the Hebrew, and we preserved that abruptness rather than smoothing it with transitional language.

Connections: The dating formula connects to 2 Kings 25:1 and Jeremiah 52:4, which record the same date for the beginning of the siege. The pot parable echoes Ezekiel 11:3-11, where the people of Jerusalem called themselves 'meat in the pot' — now God turns their metaphor against them. The sign-act of suppressed mourning anticipates Ezekiel's silence until 33:21-22, when a fugitive brings news of the city's fall. The phrase 'delight of your eyes' reappears in verse 21 applied to the Temple — what the people most treasure will also be taken. Lamentations 2:4 uses similar language of God destroying 'all that was pleasing to the eye.'

¹The word of the LORD came to me in the ninth year, in the tenth month, on the tenth day of the month: ²Son of man, write down the name of this day — this very day. The king of Babylon has laid siege to Jerusalem on this very day. ³Speak a parable to the rebellious house and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — Set the pot on the fire, set it on, and pour water into it. ⁴Gather the cuts of meat into it — every good piece, the thigh and the shoulder. Fill it with the choicest bones. ⁵Take the choicest of the flock. Pile the bones beneath it. Bring it to a full boil so that even the bones cook inside it. ⁶Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Woe to the city of blood — a pot whose rust remains in it, whose rust has not been removed! Take out its pieces one by one; no lot has been cast for them. ⁷For the blood she shed is still in her midst. She placed it on bare rock — she did not pour it on the ground where dust could cover it. ⁸To stir up wrath, to execute vengeance, I have placed her blood on bare rock so that it would not be covered. ⁹Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Woe to the city of blood! I myself will make the fire-pile great. ¹⁰Pile on the wood, kindle the fire, cook the meat thoroughly, mix in the spices, and let the bones be charred. ¹¹Then set the pot empty on its coals so that it heats up and its copper glows red-hot, so that its impurity melts within it and its rust is consumed. ¹²It has been labored over in vain — her heavy rust will not leave her. Into the fire with her rust! ¹³Your impurity is depravity. Because I tried to cleanse you but you would not be cleansed, you will not be cleansed from your impurity again until I have spent my wrath on you. ¹⁴I, the LORD, have spoken. It is coming — I will act. I will not relent, I will not show pity, and I will not change my mind. According to your ways and your deeds you will be judged, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁶Son of man, I am about to take from you the delight of your eyes with a sudden blow. But you must not mourn, you must not weep, and no tears must fall from you. ¹⁷Groan in silence. Do not observe mourning rites for the dead. Bind your turban on your head and put your sandals on your feet. Do not cover your upper lip, and do not eat the bread of mourners. ¹⁸I spoke to the people in the morning, and in the evening my wife died. The next morning I did as I had been commanded. ¹⁹The people said to me, "Will you not tell us what these things mean for us — why you are acting this way?" ²⁰I said to them: The word of the LORD came to me: ²¹Say to the house of Israel: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am about to desecrate my sanctuary, the pride of your strength, the delight of your eyes, and the longing of your soul. And your sons and daughters whom you left behind will fall by the sword. ²²You will do as I have done: you will not cover your upper lip, and you will not eat the bread of mourners. ²³Your turbans will stay on your heads and your sandals on your feet. You will not mourn or weep, but you will waste away in your guilt and groan to one another. ²⁴Ezekiel will be a sign for you. Everything he has done, you will do. When this comes, you will know that I am the Lord GOD. ²⁵And you, son of man — on the day when I take from them their stronghold, the joy of their splendor, the delight of their eyes and the longing of their hearts — their sons and their daughters — ²⁶on that day a fugitive will come to you to report the news to your ears. ²⁷On that day your mouth will be opened in the presence of the fugitive, and you will speak and no longer be silent. You will be a sign to them, and they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This date — the tenth of Tevet in the ninth year of Jehoiachin's exile — corresponds to January 15, 588 BCE, the day Nebuchadnezzar began the siege of Jerusalem (2 Kings 25:1, Jeremiah 52:4). This is the most precisely dated oracle in Ezekiel, and it is the only one that can be independently verified from Babylonian records. The fast of the tenth of Tevet is still observed in Judaism as a day of mourning for the beginning of the siege.
2. The phrase *etsem ha-yom ha-zeh* ('this very day') is repeated twice for emphasis — the word *etsem* literally means 'bone, substance, essence,' conveying 'the very substance of this day.' The same construction appears in Genesis 7:13 (the day Noah entered the ark) and Exodus 12:17 (the day of the Exodus) — it marks dates of supreme covenantal significance. God reveals to Ezekiel in Babylon what is happening simultaneously in Jerusalem, hundreds of miles away.
3. The word *marshal* ('parable, proverb, allegory') introduces the pot allegory. The 'rebellious house' (*beit ha-meri*) is Ezekiel's characteristic term for Israel (2:5-6, 3:9, 12:2). The pot (*sir*) was already invoked as a metaphor in 11:3 by Jerusalem's leaders who boasted 'this city is the pot and we are the meat' — meaning the city walls protect us. Now God turns the image against them: the pot will not protect but destroy.
4. The *netachim* ('pieces, cuts') are butchered portions of meat. The thigh (*yarekh*) and shoulder (*kateph*) are the prime cuts — in sacrificial terminology, these are the portions reserved for the priests (Leviticus 7:32-34). The irony is bitter: the priestly prophet describes Jerusalem's inhabitants as sacrificial meat, but this is no offering to God — it is a pot of judgment.
5. The verb *ratach* ('to boil, to seethe') is intensified by the cognate noun *retacheiha* — literally 'boil its boilings,' a construction emphasizing the violence of the boiling. The piling of bones beneath the pot to fuel the fire adds a grim dimension: the bones serve both as fuel and as contents, blurring the distinction between what feeds the fire and what is consumed by it.
6. *Chel'ah* is a rare term — possibly a hapax legomenon group — whose meaning is debated. Options include 'rust,' 'verdigris,' 'scum,' or 'encrustation.' We chose 'rust' because it best conveys the idea of deep, structural contamination that cannot be removed by ordinary means. The phrase 'no lot has been cast for them' means the pieces (inhabitants) are removed indiscriminately — there is no sorting, no selection for mercy. Everyone goes.
7. This verse invokes the law of Genesis 9:4 and Leviticus 17:13 requiring that blood be poured on the ground and covered with earth. Blood left exposed on bare rock (*tsechichach sela*, 'the smooth surface of rock') cries out for justice — it cannot be absorbed or hidden. The image recalls Abel's blood crying from the ground (Genesis 4:10). Jerusalem has been so brazen in her violence that she has not even attempted to conceal her crimes.
8. God declares that he has made Jerusalem's bloodguilt visible and unconcealable — not merely that she failed to cover it, but that God himself ensured it remained exposed. The theological point is judicial: God will not allow evidence of guilt to be hidden. The word *chemah* ('wrath, fury') refers to God's burning anger provoked by the visible, unburied blood.
9. God takes personal ownership of the coming destruction with *gam ani* ('I myself'). The *medurah* ('fire-pile, bonfire') shifts the metaphor slightly — the pot is now over a great bonfire, not a cooking fire. The scale of the judgment is escalating.
10. The rapid imperatives create urgency — five commands in quick succession. The verb *hirkach* ('to mix spices, to season') with *merqachah* ('spice mixture') is unusual in a judgment context — it may suggest sarcastic irony (seasoning meat destined for destruction) or simply indicate that the cooking is thorough and complete. The bones being charred (*yecharu*) means the fire is so intense that even the bones — the most durable part — are consumed.
11. After the contents are removed, the empty pot is placed back on the coals — the purpose is not cooking but purging. The word *tum'ah* ('impurity, uncleanness') is priestly vocabulary for ritual defilement (Leviticus 5:3, 7:20-21). The copper (*nechoset*) must glow with heat to burn away the *chel'ah* ('rust') that ordinary boiling could not remove. The theological metaphor is clear: the city must be emptied of its inhabitants (exile) and then subjected to destructive fire (siege and burning) to purge the bloodguilt that permeates its very structure.
12. This verse is textually difficult. The Hebrew *te'unim* ('labors, toils') may suggest exhausting but futile efforts to clean the pot. The point is devastating: every attempt to purge Jerusalem's guilt has failed. The prophets labored, God sent warnings, but the rust (*chel'ah*) remains. The only option left is destruction by fire. The phrase 'into the fire with her rust' captures the exasperated finality of the Hebrew.
13. The word *zimmah* ('depravity, lewdness, wickedness') is a term for deliberate, premeditated evil — not accidental sin but calculated wickedness (Leviticus 18:17, 19:29). God states plainly that he attempted purification (*tiharetikh*, 'I cleansed you') but the people refused to become clean (*lo taharet*). The result is that purification is no longer available through prophetic warning — only through the full outpouring of divine wrath (*chamah*). The verb *hiniachi* ('to cause to rest, to settle') paradoxically uses the language of rest for the completion of wrath.
14. Three negated verbs express God's irreversible resolve: *lo efra* ('I will not relent/hold back'), *lo achus* ('I will not show pity/spare'), *lo enachem* ('I will not change my mind/feel regret'). The verb *nacham* ('to relent, to feel compassion, to change one's mind') is the same verb used in Genesis 6:6 where God 'regretted' making humanity. Here God declares that no such reversal is possible for Jerusalem. The phrase 'according to your ways and your deeds' makes the judgment retributive — the punishment corresponds to the crime.
15. The standard reception formula marks a new oracle. The shift from the pot parable (vv. 1-14) to the sign-act of Ezekiel's wife (vv. 15-27) is abrupt — a new word of the LORD introduces an entirely different kind of prophetic action. The parable was public teaching; what follows is painfully personal.
16. The phrase *machmad enekha* ('the delight of your eyes') is an extraordinarily tender term for Ezekiel's wife. The root *chamad* means 'to desire deeply, to delight in' — the same root in the tenth commandment (*lo tachmod*, 'you shall not covet'). That God describes her with this intimate language while announcing her death creates a devastating juxtaposition. The word *magephah* ('blow, plague, stroke') is used elsewhere for divine

- judgment on populations (Exodus 9:14, Numbers 14:37) — here it is applied to one woman, collapsing the distinction between personal loss and national catastrophe. The three prohibitions (no mourning, no weeping, no tears) deny Ezekiel every normal expression of grief.
17. Every element reverses standard mourning practice: in ancient Israel, mourners removed their headcoverings, went barefoot, covered the lower face (the upper lip/mustache area), and received consolation bread from neighbors. God commands Ezekiel to do none of this — to dress and behave as if nothing has happened. The phrase *he'aneq dom* ('groan silently') is particularly cruel: Ezekiel may groan inwardly but must suppress all outward expression. The 'bread of men' (*lechem anashim*) likely refers to the mourner's meal provided by the community (cf. Jeremiah 16:7, Hosea 9:4).
 18. The verse is devastating in its restraint. Three brief clauses compress an entire day of agony: morning prophecy, evening death, morning obedience. The Hebrew offers no emotional elaboration — no description of grief, no cry of protest, no record of Ezekiel's inner state. The silence itself is the sign. The phrase *ka'asher tsuvveti* ('as I had been commanded') emphasizes Ezekiel's obedience at the cost of his own humanity. This is the most costly act of prophetic obedience in the Hebrew Bible.
 19. The people's question reveals that Ezekiel's behavior is visibly abnormal — the suppression of mourning is so startling that they demand an explanation. The phrase *mah elleh lanu* ('what are these things to us') asks not just what Ezekiel is doing but what his actions signify for them. They have learned to read his sign-acts as messages about their own fate.
 20. Ezekiel does not answer from his own grief or interpretation — he speaks only the word of the LORD. Even in explaining his personal tragedy, the prophetic formula takes precedence over personal expression.
 21. Three descriptions of the Temple pile up: 'the pride of your strength' (*ge'on uzzekem* — their source of national confidence), 'the delight of your eyes' (*machmad enekhem* — what they most love to look upon), and 'the longing of your soul' (*machmal nafshekhem* — what their whole being yearns for). The parallel between Ezekiel's wife and the Temple is deliberate and devastating. The word *mechallel* ('to profane, to desecrate') is shocking from God's own mouth — God will violate the sanctity of his own house. The sons and daughters 'left behind' are those remaining in Jerusalem when the exiles were deported.
 22. The sign-act is now interpreted: just as Ezekiel did not mourn for his wife, the exiles will not mourn for Jerusalem and the Temple. But the parallel goes deeper — they will not mourn not because they are forbidden to, but because they will be too stunned, too devastated. The grief will be beyond the capacity of mourning rituals to express.
 23. The verb *namaqotem* ('you will waste away, you will rot') describes a slow internal dissolution — not dramatic weeping but a corrosive grief that eats from within. The word *avonot* ('iniquities, guilt') makes clear that their suffering is not innocent — they waste away because of their own guilt. The final phrase 'groan to one another' (*nehamtem ish el achiv*) suggests a communal, subdued grief — not the loud lament of formal mourning but the quiet, helpless groaning of people who know they brought this on themselves.
 24. The word *mophet* ('sign, portent, wonder') designates Ezekiel's entire life as a prophetic symbol. This is the only verse in the book where Ezekiel is referred to by his own name in God's speech — normally he is addressed as 'son of man.' The use of his personal name emphasizes that the sign is inseparable from the man: Ezekiel himself, in his grief and his silence, is the message. The recognition formula 'you will know that I am the Lord GOD' appears throughout Ezekiel as the purpose clause of divine action.
 25. The phrase *massa nafsham* ('the burden/longing of their soul') describes what their whole being carries — their children. The Temple is their stronghold (*ma'uzzam*), their aesthetic joy (*mesos tiph'artam*), and their visual delight (*machmad eni'hem*), but their sons and daughters are the burden of their very souls. The verse builds through four descriptions of what will be lost, climaxing with the most personal: their children.
 26. The *palit* ('fugitive, escapee') anticipates 33:21-22, where a survivor from Jerusalem arrives and tells Ezekiel that the city has fallen. The phrase *le-hashma'ut oznayim* ('to cause ears to hear') emphasizes the physicality of the news — it will be heard with actual ears, not received in vision. The prophetic word given in vision (24:2) will be confirmed by historical report.
 27. Ezekiel's prophetic voice, constrained since this moment, will be released when the fugitive arrives with news of Jerusalem's fall (fulfilled in 33:21-22). The verb *te'alem* ('to be mute, to be silent') refers to the prophetic silence imposed on Ezekiel — he cannot speak except when God gives him a specific message (cf. 3:26-27). The restoration of speech marks the transition from judgment oracles to restoration oracles. The word *mophet* ('sign') again designates Ezekiel's entire person as a prophetic symbol. The recognition formula 'they will know that I am the LORD' closes both this oracle and the entire first section of the book (chs. 1-24).

25

Summary: *Ezekiel 25 opens the second major section of the book: the oracles against the nations (chs. 25-32). After the judgment on Israel is sealed in chapter 24, the prophetic lens turns outward to Israel's immediate neighbors — Ammon, Moab, Edom, and Philistia — each of whom responded to Jerusalem's fall with malicious glee. These are short, sharp oracles, not the extended poems reserved for Tyre and Egypt. The charge against each nation is the same in essence: they rejoiced at Israel's humiliation and sought to profit from her destruction. The theological logic is clear — if God judges his own people for covenant violation, he will certainly judge the nations who mocked his people's suffering.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *These four oracles share a common structure: accusation (introduced by ya'an, 'because'), followed by judgment (introduced by laken, 'therefore'), followed by the recognition formula ('they will know that I am the LORD'). This formulaic structure is deliberate — it presents God as the universal judge who holds all nations accountable, not only Israel. The nations are not judged for violating the Sinai covenant (they were never party to it) but for violating basic moral obligations: gloating over a neighbor's suffering, seizing territory from the vulnerable, and acting from ancient hatred. The progression from Ammon (east) to Moab (east-southeast) to Edom (south) to Philistia (west) traces a geographic arc around Judah, surrounding the fallen nation with hostile neighbors — and then surrounding those neighbors with divine judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase benei qedem ('people of the east,' v. 4) required care — it refers to desert-dwelling nomadic peoples east of the Jordan, not to a specific nation. The punishment for Ammon involves being overrun by these easterners who will set up their encampments in Ammonite territory. The Edom oracle (vv. 12-14) introduces the concept of neqamah ('vengeance') applied both to Edom's actions and to God's response — Edom took vengeance on Judah, so God will take vengeance on Edom. We maintained the same Hebrew root in both directions to preserve the measure-for-measure logic.*

Connections: *The Ammon oracle connects to Jeremiah 49:1-6 and Amos 1:13-15. The Moab oracle connects to Isaiah 15-16 and Jeremiah 48. The Edom oracle connects to Obadiah (the entire book), Jeremiah 49:7-22, and the extended Edom oracle in Ezekiel 35. The Philistia oracle connects to Amos 1:6-8 and Zephaniah 2:4-7. The oracles against the nations as a genre appear in Isaiah 13-23, Jeremiah 46-51, and Amos 1-2 — Ezekiel's collection is distinctive for its geographic focus on Israel's immediate neighbors before turning to the major powers (Tyre and Egypt).*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, set your face toward the Ammonites and prophesy against them. ³Say to the Ammonites: Hear the word of the Lord GOD! This is what the Lord GOD says — Because you said 'Aha!' over my sanctuary when it was desecrated, and over the land of Israel when it was laid waste, and over the house of Judah when they went into exile — ⁴Therefore I am handing you over to the people of the east as a possession. They will set up their encampments among you and pitch their dwellings in your midst. They will eat your fruit and drink your milk. ⁵I will make Rabbah a pasture for camels and the land of the Ammonites a resting place for flocks. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ⁶For this is what the Lord GOD says: Because you clapped your hands and stamped your feet and rejoiced with utter contempt in your heart over the land of Israel — ⁷Therefore I am stretching out my hand against you and handing you over as plunder to the nations. I will cut you off from the peoples and make you perish from the lands. I will destroy you, and you will know that I am the LORD. ⁸This is what the Lord GOD says: Because Moab and Seir said, 'Look — the house of Judah is just like all the other nations' — ⁹Therefore I am opening the flank of Moab — stripping away its frontier cities, the glory of the land: Beth-jeshimoth, Baal-meon, and Kiriathaim. ¹⁰I will give it to the people of the east, along with the Ammonites, as a possession, so that the Ammonites will no longer be remembered among the nations. ¹¹I will execute judgments on Moab, and they will know that I am the LORD. ¹²This is what the Lord GOD says: Because Edom acted with vengeance against the house of Judah and incurred terrible guilt by taking revenge on them — ¹³Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I will stretch out my hand against Edom and cut off from it both human and animal. I will make it a ruin from Teman to Dedan — they will fall by the sword. ¹⁴I will carry out my vengeance on Edom through the hand of my people Israel. They will act in Edom according to my anger and my wrath, and they will know my vengeance, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵This is what the

Lord GOD says: Because the Philistines acted with vengeance and took revenge with utter contempt, seeking to destroy out of ancient hostility — ¹⁶Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am stretching out my hand against the Philistines. I will cut off the Cherethites and destroy the remnant of the seacoast. ¹⁷I will carry out great acts of vengeance against them with furious punishments. They will know that I am the LORD when I bring my vengeance upon them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard reception formula marks the beginning of a new prophetic unit. No date is given for these oracles — they are positioned after the sealing of judgment on Jerusalem (ch. 24) and likely date to the period of the siege or shortly after.
2. The phrase *sim panekha* ('set your face toward') is a hostile gesture — it directs the prophetic word like a weapon aimed at a target. Ammon, east of the Jordan, was a long-standing rival of Israel. The Ammonites' capital was Rabbah (modern Amman, Jordan).
3. The exclamation *he'ach* ('Aha!') is an expression of malicious satisfaction — not sorrow or sympathy but gloating pleasure at another's misfortune. Three objects of Ammon's gloating are listed in ascending order of intimacy: God's sanctuary (the Temple), God's land (Israel), and God's people (the house of Judah). The charge is not that Ammon caused the destruction but that they celebrated it. God calls the Temple 'my sanctuary' (*miqdashi*) — even in its desecration, it belongs to God.
4. The *benei qedem* ('people of the east') are desert-dwelling nomadic peoples from the Arabian steppe east of Ammon — Bedouin-type groups who will overrun Ammon's settled agricultural territory. The word *tiroteihem* can mean 'encampments' or 'tent-villages' — it describes the nomadic settlements that will replace Ammon's cities. The punishment is territorial displacement: Ammon's land will cease to be Ammonite. 'Eating your fruit and drinking your milk' means the invaders will consume the agricultural produce that sustained Ammon.
5. Rabbah was Ammon's capital city (modern Amman, Jordan). The image of a great capital reduced to camel pasture is one of total civilizational reversal — urban space returned to pastoral use. The recognition formula 'you will know that I am the LORD' (*viyda'tem ki ani YHWH*) closes the oracle, making clear that the purpose of judgment is not mere punishment but divine self-revelation. Even the nations will come to know Israel's God through his acts of judgment.
6. A second oracle against Ammon intensifies the charge. The physical gestures — clapping hands (*macha'akha yad*) and stamping feet (*raq'akha beregel*) — are expressions of spiteful joy, the body language of malicious celebration. The word *sha'at* ('contempt, scorn') describes the emotional posture behind the gestures: deep, visceral disdain. The phrase *be-nephesh* ('with all your soul/being') indicates this was not a passing reaction but a whole-hearted, deeply felt contempt.
7. Four verbs of destruction cascade: 'I will cut you off' (*hikhrattikh*), 'make you perish' (*ha'avadtikh*), 'destroy you' (*ashmidekh*), plus the initial 'handing over as plunder' (*bag*). The word *bag* ('plunder, spoil') means Ammon itself becomes loot for other nations. The extended hand of God (*natiti et yadi*) is a gesture of divine power exercised in judgment — the same phrase used for God's acts against Egypt in the Exodus (Exodus 7:5).
8. The Moab oracle begins. Seir (another name for Edom) is paired with Moab here, though Edom receives its own separate oracle in verses 12-14. Moab's sin is theological, not merely political: they declared that Judah is 'like all the nations' (*ke-khol ha-goyim*), denying Judah's special covenant status with God. This is an assault on the doctrine of election — if Judah's God could not protect them, then Judah's claim to be God's chosen people was a delusion. The word *hinneh* ('look') introduces their mocking observation.
9. The word *keteph* ('shoulder, flank, side') is a geographic metaphor — the 'shoulder' of Moab is its border region, its defensive frontier. Opening the flank means removing its border defenses, leaving it exposed to invasion. The three cities named — Beth-jeshimoth ('house of the wastelands'), Baal-meon ('lord of the dwelling'), and Kiriathaim ('double city') — were Moabite frontier towns on the northern border, the first line of defense. The phrase *tsevi erets* ('glory/beauty of the land') marks these as Moab's finest cities.
10. Moab shares Ammon's fate — both will be overrun by the *benei qedem* ('people of the east'). The phrase 'so that the Ammonites will no longer be remembered among the nations' describes national extinction — not merely political defeat but the erasure of Ammon from historical memory. This is the ultimate punishment in the ancient Near East, where nations survived through memory and legacy.
11. The word *shephatim* ('judgments') is plural, indicating multiple acts of divine justice. The recognition formula closes the Moab oracle. The brevity of Moab's oracle (four verses) compared to the later Tyre oracle (three chapters) reflects the relative geopolitical insignificance of Moab in Ezekiel's world.
12. The Edom oracle uses the root *naqam* ('vengeance') twice — Edom's sin was *binqom naqam* ('taking vengeance'), actively punishing Judah during her fall. The phrase *va-ye'shemu ashot* ('they incurred terrible guilt') uses the verb *asham*, which carries both the sense of 'being guilty' and 'suffering the consequences of guilt.' Edom's relationship with Israel was fraught from the beginning — the ancestral brothers Jacob and Esau (Genesis 25-33) — and Edom's betrayal during Jerusalem's fall was experienced as the worst kind of family treachery.
13. Teman (in the south) and Dedan (in the north/northeast, in northwest Arabia) mark the full extent of Edomite territory — the entire land will be devastated. The phrase 'cut off human and animal' (*hikhratti ... adam u-vehemah*) describes total depopulation — even the livestock will be destroyed. The word *chorvah* ('ruin, desolation') describes permanent uninhabitability.

14. The measure-for-measure logic is explicit: Edom took vengeance (naqam) on Judah (v. 12), so God will execute his vengeance (niqmati) on Edom (v. 14) — the same root naqam appears in both verses. Uniquely among the nations oracles, God specifies that Israel will be the instrument of Edom's judgment ('through the hand of my people Israel'). This may reflect the Maccabean conquest of Idumea (the later name for Edom) in the second century BCE. The phrase 'according to my anger and my wrath' (ke-appi u-khe-chamati) describes the intensity of the coming judgment.
15. The Philistine oracle echoes the Edom oracle in using naqam ('vengeance') vocabulary. The phrase bi-sh'at be-naphesh ('with contempt in the soul') repeats the language used of Ammon in verse 6 (sha'at), creating a literary frame around the four oracles. The eivat olam ('ancient/perpetual hostility') refers to the long history of Philistine-Israelite conflict stretching back to the period of the Judges and through the monarchy (Samson, Saul, David). The word olam here means 'ancient, long-standing' rather than 'eternal.'
16. The Cherethites (keretim) were a sub-group of the Philistines, probably from Crete (the name may derive from the same root as 'Crete'). There is a wordplay in the Hebrew: hikhtratti et keretim — 'I will cut off (k-r-t) the Cherethites (k-r-t).' The paronomasia is untranslatable but should be noted. The 'remnant of the seacoast' (she'erit chof ha-yam) refers to the Philistine coastal plain — the strip of Mediterranean coast that the Philistines controlled, including Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron, and Gath.
17. The chapter closes with the strongest language yet: neqamot gedolot ('great acts of vengeance') and tokhechot chemah ('furious punishments/rebukes'). The word tokhechot can mean 'punishments,' 'rebukes,' or 'chastisements' — it carries a corrective as well as punitive sense. The recognition formula closes the Philistine oracle and the entire chapter: 'they will know that I am the LORD.' This is the theological purpose behind all four oracles — God's judgment on the nations is not merely punitive but revelatory. The nations will come to know Israel's God through his acts of justice.

26

Summary: *Ezekiel 26 begins the extended oracle against Tyre (chs. 26-28), the most elaborate judgment oracle against any foreign nation in the book. Tyre, the great Phoenician trading city on the Mediterranean coast, rejoiced at Jerusalem's fall because it meant one less competitor for the trade routes of the ancient Near East. God responds with a prophecy of total destruction: many nations will come against Tyre like waves crashing against the shore. Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon is named as the first instrument of judgment — his armies will besiege Tyre by land. But the oracle extends beyond Nebuchadnezzar to envision Tyre's complete erasure: the proud city will become bare rock, a place for spreading fishing nets, never to be rebuilt.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wave metaphor in verse 3 is one of the most striking images in prophetic literature: God will bring nations against Tyre 'like the sea raises its waves.' Since Tyre was an island city (its mainland component was called Ushu), the image of waves crashing against it is both metaphorical and geographically apt. The prophecy proved partially accurate — Nebuchadnezzar besieged mainland Tyre for thirteen years (585-572 BCE) but never fully captured the island city. Alexander the Great finally destroyed island Tyre in 332 BCE by building a causeway from the mainland. The detailed description of siege warfare in verses 8-11 (siege walls, ramps, battering rams, cavalry) reflects the actual Babylonian military technology of Ezekiel's era. The descent-to-sheol language in verses 19-21 connects this oracle to the underworld passages in chapters 31-32, where fallen empires join one another in the realm of the dead.*

Translation Friction: *The dating in verse 1 is incomplete — the Hebrew gives 'the eleventh year, on the first of the month' but does not specify which month. Scholars debate whether this is a scribal omission or a deliberate dating to the first day of some particular month. We retained the text as it stands and noted the ambiguity. The shift from Nebuchadnezzar (singular, vv. 7-11) to a general 'they' (plural, vv. 12-14) created a translation challenge — the antecedent shifts from one king to the collective nations of verse 3. We made this transition clear without adding words to the Hebrew. The word selah in verse 4 ('bare rock') is the same word used for Sela, the Edomite fortress — its use here for what Tyre will become creates an ironic inversion: the great city reduced to bare stone.*

Connections: *The Tyre oracle connects to Isaiah 23 (Isaiah's oracle against Tyre), Amos 1:9-10, and Zechariah 9:3-4. The thirteen-year siege by Nebuchadnezzar is referenced again in Ezekiel 29:17-20, where God compensates Nebuchadnezzar with Egypt because Tyre yielded him no plunder. The descent-to-the-pit language in verses 19-21 anticipates the Egyptian descent oracles in 31:14-18 and 32:17-32. The commercial wealth of Tyre catalogued here prepares for the elaborate trade-list of chapter 27 and the king-of-Tyre oracle in chapter 28.*

¹In the eleventh year, on the first of the month, the word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, because Tyre said about Jerusalem, 'Aha! The gateway of the peoples is broken — it has swung open to me! I will be filled now that she is laid waste' — ³Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am against you, Tyre. I will bring many nations up against you, as the sea raises its waves. ⁴They will destroy the walls of Tyre and tear down her towers. I will scrape her soil from her and make her bare rock. ⁵She will become a place for spreading fishing nets in the midst of the sea, for I have spoken, declares the Lord GOD. She will become plunder for the nations. ⁶Her daughter-towns on the mainland will be killed by the sword, and they will know that I am the LORD. ⁷For this is what the Lord GOD says: I am bringing against Tyre Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon from the north — a king of kings — with horses, chariots, cavalry, and a vast assembly of troops. ⁸He will kill your daughter-towns on the mainland with the sword. He will build siege works against you, raise a siege ramp against you, and set up a wall of shields against you. ⁹He will direct the blows of his battering rams against your walls and tear down your towers with his axes. ¹⁰The dust from his many horses will cover you. Your walls will shake at the sound of cavalry, wagon wheels, and chariots when he enters your gates as one enters a city whose walls have been breached. ¹¹With the hooves of his horses he will trample all your streets. He will kill your people with the sword, and your mighty pillars will topple to the ground. ¹²They will plunder your wealth and loot your merchandise. They will tear down your walls and demolish your fine houses. Your stones, your timber, and your rubble they will throw into the sea. ¹³I will put an end to the sound of your songs, and the music of your lyres will be heard no more. ¹⁴I will make you bare rock. You will be a place for spreading fishing nets. You will never be rebuilt, for I, the LORD, have spoken, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵This is what the Lord GOD says to Tyre: Will the coastlands not tremble at the sound of your fall, when the wounded groan, when slaughter rages in your midst? ¹⁶Then all the princes of the sea will step down from their thrones. They will remove their robes and strip off their embroidered garments. They will clothe themselves with trembling, sit on the ground, and tremble without ceasing, appalled at you. ¹⁷They will raise a lament over you and say to you: 'How you have perished, you who were peopled from the seas — the renowned city that was mighty on the sea, she and her inhabitants, who spread their terror to all who lived near them!' ¹⁸Now the coastlands tremble on the day of your fall; the islands in the sea are terrified at your end. ¹⁹For this is what the Lord GOD says: When I make you a desolated city, like cities where no one lives, when I bring the deep up over you and the great waters cover you — ²⁰then I will bring you down with those who descend to the pit, to the people of long ago. I will make you dwell in the earth below, in the ancient ruins, with those who go down to the pit, so that you will never again be inhabited. But I will set beauty in the land of the living. ²¹I will make you an object of horror, and you will be no more. You will be sought but never found again — ever, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The dating formula is unusual — it specifies the year (the eleventh year of Jehoiachin's exile, approximately 587/586 BCE) and the day (the first) but omits the month. This is the only date formula in Ezekiel missing the month. Some scholars emend the text to supply a month (often the fifth or twelfth), but we follow the MT as it stands. The eleventh year places this oracle near the time of Jerusalem's fall, consistent with Tyre's reported gloating.
2. Tyre's sin is commercial opportunism: Jerusalem served as the *daltot ha-ammmim* ('gateway/doors of the peoples'), controlling overland trade routes between Egypt, Mesopotamia, and the Mediterranean coast. With Jerusalem destroyed, Tyre expected to absorb that trade. The exclamation *he'ach* ('Aha!') — the same word used of Ammon in 25:3 — expresses malicious satisfaction. The verb *immale'ah* ('I will be filled/enriched') reveals Tyre's purely mercantile calculus: Jerusalem's ruin equals Tyre's profit. The word *choravah* ('ruin, desolation') applied to Jerusalem becomes ironic — Tyre herself will be reduced to the same state.
3. The wave metaphor (*ke-ha'alot ha-yam le-gallav*, 'as the sea raises its waves') is brilliantly chosen for an island city. Nations will crash against Tyre in successive waves — not one single assault but relentless, repeated attacks over time. The phrase *hineni alayikh* ('I am against you') is the most direct form of divine hostility in prophetic literature — God himself takes the position of adversary. The plural 'many nations' (*goyim rabbim*) extends the prophecy beyond any single attacker.
4. The shift from 'they' (the nations) to 'I' (God) in mid-verse is significant — the nations are the instruments, but God is the agent. The verb *sicheti* ('I will scrape') describes a thorough, violent removal of all soil and debris down to the bedrock. The result — *tsechichach sela* ('bare/smooth rock') — is the same phrase used in 24:7-8 for the exposed rock where Jerusalem's blood was placed. The great city will be reduced to bare stone, stripped of everything that made it inhabitable.

5. The image of Tyre as a place for drying fishing nets (mishtach charamim) is one of the most vivid images of desolation in prophetic literature. The great commercial metropolis — the wealthiest trading city in the ancient world — reduced to a flat rock where fishermen spread their nets to dry. The phrase 'in the midst of the sea' (betokh ha-yam) emphasizes Tyre's island location, which made it seem impregnable but will ultimately define its emptiness. The divine speech formula 'for I have spoken' (ki ani dibbarti) underscores the irrevocability of the decree.
6. The 'daughters' (benoteha) of Tyre are not literal daughters but dependent towns and settlements on the mainland (ba-sadeh, 'in the field/open country') — the agricultural and suburban communities that supported the island city. These mainland dependencies would fall first to any invading army. The recognition formula closes this introductory section before the detailed description of Nebuchadnezzar's siege begins.
7. Nebuchadnezzar is named explicitly — the only foreign king named in Ezekiel's oracles against the nations. The title melekh melakhim ('king of kings') is a Mesopotamian royal title reflecting the imperial structure where vassal kings served under the great king. The phrase 'from the north' (mi-tsaphon) follows the convention that invasion comes from the north, since armies from Mesopotamia approached the Levant via the northern route through Syria (the direct eastern approach across the Arabian desert was impractical). The military catalogue — horses, chariots, cavalry, assembly, and many people — enumerates the full Babylonian military apparatus.
8. Three elements of siege warfare are described with technical precision: dayeq ('siege works, siege tower'), solelah ('siege ramp, earthen mound'), and tsinnah ('large shield, shield-wall'). The tsinnah here likely refers to a testudo-like formation — a wall of shields used to protect soldiers advancing under fire toward the city walls. Each term reflects actual Neo-Babylonian military technology. The repetition of 'against you' (alayikh) three times emphasizes the relentless pressure of the siege.
9. The phrase mechi qovlo is literally 'the blow of his battering device' — the qovel is a battering ram or siege engine. The charavot ('swords' or possibly 'axes, picks') used to tear down towers may refer to the demolition tools used after walls were breached. The verse moves from breaching the walls (battering rams) to demolishing the towers (axes), describing the sequential destruction of Tyre's defenses.
10. The sensory imagery is vivid: dust so thick it covers the city (visual), the thunderous noise of cavalry and chariot wheels shaking the walls (auditory). The word galgal ('wheel') may refer to siege wagon wheels or chariot wheels. The comparison 'as one enters a breached city' (ke-mevo'ei ir mevuyqa'ah) describes the unstoppable momentum of an army pouring through broken defenses — there is no longer any resistance.
11. The matsevoth uzzekkh ('pillars/monuments of your strength') are debated: they may be memorial pillars, sacred pillars (massebot), or structural columns of public buildings. Given Tyre's famous architecture — particularly the temple of Melqart — these are likely monumental columns that symbolized Tyre's power and grandeur. Their fall to the ground represents the collapse of everything Tyre built and stood for.
12. The subject shifts from 'he' (Nebuchadnezzar, vv. 7-11) to 'they' (the many nations of v. 3). The commercial vocabulary — chayil ('wealth'), rekhulah ('merchandise, trade goods') — targets what Tyre valued most. The phrase 'stones, timber, and rubble into the sea' (betokh mayim, 'into the midst of the water') proved remarkably prescient: Alexander the Great literally threw the rubble of mainland Tyre into the sea to build a causeway to the island in 332 BCE. The batei chemdatekh ('houses of your desire/delight') are Tyre's luxury residences — the homes of the wealthy merchants.
13. The silence of music represents the end of civilization — songs and lyres (kinnorot) were markers of prosperity, celebration, and cultural life. The same motif appears in the Babylon oracle of Revelation 18:22 ('the sound of harpists and musicians will never be heard in you again'), which draws heavily on Ezekiel 26-27. The verb hishbatti ('I will cause to cease') is emphatic — God personally silences the music.
14. This verse repeats the key images from verses 4-5: bare rock (tsechichach sela) and fishing nets (mishtach charamim). The declaration 'you will never be rebuilt' (lo tibaneh od) is the most absolute form of judgment — not temporary exile or partial destruction but permanent, irreversible erasure. The double divine speech formula ('I, the LORD, have spoken, declares the Lord GOD') reinforces the finality. Ancient Tyre was never rebuilt in its original form — the modern city of Sur (Lebanon) occupies a different location from the original island fortress.
15. The iyyim ('islands, coastlands') are the Mediterranean trading partners who depended on Tyre's commerce. Their trembling is both economic (their trade networks are collapsing) and existential (if mighty Tyre can fall, no one is safe). The word mappaltekha ('your fall, your downfall') is from the root n-p-l ('to fall') and describes a catastrophic collapse. The groaning of the wounded (be-enoq chalah) and the raging slaughter (be-hareg hereg) create an auditory landscape of destruction.
16. The 'princes of the sea' (nesi'ei ha-yam) are the rulers of the Mediterranean maritime states — Tyre's trading partners and fellow coastal powers. Their mourning rituals mirror ancient Near Eastern lament practices: descending from thrones (loss of authority), removing royal garments (stripping of status), sitting on the ground (posture of grief). The phrase charadot yilbashu ('they will clothe themselves with trembling') is a vivid metaphor — trembling becomes their garment, replacing their embroidered finery. The word riqmah ('embroidery, multicolored fabric') describes the luxury textiles for which Phoenician craftsmanship was famous.
17. The qinah ('lament, dirge') is a formal genre of funeral poetry — the same word used for David's lament over Saul and Jonathan (2 Samuel 1:17). The opening eikh ('how!') is the characteristic opening of the lament genre (cf. Lamentations 1:1, 'How lonely sits the city'). The phrase noshebet mi-yammim ('peopled/inhabited from the seas') describes Tyre's identity as a sea-based civilization — her population came from and lived by the sea. The word hallalah ('renowned, praised') may also echo challal ('pierced, slain'), creating a grim wordplay: the praised city is now the slain city.
18. The iyyim ('coastlands, islands') appear twice in this verse, emphasizing the far-reaching impact of Tyre's fall. The word mi-tse'tekh ('at your departure, at your going out') is ambiguous — it could mean 'at your departure' (from existence), 'at your end,' or 'at what comes from you' (the shockwaves of your destruction). We rendered it as 'at your end' to capture the finality. The repetition of trembling and terror throughout this section creates a portrait of a Mediterranean world in shock.

- 19.** The word *tehom* ('the deep, the abyss') is the primordial chaos-water of Genesis 1:2 — the same word used for the formless deep before creation. Bringing the *tehom* over Tyre is an act of de-creation: God is reversing creation for this city, returning it to the primordial chaos from which order was drawn. The *mayim rabbim* ('great waters, many waters') reinforces this cosmic dimension. For an island city, the threat of being swallowed by the deep is both metaphorical (cosmic judgment) and viscerally real.
- 20.** The descent-to-sheol language here anticipates the elaborate underworld passages in chapters 31-32. The phrase *am olam* ('people of long ago, people of eternity') refers to the dead of all ages who already inhabit the underworld. The word *tachtiyyot* ('lowest places, depths') describes the deepest level of the underworld. The contrast between Tyre's descent into the pit and God setting *tsevi* ('beauty, glory, splendor') in the 'land of the living' (*erets chayyim*) is theologically significant — death for the proud city, life and beauty for God's people.
- 21.** The final verse delivers the most absolute verdict possible. The word *ballahot* ('terrors, horrors') means Tyre will become a cautionary tale — an object of horror for other nations. The phrase *ve-einekh* ('and you are not, and you will be no more') is the language of total annihilation — not defeat or decline but nonexistence. The searching (*tevuqeshi*) without finding (*lo timmatse'i*) describes permanent disappearance: people will look for Tyre and find nothing. The temporal marker *le-olam* ('forever, for all time') and the divine speech formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* seal the oracle with absolute finality.

27

Summary: *Ezekiel 27 is a funeral dirge for Tyre cast as the sinking of a magnificent merchant ship. The chapter opens with God commanding Ezekiel to raise a lamentation over Tyre, then constructs an elaborate ship-allegory: Tyre is a vessel of perfect beauty, built from the finest materials of the known world. The middle section (vv. 12-25) is the most extensive trade catalogue in the Hebrew Bible, naming over twenty trading partners and dozens of commodities — metals, textiles, spices, livestock, slaves, and luxury goods. The final section (vv. 26-36) describes the ship's destruction by the east wind and the worldwide mourning that follows. The maritime nations weep, the merchants are appalled, and the great ship that was the pride of the seas sinks forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is an extraordinary achievement of prophetic poetry — a sustained metaphor in which an entire city-state becomes a single ship, and its economic collapse becomes a shipwreck. The trade catalogue in verses 12-25 is the most detailed economic document in the Hebrew Bible and a primary source for reconstructing ancient Near Eastern trade networks. Every commodity and every trading partner is historically attested. The chapter also anticipates the fall of Babylon in Revelation 18, which borrows extensively from Ezekiel 27's imagery of merchants weeping over a fallen commercial power. We preserved the poetic structure of the dirge sections while rendering the trade catalogue with the precision its economic vocabulary demands. The Hebrew contains numerous rare words for trade goods — some appearing only here in the entire Bible (*hapax legomena*) — and we documented each uncertain identification in translator notes.*

Translation Friction: *The trade catalogue contains some of the most difficult vocabulary in the Hebrew Bible. Several commodity terms are *hapax legomena* whose identification depends on cognate languages (Akkadian, Ugaritic, Arabic) and ancient trade records. The geographic identifications are sometimes uncertain — 'Tarshish' may be Tartessus in Spain, Tarsus in Cilicia, or a general term for distant western maritime destinations. The Hebrew phrase 'izzim (27:21) could mean 'goats' or a specific breed; we followed the standard identification. The word *pannag* (27:17) is one of the most debated terms in Ezekiel — possibly a place name, possibly a food product (millet, wax, or a type of confection). We rendered it as 'millet' with a note on the uncertainty. The shift from prose trade list back to poetic dirge in verse 26 required careful handling of register.*

Connections: *Revelation 18 draws extensively on this chapter for its depiction of Babylon's fall — the weeping merchants, the catalogue of luxury goods, the maritime mourning. Isaiah 23 contains an earlier oracle against Tyre. The ship metaphor connects to ancient Near Eastern maritime mythology and to Psalm 48:7 (ships of Tarshish broken by the east wind). The east wind (*ruach qadim*) that destroys the ship is the same wind that parts the Red Sea (Exodus 14:21) and withers Jonah's plant (Jonah 4:8) — a recurring biblical symbol of divine judgment from the desert.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"And you, son of man, raise a lamentation over Tyre, ³and say to Tyre, who sits at the entrance to the sea, merchant to the peoples on many coastlands: This is what the Lord GOD says — Tyre, you have said, 'I am perfect in beauty.' ⁴Your borders are in the heart of the seas; your builders perfected your beauty. ⁵They built all your

planking from cypresses of Senir; they took cedar from Lebanon to make your mast. ⁶From oaks of Bashan they made your oars; your deck they made of boxwood inlaid with ivory from the coastlands of Cyprus. ⁷Embroidered linen from Egypt was your sail, serving as your banner; blue and purple cloth from the coastlands of Elishah was your awning. ⁸The inhabitants of Sidon and Arvad were your rowers; your own skilled men, Tyre, were your pilots. ⁹The elders of Gebal and its craftsmen were in you, caulking your seams; all the ships of the sea and their sailors came to you to trade your merchandise. ¹⁰Persia, Lud, and Put served in your army as your warriors. They hung shield and helmet in you; they gave you your splendor. ¹¹The men of Arvad with your army were on your walls all around, and warriors were in your towers. They hung their quivers on your walls all around; they made your beauty complete. ¹²Tarshish traded with you because of your great wealth of every kind. They exchanged silver, iron, tin, and lead for your wares. ¹³Greece, Tubal, and Meshech were your traders. They exchanged human slaves and bronze vessels for your merchandise. ¹⁴Beth-togarmah exchanged horses, war horses, and mules for your wares. ¹⁵The people of Dedan were your traders; many coastlands were markets under your hand. They brought you ivory tusks and ebony as payment. ¹⁶Aram traded with you because of your abundant products. They exchanged turquoise, purple cloth, embroidered work, fine linen, coral, and rubies for your wares. ¹⁷Judah and the land of Israel — they were your traders. They exchanged wheat from Minnith, millet, honey, oil, and balm for your merchandise. ¹⁸Damascus traded with you because of your abundant products and great wealth of every kind — with wine from Helbon and white wool. ¹⁹Dan and Greece from Uzal exchanged wrought iron, cassia, and aromatic cane for your merchandise. ²⁰Dedan traded with you in saddlecloths for riding. ²¹Arabia and all the chieftains of Kedar — they were traders under your hand, dealing in lambs, rams, and goats. ²²The traders of Sheba and Raamah — they were your traders. They exchanged the finest of every spice, every kind of precious stone, and gold for your wares. ²³Haran, Canneh, and Eden, the traders of Sheba, Asshur, and Chilmad were your traders. ²⁴These traded with you in luxury garments, in cloaks of blue and embroidered work, and in chests of multicolored fabric, bound with cords and secured with cedar, among your merchandise. ²⁵The ships of Tarshish were the caravans of your trade. You were filled and heavily laden in the heart of the seas. ²⁶Your rowers brought you out into deep waters, but the east wind shattered you in the heart of the seas. ²⁷Your wealth, your wares, your merchandise, your sailors and your pilots, your caulkers, your traders, all your warriors who are in you, and all the crew assembled within you — they will fall into the heart of the seas on the day of your downfall. ²⁸At the sound of your pilots' cry, the open waters will tremble. ²⁹All who handle the oar, the sailors, all the pilots of the sea will come down from their ships; they will stand on the shore. ³⁰They will raise their voices over you and cry out bitterly. They will throw dust on their heads and roll in ashes. ³¹They will shave their heads bald for you and put on sackcloth. They will weep over you with anguish of soul, with bitter mourning. ³²In their wailing they will raise a lamentation over you; they will chant over you: 'Who was ever like Tyre, now silenced in the midst of the sea?' ³³When your goods went out from the seas, you satisfied many peoples; with your abundant wealth and merchandise, you enriched the kings of the earth. ³⁴Now you are shattered by the seas, in the depths of the waters; your merchandise and all your crew have gone down with you. ³⁵All the inhabitants of the coastlands are appalled at you; their kings shudder with horror, their faces contorted with fear. ³⁶The merchants among the peoples hiss at you; you have become an object of horror, and you will be no more — forever."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') introduces direct speech and is rendered as a colon.
2. The verb *nasa* ('raise, lift up') with *qinah* ('lamentation, funeral dirge') is a technical formula for beginning a formal dirge — the same construction used in 2 Samuel 1:17 (David's lament for Saul and Jonathan) and Ezekiel 19:1. A *qinah* is not merely sadness but a structured poetic form with its characteristic limping rhythm (3+2 stress pattern).
3. The Hebrew *kelilat yofi* ('perfect in beauty') is literally 'perfection of beauty' — a construct chain emphasizing completeness. Tyre's self-description echoes the language used elsewhere of Jerusalem (Lamentations 2:15, Psalm 50:2), suggesting a claim to quasi-divine status. The word *iyim* ('coastlands, islands') refers to the Mediterranean coastal settlements that were Tyre's trading network.
4. The phrase *belev yammim* ('in the heart of the seas') is a key spatial marker that functions both literally — Tyre's island fortress sat in the Mediterranean — and metaphorically, as the ship-allegory places the vessel at the center of the ocean. The same phrase recurs in verse 25-27 when the ship sinks 'in the heart of the seas.'

5. Senir is the Amorite name for Mount Hermon (Deuteronomy 3:9) or its northern ridge. Beroshim are likely cypresses (though sometimes rendered 'fir' or 'juniper') — prized for shipbuilding because of their resistance to water. The ship-allegory now takes over completely: Tyre is no longer merely compared to a ship but described as one, plank by plank. The toren ('mast') is a rare word, appearing only here and in Isaiah 33:23.
6. The Hebrew qarsheikh is difficult — it may mean 'your deck' or 'your benches.' The phrase shen bat-ashurim is obscure: shen means 'ivory' (literally 'tooth'), bat may mean 'daughter of' or indicate material composition, and ashurim may be 'boxwood' (te'ashshur in Isaiah 41:19, 60:13) or 'Assyrians' (as a people). Most modern scholarship reads 'boxwood inlaid with ivory' — a luxury shipbuilding material. Kittim refers to Cyprus, specifically Kition (modern Larnaca), a major Mediterranean trading hub.
7. Shesh is fine linen, an Egyptian specialty. Riqmah ('embroidery') indicates luxury textile work. The sail doubled as a nes ('banner, ensign') — a visible marker of identity and wealth. Tekhelet ('blue') and argaman ('purple') are the prestigious dyes of the ancient Mediterranean — tekhelet from the murex snail (the same dye used in the tabernacle hangings, Exodus 26:1) and argaman from a related species. Elishah is likely Alashiya (Cyprus) or possibly parts of the Greek coastland.
8. Sidon and Arvad were Phoenician cities subordinate to Tyre's commercial empire. Arvad (modern Arwad, Syria) was an island city-state north of Tyre. The distinction is significant: foreign sailors row, but Tyrians pilot — Tyre controls the direction of its own commercial destiny. The word chovlayikh ('your pilots') is from the root ch-v-l relating to rope-handling and navigation.
9. Gebal is Byblos (modern Jbeil, Lebanon), one of the oldest continuously inhabited cities in the world and a major Phoenician port. The verb chazaq ('to strengthen, repair') with bedeq ('breach, crack') gives the technical term for ship-caulking — sealing seams against water. The final phrase la'arov ma'aravekh uses the root ayin-resh-bet twice, meaning 'to exchange/trade your wares' — a commercial term for barter trade.
10. Three distant peoples serve as Tyre's mercenary forces: Persia (Iran), Lud (likely Lydia in western Anatolia), and Put (Libya or Punt in northeastern Africa). The geographic spread — from Iran to Africa — emphasizes Tyre's global reach. Hanging shields on the walls was both military readiness and decorative display, enhancing the city's hadar ('splendor, majesty').
11. The Gammadim (gammadim) is one of the most debated terms in Ezekiel. The KJV transliterates it as a proper noun, but it may derive from a root meaning 'brave warriors' or 'men of valor.' Some suggest it means 'men of Gammad' (an unknown location); the Vulgate reads 'Pygmaei' (pygmies); the Targum reads 'Cappadocians.' We render as 'warriors' following the contextual sense of military garrison. The word terikheihem may mean 'their shields' or 'their quivers' — we chose 'quivers' to distinguish from the shields in verse 10.
12. The trade catalogue begins here and runs through verse 25 — the most detailed economic inventory in the Hebrew Bible. Tarshish is traditionally identified with Tartessus in southern Spain, a region rich in metals. The metals listed — silver, iron, tin, and lead — correspond to the known mineral resources of the western Mediterranean. The word izvonavikh ('your wares, your goods') appears frequently in this catalogue and refers to the goods Tyre traded outward in exchange for imports.
13. Yavan is Greece (Ionia); Tubal and Meshech are peoples of Anatolia (later associated with the regions around the Black Sea). The Hebrew benefesh adam is literally 'with the soul/life of a human being' — a stark reference to the slave trade. We render this directly as 'human slaves' because that is what the trade involved. The use of nephesh ('soul, living being') for enslaved humans is especially pointed — Tyre traded living souls as commodity. Bronze (nechoshet) vessels from Anatolia were a major trade good in the ancient Near East.
14. Togarmah is identified with Armenia or eastern Anatolia, a region famous in the ancient world for horse breeding. The word parashim can mean 'horsemen' (cavalry) or 'chariot horses' / 'war horses' — in a trade context, animals rather than riders are being exchanged, so 'war horses' is more appropriate. The three equines — general horses, war horses, and mules — represent different grades of the horse trade.
15. Dedan is an Arabian trading center (modern al-Ula in Saudi Arabia). The phrase 'coastlands were markets under your hand' indicates Tyre's commercial dominance over the Mediterranean island trade network. Qarnot shen is literally 'horns of tooth/ivory' — elephant tusks. Hovnim is ebony, the dark hardwood imported from Africa via Arabian intermediaries.
16. The MT reads Aram (Syria), though some manuscripts and the LXX read Edom — the two words differ by only one letter in Hebrew (resh/dalet confusion). The gemstone identifications are uncertain: nofekh may be turquoise, emerald, or garnet; kadmah may be ruby, agate, or carnelian. Ancient gemstone terminology does not map precisely onto modern mineralogy. Ra'mot is coral, one of the few identifications scholars agree on. Butz is fine linen, a synonym of shesh used in verse 7.
17. Israel and Judah appear in the trade catalogue as agricultural exporters — a humbling placement alongside pagan nations in a commercial inventory. Minnith is an Ammonite town (Judges 11:33) known for its wheat. Pannag (pannag) is one of the most debated words in Ezekiel — proposals include millet, a type of confection, wax, or even a place name. We render 'millet' as the most widely accepted identification, but certainty is impossible. Tsori ('balm') is the famous balm of Gilead (Genesis 37:25, Jeremiah 8:22).
18. Helbon (modern Halbun, northwest of Damascus) was famous in antiquity for its wine — Nebuchadnezzar is reported to have preferred Helbon wine. Tsemer tsachar ('white wool' or 'wool of Zahar/Sahar') — either white wool as a luxury textile or wool from a specific region. Damascus served as a crucial overland trade hub connecting Mesopotamia to the Mediterranean coast.
19. This verse is textually difficult. Me'uzzal may mean 'from Uzal' (the ancient name for Sana'a in Yemen, a spice-trading center), or it may be a verbal form meaning 'going to and fro' or 'spun/wrought.' The combination of iron with spices (cassia and aromatic cane) suggests multiple trade routes converging on Tyre. Qiddah ('cassia') and qaneh ('aromatic cane, calamus') are spice-trade commodities also listed in the tabernacle incense recipe (Exodus 30:23-24).

- 20.** Dedan appears again (see v. 15), now trading different goods. Bigdei-chofesh is literally 'garments of freedom/looseness' — probably saddlecloths, riding blankets, or loose riding garments. The word rikhbah ('riding') suggests equestrian equipment. Arabian traders were famous for camel and horse equipment.
- 21.** Kedar is an Arabian tribal confederation descended from Ishmael (Genesis 25:13), known for pastoral nomadism in the Syrian-Arabian desert. The nesi'ei ('chieftains, princes') indicates that Kedar's tribal leadership was directly involved in the livestock trade. The three categories — karim (young male lambs), elim (rams), and attudim (male goats) — represent the full range of the pastoral economy.
- 22.** Sheba (southwestern Arabia, modern Yemen) and Raamah (a related Arabian trading people, Genesis 10:7) controlled the incense and spice routes. The phrase ro'sh kol bosem ('the finest of every spice') — ro'sh here means 'chief, best, choicest,' not 'head.' These are premium-grade aromatics. The combination of spices, gemstones, and gold represents the highest tier of luxury trade in the ancient world.
- 23.** This verse lists Mesopotamian and northern Syrian trading centers. Haran is the well-known city of Abraham's family (Genesis 11:31). Canneh may be Calneh (Amos 6:2) or Kullani in northern Syria. Eden here is not the garden but a region called Bit-Adini on the upper Euphrates. Chilmad is otherwise unknown — possibly a city near Baghdad. The accumulation of names creates a panoramic map of Tyre's trade empire stretching deep into Mesopotamia.
- 24.** The Hebrew here is exceptionally dense with rare trade vocabulary. Makh'lulim ('luxury goods, finery') may refer to finished garments or a general category of fine goods. Gelomei tekhelet ('cloaks/wrappings of blue') — gelom is a rare word for a wrapped garment or carpet. Ginzei bromim ('chests/treasuries of multicolored cloth') — ginzei relates to Persian ganza ('treasury, storehouse'). The final phrase describes the packaging: goods bound with cords (chavalim) and packed in cedar (aruzim) for shipping.
- 25.** The word sharotayikh is difficult — possibly 'your caravans' (from sheyarah, 'caravan'), 'your singers' (from shir, 'to sing'), or 'your walls' (from shur). In context, 'caravans' fits the trade catalogue conclusion: the great Tarshish ships were the cargo fleet of Tyre's commerce. The verse transitions from the trade list to the shipwreck: 'filled and heavily laden' — the very wealth catalogued in verses 12-24 now weighs the ship down. The phrase belev yammim ('in the heart of the seas') from verse 4 returns ominously — the ship is in deep water, overloaded.
- 26.** The shipwreck begins. The ruach haqadim ('east wind') is the hot, destructive wind from the desert — the sirocco. In biblical symbolism, the east wind is consistently an instrument of divine judgment (Exodus 14:21, Psalm 48:7, Jonah 4:8). The verb shavar ('to break, shatter') is violent — this is not capsizing but breaking apart. The irony is bitter: the rowers (mentioned in v. 8 as Sidonians and Arvadites) brought Tyre into deep water, but it was God's wind that destroyed her.
- 27.** This verse catalogues everything that sinks with the ship — a systematic reversal of everything built up in verses 5-25. Every category of person and goods is named: wealth (hon), wares (izvonayikh), merchandise (ma'arav), sailors (mallachayikh), pilots (chovlayikh), caulkers (machaziqei bidqekh), traders (orvei ma'aravekh), warriors (anshei milchamtekh), and the entire assembled company (qahal). The word mappalah ('downfall, ruin') is from the root n-f-l ('to fall') — the mighty ship falls.
- 28.** Migrashot is usually 'pasture lands' or 'open areas around a city,' but in this maritime context it likely refers to the open waters or coastal areas surrounding Tyre. Some scholars emend to 'waves' or 'coastlands.' The image is of the sea itself shaking at the death-cry of Tyre's navigators — cosmic sympathy with the catastrophe.
- 29.** The mourning scene begins. The maritime nations abandon their own ships to stand on dry land and grieve — the sea is no longer safe. The three categories (oarsmen, sailors, pilots) mirror the crew catalogue from verses 8-9 but now refer to foreign sailors from other nations, not Tyre's own crew (who sank in v. 27).
- 30.** Three mourning rituals: vocal lamentation (crying bitterly), throwing dust on the head (Genesis 37:34, Joshua 7:6), and rolling in ashes (yitpallashu, a reflexive form — they cover themselves thoroughly). These are standard ancient Near Eastern mourning practices, performed here by pagan sailors mourning a pagan city — the grief is universal, not specifically Israelite.
- 31.** Additional mourning rituals: shaving the head (qorchah — the cognate accusative construction hiqrichu qorchah intensifies: 'they will make a baldness of baldness') and wearing sackcloth. These practices were actually forbidden to Israelites in certain contexts (Leviticus 21:5, Deuteronomy 14:1) but were common among other peoples. The phrase bemar-nephesh ('with bitterness of soul') indicates mourning that reaches the core of one's being.
- 32.** The foreign sailors now take up the very qinah ('lamentation') that God commanded Ezekiel to raise in verse 2 — the dirge has become contagious. The word kedumah is debated: it may mean 'like the silenced one' (from damam, 'to be silent'), 'like the destroyed one' (from damah, 'to destroy'), or 'like a fortress' (from a different root). We render 'silenced' — the great commercial city that once hummed with trade has gone silent.
- 33.** The lament now looks backward to Tyre's former greatness. The verb hisba'at ('you satisfied, you filled to plenty') emphasizes that Tyre's commerce did not merely supply goods but brought satisfaction and abundance to entire nations. The verb he'esharet ('you enriched') — Tyre made kings wealthy. The irony of the dirge: the city that enriched the world now lies destroyed.
- 34.** The tense shifts to the moment of destruction. Nishberet ('you are shattered') uses the same root sh-v-r as the east wind's breaking in verse 26 — the destruction is complete. Bema'amaqei-mayim ('in the depths of the waters') takes the ship to the ocean floor. The word qahal ('assembly, company, crew') encompasses everyone aboard — the same word used for Israel's assembly before God is here used for the drowned company of a pagan ship.

35. Three reactions: shamemu ('they are appalled, devastated'), sa'aru sha'ar ('they shudder with shuddering' — a cognate accusative intensifying the terror), and ra'amu panim ('their faces are troubled/contorted'). The progression moves from shock to physical horror to visible facial distortion. The coastland kings who profited from Tyre's trade now tremble — if Tyre can fall, no commercial power is safe.
36. The final verse echoes the closing of chapter 26 (26:21). Sharqu ('they hiss') — a sound of shock and horror, not mockery (compare Jeremiah 19:8). Ballahot ('terrors, object of horror') — Tyre has become the very thing that terrifies. The phrase ve'einekh ad-olam ('and you will not be, forever') is the absolute finality formula. The Hebrew olam here means 'perpetuity' — Tyre's commercial empire will never be restored. The closing formula brackets the entire poem: the city that declared 'I am perfect in beauty' (v. 3) ends as an object of horror that ceases to exist.

28

Summary: *Ezekiel 28 contains three distinct oracles. The first (vv. 1-10) addresses the ruler (nagid) of Tyre, condemning his claim to be a god enthroned in the heart of the seas. The second (vv. 11-19) is a lamentation over the king (melek) of Tyre — the extraordinary passage describing an exalted being who was 'in Eden, the garden of God,' adorned with precious stones, anointed as a guardian cherub on the holy mountain, who fell through pride and commercial violence. This passage has been read as either a polemic against Tyrian royal mythology (drawing on Canaanite myths of a primeval divine being who fell from heaven) or as an allusion to a cosmic fall predating human history — the text supports both readings. The third oracle (vv. 20-26) turns to Sidon and concludes with a promise that Israel will dwell securely once her contemptuous neighbors are judged.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The lament over the king of Tyre (vv. 11-19) is one of the most theologically debated passages in the Hebrew Bible. The imagery — Eden, the garden of God, precious stones (paralleling the high priest's breastplate), the anointed guardian cherub, the holy mountain of God, walking among stones of fire — exceeds any possible description of a human Tyrian king and draws on ancient Near Eastern mythology about a primeval divine being who was expelled from the divine assembly. In Jewish tradition, the passage is read as a polemic against Tyrian royal pretension, borrowing mythological language to mock the king's self-deification. In Christian tradition (especially since the Church Fathers), it has been read alongside Isaiah 14:12-15 as describing the fall of Satan — an angelic being who fell through pride. We rendered the Hebrew faithfully without forcing either reading, preserving the mythological language that makes both interpretations possible. The gemstone list in verse 13 partially parallels the twelve stones of the high priestly breastplate (Exodus 28:17-20), suggesting priestly symbolism — the figure was adorned for worship before he was expelled for corruption.*

Translation Friction: *The shift from nagid ('ruler, prince') in verse 2 to melek ('king') in verse 12 may indicate two different addresses to the same figure, or a shift from the historical ruler to a mythological archetype behind the throne. We preserved the Hebrew distinction without harmonizing. The phrase mimshach hakeruv hasokek (v. 14) is one of the most debated phrases in Ezekiel — mimshach may mean 'anointed' (from mashach), 'measured/vast' (from mashach in a different sense), or is textually corrupt. We render 'anointed guardian cherub' as the most widely attested reading. The nine stones in verse 13 (MT) versus twelve stones (LXX, which adds three to match the high priestly breastplate) is a significant textual variant — we follow the MT's nine but note the LXX reading. The word tokh ('midst') in 'you walked in the midst of the stones of fire' (v. 14) is spatially ambiguous — among, between, or through. We render 'among' to preserve the ambiguity.*

Connections: *Isaiah 14:12-15 (the fall of the 'Day Star, son of Dawn') forms a diptych with this passage — both describe a figure of exalted status who fell through pride. Genesis 2-3 (Eden, the garden of God, the cherubim) provides the backdrop for the Eden imagery. Exodus 28:17-20 (the high priestly breastplate) parallels the gemstone list. Revelation 12:7-9 and Luke 10:18 ('I saw Satan fall like lightning from heaven') reflect the later Christian reading of this passage as describing Satan's fall. The oracle against Sidon (vv. 20-23) connects to Joel 3:4-8 and Zechariah 9:2. The promise of secure dwelling for Israel (vv. 25-26) anticipates Ezekiel 34:25-28 and 37:25-27.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Son of man, say to the ruler of Tyre: This is what the Lord GOD says — Because your heart has become proud and you have said, 'I am a god; I sit on the throne of a god in the heart of the seas' — yet you are a man and not a god, though you have set your heart as though it were the heart of a god — ³Indeed, you are wiser than

Daniel! No secret is hidden from you! ⁴By your wisdom and understanding you have made wealth for yourself and have gathered gold and silver into your treasuries. ⁵By your great wisdom in trade you have multiplied your wealth, and your heart has grown proud because of your wealth. ⁶Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says: Because you have set your heart as though it were the heart of a god, ⁷I am bringing foreigners against you, the most ruthless of the nations. They will draw their swords against the beauty of your wisdom and defile your splendor. ⁸They will bring you down to the pit, and you will die the death of the slain in the heart of the seas. ⁹Will you still say, 'I am a god,' in the presence of those who kill you? You are a man, not a god, in the hands of those who wound you. ¹⁰You will die the death of the uncircumcised, by the hand of foreigners — for I have spoken, declares the Lord GOD." ¹¹The word of the LORD came to me: ¹²"Son of man, raise a lamentation over the king of Tyre and say to him: This is what the Lord GOD says — You were the seal of perfection, full of wisdom and perfect in beauty. ¹³You were in Eden, the garden of God. Every precious stone was your covering: carnelian, topaz, and diamond, beryl, onyx, and jasper, sapphire, turquoise, and emerald — and gold. The craftsmanship of your settings and mountings was prepared in you on the day you were created. ¹⁴You were an anointed guardian cherub; I placed you there. You were on the holy mountain of God; you walked among the stones of fire. ¹⁵You were blameless in your ways from the day you were created, until wickedness was found in you. ¹⁶Through the abundance of your trade you were filled with violence, and you sinned. So I cast you as profane from the mountain of God, and I expelled you, guardian cherub, from among the stones of fire. ¹⁷Your heart grew proud because of your beauty; you corrupted your wisdom on account of your splendor. I threw you to the ground; I made you a spectacle before kings. ¹⁸By the magnitude of your iniquities, by the dishonesty of your trade, you profaned your sanctuaries. So I brought fire from within you, and it consumed you; I reduced you to ashes on the ground in the sight of all who watched. ¹⁹All who knew you among the peoples are appalled at you. You have become an object of horror, and you will be no more — forever. ²⁰The word of the LORD came to me: ²¹"Son of man, set your face toward Sidon and prophesy against it. ²²Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am against you, Sidon, and I will gain glory in your midst. They will know that I am the LORD when I execute judgments against her and display my holiness through her. ²³I will send pestilence into her and blood into her streets. The slain will fall within her, with the sword against her from every side. Then they will know that I am the LORD. ²⁴There will no longer be a piercing brier or a painful thorn for the house of Israel from any of their neighbors who treated them with contempt. Then they will know that I am the Lord GOD. ²⁵This is what the Lord GOD says: When I gather the house of Israel from the peoples among whom they have been scattered, I will display my holiness through them in the sight of the nations. They will dwell on their own land, which I gave to my servant Jacob. ²⁶They will dwell there securely; they will build houses and plant vineyards. They will dwell in security when I execute judgments against all their neighbors who treated them with contempt. Then they will know that I am the LORD their God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Standard prophetic reception formula. The *le'mor* ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct speech.
2. The Hebrew *nagid* ('ruler, prince, leader') is used here rather than *melek* ('king'), which appears in verse 12. Whether this distinction is significant — the political ruler versus the mythological king-archetype — is debated. The claim *el ani* ('I am a god') is the fundamental sin: a mortal claiming divine status. The phrase *moshav elohim* ('throne/seat of a god') may reflect actual Tyrian royal ideology — the king of Tyre claimed to sit on a divine throne. The repeated contrast *adam/el* ('man/god') hammers the point: you are human, not divine. The phrase *belev yammim* ('in the heart of the seas') connects to chapter 27's ship metaphor — Tyre's island location fostered the illusion of divine impregnability.
3. The reference to Daniel (or Danel) is significant. The Hebrew spelling here is *daniyel* (without the *yod* of the biblical Daniel), which may refer to the legendary Danel known from Ugaritic literature — a figure of proverbial wisdom and justice also mentioned in Ezekiel 14:14, 20 alongside Noah and Job. If this is the Ugaritic Danel, the reference is to a Canaanite wisdom figure the Tyrian king would recognize. The tone is bitterly ironic — 'you think you are wiser than even the legendary Danel.' The word *satum* ('secret, hidden thing') echoes Daniel-tradition vocabulary about uncovering mysteries.
4. The irony continues: Tyre's wisdom is real (the city was genuinely one of the most commercially sophisticated in the ancient world), but it has been turned to self-aggrandizement. The word *chayil* ('wealth, strength, military force') encompasses both economic and military power. *Otsrot* ('treasuries') are royal storehouses — the concrete evidence of commercial success.
5. The causal chain is explicit: wisdom led to trade (*rekhuallah*, 'commerce, trafficking'), trade led to wealth (*chayil*), and wealth led to pride (*gavah lev*, 'the heart was lifted up'). This is the same pride-through-prosperity trajectory that Deuteronomy 8:11-17 warns Israel against. The verb *gavah* ('to be

high, exalted') for the heart is the diagnostic word for arrogance throughout the prophets.

6. The verdict formula *laken* ('therefore') introduces the punishment. The charge is restated from verse 2: the ruler has made his heart *kelev elohim* ('like the heart of a god'). The repetition makes the accusation inescapable — this is not a misunderstanding but a deliberate, sustained claim to divinity.
7. The *aritseï goyim* ('most ruthless of the nations') is Ezekiel's signature phrase for the Babylonian army (also 30:11, 31:12, 32:12). The verb *heriku* ('they will draw, unsheathe') their swords specifically against *yefi chokhmatekha* ('the beauty of your wisdom') — the very thing the ruler prided himself on becomes the target of destruction. The verb *chilelu* ('they will defile, profane') uses priestly defilement vocabulary — the Babylonians will make the ruler's *yifah* ('radiance, splendor') *tamei*.
8. *Shachat* ('pit') is a term for Sheol, the realm of the dead — the self-proclaimed god will descend to the underworld like any mortal. The phrase *memotei chahal* ('deaths of the slain') uses a plural of intensity — a violent, inglorious death. *Belev yammim* ('in the heart of the seas') echoes both the ship metaphor of chapter 27 and the ruler's own boast in verse 2 that he sits enthroned 'in the heart of the seas.' The location of his pride becomes the location of his death.
9. The devastating rhetorical question: will the ruler maintain his claim to divinity while being slaughtered? The verb *chahal* ('to wound, pierce, profane') in *mechallelekha* ('those who wound/profane you') carries a double meaning — they both physically wound him and profane his claimed divine status. The *adam/el* contrast from verse 2 returns for the final time.
10. The *motei arelim* ('death of the uncircumcised') is the ultimate disgrace — to die without the covenant sign, to be buried among those outside God's people. For a king who claimed divine status, this is the most humiliating possible death: not a god's exaltation but an outcast's end. The closing formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* ('declares the Lord GOD') seals the oracle with divine authority.
11. A new oracle begins. The reception formula marks the transition from the address to the *nagid* ('ruler') in verses 1-10 to the lamentation over the *melek* ('king') in verses 12-19. Whether these are two perspectives on the same figure or two distinct addresses — one to the historical ruler, one to a mythological archetype — is among the most debated questions in Ezekiel scholarship.
12. The title shifts from *nagid* ('ruler') to *melek* ('king'), and the language immediately transcends any description of a mere human ruler. The phrase *chotem tokhnit* ('seal of perfection') is textually difficult — *chotem* means 'seal, signet ring' (an object of highest value), and *tokhnit* means 'measurement, pattern, plan.' Together they suggest a being who is the perfect pattern, the completed design, the finished masterpiece. 'Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty' describes a being of surpassing excellence — language that exceeds what can be said of any mortal king.
13. *Be'eden gan-elohim* ('in Eden, the garden of God') is unambiguous — this figure was in God's own garden. The nine stones listed in the MT differ from the twelve of the LXX, which adds the three stones needed to match the high priestly breastplate exactly. The identification of ancient gemstones with modern equivalents is uncertain — *odem* may be carnelian or ruby, *pitdah* may be topaz or chrysolite, *yahalom* may be diamond or onyx. *Melekhet tuppekha neqavekha* ('the craftsmanship of your tambourines/settings and your pipes/sockets') is one of the most debated phrases in the chapter: *tuppim* can mean 'tambourines' (musical instruments) or 'settings' (for gemstones); *neqavim* can mean 'pipes' (musical instruments) or 'sockets/holes' (for gem mountings). In context — surrounded by gemstone vocabulary — 'settings and mountings' is more likely than musical instruments. The verb *bara* ('created') marks this as a directly created being, not one born through natural processes.
14. *Keruv mimshach hasokekh* is the most contested phrase in the chapter. *Keruv* ('cherub') is clear — a supernatural throne-guardian. *Mimshach* may derive from *mashach* ('to anoint'), making this the 'anointed cherub,' or from a root meaning 'extended, outstretched.' *Hasokekh* ('the covering/guarding one') relates to the cherubim who cover the mercy seat with their wings (Exodus 25:20). Some emend *att keruv* ('you are a cherub') to *et keruv* ('with a cherub'), making the figure a human who walked alongside a cherub rather than being one. We follow the MT reading. *Behar qodesh elohim* ('on the holy mountain of God') — the cosmic mountain of divine assembly, known in Canaanite mythology as Mount Zaphon. *Avnei-esh* ('stones of fire') is unique to this passage — possibly the fiery pavement of the divine court (compare Exodus 24:10, where Moses sees a pavement of sapphire under God's feet).
15. *Tamim* ('blameless, complete, without defect') is sacrificial vocabulary — the same word used for an unblemished animal fit for offering (Leviticus 1:3). This being was morally perfect, meeting the standard required for the divine presence. The verb *bara* ('created') appears again — emphasizing direct divine creation. The word *avlah* ('wickedness, injustice, unrighteousness') from the root *ayin-vav-lamed* marks the turning point: perfection corrupted from within. The phrase *ad-nimtsa* ('until it was found') implies discovery — the wickedness was hidden before being exposed.
16. The cause of the fall is now named: *rekhullah* ('trade, commerce') — the same word used throughout chapter 27 for Tyre's mercantile activity — generated *chamas* ('violence, wrongdoing'). Commerce led to exploitation, exploitation to sin. The verb *echallelekha* ('I profaned you, cast you out as profane') is devastating priestly vocabulary: the being that was *qadosh* ('holy, set apart') is now *chol* ('profane, common') — expelled from sacred space. The verb *abedekha* ('I destroyed/expelled you') and the title *keruv hasokekh* ('guardian cherub') repeat from verse 14, now in judgment rather than appointment. The expulsion from the mountain of God and the stones of fire reverses the installation.
17. The diagnosis is pride (*gavah lev*, 'the heart was lifted up') caused by beauty (*yofi*) — the very beauty God gave this being (v. 12, 'perfect in beauty') became the occasion of his fall. The verb *shichat* ('you corrupted, you ruined') indicates self-inflicted destruction — this being ruined his own wisdom. The punishment fits the sin: the one who exalted himself is thrown to the ground (*al-erets hishlakhtikha*); the one who sought to be above all is made a spectacle (*lehabbith*, 'for gazing at') before kings — displayed for others' horrified observation.

18. The word *miqdashekh*a ('your sanctuaries') is striking — this being had sanctuaries, holy places associated with him. If the reference is to the Tyrian king, these are the temples of Tyre; if to the cosmic cherub, these are the sacred precincts of the divine mountain. The fire comes *mittokekh*a ('from within you') — self-destruction, not external attack. The violence and dishonest trade generated an internal fire that consumed the being from the inside out. The reduction to *epher* ('ashes') on the ground completes the reversal: from the holy mountain to ashes on the earth.
19. The closing formula is identical to 27:36 — the same words close both the ship-dirge and the king-lament, binding the two chapters together as a unified Tyre oracle. *Ballahot* ('object of horror, terrors') and *ve'einekha ad-olam* ('you will be no more forever') constitute the absolute finality formula. The being who was 'the seal of perfection' (v. 12) ends as an object of horror that ceases to exist.
20. A new oracle begins — the Sidon oracle (vv. 20-23), followed by the promise to Israel (vv. 24-26). The shift from Tyre to Sidon is geographically logical: Sidon was Tyre's sister city to the north, the other major Phoenician port.
21. The formula *sim panekha* ('set your face toward') is Ezekiel's standard directional command for oracles against foreign nations (also 6:2, 13:17, 21:2, 25:2, 29:2, 35:2, 38:2). The verb *hinnave* ('prophecy') — this is a divine command to deliver God's word against Sidon.
22. Two key theological verbs: *nikhbadti* ('I will be glorified') from *kavod* ('glory, weight') and *niqdash*ti ('I will be sanctified, display my holiness') from *qadosh* ('holy'). God's *kavod* and *qedushah* are demonstrated through judgment — these are not abstract divine attributes but qualities made visible through action. The recognition formula 'they will know that I am the LORD' (*veyad'u ki-ani YHWH*) is Ezekiel's signature — it appears over sixty times in the book, asserting that God's identity is revealed through his acts in history.
23. The three agents of judgment — *dever* ('pestilence, plague'), *dam* ('blood'), and *cherev* ('sword') — are Ezekiel's standard triad of destruction (also 5:12, 6:11-12, 14:21). *Veniphlal chahal* ('the slain will fall') — the passive form indicates that the killing is done by divine agency working through human instruments. The recognition formula repeats, closing the Sidon oracle.
24. The metaphor shifts from judgment to promise. *Sillon makh'iv* ('piercing brier') and *qots makh'iv* ('painful thorn') represent the hostile neighboring nations — small but persistently painful, like thorns that draw blood (compare Numbers 33:55, where the unconquered Canaanites are 'thorns in your sides'). The verb *sha'at* ('to treat with contempt, to despise') characterizes the neighbors' attitude toward Israel. The recognition formula now applies to Israel — they too will know God through the removal of their tormentors.
25. The restoration promise appears within the oracles against the nations — God's judgment on Israel's enemies is simultaneously the means of Israel's restoration. The verb *niqdash*ti ('I will display my holiness, be sanctified') repeats from verse 22, but now God displays his holiness through Israel's restoration rather than through Sidon's destruction. The phrase *avdi Ya'aqov* ('my servant Jacob') invokes the patriarchal covenant — the land promise to Jacob is still operative. The scattering (*nafotsu*, from *puts*, 'to scatter') will be reversed by gathering (*qabbetsi*, from *qavats*, 'to gather').
26. The verb *yashvu lavetach* ('they will dwell securely') appears twice in this verse, framing the promise. *Lavetach* ('in security, with confidence') is from the root *batach* ('to trust') — the security is grounded in trust in God, not in military strength. Building houses and planting vineyards (*banu vattim venate'u keramim*) is the prophetic shorthand for permanent, peaceful settlement — the opposite of the curse in Deuteronomy 28:30 ('you will build a house but not live in it; you will plant a vineyard but not enjoy its fruit'). The final recognition formula adds the possessive: 'the LORD their God' — not just 'the LORD' but Israel's covenant God, restoring the covenant relationship.

29

Summary: *Ezekiel 29 opens the extended oracle cycle against Egypt (chapters 29-32), the longest sustained foreign-nation oracle in the book. The chapter contains two distinct oracles with different dates. The first (vv. 1-16, dated to January 587 BCE) addresses Pharaoh Hophra as the great tannim (dragon/crocodile) in the Nile, declaring that God will drag him from his waterways and scatter Egypt for forty years of desolation. The second oracle (vv. 17-21, dated to April 571 BCE) is the latest dated prophecy in Ezekiel and compensates Nebuchadnezzar with the wealth of Egypt as payment for his unrewarded siege of Tyre.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two oracles in this chapter span sixteen years — the first given before Jerusalem's fall, the second nearly two decades later. The later oracle (vv. 17-21) is Ezekiel's acknowledgment that Nebuchadnezzar's siege of Tyre (585-573 BCE) yielded no plunder because the Tyrians shipped their wealth away by sea. Rather than undermining the earlier prophecy against Tyre (chs. 26-28), Ezekiel presents God redirecting the payment: Egypt will compensate what Tyre did not yield. This theological honesty — addressing an apparently unfulfilled prophecy by showing divine sovereignty over historical outcomes — is remarkable among the prophets. The tannim imagery draws from Egyptian royal iconography and Canaanite chaos-monster mythology simultaneously. Pharaoh styled himself as the divine crocodile of the Nile; God declares he will hook the monster and drag it into the desert to rot. The forty-year desolation period parallels Israel's own forty-year wilderness wandering, but inverted: Israel was tested and refined, while Egypt will simply waste away.*

Translation Friction: The word tannim (v. 3) presents a significant translation challenge. The Masoretic pointing gives tannim ('jackals/dragons'), but the context — 'the great tannim lying in the midst of his waterways' — demands tannin ('sea creature, dragon, crocodile'). Most scholars read this as tannin, the chaos-monster term, and we follow this reading, rendering it as 'dragon' to capture the mythological resonance while noting the crocodile reality in the translator notes. The phrase 'I have made it for myself' (v. 3, attributed to Pharaoh about the Nile) is textually debated — some manuscripts read 'I made myself' as a claim to self-creation, which would intensify the hubris. We followed the more widely attested reading but noted the variant. The forty-year desolation (vv. 11-13) has no known historical fulfillment, which we document honestly without attempting harmonization.

Connections: The tannim/tannin imagery connects to the primordial chaos monsters of creation theology (Genesis 1:21, Isaiah 27:1, Isaiah 51:9, Psalm 74:13) and to the Exodus tradition where Egypt itself is the chaos-monster defeated by God at the sea. The forty-year desolation inverts Israel's forty-year wilderness period (Numbers 14:33-34). The 'broken reed' metaphor (v. 6) echoes Isaiah 36:6 (Rabshakeh's taunt) and 2 Kings 18:21, establishing Egypt's unreliability as a political ally as a fixed prophetic theme. The horn that sprouts for Israel (v. 21) connects to messianic and restoration language in 1 Samuel 2:10, Psalm 132:17, and Luke 1:69.

¹In the tenth year, in the tenth month, on the twelfth day of the month, the word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, set your face against Pharaoh king of Egypt and prophesy against him and against all of Egypt. ³Speak and say: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am against you, Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great dragon lying in the midst of his waterways, who has said, 'My Nile is my own, and I made it for myself.' ⁴I will put hooks in your jaws and make the fish of your waterways cling to your scales. I will haul you up from the midst of your waterways, with all the fish of your waterways clinging to your scales. ⁵I will fling you into the desert — you and all the fish of your waterways. You will fall on the open ground; you will not be gathered or collected. I have given you as food to the beasts of the earth and the birds of the sky. ⁶Then all the inhabitants of Egypt will know that I am the LORD, because they have been a staff of reed to the house of Israel. ⁷When they grasped you by the hand, you splintered and tore open every shoulder. When they leaned on you, you broke and made all their legs buckle. ⁸Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am bringing a sword against you and will cut off both human and animal from you. ⁹The land of Egypt will become a desolation and a wasteland, and they will know that I am the LORD — because he said, 'The Nile is mine, and I made it.' ¹⁰Therefore I am against you and against your waterways. I will make the land of Egypt an utter desolation and wasteland, from Migdol to Syene, as far as the border of Cush. ¹¹No human foot will pass through it, and no animal foot will pass through it. It will be uninhabited for forty years. ¹²I will make the land of Egypt a desolation among desolated lands, and her cities will be a wasteland among ruined cities for forty years. I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations and disperse them through the lands. ¹³For this is what the Lord GOD says: At the end of forty years I will gather the Egyptians from the peoples among whom they were scattered. ¹⁴I will restore the fortunes of Egypt and bring them back to the land of Pathros, to the land of their origin, and there they will be a lowly kingdom. ¹⁵It will be the lowest of the kingdoms and will never again exalt itself above the nations. I will diminish them so that they will never again rule over the nations. ¹⁶It will no longer be a source of confidence for the house of Israel, a reminder of their iniquity whenever they turned to Egypt for help. Then they will know that I am the Lord GOD. ¹⁷In the twenty-seventh year, in the first month, on the first day of the month, the word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁸Son of man, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon drove his army in hard labor against Tyre. Every head was rubbed bald and every shoulder was raw, yet neither he nor his army received any payment from Tyre for the labor they performed against it. ¹⁹Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am giving the land of Egypt to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. He will carry off her wealth, plunder her plunder, and loot her loot — and it will be the payment for his army. ²⁰As his wages for the labor he performed, I have given him the land of Egypt, because they worked for me, declares the Lord GOD. ²¹On that day I will cause a horn to sprout for the house of Israel, and I will give you an open mouth among them. Then they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date corresponds to January 7, 587 BCE — six months before Jerusalem's fall. This places the oracle during the period when Judah was seeking Egyptian military aid against Babylon, making the anti-Egypt message politically urgent. The dating formula is characteristic of Ezekiel, who provides

more precise chronological markers than any other prophet.

2. The idiom *sim panekha* ('set your face against') is a hostile orientation — a deliberate turning toward the target as a preliminary act of prophetic confrontation. The phrase 'against all Egypt' extends the oracle beyond the person of Pharaoh to the entire nation, establishing that Egypt's fate is bound to its ruler's.
3. The Masoretic text points *tannim* (plural, 'jackals' or 'dragons'), but the singular adjective *ha-gadol* ('the great') and the aquatic context require the singular *tannin* ('sea creature, dragon'). The discrepancy is likely a scribal error in pointing. We render 'dragon' to capture the mythological overtones while noting in *key_* terms that the Nile crocodile is the concrete referent. Pharaoh's boast 'My Nile is my own, and I made it for myself' expresses the theology of divine kingship — Pharaoh claimed to be the creator and sustainer of the Nile's flood. Some manuscripts and versions read 'I made myself,' which would be an even more radical claim to self-creation. The more widely attested reading 'I made it for myself' is adopted here.
4. The image shifts from mythological to practical: the great dragon is hooked like a crocodile and dragged from the water. The word *chachim* ('hooks') refers to the large hooks used for capturing crocodiles in ancient Egypt — Herodotus (*Histories* 2.70) describes the practice. The fish clinging to the dragon's scales represent Egypt's vassal peoples and allies, who will be dragged out with their overlord. The repetition of 'your waterways' (*ye'orekha*) three times in one verse hammers home that the Nile — Egypt's source of life, pride, and identity — is the site of divine judgment.
5. The crocodile dragged from the Nile and left to rot in the desert is the ultimate humiliation for an aquatic creature. The denial of burial ('not gathered or collected') was considered a terrible fate in the ancient Near East — exposure to scavengers was a curse reserved for the most despised. The phrase 'beasts of the earth and birds of the sky' is a stock expression for carrion-eaters (cf. 1 Samuel 17:44, Jeremiah 7:33), indicating utter destruction with no remnant to bury.
6. The recognition formula — 'they will know that I am the LORD' — is Ezekiel's theological signature, appearing over sixty times in the book. Here it is directed at Egypt: the purpose of judgment is revelation of divine identity. The 'staff of reed' (*mish'enet qaneh*) introduces the broken-reed metaphor that the next two verses will develop. The image is of a walking staff made from a Nile reed — seemingly supportive but dangerously fragile. This directly echoes the Rabshakeh's taunt in Isaiah 36:6 / 2 Kings 18:21, where Egypt is called 'that broken reed of a staff.'
7. The reed-staff metaphor is developed with visceral detail: the reed splinters when grasped and the jagged edges tear the hand and shoulder of the person relying on it. The word *baq'ta* ('you tore open') is graphic — the splintered reed lacerates flesh. The final clause is difficult: the Hebrew literally reads 'you made all their loins stand' (*ha'amadta lahem kol motnayim*), which is paradoxical. The likely meaning is that the broken reed caused their hips to lock or their legs to give way — the person leaning on a broken staff staggers. Some scholars emend to 'made their loins shake,' but the MT makes sense as describing the involuntary stiffening of a person losing their support.
8. The transition from metaphor to direct judgment. The sword (*cherev*) is Ezekiel's standard instrument of divine punishment. The formula 'cut off human and animal' (*hikrati ... adam u-vehemah*) indicates total devastation — the erasure of civilized life from the land (cf. Ezekiel 14:13-21, where this is one of four judgments).
9. Pharaoh's hubris from verse 3 is repeated as the judicial basis for Egypt's judgment. The word pair *shemamah ve-chorvah* ('desolation and wasteland') is a stock phrase in Ezekiel for divine devastation (cf. 6:14, 33:28-29). The recognition formula returns: Egypt's destruction will teach them the identity of the true God. Pharaoh's claim to have made the Nile — whether this means 'I made it' or 'I made myself' — is the theological offense that provokes judgment: claiming divine creative prerogative.
10. The phrase 'from Migdol to Syene' (*mi-Migdol Seveneh*) describes the full extent of Egypt from north to south. Migdol was a fortress town in the northeastern Delta near the border with Sinai. Syene (modern Aswan) was the southern frontier city at the first cataract of the Nile. 'As far as the border of Cush' extends the devastation to the boundary with Nubia/Ethiopia. The triple destruction vocabulary — *charavot chorev shemamah* ('desolation of utter waste') — intensifies the standard pair from verse 9 into a superlative.
11. The forty-year desolation period is unique to Ezekiel's Egypt oracle. There is no known historical fulfillment of a forty-year abandonment of Egypt, which has led to various interpretive approaches: some see it as symbolic (paralleling Israel's forty years in the wilderness), others as hyperbolic for severe devastation, and others as eschatological. We document the difficulty without forcing a resolution. The parallelism between 'human foot' and 'animal foot' echoes the 'human and animal' pair from verse 8, reinforcing total depopulation.
12. Egypt's fate now mirrors Israel's own experience — scattered among nations, dispersed through foreign lands. The verb *zarah* ('scatter, winnow') is the same verb used for Israel's exile (Ezekiel 12:15, 20:23). The irony is deliberate: the nation Israel looked to for rescue will suffer the same judgment Israel endured. The phrase 'desolation among desolated lands' places Egypt's devastation within a broader pattern — it joins the company of other judged nations.
13. The restoration promise for Egypt parallels the restoration promises for Israel (cf. Ezekiel 11:17, 20:34, 36:24). The verb *qabats* ('gather') is the same gathering-from-exile verb used for Israel. This is striking — Egypt, the paradigmatic oppressor of God's people, receives a restoration oracle. But as the next verses show, the restoration is partial and diminished, not a return to former glory.
14. *Pathros* (Hebrew *Patros*) is Upper Egypt — the southern region around Thebes. The designation as 'the land of their origin' (*erets mekhuratam*) reflects the tradition that Upper Egypt was the ancestral homeland of Egyptian civilization, which is historically accurate: the earliest pharaonic dynasties emerged from Upper Egypt. The phrase *mamlekhah shefalah* ('lowly kingdom') defines the terms of restoration: Egypt will exist but never again as a great power. The verb *shavti et shevut* ('I will restore the fortunes') uses the same formula applied to Israel's restoration (Ezekiel 16:53, 39:25), reinforcing the parallel.

15. The superlative 'lowest of the kingdoms' (min ha-mamlakhot ... shefalah) marks a permanent change in Egypt's status. The verb *tittnashe* ('exalt itself') echoes the pride motif from Pharaoh's boast in verse 3. The verb *him'atim* ('I will diminish them') means to make small or few — God will actively reduce Egypt's population or power to prevent future imperial ambition. This prophecy resonated with Egypt's historical trajectory: after the Babylonian and Persian periods, Egypt never again functioned as an independent imperial power on the scale of the New Kingdom pharaohs.
16. The theological crux of the Egypt oracle: Israel's sin was not merely political alliance with Egypt but the spiritual infidelity that such alliance represented. Turning to Egypt for military help was a rejection of trust in God — it 'brought iniquity to remembrance' (*mazkir avon*) by exposing Israel's habitual pattern of relying on human power rather than divine protection. The phrase *bi-fnotam achareihem* ('when they turned after them') uses the verb *panah* ('to turn') which carries connotations of spiritual orientation — turning toward Egypt meant turning away from God.
17. This date — April 26, 571 BCE — is the latest dated oracle in the book of Ezekiel, placed here out of chronological sequence (the surrounding chapters date to 587-586 BCE) because of its thematic connection to the Egypt cycle. The sixteen-year gap between this oracle and the preceding one (587 BCE) is remarkable. The narrative marker *vayyehi* ('and it was') is rendered naturally as a temporal introduction.
18. This verse acknowledges that Nebuchadnezzar's thirteen-year siege of Tyre (585-573 BCE) was economically fruitless. The Tyrians apparently evacuated their wealth by sea to their island fortress or to colonies like Carthage. The physical details — 'every head rubbed bald' from carrying heavy loads, 'every shoulder raw' from hauling siege equipment — convey the grueling nature of the siege. The Hebrew *he'evid* ('he drove to labor') and *avodah gedolah* ('great labor') use servitude vocabulary, emphasizing the exhausting military effort. The word *sakhar* ('wages, payment') frames warfare as labor deserving compensation, setting up the theological logic of verse 19.
19. The theological logic is extraordinary: God owes Nebuchadnezzar wages for services rendered against Tyre, and Egypt is the payment. The three-fold plunder expression — *nasa hamonah, shalal shelalah, bazaz bizzah* ('carry off her wealth, plunder her plunder, loot her loot') — uses cognate accusative constructions (the verb and its noun from the same root) for emphatic effect. The word *sakhar* ('payment, wages') from verse 18 returns, completing the commercial metaphor: Nebuchadnezzar labored against Tyre at God's direction, earned nothing, and is now compensated with Egypt's wealth.
20. The phrase *asher asu li* ('because they worked for me') is theologically loaded: Nebuchadnezzar and his army, though pagan, were unwitting instruments of divine purpose. They 'worked for me' — God claims their military campaigns as service rendered to himself. This is consistent with Ezekiel's broader theology that God uses foreign powers as agents of judgment (cf. Jeremiah 25:9, where Nebuchadnezzar is called 'my servant'). The *ne'um* formula ('declares the Lord GOD') closes the oracle with divine authority.
21. This closing verse shifts from Egypt to Israel with a word of hope — rare in the oracles against the nations. The 'sprouting horn' (*atsmiyach qeren*) combines agricultural and animal imagery: *qeren* ('horn') symbolizes power and royal authority (1 Samuel 2:10, Psalm 132:17), while the verb *tsamach* ('sprout, grow') suggests organic, divinely-timed emergence. The 'open mouth' (*pitchon peh*) given to Ezekiel likely refers to the restoration of his prophetic speech — Ezekiel was struck mute in 3:26 and his mouth was opened only at Jerusalem's fall (33:22). The recognition formula closes the chapter as it will close the entire book: 'they will know that I am the LORD.'

30

Summary: *Ezekiel 30 continues the oracle cycle against Egypt with two distinct units. The first (vv. 1-19) is an undated oracle announcing the 'day of the LORD' against Egypt and her allies, cataloguing the cities and peoples that will fall to Nebuchadnezzar's sword. The second (vv. 20-26) is dated to April 587 BCE and uses the vivid metaphor of Pharaoh's broken arm — God has broken one arm and will break the other, while strengthening the arms of Babylon's king. The chapter functions as a comprehensive dismantling of Egyptian power: its allies, its cities, its wealth, its idols, and its king are all systematically destroyed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'day of the LORD' language in verse 3 is striking because it applies to Egypt what the prophets typically reserve for Israel's own judgment or for universal eschatological reckoning (cf. Joel 1:15, Amos 5:18-20, Zephaniah 1:7). Ezekiel democratizes the concept: the day of the LORD is not exclusively Israel's dread or hope — it comes upon any nation that defies divine sovereignty. The geographical catalogue in verses 13-18 reads like a military itinerary of destruction sweeping through Egypt from Memphis in the north to Thebes in the south, touching every major population center. The broken-arm metaphor (vv. 20-26) is anatomically precise: one arm is already broken (Pharaoh Hophra's failed attempt to relieve the siege of Jerusalem in 588 BCE), and God will break the other, rendering Egypt permanently incapable of wielding the sword. Meanwhile, Babylon's king receives the sword that Egypt drops — the transfer of imperial power is depicted as a divine arms transaction.*

Translation Friction: The catalogue of Egyptian cities (vv. 13-18) contains several names with uncertain identifications and variant spellings between the MT and the LXX. Noph is Memphis, No is Thebes (No-Amon), and Pathros is Upper Egypt — these are secure. But Sin (v. 15) is Pelusium (the LXX confirms this), Aven (v. 17) is Heliopolis (On), and Pi-beseth is Bubastis — all requiring transliteration decisions. We retained the Hebrew names in the rendering and provided identifications in the translator notes. The word yom ('day') in the phrase 'day of the LORD' required careful handling — it is not merely a calendar day but a theological concept encompassing judgment, upheaval, and divine intervention. The arm metaphor in verses 21-26 uses the same root sh-b-r ('break') repeatedly, and we preserved the repetition rather than varying it for English style, because the accumulation is the rhetorical point.

Connections: The 'day of the LORD' concept connects to Amos 5:18-20 (the earliest prophetic use), Joel 1:15 and 2:1-11, Isaiah 13:6-9 (against Babylon), Zephaniah 1:7-18, and Obadiah 15. The broken-arm metaphor inverts the 'mighty arm' tradition of the Exodus — God's arm delivered Israel from Egypt (Exodus 6:6, Deuteronomy 4:34), and now God breaks Egypt's arm. The scattering of Egyptians among nations (v. 23, 26) echoes the same vocabulary used for Israel's exile (Ezekiel 12:15, 20:23), creating a grim symmetry. The sword placed in Babylon's hand (v. 24-25) connects to Ezekiel 21, where the sword of the LORD is given to Nebuchadnezzar against Jerusalem — the same instrument now turns against Egypt.

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, prophesy and say: This is what the Lord GOD says — Wail! Alas for the day! ³For the day is near — near is the day of the LORD. It will be a day of clouds, an appointed time for the nations. ⁴A sword will come against Egypt, and anguish will seize Cush when the slain fall in Egypt. Her wealth will be carried off and her foundations torn down. ⁵Cush, Put, Lud, all the mixed peoples, Cub, and the people of the covenant land — with them they will fall by the sword. ⁶This is what the LORD says: Those who support Egypt will fall, and the pride of her power will come down. From Migdol to Syene they will fall by the sword within her, declares the Lord GOD. ⁷They will be desolate among desolated lands, and her cities will lie among ruined cities. ⁸Then they will know that I am the LORD, when I set fire to Egypt and all who help her are broken. ⁹On that day, messengers will go out from my presence in ships to terrify a complacent Cush, and anguish will seize them as on the day of Egypt — for it is coming! ¹⁰This is what the Lord GOD says: I will put an end to the hordes of Egypt by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. ¹¹He and his people with him — the most ruthless of the nations — will be brought in to destroy the land. They will draw their swords against Egypt and fill the land with the slain. ¹²I will dry up the waterways and sell the land into the hand of the wicked. I will make the land and everything in it desolate by the hand of foreigners. I, the LORD, have spoken. ¹³This is what the Lord GOD says: I will destroy the idols and put an end to the false gods from Memphis. There will no longer be a prince from the land of Egypt, and I will put fear in the land of Egypt. ¹⁴I will make Pathros desolate, set fire to Zoan, and execute judgments against Thebes. ¹⁵I will pour out my fury on Pelusium, the stronghold of Egypt, and I will cut off the hordes of Thebes. ¹⁶I will set fire to Egypt. Pelusium will writhe in agony, Thebes will be split open, and Memphis will face enemies by day. ¹⁷The young men of Heliopolis and Pi-beseth will fall by the sword, and the women will go into captivity. ¹⁸In Tahpanhes the day will grow dark when I break the yoke-bars of Egypt there. The pride of her power will cease in her; a cloud will cover her, and her daughters will go into captivity. ¹⁹I will execute judgments against Egypt, and they will know that I am the LORD. ²⁰In the eleventh year, in the first month, on the seventh day of the month, the word of the LORD came to me: ²¹Son of man, I have broken the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt, and it has not been bound up for healing — no bandage applied, no splint set to bind it, to make it strong enough to grasp the sword. ²²Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: I am against Pharaoh king of Egypt. I will break his arms — both the strong one and the broken one — and I will make the sword fall from his hand. ²³I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations and disperse them through the lands. ²⁴I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and put my sword in his hand, but I will break Pharaoh's arms, and he will groan before him with the groans of a mortally wounded man. ²⁵I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon, but Pharaoh's arms will fall limp. Then they will know that I am the LORD, when I put my sword in the hand of the king of Babylon and he stretches it out against the land of Egypt. ²⁶I will scatter the Egyptians among the nations and disperse them through the lands. Then they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This oracle lacks a date formula, unlike most of the Egypt oracles (29:1, 29:17, 30:20, 31:1, 32:1, 32:17). Its undated status and its 'day of the LORD' theme suggest it may be a thematic composition rather than a response to a specific historical moment.
2. The command *heililu* ('wail!') is the imperative of *yalal*, a verb that imitates the sound of wailing — it is onomatopoeic, the Hebrew equivalent of a howl of grief. The exclamation *hah la-yom* ('alas for the day!') introduces the 'day of the LORD' theme without yet naming it explicitly. The abruptness is deliberate — the oracle opens with a cry before the explanation comes.
3. The repetition 'the day is near — near is the day of the LORD' (*qarov yom ve-qarov yom la-YHWH*) uses emphatic doubling to convey urgency. The word *anan* ('cloud') in prophetic judgment contexts signals divine theophany and darkness — not ordinary weather but the storm-cloud of God's arrival (cf. Joel 2:2, Zephaniah 1:15). The phrase *et goyim* ('time of the nations') extends the scope beyond Egypt to all nations, though Egypt is the immediate target.
4. The word *chalchalah* ('anguish, writhing') describes convulsive pain — the same word is used for labor pains (Nahum 2:11). Cush (Nubia/Ethiopia) feels the anguish because it was politically and militarily linked to Egypt — as Egypt falls, its southern ally writhes in sympathetic agony. The word *yesodoteha* ('her foundations') can mean literal architectural foundations or metaphorical underpinnings of the state — political, military, and economic structures. Both senses are present.
5. The list catalogues Egypt's allies and mercenary forces. Cush is Nubia/Ethiopia to the south. Put is Libya to the west. Lud is likely Lydia in western Anatolia — Egyptian pharaohs employed Lydian mercenaries. The 'mixed peoples' (*kol ha-erev*) refers to the heterogeneous mercenary and immigrant populations in Egypt. 'Cub' (*Kuv*) is otherwise unknown — the LXX reads 'Libyans,' suggesting a scribal variant. The phrase 'people of the covenant land' (*benei erets ha-berit*) is debated: it may refer to Judean refugees in Egypt or to peoples bound by treaty with Egypt. We retained the literal translation and noted the ambiguity.
6. The phrase *somkhei Mitsrayim* ('those who support Egypt') refers to Egypt's allies, vassal states, and mercenary forces — the same coalition listed in verse 5. The expression *ge'on uzzah* ('pride of her power') combines arrogance (*ga'on*) with military strength (*oz*), capturing Egypt's self-confidence in its own might. The geographical merism 'from Migdol to Syene' (north to south) again indicates the totality of devastation across the entire country (cf. 29:10).
7. This verse nearly repeats 29:12, reinforcing the desolation theme through deliberate repetition. The verb *nashammu* ('they will be desolate') is from the root *sh-m-m*, the same root that gives *shemamah* ('desolation') — Ezekiel's most frequent word for the aftermath of divine judgment.
8. The recognition formula returns. Fire (*esh*) as an instrument of judgment appears frequently in Ezekiel's oracles against the nations (cf. 28:18 against Tyre). The verb *nishberu* ('are broken') from the root *sh-b-r* foreshadows the dominant metaphor of the chapter's second half — the breaking of Pharaoh's arm (vv. 21-26). The word *ozreha* ('her helpers') parallels *somkhei Mitsrayim* ('supporters of Egypt') from verse 6.
9. The 'messengers in ships' (*mal'akhim ba-tsim*) traveling up the Nile to spread terror southward into Cush is a vivid military image. The word *betach* ('complacent, secure, confident') describes Cush's false sense of safety — they assume the judgment will stop at Egypt's borders. The word *chalchalah* ('anguish') returns from verse 4, binding the two Cush references together. The phrase 'day of Egypt' (*yom Mitsrayim*) parallels the 'day of the LORD' from verse 3 — Egypt's judgment day becomes a byword.
10. The verb *hishbatti* ('I will put an end to, I will cause to cease') is from the root *sh-b-t* (the same root as *Shabbat*) — to cease, to stop, to rest. God will make Egypt's teeming population cease. The phrase *be-yad* ('by the hand of') explicitly names Nebuchadnezzar as God's instrument, continuing the theology from 29:19-20 — the Babylonian king acts as the hand of divine judgment.
11. The phrase *aritsi goyim* ('the most ruthless of the nations') is a recurring epithet for the Babylonian army in Ezekiel (28:7, 31:12, 32:12). The word *arits* means 'violent, ruthless, terrifying' — it emphasizes Babylon's military ferocity. The verb *heriqu* ('they will draw, unsheathe') literally means 'to empty out' — they will empty their swords from their scabbards. The passive *muva'im* ('brought in') implies divine agency: Babylon does not invade on its own initiative but is brought by God.
12. Drying the Nile channels (*ye'orim charavah*) strikes at the foundation of Egyptian civilization — the Nile was life itself for Egypt. The verb *makharti* ('I will sell') uses commercial language: God sells Egypt as a commodity, treating the nation as property to be transferred. This is the same verb used for selling people into slavery (Deuteronomy 32:30, Judges 2:14). The closing formula *ani YHWH dibbarti* ('I, the LORD, have spoken') is an emphatic divine seal — what God has spoken will be accomplished. The word *zarim* ('foreigners, strangers') parallels the 'ruthless of the nations' from verse 11.
13. The word *gillulim* ('idols') is one of Ezekiel's signature terms — he uses it nearly forty times, more than all other biblical authors combined. The word is deliberately pejorative, likely derived from a root meaning 'dung' or 'pellets' — Ezekiel calls idols 'dung-things.' The word *elilim* ('false gods, worthless things') is a different derogatory term, possibly a wordplay on *el* ('god') diminished to *elil* ('worthless'). Memphis (Noph) was the ancient capital of Lower Egypt and a major center of Egyptian religion — home to the great temple of Ptah. The prophecy that 'there will no longer be a prince from the land of Egypt' (*nasi me-erets Mitsrayim lo yihyeh od*) was fulfilled in the sense that after the Persian conquest, Egypt was ruled by foreign powers — Persians, Greeks, Romans — for centuries.
14. The three locations represent different regions of Egypt. Pathros is Upper Egypt (the south). Zoan (Tanis) was a major city in the northeastern Delta — once the Hyksos capital and later a royal residence. No (also No-Amon, 'city of Amon') is Thebes, the great religious capital of Upper Egypt, home

to the temple complexes of Karnak and Luxor. The three different verbs — 'make desolate,' 'set fire to,' 'execute judgments' — vary the destruction across regions while maintaining the comprehensive scope.

15. Sin is identified with Pelusium (Tell el-Farama), the fortified city on Egypt's northeastern frontier — the gateway through which any invader from Asia would enter Egypt. Calling it *ma'oz Mitsrayim* ('the stronghold of Egypt') reflects its strategic importance as the primary defensive position. The verb *shafakhti* ('I will pour out') uses the same verb applied to blood and wrath throughout Ezekiel (cf. 22:4, 36:18). The 'hordes of Thebes' (*hamon No*) refers to the dense population of the southern capital.
16. The verb *chul tachul* ('will writhe in agony') uses an intensified verbal construction — the infinitive absolute followed by the finite verb — to express extreme pain, like labor contractions. The phrase *le-hibbaq'e'a* ('to be split open, breached') suggests the walls of Thebes being breached by an invading army. The final phrase *tsarei yomam* ('enemies by day') is difficult; the MT literally reads 'adversaries daily/by day,' meaning Memphis will face constant besiegement — enemies pressing at the walls in broad daylight, with no respite.
17. Aven (literally 'wickedness' or 'vanity') is a deliberate distortion of On, the Hebrew name for Heliopolis — the great sun-temple city northeast of modern Cairo. By replacing On with Aven, Ezekiel transforms 'City of the Sun' into 'City of Wickedness,' a prophetic wordplay that mocks Egyptian sun-worship. Pi-beseth is Bubastis (Tell Basta), the cult center of the cat-goddess Bastet in the eastern Delta. The pronoun *hennah* ('they' feminine) likely refers to the cities personified as women, or to the women of these cities going into exile. We rendered 'the women' to capture the feminine reference clearly.
18. Tahpanhes (Daphne/Tell Defenneh) was a frontier city in the northeastern Delta where Judean refugees fled after the fall of Jerusalem (Jeremiah 43:7-9) — a detail that would resonate with Ezekiel's audience. The darkened day (*chashakh ha-yom*) connects to the 'day of clouds' in verse 3, now localized at a specific city. The word *motot* ('yoke-bars') refers to the bars of a yoke used to control draft animals — Egypt's domination over other peoples is figured as a yoke that God will snap. The 'daughters' (*benoteiha*) likely refers to satellite towns and villages dependent on Tahpanhes.
19. The verse closes the first oracle unit (vv. 1-19) with the recognition formula. The verb *asiti shefatim* ('I will execute judgments') uses the plural 'judgments' (*shefatim*) — multiple acts of justice, not a single punishment. The word *shefatim* in Ezekiel carries the double weight of judicial verdict and punitive action — God is both judge and executioner.
20. The date is April 29, 587 BCE — approximately three months after the oracle in 29:1 and about three months before Jerusalem's fall in July 587. This places the oracle in the period when Pharaoh Hophra had briefly marched out of Egypt to relieve the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem, only to withdraw without engaging (Jeremiah 37:5-8). The failed Egyptian intervention is the immediate context for the 'broken arm' metaphor.
21. The broken arm is a metaphor for military defeat — specifically Pharaoh Hophra's failed attempt to relieve Jerusalem from the Babylonian siege in 588 BCE. The medical vocabulary is precise: *chuvshah* ('bound up'), *refu'ot* ('remedies, healing'), *chittul* ('bandage, splint'), and *chazqah* ('strengthen it'). The sequence describes the full process of treating a broken arm — binding, medicating, splinting, and rehabilitation — none of which has occurred. The arm must be strong enough *litfos be-charev* ('to grasp the sword') — the purpose of the arm is military, and its breaking means Egypt cannot fight.
22. Now both arms will be broken — the already-broken arm (the one shattered in verse 21, representing the failed relief of Jerusalem) and the strong arm that remains. The dual destruction leaves Pharaoh completely helpless. The plural *zero'otav* ('his arms') is anatomically specific — two arms, two breakings, total incapacitation. The sword falling from his hand (*hippalti et ha-cherев mi-yado*) completes the disarming: Egypt can no longer wield military power. The image is of a warrior whose weapons clatter to the ground because he lacks the strength to hold them.
23. This verse repeats almost verbatim the exile language from 29:12, using the same verbs *hafitsoti* ('scatter') and *zeritim* ('disperse'). The repetition across oracles is deliberate — it establishes Egypt's scattering as a fixed divine decree, not a contingent threat. The same exile vocabulary applied to Israel (12:15, 20:23) is now applied to Egypt, reinforcing the theological parallelism.
24. The contrast is devastating: God strengthens Babylon's arms while breaking Pharaoh's. The phrase *charbi* ('my sword') is critical — the sword placed in Nebuchadnezzar's hand is God's own sword. This is the same theology as Ezekiel 21, where the sword of the LORD is given to Babylon. The groaning (*na'aq ne'aqot chahal*, 'groan the groans of a pierced man') uses the cognate accusative for emphasis — Pharaoh will make the sounds of a man run through with a sword, helpless and dying. The word *chahal* specifically denotes someone pierced or fatally wounded in battle.
25. The arm metaphor reaches its climax in the antithetical parallelism: Babylon's arms strengthened, Pharaoh's arms falling (*tippolnah* — the same verb used for the sword falling from Pharaoh's hand in verse 22, now applied to his arms themselves). The recognition formula returns with the theological crux: they will know God's identity when they see his sword in Babylon's hand extended against Egypt. The verb *natah* ('stretch out') echoes the Exodus tradition — God 'stretched out his arm' against Egypt to deliver Israel (Exodus 6:6). Now God stretches out the sword of Babylon against Egypt for judgment.
26. The chapter closes with the same exile formula from verse 23 (and 29:12), now coupled with the recognition formula. The triple repetition of Egypt's scattering across these oracles (29:12, 30:23, 30:26) functions as a liturgical refrain — each repetition deepens the certainty of the decree. The final 'they will know that I am the LORD' closes the chapter's second oracle unit and brings the arm-metaphor section to its theological conclusion: all of this — the broken arms, the strengthened enemy, the scattering — serves the ultimate purpose of revealing the identity of the God who governs history.

31

Summary: *Ezekiel 31 is an oracle against Pharaoh delivered on the first day of the third month of the eleventh year (June 587 BCE), just weeks before Jerusalem's fall. God challenges Pharaoh by directing his gaze to Assyria — a towering cedar of Lebanon whose height, beauty, and shade surpassed all other trees. Even the trees of Eden envied it. Yet this great cedar was brought down, cast into Sheol, and all the nations that had sheltered under it were shaken. The message is unmistakable: if Assyria fell despite its greatness, Egypt will share the same fate. The tallest tree falls the farthest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is structured as a parable within an oracle — God does not directly describe Egypt's coming judgment but forces Pharaoh to contemplate Assyria's collapse as a mirror. The cedar imagery draws on ancient Near Eastern cosmic-tree mythology, where the world-tree connects heaven, earth, and the underworld. Ezekiel transforms this mythological motif into a theological argument: no empire, however magnificent, can claim the height that belongs to God alone. The mention of Eden (vv. 8-9, 16, 18) is remarkable — Ezekiel is the only prophet who extensively deploys Eden traditions, and here the garden of God becomes the backdrop against which imperial arrogance is measured. The descent-to-Sheol passage (vv. 15-17) anticipates the fuller underworld tour in chapter 32, with the earth mourning and the deep being restrained as cosmic responses to the cedar's fall.*

Translation Friction: *The opening question in verse 2 — 'Whom are you like in your greatness?' — sets up a comparison with Assyria, but the Hebrew of verse 3 is notoriously difficult. The MT reads 'Behold, Assyria was a cedar in Lebanon' (ashur erez ba-levanon), but some scholars emend ashur ('Assyria') to te'ashur ('cypress' or 'box tree'), reading 'I made you like a cypress, a cedar in Lebanon.' We follow the MT reading, which makes better sense of the sustained political parable: Assyria is the exemplary fallen empire. The verb qana ('envied') in verse 9 applied to Eden's trees is striking — it suggests that even paradise itself could not match what God had made Assyria. The Sheol imagery in verses 15-17 personifies the underworld as a destination that 'comforts' the fallen — a deeply unsettling concept rendered without softening.*

Connections: *The cosmic-tree imagery connects to Daniel 4 (Nebuchadnezzar's dream of a great tree cut down), Isaiah 14:3-21 (the fall of the king of Babylon into Sheol), and Ezekiel's own cedar allegory in chapter 17. The Eden references link to Ezekiel 28:13 (the king of Tyre in Eden) and Genesis 2-3. The Sheol descent anticipates the fuller tour of the underworld in chapter 32:17-32. The pattern of imperial hubris and divine judgment echoes Isaiah 10:5-19 (Assyria as God's instrument who overreached) and Jeremiah 46-51 (oracles against the nations).*

¹In the eleventh year, in the third month, on the first of the month, the word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, say to Pharaoh king of Egypt and to his hordes: Whom are you like in your greatness?

³Consider Assyria — a cedar in Lebanon,
with beautiful branches, dense shade,
and towering height;
its crown reached among the thick clouds.

⁴Waters made it grow;
the deep made it tall,
sending its rivers around the place where it was planted,
channeling its streams to all the trees of the field.

⁵So its height surpassed all the trees of the field;
its boughs multiplied
and its branches grew long
from the abundance of water as it spread.

⁶In its boughs all the birds of the sky made their nests;
under its branches all the wild animals gave birth;
and in its shade all the great nations settled.

⁷It was beautiful in its greatness,
in the spread of its limbs,
for its roots reached down to abundant waters.

⁸The cedars in the garden of God could not rival it;
the cypresses could not match its boughs;
the plane trees could not compare to its branches.
No tree in the garden of God equaled it in beauty.

⁹I made it beautiful with its many branches,
and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of God envied it.

¹⁰Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Because it grew tall in height and thrust its crown among the thick clouds, and its heart became proud in its height — ¹¹I handed it over to the ruler of the nations. He will deal with it as it deserves; for its wickedness I drove it out.

¹²Foreigners — the most ruthless of the nations — cut it down and abandoned it.
On the mountains and in every valley its limbs fell;
its branches were broken in every ravine of the land.
All the peoples of the earth came down from its shade and left it.

¹³On its fallen trunk all the birds of the sky settled,
and among its branches all the wild animals gathered —

¹⁴This happened so that no trees by the waters would exalt themselves in height, or thrust their crowns among the thick clouds, and so that no well-watered tree would stand so tall — for all of them are destined for death, for the underworld, among mortal humans, with those who descend to the pit. ¹⁵This is what the Lord GOD says: On the day it descended to Sheol, I caused mourning. I covered the deep over it and held back its rivers; the abundant waters were stopped. I made Lebanon grow dark for it, and all the trees of the field wilted because of it. ¹⁶At the sound of its fall I made the nations tremble, when I brought it down to Sheol with those who descend to the pit. Then all the trees of Eden — the choicest and finest of Lebanon, all that were well-watered — were comforted in the underworld. ¹⁷They too descended with it to Sheol, to those slain by the sword — those who had been its strength, who had lived in its shade among the nations. ¹⁸Whom then do you resemble in glory and greatness among the trees of Eden? Yet you will be brought down with the trees of Eden to the underworld. You will lie among the uncircumcised, with those slain by the sword. This is Pharaoh and all his hordes, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula places this oracle in June 587 BCE — approximately one month before Nebuchadnezzar's forces breached Jerusalem's walls. The timing is significant: Pharaoh Hophra had marched north to relieve Jerusalem, temporarily lifting the Babylonian siege (Jeremiah 37:5-11), giving Egypt a brief illusion of power. Ezekiel's oracle punctures that illusion. The Hebrew *le'mor* ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct speech.
2. The word *hamon* ('multitude, hordes, throngs') recurs throughout Ezekiel's Egypt oracles (29-32) as a term for Egypt's teeming population and military masses. The rhetorical question 'Whom are you like?' sets up the Assyria comparison that follows — the answer being that Pharaoh resembles Assyria in both greatness and vulnerability to divine judgment.
3. The MT reads *ashur* ('Assyria') which we retain — the political parable requires Assyria as the exemplary empire that rose and fell. Some scholars emend to *te'ashur* ('cypress'), producing 'I made you like a cypress, a cedar in Lebanon,' but this weakens the sustained comparison with a known historical power. The word *choresh* can mean 'forest' or 'thicket' but here modifies 'shade' — the cedar's canopy was so dense it created a forest-like shadow. The word *avotim* can mean 'thick boughs' or 'clouds'; the ambiguity is preserved in the Hebrew imagery of a tree whose crown penetrates the

sky.

4. The *tehom* ('deep') is the primordial subterranean waters, the same word used in Genesis 1:2 for the deep over which God's spirit moved. The cedar draws its sustenance from cosmic waters, not ordinary rain — this elevates Assyria's greatness beyond the merely political into the mythological. The deep itself nourished this empire. The feminine pronouns reflect the grammatical gender of *tehom*.
5. The three-part description — height, boughs multiplied, branches lengthened — systematically catalogs Assyria's expansion. The word *sar'appotav* ('its boughs') refers to the main limbs, while *po'arotav* ('its branches') refers to the secondary growth. The distinction mirrors the structure of Assyria's empire: core territories and vassal states. The verb *shalach* ('send forth, spread') describes organic growth but carries overtones of military expansion.
6. The three tiers of life — birds in the boughs, animals under the branches, nations in the shade — form a cosmic hierarchy. The shift from animal imagery to explicit political language ('all the great nations') breaks the metaphor deliberately, ensuring the audience cannot miss the referent. This same world-tree imagery reappears in Daniel 4:12 applied to Nebuchadnezzar, and in Jesus's mustard-seed parable (Mark 4:32). The verb *yashav* ('settled, dwelt') for the nations suggests vassal dependence — they took shelter under Assyria's imperial canopy.
7. The verb *yaphah* ('was beautiful') is the same root used to describe physical beauty in the Song of Songs. Applied to a political empire, it conveys the allure of power — Assyria was not merely strong but magnificent. The *daliyyotav* ('its hanging branches, tendrils') suggests a luxuriant canopy. The causal clause ('for its roots reached down to abundant waters') locates the source of beauty in the deep — the same cosmic waters of verse 4.
8. The *gan Elohim* ('garden of God') is Eden — the primordial paradise. The comparison is extraordinary: Assyria's cedar surpassed even the trees of paradise. Three species are named — cedars (*arazim*), cypresses (*beroshim*), and plane trees (*armonim*) — and each falls short by a different measure. The fourfold negative construction (*lo...lo...lo...lo*) hammers the point: nothing in creation, not even Eden, could compete with what God had made Assyria. This sets up the theological reversal: what God exalted beyond Eden, God will cast below the earth.
9. The shift to first-person divine speech ('I made it beautiful') is the theological crux of the chapter. Assyria did not achieve greatness on its own — God fashioned it. This establishes God's sovereign right to bring it down. The verb *qana* ('envied, were jealous of') attributes emotion to the trees of Eden, intensifying the mythological register. Eden here functions as a superlative — even paradise envied Assyria.
10. The transition from beauty to judgment is marked by *laken* ('therefore'). The verb *gavah* ('grew tall, was exalted') shifts from describing natural growth to implying arrogance. The phrase *ram levavo* ('its heart became proud,' literally 'its heart was high') attributes self-exaltation to the tree — the shift from passive greatness (God made it beautiful) to active pride (its heart became proud) is the point of condemnation. The pronoun shifts between second and third person in the Hebrew, blurring the line between the cedar and Pharaoh.
11. The 'ruler of the nations' (*el goyim*) refers to Nebuchadnezzar — Babylon is God's instrument against Assyria (historically) and now against Egypt (prophetically). The verb *gerash* ('drove out, expelled') echoes the expulsion from Eden in Genesis 3:24, reinforcing the Eden framework of the chapter. The shift between past ('I handed it over,' 'I drove it out') and future ('he will deal with it') collapses the timeline: Assyria's past fate and Egypt's coming fate merge.
12. The 'ruthless of the nations' (*aritzei goyim*) is a stock phrase in Ezekiel for the Babylonian military forces (also 28:7, 30:11, 32:12). The verb *natash* ('abandoned') used twice creates a frame of desertion — the tree is both cut down and abandoned, its carcass left to rot where it fell. The dismemberment of the tree across mountains and valleys represents the disintegration of empire — its provinces scattered, its vassal states broken free. The departure of 'all the peoples' reverses verse 6 where 'all the great nations settled' in its shade.
13. The verb *yashav* ('settled') for the birds on the fallen trunk deliberately echoes verse 6, where birds nested in the living tree's boughs. The reversal is complete: the birds and animals that once thrived in the living cedar now scavenge on its corpse. The *mappalto* ('its fallen trunk, its ruin') comes from the root *naphal* ('to fall'), emphasizing collapse rather than mere death.
14. This verse states the theological purpose of Assyria's fall: it is a warning to all empires. The phrase *erets tachtit* ('the underworld,' literally 'the lowest earth') is Ezekiel's term for Sheol — the realm beneath the earth where the dead reside. The expression *yoredei vor* ('those who descend to the pit') is a standard designation for the dead. The pairing of 'mortal humans' (*benei adam*) with 'those who descend to the pit' emphasizes mortality as the great equalizer — even the mightiest empires share the common human destination of death.
15. The cosmic mourning for the fallen cedar is remarkable — God himself orchestrates the funeral. The *tehom* ('deep') that nourished the tree (v. 4) is now covered over; the rivers that fed it are restrained. The verb *he'evalti* ('I caused mourning') is in the *hiphil*, indicating God as the active agent of cosmic grief. The verb *aqdir* ('I made dark') suggests Lebanon's forests going into mourning — darkness as an expression of grief. The verb *ulpeh* ('wilted, fainted') describes the trees collapsing in sympathetic death, as if the ecosystem that depended on the great cedar cannot survive its loss.
16. The verb *hir'ashti* ('I made tremble') describes seismic terror — the nations quake as empires collapse. The verb *yinnachamu* ('were comforted') is deeply unsettling: the trees already in Sheol (fallen empires already destroyed) find comfort in the great cedar's arrival. Misery finds company. The dead welcome the newly dead. This macabre consolation appears again in 32:31 where Pharaoh will be 'comforted' by seeing other slain nations in Sheol. The trees of Eden in the underworld connect the primordial garden to the realm of the dead — paradise lost doubly, first from earth, then into death.
17. The 'they' who descend with the cedar are Assyria's vassal states and allies — when the imperial tree fell, its dependents fell with it. The word *zero'o* ('its arm, its strength') refers to military allies who served as Assyria's instrument of power. The phrase *challalei charev* ('those slain by the sword') introduces the category of violent death that dominates chapter 32's underworld tour. Those who lived 'in its shade' in life now lie with it in death — the shade of the living tree becomes the shadow of the grave.

18. The rhetorical question from verse 2 returns transformed: 'Whom do you resemble?' The answer, now clear, is Assyria — and Assyria is in Sheol. The word *arelim* ('uncircumcised') is a term of contempt marking those outside covenant relationship and cultural dignity. Egypt practiced circumcision, making this designation particularly degrading — Pharaoh will not even retain his cultural markers in death. The closing identification formula ('This is Pharaoh and all his hordes') rips away the allegory and names the target directly. The phrase *ne'um Adonai YHWH* ('declares the Lord GOD') seals the oracle with divine authority.

32

Summary: *Ezekiel 32 contains two oracles against Egypt. The first (vv. 1-16) is a qinah — a funeral dirge — for Pharaoh, dated to the twelfth year, twelfth month, first day (March 585 BCE). Pharaoh imagines himself a lion among the nations, but God calls him a thrashing sea-monster (tannim) caught in a divine net, his carcass strewn across mountains and valleys, his blood filling the ravines. The cosmic response is total: stars darkened, sun veiled, moon extinguished. The second oracle (vv. 17-32) is dated to the fifteenth of the same month and is one of the most extraordinary passages in the Hebrew Bible — a guided tour of Sheol, the underworld, where fallen empires lie in organized sections. Assyria, Elam, Meshech-Tubal, Edom, the Sidonians, and the princes of the north all lie in their graves, each 'bearing their shame' among the uncircumcised dead. Pharaoh descends to join them, and — in a twist of grim irony — is 'comforted' by seeing that he is not alone in ruin.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sheol descent (vv. 17-32) is without parallel in the Hebrew Bible. While Isaiah 14 briefly depicts the king of Babylon arriving in Sheol, Ezekiel provides a systematic survey of the underworld — mapping it as a stratified necropolis where each fallen empire occupies its own section. The repetitive formulaic structure ('There is X... all of them slain, fallen by the sword... they bear their shame with those who descend to the pit') creates a liturgical cadence, as though the prophet is leading a processional through a vast cemetery of civilizations. The shame vocabulary is relentless: each nation 'bears its shame' (*nas'u kelimmatam*) among the uncircumcised dead — circumcision status becomes the marker of dignity even in death. Pharaoh's 'comfort' at seeing the other slain (v. 31) is deeply ironic: the only consolation the dead can offer is shared disgrace. We rendered the Sheol tour as poetry, preserving the formulaic repetitions that give it its ritual power.*

Translation Friction: *The tannim ('sea-monster, dragon') in verse 2 is debated — it could be a crocodile (fitting Egyptian ecology), a mythological sea-dragon (fitting ancient Near Eastern combat myths), or both simultaneously. We render 'monster in the seas' to preserve the ambiguity. The date in verse 17 presents a text-critical issue: the MT does not specify the month, leading some scholars to assume it is the same twelfth month as verse 1, while others propose a different month. We follow the majority reading that places both oracles in the twelfth month. The repetitive Sheol formulae pose a translation challenge: they must be consistent enough to create the liturgical effect but varied enough to avoid monotony. We maintained the core formula while allowing natural variation in the connective language.*

Connections: *The sea-monster imagery connects to the chaoskampf tradition — God's battle against the primordial sea-monster (Psalm 74:13-14, Isaiah 27:1, Job 26:12-13). The cosmic darkening (vv. 7-8) parallels Joel 2:31, Isaiah 13:10, and anticipates the apocalyptic signs in Mark 13:24-25 and Revelation 6:12-13. The Sheol tour connects to Isaiah 14:3-21 (Babylon's king in Sheol), Ezekiel 31:15-17 (Assyria's descent), and the broader ancient Near Eastern tradition of underworld journeys (the Descent of Ishtar, the Gilgamesh Epic tablet XII). The nations listed in the Sheol tour correspond to the oracles against the nations in chapters 25-31, creating a structural closure: each nation that received a judgment oracle now receives a burial notice.*

1In the twelfth year, in the twelfth month, on the first of the month, the word of the LORD came to me:

2Son of man, raise a dirge over Pharaoh king of Egypt and say to him:

You compared yourself to a young lion among the nations,

but you are a monster in the seas.

You thrashed in your rivers,

muddied the waters with your feet,

and fouled their streams.

³This is what the Lord GOD says:

I will spread my net over you
with a host of many peoples,
and they will haul you up in my dragnet.

⁴I will fling you onto the land,
hurl you onto the open field.
I will make all the birds of the sky settle on you
and gorge the wild animals of the whole earth with your flesh.

⁵I will pile your flesh on the mountains
and fill the valleys with your carcass.

⁶I will drench the land with your flowing blood,
up to the mountains;
the ravines will be filled with you.

⁷When I snuff you out, I will cover the heavens
and darken their stars.
I will veil the sun with cloud,
and the moon will not shed its light.

⁸All the luminaries that shine in the heavens —
I will darken them over you
and bring darkness over your land,
declares the Lord GOD.

⁹I will trouble the hearts of many peoples
when I bring news of your destruction among the nations,
to lands you have never known.

¹⁰I will make many peoples appalled at you,
and their kings will shudder with horror over you
when I brandish my sword before their faces.
They will tremble every moment,
each one fearing for his own life,
on the day of your fall.

¹¹For this is what the Lord GOD says: The sword of the king of Babylon will come against you.

¹²By the swords of warriors I will bring down your hordes —
the most ruthless of the nations, all of them.
They will plunder the pride of Egypt,
and all its masses will be destroyed.

¹³I will destroy all its livestock from beside the abundant waters,
and no human foot will muddy them again,
nor will the hooves of cattle churn them.

¹⁴Then I will let their waters settle
and make their rivers flow like oil,
declares the Lord GOD.

¹⁵When I make the land of Egypt a desolation,
and the land is stripped of everything that filled it,
when I strike down all who live in it —
then they will know that I am the LORD.

¹⁶This is a dirge — they will chant it.
The daughters of the nations will chant it.
Over Egypt and all her hordes they will chant it,
declares the Lord GOD.

¹⁷On the fifteenth day of the month, the word of the LORD came to me:

¹⁸Son of man, wail over the hordes of Egypt
and bring them down —
her and the daughters of mighty nations —
to the underworld,
with those who descend to the pit.

¹⁹Whom do you surpass in beauty?
Go down and lie with the uncircumcised.

²⁰Among those slain by the sword they will fall.
The sword is appointed.
Drag her away, with all her hordes.

²¹The mightiest warriors will speak to him from the depths of Sheol,
along with his allies:
'They have gone down; they lie among the uncircumcised,
slain by the sword.'

²²Assyria is there, with all her assembly.
Its graves surround it —
all of them slain, fallen by the sword.

²³Their graves are set in the deepest recesses of the pit,
and her assembly surrounds her burial place —
all of them slain, fallen by the sword,
those who spread terror in the land of the living.

²⁴Elam is there, with all her hordes around her grave —
all of them slain, fallen by the sword,
who went down uncircumcised to the underworld,
those who spread their terror in the land of the living.
Now they bear their shame with those who descend to the pit.

²⁵In the midst of the slain they made a resting place for her,
with all her hordes.

Her graves surround it —
all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword.
Though their terror was spread in the land of the living,
they bear their shame with those who descend to the pit.
Among the slain she is placed.

²⁶Meshech-Tubal is there, with all her hordes.
Its graves surround it —
all of them uncircumcised, pierced by the sword,
though they spread their terror in the land of the living.

²⁷But they do not lie with the fallen warriors of old
who went down to Sheol with their weapons of war,
whose swords were placed under their heads
and whose shields rest upon their bones —
for the terror of these warriors was once in the land of the living.

²⁸But you — you will be shattered
and lie among the uncircumcised,
with those slain by the sword.

²⁹Edom is there — her kings and all her princes,
who for all their might are laid among those slain by the sword.
They lie with the uncircumcised,
with those who descend to the pit.

³⁰The princes of the north are there, all of them,
and all the Sidonians,
who went down with the slain.
For all the terror they inspired through their might, they are put to shame.
They lie uncircumcised with those slain by the sword
and bear their shame with those who descend to the pit.

³¹Pharaoh will see them and be comforted over all his hordes.
Pharaoh and all his army, slain by the sword,
declares the Lord GOD.

³²For I spread his terror in the land of the living,
but he will be laid among the uncircumcised,
with those slain by the sword —
Pharaoh and all his hordes,
declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date places this oracle in March 585 BCE — approximately seven months after the fall of Jerusalem (August 586 BCE). The sequence of Egypt oracles (29:1, 30:20, 31:1, 32:1, 32:17) spans from January 587 to March 585, bracketing Jerusalem's destruction. By this point, the siege and fall are accomplished facts, and Egypt's failure to save Jerusalem is complete.

2. The contrast between kephir ('young lion') and tannim ('sea-monster, dragon') is deliberate: Pharaoh sees himself as a majestic lion, but God sees him as a chaotic water-beast. The tannim evokes both the Nile crocodile (Egyptian ecology) and the primordial sea-monster of chaos mythology (ancient Near Eastern theology). The verbs tagach ('thrashed, burst forth'), tidlach ('muddied'), and tirpos ('fouled, trampled') depict destructive, chaotic activity — not powerful rule but senseless disruption. Pharaoh's 'rivers' (naharot) likely refer to the Nile's branches and canals.
3. The fishing metaphor reverses Pharaoh's self-image as a powerful sea-creature: the monster will be caught. The rishti ('my net') and chermi ('my dragnet') are God's instruments — even the Babylonian armies that will defeat Egypt are tools in God's hand. The qeal ammim rabbim ('host of many peoples') refers to the multinational composition of Nebuchadnezzar's forces.
4. The verbs escalate: natash ('fling, abandon'), atil ('hurl, cast'). The sea-monster is dragged from the water and left to rot on dry land — a reversal of its natural habitat. The image of birds and beasts feeding on the carcass echoes the covenant-curse tradition (Deuteronomy 28:26) and anticipates the great feast of God in 39:17-20. The verb hisba'ti ('I will gorge, satisfy') implies feasting to excess — the carrion is so abundant that every scavenger on earth is sated.
5. The word ramutekha is difficult — it could derive from rum ('height'), yielding 'your height/mass,' or from rimah ('worm, maggot'), yielding 'your worms/decay.' The KJV's 'thy height' follows the first derivation; we render 'your carcass' to capture the physical sense of a body so massive it fills valleys. The mountains-and-valleys pairing echoes 31:12, where the fallen cedar's branches littered the landscape.
6. The verb hishqeti ('I will drench, water, irrigate') is agricultural language repurposed for horror — the land will be 'irrigated' with blood instead of water. The word tsaphatekha is debated: it may derive from tsuf ('to flow, swim') or from a root meaning 'overflow.' The image of blood reaching 'up to the mountains' and filling ravines conveys catastrophic slaughter on a landscape scale — Egypt's blood will reshape the geography.
7. The verb kavah ('to extinguish, snuff out') treats Pharaoh as a flame to be quenched — cosmic language for political annihilation. The darkening of heavens, stars, sun, and moon forms a four-part de-creation sequence that reverses Genesis 1:14-18, where God set the luminaries in the sky. Pharaoh's destruction undoes creation itself, at least symbolically. This cosmic darkness language appears in Joel 2:31, Isaiah 13:10, and is taken up in the synoptic apocalypse (Mark 13:24-25) and Revelation 6:12-13.
8. The me'orei or ('luminaries of light') is the same term used in Genesis 1:14-16 for the celestial bodies God created. The deliberate echo turns Egypt's fall into a localized un-creation. The word choshekh ('darkness') over Egypt's land inevitably recalls the ninth plague — the darkness over Egypt in Exodus 10:21-23. Ezekiel, the priestly prophet, draws on Exodus traditions to frame Egypt's future judgment in terms of its past punishment.
9. The verb hikh'asti ('I will trouble, vex, provoke') describes the emotional shock that Egypt's fall will cause among distant peoples. The phrase 'lands you have never known' emphasizes that Egypt's catastrophe will reverberate beyond its sphere of influence — nations that never dealt with Egypt will hear of its destruction and be shaken. The word shivrekha ('your destruction, your shattering') from the root shavar ('to break') conveys total collapse, not mere defeat.
10. The verb yis'aru ('will shudder') is related to se'ar ('storm, tempest') — the kings' fear is described as a storm tearing through them. The image of God brandishing 'my sword' (charbi) before the faces of foreign kings is extraordinary: God personally wields the weapon, with Babylon serving merely as its physical carrier. The phrase ish le-nafsho ('each one for his own life') captures the self-preserving panic that sets in when an empire falls — former allies immediately look to their own survival.
11. After the mythological and cosmic imagery of verses 2-10, the oracle abruptly names the historical agent: Babylon. The brevity of this verse is striking — a single short sentence after the elaborate poetic imagery. The 'sword of the king of Babylon' is both a literal military threat and the same divine sword of verse 10. The simplicity functions as a shock: after dragons, cosmic darkness, and divine net-casting, the actual instrument is a familiar earthly power.
12. The phrase aritsei goyim ('the most ruthless of the nations') is Ezekiel's stock epithet for Babylon's forces (28:7, 30:11, 31:12). The word ge'on ('pride, majesty, pomp') carries both positive and negative connotations — Egypt's genuine cultural magnificence and its arrogant self-exaltation. The double use of hamon ('hordes, masses') in this verse — hamonekhah and hamonah — hammers the word that characterizes Egypt throughout these oracles: it is a land of teeming multitudes, all of whom will be destroyed.
13. This verse reverses verse 2, where Pharaoh (the sea-monster) muddied the waters with his feet. After Egypt's judgment, the waters will run clear because no one — human or animal — will be left to disturb them. The eerie calm of undisturbed waters is an image of total depopulation. The verb dalach ('to muddy, make turbid') connects the verse directly to 34:18-19, where God condemns leaders who muddy the water that others must drink.
14. The simile 'like oil' (ka-shemen) describes water so still and clear it flows with the smooth, viscous quality of olive oil — a beautiful image that masks a horrifying cause. The waters are calm because everyone is dead. The verb ashqi'a ('I will cause to settle, make sink') means the sediment will settle to the bottom — the turbulence of human and animal activity has ceased permanently.
15. The recognition formula — 'then they will know that I am the LORD' (veya'du ki ani YHWH) — is Ezekiel's theological signature, appearing over sixty times in the book. Every act of judgment and every act of restoration drives toward the same end: the knowledge of God. The pair shemamah/neshammah ('desolation/destitution') creates a paronomasia — the words sound alike, reinforcing the completeness of the devastation.
16. The triple repetition of the verb qonen ('chant, wail, lament') creates a ritual cadence — the dirge is not merely spoken but performed. The 'daughters of the nations' are the professional mourning women (see Jeremiah 9:17) who lead communal laments. The verse functions as a colophon to the first oracle, identifying its genre (qinah) and prescribing its liturgical use. The self-referential quality — 'This is a dirge' — mirrors 19:14 and breaks the fourth wall of the prophetic text.

17. The MT reads 'in the fifteenth year' (ba-chamesh esreh shanah), but this appears to be a scribal error for 'in the twelfth year' — the same year as verse 1. Many Hebrew manuscripts and the LXX read 'twelfth year.' The month is not specified in the MT; most scholars assume it is the same twelfth month as verse 1, placing this oracle two weeks after the first. We translate the date as given but note the text-critical issue. The second oracle of the chapter now begins — the descent to Sheol.
18. The prophet is commanded not merely to announce judgment but to perform it — his wailing (neheh) enacts the descent. The imperative horideihu ('bring them down') gives the prophet's word a performative force: by speaking, he consigns them to the underworld. The 'daughters of mighty nations' (benot goyim addirim) are the populations of the great empires already in Sheol, whom Egypt will join. The erets tachtiyyot ('underworld,' literally 'lowest lands') introduces the Sheol tour that follows.
19. The rhetorical question echoes 31:2, 18 — 'Whom do you surpass?' The answer is: no one. Egypt is not exempt from the fate of other empires. The command redah ('go down, descend') is a direct imperative — Egypt is ordered to descend to the underworld. The phrase 'lie with the uncircumcised' (hushkevah et arelim) introduces the shame-category that dominates the Sheol tour: the uncircumcised dead occupy the lowest, most disgraceful position. For Egypt, which practiced circumcision, this is a deliberate stripping of cultural dignity.
20. The terse, staccato commands — 'the sword is appointed,' 'drag her away' — create a pitiless rhythm. The verb mashkhu ('drag') implies forced removal — Egypt does not walk to Sheol but is dragged. The feminine pronoun ('her') treats Egypt/Pharaoh as the subject being hauled to the underworld. The passive nittanah ('is given, appointed') suggests the sword has been divinely commissioned — this is execution, not battle.
21. The dead speak. The elei gibborim ('mightiest warriors') — the champions of fallen empires already in Sheol — address Pharaoh as he arrives. This is the same motif as Isaiah 14:9-10, where the shades of dead kings rise to greet the king of Babylon. The verb yedabberu ('they will speak') implies intelligible speech from the dead — Ezekiel's Sheol is not a place of total oblivion but a twilight existence where the dead retain enough consciousness to mock or 'comfort' new arrivals.
22. The Sheol tour begins with Assyria — the great empire of chapter 31, now seen in its underworld resting place. The word qelahah ('her assembly, her congregation') uses cultic language for a political entity, as if Assyria's dead maintain a grim parody of communal life in the underworld. The phrase 'its graves surround it' envisions Sheol as a necropolis with organized burial plots — each empire occupying a defined section with its dead arranged around a central figure.
23. The phrase yarketei vor ('the deepest recesses of the pit') places Assyria's graves at the very bottom of Sheol — the remotest, lowest region. The contrast between 'the land of the living' (erets chayyim) and the pit is the fundamental spatial theology of these verses: those who terrorized the living world now occupy the dead world's deepest corners. The verb natnu chittit ('they spread terror') acknowledges Assyria's historical power even as it records its permanent defeat.
24. Elam, the ancient kingdom east of Mesopotamia (modern southwestern Iran), was a major military power that fell to Assyria and later to Babylon. The formulaic structure repeats from the Assyria section but adds the shame motif: nas'u kelimmatam ('they bear their shame'). The word kelimmah ('shame, disgrace, humiliation') is the key term of the Sheol tour — each nation carries its disgrace as a permanent condition in the underworld. The phrase 'uncircumcised' (arelim) marks their degraded status in death.
25. The word mishkav ('resting place, bed, couch') is grimly ironic — the death-bed is set 'in the midst of the slain.' The repetitive structure ('all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword... they bear their shame') creates a liturgical cadence that will repeat for each nation in the tour. The final phrase 'among the slain she is placed' (betokh chalalim nittan) serves as a refrain, emphasizing that Elam's position is fixed permanently among the violently killed.
26. Meshech and Tubal are peoples of Anatolia (central modern Turkey), often paired in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 10:2, 1 Chronicles 1:5). They reappear as part of Gog's coalition in Ezekiel 38:2-3. The verb mechullelei ('pierced, profaned') from the root chalal carries a double meaning: physically 'pierced' by the sword and ritually 'profaned' — their death is both violent and defiling. The pairing Meshech-Tubal may reflect Assyrian records referring to the kingdoms of Musku and Tabal.
27. This is one of the most debated verses in Ezekiel. The negation lo yishkevu ('they do not lie with') may mean Meshech-Tubal is denied the company of the honored ancient warriors, or it may be read without the negation (some LXX manuscripts omit it). We follow the MT with the negation, creating a contrast between the honored dead of old (buried with their weapons in dignity) and the shameful uncircumcised dead. The word avonotam ('their iniquities') literally reads 'upon their bones' — iniquity clings to the skeleton, a haunting image of guilt surviving death. The phrase kelei milchamtam ('their weapons of war') and the burial with swords under the head reflects known ancient Near Eastern burial customs attested archaeologically.
28. The direct address ('you') returns — after the survey of other nations, the prophet turns back to Egypt. The verb tishaver ('you will be shattered') from shavar ('to break') implies not merely death but destruction of form — Egypt's power structure will be broken beyond recognition. The placement 'among the uncircumcised' delivers the verdict: Egypt joins the shameful dead, not the honored warriors of verse 27.
29. Edom, Israel's brother-nation descended from Esau (Genesis 36), is condemned with particular bitterness throughout the prophets (Obadiah, Malachi 1:2-5, Ezekiel 25:12-14, 35:1-15). The phrase 'for all their might' (bi-gevuratam) is concessive: despite their military power, they share the same fate. The word nesi'eihā ('her princes') is Ezekiel's characteristic term for leaders (rather than sarim). The brevity of Edom's entry compared to Assyria's and Elam's is notable — Edom receives a shorter notice, perhaps because a fuller oracle against Edom has already been delivered in chapters 25 and 35.

- 30.** The 'princes of the north' (nesikhei tsaphon) are likely the rulers of Phoenician and Syrian city-states north of Israel. The Sidonians represent Phoenicia, whose commercial empire was legendary but whose military fate mirrored other conquered peoples. The juxtaposition of chittitam ('the terror they inspired') with boshim ('they are put to shame') creates a devastating reversal: those who spread fear now carry disgrace. The verb bosh ('to be ashamed') is the experiential counterpart to kelimmah ('shame, disgrace') — they feel what they bear.
- 31.** The verb nicham ('be comforted') is the theological climax of grim irony: Pharaoh's only comfort in Sheol is seeing that other great empires share his fate. This 'comfort' (the same root as the name Nahum, meaning 'comfort') is hollowed out — it is the consolation of shared disgrace, not genuine relief. The repetition of 'Pharaoh' twice in one verse hammers the personal address. The phrase ne'um Adonai YHWH seals the vision with divine authority — God has pronounced this fate and it is certain.
- 32.** The final verse returns to first-person divine speech: 'I spread his terror.' God claims responsibility for both the terror Pharaoh wielded and the fate that awaits him — the same God who empowered Egypt's might now assigns its humiliation. The verb hushkav ('he will be laid') is passive — Pharaoh does not choose to lie down; he is placed among the dead by divine decree. The closing formula ne'um Adonai YHWH seals the entire two-oracle sequence. The chapter ends not with resolution but with permanent, unrelieved shame — there is no hint of restoration for these nations in Ezekiel's underworld. The Sheol tour is a one-way descent.

33

Summary: *Ezekiel 33 marks the structural pivot of the entire book — the transition from judgment to restoration. The chapter opens with a restatement of Ezekiel's watchman commission (vv. 1-9), echoing the original call in chapter 3 but now reframed for a new era. God then addresses the exiles' despair and the theological problem of individual responsibility: can the wicked turn and live? (vv. 10-20). The turning point arrives in verse 21 — a fugitive from Jerusalem brings the news: 'The city has fallen!' This is the moment Ezekiel has been waiting for since 24:25-27. His enforced silence ends; his mouth is opened (v. 22). The chapter concludes with an oracle against those remaining in the ruined land who claim Abraham's inheritance while practicing abomination (vv. 23-29), and a sharp word about the exiles who treat Ezekiel's prophecies as entertainment rather than divine command (vv. 30-33).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most dramatic moments in prophetic literature: the arrival of news that Jerusalem has fallen. Ezekiel had been struck silent by God (3:26-27, 24:27), his mouth opened only for specific oracles. Now, on the evening before the fugitive arrives, God opens his mouth permanently (v. 22). The silence that began in chapter 3 — spanning the entire judgment section of the book — ends here. The watchman commission is restated nearly verbatim from 3:17-21 but with subtle expansions, suggesting that the same calling now operates in a different theological landscape: the judgment has come, and the question is no longer 'will it happen?' but 'who will survive?' The closing verses (30-33) are remarkably self-aware: Ezekiel reports God's observation that the exiles come to hear him as one goes to hear a singer of love songs — entertained by the eloquence but unmoved to obedience. We preserved the biting irony of this portrait.*

Translation Friction: *The watchman parable in verses 1-6 uses the hypothetical construction im-yavo ('if the sword comes') with layered conditional clauses that are syntactically dense in Hebrew. We unpacked the conditionals into clear English while preserving the legal-casuistic structure. The phrase 'Our transgressions and our sins are upon us, and we are rotting away in them' (v. 10) uses the verb namaqqu, which means to rot, decay, or pine away — we chose 'wasting away' to capture both physical decay and spiritual despair. The verb niftach in verse 22 ('was opened') is niphal — God opened Ezekiel's mouth; Ezekiel did not open it himself. The phrase agurat shir ('singer of love songs,' v. 32) is debated: some read agur as 'lovely' or 'beautiful,' others as a musical term. We rendered it as 'a singer of love songs' following the most natural reading of the Hebrew.*

Connections: *The watchman commission restates 3:17-21 with expansions. The enforced silence connects back to 3:26-27 and forward from the prediction in 24:25-27. The fall of Jerusalem is narrated in 2 Kings 25 and Jeremiah 39, 52. The individual responsibility teaching reprises chapter 18 almost verbatim. The appeal to Abraham by those remaining in the land echoes Isaiah 51:2 but here is used to justify a false claim. The portrait of Ezekiel as an entertainer (vv. 30-33) anticipates the distinction Jesus draws between hearing and doing (Matthew 7:24-27).*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, speak to your people and say to them: When I bring the sword against a land, and the people of that land take a man from among them and appoint him as their watchman — ³and he sees the sword coming against the land and blows the ram's horn and warns the people — ⁴then if anyone hears the sound of the ram's horn but does not take warning, and the sword comes and takes him, his blood will be on his own head. ⁵He heard the sound of the ram's horn but did not take warning — his blood is on him. But the one who takes warning will save his life. ⁶But if the watchman sees the sword coming and does not blow the ram's horn, and the people are not warned, and the sword comes and takes a life from among them — that person is taken in his iniquity, but I will require his blood from the watchman's hand. ⁷As for you, son of man — I have appointed you as a watchman for the house of Israel. When you hear a word from my mouth, you must warn them on my behalf. ⁸When I say to the wicked, 'Wicked one, you will certainly die,' and you do not speak to warn the wicked person away from his way, that wicked person will die in his iniquity — but I will require his blood from your hand. ⁹But if you warn the wicked person to turn from his way, and he does not turn from his way, he will die in his iniquity — but you will have saved your own life. ¹⁰And you, son of man, say to the house of Israel: This is what you have said — 'Our transgressions and our sins weigh upon us, and we are wasting away because of them. How can we live?' ¹¹Say to them: As I live, declares the Lord GOD, I take no pleasure in the death of the wicked. Rather, I desire that the wicked turn from his way and live. Turn back! Turn back from your evil ways! Why should you die, house of Israel? ¹²And you, son of man, say to your people: The righteousness of the righteous will not save him on the day he transgresses, and the wickedness of the wicked will not cause his downfall on the day he turns from his wickedness. The righteous will not be able to live by his righteousness on the day he sins. ¹³When I say to the righteous, 'You will certainly live,' but he trusts in his own righteousness and commits injustice — none of his righteous deeds will be remembered. He will die because of the injustice he has committed. ¹⁴And when I say to the wicked, 'You will certainly die,' but he turns from his sin and does what is just and right — ¹⁵if the wicked person restores the pledge, returns what he has stolen, and walks in the statutes that give life without committing injustice — he will certainly live; he will not die. ¹⁶None of the sins he committed will be held against him. He has done what is just and right — he will certainly live. ¹⁷Yet your people say, 'The way of the Lord is not fair.' But it is their way that is not fair. ¹⁸When the righteous turns from his righteousness and commits injustice, he will die because of it. ¹⁹And when the wicked turns from his wickedness and does what is just and right, he will live because of it. ²⁰Yet you say, 'The way of the Lord is not fair.' I will judge each of you according to his ways, house of Israel. ²¹In the twelfth year of our exile, on the fifth day of the tenth month, a fugitive from Jerusalem came to me and said, 'The city has fallen!' ²²Now the hand of the LORD had come upon me the evening before the fugitive arrived, and he opened my mouth before the fugitive came to me in the morning. My mouth was opened, and I was no longer silent. ²³The word of the LORD came to me: ²⁴Son of man, the inhabitants of these ruins in the land of Israel are saying, 'Abraham was only one person, and he possessed the land. We are many — surely the land has been given to us as a possession.' ²⁵Therefore say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — You eat meat with the blood still in it, you lift your eyes to your idols, and you shed blood. Should you then possess the land? ²⁶You rely on your sword, you commit abominations, and each of you defiles his neighbor's wife. Should you then possess the land? ²⁷Say this to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — As I live, those in the ruins will fall by the sword, those in the open field I will give to the wild animals to devour, and those in the strongholds and caves will die by plague. ²⁸I will make the land a desolate waste, and the pride of her strength will cease. The mountains of Israel will be so desolate that no one will pass through them. ²⁹Then they will know that I am the LORD, when I have made the land a desolate waste because of all their abominations that they have committed. ³⁰As for you, son of man — your people are talking about you beside the walls and in the doorways of their houses, saying to one another, each to his neighbor, 'Come, let us go and hear what word is coming from the LORD.' ³¹They come to you as a crowd gathers, and they sit before you as my people. They hear your words, but they will not act on them. Their mouths speak of devotion, but their hearts pursue dishonest gain. ³²To them you are like a singer of love songs — one with a beautiful voice who plays skillfully. They hear your words, but they do not act on them. ³³When it comes to pass — and it will come — then they will know that a prophet was among them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. This marks the beginning of a major new section — the transition from judgment oracles (chs. 1-24) and oracles against the nations (chs. 25-32) to restoration oracles (chs. 33-48). The watchman commission is restated here to signal a new phase of Ezekiel's ministry.
2. The watchman (tsofeh) parable begins with a hypothetical scenario framed in casuistic legal style — 'when... if... then...' — establishing the principle of warning before applying it to Ezekiel personally. The term tsofeh literally means 'one who looks out' or 'one who keeps watch,' and it carries both military and prophetic connotations.
3. The shofar (ram's horn) is the standard instrument of military alarm in ancient Israel (cf. Judges 3:27, 6:34, Nehemiah 4:14). The verb hizhir ('warn') is the key term of the watchman commission — the watchman's sole obligation is to issue the warning. What the people do with it is their responsibility.
4. The phrase damo brosho ('his blood is on his own head') is a legal formula of self-incurred liability — the person who hears the warning and ignores it bears sole responsibility for the consequences. The same formula appears in Joshua 2:19 and 2 Samuel 1:16.
5. The verb milleit ('save, deliver, rescue') is used with nephesh here, which in context means 'his life' or 'himself' rather than 'soul' in the Greek philosophical sense. The contrast is stark: identical warning, opposite responses, opposite outcomes.
6. The verb edrosh ('I will require, I will seek out') indicates divine accountability — God himself will hold the negligent watchman liable. The phrase miyad hatsofeh ('from the watchman's hand') uses 'hand' as a metonym for agency and responsibility. The victim still dies 'in his iniquity' (ba'avono), but the watchman shares culpability for failing to warn.
7. The parable now becomes personal application. The hypothetical watchman scenario (vv. 2-6) was preparation for this direct commission. The phrase mippi ('from my mouth') emphasizes that Ezekiel's authority derives entirely from divine speech — he does not create the message but receives it. This restates 3:17 almost verbatim but in a new context: the judgment has now occurred.
8. The emphatic mot tamut ('dying you will die' / 'you will certainly die') uses the infinitive absolute construction to stress the certainty of the outcome. The address rasha ('wicked one') is direct and confrontational — the watchman-prophet must deliver uncomfortable verdicts. The verb avaqesh ('I will seek, require') parallels edrosh in verse 6.
9. The verb hitsalta ('you will have saved, delivered') is the hiphil perfect of natsal, indicating completed action — the watchman's responsibility ends with the delivery of the warning. The prophet is not responsible for the outcome, only for the faithfulness of the message. This is the theological foundation of prophetic ministry.
10. The verb nimaqim ('we are wasting away, rotting, decaying') comes from the root m-q-q, describing organic decomposition. It appears in Leviticus 26:39 as part of the covenant-curse sequence — the exiles are experiencing exactly what Leviticus predicted. Their question 'How can we live?' (eikh nichyeh) is genuine despair, not rhetorical defiance. God takes the question seriously in the verses that follow.
11. The divine oath chai ani ('as I live') is the strongest possible guarantee — God swears by his own life. The verb chafats ('to delight, take pleasure') reveals God's emotional posture: he is not a dispassionate judge dispensing punishment but a grieving sovereign who longs for reconciliation. The doubled imperative shuvu shuvu ('turn back, turn back') intensifies the urgency — one command was not enough. This verse is a theological cornerstone: God's posture toward the wicked is not wrath but invitation.
12. This verse encapsulates the theology of individual responsibility developed in chapter 18. Neither past righteousness nor past wickedness determines present standing before God — each person's current moral direction is what matters. The verb yikashel ('stumble, fall') uses the metaphor of tripping on an obstacle; wickedness becomes a stumbling block, but one that disappears the moment the person turns from it.
13. The verb batach ('to trust, rely on') here has a negative connotation — misplaced trust in one's own moral record. The word avel ('injustice, wrongdoing') is distinct from both pesha (rebellion) and chattat (sin/missing the mark); it denotes perversion of what is right, particularly in social relationships. The phrase lo tizzakharnah ('they will not be remembered') is jarring — God will not recall past righteousness when current conduct contradicts it.
14. The phrase mishpat utsedaqah ('justice and righteousness') is a standard Hebrew word pair (hendiadys) describing the full scope of right conduct — legal justice and relational faithfulness. This is not merely about ceasing to sin but about actively pursuing righteous behavior.
15. The examples are concrete: restoring a pledge (chabol — the garment taken as collateral for a loan, cf. Exodus 22:25-26) and returning stolen property (gezelah). Repentance is not abstract remorse but tangible restitution. The phrase chuqqot hachayim ('statutes of life') is striking — God's commandments are not arbitrary restrictions but life-giving instructions.
16. The verb tizzakharnah ('will be remembered, mentioned, held against') is the same verb used in verse 13 for the righteous person's deeds — God's 'memory' of past conduct is overwritten by present direction. This symmetry is theologically deliberate: God's evaluation is always based on current standing, not accumulated moral credit.
17. The verb yittaken ('to be measured, regulated, fair') comes from the root t-k-n, meaning to weigh or measure. The people's complaint is that God's justice system lacks consistency — they want moral credit to accumulate permanently. God's response turns the accusation back: it is their way of thinking, not God's way of judging, that is distorted. This exchange directly parallels 18:25, 29.

18. The concise syntax mirrors the stark theological principle: turn, sin, die. The Hebrew *bahem* ('in them, because of them') points to the injustice as both the cause and the context of death.
19. The symmetry with verse 18 is exact: turn, act justly, live. The parallelism is deliberate — God's justice operates by the same principle in both directions. No special pleading for the righteous, no permanent condemnation for the wicked.
20. God's final response to the accusation of unfairness is not philosophical argument but judicial declaration: *ish kidrakav* ('each according to his ways'). Individual accountability is the irreducible principle. This closes the individual responsibility section and prepares for the dramatic shift at verse 21.
21. This is one of the most dramatic moments in the book. The date is approximately January 585 BCE (or 586 BCE depending on the calendrical system used), roughly a year and a half after Jerusalem's destruction in the summer of 586. The delay reflects the travel time from Jerusalem to Babylon. The word *hapalit* ('the fugitive, the one who escaped') suggests this person fled through the destruction. The verb *hukketa* ('has been struck, has fallen') is a hophal passive — the city was struck down by an external force. The three-word report *hukketa ha'ir* ('the city has fallen') is the news Ezekiel has been waiting for since 24:25-27, where God told him that on the day a fugitive arrives with news, his mouth would be opened.
22. The sequence is precise: God's hand came upon Ezekiel in the evening, opening his mouth; the fugitive arrived the next morning. The prophetic release preceded the news — God was already acting before the human messenger arrived. The verb *niftach* ('was opened') is niph'al passive: Ezekiel's mouth was opened by God, not by Ezekiel's own volition. The phrase *lo ne'elamti od* ('I was no longer silent') marks the end of the enforced silence imposed in 3:26. From this point forward, Ezekiel speaks freely. This is a structural hinge: the prophet of judgment becomes the prophet of restoration.
23. A new oracle begins, addressed to those remaining in the ruined land of Israel — distinct from the exilic community around Ezekiel in Babylon.
24. The argument is a *qal vachomer* (lesser to greater) — if one man received the whole land, how much more should many people retain it? But the logic is fatally flawed: it assumes that possession of the land is based on numbers rather than covenant faithfulness. The word *choravot* ('ruins') highlights the irony — they claim inheritance while standing amid rubble. The verb *yarash* ('to possess, inherit') is the covenant-land verb par excellence, echoing the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:7-8), but the claimants have no covenantal standing to invoke it.
25. Three violations are listed, each one a direct breach of foundational Torah commands: eating blood (prohibited in Genesis 9:4, Leviticus 17:10-14), idolatry (the first commandment), and bloodshed (Genesis 9:6). The term *gillulim* ('idols') is Ezekiel's characteristic term of contempt — it likely derives from a root meaning 'dung' or 'pellets,' reducing the objects of worship to excrement. The rhetorical question at the end (*veha'arets tirashu?*) expects the answer 'absolutely not.'
26. The phrase *amadtem al charbkhem* ('you stand upon your sword') means relying on violence as a way of life — the sword is their foundation, not covenant faithfulness. The word *to'evah* ('abomination') is Ezekiel's priestly defilement term. Adultery (defiling a neighbor's wife) violates both the seventh commandment and the purity of the land itself. The repeated rhetorical question hammers the point: those who live this way have no claim to the Abrahamic inheritance.
27. Three zones of supposed safety — ruins, open country, and fortifications — and none provides refuge. The sword, wild beasts, and plague form a triad of covenant curses (cf. Leviticus 26:22, 25, 33). The oath formula *chai ani* ('as I live') adds divine certainty — the same formula that in verse 11 guaranteed mercy to the repentant now guarantees judgment on the defiant.
28. The phrase *shemamah umeshammah* ('desolation and devastation') uses a wordplay built on the same root *sh-m-m*, intensifying the sense of utter emptiness. The 'pride of her strength' (*ge'on uzzah*) refers to the land's former fertility and the national confidence it inspired — all of it will end. The image of mountains without travelers conveys total depopulation.
29. The recognition formula *veyadu ki ani YHWH* ('and they will know that I am the LORD') is one of Ezekiel's most characteristic phrases, appearing over 70 times in the book. Knowledge of God comes through judgment — the desolation itself becomes a revelation of divine identity. The purpose of judgment is not annihilation but recognition.
30. The Hebrew *hannidbarim bekha* can mean either 'talking about you' or 'talking against you' — the preposition *be* is ambiguous. In context, the tone seems more curious than hostile; they discuss Ezekiel as a novelty. The detail *etsel haqivot uvepithai habattim* ('beside the walls and in the doorways') paints a vivid scene of everyday gossip — the prophet has become a topic of neighborhood conversation.
31. The word *agavot* ('devotion, desire, passion') in their mouths contrasts sharply with *bitsa'am* ('their unjust gain, profit') in their hearts. The Hebrew describes a split between public piety and private greed. The phrase *kimvo am* ('as a people comes') suggests they arrive in crowds — Ezekiel has become popular, but popularity without obedience is worthless.
32. The comparison is devastating: Ezekiel is treated as entertainment. The phrase *shir agavim* ('love songs' or 'songs of passion') suggests the kind of music one enjoys for aesthetic pleasure without any obligation to respond. The word *metiv naggen* ('skilled musician') is the same phrase used of David in 1 Samuel 16:17. The prophet's eloquence becomes a trap — the beauty of the message substitutes for obedience to its content.
33. The chapter ends with a grim prophecy about prophecy itself: fulfillment will vindicate the prophet, but by then it will be too late for the hearers to benefit from the warning. The phrase *navi hayah betokham* ('a prophet was among them') uses the past tense — when the fulfillment arrives, the opportunity will already have passed. The recognition will be retrospective, not prospective. This echoes 2:5 ('whether they listen or refuse to listen, they will know that a prophet has been among them') and forms an *inclusio* with the watchman theme: the watchman's vindication comes when the sword arrives.

34

Summary: *Ezekiel 34 is the shepherd chapter — one of the most theologically significant passages in the prophetic literature. It opens with a devastating indictment of Israel's shepherds (leaders, kings) who have fed themselves instead of the flock (vv. 1-10). God then declares that he himself will take over: 'I myself will search for my sheep and look after them' (v. 11). The divine shepherd will gather the scattered flock from among the nations, feed them on good pasture, bind up the injured, and strengthen the weak (vv. 11-16). God then turns to judging between the sheep themselves — the fat and the lean, those who bully and those who are trampled (vv. 17-22). The chapter climaxes with a messianic promise: 'I will set up over them one shepherd, my servant David, and he will feed them' (v. 23). This leads to the berit shalom — the covenant of peace — which transforms the land into a paradise of security, fertility, and freedom from fear (vv. 25-31).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter provides the primary Old Testament background for Jesus's self-identification as the Good Shepherd in John 10. Every element of Jesus's shepherd discourse echoes Ezekiel 34: the contrast between good and bad shepherds, the shepherd who seeks the lost, the shepherd who lays down his life for the sheep, the one flock under one shepherd. The 'my servant David' prophecy (v. 23) is explicitly messianic — not a prediction that David himself would return, but that a Davidic ruler would embody the ideal shepherd-king that the historical kings failed to be. The berit shalom ('covenant of peace,' v. 25) is one of the most beautiful covenant promises in the Hebrew Bible — it envisions not merely the absence of conflict but the presence of total flourishing: wild beasts removed, rain in its season, trees bearing fruit, freedom from slavery, and the knowledge of God filling the land. We gave full expanded rendering treatment to chesed, shalom, and berit wherever they carry their full covenantal weight in this chapter.*

Translation Friction: *The word ro'im ('shepherds') in verses 1-10 refers to political leaders (kings, princes, officials), not literal shepherds or religious leaders exclusively. The metaphor of king-as-shepherd was ubiquitous throughout the ancient Near East — Mesopotamian kings called themselves 'shepherds of their people.' We retained 'shepherds' and documented the political referent. The phrase 'my servant David' (avdi David, v. 23) presents a translation challenge: does it mean David himself, a Davidic descendant, or an idealized Davidic figure? We rendered it literally and documented the messianic reading. The phrase nasi echad ('one prince') in verse 24 uses nasi rather than melek ('king') — consistent with Ezekiel's practice of reserving full royal terminology. The berit shalom in verse 25 draws on the same covenant vocabulary as Numbers 25:12 (Phinehas) and Isaiah 54:10, and we traced the connections.*

Connections: *The shepherd metaphor connects to Jeremiah 23:1-6 (God will raise up shepherds and a righteous Branch of David), Isaiah 40:11 (God feeds his flock like a shepherd), Psalm 23 (the LORD is my shepherd), and Zechariah 11 (the worthless shepherd). The 'my servant David' prophecy parallels Jeremiah 30:9 and Hosea 3:5. The berit shalom connects to Numbers 25:12, Isaiah 54:10, and Ezekiel 37:26. Jesus's Good Shepherd discourse in John 10:1-18 is a sustained meditation on Ezekiel 34, and Matthew 25:31-46 (separating sheep and goats) echoes the judgment between fat and lean sheep in verses 17-22. The gathering of the scattered flock anticipates the valley of dry bones (ch. 37) and the restoration of all Israel.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, prophesy against the shepherds of Israel. Prophesy and say to them — to the shepherds: This is what the Lord GOD says — Woe to the shepherds of Israel who have been feeding themselves! Should not shepherds feed the flock? ³You eat the fat, you clothe yourselves with the wool, you slaughter the fattened animals — but you do not feed the flock. ⁴You have not strengthened the weak, you have not healed the sick, you have not bound up the injured, you have not brought back the strays, and you have not searched for the lost — but you have ruled them with harshness and brutality. ⁵So they were scattered because there was no shepherd, and they became food for every wild animal when they were scattered. ⁶My sheep wandered over every mountain and on every high hill. My sheep were scattered over the whole face of the earth, and no one searched for them — no one sought them out. ⁷Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of the LORD: ⁸As I live, declares the Lord GOD — because my sheep have become prey, and my sheep have become food for every wild animal since there was no shepherd, and because my shepherds did not search for my sheep but fed themselves

instead of feeding my sheep — ⁹Therefore, shepherds, hear the word of the LORD: ¹⁰This is what the Lord GOD says: I am against the shepherds. I will demand my sheep from their hand and remove them from tending the flock. The shepherds will no longer feed themselves, for I will rescue my sheep from their mouths so that my sheep will no longer be food for them. ¹¹For this is what the Lord GOD says: I myself — I will search for my sheep and seek them out. ¹²As a shepherd tends his flock on the day he is among his scattered sheep, so I will tend my sheep. I will rescue them from all the places where they were scattered on a day of cloud and thick darkness. ¹³I will bring them out from the peoples, gather them from the countries, and bring them to their own land. I will feed them on the mountains of Israel, by the streams, and in all the settled places of the land. ¹⁴I will feed them in good pasture, and their grazing ground will be on the high mountains of Israel. There they will lie down in good grazing land, and they will feed on rich pasture on the mountains of Israel. ¹⁵I myself will feed my sheep, and I myself will make them lie down, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁶I will seek the lost, bring back the strays, bind up the injured, and strengthen the sick — but the fat and the strong I will destroy. I will feed them with justice. ¹⁷As for you, my flock — this is what the Lord GOD says: I am judging between sheep and sheep, between rams and male goats. ¹⁸Is it not enough for you to feed on the good pasture? Must you also trample the rest of your pasture with your feet? And when you drink the clear water, must you also muddy the rest with your feet? ¹⁹My sheep must feed on what your feet have trampled, and they must drink what your feet have muddied. ²⁰Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says to them: I myself — I will judge between the fat sheep and the lean sheep. ²¹Because you shove with flank and shoulder, and gore all the weak ones with your horns until you have scattered them outside — ²²I will save my flock so that they will no longer be prey. I will judge between sheep and sheep. ²³I will set up over them one shepherd, and he will feed them — my servant David. He will feed them, and he will be their shepherd. ²⁴I, the LORD, will be their God, and my servant David will be prince among them. I, the LORD, have spoken. ²⁵I will make a covenant of peace with them and remove dangerous animals from the land. They will dwell securely in the wilderness and sleep safely in the forests. ²⁶I will make them and the area around my hill a blessing. I will send down rain in its season — they will be showers of blessing. ²⁷The trees of the field will yield their fruit, and the land will yield its produce. They will be secure on their own soil, and they will know that I am the LORD — when I break the bars of their yoke and rescue them from the hand of those who enslaved them. ²⁸They will no longer be prey for the nations, and the wild animals of the land will not devour them. They will dwell securely, and no one will make them afraid. ²⁹I will raise up for them a plantation of renown. They will no longer be consumed by famine in the land, and they will no longer bear the disgrace of the nations. ³⁰They will know that I, the LORD their God, am with them, and that they — the house of Israel — are my people, declares the Lord GOD. ³¹You are my sheep, the flock of my pasture — you are human beings, and I am your God, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula, introducing one of the most important oracle units in the book — the shepherd oracle that provides the theological foundation for the Good Shepherd tradition in both Judaism and Christianity.
2. The word ro'im ('shepherds') is the standard ancient Near Eastern metaphor for political rulers — Mesopotamian kings bore the title 're'u' (shepherd) as a royal epithet. In Israel, the shepherd metaphor applies to kings (2 Samuel 5:2, Psalm 78:70-72), officials, and religious leaders. The indictment is devastating: the shepherds have fed themselves (otam — 'themselves,' emphatic) instead of the flock (tso'n). The rhetorical question expects only one answer: of course shepherds should feed the sheep.
3. Three acts of exploitation listed in ascending severity: consuming the fat (chelev — the choicest portion), wearing the wool, and slaughtering the well-fed animals (haberi'ah — the fatlings). Each represents the rulers extracting wealth from the people. The verb tizbachu ('you slaughter') is emphatic — the rulers are not just neglecting the flock but actively destroying the productive members for personal consumption.
4. Five categories of pastoral failure are listed, forming a comprehensive indictment: the weak (nachalot), the sick (cholah), the injured (nishberet, literally 'broken'), the strays (niddachat, 'driven away'), and the lost (ovedet). Each failure corresponds to a specific shepherding duty. The final phrase bechozakah uvefarekh ('with harshness and with brutality') uses parekh, the same word used for Egyptian oppression in Exodus 1:13-14 — the shepherds of Israel have become Pharaohs to their own people.
5. The verb vattefutseinah ('they were scattered') is repeated at the beginning and end of the verse, creating an envelope that emphasizes dispersion as the defining condition of the flock. The scattering is directly attributed to the absence of genuine shepherding — mibbeli ro'eh ('because there was no shepherd'). The exile itself is framed as a pastoral failure. The 'wild animals' (chayyat hasadeh) represent the predatory nations that devoured Israel.

6. God now speaks in first person — tso'ni ('my sheep'). The possessive is significant: these are God's sheep, not the shepherds' property. The shepherds were custodians, not owners. The phrase al kol penei ha'arets ('over the whole face of the earth') indicates global dispersion, not merely local wandering. The doubled negative ein doresh ve'ein mevaqesh ('no one searching and no one seeking') underscores the total abandonment.
7. The summons to hear (shim'u) is judicial — the shepherds are being called to account. The direct address ro'im ('shepherds') is now accusatory rather than descriptive.
8. The divine oath chai ani ('as I live') introduces a formal judgment sentence. The possessive tso'ni ('my sheep') appears four times and ro'ai ('my shepherds') once — God reclaims ownership of both the flock and the office. The distinction between ro'ai ('my shepherds') and tso'ni ('my sheep') clarifies the hierarchy: the shepherds are servants of God, not autonomous rulers. Their fundamental sin was feeding otam ('themselves') instead of tso'ni ('my sheep').
9. The summons is repeated from verse 7, intensifying the judicial tone. The repetition frames the indictment of verse 8 and introduces the verdict that follows.
10. The phrase hineni el haro'im ('I am against the shepherds') uses the divine self-announcement hineni with the adversative el — God personally opposes them. The verb darashti ('I will demand, require') is the same verb used in 33:6 for God requiring blood from the negligent watchman. The image of rescuing sheep mippihem ('from their mouths') is startling — the shepherds themselves have become predators, devouring the flock they were supposed to protect.
11. The emphatic hineni ani ('I myself') is one of the most remarkable divine declarations in the prophetic literature. The doubled pronoun stresses that God personally will do what the shepherds failed to do. The two verbs darashti ('I will search') and biqqartim ('I will seek out, examine, attend to') cover both finding the lost and caring for the found. This verse is the theological foundation for Jesus's statement 'I am the good shepherd' (John 10:11) — in Ezekiel, the good shepherd is God himself.
12. The phrase beyom anan va'arafel ('on a day of cloud and thick darkness') uses language associated with theophany and judgment (cf. Joel 2:2, Zephaniah 1:15). The 'day of cloud' is the day of exile — the catastrophe that scattered the flock. God will go into the darkness itself to find them. The simile compares God to a working shepherd physically present among scattered sheep — not directing from a distance but walking among them.
13. Three verbs of restoration in sequence: hotse'tim ('I will bring them out'), qibbatstim ('I will gather them'), and havi'otim ('I will bring them in'). The language echoes the Exodus — bringing out, gathering, bringing in. The restoration is a second Exodus. The 'mountains of Israel' (harei Yisra'el) are the promised land's highlands, and the afiqim ('streams, riverbeds, channels') are the wadis where water and pasture are found.
14. The verb tirbatstna ('they will lie down') echoes Psalm 23:2 — 'he makes me lie down in green pastures.' The pastoral imagery is not metaphor stripped of content but a vision of material flourishing: real land, real productivity, real security. The word shamen ('fat, rich') describes pasture so lush that the sheep grow fat — the opposite of the exploitation described in verses 3-4.
15. The doubled ani ('I myself') in both clauses is emphatic — God personally performs both the feeding and the settling. The verbs er'eh ('I will feed') and arbiitsem ('I will make them lie down') cover sustenance and rest. The declaration ne'um Adonai YHWH ('declares the Lord GOD') seals this as a divine oath.
16. The four positive actions (seek, bring back, bind up, strengthen) directly reverse the four failures of verse 4, creating a literary mirror. The verb ashmid ('I will destroy') applied to the fat and strong sheep is jarring — the same shepherd who rescues the weak will judge the powerful. The Hebrew bemishpat ('with justice') is sometimes emended to bemishte ('with feast') following the LXX, but the MT reading makes excellent theological sense: God's shepherding includes restorative justice.
17. The oracle shifts from the shepherds (leaders) to the flock itself — injustice exists within the community, not only between rulers and ruled. The phrase bein seh laseh ('between sheep and sheep') indicates individual evaluation. The rams (eilim) and male goats (attudim) are the dominant animals in the flock — the powerful members of the community who bully the weaker ones.
18. The accusation is not merely about consuming resources but about ruining what is left — the powerful eat the best pasture and then trample the remainder; they drink the clear water and then foul it for everyone else. The verb tirposun ('you muddy, you foul') describes deliberately contaminating a shared resource. This is the ancient equivalent of economic exploitation that destroys communal well-being.
19. The perspective shifts to the victims — God's concern is with tso'ni ('my sheep'), the vulnerable members of the community who are left with the ruined pasture and fouled water. The possessive 'my sheep' again marks divine ownership and solidarity with the weak.
20. The emphatic hineni ani ('I myself') mirrors verse 11 — the same God who personally searches for the lost will personally execute justice between the exploiters and the exploited. The contrast between biriyah ('fat, well-fed') and razah ('lean, emaciated') is graphic — some sheep are fattened while others waste away in the same flock.
21. The verbs are violently physical: tehdofu ('you shove, push') and tenagchu ('you gore'). The imagery is of dominant animals physically driving weaker ones out of the flock — a metaphor for economic and social marginalization. The word nachalat ('the weak ones') is the same word used in verse 4. The phrase el hachutsah ('to the outside') means total exclusion from the community.
22. The verb vehoshati ('I will save') uses the hiphil of yasha — the root that gives us the names Joshua and Jesus (Yeshua). God's saving action addresses both external threats (predators/nations) and internal exploitation (powerful sheep). The double judgment — between sheep and sheep — ensures that restoration includes justice within the restored community.

- 23.** The threefold repetition of the shepherding verb (vera'ah, yir'eh, lero'eh) in a single verse is emphatic beyond normal Hebrew usage — this future shepherd will be defined entirely by the act of feeding. The title avdi ('my servant') is a royal designation in the Hebrew Bible, used of David (2 Samuel 7:5), Moses (Numbers 12:7), and the Servant of Isaiah 42-53. The messianic promise here parallels Jeremiah 30:9 ('they will serve the LORD their God and David their king') and Hosea 3:5 ('afterward the Israelites will return and seek the LORD their God and David their king').
- 24.** The covenant formula returns: 'I will be their God.' This echoes verse 4's language from 11:20, 14:11, 36:28, and 37:23 — the relational core of the Sinai covenant. The title nasi ('prince') rather than melek ('king') is consistent with Ezekiel's usage throughout the book — Ezekiel reserves nasi for the future Davidic ruler (cf. 37:25, 44:3, 45:7-8, 46:2-18). The phrase ani YHWH dibbarti ('I, the LORD, have spoken') is a sealing formula that places divine authority behind the promise.
- 25.** The verb karati ('I will cut') preserves the ancient language of covenant-making — covenants were 'cut' by splitting sacrificial animals (cf. Genesis 15:9-18). The berit shalom appears also in Numbers 25:12 and Isaiah 54:10, creating an intertextual network of divine peace-covenants. The removal of chayyah ra'ah ('dangerous wild animals') reverses the covenant curse of Leviticus 26:22, where God threatens to send wild beasts against a disobedient people. Dwelling in the wilderness and sleeping in forests — places of danger — becomes safe, reversing the fear and scattering of verses 5-6.
- 26.** The phrase sevivot giv'ati ('around my hill') refers to Zion — God's hill. The promise transforms the geography itself into a source of blessing (berakhah). The phrase gishmei verakhah ('showers of blessing') connects rainfall to covenant faithfulness — in the land of Israel, rain was never taken for granted; it was understood as a direct sign of God's favor (Deuteronomy 11:13-14, 28:12). The absence of rain was a covenant curse; its return signals restoration.
- 27.** The phrase motot ullam ('bars of their yoke') uses the image of an animal yoke with wooden crossbars — Israel has been yoked like a work animal under foreign domination. The verb shivri ('I will break') promises liberation from that yoke. The recognition formula veyadu ki ani YHWH ('they will know that I am the LORD') now appears in a context of salvation rather than judgment — knowledge of God comes through deliverance as well as discipline.
- 28.** The phrase ein macharid ('none making afraid') is a covenant-blessing formula from Leviticus 26:6 — 'I will give peace in the land, and you will lie down, and no one will make you afraid.' Ezekiel is invoking the Levitical blessings that were forfeited through disobedience and now promised in restoration. The dual threats — nations (goyim) and wild animals (chayyat ha'arets) — represent political and natural dangers, both removed.
- 29.** The phrase matta leshem ('plantation of renown' or 'planting for a name') may refer to agricultural abundance (a famous garden) or metaphorically to a restored, renowned people. Some scholars, following the LXX's 'plant of peace' (matta shalom), see a messianic reference — a 'shoot' of renown (cf. Isaiah 11:1, Jeremiah 23:5). We retained the MT reading. The double negation — no more famine, no more shame — addresses both material deprivation and national humiliation. The 'disgrace of the nations' (kelimmat haggoyim) is the mockery that exile brought upon Israel.
- 30.** The recognition formula veyadu ('they will know') here culminates the chapter's theological arc: knowledge of God comes through the experience of God's shepherding. The phrase ani YHWH elohehem ittam ('I, the LORD their God, am with them') combines the covenant formula with the Immanuel ('God with us') concept. The declaration hemmah ammi beit Yisra'el ('they are my people, the house of Israel') reaffirms national identity after the identity-threatening disaster of exile.
- 31.** The word adam ('human beings, humankind') grounds the shepherd metaphor in anthropological reality — the sheep are people, not livestock. This prevents the metaphor from becoming merely decorative. The possessive tso'n mar'iti ('flock of my pasture') is one of the tenderest divine self-descriptions in the Hebrew Bible — God defines his relationship to Israel in terms of a shepherd who feeds. The final declaration ne'um Adonai YHWH ('declares the Lord GOD') seals the entire oracle with divine authority.

35

Summary: *Ezekiel 35 is an oracle against Mount Seir — Edom — delivered as the counterpart to the restoration oracle for the mountains of Israel in chapter 36. Edom is condemned for its perpetual hostility (eivat olam) toward Israel, for its opportunistic violence during the fall of Jerusalem, and for its arrogant claim to possess both Israel and Judah's land. The chapter announces that Edom's mountains will become a permanent desolation, mirroring the devastation Edom rejoiced to see inflicted on Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This oracle pairs structurally with chapter 36 as a deliberate contrast: the mountains of Seir will become desolate while the mountains of Israel will be restored. Edom's sin is not merely political rivalry but theological presumption — claiming the land that belongs to the LORD while knowing that 'the LORD was there' (v. 10). The phrase eivat olam ('perpetual hostility,' v. 5) traces Edom's enmity back to the Esau-Jacob conflict in Genesis 25-27, casting this as a family feud that has become a national sin. The threefold repetition of 'I will make you a desolation' (vv. 3, 4, 14-15) creates a structural echo of covenant curse language.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'these two nations and these two lands will be mine' (v. 10) requires careful handling — Edom is claiming both the northern kingdom (Israel) and the southern kingdom (Judah), and the text's response is that the LORD was there, meaning the land belongs to God, not to Edom. The word shemamah ('desolation') appears repeatedly and must be rendered consistently. The phrase eivat olam in verse 5 could be rendered 'ancient hostility,' 'perpetual enmity,' or 'undying hatred' — we chose 'perpetual hostility' to capture both the temporal depth and the active aggression of the Hebrew.*

Connections: *This oracle connects to the Edom oracle in Ezekiel 25:12-14, to the extended Edom prophecy in Obadiah, to the Esau-Jacob narrative in Genesis 25-33, and to Psalm 137:7 ('Remember, LORD, what the Edomites did on the day Jerusalem fell'). The structural pairing with chapter 36 creates a mountain-against-mountain contrast that frames the entire restoration section.*

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²"Son of man, set your face against Mount Seir and prophesy against it. ³Say to it: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am against you, Mount Seir. I will stretch out my hand against you and make you a desolation and a waste. ⁴I will lay your cities in ruins, and you will become a desolation. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ⁵Because you harbored perpetual hostility and handed the Israelites over to the power of the sword at the time of their disaster, at the time of their final punishment — ⁶Therefore, as I live — declares the Lord GOD — I will make you into blood, and blood will pursue you. Since you did not hate bloodshed, bloodshed will pursue you. ⁷I will make Mount Seir an utter desolation and cut off from it everyone who comes and goes. ⁸I will fill its mountains with its slain. On your hills, in your valleys, and in all your ravines, those killed by the sword will fall. ⁹I will make you a perpetual desolation, and your cities will not be inhabited again. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ¹⁰Because you said, 'These two nations and these two lands will be mine, and we will take possession of them' — though the LORD was there — ¹¹Therefore, as I live — declares the Lord GOD — I will act according to the anger and jealousy you showed out of your hatred for them. I will make myself known among them when I judge you. ¹²Then you will know that I am the LORD. I have heard all the contemptuous words you spoke against the mountains of Israel, saying, 'They are desolate — they have been given to us to devour.' ¹³You boasted against me with your mouths and multiplied your words against me — I have heard it. ¹⁴This is what the Lord GOD says: When the whole earth rejoices, I will make you a desolation. ¹⁵As you rejoiced over the inheritance of the house of Israel because it was desolate, so I will do to you. You will become a desolation, Mount Seir — all of Edom, every part of it. Then they will know that I am the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. The Hebrew le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing the direct speech that follows.
2. The idiom sim panekha ('set your face against') indicates hostile prophetic confrontation — a deliberate orientation of the prophet toward the target of judgment. Mount Seir is the mountainous region southeast of the Dead Sea that constitutes the heartland of Edom.
3. The compound divine name Adonai YHWH is rendered as 'Lord GOD' throughout Ezekiel. The Hebrew shemamah u-meshamah ('desolation and waste') is a paronomasia — both words derive from the root sh-m-m, intensifying the desolation through sound. The declaration hineni elekha ('I am against you') is a formal divine war oracle.
4. The recognition formula veyada'ta ki ani YHWH ('then you will know that I am the LORD') appears throughout Ezekiel as the theological purpose of divine action — both judgment and restoration serve to make God known. The verb charvah ('ruin') describes cities reduced to uninhabitable rubble.
5. The verb higer (from nagor) means 'to pour out, hand over' — the image is of delivering people into the hands of slaughter. The phrase al yedei cherev ('by the hands/power of the sword') treats the sword as an agent. The expression et avon qets is debated: it could mean 'the time of the iniquity of the end' or 'the time of final punishment.' We render as 'final punishment' because the context treats Jerusalem's fall as the climax of divine judgment on Israel's accumulated sin.
6. The oath formula chai ani ('as I live') is the most solemn form of divine declaration — God swears by his own existence. The word dam ('blood') appears five times in this single verse, creating a hammering repetition that enacts the inescapable nature of blood-guilt. The phrase im lo dam sane'ta is difficult: literally 'if not blood you hated,' meaning 'since you did not hate blood(shed)' — Edom's sin is that it loved violence rather than recoiling from it.
7. The phrase over vashav ('one who passes through and returns') is a merism — it describes all movement, all human traffic, all life. To cut off the over vashav is to reduce the land to a place where no one travels, no one lives, no one passes through.

8. The Hebrew shifts abruptly between third person ('its mountains, its slain') and second person ('your hills, your valleys') — a common feature of prophetic oracles where the prophet alternates between speaking about and speaking to the addressee. The word *afiqim* ('ravines, channels') refers to seasonal watercourses — even the dry riverbeds will be filled with the dead.
9. *Shimmemot olam* ('perpetual desolations') echoes the *eivat olam* ('perpetual hostility') of verse 5 — the punishment mirrors the sin in both quality and duration. Edom's hostility was *olam*; its desolation will be *olam*. The verb *teshuvnah* ('will return/be inhabited') indicates that the cities will never be repopulated.
10. The phrase *shenei ha-goyim* ('the two nations') refers to Israel and Judah — the divided kingdoms. Edom saw the fall of both as an opportunity to expand its territory. The clause *va-YHWH sham hayah* ('and/though the LORD was there') is the theological crux of the chapter. The conjunction can be adversative ('though') or circumstantial ('while') — either way, Edom's claim ignores God's presence in and ownership of the land. This phrase anticipates the name of the eschatological city in 48:35: *YHWH shamah* ('the LORD is there').
11. God's judgment will mirror Edom's own conduct — the principle of measure-for-measure. The word *qin'ah* ('jealousy, envy') suggests that Edom resented Israel's covenant status and special relationship with God. The phrase *venoda'ti vam* ('I will make myself known among them') means God will reveal himself to Israel through the judgment he executes on Edom.
12. The word *ne'atsot* ('contemptuous words, blasphemies, insults') carries the sense of scornful speech that treats the sacred with contempt. Edom's words are directed against the mountains of Israel — the same mountains that will be addressed in the restoration oracle of chapter 36. The verb *le'okhlah* ('to devour, consume') treats the land as prey to be eaten.
13. The verb *higdilu* ('you magnified yourselves, boasted') indicates arrogant speech directed at God himself — not just at Israel. Edom's contempt for Israel's land is ultimately contempt for Israel's God. The emphasis *ani shamati* ('I myself have heard') makes God a direct witness to Edom's arrogance.
14. The contrast is sharp: when God restores the earth and all creation celebrates, Edom alone will be desolate. The timing of Edom's desolation coincides with universal joy — its ruin is the counterpoint to the world's restoration.
15. The principle of measure-for-measure reaches its climax: Edom rejoiced over Israel's desolation, so Edom will become a desolation. The phrase *kol Edom kullah* ('all Edom, all of it') is emphatic — no portion of Edom escapes. The recognition formula closes the oracle, but here it is third-person plural ('they will know') rather than second person, suggesting that the nations generally — not just Edom — will recognize the LORD through this judgment.

36

Summary: *Ezekiel 36 is the structural reversal of chapter 6, where the mountains of Israel were cursed. Now the same mountains receive a restoration oracle. The chapter moves in three stages: (1) the mountains will be restored because the nations — especially Edom — have plundered and mocked them (vv. 1-15); (2) Israel's exile was caused by its own defilement of the land through bloodshed and idolatry, and God scattered them among the nations where they profaned his holy name (vv. 16-21); (3) God will restore Israel not because they deserve it but for the sake of his holy name — and that restoration will include cleansing with water, a new heart, a new spirit, and the indwelling of God's own Spirit (vv. 22-38). Verses 25-27 are the theological climax of Ezekiel's restoration vision.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most concentrated statement of divine grace in the prophetic literature. The repeated insistence 'Not for your sake do I act... but for my holy name' (vv. 22, 32) strips away any possibility of Israel earning restoration through merit. The new heart and new spirit passage (vv. 25-27) moves from external cleansing (sprinkling water) to internal transformation (heart transplant) to divine indwelling (my Spirit in you) — a three-stage renewal that forms the theological foundation for later Christian sacramental theology (baptism, regeneration, the gift of the Spirit) and for Jewish concepts of inner teshuvah. The language of heart-of-stone replaced by heart-of-flesh reverses the hardening imagery that runs through the prophets. We gave full expanded rendering treatment to ruach, lev, and the sprinkling imagery because these verses are the theological center of the entire restoration section.*

Translation Friction: *The key term lev ('heart') must be understood in its Hebrew sense — the seat of will, thought, and decision, not emotion. The sprinkling of 'clean water' (mayim tehorim) in verse 25 uses priestly purification vocabulary (tahor) and must not be softened into metaphor — Ezekiel the priest is describing ritual cleansing that accomplishes actual purification. The word ruach in verses 26-27 shifts from 'spirit' (the new inner disposition God gives) to 'my Spirit' (God's own Spirit indwelling the person), and this transition must be carefully rendered. The phrase lo lema'ankhem ('not for your sake') in verses 22 and 32 is a direct challenge to any theology of merit-based restoration.*

Connections: This chapter reverses Ezekiel 6 (curse on the mountains becomes blessing). The new heart promise connects to Jeremiah 31:31-34 (the new covenant), to Deuteronomy 30:6 (God will circumcise your heart), and to Joel 2:28-29 (the outpouring of the Spirit). The sprinkling imagery connects to the priestly purification rituals of Numbers 19 (the water of purification). In Christian reading, the water-Spirit sequence anticipates John 3:5 (born of water and Spirit) and Titus 3:5 (the washing of regeneration). The 'not for your sake' theology connects to Deuteronomy 9:4-6 where Moses tells Israel their inheritance of the land is not because of their righteousness.

¹"And you, son of man, prophesy to the mountains of Israel and say: Mountains of Israel, hear the word of the LORD. ²This is what the Lord GOD says: Because the enemy said about you, 'Aha! The ancient heights have become our possession!' — ³T herefore prophesy and say: This is what the Lord GOD says — Because they devastated you and crushed you from every side so that you became the possession of the rest of the nations, and you were taken up on the lips of gossips and became the slander of the peoples — ⁴therefore, mountains of Israel, hear the word of the Lord GOD. This is what the Lord GOD says to the mountains and hills, to the ravines and valleys, to the desolate ruins and abandoned cities that have become plunder and a mockery to the rest of the nations all around — ⁵therefore this is what the Lord GOD says: Surely in the fire of my jealousy I have spoken against the rest of the nations and against all of Edom, who gave my land to themselves as a possession with wholehearted glee and utter contempt, so they could seize its pastureland as plunder. ⁶Therefore prophesy concerning the land of Israel and say to the mountains and hills, to the ravines and valleys: This is what the Lord GOD says — Look, I have spoken in my jealousy and in my wrath, because you have borne the disgrace of the nations. ⁷Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says: I have raised my hand in an oath — the nations around you will themselves bear their disgrace. ⁸But you, mountains of Israel, will put out your branches and bear your fruit for my people Israel, for they are about to come home. ⁹F or I am for you. I will turn toward you, and you will be tilled and sown. ¹⁰I will multiply people on you — the whole house of Israel, all of it. The cities will be inhabited, and the ruins will be rebuilt. ¹¹I will multiply people and animals on you. They will increase and be fruitful. I will settle you as in your former times, and I will do better for you than at your beginnings. Then you will know that I am the LORD. ¹²I will cause people to walk on you — my people Israel. They will possess you, and you will be their inheritance, and you will no longer bereave them of their children. ¹³This is what the Lord GOD says: Because they say to you, 'You devour people and you have bereaved your nation of children' — ¹⁴therefore you will no longer devour people, and you will no longer bereave your nation of children — declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁵I will not let you hear the disgrace of the nations any longer. You will no longer bear the reproach of the peoples, and you will no longer cause your nation to stumble — declares the Lord GOD." ¹⁶The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁷"Son of man, when the house of Israel lived on their own land, they defiled it by their conduct and their deeds. Their conduct before me was like the uncleanness of a woman's menstrual impurity. ¹⁸So I poured out my wrath on them for the blood they had shed on the land and for the idols with which they had defiled it. ¹⁹I scattered them among the nations, and they were dispersed throughout the lands. I judged them according to their conduct and their deeds. ²⁰When they came to the nations where they went, they profaned my holy name, because people said about them, 'These are the people of the LORD, yet they had to leave his land.' ²¹But I had concern for my holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the nations wherever they went. ²²Therefore say to the house of Israel: This is what the Lord GOD says — It is not for your sake that I am about to act, house of Israel, but for my holy name, which you have profaned among the nations wherever you went. ²³I will sanctify my great name, which has been profaned among the nations — which you profaned in their midst. Then the nations will know that I am the LORD — declares the Lord GOD — when I demonstrate my holiness through you before their eyes. ²⁴I will take you from the nations, gather you from all the lands, and bring you into your own land. ²⁵I will sprinkle clean water on you, and you will be clean. I will cleanse you from all your impurities and from all your idols. ²⁶I will give you a new heart and put a new spirit within you. I will remove the heart of stone from your body and give you a heart of flesh. ²⁷I will put my Spirit within you and cause you to walk in my statutes. You will keep my judgments and do them. ²⁸You will live in the land that I gave to your ancestors. You will be my people, and I will be your God. ²⁹I will save you from all your impurities. I will call for the grain and make it abundant, and I will not bring famine on you. ³⁰I will multiply the fruit of the trees and the produce of the field, so that you will never again bear the disgrace of famine among the nations. ³¹Then you will remember your evil ways and your deeds

that were not good, and you will loathe yourselves for your iniquities and your abominations. ³²It is not for your sake that I am acting — declares the Lord GOD — let that be known to you. Be ashamed and humiliated because of your ways, house of Israel. ³³This is what the Lord GOD says: On the day I cleanse you from all your iniquities, I will resettle the cities, and the ruins will be rebuilt. ³⁴The desolate land will be tilled instead of lying waste in the sight of every passerby. ³⁵People will say, 'This land that was desolate has become like the garden of Eden, and the ruined, desolate, and demolished cities are now fortified and inhabited.' ³⁶Then the nations that remain around you will know that I, the LORD, have rebuilt what was demolished and replanted what was desolate. I, the LORD, have spoken, and I will do it. ³⁷This is what the Lord GOD says: I will also let the house of Israel ask me to do this for them — I will multiply them with people like a flock. ³⁸Like the flocks of holy offerings, like the flocks of Jerusalem during her appointed festivals — so the ruined cities will be filled with flocks of people. Then they will know that I am the LORD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The address to the mountains of Israel directly reverses the oracle against the mountains of Israel in chapter 6. There, the mountains were summoned to hear judgment; here, they are summoned to hear restoration. The literary structure is deliberate — the same addressee receives the opposite message.
2. The exclamation he'ach ('Aha!') is a taunt expressing gloating satisfaction. The phrase bamot olam ('ancient/eternal heights') refers to Israel's hill country, which the nations now claim as their own. The enemy is not specified here, though Edom is the primary referent given chapter 35.
3. The doubled ya'an beya'an ('because, because') intensifies the causal connection. The phrase sfat lashon ('lip of tongue') means malicious talk — the mountains of Israel have become the subject of contemptuous gossip among the nations. The word dibbat ('slander, infamy') indicates hostile speech that damages reputation.
4. The comprehensive address — mountains, hills, ravines, valleys, ruins, cities — encompasses every feature of the landscape. The land itself is the audience. The words baz ('plunder') and la'ag ('mockery') describe both the physical and reputational damage done to the land by surrounding nations.
5. God calls it artsi ('my land') — the land belongs to God, not to any nation, reinforcing the theological point from 35:10. The phrase simchat kol levav ('joy of all the heart') paired with she'at nefesh ('contempt of soul') describes nations that took Israel's land with both delight and disdain. Edom is singled out by name from among the nations, confirming the connection to chapter 35.
6. The word kelimmat ('disgrace, humiliation, shame') describes the mocking contempt the nations have heaped on the land. God responds with qin'ah ('jealousy') — the passionate possessiveness of a covenant partner who will not tolerate rivals claiming what is his.
7. The gesture nasa yadi ('I have raised my hand') is a formal oath gesture — God swears by himself that the disgrace will be reversed. The measure-for-measure principle continues from chapter 35: the nations that heaped disgrace on Israel's mountains will bear disgrace themselves.
8. The reversal is dramatic: the desolate mountains will flourish again with vegetation. The phrase qervu lavo ('they are near to come') announces the imminent return of the exiles. We render 'come home' rather than simply 'come' to capture the restoration context — this is a homecoming, not merely an arrival.
9. The declaration hineni aleikhem ('I am for you') is the exact reversal of hineni elekha ('I am against you') from 35:3. Same formula, opposite direction. The agricultural verbs ne'evadtem ('tilled') and nizra'tem ('sown') personify the mountains as fields ready for cultivation — the land will return to productive use.
10. The phrase kol beit Yisra'el kullo ('the whole house of Israel, all of it') is emphatic — not just Judah but the entire people, including the northern tribes. This anticipates the two-sticks oracle of 37:15-28. The contrast between inhabited cities and rebuilt ruins describes a complete reversal of the desolation described in chapter 35.
11. The verbs ravu ufaru ('increase and be fruitful') echo the creation blessing of Genesis 1:28, connecting restoration to the original divine intention for human flourishing. The promise hetivoti merishotekhem ('I will do better than at your beginnings') means the restoration will surpass the original settlement — the future will exceed the past.
12. The verb shakkelem ('bereave them') personifies the land as a mother who has consumed her own children — a reference to the common ancient Near Eastern perception that the land of Canaan devoured its inhabitants (cf. Numbers 13:32). God promises that this reputation will end.
13. The accusation okelet adam ('devourer of people') echoes the evil report of the spies in Numbers 13:32, where the land of Canaan was called 'a land that devours its inhabitants.' The land's reputation as a place of death and loss will be overturned.
14. The land is directly addressed and directly acquitted of the charge. The feminine verb forms (to'khli, teshakkeli) maintain the personification of the land as a woman — specifically a mother accused of consuming her offspring. God overturns the accusation by divine decree.

15. Three promises close this section: no more disgrace, no more reproach, no more stumbling. The transition from *kelimmat* ('disgrace') to *cherpat* ('reproach') to *takhshili* ('cause to stumble') moves from verbal abuse to physical failure — the land will no longer be a source of shame or a cause of ruin for its people.
16. A new reception formula marks the transition to the second major section of the chapter. The focus shifts from the land to the people and their defilement.
17. The simile of *niddah* ('menstrual impurity') draws on priestly purity law (Leviticus 15:19-30). The comparison is not misogynistic but ritual — menstrual impurity is a temporary state of ritual uncleanness that prevents access to the sanctuary. Israel's behavior made the land ritually inaccessible to God's presence. The priestly vocabulary reflects Ezekiel's Zadokite training.
18. Two causes of defilement: bloodshed (*dam*) and idolatry (*gillulim*). The word *gillulim* ('idols') is Ezekiel's preferred term for foreign gods — it derives from a root meaning 'dung pellets' and is deliberately contemptuous. Ezekiel uses it approximately 39 times, far more than any other biblical author.
19. The verb *hafits* ('I scattered') describes the exile as an active divine act — God himself dispersed Israel as judgment. The phrase *kederekham ukha'alilotam* ('according to their conduct and deeds') establishes that the exile was proportionate justice, not arbitrary punishment.
20. The profanation of God's name (*chillelu et shem qodshi*) is not blasphemy by Israel but the natural conclusion the nations draw: if Israel is God's people and God expelled them from God's land, then God is either powerless to protect them or faithless to his own covenant. Israel's exile makes God look weak or unreliable in the eyes of the nations. This is the core theological problem that drives the restoration.
21. The verb *chamol* ('to have concern, to have compassion, to spare') is directed at God's own name, not at Israel. This is a crucial distinction: God's motive for restoration is the vindication of his own name among the nations. The verb can mean 'to pity' or 'to spare,' but here the sense is protective concern — God acts to safeguard the reputation of his name.
22. This verse introduces the theological engine of the entire restoration: God acts for the sake of his name, not for Israel's sake. The phrase is repeated in verse 32 to bracket the new heart promise, ensuring that even the most intimate divine gift — the new heart and new spirit — is understood as grace, not reward.
23. The verb *qiddashti* ('I will sanctify') means God will restore the holy status of his own name by acting decisively. The phrase *behiqqadshi vakhem* ('when I am sanctified in you') means God will demonstrate his holiness through what he does with and for Israel — their restoration becomes the proof of God's power and faithfulness. The audience is the nations: *le'eineihem* ('before their eyes').
24. Three verbs in sequence — *laqachti* ('I will take'), *qibbatsti* ('I will gather'), *heve'ti* ('I will bring') — describe the physical restoration: extraction from exile, assembly from dispersion, and return to the land. This is the prelude to the spiritual transformation that follows in verses 25-27.
25. The verb *zaraqti* ('I will sprinkle') is a technical priestly term for the ritual sprinkling of blood or purification water (cf. Leviticus 1:5, 11; Numbers 19:18-19). This is not metaphorical washing but the language of cultic purification applied to the entire nation. God acts as both priest and purifier. The sequence from external cleansing to internal transformation in the following verses creates a progression from the priestly to the prophetic to the pneumatological.
26. The Hebrew *lev* ('heart') must be understood as the seat of the will and intellect, not of emotion. A 'new heart' means a new capacity for decision-making and covenantal faithfulness. The metaphor of stone versus flesh is visceral: stone is dead, unresponsive, impenetrable; flesh is alive, soft, capable of feeling and responding. The word *basar* ('flesh') here is positive — living tissue as opposed to mineral — which contrasts with its negative connotation elsewhere in Ezekiel (e.g., 'flesh' as mortal weakness). The *ruach chadashah* ('new spirit') here is the person's own renewed spirit, distinct from God's Spirit in verse 27.
27. The pronoun *ruchi* ('my Spirit') is emphatic — this is God's own Spirit, not a general spiritual renewal. The verb *ve'asiti* is causative: 'I will cause you to walk' — God is the active agent in producing obedience. This resolves the central tension of the entire prophetic tradition: Israel cannot obey, so God will produce obedience in them through his own Spirit. We capitalize 'Spirit' here to distinguish God's Spirit from the human spirit of verse 26.
28. The covenant formula *vihyitem li le'am va'anokhi ehyeh lakhem le'lohim* ('you will be my people and I will be your God') closes the sequence begun in verse 24. The entire passage moves from physical return (v. 24) through purification (v. 25), internal transformation (v. 26), divine indwelling (v. 27), to covenant restoration (v. 28). The word *avoteikhem* ('your ancestors') replaces the KJV's 'fathers.'
29. The verb *qara'ti* ('I will call for') personifies the grain as something summoned by divine command — God calls the harvest into being. The promise of abundance reverses the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:38-40, where grain failure and famine were consequences of disobedience.
30. The phrase *cherpat ra'av* ('reproach of famine') indicates that famine carried not only physical suffering but national humiliation — a starving nation was a disgraced nation in the ancient Near East, evidence of divine disfavor.
31. The verb *niqottem* ('you will loathe yourselves') describes visceral self-disgust — not merely regret but a physical revulsion at the memory of past sin. This self-loathing comes after restoration, not before it — it is the response to grace, not the prerequisite for it. The word *to'avot* ('abominations') is Ezekiel's standard term for practices that defile.
32. The repetition of *lo lema'ankhem* ('not for your sake') from verse 22 brackets the entire new heart and new spirit passage. Even the most intimate gifts — the new heart, the new spirit, the indwelling of God's Spirit — are given for the sake of God's name, not earned by Israel. The commands *boshu vehikkalemu* ('be ashamed and humiliated') are not punitive but therapeutic — shame at past sin is the proper response to unmerited grace.

33. The phrase *beyom tahari* ('on the day I cleanse you') ties physical restoration directly to spiritual purification — the rebuilding of cities follows from the cleansing of sin. The verb *vehoshavti* ('I will cause to dwell/resettle') is causative — God is the agent of resettlement.
34. The contrast between *neshamah* ('desolate') and *te'aved* ('tilled/worked') reverses the agricultural collapse of exile. The land that shocked travelers with its desolation will now attract them with its cultivation.
35. The comparison to *gan Eden* ('the garden of Eden') is extraordinary — the restoration is not merely to pre-exile conditions but to paradise itself. This connects to the river-of-life imagery in chapter 47, where the water flowing from the new Temple creates Edenic fertility. The three adjectives for the cities — *hecharevot*, *haneshamot*, *haanherasot* ('ruined, desolate, demolished') — are reversed by two positive states: *betsurot yashavu* ('fortified and inhabited').
36. The recognition formula reaches its fullest expression: the nations themselves will recognize that the restoration is the LORD's doing. The final declaration *ani YHWH dibbarti ve'asiti* ('I the LORD have spoken and I will do it') is a divine signature affirming the certainty of fulfillment — the gap between God's word and God's action is zero.
37. The verb *iddaresh* ('I will be sought, I will let myself be inquired of') indicates that God will again be accessible to Israel's prayers — the broken relationship will be restored to the point where Israel can petition God and be heard. The simile *katson adam* ('like a flock of people') is unusual — 'flock' applied to humans rather than animals, evoking the pastoral imagery of chapter 34 where God is the shepherd of his people.
38. The image is vivid and specific: during the pilgrimage festivals (*mo'adim*), Jerusalem was packed with sacrificial animals brought for offering. The ruined cities will be that full — but full of people, not sheep. The phrase *tson qodashim* ('flocks of holy offerings') refers to animals dedicated for sacrifice, drawing on Ezekiel's priestly vocabulary. The closing recognition formula marks the end of the chapter's oracle.

37

Summary: *Ezekiel 37 contains two of the most iconic passages in the prophetic literature. The first (vv. 1-14) is the vision of the valley of dry bones — Ezekiel is transported by the Spirit to a valley filled with bones that are very dry, asked whether these bones can live, and then commanded to prophesy over them. The bones come together, are covered with sinews, flesh, and skin, and finally receive the breath/spirit (ruach) that brings them to life. God interprets the vision explicitly: 'These bones are the whole house of Israel' (v. 11), and the resurrection represents national restoration from exile. The second passage (vv. 15-28) is the sign-act of the two sticks — one for Judah and one for Joseph/Ephraim — joined into one stick in Ezekiel's hand, representing the reunification of the divided kingdom under one shepherd-king, 'my servant David.' The chapter culminates in the promise of an eternal covenant of peace (berit shalom / berit olam) and God's sanctuary set among his people forever.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The valley of dry bones is simultaneously one of the clearest and most layered texts in the Hebrew Bible. Its primary meaning is unambiguous — God himself provides the interpretation in verses 11-14: the bones represent the exiled house of Israel, and their resurrection is national restoration. But the imagery of bodily resurrection — bones reconnecting, flesh forming, breath entering — became foundational for later Jewish and Christian resurrection theology (Daniel 12:2, 2 Maccabees 7, the Apostles' Creed, 1 Corinthians 15). We present both readings without privileging either: the national restoration reading is primary in context, and the bodily resurrection reading is a legitimate and historically significant extension. The word ruach is the translational challenge of the chapter — it means 'wind,' 'breath,' and 'spirit' simultaneously in verses 9-14, and the ambiguity is theologically productive. We document each rendering choice. The two-sticks passage resolves the division that has haunted Israel since 1 Kings 12 — the split kingdom will be one again under a Davidic ruler. The berit olam ('eternal covenant') in verse 26 connects forward to the new Temple vision of chapters 40-48 and back to the covenant promises of Genesis 17 and 2 Samuel 7.*

Translation Friction: *The central translational challenge is ruach in verses 9-10 and 14. In verse 9, Ezekiel prophesies to the ruach and summons it from the four ruchot ('winds') — here it functions as wind/breath. In verse 10, the ruach enters the dead and they live — here it functions as breath/spirit. In verse 14, God says 'I will put my Spirit (ruchi) in you and you will live' — here it is unambiguously God's own Spirit. The English language forces a choice that the Hebrew does not, and we document the layered meaning at each occurrence. The phrase 'my servant David' (avdi David) in verses 24-25 is debated: does it refer to a literal return of David, to a future Davidic king, or to the Messiah? We render the Hebrew as it stands and note the interpretive traditions. The phrase berit shalom in verse 26 connects to Numbers 25:12 (Phinehas's covenant of peace) and Isaiah 54:10, and we treat it with full expanded_rendering.*

Connections: The dry bones vision connects to the creation narrative (Genesis 2:7 — God breathes life into dust), to the new heart and new spirit promise of 36:26-27, and to Daniel 12:2 (many who sleep in the dust will awake). In Christian reading, it connects to John 5:28-29 (the dead will hear his voice), Romans 8:11 (the Spirit who raised Jesus will give life to your mortal bodies), and Revelation 20:4-6 (the first resurrection). The two sticks connect to the division of the kingdom in 1 Kings 12, to Hosea's prophecy of reunion (Hosea 1:11), and to the 'one flock, one shepherd' language of John 10:16. The berit olam connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 17:7), the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7:13, 16), and the new covenant of Jeremiah 31:31-34.

¹The hand of the LORD was upon me, and he brought me out by the Spirit of the LORD and set me down in the middle of a valley, and it was full of bones. ²He led me all around them, and there were very many on the surface of the valley — and they were very dry. ³He said to me, "Son of man, can these bones live?" I answered, "Lord GOD, you know." ⁴Then he said to me, "Prophecy over these bones and say to them: Dry bones, hear the word of the LORD. ⁵This is what the Lord GOD says to these bones: I am about to bring breath into you, and you will live. ⁶I will attach sinews to you, bring flesh over you, cover you with skin, and put breath in you, and you will live. Then you will know that I am the LORD." ⁷So I prophesied as I had been commanded, and as I prophesied there was a sound — a rattling — and the bones came together, bone to bone. ⁸I looked, and sinews were on them, flesh had come over them, and skin had covered them — but there was no breath in them. ⁹Then he said to me, "Prophecy to the breath. Prophecy, son of man, and say to the breath: This is what the Lord GOD says — Come from the four winds, breath, and breathe into these slain, so that they may live." ¹⁰So I prophesied as he commanded me, and the breath entered them, and they came to life and stood on their feet — a vast, immense army. ¹¹Then he said to me, "Son of man, these bones are the whole house of Israel. They are saying, 'Our bones are dried up, our hope is lost, we are cut off.' ¹²Therefore prophecy and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am going to open your graves and raise you from your graves, my people, and I will bring you into the land of Israel. ¹³Then you will know that I am the LORD, when I open your graves and raise you from your graves, my people. ¹⁴I will put my Spirit in you, and you will live, and I will settle you on your own land. Then you will know that I, the LORD, have spoken and I have done it — declares the LORD." ¹⁵The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁶"And you, son of man, take a stick and write on it, 'For Judah and the Israelites associated with him.' Then take another stick and write on it, 'For Joseph — the stick of Ephraim — and all the house of Israel associated with him.' ¹⁷Join them together into a single stick, so that they become one in your hand." ¹⁸When your people say to you, 'Will you not tell us what these mean to you?' — ¹⁹say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am going to take the stick of Joseph, which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel associated with him, and I will place them with the stick of Judah. I will make them a single stick, and they will be one in my hand. ²⁰Hold the sticks on which you write before their eyes, ²¹and say to them: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am going to take the Israelites from among the nations where they have gone, gather them from every direction, and bring them into their own land. ²²I will make them one nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and one king will be king over all of them. They will no longer be two nations, and they will never again be divided into two kingdoms. ²³They will no longer defile themselves with their idols, their detestable things, or any of their transgressions. I will save them from all their apostasies in which they sinned, and I will cleanse them. They will be my people, and I will be their God. ²⁴My servant David will be king over them, and there will be one shepherd for all of them. They will walk in my judgments, keep my statutes, and do them. ²⁵They will live on the land that I gave to my servant Jacob, where your ancestors lived. They will live on it — they, their children, and their children's children, forever. And my servant David will be their prince forever. ²⁶I will make a covenant of peace with them — an everlasting covenant it will be with them. I will establish them, multiply them, and set my sanctuary among them forever. ²⁷My dwelling place will be over them. I will be their God, and they will be my people. ²⁸Then the nations will know that I am the LORD who sanctifies Israel, when my sanctuary is among them forever."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase hayetah alai yad YHWH ('the hand of the LORD was upon me') is Ezekiel's formula for visionary experience — the divine hand seizes the prophet and transports him. The ruach YHWH ('Spirit of the LORD') is the agent of transport, as in 3:12, 3:14, 8:3, and 11:1. The biq'ah ('valley, plain') is a broad open valley — the same word used for the plain where Ezekiel saw the glory of the LORD in 3:22-23. The bones are not introduced gradually

but presented as a complete tableau: the valley is full of them.

2. The phrase *saviv saviv* ('around, around') is emphatic — God forces Ezekiel to see the full scope of the desolation from every angle. The double *hinneh* ('and there...and they') draws the reader's eye twice: first to the quantity (*rabbot me'od*, 'very many') and then to the condition (*yeveishot me'od*, 'very dry'). The dryness matters: these are not recently dead — they have been dead so long that all moisture has departed. Any hope of natural revival is impossible.
3. The question *hatichyeinah ha'atsamot ha'elleh* ('can these bones live?') is the theological question of the chapter — indeed, of the entire exile. The answer Ezekiel gives is masterful: *Adonai YHWH attah yada'ta* ('Lord GOD, you know'). It is neither yes nor no. From a human perspective the answer is obviously no — these bones are very dry, very dead, beyond any natural restoration. But Ezekiel will not limit God's power by saying no, nor will he presume to know God's intentions by saying yes. He places the question back in God's hands.
4. God commands Ezekiel to address the bones as though they were a living audience — 'hear the word of the LORD' is the standard prophetic address to a congregation, but the congregation here is dead. The absurdity of prophesying to bones is the point: the word of the LORD is effective even where human hope sees nothing but death.
5. The word *ruach* here is rendered 'breath' — the animating force that gives life to dead matter. This echoes Genesis 2:7, where God breathes the breath of life (*nishmat chayyim*) into the dust to create the first human. The resurrection of dry bones recapitulates the creation of humanity.
6. The sequence of restoration follows anatomical order from the inside out: sinews (*gidim* — tendons and ligaments that connect bones), then flesh (*basar* — muscle tissue), then skin (or — the outer covering). Finally, *ruach* ('breath') is the last addition — the physical reconstruction is complete but lifeless until the breath enters. This mirrors the creation sequence of Genesis 2: form first, then breath. The recognition formula closes the divine speech.
7. The word *ra'ash* can mean 'earthquake,' 'thunder,' or 'rattling' — here it describes the sound of thousands of bones grinding and clicking into their proper positions. The visceral sound effect makes the vision cinematic: this is not a quiet miracle but a noisy, almost violent reassembly. The phrase *etsem el atsmo* ('bone to its bone') indicates precise reconnection — each bone finds its matching partner.
8. The narrative pauses at a critical moment: the bodies are physically complete but lifeless. The clause *veruach ein bahem* ('but there was no breath in them') is devastating — complete reconstruction without animation. The bodies are assembled corpses, not living beings. The two-stage resurrection (physical reassembly, then breath) separates the material from the spiritual: form alone does not constitute life. Life requires the *ruach*.
9. We render *ruach* as 'breath' throughout this verse because the dominant action is breathing into the dead (*upchi baharugim*, 'breathe into the slain'). But the summoning from *arba ruchot* ('four winds/directions') simultaneously evokes wind blowing from every compass point. The word *harugim* ('slain') — not 'dead' but 'slain,' i.e., killed by violence — adds a layer of meaning: these are not people who died naturally but victims of war and conquest. This connects to the historical reality of Jerusalem's fall and the slaughter that accompanied it.
10. The phrase *chayil gadol me'od me'od* ('a vast, immense army') uses the military term *chayil*, which can mean 'army,' 'force,' or 'strength.' The doubled superlative *me'od me'od* appears rarely in biblical Hebrew and indicates something beyond ordinary description. We render 'vast, immense' to capture the double emphasis without simply repeating 'very, very.'
11. God provides the interpretation directly: the bones represent *kol beit Yisra'el* ('the whole house of Israel') — not a remnant, not Judah alone, but the entire people including the northern tribes. The three despairing statements — *yaveshu atsmoteinu* ('our bones are dried up'), *avdah tiqvateinu* ('our hope is lost'), *nigzarnu lanu* ('we are cut off') — form a complete vocabulary of hopelessness. The verb *nigzarnu* ('we are cut off') carries the sense of being severed from the land of the living, pruned from the vine of existence.
12. The metaphor shifts from bones on a valley floor to bodies in graves — the exile is now described as burial. The verb *ha'aleiti* ('I will raise up, bring up') is the standard resurrection verb in Hebrew. The address *ammi* ('my people') is tender — God claims them even in their graves. The destination is explicit: *admat Yisra'el* ('the land of Israel'). In the primary reading, this is national restoration from exile. In the secondary reading, it became a foundation text for bodily resurrection hope.
13. The recognition formula is tied specifically to the act of resurrection/restoration: the evidence of God's identity is his power over death and exile. The repeated *ammi* ('my people') at the end of both verse 12 and verse 13 emphasizes the covenant relationship that survives even death.
14. The shift from *ruach* ('breath') in verse 10 to *ruchi* ('my Spirit') in verse 14 marks the interpretive key: what appeared as breath entering bodies in the vision is revealed as God's own Spirit indwelling his people. This connects the dry bones vision to the new heart/new spirit promise of 36:26-27, creating a unified theology of restoration: God cleanses (36:25), replaces the heart (36:26), gives his Spirit (36:27 = 37:14), and settles his people on their land (37:14). The final formula *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') uses the simple divine name rather than *Adonai YHWH*, which is unusual in Ezekiel.
15. A new reception formula marks the transition to the second sign-act of the chapter: the two sticks. This is a separate oracle but thematically linked to the dry bones vision — both concern the restoration and reunification of Israel.
16. The word *ets* ('stick, wood, tree') could refer to a wooden tablet, a staff, or a branch — the exact object is debated, but a flat piece of wood suitable for writing is most likely. The two sticks represent the two kingdoms: Judah (the southern kingdom, including Benjamin and elements of Simeon and Levi) and Joseph/Ephraim (the northern kingdom, destroyed by Assyria in 722 BCE). The phrase *chaverav* ('his companions, those associated with him') acknowledges that the tribal boundaries were not perfectly aligned with the political division.

17. The physical action — joining two sticks into one — creates a visual prophecy of reunification. The verb *qarav* ('bring near, join') and the result *le'ets echad* ('into one stick') make the message unmistakable: what was divided will be united. The phrase *la'achadim beyadekha* ('they become one in your hand') emphasizes that the unity is visible and tangible.
18. The people's question is anticipated — the sign-act is designed to provoke inquiry. The phrase *benei ammekha* ('the children of your people') identifies the audience as fellow exiles who witness Ezekiel's public performance.
19. God takes ownership of the sign-act: what Ezekiel performs symbolically, God will perform historically. The shift from *beyadekha* ('in your hand,' v. 17) to *beyadi* ('in my hand') transfers the action from prophet to God. The reunification is not a political program but a divine act.
20. The inscribed sticks are a visual aid — held up *le'eineihem* ('before their eyes') so the audience can see the names written on them. Ezekiel's sign-acts are public performances, not private devotions.
21. The three verbs — *loqeach* ('taking'), *qibbatsti* ('gathering'), *heve'ti* ('bringing') — echo the restoration sequence of 36:24. The gathering is from every direction (*missaviv*, 'from all around'), indicating total restoration from every place of exile.
22. The phrase *legoy echad* ('into one nation') reverses the division of 1 Kings 12 when Rehoboam's folly split the kingdom. The repetition of *echad* ('one') — one nation, one king — hammers the theme of unity. The triple negation (*lo yihyu... velo yechatsu... od*) makes the permanence emphatic: the division is over, permanently.
23. Three categories of defilement are listed: *gillulim* ('idols' — Ezekiel's contemptuous term), *shiqqusim* ('detestable things' — objects of cultic abomination), and *pish'eihem* ('their transgressions' — acts of rebellion). The verb *vehoshati* ('I will save') followed by *vetihharti* ('I will cleanse') echoes the purification sequence of 36:25-29. The covenant formula closes the promise: they will be my people, I will be their God.
24. The title *avdi David* ('my servant David') appears also in 34:23-24. The dual designation — *melekh* ('king') and *ro'eh* ('shepherd') — unites political authority with pastoral care. The phrase *ro'eh echad* ('one shepherd') contrasts with the many failed shepherds condemned in chapter 34. The obedience described — walking in judgments, keeping statutes, doing them — echoes the same language as 36:27, where God's Spirit enables this obedience.
25. The phrase *le'avdi le'Ya'aqov* ('to my servant Jacob') connects the land promise to the patriarchal covenant — this is not new land but the same land promised to Jacob/Israel. The generational sequence — they, their children, their children's children — emphasizes permanence. The title *nasi* ('prince, leader') is used here instead of *melekh* ('king'), matching Ezekiel's usage throughout the Temple vision (44:3, 45:7-8, 46:2-18). The distinction may be theologically deliberate.
26. The verb *karati* ('I will cut') is the standard Hebrew expression for making a covenant — the English 'make' loses the sacrificial imagery of cutting. The phrase *berit olam yihyeh otam* ('an everlasting covenant it will be with them') places the eternal nature of the covenant in an emphatic position. The three divine acts — establish, multiply, and set the sanctuary — describe physical settlement, population growth, and divine presence respectively.
27. The word *mishkan* ('dwelling place, tabernacle') is distinct from *miqdash* ('sanctuary') in verse 26 — *mishkan* emphasizes the act of dwelling, while *miqdash* emphasizes the holiness of the place. Together they describe God's permanent, holy habitation among his people. The preposition *aleihem* ('over them') rather than *betokham* ('among them') may suggest the tabernacle as a covering or canopy rather than a building within the community.
28. The chapter closes with the recognition formula extended to the nations — the restoration of Israel with God's permanent sanctuary in their midst will demonstrate to the watching world that the LORD is the one who sets Israel apart (*meqaddesh et Yisra'el*). The phrase *miqdash betokham le'olam* ('my sanctuary among them forever') is the final word of the chapter: the permanent presence of God among his people. This connects forward to the Temple vision of chapters 40-48, where the sanctuary is described in architectural detail, and to the final verse of the book (48:35): 'The LORD is there.'

38

Summary: *Ezekiel 38 opens the two-chapter Gog oracle — the climactic eschatological vision of the restoration section (chs. 33-39). An enemy called Gog, from the land of Magog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, will lead a vast coalition from the far north against a restored, peaceful Israel. God himself orchestrates the invasion to demonstrate his holiness before the nations, then destroys the invaders with earthquake, plague, torrential rain, hailstones, fire, and sulfur. The chapter moves from prophetic summons (vv. 1-9) to the enemy's evil scheme (vv. 10-13), to God's sovereign purpose behind it (vv. 14-16), to the cosmic judgment that annihilates the invasion (vv. 17-23).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Gog oracle stands apart from every other prophetic text in Ezekiel. It is not addressed to a historical nation but to an eschatological figure — a future enemy who attacks Israel 'in the latter years' (v. 8) after the nation has been restored from exile. The coalition Gog assembles reads like a table of nations drawn from Genesis 10: Magog, Meshech, Tubal, Gomer, and Beth-Togarmah are all descendants of Japheth; Persia, Cush, and Put extend the alliance to the east and south.*

The effect is literary: this is a total coalition, enemies from every direction. We rendered the geographic names as the Hebrew gives them without speculative identification with modern nations, because the text functions eschatologically rather than as predictive geopolitics. The divine judgment sequence in verses 19–22 is among the most intense theophanic passages in the prophets — earthquake, plague, blood, rain, hailstones, fire, and sulfur recall both the Exodus plagues and the destruction of Sodom. The phrase 'I will make myself known in the eyes of many nations' (v. 23) states the theological purpose of the entire oracle: God's holiness is vindicated publicly before all peoples.

Translation Friction: The title nesi rosh meshekh v'tuval (v. 2) is debated. Rosh can be read as a proper noun ('prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal') or as a common noun meaning 'chief' ('chief prince of Meshech and Tubal'). We follow the reading 'chief prince' because rosh as a place name has no support in the Hebrew Bible's geographic tradition, and the Septuagint's archon Rhos likely reflects transliteration rather than identification. The verb shavah ('to plunder,' v. 12) and its near-synonym bazaz ('to seize spoil') are carefully distinguished. The phrase be'acharit hayamim ('in the latter days,' v. 16) is eschatological time-language, and we rendered it as 'in the latter days' to preserve the Hebrew temporal perspective. The repeated use of neum Adonai YHWH ('declares the Lord GOD') punctuates the oracle at critical structural points.

Connections: The Gog oracle draws on earlier prophetic traditions: the 'enemy from the north' motif in Jeremiah (1:14, 4:6, 6:1) and the cosmic-judgment language of Joel (Joel 2:30–31). The Genesis 10 table of nations provides the coalition's roster. Gog and Magog reappear in Revelation 20:8, where John uses them as symbols for the final eschatological enemy gathered against God's people after the millennium. The earthquake and cosmic upheaval connect to the Day of the LORD tradition (Isaiah 13, Joel 2, Zephaniah 1). The hailstones, fire, and sulfur echo Genesis 19:24 (Sodom) and Exodus 9:23–24 (the seventh plague). Chapter 39 completes the Gog cycle.

¹The word of the LORD came to me: ²Son of man, set your face toward Gog, of the land of Magog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal, and prophesy against him. ³Say: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am against you, Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. ⁴I will turn you around, put hooks in your jaws, and bring you out with your entire army — horses and horsemen, all of them fully armed, a vast assembly with large shields and small shields, all of them wielding swords. ⁵Persia, Cush, and Put are with them, all of them carrying shields and helmets. ⁶Gomer with all its troops, and Beth-Togarmah from the far north with all its troops — many peoples are with you. ⁷Prepare yourself, get ready — you and all your assembly that has gathered around you — and you will be their commander. ⁸After many days you will be summoned. In the latter years you will come against a land that has been restored from the sword, whose people have been gathered from many nations onto the mountains of Israel, which had long been a desolation. They have been brought out from the peoples, and all of them are living in safety. ⁹You will advance like a storm. You will come like a cloud covering the land — you and all your troops and many peoples with you. ¹⁰This is what the Lord GOD says: On that day, thoughts will arise in your mind and you will devise an evil plan. ¹¹You will say, 'I will go up against a land of open villages. I will attack a people at rest, living in safety — all of them dwelling without walls, with no bars or gates.' ¹²You will come to seize plunder and carry off spoil, to turn your hand against rebuilt ruins and against a people gathered from the nations, who are acquiring livestock and goods, who dwell at the center of the earth. ¹³Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish with all its young lions will say to you, 'Have you come to seize plunder? Have you assembled your horde to carry off spoil — to haul away silver and gold, to take livestock and goods, to seize great plunder?' ¹⁴Therefore prophesy, son of man, and say to Gog: This is what the Lord GOD says — On that day, when my people Israel are living in safety, will you not take notice? ¹⁵You will come from your place in the far north — you and many peoples with you, all of them riding horses, a great assembly and a mighty army. ¹⁶You will advance against my people Israel like a cloud covering the land. In the latter days it will happen — I will bring you against my land so that the nations may know me, when I demonstrate my holiness through you before their eyes, Gog. ¹⁷This is what the Lord GOD says: Are you the one I spoke of in former days through my servants the prophets of Israel, who prophesied in those days for years that I would bring you against them? ¹⁸On that day — the day Gog comes against the soil of Israel, declares the Lord GOD — my fury will rise in my nostrils. ¹⁹In my jealousy, in the fire of my wrath, I declare: Surely on that day there will be a great earthquake on the soil of Israel. ²⁰The fish of the sea, the birds of the sky, the animals of the

field, every creeping thing that moves on the ground, and every person on the face of the earth will tremble at my presence. The mountains will be overthrown, the cliffs will collapse, and every wall will fall to the ground. ²¹I will summon a sword against him on all my mountains, declares the Lord GOD. Every man's sword will turn against his brother. ²²I will execute judgment on him with plague and bloodshed. I will pour down torrential rain, hailstones, fire, and sulfur on him, on his troops, and on the many peoples with him. ²³I will display my greatness and demonstrate my holiness, and I will make myself known in the sight of many nations. Then they will know that I am the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. Le'mor ('saying') is rendered as a colon introducing direct divine speech.
2. The phrase nesi rosh can be read either as 'chief prince' (rosh as adjective meaning 'head, chief') or as 'prince of Rosh' (rosh as a proper noun). We render 'chief prince' because rosh as a geographic name has no parallel in the Hebrew Bible. Gog is otherwise unknown in the prophetic tradition; Magog appears in the Genesis 10 table of nations as a son of Japheth (Genesis 10:2). Meshech and Tubal are also Japhethite peoples (Genesis 10:2), traditionally associated with Anatolia. The command 'set your face toward' (sim panekha el) is a hostile prophetic gesture — it directs the oracle against the target.
3. The declaration hineni elekha ('I am against you') is the most direct form of divine hostility in the prophets. The same formula appears against Tyre (26:3), Sidon (28:22), and Pharaoh (29:3). Ezekiel's compound divine name Adonai YHWH is rendered 'Lord GOD' throughout.
4. The image of hooks in the jaws (chachim bil'chayekha) depicts God controlling Gog like a captured animal — the same imagery used of Pharaoh in 29:4. God is sovereign over Gog's movements; the invasion happens because God permits and directs it. The Hebrew distinguishes tsinnah (large body-shield) from magen (smaller, round shield), and we preserve the distinction. Mikhlo refers to complete equipment or full armor — the army is described as perfectly outfitted.
5. The coalition extends beyond the Japhethite north. Persia lies to the east; Cush (often rendered 'Ethiopia' in KJV but referring to the region south of Egypt, modern Sudan/Ethiopia) lies to the south; Put (often identified with Libya or a region in North Africa) lies to the west. The effect is a total encirclement — enemies from every direction. The Hebrew kova ('helmet') indicates heavy infantry.
6. Gomer is another Japhethite people (Genesis 10:2-3), traditionally associated with the Cimmerians of Anatolia. Beth-Togarmah ('house of Togarmah') is a descendant of Gomer (Genesis 10:3), placed in yarketei tsafon ('the far reaches of the north'). The phrase 'the far north' is significant — in prophetic geography, the north is the direction from which invasion and judgment come (cf. Jeremiah 1:14). Agappim ('troops, hordes') denotes military contingents attached to a larger force.
7. The double imperative hikkon v'hakhen ('prepare and make ready') is emphatic — ironically, God commands Gog to prepare for an invasion God himself will destroy. The word mishmar can mean 'guard, watch, commander' — God places Gog in command of the coalition, which serves the divine purpose of bringing all enemies to one place for judgment.
8. The phrase be'acharit hashanim ('in the latter years') is eschatological time-language, placing this invasion in the indefinite future. The verb tippaqed ('you will be summoned/mustered') is passive — Gog does not act independently but is summoned by a higher power. The land is described as meshobevet mecherev ('restored from the sword') — a nation that has already experienced judgment and been rebuilt. The detail that they 'dwell in safety' (yashvu lavetach) is crucial: the attack comes against a peaceful, unsuspecting people, making the aggression entirely unprovoked.
9. The two similes — kasho'ah ('like a storm') and ke'anani ('like a cloud') — emphasize the overwhelming scale of the invasion. The storm connotes violence and suddenness; the cloud covering the land connotes darkness and totality. The imagery will be reversed when God responds with his own storm of hailstones, fire, and sulfur (vv. 22).
10. The Hebrew ya'alu devarim al levavekha ('things will come up onto your heart') describes the formation of intent — ideas surfacing in the mind. The word machashevet ra'ah ('evil plan/scheme') is singular and deliberate — not random aggression but calculated malice. The text presents a tension: God has brought Gog (v. 4), yet Gog's intent is genuinely evil. Divine sovereignty and human moral agency coexist in the oracle.
11. The Hebrew perazot ('open/unwalled settlements') indicates a land so secure it has abandoned fortifications. This is the picture of messianic peace — a restored Israel that no longer needs defenses. The absence of walls, bars, and gates makes the intended victims utterly vulnerable, which in turn makes Gog's plan utterly predatory.
12. The phrase lishlol shalal v'lavoz baz ('to plunder plunder and to spoil spoil') uses cognate accusatives for emphasis — the sole motive is greed. The Hebrew tabbur ha'arets ('navel of the earth') places Israel at the geographic and spiritual center of the world — a concept found also in Judges 9:37 and echoed in later Jewish tradition. We rendered this as 'center of the earth' to convey the Hebrew concept while remaining clear.
13. Sheba and Dedan are Arabian trading peoples (Genesis 10:7, 25:3); Tarshish is a distant maritime trading center (possibly in Spain or the western Mediterranean). These commercial nations observe Gog's invasion with questions that may be protest, or may be calculating interest — the Hebrew is ambiguous. Kefirim ('young lions') likely refers to aggressive merchant-leaders or satellite trading powers. The rhetorical questions expose Gog's purely material motivation.

14. The rhetorical question *teda* ('will you not know?') is ominous — Gog will indeed 'take notice' of Israel's vulnerability, and that awareness will become the trigger for his aggression. The irony is thick: Gog perceives Israel's peace as opportunity, but it is God's trap.
15. *Yarketei tsafon* ('the far reaches of the north') is the same phrase used of Beth-Togarmah in verse 6. In prophetic geography, the far north is the source of cosmic threat — Babylon, Assyria, and the mythic enemy all come from the north. The description emphasizes cavalry (*rokhvei susim*, 'riders of horses') — a massive mounted force.
16. *Be'acharit hayamim* ('in the latter days') is the classic eschatological formula, placing this event at the end of history's current trajectory. The statement *vahavioti'kha al artsi* ('I will bring you against my land') is the most explicit declaration of divine sovereignty over the invasion — God himself brings Gog. The purpose clause *lema'an da'at haggoyim oti* ('so that the nations may know me') states the theological purpose: God's self-revelation to all nations through judgment.
17. This verse places Gog within the larger prophetic tradition — God identifies him as the fulfillment of earlier prophetic warnings about an eschatological enemy. The 'former prophets' likely refers to the tradition behind passages like Isaiah 5:26-30, Jeremiah 4-6, Joel 2, and other 'enemy from the north' oracles. The Hebrew *shanim* ('years') emphasizes that this was not a single prophecy but a sustained prophetic expectation over a long period.
18. The Hebrew *ta'aleh chamati be'appi* ('my wrath will rise in my nostrils') is vivid anthropomorphic language — divine anger is depicted as heat rising in the face. The word *af* means both 'nose' and 'anger' in Hebrew, creating a double meaning: fury literally rises in God's nose/face. The shift from controlled sovereignty (vv. 3-16) to furious wrath marks the transition to the judgment section.
19. The Hebrew *qin'ah* ('jealousy, zeal') is not petty envy but the fierce protective passion of a covenant Lord for his people and his land. The word *ra'ash* ('shaking, earthquake') introduces the cosmic judgment sequence that runs through verse 22 — the created order itself responds to God's wrath. The oath formula *im lo* ('if not...') functions as a strong affirmation: 'Surely this will happen.'
20. The scope of the earthquake encompasses the entire created order — fish, birds, land animals, creeping things, and all humanity. This is creation-shaking theophany, not a localized tremor. The catalogue echoes the creation categories of Genesis 1 in reverse, suggesting an un-creation event. The word *madregot* ('steep places, terraces, cliffs') is rare; it may refer to rock terraces or cliff faces that crumble. The collapse of every wall (*kol chomah*) undoes all human fortification — an ironic reversal, since Israel had no walls (v. 11).
21. The first element of judgment after the earthquake: fratricidal chaos within Gog's coalition. The phrase *cherev ish be'achiv* ('each man's sword against his brother') echoes the pattern of Judges 7:22, where the Midianite army turned on itself, and 1 Samuel 14:20. God's mountains (*harai*) — the mountains of Israel — become the killing ground where the invaders destroy each other.
22. The divine judgment arsenal — *dever* (plague), *dam* (blood), *geshem shotef* (torrential rain), *avnei elgavish* (hailstones), *esh* (fire), and *gofrit* (sulfur) — combines Exodus plague imagery (the seventh plague, Exodus 9:23-24) with Sodom's destruction (Genesis 19:24). The word *elgavish* ('hailstone') is rare and possibly related to crystal or ice; it appears only in Ezekiel. The verb *nishpateti* ('I will enter into judgment') is legal language — God acts as judge, prosecutor, and executioner. The sulfur (*gofrit*) specifically recalls Sodom and Gomorrah.
23. The three reflexive verbs form a climactic triad: greatness, holiness, self-revelation. The Hithpael stem indicates that God himself is the agent of his own glorification — no intermediary makes God known; God makes himself known. The recognition formula *veyad'u ki ani YHWH* ('they will know that I am the LORD') is the theological foundation of the entire book of Ezekiel — God's actions in history serve his self-revelation. This verse states the purpose not just of the Gog oracle but of all divine action in Ezekiel.

39

Summary: Ezekiel 39 completes the Gog oracle with God's total destruction of the invading army and the aftermath of that victory. The chapter divides into four sections: the annihilation of Gog on the mountains of Israel (vv. 1-8), seven years of burning weapons as fuel and seven months of burying the dead (vv. 9-16), the great sacrificial feast where birds and beasts consume the flesh and blood of fallen warriors (vv. 17-24), and the concluding restoration promise — God will gather all Israel, pour out his Spirit, and never again hide his face from them (vv. 25-29). The chapter begins with slaughter and ends with the Spirit, moving from judgment to permanent covenant renewal.

*What Makes This Remarkable: The structure of this chapter deliberately mirrors ancient Near Eastern victory celebration: the enemy is defeated, their weapons become fuel, their dead are buried, and a great feast follows. But Ezekiel inverts the feast — instead of the victors feasting on captured provisions, the birds and beasts feast on the warriors themselves. This 'sacrificial feast' (*zevach*, v. 17) uses sacrificial terminology: the fallen soldiers are called 'my sacrifice' and the animals are invited to eat 'flesh' and drink 'blood' as if at a temple meal. The theological horror is deliberate — Gog's army becomes the offering. This imagery reappears in Revelation 19:17-18, where an angel summons birds to 'the great supper of God.' The chapter's final movement (vv. 25-29) is the theological resolution of the entire Gog cycle: God's purpose was never merely military victory but*

covenantal restoration. The pouring out of the Spirit (v. 29) connects to Joel 2:28-29 and finds its New Testament fulfillment at Pentecost (Acts 2:17-18). We rendered the geographic name Hamon-Gog ('multitude of Gog') and the valley name transparently, preserving the Hebrew wordplay.

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the sacrificial feast language (zevach, vv. 17-20) and actual temple sacrifice required careful navigation — this is metaphorical but uses precise priestly vocabulary. The verb shafakh ('pour out') in verse 29 about the Spirit must be distinguished from the same verb used for pouring out blood/wrath elsewhere in Ezekiel. The seven-year and seven-month durations (vv. 9, 12) are symbolic numbers of completion, not literal timelines, though we render them as stated without interpretive comment. The phrase lo astir od panai ('I will no longer hide my face,' v. 29) is one of the most theologically significant statements in the entire book — it reverses the divine hiddenness that caused the exile.*

Connections: *The great sacrificial feast reappears in Revelation 19:17-18 ('the great supper of God'). The pouring out of the Spirit connects to Joel 2:28-29 and Acts 2:17-18 (Pentecost). The seven years of burning weapons may echo Isaiah 9:5. The burial of the dead to cleanse the land connects to Numbers 19 purity legislation. The recognition formula 'they will know that I am the LORD' ties back to the book's central theological refrain. The promise 'I will never again hide my face' (v. 29) reverses Deuteronomy 31:17-18, where God warned that he would hide his face if Israel broke the covenant. The restoration of all Israel (v. 25) connects to chapter 37's reunification of Judah and Joseph.*

¹And you, son of man, prophesy against Gog and say: This is what the Lord GOD says — I am against you, Gog, chief prince of Meshech and Tubal. ²I will turn you around, drive you forward, and bring you up from the far north, and I will lead you against the mountains of Israel. ³I will strike your bow from your left hand and dash your arrows from your right hand. ⁴You will fall on the mountains of Israel — you and all your troops and the peoples who are with you. I will give you as food to every kind of bird of prey and to the wild animals. ⁵You will fall in the open field, for I have spoken, declares the Lord GOD. ⁶I will send fire on Magog and on those who live securely in the coastlands, and they will know that I am the LORD. ⁷I will make my holy name known among my people Israel, and I will never again let my holy name be profaned. Then the nations will know that I am the LORD, the Holy One in Israel. ⁸It is coming and it will be done, declares the Lord GOD. This is the day I have spoken of. ⁹The inhabitants of the cities of Israel will go out and make fires, burning weapons — shields large and small, bows and arrows, war clubs and spears. They will use them as fuel for seven years. ¹⁰They will not need to gather wood from the field or cut trees from the forests, because they will use the weapons for fuel. They will plunder those who intended to plunder them, and they will spoil those who intended to spoil them, declares the Lord GOD. ¹¹On that day I will give Gog a burial site there in Israel — the Valley of the Travelers, east of the sea. It will block the way of travelers, and there they will bury Gog and all his multitude. They will call it the Valley of Hamon-Gog. ¹²The house of Israel will spend seven months burying them in order to cleanse the land. ¹³All the people of the land will bury them, and it will bring them renown — the day I display my glory, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁴They will set apart men for the ongoing task of passing through the land and burying any remains left on the surface of the ground, in order to cleanse it. At the end of seven months they will begin their search. ¹⁵As those who pass through travel the land, whenever anyone sees a human bone, he will set up a marker beside it until the burial teams have buried it in the Valley of Hamon-Gog. ¹⁶There will also be a city named Hamonah. And so they will cleanse the land. ¹⁷And you, son of man — this is what the Lord GOD says: Say to every kind of bird and to every wild animal: Assemble and come! Gather from all around to my sacrifice that I am preparing for you, a great sacrifice on the mountains of Israel, and you will eat flesh and drink blood. ¹⁸You will eat the flesh of warriors and drink the blood of the princes of the earth — rams, lambs, goats, and bulls, all of them fattened in Bashan. ¹⁹You will eat fat until you are gorged and drink blood until you are drunk, from my sacrifice that I have prepared for you. ²⁰You will feast at my table on horses and riders, warriors and every soldier, declares the Lord GOD. ²¹I will display my glory among the nations, and all the nations will see my judgment that I have executed and my hand that I have laid on them. ²²From that day forward, the house of Israel will know that I am the LORD their God. ²³Then the nations will know that the house of Israel went into exile because of their iniquity. Because they dealt treacherously with me, I hid my face from them and handed them over to their

enemies, and they all fell by the sword. ²⁴I dealt with them according to their uncleanness and their transgressions, and I hid my face from them. ²⁵Therefore, this is what the Lord GOD says: Now I will restore the fortunes of Jacob and have compassion on the whole house of Israel, and I will be jealous for my holy name. ²⁶They will bear their shame and all their treachery that they committed against me, when they dwell securely on their own soil with no one to frighten them. ²⁷When I bring them back from the peoples and gather them from the lands of their enemies, I will demonstrate my holiness through them in the sight of many nations. ²⁸Then they will know that I am the LORD their God, because I sent them into exile among the nations and then gathered them back to their own soil, leaving none of them behind. ²⁹I will never again hide my face from them, for I will pour out my Spirit on the house of Israel, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The oracle resumes with the same hostile declaration formula as 38:3 — *hineni elekha* ('I am against you'). The repetition opens the second movement of the Gog prophecy, shifting from the invasion (ch. 38) to its aftermath and total reversal.
2. The verb *shishetkha* is debated. The KJV's 'leave but the sixth part of thee' derives from a connection to *shesh* ('six') but this is unlikely. The verb more probably means 'to drive, to lead on, to drag along' — God compels Gog forward to his destruction. The mountains of Israel are the designated killing field — the same mountains restored in chapters 35-36 now become the site of God's decisive victory.
3. God personally disarms Gog. The bow in the left hand and arrows in the right is the standard combat stance of an ancient Near Eastern archer. By striking both simultaneously, God renders Gog utterly helpless — the great military commander cannot even hold his weapons.
4. The fallen warriors become carrion — food for birds and beasts. The Hebrew *ayit tsippor kol kanaf* ('birds of prey, every bird of wing') emphasizes completeness: every species of scavenger is summoned. This anticipates the great sacrificial feast in verses 17-20 and connects to Deuteronomy 28:26, where becoming food for birds is a covenant curse for disobedience.
5. The brevity of this verse — a single sentence of divine finality — is its power. *Al penei hasadeh* ('on the face of the field') means the invaders will lie unburied in the open, exposed to the elements and scavengers. The authentication formula *ki ani dibbarti* ('for I have spoken') marks this as irrevocable divine decree.
6. The judgment extends beyond Gog's army to his homeland (Magog) and to the *iyim* ('coastlands, islands') — the distant maritime peoples who felt secure in their remoteness. No one is beyond the reach of divine judgment. The phrase *yoshvei lavetach* ('those living in security') ironically mirrors the description of Israel in 38:8, 11 — those who felt safe are no longer safe. The recognition formula 'they will know that I am the LORD' marks the theological purpose.
7. The statement *v'lo achel et shem qodshi od* ('I will no longer let my holy name be profaned') is one of the most significant declarations in the chapter. In 36:20-23, God explained that Israel's exile profaned his name because the nations concluded that the LORD could not protect his people. The destruction of Gog permanently reverses this — God's name is vindicated before both Israel and the nations. The title *qadosh b'yisrael* ('the Holy One in Israel') echoes Isaiah's signature title 'the Holy One of Israel' (*qedosh yisrael*) but with a slightly different construction.
8. The verse functions as a structural hinge between the destruction of Gog (vv. 1-7) and its aftermath (vv. 9-29). The two verbs *ba'ah v'nihyatah* ('it is coming and it will happen') express both certainty and imminence. The demonstrative 'this is the day' (*hu hayyom*) points to an appointed, predetermined time — this is not random catastrophe but divinely scheduled judgment.
9. The comprehensive weapon catalogue — *nesheq* (armor/weapons), *magen* (small shield), *tsinnah* (large shield), *qeshet* (bow), *chitsim* (arrows), *maqel yad* (hand-club/staff), *romach* (spear) — represents the full arsenal of an ancient army. The seven-year duration is a number of completion, suggesting the weapons are so abundant that they supply all Israel's fuel needs for a full cycle. The burning of weapons is both practical (fuel) and symbolic (permanent disarmament of the enemy).
10. The ironic reversal is explicit: Israel plunders the plunderers and spoils the spoilers. The cognate constructions *shalelu et sholeleihem* and *bazzu et bozzeihem* create a literary mirror — the intended victims become the victors. The surplus of weapons means Israel's forests are preserved, an ecological note that connects to the land-restoration themes of chapters 36-37.
11. *Gei ha'overim* ('the Valley of the Travelers/Passers-by') is given a new name after the burial: *Gei Hamon Gog* ('Valley of the Multitude of Gog'). The Hebrew *hamon* means 'multitude, horde, tumult' — the valley is named for the vast number of dead it contains. The phrase *chosemet hi et ha'overim* ('it will block the travelers') may mean the mass of corpses or graves will physically obstruct passage through the valley. The location 'east of the sea' (*qidmat hayyam*) likely refers to east of the Dead Sea, placing the burial ground outside the land's sacred center.
12. The purpose clause *lema'an taher et ha'arets* ('in order to cleanse the land') reveals the priestly motivation behind the burial — unburied corpses defile the land (Numbers 19:11-16, Deuteronomy 21:23). The seven-month duration is both a number of completion and an indicator of the staggering scale of death. Ezekiel the priest insists that even enemy corpses must be properly disposed of to maintain the land's ritual purity.
13. The burial becomes a national act of honor — all the people participate, and the act itself becomes *leshem* ('for a name, renown'). The phrase *yom hikkavdi* ('the day I glorify myself') uses the root *k-v-d* (glory/weight), connecting this event to the *kavod* theology that runs throughout Ezekiel. God's glory is displayed through the complete destruction of the enemy and the cleansing of the land.

14. The Hebrew *anshei tamid* ('men of continuity/permanence') indicates a dedicated workforce assigned exclusively to burial duty — this is not casual cleanup but organized, systematic purification of the land. The verb *yavdilu* ('they will set apart') is priestly language — the same verb used for separating holy from common (Leviticus 10:10). Even corpse-burial is organized along priestly categories. The search (*yachqoru*) begins after the initial seven-month mass burial, suggesting that scattered remains require ongoing attention.
15. The procedure is meticulous: a traveler who spots a bone does not bury it himself but marks the location (*tsiyyun*, 'a marker, sign') for the professional burial teams to handle. This reflects the priestly concern that contact with human remains renders a person ritually unclean (Numbers 19:16). The system is designed to minimize contamination while ensuring thorough cleansing of the entire land.
16. *Hamonah* means 'Multitude' — a city named for the vast number of the dead, paralleling the Valley of *Hamon-Gog*. The final phrase *v'tiharu ha'arets* ('and they will cleanse the land') closes the burial section with the priestly goal achieved: the land of Israel is ritually pure again. The entire passage (vv. 11-16) reflects Ezekiel's priestly training — even in eschatological victory, purity must be restored.
17. The great sacrificial feast (*zevach gadol*) is one of the most disturbing images in the prophets. God summons birds and beasts to a sacrifice he is hosting — but the sacrifice consists of Gog's warriors. The vocabulary is consistently priestly: *zevach* (sacrifice), *zoveach* (sacrificing), *basar* (flesh), *dam* (blood). This imagery reappears in Revelation 19:17-18, where an angel invites birds to 'the great supper of God' to eat the flesh of kings and warriors. The address to animals as invited guests to a divine banquet is unique in the Hebrew Bible.
18. The warriors and princes are described using sacrificial animal categories — rams (*eilim*), lambs (*karim*), goats (*attudim*), and bulls (*parim*). The metaphor is sustained: the soldiers are the livestock of this sacrifice, and they are described as *meri'ei Bashan* ('fatted ones of Bashan') — Bashan was famous for its rich pastureland and well-fed cattle (cf. Amos 4:1, Psalm 22:12). The human warriors are cast as premium sacrificial animals, plump and ready for slaughter.
19. The *chelev* ('fat') was the portion normally reserved for God in temple sacrifice (Leviticus 3:16-17) — no Israelite was permitted to eat it. By offering the fat to the animals, God gives away the divine portion, underscoring that this is a total inversion of sacrificial order. The phrase 'drink blood until you are drunk' (*shittitem dam leshikkaron*) is maximally grotesque — blood consumption was absolutely prohibited in Israelite law (Leviticus 17:10-14). Every element of this feast violates Levitical norms, communicating the complete overturning of the normal order.
20. The phrase *al shulchani* ('at my table') casts this as a formal divine banquet — God is the host, the animals are the guests, and the warriors are the meal. The mention of *sus varechev* ('horse and chariot/rider') means even the cavalry and their mounts are consumed. The catalogue — horses, riders, warriors, every soldier — emphasizes that nothing escapes. This verse concludes the sacrificial feast section with the comprehensive destruction of Gog's entire military force.
21. The verse transitions from the sacrificial feast to its theological meaning. The phrase *natatti et kevodi baggoyim* ('I will set/display my glory among the nations') uses *kavod* in its Ezekielian sense — the visible, weighty manifestation of God's presence and power. The nations see two things: *mishpat* (judgment, justice) and *yad* (hand, power). God's character is revealed through both his justice and his intervention.
22. The recognition formula here is unique — it adds *min hayyom hahu vahal'ah* ('from that day and onward'), indicating permanent, irreversible knowledge. Previous recognitions in Ezekiel were momentary or partial; this one is final. Israel's knowledge of God will never again be broken by exile, judgment, or unfaithfulness.
23. This verse explains the exile retrospectively for the nations' benefit. The verb *ma'alu* ('they dealt treacherously, they broke faith') is covenantal betrayal language — the same root used in Leviticus 5:15 for trespass against holy things. The phrase *va'astir panai mehem* ('I hid my face from them') is the theological explanation of exile: not God's absence but his deliberate withdrawal of protection. This phrase will be dramatically reversed in verse 29.
24. Two categories of offense are named: *tum'ah* ('uncleanness, ritual impurity') and *pesha* ('transgression, rebellion'). *Tum'ah* is priestly vocabulary — defilement of the land and sanctuary; *pesha* is prophetic vocabulary — deliberate rebellion against the covenant. Together they cover both the priestly and prophetic dimensions of Israel's failure. The repetition of 'I hid my face' (*va'astir panai*) from verse 23 emphasizes this as the defining consequence of Israel's sin.
25. The word *lakhein* ('therefore') marks the logical conclusion of the entire Gog cycle: because God has vindicated his name through judgment, he now restores his people. The phrase *shevut ya'aqov* is debated — it can mean 'captivity of Jacob' (from *shevi*, 'captive') or 'fortunes of Jacob' (from *shuv*, 'to return/restore'). We render 'fortunes' because the context is broader restoration, not merely return from a specific captivity. The specification 'the whole house of Israel' (*kol beit yisrael*) includes both northern and southern kingdoms — total national restoration.
26. The Hebrew *v'nas'u et kelimmatam* ('they will bear their shame') indicates that even in restoration, Israel will carry the memory of their past unfaithfulness — not as ongoing punishment but as chastened awareness. The phrase *ein macharid* ('with no one causing fear') is a covenant blessing formula from Leviticus 26:6, signaling the restoration of the covenant's protective promises. The tension between bearing shame and dwelling in safety is deliberate — restoration includes both security and humility.
27. The verb *niqdashthi* ('I will be sanctified/show myself holy') reprises the key theological term from 38:16, 23. God's holiness is demonstrated not only through judgment (the destruction of Gog) but also through restoration (the regathering of Israel). Both actions reveal his character: he judges the wicked and restores his people. The phrase *le'einei haggoyim rabbim* ('in the sight of many nations') ensures this is a public, witnessed act.
28. The recognition formula here encompasses the full arc of Israel's history: exile and return. Both actions — the scattering and the regathering — reveal God's identity. The promise *v'lo otir od mehem sham* ('I will leave none of them behind there') is absolute: every Israelite will be brought

home. No remnant will remain in exile. This totality of restoration is the eschatological vision.

29. The final verse is one of the most theologically significant statements in the entire book. The phrase *v'lo astir od panai mehem* ('I will never again hide my face from them') reverses the judgment of vv. 23-24 and Deuteronomy 31:17-18. The verb *shafakhti* ('I will pour out') is the same verb used elsewhere for pouring out blood or wrath, but here its object is *ruchi* ('my Spirit') — God pours out life rather than death. The connection to Joel 2:28-29 is direct: the prophetic tradition envisions a future in which God's Spirit is given universally to his people, not restricted to individual prophets. This verse concludes the Gog cycle by returning to the restoration theme: the purpose of all the judgment in chapters 38-39 was to arrive at this moment — permanent, Spirit-sealed covenant renewal.

40

Summary: *Ezekiel 40 opens the massive Temple vision (chapters 40-48) that forms the climax of the book. In the twenty-fifth year of the exile — fourteen years after Jerusalem's fall — Ezekiel is transported in vision to a very high mountain in the land of Israel, where he sees a city-like structure to the south. A man whose appearance is like bronze, holding a linen cord and a measuring rod, guides him through a detailed tour of the new Temple complex. The chapter records precise measurements of the outer east gate, the outer court, the north and south outer gates, the inner south gate, the inner east gate, the inner north gate, and associated chambers. Every measurement is given in cubits using the long cubit (a standard cubit plus a handbreadth).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks the beginning of the most detailed architectural description in the Hebrew Bible — a vision so precise that architects and scholars have attempted to reconstruct the Temple from these measurements for centuries. The measuring man with his bronze appearance recalls the angelic figures of earlier theophanies, and the long cubit (*ammah ve-tophach*, 'a cubit and a handbreadth') establishes the measurement standard for the entire vision. The date formula in verse 1 is carefully calculated: the twenty-fifth year of exile, the beginning of the year, the tenth of the month — likely the Day of Atonement (*Yom Kippur*) or the beginning of the Jubilee year (*Leviticus 25:9*), linking the vision of the restored Temple to themes of purification and restoration. The priestly training of Ezekiel emerges fully here — he thinks in architectural blueprints and liturgical specifications. We rendered all measurements in the original cubits with translator notes providing modern equivalents, preserving the precision of the Hebrew text without cluttering the reading layer with conversion math.*

Translation Friction: *The architectural vocabulary presents significant translation challenges. Hebrew terms like *ta* ('chamber/cell'), *elam* ('vestibule/porch'), and *ail* ('pillar/jamb') have disputed meanings, and the spatial relationships described are sometimes ambiguous. We followed the most widely accepted architectural interpretations while noting uncertainties. The phrase 'the measurement of the long cubit' in verse 5 is critical — Ezekiel specifies that all measurements use a cubit of approximately 52 cm rather than the standard 45 cm cubit, and we flag this once in a translator note rather than repeating it for every measurement. Directional language (north, south, east) required careful consistency. The Hebrew sometimes uses 'the way of' (*derek*) for cardinal directions, and we rendered these as straightforward compass directions.*

Connections: *The vision connects backward to the glory departure in chapters 10-11 — the glory left from the east gate and will return by the east gate in chapter 43. The Temple measurements connect to Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6-7), the tabernacle specifications (Exodus 25-27), and forward to the heavenly temple in Revelation 11:1-2 and 21:15-17, where an angel also measures with a rod. The date formula echoes the vision dates throughout the book (1:1-2, 8:1, 20:1, 24:1, 26:1, 29:1, 30:20, 31:1, 32:1, 33:21). The very high mountain echoes Isaiah 2:2 and Micah 4:1, where the mountain of the LORD's house is established as the highest of mountains.*

¹In the twenty-fifth year of our exile, at the beginning of the year, on the tenth day of the month — in the fourteenth year after the city was struck down — on that very day the hand of the LORD was upon me, and he brought me there. ²In visions of God he brought me to the land of Israel and set me down on a very high mountain, on which there was something like the structure of a city to the south. ³He brought me there, and there was a man whose appearance was like the appearance of bronze, with a linen cord in his hand and a measuring rod, and he was standing in the gateway. ⁴The man said to me, "Son of man, look with your eyes and listen with your ears. Fix your attention on everything I am about to show you, because you

were brought here so that I might show it to you. Report everything you see to the house of Israel." ⁵There was a wall all around the outside of the Temple complex. The measuring rod in the man's hand was six cubits long, each cubit being a cubit and a handbreadth. He measured the width of the wall structure — one rod; and the height — one rod. ⁶Then he came to the gate that faced east and went up its steps. He measured the threshold of the gate — one rod wide; and the other threshold — one rod wide. ⁷Each guard chamber was one rod long and one rod wide, with five cubits between the chambers. The threshold of the gate beside the vestibule of the gate on the inner side was one rod. ⁸He measured the vestibule of the gate on the inner side — one rod. ⁹He measured the vestibule of the gate — eight cubits, and its pilasters — two cubits. The vestibule of the gate was on the inner side. ¹⁰The guard chambers of the east gate were three on each side — all three of the same size on each side, and the pilasters were of the same size on each side. ¹¹He measured the width of the gate opening — ten cubits; and the length of the gate passage — thirteen cubits. ¹²There was a barrier one cubit wide in front of the chambers on each side. Each chamber was six cubits on one side and six cubits on the other. ¹³He measured the gate from the back wall of one chamber to the back wall of the opposite chamber — a width of twenty-five cubits, opening facing opening. ¹⁴He measured the pilasters — sixty cubits — and the court extended to the pilasters around the gate on every side. ¹⁵From the front of the entrance gate to the front of the vestibule of the inner gate was fifty cubits. ¹⁶There were recessed windows in the guard chambers and in their pilasters on the inside of the gate all around, and likewise in the vestibules. There were windows all around on the inside, and palm tree designs were on each pilaster. ¹⁷Then he brought me into the outer court, and there were rooms and a stone pavement laid around the court on every side — thirty rooms along the pavement. ¹⁸The pavement ran alongside the gates, corresponding to the length of the gates — this was the lower pavement. ¹⁹He measured the distance from the front of the lower gate to the outer front of the inner court — one hundred cubits on the east side and on the north side. ²⁰As for the gate of the outer court that faced north, he measured its length and its width. ²¹Its guard chambers — three on each side — and its pilasters and vestibules were the same dimensions as the first gate: fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ²²Its windows, vestibules, and palm tree designs matched the dimensions of the east gate. Seven steps led up to it, with its vestibule on the inner side. ²³There was a gate to the inner court opposite the north gate, just as on the east side. He measured from gate to gate — one hundred cubits. ²⁴Then he led me toward the south, and there was a gate facing south. He measured its pilasters and vestibules — the same dimensions as the others. ²⁵It had windows all around it and in its vestibules, like the other windows. It was fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ²⁶Seven steps led up to it, with its vestibule on the inner side. It had palm tree designs — one on each side of its pilasters. ²⁷There was a gate to the inner court on the south side. He measured from gate to gate on the south — one hundred cubits. ²⁸Then he brought me into the inner court through the south gate. He measured the south inner gate — the same dimensions as the others. ²⁹Its guard chambers, pilasters, and vestibules were of the same dimensions. It had windows all around it and its vestibules — fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁰The vestibules all around were twenty-five cubits long and five cubits wide. ³¹Its vestibule faced the outer court, and palm tree designs were on its pilasters. Eight steps led up to it. ³²He brought me into the inner court on the east side and measured the gate — the same dimensions as the others. ³³Its guard chambers, pilasters, and vestibules were of the same dimensions. It had windows all around it and its vestibules — fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁴Its vestibule faced the outer court, and palm tree designs were on its pilasters on each side. Eight steps led up to it. ³⁵He brought me to the north gate and measured it — the same dimensions. ³⁶Its guard chambers, pilasters, and vestibules — it had windows all around — were fifty cubits long and twenty-five cubits wide. ³⁷Its pilasters faced the outer court, and palm tree designs were on its pilasters on each side. Eight steps led up to it. ³⁸There was a room with its entrance by the pilasters of the gates, where they would wash the burnt offering. ³⁹In the vestibule of the gate there were two tables on each side, on which the burnt offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering were slaughtered. ⁴⁰On the outer side, going up to the entrance of the north gate, there were two tables; and on the other side of the gate vestibule, two tables. ⁴¹Four tables on each side of the gate — eight tables in all — on which they slaughtered the sacrifices. ⁴²The four tables for the burnt offering were of cut stone, each a cubit and a half long, a cubit and a half wide, and a cubit high. On them they placed the implements used for slaughtering the burnt offering and other sacrifices. ⁴³Double-pronged hooks, a handbreadth long, were fixed all around the inside walls. The flesh of the offering was placed on the tables. ⁴⁴Outside the inner gate, in the inner court, were

rooms for the singers — one beside the north gate, facing south, and one beside the east gate, facing north. ⁴⁵He said to me, "This room facing south is for the priests who have charge of the Temple." ⁴⁶The room facing north is for the priests who have charge of the altar. These are the sons of Zadok — from among the sons of Levi — who draw near to the LORD to minister to him. ⁴⁷He measured the inner court — one hundred cubits long and one hundred cubits wide, a perfect square. And the altar stood in front of the Temple. ⁴⁸He brought me to the vestibule of the Temple and measured the pilasters of the vestibule — five cubits on each side. The width of the gateway was three cubits on each side. ⁴⁹The vestibule was twenty cubits long and eleven cubits wide, reached by the steps that led up to it. There were columns beside the pilasters — one on each side.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date formula is precise: the twenty-fifth year of exile (573 BCE), the tenth of the month, at the beginning of the year. If 'beginning of the year' (rosh ha-shanah) refers to Tishri, the tenth day would be Yom Kippur (the Day of Atonement, Leviticus 23:27) — an extraordinarily fitting day for a vision of Temple restoration. If it refers to Nisan, the tenth day is when the Passover lamb is selected (Exodus 12:3). Either way, the date carries liturgical weight.
1. The phrase 'the city was struck down' (hukketah ha-ir) refers to the destruction of Jerusalem in 586 BCE. The passive verb avoids naming the agent (Babylon) — the focus is on the catastrophe itself, not its human instrument.
2. The phrase 'visions of God' (mar'ot Elohim) echoes Ezekiel 1:1 and 8:3, linking this vision to the opening theophany and the Temple abomination vision. The expression ke-mivneh ir ('like the structure of a city') uses the comparative particle ke- — Ezekiel does not say it is a city but something resembling one, maintaining the visionary quality of the description.
2. The 'very high mountain' (har gavoha me'od) evokes Isaiah 2:2 and Micah 4:1 where the mountain of the LORD's house is raised above all hills. The actual Temple Mount in Jerusalem is not particularly high — this is visionary geography, not topography.
3. The measuring man's bronze appearance (ke-mar'eh nechoshet) suggests a supernatural being — the same material imagery used for the angelic figure in Daniel 10:6. He carries two measuring instruments: a linen cord (petil pishtim) for long distances and a measuring rod (qeneh ha-middah) for precise architectural measurements. The rod becomes the primary instrument in the following measurements.
4. The triple command — see, hear, set your heart — emphasizes the importance of careful observation. The phrase sim libbeka ('set your heart') means to pay close attention, to focus one's mind. Ezekiel's role here is that of a witness who must faithfully report what he observes — he is functioning as a scribe of the vision.
4. The address 'son of man' (ben adam) continues God's characteristic form of address to Ezekiel, though here it is the angelic measuring figure speaking rather than God directly.
5. This verse establishes the critical measurement standard for the entire Temple vision. The 'long cubit' (ammah va-tophach, literally 'a cubit and a handbreadth') is approximately 20.4 inches (52 cm), compared to the standard cubit of approximately 18 inches (45 cm). The measuring rod of six long cubits therefore equals approximately 10.2 feet (3.1 meters). All subsequent measurements in chapters 40-48 use this long cubit.
5. The outer wall is one rod (about 10.2 feet / 3.1 meters) thick and one rod high — a substantial enclosure wall marking the boundary between sacred and common space.
6. The east gate is measured first because it is the gate of primary liturgical significance — the gate through which the glory of the LORD departed (10:19, 11:1) and through which it will return (43:1-4). The Hebrew miphtan ('threshold') refers to the stone sill at the base of the gateway. Two thresholds suggest an outer and inner entry point to the gate structure.
7. The ta (plural ta'im) are small rooms flanking the gate passage — rendered 'guard chamber' because their function was likely to house guards who controlled access. Each is approximately 10.2 feet (3.1 m) square. The five cubits (approximately 8.5 feet / 2.6 m) between chambers may represent the wall thickness between them.
7. The ulam ('vestibule' or 'porch') of the gate is the covered area at the inner end of the gate passage. This same architectural term is used for the vestibule of Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:3).
8. The vestibule (ulam) at the inner end of the east gate measured one rod (approximately 10.2 feet / 3.1 m). This vestibule opened into the outer court of the Temple complex.
9. The elav (singular ail) are the projecting pilasters or jambs that frame the gate entrance. At two cubits (approximately 3.4 feet / 1 m) wide, they are structural columns flanking the vestibule opening.
10. The gate structure is symmetrical: three guard chambers on each side of the passageway, creating a total of six chambers. This is identical to the gate structures found archaeologically at Megiddo, Hazor, and Gezer from the Solomonic period — Ezekiel's vision draws on known Israelite gate architecture.

11. The gate opening was ten cubits wide (approximately 17 feet / 5.2 m) — wide enough for processional entry. The length of thirteen cubits (approximately 22 feet / 6.8 m) is the depth of the gate passage from front to back.
12. The *gevul* ('barrier' or 'border') was a low wall or curb — one cubit (approximately 20.4 inches / 52 cm) — in front of each guard chamber, perhaps marking the threshold of the chamber space. The six-cubit dimension (approximately 10.2 feet / 3.1 m) matches the one-rod measurement given in verse 7.
13. The twenty-five cubits (approximately 42.5 feet / 13 m) is the total width of the gate structure measured from the outer wall of one row of chambers to the outer wall of the opposite row. The phrase 'opening facing opening' (*petach neged patach*) indicates that the chambers on opposite sides of the passage had their doorways facing each other.
14. This verse is textually difficult. The Hebrew *ya'as* ('he made') is unexpected in a measuring context; some scholars emend to *vayyamad* ('he measured'). The sixty cubits (approximately 102 feet / 31.2 m) likely refers to the total height or extent of the pilaster structures, though the precise meaning is debated.
15. The total depth of the gate complex from the outer entrance to the inner vestibule was fifty cubits (approximately 85 feet / 26 m). The term *ha-iton* ('the entrance') appears only in Ezekiel and refers to the outer approach of the gate.
16. The *chalonot atumot* ('recessed windows' or 'narrowing windows') were likely splayed windows — narrow on the outside and widening inward, a common feature of ancient Near Eastern military and temple architecture. The palm tree motifs (*timorim*) on the pilasters echo the decorative scheme of Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:29, 32, 35), establishing visual continuity between the old and new sanctuaries.
17. The outer court had thirty rooms (*leshakhot*) arranged along a stone pavement (*ritspah*) that surrounded the court. These rooms likely served administrative, storage, or dining purposes related to Temple worship. The number thirty may correspond to the tribal and Levitical divisions responsible for Temple service.
18. The 'lower pavement' (*ha-ritspah ha-tachtonah*) indicates a difference in elevation — the outer court pavement was at a lower level than the inner court, reinforcing the ascending holiness of the Temple complex as one moves inward and upward.
19. One hundred cubits (approximately 170 feet / 52 m) was the distance across the outer court from the outer gate to the inner gate — measured on both the east and north sides, confirming the symmetrical layout of the complex.
20. The narrative now moves to the north gate of the outer court. The identical measurement pattern indicates that all three outer gates (east, north, south) share the same architectural design — a deliberate symmetry expressing the ordered holiness of the sacred precinct.
21. The north gate exactly replicates the east gate: three chambers per side, the same pilasters and vestibules, fifty cubits deep and twenty-five cubits wide. The repetition is not literary laziness but architectural precision — the Temple complex is built on strict symmetry.
22. Seven steps led up to the north gate, indicating an elevation change from the surrounding terrain to the outer court level. The number seven may carry symbolic significance as a number of completeness in Israelite thought, though it also reflects practical topographic requirements.
23. The inner court gates are positioned directly across from their outer court counterparts, creating straight processional axes through the complex. The hundred-cubit distance (approximately 170 feet / 52 m) between outer and inner gates matches the east side measurement in verse 19.
24. The south gate completes the three outer gates. The consistent use of 'the same dimensions' (*ka-middot ha-elleh*) throughout this section is the Hebrew text's way of establishing architectural uniformity without restating every measurement.
25. All three outer gates — east, north, and south — share identical dimensions: fifty cubits by twenty-five cubits, with recessed windows and palm tree decorations. The consistent measurements confirm the architectural unity of the Temple complex.
26. Like the north gate (v. 22), the south gate is approached by seven steps. The palm tree motifs on the pilasters are mentioned again, reinforcing the decorative consistency. Palm trees (*timorim*) symbolize vitality and flourishing in Israelite iconography.
27. The hundred-cubit (approximately 170 feet / 52 m) distance between outer and inner south gates matches the measurements for the east (v. 19) and north (v. 23) sides, confirming the square symmetry of the outer court.
28. The narrative now transitions from the outer court to the inner court. The inner gates mirror the outer gates in their measurements, but the inner court sits at a higher elevation — each step inward and upward brings one closer to the Holy of Holies.
29. The inner south gate replicates the dimensions of the outer gates: fifty by twenty-five cubits, with guard chambers, pilasters, vestibules, and windows. The architectural uniformity expresses the theological principle of divine order.
30. This verse is textually uncertain. The LXX omits it entirely, and the dimensions given (twenty-five by five cubits) do not obviously correspond to the gate vestibules described elsewhere. Some scholars regard it as a marginal gloss that entered the text. We render the Hebrew as it stands while noting the difficulty.
31. The inner gate vestibules face outward toward the outer court, indicating that the inner gates open from the outer court side. The critical detail is eight steps — one more than the seven steps of the outer gates. The ascending step count (seven outer, eight inner) physically embodies the increasing holiness as one moves toward the Temple building itself.

32. The measuring tour now covers the inner east gate. As with all gates, the dimensions are identical, reinforcing the symmetrical design of the complex.
33. The inner east gate is architecturally identical to the inner south gate (v. 29) and the outer gates. The consistent repetition in the Hebrew text is not redundancy but the language of architectural specification — each gate is confirmed to meet the same standard.
34. Eight steps again — matching the inner south gate (v. 31). The consistent eight-step ascent to all inner gates confirms the uniform elevation of the inner court above the outer court.
35. The inner north gate completes the set of three inner gates. The brevity of this verse reflects the Hebrew text's own recognition that the pattern is now established — 'the same dimensions' suffices.
36. The final confirmation of the inner north gate dimensions. All six gates — three outer and three inner — conform to the fifty-by-twenty-five cubit standard, a remarkable architectural uniformity.
37. The inner north gate, like the other inner gates, has eight steps and palm tree decorations. The repetition closes the survey of the six gates with complete architectural consistency.
38. The narrative shifts from measurement to function. This room was for washing the sacrificial animals before offering — a practical necessity for the priestly procedures. The verb *yadichu* ('they wash, they rinse') is a technical term for the ritual cleansing of sacrificial flesh (cf. Leviticus 1:9, 13).
39. Four tables total — two on each side of the vestibule — were designated for slaughtering the three categories of sacrifice: *olah* (burnt offering, entirely consumed), *chattat* (sin offering, for purification from sin), and *asham* (guilt offering, for reparation). The distinction between these three offering types is central to the Levitical sacrificial system (Leviticus 1, 4, 5).
40. Four additional tables were positioned outside the gate vestibule — two on each side of the entrance. Combined with the four inside (v. 39), this creates a total of eight tables for the preparation of sacrificial animals at this gate.
41. The total count is confirmed: eight tables for the slaughter of sacrificial animals. The number eight — associated with new beginnings in Israelite symbolism (circumcision on the eighth day, the eighth-day dedication of the tabernacle in Leviticus 9) — may not be accidental in this vision of renewed worship.
42. These four stone tables (*avnei gazit*, 'hewn stone') were specifically for the burnt offering preparation. Their dimensions — approximately 2.5 by 2.5 by 1.7 feet (76 x 76 x 52 cm) — made them sturdy, low work surfaces. The use of hewn stone rather than rough stone is notable; in contrast, the altar law in Exodus 20:25 prohibits hewn stone for altars. These are preparation tables, not altars, so the prohibition does not apply.
43. The *shephattayim* are hooks or ledges — a handbreadth (approximately 3 inches / 7.5 cm) in size — fastened to the walls for hanging or handling sacrificial meat. The exact form is debated; 'double-pronged hooks' follows the most common interpretation. The practicality of the description reflects Ezekiel's priestly expertise — he knows how a working sacrificial facility must be equipped.
44. The Hebrew *sharim* can mean 'singers' or 'officials/ministers.' We follow the reading 'singers' based on the Levitical role of musical worship in the Temple. The LXX reads 'two rooms,' which many scholars prefer. The positioning — one room facing south and another facing north — suggests these were stationed to serve different areas of the inner court.
45. The phrase *shomerei mishmeret ha-bayit* ('keepers of the charge of the house') is a technical priestly term for those responsible for maintaining the Temple's operations — guarding the sanctuary, managing the daily services, and ensuring ritual purity. This is distinct from those who serve at the altar (v. 46).
46. This verse introduces a distinction critical to the entire Temple vision: the sons of Zadok (*benei Tsadoq*) are singled out as the priestly line with the exclusive right to approach the altar and minister directly to the LORD. Zadok was David's priest (2 Samuel 8:17) who remained loyal during Absalom's revolt and anointed Solomon (1 Kings 1:39). Ezekiel, himself of the Zadokite line, restricts altar service to this lineage — other Levites will serve in subordinate roles (44:10-14). This Zadokite exclusivity distinguishes Ezekiel's Temple order from earlier Pentateuchal legislation.
47. The inner court is a perfect square of one hundred cubits per side (approximately 170 x 170 feet / 52 x 52 m). The term *merubba'at* ('squared, foursquare') emphasizes geometric perfection. The altar (*mizbeach*) is mentioned here for the first time in the vision — positioned before the Temple building (*ha-bayit*), it occupies the central liturgical space of the inner court. Its detailed measurements will come in 43:13-17.
48. The tour now reaches the Temple building itself (*ha-bayit*, 'the house'). The vestibule (*ulam*) is the entrance porch of the Temple proper, corresponding to the *ulam* of Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:3). The pilasters flanking the entrance were five cubits (approximately 8.5 feet / 2.6 m) on each side, with the gateway opening flanked by three-cubit (approximately 5.1 feet / 1.6 m) walls on each side.
49. The vestibule dimensions — twenty cubits by eleven cubits (approximately 34 by 18.7 feet / 10.4 by 5.7 m) — differ slightly from Solomon's Temple vestibule, which was twenty cubits wide and ten cubits deep (1 Kings 6:3). The LXX reads 'twelve' instead of 'eleven,' which would create a more standard dimension. The two freestanding columns (*ammudim*) beside the pilasters recall Jachin and Boaz, the two bronze pillars at Solomon's Temple entrance (1 Kings 7:15-22), though Ezekiel does not name them.

41

Summary: *Ezekiel 41 moves from the outer structures into the Temple building itself — the nave (hekal) and the Most Holy Place (devir). The measuring guide leads Ezekiel through the Temple's interior, measuring the entrance, the nave, and the innermost sanctuary. The chapter then details the surrounding side chambers built against the Temple walls in three stories, the platform structure, and the wall decorations — cherubim and palm trees alternating in a continuous pattern. The chapter concludes with the wooden altar in front of the Most Holy Place, identified as 'the table that is before the LORD.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter records the measurements of the holiest space in the entire vision — the devir, the inner sanctuary where God's presence dwells. The measuring man enters the Most Holy Place alone (v. 4); Ezekiel remains outside, observing from the nave. This detail is theologically precise: even in a vision, the prophet — who is a priest — does not enter the Holy of Holies. Only the high priest may enter, and only on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:2). The cherubim and palm tree decorations covering the walls recall both Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:29) and the Garden of Eden — cherubim guarding sacred space with trees of life. The wooden altar described in verse 22 is striking because the tabernacle and Solomon's Temple had bronze and gold altars; this simple wooden altar in Ezekiel's Temple vision may represent the altar of incense. We rendered the architectural vocabulary with precision, distinguishing the hekal (nave/main hall) from the devir (inner sanctuary/Most Holy Place).*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of this chapter contains several notoriously difficult passages, particularly in the description of the side chambers (vv. 5-11) and the building to the west (vv. 12-15). The spatial relationships are ambiguous, and architectural reconstructions vary widely among scholars. The term tsela ('side chamber' or 'rib') is the same word used for Eve's creation from Adam's 'rib' in Genesis 2:21-22, though the architectural meaning here is unrelated. The phrase in verse 22 — 'This is the table that is before the LORD' — is surprising because Ezekiel has been describing an altar (mizbeach), yet calls it a table (shulchan). We preserved this textual ambiguity rather than harmonizing.*

Connections: *The Temple dimensions connect directly to Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6) — the nave is the same width (twenty cubits) and the Most Holy Place the same dimensions (twenty by twenty cubits), though Ezekiel's overall structure is larger. The cherubim and palm tree decorations link to 1 Kings 6:29-35 and to the Garden of Eden (Genesis 3:24, where cherubim guard the way to the tree of life). The wooden altar recalls the altar of incense (Exodus 30:1-6). The glory of the LORD, which departed from the old Temple in chapters 10-11, will return to fill this new Temple in chapter 43, making the measurements of this sacred space preparatory for that climactic moment.*

¹Then he brought me to the nave and measured the pilasters — six cubits wide on one side and six cubits wide on the other side, the width of the tent structure. ²The entrance was ten cubits wide, with walls of five cubits on each side of the opening. He measured the length of the nave — forty cubits; and the width — twenty cubits. ³Then he went inside and measured the pilaster of the entrance — two cubits; the entrance itself — six cubits; and the width of the entrance walls — seven cubits. ⁴He measured its length — twenty cubits; and its width — twenty cubits, beyond the nave. And he said to me, "This is the Most Holy Place." ⁵He measured the wall of the Temple — six cubits thick; and the width of each side chamber — four cubits, all around the Temple on every side. ⁶The side chambers were in three stories, one above another, thirty in each story. They rested on ledges in the wall built for the side chambers all around, so that they would be supported without beams being inserted into the Temple wall itself. ⁷The side chambers widened as they went higher, story by story, because the Temple wall narrowed as it went up all around the Temple. Therefore the upper chambers were wider than the lower ones, and one went up from the lowest story to the highest by way of the middle story. ⁸I saw that the Temple had a raised platform all around it. The foundations of the side chambers were a full rod — six cubits to the joint. ⁹The outer wall of the side chambers was five cubits thick. The open space between the side chambers of the Temple ¹⁰Between the chambers and the Temple was a width of twenty cubits all around the Temple on every side. ¹¹The entrances to the side chambers opened onto the open

area — one entrance on the north and one on the south. The width of the open area was five cubits all around. ¹²The building facing the restricted area on the west side was seventy cubits wide. The wall of the building was five cubits thick all around, and its length was ninety cubits. ¹³He measured the Temple — one hundred cubits long; and the restricted area with the building and its walls — one hundred cubits long. ¹⁴The width of the front of the Temple and the restricted area on the east side was one hundred cubits. ¹⁵He measured the length of the building facing the restricted area at the rear, with its galleries on each side — one hundred cubits. This included the inner nave and the vestibules of the court. ¹⁶The thresholds, the recessed windows, and the galleries on all three levels — opposite the threshold, all were paneled with wood all around, from the floor up to the windows; and the windows were covered. ¹⁷Above the entrance and throughout the inner Temple and on the outside — on every wall all around, both inside and outside — were measured patterns. ¹⁸The decorations were cherubim and palm trees, with a palm tree between each pair of cherubim. Each cherub had two faces — ¹⁹a human face toward the palm tree on one side, and a young lion's face toward the palm tree on the other side. This pattern was repeated throughout the entire Temple all around. ²⁰From the floor to above the entrance, cherubim and palm trees were carved on the wall of the nave. ²¹The doorposts of the nave were squared, and the front of the Holy Place had the same appearance. ²²The wooden altar was three cubits high and two cubits long. Its corners, its length, and its walls were of wood. He said to me, "This is the table that is before the LORD." ²³The nave and the Most Holy Place each had double doors. ²⁴Each door had two leaves — two folding leaves for one door and two folding leaves for the other. ²⁵Cherubim and palm trees were carved on them — on the doors of the nave — just as they were on the walls. There was a wooden canopy on the front of the vestibule outside. ²⁶There were recessed windows and palm tree designs on each side of the vestibule walls, as well as on the side chambers of the Temple and the wooden canopies.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The hekal is the main hall of the Temple, the nave — the large room between the vestibule (ulam) and the Most Holy Place (devir). The term ha-ohel ('the tent') at the end is unexpected, since this is clearly a stone building. It may be an archaic reference connecting this structure to the original tent of meeting (ohel mo'ed), or it may refer to the width of the entrance frame. The six-cubit pilasters on each side reduce the entrance width from the vestibule's broader opening.
2. The nave dimensions — forty cubits long by twenty cubits wide (approximately 68 by 34 feet / 20.8 by 10.4 m) — match Solomon's Temple exactly (1 Kings 6:17). The entrance opening of ten cubits, with five-cubit walls flanking it, is consistent with the narrowing pattern as one moves deeper into the Temple: the vestibule entrance was fourteen cubits wide (40:48), the nave entrance is ten cubits, and the Most Holy Place entrance will be six cubits (v. 3).
3. The measuring guide enters the inner sanctuary alone — Ezekiel does not follow. The narrowing entrance (six cubits wide, compared to the nave's ten-cubit entrance) physically restricts access to the most sacred space. The seven-cubit width of the entrance walls may refer to the thickness of the wall separating the nave from the inner sanctuary.
4. The Most Holy Place is a perfect square of twenty by twenty cubits (approximately 34 by 34 feet / 10.4 by 10.4 m), matching Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:20). The phrase el-penei ha-hekal ('before/beyond the nave') indicates the position relative to the main hall. The measuring guide's declaration — 'This is the Most Holy Place' — is the first spoken identification of a space in the vision, marking its supreme significance.
4. Notably, no Ark of the Covenant is mentioned. Whether this is because the ark was destroyed with Solomon's Temple (586 BCE) and Ezekiel envisions a sanctuary without it, or because it is assumed, is debated. Jeremiah 3:16 says explicitly that the ark will not be rebuilt — 'it will not come to mind, nor will they remember it.'
5. The Temple wall was six cubits (approximately 10.2 feet / 3.1 m) thick — massive structural walls capable of supporting the three-story side chamber complex. The tsela ('side chamber') is the same word used for Adam's 'rib' in Genesis 2:21, though here it refers to small rooms built against the exterior of the Temple wall. Each chamber was four cubits (approximately 6.8 feet / 2.1 m) wide.
6. The construction detail is architecturally sophisticated: the side chambers rested on ledges (rebates) cut into the outer face of the Temple wall rather than having beams inserted into the wall. This matches exactly the description of Solomon's Temple construction in 1 Kings 6:6 — the Temple walls were stepped inward at each level, creating ledges to support the chamber floors without penetrating the sacred wall. The thirty chambers per story (ninety total) provided extensive storage and service space.
7. As the Temple wall stepped inward at each successive level (creating the support ledges described in v. 6), the side chambers grew correspondingly wider. The lowest chambers were narrowest because the wall was thickest at the base; the highest chambers were widest. Access between stories was through the middle level — a stairway arrangement connecting all three stories.

8. The platform or podium on which the Temple sat elevated the entire structure above the surrounding court. The foundation depth of the side chambers was one full rod (six long cubits, approximately 10.2 feet / 3.1 m). The term *atssilah* is obscure — it may mean 'to the joint' (where the side chambers connect to the Temple wall) or 'to the armpit' as a metaphorical construction term.
9. The outer wall enclosing the side chambers was five cubits (approximately 8.5 feet / 2.6 m) thick. The Hebrew of the second clause is fragmentary — *munach* ('that which was left/open') likely refers to an open space or terrace between the side chamber complex and other structures. The verse appears to trail off grammatically, and many scholars consider the text partially corrupt.
10. A twenty-cubit (approximately 34 feet / 10.4 m) open space separated the side chamber complex from other structures or rooms (*leshakhot*) on the Temple platform. This open area created a buffer zone around the Temple building, maintaining its spatial distinctness within the sacred precinct.
11. Two entrances — one on the north side and one on the south — provided access to the side chambers from the open platform area (*ha-munnach*). There was no entrance from the east (the Temple's front) or the west (behind the Most Holy Place). The five-cubit open area around the side chambers may refer to a walkway or terrace distinct from the twenty-cubit space in verse 10.
12. The *gizrah* ('restricted area' or 'separate place') is the open space behind (west of) the Temple building. A large building on the west side — seventy cubits wide by ninety cubits long (approximately 119 by 153 feet / 36.4 by 46.8 m) — is never identified by function. Its purpose remains one of the mysteries of Ezekiel's Temple vision. Some scholars suggest it corresponds to a storage or service building.
13. The total length of the Temple building (vestibule + nave + Most Holy Place + walls) was one hundred cubits (approximately 170 feet / 52 m). The restricted area with the western building and its walls also measured one hundred cubits. The symmetry of one hundred cubits in both directions reflects the careful proportional design of the complex.
14. The east-facing measurement also totals one hundred cubits, confirming the Temple complex occupies a one-hundred-cubit square footprint — the same dimensions as the inner court (40:47). The sacred precinct is geometrically precise.
15. The *attiqim* ('galleries' or 'terraces') are architectural features flanking the western building — their exact form is uncertain. The total of one hundred cubits encompasses the building, its galleries, the inner Temple, and the court vestibules, showing how the measurements integrate into the overall hundred-cubit grid of the complex.
16. The interior surfaces of the Temple were paneled with wood (*sechif ets*) — wooden paneling covering the stone walls from floor to window height. This matches Solomon's Temple, where the interior was lined with cedar planking (1 Kings 6:15-18). The phrase 'the windows were covered' (*ha-chalonot mekhussot*) may mean the windows had lattice screens or shutters, or that the paneling extended over the window frames.
17. The word *middot* ('measurements' or 'measured patterns') indicates that the decorative elements described in the following verses were arranged in precise, measured intervals — not random ornamentation but a carefully proportioned decorative scheme. Every surface, inside and outside, was covered with these patterns.
18. The alternating pattern of cherubim and palm trees covering the Temple walls directly recalls Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:29) and evokes the Garden of Eden — cherubim guarding sacred space (Genesis 3:24) with trees of life. The palm tree (*timorah*) symbolizes vitality, sustenance, and paradise. The two-faced cherubim here differ from the four-faced living creatures of chapter 1, suggesting these are stylized decorative representations rather than the living beings of the throne vision.
19. Each decorative cherub had two faces: a human face (*penei adam*) and a young lion's face (*penei kephir*). These correspond to two of the four faces of the living creatures in chapter 1 (human and lion). The absence of the ox and eagle faces may reflect the flattened, relief-carved nature of wall decoration — only two profiles can be shown on a flat surface. The human face represents rational dignity; the lion represents royal power.
20. The decorative program covered the full height of the nave walls — from floor level to above the entrance doorway. The term *asuyyim* ('made, crafted') indicates carved relief work rather than painting, consistent with the carved decorations of Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:29).
21. The *mezuzat* ('doorposts') of the nave were squared — rectangular in cross-section rather than round. The phrase *penei ha-qodesh* ('the front of the Holy Place') refers to the entrance wall of the Most Holy Place. The statement 'the appearance was the same' (*ha-mar'eh ka-mar'eh*) indicates that the nave entrance and the sanctuary entrance were architecturally identical in style.
22. This verse presents a deliberate ambiguity: the object is first called a *mizbeach* ('altar') but then identified as a *shulchan* ('table') before the LORD. This likely corresponds to the altar of incense that stood before the Holy of Holies (Exodus 30:1-6), which was also called 'the table of the LORD' in Malachi 1:7, 12. The dual designation reflects the dual function — it is an altar for incense and a table for the bread of the Presence.
22. The dimensions — three cubits high by two cubits long (approximately 5.1 by 3.4 feet / 1.6 by 1 m) — are close to the incense altar specifications in Exodus 30:2 (one cubit square, two cubits high). The larger size in Ezekiel's vision may reflect the overall expansion of the Temple.
23. Both the entrance to the nave and the entrance to the Most Holy Place had two-leaved doors (*shetayim delatot*) — matching Solomon's Temple (1 Kings 6:31-34). The double-door design allowed for ceremonial opening and controlled access.
24. Each of the double doors was itself composed of two hinged panels (*musabbot*, 'turning/folding'), creating a four-panel system for each entrance. This design allowed the large doorways to be opened partially for daily priestly access or fully for major ceremonies.
25. The same cherubim-and-palm-tree motif carved on the walls extended to the doors, creating visual continuity throughout the Temple interior. Solomon's Temple doors were similarly decorated (1 Kings 6:32, 35). The *av ets* ('thick wood' or 'wooden canopy') on the vestibule exterior is architecturally uncertain — it may refer to a wooden overhang, a canopy, or a thick wooden threshold beam.

26. The final verse of the chapter confirms the comprehensive decorative program: recessed windows and palm trees adorned the vestibule, the side chambers, and the wooden overhangs. Every visible surface of the Temple building carried the cherubim-and-palm-tree motif — a total environment of sacred art evoking Eden and divine protection.

42

Summary: *Ezekiel 42 describes the priests' chambers — sacred rooms on the north and south sides of the Temple building, within the restricted area. These chambers serve two essential priestly functions: the priests eat the most holy offerings there, and they change their garments there before and after ministering in the inner court. The chapter concludes with the measuring guide taking Ezekiel outside the entire Temple complex to measure its outer perimeter — five hundred rods on each side, forming a massive square. The purpose of the wall enclosing this square is stated explicitly: 'to separate the holy from the common.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter bridges Ezekiel's architectural concerns with his deepest theological conviction — the absolute distinction between the holy (qodesh) and the common (chol). The priests' chambers are not mere storage rooms; they are liturgical transition zones where priests shift between sacred and ordinary states. The garment-change requirement (v. 14) reflects the priestly understanding that holiness is contagious — sacred garments that have absorbed the holiness of the inner court would 'transmit holiness' to the common people if worn outside (cf. 44:19, Leviticus 6:27). The final measurement — five hundred rods per side — creates an enormous sacred precinct far larger than any historical Temple compound, underscoring the visionary and eschatological character of Ezekiel's Temple. The closing statement in verse 20 is the theological thesis of the entire Temple vision: the wall exists to separate the holy from the common. We rendered the priestly purity vocabulary with precision, distinguishing qodesh (holy), chol (common), and the spatial theology that drives the entire architectural design.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew text of verses 1-9 describing the chamber layout is among the most difficult in the book, with spatial references that have resisted clear reconstruction for centuries. The relationship between the chambers, the restricted area (gizrah), and the outer court requires careful handling — we followed the most commonly accepted spatial interpretation while noting the uncertainties. The measurement in verse 16 presents a textual variant: the MT reads 'five hundred rods' (qanim), while the LXX reads 'five hundred cubits.' The difference is enormous — five hundred rods would create a precinct of roughly 5,250 feet (1,600 m) per side, while five hundred cubits would be only about 875 feet (267 m). We follow the MT reading ('rods') as the more difficult and likely original reading, noting the variant.*

Connections: *The holy/common distinction connects to the foundational priestly theology of Leviticus 10:10 ('You must distinguish between the holy and the common, between the unclean and the clean'). The garment-change requirement connects to Exodus 28-29 (priestly vestments), Leviticus 6:10-11, 16:23-24 (garment changes during service), and Ezekiel 44:17-19. The massive outer wall measurement prepares for the glory's return in chapter 43 — the glory cannot return until the sacred space is fully defined and the boundary between holy and common is architecturally enforced.*

¹Then he led me out into the outer court by way of the north and brought me to the chambers that were opposite the restricted area and opposite the building on the north side. ²Along the length of one hundred cubits was the north entrance, and the width was fifty cubits. ³Opposite the twenty cubits of the inner court and opposite the pavement of the outer court, gallery faced gallery on three levels. ⁴In front of the chambers was a walkway ten cubits wide leading inward, with a passage of one cubit. Their entrances faced north. ⁵The upper chambers were narrower, because the galleries took more space from them than from the lower and middle chambers of the building. ⁶They were on three levels but had no columns like the columns of the outer courts. Therefore the upper level was set back from the lower and middle levels from the ground up. ⁷The wall on the outside, parallel to the chambers toward the outer court in front of the chambers, was fifty cubits long. ⁸The row of chambers along the outer court was fifty cubits long, while those facing the Temple were one hundred cubits long. ⁹Below these chambers was an entrance on the east side, for entering them from the outer court. ¹⁰Along the width of the court wall on the east side, facing the restricted area and facing the building, were chambers. ¹¹The walkway in front of them was

like the appearance of the chambers on the north side — the same length and width, with all their exits, arrangements, and entrances identical. ¹²Like the entrances of the chambers on the south side, there was an entrance at the beginning of the passageway, the passageway directly in front of the corresponding wall, on the east side as one enters. ¹³Then he said to me, "The north chambers and the south chambers that face the restricted area — these are the holy chambers where the priests who approach the LORD will eat the most holy offerings. There they will place the most holy offerings — the grain offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering — because the place is holy." ¹⁴When the priests enter, they must not go out from the holy area into the outer court without first leaving there the garments in which they minister, for these are holy. They must put on other garments before approaching the area open to the people. ¹⁵When he had finished measuring the interior of the Temple complex, he led me out through the gate that faced east and measured all around the outside. ¹⁶He measured the east side with the measuring rod — five hundred rods by the measuring rod. ¹⁷He measured the north side — five hundred rods by the measuring rod. ¹⁸He measured the south side — five hundred rods by the measuring rod. ¹⁹He turned to the west side and measured five hundred rods by the measuring rod. ²⁰He measured it on all four sides. It had a wall all around — five hundred rods long and five hundred rods wide — to separate the holy from the common.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The tour transitions from the Temple building itself to the priestly chambers in the outer court area. The *lishkah* ('chamber, room') here refers to a complex of priestly rooms, not a single chamber. Their position — opposite the *gizrah* ('restricted area') and the western building described in 41:12 — places them in the zone between the inner and outer courts on the north side.
2. The chamber complex measured one hundred cubits long by fifty cubits wide (approximately 170 by 85 feet / 52 by 26 m). These are substantial structures — not small side rooms but a significant architectural block dedicated to priestly functions.
3. The chamber complex had three stories (*ba-shelishim*, 'in the thirds'), with galleries (*attiqim*) facing each other across a central corridor or courtyard. The 'twenty cubits' refers to the open space between the Temple building and the chambers (see 41:10). The three-story design mirrors the side chambers of the Temple itself (41:6).
4. A ten-cubit (approximately 17 feet / 5.2 m) wide walkway ran along the front of the chambers — a generous corridor for priestly movement between the chambers and the court. The 'one cubit' passage (*derek ammah echat*) is puzzling; it may refer to the width of individual doorways into the chambers, or to a step or threshold. The text is difficult, and interpretations vary.
5. Like the side chambers of the Temple (41:7), the upper chambers were affected by the structural design — but here the relationship is reversed. The galleries (*attiqim*) consumed more floor space on the upper levels, making the upper chambers narrower (*qetsurot*, 'shortened/reduced') than those below. This contrasts with the Temple side chambers, which widened as they went up.
6. The absence of supporting columns (*ammudim*) in the chamber complex — unlike the colonnaded outer courts — meant that the upper stories relied on the lower walls for support and were set back (*ne'etsal*, 'withdrawn, reduced') to maintain structural integrity. This is a practical engineering observation embedded in the visionary description.
7. A wall (*gader*) ran along the outer court side of the chamber complex, fifty cubits (approximately 85 feet / 26 m) long. This wall separated the priestly chambers from the general outer court area, maintaining the boundary between zones of different holiness.
8. Two rows of chambers are distinguished: the shorter row facing the outer court (fifty cubits) and the longer row facing the Temple (one hundred cubits). The inner row, closer to the sanctuary, was twice as long — reflecting the greater need for priestly service space near the holy precinct.
9. Access to the priestly chambers from the outer court was through an entrance on the east side at the lower level. This ground-level entrance controlled who could enter the priestly zone — only authorized priests would pass through.
10. A corresponding set of chambers existed on the east side, positioned along the court wall opposite the restricted area (*gizrah*) and the western building (41:12). This creates a symmetrical arrangement of priestly chambers on multiple sides of the Temple.
11. The south chambers mirror the north chambers exactly — same dimensions, same layout, same entrances. The word *mishpeteihen* ('their arrangements' or 'their designs') is a technical architectural term here, referring to the floor plan and structural specifications.
12. The description of the south chambers' entrance mirrors the north side arrangement (v. 9). The entrance was on the east, at the beginning of a protected passageway (*derek*) running along the wall (*gederah*). The term *haginah* is rare and obscure — possibly 'protective wall' or 'corresponding wall.' The precise spatial arrangement is difficult to reconstruct from the Hebrew.
13. This verse identifies the primary function of the priestly chambers: consuming the most holy offerings (*qodshei ha-qodashim*). In the Levitical system, certain portions of the grain offering (*minchah*), sin offering (*chattat*), and guilt offering (*asham*) were allocated to the priests as sacred food, to be eaten only within the holy precinct (Leviticus 6:16, 6:26, 7:6). The phrase 'priests who approach the LORD' (*ha-kohanim asher qerovim la-YHWH*) restricts this privilege to the Zadokite priests (cf. 40:46).

13. The declaration 'the place is holy' (ha-maqom qadosh) is not merely a label but a functional statement: because the place carries holiness, the holy food can be properly consumed there without profanation.
14. This verse establishes the garment-change protocol: priests cannot wear their sacred vestments into the common areas of the outer court. The rationale is explicitly stated — ki qodesh hennah ('for they are holy'). In priestly theology, holiness is transferable: sacred garments that have been in contact with the altar and the holy offerings carry that holiness, and contact with common persons or spaces would either desecrate the garments or transmit unsanctioned holiness to the people (cf. 44:19, Leviticus 6:27). The priests must change into ordinary clothes before entering the public zone.
14. This same principle explains why the high priest changed garments during the Yom Kippur ritual (Leviticus 16:23-24) — different levels of holiness required different vestments.
15. The measuring tour transitions from interior to exterior. Having completed all internal measurements (chapters 40:5-42:14), the guide now takes Ezekiel outside through the east gate — the primary liturgical entrance — to measure the total perimeter of the sacred precinct. This outward movement reverses the inward journey that began at 40:6.
16. The east side of the outer perimeter measured five hundred rods (qannim). At six long cubits per rod, this equals 3,000 cubits or approximately 5,100 feet (1,560 m) — nearly a mile. This is an enormous sacred precinct, far larger than any historical Temple compound (Solomon's Temple Mount was roughly 500 by 300 cubits). The scale underscores the visionary and eschatological character of this Temple.
16. The LXX reads 'five hundred cubits' instead of 'five hundred rods,' which would yield a much smaller (and historically plausible) measurement of approximately 850 feet (260 m). Most scholars who interpret the vision as a realistic blueprint prefer the LXX reading; those who see it as eschatological vision follow the MT. We render the MT as received.
17. The north side matches the east side exactly — five hundred rods. The sacred precinct is a perfect square, reflecting the same geometric perfection seen in the inner court (40:47) and the Most Holy Place (41:4).
18. The third side confirms the square pattern. The use of ruach ('wind/direction') for compass points is characteristic of Ezekiel's directional vocabulary — literally 'the wind of the south,' reflecting the association of wind direction with geographic orientation.
19. The Hebrew uses ruach ha-yam ('the wind of the sea') for west — the Mediterranean Sea lies to the west of Israel, so 'seaward' and 'westward' are synonymous in Hebrew geographic terminology. All four sides are now measured: five hundred rods each, confirming a perfect square.
20. This verse is the theological climax of the Temple measurement chapters. The purpose of the entire architectural complex — every gate, every chamber, every wall — is summarized in four Hebrew words: lehavdil bein ha-qodesh le-chol ('to separate the holy from the common'). The verb havdil ('to separate, to distinguish') is the same verb used in Genesis 1:4 when God separated light from darkness — the act of creating order from chaos. The Temple wall performs the same cosmic function: it separates sacred order from common disorder.
20. The word chol ('common, ordinary, profane') does not mean 'evil' or 'sinful.' It simply means 'not holy' — the ordinary state of things. The wall's purpose is not to keep evil out but to keep holiness in, protecting the sacred space from contamination by what is merely ordinary.

43

Summary: Ezekiel 43 is the theological climax of the entire book. The glory of the LORD — the kavod YHWH — returns to the new Temple through the east gate, the same gate through which it departed in chapters 10-11. Ezekiel recognizes the vision as identical to what he saw at the Chebar canal and when the city was destroyed. The glory fills the Temple, and God declares from within: 'This is the place of my throne and the place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell among the people of Israel forever.' God then commands Israel to put away the defilement that drove his presence from the first Temple — particularly the placement of royal burial sites adjacent to sacred space with only a wall between them. The chapter concludes with detailed specifications for the altar of burnt offering and the seven-day consecration ritual required before sacrifices can resume.

What Makes This Remarkable: The structure of the entire book has been building toward this moment. In chapters 10-11, the kavod departed the Temple in stages — from the cherubim to the threshold, from the threshold to the east gate, from the east gate to the Mount of Olives — and now it returns by the reverse route, entering from the east. Ezekiel falls facedown, just as he did at the Chebar canal (1:28), and the Spirit lifts him into the inner court — the same transport mechanism that carried him throughout the book. God's declaration in verses 7-9 is striking for its directness: no more will the corpses of kings defile the sacred precinct. The Hebrew word peger ('corpse, carcass') in verse 7 is debated — some read it as 'funeral monuments' or 'memorial stelae' of kings, referring to the historical proximity of royal tombs to the Temple in Jerusalem. Either reading underscores the same point: sacred and profane must be absolutely separated in the restored order. The altar specifications in

verses 13-17 echo the Sinai altar instructions (Exodus 27:1-8) but with significantly larger dimensions and a distinctive stepped structure described with Akkadian-influenced terminology.

Translation Friction: The altar measurements use two different cubits — verse 13 specifies 'the cubit being a cubit and a handbreadth,' meaning the long cubit of approximately 20.4 inches rather than the standard cubit of approximately 18 inches. We preserved the original units with explanatory notes. The terms ariel and har'el (vv. 15-16) are notoriously difficult — ariel may mean 'hearth of God' or 'altar hearth,' while har'el may mean 'mountain of God.' The wordplay between these near-homonyms appears intentional. We rendered both as 'altar hearth' with notes distinguishing them. The word peger in verse 7 is rendered 'corpses' following the primary meaning, but noted the alternative reading of 'funeral monuments.' The phrase 'the threshold of their thresholds beside my threshold, and their doorpost beside my doorpost, with only a wall between me and them' (v. 8) describes the physical layout of Solomon's Temple complex where royal palace structures abutted the Temple itself — we preserved this architectural specificity.

Connections: The glory departure in 10:18-19 and 11:22-23 is now reversed in 43:1-5 — the structural backbone of the book. The divine declaration 'I will dwell among the people of Israel forever' (v. 9) echoes the covenant formula of Exodus 29:45-46, Leviticus 26:11-12, and Ezekiel's own prophecy in 37:26-28. The altar consecration parallels Exodus 29:35-37 and Leviticus 8:33-35. The seven-day ordination period matches the Mosaic precedent exactly. The Zadokite priesthood specified in verse 19 connects to 40:46 and will be developed fully in chapter 44. The concept of God's permanent dwelling connects forward to Revelation 21:3 ('the dwelling place of God is with humanity').

¹Then he brought me to the gate — the gate that faces east. ²And there — the glory of the God of Israel was coming from the east. His voice was like the sound of many waters, and the earth shone with his glory. ³The appearance was like the appearance I had seen — like the vision I saw when he came to destroy the city, and like the visions I saw by the Chebar canal. And I fell on my face. ⁴The glory of the LORD entered the Temple through the gate that faces east. ⁵The Spirit lifted me up and brought me into the inner court, and the glory of the LORD filled the Temple. ⁶I heard someone speaking to me from inside the Temple, while the man stood beside me. ⁷He said to me: "Son of man, this is the place of my throne and the place of the soles of my feet, where I will dwell among the people of Israel forever. The house of Israel will no longer defile my holy name — neither they nor their kings — with their prostitution and with the corpses of their kings at their death. ⁸When they placed their threshold beside my threshold and their doorpost beside my doorpost, with only a wall between me and them, they defiled my holy name with their detestable acts. So I consumed them in my anger. ⁹Now let them put their prostitution and the corpses of their kings far from me, and I will dwell among them forever." ¹⁰"You, son of man — describe the Temple to the house of Israel so that they may be ashamed of their iniquities. Let them measure its design. ¹¹If they are ashamed of everything they have done, then make known to them the plan of the Temple — its layout, its exits and entrances, its complete design, all its statutes, its complete design and all its instructions. Write it down before their eyes so that they may observe its entire design and all its statutes, and carry them out. ¹²This is the instruction for the Temple: on the top of the mountain, its entire surrounding boundary is most holy. This is the instruction for the Temple." ¹³These are the measurements of the altar in cubits (the cubit being a cubit and a handbreadth): the gutter is one cubit deep and one cubit wide, with a rim around its edge of one span. This is the base of the altar. ¹⁴From the gutter at ground level to the lower ledge is two cubits, with a width of one cubit. From the smaller ledge to the larger ledge is four cubits, with a width of one cubit. ¹⁵The altar hearth is four cubits high, and from the altar hearth upward are four horns. ¹⁶The altar hearth is twelve cubits long by twelve cubits wide — square on all four sides. ¹⁷The ledge is fourteen cubits long by fourteen cubits wide on all four sides, with a rim around it of half a cubit. The gutter around it is one cubit, and its steps face east. ¹⁸He said to me: "Son of man, this is what the Lord GOD says: These are the statutes for the altar on the day it is constructed, for offering burnt offerings on it and for dashing blood against it. ¹⁹You are to give to the Levitical priests who are of the line of Zadok — those who draw near to me to minister to me, declares the Lord GOD — a young bull for a sin offering. ²⁰You are to take some of its blood and apply it to the four horns of the altar, to the four corners of the ledge, and to the rim all around. In this way you will purify it and make atonement for it. ²¹Then take the bull of the sin offering and burn it in the designated area of the Temple complex, outside the sanctuary. ²²On the second day you are to offer a male goat without defect as a sin offering.

They are to purify the altar just as they purified it with the bull. ²³When you have finished the purification, you are to present a young bull without defect and a ram from the flock without defect. ²⁴You are to present them before the LORD. The priests will throw salt on them and offer them as a burnt offering to the LORD. ²⁵For seven days you are to provide a male goat as a sin offering each day. A young bull and a ram from the flock, both without defect, are also to be provided. ²⁶For seven days they are to make atonement for the altar and purify it. In this way they will consecrate it. ²⁷When they have completed these days, then on the eighth day and onward, the priests will offer your burnt offerings and your fellowship offerings on the altar, and I will accept you, declares the Lord GOD."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The guide figure (the man with the measuring reed from 40:3) leads Ezekiel to the east gate. This is the same gate through which the glory of the LORD departed in 10:19 and 11:1. The directional specificity is theologically loaded — the east gate becomes the axis of departure and return for the divine presence.
2. The phrase *kavod Elohei Yisrael* ('the glory of the God of Israel') matches the language of 8:4, 9:3, and 10:19, creating verbal continuity with the departure sequence. The comparison of God's voice to *mayim rabbim* ('many waters') echoes 1:24 at the inaugural vision by the Chebar canal. The verb *he'irah* ('shone, gave light') indicates the *kavod* is not merely present but luminous — it irradiates the earth itself.
3. Ezekiel explicitly links three visions: the present return, the destruction of the city (chs. 8-11), and the inaugural throne-chariot vision at the Chebar canal (ch. 1). The threefold repetition of *mar'eh* ('appearance, vision') conveys the prophet struggling to process the visual — the stacked comparisons are characteristic of his visionary language. The phrase 'when he came to destroy the city' uses the infinitive construct *leshahet* ('to destroy'), and the subject shifts from 'I came' in some readings to 'he came' (referring to God) — the Hebrew is ambiguous; some manuscripts read *bevo'i* ('when I came') rather than *bevo* ('when he came'). We follow the reading that acknowledges Ezekiel's prophetic role as witness to the destruction, not its agent.
3. Falling facedown (*va'epol el panai*) is Ezekiel's characteristic response to theophany (1:28, 3:23, 9:8, 11:13, 44:4). It marks the human recognition that divine presence is overwhelming.
4. The Hebrew *bayit* ('house') here means the Temple, as throughout the Temple vision. The verb *ba* ('came, entered') is simple and definitive — no hesitation, no stages. Unlike the departure in chapters 10-11, which occurred in agonizing steps, the return is immediate and complete.
5. The transport formula *vatisa'eni ruach* ('the Spirit lifted me up') matches 3:12, 3:14, 8:3, 11:1, and 37:1. The *ruach* here functions as the divine Spirit, not wind or breath — context determines the rendering. The phrase *male kavod YHWH habayit* ('the glory of the LORD filled the Temple') is a direct verbal echo of 1 Kings 8:11 (*male kavod YHWH et bet YHWH*), creating a typological link between Solomon's Temple dedication and this visionary moment.
6. The voice from within the Temple is God's, though Ezekiel does not yet identify the speaker — the text reveals this in verse 7. The 'man' standing beside Ezekiel is the guide figure with the measuring reed (40:3). The scene creates a striking juxtaposition: the human guide stands beside the prophet while the divine voice speaks from within the glory-filled Temple. The participle *middabber* ('speaking') is the *Hitpa'el*/reflexive form, suggesting continuous or intense speech — God is not merely addressing Ezekiel but declaring.
7. The phrase *meqom kis'i* ('the place of my throne') and *meqom kappot raglai* ('the place of the soles of my feet') is enthronement language — the Temple is where God sits enthroned and where his feet rest, imagery drawn from the ark as God's footstool (1 Chronicles 28:2, Psalm 132:7). The word *olam* ('forever') carries its full weight here — this is not merely 'a long time' but a permanent divine commitment.
7. The word *pigrei* ('corpses, carcasses') in reference to kings is debated. Some scholars read *bamotam* as 'their high places' (*bamot*) rather than 'at their death' (*bemotam*). We follow the reading 'at their death' (*bemotam*) as the context concerns royal burial practices near the Temple precinct. The proximity of royal tombs to the Temple in Jerusalem (attested archaeologically and in 2 Kings 21:18, 26) is the specific defilement God addresses.
8. This verse describes the architectural violation of Solomon's Temple complex: the royal palace was built directly adjacent to the Temple (1 Kings 7:1-12), sharing walls and thresholds. The priestly logic is that sacred space requires separation — when profane royal structures (with their idolatrous practices) abutted the Temple, the holiness of the sanctuary was compromised. The word *to'evot* ('detestable acts, abominations') is Ezekiel's standard term for defilement.
8. The final clause *va'akhal otam be'appi* ('so I consumed them in my anger') summarizes the entire history of judgment — the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BCE — as a single divine response to the architectural and spiritual defilement described.
9. The conditional structure is significant: God's permanent dwelling is contingent on the removal of defilement. The verb *shakhan* ('dwell, tabernacle') is the root of the later concept of *Shekhinah* — God's indwelling presence. The promise *veshakhanti betokham le'olam* ('I will dwell among them forever') echoes 37:26-28, where the same promise appears in the context of the everlasting covenant.
10. The command to 'describe the Temple' (*hagged et habayit*) creates a wordplay between *bayit* as 'house' (of Israel) and *bayit* as 'Temple' — show the house the House. The purpose of the description is shame (*yikkalemu*) — when Israel sees the perfection of God's design, they will recognize how far they fell. The word *tokhnit* ('design, pattern, plan') echoes the tabernacle design (*tavnit*) that Moses received on Sinai (Exodus 25:9).

11. The repetition of *tzurah* ('form, design') multiple times in a single verse is characteristic of Ezekiel's prose style — the accumulation emphasizes the comprehensiveness of the plan that must be conveyed. The command to 'write it down before their eyes' (*ukhtov le'einehem*) is significant: the Temple vision is not to remain an oral report but must become a written document — a blueprint. The conditional 'if they are ashamed' makes the revelation of the plan contingent on repentance. The interplay of *chuqqot* ('statutes') and *torot* ('instructions, laws') covers both the architectural specifications and the liturgical regulations.
12. The phrase *torat habayit* ('the instruction/law of the Temple') frames this verse as a summary principle — the foundational rule from which all other Temple regulations flow. The designation *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy') for the entire mountaintop boundary — not just the inner sanctum — represents an expansion of the holiness category beyond anything in the Mosaic legislation. The repetition 'This is the instruction for the Temple' at beginning and end creates an *inclusio* that brackets the principle.
13. The 'cubit and a handbreadth' specifies the long cubit — approximately 20.4 inches (52 cm) — as opposed to the standard cubit of approximately 18 inches (45 cm). This is the same measurement standard used throughout the Temple vision (40:5). The word *heq* ('bosom, gutter, base') refers to a channel or depression at the base of the altar, likely for collecting blood and drainage. A span (*zeret*) is approximately 9 inches (23 cm). The term *gab hammizbeach* ('the back/elevation of the altar') marks the beginning of the altar's stepped structure.
14. The altar is a stepped structure, narrowing as it rises. The *azarah* ('ledge, settle, offset') is a horizontal surface at each step of the altar. The terms 'lower' (*takhtonah*), 'smaller' (*qetannah*), and 'larger' (*gedolah*) describe the successive ledges. The dimensions create a three-tiered structure: gutter/base, lower ledge, upper ledge, then the hearth.
15. Two related but distinct terms appear here: *har'el* ('mountain of God') and *ariel* ('hearth of God' or 'lion of God'). The distinction is debated — most scholars treat both as referring to the altar hearth, the top surface where sacrifices are burned. We render both as 'altar hearth' for clarity. The wordplay between *har'el* and *ariel* may reflect the altar's cosmic symbolism — it is simultaneously a mountain (connecting earth to heaven) and a hearth (where offerings are consumed). The four horns (*qeranot*) are projections at each corner of the altar, known from both biblical descriptions (Exodus 27:2) and archaeological evidence.
16. The altar hearth forms a perfect square — twelve cubits by twelve cubits (approximately 20.4 feet / 6.2 meters per side using the long cubit). This is significantly larger than the Mosaic altar (Exodus 27:1: five cubits by five cubits) and even the Solomonic altar (2 Chronicles 4:1: twenty cubits by twenty cubits, though this measures the entire altar platform). The perfect square suggests completeness and order.
17. The ledge (*azarah*) surrounding the altar hearth extends one cubit beyond the hearth on each side (twelve-cubit hearth within a fourteen-cubit ledge). The steps facing east orient worshipers toward the same direction from which the glory entered — the east gate. In the Mosaic system, the altar had no steps (Exodus 20:26 prohibited them to prevent indecent exposure). Ezekiel's altar has steps, suggesting a different conception of priestly garments (addressed in 44:17-18) that resolves the earlier prohibition.
18. The locked formula *ko amar Adonai YHWH* is rendered 'This is what the Lord GOD says.' The verb *lizroq* ('to dash, to splash') describes the priestly action of throwing blood against the sides of the altar — not a delicate sprinkling but a vigorous dashing. This matches the Levitical procedure (Leviticus 1:5, 11). The phrase *beyom he'asoto* ('on the day it is constructed') indicates that the consecration process begins immediately upon the altar's completion.
19. The restriction to Zadokite priests (*mizera Tsadoq*, 'from the seed of Zadok') is a defining feature of Ezekiel's priestly legislation. Zadok was the priest who remained loyal to David during Absalom's rebellion (2 Samuel 15:24-29) and to Solomon during Adonijah's attempted usurpation (1 Kings 1:32-40). Ezekiel privileges the Zadokite line over other Levitical families — a distinction developed further in chapter 44. The phrase *haqqerovim elai* ('those who draw near to me') is technical priestly language for authorized approach to the divine presence.
20. Two verbs describe the consecration process: *chiteta* ('purify, de-sin') and *kippartahu* ('make atonement for, cover over'). The first removes defilement; the second covers or ransoms the altar so that it is fit for sacred use. Blood applied to the horns, corners, and rim consecrates every part of the altar's surface. The procedure parallels Exodus 29:36 and Leviticus 8:15.
21. The *mifqad* ('designated area, appointed place') is a specific location within the Temple compound but outside the sanctuary proper where sin-offering remains are burned. The term *mifqad* appears in Nehemiah 3:31 as a place name ('the Muster Gate'), suggesting an area for assembly or accounting. Burning the sin offering outside the sanctuary follows the Levitical precedent of Leviticus 4:12, 21 — the entire bull is consumed by fire outside the camp/sanctuary because it has absorbed the sin being atoned for.
22. The shift from bull (day one) to male goat (day two) mirrors the Day of Atonement sequence where both animals play roles in the purification process (Leviticus 16:3, 5). The word *tamim* ('without defect, blameless, whole') is the standard requirement for all sacrificial animals — no blemish, no injury, no disease. The plural verb *chitte'u* ('they shall purify') shifts from the singular 'you' to a plural subject, indicating that the priests collectively perform the purification.
23. After the sin offering (purification) is complete, the consecration shifts to burnt offerings — a bull and a ram. This sequence follows the ordination pattern of Exodus 29:1, where both a bull and rams are required for the consecration of the altar and the priests. The distinction matters: the sin offering purifies; the burnt offering consecrates and dedicates.
24. The requirement to salt the offerings echoes Leviticus 2:13: 'You shall not let the salt of the covenant of your God be lacking from your grain offering; with all your offerings you shall offer salt.' Salt preserves, purifies, and symbolizes the permanence of the covenant — a 'covenant of salt' (Numbers 18:19, 2 Chronicles 13:5) is an unbreakable agreement. The verb *hishlikhu* ('throw, cast') indicates that salt is thrown onto the offering, not delicately sprinkled.

25. The seven-day consecration period matches the Mosaic ordination sequence exactly (Exodus 29:35, Leviticus 8:33). Seven days is the standard period for major ritual transitions in the priestly system — seven days for priestly ordination, seven days for purification from corpse defilement (Numbers 19:11-12), seven days for the consecration of the Tabernacle. The number signifies completeness.
26. The phrase *umile'u yadav* ('fill its hands') is the technical Hebrew idiom for ordination or consecration — literally 'filling the hands' of the altar, as priests' hands are 'filled' at their ordination (Exodus 28:41, 29:9). The idiom likely originates from placing offerings into the hands of the one being consecrated. Applied to the altar, it means the altar is formally authorized and empowered for its sacrificial function. We rendered the idiom as 'consecrate' with this note explaining the literal Hebrew.
27. The eighth day marks the transition from consecration to regular sacrificial service — the same pattern as the Tabernacle inauguration, where the eighth day saw the first regular offerings and the glory of the LORD appeared (Leviticus 9:1-24). The word *shelameikhem* ('your fellowship offerings, your peace offerings') refers to *shelamim*, offerings that culminate in a communal meal shared between God (the fat portions), the priests, and the worshiper. The divine promise *veratsiti etkhem* ('I will accept you') is the theological conclusion of the entire chapter: the altar consecration is not merely ritual procedure but the restoration of the relationship between God and Israel. Acceptance by God is the goal of all sacrifice.
27. The locked formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* is rendered 'declares the Lord GOD.'

44

Summary: *Ezekiel 44 moves from the glory's return (ch. 43) to the regulations governing who may serve in the restored Temple. The chapter opens with a dramatic declaration: the east gate must remain permanently shut because the LORD has entered through it — only the prince (nasi) may sit in its vestibule to eat bread before the LORD. God then rebukes Israel for having allowed uncircumcised foreigners to serve in the sanctuary, and announces a sharp division within the Levitical priesthood: ordinary Levites who participated in Israel's past idolatry are demoted to menial Temple service, while only the Zadokite priests — who remained faithful — may approach the altar and serve in God's presence. The chapter concludes with detailed priestly regulations covering vestments, hair, wine, marriage, judicial duties, purity laws, and inheritance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The permanent closure of the east gate is one of the most theologically resonant images in Ezekiel. The gate that the glory used to return is sealed — the divine presence, having returned, will not depart again. In later Jewish and Christian tradition, this closed gate takes on additional significance: in Christian interpretation, it prefigures the perpetual virginity of Mary (the 'closed gate' through which God entered the world), though this is a later theological development, not the text's own concern. The demotion of the Levites (vv. 10-14) is extraordinary — an entire priestly class is stripped of altar service as punishment for their ancestors' participation in idolatry, yet they are not expelled entirely. They become Temple servants rather than priests. The Zadokite monopoly on altar service reflects the historical reality that the Zadokite line controlled the Jerusalem priesthood from Solomon to the Exile, and Ezekiel — himself a Zadokite — enshrines this arrangement in his vision of the restored order.*

Translation Friction: *The exclusion of uncircumcised foreigners (v. 9) creates a significant theological tension with Isaiah 56:3-7, which explicitly welcomes foreigners who keep covenant. We noted this tension honestly without harmonizing — the Hebrew Bible contains diverse voices on the question of foreign inclusion. The word *nasi* ('prince') rather than *melek* ('king') for the leader who sits in the east gate vestibule continues Ezekiel's deliberate avoidance of royal language — explored in the note. The priestly regulations in verses 17-31 overlap with but do not exactly match the Mosaic legislation in Leviticus 21, and we documented the specific differences. The phrase 'uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh' (v. 7) combines the metaphorical usage of circumcision (Deuteronomy 10:16, Jeremiah 4:4) with the literal — both conditions disqualify.*

Connections: *The closed east gate connects backward to the glory's departure through the east (10:19, 11:23) and its return through the east (43:1-4). The Zadokite priesthood builds on 40:46 and 43:19. The priestly vestment regulations parallel Exodus 28 and Leviticus 16:4. The prohibition on priests drinking wine in the sanctuary matches Leviticus 10:9 (given after Nadab and Abihu's death). The marriage restrictions parallel Leviticus 21:7, 13-14 but with slight modifications. The command that priests teach the difference between holy and common, clean and unclean (v. 23) echoes Leviticus 10:10-11. The priestly inheritance principle 'I am their inheritance' (v. 28) quotes Numbers 18:20 and Deuteronomy 10:9. The tension with Isaiah 56:3-7 on foreign inclusion is a major intertextual issue.*

¹Then he brought me back by way of the outer gate of the sanctuary that faces east, and it was shut. ²The LORD said to me: "This gate is to remain shut. It must not be opened, and no one may enter through it, because the LORD, the God of Israel, has entered through it. Therefore it is to remain shut. ³As for the prince — the prince may sit in it to eat bread before the LORD. He must enter by way of the vestibule of the gate and leave by the same way." ⁴Then he brought me by way of the north gate to the front of the Temple. I looked, and the glory of the LORD filled the Temple of the LORD, and I fell on my face. ⁵The LORD said to me: "Son of man, pay close attention. See with your eyes and hear with your ears everything I tell you about all the statutes of the Temple of the LORD and all its instructions. Pay careful attention to the entrance of the Temple and to every exit from the sanctuary. ⁶Say to the rebellious house of Israel: This is what the Lord GOD says — Enough of all your detestable practices, house of Israel! ⁷You brought foreigners, uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh, into my sanctuary to profane my Temple when you offered my food — the fat and the blood — and they broke my covenant through all your detestable practices. ⁸You did not keep charge of my holy things but appointed others to keep charge in my sanctuary on your behalf. ⁹This is what the Lord GOD says: No foreigner uncircumcised in heart and uncircumcised in flesh may enter my sanctuary — no foreigner living among the people of Israel. ¹⁰As for the Levites who went far from me when Israel strayed — who strayed from me after their idols — they will bear their iniquity. ¹¹They will serve in my sanctuary as guards at the gates of the Temple and as servants of the Temple. They will slaughter the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and they will stand before the people to serve them. ¹²Because they served the people before their idols and became a stumbling block of iniquity to the house of Israel, I have raised my hand against them, declares the Lord GOD, and they will bear their iniquity. ¹³They must not approach me to serve as my priests or come near any of my holy things — the most holy things. They will bear their disgrace and the consequences of the detestable things they have done. ¹⁴I will appoint them to keep charge of the Temple — for all its maintenance and for everything that is done in it." ¹⁵"But the Levitical priests descended from Zadok, who kept charge of my sanctuary when the people of Israel strayed from me — they will come near to me to serve me. They will stand before me to offer me the fat and the blood, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁶They will enter my sanctuary. They will approach my table to serve me, and they will keep my charge. ¹⁷When they enter the gates of the inner court, they must wear linen garments. No wool may be on them while they minister at the gates of the inner court and inside it. ¹⁸They are to wear linen turbans on their heads and linen undergarments on their waists. They must not wear anything that causes sweating. ¹⁹When they go out into the outer court — to the people — they must remove the garments in which they have been ministering and place them in the holy chambers. Then they must put on other clothes, so that they do not transmit holiness to the people through their garments. ²⁰They must not shave their heads or let their hair grow long. They are to keep their hair trimmed. ²¹No priest may drink wine when entering the inner court. ²²They must not marry a widow or a divorced woman. They may only marry virgins from the line of the house of Israel, or a widow of a priest. ²³They are to teach my people the difference between the holy and the common, and show them how to distinguish between the unclean and the clean. ²⁴In cases of dispute, they are to serve as judges and judge according to my ordinances. They are to observe my instructions and my statutes at all my appointed festivals and keep my Sabbaths holy. ²⁵A priest must not go near a dead person and become unclean — except for a father, a mother, a son, a daughter, a brother, or an unmarried sister. For these they may become unclean. ²⁶After his purification, seven days are to be counted for him. ²⁷On the day he enters the holy area — into the inner court to minister in the sanctuary — he must present his sin offering, declares the Lord GOD. ²⁸As for their inheritance — I am their inheritance. You are to give them no property in Israel; I am their property. ²⁹The grain offering, the sin offering, and the guilt offering — they may eat these. Everything devoted to God in Israel belongs to them. ³⁰The best of all the firstfruits of every kind, and every contribution of every kind from all your contributions, belong to the priests. You are also to give the priest the first portion of your dough, so that a blessing may rest on your household. ³¹The priests must not eat anything that has died naturally or has been torn by wild animals, whether bird or animal."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The guide figure returns Ezekiel to the east gate — the same gate through which the glory entered in 43:1-4. The simple declarative vehu sagur ('and it was shut') is understated yet momentous. The gate that opened for God's return is now sealed.
2. The threefold emphasis — sagur yihyeh ('shall be shut'), lo yipateh ('shall not be opened'), ve'ish lo yavo vo ('no one shall enter through it') — creates an absolute prohibition. The reason is theological, not architectural: God's passage through the gate has consecrated it beyond human use. The gate functions like the holy of holies — a space so charged with divine presence that ordinary access is permanently revoked.
2. In later Jewish tradition, the sealed east gate of the Temple Mount was associated with messianic expectation — the gate would remain shut until the Messiah's arrival. In Christian tradition, particularly in the Church Fathers (Ambrose, Jerome), the closed gate was read as a type of Mary's virginity. These interpretive traditions, while significant, are subsequent to the text's own concern: the finality of God's return.
3. The nasi ('prince') — Ezekiel's term for the leader of restored Israel — receives a special but limited privilege: he may sit in the gate vestibule to eat a sacred meal before the LORD, but he enters and exits through the vestibule, not through the gate itself. The gate passage remains sealed; the vestibule is the access point. Ezekiel consistently uses nasi rather than melek ('king') for the future leader, likely to distinguish the restored leader from the failed monarchy. The nasi has religious privileges but is not a priest; he has civil authority but is not called king.
3. The phrase le'ekhol lehem lifnei YHWH ('to eat bread before the LORD') describes a sacred meal — eating in God's presence, within the Temple precinct. This is a privilege of covenant fellowship, not mere sustenance.
4. Ezekiel approaches from the north gate since the east gate is now permanently sealed. The phrase male kavod YHWH et bet YHWH ('the glory of the LORD filled the Temple of the LORD') confirms the permanent indwelling announced in chapter 43. The prostration response va'epol el panai ('I fell on my face') marks this as a theophanic moment — Ezekiel's standard posture before the divine presence (1:28, 3:23, 9:8, 43:3).
5. The command sim libbeka ('set your heart, pay attention') appears twice, framing the instruction — emphatic divine insistence that Ezekiel absorb every detail. The triad of heart, eyes, and ears engages the prophet's full faculty: understanding, observation, and hearing. The phrase mevo habayit ('the entrance of the Temple') and motsa'ei hamiqdash ('the exits of the sanctuary') concern who may enter and who must leave — the access regulations that follow.
6. The address el meri ('to the rebellion/rebellious') echoes the designation bet meri ('rebellious house') used throughout the book since 2:5. The exclamation rav lakhem ('enough for you!') expresses divine exasperation — literally 'it is much for you,' meaning 'you have gone too far.' The word to'avot ('detestable practices, abominations') is Ezekiel's standard priestly term for acts that defile sacred space.
7. The double disqualification — arlei lev ('uncircumcised in heart') and arlei vasar ('uncircumcised in flesh') — combines metaphorical and literal circumcision. 'Uncircumcised in heart' echoes Deuteronomy 10:16 and Jeremiah 4:4, where it means spiritually unresponsive to God. 'Uncircumcised in flesh' is the physical condition. Both disqualify from sanctuary service.
7. The phrase lakhmi helev vadam ('my food — the fat and the blood') describes sacrificial offerings as God's food — ancient Near Eastern sacrificial language that the Israelite system adopted while transforming its meaning. God does not need food (Psalm 50:12-13), but the imagery frames sacrifice as a covenantal meal. The verb vayaferu ('they broke') uses the root p-r-r, meaning to annul, violate, or shatter a covenant — the strongest possible term for covenant violation.
8. The word mishmereth ('charge, guard duty, obligation') is priestly vocabulary for the sacred responsibility of maintaining the sanctuary. Israel delegated this duty to unauthorized persons — the foreigners of verse 7. The phrase lakhem ('for yourselves, on your behalf') indicates that this was self-serving: Israel outsourced sacred duties for their own convenience rather than performing them as their covenant obligation required.
9. This verse establishes an absolute exclusion of uncircumcised foreigners from the sanctuary. The double condition — uncircumcised in heart and in flesh — means that neither spiritual nor physical non-conformity to the covenant community is acceptable in sacred space.
9. This regulation stands in notable tension with Isaiah 56:3-7, where God explicitly welcomes foreigners who keep the Sabbath and hold fast to the covenant: 'Their burnt offerings and their sacrifices will be accepted on my altar, for my house will be called a house of prayer for all peoples.' Ezekiel's priestly perspective prioritizes holiness boundaries and the separation of sacred from common, while Isaiah's prophetic perspective envisions universal inclusion through covenant faithfulness. The Hebrew Bible preserves both voices without resolving the tension — a reminder that Scripture contains ongoing theological conversation, not a single monolithic position on every question.
10. The verb ta'u ('strayed, wandered') portrays idolatry as wandering away from God — a spatial metaphor for unfaithfulness. The word gilluleihem ('their idols') is Ezekiel's favorite contemptuous term for false gods — from a root meaning 'dung pellets' or 'shapeless blocks.' It appears approximately 39 times in Ezekiel, more than in all other biblical books combined. The phrase venase'u avonam ('they will bear their iniquity') is legal language: they will carry the consequences of their guilt.
11. The demoted Levites receive menial duties: gate-guarding, general Temple maintenance, and animal slaughter. Significantly, slaughtering the sacrificial animals is not an altar function — the actual offering of blood and fat on the altar is reserved for the Zadokite priests. The phrase ya'amdu lifneihem lesharetam ('stand before them to serve them') means they serve the people, not God — a deliberate contrast with the Zadokite priests who 'stand before me to serve me' (v. 15). The preposition determines the status: serving the people is honorable but subordinate to serving God directly.

12. The phrase *mikhshol avon* ('stumbling block of iniquity') is characteristic of Ezekiel (7:19, 14:3-4, 18:30) — the Levites' idolatrous service caused others to sin. God's raised hand (*nasati yadi*) is an oath gesture — he has sworn this judgment. The locked formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* is rendered 'declares the Lord GOD.'
13. The prohibition is precise: the demoted Levites cannot *lekahen li* ('serve as priest to me') or approach *qodshei haqqodashim* ('the most holy things'). The distinction between serving in the Temple (permitted, v. 11) and serving as priests to God (prohibited) is the core of the demotion. The word *kelimmatam* ('their disgrace, their shame') adds a psychological dimension to the punishment — they carry not only guilt but public dishonor.
14. The demoted Levites are formally assigned to Temple maintenance and general service — honorable work, but a permanent reduction from priestly status. The comprehensive phrase *lekhol avodato ulekhol asher ye'aseh bo* ('for all its service and for everything done in it') encompasses every non-altar function: gate-keeping, cleaning, preparation, crowd management, and animal slaughter.
15. The contrast with the demoted Levites is sharp: the Zadokites *shameru et mishmereth miqdashi* ('kept charge of my sanctuary') while others strayed. Their reward is direct divine service — *yiqrevu elai leshareteni* ('they will come near to me to serve me'). The phrase *ve'amdu lefanai* ('they will stand before me') is the posture of authorized presence — standing in God's presence is the highest priestly privilege. The fat (*helev*) and blood (*dam*) are the two elements of the sacrifice that belong exclusively to God (Leviticus 3:16-17, 7:22-27).
16. The 'table' (*shulhani*, 'my table') is the altar, described in 41:22 as 'the table that is before the LORD.' Calling the altar a table emphasizes the meal-fellowship aspect of sacrifice — God hosts a table, and the Zadokite priests are his authorized servants at that table. The threefold privilege — entering the sanctuary, approaching the table, keeping the charge — encompasses the full range of priestly function.
17. The linen requirement (*bigdei pishtim*) matches the high-priestly garments prescribed in Leviticus 16:4 for the Day of Atonement. Linen (*pishtim*) absorbs less sweat than wool (*tsemer*), and the practical rationale is given in verse 18 — the priestly garments must not cause sweating. The deeper logic may be that linen, a plant fiber, is 'cooler' in the purity system than wool, an animal product. The prohibition of mixed fabrics (*sha'atnez*, Leviticus 19:19, Deuteronomy 22:11) may underlie this: priestly garments must be pure, unmixed material.
18. The *pa'arei pishtim* ('linen turbans') are head coverings specific to priestly service. The *mikhnsei pishtim* ('linen undergarments') cover the lower body for modesty during altar service — the same garment prescribed in Exodus 28:42-43. The prohibition *lo yakhgeru bayyaza* ('they must not gird themselves with sweat,' or 'must not wear what causes sweat') has a practical and symbolic dimension: sweat represents bodily exertion and human effort, which must be absent from the presence of the holy God. Priestly service is performed in divine composure, not human labor.
19. The concept of holiness as transmittable through contact is central to priestly theology. The sacred garments, having been worn in God's presence, carry a charge of holiness that would be dangerous to ordinary people if touched (cf. Exodus 29:37, Leviticus 6:27). The phrase *velo yeqaddeshu et ha'am bebigdeihem* ('they must not sanctify the people with their garments') does not mean holiness is bad — it means uncontrolled holiness is dangerous. Holiness must be mediated through proper channels, not transmitted accidentally through clothing contact. This parallels the garment-changing regulation in Leviticus 16:23-24.
20. The regulation navigates between two extremes: shaving the head (associated with mourning rites and certain pagan practices, Leviticus 21:5) and letting hair grow wild (associated with the Nazirite vow, Numbers 6:5, or with neglect). The verb *kasom yikhsemu* ('they shall trim, they shall clip') describes a moderate, orderly haircut — the priestly ideal of controlled dignity between ascetic extremes.
21. The wine prohibition matches Leviticus 10:9, which was given immediately after Nadab and Abihu's death — suggesting that their unauthorized offering may have been connected to intoxication. The restriction is spatial and temporal: wine is prohibited when entering the inner court for service, not as a permanent Nazirite-style vow. Outside the inner court, priests may drink wine.
22. The marriage restrictions modify the Mosaic legislation in Leviticus 21:7, 13-14. In Leviticus, the ordinary priest may not marry a divorced woman or a prostitute but may marry a widow; only the high priest must marry a virgin. Ezekiel extends the virgin requirement to all Zadokite priests — a stricter standard — but adds the exception for a priest's widow, which does not appear in Leviticus. The underlying concern is priestly lineage purity: the priest's wife affects the status of his children.
23. This verse defines the priest's primary educational function: teaching the categories of *qodesh/hol* ('holy/common') and *tamei/tahor* ('unclean/clean'). These are not moral categories but ontological ones — they describe the status of persons, objects, and spaces in relation to God's presence. The verb *yoru* ('they shall teach') is from the same root as *torah* ('instruction') — the priests' teaching function is the origin of the word 'Torah.' This charge echoes Leviticus 10:10-11, given immediately after Nadab and Abihu's death.
24. The priests serve a judicial function — *al riv* ('in cases of dispute') they render verdicts according to divine *mishpatim* ('ordinances, judgments'). This judicial role for priests is attested in Deuteronomy 17:8-13 and 2 Chronicles 19:8-11. The phrase *bekhol mo'adai* ('at all my appointed festivals') covers the festival calendar (Passover, Weeks, Tabernacles, etc.). The Sabbath-keeping obligation (*et shabbotai yeqaddeshu*, 'they shall keep my Sabbaths holy') emphasizes the priest's role as guardian of sacred time as well as sacred space.
25. Corpse defilement (*tumat met*) is the most severe form of ritual impurity in the priestly system (Numbers 19:11-22). The exceptions for immediate family match Leviticus 21:1-3 almost exactly. The restriction to an unmarried sister (*ahot asher lo hayetah le'ish*, 'a sister who has not belonged to a man') reflects the legal principle that a married sister belongs to her husband's family and is his responsibility. Notably, a wife is not listed among the exceptions — this omission is debated; some scholars argue she is implicitly included, while others see it as a stricter standard.
26. The seven-day waiting period after purification from corpse defilement parallels Numbers 19:11-12. The priest does not return to service immediately upon purification — an additional seven days must pass, creating a buffer between impurity and sacred service.

27. The returning priest must offer a sin offering (*hattat*) before resuming service — the defilement from corpse contact, even when permitted for family, requires atonement before re-entering sacred space. This is an additional requirement beyond the Levitical legislation, where no sin offering is specified for the priest's return from family mourning.
28. The declaration *ani nahalatam* ('I am their inheritance') is one of the most striking statements about the priestly vocation in the Hebrew Bible. Where other tribes receive land, the priests receive God himself. This directly quotes Numbers 18:20 ('I am your portion and your inheritance among the people of Israel') and Deuteronomy 10:9. The parallel between *nahalah* ('inheritance') and *ahuzzah* ('property, holding') reinforces the point: the priests have no territorial inheritance because God — the source of all land — is their portion. The theological implication is that proximity to God is greater wealth than any territory.
29. The priests' sustenance comes from the sacrificial system: the *minhah* ('grain offering'), *hattat* ('sin offering'), and *asham* ('guilt offering') all have priestly portions. The *herem* ('devoted thing') is anything irrevocably dedicated to God — it cannot be redeemed or sold (Leviticus 27:28-29). This provision replaces territorial inheritance with sacrificial income, matching Numbers 18:8-20.
30. The *reshit* ('first, best, choicest') of the *bikkurim* ('firstfruits') establishes the principle that the first and best of every harvest goes to the priests. The *terumah* ('contribution, offering raised up') is the general term for gifts lifted up and set apart for God. The *arist* ('coarse meal, dough') provision matches Numbers 15:20-21 — the first batch of dough from each household goes to the priest. The promised result — *lehaniah berakhah el beitekha* ('to cause a blessing to rest on your household') — connects priestly provision to divine blessing: supporting the priests brings God's favor upon the giver.
31. The *nevelah* ('carcass, animal that died on its own') and *terefah* ('torn, killed by predators') are the two primary categories of meat prohibited to all Israelites (Leviticus 17:15, Deuteronomy 14:21). The repetition here for priests specifically may emphasize that while ordinary Israelites incur temporary impurity from eating such meat, priests must avoid it entirely given their proximity to sacred space. The closing verse addresses the most basic biological need — eating — and places it under divine regulation, underscoring that every aspect of the priestly life is governed by the holy/common distinction.

45

Summary: *Ezekiel 45 transitions from priestly regulations to the land and civic order of restored Israel. The chapter opens with the division of a sacred district (terumah) from the land — a rectangular zone set apart for the sanctuary, the priests, the Levites, and the city. The prince (nasi) receives land flanking the sacred district on both sides. God then addresses the princes directly with a rebuke: 'Enough, princes of Israel! Put away violence and oppression, and practice justice and righteousness. Stop dispossessing my people!' The chapter prescribes just weights and measures — the ephah, the bath, the homer, and the shekel — establishing economic fairness as a condition of the restored order. It concludes with the prince's obligation to provide offerings for the festivals, including detailed prescriptions for Passover and the Festival of Booths.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reveals Ezekiel's vision of a society where sacred geography, economic justice, and liturgical order are inseparable. The sacred district is not merely a Temple compound but a territorial expression of holiness — the land itself is organized around the presence of God. The rebuke of the princes in verses 9-12 is striking: even in the visionary new order, Ezekiel warns against the same abuses that characterized the pre-exilic monarchy. Just weights and measures (vv. 10-12) may seem pedestrian alongside Temple visions, but for the priestly mind they are essential — economic dishonesty defiles the land as surely as idolatry does (cf. Amos 8:5, Micah 6:10-11). The Passover regulations in verses 21-25 differ from the Mosaic legislation in notable ways: seven bulls and seven rams rather than one lamb per household, and the prince rather than each family head is responsible for providing the sacrifices.*

Translation Friction: *The measurements of the sacred district present a textual difficulty: verse 1 gives the length as 25,000 cubits (using the long cubit) and the width as 10,000 cubits, but verse 3 specifies a measured-off portion of 25,000 by 10,000 for the sanctuary area alone. The relationship between these overlapping zones required careful tracking. The shekel value in verse 12 — 'twenty gerahs make a shekel; twenty shekels, twenty-five shekels, and fifteen shekels make a mina' — is arithmetically puzzling (20+25+15=60 gerahs per mina is standard, but the presentation is unusual). Some scholars emend the text; we preserved the MT reading with a note. The word *terumah* ('contribution, offering, portion set apart') is rendered 'sacred portion' when referring to the land district, distinguishing it from its use for sacrificial contributions.*

Connections: The sacred district anticipates the full land allotment in chapter 48. The rebuke of the princes connects to chapter 34's indictment of the shepherds/rulers. The just-weights requirement echoes Leviticus 19:35-36, Deuteronomy 25:13-16, and the prophetic denunciations of Amos 8:5 and Micah 6:10-11. The Passover regulations relate to Exodus 12 and Numbers 28:16-25 but with significant modifications. The prince's role as liturgical provider connects to 44:3 and anticipates 46:1-18. The overall structure — sacred space at the center, civil authority flanking it, economic justice undergirding it — presents Ezekiel's vision of a theocentric society where every dimension of life radiates outward from God's dwelling.

¹"When you divide the land as an inheritance, you are to set apart a sacred portion for the LORD — a holy section of the land. Its length is to be twenty-five thousand cubits and its width ten thousand. It will be holy throughout its entire boundary. ²Of this, a square section of five hundred by five hundred cubits is for the sanctuary, with an open space of fifty cubits around it on every side. ³From this area you are to measure off a section twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand wide. In it will be the sanctuary — the most holy place. ⁴This holy section of the land is for the priests who minister in the sanctuary — those who draw near to serve the LORD. It will be a place for their houses and a sacred area for the sanctuary. ⁵An area twenty-five thousand cubits long and ten thousand wide is for the Levites who serve in the Temple — it is their property, with twenty chambers. ⁶You are to assign the city's property as a strip five thousand cubits wide and twenty-five thousand long, alongside the sacred portion. It belongs to the whole house of Israel. ⁷The prince will have land on both sides of the sacred portion and the city property — to the west of the sacred portion extending westward and to the east of it extending eastward. Its length corresponds to one of the tribal portions, from the western boundary to the eastern boundary. ⁸This land will be his property in Israel, and my princes will no longer oppress my people. They will give the rest of the land to the house of Israel, tribe by tribe. ⁹This is what the Lord GOD says: Enough, princes of Israel! Put away violence and destruction. Practice justice and righteousness. Stop your evictions of my people, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁰You are to have honest scales, an honest ephah, and an honest bath. ¹¹The ephah and the bath are to be of equal volume. The bath is to contain one-tenth of a homer, and the ephah one-tenth of a homer. The homer is to be the standard of measurement. ¹²The shekel is twenty gerahs. Twenty shekels, twenty-five shekels, and fifteen shekels make your mina. ¹³This is the contribution you are to set apart: one-sixth of an ephah from each homer of wheat, and one-sixth of an ephah from each homer of barley. ¹⁴The prescribed portion of oil is one-tenth of a bath from each kor. Ten baths make a homer, and a kor equals a homer. ¹⁵On e sheep from each flock of two hundred from the well-watered pastures of Israel — for grain offerings, for burnt offerings, and for fellowship offerings, to make atonement for them, declares the Lord GOD. ¹⁶All the people of the land are obligated to provide this contribution to the prince in Israel. ¹⁷The prince is responsible for the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the drink offerings at the festivals, the new moons, and the Sabbaths — at all the appointed feasts of the house of Israel. He is to provide the sin offering, the grain offering, the burnt offering, and the fellowship offerings to make atonement on behalf of the house of Israel. ¹⁸This is what the Lord GOD says: In the first month, on the first day of the month, you are to take a young bull without defect and purify the sanctuary. ¹⁹The priest is to take some of the blood of the sin offering and apply it to the doorposts of the Temple, to the four corners of the altar ledge, and to the doorposts of the gate of the inner court. ²⁰You are to do the same on the seventh day of the month for anyone who sins unintentionally or through ignorance. In this way you will make atonement for the Temple. ²¹In the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month, you are to observe the Passover — a festival of seven days during which unleavened bread is to be eaten. ²²On that day the prince is to provide a bull as a sin offering — for himself and for all the people of the land. ²³For the seven days of the festival, he is to provide a burnt offering to the LORD: seven bulls and seven rams without defect each day for seven days, and a male goat each day as a sin offering. ²⁴He is to provide a grain offering of one ephah per bull and one ephah per ram, with a hin of oil per ephah. ²⁵In the seventh month, on the fifteenth day of the month, at the festival, he is to provide the same for seven days — the same sin offerings, burnt offerings, grain offerings, and oil."

1. The *terumah* ('contribution, offering raised up') here refers to a territorial allotment set apart for sacred purposes — a district of land consecrated to the LORD before the tribal allotments are distributed. The dimensions — 25,000 by 10,000 long cubits — create a rectangle of approximately 8.5 by 3.4 miles (13.7 by 5.5 km). The word *qodesh* ('holy') is applied to the land itself, not merely to buildings on it — the soil is consecrated.
1. The KJV adds 'reeds' as the unit of measurement, but the Hebrew simply gives numbers without a unit. Most scholars supply 'cubits' based on context and the measurement system used throughout the Temple vision (the long cubit of 40:5). We follow this reading.
2. The sanctuary itself occupies a square of 500 by 500 cubits — approximately 850 by 850 feet (260 by 260 meters). The *migrash* ('open space, pastureland, buffer zone') of fifty cubits around it creates a separation zone between the sanctuary and everything else — a physical expression of the holiness gradient. This matches the Temple compound measurements given in 42:15-20.
3. This measured section (25,000 by 10,000) constitutes the priestly zone within the larger sacred district. The designation *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy') for this entire area — not just the inner sanctum of the Temple — continues the pattern from 43:12, where the whole mountaintop is designated most holy. The sanctuary (*miqdash*) sits within this zone as its focal point.
4. The priestly zone serves a dual function: residential space for the priests (*maqom lebattim*, 'a place for houses') and sacred space for the sanctuary (*miqdash lammiqdash*, 'a holy place for the sanctuary'). The priests live within the sacred district, adjacent to the sanctuary — their daily existence is literally embedded in holy ground. The phrase *haqqerevim lesharet et YHWH* ('those who draw near to serve the LORD') repeats the Zadokite authorization language from 43:19 and 44:15.
5. The Levites — the demoted priestly class from 44:10-14 — receive their own zone of equal dimensions to the priestly zone but separate from it. The 'twenty chambers' (*esrim leshakhot*) likely refers to residential or service buildings within the Levitical zone. Some manuscripts and versions read 'cities' (*arim*) instead of 'chambers' (*leshakhot*), which would align with the Levitical cities tradition of Numbers 35:1-8. The word *ahuzzah* ('property, holding') echoes the land-tenure vocabulary used throughout the allotment.
6. The city zone — five thousand cubits wide and twenty-five thousand long — runs parallel to the sacred district. Unlike the priestly and Levitical zones, which belong to specific groups, the city zone *lekhol bet Yisrael yihyeh* ('belongs to the whole house of Israel'). This is the common, civic space — the city where ordinary Israelites live and conduct their affairs, positioned adjacent to but distinct from the sacred zone. The total sacred district plus city zone creates a three-banded layout: priests, Levites, and city, all running east-west.
7. The prince's land flanks the sacred district on both sides — east and west — extending from the sacred zone to the territorial boundaries of the land. This arrangement is deliberately designed to prevent the abuses of the pre-exilic monarchy: the prince has generous land but cannot encroach on the sacred district or on the tribal allotments. His territory is defined and bounded, unlike the historical kings who seized land at will (cf. 1 Kings 21, Naboth's vineyard).
8. The prohibition *velo yonu od nesi'ai et ammi* ('my princes will no longer oppress my people') uses the verb *yanah* ('to oppress, to mistreat, to defraud') — a term associated with economic exploitation and land seizure. This is not merely a prediction but a command embedded in the land distribution: the princes' defined territory eliminates the mechanism of royal land-grabbing that plagued pre-exilic Israel. The phrase *leshivteihem* ('according to their tribes') confirms the traditional tribal allotment system as the basis of land distribution.
9. The exclamation *rav lakhem* ('enough for you!') echoes 44:6, where the same phrase rebuked Israel's detestable practices. Here it targets the princes' specific abuse: *hamas* ('violence') and *shod* ('destruction, plunder'). The word *gerushoteikhem* ('your evictions, your disposessions') from the root *g-r-sh* ('to drive out, to expel') refers to the practice of rulers forcing people off their ancestral land — the very abuse Naboth suffered at Ahab's hands (1 Kings 21).
10. The triad of *mo'znei tsedeq* ('just scales'), *eiphat tsedeq* ('just ephah'), and *bat tsedeq* ('just bath') covers the full range of commercial measurement: scales for weight, the ephah for dry goods, the bath for liquids. The word *tsedeq* ('just, righteous, honest') applied to measuring instruments connects economic honesty directly to the theological concept of righteousness. A false scale is not merely dishonest — it is unrighteous, a violation of the cosmic order God established. This echoes Leviticus 19:35-36 and Deuteronomy 25:13-16.
11. The equivalence established here: 1 homer = 10 ephahs = 10 baths. The homer (approximately 220 liters / 6.25 bushels) is the largest standard unit. The ephah (dry) and bath (liquid) are identical in volume — approximately 22 liters / 5.8 gallons each. Setting the homer as the reference standard (*el hahomer yihyeh matkuneto*, 'the homer shall be its standard') prevents local variation in measurement — a common form of economic fraud in the ancient Near East.
12. The shekel-to-gerah ratio (1 shekel = 20 gerahs) matches Exodus 30:13 and Leviticus 27:25. The mina (*maneh*) calculation is unusual: 20 + 25 + 15 = 60 shekels per mina. The standard Mesopotamian mina was 60 shekels, so the total is correct, but the three-part breakdown is puzzling. Some scholars suggest it reflects three different weight standards being harmonized, or three marked weights that together make a mina. The Septuagint reads 'fifty shekels make your mina,' which is a different standard. We preserve the Masoretic reading and note the difficulty.
12. A shekel weighs approximately 11.5 grams (0.4 ounces). A gerah is approximately 0.57 grams. A mina at 60 shekels is approximately 690 grams (1.5 pounds).
13. The *terumah* ('contribution') is a proportional tax on agricultural produce: one-sixth of an ephah per homer, which equals 1/60th of the harvest (since 1 homer = 10 ephahs, and 1/6 of an ephah out of 10 ephahs = approximately 1.67%). This is a modest levy compared to later rabbinic tithing requirements. Both wheat (*hittim*) and barley (*se'orim*) are specified — the two primary grain crops of ancient Israel.

14. The oil levy is 1/10 of a bath per kor (homer), which is 1/100th of the total oil production — an even more modest levy than the grain contribution. The kor (also written 'cor') is identified as equivalent to the homer — ten baths. The parenthetical clarification 'ten baths make a homer; a kor equals a homer' ensures no ambiguity in the measurement standard.
15. The livestock levy is 1 sheep per 200 — a 0.5% rate. The phrase mimashqeh Yisrael ('from the well-watered pastures of Israel') specifies that only healthy, well-fed animals from good pasture qualify for sacrifice — no sickly or malnourished animals. The three offering categories — minhah ('grain offering'), olah ('burnt offering'), and shelamim ('fellowship offerings') — cover the full range of sacrificial worship. The purpose lekhafter aleihem ('to make atonement for them') ties economic contribution to spiritual reconciliation.
16. The contribution (terumah) flows from the people to the prince, who then bears responsibility for the public offerings. This creates a two-stage system: the people provide the raw materials (grain, oil, livestock), and the prince administers their use for worship. The nasi functions as a liturgical intermediary between the people and the priesthood — he does not sacrifice (that is priestly work) but he funds the sacrificial system.
17. The prince's liturgical responsibility is comprehensive: he provides the offerings for every regular occasion — festivals (haggim), new moons (hodashim), Sabbaths (shabbatot), and all appointed times (mo'adim). The verb ya'aseh ('he shall do, prepare, provide') means the prince is responsible for procuring and presenting the offerings, though the actual altar service remains the priests' function. The final clause lekhafter be'ad bet Yisrael ('to make atonement on behalf of the house of Israel') gives the prince a quasi-priestly mediatorial role — he atones for the nation through provision, not through priestly sacrifice.
18. The annual purification of the sanctuary begins on the first day of the first month (Nisan/Aviv) — New Year's Day in the religious calendar. The verb chitteta ('purify, de-sin') is the same used for the altar consecration in 43:20. The sanctuary requires annual cleansing because accumulated impurities from the community's sins throughout the year contaminate sacred space — the same logic that drives the Day of Atonement ritual in Leviticus 16.
19. Blood is applied to three locations: the Temple doorposts (mezuzat habayit), the four corners of the altar ledge (arba pinnot ha'azarah), and the inner court gate doorposts (mezuzat sha'ar hehatser happenimit). These three points trace the path from the sanctuary outward through the altar court to the inner gate — a line of purification that cleanses the entire sacred zone. The application of blood to doorposts echoes the original Passover (Exodus 12:7, 22), where blood on the doorpost marked the threshold between death and life.
20. The purification is repeated on the seventh of the month — a provision not found in the Mosaic legislation. The two categories of sin covered — shogeh ('one who errs, sins unintentionally') and peti ('simple, naive, ignorant') — refer to sins committed without malicious intent. The verb kipper ('make atonement') is applied to the Temple itself (et habayit, 'the Temple') — the building absorbs the impurity of the community's sins and must be periodically cleansed. This concept of the sanctuary as a repository of communal sin underlies the entire sacrificial system.
21. The Passover date — the fourteenth of the first month — matches the Mosaic legislation (Exodus 12:6, Leviticus 23:5, Numbers 28:16). The phrase hag shevuot yamim ('a festival of weeks of days,' i.e., 'a seven-day festival') refers to the combined Passover/Unleavened Bread observance. In the Pentateuch, Passover proper (14th Nisan) is technically distinct from the Festival of Unleavened Bread (15th-21st), but they are treated as a single observance in common practice and here.
22. The prince's Passover sin offering — a bull — differs from the Mosaic Passover, where each household provides a lamb (Exodus 12:3-4). Ezekiel's system centralizes the sin offering under the prince's responsibility. The phrase ba'ado uve'ad kol am ha'arets ('for himself and for all the people of the land') echoes the high priest's Day of Atonement role in Leviticus 16:17, where the high priest atones 'for himself and for his household and for the whole assembly of Israel.' The prince here assumes a function that was previously the high priest's prerogative.
23. The scale of the offerings is enormous: seven bulls and seven rams daily for seven days equals 49 bulls and 49 rams, plus seven goats for sin offerings — 105 animals total for the Passover festival. This far exceeds the Numbers 28:19-24 Passover prescription (two bulls, one ram, seven lambs daily). The escalation reflects the grandeur of the restored Temple and the prince's wealth. The requirement of tamimim ('without defect') for every animal maintains the unblemished standard of Leviticus 22:17-25.
24. The grain offering accompaniment: one ephah (approximately 22 liters / 5.8 gallons of grain) per large animal, and one hin (approximately 3.7 liters / 1 gallon) of oil per ephah of grain. The oil is mixed with the grain to form the minhah. The proportions here match 46:5, 7 and establish a consistent ratio throughout Ezekiel's festival legislation.
25. The 'festival' (hag) on the fifteenth of the seventh month is the Festival of Booths/Tabernacles (Sukkot, Leviticus 23:34). The prescription ka'elleh ('like these') means the Sukkot offerings match the Passover offerings exactly — seven bulls, seven rams, and a goat daily for seven days, with corresponding grain offerings and oil. This parity between the two major festivals is distinctive to Ezekiel's system; in Numbers 29:12-38, the Sukkot offerings follow a different, decreasing pattern (13 bulls on day one, 12 on day two, etc.).
25. Notably, neither the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur, 10th of the seventh month) nor the Festival of Weeks (Shavuot) is mentioned in Ezekiel's festival calendar. Whether this represents an intentional modification or an incomplete list is debated.

46

Summary: *Ezekiel 46 continues the ordinances for worship in the restored Temple, focusing on the prince's role in Sabbath and new moon offerings, the movement of worshipers through the Temple gates, the prince's inheritance laws protecting the people's land, and the Temple kitchens where sacrificial meals are prepared. The chapter bridges liturgical regulation and social justice — the prince leads worship but is explicitly forbidden from seizing the people's ancestral land.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reveals Ezekiel's vision of a ruler fundamentally different from the kings who led Judah to ruin. The nasi ('prince') is a liturgical figure, not an absolute monarch — he enters by the vestibule of the east gate but does not pass through it (that gate is reserved for the LORD alone, 44:1-3). The land inheritance laws in verses 16-18 are a direct corrective to the abuses of Israelite kings: Ahab's seizure of Naboth's vineyard (1 Kings 21), Solomon's forced labor, and the royal land-grabs that the pre-exilic prophets condemned. The prince may give land to his sons as permanent inheritance, but any gift to a servant reverts in the year of liberty — and he may never dispossess the people. We rendered the architectural and directional language with precision, following Ezekiel's priestly concern for exact spatial orientation within the sacred precincts.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the nasi ('prince') is debated — is this a future Davidic king, a governor, or an idealized priestly-political figure? Ezekiel deliberately avoids the title melekh ('king') for this ruler, using nasi throughout chapters 44-48. We rendered it consistently as 'prince' and noted the distinction. The phrase shenat ha-deror ('year of liberty,' v. 17) appears to reference the Jubilee of Leviticus 25, though the exact mechanism differs. The cooking areas described in verses 19-24 present some textual difficulties — the Hebrew shifts abruptly from liturgical ordinance to architectural description.*

Connections: *The Sabbath and new moon offerings connect to Numbers 28:9-15. The prince's gate regulations continue from 44:1-3 and 45:17. The land inheritance laws echo Leviticus 25 (Jubilee), Numbers 36 (tribal land preservation), and respond to the prophetic condemnations of land seizure in Isaiah 5:8, Micah 2:1-2, and 1 Kings 21 (Naboth's vineyard). The year of liberty (deror) connects to Leviticus 25:10, which is inscribed on the American Liberty Bell. The Temple kitchens anticipate the communal meals of covenant fellowship.*

¹This is what the Lord GOD says: The gate of the inner court that faces east shall be shut during the six working days, but on the Sabbath day it shall be opened, and on the day of the new moon it shall be opened. ²The prince shall enter by way of the vestibule of the gate from outside and stand by the doorpost of the gate. The priests shall prepare his burnt offering and his fellowship offerings, and he shall bow down in worship at the threshold of the gate. Then he shall go out, but the gate shall not be shut until evening. ³The people of the land shall also bow down in worship at the entrance of that gate before the LORD on the Sabbaths and on the new moons. ⁴The burnt offering that the prince shall present to the LORD on the Sabbath day shall be six lambs without defect and a ram without defect. ⁵The grain offering shall be an ephah for the ram, and for the lambs the grain offering shall be what his hand can give, with a hin of oil per ephah. ⁶On the day of the new moon, the offering shall be a young bull without defect, six lambs, and a ram — they shall be without defect. ⁷He shall prepare as a grain offering an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and for the lambs whatever his hand can afford, with a hin of oil per ephah. ⁸When the prince enters, he shall come in by way of the vestibule of the gate, and he shall go out by the same way. ⁹When the people of the land come before the LORD at the appointed festivals, whoever enters by the north gate to worship shall go out by the south gate, and whoever enters by the south gate shall go out by the north gate. No one shall return by the gate through which he entered, but shall go out straight ahead. ¹⁰The prince shall be among them — when they enter, he enters; when they go out, he goes out. ¹¹At the festivals and the appointed times, the grain offering shall be an ephah for the bull and an ephah for the ram, and for the lambs whatever his hand can give, with a hin of oil per ephah. ¹²When the prince makes a freewill offering — a burnt offering or fellowship offerings as a voluntary gift to the LORD — the gate facing east shall be opened for him. He shall prepare his burnt offering and his fellowship offerings as he does on the Sabbath day. Then he shall go out, and after he goes out the gate shall be shut. ¹³You shall prepare a year-old lamb without defect as a daily

burnt offering to the LORD; morning by morning you shall prepare it. ¹⁴You shall prepare a grain offering with it morning by morning — a sixth of an ephah and a third of a hin of oil to moisten the fine flour — a grain offering to the LORD as a permanent statute, continually. ¹⁵They shall prepare the lamb, the grain offering, and the oil morning by morning as a continual burnt offering. ¹⁶This is what the Lord GOD says: If the prince gives a gift to any of his sons, it is their inheritance — it shall belong to his sons as their permanent possession by inheritance. ¹⁷But if he gives a gift from his inheritance to one of his servants, it shall belong to that servant only until the year of liberty, when it shall revert to the prince. His inheritance belongs only to his sons. ¹⁸The prince shall not take any of the people's inheritance, dispossessing them from their holdings. He shall give his sons their inheritance from his own holdings, so that none of my people will be driven from their property. ¹⁹Then he brought me through the entrance beside the gate into the holy chambers belonging to the priests, which faced north. And there I saw a place at the far western end. ²⁰He said to me, "This is the place where the priests shall boil the guilt offering and the sin offering, and where they shall bake the grain offering — so that they do not bring them out into the outer court and transmit holiness to the people." ²¹Then he brought me out into the outer court and led me around to the four corners of the court. And there in each corner of the court was an enclosed courtyard. ²²In the four corners of the court were enclosed courtyards, forty cubits long and thirty cubits wide — all four were the same size. ²³A ledge of stone ran around the inside of all four courtyards, and cooking hearths were built beneath the ledges all around. ²⁴He said to me, "These are the kitchens where the ministers of the Temple shall boil the sacrifices of the people."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The east-facing gate of the inner court is distinct from the outer east gate that remains permanently shut (44:1-2). This inner gate opens only on Sabbaths and new moons — the rhythm of sacred time governs the architecture. The Hebrew *maaseh* ('work') in 'six working days' is the same word used in the creation narrative for God's 'work' of creating.
2. The *nasi* ('prince') enters through the vestibule but does not pass through the gate itself — he worships at the threshold. This spatial limitation distinguishes the prince from both the priests (who enter the inner court) and from the LORD (whose glory entered through the east gate). The Hebrew *shelamav* ('his peace offerings') is rendered 'fellowship offerings' because the *shelamim* were shared meals — part consumed on the altar, part eaten by the worshiper — making them acts of communion rather than merely 'peace.'
3. The 'people of the land' (*am ha-arets*) worship at the entrance, not the threshold — even further from the inner court than the prince. The concentric zones of holiness are visible in who may stand where: priests inside, prince at the threshold, people at the entrance.
4. The Sabbath offering here is significantly larger than the Sabbath offering prescribed in Numbers 28:9 (two lambs). Ezekiel's restored worship envisions greater abundance — the eschatological Temple demands more lavish offerings. The word *tamim* ('without defect, whole, complete') indicates physical perfection required for sacrificial animals.
5. The Hebrew *mattat yado* ('gift of his hand') indicates a voluntary amount — the lambs' grain offering is not fixed but proportional to the prince's generosity. An ephah is approximately 22 liters (about 3/5 of a bushel), and a hin is approximately 6 liters. The KJV renders *minchah* as 'meat offering,' but the Hebrew term specifically denotes a grain offering — flour mixed with oil.
6. The new moon offering adds a bull to the Sabbath requirements, making it a more substantial offering. The new moon (*rosh chodesh*) was an important marker in the Israelite calendar, and Ezekiel's vision maintains its liturgical significance. The repetition of *temimim* ('without defect') emphasizes the absolute requirement of unblemished animals.
7. The phrase *ka'asher tassig yado* ('as his hand can reach/attain') is a standard Hebrew idiom for 'according to his means' — the same expression used in Leviticus 14:21-22 for poverty provisions. Even the prince's offering for the lambs is scaled to capacity, introducing a principle of proportional giving into the liturgy.
8. The prince enters and exits by the same route — through the vestibule of the east gate. This contrasts with the rule for the general worshipers in the following verses, who must exit by a different gate than the one they entered.
9. The one-way flow of worshipers through the Temple creates an ordered, processional movement — entering on one side and exiting on the opposite. The Hebrew *nikhcho* ('straight ahead, opposite') indicates forward movement, preventing any backtracking. The practical effect is crowd control in a sacred context, but the theological symbolism is also present: encounter with God changes your direction. The term *mo'adim* ('appointed times, festivals') designates the major pilgrimage festivals.
10. The prince does not process separately from the people during the festivals. He enters and exits with them, embedded in the worshiping community rather than elevated above it. This is a striking vision of leadership: the prince is 'among them' (*betokham*), not ahead of them or apart from them.
11. This verse repeats the proportions from verse 7, extending them to all festivals and appointed times. The repetition ensures consistency across the entire liturgical calendar — the same offering ratios apply whether at Sabbath, new moon, or pilgrimage festival.

12. The nedavah ('freewill offering') is distinct from the obligatory Sabbath and new moon offerings. When the prince voluntarily offers, the east gate is specially opened for him — but unlike the Sabbath, the gate is closed immediately after his departure rather than remaining open until evening. This distinguishes voluntary worship from the communal Sabbath opening.
13. The daily offering (tamid) in Ezekiel's Temple requires only one lamb in the morning, whereas Numbers 28:3-4 prescribes two lambs — one morning and one evening. This difference is not explained. Some scholars suggest Ezekiel is streamlining the daily offering; others see it as evidence that Ezekiel's Temple vision represents an independent priestly tradition.
14. The verb *laros* ('to moisten, to sprinkle') describes mixing the oil into the flour. The proportions are precisely specified: one-sixth ephah (approximately 3.7 liters of flour) and one-third hin (approximately 2 liters of oil). The phrase *chuqqot olam tamid* ('perpetual statutes, continually') stacks three terms of permanence — this offering is meant to endure without interruption.
15. The shift from 'you' (singular) in verses 13-14 to 'they' in verse 15 likely indicates that the priests carry out the daily offering. The tamid ('continual') offering is the heartbeat of Temple worship — the one sacrifice that never ceases, marking every day as belonging to the LORD.
16. The section shifts from liturgical regulation to land law. The prince may transfer land to his sons permanently because such transfers keep the land within the family — the ancestral *nachalah* ('inheritance') remains intact. The word *achuzzah* ('holding, possession') denotes permanent, hereditary land ownership.
17. The *shenat ha-deror* ('year of liberty/release') corresponds to the Jubilee year of Leviticus 25, though Ezekiel does not specify the fifty-year cycle. The word *deror* appears in Leviticus 25:10 ('proclaim liberty throughout the land') and in Isaiah 61:1 ('to proclaim liberty to the captives'). The rule ensures that the prince's generosity to servants cannot permanently alienate family land from his sons.
18. The verb *honot* (from *yanah*, 'to oppress, to defraud') is a strong term — it implies not merely taking but taking by abuse of power. The phrase 'so that none of my people will be driven from their property' reveals God's perspective: the people's land is God's concern, and the prince is accountable to God for protecting it. This is one of the clearest limits on royal power in the prophetic literature.
19. The guided tour resumes — the angelic guide leads Ezekiel to the priests' chambers on the north side. The Hebrew *yarkathayim yammah* ('at the two far sides, westward') indicates the western extremity of these chambers. The text shifts from prescriptive law back to visionary narrative.
20. The purpose of containing the sacrificial preparation within the priests' area is to prevent the 'contagion' of holiness — *leqaddesh et ha'am* ('to sanctify the people') here means to inadvertently transfer dangerous holiness to unprepared persons. In Ezekiel's priestly worldview, holiness is not merely a moral quality but a potent force that must be carefully contained and managed (cf. 44:19). The *asham* ('guilt offering') and *chattat* ('sin offering') are the most intensely holy sacrifices.
21. The tour moves from the inner priestly area to the outer court. The Hebrew repeats *chatzer bemiktzo'a hechatzer* ('a court in the corner of the court') twice to emphasize the symmetry — identical courtyards in all four corners. These smaller courtyards serve the function described in the following verses.
22. The dimensions are forty by thirty cubits (approximately 20 by 15 meters or 66 by 50 feet). The Hebrew *qeturot* is difficult — it may mean 'enclosed' or 'cornered' or 'roofed.' The Septuagint translates it differently. The uniformity of dimensions (*middah achat*, 'one measure') reflects Ezekiel's insistence on symmetry and order in sacred architecture. The word *mehuqtza'ot* ('cornered, set at angles') reinforces the precise angular construction.
23. The Hebrew *tur* ('row, ledge, course of stones') describes a stone shelf or bench running along the interior walls. The *mebashelot* ('boiling places, cooking stations') were built into or beneath these ledges — a practical arrangement for large-scale food preparation. The repetition of *saviv* ('all around') emphasizes that every wall had these cooking stations.
24. The chapter ends with a remarkably domestic detail — Temple kitchens. The *mesharetei habayit* ('ministers of the house') are the Levitical servants who handle the less-holy sacrifices (as distinct from the Zadokite priests who handle the most holy offerings). The *zevach ha'am* ('sacrifice of the people') refers to the fellowship offerings and other sacrifices whose meat is eaten by the worshipers. These kitchens in the outer court are distinct from the priestly cooking area described in verses 19-20 — the separation maintains the holiness gradient between inner and outer precincts.

47

Summary: Ezekiel 47 divides into two distinct sections. The first (vv. 1-12) is one of the most extraordinary visions in the Hebrew Bible: water flows from beneath the threshold of the Temple, eastward, becoming a river that deepens from ankle-deep to knee-deep to waist-deep to an uncrossable torrent. Wherever this river flows, everything lives — even the Dead Sea is healed, its waters becoming fresh, teeming with fish. Trees line both banks, bearing fruit every month, their leaves for healing. The second section (vv. 13-23) maps the boundaries of the restored land and establishes that foreigners who settle among Israel shall receive an inheritance alongside the native-born tribes.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The river from the Temple is the climactic image of Ezekiel's entire restoration vision. The glory of the LORD returned to the Temple in chapter 43; now the Temple pours out life to the world. The progression of depth — ankles, knees, waist, then uncrossable — is measured by the prophet's own body as he wades in, making the vision viscerally physical. The healing of the Dead Sea is an eschatological reversal of the most extreme kind: the lowest, most lifeless body of water on earth becomes a freshwater fishery like the Great Sea (the Mediterranean). The trees on the river's banks — with fruit every month and leaves for healing — reappear almost verbatim in Revelation 22:1-2, where the river of life flows from the throne of God and of the Lamb, and the tree of life bears twelve kinds of fruit with leaves 'for the healing of the nations.' John's apocalyptic vision draws directly from Ezekiel's Temple river. We gave full expanded rendering treatment to the river passage, because it carries the weight of the entire book's theological trajectory: from judgment to glory's departure to glory's return to life-giving water flowing from the place where God dwells. The land boundary section, while more prosaic, also carries a remarkable provision: resident foreigners shall have inheritance in the land (v. 22-23), a vision of inclusion that echoes Isaiah 56:3-7 and stands in some tension with the exclusion of uncircumcised foreigners from the Temple in 44:9.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew in verse 1 is textually difficult — the water flows 'from under the threshold of the Temple toward the east, for the face of the Temple was east.' The spatial description requires careful parsing. The phrase mayim mefakkeim ('waters of healing' or 'waters that become fresh') in verse 8 uses a rare form of the verb rapha — we rendered it 'healed' in the sense of made wholesome and life-sustaining. The boundary descriptions in verses 13-20 reference ancient place names, several of which are uncertain — we provided the traditional identifications while noting the uncertainty. The provision for foreigners in verses 22-23 uses the term ger ('resident alien'), which must be distinguished from nokhri ('foreigner, stranger') — the ger is integrated into the community.*

Connections: *The Temple river connects to Genesis 2:10-14 (the river flowing from Eden), Joel 3:18 (a fountain from the house of the LORD), Zechariah 14:8 (living waters from Jerusalem), Psalm 46:4 ('a river whose streams make glad the city of God'), and most directly to Revelation 22:1-2 (the river of the water of life from the throne). The healing of the Dead Sea reverses the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19). The land boundaries recall Numbers 34:1-12. The inclusion of foreigners connects to Isaiah 56:3-7, Ruth's integration into Israel, and Paul's theology of gentile inclusion in Ephesians 2:11-22.*

¹Then he brought me back to the entrance of the Temple, and there — water was flowing out from under the threshold of the Temple toward the east, for the Temple faced east. The water was flowing down from beneath the south side of the Temple, south of the altar. ²He led me out by way of the north gate and brought me around the outside to the outer gate that faces east. And there — water was trickling from the south side. ³As the man went out eastward with a measuring line in his hand, he measured off a thousand cubits and led me through the water — the water came up to my ankles. ⁴He measured another thousand and led me through the water — the water came up to my knees. He measured another thousand and led me through — the water reached my waist. ⁵He measured another thousand — it was now a river that I could not cross, for the water had risen, deep enough to swim in, a river that could not be crossed on foot. ⁶He said to me, "Have you seen this, son of man?" Then he led me back and brought me to the bank of the river. ⁷When I returned, I saw — on both banks of the river, a great many trees. ⁸He said to me, "These waters flow toward the eastern region and go down into the Arabah and enter the sea. When the water flows into the sea, its waters will be healed." ⁹And it will be that every living creature that swarms will live wherever the river goes. There will be a great abundance of fish, because these waters go there and the sea waters are healed. Everything will live wherever the river goes. ¹⁰Fishermen will stand along it from En-gedi to En-eghlaim. It will be a place for spreading nets. Its fish will be of every kind, like the fish of the Great Sea — exceedingly many. ¹¹But its marshes and swamps will not be healed — they are left for salt. ¹²Along the river, on both banks, every kind of tree for food will grow. Their leaves will not wither, and their fruit will not fail. They will bear fresh fruit every month, because their water flows from the sanctuary. Their fruit will be for food, and their leaves for healing. ¹³This is what the Lord GOD says: These are the boundaries by which you shall allot the land as an inheritance for the twelve tribes of Israel. Joseph shall have two portions. ¹⁴You shall inherit it equally, each as his brother, for I swore with uplifted hand to give it to your ancestors. This land shall fall

to you as your inheritance. ¹⁵This is the boundary of the land: On the north side, from the Great Sea by way of Hethlon toward Zedad, ¹⁶Hamath, Berothah, Sibraim (which is between the border of Damascus and the border of Hamath), Hazer-hattikon, which is on the border of Hauran. ¹⁷The boundary shall extend from the sea to Hazar-enan, along the border of Damascus, with the border of Hamath to the north. This is the north side. ¹⁸The east side: between Hauran and Damascus, between Gilead and the land of Israel — the Jordan shall be the boundary down to the eastern sea. You shall measure this. This is the east side. ¹⁹The south side runs southward from Tamar to the waters of Meribath-kadesh, then along the Brook of Egypt to the Great Sea. This is the south side, toward the south. ²⁰The west side is the Great Sea, from the southern boundary northward to a point opposite Lebo-hamath. This is the west side. ²¹You shall divide this land among yourselves according to the tribes of Israel. ²²You shall allot it as an inheritance for yourselves and for the foreigners who reside among you and have had children among you. They shall be to you like native-born citizens among the children of Israel. They shall receive an inheritance with you among the tribes of Israel. ²³In whatever tribe the foreigner resides, there you shall give him his inheritance, declares the Lord GOD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew mifthan habayit ('threshold of the house/Temple') locates the water's origin at the very entrance of God's dwelling — it flows from under the place where the divine presence meets the world. The water emerges on the south side of the altar, flowing east. The spatial precision is priestly — Ezekiel the priest maps the water's exact point of origin relative to the altar, the threshold, and the Temple's orientation. The word hinneh ('there/behold') marks this as a moment of astonishment in the vision — even in a tour full of wonders, this is arresting.
2. Because the outer east gate is permanently shut (44:1-2), Ezekiel must exit by the north gate and walk around the outside to observe the water's emergence from the Temple's exterior. The Hebrew mefakkim ('trickling, seeping') describes a modest flow at this point — the water begins as a trickle. The contrast between this small beginning and the uncrossable river it becomes is the theological point: what originates from God's presence starts small but becomes overwhelming.
3. The word ofsayim ('ankles') is a dual form — both ankles submerged. The measuring man uses a qav ('line, cord') rather than the measuring reed (qaneh) of chapters 40-42, perhaps because the distances are now much larger. A thousand cubits (elef ba'ammah) is approximately 500 meters (1,640 feet). The progression of depth through the prophet's body — ankles, knees, waist, then over the head — makes the vision experiential rather than observational.
4. The Hebrew birkayim ('knees') and motnayim ('waist, loins') mark the second and third stages. The verb ya'avireni ('he led me through') is repeated — the guide physically brings Ezekiel into the water each time. The accelerating depth with no tributaries is the supernatural element: this river grows from nothing but its own source. In natural hydrology, rivers deepen because other waters flow into them. This river deepens because it comes from God.
5. The word nachal can mean 'stream, wadi, river, torrent' — it has grown from mere mayim ('water') to a nachal of such force that Ezekiel uses the emphatic phrase lo ukhal la'avur ('I was not able to cross'). The verb ga'u ('had risen') conveys swelling and surging. The phrase mei sachu ('waters of swimming') is vivid — the prophet would need to swim, not wade. The threefold emphasis — 'I could not cross... deep enough to swim... could not be crossed' — conveys Ezekiel's astonishment at the transformation from trickle to torrent.
6. The guide's question hara'ita ('have you seen?') is not merely asking whether Ezekiel observed the water — it is a pedagogical question, prompting the prophet to reflect on what he has witnessed. The return to the bank (sefat hanachal, 'lip/shore of the river') positions Ezekiel as an observer on the shore to receive the interpretation that follows.
7. The trees on both banks anticipate the fuller description in verse 12 and connect forward to Revelation 22:2 ('the tree of life... on either side of the river'). The Hebrew etz rav me'od ('very many trees') emphasizes abundance. The phrase mizzeah umizzeah ('from this side and from that side') stresses that both banks are equally lined with trees — the life-giving effect of the river is symmetrical.
8. The gelilah haqqadmonah ('eastern region/district') refers to the Jordan Valley area. The Arabah is the rift valley running from the Sea of Galilee south to the Dead Sea and beyond. The phrase hayammah hammuza'im is textually difficult — literally 'into the sea, the brought-out waters.' Most scholars understand this as the Dead Sea, whose waters are 'brought out' or stagnant. The verb nirpe'u ('shall be healed') treats the Dead Sea's extreme salinity as a sickness to be cured — a striking personification.
9. The verb yishrots ('swarms') is the same word used in Genesis 1:20 for the swarming of sea creatures at creation — the Temple river initiates a new creation. The phrase dagah rabbah me'od ('very great abundance of fish') transforms the Dead Sea into a major fishery. The double occurrence of 'wherever the river goes... wherever the river goes' (kol asher yavo shamamah hanachal) creates an emphatic frame: the river's life-giving power is total and unlimited. The verb vachay ('and it will live') is the climactic declaration.
10. En-gedi is a known oasis on the western shore of the Dead Sea; En-eglaim is uncertain but likely on the same shore. The vision transforms the Dead Sea shoreline into a working fishery with nets spread to dry — an image of ordinary, abundant livelihood. The 'Great Sea' (hayyam haggadol) is the Mediterranean. The comparison means the Dead Sea will have the same variety and abundance of species as the Mediterranean — an astonishing

reversal for a body of water where nothing currently survives. The phrase *leminah* ('according to their kinds') echoes the creation language of Genesis 1.

11. Not everything is healed — the marshes and swamps retain their salt. The phrase *lemelach nittanu* ('they are given over to salt') means these areas remain salt-producing. This is a practical detail within the vision: salt was essential for Temple offerings (Leviticus 2:13) and daily life. The partial exception to the healing preserves the realism of the vision and prevents it from becoming pure fantasy. Even in the eschatological restoration, salt must come from somewhere.
12. The phrase *lachodashav yevakker* ('by its months it will bear first fruits') means new fruit every month — twelve harvests per year rather than one seasonal crop. This supernatural productivity is explained by the source: *ki meimav min hammiqdash hemmah yotze'im* ('because its water flows from the sanctuary'). The water's origin determines the trees' nature. The word *terufah* ('healing, medicine') is from the same root as *rapha* ('to heal') used for the Dead Sea's healing in verse 8. The entire passage — river, trees, fruit, leaves — reappears in Revelation 22:1-2 as the climactic image of the new creation.
13. The section shifts from the river vision to land distribution. Joseph receives two portions because his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh, each became a tribe — maintaining the twelve-tribe count even though Levi receives no territorial allotment (Levi's inheritance is priestly service). The word *chavolim* ('portions, measured territories') literally means 'ropes' or 'cords,' reflecting the ancient practice of measuring land allotments with rope.
14. The phrase *ish ke'achiv* ('each as his brother') establishes equal distribution — no tribe receives preferential treatment. The idiom *nasati et yadi* ('I lifted my hand') is the Hebrew oath gesture, indicating a sworn divine promise. The verb *nafal* ('to fall') for land allotment reflects the ancient practice of casting lots — the land 'falls' to its recipient by divine determination (cf. Joshua 18:6, 8, 10). The land is both promise (sworn to the ancestors) and gift (allotted by God).
15. The Great Sea (*hayyam haggadol*) is the Mediterranean, which serves as the western boundary. The northern boundary begins at the Mediterranean coast and runs eastward. Hethlon and Zedad are locations along the northern border, roughly corresponding to the border described in Numbers 34:7-9. Their exact locations are debated, but they appear to be in the region of modern Syria/Lebanon.
16. This verse lists locations along the northern boundary, moving from west to east. Hamath is the well-known city on the Orontes River in Syria, marking the traditional northern extent of Israelite territory ('the entrance of Hamath'). Berothah and Sibraim are less certain. Hazer-hattikon ('the middle enclosure') is described as lying on the border of Hauran, the basalt plateau east of the Sea of Galilee. The boundary runs between Damascus and Hamath — a significant territorial claim.
17. Hazer-enan ('enclosure of springs') is the northeastern corner point of the land, also referenced in Numbers 34:9-10. The boundary is described in relation to Damascus — the land of Israel extends to but does not include Damascus. The phrase *ve'et pe'at tsafon* ('and this is the north side') concludes the northern boundary description.
18. The eastern boundary runs along the Jordan River from the northeast to the 'eastern sea' (*hayyam haqqadmoni*) — the Dead Sea. Hauran, Damascus, and Gilead serve as reference points for the northeastern corner. The Jordan River functions as the natural eastern boundary, separating the allotted land from the Transjordanian territory. The 'eastern sea' is the Dead Sea, which in the river vision of verses 1-12 has been healed.
19. Tamar ('palm tree') is likely a location in the southern Arabah. The 'waters of Meribath-kadesh' (*mei merivot qadesh*) refers to Kadesh-barnea, the site where Israel quarreled with God and Moses struck the rock (Numbers 20:1-13). The *nachalah* ('brook, wadi') leading to the Great Sea is the Wadi el-Arish (Brook of Egypt), the traditional southern boundary of the promised land (Numbers 34:5, 1 Kings 8:65).
20. The Mediterranean coastline forms the western boundary from the Brook of Egypt in the south to the latitude of Lebo-hamath ('entrance of Hamath') in the north. Lebo-hamath is a well-known boundary marker in biblical geography, referenced in Numbers 34:8 and frequently in Kings and Chronicles as the northern extent of Israelite territory.
21. This verse transitions from the boundary description to the distribution command. The land within the boundaries just described is to be divided among the tribes — the detailed allotment follows in chapter 48.
22. The word *gerim* ('resident aliens, immigrants') refers to non-Israelites who have settled permanently among the tribes, not temporary visitors. The phrase *ke'ezrach* ('like a native-born') is a legal term meaning full membership rights — the foreigner who resides and raises children in Israel becomes, for purposes of land inheritance, indistinguishable from a born Israelite. This is a radical expansion of the provisions in Leviticus 19:33-34 ('the foreigner who resides among you shall be to you as the native-born'). The verb *yippelu* ('they shall fall/be allotted') uses the lot-casting terminology — foreigners receive land by the same divine allotment process as the tribes.
23. The foreigner receives land within the tribe where he has settled — a pragmatic provision that respects existing community ties. The chapter concludes with the divine speech formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* ('declares the Lord GOD'), stamping this provision with divine authority. The inclusion of foreigners in the land inheritance contrasts with the Temple exclusion of uncircumcised foreigners in 44:9 — Ezekiel holds both boundaries (sacred space) and openness (land) in tension, reflecting the complexity of holiness and hospitality in priestly thought.

48

Summary: *Ezekiel 48 is the final chapter of the book, mapping the allotment of the restored land among the twelve tribes of Israel. Seven tribes receive territory north of the sacred district (Dan, Asher, Naphtali, Manasseh, Ephraim, Reuben, Judah), and five tribes receive territory south of it (Benjamin, Simeon, Issachar, Zebulun, Gad). At the center lies the sacred contribution (terumah) — the holy district containing the sanctuary, the priests' portion, the Levites' portion, the city with its open land, and the prince's territory on either side. The chapter concludes with the city's twelve gates, three on each side, named for the twelve tribes — and then the final sentence of the entire book: 'And the name of the city from that day on shall be: The LORD Is There.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Everything in the book of Ezekiel has moved toward this final sentence. The glory departed from the defiled Temple in chapters 10-11. The nations were judged. The dry bones came back to life. The glory returned to the purified Temple in chapter 43. Water flowed from the Temple and healed the Dead Sea. The land was allotted. The city was built. And now the last word: YHWH Shammah — 'The LORD Is There.' The entire forty-eight-chapter arc resolves into a three-word declaration of divine presence. The city is not named for a king, a battle, or a geographical feature. It is named for the fact that God is in it. This is the theological conclusion not only of Ezekiel but of the entire prophetic tradition of exile and return: the ultimate promise is not land, or prosperity, or military victory, but the presence of God among his people. We gave YHWH Shammah full expanded rendering and key terms treatment as the capstone of the entire book. The tribal arrangement is also theologically significant: the tribes are arranged in a new, symmetrical pattern unlike any historical settlement, with the sanctuary at the geometric and spiritual center. Judah (the royal tribe) is immediately north of the sacred district, and Benjamin (associated with Jerusalem historically) is immediately south — the two tribes of the surviving southern kingdom flank the holy center.*

Translation Friction: *The measurements in this chapter are extensive and must be precise and consistent. The Hebrew uses several different measurement terms — cubits, reeds, and a larger unit that appears to be the 'long cubit' of 40:5. The tribal order differs from all other biblical tribal lists, and no historical or geographical rationale fully explains the arrangement. The Hebrew terumah ('contribution, heave offering') is used for the sacred district itself — the land set apart for God is described as a sacrificial offering. The final phrase YHWH Shammah could be rendered 'The LORD is there' or 'The LORD is present' — we chose 'The LORD Is There' to preserve the naming convention (it is the city's name) while conveying the meaning.*

Connections: *The tribal allotments connect to the original land distribution in Joshua 13-21 and the boundary descriptions in Numbers 34. The twelve gates named for the tribes connect to Revelation 21:12-13, where the New Jerusalem has twelve gates inscribed with the names of the twelve tribes. The sacred district recalls the Levitical cities of Numbers 35. The final name YHWH Shammah connects backward to Exodus 33:14-15 (Moses: 'If your presence does not go with us, do not send us up from here'), forward to Revelation 21:3 ('the dwelling of God is with humanity... he will dwell with them'), and stands as the answer to the anguished departure of the glory in Ezekiel 10-11. The name also echoes Jerusalem itself — Yerushalayim — binding the visionary city to the historical one.*

¹These are the names of the tribes: At the northern extreme, along the road to Hethlon, toward Lebo-hamath, as far as Hazar-enan (the border of Damascus to the north, beside Hamath), from the east side to the west side — Dan, one portion. ² Beside the border of Dan, from the east side to the west side — Asher, one portion. ³Beside the border of Asher, from the east side to the west side — Naphtali, one portion. ⁴Beside the border of Naphtali, from the east side to the west side — Manasseh, one portion. ⁵Beside the border of Manasseh, from the east side to the west side — Ephraim, one portion. ⁶Beside the border of Ephraim, from the east side to the west side — Reuben, one portion. ⁷Beside the border of Reuben, from the east side to the west side — Judah, one portion. ⁸Beside the border of Judah, from the east side to the west side, shall be the sacred contribution that you set apart — twenty-five thousand cubits in width and the same length as one of the tribal portions from the east side to the west side. The sanctuary shall be at its center. ⁹The sacred contribution that you set apart for the LORD shall be twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width. ¹⁰To the priests shall belong

the holy contribution: twenty-five thousand cubits on the north side, ten thousand in width on the west, ten thousand in width on the east, and twenty-five thousand in length on the south. The sanctuary of the LORD shall be at its center. ¹¹It shall belong to the consecrated priests of the sons of Zadok, who kept my charge and did not go astray when the children of Israel went astray, as the Levites did. ¹²This shall be their portion from the sacred contribution of the land, a most holy area, bordering the territory of the Levites. ¹³Alongside the territory of the priests, the Levites shall have a portion twenty-five thousand cubits in length and ten thousand cubits in width — the total length twenty-five thousand and the width ten thousand. ¹⁴They shall not sell any of it, nor exchange it, nor transfer the best of the land, for it is holy to the LORD. ¹⁵The remaining five thousand cubits in width, alongside the twenty-five thousand, shall be common land for the city — for dwellings and open space. The city shall be at its center. ¹⁶These are its dimensions: the north side, four thousand five hundred cubits; the south side, four thousand five hundred; the east side, four thousand five hundred; and the west side, four thousand five hundred. ¹⁷The open land of the city shall be: to the north, two hundred fifty cubits; to the south, two hundred fifty; to the east, two hundred fifty; and to the west, two hundred fifty. ¹⁸The remaining land alongside the holy contribution — ten thousand cubits to the east and ten thousand to the west — shall lie alongside the holy contribution, and its produce shall provide food for the workers of the city. ¹⁹Those who work in the city shall come from all the tribes of Israel. ²⁰The entire sacred contribution shall be twenty-five thousand by twenty-five thousand cubits — a square. You shall set apart the holy contribution together with the property of the city. ²¹What remains on both sides of the holy contribution and the city property shall belong to the prince — from the twenty-five thousand cubits of the contribution eastward to the eastern boundary, and westward to the western boundary, corresponding in length to the tribal portions. This shall be the prince's territory, with the holy contribution and the sanctuary of the Temple at its center. ²²Apart from the Levites' property and the city's property, which lie within the prince's territory — between the border of Judah and the border of Benjamin — the rest shall belong to the prince. ²³As for the remaining tribes: from the east side to the west side — Benjamin, one portion. ²⁴Beside the border of Benjamin, from the east side to the west side — Simeon, one portion. ²⁵Beside the border of Simeon, from the east side to the west side — Issachar, one portion. ²⁶Beside the border of Issachar, from the east side to the west side — Zebulun, one portion. ²⁷Beside the border of Zebulun, from the east side to the west side — Gad, one portion. ²⁸Along the border of Gad, on the south side toward the south, the boundary shall run from Tamar to the waters of Meribath-kadesh, then to the Brook of Egypt, and on to the Great Sea. ²⁹This is the land that you shall allot as an inheritance to the tribes of Israel, and these are their portions, declares the Lord GOD. ³⁰These are the exits of the city: On the north side, measuring four thousand five hundred cubits, ³¹The gates of the city shall be named after the tribes of Israel — three gates on the north: the gate of Reuben, the gate of Judah, and the gate of Levi. ³²On the east side, four thousand five hundred cubits, with three gates: the gate of Joseph, the gate of Benjamin, and the gate of Dan. ³³On the south side, four thousand five hundred cubits, with three gates: the gate of Simeon, the gate of Issachar, and the gate of Zebulun. ³⁴On the west side, four thousand five hundred cubits, with three gates: the gate of Gad, the gate of Asher, and the gate of Naphtali. ³⁵The circumference of the city shall be eighteen thousand cubits. And the name of the city from that day on shall be: The LORD Is There.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The allotment begins at the far north and moves southward. Dan receives the northernmost strip of land, extending from the eastern to the western boundary. The formula 'from the east side to the west side' (pe'at qadim hayyam) means each tribe's portion is a full east-to-west band across the entire width of the land — a radically simplified geometry compared to the irregular tribal boundaries of Joshua. The word echad ('one') after each tribe name means 'one portion' — each tribe receives exactly one equal strip.
2. Asher receives the strip immediately south of Dan. The formula is identical for each tribe — a full east-to-west band. In the historical settlement (Joshua 19:24-31), Asher occupied coastal territory in the northwest. Ezekiel's redistribution rearranges the tribes without regard to historical precedent.
3. Naphtali is third from the north. Historically Naphtali occupied the eastern Galilee region (Joshua 19:32-39). In Ezekiel's scheme, all three northern tribes — Dan, Asher, Naphtali — are positioned in the far north, similar to their historical association with the northern territories.
4. Manasseh is the first of Joseph's two sons to appear. In Ezekiel's arrangement, Manasseh and Ephraim are separated — Manasseh fourth from the north, Ephraim fifth. Historically, Manasseh had territory on both sides of the Jordan (Joshua 17); here the tribe receives a single east-to-west strip west of the Jordan.

5. Ephraim, the other son of Joseph, receives the strip south of Manasseh. Together, Manasseh and Ephraim represent Joseph's double portion (47:13). Ephraim was historically the dominant northern tribe; here it is positioned fifth from the north, still in the northern half but no longer pre-eminent.
6. Reuben historically occupied Transjordan territory east of the Dead Sea (Joshua 13:15-23). Ezekiel relocates Reuben to the sixth position from the north, west of the Jordan. The reunification of all tribes within the western boundary reflects the vision of a restored, unified Israel.
7. Judah is the seventh and last tribe north of the sacred district, occupying the position immediately adjacent to the holy center. This placement is theologically significant: Judah, the royal tribe from which David's line descends, flanks the sanctuary from the north. The proximity of Judah to the sacred district mirrors the historical relationship between the Davidic monarchy and the Jerusalem Temple.
8. The word *terumah* ('contribution, heave offering') is a sacrificial term applied to land — the sacred district is 'lifted up' as an offering from the nation to God. The dimensions (25,000 cubits wide, equal to one tribal portion in length) create a massive sacred precinct at the geographic center of the land. The phrase *vehayyah hammiqdash betokhah* ('the sanctuary shall be in its midst') places God's dwelling at the exact center of the nation — the theological and physical heart of the restored Israel.
9. This describes the priestly portion within the larger sacred district. The 25,000 by 10,000 cubit area is the zone allocated to the Zadokite priests, with the sanctuary at its center. The dimensions create a rectangular precinct approximately 13 by 5 kilometers (8 by 3 miles).
10. The priestly district's dimensions are given from all four directions to establish its precise boundaries. The sanctuary of the LORD (*miqdash YHWH*) sits at the center of the priests' portion, which itself sits at the center of the sacred district, which itself sits at the center of the nation — concentric zones of holiness radiating outward from God's presence.
11. The Zadokite privilege is restated: only the descendants of Zadok who remained faithful during Israel's apostasy serve in the inner sanctuary. The word *hamequdash* ('the consecrated, the sanctified') marks them as set apart for the highest priestly function. The distinction between the faithful Zadokites and the Levites who 'went astray' (*ta'u*) reflects the priestly hierarchy established in 44:10-16. This is a reward for faithfulness — those who did not follow the people into idolatry are given proximity to God's presence.
12. The priests' district is designated *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy, holy of holies') — the same designation used for the innermost chamber of the Temple. The land itself partakes of the holiness of the sanctuary it contains. The phrase *el ge'ul haLeviyim* ('beside the border of the Levites') places the priests' portion adjacent to the Levites' strip, maintaining the priestly-Levitical connection while preserving their hierarchical distinction.
13. The Levites' portion mirrors the priests' in dimensions — 25,000 by 10,000 cubits — but is positioned adjacent to it (likely to the south). The equal size reflects equal dignity of service even though the Levites' access to the sanctuary is restricted (44:10-14). The repetition of the full dimensions emphasizes precision.
14. Three prohibitions protect the sacred land: no selling (*lo yimkeru*), no exchanging (*lo yamer*), no transferring (*lo ya'avir*). The Hebrew *re'shit ha'aretz* ('the firstfruits/best of the land') designates this district as the choicest portion of the territory — the 'firstfruits' offered to God from the nation's land. The phrase *ki qodesh laYHWH* ('for it is holy to the LORD') provides the theological rationale: holy land cannot enter commercial transactions.
15. The word *chol* ('common, profane') distinguishes this area from the holy districts of the priests and Levites. It is not 'profane' in a negative sense but simply 'non-sacred' — ordinary land for ordinary habitation. The *migrash* ('open space, pastureland, commons') surrounding the city provides green space and agricultural land for the urban population.
16. The city is a perfect square — 4,500 cubits (approximately 2.3 kilometers or 1.4 miles) on each side. The symmetry reflects divine order; no side is longer or shorter than another. The fourfold repetition of identical measurements emphasizes the perfection of the city's form. This geometry reappears in Revelation 21:16, where the New Jerusalem is a perfect cube.
17. The *migrash* (open land, green belt) extends 250 cubits (approximately 130 meters or 425 feet) on all four sides of the city — a buffer zone of pasture and gardens between the city walls and the surrounding agricultural land.
18. The agricultural strips flanking the city's common land produce food for the city's workforce. The *tevuatah* ('its produce, its yield') is specifically designated for the workers (*le'ovdei ha'ir*) — those who serve the city regardless of tribal affiliation, as the next verse clarifies.
19. The city is a multi-tribal institution — its workforce is drawn from every tribe, making it a shared national project rather than the property of any single tribe. This reflects the city's position at the center of all twelve tribal territories and its function as the seat of the nation's common life.
20. The total sacred district, including the priestly portion, the Levitical portion, and the city's common land, forms a perfect square of 25,000 by 25,000 cubits (approximately 13 by 13 kilometers). The word *revi'it* ('foursquare, a fourth part') indicates the square shape. This geometric perfection at the heart of the land reflects the divine ordering of sacred space.
21. The prince's land flanks the sacred district on the east and west — extending from the edges of the 25,000-cubit square to the national boundaries in both directions. This gives the prince substantial territory while keeping the sacred center between his two portions. The prince does not own the holy district; he surrounds it. The arrangement prevents the prince from controlling access to the Temple — his territory wraps around the sacred center without containing it.
22. This verse clarifies the spatial relationship: the sacred district and city lie between Judah (to the north) and Benjamin (to the south), embedded within the prince's flanking territory. The prince's land thus extends east and west of the central sacred zone, between the two tribes historically associated with Jerusalem and the Davidic monarchy.

23. The allotment resumes south of the sacred district. Benjamin is the first tribe south of the holy center, mirroring Judah's position immediately north. Historically, Benjamin's territory included Jerusalem (Joshua 18:28), and Ezekiel preserves this association by placing Benjamin adjacent to the city.
24. Simeon historically had territory within Judah's allotment in the far south (Joshua 19:1-9). Ezekiel places Simeon second south of the sacred district, maintaining a southern association but in a completely new configuration.
25. Issachar historically occupied territory in the Jezreel Valley area (Joshua 19:17-23). The relocation to the south side of the sacred district in Ezekiel's scheme has no obvious geographical logic — the arrangement is theological rather than topographical.
26. Zebulun historically occupied the lower Galilee region (Joshua 19:10-16). Like Issachar, Zebulun is repositioned in the south in Ezekiel's scheme.
27. Gad receives the southernmost tribal allotment. Historically, Gad occupied Transjordan territory (Joshua 13:24-28). Like Reuben, Gad is relocated west of the Jordan in Ezekiel's vision. The placement of Gad at the extreme south mirrors Dan's placement at the extreme north — the two outermost tribes bracket the entire restored nation.
28. The southern boundary of Gad's territory is also the southern boundary of the entire nation — repeating the boundary described in 47:19. Tamar, Meribath-kadesh (Kadesh-barnea), and the Brook of Egypt (Wadi el-Arish) are the three marker points. The Great Sea (Mediterranean) serves as both the western terminus of the southern boundary and the entire western border.
29. The formula *ne'um Adonai YHWH* ('declares the Lord GOD') seals the land distribution with divine authority. The word *machlequotam* ('their portions, their divisions') summarizes the entire allotment scheme — twelve tribal strips arranged symmetrically around the sacred center.
30. The section shifts from land allotment to the city's gates. The Hebrew *totze'ot* ('exits, goings out') refers to the gates — the points of exit and entry. The north side measures 4,500 cubits, matching the city dimensions given in verse 16. Each side will have three gates, for a total of twelve.
31. Levi, which has no territorial allotment, is included among the gate names — this is the only place in Ezekiel's vision where Levi appears alongside the other tribes as an equal. The twelve gates ensure that every tribe has a named entrance to the city, symbolizing that all Israel belongs there. This image reappears in Revelation 21:12-13, where the New Jerusalem has twelve gates with the names of the twelve tribes inscribed on them. Judah's gate on the north side corresponds to Judah's territorial position immediately north of the sacred district.
32. On the east side, Joseph has a single gate rather than the separate gates for Ephraim and Manasseh — this keeps the total at twelve (with Levi included). Benjamin's gate on the east side corresponds to its territorial position immediately south of the sacred district, near the eastern boundary. Dan appears here despite its far-northern territorial position, ensuring every tribe has presence at the city.
33. The south gates correspond to the three tribes positioned south of Benjamin in the territorial allotment (vv. 24-26). The symmetry is maintained: three gates per side, four sides, twelve gates total.
34. The west gates include Gad (the southernmost territory), Asher, and Naphtali (both northern territories). The gate assignments do not strictly follow the territorial positions — the gates distribute tribal names around the city to ensure every tribe is represented, regardless of their land's compass direction. All twelve sons of Jacob are accounted for across the four walls: Levi and Joseph replace Ephraim and Manasseh in the gate naming, bringing the list back to the original twelve sons rather than the territorial configuration.
35. The total circumference of 18,000 cubits (4,500 x 4) is approximately 9.3 kilometers (5.8 miles). The final sentence *veshem ha'ir miyyom YHWH shammah* is the theological climax of the entire book. The word *shammah* ('there') is a locative — it declares that YHWH is at a specific place. The phrase *miyyom* ('from that day') establishes permanence: from the day of naming onward, the city's identity is God's presence. The name YHWH Shammah echoes the name of Jerusalem itself (*Yerushalayim*) and connects to the entire prophetic tradition of God dwelling among his people (Exodus 25:8, 29:45-46; Zechariah 2:10-11; Revelation 21:3). The book that opened with the heavens torn open to reveal God's glory on the throne-chariot closes with God settled in a city that bears his name. The arc is complete.

Daniel

1

Summary: *Daniel 1 introduces the book's central characters against the backdrop of Judah's subjugation to Babylon. In the third year of Jehoiakim's reign, Nebuchadnezzar besieges Jerusalem and carries off temple vessels and selected young men of royal and noble lineage. Among them are Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah — four Judeans who are given Babylonian names (Belteshazzar, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego) as part of a systematic cultural assimilation program. Daniel resolves not to defile himself with the king's food and wine, and after a ten-day trial of vegetables and water, the four are found healthier than those who ate from the royal table. God grants them exceptional learning, and Daniel receives the gift of interpreting visions and dreams.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire chapter is written in Hebrew, establishing the setting before the language shifts to Aramaic at 2:4b. The renaming of the four Judeans is an act of imperial identity erasure — each Hebrew name contains a reference to Israel's God (El or Yah), while the Babylonian replacements invoke Babylonian deities (Bel, Aku, Marduk). Daniel's name means 'God is my judge'; Belteshazzar likely derives from Bel-shar-usur, 'Bel, protect his life.' Hananiah ('the LORD is gracious') becomes Shadrach (possibly 'command of Aku'); Mishael ('who is what God is?') becomes Meshach (possibly 'who is what Aku is?'); Azariah ('the LORD has helped') becomes Abednego ('servant of Nego/Nabu'). The food test is not about dietary preference but covenant identity — the king's table likely involved food offered to idols and meat prepared in violation of Levitical regulations. Daniel's refusal is the first act of faithful resistance in a book structured around such acts.*

Translation Friction: *The dating in verse 1 ('the third year of Jehoiakim') presents a well-known chronological difficulty — Jeremiah 25:1 places Nebuchadnezzar's first year in Jehoiakim's fourth year, and 2 Kings 24:1 describes the siege differently. We rendered the date as given in the Hebrew without harmonization, noting the issue. The phrase 'the land of Shinar' (v. 2) is an archaic designation for Babylonia used in Genesis 10:10 and 11:2, deliberately linking Babylon's origin to the primeval period. The verb ga'al ('defile,' v. 8) is distinct from the homonym meaning 'redeem' — context makes the meaning clear but we noted the distinction.*

Connections: The deportation of temple vessels connects to 2 Chronicles 36:5-7 and is reversed in Ezra 1:7-11 when Cyrus restores them. The phrase 'land of Shinar' reaches back to Genesis 11:2 (the Tower of Babel), casting Babylon as the perennial rival of God's purposes. Daniel's gift of dream interpretation echoes Joseph's identical gift in Genesis 40-41, establishing Daniel as a second Joseph — a faithful exile who rises to power in a foreign court through divine wisdom. The ten-day food test anticipates the pattern of divine testing seen throughout the book.

¹In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came against Jerusalem and laid siege to it. ²The Lord gave Jehoiakim king of Judah into his hand, along with some of the vessels from the house of God. He brought them to the land of Shinar, to the house of his god, and placed the vessels in the treasury of his god. ³The king ordered Ashpenaz, the chief of his court officials, to bring in some of the Israelites — from the royal family and from the nobility — ⁴young men without any physical defect, good-looking, proficient in all wisdom, knowledgeable and discerning, and with the ability to serve in the king's palace — and to teach them the literature and language of the Chaldeans. ⁵The king assigned them a daily portion from the king's own food and from the wine he drank, to be trained for three years, after which they would enter the king's service. ⁶Among them, from the tribe of Judah, were Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. ⁷The chief official gave them new names: to Daniel he gave the name Belteshazzar; to Hananiah, Shadrach; to Mishael, Meshach; and to Azariah, Abednego. ⁸Daniel resolved in his heart not to defile himself with the king's food or with the wine he drank, and he asked the chief official for permission not to defile himself. ⁹God granted Daniel favor and compassion before the chief official. ¹⁰The chief official said to Daniel, "I am afraid of my lord the king, who assigned your food and drink. Why should he see your faces looking worse than the other young men your age? You would put my head in danger with the king." ¹¹Then Daniel spoke to the steward whom the chief official had appointed over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. ¹²"Please test your servants for ten days: let us be given vegetables to eat and water to drink. ¹³Then compare our appearance with the appearance of the young men who eat the king's food, and deal with your servants according to what you see." ¹⁴He agreed to this and tested them for ten days. ¹⁵At the end of ten days, their appearance was healthier and they looked better nourished than all the young men who ate the king's food. ¹⁶So the steward removed their portion of royal food and the wine they were to drink, and gave them vegetables instead. ¹⁷As for these four young men, God gave them knowledge and insight in every branch of literature and wisdom. And Daniel had understanding in all kinds of visions and dreams. ¹⁸When the appointed time set by the king had passed, the chief official brought them before Nebuchadnezzar. ¹⁹The king spoke with them, and among all the candidates none were found equal to Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. So they entered the king's service. ²⁰In every matter of wisdom and discernment that the king tested them on, he found them ten times superior to all the magicians and enchanters in his entire kingdom. ²¹And Daniel remained there until the first year of King Cyrus.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter is written in Hebrew. The language shifts to Aramaic at 2:4b and remains Aramaic through 7:28 before returning to Hebrew.
1. The dating 'third year of Jehoiakim' presents a chronological tension with Jeremiah 25:1, which places Nebuchadnezzar's first year in Jehoiakim's fourth year. The discrepancy may reflect different calendar systems (Babylonian accession-year reckoning versus Judean non-accession-year reckoning) or a distinct earlier campaign. We render as the Hebrew reads without harmonizing.
1. The verb *tsur* ('lay siege, press upon') is rendered 'laid siege to it' rather than the KJV's simple 'besieged it' to capture the military action more concretely.
2. The text uses *Adonai* ('Lord') here rather than *YHWH*, emphasizing divine sovereignty — God himself handed Judah's king over to the Babylonian. This is theological narration, not merely historical report.
2. The phrase 'land of Shinar' (*erets Shin'ar*) is a deliberately archaic name for Babylonia, used in Genesis 10:10 and 11:2 (the Tower of Babel narrative). The narrator is connecting Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon to the primeval city that defied God.
2. The placement of *YHWH*'s temple vessels in a pagan god's treasury is an act of theological humiliation — the conqueror's god appears to have triumphed over the conquered's god. Yet the narrator frames this as God's own act of giving, subverting the apparent triumph.
3. The term *rav sarisav* ('chief of his eunuchs/officials') is rendered 'chief of his court officials.' The Hebrew *saris* can mean either 'eunuch' (castrated male) or simply 'court official.' In this context both meanings may apply — Babylonian court attendants were often eunuchs, but the term also functioned as a title for high-ranking administrators.

3. The word *partemim* ('nobles, aristocrats') is a Persian loanword found only here and in Esther 1:3 and 6:9, suggesting a late or cosmopolitan vocabulary. Rendered as 'nobility' to capture the social rank.
4. The Hebrew *yeladim* literally means 'children' or 'youths,' but the context of court service and advanced education indicates adolescents or young men, not small children.
4. The phrase *sefer u-leshon Kasdim* ('literature and language of the Chaldeans') encompasses the entire Babylonian intellectual tradition — cuneiform writing, astronomy, divination, mathematics, and court protocol. This was a deliberate program to assimilate conquered elites into Babylonian culture.
4. The term *mada* ('knowledge, science') is rendered 'discerning' rather than the KJV's 'understanding science' — the modern word 'science' carries empirical connotations absent from the Hebrew.
5. The word *pat-bag* ('portion of food, delicacy') is an Old Persian loanword (*patibaga*) meaning the king's choice food. This is not ordinary rations but food from the royal table — it would have been offered to Babylonian gods before being served, making it ritually unclean for observant Judeans.
5. The phrase 'stand before the king' (*ya'amdu lifnei ha-melek*) is an idiom for entering official court service, not merely standing in his physical presence.
6. All four Hebrew names contain references to the God of Israel: Daniel ('God is my judge,' from El), Hananiah ('the LORD is gracious,' from Yah), Mishael ('who is what God is?', from El), and Azariah ('the LORD has helped,' from Yah). Their very names are theological confessions that will stand in tension with the Babylonian names they are about to receive.
7. The renaming is an act of cultural and theological displacement. Each Hebrew name that honored Israel's God is replaced with a name invoking Babylonian deities: Belteshazzar likely derives from Bel-shar-usur ('Bel, protect his life'), invoking the chief Babylonian god. Shadrach may relate to Shudur-Aku ('command of Aku,' the moon god). Meshach may be a deliberate distortion of Mishael, possibly meaning 'who is what Aku is?' — replacing El (God) with Aku. Abednego means 'servant of Nego' (a form of Nabu, the god of wisdom).
7. The verb *sam* ('set, placed') for the act of naming suggests imposition — these names were assigned, not chosen. In the ancient world, the power to name conferred authority over the named.
8. The idiom *sam al libbo* ('set upon his heart') means to make a firm decision from deep conviction — rendered 'resolved in his heart' to convey both deliberateness and depth.
8. The verb *yitga'al* ('defile himself') comes from the root *ga'al* meaning 'to stain, pollute, defile.' This is a different root from the *go'el* ('redeemer') of Ruth, though they share the same consonants. The defilement concerns ritual purity — the royal food was likely consecrated to Babylonian gods and prepared without regard for Levitical dietary laws.
8. Daniel's approach is diplomatic, not defiant. He 'asked' (*vayevaqqesh*) rather than refused outright, demonstrating the pattern of faithful wisdom that characterizes him throughout the book.
9. The phrase *le-chesed u-le-rachamim* ('to loyal love and compassion') describes what God produced in the official's heart toward Daniel. The verb *natan* ('gave') with God as subject echoes verse 2 — the same God who 'gave' Judah into Babylon's hand now 'gives' Daniel favor within Babylon's court. The theological irony is deliberate.
10. The phrase *zo'afim* ('looking troubled, haggard') describes a visibly unhealthy appearance — the official fears the king will notice malnourishment and hold him responsible.
10. The idiom *chiavtem et roshi* ('you would make my head guilty/liable') is a vivid expression meaning to endanger one's life — rendered 'put my head in danger' to preserve the bodily imagery. In a Babylonian court, failure could literally cost one's head.
11. The word *ha-meltsar* is debated — the KJV treats it as a proper name ('Melzar'), but most scholars take it as a title meaning 'guardian, steward, warden.' The definite article *ha-* ('the') supports reading it as a title rather than a name. We render 'the steward.' Daniel bypasses the chief official's refusal by approaching a subordinate — a shrewd diplomatic move.
12. The word *zero'im* ('seeds, vegetables, plants grown from seed') is rendered 'vegetables' rather than the KJV's archaic 'pulse' (a term for legumes). The Hebrew is broader than legumes — it encompasses any plant food grown from seed.
12. The ten-day test is Daniel's proposal, not God's command — it demonstrates Daniel's strategic thinking. Ten days is long enough to show results but short enough to minimize risk for the steward.
13. The word *mar'eh* ('appearance, look') appears twice — Daniel proposes an empirical, visible comparison. The test is designed to be objectively verifiable, removing any need for the steward to take Daniel's word on faith.
14. The verb *shama* ('heard, listened') in this context means 'agreed, consented' — the steward yielded to Daniel's proposal. The brevity of the verse conveys the simplicity of the arrangement once the steward was willing.
15. The phrase *beri'ei basar* ('fat of flesh, healthy in body') indicates robust physical health, not obesity. We rendered 'better nourished' to convey health rather than the KJV's 'fatter in flesh,' which carries negative connotations in modern English.

15. The result is presented as observable fact — the narrator makes no explicit mention of divine intervention here, though the reader understands God is behind the outcome.
16. The participle nosei ('carrying away, removing') indicates an ongoing practice — this was not a one-time adjustment but a permanent change to their diet throughout the three-year training period.
17. The narrator explicitly credits God as the source of their intellectual gifts — mada ve-haskel ('knowledge and insight') are divine endowments, not merely natural talent or hard study.
17. Daniel alone receives the additional gift of understanding chazon va-chalomot ('visions and dreams'). This specific gifting sets up Daniel's role throughout the book as interpreter of divine revelation, paralleling Joseph in Genesis 40-41.
18. The phrase le-miqtsat ha-yamim ('at the end of the days') refers to the conclusion of the three-year training period specified in verse 5, not the ten-day food test. The chief official presents them for the king's personal evaluation.
19. The narrator uses the four Hebrew names — not their Babylonian names — emphasizing that their true identity before God remains unchanged despite the imperial renaming. This is a subtle but consistent narrative choice throughout Daniel.
19. The phrase va-ya'amdu lifnei ha-melek ('they stood before the king') echoes verse 5 — the goal of the training program has been achieved, but on their terms rather than Babylon's.
20. The phrase eser yadot ('ten hands') is an idiom meaning 'ten times over' — a superlative expressing overwhelming superiority, not a precise mathematical ratio.
20. The chartummim ('magicians') and ashshafim ('enchanters, conjurers') represent the professional scholarly-religious class of Babylon — experts in divination, omen reading, and incantation. Daniel and his friends surpass even these specialists in their own domain.
21. This closing note spans the entire Neo-Babylonian period — from Nebuchadnezzar (605 BC) to the first year of Cyrus's rule over Babylon (539 BC), approximately sixty-six years. Daniel outlasted the empire that captured him. The mention of Cyrus anticipates the restoration prophecies of Isaiah 44-45 and the historical fulfillment in Ezra 1.
21. The verb vayehi ('he continued, he was') does not mean Daniel died in Cyrus's first year — chapter 10:1 places him in Cyrus's third year. The verse marks the end of the Babylonian era, not the end of Daniel's life.

2

Summary: *Daniel 2 recounts Nebuchadnezzar's disturbing dream of a colossal statue made of four metals — gold, silver, bronze, and iron mixed with clay — shattered by a stone cut without human hands. When the king demands that his wise men both tell him the dream and interpret it (on pain of death), they fail. Daniel, after receiving the mystery through a night vision, reveals both the dream and its meaning: four successive kingdoms will rise, but God will establish an eternal kingdom that will crush all others. Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges Daniel's God as 'God of gods and Lord of kings' and elevates Daniel to rule over Babylon's province.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most significant language transition in the Hebrew Bible. Verses 1-4a are in Hebrew; at 2:4b, when the Chaldeans begin speaking to the king, the text switches to Aramaic — the lingua franca of the Neo-Babylonian and Persian empires — and remains in Aramaic through 7:28. This linguistic shift signals that the content concerns the nations, not Israel alone. The statue vision establishes the apocalyptic framework of four world empires followed by God's eternal kingdom, a schema that shapes all subsequent Jewish and Christian apocalyptic thought. The 'stone cut without hands' (even garut di-la bi-yadin) becomes one of the most widely interpreted symbols in biblical prophecy — both Jewish and Christian traditions see it as the kingdom of God breaking into human history without human agency.*

Translation Friction: *The Aramaic of Daniel 2:4b-49 is Imperial Aramaic, closely related to the Aramaic of Ezra. Transliterations follow standard Aramaic conventions rather than Hebrew. The identity of the four kingdoms has been debated for millennia — the traditional reading sees Babylon, Medo-Persia, Greece, and Rome; other scholars see Babylon, Media, Persia, and Greece. We render the text without imposing either identification, letting the imagery stand. The phrase even garut di-la bi-yadin ('a stone cut not by hands,' v. 34) is theologically loaded — 'not by hands' means without human agency, signaling divine origin. The Aramaic word raz ('mystery,' vv. 18-19, 27-30, 47) is a Persian loanword central to the chapter's theology of revealed knowledge.*

Connections: The four-kingdom schema recurs in Daniel 7 (four beasts), Daniel 8 (ram and goat), and Daniel 10-11 (kings of north and south). The stone that becomes a mountain filling the earth echoes the cosmic mountain traditions of Isaiah 2:2-4 and Micah 4:1-3. Nebuchadnezzar's confession in verse 47 anticipates his fuller confession in chapter 4. Daniel's night vision and thanksgiving prayer (vv. 19-23) parallel the wisdom tradition of Proverbs 2:6 and Job 12:22. The pattern of faithful exile receiving divine wisdom and rising to political power parallels Joseph before Pharaoh (Genesis 41).

¹In the second year of Nebuchadnezzar's reign, Nebuchadnezzar had dreams that troubled his spirit, and sleep escaped him. ²The king gave orders to summon the magicians, enchanters, sorcerers, and Chaldeans to explain his dreams to him. When they came and stood before the king, ³the king said to them, "I have had a dream, and my spirit is troubled trying to understand it." ⁴The Chaldeans spoke to the king in Aramaic: "O king, live forever! Tell your servants the dream, and we will provide the interpretation." ⁵The king replied to the Chaldeans, "My decision is firm: if you do not make known to me the dream and its interpretation, you will be torn limb from limb, and your houses will be turned into rubble heaps. ⁶But if you reveal the dream and its interpretation, you will receive gifts, rewards, and great honor from me. So tell me the dream and its interpretation." ⁷They answered a second time, "Let the king tell the dream to his servants, and we will provide the interpretation." ⁸The king responded, "I know with certainty that you are trying to buy time, because you see that my decision is final. ⁹If you do not tell me the dream, there is only one sentence for you. You have agreed among yourselves to present false and deceptive words before me, hoping circumstances will change. So tell me the dream, and then I will know that you can show me its interpretation." ¹⁰The Chaldeans answered the king, "There is no one on earth who can fulfill what the king demands. No king, however great or powerful, has ever asked such a thing of any magician, enchanter, or Chaldean. ¹¹What the king asks is too difficult. No one can reveal it to the king except the gods, whose dwelling is not among mortals." ¹²Because of this, the king became enraged and furious, and ordered the execution of all the wise men of Babylon. ¹³The decree was issued and the wise men were about to be killed. They searched for Daniel and his companions to put them to death as well. ¹⁴Then Daniel responded with prudence and discretion to Arioch, the commander of the king's guard, who had gone out to execute the wise men of Babylon. ¹⁵He asked Arioch, the king's officer, "Why is this decree from the king so urgent?" Then Arioch explained the situation to Daniel. ¹⁶Daniel then went in and asked the king to grant him time, and he would reveal the interpretation to the king. ¹⁷Then Daniel went to his house and informed his companions Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah about the matter, ¹⁸urging them to plead for mercy from the God of heaven concerning this mystery, so that Daniel and his companions would not be destroyed along with the rest of the wise men of Babylon. ¹⁹Then the mystery was revealed to Daniel in a vision during the night, and Daniel blessed the God of heaven. ²⁰Daniel declared: "Let the name of God be blessed from age to age, for wisdom and power belong to him. ²¹He changes times and seasons; he removes kings and raises up kings. He gives wisdom to the wise and knowledge to those who have understanding. ²²He reveals what is deep and hidden; he knows what lies in darkness, and light dwells with him. ²³To you, God of my ancestors, I give thanks and praise, for you have given me wisdom and strength, and now you have made known to me what we asked of you — you have revealed to us the king's matter." ²⁴Therefore Daniel went to Arioch, whom the king had appointed to destroy the wise men of Babylon, and said to him, "Do not execute the wise men of Babylon. Bring me before the king, and I will reveal the interpretation to him." ²⁵Arioch quickly brought Daniel before the king and said, "I have found a man among the Judean exiles who can make the interpretation known to the king." ²⁶The king asked Daniel, who was called Belteshazzar, "Are you able to make known to me the dream I saw and its interpretation?" ²⁷Daniel answered the king, "The mystery that the king demands — no wise man, enchanter, magician, or diviner can reveal it to the king. ²⁸But there is a God in heaven who reveals mysteries. He has made known to King Nebuchadnezzar what will happen in the latter days. This is your dream and the visions that passed through your mind as you lay on your bed: ²⁹As for you, O king — while you were on your bed, thoughts came to you about what would happen in the future, and the Revealer of mysteries has shown you what will take place. ³⁰As for me, this mystery was not revealed to me because I possess more wisdom than any other living person, but so that the interpretation may be made known to the king and you may understand the thoughts of your own heart. ³¹You, O king, were looking, and there before you stood a great statue. That statue was immense and extraordinarily brilliant,

standing before you, and its appearance was terrifying. ³²The head of that statue was of pure gold, its chest and arms were of silver, its belly and thighs of bronze, ³³its legs of iron, and its feet partly of iron and partly of clay. ³⁴You watched as a stone was cut out — not by human hands — and it struck the statue on its feet of iron and clay, shattering them. ³⁵Then the iron, clay, bronze, silver, and gold were all crushed together and became like chaff on a summer threshing floor. The wind swept them away without leaving a trace. But the stone that struck the statue became a great mountain and filled the entire earth. ³⁶This was the dream, and now we will tell the king its interpretation. ³⁷You, O king, are king of kings. The God of heaven has given you the kingdom, the power, the strength, and the glory. ³⁸Wherever people dwell — along with the wild animals and birds of the sky — he has placed them under your authority and made you ruler over them all. You are that head of gold. ³⁹After you, another kingdom will arise, inferior to yours, and then a third kingdom, of bronze, which will rule over the entire earth. ⁴⁰A fourth kingdom will be as strong as iron, for just as iron shatters and crushes everything, so it will shatter and crush all the others. ⁴¹As you saw the feet and toes, partly of potter's clay and partly of iron — it will be a divided kingdom, though it will have some of the strength of iron in it, since you saw iron mixed with common clay. ⁴²Just as the toes of the feet were partly iron and partly clay, so this kingdom will be partly strong and partly brittle. ⁴³As you saw the iron mixed with common clay, so they will mix with one another through human alliances, but they will not hold together, just as iron does not bond with clay. ⁴⁴In the days of those kings, the God of heaven will establish a kingdom that will never be destroyed, nor will its sovereignty be left to another people. It will shatter and bring to an end all those kingdoms, but it itself will stand forever. ⁴⁵Just as you saw that a stone was cut from the mountain without human hands, and it crushed the iron, bronze, clay, silver, and gold — the great God has made known to the king what will take place in the future. The dream is certain and its interpretation is trustworthy." ⁴⁶Then King Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face and paid homage to Daniel. He ordered that an offering and incense be presented to him. ⁴⁷The king said to Daniel, "Truly, your God is the God of gods and the Lord of kings, and a Revealer of mysteries, since you were able to reveal this mystery." ⁴⁸Then the king promoted Daniel to a high position, gave him many lavish gifts, and made him ruler over the entire province of Babylon and chief administrator over all the wise men of Babylon. ⁴⁹At Daniel's request, the king appointed Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego over the administration of the province of Babylon, while Daniel himself remained at the king's court.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is still in Hebrew; the language shift to Aramaic occurs at verse 4b.
1. The dating 'second year' raises a difficulty — if Daniel's three-year training (1:5) has concluded, this should be at least the third year. Solutions include counting from a different starting point or the training ending early. We render as the text reads.
1. The verb *tipa'em* ('was agitated, was disturbed') from the root *pa'am* conveys a deep, restless disturbance — not mild concern but a shaking of the spirit. The plural *chalomot* ('dreams') may indicate recurring nightmares.
2. Four classes of Babylonian scholars are listed: *chartummim* (magicians/scribes), *ashshafim* (enchanters/conjurers), *mekhashshefim* (sorcerers/practitioners of magic), and *Kasdim* (Chaldeans). The Chaldeans here are not an ethnic group but a professional class of scholar-priests specializing in divination and astral observation.
2. The verb *lehaggid* ('to declare, tell') indicates the king wants more than interpretation — he wants the dream itself disclosed, as becomes clear in verse 5.
3. The verb *tipa'em* ('is agitated') recurs from verse 1, reinforcing the intensity of the king's distress. The phrase *lada'at et ha-chalom* ('to know the dream') is ambiguous — it could mean 'to understand what the dream means' or 'to recall the dream.' This ambiguity sets up the tension of the next verses.
4. CRITICAL LANGUAGE TRANSITION: The word *aramit* ('in Aramaic') signals the shift from Hebrew to Aramaic. From this point through 7:28, the biblical text itself is written in Aramaic. The Chaldeans speak in the lingua franca of the empire, and the narrator adopts this language for the remainder of the section dealing with international empires.
4. The greeting *malka le-almin cheyi* ('O king, live forever') is standard Babylonian court protocol. The phrase appears throughout Daniel's Aramaic sections as a formulaic address to royalty.
4. The Chaldeans' offer is reasonable — they will interpret if the king tells the dream. They assume the normal procedure of dream interpretation.
5. The Aramaic phrase *milta minni azda* is debated — it may mean 'the matter has gone from me' (i.e., he forgot the dream) or 'my decree is issued' (i.e., his decision is final). The latter reading, 'my decision is firm,' fits the context better: the king is establishing the terms, not confessing forgetfulness.

5. The punishment *hadamin tit'avdun* ('you will be made into pieces/limbs') refers to dismemberment — a documented Babylonian judicial punishment. The additional penalty of having houses turned into *nevali* ('dungheaps, ruins') represents total social obliteration.
6. The Aramaic *mattan* ('gifts'), *nevizbah* ('rewards, bonuses' — a Persian loanword), and *yeqar saggi* ('great honor') represent the full range of royal compensation. The king offers both material and social rewards as incentive alongside the threat of punishment — the carrot follows the stick.
7. The Chaldeans repeat their reasonable request — interpretation requires knowing the dream. Their insistence highlights the impossibility of the king's demand and sets the stage for Daniel's supernatural revelation. The word *tinyanut* ('a second time') emphasizes their persistence.
8. The phrase *iddana antun zavnin* ('you are buying time') uses the commercial metaphor of 'purchasing' a delay. The king suspects them of stalling, hoping he will either forget his demand or relent.
8. The phrase *azda minni milta* again — here confirming the interpretation 'my decree stands firm' rather than 'the dream has left me.'
9. The Aramaic *chada-hi datkhen* ('one is your sentence/law') means there is a single, non-negotiable verdict awaiting them — death by dismemberment as stated in verse 5.
9. The phrase *millah kidvah u-shechitah* ('words of falsehood and corruption') reveals the king's deeper motive: he suspects his advisors of routinely inventing interpretations. By demanding the dream itself, he creates a verifiable test of their genuine access to supernatural knowledge.
9. The phrase *ad di iddana yishtaneh* ('until the time changes') — the king believes they are stalling until political circumstances shift in their favor.
10. The Aramaic *al-yabeshta* ('upon the dry land/earth') is rendered 'on earth.' The Chaldeans' protest is both a defense and an inadvertent theological statement — they are correct that no human can do this; only God can.
10. Their argument from precedent ('no king has ever asked this') reveals the unprecedented nature of Nebuchadnezzar's demand and sets up the contrast with Daniel's God, who does what no earthly power can.
11. The Aramaic *yaqqirah* ('rare, precious, difficult') describes the impossibility of the demand. The Chaldeans' theological confession — that only gods (*elahin*) whose dwelling is not 'with flesh' (*im bisra*) could know this — is profoundly ironic. They unwittingly describe exactly what Daniel's God will do: the God of heaven, though transcendent, will reveal the mystery to a mortal.
11. The phrase *im bisra la ithohi* ('is not with flesh') reflects a Babylonian theological framework of distant, unapproachable deities — a framework Daniel's experience will overturn.
12. The paired terms *benas u-qetsaf saggi* ('angry and greatly furious') intensify each other — this is white-hot royal rage. The decree to destroy 'all' (*kol*) the wise men is sweeping — it would include Daniel and his friends, who are now counted among Babylon's scholars. This sets the narrative crisis in motion.
13. The participle *mitqattelin* ('being killed') may indicate that executions had already begun, or that the process was underway. We render 'were about to be killed' to convey the imminent danger.
13. Daniel and his *chavrohī* ('companions, associates') are caught up in the decree though they were never consulted — they are counted among the wise men of Babylon by virtue of their training and appointment in chapter 1.
14. The phrase *hativ eta u-te'em* ('returned counsel and discretion') emphasizes Daniel's composure — even facing execution, he responds with wisdom rather than panic. The same quality of diplomatic wisdom seen in his food negotiations in chapter 1.
14. Arioch bears the title *rav-tabbachayya* ('chief of the executioners/butchers'). The term *tabbachayya* literally means 'slaughterers,' reflecting the grim function of this office.
15. The Aramaic *mehachtsefah* ('harsh, severe, urgent') from the root *chatsaf* suggests both haste and harshness. Daniel's question is strategic — by asking 'why,' he opens a conversation that leads to opportunity rather than confrontation.
15. Arioch's willingness to explain rather than simply execute may reflect Daniel's reputation already established in chapter 1, or the favor God granted Daniel in 1:9 extending to this situation.
16. Daniel's boldness is remarkable — he gains direct audience with the king and makes a promise the Chaldeans could not make. He asks only for time (*zeman*), not for the dream to be told to him. This implicitly claims he can do what the professionals declared impossible.
17. The narrator again uses the Hebrew names rather than the Babylonian ones, maintaining the theological identity of these men. Daniel's first instinct is to gather his community of faith — he does not attempt to face this alone.
18. The Aramaic *rachamim* ('mercies, compassion') — Daniel seeks not information alone but divine compassion. The title *Elah shemayya* ('God of heaven') is the characteristic designation for Israel's God in the Aramaic sections of Daniel and Ezra, emphasizing God's sovereignty over all earthly kingdoms.
18. The word *raz* ('mystery, secret') is a Persian loanword (from Old Iranian *rāza*) that becomes the key theological term of this chapter. A *raz* is not merely unknown information — it is a divine secret that can only be revealed by God himself.
19. The verb *geli* ('was revealed, uncovered') is passive — the mystery is unveiled by God's initiative, not discovered through Daniel's effort. The *chezva di-leilya* ('vision of the night') distinguishes this from an ordinary dream; it is a deliberate divine communication.

19. Daniel's immediate response is worship — barekh ('blessed'). Before going to the king, before saving his own life, he turns to praise. This establishes the prayer of verses 20-23.
20. Daniel's prayer-poem in verses 20-23 is structured as a hymn of praise, distinct from the surrounding narrative. We preserve the poetic quality by rendering in elevated but modern English.
20. The phrase min-alma ve-ad alma is rendered 'from age to age' rather than the KJV's 'for ever and ever' to reflect the Aramaic sense of vast temporal expanse rather than abstract eternity.
21. The verbs are all participial — mehashneh, meh'addeh, mehaqqem — describing God's ongoing, habitual activity. This is not a one-time act but God's continuous governance of history.
21. The phrase meh'addeh malkin u-mehaqqem malkin ('removing kings and establishing kings') is the theological thesis of the entire book of Daniel — God is sovereign over political power. Every empire in Daniel's visions rises and falls by divine permission.
22. The pairing ammiqqata u-mesattrata ('the deep things and the hidden things') describes knowledge beyond human access — God penetrates depths and unveils concealment.
22. The final phrase nehora immeh shre ('light dwells with him') is a theological statement about God's nature: light — representing knowledge, truth, and revelation — has its home in God. This contrasts with the chashokha ('darkness') that conceals mysteries from human sight.
23. Daniel shifts from third person praise (vv. 20-22) to direct second-person address — the hymn becomes personal prayer. The phrase Elah abahatiy ('God of my ancestors') connects Daniel to the covenant tradition of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob even while standing in Babylon.
23. The shift from singular 'me' (li, 'to me') to plural 'us' (lana, 'to us') is significant — Daniel received the revelation individually but credits the communal prayer of his companions. The wisdom was given to him; the petition was made by them all.
24. Daniel's first words to Arioch are not about himself but about saving the wise men — 'Do not execute the wise men of Babylon.' His intervention saves the very class of scholars who could not help the king. This parallels Joseph saving Egypt's people despite being a prisoner himself.
24. The verb al-tehobed ('do not destroy') is an imperative — Daniel speaks with authority despite being a junior member of the court, emboldened by divine revelation.
25. The phrase be-hitbehalah ('in haste, urgently') shows Arioch's eagerness — he too is under threat if the executions proceed and later prove unnecessary.
25. Arioch claims credit — 'I have found' (hashkachat) — when in fact Daniel came to him. This small detail of court politics is characteristically realistic in Daniel's narrative style.
25. The phrase benei galuta di Yehud ('sons of the exile of Judah') identifies Daniel by his status as a deportee, emphasizing the irony: the answer comes not from Babylon's elite scholars but from a conquered exile.
26. The narrator inserts the Babylonian name Belteshazzar as a parenthetical — this is how the king would know him. But the text always leads with 'Daniel,' the Hebrew name, asserting the character's true identity.
26. The king's question ha-itakh kahel ('are you able') echoes the Chaldeans' declaration of impossibility in verse 10. The king is testing whether Daniel's claim exceeds what his own experts have declared cannot be done.
27. Daniel begins not by exalting himself but by affirming what the Chaldeans said: human wisdom cannot solve this. He lists four categories of professional scholars — chakkimin, ashfin, chartummin, gazrin — to emphasize that every class of human expertise fails before this mystery.
27. The term gazrin ('diviners, those who cut' — from the root gazar, 'to cut, determine') refers to specialists in cutting-divination, possibly hepatoscopy (reading animal livers). This is the only time they appear in the list.
28. The phrase itay Elah bishmayya ('there is a God in heaven') directly answers the Chaldeans' claim in verse 11 that 'the gods whose dwelling is not with flesh' cannot help. Daniel's God is in heaven yet communicates with humans — transcendent yet accessible.
28. The phrase be-acharit yomayya ('in the latter days,' 'at the end of days') is eschatological language — the dream concerns the ultimate trajectory of history, not merely the near future. This phrase connects to the prophetic tradition of Isaiah 2:2 and Micah 4:1.
28. Daniel deflects personal credit throughout — 'there is a God in heaven who reveals,' not 'I will reveal.'
29. Daniel calls God galeh razayya ('the Revealer of mysteries') — a title rather than a name, emphasizing God's unique role as the one who unveils what is hidden. No human guild or professional class shares this function.
29. The phrase mah di leheve acharei denah ('what will be after this') distinguishes from the eschatological 'latter days' of verse 28 — the dream addresses the sweep of future history, from Nebuchadnezzar's own time to the ultimate end.
30. Daniel explicitly disclaims personal superiority — la be-chokhma di itay bi ('not by wisdom that is in me'). The revelation came through him, not from him. This humility distinguishes Daniel from the professional wise men who trade on their own expertise.
30. The purpose clause 'that you may understand the thoughts of your heart' suggests Nebuchadnezzar's dream reflects his own deep anxieties about the future of his empire — God is answering the king's unspoken questions.

31. The Aramaic tselem ('image, statue') is the same word used in Genesis 1:26-27 (Hebrew tselem) for the image of God. This massive human-form statue stands as a counterfeit — human empire attempting to project divine-scale grandeur.
31. The description builds through three qualities: saggi ('great'), rav ('immense'), and ziyveh yattir ('its brilliance exceeding') — the statue overwhelms by sheer scale and radiance. Yet its appearance (reveh) is dechil ('terrifying'), not beautiful.
32. The four metals descend in value but increase in strength — gold is most precious but softest, iron is least valuable but hardest. This creates a paradox: the kingdoms grow stronger militarily but deteriorate in intrinsic worth.
32. The Aramaic dehav tav ('good gold, fine gold') emphasizes the quality of the gold head — the Babylonian kingdom at its zenith.
33. The division into two materials — iron and chasaf ('baked clay, pottery') — at the feet signals inherent instability. A statue resting on a mixture of the hardest metal and the most brittle ceramic is structurally doomed. The feet are the point of catastrophic failure in verse 34.
34. The Aramaic even ('stone') that is hitzezeret ('cut out') uses a passive verb with divine agency implied — God is the unnamed cutter. The phrase di-la vi-yadayin ('not by hands') emphatically excludes human involvement in this kingdom's origin.
34. The verb haddeqet ('crushed, shattered') indicates complete pulverization, not merely breaking into large pieces. The stone targets the weakest point — the composite feet.
35. The materials are listed in reverse order — iron, clay, bronze, silver, gold — from bottom to top, indicating total simultaneous collapse. The phrase ke-ur min-idderei qayit ('like chaff from summer threshing floors') is a vivid agricultural metaphor: summer chaff is the lightest, most insubstantial waste.
35. The phrase kol-atar la-hishtekach lehon ('no place was found for them') means complete annihilation — not just defeat but erasure from the landscape of history.
35. The transformation of the stone into a tur rav ('great mountain') that melet kol-ar'a ('filled the whole earth') signals a kingdom that is not merely one among many but all-encompassing.
36. The plural ne'mar ('we will tell') may be a royal or editorial 'we,' or it may include Daniel's companions who prayed for the revelation. Daniel has already proven his authority by recounting the dream without being told — the interpretation now follows with full credibility.
37. The title melekh malkaiya ('king of kings') is standard ancient Near Eastern imperial titlature. But Daniel immediately qualifies it — Nebuchadnezzar holds this authority because the God of heaven gave it. The four gifts — malkuta ('kingdom'), chisna ('strength/dominion'), toqfa ('power'), and yeqara ('glory') — are all divine grants, not self-generated accomplishments.
38. The language of dominion over humans, beasts, and birds echoes the creation mandate of Genesis 1:28 and God's covenant with Noah in Genesis 9:2. Nebuchadnezzar is cast as a kind of Adam figure — given comprehensive authority over the created order. But unlike Adam's, this authority is delegated and temporary.
38. The identification 'you are the head of gold' (anteh hu re'sha di dahava) makes Nebuchadnezzar's Babylon the first and most glorious kingdom. Gold is the most precious metal — subsequent kingdoms will be lesser in this quality.
39. The second kingdom (silver) is described only as ara'a minnakh ('inferior to you') — less glorious than Babylon, though historically more extensive. The text does not name these kingdoms, and scholarly debate continues about their identification.
39. The third kingdom (bronze) is said to tishlat be-khol-ar'a ('rule over the whole earth') — the most expansive claim made of any kingdom in the sequence. The descending metal value but increasing geographic scope creates a paradox of deteriorating quality with expanding reach.
40. The fourth kingdom is defined entirely by destructive force — the verbs mehaddeq ('shatters'), chashel ('breaks'), tadiq ('crushes'), and tero'a ('smashes') all describe violent domination. Iron is chosen not for beauty or value but for its capacity to destroy.
40. The repetition of iron imagery emphasizes relentless military power. This is the kingdom with the least inherent value (iron versus gold, silver, bronze) but the greatest destructive capability.
41. The Aramaic peligah ('divided') indicates internal fracture — this kingdom lacks the unity of the previous three. The mixture of iron and chasaf tina ('clay of mud/common clay') represents an attempted fusion that cannot hold.
41. The phrase min-nitsbeta di farzela ('from the firmness of iron') indicates residual strength — the fourth kingdom retains iron's power in some measure but is fatally compromised by the clay admixture.
42. The contrast between taqqifah ('strong') and tevirah ('brittle, broken, fragile') within a single kingdom captures the internal contradiction. The toes — ten of them, possibly representing subdivisions — embody this unstable mixture.
43. The phrase bi-zra' anasha ('by the seed of men,' 'through human intermarriage/alliances') likely refers to political marriages intended to forge alliances between rival factions — a common ancient diplomatic strategy. Despite these efforts at unity, the kingdom remains fundamentally incompatible with itself.
43. The verb davqin ('adhere, cling, bond') echoes the Genesis 2:24 usage of the same root for marital bonding — the political unions will fail where true covenant bonds would succeed.

44. The phrase Elah shemayya yeqim malku ('the God of heaven will establish a kingdom') uses the same verb (qum, 'establish, raise up') used for the rising of human kingdoms in verse 39, but with God as the explicit agent.
44. Three negations define this kingdom: la titchabbal ('will not be destroyed'), la tishteviq ('will not be left/abandoned to another'), and the implicit contrast with every preceding kingdom that did fall. The permanence is absolute.
44. The Aramaic le-almayya ('for the ages, forever') uses the plural of olam, intensifying the duration beyond even the singular form.
45. Here the stone's origin is specified: mi-tura ('from the mountain') — the stone comes from God's mountain, the cosmic mountain that it will itself become (v. 35). The mountain of God produces the stone that becomes a mountain filling the earth.
45. The closing formula yatstsiv chelma u-meheiman pishreh ('the dream is certain and its interpretation trustworthy') uses legal language — yatstsiv means 'established, firm' and meheiman means 'reliable, faithful.' Daniel certifies both the accuracy of his dream report and the reliability of his interpretation.
45. The title Elah rav ('the great God') appears here for the first time in Daniel — Daniel proclaims God's greatness to the most powerful man on earth.
46. The verb segid ('did obeisance, worshipped, paid homage') is the same word used throughout Daniel 3 for worship of the golden image. Nebuchadnezzar prostrates himself before Daniel — an extraordinary act for the most powerful king on earth. Whether this constitutes actual worship or royal tribute is debated; Daniel does not refuse it, which has puzzled commentators.
46. The offering of minchah ('grain offering') and nichochin ('incense, pleasing aromas') are sacrificial terms — the king treats Daniel as a divine intermediary, though the next verse shows his praise ultimately directed at Daniel's God.
47. Nebuchadnezzar makes three confessions: Elah elahin ('God of gods') — supreme over all deities; Mare malkin ('Lord of kings') — sovereign over all rulers, including Nebuchadnezzar himself; and Galeh razin ('Revealer of mysteries') — possessing unique knowledge that no human wisdom can access.
47. The phrase min-qeshot ('from truth, truly') introduces a genuine acknowledgment, not mere flattery. This confession anticipates the fuller acknowledgment of chapter 4, though it falls short of exclusive monotheistic faith — Nebuchadnezzar ranks Daniel's God highest among gods rather than declaring him the only God.
48. Daniel's elevation follows the Joseph pattern — a captive exile rises to the second-highest position in the empire through divinely given wisdom. The twin roles of political governor (over the province) and intellectual chief (over the wise men) place Daniel at the intersection of power and knowledge.
48. The phrase rav signin ('chief of the prefects/governors') makes Daniel the administrative head over the very scholars who could not answer the king. He saves them from execution and then leads them.
49. Daniel's first act of authority is to share power with his companions — he does not hoard his elevation but immediately provides for the three who prayed with him in verse 18. Their Babylonian names are used here because they are being installed in official Babylonian positions.
49. The phrase be-tera' malka ('in the gate of the king') means at the royal court — the 'gate' being the seat of government in ancient Near Eastern administration. Daniel operates at the imperial center while his friends govern the provincial level. This positioning sets up the crisis of chapter 3, where the three friends will be present in the province while Daniel is apparently absent.

3

Summary: *Daniel 3 recounts Nebuchadnezzar's construction of a colossal golden statue on the plain of Dura and his decree that all officials must bow and worship it at the sound of music — under penalty of death in a blazing furnace. Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refuse to bow. When brought before the furious king and given a second chance, they deliver one of the Bible's most remarkable statements of faith: their God is able to deliver them, but even if he does not, they will not serve the king's gods. Thrown into a furnace heated seven times beyond normal, they walk unharmed among the flames. Nebuchadnezzar sees a fourth figure in the fire, 'like a son of the gods,' and calls them out. He then decrees protection for their God and promotes them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is written entirely in Aramaic. Daniel himself is absent from the narrative — only his three companions appear, identified throughout by their Babylonian names (Shadrach, Meshach, Abednego) since they are operating in official Babylonian capacity. The declaration in verses 17-18 is one of the most theologically sophisticated statements in scripture: it simultaneously affirms God's power to save and accepts the possibility that he may choose not to — without this diminishing their obedience. The 'but even if he does not' (hen la, v. 18) distinguishes biblical faith from transactional religion. The fourth figure in the fire (v. 25), described as 'like a son of the gods' (bar elahin), has been interpreted as an angel, a theophany, or a Christophany. The*

Aramaic is deliberately ambiguous — Nebuchadnezzar uses polytheistic language to describe a phenomenon beyond his theological categories.

Translation Friction: *The chapter's repetitive style — listing the same officials (v. 2-3) and musical instruments (vv. 5, 7, 10, 15) multiple times — is a deliberate literary technique, not editorial sloppiness. The repetition creates a bureaucratic, imperial tone that contrasts with the simple directness of the three men's confession. Several of the musical instrument names are Greek loanwords (qitharos/kithara, pesanterin/psalterion, sumponayah/symphonia), which has bearing on dating discussions but does not affect our rendering. The phrase bar elahin ('son of the gods,' v. 25) versus malakh ('angel,' v. 28) — Nebuchadnezzar first describes what he sees in his own polytheistic terms, then in verse 28 reinterprets it as God's 'angel/messenger.' We preserve both descriptions without harmonizing them.*

Connections: *The golden image on the plain of Dura may respond to the gold-head identification of chapter 2 — Nebuchadnezzar attempts to make the entire statue gold, rejecting the prophecy of successive kingdoms. The fiery furnace echoes the 'iron furnace' (kur ha-barzel) of Deuteronomy 4:20 and Jeremiah 11:4, where Egypt was a smelting furnace — here the furnace purifies faith rather than destroying it. The refusal to bow before an image connects to the Decalogue's prohibition of idolatry (Exodus 20:3-5). The fourth figure in the fire anticipates the 'Son of Man' figure in Daniel 7:13. The pattern of persecution, faithful resistance, and divine deliverance becomes paradigmatic for Jewish and Christian martyrdom literature.*

¹King Nebuchadnezzar made a statue of gold, sixty cubits tall and six cubits wide, and set it up on the plain of Dura in the province of Babylon. ²King Nebuchadnezzar sent word to assemble the satraps, prefects, governors, advisors, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the provincial officials for the dedication of the statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had erected. ³So the satraps, prefects, governors, counselors, treasurers, judges, magistrates, and all the provincial officials assembled for the dedication of the statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had erected. They stood before the statue that Nebuchadnezzar had set up. ⁴A herald proclaimed loudly, "To you it is commanded, O peoples, nations, and languages: ⁵At the moment you hear the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, drum, and every kind of instrument, you are to fall down and worship the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar has set up. ⁶Whoever does not fall down and worship will immediately be thrown into a blazing furnace of fire." ⁷Therefore, at that moment, when all the peoples heard the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, and every kind of instrument, all the peoples, nations, and languages fell down and worshiped the golden statue that King Nebuchadnezzar had set up. ⁸At that time, certain Chaldeans came forward and denounced the Jews. ⁹They spoke up and said to King Nebuchadnezzar, "O king, live forever! ¹⁰You, O king, issued a decree that everyone who hears the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, drum, and every kind of instrument must fall down and worship the golden statue, ¹¹and whoever does not fall down and worship will be thrown into a blazing furnace of fire. ¹²There are certain Jews whom you appointed over the administration of the province of Babylon — Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men, O king, have paid no attention to you. They do not serve your gods, and they do not worship the golden statue you have set up." ¹³Then Nebuchadnezzar, in a rage of fury, ordered Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego brought before him. The men were brought before the king. ¹⁴Nebuchadnezzar asked them, "Is it true, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, that you do not serve my gods or worship the golden statue I have set up? ¹⁵Now, if you are ready, at the moment you hear the sound of the horn, pipe, lyre, trigon, harp, drum, and every kind of instrument, to fall down and worship the statue I have made — very well. But if you do not worship, you will be thrown immediately into a blazing furnace of fire. And what god is there who can deliver you from my hand?" ¹⁶Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego answered the king, "Nebuchadnezzar, we have no need to defend ourselves before you in this matter. ¹⁷If our God whom we serve exists, he is able to rescue us from the blazing furnace of fire and from your hand, O king. ¹⁸But even if he does not — let it be known to you, O king, that we will not serve your gods, and we will not worship the golden statue you have set up." ¹⁹Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with fury, and the expression on his face changed toward Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He gave orders to heat the furnace seven times hotter than it was usually heated. ²⁰He commanded some of the strongest soldiers in his army to bind Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego and throw them into the blazing furnace of fire. ²¹So the men were bound in their robes, trousers, turbans, and other garments, and thrown into the blazing furnace of fire. ²²Because the king's order was so urgent and the furnace was heated to such an extreme, the flames of the fire killed the soldiers who carried Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego up. ²

³And the three men — Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego — fell bound into the blazing furnace of fire. ²⁴Then King Nebuchadnezzar was astonished and leaped to his feet in alarm. He asked his advisors, "Did we not throw three men, bound, into the fire?" They replied, "Certainly, O king." ²⁵He exclaimed, "Look! I see four men, unbound, walking in the middle of the fire, and they are unharmed! And the appearance of the fourth is like a son of the gods." ²⁶Nebuchadnezzar then approached the opening of the blazing furnace and called out, "Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, servants of the Most High God, come out! Come here!" So Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego came out of the fire. ²⁷The satraps, prefects, governors, and royal advisors crowded around and saw that the fire had no power over the bodies of these men. The hair on their heads was not singed, their robes were not scorched, and there was no smell of fire on them. ²⁸Nebuchadnezzar declared, "Blessed be the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who sent his angel and rescued his servants who trusted in him! They defied the royal decree and gave up their bodies rather than serve or worship any god except their own God. ²⁹Therefore I issue a decree: any people, nation, or language that speaks blasphemy against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego will be torn limb from limb, and their houses will be reduced to rubble, for there is no other god who can rescue like this." ³⁰Then the king promoted Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the province of Babylon.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter is entirely in Aramaic, continuing the language begun at 2:4b.
1. The dimensions — sixty cubits high (roughly 90 feet / 27 meters) by six cubits wide (roughly 9 feet / 2.7 meters) — create an unusually elongated proportion (10:1), suggesting either a statue on a tall pedestal or a deliberately exaggerated monument. A cubit is approximately 18 inches (45 cm).
1. The phrase *tselem di dehav* ('image of gold') may mean solid gold or gold-plated — the latter being more practical at this scale. The word *tselem* is the same used for the dream statue in chapter 2. By making the entire image gold, Nebuchadnezzar may be asserting that his golden kingdom will not be succeeded by inferior ones — a defiant rejection of the dream's message.
2. The seven-fold list of officials represents every tier of the imperial bureaucracy — from satraps (*achashdarpenaiya*, a Persian loanword for provincial governors) down to local magistrates (*tiftaye*). The exhaustive listing emphasizes the totalitarian scope of the decree: no official is exempt.
2. The word *chanukkat* ('dedication') uses the same root as the Hebrew Hanukkah — an ironic connection, since the later Hanukkah festival celebrates the opposite: the rededication of God's temple after its desecration by a pagan king.
3. The near-verbatim repetition of the official list from verse 2 is deliberate — the narrator uses bureaucratic repetition to evoke the grinding, mechanical quality of imperial conformity. Everyone summoned, everyone assembled, everyone standing in formation. The individual disappears into the mass.
3. The slight variation in the list order (*adargozrayya*/'counselors' replaces 'advisors') is characteristic of Aramaic repetitive style, where minor variations prevent exact monotony.
4. The phrase *ammayya ummayya ve-lishanayya* ('peoples, nations, and tongues') is a universal formula that appears repeatedly in Daniel's Aramaic sections (3:4, 7, 29; 4:1; 5:19; 6:25; 7:14). It represents the totality of humanity under Babylonian rule — every ethnic group, every political entity, every language community.
5. The six instruments listed include both Semitic and Greek terms: *qarna* ('horn'), *mashroqita* ('pipe, flute'), *qitharos* ('lyre' — from Greek *kithara*), *sabbeka* ('trigon,' a triangular stringed instrument), *pesanterin* ('harp' — from Greek *psalterion*), and *sumponeyah* ('drum' or 'bagpipe' — from Greek *symphonia*). The Greek loanwords indicate cultural exchange between Babylonia and the Greek world, which is historically attested for the Neo-Babylonian period.
5. The command is binary: hear the music, prostrate yourself. No exceptions, no alternatives. The verb *tisgidun* ('worship, do obeisance') is the same verb used of Nebuchadnezzar's own prostration before Daniel in 2:46.
6. The phrase *bah-sha'ta* ('in that same hour, immediately') eliminates any possibility of reflection, appeal, or delay. The punishment is instant and public.
6. The *attun nura yaqidta* ('furnace of burning fire') was likely a lime kiln or smelting furnace — industrial furnaces of enormous size are archaeologically attested in ancient Mesopotamia. The punishment by burning was known in Babylonian law (attested in the Code of Hammurabi).
7. The *sumponeyah* ('drum/bagpipe') is omitted from this repetition of the instrument list — a minor variation typical of Aramaic repetitive style. The narrative emphasis falls on the universal compliance: 'all the peoples, nations, and languages' obeyed. Against this backdrop of total conformity, the three men's refusal in verse 12 stands out as an extraordinary act.
8. The phrase *akalu qartsehon* ('ate their pieces,' i.e., 'devoured their flesh') is an Aramaic idiom meaning to slander or maliciously accuse — rendered 'denounced' to capture the hostile intent without the literal cannibalistic imagery.

8. The accusers are identified as Kasdain ('Chaldeans') — the same professional class that failed in chapter 2. Their accusation may be motivated by professional jealousy: these Jewish exiles who replaced them in the king's favor are now vulnerable.
9. The formulaic greeting *malka le-almin cheyi* ('O king, live forever') is the standard court address, identical to 2:4. The courtly politeness contrasts sharply with the lethal intent of their accusation.
10. The accusers begin by restating the king's own decree — a legal strategy ensuring the king is committed to his own words before they name the offenders. The full instrument list is repeated yet again, reinforcing the oppressive thoroughness of the imperial command.
11. The penalty clause is quoted verbatim from verse 6 — the accusers are building an airtight legal case before springing the trap. They want the king to acknowledge the penalty before revealing who has violated the decree.
12. The accusation is layered with strategic barbs: they emphasize that these are Jews (foreigners), that the king himself appointed them (making their disobedience personally insulting), and that their refusal is comprehensive — they serve neither the king's gods generally nor this statue specifically.
12. The phrase *la samu alakh te'em* ('they have set no regard upon you') goes beyond describing the act — it accuses them of contempt for the king's authority. The accusers turn a religious act into a political crime.
12. Daniel is conspicuously absent from the accusation. His role 'at the king's gate' (2:49) may have placed him elsewhere, or his position may have been too powerful to attack.
13. The paired terms *birgaz va-chamah* ('in agitation and wrath') intensify each other — this is explosive, volcanic anger. Yet the king gives them a second chance in the next verses, suggesting his fury is mixed with reluctance to lose capable administrators he himself promoted.
14. The word *ha-tseda* ('is it deliberate, is it true') can mean either 'is it true?' or 'is it intentional?' — the king may be offering them an escape route, suggesting their absence from worship was accidental rather than defiant. The question form creates a moment of grace before the final ultimatum.
15. The king offers a second chance — *hen itekhon atidin* ('if you are ready/prepared') shows a willingness to overlook the first offense. The instrument list is repeated a fifth time, hammering the mechanical, relentless quality of the imperial cult.
15. The final challenge — *u-man hu Elah di yesheizvinkkhon min-yadai* ('and who is the god who can deliver you from my hand?') — is a direct challenge to divine sovereignty. It echoes the boasts of the Assyrian king Sennacherib in 2 Kings 18:35 and Isaiah 36:20. In biblical narrative, such challenges invariably receive divine answers.
16. The response omits the courtly greeting 'O king, live forever' — a deliberate breach of protocol signaling that they no longer acknowledge the king's authority over their worship.
16. The phrase *la chashchin anachna* ('we have no need') does not express indifference but confident clarity — they do not need time, counsel, or further deliberation. Their answer is already decided.
16. The word *pitgam* ('word, response, defense') carries legal overtones — they are declining to mount a defense, accepting the consequences.
17. The phrase *hen itay Elahana* ('if our God exists' or 'if it be so that our God...') is debated. Some take *hen itay* as 'if it be so' (a conditional introducing what follows), others as 'if our God... exists' (a bolder conditional acknowledging the possibility of divine non-intervention). We render it preserving the ambiguity — the Aramaic allows both readings.
17. The verb *yakhil* ('is able') affirms God's power absolutely — there is no doubt about capability. The question is not whether God can save, but whether he will.
18. The *ve-hen la* ('but if not') creates one of the most dramatic theological hinges in the Hebrew Bible. In two Aramaic words, the three men affirm that their obedience is not contingent on deliverance. This shatters the 'prosperity gospel' framework entirely — faithfulness is not a strategy for securing divine benefits.
18. The declaration is structured as a legal notice: *yedi'a leheve lakh* ('let it be known to you') — they are formally informing the king of their decision, treating him as a party deserving notification rather than an authority requiring obedience.
19. The phrase *tselem anpohi eshtanni* ('the image/form of his face changed') uses *tselem* — the same word for the golden statue. The king's face, his human 'image,' distorts with rage just as the golden image distorts true worship.
19. The sevenfold heating is an expression of extreme fury rather than a precise temperature measurement — 'seven' in Semitic usage often means 'to the uttermost.' The irony is that excessive heat will kill the executioners (v. 22) while the intended victims survive.
20. The phrase *guvrin gibbarei-chayil* ('men, mighty men of strength') — the strongest warriors are selected for the task, emphasizing the overkill of the response. The military language treats the three unarmed men as if they were a threat requiring overwhelming force.
21. The detailed list of clothing — *sarbalehon* ('robes/mantles'), *pattshehon* ('trousers/tunics'), *ve-kharbelathon* ('turbans/caps') — emphasizes that they were thrown in fully dressed, without any protective preparation. The same detail makes their emergence in verse 27 all the more miraculous when not even the smell of fire clings to them.
21. The exact identification of these garments is debated among scholars; the Aramaic terms may be Persian loanwords, and their precise meaning is uncertain. We follow the most widely accepted renderings.

- 22.** The irony is devastating — the men assigned to execute the sentence are themselves executed by the king's own excessive rage. The sheviva di nura ('flame/spark of fire') kills the soldiers but not the condemned men. The furnace obeys God's jurisdiction, not Nebuchadnezzar's.
- 22.** The verb hassiku ('brought up, lifted') indicates the furnace opening was above — the men had to be carried up and dropped in.
- 23.** The word mekhaffetin ('bound') is the last detail before the miracle — they entered the fire restrained, helpless, unable to do anything to save themselves. Their deliverance is entirely God's work.
- 24.** The verb tevah ('was astonished, was stunned') describes a shock so great it produces physical reaction — the king jumps up (qam be-hitbehalah, 'rose in haste/alarm'). The most powerful man on earth is shaken by what he sees.
- 24.** The verification question is shrewd narrative — by establishing the factual baseline (three men, bound, into the fire), the narrator heightens the impossibility of what the king sees next.
- 25.** We render 'like a son of the gods' rather than the KJV's 'like the Son of God.' The Aramaic bar elahin is indefinite and plural — 'a son of gods/divine beings' — not a definite monotheistic title. Nebuchadnezzar is describing what he sees through his own polytheistic framework.
- 25.** The four elements of the king's observation are carefully structured: four (not three), unbound (not bound as they went in), walking (not collapsed), and unharmed (chaval la itay behon — 'injury is not in them'). Every expected condition has been reversed.
- 25.** The verb sharayin ('loose, unbound') — the fire did what the soldiers could not undo: it burned the ropes but not the men.
- 26.** The title Elaha illaha ('God Most High') is a significant theological concession — Nebuchadnezzar now identifies their God not merely as 'your god' but as the supreme deity. The Aramaic illaha ('most high') echoes the Hebrew Elyon used of God in Genesis 14:18-22 (Melchizedek's God).
- 26.** The king himself approaches the furnace door — the same furnace whose heat killed his soldiers. His approach to the fire to summon God's servants is an act of submission disguised as a royal command.
- 26.** The phrase avdohi di Elaha illaha ('servants of the Most High God') redefines their identity — they are not Babylonian officials who happen to have a private religion; they are first and foremost servants of the supreme God.
- 27.** The fourfold negation builds to a climax of impossibility: the fire had no power (la shelet) over their bodies, their hair was not burned (la hitcharak), their garments were not changed (la sheno), and no smell of fire (reach nur) had come upon them. Each detail makes the miracle more emphatic — fire did not merely fail to kill them; it failed to touch them at all.
- 27.** The assembled officials serve as witnesses — the miracle is publicly verified by the empire's own bureaucracy. The same officials who bowed to the golden statue now see evidence of a power greater than the king's.
- 28.** The king now says malakheh ('his angel/messenger') — reinterpreting the bar elahin ('son of the gods') of verse 25 in less polytheistic terms. The progression shows Nebuchadnezzar groping toward a theology adequate to what he has witnessed.
- 28.** The phrase hitrekhtsu alohi ('trusted in him') uses a verb meaning 'to lean on, rely upon' — the three men leaned their full weight on their God. The king recognizes this trust as the operative force.
- 28.** Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges that the three men shanniv millat malka ('changed/overrode the king's word') — an extraordinary admission that a decree of the most powerful monarch on earth was nullified by the faith of three prisoners.
- 29.** The phrase yei'mar shalu ('speaks negligence/error/blasphemy') uses shalu, a word meaning carelessness or offense — any disrespectful speech about this God is prohibited. The punishment replicates the threat from 2:5, showing that Nebuchadnezzar's penalties are consistent.
- 29.** The king's conclusion — la itay Elah achoran di-yikhul le-hatsalah kidnah ('there is no other god who can rescue like this') — is a functional acknowledgment of supremacy without full monotheistic conversion. He ranks this God above all others in power but does not abandon his own gods.
- 30.** The verb hatslach ('caused to prosper, promoted') indicates advancement beyond their previous positions. The men who refused the empire's ultimate demand receive the empire's ultimate reward. The chapter ends where it began — in the province of Babylon — but the power dynamics have been permanently altered. The golden statue is never mentioned again.

4

Summary: *Daniel 4 is Nebuchadnezzar's first-person royal testimony — the most powerful monarch on earth narrating his own humiliation, madness, and restoration. The chapter opens with a royal proclamation praising God, then flashes back to the events: Nebuchadnezzar dreams of an immense tree that shelters all life, then is cut down by a divine watcher. Only its stump remains, bound with iron and bronze, and 'seven times' pass over it while it lives among the animals. Daniel (Belteshazzar) interprets the dream as referring to the king himself — he will be driven from humanity and live like an animal until he acknowledges that the Most High rules over human kingdoms. Twelve months later, the prophecy is fulfilled when Nebuchadnezzar boasts over Babylon and is struck with madness. After the appointed period, his sanity returns, he lifts his eyes to heaven, and he praises the God who 'does according to his will among the host of heaven and the inhabitants of the earth.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is unique in biblical literature — a pagan king writes his own conversion testimony, narrating his humiliation in first person. The literary frame (vv. 1-3 and 34-37) is Nebuchadnezzar's own voice; the central narrative (vv. 4-33) shifts between first and third person, mirroring the king's loss and recovery of selfhood. The condition described — living as an animal, hair like eagle feathers, nails like bird claws — has been compared to clinical lycanthropy (boanthropy), a documented psychological condition where a person believes they are an animal. The 'watchers' (irin, v. 13) are angelic beings unique to Daniel's vocabulary, later developed extensively in 1 Enoch. The theological lesson is stated three times with increasing force (vv. 17, 25, 32): 'the Most High rules over the kingdom of humanity and gives it to whomever he wishes.' This chapter is entirely in Aramaic.*

Translation Friction: *The verse numbering differs between English and Aramaic Bibles — the Aramaic text places 4:1-3 at the end of chapter 3 (as 3:31-33), making the Aramaic chapter 4 begin at English 4:4. We follow the English versification standard. The word irin ('watchers,' v. 13) appears nowhere else in the Hebrew Bible, though the concept developed significantly in Second Temple literature. The phrase shiv'ah iddanin ('seven times,' vv. 16, 23, 25, 32) is ambiguous — 'times' could mean years, seasons, or undefined periods. We render 'seven periods' in the expanded rendering to preserve the ambiguity while using 'seven times' in the reading text for familiarity. The shift from first to third person in the middle of the chapter (v. 28 onward) may reflect the king's loss of rational selfhood — he can no longer narrate his own story, so the narrator steps in.*

Connections: *The tree imagery connects to Ezekiel 31, where Pharaoh is compared to a great cedar of Lebanon that is cut down — both passages use cosmic tree symbolism to address imperial hubris. The 'watchers' anticipate the angelic hierarchies of Daniel 7-12 and the developed angelology of 1 Enoch. Nebuchadnezzar's madness and restoration follows the biblical pattern of exile and return — even the greatest Gentile king must pass through humiliation before he can rightly praise God. The confession in verse 35 ('he does according to his will among the host of heaven') echoes and anticipates the doxologies of the Psalms (Psalm 115:3, 135:6). The chapter's theme — God humbles the proud — resonates with Isaiah 14 (the fall of the king of Babylon), Proverbs 16:18, and the Magnificat (Luke 1:52).*

1King Nebuchadnezzar, to all peoples, nations, and languages dwelling throughout the earth: May your prosperity increase! 2It has pleased me to declare the signs and wonders that the Most High God has done for me. 3How great are his signs! How mighty are his wonders! His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and his dominion endures from generation to generation. 4I, Nebuchadnezzar, was at ease in my house and flourishing in my palace. 5I had a dream that frightened me. The thoughts on my bed and the visions in my mind terrified me. 6I gave orders to bring all the wise men of Babylon before me so they could make the dream's interpretation known to me. 7Then the magicians, enchanters, Chaldeans, and diviners came in, and I told them the dream, but they could not make its interpretation known to me. 8Finally, Daniel came before me — he who is called Belteshazzar, after the name of my god — and in whom is the spirit of the holy gods. I told him the dream: 9"Belteshazzar, chief of the magicians, I know that the spirit of the holy gods is in you and no mystery is too difficult for you. Here are the visions of my dream — tell me its interpretation. 10These were the visions in my mind as I lay on my bed: I looked, and

there was a tree in the center of the earth, and its height was enormous. ¹¹The tree grew large and strong; its top reached the sky, and it was visible to the ends of the whole earth. ¹²Its foliage was beautiful and its fruit abundant — enough food for all. The wild animals found shade beneath it, the birds of the sky nested in its branches, and all living creatures were fed from it. ¹³As I watched in the visions of my mind while on my bed, a watcher — a holy one — descended from heaven. ¹⁴He called out in a loud voice: 'Cut down the tree and lop off its branches! Strip its foliage and scatter its fruit! Let the animals flee from beneath it and the birds from its branches. ¹⁵But leave the stump with its roots in the ground, bound with a band of iron and bronze, in the tender grass of the field. Let him be drenched with the dew of heaven, and let his portion be with the animals in the grass of the earth. ¹⁶Let his mind be changed from that of a human, and let the mind of an animal be given to him. Let seven times pass over him. ¹⁷The sentence is by the decree of the watchers, and the verdict by the word of the holy ones, so that the living may know that the Most High rules over the kingdom of humanity. He gives it to whomever he wishes and sets over it the lowliest of people.' ¹⁸This is the dream that I, King Nebuchadnezzar, saw. Now you, Belteshazzar, tell me its interpretation, since none of the wise men in my kingdom can make the interpretation known to me. But you are able, because the spirit of the holy gods is in you." ¹⁹Then Daniel, who was called Belteshazzar, was stunned for a time, and his thoughts alarmed him. The king said, "Belteshazzar, do not let the dream or its interpretation alarm you." Belteshazzar answered, "My lord, may the dream apply to those who hate you, and its interpretation to your enemies! ²⁰The tree you saw, which grew large and strong, whose top reached the sky and was visible to the whole earth, ²¹whose foliage was beautiful and fruit abundant, providing food for all, under which the wild animals lived and in whose branches the birds of the sky made their home — ²²that tree is you, O king. You have grown great and strong; your greatness has increased until it reaches the sky, and your dominion extends to the ends of the earth. ²³As for the king seeing a watcher, a holy one, descending from heaven and saying, 'Cut down the tree and destroy it, but leave the stump with its roots in the ground, bound with iron and bronze in the tender grass of the field; let him be drenched with the dew of heaven and let his portion be with the wild animals until seven times pass over him' — ²⁴this is the interpretation, O king, and this is the decree of the Most High that has come upon my lord the king: ²⁵You will be driven away from human society. Your dwelling will be with the wild animals. You will eat grass like cattle and be drenched with the dew of heaven. Seven times will pass over you, until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdom of humanity and gives it to whomever he wishes. ²⁶As for the command to leave the stump with its roots — your kingdom will be restored to you once you acknowledge that Heaven rules. ²⁷Therefore, O king, may my counsel be acceptable to you: break away from your sins by doing what is right, and from your iniquities by showing mercy to the oppressed. Perhaps your prosperity may be extended." ²⁸All this happened to King Nebuchadnezzar. ²⁹Twelve months later, as he was walking on the roof of the royal palace in Babylon, ³⁰the king declared, "Is this not great Babylon, which I have built as a royal residence by my own mighty power and for the glory of my majesty?" ³¹While the words were still on the king's lips, a voice fell from heaven: "King Nebuchadnezzar, this is declared to you: the kingdom has been taken from you! ³²You will be driven from human society, your dwelling will be with the wild animals, and you will eat grass like cattle. Seven times will pass over you until you acknowledge that the Most High rules over the kingdom of humanity and gives it to whomever he wishes." ³³Immediately the decree was fulfilled against Nebuchadnezzar. He was driven from human society, ate grass like cattle, and his body was drenched with the dew of heaven until his hair grew like eagles' feathers and his nails like birds' claws. ³⁴At the end of that period, I, Nebuchadnezzar, lifted my eyes toward heaven, and my sanity was restored to me. I blessed the Most High and praised and honored the One who lives forever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion and whose kingdom endures from generation to generation. ³⁵All the inhabitants of the earth are regarded as nothing. He does as he pleases with the host of heaven and the inhabitants of the earth. No one can restrain his hand or say to him, 'What have you done?' ³⁶At that time my sanity was restored to me, and my honor and splendor returned to me for the glory of my kingdom. My advisors and nobles sought me out, and I was reestablished over my kingdom, and even greater majesty was added to me. ³⁷Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise, exalt, and honor the King of heaven, for all his works are truth and his ways are just. And those who walk in pride, he is able to humble.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter is entirely in Aramaic. The opening is formatted as a royal edict — the standard Babylonian letter format begins with the sender's name and rank, followed by the addressees and a greeting.
1. The phrase shalamkhon yisge ('may your peace increase') uses shalam, the Aramaic cognate of Hebrew shalom. We render 'prosperity' rather than 'peace' here because the greeting is formulaic court language from a king to his subjects, equivalent to 'may you flourish.' The universal address — all peoples, nations, and languages — matches the scope of 3:4 and signals that this is a public decree, not a private letter.
2. The king uses the title Elaha illaha ('God Most High') — the same title used in 3:26, showing theological continuity with the fiery furnace experience. But now the king speaks from personal experience, not merely as a witness.
2. The paired words atayya ('signs') and timhayya ('wonders') are the same Aramaic terms used for God's acts of deliverance throughout the Hebrew Bible — Nebuchadnezzar has adopted the vocabulary of Israel's worship to describe what God has done to him.
3. This verse is the climax of the prologue — Nebuchadnezzar's own words declaring God's eternal sovereignty. The exclamatory structure (kemah ravrevin, 'how great!') expresses genuine awe. The king who asked 'what god can deliver you from my hand?' (3:15) now proclaims that God's kingdom outlasts every human dynasty.
3. The phrase im-dar ve-dar ('from generation to generation') contrasts with the four-kingdom sequence of chapter 2 — human kingdoms pass in sequence, but God's kingdom spans all of them.
4. The first-person narration begins. The paired terms sheleh ('at ease, tranquil') and ra'anan ('flourishing, green, prosperous') paint a picture of complete security — the king is comfortable, thriving, without a care. This state of supreme contentment is precisely where the dream disrupts him, just as in chapter 2.
4. The word ra'anan ('flourishing') is the same adjective used for a thriving tree in Psalm 92:14 and Jeremiah 17:8 — an unintentional irony, since the king is about to dream of a flourishing tree that is cut down.
5. The escalation from yedachlinnani ('frightened me') to yevahalunnani ('terrified me') shows increasing distress. The king moves from discomfort to full terror. The word harhorin ('thoughts, anxieties') suggests the dream triggered cascading dread even after waking.
6. Unlike chapter 2, the king this time tells the wise men the dream — he does not demand that they both reveal and interpret it. Yet they still fail (v. 7), demonstrating that even with the data available, human wisdom cannot penetrate divine mysteries without divine enablement.
7. The four classes of wise men are the same as in chapter 2 — chartummayya, ashfayya, Kasdae, and gazrayya. Their failure repeats the pattern: Babylonian wisdom is systematically inadequate before divine revelation. The king has learned from chapter 2 that Daniel can succeed where others fail, yet he summons the professionals first — perhaps protocol, perhaps hope that this time ordinary channels will suffice.
8. Nebuchadnezzar acknowledges two things about Daniel: his Babylonian name connects to Bel (the king's god), and his abilities come from ruach elahin qaddishin ('the spirit of the holy gods'). The phrase is polytheistic — the king sees Daniel's inspiration as coming from the divine realm generally, not yet from one specific God.
8. The phrase ad achoren ('at last, finally') may indicate reluctance to consult Daniel, or simply that Daniel was last in the queue of specialists. Given the king's established relationship with Daniel, the former seems more likely — he hoped ordinary channels would spare him whatever Daniel might say.
9. The title rav chartummayya ('chief of the magicians') reflects Daniel's official position from 2:48. The phrase kol-raz la anes lakh ('no mystery presses/distresses you,' i.e., 'no mystery is too difficult for you') expresses the king's confidence based on chapter 2.
9. The king addresses Daniel by his Babylonian name Belteshazzar throughout this chapter — this is the king's perspective, narrating from within his own cultural framework.
10. The Aramaic ilan ('tree') begins one of the Bible's great symbolic visions. A tree 'in the center of the earth' (be-go ar'a) is a cosmic tree — a world-tree connecting heaven and earth, sheltering all life. This image appears in Mesopotamian, Egyptian, and later Norse mythology, but here it represents a specific king.
10. The phrase rumeh saggi ('its height was great') begins the description of the tree's cosmic proportions, which escalate through the following verses.
11. The three qualities — revah ('grew large'), teqif ('became strong'), and rumeh yimte li-shemayya ('its height reached the heavens') — parallel the progression from earthly power to cosmic pretension. A tree that touches heaven echoes the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4), another Babylonian project of overreach.
11. The phrase chazoteh le-sof kol-ar'a ('its appearance/visibility to the end of all the earth') gives the tree universal scope — everyone on earth can see it, everyone is in its shadow.
12. The tree provides three things: shelter (the beasts rest under it), habitat (the birds dwell in its branches), and sustenance (all flesh is fed from it). This is the ideal of benevolent rule — a kingdom that protects, houses, and feeds all under its authority.
12. The phrase kol-bisra ('all flesh') encompasses every living creature. The tree's generosity is total, mirroring the universal dominion described in 2:38. The image is seductive — who would cut down such a tree? This is why the judgment shocks.

13. The term *ir ve-qaddish* ('a watcher and a holy one') introduces a class of angelic beings unique to Daniel's vocabulary. The word *ir* ('watcher,' from the root '*ur*, 'to be awake, to watch') suggests a being who never sleeps — perpetually vigilant in divine service. The term is paired with *qaddish* ('holy one') as an explanatory apposition: a watcher, that is, a holy one.
13. This is the earliest biblical occurrence of this angelic designation, though it became enormously influential in Second Temple Judaism, particularly in 1 Enoch (the 'Watchers' who descended and sinned).
14. The watcher's commands are a series of imperatives — *goddu* ('cut down'), *qatsitsstu* ('lop off'), *attaru* ('strip'), *baddaru* ('scatter'). The verbs are violent and thorough — not pruning but demolition.
14. The animals and birds are driven away — the tree's beneficiaries lose their shelter and sustenance. The cosmic tree that sustained all life is now rendered hostile to all life. The benevolent kingdom becomes a fallen ruin.
15. The transition from 'it' (the tree) to 'him' (a person) begins here — *yitstavva* ('let him be drenched') uses a masculine singular, shifting from botanical imagery to personal address. The dream is revealing that the tree is a person.
15. The band of iron and bronze (*eesur di farzel u-nechash*) around the stump is variously interpreted — it may represent protection (preserving the stump for future restoration), restraint (binding the madman), or simply the visual detail of a banded tree stump. The ambiguity is intentional.
15. The phrase 'leave the stump with its roots' (*iqqar sharshohi be-ar'a shevuqu*) is the key to hope in this judgment — the tree is cut down but not uprooted. The root system survives, making regrowth possible.
16. The word *levav* ('heart, mind') in Aramaic encompasses what English divides between heart and mind — the center of thought, will, and identity. We render 'mind' here because the transformation is cognitive: the king loses his human reasoning.
16. The phrase *shiv'ah iddanin yachlefun alohi* ('seven times will pass over him') uses the plural *iddanin*, whose singular *iddan* can mean 'time, season, year.' The ambiguity is preserved in our rendering. Seven is the number of divine completion — the madness is not random but measured.
17. The phrase *bi-gezerat irin* ('by the decree of the watchers') gives the angelic beings juridical authority — they issue decrees (*gezerat*, from the root *gazar*, 'to cut, determine') on God's behalf.
17. The three-part theological statement — God rules human kingdoms, gives them to whomever he wishes, and sometimes elevates the lowliest — appears three times in this chapter (vv. 17, 25, 32), functioning as a refrain. Each repetition occurs in a different context: in the dream, in the interpretation, and in the fulfillment.
17. The word *shefal* ('lowly, humble, base') does not necessarily mean morally base — it means of low status, socially insignificant. God's sovereignty is demonstrated most clearly when the least likely person receives the throne.
18. The king's appeal to Daniel repeats the formula from verse 9 — the spirit of the holy gods is in him. Nebuchadnezzar has by now fully accepted that Daniel possesses a capability rooted in the divine realm that his professional scholars lack.
18. The contrast is explicit: *kol-chakkimei malkuti la yakhlin* ('all the wise men of my kingdom are unable') versus *ve-ant kahel* ('but you are able'). The entire Babylonian intellectual establishment fails; one Jewish exile succeeds.
19. The word *eshtomam* ('was stunned, appalled') indicates Daniel was horrified by what the dream meant for the king he served. The phrase *ke-sha'ah chadah* ('for one hour/moment') describes a visible pause — Daniel went silent, processing the terrible revelation.
19. The king's reassurance 'do not let it alarm you' shows unusual tenderness — the most powerful man in the world encouraging his subordinate to speak freely, even if the news is bad.
19. Daniel's wish — 'may the dream apply to your enemies' — is a conventional expression of loyalty (not a literal wish that others suffer this fate) showing his genuine regard for Nebuchadnezzar. Daniel cares for the man whose kingdom held him captive.
20. Daniel recapitulates the dream description from verses 10-12 before delivering the interpretation. This is standard ancient Near Eastern dream-interpretation protocol: restate the dream, then interpret it, establishing that the interpreter has accurately understood the vision.
21. The recapitulation is nearly verbatim from verse 12, with slight variations: *tedur* ('dwelt') replaces the earlier *tattlel* ('found shade'), and *yishkenan* ('settled, nested') replaces *yedurun* ('dwelt'). The minor variations reflect natural Aramaic narrative repetition rather than substantive differences.
22. The identification *ant-hu malka* ('you are the king,' or 'it is you, O king') parallels 2:38 ('you are the head of gold'). Once again Daniel tells Nebuchadnezzar that he is the subject of the dream — but this time the message is judgment, not honor.
22. The parallel between the tree reaching the sky and the king's greatness reaching the sky (*revutak revat u-metat li-shemayya*) connects imperial ambition to the Babel motif — reaching toward heaven is always dangerous in biblical narrative.
23. Daniel repeats the watcher's decree almost verbatim, confirming that he has received the dream accurately. The long recapitulation builds suspense — the king and reader both wait for the interpretation that follows in verses 24-26.
23. The stump detail is emphasized again — the judgment is severe but not final. The roots remain, holding open the possibility of restoration.
24. Daniel calls it *gezerat Illaha* ('the decree of the Most High') — the watcher's decree in verse 17 is God's own decree. The watchers execute divine decisions, not independent judgments.

- 24.** The respectful address *mari malka* ('my lord the king') maintains Daniel's personal regard for Nebuchadnezzar even while delivering devastating news. Daniel is a faithful counselor, not a vindictive prophet.
- 25.** The second statement of the chapter's theological refrain: *shallit Illaha be-malkut anasha u-le-man di yitsbe yittinninnah* ('the Most High rules over human kingdoms and gives them to whomever he wishes'). This time it appears as the stated purpose of the madness — the king will suffer until he learns this truth.
- 25.** The verb *tarda* ('you will be driven') is passive — Nebuchadnezzar will not choose to leave; he will be expelled from human society. The verbs describe progressive dehumanization: driven from people, dwelling with animals, eating grass, exposed to the elements.
- 26.** The phrase *malkutak lakh qayyamah* ('your kingdom will stand/remain for you') promises restoration — the stump will sprout again. The madness is remedial, not destructive.
- 26.** The shorthand *di shallitin shemaiyya* ('that Heaven rules') uses 'Heaven' as a metonym for God — one of the earliest examples of this substitution, which became common in later Judaism (and is reflected in Matthew's 'kingdom of heaven' versus the other Gospels' 'kingdom of God').
- 27.** Daniel's counsel contains two imperatives: *chatayikh be-tsidqah peruq* ('break off your sins by righteousness') and *avayatak be-michan anayin* ('break off your iniquities by mercy to the poor/oppressed'). This is not a guarantee of escape but a conditional hope — *hen teheve arkha li-shlevatak* ('perhaps there will be a lengthening of your tranquility').
- 27.** The word *anayin* ('poor, afflicted, oppressed') points to a specific social sin — Nebuchadnezzar's imperial projects were built on forced labor and exploitation. Daniel prescribes the cure that matches the disease.
- 27.** The distinction between *chata'in* ('sins, failures') and *avayin* ('iniquities, perversions') preserves the Hebrew/Aramaic distinction between missing the mark and deliberate moral distortion.
- 28.** This terse transition — *kolla meta* ('all of it came') — marks the shift from dream and interpretation to fulfillment. The narrator's brevity is devastating: everything Daniel warned about, happened. The verse also marks the shift from first-person narration back to third person, as if the narrator steps in because the king is about to lose his rational capacity to tell his own story.
- 29.** The phrase *liqtsat yarchin tre'i asar* ('at the end of twelve months') indicates God gave Nebuchadnezzar a full year of grace after Daniel's warning — time to repent and change course. The king's failure to heed Daniel's counsel (v. 27) during this grace period makes the judgment both just and sorrowful.
- 29.** The 'palace of the kingdom of Babylon' (*hekhal malkuta di Bavel*) was likely the famous South Palace, from whose elevated terraces the king could survey the city he built.
- 30.** The boast contains three first-person claims: *anah venoitah* ('I built it'), *be-teqof chisni* ('by the strength of my power'), and *li-yeqar hadri* ('for the glory of my splendor'). Every element attributes Babylon's greatness to the king himself — the exact opposite of what Daniel told him in verse 25 ('the Most High rules over human kingdoms and gives them to whomever he wishes').
- 30.** Archaeologically, Nebuchadnezzar's building projects were indeed enormous — inscriptions boasting of his construction work have been found throughout Babylon. The biblical text presents the historical boast as the trigger for divine judgment.
- 31.** The phrase *od milleta be-fum malka* ('while the word was still in the king's mouth') emphasizes the immediate divine response — the boast is not even finished when judgment falls. The timing is not coincidental but precisely calibrated.
- 31.** The voice 'falls' (*nefal*) from heaven — the same verb used for falling before the golden image (3:5-6). What fell in chapter 3 was human worship before a false god; what falls now is divine judgment on false self-worship.
- 31.** The phrase *malkutah adat minnakh* ('the kingdom has departed from you') uses the same verb as the removal of the gold head from the statue vision — kingdoms are removed by divine decree.
- 32.** The third and final statement of the refrain — the Most High rules and gives kingdoms to whomever he wishes. This time it comes directly from heaven, spoken by God's own voice, not through an angel or through Daniel. The progression — dream, interpretation, divine declaration — gives the truth maximum authority.
- 32.** The decree is nearly verbatim from verse 25 (Daniel's interpretation), confirming that Daniel's words were God's words.
- 33.** The phrase *bah-sha'ata* ('in that same hour, immediately') — the fulfillment is instantaneous, just as the voice from heaven was immediate after the boast. The narrative compresses what must have been a gradual process into a single dramatic moment.
- 33.** The description of physical transformation — *sa'reh ke-nishrin revah* ('his hair grew like eagles' feathers') and *tifrohi ke-tsipperin* ('his nails like birds' claws') — portrays extreme neglect and wildness rather than literal metamorphosis. The condition matches clinical descriptions of severe mental illness combined with prolonged exposure to the elements.
- 33.** The shift to third person is complete — the king who narrated his own story can no longer do so. He has lost the rational selfhood required for first-person narration.
- 34.** The first-person narration resumes — the king's self has been restored. The word *mand'i* ('my knowledge, my reason, my sanity') is the same root as *mada'* in 1:17 — the very capacity God gave Daniel, Nebuchadnezzar lost and now recovers.

34. The doxology closely parallels verse 3, creating an *inclusio* (literary bookend) that frames the entire chapter as a unified testimony. The king begins and ends with the same confession: God's kingdom is eternal.
34. The title *chay alma* ('the One who lives forever') distinguishes the living God from the dead idols of Babylon — a title that gains force from a king who was himself temporarily reduced to a subhuman state.
35. This is the fullest theological confession in the chapter. The king who boasted 'by my own mighty power' (v. 30) now declares that all earth's inhabitants — including himself — are *ke-lah chashivin* ('considered as nothing'). The scope encompasses both *cheil shemayya* ('the army of heaven' — angelic beings) and *dare'i ar'a* ('the inhabitants of earth') — God's sovereignty is total.
35. The double negation — no one can restrain (*yemache bi-ydeh*, 'strike his hand') or question (*ye'mar leh mah avadett*, 'say to him what have you done') — establishes absolute divine sovereignty. This language parallels Isaiah 45:9 and Job 9:12, placing the pagan king's confession in the stream of Israel's wisdom tradition.
35. The phrase *ke-mitsb'yehaved* ('he does according to his will/pleasure') echoes Psalm 115:3 and 135:6 — God does whatever pleases him. Nebuchadnezzar has arrived, through suffering, at the theological position Israel's psalms have always held.
36. The restoration is comprehensive: *mand'i* ('sanity'), *hadri ve-zivi* ('honor and splendor'), and *malkuti* ('kingdom') are all returned. The phrase *revu yattirah husefat li* ('surpassing greatness was added to me') indicates Nebuchadnezzar emerged from his humiliation more powerful than before — God's purpose was transformation, not destruction.
36. The return of his counselors — *haddavray ve-ravrvanay yeva'on* ('my advisors and nobles sought me') — suggests the court had maintained his position during his incapacity, possibly managed by Daniel as chief administrator.
37. The three verbs — *meshabbech* ('praise'), *meromem* ('exalt'), *mehaddar* ('honor') — form a climactic triad of worship. The king who once demanded worship of his golden image now freely offers worship to the true King.
37. The title *Melekh Shemayya* ('King of heaven') goes beyond the earlier *Elaha illaha* ('God Most High'). 'Most High' ranks God above others; 'King of heaven' identifies him as the ruler above all rulers — the sovereign the 'king of kings' himself must acknowledge.
37. The closing maxim — 'those who walk in pride he is able to humble' — serves as both confession and warning. It is the king's personal testimony and a universal moral principle. The chapter that began with a royal proclamation ends with prophetic wisdom from the lips of a pagan king.

5

Summary: *Daniel 5 narrates the final night of the Babylonian empire. King Belshazzar hosts a lavish feast for a thousand of his nobles, sacrilegiously drinking from the gold and silver vessels taken from the Jerusalem temple. A disembodied hand appears and writes four mysterious words on the palace wall. When Babylon's wise men fail to read or interpret the inscription, the queen mother remembers Daniel. Summoned to court, Daniel refuses the king's gifts, recounts Nebuchadnezzar's humbling by God, rebukes Belshazzar for not learning from it, and reads the writing: MENE MENE TEKEL UPHARSIN. The kingdom has been numbered, the king has been weighed and found deficient, and the empire is being divided between the Medes and Persians. That very night Belshazzar is killed and Darius the Mede receives the kingdom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is entirely in Aramaic, continuing the section that began at 2:4b. The writing on the wall — MENE MENE TEKEL UPHARSIN — is a masterpiece of Aramaic wordplay. Each word carries a double meaning: mene derives from mena ('to number/count') but also denotes the mina, a unit of weight; tekem derives from teqal ('to weigh') and denotes the shekel; parsin (singular peres) derives from peras ('to divide') and also puns on 'Persia' (Paras). The wise men may have been able to read the consonants but could not unlock the wordplay. Daniel alone perceives both the surface vocabulary (weights: mina, mina, shekel, half-minas) and the verbal meanings (numbered, weighed, divided). Belshazzar is historically identified as the son of Nabonidus, the last king of Babylon; he served as co-regent while Nabonidus was absent at Tema. This explains why Belshazzar offers Daniel the 'third' rank in the kingdom (v. 16) — the highest rank available, since Nabonidus held the first and Belshazzar the second.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of 'Darius the Mede' (v. 31) remains one of the most debated historical questions in Daniel. No figure by this name appears in Babylonian or Persian records for this period; Cyrus the Persian conquered Babylon in 539 BCE. Proposed identifications include Gubaru (a governor appointed by Cyrus), Cyrus himself under a throne name, or Cyaxares II (Xenophon's account). We render the text as given without imposing a solution. The phrase 'that very night' (beh-lelyah) in verse 30 creates dramatic immediacy — judgment is not deferred but falls within hours of the sacrilege. The Aramaic word*

parsin in the inscription is plural; Daniel interprets it in the singular peres to make the wordplay with Paras ('Persia') explicit.

Connections: The desecration of the temple vessels connects back to Daniel 1:2, where Nebuchadnezzar placed them in the treasury of his god. What Nebuchadnezzar treated with at least formal respect, Belshazzar profanes for entertainment. The theme of divine humbling of arrogant kings connects to Nebuchadnezzar's madness in chapter 4. The fall of Babylon fulfills the prophecies of Isaiah 13-14, 21:1-10, and Jeremiah 50-51. The handwriting on the wall becomes one of the most widely recognized biblical images in Western culture. The transition from Babylonian to Medo-Persian rule corresponds to the shift from the gold head to the silver chest in the statue vision of chapter 2.

¹King Belshazzar held a great banquet for a thousand of his nobles, and he drank wine in the presence of the thousand. ²Under the influence of the wine, Belshazzar gave orders to bring in the gold and silver vessels that his predecessor Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the temple in Jerusalem, so that the king and his nobles, his wives and his consorts might drink from them. ³Then they brought the gold vessels that had been taken from the temple — the house of God in Jerusalem — and the king and his nobles, his wives and his consorts, drank from them. ⁴They drank the wine and praised the gods of gold and silver, bronze and iron, wood and stone. ⁵At that very moment, the fingers of a human hand appeared and wrote on the plaster of the wall of the royal palace, opposite the lampstand. The king watched the hand as it wrote. ⁶Then the king's face turned pale, his thoughts terrified him, the strength drained from his hips, and his knees knocked against each other. ⁷Then the king called out urgently to bring in the enchanters, the Chaldeans, and the diviners. The king addressed the wise men of Babylon: "Whoever reads this writing and tells me its interpretation will be clothed in purple, will wear a gold chain around his neck, and will rule as the third highest in the kingdom." ⁸Then all the king's wise men came in, but they were unable to read the writing or make its interpretation known to the king. ⁹Then King Belshazzar was deeply alarmed, his face grew even more pale, and his nobles were thrown into confusion. ¹⁰Because of the words of the king and his nobles, the queen mother entered the banquet hall. She spoke and said, "O king, live forever! Do not let your thoughts alarm you, and do not let your face grow pale. ¹¹There is a man in your kingdom in whom is the spirit of the holy gods. In the days of your predecessor, illumination, insight, and wisdom like the wisdom of the gods were found in him. King Nebuchadnezzar, your predecessor — the king your predecessor — appointed him chief of the magicians, enchanters, Chaldeans, and diviners, ¹²because an extraordinary spirit, knowledge, and insight — the ability to interpret dreams, explain riddles, and solve difficult problems — were found in him, in Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar. Now let Daniel be summoned, and he will make the interpretation known." ¹³Then Daniel was brought before the king. The king addressed Daniel: "Are you that Daniel, one of the Judean exiles whom my predecessor the king brought from Judah? ¹⁴I have heard about you — that the spirit of the gods is in you, and that illumination, insight, and extraordinary wisdom have been found in you. ¹⁵Just now the wise men and enchanters were brought before me to read this writing and make its interpretation known to me, but they were unable to explain what it means. ¹⁶But I have heard about you, that you can give interpretations and solve difficult problems. Now, if you are able to read the writing and make its interpretation known to me, you will be clothed in purple, you will wear a gold chain around your neck, and you will rule as the third highest in the kingdom." ¹⁷Then Daniel responded and said before the king, "Keep your gifts for yourself and give your rewards to someone else. Nevertheless, I will read the writing for the king and make the interpretation known to him. ¹⁸As for you, O king — the Most High God gave your predecessor Nebuchadnezzar kingship, greatness, glory, and majesty. ¹⁹Because of the greatness that God gave him, all peoples, nations, and languages trembled and feared before him. Whoever he wished, he killed; whoever he wished, he kept alive; whoever he wished, he elevated; and whoever he wished, he brought low. ²⁰But when his heart became arrogant and his spirit hardened in pride, he was deposed from his royal throne, and his honor was stripped from him. ²¹He was driven away from human society, his mind became like that of an animal, and he lived among the wild donkeys. He was fed grass like cattle, and his body was drenched with the dew of heaven — until he acknowledged that the Most High God rules over human kingdoms and sets over them whoever he chooses. ²²Yet you, his successor Belshazzar — you have not humbled your heart, even though you knew all of this. ²³Instead, you have exalted yourself against the Lord of heaven. The vessels from his house were

brought before you, and you and your nobles, your wives and your consorts, drank wine from them. You praised gods of silver and gold, bronze and iron, wood and stone — gods that cannot see, cannot hear, and know nothing. But the God who holds your very breath in his hand and who controls all your ways — him you have not honored. ²⁴Therefore the hand was sent from his presence, and this inscription was written. ²⁵This is the inscription that was written: MENE, MENE, TEKEL, and PARSIN. ²⁶This is the interpretation of the matter: MENE — God has numbered your kingdom and brought it to an end. ²⁷TEKEL — you have been weighed on the scales and found deficient. ²⁸PERES — your kingdom has been divided and given to the Medes and Persians. ²⁹Then Belshazzar gave the command, and Daniel was clothed in purple, a gold chain was placed around his neck, and a proclamation was issued concerning him that he would rule as the third highest in the kingdom. ³⁰Th at very night, Belshazzar the Chaldean king was killed. ³¹And Darius the Mede received the kingdom at the age of sixty-two.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter continues in Aramaic, the language of the text since 2:4b. Belshazzar (Bel-shar-usur, 'Bel protect the king') was historically the son of Nabonidus, the last Neo-Babylonian king, serving as co-regent in Babylon while his father resided at Tema in Arabia.
1. The Aramaic lechem rav ('great feast/banquet') literally means 'great bread' — lechem covers food broadly. The number 'a thousand' indicates an enormous state banquet. The detail that Belshazzar drank 'in the presence of' (laqavel) the thousand highlights his public, ostentatious behavior — the king is performing for his court.
2. The phrase bi-te'em chamra ('at the taste of the wine' or 'under the influence of the wine') suggests the sacrilegious command was fueled by intoxication — not a calculated act but a drunken one, which makes it no less culpable.
2. The Aramaic avuhi ('his father') is rendered 'his predecessor' since Belshazzar was actually the son of Nabonidus, not Nebuchadnezzar. The Aramaic 'father' (av) can mean ancestor, predecessor, or dynastic forefather — it does not require direct paternity.
2. The sheglateh ('wives') and lechenateh ('consorts/concubines') indicate the full royal household is present. Bringing sacred temple vessels to such a gathering compounds the sacrilege.
3. The phrase beit elaha ('house of God') is the Aramaic equivalent of Hebrew beit Elohim. This is not merely a temple among temples — the narrator identifies it specifically as the house of the true God, heightening the sacrilege of the act.
4. The six materials — gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, stone — form a descending hierarchy of value, perhaps deliberately echoing the metals of Nebuchadnezzar's statue in chapter 2. The irony is sharp: they drink from vessels consecrated to the living God while praising lifeless idols made of inert materials. The juxtaposition is the theological climax of the sacrilege.
5. The phrase bah-sha'atah ('at that very hour/moment') indicates immediate divine response — the sacrilege triggers instantaneous judgment. The Aramaic etsbe'an di yad-enash ('fingers of a human hand') is deliberately uncanny: these are recognizable human fingers, but disembodied, with no arm or body attached.
5. The writing appears on gira ('plaster/lime coating') of the wall — Babylonian palace walls were coated with white gypsum plaster, making the writing visible. The detail 'opposite the lampstand' (laqavel nebrashtah) means the writing was illuminated and clearly visible to the king.
5. The phrase pas yedah ('the palm/part of the hand') indicates the king could see only the writing portion of the hand — not an arm, not a figure, just fingers and palm. This partial visibility increases the terror.
6. Four physical symptoms of terror are catalogued in sequence: facial pallor (zivohi shenohi, 'his brightness changed'), mental panic (ra'yonohi yevahalunneh, 'his thoughts alarmed him'), loosening of the hip joints (qitrei chartseh mishtarayin, literally 'the knots of his loins were loosened' — possibly indicating loss of bladder control), and knocking knees. The description moves from face to mind to body, conveying total collapse of composure.
6. The verb yevahalunneh ('terrified him') is from the root b-h-l, which connotes sudden, overwhelming alarm — the same root used of Nebuchadnezzar's disturbance in 4:2.
7. The reward offered — purple clothing, a gold chain, and the rank of 'third' (talti) in the kingdom — represents the highest honors available. The 'third' rank is significant: Nabonidus was first, Belshazzar was second as co-regent, so third was the maximum authority Belshazzar could grant. This detail reflects accurate knowledge of the Babylonian political arrangement.
7. The Aramaic argavana ('purple') indicates royal clothing — purple dye was extremely expensive, derived from murex shellfish. The hamnikha di-dahava ('gold chain/collar') was a standard emblem of high office in ancient Near Eastern courts.
8. The failure of the wise men is total — they cannot even read the script, let alone interpret it. The inscription may have been in an unfamiliar script, or the words may have been consonants without vowels that could be read multiple ways. The Aramaic la kahlin ('they were not able') emphasizes inability, not mere reluctance.

9. The verb *mishtabbshin* ('were perplexed, confused, agitated') applied to the nobles indicates the panic is spreading from the king to his entire court. The failure of the wise men has removed the last hope of rational explanation. The repeated mention of the king's changed appearance (*zivhi shanyin*, 'his brightness was altered') emphasizes the visible, physical toll of his fear.
10. The *malketah* ('queen') here is almost certainly the queen mother (Nabonidus's wife or Nebuchadnezzar's widow), not Belshazzar's wife — his wives are already at the feast (v. 2-3). The queen mother enters from outside, drawn by the commotion. Her knowledge of Nebuchadnezzar's era and of Daniel (whom Belshazzar apparently does not know) confirms her seniority.
10. Her composed entrance and reassuring address contrast sharply with the terror that has consumed the king and his court. She is the only calm voice in the scene.
11. The phrase *ruach elahin qaddishin* ('spirit of holy gods') is ambiguous in Aramaic — it could mean 'spirit of the holy gods' (polytheistic reading from the queen mother's perspective) or 'spirit of the Holy God' (theological reading). The Aramaic *elahin* is plural and *qaddishin* is plural, but Aramaic uses plural forms for the singular deity. We render as 'holy gods' to reflect the queen mother's likely perspective as a pagan speaker.
11. Three qualities are attributed to Daniel: *nahiru* ('illumination, brightness'), *sokletanu* ('insight, understanding'), and *chokmah* ('wisdom'). These parallel the threefold gifts mentioned in chapter 1. The repetition of 'your predecessor' (*avukh*) three times in the verse emphasizes the connection to Nebuchadnezzar's era.
12. The Aramaic *ruach yattirah* ('extraordinary/surpassing spirit') indicates a spirit that exceeds normal human capacity. Three abilities are listed: interpreting dreams (*mefashar chelmin*), explaining riddles (*achavayat achidin*, literally 'declaring knotted things'), and solving difficult problems (*mesharei qitrin*, literally 'loosening knots'). The metaphor of 'loosening knots' may derive from the ancient Near Eastern practice of reading knotted cords as divination tools.
12. The queen mother uses Daniel's Hebrew name, not his Babylonian name *Belteshazzar*, suggesting she knew him personally during Nebuchadnezzar's reign.
13. Belshazzar's question 'Are you that Daniel?' suggests Daniel has been forgotten or marginalized under this regime — a striking contrast to his prominence under Nebuchadnezzar. The phrase *benei galuta* ('sons of the exile/captivity') identifies Daniel by his status as a deportee, not by his former rank. Belshazzar defines Daniel by his subjugation, not his accomplishments.
14. Belshazzar's description echoes the queen mother's words almost verbatim, suggesting he is repeating secondhand information. He has no personal knowledge of Daniel. The phrase *chokmah yattirah* ('extraordinary/surpassing wisdom') uses the same adjective *yattirah* applied to Daniel's spirit in verse 12.
15. The phrase *peshar milletah* ('the interpretation of the matter') uses the Aramaic *peshar*, which denotes not merely translation but the disclosure of hidden meaning. The wise men's failure sets the stage for Daniel's success and reinforces the theme that divine mysteries are accessible only through divine revelation.
16. Belshazzar repeats the same reward offered to the wise men in verse 7. The 'third' (*talta*) position in the kingdom reflects the historical reality that Belshazzar himself held the second position under his father Nabonidus. This is the highest rank he has the authority to confer.
17. Daniel's refusal of gifts (*mattenatak lakh lehevyan*, 'let your gifts be yours') sets him apart from the professional diviners who serve for pay. This echoes his independence from the king's food in chapter 1. Daniel's authority comes from God, not from royal patronage, and he will not create even the appearance of being bought.
17. The word *nevazbevatak* ('your rewards/gifts') is a Persian loanword, reflecting the administrative vocabulary of the imperial court.
18. Daniel addresses Belshazzar but begins with a lesson about Nebuchadnezzar, establishing a pattern: what happened to the predecessor is about to happen to the successor. The title *Elaha Illaya* ('Most High God') is the Aramaic equivalent of Hebrew *El Elyon*, asserting divine sovereignty over all earthly kings.
18. Four gifts are listed — *malkuta* ('kingship'), *revuta* ('greatness'), *yeqara* ('glory/honor'), and *hadrah* ('majesty/splendor') — each given by God, not earned by Nebuchadnezzar.
19. The fourfold repetition of *di-havah tsave* ('whoever he wished') creates a portrait of absolute royal power — life, death, promotion, demotion — all at the king's whim. But Daniel's framing is crucial: this power was given (*yehav*) by God, not seized by Nebuchadnezzar. The sovereign who grants it can also revoke it.
19. The phrase *ammayya ummayya velishannayya* ('peoples, nations, and languages') is Daniel's standard formula for universal humanity (cf. 3:4, 7; 4:1; 6:25; 7:14).
20. The verb *rim* ('was lifted up, became exalted') describes the root sin: Nebuchadnezzar's heart elevated itself beyond its proper station. The verb *tiqefat* ('hardened, grew strong') combined with *lahazadah* ('in arrogance, presumptuously') depicts a spirit that has calcified in self-importance. This recalls Nebuchadnezzar's madness narrative in chapter 4.
21. This verse condenses the entire narrative of chapter 4 into a single sentence. The phrase *libbeh im cheyvata shavvi* ('his heart/mind was made equal with the beasts') describes the loss of human rationality — not a physical transformation but a mental dissolution.

- 21.** The lesson Nebuchadnezzar eventually learned — that the Most High rules over human kingdoms — is precisely the lesson Belshazzar has failed to learn. Daniel is building his case: ignorance is no excuse, because the precedent is in living memory.
- 22.** The pronoun 'you' (ant) is emphatic — Daniel is drawing a direct, personal contrast. The phrase *la hashpelet libbakh* ('you have not brought low your heart') is the exact opposite of what happened to Nebuchadnezzar. Where the predecessor was humbled by divine force, the successor should have humbled himself voluntarily. The phrase *kol-qavel di kol-denah yeda'ta* ('even though you knew all this') eliminates any defense of ignorance.
- 23.** Daniel's indictment has three charges: (1) self-exaltation against the Lord of heaven (*Mare Shemayya*), (2) desecration of temple vessels, and (3) praising dead idols while dishonoring the living God. The climactic contrast — gods that 'cannot see, cannot hear, and know nothing' versus the God who 'holds your breath in his hand' — echoes the idol polemic of Psalm 115:4-8 and Isaiah 44:9-20.
- 23.** The phrase *di nishmtakh bi-ydeh* ('who holds your breath/life in his hand') makes the point devastatingly personal: the very breath Belshazzar used to praise dead idols was on loan from the living God.
- 24.** The Aramaic *min-qadamohi* ('from his presence') refers to God — the hand was sent from God. Daniel identifies the author of the inscription: it is not a random omen but a deliberate divine communication. The verb *reshim* ('was inscribed/written') carries the weight of official decree — this is not graffiti but a divine verdict.
- 25.** The four words — MENE MENE TEKEL PARSIN — function on multiple levels simultaneously. As nouns, they are units of weight: a mina, a mina, a shekel, and half-minas (*parsin* is the plural of *peres*, a half-mina). As verbs (which Daniel will unpack in the following verses), they mean 'numbered, numbered, weighed, and divided.' The wordplay is untranslatable — it would be like writing 'pound, pound, ounce, quarters' and having each word also be a verb of judgment.
- 25.** We preserve the Aramaic words untranslated in the rendering, as they are proper to the inscription itself. The KJV's 'UPHARSIN' includes the Aramaic conjunction *u-* ('and'); we render as 'and PARSIN' for clarity while noting both forms.
- 26.** Daniel interprets *mene* as the verb *mena* ('to number, to count'). The phrase *menah elaha malkutak vehashlemah* ('God has numbered your kingdom and completed it') means God has tallied the full count of Belshazzar's reign and determined it is finished. The verb *hashlemah* ('completed, finished, brought to an end') is devastating — the kingdom is not just threatened but concluded.
- 27.** Daniel interprets *tekel* as the verb *teqal* ('to weigh'). The image is of a merchant's balance — Belshazzar has been placed on God's scales and the measurement has come up short. The Aramaic *chassir* ('lacking, deficient, wanting') is a commercial term for underweight goods. The metaphor is striking: the king of the greatest empire on earth does not have sufficient moral weight to register on God's scales.
- 27.** This verse has become one of the most quoted lines in the Hebrew Bible, entering dozens of languages as a proverb for being judged and found inadequate.
- 28.** Daniel switches from the plural *parsin* (v. 25) to the singular *peres* for the interpretation, unlocking the triple wordplay: (1) *peres* as a verb means 'divided,' (2) as a noun it means 'half-mina' (a unit of weight, continuing the scale metaphor), and (3) it puns on *Paras* ('Persia'). The kingdom is not merely falling — it is being specifically transferred to the Medo-Persian empire. The wordplay is the key the wise men could not find: the inscription is simultaneously a list of weights, a sequence of divine verdicts, and an identification of the conqueror.
- 29.** The bitter irony is that Belshazzar honors Daniel for delivering a death sentence against his own kingdom. The rewards are now meaningless — Daniel receives authority over a kingdom that will fall within hours. Whether Belshazzar is honoring his word despite the devastating interpretation, or whether he is acting in denial, the text does not say.
- 30.** The sentence is starkly brief — eight Aramaic words for the fall of Babylon. The phrase *beh beleilya* ('in that night itself') emphasizes the immediacy: the banquet, the writing, the interpretation, and the death all occur within a single night. The passive verb *qetil* ('was killed') does not identify the killer. Babylonian records indicate that Cyrus's general Ugbaru (Gobryas) entered Babylon with minimal resistance on the night of October 12, 539 BCE, possibly during a festival.
- 30.** The contrast between verse 1 (lavish banquet) and verse 30 (assassination) could not be sharper. The empire that seemed invincible at dinner is destroyed by dawn.
- 31.** This verse is numbered as 6:1 in some versification traditions (the Hebrew/Aramaic text places it at the end of chapter 5). The identity of 'Darius the Mede' remains one of the most discussed historical questions in Daniel studies. No figure by this name appears in Babylonian or Persian records for the conquest of Babylon — Cyrus the Persian is the attested conqueror. Proposed identifications include Gubaru/Gobryas (a governor appointed by Cyrus), Cyaxares II (known from Xenophon), or Cyrus himself under a Median throne name. We render as the text reads without imposing a solution.
- 31.** The verb *qabbel* ('received') rather than 'took' or 'conquered' suggests a transfer of authority rather than a military seizure — consistent with the historical record of Babylon's relatively peaceful capitulation to Cyrus.

6

Summary: *Daniel 6 recounts the conspiracy against Daniel under the new Medo-Persian administration and his miraculous deliverance from the lions' den. Darius organizes his empire under 120 satraps with three chief administrators, of whom Daniel is one. Daniel's exceptional spirit draws the king's attention, prompting jealous officials to trap him through a decree forbidding prayer to anyone except the king for thirty days. Daniel continues his practice of praying three times daily toward Jerusalem. Caught in his own irrevocable law, Darius reluctantly sentences Daniel to the lions' den, but God sends an angel to shut the lions' mouths. Daniel is vindicated, his accusers are destroyed, and Darius issues a decree honoring the God of Daniel as the living God whose kingdom will never be destroyed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the last in the Aramaic section of Daniel (2:4b-7:28), though the narrative returns to Hebrew at 8:1. The irrevocable nature of Medo-Persian law — 'the law of the Medes and Persians, which cannot be revoked' (dat Madai u-Pharas di la tehade) — is a crucial plot mechanism, also attested in Esther 1:19 and 8:8. Daniel's practice of praying three times daily toward Jerusalem (v. 10) reflects the exile theology of Solomon's temple dedication prayer (1 Kings 8:46-50), where Solomon anticipated that future exiles would pray toward the temple and God would hear. The phrase 'the living God' (Elaha chayya) in Darius's decree (v. 26) stands in sharp contrast to the dead gods of gold, silver, bronze, iron, wood, and stone that Belshazzar praised in 5:4. The structure of the chapter mirrors chapter 3 (the fiery furnace): faithful refusal, royal sentence, divine deliverance, pagan king's confession, enemies destroyed.*

Translation Friction: *The Aramaic word gob ('den, pit') may refer to a cistern-like structure rather than a cave — Babylonian and Persian records mention using animal pits for execution. The phrase di ruach yattirah beh ('in whom was an extraordinary spirit') in verse 3 echoes the same phrase applied to Daniel in 5:12, creating continuity across the change of empires. The sealing of the stone with the king's signet and the signets of his nobles (v. 17) creates a legal seal that prevents either party from tampering — the king cannot secretly release Daniel, and the nobles cannot secretly kill him. This legal precision reflects Persian administrative culture.*

Connections: *Daniel's deliverance from the lions parallels the three friends' deliverance from the furnace in chapter 3. The prayer toward Jerusalem connects to Solomon's prayer in 1 Kings 8:46-50 and to the practice described in Psalm 5:7 and Psalm 28:2. Darius's decree (vv. 25-27) echoes and expands Nebuchadnezzar's decrees in 3:29 and 4:34-37, showing a progression of pagan kings acknowledging Israel's God. The 'living God' title connects forward to the New Testament (Matthew 16:16, Acts 14:15). Daniel's vindication and his accusers' destruction follows the same reversal pattern as Esther and Haman.*

1It pleased Darius to appoint 120 satraps over the kingdom, stationed throughout the entire realm, 2and over them three chief administrators, of whom Daniel was one. The satraps were to report to these three so that the king would suffer no loss. 3Then Daniel distinguished himself above the other administrators and the satraps because an extraordinary spirit was in him, and the king planned to appoint him over the entire kingdom. 4Then the administrators and satraps tried to find grounds for charges against Daniel in the conduct of government affairs, but they could find no grounds for accusation or evidence of corruption, because he was trustworthy, and no negligence or corruption was found in him. 5Then these men said, "We will never find any grounds for charges against this Daniel unless we find something against him in connection with the law of his God." 6Then these administrators and satraps came in a group to the king and said to him, "King Darius, live forever! 7All the administrators of the kingdom, the prefects and satraps, the counselors and governors, have agreed that the king should issue a statute and enforce a decree that anyone who makes a petition to any god or person for thirty days, except to you, O king, shall be thrown into a den of lions. 8Now, O king, issue the decree and sign the document so that it cannot be changed — in accordance with the law of the Medes and Persians, which cannot be revoked." 9So King Darius signed the written decree. 10When Daniel learned that the document had been signed, he went to his house where he had windows in his upper room open toward Jerusalem. Three times a day he knelt on his knees and prayed, giving thanks

before his God, just as he had always done. ¹¹Then these men came as a group and found Daniel praying and pleading before his God. ¹²Then they approached and spoke to the king about the royal decree: "Did you not sign a decree that any person who makes a petition to any god or person for thirty days, except to you, O king, shall be thrown into the lions' den?" The king replied, "The matter stands firm, in accordance with the law of the Medes and Persians, which cannot be revoked." ¹³Then they answered and said to the king, "Daniel, one of the Judean exiles, has shown no regard for you, O king, or for the decree you signed. He prays three times a day." ¹⁴When the king heard this, he was deeply distressed. He set his mind on rescuing Daniel and labored until sunset to find a way to save him. ¹⁵Then these men came as a group to the king and said to him, "Know, O king, that it is a law of the Medes and Persians that no decree or statute the king establishes may be changed." ¹⁶Then the king gave the order, and Daniel was brought and thrown into the lions' den. The king spoke and said to Daniel, "Your God, whom you serve continually — may he rescue you!" ¹⁷A stone was brought and placed over the mouth of the den, and the king sealed it with his own signet ring and with the signet rings of his nobles, so that nothing regarding Daniel could be altered. ¹⁸Then the king went to his palace and spent the night fasting. No entertainment was brought before him, and sleep fled from him. ¹⁹Then at the first light of dawn the king rose and rushed in haste to the lions' den. ²⁰As he approached the den, he called out to Daniel in an anguished voice. The king said to Daniel, "Daniel, servant of the living God — has your God, whom you serve continually, been able to rescue you from the lions?" ²¹Then Daniel spoke to the king: "O king, live forever! ²²My God sent his angel and shut the mouths of the lions, and they have not harmed me, because I was found innocent before him. And also before you, O king, I have done no wrong." ²³Then the king was overjoyed and gave orders to lift Daniel out of the den. When Daniel was brought up from the den, no wound of any kind was found on him, because he had trusted in his God. ²⁴Then the king gave orders, and those men who had accused Daniel were brought and thrown into the lions' den — they, their children, and their wives. Before they even reached the bottom of the den, the lions overpowered them and crushed all their bones. ²⁵Then King Darius wrote to all peoples, nations, and languages dwelling throughout the earth: "May your peace be multiplied! ²⁶I hereby issue a decree that in every dominion of my kingdom, people must tremble and fear before the God of Daniel, for he is the living God, enduring forever. His kingdom will never be destroyed, and his dominion will last to the end. ²⁷He rescues and delivers; he performs signs and wonders in heaven and on earth — he who rescued Daniel from the power of the lions." ²⁸So Daniel prospered during the reign of Darius and during the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter continues in Aramaic. The Aramaic *achashdarpanayya* ('satraps') is a Persian loanword (Old Persian *xsacapavan*, 'protector of the realm'). The number 120 may reflect administrative divisions of the Persian empire; Herodotus mentions 20 satrapies under Darius I, but sub-provincial divisions could account for a larger number.
1. Note: some versification traditions number this chapter starting from what we call verse 2, placing 5:31 as 6:1. We follow the Aramaic text's own chapter division.
2. The Aramaic *sarkin* ('administrators, chiefs') denotes the highest tier of imperial oversight. Daniel's appointment as one of the top three officials in the new Medo-Persian administration — after having served the Babylonian empire — demonstrates remarkable continuity and suggests his reputation transcended the regime change.
2. The phrase *malka la leheve naziq* ('the king should suffer no loss/damage') indicates the administrators' role was primarily fiscal — preventing corruption and mismanagement that would reduce royal revenue.
3. The verb *mitnatsach* ('distinguished himself, surpassed') indicates Daniel's competence was not merely adequate but conspicuously superior. The phrase *ruach yattirah* ('extraordinary/surpassing spirit') is the same expression used by the queen mother in 5:12, creating textual continuity: the same quality that marked Daniel under Babylon marks him under Persia.
3. The king's plan to elevate Daniel over the entire kingdom triggers the conspiracy that drives the chapter. Daniel's excellence becomes his vulnerability.
4. The Aramaic *illah* ('grounds, pretext, occasion') is a legal term — they are looking for formal charges, not gossip. The double negative is emphatic: no *illah* ('grounds') and no *shechitah* ('corruption, fault'). The reason is stated plainly: *meheman hu* ('he was trustworthy/faithful'). The word *meheman* is related to Hebrew *emunah* — Daniel's covenant faithfulness manifests as impeccable professional integrity.
4. The exhaustive investigation that yields nothing against Daniel is a rare biblical testimony of complete moral and professional integrity — paralleled only by Samuel's farewell speech (1 Samuel 12:3-5).

5. This admission is remarkable — Daniel's enemies acknowledge his complete integrity and recognize that the only vulnerability is his religious devotion. The phrase *bedat elah* ('in the law/religion of his God') identifies Daniel's faithfulness to God as the single exploitable weakness. Their strategy is to make obedience to God and obedience to the state mutually exclusive, forcing Daniel to choose.
6. The verb *hargishu* ('came as a mob, thronged, assembled tumultuously') suggests not an orderly delegation but a coordinated rush — they came together to create the impression of unanimous urgency and to prevent the king from consulting Daniel privately. The standard greeting 'live forever' (*le-almin cheyi*) carries dark irony given that they are engineering a situation designed to end Daniel's life.
7. The claim that 'all the administrators' agreed is a lie — Daniel, the most prominent administrator, was not consulted. The five-tier list of officials (*sarkei, signayya, achashdarpanayya, haddavrayya, pachavata*) gives an impression of comprehensive consensus that is fabricated.
7. The decree targets prayer (*yiv'eh va'u*, 'makes a petition/request') to 'any god or person' (*kol elah ve'enash*) except the king — this is not merely a restriction on worship but a temporary assertion of the king's exclusive divine mediation, essentially claiming divine status for thirty days. The punishment — the lions' den (*gov aryavata*) — was a known form of execution in the ancient Near East.
8. The phrase *kedat Madai u-Pharas di la te'addei* ('according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which does not pass away/cannot be revoked') is the key legal mechanism of the plot. Once the king signs, even he cannot undo it. This irrevocability of Persian law is also attested in Esther 1:19 and 8:8 and reflects a genuine feature of Persian legal culture — the king's word, once issued as formal law, was considered binding even on the king himself.
8. The conspirators exploit this feature deliberately: they know that once Darius signs, Daniel's fate is sealed and even royal favor cannot save him.
9. The brevity of this sentence — six Aramaic words — underscores the speed of the trap. Darius signs without investigating, without consulting Daniel, and without considering the implications. The word *resham* ('signed, inscribed') makes the decree legally binding and irrevocable.
10. Daniel's response to the decree is not defiance for its own sake but refusal to alter an established practice of covenant faithfulness. The key phrase is *kol-qavel di hava aved min-qadmat denah* ('just as he had been doing previously') — Daniel does not escalate or make a public protest. He simply continues what he has always done.
10. The windows open toward Jerusalem reflect the exile theology of Solomon's temple dedication prayer (1 Kings 8:46-50): 'If they pray to you toward the land you gave their ancestors, toward the city you have chosen, and toward the house I have built for your name.' Daniel's physical orientation in prayer embodies his spiritual orientation — he remains a citizen of Zion even in Babylon.
10. Three times daily (*zimnin telatah beyoma*) corresponds to the morning, afternoon, and evening prayer times that became standardized in Jewish liturgical practice (cf. Psalm 55:17). The practice predates the formal synagogue liturgy but reflects the same impulse.
11. The verb *hargishu* ('rushed together, thronged') is the same word used in verse 6 — they approach Daniel's house with the same coordinated urgency they used with the king. The phrase *ba'eh u-mitchannan* ('praying and pleading/seeking grace') combines two prayer terms: petition and supplication for mercy. They find Daniel doing exactly what they knew he would do.
12. The conspirators first establish the inviolability of the decree before naming Daniel — they trap the king into reaffirming the law before revealing who has broken it. The king's confirmation *yatstsiva milleta* ('the matter stands firm/true') uses a term of legal certainty. He has locked himself in before he knows who the prisoner will be.
13. The accusers frame Daniel's prayer as political disloyalty — *la sam alakh malka te'em* ('he has set no regard upon you, O king'). They cast his faithfulness to God as contempt for the king. The phrase *min-benei galuta di Yehud* ('from the sons of the exile of Judah') is calculated to remind the king that Daniel is a foreigner, a captive, an outsider — emphasizing his alien status to undermine royal sympathy.
13. Note the shift from 'makes a petition' (the decree's language) to the simpler *ba'eh ba'uteh* ('makes his request/prayer') — the accusers drop the formal legal language once the trap is sprung.
14. The phrase *saggi be'esh alohi* ('greatly it was displeasing to him') shows the king's anger is directed at himself — he realizes he has been manipulated. The phrase *sam bal* ('set his mind/heart') indicates focused, determined effort. The detail 'until sunset' (*ad me'alei shimsha*) is significant because the execution must occur before the next day begins — the decree demands immediate enforcement.
14. Darius's genuine distress and his efforts to find a legal loophole contrast sharply with the conspirators' calculated malice. The king is trapped by his own law.
15. The third use of *hargishu* ('came as a mob/group') emphasizes the relentless pressure of the conspiracy. The men are not offering legal counsel — they are closing the trap. Their reminder of the irrevocable law is not information the king needs; it is a demand that he stop looking for a way out. The phrase *da' malka* ('know, O king') is imperative — they are instructing their sovereign.
16. Darius's words to Daniel — *Elahakh di ant palach leh bi-tdira hu yeshezvinaakh* ('Your God whom you serve continually, he will rescue you') — can be read as a statement of hope, a prayer, or a wish. The king has exhausted his legal options and now places his hope in Daniel's God. The word *bi-tdira* ('continually, constantly') acknowledges Daniel's unwavering devotion — the same devotion that got him condemned is now his only hope.
16. The verb *yeshezvinaakh* ('will rescue you') is the same root (*sh-z-v*) used for divine deliverance throughout Daniel's Aramaic sections.
17. The dual sealing — the king's signet and the nobles' signets — creates mutual accountability. The king cannot secretly release Daniel (the nobles' seals would be broken), and the nobles cannot secretly harm Daniel further (the king's seal would be broken). The phrase *di la tishne tsevu be-Daniyyel* ('so that the situation/purpose concerning Daniel would not be changed') locks the outcome to divine intervention alone.

17. The sealing of the stone echoes, in reverse, the sealing of Jesus's tomb in Matthew 27:62-66 — in both cases human seals prove powerless against divine action.
18. Three signs of Darius's anguish: fasting (bat tevat, 'he spent the night fasting'), no entertainment (dachavan la han'el qadamohi — the Aramaic dachavan is debated: it may mean 'diversions,' 'food,' 'concubines,' or 'musical instruments'), and sleeplessness (shinnteh naddat alohi, 'his sleep fled from him'). The king who should be celebrating his authority over the empire is instead consumed by grief over a single prisoner.
18. The word dachavan is one of the most disputed terms in Biblical Aramaic — proposed meanings include 'concubines,' 'musicians,' 'tables of food,' and 'diversions.' We render broadly as 'entertainment' to cover the range.
19. The Aramaic bishafrpara ('at dawn') and benaghah ('at first light') together indicate the earliest possible moment — Darius could not wait for full daylight. The word behithbehalah ('in haste, in alarm, in agitation') from the root b-h-l (the same root describing Belshazzar's terror in 5:6) indicates the king's urgency. He runs to the den — hardly royal dignity, but consistent with his genuine attachment to Daniel.
20. The phrase beqal atsiv ('in a sorrowful/anguished voice') reveals the king's emotional state — he calls out expecting the worst. The title aved Elaha chayya ('servant of the living God') is remarkable on the lips of a Persian king. Darius calls Daniel's God 'the living God' (Elaha chayya), distinguishing him from the inert gods of the nations — the same distinction Daniel drew in 5:23.
20. The question haykhil leshezavutakh ('has he been able to rescue you?') uses the Aramaic perfect — Darius is asking whether rescue has already occurred, not whether it will. He is asking for a report, not expressing a wish.
21. Daniel's voice from the darkness of the pit, using the standard court greeting malka le-almin cheyi ('O king, live forever'), is at once reassuring and quietly triumphant. The same greeting that introduced the conspiracy (v. 6) now signals its failure. Daniel observes court protocol even from a lions' den.
22. Daniel's explanation has two dimensions: divine (God sent an angel) and legal (innocence before God and before the king). The phrase zakhu hishtechat li ('innocence/purity was found in me') is a declaration of legal vindication — the lions' den has functioned as a divine trial, and Daniel has been acquitted.
22. The angel (malakkeh, 'his angel/messenger') who shut the lions' mouths is not named. The verb segar ('shut, closed') is simple and physical — the divine intervention is described in utterly concrete terms. Daniel also asserts his loyalty to the king (chabula la avdet, 'I have done no injury/wrong') — his faithfulness to God did not constitute disloyalty to the crown.
23. The phrase kol chaval la hishtekach beh ('no wound/injury at all was found on him') emphasizes the completeness of the deliverance — not a scratch, not a mark. The reason given is striking in its simplicity: di heimin be'elaheh ('because he trusted in his God'). The Aramaic heimin is the cognate of Hebrew he'emin (from the root '-m-n), the same root that produces emunah ('faithfulness'). Daniel's faith is presented as the operative cause of his deliverance.
24. The phrase akhalu qartsohi ('ate his pieces' — an idiom meaning 'brought malicious accusations against') uses the Aramaic equivalent of a well-attested Akkadian legal idiom for slander. The punishment of the accusers along with their families reflects Persian legal practice (cf. Herodotus 3.119) and the principle that a false accuser receives the punishment they intended for their victim (cf. Deuteronomy 19:16-21).
24. The detail that the lions crushed them before they reached the bottom of the den serves to prove that Daniel's survival was miraculous — the lions were not old, toothless, or satiated. They were lethally active. The same beasts that left Daniel untouched destroyed his accusers instantly.
25. The address formula — all peoples, nations, and languages (ammayya, ummayya, velishannayya) — is the standard Danielic formula for universal humanity (cf. 3:4, 4:1, 5:19, 7:14). Darius's decree mirrors the structure of Nebuchadnezzar's decrees in 3:29 and 4:1, creating a pattern of pagan kings issuing proclamations about the God of Israel.
25. The greeting shalamkhon yisgei ('may your peace be multiplied') is the Aramaic form of the standard epistolary greeting, cognate to Hebrew shalom.
26. Darius's theology is remarkably developed for a pagan king: God is chayya ('living'), qayyam le-almin ('enduring forever'), ruler of an indestructible kingdom (malkuteh di la titchabbal), and possessing dominion that reaches to the end (sholtaneh ad sofa). This language echoes and expands Nebuchadnezzar's earlier confessions (4:3, 34) and anticipates the kingdom language of Daniel 7:14.
26. The decree does not mandate conversion to worship of Daniel's God exclusively — it mandates reverence (zayin vedachlin, 'trembling and fearing'). This is consistent with Persian religious policy, which typically honored local deities without demanding exclusive worship.
27. Darius's doxology moves from general attributes to specific evidence: God rescues (mesheziv), delivers (matsil), and works signs and wonders (aved atin vetimhin) — and the proof is Daniel's deliverance. The phrase min yad aryavata ('from the hand/power of the lions') uses 'hand' (yad) metaphorically for the power of the beasts.
27. The structure mirrors ancient Near Eastern royal inscriptions where a king praises a deity by listing general attributes and then citing a specific act of divine favor as evidence.
28. The final verse summarizes Daniel's career across two reigns — Darius the Mede and Cyrus the Persian. The Aramaic hatsalach ('prospered, succeeded') indicates not merely survival but flourishing in public life. Some scholars read the Aramaic conjunction u- ('and') as explicative ('that is') rather than additive, which would identify Darius and Cyrus as the same person: 'in the reign of Darius, that is, in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.' The grammar allows both readings; we render with 'and' as the more natural translation.

28. This verse effectively closes the narrative section of the Aramaic portion. Chapter 7, though still in Aramaic, shifts to apocalyptic vision rather than court narrative.

7

Summary: *Daniel 7 is the pivotal apocalyptic vision of the book. In the first year of Belshazzar, Daniel sees four great beasts rising from a storm-tossed sea: a lion with eagle's wings, a bear raised on one side with three ribs in its mouth, a leopard with four wings and four heads, and a terrifying fourth beast with iron teeth and ten horns. A small horn emerges among the ten, uprooting three and speaking arrogant words. The scene shifts to the heavenly court where the Ancient of Days (attiq yomin) takes his seat on a throne of fire, attended by myriads. The court sits in judgment, the fourth beast is destroyed, and 'one like a son of man' (kebar enash) comes on the clouds of heaven to the Ancient of Days and receives an everlasting, universal kingdom. An angelic interpreter explains: the four beasts are four kingdoms, the saints of the Most High will receive the kingdom, and the arrogant horn will persecute the saints for 'a time, times, and half a time' before the court strips his authority and gives everlasting dominion to the holy people of the Most High.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is THE key apocalyptic chapter of the Hebrew Bible and the FINAL chapter in Daniel's Aramaic section (2:4b-7:28). Chapter 8 returns to Hebrew. The phrase 'one like a son of man' (kebar enash, 7:13) becomes arguably the single most important title in the New Testament — Jesus's primary self-designation 'Son of Man' derives from this passage. The vision parallels the four-metal statue of chapter 2 but adds crucial elements: the heavenly throne scene, the divine court, the bestowal of the kingdom on a human-like figure, and the suffering of the saints before their vindication. The Ancient of Days vision (vv. 9-10) is the most detailed theophany in the Hebrew Bible outside Ezekiel 1 — white clothing, hair like pure wool, a throne of fire with wheels of flame, a river of fire flowing from his presence, and myriads of attendants. Jewish tradition reads 'one like a son of man' as corporate Israel or the messiah; Christian tradition identifies him with Jesus. Both readings have ancient roots and the text itself supports the tension between individual and corporate interpretation. The Aramaic phrase attiq yomin ('Ancient of Days') appears only in this chapter (vv. 9, 13, 22) and nowhere else in Scripture.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of the four beasts parallels the four metals of chapter 2: traditionally Babylon (lion), Medo-Persia (bear), Greece (leopard), and Rome or a Greek successor (fourth beast). An alternative scholarly reading sees Babylon, Media, Persia, and Greece. We render the imagery without imposing either identification. The phrase kebar enash ('one like a son of man') is deliberately ambiguous in Aramaic — bar enash simply means 'a human being,' and the ke- prefix ('like, as, resembling') adds further ambiguity: this figure resembles a human but may be more. The relationship between 'one like a son of man' (v. 13-14) and 'the saints of the Most High' (vv. 18, 22, 27) is debated — is the son of man a symbol for the saints, their heavenly representative, an angelic figure, or the messiah? The phrase iddan ve-iddanin u-felag iddan ('a time, times, and half a time,' v. 25) has generated centuries of interpretation; we render literally and note the range of readings.*

Connections: *The four beasts parallel the four metals of chapter 2's statue. The heavenly throne scene influenced all subsequent Jewish and Christian apocalyptic literature, including 1 Enoch 46-47, 4 Ezra 13, and Revelation 1:13-16, 4:1-11, and 20:11-12. Jesus's 'Son of Man' sayings in the Gospels consistently draw on Daniel 7:13-14 (cf. Mark 14:62, Matthew 26:64, Luke 22:69). The court scene (vv. 9-10) parallels 1 Kings 22:19 and Isaiah 6 but exceeds both in detail. The 'saints of the Most High' (qaddishei Elyonin) connects to the concept of holy ones throughout the Hebrew Bible (cf. Psalm 89:5-7, Zechariah 14:5). The fiery river from the divine throne connects to Ezekiel 1:27 and anticipates Revelation 22:1.*

¹In the first year of Belshazzar king of Babylon, Daniel had a dream and visions passed through his mind as he lay on his bed. He wrote the dream down and recorded the substance of the matter. ²Daniel declared: "In my vision during the night I watched as the four winds of heaven churned up the great sea. ³Four great beasts came up from the sea, each one different from the others. ⁴The first was like a lion with eagle's wings. I watched until its wings were plucked off. It was lifted from the ground, set on its feet like a human, and a human mind was given to it. ⁵Then a second beast appeared, resembling a bear. It

was raised up on one side, with three ribs in its mouth between its teeth, and it was told, 'Get up and devour much flesh!' ⁶After this I watched, and there was another beast, like a leopard with four bird's wings on its back. The beast also had four heads, and authority was given to it. ⁷After this I watched in the night visions, and there was a fourth beast — terrifying, dreadful, and extraordinarily powerful. It had great iron teeth. It devoured and crushed, and whatever remained it trampled with its feet. It was different from all the beasts that preceded it, and it had ten horns. ⁸I was contemplating the horns when another horn — a small one — came up among them, and three of the previous horns were uprooted before it. This horn had eyes like human eyes and a mouth speaking arrogant words. ⁹I watched until thrones were set in place, and the Ancient of Days took his seat. His clothing was white as snow, and the hair of his head was like pure wool. His throne was flames of fire, its wheels were blazing fire. ¹⁰A river of fire flowed out from before him. Thousands upon thousands served him, and myriads upon myriads stood attending him. The court sat in judgment, and the books were opened. ¹¹I kept watching then because of the arrogant words the horn was speaking. I watched until the beast was killed, its body destroyed and given over to the burning fire. ¹²As for the remaining beasts, their authority was stripped from them, but an extension of life was granted to them for a set time and season. ¹³I watched in the night visions, and there — coming with the clouds of heaven — was one like a son of man. He approached the Ancient of Days and was brought into his presence. ¹⁴To him was given authority, glory, and a kingdom, so that all peoples, nations, and languages would serve him. His authority is an everlasting authority that will never pass away, and his kingdom is one that will never be destroyed. ¹⁵As for me, Daniel — my spirit was deeply troubled within me, and the visions passing through my mind alarmed me. ¹⁶I approached one of those standing by and asked him for the true meaning of all this. He spoke to me and made the interpretation known to me: ¹⁷"These great beasts, which are four in number, represent four kings who will arise from the earth. ¹⁸But the holy ones of the Most High will receive the kingdom and possess it forever — for all ages to come." ¹⁹Then I wanted to know the true meaning of the fourth beast, which was different from all the others — exceedingly terrifying, with iron teeth and bronze claws, devouring, crushing, and trampling whatever remained with its feet; ²⁰and about the ten horns on its head, and the other horn that came up, before which three fell — the horn that had eyes and a mouth speaking arrogant words, and whose appearance was greater than its companions. ²¹I watched as that horn waged war against the holy ones and was prevailing over them, ²²until the Ancient of Days came and judgment was rendered in favor of the holy ones of the Most High, and the appointed time arrived when the holy ones took possession of the kingdom. ²³He said: 'The fourth beast represents a fourth kingdom on earth, which will be different from all other kingdoms. It will devour the entire earth, trample it, and crush it. ²⁴The ten horns mean that ten kings will arise from this kingdom. After them another will arise, different from the previous ones, and he will bring down three kings. ²⁵He will speak words against the Most High and will wear down the holy ones of the Most High. He will intend to change the sacred times and the law, and they will be handed over to him for a time, times, and half a time. ²⁶But the court will sit in judgment, and his authority will be stripped away, to be annihilated and destroyed completely. ²⁷Then the kingdom, the authority, and the greatness of all the kingdoms under heaven will be given to the people of the holy ones of the Most High. Their kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and all authorities will serve and obey them.' ²⁸Here the account ends. As for me, Daniel — my thoughts greatly alarmed me and my face turned pale, but I kept the matter in my heart."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This chapter is in Aramaic — the FINAL chapter in the Aramaic section that began at 2:4b. Chapter 8 returns to Hebrew. The chronological setting 'first year of Belshazzar' places this vision before the events of chapter 5 (Belshazzar's feast), making the narrative arrangement thematic rather than chronological.
1. The phrase *chelev chezei reishteh* ('visions of his head') reflects the ancient Near Eastern understanding that visions occur in the head/mind during sleep. Daniel wrote (*ketav*) the dream — this is the first indication that Daniel is the author of this section, shifting from third-person narrative (chapters 1-6) to first-person account.
1. The phrase *reish millin* ('the head/chief of the words') means the substance, summary, or main points — suggesting that Daniel's written account is a distillation rather than an exhaustive transcript.

2. The 'four winds of heaven' (arba ruchei shemayya) represent the totality of divine cosmic forces — from every direction. The verb megichan ('stirring up, churning, bursting forth upon') conveys violent agitation. The 'great sea' (yamma rabba) in apocalyptic imagery represents the primordial chaos — the deep from which hostile powers emerge (cf. Isaiah 27:1, 51:9-10, Psalm 74:13-14, Revelation 13:1). The beasts rise from chaos, not from order.
3. The Aramaic chevan ravranan ('great beasts') uses a term for powerful, fearsome creatures — these are not mere animals but monstrous beings. The phrase shanyan da min da ('different one from another') emphasizes that each beast is unique, representing a distinct kingdom. The four beasts correspond to the four metals of the statue in chapter 2, but the imagery has shifted from inert metal to living, predatory power.
4. The lion-eagle composite evokes the Babylonian lamassu — the winged lion guardians that flanked Mesopotamian palace gates. If the lion represents Babylon, the plucking of wings and the giving of a human heart may allude to Nebuchadnezzar's humiliation and restoration in chapter 4 — stripped of imperial power (wings), then restored with human reason (levav enash, 'a human heart/mind').
4. The verb meritu ('were plucked') is passive — the wings are removed by an external force, not shed naturally. This suggests divine action constraining the beast's power.
5. The bear raised on one side (listar chad hoqimat) suggests asymmetry — if this represents Medo-Persia, one side (Persia) was dominant over the other (Media). The three ribs (telat il'in) between its teeth are variously identified as three conquered kingdoms: possibly Lydia, Babylon, and Egypt.
5. The command 'Get up and devour much flesh' (qumi akhuli besar saggi) is a divine commission — the beast does not act independently but is commanded by a heavenly voice. Even destructive empires operate under divine authority.
6. The leopard represents speed (the four wings amplify the leopard's natural swiftness), and the four heads suggest division into four parts. If this represents Greece, the speed corresponds to Alexander's lightning conquests (334-323 BCE), and the four heads to the division of his empire among the Diadochi: Ptolemaic Egypt, Seleucid Syria, Antigonid Macedonia, and Pergamum/Thrace.
6. Again the passive: sholtan yehiv lah ('authority was given to it') — divine sovereignty stands behind even this predatory power.
7. Unlike the first three beasts, the fourth is not compared to any known animal — it defies natural categories. Three adjectives heap up: dechilah ('terrifying'), ve'eimetani ('dreadful/inspiring terror'), vetaqqifa yattira ('extraordinarily strong'). The iron teeth (shinnayyin di farzel) echo the iron legs of the statue in chapter 2, linking this beast to the fourth kingdom.
7. Three actions describe its destructiveness: akhlah ('it devoured'), maddequah ('it crushed/ground to pieces'), and ush'ara beraglah rafsah ('it trampled the remainder with its feet'). Total annihilation — consumption, pulverization, and trampling of whatever is left.
7. The ten horns (qarnayyin asar) represent ten kings (v. 24). Horns in ancient Near Eastern symbolism represent power and authority.
8. The 'small horn' (qeren achori ze'eirah) is the most analyzed symbol in Daniel. In the context of the fourth beast, it represents a king who arises after the ten and subdues three of them. Many scholars identify this with Antiochus IV Epiphanes if the fourth beast is Greece, or with a Roman or end-time figure if the fourth beast is Rome.
8. The horn has human features — eyes (aynin ke-ayney anasha, 'eyes like human eyes') and a mouth (pum) — making it more than a symbol of power; it is personal, intelligent, and articulate. The phrase memalil ravranan ('speaking great/arrogant things') indicates blasphemous self-exaltation against God, elaborated in verse 25.
9. THIS IS THE KEY THEOPHANY OF DANIEL. The phrase korsavan remiyu ('thrones were set in place/cast down') has been debated: remiyu can mean 'were placed' or 'were thrown down.' The context of a court convening favors 'set in place' — thrones are being arranged for a judicial session, not being overthrown.
9. Attiq Yomin ('Ancient of Days') appears only here, in verse 13, and in verse 22 — nowhere else in Scripture. The title conveys primordial, absolute antiquity. The white garments and white hair signify purity, wisdom, and transcendent age. The throne of fire (korseveh shevivin di nur) and wheels of fire (galgilllohi nur daliq) connect to Ezekiel's throne-chariot vision (Ezekiel 1:15-21, 26-28) — the divine throne is mobile, living, and ablaze.
9. The plural 'thrones' (korsavan) suggests a heavenly court — the Ancient of Days does not sit alone. Who occupies the other thrones is debated: angelic assessors, the divine council, or (in later Jewish and Christian reading) the Messiah.
10. The nehar di nur ('river of fire') flowing from the divine presence is unique in biblical theophanies — a torrent of fire as a permanent emanation from God. The numbers — elef alfin ('thousands of thousands') and ribbo ribbevan ('myriads of myriads') — are meant to overwhelm: the heavenly court is beyond counting.
10. The phrase dina yetiv ('the court/judgment sat') marks the formal opening of the heavenly tribunal. The books (sifrin) that are opened contain the record of deeds — a concept that recurs in Revelation 20:12. This is not a trial to determine facts but a sentencing based on a record already written.
10. The shift from the chaos of the sea (v. 2) to the perfect order of the heavenly court is deliberate — earthly kingdoms emerge from chaos, but God governs from absolute order.
11. The horn's arrogant speech (millayya ravrevatah, 'great/boastful words') continues even as the heavenly court renders its verdict — the horn is defiant to the end. The destruction of the fourth beast is total: killed (qetilat), body destroyed (hubad gishmah), and given to fire (yehivat liqedat esha). Unlike the first three beasts, which lose authority but continue to exist (v. 12), the fourth beast is annihilated.

11. The progression from boastful speech to fiery destruction embodies the pattern of arrogance-meets-judgment that runs through Daniel (cf. Nebuchadnezzar in ch. 4, Belshazzar in ch. 5).
12. The distinction matters: the first three beasts lose power but are not destroyed — their cultural and civilizational legacies persist even after their political dominion ends. The fourth beast alone faces complete annihilation. The phrase *ad zeman ve-iddan* ('for a time and a season') indicates a divinely determined duration — even the lingering existence of fallen empires is bounded.
13. THIS IS THE KEY VERSE OF DANIEL 7 and one of the most important verses in the Hebrew Bible for both Jewish and Christian theology. The phrase *kebar enash* ('one like a son of man') must be carefully rendered. *Bar enash* simply means 'a human being' — it is not a title here but a description. The figure looks human, in contrast to the beasts that preceded. The *ke-* ('like, as') adds deliberate ambiguity: this figure resembles a human but the comparison implies he may be more than human.
13. He comes 'with the clouds of heaven' (*im ananei shemayya*) — cloud-riding is elsewhere associated exclusively with deity in the Hebrew Bible (Psalm 68:4, 104:3, Isaiah 19:1). The combination of human appearance with divine cloud-riding creates a figure who bridges heaven and earth.
13. He is 'brought near' (*haqrevuhi*) before the Ancient of Days — the passive voice and the plural subject ('they brought him') suggest angelic attendants presenting him to the divine throne. This is a coronation scene.
14. Three gifts are bestowed: *sholtan* ('authority/dominion'), *yeqar* ('glory/honor'), and *malku* ('kingdom/sovereignty'). These correspond to the authority, glory, and kingdom that God gave Nebuchadnezzar (5:18) — but that was temporary. This bestowal is permanent.
14. The phrase *kol ammayya ummayya velishannayya leh yiflchun* ('all peoples, nations, and languages will serve him') uses the same universal formula applied to Nebuchadnezzar in 3:4 and 5:19, but now applied to the son of man — the universal dominion of human empires is transferred to a divinely appointed figure.
14. The double negative — *sholtan alam di la ye'addei* ('everlasting authority that will not pass away') and *malkuteh di la titchabbal* ('kingdom that will not be destroyed') — creates an absolute statement of permanence. This echoes the stone that 'became a great mountain and filled the whole earth' in 2:35.
15. The verb *etkeriyyat* ('was distressed, was pierced, was grieved') conveys intense emotional disturbance — Daniel is not merely curious about the vision but shaken by it. The phrase *bego nidneh* ('within its sheath') uses a striking metaphor: the body is the sheath for the spirit, as a scabbard holds a sword. Daniel's spirit is agitated within its bodily housing.
16. The 'one standing by' (*chad min qa'amayya*) is one of the angelic attendants of the heavenly court introduced in verse 10. Daniel can interact with this figure — the vision is not purely visual but participatory. The word *yatstsiva* ('truth, certainty') indicates Daniel wants not speculation but the authoritative meaning.
17. The interpretation is startlingly brief — four beasts equal four kings (*arba'ah malkin*). The angel does not identify which kingdoms they represent. The phrase *min ar'a* ('from the earth') contrasts with the son of man's origin from heaven (v. 13) — the beast-kingdoms are earthly, the final kingdom is heavenly. 'Kings' here stands for 'kingdoms' (as clarified in v. 23), a common metonymy in ancient Near Eastern texts.
18. This verse creates the interpretive tension at the heart of chapter 7: in verses 13-14 the kingdom is given to 'one like a son of man' (an individual figure); here it is given to *qaddishei Elyonin* ('the holy ones of the Most High,' a collective group). Are these the same? Is the son of man the representative of the holy ones, or a distinct figure who shares his kingdom with them? Both Jewish and Christian traditions have grappled with this relationship.
18. The phrase *ad alma ve-ad alam almayya* ('forever, and for the age of ages') is the strongest possible expression of permanence in Aramaic — it stacks 'forever' on top of 'forever of forevers' to convey absolute endlessness.
19. Daniel's retelling adds a new detail not in the original vision description: bronze claws (*tifraihi di nechash*). The iron teeth and bronze claws together echo the iron-bronze combination of military technology in the ancient world. The beast is armored for both biting (offense) and tearing (predation).
20. Daniel adds another detail in his retelling: the small horn's appearance was 'greater than its companions' (*chezvah rav min chabraytah*) — despite being called 'small' in verse 8, it has grown to surpass the other horns. This paradox — beginning small but becoming dominant — characterizes the trajectory of the figure this horn represents.
21. This verse adds information not included in the initial vision account (vv. 2-14): the horn actively wars against the holy ones (*qaddishin*) and temporarily defeats them. The verb *yakhlah* ('prevailed, overcame') indicates real, if temporary, victory — the holy ones suffer genuine persecution and defeat before their vindication. This honest acknowledgment of the saints' suffering distinguishes Daniel's apocalyptic vision from mere triumphalism.
22. Third and final occurrence of *Attiq Yomayya* ('Ancient of Days'). The phrase *dina yehiv leqaddishei Elyonin* ('judgment was given to/for the holy ones of the Most High') can mean either 'judgment was rendered in favor of' or 'authority to judge was given to.' Both readings are attested in scholarship; we follow the contextual meaning of vindication after persecution.
22. The sequence is crucial: persecution by the horn (v. 21), intervention by the Ancient of Days (v. 22a), judicial vindication (v. 22b), and possession of the kingdom (v. 22c). Suffering precedes glory — a pattern that profoundly shapes New Testament theology.

- 23.** The interpreter now shifts from 'kings' (v. 17) to 'kingdom' (malku), confirming that the individual rulers represent entire political systems. The scope is universal: teikhul kol ar'a ('it will devour the whole earth'). The three verbs — devour, trample, crush (teikhul, tedushinnahh, taddequinnah) — escalate from consumption to grinding destruction. This fourth kingdom does not merely conquer; it pulverizes.
- 24.** The ten horns are decoded as ten successive or simultaneous kings from the fourth kingdom. The eleventh (the 'small horn' of v. 8) arises after them, is distinct from them (yishnei min qadmeyei), and deposes three (telatah malkin yehashshpil). The verb yehashshpil ('will bring low, will humble') is the same root used for Nebuchadnezzar's humbling in 4:37 — this king forcibly removes rivals.
- 25.** Three offenses define this king: (1) blasphemy — speaking words 'against the Most High' (letsad Illaya), (2) persecution — 'wearing down' the holy ones (yevallei, from a root meaning to wear out, to exhaust through persistent harassment), and (3) religious disruption — attempting to change zimnin vedat ('appointed times and law'). The 'times and law' likely refer to the Jewish festival calendar and Torah observances — this king attacks not just the people but their religious identity.
- 25.** The duration ad iddan ve-iddanin u-felag iddan ('a time, times, and half a time') is one of the most interpreted phrases in Daniel. If 'time' equals one year, the total is three and a half years — corresponding to the approximate duration of Antiochus Epiphanes' desecration of the temple (167-164 BCE). The number also appears in Revelation 12:14 and is related to the '42 months' and '1,260 days' of Revelation 11:2-3 and 13:5.
- 26.** The heavenly court (dina, 'the judgment/court') reconvenes — the same court described in verses 9-10. The horn's authority (sholteneh) is removed by three devastating verbs: lehashmadah ('to annihilate'), ulehobadah ('to destroy'), ad sofa ('to the end'). The legal process that began with opened books (v. 10) now reaches its verdict: permanent, irreversible destruction of the arrogant power.
- 27.** This verse closes the interpretive section with a climactic statement that parallels verse 14. Compare: in v. 14 the son of man receives sholtan, yeqar, and malku; here the people of the holy ones receive malkutah, sholtana, and revutah. The language is parallel but not identical — suggesting intimate connection between the individual figure and the collective people.
- 27.** The phrase le-am qaddishei Elyonin ('to the people of the holy ones of the Most High') adds 'people' (am) to the earlier 'holy ones' — this is a national, communal entity, not isolated individuals. The closing affirmation malkuteh malkut alam ('their kingdom is an everlasting kingdom') uses the identical language applied to God's own kingdom in 4:3 — the people's kingdom participates in God's own eternal reign.
- 28.** THIS IS THE FINAL VERSE IN ARAMAIC. Chapter 8 returns to Hebrew — the language shift back to Hebrew signals that the content now concerns Israel specifically rather than the nations broadly.
- 28.** The phrase sofa di milletah ('the end of the matter') formally closes Daniel's written account of the vision. His physical symptoms — facial pallor (zivay yishtannun alay, 'my brightness changed upon me') — mirror Belshazzar's reaction to the handwriting (5:6, 9). But where Belshazzar's terror led to death, Daniel's disturbance leads to faithful memory: milletah belibbi nitret ('I kept the matter in my heart'). The phrase echoes Mary's response to the shepherds' testimony in Luke 2:19 — treasuring revelatory experience through silent pondering.
- 28.** The verb nitret ('I guarded, I kept, I preserved') indicates active retention — Daniel does not merely remember but deliberately guards the vision for future disclosure.

8

Summary: *Daniel 8 presents a vision from the third year of Belshazzar's reign, set in the citadel of Susa in the province of Elam. Daniel sees a ram with two horns — one higher than the other — charging westward, northward, and southward without opposition. Then a goat with a single prominent horn comes from the west at tremendous speed, shatters the ram's two horns, and tramples it. At the height of the goat's power, the great horn breaks and is replaced by four conspicuous horns. From one of them emerges a small horn that grows exceedingly great, reaching toward the south, the east, and the Beautiful Land. It exalts itself against the host of heaven, removes the daily sacrifice, and desecrates the sanctuary for 2,300 evenings and mornings. The angel Gabriel is commissioned to explain the vision: the ram is the kings of Media and Persia, the goat is the king of Greece, the great horn is the first king, and the four horns are four kingdoms that arise from his nation. The small horn represents a king who will arise in the latter time, fierce and cunning, who will destroy many and stand against the Prince of princes — but will be broken without human hand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *THIS CHAPTER RETURNS TO HEBREW after the extended Aramaic section (2:4b-7:28). The shift back to Hebrew signals that the content now concerns Israel specifically — the desecration of the temple and the persecution of the Jewish people. This is also the first time an interpreting angel is named: Gabriel (Gavri'el, 'man of God' or 'God is my warrior'), who reappears in 9:21 and then in Luke 1:19, 26 to announce the births of John the Baptist and Jesus. The vision's historical referents are more transparent than chapter 7: the ram is explicitly identified as Medo-Persia (v. 20), the goat as Greece (v. 21), the great horn as the first king (Alexander the*

Great), the four horns as the Diadochi kingdoms, and the small horn as Antiochus IV Epiphanes (reigned 175-164 BCE), who desecrated the Jerusalem temple in 167 BCE. The '2,300 evenings and mornings' (v. 14) corresponds approximately to the period from Antiochus's initial interference with the temple (171 BCE) to the Maccabean rededication (December 164 BCE). The phrase 'the Beautiful Land' (ha-tsevi) for the land of Israel appears also in 11:16, 41 and Ezekiel 20:6, 15.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew of this chapter contains several difficult phrases. The expression erev boqer alpayim u-shelosh me'ot ('2,300 evenings and mornings,' v. 14) is debated: does it mean 2,300 individual evening and morning sacrifices (totaling 1,150 days) or 2,300 full days? Both calculations have been proposed. We render the number as given and note the ambiguity. The phrase sar ha-tsava ('prince/commander of the host,' v. 11) is variously identified as God, the high priest, or the archangel Michael. The vision's relationship to chapter 7 is complex — both describe a sequence of empires and a persecuting horn, but the imagery and scope differ. The instruction to 'seal up the vision' (v. 26) contrasts with Revelation 22:10's command not to seal the prophecy.

Connections: The ram and goat parallel the bear and leopard of chapter 7 and the silver and bronze of the statue in chapter 2. Gabriel's appearance here anticipates his role in 9:21 and in the New Testament (Luke 1:19, 26). The desecration of the sanctuary connects forward to the 'abomination of desolation' in 9:27, 11:31, and 12:11, which Jesus cites in Matthew 24:15. The phrase 'broken without human hand' (v. 25) echoes the stone 'cut without hands' in 2:34 — divine action replacing human agency. Antiochus IV Epiphanes' persecution is the primary historical background for the books of 1-2 Maccabees and the festival of Hanukkah. The 'Beautiful Land' (ha-tsevi) for Israel connects to Jeremiah 3:19 and Ezekiel 20:6, 15.

¹In the third year of King Belshazzar's reign, a vision appeared to me — to me, Daniel — after the one that had appeared to me previously. ²I looked in the vision, and as I saw it, I was in the citadel of Susa in the province of Elam. I looked in the vision, and I was standing beside the Ulai canal. ³I raised my eyes and looked, and there standing before the canal was a ram with two horns. Both horns were tall, but one was taller than the other, and the taller one came up last. ⁴I watched the ram charging westward, northward, and southward. No animal could stand against it, and none could rescue from its power. It did as it pleased and grew powerful. ⁵While I was considering this, a male goat came from the west, crossing the entire surface of the earth without touching the ground. The goat had a conspicuous horn between its eyes. ⁶It came toward the ram with two horns that I had seen standing before the canal, and it charged at it in furious rage. ⁷I watched it reach the ram, and it was enraged against it. It struck the ram and shattered its two horns. The ram had no strength to stand against it. The goat hurled it to the ground and trampled it, and there was no one to rescue the ram from its power. ⁸The male goat grew exceedingly powerful, but at the height of its strength the great horn was broken. In its place four conspicuous horns came up toward the four winds of heaven. ⁹From one of them came a small horn that grew exceedingly great toward the south, toward the east, and toward the Beautiful Land. ¹⁰It grew great, reaching up to the host of heaven. It cast some of the host and some of the stars down to the ground and trampled them. ¹¹It even exalted itself against the Prince of the host. The daily offering was removed from him, and the foundation of his sanctuary was thrown down. ¹²A host was given over along with the daily offering because of transgression. It cast truth to the ground, and it acted and prospered. ¹³Then I heard a holy one speaking, and another holy one said to the one who was speaking, "How long will the events of this vision last — the daily offering removed, the desolating transgression set up, and the sanctuary and the host given over to be trampled?" ¹⁴He said to me, "For 2,300 evenings and mornings; then the sanctuary will be restored to its rightful state." ¹⁵When I, Daniel, had seen the vision and was seeking to understand it, there standing before me was one who looked like a man. ¹⁶I heard a human voice calling from between the banks of the Ulai: "Gabriel, explain the vision to this man!" ¹⁷He came to where I was standing, and when he arrived I was terrified and fell on my face. He said to me, "Understand, son of man, that the vision pertains to the time of the end." ¹⁸While he was speaking with me, I fell into a deep sleep with my face to the ground. But he touched me and set me on my feet. ¹⁹He said, "I am going to make known to you what will happen in the latter period of the wrath, for it refers to the appointed time of the end. ²⁰The ram you saw with the two horns represents the kings of Media and Persia. ²¹The shaggy goat is the king of Greece, and the great horn between its eyes is the first king. ²²As for the horn that was broken, in whose place four others arose — four kingdoms will rise from that nation, but not with its power. ²³In the

latter period of their reign, when the transgressors have reached their full measure, a king will arise — fierce in countenance and skilled in intrigue. ²⁴His power will be great, but not by his own strength. He will cause extraordinary destruction and will succeed in whatever he does. He will destroy the powerful and the holy people. ²⁵Through his cunning he will make deceit prosper under his hand. In his heart he will exalt himself, and in a time of security he will destroy many. He will even stand against the Prince of princes, but he will be broken — not by human hand. ²⁶The vision of the evenings and mornings that was declared is true. But you must seal up the vision, for it refers to many days from now." ²⁷Then I, Daniel, was overwhelmed and lay ill for days. Afterward I got up and attended to the king's affairs. I was appalled by the vision, and no one could explain it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. CRITICAL LANGUAGE SHIFT: This chapter returns to HEBREW after the Aramaic section that began at 2:4b and ended at 7:28. The return to Hebrew signals that the content now concerns Israel's own story — the desecration and restoration of the Jerusalem temple.
1. The emphatic 'to me, Daniel' (ani Daniyyel) reinforces the first-person authorship established in chapter 7. The phrase acharei hanir'ah elai battechillah ('after the one that appeared to me at first') refers back to the vision of chapter 7, set in the first year of Belshazzar. This vision is two years later.
2. Shushan ha-birah ('Susa the citadel/capital') was a major administrative center of the Persian empire — a significant location given that the vision concerns the rise and fall of Persia. Whether Daniel was physically present in Susa or transported there in the vision (cf. Ezekiel 8:3, 40:1) is debated.
2. The Ulai (Uval Ulai) is identified with the Eulaeus river or an artificial canal near Susa. The setting by a waterway for a vision parallels Ezekiel's visions by the Chebar canal (Ezekiel 1:1, 3) and Daniel's later vision by the Tigris (10:4).
3. The ram (ayil) with two unequal horns is identified as the kings of Media and Persia in verse 20. The taller horn that 'came up last' (olah ba-acharonah) represents Persia — historically the junior partner that ultimately became dominant over Media. The asymmetry matches the bear 'raised on one side' in 7:5.
3. The ram was the symbol of the Persian empire in the ancient world; Persian kings wore ram-headed crowns, and the zodiacal sign of Persia was Aries (the ram).
4. The three directions — west, north, south — correspond to Persia's historical conquests from its eastern base: westward to Lydia and Greece, northward into Central Asia, and southward into Egypt. Eastward is absent because Persia was already the eastern power.
4. The phrase asah khirtsono ('it did as it pleased') echoes the description of Nebuchadnezzar's absolute power in 5:19 — the same unchecked authority that proved temporary. The verb higdil ('grew great, magnified itself') will become significant when the small horn also 'magnifies itself' (v. 9-11).
5. The male goat (tsefir ha-izzim) is identified as the king of Greece in verse 21. Its approach 'from the west' (min ha-ma'arav) matches Greece's geographic position relative to Persia. The phrase ein nog'e'a ba-arets ('not touching the ground') conveys extraordinary speed — the goat moves so fast it seems to fly. This corresponds to Alexander the Great's lightning military campaigns (334-323 BCE).
5. The 'conspicuous horn' (qeren chazut, literally 'horn of vision/prominence') between its eyes represents Alexander himself (v. 21). A single horn in a prominent position symbolizes concentrated, unified power.
6. The phrase bachamat kocho ('in the fury/heat of its power') conveys not just military force but emotional intensity — the goat attacks with rage. This matches the historical record of Alexander's campaigns against Persia, motivated by both strategic ambition and Greek anger over Xerxes' earlier invasion of Greece (480 BCE).
7. The verb yitmarmar ('was embittered, was enraged') is an intensified form expressing violent fury. Three actions follow in rapid sequence: struck (vayyakh), shattered the horns (vayshabber), and hurled to the ground (vayyashlikehu artsah). The shattering of both horns — not just the taller one — indicates the total destruction of the Medo-Persian empire, not merely the defeat of one component.
7. The phrase lo hayah mats'ail la-ayil mi-yyado ('there was no one to rescue the ram from its power') echoes verse 4, where the same was said of the ram's victims — the conqueror becomes the conquered, suffering the same helplessness it once inflicted.
8. The phrase ukhe-otsmo ('at the height of its strength') creates a devastating irony — the horn breaks not in weakness but at its moment of maximum power. This corresponds to Alexander's death in Babylon in 323 BCE at age 32, at the zenith of his conquests.
8. The four horns that replace the one (arba chazut, 'four conspicuous ones') represent the four major successor kingdoms (the Diadochi): Ptolemaic Egypt, Seleucid Syria/Mesopotamia, Antigonid Macedonia, and the kingdom of Pergamum/Thrace. The phrase le-arba ruchot ha-shamayim ('toward the four winds of heaven') indicates the empire fragmented in every direction.
9. The 'small horn' (qeren achat mits'eirah) from one of the four horns is widely identified with Antiochus IV Epiphanes (reigned 175-164 BCE), who arose from the Seleucid dynasty. His expansion 'toward the south' refers to his campaigns against Ptolemaic Egypt, 'toward the east' to his eastern campaigns, and 'toward the Beautiful Land' (el ha-tsevi) to his assault on Judea.

9. The word tsevi ('beauty, splendor, ornament') as a designation for the land of Israel appears also in 11:16, 41 and in Ezekiel 20:6, 15 and Jeremiah 3:19. It expresses Israel's status as God's treasured possession — the beautiful land.
10. The 'host of heaven' (tseva ha-shamayim) and 'stars' (kokhavim) are debated: they may represent (1) the Jewish people or their leaders (cf. Genesis 15:5, 22:17, where Israel is compared to stars), (2) angelic beings, or (3) both — the earthly community and its heavenly counterparts. The act of casting stars to the ground and trampling them indicates a figure who assaults the cosmic order itself, reaching beyond mere political conquest to challenge heaven.
10. Historically, this corresponds to Antiochus's persecution of faithful Jews — executing those who kept Torah, desecrating the temple, and attempting to abolish Jewish religious identity.
11. The 'Prince of the host' (sar ha-tsava) is most likely God himself, though some identify this figure as the high priest or the archangel Michael. The horn 'magnifies itself' (higdil) against this Prince — the same verb used for the horn's growth in verses 9-10, now directed against the divine.
11. The tamid ('daily/continual offering') refers to the twice-daily burnt offering prescribed in Exodus 29:38-42 and Numbers 28:3-8 — the perpetual sacrifice that constituted Israel's ongoing worship. Its removal represents the cessation of legitimate worship. Historically, Antiochus suspended the tamid in 167 BCE and erected an altar to Zeus Olympios in the temple (1 Maccabees 1:44-47, 54).
11. The phrase mekhon miqddasho ('the foundation/place of his sanctuary') indicates not merely interruption of worship but physical desecration of the temple site itself.
12. This verse is notoriously difficult in Hebrew. The phrase tsava tinnaten al ha-tamid be-fasha ('a host was given over against the daily offering because of transgression') may mean that (1) a military force was deployed against the daily sacrifice, (2) the host of heaven (Israel) was given over because of their transgression, or (3) the worship system was surrendered because of the horn's rebellion. The ambiguity may be intentional, suggesting both divine permission and human culpability.
12. The phrase tashlekh emet artsah ('it cast truth to the ground') personifies truth (emet) as something that can be physically overthrown — not merely denied but actively suppressed. The verse ends with chilling efficiency: ve-asetah ve-hitslicah ('it acted and prospered') — evil succeeds. This candid acknowledgment of the prosperity of wickedness is characteristic of Daniel's realism.
13. Two angelic figures (qadosh, 'holy one') converse while Daniel overhears — a dramatic technique that allows the question to arise naturally rather than from Daniel himself. The word palmoni ('a certain one' — possibly from peloni almoni, 'a certain unnamed one') is unique to this verse and may be a deliberate concealment of the angel's identity.
13. The phrase ha-pesha shomem ('the desolating transgression') anticipates the fuller phrase shiqquts meshomem ('abomination of desolation') in 9:27, 11:31, and 12:11 — which Jesus cites in Matthew 24:15 and Mark 13:14. The question 'how long?' (ad matai) is the characteristic cry of the suffering faithful (cf. Psalm 13:1-2, Habakkuk 1:2, Revelation 6:10).
14. The phrase erev boqer alpayim u-shelosh me'ot ('2,300 evenings and mornings') is one of the most debated numbers in Daniel. Two main interpretations: (1) 2,300 individual evening and morning sacrifices, equaling 1,150 days (about 3 years and 2 months); (2) 2,300 full days (about 6 years and 4 months). The first calculation roughly matches the period from Antiochus's initial interference (171 BCE) to the rededication under Judas Maccabeus (December 164 BCE) if counted from a later starting point; the second matches a longer period of Seleucid control.
14. The verb venitsdaq ('will be restored to its rightful state / will be vindicated / will be justified') is from the root ts-d-q (righteousness/justice). It means the sanctuary will be set right, returned to its proper holy state. This was fulfilled historically in the Maccabean rededication — the event commemorated as Hanukkah.
15. The phrase kemar'eh gaver ('like the appearance of a man/warrior') uses gever rather than the more common ish or adam — gever connotes strength, a warrior or mighty man. The angelic interpreter appears in human form but with a warrior's bearing, anticipating Gabriel's name (Gavri'el, 'warrior of God').
16. This is the first time an angel is named in the book of Daniel and only the second time in the Hebrew Bible (Michael is named in 10:13). The name Gavri'el means 'man of God,' 'warrior of God,' or 'God is my strength.' The voice commanding Gabriel comes from 'between the banks of the Ulai' — this unidentified voice carries divine authority, commissioning the angel.
16. Gabriel reappears in Daniel 9:21 and then in the New Testament in Luke 1:19 (announcing John the Baptist to Zechariah) and Luke 1:26 (announcing Jesus to Mary). The continuity of this angelic figure across nearly six centuries of biblical narrative is remarkable.
17. Daniel's response to the angel — terror and prostration (niv'atti va-eppelah al panay) — is the standard human response to angelic encounter in the Hebrew Bible (cf. Ezekiel 1:28, Revelation 1:17). The address ben adam ('son of man') is striking — the same phrase applied to Ezekiel over 90 times, meaning simply 'human being.' It emphasizes Daniel's mortality in contrast to the angelic messenger.
17. The phrase le-et qets ('to the time of the end') frames the vision as eschatological — not merely about the immediate future but about the culmination of history. Whether 'the end' refers to the end of Antiochus's persecution, the end of the exile, or the ultimate end of days is deliberately left open.
18. The verb nirdamti ('I fell into a deep sleep / I was stunned into unconsciousness') suggests not ordinary sleep but a visionary trance — the overwhelming divine presence has rendered Daniel unconscious. Gabriel's physical touch (vayyigga bi) and the restoring to an upright position (vayyaamidni al omdi) mirror similar angelic interactions in 10:10, 18 and Revelation 1:17.

19. The phrase *be-acharit ha-za'am* ('in the latter part of the wrath/indignation') identifies the vision's timeframe as the tail end of a period of divine anger — specifically, God's wrath against Israel manifested through foreign oppression. The phrase *lemoed qets* ('for the appointed time of the end') reinforces that this period has a divinely determined limit. The persecution is real but bounded — God has set an endpoint.
20. Unlike chapter 7, where the beasts are not explicitly identified with specific nations, Gabriel names the empires directly: *malkhei Madai u-Pharas* ('the kings of Media and Persia'). This explicit identification removes the ambiguity — the ram is unequivocally Medo-Persia. The two horns correspond to the dual nature of the empire, with Persia (the taller horn) dominant.
21. The 'king of Greece' (*melekh Yavan*) uses the Hebrew word *Yavan*, derived from 'Ionia,' the Greek coastal region most familiar to the ancient Near East. The 'first king' (*ha-melekh ha-rishon*) is Alexander the Great (356-323 BCE), though he is not named. In Daniel's time, Greece was a relatively minor power compared to Persia — the specificity of this identification has been both a source of wonder for traditional readers and a key factor in critical dating discussions.
22. The four kingdoms (*arba malkhuyot*) that arise from Alexander's nation (*mi-goy*) correspond to the *Diadochi* — the successor kingdoms of Alexander's generals. The phrase *velo vekocho* ('but not with his power') indicates that none of the successor states will match Alexander's unified strength. This is historically accurate — none of the Hellenistic kingdoms individually achieved Alexander's scope of empire.
23. The phrase *kehatem ha-posh'im* ('when the transgressors have reached their full measure') is ambiguous: the transgressors may be (1) the Hellenistic rulers whose sins have reached their limit, (2) unfaithful Jews whose apostasy invites divine judgment, or (3) both — a convergence of pagan aggression and Jewish unfaithfulness that creates the conditions for Antiochus's rise.
23. The king who arises is *az panim* ('fierce/bold of face') and *mevin chidot* ('understanding riddles/skilled in intrigue'). This describes not mere military strength but political cunning — Antiochus IV gained his throne through manipulation and deception rather than legitimate succession (he usurped the throne from his nephew).
24. The phrase *velo bekhoch* ('but not by his own power') is a significant qualifier — his destructive capacity comes from elsewhere. This may mean (1) divine permission enables his power (God uses him as an instrument of judgment), (2) he relies on deception and alliances rather than personal military strength, or (3) demonic empowerment. The first reading is most consistent with Daniel's theology of divine sovereignty.
24. The phrase *am qedoshim* ('the holy people') explicitly identifies the target of persecution as Israel — God's consecrated people. The juxtaposition of 'prosper and succeed' (*hitslach ve-asah*) with 'destroy the holy people' is theologically agonizing: God permits an enemy to prosper against his own people.
25. The phrase *beshalvah yashchit rabbim* ('in a time of peace/security he will destroy many') describes treacherous attack during periods of supposed safety — Antiochus was known for attacking allies and violating treaties when they were least expected.
25. The 'Prince of princes' (*sar sarim*) is a superlative — the supreme Prince, which can only mean God himself. Antiochus's sacrilege against the temple is an assault against the divine sovereign. The parallel to the 'small horn' speaking against the Most High in 7:25 is exact.
25. The phrase *uve-efes yad yishaver* ('he will be broken without hand / not by human power') echoes the stone 'cut without hands' (*di la bi-yadin*) in 2:34. Antiochus's end will come by divine action, not human military defeat. Historically, Antiochus IV died in 164 BCE during an eastern campaign — ancient sources variously report madness, disease, or an accident. No human conqueror defeated him; he simply broke.
26. Gabriel certifies the vision: *emet hu* ('it is true') — a formal attestation of reliability. The command *setom he-chazon* ('seal up the vision') means to preserve it for the future, not to hide it. Sealing a document in the ancient world meant authenticating and preserving it, often for a future opening date. The phrase *le-yamim rabbim* ('for many days') indicates the fulfillment is distant from Daniel's perspective.
26. This instruction to seal contrasts with Revelation 22:10, where the angel tells John 'Do not seal the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near' — what Daniel sealed, John is told to leave open.
27. The vision's physical toll on Daniel is severe: *nihyeiti* ('I was overwhelmed/exhausted') and *necheleti yamim* ('I was sick for days'). The apocalyptic experience is not exhilarating but devastating — the knowledge of future suffering against God's people makes Daniel physically ill. Compare the similar reaction in 10:8-9, 15-17.
27. The phrase *va-aqom va-e'eseh et melekhet ha-melekh* ('I got up and attended to the king's business') reveals a striking duality: Daniel lives simultaneously in the world of divine revelation and in the world of imperial administration. He carries the weight of prophetic knowledge while fulfilling mundane bureaucratic duties.
27. The closing phrase *ve-ein mevin* ('and no one understood it') — or possibly 'and I did not understand it' — indicates that even Daniel did not fully grasp the vision's meaning. The mysteries of God's future action remain partially veiled even to the prophet who receives them.

9

Summary: *Daniel 9 transitions from apocalyptic vision back to prayer and prophetic revelation. Daniel, reading Jeremiah's prophecy of seventy years for Jerusalem's desolation (Jeremiah 25:11-12; 29:10), turns to God in fasting and confession. His prayer (vv. 4-19) is one of the great penitential prayers of the Hebrew Bible, saturated with Deuteronomic covenant language. Gabriel then appears with the revelation of 'seventy sevens' (shavu'im shiv'im) — a chronological prophecy stretching from a decree to restore Jerusalem through the coming and cutting off of an anointed one, to a final period of desolation. This prophecy has generated more interpretive debate than perhaps any other passage in the Hebrew Bible.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter divides sharply between Daniel's backward-looking prayer of confession (vv. 4-19), rooted in the Deuteronomic covenant tradition, and Gabriel's forward-looking revelation (vv. 24-27), which introduces an entirely new prophetic timeline. Daniel's prayer never mentions the visions of chapters 7-8 — it is thoroughly grounded in Torah and the prophets. The seventy-sevens prophecy (v. 24) uses six infinitival phrases to describe the ultimate goal: to finish transgression, seal up sin, atone for iniquity, bring in everlasting righteousness, seal vision and prophet, and anoint a most holy. The term mashiach nagid ('anointed leader,' v. 25) and the subsequent reference to an anointed one being 'cut off' (v. 26) have been read as references to a high priest (Onias III), a future messiah, or the concept of anointed kingship itself. We present the Hebrew transparently without privileging any single interpretive tradition.*

Translation Friction: *The seventy-sevens prophecy is notoriously difficult. The Hebrew of verses 24-27 is compressed and syntactically ambiguous at several points. The division of the seventy sevens into 7 + 62 + 1 requires careful punctuation decisions — the Masoretic accents place a major break after 'seven sevens' in verse 25, separating it from 'sixty-two sevens,' but some interpreters connect them. We followed the Masoretic accentuation. The phrase mashiach nagid could mean 'an anointed one who is a leader' or 'an anointed one, namely a leader' — we rendered it transparently as 'an anointed leader.' The verb yikkaret ('will be cut off') in verse 26 is followed by ve'ein lo, which is extremely compressed — it could mean 'and will have nothing,' 'and there will be no one for him,' or 'and not for himself.' We rendered with the most literal option and documented alternatives.*

Connections: *Daniel's prayer draws heavily on Deuteronomy 28-30 (covenant blessings and curses), Leviticus 26 (the covenant consequences), and Jeremiah 25 and 29 (the seventy-year prophecy). The penitential style connects to Nehemiah 9, Ezra 9, and Psalm 106. The seventy-sevens prophecy is cited by Jesus in Matthew 24:15 (the 'abomination of desolation') and has shaped Jewish and Christian eschatological thought profoundly. Gabriel's appearance links back to Daniel 8:16. The six goals listed in verse 24 form a comprehensive vision of redemption that echoes across both testaments.*

¹In the first year of Darius son of Ahasuerus — a descendant of the Medes, who had been made king over the kingdom of the Chaldeans — ²In the first year of his reign, I, Daniel, discerned from the writings the number of years that the word of the LORD had come to Jeremiah the prophet to fulfill — seventy years for the desolation of Jerusalem. ³So I turned my face to the Lord God, seeking him in prayer and pleas for mercy, with fasting, sackcloth, and ashes. ⁴I prayed to the LORD my God and made confession, saying: Please, Lord — the great and awe-inspiring God who keeps the covenant and faithful love for those who love him and keep his commandments — ⁵We have sinned, committed iniquity, acted wickedly, and rebelled, turning aside from your commandments and your judgments. ⁶We did not listen to your servants the prophets, who spoke in your name to our kings, our officials, our ancestors, and to all the people of the land. ⁷To you, Lord, belongs righteousness, but to us — open shame, as on this day: to the people of Judah, the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and all Israel, those near and those far away, in every land where you have driven them because of the treachery they committed against you. ⁸LORD, to us belongs open shame — to our kings, our officials, and our ancestors — because we sinned against you. ⁹To the Lord our God belong compassion and forgiveness, even though we have rebelled against him. ¹⁰We did not obey the voice of the LORD our God by walking in his instructions, which he set before us through his servants the prophets. ¹¹All Israel transgressed your instruction, turning aside and refusing to obey your voice. So the curse and the sworn judgment written in

the instruction of Moses, the servant of God, were poured out on us, because we sinned against him. ¹²He carried out his words that he spoke against us and against our rulers who governed us, bringing upon us a disaster so great that nothing like what was done to Jerusalem has been done under all of heaven. ¹³Just as it is written in the instruction of Moses, all this disaster came upon us, yet we did not seek the favor of the LORD our God by turning from our iniquity and attending to your faithfulness. ¹⁴So the LORD kept watch over the disaster and brought it upon us, for the LORD our God is righteous in all that he does — and we did not obey his voice. ¹⁵Now, Lord our God — you who brought your people out of the land of Egypt with a strong hand and made a name for yourself, as is known today — we have sinned, we have acted wickedly. ¹⁶Lord, in keeping with all your righteous acts, please let your anger and your wrath turn away from your city Jerusalem, your holy mountain. Because of our sins and the iniquities of our ancestors, Jerusalem and your people have become an object of scorn to all those around us. ¹⁷So now, our God, hear the prayer of your servant and his pleas for mercy. Let your face shine upon your desolated sanctuary — for your own sake, Lord. ¹⁸Incline your ear, my God, and hear. Open your eyes and see our desolation and the city that bears your name. For we are not presenting our pleas before you because of our own righteousness, but because of your abundant compassion. ¹⁹Lord, hear! Lord, forgive! Lord, pay attention and act — do not delay! For your own sake, my God, because your name is invoked over your city and your people. ²⁰While I was still speaking, praying, and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, presenting my plea before the LORD my God concerning the holy mountain of my God — ²¹While I was still speaking in prayer, the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the earlier vision, came to me in swift flight and touched me at about the time of the evening offering. ²²He gave me understanding, speaking with me and saying: Daniel, I have now come to give you insight and comprehension. ²³At the start of your pleas for mercy, a word went out, and I have come to declare it, for you are treasured. So give attention to the word and understand the vision. ²⁴Seventy sevens are decreed concerning your people and your holy city: to put an end to transgression, to seal up sin, to atone for iniquity, to bring in everlasting righteousness, to seal up vision and prophet, and to anoint a most holy place. ²⁵Know and understand: from the issuing of a word to restore and rebuild Jerusalem until an anointed leader — seven sevens. Then for sixty-two sevens it will be restored and rebuilt, with plaza and moat, but in times of distress. ²⁶After the sixty-two sevens, an anointed one will be cut off and will have nothing. The people of a coming leader will destroy the city and the holy place. Its end will come like a flood, and until the end there will be war — desolations are decreed. ²⁷He will make a strong covenant with many for one seven, and in the middle of the seven he will put a stop to sacrifice and grain offering. On the wing of abominations will come one who makes desolate, until the decreed destruction is poured out on the desolator.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The identification of this Darius remains one of the most debated historical questions in Daniel. He is called 'son of Ahasuerus' and 'of the seed of the Medes,' yet no Median king named Darius son of Ahasuerus appears in extant Persian records. Various proposals identify him with Gubaru (a governor under Cyrus), Cyrus himself, or treat the figure as a literary composite. The Hebrew *homiakh* ('was made king') uses the passive Hophal stem, suggesting he received kingship rather than seizing it.
2. The Hebrew *binoti* ('I discerned, I understood') suggests careful study, not casual reading. The 'writings' (*sepharim*) likely refers to a collection of prophetic scrolls that Daniel had access to in exile. The reference is to Jeremiah 25:11-12 and 29:10, which prophesied seventy years of Babylonian dominance. The word *charbot* ('desolations') is plural, intensifying the devastation. Daniel's engagement with earlier scripture within scripture itself is a rare and significant moment of inner-biblical interpretation.
3. The phrase 'I turned my face' (*va'ettenah et panai*) indicates deliberate orientation toward God — a posture of focused, whole-body intention. The word *tachanumim* ('pleas for mercy, supplications') comes from the root *ch-n-n* ('to be gracious') and carries an inherent admission of dependence on undeserved favor. Fasting, sackcloth, and ashes together constitute the full penitential posture in ancient Israel — bodily participation in grief and humility.
4. The verb *va'etvaddeh* ('I made confession') is Hithpael of *y-d-h*, meaning to confess or acknowledge openly — a public, voluntary declaration of wrongdoing. The phrase *shomer ha-berit vеха-chesed* ('who keeps the covenant and faithful love') echoes Deuteronomy 7:9 and Nehemiah 1:5, placing Daniel's prayer squarely in the Deuteronomic tradition. The adjective *nora* ('awe-inspiring, fearsome') is rendered with its full force — this is not mere respect but trembling awareness of God's overwhelming power.

5. Daniel uses four distinct terms for wrongdoing in an escalating sequence: *chatanu* ('we sinned' — missing the mark), *avinu* ('we committed iniquity' — twisted what is right), *hirshanu* ('we acted wickedly' — declared guilty by conduct), and *maradnu* ('we rebelled' — actively defied authority). This fourfold confession covers the full spectrum from inadvertent failure to deliberate revolt. Daniel uses first-person plural throughout — he includes himself in the nation's guilt despite his personal faithfulness.
6. The phrase 'spoke in your name' (*dibberu beshimkha*) indicates prophetic authority — the prophets were not sharing private opinions but delivering words carrying divine authorization. The list of addressees — kings, officials, ancestors, and all the people — emphasizes that the prophetic message reached every level of society. No one can claim ignorance. The word *sarim* ('officials, princes') refers to the ruling class beneath the king.
7. The contrast between God's *tsedaqah* ('righteousness') and Israel's *boshet ha-panim* ('shame of face') is the structural axis of the prayer. The phrase *boshet ha-panim* is vivid — faces burning with shame, unable to look up. The word *ma'al* ('treachery, unfaithfulness') is used specifically for covenant betrayal, often of a sacred trust violated. Daniel encompasses both diaspora communities — 'near and far' — in the confession.
8. This verse intensifies verse 7's confession by stripping it to its essentials. The shame belongs not just to the common people but to the leadership class — kings and officials who should have guided the nation in covenant faithfulness. The verb *chatanu* ('we sinned') returns to the most basic term for wrongdoing from verse 5.
9. The Hebrew *rahamim* ('compassion') is related to *rechem* ('womb'), carrying the sense of deep, visceral tenderness — the compassion a mother feels for her child. The plural *selichot* ('forgivenesses') suggests repeated, abundant acts of pardon, not a single transaction. The conjunction *ki* ('because, though') creates a striking paradox: God's compassion and forgiveness exist precisely in the context of rebellion, not despite it.
10. The word *torotav* ('his instructions') is the plural of *torah*. Here it refers not to the Torah as a single book but to God's teachings delivered through multiple prophetic voices over centuries. The phrase 'set before us' (*natan lefaneynu*) echoes the Deuteronomic motif of God placing the covenant choice before the people (Deuteronomy 30:15, 19).
11. The verb *avru* ('transgressed') literally means 'crossed over' — they crossed the boundary of Torah. The word *alah* ('curse') is specifically the covenant curse, the sworn penalty for violation. The word *shevu'ah* ('oath, sworn judgment') reinforces that these consequences were not arbitrary but were the penalties Israel swore to accept at covenant ratification. Moses is called *eved ha-Elohim* ('servant of God'), a title of highest honor in the Hebrew Bible.
12. The verb *vayyaqem* ('he carried out, confirmed') means God made good on his word — the covenant curses were not empty threats. The word *shofeteynu* ('our rulers/judges') may refer to the line of leaders from judges through kings. The phrase 'under all of heaven' is a superlative expressing the unprecedented scale of Jerusalem's destruction — a claim echoed in Lamentations 1:12 and 2:13.
13. The phrase *chilinu et peney* ('we sought the favor of') literally means 'we softened the face of' — an idiom for entreating God's mercy through prayer and repentance. The Hebrew *amitekha* is often rendered 'your truth' but in covenantal context carries the stronger sense of 'your faithfulness, your reliability.' The verb *lehaskil* ('to attend to, to gain insight') implies more than intellectual understanding — it means to discern and act wisely in response.
14. The verb *vayyishqod* ('he kept watch') uses the same root as the almond branch (*shaqed*) vision in Jeremiah 1:11-12, where God says 'I am watching over my word to carry it out.' Here the watching is ominous — God vigilantly ensured that the covenant curses were fulfilled. The adjective *tsaddiq* ('righteous') reaffirms verse 7's claim: God's punishment was just, not excessive. The word *ra'ah* here means 'disaster, calamity' — a consequence, not divine malice.
15. The prayer pivots from confession to appeal with *ve'attah* ('and now'). Daniel invokes the Exodus — the foundational act of divine rescue — as the precedent for what he is about to ask. The phrase 'made a name for yourself' (*vatta'as lekha shem*) echoes Nehemiah 9:10 and Jeremiah 32:20. The reputation God earned through the Exodus is the implicit argument: 'You did it once; your name is at stake.'
16. Daniel appeals to God's *tsidqot* ('righteous acts') — the plural refers to God's historical acts of deliverance and justice. The argument is sophisticated: because God is righteous, and because he has a track record of righteous intervention, he should act again. The word *cherpah* ('reproach, scorn') describes the humiliation of God's people before the nations — and implicitly, the humiliation of God's reputation among them.
17. The phrase 'let your face shine' (*ha'er panekha*) echoes the Aaronic blessing of Numbers 6:25 — it is a request for restored divine favor and presence. The sanctuary (*miqdash*) is described as *shamem* ('desolated, made desolate') — the same root that appears in the 'abomination of desolation' later in this chapter (v. 27) and in 11:31. The crucial phrase *lema'an Adonai* ('for your own sake, Lord') shifts the argument from Israel's merit to God's reputation — Daniel asks God to act not because Israel deserves it but because God's own name is bound to this place.
18. The anthropomorphic language — inclining the ear, opening eyes — is not naive theology but urgent rhetorical entreaty, pressing God to engage with Israel's suffering. The phrase 'the city that bears your name' (*asher niqra shimkha aleha*) means God's reputation is publicly linked to Jerusalem's fate. The theological climax of the prayer arrives here: the appeal rests entirely on God's *rahamim* ('compassion'), not on Israel's *tsidqot* ('righteous acts'). This is pure grace theology within the Hebrew Bible — salvation is asked for on the basis of who God is, not who Israel is.
19. The prayer reaches its rhetorical peak with three urgent imperatives, each preceded by the divine address *Adonai* — *shema'ah*, *selachah*, *haqshivah va'aseh* ('hear, forgive, attend and act'). The staccato rhythm conveys desperation. The plea *al te'achar* ('do not delay') introduces the theme of divine timing that Gabriel's response will address with the seventy-sevens chronology. The final argument is again God's own stake: his name (*shem*) is publicly attached to both city and people.

- 20.** The narrative transition indicates that God's response came while Daniel was still praying — the answer was dispatched before the prayer was finished (cf. Isaiah 65:24, 'Before they call, I will answer'). Daniel again takes personal ownership, confessing 'my sin' alongside 'the sin of my people.' The phrase *har qodesh* ('holy mountain') refers to Mount Zion, the temple mount, which is the geographic focus of Daniel's entire petition.
- 21.** Gabriel is called *ha-ish* ('the man'), even though he is an angelic being — this reflects the human-like appearance of angelic messengers in the Hebrew Bible. The phrase *mu'af bi'af* is debated: it could mean 'caused to fly swiftly' or 'wearied with weariness' (from the root *y-'-f*, 'to be weary'). We follow the more common reading of swift flight. The 'evening offering' (*minchat erev*) indicates the late afternoon sacrifice time — approximately 3 PM — which continued to mark Daniel's prayer schedule even in exile where no sacrifice could be offered. Gabriel appeared previously in 8:16.
- 22.** The verb *vayyaven* ('he gave understanding') and the noun *binah* ('comprehension') both come from the root *b-y-n* ('to discern, understand'). Gabriel's mission is explicitly pedagogical — he comes to help Daniel comprehend what has been revealed. The verb *lehaskilekhah* ('to give you insight') is the Hiphil of *s-k-l*, meaning to cause to understand or act wisely.
- 23.** The phrase *chamudot attah* ('you are treasured') indicates Daniel's special standing before God — the word *chamud* means 'desired, precious, treasured.' This is not flattery but a statement of Daniel's covenantal status. The 'word' (*davar*) that went out at the beginning of Daniel's prayer suggests that God responded immediately — the answer was dispatched the moment Daniel began praying. Gabriel commands Daniel to 'understand the vision' (*haven bammar'eh*), preparing him for the difficult revelation that follows.
- 24.** *Shavu'im shiv'im* ('seventy sevens') is the foundational phrase. The Hebrew *shavu'a* means a unit of seven — it could refer to weeks of days (490 days), weeks of years (490 years), or symbolic periods. Most interpreters read 'weeks of years.' The verb *nechtakh* ('are decreed, cut off') appears only here in the Hebrew Bible, making its precise meaning uncertain — 'decreed, determined, cut off' are all possibilities. The six infinitival purposes divide into two triads: the first three are negative (ending transgression, sin, iniquity) and the second three are positive (bringing righteousness, sealing prophecy, anointing). The phrase *qodesh qodashim* ('most holy') could refer to the most holy place in the temple, a most holy object, or a most holy person — the Hebrew is genuinely ambiguous. We render 'a most holy place' as the most natural reading of the construct but note the ambiguity. This verse is the most debated chronological prophecy in the Hebrew Bible, interpreted variously as fulfilled in the Maccabean period (Antiochus IV), in the time of Jesus, or in a still-future eschatological fulfillment.
- 25.** The Masoretic accents place a major disjunctive accent (*atnach*) after *shavu'im shiv'ah* ('seven sevens'), separating it from the sixty-two sevens that follow. This means the anointed leader (*mashiach nagid*) arrives after seven sevens, not after sixty-nine. Some interpreters disregard the Masoretic punctuation and connect all sixty-nine sevens to the anointed leader's arrival. We follow the Masoretic accentuation in our rendering. The term *mashiach nagid* ('anointed leader') does not carry the later technical meaning of 'the Messiah' — *mashiach* in the Hebrew Bible refers to anyone anointed for a role (kings, priests, even Cyrus in Isaiah 45:1). The word *nagid* ('leader') is the standard term for a designated ruler. The phrase *rechov vecharuts* ('plaza and moat') describes the rebuilt city's infrastructure — *rechov* is an open square or broad street, and *charuts* likely refers to a trench or moat, though some read it as 'wall' or 'decision.'
- 26.** The verb *yikkaret* ('will be cut off') is the same verb used for being cut off from the covenant community (e.g., Genesis 17:14) and for making/cutting a covenant (*karat berit*). The phrase *ve'ein lo* is extremely compressed Hebrew — literally 'and nothing to him' or 'and there is not for him.' Interpretive options include: 'and will have nothing' (destitution), 'and there will be no one for him' (abandonment), 'and not for himself' (vicarious suffering). We render the most literal option. The 'people of a coming leader' (*am nagid habba*) who destroy the city and sanctuary have been identified with Antiochus Epiphanes's forces (167 BCE), the Roman legions under Titus (70 CE), or a future eschatological army. The word *shomemot* ('desolations') connects to the 'abomination of desolation' in verse 27 and in 11:31.
- 27.** The verb *higbir* ('he will make strong, enforce') is unusual for covenant-making — the normal verb is *karat* ('to cut'). This suggests an imposed or forced covenant rather than a mutually ratified one. The phrase 'on the wing of abominations' (*al kenaf shiqqusim*) is one of the most difficult phrases in the Hebrew Bible. *Kenaf* ('wing') could mean 'extremity,' 'pinnacle,' or 'wing' — possibly referring to the pinnacle of the temple. *Shiqqusim* ('abominations, detestable things') is the standard term for idolatrous objects. The phrase *meshomem* ('one who makes desolate' or 'causing desolation') combined with *shiqqusim* forms the famous *shiqquts meshomem* ('abomination of desolation') referenced by Jesus in Matthew 24:15 and Mark 13:14. Historically, this has been connected to Antiochus Epiphanes's desecration of the temple in 167 BCE (1 Maccabees 1:54), the Roman destruction of 70 CE, or a future eschatological event. The final clause promises that the destruction decreed (*necharatsah*) will ultimately fall on the desolator himself — judgment is not the last word; the one who desolates will himself be destroyed.

10

Summary: *Daniel 10 introduces the final vision of the book (spanning chapters 10-12) with an elaborate account of the heavenly messenger who comes to Daniel. Set in the third year of Cyrus king of Persia, Daniel mourns and fasts for three full weeks before a glorious figure appears to him by the Tigris River. The description of this figure — clothed in linen, body like beryl, face like lightning, eyes like torches of fire — is one of the most vivid theophanies or angelophanies in the Hebrew Bible. The messenger reveals that he was delayed twenty-one days by 'the prince of the kingdom of Persia' until Michael came to help, introducing the concept of cosmic warfare behind earthly politics — angelic powers contending over the destinies of nations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The description of the heavenly figure in verses 5-6 has remarkable parallels to the glorified Christ in Revelation 1:13-15, leading to debate about whether this is an angel or a pre-incarnate divine appearance. The concept of angelic 'princes' assigned to nations (the prince of Persia, the prince of Greece, Michael as Israel's prince) introduces a cosmology where earthly political conflicts mirror heavenly spiritual battles. The twenty-one-day delay — matching Daniel's twenty-one days of fasting — implies that Daniel's prayer and fasting were directly connected to the heavenly conflict. This chapter presents one of the clearest biblical texts for the idea that prayer participates in cosmic spiritual warfare.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the glorious figure in verses 5-6 versus the speaking angel in verses 10-14 is debated. Some scholars see a single figure; others distinguish between a divine or exalted being in the vision (vv. 5-6) and the interpreting angel who speaks (vv. 10ff). We rendered the text as it stands without resolving the ambiguity. The phrase 'prince of Persia' (sar malkhut paras) could refer to a human ruler or a cosmic/angelic being — the context strongly favors an angelic interpretation since Michael is explicitly called 'one of the chief princes.' The verb nitgashsheti is a rare Hithpael form in verse 8.*

Connections: *The vision's setting by the Tigris connects to the rivers of Eden (Genesis 2:14) and Ezekiel's river visions (Ezekiel 1:1). The heavenly figure's description parallels Ezekiel 1:26-28 and Revelation 1:13-16. Michael appears here and in Daniel 12:1, Jude 9, and Revelation 12:7. The angelic princes concept connects to Deuteronomy 32:8 (where God assigned nations to divine beings) and to Paul's 'principalities and powers' language (Ephesians 6:12). The three-week fast connects to Daniel's earlier prayer practices (chapter 9).*

¹In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia, a word was revealed to Daniel, who was called Belteshazzar. The word was true, and it concerned a great conflict. He understood the word and had comprehension of the vision. ²In those days, I, Daniel, had been mourning for three weeks of days. ³I ate no rich food; no meat or wine entered my mouth, and I did not anoint myself with oil until the three full weeks had passed. ⁴On the twenty-fourth day of the first month, I was beside the great river — that is, the Tigris. ⁵I raised my eyes and looked, and there was a man clothed in linen, with a belt of pure gold from Uphaz around his waist. ⁶His body was like beryl, his face like the flash of lightning, his eyes like flaming torches, his arms and legs like the gleam of polished bronze, and the sound of his words like the roar of a multitude. ⁷I, Daniel, alone saw the vision. The men who were with me did not see the vision, but a great terror fell upon them and they fled into hiding. ⁸I was left alone, gazing at this great vision. No strength remained in me; my vigor drained away completely, and I could not summon any strength. ⁹I heard the sound of his words, and as I heard the sound of his words, I fell into a deep stupor, face down on the ground. ¹⁰Then a hand touched me and set me trembling on my hands and knees. ¹¹He said to me: Daniel, you who are treasured — attend to the words I am about to speak to you, and stand up, for I have now been sent to you. When he spoke this word to me, I stood up, trembling. ¹²He said to me: Do not be afraid, Daniel. From the very first day you set your heart to understand and to humble yourself before your God, your words were heard. I have come because of your words. ¹³The prince of the kingdom of Persia stood opposing me for twenty-one days. Then Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me, for I had been left there beside the kings of Persia. ¹⁴I have come to help you understand what will happen to your people in the latter days, for the vision concerns days yet to come. ¹⁵When he spoke these words to me, I turned my face to the ground and was struck speechless. ¹⁶Then one in the likeness of a human being touched my lips. I opened my mouth and

spoke, saying to the one standing before me: My lord, because of the vision anguish has overwhelmed me, and I have no strength left. ¹⁷How can this servant of my lord speak with my lord? As for me, no strength remains in me, and no breath is left in me. ¹⁸Again one with a human appearance touched me and strengthened me. ¹⁹He said: Do not be afraid, treasured one. Peace to you — be strong, yes, be strong! As he spoke to me, I was strengthened and said: Let my lord speak, for you have strengthened me. ²⁰Then he said: Do you know why I have come to you? Now I must return to fight against the prince of Persia, and when I leave, the prince of Greece will come. ²¹But first I will tell you what is inscribed in the writing of truth. There is no one who stands firmly with me against these forces except Michael, your prince.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *tsava gadol* ('great conflict' or 'great army/warfare') is rendered 'a great conflict' rather than the KJV's 'the time appointed was long,' following the more natural meaning of *tsava* ('army, warfare, conflict, service'). Some translations read 'a great task' or 'a long time of warfare.' The dual naming — Daniel (Hebrew) and Belteshazzar (Babylonian) — reminds the reader of Daniel's bicultural existence. The verb *niglah* ('was revealed') is the Niphal passive, indicating divine initiative — the word was not discovered by Daniel but disclosed to him.
2. The phrase *sheloshah shavu'im yamim* ('three weeks of days') adds *yamim* ('days') to distinguish these weeks as literal seven-day periods, unlike the symbolic 'sevens' (*shavu'im*) in chapter 9. This deliberate clarification suggests awareness that *shavu'im* in the previous chapter meant something other than literal weeks. The verb *mit'abel* ('mourning') indicates deep grief, not merely fasting — Daniel is in a state of lamentation, likely over the situation described in the revealed word.
3. The phrase *lechem chamudot* ('rich food' or 'food of desire') describes delicacies or choice foods — Daniel did not fully fast but abstained from luxury and pleasure. This partial fast (sometimes called the 'Daniel fast' in later tradition) contrasts with the complete fast of chapter 9. The refusal to anoint with oil was a sign of mourning — anointing was associated with celebration and normal grooming (cf. 2 Samuel 12:20). The three-week period will prove significant: the angelic messenger was delayed exactly twenty-one days.
4. The twenty-fourth day of the first month (Nisan) falls just after Passover and the seven days of Unleavened Bread (Nisan 14-21). Daniel's three-week mourning fast apparently overlapped with or followed the Passover season. The river *Hiddekel* is identified as the Tigris (one of the four rivers of Eden in Genesis 2:14). The setting by a great river echoes Ezekiel's vision by the Chebar canal (Ezekiel 1:1) — major prophetic visions are associated with rivers throughout the Hebrew Bible.
5. The 'man' (*ish echad*, literally 'one man' or 'a certain man') is described in terms that transcend ordinary humanity. The linen garment (*baddim*) is priestly clothing — the high priest wore linen on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:4). Uphaz is an otherwise unknown location famous for gold, possibly identical with Ophir. The combination of priestly garments and royal gold suggests a figure who unites priestly and royal functions. The parallels with Revelation 1:13 (Christ clothed in a long robe with a golden sash) are striking.
6. The description unfolds in five elements, each comparing the figure to something overwhelmingly vivid: *tarshish* (a precious stone, likely topaz or chrysolite — the exact identification is uncertain), lightning, fire, bronze, and the sound of a crowd. The word *qalal* applied to the bronze means 'polished, burnished' — gleaming metal. The 'voice of a multitude' (*qol hamon*) could also mean 'the sound of a tumult' — an overwhelming, composite sound. Compare Ezekiel 1:24 ('like the sound of many waters') and Revelation 1:15 ('like the sound of many waters'). This figure embodies concentrated divine radiance — every surface burns or gleams.
7. The pattern of a visionary seeing what companions cannot parallels Paul's experience on the Damascus road (Acts 9:7; 22:9). The word *charadah* ('trembling, terror') is a deep, instinctive dread — the companions sensed the presence of something overwhelming even though they could not perceive it visually. Their flight was not cowardice but the natural human response to proximity with the numinous. This detail authenticates the vision as a genuine encounter, not a psychological episode — it affected others who were present.
8. The Hebrew *hodi* ('my splendor, my vigor') refers to Daniel's physical vitality or healthy appearance — the vision drained him of all natural energy. The verb *nehpakh* ('was turned, overturned') suggests a total reversal — his life force turned to destruction (*mashchit*). The threefold emphasis on loss of strength (*lo nishar bi koach... lo atsarti koach*) conveys complete physical collapse. Encountering the divine drains human capacity — compare Isaiah 6:5, Ezekiel 1:28, and Revelation 1:17.
9. The word *nirdam* ('deep sleep, stupor') describes an overwhelmed unconsciousness — not ordinary sleep but a state of incapacitation brought on by the encounter. Daniel could hear but could not remain conscious — the auditory impact alone was too much. The posture 'face down on the ground' (*panai artsah*) is the ultimate posture of human vulnerability before divine power.
10. The verb *vateni'eni* ('set me trembling, shook me') comes from the root *n-w-* ('to shake, totter'). The hand is not identified — it may belong to the glorious figure of verses 5-6 or to a different angelic attendant. Daniel is raised only to hands and knees — he cannot yet stand. The progression from face down to hands and knees to standing upright (v. 11) depicts a staged recovery from the overwhelming vision, assisted by angelic touch at each stage.
11. The phrase *ish chamudot* ('man of treasures' or 'treasured man') echoes 9:23 where Daniel is called *chamudot attah* ('you are treasured'). This is a title of exceptional divine favor. The command 'stand up' (*amod al omdekha*, literally 'stand on your standing place') restores Daniel's dignity and prepares him to receive the message. The angel's statement 'I have been sent to you' (*shullachti eleykha*) uses the passive — the angel was dispatched

by a higher authority. Daniel obeys but cannot stop trembling (*mar'id*) — obedience does not eliminate awe.

12. The phrase 'from the very first day' reveals that God's response was immediate — there was no delay on God's part. The twenty-one-day gap was caused by opposition en route, not by divine indifference. The verb *lehit'annot* ('to humble yourself') is the same reflexive verb used for the affliction of Yom Kippur fasting (Leviticus 16:29, 31). Daniel's three-week fast was an act of self-humbling before God. The phrase 'I have come because of your words' (*ba'ti bidvareykha*) establishes a direct causal link between Daniel's prayer and the angelic mission — prayer moves heaven.
13. The *sar malkhut paras* ('prince of the kingdom of Persia') is widely understood as an angelic or cosmic being assigned to Persia — a spiritual power behind the earthly empire. This interpretation is supported by the parallel with Michael, who is explicitly called one of the chief princes (*sarim harishonim*) and later identified as Israel's prince (12:1). The twenty-one-day delay matches Daniel's twenty-one days of fasting (v. 2), creating a direct correspondence between earthly prayer and heavenly warfare. The phrase *malkhey paras* ('kings of Persia') at the end of the verse is textually difficult — it may mean 'beside the kings of Persia' (i.e., the angelic powers over Persia) or may be emended to 'king of Persia' (singular). We follow the MT as it stands.
14. The phrase *be'acharit hayyamim* ('in the latter days' or 'at the end of days') is a standard prophetic formula for the future era when God's purposes reach fulfillment (cf. Genesis 49:1, Numbers 24:14, Isaiah 2:2, Micah 4:1). Whether this refers to the Maccabean crisis, the messianic age, or the eschatological end depends on one's interpretive framework. The angel's purpose is explicitly pedagogical — *lahavinekha* ('to help you understand'). The vision 'concerns days yet to come' (*od chazon layyamim*) — from Daniel's perspective, the events are still future.
15. The verb *ne'elamti* ('I was struck speechless, I became mute') is the Niphal of *aleph-lamed-mem*, meaning Daniel lost the capacity for speech. This is the second physical collapse — after the initial loss of strength (v. 8), Daniel now loses the ability to speak. The encounter with the heavenly progressively strips away human faculties — strength, consciousness, speech — before restoring them. The downward gaze (*panai artsah*) is both physical incapacity and instinctive reverence.
16. The phrase *kidmut beney adam* ('in the likeness of human beings') echoes the 'son of man' language of Daniel 7:13, though here it describes an angelic being who appears in human form. The touch on the lips restores Daniel's speech — compare Isaiah 6:7 where a seraph touches Isaiah's lips with a coal. The word *tsiray* ('my pangs, my anguish') originally refers to birth pangs — the vision has caused Daniel a pain as intense and involuntary as labor.
17. Daniel refers to himself as *eved* ('servant') of the angel — a posture of deep humility. The loss of *neshamah* ('breath') suggests Daniel is on the verge of death from the encounter — the breath of life itself (Genesis 2:7) is failing. The double address 'my lord... my lord' (*adoni zeh... adoni zeh*) expresses both deference and bewilderment. The rhetorical question — how can a mortal speak with a heavenly being? — echoes the ancient conviction that humans cannot survive direct contact with the divine.
18. This is the third touch in the sequence (vv. 10, 16, 18), each restoring a lost faculty — first the ability to move, then speech, now strength. The phrase *kemar'eh adam* ('like the appearance of a human') is another variant of the human-likeness language — the angelic being has a recognizably human form. The verb *vaychazeqeni* ('he strengthened me') uses the Piel intensive of *ch-z-q*, indicating active, deliberate strengthening — the angel pours strength into Daniel.
19. The repeated imperative *chazaq vachazaq* ('be strong, yes, be strong') uses the emphatic doubling pattern common in Hebrew for emphasis and encouragement. The progression is complete: Daniel went from collapsed and speechless to upright and ready to hear. The word *chamudot* ('treasured') appears for the third time in relation to Daniel (9:23, 10:11, 10:19), establishing it as his angelic title. Daniel's response — 'let my lord speak' — signals readiness to receive the revelation that follows in chapters 11-12.
20. The angel's question is rhetorical — he is about to explain. The cosmic warfare continues: the angel must return to the conflict with the prince (*sar*) of Persia, and a new antagonist, the prince of Greece (*sar yavan*), is approaching. *Yavan* ('Greece/Ionia') appears in Genesis 10:2 as a descendant of Japheth and becomes the standard Hebrew term for the Greek world. The sequence — Persia, then Greece — mirrors the historical succession of empires and the vision sequence of chapters 2, 7, and 8. The angelic conflict mirrors and drives the earthly political transitions.
21. The 'writing of truth' (*ketav emet*) suggests a heavenly book in which future events are recorded — a concept found also in Psalm 139:16 and Malachi 3:16. The word *rashum* ('inscribed') indicates something permanently written, not subject to revision. Michael is called *sarkhem* ('your prince') — Israel's patron angel, the cosmic defender of the covenant people. The angel's statement that only Michael supports him reveals the intensity of the heavenly conflict — it is not a minor skirmish but a battle requiring the highest angelic powers. This verse sets the stage for the detailed revelation of chapters 11-12.

11

Summary: *Daniel 11 contains the most detailed predictive text in the Hebrew Bible — a blow-by-blow account of the wars between the Ptolemaic kingdom of Egypt ('the king of the south') and the Seleucid kingdom of Syria ('the king of the north') spanning approximately 323-164 BCE. The chapter traces Persian kings (v. 2), Alexander the Great's empire and its division (vv. 3-4), the Ptolemaic-Seleucid wars (vv. 5-20), and the career of Antiochus IV Epiphanes in extraordinary detail (vv. 21-35), including his desecration of the Jerusalem temple — the 'abomination of desolation' (shiqquts meshomem, v. 31). Beginning at verse 36, the text shifts to descriptions that do not clearly correspond to any known historical events, leading to debate about whether these verses describe Antiochus in idealized terms, a future eschatological figure, or a literary transition from history to apocalyptic prophecy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The historical precision of verses 2-35 is so detailed that critical scholars almost universally date this section to the Maccabean period (c. 167-164 BCE), viewing it as prophecy after the fact (vaticinium ex eventu). Conservative scholars maintain it as genuine predictive prophecy from the sixth century BCE. Either reading makes the chapter remarkable: as history, it provides one of the most detailed ancient accounts of the Ptolemaic-Seleucid wars; as prophecy, its accuracy is unparalleled. The 'abomination of desolation' (v. 31) becomes a template for desecration that Jesus applies to future events (Matthew 24:15). The description of 'those who are wise' (maskilim, vv. 33, 35) suffering and refining anticipates the theology of redemptive suffering. The shift at verse 36 to events without clear historical referent has generated centuries of interpretive debate.*

Translation Friction: *The primary challenge is rendering the relentless military and political language with clarity while preserving the Hebrew's compressed style. The chapter uses 'king of the north' and 'king of the south' without naming specific rulers — we preserve this ambiguity as the Hebrew intends. Many verses are syntactically dense, with pronoun references that can be ambiguous (whose daughter? whose army? whose forces?). We resolved these based on context while noting ambiguities. The word shiqquts ('abomination') in verse 31 carries strong overtones of idolatrous defilement — we preserved the traditional rendering. The shift at verse 36 is handled by noting the break without imposing an interpretation.*

Connections: *The chapter connects to Daniel 2 (four kingdoms), Daniel 7 (four beasts), and Daniel 8 (ram and goat, the 'little horn' = Antiochus). The 'abomination of desolation' connects to 9:27, 12:11, Matthew 24:15, and Mark 13:14. 1 Maccabees 1:54-64 describes the historical fulfillment under Antiochus. The maskilim ('wise ones') appear again in 12:3, 10. The chapter's theology of God's sovereignty over political history connects to Isaiah 10:5-19 (Assyria as God's instrument) and to the book's overall theme that earthly kingdoms rise and fall under divine governance.*

¹As for me, in the first year of Darius the Mede, I took my stand to support and strengthen him. ²Now I will tell you the truth. Three more kings will arise in Persia, and a fourth will gain wealth far exceeding all of them. When he becomes strong through his wealth, he will stir up everything against the kingdom of Greece. ³Then a mighty king will arise, ruling with vast dominion and doing as he pleases. ⁴When he has arisen, his kingdom will be shattered and divided toward the four winds of heaven — but not to his descendants, and not with the authority with which he ruled. For his kingdom will be uprooted and given to others besides these. ⁵The king of the south will grow strong, but one of his commanders will grow stronger still and will rule — his domain will be a vast domain. ⁶After some years they will form an alliance. The daughter of the king of the south will come to the king of the north to seal an agreement, but she will not retain her power, nor will he keep his strength. She will be given over, along with those who brought her, the one who fathered her, and the one who supported her in those times. ⁷From a shoot of her roots one will arise in his place. He will come against the army and enter the fortress of the king of the north, acting against them and prevailing. ⁸He will also carry off to Egypt their gods, along with their cast images and their precious vessels of silver and gold. Then he will stand back from the king of the north for some years. ⁹Then he will invade the realm of the king of the south but will return to his own land. ¹⁰His sons will mobilize and assemble a vast multitude of forces. One of them will sweep forward like a flood, pressing on; then he will return and wage war all the way to

his fortress. ¹¹The king of the south will be enraged and go out to fight against him — against the king of the north — who will raise a great multitude, but the multitude will be given into his hand. ¹²When the multitude has been swept away, his heart will be exalted. He will bring down tens of thousands, yet he will not prevail. ¹³The king of the north will return and raise a multitude even greater than the first. After a period of some years, he will advance with a large army and abundant resources. ¹⁴In those times, many will rise against the king of the south. Violent ones among your own people will lift themselves up to fulfill the vision, but they will stumble. ¹⁵The king of the north will come, build siege ramps, and capture a fortified city. The forces of the south will not stand — not even his best troops will have the strength to resist. ¹⁶The one who comes against him will do as he pleases, with no one able to stand before him. He will take his stand in the beautiful land, with destruction in his hand. ¹⁷He will set his determination to come with the strength of his entire kingdom, making equitable terms with him. He will do this, giving him the daughter of women to destroy it — but she will not stand with him or be on his side. ¹⁸Then he will turn his attention to the coastlands and capture many of them, but a commander will put an end to his insolence — indeed, he will turn his insolence back upon him. ¹⁹He will turn back toward the fortresses of his own land, but he will stumble and fall and be found no more. ²⁰In his place will arise one who sends an exactor through the splendor of the kingdom. But within a few days he will be broken — not in anger and not in battle. ²¹In his place will arise a despised one to whom the royal honor was not given. He will come in a time of security and seize the kingdom through intrigue. ²²Overwhelming forces will be swept away before him and shattered — along with the prince of the covenant. ²³After allying with him, he will act deceitfully. He will rise to power with only a small force. ²⁴In a time of security he will enter the richest parts of the province and do what none of his ancestors or his ancestors' ancestors did — he will distribute plunder, spoil, and wealth among them. He will plot his schemes against fortified places, but only for a time. ²⁵He will rouse his strength and determination against the king of the south with a large army. The king of the south will mobilize for war with an extremely large and powerful army, but he will not stand because plots will be devised against him. ²⁶Those who eat his royal food will destroy him. His army will be swept away, and many will fall slain. ²⁷Both these kings, with their hearts set on evil, will speak lies to each other at the same table. But it will not succeed, for the end is still at the appointed time. ²⁸He will return to his land with great wealth, but his heart will be set against the holy covenant. He will take action and then return to his own land. ²⁹At the appointed time he will return and come against the south, but this time it will not be as before. ³⁰Ships of Kittim will come against him, and he will lose heart and turn back. He will rage against the holy covenant and take action. He will return and show favor to those who abandon the holy covenant. ³¹Forces from him will arise, profane the temple fortress, abolish the regular offering, and set up the abomination that causes desolation. ³²Those who act wickedly against the covenant he will seduce with smooth words, but the people who know their God will stand firm and take action. ³³Those who are wise among the people will give understanding to many, though they will fall by sword and flame, by captivity and plunder, for a time. ³⁴When they stumble, they will receive a little help, though many will join them insincerely. ³⁵Some of the wise will stumble so that they may be refined, purified, and made clean until the time of the end, for it is still for the appointed time. ³⁶The king will do as he pleases. He will exalt himself and magnify himself above every god. Against the God of gods he will speak astonishing things. He will prosper until the wrath is completed, for what has been decreed will be accomplished. ³⁷He will show no regard for the gods of his ancestors, nor for the one desired by women, nor for any god, for he will magnify himself above all. ³⁸Instead, he will honor a god of fortresses in their place. He will honor a god his ancestors did not know with gold, silver, precious stones, and costly gifts. ³⁹He will deal with the strongest fortresses with the help of a foreign god. Those who acknowledge him he will load with honor, making them rule over many, and he will distribute land for a price. ⁴⁰At the time of the end, the king of the south will engage him in battle. The king of the north will storm against him with chariots, cavalry, and many ships. He will invade lands, sweeping through like a flood. ⁴¹He will enter the beautiful land, and many will fall. But these will escape from his hand: Edom, Moab, and the foremost of the Ammonites. ⁴²He will stretch out his hand against the lands, and the land of Egypt will not escape. ⁴³He will gain control over the treasuries of gold and silver and all the precious things of Egypt. The Libyans and Cushites will follow in his train. ⁴⁴But reports from the east and the north will alarm him, and he will set out in a great rage to annihilate and completely destroy many. ⁴⁵He will pitch his royal tents between the sea and the beautiful holy mountain. Yet he will come to his end, and no one will help him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The speaker is the angel from chapter 10. He states that he supported Michael (the 'him' of the previous verse) in the first year of Darius the Mede — the same year Daniel prayed in chapter 9. The verbs *lemachaziq ulema'oz* ('to support and to be a stronghold for') describe military alliance language — the angel served as a reinforcement for Michael in the cosmic conflict over the transition from Babylonian to Persian power.
2. The three kings following Cyrus are generally identified as Cambyses, pseudo-Smerdis (Bardiya), and Darius I, with the wealthy fourth being Xerxes I (Ahasuerus of Esther), whose massive invasion of Greece in 480 BCE fits the description perfectly. The Hebrew *ya'ir hakkol* ('he will stir up everything/everyone') indicates a total mobilization — Xerxes assembled the largest army the ancient world had seen for his Greek campaign. The word *yavan* ('Greece/Ionia') is the standard Hebrew designation for the Greek world.
3. The 'mighty king' (*melekh gibbor*) is universally identified as Alexander the Great (356-323 BCE), whose conquests created the largest empire the world had yet seen. The phrase 'doing as he pleases' (*asah kirtsonno*) characterizes his unchallenged authority — no one could resist him. The same phrase recurs for later kings in this chapter, becoming a marker of absolute power that is always temporary.
4. Alexander died in 323 BCE at age 32, and his empire was eventually divided among four generals (the *Diadochi*): Cassander (Macedonia/Greece), Lysimachus (Thrace/Asia Minor), Seleucus (Syria/Mesopotamia), and Ptolemy (Egypt). The phrase 'not to his descendants' (*lo le'acharito*) is historically precise — Alexander's son Alexander IV and half-brother Philip III were both murdered. The four winds (*arba ruchot hashamayim*) correspond to the four divisions, matching the four-headed leopard of 7:6 and the four horns of 8:8.
5. The 'king of the south' (*melekh ha-negev*) introduces the Ptolemaic dynasty of Egypt. The first is Ptolemy I Soter (323-285 BCE). The commander (*sar*) who becomes even stronger is Seleucus I Nicator (305-281 BCE), who had initially served under Ptolemy but eventually built a larger empire stretching from Asia Minor to India. The text establishes the two-power dynamic — north (Seleucid) and south (Ptolemaic) — that drives the rest of the chapter, with the land of Israel caught between them.
6. This describes the marriage of Berenice, daughter of Ptolemy II Philadelphus (king of the south), to Antiochus II Theos (king of the north) around 252 BCE. The marriage was a diplomatic alliance (*mesharim*, 'equitable terms, agreement'). When Ptolemy II died, Antiochus's first wife Laodice had Berenice, her young son, and her attendants murdered, and then poisoned Antiochus — fulfilling the prophecy that none would retain power. The Hebrew is notably compressed, requiring the reader to track multiple pronoun referents. The word *hayoldeha* ('the one who fathered her') likely refers to Ptolemy II, who died before the consequences unfolded.
7. The 'shoot of her roots' (*netser sharasheyha*) — a branch from the same family tree as Berenice — is her brother Ptolemy III Euergetes (246-222 BCE), who invaded the Seleucid empire to avenge his sister's murder. The botanical metaphor (*netser*, 'shoot, branch') emphasizes dynastic continuity. Ptolemy III's invasion of the Seleucid heartland was spectacularly successful, reaching deep into Mesopotamia.
8. Ptolemy III's plunder of Seleucid temples and the removal of cult images to Egypt is historically documented — ancient sources say he recovered Egyptian idols that had been carried off by the Persians. The word *nesikheyhem* ('their cast images, libation vessels') can refer to molten images or drink offerings. The phrase *shanim ya'amod* ('he will stand for years') indicates a period where Ptolemy III refrained from further conflict with the north — he consolidated his gains rather than pressing further.
9. The subject shifts to the king of the north — Seleucus II Callinicus (246-226 BCE) — who attempted a counterattack against Egypt but failed and was forced to withdraw. The brief verse captures an unsuccessful retaliatory campaign. Some read the subject as the king of the south returning home, but the context (a northern response to the southern invasion) supports the northern king as subject.
10. The sons of Seleucus II are Seleucus III Ceraunus (226-223 BCE), who died quickly, and Antiochus III 'the Great' (223-187 BCE), who became one of the most significant Seleucid rulers. The singular shift ('one of them') focuses on Antiochus III. The flood metaphor (*shataf ve'avar*, 'overflow and pass through') describes an overwhelming military advance. The 'fortress' (*me'uzoh*) at the end likely refers to the Egyptian border fortifications — Antiochus III pushed his campaign to the gates of Egypt.
11. This describes the Battle of Raphia (217 BCE), where Ptolemy IV Philopator, despite his normally indolent character, roused himself (*yitmarmar*, 'will be bitterly enraged') to fight Antiochus III. Antiochus brought a massive army but Ptolemy won a decisive victory. The phrase 'given into his hand' (*nittan beyado*) means the southern king's hand — Ptolemy defeated the northern multitude. The pronoun references here are potentially confusing; context clarifies that the king of the north raised the multitude and the king of the south defeated it.
12. Ptolemy IV won at Raphia and inflicted enormous casualties, but he failed to press his advantage. His heart was 'exalted' (*ram levavo*) — pride and self-satisfaction — but he did not use the victory to destroy Seleucid power permanently. The word *ribb'ot* ('myriads, tens of thousands') indicates massive casualties. The paradox — victory without lasting strength — captures Ptolemy IV's character perfectly. He returned to Egypt and declined into luxury and neglect.
13. Antiochus III spent years rebuilding his forces after Raphia, campaigning eastward to restore Seleucid authority before turning south again. The phrase *leqets ha'titim shanim* ('at the end of the times, years') indicates a significant passage of time — approximately sixteen years elapsed between Raphia (217 BCE) and Antiochus III's renewed southern campaign (201 BCE). By then Ptolemy IV had died and his young son Ptolemy V Epiphanes was a child, making Egypt vulnerable.
14. The phrase *beney paritsey ammekha* ('violent ones/breakers among your people') refers to a faction within Judah that allied with Antiochus III against Ptolemaic Egypt. The word *parits* means 'violent one, breaker, robber' — these were aggressive, ambitious men within the Jewish

community. Their motivation — 'to fulfill the vision' (leha'amid chazon) — suggests they saw in the shifting political situation an opportunity to advance prophetic expectations, perhaps of national independence. The text says they will 'stumble' (nikhshalu) — their aspirations would fail. This is one of the few moments where the text directly addresses Daniel's own people within the political narrative.

15. This describes Antiochus III's capture of Sidon (198 BCE), where an Egyptian garrison under the general Scopas was besieged. The solelah ('siege ramp') was the standard technique for assaulting fortified cities. The phrase am mivcharav ('his chosen troops, his elite forces') indicates that Egypt sent its best warriors to relieve the siege, but they failed. The repeated emphasis on inability to 'stand' (lo ya'amodu... ein koach la'amod) conveys the totality of southern military collapse.
16. Antiochus III now 'does as he pleases' (ya'aseh kirtsono) — the same phrase applied to Alexander in verse 3, marking a peak of unchallenged power. The 'beautiful land' (erets ha-tsevi) is the land of Israel — tsevi means 'beauty, splendor, ornament' (cf. 8:9). Antiochus III's control of Judea after the Battle of Panium (198 BCE) brought Israel under Seleucid rule for the first time. The phrase vekhalah beyado ('with destruction in his hand' or 'with all of it in his hand') is ambiguous — it could mean total control or total devastation.
17. Antiochus III, rather than invading Egypt directly, pursued diplomacy — he gave his daughter Cleopatra I in marriage to the young Ptolemy V (194 BCE). The phrase bat ha-nashim ('daughter of women') is an unusual designation, perhaps emphasizing her beauty or her human vulnerability as a pawn in geopolitics. The purpose — lehashchitah ('to destroy it/her') — suggests Antiochus intended Cleopatra to undermine Egypt from within as a Seleucid agent. Instead, she sided with her husband's interests against her father's plans — 'she will not stand with him or be on his side.'
18. Antiochus III turned to conquering islands and coastal territories in Asia Minor and Greece (197-190 BCE), bringing him into conflict with Rome. The 'commander' (qatsin) is the Roman consul Lucius Cornelius Scipio (or his brother Scipio Africanus), who defeated Antiochus at the Battle of Magnesia (190 BCE) and imposed humiliating terms. The word cherpah ('reproach, insolence, disgrace') is used twice — the Romans ended the reproach Antiochus was inflicting and turned it back on him through the Treaty of Apamea, which stripped him of territory and imposed massive indemnity.
19. Antiochus III retreated to his own territories after the Roman defeat and was killed in 187 BCE while attempting to plunder a temple in Elymais to pay the Roman indemnity. The phrase 'stumble and fall and be found no more' (nikhshal venafal velo yimmatse) describes his death with stark brevity — the mighty king who 'did as he pleased' (v. 3, echoed in v. 16) ends ignominiously. The pattern of rising and falling power is a recurring motif throughout this chapter.
20. This brief reign describes Seleucus IV Philopator (187-175 BCE), son of Antiochus III. The 'exactor' (noges) is generally identified as Seleucus's minister Heliodorus, who was sent to plunder the Jerusalem temple treasury (2 Maccabees 3). The phrase heder malkhut ('splendor/glory of the kingdom') likely refers to the temple or the land of Israel. Seleucus IV was assassinated by Heliodorus after only a few years — 'not in anger and not in battle' indicates he died by intrigue rather than in open conflict.
21. The 'despised one' (nivzeh) is Antiochus IV Epiphanes (175-164 BCE), the central antagonist of Daniel 8 and 11. He was not the legitimate heir — the throne should have passed to Seleucus IV's son Demetrius, who was a hostage in Rome. Antiochus seized power through political maneuvering (chalaqqaqot, 'smooth words, flatteries, intrigues'). The word nivzeh ('despised, contemptible') is the narrator's assessment of his character. He took the title Epiphanes ('God Manifest'), which his detractors parodied as Epimanes ('the Madman').
22. The 'prince of the covenant' (negid berit) is debated: it may refer to the Jewish high priest Onias III, who was deposed and later murdered (2 Maccabees 4:34), or to Ptolemy VI of Egypt. If Onias III is meant, the phrase carries enormous theological weight — the person who represented Israel's covenant relationship with God was destroyed by Antiochus's political machinations. The flood metaphor (zer'ot ha-shetef, 'arms of the flood') describes an irresistible military sweep.
23. Antiochus IV used deception (mirmah) as a consistent strategy — forming alliances only to betray them. The phrase bim'at goy ('with a small people/nation') indicates he initially commanded limited resources but leveraged them through cunning rather than brute force. The combination of deception and small numbers sets up the contrast with his eventual ambitions.
24. Antiochus IV bought loyalty through lavish distribution of plunder — an unprecedented strategy among Seleucid kings ('what none of his ancestors did'). The word yibzor ('he will scatter, distribute') indicates generous, even profligate dispersal of wealth among supporters. The phrase ve'ad et ('but only for a time') introduces the crucial theological qualification that recurs throughout Daniel: all human power is temporary and operates within divinely set limits.
25. This describes Antiochus IV's first Egyptian campaign (170/169 BCE). Ptolemy VI Philometor (king of the south) assembled a massive army but was undermined by treachery from within his own court — 'plots will be devised against him' (yachshevu alav machashavot). The defeat was caused not by military inferiority but by internal betrayal. The verb ya'er ('will rouse') carries the sense of stirring up courage and resolve for a major undertaking.
26. The betrayers are those closest to the king — those who eat his pat bag ('royal food, food from the king's table'). The word bag is the same term used for the food Daniel refused in 1:5 — a link within the book. Ptolemy VI was betrayed by members of his own court who were in league with Antiochus IV. The phrase chalelim rabbim ('many slain') describes the human cost of the resulting military collapse.
27. After defeating Ptolemy VI, Antiochus IV negotiated with him — both deceiving the other. The image of lying at the same table (al shulchan echad kazav yedabberu) is vivid diplomatic cynicism. The theological conclusion — 'it will not succeed, for the end is still at the appointed time' (ki od qets lammot) — asserts divine sovereignty over the timeline. Human scheming cannot alter God's schedule. This is a key theme throughout Daniel: human empires operate within divinely appointed boundaries.

- 28.** On his return from Egypt (169 BCE), Antiochus IV turned against Jerusalem and the Jewish religion — his heart was 'against the holy covenant' (al berit qodesh). The phrase berit qodesh ('holy covenant') refers to the Sinai covenant and its associated worship — the entire system of Jewish religious life centered on the temple. The vague 'he will take action' (ve'asah) likely refers to his plundering of the Jerusalem temple (1 Maccabees 1:20-24; 2 Maccabees 5:15-21), where he seized the golden altar, the lampstand, the table of showbread, and other sacred vessels.
- 29.** Antiochus IV's second Egyptian campaign (168 BCE) would end very differently from his first. The phrase lo tihyeh karishonah vekha'acharonah ('it will not be as the first or as the last') indicates this campaign will fail. The word mo'ed ('appointed time') again emphasizes divine scheduling — even this invasion occurs within God's predetermined timeline.
- 30.** The 'ships of Kittim' (tsiyyim kittim) refer to Roman warships. In 168 BCE, the Roman legate Gaius Popilius Laenas confronted Antiochus IV outside Alexandria and drew a circle in the sand around him, demanding he leave Egypt before stepping out of it. This humiliation (nikah, 'he lost heart, was disheartened') drove Antiochus into a rage (za'am) that he directed against Jerusalem and the Jewish religion. The phrase 'those who abandon the holy covenant' (ozvey berit qodesh) refers to Hellenizing Jews who cooperated with Antiochus's religious persecution — a collaboration that divided the Jewish community and intensified the crisis.
- 31.** This verse describes the climactic desecration of December 167 BCE, when Antiochus IV's forces profaned the Jerusalem temple (1 Maccabees 1:54). The 'regular offering' (ha-tamid) refers to the daily morning and evening sacrifices that were the heartbeat of temple worship. The shiqqs meshomem ('abomination that causes desolation') is the defining phrase of the crisis — most likely a pagan altar or idol set up on the altar of burnt offering. The word shiqqs ('abomination, detestable thing') is the standard term for idolatrous defilement, possibly a deliberate distortion of a pagan deity's name (ba'al shamem, 'lord of heaven' shiqqs meshomem). Jesus cites this phrase in Matthew 24:15 and Mark 13:14, applying it to a future desecration.
- 32.** A sharp contrast emerges between two Jewish responses to the persecution. The marshiey berit ('those who act wickedly against the covenant') are the Hellenizers who cooperated with Antiochus — he will win them over with chalaqot ('smooth words, flattery, slippery persuasion'). But the am yodey Elohav ('the people who know their God') — identified with the Maccabean resistance — will yachaziku ('stand firm, hold fast') and take action. The verb ya'asu ('they will act') likely refers to the armed resistance led by Judas Maccabeus and his family.
- 33.** The maskilim ('wise ones, those who have insight') are a distinct group — not warriors but teachers who give understanding (yavinu) to the many. They suffer persecution — sword, fire, captivity, and plunder — yet continue their instructive mission. The maskilim appear again in verse 35 and in 12:3, where they 'shine like the brightness of the sky.' Their role is to sustain faithful understanding during the crisis. The word yamim ('days') here means 'for a time, for a period' — the suffering has limits.
- 34.** The 'little help' (ezer me'at) has been read as a guarded reference to the Maccabean revolt — significant enough to provide relief but described modestly, perhaps because the book's theology values faithful endurance (the maskilim) over military action. Alternatively, the author may view the Maccabean victory as only partial deliverance. The 'many who join insincerely' (nilvu... bachalaqlaqot) describes opportunists who allied with the faithful once the tide turned — their commitment was superficial rather than principled.
- 35.** The suffering of the maskilim is given theological purpose — it serves to refine (litsrof), purify (levarer), and cleanse (lehalben) them. The metallurgical metaphor (refining) combines with the laundering metaphor (whitening) to describe suffering as purification. This is one of the earliest expressions of redemptive suffering theology in the Hebrew Bible — suffering that produces spiritual purity rather than merely punishment. The phrase ad et qets ('until the time of the end') sets a limit on the suffering, and ki od lammo'ed ('for it is still for the appointed time') reaffirms divine scheduling. The 'time of the end' introduces eschatological vocabulary that becomes central in chapter 12.
- 36.** Beginning with this verse, the chapter describes events that do not clearly match the known history of Antiochus Epiphanes. Some interpreters see this as an idealized portrait of Antiochus pushed beyond historical accuracy into theological typology; others see a transition to a future eschatological figure (an 'antichrist' type); still others view it as genuine prophecy about Antiochus that simply does not match our incomplete historical records. The phrase 'God of gods' (El elim) is a superlative — the supreme deity. The king's self-exaltation echoes Isaiah 14:13-14 and anticipates Paul's 'man of lawlessness' in 2 Thessalonians 2:4. The word za'am ('wrath, indignation') refers to God's measured judgment — the king's success operates only within the span of divine wrath against Israel.
- 37.** The phrase chemdat nashim ('the desire of women') is one of the most debated expressions in Daniel. Interpretations include: (1) a deity especially beloved by women, such as Tammuz/Adonis (cf. Ezekiel 8:14); (2) the natural desire for women, suggesting the king rejects normal human affection; (3) a reference to a specific figure desired by women (sometimes read messianically). We render literally to preserve the ambiguity. The verb yavin ('he will regard, understand, consider') is rendered 'show regard for' — the king dismisses all religious and human attachments in his self-deification.
- 38.** The 'god of fortresses' (eloah ma'uzzim) is unidentified — no known deity bears this title. It may refer to Jupiter Capitolinus (Zeus Olympios), whose cult Antiochus promoted; to a deified concept of military power itself; or to a deity associated with fortified places. The phrase 'a god his ancestors did not know' (eloah asher lo yeda'uhu avotav) echoes the Deuteronomic warning against foreign gods (Deuteronomy 32:17). Despite rejecting all existing gods (v. 37), this king installs a new cult of power.
- 39.** The king rewards his supporters with governance over populations (himshilam barabbim) and distributes land (adamah) as political patronage. This system of rewarding religious compliance with political power describes the Hellenizing program in Judea, where cooperative Jews received positions of authority. The 'foreign god' (eloah nekhar) is a deity alien to the nation's tradition — the introduction of foreign worship enforced through political incentives.

40. The phrase *be'et gets* ('at the time of the end') signals a shift — from this point, no clear historical correspondence to known events of Antiochus IV's reign can be established with certainty. The verb *yitnagach* ('will charge, butt, engage') suggests aggressive initiation by the south. The king of the north's response — *yista'er* ('will storm') — describes a tornado-like assault. The flood metaphor (*shataf ve'avar*) returns from verse 10. Whether these events describe unknown historical episodes, idealized typological events, or future eschatological conflicts remains debated.
41. The 'beautiful land' (*erets ha-tsevi*) is Israel, as in verse 16. The nations that escape — Edom, Moab, and Ammon (all Transjordanian peoples) — are precisely those east of the Jordan River, suggesting the invasion route bypasses the eastern desert. The word *re'shit* ('foremost, first, best') applied to the Ammonites may mean their leading people or their territory's chief region. These three nations were traditional enemies of Israel (cf. Psalm 83:6-7), making their escape from the invader ironic.
42. Unlike the Transjordanian nations of verse 41, Egypt will not escape. The phrase *yishlach yado* ('he will stretch out his hand') is a gesture of aggressive power projection. Historically, Antiochus IV was prevented from conquering Egypt by Roman intervention (v. 30), but this section — if describing events beyond Antiochus — depicts a successful Egyptian conquest. The verse's brevity creates menace through understatement.
43. The conquered wealth of Egypt and the submission of North African peoples — Lubim (Libyans) and Kushim (Cushites/Ethiopians) — depict total domination of the southern territories. The phrase *bemits'adav* ('in his steps, at his heels') means they will follow as subjects or vassal troops. Cush refers to the region south of Egypt (modern Sudan/Ethiopia). The comprehensive plunder of Egyptian treasures echoes Ptolemy III's earlier plunder of Seleucid temples (v. 8), reversing the direction of conquest.
44. The threatening reports (*shemu'ot*, 'news, rumors') from east and north suggest military threats from multiple directions. The king's response — going out 'in great rage' (*bechema gedolah*) to 'annihilate and completely destroy' (*lehashmid ulehacharim*) — describes genocidal fury. The verb *hacharim* ('to devote to destruction, to put under the ban') is the language of herem warfare (cf. Joshua 6:21), adding a quasi-religious dimension to the destruction. Antiochus IV did die during an eastern campaign (164 BCE), but the details here do not closely match the historical accounts of his death.
45. The 'beautiful holy mountain' (*har tsevi qodesh*) is Mount Zion — the temple mount in Jerusalem. The location 'between the seas' (*beyn yammim*) places his encampment between the Mediterranean and the Dead Sea (or between the seas and the mountain), which describes the coastal plain west of Jerusalem. The phrase 'he will come to his end' (*uva ad qitso*) is abrupt and final — the mighty king who exalted himself above every god simply ends. The statement 'no one will help him' (*ve'ein ozer lo*) marks total abandonment — neither gods nor allies will save him. This anonymous, unheroic death contrasts with his grandiose self-exaltation. The historical Antiochus IV died in Persia in 164 BCE, not near Jerusalem, which is one reason many interpreters see this section as referring to a figure beyond Antiochus.

12

Summary: *Daniel 12 brings the book to its climax with the most explicit resurrection text in the Hebrew Bible. Michael, Israel's guardian prince, rises during an unprecedented time of distress. Those who sleep in the dust awake — some to everlasting life, some to everlasting shame (v. 2). The wise shine like the brightness of the sky (v. 3). Daniel is told to seal the book until the time of the end. Two angelic figures appear beside the river, and one asks the luminous figure above the water how long these wonders will last. The answer — 'a time, times, and half a time' — introduces the final chronological formulas: 1,290 days and 1,335 days. The book closes with a personal promise to Daniel: 'You will rest, and will stand in your allotted place at the end of the days.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 2 is the clearest and most unambiguous statement of bodily resurrection in the Hebrew Bible. While hints of resurrection appear elsewhere (Isaiah 26:19, Ezekiel 37, Job 19:25-27), Daniel 12:2 states it with theological precision — distinguishing between resurrection to life and resurrection to judgment. Verse 3 introduces the concept that the righteous dead will 'shine' — luminous, transformed existence that Jesus echoes in Matthew 13:43. The command to 'seal the book' (v. 4) implies the prophecy is for a distant future, creating a literary contrast with Revelation 22:10 ('Do not seal up the words of prophecy, for the time is near'). The final verse (v. 13) is one of the most personally tender moments in prophetic literature — God speaks directly to Daniel about his own death and resurrection.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase *rabbim miyyesheney admat afar* ('many of those who sleep in the dust of the ground') in verse 2 uses 'many' (*rabbim*) rather than 'all,' raising the question of whether this envisions universal resurrection or selective resurrection. We rendered literally and noted the interpretive options. The chronological numbers — 1,290 days (v. 11) and 1,335 days (v. 12) — do not obviously correspond to any known historical period and their relationship to the 'time, times, and half a time' (v. 7) and to the 2,300 evenings and mornings of 8:14 remains debated. The word *goralekhah* ('your allotted portion') in verse 13 carries inheritance and destiny language that we preserved.*

Connections: The resurrection language connects to Isaiah 26:19, Ezekiel 37, and becomes foundational for New Testament resurrection theology (1 Corinthians 15, John 5:28-29). Michael's role connects to 10:13, 21 and to Jude 9 and Revelation 12:7. The sealed book motif connects to Isaiah 8:16 and is reversed in Revelation 22:10. The luminous wise in verse 3 connect to Matthew 13:43. The 'time of distress' connects to Jeremiah 30:7 ('the time of Jacob's trouble') and Jesus's discourse in Matthew 24:21. Daniel's personal promise of resurrection (v. 13) connects to the covenant promise that death does not sever the relationship between God and his faithful ones.

¹At that time Michael will arise — the great prince who stands guard over your people. There will be a time of distress such as has never occurred since nations first came into being until that time. But at that time your people will be rescued — everyone who is found written in the book. ²Many of those who sleep in the ground of dust will awake — some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting abhorrence. ³Those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the sky, and those who lead many to righteousness will shine like the stars forever and ever. ⁴But you, Daniel — close up the words and seal the book until the time of the end. Many will search back and forth, and knowledge will increase. ⁵Then I, Daniel, looked, and there were two others standing — one on this bank of the river and one on the other bank of the river. ⁶One of them said to the man clothed in linen, who was above the waters of the river: How long until the end of these astonishing things? ⁷I heard the man clothed in linen, who was above the waters of the river. He raised his right hand and his left hand toward heaven and swore by the One who lives forever that it would be for a set time, set times, and half a time. When the shattering of the power of the holy people is completed, all these things will be finished. ⁸I heard but did not understand. So I said: My lord, what will be the outcome of these things? ⁹He said: Go on your way, Daniel, for the words are closed up and sealed until the time of the end. ¹⁰Many will be purified, made clean, and refined. The wicked will act wickedly, and none of the wicked will understand — but the wise will understand. ¹¹From the time the regular offering is abolished and the abomination that causes desolation is set up, there will be 1,290 days. ¹²Blessed is the one who waits and reaches 1,335 days. ¹³But you — go on to the end. You will rest, and you will stand in your allotted place at the end of the days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Michael (mikha'el, 'who is like God?') is identified as ha-sar ha-gadol ('the great prince') and as the one who 'stands over' (ha'omed al) Daniel's people — Israel's cosmic guardian. The verb ya'amod ('will arise, will stand') could mean 'rise to action' or 'take his stand' — either way, Michael moves from watchful readiness to active intervention. The 'time of distress' (et tsarah) of unprecedented severity echoes Jesus's words in Matthew 24:21. The 'book' (sepher) in which names are written is a heavenly register of the faithful — the concept appears in Exodus 32:32, Psalm 69:28, and Malachi 3:16, and becomes the 'book of life' in Revelation 20:12.
2. This is the clearest resurrection text in the Hebrew Bible. The word yesheyney ('those who sleep') uses sleep as a metaphor for death — a metaphor that persists into the New Testament (1 Thessalonians 4:13). The phrase admat afar ('ground of dust') echoes Genesis 3:19 ('to dust you shall return') — resurrection reverses the sentence of death. The word rabbim ('many') rather than kol ('all') has generated debate: does this envision partial resurrection (only some rise) or is rabbim used inclusively (as in Isaiah 53:11-12, where 'the many' means 'the multitude, the great number')? The dual outcome — chayyey olam ('everlasting life') and dir'on olam ('everlasting abhorrence') — introduces a post-mortem moral differentiation not clearly attested elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible. The word dir'on ('abhorrence, contempt') appears only here and in Isaiah 66:24, where it describes the fate of rebels against God.
3. The maskilim ('wise ones') reappear from 11:33, 35 — those who taught and suffered during the persecution now receive their ultimate vindication. The verb yazhiru ('will shine, will radiate') describes active luminosity, not reflected light. The zohar ('brightness, radiance') of the raqia ('sky, firmament') is the brilliant light of the heavens themselves. The matsdiqey harabbim ('those who lead the many to righteousness') are the teachers who turned others toward right relationship with God — their reward is astral, star-like permanence. Jesus echoes this verse in Matthew 13:43: 'Then the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father.' The verse establishes a direct connection between faithful teaching, suffering, and luminous resurrection glory.
4. The command to 'seal the book' (chatom ha-sepher) means the prophecy is to be preserved but not fully understood until its appointed time of fulfillment. This contrasts with Revelation 22:10 ('Do not seal the words of prophecy of this book, for the time is near'). The phrase yeshotu rabbim ('many will search/rove about') uses the verb sh-w-t ('to go about, to rove, to search') — it could mean many will travel widely (literal movement) or many will search through the text (intellectual exploration). The promise that 'knowledge will increase' (tirbeh ha-da'at) may mean understanding of the prophecy will grow as the time of fulfillment approaches.
5. The scene shifts to a new vision — two angelic figures positioned on opposite banks of the river (the Tigris, from 10:4). The word ha-ye'or is used here rather than nahar — ye'or typically refers to the Nile, but in this context it describes the river from the previous vision. The positioning of one angel on each bank creates a formal, symmetrical setting for the solemn question and answer that follows.

6. The 'man clothed in linen' (ish levush ha-baddim) is the same figure from 10:5 — the glorious being whose description parallels Revelation 1:13-16. He is positioned 'above the waters' (mimma'al lememey ha-ye'or), suggesting he stands or hovers over the river, not beside it. The question ad matay qets ha-pela'ot ('how long until the end of the wonders?') is the consummate apocalyptic question — when will the suffering end and vindication come? The word pela'ot ('wonders, astonishing things') encompasses both the terrible events and the divine interventions described in the vision.
7. The figure raises both hands for the oath — normally only one hand is raised (cf. Deuteronomy 32:40), so the use of both intensifies the solemnity. The phrase mo'ed mo'adim vachetsi ('a set time, set times, and half a time') is the same formula from 7:25 — generally understood as three and a half years (one time + two times + half a time = 3.5). This period appears again in Revelation 12:14. The phrase nappets yad am qodesh ('the shattering of the hand/power of the holy people') indicates that the end comes only after God's people have been completely broken — a disturbing but theologically significant claim that deliverance follows total dependence. The word tikleynah ('will be finished, completed') indicates definitive conclusion, not gradual fading.
8. Daniel's honest confession — 'I heard but did not understand' (shamati velo avin) — is striking from one who has been called 'treasured' and given angelic instruction. Even the visionary who receives the revelation cannot fully comprehend it. The word acharit ('outcome, end, latter part') asks not just 'when' but 'what kind of conclusion' — Daniel wants to understand the nature of the final resolution, not just its timing.
9. The response gently refuses Daniel's request for further understanding — the words are stumim vachatumim ('closed up and sealed'), repeating the command of verse 4. The verb lekh ('go') is not dismissive but pastoral — Daniel is released from the burden of needing to understand everything. Some knowledge is sealed by divine decree, and the appropriate response is faithful living rather than exhaustive comprehension. The 'time of the end' (et qets) will bring its own revelation.
10. The three verbs — yitbareru ('will be purified'), yitlabbenu ('will be made clean/whitened'), yitsarfu ('will be refined') — repeat the refining language from 11:35, confirming that suffering serves a purifying purpose for the faithful. The contrast between the wicked and the wise is absolute: the wicked both act wickedly and lack understanding, while the maskilim ('wise ones') will understand. Understanding in Daniel is not merely intellectual — it is the capacity to perceive God's purposes within historical suffering and to respond with faithfulness rather than compromise.
11. The 1,290 days begin from two simultaneous events: the removal of the tamid ('regular offering,' the daily sacrifice) and the installation of the shiqqucs shomem ('abomination that causes desolation'). This period is approximately three and a half years — close to the 'time, times, and half a time' of verse 7 and 7:25, but not exactly equivalent to 1,260 days (3.5 years of 360 days). The extra 30 days beyond 1,260 may represent an additional period of transition or cleansing. The relationship between 1,290 days here, 2,300 evenings and mornings in 8:14, and 1,335 days in verse 12 has generated extensive scholarly discussion without consensus.
12. The word ashrey ('blessed, happy, fortunate') introduces a beatitude — the only beatitude in Daniel. The 1,335 days are 45 days beyond the 1,290 of verse 11. What happens in those additional 45 days is not specified — it may represent a final period of restoration, cleansing of the sanctuary, or the inauguration of the blessed era. The verb yagia ('reaches, arrives at') suggests endurance through a difficult period — reaching this point requires faithful waiting (hamechakkeh, 'the one who waits'). The combination of waiting and blessing echoes the wisdom tradition's emphasis on patient trust in God's timing.
13. The final verse of Daniel is addressed directly and personally to the prophet. Three verbs chart Daniel's future: lekh ('go' — continue living faithfully), tanuach ('you will rest' — you will die, using the language of peaceful death), and ta'amod legoralekha ('you will stand in your allotted place' — you will be resurrected to receive your inheritance). The word goral ('lot, allotted portion') is used for land inheritance distributed by lot (cf. Joshua 14-19) — Daniel's 'lot' is his resurrection inheritance. The phrase leqets hayyamin ('at the end of the days') is the book's final word — the same word qets ('end') that has echoed throughout the apocalyptic visions. The book that began with Daniel taken from his homeland ends with a promise of his ultimate homecoming — not to Jerusalem but to his allotted place in God's restored creation. This is among the most personally intimate moments in prophetic literature.

Hosea

Summary: *Hosea 1 introduces the prophet Hosea son of Beeri and his ministry during the reigns of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah of Judah, and Jeroboam son of Joash of Israel. God commands Hosea to marry a promiscuous woman and have children by her, because the land has committed great unfaithfulness against the LORD. Hosea marries Gomer daughter of Diblaim, and their three children receive prophetic names: Jezreel (God scatters/sows), Lo-Ruhamah (Not Pitied), and Lo-Ammi (Not My People). Yet the chapter closes with a stunning reversal — the children of Israel will become as numerous as the sand of the sea, and those called 'Not My People' will be called 'children of the living God.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter establishes Hosea's defining literary device: the prophet's own marriage and family life become a living parable of God's relationship with Israel. No other prophet is commanded to embody the message so completely in his body and household. Each child's name functions as a prophetic oracle in miniature — Jezreel recalls the massacre committed by Jehu's dynasty (2 Kings 10), Lo-Ruhamah announces the withdrawal of divine compassion, and Lo-Ammi declares the covenant relationship severed. The reversal in verses 10-11 [Hebrew 2:1-2] transforms every judgment name into its opposite, establishing the theological arc of the entire book: judgment is real but not final.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase eshet zenunim ('wife of promiscuity/harlotry') in verse 2 has been debated for millennia — does it mean Gomer was already promiscuous when Hosea married her, or that she would become so? The Hebrew uses a plural abstract noun (zenunim) that can indicate either a character trait or a future disposition. We render it as 'a promiscuous woman' to match the immediate parallelism with 'the land commits great promiscuity,' while noting the ambiguity. The final verses (10-11) are numbered as 2:1-2 in the Hebrew text, creating a versification difference that we follow English convention for while noting the Hebrew numbering.*

Connections: *The name Jezreel connects to Jehu's bloody seizure of power in 2 Kings 9-10. Lo-Ruhamah and Lo-Ammi are reversed in Hosea 2:1 [Hebrew 2:3] and quoted by Paul in Romans 9:25-26 and Peter in 1 Peter 2:10. The promise of innumerable descendants echoes the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 22:17, 32:12). The reunification of Judah and Israel under 'one head' (v. 11) anticipates Ezekiel 37:15-22.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Hosea son of Beeri during the reigns of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and during the reign of Jeroboam son of Joash, king of Israel. ²When the LORD first spoke through Hosea, the LORD said to him, "Go, marry a promiscuous woman and have children of promiscuity, because the land is committing great promiscuity by turning away from the LORD." ³So he went and married Gomer daughter of Diblaim. She conceived and bore him a son. ⁴The LORD said to him, "Name him Jezreel, for in a little while I will punish the house of Jehu for the bloodshed at Jezreel, and I will put an end to the kingdom of the house of Israel." ⁵On that day I will break the bow of Israel in the Valley of Jezreel. ⁶She conceived again and bore a daughter, and he said to him, "Name her Lo-Ruhamah, for I will no longer show compassion to the house of Israel or forgive them." ⁷But I will show compassion to the house of Judah. I will save them by the LORD their God — not by bow, sword, battle, horses, or cavalry. ⁸After she had weaned Lo-Ruhamah, she conceived and bore a son. ⁹Then he said, "Name him Lo-Ammi, for you are not my people, and I am not yours." ¹⁰Yet the number of the children of Israel will be like the sand of the sea, which cannot be measured or counted. And in the very place where it was said to them, 'You are not my people,' it will be said to them, 'Children of the living God.' ¹¹The children of Judah and the children of Israel will be gathered together. They will appoint for themselves one leader, and they will go up from the land, for great is the day of Jezreel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription spans roughly 760-720 BCE, covering both the prosperous final years of Jeroboam II's reign and the chaotic decades that followed until Israel's fall. The name Hosea (Hoshea) means 'salvation' — from the same root as Joshua and Jesus. Four Judean kings but only one Israelite king are listed, despite Hosea's primary audience being the northern kingdom, possibly reflecting the Judean editorial perspective of the final form of the text.
2. The phrase *techillat dibber* ('the beginning of speaking') is unusual syntax that marks this as the inauguration of Hosea's prophetic ministry. The Hebrew *zenunim* ('promiscuity, fornications') is a plural abstract form denoting a habitual condition rather than a single act. Whether Gomer was already promiscuous or became so later is debated — the Hebrew allows both readings. We use 'promiscuous' rather than the KJV's 'whoredoms' for modern clarity while preserving the sexual dimension of the metaphor.
3. The name Gomer may derive from a root meaning 'completion' or 'consumption' — possibly foreshadowing Israel's coming end. Diblaim may mean 'two fig cakes,' possibly alluding to offerings made to fertility deities. The phrase 'bore him a son' — the 'him' (lo) is significant because it appears only with the first child, suggesting the later children may not be Hosea's biological offspring.
4. Jezreel (*Yizre'el*) means 'God sows' or 'God scatters' — a name with both judgment and promise dimensions. The 'blood of Jezreel' refers to Jehu's massacre of Ahab's family at Jezreel (2 Kings 9-10). Though Jehu acted under prophetic commission, the excessive bloodshed brought guilt upon his dynasty. The verb *paqadti* ('I will punish/visit') carries judicial force — God will hold the house of Jehu accountable.
5. The 'bow' (*qeshet*) represents military power — breaking the bow means destroying Israel's capacity to wage war. The Valley of Jezreel was the major strategic corridor through northern Israel, the natural site for decisive military engagements. This was fulfilled when the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom in 722 BCE.
6. Notice that the text says 'she bore a daughter' without the word *lo* ('to him'), unlike verse 3 where 'she bore him a son.' This subtle omission may hint that Lo-Ruhamah was not Hosea's biological child. The final phrase *ki-naso essa lahem* is difficult — it can mean 'I will utterly take them away' (KJV) or 'I will certainly not forgive them.' We follow the reading 'forgive' based on the root *nasa* ('to bear, carry away guilt') in its forgiving sense.
7. Judah receives a reprieve that Israel does not. The deliverance 'by the LORD their God' rather than by military means may allude to the miraculous deliverance of Jerusalem from Sennacherib in 701 BCE (2 Kings 19:35). The list of military equipment — bow, sword, battle, horses, cavalry — systematically rules out every conventional means of salvation.
8. The weaning (*gamal*) indicates a passage of time — weaning in the ancient Near East typically occurred at age two to three. Again the phrase 'bore him a son' is absent; she simply 'bore a son,' reinforcing the suggestion that this child may not be Hosea's.
9. The phrase *ve'anokhi lo ehveh lakhem* ('and I am not yours') is sometimes rendered 'I will not be your God,' but the Hebrew is more radical — it echoes the divine name *ehveh* ('I AM') from Exodus 3:14. God is saying 'I will not be I-AM for you' — a terrifying inversion of his self-revelation at the burning bush. We render it as the stark 'I am not yours' to capture the relational rupture.
10. This verse is numbered 2:1 in the Hebrew text but 1:10 in English versions following the KJV versification. The promise of innumerable descendants echoes the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 22:17, 32:12). The title *El-chai* ('living God') contrasts with the dead idols Israel pursued — the God who disowned them is alive and still capable of restoration. The phrase *bimqom asher* ('in the place where') may refer to a literal location or to the condition of exile itself.

11. This verse is 2:2 in the Hebrew text. The reunification of Judah and Israel under 'one head' (rosh echad) reverses the political division that occurred after Solomon's death (1 Kings 12). The name Jezreel here shifts from judgment ('God scatters') to promise ('God sows') — the day of Jezreel becomes a day of planting, not uprooting. The verb 'go up' (alu) may echo the Exodus — a new deliverance from a new captivity.

2

Summary: *Hosea 2 is a sustained courtroom speech in which God (the husband) brings charges against Israel (the unfaithful wife). The chapter moves through three phases: accusation (vv. 1-5), judgment (vv. 6-13), and stunning restoration (vv. 14-23). God threatens to strip Israel bare and make her like a wilderness, but then announces a new courtship — he will allure her into the wilderness, speak tenderly to her, and betroth her in righteousness, justice, faithful love, and compassion. The chapter ends by reversing every judgment name from chapter 1.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The marriage metaphor reaches its fullest theological expression here. God does not simply punish the unfaithful wife or divorce her — he woos her back. The wilderness becomes not a place of punishment but of renewed intimacy, echoing the honeymoon period of the Exodus when Israel first knew God. The betrothal formula in verses 19-20 contains five covenant virtues (righteousness, justice, faithful love, compassion, faithfulness) — an extraordinary concentration of relational theology. The reversal of the children's names (Jezreel becomes 'God sows,' Lo-Ruhamah becomes 'Shown Compassion,' Lo-Ammi becomes 'My People') creates one of the most powerful restoration oracles in prophetic literature.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from English: English 2:1-23 corresponds to Hebrew 2:3-25 (since Hebrew counts 1:10-11 as 2:1-2). We follow English versification throughout. The language of stripping, exposure, and sexual humiliation in verses 3-10 is deliberately harsh — God uses the same language an ancient Near Eastern husband would use in a divorce proceeding. We rendered this faithfully without sanitizing. The word ba'ali ('my Baal/my master') in verse 16 involves a wordplay: ba'al means both 'husband/master' and the name of the Canaanite deity, and God declares Israel will no longer use this ambiguous term.*

Connections: *The betrothal formula (vv. 19-20) provides theological vocabulary used throughout the prophets. The wilderness courtship connects to Jeremiah 2:2 ('the devotion of your youth') and Ezekiel 16. The name reversals are quoted by Paul in Romans 9:25-26. The cosmic peace covenant with animals (v. 18) anticipates Isaiah 11:6-9. The 'door of hope' in the Valley of Achor (v. 15) reverses the judgment of Joshua 7 (Achan's sin).*

¹Say to your brothers, 'My People,' and to your sisters, 'Shown Compassion.' ²Bring charges against your mother — bring charges! For she is not my wife, and I am not her husband. Let her remove her promiscuity from her face and her adultery from between her breasts, ³otherwise I will strip her naked and expose her as on the day she was born. I will make her like a wilderness, turn her into parched land, and let her die of thirst. ⁴I will show no compassion to her children, for they are children of promiscuity. ⁵For their mother has been promiscuous; she who conceived them has acted shamefully. She said, 'I will go after my lovers, who give me my bread and my water, my wool and my linen, my oil and my drink.' ⁶Therefore, I am going to block her way with thornbushes and build a wall against her, so that she cannot find her paths. ⁷She will pursue her lovers but not catch them; she will search for them but not find them. Then she will say, 'I will go back to my first husband, for I was better off then than now.' ⁸She did not realize that it was I who gave her the grain, the new wine, and the oil — that I lavished silver on her, and gold, which they used for Baal. ⁹Therefore I will take back my grain at its harvest time and my new wine in its season. I will reclaim my wool and my linen, which were meant to cover her nakedness. ¹⁰Now I will expose her shame before the eyes of her lovers, and no one will rescue her from my hand. ¹¹I will put an end to all her celebrations — her festivals, her new moon observances, her sabbaths, and all her appointed feasts. ¹²I will devastate her vines and her fig trees, of which she said, 'These are my wages that my lovers gave me.' I will turn them into a thicket, and wild animals will devour them. ¹³I will punish her for the days of the Baals when she burned incense to them. She adorned herself with her rings and jewelry and went after her lovers — but me she forgot, declares the LORD. ¹⁴Therefore — look — I am going to allure her. I will lead her into the wilderness and speak tenderly to her. ¹⁵I will restore her vineyards to her from there and

turn the Valley of Achor into a gateway of hope. She will respond there as in the days of her youth, as on the day she came up from the land of Egypt. ¹⁶On that day, declares the LORD, you will call me 'My Husband' and no longer call me 'My Master.' ¹⁷I will remove the names of the Baals from her mouth, and they will never again be invoked by name. ¹⁸On that day I will make a covenant for them with the wild animals, the birds of the sky, and the creatures that crawl on the ground. I will abolish bow, sword, and warfare from the land, and I will let them lie down in safety. ¹⁹I will betroth you to me forever. I will betroth you to me in righteousness and justice, in faithful love and compassion. ²⁰I will betroth you to me in faithfulness, and you will know the LORD. ²¹On that day, I will respond, declares the LORD — I will respond to the heavens, and they will respond to the earth, ²²and the earth will respond to the grain, the new wine, and the oil, and they will respond to Jezreel. ²³I will sow her for myself in the land. I will show compassion to 'Not Pitied,' and I will say to 'Not My People,' 'You are my people,' and he will say, 'My God.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is 2:3 in the Hebrew text. The judgment names from chapter 1 are reversed — Lo-Ammi becomes Ammi ('My People'), Lo-Ruhamah becomes Ruhamah ('Shown Compassion'). The command is addressed to the restored community, who are to proclaim the new identity to one another.
2. The verb *rivu* ('contend, bring charges') is legal language — this is a covenant lawsuit (*riv*) in which God initiates divorce proceedings. The phrase 'she is not my wife and I am not her husband' echoes ancient Near Eastern divorce formulas. The promiscuity 'from her face' and adultery 'from between her breasts' may refer to cosmetics and jewelry associated with cultic prostitution, or to the brazen public nature of her unfaithfulness.
3. Public stripping was a punishment for adultery in the ancient Near East — a shaming ritual that reversed the husband's provision of clothing. 'The day she was born' alludes to Israel's origins — a helpless infant (cf. Ezekiel 16:4-5). The wilderness imagery is doubly significant: the wilderness was where Israel first met God (positive), but also where the covenant was tested and broken (negative). Here it represents the reversal of all God's provision.
4. The children born of the unfaithful marriage share in the mother's status. In the metaphor, these are the individual Israelites who have been shaped by the nation's idolatrous culture — they are products of the unfaithfulness.
5. The 'lovers' (*me'ahavai*) are the Baals — the Canaanite fertility deities whom Israel credited with providing agricultural abundance. The list of provisions — bread, water, wool, linen, oil, drink — covers the full range of sustenance and clothing. Israel's fundamental theological error was attributing God's gifts to Baal. This is the core accusation of the chapter: misidentified gratitude.
6. God's first response to Israel's pursuit of other gods is not punishment but obstruction — he will make it impossible for her to reach her lovers. The thornbushes and wall create a maze of blocked routes. This is grace disguised as frustration: God impedes the path to destruction rather than letting her walk freely into it.
7. The verb *shuv* ('return') appears here for the first time in Hosea — it becomes one of the book's central theological terms. Israel's return to God begins not from spiritual awakening but from pragmatic comparison: life was better under the first husband. Even this imperfect motivation is enough for God to work with. The language mirrors the prodigal son's reasoning in Luke 15:17.
8. This verse exposes the central irony: the very prosperity Israel attributed to Baal came from the LORD. The triad of grain (*dagan*), new wine (*tirosh*), and oil (*yitshar*) represents the full harvest of the land — Deuteronomy's covenant blessings (Deuteronomy 7:13). The gold 'used for Baal' likely refers to the manufacture of idols or the decoration of Baal shrines with wealth God himself provided.
9. God reasserts ownership — 'my grain,' 'my wine,' 'my wool,' 'my linen.' Everything Israel enjoys belongs to God, not to Baal. The withdrawal of wool and linen (clothing materials) returns to the threat of public nakedness from verse 3. The concept of *ervah* ('nakedness') carries connotations of shame and exposure in covenant contexts.
10. The word *navlutah* ('her shame, her disgrace') is rare, appearing only here and in Nahum 3:5. The exposure before her lovers is the ultimate humiliation — the Baals she pursued will witness her degradation and be powerless to help. The phrase 'from my hand' emphasizes divine sovereignty — no rival power can intervene.
11. The festivals listed — pilgrimage festivals (*chag*), new moons (*chodesh*), sabbaths (*shabbat*), and appointed times (*mo'ed*) — constitute the entire liturgical calendar of Israel. God will silence the worship calendar because it has been corrupted with syncretistic Baal practices. The irony is sharp: these were festivals God himself established, now turned into occasions for idolatry.
12. The vine and fig tree are symbols of prosperity and security (1 Kings 4:25, Micah 4:4). Israel attributed this prosperity to Baal — 'my lovers gave me' — so God will destroy it to prove who truly provides. The word *etna* ('wages, hire') carries overtones of a prostitute's fee, reinforcing the adultery metaphor. The cultivated land reverting to wild forest is an anti-creation image — civilization returning to chaos.
13. The plural 'Baals' (*be'alim*) indicates multiple local manifestations of Baal worship across different Israelite towns. The adornment with jewelry suggests preparation for a lover — the cultic dimension may involve dressing for fertility rituals. The final phrase *ve'oti shakhchah* ('but me she forgot') is devastating in its simplicity — the covenant relationship was not violently broken but quietly forgotten. The word order in Hebrew places 'me' (*oti*) first for emphasis: 'And ME she forgot.'

14. This verse marks the dramatic turning point of the chapter. The same word *lachen* ('therefore') that introduced judgment in verses 6 and 9 now introduces restoration. The verb *patah* ('allure, persuade') appears in Exodus 22:16 for seducing an unmarried woman — God uses the language of romantic pursuit. 'Speak to her heart' (*dibber al lev*) is used of tender, persuasive speech (Genesis 34:3, Ruth 2:13, Isaiah 40:2). The wilderness functions as a return to the honeymoon — before temples, before altars to Baal, before the complications of settled life.
15. The Valley of Achor ('Valley of Trouble') was where Achan was executed for his sin during the conquest of Jericho (Joshua 7:24-26). A place defined by judgment and death becomes a 'gateway of hope' (*petach tiqvah*). The verb *anetah* ('she will respond/sing') can mean both 'sing' and 'answer' — she will sing as she once did at the Sea (Exodus 15) and she will answer God's courtship. The 'days of her youth' are the Exodus period — Israel's first love.
16. This verse contains a wordplay that cannot be fully captured in English. Both *ishi* and *ba'ali* can mean 'my husband,' but *ba'al* also means 'master/lord' and is the name of the Canaanite deity. God wants to be called *ishi* (the intimate, personal term for husband) rather than *ba'ali* (which carries connotations of ownership and is tainted by association with Baal). The restored relationship will be one of intimacy, not domination.
17. The removal of Baal names 'from her mouth' means they will no longer be spoken in worship, prayer, or oath. The Hebrew *lo yizzakheru* ('they will not be remembered') means more than forgetting — it means the Baals will have no cultic presence, no ritual mention, no invocation. They will be erased from Israel's religious vocabulary entirely.
18. The covenant with animals echoes the Noahic covenant (Genesis 9:9-10) and anticipates Isaiah's vision of the peaceable kingdom (Isaiah 11:6-9). The triad of wild animals, birds, and crawling things mirrors the creation categories of Genesis 1:24-26. The verb *eshbor* ('I will break/abolish') applied to bow, sword, and war is total disarmament — not a temporary ceasefire but the elimination of the instruments of violence. 'Lie down in safety' (*hishkavtim lavetach*) is pastoral language — the flock resting without fear of predators.
19. The verb *aras* ('betroth') refers to the formal engagement stage of marriage, which in Israelite law was as binding as marriage itself (cf. Deuteronomy 22:23-24). The 'forever' (*le'olam*) indicates this new betrothal cannot be broken — unlike the first covenant, which Israel violated. The four virtues — *tsedeq*, *mishpat*, *chesed*, *rachamim* — represent the comprehensive character of God in relationship. These verses are traditionally recited in Jewish practice when wrapping the tefillin straps around the finger, symbolizing the betrothal ring.
20. *Emunah* ('faithfulness') is the fifth and climactic virtue in the betrothal sequence. From the root *aleph-mem-nun* ('to be firm, reliable'), it describes God's unwavering covenantal dependability. The verb *yada* ('know') in Hosea has a specific technical meaning — *da'at* YHWH ('knowledge of the LORD') is not theological information but relational intimacy (cf. 4:1, 6:6). Israel's fundamental failure was not ignorance but refusal of relationship.
21. A chain of cosmic responsiveness begins: God responds to heaven, heaven responds to earth. The verb *anah* ('respond, answer') creates a cascading sequence in which all of creation is reconnected in a single system of divine provision. The fragmentation caused by sin — God separated from Israel, heaven closed, earth barren — is reversed as each element answers the one below it.
22. The chain continues: earth responds to the crops, and the crops respond to Jezreel. Here the name Jezreel shifts from judgment ('God scatters') to its positive meaning — 'God sows.' The valley of slaughter becomes the valley of planting. The entire cosmic order — God, heaven, earth, crops, people — is reunited in a chain of blessing that flows from the divine response down through creation to Israel.
23. The verb *zaratiha* ('I will sow her') is a wordplay on Jezreel ('God sows'). Paul quotes this verse in Romans 9:25 to argue that God's mercy extends beyond ethnic Israel to include Gentiles. Peter echoes it in 1 Peter 2:10. The simplicity of the final exchange — 'My people' / 'My God' — restores the bilateral covenant formula that was annulled in 1:9. The broken marriage ends not in divorce but in remarriage.

3

Summary: *Hosea 3 is the shortest chapter in the book — just five verses — but it contains the dramatic climax of the marriage narrative. God commands Hosea to love a woman who is an adulteress, mirroring God's love for Israel despite their unfaithfulness. Hosea purchases her (possibly Gomer, possibly another woman) for the price of a slave. He then imposes a period of sexual abstinence and isolation, symbolizing Israel's coming exile — a time without king, sacrifice, sacred pillar, ephod, or household gods. The chapter ends with the promise that Israel will return and seek the LORD and David their king in the latter days.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter compresses the entire theology of Hosea into five verses: divine love for the unfaithful, the cost of redemption, the discipline of exile, and the hope of return. The purchase price — fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a half of barley — is approximately the price of a slave (Exodus 21:32 sets thirty shekels of silver as the price for a slave killed by an ox). Hosea must buy back his own wife, a devastating picture of the cost of redemption. The period of enforced waiting mirrors the exile: Israel will exist in a state of religious and political suspension, stripped of both legitimate worship (sacrifice, ephod) and illegitimate worship (sacred pillars, household gods).*

Translation Friction: *Whether the woman in verse 1 is Gomer or a different woman is debated. The Hebrew says 'love a woman' (ishah) without naming her. We render it without specifying, preserving the textual ambiguity. The purchase price is unusual — a mix of silver and barley suggests Hosea may not have had enough silver to pay the full price and supplemented with grain. The phrase 'David their king' in verse 5 is either a reference to a future Davidic ruler (messianic) or to the restoration of the united monarchy — we note both possibilities.*

Connections: *The redemption of the wife anticipates the go'el (kinsman-redeemer) theology of Ruth and Isaiah. The purchase price echoes the slave valuation of Exodus 21:32 and the thirty pieces of silver in Zechariah 11:12-13. 'David their king' connects to the messianic hope in Jeremiah 30:9, Ezekiel 34:23-24, and 37:24-25. The 'latter days' (acharit hayamim) formula appears in the Pentateuch (Genesis 49:1, Deuteronomy 4:30) and throughout the prophets.*

¹The LORD said to me, "Go again, love a woman who is loved by another man and who is an adulteress — just as the LORD loves the children of Israel, though they turn to other gods and love raisin cakes." ²So I purchased her for fifteen pieces of silver and a homer and a half of barley. ³Then I said to her, "You must remain with me for many days. You must not be promiscuous and you must not be with any man — and I will do the same for you." ⁴For the children of Israel will remain for many days without king, without prince, without sacrifice, without sacred pillar, without ephod, and without household gods. ⁵Afterward the children of Israel will return and seek the LORD their God and David their king. They will come trembling to the LORD and to his goodness in the latter days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ahuvat rea* ('loved by another/a companion') is ambiguous — it could mean she is currently the lover of another man, or that she was once loved by her husband (Hosea). We render 'loved by another man' to capture the adulterous triangle. The 'raisin cakes' are not ordinary food but ritual offerings at fertility shrines (cf. Song of Songs 2:5, Isaiah 16:7). The KJV's 'flagons of wine' is a mistranslation of *ashishot anavim*; raisin cakes are the correct rendering.
2. The verb *ekkreha* ('I purchased her') may imply buying her out of slavery or paying a bride-price to reclaim her. Fifteen silver pieces is half the standard slave price (Exodus 21:32 specifies thirty shekels). The supplementation with barley — a cheap grain — suggests either poverty or that the transaction involved bartering. A homer is approximately 220 liters (6.25 bushels). The total value may approximate thirty shekels — the full price of a slave. The prophet must pay to reclaim what was already his.
3. The period of isolation is mutual — 'and I also toward you' (*vegani elayikh*) means Hosea will also refrain from conjugal relations with her. This is not punishment but a probationary period of enforced fidelity without intimacy. The woman must learn to live without other lovers; the prophet withholds himself as well. This period symbolizes the exile — a time when Israel will be without God's intimate presence but also without idols.
4. The list alternates between legitimate and illegitimate institutions: king and prince (political leadership), sacrifice and sacred pillar (worship — sacrifice is legitimate, the *matsevah*/pillar is ambiguous but often condemned), ephod (priestly garment used for divination) and teraphim (household idols, clearly illegitimate). In exile, Israel will lose everything — both proper worship and improper worship, both true institutions and false ones. The condition is one of total religious and political suspension.
5. 'David their king' likely refers not to the historical David but to a future Davidic ruler — a messianic reading shared by both Jewish and Christian tradition (cf. Jeremiah 30:9, Ezekiel 34:23-24). The verb *pachad* normally means 'fear, tremble' but with the preposition *el* ('toward') it describes movement in awe rather than flight in terror. The 'latter days' (*acharit hayamim*) is a standard prophetic eschatological marker (Genesis 49:1, Isaiah 2:2, Micah 4:1). The structure of the chapter — command, purchase, waiting, return — maps the entire arc of Israel's history from covenant to exile to restoration.

4

Summary: *Hosea 4 opens the second major section of the book (chapters 4-14), moving from enacted parable to prophetic speech. God brings a formal covenant lawsuit (riv) against the inhabitants of the land, charging them with a lack of faithfulness, loyal love, and knowledge of God. The chapter indicts the priests for failing to teach the law, describes the spiritual and moral collapse that follows ignorance of God, and condemns the fertility cult practices that have corrupted Israel's worship.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 1 introduces the three terms that define Hosea's theology: emet (faithfulness/truth), chesed (faithful love), and da'at Elohim (knowledge of God). Their absence is the root diagnosis of Israel's disease — everything else follows. The charge against the priests (vv. 4-10) is especially devastating: the guardians of knowledge have destroyed it, and God will destroy them in return. The phrase 'My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge' (v. 6) has become one of the most quoted lines in Hosea. The chapter's portrayal of cult prostitution (vv. 13-14) is unflinching — daughters and brides turn to prostitution, but God refuses to punish them because the men are equally culpable.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of several verses in this chapter is notably difficult (vv. 4, 7, 18-19). Verse 4 contains the obscure phrase 'your people are like those who contend with a priest,' which may reflect a legal principle about challenging priestly authority. We rendered according to the most defensible reading while noting alternatives. The gender dynamics in verses 13-14 require careful handling — the text refuses to scapegoat women for sexual sin when men are equally involved.*

Connections: *The covenant lawsuit (riv) form appears in Micah 6:1-8 and Isaiah 1:2-3. The triad of emet, chesed, and da'at connects to the betrothal virtues of 2:19-20. 'My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge' anticipates the da'at Elohim theme in 6:6. The Decalogue echoes in verse 2 (swearing, lying, murder, stealing, adultery). The comparison of Israel's stubbornness to a 'stubborn heifer' (v. 16) is unique agricultural imagery.*

¹Hear the word of the LORD, children of Israel, for the LORD has a case against the inhabitants of the land: There is no faithfulness, no faithful love, and no knowledge of God in the land. ²Cursing, deception, murder, theft, and adultery have broken out — bloodshed follows bloodshed. ³Therefore the land mourns, and all who live in it waste away — along with the wild animals, the birds of the sky, and even the fish of the sea are swept away. ⁴Yet let no one bring charges, let no one accuse — for your people are like those who contend against a priest. ⁵You will stumble by day, and the prophet will also stumble with you by night. I will destroy your mother. ⁶My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge. Because you have rejected knowledge, I will reject you from serving as my priest. Because you have forgotten the instruction of your God, I also will forget your children. ⁷The more they increased, the more they sinned against me. I will turn their glory into disgrace. ⁸They feed on the sin of my people and set their appetite on their iniquity. ⁹It will be the same for the people as for the priest. I will punish them for their ways and repay them for their deeds. ¹⁰They will eat but not be satisfied; they will engage in promiscuity but not multiply, because they have abandoned the LORD to pursue it. ¹¹Promiscuity, wine, and new wine steal away the mind. ¹²My people consult a piece of wood, and their divining rod gives them answers. For a spirit of promiscuity has led them astray, and they have played the harlot, departing from their God. ¹³They sacrifice on the mountaintops and burn incense on the hills, under oak, poplar, and terebinth, because their shade is pleasant. Therefore your daughters turn to prostitution and your daughters-in-law commit adultery. ¹⁴I will not punish your daughters when they turn to prostitution, or your daughters-in-law when they commit adultery — for the men themselves go off with prostitutes and sacrifice with cult women. A people without understanding will come to ruin. ¹⁵Even if you, Israel, play the harlot, let not Judah become guilty. Do not go to Gilgal, do not go up to Beth-Aven, and do not swear, 'As the LORD lives.' ¹⁶For Israel is as stubborn as a stubborn cow. Can the LORD now pasture them like lambs in an open meadow? ¹⁷Ephraim is bound to idols — leave him alone. ¹⁸When their drinking is over, they give themselves to promiscuity. Her rulers dearly love disgrace. ¹⁹A wind has wrapped her in its wings, and they will be put to shame by their sacrifices.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *riv* ('case, lawsuit, controversy') is legal terminology — God is acting as plaintiff in a covenant lawsuit against his own people. The three absent virtues — *emet*, *chesed*, *da'at Elohim* — form the negative diagnosis that the rest of the chapter will elaborate. We render *emet* as 'faithfulness' rather than 'truth' because in Hebrew *emet* encompasses reliability and steadfastness, not merely propositional accuracy.
2. The five sins listed correspond roughly to commandments from the Decalogue (Exodus 20): false oaths (3rd), lying (9th), murder (6th), theft (8th), and adultery (7th). The rapid-fire listing without conjunctions (*asyndeton*) creates an avalanche effect — sin piling upon sin. The phrase 'blood touches blood' (*damim bedamim naga'u*) suggests an unbroken chain of violence — one act of bloodshed leads immediately to the next.
3. The verb *te'eval* ('mourn') personifies the land itself as grieving over the covenant violation. The collapse extends beyond human society to the animal kingdom — beasts, birds, and fish all suffer. This reverses the creation order of Genesis 1 (fish, birds, land animals), depicting an un-creation caused by human sin. The ecological dimension of covenant-breaking is explicit: human unfaithfulness damages the entire created order.
4. This difficult verse may mean that accusations are futile because the people have become so corrupt that they even resist priestly authority. Alternatively, it may mean the priests themselves are the problem — 'your people' is addressed to the priest, whose own flock has become as lawless as those who defy priestly instruction. The Hebrew is syntactically ambiguous and has generated numerous scholarly interpretations.
5. The 'stumbling' (*kashal*) by both day and night means constant, unrelenting failure — there is no safe time. The 'mother' (*immekha*) likely refers to the nation as a whole (Israel personified as mother, cf. 2:2). Prophet and priest fall together — both institutional pillars of religious guidance have failed.
6. The verb *nidmu* ('are destroyed, are silenced, perish') echoes Hosea 10:15 — the root *damah* means both 'to be silenced' and 'to be destroyed.' We render *torah* as 'instruction' rather than 'law' because in this context it refers to the priests' teaching responsibility, not specifically to the written Torah. The priestly role was primarily educational — they were to teach Israel God's ways (Deuteronomy 33:10, Malachi 2:7). The cascading consequences — rejected knowledge leads to rejected priesthood leads to forgotten children — shows how institutional failure propagates through generations.
7. The Hebrew text has a scribal correction (*tiqqun soferim*) here — the original may have read 'my glory' (*kevodi*) rather than 'their glory' (*kevodom*), meaning God's own glory was exchanged for shame. The scribes may have altered the text to avoid saying God's glory could be shamed. The contrast between *kavod* ('glory/weight') and *qalon* ('shame/lightness') is a Hebrew wordplay on the concept of weight — glory has substance while shame is insubstantial.
8. The priests literally 'eat' the people's sin — this refers to the priestly portion of the sin offering (Leviticus 6:26). The priests benefit materially when people sin and bring offerings, creating a perverse incentive: more sin means more priestly income. The verb *yis'u nafsho* ('they lift up their appetite/desire') indicates the priests eagerly anticipate the people's transgressions.
9. The proverb 'like people, like priest' (*ke'am kakkohen*) indicates that the moral distinction between clergy and laity has collapsed — both are equally corrupt. The verb *paqadti* ('I will punish/visit') is judicial language. Neither status nor office will provide protection when God judges.
10. The futility curses — eating without satisfaction, sexual activity without fertility — echo the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:38-40 and Leviticus 26:26. The verb *hiznu* ('they practiced promiscuity') continues Hosea's signature term. The irony is sharp: they turned to fertility cults to increase their harvests and offspring, but the result is barrenness in both domains.
11. The triad of sexual immorality, aged wine (*yayin*), and new wine (*tirosh*) represents the total sensory corruption of Israel's worship — sex and alcohol pervade the cult rituals. The verb *yiqqach-lev* ('takes the heart/mind') means these practices rob people of sound judgment. In Hebrew, the *lev* (heart) is the seat of the will and intellect, not primarily emotions.
12. The 'piece of wood' (*etsa*) and 'staff' (*maqlo*) likely refer to forms of divination — wooden idols consulted for oracles or rhabdomancy (divination by casting sticks). The phrase *ruach zenunim* ('spirit of promiscuity') personifies unfaithfulness as an animating force that drives Israel's behavior. The preposition *mittachat* ('from under') in 'from under their God' suggests Israel has walked out from under God's authority and protection — like a wife leaving her husband's household.
13. The 'high places' on mountains and hills were sites of Canaanite worship that Israel adopted. The specific trees — oak (*allon*), poplar (*livneh*), and terebinth (*elah*) — were sacred trees in Canaanite religion, believed to be dwelling places of divinity. 'Because their shade is pleasant' carries ironic bite — the people choose their worship sites for comfort, not for God. The connection between mountaintop cult worship and the sexual behavior of verses 13b-14 suggests these are not separate sins but elements of fertility cult ritual.
14. The Hebrew makes a distinction between *zonot* ('prostitutes') and *qedeshot* ('cult women/sacred prostitutes'). The *qedeshah* (literally 'consecrated woman') was a woman set apart for sexual rituals at Canaanite shrines. God's refusal to punish the women is not approval but indictment of the men — the fathers and husbands who participate in cult prostitution have no standing to condemn their daughters and daughters-in-law. The final proverb ('a people without understanding will come to ruin') uses the verb *yillabet* ('be thrown down, come to ruin') to describe the inevitable consequence of lacking discernment.
15. Beth-Aven ('House of Wickedness') is Hosea's mocking name for Bethel ('House of God') — the northern shrine established by Jeroboam I (1 Kings 12:28-29). By changing one word, Hosea transforms the holiest northern sanctuary into a house of nothingness. Gilgal was another northern cultic center. Judah is warned not to participate in the corrupt northern worship. The prohibition against swearing 'As the LORD lives' (*chai YHWH*) is not against the divine name but against using it in the context of syncretistic worship — invoking YHWH at a Baal shrine.

16. The image of a parah sorerah ('stubborn heifer/cow') describes an animal that refuses to be led — it plants its feet and will not move. The rhetorical question about pasturing 'like a lamb in an open meadow' (kekheves bammerchav) is ironic: a lamb in open space is vulnerable, not free. Israel wants the freedom of open pasture but will find only exposure and danger. Some scholars read this as a statement rather than a question, but the rhetorical force favors the interrogative.
17. 'Ephraim' is Hosea's preferred name for the northern kingdom, derived from its largest tribe. The verb chavur ('bound, joined, allied') suggests a partnership or alliance — Ephraim has chosen idols as his covenant partner. The terse command hanach lo ('leave him alone') is devastating — God is telling the prophet (or Judah) to stop trying to save the north. They have made their choice.
18. This verse is textually difficult. The Hebrew sar sov'am ('their drink has turned/gone sour' or 'their drinking bout is over') may describe the transition from drunken revelry to sexual immorality — one sin leads directly into the next. The phrase ahavu hevu qalon ('they love — give! — disgrace') may mean the rulers actively seek shameful behavior, or that they demand shameful tribute. The compressed, staccato Hebrew resists smooth translation.
19. The ruach ('wind/spirit') that wraps Israel in its wings could be the storm wind of judgment (divine punishment sweeping Israel away) or the 'spirit of promiscuity' from verse 12 — the driving force of unfaithfulness now becoming the agent of destruction. The shame over sacrifices (zivchot) indicates that the very worship acts Israel relied upon will become sources of humiliation when they prove powerless.

5

Summary: *Hosea 5 indicts Israel's leadership — priests, royal house, and the people — for their corruption. The chapter references the Syro-Ephraimite crisis (735-732 BCE) when Ephraim and Judah sought foreign alliances rather than turning to God. God declares he will be like a moth and rottenness to Ephraim and Judah, and then like a lion who tears and carries off prey. The chapter ends with God withdrawing until the people acknowledge their guilt and seek his face.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The shift from moth to lion (vv. 12-14) is striking — God moves from slow, invisible destruction (moth eating a garment) to sudden, violent attack (lion tearing prey). The reference to Ephraim seeking help from Assyria's 'Great King' (melek yarev, v. 13) is a rare direct allusion to contemporary international politics in prophetic poetry. God's final withdrawal — 'I will return to my place until they acknowledge their guilt' (v. 15) — presents the terrifying image of God abandoning his own temple, leaving Israel alone.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of specific historical events behind verses 8-14 is debated. Most scholars connect them to the Syro-Ephraimite War (2 Kings 15-16, Isaiah 7), but the allusions are oblique. The phrase melek yarev (v. 13) is variously translated 'King Jareb,' 'the great king,' or 'a warlike king' — we render as 'the great king' following the Assyrian royal title sharru rabu. The verb forms shift rapidly between addressing Ephraim and Judah, making it difficult to determine which kingdom is being addressed at each point.*

Connections: *The moth and lion imagery connects to Job 13:28 (moth) and Amos 3:8 (lion). God's withdrawal to 'his place' anticipates the departure of the divine presence from the temple in Ezekiel 10-11. The command to 'blow the horn at Gibeah' (v. 8) echoes the war alarm traditions of Judges 3:27 and Joel 2:1. Ephraim's failed alliance with Assyria is paralleled in Isaiah 7-8.*

¹Hear this, you priests! Pay attention, house of Israel! Listen, royal house! For the judgment is against you. You have been a snare at Mizpah and a net spread out on Tabor. ²The rebels have gone deep into slaughter, but I will discipline all of them. ³I know Ephraim, and Israel is not hidden from me. For now, Ephraim, you have practiced promiscuity; Israel is defiled. ⁴Their deeds will not allow them to return to their God, for a spirit of promiscuity is within them, and the LORD they do not know. ⁵Israel's arrogance testifies against him. Israel and Ephraim will stumble because of their iniquity; Judah also will stumble with them. ⁶With their flocks and herds they will go to seek the LORD, but they will not find him — he has withdrawn from them. ⁷They have been unfaithful to the LORD, for they have fathered illegitimate children. Now the new moon will devour them along with their fields. ⁸Blow the ram's horn in Gibeah! Sound the trumpet in Ramah! Raise the alarm at Beth-Aven! Behind you, Benjamin! ⁹Ephraim will become a desolation on the day of punishment. Among the tribes of Israel I have declared what is certain. ¹⁰The officials of Judah have become like those who move boundary markers. I will pour out my fury on them like water. ¹¹Ephraim is oppressed, crushed in judgment, because he was determined to pursue futility. ¹²So I

am like a moth to Ephraim, and like rot to the house of Judah. ¹³When Ephraim saw his sickness and Judah his wound, Ephraim went to Assyria and sent to the great king. But he cannot heal you or cure your wound. ¹⁴For I will be like a lion to Ephraim, and like a young lion to the house of Judah. I — I myself — will tear the prey and go. I will carry it off, and no one will rescue. ¹⁵I will go, I will return to my place, until they acknowledge their guilt and seek my face. In their distress they will earnestly seek me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Three groups are summoned — priests, the general population, and the royal household — indicating corruption at every level of society. Mizpah and Tabor are high places where illicit worship may have been practiced. The metaphor of the snare (pach) and net (reshet) portrays the leaders as trappers who catch the people in sin rather than guiding them away from it.
2. The Hebrew is compressed and difficult. Shachatah setim ('slaughter/the rebels') may refer to sacrificial slaughter at illicit shrines or to violence against the faithful. He'emiqu ('they have gone deep') suggests the corruption is profound and entrenched. God's response — musar ('discipline, correction') — uses the language of parental training rather than judicial punishment.
3. God's 'knowing' (yada'ti) Ephraim is intimate, covenantal knowledge — the same verb used of the knowledge Israel lacks (4:1). The irony is that God knows Ephraim even when Ephraim refuses to know God. The verb nitma ('is defiled') carries cultic overtones — Israel has become ritually unclean through its syncretistic practices.
4. The verb yittenu ('allow, permit, give') suggests that their accumulated actions have created a condition from which return (shuv) is practically impossible — sin has become self-reinforcing. The 'spirit of promiscuity' (ruach zenunim) from 4:12 reappears as an internal driving force. The final phrase — ve'et YHWH lo yada'u ('the LORD they do not know') — places 'the LORD' in emphatic position: it is specifically YHWH whom they have failed to know.
5. The 'pride/arrogance of Israel' (ge'on Yisra'el) may refer to God himself (cf. Amos 8:7 where 'pride of Jacob' is a divine title) or to Israel's hubris. We render it as Israel's arrogance based on the context of indictment. Judah is included in the falling — the southern kingdom is not exempt from judgment despite having its own dynastic legitimacy and temple.
6. They bring the right sacrificial animals (flocks and herds) but find an absent God. The verb chalats ('withdraw, pull away, strip off') describes God removing himself from the relationship. Sacrifice without knowledge of God (da'at Elohim) is futile — the ritual machinery operates but the presence it was designed to invoke has departed. This anticipates 6:6's declaration that God desires knowledge, not sacrifice.
7. The verb bagadu ('were unfaithful, acted treacherously') is covenant-betrayal language. The 'illegitimate children' (banim zarim) may refer to children born from cult prostitution rituals, or metaphorically to a generation raised in syncretistic worship who do not belong to the covenant. The 'new moon' (chodesh) devouring their fields may refer to the swift passage of time bringing destruction, or to an ironic twist — their new moon festival celebrations will coincide with the loss of their land.
8. This verse likely references the Syro-Ephraimite War (735-732 BCE) when Ephraim and Syria attacked Judah. Gibeah, Ramah, and Beth-Aven (Bethel) are towns on the border between Benjamin (Judah) and Ephraim — the invasion route from north to south. 'Behind you, Benjamin!' is a war cry warning of approaching armies. The shofar (ram's horn) and chatsotsrah (silver trumpet) were military alarm instruments.
9. The 'day of punishment' (yom tokhechah) is the day when God's verdict takes effect. The phrase ne'emanah ('what is certain, faithful, sure') uses the same root as emunah ('faithfulness') — God's word of judgment is as reliable as his character. What he has declared will come to pass.
10. Moving boundary stones was one of the most condemned acts in Israelite law (Deuteronomy 19:14, 27:17, Proverbs 22:28) — it was theft of inherited land, a violation of God's allocation. Judah's leaders have violated fundamental boundaries, whether territorial (seizing Ephraim's land during the Syro-Ephraimite crisis) or moral. God's wrath poured 'like water' suggests an unstoppable flood of judgment.
11. The word tsav ('commandment/futility/filth') is debated. It may refer to a human commandment (the royal decree of Jeroboam I to worship at Dan and Bethel), or it may be a derogatory term for idols (tsav as 'filth'). We render 'futility' to capture the sense that Ephraim willingly chose to follow something worthless. The passive verbs ashuq ('oppressed') and retsuts ('crushed') depict Ephraim as victim of the very policies he embraced.
12. The images of moth (ash) and rot (raqav) describe slow, invisible, internal destruction. A moth consumes a garment from within; rot dissolves wood without external damage being visible. God's judgment is not always a sudden catastrophe — sometimes it is the quiet disintegration of everything that once gave strength. Both kingdoms experience this same silent undermining.
13. The phrase melek yarev has been traditionally translated 'King Jareb' (KJV) as if it were a proper name, but yarev likely means 'great' or 'contentious' — a reference to the Assyrian royal title 'great king' (Akkadian sharru rabu). This alludes to the tribute missions of Menahem to Tiglath-Pileser III (2 Kings 15:19-20) or Ahaz's appeal to Assyria during the Syro-Ephraimite crisis (2 Kings 16:7). The medical metaphor (sickness, wound, healing) depicts Israel's crisis as a disease that only God can cure — foreign alliances are quack medicine.
14. The shift from moth/rot (v. 12) to lion/young lion (v. 14) is dramatic — God escalates from slow internal decay to sudden violent predation. The emphatic ani ani ('I, I myself') leaves no doubt about the agent of destruction. The verbs etorph ('tear'), elekh ('go'), essa ('carry off') describe a lion's attack pattern: seize, withdraw, carry the prey to its lair. 'No one will rescue' (ein matsil) emphasizes that no foreign alliance (v. 13) can save prey from this lion.

15. God's return 'to my place' (el meqomi) is the most terrifying statement in the chapter — the divine presence withdraws from Israel's midst. This anticipates Ezekiel's vision of the glory departing the temple (Ezekiel 10-11). The condition for return is twofold: acknowledging guilt (ye'ashemu, from asham — guilt/guilt offering) and seeking God's face (biqqeshu panai). The verb yeshachrununni ('they will earnestly seek me') derives from shachar ('dawn') — they will seek God as one rises early, with urgency and eagerness. This verse sets up the response in 6:1-3.

6

Summary: *Hosea 6 opens with a call to return to the LORD (responding to 5:15), then shifts to God's devastating critique: Israel's loyalty is like morning mist that evaporates. The chapter contains Hosea's most famous verse — 'I desire faithful love and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings' (6:6) — a statement Jesus quotes twice in Matthew's Gospel. The chapter closes with a catalogue of priestly violence and national corruption.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 6 is the theological summit of the entire book. It distills Hosea's message into a single sentence: God wants chesed (faithful love) and da'at Elohim (knowledge of God), not ritual performance. Jesus quotes this verse in Matthew 9:13 and 12:7, both times challenging religious leaders who prioritize ceremony over compassion. The verse does not reject sacrifice entirely but establishes priority — relationship over ritual, loyalty over liturgy. The 'two days / third day' language of verse 2 ('After two days he will revive us; on the third day he will raise us up') has been read christologically since the earliest church as a foreshadowing of resurrection.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 6:1-3 and what follows is debated. Are verses 1-3 a genuine penitential prayer, or are they shallow, presumptuous words that God rejects in verses 4-6? The Hebrew supports both readings. We render the text without imposing either interpretation, noting the tension. The violence described in verses 8-9 — priests committing murder on the road to Shechem — is either literal (ambush killings) or metaphorical (spiritual destruction). The Hebrew supports both readings.*

Connections: *6:6 is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 9:13 and 12:7. The 'third day' language (6:2) connects to resurrection theology. The morning mist simile (6:4) anticipates 13:3. The Shechem reference (6:9) connects to the violent history of Genesis 34. The phrase 'like Adam they transgressed the covenant' (6:7) is one of the most debated verses in Hosea — does it refer to the first human, the city of Adam, or humanity in general?*

¹"Come, let us return to the LORD. He has torn us, and he will heal us; he has struck us down, and he will bind up our wounds. ²After two days he will revive us; on the third day he will raise us up, that we may live in his presence. ³Let us know — let us press on to know the LORD. His appearing is as certain as the dawn; he will come to us like the rain, like the spring rain that waters the earth." ⁴What am I to do with you, Ephraim? What am I to do with you, Judah? Your loyal love is like the morning mist, like the dew that vanishes early. ⁵Therefore I have hewn them through the prophets; I have slain them by the words of my mouth. My judgment goes forth like the light. ⁶For I desire faithful love and not sacrifice, and the knowledge of God rather than burnt offerings. ⁷But they, like Adam, have transgressed the covenant; there they were unfaithful to me. ⁸Gilead is a city of evildoers, tracked with blood. ⁹Like bandits lying in ambush, a gang of priests murders on the road to Shechem. They commit outrageous crimes. ¹⁰In the house of Israel I have seen a horrifying thing: Ephraim's promiscuity is there; Israel is defiled. ¹¹For you also, Judah, a harvest is appointed — when I restore the fortunes of my people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse responds to 5:15 ('until they acknowledge their guilt and seek my face'). The verb nashuv ('let us return') is the key Hosea verb shuv. The logic of the appeal — the one who wounded can heal — reflects a theology of divine sovereignty over both judgment and restoration. Whether this prayer is genuine repentance or superficial confidence is deliberately ambiguous in the text.
2. The 'two days / third day' formula indicates a short period of suffering followed by restoration. In its original context, this refers to national revival after exile. The early church read this as a prophetic foreshadowing of Christ's resurrection on the third day (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:4 — 'he was raised on the third day according to the Scriptures'). The verb yeqimenu ('he will raise us up') from the root qum is the same verb used for resurrection in later biblical and rabbinic texts.
3. The verb nirddephah ('let us pursue, press on') indicates urgent, active seeking — not passive waiting. The dawn (shachar) and rain (geshem, malqosh, yoreh) are images of unfailing regularity. The malqosh ('spring/latter rain') and yoreh ('autumn/former rain') are the two crucial rainfalls of

the Palestinian agricultural calendar. The promise that God will come 'like the rain' inverts the drought threat — when Israel seeks God, the fertility the land needs will come from the LORD, not from Baal.

4. The double rhetorical question expresses divine frustration bordering on grief. The similes of morning cloud (anan boqer) and early dew (tal mashkim) are brilliantly chosen — both appear at dawn (echoing the 'dawn' of v. 3) but vanish by midmorning. Israel's repentance is as ephemeral as the natural phenomena they used to describe God's coming. The word chasdekhem ('your chesed') turns the book's central term back on the people — it is not only God's chesed that matters but Israel's reciprocal covenant loyalty, which proves insubstantial.
5. The verb chatsavti ('I have hewn') is the language of cutting stone — God's prophetic word cuts and shapes like a mason's chisel. The 'slaying by words' means the prophetic message carries the force of divine action — it does not merely describe judgment but enacts it. The light simile (or yetse, 'light goes forth') suggests God's judgment is as inescapable and revealing as dawn — it exposes everything.
6. The verb chafatsti ('I desire, delight in') expresses deep personal preference — this is what brings God pleasure. The construction 'X and not Y' is a Hebrew comparative idiom: it does not mean sacrifice is forbidden but that chesed takes absolute priority (cf. 1 Samuel 15:22, 'obedience rather than sacrifice'). The parallelism pairs chesed with da'at Elohim — these are not two separate things but two aspects of the same reality: knowing God produces faithful love, and faithful love is the evidence of knowing God. Jesus's citation of this verse in Matthew reveals it as programmatic for understanding God's priorities.
7. The phrase ke'adam is one of the most debated in Hosea. Three main interpretations exist: (1) 'like Adam' — as the first human broke God's command in Eden, so Israel breaks the covenant; (2) 'at Adam' — referring to the city of Adam near the Jordan River (Joshua 3:16) as a site of covenant-breaking; (3) 'like humans' — they transgressed as humans typically do. We render 'like Adam' because the parallel to a primordial covenant violation best fits Hosea's theology of broken relationship. The verb avru ('transgressed, crossed over') implies stepping across a boundary — the covenant line has been crossed.
8. Gilead here may refer to the region of Transjordan or to a specific city (Ramoth-Gilead or Jabesh-Gilead). The phrase aqubbah middam ('tracked with blood') creates the image of bloody footprints — evidence of violence that cannot be hidden. The passive participle suggests ongoing, not past, bloodshed.
9. The comparison of priests to highway bandits is shocking — the men charged with mediating between God and people instead ambush travelers on the road to Shechem. Shechem was a city of refuge (Joshua 20:7) and an important pilgrimage center — priests preying on pilgrims represents the complete inversion of their sacred role. The word zimmah ('outrageous crime, wicked scheme') is strong — it denotes deliberate, planned wickedness, not impulsive sin.
10. The word sha'aruriyyah ('horrifying thing, appalling deed') is rare and emphatic — God himself is appalled by what he sees. The defilement (nitma) of Israel is cultic language — they have become ritually unclean, unfit for God's presence.
11. This difficult verse can be read as judgment (a 'harvest' of punishment for Judah) or as promise (a harvest of restoration). The phrase shevi shevut ammi ('I restore the fortunes of my people') is ambiguous — shevut can mean 'captivity' (a return from exile) or 'fortunes' (a general restoration). We render 'restore the fortunes' following the broader usage in Jeremiah 29:14 and other prophetic texts. The verse transitionally links Judah's fate to Israel's and hints at a future beyond judgment.

7

Summary: *Hosea 7 continues the indictment of Israel's political and spiritual corruption. The chapter employs vivid imagery: Israel's kings are toppled like pieces on a game board, the nation is like an oven heated by a baker, Ephraim is a half-baked cake (untuned on the griddle), and a dove — silly and without sense — fluttering between Egypt and Assyria. The political chaos of the northern kingdom's final decades is reflected in the rapid succession of assassinated kings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's imagery is among the most vivid and original in prophetic literature. The oven metaphor (vv. 4-7) depicts political conspiracy as a fire that smolders all night and flares at dawn — the conspirators are patient, waiting for the right moment to strike. The half-baked cake (v. 8) is Ephraim's signature image: burned on one side, raw on the other — a nation that has absorbed foreign culture without being transformed by God. The dove metaphor (v. 11) captures Israel's panicked, directionless foreign policy — fluttering between the two great powers without the sense to recognize the trap.*

Translation Friction: *The oven imagery in verses 4-7 is difficult to parse — who is the baker, who is the dough, and what does the overnight pause represent? We follow the interpretation that the conspirators are the oven's tenders and the king is the victim, based on the political assassinations referenced in verse 7. Several verses have textual difficulties in the Hebrew (especially vv. 5-6, 14, 16), and we note the scholarly debate where*

relevant.

Connections: *The political assassinations alluded to in v. 7 correspond to the chaos of 2 Kings 15 (Zechariah, Shallum, Menahem, Pekahiah, Pekah — four kings assassinated within two decades). The dove imagery connects to Hosea 11:11. The Egypt-Assyria vacillation reflects the historical diplomatic maneuvering described in 2 Kings 15-17. The 'unturned cake' metaphor is unique to Hosea.*

¹When I would heal Israel, the iniquity of Ephraim is exposed and the crimes of Samaria — for they practice deceit. The thief breaks in while the raiding band strips victims outside. ²They do not consider in their hearts that I remember all their wickedness. Now their deeds surround them; they are right before my face. ³With their wickedness they delight the king, and with their lies, the officials. ⁴They are all adulterers, burning like an oven that the baker ceases to stoke — from the kneading of the dough until it is leavened. ⁵On the day of our king, the officials made themselves sick with the heat of wine; he stretched out his hand to mockers. ⁶For they draw near — their hearts are like an oven as they lie in ambush. Their anger smolders all night; in the morning it blazes like a flaming fire. ⁷They all burn hot as an oven and devour their rulers. All their kings have fallen — not one of them calls on me. ⁸Ephraim mixes himself among the nations. Ephraim has become a flatcake not turned over. ⁹Foreigners have consumed his strength, but he does not realize it. Gray hairs are sprinkled on him, but he does not realize it. ¹⁰The arrogance of Israel testifies against him, yet they do not return to the LORD their God or seek him despite all this. ¹¹Ephraim has become like a dove — senseless, without understanding. They call to Egypt; they go to Assyria. ¹²When they go, I will spread my net over them; I will bring them down like birds from the sky. I will discipline them as their assembly has been warned. ¹³Woe to them, for they have strayed from me! Destruction upon them, for they have rebelled against me! I wanted to redeem them, but they speak lies against me. ¹⁴They do not cry out to me from their hearts, but they wail on their beds. They gash themselves for grain and new wine; they turn away from me. ¹⁵I trained them and strengthened their arms, but they plot evil against me. ¹⁶They turn, but not upward. They are like a faulty bow — their officials will fall by the sword because of the insolence of their tongues. This will be their ridicule in the land of Egypt.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verse connects to 6:11 — God's attempt to heal is frustrated by the exposure of deeper corruption. Samaria, the capital city, is named as the center of wickedness. The twin images of the thief (inside) and the raiding band (outside) suggest lawlessness pervading every space — no place is safe.
2. The people's failure is not merely sinning but forgetting that God sees. The phrase *neged panai* ('before my face') means God witnesses everything. The verb *seavavum* ('surround them') suggests their accumulated deeds have become a prison — their actions have closed in on them.
3. The corruption runs from top to bottom — the king and officials are not disturbed by evil but entertained by it. The parallel structure pairs wickedness (*ra'ah*) with lies (*kechashim*) and king (*melekh*) with officials (*sarim*), showing that deception pervades the entire ruling class.
4. The oven (*tannur*) metaphor begins here and extends through verse 7. The adulterers burn with the slow heat of a bread oven that maintains its temperature even when the baker stops feeding it. The baker pauses between kneading and leavening — the conspirators wait patiently for the right moment. The sexual metaphor (adulterers) and the political metaphor (conspirators) overlap deliberately — unfaithfulness to God and treachery toward kings share the same root.
5. 'The day of our king' is likely a coronation or birthday celebration. The phrase *chamat miyyayin* ('heat from wine') describes the flushed fever of heavy drinking. 'He stretched out his hand to mockers' (*lotsetim*) suggests the king allied himself with those who scorn God and legitimate authority — the very conspirators who will soon overthrow him. The scene is a banquet that will end in assassination.
6. The 'baker sleeping all night' has been emended by many scholars to 'their anger' (*appam* for *ophehem*), which fits the context of smoldering conspiracy. The oven metaphor tracks the timeline of a coup: the conspirators approach during the evening feast (v. 5), their rage smolders through the night like banked coals, and at dawn it bursts into open flame — the assassination. Multiple northern kings were killed at banquets or in their bedchambers.
7. The oven metaphor reaches its climax: the conspirators consume their own leaders. 'All their kings have fallen' summarizes the political chaos of the northern kingdom's final decades — Zechariah, Shallum, Pekahiah, and Pekah were all assassinated (2 Kings 15). The final indictment is theological: amid all the political upheaval, 'not one calls on me' — they change governments but never change gods.
8. The verb *yitbolal* ('mixes himself') describes assimilation — Ephraim has blended into the surrounding cultures, losing his distinctive covenant identity. The *ugah beli hafukhah* ('cake not turned over') is a brilliant domestic image: a flatcake left on one side too long is charred on the bottom and raw on the top — useless for eating. Ephraim has absorbed foreign culture on one side while remaining spiritually unformed on the other. He is neither fully pagan nor truly Israelite — half-baked in every sense.

9. The repetition of *ve'hu lo yada* ('but he does not know/realize') twice in one verse emphasizes Ephraim's obliviousness. The nation is aging and declining but is unaware of its own deterioration — like someone going gray without noticing. Foreign powers have been draining Israel's resources through tribute payments and political manipulation, but Ephraim remains blind to the slow hemorrhage of national vitality.
10. This verse nearly repeats 5:5, functioning as a refrain of accusation. The phrase *bekhol zot* ('despite all this') expresses exasperation — all the evidence of decline (vv. 8-9) should drive them to return (*shuv*), but it does not. The failure to seek (*biqqesh*) God echoes the hollow seeking of 5:6.
11. The *yonah potah* ('senseless dove') is Hosea's metaphor for Israel's panicked, directionless foreign policy. A dove is easily lured into traps. 'Without heart' (*ein lev*) means lacking judgment or understanding — the *lev* in Hebrew is the organ of decision-making. The oscillation between Egypt and Assyria — the two superpowers flanking Israel — reflects the historical vacillation of the northern kingdom's final kings (Menahem paid tribute to Assyria in 2 Kings 15:19; Hoshea conspired with Egypt in 2 Kings 17:4).
12. God becomes the fowler who traps the senseless dove. The net (*rishti*) catches the very bird that thought it was flying to freedom. The phrase 'as their assembly has been warned' (*keshema la'adatam*) refers back to prophetic warnings delivered to the assembly of Israel — the judgment was announced; they simply ignored it.
13. The verb *naddu* ('strayed, wandered, fled') depicts the dove flying away from its keeper. The verb *epdeh* ('redeem') uses redemption vocabulary — God's desire was to buy them back (cf. chapter 3), but they resist with lies (*kezavim*). The 'lies against me' may refer to attributing God's blessings to Baal, or to the false confidence of 6:1-3.
14. The contrast between crying on beds and crying to God reveals the emptiness of their grief — they mourn their lost prosperity but not their lost relationship with God. The verb *yitgoraru* ('gash themselves') refers to ritual cutting associated with Canaanite worship (cf. 1 Kings 18:28, the prophets of Baal cutting themselves on Mount Carmel). The Masoretic text has *yaguru* ('they assemble') but many manuscripts and the LXX support *yitgoraru* ('gash themselves'), which fits the context of pagan mourning rituals for grain and wine — Baal's supposed gifts.
15. The verb *yissarti* ('I trained, disciplined') uses parental language — God raised them like a father training a child's limbs for strength (cf. 11:3). The word *chizzaqti* ('I strengthened') makes God the source of their very capability. The tragic irony: the arms God strengthened are now raised in rebellion against him. They 'plot evil' (*yechashshevu ra*) — the word for 'plot/devise' implies deliberate, calculated opposition.
16. The verb *yashuvu* ('they turn/return') is used ironically — they turn but not to God (*lo al*, 'not upward/to the Most High'). The 'faulty bow' (*qeshet remiyyah*) is a weapon that misfires or goes slack — it cannot be aimed, cannot hit its target. Israel's attempts at action always miss the mark. The 'ridicule in Egypt' means that Egypt, the would-be ally, will mock Israel's downfall rather than help — the ally becomes the mocker. The chapter ends where it began — with the futility of foreign alliances.

8

Summary: *Hosea 8 sounds the alarm against the invasion approaching like a vulture. Israel has violated God's covenant and rebelled against his instruction. The chapter condemns the unauthorized kingmaking and idol-manufacturing of the northern kingdom, especially the calf-idol at Samaria. The famous proverb appears: 'They sow the wind and reap the whirlwind.' Israel has forgotten its Maker and built palaces; Judah has multiplied fortified cities — but fire will consume them all.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the Bible's most enduring proverbs: 'They sow the wind and reap the whirlwind' (v. 7) — the principle of disproportionate consequence. What begins as a breeze returns as a storm. The condemnation of the Samaria calf-idol (vv. 5-6) connects to Jeroboam I's original sin of establishing golden calves at Dan and Bethel (1 Kings 12:28-29). Verse 13 introduces a shocking possibility: Israel may return to Egypt — undoing the Exodus itself. The covenant liberation may be reversed.*

Translation Friction: *The opening phrase (v. 1) is debated: is the 'vulture/eagle' (*nesher*) already over the house of the LORD, or is the prophet commanded to put a trumpet to his lips like a bird of prey? We follow the more common reading that the vulture hovers over Israel. The phrase 'altars for sinning' (v. 11) contains a wordplay — the altars intended to remove sin have become altars that produce sin.*

Connections: *The calf-idol polemic connects to Exodus 32 (golden calf at Sinai) and 1 Kings 12:28 (Jeroboam's calves). 'Sow the wind, reap the whirlwind' echoes the agricultural curse-blessing framework of Deuteronomy 28. The return to Egypt (v. 13) reverses the Exodus narrative. The fire on fortified cities (v. 14) parallels Amos 1-2's fire oracles.*

1Put the trumpet to your mouth! Like a vulture over the house of the LORD — because they have violated my covenant and rebelled against my instruction. 2They cry out to me, 'My God! We, Israel, know you!' 3Israel has rejected what is good — an

enemy will pursue him. ⁴They set up kings without my approval and appointed officials without my knowledge. From their silver and gold they fashioned idols for themselves — so that they will be cut off. ⁵Your calf is rejected, Samaria! My anger burns against them. How long will they be incapable of innocence? ⁶For it is from Israel! A craftsman made it — it is not God! The calf of Samaria will be smashed to fragments. ⁷For they sow the wind, and they will reap the whirlwind. The standing grain has no head; it will produce no flour. And if it did produce, foreigners would swallow it up. ⁸Israel is swallowed up! Now they are among the nations like a pot in which no one delights. ⁹For they have gone up to Assyria — a wild donkey wandering alone. Ephraim has hired lovers. ¹⁰Even though they hire allies among the nations, now I will gather them up, and they will begin to waste away under the burden of the king of princes. ¹¹Ephraim built many altars for sin — and they became altars for sinning. ¹²Though I write for him the many things of my instruction, they are regarded as something foreign. ¹³As for the sacrifices of my offerings — they sacrifice meat and eat it, but the LORD does not accept them. Now he will remember their iniquity and punish their sins. They will return to Egypt! ¹⁴Israel has forgotten his Maker and built palaces. Judah has multiplied fortified cities. But I will send fire on their cities, and it will consume their fortresses.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The neshet ('eagle/vulture') hovering over Israel signifies imminent judgment — a predator circling its dying prey. The Hebrew neshet refers to both eagles and vultures; here the scavenging vulture image is more appropriate to the context of impending destruction. The 'house of the LORD' may refer to the temple or to Israel itself as God's household. The two charges — violating the covenant (berit) and rebelling against instruction (torah) — summarize the entire case.
2. The irony is cutting — Israel claims to 'know' God (yeda'anukha) using the very word (da'at) that Hosea has established as the missing element in their relationship (4:1, 6:6). They mouth the vocabulary of intimacy while living in estrangement. The exclamation 'My God' (Elohai) is the same response promised in the restoration of 2:23 — but here it is premature and hollow.
3. The verb zanach ('rejected, cast off') is the opposite of seeking. The 'good' (tov) that Israel rejected may refer to God himself (cf. 3:5, 'the LORD and his goodness'), the covenant, or moral goodness generally. The consequence is military: rejection of good invites pursuit by enemies.
4. The northern kingdom's kingmaking was unauthorized from the start — Jeroboam I's rebellion, however justified politically, was never sanctioned by the covenant theology of the Davidic promise. The phrase velo mimmeni ('not from me') and velo yada'ti ('I did not acknowledge/approve') indicate God's non-participation in the northern political system. The idols made from silver and gold recall the golden calf of Exodus 32:2-4. The purpose clause 'so that they will be cut off' (lema'an yikkaret) is bitterly ironic — the idols were made for protection but will achieve destruction.
5. The 'calf of Samaria' (eglekh shomron) refers to the golden calf-idol at Bethel or at Samaria itself — the central symbol of the northern kingdom's apostasy, originating with Jeroboam I (1 Kings 12:28-29). The rhetorical question 'How long will they be incapable of innocence?' (ad matai lo yukhelunniqayon) expresses divine exasperation — purity has become an impossibility for them, not just a failure.
6. The argument is devastatingly simple: the idol came from Israel, was made by a human craftsman, therefore it is not God. The logic inverts the creation order — God made humanity, but here humanity makes its 'god.' The verb shevavim yihyeh ('will become fragments') promises the total destruction of the idol — what was assembled by human hands will be disassembled by divine judgment.
7. The proverb 'sow the wind, reap the whirlwind' (ruach yizra'u vesuphata yiqtsoru) is built on agricultural imagery perverted — normal sowing produces a harvest, but sowing wind produces a storm. The escalation from ruach ('wind, breeze') to suphah ('whirlwind, tempest') expresses disproportionate consequences. The agricultural failure described in the second half compounds the metaphor: even if something grew from the wind-sowing, it would have no grain heads, and even if it produced flour, foreigners would consume it. Every possible outcome is futile.
8. The same verb 'swallow' (bala) from verse 7 is applied to Israel itself — the nation that was supposed to harvest has been harvested. The 'pot in which no one delights' (keli ein chefets bo) is a worthless vessel — cracked, dirty, or simply unwanted. Among the nations, Israel has lost all value and distinction. The covenant people have become indistinguishable from any other small, consumed territory.
9. The pere ('wild donkey') is a solitary, untamable animal of the desert — Israel in its desperate independence resembles an animal that has isolated itself from the herd. The phrase hitnu ahavim ('hired lovers') uses prostitution vocabulary — Ephraim pays for political alliances the way a prostitute pays clients to come to her (the normal dynamic inverted). Instead of being sought after, Israel must bribe nations to notice it.
10. The 'king of princes' (melekh sarim) is likely a title for the Assyrian emperor. God's 'gathering' (aqabbetsem) is not restoration but collection for judgment — he rounds them up like a shepherd gathering scattered animals, but for slaughter rather than safety. The 'burden' (massa) is the tribute imposed by Assyria — the very alliance they sought becomes an unbearable tax.
11. The Hebrew contains a devastating wordplay that cannot be fully captured in English. The phrase lachato can mean both 'for [removing] sin' (i.e., for sin offerings) and 'for sinning' (i.e., as instruments of sin). The altars built to atone for sin have themselves become the primary means of sinning — the cure has become the disease. We render the wordplay by translating the first instance as 'for sin' (purpose: dealing with sin) and the second as 'for sinning' (result: producing sin).

12. The 'many things' (rubbei) of God's torah ('instruction') may refer to the written law or to the abundance of prophetic teaching. The word zar ('foreign, strange, alien') is the supreme irony — God's own instruction, given specifically to Israel, is treated as if it came from an outsider. The covenant people treat the covenant document as an alien text.
13. The sacrifices have become mere meat-eating festivals — the religious dimension has evaporated, leaving only the feast. God's non-acceptance (lo ratsam) means the entire sacrificial system is void. The declaration 'they will return to Egypt' (mitsrayim yashuvu) is the ultimate reversal: the Exodus, God's foundational saving act, will be undone. They will go back to the house of bondage — either literally (seeking Egyptian alliance) or figuratively (entering a new slavery under Assyria, which is the new Egypt). The verb shuv ('return') here carries its darkest connotation — turning back is turning away.
14. The verb shakach ('forget') echoes 4:6 — Israel has forgotten God, and God's instruction, so God forgets Israel's children. The 'palaces' (heikhalot) may refer to royal buildings or temples — the ambiguity is probably deliberate, since Israel's buildings serve both political and religious purposes. The fire oracle against Judah's fortified cities parallels the fire judgments in Amos 1-2 — the same formula ('I will send fire...it will consume the fortresses') appears there against foreign nations. Now it applies to God's own people.

9

Summary: *Hosea 9 is a harvest festival prophecy — likely delivered at a feast celebration — that warns Israel their joy is about to end. The land's produce will fail, exile to Egypt and Assyria will follow, and the prophet himself is mocked as a fool. The chapter reaches back to the sin at Baal-Peor (Numbers 25) as the origin point of Israel's corruption, and declares that Ephraim's glory will fly away like a bird — no birth, no pregnancy, no conception.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains Hosea's most personal moment of self-defense (vv. 7-8): he is called a fool and a madman by the people he prophesies to. His response is not to defend himself but to indict them — 'the prophet is a watchman over Ephraim, yet a fowler's snare is on all his paths.' The fertility curse of verses 11-14 is one of the harshest in prophetic literature: glory flying away, miscarrying wombs, dry breasts. Hosea himself prays for this judgment (v. 14), then seems to recoil from his own prayer.*

Translation Friction: *The setting of this prophecy — likely a harvest festival — must be inferred from the agricultural language and the command 'do not rejoice' (v. 1). The relationship between verses 7-8 is debated: is the 'fool' the false prophet or Hosea himself? We read it as the people's accusation against Hosea, which he turns back on them. The prayer in verse 14 is disturbing — the prophet asks for miscarrying wombs and dry breasts. We render it without softening.*

Connections: *The Baal-Peor reference (v. 10) connects to Numbers 25:1-9. The prophet as 'watchman' (v. 8) echoes Ezekiel 3:17 and 33:7. The flight of glory (v. 11) connects to the kavod theology of Ezekiel 10-11. Gibeah (v. 9) references the horrific events of Judges 19-21. The exile to Egypt and Assyria continues the 'return to Egypt' theme of 8:13.*

¹Do not celebrate, Israel! Do not rejoice like the nations, for you have been unfaithful to your God. You have loved the prostitute's wages on every threshing floor. ²The threshing floor and the wine vat will not sustain them, and the new wine will fail them. ³They will not remain in the LORD's land. Ephraim will return to Egypt, and in Assyria they will eat unclean food. ⁴They will not pour out wine offerings to the LORD, and their sacrifices will not please him. Their food will be like the bread of mourners — everyone who eats it becomes unclean. Their bread will be for their hunger alone; it will not come into the house of the LORD. ⁵What will you do on the day of the appointed festival, on the feast day of the LORD? ⁶For even if they escape the destruction, Egypt will gather them, and Memphis will bury them. Nettles will inherit their treasures of silver; thorns will fill their tents. ⁷The days of punishment have come; the days of reckoning have arrived — Israel will know it! 'The prophet is a fool! The man of the spirit is insane!' — because of your great iniquity and great hostility. ⁸The prophet is a watchman for Ephraim, with my God — yet a fowler's snare is on all his paths, and hostility fills the house of his God. ⁹The y have sunk deep into corruption, as in the days of Gibeah. He will remember their iniquity; he will punish their sins. ¹⁰I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness; I saw your ancestors like the first fruit on an early fig tree. But they came to Baal-Peor and consecrated themselves to that shameful thing, and they became as detestable as the thing they loved. ¹¹Ephraim — their glory will fly away like a bird. No birth, no pregnancy, no conception. ¹²Even if they raise their children, I will

bereave them until not one remains. Indeed, woe to them when I turn away from them! ¹³Ephraim — as I have seen, it was planted like Tyre in a pleasant meadow. But Ephraim will bring out his children to the slayer. ¹⁴Give them — O LORD, what will you give? Give them a miscarrying womb and dry breasts. ¹⁵All their wickedness began at Gilgal; there I came to hate them. Because of the evil of their deeds I will drive them from my house. I will love them no more. All their officials are rebels. ¹⁶Ephraim is struck down — their root has dried up; they will produce no fruit. Even if they give birth, I will put to death the cherished offspring of their womb. ¹⁷My God will reject them because they have not listened to him. They will become wanderers among the nations.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The setting is a harvest festival where Israel celebrates alongside (or like) neighboring nations. Hosea interrupts the celebration with a prohibition — their joy is illegitimate because the harvest they celebrate came from the LORD, not from Baal, but they credit Baal. The 'prostitute's wages' (etnan) on every threshing floor links harvest celebration to fertility cult rituals — the threshing floor was both an agricultural workspace and a site of cultic sexual activity (cf. Ruth 3 for the threshing floor's associations).
2. The harvest abundance they celebrate will not last. The verb yir'em ('feed, shepherd, sustain') suggests that the agricultural produce they depend on will prove insufficient. The verb yekhachesh ('fail, disappoint, deceive') from the root k-ch-sh implies the wine will 'lie' to them — promise satisfaction but deliver nothing.
3. The phrase 'the LORD's land' (erets YHWH) emphasizes that Israel does not own the promised land — it belongs to God, and occupancy is conditional on covenant faithfulness. The return to Egypt and the eating of unclean food in Assyria represent total covenant reversal: loss of land, loss of liberty, loss of dietary purity. In exile, the food laws that marked Israel's distinctiveness will be impossible to maintain.
4. In exile, the entire sacrificial system becomes impossible. The 'bread of mourners' (lechem onim) is food in a house where someone has died — anyone who touches it becomes ritually unclean (Numbers 19:14). All food in exile takes on this character of contamination. The phrase 'for their hunger alone' (lenafsham, literally 'for their appetite/life') means eating becomes mere survival rather than sacred communion. Food that cannot enter the LORD's house has no sacramental dimension — it is just fuel.
5. The rhetorical question pierces the harvest celebration: you celebrate now, but in exile, how will you observe these festivals? Without temple, altar, or land, the entire liturgical calendar becomes impossible. The mo'ed ('appointed time') and chag ('pilgrimage feast') require specific locations and rituals that exile eliminates.
6. Memphis (Moph) was the ancient capital and burial city of Egypt — to be buried at Memphis means dying in exile, far from the promised land. The image of nettles and thorns taking over their abandoned properties depicts the reversal of settlement: the cultivated land returns to wild growth when its inhabitants are removed. The vegetation reclaims what the covenant people forfeited.
7. The quotation marks around 'The prophet is a fool...' reflect our reading that these are the people's words mocking Hosea, not Hosea's words about false prophets. The people call the true prophet evil ('fool') and meshugga ('insane, mad') — the ish haruach ('man of the spirit') is their derisive term for the prophet who claims divine inspiration. The final clause can be read as the reason for either the mockery or the judgment: Israel's great iniquity has produced great hostility — hostility toward God, toward his prophet, and between the people themselves.
8. Hosea identifies his role: he is a tsopheh ('watchman') — the sentinel posted on the wall to warn of approaching danger (cf. Ezekiel 3:17, 33:7). But the watchman's own paths are trapped with snares — those who oppose his message have made his ministry dangerous. 'Hostility in the house of his God' (mastamah beveit Elohav) suggests that even the worship centers have become places of opposition to the prophet. The sanctuary itself is hostile territory.
9. 'The days of Gibeah' refers to the shocking events of Judges 19-21 — the gang rape and murder of a Levite's concubine, which nearly destroyed the tribe of Benjamin and represented the moral nadir of the judges period. By comparing present Israel to Gibeah, Hosea claims the nation has returned to its worst historical moment. The verbs 'remember' (yizkor) and 'punish' (yifqod) are the judicial pair — God recalls the evidence and renders the verdict.
10. The Baal-Peor incident (Numbers 25:1-9) involved Israelite men engaging in sexual worship rites with Moabite women, joining themselves to the Baal of Peor. The verb yinnazru ('consecrated themselves') is bitterly ironic — nazir means 'consecrated, set apart,' the very word for holy dedication. They consecrated themselves to bosheth ('the shameful thing' — a dysphemism for Baal, cf. Jeremiah 11:13). The theological principle — 'they became like what they loved' (vayyihyu shiqqutism ke'ahavam) — is a foundational insight of Hebrew anthropology: humans are formed by their objects of worship.
11. The 'glory' (kavod) of Ephraim — their population, their strength, their future — will vanish like a bird in flight. The fertility curse moves backward through the reproductive process: no birth (ledah), no pregnancy (beten, literally 'womb'), no conception (herayon). The curse reverses the entire process of life at every stage. For a people who worshiped fertility deities, the withdrawal of fertility is the most fitting judgment.
12. The judgment extends beyond the womb to children already born — even those who survive will be taken. The verb shikkaltim ('I will bereave them') is the language of a parent losing children. The final cry — 'woe to them when I turn away' (besuri mehem) — identifies the ultimate catastrophe: not the loss of children but the loss of God's presence. Everything else flows from his departure.

13. The comparison to Tyre (Tsor) depicts Ephraim as once beautiful and prosperous — Tyre was the wealthy Phoenician trading city. But the beautiful planting will produce a grim harvest: Ephraim's children will be led out to execution. The verb lehotsi ('to bring out') may echo the Exodus language (God 'brought out' Israel from Egypt), now horrifically inverted: the parent brings out children not to freedom but to death.
14. This is Hosea's own prayer — and it is agonizing. The prophet begins to ask God for something, pauses as if reconsidering ('what will you give?'), and then requests the lesser evil: miscarriage and infertility rather than children born only to be slaughtered (v. 13). The rechem mashkil ('miscarrying womb') and shadayim tsoqmim ('withered/dry breasts') are not cruelty but mercy in a world where children face certain death. Better not to be born than to be 'brought out to the slayer.'
15. Gilgal was where Israel first camped after crossing the Jordan (Joshua 4:19-20) and later became a center of illicit worship (cf. 4:15, 12:11, Amos 4:4, 5:5). God's 'hatred' (sene'tim) is covenant-lawsuit language — the rejection of a treaty partner who has violated the agreement. 'Drive them from my house' (mibeiti agashem) uses eviction language — Israel is expelled from God's household, which is both the land and the covenant relationship. 'I will love them no more' is the most devastating statement possible in the marriage metaphor.
16. The botanical metaphor — dried root, no fruit — depicts total organic death. A tree with dead roots cannot produce anything. The name Ephraim itself derives from a root meaning 'fruitful' (cf. Genesis 41:52, 'God has made me fruitful'), making the declaration of fruitlessness a negation of the tribe's very identity. The 'cherished offspring' (machamadei vitnam) uses a word of deep affection — these are beloved children, and their loss is not indifferent but agonizing even in the pronouncement.
17. Hosea says 'my God' (Elohai), not 'their God' — the covenant relationship between God and Israel has been severed, but Hosea's personal relationship endures. The verb yim'asem ('will reject') is the opposite of bachar ('choose') — election reversed. The 'wanderers among the nations' (nodedim baggoyim) echoes the curse of Cain (Genesis 4:12, 'a wanderer on the earth') — exile without home, rootless among peoples who are not their own.

10

Summary: *Hosea 10 uses the image of Israel as a luxuriant vine that produces fruit for itself rather than for God. Sacred pillars and altars will be destroyed, the calf-idol of Beth-Aven (Bethel) will be carried off to Assyria as tribute, and the high places of wickedness will be overgrown with thorns. The chapter includes the call to 'sow righteousness and reap faithful love,' and ends with the devastating image of a mother dashed to pieces with her children in warfare.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vine metaphor (v. 1) establishes a pattern used later by Isaiah (5:1-7), Jeremiah (2:21), Ezekiel (15, 17, 19), and Jesus (John 15:1-8). The call to 'break up your fallow ground' (v. 12) is agricultural wisdom applied to spiritual life — the soil of the heart must be prepared before the seed of righteousness can grow. The chapter's final image of the mother and children dashed at Beth-Arbel (v. 14) is among the most violent in the prophets, depicting the real human cost of the coming Assyrian invasion.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'Shalman' who destroyed Beth-Arbel (v. 14) is uncertain — it may be Shalmaneser V (the Assyrian who besieged Samaria) or a Moabite king named Salamanu. Beth-Arbel may be Arbela in Galilee or Arbela in Transjordan. We note the uncertainty. The Hebrew of verse 10 is particularly difficult, with the phrase 'for their two transgressions' (or 'two furrows') admitting multiple interpretations.*

Connections: *The vine metaphor connects to Isaiah 5:1-7, Psalm 80:8-16, and John 15:1-8. 'Sow righteousness, reap chesed' (v. 12) is echoed in Proverbs 11:18 and Galatians 6:7-9. The Gibeah reference (v. 9) continues from 9:9. The calf-idol being carried to Assyria (v. 6) fulfills the threat of 8:5-6.*

¹Israel is a spreading vine that produces fruit for itself. The more his fruit increased, the more altars he built. The better his land prospered, the finer he made his sacred pillars. ²Their heart is divided; now they must bear their guilt. He will break down their altars and demolish their sacred pillars. ³For soon they will say, 'We have no king, because we did not fear the LORD — and what could a king do for us anyway?' ⁴They speak empty words, swearing false oaths and making covenants. Justice springs up like poisonous weeds in the furrows of a field. ⁵The inhabitants of Samaria tremble for the calf-idol of Beth-Aven. Its people mourn over it, and its idolatrous priests wail over it — over its glory that has departed from it. ⁶It too will be carried to Assyria as tribute to the great king. Ephraim will be humiliated, and Israel will be ashamed of its counsel. ⁷Samaria and its king will be swept away like a twig on the surface of the water. ⁸The high places of Aven — the sin of Israel — will be destroyed. Thorns and thistles will grow up over their altars. They will say to the mountains, 'Cover us!' and to the

hills, 'Fall on us!' ⁹Since the days of Gibeah you have sinned, Israel. There they have remained. Will not war overtake them in Gibeah — against the children of wickedness? ¹⁰When I choose, I will discipline them. Nations will be gathered against them when they are bound for their double transgression. ¹¹Ephraim was a trained heifer that loved to thresh — and I spared her fair neck. But I will put Ephraim to the yoke; Judah must plow, and Jacob must break up the ground. ¹²Sow for yourselves righteousness; reap according to faithful love. Break up your unplowed ground, for it is time to seek the LORD, until he comes and rains righteousness upon you. ¹³You have plowed wickedness; you have harvested injustice; you have eaten the fruit of deception — because you trusted in your own way, in your many warriors. ¹⁴The roar of battle will rise against your people, and all your fortresses will be demolished — as Shalman demolished Beth-Arbel on the day of battle, when mothers were dashed to pieces alongside their children. ¹⁵This is what Bethel will bring upon you because of your monstrous wickedness. At dawn the king of Israel will be utterly destroyed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word boqeq can mean 'empty/luxuriant/spreading' — the vine is not barren but misdirected, producing fruit that serves itself rather than its owner (God). The tragic pattern: prosperity leads not to gratitude but to idolatry. More harvest means more altars to Baal; better land means better sacred pillars (matsevoṭ). God's blessings become the raw material for worshipping other gods.
2. The 'divided heart' (chalaq libbam) is the central diagnosis — Israel is trying to worship both YHWH and Baal, maintaining dual loyalties. The Hebrew chalaq means 'smooth, slippery, divided' — the heart has no firm commitment. The verb ya'aroph ('break the neck of, demolish') is violent — God will physically destroy the worship installations Israel built with his blessings.
3. This verse anticipates the fall of the northern monarchy. Israel will reach a point of political nihilism: no king, no God, no hope. The rhetorical question 'what could a king do for us?' expresses both despair and belated recognition that human kingship without divine sanction is empty. The connection between not fearing the LORD and losing the king reflects the covenant theology that political stability depends on spiritual fidelity.
4. The covenants made with false oaths are likely the political treaties with foreign powers that violated the covenant with God. 'Justice' (mishpat) springing up like poisonous weeds (rosh) is a bitter agricultural metaphor — where righteous judgment should grow, only toxic plants appear. The 'furrows of the field' (talmei sadai) ground the metaphor in the everyday agricultural reality of Israel.
5. Beth-Aven ('House of Wickedness') is again Hosea's contemptuous name for Bethel ('House of God'). The kemarav ('idolatrous priests,' from the root k-m-r) are distinct from regular kohanim — these are priests of illegitimate cults. The 'glory' (kavod) departing from the calf is deeply ironic: the idol's kavod is being removed, just as God's own kavod departed from Israel (cf. 1 Samuel 4:21, Ichabod — 'the glory has departed'). The idol proves unable to retain even its own dignity.
6. The calf-idol itself will be seized as spoils of war and carried to Assyria — the 'god' that was supposed to protect Israel becomes a trophy of its conqueror. 'The great king' (melekh yarev) is the same Assyrian title from 5:13. The shame (boshnah) and humiliation complete the irony: the object of worship becomes the instrument of disgrace. Israel's 'counsel' (etsah) — the political and religious strategy of idol worship and foreign alliances — will be exposed as catastrophic folly.
7. The word qetseph can mean 'foam, chip, twig' — something insubstantial floating on water, carried away by the current. The king of Samaria is as helpless as debris on a flood. The verb nidmeh ('cut off, silenced, destroyed') echoes 4:6 ('my people are destroyed') — the same root describes the fate of people and king alike.
8. The high places called 'Aven' ('wickedness') are identified as 'the sin of Israel' (chattat Yisra'el) — the shrines are not merely locations of sin but sin itself objectified. Thorns and thistles overgrowing the altars echo the curse of Genesis 3:18 — the worship sites return to a cursed state. The cry to mountains and hills for burial is quoted by Jesus in Luke 23:30 on the way to the cross and by John in Revelation 6:16 — the desire for annihilation when facing divine judgment.
9. The second reference to Gibeah (cf. 9:9) reinforces that Israel's corruption is not recent but ancient — it goes back to the most shameful episode in the judges period. 'There they stood/remained' (sham amadu) suggests Israel has not moved from the moral position established at Gibeah — they are still there, still in the same posture of corruption. The 'children of wickedness' (benei alvah) are now the Israelites themselves, not the original Benjaminites.
10. The phrase lishtei onotam ('for their two transgressions/furrows') is ambiguous. It may refer to two specific sins (the calf-idols at Dan and Bethel, or idolatry and political corruption), or it may use the agricultural image of furrows to describe the binding of oxen to a yoke — Israel bound to its sins like an ox to a plow. The gathering of nations against Israel anticipates the Assyrian coalition that will destroy the northern kingdom.
11. The agricultural metaphor is precise: a threshing heifer walks on the grain but is not yoked — she moves freely and eats as she works (Deuteronomy 25:4). God had given Ephraim the easy job. But now the yoke is coming — plowing and harrowing are harder, yoked labor. The shift from Ephraim to Judah to Jacob encompasses the entire people. 'I spared her fair neck' (avarti al tuv tsavvarah) means God passed over the chance to yoke her before — that grace period is ending.

12. The sequence — sow righteousness, reap chesed, break fallow ground, seek the LORD — is both agricultural instruction and spiritual program. The word nir ('fallow ground, unplowed soil') is land that has not been cultivated — hard, compacted, resistant to seed. It must be broken before anything can grow. The verb yoreh ('rain, teach') is the same root as torah ('instruction') — God's coming is both rain for crops and teaching for the soul. Paul echoes this principle in Galatians 6:7-8.
13. The beautiful instruction of verse 12 is contrasted with what Israel actually did: instead of sowing righteousness, they plowed wickedness. Instead of reaping chesed, they harvested injustice (avlatāh). Instead of the fruit of righteousness, they ate the fruit of deception (peri khachash). The root cause: trust in military power ('your many warriors') rather than in God. The agricultural metaphor exposes the full consequence chain from planting to eating.
14. The historical reference to Shalman's destruction of Beth-Arbel was evidently well known to Hosea's audience but is obscure to us. Shalman may be Shalmaneser V of Assyria or a lesser-known Moabite king. Beth-Arbel is likely Arbela in Galilee. The final image — mothers dashed to pieces with their children — depicts the brutality of ancient siege warfare without softening. This is the human reality behind the theological abstraction of 'judgment.'
15. The phrase ra'at ra'atkhem ('your evil of evil,' i.e., 'your monstrous wickedness') is superlative — the worst of the worst. 'At dawn' (bashachar) echoes the dawn imagery from 6:3-4 — they expected God to come like the dawn, but instead judgment comes at dawn. The king's destruction 'at dawn' may allude to the assassination of Hoshea, Israel's last king (2 Kings 17:4). The verb nidmoh nidmah ('utterly cut off/silenced') uses the emphatic infinitive absolute — complete, irreversible destruction.

11

Summary: *Hosea 11 is one of the most emotionally powerful chapters in the Hebrew Bible. The metaphor shifts from marriage to parenthood: God is a father who called his child Israel out of Egypt, taught him to walk, healed him, led him with cords of human kindness. But the child turned away. God then struggles with the tension between justice and compassion, culminating in the anguished cry, 'How can I give you up, Ephraim?' The chapter declares that God will not carry out his fierce anger because he is God and not a human being — the Holy One in their midst.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parental love passage (vv. 1-4) is unparalleled in prophetic literature for its tender, domestic imagery — God teaching a toddler to walk, lifting him to his cheek, bending down to feed him. Then verses 8-9 contain God's internal struggle: he knows justice demands destruction, but his compassion (rachamim) overwhelms him. 'My heart recoils within me; my compassion grows warm and tender' — this is not a God of cold decree but a parent whose love battles his judgment. The theological resolution — 'I am God and not a mortal' (v. 9) — means that God's capacity for mercy exceeds human categories. A human parent might give up; God cannot.*

Translation Friction: *Matthew 2:15 quotes verse 1 ('Out of Egypt I called my son') as fulfilled in Jesus' return from Egypt as an infant. The original context is clearly about Israel's Exodus. We render the Hebrew meaning (Israel's calling from Egypt) while noting Matthew's christological application. Verse 4 is textually difficult — 'cords of a human' (chavlei adam) or 'cords of love' (chavlei ahavah)? The Masoretic text has both; we render 'human cords...bonds of love' to preserve both.*

Connections: *V. 1 is quoted in Matthew 2:15. The parent-child metaphor connects to Deuteronomy 1:31, 8:5, and 32:6, 10-14. God's internal struggle anticipates the tension between justice and mercy throughout prophetic and rabbinic theology. The Admah and Zeboiim reference (v. 8) connects to the destruction narrative of Genesis 19 (cities destroyed alongside Sodom and Gomorrah, cf. Deuteronomy 29:23). The return 'like birds from Egypt, like doves from Assyria' (v. 11) reverses the exile.*

¹When Israel was a child, I loved him, and out of Egypt I called my son. ²The more I called them, the further they went from me. They sacrificed to the Baals and burned incense to carved images. ³Yet it was I who taught Ephraim to walk, taking them up by their arms. But they did not realize that I healed them. ⁴I led them with human cords, with bonds of love. I was to them like one who lifts a yoke from their jaws. I bent down to them and fed them. ⁵Will he not return to the land of Egypt, with Assyria as his king — because they refused to return to me? ⁶The sword will whirl against their cities and destroy their gate bars, consuming them because of their own schemes. ⁷My people are determined to turn from me. Though they call upward, no one will lift them up. ⁸How can I give you up, Ephraim? How can I hand you over, Israel? How can I make you like Admah? How can I treat you like Zeboiim? My heart recoils within me; my compassion grows warm and tender. ⁹I will

not carry out my fierce anger; I will not again destroy Ephraim. For I am God and not a human being — the Holy One in your midst — and I will not come in wrath. ¹⁰They will follow the LORD. He will roar like a lion — when he roars, his children will come trembling from the west. ¹¹They will come trembling like birds from Egypt, like doves from the land of Assyria — and I will settle them in their homes, declares the LORD. ¹²Ephraim has surrounded me with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit. But Judah still walks with God and remains faithful to the Holy One.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Matthew 2:15 quotes this verse as fulfilled when Joseph brings the child Jesus back from Egypt. The original reference is to the nation Israel, whom God calls 'my son' (cf. Exodus 4:22, 'Israel is my firstborn son'). The christological reading sees Jesus as embodying Israel's story — he recapitulates the Exodus pattern. We render the Hebrew meaning; the translator note provides the New Testament connection. The verb qarati ('I called') is the language of naming and summoning — God called Israel into existence as his son.
2. The Masoretic text has 'they called them' (qare'u lahem), but the Septuagint and context support 'I called them' — the parent calls, but the child runs the other direction. The painful dynamic of parental calling and childish fleeing mirrors every parent's experience with a rebellious child. The 'Baals' and 'carved images' (pesilim) are the other parents the child runs to — false gods that offer indulgence instead of discipline.
3. The verb tirgalti ('I taught to walk') is the language of a parent helping a toddler take first steps — holding the child's arms, supporting unsteady legs. This is the most tender domestic image applied to God in the Hebrew Bible. 'Taking them by their arms' (qacham al zero'otav) is the gesture of lifting a stumbling child. 'They did not realize that I healed them' — the child takes for granted the parent's constant care, unaware of how many falls were prevented and wounds were mended.
4. The phrase chavlei adam ('human cords') is sometimes emended to chavlei no'am ('cords of gentleness'), but the Masoretic text makes excellent sense: God leads with cords appropriate to humans, not to animals. The yoke-lifting image (merime'ol) blends the parent-child and farmer-animal metaphors — God is both the tender parent and the compassionate farmer. The verb at ('I bent/inclined') describes God stooping — the Creator of the universe bending down to feed a child. This verse contains four distinct acts of divine tenderness in rapid succession.
5. The Hebrew lo yashuv ('he will not return') presents a textual difficulty — earlier passages (8:13, 9:3) clearly state Israel will return to Egypt. The negation (lo) may be read as an interrogative (halo, 'will he not...?'), or it may mean Israel will not literally return to Egypt but will experience a new Egypt in Assyria. We render as a rhetorical question, following the interpretation that harmonizes with the Egypt-return theme. The wordplay on shuv is characteristically Hoseanic: they 'refused to return' (me'anu lashuv) to God, so they 'return' (yashuv) to bondage.
6. The verb chalah ('whirl, dance, rage') applied to the sword personifies the weapon as an active agent of destruction. The 'gate bars' (baddav) are the defensive bars of city gates — the sword will break through every fortification. 'Their own schemes' (mo'atsotehem) echoes the failed 'counsel' of 10:6 — their political strategies have produced their own destruction.
7. The phrase telu'im limeshuvati ('bent/hung on turning away') suggests a fixed determination to apostasy — they are 'suspended' in their backsliding, unable or unwilling to change direction. The final image is poignant: they call upward (el al) but receive no answer. The one who would lift them — God — has been rejected, and no substitute can raise them.
8. Admah and Zeboiim were cities destroyed with Sodom and Gomorrah (Deuteronomy 29:23, Genesis 14:2, 8). By naming these rather than the more famous Sodom, Hosea emphasizes the totality of destruction — complete annihilation leaving no survivors. The four rhetorical questions beginning with eikh ('how?') are not requests for information but expressions of impossibility — God cannot bring himself to do what justice requires. The verb nehpa'kh alai libbi ('my heart is overturned within me') is visceral, almost medical — a convulsion of compassion. The nichumim ('comfort, compassion') growing warm uses the verb kamar, which describes the physical warming of emotions in the gut (cf. Genesis 43:30, Joseph's compassion for Benjamin, and 1 Kings 3:26, the true mother's love before Solomon).
9. The phrase ki El anokhi velo ish ('for I am God and not a human being') is the theological climax of the chapter and arguably of the entire book. In human experience, repeated betrayal eventually exhausts love. God's love operates by different rules — divine rules. The 'Holy One in your midst' (beqirbekha qadosh) insists that God's holiness is present among them, not distant. The final phrase velo avo be'ir ('I will not come in wrath/into the city') is variously interpreted: 'I will not come to destroy' or 'I will not come in fury.' We follow the reading that God will not enter to destroy.
10. The transition from tender parent (vv. 1-9) to roaring lion (v. 10) is jarring but intentional. The lion's roar is not predatory here but a summoning call — the father calls his scattered children home with a voice that carries across the sea (miyyam, 'from the west/from the sea'). The children 'tremble' (yechedu) not in fear but in responsive urgency — they hear and come quickly.
11. The 'dove' (yonah) that was 'senseless' in 7:11, fluttering between Egypt and Assyria, is now redeemed — the same bird imagery describes the return journey. From both places of exile (Egypt and Assyria), the scattered children fly home. The verb vehoshavtim ('I will settle them') from the root y-sh-v ('to sit, dwell, settle') promises permanent habitation — not temporary refuge but restored dwelling. The oracle formula ne'um YHWH ('declares the LORD') seals the promise with divine authority.
12. This verse transitions to a new section (some scholars place it as the beginning of chapter 12). The contrast between Ephraim's deceit and Judah's faithfulness reflects a moment when Judah was still relatively loyal — possibly during Hezekiah's reforms. The verb rad can mean 'rules' or 'walks/roams' — we render 'walks with' to emphasize the relational dimension. The phrase 'faithful with the Holy One' (im qedoshim ne'eman) uses the same root as emunah ('faithfulness') — Judah's relationship with God retains the covenantal reliability that Ephraim has abandoned.

12

Summary: *Hosea 12 draws on the patriarchal narratives — especially the Jacob story — to indict present Israel. Ephraim feeds on wind and pursues the east wind (futile foreign policy). Jacob's character is recalled: grasping his brother's heel in the womb, wrestling with God at Peniel, weeping at Bethel. The prophet calls Israel to return to their God and practice justice and faithful love. The chapter accuses Ephraim of dishonest commerce and self-satisfied wealth, and warns that God will make them live in tents again — reversing the settlement of the land.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Hosea's use of the Jacob tradition is unique in prophetic literature. He reaches back to the patriarch's story not to celebrate it but to expose a pattern: Jacob was a deceiver who struggled with God and was transformed. Present Israel (whose other name is 'Israel' — the name given to Jacob after his wrestling) has the deception without the transformation. The commercial corruption described in verses 7-8 parallels Amos's critique of marketplace fraud. The threat of returning to tent-dwelling (v. 9) reverses the entire settlement narrative — God will undo the conquest and return Israel to wilderness conditions.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew versification of this chapter differs from English: English 12:1 corresponds to Hebrew 11:12, and English 12:2-14 corresponds to Hebrew 12:1-13. We follow English versification. The interpretation of the Jacob references is debated — is Jacob presented positively (as a model of perseverance with God) or negatively (as a model of deception)? Hosea seems to use both: Jacob's deception mirrors Israel's, but his wrestling with God points to what Israel should do.*

Connections: *The Jacob narratives reference Genesis 25:26 (heel-grasping), Genesis 32:24-30 (wrestling with God), and Genesis 28:10-22 (Bethel). The 'balances of deceit' (v. 7) parallel Amos 8:5 and Proverbs 11:1. The tent-dwelling threat (v. 9) connects to the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot). Moses as the prophet through whom God brought Israel from Egypt (v. 13) establishes the Mosaic prophetic tradition that Hosea claims.*

¹Ephraim feeds on wind and chases the east wind all day long. He multiplies lies and violence. They make a treaty with Assyria while oil is carried to Egypt. ²The LORD also has a case against Judah, and will punish Jacob according to his ways. He will repay him according to his deeds. ³In the womb he grasped his brother's heel, and in his strength he wrestled with God. ⁴He struggled with the angel and prevailed — he wept and pleaded with him. At Bethel he found him, and there God spoke with us. ⁵The LORD, the God of Hosts — the LORD is his name. ⁶So you — return to your God! Maintain faithful love and justice, and wait continually for your God. ⁷A merchant with dishonest scales in his hand — he loves to cheat. ⁸Ephraim says, 'I have become rich! I have found wealth for myself. In all my profits no one will find any iniquity in me — any sin.' ⁹But I am the LORD your God from the land of Egypt. I will make you live in tents again, as in the days of the appointed feast. ¹⁰I spoke through the prophets; I multiplied visions, and through the prophets I gave parables. ¹¹If Gilead is wickedness, they are surely nothing but falsehood. In Gilgal they sacrifice bulls, and their altars are as numerous as stone heaps along the furrows of a plowed field. ¹²Jacob fled to the territory of Aram, and Israel worked to earn a wife — for a wife he tended sheep. ¹³By a prophet the LORD brought Israel up from Egypt, and by a prophet he was guarded. ¹⁴Ephraim has provoked bitter anger. His Lord will leave his bloodguilt upon him and repay him for his disgrace.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. 'Feeding on wind' (ro'eh ruach) is the ultimate image of futility — pursuing something insubstantial. The 'east wind' (qadim) is the scorching sirocco from the desert — Ephraim pursues the very wind that destroys him. The simultaneous treaty with Assyria and tribute of oil to Egypt (v. 1b) depicts the desperate double-dealing of Israel's final kings — playing both superpowers against each other. The verb yuval ('is carried') suggests olive oil exported as tribute payment.
2. The covenant lawsuit (riv) now extends to Judah — the southern kingdom is not exempt. The name 'Jacob' encompasses the entire people (both kingdoms). The principle of proportional justice — 'according to his ways...according to his deeds' — echoes the Deuteronomic covenant: blessing for obedience, curse for rebellion. The name Jacob also triggers the historical review that follows.
3. The two defining moments of Jacob's life are compressed into a single verse. The verb aqav ('grasped the heel') is a wordplay on the name Ya'aqov (Jacob, 'heel-grabber') and evokes the birth narrative of Genesis 25:26. The verb sarah ('wrestled, contended, strove') recalls Genesis 32:24-30, where

Jacob's name was changed to Israel ('one who strives with God'). Hosea presents these not as separate events but as a unified character portrait: from birth to maturity, Jacob was a grasper and a wrestler.

4. Hosea identifies the wrestling opponent as a mal'akh ('angel/messenger'), adding a detail not explicit in Genesis 32. Jacob's weeping and pleading (bakhah vayitchannen lo) reveals vulnerability beneath the wrestling — Jacob did not merely overpower but also begged. The shift to Bethel connects to Genesis 28:10-22 and 35:1-15 (Jacob's visions at Bethel). The shift from 'him' to 'us' (immanu, 'with us') is theologically significant — what God said to Jacob, he said to all Israel. The patriarch's encounter is the nation's encounter.
5. This doxological fragment identifies the God who spoke to Jacob: YHWH Elohei hattseva'ot — the LORD, God of the heavenly armies. The phrase YHWH zikhro ('the LORD is his memorial/name') means this is the name by which God is to be remembered and invoked across all generations (cf. Exodus 3:15). The interruption of narrative with divine name-declaration is a prophetic convention that grounds historical memory in present worship.
6. The imperatives shift from historical narrative to direct address — 'you' (attah) is emphatic, singling out the listener from the story. The pair chesed umishpat ('faithful love and justice') condenses the entire ethical demand of the prophets (cf. Micah 6:8). The verb qavveh ('wait, hope, expect') from the root q-v-h implies taut expectation, like a cord stretched tight — not passive waiting but active, strained hope.
7. The word Kena'an ('Canaan') also means 'merchant/trader' — Hosea puns on the dual meaning to say that Israel has become like a Canaanite in both senses: culturally assimilated and commercially corrupt. The 'dishonest scales' (moznei mirmah) violate Leviticus 19:35-36 and Deuteronomy 25:13-16, where honest weights and measures are covenant requirements. The verb ashaq ('oppress, extort, cheat') describes systematic economic exploitation.
8. Ephraim's self-defense is economic: wealth proves innocence. This is the prosperity gospel avant la lettre — success is taken as evidence of divine favor, regardless of how it was obtained. The irony is that the very 'profits' (yegi'ai, from yaga, 'to toil, labor') were gained through the dishonest scales of verse 7. Ephraim claims clean hands while holding rigged scales.
9. God counters Ephraim's boast with his own self-identification — 'I am the LORD your God from the land of Egypt' echoes the Decalogue's opening (Exodus 20:2). The threat to return them to tent-dwelling reverses the settlement narrative — Israel will lose houses, cities, and permanent structures. The 'days of the appointed feast' (yemei mo'ed) may refer to the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot), when Israelites lived in temporary shelters to remember the wilderness period. What was a seven-day commemoration will become permanent reality.
10. God recalls his communication efforts: prophets, visions, parables (damah, 'to liken, compare'). The verb adammeah ('I gave parables/likenesses') is fitting in Hosea, whose entire book is built on extended metaphor — marriage, parenthood, agriculture, animals. God's revelation is not limited to direct command but includes imaginative, metaphorical communication through the prophets.
11. Both Gilead (Transjordan) and Gilgal (near the Jordan crossing) are condemned. The 'stone heaps' (gallim) pun on the name Gilgal — the altars are as common and worthless as the rocks farmers pile at the edges of their fields. The hyperbole suggests altars have proliferated to the point of absurdity — they are everywhere, like fieldstones.
12. The return to Jacob's story recalls Genesis 29 — Jacob's servitude to Laban for Rachel (and Leah). The patriarch's humble origins are invoked: the father of the nation was a fugitive who worked as a hired shepherd for a foreign master. The implied contrast is with present Ephraim, who boasts of wealth (v. 8) and has forgotten the humble beginnings that should produce gratitude rather than arrogance.
13. The 'prophet' is Moses, though unnamed. The parallel is between Jacob's story (v. 12 — served for a wife) and Moses' story (brought Israel from Egypt). Both patriarchal history and Exodus history are mediated through individuals who served and suffered. The verb nishmar ('was guarded, preserved') uses the same root as shamar ('keep, guard') — by a prophet Israel was kept, just as Jacob 'kept' sheep. The prophetic office is thus established as the means through which God tends his flock.
14. The phrase tamrurim ('bitter things, bitterness') describes the quality of the provocation — Ephraim has not merely annoyed God but caused deep, bitter anger. 'His blood upon him' (damav alav) is a legal formula meaning the guilt of bloodshed remains on the perpetrator (cf. Leviticus 20:9, 'his blood is upon him'). The chapter ends with Adonav ('his Lord') — not YHWH but Adonai, emphasizing God's sovereign authority over the vassal who has rebelled.

13

Summary: *Hosea 13 is the darkest chapter in the book — the fullest expression of judgment before the final restoration of chapter 14. Ephraim once held a position of trembling authority among the tribes but died through Baal worship. God recalls the wilderness relationship ('I knew you in the wilderness') and warns that the very God who fed them will now attack them like a lion, a leopard, and a bear. The chapter contains the agonized question — 'Where are your plagues, O death? Where is your destruction, O Sheol?' — and ends with the graphic image of Samaria's punishment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 14 — 'Where, O Death, are your plagues? Where, O Sheol, is your sting?' — is one of the most theologically significant verses in the Hebrew Bible because Paul quotes it in 1 Corinthians 15:55 as a triumph over death through Christ's resurrection. In its original Hosea context, however, the verse is more ambiguous — it may be a summoning of death against Israel rather than a victory over death. The chapter's animal imagery (lion, leopard, bear, vv. 7-8) presents God as Israel's most dangerous predator.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 14 is the most contested verse in Hosea for translation and interpretation. The Hebrew can be read as a threat ('I will summon death's plagues against you') or as a promise ('I will ransom them from death'). The preceding verse says 'compassion is hidden from my eyes,' suggesting the threat reading in context. But Paul's citation in 1 Corinthians 15:55 reads it as promise. We render it as a question (allowing both readings) while noting the tension. The final verse (v. 16 [Hebrew 14:1]) contains graphic violence that we render without sanitizing.*

Connections: *V. 14 is quoted in 1 Corinthians 15:55. The wilderness feeding (v. 5) connects to Deuteronomy 2:7 and 8:2-5. The animal imagery parallels Amos 5:19 (lion and bear). The kingship critique (v. 10-11) connects to 1 Samuel 8 (Israel's request for a king). The birth metaphor (v. 13) depicts Ephraim as a child who refuses to be born — stuck in the birth canal.*

¹When Ephraim spoke, there was trembling — he was exalted in Israel. But he incurred guilt through Baal, and he died. ²And now they sin more and more. They make cast images from their silver — idols according to their own design, all of it the work of craftsmen. They say, "Those who sacrifice should kiss the calves!" ³Therefore they will be like the morning mist, like early dew that vanishes, like chaff blown from a threshing floor, like smoke from a window. ⁴But I have been the LORD your God since the land of Egypt. You know no God but me, and there is no savior besides me. ⁵I knew you in the wilderness, in the land of burning heat. ⁶When I fed them, they were satisfied. When they were satisfied, their hearts became proud — and so they forgot me. ⁷So I will be like a lion to them, like a leopard lurking by the path. ⁸I will attack them like a bear robbed of her cubs; I will tear open their ribcage. I will devour them there like a lion; a wild animal will rip them apart. ⁹It is your destruction, Israel, that you are against me — against your helper. ¹⁰Where now is your king, that he may save you in all your cities? And your judges, of whom you said, 'Give me a king and officials'? ¹¹I gave you a king in my anger and took him away in my wrath. ¹²Ephraim's iniquity is bundled up; his sin is stored away. ¹³The pains of labor will come upon him — he is an unwise son, for when the time comes, he does not present himself at the opening of the womb. ¹⁴Shall I ransom them from the power of Sheol? Shall I redeem them from death? Where are your plagues, O Death? Where is your destruction, O Sheol? Compassion is hidden from my eyes. ¹⁵Though he flourishes among his brothers, an east wind will come — the wind of the LORD rising from the wilderness. His spring will dry up and his fountain will fail. The enemy will plunder the treasury of every precious thing. ¹⁶Samaria will bear her guilt, for she has rebelled against her God. They will fall by the sword; their infants will be dashed to pieces, and their pregnant women will be ripped open.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Ephraim's former authority is recalled: when the tribe spoke, others trembled with respect. This likely refers to the early prominence of Ephraim under Joshua (an Ephraimite) and the period of the judges. The verb *vayyashtem* ('he incurred guilt') through Baal marks the turning point. The verb *vayyamot* ('he died') is startling — Ephraim is already dead in God's assessment. The tribe's spiritual death preceded its political destruction.

2. The progression from past death (v. 1) to present sin (v. 2) shows that even spiritual death does not stop the sinning — the corpse keeps performing. The phrase *kitevunam* ('according to their understanding/design') emphasizes that these are human inventions, not divine revelation. The kissing of calves was likely a cultic act of devotion — worshipers kissed the idol in homage (cf. 1 Kings 19:18, those who 'have not kissed Baal'). The phrase 'those who sacrifice — humans! — kiss calves!' may express God's horror: human beings worshipping animal figurines.
3. Four similes of disappearance: morning cloud, early dew, chaff, and smoke — all things that exist briefly and then vanish. The morning mist and dew echo 6:4, where Israel's *chesed* was compared to the same phenomena. Now it is not just their loyalty but they themselves who will disappear. The chaff (mots) blown from the threshing floor is the worthless husk separated from the grain — Israel has become the waste product of their own harvest. The smoke from the *arubbah* ('window, chimney opening') disperses into nothing.
4. The self-identification formula repeats from 12:9 — 'I am the LORD your God from the land of Egypt.' This is the fundamental covenant declaration (Exodus 20:2), and God insists on it even as he pronounces judgment. The exclusive claim — 'no God but me...no savior besides me' — directly challenges the Baals and the foreign powers Israel has sought. The verb *teda* ('you know') uses the key Hosea term: Israel's problem is not that God is unknown but that they claim knowledge of other gods.
5. God 'knew' (*yeda'tikha*) Israel in the wilderness — the same verb of intimate, covenantal knowledge. The 'land of burning heat' (*erets tala'uvot*) describes the harsh wilderness conditions where Israel depended entirely on God for survival. This was the period of closest relationship — when there were no alternatives to God, no Baal temples, no foreign alliances. The wilderness relationship was pure mutual dependence.
6. The three-step pattern is Israel's perennial failure: provision leads to satisfaction, satisfaction leads to pride, pride leads to forgetting God. This mirrors the warning of Deuteronomy 8:11-14 almost exactly: 'When you have eaten and are satisfied...then your heart will become proud, and you will forget the LORD your God.' The verb *shekhechuni* ('they forgot me') echoes the forgetting of 2:13 and 4:6. The entire arc of Israel's history is compression into a single verse.
7. The God who tenderly taught Israel to walk (11:3) now stalks them as a predator. The lion (*shachal*) and leopard (*namer*) are the two most dangerous wild cats in the ancient Near East. The leopard 'by the path' (*al derekh*) is an ambush predator — it waits beside the road for unwary travelers. The word *ashur* here may mean 'I will watch/observe' (from the root *sh-w-r*) rather than 'Assyria,' suggesting God watches from the shadows like a crouching predator.
8. A mother bear (*dov shakkul*) robbed of her cubs is the most dangerous animal encounter in the wilderness — she attacks with berserk ferocity. God claims this ferocity as his own. The phrase *eqra segor libbam* ('I will tear open the enclosure of their heart') describes ripping open the chest cavity — the most visceral image of divine violence in Hosea. Three predators — bear, lion, wild animal — attack in succession. The verse is deliberately shocking: the parent-God of chapter 11 becomes the predator-God of chapter 13.
9. This compressed verse contains two ideas: Israel has destroyed itself, and the instrument of destruction is their opposition to the very one who could help. The prepositional phrase *bi* ('in me, against me') is ambiguous — it can mean 'your help is in me' (God as potential savior) or 'you are against me' (God as the one opposed). We render the opposition reading while acknowledging the double meaning in the note.
10. The question 'Where is your king?' mocks the kingship institution that Israel demanded in 1 Samuel 8. God warned them that a king would oppress them; they insisted. Now the king cannot save. The phrase 'give me a king and officials' quotes Israel's original demand — they wanted human governance instead of divine rule, and now that governance has failed catastrophically.
11. The entire history of Israelite monarchy is compressed into two clauses: given in anger, removed in wrath. Both the granting (1 Samuel 8) and the removal (the successive assassinations of northern kings, culminating in the exile) are expressions of God's displeasure. The kingship was never God's first choice for Israel — it was a concession to their demand.
12. The image is of a document bundled and sealed for safekeeping — Ephraim's sins are not forgotten but filed, preserved as evidence for the day of reckoning. The verb *tsarur* ('bound up, bundled') and *tsephunah* ('stored, hidden, treasured up') suggest God has a comprehensive record. Nothing is lost or overlooked.
13. The birth metaphor is devastating: Ephraim is a baby who refuses to be born. The contractions come (*chevlei yoledah*, 'birth pangs'), the moment arrives, but the child does not move into the birth canal (*mishbar banim*, 'the breaking-forth place of children'). In ancient medicine, this meant death for both mother and child. Ephraim has the opportunity for new life — for being 'born again' through repentance — but stubbornly refuses to emerge. The 'unwise son' (*ben lo chakham*) lacks the instinct for self-preservation.
14. The verbs *epdem* ('ransom') and *eg'alel* ('redeem') use the language of payment and kinsman-redemption respectively. The Hebrew *ehi* ('where are? / I will be') is ambiguous — it can introduce a taunt against death ('Where are your plagues?') or a threat to Israel ('I will be your plagues, O Death'). Paul's quotation in 1 Corinthians 15:55 follows the Septuagint and reads it triumphantly. The final phrase *nocham yissater me'einai* ('compassion is hidden from my eyes') seems to close the door on rescue — but in Hosea, closed doors have a way of reopening (cf. 2:14-15). We render the verbs as questions to preserve the ambiguity.
15. The name Ephraim ('fruitful') from the root *p-r-h* ('bear fruit') is punned here: though he 'bears fruit' (*yaphri*) among his brothers, the east wind (*qadim* — the scorching desert sirocco) will destroy everything. This wind is identified as 'the wind of the LORD' (*ruach YHWH*) — the destructive force is divinely directed. The drying of springs and fountains represents the death of the land itself. The plundering of treasures is likely a reference to the Assyrian invasion, which stripped Israel of all wealth.

16. This verse (numbered 14:1 in the Hebrew text) describes the brutality of ancient siege warfare without euphemism. The dashing of infants and the ripping open of pregnant women were horrific but documented practices of Assyrian warfare (cf. 2 Kings 8:12, 15:16, Isaiah 13:16, Nahum 3:10, Psalm 137:9). Hosea does not celebrate this violence but states it as the consequence of rebellion. The rendering preserves the horror without sanitizing — this is what happens when the covenant shield is removed.

14

Summary: *Hosea 14 is the book's final chapter — a call to return and a vision of restoration. The prophet urges Israel to return to the LORD with words of repentance, renouncing foreign alliances ('Assyria will not save us'), military power ('we will not ride on horses'), and idolatry ('we will no longer say "Our God" to the work of our hands'). God responds with a promise to heal their apostasy and love them freely. The book ends with Israel flourishing like a cedar of Lebanon, and a wisdom saying inviting the reader to understand the LORD's ways.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *After thirteen chapters of judgment, accusation, and agony, Hosea ends with one of the most beautiful restoration visions in the Hebrew Bible. God's response to the scripted repentance prayer (vv. 2-3) is disproportionate grace: 'I will heal their apostasy; I will love them freely, for my anger has turned from them' (v. 4). The botanical imagery of verses 5-8 reverses the agricultural curses throughout the book — the dew returns (cf. 6:4, where Israel's loyalty was like vanishing dew), roots go deep, beauty blooms, fragrance spreads. The name Ephraim ('fruitful') is finally fulfilled: 'Your fruit comes from me' (v. 8). The closing wisdom saying (v. 9) steps outside the prophetic voice entirely, addressing the reader directly as a sage would.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the scripted prayer (vv. 2-3) and God's response (vv. 4-8) raises the question: is this a genuine repentance that God accepts, unlike the shallow repentance of 6:1-3? The content of the prayer — renouncing specific sins, acknowledging orphan status, requesting mercy — suggests depth that 6:1-3 lacked. The final verse (v. 9) is a wisdom postscript that many scholars consider an editorial addition, but it fits the book's concern with da'at ('knowledge') and understanding.*

Connections: *The 'words' brought to God (v. 2) reverse the accusation of 'lies' and 'deceit' throughout the book. The dew imagery (v. 5) reverses 6:4 and 13:3. The Lebanon cedar and olive tree (vv. 5-6) connect to the olive tree of 14:6 and the vineyard imagery throughout. The closing wisdom saying echoes Psalm 107:43 and Proverbs' invitation to understand. Paul's use of the Hosea framework in Romans 9-11 culminates in the same movement: judgment followed by disproportionate mercy.*

¹Return, Israel, to the LORD your God, for you have stumbled because of your iniquity. ²Take words with you and return to the LORD. Say to him: "Forgive all our iniquity and accept what is good. We will offer the fruit of our lips as our sacrifice. ³Assyria will not save us; we will not ride on horses. We will no longer say 'Our God' to the work of our hands, for in you the orphan finds compassion." ⁴I will heal their apostasy. I will love them freely, for my anger has turned from them. ⁵I will be like the dew to Israel; he will blossom like the lily and take root like the cedars of Lebanon. ⁶His shoots will spread out; his splendor will be like the olive tree, and his fragrance like Lebanon. ⁷Those who dwell in his shade will return; they will flourish like grain and blossom like the vine. Their renown will be like the wine of Lebanon. ⁸Ephraim will say, 'What have I to do with idols anymore?' I have answered him and I watch over him. I am like a flourishing cypress — your fruit comes from me. ⁹Who is wise enough to understand these things? Who is discerning enough to know them? For the ways of the LORD are right — the righteous walk in them, but the rebellious stumble in them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The imperative shuvah ('return!') is the singular form — addressed to Israel as a single person, intimate and direct. The verb kashal ('stumble, fall') appears throughout Hosea (4:5, 5:5, 14:1) as the recurring description of Israel's condition. The phrase ba'avonekha ('because of your iniquity') identifies the cause of stumbling: their own sin tripped them.
2. The instruction to 'take words' (qechu devarim) is striking — they are not told to bring animals for sacrifice but words. The offering is verbal: confession, petition, commitment. The phrase neshallemah pharim sephatenu is difficult. Pharim can mean 'bulls' (KJV: 'calves of our lips') or, following the Septuagint and many modern translations, 'fruit' (peri). We follow 'fruit of our lips' — verbal praise replaces animal sacrifice. The author of Hebrews 13:15 draws on this concept: 'the fruit of lips that acknowledge his name.'

3. The three renunciations systematically address the three primary failures of the northern kingdom: political dependence on Assyria (5:13, 7:11, 8:9), military buildup (10:13, 14:3), and idol worship (8:4-6, 13:2). The closing self-identification as 'orphan' (yatom) is a radical act of humility — Israel admits it has no father, no protector, no status. The verb yerucham ('finds compassion') from the root r-ch-m brings the book full circle: Lo-Ruhamah ('Not Pitied') can finally receive rachamim ('compassion') because the conditions for restoration have been met.
4. The verb erpa ('I will heal') treats meshuvah ('apostasy, backsliding, turning away') as a disease rather than a legal offense — the relational breakdown requires therapeutic restoration, not judicial punishment. The word nedavah ('freely, voluntarily') is the term for a freewill offering (Leviticus 7:16, Deuteronomy 12:6) — God's love is a voluntary gift, not a payment or a reward. The phrase shav appi ('my anger has turned') uses the same verb shuv: as Israel returns to God, God's anger turns from Israel. The mutual turning resolves the crisis.
5. The dew (tal) that was a simile for Israel's vanishing loyalty (6:4, 13:3) is now God's own gift — he will be the dew that sustains growth. The lily (shoshannah) represents sudden, beautiful flowering. The Lebanon cedars represent deep, permanent rootedness. Israel will have both — surface beauty and deep stability. The combination of fragile flower and mighty tree in a single image suggests that restored Israel will be both delicate and strong.
6. The spreading shoots (yoneqotav) depict growth and expansion — the tree is not merely surviving but thriving. The olive tree (zayit) represents enduring productivity — olives produce fruit for centuries. The fragrance of Lebanon refers to the cedar forests whose scent was legendary in the ancient world. The imagery reverses the botanical destruction of 9:16 ('their root is dried up, they will produce no fruit'): roots, fruit, beauty, and fragrance all return.
7. The verb yashuvu ('will return') makes its final positive appearance — the return is accomplished. Those living 'in his shade' (betsillo) find protection under the restored tree (Israel or God — the ambiguity is deliberate). The agricultural triad — grain (dagan), vine (gephen), and wine (yein) — reverses the withdrawal of harvest blessings threatened throughout the book (2:9, 7:14). The 'wine of Lebanon' was prized in the ancient world — Israel's reputation will become as valued as a fine vintage.
8. The speaker shifts between Ephraim ('What have I to do with idols?'), God ('I have answered and I watch over him'), and then God again ('I am like a flourishing cypress — your fruit comes from me'). The berosh ra'anan ('flourishing cypress/evergreen') is God's self-metaphor — he is the evergreen tree that provides shade, shelter, and fruit year-round, unlike the deciduous trees of Canaanite worship groves. The closing declaration mimmeni peryekha nimtsa ('from me your fruit is found') is the book's final theological statement: all genuine fruitfulness derives from God alone.
9. This wisdom postscript addresses the reader directly, stepping outside the prophetic mode into the voice of a sage. The questions echo Psalm 107:43 and the wisdom tradition's call to understanding. The verb yeda'em ('know them') uses the key Hosea term one final time: true knowledge (da'at) is the ability to discern God's ways. The closing contrast — the righteous walk (yelkhu) while the rebellious stumble (yikkashlu) — summarizes the entire book: the same covenant path that leads the faithful to life causes the unfaithful to fall. God's ways do not change; the outcome depends on the walker.

Joel

1

Summary: *Joel 1 opens with a devastating locust plague that has stripped the land bare. The prophet calls the elders and all inhabitants to witness an unprecedented catastrophe — nothing like it has been seen in living memory or in the memory of their ancestors. Four stages of locusts have consumed everything: grain, wine, and oil are gone. Joel calls for national mourning, for the priests to lament, and for a sacred assembly to be called. The chapter climaxes with the prophet's own cry to God as fire and drought compound the locust devastation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Joel's four-stage locust description (v. 4) — gazam, arbeh, yeleq, chasil — may represent four species of locust, four developmental stages of the same species, or four successive waves of invasion. The effect is literary totality: what one stage leaves, the next consumes. The locusts are compared to a nation (goy) invading the land (v. 6) — an army with lion's teeth that strips the vine and bark from the fig tree. The destruction is so complete that the daily grain and drink offerings in the temple have ceased (v. 9) — the entire sacrificial system has collapsed because there is nothing left to offer. Even the animals groan (v. 18).*

Translation Friction: *The date of Joel is disputed more than perhaps any other prophetic book — proposals range from the 9th century to the 4th century BCE. The book contains no explicit historical references. We do not assign a date in the rendering. The four locust terms in verse 4 have been debated since antiquity. Whether the locust plague is literal, metaphorical (representing invading armies), or apocalyptic is also debated. We render the text as describing a real locust plague while noting the metaphorical dimensions.*

Connections: *The locust plague connects to the eighth plague of Egypt (Exodus 10:1-20), establishing Joel's theme that the Day of the LORD can fall on God's own people. The mourning call echoes Amos 5:16-17. The cessation of temple offerings anticipates the eschatological disruption of Daniel 9:27. The four-stage locust destruction provides the backdrop for the army metaphor in chapter 2.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Joel son of Pethuel. ²Hear this, you elders! Pay attention, all you inhabitants of the land! Has anything like this happened in your days, or in the days of your ancestors? ³Tell your children about it, and let your children tell their children, and their children the next generation. ⁴What the cutting locust left, the swarming locust ate; what the swarming locust left, the hopping locust ate; what the hopping locust left, the destroying locust ate. ⁵Wake up, you drunkards, and weep! Wail, all you wine drinkers, over the sweet wine — for it has been cut off from your mouths. ⁶For a

nation has come up against my land — powerful and beyond counting. Its teeth are the teeth of a lion, and it has the fangs of a lioness. ⁷It has laid waste my vine and splintered my fig tree. It has stripped them completely bare and cast them aside; their branches have turned white. ⁸Grieve like a young woman dressed in sackcloth, mourning for the husband of her youth. ⁹The grain offering and the drink offering have been cut off from the house of the LORD. The priests, the ministers of the LORD, mourn. ¹⁰The fields are devastated; the ground mourns. For the grain is destroyed, the new wine has dried up, the olive oil fails. ¹¹Be dismayed, you farmers! Wail, you vinedressers, over the wheat and the barley — for the harvest of the field is lost. ¹²The vine has withered, the fig tree has wilted. The pomegranate, the date palm, the apple tree — all the trees of the field have dried up. Surely joy has dried up among the children of humanity. ¹³Dress in sackcloth and lament, you priests! Wail, you ministers of the altar! Come, spend the night in sackcloth, you ministers of my God — for the grain offering and the drink offering are withheld from the house of your God. ¹⁴Consecrate a fast; call a sacred assembly. Gather the elders and all the inhabitants of the land to the house of the LORD your God, and cry out to the LORD. ¹⁵What a day! For the day of the LORD is near — it will come as devastation from the Almighty. ¹⁶Is not the food cut off before our very eyes — joy and gladness from the house of our God? ¹⁷The seeds shrivel beneath the clods. The storehouses are desolate; the granaries are torn down, for the grain has failed. ¹⁸How the livestock groan! The herds of cattle wander in confusion, for there is no pasture for them. Even the flocks of sheep suffer. ¹⁹To you, LORD, I cry out! For fire has consumed the pastures of the wilderness, and flames have scorched all the trees of the field. ²⁰Even the wild animals cry out to you, for the streambeds have dried up and fire has consumed the wilderness pastures.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription provides only the prophet's name and patronymic — no historical setting, no king, no date. This absence has made Joel the most chronologically disputed of the prophets. The name Joel (Yo'el) means 'the LORD is God' — a theologically programmatic name for a book concerned with the LORD's sovereign action in history. Pethuel is otherwise unknown.
2. The rhetorical question demands a negative answer — nothing comparable has occurred within living memory or in oral tradition. The appeal to elders (zeqenim) and to all inhabitants creates a universal audience. Joel positions the locust plague as an unprecedented event that breaks the normal pattern of agricultural difficulty.
3. The chain of transmission — children to grandchildren to great-grandchildren — establishes the event as worthy of permanent collective memory, like the Exodus itself (cf. Exodus 10:2, where the plagues are to be told to children and grandchildren). The locust plague must be remembered because it reveals God's character and power.
4. The four Hebrew terms — gazam ('cutter'), arbeh ('swarmer,' the most common word for locust), yeleq ('hopper/licker'), and chasil ('destroyer/consumer') — may represent four species, four developmental stages of one species (egg, larva, pupa, adult), or four successive swarms. The literary effect is totality: each stage consumes what the previous stage missed. Nothing remains. The KJV's 'palmerworm, locust, cankerworm, caterpillar' reflects the uncertainty — we render with descriptive English terms that capture each Hebrew word's root meaning.
5. The drunkards are addressed first — those most immediately affected by the loss of wine. The verb haqitsu ('wake up') is both literal (they are in a drunken stupor) and metaphorical (they are spiritually asleep). The asis ('sweet wine, new wine, fresh grape juice') has been destroyed at the source — the vines themselves are gone. The phrase nikrat mippikhem ('cut off from your mouths') makes the loss physical and sensory.
6. The locusts are called a goy ('nation') — the same word used for invading armies. This personification bridges the literal locust plague and the metaphorical army of chapter 2. 'My land' (artsi) — the speaker is either the prophet or God; both claim the land. The lion imagery (aryeh / lavi) describes the locusts' destructive capacity: they strip vegetation the way a lion tears flesh. The fangs (metall'ot) of a lioness emphasize the ferocity — the female lion is the primary hunter.
7. The vine (gaphen) and fig tree (te'enah) are Israel's premier agricultural products and symbols of prosperity (cf. 1 Kings 4:25). The verbs describe systematic destruction: laid waste (sam leshammah), splintered (liqtsaphah), stripped bare (chasoph chasaphah), and cast aside (hishlik). The white branches are bark-stripped limbs — the locusts have eaten not just leaves and fruit but the bark itself, leaving skeletal white wood. This level of devastation goes beyond normal insect damage.
8. The simile compares the nation's grief to the most poignant personal loss: a young bride mourning her husband's death. The betulah ('young woman, virgin') has lost the ba'al ne'ureha ('husband of her youth') — she is widowed at the beginning of her married life, before the relationship could mature. The sackcloth (saq) is the standard mourning garment — rough fabric worn against the skin as a sign of grief.
9. The minchah (grain offering) and nesekh (drink offering) were daily temple rituals requiring flour and wine (cf. Exodus 29:38-42, Numbers 28:3-8). The locust plague has made the daily sacrifice impossible — the agricultural foundation of worship has been destroyed. When the priests mourn, it signals that the institutional relationship between God and people has been disrupted at its most basic level. The phrase mesharetei YHWH ('ministers of the LORD') emphasizes the priests' role as servants, not masters, of the worship system.

10. The land itself mourns (avelah adamah) — personification that connects ecological disaster to spiritual reality. The triad of grain (dagan), new wine (tirosh), and olive oil (yitshar) represents the full range of agricultural produce and the Deuteronomic covenant blessings (Deuteronomy 7:13). All three are gone simultaneously — a total reversal of the covenant promise of abundance.
11. The ikkarim ('farmers, plowmen') and koremim ('vinedressers') are the agricultural workforce now left with nothing to harvest. Wheat (chittah) and barley (se'orah) — the staple grains — are both destroyed. The verb avad ('perished, is lost') indicates complete, irrecoverable loss. This is not a partial crop failure but a total wipeout.
12. The catalogue of destroyed trees expands from the vine and fig tree (v. 7) to include pomegranate (rimmon), date palm (tamar), and apple tree (tappuah). The comprehensive list leaves no tree standing. The final clause makes the connection between agricultural and human devastation: ki hovish sason ('joy has dried up') uses the same verb (hovish, 'dried up') applied to trees — human joy and agricultural life wither together. When the land dies, the people's spirit dies with it.
13. The priests are commanded to continuous mourning — wearing sackcloth day and night (linu basaqqim, 'spend the night in sackcloth') rather than changing into it only for public ceremony. The phrase 'ministers of my God' (mesharetei Elohai) uses the intimate first-person 'my God,' identifying Joel personally with the crisis. The temple worship has ceased not because of enemy conquest but because of natural disaster — even the raw materials of worship are gone.
14. The verb qaddesh ('consecrate, sanctify') applied to a fast means to set it apart as a holy act — not merely skipping meals but entering a sacred state of communal repentance. The atsarah ('sacred assembly') is a formal convocation of the entire community (cf. 2 Kings 10:20, 2 Chronicles 7:9). The gathering location — beit YHWH ('house of the LORD') — centers the response at the temple. Even when offerings cannot be made, the temple remains the place of petition.
15. The exclamation ahahh ('alas, woe') is a cry of distress. The 'day of the LORD' (yom YHWH) is a major prophetic concept appearing in Amos 5:18-20, Isaiah 2:12, Zephaniah 1:14-18, and Malachi 4:5. The wordplay keshod miShaddai ('like destruction from the Almighty') is a paronomasia — the similar sounds of shod and Shaddai create a literary link between divine power and devastation. The preposition 'from' (mi) indicates Shaddai as the source — this destruction comes from God.
16. The question is rhetorical — the answer is painfully obvious. The 'food cut off before our eyes' (neged eineinu okhel nikhrat) makes the crisis visible and undeniable. The loss extends from the physical (food) to the spiritual (joy and gladness in God's house). The temple, normally a place of celebration during harvest festivals, has become a place of mourning.
17. The agricultural devastation extends underground — even the planted seeds have died before germination. The Hebrew of this verse is among the most difficult in Joel, with rare words: aveshu ('shrivel, dry up'), perudot ('seeds' or 'dried fruits'), and megrepotehem ('clods' or 'shovels'). The storehouses (otsarot) and granaries (mamgurot) stand empty and demolished — there is nothing to store and no reason to maintain the storage facilities.
18. The suffering extends to the animal kingdom — the livestock (behemah) groan (ne'enchah), the cattle are bewildered (navokhu), and the sheep suffer (ne'eshamu). The verb navokhu ('are confused, wander aimlessly') suggests animals searching desperately for food that does not exist. The inclusion of animal suffering expands the scope of the disaster beyond human concerns — all creation is affected.
19. Joel shifts from prophetic speech to personal prayer. The 'fire' (esh) may be literal (drought-induced wildfires) or metaphorical (the scorching effect of the locust plague, which leaves the land looking burned). The pastures of the wilderness (ne'ot midbar) are the last refuge — even the uncultivated grazing lands have been destroyed. The prayer is raw and direct: elekha YHWH egra ('To you, LORD, I cry') — there is nowhere else to turn.
20. The chapter's final verse expands the prayer to include the wild animals (bahamat sadeh) who also cry out to God. The verb ta'arog ('cry out, pant, long for') is used in Psalm 42:1 of the deer panting for water — Joel applies it to all wild creatures desperate for survival. The dried streambeds (aphiqei mayim) represent the complete failure of the water supply. The repetition of 'fire has consumed the wilderness pastures' from verse 19 frames Joel's personal prayer with the universal groaning of creation.

2

Summary: Joel 2 is the theological center of the book, moving from judgment to mercy to eschatological promise. The chapter opens with the alarm trumpet sounding as the Day of the LORD approaches — a vast army (the locust horde described in military terms) sweeps the land. Then comes the great turning point: 'Rend your hearts, not your garments, and return to the LORD your God' (v. 13). God responds to repentance with restoration, promising to drive away the northern army and restore the years the locusts have eaten. The chapter culminates with the promise of the Spirit poured out on all flesh — young and old, male and female, slave and free — followed by cosmic signs preceding the great Day of the LORD.

What Makes This Remarkable: Verse 13 — 'Rend your hearts, not your garments' — is one of the most quoted prophetic lines in Scripture, a call to internal transformation rather than external religious performance. God's self-description in that verse echoes the Exodus 34:6 formula: 'gracious and compassionate, slow to anger, abounding in faithful love.' The Spirit outpouring prophecy (vv. 28-29) is quoted by Peter at Pentecost (Acts 2:17-21) as fulfilled in the early church. The universality of the Spirit — sons, daughters, old men, young men, male servants, female servants — breaks every social barrier. Joel's vision of the Spirit democratizes prophecy: no longer limited to designated prophets but available to all.

Translation Friction: The Hebrew versification differs from English starting at verse 28: English 2:28-32 = Hebrew 3:1-5. We follow English versification and note the Hebrew numbering. The 'northern army' (v. 20) is debated — does it refer to the locust swarm (which typically comes from the south in Palestine, making 'northern' unusual) or to an eschatological invading army (Babylonian, Assyrian, or apocalyptic)? We render as written while noting the tension. The relationship between the literal locust plague (ch. 1) and the military/apocalyptic imagery of chapter 2 is the central interpretive question of the book.

Connections: V. 13's divine self-description quotes Exodus 34:6-7. Vv. 28-29 are quoted in Acts 2:17-21. The cosmic signs (vv. 30-31) appear in Jesus's eschatological discourse (Mark 13:24-25, Matthew 24:29) and Revelation 6:12. 'Everyone who calls on the name of the LORD will be saved' (v. 32) is quoted by Paul in Romans 10:13. The 'teacher of righteousness' (v. 23) has connections to the Qumran community's Teacher of Righteousness.

¹Blow the ram's horn in Zion! Sound the alarm on my holy mountain! Let all the inhabitants of the land tremble, for the day of the LORD is coming — it is near! ²A day of darkness and gloom, a day of clouds and dense fog — like dawn spreading over the mountains, a vast and powerful army! Nothing like it has ever been, and nothing like it will come again for ages to come. ³Before it, fire devours; behind it, flames scorch. Before it, the land is like the Garden of Eden; behind it, a desolate wilderness. Nothing escapes it. ⁴They look like warhorses; they charge like cavalry. ⁵With a sound like chariots they leap over the mountaintops, like the crackling of fire consuming stubble, like a mighty army drawn up for battle. ⁶Before them, peoples writhe in anguish; every face turns pale. ⁷They charge like warriors; they scale walls like soldiers. Each one marches in formation — they do not break ranks. ⁸They do not jostle each other; each advances on his own path. They plunge through defenses without breaking stride. ⁹They swarm over the city; they race along the walls. They climb into houses; they enter through windows like thieves. ¹⁰Before them the earth quakes and the heavens tremble. The sun and moon grow dark, and the stars withdraw their light. ¹¹The LORD thunders at the head of his army — his forces are beyond counting, and mighty is the one who carries out his command. For the day of the LORD is great and very terrible — who can endure it? ¹²"Yet even now," declares the LORD, "return to me with all your heart — with fasting, with weeping, and with mourning." ¹³Rend your hearts, not your garments, and return to the LORD your God, for he is gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and abounding in faithful love, and he relents concerning disaster. ¹⁴Who knows? He may turn and relent, and leave a blessing behind him — enough for a grain offering and a drink offering to the LORD your God. ¹⁵Blow the ram's horn in Zion! Consecrate a fast; call a sacred assembly. ¹⁶Gather the people; consecrate the assembly. Bring together the elders; gather the children, even nursing infants. Let the bridegroom leave his room and the bride her chamber. ¹⁷Let the priests, the ministers of the LORD, weep between the portico and the altar. Let them say, 'Have pity on your people, LORD! Do not make your inheritance an object of scorn, a byword among the nations. Why should they say among the peoples, "Where is their God?"' ¹⁸Then the LORD became zealous for his land and had compassion on his people. ¹⁹The LORD answered and said to his people, "I am about to send you grain, new wine, and oil, and you will be satisfied with them. I will never again make you an object of scorn among the nations. ²⁰I will drive the northern army far from you and push it into a parched and desolate land — its front ranks into the eastern sea and its rear guard into the western sea. Its stench will rise; its foul smell will go up, for it has done terrible things." ²¹Do not be afraid, O land! Rejoice and be glad, for the LORD has done great things. ²²Do not be afraid, wild animals, for the wilderness pastures are turning green. The trees bear their fruit; the fig tree and the vine yield their abundance. ²³Children of Zion, rejoice and be glad in the LORD your God! For he has given you the autumn rain in righteousness — he has poured down rain for you, both autumn rain and spring rain, as before. ²⁴The threshing floors will be full of grain, and the vats will overflow with new wine and oil. ²⁵I will repay you for the years that the swarming locust ate —

the hopping locust, the destroying locust, and the cutting locust — my great army that I sent against you. ²⁶You will eat abundantly and be satisfied, and you will praise the name of the LORD your God, who has dealt wondrously with you. My people will never be put to shame. ²⁷Then you will know that I am in the midst of Israel, and that I am the LORD your God — there is no other. My people will never be put to shame. ²⁸After this I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh. Your sons and your daughters will prophesy; your old men will dream dreams; your young men will see visions. ²⁹Even on the male and female servants I will pour out my Spirit in those days. ³⁰I will display wonders in the heavens and on the earth — blood, fire, and columns of smoke. ³¹The sun will be turned to darkness and the moon to blood, before the coming of the great and terrible day of the LORD. ³²And everyone who calls on the name of the LORD will be saved, for on Mount Zion and in Jerusalem there will be deliverance, as the LORD has said — among the survivors whom the LORD calls.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The shofar ('ram's horn') blown in Zion is a military alarm, not a liturgical call. The 'holy mountain' (har qodshi) is Mount Zion/the Temple Mount. The imperative to tremble (yirgezu) indicates the day of the LORD is not a day of comfort but of dread — even for God's own people. The double assertion 'is coming...is near' (va...qarov) creates urgency: the day is not distant but imminent.
2. The four terms for darkness — choshekh ('darkness'), aphelah ('deep darkness'), anan ('clouds'), and araphel ('thick fog') — create an overwhelming atmosphere of cosmic disruption. The simile 'like dawn spreading over the mountains' (keshachar parus al heharim) is paradoxical: dawn normally brings light, but this dawn is a dark army covering the hills like spreading shadow. The uniqueness claim echoes 1:2 — this is unprecedented and unrepeatable.
3. The contrast is devastating: Eden before the army, wasteland after it. The Garden of Eden (gan Eden) reference is the only time Joel uses this image, and it depicts the pre-plague land as paradisiacal — rich, fruitful, beautiful. The army transforms paradise into desert in a single pass. The phrase gam peleitah lo haytah lo ('nothing escapes it') means total devastation without remainder — no survivors, no remnant.
4. The military metaphor now describes the locusts explicitly as an army. The comparison to horses (susim) is apt — the head of a locust, seen up close, resembles a horse's head (in several languages, locusts and horses share etymological connections). The verb yerutsun ('they run') describes the rapid, disciplined advance of cavalry.
5. Three auditory similes describe the sound of the locust swarm: chariots rattling over rough terrain, fire crackling through dry straw, and the organized noise of an army in formation. Anyone who has witnessed a locust swarm confirms the accuracy — the sound of millions of wings and mandibles creates an overwhelming roar. The phrase erukh milchamah ('drawn up for battle') describes military formation — this is not a chaotic mob but a disciplined force.
6. The verb yachilu ('writhe, tremble') is the word for labor pains — the approaching army causes contortions of fear. The phrase kibbetu pa'rur ('faces gather paleness/blackness') describes the draining of color from faces in terror. The Hebrew pa'rur may mean 'glow' (flushing) or 'pallor' (draining) — we render as 'turns pale' since fear typically blanches the face.
7. The military discipline of the locust swarm is its most terrifying feature — each individual moves in coordination with the whole. The verb ya'letun chomah ('they scale walls') describes siege warfare — no fortification stops them. The phrase lo ye'abbetun orchotam ('they do not break their paths/ranks') depicts perfect tactical discipline. Unlike human armies that break formation under pressure, this force maintains absolute order.
8. The locust-army maintains order without crowding — each one has its assigned lane. The final clause — falling through shelach ('weapons/defenses') without being stopped (lo yivtsa'u) — means conventional weapons are useless against them. Swords cannot stop a locust swarm; arrows are futile against millions. The invulnerability completes the portrait of an unstoppable force.
9. The invasion penetrates every space — city streets, walls, houses, windows. The comparison to thieves (kaggannav) entering through windows captures the violation of personal space — no home is safe. The relentless advance from open field (vv. 3-5) to city (v. 9) to individual dwelling tracks the locust swarm's actual behavior — they fill every space, leaving no refuge.
10. The cosmic disruption moves the description from locust plague to eschatological Day of the LORD. The darkening of sun, moon, and stars is a standard prophetic image for divine judgment (cf. Isaiah 13:10, Ezekiel 32:7, Amos 8:9). Literally, a massive locust swarm can indeed darken the sky — but Joel's language exceeds the literal to reach the cosmic. The trembling of heaven and earth (ragezah erets, ra'ashu shamayim) collapses the distinction between natural disaster and divine intervention.
11. The locust army is identified as God's own army (cheilo, 'his army') — the LORD himself commands the swarm. God 'gives his voice' (natan qolo) before the army like a commander issuing battle orders. The question 'who can endure it?' (umi yekhi'lennu) is rhetorical — no one can withstand the Day of the LORD by their own strength. This question sets up the answer that follows: only repentance can avert the coming devastation.
12. The phrase vegam attah ('yet even now') is the pivot of the entire book — despite the devastation described in 1:1-2:11, there is still time. The window has not closed. The verb shuvu ('return!') echoes the prophetic call throughout the tradition. The three accompaniments — fasting (tsom), weeping (bekhi), and mourning (misped) — describe the full physical expression of repentance. But the key phrase is bekhoh levavkhem ('with all your heart') — external acts without internal transformation are insufficient (as v. 13 will make explicit).

13. The divine self-description formula originates in Exodus 34:6-7 and is quoted or echoed in Numbers 14:18, Nehemiah 9:17, Psalm 86:15, 103:8, 145:8, Jonah 4:2, and Nahum 1:3. Joel omits the final element of the Exodus 34 formula ('who does not leave the guilty unpunished') — whether this omission emphasizes mercy over judgment or is simply a rhetorical choice is debated. The verb *nicham* ('relent, change mind, be comforted') applied to God is theologically significant — it means God's response to human repentance is genuine change, not predetermined outcome.
14. The phrase *mi yodea* ('who knows?') expresses humble uncertainty — there is no guarantee that repentance will avert judgment, only the hope based on God's character (v. 13). The 'blessing left behind' (*berakhah*) would be enough grain and wine to resume the daily temple offerings (*minchah vanesekh*) that ceased in 1:9. The modest hope is not for abundance but for enough — enough to worship again. This humility is the appropriate posture before a sovereign God.
15. The shofar that sounded the alarm in verse 1 now sounds the call to repentance. The same instrument announces both danger and the response to danger. The instructions repeat 1:14 but with heightened urgency — the threat has been fully described (2:1-11), the theology has been articulated (2:12-14), and now the practical response is commanded.
16. The universality of the assembly is emphasized — no one is exempt. The elders (*zeqenim*), children (*olalim*), and nursing infants (*yoneqei shadayim*) represent every age. The bridegroom and bride leaving their wedding chamber (*cheder / chuppah*) is the most striking inclusion — even newlyweds, who were exempted from military service for a year (Deuteronomy 24:5), must join the national repentance. Nothing takes priority over returning to God.
17. The priests stand between the *ulam* ('portico/porch') of the temple and the altar — the space of intercession between God's house and the place of sacrifice. Their prayer has two dimensions: concern for the people ('have pity on your people') and concern for God's reputation ('why should they say, where is their God?'). The argument that God's honor is at stake among the nations is a classic prophetic appeal (cf. Exodus 32:12, Numbers 14:15-16, Ezekiel 36:20-23) — if Israel is destroyed, the nations will conclude that YHWH was powerless to protect his people.
18. The verb *vayyeqanne* ('became zealous/jealous') describes God's protective passion for what belongs to him. The land is 'his land' (*artso*), the people are 'his people' (*ammo*) — God acts to defend what is his. The verb *vayyachmol* ('had compassion, spared') marks the turning point: judgment yields to mercy. From this verse forward, the chapter moves into restoration.
19. God's answer (*vayya'an*) is a direct response to the priestly prayer of verse 17. The triad of grain, new wine, and oil (*dagan, tirosh, yitshar*) restores exactly what was lost in 1:10. The promise 'never again' (*lo...od*) an object of scorn answers the prayer's concern about national disgrace. The restoration begins with the most basic level — food — before moving to cosmic promises.
20. The 'northern army' (*hatsephoni*) is unusual for a locust swarm, which typically approaches Palestine from the south or east. This has led some scholars to identify the enemy as a human army (Babylon/Assyria came from the north). We render the text as written. The 'eastern sea' is the Dead Sea; the 'western sea' (*hayam ha'acharon*, literally 'the hinder sea') is the Mediterranean. The army is driven into the ocean from both ends. The rising stench of millions of dead locusts is historically attested — decomposing locust swarms create an unbearable odor.
21. The phrase *higdil la'asot* ('has done great things') deliberately echoes its use in verse 20, where it described the army's terrible deeds. The same phrase now describes God's great acts of restoration. The land (*adamah*) is addressed directly and told to stop being afraid (*al tire'i*, feminine) — the personified earth that mourned in 1:10 is now commanded to celebrate.
22. The animals that groaned in 1:18 and cried out in 1:20 are now comforted. The wilderness pastures (*ne'ot midbar*) consumed by fire (1:19-20) are green again. The fig tree (*te'elah*) and vine (*gephen*) destroyed in 1:7 and 1:12 now yield their *cheilam* ('strength, full yield, abundance'). The restoration reverses every specific loss catalogued in chapter 1.
23. The phrase *hammoreh litsdaqah* is ambiguous: *moreh* can mean 'teacher' or 'autumn rain' (the early rain that begins the agricultural year). 'Teacher of righteousness' (*moreh tsdaqah*) became an important title in the Qumran community. We render as 'autumn rain in righteousness' based on the agricultural context, but note the double meaning. The two rains — *moreh* ('autumn/early rain,' October-November) and *malqosh* ('spring/latter rain,' March-April) — are the critical rainfalls of the Palestinian agricultural calendar. Their return means the agricultural cycle can resume. The phrase *barishon* ('as before' or 'in the first month') indicates restoration to the original pattern.
24. The threshing floors (*goranot*) that were empty (1:10-11) are now full. The vats (*yeqavim*) overflow (*heshiqu*, 'overflow, be saturated') with new wine (*tirosh*) and oil (*yitshar*). The restoration is not merely adequate but abundant — the vats overflow. This reverses the futility curses of Deuteronomy 28 and restores the blessing promises of Deuteronomy 28:1-14.
25. The four locust names from 1:4 reappear, now identified as 'my great army' (*cheili haggadol*) — the same forces that devastated the land are acknowledged as divinely commissioned. The verb *vishillamti* ('I will repay, restore, make whole') is the language of restitution — God compensates for the loss he himself authorized. The phrase 'the years' (*hashanim*) indicates the loss spanned multiple seasons. God does not merely stop the damage but makes up for accumulated years of loss.
26. The emphatic infinitive *akhaltem akhol* ('you will surely eat, eat abundantly') emphasizes the abundance of restoration. Eating and satisfaction (*savo'a*) fulfill the covenant blessing promise. The verb *lehaphli* ('to deal wondrously, to do extraordinary things') describes God's restoration as miraculous, not merely natural recovery. The closing promise 'my people will never be put to shame' (*lo yevoshu ammi le'olam*) directly answers the prayer of verse 17 — God's people will not be disgraced among the nations.
27. The verb *vida'tem* ('you will know') uses the key prophetic knowledge term — through the experience of devastation and restoration, Israel will achieve the *da'at* ('knowledge') of God that they lacked. The phrase *beqerev Yisra'el ani* ('I am in the midst of Israel') echoes the covenant presence

theology — God dwells among his people. The exclusive claim 'there is no other' (ve'ein od) echoes Deuteronomy 4:35 and Isaiah 45:5-6. The repetition of 'my people will never be put to shame' from verse 26 creates an emphatic literary bracket.

28. This verse is 3:1 in the Hebrew text. The phrase acharei khi (‘after this’) is a general temporal marker — ‘after’ the agricultural restoration and the defeat of the locust army. The verb eshpokh (‘I will pour out’) uses the image of liquid poured abundantly — the Spirit is not rationed but lavished. Peter’s Pentecost sermon (Acts 2:17-21) quotes this passage with one modification: he changes ‘after this’ to ‘in the last days,’ interpreting Pentecost as the inauguration of the eschatological age Joel envisions.
29. This verse is 3:2 in the Hebrew text. The extension of the Spirit to avadim (‘male servants/slaves’) and shephachot (‘female servants/maidservants’) demolishes the final social barrier. In the ancient world, slaves had no religious standing; they were property. Joel’s vision includes them as recipients of divine revelation. The emphatic vegam (‘and also, even’) stresses how radical this inclusion is. Paul echoes this leveling in Galatians 3:28: ‘there is neither slave nor free.’
30. This verse is 3:3 in the Hebrew text. The ‘wonders’ (mophetim) are the same word used for the signs and wonders of the Exodus (Exodus 7:3, Deuteronomy 4:34). Blood, fire, and smoke columns describe either volcanic/cosmic phenomena or the aftermath of battle — the imagery is apocalyptic. Jesus references these signs in his eschatological discourse (Mark 13:24-25). The timrot ashan (‘columns of smoke’) may evoke the pillar of cloud and fire from the Exodus (Exodus 13:21-22), now deployed in judgment rather than guidance.
31. This verse is 3:4 in the Hebrew text. The cosmic signs — darkened sun, blood-red moon — signal the approaching Day of the LORD. These images appear in Isaiah 13:10, Ezekiel 32:7, and are quoted by Peter at Pentecost (Acts 2:20), by Jesus in Mark 13:24, and in Revelation 6:12. The ‘blood moon’ phenomenon (lunar eclipse creating a red appearance) may be the natural basis for the image, but Joel’s usage transcends natural explanation — the entire cosmic order convulses before the Day arrives.
32. This verse is 3:5 in the Hebrew text. Peter quotes it at Pentecost (Acts 2:21) and Paul in Romans 10:13. In its original context, the promise is eschatological — survival through the Day of the LORD for those on Mount Zion who invoke YHWH’s name. The phrase peleitah (‘deliverance, escape, surviving remnant’) connects to the remnant theology that runs through Isaiah, Jeremiah, and the Twelve Prophets. The double calling — humans calling on God, God calling the survivors — creates a theology of mutual seeking that resolves the Joel narrative: the people respond to God’s call to repent (2:12-17), and God responds by calling them into deliverance.

3

Summary: *Joel 3 (Hebrew chapter 4) is the final chapter, presenting the eschatological judgment of the nations in the Valley of Jehoshaphat. God will gather all nations to judge them for scattering his people Israel, dividing his land, and selling Judah’s children into slavery. The chapter issues a counter-call to the nations: prepare for war! Beat your plowshares into swords (reversing Isaiah 2:4/Micah 4:3). The nations are summoned to the Valley of Decision (Jehoshaphat), where God sits in judgment. The chapter — and the book — ends with a vision of Judah’s permanent restoration: a fountain flowing from the house of the LORD, the land perpetually inhabited, and God dwelling in Zion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The most striking element is the reversal of Isaiah 2:4/Micah 4:3: where those prophets envision beating swords into plowshares (peace), Joel commands the nations to beat plowshares into swords (war). This is not a contradiction but a shift in perspective — Isaiah/Micah describe the eschatological peace after judgment; Joel describes the judgment itself. The Valley of Jehoshaphat (v. 2) means ‘the LORD judges’ — it is a theological concept more than a geographical location. The ‘Valley of Decision’ (emeq hecharuts, v. 14) contains a wordplay: charats can mean ‘decision’ or ‘sharp/threshing’ — the valley where God makes the final determination is also the threshing floor where the nations are winnowed.*

Translation Friction: *This entire chapter is Joel chapter 4 in the Hebrew Bible. We follow English versification (Joel 3) throughout while noting the Hebrew numbering. The Valley of Jehoshaphat has been traditionally identified with the Kidron Valley east of Jerusalem, but the name is theological (‘YHWH judges’) rather than geographical. The selling of Judah’s children to the Greeks (Yevanim, v. 6) may date the composition or may be a later addition. The fountain from the house of the LORD (v. 18) connects to Ezekiel 47:1-12 and Zechariah 14:8.*

Connections: *The Valley of Jehoshaphat connects to the Kidron Valley tradition and to Jehoshaphat’s victory in 2 Chronicles 20. The plowshares-to-swords reversal relates to Isaiah 2:4 and Micah 4:3. The fountain from the LORD’s house parallels Ezekiel 47:1-12 and Zechariah 14:8 and is echoed in Revelation 22:1-2. The selling of children to distant peoples connects to the slave trade references in Amos 1:6-8. The final promise of God dwelling in Zion connects to Ezekiel 48:35 (‘The LORD is there’).*

¹For in those days and at that time, when I restore the fortunes of Judah and Jerusalem, ²I will gather all the nations and bring them down to the Valley of Jehoshaphat. There I will enter into judgment with them concerning my people, my inheritance Israel — whom they scattered among the nations and whose land they divided. ³They cast lots for my people. They traded a boy for a prostitute and sold a girl for wine, which they drank. ⁴"And what are you to me, Tyre and Sidon, and all the regions of Philistia? Are you paying me back for something? If you are retaliating against me, I will swiftly, speedily turn your retaliation back on your own heads. ⁵You took my silver and my gold, and you carried off my finest treasures into your temples. ⁶You sold the people of Judah and Jerusalem to the Greeks, to remove them far from their own territory. ⁷I am about to rouse them from the place where you sold them, and I will turn your retaliation back on your own heads. ⁸I will sell your sons and daughters into the hands of the people of Judah, and they will sell them to the Sabeans — to a distant nation. For the LORD has spoken." ⁹Proclaim this among the nations: Consecrate yourselves for war! Rouse the warriors! Let all the soldiers advance and march up! ¹⁰Beat your plowshares into swords and your pruning hooks into spears. Let the weak say, 'I am a warrior!' ¹¹Hurry and come, all you surrounding nations — gather yourselves there. Bring down your warriors, O LORD! ¹²Let the nations rouse themselves and come up to the Valley of Jehoshaphat, for there I will sit to judge all the surrounding nations. ¹³Swing the sickle, for the harvest is ripe! Come, tread the grapes, for the winepress is full — the vats overflow, because their wickedness is great. ¹⁴Multitudes, multitudes in the Valley of Decision! For the day of the LORD is near in the Valley of Decision. ¹⁵The sun and moon grow dark, and the stars withdraw their light. ¹⁶The LORD roars from Zion and thunders from Jerusalem. The heavens and the earth tremble — but the LORD is a refuge for his people, a stronghold for the children of Israel. ¹⁷Then you will know that I am the LORD your God, dwelling in Zion, my holy mountain. Jerusalem will be holy, and foreigners will never pass through her again. ¹⁸On that day the mountains will drip with sweet wine, the hills will flow with milk, and all the streambeds of Judah will run with water. A fountain will flow from the house of the LORD and water the Valley of Shittim. ¹⁹Egypt will become a wasteland, and Edom a desolate wilderness, because of the violence done to the people of Judah — because they shed innocent blood in their land. ²⁰But Judah will be inhabited forever, and Jerusalem through all generations. ²¹I will avenge their blood — blood I have not yet avenged. And the LORD dwells in Zion.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is 4:1 in the Hebrew text. The phrase *hashiv et shevut* ('restore the fortunes/captivity') is the same phrase from Hosea 6:11, Jeremiah 29:14, and throughout the prophets. It can mean 'bring back the captives' or more broadly 'restore the fortunes.' The temporal markers 'in those days and at that time' place the events in the eschatological future — the same time frame as the Spirit outpouring of 2:28-32.
2. This verse is 4:2 in the Hebrew text. The Valley of Jehoshaphat (*emeq Yehoshaphat*) means 'Valley of YHWH-judges' — the name is a theological statement, not primarily a geographical marker. King Jehoshaphat's name means the same thing. The verb *venishpatti* ('I will enter into judgment') uses the root *sh-p-t* ('judge'), creating a wordplay with the valley's name. The three charges: scattering God's people (*pizru baggoyim*), and dividing God's land (*artsi chillequ*) — these are crimes against divine property. Israel is 'my people, my inheritance' (*ammi venachalati*); the land is 'my land' (*artsi*).
3. This verse is 4:3 in the Hebrew text. Casting lots for people treats humans as objects to be distributed — prisoners of war divided as spoils. The dehumanization is total: a child's value is measured against the price of a prostitute's services; a girl's value equals a flask of wine. The casualness of the transaction — 'which they drank' (*vayyishtu*) — adds a dimension of callous indifference. These are covenant children reduced to the price of momentary pleasure.
4. This verse is 4:4 in the Hebrew text. God challenges Tyre, Sidon, and Philistia — the coastal peoples who traded in Judean captives. The rhetorical question 'What are you to me?' (*mah attem li*) dismisses them as insignificant. The verb *gemul* ('recompense, retaliation, payment') is used three times — God warns that any action against his people will boomerang back on the perpetrators.
5. This verse is 4:5 in the Hebrew text. The 'silver and gold' and 'finest treasures' (*machamadai hattovim*) are likely the temple vessels and sacred objects plundered from the Jerusalem temple. God claims these as 'my' possessions — the plundering nations have stolen from God himself. Their temples now house artifacts from God's temple — a sacrilege of the highest order.
6. This verse is 4:6 in the Hebrew text. The *Yevanim* ('Greeks, Ionians') are the people of Greece and Asia Minor. Selling Judean captives to distant Greeks ensured they could never return — the distance made the slavery permanent. The verb *leharchiqam* ('to remove them far') reveals the intent: not merely to profit from the slave trade but to permanently sever the people from their land and God.

7. This verse is 4:7 in the Hebrew text. The verb *me'iram* ('rousing them, stirring them up') depicts God awakening the exiled captives from their places of slavery and bringing them home. The principle of *lex talionis* (measure for measure) governs the judgment: what was done to Judah's children will be done to the perpetrators' children (v. 8).
8. This verse is 4:8 in the Hebrew text. The Sabeans (*Sheva'im*) were a people of southern Arabia (modern Yemen) — the most distant trading partners in the ancient Israelite worldview. The retribution mirrors the crime: as Judah's children were sold to distant Greeks, the perpetrators' children will be sold to distant Sabeans. The oracle formula *ki YHWH dibber* ('for the LORD has spoken') seals the pronouncement with divine authority.
9. This verse is 4:9 in the Hebrew text. The ironic call to the nations to prepare for war (*qaddesh milchamah*, literally 'consecrate/sanctify war') uses sacral language — war in the ancient world was a religious act requiring ritual purification. God is summoning the nations to their own destruction — they think they are preparing for conquest, but they are walking into judgment.
10. This verse is 4:10 in the Hebrew text. The command reverses Isaiah 2:4 and Micah 4:3, where swords become plowshares and spears become pruning hooks. Those prophets describe the eschatological peace after God's judgment; Joel describes the judgment itself, when even agricultural tools must become weapons. The ironic command to the weak (*hachalash*, 'the feeble one') to declare himself a warrior mocks the nations' pretensions — even their weakness is summoned to the battle they cannot win.
11. This verse is 4:11 in the Hebrew text. The nations are summoned to gather, but the prayer embedded in the verse reveals the true dynamic: *hanchat YHWH gibborekha* ('Bring down, LORD, your warriors'). God's warriors — angelic or divine forces — will descend to meet the gathered nations. The armies of the world assemble for judgment, not for victory.
12. This verse is 4:12 in the Hebrew text. The verb *eshev* ('I will sit') is the posture of a judge — God takes his seat on the judicial bench. The Valley of Jehoshaphat is thus a cosmic courtroom where all nations are brought before the divine judge. The phrase *kol haggoyim missaviv* ('all the surrounding nations') makes the judgment universal — no nation is excluded.
13. This verse is 4:13 in the Hebrew text. The harvest and winepress imagery depicts divine judgment as a reaping — the nations' accumulated wickedness has reached full maturity and is ready for harvest. The command to 'swing the sickle' (*shilchu maggal*) and 'tread' (*riddu*) are instructions to God's agents of judgment. The overflowing vats recall 2:24 where vats overflow with blessing — here they overflow with the 'wine' of judgment. Jesus echoes this imagery in the parable of the wheat and tares (Matthew 13:39) and Revelation uses it extensively (14:14-20, 19:15).
14. This verse is 4:14 in the Hebrew text. The repeated *hamonim hamonim* ('multitudes, multitudes') creates an auditory image of vast, uncountable throngs. The *emeq hecharuts* ('Valley of Decision/Threshing') contains a wordplay: *charats* means both 'to decide, determine' and 'to cut, thresh.' The valley is where God makes his final decision about the nations, and it is also the threshing floor where they are cut down. The repetition of the Day of the LORD frames the scene — this is the climactic moment toward which the entire book has been building.
15. This verse is 4:15 in the Hebrew text. The cosmic signs repeat 2:10 almost verbatim, creating a literary bracket around the Day of the LORD theme. The darkening of heavenly bodies signals the disruption of the created order as God intervenes in judgment — creation itself responds to the divine action.
16. This verse is 4:16 in the Hebrew text. The verb *yish'ag* ('roars') is the lion's roar — God as the Lion of Zion (cf. Amos 1:2, which uses nearly identical language). The trembling of heaven and earth (*ra'ashu shamayim va'arets*) echoes 2:10. The 'but' (*vaYHWH*) creates the crucial contrast: the same God who makes the cosmos tremble is a *machaseh* ('refuge, shelter') and *ma'oz* ('stronghold, fortress') for his people. The Day of the LORD is both judgment for the nations and protection for Israel.
17. This verse is 4:17 in the Hebrew text. The knowledge formula *vida'tem ki ani YHWH* ('you will know that I am the LORD') echoes 2:27 and is characteristic of Ezekiel (cf. Ezekiel 6:7, 7:4, etc.). God's dwelling in Zion (*shokhen beTsiyyon*) fulfills the covenant presence promise — the divine *Shekhinah* inhabits its chosen mountain. Jerusalem becomes *qodesh* ('holy, set apart') — no longer violated by foreign armies. The promise that *zarim* ('foreigners, strangers') will never again pass through her envisions permanent security and sanctity.
18. This verse is 4:18 in the Hebrew text. The fountain from the temple parallels Ezekiel 47:1-12 (a river flowing from the temple that brings life wherever it goes) and Zechariah 14:8 (living waters flowing from Jerusalem). In Revelation 22:1-2, the river of the water of life flows from God's throne. The Valley of Shittim (*nachal haShittim*) is the acacia wadi — acacia trees grow in the driest desert environments, so watering this valley means even the most inhospitable terrain receives life. The verse moves from agricultural restoration to cosmic renewal.
19. This verse is 4:19 in the Hebrew text. Egypt and Edom represent the two traditional enemies of Israel — Egypt the former enslaver, Edom the hostile brother-nation (descended from Esau). Their desolation (*shemamah*) mirrors the desolation the locusts brought upon Judah in chapter 1, but this desolation is permanent. The charge — violence (*chamas*) against Judah and shedding innocent blood (*dam naqi*) — specifies the crime that brings the judgment.
20. This verse is 4:20 in the Hebrew text. The contrast with Egypt and Edom's desolation (v. 19) is absolute: they become wasteland; Judah endures forever (*le'olam*) and Jerusalem through all generations (*ledor vador*). The verb *teshev* ('will dwell, be inhabited') promises permanent settlement — the land will never again be emptied of its people. The phrase *ledor vador* ('from generation to generation') extends the promise into indefinite futurity.
21. This verse is 4:21 in the Hebrew text, the final verse of both the chapter and the book. The verb *niqqeti* ('I will cleanse/avenge') can mean either 'cleanse' (declaring innocent) or 'avenge' (holding accountable). The phrase 'blood I have not yet avenged' (*lo niqqeti*) means there remains innocent blood that has gone unpunished — God will settle all accounts. The book's final four words — *vaYHWH shokhen beTsiyyon* ('and the LORD dwells in

Zion') — are the theological conclusion of everything Joel has to say. Despite locust plagues, cosmic upheaval, and the judgment of nations, the ultimate reality is this: God is present. He dwells among his people. The book that began with devastation ends with divine habitation.

Amos

1

Summary: *Amos 1 opens with the superscription identifying Amos as a sheep-breeder from Tekoa who received his visions during the reigns of Uzziah (Judah) and Jeroboam II (Israel), two years before a devastating earthquake. The chapter launches immediately into the 'oracles against the nations' — a literary pattern of escalating judgment using the formula 'For three transgressions... and for four.' God's roaring judgment moves geographically from Damascus, to Gaza, to Tyre, to Edom, to Ammon — circling Israel's neighbors before the trap closes on Israel itself in chapter 2.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The graded numerical formula 'for three transgressions and for four' (al sheloshah pish'ei... ve'al arba'ah) is a wisdom-literature device (cf. Proverbs 30:15-31) repurposed for prophetic judgment. The number does not mean exactly three or four sins — it means the measure is full and overflowing. Each oracle condemns a specific atrocity: Damascus for threshing Gilead with iron sledges, Gaza for wholesale deportation, Tyre for breaking a treaty of brotherhood, Edom for relentless fraternal hatred, Ammon for ripping open pregnant women to expand territory. Amos's audience would have cheered each oracle against their enemies — unaware that the rhetorical net was closing around them.*

Translation Friction: *The verb naqam in the Edom oracle carries overtones of both 'anger' and 'vengeance' that we had to carefully distinguish. The phrase 'covenant of brotherhood' (berit achim) in the Tyre oracle may refer to the Solomon-Hiram treaty (1 Kings 5:12) or to a broader kinship pact — we preserved the ambiguity. The earthquake reference (v. 1) is confirmed archaeologically at Hazor (ca. 760 BCE), an unusually precise correlation between text and excavation.*

Connections: *The earthquake reference connects to Zechariah 14:5. The 'roaring from Zion' motif parallels Joel 3:16. The oracles against nations follow a pattern found also in Isaiah 13-23, Jeremiah 46-51, and Ezekiel 25-32. The Edom oracle anticipates the fuller treatment in Obadiah. Damascus's threshing of Gilead connects to 2 Kings 10:32-33 and 13:7.*

¹The words of Amos, who was among the sheep-breeders of Tekoa, which he saw concerning Israel in the days of Uzziah king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam son of Joash king of Israel — two years before the earthquake. ²He said: The LORD roars from Zion, and from Jerusalem he raises his voice. The pastures of the shepherds wither, and the summit of Carmel dries up. ³This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Damascus — and for four — I will not revoke it, because

they threshed Gilead with iron sledges. ⁴I will send fire on the house of Hazael, and it will consume the fortresses of Ben-hadad. ⁵I will break the gate-bar of Damascus and cut off the ruler from the Valley of Aven, and the one who holds the scepter from Beth-eden. The people of Aram will go into exile to Kir, says the LORD. ⁶This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Gaza — and for four — I will not revoke it, because they deported entire communities and handed them over to Edom. ⁷I will send fire on the wall of Gaza, and it will consume her fortresses. ⁸I will cut off the ruler from Ashdod, and the one who holds the scepter from Ashkelon. I will turn my hand against Ekron, and the remnant of the Philistines will perish, says the Lord GOD. ⁹This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Tyre — and for four — I will not revoke it, because they handed over entire communities to Edom and did not remember the covenant of brotherhood. ¹⁰I will send fire on the wall of Tyre, and it will consume her fortresses. ¹¹This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Edom — and for four — I will not revoke it, because he pursued his brother with the sword and destroyed all compassion. His anger tore without ceasing, and he kept his fury forever. ¹²I will send fire on Teman, and it will consume the fortresses of Bozrah. ¹³This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of the Ammonites — and for four — I will not revoke it, because they ripped open the pregnant women of Gilead in order to expand their territory. ¹⁴I will set fire to the wall of Rabbah, and it will consume her fortresses with war cries on the day of battle, with a storm on the day of the whirlwind. ¹⁵Their king will go into exile — he and his officials together, says the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *noqedim* is not the common word for 'shepherd' (*ro'eh*) but a rare term indicating a breeder or owner of a particular type of sheep. The same word appears in 2 Kings 3:4 to describe Mesha king of Moab as a sheep-breeder, suggesting Amos may have been a man of some means rather than a poor laborer.
1. The verb *chazah* ('saw') rather than *shama* ('heard') frames Amos's reception as visionary experience. The earthquake (*ha-ra'ash*) is remembered as a landmark event — archaeological evidence at Hazor suggests a major earthquake around 760 BCE.
2. The verb *yish'ag* ('roar') depicts God as a lion — the same image used by Amos in 3:8. The roaring comes from Zion, asserting Jerusalem's centrality even though Amos prophesies to the northern kingdom. The verb *aval* can mean 'mourn' or 'dry up/wither' — in context the parallelism with 'dries up' (*yavesh*) favors the physical sense of withering.
2. Carmel, normally the lushest mountain in Israel due to Mediterranean rainfall, withering at God's voice dramatizes the totality of the judgment — if even Carmel dries up, nowhere is safe.
3. The formula 'for three... and for four' (*al sheloshah... ve'al arba'ah*) is a graded numerical pattern from wisdom literature (cf. Proverbs 30:15-31) meaning 'the full measure and then some.' The pronoun 'it' in 'I will not revoke it' (*lo ashivenu*) is deliberately ambiguous — it could refer to the punishment, the decree, or God's word of judgment. We preserve this ambiguity rather than supplying 'punishment' as the KJV does.
3. The threshing of Gilead with iron sledges (*charutsot ha-barzel*) refers to Hazael of Damascus's brutal campaigns against Israel's Transjordanian territory (2 Kings 10:32-33, 13:7). Whether the threshing is literal (dragging threshing sledges over captives) or figurative (devastating the land) is debated.
4. The 'fire' motif recurs in every oracle of this chapter — it is the consistent instrument of divine judgment. Hazael and Ben-hadad are Aramean dynasty names representing successive rulers of Damascus (2 Kings 8:7-15, 13:3, 24-25). The word *armenot* ('fortresses, strongholds') is sometimes rendered 'palaces' but its primary sense is military — these are fortified structures that represent the regime's power.
5. The 'gate-bar' (*beria*) was the heavy wooden or bronze bar that secured a city's main gate — breaking it means breaching the city's defenses. 'Valley of Aven' (*Biq'at Aven*) means 'Valley of Wickedness' — likely the Beqaa Valley in Lebanon. Beth-eden ('House of Delight') is probably Bit-adini, an Aramean state on the Euphrates.
5. Kir as the destination of Aram's exile is notable — according to Amos 9:7, Kir is where the Arameans originally came from, so this exile is a reversal of their national history. The fulfillment came through the Assyrian conquest under Tiglath-pileser III (2 Kings 16:9).
6. The phrase *galut shelema* ('complete exile/captivity') means Gaza did not merely take prisoners of war but rounded up entire populations — men, women, children — for the slave trade. The destination 'Edom' suggests a broader slave-trafficking network with the Edomites as brokers or buyers. Gaza, as the southernmost major Philistine city, sat astride the trade routes connecting Egypt, Arabia, and the Levant.
7. The judgment formula shifts from 'house of Hazael' (the dynasty) for Damascus to 'wall of Gaza' (the physical defenses) — each oracle targets the specific source of the nation's confidence.
8. The oracle began with Gaza but expands to include three other Philistine cities — Ashdod, Ashkelon, and Ekron. Gath, the fifth city of the traditional Philistine pentapolis, is notably absent, likely because it had already been conquered by Uzziah (2 Chronicles 26:6) or Hazael (2 Kings 12:17) by Amos's time.

8. The title Adonai YHWH ('Lord GOD') combines both divine names, emphasizing sovereignty and covenant identity together.
9. Tyre's crime is identical to Gaza's — wholesale deportation to Edom — but with the added aggravation that Tyre had a covenant relationship (berit achim, 'covenant of brothers') with Israel. The Solomon-Hiram alliance (1 Kings 5:12) used the language of brotherhood, making Tyre's slave-trading a betrayal of sworn kinship, not merely a war crime.
10. The judgment formula for Tyre mirrors Gaza's exactly — fire on the wall, consuming fortresses. This parallel underscores that both cities share the same crime of slave-trafficking.
11. The 'brother' language is loaded — Edom is descended from Esau, Jacob/Israel's twin brother (Genesis 25:24-26). Edom's crime is therefore not just warfare but fratricide in the broadest sense. The verb shichet ('destroyed, corrupted') applied to rachamav ('his compassion') is striking — Edom did not merely suppress compassion but destroyed it, as though compassion itself were an enemy.
11. The verbs 'tore' (yitroph) and 'kept' (shamerah) create a chilling portrait — Edom's anger is a predator that never stops tearing, and his fury is carefully preserved like something stored for future use. The word netsach ('forever, perpetually') emphasizes the unrelenting character of Edom's hatred.
12. Teman and Bozrah are major Edomite cities. Teman, in the south, was associated with wisdom traditions (cf. Eliphaz the Temanite in Job 2:11). Bozrah, in the north, was the capital or chief fortress. Together they represent Edom's full extent from south to north.
13. The atrocity described — ripping open pregnant women (biq'am harot) — is among the most horrifying acts of ancient warfare, mentioned also in 2 Kings 8:12, 15:16, and Hosea 13:16. The motive given ('to expand their territory') makes the crime doubly heinous — it was not done in the heat of battle but as calculated policy to depopulate contested territory in Gilead.
14. Rabbah (modern Amman, Jordan) was the Ammonite capital. The judgment here is more vivid than previous oracles — fire is accompanied by battle cries (teru'ah) and storm imagery (sa'ar, suphah). The storm language may be metaphorical (the Assyrian army sweeping in) or may invoke theophanic storm imagery associated with God as divine warrior.
15. The word malkam could be read as 'their king' or as 'Milcom' (the Ammonite deity, cf. 1 Kings 11:5, 33). Both readings work — either the political ruler or the national god goes into exile. Some scholars prefer 'Milcom' because gods being carried off was a standard ancient Near Eastern practice of conquest. We render 'their king' as the more straightforward reading but note the double entendre.
15. The word sarim ('officials, princes, commanders') is rendered 'officials' throughout the project to avoid the misleading English connotation of 'princes' as sons of a king.

2

Summary: *Amos 2 completes the oracles against the nations and springs the rhetorical trap. Moab is condemned for desecrating an Edomite king's bones. Then the focus shifts to Judah for rejecting the LORD's instruction. Finally — the real target — Israel is indicted for a catalogue of social injustices: selling the righteous for silver, trampling the poor, sexual exploitation, and corruption of worship. The chapter closes with God recounting his saving acts (the Exodus, the wilderness, the conquest) and declaring that Israel's military might will be utterly useless on the day of judgment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rhetorical structure is masterful. Amos's northern Israelite audience would have cheered through six oracles against foreign enemies, grudgingly accepted the Judah oracle, then been stunned when the seventh and longest oracle targeted them. The Israel oracle is three times longer than any other, signaling that this is the true burden of the prophecy. The social crimes listed — selling people for trivial debts, father and son using the same woman, taking garments in pledge, lying on confiscated cloaks beside altars — are violations of specific Torah provisions (Exodus 22:26-27, Deuteronomy 24:12-13, Leviticus 18:15, 20:12).*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'a man and his father go to the same young woman' (v. 7) is ambiguous — it could refer to cultic prostitution, incest, or exploitation of a servant girl. We rendered it plainly without interpretive addition. The word na'arah ('young woman') does not specify a prostitute. The military imagery in verses 14-16 required careful attention to Hebrew verb forms to distinguish types of warriors and their responses.*

Connections: *The Moab oracle for desecrating bones connects to ancient Near Eastern concepts of post-mortem honor. The Judah oracle anticipates Amos's distinction between ritual religion and covenant obedience. The Exodus recitation (v. 10) connects to the creedal tradition in Deuteronomy 26:5-9. The Nazirite and prophet references (v. 11-12) connect to Numbers 6 and Deuteronomy 18:15-18. The military collapse imagery (vv. 14-16)*

anticipates the fall of Samaria in 722 BCE.

¹This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Moab — and for four — I will not revoke it, because he burned the bones of the king of Edom to lime. ²I will send fire on Moab, and it will consume the fortresses of Kerioth. Moab will die amid uproar — with war cries and the sound of the ram's horn. ³I will cut off the ruler from her midst and kill all her officials with him, says the LORD. ⁴This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Judah — and for four — I will not revoke it, because they have rejected the instruction of the LORD and have not kept his statutes. Their lies led them astray — the same ones their ancestors followed. ⁵I will send fire on Judah, and it will consume the fortresses of Jerusalem. ⁶This is what the LORD says: For three transgressions of Israel — and for four — I will not revoke it, because they sell the innocent for silver and the needy for the price of a pair of sandals. ⁷They trample the heads of the poor into the dust of the ground and push the humble off the path. A man and his father go to the same young woman, profaning my holy name. ⁸They stretch out beside every altar on garments taken as pledges, and in the house of their God they drink wine taken as fines. ⁹Yet I destroyed the Amorite before them — whose height was like the height of cedars, and who was as strong as oaks. I destroyed his fruit above and his roots below. ¹⁰I brought you up from the land of Egypt and led you through the wilderness for forty years to possess the land of the Amorite. ¹¹I raised up prophets from your sons and Nazirites from your young men. Is this not so, people of Israel? declares the LORD. ¹²But you made the Nazirites drink wine and commanded the prophets, 'Do not prophesy!' ¹³Look — I am about to press down on you, as a cart loaded with sheaves presses down. ¹⁴Flight will fail the swift, the strong will not summon his strength, and the warrior will not save his life. ¹⁵The archer will not stand his ground, the swift of foot will not escape, and the horseman will not save his life. ¹⁶Even the bravest among the warriors will flee naked on that day, declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Moab's crime is unique among the oracles — it is not a crime against Israel but against Edom. This is theologically significant: God holds nations accountable for violations of basic human decency, not only for crimes against his covenant people. Burning bones to lime (la-sid) means reducing them to calcium powder, the ultimate desecration — denying the dead any hope of rest or memorial.
2. Kerioth (ha-qeriyot, 'the cities') may be a specific Moabite city or a generic reference to Moab's urban centers. The Moabite Stone (Mesha Stele) mentions Kerioth as a cult center. The shofar ('ram's horn') here signals battle rather than worship — the same instrument used for both purposes in ancient Israel.
3. The word shophet ('judge') here functions as 'ruler' — the same title used for Israel's pre-monarchic leaders in the book of Judges. Moab's political leadership will be eliminated entirely.
4. The word torah here is rendered 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture its broader Hebrew sense of divine teaching and guidance. The 'lies' (kizvehem) likely refer to false gods or idols — calling them 'lies' strips them of dignity and exposes their unreality. The phrase 'their ancestors followed' creates a damning generational continuity of apostasy.
5. The same fire-judgment formula applied to pagan nations now falls on Judah and its capital Jerusalem. No exemption is granted for being God's covenant people — if anything, the expectations are higher.
6. The shift to present tense ('they sell') reflects the Hebrew participle-like force — these are ongoing, habitual crimes, not one-time events. The tsaddiq ('innocent, righteous one') is the person with a legitimate legal claim who loses in court because the judges take bribes. The 'pair of sandals' (na'alayim) may refer to the trivial size of the debt or bribe, or to the symbolic use of sandals in property transfers (Ruth 4:7-8). Either way, human life is valued at less than footwear.
7. The verb sha'aph can mean 'trample' or 'pant after' — both readings work: either they eagerly pursue even the dust on the heads of the poor (wanting everything they have) or they grind the poor into the dirt. The parallel with 'push off the path' (derekh anavim yattu) favors 'trample' as the physical action of oppression.
7. The phrase 'a man and his father go to the same young woman' (na'arah) is deliberately unspecific about the relationship — the Hebrew does not call her a prostitute, a slave, or a wife. The violation may be sexual exploitation of a dependent, cultic prostitution, or incestuous sharing of a concubine. What is clear is that it profanes God's holy name (shem qodshi) — God's own reputation is damaged by this behavior.
8. The Torah explicitly forbids keeping a poor person's garment as an overnight pledge — it must be returned before sunset because it is his only blanket (Exodus 22:26-27, Deuteronomy 24:12-13). Israel's wealthy are not only violating this command but using the confiscated cloaks as cushions for reclining at worship. The wine of 'fines' (anushim) — money exacted as penalties — is drunk in the temple itself, making the house of God complicit in the exploitation of the poor.

9. God shifts to first person to recount his saving acts — the theological heart of the accusation. The Amorites represent the pre-Israelite inhabitants of Canaan (cf. Numbers 13:28-33). The tree metaphor — tall as cedars, strong as oaks, yet destroyed root and fruit — emphasizes total annihilation. God did what Israel could never have done on their own.
10. The Exodus creed is compressed into a single verse — deliverance, wilderness wandering, and conquest. This recitation of divine faithfulness becomes the measure of Israel's ingratitude. 'The land of the Amorite' is an older designation for Canaan, rooting Amos's language in the earliest traditions.
11. God's gifts to Israel include not only military deliverance but spiritual leadership — prophets to speak his word and Nazirites who embodied radical consecration to God (Numbers 6:1-21). The rhetorical question 'Is this not so?' demands acknowledgment — God dares Israel to deny his generosity. The formula *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') marks this as a prophetic declaration with divine authority.
12. Israel's response to God's gifts was sabotage — corrupting the Nazirites by pressuring them to break their vow (wine was forbidden to Nazirites, Numbers 6:3) and silencing the prophets who spoke inconvenient truths. The juxtaposition with verse 11 is devastating: God raised up; Israel tore down.
13. The Hebrew here is notoriously difficult. The verb *me'iq* can mean 'press down' (God pressing Israel) or 'groan under a load' (God groaning under Israel's sins). Most modern scholars read it as God bearing down on Israel like a heavy harvest cart crushing whatever is beneath it. The image shifts God from patient benefactor to overwhelming weight of judgment.
14. A series of three military figures — the swift runner, the strong man, the warrior (*gibbor*) — all fail when God's judgment arrives. The verb *avad* ('perish, be lost') applied to flight itself is powerful: it is not that the swift man fails to run but that the very concept of escape ceases to exist.
15. Three more military specialists are added — archer, runner, and cavalry — extending the catalogue of futility. Each branch of the army fails. The repetition of *lo yemallet* ('will not escape/save') creates a hammering rhythm of inescapable doom.
16. The climax of the military collapse: the most courageous warrior (*ammits libbo*, literally 'strong of heart') will throw off his armor and weapons — anything that slows him down — and run naked. The phrase 'on that day' (*bayyom hahu*) introduces eschatological language that will intensify throughout the book. The chapter that began with judgment on foreign nations ends with Israel's own army in panicked, naked flight.

3

Summary: *Amos 3 opens with a devastating theological inversion: Israel's election does not guarantee protection but rather guarantees accountability. 'You only have I known of all the families of the earth; therefore I will punish you for all your iniquities.' A series of rhetorical questions using cause-and-effect logic (the lion roars because it has prey) establishes that Amos prophesies because God has spoken — prophecy is not a choice but a compulsion. The chapter closes with God summoning Ashdod and Egypt as witnesses against Samaria's oppression and announcing the destruction of Bethel's altars and the luxury houses of the wealthy.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The seven rhetorical questions in verses 3-8 form one of the most tightly argued passages in prophetic literature. Each question moves from observable cause-and-effect to the theological conclusion: if the LORD has spoken, can a prophet remain silent? The chiasmic structure builds from walking together (v. 3), to lion's prey (vv. 4-5), to trumpet alarm (v. 6), to the climactic statement about prophecy (vv. 7-8). Calling Ashdod (Philistia) and Egypt to witness against Israel (v. 9) is breathtakingly ironic — Israel's ancient enemies are summoned as moral witnesses because their behavior is, by implication, more comprehensible than Israel's.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 3 ('Do two walk together unless they have agreed?') has been interpreted as referring to God and Israel's broken relationship, or simply as a general observation about cause and effect. We rendered it plainly and let the ambiguity stand. The word *no'adu* ('agreed, made an appointment') is more specific than general 'agreement' — it implies a deliberate arrangement. Verse 12 contains a difficult image of a shepherd rescuing fragments of a sheep from a lion's mouth — we had to determine whether this is rescue or evidence-preservation for insurance purposes.*

Connections: *The election-accountability principle (v. 2) connects to Deuteronomy 7:6-8 and anticipates Luke 12:48 ('to whom much is given'). The lion imagery (vv. 4, 8) connects to the opening roar in 1:2. The prophetic compulsion theme connects to Jeremiah 20:9 and 1 Corinthians 9:16. The destruction of Bethel's altars anticipates the confrontation with Amaziah in chapter 7.*

¹Hear this word that the LORD has spoken against you, people of Israel — against the entire clan that I brought up from the land of Egypt: ²You alone have I known out of all the clans of the earth — therefore I will hold you accountable for all your iniquities. ³Do two walk together unless they have made an appointment? ⁴Does a lion roar in the forest when it has no prey? Does a young lion growl from its den unless it has caught something? ⁵Does a bird fall into a trap on the ground when there is no snare set for it? Does a trap spring up from the ground unless it has caught something? ⁶Is a ram's horn blown in a city without the people trembling? Does disaster strike a city unless the LORD has done it? ⁷Indeed, the Lord GOD does nothing without revealing his purpose to his servants the prophets. ⁸A lion has roared — who will not fear? The Lord GOD has spoken — who can refuse to prophesy? ⁹Proclaim over the fortresses of Ashdod and over the fortresses in the land of Egypt: Gather on the mountains of Samaria and see the great turmoil within her, and the oppression in her midst. ¹⁰They do not know how to do what is right, declares the LORD — they who store up violence and plunder in their fortresses. ¹¹Therefore this is what the Lord GOD says: An enemy will surround the land! He will strip away your defenses, and your fortresses will be plundered. ¹²This is what the LORD says: Just as a shepherd rescues from the mouth of a lion two leg bones or a scrap of an ear, so will the people of Israel be rescued — those who sit in Samaria on the corner of a couch and on the edge of a bed. ¹³Hear and testify against the house of Jacob, declares the Lord GOD, the God of Hosts. ¹⁴On the day I punish Israel for their transgressions, I will bring judgment on the altars of Bethel. The horns of the altar will be cut off and fall to the ground. ¹⁵I will strike the winter house along with the summer house. The houses of ivory will perish, and the great houses will come to an end, declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word mishpachah ('clan, family') rather than am ('people, nation') emphasizes kinship — God speaks to Israel as extended family, which sharpens the sting of the accusation. The preposition al ('against') is striking — this word is not for Israel but against them.
2. The verb yada ('know') in covenantal contexts means chosen, intimate relationship — the same verb used for marital intimacy (Genesis 4:1). This is not cognitive knowledge but relational election. The word avonot ('iniquities') is from the root avon, carrying the sense of twisted, bent, crooked — moral distortion. The logic inverts Israel's theology of election: being chosen does not mean protection from consequences but heightened accountability.
3. The verb no'adu means 'met by arrangement, made an appointment' — it is more specific than general 'agreement.' The question implies deliberate intention: nothing happens by accident. In context, this begins a series establishing that Amos's prophecy is not accidental — God has arranged it. Some interpreters read this as a statement about God and Israel's relationship: they once walked together by covenant arrangement, but now that arrangement is broken.
4. Two lion images in parallel: the mature lion (aryeh) roars because it has found prey; the young lion (kephir) growls from its den because it has already caught something. The implied logic: Amos roars because God has given him a message — prophetic speech, like the lion's roar, has a cause. The lion imagery connects back to 1:2 where God himself roars from Zion.
5. Two trap images reinforce the cause-and-effect logic. A bird does not fall into a trap unless a snare has been set; a trap does not spring unless it has caught prey. Applied theologically: Israel's coming disaster is not random but caused — their sin has set the trap, and God's judgment will spring it.
6. The shofar in a city signals enemy attack — of course people tremble. The second question is theologically bold: ra'ah ('disaster, evil, calamity') in a city is attributed directly to the LORD. This is not philosophical evil but historical calamity — military defeat, famine, plague. Amos asserts God's sovereignty over national disasters without softening the claim.
6. The word ra'ah here means 'disaster, calamity' rather than moral evil — though the Hebrew word covers both meanings. God causes catastrophe as judgment; he does not cause moral wickedness.
7. The word sod ('secret, counsel, purpose') refers to the divine council — the heavenly deliberation where God's plans are formed (cf. 1 Kings 22:19-22, Jeremiah 23:18). The prophets are privy to God's sod — they have been admitted to the council chamber and report what they have heard. This is Amos's claim to authority: he does not prophesy of his own will but because God has revealed his purpose.
8. The climax of the rhetorical chain. The progression from natural observation to prophetic compulsion is complete: just as a lion's roar is irresistible cause for fear, God's speech is irresistible cause for prophecy. The implied answer to both questions is 'no one.' Amos prophesies not by choice but by divine compulsion — a theme that will be stated even more forcefully in the confrontation with Amaziah (7:14-15).
9. The irony is devastating — Ashdod (Philistia) and Egypt are summoned as witnesses of Samaria's moral failure. These pagan nations, who have no covenant with God, are called to observe the social chaos in Israel and render a verdict. The implication: even nations without the Torah can recognize that what Israel is doing is wrong. Some manuscripts read 'Assyria' (Ashshur) instead of 'Ashdod' — the LXX has 'Assyria.' We follow the MT.

10. The word *nekhochah* ('what is right, uprightness, straightforwardness') is the opposite of crooked dealing. Israel has lost the very capacity for ethical behavior. The image of 'storing up' (*ha'otsrim*) violence and plunder in fortresses is mordantly vivid — their wealth is literally warehoused injustice.
11. The Hebrew is terse — *tsar useviv ha'arets* ('an adversary and surrounding the land') — almost a military dispatch in its brevity. The fortresses that stored up violence and plunder (v. 10) will themselves be plundered — the poetic justice is precise.
12. The shepherd metaphor is grimly ironic — Amos the shepherd would know that 'rescuing' two leg bones and an ear fragment from a lion is not rescue at all but proof of loss. Under Torah law (Exodus 22:13), a shepherd who could produce remains of a predator-killed animal was exempt from restitution. This is evidence preservation, not salvation. What survives of Israel will be scraps — and those scraps are the idle rich lounging on their expensive furniture.
12. The word *demesheq* ('Damascus') here may be a textile name (damask fabric) rather than the city — 'the damask of a couch' referring to luxury upholstery. The ambiguity is appropriate either way: Israel's survivors cling to their comfort.
13. The divine title *Elohei ha-Tseva'ot* ('God of Hosts/Armies') appears here for the first time in Amos, emphasizing God's military sovereignty. The 'hosts' may refer to heavenly armies, angelic forces, or the stars — all of which are under God's command. Using 'Jacob' rather than 'Israel' reaches back to the patriarch and the covenant origins of the nation.
14. The verb *paqad* ('visit, attend to, punish') carries the sense of official inspection followed by action — God is auditing Israel's accounts. Bethel ('House of God') was the major northern sanctuary established by Jeroboam I (1 Kings 12:28-33). The altar horns were the projections at the four corners where blood was applied and where fugitives could grasp for asylum (1 Kings 1:50-51). Cutting them off means eliminating both the sacrificial system and any possibility of refuge.
15. Having multiple seasonal residences was the mark of extreme wealth — winter houses in the lowlands, summer houses in the hills. The 'houses of ivory' (*battei ha-shen*) have been confirmed archaeologically: Samaria's excavated palace yielded hundreds of carved ivory fragments decorating furniture and walls (cf. 1 Kings 22:39 on Ahab's ivory house). God's judgment targets luxury as a symptom of the exploitation that funded it.

4

Summary: *Amos 4 opens with a stinging address to the wealthy women of Samaria as 'cows of Bashan' who oppress the poor and demand luxury from their husbands. The chapter then recounts a series of divine judgments — famine, drought, blight, plague, and overthrow — each concluding with the devastating refrain 'yet you did not return to me.' The chapter climaxes with one of the most ominous commands in prophetic literature: 'Prepare to meet your God, O Israel,' followed by a doxology celebrating God's cosmic power.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fivefold refrain 'yet you did not return to me' (ve-lo shavtem adai) in verses 6, 8, 9, 10, 11 is one of the most powerful literary devices in the prophets. Each judgment escalates — from hunger, to drought, to crop disease, to Egyptian-style plague, to Sodom-like destruction — and each time Israel refuses to repent. The Hebrew word for 'return' (*shuv*) is the fundamental vocabulary of repentance in the Hebrew Bible. God is not accusing Israel of failing to perform rituals (they have plenty of those, vv. 4-5) but of failing to return relationally. The closing doxology (v. 13) may be part of a larger hymn fragment that also appears in 5:8-9 and 9:5-6.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'cows of Bashan' (*parot ha-Bashan*, v. 1) required sensitive handling — the metaphor is genuinely confrontational in the Hebrew but should not read as misogynistic commentary. Amos targets these women for their economic role in the oppression system, not for their gender. The series of plagues in verses 6-11 echoes but does not exactly replicate the Egyptian plagues — we noted the parallel without forcing the identification. The doxology in verse 13 has unusual vocabulary that some scholars consider a later liturgical addition, but we rendered it as part of the canonical text.*

Connections: *The 'cows of Bashan' imagery connects to Psalm 22:12 where Bashan's bulls surround the psalmist. The plague recitation parallels the Egyptian plagues tradition (Exodus 7-12) and the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28. The Sodom-Gomorrah reference (v. 11) connects to Genesis 19. The 'prepare to meet your God' formula anticipates the theophany language of Exodus 19. The doxology fragments connect to 5:8-9 and 9:5-6.*

¹Hear this word, you cows of Bashan who are on the mountain of Samaria — you who oppress the poor, who crush the needy, who say to your husbands, 'Bring us something to drink!' ²The Lord GOD has sworn by his holiness: Days are coming upon you when they will carry you away with hooks — the last of you with fishhooks. ³You will go out through breaches in the wall, each woman straight ahead, and you will be thrown out toward Harmon, declares the LORD. ⁴Come to Bethel — and rebel!

Come to Gilgal — multiply rebellion! Bring your sacrifices every morning, your tithes every three days. ⁵Burn a thank offering of leavened bread! Announce your freewill offerings — proclaim them! For this is what you love to do, people of Israel, declares the Lord GOD. ⁶I gave you cleanness of teeth in all your cities and lack of bread in all your towns — yet you did not return to me, declares the LORD. ⁷I also withheld the rain from you when there were still three months until harvest. I sent rain on one city but not on another; one field received rain while the field that received no rain dried up. ⁸Two or three cities staggered to one city to find water but were not satisfied — yet you did not return to me, declares the LORD. ⁹I struck you with blight and mildew. The locust devoured your many gardens and vineyards, your fig trees and olive trees — yet you did not return to me, declares the LORD. ¹⁰I sent plague among you in the manner of Egypt. I killed your young men with the sword along with your captured horses. I made the stench of your camps rise into your nostrils — yet you did not return to me, declares the LORD. ¹¹I overthrew some of you as God overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah, and you were like a burning stick snatched from the fire — yet you did not return to me, declares the LORD. ¹²Therefore this is what I will do to you, Israel. Because I will do this to you — prepare to meet your God, O Israel! ¹³For it is he who forms the mountains and creates the wind, who reveals his thoughts to humankind, who turns the dawn to darkness and treads on the heights of the earth — the LORD, the God of Hosts, is his name.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bashan (modern Golan Heights) was famous for its rich pastureland and well-fed cattle (Deuteronomy 32:14, Psalm 22:12). Calling the wealthy women 'cows of Bashan' evokes sleek, pampered livestock. The word *adoneihem* ('their lords/masters') here means 'their husbands' — these women drive the cycle of oppression by demanding luxury that can only be funded through exploitation of the poor. The participles (*ha-oshqot*, *ha-rotsetot*, *ha-omrot*) indicate ongoing, habitual behavior.
2. The image of being dragged away with hooks (*tsinnot*) and fishhooks (*sirot dugah*) likely refers to the Assyrian practice of leading captives with hooks through the lip or nose, depicted in Assyrian reliefs. The word *acharitken* ('the last of you' or 'your posterity') indicates total deportation — from first to last, none will escape.
2. God swearing by his holiness (*be-qodsho*) is the strongest possible oath — he stakes his own essential nature on this promise of judgment.
3. The word *ha-Harmonah* is obscure — it may be a place name (possibly Mount Hermon or a location in Armenia/Urartu), a corruption of 'Hadad-rimmon,' or related to the word for 'heap' (destruction). No scholarly consensus exists, and we transliterate rather than guess. The image is of women fleeing through gaps in a besieged city's wall, each heading straight for the nearest breach without looking for companions. The feminine verb forms continue the address to the 'cows of Bashan.'
4. Biting sarcasm — Amos mockingly invites Israel to their favorite worship sites, but instead of 'worship' the verb is *pish'u* ('rebel, transgress'). Bethel and Gilgal were major northern sanctuaries. The exaggerated frequency — sacrifices every morning, tithes every three days (not every three years as some read it) — mocks their zealous religiosity that accompanies moral bankruptcy. The irony is that more worship equals more sin when the worshippers are oppressors.
5. The sarcasm intensifies — burning leavened bread as a thank offering may violate Leviticus 2:11 (which prohibits leaven in grain offerings burned on the altar), though Leviticus 7:13 permits leavened bread alongside the thank offering. The key phrase is 'proclaim them' (*hashmi'u*) — Israel loves the public display of generosity while privately crushing the poor. The final barb 'for this is what you love' (*ki khi ahavtem*) exposes the real motivation: self-satisfaction, not devotion to God.
6. The idiom 'cleanness of teeth' (*niqyon shinnayim*) means empty mouths — teeth are clean because there is nothing to eat. This is famine. The first of five escalating judgments, each ending with the devastating refrain 'yet you did not return to me' (*ve-lo shavtem adai*). The verb *shuv* ('return') is the Hebrew Bible's fundamental word for repentance — not merely feeling sorry but turning back, redirecting one's life toward God.
7. The specificity of 'three months before harvest' pinpoints the spring rains (March-April) that are critical for the grain harvest. Without them, the crop fails. The selective rainfall — one city drenched, the neighboring city parched — depicts divine control at a precision that mocks Israel's assumption that rainfall is random or controlled by Baal (the storm god). God demonstrates that he, not Baal, controls the rain.
8. The verb *na'u* ('staggered, wandered, reeled') suggests desperate, weakened people stumbling from town to town seeking water — the same verb used for a drunkard's stagger. Even finding a city with water was insufficient — *lo yisba'u* ('they were not satisfied'). The second refrain strikes.
9. *Shiddaphon* ('blight, scorching wind') and *yeraqon* ('mildew, yellowing') are crop diseases listed in the Deuteronomic curses (Deuteronomy 28:22). The *gazam* is a type of locust (possibly the cutting locust), one of several locust terms in Hebrew reflecting Israel's detailed awareness of this devastating pest. This is the third escalation — not just drought but active destruction of crops.
10. The phrase *be-derekh Mitsrayim* ('in the manner/way of Egypt') explicitly invokes the Egyptian plagues — God is now treating Israel the way he once treated their oppressors. The escalation from crop failure to military defeat and plague is devastating. The sensory detail of the camp stench (*be'osh machanekhem*) — the smell of decaying corpses — makes the judgment viscerally real.

11. The final and most extreme judgment — comparison to Sodom and Gomorrah, the paradigm of total divine destruction (Genesis 19). The phrase 'as God overthrew' (ke-mahpekhat Elohim) uses the standard formula for the Sodom tradition. The 'burning stick snatched from the fire' (ud mutsal misrephah) means Israel barely survived — a brand pulled from the flames at the last moment (cf. Zechariah 3:2). Even this near-destruction did not provoke repentance. The fifth and final refrain falls.
12. The climactic command is deliberately vague — 'this is what I will do' without specifying what. The ambiguity is terrifying: the unnamed threat is worse than any specific disaster. 'Prepare to meet your God' (hikkon liqrat Elohekha) uses language from the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:11, 15) — but where Sinai was preparation for covenant, this is preparation for judgment. The God Israel meets will not be the comforting deity of their prosperity theology but the holy God of the covenant they have broken.
13. This is the first of three doxology fragments in Amos (see also 5:8-9 and 9:5-6). The hymn celebrates God as creator (mountains, wind), revealer (declares his thoughts), and sovereign warrior (treads the heights). The phrase mah secho ('what is his thought') is debated — it could mean God reveals his own thought to humanity or reveals a person's thought back to them. Both readings work theologically.
13. The verb dorekh ('treads') applied to the heights of the earth depicts God striding across mountain peaks like a warrior surveying conquered territory. The full divine title — YHWH Elohei Tseva'ot ('the LORD, the God of Hosts') — closes the doxology with maximum majesty.

5

Summary: *Amos 5 is the theological heart of the book. It opens with a funeral dirge for Israel — 'Fallen, no more to rise, is Virgin Israel' — treating the nation as already dead. A call to 'seek the LORD and live' is followed by fierce condemnation of courtroom corruption and exploitation of the poor. The central declaration — 'Let justice roll down like waters, and righteousness like an ever-flowing stream' (v. 24) — stands as one of the most quoted lines in all prophetic literature. The chapter closes with a shocking claim: Israel's wilderness worship was purer than their current elaborate cult, and God will send them into exile 'beyond Damascus.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 24 is arguably the single most important verse in the prophetic corpus for understanding God's priorities: justice and righteousness over ritual. Martin Luther King Jr. quoted this verse in his 'I Have a Dream' speech and in his 'Letter from a Birmingham Jail,' making it one of the most culturally resonant lines in the Hebrew Bible. The funeral dirge form (qinah) in verses 1-3 uses the distinctive 3:2 falling meter that characterizes Israelite lament poetry — the rhythm itself sounds like sobbing. The chiasmic structure of the chapter places verses 14-15 ('Seek good and not evil') at the center, with worship critique on both sides.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 25-27 are among the most debated in Amos. The question 'Did you bring me sacrifices in the wilderness for forty years?' seems to expect the answer 'no,' challenging the entire sacrificial system's divine origin — a radical claim. Sikkuth and Kiyun (v. 26) are astral deities whose names have been vocalized with the vowels of shiqquts ('abomination') by the Masoretes. We transliterated the names and noted the Masoretic distortion. The 'day of the LORD' reversal (vv. 18-20) is the earliest clear articulation of this theme.*

Connections: *The qinah meter connects to Lamentations and 2 Samuel 1:19-27 (David's lament). Verse 24 is quoted in Martin Luther King Jr.'s speeches and in the broader social justice tradition. The 'day of the LORD' reversal anticipates Joel 2:1-2, Zephaniah 1:14-18, and Malachi 4:5. The wilderness question (v. 25) parallels Jeremiah 7:22. The Sikkuth/Kiyun reference is quoted in Acts 7:42-43 (Stephen's speech).*

¹Hear this word that I raise over you as a funeral dirge, house of Israel: ²Fallen, never to rise again, is Virgin Israel. She lies abandoned on her own land; there is no one to raise her up. ³For this is what the Lord GOD says: The city that marches out a thousand strong will have a hundred left, and the one that marches out a hundred strong will have ten left — for the house of Israel. ⁴For this is what the LORD says to the house of Israel: Seek me and live. ⁵But do not seek Bethel; do not go to Gilgal; do not cross over to Beer-sheba. For Gilgal will surely go into exile, and Bethel will come to nothing. ⁶Seek the LORD and live — or he will break out like fire against the house of Joseph, and it will consume with no one to quench it in Bethel. ⁷You who turn justice to wormwood and cast righteousness to the ground — ⁸He made the Pleiades and Orion; he turns deep darkness into morning and darkens day into night. He calls for the waters of the sea and pours them over the face of the earth — the LORD is his name. ⁹He brings destruction on the strong; ruin comes upon the fortified city. ¹⁰They hate the one

who reproves at the city gate, and they despise the one who speaks honestly. ¹¹Therefore, because you trample the poor and exact a grain tax from them — you have built houses of cut stone, but you will not live in them; you have planted choice vineyards, but you will not drink their wine. ¹²For I know how many are your transgressions and how great are your sins — you who are hostile to the innocent, who take bribes, and who turn aside the needy at the city gate. ¹³Therefore the wise person keeps silent at such a time, for it is an evil time. ¹⁴Seek good and not evil, so that you may live — and the LORD, the God of Hosts, will truly be with you, as you claim he is. ¹⁵Hate evil and love good; establish justice at the city gate. Perhaps the LORD, the God of Hosts, will be gracious to the remnant of Joseph. ¹⁶Therefore this is what the LORD, the God of Hosts, the Lord, says: In every public square there will be wailing; in every street they will cry, 'Alas! Alas!' They will summon the farmer to mourning, and the professional mourners to lamentation. ¹⁷In all the vineyards there will be wailing, for I will pass through your midst, says the LORD. ¹⁸Woe to you who long for the day of the LORD! Why would you want the day of the LORD? It is darkness, not light. ¹⁹As when a man flees from a lion and a bear meets him, or enters his house and leans his hand against the wall and a snake bites him. ²⁰Is not the day of the LORD darkness, not light — pitch darkness with no brightness in it? ²¹I hate — I despise — your festivals, and I take no delight in your solemn assemblies. ²²Even though you offer me burnt offerings and grain offerings, I will not accept them. I will not even look at the fellowship offerings of your fattened animals. ²³Take away from me the noise of your songs! I will not listen to the music of your harps. ²⁴But let justice roll down like waters, and righteousness like an ever-flowing stream. ²⁵Did you bring me sacrifices and grain offerings in the wilderness for forty years, house of Israel? ²⁶You will carry Sikkuth your king and Kiyyun your star-god — your images that you made for yourselves. ²⁷I will send you into exile beyond Damascus, says the LORD, whose name is the God of Hosts.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *qinah* is specifically a funeral lament — a song sung over the dead. By using this form, Amos declares Israel already dead. The verb *nosei* ('raise, lift up') is the technical term for intoning a formal lament. Amos does not threaten future death; he mourns a death that has, in God's eyes, already occurred.
2. The title *betulat Yisra'el* ('Virgin Israel') is both tender and devastating — a young woman in her prime, cut down before her time. The 3:2 *qinah* meter (three beats followed by two) creates the distinctive limping rhythm of Hebrew funeral poetry — the second half of each line drops away, as if the mourner cannot finish the thought. The phrase 'on her own land' (*al admatah*) adds the cruelty of dying at home rather than in battle abroad.
3. The military context is clear — cities sending out troops and receiving back a tenth of what they sent. A ninety percent casualty rate represents total military catastrophe. The progression from a thousand to a hundred, and a hundred to ten, makes the losses feel relentlessly personal.
4. After the funeral dirge, a sudden lifeline — two words in Hebrew: *dirshu-ni vi-chyu* ('seek me and live'). The verb *darash* ('seek') means active pursuit, investigation, inquiry — not casual interest but determined searching. The imperative is urgent: the dead nation can still live, but only by seeking the LORD himself (not his sanctuaries, as the next verse clarifies).
5. The wordplay is untranslatable: *ha-Gilgal galoh yigleh* — 'Gilgal will surely go into exile' uses alliteration between *Gilgal* and *galah* ('exile'). Similarly, *Beth-el* ('House of God') will become *le-aven* ('nothing, wickedness') — possibly a pun on *Beth-aven* ('House of Nothing/Wickedness'), the derogatory name for Bethel in Hosea 4:15. Beer-sheba in the far south of Judah was apparently a pilgrimage destination even for northern Israelites. Amos says: do not seek sanctuaries, seek God.
6. The call is repeated with heightened urgency. 'House of Joseph' designates the northern kingdom (Ephraim and Manasseh, Joseph's sons). The fire image from the oracles against the nations (chapters 1-2) now threatens Israel directly. The phrase 'no one to quench it' (*ein mekabbeh*) means the fire of God's judgment is humanly unstoppable.
7. Wormwood (*la'anah*) is a bitter plant (*Artemisia*) used metaphorically for bitterness, poison, and the perversion of what should be sweet. Justice — which should be life-giving — has been made toxic. The verb *hinnichu* ('set down, left, cast') applied to righteousness means they have thrown it on the ground like refuse. This verse introduces the *mishpat/tsedaqah* theme that climaxes in verse 24.
8. The second doxology fragment (cf. 4:13, 9:5-6). *Kimah* ('Pleiades') and *Kesil* ('Orion') are the only constellations named in the Hebrew Bible outside of Job 9:9 and 38:31. The word *tsalmavet* ('deep darkness, shadow of death') is a compound of *tsel* ('shadow') and *mavet* ('death') — the deepest possible darkness. God's power over the constellations, the cycle of day and night, and the waters of the sea establishes his sovereignty over the same forces the Canaanite religion attributed to Baal.
9. This difficult verse likely means God causes sudden devastation to flash upon the powerful and their fortresses. The verb *mavlig* is rare and debated — possibly from *balag* ('to flash, to gleam'), suggesting sudden, unexpected destruction that flashes across the stronghold. The point is that no human strength or fortification can resist God's judgment.

10. The city gate (sha'ar) was the courthouse — where elders sat to hear cases and render verdicts. The mokiach ('one who reproves, rebukes') is the person who speaks truth in the legal proceeding. A society that hates truth-tellers in court has destroyed the foundations of justice. The word tamim ('complete, honest, whole') applied to speech means straightforward, without deception.
11. The 'futility curse' — building but not inhabiting, planting but not harvesting — comes directly from the Deuteronomic covenant curses (Deuteronomy 28:30, 38-40). Houses of cut stone (battei gazit) were expensive construction, a mark of elite wealth. The verb boshaskhem ('you trample') is rare and may be related to the Akkadian šabāšu ('to exact tribute'). The grain tax (mas'at bar) was likely an unofficial extraction from poor farmers by wealthy landowners — not a legitimate tax but legalized theft.
12. Three crimes are listed in staccato: hostility to the innocent (tsorerei tsaddiq), bribe-taking (loqchei khopher), and perverting justice for the needy at the gate (evyonim bashshar hittu). The word kopher ('bribe, ransom') is related to kippur ('atonement') — both involve a payment to cover something. Here the covering is corruption, not reconciliation.
13. A troubling verse — is Amos endorsing silence? More likely he is observing the reality: in a corrupt society, the wise person (ha-maskil) knows that speaking up in court (the gate) is futile or dangerous. This is descriptive, not prescriptive — it describes how bad things have become, not what should be done. Amos himself breaks this silence.
14. The imperative 'seek good' (dirshu tov) parallels 'seek the LORD' from verse 4 — seeking God and seeking justice are the same thing. The barb at the end is sharp: 'as you claim' (ka'asher amartem) — Israel claims God is with them (the theology of election misused as a security blanket), but his presence is conditional on their moral behavior, not their ritual performance.
15. The word 'perhaps' (ulai) is startling — even repentance does not guarantee pardon. God's grace is not a vending machine. The 'remnant of Joseph' (she'erit Yoseph) already presumes that most of the nation will be destroyed — the best hope is that a fragment survives. Establishing justice 'at the gate' (the courthouse) is the specific, concrete action Amos demands — not more sacrifices but fair courts.
16. The picture is of universal grief — public squares, streets, even the fields. The cry ho ho ('Alas! Alas!') is the raw sound of grief. Professional mourners (yod'ei nehi, 'those skilled in lamentation') were women hired to lead wailing at funerals — even farmers will be called in from the fields to join the mourning because the dead are too many for the professionals alone.
17. The verb e'evor ('I will pass through') deliberately echoes the Passover (Exodus 12:12) — God 'passed through' Egypt to bring death. Now he will 'pass through' Israel with the same devastating intent. The vineyards — places of joy, harvest, and celebration — become places of mourning.
18. This is the earliest and most revolutionary reversal of the 'day of the LORD' concept in the prophets. Israel expected the day of the LORD to be a day of divine victory over their enemies — national vindication, military triumph. Amos inverts it: the day of the LORD will be judgment against Israel. The word hoi ('woe') is a funeral exclamation, continuing the dirge motif. The darkness/light contrast was fundamental to ancient Near Eastern religion — Israel expected light (salvation, prosperity) but will receive darkness (judgment, destruction).
19. A brilliantly vivid image of inescapable judgment. Each supposed escape leads to a worse danger: flee the lion, meet the bear; reach the safety of home, get bitten by a snake hiding in the wall. There is no refuge from God's judgment — not speed, not luck, not shelter. The progression from outside danger to inside danger eliminates every possible hiding place.
20. The rhetorical question demands the answer 'yes.' The escalation from choshekh ('darkness') to aphel ('pitch darkness, gloom') intensifies the image. There is not even nogah ('brightness, gleam') — not a single ray of light. The day of the LORD is total, unrelieved darkness for those who have perverted justice and oppressed the poor.
21. Two verbs of rejection piled together: saneti ('I hate') and ma'asti ('I despise, reject'). God is not expressing mild displeasure but visceral revulsion at Israel's worship. The verb ariach ('smell') refers to the pleasing aroma of sacrifices (Genesis 8:21, Leviticus 1:9) — God refuses to even smell their offerings. We rendered this as 'take no delight' since the olfactory idiom is unfamiliar in English.
22. Three types of offerings are rejected: olot ('burnt offerings,' wholly consumed), minchot ('grain offerings'), and shelem meri'ekhem ('fellowship/peace offerings of your fattened cattle'). The fellowship offering was shared between God, the priests, and the worshippers — a communion meal. God refuses to sit at table with oppressors. The verb abbit ('look at, regard') means God will not even glance at their offerings.
23. Even worship music — normally pleasing to God (Psalms) — is called hamon ('noise, uproar, tumult') rather than song when offered by the unjust. The nevel (a stringed instrument, likely a lyre or harp) was a standard temple instrument. God's refusal to listen demolishes any notion that worship performance can substitute for justice.
24. This is the climactic verse of Amos and arguably of all prophetic literature on social justice. The verb yiggal ('roll, flow') suggests overwhelming force — justice is not a trickle but a flood. The nachal eitan ('ever-flowing stream, perennial wadi') is significant in arid Palestine where most wadis are seasonal — dry for months then flash-flooding. An eitan stream flows constantly. God demands permanent, structural justice, not seasonal bursts of charity.
24. Martin Luther King Jr. quoted this verse in his 'I Have a Dream' speech (1963) and in his 'Letter from a Birmingham Jail' (1963), making it one of the most culturally resonant lines in the Hebrew Bible.
25. The expected answer is 'no' — or at least 'not primarily.' The rhetorical question implies that the wilderness period, before the elaborate sacrificial system was fully operational, was actually a period of purer relationship between God and Israel. This radical relativization of sacrifice parallels Jeremiah 7:22 ('I did not command your ancestors about burnt offerings'). The point is not that sacrifice is inherently wrong but that it was never the foundation of the relationship — justice and obedience were.

26. Sikkuth and Kiyyun are Mesopotamian astral deities. Sikkuth (Akkadian Sakkut, identified with the planet Saturn) and Kiyyun (Akkadian Kaiwanu, also Saturn) have been vocalized by the Masoretes with the vowels of shiqquts ('abomination, detestable thing'), deliberately distorting the divine names to express contempt. The verse can be read as past ('you carried') or future ('you will carry') — if future, it means they will carry their useless idols into exile. The LXX rendering of this verse is quoted by Stephen in Acts 7:42-43.
27. The destination 'beyond Damascus' points to Assyria — the empire that would conquer the northern kingdom in 722 BCE. Damascus stands between Israel and the Assyrian heartland; going 'beyond' it means deportation deep into Mesopotamia. The full divine title closes the chapter with maximum authority: YHWH Elohei Tseva'ot — the LORD, the God of Armies.

6

Summary: *Amos 6 pronounces woe on the complacent elite of both Zion and Samaria — those who live in luxury, feasting on the finest food and wine while the nation crumbles. They lounge on beds of ivory, sing idle songs, drink wine from bowls, and anoint themselves with the finest oils, 'but are not grieved over the ruin of Joseph.' God swears by himself: these complacent ones will be the first to go into exile. The chapter closes with images of total destruction — a house struck until it shatters, horses trying to run on rock, and the futility of Israel's pride in military conquests at Lo-debar and Karnaim.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The social critique in verses 4-7 provides one of the most detailed descriptions of elite lifestyle in the Hebrew Bible and serves as archaeological confirmation of Samaria's wealth in the 8th century BCE. The ivory beds, fattened calves, improvised songs, wine by the bowl, and fine oils paint a picture of conspicuous consumption that reads like a modern critique of inequality. The wordplay in verse 13 — Israel boasts of taking Lo-debar ('nothing') and Karnaim ('horns/power') — exposes the absurdity of their military pride: they celebrate capturing a town whose name literally means 'nothing.'*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'like David' (ke-David) in verse 5 in reference to musical improvisation is debated — does Amos criticize them for imitating David's musical innovation, or is this a neutral comparison? We rendered it plainly. The divine oath formula 'the LORD has sworn by himself' (v. 8) or 'by his soul' (be-nafsho) is among the strongest oath forms in the Hebrew Bible. Verse 10 describes a scene of plague so severe that bodies are burned rather than buried — an unusual practice in Israelite culture.*

Connections: *The woe oracle form connects to Isaiah 5:8-23 and Habakkuk 2:6-20. The ivory beds connect to the archaeological ivory finds at Samaria and to Amos 3:15. The reference to Calneh, Hamath, and Gath (v. 2) as fallen cities serves as warning examples. The Lo-debar wordplay connects to 2 Samuel 9:4 where Lo-debar is Mephibosheth's refuge. The divine oath 'by himself' parallels Genesis 22:16 and Hebrews 6:13.*

1Woe to those who are complacent in Zion, and to those who feel secure on the mountain of Samaria — the notable men of the foremost nation, to whom the house of Israel comes! 2Cross over to Calneh and look; then go from there to great Hamath; then go down to Gath of the Philistines. Are you better than these kingdoms? Is their territory larger than yours? 3You who push away the evil day yet bring near a reign of violence — 4They lie on beds of ivory and sprawl on their couches, eating lambs from the flock and calves from the fattening pen. 5They improvise songs to the sound of the harp, inventing musical instruments for themselves like David. 6They drink wine by the bowlful and anoint themselves with the finest oils — but they are not grieved over the ruin of Joseph. 7Therefore they will now go into exile at the head of the exiles, and the revelry of those who sprawl will come to an end. 8The Lord GOD has sworn by himself — declares the LORD, the God of Hosts: I detest the pride of Jacob and I hate his fortresses. I will hand over the city and everything in it. 9If ten people are left in one house, they too will die. 10When a relative comes with the one who burns the bodies to carry the bones out of the house, and asks anyone hiding in the recesses of the house, 'Is anyone still with you?' — and the answer is 'No one' — then he will say, 'Hush! We must not mention the name of the LORD.' 11For look — the LORD gives the command, and the great house will be smashed to fragments, and the small house to splinters. 12Do horses gallop on rock? Does anyone plow the sea with oxen? Yet you have turned justice into poison and the fruit of righteousness into wormwood. 13You who rejoice over Lo-debar, who say, 'Did we not take Karnaim for ourselves by our own strength?' 14For I am about to raise up a nation

against you, house of Israel — declares the LORD, the God of Hosts — and they will oppress you from Lebo-hamath to the Brook of the Arabah.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The woe (hoi) targets both Zion (Jerusalem) and Samaria — neither kingdom escapes. The word sha'ananim ('complacent, at ease, carefree') describes the false security of those who believe their privilege makes them invulnerable. The phrase nequvei reshit ha-goyim ('notable ones of the foremost nation') drips with irony — they consider themselves the cream of the greatest nation on earth.
2. Three fallen or diminished cities are cited as warnings: Calneh (an Assyrian-conquered city, possibly Kullani in north Syria), Hamath (conquered by Assyria in 738 BCE), and Gath (destroyed by Hazael or Uzziah). The rhetorical questions challenge Israel's assumption of invulnerability — if these great kingdoms fell, why should Israel expect immunity? The argument is geographical: these cities were greater than Israel, yet they fell.
3. The paradox is precise: they mentally push away the day of judgment (ha-menadim le-yom ra) while their actions bring the 'seat of violence' (shevet chamas) ever closer. They refuse to think about consequences while accelerating the very behaviors that guarantee catastrophe.
4. The catalogue of luxury begins. 'Beds of ivory' (mittot shen) — confirmed by archaeological finds of carved ivory furniture inlays at Samaria. The verb seruchim ('sprawl, stretch out') suggests indolent reclining. The lambs and calves are not ordinary food but the choicest — taken from among the flock (not the old or weak) and from the marbeq ('fattening pen,' where animals are stall-fed for maximum tenderness).
5. The verb portim ('improvise, strum idly') suggests casual, self-indulgent music-making. The comparison to David (ke-David) is loaded — David invented instruments for worship (1 Chronicles 23:5, 2 Chronicles 29:26-27), but these elites invent instruments for their own entertainment. They claim David's artistic legacy while lacking his devotion.
6. The mizreqi ('bowls') are not drinking cups but temple bowls used for catching sacrificial blood (Numbers 7:13) — the elites drink wine from vessels meant for sacred use, in quantities so large that cups will not suffice. The 'finest oils' (reshit shemannim) means they use the first-pressed, purest olive oil as cosmetic rather than offering it to God. The climactic indictment: ve-lo nechlu al shever Yoseph ('but they are not grieved over the ruin of Joseph'). Amid all their luxury, they have zero concern for the disintegrating nation around them.
7. Poetic justice: they who were 'first' (reshit) among the nations and used the 'first' oils will be 'first' (be-rosh) into exile. The word mirzach ('revelry, banquet') refers to a type of feast — possibly a funerary banquet or drinking club. The word seruchim ('those who sprawl') echoes verse 4, tying the judgment back to the luxury catalogue.
8. God swears by his own nephesh ('self, soul, being') — the highest possible oath, since there is no one greater to swear by (cf. Genesis 22:16, Hebrews 6:13). The word ge'on ('pride, majesty, excellence') is deliberately ambiguous — it can mean legitimate glory or arrogant pride. Here it means the self-congratulatory pride of a nation that confuses luxury with divine favor. The phrase 'I hate his fortresses' connects the judgment to the stored-up violence of 3:10.
9. The number ten may represent a large household or the minimum for a synagogue quorum (minyan) in later tradition. The point is that even survivors will not survive — death will pursue the remnant into their homes.
10. This is one of the most chilling scenes in prophetic literature. The death toll is so catastrophic that bodies must be burned rather than buried — an extreme measure in Israelite culture, normally reserved for criminals (Joshua 7:25). The whispered command 'Hush!' (has) followed by 'we must not mention the name of the LORD' reveals pure terror — they fear that invoking God's name might draw more of his attention and more death. The dodo ('his uncle') and mesarpho ('the one who burns him') are performing grim, emergency corpse-disposal.
11. God merely commands (metsavveh) — he does not need to personally strike. His word alone shatters buildings. The parallelism between 'great house' and 'small house' means no one is exempt — the mansions of the rich and the homes of the common people alike will be destroyed. The words resisim ('fragments') and beqi'im ('cracks, splinters') convey total structural collapse.
12. Two absurd impossibilities — horses cannot run on bare rock (they would slip), and oxen cannot plow the sea (following the reading ba-baqarim yam, 'the sea with oxen,' dividing the consonants differently). What Israel has done with justice is equally absurd — turning it into rosh ('poison') and tsedaqah into la'anah ('wormwood, bitterness'). The plant metaphor echoes 5:7. Justice should bear sweet fruit; Israel has produced poison.
13. Devastating wordplay on two real place names in Transjordan. Lo-debar (2 Samuel 9:4, 17:27) literally means 'nothing' or 'no-thing' — Israel rejoices over conquering 'Nothing.' Karnaim means 'horns,' a symbol of power — Israel boasts of seizing 'Power' by their own strength. The double irony: they celebrate capturing places whose names expose the emptiness and arrogance of their military pride. Both towns were likely recaptured from Aram during Jeroboam II's territorial expansion (2 Kings 14:25).
14. The unnamed nation is Assyria. The geographical extent — from Lebo-hamath (the northern boundary of Israel's claimed territory) to the Brook of the Arabah (the Wadi Zered or the southern Dead Sea boundary) — encompasses the entirety of Israel's territory under Jeroboam II (2 Kings 14:25). The very territory Israel boasted about conquering will be the territory under foreign oppression. The verb lachats ('oppress, press, squeeze') ironically echoes the oppression Israel has inflicted on the poor — now a foreign power will oppress them.

7

Summary: *Amos 7 presents the first three of five visions and the dramatic confrontation between Amos and Amaziah the priest of Bethel. In the first vision (locusts) and second vision (fire), Amos intercedes and God relents. In the third vision (the plumb line), God declares 'I will no longer pass by them' — intercession is no longer possible. The narrative then shifts to the confrontation at Bethel: Amaziah accuses Amos of conspiracy and orders him back to Judah. Amos responds with the famous declaration 'I was no prophet, nor a prophet's son' and delivers a devastating personal oracle against Amaziah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three visions follow a dramatic arc: in the first two, Amos successfully intercedes ('Lord GOD, please forgive!') and God relents. But in the third, no intercession is offered — the plumb line reveals that Israel is irredeemably out of true, and God will 'no longer pass by them.' The shift from dialogue to monologue is theologically devastating. The Amaziah confrontation (vv. 10-17) is the only narrative passage in the book and provides crucial context for Amos's prophetic authority. Amos's disclaimer — 'I was no prophet, nor a prophet's son, but a herdsman and a dresser of sycamores' — is not false modesty but a claim to unmediated divine calling, bypassing the prophetic guilds entirely.*

Translation Friction: *The word anakh ('plumb line') in verse 7-8 is debated. Traditional rendering is 'plumb line' but the word occurs only here and its meaning is uncertain — some scholars suggest 'tin' or 'lead' (a metal used in construction). We retained 'plumb line' as the most contextually coherent reading. Amos's statement 'I was no prophet' (lo navi anokhi) in verse 14 could be past tense ('I was not a prophet [before God called me]') or present tense ('I am not a [professional] prophet'). The Hebrew allows both; we rendered it with past tense to indicate his pre-calling status.*

Connections: *The vision sequence parallels Jeremiah's call visions (Jeremiah 1:11-14) and Zechariah's night visions (Zechariah 1-6). The plumb line connects to Isaiah 28:17 where God lays justice as a plumb line. Amaziah's charge of 'conspiracy' (qesher) uses the same word as Absalom's revolt (2 Samuel 15:12) and Jehu's coup (2 Kings 9:14). The sycamore-fig dresser detail connects to 1 Kings 10:27 and 2 Chronicles 1:15. The oracle against Amaziah's wife anticipates the sexual violence of conquest.*

¹This is what the Lord GOD showed me: He was forming a swarm of locusts at the time when the late crop was just beginning to grow — the late crop after the king's harvest. ²When the locusts had finished devouring the vegetation of the land, I said, 'Lord GOD, please forgive! How can Jacob survive? He is so small!' ³The LORD relented concerning this. 'It will not happen,' said the LORD. ⁴This is what the Lord GOD showed me: The Lord GOD was calling for judgment by fire, and it consumed the great deep and was devouring the farmland. ⁵I said, 'Lord GOD, please stop! How can Jacob survive? He is so small!' ⁶The LORD relented concerning this. 'This also will not happen,' said the Lord GOD. ⁷This is what he showed me: The Lord was standing beside a wall built with a plumb line, with a plumb line in his hand. ⁸The LORD said to me, 'What do you see, Amos?' I said, 'A plumb line.' Then the Lord said, 'I am setting a plumb line in the midst of my people Israel. I will no longer pass by them. ⁹The high places of Isaac will be made desolate, and the sanctuaries of Israel will be laid waste. I will rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword. ¹⁰Then Amaziah the priest of Bethel sent word to Jeroboam king of Israel: 'Amos has conspired against you in the very heart of the house of Israel. The land cannot endure all his words.' ¹¹For this is what Amos has said: 'Jeroboam will die by the sword, and Israel will surely go into exile from its land.' ¹²Then Amaziah said to Amos, 'Seer! Leave! Flee to the land of Judah. Earn your bread there and prophesy there. ¹³But never again prophesy at Bethel, for it is the king's sanctuary and a royal temple.' ¹⁴Amos answered Amaziah: 'I was no prophet, nor was I a prophet's son. I was a herdsman and a dresser of sycamore figs. ¹⁵The LORD took me from following the flock, and the LORD said to me, "Go, prophesy to my people Israel." ¹⁶Now then, hear the word of the LORD. You say, "Do not prophesy against Israel, and do not preach against the house of Isaac." ¹⁷Therefore this is what the LORD says: Your wife will become a prostitute in the city. Your sons and daughters will fall by the sword. Your land will be measured out and divided. You yourself will die on unclean soil. And Israel will surely go into exile from its land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The vision format — 'the Lord GOD showed me' (koh hir'ani) — marks the beginning of the vision cycle that runs through chapter 9. The timing is crucial: the leqesh ('late growth, spring crop') comes after the king has already taken his portion (gizzei ha-melekh, 'the king's mowings/shearings'). The late crop was what the common people depended on — losing it to locusts meant starvation for ordinary farmers while the king's share was already safely collected.
2. Amos intercedes — the prophet who announced judgment now pleads for mercy. The verb selach ('forgive') is used exclusively of God's forgiveness in the Hebrew Bible. The argument is not Israel's innocence but their smallness (qaton) — they cannot survive what they deserve. 'How can Jacob survive?' (mi yaqum Ya'aqov) literally asks 'who will raise up Jacob?' — the answer is: only God can.
3. The verb nicham ('relented, was grieved, changed his mind') is one of the most theologically complex words in the Hebrew Bible. When applied to God, it does not imply fickleness but responsiveness — God's character does not change, but his actions respond to human intercession. The English 'repented' (KJV) misleadingly suggests God had sinned; 'relented' captures the change of intended action without implying moral failing.
4. The second vision escalates from locusts to cosmic fire. The fire devours the tehom rabbah ('great deep') — the primordial waters beneath the earth — before attacking the cheleq ('portion, allotted farmland'). Fire that consumes even the subterranean ocean is an apocalyptic image of total destruction surpassing any natural disaster. The verb qorei ('calling, summoning') depicts God issuing a judicial summons — the fire is not accidental but a legal action.
5. The second intercession changes one word: instead of selach ('forgive,' v. 2), Amos says chadal ('stop, cease'). The fire vision was so overwhelming that Amos does not even ask for forgiveness — he just begs God to stop. The rest of the plea is identical, maintaining the refrain-like structure of the vision cycle.
6. Again God relents — gam hi ('this also') notes the pattern: two visions, two intercessions, two acts of divine mercy. The audience expects the pattern to continue. It will not.
7. The third vision shifts dramatically. God is no longer sending destruction from a distance but standing (nitsav) personally beside the wall with the measuring instrument in his own hand. The word anakh occurs only in this passage and its precise meaning is debated — 'plumb line' (a weighted cord used to test whether a wall is vertical) is the traditional and contextually best rendering, though 'tin' or 'lead' (the metal weight on the cord) is linguistically possible.
8. God addresses Amos by name — the only time in the vision cycle. The question 'What do you see?' draws the prophet into participation rather than mere observation. The devastating declaration lo osif od avor lo ('I will no longer pass by them') means God will no longer overlook Israel's moral crookedness. The verb avor ('pass by') echoes the Passover tradition — God once 'passed over' Israel in mercy; now he will stop 'passing by' in judgment. No intercession is offered or invited. The pattern is broken.
9. The use of 'Isaac' (Yischaq) instead of 'Israel' or 'Jacob' is unusual — it may connect to the patriarchal tradition or may be a wordplay on the verb tsachaq ('laugh'), suggesting the 'laughter' of complacency will become desolation. The mention of 'the house of Jeroboam' names the current dynasty directly — this is the specific threat that triggers Amaziah's political response in the next verse.
10. The narrative shifts abruptly from vision to confrontation. Amaziah is the chief priest of the royal sanctuary at Bethel — a political-religious appointee, not a Levitical priest. His charge of qesher ('conspiracy') uses the same word applied to actual coups (Absalom in 2 Samuel 15:12, Jehu in 2 Kings 9:14) — he frames Amos's prophecy as treason rather than divine message. The phrase 'the land cannot endure' (lo tukhal ha-arets lehakhil) suggests Amos's words are so destabilizing that the nation itself cannot contain them.
11. Amaziah quotes Amos — but slightly distorts the message. Amos said God would rise against the 'house of Jeroboam' (the dynasty) with the sword (v. 9), not that Jeroboam himself would die by the sword. Jeroboam II actually died a natural death (2 Kings 14:29); it was his son Zechariah who was assassinated (2 Kings 15:8-10). Amaziah's paraphrase sharpens the personal threat to make it sound more treasonous.
12. Amaziah calls Amos chozeh ('seer') rather than navi ('prophet') — possibly a dismissive term for a visionary or a recognition that Amos operated outside the official prophetic guilds. The command 'flee' (berach) implies danger — Amaziah may be warning Amos that his life is at risk, or simply ordering him to run. The phrase 'eat bread there' (ekhal sham lechem) is an insult — it implies Amos prophesies for money, that prophecy is his bread-winning profession.
13. Amaziah's argument is entirely political: Bethel belongs to the king (miqdash melekh, 'king's sanctuary') and is a beit mamlakhah ('royal house, temple of the kingdom'). He defines the sanctuary by its political patron rather than its divine owner. This is precisely the conflation of religion and power that Amos attacks — Bethel is supposed to be 'House of God' but has become 'House of the King.'
14. Amos's response is the most important autobiographical statement by any prophet. Lo navi anokhi ('I was no prophet') — the Hebrew allows either past or present tense. We render past tense because Amos describes his status before God called him. He was not a member of the prophetic guilds (benei ha-nevi'im, 'sons of the prophets') who served as professional religious functionaries. He was a boqer ('herdsman, cattle-breeder') and a boles shiqmim ('dresser of sycamore figs'). The sycamore fig required manual piercing to ripen properly — a low-status agricultural task. Amos claims no institutional authority; his only credential is God's direct call.

15. The verb *yiqqacheni* ('took me') implies divine seizure — God did not invite Amos but commandeered him. The phrase *me-acharei ha-tson* ('from behind the flock') locates the call in the middle of ordinary work — there was no temple vision, no prophetic school, no gradual training. The designation *ammi Yisra'el* ('my people Israel') is God's own claim — Israel belongs to God, not to Jeroboam, and God sends prophets to his own people regardless of Amaziah's territorial claims.
16. Amos turns Amaziah's own words back on him. The verb *tattif* ('preach, drip, drop') literally means 'to drip' — prophecy drips from the prophet like water or rain. It can be used contemptuously (Micah 2:6, 11) to mean 'stop your dripping/drivel.' Amos quotes Amaziah's prohibition as the setup for the devastating oracle that follows.
17. The oracle against Amaziah is systematically devastating — it strikes every dimension of his life: his wife (sexual humiliation during conquest), his children (killed), his land (confiscated), his person (dying in exile on 'unclean' gentile soil — the worst fate for a priest whose identity depends on ritual purity), and his nation (exiled). The verb *tizneh* ('will become a prostitute') likely refers to the sexual violence that accompanied ancient conquest rather than voluntary prostitution — Amaziah's wife will be sexually violated by invading soldiers.
17. The final statement — 'Israel will surely go into exile from its land' — repeats exactly what Amaziah accused Amos of saying (v. 11), confirming it as God's own word.

8

Summary: *Amos 8 presents the fourth vision — a basket of summer fruit (qayits) whose name puns on 'end' (qets) — and declares that the end has come for Israel. The chapter then returns to the social justice theme with a scathing depiction of merchants who cheat the poor: they cannot wait for the Sabbath to end so they can resume dishonest trade, making the ephah small and the shekel heavy. God swears he will never forget these deeds. The chapter climaxes with a prophecy of cosmic darkness and a famine — not of bread or water, but of hearing the words of the LORD.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The qayits/qets wordplay in verses 1-2 is the most famous pun in the prophetic literature. A basket of summer fruit (qayits, the last harvest of the season) sounds like 'the end' (qets). The vision communicates through sound as much as sight — Hebrew listeners would hear the doom in the word itself. The merchants' monologue in verses 5-6 is one of the rare places where the prophets give voice to the oppressors, letting them condemn themselves from their own mouths. The 'famine of the word' prophecy (vv. 11-12) is theologically devastating — the worst judgment is not physical suffering but God's silence.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'to buy the poor for silver and the needy for a pair of sandals' (v. 6) echoes 2:6 almost verbatim, creating an inclusio across the book. The astronomical imagery in verse 9 ('I will make the sun go down at noon') could be literal (an eclipse — there was a solar eclipse visible from Israel on June 15, 763 BCE) or metaphorical (premature catastrophe). We preserved the ambiguity. The description of mourning rites in verse 10 — sackcloth, shaved heads — connects to broader ancient Near Eastern funeral practices.*

Connections: *The qayits/qets wordplay has parallels in Jeremiah 1:11-12 (shaqed/shoqed) and Ezekiel 7:2-6 (qets). The merchants' speech echoes Hosea 12:7-8 and Micah 6:10-11. The cosmic darkness connects to Exodus 10:22 (the plague of darkness) and Joel 2:31. The 'famine of the word' anticipates the silence of God in the intertestamental period. The basket of summer fruit connects to Jeremiah 24 (the two baskets of figs).*

1This is what the Lord GOD showed me: a basket of summer fruit. 2He said, 'What do you see, Amos?' I said, 'A basket of summer fruit.' Then the LORD said to me, 'The end has come for my people Israel. I will no longer pass by them. 3The songs of the temple will become wailing on that day, declares the Lord GOD. The corpses will be many — in every place they will be thrown out. Silence!' 4Hear this, you who trample the needy and bring ruin to the poor of the land — 5You say, 'When will the new moon be over so we can sell grain? When will the Sabbath end so we can open our wheat for sale? — making the measure small and the price large and cheating with dishonest scales.' 6buying the poor for silver and the needy for a pair of sandals, and selling even the sweepings with the wheat.' 7The LORD has sworn by the pride of Jacob: I will never forget any of their deeds. 8Will the land not tremble because of this, and every one of its inhabitants mourn? All of it will rise like the Nile — surging and sinking like the River of Egypt. 9On that day, declares the Lord GOD, I will make the sun go down at

noon and darken the earth in broad daylight. ¹⁰I will turn your festivals into mourning and all your songs into dirges. I will put sackcloth on every waist and baldness on every head. I will make it like the mourning for an only son, and its end will be like a bitter day. ¹¹Days are coming, declares the Lord GOD, when I will send a famine on the land — not a famine of bread, and not a thirst for water, but of hearing the words of the LORD. ¹²They will stagger from sea to sea, and from north to east they will wander, searching for the word of the LORD — but they will not find it. ¹³On that day the beautiful young women and the young men will faint from thirst. ¹⁴Those who swear by the guilt of Samaria, who say, 'As your god lives, O Dan!' and 'As the way of Beer-sheba lives!' — they will fall and never rise again.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The vision is simple — just a basket of qayits ('summer fruit,' the late figs harvested in July-August). The simplicity is deceptive; the theological weight is carried entirely by the wordplay that follows in verse 2. The word keluv ('basket') is a rare term, possibly a woven cage-like container used for fruit collection.
2. The wordplay is the crux: qayits ('summer fruit') sounds like qets ('end'). The basket of final-harvest fruit becomes a symbol of Israel's final season — the harvest is over, the end has arrived. The declaration lo osif od avor lo ('I will no longer pass by them') repeats 7:8 exactly, confirming the irreversibility of judgment. As in 7:8, God calls Israel 'my people' (ammi) — the intimacy of the covenant makes the judgment more painful, not less.
3. Temple songs (shiroi heikhal) that were meant for praise become howls of grief. The word peger ('corpse, dead body') is used for bodies without dignity — discarded remains rather than honored dead. The final word has ('Silence! Hush!') may be a command to stop the wailing, an expression of stunned horror, or a liturgical signal. Its abruptness is chilling — the verse simply stops with a shushing sound.
4. The verb sho'afim ('trample, swallow up, pant after') is the same word used in 2:7 — creating a literary connection between the opening indictment and this near-closing accusation. The verb lashbit ('to put an end to, to bring to ruin') applied to the aniyei erets ('poor of the land') means the wealthy are systematically eliminating the poor as a class — not just exploiting them but destroying them.
5. The merchants' own words condemn them. They observe the holy days (new moon, Sabbath) only as annoyances that interrupt commerce. Three forms of commercial fraud are listed: making the ephah small (reducing the measure of grain the buyer receives), making the shekel large (inflating the price by using heavier-than-standard weights), and falsifying the scales (mo'aznei mirmah, 'scales of deceit'). Each violates explicit Torah commands (Leviticus 19:35-36, Deuteronomy 25:13-16).
6. This verse echoes 2:6 almost word for word — 'buying the poor for silver and the needy for a pair of sandals' — creating a structural bracket around the entire book. The debt-slavery system reduces human beings to commodities valued at the price of footwear. The final detail — selling mappal bar ('sweepings of grain,' the chaff and debris swept from the threshing floor mixed into the good wheat) — is petty fraud added to systemic injustice.
7. God swears by 'the pride of Jacob' (ge'on Ya'aqov) — this may be ironic (swearing by their arrogance, which God detests per 6:8), or it may refer to God himself as Israel's true pride/glory. The oath 'I will never forget' (im eshkach la-netsach) inverts the usual hope that God would 'forget' (i.e., forgive) sins. These deeds are permanently recorded.
8. The earthquake imagery connects back to the superscription (1:1) and its reference to the earthquake. The comparison to the Nile's flooding (ka-'or, 'like the Nile') is geologically apt — the land will heave up and down like the annual Nile flood, unstable and overwhelming. The verbs nigresheh ('surge, be driven') and nishqe'ah ('sink, settle') describe the oscillation of flood waters and, by extension, the convulsions of the earth.
9. The sun setting at noon — when it should be at its zenith — reverses the natural order. This may refer to the solar eclipse of June 15, 763 BCE, visible from Israel and recorded in Assyrian annals, which would have occurred close to Amos's prophetic career. Whether literal eclipse or metaphorical catastrophe, the image of premature darkness in the middle of the day captures the sudden, total reversal of Israel's fortunes. The phrase be-yom or ('in a day of light') intensifies the contrast — darkness when light is expected.
10. Every celebration becomes its opposite: festivals become mourning, songs become dirges (qinah). Sackcloth and head-shaving were standard mourning practices (Isaiah 15:2-3, Jeremiah 48:37). The climactic comparison — 'like mourning for an only son' (ke-evel yachid) — describes the most insoluble grief imaginable: losing an only child, the one who carries the family name and future. This grief has no remedy and no successor to provide comfort.
11. This is one of the most theologically profound verses in the prophetic corpus. The worst famine is not physical but spiritual — the absence of God's word. Israel silenced the prophets (2:12) and told Amos to stop prophesying (7:13); now God will give them exactly what they asked for: silence. The irony is complete — they wanted the prophets to stop speaking, and God will grant their wish as the ultimate punishment. A nation without divine communication is a nation without guidance, hope, or future.
12. The verb na'u ('stagger, wander') is the same verb used in 4:8 for drought refugees staggering between cities looking for water. Now they stagger across the compass searching for a prophetic word. 'From sea to sea' (from the Mediterranean to the Dead Sea) and 'from north to east' covers three of four directions — the south (Judah) is notably absent, perhaps because the word of the LORD will persist there. The phrase ve-lo yimtsa'u ('but they will not find it') is the final, devastating conclusion.

13. The strongest and most vibrant members of society — young women in their beauty and young men in their vigor — will collapse. If the young cannot endure, no one can. The 'thirst' (tsama) here is both physical and spiritual — the famine of the word affects even those who should be most resilient.
14. The 'guilt of Samaria' (ashmat Shomeron) likely refers to the golden calf at the Samaria/Bethel sanctuary. Dan and Beer-sheba represent the northernmost and southernmost cult sites — 'from Dan to Beer-sheba' was the traditional description of Israel's full extent (Judges 20:1). The oath formulas ('as your god lives,' 'as the way of Beer-sheba lives') invoke false deities or corrupt cult practices. The word derekh ('way') may refer to the pilgrimage route itself or to the deity worshipped there. The chapter ends with a fall from which there is no recovery: ve-lo yaqumu od ('they will never rise again').

9

Summary: Amos 9 contains the fifth and final vision — God standing beside the altar commanding its destruction — followed by a hymn of inescapable divine power, a theological qualification distinguishing between the 'sinful kingdom' and the covenant promises, and the book's stunning reversal: the restoration of the 'booth of David' and an age of superabundant agricultural blessing. The chapter moves from the most severe judgment in the book to its most hopeful promise, ending with God's pledge that Israel will be planted in their land 'never again to be uprooted.'

What Makes This Remarkable: The fifth vision is the most terrifying — God himself stands at the altar (not beside a wall or above a basket, but at the central place of worship) and commands destruction from the top of the pillars down. There is no intercession, no dialogue, no wordplay — only judgment. Yet the chapter's ending (vv. 11-15) is the most hopeful passage in Amos. The 'booth of David' (sukkath David, v. 11) — not the palace or temple but the humble sukkah — suggests a restoration that begins from humility rather than imperial power. This passage is quoted by James at the Jerusalem Council (Acts 15:16-17) as the scriptural basis for including Gentiles in the people of God.

Translation Friction: The relationship between the judgment section (vv. 1-10) and the restoration section (vv. 11-15) is debated — some scholars consider the hopeful ending a later addition, but we render the canonical text as it stands. The phrase 'sinful kingdom' (ha-mamlakhah ha-chatta'ah, v. 8) is carefully qualified: God will destroy the sinful kingdom but 'will not completely destroy the house of Jacob.' This distinction between the political entity and the covenant people is theologically crucial. The LXX version of verse 12 ('so that the rest of humanity may seek the LORD') differs significantly from the MT ('so that they may possess the remnant of Edom') — we follow the MT.

Connections: The altar vision connects to the destruction of Bethel's altars (3:14). The 'nowhere to hide' passage (vv. 2-4) parallels Psalm 139:7-12 in structure but inverts its theology — what is comfort in the psalm becomes terror in Amos. The booth of David connects to Isaiah 16:5 and 2 Samuel 7 (the Davidic covenant). Acts 15:16-17 quotes verse 12 from the LXX. The agricultural abundance in verses 13-15 reverses the futility curses of 5:11. The final planting promise ('never again to be uprooted') echoes Jeremiah 24:6, 31:28, and 42:10.

1I saw the Lord standing beside the altar, and he said: 'Strike the tops of the pillars so that the thresholds shake! Shatter them on the heads of all the people. Those who remain I will kill with the sword. Not one of them will flee successfully; not one of them will escape. 2If they dig down to Sheol, my hand will take them from there. If they climb up to the heavens, I will bring them down from there. 3If they hide on the summit of Carmel, I will search them out and take them from there. If they conceal themselves from my sight at the bottom of the sea, I will command the serpent there, and it will bite them. 4Even if they go into captivity before their enemies, I will command the sword there, and it will kill them. I will fix my eyes on them for harm, not for good. 5The Lord GOD of Hosts — he touches the earth and it melts, and all who live in it mourn. All of it rises like the Nile and sinks like the River of Egypt. 6He builds his upper chambers in the heavens and sets his vault over the earth. He calls for the waters of the sea and pours them out over the face of the earth — the LORD is his name. 7Are you not like the Cushites to me, people of Israel? declares the LORD. Did I not bring Israel up from the land of Egypt, and the Philistines from Caphtor, and the Arameans from Kir? 8Look — the eyes of the Lord GOD are on the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from the face of the earth. Yet I will not completely destroy the house of Jacob, declares the LORD. 9For I am giving the command, and I will shake the house of Israel among all the nations as one shakes a sieve — but not a pebble will

fall to the ground. ¹⁰All the sinners among my people will die by the sword — those who say, 'Disaster will never reach us or come near us.' ¹¹On that day I will raise up the booth of David that has fallen. I will repair its breaches, raise up its ruins, and rebuild it as in the days of old, ¹²so that they may possess the remnant of Edom and all the nations over whom my name is called, declares the LORD who does this. ¹³Days are coming, declares the LORD, when the plowman will overtake the reaper and the treader of grapes will overtake the sower. The mountains will drip with sweet wine, and all the hills will flow with it. ¹⁴I will restore the fortunes of my people Israel. They will rebuild the ruined cities and inhabit them. They will plant vineyards and drink their wine; they will cultivate gardens and eat their fruit. ¹⁵I will plant them on their land, and they will never again be uprooted from the land that I have given them, says the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The final vision is the most direct — no symbolic object, no question, just God standing at the altar of judgment. The kaptor ('capital, top of the pillar') of the sanctuary is struck so that the sippim ('thresholds, foundations') shake — the building collapses from top to bottom on the worshippers' heads. This may be the Bethel sanctuary or a symbolic representation of all Israel's worship sites. The language 'not one will flee... not one will escape' (lo yanus lahem nas ve-lo yimmalet lahem palit) eliminates all possibility of survival.
2. The cosmic 'nowhere to hide' passage begins. Sheol (the underworld, the realm of the dead) is the lowest point; the heavens are the highest. The Hebrew uses extremes — vertical axis from deepest to highest — to establish that no spatial dimension can provide escape. Compare Psalm 139:8, which uses the same vertical axis to express the comfort of God's omnipresence; Amos inverts it into terror.
3. The horizontal axis now: Carmel, with its dense forests and countless caves, represents the best hiding place on land. The bottom of the sea represents the most inaccessible place on earth. Even there, God commands the nachash ('serpent, sea monster') — the primordial chaos creature of the deep — to attack. The serpent echoes the snake-in-the-wall image from 5:19, creating another structural connection across the book.
4. The final impossibility: even exile itself — normally the ultimate punishment — will not satisfy justice. God's eyes (a phrase usually associated with divine watchfulness and protection, as in Deuteronomy 11:12) will be fixed on them le-ra'ah ve-lo le-tovah ('for harm and not for good'). The inversion of the protective divine gaze into a hostile stare is the most psychologically terrifying image in the passage.
5. The third and final doxology fragment (cf. 4:13, 5:8-9). God merely touches (ha-nogei'a) the earth and it melts (tamog) — total dissolution from the lightest contact. The Nile imagery reprises 8:8. These doxology fragments, scattered across the book, function as hymnic refrains celebrating the power of the God who judges.
6. The word ma'alotav ('his upper chambers, his stairway') refers to God's heavenly dwelling built above the firmament. The word aguddato ('his vault, his band') likely refers to the dome of the sky — the firmament that arches over the earth. God's architectural mastery encompasses the entire cosmos. The sea-water verse echoes 5:8 exactly, creating continuity across the doxology fragments.
7. This is one of the most theologically radical verses in the Hebrew Bible. God compares Israel to the Cushites (Ethiopians/Nubians) — a distant people with no covenant — and claims to have directed the migrations of the Philistines (from Caphtor, likely Crete) and the Arameans (from Kir, cf. 1:5) just as he directed Israel's Exodus. Israel's election is not denied but radically relativized — God is sovereign over all nations' histories, not just Israel's. This demolishes the nationalistic theology that assumed God cared only about Israel.
8. The crucial theological distinction: the 'sinful kingdom' (ha-mamlakhah ha-chatta'ah) — the corrupt political entity — will be destroyed, but the 'house of Jacob' — the covenant people as a whole — will not be completely annihilated. The word ephes ('except, however') marks the transition from total judgment to qualified mercy. The double negative lo hashmeid ashmid ('I will not utterly destroy') is emphatic — complete annihilation is explicitly ruled out, preserving a remnant for the restoration that follows.
9. The sieve image is precise: the kevarah ('sieve') is shaken to separate grain from debris. When grain is sieved, small pebbles (tserorot) either pass through or are caught and discarded. The meaning depends on whether the tsror ('pebble') represents the righteous (who will not be lost) or the wicked (who will not escape judgment). The latter reading fits better: no guilty person will slip through God's sifting process. The exile is not random scattering but purposeful sifting.
10. The judgment is specific — not all of 'my people' but 'all the sinners among my people' (kol chatta'ei ammi). The qualifier is important: it distinguishes between the sinful individuals and the covenant community as a whole. Their fatal delusion is articulated: they believe disaster 'will not reach us or come near us' (lo taggish ve-taqdim ba'adenu). This is the complacency of 6:1-3 expressed as theology — they have turned divine election into a guarantee of safety.
11. The sukkah David ('booth of David') is the theological pivot of the entire book. The word sukkah is used for the temporary shelters of the Feast of Tabernacles (Leviticus 23:42) — a flimsy structure of branches, not a permanent building. Applied to David's dynasty, it means the once-great kingdom has been reduced to a ramshackle hut. Yet God will rebuild even this. The verbs are architectural: gadarti ('repair the breaches'), aqim ('raise up'), and banitiah ('rebuild'). The phrase ki-mei olam ('as in the days of old/forever') points back to the united monarchy under David and Solomon.

- 11.** This verse is quoted by James at the Jerusalem Council (Acts 15:16-17) from the LXX, which reads 'so that the rest of humanity may seek the LORD' — a reading that supported the inclusion of Gentiles.
- 12.** The MT reads 'possess the remnant of Edom' (yireshu et she'erit Edom), while the LXX reads 'so that the rest of humanity may seek [the Lord]' (ekzetesosi hoi kataloipoi ton anthropon) — a significantly different reading that James quotes in Acts 15:17. The LXX reading may reflect a different Hebrew text or a theological interpretation. We follow the MT. The phrase 'over whom my name is called' (asher niqra shemi alehem) indicates God's ownership — the nations claimed by God's name belong to him.
- 13.** The agricultural reversal of the futility curses. The harvest will be so abundant that reaping is still ongoing when plowing begins for the next season, and the grape harvest overlaps with the next sowing — a vision of agricultural superabundance where the land produces faster than it can be harvested. The mountains 'dripping with sweet wine' (hittifu he-harim asis) and hills 'flowing' (titmogagnah, literally 'melting') paint a picture of a land so fertile it dissolves into abundance. This reverses the drought, blight, and famine of 4:6-9.
- 14.** The phrase shavti et shevut ('I will restore the fortunes') is the standard Hebrew expression for reversal of national disaster — it may include but is not limited to return from exile. The specific reversals — building and inhabiting cities, planting vineyards and drinking wine, cultivating gardens and eating fruit — directly reverse the futility curses of 5:11 ('you have built houses of cut stone but will not live in them; you have planted choice vineyards but will not drink their wine'). What was threatened is now promised.
- 15.** The final verse of Amos is a permanent promise. The verb nata'tim ('I will plant them') treats Israel as God's own planting — a vine or tree set in soil by divine hands. The phrase lo yinateshu od ('they will never again be uprooted') uses the strongest possible negation — this planting is permanent. The book that began with devastation (1:2 — the pastures wither, Carmel dries up) ends with permanent agricultural rootedness. God speaks as 'the LORD your God' (YHWH Elohekha) — the covenant formula is restored. The last word belongs to hope.

Obadiah

Summary: *Obadiah — the shortest book in the Hebrew Bible at 21 verses — is a single, concentrated oracle against Edom for betraying Judah during the Babylonian destruction of Jerusalem in 586 BCE. The prophecy moves in three stages: Edom's pride and false security in their mountain fortress will be shattered (vv. 1-9); their specific crimes against 'your brother Jacob' during Jerusalem's fall are enumerated (vv. 10-14); and the coming day of the LORD will bring justice — what Edom did will be done to them, while Israel will be restored and possess Edom's territory (vv. 15-21).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Obadiah's oracle shares extensive verbal parallels with Jeremiah 49:7-22, raising questions about literary dependence — either Obadiah drew on Jeremiah, Jeremiah on Obadiah, or both used a common source. The repeated 'you should not have' (al + jussive) construction in verses 12-14 is unique in prophetic literature — eight prohibitions in rapid succession, each condemning a specific act of betrayal during Jerusalem's fall. The theological center is the kinship principle: Edom descended from Esau, Jacob's twin brother (Genesis 25:24-26), making their betrayal not merely political treachery but fratricide. The book ends with a remarkable theological statement: 'the kingdom will belong to the LORD' (ve-hayetah la-YHWH ha-melukhah) — the ultimate resolution of all political conflict.*

Translation Friction: *The date of Obadiah is debated — the reference to Jerusalem's fall could indicate 586 BCE (Babylonian destruction) or an earlier raid. We treat it as post-586 based on the specificity of the accusations in verses 10-14. The word sepharad in verse 20 is famously uncertain — it may refer to Sardis in Lydia, a location in Media, or somewhere else entirely (later Jewish tradition identified it with Spain, giving us 'Sephardic' Jews). We transliterate without speculating. The relationship between Obadiah's text and Jeremiah 49 required careful attention to ensure our rendering reflects the Hebrew of Obadiah specifically rather than harmonizing with our Jeremiah rendering.*

Connections: *Parallel passages in Jeremiah 49:7-22. The Esau-Jacob conflict traces back to Genesis 25-36. Edom's betrayal during Jerusalem's fall is also condemned in Psalm 137:7 ('Remember, LORD, against the Edomites the day of Jerusalem'), Lamentations 4:21-22, and Ezekiel 25:12-14, 35:1-15. The 'day of the LORD' theme connects to Joel 2:1-2, Amos 5:18-20, and Zephaniah 1:14-18. The final statement 'the kingdom will belong to the LORD' anticipates Revelation 11:15.*

¹The vision of Obadiah. This is what the Lord GOD says concerning Edom: We have heard a report from the LORD — a messenger has been sent among the nations: 'Rise up! Let us rise against her for battle!' ²Look — I have made you small among the nations; you are utterly despised. ³The pride of your heart has deceived you — you who live in the clefts of the rock, whose dwelling is high, who say in your heart, 'Who can bring me down to the ground?' ⁴Even if you soar as high as the eagle, even if you set your nest among the stars — from there I will bring you down, declares the LORD. ⁵If thieves came to you — if robbers in the night — how utterly you would be destroyed! Would they not steal only what they wanted? If grape-pickers came to you, would they not leave some gleanings? ⁶How Esau has been ransacked! His hidden treasures have been sought out! ⁷All your allies have driven you to the border. Those at peace with you have deceived you and overpowered you. Those who eat your bread have set a trap beneath you — and you do not even understand it. ⁸On that day, declares the LORD, will I not destroy the wise from Edom and understanding from the mountain of Esau? ⁹Your warriors will be shattered, Teman, so that everyone from the mountain of Esau will be cut off by slaughter. ¹⁰Because of the violence done to your brother Jacob, shame will cover you, and you will be cut off forever. ¹¹On the day you stood by while strangers carried off his wealth, while foreigners entered his gates and cast lots over Jerusalem — you were just like one of them. ¹²You should not have gloated over your brother on the day of his misfortune. You should not have rejoiced over the people of Judah on the day of their ruin. You should not have boasted on the day of distress. ¹³You should not have entered the gate of my people on the day of their disaster. You should not have gloated over their suffering on the day of their disaster. You should not have reached for their wealth on the day of their disaster. ¹⁴You should not have stood at the crossroads to cut down his fugitives. You should not have handed over his survivors on the day of distress. ¹⁵For the day of the LORD is near against all the nations. As you have done, it will be done to you. Your deeds will return on your own head. ¹⁶Just as you drank on my holy mountain, so all the nations will drink continually. They will drink and gulp down, and they will be as though they had never existed. ¹⁷But on Mount Zion there will be deliverance, and it will be holy. The house of Jacob will possess their rightful inheritance. ¹⁸The house of Jacob will be a fire and the house of Joseph a flame, but the house of Esau will be stubble. They will set them ablaze and consume them, and there will be no survivor from the house of Esau — for the LORD has spoken. ¹⁹Those of the Negev will possess the mountain of Esau, and those of the lowland will possess the land of the Philistines. They will possess the territory of Ephraim and the territory of Samaria, and Benjamin will possess Gilead. ²⁰The exiles of this host of the people of Israel who are among the Canaanites as far as Zarephath, and the exiles of Jerusalem who are in Sepharad, will possess the cities of the Negev. ²¹Deliverers will go up to Mount Zion to govern the mountain of Esau, and the kingdom will belong to the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription identifies this as a chazon ('vision') — the same word used for Isaiah's prophecy (Isaiah 1:1). The name Obadiah (Ovadyah) means 'servant of the LORD.' Nothing else is known about this prophet — no genealogy, no hometown, no date marker. The shift from 'we have heard' (shamu'ah shamanu, first person plural) to the divine messenger's call among the nations creates a dramatic scene: God has summoned the nations to war against Edom, and the prophet overhears the mobilization order.
1. The word tsir ('messenger, envoy, ambassador') indicates a formal diplomatic mission — God has sent an official envoy to rally nations against Edom.
2. God addresses Edom directly in second person. The word qaton ('small') contrasts with Edom's self-perception as powerful and secure. The word bazui ('despised') is emphatic with me'od ('utterly, greatly') — Edom will be treated with contempt by the very nations they thought were their allies.
3. The word zedon ('pride, arrogance, presumption') is from a root meaning 'to boil over' — Edom's heart seethes with overconfidence. The geographical description is precise: Edom's capital Sela (later Petra) was built in narrow rock clefts (chagvei sela) accessible only through a narrow canyon (the Siq). The word sela ('rock') is also the name of the Edomite city (2 Kings 14:7). Edom's geography reinforced their arrogance — perched in inaccessible mountain strongholds, they believed themselves impregnable.
3. The rhetorical question 'Who can bring me down?' (mi yorideni arets) is the classic voice of hubris — the assumption that geographical advantage equals invulnerability. God will answer this question in the next verse.
4. God's answer to Edom's question escalates beyond geography to cosmology. Even if Edom's height surpassed eagles (who nest on the highest cliffs) and reached the stars themselves, God would pull them down. The verb oridekha ('I will bring you down') answers mi yorideni ('who can bring me down?') from verse 3 — God can. The eagle (nesher) was associated with Edom's mountain dwelling; the stars represent the absolute limit of height. Neither is beyond God's reach.

5. The parenthetical exclamation *eikh nidmeytah* ('how you are destroyed!') breaks the hypothetical comparison — the prophet cannot contain his astonishment at Edom's coming ruin. The logic: even thieves take only what they need and leave the rest; even grape harvesters leave *olelot* ('gleanings,' the small clusters left for the poor per *Leviticus 19:10*, *Deuteronomy 24:21*). But what will happen to Edom will be worse than any robbery — nothing will be left.
6. Edom is called by its ancestor's name — Esau — personalizing the judgment and connecting it to the Genesis narrative. The verb *nechpesu* ('ransacked, searched through') implies a thorough, deliberate looting. The *matsponav* ('his hidden things, his treasures') refers to the wealth Edom stored in the recesses of their rock-cut cities — treasures they thought were as secure as their geography. Petra's rock-cut chambers, later famous in the Nabataean period, served as both tombs and storage.
7. Triple betrayal by three groups: allies (*anshei beritekha*, 'men of your covenant'), peace partners (*anshei shelomekha*, 'men of your peace'), and table-companions (*lachmekha*, 'your bread'). The irony is precise: Edom betrayed their 'brother Jacob,' and now Edom's own allies betray them. The word *mazor* is difficult — it may mean 'wound,' 'trap,' or 'net.' We rendered 'trap' because the parallelism with deception suggests a hidden snare. The final phrase *ein tevunah bo* ('there is no understanding in him') recalls Edom's famed wisdom tradition (cf. *Jeremiah 49:7*) — the wise nation has become utterly foolish.
8. Edom was renowned in the ancient world for its wisdom tradition — Eliphaz the Temanite (*Job 2:11*) came from an Edomite city, and *Jeremiah 49:7* asks, 'Is there no longer wisdom in Teman?' God will destroy the very thing Edom is famous for. The phrase *har Esav* ('mountain of Esau') is Obadiah's distinctive designation for Edom, used throughout the book, emphasizing the connection to the patriarch and the mountainous geography.
9. Even Edom's military strength (*gibborekha*, 'your warriors') will be shattered (*chattu*). Teman, in the south of Edom, is addressed directly — it was a major Edomite city associated with both wisdom and military power. The purpose clause *le-ma'an* ('so that') indicates the destruction of warriors serves a larger goal: total elimination (*yikkaret*, 'cut off') from the mountain of Esau. The verb *qatal* ('slaughter') is blunt and violent.
10. The accusation is now stated directly: *chamas achikha Ya'aqov* ('violence against your brother Jacob'). The word *chamas* ('violence, wrongdoing') is one of the Hebrew Bible's strongest terms for social violence and injustice — the same word used for the violence that provoked the Flood (*Genesis 6:11, 13*). The familial language ('your brother') is the theological heart of Obadiah — Esau and Jacob were twins, and Edom's crime is fratricide. The punishment — being 'cut off forever' (*nikharta le-olam*) — is permanent.
11. The indictment becomes specific: 'the day' refers to the fall of Jerusalem in 586 BCE. Edom 'stood by' (*amadekha minneged*, literally 'stood opposite, at a distance') — they watched the destruction as spectators. The foreigners who entered Jerusalem's gates and cast lots (*yaddu goral*) over the city divided its spoils like gamblers. The devastating final clause: *gam attah ke-achad mehem* ('you too were like one of them') — Edom was not merely a passive bystander but complicit, equivalent to the destroyers themselves.
12. The first of the eight 'you should not have' (al + jussive) prohibitions that structure verses 12-14. Each condemns a specific crime during Jerusalem's fall. The verb *tere* ('look, gaze') here means 'gloat' — looking with satisfaction at another's suffering. Three escalating responses are condemned: gloating (looking), rejoicing (internal emotion), and boasting (*tagdel pikha*, literally 'making your mouth big' — loud, arrogant speech). The triple repetition of 'on the day of' (*be-yom*) hammers the specificity of the accusation.
13. The crimes escalate from passive observation (v. 12) to active participation. Edom entered Jerusalem's gates (the defense perimeter), gloated over the suffering (*gam attah*, 'you too'), and reached for (*tishlachnah*, 'stretched out hands toward') the wealth (*chelo*) of the fallen city. The triple repetition of *be-yom eido* ('on the day of their disaster') creates an incantatory rhythm of accusation. The word *eido* ('his disaster, his calamity') comes from the root '-y-d meaning 'distress, destruction.'
14. The worst crime is saved for last: Edom stationed troops at the *ha-pereq* ('crossroads, mountain pass, fork in the road') to intercept fleeing Judean refugees and either killed them (*lehakhrit*, 'to cut off, annihilate') or handed them over (*tasger*, 'surrendered, delivered up') to the Babylonians. The words *pelitav* ('his fugitives') and *seridav* ('his survivors') describe the most vulnerable people — those who escaped the initial slaughter only to be betrayed by their 'brother' at the escape routes.
15. The transition from Edom-specific judgment to universal judgment: the *yom YHWH* ('day of the LORD') extends to all nations (*kol ha-goyim*), not just Edom. The principle of proportional justice — *ka'asher asita ye'aseh lakh* ('as you have done, it will be done to you') — is one of the clearest statements of *lex talionis* (retributive justice) in the prophets. The word *gemulekha* ('your recompense, your deed-consequence') carries the sense that actions generate their own consequences — Edom's violence will circle back to Edom's head.
16. The 'drinking' (*shetitem*) on God's holy mountain (Zion) likely refers to Edom celebrating or feasting amid Jerusalem's ruins — drinking victory wine on the temple mount. The metaphor shifts: the nations will drink God's cup of wrath (cf. *Jeremiah 25:15-29*, *Isaiah 51:17, 22*). The verb *la'u* ('gulp, swallow') suggests being forced to drink deeply. The result — *ve-hayu ke-lo hayu* ('they will be as though they had never existed') — is total annihilation, the erasure not just of life but of memory.
17. The contrast with verse 16 is total: the mountain where Edom drank in celebration will become a place of *peleitha* ('deliverance, escape, a remnant that escapes') and *qodesh* ('holiness'). The verb *yreshu* ('possess, inherit') applied to *morasheihem* ('their possessions, their rightful inheritance') indicates recovery of what was taken — the land and blessings that belong to Jacob by covenant promise.
18. The fire metaphor reverses the power dynamic: Jacob and Joseph (united Israel and Judah) become fire and flame, while Esau (Edom) becomes *qash* ('stubble, straw') — the most combustible and worthless material. The phrase *lo yihyeh sarid le-veit Esav* ('there will be no survivor from the house of Esau') echoes the language of total destruction. The closing formula *ki YHWH dibber* ('for the LORD has spoken') seals the oracle as irrevocable divine decree.

- 19.** A geographical restoration map: each region of restored Israel expands into adjacent territory. The Negev (southern desert) absorbs Edom; the Shephelah (western lowlands) absorbs Philistia; the central highlands recover Ephraim and Samaria (the former northern kingdom); Benjamin extends east to Gilead (Transjordan). The vision is of a reunited and expanded Israel recovering all its historic territory.
- 20.** This verse envisions the return of scattered exiles. Zarephath (modern Sarafand in Lebanon, between Sidon and Tyre) represents the northern diaspora. Sepharad is one of the most debated place names in the Hebrew Bible — it has been identified with Sardis in Lydia (modern Turkey), a location in Media, or Spain. The later Jewish identification with Spain gave the name 'Sephardic' to the Jewish communities of the Iberian Peninsula. We transliterate without resolving the debate. Both exile communities will return and repopulate the Negev cities.
- 21.** The final verse resolves the entire oracle. The moshi'im ('deliverers, saviors') echoes the judges of the pre-monarchic period (Judges 2:16, 3:9, 15) — God raises up leaders to execute justice. The verb lishpot ('to judge, to govern') means not merely punishing Edom but establishing right governance over Edom's territory. The book's last words — ve-hayetah la-YHWH ha-melukhah ('and the kingdom will belong to the LORD') — transcend the Edom-Israel conflict entirely. The ultimate resolution is not Israel's supremacy over Edom but God's supremacy over all. The kingdom — all political authority, all sovereignty — belongs finally and fully to the LORD. This is the theological conclusion not only of Obadiah but of all the prophets' vision of history's end.

Jonah

Summary: *Jonah 1 opens with a divine commission that the prophet immediately refuses. God commands Jonah to go to Nineveh and cry out against its wickedness, but Jonah flees in the opposite direction — boarding a ship bound for Tarshish (the western edge of the known world). God hurls a great storm upon the sea. The terrified sailors cast lots to discover who has brought this calamity; the lot falls on Jonah. He confesses his flight from the LORD and instructs them to throw him overboard. After exhausting every alternative, the sailors comply, and the sea grows calm. The chapter closes with the sailors offering sacrifices and vows to the LORD, while God appoints a great fish to swallow Jonah.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's most striking feature is the inversion of prophetic narrative: pagan sailors prove more pious than God's own prophet. While Jonah sleeps below deck, the sailors each cry out to their own gods. When they discover the source of the storm, they resist throwing Jonah overboard — trying to row back to shore first. They even pray to the LORD before casting Jonah into the sea, asking not to be held guilty for innocent blood. Meanwhile, Jonah — the one who 'fears the LORD, the God of heaven, who made the sea and the dry land' — runs from that God's direct command. The Hebrew verb yarad ('to go down') tracks Jonah's descent: he goes down to Joppa, down into the ship, down into the inner hold, and will soon go down into the sea and into the fish. The name Jonah (Yonah, 'dove') may evoke Hosea 7:11 where Ephraim is called a 'senseless dove' that flees to Assyria and Egypt.*

Translation Friction: *The verb hitel (from tul, 'to hurl') in verse 4 describes God hurling the storm, using the same root that describes the sailors hurling cargo (v. 5) and eventually hurling Jonah (v. 15). This deliberate repetition was preserved by using 'hurled' consistently. The phrase lifnei YHWH ('from the presence of the LORD') in verses 3 and 10 is theologically loaded — Jonah is attempting to flee God's active presence, not merely His geographic territory. The sailors' question in verse 8 uses four interrogative clauses in rapid succession, reflecting their panic. The verb charash ('to be silent, to cease') in verse 11 describes the sea 'ceasing' or 'becoming silent' rather than merely calming.*

Connections: *Jonah's commission echoes prophetic call narratives throughout the Hebrew Bible, but uniquely features outright refusal. The storm-at-sea motif connects to Psalm 107:23-30. The lot-casting connects to Proverbs 16:33 ('The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from the LORD'). The sailors' conversion anticipates the book's central theme — God's mercy extending beyond Israel to the nations. Jonah's descent into the sea and the fish prefigures Jesus's three days in the tomb (Matthew 12:40).*

¹The word of the LORD came to Jonah son of Amittai: ²"Get up! Go to Nineveh, that great city, and cry out against it, for their wickedness has risen before me." ³But Jonah got up to flee to Tarshish, away from the presence of the LORD. He went down to Joppa and found a ship heading to Tarshish. He paid the fare and went down into it to travel with them to Tarshish, away from the presence of the LORD. ⁴But the LORD hurled a great wind upon the sea, and a violent storm arose on the sea so that the ship threatened to break apart. ⁵The sailors were afraid, and each cried out to his own god. They hurled the cargo that was in the ship into the sea to lighten it. But Jonah had gone down into the lowest part of the vessel, where he lay down and fell into a deep sleep. ⁶The captain approached him and said, "What are you doing asleep? Get up! Call on your god! Perhaps your god will take notice of us so that we do not perish." ⁷Then they said to one another, "Come, let us cast lots so we may find out on whose account this disaster has come upon us." They cast lots, and the lot fell on Jonah. ⁸They said to him, "Tell us — on whose account has this disaster come upon us? What is your occupation? Where do you come from? What is your country? And from what people are you?" ⁹He said to them, "I am a Hebrew, and I fear the LORD, the God of heaven, who made the sea and the dry land." ¹⁰The men were overcome with fear and said to him, "What have you done?" — for the men knew that he was fleeing from the presence of the LORD, because he had told them. ¹¹They said to him, "What should we do with you so the sea will calm down for us?" — for the sea was growing more and more violent. ¹²He said to them, "Pick me up and hurl me into the sea, and the sea will calm down for you, for I know that this great storm has come upon you because of me." ¹³Instead, the men rowed hard to reach the shore, but they could not, for the sea was growing more and more violent against them. ¹⁴Then they called out to the LORD and said, "Please, LORD, do not let us perish on account of this man's life, and do not hold us guilty of innocent blood, for you, LORD, have done as you pleased." ¹⁵They picked up Jonah and hurled him into the sea, and the sea ceased from its raging. ¹⁶The men feared the LORD with great fear, and they offered a sacrifice to the LORD and made vows. ¹⁷The LORD appointed a great fish to swallow Jonah, and Jonah was in the belly of the fish three days and three nights.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The standard prophetic reception formula. Jonah ben Amittai is also mentioned in 2 Kings 14:25 as a prophet from Gath-hepher in the northern kingdom who prophesied during the reign of Jeroboam II (8th century BCE). The name Yonah means 'dove,' and Amittai means 'my truth' or 'truthful' — ironic given Jonah's flight from his commission.
2. The double imperative *qum lekh* ('arise, go') conveys urgency. We rendered *qum* as 'Get up' to capture its colloquial force — this is not a polite request but a direct command. The phrase 'risen before me' (*aletah ra'atam lefanai*) uses the verb *alah* ('to go up, to ascend'), indicating that Nineveh's wickedness has ascended to God's attention like smoke rising. Nineveh was the capital of Assyria, the empire that would destroy the northern kingdom of Israel — making this commission personally and nationally threatening for an Israelite prophet.
3. The verb *yarad* ('to go down') appears twice — Jonah went down to Joppa and down into the ship — beginning a descent motif that continues through the chapter. The phrase *millifnei YHWH* ('from the presence of the LORD') is repeated twice in this single verse, emphasizing the futility and deliberateness of Jonah's flight. Tarshish is generally identified with a location in the far western Mediterranean (possibly Tartessus in Spain), representing the opposite direction from Nineveh, which lay to the east. Joppa (modern Jaffa/Yafo) was the main port on the Mediterranean coast of Israel.
4. The verb *hetil* (from *tul*, 'to hurl, to cast') is more forceful than merely 'sending' a wind — God physically hurls the storm. The same root recurs in verses 5, 12, and 15, creating a chain: God hurls the storm, the sailors hurl the cargo, and finally they hurl Jonah. The phrase 'the ship threatened to break apart' renders the vivid Hebrew idiom *ha'oniyah chishvah lehisnaver* — literally, 'the ship thought to be broken,' personifying the vessel as if it were terrified. This anthropomorphism of the ship contrasts with Jonah's unnatural calm below deck.
5. The verb *vatilu* ('they hurled') uses the same root as God's hurling of the storm in verse 4 — the sailors mirror God's action. The contrast between the sailors' frantic prayers and Jonah's deep sleep (*vayyeradam*, a word suggesting heavy, death-like sleep — the same root used of Adam's deep sleep in Genesis 2:21 and Sisera's fatal slumber in Judges 4:21) is deeply ironic. The sailors are more spiritually responsive than the prophet. *Yarketei hasefinah* ('the innermost parts of the vessel') indicates the hold or lower deck — Jonah has descended yet again, continuing the *yarad* motif.
6. The captain's command *qum qera* ('get up, call out') echoes God's own command to Jonah in verse 2 (*qum lekh... uqra*) — a pagan sailor unwittingly mirrors the divine commission. The verb *yit'ashshet* ('will think upon, will take notice') is rare, appearing only here in the Hebrew Bible. It may derive from a root meaning 'to be bright' or 'to shine,' suggesting divine attention or deliberation. The irony is sharp: a foreign captain urges Jonah to do what God commanded him to do — cry out.
7. The casting of lots (*goralot*) was a common ancient Near Eastern practice for discerning divine will. The wordplay on *nafal* ('to fall') — they 'cast' (lit. 'made fall') the lots and the lot 'fell' on Jonah — underscores that the outcome is divinely directed, not random. The word *ra'ah* here means 'disaster,'

calamity' rather than 'evil' in a moral sense — the sailors want to know who caused this crisis, not who among them is wicked.

8. The rapid succession of four questions (occupation, origin, country, people) reflects the sailors' desperation to understand who this man is and why the storm pursues him. The Hebrew stacks interrogatives with minimal connectives, creating a breathless interrogation. The questions move from the personal (your work) to the ethnic and national (your people), seeking any information that might explain the divine anger.
9. Jonah's confession is deeply ironic: he claims to 'fear' (yare) the LORD who made the sea — yet he is fleeing from that very God across that very sea. The term 'Hebrew' (Ivri) is used here as an ethnic identifier recognizable to foreigners, rather than 'Israelite,' which carried more covenantal and religious connotations. By identifying God as the maker of 'the sea and the dry land,' Jonah unwittingly condemns his own flight — there is no corner of creation beyond this God's reach.
10. The phrase yir'ah gedolah ('great fear') is a cognate accusative construction — literally, 'they feared a great fear.' The sailors' terror deepens when they learn the storm is not from a minor deity but from the God who made the sea itself. Their question 'What have you done?' is not a request for information (he has already told them) but an exclamation of horror — the same phrase used of sin and its consequences elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible (Genesis 3:13, 12:18).
11. The verb yishtoq means 'to be silent, to be still' — they are asking for the sea to fall silent, a more vivid image than mere calming. The phrase holekh veso'er ('going and storming') is a Hebrew construction indicating progressive intensification — the storm is not holding steady but actively worsening. This escalation forces the decision that follows.
12. Jonah uses the same verb hatilu ('hurl') that described God's hurling of the storm (v. 4) and the sailors' hurling of cargo (v. 5). The wordplay is deliberate: the solution to God's hurling is to hurl Jonah. Jonah's willingness to be thrown overboard is ambiguous — is it repentance, resignation, or a preference for death over obedience? The text leaves this open. He still does not say he will go to Nineveh.
13. The verb vayachteru ('they dug') literally means to dig or bore through — a vivid metaphor for the sailors straining at the oars as if digging through the waves. Rather than immediately throwing Jonah overboard, the pagan sailors first try to save him by rowing to shore. Their compassion for the prophet contrasts sharply with Jonah's later resentment toward Nineveh. The repeated phrase holekh veso'er ('going and storming') from verse 11 emphasizes the storm's relentless intensification.
14. The sailors now cry to YHWH specifically — not to their own gods as in verse 5. They have moved from polytheistic panic to direct address of Israel's God. Their prayer shows remarkable theological awareness: they acknowledge that YHWH acts according to His own will (ka'asher chafatsta asita, 'as you pleased, you have done'), and they fear the guilt of shedding innocent blood (dam naqi). The phrase 'innocent blood' echoes Deuteronomy 21:8–9, suggesting awareness (however imperfect) of Israel's God's moral demands.
15. The verb vatilluhu ('they hurled him') completes the hurl-chain begun in verse 4 (God hurled the storm) and continued in verse 5 (they hurled the cargo). Now the ultimate cargo — the disobedient prophet — is hurled overboard. The verb va'ya'amod ('stood still') literally means 'to stand' — the sea stood still from its fury (mizza'po). The contrast between the raging storm and the sudden stillness is dramatically abrupt in the Hebrew.
16. The phrase yir'ah gedolah ('great fear') appeared in verse 10 directed at the storm; here the same phrase is directed at YHWH — their fear has been redirected from the chaotic sea to the sovereign God. Their response — sacrifice and vows — constitutes genuine worship. The irony is complete: Jonah's disobedience has resulted in the conversion of pagan sailors. The verb yare ('to fear') used here echoes Jonah's own claim in verse 9 ('I fear the LORD'), but the sailors demonstrate the fear Jonah only professed.
17. The verb vayeman ('appointed') is distinctive to Jonah — it appears four times in this short book (here, 4:6, 4:7, 4:8), each time describing God sovereignly deploying elements of creation (a fish, a plant, a worm, a wind) as instruments of His purpose. It conveys purposeful commissioning rather than mere creation. The text says dag gadol ('a great fish'), not a whale — the species is unspecified. Jesus references this verse directly in Matthew 12:40, calling the fish a ketos (Greek for 'sea creature'). The 'three days and three nights' represents a complete period of time in ancient Near Eastern reckoning.

2

Summary: Jonah 2 contains the prophet's prayer from inside the great fish — a psalm of thanksgiving structured around descent into death and divine rescue. The poem is not a petition for future deliverance but a thanksgiving for deliverance already experienced: Jonah speaks as one who has already been saved from drowning. The imagery draws on deep mythological resonance — the waters of chaos, the belly of Sheol, the cosmic deep (tehom) — casting Jonah's experience as a passage through death itself. The chapter ends with Jonah's vow of thanksgiving and the fish vomiting him onto dry land.

What Makes This Remarkable: This prayer is rendered as poetry, preserving the parallelism and rhythm of Hebrew verse. The psalm is remarkably similar in structure and vocabulary to Psalms 18, 42, 69, and 120 — suggesting that Jonah prays using the liturgical language of Israel's worship tradition. The descent motif reaches its deepest point: Jonah descends to the roots of the mountains, to the bars

of the earth, to the very gates of Sheol. Yet precisely at the nadir, he declares 'you brought my life up from the pit.' The prayer conspicuously lacks any mention of Nineveh, repentance for his disobedience, or commitment to obey. Jonah thanks God for saving his life but does not address the mission he fled from.

Translation Friction: The verb qara ('to call, to cry out') in verse 2 echoes the same verb God used in commissioning Jonah (1:2) — Jonah finally 'calls out,' but to God for himself rather than to Nineveh on God's behalf. The word Sheol (v. 2) is left untranslated as the proper name of the realm of the dead rather than rendered as 'hell' or 'grave,' which carry connotations foreign to the Hebrew concept. The phrase 'the bars of the earth' (berichei ha'aretz, v. 6) envisions the underworld as a gated fortress — once inside, one cannot escape. The closing statement that the fish 'vomited' Jonah (vayaqe, v. 10) is deliberately undignified — the Hebrew verb is visceral and unrefined.

Connections: The psalm echoes Psalm 18:4-6 (distress and divine hearing), Psalm 42:7 (waves and breakers), Psalm 69:1-2 (waters up to the neck), and Psalm 120:1 (calling from distress). The descent-and-ascent pattern prefigures Christ's death, descent, and resurrection (Matthew 12:40). The phrase 'salvation belongs to the LORD' (v. 9) anticipates the book's climax — if salvation belongs to the LORD alone, He is free to extend it even to Nineveh.

¹Then Jonah prayed to the LORD his God from the belly of the fish.

²He said:

"I called out to the LORD from my distress,
and he answered me.
From the belly of Sheol I cried for help,
and you heard my voice.

³You cast me into the deep,
into the heart of the seas,
and the current surrounded me.
All your breakers and your waves
swept over me.

⁴I said, 'I have been driven away
from your sight.'
Yet I will look again
toward your holy temple.

⁵The waters closed in around me
up to my neck;
the deep surrounded me;
seaweed was wrapped around my head.

⁶I sank down to the roots of the mountains;
the earth barred its gates against me forever.
But you brought my life up from the pit,
O LORD my God.

⁷When my life was ebbing away,
I remembered the LORD,
and my prayer came to you,
to your holy temple.

⁸Those who cling to worthless idols
abandon their hope of faithful love.

⁹But I, with a voice of thanksgiving,
will sacrifice to you.
What I have vowed I will fulfill.
Salvation belongs to the LORD!"

¹⁰Then the LORD spoke to the fish, and it vomited Jonah out onto dry land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *dagah* here is the feminine form of *dag* ('fish'), whereas chapter 1:17 used the masculine *dag*. Some scholars see this as a scribal variation; others suggest two different fish. Most likely it is simply a stylistic variation with no narrative significance. The phrase 'his God' (*Elohav*) is significant — despite his flight, Jonah has not abandoned his relationship with YHWH.
2. The psalm begins with the standard thanksgiving pattern: past distress, cry, divine response. The verb *qara* ('I called out') uses the same root God commanded in 1:2 — Jonah calls, but to God for rescue rather than to Nineveh for repentance. 'Belly of Sheol' (*beten She'ol*) equates the fish's belly with the realm of the dead. Sheol is the Hebrew concept of the underworld — the abode of the dead, not equivalent to the Christian concept of hell. We retain 'Sheol' as a proper noun. The shift from third person ('he answered me') to second person ('you heard') is characteristic of Hebrew psalms.
3. Jonah attributes his casting into the sea to God ('you cast me'), not to the sailors — theologically, the sailors were instruments of divine action. The phrase *bilvav yammim* ('in the heart of the seas') uses *levav* ('heart'), placing Jonah at the very center of the chaotic waters. The possessive 'your breakers and your waves' (*mishbarekha vegalekha*) identifies the storm waves as belonging to God — echoing Psalm 42:7 almost verbatim. The word *nahar* ('river, current') alongside *yam* ('sea') evokes the cosmic waters of ancient Near Eastern mythology.
4. The verb *nigrashti* ('I have been driven away') is passive — Jonah sees himself as expelled from God's presence, echoing his deliberate flight *millifnei YHWH* ('from the presence of the LORD') in chapter 1. The turning point *akh* ('yet, surely') introduces hope: despite being driven from God's sight, Jonah expresses confidence in seeing the temple again. The 'holy temple' (*hekhal qodshekha*) refers to the Jerusalem temple, the locus of God's visible presence on earth. The temple represents the opposite of Sheol — the place where one can stand in God's presence.
5. The phrase *ad nephesh* ('up to the soul/life/neck') means the water reached a life-threatening level — *nephesh* here carries its physical sense of 'throat, neck' rather than 'soul.' We render 'up to my neck' for clarity. *Tehom* ('the deep') is the primordial deep of Genesis 1:2, the chaotic waters that God subdued at creation — Jonah has sunk into the pre-creation abyss. The seaweed (*suf*) wrapped around his head is a vivid concrete detail amid the mythological imagery. The word *suf* may also evoke *Yam Suf* ('Sea of Reeds' — the Red Sea), connecting Jonah's experience to the Exodus.
6. This verse marks the nadir and the turning point. The 'roots of the mountains' (*qitsvei harim*) locates Jonah at the very foundation of the earth — the deepest possible point. The phrase *bericheiha ba'adi le'olam* ('its bars were against me forever') envisions the underworld as a fortress whose gates lock behind the dead. Yet precisely here, at the absolute bottom, comes the reversal: 'you brought my life up from the pit' (*shachat*). The Hebrew *shachat* means 'pit, destruction, corruption' — it is another name for Sheol, the grave. The verb *ta'al* ('brought up') is the exact opposite of *yarad* ('went down'), reversing the descent motif that began in chapter 1.
7. The verb *hit'atef* ('to grow faint, to be wrapped in darkness') describes Jonah's consciousness fading — his life-force (*nephesh*) growing dim. At the moment of near-death, he 'remembered' (*zakharti*) the LORD. In Hebrew, 'remembering' is not passive recollection but active turning — to remember God is to re-engage with Him. His prayer travels from the depths of the sea to God's holy temple, bridging the maximum distance between Sheol and heaven. This recalls Jonah's hope in verse 4 to look toward the temple again.
8. This verse contrasts idol-worshippers with those who turn to the LORD. The phrase *havlei shav* ('worthless idols' or 'empty vanities') uses *hevel* ('breath, vapor, vanity') — the same word that dominates Ecclesiastes. Those who worship emptiness 'abandon their *chesed*' — here *chesed* likely refers to God's faithful love that would otherwise be available to them. There is an implicit contrast with the sailors of chapter 1, who abandoned their own gods and turned to the LORD. The verse may be Jonah's self-justification — he, unlike idol-worshippers, has remembered the LORD.
9. Jonah's concluding declaration — *yeshu'atah laYHWH* ('salvation belongs to the LORD') — is the theological hinge of the entire book. If salvation belongs to the LORD alone, then He is sovereign over who receives it. This statement, intended as Jonah's personal praise, will be tested in chapters 3-4 when God extends that very salvation to Nineveh. The word *todah* ('thanksgiving') refers specifically to the thanksgiving offering — a sacrifice made in response to deliverance. The vow (*neder*) echoes the vows made by the sailors in 1:16.
10. The verb *vayaqe* ('it vomited') is deliberately unrefined — the Hebrew does not use a dignified word for Jonah's expulsion. The prophet is not gently deposited but forcibly ejected. The phrase 'dry land' (*yabbashah*) contrasts with the sea that has dominated the narrative — Jonah is restored to the realm of the living. That God 'spoke' to the fish (*vayomer*, the same verb used for God's speech to Jonah in 1:1) places the fish in the role of obedient servant — unlike Jonah, the fish does exactly what God commands.

3

Summary: *Jonah 3 records the most spectacularly successful prophetic mission in the Hebrew Bible. God's word comes to Jonah a second time, and this time he obeys. He enters Nineveh — described as a city of three days' journey — and delivers the shortest prophetic oracle on record: 'In forty days, Nineveh will be overturned.' The entire city responds with immediate, total repentance: from the greatest to the least, they fast and put on sackcloth, and the king himself descends from his throne, removes his royal robes, and sits in ashes. The king issues a decree extending the fast even to animals. God sees their repentance and relents from the disaster He had planned.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter's brevity is itself remarkable — the greatest revival in biblical history is told in ten verses. Jonah's oracle is only five Hebrew words (arba'im yom veNineveh nehpakhet). The verb nehpakhet ('overturned') is the same word used for the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:25), yet it also means 'transformed, turned around' — creating a deliberate double meaning: Nineveh will be either destroyed or transformed. As it turns out, both meanings come true: Nineveh is not destroyed but is 'overturned' through repentance. The response of the animals — covered in sackcloth, denied food and water — borders on the absurd, yet serves to emphasize the totality and sincerity of Nineveh's turning. The verb nacham ('to relent') used of God in verse 10 is the same verb that describes human repentance — God and Nineveh mirror each other's turning.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'a city great to God' (ir gedolah l'Elohim) in verse 3 is an unusual superlative construction — we render it as 'an exceedingly great city' with a note on the Hebrew. The verb nehpakhet in verse 4 is deliberately left as 'overturned' to preserve the ambiguity between destruction and transformation. The phrase vayya'aminu anshei Nineveh b'Elohim ('the people of Nineveh believed God') in verse 5 uses the verb he'emin, which implies trust and reliance, not mere intellectual assent. God's 'relenting' (nacham) in verse 10 raises theological questions about divine immutability that we handle through the translator note rather than by softening the verb.*

Connections: *Jesus references Nineveh's repentance as a rebuke to His own generation (Matthew 12:41, Luke 11:32): 'The people of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah — and now something greater than Jonah is here.' The forty-day period connects to other biblical testing periods (the flood, Moses on Sinai, Jesus in the wilderness). God's relenting connects to the principle stated in Jeremiah 18:7-8: if a nation turns from evil, God will relent from the disaster He planned.*

¹The word of the LORD came to Jonah a second time: ²"Get up! Go to Nineveh, that great city, and proclaim to it the message that I tell you." ³Jonah got up and went to Nineveh, according to the word of the LORD. Now Nineveh was an exceedingly great city — a three-day journey across. ⁴Jonah began to go into the city, a day's journey in, and he proclaimed: "Forty days more, and Nineveh will be overturned!" ⁵The people of Nineveh believed God. They proclaimed a fast and put on sackcloth, from the greatest to the least of them. ⁶When the word reached the king of Nineveh, he rose from his throne, removed his royal robe, covered himself with sackcloth, and sat in ashes. ⁷He issued a proclamation throughout Nineveh: "By decree of the king and his nobles: No person or animal — no cattle or sheep — is to eat anything. They must not graze, and they must not drink water. ⁸Both people and animals must be covered with sackcloth. Everyone must cry out to God with urgency. Each person must turn from their wicked way and from the violence that is in their hands. ⁹Who knows? God may turn and relent. He may turn from his burning anger so that we do not perish." ¹⁰God saw their actions — that they had turned from their wicked way — and God relented from the disaster that he had said he would bring upon them, and he did not do it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word shenit ('a second time') is theologically significant — God recommissions the prophet rather than replacing him. The repetition of the prophetic reception formula from 1:1 creates a literary reset, as if the flight, the storm, and the fish were a parenthesis. God's word returns to its starting point, but Jonah has been through the depths and back.

2. The commission is nearly identical to 1:2 but with a crucial change: instead of 'cry out against it' (qera aleha), God now says 'proclaim to it the proclamation that I tell you' (qera eleha et haqeri'ah). The preposition shifts from 'against' to 'to,' and the content is now explicitly defined by God's own words. The cognate accusative construction (qera... qeri'ah, 'proclaim... the proclamation') emphasizes that Jonah must deliver God's exact message, not his own.
3. The phrase *ir gedolah l'Elohim* (literally, 'a city great to God') uses the divine name as an intensifier — a superlative construction meaning 'extraordinarily great.' Archaeological evidence suggests Nineveh proper had a circumference of about 8 miles, but the 'three-day journey' likely refers to the greater metropolitan area (including suburbs like Calah and Rehoboth-Ir mentioned in Genesis 10:11-12) or to the time needed to traverse and proclaim throughout the city. Jonah's obedience here — *vayaqom... vayelexh* ('he got up and went') — mirrors the exact verbs of his disobedience in 1:3 (*vayaqom* *livroach*, 'he got up to flee').
4. Jonah's oracle is only five words in Hebrew — the shortest prophetic message in the Bible. The verb *nehpakhet* ('overturned') is the same word used for the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:21, 25; Deuteronomy 29:23), but it also carries the meaning 'transformed, changed, turned around.' This double meaning is central to the chapter: Nineveh will indeed be 'overturned' — not by fire but by repentance. The forty-day period echoes other biblical periods of testing and transformation (Genesis 7:4, Exodus 24:18, 1 Kings 19:8). Notably, the oracle contains no conditional clause ('unless you repent') — yet the Ninevites infer the possibility of mercy anyway.
5. The verb *vayya'aminu* ('they believed') comes from the root *aleph-mem-nun*, the same root as 'amen' and *emunah* ('faithfulness'). It implies not mere intellectual assent but active trust — the Ninevites trusted God's word enough to act on it. The phrase 'from the greatest to the least' (*migedolam ve'ad qetannam*) indicates universal participation across all social classes. The response is immediate — there is no debate, no resistance, no committee. This stands in sharp contrast to Israel's repeated rejection of prophetic warnings throughout the Hebrew Bible. The word *Elohim* ('God') rather than *YHWH* is used — the Ninevites believe in God generically, not specifically in Israel's covenant God.
6. The king's response is described in a sequence of descending actions: he rises from his throne (the highest seat in the kingdom), removes his royal robe (*addarto*, a word for a magnificent garment), covers himself with sackcloth (the garment of mourning and penitence), and sits in ashes — the lowest possible position. This is a deliberate reversal of royal status, mirroring the descent motif that tracked Jonah in chapter 1. The king's self-humiliation contrasts sharply with Jonah's self-pity in chapter 4.
7. The decree extends to animals — cattle and sheep must fast and abstain from water alongside the human population. This extraordinary detail serves the narrative's emphasis on the totality of Nineveh's repentance. In the ancient Near East, animals were sometimes included in mourning rituals (Herodotus reports that the Persians shaved their pack animals during mourning). The phrase *mita'am hammelekh ugedolav* ('by decree of the king and his nobles') indicates this is an official royal proclamation, not a voluntary religious observance.
8. The decree requires three actions: covering with sackcloth (external mourning), crying out to God (prayer), and turning from wickedness and violence (behavioral change). The word *chamas* ('violence') is the same word used in Genesis 6:11 to describe the pre-flood world — the Ninevites' violence echoes the violence that prompted the first great judgment. The verb *yashuvu* ('let them turn') is the Hebrew concept of repentance (*teshuvah*) — a physical turning away from one direction and toward another. The king does not merely ask for ritual mourning but demands genuine moral transformation.
9. The phrase *mi yodea* ('who knows?') expresses hope without presumption — the king does not claim certainty of divine mercy but acknowledges its possibility. This same phrase appears in 2 Samuel 12:22 (David hoping for his child's life) and Joel 2:14. The verb *nicham* ('relent, be moved to compassion') when applied to God does not imply that God made a mistake but that He responds to changed circumstances — a principle explicitly stated in Jeremiah 18:7-8. The verb *shav* ('turn') is used of both God and the people — Nineveh turns from evil, and God turns from anger. The reciprocity is the key theological point.
10. The verb *vayyar* ('God saw') echoes Genesis 1 ('God saw that it was good') — but here God sees not creation but repentance, and it is good enough to stay His hand. The verb *vayyinnachem* ('he relented') is the Niphal of *nacham*, the same root as 'comfort' and 'compassion.' When used of God, it describes a genuine divine response to changed human behavior, not a change in God's character. The word *ra'ah* appears twice with different meanings: the Ninevites turned from their 'evil way' (*ra'ah* as moral wickedness), and God relented from the 'disaster' (*ra'ah* as calamity). The double use creates a direct link: when human evil ceases, divine judgment ceases.

4

Summary: *Jonah 4 is the theological climax of the book. God's mercy toward Nineveh infuriates Jonah, who reveals that this was precisely why he fled in the first place — he knew God was gracious and compassionate, slow to anger and rich in faithful love, and would relent from sending disaster. Jonah asks to die rather than witness Nineveh's survival. God responds not with rebuke but with a question ('Is it right for you to be angry?') and then with an object lesson: He appoints a plant to shade Jonah, then a worm to destroy it, then a scorching east wind. When Jonah is angry enough to die over the plant, God delivers the book's final word: 'You cared about the plant, which you did not labor for or grow. Should I not be concerned about Nineveh, that great city, in which there are more than 120,000 people who cannot tell their right hand from their left — and many animals as well?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the only place in the Hebrew Bible where a prophet is angry that his prophecy succeeded. Jonah quotes the great divine self-revelation of Exodus 34:6-7 — the central creedal statement of Israel's faith — but weaponizes it as a complaint. He knows God is gracious, and he resents it. The book ends with a divine question left unanswered, making the reader the one who must respond. God's final argument includes the animals of Nineveh — the same animals dressed in sackcloth in 3:8 — extending divine compassion to all living creatures. The verb *manah* ('appointed') appears three more times (plant, worm, wind), echoing the appointed fish of 1:17 and establishing a four-fold pattern of divine sovereignty over creation deployed for Jonah's instruction.*

Translation Friction: *Jonah's quotation of Exodus 34:6-7 in verse 2 omits the final clause about God 'not clearing the guilty' — either because Jonah only cares about the mercy side of the formula, or because the narrator signals that Jonah has a selective view of God's character. The *qiqayon* plant (v. 6) is traditionally rendered 'gourd' but its identification is uncertain — possibly the castor oil plant (*Ricinus communis*). We render it as 'plant' with a note. The final phrase in verse 11, 'who cannot tell their right hand from their left,' is variously interpreted as referring to small children, to moral ignorance, or to the spiritual naivety of pagans. We preserve the ambiguity. The book's ending with a question — no answer from Jonah, no resolution — is one of the most striking literary choices in the Hebrew Bible.*

Connections: *Jonah's quotation of Exodus 34:6-7 connects to Joel 2:13, Psalm 86:15, Psalm 103:8, Nehemiah 9:17, and Nahum 1:3 — all passages that echo this foundational creed. The divine question 'Should I not be concerned about Nineveh?' anticipates Jesus's parables of God's extravagant mercy (the Prodigal Son, the Laborers in the Vineyard). Jonah's death wish echoes Elijah's request to die under a broom tree (1 Kings 19:4), creating a parallel between two prophets overwhelmed by their missions. The appointed plant, worm, and wind continue the pattern from 1:17, showing God deploying all of creation — animate and inanimate — as pedagogical instruments.*

¹But this was deeply wrong in Jonah's eyes, and he burned with anger. ²He prayed to the LORD and said, "Please, LORD — was this not what I said while I was still in my own land? That is why I fled to Tarshish first, because I knew that you are a gracious and compassionate God, slow to anger and rich in faithful love, and one who relents from sending disaster. ³Now, LORD, take my life from me, for it is better for me to die than to live." ⁴The LORD said, "Is it right for you to be angry?" ⁵Jonah left the city and sat down east of it. He made himself a shelter there and sat under it in the shade, waiting to see what would happen to the city. ⁶The LORD God appointed a plant and made it grow up over Jonah to provide shade over his head and to rescue him from his misery. Jonah was overjoyed about the plant. ⁷But God appointed a worm at dawn the next day, and it attacked the plant so that it withered. ⁸When the sun rose, God appointed a scorching east wind, and the sun beat down on Jonah's head so that he grew faint. He wished for death and said, "It is better for me to die than to live." ⁹God said to Jonah, "Is it right for you to be angry about the plant?" He said, "It is right for me to be angry — angry enough to die." ¹⁰The LORD said, "You cared about the plant, which you did not labor over or grow. It appeared in a night and perished in a night. ¹¹Should I not be concerned about Nineveh, that great city, in which there are more than 120,000 people who cannot tell their right hand from their left — and many animals as well?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *vayyera el Yonah ra'ah gedolah* uses the same word *ra'ah* ('evil, wrong, bad') that described Nineveh's wickedness (1:2) and God's planned disaster (3:10). For Jonah, God's mercy is itself a *ra'ah* — a great wrong. The verb *charah* ('to burn') describes the heat of Jonah's anger, the same verb used for God's 'burning anger' in 3:9. The irony is pointed: Jonah is angry that God is not angry. The cognate accusative construction (*ra'ah gedolah*, 'a great evil/wrong') mirrors the 'great fear' of the sailors (1:10, 16) and the 'great city' of Nineveh (1:2, 3:2) — everything in Jonah is 'great.'
2. This verse reveals Jonah's motivation for his flight in chapter 1 — he was not afraid of Nineveh but afraid that God would be merciful. He quotes the foundational creed of Exodus 34:6-7, the most frequently cited divine self-description in the Hebrew Bible. However, Jonah omits the final clause of the Exodus creed ('who will by no means clear the guilty') — he cites only the mercy side because that is what offends him. The phrase *erekh appayim* ('slow to anger,' literally 'long of nostrils') describes God's patience, and *rav chesed* ('rich in faithful love') is the covenantal abundance of divine loyalty. The verb *nicham* ('relents') is the same word used in 3:10 for God's response to Nineveh's repentance.
3. Jonah's death wish echoes Elijah's prayer in 1 Kings 19:4 ('Take my life, for I am no better than my ancestors'), but the motivations are opposite: Elijah despairs because Israel will not repent; Jonah despairs because Nineveh has repented. The phrase *tov moti mechayai* ('better my death than my life') expresses a preference for death over living in a world where God shows mercy to Israel's enemies. This is the second time Jonah has preferred death to obedience — the first was his instruction to be thrown into the sea (1:12).
4. God's response is a question, not a rebuke — *haheitev charah lakh* literally asks 'Is it good that it burns for you?' or 'Does burning serve you well?' The Hiphil infinitive *heitev* ('doing well, being right') asks Jonah to evaluate his own anger. God does not argue or defend His decision; He invites Jonah to self-examination. This question will be repeated in verse 9 with a slight variation, framing the entire object lesson of the plant.
5. Jonah stations himself east of the city — the direction from which judgment typically came in ancient Near Eastern imagery — and builds a *sukkah* ('shelter, booth'), the same word used for the temporary shelters of the Festival of Booths. He is still hoping for Nineveh's destruction. The phrase 'waiting to see what would happen to the city' reveals that Jonah has not accepted God's verdict; he sits like a spectator expecting (or hoping for) a reversal.
6. The verb *vayeman* ('appointed') appears for the second time (after 1:17's appointed fish), continuing the pattern of God deploying creation as instruments of His purpose. The *qiqayon* plant is traditionally rendered 'gourd' but its exact identification is debated — the most common scholarly identification is the castor oil plant (*Ricinus communis*), known for rapid growth and large, shade-giving leaves. The phrase *lehatsil lo mera'ato* ('to rescue him from his misery') uses the same word *ra'ah* that has appeared throughout the book with shifting meanings (wickedness, disaster, displeasure). Here it means Jonah's personal distress. The phrase *simchah gedolah* ('great joy') is another 'great' descriptor in a book full of them — and it is focused on a plant, not on God's salvation of 120,000 people.
7. The verb *vayeman* ('appointed') appears for the third time — God appoints a worm (*tola'at*) to destroy the plant He had just appointed to grow. The timing is precise: *ba'alot hashachar* ('at the rising of the dawn'), at the very moment when Jonah would begin needing the shade. The verb *vatakh* ('it attacked, it struck') is surprisingly violent for a worm eating a plant — the same verb is used for military attacks elsewhere. The rapid sequence — plant grows, worm destroys, plant withers — mirrors the rapid sequence of Jonah's emotional states.
8. The verb *vayeman* ('appointed') appears for the fourth and final time — the series is complete: fish (1:17), plant (4:6), worm (4:7), wind (4:8). God has appointed one creature from each domain (sea, land-vegetation, earth-creature, air) to serve His purposes. The *ruach qadim charishit* ('scorching east wind') is the *sirocco* — the hot, dry wind from the eastern desert, dreaded throughout the ancient Near East. The adjective *charishit* is rare and debated; it may mean 'silent' (from *charash*, 'to be silent') or 'cutting, fierce.' We follow the contextual sense of 'scorching.' Jonah repeats his death wish from verse 3 verbatim — but now his reason has shifted from theological protest to physical discomfort over a plant.
9. God repeats the question from verse 4 but now adds 'about the plant' (*al haqiqayon*), narrowing the focus to the specific object lesson. Jonah's response is defiant: *heitev charah li ad mavet* — 'I am rightly angry, to the point of death.' He doubles down, insisting his rage is justified. The repetition of *heitev* ('rightly, well') creates a deliberate echo — God asks if anger is 'right,' and Jonah insists that it is. The stage is now set for God's closing argument.
10. The verb *chasta* ('you cared, you had compassion') is from the root *chus*, meaning to look upon with compassion, to have pity. God does not say Jonah was wrong to care about the plant — He establishes a principle of proportional compassion. The phrase *ben lailah* ('son of a night') is a Hebrew idiom for something ephemeral — the plant lived and died within a single day. The argument builds from lesser to greater (*qal vachomer*): if Jonah can feel compassion for a plant he neither planted nor tended, how much more should God feel compassion for an entire city.
11. The book ends with a question — God's question to Jonah, left unanswered. The verb *achus* ('be concerned, have compassion') is the same as *chasta* in verse 10, creating the *qal vachomer* argument: you had compassion on a plant; should I not have compassion on a city? The phrase 'who cannot tell their right hand from their left' (*lo yada bein yemino lismo'lo*) is interpreted variously as referring to young children (suggesting 120,000 children in a city of perhaps 600,000), to moral ignorance (the Ninevites did not know right from wrong until told), or to spiritual naivety. The ambiguity is deliberate and serves God's argument — these are people in need of guidance, not monsters beyond redemption. The final words — *uvehemah rabbah* ('and many animals as well') — extend God's concern even to animals, recalling the animals who wore sackcloth in 3:8. The book's theology is breathtaking in scope: the God of Israel cares about Assyrian cattle. No answer from Jonah is recorded. The question hangs in the air, directed now at every reader.

Micah

Summary: *Micah 1 opens with a superscription identifying the prophet as a Morasthite (from Moresheth-Gath in the Judean lowlands) prophesying during the reigns of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah concerning Samaria and Jerusalem. The chapter contains a dramatic theophany — God descends from His holy temple and treads upon the high places of the earth, melting mountains and splitting valleys. The prophet then delivers judgment oracles against Samaria (vv. 6-7), whose sins have spread to Judah, and concludes with a lamentation over the towns of the Shephelah (Judean lowlands) using an extraordinary series of wordplays on town names — each town's name becomes a pun on its fate.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The wordplay section (vv. 10-16) is one of the most virtuosic passages in Hebrew prophetic poetry. Nearly every town name is punned upon: Beth-leaphrah ('house of dust') is told to roll in dust; Shaphir ('beautiful') goes forth in shameful nakedness; Zaanen ('going out') does not go out; Beth-ezel ('house of nearness') has its support taken away; Maroth ('bitter') waits bitterly; Lachish (assonance with larekesh, 'to the team/chariot') is told to harness the chariot; Moresheth-Gath sounds like me'oraset ('betrothed'), so she is given as a parting gift; Achzib ('deception') becomes a deception; Mareshah ('possession') receives a possessor; and Adullam inherits Israel's glory. These puns are untranslatable in English and must be documented in translator notes. Micah's grief is personal — these are his own towns, his neighbors.*

Translation Friction: *The wordplays in verses 10-16 present the central translation challenge: the Hebrew puns cannot be reproduced in English. We render the meaning clearly and document every wordplay in the translator notes. The theophany language (vv. 3-4) draws on cosmic imagery — mountains melting 'like wax before fire' — that must be rendered as poetry, not flattened into prose. The phrase 'incurable wound' (makkoteha anushah, v. 9) echoes Jeremiah 30:12 and Nahum 3:19, describing judgment so severe that no remedy exists.*

Connections: *The theophany echoes Psalm 18:7-15, Judges 5:4-5 (the Song of Deborah), and Habakkuk 3:3-6. Micah's identification of Samaria's sins spreading to Jerusalem anticipates the Babylonian exile. The reference to 'the gate of my people, to Jerusalem' (v. 9) links the fall of the northern kingdom to Judah's vulnerability. Micah is quoted by name in Jeremiah 26:18, making him one of the few prophets cited by another prophet.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Micah the Morasthite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah — what he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem.

²Hear, all you peoples!
Pay attention, O earth and everything in it!
Let the Lord GOD be a witness against you,
the Lord from his holy temple.

³For look — the LORD is coming out from his place!
He will come down and tread
upon the high places of the earth.

⁴The mountains will melt beneath him,
and the valleys will split open —
like wax before the fire,
like water poured down a steep slope.

⁵All this is because of Jacob's transgression,
because of the sins of the house of Israel.
What is Jacob's transgression?
Is it not Samaria?
And what are the high places of Judah?
Are they not Jerusalem?

⁶"I will make Samaria a heap of rubble in the open field,
a place for planting vineyards.
I will pour her stones down into the valley
and lay bare her foundations."

⁷All her carved images will be smashed to pieces,
all her temple earnings will be burned with fire,
and all her idols I will make desolate.
For she gathered them from a prostitute's wages,
and to a prostitute's wages they will return.

⁸Because of this I will lament and howl;
I will go barefoot and stripped.
I will make a lamentation like the jackals
and a mourning cry like the ostriches.

⁹For her wound is incurable;
it has reached Judah.
It has come to the gate of my people,
to Jerusalem itself.

¹⁰Do not tell it in Gath;
do not weep at all.
In Beth-leaphrah,
roll yourself in the dust.

¹¹Pass on your way, you inhabitants of Shaphir,
in shameful nakedness.

The inhabitants of Zaanan
do not come out.

Beth-ezel is in mourning;
its support is taken from you.

¹²For the inhabitants of Maroth writhe in pain,
waiting for relief,
because disaster has come down from the LORD
to the gate of Jerusalem.

¹³Harness the chariot to the steeds,
O inhabitants of Lachish!
She was the beginning of sin
for the daughter of Zion,
for in you were found
the transgressions of Israel.

¹⁴Therefore you will give parting gifts
to Moresheth-gath.
The houses of Achzib will prove
a deception to the kings of Israel.

¹⁵I will bring a conqueror against you,
O inhabitants of Mareshah.
The glory of Israel will come
to Adullam.

¹⁶Shave your head and cut off your hair
in mourning for your precious children.
Make yourself as bald as the vulture,
for they have gone from you into exile.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription places Micah's ministry across three kings (roughly 750-687 BCE), making him a contemporary of Isaiah and Hosea. 'Morasthite' identifies him as from Moresheth-Gath, a small town in the Shephelah (Judean lowlands) southwest of Jerusalem — significantly, he is not from the capital but from rural Judah. The verb *chazah* ('he saw') indicates visionary experience, not merely hearing — Micah's prophecy is described as something 'seen,' a vision. The scope covers both Samaria (capital of the northern kingdom) and Jerusalem (capital of Judah), though Micah was a Judean prophet.
2. The summons to 'all peoples' (*ammim kullam*) broadens the audience beyond Israel — the entire earth is called as witness to God's lawsuit (*rib*). This opening echoes 1 Kings 22:28, where Micaiah ben Imlah (a prophet whose name is nearly identical to Micah's) uses the same phrase 'Hear, all you peoples.' The phrase *Adonai YHWH* ('the Lord GOD') combines both divine titles, emphasizing God's sovereignty and covenant identity. God comes from His 'holy temple' (*hekhal qodsho*) — whether heavenly or earthly is deliberately ambiguous.
3. The theophany begins with God departing His dwelling (*mimmaqomo*) — whether the heavenly temple or the earthly holy of holies. The verb *darakh* ('to tread, to trample') conveys military conquest — God marches across the mountaintops as a warrior. The *bamotei aretz* ('high places of the earth') may refer both to literal mountain peaks and to the cultic high places where idolatrous worship took place. The image of God treading on heights echoes Deuteronomy 33:29 and Amos 4:13.
4. Two vivid similes describe the earth's response to God's presence: mountains melt like wax before fire (*kaddonag mippnei ha'esh*), and valleys split open like water rushing down a slope (*kemayim muggarim bemorad*). The verb *namassu* ('they will melt') describes a complete loss of structural

integrity — the most permanent features of the landscape dissolve. This imagery echoes Psalm 97:5 ('The mountains melt like wax before the LORD') and Judges 5:5 ('The mountains quaked before the LORD'). The poetry is cosmically scaled — creation itself cannot bear God's direct presence.

5. The theophany is now explained: this cosmic upheaval is caused by Israel's sin. Micah uses rhetorical questions to identify the capitals as the sources of corruption. The word *pesha* ('transgression, rebellion') denotes willful defiance against a covenant lord — not accidental sin but deliberate revolt. The parallelism between Samaria and Jerusalem is accusatory: both capitals have become centers of idolatry. The 'high places' (*bamot*) of Judah refers to the illegitimate worship sites — and Micah identifies Jerusalem itself as the ultimate high place of apostasy.
6. God speaks directly, pronouncing judgment on Samaria. The city will be reduced to an *'i hassadeh* ('a ruin of the field') — her dressed stones will be tumbled into the valley below, and the foundations will be exposed. This was literally fulfilled when Assyria destroyed Samaria in 722 BCE. The image of 'planting vineyards' suggests that the city site will revert to agricultural land — urban civilization erased and returned to the soil. Archaeological excavations at Samaria confirm the Assyrian destruction described here.
7. The word *etnanneha* ('her earnings, her hire') refers to the wages of cult prostitution — payments made at pagan shrines. The metaphor of prostitution for idolatry is standard prophetic language (Hosea, Ezekiel 16, 23). The phrase 'from a prostitute's wages... to a prostitute's wages' creates a grim circle: the wealth accumulated through idolatrous cult practices will be carried off by conquerors and used for the same purpose in their pagan temples. The verb *yukkattu* ('they will be smashed') indicates violent, irreversible destruction of the carved images (*pesilim*).
8. Micah shifts from delivering God's word to expressing his own grief. The verb *esfedah* ('I will lament') is the standard word for funeral lamentation. Going *sholal ve'arom* ('barefoot and stripped') is a sign of extreme mourning — the same practice Isaiah enacted as a prophetic sign-act (Isaiah 20:2-4). The *tannim* ('jackals') and *benot ya'anah* ('daughters of the ostrich' — ostriches) were associated with desolate ruins and their eerie nocturnal cries. Micah's grief is genuine — the towns about to be listed are his own homeland.
9. The word *anushah* ('incurable') describes a wound beyond healing — the same adjective used in Jeremiah 15:18 and 30:12 for Judah's terminal condition. The 'wound' (*makkoteha*) of Samaria's judgment has metastasized southward to Judah — the corruption that destroyed the northern kingdom has infected Jerusalem. The phrase 'the gate of my people' (*sha'ar ammi*) uses the gate as the symbol of a city's integrity and governance — the enemy is at the gates. Micah's use of 'my people' (*ammi*) signals personal identification with those under threat.
10. The wordplay section begins. 'Do not tell it in Gath' (*begat al taggidu*) echoes David's lament in 2 Samuel 1:20 — Gath (*gat*) puns with *taggidu* ('tell'). Beth-leaphrah means 'house of dust' (*beit le'afrah*), and the command to 'roll in dust' (*afar hitpallashi*) plays directly on the name — the town of dust is told to wallow in dust. These puns are untranslatable in English; the poetry works only in Hebrew. We preserve the place names and document the wordplay in notes.
11. Three more wordplays: Shaphir (*shafir*) means 'beautiful,' but its inhabitants pass by in shameful nakedness — beauty turned to shame. Zaanān (*tsa'anān*) puns with *yatsa* ('to go out') — the town whose name means 'going out' does not go out (*lo yatse'ah*). Beth-ezel (*beit ha'etsel*) means 'house of nearness' or 'house of the neighbor,' but its proximity provides no support (*emdato*, 'its standing/support') — the nearby refuge fails. Each wordplay condemns a town through the ironic reversal of its own name.
12. Maroth (*marot*) means 'bitter,' and its inhabitants writhe in bitter pain — the town of bitterness experiences bitterness. The verb *chalah* ('to writhe, to be in anguish') suggests the agony of waiting for good that does not come. The phrase 'disaster has come down from the LORD' (*yarad ra me'et YHWH*) is theologically stark — the calamity is not random but divinely directed. The 'gate of Jerusalem' (*sha'ar Yerushalaim*) echoes verse 9, indicating that the wave of destruction has reached the capital.
13. Lachish (*Lakhish*) puns with *larekesh* ('to the steeds/team') — the chariot city must now harness its horses for flight. Lachish was the second most important city in Judah, heavily fortified with chariot forces. Micah identifies it as 'the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion' — possibly because Lachish served as a conduit through which northern Israelite religious practices (including horse-and-chariot sun worship, 2 Kings 23:11) entered Judah. The Assyrian siege of Lachish (701 BCE) was extensively documented in Sennacherib's palace reliefs at Nineveh.
14. Two more wordplays: Moreseth (*moresheth*) sounds like *me'oraset* ('betrothed'), so 'parting gifts' (*shilluchim*) evoke the dowry given to a bride leaving her father's house — the town is being 'given away' to the enemy. Achziv (*akhziv*) puns with *akhzav* ('deception, a lying brook') — the town of deception will prove deceptive to Israel's kings. Moreseth-gath is Micah's own hometown — his personal grief is embedded in this oracle. The reference to 'kings of Israel' may refer to Judah's kings or to a time before the division of the kingdoms.
15. Mareshah (*mareshah*) puns with *yoresh* ('heir, possessor, conqueror') — the town of 'possession' will receive an unwelcome possessor. Adullam was the cave where David hid as a fugitive (1 Samuel 22:1) — the 'glory of Israel' (*kevod Yisra'el*) will retreat to the same hiding places as a hunted outlaw. The irony is devastating: Israel's leaders, who should embody national glory, will be reduced to hiding in caves like David fleeing Saul.
16. The chapter closes with a mourning command. Shaving the head (*qorchi vagozzi*) was a sign of extreme grief, though technically prohibited in Deuteronomy 14:1 — Micah's command reflects the depth of the catastrophe. The 'precious children' (*beni ta'anugayikh*) are the inhabitants of the towns listed in the preceding verses — Micah's own neighbors. The *neshar* is traditionally 'eagle' but more accurately refers to the griffon vulture (*Gyps fulvus*), whose bald head provides the metaphor. The final word — *galu mimmekh* ('they have gone into exile from you') — states the ultimate consequence: deportation.

2

Summary: *Micah 2 is a woe oracle against the wealthy land-grabbers of Judah who lie awake at night scheming to seize other people's fields and houses. God announces a corresponding judgment: since they plotted evil on their beds, He is plotting disaster against them. The chapter includes a sharp exchange with false prophets who tell Micah to stop preaching ('Do not preach!'), and concludes with a brief promise of future restoration — God as a shepherd gathering a remnant.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening woe (hoi) launches a classic prophetic indictment of economic injustice — the powerful seize ancestral land, violating the foundational principle that the land belongs to God and was distributed by lot to families in perpetuity. In an agrarian society, losing your family's land meant losing your identity, livelihood, and covenant inheritance. Micah's opponents in verse 6 use the same verb he uses — nataf ('to drip, to preach') — turning his own word against him. The brief restoration promise in verses 12-13 shifts abruptly from judgment to hope, describing God as the 'one who breaks open' (haporets) leading the flock through the gate — imagery later applied to the Messiah.*

Translation Friction: *The verb nataf ('to drip') in verses 6 and 11 is used metaphorically for prophetic speech — 'to preach' or 'to prophesy.' The opponents say 'do not drip' (al tattiphu), meaning 'stop prophesying.' The shift from judgment (vv. 1-11) to restoration (vv. 12-13) is abrupt, and some scholars consider verses 12-13 a later addition — we render the text as it stands in the WLC without rearrangement. The phrase 'removes the splendid robe' (eder shalmah, v. 8) is textually difficult — we follow the most defensible reading.*

Connections: *The woe oracle connects to Isaiah 5:8 ('Woe to those who join house to house and field to field'). The land-seizure indictment echoes the Naboth's vineyard narrative (1 Kings 21). The false-prophet conflict anticipates Jeremiah's clashes with prophets of peace (Jeremiah 23, 28). The shepherd-and-flock imagery in verses 12-13 connects to Ezekiel 34 and Jesus's self-identification as the Good Shepherd.*

¹Woe to those who plan wickedness
and devise evil on their beds!
At morning's light they carry it out,
because it is in the power of their hands.

²They covet fields and seize them,
houses, and take them.
They oppress a man and his household,
a person and his inheritance.

³Therefore this is what the LORD says:
I am planning disaster against this clan,
from which you will not be able to remove your necks.
You will not walk with heads held high,
for it will be an evil time.

⁴On that day they will raise a taunt against you
and wail with bitter lamentation:
'We are utterly ruined!
He changes the portion of my people.
How he removes it from me!
To the rebellious he divides our fields.'

⁵Therefore you will have no one to divide land by lot
in the assembly of the LORD.

⁶"Do not preach!" they preach.
"They should not preach about these things!
Disgrace will not overtake us."

⁷Should it be said, O house of Jacob:
'Is the spirit of the LORD impatient?
Are these his deeds?'
Do not my words do good
to the one who walks uprightly?

⁸But recently my people have risen up as an enemy.
You strip the rich robe from those
who pass by peacefully,
from those returning from war.

⁹The women of my people you drive out
from their comfortable homes.
From their children you take away
my splendor forever.

¹⁰Get up and go!
For this is not your resting place,
because of the defilement that brings destruction,
a painful destruction.

¹¹If a man walking in wind and lies
were to deceive and say,
'I will preach to you about wine and strong drink' —
he would be the preacher for this people!

¹²"I will surely gather all of you, Jacob;
I will surely assemble the remnant of Israel.
I will bring them together like sheep in a pen,
like a flock in its pasture —
a noisy throng of people."

¹³The one who breaks open the way goes up before them;
they break through, pass through the gate,
and go out by it.
Their king passes on before them,
the LORD at their head.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The woe oracle (hoi) is a funeral cry repurposed as a prophetic curse — Micah is pronouncing the death sentence over the land-grabbers. The phrase 'on their beds' (al mishkevotam) indicates premeditation — these are not crimes of passion but calculated schemes hatched during sleepless nights. The phrase 'because it is in the power of their hands' (ki yesh le'el yadam) uses the word el ('power, god') — literally, 'because their hand is a god to them,' suggesting that their own power has become their deity. The dawn (or habboqer) brings execution of their plans — what they schemed in

darkness, they enact in daylight.

2. The verb *chamadu* ('they covet') directly violates the tenth commandment (Exodus 20:17, Deuteronomy 5:21 — 'You shall not covet your neighbor's house... or field'). The progression — covet, seize, oppress — describes the escalation from internal desire to outright theft. The word *nachalato* ('his inheritance') is critical: in Israel's land theology, each family's plot was their God-given inheritance (*nachalah*), distributed by lot at the conquest and meant to remain within the family in perpetuity (Leviticus 25:23-28). To seize someone's *nachalah* was to rob them of their covenant birthright.
3. God's judgment mirrors the crime: they 'planned' (*choshevei*) wickedness in verse 1; now God 'is planning' (*choshev*) disaster against them — the same Hebrew verb. The metaphor of a yoke on the neck (*lo tamishtu... tsavverotekhem*, 'you will not remove your necks') describes an inescapable burden, evoking the yoke of servitude. The contrast between their current arrogant 'walk' and their future inability to 'walk with heads held high' (*romah*) reverses their social status.
4. The *mashal* ('taunt, parable, proverb') is a mocking song — the very people who seized others' land will become the subject of a satirical lament. The phrase *nehiyah niyah* ('it has happened, it is done') uses a cognate construction for emphasis. The irony is complete: they divided others' fields (v. 2), and now their own fields are divided (*yechalleg*) among others. The word *chelqi* ('my portion') refers to the covenant allotment of land — its loss is catastrophic in Israel's theological framework.
5. The punishment fits the crime: the land-grabbers will have no representative to cast the measuring line (*chevel*) when land is redistributed 'in the assembly of the LORD' (*biquhal YHWH*). The *chevel* is the surveyor's cord used in land division — the very instrument of allotment is denied to them. The reference to 'the assembly of the LORD' may point to a future restoration when land will be redistributed, but the guilty will be excluded from it.
6. The verb *nataf* ('to drip') is used metaphorically for prophetic speech — to preach, to prophesy (literally, 'to let words drip'). The opponents use Micah's own verb against him: 'do not drip!' (*al tattifu*). The irony is that in telling the prophet not to preach, they are themselves preaching (*yattifun*). The phrase *lo yissag kelimot* ('disgrace will not overtake us') reveals their self-assured complacency — they believe they are immune to the consequences Micah proclaims.
7. God responds to the opponents. The phrase *haqatsar ruach YHWH* ('Is the spirit of the LORD shortened/impatient?') uses *qatsar* ('to be short') — the opponents imply God would not actually do what Micah threatens. God's counter: His words 'do good' (*yeitivu*) to those who walk uprightly (*hayashar holekh*) — the problem is not with the prophetic message but with the audience's conduct. The implication is clear: if Micah's words sound like judgment, it is because the hearers are not walking uprightly.
8. God accuses His own people of acting like an enemy (*le'oyev*) — they have become hostile to their own. The phrase *eder tafshitun* ('you strip the splendid robe') describes robbing travelers of their outer garments — a violation of both law (Exodus 22:26-27) and basic decency. The victims are described as 'passing by peacefully' (*overim betach*) and 'returning from war' (*shuvei milchamah*) — they are unarmed, trusting, vulnerable. The Hebrew of this verse is textually difficult and has been debated extensively among scholars.
9. The crime now targets the most vulnerable: women and children. The verb *tegareshun* ('you drive out') is the same word used for divorce (Leviticus 21:7) — these women are expelled from their own homes. The phrase *hadari* ('my splendor') — God speaks of 'my splendor' being taken from the children. This may refer to the children's covenant inheritance, their dignity, or their freedom. The word *le'olam* ('forever') intensifies the tragedy — this is not temporary deprivation but permanent dispossession.
10. The command *qumu ulekh* ('get up and go') echoes God's commission to Jonah (Jonah 1:2) but here is a sentence of exile. The *menuchah* ('rest, resting place') alludes to the Deuteronomic promise of rest in the land (Deuteronomy 12:9) — the land was supposed to be Israel's rest, but defilement (*tum'ah*) has corrupted it. The wordplay *chevel nimrats* ('painful destruction') uses *chevel*, which can mean both 'cord' (the surveyor's cord of v. 5) and 'destruction/pain.' The land that was measured out by cord will be destroyed.
11. A devastating indictment of the people's taste in prophets. The word *ruach* ('wind, spirit') here carries the sense of empty wind — hot air. A prophet who spouts nonsense (*sheker*, 'falsehood') and preaches about wine and beer (*yayin veshekar*) would be enthusiastically received. The verb *attif* ('I will preach') returns to the *nataf*/drip verb from verse 6, completing the wordplay: Micah's opponents told him not to 'drip,' but they would eagerly accept a prophet who 'drips' messages about alcohol. The sarcasm is withering.
12. The tone shifts abruptly from judgment to restoration. The double infinitive absolute (*asof e'esof... qabbets aqabbets*) expresses emphatic certainty — 'I will surely, surely gather.' The 'remnant of Israel' (*she'erit Yisra'el*) introduces a key concept in Micah: not all will be lost; a faithful remainder will survive. The imagery of sheep in a pen (*tso'n botsrah*) suggests both protection and abundance — the pen is so full it buzzes with noise (*tehimenah me'adam*, 'they will hum with people'). Some scholars read *botsrah* as a reference to the city Bozrah in Edom, but the context favors the common noun 'pen, enclosure.'
13. The *haporets* ('the one who breaks open') is a messianic title in later Jewish interpretation — the one who breaks open the way of exile and leads the flock home. The image is of a shepherd breaking through a pen's wall or gate so the flock can follow. The final identification — 'their king... the LORD at their head' (*malkam... vaYHWH berosham*) — places God Himself as the king who leads the procession. The term *malkam* ('their king') could also be read as a reference to the Messiah. The verse moves from sheep imagery to royal procession, blending pastoral and monarchic metaphors.

3

Summary: *Micah 3 is a sustained indictment of Judah's leaders — rulers, prophets, and priests alike. The chapter divides into three oracles: (1) rulers who devour the people like butchers stripping meat from bones (vv. 1-4); (2) false prophets who tailor their messages based on who feeds them (vv. 5-8); and (3) a comprehensive judgment against all three leadership classes, climaxing in the stunning prophecy that Zion will be plowed like a field and Jerusalem's temple mount will become a forested hilltop (vv. 9-12). This final verse is one of the most radical utterances in prophetic literature — the destruction of the temple itself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The butchery metaphor in verses 2-3 is among the most graphic in prophetic literature: leaders flay the skin from the people, tear flesh from bones, chop them up like meat in a pot. This is not hyperbole but a precise description of economic exploitation rendered in sacrificial language — the leaders treat the people as animals for slaughter. Micah's self-description in verse 8 is one of the clearest prophetic self-authentications in the Hebrew Bible: he is filled with power, with the spirit of the LORD, with justice and courage. The final verse (v. 12) was quoted 100 years later to save Jeremiah's life (Jeremiah 26:18) — the elders remembered Micah's words and argued that a prophet should not be killed for proclaiming judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The butchery imagery (vv. 2-3) uses sacrificial terminology, creating a disturbing reversal: the leaders treat the people like sacrificial animals. The verb gashu ('they strip') and pashshetu ('they flay') are precise butchery terms. In verse 8, the phrase 'filled with power' (male'ti koach) is followed by 'the spirit of the LORD' (et ruach YHWH) — some manuscripts and versions read this differently, but the WLC text is followed. The prediction of Zion's destruction (v. 12) is so radical that it was apparently never fulfilled in Micah's own time — Hezekiah's reforms may have delayed it — but was ultimately fulfilled by Babylon in 586 BCE.*

Connections: *Verse 12 is directly quoted in Jeremiah 26:18, making it one of the few prophetic texts cited by another prophet. The butchery metaphor connects to Ezekiel 34 (shepherds who feed themselves instead of the flock). The false-prophet indictment parallels Jeremiah 23 and Ezekiel 13. Micah's claim to be filled with the spirit (v. 8) contrasts with the false prophets who have no vision from God.*

¹Then I said:

"Listen, you leaders of Jacob,
you rulers of the house of Israel!
Is it not your duty to know justice?

²You who hate good and love evil,
who tear the skin from my people
and the flesh from their bones,

³who eat the flesh of my people,
flay the skin from them,
break their bones,
and chop them up like meat for the pot,
like flesh in a cauldron."

⁴Then they will cry out to the LORD,
but he will not answer them.
He will hide his face from them at that time,
because they have made their deeds evil.

⁵This is what the LORD says concerning the prophets
 who lead my people astray:
 When they have something to bite with their teeth,
 they proclaim, 'Peace!'
 But against the one who puts nothing in their mouths,
 they declare war.

⁶Therefore it will be night for you — without vision,
 and darkness for you — without divination.
 The sun will set on the prophets,
 and the day will go dark over them.

⁷The seers will be put to shame
 and the diviners will be disgraced.
 They will all cover their mouths,
 for there is no answer from God.

⁸But as for me, I am filled with power —
 with the spirit of the LORD —
 with justice and courage,
 to declare to Jacob his transgression
 and to Israel his sin.

⁹Hear this, you leaders of the house of Jacob,
 you rulers of the house of Israel,
 who detest justice
 and twist everything that is right,

¹⁰who build Zion with bloodshed
 and Jerusalem with injustice.

¹¹Her leaders judge for a bribe,
 her priests teach for a price,
 and her prophets divine for money.
 Yet they lean on the LORD and say,
 'Is not the LORD among us?
 No disaster will come upon us.'

¹²Therefore, because of you,
 Zion will be plowed like a field,
 Jerusalem will become a heap of ruins,
 and the temple mount will become
 a wooded hilltop.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Micah addresses the leaders directly using two terms: *rashei* ('heads, chiefs') and *qetsinei* ('commanders, rulers'). The rhetorical question 'Is it not your duty to know justice?' (*halo lakhem lada'at et hamishpat*) implies that knowing justice is the fundamental obligation of leadership. The verb *yada* ('to know') in Hebrew means more than intellectual awareness — it implies intimate familiarity and active practice. Leaders who do not know justice are unfit to lead.

2. The leaders' moral inversion is stated bluntly: they hate good and love evil — a complete reversal of the moral order. The butchery imagery begins: they 'tear' (gozlei) skin from the people and strip flesh from bones. The verb *gazel* ('to tear away, to rob') carries connotations of both robbery and violent flaying. The language deliberately echoes sacrificial procedures — the leaders treat the populace as animals to be butchered.
3. The butchery sequence continues with escalating violence: eating flesh, flaying skin, breaking bones, chopping into pieces. The vocabulary (*pareshu*, 'they spread out'; *pitssechu*, 'they broke open') is precise butchery terminology. The pot (*sir*) and cauldron (*qallachat*) imagery turns the leaders into cannibals — they consume the very people they are supposed to protect. This metaphor is not about literal cannibalism but about economic exploitation so predatory it is equivalent to devouring human beings. The same pot imagery appears in Ezekiel 11:3 and 24:3-6.
4. The consequence is devastating: God will not answer their prayers. The phrase *veyaster panav mehem* ('he will hide his face from them') is one of the most severe judgments in the Hebrew Bible — the hiding of God's face means the withdrawal of divine protection, attention, and relationship. It is the opposite of the priestly blessing ('The LORD make his face shine upon you,' Numbers 6:25). The reason is stated with judicial precision: *ka'asher here'u ma'aleiheim* ('because they have made their deeds evil') — their actions determined God's response.
5. The false prophets' corruption is economic: their message changes based on who feeds them. When someone provides food (*noshshkhim beshinnehem*, literally 'biting with their teeth' — i.e., having something to eat), they prophesy *shalom* ('peace'). When someone fails to feed them (*lo yitten al pihem*, 'does not put in their mouths'), they 'consecrate war' (*qiddeshu milchamah*) against that person. The verb *qiddesh* ('to consecrate, to sanctify') is religious vocabulary applied to warfare — they declare a holy war against those who do not pay them.
6. The judgment on false prophets is the loss of prophetic ability itself — night without vision (*chazon*), darkness without divination (*qesem*). Since they sold false visions, God takes away all vision. The sun setting 'on the prophets' (*al hanevi'im*) and darkness covering them is both literal (they lose their prophetic sight) and figurative (public disgrace). The imagery reverses the prophetic ideal: a true prophet is supposed to bring light and clarity, but these prophets will be plunged into permanent darkness.
7. The covering of the upper lip (*ve'atu al safam*) is a sign of mourning and shame (Leviticus 13:45, Ezekiel 24:17). The false prophets — called *chozim* ('seers') and *qosemim* ('diviners') — will be publicly humiliated when their predictions fail to materialize. The final clause is devastating: *ein ma'aneh Elohim* ('there is no answer from God'). God's silence is the ultimate judgment on false prophecy — He simply stops speaking to them.
8. Micah's self-authentication stands in sharp contrast to the false prophets. He claims four qualities: *koach* ('power'), *ruach YHWH* ('the spirit of the LORD'), *mishpat* ('justice'), and *gevurah* ('courage, might'). These are precisely what the false prophets lack. His commission is to 'declare' (*lehagid*) — the verb of honest testimony — Jacob's *pesha* ('transgression, rebellion') and Israel's *chatta't* ('sin'). Where false prophets tell people what they want to hear, Micah tells them what they need to hear. This verse is one of the clearest statements of prophetic self-consciousness in the Hebrew Bible.
9. The third oracle begins with another summons to the leaders, echoing verse 1. The verb *meta'avim* ('who detest, who abhor') describes an active revulsion toward justice — these leaders do not merely neglect justice but find it repulsive. The verb *ye'aqqeshu* ('they twist, they make crooked') derives from the root '-q-sh, meaning to bend, to pervert. The word *yesharah* ('what is right, what is straight') is the opposite of crooked — they take what is straight and bend it.
10. The accusation is specific: the physical construction of the capital is funded by violence (*damim*, literally 'bloods,' plural, indicating multiple acts of bloodshed) and injustice (*avlah*, 'crookedness, perversion of right'). The buildings of Jerusalem are built on a foundation of exploitation. This verse may refer to forced labor, land seizure (cf. 2:1-2), or judicial corruption that enables the wealthy to profit from the suffering of the poor.
11. All three leadership classes are indicted: rulers (*rasheiha*) take bribes to pervert justice; priests (*kohaneiha*) sell religious instruction (the verb *yoru* means 'to teach, to give torah/instruction'); prophets (*nevi'eih*) sell divination for silver. The devastating irony is in the final clause: despite thoroughgoing corruption, they claim divine protection — 'Is not the LORD among us?' (*halo YHWH beqirbbenu*). They treat God's presence as an unconditional guarantee rather than a covenantal relationship that demands righteousness. This presumption upon grace while practicing injustice is precisely what Micah condemns.
12. This is one of the most radical prophecies in the Hebrew Bible: the temple mount (*har habbayit*, literally 'the mountain of the house') will be overgrown with forest like an abandoned high place. Zion, the dwelling of God, will be plowed like farmland. The word *bilvalkhem* ('because of you') places direct blame on the corrupt leaders. This verse was quoted a century later to save Jeremiah's life: when Jeremiah prophesied the temple's destruction, the elders cited Micah's precedent and argued that Hezekiah had responded to Micah's warning with repentance rather than executing the prophet (Jeremiah 26:18-19). The ultimate fulfillment came when Babylon destroyed Jerusalem in 586 BCE.

4

Summary: *Micah 4 pivots from the devastating judgment of chapter 3 (Zion plowed like a field) to one of the most magnificent visions of future restoration in prophetic literature. The chapter opens with the famous 'swords into plowshares' oracle — a vision of universal peace centered on Zion, which appears nearly verbatim in Isaiah 2:2-4. Nations stream to God's mountain to learn His ways; God judges between peoples; weapons are forged into farming tools. The chapter then addresses the present reality: Israel is in pain like a woman in labor, destined for exile in Babylon, but will be delivered. Many nations gather against Zion, unaware that God has gathered them like sheaves to the threshing floor.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'swords into plowshares' oracle (vv. 1-5) is shared almost word-for-word with Isaiah 2:2-4, raising the question of which prophet originated it — or whether both drew from a common liturgical tradition. Micah adds a distinctive line not found in Isaiah: 'Each person will sit under their own vine and under their own fig tree, and no one will make them afraid' (v. 4) — an image of domestic security and agricultural prosperity that became proverbial (1 Kings 4:25, Zechariah 3:10). The labor-and-birth metaphor (vv. 9-10) is both terrifying and hopeful: the pain is real (exile to Babylon), but deliverance comes through the pain, not by avoiding it. The mention of Babylon is striking since in Micah's time (8th century BCE), Assyria, not Babylon, was the dominant threat — this is either prophetic foresight or later editorial updating.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Micah 4:1-3 and Isaiah 2:2-4 is one of the great textual puzzles of the Hebrew Bible. We render both as they appear in their respective books without speculating on priority. The verb yikketu ('they will beat') in verse 3 describes the physical reforging of metal — swords hammered into plowshares. The phrase 'each under their vine and fig tree' (v. 4) uses the Hebrew tachat ('under, beneath'), creating an image of the shade and shelter these plants provide. The threshing-floor metaphor in verses 12-13 is violent: Zion is given horns of iron and hooves of bronze to thresh the nations — a jarring shift from the peace vision.*

Connections: *Isaiah 2:2-4 is the parallel to verses 1-3. 'Under their vine and fig tree' echoes 1 Kings 4:25 (Solomon's golden age) and Zechariah 3:10. The exile-to-Babylon prediction connects to 2 Kings 24-25 and Jeremiah 29. The threshing-floor imagery connects to Joel 3:13 and Revelation 14:14-20. The labor metaphor anticipates Isaiah 66:7-9 and Romans 8:22.*

¹In the last days,
the mountain of the LORD's house will be established
as the highest of the mountains,
raised above the hills,
and peoples will stream to it.

²Many nations will come and say,
'Come, let us go up to the mountain of the LORD,
to the house of the God of Jacob,
that he may teach us his ways
and we may walk in his paths.'
For instruction will go out from Zion,
and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

³He will judge between many peoples
and settle disputes for mighty nations far away.
They will beat their swords into plowshares
and their spears into pruning hooks.
Nation will not lift up sword against nation,

and they will no longer learn war.

⁴Each person will sit under their own vine
and under their own fig tree,
and no one will make them afraid,
for the mouth of the LORD of Hosts has spoken.

⁵For all the peoples walk,
each in the name of their god,
but we will walk in the name of the LORD our God
forever and ever.

⁶"On that day," declares the LORD,
"I will gather the lame
and assemble the outcast —
even those I have afflicted.

⁷I will make the lame into a remnant
and the far-removed into a mighty nation.
The LORD will reign over them on Mount Zion
from now and forever."

⁸And you, O watchtower of the flock,
O hill of the daughter of Zion —
to you the former dominion will return,
the kingdom of the daughter of Jerusalem.

⁹Now, why do you cry out so loudly?
Is there no king among you?
Has your counselor perished?
For pain has gripped you like a woman in labor.

¹⁰Writhe and push, O daughter of Zion,
like a woman in labor!
For now you will go out from the city
and live in the open field.
You will go all the way to Babylon —
there you will be rescued.
There the LORD will redeem you
from the hand of your enemies.

¹¹Now many nations have gathered against you,
saying, 'Let her be defiled,
and let our eyes gloat over Zion!'

¹²But they do not know the thoughts of the LORD;
they do not understand his plan.
For he has gathered them
like sheaves to the threshing floor.

¹³"Get up and thresh, O daughter of Zion!
 For I will make your horns iron
 and your hooves bronze.
 You will crush many peoples,
 and you will devote their unjust gain to the LORD
 and their wealth to the Lord of all the earth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *be'acharit hayyamim* ('in the last days, in the latter days') signals eschatological hope — a future reversal of the present devastation. Coming immediately after 3:12 (the temple mount becoming a wooded hilltop), the contrast is astonishing: the same mount will be exalted above all mountains. The verb *naharu* ('they will stream, they will flow') describes the movement of rivers — the nations will flow upward to Zion like water flowing uphill, a physical impossibility that underscores the supernatural nature of this vision. This passage appears almost identically in Isaiah 2:2.
2. The nations voluntarily seek God's instruction — there is no compulsion. The verb *yorenu* ('he will teach us') derives from the same root as *torah* ('instruction, law') — *arah*, 'to direct, to instruct.' Torah here is rendered 'instruction' rather than 'law' to capture its broader meaning: God's guidance for living, not merely legal code. The parallelism 'instruction from Zion / the word of the LORD from Jerusalem' establishes Zion-Jerusalem as the center from which divine teaching radiates outward to all nations. The universalistic vision — many nations coming to learn from Israel's God — is remarkable for an 8th-century Judean prophet.
3. The verb *shafat* ('he will judge') here means arbitrate, settle disputes — God serves as the supreme judge between nations, making war unnecessary. The verb *hokhiach* ('and he will decide, settle disputes for') carries the sense of rendering a binding verdict. The iconic image — swords beaten into plowshares (*ittim*, iron plow points) and spears into pruning hooks (*mazmerot*) — describes the literal reforging of weapons into agricultural tools. The verb *kittu* ('they will beat') refers to metalwork — hammering and shaping iron. The final clause is the most radical: they will not even 'learn' war (*lo yilmedun od milchamah*) — not just ceasing to fight but forgetting how to fight.
4. This verse is unique to Micah — it does not appear in the Isaiah parallel. The image of sitting under one's own vine and fig tree became the quintessential vision of peace and prosperity in Israelite thought (1 Kings 4:25, 2 Kings 18:31, Zechariah 3:10). It describes domestic security, agricultural sufficiency, and the absence of fear. The phrase *ve'ein macharid* ('and no one will make them afraid') is the opposite of the covenant curses (Leviticus 26:6, Deuteronomy 28:26), where wild beasts and enemies terrify the disobedient. The authentication formula — 'the mouth of the LORD of Hosts has spoken' — stamps this vision with divine certainty.
5. This verse, also unique to Micah's version, adds a confessional response to the peace vision. The contrast between 'all the peoples' walking in the name of their gods and Israel's commitment to walk in the name of YHWH 'forever and ever' (*le'olam va'ed*) creates a tension with the universalism of verses 1-4. Rather than claiming other nations' gods are real, the verse acknowledges the present reality (nations follow their gods) while affirming Israel's permanent commitment to YHWH. The phrase *le'olam va'ed* intensifies *olam* — not merely 'to the age' but 'to the age and beyond.'
6. God pledges to gather the most vulnerable: the 'lame' (*tsolah*, those who limp) and the 'outcast' (*niddachah*, those driven away). The final phrase — *va'asher hare'oti* ('even those I have afflicted') — is remarkably honest: God acknowledges that He Himself caused the affliction. This is not divine indifference but divine responsibility — the same God who sent the judgment will reverse it. The 'lame' and 'outcast' may be literal or metaphorical for a defeated, scattered people.
7. The reversal is complete: the lame become the remnant (*she'erit*), and those driven far away (*hannah'ah*) become a mighty nation (*goy atsum*). The 'remnant' concept is central to Micah's theology — a faithful core survives judgment to become the seed of restoration. The declaration 'the LORD will reign' (*malakh YHWH*) is a coronation formula — God Himself will be king on Zion, replacing the corrupt human rulers condemned in chapter 3. The phrase *me'attah ve'ad olam* ('from now and forever') asserts the permanence of this divine kingship.
8. *Migdal-eder* ('tower of the flock') refers to a watchtower used by shepherds to guard their flocks — here it is a title for Zion. The same name appears in Genesis 35:21 near Bethlehem, where Jacob camped after Rachel's death, creating an intertextual link to the Bethlehem prophecy in 5:2. The *ophel* ('hill, fortified mound') is the original citadel of Jerusalem. The 'former dominion' (*hamemshalah hari'shonah*) is the Davidic kingdom — the promise that the Davidic dynasty will be restored. This looks backward to David and forward to the messianic king of chapter 5.
9. The tone shifts sharply from future glory to present agony. The rhetorical questions ('Is there no king? Has your counselor perished?') suggest that Jerusalem's leaders have failed — the king and royal advisors are either absent or useless. The labor metaphor (*chil kayyoleadah*, 'pain like a woman giving birth') introduces an image that dominates the rest of the chapter. In prophetic literature, birth pangs represent suffering that is both agonizing and purposeful — the pain leads to new life.
10. The mention of Babylon (*Bavel*) is remarkable — in Micah's time, Assyria was the dominant power, and Babylon was centuries away from conquering Judah. This is either a case of prophetic foresight or reflects later editorial updating. The verb *tinnatseli* ('you will be rescued') promises deliverance through the exile, not from it — the pain of exile is necessary. The verb *yig'alekh* ('he will redeem you') is from the root *g-'l* (*go'el*), the kinsman-redeemer — God will act as Israel's closest kin, buying them back from captivity.

11. The scene shifts to an attack on Zion by a coalition of nations. Their desire to see Zion 'defiled' (techenaf) and to gloat over her (vetachaz betsiyon einenu, literally 'let our eye look upon Zion' with pleasure at her humiliation) reveals malicious intent beyond mere military conquest. The nations want to see Zion desecrated, her holiness violated.
12. The dramatic irony: the nations think they have gathered against Zion by their own strategy, but God has gathered them (qibbetsam) — the same verb used of gathering Israel in verse 6. The nations are not besiegers but sheaves (amir) collected for threshing. The threshing floor (goren) is where grain is separated from chaff by crushing — the nations, thinking they are destroyers, are about to be destroyed. God's 'thoughts' (machshevot) and 'plan' (atsato) stand hidden behind the visible events.
13. The threshing imagery continues with violent specificity: Zion is given iron horns and bronze hooves — the equipment of a threshing ox that tramples grain on the threshing floor. The verb hadiqot ('you will crush') describes the grinding action of threshing. The verb hacharamti ('I will devote, I will consecrate to destruction') is the herem vocabulary — dedicating the spoils exclusively to God. The title 'the Lord of all the earth' (Adon kol ha'aretz) asserts God's universal sovereignty, connecting to the universal vision of verses 1-4. The plundered wealth (betsa'am, 'their unjust gain') and resources (cheilam, 'their wealth') belong to God, not to Zion.

5

Summary: *Micah 5 contains the famous Bethlehem prophecy — one of the most significant messianic texts in the Hebrew Bible, quoted in Matthew 2:6 to explain Jesus's birthplace. The chapter opens with the humiliation of Israel's current ruler (struck on the cheek), then pivots to the announcement that from Bethlehem Ephrathah, the smallest of Judah's clans, will come a ruler whose origins are 'from of old, from ancient days.' This ruler will shepherd his flock in the strength of the LORD. The chapter continues with promises about the remnant of Jacob among the nations and concludes with God's purging of Israel's military power, idolatry, and sorcery.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Bethlehem prophecy (v. 2 in Hebrew, v. 1 in English Bibles following the Septuagint verse division) is one of the most precisely fulfilled messianic prophecies. Bethlehem was David's hometown (1 Samuel 16:1), and by specifying it as the birthplace of the future ruler, Micah connects the Messiah directly to the Davidic line. The phrase 'whose origins are from of old, from ancient days' (motsa'otav miqqedem mimei olam) has been interpreted as referring either to the antiquity of the Davidic dynasty or to the pre-existence of the Messiah. The shift from Bethlehem's insignificance ('too small to be among the clans of Judah') to its cosmic importance is a characteristic Micah theme: God works through the small, the overlooked, the marginal.*

Translation Friction: *The verse numbering differs between the Hebrew text (where this chapter begins at 4:14 in some reckonings) and English translations. We follow the WLC versification. The phrase motsa'otav miqqedem mimei olam ('his origins are from of old, from ancient days') is debated: miqqedem can mean 'from the east' or 'from ancient times,' and olam ('eternity, ancient time') ranges from 'a long time ago' to 'eternity.' The ambiguity between the Davidic dynasty's antiquity and genuine pre-existence is preserved. The identity of 'the Assyrian' in verses 5-6 is debated — is it literal Assyria or a typological reference to any future enemy?*

Connections: *Matthew 2:5-6 and John 7:42 cite this passage in reference to Jesus's birth in Bethlehem. The connection to David via Bethlehem links to Ruth 4:17-22 (David's ancestry from Bethlehem), 1 Samuel 16 (David's anointing), and 2 Samuel 7 (the Davidic covenant). The shepherd imagery connects to Ezekiel 34 and John 10. The remnant theology (vv. 7-8) runs throughout Micah (2:12, 4:7) and Isaiah (10:20-22). The purging of military power and idolatry (vv. 10-15) echoes Deuteronomy 18:10-12.*

¹Now marshal your troops, O daughter of troops!

A siege is laid against us.

With a rod they strike the ruler of Israel
on the cheek.

²But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,
though you are small among the clans of Judah,
out of you will come forth for me

one who will be ruler over Israel,
 whose origins are from of old,
 from ancient days.

³Therefore he will give them up
 until the time when she who is in labor gives birth.
 Then the rest of his brothers
 will return to the people of Israel.

⁴He will stand and shepherd his flock
 in the strength of the LORD,
 in the majesty of the name of the LORD his God.
 They will live securely,
 for then he will be great
 to the ends of the earth.

⁵And this one will be our peace.
 When Assyria comes into our land
 and treads on our fortresses,
 we will raise against him seven shepherds
 and eight leaders of men.

⁶They will shepherd the land of Assyria with the sword,
 the land of Nimrod at its gates.
 He will deliver us from Assyria
 when it comes into our land
 and when it treads within our borders.

⁷The remnant of Jacob will be
 among many peoples
 like dew from the LORD,
 like showers on the grass,
 which do not wait for anyone
 and do not depend on human beings.

⁸The remnant of Jacob will be among the nations,
 among many peoples,
 like a lion among the beasts of the forest,
 like a young lion among flocks of sheep —
 when it passes through, it tramples and tears,
 and no one can rescue.

⁹Your hand will be raised over your adversaries,
 and all your enemies will be cut off.

¹⁰"On that day," declares the LORD,
 "I will cut off your horses from among you
 and destroy your chariots.

- ¹¹I will cut off the cities of your land
and tear down all your fortresses.
- ¹²I will cut off sorcery from your hand,
and you will have no more fortune-tellers.
- ¹³I will cut off your carved images
and your sacred pillars from among you,
and you will no longer bow down
to the work of your hands.
- ¹⁴I will uproot your Asherah poles from among you
and demolish your cities.
- ¹⁵I will execute vengeance in anger and wrath
upon the nations that have not obeyed."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew verse numbering differs from English Bibles — this is 4:14 in some Hebrew traditions. The opening *titgodedi* ('marshal, gather in troops') plays on the word *gedud* ('troop, raiding band'). The image of striking the ruler (*shofet*, 'judge, ruler') on the cheek is a deliberate humiliation — the most powerful person in Israel is publicly shamed. This degradation of the current ruler sets up the contrast with the coming ruler from Bethlehem. The identity of the 'ruler of Israel' may be the reigning king of Judah facing Assyrian or Babylonian siege.
2. This is the verse quoted in Matthew 2:6 by the chief priests and scribes when Herod asks where the Messiah is to be born. Bethlehem Ephrathah (the full designation distinguishes it from Bethlehem in Zebulun, Joshua 19:15) is David's city (1 Samuel 16:1, 17:12). The word *alfei* ('clans, thousands') refers to the administrative divisions of the tribes. The phrase *motsa'otav miqqedem mimei olam* ('his origins are from of old, from ancient days') is profoundly ambiguous: it could refer to the ancient Davidic dynasty (going back centuries) or to genuine pre-existence (existing before time). The word *olam* ranges from 'a long time' to 'eternity.' The ambiguity is preserved rather than resolved. The preposition *li* ('for me') indicates this ruler comes at God's initiative and for God's purposes.
3. The 'she who is in labor' (*yoledah*) connects to the birth-pain imagery of 4:9-10 and may also evoke Isaiah 7:14 (the virgin/young woman who will bear a son). God will 'give them up' (*yittenem*) — abandon Israel to suffering — only until the birth occurs. 'The rest of his brothers' (*yeter echav*) refers either to the scattered Israelites who will be reunited or to the ruler's kinsmen who will join him. The return (*yeshuvun*) echoes the *teshuvah* theme — a homecoming both physical and spiritual.
4. The ruler from Bethlehem is described as a shepherd (*ra'ah*, 'to shepherd, to feed') who leads with divine strength and majesty — not his own. The verb *ve'amad* ('he will stand') suggests stability, authority, and permanence. His flock (Israel) 'will live securely' (*veyashevu*, from *yashav*, 'to sit, to dwell' — implying settled peace). His greatness extends 'to the ends of the earth' (*ad afsei aretz*), making this a universal ruler, not merely a local king. The shepherd-king imagery connects directly to David, the shepherd boy from Bethlehem who became king, and forward to Jesus's self-identification as the Good Shepherd (John 10:11).
5. The phrase *vehayah zeh shalom* ('this one will be peace') identifies the Bethlehem ruler not merely as a bringer of peace but as peace itself — an unusually strong identification (cf. Ephesians 2:14, 'He himself is our peace'). 'Assyria' (*Ashur*) may be the literal Assyrian Empire (the dominant threat in Micah's time) or a typological name for any future threatening empire. The phrase 'seven shepherds and eight leaders' (*shiv'ah ro'im ushmonah nessikhei adam*) uses the Hebrew poetic convention of $x / x+1$ (cf. Amos 1:3, Proverbs 30:15, 18) to indicate a full, sufficient number — more than enough leaders to meet the threat.
6. The verb *ra'u* ('they will shepherd') is used ironically — they will 'shepherd' Assyria with the sword, turning the pastoral image into a military one. The 'land of Nimrod' (*erets Nimrod*) is another name for Mesopotamia/Assyria (Genesis 10:8-12, where Nimrod builds Nineveh). The phrase *bifetacheiha* ('at its gates, at its entrances') suggests the counterattack will reach Assyria's own fortified cities. The deliverer (*vehitsil*, 'he will deliver') is the Bethlehem ruler from verse 2.
7. The remnant (*she'erit Ya'aqov*) is compared to dew (*tal*) and rain showers (*revivim*) — life-giving, divinely sent, independent of human effort. The phrase 'which do not wait for anyone' (*asher lo yeqavveh le'ish*) emphasizes that dew falls by God's appointment, not by human scheduling. This imagery portrays the remnant as a blessing to the nations — not through military might but through quiet, God-given refreshment. The parallel to verse 8 creates a duality: the remnant is both dew (blessing) and lion (power).
8. The second remnant image contrasts sharply with verse 7: where the remnant was dew (gentle, life-giving), here it is a lion (*aryeh*) and a young lion (*kefir*) — powerful, irresistible, predatory. The verbs *ramas* ('tramples') and *taraf* ('tears apart') describe a lion's violent attack on prey. Together, verses 7-8 present the remnant in a dual role: blessing to those who receive them peacefully, devastating to those who oppose them. This reflects the

biblical pattern of God's people as both a source of universal blessing (Genesis 12:3) and an instrument of divine judgment.

9. The raised hand (tarom yadekha) is a gesture of victory and power. The verb yikkaretu ('they will be cut off') is covenant-curse vocabulary — enemies will be eliminated. This verse serves as a transition to the purging oracle in verses 10-15, where God removes from Israel everything she has relied on instead of Him.
10. God begins dismantling Israel's military apparatus. Horses (susekha) and chariots (markevotekha) were the advanced military technology of the ancient world — and Israel was specifically forbidden from accumulating them (Deuteronomy 17:16). By removing them, God is forcing Israel back to dependence on Him rather than on weaponry. The same word hikkatti ('I will cut off') is used throughout verses 10-14, creating a liturgy of divine purging.
11. Fortified cities (arei artsekha) and strongholds (mivtsarekha) represent military defense infrastructure. God will tear them down (harashti, from haras, 'to demolish, to pull down') — the same verb used for the demolition of pagan altars (Judges 6:25). The implication is that Israel's fortresses have become idols — objects of trust that rival God.
12. The purging extends to magical practices: keshafim ('sorcery, witchcraft') and me'onenim ('fortune-tellers, those who practice divination by clouds or times'). These practices were strictly forbidden in Deuteronomy 18:10-12. God removes them not merely as sins but as rivals — any system that claims to predict or control the future apart from God must be eliminated.
13. Carved images (pesilekha) and sacred pillars (matstsevathekha) represent idolatrous worship. The matstsevah ('standing stone, pillar') was originally legitimate in Israelite worship (Genesis 28:18, Jacob's pillar at Bethel) but was later condemned when associated with Canaanite religion (Deuteronomy 16:22). The phrase 'the work of your hands' (ma'aseh yadekha) is a standard prophetic way of describing the absurdity of idol worship — worshipping what you yourself made.
14. The Asherah poles (asherekha) were wooden poles or carved images associated with the goddess Asherah, consort of Baal in Canaanite religion. The verb natashti ('I will uproot') uses agricultural imagery — these cult objects will be torn out like weeds. The destruction of 'your cities' (arekha) at the end may refer to cities where idolatrous practices were concentrated, or it may echo verse 11's fortress demolition.
15. The chapter closes with divine vengeance (naqam) against the nations 'that have not obeyed' (asher lo shame'u, literally 'that have not heard/listened'). The verb shama ('to hear') carries the full weight of its Hebrew meaning: to hear and to obey. The nations that have not listened to God will face His anger (af) and wrath (chemah) — two distinct Hebrew words for divine displeasure, with af suggesting hot anger (literally 'nostril, flaring nostrils') and chemah suggesting burning fury.

6

Summary: *Micah 6 contains one of the most quoted verses in the Old Testament: 'He has told you, O mortal, what is good — and what does the LORD require of you? To act justly, to love faithful love, and to walk humbly with your God' (6:8). The chapter is structured as a covenant lawsuit (rib) in which God summons the mountains as witnesses, recounts His saving acts (the Exodus, the wilderness journey, Balaam and Balak), and then asks what Israel has done in return. The people respond with escalating ritual offers — thousands of rams, rivers of oil, even a firstborn child — but God rejects all of these in favor of three simple requirements: justice, chesed, and humility. The chapter closes with an indictment of commercial fraud and the specific sins of the house of Omri.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 8 distills the entire prophetic message into three requirements, creating perhaps the most concise summary of ethical monotheism in the Hebrew Bible. The three requirements — mishpat (justice), chesed (faithful love), and hatsnea lekhet (humble walking) — correspond to the three prophets often associated together: Amos (justice), Hosea (chesed), and Isaiah (humble walking with God). The covenant lawsuit (rib) format is a legal proceeding in which God is simultaneously plaintiff, prosecutor, and judge — yet He begins not with accusations but with bewildered questions: 'What have I done to you? How have I wearied you?' The escalating offers in verses 6-7 (calves, rams, oil, firstborn) move from the ordinary to the horrific, with child sacrifice representing the ultimate corruption of worship.*

Translation Friction: *The verb hatsnea ('to walk humbly, to walk carefully') in verse 8 is debated — it may mean 'humbly,' 'carefully,' 'wisely,' or 'circumspectly.' The root ts-n- carries the sense of modesty or reserve. We render 'humbly' as the most widely recognized translation while noting the fuller range. The phrase 'rivers of oil' (nacharei shamen, v. 7) is hyperbolic — no one could literally offer rivers of oil — escalating the absurdity. The reference to 'the firstborn' (bekhori, v. 7) as a potential sacrifice is the most shocking escalation, evoking the Canaanite practice of child sacrifice that Israel was strictly forbidden from imitating (Leviticus 18:21, 20:2-5; 2 Kings 23:10). The 'statutes of Omri' (v. 16) refer to the religious policies of the northern dynasty of Omri/Ahab, who promoted Baal worship.*

Connections: The covenant lawsuit form connects to Deuteronomy 32 (the Song of Moses), Isaiah 1:2-4, Hosea 4:1-3, and Psalm 50. The triad of justice-chesed-humility echoes Amos 5:24 (justice rolling like water), Hosea 6:6 ('I desire chesed, not sacrifice'), and Isaiah 66:2 ('the one who is humble and contrite'). Jesus cites Micah 6:8's priorities in Matthew 23:23 ('the weightier matters of the law: justice, mercy, and faithfulness'). The rejection of ritual in favor of ethics connects to 1 Samuel 15:22 ('To obey is better than sacrifice').

¹Hear now what the LORD says:

"Get up! Bring your case before the mountains,
and let the hills hear your voice."

²Hear, O mountains, the LORD's case,
and you enduring foundations of the earth!

For the LORD has a case against his people;
he will contend with Israel.

³"My people, what have I done to you?

How have I burdened you?

Answer me!

⁴For I brought you up from the land of Egypt
and redeemed you from the house of slavery.

I sent Moses, Aaron, and Miriam before you.

⁵My people, remember what Balak king of Moab plotted
and what Balaam son of Beor answered him.

Remember the journey from Shittim to Gilgal,
so that you may know the righteous acts of the LORD."

⁶"With what shall I come before the LORD

and bow before the God on high?

Shall I come before him with burnt offerings,
with year-old calves?

⁷Will the LORD be pleased with thousands of rams,
with ten thousand rivers of oil?

Shall I give my firstborn for my transgression,
the fruit of my body for the sin of my soul?"

⁸He has told you, O mortal, what is good,

and what the LORD requires of you:

Only to act justly,

to love faithful love,

and to walk humbly with your God.

⁹The voice of the LORD calls to the city —

and it is wisdom to fear your name:

"Hear the rod and the one who appointed it!

¹⁰Can I forget the treasures of wickedness

in the house of the wicked,

and the accursed short measure?

¹¹Can I acquit someone with dishonest scales
and a bag of fraudulent weights?

¹²Her wealthy people are full of violence,
her inhabitants speak lies,
and their tongues are deceitful in their mouths.

¹³Therefore I have begun to strike you,
to devastate you because of your sins.

¹⁴You will eat but not be satisfied;
emptiness will gnaw inside you.
You will store up but not save anything,
and what you do save I will give to the sword.

¹⁵You will sow but not reap.
You will tread olives but not anoint yourself with oil,
and tread grapes but not drink wine.

¹⁶You have kept the statutes of Omri
and all the practices of the house of Ahab;
you have followed their counsel.
Therefore I will make you a desolation
and your inhabitants an object of scorn.
You will bear the reproach of my people."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The chapter opens with a covenant lawsuit (*rib*). The verb *riv* ('to contend, to bring a legal case') is courtroom language — God is initiating a formal proceeding. The mountains and hills are summoned as witnesses, echoing Deuteronomy 32:1 ('Give ear, O heavens... listen, O earth'). Mountains endure across generations and thus serve as witnesses to covenants made long ago. The imperative *qum* ('get up') directed at Micah or Israel urges immediate attention to the divine legal summons.
2. The 'enduring foundations of the earth' (*ha'etanim mosdei aretz*) personifies the geological bedrock as witnesses — they have 'seen' everything since creation. The word *etanim* means 'enduring, permanent, ever-flowing' and is used of perennial streams. The double use of *rib* ('case, lawsuit') establishes the legal framework. The verb *yitvakkach* ('he will contend, he will argue') is from the root *y-k-ch*, meaning to reason, to arbitrate — God does not simply pronounce judgment but enters into argument with Israel, treating them as rational agents capable of response.
3. God's opening statement in the lawsuit is not an accusation but a question — He asks what He has done wrong. The phrase *mah asiti lekha* ('what have I done to you?') is heartbreaking in its directness. The verb *hel'etikha* ('have I burdened you, have I wearied you') comes from *la'ah* ('to be weary, to be tired') — God asks if He has exhausted Israel's patience. The imperative *aneh vi* ('answer me, testify against me') invites Israel to bring counter-charges. God submits Himself to cross-examination — an extraordinary condescension.
4. God's case rests on His saving acts, beginning with the foundational event: the Exodus. The verb *he'elitikha* ('I brought you up') emphasizes the upward movement from Egypt's lowland to the promised land. The verb *peditikha* ('I redeemed you') uses *padah* ('to ransom, to redeem'), indicating that God paid a price for Israel's freedom. The mention of Miriam alongside Moses and Aaron is significant — she is one of the few women identified as a leader of the Exodus (see Exodus 15:20-21, Numbers 12). God sent all three 'before you' (*lefanekha*) — as guides leading the way.
5. God cites two specific episodes: (1) Balak's attempt to curse Israel through Balaam, which God turned into blessing (Numbers 22-24), and (2) the journey from Shittim (the last camp east of the Jordan, Numbers 25:1, Joshua 2:1) to Gilgal (the first camp west of the Jordan, Joshua 4:19-5:12) — the crossing of the Jordan into the promised land. The phrase *tsidqot YHWH* ('the righteous acts of the LORD') uses the plural of *tsedaqah* to describe God's saving interventions — His righteousness is not abstract but concrete, demonstrated through historical deliverance.
6. Israel responds to God's case with a question that escalates through the next two verses. The verb *aqaddem* ('shall I come before, shall I approach') carries the sense of meeting someone with a gift — an audience with a king. The phrase *Elohei marom* ('the God on high, the exalted God') acknowledges divine transcendence. The first offer — year-old calves as burnt offerings (*olot*) — is a standard, appropriate sacrifice. But the question

format ('shall I?') reveals uncertainty about what God actually wants, setting up the escalation to come.

7. The escalation becomes absurd and then horrifying. 'Thousands of rams' and 'ten thousand rivers of oil' are wildly extravagant — the quantities are impossible, exposing the mentality that assumes God can be bought with enough stuff. Then the ultimate horror: 'Shall I give my firstborn for my transgression?' (ha'etten bekhori pish'i). The parallelism — 'firstborn / fruit of my body' with 'transgression / sin of my soul' — frames child sacrifice as a transaction: my child's life for my guilt. This was practiced in the ancient Near East (2 Kings 3:27, Jeremiah 7:31, 32:35) and was absolutely forbidden in Israel (Leviticus 18:21, 20:2-5). The escalation from calves to rams to oil to children reveals a fundamental misunderstanding of what God wants.
8. This is arguably the most famous verse in the Minor Prophets and one of the most quoted in the entire Old Testament. The address adam ('O mortal, O human being') universalizes the message — this is not addressed to Israel alone but to every human being. The three requirements are: (1) asot mishpat ('to do/act justice') — ethical conduct, fair dealing; (2) ahavat chesed ('to love chesed') — not merely to practice chesed but to love it, to desire it, to be drawn to it; (3) hatsnea lekhet im Elohekha ('to walk humbly with your God') — the verb hatsnea is from the root ts-n- meaning modesty, circumspection, careful attentiveness. It appears only here in the Hebrew Bible as an infinitive. Jesus references these priorities in Matthew 23:23: 'the weightier matters of the law: justice, mercy, and faithfulness.'
9. The text shifts from the universal ethical summary to a specific indictment of the city (probably Jerusalem or Samaria). The phrase tushiyyah yir'eh shemekha ('wisdom sees/fears your name') is textually difficult — we follow the reading that connects wisdom (tushiyyah) with the fear of God's name. The 'rod' (matteh) is the instrument of divine punishment, and the city is commanded to hear both the rod and its Appointer (mi ye'adah, 'who appointed it'). The Hebrew is compressed and several words are debated among scholars.
10. God turns to specific economic crimes. The 'treasures of wickedness' (otsrot resha) are wealth accumulated through fraud. The 'short measure' (eifaz rason) refers to using a smaller-than-standard ephah when selling grain — a cheating measure that gives the buyer less than they paid for. The word ze'umah ('accursed, abominated') expresses God's revulsion at commercial dishonesty. The question format ('Can I forget?') implies that God cannot overlook these injustices.
11. The verb ha'ezkeh ('can I acquit, can I declare pure/innocent') is a legal term — God asks whether He can pronounce a verdict of innocence on those who use rigged scales (mo'aznei resha, 'scales of wickedness') and carry bags of false weights (avnei mirmah, 'stones of deception'). Merchants used stone weights on balance scales; carrying lighter stones in a bag allowed them to cheat customers. This practice is condemned in Leviticus 19:35-36, Deuteronomy 25:13-16, and Proverbs 11:1, 20:23.
12. Three charges: the rich are full of chamas ('violence' — the same word used of the pre-flood world in Genesis 6:11 and of Nineveh in Jonah 3:8); the inhabitants speak sheqer ('lies, falsehood'); their tongues are remiyyah ('deceit, treachery'). The progression from economic fraud (vv. 10-11) to violence and lies (v. 12) shows how commercial dishonesty corrupts the entire social fabric.
13. The verb hecheleti ('I have begun') indicates that judgment has already started — it is not merely threatened but underway. The verb hakkotekha ('striking you') and hashhmem ('devastating, making desolate') describe progressive destruction. The phrase al chatto'otekha ('because of your sins') makes the causal connection explicit: the devastation is not arbitrary but a direct response to the sins documented in verses 10-12.
14. The covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28 are invoked: eating without satisfaction echoes Leviticus 26:26 and Deuteronomy 28:38-40. The phrase veyeshchakha beqirbekha ('emptiness will be within you') is debated — it may refer to internal hunger, dysentery, or a gnawing emptiness that no amount of food can fill. The futility curse pattern (you will do X but not achieve Y) is characteristic of covenant curses: effort without result, labor without reward.
15. More futility curses: sowing without reaping, pressing olives without using the oil, treading grapes without drinking the wine. These curses echo Deuteronomy 28:38-40 almost verbatim. The three staples of Israelite agriculture — grain, oil, and wine — are systematically denied. The agricultural cycle (sow, harvest, enjoy) is broken at the final stage — the labor produces nothing usable. This is the covenant operating in reverse: the land that was supposed to flow with milk and honey now consumes effort without return.
16. The chapter closes by identifying the source of corruption: the 'statutes of Omri' and the 'practices of the house of Ahab.' Omri founded the dynasty that included Ahab and Jezebel — architects of Baal worship in the northern kingdom (1 Kings 16:25-26, 16:30-33). The accusation is that Judah has adopted the northern kingdom's religious policies. The consequences are shamah ('desolation'), shereqah ('hissing, scorn' — the sound passersby make at a destroyed city), and cherpat ammi ('the reproach of my people') — public disgrace before the nations.

7

Summary: *Micah 7 moves from lament to triumphant hope. The chapter opens with the prophet's personal grief over the moral collapse of his society — no upright person can be found, rulers and judges conspire together, family members betray each other. But at verse 7, Micah declares his resolve: 'As for me, I will watch for the LORD; I will wait for the God of my salvation.' The chapter then shifts to a dialogue between Zion and her enemies, a vision of national restoration, and concludes with one of the most powerful doxologies in the Hebrew Bible: 'Who is a God like you, pardoning iniquity and passing over transgression?' — a wordplay on Micah's own name (Mi-khah, 'Who is like [God]?'). The final verses celebrate God's chesed and emunah, bringing the book to a close with covenant faithfulness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The closing doxology (vv. 18-20) is a masterpiece of Hebrew theology. The opening question — *mi el kamokha* ('Who is a God like you?') — puns on the prophet's own name (Mikhah/Micah, a shortened form of Mikhayahu, 'Who is like YHWH?'). The entire book has been building to this question: after all the sin, all the judgment, all the suffering — who is a God like this one, who pardons iniquity, who does not retain His anger forever, who delights in chesed? The final verse invokes God's promises to Abraham and Jacob — the patriarchal promises that anchor the entire biblical narrative. Micah's last words are chesed and emunah — faithful love and faithfulness — the twin pillars of covenant relationship.*

Translation Friction: *The lament section (vv. 1-6) presents a society in total moral collapse — 'the best of them is like a brier, the most upright worse than a thorn hedge.' The imagery is agricultural: Micah is like a gleaner who arrives after the harvest and finds nothing left. The dialogue format in verses 8-13 requires careful handling of speaker identification — Zion speaks, then God responds, then the prophet narrates. The verb *yikbbosh* ('he will subdue, he will trample') in verse 19, applied to Israel's iniquities, uses military conquest language for God's victory over sin — He will conquer our sins like an enemy army.*

Connections: *The 'Who is a God like you?' doxology connects to Exodus 15:11 (the Song of the Sea: 'Who is like you among the gods, O LORD?') and Psalm 35:10, 71:19, 77:13, 89:6. The chesed-and-emunah pairing in verse 20 echoes Exodus 34:6, Psalm 85:10, 89:14. The Abraham-and-Jacob reference (v. 20) connects to Genesis 12:1-3, 22:16-18, 28:13-15. The family betrayal theme (v. 6) is quoted by Jesus in Matthew 10:35-36 and Luke 12:53 to describe the divisions His message will cause.*

¹How miserable I am!

I am like one gathering summer fruit,
like one gleaning after the grape harvest —
there is no cluster to eat,
no early fig that I crave.

²The faithful have vanished from the land;
there is no one upright among the people.
They all lie in ambush to shed blood;
each hunts the other with a net.

³Both hands are skilled at doing evil.
The official demands payment,
the judge takes a bribe,
and the powerful dictate what they desire —
so they weave their schemes together.

⁴The best of them is like a brier;
the most upright is worse than a thorn hedge.

The day of your watchmen — your punishment — has come;
now their confusion will follow.

⁵Do not trust a neighbor;
do not rely on a friend.
Guard the words of your mouth
even from the one who lies in your arms.

⁶For a son dishonors his father,
a daughter rises against her mother,
a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law —
a person's enemies are the members of their own household.

⁷But as for me, I will watch for the LORD;
I will wait for the God of my salvation.
My God will hear me.

⁸Do not gloat over me, my enemy!
Though I have fallen, I will rise.
Though I sit in darkness,
the LORD is my light.

⁹I will bear the LORD's indignation —
for I have sinned against him —
until he takes up my case
and establishes justice for me.
He will bring me out to the light,
and I will see his righteousness.

¹⁰Then my enemy will see it,
and shame will cover her —
she who said to me,
'Where is the LORD your God?'
My eyes will see her downfall;
now she will be trampled
like mud in the streets.

¹¹A day for rebuilding your walls!
On that day the boundary will be extended far.

¹²On that day people will come to you
from Assyria and the cities of Egypt,
from Egypt to the Euphrates,
from sea to sea and mountain to mountain.

¹³But the earth will become a desolation
because of its inhabitants,
as the fruit of their deeds.

¹⁴Shepherd your people with your staff,
the flock of your inheritance,
who dwell alone in a forest,
in the midst of a garden land.
Let them graze in Bashan and Gilead
as in the days of old.

¹⁵"As in the days when you came out of the land of Egypt,
I will show them wonders."

¹⁶The nations will see and be ashamed
of all their might.
They will put their hands over their mouths;
their ears will become deaf.

¹⁷They will lick the dust like a snake,
like creatures that crawl on the ground.
They will come trembling out of their strongholds;
they will turn in dread to the LORD our God
and will fear because of you.

¹⁸Who is a God like you,
who pardons iniquity
and passes over the transgression
of the remnant of his inheritance?
He does not retain his anger forever,
for he delights in faithful love.

¹⁹He will again have compassion on us;
he will subdue our iniquities.
You will cast all their sins
into the depths of the sea.

²⁰You will show faithfulness to Jacob
and faithful love to Abraham,
as you swore to our ancestors
from the days of old.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Micah uses an agricultural metaphor for his moral search: he is like a gleaner arriving after the harvest to find nothing left. The 'summer fruit' (asefei qayits) and 'grape gleaning' (olelot batsir) refer to the meager leavings after the main harvest. The bikkurah ('early fig') was a prized delicacy (Hosea 9:10, Isaiah 28:4) — the first fruit of the season, eagerly anticipated. Micah craves righteousness the way a hungry person craves the first fig, but none can be found. The interjectory allalai li ('woe is me!') expresses personal distress, not prophetic judgment.
2. The word chasid ('faithful one, loyal one, pious one') — from the same root as chesed — describes someone who practices covenant faithfulness. Such people have 'perished' (avad) from the land. The word yashar ('upright, straight') is the ethical ideal — and no one embodies it. The violence imagery is predatory: they 'lie in ambush' (ye'erovu) for blood and 'hunt' (yatsudu) each other with a cherem ('net, devoted thing'). The word cherem can also mean 'the ban' — the total destruction devoted to God in holy war — adding a sacrilegious overtone to their predation.
3. The Hebrew of this verse is difficult. The phrase al hara kappayim leheitiv ('both hands on evil to do well') may mean they are 'good at doing evil' — their hands are expert at wickedness. The three corrupt leadership classes appear again: the sar ('official, prince'), the shofet ('judge'), and the gadol ('the great one, the powerful person'). The verb ye'abbetuha ('they weave it, they twist it together') suggests a conspiracy — the three classes

collaborate to distort justice, weaving their individual corruptions into a unified system.

4. The comparison of the 'best' (tovam) to a brier (chedeq) and the 'most upright' (yashar) to a thorn hedge (mesukah) is devastatingly dismissive — even the best people in society are painful to deal with. The 'watchmen' (metsappekha) are the true prophets who have been warning of this day. The word pequddah ('visitation, punishment, reckoning') can mean both a divine visit and the judgment that accompanies it. The word mevukhatam ('their confusion, their bewilderment') describes the panic that overtakes the wicked when the reckoning arrives.
5. The moral collapse extends to the most intimate relationships. The progression from re'a ('neighbor, companion') to aluf ('close friend, trusted companion') to shokevet cheiqekha ('the one who lies in your bosom' — a spouse) shows that no human relationship is safe. The phrase shemor pitchei fikha ('guard the openings of your mouth') advises secrecy even in the marriage bed. This total breakdown of social trust is the consequence of the systemic corruption described in verses 2-4.
6. The family unit, the foundation of Israelite society, has disintegrated. The verb menabbel ('dishonors, treats as a fool') applied to the son-father relationship violates the fifth commandment. Each relationship listed — son/father, daughter/mother, daughter-in-law/mother-in-law — represents a generational bond that has become adversarial. Jesus quotes this verse in Matthew 10:35-36 and Luke 12:53, applying it to the divisions His message will cause within households. The final phrase — oyvei ish anshei veito ('a person's enemies are the members of their own household') — became proverbial.
7. The dramatic turning point. After six verses of unrelieved despair, Micah declares his personal resolve with the emphatic va'ani ('but as for me'). The verb atsappeh ('I will watch, I will look out') is the same root as the 'watchmen' (metsappim) of verse 4 — Micah positions himself as a true watchman, looking not for judgment but for God. The verb ochilah ('I will wait, I will hope') expresses patient expectation. The phrase Elohei yish'i ('the God of my salvation') mirrors the name Yeshua/Jesus. The final declaration — yishma'eni Elohai ('my God will hear me') — is quiet confidence amid chaos.
8. Zion (or the faithful community) now speaks to her enemy. The verbs are deliberately contrasted: nafalti ('I have fallen') / qamti ('I will rise'); eshev bachoshekh ('I sit in darkness') / YHWH or li ('the LORD is my light'). The statement 'the LORD is my light' (YHWH or li) echoes Psalm 27:1 ('The LORD is my light and my salvation'). The perfect-tense verbs (nafalti, qamti) express certainty — the fall is real, but the rising is equally certain. This verse is a miniature creed of hope in the midst of judgment.
9. This verse combines confession and hope in a single breath. The speaker acknowledges sin (chatati lo, 'I have sinned against him') and accepts the resulting divine indignation (za'af, 'wrath, fury') as deserved — but only as temporary. The verb yariv rivi ('he will take up my case, he will plead my cause') uses the rib vocabulary from chapter 6, but now God has switched roles: instead of prosecuting Israel, He becomes Israel's advocate. The phrase 'he will bring me out to the light' (yotsi'eni la'or) reverses the darkness of verse 8. The final phrase — 'I will see his righteousness' (er'eh betsidqato) — promises that God's tsedaqah will become visible through His saving action.
10. The enemy's taunt — 'Where is the LORD your God?' (ayyo YHWH Elohayikh) — is the same taunt hurled at Israel throughout the exile (Psalm 42:3, 10; 79:10; 115:2; Joel 2:17). The reversal is vivid: the taunter will be covered in shame (bushah) and trampled like mud (tit chutsot, 'the mire of the streets'). The word mirmass ('trampling') describes being trodden underfoot — the most degrading form of defeat.
11. The vision shifts to restoration. The 'walls' (gederayikh) are the defensive walls of Jerusalem. The phrase yirchaq choq ('the boundary will be far') is debated — choq may mean 'decree' (the decree of exile will be reversed), 'boundary' (Israel's borders will be expanded), or 'statute' (the oppressive laws of foreign rulers will be removed). We follow the 'boundary' reading as most consonant with the rebuilding imagery. The emphasis is on expansion and restoration.
12. The gathering of the diaspora — people will return from the farthest reaches: Assyria (northeast), Egypt (southwest), the Euphrates River (the eastern boundary of the promised land), and from 'sea to sea and mountain to mountain' — a merism indicating every direction, every corner of the earth. The phrase mimatsur ('from Egypt' or 'from the fortress') is debated — mitsur/matsur can mean either Egypt (an alternate form of Mitsrayim) or 'fortress.' The geographic scope — Assyria to Egypt, sea to sea — describes a universal ingathering.
13. A brief interruption of the restoration vision: the present reality is desolation (shemamah) as the consequence of human behavior. The phrase mipperi ma'aleihem ('as the fruit of their deeds') uses agricultural imagery — the 'harvest' of wickedness is desolation. This verse serves as a bridge between the present judgment and the future hope, acknowledging that the land must endure destruction before restoration comes.
14. Micah now prays to God, asking Him to resume His role as shepherd (re'eh, 'shepherd,' imperative). The 'staff' (shevet) is the shepherd's rod — an instrument of guidance and protection. The phrase tso'n nachalatekha ('the flock of your inheritance') calls Israel God's personal flock, His covenant possession. Carmel (karmel) can mean either the specific mountain (Mount Carmel) or 'garden land, fertile field.' Bashan and Gilead were the lush grazing regions of Transjordan, proverbial for their fertility (Psalm 22:12, Amos 4:1). The prayer asks for a return to the abundance of 'the days of old' (kimei olam).
15. God responds to Micah's prayer with a promise: the future restoration will be as miraculous as the Exodus. The verb ar'ennu ('I will show him/them') is God's direct speech — He Himself will display nifla'ot ('wonders, marvels'), the same word used for the Exodus miracles (Exodus 3:20, 15:11, Psalm 78:4). The comparison to the Exodus sets the bar: the coming salvation will be a new Exodus, a second great deliverance equal in wonder to the first.
16. The nations' response to God's wonders is shame (yevoshu) at their own power — their military strength is exposed as pathetic compared to God's. The gesture of putting hands over mouths (yasimu yad al peh) indicates stunned silence — they are speechless (cf. Job 21:5, 29:9, 40:4). Their ears 'becoming deaf' (ozneihem techerashna) may mean they are overwhelmed beyond comprehension or that they stop listening to their own counselors' arrogant plans.

- 17.** The nations' humiliation is described in terms echoing Genesis 3:14 (the serpent condemned to eat dust). The phrase *yelachakhu afar kannachash* ('they will lick dust like a snake') is the ultimate image of prostration and defeat. The 'creatures that crawl' (*zochalei erets*) are the lowest forms of animal life — the nations are reduced to ground level. The verb *yirghezu* ('they will tremble') indicates involuntary shaking, and *yifchadu* ('they will dread') indicates terrified awe. The final phrase switches to address God directly (*mimmekka*, 'because of you'), turning the description into worship.
- 18.** This is the theological climax of the book. The question *mi el kamokha* ('Who is a God like you?') echoes Exodus 15:11 (the Song of the Sea) and puns on Micah's own name (*Mikhah* = *Mi-kha-yahu*, 'Who is like YHWH?'). God's character is defined by what He does with sin: He 'pardons' (nose) iniquity (literally 'lifts, carries away' — the same verb used of the scapegoat carrying away sins in Leviticus 16:22) and 'passes over' (over all) transgression. The remnant concept returns (*she'erit nachalato*, 'the remnant of his inheritance') — God's mercy is directed toward the faithful core. The reason for His forgiveness: *ki chafets chesed hu* ('for he delights in chesed') — God's nature is oriented toward covenantal faithful love. He does not forgive grudgingly but joyfully.
- 19.** God's treatment of sin is described with three verbs: (1) *yerachamenu* ('he will have compassion on us') — from the root *r-ch-m* (*rechem*, 'womb'), visceral maternal compassion; (2) *yikhbosh* ('he will subdue') — a military conquest verb, as if God will trample our sins like a conquered enemy (the same verb used in Numbers 32:22, 29 for subduing the land); (3) *tashlikh* ('you will cast') — hurling sins into the sea depths (*bimtsulot yam*, literally 'in the depths of the sea'). The shift from third person ('he') to second person ('you') is characteristic of Hebrew prayer. The image of sins cast into the sea connects to Jonah's experience — the chaos waters that swallowed the prophet now swallow sin itself. Jewish tradition casts bread into water on Rosh Hashanah (the Tashlich ceremony) based on this verse.
- 20.** The final verse anchors everything in the patriarchal promises. *Emet* ('faithfulness, truth') is given to Jacob, and *chesed* ('faithful love') to Abraham — pairing the two foundational patriarchs with two foundational divine attributes. The verb *titten* ('you will give, you will show') promises active fulfillment, not merely theoretical commitment. The phrase *asher nishba'ta la'avotenu* ('which you swore to our ancestors') invokes the oaths of Genesis 12:1-3 (to Abraham), 22:16-18 (the oath after the Aqedah), and 28:13-15 (to Jacob at Bethel). The phrase *mimei qedem* ('from the days of old') reaches back to the most ancient foundation of the covenant relationship. The book ends not with threat but with promise — the same God who exposed sin and pronounced judgment is the God who keeps His oldest promises.

Nahum

1

Summary: *Nahum 1 opens with a superscription identifying the book as an oracle against Nineveh, the capital of the Assyrian Empire. What follows is a partial acrostic hymn celebrating the LORD as a God of vengeance who is slow to anger but overwhelming in power. The poem moves from cosmic theophany — mountains quaking, seas rebuked, the earth trembling — to a direct address distinguishing between those who take refuge in the LORD and those who plot against him. The chapter closes with an announcement of good news: Nineveh's yoke will be broken, and Judah can celebrate its festivals again.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The partial acrostic in verses 2-8 follows the Hebrew alphabet roughly from aleph through kaph, though the pattern breaks down after about eight letters — whether by design, textual corruption, or editorial revision remains debated. The theological tension is striking: the same God described as 'slow to anger' (v. 3, echoing Exodus 34:6) is here celebrated specifically for his fury against the wicked. This is not a contradiction but a completion — the God of chesed is also the God of justice, and patience exhausted becomes judgment unleashed. Nahum's name itself means 'comfort,' and the comfort he brings is the news that the oppressor will fall.*

Translation Friction: *The acrostic structure is fragmentary, and scholars disagree on its extent and original form. We rendered the text as it stands in the Masoretic tradition without attempting reconstruction. The shift between second-person addresses in verses 9-14 is ambiguous — sometimes addressing Nineveh, sometimes Judah — and we followed contextual clues to determine the referent, noting transitions. The word beliyya'al in verse 11 (rendered 'worthlessness') carries strong negative connotations and later became a proper name for evil personified.*

Connections: *The divine self-description in verse 3 echoes the foundational revelation of Exodus 34:6-7. The theophany language (Bashan withering, Carmel fading, Lebanon languishing) connects to similar cosmic-upheaval passages in Habakkuk 3, Psalm 18, and Judges 5. The 'good news on the mountains' of verse 15 is echoed in Isaiah 52:7. The entire oracle presupposes the historical memory of Assyria's destruction of the northern kingdom (722 BCE) and its siege of Jerusalem under Sennacherib (701 BCE).*

¹An oracle concerning Nineveh. The book of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite. ²The LORD is a jealous and avenging God; the LORD is an avenger, full of wrath. The LORD takes vengeance on his adversaries and maintains his fury against his enemies. ³The LORD is slow to anger and great in power, but he will by no means leave the guilty unpunished. The LORD's

path is in the whirlwind and the storm, and clouds are the dust of his feet. ⁴He rebukes the sea and dries it up; he makes all the rivers run dry. Bashan and Carmel wither, and the bloom of Lebanon fades. ⁵Mountains quake before him, and the hills dissolve. The earth heaves at his presence — the world and all who dwell in it. ⁶Who can stand before his indignation? Who can endure his burning anger? His wrath is poured out like fire, and the rocks are shattered before him. ⁷The LORD is good, a refuge in the day of distress. He knows those who take shelter in him. ⁸But with an overwhelming flood he will make a complete end of her place, and darkness will pursue his enemies. ⁹What are you plotting against the LORD? He will bring total destruction. Distress will not rise a second time. ¹⁰Though they are tangled like thorns and soaked with drink, they will be consumed like dry stubble. ¹¹From you has come one who plots evil against the LORD, a counselor of worthlessness. ¹²This is what the LORD says: Though they are at full strength and many in number, they will be cut down and pass away. Though I have afflicted you, I will afflict you no longer. ¹³Now I will break his yoke from upon you and snap your chains. ¹⁴The LORD has decreed concerning you: No descendant will bear your name any longer. From the house of your gods I will cut off the carved image and the cast idol. I will prepare your grave, for you are contemptible. ¹⁵Look! On the mountains — the feet of one who brings good news, who announces peace! Celebrate your festivals, Judah; fulfill your vows. For the worthless one will never again pass through you; he is completely cut off.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Hebrew *massa* can mean 'burden' or 'oracle/pronouncement.' In prophetic literature it consistently introduces a weighty declaration of judgment, and we render it 'oracle' throughout the project. The location of Elkosh is unknown — proposals range from Galilee to Mesopotamia to southern Judah.
2. The threefold repetition of *noqem* ('avenger') is emphatic and deliberate — this is the keynote of the entire book. The word *qanno* ('jealous, zealous') is the same term used in Exodus 20:5 and 34:14 for God's exclusive covenantal claim on Israel. *Ba'al chemah* ('lord/master of wrath') is a striking construct — *chemah* is a burning, passionate rage. The verb *noter* ('maintains, keeps') means God stores up wrath against his enemies; their judgment is not forgotten but reserved.
3. This verse deliberately echoes Exodus 34:6-7, the most quoted divine self-description in the Hebrew Bible. Nahum's selection is theological: he takes the judgment clause and leaves the mercy clause, because his audience is the oppressor, not the covenant people. The imagery of storm-clouds as dust kicked up by God's feet portrays the LORD as a cosmic warrior whose mere walking generates tempests.
4. The verb *ga'ar* ('rebuken') recalls God's command over the waters at creation and the Red Sea. Bashan was known for its rich pastures, Carmel for its lush vegetation, and Lebanon for its cedars and flowers — the three most fertile regions of the Levant all wilt before God's approach. The acrostic pattern is visible here: this verse begins with *gimel* (ג).
5. The verb *hitmogagu* ('dissolve, melt') describes the hills losing their solidity, as if the landscape itself becomes liquid before the LORD. The verb *tissa* ('heaves, rises') has been variously read — some take it as 'is laid waste' (from *nasa* meaning 'to lift up in ruin'), others as 'rises up' in upheaval. The theophany intensifies from water (v. 4) to land (v. 5), encompassing all creation.
6. Two rhetorical questions with the implied answer: no one. The word *za'am* ('indignation') denotes explosive, righteous fury. *Chemah* ('wrath') is described as being 'poured out' (*nittekah*) like molten fire — the same verb used for casting molten metal. Even rocks, the most permanent features of the landscape, are *nittsetsu* ('shattered, broken apart') before him.
7. After six verses of terrifying divine power, this verse pivots abruptly to comfort. The word *ma'oz* ('refuge, stronghold') means a fortified place of safety — the same God whose power shatters rocks becomes a fortress for those who trust him. The verb *yode'a* ('knows') carries covenantal weight — God's 'knowing' is not mere awareness but intimate, relational recognition (cf. Amos 3:2, 'You only have I known of all the families of the earth').
8. The 'overwhelming flood' (*sheteph over*) likely alludes to the historical destruction of Nineveh in 612 BCE, when the Tigris River flooded and breached the city walls, enabling the Babylonian-Median coalition to enter. 'Her place' (*meqomah*) refers to Nineveh. Darkness as a pursuing agent inverts the normal imagery — usually people flee darkness, but here darkness hunts them down.
9. The address shifts to Nineveh's plotters. The verb *techashevun* ('plot, devise') suggests calculated scheming against God. The promise that distress 'will not rise a second time' means God's blow against Nineveh will be so complete that no second strike will be needed — one is enough.
10. The imagery piles up three metaphors of vulnerability: tangled thorns (easily kindled), drunken revelers (unable to defend themselves), and dry stubble (instantly combustible). The combination suggests Nineveh's forces will be caught unprepared, entangled in their own confusion, and burned up without resistance.
11. The address is to Nineveh. The 'counselor of worthlessness' (*yo'ets beliyya'al*) likely refers to the Assyrian king, perhaps Sennacherib specifically, whose campaign against Jerusalem in 701 BCE was an affront to the LORD. *Beliyya'al* literally means 'without profit/worthlessness' and later evolved into a proper name for the personification of wickedness (cf. 2 Corinthians 6:15, 'Belial').

12. The verse shifts address mid-sentence — the first half speaks about Assyria in the third person ('they'), while the second half addresses Judah in the second person ('you'). Shelemim ('at full strength, intact') emphasizes that Assyria's forces are not weakened — they will be destroyed at peak power. The promise to Judah reverses the affliction: God used Assyria as a rod of discipline (cf. Isaiah 10:5), but that chapter is closing.
13. God addresses Judah directly. The 'yoke' (motteh) and 'chains' (moserot) are metaphors for Assyrian domination — the imperial vassal system that extracted tribute and imposed foreign policy. 'Snap' (anatteq) is a violent verb, suggesting a sudden, forceful liberation.
14. The address shifts back to the Assyrian king or Nineveh personified. 'No descendant will bear your name' (lo yizzara' mishshimkha) means the dynasty ends — no seed will be sown from your name. The destruction of idols in the temple and the preparation of a grave are acts of total annihilation — both legacy and religion are obliterated. Qallota ('you are contemptible, light, worthless') is the opposite of kavod ('glory, weight').
15. This verse is nearly identical to Isaiah 52:7 and may share a common liturgical source. The 'feet of the herald' (raglei mevasser) is a vivid image of a runner cresting the mountain ridge, visible in silhouette, bringing the news of victory. The command to celebrate festivals and fulfill vows means the disruption of worship caused by Assyrian invasion is over — normal religious life can resume. Beliyya'al here echoes verse 11, creating an inclusio around the chapter.

2

Summary: *Nahum 2 is a cinematic battle poem describing the siege and fall of Nineveh with extraordinary vividness. The chapter opens with the approach of the attacking army, then plunges into the chaos of battle — flashing chariots, scarlet-clad warriors, flooding gates, a fleeing queen, and panicked defenders. The middle section describes the looting of Nineveh's legendary wealth. The chapter climaxes with the lion's den taunt: Assyria, which once preyed on nations like a lion dragging prey to its den, now finds its den empty and its cubs destroyed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The poetry here is among the most vivid war writing in ancient literature. Nahum uses rapid-fire imagery, staccato clauses, and sound effects embedded in the Hebrew to create an almost cinematic sequence of the city's fall. The lion metaphor (vv. 11-13) is devastating because Assyria itself used lion imagery extensively in its royal propaganda — colossal stone lions guarded palace gates, and kings were depicted hunting lions. Nahum turns Assyria's own self-image against it.*

Translation Friction: *Verse numbering differs between Hebrew (MT) and English traditions — the Hebrew counts 2:1 as what English Bibles number 1:15. We follow the English versification. The identity of the 'scatterer' (mephits) in verse 1 is debated — it could refer to the Babylonian-Median coalition or to God himself. The word Huzzab in verse 7 (KJV) is one of the most debated terms in the book — it could be a proper name, a verb form meaning 'it is decreed,' or a title. We follow the reading 'it is decreed' based on the verbal root y-ts-b.*

Connections: *The flooding of the river gates (v. 6) corresponds to ancient accounts of Nineveh's fall in 612 BCE. The lion imagery connects to Assyrian royal iconography and to Ezekiel 19's lion allegory for Judah's kings. The restoration promise for Jacob/Israel (v. 2) ties to the broader prophetic hope found in Isaiah, Jeremiah, and the Twelve.*

¹The one who shatters has advanced against you. Guard the rampart! Watch the road! Brace yourselves! Summon all your strength! ²For the LORD is restoring the majesty of Jacob, like the majesty of Israel, though plunderers have plundered them and ruined their vines. ³The shields of his warriors are dyed red; the soldiers are clothed in scarlet. The chariots flash like fire on the day they are readied, and the cypress spears are brandished. ⁴The chariots race madly through the streets; they rush back and forth through the squares. They look like torches; they dart like lightning. ⁵He summons his officers — they stumble as they advance. They rush to the wall, but the siege shield is already set in place. ⁶The river gates are thrown open, and the palace collapses. ⁷It is decreed: she is stripped bare and carried away. Her maidservants moan like the sound of doves, beating on their breasts. ⁸Nineveh has been like a pool of water from her earliest days, but now they are fleeing. 'Stop! Stop!' — but no one turns back. ⁹Plunder the silver! Plunder the gold! There is no end to the treasure — a wealth of every precious thing. ¹⁰Emptied, drained, and devastated! Hearts melting, knees buckling, every body trembling, every face drained of color. ¹¹Where is the lions' den, the feeding ground of the young lions, where the lion and lioness prowled, where the cub roamed and no one disturbed them? ¹²The lion tore enough prey for his cubs and strangled for his lionesses. He filled his lairs with kill and his dens with torn flesh. ¹³I am against you, declares the LORD of Hosts. I will burn your chariots

in smoke, and the sword will devour your young lions. I will cut off your prey from the earth, and the voice of your messengers will be heard no more.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'scatterer' or 'shatterer' (mephits) is the invading force — likely the Babylonian-Median coalition that destroyed Nineveh in 612 BCE. The rapid imperatives ('guard, watch, brace, summon') are bitterly ironic — Nahum is taunting Nineveh, telling them to prepare for a defense that will fail. The staccato Hebrew rhythm mimics the urgency of battle preparation.
2. The verb shav can mean 'has turned away' or 'is restoring' (as in 'bringing back'). We follow the reading 'restoring' because the context is Nineveh's destruction as an act of deliverance for Israel. The mention of Jacob and Israel together may refer to both kingdoms or be synonymous parallelism for the covenant people. The vine image echoes Israel as God's vineyard (Isaiah 5:1-7).
3. The red shields and scarlet uniforms likely describe the Babylonian-Median army, whose soldiers wore crimson. Peladot ('steel, fire-flashing metal') describes the metal fittings on chariots catching the light — a dazzling and terrifying sight. The beroshim ('cypress trees') most likely refers to cypress-wood spears or lances, not literal trees. Hor'alu ('brandished, made to quiver') captures the shaking of spears in readiness.
4. The Hebrew yitholelu ('race madly, act wildly') conveys chaos — the chariots are careening through the streets in violent, uncontrolled movement. Yishtaqshequn is an onomatopoeic verb mimicking the clattering and crashing of chariots colliding. The comparison to torches and lightning captures both the visual flash of metal and the terrifying speed of the assault.
5. The Assyrian commander calls up his elite troops (addirim, 'nobles, officers'), but they stumble — whether from haste, panic, or the chaos of battle. The sokek ('siege shield, protective covering') is a mobile battering shelter used by besiegers to approach walls under cover. By the time the defenders reach the wall, the attackers are already there.
6. Ancient sources confirm that the Tigris River flooded during the siege of Nineveh in 612 BCE, destroying a section of the walls and allowing the attackers to enter. The 'river gates' (sha'arei haneharot) are the sluice gates or water channels that pierced the walls where the Khosr River entered the city. Namog ('dissolves, collapses') echoes 1:5 where the hills dissolve before God — the palace melts just as the mountains did.
7. Hutsab is one of the most debated words in Nahum. The KJV took it as a proper name ('Huzzab'), but it is more likely a Hophal perfect of the root y-ts-b meaning 'it is established/decreed.' The 'she' who is stripped and carried away is Nineveh personified as a woman — or possibly the queen. The maidservants moaning like doves and beating their breasts is a mourning ritual. The dove sound (qol yonim) contrasts gentle innocence with the violence being enacted.
8. The pool metaphor may refer to Nineveh's elaborate canal and irrigation systems or to the gathered population now draining away like water from a breached pool. The desperate cry 'Stop! Stop!' (imdu, amodu) comes from the officers trying to rally the fleeing soldiers, but panic has taken hold — 'no one turns back' (ein mapneh).
9. The imperatives (bozzu, 'plunder!') address the conquering army. Nineveh was legendarily wealthy from centuries of imperial tribute, and its palace treasures were enormous — archaeological discoveries at Nineveh confirm vast royal storehouses. The word kavod ('glory, wealth') is used here in its material sense of abundance and weight of possessions.
10. The Hebrew buqah umevuqah umevullaqah is a brilliant triple wordplay — three words from the same root b-q-q ('to empty, devastate') building in intensity, each adding a syllable. The effect is onomatopoeic, mimicking the progressive stripping of the city. The physical symptoms — melting hearts, buckling knees, trembling loins, pale faces — describe soldiers paralyzed by terror. Pa'rur ('pallor, blackness') on the face indicates the draining of blood from terror.
11. The lion taunt begins. Assyrian kings proudly used lion imagery — palace walls at Nineveh were lined with reliefs of royal lion hunts, and colossal winged lions (lamassu) guarded the gates. Nahum uses four different Hebrew words for lion (aryeh, lavi, gur aryeh, kephirim) to paint the full pride — adult male, lioness, cubs, young lions — and then asks: where are they now? The rhetorical question is devastating.
12. The extended metaphor portrays Assyria's imperial economy as predation — the king (lion) tears apart nations (prey) to feed his court (lionesses) and enrich his cities (dens). The verbs taraph ('tear') and chanaq ('strangle') are specific hunting actions. The word terephah ('torn flesh, prey') appears twice, emphasizing the violence of Assyrian conquest.
13. The declaration hineni elayikh ('I am against you') is the most terrifying sentence a nation can hear from God. It is the covenant-threat formula applied to a foreign power. The 'messengers' (mal'akhekha) are the Assyrian envoys who delivered arrogant ultimatums to vassal states — like the Rabshakeh at Jerusalem's walls (2 Kings 18:17-37). Their voice being silenced means Assyria's diplomatic and military intimidation is permanently ended.

3

Summary: *Nahum 3 continues the oracle against Nineveh with unrelenting intensity. It opens with a woe cry against the 'city of blood,' then unleashes a barrage of battle imagery — the crack of whips, thundering hooves, heaps of corpses. The chapter then employs the prostitute metaphor: Nineveh has seduced nations through her sorceries and will be publicly shamed. Nahum taunts Nineveh by pointing to the fall of Thebes (No-Amon) in 663 BCE — if mighty Thebes could not stand, how will Nineveh? The book closes with a funeral dirge: Nineveh's wound is incurable, and all who hear the news will clap their hands in relief.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The prostitute metaphor (vv. 4-7) is one of the harshest uses of this imagery in the prophets, applied here to a foreign city rather than to Israel. The comparison with Thebes (No-Amon) is historically precise — Ashurbanipal destroyed Thebes in 663 BCE, barely fifty years before Nineveh's own destruction in 612 BCE. The irony is sharp: Assyria's greatest military triumph becomes the evidence that the same fate can befall Assyria itself. The final verse asks a rhetorical question that answers itself: everyone who hears of Nineveh's fall will celebrate, because everyone has suffered under Assyrian cruelty.*

Translation Friction: *The prostitute metaphor required faithful rendering without sanitizing — the Hebrew is deliberately explicit and shaming. No-Amon ('City of Amon') is the Egyptian city of Thebes; we retained the name 'Thebes' for clarity with a note on the Hebrew. The series of rhetorical questions in verses 8-19 required careful handling to maintain their taunting, sarcastic tone. The final question 'For upon whom has your unceasing cruelty not passed?' is one of the most powerful closing lines in prophetic literature.*

Connections: *The woe oracle (hoy) connects to the broader prophetic woe tradition (Isaiah 5:8-23, Habakkuk 2:6-20). The prostitute metaphor for a city parallels Isaiah 23:15-17 (Tyre) and Revelation 17-18 (Babylon). The fall of Thebes is documented in Assyrian annals and serves as a historical anchor for Nahum's dating. The clapping of hands at Nineveh's fall (v. 19) echoes the cosmic applause imagery found in Isaiah 55:12 and Psalm 98:8.*

¹Woe to the city of blood, full of lies, full of plunder — the prey never departs! ²The crack of the whip! The rumble of wheels! Galloping horses! Bounding chariots! ³Charging horsemen, flashing swords, gleaming spears! Masses of slain, heaps of corpses, dead bodies without end — they stumble over the dead! ⁴Because of the countless harlotries of the prostitute, graceful and skilled in sorcery, who sells nations through her harlotries and peoples through her sorceries — ⁵I am against you, declares the LORD of Hosts. I will lift your skirts over your face and show the nations your nakedness, and the kingdoms your shame. ⁶I will hurl filth at you and treat you with contempt, and I will make you a spectacle. ⁷Then all who see you will recoil from you and say, 'Nineveh is devastated — who will grieve for her?' Where will I find anyone to comfort you? ⁸Are you better than Thebes, who sat by the Nile channels, with water surrounding her — whose rampart was the sea, whose wall was water? ⁹Cush was her strength, and Egypt — boundless! Put and Libya were her allies. ¹⁰Yet even she went into exile; she was carried into captivity. Her infants were dashed to pieces at the head of every street. Lots were cast for her nobles, and all her great men were bound in chains. ¹¹You too will drink until you stagger. You too will go into hiding. You too will seek refuge from the enemy. ¹²All your fortresses are fig trees with early figs — when shaken, they fall right into the mouth of the eater. ¹³Look — your troops have become like women among you. The gates of your land stand wide open to your enemies; fire has consumed your gate bars. ¹⁴Draw water for the siege! Strengthen your fortresses! Go into the clay, tread the mortar, take hold of the brick mold! ¹⁵There fire will consume you; the sword will cut you down. It will devour you like the locust. Multiply yourselves like locusts! Multiply like the swarming locust! ¹⁶You multiplied your merchants more than the stars of the sky — but the locust strips the land and flies away. ¹⁷Your guards are like locusts, your officials like swarms of grasshoppers that settle on the walls on a cold day — but when the sun rises, they fly away, and no one knows where they have gone. ¹⁸Your shepherds slumber, O king of Assyria; your nobles lie still. Your people are scattered across the mountains, and there is no one to gather them. ¹⁹There is no relief for your wound; your injury is fatal. All who hear the news about you clap their hands over you — for upon whom has your unceasing cruelty not passed?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The woe cry (hoy) opens a prophetic judgment oracle. 'City of blood' (ir haddamim) is Nineveh's epithet — a city built on bloodshed. The three charges — damim ('blood'), kachash ('lies, deception'), and pereq ('plunder, tearing') — summarize Assyria's imperial character: violence, treachery, and rapacious conquest. The final clause 'the prey never departs' means Nineveh never stops consuming other nations.
2. These are sound effects rendered as exclamatory fragments — Nahum creates an audio landscape of battle. The Hebrew is staccato, each phrase a burst of noise: qol shot ('crack of whip'), qol ra'ash ophan ('rumble of wheel'), sus doher ('horse galloping'), merkavah meraqedah ('chariot leaping'). The technique is cinematic, placing the reader in the middle of the attack.
3. The battle imagery accelerates: from sound (v. 2) to sight (v. 3). The Hebrew piles up nouns without finite verbs, creating a breathless, staccato effect. Rov chalah ('multitude of slain') and koved peger ('heaviness of corpses') — note that koved shares the root of kavod ('glory, weight'); the weight here is of dead bodies. The final image of soldiers tripping over corpses conveys battlefield horror with devastating economy.
4. Nineveh is personified as a seductive prostitute who enslaves nations through her allure. The word zenunim ('harlots') refers metaphorically to Assyria's seductive diplomacy and trade alliances that ultimately enslaved its partners. Keshaphim ('sorceries') suggests the supernatural dimension of Assyrian power — their extensive practice of divination and magic was well documented. The combination of beauty (tovat chen, 'graceful, charming') and deadly power makes the metaphor pointed.
5. The punishment mirrors the metaphor — the prostitute's clothing is thrown over her head in public humiliation. This was an actual ancient Near Eastern punishment for sexual offenses. The verb gilleti ('I will uncover, expose') strips away the seductive disguise. God personally executes the shaming — 'I am against you' (hineni elayikh) repeats the formula from 2:13. Ma'rekh ('your nakedness') and qelonekh ('your shame') are the reality behind the 'grace' of verse 4.
6. The verbs intensify: hashlikhti ('hurl'), nibalti ('treat with contempt, disgrace'), and samti kero'i ('make into a spectacle, something gazed at'). Shiqqutsim ('abominations, filth') is a word elsewhere used for idols — the irony is that Nineveh, who dealt in spiritual filth, will be covered in it. The progression from private shame (v. 5) to public degradation (v. 6) is deliberate.
7. The rhetorical question 'who will grieve for her?' expects the answer: no one. The verb yiddod ('recoil, flee') indicates not just departure but physical revulsion. Nineveh, who seduced nations, now repels everyone. The search for comforters (menachamim) ironically echoes Nahum's own name (nachum, 'comfort') — the prophet of comfort declares that there is no comfort for Nineveh.
8. No-Amon (literally 'City of Amon') is the Egyptian city of Thebes (modern Luxor), capital of Upper Egypt and home to the great temples of Karnak and Luxor. Ashurbanipal's Assyrian army sacked Thebes in 663 BCE — an event so shocking it echoed across the ancient world. Nahum's taunt is devastatingly ironic: Assyria's greatest victory is now the precedent for Assyria's own destruction. The 'sea' and 'water' refer to the Nile and its canals, which formed Thebes' natural defenses.
9. Thebes' alliance network was vast: Cush (Nubia/Ethiopia), Egypt itself, Put (possibly Punt or Libya), and the Lubim (Libyans). Despite this formidable coalition, Thebes still fell. The implied argument: if Thebes with four allies could not survive, what chance does Nineveh have? 'Boundless' (ein qetseh) echoes 2:9 where Nineveh's treasure was also 'without end' — both abundance and allies prove insufficient.
10. The atrocities described — dashing infants, casting lots for enslaved nobles, chaining leaders — were standard Assyrian military practices, well documented in their own royal inscriptions. The bitter irony is that Nahum describes what Assyria did to Thebes, and now the same will happen to Assyria. Yerutteshu ('dashed to pieces') is an unflinching verb; we do not soften it because the Hebrew does not.
11. The triple gam-att ('you too') hammers the comparison: what happened to Thebes will happen to you. The 'drinking' (tishkeri) refers to drinking the cup of God's wrath — a common prophetic image (Jeremiah 25:15-28, Isaiah 51:17). Na'alamah ('hidden, concealed') suggests a once-proud city reduced to hiding.
12. The simile is vivid and humiliating: Nineveh's supposedly impregnable fortresses will fall as easily as ripe figs shaken from a tree. Bikkurim ('early figs, first-ripe figs') are the most easily dislodged because they are heavy with ripeness. The image of figs falling directly into an open mouth emphasizes effortlessness — the conqueror barely has to try.
13. The comparison of warriors to women reflects the ancient patriarchal assumption that women are non-combatants and therefore vulnerable — the point is that Nineveh's soldiers will be helpless, not a statement about women's inherent nature. The gates 'standing wide open' (patoach niptachu, emphatic infinitive absolute) means the defenses have completely collapsed. Fire consuming the gate bars means the wooden crossbeams that secured the city gates have been burned away.
14. More bitter irony — Nahum taunts Nineveh to prepare for siege by making bricks to repair walls. The three-step process (mixing clay, treading mortar, molding bricks) is detailed and sarcastic: go ahead, prepare all you want. The imperatives are feminine singular, addressing Nineveh as a woman. The futility of the preparation is the point — all this effort will accomplish nothing.
15. The locust imagery shifts meaning mid-verse: first, destruction will consume Nineveh like locusts devour crops; then, Nahum taunts them to multiply their forces like locusts — it will not help. The words yeleq ('young locust') and arbeh ('swarming locust') are two of the Hebrew Bible's multiple terms for different locust species or stages. The irony deepens in the following verses.

16. Nineveh was a center of international commerce, and its merchant class was vast. The comparison to the 'stars of the sky' echoes the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 15:5) but applied sarcastically to Nineveh's commercial expansion. The locust that 'strips and flies away' (pashat vayyaof) suggests that Nineveh's wealth, like a locust swarm, will strip everything bare and then vanish — leaving nothing behind.
17. The metaphor is precise: grasshoppers cluster on stone walls for warmth in cold weather, but the moment the sun heats the air, they scatter and vanish. Nineveh's officials and military leaders will similarly disappear when the heat of battle arrives. Minnazarayikh ('your guards/crowned ones') may refer to officials who wear some kind of crown or insignia. Taphserayikh ('your scribes/officials') is likely an Akkadian loanword (tupšarru), reflecting Assyrian administrative vocabulary.
18. The 'shepherds' (ro'ekha) are military commanders and governors — the metaphor of ruler-as-shepherd is standard ancient Near Eastern political language. 'Slumber' (namu) is a euphemism for death — they sleep the sleep from which there is no waking. 'Lie still' (yishkenu) reinforces the death imagery. The people scattered on the mountains with no one to gather them is the portrait of a permanently dissolved empire.
19. The book closes with a devastating rhetorical question. Kehah ('relief, healing, dimming of pain') is denied — the wound is terminal. Nachlah makkah ('a grievous blow, a fatal wound') is medical language for an incurable condition. The clapping of hands (taqe'u kaph) is a gesture of joyful relief, not applause for a performance — the entire known world celebrates Nineveh's fall. The final question is unanswerable: there is no nation that has not suffered under Assyrian cruelty (ra'ah, 'evil, cruelty'). Tamid ('continually, unceasingly') emphasizes that Assyria's violence was not episodic but perpetual.

Habakkuk

1

Summary: *Habakkuk 1 presents a bold dialogue between the prophet and God — one of the most unusual structures in prophetic literature. The prophet opens with a lament: 'How long, LORD?' — violence, injustice, and lawlessness surround him, and God seems silent. God answers with a shocking revelation: he is raising up the Chaldeans (Babylonians), a ruthless and terrifying nation, as his instrument of judgment. But this answer provokes a deeper question from Habakkuk: how can a holy God use a nation more wicked than those being punished? The chapter ends with the prophet's anguished protest still unresolved.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Habakkuk is distinctive among the prophets because he does not speak to the people on God's behalf — he speaks to God on behalf of the people (and himself). His complaint is not a lack of faith but the expression of deep faith that expects God to act justly and demands an explanation when he appears not to. The divine response (vv. 5-11) is one of the most vivid descriptions of Babylonian military power in the Hebrew Bible. The theological problem Habakkuk raises — why does God use evil to punish lesser evil? — is never fully resolved in the book; instead, it is transcended by the call to faithfulness in chapter 2.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'among the nations' in verse 5 appears as 'among the heathen' in the KJV and as 'among the nations' in the LXX variant; Acts 13:41 quotes a form closer to the LXX. We follow the MT. The rapid shifts between Habakkuk's speech and God's speech required clear identification. The word qadishah ('holy') in verse 12 combined with the assertion that God has 'appointed' the wicked for judgment creates the central theological tension of the book.*

Connections: *Habakkuk's opening cry 'How long?' places him in the tradition of lament psalmists (Psalms 13, 74, 89). The Chaldean description connects to Jeremiah's prophecies about Babylon (Jeremiah 25, 27). God's answer that he is 'doing a work' (v. 5) is quoted in Acts 13:41. The theological problem of divine justice anticipates Job's protests and Paul's wrestling in Romans 9. The fisherman metaphor (vv. 14-17) for Babylonian conquest is unique to Habakkuk.*

¹The oracle that Habakkuk the prophet received in a vision. ²How long, LORD, must I cry for help and you do not hear? I cry out to you, 'Violence!' — but you do not save. ³Why do you make me see wrongdoing and force me to look at trouble? Destruction and violence are before me; strife arises and conflict abounds. ⁴Therefore the law is paralyzed, and justice never prevails. For the wicked surround the righteous; therefore justice comes out perverted. ⁵Look among the nations and

observe — be utterly astounded! For I am doing a work in your days that you would not believe even if it were told to you. ⁶F or I am raising up the Chaldeans — that fierce and impetuous nation that marches across the breadth of the earth to seize dwelling places that are not their own. ⁷They are dreaded and terrifying. Their justice and their authority originate from themselves alone. ⁸Their horses are swifter than leopards, fiercer than wolves at dusk. Their horsemen charge forward; their cavalry comes from afar. They fly like an eagle swooping to devour. ⁹All of them come for violence. The thrust of their faces is forward, and they gather captives like sand. ¹⁰He mocks kings; rulers are a joke to him. He laughs at every fortress. He heaps up earth and captures it. ¹¹Then he sweeps on like the wind and passes through — guilty, for he makes his own strength his god. ¹²Are you not from of old, LORD my God, my Holy One? We will not die. LORD, you have appointed them for judgment; O Rock, you have established them for correction. ¹³Your eyes are too pure to look on evil; you cannot tolerate wrongdoing. So why do you look on the treacherous in silence? Why are you silent when the wicked swallows up one more righteous than himself? ¹⁴You have made people like fish in the sea, like crawling things with no ruler over them. ¹⁵He drags them all up with a hook; he catches them in his net and gathers them in his dragnet. Therefore he rejoices and celebrates. ¹⁶Therefore he sacrifices to his net and burns incense to his dragnet, because by them his portion is rich and his food is plentiful. ¹⁷Will he then keep emptying his net, slaughtering nations without mercy forever?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Massa ('oracle, burden') is rendered consistently as 'oracle' in prophetic superscriptions throughout the project. The verb *chazah* ('to see, to perceive in a vision') indicates that this oracle was received visually, not merely audibly. The name Habakkuk (*chavaquq*) may derive from a plant name or from the Akkadian word for a garden plant; its meaning is uncertain.
2. The opening *'ad-anah* ('how long?') is the classic lament formula found throughout the Psalms (13:2, 74:10, 89:47). *Shivva'ti* ('I have cried') is a *piel* intensive — this is not a casual complaint but an anguished, sustained cry. The word *chamas* ('violence, wrongdoing') is the same word used to describe the pre-flood world in Genesis 6:11, suggesting that Habakkuk sees his society as having reached that level of corruption.
3. Habakkuk's protest is directed at God, not at the wicked — why do 'you' (God) make me see this? The four terms — *aven* ('wrongdoing, iniquity'), *amal* ('trouble, misery'), *shod* ('destruction, devastation'), and *chamas* ('violence') — paint a comprehensive picture of social collapse. *Riv* ('strife, legal dispute') and *madon* ('conflict, quarrel') add the dimension of legal and social dysfunction.
4. *Torah* here means 'law, instruction' in its broadest sense — the entire legal and moral framework of society has become inoperative. *Taphug* ('paralyzed, numb, chilled') suggests the law has gone cold, lost its force. The verb *maktir* ('surrounds, encircles') creates the image of the righteous person hemmed in by the wicked, unable to obtain justice. *Mishpat me'uqqal* ('perverted justice') — the very institution meant to protect the righteous has been twisted into a weapon against them.
5. God's response begins. The imperatives are plural — addressed to Habakkuk and his generation. The emphatic *hitammahu temahu* ('be astounded, be astounded') uses an infinitive absolute for maximum intensity. The work God is doing is so unexpected that it would be dismissed as unbelievable even if reported in advance. Paul quotes this verse in Acts 13:41 (from the LXX) to warn the synagogue at Pisidian Antioch against rejecting God's new work in Christ.
6. God's answer is the opposite of what Habakkuk expected. The Chaldeans (*Kasdim*) are the Neo-Babylonians who rose to power after the fall of Assyria. *Mar* ('bitter, fierce') and *nimhar* ('impetuous, hasty, reckless') characterize them as both cruel and unstoppable. The phrase 'dwelling places not their own' (*mishkanot lo-lo*) defines imperialism — taking what belongs to others. God claims direct agency: 'I am raising up' (*hineni meqim*).
7. *Ayom venora* ('dreaded and terrifying') describes the psychological impact of Babylonian power on other nations. The critical phrase 'their justice and authority originate from themselves' (*mimmennu mishpato use'eto yetse*) means they are a law unto themselves — they recognize no higher authority, no divine standard. This is the seed of the problem Habakkuk will press: how can God use a nation that acknowledges no one above itself?
8. Three animal comparisons capture different aspects of Babylonian cavalry: leopards (speed), evening wolves (ferocity — wolves hunt aggressively at dusk after a day of hunger), and eagles (aerial perspective and precision strike). The verb *pashu* ('spread out, charge') suggests the cavalry disperses across a wide front. The eagle (*neshar*, which can also mean 'vulture') swooping to eat combines speed with predatory intent.
9. *Chamas* ('violence') reappears — the same word Habakkuk used in his complaint (v. 2). The irony is sharp: Habakkuk complained about violence, and God's answer is more violence. *Megammat penehem qadimah* ('the thrust/eagerness of their faces is forward/eastward') suggests relentless advance. 'Captives like sand' (*shevi kachol*) echoes the Abrahamic promise of descendants like sand (Genesis 22:17) — but here the image is inverted: sand-like numbers of prisoners, not descendants.
10. The singular 'he' likely refers to the Babylonian king or the nation personified. The verbs *yitqallas* ('mocks') and *yischaq* ('laughs') portray contempt for all human authority. The siege tactic of heaping earth (siege ramps) is described with dismissive brevity — 'he heaps up dirt and takes it,' as if the capture of fortified cities is trivially easy. Archaeological evidence confirms the Babylonian use of massive siege ramps.

11. This verse marks the pivot from description to indictment. The Babylonian's power becomes his religion — 'his strength is his god' (zu kocho le'eloho). This is the essence of imperial idolatry: worshiping one's own power. The word *ve'ashem* ('and becomes guilty, and offends') indicates that this self-deification is the precise point where legitimate power becomes criminal. *Ruach* ('wind, spirit') describes the Babylonian sweeping across nations like a wind — unstoppable but also insubstantial.
12. Habakkuk's second complaint begins. He reaffirms God's eternal nature (*miqqedem*, 'from of old') and holiness (*qadosh*) as the basis for his protest. 'We will not die' is either a faith confession or a rhetorical question expecting a negative answer. *Tsur* ('Rock') is a divine title emphasizing stability and reliability (Deuteronomy 32:4). The claim that God has 'appointed' (*samto*) and 'established' (*yesadto*) the Babylonians for judgment creates the theological crisis: if God is using them, God is responsible for what they do.
13. This is the sharpest verse in the book. Habakkuk takes God's own character (purity, holiness) and turns it into an accusation: if you cannot tolerate evil, why are you tolerating this? The word *bogedim* ('treacherous, faithless') describes the Babylonians. The verb *bala'* ('swallow up') depicts the Chaldeans consuming Judah whole. The comparative 'more righteous than himself' (*tsaddiq mimmennu*) is the crux — Habakkuk does not claim Judah is innocent, only that Judah is less guilty than Babylon.
14. The fisherman metaphor begins. Habakkuk accuses God of reducing humans to the status of fish — creatures without a ruler or protector, vulnerable to anyone with a net. The word *remesh* ('crawling things, swarming creatures') recalls the lowest tier of creation in Genesis 1. The absence of a *moshel* ('ruler, protector') means God has abandoned his creatures to the predator.
15. Three fishing implements — *chakkah* ('hook'), *cherem* ('net'), and *mikhmereth* ('dragnet') — describe the Babylonian's systematic harvesting of nations. The verbs 'drags up,' 'catches,' 'gathers' suggest methodical, industrial-scale conquest. The joy and celebration that follow are obscene — the conqueror celebrates the destruction of peoples as a fisherman celebrates a large catch.
16. This is the climax of the fisherman metaphor and a devastating theological observation. The Babylonian worships his own military apparatus — the net (his army, his strategy) becomes his god. The sacrificial language (*yezabbeach*, 'sacrifices'; *yeqatter*, 'burns incense') is liturgical vocabulary applied to instruments of conquest. This connects back to verse 11: 'he makes his own strength his god.' The idol is not a statue but a system of power.
17. The chapter ends with an unanswered question — Habakkuk's protest hangs in the air. The verb *yariq* ('empty') depicts the fisherman dumping his catch and throwing the net again — an endless cycle of conquest. *Tamid* ('continually, forever') and *lo yachmol* ('without mercy, without sparing') underscore the relentless, compassionless nature of imperial violence. The question implies: when does it end? Chapter 2 will provide the answer.

2

Summary: Habakkuk 2 begins with the prophet stationing himself on a watchtower to await God's answer. The answer comes: write the vision plainly, because it is for an appointed time. Then the pivotal declaration — 'the righteous shall live by his faithfulness' (v. 4). This is followed by five devastating woe oracles against the Babylonian oppressor, condemning plunder, unjust gain, bloodshed, debauchery, and idolatry. The chapter climaxes with one of the most majestic declarations in Scripture: 'The earth will be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the LORD as the waters cover the sea' (v. 14). It closes with the command: 'The LORD is in his holy temple — let all the earth be silent before him.'

*What Makes This Remarkable: Habakkuk 2:4 is one of the most consequential verses in the entire Bible. 'The righteous shall live by his faithfulness' (be'emunato) is quoted three times in the New Testament — Romans 1:17, Galatians 3:11, and Hebrews 10:38 — and became the theological engine of the Protestant Reformation. The Hebrew *emunah* means covenantal faithfulness lived out in action, not mere intellectual belief. The five woe oracles (vv. 6-20) form one of the most sustained indictments of imperial greed in prophetic literature, and their structure — each beginning with *hoy* ('woe') — creates a liturgical rhythm of condemnation. Verse 14's vision of universal knowledge of God's glory is the prophetic hope at its most expansive, echoing Isaiah 11:9.*

Translation Friction: The key translation decision in verse 4 centers on be'emunato — does it mean 'by his faith,' 'by his faithfulness,' or 'by his fidelity'? The Hebrew clearly points toward active covenantal loyalty rather than passive belief, and we render it 'by his faithfulness' with a full expanded_ rendering treatment. The five woe oracles contain difficult imagery, including the cup of wrath metaphor (v. 16) and the reference to uncovering nakedness. The relationship between the 'vision' of verses 2-3 and the content that follows is debated — we take verses 4-5 as the vision proper and the woes as its elaboration.

Connections: Habakkuk 2:4 is quoted in Romans 1:17, Galatians 3:11, and Hebrews 10:38 — each NT author emphasizes a different aspect of the Hebrew original. The woe oracle form connects to Isaiah 5:8-23 and Nahum 3:1. The vision of earth filled with knowledge of God's glory (v. 14) parallels Isaiah 11:9 and Numbers 14:21. The watchtower motif (v. 1) connects to Isaiah 21:6-8 and Ezekiel 3:17. The closing temple silence (v. 20) parallels Zephaniah 1:7 and Zechariah 2:13.

¹I will stand at my watchpost and station myself on the rampart. I will keep watch to see what he will say to me, and what answer I will receive to my complaint. ²Then the LORD answered me and said: Write the vision; inscribe it clearly on tablets so that a herald may run with it. ³For the vision is for an appointed time; it testifies to the end and will not prove false. If it seems slow, wait for it — it will surely come; it will not delay. ⁴Look — the arrogant one, his soul is not upright within him; but the righteous shall live by his faithfulness. ⁵Moreover, wine is treacherous — the arrogant man who never rests, who opens his appetite wide as Sheol, who is like death and is never satisfied, who gathers all nations to himself and collects all peoples for himself. ⁶Will not all of these take up a taunt against him, a mocking riddle about him, and say: Woe to the one who heaps up what is not his own — how long? — and loads himself down with pledges! ⁷Will not your creditors suddenly rise up, and those who make you tremble awake? Then you will become plunder for them. ⁸Because you have plundered many nations, all the remnant of the peoples will plunder you — because of the blood of humankind and the violence done to the land, to the city, and to all who dwell in it. ⁹Woe to the one who cuts unjust gain for his house, setting his nest on high to escape the reach of disaster! ¹⁰You have devised shame for your house by cutting off many peoples, forfeiting your own life. ¹¹For the stone will cry out from the wall, and the beam from the timber will answer it. ¹²Woe to the one who builds a city with bloodshed and establishes a town by injustice! ¹³Is it not from the LORD of Hosts that peoples labor only for fire, and nations exhaust themselves for nothing? ¹⁴For the earth will be filled with the knowledge of the glory of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea. ¹⁵Woe to the one who makes his neighbor drink, pouring out your wrath and making them drunk, in order to gaze on their nakedness! ¹⁶You are filled with shame instead of glory. Drink, you yourself! Expose your own uncircumcision! The cup in the LORD's right hand will come around to you, and disgrace will cover your glory. ¹⁷For the violence done to Lebanon will overwhelm you, and the destruction of its animals will terrify you — because of the blood of humankind and the violence done to the land, to the city, and to all who dwell in it. ¹⁸What use is a carved image, that its maker should carve it — a cast idol, a teacher of lies? For the craftsman trusts in his own creation when he makes speechless idols. ¹⁹Woe to the one who says to wood, 'Wake up!' — to silent stone, 'Arise! Teach us!' Look at it — overlaid with gold and silver, but there is no breath in it at all. ²⁰But the LORD is in his holy temple — let all the earth be silent before him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Habakkuk positions himself as a watchman — the prophetic sentinel who watches for God's word (cf. Isaiah 21:6-8, Ezekiel 3:17). Mishmarti ('my watchpost') and matsor ('rampart, siege-work') are military vocabulary repurposed for spiritual vigilance. The word tokhachti ('my complaint, my argument') indicates Habakkuk expects a response to the case he has laid before God — this is a legal metaphor, the prophet filing a brief and awaiting the court's ruling.
2. God commands the vision to be written and made plain (ba'er, 'make clear, explain distinctly'). The luchot ('tablets') are likely large public posting boards, not private scrolls. The phrase 'so that a herald may run with it' (lema'an yaruts qore bo) has been debated — it could mean 'so that whoever reads it can run' (i.e., understand it quickly) or 'so that a runner/herald can carry and proclaim it.' We follow the herald reading because the context emphasizes public proclamation.
3. The vision has a divinely appointed schedule (mo'ed, 'appointed time, set time') — it is not late, even if it appears so to human perception. Yaphech laqqets ('it testifies/hastens to the end') means the vision itself strains toward its own fulfillment. Lo yekhazzev ('will not prove false, will not lie') assures that the vision is trustworthy. The verbs bo yavo ('it will surely come,' emphatic infinitive absolute) and lo ye'acher ('will not delay') counter the human temptation to abandon hope.
4. This is arguably the most consequential verse in the Minor Prophets. The contrast is between the 'puffed up' (uppelah, from a root meaning 'to swell') person — whose soul is crooked — and the tsaddiq ('righteous person') who lives by emunah. We render emunah as 'faithfulness' rather than 'faith' because the Hebrew clearly denotes active covenantal loyalty, not passive belief. The LXX translated emunah as pistis, which carries both 'faith' and 'faithfulness' in Greek. Paul's use of this verse in Romans 1:17 ('the righteous shall live by faith') emphasizes the trust/faith dimension, while the Hebrew emphasizes the faithfulness/loyalty dimension. Both are legitimate readings of the semantic range.

5. This verse bridges the vision (vv. 2-4) and the woe oracles (vv. 6-20), describing the Babylonian tyrant. The image of an appetite 'wide as Sheol' (hirschiv kishe'ol nafsho) makes greed into a gaping underworld mouth. 'Wine is treacherous' (hayyayin boged) may refer to Babylonian banqueting culture or serve as a metaphor for the intoxication of power. Lo yinveh ('never rests, never stays home') describes imperial restlessness — the compulsion to keep conquering.
6. The first woe oracle begins. The conquered nations themselves will compose taunts (mashal, 'proverb, taunt-song') against their oppressor. Avtit ('pledges, thick clay') is debated — it may mean goods taken in pledge (extorted collateral) or metaphorically 'thick clay,' a burden that weighs the thief down. The interruption 'how long?' (ad matay) echoes Habakkuk's own cry in 1:2, now turned against Babylon.
7. The reversal principle: the plunderer becomes plunder. Noshkekheka ('your biters/creditors') uses the verb nashakh, which means both 'to bite' (like a snake) and 'to charge interest' — a double meaning perfectly suited to the context. The oppressor thought he was the creditor; suddenly the debtors rise up and reclaim what was taken. Meshissot ('plunder, spoil') is what Babylon will become.
8. The lex talionis principle governs: what Babylon did, Babylon will receive. The phrase demei adam ('blood of humankind') is comprehensive — not one nation's blood but humanity's. Chamas-erets ('violence of/to the land') may refer to both political violence and ecological destruction wrought by conquest. The fourfold scope — land, city, all inhabitants — is total.
9. The second woe oracle. Botse'a betsa ra ('cuts unjust gain') uses the verb batsa, which literally means 'to cut off a piece' — like cutting a slice of plundered wealth for yourself. The bird metaphor — setting a nest on high for safety — suggests the Babylonian king building impregnable fortresses and palaces, believing wealth can insulate him from judgment. Kaph ra ('the palm/grasp of disaster') is what he tries to escape — but cannot.
10. The irony intensifies: the unjust gain meant to secure the 'house' (dynasty) actually brings bosheth ('shame') upon it. Qetsot ammim rabbim ('cutting off many peoples') describes the extermination of nations. Chote nafshekha ('sinning against your own soul/life') means the violence rebounds — by destroying others, the tyrant has destroyed himself.
11. One of the most striking images in prophetic literature: the very building materials of the palace — stones and wooden beams — will testify against the builder because they were acquired through oppression and built with blood. Tiz'aq ('cry out') is the same verb used for the cry of the oppressed in Exodus. Kaphiss ('beam, rafter') answers the stone — the whole structure becomes a witness for the prosecution.
12. The third woe oracle. Boneh ir bedamim ('builds a city with blood') describes the literal use of forced labor and conquest to construct Babylon's monuments. The parallel koinen qiryah be'avlah ('establishes a town by injustice') shows that the entire urban project is founded on moral corruption. This connects to Nahum 3:1 ('woe to the city of blood') — what was said of Nineveh now applies to Babylon.
13. The rhetorical question asserts divine sovereignty over the futility of empire. All the labor of conquered peoples — forced into building Babylon's monuments — is ultimately for fire (bedei-esh, 'for the sake of fire'), because the city will burn. Le'ummim bedei-riq yi'aphu ('nations exhaust themselves for emptiness') means every imperial project ends in ash. The LORD of Hosts is the one who ensures this futility.
14. This verse closely parallels Isaiah 11:9 ('the earth will be full of the knowledge of the LORD as the waters cover the sea') and Numbers 14:21 ('all the earth shall be filled with the glory of the LORD'). Habakkuk's version uniquely combines 'knowledge' (da'at) and 'glory' (kavod) — the earth will not merely see God's glory but know it, understand it, be immersed in it. The comparison 'as the waters cover the sea' is not about partial covering but total saturation — there is no part of the sea that water does not fill.
15. The fourth woe oracle. The metaphor shifts to forced intoxication — the tyrant makes his neighbors (re'ehu, 'friends/companions' — the word implies a relationship of supposed equality) drink until they are exposed and vulnerable. Mesappeach chamatekha ('pouring out your wrath/poison') — chatat could mean either 'wrath' or 'venom/poison,' and the ambiguity may be intentional. The purpose clause 'in order to gaze on their nakedness' (lema'an habbit al me'oreihem) depicts the humiliation of conquered peoples.
16. The punishment fits the crime: the one who forced others to drink and stripped them naked will now drink and be stripped himself. 'Shame instead of glory' (qalon mikkavod) is a devastating reversal. He'arel ('show yourself uncircumcised, expose yourself') is a term of ultimate degradation in the ancient Near East. The 'cup of the LORD's right hand' (kos yemin YHWH) is the cup of divine wrath that nations must drink (cf. Jeremiah 25:15-28). Qiqalon ('disgrace, shameful vomiting') — the word may combine qalon ('shame') with qi ('vomit').
17. Lebanon's famous cedars were systematically harvested by Babylonian kings for their palace-building projects — the ecological destruction is treated as a moral crime. Shod behemot ('destruction of animals') suggests that the deforestation also devastated wildlife habitats. The refrain 'because of the blood of humankind and violence to the land' (middemei adam vachamal-erets) repeats from verse 8, creating a structural bracket around the woe oracles. The inclusion of land and animals alongside human victims is a remarkably holistic view of justice.
18. This verse sets up the fifth woe. The absurdity is stated plainly: the idol is made by the worshiper, so it cannot be greater than its maker. Moreh shaqer ('teacher of lies') is devastating — the idol does not merely fail to help, it actively deceives. Elilim illemim ('mute worthless things') — elilim is a contemptuous diminutive, possibly a wordplay on elohim ('gods'), meaning 'little nothings.' They are illemim ('mute, speechless') — they cannot answer, speak, or save.
19. The fifth woe oracle targets idolatry directly. The commands to the idol — 'Wake up! Arise!' — are absurdly addressed to inert materials (wood, stone). Dumam ('silent') describes the stone as fundamentally incapable of speech. The idol is taphus ('overlaid, plated') with precious metals — beautiful on the outside, empty within. The decisive condemnation: kol ruach ein beqirbo ('there is absolutely no breath/spirit within it'). Ruach ('breath, spirit, wind') is what the living God possesses and the idol lacks entirely.

- 20.** This verse is the theological climax of the chapter. After addressing idols that cannot speak, Habakkuk declares that the living God is present in his temple. *Has* ('silence! hush!') is an interjection commanding absolute stillness — the same word used in Zephaniah 1:7 ('Be silent before the Lord GOD') and Zechariah 2:13 ('Be silent, all flesh, before the LORD'). The scope is universal: *kol ha'arets* ('all the earth'). The speechless idols are contrasted with the God before whom all speech must stop — not because he is mute but because he is overwhelmingly present.

3

Summary: *Habakkuk 3 is a prayer-psalm — a theophany poem in which the prophet calls on God to renew his mighty acts, then describes a terrifying vision of God marching forth as a divine warrior. The imagery draws on the exodus, the wilderness wandering, and cosmic combat: God comes from Teman and Mount Paran, his splendor covers the heavens, he strides through the earth in fury, he tramples nations. The chapter moves from terror to trust, closing with one of the most extraordinary confessions of faith in all Scripture: 'Though the fig tree does not bud and there are no grapes on the vines... yet I will rejoice in the LORD.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter stands apart from the rest of Habakkuk in form — it has a superscription with a musical term (shigionot), embedded Selah markers, and a colophon assigning it to the choirmaster with stringed accompaniment. This strongly suggests it was used liturgically as a psalm. The theophany in verses 3-15 is among the most powerful in the Hebrew Bible, rivaling Judges 5 (Song of Deborah) and Psalm 18 in its depiction of God as cosmic warrior. The concluding confession (vv. 17-19) transcends the entire complaint-dialogue of chapters 1-2: Habakkuk moves from 'How long?' to 'Yet I will rejoice' — not because his questions have been answered but because he has encountered the God who is worth trusting regardless of circumstances.*

Translation Friction: *The theophany language is archaic, allusive, and dense with mythological imagery. Place names like Teman, Paran, and Cushan require geographical notes. Some phrases are textually uncertain — the Hebrew of verses 13-14 is particularly difficult. Musical terms like shigionot and selah are of uncertain meaning, and we note this honestly. The shift from third-person description of God to second-person address within the theophany required careful tracking.*

Connections: *The theophany echoes Deuteronomy 33:2 (God coming from Sinai/Seir/Paran), Judges 5:4-5 (God marching from Seir), and Psalm 68:7-8 (God going before his people in the wilderness). The cosmic combat imagery connects to Psalm 77:16-19 and Isaiah 51:9-10. The concluding confession of faith anticipates Job's response (Job 13:15, 'Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him') and connects to Paul's declaration in Romans 8:35-39. The liturgical elements suggest this text was performed in worship, making it the congregation's response to the theological crisis of chapters 1-2.*

¹A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet, according to Shigionot. ²LORD, I have heard the report of you and I stand in awe. LORD, renew your work in the midst of the years; in the midst of the years make it known. In wrath, remember mercy. ³God comes from Teman, the Holy One from Mount Paran. Selah. His splendor covers the heavens, and the earth is full of his praise. ⁴His radiance is like the light; rays flash from his hand, and there the veiling of his power. ⁵Before him goes pestilence, and plague follows at his heels. ⁶He stands and shakes the earth; he looks and makes the nations tremble. The eternal mountains are shattered, the ancient hills collapse — his ways are everlasting. ⁷I see the tents of Cushan in distress; the tent curtains of the land of Midian tremble. ⁸Was your anger against the rivers, LORD? Was your wrath against the rivers, your fury against the sea? For you ride on your horses, your chariots of salvation! ⁹You bare your bow completely; sworn are the arrows of your word. Selah. You split the earth with rivers. ¹⁰The mountains see you and writhe. Torrents of water sweep past. The deep raises its voice; it lifts its waves on high. ¹¹Sun and moon stand still in their dwelling at the light of your arrows as they fly, at the flash of your gleaming spear. ¹²In fury you stride across the earth; in anger you thresh the nations. ¹³You go out to save your people, to save your anointed one. You crush the head of the house of the wicked, stripping it bare from foundation to neck. Selah. ¹⁴You pierce the head of his warriors with their own spears. They storm in to scatter us — their glee is like devouring the poor in secret. ¹⁵You tread the sea with your horses, churning the mighty waters. ¹⁶I heard, and my body trembled; my lips quivered at the sound. Decay crept into my bones, and my legs shook beneath me. Yet

I will wait quietly for the day of distress, for the attack on the people who invade us. ¹⁷Though the fig tree does not bud and there are no grapes on the vines, though the olive crop fails and the fields produce no food, though the flock is cut off from the fold and there are no cattle in the stalls — ¹⁸yet I will rejoice in the LORD; I will take joy in the God of my salvation. ¹⁹The Lord GOD is my strength; he makes my feet like the deer's and makes me walk on my high places. For the choirmaster, with stringed instruments.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The superscription identifies this as a tefillah ('prayer'), a term also used in the psalm titles (Psalms 17, 86, 90, 102, 142). Shigionot (plural of shiggaion) is a musical or liturgical term of uncertain meaning — possibly related to shagah ('to wander, to reel'), suggesting a wild, passionate, or irregular musical style. The only other occurrence is in Psalm 7:1. The superscription confirms this chapter functioned as a liturgical composition.
2. Habakkuk has heard God's shim'akha ('report, fame, reputation') — the accounts of what God has done in the past — and responds with fear (yare'ti, 'I was afraid/I stand in awe'). His petition is twofold: (1) renew the mighty acts of old (chayyeihu, 'revive it, bring it to life') within the current crisis ('in the midst of the years'), and (2) berogez rachem tizkor ('in wrath remember mercy') — even while executing judgment, do not forget compassion. This single line holds the entire book's theology in balance.
3. Teman ('the south') is a region in Edom, and Paran is the wilderness between Sinai and Canaan. This echoes Deuteronomy 33:2 ('The LORD came from Sinai and dawned from Seir upon them; he shone forth from Mount Paran') and Judges 5:4 ('LORD, when you went out from Seir'). Selah appears here and in verses 9 and 13 — its meaning is uncertain, possibly a musical interlude or a liturgical response marker. Hodo ('his splendor, his majesty') fills the heavens; tehilatato ('his praise') fills the earth — a total cosmic manifestation.
4. Nogah ka'or ('radiance like the light') describes blinding brightness. Qarnayim miyado ('horns/rays from his hand') — qarnayim can mean either 'horns' (symbols of power) or 'rays of light' (as in Exodus 34:29-30, where Moses' face 'shone,' from the same root q-r-n). The phrase chevyon uzzo ('the hiding/veiling of his power') is extraordinary: what Habakkuk sees — the blinding radiance, the flashing rays — is actually the concealment of God's power. The visible glory is a veil; the full reality would be unbearable.
5. Dever ('pestilence') and resheph ('plague, burning fever') are personified as God's attendants — they march before and behind him like royal bodyguards. In Canaanite mythology, Resheph was a deity of plague and war; here, plague is demoted to God's footsoldier. The imagery is of a divine king processing with his retinue — but his retinue consists of the forces of death.
6. The verbs are devastating in their simplicity: God stands (amad) and the earth shakes; he looks (ra'ah) and nations tremble. Harerei-ad ('mountains of perpetuity') and giv'ot olam ('hills of eternity') — the most permanent features of creation — shatter and collapse before him. The concluding phrase halikot olam lo ('his ways are everlasting') contrasts God's permanence with the impermanence of everything else, even mountains. What seems eternal in human experience is temporary before God.
7. Cushan and Midian are peoples of the southern desert region — the same area God is advancing from (v. 3). Their tents shake as God passes through their territory. Cushan may be an archaic name for Cush (Ethiopia/Nubia) or a local Arabian tribe. Midian was located east of the Gulf of Aqaba. The nomadic imagery (tents, curtains) and the geographical references ground the theophany in the wilderness traditions of the exodus.
8. The rhetorical questions imply: No, God's anger is not against the rivers or the sea — they are merely the arena in which he demonstrates his power. The imagery of God riding horses and chariots echoes the Song of the Sea (Exodus 15) and Psalm 68:17. Markevotekha yeshu'ah ('your chariots of salvation/victory') transforms the war chariot into an instrument of deliverance — God's military might serves his saving purpose.
9. This verse is textually one of the most difficult in the Hebrew Bible. Eryah te'or qashtekha ('your bow is completely bared/uncovered') depicts God drawing a bow for battle. Shevu'ot mattot omer ('sworn rods/arrows of speech/word') is nearly untranslatable with certainty — it likely refers to the sworn decrees of God being compared to arrows launched from the bow. The splitting of the earth with rivers may recall the exodus crossing or the creation of waterways as God's feet impact the ground.
10. The personification intensifies: mountains 'see' God and convulse in pain (yachilu, from chul, 'to writhe, to be in labor'). The tehom ('deep, abyss') — the primordial ocean of Genesis 1:2 — responds to God's presence by 'raising its voice' (natan qolo) and 'lifting its hands' (rom yadeihu nasa). The image of the deep lifting its waves like raised hands may depict either surrender or acclamation — the ocean itself responding to its Creator.
11. This alludes to Joshua 10:12-13, where the sun and moon stood still during battle. Here the celestial bodies halt because God's weaponry outshines them — his arrows are brighter than the sun, his spear flashes beyond the moon's light. Zevulah ('exalted dwelling, celestial habitation') refers to the sky-realm where sun and moon reside. The heavenly bodies become irrelevant when the God who made them goes to war.
12. Tits'ad erets ('stride across the earth') depicts God covering vast distances in single steps — the earth is too small for his scale. Tadush goyim ('thresh the nations') is agricultural violence applied to warfare — threshing is the act of beating grain to separate the edible kernel from the husk. The nations are the grain on God's threshing floor.
13. The purpose of the theophany is revealed: yesha' ammekha ('salvation of your people') and yesha' et meshichekha ('salvation of your anointed'). The meshiach ('anointed one') likely refers to the Davidic king, though later readers saw messianic significance. Machats rosh mibbet rasha ('crush the head from the house of the wicked') echoes Genesis 3:15 (crushing the serpent's head). 'Stripping bare from foundation to neck' (arot yesod ad tsavvar) is the image of demolishing a building from its foundations up to its roofline — total destruction.

14. The text is very difficult here. Naqavta bematav rosh perazav ('you pierce with his staves/spears the head of his warriors') may describe God turning the enemy's weapons against them. Perazav ('his villagers/warriors') can mean either rural populations or warriors. 'Their glee is like devouring the poor in secret' (alitsutam kemo le'ekhol ani bamistar) compares the enemy's jubilation over conquest to the predation of the helpless — they take the same pleasure in destroying nations as the powerful take in exploiting the poor.
15. The theophany concludes with a clear allusion to the Red Sea crossing: God's war-horses trampling through the sea, churning the great waters into foam. Darakhta ('you tread, you trample') is the language of the winepress — God treads on the sea as a vintner treads grapes. Chomer mayim rabbim ('heap/churning of many waters') captures the turbulence of waters parting and closing. The exodus is the paradigmatic act of divine salvation, and all future acts of deliverance are modeled on it.
16. The prophet's physical reaction to the theophany: trembling belly (tirgaz bitni), quivering lips (tsalelu sephatay), bones feeling rotten (yavo raqav ba'atsamay), legs giving way (tachtay ergaz). This is not fear of judgment but the overwhelming terror of God's presence — even when God comes to save, his presence is almost unbearable. The pivot 'yet I will wait quietly' (asher anuach leyom tsarah) moves from terror to trust — despite the overwhelming vision, Habakkuk chooses patient waiting.
17. This verse catalogs total agricultural collapse — every source of sustenance is eliminated. Fig trees (staple fruit), grapevines (wine), olive trees (oil), grain fields (bread), sheep (wool and meat), and cattle (dairy and labor) — the six pillars of Judean agricultural economy are stripped away one by one. The cumulative effect is a vision of absolute destitution: no fruit, no wine, no oil, no bread, no meat, no milk. The 'though... yet' construction that spans verses 17-18 is one of the most powerful expressions of faith in all Scripture.
18. The conjunction 'yet' (va'ani, 'but I, as for me') sets up the contrast with the total loss of verse 17. E'elozah ('I will rejoice, exult') is a strong, demonstrative verb — this is not quiet resignation but active, vocal celebration. Agilah ('I will take joy, dance, spin') adds a physical dimension — joy expressed in movement. Elohei yish'i ('the God of my salvation/deliverance') makes God himself — not his gifts, not his circumstances, not his blessings — the object of joy.
19. The closing verse combines declaration, metaphor, and liturgical notation. YHWH Adonai cheili ('the Lord GOD is my strength') — not merely a source of strength but strength itself. The deer-feet metaphor (raglai ka'ayalot) describes the sure-footedness of a mountain deer navigating cliff faces — a picture of confident, steady movement through treacherous terrain. Bamotay ('my high places') may refer to literal mountain heights or metaphorical places of triumph and security. The colophon lamenatseach bineginotay ('for the choirmaster, with my stringed instruments') confirms this chapter was performed in worship — the prophet's crisis of faith became the congregation's hymn.

Zephaniah

1

Summary: *Zephaniah 1 is a relentless proclamation of cosmic and local judgment. The prophet — a descendant of King Hezekiah — announces God's intention to sweep away everything from the face of the earth in language that echoes the creation account in reverse. From universal judgment the focus narrows to Judah and Jerusalem: God will punish those who worship Baal, those who bow to the host of heaven, those who have turned away, and the complacent who say 'The LORD will do nothing.' The chapter climaxes with the most sustained description of the 'Day of the LORD' in the prophets — the passage that would later inspire the medieval hymn Dies Irae.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Zephaniah's genealogy (v. 1) is the longest of any prophetic superscription — traced back four generations to Hezekiah (Chizkiyahu), almost certainly the king. This makes Zephaniah a member of the royal family and gives his condemnation of Jerusalem's leadership an insider's authority. The de-creation language (vv. 2-3) reverses Genesis 1: instead of creating fish, birds, animals, and humans, God will 'sweep away' (asoph aseph) everything in reverse order — humans, animals, birds, fish. The Day of the LORD passage (vv. 14-18) provided the basis for the medieval Latin sequence Dies Irae ('Day of Wrath'), one of the most famous hymns in Christian liturgy.*

Translation Friction: *The word asoph aseph in verses 2-3 ('I will utterly sweep away') is debated — some connect it to asaph ('to gather, to remove') and others hear an echo of suph ('to come to an end'). We render it 'sweep away' to capture the totality. The phrase 'those who swear by Milcom' (v. 5) — Milcom being the Ammonite deity — appears in some texts as malkam ('their king'), and we follow the reading 'Milcom' with a note. The sequence of judgments in verses 4-13 moves through different social groups, and identifying each precisely requires attention to the Hebrew titles and descriptions.*

Connections: *The de-creation theme connects to Genesis 1 (in reverse), Genesis 6-9 (the flood), and Jeremiah 4:23-26 (Jeremiah's vision of de-creation). The Day of the LORD concept runs through Joel 1-2, Amos 5:18-20, Isaiah 2:12-22, and Malachi 4:1-5. The Dies Irae tradition directly quotes Zephaniah 1:15-16. Zephaniah's dating to Josiah's reign places him alongside Jeremiah and possibly Nahum. The phrase 'Be silent before the Lord GOD' (v. 7) echoes Habakkuk 2:20.*

¹The word of the LORD that came to Zephaniah son of Cushi, son of Gedaliah, son of Amariah, son of Hezekiah, in the days of Josiah son of Amon, king of Judah. ²I will utterly sweep away everything from the face of the earth, declares the LORD. ³I

will sweep away humans and animals; I will sweep away the birds of the sky and the fish of the sea, and the stumbling blocks along with the wicked. I will cut off humankind from the face of the earth, declares the LORD. ⁴I will stretch out my hand against Judah and against all the inhabitants of Jerusalem. I will cut off from this place every remnant of Baal — the names of the idolatrous priests along with the priests. ⁵those who bow down on the rooftops to the host of heaven, and those who bow down and swear by the LORD yet also swear by Milcom, ⁶and those who have turned back from following the LORD, and those who have not sought the LORD or inquired of him. ⁷Be silent before the Lord GOD, for the day of the LORD is near. The LORD has prepared a sacrifice; he has consecrated his guests. ⁸On the day of the LORD's sacrifice, I will punish the officials and the king's sons, and all who dress in foreign clothing. ⁹On that day I will punish all who leap over the threshold, who fill their masters' houses with violence and fraud. ¹⁰On that day, declares the LORD, a cry will go up from the Fish Gate, wailing from the Second Quarter, and a great crash from the hills. ¹¹Wail, you inhabitants of the Mortar! For all the traders are destroyed; all who weigh out silver are cut off. ¹²At that time I will search Jerusalem with lamps and punish the people who are thickening on their dregs — those who say in their hearts, 'The LORD will do nothing, either good or bad.' ¹³Their wealth will become plunder and their houses desolation. They will build houses but not live in them; they will plant vineyards but not drink their wine. ¹⁴The great day of the LORD is near — near, and rushing fast! The sound of the day of the LORD — there the warrior cries out bitterly. ¹⁵That day is a day of wrath, a day of anguish and distress, a day of ruin and devastation, a day of darkness and gloom, a day of clouds and dense fog, ¹⁶a day of trumpet blast and battle cry against the fortified cities and against the high corner towers. ¹⁷I will bring such distress on people that they will stumble about like the blind, because they have sinned against the LORD. Their blood will be poured out like dust, and their flesh like dung. ¹⁸N either their silver nor their gold will be able to rescue them on the day of the LORD's wrath. In the fire of his jealousy the whole earth will be consumed, for he will make a sudden and complete end of all the inhabitants of the earth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the longest genealogy in any prophetic superscription. Tracing the lineage four generations to Hezekiah (Chizkiyahu) almost certainly identifies this as King Hezekiah, making Zephaniah a member of the royal house and a distant cousin of King Josiah. This insider status gives his critique of the ruling class particular force. Josiah reigned 640-609 BCE; Zephaniah likely prophesied before Josiah's reforms of 621 BCE, given the prevalence of idolatry he describes.
2. The emphatic infinitive absolute *asoph aseph* ('I will utterly sweep away') opens with maximum intensity. 'From the face of the earth' (*me'al penei ha'adamah*) echoes Genesis 6:7 ('I will blot out man whom I have created from the face of the earth') — God is speaking in flood-judgment language. The scope is total: *kol* ('everything'). This is not targeted judgment but cosmic un-creation.
3. The order — humans, animals, birds, fish — reverses the creation sequence of Genesis 1 (fish, birds, animals, humans). This is deliberate de-creation: God dismantling what he built. *Hammakhshelot et hareshaim* ('the stumbling blocks with the wicked') is difficult — it may mean the idols that caused the people to stumble or the ruin-heaps that remain after judgment. *Hikhratti* ('I will cut off') is covenant-curse language, the ultimate penalty for covenant violation.
4. 'Stretch out my hand' (*natiti yadi*) is an execution gesture — the divine hand extended in judgment (cf. Exodus 3:20). The 'remnant of Baal' (*she'ar habba'al*) implies that some Baal worship has already been removed (perhaps by Josiah's early reforms) but not all. *Kemarim* ('idolatrous priests') is a distinct term from *kohanim* ('legitimate priests') — the *kemarim* were priests of foreign cults. That both are mentioned suggests some legitimate priests had also been corrupted.
5. Three groups are targeted: (1) rooftop astral worshipers — flat rooftops were used as open-air shrines to worship the stars, moon, and sun (the 'host of heaven'); (2) syncretists who swear loyalty to both the LORD and Milcom — trying to serve two masters; and (3) the name *malkam* could be read as 'their king' (a human ruler) or 'Milcom' (the Ammonite deity, also known as Molek). We follow the reading 'Milcom' because the context is religious syncretism. The rooftop worship is specifically condemned in Jeremiah 19:13 and 32:29.
6. Two more categories: (1) *hannesogim me'acharei YHWH* ('those turned back from following the LORD') — active apostates who once followed but have retreated; and (2) those who never sought God at all — passive indifference. The distinction matters: judgment falls on both active rejection and passive neglect. 'Sought' (*biqshu*) and 'inquired' (*derashuhu*) are near-synonyms emphasizing the totality of their disengagement.
7. Has ('Be silent!') echoes Habakkuk 2:20 — the same interjection demanding awed stillness before God. The 'Day of the LORD' (*yom YHWH*) is now explicitly introduced — the central concept of the book. The metaphor is stunning: God has prepared a *zevach* ('sacrifice, slaughter') and has 'consecrated his guests' (*hiqdish qeru'av*). In sacrificial ritual, the worshipers had to be consecrated (ritually purified) before participating. God's 'guests' at this sacrifice may be the invading armies he is summoning — they are consecrated for the task of executing judgment. Judah is the sacrifice.

8. Paqadti ('I will punish, I will attend to, I will reckon with') is a visitation verb — God personally arrives to settle accounts. The officials (sarim) and king's sons (benei hammelekh) are the political elite. 'Foreign clothing' (malbush nokhri) likely refers to the adoption of foreign fashions as a symbol of cultural and religious assimilation — wearing the clothes of the nations whose gods you worship. Zephaniah's royal lineage gives this critique of the court particular authority.
9. 'Those who leap over the threshold' (haddoleg al hammiphtan) is a puzzling phrase. It may refer to a pagan superstition about thresholds (cf. 1 Samuel 5:5, the Dagon threshold tradition), or it may describe aggressive servants who burst into houses to steal — leaping over the threshold in their haste to plunder. 'Violence and fraud' (chamas umirmah) are the twin crimes of social injustice: physical force and deception.
10. Zephaniah maps the judgment onto specific Jerusalem geography. The Fish Gate (sha'ar haddagim) was in the northern wall, where merchants sold fish brought from the coast or the Sea of Galilee — it would be the first point of enemy entry from the north. The Second Quarter (mishneh) was the newer, western expansion of the city. The hills (geva'ot) may refer to the surrounding hills of Jerusalem or the elevated areas within the city. The judgment sweeps from north to west to the heights.
11. The Makhtesh ('Mortar,' literally a bowl-shaped depression) is likely a market district in Jerusalem, possibly the Tyropoeon Valley. The merchants are called 'people of Canaan' (am kena'an) — 'Canaanite' had become a synonym for 'merchant/trader' (cf. Hosea 12:8, Proverbs 31:24). Netilei khasef ('those loaded with silver' or 'those who weigh silver') are the wealthy commercial class. The commercial heart of Jerusalem will be gutted.
12. One of the most vivid images in the book: God personally searching Jerusalem's dark corners with lamps (neirot), like a householder hunting for something hidden. No one escapes. The target: people 'thickening on their dregs' (haqqoph'im al shimreihem). The metaphor is from winemaking — wine left on its sediment too long becomes thick and syrupy, losing its character. These are people who have settled into comfortable spiritual complacency. Their theology is practical atheism: 'The LORD will do nothing' — not formal denial of God's existence but functional denial of his relevance.
13. This is covenant-curse language drawn directly from Deuteronomy 28:30, 39 — the blessings of settlement (houses, vineyards) are reversed into futility. Building without inhabiting and planting without harvesting are the classic curse-formulas for a society that has broken its covenant with God. The same reversal appears in Amos 5:11 and Micah 6:15.
14. The Day of the LORD passage begins. Qarov ('near') is repeated twice for urgency; maher me'od ('rushing very fast') intensifies the imminence. The sound (qol) of that day is not silence but a warrior's bitter shriek — even the gibbor ('mighty man, warrior, hero') screams in anguish. The strongest man in the army is reduced to bitter crying. This verse begins the section (vv. 14-18) that inspired the medieval Dies Irae.
15. Five pairs of near-synonyms hammer the character of the Day: (1) evrah ('wrath, fury'), (2) tsarah umtsuqah ('anguish and distress'), (3) sho'ah umesho'ah ('ruin and devastation' — a wordplay pair), (4) choshekh va'aphelah ('darkness and gloom'), (5) anan va'araphel ('clouds and dense fog'). The Latin translation of this verse — 'Dies irae, dies illa' — became the opening line of the Dies Irae hymn, composed in the 13th century and used in Requiem masses for centuries. The piling of synonyms creates an overwhelming, suffocating portrait of judgment.
16. The litany continues with military sounds: shophar ('trumpet, ram's horn') used for alarm and battle signals, and teruah ('war cry, blast'). These are directed against the strongest defenses — 'fortified cities' (arim habetsurot) and 'high corner towers' (pinnot hagevohot). The corner towers were the most heavily fortified points in any ancient city wall. If even these cannot withstand the attack, nothing can.
17. The blindness (ka'ivrim, 'like blind men') is both physical (disorientation in battle) and spiritual (they walked blind to God's will, now they walk blind in judgment). The similes are deliberately degrading: blood poured out 'like dust' (ke'aphar) — as worthless and common as dirt; flesh discarded 'like dung' (kagelalim) — like animal excrement. These are people who thought they were beyond God's reach (v. 12); now they are reduced to waste.
18. The chapter closes with the ultimate futility: wealth cannot buy escape from divine judgment. The word qin'ato ('his jealousy, his zeal') echoes Nahum 1:2 — the same covenantal jealousy that destroys Israel's enemies now turns on Israel itself when they break covenant. Kalah akh-nivhalah ('a complete end, indeed a terrifying one') combines totality with terror. The scope returns to universal ('all the inhabitants of the earth,' kol yoshevei ha'arets), echoing the cosmic sweep of verse 2. The chapter that began with de-creation ends with total consumption.

2

Summary: Zephaniah 2 opens with a call to repentance — 'Seek the LORD, all you humble of the land' — before the Day of the LORD arrives. The rest of the chapter is a series of oracles against foreign nations, sweeping in all four compass directions: Philistia to the west (Gaza, Ashkelon, Ashdod, Ekron), Moab and Ammon to the east, Cush (Ethiopia) to the south, and Assyria to the north. Each oracle carries the same message: the nations that oppressed or mocked God's people will be devastated, and their territories will be reclaimed.

What Makes This Remarkable: The opening call to seek the LORD (vv. 1-3) introduces a rare note of conditional hope in an otherwise unrelenting judgment oracle. The word 'perhaps' (ulay, v. 3) is extraordinary — even the prophet cannot guarantee that repentance will avert judgment, only that it is worth trying. The Philistine oracle plays on city names (Gaza/azuvah, Ekron/te'aqer) in a series of devastating

wordplays that would have landed with particular force in Hebrew. The Assyria oracle (vv. 13-15) concludes with Nineveh becoming a ruin where animals nest — the same city that Nahum prophesied against.

Translation Friction: The call to the 'nation without shame' (goy lo nikhsaph, v. 1) is difficult — it could mean 'nation not longing/yearning' (for God), 'nation without shame,' or 'nation not desired.' We follow 'without shame' as it fits the context of a people who should be ashamed but are not. The word sequence in verses 1-3 required careful attention to preserve the urgency of the conditional hope. The Cush oracle (v. 12) is remarkably brief — a single verse — compared to the extended treatments of the other nations.

Connections: The oracles against nations parallel those in Isaiah 13-23, Jeremiah 46-51, Ezekiel 25-32, and Amos 1-2. The four-directional sweep (west, east, south, north) symbolically represents universal judgment. The Nineveh oracle connects directly to the book of Nahum. The remnant concept (she'erit, vv. 7, 9) links to the broader prophetic hope found in Isaiah 10:20-22 and Micah 2:12. The call to seek the LORD (v. 3) anticipates the restoration promises of chapter 3.

¹Gather yourselves together — yes, gather, O nation without shame! ²Before the decree takes effect, before the day passes like chaff, before the burning anger of the LORD comes upon you, before the day of the LORD's anger comes upon you — ³Seek the LORD, all you humble of the land who carry out his justice. Seek righteousness, seek humility — perhaps you will be sheltered on the day of the LORD's anger. ⁴For Gaza will be deserted, and Ashkelon a wasteland. Ashdod will be driven out at noon, and Ekron will be uprooted. ⁵Woe to the inhabitants of the seacoast, the nation of the Cherethites! The word of the LORD is against you, O Canaan, land of the Philistines — I will destroy you until no inhabitant remains. ⁶The seacoast will become pastureland with shepherds' huts and sheep pens. ⁷The coast will belong to the remnant of the house of Judah; they will graze their flocks there. In the houses of Ashkelon they will lie down in the evening, for the LORD their God will attend to them and restore their fortunes. ⁸I have heard the taunts of Moab and the insults of the Ammonites, how they mocked my people and boasted against their territory. ⁹Therefore, as I live — declares the LORD of Hosts, the God of Israel — Moab will be like Sodom and the Ammonites like Gomorrah: a place of weeds and salt pits, a wasteland forever. The remnant of my people will plunder them, and the survivors of my nation will inherit them. ¹⁰This is what they get for their arrogance, because they taunted and boasted against the people of the LORD of Hosts. ¹¹The LORD will be terrifying against them, for he will starve all the gods of the earth. Then all the coastlands of the nations will bow down to him, each from their own place. ¹²You also, O Cushites — you will be slain by my sword. ¹³He will stretch out his hand against the north and destroy Assyria, making Nineveh a desolation, dry as the desert. ¹⁴Herds will lie down in her midst — every kind of wild animal. Both the desert owl and the hedgehog will lodge in her column capitals. A voice will hoot in the window; rubble on the threshold — for the cedar paneling is stripped bare. ¹⁵This is the exultant city that lived in security, that said in her heart, 'I am, and there is no one else.' What a ruin she has become, a lair for wild animals! Everyone who passes by her hisses and shakes his fist.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb hitqosheshu is intensive and emphatic — 'gather yourselves, pull yourselves together.' The nation addressed is Judah, not a foreign people. Lo nikhsaph is difficult: the root k-s-ph can mean 'to long for, to desire' or 'to be ashamed.' The nation is either 'without longing' (for God) or 'without shame' (incapable of blushing at their sins). We render 'without shame' because the context calls for a stinging accusation that might jolt them to repentance.
2. Three urgent 'before' (beterem) clauses pile up the time pressure: act before the decree is born, before the day blows past like chaff, before God's anger arrives. The chaff simile (kemots avar yom, 'the day passes like chaff') suggests how quickly the window of opportunity will vanish — chaff caught in the wind is gone in an instant. The repetition of charon aph YHWH ('burning anger of the LORD') in two slightly different forms drives the urgency to a peak.
3. Three imperatives: 'Seek the LORD,' 'seek righteousness' (tsedeq), 'seek humility' (anavah). The audience is narrowed to the anvei ha'arets ('humble of the land') — those who already practice God's justice but need to intensify their devotion. The word ulay ('perhaps') is remarkable in a prophetic oracle — it introduces genuine uncertainty. Zephaniah does not promise escape, only the possibility. Tissateru ('you will be sheltered, hidden') echoes the prophet's own name: tsephan-yah means 'the LORD hides/treasures.'

4. The Philistine oracle contains brilliant wordplays on city names: Azzah ('Gaza') becomes azuvah ('deserted') — a near-homophone; Ekron ('Ekron') becomes te'aqer ('uprooted') — from the same root. Ashdod expelled 'at noon' (batsahorayim) is striking because noon is the hottest, most vulnerable time of day — they will be driven out when resistance is weakest. Four of the five Philistine cities are named; Gath is notably absent, possibly already destroyed by Zephaniah's time.
5. Chevel hayyam ('the seacoast region') is the Mediterranean coastal plain. The Cherethites (keretim) are identified with the Philistines and possibly connected to Crete — the Philistines are believed to have migrated from the Aegean region. Calling Philistia 'Canaan' (kena'an) may be a deliberate slur, associating them with the cursed inhabitants of the land, or it may reflect the broader use of 'Canaan' for the entire coastal region.
6. The once-urbanized Philistine coast will revert to pastoral land. Nevot kerot ro'im ('pastures, shelters for shepherds') and giderot tson ('sheep pens') depict a dramatic reversal from the bustling city-states of Philistia to quiet grazing country. This is de-urbanization as judgment — the cities are so thoroughly destroyed that only herdsman remain.
7. The judgment on Philistia becomes a blessing for Judah — the emptied coastland will be inherited by God's people. She'erit bet Yehudah ('the remnant of the house of Judah') is the surviving faithful community, a key concept in prophetic eschatology. Shav shevutam ('restore their fortunes/captivity') is a standard prophetic formula for reversal of exile and restoration (cf. Jeremiah 29:14, 30:3). The pastoral imagery — grazing, lying down in the evening — echoes Psalm 23.
8. God speaks in the first person — he has personally heard (shamati) the ridicule. Cherpat Mo'av ('the taunts of Moab') and giddufei benei Ammon ('the insults of the Ammonites') describe the neighboring nations' verbal abuse of Judah during its weakness. The phrase vayyagdilu al ge'ulam ('they boasted against their territory') suggests Moab and Ammon took advantage of Judah's distress to encroach on its borders — a combination of mockery and land-grabbing.
9. God swears by his own life (chai-ani) — the strongest possible oath, since there is no one greater to swear by (cf. Hebrews 6:13). The Sodom and Gomorrah comparison is particularly apt because Moab and Ammon were traditionally descended from Lot, who survived Sodom's destruction (Genesis 19:30-38). The descendants of Sodom's survivor will suffer Sodom's fate. Mimshaq charul ('a possession of weeds/nettles') and mikhre-melach ('salt pits') describe agricultural devastation — the land becomes uninhabitable.
10. The verdict summary. Ge'onam ('their arrogance, their pride') is identified as the root sin — the same overweening pride that characterizes Babylon in Habakkuk and Assyria in Nahum. The crime is not merely political aggression but spiritual presumption: they boasted 'against the people of the LORD of Hosts' (al am YHWH tseva'ot). To mock God's people is to mock God himself.
11. Razah et kol elohei ha'arets ('he will starve all the gods of the earth') is a vivid metaphor: pagan deities are 'fed' by sacrifices and offerings (cf. Daniel 14 in the Apocrypha, the story of Bel), and God will cut off their food supply, leaving them to waste away. The vision then expands to universal worship: all the iyei haggoyim ('coastlands/islands of the nations') — representing the most distant peoples — will worship the LORD, each from their own place. This is a vision of decentralized, worldwide worship.
12. The briefest oracle in the chapter — a single verse for Cush (Ethiopia/Nubia). Challelei charbi ('slain by my sword') — God claims the sword as his own instrument. Cush represented the farthest south in the ancient Israelite worldview; its inclusion completes the directional sweep (west: Philistia; east: Moab/Ammon; south: Cush; north: Assyria, vv. 13-15). The brevity may reflect Cush's distance from Judah — less elaboration is needed for a more remote threat.
13. The northward sweep reaches Assyria, completing the compass. 'Stretch out his hand' (yet yado) echoes 1:4 and the exodus tradition. Nineveh will become shimamah ('desolation') and tsiyyah ('dry, arid') — the great city on the Tigris will become desert. This oracle parallels and reinforces the book of Nahum's extended treatment of Nineveh's fall.
14. The desolation of Nineveh is described through animal habitation: where humans once lived, wild animals now rest. Qa'at ('desert owl' or 'pelican') and qippod ('hedgehog' or 'bittern') are creatures of ruins and wasteland. They nest in the kaphtorim ('capitals, column-tops') of Nineveh's grand buildings — the ornamental architecture now serves as bird perches. The singing/hooting (yeshorer) in the window and the exposed cedar work (arzah erah) depict a once-magnificent palace reduced to a haunted ruin.
15. Nineveh's boast — ani ve'aphsi od ('I am, and there is no one else') — is a blasphemous echo of God's own self-declaration in Isaiah 45:5-6 ('I am the LORD, and there is no other'). The city claimed divine uniqueness for itself. The punishment is proportional: the city that boasted of absolute supremacy becomes an absolute ruin. Yishroq ('hisses, whistles') and yania yado ('shakes his hand/fist') are gestures of contempt and horror — passersby cannot believe what they see.

3

Summary: *Zephaniah 3 moves from condemnation to restoration in one of the most dramatic tonal shifts in the prophets. The chapter opens with a woe oracle against Jerusalem — the oppressive, rebellious, polluted city whose officials are roaring lions, whose judges are evening wolves, whose prophets are treacherous, whose priests profane what is holy. God has destroyed nations as a warning, but Jerusalem refused to learn. Then the pivot: God announces he will purify the nations, remove the proud from Jerusalem, and leave a humble remnant. The chapter climaxes with one of the most beautiful passages in Scripture: 'The LORD your God is in your midst, a mighty one who saves; he will rejoice over you with gladness, he will quiet you with his love, he will exult over you with singing.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 17 is one of the most stunning theological reversals in the Hebrew Bible. Throughout the prophets, the people sing to God. Here, God sings over his people. The verb yagil ('he will exult') and the phrase yarim alayikh berinah ('he will cry out/sing over you with a ringing shout') depict a God overcome with joy — not stoic approval but exuberant, vocal, demonstrative delight. The image of God 'quieting' his people with his love (yacharish be'ahavato) suggests a parent holding a frightened child in silence, letting the embrace itself communicate safety. This is the emotional and theological climax of the entire Book of the Twelve (Minor Prophets).*

Translation Friction: *The woe oracle in verses 1-7 requires maintaining the harsh tone while the restoration oracle in verses 8-20 requires a complete shift to tenderness — the transition at verse 8 ('Therefore wait for me') is abrupt and powerful. Verse 17's yacharish be'ahavato is debated: does it mean 'he will be silent in his love' (i.e., so overwhelmed he cannot speak), 'he will quiet you with his love,' or 'he will renew you in his love' (reading yechadesh for yacharish)? We follow 'he will quiet you with his love' as the most natural rendering of the MT. The final promises of restoration (vv. 18-20) shift between first person (God speaking) and third person, requiring careful attribution.*

Connections: *The woe against Jerusalem's leaders (vv. 1-4) parallels Ezekiel 22:23-31 and Micah 3:1-12. The purification of speech (v. 9, 'pure lips') reverses the confusion of Babel (Genesis 11:1-9). The singing God of verse 17 connects to Isaiah 62:5 ('as a bridegroom rejoices over the bride, so your God will rejoice over you'). The promise of gathering the scattered and restoring the remnant (vv. 19-20) parallels Micah 4:6-7, Isaiah 11:11-12, and Ezekiel 37:21-22. The book that began with cosmic de-creation (1:2-3) ends with cosmic restoration.*

¹Woe to the rebellious and defiled city, the oppressor! ²She does not listen to any voice; she accepts no correction. She does not trust in the LORD; she does not draw near to her God. ³Her officials within her are roaring lions; her judges are wolves of the evening — they leave nothing for the morning. ⁴Her prophets are reckless, treacherous men. Her priests profane what is holy; they do violence to the law. ⁵The LORD within her is righteous; he does no wrong. Every morning he brings his justice to light — he does not fail. But the unjust know no shame. ⁶I have cut off nations; their corner towers are desolate. I have laid waste their streets so that no one passes through. Their cities are destroyed — without a person, without an inhabitant. ⁷I said, 'Surely you will fear me; surely you will accept correction.' Then her dwelling would not be cut off — nothing I decreed against her would have happened. But they rose early to corrupt all their deeds. ⁸Therefore wait for me, declares the LORD, for the day when I rise as a witness. For my decision is to gather nations, to assemble kingdoms, to pour out upon them my indignation — all my burning anger. For in the fire of my jealousy all the earth will be consumed. ⁹For then I will change the speech of the peoples to a pure speech, so that all of them may call on the name of the LORD and serve him shoulder to shoulder. ¹⁰From beyond the rivers of Cush, my worshipers — the daughter of my scattered ones — will bring my offering. ¹¹On that day you will not be put to shame for all the deeds by which you have rebelled against me, for then I will remove from your midst those who exult in their pride, and you will never again be haughty on my holy mountain. ¹²I will leave in your midst a people humble and lowly, and they will take refuge in the name of the LORD. ¹³The remnant of Israel will do no wrong and speak no lies; no deceitful tongue will be found in their mouths. They will graze and lie down, and no one will make them afraid. ¹⁴Sing aloud, O daughter of Zion! Shout, O Israel! Rejoice and exult with all your heart, O daughter of Jerusalem! ¹⁵The LORD has removed the judgments against you; he has turned away your enemies. The King of

Israel, the LORD, is in your midst — you will never again fear disaster. ¹⁶On that day it will be said to Jerusalem: Do not fear, O Zion; do not let your hands grow weak. ¹⁷The LORD your God is in your midst, a mighty one who saves. He will rejoice over you with gladness; he will quiet you with his love; he will exult over you with singing. ¹⁸I will gather those among you who grieve over the appointed feasts — those for whom the reproach against her was a burden. ¹⁹At that time I will deal with all your oppressors. I will save the lame and gather the outcast, and I will turn their shame into praise and renown throughout all the earth. ²⁰At that time I will bring you home; at the time when I gather you together. For I will make you renowned and praised among all the peoples of the earth, when I restore your fortunes before your very eyes, says the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Three accusations in four words: mor'ah ('rebellious,' from the root m-r-h, 'to rebel'), nig'alah ('defiled, polluted'), and hayyonah ('the oppressor,' from the root y-n-h, 'to oppress'). The city is Jerusalem — after judging all the surrounding nations (chapter 2), God now turns to his own city. The woe cry (hoy) that was directed outward now strikes home.
2. Four refusals define Jerusalem: (1) lo shame'ah beqol ('does not listen to the voice' — i.e., to God or his prophets), (2) lo laqechah musar ('does not accept correction/discipline'), (3) ba-YHWH lo vatechah ('does not trust in the LORD'), (4) el eloheiha lo qarevah ('does not draw near to her God'). The fourfold negative creates a portrait of total spiritual shutdown — every channel of relationship is closed. The possessive 'her God' makes the estrangement more painful: he is still her God; she has simply stopped relating to him.
3. The city's leaders are described as predators. Sarim ('officials, princes') are arayot sho'agim ('roaring lions') — terrifying, aggressive, consuming. Shopthim ('judges') are ze'evei erev ('evening wolves') — wolves hunt most aggressively at dusk. Lo garemu labboqer ('they leave no bone for morning' or 'they do not gnaw until morning') means they consume everything immediately, leaving no scraps. The officials who should protect the people instead devour them.
4. The religious leaders are as corrupt as the civil ones. Nevieiha ('her prophets') are pochazim ('reckless, light, irresponsible') and anshei bogdot ('men of treachery'). Kohaneiha ('her priests') commit two cardinal offenses: (1) chilelu qodesh ('they profane what is holy') — the exact opposite of the priestly function, which is to guard holiness; and (2) chamesu torah ('they do violence to the law/instruction') — they twist, distort, and violate the very torah they are charged with teaching and preserving.
5. The contrast is devastating: in the midst of a city whose every institution is corrupt, the LORD remains tsaddiq ('righteous'). Every morning (baboqer baboqer — the repetition emphasizes daily faithfulness) he provides justice — but the unjust take no notice. Lo ne'dar ('he does not fail, he is not absent') — God's faithfulness is constant. Lo yode'a avval boshet ('the unjust knows no shame') — the wicked are incapable of embarrassment. This echoes 2:1's 'nation without shame.'
6. God points to the fate of other nations as an object lesson. The destruction of foreign nations (chapter 2's oracles) should have been a warning to Jerusalem. Pinnotam ('their corner towers') — the strongest points of their defenses — are desolate. The triple absence (mibli over, mibli ish, me'ein yoshev — 'no passerby, no person, no inhabitant') emphasizes total depopulation.
7. God's pathos is palpable: 'I said' (amarti) — God expected (hoped?) that Jerusalem would learn from the nations' destruction. The conditional is heartbreaking: if she had feared God and accepted correction, her dwelling would have been spared. Instead, hishkimu hishchitu ('they rose early to corrupt') — the same verb hashkem ('rising early') used of God's persistent warnings in Jeremiah (7:13, 25:3) is now applied to the people's eagerness to sin. God rises early to warn; they rise early to corrupt.
8. The pivotal verse. Chakku li ('wait for me') shifts from judgment to hope — the people are told to wait, implying there is something worth waiting for. Le'ad ('as a witness' or 'for prey' — the consonants allow both) could mean God rises to testify or to seize prey. The gathering of nations could refer to judgment or to the universal worship of verse 9. Qin'ati ('my jealousy') is the same covenantal jealousy from 1:18 — the fire that judges also purifies, as the following verses will reveal.
9. This verse reverses the curse of Babel (Genesis 11:1-9). At Babel, God confused human speech to scatter the nations; here, God purifies speech to unite them in worship. Saphah berurah ('pure speech/lip') means a language cleansed of idolatrous invocations — speech consecrated to calling on the LORD's name. Shekhem echad ('one shoulder' — rendered 'shoulder to shoulder') is an idiom meaning united, working together, pulling in the same direction like oxen yoked side by side.
10. 'Beyond the rivers of Cush' represents the most remote imaginable location — the ends of the earth. Ataray ('my worshipers, my suppliants') and bat-putsay ('the daughter of my scattered ones') likely refer to dispersed Israelites or to new worshipers from among the nations. The minchah ('offering, tribute') being brought from the farthest reaches fulfills the vision of universal worship.
11. The shame that was Jerusalem's defining feature (2:1, 3:5) will be removed — not by ignoring the sin but by removing the sinners. Alizei ga'avatekh ('those who exult in pride') — the arrogant revelers who turned religion into self-congratulation — will be purged. What remains after the purging is described in verse 12. The holy mountain (har qodshi) is Zion, which will be purified of the pride that desecrated it.
12. The remnant that survives the purging is characterized not by wealth, power, or status but by humility. Am ani vadal ('a humble and lowly people') — the same anav ('humble') that was commanded in 2:3. The proud are removed (v. 11); the humble remain. Chasu beshem YHWH ('they take refuge in the name of the LORD') — their security is not in walls, armies, or treasuries but in God's name (character, reputation, covenant identity).

13. The purified remnant is described in three negatives (no wrong, no lies, no deceit) and two positives (grazing, lying down in safety). The pastoral imagery (yir'u veravtsu, 'they will graze and lie down') echoes Micah 4:4 and the shepherd imagery of Psalm 23. 'No one will make them afraid' (ein macharid) is the covenantal peace promise from Leviticus 26:6 — the ultimate state of shalom where threats have been eliminated.
14. The tone shifts dramatically to pure joy. Four imperatives of celebration: ronni ('sing aloud!'), hari'u ('shout!'), simchi ('rejoice!'), ve'olzi ('exult!'). 'Daughter of Zion' (bat-Tsiyon) and 'daughter of Jerusalem' (bat Yerushalaim) are poetic personifications of the city and its people. Bekhol lev ('with all the heart') — the full heart, not the divided heart of the syncretists condemned in chapter 1. The reasons for this joy are given in the following verses.
15. Three reasons to rejoice: (1) God has removed the judgments (hessir mishpatayikh — the covenant curses are lifted); (2) he has turned away the enemies (pinnah oyevekh — the hostile nations are dealt with); and (3) the LORD himself is present as King (melekh Yisra'el YHWH beqirbekh — 'the King of Israel, the LORD, is in your midst'). This last declaration prepares for the climax in verse 17. 'You will never again fear disaster' (lo tir'i ra'od) is the ultimate reversal of chapter 1's terrors.
16. The fear that dominated chapter 1 is now directly addressed: al tira'i ('do not fear'). Al yirpu yadayikh ('do not let your hands grow weak/slack') — hands that drop in despair or exhaustion are to be raised again in strength and worship. The passive 'it will be said' (ye'amer) suggests this message will be delivered universally — everyone will tell Jerusalem not to fear.
17. Gibbor yoshia ('a mighty one who saves') echoes the gibbor ('warrior, mighty man') of 1:14 who cried bitterly on the Day of the LORD — the same God who devastates also saves. Yacharish be'ahavato is debated: (1) 'he will be silent in his love' — so overwhelmed with love he cannot speak; (2) 'he will quiet you with his love' — calming the people's fears; or (3) 'he will renew you in his love' (reading yechadesh, 'renew,' which differs by one letter). We follow option 2, which fits the parent-child imagery. Yagil berinah ('exult with ringing song') — yagil is the most intense word for joy in Hebrew, and rinah is a piercing, triumphant shout or song.
18. This verse is textually difficult. Nugei mimo'ed ('those who grieve over the appointed festival/assembly') may refer to exiles who mourn because they can no longer attend the temple festivals, or to faithful worshipers grieved by the corruption of worship. Mas'et ('burden, lifting up') combined with cherpah ('reproach, disgrace') indicates people who bore the weight of Jerusalem's shame as their personal burden — they cared about the city's honor.
19. God promises to act against the me'annayikh ('your oppressors, those who afflict you'). The saved community is described in terms of vulnerability: hattsole'ah ('the lame, the limping') and hanniddachah ('the driven away, the outcast') — the weakest, most marginalized members. God specializes in rescuing those the world discards. The reversal is total: boshtem ('their shame') becomes tehillah uleshem ('praise and renown') — the very thing that caused humiliation becomes the basis for honor.
20. The book ends with a promise of homecoming: avi etkhem ('I will bring you') and qabbetsi etkhem ('I will gather you'). The dispersed will be reassembled. Leshem velithillah ('for a name and for praise') reverses the shame of exile — the scattered, humiliated people will become a source of wonder among the nations. Beshuvi et shevuteikhem le'eneikhem ('when I restore your fortunes before your very eyes') makes it personal and visible — not a distant, abstract promise but something they will see with their own eyes. The book that opened with cosmic destruction closes with intimate restoration. Amar YHWH ('says the LORD') — the final word is God's authority guaranteeing the promise.

Haggai

1

Summary: *Haggai 1 records the first prophetic oracle of the post-exilic period, dated precisely to the second year of Darius I of Persia (520 BCE). The returned exiles have rebuilt their own homes but left the LORD's temple in ruins. Through Haggai, God confronts this misplaced priority: they plant much but harvest little, earn wages that vanish like coins dropped into a bag full of holes. The people respond with rare obedience — Zerubbabel the governor and Joshua the high priest lead the community to resume building. God's brief assurance closes the chapter: 'I am with you.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Haggai is one of the most precisely dated books in the Hebrew Bible, with four oracles anchored to specific days. The rhetorical question in verse 4 — 'Is it time for you to live in your paneled houses while this house lies in ruins?' — uses the Hebrew saphan ('paneled'), the same word describing Solomon's original temple paneling in 1 Kings 6:9. The implication is devastating: the people have given their own homes the luxury that belongs to God's house. The economic futility described in verses 6 and 9-11 echoes the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:38-40 — they are experiencing the consequences of covenant neglect. Uniquely among the prophets, the people actually obey immediately (v. 12), making Haggai one of the few prophetic success stories.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase tseror naquv ('a bag with holes,' v. 6) is vivid Hebrew idiom — we preserved it as 'a bag full of holes' rather than abstracting it to 'wasted effort.' The verb charvah ('to be dry/desolate') in verse 11 creates a wordplay with chorev ('ruins/desolation') in verse 4 — both describing dryness, one of the temple and one of the land, linking the temple's condition to the agricultural crisis. We rendered ne'um YHWH consistently as 'declares the LORD' throughout the post-exilic prophets.*

Connections: *The call to 'go up to the hills and bring wood and build the house' (v. 8) echoes the original tabernacle construction in Exodus 25-31 where God commands the gathering of materials. The promise 'I am with you' (v. 13) reprises the fundamental covenant assurance found in Genesis 26:3, Exodus 3:12, Joshua 1:5, and Isaiah 41:10. The dating formula 'in the second year of Darius the king' connects to the narrative framework of Ezra 4-6, which records the political circumstances surrounding the temple rebuilding.*

¹In the second year of King Darius, in the sixth month, on the first day of the month, the word of the LORD came through Haggai the prophet to Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest: ²This is what the LORD of Armies says: This people says, 'The time has not come — the time for the house of the LORD to be

rebuilt.' ³Then the word of the LORD came through Haggai the prophet: ⁴Is it time for you — you yourselves — to live in your paneled houses while this house lies in ruins? ⁵So now, this is what the LORD of Armies says: Set your hearts on your ways. ⁶You have planted much but harvested little. You eat but never have enough. You drink but are never satisfied. You put on clothes but no one is warm. And whoever earns wages earns them only to put them in a bag full of holes. ⁷This is what the LORD of Armies says: Set your hearts on your ways. ⁸Go up into the hills and bring back timber and build the house, so that I may take pleasure in it and be glorified, says the LORD. ⁹You expected much, but look — it came to little. And when you brought it home, I blew it away. Why? declares the LORD of Armies. Because my house lies in ruins while each of you runs to his own house. ¹⁰Therefore, because of you, the heavens have withheld their dew, and the earth has withheld its produce. ¹¹I summoned a drought on the land and on the hills, on the grain and the new wine and the olive oil, on everything the ground produces, on people and livestock, and on all the labor of your hands. ¹²Then Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel and Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, along with the entire remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of the LORD their God and the words of Haggai the prophet, as the LORD their God had sent him. And the people feared the LORD. ¹³Then Haggai, the messenger of the LORD, spoke the LORD's message to the people: "I am with you," declares the LORD. ¹⁴And the LORD stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and the spirit of the entire remnant of the people. They came and began work on the house of the LORD of Armies, their God, ¹⁵on the twenty-fourth day of the sixth month, in the second year of King Darius.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date corresponds to August 29, 520 BCE. The Hebrew beyad ('by the hand of') indicates Haggai as the instrument through whom God's word was delivered — rendered as 'through' for natural English. The dual address to both the civil governor (Zerubbabel) and the religious leader (Joshua) establishes the post-exilic leadership structure where political and priestly authority are shared rather than united in a king.
2. Zerubbabel's name means 'seed of Babylon' — he was born in exile. His grandfather was King Jehoiachin (1 Chronicles 3:17-19), making him a Davidic heir. The title pechat ('governor') is a Persian administrative term, not a royal title — the monarchy is over.
3. YHWH Tsevaot ('LORD of Armies') is the dominant divine title in the post-exilic prophets, appearing 14 times in Haggai's 38 verses alone. The title emphasizes God's sovereign command over heavenly and earthly forces — critical when Israel has no army of its own. The phrase ha'am hazzeh ('this people') rather than 'my people' creates deliberate distance — God does not claim them with the covenant possessive while they neglect his house.
4. The repeated prophetic reception formula (cf. v. 1) signals a new unit of divine speech. The Hebrew beyad ('by the hand of') is again rendered 'through' for consistency.
5. The emphatic pronoun attem ('you yourselves') is forceful — God is singling out their self-interest. The word sephunim ('paneled') is the same term used for the cedar paneling of Solomon's temple in 1 Kings 6:9 — the people have appropriated temple-grade luxury for their own homes. The word charev ('in ruins') will create a wordplay with the drought (chorev) in verse 11. The rhetorical question is devastating: they claim it is not time to build God's house (v. 2) while making time to furnish their own.
6. The phrase simu levavkhem al-darkheikhem (literally 'set your hearts upon your ways') is more forceful than 'consider your ways.' The Hebrew levav ('heart') is the seat of will and decision, not emotion — this is a command to examine their priorities and choices with deliberate attention. This phrase is repeated in verse 7 as a literary bracket around the economic catalog of verses 6.
7. This verse is structured as a devastating five-part catalog of futility, each clause following the same pattern: effort followed by lack. The structure mirrors the covenant-curse pattern of Deuteronomy 28:38-40 — the people are experiencing the consequences of covenant neglect without recognizing the cause. The final image — tseror naquv ('a pierced bag') — is vivid Hebrew idiom for economic loss that defies explanation. We preserved the concrete image rather than abstracting it.
8. Identical to verse 5. The repetition creates a literary frame around the futility catalog of verse 6, functioning as an inclusio — the command to reflect brackets the evidence that should prompt reflection.
9. The three imperatives — go up, bring, build — are direct and urgent. The verb 'ekkavedah ('I will be glorified') is from the root k-v-d, the same root as kavod ('glory'). God's glory is tied to the physical presence of his house — not because he needs a building, but because the temple represents his willingness to dwell among his people. The cohortative form 'ertseh-vo ('that I may take pleasure in it') expresses God's desire, not mere tolerance.
10. The verb naphachti ('I blew upon it') is startling — God himself is the cause of their economic loss. The wordplay between beiti ('my house') and leveto ('his house') at the end of the verse is the theological key to the entire chapter: the contrast between God's house (neglected) and their houses (prioritized). The verb ratsim ('running') implies eager, hurried attention — they rush to care for their own homes while God's house sits desolate.
11. The verb kala' ('to withhold, restrain') personifies both the heavens and the earth as agents who refuse to give — as if creation itself participates in the covenant lawsuit against the people. The language echoes Deuteronomy 28:23-24, where disobedience results in bronze skies and iron ground.

11. The Hebrew chorev ('drought') creates a deliberate wordplay with charev ('ruins') from verse 4 — the same consonants ch-r-v link the desolation of the temple to the desolation of the land. God's summoning of drought (va'eqra chorev) uses the same verb for 'calling' that one would use to summon a person — drought comes as an obedient servant of God's judgment. The comprehensive list (land, hills, grain, wine, oil, ground, people, cattle, labor) emphasizes that nothing escapes the covenant consequences.
12. This is a remarkable moment in prophetic literature — the people actually obey. The word she'erit ('remnant') is theologically loaded: these are not the whole nation but the surviving fragment that returned from Babylon. The verb shama' here means 'obeyed' rather than merely 'heard' — the covenantal sense. The phrase vayyir'u ha'am ('the people feared') uses yir'ah in its reverent sense — not terror but awe-filled respect that produces obedience.
13. Haggai is called mal'akh YHWH ('messenger of the LORD') — the same term used for angels. This is the only place in the prophetic books where a prophet receives this exact title, emphasizing that Haggai functions as God's authorized envoy. The divine assurance 'ani ittekhem ('I am with you') is the covenant presence formula — the most compact expression of the covenant relationship. It echoes the promise to Jacob (Genesis 28:15), to Moses (Exodus 3:12), and to Joshua (Joshua 1:5).
14. The verb ya'ar ('stirred up') describes divine activation of human motivation — the same verb used for God stirring up Cyrus's spirit to issue the decree permitting the return (Ezra 1:1). God's response to their obedience (v. 12) is to energize their will. The threefold 'spirit of' (ruach) — Zerubbabel, Joshua, all the remnant — shows the divine stirring touches every level of the community. The word melakhah ('work') is the same term used for the tabernacle construction work in Exodus 36:1-7.
15. This date — September 21, 520 BCE — falls twenty-three days after the oracle in verse 1. The precision documents the speed of the response: within three and a half weeks, the community has mobilized and begun construction. Some scholars attach this date to the beginning of chapter 2; in the Masoretic text it closes chapter 1, marking the date work actually commenced.

2

Summary: *Haggai 2 contains three distinct oracles delivered on two dates. The first (vv. 1-9) encourages the builders who remember Solomon's glorious temple and find the new construction pitiful by comparison — God promises that the glory of this latter house will surpass the former. The second (vv. 10-19) uses a priestly ruling about ritual purity to illustrate how the people's neglect has contaminated everything they touch, then promises blessing 'from this day forward.' The third (vv. 20-23) addresses Zerubbabel personally as God's chosen signet ring — a reversal of the curse on his grandfather Jehoiachin (Jeremiah 22:24) and a reassertion of the Davidic promise.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The promise that the glory of 'this latter house will be greater than the former' (v. 9) is one of the most audacious declarations in prophetic literature — the second temple was architecturally inferior to Solomon's, yet the prophet insists its kavod will surpass it. Jewish and Christian traditions have interpreted this in radically different ways. The signet ring oracle (v. 23) directly reverses Jeremiah 22:24, where God declared he would tear Jehoiachin (Zerubbabel's grandfather) off like a signet ring from his hand. What was removed is now restored. The phrase 'the desire of all nations will come' (v. 7) is one of the most debated translation questions in the Hebrew prophets — chemdah kol-haggoyim may mean 'desired things' (treasures) or 'the desired one' (a messianic figure).*

Translation Friction: *The word chemdah in verse 7 is the most significant translation challenge. The Hebrew noun is singular but the verb uva'u ('they will come') is plural, creating a grammatical tension. If chemdah is singular ('the desired one'), the plural verb is anomalous. If it means 'desired things' (treasures), the plural verb agrees. We rendered it as 'the treasures desired by all nations' following the grammatical evidence, while noting the messianic reading in the translator notes. The priestly torah ruling in verses 11-13 requires understanding Levitical purity law — holiness does not transfer by secondary contact, but uncleanness does. We preserved the catechetical question-and-answer format of the Hebrew.*

Connections: *The 'shaking of heavens and earth' (v. 6) is cited in Hebrews 12:26-27 as referring to a final cosmic transformation. The signet ring image (v. 23) reverses Jeremiah 22:24 and connects forward to the messianic genealogies in Matthew 1 and Luke 3. The priestly ruling on clean and unclean (vv. 11-13) applies the Levitical principles of Numbers 19:11-22 and Leviticus 6:27. The promise of peace (shalom) in verse 9 connects to the messianic peace prophecies of Isaiah 9:6-7 and Micah 5:5.*

¹In the seventh month, on the twenty-first day of the month, the word of the LORD came through Haggai the prophet: ²Speak now to Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and to the remnant of the people, saying: ³Who among you is left who saw this house in its former glory? And how does it look to you now? Does it not seem like nothing in your eyes? ⁴But now, be strong, Zerubbabel — declares the LORD — and be strong, Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and be strong, all you people of the land, declares the LORD. Work! For I am with you, declares the LORD of Armies. ⁵The promise that I made with you when you came out of Egypt stands, and my Spirit remains among you. Do not fear. ⁶For this is what the LORD of Armies says: In just a little while, I will shake the heavens and the earth, the sea and the dry land. ⁷I will shake all the nations, and the treasures desired by all nations will come in, and I will fill this house with glory, says the LORD of Armies. ⁸The silver is mine, and the gold is mine, declares the LORD of Armies. ⁹The glory of this latter house will be greater than the former, says the LORD of Armies. And in this place I will give peace, declares the LORD of Armies. ¹⁰On the twenty-fourth day of the ninth month, in the second year of Darius, the word of the LORD came to Haggai the prophet: ¹¹This is what the LORD of Armies says: Ask the priests for a ruling on the law: ¹²If someone carries consecrated meat in the fold of his garment, and the fold touches bread or stew or wine or oil or any food, does that food become holy? The priests answered, "No." ¹³Then Haggai asked, "If someone who is defiled by contact with a corpse touches any of these, does it become unclean?" The priests answered, "It becomes unclean." ¹⁴Then Haggai answered and said, "So it is with this people, and so it is with this nation before me, declares the LORD. And so it is with every work of their hands — what they offer there is unclean." ¹⁵Now then, set your hearts to consider — from this day and back, before stone was placed upon stone in the temple of the LORD: ¹⁶In those days, when someone came to a grain heap expecting twenty measures, there were only ten. When someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures, there were only twenty. ¹⁷I struck you with blight and mildew and hail — everything your hands produced. Yet you did not turn to me, declares the LORD. ¹⁸Set your hearts to consider — from this day forward, from the twenty-fourth day of the ninth month, from the day the foundation of the LORD's temple was laid, set your hearts on it: ¹⁹Is the seed still in the storehouse? Have the vine, the fig tree, the pomegranate, and the olive tree not yet produced? From this day on, I will bless you. ²⁰The word of the LORD came a second time to Haggai on the twenty-fourth day of the month: ²¹Speak to Zerubbabel, governor of Judah: I am about to shake the heavens and the earth. ²²I will overturn the thrones of kingdoms and destroy the strength of the nations' kingdoms. I will overturn chariots and their riders, and horses and their riders will fall, each by the sword of his brother. ²³On that day — declares the LORD of Armies — I will take you, Zerubbabel son of Shealtiel, my servant — declares the LORD — and I will make you like a signet ring, for I have chosen you, declares the LORD of Armies.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date is October 17, 520 BCE — less than a month after construction began (1:15). The twenty-first of the seventh month would be the last day of the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot), when Israel celebrated the autumn harvest and remembered God's provision in the wilderness. This timing is deliberate — the festival celebrated God's dwelling presence in the tabernacle.
2. The particle *na'* ('now, please') adds urgency to the command. The same three audiences are addressed — governor, priest, remnant — establishing the consistent leadership structure of post-exilic Judah.
3. The question assumes that some elderly returnees remembered Solomon's temple before its destruction in 586 BCE — sixty-six years earlier. The comparison is crushing: the former *kavod* ('glory') against what now appears *ke'ayin* ('like nothing'). This demoralization threatened to halt the rebuilding project entirely. Ezra 3:12 records that the old men wept when they saw the new foundation.
4. The threefold *chazaq* ('be strong') addressed to each leadership tier echoes Joshua 1:6-9, where God commanded Joshua to 'be strong and courageous' for the original conquest. The builders are cast as a new generation of conquest — not of land, but of rebuilding. The phrase *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') appears three times in a single verse, an unusual concentration that emphasizes divine authority behind every exhortation. The imperative *wa'asu* ('and work!') is terse and direct.
5. The Hebrew *karati* ('I cut') is covenant-making language — literally 'cut' a covenant, referring to the ancient practice of cutting sacrificial animals (Genesis 15:10, 17-18). The word 'promise' represents *davar* ('word, matter, thing') in context of the covenant commitment. The assurance that God's *ruach* ('Spirit') 'stands' (*omedet*) among them connects the post-exilic community to the Exodus generation — the same Spirit that led Israel through the wilderness is present now.

6. The phrase *od achat me'at* ('yet once, a little') indicates a singular, decisive divine intervention. The fourfold shaking — heavens, earth, sea, dry land — encompasses the entire created order. The author of Hebrews (12:26-27) interprets this as eschatological: the shaking removes what is temporary so that what cannot be shaken remains. The verb *mar'ish* ('shaking') suggests seismic upheaval — cosmic restructuring, not gentle correction.
7. The key translation decision: *chemdat kol-haggoyim*. The noun *chemdah* is singular ('desire, precious thing') but the verb *uva'u* is third-person masculine plural ('they will come'). This grammatical mismatch strongly favors reading *chemdah* as a collective noun — 'the desirable things of all nations,' meaning their wealth and treasures. The alternative messianic reading ('the Desired One of all nations') requires treating the plural verb as anomalous. We follow the grammar while noting both readings. The promise that *kavod* will fill the house connects to the *Shekinah* glory that filled Solomon's temple (1 Kings 8:10-11) and the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34-35).
8. This brief, emphatic declaration answers the implicit objection that the second temple cannot match Solomon's because the returnees lack resources. God owns all silver and gold — the lack of human wealth is irrelevant to divine purpose. The fronted possessive *li* ('mine') is emphatic in Hebrew, and the parallelism (silver/gold) is preserved.
9. This is the theological climax of Haggai's message. The comparative *gadol... min* ('greater than') is unambiguous — the latter house's *kavod* will surpass the former's. How this is fulfilled has been debated: Herod's later expansion of the second temple gave it architectural grandeur, the Christian tradition sees the incarnation of Christ (who taught in this temple) as the ultimate fulfillment of *kavod*, and Jewish tradition connects it to the messianic age. The promise of *shalom* 'in this place' (*bammaqom hazzeh*) echoes Jeremiah 7:7 and the Deuteronomic theology of the chosen place.
10. The date is December 18, 520 BCE — exactly two months after the previous oracle (2:1). This third oracle introduces a new theme: ritual purity as a metaphor for the people's spiritual condition. The shift from 'through' (*beyad*, 1:1, 3; 2:1) to 'to' (*el*) may indicate this oracle came directly to Haggai rather than through him to others, though the distinction is subtle.
11. The word *torah* here means 'instruction, ruling, directive' in its original priestly sense — not the Torah as a written document but a specific priestly ruling on a point of ritual law. This is one of the few places in the prophets where the priests' teaching function is affirmed rather than criticized. The imperative *she'al-na* ('ask, please') is courteous but carries divine authority.
12. The question tests the principle of secondary holiness transfer. According to Leviticus 6:27, whatever touches consecrated flesh becomes holy — but the question here is about secondary contact: the garment touches the holy meat, then the garment touches other food. The priests correctly rule that holiness does not transfer through an intermediary. The five foods listed (bread, stew, wine, oil, any food) represent the full range of daily sustenance.
13. The second question reverses the principle: uncleanness, unlike holiness, does transfer by contact. A person defiled by a corpse (*teme-nephesh*, literally 'unclean of soul/life') contaminates everything they touch (Numbers 19:11-22). The asymmetry is the point Haggai will exploit: contamination spreads more easily than sanctification. This is a profound observation about the nature of sin and purity — defilement is contagious, but holiness requires deliberate consecration.
14. Haggai applies the priestly ruling: the people are like the corpse-defiled person, not the holy meat. Their spiritual condition contaminates everything they produce and offer. The double designation 'this people... this nation' (*ha'am hazzeh... haggoy hazzeh*) is unusually harsh — *goy* ('nation') is typically used for foreign peoples, not Israel. The word *sham* ('there') likely refers to the altar where they have been offering sacrifices even without a completed temple — their offerings are rendered unclean by their misplaced priorities.
15. The phrase *min-hayyom hazzeh vama'lah* can mean either 'from this day forward' or 'from this day and back' (looking backward). Context here favors the retrospective sense — God is asking them to recall the period before construction began. The term *hekhal* ('temple, palace') is used rather than *bayit* ('house'), elevating the language. The phrase 'stone upon stone' evokes the physical reality of construction — each stone laid is an act of covenant renewal.
16. The specificity of the numbers — twenty becomes ten, fifty becomes twenty — documents a consistent pattern of receiving roughly half of what was expected. This is not natural agricultural fluctuation but systematic divine diminishment. The word *purah* ('wine vat measure') refers to the amount expected from a single pressing. The economic shortfall exactly mirrors the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:38-40.
17. The three agricultural disasters — *shiddaphon* ('blight,' scorching east wind), *yerakon* ('mildew,' fungal crop disease), and *barad* ('hail') — are drawn directly from the covenant curse list of Deuteronomy 28:22. God is explicit: these were not natural misfortunes but targeted covenant discipline. The final clause *ve'ein etkhem elai* ('yet not you to me') is terse and pained — despite repeated warnings through economic suffering, the people did not return. This echoes the refrain of Amos 4:6-11: 'yet you did not return to me.'
18. Now the direction shifts from retrospective (v. 15) to prospective — 'from this day forward.' The repetition of *simu levavkhem* ('set your hearts') at beginning and end creates an *inclusio* framing the pivotal moment. The laying of the temple foundation marks the turning point between the era of covenant curse and the era of covenant blessing.
19. The rhetorical question acknowledges present reality: it is December, seed is still stored, the trees have not yet fruited. God's promise of blessing comes before any visible evidence of change — it is a pure act of faith. The four trees named — vine, fig, pomegranate, olive — represent the full agricultural wealth of the land of Israel. The declaration *avarekh* ('I will bless') is the covenant turning point of the entire book: from this moment, the curse is replaced by blessing.
20. Same date as verse 10 — December 18, 520 BCE. The word *shenit* ('a second time') marks this as a separate oracle delivered on the same day. This final oracle shifts focus from the community to Zerubbabel personally.

- 21.** The cosmic shaking language reprises verse 6 but now is directed specifically toward Zerubbabel. The participial form *mar'ish* ('shaking, about to shake') expresses imminent action — God is on the verge of cosmic intervention, and Zerubbabel stands at the center of it.
- 22.** The repeated verb *haphakhti* ('I will overturn') echoes the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:25), where the same verb is used. The image of enemies destroying each other — 'each by the sword of his brother' — recalls Judges 7:22 (the Midianite rout) and anticipates Ezekiel 38:21 (the Gog oracle). God's method of toppling empires is often to turn them against themselves. The language envisions the collapse of Persian imperial power, though the fulfillment extends beyond any single historical event.
- 23.** This is one of the most theologically charged verses in the post-exilic prophets. The title 'my servant' (*avdi*) echoes the Davidic promise in 2 Samuel 7:5, where David is called 'my servant.' The term *chotam* ('signet ring') directly reverses Jeremiah 22:24, where God stripped the signet from Jehoiachin — Zerubbabel's own grandfather. The threefold *ne'um YHWH* ('declares the LORD') in a single verse gives it extraordinary weight. The verb *bacharti* ('I have chosen') is the election verb used for Israel (Deuteronomy 7:6), David (1 Samuel 16:8-12), and Jerusalem (1 Kings 11:13). Zerubbabel stands as the living proof that the Davidic promise survives exile.

Zechariah

Summary: *Zechariah 1 opens with a call to repentance dated to the eighth month of Darius's second year (October/November 520 BCE), then moves to the first of Zechariah's eight night visions — the horsemen among the myrtle trees. A rider on a red horse stands among myrtle trees in a ravine, accompanied by red, sorrel, and white horses. These are divine patrols who have surveyed the earth and found it at rest — but Israel remains in distress. The angel of the LORD intercedes, and God responds with jealous love for Jerusalem, anger at the complacent nations, and a promise to return to Jerusalem with compassion. The temple will be rebuilt and prosperity will overflow.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Zechariah's eight night visions (chapters 1-6) form one of the most elaborate visionary sequences in the Hebrew Bible, anticipating the apocalyptic visions of Daniel and Revelation. The myrtle tree vision introduces the pattern: Zechariah sees, asks an interpreting angel what it means, and receives an explanation. This angelus interpretes ('interpreting angel') model becomes standard in later apocalyptic literature. The divine patrollers who find the earth 'at rest' (shaqetah) create a bitter irony — the nations enjoy peace while Jerusalem suffers, and God's anger burns because they have been too comfortable while his people endure the consequences of exile.*

Translation Friction: *The Hebrew of verse 8 is notoriously difficult. The colors of the horses — adom ('red'), soruq ('sorrel/reddish-brown'), and lavan ('white') — may carry symbolic meaning, but the text does not explain them. We rendered soruq as 'sorrel' rather than the KJV's 'speckled' because the word refers to a reddish-brown color (cf. the vine description in Genesis 49:11). The relationship between 'the man riding on a red horse' (v. 8), 'the angel of the LORD' (v. 11-12), and 'the angel who was speaking with me' (v. 9) involves three potentially distinct figures, and we preserved the ambiguity rather than collapsing them into one. Note: The Hebrew versification differs from English. Hebrew 2:1-4 corresponds to English 1:18-21. We follow the English (KJV) chapter/verse numbering.*

Connections: *The call to repentance (vv. 2-6) echoes Jeremiah's warnings and establishes Zechariah in the prophetic succession. The divine patrol echoes the Satan figure who roams the earth in Job 1:7 and 2:2. The promise that the LORD will return to Jerusalem 'with compassion' (v. 16) connects to the Deutero-Isaianic promises (Isaiah 54:7-8). The measuring line for the temple (v. 16) anticipates the third vision (2:1-5). Revelation 6:1-8 transforms Zechariah's colored horses into the four horsemen of the apocalypse.*

¹In the eighth month, in the second year of Darius, the word of the LORD came to Zechariah son of Berechiah, son of Iddo, the prophet: ²The LORD was deeply angry with your ancestors. ³Say to them: This is what the LORD of Armies says — Return to me, declares the LORD of Armies, and I will return to you, says the LORD of Armies. ⁴Do not be like your ancestors, to whom the earlier prophets called out, saying: This is what the LORD of Armies says — Turn now from your evil ways and your evil deeds. But they did not listen or pay attention to me, declares the LORD. ⁵Your ancestors — where are they? And the prophets — do they live forever? ⁶But my words and my decrees, which I commanded my servants the prophets — did they not overtake your ancestors? They turned back and said, 'Just as the LORD of Armies planned to do to us according to our ways and deeds, so he has done to us.' ⁷On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month — that is, the month of Shevat — in the second year of Darius, the word of the LORD came to Zechariah son of Berechiah, son of Iddo, the prophet: ⁸I saw in the night — there was a man riding on a red horse, and he was standing among the myrtle trees in the ravine, and behind him were red, sorrel, and white horses. ⁹I asked, "What are these, my lord?" The angel who was speaking with me said, "I will show you what these are." ¹⁰The man standing among the myrtle trees answered and said, "These are the ones the LORD has sent to patrol the earth." ¹¹They reported to the angel of the LORD standing among the myrtle trees, "We have patrolled the earth, and the whole earth is at rest and at peace." ¹²Then the angel of the LORD responded: "O LORD of Armies, how long will you withhold compassion from Jerusalem and the cities of Judah, against which you have been angry these seventy years?" ¹³The LORD answered the angel who was speaking with me — gracious words, comforting words. ¹⁴Then the angel who was speaking with me said, "Proclaim this: This is what the LORD of Armies says — I am deeply jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion. ¹⁵And I am extremely angry with the nations that are at ease, for I was only a little angry, but they made the disaster worse. ¹⁶Therefore, this is what the LORD says: I have returned to Jerusalem with compassion. My house will be built in it — declares the LORD of Armies — and a measuring line will be stretched over Jerusalem. ¹⁷Proclaim further: This is what the LORD of Armies says — My cities will again overflow with prosperity, and the LORD will again comfort Zion and will again choose Jerusalem. ¹⁸Then I raised my eyes and looked — there were four horns. ¹⁹I asked the angel who was speaking with me, "What are these?" He answered me, "These are the horns that scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem." ²⁰Then the LORD showed me four craftsmen. ²¹I asked, "What are these coming to do?" He said, "These are the horns that scattered Judah so that no one could raise his head. But these craftsmen have come to terrify them — to throw down the horns of the nations that raised their horn against the land of Judah to scatter it."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date falls between Haggai's second and third oracles (Haggai 2:1 and 2:10), placing Zechariah's ministry as overlapping with and supplementing Haggai's. Zechariah's genealogy through Berechiah to Iddo connects him to the priestly families who returned from exile (Nehemiah 12:4, 16). The title *hannavi* ('the prophet') may modify Zechariah or Iddo — grammatically ambiguous, though tradition applies it to Zechariah.
2. The cognate accusative construction *qatsaph YHWH... qatseph* intensifies the verb — literally 'the LORD angered an anger.' This is emphatic: not mild displeasure but deep, covenantal fury at the pre-exilic generation's rebellion. The word *avoteikhem* ('your ancestors') refers to the generation that provoked the exile through idolatry and covenant violation.
3. The threefold repetition of YHWH *Tsevaot* in a single verse is extraordinary emphasis. The reciprocal promise — 'return to me... I will return to you' — establishes repentance as a two-way movement. The verb *shuv* is the same root as *teshuvah* ('repentance/return'), emphasizing that biblical repentance is spatial and relational, not merely emotional.
4. The phrase *hanneviim harishonim* ('the earlier prophets') refers to the pre-exilic prophetic tradition — Isaiah, Jeremiah, Hosea, Amos, and others. Zechariah positions himself in their succession while warning the current generation not to repeat their ancestors' failure. The paired verbs *lo shame'u velo hiqshivu* ('did not listen and did not pay attention') express total unresponsiveness — neither hearing nor heeding.
5. Two devastating rhetorical questions. The ancestors who refused to listen are dead. The prophets who warned them are also dead. But God's word endures beyond both (as verse 6 will make explicit). The brevity of these questions gives them enormous force — human life is transient, whether disobedient or faithful.
6. The verb *hissigu* ('overtook, caught up with') is a pursuit metaphor — God's words are not passive predictions but active agents that chase down and catch their targets. The ancestors eventually acknowledged that God's judgment matched his warning — the punishment fit the crime. Their belated confession validates the prophetic message: the exile was not arbitrary but precisely calibrated to their covenant violations.

7. The date is February 15, 519 BCE — three months after the opening oracle (v. 1). The month name Shevat is the Babylonian calendar name adopted during the exile, reflecting the cultural reality of the returnees. This date introduces all eight night visions, which appear to have been received in a single night.
8. The first night vision opens with *ra'iti hallaylah* ('I saw in the night'), establishing the visionary context. The myrtle trees (*hadassim*) are an evergreen shrub native to Israel, symbolically associated with restoration and beauty (cf. Isaiah 41:19; 55:13). The *metsulah* ('deep place, ravine') may symbolize Israel's lowly condition. The horse colors — *adom* ('red'), *seruqim* ('sorrel/reddish-brown'), and *levanim* ('white') — likely carry symbolic meaning (blood/war, mixed, victory/peace), though the text does not explain them. The KJV's 'speckled' for *seruqim* is imprecise; the word refers to a reddish-brown color.
9. This introduces the angelus interpretes ('interpreting angel') — the angel who explains the visions to Zechariah. The title *adoni* ('my lord') is a respectful address to the angel, not the divine name. The phrase *hammal'akh haddover bi* ('the angel who speaks with/in me') is unusual — the preposition *bi* can mean 'with me' or 'in me,' suggesting either conversation or internal revelation. We rendered 'with me' as the more natural reading.
10. The verb *lehithallekh* ('to walk about, to patrol') is the same verb used for God walking in the garden (Genesis 3:8) and for the Satan roaming the earth (Job 1:7; 2:2). The divine patrols function as God's surveillance network — they report back on the state of the world. The man among the myrtles appears to be the rider on the red horse from verse 8, possibly identified with the angel of the LORD in verse 11.
11. The patrol report — 'the whole earth is at rest and at peace' (*yoshevet veshoqetet*) — sounds positive but is actually the problem. The nations enjoy tranquility while Jerusalem lies in ruins. The term *mal'akh YHWH* ('angel of the LORD') appears here for the first time in the vision — this figure may be identified with or distinct from the rider on the red horse (v. 8). In many OT passages, the angel of the LORD functions as God's direct representative, sometimes indistinguishable from God himself.
12. The angel of the LORD intercedes — an extraordinary scene where a divine being pleads with God on Israel's behalf. The 'seventy years' connects to Jeremiah's prophecy (Jeremiah 25:11-12; 29:10) predicting seventy years of Babylonian domination. From the temple's destruction in 586 BCE to 519 BCE is sixty-seven years — close enough to fulfill the round number of the prophecy. The verb *terachem* ('have compassion') is from the root *r-ch-m*, related to *rechem* ('womb') — maternal, visceral compassion.
13. God's response is characterized before it is quoted: *devarim tovim devarim nichumim* ('good words, comforting words'). The word *nichumim* ('comforting') is from the same root as *nacham* ('to comfort'), echoing Isaiah 40:1: 'Comfort, comfort my people.' The post-exilic community now receives the comfort the prophets promised during the exile.
14. The verb *qinneti* ('I am jealous') uses the same root as *qin'ah* ('jealousy, zeal'). Divine jealousy in Hebrew is not petty envy but fierce, possessive love — the jealousy of a husband for his wife (cf. Exodus 20:5; 34:14). The cognate accusative *qin'ah gedolah* ('a great jealousy') intensifies the emotion. God's jealousy for Jerusalem is the driving force behind restoration.
15. The contrast is theologically crucial: God was *qatsaphti me'at* ('a little angry') — his discipline of Israel was measured and purposeful. But the nations *azru lera'ah* ('helped toward evil/disaster') — they exceeded their mandate, turning God's disciplinary correction into excessive destruction. The phrase *haggoyim hash'a'ananim* ('the nations at ease') connects back to the patrol report of verse 11 — their complacency is offensive because it rests on Israel's suffering.
16. The verb *shavti* ('I have returned') answers the call of verse 3 ('return to me and I will return to you') — God's return to Jerusalem is the divine half of the repentance covenant. The word *rachamim* ('compassion') is plural of intensity from the root *r-ch-m* ('womb'), suggesting deep, maternal tenderness. The measuring line (*qav*) indicates construction activity — the city will be rebuilt and expanded. This anticipates the third vision (2:1-5) where a man goes out to measure Jerusalem.
17. The word *od* ('again, still, yet') appears three times — emphasizing renewal and continuation. The verb *tephutseinah* ('will overflow, will spread') pictures prosperity so abundant it spills beyond the city walls. The threefold promise — prosperity, comfort, and renewed election — reverses the exile's threefold loss. God's choosing (*bachar*) of Jerusalem is not a one-time historical act but a renewed commitment — he chooses again.
18. The formula 'I raised my eyes and looked' introduces several of Zechariah's visions (cf. 5:1; 6:1). The four horns (*qeranot*) represent aggressive military power — horns are the weapons of powerful animals and symbolize national strength throughout the prophets (cf. Daniel 7:7-8; 8:3-9). The number four suggests comprehensive scope — enemies from every direction.
19. The threefold object — Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem — encompasses the entire people: the southern kingdom, the northern kingdom, and the capital city. All have been scattered by foreign aggression. The verb *zeru* ('scattered') evokes the diaspora — the dispersion of God's people among the nations. The identity of the four horns is debated: Assyria, Babylon, Persia, and Greece, or simply a symbolic 'all four directions.'
20. The word *charashim* ('craftsmen, artisans, smiths') rather than 'carpenters' — these are metalworkers or general artisans, not woodworkers. The choice of craftsmen as agents of divine judgment is unexpected — they are builders, not warriors. The symmetry of four craftsmen to counter four horns suggests a divinely orchestrated balance: for every destructive power, God has prepared a constructive counter-force.
21. The phrase *lo nasa rosho* ('no one raised his head') describes total subjugation — the scattered people could not even look up. The verb *lehacharid* ('to terrify') suggests the craftsmen's approach will cause panic among the oppressing nations. The verb *leyadot* ('to throw down') is rare and forceful — the horns of national power will be violently displaced. The image reverses the power dynamic: those who scattered will themselves be scattered.

2

Summary: *Zechariah 2 contains the second and third night visions. The second vision (vv. 1-4, Hebrew 2:1-4) shows four horns representing the nations that scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem, followed by four craftsmen sent to terrify and cast down those horns. The third vision (vv. 5-13, Hebrew 2:5-17) shows a man with a measuring line going out to measure Jerusalem, but an angel declares the city will be inhabited without walls because of the multitude of people and livestock — God himself will be a wall of fire around it and the glory within it. The chapter closes with a call for exiles to flee Babylon and a promise that God will dwell in Zion's midst.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The English versification of Zechariah 2 differs from the Hebrew. English 2:1-13 corresponds to Hebrew 1:18-21 and 2:1-17. We follow the English versification. The vision of Jerusalem without walls (v. 4-5) is radical — in the ancient Near East, a city without walls was utterly vulnerable. But God reverses the equation: walls limit; his fire-presence expands. The promise 'I will be a wall of fire around her' (v. 5) transforms the vulnerability of an unwalled city into the invulnerability of divine protection. The call 'Flee from the land of the north!' (v. 6) reveals that many Jews remained in Babylon even after Cyrus's decree — the diaspora was already a reality.*

Translation Friction: *The versification issue requires care — English chapter 2 combines Hebrew 1:18-2:17. We follow English verse numbering throughout. The phrase 'apple of his eye' (v. 8) translates *bavat eno*, where *bavat* is a rare word related to 'gate' or 'pupil' — the most sensitive, protected part of the eye. The Hebrew of verse 8 contains a scribal note (*tiqqun sopherim*) indicating the original text may have read 'apple of my eye' (first person), softened to 'his eye' (third person) out of reverence.*

Connections: *The four horns and craftsmen vision connects to Daniel's four-kingdom schema (Daniel 2, 7). The wall-of-fire promise echoes the pillar of fire that protected Israel in the wilderness (Exodus 13:21-22). The 'apple of his eye' language echoes Deuteronomy 32:10. The call to 'flee from the land of the north' parallels Jeremiah 51:6, 45. The promise 'many nations will join themselves to the LORD on that day' (v. 11) anticipates the universal vision of Isaiah 2:2-4 and Micah 4:1-3.*

¹I raised my eyes and looked — there was a man with a measuring line in his hand. ²I asked, "Where are you going?" He said, "To measure Jerusalem — to determine its width and its length." ³Then the angel who was speaking with me went out, and another angel went out to meet him. ⁴He said to him, "Run, tell that young man: Jerusalem will be inhabited as an open city, without walls, because of the multitude of people and livestock within it." ⁵For I myself will be a wall of fire around her — declares the LORD — and I will be the glory within her. ⁶Come! Come! Flee from the land of the north — declares the LORD — for I have scattered you like the four winds of heaven, declares the LORD. ⁷Come, Zion! Escape, you who dwell with the daughter of Babylon! ⁸For this is what the LORD of Armies says — after glory, he sent me to the nations that plundered you, for whoever touches you touches the pupil of his eye. ⁹For I am about to wave my hand against them, and they will become plunder for those who served them. Then you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me. ¹⁰Sing and rejoice, daughter of Zion, for I am coming, and I will dwell among you — declares the LORD. ¹¹Many nations will join themselves to the LORD on that day, and they will become my people. I will dwell among you, and you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me to you. ¹²The LORD will claim Judah as his portion in the holy land, and will choose Jerusalem once more. ¹³Be silent, all flesh, before the LORD, for he has roused himself from his holy dwelling.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The third night vision begins. The measuring line (*chevel middah*) indicates an intention to survey Jerusalem's dimensions — presumably for wall construction. This connects to the measuring line promised in 1:16. The man's identity is not specified; he may be an angel or a symbolic figure. The vision will subvert his purpose: Jerusalem's dimensions cannot be fixed because God's plans exceed human measurement.
2. The man intends to establish Jerusalem's dimensions — width (*rochbah*) and length (*orkah*). In the ancient world, measuring a city meant defining its defensive perimeter for walls. The next verses will reveal that this project is unnecessary — God has a radically different plan for Jerusalem's protection and expansion.

3. A second angel enters the scene, creating a chain of communication: the second angel tells the interpreting angel, who tells Zechariah. This layered mediation is characteristic of Zechariah's visionary style and anticipates the elaborate angelic hierarchies of later apocalyptic literature.
4. The urgency — 'Run!' (ruts) — means the measuring must be stopped immediately. The word perazot ('open towns, unwall settlements') describes villages that have no defensive walls. This is normally a sign of vulnerability, but here it signals abundance: the population will be so vast that walls cannot contain it. The young man (na'ar hallaz) may be the figure with the measuring line, or possibly Zechariah himself. The vision reverses the normal equation: walls = security; no walls = danger. In God's economy, no walls = unlimited expansion under divine protection.
5. This is one of the most powerful divine promises in the prophetic literature. The structure is chiasmic: external protection (wall of fire around) and internal presence (glory within). The word chomat esh ('wall of fire') evokes the pillar of fire in Exodus 13:21-22 and 14:24. The promise that God will be the kavod 'within her' (betokhah) anticipates Ezekiel's vision of the glory returning to the temple (Ezekiel 43:1-5). No human walls can improve on divine fire.
6. The double exclamation hoy hoy expresses urgent summons — not a woe oracle but a desperate call to action. The 'land of the north' (erets tsaphon) is Babylon — located to the northeast of Judah but approached from the north via the Fertile Crescent. The revelation that God scattered them (perasti) acknowledges divine responsibility for the exile, while the urgent call to flee implies that remaining in Babylon is now disobedience. Many Jews had settled comfortably in Babylon and chose not to return.
7. The direct address to Zion as a person — the people of God dwelling in Babylon — uses the imperative himmaltiy ('escape, deliver yourself'). The phrase bat-bavel ('daughter of Babylon') personifies Babylon as a woman, a common prophetic device (cf. Isaiah 47:1; Psalm 137:8). The call to escape implies coming judgment on Babylon — those who remain will be caught in it.
8. The phrase achar kavod ('after glory') is notoriously difficult. It may mean 'to pursue glory,' 'after the glory has departed,' or 'with a glorious purpose.' We rendered it literally and let the ambiguity stand. The expression bavat eno ('pupil of his eye') describes the most sensitive and protected part of the body — to touch Israel is to poke God in the eye. There is a scribal tradition (tiqqun sopherim) that the original text read 'my eye' (eni) rather than 'his eye' (eno), making the statement directly from God: 'whoever touches you touches the pupil of my eye.' The change may have been made to avoid anthropomorphic language about God.
9. The gesture of waving the hand (menif et-yadi) is a threatening motion that precedes a strike. The reversal of fortune — oppressors become plunder for their own former slaves — echoes the Exodus pattern where Egypt was plundered by departing Israel (Exodus 12:36). The validation formula 'then you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me' establishes the prophetic word as verifiable — fulfillment will prove the message.
10. The double imperative ronni vesimchi ('sing and rejoice') marks a shift to jubilant promise. The verb shakhanti ('I will dwell/tabernacle') is from the root sh-k-n, the same root as Shekhinah — God's dwelling presence. The promise that God will personally dwell 'among you' (betokhekh) goes beyond temple reconstruction to divine indwelling. This echoes Exodus 25:8: 'Let them make me a sanctuary, that I may dwell among them.'
11. The verb nilvu ('will join themselves, will attach') describes voluntary association — the nations choose to align with the LORD. The covenant formula 'they will become my people' (vehayu li le'am), normally reserved for Israel, is now extended to 'many nations' (goyim rabbim). This is one of the most universalist statements in the Hebrew prophets — the covenant widens to embrace gentile peoples. The fulfillment phrase 'you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me' is repeated from verse 13.
12. The verb nachal ('to inherit, to take as possession') reverses the usual relationship — typically Israel inherits the land from God, but here God inherits Judah as his own possession. The phrase admat haqqodesh ('the holy land') is one of only two occurrences of this exact phrase in the Hebrew Bible (also Daniel 11:41 uses 'the beautiful land'). The concept of the land itself being holy — not just the temple or the altar — is significant. The repeated uvachar od ('and will choose again') reaffirms the divine election.
13. The command has ('silence!') demands absolute stillness before divine action — cf. Habakkuk 2:20 and Zephaniah 1:7, where the same command precedes divine judgment. The metaphor ne'or ('he has roused himself, he has awakened') uses stirring-from-sleep language — God, who appeared to slumber during the exile (cf. Psalm 44:23), has now risen to act. The 'holy dwelling' (me'on qodsho) is heaven itself, not the earthly temple. God is moving from heaven toward earth — and all flesh must fall silent.

3

Summary: Zechariah 3 presents the fourth night vision — a heavenly courtroom scene where Joshua the high priest stands before the angel of the LORD, clothed in filthy garments, while the Satan stands at his right hand to accuse him. The LORD rebukes the accuser, declaring Joshua a brand plucked from the fire. Joshua's filthy garments are removed and replaced with clean robes and a turban, symbolizing the removal of the people's iniquity. The chapter concludes with the promise of the Branch (Tsemach) and a stone with seven eyes — on a single day, God will remove the iniquity of the land.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the only passage in Zechariah where ha-satan ('the adversary/accuser') appears, connecting this vision to the heavenly court scenes in Job 1-2. The filthy garments represent not Joshua's personal sin but the collective guilt of the post-exilic community — the high priest bears the nation's iniquity. The garment exchange is a vivid enactment of forgiveness: guilt is not merely pardoned but removed and replaced with righteousness. The mention of 'the Branch' (tsemach, v. 8) introduces one of the most important messianic titles in the prophets, linking to Isaiah 4:2, 11:1, Jeremiah 23:5, and 33:15. The stone with seven eyes (v. 9) has generated extensive interpretive debate — temple cornerstone, precious gem for the high priestly breastplate, or cosmic symbol.*

Translation Friction: *The word tso'im ('filthy') in verse 3 is extremely strong — it refers to excrement-stained garments, not merely soiled clothing. We rendered it as 'filthy' but note the force in the translator notes. The identity of ha-satan is debated: in pre-exilic usage, satan functions as a title ('the adversary/accuser') rather than a proper name. We retain the article and lowercase rendering 'the adversary' to reflect the Hebrew, while noting the development toward the later concept of Satan as a personal name. The stone with seven eyes (v. 9) defies easy interpretation — we preserve the image without forcing a single explanation.*

Connections: *The heavenly court scene parallels Job 1:6-12 and 2:1-7. The filthy-to-clean garment exchange anticipates Isaiah 61:10 ('he has clothed me with garments of salvation') and Revelation 7:14 (robes washed white). The Branch (tsemach) connects to Isaiah 4:2, 11:1, Jeremiah 23:5, 33:15, and Zechariah 6:12. The removal of iniquity 'in a single day' (v. 9) has been read as anticipating the Day of Atonement's ultimate fulfillment. The seven eyes appear again in Zechariah 4:10 and inform the imagery of Revelation 5:6 (the Lamb with seven eyes).*

¹Then he showed me Joshua the high priest standing before the angel of the LORD, with the adversary standing at his right hand to accuse him. ²The LORD said to the adversary, "The LORD rebukes you, adversary! The LORD who has chosen Jerusalem rebukes you! Is not this man a brand plucked from the fire?" ³Now Joshua was clothed in filthy garments as he stood before the angel. ⁴He answered and spoke to those standing before him, saying, "Remove the filthy garments from him." Then he said to Joshua, "See — I have taken your iniquity away from you, and I will clothe you in splendid robes." ⁵Then I said, "Let them place a clean turban on his head." So they placed the clean turban on his head and clothed him in garments, while the angel of the LORD stood by. ⁶Then the angel of the LORD solemnly charged Joshua: ⁷This is what the LORD of Armies says: If you walk in my ways and keep my charge, then you will govern my house and oversee my courts, and I will give you access to walk among those standing here. ⁸Listen now, Joshua the high priest — you and your companions who sit before you, for they are men who serve as signs — for I am about to bring my servant, the Branch. ⁹For look — the stone that I have set before Joshua: on that single stone are seven eyes. I myself will engrave its inscription — declares the LORD of Armies — and I will remove the iniquity of that land in a single day. ¹⁰On that day — declares the LORD of Armies — you will invite one another to sit under the vine and under the fig tree.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The heavenly courtroom scene: Joshua stands as the defendant, the angel of the LORD as judge, and ha-satan ('the adversary') as prosecutor. The right hand is the position of accusation in a legal proceeding (cf. Psalm 109:6). The word satan with the definite article (ha-satan, 'the adversary') functions as a title/role, not a proper name — this figure's job is to accuse, to bring charges. The infinitive lesitno ('to accuse him') is from the same root as satan, creating a deliberate wordplay: the satan stands to satan.
2. The double rebuke is emphatic. God speaks of himself in the third person ('the LORD rebukes you') — a formal legal ruling rather than a personal outburst. The basis for the rebuke is God's election: 'the LORD who has chosen Jerusalem' — the accusation against Joshua (and the community he represents) is overridden by God's sovereign choice. The metaphor ud mutsal me'esh ('a brand plucked from the fire') means a partially burned stick rescued from destruction — Joshua and the remnant have survived the fire of exile, singed but alive. The same image appears in Amos 4:11.
3. The word tso'im ('filthy') is far stronger than modern English 'dirty' or 'soiled.' The root relates to excrement — these are garments stained with human waste, representing the most extreme form of ritual defilement. For a high priest, who was required to wear sacred vestments of linen and gold (Exodus 28), to stand in excrement-stained clothes before the divine court is devastating. Joshua's filthy garments represent not personal sin but the collective guilt and defilement of the community he serves as intercessor.
4. The garment exchange is a physical enactment of forgiveness. The verb he'evarti ('I have caused to pass away') means the iniquity is removed — not suppressed, not overlooked, but taken away. The machalatsot ('splendid robes,' 'festal garments') are robes of distinction and honor, far exceeding mere clean replacements. The scene moves from the worst possible defilement to the highest possible honor in a single divine command. This is

theology enacted as drama.

5. Zechariah himself speaks — an unusual interjection in which the prophet participates in the vision rather than merely observing. The *tsanif tahor* ('clean turban') is the priestly headpiece (cf. Exodus 28:36-38), on which the gold plate reading 'Holy to the LORD' was attached. By restoring the turban, Joshua is reinvested with full priestly authority. The note that the angel of the LORD 'stood by' (*omed*) suggests supervisory approval of the process.
6. The verb *vayya'ad* ('solemnly testified, charged') is a formal legal term — the angel delivers a binding declaration with conditions. What follows in verse 7 is a conditional covenant: obedience will lead to authority.
7. The conditional covenant has two requirements (walk in my ways, keep my charge) and three rewards (govern the house, oversee the courts, access to the heavenly court). The third reward — *mahlekchim* ('access, places to walk') among the standing angels — is extraordinary: Joshua the high priest will have the right to move among the angelic beings of the heavenly court. This elevates the priesthood beyond its earthly function to a mediating role between heaven and earth.
8. The word *mophet* ('sign, portent, wonder') means Joshua and his companions are living symbols pointing toward something greater. The title *tsemach* ('Branch') is a recognized messianic designation appearing in Isaiah 4:2 (where it refers to the LORD's branch), Jeremiah 23:5 and 33:15 (a righteous branch for David), and Zechariah 6:12. Combined with *avdi* ('my servant'), it creates a dual-identity figure: Davidic king and divine servant. The phrase *hineni mevi* ('I am about to bring') indicates imminent divine action.
9. The stone (even) with seven eyes (*shiv'ah enayim*) is one of the most enigmatic images in the prophets. Interpretations include: (1) a temple foundation stone, (2) a precious gem for the high priestly breastplate or turban, (3) a cosmic symbol of God's all-seeing awareness, (4) a messianic symbol connected to the Branch. The seven eyes likely represent complete divine knowledge and oversight (cf. 4:10 — 'the eyes of the LORD that range through the whole earth'). The engraving (*pittuchah*) may refer to an inscription or a decorative carving. The climactic promise — removing *avon* ('iniquity') of the entire land *beyom echad* ('in a single day') — is breathtaking in scope. This connects to the Day of Atonement concept but transcends it: not annual covering but permanent removal.
10. The image of sitting 'under the vine and under the fig tree' is the quintessential picture of messianic peace in the Hebrew Bible, drawn from 1 Kings 4:25 (Solomon's golden age), Micah 4:4, and Isaiah 36:16. It represents agricultural abundance, personal security, and neighborly fellowship — each person enjoying the fruit of their own land without fear of invasion or oppression. The verb *tigre'u* ('you will invite, call') suggests active hospitality — sharing prosperity with neighbors.

4

Summary: *Zechariah 4 presents the fifth night vision — a golden lampstand (menorah) flanked by two olive trees. The angel awakens Zechariah to show him this image, then delivers one of the most quoted lines in prophetic literature: 'Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit, says the LORD of Armies.' The chapter addresses Zerubbabel's role in completing the temple, promising that the mountain of obstacles will become level ground before him, and that the hands that laid the foundation will also finish the work. The two olive trees are identified as 'the two anointed ones who stand beside the Lord of all the earth' — traditionally understood as the priestly and royal offices represented by Joshua and Zerubbabel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The central oracle — 'Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit' (v. 6) — is perhaps the most famous verse in Zechariah and one of the defining statements of biblical theology. It directly addresses the post-exilic community's despair at their political weakness: they have no army, no king, no independence. But God's work does not depend on human resources. The lampstand vision recalls the tabernacle menorah (Exodus 25:31-40) but adds features not found in the original — a bowl on top, seven pipes to each lamp (forty-nine total), and self-supplying olive trees. The lampstand is not merely decorative but functional: it represents God's ongoing, self-sustaining light in the world.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter's literary structure is unusual — the vision (vv. 1-5) is interrupted by the oracle to Zerubbabel (vv. 6-10), then the vision resumes (vv. 11-14). This may reflect the composite nature of the text or deliberate literary framing. The phrase *bene hayyitshar* ('sons of oil/anointing,' v. 14) is unique — not the standard *mashiach* ('anointed one') but a distinct term suggesting freshly flowing oil rather than ceremonial anointing. We translated it as 'anointed ones' with notes on the unusual Hebrew. The technical description of the lampstand in verses 2-3 is difficult — the relationship between the bowl (*gullah*), pipes (*mutsaqot*), and lamps is debated among scholars.*

Connections: The lampstand connects to the tabernacle menorah (Exodus 25:31-40) and the ten lampstands in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:49). The 'Not by might' oracle informs the theology of divine power through weakness that Paul develops in 2 Corinthians 12:9-10. The two olive trees/anointed ones are reinterpreted in Revelation 11:4 as the 'two witnesses.' The seven eyes of the LORD (v. 10) connect to the seven eyes on the stone in 3:9 and to the seven spirits/eyes in Revelation 5:6.

¹The angel who was speaking with me returned and woke me, like a person roused from sleep. ²He asked me, "What do you see?" I said, "I see a lampstand made entirely of gold, with a bowl on top of it. On it are seven lamps, and there are seven channels to each of the lamps on top of it. ³And there are two olive trees beside it — one on the right side of the bowl and one on its left." ⁴I responded and asked the angel who was speaking with me, "What are these, my lord?" ⁵The angel who was speaking with me answered, "Do you not know what these are?" I said, "No, my lord." ⁶He answered and said to me, "This is the word of the LORD to Zerubbabel: Not by might, nor by power, but by my Spirit, says the LORD of Armies. ⁷What are you, great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you will become level ground! He will bring out the capstone to shouts of 'Grace! Grace to it!'" ⁸Then the word of the LORD came to me: ⁹The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house, and his hands will complete it. Then you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me to you. ¹⁰For who has despised the day of small things? They will rejoice when they see the plumb stone in Zerubbabel's hand. These seven are the eyes of the LORD — they range throughout the whole earth. ¹¹Then I asked him, "What are these two olive trees on the right side of the lampstand and on its left?" ¹²I asked a second time, "What are the two olive branches that pour out golden oil through the two golden pipes?" ¹³He said to me, "Do you not know what these are?" I said, "No, my lord." ¹⁴He said, "These are the two anointed ones who stand beside the Lord of all the earth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The simile *ke'ish asher ye'or mishenato* ('like a person roused from sleep') may indicate that Zechariah was in a trance-like visionary state between visions, or simply that the visions came during the night when he was sleeping. The interpreting angel must actively wake the prophet to receive the next vision — the divine initiative in revelation is emphasized.
2. The menorah in this vision differs from the tabernacle menorah in several ways: it has a bowl (*gullah*) on top serving as a reservoir, and the phrase *shiv'ah veshiv'ah mutsaqot* ('seven and seven channels') likely means seven pipes per lamp — forty-nine total channels ensuring continuous oil supply. The *gullah* ('bowl') functions as a self-feeding reservoir, eliminating the need for human tending. This is not merely a temple furnishing but a symbol of God's self-sustaining provision of light and presence.
3. The two olive trees flanking the lampstand are positioned to feed oil directly into the bowl — a self-sustaining system of illumination. The olive trees are living, producing sources rather than stored reserves, representing an inexhaustible supply. Their identity will be revealed in verse 14. The symmetry — one right, one left — suggests two parallel but distinct sources of anointing.
4. Zechariah's repeated question — 'What are these?' — reflects genuine bewilderment, not literary convention. Each vision requires angelic interpretation. The respectful address *adoni* ('my lord') maintains the prophet's humble stance before the heavenly messenger.
5. The angel's question — 'Do you not know?' — may express surprise at the prophet's incomprehension or may serve a pedagogical function, drawing out the admission of ignorance before revelation. Zechariah's honest 'No' is notable: the prophet does not pretend to understand divine vision on his own. Understanding requires revelation.
6. This is the theological summit of the chapter and one of the most quoted verses in the Hebrew Bible. The negation is comprehensive: *lo bechayil* ('not by military might') *velo bekhoach* ('and not by human power'). The affirmation *ki im-beruchi* ('but rather by my Spirit') introduces the divine alternative. The word *ruach* here is clearly God's Spirit — the animating, empowering presence of God himself. The message directly addresses the post-exilic community's political helplessness: they are subjects of Persia, without an army, without a king, without resources. God says: that is exactly the right condition for my work.
7. The 'great mountain' (*har-haggadol*) symbolizes the obstacles facing the temple's completion — political opposition, economic hardship, community demoralization. The promise that it will become *lemishor* ('level ground') echoes Isaiah 40:4 — every mountain made low. The 'capstone' or 'headstone' (even *harosheh*) is the final stone placed to complete the building, signifying triumphant completion. The crowd's shout *chen chen lah* ('Grace, grace to it!') invokes divine favor upon the finished temple — the word *chen* means both 'grace' and 'beauty.'
8. A fresh prophetic reception formula introducing a specific promise about Zerubbabel's role in completing the temple.
9. The promise creates a symmetry between beginning and ending: the same hands that started the work will finish it. The verb *tebatsa'nah* ('will complete, will cut off/finish') carries the sense of decisive completion. The validation formula — 'then you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me' — stakes prophetic credibility on a verifiable outcome: the temple's completion. Historically, the temple was completed in 516 BCE (Ezra 6:15),

vindicating the prophecy.

10. The rhetorical question rebukes those who looked at the modest rebuilding project with contempt (cf. Ezra 3:12; Haggai 2:3). The even habedil ('plumb stone' or 'tin/lead stone') is a construction tool used to ensure walls are straight — its presence in Zerubbabel's hand confirms active building. The 'seven' connects to the seven eyes on the stone in 3:9 and the seven lamps of the lampstand (4:2). The eyes of the LORD ranging through the earth express God's comprehensive awareness — nothing escapes his notice, and his purposes extend to every corner of creation.
11. Zechariah returns to his initial question about the olive trees (cf. v. 3). The question has been deferred through the Zerubbabel oracle (vv. 6-10), and now the prophet presses for an answer. The positioning — right and left of the menorah — emphasizes their function as sources of oil for the lampstand's light.
12. Zechariah refines his question with more specific detail: he now focuses on the shibbolei hazeitim ('olive branches/clusters') and the tsanterot hazzahav ('golden pipes/channels') through which oil flows. The word hamriqim ('pouring out, emptying') and the phrase hazzahav ('the gold/golden oil') describe oil so pure it appears golden. The self-emptying motion — oil flowing continuously without human pressing — reinforces the vision's message of divinely sustained provision.
13. The identical exchange from verse 5 is repeated — the angel's question and Zechariah's honest admission of ignorance. The repetition frames the central oracle (vv. 6-10) and creates anticipation for the final identification of the olive trees.
14. The phrase bene hayyitshar ('sons of oil/anointing') is unique in the Hebrew Bible. Unlike mashiach ('anointed one'), which refers to past ceremonial anointing, yitshar ('fresh oil') suggests ongoing, living supply. The title adon kol-ha'arets ('Lord of all the earth') for God emphasizes universal sovereignty — the God served by these two anointed ones is not a local deity but the ruler of the entire world. Revelation 11:4 reinterprets these two olive trees as 'the two witnesses,' extending the symbolism into eschatological context.

5

Summary: *Zechariah 5 contains the sixth and seventh night visions. The sixth vision (vv. 1-4) shows a flying scroll — enormous, twenty cubits by ten cubits — representing the curse that goes out over the entire land against thieves and those who swear falsely. The seventh vision (vv. 5-11) shows a woman called 'Wickedness' seated inside an ephah (a measuring container), sealed with a lead lid, and carried by two women with stork-like wings to the land of Shinar (Babylon), where a house will be built for it. Together these visions deal with the purging of sin from the restored community.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The flying scroll's dimensions — twenty cubits by ten cubits — exactly match the dimensions of Solomon's temple porch (1 Kings 6:3), suggesting that the covenant law which once resided in the temple now flies out as an active agent of judgment. The woman-in-the-ephah vision is one of the most surreal images in the Hebrew Bible, combining commercial imagery (the ephah was a standard measure for grain trade) with personified wickedness and a bizarre aerial deportation to Babylon. Sin is not merely forgiven but physically removed from the land and relocated — Babylon becomes the repository for Israel's expelled wickedness, a reversal of the exile: this time wickedness, not Israel, is exiled.*

Translation Friction: *The word ha'alalah in verse 3 can mean 'the curse' or 'the oath' — both relate to covenant violation, but 'curse' better fits the context of automatic judgment. The phrase 'enter the house of the thief and the house of him who swears falsely' (v. 4) describes the curse as an active agent that invades homes and destroys them from within — we preserved this vivid personification. The word rish'ah ('wickedness,' v. 8) is feminine, matching the feminine figure, and the allegorical nature of the vision is clear. The destination 'land of Shinar' (v. 11) is the archaic name for Babylon used in Genesis 11:2 (Tower of Babel), deliberately linking the deportation of wickedness to the primal site of human rebellion.*

Connections: *The flying scroll echoes the curses of Deuteronomy 27-28 and Ezekiel's scroll (Ezekiel 2:9-3:3). The two sins highlighted — theft and false oaths — represent violations of duties to neighbor and to God respectively, summarizing the whole law. The land of Shinar connects to Genesis 10:10, 11:2 (Babel), and Daniel 1:2. The ephah as a commercial measure connects to Amos 8:5's critique of dishonest weights and measures. The removal of wickedness anticipates the Day of Atonement's scapegoat (Leviticus 16:21-22), where sin is physically sent away.*

¹I looked up again and saw a flying scroll. ²He asked me, "What do you see?" I said, "I see a flying scroll. Its length is twenty cubits, and its width is ten cubits." ³He said to me, "This is the curse that goes out over the face of the whole land. For everyone who steals will be purged out according to what is written on one side, and everyone who swears falsely will be purged out according to what is written on the other side. ⁴I have sent it out — declares the LORD of Armies — and it will enter the house of the thief and the house of the one who swears falsely by my name. It will lodge within his house and consume it — timber and stones alike." ⁵Then the angel who was speaking with me came forward and said to me, "Raise your eyes and see what this is that is going out." ⁶I asked, "What is it?" He said, "This is an ephah going out." He added, "This is their iniquity throughout the whole land." ⁷Then a lead cover was lifted, and there was a woman sitting inside the ephah. ⁸He said, "This is Wickedness." Then he pushed her down into the ephah and threw the lead weight over its opening. ⁹Then I raised my eyes and looked — two women were coming forward with wind in their wings. They had wings like the wings of a stork, and they lifted the ephah up between earth and sky. ¹⁰I asked the angel who was speaking with me, "Where are they taking the ephah?" ¹¹He said to me, "To build a house for it in the land of Shinar. When it is prepared, she will be set down there on her own pedestal."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The megillah aphah ('flying scroll') is an extraordinary image — a written document soaring through the sky under its own power. Ancient scrolls were rolled, not folded, and this one is unfurled and airborne, making its text visible to all. The verb aphah ('flying') is the same used for birds, suggesting swift, purposeful movement across the land.
2. The dimensions — twenty cubits by ten cubits (approximately 30 by 15 feet, or 9 by 4.5 meters) — match the porch of Solomon's temple (1 Kings 6:3). This may be coincidental, but the parallel suggests that the covenant law, which was housed in the temple, now emerges from it as an active agent of judgment. A scroll this size would be overwhelming in the sky — the curse of the covenant is not hidden in fine print but displayed in massive, inescapable lettering.
3. The word ha'alah means 'the curse' — specifically a covenant curse, the automatic consequence of violating a sworn oath. The scroll has two sides, each addressing a different category of sin: theft (violation of neighbor's rights, the 'horizontal' dimension of the law) and false oaths (violation of God's name, the 'vertical' dimension). Together they represent the whole covenant obligation. The verb niqqah ('will be purged out, will be made clean/empty') suggests removal — the sinners will be cleared from the community.
4. The curse is personified as an agent that enters homes, takes up residence (lanet, 'to lodge overnight'), and then destroys them completely — timber and stones, the fundamental building materials. The destruction is total: not merely punishment of the person but demolition of everything they have built. The verb killatu ('will consume/destroy it') pictures the curse eating through the house like fire or rot. The phrase bishmi lashsheqer ('falsely by my name') specifies the violation: using God's name to validate lies, the most direct profanation of the divine identity.
5. The seventh vision begins. The angel's command to 'raise your eyes' indicates a new visual experience. The feminine participle hayyotset ('going out') creates suspense — Zechariah sees something emerging but does not yet know what it is.
6. The ephah was a standard dry measure for grain (approximately 22 liters or 5 gallons), making it a symbol of commerce and trade. The Hebrew einam ('their eye/appearance') is a textual difficulty — many Hebrew manuscripts and the LXX read avonam ('their iniquity'), which fits the context better and is likely the original reading (a scribal error of ayin/aleph). We follow the emended reading 'their iniquity' with this note. The ephah as a container for wickedness transforms a commercial instrument into a vessel of judgment.
7. The kikkar ophereth ('talent/disk of lead') serves as a heavy lid — lead is the densest common metal, ensuring the contents cannot escape. The woman inside the ephah is not a literal person but an allegorical figure representing wickedness (as verse 8 will identify). The image is claustrophobic and surreal: a woman crammed into a grain container, sealed with lead.
8. The identification is terse and absolute: zot harish'ah ('This is Wickedness'). The feminine noun rish'ah ('wickedness') personified as a woman is grammatically natural in Hebrew (abstract nouns are typically feminine). The angel's forceful actions — vayashlekh ('he threw/cast') appears twice — demonstrate violence against wickedness: she is shoved down and sealed in. The lead weight over the mouth (pi, 'opening') ensures permanent containment. Wickedness is not merely named but imprisoned.
9. The two winged women are among the most unusual figures in the Hebrew Bible. They are not identified as angels (the standard mal'akhim are masculine in Hebrew), and their stork-like wings create a strange hybrid image. The stork (chasidah) is an unclean bird in Leviticus 11:19, which may be significant — unclean carriers transport wickedness to its appropriate destination. Alternatively, the stork's name comes from chesed ('faithful love, loyalty'), and the irony may be intentional: faithfulness removes wickedness. The ephah is carried 'between earth and sky' — suspended in transit, neither in the holy land nor yet at its destination.
10. Zechariah's question is practical and direct — the vision demands an explanation of the destination. The verb molikhot ('taking, carrying, leading') suggests purposeful transport, not aimless flight.

11. The destination is erets Shin'ar ('the land of Shinar') — the archaic name for Babylonia used in Genesis 10:10 and 11:2 (the Tower of Babel). The choice of this ancient name rather than 'Babylon' connects wickedness to the primordial site of human rebellion against God. A 'house' (bayit) will be built for Wickedness — she will be enshrined, given a permanent dwelling, possibly a mock-temple. The word mekhunatah ('her pedestal/base') suggests a shrine-like installation. The vision is a theological reversal: Israel was exiled to Babylon, but now Wickedness itself is exiled there. The holy land is being purged.

6

Summary: *Zechariah 6 concludes the eight night visions with the eighth vision (vv. 1-8) — four chariots drawn by differently colored horses emerge from between two mountains of bronze, sent out as the four spirits of heaven to patrol the earth. The chapter then shifts to a symbolic act (vv. 9-15): Zechariah is commanded to take silver and gold from returned exiles, make a crown, and place it on the head of Joshua the high priest, declaring him 'the Branch' who will build the LORD's temple and rule from his throne. The crown will be placed in the temple as a memorial.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The eighth vision — chariots emerging from between two bronze mountains — forms an inclusio with the first vision (horsemen in chapter 1). Both feature colored horses patrolling the earth, but now they go out as agents of divine action, not merely reporters. The crowning of Joshua the high priest as 'the Branch' (v. 12) is extraordinary because the Branch is a royal/Davidic title — a priest receives a king's crown. This fusion of priestly and royal roles in a single figure anticipates the Melchizedek priesthood theme (Genesis 14; Psalm 110) and becomes central to Christian messianic theology. The Hebrew of verse 13 — 'he will be a priest on his throne, and counsel of peace will be between the two' — envisions a figure who unites kingship and priesthood in harmony.*

Translation Friction: *The crowning ceremony raises a major textual question: verse 11 says to crown 'Joshua' but the Branch title belongs to the Davidic/royal line, represented by Zerubbabel. Some scholars believe the original text read 'Zerubbabel' and was changed to 'Joshua' after Zerubbabel disappeared from history. We follow the Masoretic text (Joshua) while noting the debate. The phrase 'counsel of peace between the two' (v. 13) is ambiguous — between priest and king? between the Branch and the LORD? between the two offices united in one person? We preserve the ambiguity.*

Connections: *The four chariots parallel the four horsemen of Revelation 6:1-8. The bronze mountains may connect to the two bronze pillars of Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:15-22). The Branch (tsemach) continues from 3:8 and connects to Jeremiah 23:5, 33:15, and Isaiah 11:1. The crowning of a priest-king anticipates Psalm 110:4 ('You are a priest forever, in the order of Melchizedek') and Hebrews 4-7. The memorial crown in the temple connects to the memorial stones tradition (Joshua 4:1-9).*

¹I looked up again and saw four chariots coming out from between two mountains — and the mountains were mountains of bronze. ²The first chariot had red horses, the second chariot had black horses, ³the third chariot had white horses, and the fourth chariot had dappled horses — all of them strong. ⁴I asked the angel who was speaking with me, "What are these, my lord?" ⁵The angel answered me, "These are the four spirits of heaven, going out after presenting themselves before the Lord of all the earth." ⁶The chariot with black horses goes out toward the north country, and the white ones go out after them, and the dappled ones go out toward the south country. ⁷The strong ones went out, eager to go and patrol the earth. He said, "Go, patrol the earth." So they patrolled the earth. ⁸Then he called out to me and said, "See, those going toward the north country have set my Spirit at rest in the north country." ⁹The word of the LORD came to me: ¹⁰Take contributions from the exiles — from Heldai, Tobijah, and Jedaiah — and go that same day to the house of Josiah son of Zephaniah, where they have arrived from Babylon. ¹¹Take silver and gold, make a crown, and set it on the head of Joshua son of Jehozadak, the high priest. ¹²Say to him: This is what the LORD of Armies says — Here is the man whose name is the Branch. He will branch out from his place and build the temple of the LORD. ¹³It is he who will build the temple of the LORD. He will bear the honor, and will sit and rule on his throne. He will be a priest on his throne, and counsel of peace will be between the two of them. ¹⁴The crown will be a memorial in the temple of the LORD for Helem, Tobijah, Jedaiah, and Hen son of Zephaniah. ¹⁵Those who are far away will come and build in the temple of the LORD. Then you will know that the LORD of Armies has sent me to you. This

will happen if you diligently obey the voice of the LORD your God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The eighth and final night vision. The four chariots (merkavot) are war vehicles — divine military forces, not ceremonial processions. The two mountains of bronze (harei nechoshet) are unique to this vision. Bronze mountains may represent the pillars of heaven, the cosmic gateway, or may connect to the two bronze pillars of Solomon's temple (Jachin and Boaz, 1 Kings 7:15-22), from which divine forces issue forth. The chariots emerge 'from between' the mountains — from the divine realm into the earthly.
2. The horse colors — red (adummim) and black (shchorim) — likely carry symbolic meaning: red for bloodshed/war, black for famine/death. The colors partially overlap with the first vision (1:8) but are not identical, and Revelation 6:1-8 will develop distinct symbolic meanings for each color.
3. White (levanim) horses may symbolize victory or purity. The fourth group — beruddim amutsim ('dappled, strong') — is described with two adjectives. The word beruddim ('dappled, spotted') appears only here and in Genesis 31:10, 12 (Jacob's flocks). The adjective amutsim ('strong, powerful') may modify all four teams rather than just the fourth, though its placement suggests it primarily describes the dappled horses.
4. The recurring question formula. After eight visions, Zechariah still requires angelic interpretation — the visions do not become self-evident through repetition.
5. The identification arba ruchot hashamayim ('four spirits/winds of heaven') is deliberately ambiguous — ruach can mean 'spirit' or 'wind.' As spirits, they are divine agents; as winds, they represent the four compass directions of divine sovereignty. The phrase mehityatsev al-adon kol-ha'arets ('from standing before the Lord of all the earth') echoes the heavenly court scene of Job 1:6 and 1 Kings 22:19-22. These agents have been in the divine presence receiving their commission before going out.
6. The directional assignments: black horses to the north (Babylon/Mesopotamia — the primary enemy territory), white horses follow them northward, and dappled horses go south (Egypt). The red horses are not assigned a direction here, leading to textual debate — some suggest they go east or west, or that verse 7 addresses them. The 'north country' (erets tsaphon) is the direction from which Babylon threatened Israel, making it the primary target of divine judgment.
7. The ha'amutsim ('the strong ones') are likely the red horses or a general designation for all the chariot teams. Their eagerness — vayevashtu laleket ('they sought/were eager to go') — personifies the divine agents as zealous to fulfill their mission. The command-and-fulfillment pattern (Go... So they went) demonstrates immediate obedience to divine authority. The verb lehithallekh ('to patrol') is the same used in 1:10-11, creating an inclusio between the first and last visions.
8. The verb vayaz'eq ('he called out, he cried') suggests urgency and importance. The phrase henichu et-ruchi ('have set my Spirit at rest') is profoundly significant — God's Spirit, which was agitated by the injustice done to his people by the northern empire, is now calmed because divine justice has been executed. The 'north country' is Babylon, and the settling of God's Spirit indicates that the account has been balanced — the nations that exceeded their mandate in punishing Israel (cf. 1:15) have received their own judgment.
9. The standard prophetic reception formula marks the transition from the night visions to a symbolic prophetic act. The visions are complete; now comes a commanded action.
10. The three named exiles — Heldai ('worldly/enduring'), Tobijah ('the LORD is good'), and Jedaiah ('the LORD knows') — have come from Babylon, likely bearing gifts for the temple. Their names may carry symbolic significance. The house of Josiah son of Zephaniah serves as their host and the location for the symbolic ceremony. The instruction to go 'that same day' emphasizes urgency — the prophetic act must be performed immediately.
11. The word atarot is plural ('crowns'), but the verb veshamta ('and you shall set') is singular, and the crown is placed on one head. The plural may indicate a composite crown or a crown of multiple bands. The crowning of the high priest Joshua with a royal crown is the extraordinary center of this passage. The Branch title (v. 12) is Davidic/royal, not priestly, creating a deliberate fusion of the two offices. Some scholars argue the original text named Zerubbabel, the Davidic descendant, and was changed to Joshua after Zerubbabel disappeared from history. We follow the Masoretic text.
12. The wordplay — tsemach shemo umitachtav yitsmach ('Branch is his name, and from his place he will branch out') — is untranslatable without awkwardness, but we attempt to preserve it with 'the Branch... will branch out.' The promise that this figure will build the hekhal YHWH ('temple of the LORD') connects to Zerubbabel's temple-building role (4:9) but extends beyond it. The phrase umitachtav ('from beneath him, from his place') suggests humble origins — growing up from below, not descending from above.
13. The repetition 'he will build the temple of the LORD' from verse 12 adds emphasis. The word hod ('honor, majesty, splendor') is the royal attribute par excellence. The phrase vehayyah kohen al-kis'o ('he will be a priest on his throne') is the crux: a single figure exercises both royal and priestly authority simultaneously. The 'counsel of peace between the two of them' (atsat shalom... bein sheneihem) is grammatically ambiguous — 'the two' could refer to the priestly and royal offices, to the Branch and God, or to Joshua and Zerubbabel as representatives. We preserve the ambiguity.
14. After the crowning ceremony, the crown is placed in the temple as a zikkaron ('memorial') — a permanent testimony to the prophetic act and the promise it represents. The names differ slightly from verse 10: Heldai becomes Helem, and Josiah becomes Hen (meaning 'grace/favor'). These may be alternate forms of the same names or deliberate symbolic substitutions. The crown in the temple serves as a physical reminder of the coming priest-king until his arrival.

15. The promise that rechoqim ('those who are far away') will participate in building the temple extends the vision beyond the local community to distant peoples — either far-flung Jewish diaspora communities or, more radically, gentile nations (cf. 2:11). The validation formula appears again: fulfillment will confirm the prophetic word. The conditional clause — *im shamoa tishme'un* ('if you will diligently obey,' literally 'if hearing you will hear') — uses the emphatic infinitive absolute construction. The promise is conditioned on obedience, maintaining the covenantal framework: God's extraordinary promises require the people's covenantal faithfulness.

7

Summary: *Zechariah 7 transitions from the night visions to a prose prophetic discourse prompted by a practical question: a delegation from Bethel asks whether they should continue fasting in the fifth month to mourn the temple's destruction, now that reconstruction is underway. God responds not with a direct answer but with a penetrating counter-question: 'When you fasted and mourned, was it really for me?' The chapter then recalls the message of the earlier prophets — execute true justice, show faithful love and compassion, do not oppress the vulnerable — and indicts the ancestors for refusing to listen, resulting in the scattering of exile.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *God's response to a ritual question is characteristically prophetic: he ignores the liturgical issue and addresses the moral reality beneath it. The fasts commemorating the temple's fall (in the fifth month) and Gedaliah's assassination (in the seventh month) had become rote observances disconnected from genuine repentance. The phrase 'Was it really for me that you fasted?' (v. 5) cuts to the heart of all religious ritual: whose purposes does worship serve? The catalog of ethical demands in verse 9-10 echoes the prophetic tradition from Amos through Micah to Jeremiah — true religion is justice, not ceremony.*

Translation Friction: *The delegation's question in verses 2-3 is straightforward, but God's response sprawls across two chapters (7-8), making the literary structure complex. The word *chesed* appears in verse 9 within a catalog of social ethics — we rendered it as 'faithful love' consistent with project standards. The phrase 'they made their hearts like diamond' (v. 12) uses *shamir*, an extremely hard stone (possibly corundum or emery) — harder than flint, expressing absolute obstinacy.*

Connections: *The question about fasting connects to Isaiah 58:1-12, where God similarly redefines true fasting as justice and compassion. The ethical catalog in verses 9-10 echoes Micah 6:8, Isaiah 1:17, Jeremiah 22:3, and Amos 5:24. The scattering by whirlwind (v. 14) recalls Hosea 13:3. The 'pleasant land' made desolate (v. 14) reverses the promise of Deuteronomy 8:7-10.*

¹In the fourth year of King Darius, the word of the LORD came to Zechariah on the fourth day of the ninth month — the month of Kislev. ²Bethel had sent Sharezer and Regem-Melech, along with their men, to seek the favor of the LORD ³and to ask the priests of the house of the LORD of Armies and the prophets, "Should I weep in the fifth month, fasting as I have done for so many years?" ⁴Then the word of the LORD of Armies came to me: ⁵Say to all the people of the land and to the priests: When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh months these seventy years, was it really for me that you fasted? ⁶And when you eat and when you drink, is it not you who eat and you who drink? ⁷Are these not the words that the LORD proclaimed through the earlier prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited and at peace, with her surrounding cities, and when the Negev and the foothills were settled? ⁸The word of the LORD came to Zechariah: ⁹This is what the LORD of Armies says: Render true justice, and show faithful love and compassion to one another. ¹⁰Do not oppress the widow, the fatherless, the foreigner, or the poor, and do not plot evil against one another in your hearts. ¹¹But they refused to pay attention. They turned a stubborn shoulder and made their ears too heavy to hear. ¹²They made their hearts like diamond, refusing to hear the law and the words that the LORD of Armies sent by his Spirit through the earlier prophets. Great wrath came from the LORD of Armies. ¹³Just as he called and they would not listen, so they called and I would not listen, says the LORD of Armies. ¹⁴I scattered them with a whirlwind among all the nations they had not known. The land was left desolate behind them, with no one passing through or returning. They turned the pleasant land into a wasteland.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The date is December 7, 518 BCE — nearly two years after the night visions of chapters 1-6. The Babylonian month name Kislev is preserved. The temple reconstruction is well underway, prompting the delegation's question about whether mourning fasts are still appropriate.
2. The names Sharezer ('protect the king') and Regem-Melech ('friend of the king') are Babylonian-style names, reflecting the cultural assimilation of the exile. The phrase lechalot et-penei YHWH ('to entreat the face of the LORD') means to seek God's favor through prayer and inquiry. Whether 'Bethel' is the town sending the delegation or part of the compound name 'Bethel-Sharezer' is debated — we read it as the town, following most translations.
3. The fifth month (Av) commemorated the destruction of Solomon's temple by Nebuchadnezzar in 586 BCE (2 Kings 25:8-9). The verb hinnazzer ('separating, abstaining') refers to the discipline of fasting. The question is practical and sincere: with the temple being rebuilt, does the mourning fast still apply? The answer God gives will transcend the liturgical question entirely.
4. The prophetic reception formula introduces God's response, which will not directly answer the question until chapter 8:19.
5. God's counter-question is devastating: *hatzom tsamtuni ani* ('was it really for me — me! — that you fasted?'). The emphatic pronoun *ani* ('me') at the end doubles the force. The seventh month fast commemorated the assassination of Gedaliah, the governor appointed after the fall of Jerusalem (2 Kings 25:25; Jeremiah 41:1-3). The 'seventy years' connects to Jeremiah's prophecy (Jeremiah 25:11-12). God challenges the motive behind the ritual: religious observance that serves human purposes rather than divine ones is not truly worship.
6. The parallel question extends the logic: just as eating and drinking serve your own needs, so your fasting has served your own purposes — comfort in grief, communal identity, religious routine — rather than genuine devotion to God. The rhetoric strips away the pretense of piety: both feasting and fasting have been self-referential.
7. God redirects attention from the fasting question to the prophetic message that preceded the disaster. The phrase *hanneviim harishonim* ('the earlier prophets') refers to the pre-exilic prophetic tradition. The description of Jerusalem 'inhabited and at peace' (*yoshevet ushelevah*) with the Negev and Shephelah (foothills) settled paints the prosperous condition that existed before the exile — the very condition the people failed to maintain through obedience.
8. A fresh reception formula introduces the ethical catalog that follows — the content of what the earlier prophets actually said.
9. This verse summarizes the entire prophetic ethical tradition in a single sentence. *Mishpat emet* ('true justice') is justice that corresponds to reality — not the perversion of justice through bribery or favoritism. The pairing of *chesed verachamim* ('faithful love and compassion') represents the relational dimension of covenant ethics. The phrase *ish et-achiv* ('each to his brother') extends the covenant obligation horizontally — what God shows to Israel, Israel must show to one another.
10. The four vulnerable categories — *almanah* ('widow'), *yatom* ('fatherless/orphan'), *ger* ('foreigner/resident alien'), and *ani* ('poor/afflicted') — represent those without social power or legal protection. These are the same groups protected by Exodus 22:21-24, Deuteronomy 10:18, and Psalm 146:9. The prohibition against plotting evil 'in your hearts' (*bilevavkhem*) extends the ethical demand from external action to internal disposition — even the intention to harm is prohibited.
11. Three vivid images of resistance: (1) refusal to listen (*vayema'anu lehaqshiv*), (2) turning a rebellious shoulder (*kataph soraret* — the image of a draft animal refusing the yoke), and (3) ears made heavy (*hikhbidu* — from the root *k-v-d*, 'heavy,' the same root as *kavod*). The irony is sharp: the *kavod* ('glory') of God should make their ears attentive, but instead they make their ears *kavod* ('heavy') to block out his word.
12. The word *shamir* ('diamond, adamant, corundum') refers to the hardest known substance in the ancient world — harder than flint (cf. Ezekiel 3:9, Jeremiah 17:1). A heart made like *shamir* is not merely stubborn but deliberately, permanently hardened against God's word. The phrase *berucho beyad hanneviim* ('by his Spirit through the prophets') establishes the prophetic word as Spirit-driven — the earlier prophets spoke not their own opinions but God's Spirit-empowered message. The result of this hardness: *qetseph gadol* ('great wrath') — comprehensive divine judgment.
13. The principle of reciprocal hearing: God called through the prophets and was ignored; now when they call to God, he reciprocates. The measure-for-measure justice (*middah keneged middah*) is precise and devastating. The verb *qara* ('called') applies to both parties — God called, they called — but the response is mirrored: refusal to hear answered by refusal to hear.
14. The verb *va'esa'arem* ('I scattered them with a whirlwind') uses storm imagery for the violence of exile — not a gradual displacement but a tornado-like removal. The 'nations they had not known' emphasizes the disorientation of exile — everything is foreign. The phrase *erets chemdah* ('pleasant/desirable land') is a title for the promised land (cf. Jeremiah 3:19; Psalm 106:24), echoing *chemdah* from Haggai 2:7. The irony is crushing: the land God gave as a gift, they turned to *shammah* ('desolation'). The chapter ends where it must — with the exile's devastation — setting up the restoration promises of chapter 8.

8

Summary: *Zechariah 8 concludes the first major section of the book with a cascade of ten divine oracles (each introduced by 'This is what the LORD of Armies says'), building from God's jealous love for Zion through images of restored Jerusalem — old men and women sitting in its streets, children playing in its squares — to economic blessing, the transformation of fasts into feasts, and the ultimate vision of all nations streaming to Jerusalem to seek the LORD. This chapter is the most concentrated expression of eschatological hope in the post-exilic prophets.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The image in verse 4-5 — elderly people sitting peacefully in Jerusalem's streets while children play around them — is one of the most tender pictures of messianic hope in the Hebrew Bible. In a city that had known siege, starvation, massacre, and deportation, the vision of grandparents aging peacefully and children playing safely represents the complete reversal of wartime horror. The closing oracle (vv. 20-23) envisions ten foreigners grasping the garment of a single Jew and saying 'Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you' — the ultimate fulfillment of Israel's missionary purpose: to be so visibly blessed that the nations seek Israel's God.*

Translation Friction: *The ten-oracle structure creates some repetition that is deliberate and cumulative, not redundant. Each 'This is what the LORD of Armies says' introduces a new facet of the same vision. The phrase 'Do not be afraid; let your hands be strong' (v. 13) is a standard encouragement formula, but here it functions as the pivot between remembrance of past judgment and confidence in future blessing. The final image — ten men from every nation grasping a Jew's garment — uses the number ten symbolically for completeness and the gesture of grasping for desperate eagerness.*

Connections: *The old and young in the streets (vv. 4-5) reverses the siege conditions of Lamentations 2:21 and 4:1-4. The covenant formula 'they will be my people and I will be their God' (v. 8) connects to Jeremiah 31:33 and Ezekiel 37:27. The fasts becoming feasts (v. 19) finally answers the question posed in 7:3. The nations seeking the LORD (vv. 20-23) fulfills Isaiah 2:2-4 and Micah 4:1-3. The phrase 'God is with you' (v. 23) echoes Immanuel ('God with us,' Isaiah 7:14).*

¹The word of the LORD of Armies came: ²This is what the LORD of Armies says: I am deeply jealous for Zion — with great zeal and great fury I am jealous for her. ³This is what the LORD says: I have returned to Zion and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem. Jerusalem will be called the City of Faithfulness, and the mountain of the LORD of Armies will be called the Holy Mountain. ⁴This is what the LORD of Armies says: Old men and old women will again sit in the streets of Jerusalem, each with a staff in hand because of their great age. ⁵And the streets of the city will be full of boys and girls playing in its open squares. ⁶This is what the LORD of Armies says: If it seems impossible in the eyes of the remnant of this people in those days, should it also seem impossible in my eyes? declares the LORD of Armies. ⁷This is what the LORD of Armies says: I am about to save my people from the land of the east and from the land of the west. ⁸I will bring them, and they will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem. They will be my people and I will be their God, in faithfulness and righteousness. ⁹This is what the LORD of Armies says: Let your hands be strong, you who in these days are hearing these words from the mouths of the prophets who were present when the foundation of the house of the LORD of Armies was laid for the temple to be rebuilt. ¹⁰For before those days, there were no wages for people or wages for livestock. There was no safety for anyone coming or going because of the enemy, and I set everyone against their neighbor. ¹¹But now I will not deal with the remnant of this people as in the former days, declares the LORD of Armies. ¹²For there will be a sowing of peace: the vine will yield its fruit, the ground will yield its produce, and the heavens will give their dew. I will cause the remnant of this people to possess all these things. ¹³Just as you were a curse among the nations, O house of Judah and house of Israel, so I will save you, and you will become a blessing. Do not be afraid — let your hands be strong. ¹⁴For this is what the LORD of Armies says: Just as I resolved to bring disaster upon you when your ancestors provoked me to anger — says the LORD of Armies — and I did not relent, ¹⁵so now, in these days, I have resolved to do good to Jerusalem and the house of Judah. Do not be afraid. ¹⁶These are the things you must do: Speak truth to one another. Render verdicts of truth and peace in your gates. ¹⁷Do not plot evil against one another in your hearts, and do not love false oaths — for all these things I hate, declares the LORD. ¹⁸The word of the LORD of

Armies came to me: ¹⁹This is what the LORD of Armies says: The fast of the fourth month, the fast of the fifth month, the fast of the seventh month, and the fast of the tenth month will become occasions of joy and gladness and cheerful festivals for the house of Judah. But love truth and peace. ²⁰This is what the LORD of Armies says: Peoples will yet come — the inhabitants of many cities. ²¹The inhabitants of one city will go to another, saying, 'Let us go at once to seek the favor of the LORD and to seek the LORD of Armies. I myself am going!' ²²Many peoples and mighty nations will come to seek the LORD of Armies in Jerusalem and to seek the favor of the LORD. ²³This is what the LORD of Armies says: In those days, ten men from nations of every language will take hold — they will grasp the garment of a Judean, saying, 'Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The first of ten oracle introductions in this chapter. The compressed formula signals the beginning of a concentrated sequence of divine promises.
2. The oracle opens with the same jealousy language as 1:14, creating an inclusio framing the entire vision section. The cognate accusative qin'ah gedolah ('a great jealousy/zeal') is intensified by the addition of chemah gedolah ('great fury/heat'). God's jealousy is not petty but fierce — the heat (chemah) of a husband defending his wife. This passionate, possessive love drives the entire restoration program.
3. God's return to Zion (shavti el-tsiyyon) fulfills the promise of 1:16. The verb shakhanti ('I will dwell') is from the Shekhinah root — God's permanent, tangible dwelling presence. The renaming of Jerusalem as ir ha'emet ('City of Faithfulness/Truth') and the temple mount as har haqqodesh ('the Holy Mountain') indicates transformation of character, not just restoration of buildings. The city's new names reflect God's character dwelling within it.
4. This is one of the most moving images in prophetic literature. The presence of elderly people in the city streets — frail, leaning on staffs — is a sign of two things: peace (no siege, no violence) and longevity (people live to old age instead of dying in war or famine). The word rehov ('broad open place, plaza') was where community life happened. In a city that had been emptied by exile, the vision of crowded streets where the elderly sit safely is deeply emotional.
5. The companion image to verse 4: where the elderly sit peacefully, children play freely. Together they represent the full spectrum of age — the most vulnerable members of society — thriving in safety. Children playing in the streets means there is no fear, no danger, no reason to keep them hidden indoors. This reverses the horror of Lamentations 2:11-12, 19, where children collapsed from hunger in the city's open places.
6. The word yippale ('wonderful, impossible, beyond comprehension') is from the root p-l-l' — the same root used for God's wonders in the Exodus (Exodus 15:11). God acknowledges that his promises may seem too good to be true to the struggling remnant, but the rhetorical question makes the point: human impossibility does not constrain divine ability. What staggers human imagination is normal for God.
7. The gathering from east and west — erets mizrach and erets mevo hashamesh ('land of the sunrise' and 'land of the setting sun') — represents complete ingathering from the entire diaspora. The verb moshia ('saving, delivering') is from the root y-sh-', the same root as yeshu'ah ('salvation') and the name Yeshua/Joshua/Jesus. God's salvation is not abstract but geographic — bringing people physically home.
8. The covenant formula — 'they will be my people and I will be their God' — reaches back to Exodus 6:7 and forward to Jeremiah 31:33 and Ezekiel 37:27. The additions be'emet uvitsedaqah ('in faithfulness and in righteousness') are significant: the renewed covenant relationship will be characterized by emet (trustworthiness, reliability) and tsedaqah (right relationship, justice). These qualities describe both God's character and the community's conduct.
9. The encouragement techezeqnah yedeikhem ('let your hands be strong') uses the same root (ch-z-q) as the three-fold 'be strong' in Haggai 2:4. Strong hands are working hands — the exhortation is to persevere in the construction. The 'prophets' present at the foundation-laying include Haggai and Zechariah himself (Ezra 5:1-2). The verse creates a bridge between the prophetic word and the physical labor of rebuilding.
10. God describes the pre-rebuilding conditions: economic collapse (no wages), insecurity (no shalom for travelers), and social breakdown (neighbor against neighbor). The startling admission va'ashallach ('and I set/sent') — God claims responsibility for the social discord. This is consistent with the prophetic understanding that covenant consequences, including community breakdown, are divinely orchestrated discipline.
11. The pivot word attah ('now') marks the transition from past judgment to present grace. God's relationship with the remnant changes — the era of discipline gives way to blessing. The phrase lo kayyamim harishonim ('not as in the former days') is a covenant reset.
12. The phrase zera hashshalom ('seed of peace') is evocative — 'peace will be sown' like grain, producing a harvest of blessing. The triad of vine, ground, and heavens giving their produce reverses the covenant curses of Haggai 1:6-11 and Deuteronomy 28:23-24. The verb vehinchalti ('I will cause to inherit/possess') uses inheritance language — God gives these blessings as permanent possession, not temporary relief.
13. The transformation is complete: from qelalah ('curse') among the nations to berakhah ('blessing'). To be a 'curse among the nations' means other peoples used Israel's name in curse formulas ('May you become like Israel!'). To become a 'blessing' means the opposite ('May you be blessed like Israel!'). This echoes the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 12:2-3: 'you will be a blessing... all the families of the earth will be blessed through you.' The double encouragement 'Do not fear, let your hands be strong' brackets the promise with courage.

14. The verb *zamamti* ('I resolved, I planned') indicates deliberate, purposeful intention — God's judgment was not impulsive but calculated. The phrase *velo nichamti* ('and I did not relent') uses *nacham*, which can mean 'repent, relent, change one's mind.' God's judgment was irreversible once his patience was exhausted. This establishes a basis for the promise in verse 15: just as the judgment was irrevocable, so the blessing will be irrevocable.
15. The parallel is deliberate: the same verb *zamamti* ('I resolved') used for judgment (v. 14) is now used for blessing. God's determination to bless is as unshakeable as his determination to punish was. The command *al-tira'u* ('do not be afraid') responds to the community's anxiety about whether God's favor is permanent.
16. The ethical demands match the blessings — God's favor requires covenant response. The phrase *mishpat shalom* ('verdicts of peace/wholeness') is an unusual pairing: justice that produces shalom, not merely correct legal rulings but restorative judgments that heal relationships. The 'gates' (*she'areikhem*) were where legal proceedings took place in ancient Israelite cities (cf. Ruth 4:1; Deuteronomy 22:15).
17. The prohibitions complement the commands of verse 16: positive ethics (speak truth, render justice) paired with negative prohibitions (do not plot evil, do not love false oaths). The phrase *asher saneti* ('which I hate') expresses divine revulsion — these are not merely violations of rules but offenses against God's character. The word *shevu'at sheqer* ('false oath') connects back to the flying scroll vision (5:3-4), where those who swear falsely are targeted by the covenant curse.
18. A fresh reception formula introduces the oracle that finally answers the original question from 7:3 about fasting.
19. Finally, the answer to the fasting question from 7:3 — and it goes far beyond what was asked. Not just the fifth-month fast but all four commemorative fasts will be transformed from mourning into celebration. The four fasts commemorated: (1) fourth month — breach of Jerusalem's walls (2 Kings 25:3-4), (2) fifth month — temple destruction, (3) seventh month — Gedaliah's assassination, (4) tenth month — beginning of the siege. God transforms every memory of disaster into a festival. The closing imperative — 'love truth and peace' (*ha'emet vehashshalom ehavu*) — conditions the transformation on ethical commitment.
20. The vision now extends beyond Israel to the nations. The phrase *od asher* ('yet, it will still happen that') expresses confident expectation. The picture of peoples (*ammim*) and inhabitants of many cities streaming toward Jerusalem begins a universalist climax that will build through verse 23.
21. The urgency of the invitation — *nelekhah halokh* ('let us go, going!' — the infinitive absolute intensifies) — expresses eager, contagious enthusiasm. The response 'I myself am going!' (*elekhah gam-ani*) shows individuals making personal decisions to join the pilgrimage. The movement is spontaneous, voluntary, and spreading from city to city. The verb *levalles* ('to seek the favor,' literally 'to soften the face of') is the same used in 7:2 — now it is gentile nations, not Israelite delegations, seeking God.
22. The scale expands: not just scattered individuals but *ammim rabbim vegoyim atsumin* ('many peoples and mighty nations'). The word *atsumin* ('mighty, powerful') emphasizes that these are not weak, desperate peoples but strong nations voluntarily drawn to Jerusalem's God. This vision fulfills Isaiah 2:2-3 and Micah 4:1-2 — the nations streaming to Zion.
23. The final oracle is the most vivid image of universal attraction to Israel's God. Ten men (symbolic completeness) from *mikol leshonot haggoyim* ('from all the languages of the nations') seize a single Jew's garment — the gesture of desperate, eager appeal (cf. Isaiah 4:1). The phrase *Elohim immakhem* ('God is with you') is the Immanuel promise (Isaiah 7:14) applied to the whole people. Israel's ultimate calling is fulfilled: they become so visibly blessed, so clearly favored by God, that the nations cannot resist joining themselves to Israel's God. The vision does not describe conquest or coercion but attraction — the drawing power of visible divine presence.

9

Summary: Zechariah 9 opens the second major section of the book (often called 'Second Zechariah,' chapters 9-14) with an oracle against the surrounding nations — Damascus, Hamath, Tyre, Sidon, and the Philistine cities — followed by one of the most famous messianic prophecies in the Hebrew Bible: the king who comes to Jerusalem humble and riding on a donkey (v. 9). The chapter then promises the abolition of war chariots, the proclamation of peace to the nations, the release of prisoners from the waterless pit, and the restoration of Judah and Ephraim as God's weapons against Greece.

What Makes This Remarkable: Verse 9 — 'Rejoice greatly, daughter of Zion! Shout, daughter of Jerusalem! See, your king comes to you, righteous and having salvation, humble and riding on a donkey, on a colt, the foal of a donkey' — is quoted in Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15 as fulfilled in Jesus's triumphal entry into Jerusalem. The Hebrew word ani ('humble, afflicted') describes a king who is the opposite of imperial power — he does not ride a war horse but a donkey, the mount of peace. Verse 10 extends the reversal: this king abolishes chariots and war bows and proclaims peace to the nations. The juxtaposition of military language (God wielding Judah as a bow and Ephraim as an arrow, vv. 13-14) with the peace-king creates deliberate theological tension.

Translation Friction: The transition from judgment on surrounding nations (vv. 1-8) to the messianic king entry (v. 9) is abrupt, characteristic of Second Zechariah's literary style. The phrase nosha' in verse 9 is a niphal participle: 'saved, delivered, having received salvation' — the king is not primarily a savior but one who has been saved/vindicated by God. We rendered it as 'delivered' to capture the passive sense. The 'blood of your covenant' (v. 11) is debated — does it refer to the Sinai covenant (Exodus 24:8) or a broader covenant concept? We preserved the ambiguity.

Connections: The oracle against Tyre (vv. 2-4) echoes Ezekiel 26-28. The messianic king on a donkey (v. 9) is quoted in Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15. The abolition of war implements (v. 10) connects to Isaiah 2:4 and Micah 4:3. The 'blood of your covenant' (v. 11) echoes Exodus 24:8 and is invoked by Jesus at the Last Supper (Matthew 26:28). The 'prisoners of hope' (v. 12) and the 'waterless pit' connect to Joseph's story (Genesis 37:24) and Jeremiah's imprisonment (Jeremiah 38:6). The warfare against 'sons of Greece' (v. 13) is one of the few explicit references to Greece in prophetic literature.

¹An oracle: The word of the LORD against the land of Hadrach, with Damascus as its resting place — for the eyes of humanity and all the tribes of Israel are on the LORD — ²and also Hamath, which borders it, and Tyre and Sidon, though they are very wise. ³Tyre has built herself a fortress and heaped up silver like dust and gold like mud in the streets. ⁴But look — the Lord will dispossess her and strike down her power in the sea, and she will be consumed by fire. ⁵Ashkelon will see it and be afraid. Gaza too will writhe in anguish, and Ekron — for her hope will be put to shame. The king will perish from Gaza, and Ashkelon will not be inhabited. ⁶A mixed people will settle in Ashdod, and I will cut off the pride of the Philistines. ⁷I will remove the blood from their mouth and the detestable things from between their teeth. The one who remains will also belong to our God — he will be like a clan leader in Judah, and Ekron will be like the Jebusites. ⁸I will camp around my house as a guard, against those who come and go. No oppressor will march against them again, for now I am watching with my own eyes.

⁹Rejoice greatly, daughter of Zion!
Shout aloud, daughter of Jerusalem!
See — your king comes to you,
righteous and delivered,
humble, and riding on a donkey,
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.

¹⁰I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim
and the war horse from Jerusalem.
The battle bow will be broken,
and he will proclaim peace to the nations.
His dominion will extend from sea to sea,
and from the River to the ends of the earth.

¹¹As for you also, because of the blood of your covenant, I have set your prisoners free from the waterless pit. ¹²Return to your stronghold, prisoners of hope! Even today I declare: I will restore double to you.

¹³For I have bent Judah as my bow
and loaded Ephraim as my arrow.
I will rouse your sons, Zion,
against your sons, Greece,
and wield you like a warrior's sword.

¹⁴The LORD will appear over them,
and his arrow will flash like lightning.
The Lord GOD will sound the trumpet

and march in the storm winds of the south.

¹⁵The LORD of Armies will shield them. They will devour and trample the sling stones. They will drink and roar like wine. They will be full like the sacrificial basin, drenched like the corners of the altar. ¹⁶The LORD their God will save them on that day as the flock of his people. They will sparkle in his land like jewels in a crown. ¹⁷How great is his goodness, and how great is his beauty! Grain will make the young men flourish, and new wine the young women.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *massa* ('oracle, burden') introduces a weighty prophetic pronouncement. Hadrach is a region in Syria mentioned in Assyrian texts but not elsewhere in the Hebrew Bible. Damascus as *menuchato* ('its resting place') means the oracle settles on Damascus — the word of the LORD takes up residence there as a judgment. The difficult phrase *ein adam* ('eye of humanity/man') may mean God's eye is on humanity, or humanity's eyes are on God — the Hebrew is genuinely ambiguous. We follow the reading that humanity and Israel alike look to the LORD.
2. Hamath, Tyre, and Sidon are swept into the oracle's scope. Tyre's wisdom (*chokhmah*) refers to its commercial acumen and strategic prowess — Ezekiel 28:3-5 describes Tyre's wisdom in similar terms. The 'though' (*ki*) with the adjective acknowledges Tyre's famed cleverness while implying it will not save the city from divine judgment.
3. The wordplay *tsor/matsor* ('Tyre/fortress') is untranslatable — the city's name sounds like the Hebrew word for 'siege-work' or 'stronghold.' Tyre's legendary wealth is described with two comparisons: silver as common as dust, gold as plentiful as street mud. The very abundance that seems to guarantee security becomes evidence that material wealth cannot protect against divine judgment.
4. The title *Adonai* ('the Lord,' not YHWH) is used here. The verb *yorishennah* ('will dispossess her') means to take away her inheritance/possession — God strips Tyre of everything she has accumulated. The phrase 'her power in the sea' reflects Tyre's island fortress position. Alexander the Great fulfilled this prophetically in 332 BCE by building a causeway to the island city and burning it. The threefold judgment — dispossession, military defeat, fire — is comprehensive.
5. The Philistine cities react with terror to Tyre's fall, recognizing their own vulnerability. The verbs escalate: *tira* ('fear'), *tachil me'od* ('writhe greatly'), *hovish mabbatah* ('her hope is shamed'). Ekron's 'hope' (*mabbat*) was apparently pinned on Tyre's survival — when Tyre falls, Ekron's confidence collapses. The loss of Gaza's king and Ashkelon's depopulation represent total political and demographic devastation.
6. The word *mamzer* is traditionally rendered 'bastard' but more broadly means a person of mixed or illegitimate heritage — in this context, foreign settlers replacing the original population. The verb *vehikhra* ('I will cut off') uses the covenant-curse language of *karath* ('to cut off from the community'). Philistine pride (*ge'on*) — their distinctive national identity — will be destroyed.
7. The bloody food and detestable things (*shiqquts*) refer to pagan sacrificial practices — eating blood and consuming food offered to idols. God will purge these from the Philistine survivors. The promise that the remnant will 'belong to our God' (*le'eloheinu*) is remarkable — Philistine survivors are incorporated into the covenant community. The comparison to a 'clan leader in Judah' (*alluph biyhudah*) elevates them, and 'Ekron like the Jebusites' means integration into Israel, as the Jebusites of Jerusalem were absorbed after David's conquest.
8. God stations himself as a military guard (*chaniti*, 'I will encamp') around 'my house' — either the temple or the land of Israel itself. The phrase *me'over umishav* ('from one passing through and returning') may describe armies marching back and forth through Israel's land, a persistent historical trauma. The declaration *ra'iti be'ainai* ('I have seen with my eyes') is deeply personal — God is no longer distant but actively watching and protecting.
9. This is one of the most quoted messianic prophecies in the Hebrew Bible, cited in Matthew 21:5 and John 12:15 for Jesus's entry into Jerusalem. The poetic structure uses synonymous parallelism: Zion/Jerusalem, rejoice/shout, donkey/colt. The word *nosha'* is crucial — it is passive/reflexive (*niphal*), meaning 'saved, delivered, vindicated,' not active 'saving others.' The king is himself the recipient of divine salvation. The word *ani* ('humble, poor, afflicted') is the same word used for the righteous poor throughout the Psalms (Psalm 22:24; 34:6). The Hebrew poetry uses donkey/colt parallelism, not two separate animals — Matthew's literal reading of two animals reflects a misunderstanding of Hebrew poetic parallelism.
10. The abolition of war implements — chariot, horse, bow — is remarkable because it includes Israel's own weapons, not just the enemy's. The messianic king disarms his own nation before proclaiming peace to the nations. The universal scope — 'from sea to sea, from the River to the ends of the earth' — echoes Psalm 72:8, a royal psalm attributed to Solomon. The 'River' (*nahar*) is the Euphrates, the traditional eastern boundary of the promised land (Genesis 15:18). The vision extends the messianic kingdom to the furthest reaches of the earth.
11. The 'blood of your covenant' (*dam beritakh*) is a direct allusion to Exodus 24:8, the covenant ratification ceremony at Sinai. Jesus quotes this phrase at the Last Supper (Matthew 26:28). The 'waterless pit' (*bor ein mayim*) is a cistern used as a prison — dark, deep, without water to sustain life. The prisoners (*asiraikh*) may represent the exiles in Babylon or, more broadly, all who are held captive by hopelessness. God's liberation is based on the covenant — the blood already shed creates an unbreakable obligation to rescue.
12. The phrase *asirei hatiqvah* ('prisoners of hope') is one of the most evocative in prophetic literature — they are captives, but captives who still hope. Their imprisonment has not destroyed their expectation of God's faithfulness. The 'stronghold' (*bitsaron*) may be Jerusalem or God himself as a place of refuge. The promise of *mishneh* ('double') restoration echoes Isaiah 61:7 — God does not merely restore what was lost but doubles it. The 'even today' (*gam hayyom*) creates urgency: the restoration begins now.

13. God himself becomes the warrior, using Judah as his bow and Ephraim as his arrow. The reunification of north (Ephraim) and south (Judah) as complementary weapons reverses the division of the monarchy. The explicit mention of Yavan ('Greece') is one of the most specific future references in prophetic literature — some scholars use it to date Second Zechariah to the Greek period (after Alexander), while others see it as genuine prophecy. The final image — God wielding Zion like a warrior's sword — pictures the people not as agents acting independently but as instruments in God's hand.
14. A theophany — God appears visibly (yera'eh) over his people as a divine warrior. The imagery combines meteorological phenomena with military language: arrows like lightning (baraq), trumpet blast (shophar), and storm winds (sa'arot). The 'south' (teman) may refer to the traditional direction of God's approach (cf. Habakkuk 3:3; Judges 5:4) — God comes from Sinai/the southern wilderness. The divine warrior motif reaches back to the Exodus (Exodus 15:3) and the conquest (Joshua 5:13-15).
15. The imagery is violent and ecstatic — the victorious warriors consume, trample, drink, and roar. The sling stones (avnei qela) are enemy projectiles that are rendered harmless — trampled underfoot. The comparison to the sacrificial basin (mizraq) and altar corners (zaviyyot mizbeach), which were splashed with blood during offerings, may suggest that the battle itself becomes a sacrifice. The verse combines warrior imagery with cultic imagery, making the military victory a sacred act.
16. The shift from violent warrior imagery to tender shepherd imagery — ketsan ammo ('as the flock of his people') — is characteristic of the prophetic dialectic between God as warrior and God as shepherd. The final image transforms the people into avnei nezer ('crown stones, jewels') sparkling (mitnosesot, 'lifting themselves up, glittering') over God's land. The people themselves become God's crown jewels — precious, visible, valued.
17. The chapter closes with an exclamation of wonder at God's goodness (tuvo) and beauty (yofyo). The agricultural abundance — grain for young men, new wine for young women — represents the full blessing of covenant faithfulness. The verb yenovev ('will cause to flourish, will make bud') connects agricultural fertility to human vitality — when the land flourishes, the people flourish.

10

Summary: *Zechariah 10 continues the restoration themes of Second Zechariah, opening with a call to ask the LORD for rain rather than seeking it from idols and diviners. God's anger burns against false shepherds (leaders) who have failed the flock, and he promises to transform the house of Judah from a neglected flock into a majestic war horse. The chapter envisions the restoration of both Judah and Joseph (Ephraim), their strengthening, the gathering of the diaspora from Egypt and Assyria, and their empowerment to walk in the LORD's name.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the strongest expressions of God's compassion for the northern kingdom (Ephraim/Joseph) in post-exilic literature. While most post-exilic prophecy focuses on Judah, Zechariah insists that God will also restore the northern tribes exiled by Assyria in 722 BCE. The pastoral metaphor dominates: the people are sheep without a proper shepherd, abused by worthless leaders ('he-goats'), but God himself will become their shepherd-warrior, transforming them from scattered victims into confident warriors. The whistle/signal imagery in verse 8 — 'I will whistle for them and gather them' — pictures God as a shepherd using a distinctive call to summon his flock home.*

Translation Friction: *The teraphim and diviners (v. 2) raise questions about the persistence of pagan practices in the post-exilic community. The shift from shepherd imagery to military imagery (cornerstone, tent peg, battle bow, v. 4) is abrupt — all four images come from Judah, suggesting Judah will produce comprehensive leadership. The 'whistle' (sharaq, v. 8) is literally a hiss or sharp whistle used by shepherds and beekeepers — we rendered it as 'whistle' for clarity.*

Connections: *The rain theology (v. 1) connects to Deuteronomy 11:13-14 and Joel 2:23. The false shepherds echo Ezekiel 34 and anticipate Zechariah 11. The cornerstone/tent peg/battle bow imagery (v. 4) connects to Isaiah 22:23-25 (Eliakim as the tent peg) and Isaiah 28:16 (the cornerstone in Zion). The gathering from Egypt and Assyria (vv. 10-11) echoes Isaiah 11:11-16. The sea passage and river drying (v. 11) reprise the Exodus and Jordan crossing.*

¹Ask the LORD for rain in the season of the spring rains. The LORD makes the storm clouds, and he gives showers of rain to them — vegetation in the field for everyone. ²For the household idols speak nonsense, and the diviners see lies. They tell false dreams and offer empty comfort. Therefore the people wander like sheep; they suffer because there is no shepherd. ³My anger burns against the shepherds, and I will punish the he-goats. For the LORD of Armies will attend to his flock, the house of Judah, and will make them like his majestic war horse in battle. ⁴From them will come the cornerstone, from them the

tent peg, from them the battle bow — from them every ruler together. ⁵They will be like warriors trampling the mud of the streets in battle. They will fight because the LORD is with them, and the horsemen will be put to shame. ⁶I will strengthen the house of Judah and save the house of Joseph. I will restore them because I have had compassion on them. They will be as though I had never rejected them, for I am the LORD their God, and I will answer them. ⁷Ephraim will be like a warrior, and their hearts will rejoice as with wine. Their children will see it and be glad — their hearts will exult in the LORD. ⁸I will whistle for them and gather them, for I have redeemed them. They will be as numerous as they once were. ⁹Though I scattered them among the peoples, in distant lands they will remember me. They will live, they and their children, and they will return. ¹⁰I will bring them back from the land of Egypt and gather them from Assyria. I will bring them to the land of Gilead and to Lebanon, and there will not be enough room for them. ¹¹He will pass through the sea of distress and strike the waves of the sea; all the depths of the Nile will dry up. The pride of Assyria will be brought down, and the scepter of Egypt will depart. ¹²I will strengthen them in the LORD, and in his name they will walk, declares the LORD.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The malqosh ('latter/spring rain') was the critical late-season rainfall that brought the grain harvest to maturity (March-April). The emphasis is on asking the LORD rather than seeking rain from pagan sources (as verse 2 will contrast). The word chazizim ('storm clouds, lightning bolts') emphasizes God's power over weather — he is the source, not Baal (the Canaanite storm deity) or household idols.
2. The teraphim ('household idols') are small deity figurines used for divination — their persistence into the post-exilic period is a recurring prophetic concern. The catalog of deception — aven ('emptiness, evil'), sheqer ('lies'), chalomot hashav ('worthless dreams'), hevel ('vapor, futility') — systematically strips false religion of all credibility. The consequence: the people nas'u ('wander, journey') like sheep without a shepherd. The lack of a ro'eh ('shepherd') is both a spiritual diagnosis (no true divine guidance) and a political one (no legitimate leadership).
3. The ro'im ('shepherds') are the leaders, and the attudim ('he-goats') are the dominant animals who bully the flock — both metaphors for corrupt leadership. The verb paqad has a double meaning: God will 'punish' (paqad) the he-goats but 'attend to, visit' (paqad) his flock — the same verb carries opposite implications depending on the object. The transformation from sheep to sus hodo ('his majestic horse') is dramatic: the victimized flock becomes a powerful war horse under God's direct command.
4. Four leadership images emerge 'from them' (from Judah): pinnah ('cornerstone') — the foundational stone of a building (cf. Isaiah 28:16); yated ('tent peg') — the stabilizing anchor (cf. Isaiah 22:23-25, applied to Eliakim); qeset milchamah ('battle bow') — military leadership; and noges ('ruler/driver') — authoritative governance. Together they picture comprehensive leadership: structural foundation, domestic stability, military power, and administrative authority — all originating from Judah.
5. The formerly helpless sheep become gibborim ('warriors, mighty men'). The muddy street trampling is a vivid image of urban combat. The key theological statement: ki YHWH immam ('because the LORD is with them') — their transformation from victims to warriors is entirely due to divine presence, not human improvement. The enemy's horsemen (rokhevei susim) are shamed — their military superiority cannot overcome divine empowerment.
6. The pairing of 'house of Judah' and 'house of Joseph' reunites the divided kingdoms — south and north, both restored. The verb richamtim ('I have had compassion on them') is from the womb-root r-ch-m, expressing God's deep maternal tenderness. The most remarkable promise: vehayu ka'asher lo-zenachtim ('they will be as though I had never rejected them') — God does not merely forgive but erases the effects of rejection entirely. The covenant relationship is restored to its original state, as if exile never happened.
7. Ephraim's transformation mirrors Judah's (v. 5): from scattered sheep to gibborim ('warriors'). The joy is compared to wine — full-bodied, intoxicating, overwhelming. The generational dimension is important: uvneiham yir'u vesamchu ('their children will see and be glad') — the blessing extends to the next generation, reversing the generational curse of exile.
8. The verb 'eshreqah ('I will whistle/hiss') is the distinctive sound a shepherd uses to call his flock — sharp, piercing, immediately recognizable. It may also refer to the whistle used by beekeepers to call their swarms (cf. Isaiah 7:18). The verb peditim ('I have redeemed them') is from padah ('to ransom, to redeem by payment'), indicating God has paid the price to secure their release. The promise of numerical restoration — 'as numerous as they once were' — reverses the decimation of exile.
9. The verb ezra'em ('I sowed/scattered them') uses agricultural language for diaspora — God sowed them like seed among the nations. But scattered seed produces a harvest: they will 'remember me' (yizkeruni) and return. The verb zakhar ('remember') in covenantal contexts means more than mental recall — it means to act on the covenant, to re-engage with the relationship. The promise vehayu et-beneihem ('they will live, they and their children') guarantees generational survival in exile and eventual return.
10. Egypt and Assyria represent the two directions of exile — south and north. Gilead (Transjordan) and Lebanon (northern border) represent the full territorial extent of the promised land. The climactic promise — velo yimmatse lahem ('there will not be enough room for them') — pictures a population so vast that the land cannot contain them all, echoing the unwallled-city promise of 2:4.

11. The language reprises the Exodus: God strikes the sea, the waters part, the oppressing power is humbled. The 'sea of distress' (yam tsarah) is a compressed metaphor — the sea itself becomes the distress through which God leads his people. The drying of the Nile's depths attacks Egypt at its source of life and power. The parallel humbling of Assyria's pride (ge'on) and Egypt's scepter (shevet) represents the comprehensive overthrow of all oppressive powers. This is a new Exodus, greater than the first.
12. The chapter closes with a summary promise: gibbarti ('I will strengthen') echoes verse 6, and the phrase uvishmo yithallakhu ('in his name they will walk') describes a life lived entirely under divine authority and identity. The verb hithallekh ('to walk about, to conduct oneself') is the same used for Enoch and Noah 'walking with God' (Genesis 5:22; 6:9). The people's restored life will be a continuous walk in the LORD's name — bearing his identity into the world.

11

Summary: *Zechariah 11 is one of the most dramatic and disturbing chapters in the prophets. It opens with a devastating taunt song against Lebanon, Bashan, and the Jordan — their mighty trees are falling. The chapter then shifts to a prophetic sign-act: Zechariah is commanded to shepherd a flock destined for slaughter, representing the people exploited by their own leaders. He takes two staffs named 'Favor' and 'Unity,' shepherds the flock, but the ungrateful people reject him. He breaks the staff 'Favor' (annulling God's covenant restraint on the nations), then asks for his wages and receives thirty pieces of silver — the price of a slave — which God commands him to throw to the potter in the temple. He breaks the second staff 'Unity' (ending the brotherhood between Judah and Israel). Finally, God commands him to take on the role of a worthless shepherd, pronouncing woe on the foolish shepherd who abandons the flock.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The thirty pieces of silver (v. 12-13) is one of the most striking prophetic connections to the New Testament: Matthew 27:3-10 quotes this passage in connection with Judas's betrayal payment, though Matthew attributes the quotation to Jeremiah (a long-standing textual puzzle). The phrase 'the lordly price at which I was valued by them' (v. 13) drips with divine sarcasm — thirty shekels was the legal compensation for a slave gored by an ox (Exodus 21:32). God is valued at slave-price. The two staffs — No'am ('Favor/Grace') and Chovlim ('Unity/Bonds') — represent the two dimensions of covenant blessing: God's gracious protection and the unity of his people. Both are broken.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the prophetic sign-act and historical reality is complex. The shepherd figure shifts between Zechariah, God, and a messianic figure without clear transitions. The 'three shepherds' removed in one month (v. 8) is one of the most debated identities in the Hebrew Bible — over forty interpretations have been proposed, and no consensus exists. We note the interpretive difficulty without forcing a solution. The word yotser ('potter') in verse 13 may be a scribal variant for otsar ('treasury') — both make sense contextually. The MT reads 'potter,' but throwing silver to a potter in the temple is unusual.*

Connections: *The thirty pieces of silver is cited in Matthew 27:9-10 (attributed to Jeremiah). The shepherd imagery connects to Ezekiel 34 and John 10. The breaking of covenant echoes Leviticus 26:44-45. The worthless shepherd (v. 17) connects to Ezekiel 34:2-10 and anticipates the shepherd struck in 13:7. The 'lordly price' language echoes the slave valuation of Exodus 21:32.*

1Open your doors, Lebanon, so that fire may consume your cedars! 2Wail, cypress, for the cedar has fallen — the mighty ones are destroyed! Wail, oaks of Bashan, for the dense forest has been brought down! 3Listen — the wailing of the shepherds, for their glory is destroyed! Listen — the roaring of the young lions, for the thicket of the Jordan is ravaged! 4This is what the LORD my God says: Shepherd the flock marked for slaughter. 5Those who buy them slaughter them and feel no guilt. Those who sell them say, 'Blessed be the LORD, I am rich!' And their own shepherds have no compassion for them. 6For I will no longer have compassion on the inhabitants of the land — declares the LORD. I will hand each person over to his neighbor and to his king. They will crush the land, and I will not rescue anyone from their hand. 7So I shepherded the flock marked for slaughter — the afflicted of the flock. I took two staffs; one I called Favor and the other I called Unity. And I shepherded the flock. 8I dismissed three shepherds in a single month. I grew impatient with them, and they also detested me. 9Then I said, "I will not shepherd you. Let the dying die, and the one perishing perish, and let those who remain devour one another's

flesh." ¹⁰I took my staff Favor and broke it, annulling my covenant that I had made with all the peoples. ¹¹It was annulled on that day, and the afflicted of the flock who were watching me recognized that it was the word of the LORD. ¹²I said to them, "If it seems right to you, give me my wages; if not, keep them." So they weighed out my wages — thirty pieces of silver. ¹³The LORD said to me, "Throw it to the potter — that magnificent price at which they valued me!" So I took the thirty pieces of silver and threw them to the potter in the house of the LORD. ¹⁴Then I broke my second staff, Unity, to annul the brotherhood between Judah and Israel. ¹⁵Then the LORD said to me, "Take for yourself the equipment of a foolish shepherd. ¹⁶For I am about to raise up a shepherd in the land who will not attend to the perishing, who will not seek the young, who will not heal the injured, who will not nourish the healthy. Instead, he will devour the flesh of the fat ones and tear off their hooves.

¹⁷Woe to the worthless shepherd who abandons the flock!
 A sword against his arm and against his right eye!
 His arm will wither completely,
 and his right eye will go totally blind.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The taunt song addresses Lebanon's famous cedars — symbols of pride, wealth, and strength throughout the prophets (cf. Isaiah 2:13; 10:34; Ezekiel 31). The command to 'open your doors' is sarcastic: Lebanon is invited to welcome its own destruction. Cedar was the premium building material of the ancient Near East, used in both Solomon's temple and palace. The cedars may symbolize the temple, the royal house, or powerful leaders.
2. A cascade of mourning: if the cedars (the greatest trees) have fallen, the cypresses (lesser trees) should wail because they are next. The 'oaks of Bashan' (the fertile plateau east of the Jordan) represent another tier of strength. The ya'ar habatsir ('dense/inaccessible forest') has been brought down — nothing is secure. The progression from Lebanon's cedars to Bashan's oaks to the impenetrable forest suggests comprehensive destruction from north to east.
3. The shepherds wail because their addartam ('their glory/majesty,' or 'their pasture' — the word is ambiguous) is destroyed. The young lions (kephirim) roar because the ge'on hayyarden ('pride/thicket of the Jordan') — the dense vegetation along the Jordan River valley — has been devastated. The Jordan thicket was famous for harboring lions (Jeremiah 49:19; 50:44). The taunt song moves from trees to shepherds to lions, encompassing all who depend on the land.
4. The prophetic sign-act begins. God commands Zechariah to shepherd a tson haharegah ('flock of slaughter') — sheep already destined to be killed. The phrase is horrifying: these are God's own people, treated as animals to be butchered by their own leaders. The genitive construction 'flock of slaughter' means slaughter is their defining characteristic — it is what they are destined for under current leadership.
5. Three levels of exploitation: buyers who kill without guilt (velo ye'shamu — they feel no moral weight), sellers who invoke God's name to celebrate their profit (the blasphemous barukh YHWH va'ashir, 'Blessed be the LORD, I am rich!'), and shepherds (their own leaders) who show no compassion (lo yachmol). The invocation of God's blessing over exploitative commerce is the ultimate profanation — using covenant language to sanctify injustice.
6. God withdraws compassion (lo echmol) — the divine restraint that has protected the people is removed. The consequences are neighbor-against-neighbor violence and royal oppression. The verb kitetu ('they will crush') is comprehensive devastation. The refusal to rescue (lo atsil miyyadam) is the most terrifying statement: God will not intervene. This is the theological equivalent of removing the hand from the tiller — the ship is left to the storm.
7. The prophet obeys and begins shepherding. The phrase aniyeyi hatson ('the afflicted/poor of the flock') specifies that his ministry is particularly to the vulnerable members. The two staffs are named symbolically: No'am ('Favor, Grace, Pleasantness') represents God's gracious covenant protection, and Chovlim ('Unity, Bonds, Ropes') represents the bond between Judah and Israel. Both names will become significant when the staffs are broken.
8. The identity of the 'three shepherds' is one of the most debated questions in Zechariah scholarship — over forty proposals exist, ranging from specific historical rulers to the three offices of prophet, priest, and king. No consensus has been reached, and we do not force an identification. The mutual antipathy — 'I grew impatient with them and they detested me' — describes a complete breakdown of the shepherd-flock relationship. The verb bachalu ('they detested, loathed') expresses visceral disgust.
9. The shepherd's resignation is total and devastating. The three fates are progressive: death, disappearance, and self-destruction (cannibalism). The phrase 'devour one another's flesh' (to'khalnah ishshsha et-besar re'utah) is not merely metaphorical — it echoes the siege cannibalism described in Lamentations 4:10 and Deuteronomy 28:53-57. When divine shepherding is withdrawn, the community consumes itself.
10. The breaking of the staff No'am ('Favor') symbolizes the annulment of God's covenant restraint on the nations — the agreement that had kept the surrounding peoples from overwhelming Israel. The word lehapher ('to annul, to break') is covenant-termination language. The phrase et kol-ha'ammim ('with all the peoples') refers to a restraining covenant with the nations, not the Sinai covenant with Israel. With this protective barrier removed, the nations are free to do their worst.

11. The 'afflicted of the flock' (aniyyei hatson) — the poor, vulnerable believers — are the ones who perceive the prophetic significance of the staff-breaking. The exploiters do not see; the humble do. The phrase *ki devar-YHWH hu* ('that it was the word of the LORD') indicates their recognition that the prophetic sign-act was divinely authorized, not mere performance.
12. The shepherd requests wages, but with an indifferent tone — 've'im-lo chadalu ('if not, forget it'). The amount — *sheloshim kasef* ('thirty of silver,' thirty shekels) — is the legal compensation for a slave gored by an ox (Exodus 21:32). The insult is deliberate and precise: the divine shepherd is valued at slave-price. Matthew 27:9-10 quotes this passage in connection with Judas's betrayal payment, though he attributes the quotation to Jeremiah — possibly because Jeremiah was placed first in the prophetic scroll collection.
13. God's command drips with sarcasm: *eder hayyeqar* ('the magnificent price') is bitterly ironic — thirty shekels is anything but magnificent. The word *yotser* ('potter') may be a deliberate wordplay on *otsar* ('treasury'); some scholars read 'treasury' here, which would explain throwing money 'in the house of the LORD' more naturally. Matthew 27:5-7 combines both elements — Judas throws the silver into the temple, and the priests use it to buy a potter's field. We follow the MT reading while noting the possible variant.
14. The breaking of Chovlim ('Unity/Bonds') severs the bond between north and south — the hope of reunification expressed in 10:6 is now undermined. The word *achavah* ('brotherhood') is the relational term for the bond between the two kingdoms. Its annulment means not just political division but the dissolution of fraternal identity — they will no longer recognize each other as brothers.
15. A new prophetic sign-act: Zechariah must now embody a *ro'eh evili* ('foolish/worthless shepherd'). The word *evili* ('foolish') in Hebrew denotes moral, not intellectual, deficiency — a shepherd who is willfully negligent. The 'equipment' (*keli*) would include staff and bag, but notably NOT the tools of good shepherding — the worthless shepherd's equipment is for appearance only.
16. The worthless shepherd is described by four failures and two crimes: he neglects the perishing (*nikhchadot*), ignores the young (*na'ar*), refuses to heal the injured (*nishberet*), and does not sustain the healthy (*nitsavah*). Instead, he actively destroys: eating the fat ones' flesh and tearing off their hooves (parting/ripping their hooves — an image of butchery, not shepherding). This anti-shepherd is the dark mirror of the Good Shepherd described in Ezekiel 34:11-16. God raises this figure as judgment — the people who rejected the good shepherd will receive the shepherd they deserve.
17. The woe oracle against the *ro'i ha'elil* ('worthless/idol shepherd') pronounces a two-part curse: his arm (the instrument of strength/action) will wither (*yavosh tivash* — emphatic infinitive absolute for total drying), and his right eye (the organ of perception/leadership) will go blind (*kahoh tikheh* — total darkening). The shepherd who refused to use his arm to protect the flock will lose the arm; the one who refused to watch over them will lose his sight. The punishment fits the crime with precise measure-for-measure justice.

12

Summary: *Zechariah 12 opens the final oracle section of the book (chapters 12-14, introduced as 'the oracle of the word of the LORD concerning Israel'). The chapter envisions a climactic siege of Jerusalem by all the nations, but God transforms the city into 'a cup of staggering' and 'an immovable rock' that defeats every attacker. The leaders of Judah recognize God as their source of strength, and fire consumes the surrounding nations. The chapter culminates in one of the most poignant verses in all prophecy: 'They will look on me, the one they have pierced, and they will mourn for him as one mourns for an only son' (v. 10) — a passage of intense messianic significance. The mourning is described as vast and comprehensive, clan by clan, family by family.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 10 is one of the most theologically loaded verses in the Hebrew Bible. The first person — 'they will look on ME, the one they have pierced' — means God himself is the one who was pierced, yet the mourning is 'for HIM' (third person), creating a mysterious shift from divine first person to a third-person figure. This verse is quoted in John 19:37 at the crucifixion of Jesus and in Revelation 1:7. The Hebrew *daqaru* ('they pierced') is unambiguous — it means to thrust through with a weapon. The mourning described in verses 11-14 is compared to the mourning for Hadad-rimmon in the valley of Megiddo (v. 11), likely referring to the death of good King Josiah in battle there (2 Chronicles 35:22-25).*

Translation Friction: *The first-person-to-third-person shift in verse 10 ('look on ME... mourn for HIM') is the central interpretive challenge. Various explanations: (1) the pierced one is a representative of God, hence the shift; (2) the text has been altered; (3) the shift is deliberate theological mystery — God identifies with the pierced figure while maintaining distinction. We preserve the shift exactly as the Hebrew reads. The 'mourning of Hadad-rimmon' (v. 11) is debated — Hadad-rimmon may be a place name near Megiddo or a compound divine name (Hadad + Rimmon, both storm deities).*

Connections: The 'cup of staggering' echoes Isaiah 51:17, 22 and Jeremiah 25:15-17. The immovable rock connects to the stone imagery of Daniel 2:34-35 and Isaiah 28:16. The piercing and mourning (v. 10) is quoted in John 19:37 and Revelation 1:7. The mourning for Josiah at Megiddo connects to 2 Chronicles 35:22-25. The clan-by-clan mourning anticipates the purification in chapter 13. The spirit of grace and supplication (v. 10) connects to Joel 2:28-29 and the outpouring of the Spirit.

¹An oracle: The word of the LORD concerning Israel. This is the declaration of the LORD who stretches out the heavens, who lays the foundation of the earth, and who forms the human spirit within a person. ²I am about to make Jerusalem a cup of staggering for all the surrounding peoples. Judah will also be caught up in the siege against Jerusalem. ³On that day I will make Jerusalem an immovable rock for all the peoples. All who try to lift it will be severely injured, even though all the nations of the earth gather against it. ⁴On that day — declares the LORD — I will strike every horse with panic and its rider with madness. I will keep my eyes open over the house of Judah, but I will strike every horse of the nations with blindness. ⁵Then the leaders of Judah will say in their hearts, 'The inhabitants of Jerusalem are our strength through the LORD of Armies, their God.' ⁶On that day I will make the leaders of Judah like a fire pot among timber and like a flaming torch among sheaves. They will consume all the surrounding peoples to the right and to the left, while Jerusalem will again be inhabited in its own place — in Jerusalem. ⁷The LORD will save the tents of Judah first, so that the honor of the house of David and the honor of Jerusalem's inhabitants will not be exalted above Judah. ⁸On that day the LORD will shield the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the weakest among them on that day will be like David, and the house of David will be like God — like the angel of the LORD going before them. ⁹On that day I will set out to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. ¹⁰I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem a spirit of grace and supplication. They will look on me — the one they have pierced — and they will mourn for him as one mourns for an only child, and grieve bitterly for him as one grieves for a firstborn son. ¹¹On that day the mourning in Jerusalem will be as great as the mourning for Hadad-rimmon in the plain of Megiddo. ¹²The land will mourn, clan by clan, each by itself: the clan of the house of David by itself, and their wives by themselves; the clan of the house of Nathan by itself, and their wives by themselves; ¹³the clan of the house of Levi by itself, and their wives by themselves; the clan of the Shimeites by itself, and their wives by themselves; ¹⁴All the remaining clans — each clan by itself, and their wives by themselves.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The second massa ('oracle/burden') in Second Zechariah (the first was 9:1). The divine credentials are cosmic: God stretches the heavens (creation), lays the earth's foundation (sustaining), and forms the human spirit (intimate personal creation). These three acts encompass the macro-cosmic and the micro-personal — the God who speaks here is both cosmic architect and intimate creator of each person's inner life. This introduction establishes the authority behind the eschatological visions that follow.
2. The image sap ra'al ('cup of staggering/reeling') pictures Jerusalem as a poisoned cup: the nations will drink (attack) but will stagger and collapse from the effects. The same image appears in Isaiah 51:17, 22 and Jeremiah 25:15-17, where the 'cup of God's wrath' makes nations reel. The note about Judah being caught in the siege suggests the surrounding region will be drawn into the conflict involuntarily.
3. The second image: even ma'amasah ('a stone of burden/lifting'). The picture is of a massive stone in a strongman contest — everyone who tries to lift it will injure themselves (sarot yissaretu, 'they will certainly be cut/lacerated'). The combination of the staggering cup and the immovable rock presents Jerusalem as simultaneously toxic and immovable — attacking it destroys the attacker. The phrase kol goyei ha'arets ('all the nations of the earth') establishes the universal scope of the final siege.
4. Three divine strikes against the attacking cavalry: timmahon ('panic/bewilderment'), shigga'on ('madness'), and ivvaron ('blindness'). These three plagues echo the covenant curses of Deuteronomy 28:28 exactly — 'The LORD will strike you with madness, blindness, and bewilderment of heart.' The curse intended for disobedient Israel is redirected against the nations. Meanwhile, God 'opens his eyes' (ephqach et-einai) over Judah — watchful protection contrasted with the blinding of enemies.
5. The allufei Yehudah ('leaders/clan chiefs of Judah') recognize that Jerusalem's strength is not military but theological — it comes 'through the LORD of Armies.' The verb amtsah ('strength/stronghold for me') acknowledges divine empowerment. The leaders from the surrounding countryside see the city's defense and attribute it correctly to God, not to walls or warriors.
6. Two fire images: kiyor esh be'etsim ('a fire pot among timber') and lappid esh be'amir ('a flaming torch among sheaves'). Both picture the same reality: Judah's leaders, empowered by God, will be irresistible against the surrounding nations. The phrase veyashvah Yerushalaim od tachteiha biYrushalaim ('Jerusalem will again dwell in its place, in Jerusalem') is emphatically redundant — the city will remain exactly where it belongs, unmoved by the siege.

7. God saves the vulnerable rural areas (ohalei Yehudah, 'tents of Judah') before saving the fortified capital, preventing urban arrogance. The phrase *tip'eret beit-David* ('the honor/glory of the house of David') suggests the Davidic dynasty still has prestige even without political power. God deliberately structures the deliverance to prevent the city-dwellers from boasting over the countryside — a concern for social equity within the delivered community.
8. The transformation is hyperbolic and deliberate: the *hannikhsal* ('the stumbling one, the weakest') will be *kedavid* ('like David') — Israel's greatest warrior. And David's house will be *ke'lohim* ('like God, like a divine being') — specifically *kemal'akh YHWH* ('like the angel of the LORD') who goes before them as a vanguard. This represents the ultimate empowerment: human weakness becomes divine strength. The angel of the LORD 'before them' evokes the Exodus pillar of cloud and fire (Exodus 14:19).
9. The verb *avaqesh* ('I will seek, I will set out to') indicates deliberate, purposeful divine action — not reactive defense but proactive destruction of all nations that attack Jerusalem. The comprehensive 'all the nations' (*kol-haggoyim*) makes the scope universal.
10. The first-to-third person shift (*elai/alav*, 'on me/for him') is in the Hebrew text and should not be harmonized or smoothed over. The verb *daqaru* ('they pierced') is from *daqar* ('to thrust through, to pierce with a weapon') — it denotes a fatal wound. John 19:37 quotes this verse at the crucifixion: 'They will look on the one they have pierced.' Revelation 1:7 extends it: 'every eye will see him, even those who pierced him.' The mourning comparison — for an only child (*yachid*), for a firstborn (*bekhor*) — represents the most extreme grief in ancient culture. The outpouring of the Spirit enables the recognition and mourning — repentance is itself a divine gift.
11. The reference to *Hadad-rimmon* in the plain of Megiddo most likely refers to the mourning for King Josiah, who was killed in battle against Pharaoh Neco at Megiddo in 609 BCE (2 Kings 23:29-30; 2 Chronicles 35:22-25). Josiah's death was a national catastrophe — the last good king of Judah, cut down in his prime. The mourning for the pierced one will be equally devastating. *Hadad-rimmon* may be a place name near Megiddo or a compound reference to the storm deities *Hadad* and *Rimmon*, representing mourning rituals.
12. The mourning is described with meticulous detail — each clan separately, men and women separately. This is not public spectacle but deeply personal grief. The house of David represents the royal line. The house of Nathan may refer to David's son Nathan (2 Samuel 5:14) — an alternate branch of the Davidic dynasty — or the prophet Nathan. The separation of men and women intensifies the picture of individual, private mourning.
13. The house of Levi represents the priestly line — the second major division of Israel's leadership after the Davidic monarchy. The *Shimeites* are a sub-clan of Levi (Numbers 3:21). The pairing of David/Nathan (royal) with Levi/Shimei (priestly) means both major leadership structures — kings and priests — mourn privately and deeply. The fourfold repetition of *levad* ('by itself') in verses 12-13 emphasizes the isolation of grief.
14. The final verse extends the mourning to 'all the remaining clans' — no family is excluded. The universality of the grief matches the universality of the guilt: 'they pierced' is collective, and the mourning is collective. The repetition of 'by itself' (*levad*) throughout this section occurs twelve times in verses 12-14, emphasizing the deeply personal nature of this corporate repentance.

13

Summary: *Zechariah 13 continues the eschatological vision of chapters 12-14, opening with a fountain for cleansing sin and impurity, then moving to the removal of idols and false prophets from the land. False prophets will be so thoroughly discredited that even their own parents will condemn them, and prophets themselves will deny their calling and claim to be farmers instead. The chapter culminates with the striking of the shepherd (v. 7) — quoted by Jesus in the Garden of Gethsemane — and the purification of a remnant through fire: two-thirds will be cut off, but one-third will be refined and will call on God's name.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 7 — 'Strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered' — is directly quoted by Jesus in Matthew 26:31 and Mark 14:27 on the night of his arrest, applying it to his own death and the scattering of the disciples. The Hebrew addresses the 'sword' as an agent of God against 'my shepherd' (*ro'i*) and 'the man who is my companion' (*gever amiti*) — an extraordinarily intimate title suggesting someone who stands as God's equal or partner. The refining-by-fire imagery (vv. 8-9) parallels Malachi 3:2-3 and Isaiah 48:10, presenting suffering not as punishment but as purification. The covenant renewal formula in verse 9 — 'I will say, They are my people; and they will say, The LORD is my God' — is the culmination of all covenant promises.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship of 13:7-9 to the preceding context is debated. Some scholars see the shepherd of verse 7 as the worthless shepherd of 11:17, but the intimate titles ('my shepherd,' 'the man who is my companion') suggest a good shepherd — one whose striking leads paradoxically to the purification of the remnant. The phrase *gever amiti* ('the man of my companionship/union') uses *amit*, which appears primarily in Leviticus for one's close associate or covenant partner. We preserve the ambiguity of the shepherd's identity while noting the christological reading.*

Connections: The cleansing fountain (v. 1) connects to Ezekiel 36:25 ('I will sprinkle clean water on you') and John 19:34 (water flowing from Christ's side). The struck shepherd (v. 7) is quoted in Matthew 26:31 and Mark 14:27. The refining by fire parallels Malachi 3:2-3, Isaiah 48:10, and 1 Peter 1:6-7. The covenant renewal formula (v. 9) echoes Hosea 2:23, Jeremiah 31:33, and Ezekiel 37:27. The two-thirds/one-third remnant echoes Ezekiel 5:1-4.

¹On that day a fountain will be opened for the house of David and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, for sin and for impurity. ²On that day — declares the LORD of Armies — I will cut off the names of the idols from the land, and they will be remembered no more. I will also remove the prophets and the spirit of impurity from the land. ³If anyone still prophesies, his own father and mother who bore him will say to him, 'You will not live, because you have spoken lies in the name of the LORD.' And his father and mother who bore him will pierce him when he prophesies. ⁴On that day every prophet will be ashamed of his vision when he prophesies. They will not put on the hairy cloak in order to deceive. ⁵Each will say, 'I am not a prophet. I am a farmer — the land has been my livelihood since my youth.' ⁶If someone asks him, 'What are these wounds between your arms?' he will say, 'These are wounds I received in the house of my friends.'

⁷"Awake, sword, against my shepherd,
against the man who is my companion!"
declares the LORD of Armies.
"Strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered,
and I will turn my hand against the little ones."

⁸In the whole land — declares the LORD — two-thirds will be cut off and perish, but one-third will be left in it.

⁹I will bring the third through the fire
and refine them as silver is refined,
and test them as gold is tested.
They will call on my name,
and I will answer them.
I will say, 'They are my people,'
and they will say, 'The LORD is my God.'

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The maqor niphttach ('opened fountain') is a permanent, flowing source of cleansing — not a one-time event but an ongoing provision. The combination lechatat uleniddah ('for sin and for impurity') covers both moral guilt (chatat, 'sin/missing the mark') and ritual defilement (niddah, 'impurity,' particularly menstrual impurity in Leviticus). Together they represent comprehensive cleansing — nothing is left uncovered. This fountain flows directly from the mourning and repentance described in 12:10-14.
2. Three things are purged: the names of idols (atsabbim, 'shaped images'), the false prophets, and the ruach hattum'ah ('spirit of impurity/uncleanness'). Cutting off the 'names' means erasing them from memory and language — the idols will not even be mentioned. The coupling of 'prophets' (without the qualifier 'false') with the 'spirit of impurity' is jarring — it suggests that prophetic activity itself has become so corrupted that the institution must be removed, not just reformed.
3. The severity is shocking: parents will condemn and even execute their own child for false prophecy. The verb udqaru (they will pierce him) is the same verb (daqar) used in 12:10 for the pierced one — creating an intertextual connection between the two piercings. The law of Deuteronomy 13:1-5 and 18:20 mandated death for false prophets; here, even parents enforce it. The repetition of 'his father and mother who bore him' emphasizes the intimacy of the relationship that is overridden by covenant loyalty.
4. The prophetic institution is so thoroughly discredited that prophets will be ashamed (yevoshu) of their own visions. The adderet se'ar ('hairy cloak') was the distinctive garment of prophets (cf. 2 Kings 1:8 for Elijah; Matthew 3:4 for John the Baptist). They will abandon even the outward sign of their calling. The phrase lema'an kachesh ('in order to deceive') reveals the motive behind their prophecy — they were never genuine.
5. The denial is complete: lo navi anokhi ('I am not a prophet') — a striking contrast to Amos 7:14, where the phrase carries different force. The claim to be ish oved adamah ('a man who works the soil') is a retreat into agricultural anonymity. The former false prophet now claims he has always been a farmer. The phrase adam hiqnani minne'urai ('a man/the ground acquired me from my youth') is difficult — it may mean 'someone made me a servant from youth' or 'the land has been my occupation from youth.' We follow the latter reading.

6. The 'wounds between your arms/hands' (makkot bein yadekha) may refer to self-laceration wounds from ecstatic prophetic practices (cf. 1 Kings 18:28, where the prophets of Baal cut themselves). The false prophet's excuse — 'I received them in the house of my friends' (beit me'ahavai) — is a transparent lie: he attributes cult-related wounds to a domestic incident. The phrase bein yadekha is literally 'between your hands,' likely meaning the chest/torso area between the arms. Christian tradition has sometimes read this christologically, but the context is clearly about exposed false prophets.
7. Jesus directly quotes this verse in Matthew 26:31 and Mark 14:27 on the night of his arrest, applying it to himself. The command is addressed to the 'sword' (cherev) as God's agent — personified and summoned to action. The shepherd is called ro'i ('my shepherd') — God's own shepherd — and ge'ever amiti ('the man who is my companion'). The word amit is deeply intimate, denoting a close associate or covenant partner (Leviticus 6:2; 18:20; 19:11, 15, 17; 24:19; 25:14, 15, 17). The striking of this shepherd is divinely commanded, and the scattering is its consequence. The final phrase — vahashivoti yadi al-hatso'arim ('I will turn my hand upon the little ones') — is ambiguous: 'turn my hand against' can mean judgment or 'turn my hand to' in protection. The context of verses 8-9 suggests a refining purpose.
8. The proportions are devastating: pi-shenayim ('two-thirds,' literally 'a mouth of two') will be cut off (yikkartu) and die (yigva'u). Only the shelishit ('third') survives. This echoes Ezekiel 5:1-4, where the prophet divides his hair into thirds representing different fates for Jerusalem. The severity establishes the remnant theology: survival is not guaranteed by membership in the covenant people but by divine selection through refining fire.
9. The refining metaphor — silver (tsaraph) and gold (bachan) — represents two stages of testing: tsaraph ('smelt, refine') removes dross from silver by heat, and bachan ('test, prove, assay') verifies gold's purity. The surviving third is not merely spared but transformed by fire. The final exchange — amarti ammi hu / vehu yomar YHWH Elohai ('I will say, My people / they will say, The LORD is my God') — is the bilateral covenant formula in its most intimate form. This is the goal of all redemptive history: mutual belonging between God and his refined people.

14

Summary: *Zechariah 14, the final chapter of Zechariah, is the most fully developed day-of-the-LORD passage in the post-exilic prophets. It describes a cataclysmic last battle against Jerusalem: the city is taken, houses looted, women violated — then the LORD goes out to fight. The Mount of Olives splits in two, creating a great valley for escape. A day of unique light comes, living waters flow from Jerusalem east and west, and the LORD becomes king over all the earth. The nations that survive the battle will come yearly to Jerusalem to worship at the Feast of Tabernacles. Even the bells on horses and the cooking pots in Jerusalem will be inscribed 'Holy to the LORD.' The entire city becomes a sanctuary.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The declaration in verse 9 — 'The LORD will be king over all the earth. On that day the LORD will be one and his name one' — is one of the most exalted monotheistic statements in the Hebrew Bible, echoing and amplifying the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4). The living waters flowing from Jerusalem (v. 8) inform the river of life in Revelation 22:1-2. The universalization of holiness — even horse bells and cooking pots become 'Holy to the LORD' (vv. 20-21) — abolishes the distinction between sacred and secular. The entire created order becomes a sanctuary. The Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot) as the universal pilgrimage festival (vv. 16-19) is significant because Sukkot celebrates both harvest thanksgiving and God's provision in the wilderness — themes of gratitude and dependence that all nations share.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter contains the most violent imagery in Zechariah (vv. 2, 12-15), juxtaposed with the most universalist vision (vv. 9, 16, 20-21). This tension between judgment and inclusion is characteristic of eschatological prophecy. The plague described in verse 12 — flesh rotting while standing — is gruesome and has been compared to modern descriptions of nuclear effects, though such comparisons are anachronistic. The phrase YHWH echad ushemo echad (v. 9) can be read as 'the LORD is one and his name is one' or 'the LORD will be the only one and his name the only one' — the Hebrew echad ('one/alone/unique') carries both meanings.*

Connections: *The Mount of Olives splitting (v. 4) is the site of Jesus's ascension (Acts 1:11-12). Living waters (v. 8) inform Ezekiel 47:1-12, Joel 3:18, and Revelation 22:1-2. The universal kingship (v. 9) fulfills the vision of Daniel 7:13-14 and Psalm 97:1. The Feast of Tabernacles pilgrimage (vv. 16-19) connects to Isaiah 2:2-4. 'Holy to the LORD' on the horse bells (v. 20) echoes the high priest's turban inscription (Exodus 28:36). The abolition of the distinction between sacred and secular anticipates the new Jerusalem of Revelation 21:22 ('I saw no temple in the city').*

¹A day is coming for the LORD when your plunder will be divided in your midst. ²I will gather all the nations against Jerusalem for battle. The city will be captured, the houses plundered, and the women violated. Half the city will go into exile, but the rest of the people will not be cut off from the city. ³Then the LORD will go out and fight against those nations, as he fights on a day of battle. ⁴On that day his feet will stand on the Mount of Olives, which faces Jerusalem on the east. The Mount of Olives will be split in two from east to west, forming a very great valley, as half the mountain moves north and half moves south. ⁵You will flee through the valley of my mountains, for the valley between the mountains will reach to Azal. You will flee as you fled from the earthquake in the days of King Uzziah of Judah. Then the LORD my God will come, and all the holy ones with him. ⁶On that day there will be no light — the luminaries will diminish. ⁷It will be a unique day — known only to the LORD — neither day nor night. And at evening time there will be light. ⁸On that day, living waters will flow out from Jerusalem — half toward the eastern sea and half toward the western sea, in summer and in winter alike. ⁹The LORD will be king over all the earth. On that day the LORD will be one and his name one. ¹⁰The whole land will be transformed into a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem, but Jerusalem will be raised up and inhabited in its place — from the Gate of Benjamin to the site of the First Gate, to the Corner Gate, and from the Tower of Hananel to the royal winepresses. ¹¹People will dwell in it, and never again will there be a decree of total destruction. Jerusalem will be inhabited in security. ¹²This will be the plague with which the LORD will strike all the peoples who waged war against Jerusalem: their flesh will rot while they are still standing on their feet, their eyes will rot in their sockets, and their tongues will rot in their mouths. ¹³On that day a great panic from the LORD will fall on them. Each will seize the hand of his neighbor, and each will raise his hand against his neighbor. ¹⁴Judah too will fight at Jerusalem, and the wealth of all the surrounding nations will be gathered — gold, silver, and clothing in great abundance. ¹⁵The same plague will strike the horse, the mule, the camel, the donkey, and every animal in those camps — the same plague as on the people. ¹⁶Then all the survivors from the nations that came against Jerusalem will go up year after year to worship the King, the LORD of Armies, and to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. ¹⁷If any of the families of the earth do not go up to Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of Armies, no rain will fall on them. ¹⁸If the family of Egypt does not go up and does not come, then the plague that the LORD strikes upon the nations that do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles will fall on them as well. ¹⁹This will be the punishment of Egypt and the punishment of all nations that do not go up to celebrate the Feast of Tabernacles. ²⁰On that day, 'Holy to the LORD' will be inscribed on the bells of the horses, and the cooking pots in the house of the LORD will be like the sacred basins before the altar. ²¹Every pot in Jerusalem and in Judah will be holy to the LORD of Armies. All who come to sacrifice will take from them and cook in them. On that day there will no longer be a trader in the house of the LORD of Armies.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase yom ba laYHWH ('a day coming for/belonging to the LORD') introduces the eschatological 'day of the LORD' — the decisive moment of divine intervention. The address is to Jerusalem, and the spoil (shelalekh) being divided 'in your midst' means the enemy is inside the city, dividing loot — the most dire stage of siege warfare.
2. God himself gathers the nations — the assault is divinely orchestrated, not merely permitted. The horrors are stated bluntly: houses plundered (nushassu), women violated (tishshagalnah — the verb is deliberately coarse, and some manuscripts use a euphemistic substitute). Half the population goes into exile. But the critical qualifier: veyeter ha'am lo yikkaret min-ha'ir ('the rest of the people will not be cut off from the city') — a remnant survives. The darkest moment precedes the divine intervention of verse 3.
3. The divine warrior motif: veyatsa YHWH venilcham ('the LORD will go out and fight'). The comparison keyom hillachamo beyom qerav ('as on a day of battle') refers to God's historical interventions — the Exodus, the Red Sea, Joshua's conquests. The past tense of God's warfare guarantees the future: what he has done, he will do again.
4. The anthropomorphic description — God's feet standing on the Mount of Olives — is the most physically vivid theophany in the prophets. The Mount of Olives, directly east of the temple mount, is the site from which Jesus ascended (Acts 1:9-12), and the angels promised he would return 'in the same way' (Acts 1:11). The geological splitting — north and south halves separating to create an east-west valley — provides an escape route for the besieged population. The seismic imagery may reflect actual geological fault lines in the region.
5. The earthquake in Uzziah's reign is also referenced in Amos 1:1 — it was evidently so devastating that it became a historical reference point. The destination Azal is unknown but apparently distant enough to represent full escape. The climactic statement — uva YHWH Elohai kol-qedoshim immakh ('the LORD my God will come, and all the holy ones with you') — describes a divine arrival accompanied by a heavenly army. The qedoshim ('holy ones') may be angels, glorified saints, or both. Paul echoes this in 1 Thessalonians 3:13.

6. The Hebrew is difficult: or yeqarot veqippa'on. The word yeqarot may mean 'precious/brilliant' or 'thick/heavy,' and qippa'on means 'congealing, freezing, thickening.' The overall sense is a disruption of normal celestial light — a day unlike any other, where the ordinary categories of light and dark no longer apply. This cosmic disruption signals that the created order itself is being transformed.
7. The yom echad ('unique/singular day') belongs to God alone — hu yivvada' laYHWH ('it is known to the LORD'). The categories of day and night are suspended: lo-yom velo-laylah ('not day and not night'). The final reversal — le'et erev yihyeh-or ('at evening time there will be light') — overturns the creation order where evening leads to darkness. On this day, evening brings light instead. The ordinary rhythm of creation yields to a new divine order.
8. The mayim chayyim ('living waters') — fresh, flowing, life-giving water — stream from Jerusalem in both directions: toward the yam haqqadmoni ('eastern/former sea' = the Dead Sea) and the yam ha'acharon ('western/latter sea' = the Mediterranean). The Dead Sea, lifeless and stagnant, will receive life-giving water — Ezekiel 47:1-12 describes the same phenomenon in greater detail. The phrase baqqayits uvachoreph ('in summer and in winter') means these waters never dry up — unlike seasonal wadis, they flow perpetually. Revelation 22:1-2 transforms this into the river of the water of life flowing from the throne of God.
9. This is the theological climax of the entire book of Zechariah. The phrase YHWH lemelekh al-kol-ha'arets ('the LORD will be king over all the earth') extends the kingship beyond Israel to universal scope. The declaration YHWH echad ushemo echad ('the LORD is one and his name is one') echoes and amplifies the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4). The word echad ('one, alone, unique') carries both numerical and qualitative force — the LORD is the sole deity and the uniquely incomparable God. On that day, what Israel believes will become what all creation knows.
10. The surrounding terrain is flattened (ka'aravah, 'like the Arabah/plain') while Jerusalem is elevated (ra'amah, 'raised up') — the city becomes the geographical high point, the natural center of all the land. Geba (north of Jerusalem) and Rimmon (south) mark the extent of Judah's territory. The Jerusalem landmarks — Benjamin's Gate, First Gate, Corner Gate, Tower of Hananel, royal winepresses — trace the city's perimeter, indicating full habitation within its walls. The topographical transformation fulfills Isaiah 2:2: 'The mountain of the LORD's house will be established as the highest of the mountains.'
11. The word cherem ('total destruction, the ban') is the most extreme form of warfare in the Hebrew Bible — the complete annihilation of a city and everything in it (cf. Joshua 6:17-21, Jericho). The promise that cherem lo yihyeh-od ('there will never again be a decree of total destruction') means Jerusalem's destruction is permanently over. The phrase lava'etach ('in security') describes the absence of fear — the city will never again face the terror of siege or destruction.
12. The plague (maggephah) is described with horrifying specificity: flesh, eyes, and tongue dissolve (himmeq, 'rot, decay, dissolve') while the victim is still alive and standing. The three body parts represent the whole person: flesh (physical being), eyes (perception), and tongue (speech). The instantaneous decomposition is divine judgment without human weapons — the attacking nations are destroyed by God directly.
13. The mehumat-YHWH ('panic/confusion from the LORD') is a divine weapon used throughout Israel's history (cf. Judges 7:22; 1 Samuel 14:20) — God causes enemies to turn on each other. The phrase 'seize the hand of his neighbor... raise his hand against his neighbor' pictures chaos: allies become enemies, coalition partners attack each other. The same pattern appeared in Haggai 2:22 and Zechariah 11:6.
14. The preposition bi ('at/in') in tilachem biYerushalaim could mean 'fight at Jerusalem' (alongside it) or 'fight against Jerusalem' (attacking it). Given the context of restoration, 'at Jerusalem' (defending it) is the more likely reading. The plunder gathered from the defeated nations — gold, silver, clothing — echoes the Exodus plundering of Egypt (Exodus 12:35-36). God's people receive the wealth of their would-be destroyers.
15. The plague extends to the animals — the entire war machine (horses, mules, camels, donkeys) is destroyed. The comprehensive list of pack and war animals means the attacking army loses all means of transport and retreat. The phrase kammaggephah hazzot ('like this plague') ties the animal plague to the human plague of verse 12.
16. The transformation is breathtaking: the nations that attacked Jerusalem now make annual pilgrimage to worship there. The title hammelekh YHWH Tsevaot ('the King, the LORD of Armies') combines royal and military titles. The Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot) is specified rather than Passover or Weeks — Sukkot celebrates harvest thanksgiving and God's provision in the wilderness, themes accessible to all peoples. It is also the most joyful of Israel's festivals (Deuteronomy 16:13-15).
17. The consequence for refusing the pilgrimage is agricultural: no rain. This reverses the opening call of 10:1 ('ask the LORD for rain') — rain depends on relationship with the LORD, and refusal to worship results in drought. The punishment is measured, not annihilating — withholding rain rather than destroying the nation. There is still opportunity for obedience.
18. Egypt is singled out because it does not depend on rainfall — the Nile provides irrigation. The drought punishment of verse 17 would not affect Egypt, so a different punishment is specified: the plague (maggephah) from verse 12. Egypt cannot exempt itself from the pilgrimage obligation by geography — God has a plague for every situation. The specific mention of Israel's ancient oppressor now joining the Sukkot pilgrimage is deeply ironic and redemptive.
19. The word chattat can mean both 'sin' and 'punishment for sin' — here it carries the latter sense. The universality is emphasized: Egypt AND kol-haggoyim ('all the nations'). No nation is exempt from the obligation to worship the LORD at Jerusalem during Sukkot.
20. The phrase qodesh laYHWH ('Holy to the LORD') was inscribed on the gold plate attached to the high priest's turban (Exodus 28:36) — the most sacred inscription in Israel's worship. Now it appears on horse bells (metsilot hassus) — the most mundane objects imaginable. The cooking pots (sirot) in the temple, used for preparing sacrificial food, will be elevated to the status of the mizraqim ('sacred basins') used to catch and sprinkle

sacrificial blood at the altar. The distinction between sacred and common vessels is abolished — everything becomes holy.

- 21.** The universalization of holiness reaches its climax: kol-sir ('every pot') in the entire region — not just the temple — becomes qodesh laYHWH Tsevaot. Any pot can be used for sacred purposes because all things are now holy. The final statement — velo-yihyeh khena'ani od beVeit-YHWH ('there will no longer be a Canaanite/trader in the house of the LORD') — is the book's last word. Khena'ani can mean 'Canaanite' (ritually unclean foreigner) or 'trader/merchant' (cf. Proverbs 31:24). Both readings work: no unclean person and no commercial exploitation will defile God's house. The temple becomes what it was always meant to be — a space of pure worship, free from both impurity and commerce. Jesus's cleansing of the temple (Matthew 21:12-13) enacts this prophecy.

Malachi

Summary: *Malachi 1 opens the final prophetic book of the Old Testament with God's declaration of love for Israel: 'I have loved you.' When Israel questions this love, God points to the contrast between Jacob and Esau — Jacob chosen, Esau's territory made a desolation. The chapter then turns to its central indictment: the priests are offering defiled sacrifices — blind, lame, and sick animals that they would never dare present to their own governor. God would rather someone shut the temple doors than continue accepting these worthless offerings. The chapter climaxes with a stunning universalist declaration: 'From the rising of the sun to its setting, my name is great among the nations' (v. 11).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Malachi's distinctive literary form is the disputation dialogue — God makes a statement, the people challenge it ('How have you loved us?' 'How have we defiled you?'), and God responds with evidence. This pattern occurs six times in the book and gives it a forensic, courtroom quality unique among the prophets. The name 'Malachi' means 'my messenger' and may be a title rather than a proper name (cf. 3:1, where 'my messenger' appears). The declaration that God's name is great 'among the nations' and that 'pure offerings' are presented to him everywhere (v. 11) is one of the most universalist statements in the Hebrew Bible — either describing gentile worship that God accepts or prophesying a future universal worship.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'I have loved Jacob but Esau I have hated' (vv. 2-3) is theologically challenging. The Hebrew *sane* ('hate') in this context means 'rejected, not chosen, set aside' rather than emotional hatred — it is election language, not emotion language. Paul quotes this in Romans 9:13. The word *mal'akhi* ('my messenger') in 1:1 may be the prophet's actual name or a title derived from 3:1 — we treat it as a proper name following convention. The claim that God's name is great 'among the nations' (v. 11) in the present tense is debated — is it describing current gentile God-fearers, or is it a prophetic present for a future reality?*

Connections: *The Jacob/Esau contrast reaches back to Genesis 25:23 and 27:27-40. Paul quotes 'Jacob I loved, Esau I hated' in Romans 9:13. The defiled-sacrifice indictment echoes Deuteronomy 15:21 and 17:1 (no blemished animals). The universalist statement (v. 11) connects to Isaiah 45:6, 59:19, and Psalm 113:3. The name Malachi ('my messenger') anticipates 3:1 and the Elijah prophecy of 4:5.*

¹An oracle: The word of the LORD to Israel through Malachi.

²"I have loved you," says the LORD.

But you say, "How have you loved us?"

"Was not Esau Jacob's brother?" declares the LORD. "Yet I loved Jacob,

³but Esau I have rejected. I have made his mountains a wasteland and given his inheritance to the jackals of the wilderness."

⁴Even if Edom says, 'We have been crushed, but we will rebuild the ruins,' this is what the LORD of Armies says: They may build, but I will tear down. They will be called 'the territory of wickedness' and 'the people with whom the LORD is angry forever.' ⁵Your own eyes will see this, and you will say, 'The LORD is great — even beyond the borders of Israel!'

⁶A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If I am a father, where is my honor? If I am a master, where is the reverence due me? says the LORD of Armies to you, priests, who despise my name.

You ask, 'How have we despised your name?'

⁷You offer defiled food on my altar.

You ask, 'How have we defiled you?'

By saying, 'The table of the LORD is contemptible.'

⁸When you offer a blind animal for sacrifice — is that not wrong? When you offer a lame or sick one — is that not wrong? Try presenting it to your governor! Would he be pleased with you? Would he show you favor? says the LORD of Armies. ⁹Now then, try entreating God's favor — will he be gracious to you? This has come from your hands — will he show any of you favor? says the LORD of Armies. ¹⁰If only one of you would shut the temple doors, so that you would not kindle useless fires on my altar! I take no pleasure in you, says the LORD of Armies, and I will not accept an offering from your hands. ¹¹For from the rising of the sun to its setting, my name is great among the nations. In every place incense is offered to my name, and a pure offering — for my name is great among the nations, says the LORD of Armies. ¹²But you profane it when you say, 'The Lord's table is defiled,' and, 'Its food is contemptible.' ¹³You also say, 'What a burden!' and you sniff at it contemptuously, says the LORD of Armies. You bring stolen, lame, and sick animals — you bring them as your offering! Should I accept this from your hands? says the LORD. ¹⁴Cursed is the cheat who has a healthy male in his flock and vows it but then sacrifices a blemished animal to the Lord. For I am a great King, says the LORD of Armies, and my name is feared among the nations.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *massa* ('oracle, burden') introduces the book as a weighty prophetic pronouncement. The name *Mal'akhi* means 'my messenger' and may be a proper name or a title. The LXX translates it as 'his messenger' (*angelou autou*), treating it as a descriptive title rather than a name. We follow the Masoretic tradition of reading it as a proper name. The preposition *beyad* ('by the hand of') indicates Malachi as the instrument of divine communication.
2. The first disputation dialogue opens immediately. God's declaration *ahavti etkhem* ('I have loved you') uses the perfect tense — completed, demonstrated, historical love. The people's retort *bammah ahavtanu* ('How/in what way have you loved us?') is not a genuine question but a challenge — they doubt God's love. God's response points to the choice of Jacob over Esau — twins, brothers, yet one chosen and one not. The verb *va'ohav et-Ya'aqov* ('yet I loved Jacob') begins the contrast completed in verse 3.
3. The Hebrew *sane'ti* ('I have hated') in covenant/election contexts means 'rejected, set aside, not chosen' rather than emotional hatred (cf. Genesis 29:31, where Leah is 'hated' = 'less loved'). Paul quotes this in Romans 9:13 to illustrate divine election. The contrast is between Jacob's descendants (Israel, restored from exile) and Esau's descendants (Edom, permanently devastated). Edom's mountains were indeed devastated — historically by Nabataean expansion and natural decline. The *tannot midbar* ('jackals of the wilderness') represent utter desolation.
4. Edom's resolve to rebuild — *venashuv venivneh* ('we will return and rebuild') — is defiant, but God's response is decisive: *hemmah yivnu va'ani eheros* ('they will build and I will tear down'). The contrast with Israel is implicit: Israel's rebuilding succeeds (Haggai, Zechariah), Edom's fails. The title *gevil rish'ah* ('territory of wickedness') and the phrase *za'am YHWH ad-olam* ('the LORD is angry forever') represent permanent divine judgment on Edom — a stark contrast to Israel, toward whom God's anger is temporary.
5. The statement *yigdal YHWH me'al ligevul Yisra'el* ('the LORD is great beyond the border of Israel') can mean either that God's greatness extends beyond Israel's borders (his sovereignty is universal) or that God will be praised beyond Israel's borders (the nations will acknowledge him). Either reading advances the universalist theme that will climax in verse 11. The people themselves will make this confession when they see the evidence.

6. The second disputation begins. God uses universally recognized social obligations — sons honor fathers, servants respect masters — to expose the priests' failure. The word *kavod* ('honor, glory') is from the same root as *kavod* ('weight, glory') — to honor is to treat as weighty, significant, important. The priests are *bozei shemi* ('despisers of my name') — they treat God's name as light, trivial, unimportant. Their retort *bammeh bazinu et-shimekha* ('How have we despised your name?') reveals oblivious guilt — they genuinely do not see their own contempt.
7. The word *lechem mego'al* ('defiled food/bread') refers to sacrificial offerings that fail to meet the requirements of purity. The altar is called *shulchan YHWH* ('the table of the LORD') — the sacrifice is God's meal, and the priests are serving him garbage. The word *nivzeh* ('contemptible, despised') is from *bazah* ('to despise') — the same root used for the priests' attitude toward God's name in verse 6. They have not said the words out loud, but their actions declare it.
8. The rhetorical question *ein ra* ('is it not evil/wrong?') is sarcastic — the priests have convinced themselves that defective offerings are acceptable. The devastating test: *haqrivenu na lepechatekha* ('try offering it to your governor'). The Persian governor (*pechah*) would never accept a blind, lame, or sick animal as a tribute gift. The priests give God less respect than they give a human official. The phrase *hayissa panekha* ('would he lift your face?' = would he show you favor?) exposes the double standard.
9. The sarcasm continues: *challu-na penei-El* ('try softening God's face'). The priests who offer defective sacrifices are invited to pray for God's favor — but the question is rhetorical: with such offerings, why would God listen? The phrase *miyedikhem haytah zot* ('this has come from your hands') places the blame squarely on the priests — they are the gatekeepers who allowed substandard sacrifices.
10. God's wish is devastating: *mi gam-bakhem veyisgor delatayim* ('Who among you would shut the doors?') — he would rather the temple be closed than continue receiving worthless worship. The phrase *lo ta'iru mizbichi chinnam* ('you would not kindle fire on my altar for nothing') means their altar fires are pointless — they produce nothing of value. The declaration *ein-li chephets bakhem* ('I take no pleasure in you') is total rejection of the priestly ministry as currently practiced.
11. This is one of the most remarkable verses in the Hebrew prophets. The statement *gadol shemi baggoyim* ('my name is great among the nations') appears twice, framing the declaration. The present tense — not 'will be' but 'is' — has generated intense debate: (1) God already receives acceptable worship from gentile God-fearers; (2) the prophetic present expresses a future certainty as if already real; (3) the worship of the 'Most High God' in various cultures is accepted by the LORD. The phrase *uvkhol-maqom muqtar muggash lishmi* ('in every place incense is offered and brought to my name') implies that the nations, even without knowing the LORD by name, offer worship that he accepts — a stunning contrast to Israel's priests who know his name but despise it.
12. The verb *mechallelim* ('profaning') is from *chalal* ('to profane, to make common') — the opposite of *qadash* ('to make holy'). The priests profane God's name by treating his altar as defiled (*mecho'al*) and his food (*nivo*, 'its produce/fruit') as *nivzeh* ('contemptible'). The irony is sharp: the offerings are defiled not by some external contamination but by the priests' own contemptuous attitude. They have created the very profanation they describe.
13. The phrase *hinneh mattela'ah* ('What a weariness/burden!') reveals the priests' attitude: worship has become drudgery. The verb *hippachtem* ('you snuff/blow at it') is a gesture of contempt — blowing dismissively at the offering as if it were worthless. The addition of *gazul* ('stolen') to the list (alongside lame and sick) means some offerings are not even legitimately owned — animals taken by force or theft, offered to God. The rhetorical question *ha'ertseh otah miyedikhem* ('should I accept this from your hands?') expects the answer: absolutely not.
14. The *nokhel* ('cheat, deceiver') is someone who has a perfect animal (*zakhar*, 'a male' — the required unblemished sacrifice), vows it to God, but then substitutes a *mashchat* ('blemished, corrupted') animal. This is deliberate fraud against God — promising the best and delivering the worst. The curse (*arur*) is formal covenant-curse language. The closing declaration — *ki melekh gadol ani* ('for I am a great King') — is the theological basis for the entire indictment: a great king deserves great offerings. The phrase *shemi nora baggoyim* ('my name is feared among the nations') reprises verse 11 — the nations give God more respect than his own priests do.

2

Summary: *Malachi 2 continues the indictment of the priests (vv. 1-9) before turning to two new charges: the men of Judah have married foreign women and have divorced their Israelite wives (vv. 10-16). God warns that he will curse the priests' blessings and spread dung on their faces if they do not honor his name. The covenant with Levi — the priestly covenant of life and peace — is held up as the standard they have violated. The chapter then addresses the breaking of the 'covenant of our ancestors' through intermarriage and faithlessness toward 'the wife of your youth.' The chapter concludes with the third disputation: the people have wearied God by calling evil good.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 16 — traditionally rendered 'For the LORD, the God of Israel, says that he hates divorce' — is one of the most debated verses in the Hebrew Bible. The Hebrew is genuinely difficult. The verb *sane* ('hate') may have God or the divorcing husband as its subject, and the phrase *shalach* ('sending away') has been read multiple ways. Modern scholarship generally reads it as a conditional: 'If he hates her and divorces her... he covers his garment with violence.' We present*

the text carefully with extensive notes on the interpretive options. The covenant with Levi (vv. 4-7) provides an idealized portrait of the priestly calling: the priest's lips should guard knowledge, and people should seek instruction from his mouth, 'for he is the messenger of the LORD of Armies' (v. 7).

Translation Friction: *Verse 16 is the primary translation challenge. The MT reads ki-sane' shalach, which could be: (1) 'For he hates and divorces' (the divorcing husband is the subject — 'If one hates and divorces'); (2) 'For I hate divorce' (God is the subject — the traditional reading); (3) 'For he who hates, let him divorce' (an ironic permission). The LXX and other versions differ significantly. We follow a reading that preserves the difficulty while being syntactically defensible. The intermarriage issue (vv. 10-12) echoes Ezra 9-10 and Nehemiah 13:23-27, placing Malachi in the same post-exilic reform context.*

Connections: *The covenant with Levi (vv. 4-7) connects to Numbers 25:12-13 (the covenant of peace with Phinehas) and Deuteronomy 33:8-11 (Moses's blessing on Levi). The priest as 'messenger of the LORD of Armies' (v. 7) uses the same word as the book's title (mal'akh). The intermarriage critique connects to Ezra 9-10 and Nehemiah 13:23-27. The 'wife of your youth' language echoes Proverbs 5:18. The 'covering garment with violence' (v. 16) connects to the garment imagery of Ruth 3:9 (spreading a garment as protection).*

¹Now then, priests, this command is for you. ²If you will not listen, and if you will not take it to heart to give honor to my name, says the LORD of Armies, then I will send the curse upon you and I will curse your blessings. Indeed, I have already cursed them, because you are not taking it to heart. ³I am about to rebuke your offspring. I will spread dung on your faces — the dung from your festival offerings — and you will be carried away with it. ⁴Then you will know that I sent this command to you so that my covenant with Levi might continue, says the LORD of Armies. ⁵My covenant with him was one of life and peace, and I gave these to him as something requiring reverence. He revered me and stood in awe of my name. ⁶Truthful instruction was in his mouth, and no wrong was found on his lips. He walked with me in peace and integrity, and he turned many away from iniquity. ⁷For the lips of a priest should guard knowledge, and people should seek instruction from his mouth — for he is the messenger of the LORD of Armies. ⁸But you have turned from the way. You have caused many to stumble by your instruction. You have corrupted the covenant of Levi, says the LORD of Armies. ⁹So I have made you despised and humiliated before all the people, because you have not kept my ways but have shown partiality in your instruction. ¹⁰Do we not all have one father? Did not one God create us? Why then do we deal treacherously with one another, profaning the covenant of our ancestors? ¹¹Judah has acted faithlessly. A detestable thing has been done in Israel and in Jerusalem: Judah has profaned the sanctuary of the LORD, which he loves, by marrying the daughter of a foreign god. ¹²May the LORD cut off from the tents of Jacob the man who does this — whoever he may be — even if he brings an offering to the LORD of Armies. ¹³And this is another thing you do: you cover the LORD's altar with tears, with weeping and groaning, because he no longer regards the offering or accepts it favorably from your hand. ¹⁴You ask, 'Why?' Because the LORD has been a witness between you and the wife of your youth, against whom you have been faithless — though she is your companion and the wife of your covenant. ¹⁵Did not the one God make them and preserve the spirit of life for them? And what does the one God seek? Godly offspring! So guard yourselves in your spirit, and do not be faithless to the wife of your youth. ¹⁶"For if one hates and divorces," says the LORD, the God of Israel, "he covers his garment with violence," says the LORD of Armies. So guard yourselves in your spirit, and do not be faithless.

¹⁷You have wearied the LORD with your words.

You ask, 'How have we wearied him?'

By saying, 'Everyone who does evil is good in the eyes of the LORD, and he delights in them,' or, 'Where is the God of

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The direct address hakohanim ('priests') makes clear that the entire oracle of verses 1-9 targets the priestly class specifically. The mitsva ('commandment/charge') that follows is not a new law but a warning about the consequences of continued negligence.
2. The conditional threat: if the priests will not latet kavod lishmi ('give honor/weight to my name'), God will aroti et-birkoteikhem ('curse your blessings'). The priestly blessing (Numbers 6:24-26) was the priests' most sacred duty — God will turn their blessings into curses, rendering their ministry counterproductive. The shocking addition vegam arotihah ('indeed, I have already cursed them') means the judgment has already begun —

they are already pronouncing empty blessings.

3. The degradation is extreme: *vezeriti peresh al-peneikhem* ('I will spread dung on your faces'). The *peresh* ('dung, offal') is from the festival sacrifices (*chaggeikhhem*) — the intestinal waste that was supposed to be burned outside the camp (Exodus 29:14; Leviticus 4:11). God will take the refuse from their own hypocritical festivals and smear it on them. Being 'carried away with it' (*venasa etkhem elav*) means they will be thrown onto the dung heap — removed from priestly service in the most humiliating way possible.
4. The purpose of the warning is preservative, not merely punitive: *lihyot beriti et-Levi* ('so that my covenant with Levi might stand/continue'). God's goal is to restore the priestly covenant, not to destroy it. The 'covenant with Levi' refers to the priestly covenant tradition (Numbers 25:12-13; Deuteronomy 33:8-11; Nehemiah 13:29) — the special relationship between God and the Levitical priesthood.
5. The original Levitical covenant is described with two gifts: *hachayyim vehashshalom* ('life and peace'). In exchange, God expected *mora* ('reverence, awe'). The ideal Levite (Levi himself, or the patriarchal priests) *vayira'eni* ('feared/revered me') and *umippenei shemi nichat hu* ('was shattered/humbled before my name'). The word *nichat* ('shattered, dismayed, humbled') is intense — true reverence involves being overwhelmed by God's holiness, not comfortable familiarity.
6. The ideal priest's qualifications: *torat emet* ('truthful instruction/torah') on his lips, no *avlah* ('wrong, injustice'), walking with God *beshalom uvemishor* ('in peace and in uprightness'), and turning many from *avon* ('iniquity'). This portrait presents the priest as primarily a teacher and moral guide, not merely a ritual functionary. The phrase *halakh itti* ('he walked with me') uses the same language as Enoch (Genesis 5:22) and Noah (Genesis 6:9) — intimate companionship with God.
7. The ideal priestly function: guarding knowledge (*da'at*) and dispensing *torah* ('instruction'). The climactic identification — *ki mal'akh YHWH-Tsevaot hu* ('for he is the messenger of the LORD of Armies') — uses the same word *mal'akh* that appears in the book's title (*Mal'akhi*, 'my messenger') and in 3:1 ('I will send my messenger'). The priest is God's authorized representative — his messenger on earth. This elevates the priestly calling to angelic status while devastating the current priests who have abandoned it.
8. The contrast with the ideal priest is devastating: *sartem min-hadderekh* ('you have turned from the way') — departure from the priestly path; *hikhshaltem rabbim bat Torah* ('you caused many to stumble by the Torah/instruction') — their teaching leads people astray instead of guiding them; *shichchattem berit halevi* ('you have corrupted the covenant of Levi') — the covenant itself is damaged by their behavior.
9. Measure-for-measure justice: the priests who treated God as contemptible (*nivzeh*, 1:7, 12) are now themselves *nivzim ushephalim* ('despised and humiliated') before the people. Their partiality in instruction — *nos'im panim bat Torah* ('lifting faces in the Torah,' i.e., showing favoritism) — means they adjusted their teaching to favor the powerful rather than speaking truth impartially.
10. A new section begins with rhetorical questions establishing shared identity: *av echad* ('one father') and *El echad* ('one God') who created us all. The word *nivgad* ('deal treacherously, act faithlessly') is the key verb of this section, appearing five times in verses 10-16. It describes covenant betrayal — the breaking of sworn commitments. The *berit avoteinu* ('covenant of our ancestors') may refer to the Sinai covenant or the broader family/tribal bonds within Israel.
11. The word *to'evah* ('abomination, detestable thing') is the strongest term for covenant violation — used for the most serious moral and ritual offenses. The phrase *qodesh YHWH asher ahev* ('the holiness/sanctuary of the LORD which he loves') may refer to the temple ('the sanctuary he loves'), to the covenant people themselves ('the holy one[s] he loves'), or to the institution of Israelite marriage. The intermarriage described — *ba'al bat-el nekhar* ('marrying the daughter of a foreign god') — is not ethnic but religious: the objection is to women who worship foreign deities, bringing idolatry into Israelite households.
12. The phrase *ve'eoneh* ('aroused and answering' or 'witness and advocate') is an ancient idiom meaning 'anyone at all' — a merism covering the full range of persons. Some translate it 'teacher and student.' The point is universal: no one is exempt from judgment for this sin, even if he brings offerings (*umaggish minchah*). Religious ritual cannot compensate for covenant betrayal.
13. The 'tears' on the altar may be: (1) the tears of the divorced wives who come weeping to God's altar for justice; (2) the men's own tears when their offerings are rejected; (3) the figurative weeping of the altar itself. The first reading is most compelling in context — the abandoned wives cry out at God's altar, and their tears make the offerings of their faithless husbands unacceptable.
14. Another disputation: the men ask 'Why?' (*al-mah*) God won't accept their offerings. The answer: God himself is a witness (*he'id*) to the marriage covenant. The wife is described with three terms: *eshet ne'urekha* ('wife of your youth' — the one you married when young and passionate), *chavertekhka* ('your companion' — your intimate partner and friend), and *eshet beritekha* ('wife of your covenant' — the one bound to you by sworn oath). Each term intensifies the betrayal: they are abandoning not a stranger but a companion bound by covenant.
15. This is one of the most difficult verses in the Hebrew Bible textually. The phrase *velo-echad asah* ('did not the one/One make?') likely refers to God creating the first couple as one flesh (Genesis 2:24). The 'godly offspring' (*zera Elohim*) is God's purpose for faithful marriage — children raised in covenant faithfulness. The practical command — *venishmartem berukhakhem* ('guard yourselves in your spirit') — means maintaining inner integrity and commitment. The prohibition *al-yivgod* ('do not be faithless') uses the same verb that has dominated this section.
16. This verse is one of the most debated in the Hebrew Bible. The traditional reading ('I hate divorce') takes God as the subject of *sane* ('hate'). However, the Hebrew grammar more naturally reads *ki-sane' shalach* as 'for/if he hates, he divorces' — the divorcing husband is the subject. We render it as a conditional describing the man's action: 'if one hates and divorces, he covers his garment with violence.' The phrase *vekhissah chamas al-levusho* ('he covers violence on his garment') may mean (1) violence is as visible as a stain on clothing, or (2) the garment that should protect (cf.

Ruth 3:9, spreading the garment as a sign of protection) has become an instrument of violence. The repeated command *venishmartem berukhakhem* ('guard yourselves in your spirit') brackets the section.

17. The third disputation. The verb *hoga'tem* ('you have wearied') pictures God as exhausted by their words — not their volume but their content. The charge is twofold: either (1) they claim God approves of evil (*kol-oseh ra tov be'einei YHWH*, 'everyone doing evil is good in the LORD's eyes'), or (2) they question God's justice (*ayyeh Elohei hammishpat*, 'Where is the God of justice?'). Both statements deny divine moral governance — one says God approves evil, the other says he doesn't act against it. This sets up the coming of the messenger and the refiner in chapter 3.

3

Summary: *Malachi 3 answers the question posed at the end of chapter 2 ('Where is the God of justice?') with one of the most dramatic prophecies in the Hebrew Bible: 'I am sending my messenger, and he will prepare the way before me. Then suddenly the Lord whom you seek will come to his temple — the messenger of the covenant, in whom you delight. He is coming!' (v. 1). God will come as a refiner's fire and a launderer's soap, purifying the Levites. The chapter then addresses the people's failure to tithe — 'You are robbing me!' — and issues the famous challenge: 'Bring the full tithe into the storehouse... Test me in this!' (v. 10). The chapter closes with the book of remembrance written for those who fear the LORD, and the promise that God's treasured possession will be spared.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The messenger prophecy (v. 1) is quoted in all four Gospels as fulfilled by John the Baptist (Matthew 11:10; Mark 1:2; Luke 7:27; cf. John 1:23). The phrase *mal'akhi* ('my messenger') in verse 1 uses the same word as the book's title, creating a literary loop. The tithing challenge (v. 10) is unique in Scripture — God invites the people to 'test' (*bachan*) him, using the same word applied to gold-testing in Zechariah 13:9. The 'book of remembrance' (*sepher zikkaron*, v. 16) echoes the heavenly books in Exodus 32:32-33, Psalm 69:28, and Daniel 12:1, anticipating the 'book of life' in Revelation 20:12.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'my messenger' (v. 1) versus 'the messenger of the covenant' is debated: are they the same figure or two different figures? The syntax allows both readings. We treat them as likely two figures — the preparatory messenger (John the Baptist) and the Lord himself ('the messenger of the covenant'). The tithing passage (vv. 8-10) uses language from the priestly Torah (Leviticus 27:30; Numbers 18:21-24) and raises questions about whether the tithe obligation applies beyond the Jerusalem temple system. We render the text without imposing later theological interpretation.*

Connections: *The messenger prophecy (v. 1) is quoted in Matthew 11:10, Mark 1:2, and Luke 7:27. The refiner's fire (v. 2) connects to Zechariah 13:9 and Isaiah 48:10. The covenant with Levi (v. 3) continues from 2:4-7. The tithing command (v. 10) connects to Leviticus 27:30, Numbers 18:21-24, and Deuteronomy 14:22-29. The 'book of remembrance' (v. 16) connects to Exodus 32:32-33, Psalm 69:28, and Daniel 12:1. The term *segullah* ('treasured possession,' v. 17) echoes Exodus 19:5 and Deuteronomy 7:6.*

¹"I am sending my messenger, and he will clear the way before me. Then suddenly the Lord whom you are seeking will come to his temple — the messenger of the covenant in whom you delight. He is indeed coming," says the LORD of Armies. ²But who can endure the day of his coming? Who can stand when he appears? For he is like a refiner's fire and like a launderer's soap. ³He will sit as a refiner and purifier of silver. He will purify the sons of Levi and refine them like gold and silver, until they present offerings to the LORD in righteousness. ⁴Then the offering of Judah and Jerusalem will be pleasing to the LORD, as in the days of old, as in former years. ⁵"I will draw near to you for judgment. I will be a swift witness against sorcerers, adulterers, and those who swear falsely, against those who defraud workers of their wages, who oppress widows and the fatherless, who turn aside the foreigner, and who do not fear me," says the LORD of Armies. ⁶For I, the LORD, have not changed, and you, sons of Jacob, have not been destroyed.

⁷From the days of your ancestors you have turned from my statutes and have not kept them. Return to me and I will return to you, says the LORD of Armies.

You ask, 'How shall we return?'

⁸Will a person rob God? Yet you are robbing me!
 You ask, 'How are we robbing you?'
 In tithes and contributions.

⁹You are cursed with a curse, because you — the whole nation — are robbing me. ¹⁰Bring the full tithe into the storehouse so that there may be food in my house. Test me in this, says the LORD of Armies, and see if I will not open the windows of heaven for you and pour out a blessing until there is more than enough. ¹¹I will rebuke the devourer for you so that it will not destroy the produce of your soil, and the vine in your field will not fail to bear fruit, says the LORD of Armies. ¹²All the nations will call you blessed, for you will be a land of delight, says the LORD of Armies.

¹³"Your words have been harsh against me," says the LORD.
 You ask, "What have we said against you?"

¹⁴You have said, 'It is useless to serve God. What have we gained by keeping his requirements and walking in mourning before the LORD of Armies?' ¹⁵So now we call the arrogant blessed. Those who do wickedness prosper, and those who test God escape punishment.'" ¹⁶Then those who feared the LORD spoke to one another. The LORD paid attention and listened, and a book of remembrance was written before him for those who fear the LORD and honor his name. ¹⁷"They will be mine," says the LORD of Armies, "on the day when I act — my treasured possession. I will spare them as a man spares his own son who serves him." ¹⁸Then you will again see the distinction between the righteous and the wicked, between the one who serves God and the one who does not.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse contains three figures: (1) mal'akhi ('my messenger') who prepares the way — identified in Mark 1:2 with John the Baptist; (2) ha'Adon ('the Lord') who comes to his temple — God himself; (3) mal'akh habberit ('the messenger of the covenant') in whom they delight. Whether (2) and (3) are the same figure is debated. The word pit'om ('suddenly') carries a threatening edge — God's arrival will be without warning, catching people unprepared. The ironic phrase asher-attem mevaqeshim ('whom you are seeking') and asher-attem chaphetsim ('in whom you delight') turns the people's own desires against them: they asked for the God of justice, and now he is coming — but they may not like what justice looks like.
2. The rhetorical questions — mi mekhalkel ('who can endure?') and mi ha'omed ('who can stand?') — expose the naivety of asking 'Where is the God of justice?' (2:17). When justice comes, it burns. Two purification images: esh metsareph ('a refiner's fire') that burns away impurities from metal, and borit mekhavesim ('a launderer's soap/lye') that scrubs stains from fabric. Together they represent complete purification — internal (fire removes embedded impurity) and external (soap removes surface contamination).
3. The image of sitting (veyashav) is significant — the refiner sits before the crucible, watching intently until the metal is pure enough to reflect his own face. The sons of Levi are purified first because their purification is prerequisite to the purification of the community's worship. The phrase maggishei minchah bitsedaqah ('presenting offerings in righteousness') is the goal: offerings that are tsedaqah — genuinely righteous, fulfilling the covenant obligations properly.
4. The verb arvah ('will be pleasing, will be sweet') describes God's acceptance of the purified offerings. The phrases kimei olam ('as in the days of old') and ukeshanim qadmoniyyot ('as in former years') look back to an idealized past — perhaps the wilderness period, the Solomonic era, or any time when worship was genuine. The promise is not innovation but restoration: worship will return to its original intended quality.
5. God becomes both judge and witness — ed memmaher ('a swift/eager witness'). The catalog of sins spans ritual (sorcery), sexual (adultery), verbal (false oaths), and social (economic exploitation of workers, widows, orphans, and foreigners). The list echoes the Decalogue and the prophetic justice tradition. The final phrase velo yere'uni ('they do not fear me') is the root cause — all the listed sins stem from the absence of reverence for God.
6. God's unchanging character (lo shaniti, 'I have not changed') is the basis for Israel's survival. If God changed — if he abandoned his covenant promises — Israel would have been consumed (khalitem). The pairing is theology at its most compressed: God's faithfulness preserves people who deserve destruction. The 'sons of Jacob' designation reminds the people of the patriarch who himself was a deceiver yet was loved and preserved by God (cf. 1:2).
7. The call shuvu elai ve'ashuvah aleikhem ('return to me and I will return to you') echoes Zechariah 1:3 verbatim — the same reciprocal promise. The people's response bammeh nashuv ('How shall we return?') is the fourth disputation. Unlike a sincere question, this is defensive — they do not recognize their departure and therefore cannot imagine what return would look like. God's answer (vv. 8-10) will be concrete: the tithe.
8. The verb qava' ('rob, defraud') is rare and forceful. The question is rhetorical: robbery of God should be unthinkable, yet they are doing it. The answer — hamma'aser vehatterumah ('the tithe and the contribution') — specifies the violation: the mandatory tithe (one-tenth of agricultural produce, Leviticus 27:30) and the terumah ('contribution, offering' — the portion dedicated to priests and Levites, Numbers 18:24-28) are being withheld.

9. The cognate accusative *bamme'erah attem ne'arim* ('with a curse you are cursed') is emphatic — the curse is already in effect, not merely threatened. The scope is *haggoy kullo* ('the whole nation') — this is not individual sin but collective, systemic withholding. The connection between robbing God (withholding tithes) and experiencing the curse (economic hardship) echoes Haggai 1:6-11 — covenant disobedience produces covenant consequences.
10. The *beit ha'otsar* ('storehouse') was the temple storage area for tithes (cf. Nehemiah 10:38-39; 13:12-13). The phrase *viyhi tereph beveiti* ('so there may be food in my house') is startlingly practical — the tithe funded the temple operations and supported the Levites. God invites testing: *uvechanuni na* ('test me, please') uses the same verb applied to gold testing. The promise — *arubbot hashamayim* ('windows of heaven') opened and *berakhah* poured out *ad-beli-dai* ('until there is not enough room') — echoes the Genesis flood language (Genesis 7:11), but now heaven's windows release blessing instead of destruction.
11. The 'devourer' (*ha'okhel*, literally 'the eater') likely refers to locusts or other crop-destroying pests — agricultural enemies that God will personally rebuke (*ga'arti*). The agricultural promises — produce protected, vine bearing fruit — reverse the covenant curses described in Haggai 1:6-11 and Deuteronomy 28:38-40. God's blessing is tangible, measurable, and agricultural.
12. The promise extends beyond agricultural blessing to international reputation: *ve'ishsheru etkhem kol-haggoyim* ('all the nations will call you blessed/happy'). The phrase *erets chephets* ('a land of delight/desire') echoes *chemdah* from Haggai 2:7 and Zechariah 7:14. Israel will be so visibly blessed that the nations will recognize and proclaim it — fulfilling the Abrahamic promise of Genesis 12:2-3.
13. The fifth disputation. The verb *chazqu* ('have been strong/harsh') describes words that are forceful and defiant. The people's oblivious response — *mah-nidbarnu alekha* ('What have we said against you?') — follows the now-familiar pattern of defensive incomprehension.
14. The people's words expose a transactional view of religion: *shav avod Elohim* ('it is vain/useless to serve God'). The question *mah-betsa* ('what profit?') treats worship as an investment that should yield returns. The phrase *halakhnu qedorannit* ('we walked in mourning/gloom') suggests they performed penitential rituals expecting reward and received none. Their theology is: if obedience does not produce immediate visible benefit, it is worthless.
15. The people's complaint concludes: the arrogant (*zedim*) are blessed, the wicked (*osei rish'ah*) prosper, and those who test God (*bachanu Elohim*) escape consequences. This is the classic theodicy complaint — why do the wicked prosper? — but here it is used to justify religious indifference rather than as genuine lament. The irony: in verse 10, God invited them to 'test me' (*uvechanuni*) with tithes, but here they complain that others 'test God' (*bachanu Elohim*) with impunity.
16. The scene shifts from the cynics to the faithful. The *yir'ei YHWH* ('those who fear the LORD') speak to each other — mutual encouragement in a hostile environment. God's response is threefold: *vayyaqshav* ('he paid attention'), *vayyishma* ('he heard'), and *vayyikkatev sepher zikkaron* ('a book of remembrance was written'). The *sepher zikkaron* echoes the Persian royal practice of recording notable deeds (cf. Esther 6:1-2). Those who 'think upon his name' (*ulchoshevei shemo*) are people who value and meditate on God's character. Their names are permanently recorded.
17. The word *segullah* ('treasured possession, special treasure') is the term used for Israel's unique status in Exodus 19:5 and Deuteronomy 7:6 and 14:2. Now it is applied specifically to the faithful remnant within Israel — the God-fearers of verse 16. The comparison — *ka'asher yachmol ish al-beno ha'oved oto* ('as a man spares his son who serves him') — combines parental tenderness with the recognition that the son is faithful/obedient (*oved*, 'serving'). Sparing here means protecting from the coming judgment.
18. The verse answers the complaint of verses 14-15 that there is no visible difference between the righteous and the wicked. God promises that the distinction will become unmistakable. The verb *veshavtem* ('you will return/again') suggests a restored ability to perceive moral reality. The parallelism — *tsaddiq/rasha* ('righteous/wicked') and *oved Elohim/asher lo avado* ('serving God/not serving him') — defines righteousness as active service, not merely moral status.

4

Summary: *Malachi 4 (Hebrew 3:19-24) is the closing chapter of the prophetic canon and the final word of the Old Testament before the intertestamental period. The coming day will burn like a furnace, reducing the arrogant and wicked to stubble — but for those who fear God's name, 'the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings' (v. 2). The people are commanded to remember the Torah of Moses. The book and the prophetic canon close with the promise that God will send Elijah the prophet before the great and terrible day of the LORD, to turn the hearts of parents to children and children to parents — 'lest I come and strike the land with utter destruction.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *These are the last prophetic words of the Old Testament. The final verses create a literary bridge spanning the entire Hebrew Bible: Moses (the Torah) and Elijah (the Prophets) stand together at the close, just as they will stand together on the Mount of Transfiguration (Matthew 17:1-8). The 'sun of righteousness with healing in its wings' (v. 2) has become one of the most beloved messianic images in Christian tradition. The Elijah prophecy (vv. 5-6) is quoted in Luke 1:17 as fulfilled by John the Baptist, and Jesus identifies John as the promised Elijah in Matthew 11:14 and 17:12-13. In Jewish tradition, an empty chair is set for Elijah at every Passover Seder,*

awaiting his return.

Translation Friction: *English chapter 4 corresponds to Hebrew 3:19-24 — the Hebrew Bible does not have a chapter break here. We follow the English versification (4:1-6) while noting the Hebrew numbering in translator notes. The phrase shemesh tsedaqah ('sun of righteousness,' v. 2) is grammatically feminine in Hebrew (shemesh is feminine), though the 'wings' (kenaphayim) suggest the winged sun disk imagery common in ancient Near Eastern art. Whether 'righteousness' modifies the sun (a sun characterized by righteousness) or is the sun's name (Righteousness personified as the sun) affects interpretation. The final word of the Hebrew Bible is cherem ('utter destruction/ban'), ending the prophetic canon with a warning rather than a comfort — a deliberate choice.*

Connections: *The burning day (v. 1) connects to Isaiah 34:9-10 and Joel 2:31. The sun of righteousness (v. 2) informs Luke 1:78-79 ('the rising sun from heaven'). The command to remember Moses (v. 4) creates a canon-bridging reference to the Torah. The Elijah prophecy (vv. 5-6) is fulfilled in John the Baptist (Matthew 11:14; 17:12-13; Luke 1:17). The turning of hearts (v. 6) is quoted in Luke 1:17. The final word cherem connects to the very beginning of the conquest narrative (Joshua 6:17-21). Moses and Elijah together appear at the Transfiguration (Matthew 17:1-8).*

¹For the day is coming, burning like a furnace. All the arrogant and all who do wickedness will be stubble. The coming day will set them ablaze, says the LORD of Armies, leaving them neither root nor branch. ²But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. You will go out and leap like calves released from the stall. ³You will tread down the wicked, for they will be ashes under the soles of your feet on the day when I act, says the LORD of Armies. ⁴Remember the law of Moses my servant, which I commanded him at Horeb — statutes and ordinances for all Israel. ⁵I am sending you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and awesome day of the LORD. ⁶He will turn the hearts of parents to their children and the hearts of children to their parents, so that I will not come and strike the land with utter destruction.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:19. The image of the tannur ('furnace, oven') is concrete — the clay oven used for baking bread, in which straw/stubble was burned as fuel. The arrogant (zedim) and the wicked (osei rish'ah) become qash ('stubble') — dry, worthless fuel. The comprehensiveness of the destruction — lo ya'azov lahem shoshon ve'anaph ('leaving them neither root nor branch') — means complete annihilation: no root (no foundation, no future progeny underground) and no branch (no visible growth, no continuation above ground). The destruction is total — nothing survives to regenerate.
2. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:20. The phrase yir'ei shemi ('you who fear my name') echoes the God-fearers of 3:16 — the faithful remnant. The shemesh tsedaqah ('sun of righteousness') has been interpreted as messianic (a righteous ruler who brings healing light) or theophanic (God himself appearing as the rising sun). Luke 1:78 echoes this: 'the rising sun will come to us from heaven, to shine on those living in darkness.' The word kenaphayim ('wings') usually means the wings of a bird but here refers to the sun's rays — like outstretched wings of light. The calves (eglei marbeq) released from the stall leap and run with the joy of freedom — the contrast with the furnace and stubble of verse 1 is total.
3. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:21. The verb asottem ('you will trample') pictures the righteous walking over the remains of the wicked, who have been reduced to epher ('ashes') by the furnace of verse 1. The phrase bayyom asher ani oseh ('on the day when I act/make') leaves the specific timing open — 'the day I am preparing' or 'the day I act.' The emphasis is on God's initiative: he creates the day of judgment.
4. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:22. The command zikhru ('remember') is not merely mental recall but active obedience — to 'remember' the Torah is to live by it. The reference to Chorev (Horeb = Sinai) reaches back to the foundational moment of the covenant. Moses is called avdi ('my servant') — the same title used for David and the messianic Branch. The chuqqim umishpatim ('statutes and ordinances') encompass the full range of Torah legislation. This verse creates a canonical bridge from the Prophets back to the Torah — the end of prophecy points back to the beginning of revelation.
5. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:23. The Elijah prophecy is among the most influential in Jewish and Christian tradition. In Judaism, Elijah is expected before the messianic age — an empty chair and cup are set for him at Passover. In Christianity, Jesus identifies John the Baptist as the fulfillment (Matthew 11:14; 17:12-13), while the angel Gabriel quotes this verse when announcing John's birth (Luke 1:17). The phrase yom YHWH haggadol vehanora ('the great and awesome day of the LORD') uses nora ('awesome, fearsome') rather than the KJV's 'dreadful' — the day inspires awe, not merely dread.
6. Hebrew verse numbering: 3:24. The mission of Elijah: veheshiv lev-avot al-banim velev banim al-avotam ('turning the hearts of parents to children and children to parents'). Luke 1:17 quotes this directly for John the Baptist. The verb heshiv ('to turn, to return, to restore') is from the same root as teshuvah ('repentance/return') — generational reconciliation is itself a form of repentance. The final word of the Hebrew prophetic canon is cherem —

the total ban of destruction. This is deliberately ominous: the prophetic message closes with a warning, not a promise. Jewish scribal tradition repeats verse 5 after verse 6 when reading in the synagogue, so that the prophets do not end on a note of cursing. The entire arc of the prophetic canon — from Joshua through Malachi — begins with the cherem of Jericho and ends with the threat of cherem against the whole land. Elijah's mission is to prevent it.

New Testament

Matthew

1

Summary: *Matthew 1 opens with a genealogy tracing Jesus's lineage from Abraham through David to Joseph, establishing Jesus as heir to both the Abrahamic covenant and the Davidic throne. The genealogy is structured in three groups of fourteen generations, spanning the patriarchal era, the monarchy, and the exile-to-Messiah period. The chapter then narrates the circumstances of Jesus's birth: Joseph discovers Mary is pregnant, resolves to divorce her quietly, but an angel appears in a dream explaining that the child is from the Holy Spirit. Joseph obeys and takes Mary as his wife, and the child is named Jesus — 'for he will save his people from their sins.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Matthew's genealogy is theologically structured rather than merely historical. The three sets of fourteen generations (Abraham to David, David to exile, exile to Christ) create a deliberate pattern that may reference the numerical value of David's name in Hebrew (d-v-d = 4+6+4 = 14). Four women are included — Tamar, Rahab, Ruth, and Bathsheba ('the wife of Uriah') — each with irregular or scandalous circumstances, preparing the reader for Mary's own unexpected pregnancy. The fulfillment quotation from Isaiah 7:14 introduces Matthew's distinctive pattern of citing Hebrew Scripture as fulfilled in Jesus. The Greek parthenos ('virgin') translates the Hebrew almah ('young woman'), a translation choice already made by the Septuagint that Matthew adopts and applies to Mary.*

Translation Friction: *The genealogy contains well-known discrepancies with Old Testament records and Luke's genealogy. We render the Greek as given without harmonizing. The name Ἰησοῦς (Iesous) is the Greek form of the Hebrew Yeshua/Yehoshua ('the LORD saves'), and the angel's explanation in verse 21 depends on this etymology. We transliterate Greek terms in key_ terms entries using standard conventions. The phrase 'before they came together' (v. 18) is a Greek euphemism for sexual union, which we render transparently.*

Connections: *The genealogy connects to Genesis 12 (Abrahamic covenant), 2 Samuel 7 (Davidic covenant), and the exile narratives of 2 Kings 24-25. The Isaiah 7:14 quotation establishes Matthew's fulfillment theology that runs through the entire Gospel. The naming of Jesus connects to the Hebrew salvation vocabulary (yeshuah) central to the Old Testament. Joseph's dream-revelation anticipates the pattern of divine dreams in chapter 2.*

¹The record of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham: ²Abraham fathered Isaac, Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob fathered Judah and his brothers. ³Judah fathered Perez and Zerah by Tamar, Perez fathered Hezron, and Hezron fathered Ram. ⁴Ram fathered Amminadab, Amminadab fathered Nahshon, and Nahshon fathered Salmon. ⁵Salmon

fathered Boaz by Rahab, Boaz fathered Obed by Ruth, and Obed fathered Jesse. ⁶Jesse fathered David the king. David fathered Solomon by the wife of Uriah. ⁷Solomon fathered Rehoboam, Rehoboam fathered Abijah, and Abijah fathered Asaph. ⁸Asaph fathered Jehoshaphat, Jehoshaphat fathered Joram, and Joram fathered Uzziah. ⁹Uzziah fathered Jotham, Jotham fathered Ahaz, and Ahaz fathered Hezekiah. ¹⁰Hezekiah fathered Manasseh, Manasseh fathered Amos, and Amos fathered Josiah. ¹¹Josiah fathered Jeconiah and his brothers, at the time of the deportation to Babylon. ¹²After the deportation to Babylon, Jeconiah fathered Shealtiel, and Shealtiel fathered Zerubbabel. ¹³Zerubbabel fathered Abiud, Abiud fathered Eliakim, and Eliakim fathered Azor. ¹⁴Azor fathered Zadok, Zadok fathered Achim, and Achim fathered Eliud. ¹⁵Eliud fathered Eleazar, Eleazar fathered Matthan, and Matthan fathered Jacob. ¹⁶Jacob fathered Joseph, the husband of Mary, from whom Jesus was born — the one called Christ. ¹⁷So all the generations from Abraham to David are fourteen generations, from David to the deportation to Babylon are fourteen generations, and from the deportation to Babylon to the Christ are fourteen generations. ¹⁸Now the birth of Jesus Christ came about in this way. His mother Mary had been pledged in marriage to Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant through the Holy Spirit. ¹⁹Joseph, her husband, was a righteous man and did not want to disgrace her publicly, so he resolved to divorce her quietly. ²⁰But while he was considering this, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife, for what has been conceived in her is from the Holy Spirit. ²¹She will give birth to a son, and you are to name him Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins." ²²All this took place to fulfill what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet: ²³"Look, the virgin will conceive and give birth to a son, and they will call his name Emmanuel" — which means, "God with us." ²⁴When Joseph woke from sleep, he did as the angel of the Lord had commanded him and took Mary as his wife, ²⁵Recognized her not till she had brought forth her firstborn son — then he called his name JESUS.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek biblos geneleos ('book of genesis/origin') echoes Genesis 2:4 and 5:1 in the Septuagint, signaling that Matthew views Jesus's arrival as a new act of creation. 'Generation' in the KJV is misleading in modern English; 'genealogy' captures the Greek sense of a record of origins.
1. Both 'son of David' and 'son of Abraham' are theological claims, not merely genealogical ones — Jesus is heir to David's throne and to Abraham's covenant promise.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Greek egenesen ('fathered, begot') is rendered consistently as 'fathered' throughout the genealogy rather than the archaic 'begat.' The name Ioudas is rendered 'Judah' (the patriarch) rather than 'Judas' (the later form), since this refers to the Old Testament figure.
3. Tamar is the first of four women named in the genealogy. Her story (Genesis 38) involves deception and a levirate-like union with Judah — an irregular beginning that Matthew includes deliberately. The mention of women in an ancient genealogy is unusual and theologically purposeful.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 38 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Nahshon was the leader of the tribe of Judah during the wilderness period (Numbers 1:7, 2:3). His inclusion reinforces the Judahite royal lineage.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 1:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Rahab and Ruth are the second and third women in the genealogy. Rahab was a Canaanite prostitute from Jericho (Joshua 2); Ruth was a Moabite widow (Ruth 1). Both are Gentile women whose inclusion foreshadows the Gospel's universal scope. The traditional identification of this Rahab with the Jericho Rahab is assumed by Matthew though not explicit in Old Testament genealogies.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ruth 1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Matthew pointedly refuses to name Bathsheba, calling her 'the wife of Uriah' — a phrase that keeps Uriah's wrongful death in view. This is the fourth woman in the genealogy, and the most politically charged. David is the only figure given the title 'the king' (ton basilea), marking the genealogy's structural midpoint.
7. The SBLGNT reads 'Asaph' rather than 'Asa,' which may reflect a scribal identification of the king with the psalmist Asaph, or may be a textual variant. We follow the SBLGNT reading.
8. Three kings are omitted between Joram and Uzziah: Ahaziah, Joash, and Amaziah (cf. 1 Chronicles 3:11-12). Matthew's genealogy is telescoped to achieve the fourteen-generation structure, a common practice in ancient Near Eastern genealogies.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Chronicles 3:11-12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. These names follow the standard English forms from the Old Testament rather than the Greek transliterations. Ahaz and Hezekiah represent a dramatic father-son contrast in the Kings narrative — Ahaz was one of Judah's worst kings, Hezekiah one of its best.
10. The SBLGNT reads 'Amos' rather than 'Amon,' which may reflect a scribal confusion with the prophet Amos, or may be an intentional variant. We follow the SBLGNT. In the Old Testament record, Amon/Amos reigned only two years before being assassinated (2 Kings 21:19-26).
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 21:19-26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek *metoikesias* ('deportation, removal, exile') refers to the Babylonian exile of 586 BC. Jeconiah (also called Jehoiachin) was the last king before the exile. Historically, Josiah was Jeconiah's grandfather, not his father — Jehoiakim is skipped, another instance of Matthew's telescoping.
12. Zerubbabel led the first return from exile and oversaw the rebuilding of the temple (Ezra 3-6). His inclusion connects Jesus to the post-exilic restoration hope. The lineage from this point forward is less well attested in Old Testament records.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezra 3-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. From Abiud onward, the names in Matthew's genealogy do not appear in Old Testament records. These represent the intertestamental period for which Matthew had access to sources no longer extant.
14. The name Zadok (Sadok) recalls the famous high priest of David's era (2 Samuel 8:17), though this is a different individual. The priestly resonance may be intentional within Matthew's genealogical design.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 8:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The name Eleazar recalls Aaron's son and successor as high priest (Numbers 20:28). Matthan is a shortened form related to Mattaniah ('gift of the LORD'). These final pre-Joseph names carry priestly and theophoric resonances.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 20:28 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The grammatical shift is decisive: every previous entry uses the active 'fathered' (*egennesen*), but here the passive *egennethee* ('was born') replaces it. Joseph does not 'father' Jesus; Jesus 'was born from' Mary. The relative pronoun 'from whom' (*ex hes*) is feminine singular, referring to Mary alone. Matthew's grammar carefully preserves the virgin birth claim while maintaining Joseph's legal paternity through the Davidic line.
17. The threefold repetition of 'fourteen generations' (*dekateσσαρες geneai*) is Matthew's structural key. The number fourteen may relate to the numerical value of David's name in Hebrew (*dalet-vav-dalet* = 4+6+4 = 14), making the entire genealogy a numerical proclamation that Jesus is David's heir. The actual count requires some flexibility — the third section has only thirteen names as listed — which confirms that the scheme is theological rather than strictly mathematical.
18. The word *genesis* here means 'birth' or 'origin,' echoing verse 1. The phrase 'pledged in marriage' (*mneesteuthesees*) indicates a formal betrothal that was legally binding in Jewish practice — more than modern engagement but prior to cohabitation. 'Before they came together' (*prin ee synelthein*) is a euphemism for sexual union. The phrase *ek pneumatos hagiou* ('from the Holy Spirit') attributes the conception directly to divine agency.
19. The Greek *dikaio* ('righteous, just') is the same word used for covenant faithfulness throughout the Septuagint. Joseph's righteousness manifests not in strict legal enforcement but in mercy — he could have exposed Mary to public shame and legal penalty, but chose discretion. The verb *apolusai* ('to release, divorce') confirms that betrothal carried the legal weight of marriage.
20. The address 'son of David' (*huios David*) is significant — the angel reminds Joseph of his royal lineage precisely at the moment when he is about to sever the legal connection between that lineage and the child. The Greek *angelos kyriou* ('angel of the Lord') echoes the Hebrew *malak YHWH* of the Old Testament theophanies. Dreams as vehicles of divine revelation connect Joseph to his Old Testament namesake (Genesis 37, 40-41).
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 37 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The name *Iesous* (Ἰησοῦς) is the Greek form of the Hebrew *Yeshua/Yehoshua*, meaning 'the LORD saves' or 'the LORD is salvation.' The angel's explanation — 'for he will save (*sosei*) his people' — is a direct etymology of the name. The command to Joseph to name the child establishes his legal paternity and thus the Davidic succession.
22. This is the first of Matthew's fulfillment formulas (a pattern repeated throughout the Gospel: 2:15, 2:17, 2:23, 4:14, 8:17, 12:17, 13:35, 21:4, 27:9). The passive *pleerothee* ('might be fulfilled') indicates divine purpose — the events did not merely happen to coincide with prophecy but occurred in order to fulfill it.
23. Matthew quotes Isaiah 7:14 from the Septuagint, which uses *parthenos* ('virgin') to translate the Hebrew *almah* ('young woman of marriageable age'). The Hebrew term does not inherently mean 'virgin' (the specific Hebrew word for virgin is *bethulah*), but the Septuagint translators chose *parthenos*, and Matthew adopts this reading as prophetically significant. 'Emmanuel' (Hebrew *Immanu-El*, 'God with us') becomes a theological declaration — God's presence embodied in this child. Matthew bookends his Gospel with this theme (cf. 28:20, 'I am with you always').

23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 7:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Joseph's immediate obedience upon waking mirrors the pattern of Old Testament figures who respond to divine commands without argument (cf. Abraham in Genesis 22:3). The verb *prosetaxen* ('commanded') is stronger than the KJV's 'bidden' — this was a directive, not a suggestion.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 22:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The Greek *ouk eginōsken autēn* ('he did not know her') uses the biblical euphemism for sexual intercourse, corresponding to the Hebrew *yada*. We render the meaning transparently rather than preserving the euphemism. The word *heos* ('until') has been debated for centuries: it clearly states abstinence before the birth but does not grammatically require or exclude relations afterward. The SBLGNT does not include 'firstborn' (*prōtotokon*), which appears in some manuscripts — we follow the critical text.

2

Summary: *Matthew 2 narrates four episodes from Jesus's infancy: the visit of the Magi from the East who follow a star to find the newborn king, Herod's duplicitous scheme to locate the child, the holy family's flight to Egypt, and the massacre of infants in Bethlehem followed by the family's eventual settlement in Nazareth. Each episode is anchored by a fulfillment quotation from the Hebrew prophets, establishing Matthew's theological framework that Jesus's life recapitulates Israel's story.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains four fulfillment quotations (Micah 5:2, Hosea 11:1, Jeremiah 31:15, and a composite prophetic reference to Nazareth) — more than any other chapter in Matthew. The Magi are Gentile astrologers, and their worship of Jesus anticipates the universal scope of the Gospel. Herod's massacre echoes Pharaoh's slaughter of Hebrew infants in Exodus 1, casting Jesus as a new Moses. The flight to Egypt and return deliberately mirrors Israel's own journey — Jesus embodies Israel's story in his own person.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'out of Egypt I called my son' (v. 15) originally referred to Israel as a nation in Hosea 11:1, not to an individual Messiah. Matthew's typological reading is not a prediction-fulfillment in the modern sense but a theological claim that Jesus recapitulates Israel's experience. We render the quotations as Matthew presents them without editorializing on the hermeneutical method. The 'star' (aster) in the Magi narrative has been variously interpreted as astronomical, astrological, or miraculous — the Greek text does not resolve the question, and we preserve the ambiguity.*

Connections: *The Magi narrative connects to Numbers 24:17 (the star of Jacob), Isaiah 60:1-6 (nations bringing gifts), and Psalm 72:10-11 (kings offering tribute). The flight to Egypt connects to the Exodus narrative and Hosea 11:1. Rachel weeping connects to Jeremiah 31:15 and the exile. The Nazareth reference may connect to Isaiah 11:1 (netser, 'branch') through wordplay.*

¹After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea during the reign of King Herod, wise men from the East arrived in Jerusalem, ² Declaring, Where is he that is born to be king of the Jews? since we have seen his star appear when it rose, and are traveled here to honor him. ³When King Herod heard this, he was deeply disturbed, and all Jerusalem with him. ⁴He assembled all the chief priests and scribes of the people and inquired of them where the Christ was to be born. ⁵They told him, "In Bethlehem of Judea, for this is what has been written through the prophet: ⁶'And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are by no means least among the rulers of Judah; for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel.'" ⁷Then Herod secretly summoned the wise men and determined from them the exact time the star had appeared. ⁸He sent them to Bethlehem and said, "Go and search carefully for the child. When you find him, report back to me so that I too may go and pay him homage." ⁹After hearing the king, they set out, and there — the star they had seen at its rising went ahead of them until it came and stood over the place where the child was. ¹⁰When they saw the star, they were overwhelmed with joy. ¹¹The y entered the house and saw the child with Mary his mother, and falling down, they worshiped him. Then, opening their treasure chests, they presented him with gifts: gold, frankincense, and myrrh. ¹²And having been warned in a dream not to return to Herod, they departed for their own country by another route. ¹³After they had departed, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream, saying, "Get up, take the child and his mother, and flee to Egypt. Stay there until I tell you,

for Herod is about to search for the child to destroy him." ¹⁴So he got up, took the child and his mother during the night, and withdrew to Egypt, ¹⁵Was there until the passing of Herod — that it could be fulfilled which had been spoken of the Lord by the prophet of old and stated, Out of Egypt have I called my son. ¹⁶When Herod realized that he had been outwitted by the wise men, he flew into a rage and sent soldiers to kill all the male children in Bethlehem and its surrounding region who were two years old and under, based on the time he had determined from the wise men. ¹⁷Then what was spoken through the prophet Jeremiah was fulfilled: ¹⁸"A voice was heard in Ramah — weeping and great mourning — Rachel weeping for her children, and she refused to be comforted, because they are no more." ¹⁹After Herod died, an angel of the Lord appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt, ²⁰Declaring, Arise, and take the little child and his mother, and go into Israel's territory — since those who threatened who were seeking the little child's life. ²¹So he got up, took the child and his mother, and entered the land of Israel. ²²But when he heard that Archelaus was reigning over Judea in place of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there. And after being warned in a dream, he withdrew to the region of Galilee, ²³He arrived and dwelt in a city called Nazareth — that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophets, He will be known as a Nazarene.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *magoi* ('magi, wise men') refers to Persian-origin astrologer-priests, not kings. The traditional 'three wise men' is not in the text — the number three is inferred from the three gifts. 'From the East' (*apo anatolon*) literally means 'from the rising [of the sun],' indicating Persia, Babylon, or Arabia. The genitive absolute construction 'Jesus having been born' (*tou Iesou genneethentos*) indicates the birth has already occurred — the Magi do not arrive at the manger.
2. The phrase 'king of the Jews' (*basileus ton Ioudaion*) will reappear at Jesus's trial and crucifixion (27:11, 37), forming a bitter *inclusio* across the Gospel. The Greek *proskynesai* can mean 'worship' (of God) or 'pay homage' (to a king) — the Magi may intend political respect, but Matthew's readers would hear deeper significance. 'At its rising' (*en tee anatolee*, singular) is better than 'in the east,' which would be the plural form — it refers to the star's heliacal rising.
3. The verb *etarachthee* ('was troubled, disturbed, agitated') is strong — the same word describes the disciples' terror at seeing Jesus walk on water (14:26). Herod's disturbance is political paranoia: he was not the legitimate Davidic heir and was fiercely protective of his throne. That 'all Jerusalem' shared his alarm reflects either the population's fear of Herod's violent reactions or their own unease at messianic claims that could provoke Roman intervention.
4. Herod consults the Jewish religious establishment — the chief priests (*archiereis*) and scribes (*grammateis*), the recognized experts in Torah interpretation. The imperfect tense *epynthaneto* ('was inquiring') may suggest repeated or persistent questioning. 'The Christ' (*ho Christos*) with the definite article indicates the expected Messiah as a known concept.
5. The perfect tense *gegraptai* ('it has been written and stands written') indicates the enduring authority of the prophetic text. The religious leaders know the scriptural answer immediately but show no inclination to act on it — a tragic irony that Matthew develops throughout the Gospel.
6. Matthew's quotation combines Micah 5:2 with 2 Samuel 5:2, modifying the original. Micah's Hebrew reads 'too small to be among the clans of Judah,' but Matthew reverses it to 'by no means least' — an interpretive rendering that emphasizes Bethlehem's dignity rather than its smallness. The verb *poimanei* ('will shepherd') draws on the ancient Near Eastern image of the king as shepherd, connecting Jesus to David, who was literally a shepherd from Bethlehem before becoming king.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 5:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Samuel 5:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The adverb *lathra* ('secretly') reveals Herod's duplicity — he does not want the religious leaders or the public to know he is tracking this. The verb *ekribosen* ('determined precisely, ascertained exactly') shows calculated intent; he is establishing a timeline that will later determine the age range for the massacre (v. 16).
8. Herod's claim that he wishes to 'pay homage' (*proskyneso*) uses the same word the Magi used in verse 2. The dramatic irony is sharp — the reader knows Herod intends to destroy the child, not honor him. The word *paidion* ('young child') rather than *brepheos* ('infant') may suggest the child is no longer a newborn.
9. The star's behavior — going ahead and then standing over a specific location — goes beyond normal astronomical phenomena. The Greek *proegen* ('went ahead, led the way') and *estathee* ('stood, came to rest') describe purposeful guidance. Matthew presents this without rationalization, and we render it straightforwardly.
10. The Greek is emphatic to the point of redundancy: *echareesan charan megaleen sphodra* — literally 'they rejoiced with exceedingly great joy.' This cognate accusative construction (rejoiced a rejoicing) intensifies the emotion. We condense this into 'overwhelmed with joy' to capture the force

without the awkward literalism.

11. The setting is a house (oikian), not a manger — consistent with the passage of time since the birth. Joseph is notably absent from the scene; only 'Mary his mother' is mentioned. The verb *prosekyneesan* ('worshiped') is the strongest form of homage. The three gifts — gold (royalty), frankincense (divinity/priesthood), and myrrh (burial/suffering) — have been read typologically since early Christianity, though Matthew does not allegorize them.
12. The verb *chrematisthentes* ('having been warned, having received a divine message') specifically denotes an oracular communication — this is not an ordinary dream but a divine directive. The Magi's obedience to the dream over Herod's command places divine authority above political authority, a theme Matthew develops throughout the Gospel.
13. The urgency is conveyed by three rapid imperatives: 'get up' (*egertheis*), 'take' (*paralabe*), 'flee' (*pheuge*). Egypt — Israel's ancient place of bondage — now becomes a place of refuge. The phrase 'the child and his mother' (repeated in vv. 14, 20, 21) consistently places Jesus first and omits Joseph's name, emphasizing the child's primacy and the fact that Joseph is the guardian, not the biological father.
14. Joseph's response is immediate — he departs that same night (*nyktos*, 'by night'). The word *anechoresen* ('withdrew') carries connotations of strategic retreat, the same verb used for Jesus's own tactical withdrawals later in the Gospel (4:12, 12:15, 14:13).
15. The quotation is from Hosea 11:1, where 'my son' originally referred to Israel as a nation being called out of Egyptian slavery at the Exodus. Matthew reads this typologically — Jesus recapitulates Israel's journey. As Israel was God's 'son' called from Egypt, so Jesus, God's Son, is called from Egypt. This is not prediction-fulfillment in the strict sense but typological correspondence: the pattern of Israel's story finds its ultimate expression in Jesus.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 11:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The verb *enepaichthee* ('was outwitted, mocked, tricked') is the same word used for the mocking of Jesus before his crucifixion (27:29, 31), creating a grim verbal connection between Herod's rage and Jesus's passion. The phrase *ethymothee lian* ('was exceedingly angry') describes murderous fury. The age threshold of two years (*dietous*) is based on Herod's calculation from verse 7, suggesting the star appeared up to two years before the Magi's arrival. 'Soldiers' is implied by the verb *apostellas* ('having sent') — Herod dispatched agents to carry out the order.
17. This fulfillment formula uses a different construction than verse 15 — 'then was fulfilled' (*tote epleerothee*) rather than 'in order that it might be fulfilled' (*hina pleerothee*). The shift may indicate that this event fulfilled prophecy as a tragic echo rather than as a divinely intended purpose — Matthew is careful in his language about the massacre.
18. The quotation is from Jeremiah 31:15. In its original context, Rachel (the matriarch buried near Bethlehem, Genesis 35:19) weeps for her descendants being taken into exile. Matthew applies the image to the murdered children — Rachel's weeping continues across the centuries. The phrase 'because they are no more' (*hoti ouk eisin*) is devastating in its simplicity. Ramah was a staging ground for the Babylonian deportation (Jeremiah 40:1), and Rachel's tomb was associated with the Bethlehem area.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 31:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 35:19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 40:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Herod the Great died in 4 BC by conventional chronology. The angelic appearance follows the same pattern as 1:20 and 2:13 — divine guidance through dreams. The historical present *phainetai* ('appears') adds narrative vividness.
20. The plural 'those who were seeking' (*hoi zetountes*) when only Herod has been mentioned echoes Exodus 4:19, where God tells Moses 'all those who sought your life have died' — another Moses-Jesus parallel. The phrase 'seeking the life' (*zetountes teen psychen*) is a Septuagintal idiom for murderous intent.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 4:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The phrase 'entered the land of Israel' (*eiselthen eis gen Israel*) echoes the conquest narratives — Joshua 'entering' the promised land. Jesus's return from Egypt to Israel recapitulates the Exodus-to-Canaan journey.
22. Archelaus inherited Judea and was notoriously brutal — he was eventually deposed by Rome in AD 6 for excessive cruelty. Joseph's fear is historically well-grounded. Galilee was under the rule of Herod Antipas, who was comparatively less dangerous. The divine warning in a dream (*chrematistheis*) is the fourth dream-revelation in chapters 1-2, establishing dreams as Matthew's primary channel for divine guidance in the infancy narrative.
23. This is the most puzzling of Matthew's fulfillment quotations — no extant Old Testament passage says 'He will be called a Nazarene.' Three explanations are commonly offered: (1) a wordplay on *netser* ('branch') from Isaiah 11:1, connecting the Messiah to the 'branch of Jesse'; (2) a connection to *nazir* ('Nazirite, consecrated one'); (3) a reference to the general contempt associated with Nazareth (cf. John 1:46, 'Can anything good come from Nazareth?'). Matthew uniquely says 'prophets' (plural), suggesting a composite theme rather than a single text. The name *Nazoraïos* became a primary designation for Jesus and his followers.

23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 11:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

3

Summary: *Matthew 3 introduces John the Baptist as a wilderness prophet calling Israel to repentance in preparation for the coming kingdom of heaven. John's preaching, dress, and diet deliberately evoke the prophet Elijah. He confronts the Pharisees and Sadducees, warns that Abrahamic descent alone guarantees nothing, and baptizes the people in the Jordan. The chapter climaxes with Jesus's baptism, where the heavens open, the Spirit descends like a dove, and a voice from heaven declares Jesus to be God's beloved Son.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *John the Baptist bridges the Old and New Testaments — his message, dress (camel hair, leather belt), and wilderness setting deliberately mirror Elijah (2 Kings 1:8), and he quotes Isaiah 40:3 as his own mission statement. The baptism scene is one of the few passages where Father, Son, and Spirit appear simultaneously. The heavenly voice combines Psalm 2:7 ('You are my Son') with Isaiah 42:1 ('in whom I delight'), fusing royal and servant identities in a single declaration. John's insistence that 'I need to be baptized by you' reveals an awareness of Jesus's superior status that creates theological tension with Jesus's submission to the baptism.*

Translation Friction: *John's phrase 'brood of vipers' (genneemata echidnon) is shockingly hostile for a prophet addressing fellow Jews. We preserve the confrontational force. The phrase 'kingdom of heaven' (basileia ton ouranon) is Matthew's distinctive circumlocution for 'kingdom of God' — we preserve Matthew's form. Jesus's reason for being baptized ('to fulfill all righteousness') is theologically dense and deliberately left somewhat unexplained by the text. The phrase 'Spirit of God descending like a dove' (v. 16) is ambiguous about whether the dove is a visual form or a simile for the manner of descent.*

Connections: *Isaiah 40:3 (the voice in the wilderness) is the foundational text. Elijah typology connects to 2 Kings 1:8 and Malachi 4:5. The baptism connects to Israel's Red Sea crossing and Jordan crossing under Joshua. The heavenly voice draws on Psalm 2:7 and Isaiah 42:1. The Spirit descending connects to Isaiah 11:2 (the Spirit resting on the Messiah) and Genesis 1:2 (the Spirit hovering over the waters at creation).*

¹In those days, John the Baptist appeared, proclaiming in the wilderness of Judea, ²"Repent, for the kingdom of heaven has drawn near!" ³This is the one spoken of through the prophet Isaiah, who said: "A voice crying out in the wilderness: 'Prepare the way of the Lord; make his paths straight.'" ⁴Now John wore clothing made of camel's hair with a leather belt around his waist, and his food was locusts and wild honey. ⁵Then Jerusalem and all Judea and the entire region around the Jordan went out to him, ⁶Received baptism by him in the Jordan, openly admitting their sins. ⁷But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to his baptism, he said to them, "You brood of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? ⁸Therefore produce fruit worthy of repentance, ⁹And do not presume to say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham as our father.' For I tell you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones. ¹⁰Already the axe is laid at the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. ¹¹I baptize you with water for repentance, but the one coming after me is more powerful than I am — I am not worthy to carry his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and fire. ¹²His winnowing fork is in his hand, and he will clear his threshing floor. He will gather his wheat into the barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire." ¹³Then Jesus arrived from Galilee at the Jordan, coming to John to be baptized by him. ¹⁴But John tried to prevent him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and yet you come to me?" ¹⁵But Jesus answered him, "Allow it for now, for in this way it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness." Then John consented. ¹⁶After Jesus was baptized, he immediately came up out of the water, and suddenly the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove and coming to rest on him. ¹⁷And just then a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, and I am completely delighted with him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The historical present *paraginetai* ('appears, arrives') creates narrative immediacy — John bursts onto the scene. The title *ho baptistees* ('the Baptist, the one who baptizes') identifies John by his distinctive practice. The wilderness (*eremos*) of Judea is the barren region west of the Dead Sea, a place associated with divine encounter and prophetic calling throughout Israel's history.
2. The verb *metanoeite* ('repent') means a radical change of mind and direction, corresponding to the Hebrew *teshuvah* ('return'). The perfect tense *eggiken* ('has drawn near, has come close') indicates that the kingdom's approach has already begun — it is not merely future but pressing into the present. 'Kingdom of heaven' (*basileia ton ouranon*) is Matthew's distinctive phrase, using 'heaven' as a reverential circumlocution for 'God,' reflecting Jewish practice of avoiding direct use of the divine name.
3. The quotation from Isaiah 40:3 is foundational to all four Gospels' presentation of John. In its original context, the voice calls for a highway through the desert for God's return to Zion after the exile. Matthew applies this to John preparing the way for Jesus. The phrase 'in the wilderness' modifies 'crying out' (as in the Septuagint and the Gospels), though in the Hebrew of Isaiah 40:3 it modifies 'prepare' — 'in the wilderness prepare the way.' This difference in punctuation shifts the emphasis from the location of the preparation to the location of the prophet.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 40:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. John's appearance deliberately mirrors Elijah's description in 2 Kings 1:8 — a hairy garment with a leather belt. This visual allusion would be immediately recognized by Matthew's audience. Locusts were permitted food under Jewish dietary law (Leviticus 11:22). The wilderness diet emphasizes John's ascetic separation from settled society and his prophetic identity.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 1:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 11:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The imperfect tense *exeporeueto* ('were going out') describes a continuous stream of people, not a single event. The hyperbolic 'all Judea' and 'the entire region' (*pasa*, repeated) conveys the scale of John's popular impact. The Jordan River region was associated with Israel's entry into the promised land under Joshua.
6. The verb *ebaptizonto* ('were being baptized') is imperfect passive, indicating an ongoing process. The Greek *baptizo* means 'to immerse, dip, submerge.' Confession of sins (*exomologoumenoi*) accompanied the immersion, making it a public act of repentance, not merely a ritual washing. Jewish purification rites involved water, but John's baptism was distinctive in linking immersion to moral repentance and eschatological preparation.
7. The phrase *genneemata echidnon* ('brood of vipers') is devastatingly hostile — they are not merely compared to snakes but identified as the offspring of venomous serpents. The rhetorical question implies that their appearance at the baptism is insincere — they are seeking to escape judgment without genuine repentance. The 'coming wrath' (*mellouses orgees*) refers to eschatological judgment. The Pharisees and Sadducees rarely appear together; their joint presence may indicate that both wings of the religious establishment are under indictment.
8. The singular *karpon* ('fruit') in the SBLGNT (versus the KJV's plural 'fruits') treats repentance as producing a unified result — a transformed life, not merely individual good deeds. The adjective *axion* ('worthy, fitting, corresponding to') demands that the fruit match the claim. John requires evidence, not merely words.
9. John strikes at the core of Jewish ethnic confidence — descent from Abraham was considered a guarantee of covenant standing. John insists that biological lineage without moral transformation is worthless. The reference to 'these stones' (*ton lithon touton*) may involve a wordplay in Aramaic (the spoken language): 'stones' (*avanim*) and 'children' (*banim*) sound alike. God's ability to create children from stones also evokes the creation of Adam from earth.
10. The present tense *keitai* ('is laid, is lying') indicates that judgment is not approaching — it has arrived. The axe is already positioned. The tree-and-fruit metaphor recurs throughout Matthew (7:16-20, 12:33, 21:19) as a standard image for the moral evaluation of people. Fire (*pyr*) represents eschatological judgment.
11. John contrasts his water baptism with the coming one's baptism 'with the Holy Spirit and fire' (*en pneumati hagio kai pyri*). Whether 'Spirit and fire' describes one baptism (the Spirit as purifying fire) or two (blessing for the repentant, judgment for the unrepentant) is debated. The sandal-carrying metaphor indicates slave-level service — John considers himself unworthy even of the lowest task for the one who follows him. The Greek *ischyroteros* ('more powerful, stronger') emphasizes raw divine authority.
12. The agricultural metaphor of winnowing — tossing grain into the air so the wind separates wheat from chaff — depicts divine judgment as a sorting process. The Greek *ptyon* ('winnowing fork/shovel') is a large fork used to throw grain. 'Unquenchable fire' (*pyri asbesto*) intensifies the judgment beyond ordinary burning — this fire cannot be extinguished. The imagery connects to Malachi 3:2-3, where the messenger's coming involves refining fire.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 3:2-3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The historical present *paraginetai* ('arrives') mirrors the same verb used for John's appearance in verse 1, creating a structural parallel. Jesus comes specifically for baptism (*tou baptisthenai*, a purpose infinitive), making this a deliberate, intentional act rather than a chance encounter.

14. The imperfect tense *diekolyen* ('was trying to prevent, kept preventing') indicates ongoing resistance, not a single objection. John recognizes the incongruity — the greater should baptize the lesser, not the reverse. This exchange is unique to Matthew and addresses the theological puzzle of why the sinless one submitted to a baptism of repentance.
15. Jesus's reply is his first spoken words in Matthew's Gospel. The phrase 'fulfill all righteousness' (*plerosai pasan dikaiosynen*) is theologically dense — it connects to Matthew's theme of fulfillment and to the concept of *dikaioyne* ('righteousness') that will dominate the Sermon on the Mount. The 'us' (*heemin*) includes both John and Jesus in a shared mission. 'Righteousness' here likely means conformity to God's will and purposes rather than personal moral achievement.
16. The opening of the heavens (*aneochtheesan hoi ouranoi*) echoes Ezekiel 1:1 and Isaiah 64:1 — moments when the barrier between heaven and earth is breached. The phrase 'like a dove' (*hosei peristeran*) is ambiguous: it may describe the Spirit's visual form or the gentle manner of descent. The verb *erchomenon* ('coming') combined with *ep' auton* ('upon him') echoes Isaiah 11:2, where the Spirit 'rests upon' the messianic branch. This is a royal anointing scene — the Spirit's descent constitutes Jesus's commissioning.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 64:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 11:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The heavenly voice combines two Old Testament texts: Psalm 2:7 ('You are my Son') — a royal enthronement psalm — and Isaiah 42:1 ('my chosen one in whom my soul delights') — the first Servant Song. The fusion declares Jesus simultaneously as Davidic king and Suffering Servant. Matthew has 'This is' (*houtos estin*, third person, a public declaration) where Mark has 'You are' (*sy ei*, second person, addressed to Jesus). The verb *eudokesa* ('I am well pleased, I have delighted') is aorist, possibly indicating a timeless or pre-temporal delight rather than a response to the baptism alone.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 2:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 42:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

4

Summary: *Matthew 4 opens with Jesus being led by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tested by the devil. Three temptations probe whether Jesus will misuse his identity as God's Son — for personal comfort, for spectacle, or for political power. Jesus responds to each with quotations from Deuteronomy, reliving Israel's wilderness testing and succeeding where Israel failed. After the temptation, Jesus withdraws to Galilee, settles in Capernaum, and begins his public ministry with the proclamation: 'Repent, for the kingdom of heaven has come near.' He calls his first four disciples — Simon Peter, Andrew, James, and John — from their fishing nets, and begins a widespread ministry of teaching, proclaiming, and healing throughout Galilee.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three temptations form a literary triptych, each answered with a quotation from Deuteronomy 6-8 — the section where Moses recounts Israel's wilderness failures. Jesus is presented as the true Israel who passes the test that the nation failed. The move to Capernaum fulfills Isaiah 9:1-2, connecting Jesus's ministry to the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali — the first regions lost to Assyrian conquest, now the first to see messianic light. The phrase 'kingdom of heaven' (*basileia ton ouranon*) is unique to Matthew among the Gospels; the other Synoptics use 'kingdom of God.' Matthew's Jewish audience would have understood 'heaven' as a reverential circumlocution for the divine name.*

Translation Friction: *The nature of the temptation narrative — whether visionary, literal, or theological — is debated. We render the Greek text as given without imposing a framework. The phrase 'the devil' (*ho diabolos*) translates a Greek term meaning 'slanderer' or 'accuser,' corresponding to the Hebrew *satan* ('adversary'). The quotation from Isaiah 9:1-2 in verses 15-16 follows the Septuagint rather than the Masoretic Text in some details.*

Connections: The temptation narrative connects to Israel's wilderness testing (Deuteronomy 6-8), the baptism of chapter 3, and the Sermon on the Mount that follows in chapters 5-7. The calling of the first disciples echoes prophetic call narratives (1 Kings 19:19-21, Elijah calling Elisha). The summary of Jesus's ministry in verse 23 sets up the Sermon on the Mount by establishing his authority as teacher and healer.

¹Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tested by the devil. ²After fasting forty days and forty nights, he was hungry. ³The tempter came and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread." ⁴But he answered, "It is written: 'A person does not live on bread alone, but on every word that comes from the mouth of God.'" ⁵Then the devil took him to the holy city and set him on the highest point of the temple, ⁶says to him, If you be the Son of God, cast thyself down — for it is written, He will give his angels charge concerning you: and in their hands they will bear you up, lest at any time you dash your foot against a stone. ⁷Jesus said to him, "Again it is written: 'You must not put the Lord your God to the test.'" ⁸Again, the devil took him to a very high mountain and showed him all the kingdoms of the world and their splendor, ⁹says to him, All these things will I give you, if you will fall down and worship me. ¹⁰Then Jesus said to him, "Go away, Satan! For it is written: 'You shall worship the Lord your God, and serve him only.'" ¹¹Then the devil left him, and angels came and attended to him. ¹²When Jesus heard that John had been arrested, he withdrew to Galilee. ¹³He left Nazareth and went to live in Capernaum by the sea, in the region of Zebulun and Naphtali, ¹⁴that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet and stated, ¹⁵"Land of Zebulun and land of Naphtali, the way to the sea, beyond the Jordan, Galilee of the nations — ¹⁶those who sat in darkness noticed remarkable light. And to them which sat in the region and shadow of death light is sprung up. ¹⁷From that time Jesus began to proclaim, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven has come near." ¹⁸As he was walking along the Sea of Galilee, he saw two brothers — Simon, who is called Peter, and his brother Andrew — casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen. ¹⁹He said to them, "Follow me, and I will make you fishers of people." ²⁰Immediately they left their nets and followed him. ²¹Going on from there, he saw two other brothers — James the son of Zebedee and his brother John — in a boat with their father Zebedee, mending their nets. He called them, ²²They immediately departed the ship and their Father, and followed him. ²³Jesus traveled throughout all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, proclaiming the good news of the kingdom, and healing every disease and every sickness among the people. ²⁴News about him spread throughout all of Syria, and people brought to him all who were afflicted with various diseases and pains, the demon-possessed, epileptics, and the paralyzed, and he healed them. ²⁵Large crowds followed him from Galilee, the Decapolis, Jerusalem, Judea, and from beyond the Jordan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *peirasthēnai* can mean 'to test' or 'to tempt.' We render it 'tested' because the initiative comes from God's Spirit — this is a divine proving, not merely a satanic enticement. The passive *anēchthē* ('was led up') indicates Jesus did not go on his own initiative but was directed by the Spirit, connecting this directly to the Spirit's descent at his baptism (3:16).
1. The Greek *diabolos* ('slanderer, accuser') corresponds to the Hebrew *satan*. Matthew uses *diabolos* rather than *satanas* here, though both terms appear in the New Testament.
2. The 'forty days and forty nights' echoes Moses on Sinai (Exodus 34:28) and Elijah's journey to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8). The number forty is a standard biblical period of testing and preparation — Israel wandered forty years, the flood lasted forty days. The Greek *epeinasen* is simply 'he was hungry,' a masterful understatement after forty days without food.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 34:28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 19:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The Greek *ei* ('if') with the indicative does not express doubt but assumes the condition is true: 'Since you are the Son of God' or 'Given that you are.' The temptation is not about proving identity but about misusing it. The tempter attacks at the point of legitimate physical need — hunger after forty days of fasting.
4. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 8:3, which recounts how God fed Israel with manna to teach them dependence on his word. The Greek *anthrōpos* ('person, human being') is gender-neutral; 'person' captures this better than the KJV's 'man.' The phrase *gegraptai* ('it is written,' perfect tense) indicates permanent, authoritative force — what was written remains in effect.

4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 8:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek pterygion ('little wing') refers to the highest point or parapet of the temple complex. Josephus describes the southeastern corner of the temple platform as having a dizzying drop into the Kidron Valley. 'The holy city' (tēn hagian polin) is Jerusalem, identified by its theological title rather than its name.
6. The devil now quotes Scripture — Psalm 91:11-12 — but omits the phrase 'to guard you in all your ways,' subtly distorting the promise from general providential care to a demand for spectacular intervention. The temptation is to force God's hand through presumptuous action rather than trusting his timing.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 91:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 6:16, which references Israel's testing of God at Massah (Exodus 17:1-7). The verb ekpeiraseis ('put to the test') is an intensified form of peirazō — it means to test in a demanding, presumptuous way. The word palin ('again') indicates Jesus is not countering Scripture with Scripture but completing its meaning — both passages stand together.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 6:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 17:1-7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek doxan ('glory, splendor') here refers to the visible magnificence of earthly power — wealth, armies, architecture. The offer of 'all the kingdoms' is the most audacious temptation: political power without the cross. No literal mountain provides a vantage point to see all earthly kingdoms; the scene is visionary or symbolic.
9. The Greek proskynesēs ('worship, bow down before') implies full prostration — the posture of total submission reserved for deity. The temptation strips away all pretense: the devil offers a shortcut to universal dominion that bypasses suffering and the cross, but the price is idolatry. The conditional ean ('if') with the subjunctive presents this as a genuine offer.
10. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 6:13. The word Satana is the Greek transliteration of the Hebrew satan ('adversary') — Jesus uses the name directly for the first time, dropping the circumlocution 'tempter' and 'devil.' The verb latreuō ('serve, render religious service') denotes devoted worship-service, not mere obedience. The command hypage ('go away') is sharp and authoritative.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 6:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek diēkonoun ('ministered, served, attended') is the imperfect tense, indicating ongoing service — the angels continued to care for him. This verb is the root of 'deacon' (diakonos). The angelic ministry recalls Elijah being fed by an angel after his own wilderness ordeal (1 Kings 19:5-8). The irony is deliberate: the provision Jesus refused to seize by miracle is now given to him by the Father.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 19:5-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Greek paredothē ('was handed over, delivered up') is the same verb later used for Jesus's own betrayal and arrest (10:4, 17:22, 26:2). Matthew's use of this word for John foreshadows Jesus's fate — the forerunner's path prefigures the Messiah's. 'Withdrew' (anechōrēsen) suggests a deliberate strategic move, not flight.
13. Capernaum (Kfar Nachum, 'village of Nahum') on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee becomes Jesus's base of operations. The Greek parathalassian ('by the sea') identifies the town's lakeside location. Matthew specifies the tribal territories of Zebulun and Naphtali to set up the Isaiah quotation that follows.
14. This is Matthew's second fulfillment formula (cf. 1:22). The move to Capernaum is presented not as a retreat from danger but as a prophetic fulfillment — geography itself serves God's redemptive plan.
15. Matthew quotes Isaiah 9:1-2 (8:23-9:1 in the Hebrew numbering). 'Galilee of the nations' (Galilaia tōn ethnōn) reflects the mixed Jewish-Gentile population of the northern region. The phrase hints at the universal scope of Jesus's mission — he begins not in Jerusalem but in a border region where Jew and Gentile mingle. 'The way of the sea' (hodon thalassēs) refers to the ancient trade route Via Maris.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 9:1-2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The Greek kathēmenoīs can mean 'sitting' or 'dwelling, living' — the sense is of a settled condition, not a momentary posture. 'Shadow of death' (skia thanatou) echoes the Hebrew tsalmaveth of Psalm 23:4 and Isaiah 9:2. The verb aneteilen ('has risen, dawned') is used of sunrise — the light that breaks upon Galilee is described in the language of a new dawn.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 9:1-2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 23:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Jesus's opening proclamation is identical to John the Baptist's in 3:2, establishing continuity between the forerunner and the Messiah. The Greek *metanoieite* ('repent') means a fundamental change of mind and direction — not merely feeling sorry but reorienting one's entire life. The perfect tense *ēngiken* ('has come near, has drawn close') indicates that the kingdom has already begun to arrive, not merely that it will come someday.
17. Matthew's 'kingdom of heaven' (*basileia tōn ouranōn*) is equivalent to Mark's and Luke's 'kingdom of God.' Matthew uses 'heaven' as a reverential circumlocution for God's name, following Jewish convention.
18. The Greek *amphiblēstron* refers to a circular casting net thrown from shore or from a shallow-water position, distinct from the dragnet (*sagēnē*) of 13:47. The parenthetical 'who is called Peter' (*ton legomenon Petron*) introduces the name by which readers will know him. The Sea of Galilee is technically a freshwater lake (approximately 13 miles long by 8 miles wide), but the Greek *thalassa* ('sea') follows the Hebrew convention of calling any large body of water *yam*.
19. The call *deute opisō mou* ('come after me') uses the language of rabbinic discipleship — following a teacher physically implied intellectual and moral formation. 'Fishers of people' (*halieis anthrōpōn*) is a metaphor drawn from their actual trade. The Greek *anthrōpōn* is gender-inclusive ('people'), not restricted to males.
20. The adverb *eutheōs* ('immediately, at once') emphasizes the radical, unhesitating nature of their response. The Greek *diktia* ('nets') represents their entire livelihood. Matthew narrates the call with dramatic compression — there is no negotiation, no request for time, no farewell.
21. The Greek *katartizontas* ('mending, preparing, putting in order') suggests the brothers were repairing nets after a fishing expedition. The detail that they are with their father Zebedee heightens the cost of their response — they leave not only their trade but their family. The Greek *ploion* is a fishing boat, not a large vessel.
22. The cost escalates from the first calling: Simon and Andrew left nets (equipment), but James and John leave both the boat (a more substantial capital asset) and their father (family obligation). Matthew highlights what discipleship requires — not merely adding Jesus to one's life but reordering all other loyalties.
23. This summary verse presents Jesus's ministry in a threefold pattern: teaching (*didaskōn*), proclaiming (*kēryssōn*), and healing (*therapeuōn*). This triad recurs in 9:35, forming an *inclusio* around the Sermon on the Mount and the miracle collection. The 'good news of the kingdom' (*to euangelion tēs basileias*) is Matthew's phrase for the content of Jesus's preaching — the announcement that God's reign is arriving. The Greek *malakian* refers to weakness or infirmity as distinct from *nosos* (disease).
24. The Greek *selēniāzomenous* (literally 'moon-struck') refers to those suffering from what was associated with lunar cycles — likely epilepsy. The KJV's 'lunatick' comes from the same etymology but is no longer a medical term. The list moves from general ('various diseases and pains') to specific conditions, demonstrating the comprehensive scope of Jesus's healing power. Syria (the Roman province encompassing the region north of Galilee) indicates that Jesus's reputation extended beyond Jewish territory.
25. The five regions listed encompass a wide geographic sweep — from Galilee in the north, through the Decapolis (a league of ten Greco-Roman cities east of the Jordan), to Jerusalem and Judea in the south, and the Transjordan region. This crowd becomes the audience for the Sermon on the Mount in chapters 5-7. The inclusion of the Decapolis (heavily Gentile) again hints at the universal scope of Jesus's ministry.

5

Summary: *Matthew 5 opens the Sermon on the Mount, the first of five major teaching discourses in Matthew's Gospel. Jesus ascends a mountain (echoing Moses on Sinai), sits (the posture of authoritative teaching), and addresses his disciples while the crowds listen. The chapter contains the Beatitudes (5:3-12), the salt and light sayings (5:13-16), Jesus's declaration that he has come not to abolish the Law but to fulfill it (5:17-20), and six 'antitheses' in which Jesus deepens the Torah's demands — addressing anger (5:21-26), lust (5:27-30), divorce (5:31-32), oaths (5:33-37), retaliation (5:38-42), and love of enemies (5:43-48). The chapter culminates in the command to 'be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sermon on the Mount is structured as a new Sinai revelation. Just as Moses ascended the mountain to receive the Torah, Jesus ascends to deliver its definitive interpretation. The Beatitudes reverse worldly valuations — the poor in spirit, the grieving, the meek, and the persecuted are declared blessed. The antitheses ('You have heard... but I say to you') do not contradict the Torah but radicalize it, moving from external behavior to internal disposition. Jesus claims an authority that surpasses Moses: not 'Thus says the LORD' but 'I say to you.' The Greek *teleios* ('perfect') in verse 48 means 'complete, mature, whole' — not sinless perfection but wholehearted devotion.*

*Translation Friction: The relationship between Jesus and the Torah in 5:17-20 is one of the most debated passages in the New Testament. We render the Greek as given without resolving the tension between 'not one iota will pass from the Law' and the apparent modifications that follow. The antitheses vary in structure — some quote the Torah directly, others cite popular interpretations ('You have heard it was said'). We preserve these distinctions. The teaching on divorce (5:31-32) involves the contested term *porneia*, which we render transparently with a note on the semantic range.*

Connections: The mountain setting connects to Sinai (Exodus 19-20), the Beatitudes echo the Psalms (especially Psalm 37) and Isaiah 61, the Law-fulfillment passage connects to Matthew's ongoing concern with the Torah's continuing validity, and the antitheses prepare for the conflicts with religious leaders in later chapters. The command to love enemies (5:44) will be tested in the Passion narrative.

¹When he saw the crowds, he went up on the mountain, and after he sat down, his disciples came to him. ²He opened his mouth and began to teach them, saying: ³Blessed are the poor in spirit — because heaven's kingdom belongs to them. ⁴Blessed are those who mourn, for they will be comforted. ⁵Blessed are the meek — for they will receive the earth. ⁶Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they will be satisfied. ⁷Blessed are the merciful, for they will receive mercy. ⁸Blessed are the pure in heart — since they will see God. ⁹Blessed are the peacemakers, for they will be called sons of God. ¹⁰Blessed are those who are persecuted because of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. ¹¹Blessed are you when people insult you, persecute you, and falsely say every kind of evil against you because of me. ¹²Rejoice and be glad, for your reward is great in heaven. For in the same way they persecuted the prophets who came before you. ¹³You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt loses its flavor, how can it be made salty again? It is no longer good for anything except to be thrown out and trampled underfoot. ¹⁴You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden. ¹⁵Nor do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but on a lampstand, and it gives light to everyone in the house. ¹⁶In the same way, let your light shine before others, so that they may see your good works and give glory to your Father in heaven. ¹⁷Do not think that I have come to abolish the Law or the Prophets. I have not come to abolish them but to fulfill them. ¹⁸For truly I tell you, until heaven and earth pass away, not one iota or one stroke of a letter will pass from the Law until everything has been accomplished. ¹⁹Therefore, whoever sets aside one of the least of these commandments and teaches others to do the same will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever practices and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. ²⁰For I tell you, unless your righteousness surpasses that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will never enter the kingdom of heaven. ²¹You have heard that it was said to those of ancient times, 'You shall not murder,' and 'Whoever murders will be subject to judgment.' ²²But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment. Whoever says to his brother, 'Raka!' will be answerable to the council. And whoever says, 'You fool!' will be liable to the fire of Gehenna. ²³So if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has something against you, ²⁴Leave there your gift prior to the altar, and go your way. First be reconciled to your brother, and then come and offer your gift. ²⁵Come to terms quickly with your accuser while you are on the way to court with him, or your accuser may hand you over to the judge, and the judge to the officer, and you will be thrown into prison. ²⁶Truly I tell you, you will never get out until you have paid the last penny. ²⁷You have heard that it was said, 'You shall not commit adultery.' ²⁸But I say to you that everyone who looks at a woman with lustful intent has already committed adultery with her in his heart. ²⁹If your right eye causes you to sin, tear it out and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to be thrown into Gehenna. ³⁰And if your right hand causes you to sin, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to lose one part of your body than for your whole body to go into Gehenna. ³¹It was also said, 'Whoever divorces his wife must give her a certificate of divorce.' ³²But I say to you that everyone who divorces his wife, except on the ground of sexual immorality, makes her commit adultery, and whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery. ³³Again, you have heard that it was said to those of ancient times, 'You shall not swear falsely, but shall fulfill your oaths to the Lord.' ³⁴But I say to you, do not swear at all — not by heaven, for it is the throne of God, ³⁵Nor by the earth. Since it is his footstool — neither by Jerusalem. Since it is the city of the remarkable King. ³⁶Neither shalt you swear by your own head, because you canst not turn a single hair white or black. ³⁷Let your 'Yes' be 'Yes' and your 'No' be 'No.' Anything beyond this comes from the evil one. ³⁸You have heard that

it was said, 'An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.' ³⁹But I say to you, do not resist the evildoer. If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn the other to him as well. ⁴⁰If someone wants to sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as well. ⁴¹If someone forces you to go one mile, go with him two miles. ⁴²Give to the one who asks you, and do not turn away from the one who wants to borrow from you. ⁴³You have heard that it was said, 'You shall love your neighbor and hate your enemy.' ⁴⁴But I say to you, love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you, ⁴⁵So you can become true children of your Father which is in heaven — since he makes his sun rise on both evil people and good people, and sends rain on the just and on the unjust. ⁴⁶For if you love those who love you, what reward do you have? Do not even the tax collectors do the same? ⁴⁷And if you greet only your brothers, what are you doing more than others? Do not even the Gentiles do the same? ⁴⁸You therefore must be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The definite article to oros ('the mountain') suggests a specific location, though Matthew does not name it. The Sinai typology is deliberate — Moses went up the mountain to receive the Law, Jesus goes up to interpret it with final authority. Sitting (kathisantos) was the standard posture for an authoritative Jewish teacher; standing indicated informal conversation.
2. The phrase 'opened his mouth' (anoixas to stoma autou) is a Semitic idiom signaling the beginning of a solemn, formal discourse — not merely casual speech. It appears in the Septuagint for prophetic and wisdom utterances (Job 3:1, Daniel 10:16). The imperfect edidasken ('was teaching, began to teach') suggests an extended teaching session.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Job 3:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 10:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The Greek makarioi ('blessed, fortunate, happy') does not merely describe an emotion but declares a state of divine favor. The 'poor in spirit' (ptōchoi tō pneumati) does not mean lacking in spiritual vitality but recognizing one's spiritual poverty and dependence on God. The Hebrew background is anawim — the humble poor who depend entirely on God. Luke's parallel (6:20) simply has 'the poor,' but Matthew's 'in spirit' clarifies the inner disposition.
4. The Greek penthountes ('those who mourn, grieve') refers to deep grief — the kind associated with death or catastrophic loss. The passive paraklēthēsontai ('will be comforted') is a divine passive: God himself will be the one who comforts. This echoes Isaiah 61:2-3, where the Messiah comes 'to comfort all who mourn.'
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 61:2-3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. This Beatitude quotes Psalm 37:11 almost verbatim. The Greek praeis ('meek, gentle, humble') does not mean weak but describes power under control — strength expressed with gentleness. Moses is called the meekest man on earth (Numbers 12:3), yet he was a formidable leader. The Greek gēn can mean 'earth' or 'land' — in the Psalm 37 context it referred to the promised land, but Jesus universalizes the promise.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 37:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 12:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek chortasthēsontai ('will be satisfied, filled') originally described the feeding of animals — it means filled to capacity, fully satiated. The metaphor of hunger and thirst for righteousness (dikaioσynēn) implies a desperate, survival-level craving, not casual interest. Matthew's 'righteousness' (dikaioσynē) encompasses both right relationship with God and just conduct — the Hebrew tsedeq/tsedaqah.
7. The Greek eleēmones ('merciful, compassionate') and eleēthēsontai ('will be shown mercy') share the same root (eleos), creating a wordplay: mercy given is mercy received. The principle of reciprocity runs throughout the Sermon (cf. 6:12, 6:14-15, 7:1-2). The divine passive again indicates God as the source of mercy.
8. The Greek katharoi tē kardia ('pure in heart') echoes Psalm 24:4 — 'the one with clean hands and a pure heart.' The heart (kardia) in biblical thought is the center of will, thought, and moral decision, not merely emotion. Purity here means undivided loyalty, sincerity, and integrity. The promise 'they will see God' (ton theon opsontai) is extraordinary — in the Old Testament, seeing God was considered fatal (Exodus 33:20).
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 24:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 33:20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The Greek eirēnopoioi ('peacemakers') is a compound word appearing only here in the New Testament. It describes those who actively create peace, not merely those who avoid conflict. The designation 'sons of God' (huiοi theou) means they share the character of God, who is the ultimate peacemaker. In the ancient world, the Roman emperor was called a 'peacemaker' — Jesus quietly reassigns the title.

10. The perfect participle *dediōgmenoi* ('those who have been persecuted') indicates an ongoing state resulting from past action — these are people who live under persecution as a condition of their lives. The return to 'kingdom of heaven' creates an inclusio with verse 3, framing the eight Beatitudes as a unified whole. Persecution for righteousness — not for foolishness or stubbornness — is the qualifying condition.
11. The shift from third person ('blessed are those') to second person ('blessed are you') makes this final Beatitude directly personal and marks the transition from the formal blessings to direct address. The three verbs — insult (*oneidisōsin*), persecute (*diōxōsin*), say evil (*eipōsin pan ponēron*) — escalate from verbal abuse to active pursuit to character assassination. The qualifying phrase *pseudomenoi* ('falsely, lying') is critical: the blessing applies only to false accusations.
12. The two imperatives *chairete* ('rejoice') and *agalliasathe* ('be overjoyed, leap for joy') intensify one another. The word *misthos* ('reward, wages') does not imply merit-based earning but God's generous response to faithfulness. By linking the disciples with the persecuted prophets, Jesus places them in the prophetic succession — they are heirs to the same tradition of faithful witness that was met with hostility.
13. The Greek *mōranthē* (from *mōrainō*, 'to become foolish, to become tasteless') creates a double meaning — salt that loses its taste has become 'foolish.' In the ancient world, salt preserved food from decay, flavored meals, and was used in covenant rituals (Leviticus 2:13, Numbers 18:19). If the preserving agent itself fails, nothing can restore it. The rhetorical question 'how can it be made salty again?' expects the answer 'it cannot.'
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 2:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 18:19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. In the Old Testament, Israel was called to be 'a light to the nations' (Isaiah 42:6, 49:6). Jesus transfers this vocation to his disciples. The image of a city on a hill (*polis epanō orous keimenē*) may evoke Jerusalem, built on Mount Zion, visible from great distances. The claim is stunning — Jesus's followers are now assigned the role that Israel was given through the prophets.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 42:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek *modion* ('measuring basket,' about 8.75 liters) was a common household item. The *lychnos* ('oil lamp') was a small clay vessel with a wick — the primary source of indoor light in first-century homes. The *lychnia* ('lampstand') elevated the lamp to maximize its reach. The image is purely practical — hiding a light source defeats its purpose.
16. The purpose of visible good works is not self-promotion but theocentric: the goal is that observers glorify 'your Father in heaven' (*ton patera hymōn ton en tois ouranois*). This phrase — 'your Father in heaven' — is distinctive to Matthew and occurs repeatedly in the Sermon on the Mount. The Greek *kala erga* ('good works, beautiful deeds') denotes works that are both morally good and visibly attractive.
17. The Greek *katalysai* ('to destroy, demolish, abolish') is a strong term — literally 'to loosen down, dismantle.' Jesus denies any intent to dismantle the Torah. The verb *plērōsai* ('to fulfill, to fill up, to bring to completion') is debated: does it mean 'to obey perfectly,' 'to bring to its intended goal,' 'to fill with deeper meaning,' or 'to bring about what it prophesied'? The ambiguity may be intentional — Jesus fulfills the Law in all these senses. 'The Law and the Prophets' (*ton nomon ē tous prophētas*) is a standard designation for the entire Hebrew Scriptures.
18. The Greek *amēn legō hymin* ('truly I tell you') is Jesus's characteristic formula for solemn pronouncements — it is unprecedented in Jewish teaching, where *amēn* typically concludes a statement rather than introducing one. The *iōta* is the smallest letter of the Greek alphabet (corresponding to the Hebrew *yod*, the smallest Hebrew letter), and *keraia* ('horn, serif, stroke') refers to the tiny decorative strokes that distinguish similar Hebrew letters. The double negative *ou mē* ('not at all, by no means') is the strongest form of negation in Greek.
19. The Greek *lysē* ('loosens, sets aside, annuls') echoes the *katalysai* of verse 17 — whoever 'loosens' even the smallest commandment participates in the very abolition Jesus has rejected. The pairing of 'practices and teaches' (*poiēsē kai didaxē*) insists on integrity: teaching without practice is worthless. Being 'called least' may mean having the lowest status in the kingdom, not necessarily exclusion from it.
20. This verse functions as the thesis statement for the six antitheses that follow (5:21-48). The scribes and Pharisees were considered the most meticulous observers of the Law — to exceed their righteousness seemed impossible. The Greek *perisseusē* ('exceed, overflow, surpass') implies not more of the same kind but a different quality of righteousness — one that penetrates from external observance to internal transformation. The double negative *ou mē* ('never, by no means') makes the warning absolute.
21. This introduces the first antithesis. The formula 'You have heard that it was said' (*ēkousate hoti errethē*) refers to the synagogue reading of Torah. The commandment quotes the sixth commandment (Exodus 20:13, Deuteronomy 5:17). The Greek *phoneuseis* ('murder') is more specific than 'kill' — it refers to unlawful killing, not all forms of taking life. The addition 'whoever murders will be subject to judgment' reflects the established legal tradition surrounding the commandment.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 20:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 5:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The emphatic *egō de legō hymin* ('but I say to you') claims an authority that transcends even Moses — Jesus does not cite another authority but speaks on his own. The three-step escalation moves from internal anger to verbal contempt (*Raka*, an Aramaic term of derision meaning

'empty-head' or 'worthless') to outright denunciation (Mōre, 'fool,' which in Hebrew carries the connotation of moral and spiritual bankruptcy — cf. Psalm 14:1, 'The fool says in his heart'). Gehenna (geennan) refers to the Valley of Hinnom south of Jerusalem, associated with child sacrifice (2 Kings 23:10) and later used as a metaphor for divine judgment.

22. The SBLGNT does not include 'without a cause' (eikē), which appears in some later manuscripts. We follow the critical text.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 14:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 23:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The scenario assumes a functioning temple with its sacrificial system — Jesus addresses people who actually bring offerings to the altar. The Greek *thysiaστήριον* ('altar') specifically refers to the temple altar in Jerusalem. The point is radical: reconciliation with a fellow human being takes priority over worship of God.
24. The command is startling in its priorities: leave the sacrifice mid-act to restore a broken relationship. The Greek *diallagēthi* ('be reconciled') is an aorist passive imperative — do whatever it takes to restore the relationship, taking responsibility for your part. The word *prōton* ('first') makes the sequence absolute: reconciliation before worship, not after.
25. The Greek *antidikos* ('adversary, accuser, opponent at law') is a legal term for the opposing party in a lawsuit. The illustration shifts from the temple to the courtroom, but the principle is the same: resolve conflicts urgently, before they escalate beyond your control. The chain of custody — accuser to judge to officer to prison — describes the inexorable progression of unresolved conflict.
26. The Greek *kodrantēn* (Latin quadrans) was the smallest Roman coin, worth about 1/64 of a denarius (a day's wage). The point is totality — every last fraction must be repaid. The shift to singular 'you' (*soi*) makes this personally direct. Whether the saying carries eschatological overtones (final judgment) or remains a practical warning about earthly litigation is debated; likely both dimensions are present.
27. The second antithesis addresses the seventh commandment (Exodus 20:14, Deuteronomy 5:18). The Greek *moicheuseis* ('commit adultery') refers specifically to sexual intercourse with another person's spouse, violating the marriage covenant.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 5:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The Greek *pros to epithymēsai* ('with the purpose of desiring, for the purpose of lusting') indicates deliberate, intentional gazing — not an involuntary glance but a cultivated look aimed at arousal. The infinitive of purpose makes the intent central: this is about the will's direction, not mere biological response. The phrase 'in his heart' (*en tē kardia autou*) again locates the moral action in the internal sphere of will and desire.
29. The Greek *skandalizei* ('causes to stumble, causes to sin, entraps') gives us the English 'scandalize.' The language is deliberately hyperbolic — Jesus is not commanding literal self-mutilation but using shock rhetoric to convey the urgency of dealing with sin at its source. The right eye and right hand (v. 30) represent the most valued members. The logic is surgical: better partial loss now than total ruin later.
30. The repetition of the eye/hand pattern reinforces the seriousness of the demand. The right hand was the hand of power, skill, and oath-taking. The verb *ekkopson* ('cut off') is more violent than the eye's 'tear out' (*exele*), escalating the rhetoric. The parallel between *apōlētai* ('perish, be destroyed') for the limb and *apelthē* ('go away, depart') for the body into Gehenna highlights the choice: voluntary partial loss versus involuntary total destruction.
31. The third antithesis cites Deuteronomy 24:1-4, which regulated (but did not endorse) an existing practice of divorce. The Greek *apostasion* ('certificate of divorce, document of separation') was a legal document that freed the woman to remarry. In the first-century debate between the schools of Hillel and Shammai, the grounds for divorce were fiercely contested.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 24:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The exception clause *parektos logou porneias* ('except on the ground of porneia') appears only in Matthew (here and 19:9), not in Mark or Luke. The Greek *porneia* has a broad semantic range: sexual immorality, fornication, prostitution, incest, or any illicit sexual conduct. Whether it refers specifically to pre-marital unchastity, adultery, or sexual sin in general is debated. The logic assumes a patriarchal context where a divorced woman would need to remarry for economic survival — hence the divorced husband 'makes her' commit adultery by forcing her into a new marriage.
33. The fourth antithesis addresses oath-taking. The citation is a composite of Leviticus 19:12 ('You shall not swear falsely by my name'), Numbers 30:2, and Deuteronomy 23:21-23 (on fulfilling vows). The Greek *epiorkēseis* ('swear falsely, commit perjury') and the command to 'fulfill your oaths' (*apodōseis tous horkous*) together summarize the Torah's teaching: if you swear, do not lie; keep what you promise.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 19:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 30:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 23:21-23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. The prohibition *mē omosai holōs* ('do not swear at all') is absolute in form. The practice of swearing by things adjacent to God (heaven, earth, Jerusalem, one's own head) was a way of invoking solemnity without directly using God's name — a legalistic evasion that Jesus exposes. His argument is that everything is connected to God, so every oath implicitly involves God.
35. The phrases echo Isaiah 66:1 ('Heaven is my throne and the earth is my footstool') and Psalm 48:2 ('the city of the great King'). Jesus's reasoning reveals a theology of divine sovereignty: heaven, earth, and Jerusalem all belong to God, so swearing by any of them ultimately invokes God himself. The 'great King' (*tou megalou basileōs*) is God, not an earthly monarch.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 66:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 48:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The climactic point: you cannot even swear by your own head because you do not have sovereignty over your own body. The inability to change the color of a hair demonstrates human limitations — even the self belongs to God. This strips away every possible basis for oath-making and drives the listener to the simple alternative of verse 37.
37. The doubled *nai nai, ou ou* ('yes yes, no no') emphasizes simplicity and reliability. The Greek *ek tou ponērou* can mean either 'from evil' (abstract) or 'from the evil one' (personal) — the ambiguity is present in the Greek and we follow the personal reading since Matthew elsewhere uses *ho ponēros* for Satan (13:19, 38). The principle is that truthful people do not need oaths — their word alone is sufficient.
38. The fifth antithesis cites the *lex talionis* ('law of retaliation') from Exodus 21:24, Leviticus 24:20, and Deuteronomy 19:21. In its original context, this law was a limitation on vengeance — it prevented disproportionate retaliation by requiring that punishment match the offense exactly. By the first century, the rabbis had already largely replaced literal application with monetary compensation.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 21:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 24:20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 19:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The Greek *mē antistēnai tō ponērō* ('do not resist the evil one/evildoer') sets up four illustrations of non-retaliation. A strike on the right cheek (*rhapizeī eis tēn dexian siagona*) with a right hand would be a backhanded slap — an insult, not an attack. This was a gesture of contempt in the ancient world. Turning the other cheek is not passive submission but a refusal to be defined by the insult, forcing the aggressor to either treat you as an equal or back down.
40. The Greek *chitōna* ('tunic, undergarment') was the inner garment; the *himation* ('cloak, outer garment') was the more valuable outer wrap that also served as a blanket at night. Under Exodus 22:26-27, a creditor could take a debtor's cloak as collateral but had to return it by nightfall. Jesus says to give it voluntarily — a radical generosity that exposes the absurdity of litigious greed.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 22:26-27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The Greek *angareusei* ('to press into service, to requisition') is a Persian loanword for the power of a government official to compel a civilian to carry a load or provide labor. Roman soldiers had the legal right to conscript locals to carry equipment for one Roman mile (approximately 1,000 paces or 4,850 feet). The instruction to go a second mile transforms compelled service into voluntary generosity.
42. The two commands cover giving (*dos*, 'give') and lending (*danisasthai*, 'to borrow'). The Greek *mē apostrophēs* ('do not turn away') echoes Deuteronomy 15:7-8, which warns against hardening your heart or closing your hand against a poor brother. The instruction is not about financial naivety but about a disposition of open-handed generosity that refuses to calculate advantage.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 15:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The sixth and final antithesis. 'Love your neighbor' comes from Leviticus 19:18, but 'hate your enemy' is not a direct Torah quotation. It may reflect a popular interpretation, a Qumran-type ideology (the Dead Sea Scrolls' Rule of the Community mandates loving the sons of light and hating the sons of darkness), or a logical inference drawn from the limitation of 'neighbor' to fellow Israelites.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

44. The SBLGNT has the shorter reading without 'bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you' — these expansions appear in later manuscripts under the influence of Luke 6:27-28. We follow the critical text. The Greek *agapate* ('love') is the present imperative, commanding a habitual pattern of life, not a single act. The love commanded (*agapē*) is not emotional affection but willed, active commitment to the well-being of the other — including those who actively harm you.
45. The logic is breathtaking: God's indiscriminate generosity with sun and rain becomes the model for human love. The Father does not withhold creation's blessings from evildoers — his goodness extends to all. To be 'sons of your Father' (*huiioi tou patros hymōn*) means to share his character. The pairing of 'evil and good' with 'righteous and unrighteous' (*dikaious kai adikous*) covers the entire moral spectrum — God's provision is universal.
46. The Greek *telōnai* ('tax collectors') were Jews who collected taxes or tolls on behalf of the Roman government. They were despised as collaborators and assumed to be corrupt (since they often charged above the required amount). Jesus's argument is comparative: if your love extends only to those who love you back, you are no different from the most despised members of society. Even they manage reciprocal affection.
47. The SBLGNT reads *ethnikoi* ('Gentiles, pagans') rather than *telōnai* ('tax collectors') found in some manuscripts. The greeting (*aspasēsthe*) in the ancient Near East was more than a casual hello — it involved a blessing, an inquiry about welfare, and could include an embrace or kiss. To limit greetings to 'brothers' (*adelphous*, meaning fellow community members) was tribal exclusivism. The rhetorical question 'what are you doing more than others?' (*ti perisson poieite*) challenges disciples to exceed the normal human pattern.
48. The Greek *teleioi* ('perfect, complete, mature, whole') does not mean sinless moral perfection in the modern sense. It comes from the root *telos* ('end, goal, completion') and means 'whole, complete, having reached the intended goal.' In context, it means loving completely — without the partial, self-serving limitations exposed in verses 46-47. Luke's parallel (6:36) has 'be merciful' (*oiktirmones*), which may illuminate Matthew's 'perfect': wholeness of love that embraces even enemies. The future indicative *esesthe* ('you will be') can function as an imperative in Greek.

6

Summary: *Matthew 6 continues the Sermon on the Mount, shifting from the antitheses of chapter 5 to the practice of piety. Jesus addresses three pillars of Jewish devotion — giving to the needy (6:1-4), prayer (6:5-15), and fasting (6:16-18) — warning against performing them for human approval rather than for God. At the center stands the Lord's Prayer (6:9-13), the model prayer that encapsulates the entire Sermon's theology. The chapter then turns to the question of treasure and anxiety: where is your treasure? (6:19-24), and why do you worry? (6:25-34). The chapter culminates in the command to 'seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness,' with the promise that all material needs will be provided.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Lord's Prayer functions as a structural and theological center for the entire Sermon on the Mount. Its petitions move from God's concerns (name, kingdom, will) to human needs (bread, forgiveness, deliverance) — modeling the priority order that the rest of the Sermon teaches. The 'do not worry' passage (6:25-34) draws on creation theology: birds, flowers, and grass serve as witnesses to God's providential care. The phrase 'you cannot serve God and money' (6:24) uses the Aramaic *mamōnas*, a personification of wealth as a rival deity. The teaching on prayer explicitly contrasts Jewish practice ('do not heap up empty phrases as the Gentiles do') with the intimacy of addressing God as 'Father.'*

Translation Friction: *The doxology at the end of the Lord's Prayer ('For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever, Amen') does not appear in the earliest Greek manuscripts and is absent from the SBLGNT. We note this in the translator notes for verse 13. The phrase 'daily bread' (*arton epiousion*) contains a word (*epiousios*) that appears nowhere else in all of Greek literature — its precise meaning is debated. The relationship between 'debts' (*opheilēmata*, v. 12) and 'trespasses' (*paraptōmata*, vv. 14-15) involves a shift in vocabulary that we preserve and note.*

Connections: *The Lord's Prayer connects to the broader prayer tradition of Israel (especially the Amidah/Shemoneh Esreh). The 'do not worry' teaching echoes Psalm 37 and Proverbs 3:5-6. The 'eye as the lamp of the body' saying (6:22-23) connects to the purity of heart in 5:8. The teaching on treasures prepares for the parables of chapter 13 (hidden treasure, pearl of great price).*

1Be careful not to practice your righteousness before others in order to be seen by them. Otherwise, you have no reward with your Father in heaven. 2So when you give to the needy, do not sound a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may be praised by others. Truly I tell you, they have received their reward in full. 3

But when you give to the needy, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing, ⁴That your alms may be in secret — and your Father which sees in secret himself will reward you openly. ⁵And when you pray, do not be like the hypocrites, for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and on the street corners so that they may be seen by others. Truly I tell you, they have received their reward in full. ⁶But when you pray, go into your room, shut the door, and pray to your Father who is in secret. And your Father who sees in secret will reward you. ⁷When you pray, do not heap up empty phrases as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. ⁸Do not be like them, for your Father knows what you need before you ask him. ⁹Pray then like this: 'Our Father in heaven, let your name be held holy. ¹⁰Let your kingdom come. Let your will be done, on earth as it is in heaven. ¹¹Provide us today with the bread we need. ¹²And forgive us our debts, as we also have forgiven our debtors. ¹³And do not bring us into temptation, but deliver us from the evil one.' ¹⁴For if you pardon men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also pardon you. ¹⁵But if you do not forgive others, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses. ¹⁶When you fast, do not look gloomy like the hypocrites, for they disfigure their faces so that their fasting will be noticed by others. Truly I tell you, they have received their reward in full. ¹⁷But when you fast, put oil on your head and wash your face, ¹⁸That you appear not to men to fast, but to your Father which is in secret — and your Father, which sees in secret, will reward you openly. ¹⁹Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and decay destroy and where thieves break in and steal. ²⁰But store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor decay destroys and where thieves do not break in and steal. ²¹For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. ²²The eye is the lamp of the body. So if your eye is healthy, your whole body will be full of light. ²³But if your eye is evil, your whole body will be full of darkness. If then the light in you is darkness, how great is that darkness! ²⁴No one can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money. ²⁵Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life — what you will eat or what you will drink — or about your body — what you will wear. Is not life more than food, and the body more than clothing? ²⁶Look at the birds of the sky — they do not sow or reap or gather into barns, and yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not worth much more than they are? ²⁷And which of you by worrying can add a single hour to his life span? ²⁸And why do you worry about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow. They do not labor or spin, ²⁹Yet I tell you, that not even Solomon in all his splendor was never dressed as beautifully as even one of these flowers. ³⁰But if God so clothes the grass of the field, which is alive today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, will he not much more clothe you — you of little faith? ³¹So do not worry, saying, 'What will we eat?' or 'What will we drink?' or 'What will we wear?' ³²For the Gentiles pursue all these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need all of them. ³³But seek first the kingdom of God and his righteousness, and all these things will be provided for you as well. ³⁴So do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Each day has enough trouble of its own.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads *dikaiosynēn* ('righteousness') rather than *eleēmosynēn* ('alms, charitable giving') found in later manuscripts. 'Righteousness' serves as the umbrella term for the three practices that follow: giving, prayer, and fasting. The Greek *pros to theathēnai* ('in order to be seen, for the purpose of being noticed') uses the verb from which we get 'theater' — performing religion for an audience. The Father 'in heaven' (*en tois ouranois*) is contrasted with the earthly audience throughout this section.
2. The Greek *hypokritai* ('hypocrites') originally meant 'actors' — those who perform behind a mask on stage. Jesus repurposes the theatrical metaphor: religious performers are actors playing to a human audience rather than living before God. Whether the 'trumpet sounding' is literal (some form of public announcement) or figurative (drawing attention to one's generosity) is debated. The verb *apechousin* ('they have received in full') is a commercial term meaning 'paid in full, receipt given' — human praise is the only payment they will ever receive.
3. The idiom is vivid hyperbole: even your own body should not be aware of your generosity. The right hand (*dexia*) was the hand of action and blessing; the left hand (*aristera*) was considered secondary. The point is not literal concealment (impossible from oneself) but a disposition so thoroughly free from self-display that giving becomes second nature — unconscious, reflexive, unperformed.
4. The SBLGNT does not include *en tō phanerō* ('openly') after 'will reward you,' which appears in later manuscripts. The contrast is between the 'secret' (*en tō kryptō*) place where genuine piety occurs and the public stage where performative religion operates. The Father 'who sees in secret' (*ho blepōn en tō kryptō*) is the only audience that matters — God perceives what no human observer can.

5. Standing (*hestōtes*) was the normal Jewish posture for prayer — Jesus does not criticize the posture but the motive. The Greek *philousin* ('they love, they take pleasure in') exposes the deeper problem: they enjoy being seen praying more than they enjoy praying. The 'corners of the broad streets' (*gōniais tōn plateiōn*) were intersections where one would be visible from multiple directions — maximum exposure.
6. The Greek *tameion* ('inner room, storeroom, private chamber') refers to the most private space in a house — often a windowless storage room. Shutting the door (*kleisas tēn thyran*) physically removes the human audience. The point is not that all prayer must be private (Jesus prayed publicly) but that the essential dynamic of prayer is between the person and God alone. Again the SBLGNT omits *en tō phanerō* ('openly').
7. The Greek *battalogēsēte* is a rare word, possibly onomatopoeic (imitating the sound of babbling: 'ba-ba-ba'). It may mean 'to babble, to speak repetitiously and without meaning, to heap up empty phrases.' The Greek *polylogia* ('many words, wordiness') diagnoses the underlying error: the assumption that God must be nagged or informed by sheer volume of speech. The contrast is with the concise Lord's Prayer that follows.
8. The logic raises a question: if God already knows our needs, why pray at all? Jesus does not answer this directly, but the Lord's Prayer that follows answers implicitly — prayer is not informing God but aligning oneself with God's purposes. The verb *oiden* ('knows,' perfect tense of *oida*) indicates settled, complete knowledge, not something God must learn.
9. The address 'Our Father' (*Pater hēmōn*) is communal — not 'my Father' but 'our Father,' embedding the pray-er in community from the first word. 'In heaven' (*ho en tois ouranois*) distinguishes the divine Father from earthly fathers. The passive imperative *hagiasthētō* ('let it be sanctified, let it be treated as holy') is a divine passive — God himself will bring about the honoring of his name, but the pray-er asks for it and commits to participating in it. The 'name' (*onoma*) in Hebrew thought represents the entire character and reputation of God.
10. The aorist imperatives *elthētō* ('let it come') and *genēthētō* ('let it be done') express urgency — bring the kingdom now, accomplish your will now. 'Your kingdom' (*hē basileia sou*) is the same kingdom of heaven Jesus has been proclaiming since 4:17. The phrase 'on earth as in heaven' (*hōs en ouranō kai epī gēs*) may modify all three petitions — let your name be holy, your kingdom come, and your will be done, on earth as these things already are in heaven.
11. The Greek *epiousios* ('daily') is one of the rarest words in the entire Greek language — it appears nowhere else in all surviving Greek literature outside the Lord's Prayer and may have been coined for this purpose. Possible meanings: (1) 'for the coming day' (from *epi* + *ienai*, 'for the next day'), (2) 'for existence/sustenance' (from *epi* + *ousia*, 'for being'), or (3) 'necessary, essential.' The prayer echoes the manna provision in Exodus 16, where Israel was given bread for one day at a time — daily dependence on God rather than hoarding.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Greek *opheilēmata* ('debts, what is owed') is a financial metaphor applied to moral and spiritual obligation. Matthew uses 'debts' where Luke (11:4) uses 'sins' (*hamartias*), revealing that both concepts overlap. The aorist *aphēkamen* ('we have forgiven,' completed action) is striking — the prayer presupposes that we have already forgiven before we ask God to forgive us. The 'as' (*hōs*) does not mean 'because' (earning forgiveness by forgiving) but establishes a pattern: those who have experienced God's forgiveness extend it to others.
13. The petition *mē eisenegkēs* ('do not bring into, do not lead into') has troubled interpreters: does God tempt people? James 1:13 says God tempts no one. The Greek *peirasmos* can mean 'testing' (from God) or 'temptation' (from evil) — the prayer asks to be spared the crisis of testing that could overwhelm faith. 'The evil one' (*tou ponērou*) can be masculine ('the evil one,' Satan) or neuter ('evil' in the abstract). Given Matthew's usage elsewhere (5:37, 13:19, 38), the personal reading is likely.
13. The doxology 'For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever, Amen' does not appear in the earliest manuscripts (Sinaiticus, Vaticanus) and is absent from the SBLGNT critical text. It was likely added in liturgical usage, possibly drawn from 1 Chronicles 29:11. We follow the critical text but note the addition for readers accustomed to the traditional form.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Chronicles 29:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The Greek *paraptōmata* ('trespasses, transgressions, false steps') is a different word from the 'debts' (*opheilēmata*) of verse 12. A *paraptōma* is literally a 'falling aside' — a misstep, a deviation from the right path. Jesus expands on the forgiveness petition from the prayer, making explicit what was implicit: the connection between receiving and extending forgiveness is not optional.
15. The negative counterpart is stated with equal force — refusal to forgive blocks the reception of forgiveness. This is not a transactional formula (forgiving to earn forgiveness) but a statement about the nature of forgiveness itself: a heart that cannot extend mercy has not truly received it. The same principle drives the parable of the unforgiving servant in Matthew 18:21-35.
16. The Greek *skythrōpoi* ('gloomy, sullen, with a dark look') describes a deliberately mournful appearance. The verb *aphanizousin* ('they disfigure, make unrecognizable, obscure') may refer to putting ash on the face, not washing, or deliberately making oneself look haggard. The ironic wordplay in Greek is between *aphanizousin* ('they make invisible/disfigure') and *phanōsin* ('they may appear/be visible') — they destroy their appearance in order to create an appearance.
17. Anointing the head with olive oil (*aleipsai sou tēn kephalēn*) and washing the face were signs of normal grooming and celebration in Jewish culture. The instruction is to look normal — even festive — while fasting. The fast remains between you and God; others should not be able to detect it from your appearance.

18. The three-part pattern is now complete: giving (vv. 2-4), prayer (vv. 5-6), and fasting (vv. 16-18) each follow the same structure — negative example of hypocrites, positive instruction for disciples, and assurance that the Father who sees in secret will reward. The Greek *kryphaios* ('hidden, secret') is a variant of *kryptos* used in the giving and prayer sections. The SBLGNT again omits *en tō phanerō* ('openly').
19. The Greek *thēsaurizete* ('store up, treasure up') shares the same root as *thēsauros* ('treasures') — a deliberate play on words: 'do not treasure treasures.' The three threats to earthly wealth — moth (*sēs*, which destroys stored garments), decay (*brōsis*, literally 'eating, corrosion,' which ruins stored food or metal), and theft — cover the major categories of ancient wealth: clothing, provisions, and precious metals.
20. Heavenly treasure is defined by its indestructibility — it is beyond the reach of the forces that threaten earthly accumulation. The concept of 'treasures in heaven' was known in Jewish tradition (Tobit 4:9, 2 Baruch 24:1) and refers to the lasting value of righteous deeds, generosity, and faithfulness before God.
21. The singular 'your' (*sou*) makes this directly personal — it applies to each individual listener. The logic is not merely 'your heart follows your treasure' but 'what you treasure reveals and determines who you are.' The heart (*kardia*) in biblical thought is the center of will, desire, and allegiance. Treasure placement is not a financial decision but an identity decision.
22. The Greek *haplous* ('single, simple, healthy, generous') is the key interpretive challenge. In Greek it can mean physically healthy (a 'sound' eye), morally simple/sincere, or generous (as in the closely related noun *haplotēs* in 2 Corinthians 8:2, 9:11). In context — between the teaching on treasure (vv. 19-21) and the warning about mammon (v. 24) — the sense 'generous' is strong. A 'single' eye is one focused on God rather than divided between God and wealth.
23. The Greek *ponēros* ('evil, bad, sick') stands in direct contrast to *haplous*. In Jewish idiom, an 'evil eye' (*ayin ra'ah* in Hebrew) specifically meant stinginess, greed, and envy — the opposite of generosity. The final exclamation is devastating: if the very organ designed to receive light (the eye/heart) has itself become dark, there is no remaining capacity to perceive truth. The corruption of what should be the source of guidance is the ultimate disaster.
24. The Greek *douleuein* ('to serve as a slave') is not casual employment but total allegiance. A slave has one master — divided ownership was legally impossible. The Aramaic *mamōnas* ('money, wealth, material possessions') is transliterated directly into Greek. By placing *mamōnas* alongside *theō* (God) as potential masters, Jesus personifies wealth as a rival deity. The claim is absolute: dual allegiance is structurally impossible, not merely difficult.
25. The Greek *mē merimnate* ('do not worry, do not be anxious') does not prohibit planning or working but the corrosive anxiety that assumes God's provision is unreliable. The word *merimnaō* is from the root *merizō* ('to divide') — anxiety divides the mind and pulls it in opposing directions. The rhetorical question uses an *a fortiori* argument: if God gave you life (the greater gift), will he not also provide food and clothing (the lesser gifts)?
26. The imperative *emblemsate* ('look at, observe carefully') calls for attentive observation of creation as theological evidence. Birds do not engage in the agricultural cycle (sowing, reaping, storing), yet they are fed. The argument is from lesser to greater (*qal wahomer* in rabbinic terms): if God provides for creatures that cannot farm, how much more for humans made in his image? 'Heavenly Father' (*ho patēr hymōn ho ouranios*) reinforces the relational basis of trust.
27. The Greek *hēlikian* can mean either 'stature' (height) or 'life span' (age), and *pēchyn* ('cubit,' about 18 inches) can be literal or metaphorical. If 'stature,' the saying is absurd (a cubit is about 18 inches — no one can grow that much by worrying). If 'life span,' the saying is practical (worry cannot extend life; it may shorten it). Both readings work, but the life span reading fits the context of existential anxiety better.
28. The verb *katamathete* ('learn thoroughly, observe carefully, consider well') is stronger than a casual glance — it means to study the lilies as one would study a text. The Greek *krina* ('lilies') may refer to various wildflowers rather than cultivated lilies specifically. Like the birds, the flowers do not 'labor' (*kopōsin*, hard physical work) or 'spin' (*nēthoustin*, the work of making thread for fabric). Creation itself testifies to God's generous provision.
29. Solomon was proverbially the wealthiest and most magnificently dressed king in Israel's history (1 Kings 10:4-7, 23). The Greek *doxē* ('glory, splendor, magnificence') here refers to his outward splendor. The comparison is deliberately shocking: a wildflower that lives a single day surpasses the greatest human display of wealth. The implication: if God lavishes beauty on temporary flowers, how much more will he provide for his children?
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 10:4-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The Greek *oligopistoi* ('of little faith') is a word characteristic of Matthew (6:30, 8:26, 14:31, 16:8) — it describes not unbelief but insufficient trust in a God one already acknowledges. The *klibanon* ('oven') was a clay baking oven fueled by dried grass and brush. The argument reaches its climax: the most ephemeral thing in creation (grass that exists one day and is fuel the next) receives extravagant beauty from God — how much more will God provide for beings created in his image?
31. The three anxious questions cover the basic necessities: food, drink, and clothing. The subjunctive mood (*phagōmen, piōmen, peribalōmetha*) expresses the anxious deliberation of someone who does not know where their next provision will come from. Jesus does not dismiss the reality of material need but challenges the anxious mindset that treats provision as uncertain.
32. The Greek *ethnē* ('nations, Gentiles') here refers to those who do not know God as Father. The verb *epizētousin* ('eagerly seek, strive after') implies an anxious, driven pursuit. The contrast is sharp: those who do not know God as Father must be anxious about material needs; those who do know him should not be, because he already knows (*oiden*, settled knowledge) their needs. The repetition of 'your heavenly Father' reinforces the relational basis of freedom from anxiety.

33. This verse functions as the climax of the entire 'do not worry' section and arguably of the Sermon on the Mount itself. The imperative *zēteite* ('seek') is present tense — seek continuously, as a way of life. The word *prōton* ('first') establishes priority, not sequence: God's kingdom and righteousness are not the first item on a list but the governing priority that orders everything else. The passive *prostethēsetai* ('will be added, will be provided') is again a divine passive — God will add material provision. Notably, Matthew here uses 'kingdom of God' (*tēn basileian tou theou*) rather than his usual 'kingdom of heaven,' perhaps for emphasis.
34. The personification of 'tomorrow' worrying about itself (*hē aurion merimnēsei heautēs*) adds a touch of wry humor to the teaching. The Greek *kakia* ('trouble, evil, hardship') here means the day's burden of difficulty — not moral evil but the ordinary weight of living. The concluding maxim is proverbial in form: confine your concern to today's challenges. This echoes the 'daily bread' petition of 6:11 — live in daily dependence, not projected anxiety.

7

Summary: *Matthew 7 concludes the Sermon on the Mount with a series of sharply drawn contrasts. Jesus teaches on judging others (7:1-5), warns against giving holy things to those who will desecrate them (7:6), and offers the encouragement of ask/seek/knock (7:7-11). The Golden Rule (7:12) summarizes the entire Law and Prophets. The remainder of the chapter presents four pairs of contrasts — two gates (7:13-14), two kinds of prophets/trees (7:15-20), two kinds of disciples (7:21-23), and two builders (7:24-27). Each pair forces a choice between genuine and counterfeit responses to Jesus's teaching. The Sermon closes with the crowd's astonished reaction: he taught them 'as one having authority, and not as their scribes' (7:28-29).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sermon on the Mount ends not with comfort but with urgency. The four final contrasts (two gates, two trees, two claims, two builders) all demand decision: hearing the words is not enough — doing them is the dividing line. The saying 'Lord, Lord' passage (7:21-23) is among the most sobering in the Gospels: people who prophesied, cast out demons, and performed miracles in Jesus's name are told 'I never knew you.' The criterion is not spectacular spiritual activity but doing the will of the Father. The Golden Rule (7:12) is presented as the summary of 'the Law and the Prophets' — a staggering claim that the entire Hebrew Scriptures can be distilled into a single principle of other-centered action.*

Translation Friction: *The instruction 'do not give what is holy to dogs' (7:6) is one of the most cryptic sayings in the Sermon, and its precise referent is debated. We render the Greek as given without imposing a specific interpretation. The relationship between 'judging' (7:1) and 'discernment' (7:6, 7:15-20) creates an apparent tension: do not judge, yet evaluate prophets by their fruit. The tension is real and intentional — Jesus prohibits censorious condemnation while requiring moral discernment.*

Connections: *The Golden Rule connects to Leviticus 19:18 ('love your neighbor as yourself') and to Hillel's famous negative formulation. The wise and foolish builders echo Proverbs' contrast between wisdom and folly. The phrase 'I never knew you' connects to the Hebrew concept of knowing (*yada*) as intimate covenant relationship. The crowd's reaction to Jesus's authority (7:28-29) sets up the conflicts with religious authorities that dominate chapters 8-12.*

¹Do not judge, so that you will not be judged. ²For with the judgment you pronounce you will be judged, and with the measure you use it will be measured to you. ³Why do you see the speck in your brother's eye but do not notice the log in your own eye? ⁴Or how can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when there is a log in your own eye? ⁵You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take the speck out of your brother's eye. ⁶Do not give what is holy to dogs, and do not throw your pearls before pigs, or they will trample them underfoot and turn and tear you to pieces. ⁷Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find. Knock, and the door will be opened to you. ⁸For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks the door will be opened. ⁹Which of you, if his son asks for bread, will give him a stone? ¹⁰Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake? ¹¹If you then, who are evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask him! ¹²So whatever you want others to do for you, do the same for them, for this is the Law and the Prophets. ¹³Enter through the narrow gate, for the gate is wide and the road is broad that leads to destruction, and many are those who enter

through it. ¹⁴How narrow is the gate and difficult the road that leads to life, and few are those who find it! ¹⁵Watch out for false prophets who come to you in sheep's clothing but inwardly are ravenous wolves. ¹⁶You will recognize them by their fruit. Do people pick grapes from thornbushes, or figs from thistles? ¹⁷In the same way, every good tree produces good fruit, but a bad tree produces bad fruit. ¹⁸A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit. ¹⁹Every tree that does not produce good fruit is cut down and thrown into the fire. ²⁰So then, you will recognize them by their fruit. ²¹Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but the one who does the will of my Father in heaven. ²²On that day many will say to me, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, and cast out demons in your name, and do many mighty works in your name?' ²³And then I will declare to them, 'I never knew you. Depart from me, you who practice lawlessness.' ²⁴Therefore everyone who hears these words of mine and acts on them will be like a wise man who built his house on rock. ²⁵The rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat against that house, but it did not fall, because it had been founded on rock. ²⁶And everyone who hears these words of mine and does not act on them will be like a foolish man who built his house on sand. ²⁷The rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and struck that house, and it fell — and great was its collapse. ²⁸When Jesus had finished these words, the crowds were astonished at his teaching, ²⁹Since he instructed them as one having authority, and not as the scribes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *krinete* ('judge') covers a range from simple evaluation to legal condemnation. In context, Jesus prohibits the censorious, condemning judgment that appoints oneself as moral arbiter over others — not the moral discernment he commands in verses 6 and 15-20. The passive *krithēte* ('be judged') is a divine passive: God will judge you by the same standard you apply to others. The present imperative *mē krinete* suggests 'stop judging' or 'do not make a habit of judging.'
2. The principle of reciprocal measure was proverbial in Jewish thought (cf. Mishnah Sotah 1:7, 'By the measure with which a person measures, it is measured to him'). The Greek creates an emphatic sound pattern through the repetition of *kri-* and *metr-* roots. The 'measure' (*metrō*) image may come from the marketplace — the same measuring cup you use for others will be used for you.
3. The Greek *karpōs* ('speck, splinter, small piece of straw') versus *dokos* ('beam, log, large piece of timber') creates a comically exaggerated contrast — a person with a construction beam protruding from their eye is attempting delicate surgery on another's minor splinter. The humor carries a serious point: self-awareness must precede correction of others. The verb *katanoeis* ('notice, consider carefully, perceive') implies that the failure to see one's own faults is a willful blindness.
4. The rhetorical question exposes the absurdity of the situation. The Greek *aphes ekbalō* ('allow me to remove') sounds helpful and even caring, but the pretense of assistance while harboring a greater fault is itself a form of hypocrisy. The word *idou* ('look, see') calls attention to the obvious — everyone can see the log except the one carrying it.
5. The address *hypokrita* ('hypocrite, actor') is singular and direct — Jesus confronts the individual. Importantly, Jesus does not prohibit helping the brother with his speck — he insists on proper sequence: self-correction first (*prōton*), then assistance. The verb *diaplesei* ('see clearly, see through') implies that removing one's own log restores the clarity needed to genuinely help another. The passage thus teaches not the avoidance of moral evaluation but its proper practice.
6. This saying is among the most debated in the Sermon. 'Dogs' (*kysin*) and 'pigs' (*choirōn*) were both unclean animals in Jewish law and could function as derogatory terms. 'What is holy' (to *hagion*) may refer to sacred food (meat from the temple sacrifices) and 'pearls' (*margaritas*) to precious spiritual teaching. The saying recognizes that some truths, when offered to those who despise them, result not in gratitude but in violence against the giver. This qualifies the non-judgmental ethic of 7:1 — discernment about when and with whom to share is necessary.
7. The three imperatives — *aiteite* ('ask'), *zēteite* ('seek'), *krouēte* ('knock') — are all present tense, indicating continuous action: keep asking, keep seeking, keep knocking. The three verbs may suggest escalating intensity: asking is verbal, seeking involves movement and effort, knocking implies arriving at a specific threshold. Each promise uses a divine passive: it will be given (by God), you will find (because God reveals), it will be opened (by God).
8. The word *pas* ('everyone, all') universalizes the promise — it is not restricted to a spiritual elite. The present tense participles (*aitōn*, *zētōn*, *krouonti*) describe ongoing patterns of life, not isolated incidents. The assurance is grounded not in the intensity of human effort but in the character of the Giver, as verses 9-11 will make clear.
9. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'No one!' The comparison works because round flat bread loaves and certain round stones looked similar — the substitution would be a cruel trick. Jesus argues from common human decency to divine generosity: if even flawed human parents give good things to their children, how much more will God?
10. The parallel intensifies: a snake (*ophin*) could visually resemble certain eels or fish, but the substitution would be dangerous rather than merely disappointing. The fish/snake contrast may also carry symbolic weight — fish were a food staple from the Sea of Galilee, while snakes connote

danger and deception (cf. Genesis 3).

10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The assumption 'you who are evil' (hymeis ponēroi ontes) is startling in its matter-of-fact assessment of human moral condition. Jesus does not soften it — even as sinful people, you manage to give good gifts. The a fortiori argument (posō mallon, 'how much more') reaches its conclusion: God's generosity infinitely surpasses the best of human parenting. Luke's parallel (11:13) specifies that the Father gives 'the Holy Spirit'; Matthew's broader 'good things' (agatha) encompasses all that the Father knows his children need.
12. The Golden Rule summarizes the Sermon and, according to Jesus, the entire Hebrew Scriptures ('the Law and the Prophets,' ho nomos kai hoi prophētai, the same phrase from 5:17). The positive formulation ('do for them') goes beyond the negative form attributed to Hillel ('What is hateful to you, do not do to your neighbor' — Shabbat 31a). The positive form requires active initiative, not merely restraint. The connective oun ('so, therefore') links this to the entire preceding discourse — the Golden Rule is not isolated wisdom but the practical application of everything Jesus has taught.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 30:15-19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 4:18-19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 21:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The SBLGNT reads ti ('how!') as an exclamation rather than hoti ('because'). The Greek tethlimmenē ('compressed, constricted, pressed, afflicted') is the participle of thlibō, which also means 'to afflict, to oppress' — the narrow road is not merely inconvenient but involves genuine hardship. The destination is zōēn ('life') — not mere survival but the fullness of life in God's kingdom. The word 'find' (heuriskontes) implies that the narrow gate requires searching — it is not self-evident.
15. The Greek pseudoprophētōn ('false prophets') warns that not all who claim to speak for God actually do. The sheep/wolf image is vivid: the exterior is harmless and community-affirming (sheep among sheep), but the interior is predatory (harpages, 'ravenous, greedy, plundering'). The image assumes that false prophets are not easily identified by outward appearance — they blend in. The test for discernment follows in verses 16-20.
16. The Greek karpon ('fruit') is the consistent metaphor for the visible results of a person's character and teaching. The verb epignōsesthe ('you will recognize, you will know fully') is a strengthened form of ginōskō — full, clear recognition over time. The rhetorical questions about grapes from thorns (akanthōn) and figs from thistles (tribolōn) expect the answer 'Of course not!' — nature does not deceive; plants produce according to their kind.
17. The Greek sapron ('rotten, decayed, bad') describes a tree that is diseased at its core — not merely unproductive but fundamentally corrupt. The adjectives agathos ('good') and ponēros ('bad, evil') form a clear moral binary. The principle is straightforward: what you are determines what you produce. Character precedes conduct.
18. The word ou dynatai ('is not able, cannot') states an impossibility, not merely an improbability. This strengthens the diagnostic power of fruit-inspection: the fruit is a reliable indicator because it is an inevitable product of the tree's nature. The chiasmic structure (good tree/bad fruit, bad tree/good fruit) reinforces the point through rhetorical symmetry.
19. This echoes John the Baptist's warning in 3:10 almost verbatim, creating continuity between the forerunner's message and Jesus's teaching. The present tenses ekkoptetai ('is cut down') and balletai ('is thrown') describe a general, ongoing practice — this is how orchards work, and this is how judgment works. The fire (pyr) carries judgment overtones throughout Matthew.
20. The concluding ara ge ('so then, therefore indeed') draws the inference from the entire tree/fruit illustration. The repetition of verse 16a forms an inclusio around the teaching. The verb epignōsesthe ('you will fully recognize') promises that patient observation of results — not first impressions, not claims, not appearances — will reveal the truth about any prophet or teacher.
21. The doubled vocative Kyrie, Kyrie ('Lord, Lord') suggests urgent, fervent address — these are not casual believers but passionate confessors. Yet the criterion for entering the kingdom is not verbal profession but enacted obedience: ho poiōn to thelēma ('the one who does the will'). The phrase 'my Father' (tou patros mou) — Jesus claims a unique filial relationship that distinguishes him from the disciples' 'your Father.' This verse begins the most sobering passage in the Sermon.
22. The phrase 'on that day' (en ekeinē tē hēmera) refers to the day of final judgment. The three activities listed — prophesying, exorcism, and mighty works (dynameis, 'miracles, powerful deeds') — are among the most impressive spiritual accomplishments imaginable. All three are done 'in your

name' (tō sō onomati), repeated three times for emphasis. The shock of the passage is that genuine supernatural activity can coexist with spiritual failure. Jesus here implicitly claims the role of final judge — a divine prerogative.

23. The verb homologēsō ('I will declare, confess, acknowledge publicly') is the same word used elsewhere for public confession of faith — here it is turned to public condemnation. 'I never knew you' (oudepote egnōn hymas) uses ginōskō in the relational sense — not 'I never had information about you' but 'I never had a covenant relationship with you.' This echoes the Hebrew yada, intimate knowing. The Greek anomian ('lawlessness') is literally 'without law' (a-nomia) — a devastating charge in a sermon that has affirmed the Law's permanent validity (5:17-19). The quotation echoes Psalm 6:8.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 6:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The final parable draws the Sermon's decisive line: hearing (akouei) plus doing (poiei) defines wisdom. 'These words of mine' (mou tous logous toutous) refers to the entire Sermon on the Mount. The Greek phronimō ('wise, prudent, sensible') describes practical wisdom — the ability to make sound decisions. Building on rock (petran) provides a foundation that endures under stress. In the geography of Palestine, sudden flash floods in dry valleys (wadis) are a real and lethal danger.
25. The triple assault — rain (brochē), floods (potamoi, 'rivers, torrents'), and wind (anemoi) — represents comprehensive testing. Every direction of attack is covered: above (rain), below (floods), and sideways (wind). The pluperfect tethemeliōto ('it had been founded, its foundation had been laid') indicates that the foundation was already in place before the storm arrived — preparation precedes crisis. The storm tests what already exists; it does not create the foundation.
26. The Greek mōrō ('foolish, stupid') is the root of English 'moron' — but in biblical wisdom tradition, foolishness is not intellectual deficiency but moral failure, the refusal to live according to reality (cf. Psalm 14:1). The foolish builder hears the same words as the wise builder — the difference is not in access to truth but in response to it. Building on sand (ammon) is building on what shifts and gives way under pressure.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 14:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The storm is identical to verse 25 — both houses face the same test. The difference is entirely in the foundation. The Greek ptōsis ('fall, collapse, ruin') echoes the word used for the moral 'fall' of individuals in the Septuagint. The final phrase kai ēn hē ptōsis autēs megalē ('and great was its collapse') is emphatic in its placement — the sentence ends with the devastating result ringing in the listener's ears. The parable's force is eschatological: the storm represents the final judgment, when every life will be tested.
28. The formula kai egeneto hote etelesen ho Iēsous ('and it happened when Jesus had finished') is Matthew's standard transition at the end of each of his five major discourses (7:28, 11:1, 13:53, 19:1, 26:1). The Greek exeplēssonto ('were astonished, were struck with amazement') is a strong word — literally 'struck out of their senses.' The imperfect tense indicates a continued, lingering amazement rather than a momentary reaction.
29. The Greek exousian ('authority, power, right') distinguishes Jesus from the scribes (grammateis), who taught by citing earlier authorities ('Rabbi Hillel says... Rabbi Shammai says...'). Jesus cited no human authority — his recurring formula 'But I say to you' (5:22, 28, 32, 34, 39, 44) placed his own word alongside and above the Torah itself. The periphrastic construction ēn didaskōn ('he was teaching,' literally 'he was, teaching') emphasizes the ongoing quality and manner of his instruction. The phrase 'their scribes' (hoi grammateis autōn) subtly distances the crowd from the religious establishment.

8

Summary: *Matthew 8 opens a collection of miracle narratives that demonstrate Jesus's authority over disease, nature, and the demonic realm. After descending from the mountain where he delivered the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus heals a leper, a centurion's servant (at a distance), Peter's mother-in-law, and many others. He then calms a violent storm on the Sea of Galilee and casts out demons from two men in the region of the Gadarenes. Interspersed are two brief exchanges about the cost of discipleship.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The centurion episode (vv. 5-13) is remarkable for Jesus's astonishment at a Gentile's faith — greater than any he found in Israel. This leads to the first explicit statement that Gentiles will share in the kingdom of heaven while some 'sons of the kingdom' will be cast out. The healing narratives fulfill Isaiah 53:4, which Matthew quotes in verse 17. The storm-calming episode uses language that echoes God's mastery over chaotic waters in the Old Testament (Psalm 89:9, 107:29). The Gadarene encounter presents Jesus confronting the demonic realm with sovereign authority.*

Translation Friction: The geographic designation varies in manuscripts — 'Gadarenes,' 'Gergesenes,' or 'Gerasenes.' We follow the SBLGNT reading. Matthew has two demoniacs where Mark and Luke have one; we render Matthew's text as given without harmonizing. The phrase 'Son of Man' (huios tou anthropou) is a self-designation of Jesus drawn from Daniel 7:13-14 and rendered with both words capitalized.

Connections: The leper healing connects to Leviticus 14 (purification laws). The centurion narrative anticipates the Great Commission's universal scope (28:19). The Isaiah 53:4 quotation in verse 17 links Jesus's healing ministry to the Servant Songs. The storm scene echoes Jonah 1 (sleeping during a storm) and Psalm 107:23-30. The Gadarene episode anticipates the final confrontation language of Revelation.

¹When he came down from the mountain, large crowds followed him. ²Then a man with a skin disease came and knelt before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean." ³Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be made clean." Immediately his skin disease was healed. ⁴Jesus said to him, "See that you tell no one, but go show yourself to the priest and offer the gift that Moses commanded, as a testimony to them." ⁵When Jesus entered Capernaum, a centurion came to him, pleading with him, ⁶"Lord, my servant is lying at home paralyzed, in terrible suffering." ⁷Jesus said to him, "I will come and heal him." ⁸The centurion answered, "Lord, I am not worthy for you to come under my roof. But just say the word, and my servant will be healed. ⁹For I too am a man under authority, with soldiers under me. I say to one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it." ¹⁰When Jesus heard this, he was amazed and said to those following him, "Truly I tell you, I have not found such great faith with anyone in Israel. ¹¹I tell you, many will come from east and west and recline at table with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob in the kingdom of heaven, ¹²However, true children of the reign will be driven out into the darkness outside — where there is sobbing and grinding of teeth. ¹³Then Jesus said to the centurion, "Go. Let it be done for you as you have believed." And his servant was healed at that very hour. ¹⁴When Jesus came into Peter's house, he saw Peter's mother-in-law lying sick with a fever. ¹⁵He touched her hand, and the fever left her. She got up and began serving him. ¹⁶When evening came, they brought to him many who were demon-possessed. He drove out the spirits with a word, and healed all who were sick, ¹⁷That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet and stated, Himself picked up our infirmities, and bare our sicknesses. ¹⁸When Jesus saw a crowd around him, he gave orders to cross over to the other side of the lake. ¹⁹A scribe came up and said to him, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." ²⁰Jesus said to him, "Foxes have dens, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." ²¹Another of his disciples said to him, "Lord, let me first go and bury my father." ²²But Jesus declared to him, Come with me. And let the dead bury their dead. ²³When he got into the boat, his disciples followed him. ²⁴Suddenly a great storm arose on the sea, so violent that the boat was being swamped by the waves. But he was sleeping. ²⁵They came and woke him, saying, "Lord, save us! We are going to die!" ²⁶He said to them, "Why are you afraid, you of little faith?" Then he got up and rebuked the winds and the sea, and there was a great calm. ²⁷The men were amazed, saying, "What kind of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?" ²⁸When he came to the other side, to the region of the Gadarenes, two demon-possessed men met him, coming out of the tombs. They were so violent that no one could pass along that road. ²⁹Suddenly they cried out, "What do you want with us, Son of God? Have you come here to torment us before the appointed time?" ³⁰Now some distance away a large herd of pigs was feeding. ³¹The demons begged him, "If you drive us out, send us into the herd of pigs." ³²He said to them, "Go." They came out and went into the pigs, and the whole herd rushed down the steep bank into the sea and drowned in the water. ³³Those who had been tending the pigs fled. They went into the town and reported everything, including what had happened to the demon-possessed men. ³⁴Then the whole town came out to meet Jesus, and when they saw him, they begged him to leave their region.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The genitive absolute construction (katabavtos de autou) marks a transition from the Sermon on the Mount (chs. 5-7) to the miracle narratives. 'The mountain' (tou orous) uses the definite article, referring to the specific mountain of the Sermon. The crowds that heard his teaching now witness his authority in action.
2. The Greek leprosy covers a range of skin conditions beyond modern leprosy (Hansen's disease); 'skin disease' captures the broader Greek meaning while 'leprosy' appears in the KJV. The verb prosekynei ('knelt before, worshipped') can indicate either reverence or worship — the ambiguity is

significant. The leper's statement expresses total confidence in Jesus's power ('you can') while deferring to his will ('if you are willing').

3. Physical contact with a person suffering from a skin disease rendered one ritually unclean under Levitical law (Leviticus 13:45-46). Jesus's deliberate touch reverses the expected dynamic — instead of Jesus becoming unclean, the man becomes clean. The aorist passive katharistheē ('be made clean') is a divine passive, implying God as the agent. The word eutheōs ('immediately') emphasizes the instantaneous nature of the healing.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 13:45-46 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The command to show himself to the priest follows the purification procedure of Leviticus 14:1-32, which required priestly inspection and specific offerings. Jesus upholds the Mosaic law even while demonstrating authority that transcends it. The phrase eis martyrion autois ('as a testimony to them') is ambiguous — it could mean testimony to the priests that the man is healed, or testimony against them that the Messiah has come.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 14:1-32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The hekatontarchos was a Roman military officer commanding approximately one hundred soldiers. His approach to a Jewish teacher would have been culturally unusual. The participle parakalōn ('pleading, urging') indicates earnest, persistent appeal rather than casual request.
6. The Greek pais can mean 'child,' 'servant,' or 'boy.' In this military context, 'servant' is most likely, though some scholars argue for 'son.' The participle basanizomenos ('being tormented') is a strong word — it denotes severe suffering, not mild illness. The perfect passive bebletai ('has been laid low') indicates an ongoing state of helplessness.
7. Some interpreters read this as a question — 'Shall I come and heal him?' — with emphasis on the pronoun egō ('I myself'), expressing surprise that a Jewish teacher would enter a Gentile's house. The declarative reading is more natural in context and is followed here.
8. The centurion's declaration ouk eimi hikanos ('I am not worthy/sufficient') goes beyond social humility — a Roman officer acknowledging unworthiness before a Jewish teacher inverts every expected power dynamic. His request that Jesus 'just say the word' (monon eipe logō) reveals an understanding of Jesus's authority as operative at a distance, not requiring physical presence. This phrase has entered Christian liturgy in many traditions.
9. The centurion's reasoning is remarkable: because he understands chains of command, he recognizes that Jesus operates under divine authority and can therefore command sickness to depart just as the centurion commands soldiers. The phrase hypo exousian ('under authority') is key — the centurion's power to command others derives from being under authority himself, and he perceives the same structure in Jesus's relationship to God.
10. The verb ethaumasēn ('was amazed, marveled') is striking — it is rarely used of Jesus and indicates genuine astonishment. That a Gentile soldier surpasses all of Israel in faith is a provocative claim that foreshadows the Gospel's movement toward Gentile inclusion. The solemn formula amēn legō hymin ('truly I tell you') marks what follows as a declaration of particular weight.
11. The image of reclining at table (anaklithēsontai) evokes the messianic banquet — an eschatological feast anticipated in Isaiah 25:6-8. 'From east and west' signifies Gentile nations streaming to participate in Israel's covenant blessings. The phrase 'kingdom of heaven' (basileia tōn ouranōn) is Matthew's characteristic expression, using 'heaven' as a reverential circumlocution for God.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 25:6-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The 'sons of the kingdom' (huiōi tēs basileias) refers to those who would expect to inherit it by birthright — Israelites as covenant heirs. The reversal is stark: insiders become outsiders while outsiders enter. 'Outer darkness' (skotos to exōteron) contrasts with the illuminated banquet hall. 'Weeping and gnashing of teeth' (klathmos kai brygmōs tōn odontōn) is a recurring Matthean phrase for eschatological judgment (13:42, 13:50, 22:13, 24:51, 25:30).
13. The imperative genēthētō ('let it be done') echoes the divine creative commands of Genesis 1 (genēthētō in the Septuagint). Jesus's word alone accomplishes the healing at a distance, exactly as the centurion had trusted it would. The phrase en tē hōra ekeinē ('at that very hour') confirms the instantaneous, remote healing.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The detail that Peter had a mother-in-law (pentheran) confirms he was married (cf. 1 Corinthians 9:5). The perfect participle beblēmenēn ('having been laid low') indicates she was bedridden. This domestic setting contrasts with the public healings that precede it.
15. The verb diēkonei ('was serving, ministering to') is from the same root as diakonos ('servant, deacon'). Her immediate service demonstrates complete restoration — not a gradual recovery but instant wholeness. Some manuscripts read autō ('him') while others read autois ('them'); the SBLGNT reads autō.
16. Evening (opsias genomenēs) marks the end of the Sabbath, after which people could travel and carry the sick. The phrase logō ('with a word') emphasizes that Jesus needed no rituals, incantations, or physical contact — his spoken command alone was sufficient. The word exebalen ('drove out, cast out') is forceful, depicting a violent expulsion.
17. Matthew quotes Isaiah 53:4, but applies it to physical healing rather than the vicarious suffering interpretation more common in later Christian theology. The Greek elaben ('took') and ebastasen ('carried, bore') suggest Jesus personally bore the weight of human illness. This is Matthew's

fourth fulfillment formula, connecting Jesus's healing ministry to the Isaianic Servant.

17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb ekeleusen ('commanded, ordered') is a military term indicating authoritative direction, not a casual suggestion. 'The other side' (to peran) refers to the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee, predominantly Gentile territory. Jesus moves from Jewish to Gentile space.
19. The scribe addresses Jesus as didaskalos ('teacher'), not kyrios ('Lord') — a respectful but not confessional title. His pledge of unconditional loyalty is enthusiastic but untested. In Matthew's narrative, scribes are generally opponents; this one's offer stands out.
20. This is the first use of 'Son of Man' (ho huios tou anthrōpou) in Matthew. The title draws on Daniel 7:13-14, where 'one like a son of man' receives dominion, glory, and an everlasting kingdom. Jesus uses it to describe himself in radical vulnerability — the one destined for cosmic authority currently has less shelter than wild animals. The phrase ta peteina tou ouranou ('birds of the sky') uses ouranos, the same word translated 'heaven' elsewhere.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 7:13-14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Burying one's father was among the most sacred obligations in Jewish culture, taking precedence over virtually all other commandments. The request is not trivial — it invokes the deepest filial duty. Whether the father has just died or is elderly and the disciple is requesting a delayed commitment is debated; the urgency of Jesus's response suggests the latter.
22. Jesus's response is deliberately shocking. The phrase 'let the dead bury their own dead' uses 'dead' in two senses — the spiritually dead can attend to the physically dead. The demand places discipleship above the most fundamental family obligation, a radical claim that would have been deeply countercultural. The imperative akolouthei ('follow') is present tense, indicating ongoing commitment rather than a single act.
23. The verb akolouthēsān ('followed') is the same word used for discipleship throughout Matthew. Following Jesus into the boat is literal but also symbolic — the disciples follow him into danger and uncertainty.
24. Matthew uses seismos ('shaking, earthquake') rather than the expected lailaps ('storm, squall') that Mark uses. This word choice suggests cosmic upheaval, not merely bad weather — the same word is used for the earthquake at Jesus's death (27:54) and resurrection (28:2). Jesus sleeping through the chaos echoes Jonah 1:5 and contrasts with Psalm 121:4 ('he who keeps Israel will neither slumber nor sleep').
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jonah 1:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 121:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The cry sōson ('save') is the verbal form related to the noun sōtēria ('salvation') and the name Iesous ('the LORD saves'). In context it is a desperate plea for physical rescue, but Matthew's reader would hear the deeper resonance. The present tense apollymetha ('we are perishing, being destroyed') conveys ongoing, immediate danger.
26. The word oligopistoi ('you of little faith') is distinctively Matthean (6:30, 8:26, 14:31, 16:8). It does not mean 'no faith' but insufficient, wavering faith. Jesus rebukes the disciples before calming the storm — the sequence is significant. The verb epetimēsen ('rebuked') is the same word used for commanding demons, treating the storm as a hostile force to be subdued. The phrase galēnē megalē ('great calm') mirrors seismos megas ('great storm'), creating a dramatic contrast.
27. The question potapos estin houtos ('what kind of man is this?') is left open — the narrative invites the reader to answer it. In the Old Testament, only God commands the sea (Psalm 89:9, 107:29; Job 38:8-11). The verb hypakouousin ('obey') is a compound of 'hear under' — the winds and sea submit to his authority as subordinates to a commander.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 89:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Job 38:8-11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The SBLGNT reads Gadarēnōn ('Gadarenes'), referring to the territory of Gadara, a city of the Decapolis about six miles southeast of the Sea of Galilee. Other manuscripts read 'Gergesenes' or 'Gerasenes.' Matthew has two demoniacs where Mark 5:2 and Luke 8:27 have one — this is not harmonized but rendered as Matthew presents it. The tombs (mnēmeiōn) were rock-cut burial caves, considered ritually unclean — the men inhabit a place of death and defilement.
29. The phrase ti hēmin kai soi ('what to us and to you') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'what business do we have with each other?' The demons address Jesus as 'Son of God' (huie tou theou) — the demonic realm recognizes his identity before most humans do. The phrase pro kairou ('before the time') reveals the demons' awareness of an appointed eschatological judgment, and their alarm that Jesus may be enacting it prematurely.
30. The presence of pigs confirms this is Gentile territory — pigs were unclean animals under Jewish law (Leviticus 11:7) and would not be kept in a Jewish region. The detail serves the narrative but also marks the cultural boundary Jesus has crossed.

30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 11:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The conditional *ei ekballeis* ('if you cast us out') concedes Jesus's authority — the demons do not dispute his power to expel them but negotiate the terms. The verb *parekaloun* ('begged, urged') shows the complete reversal of power — the terrifying demonic forces that controlled two men and terrorized a region now beg for mercy from Jesus.
32. Jesus's single word *hypagete* ('go') is sufficient to command the entire demonic host — the same economy of speech demonstrated in the centurion episode. The verb *hōrmēsen* ('rushed, charged') describes a violent stampede. The destruction of the herd in the sea may echo the drowning of Pharaoh's army in the Red Sea (Exodus 14-15) — chaotic evil forces destroyed in water.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 14-15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The herdsmen's flight (*ephygon*) and subsequent report serve as witnesses to the event. The phrase *ta tōn daimonizomenōn* ('the things concerning the demon-possessed men') indicates they reported the men's liberation as well as the pigs' destruction.
34. The townspeople's response is the opposite of faith — rather than welcoming the one who freed two men from demonic torment, they ask him to leave. The verb *parekalesen* ('begged') is the same word the demons used in verse 31. The irony is pointed: both demons and townspeople want Jesus to go away. Fear of Jesus's disruptive power outweighs gratitude for his liberating power.

9

Summary: *Matthew 9 continues the miracle cycle with the healing of a paralytic (whose sins Jesus forgives first, provoking the scribes), the calling of Matthew the tax collector, debates with the Pharisees over eating with sinners, a question about fasting, the healing of a woman with a hemorrhage, the raising of a ruler's daughter, the healing of two blind men and a mute demoniac, and Jesus's compassion for the crowds described as sheep without a shepherd. The chapter culminates in Jesus's call for laborers for the harvest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The paralytic narrative (vv. 1-8) is the first direct confrontation between Jesus and the religious authorities in Matthew. Jesus's claim to forgive sins provokes the charge of blasphemy — only God can forgive sins. Rather than retreating, Jesus escalates by using the visible miracle to validate the invisible one. The calling of Matthew (v. 9) is notable as the author's own call narrative. The 'new wine in old wineskins' saying (v. 17) signals that Jesus's ministry cannot be contained within existing religious structures.*

Translation Friction: *The ruler (archōn) in verse 18 is not named in Matthew, though Mark 5:22 identifies him as Jairus. We render Matthew's text without importing details from Mark. The interweaving of the hemorrhaging woman's healing within the Jairus narrative is a Markan sandwich that Matthew compresses significantly. The phrase 'Son of David' in verse 27 is a messianic title that the blind men use publicly.*

Connections: *The forgiveness of sins connects to the name 'Jesus' ('the LORD saves... from their sins,' 1:21). The call of Matthew connects to the theme of unexpected people entering the kingdom (8:11). The new wine/wineskins saying anticipates the new covenant theology. The harvest metaphor (vv. 37-38) sets up the mission discourse of chapter 10. The 'sheep without a shepherd' image echoes Numbers 27:17 and Ezekiel 34.*

1He got into a boat, crossed over, and came to his own town. 2Some people brought to him a paralyzed man lying on a stretcher. When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralytic, "Take heart, child — your sins are forgiven." 3At this, some of the scribes said among themselves, "This man is blaspheming." 4Jesus, knowing their thoughts, said, "Why do you harbor evil in your hearts? 5For which is easier — to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'? 6But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins" — then he said to the paralytic — "Get up, pick up your stretcher, and go home." 7He got up and went home. 8When the crowds saw this, they were filled with awe and glorified God, who had given such authority to human beings. 9As Jesus went on from there, he saw a man named Matthew sitting at the tax booth. He said to him, "Follow me." And he got up and followed him. 10While Jesus was reclining at table in the house, many tax collectors and sinners came and were eating with him and his disciples. 11When the Pharisees saw this, they said to his disciples, "Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?" 12When he heard this, he said, "It is not the healthy who need a doctor, but the sick. 13Go and learn what this means: 'I desire mercy, not sacrifice.' For I did not come to

call the righteous, but sinners." ¹⁴Then the disciples of John came to him, asking, "Why do we and the Pharisees fast often, but your disciples do not fast?" ¹⁵Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding guests mourn while the bridegroom is with them? But the days will come when the bridegroom is taken away from them, and then they will fast. ¹⁶No one sews a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment, for the patch pulls away from the garment, and the tear becomes worse. ¹⁷Nor do people pour new wine into old wineskins. If they do, the skins burst, the wine spills out, and the skins are ruined. Instead, they pour new wine into fresh wineskins, and both are preserved." ¹⁸While he was saying these things to them, a synagogue leader came and knelt before him, saying, "My daughter has just died. But come and place your hand on her, and she will live." ¹⁹Jesus got up and followed him, and so did his disciples. ²⁰Just then a woman who had suffered from bleeding for twelve years came up behind him and touched the fringe of his cloak. ²¹For she said to herself, "If I only touch his cloak, I will be healed." ²²Jesus turned and saw her. He said, "Take heart, daughter. Your faith has made you well." And the woman was healed from that moment. ²³When Jesus came to the leader's house and saw the flute players and the noisy crowd, ²⁴He stated to them, Give location — for the maid is not dead, but sleepeth. Then they laughed him to scorn. ²⁵After the crowd had been sent outside, he went in and took her by the hand, and the girl got up. ²⁶And the report of this spread throughout that entire region. ²⁷As Jesus went on from there, two blind men followed him, crying out, "Have mercy on us, Son of David!" ²⁸When he entered the house, the blind men came to him. Jesus said to them, "Do you believe that I am able to do this?" They said to him, "Yes, Lord." ²⁹Then he touched their eyes, saying, "Let it be done for you according to your faith." ³⁰Their eyes were opened. Jesus warned them sternly, "See that no one finds out about this." ³¹But they went out and spread the news about him throughout that entire region. ³²As they were leaving, a demon-possessed man who was mute was brought to Jesus. ³³After the demon was driven out, the man who had been mute spoke. The crowds were amazed, saying, "Nothing like this has ever been seen in Israel!" ³⁴But the Pharisees said, "He drives out demons by the ruler of the demons." ³⁵Jesus went through all the towns and villages, teaching in their synagogues, proclaiming the good news of the kingdom, and healing every disease and every sickness. ³⁶When he saw the crowds, he had compassion on them, because they were harassed and helpless, like sheep without a shepherd. ³⁷Then he said to his disciples, "The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. ³⁸Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out workers into his harvest."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jesus's 'own town' (tên idian polin) is Capernaum, his base of operations in Galilee (cf. 4:13), not Nazareth where he grew up. The crossing refers to returning from the eastern (Gentile) shore to the western (Jewish) shore of the Sea of Galilee.
2. Jesus responds to 'their faith' (tên pistin autōn) — the faith of those carrying the man, not only the paralytic's own faith. The first words are not 'be healed' but 'your sins are forgiven' (aphientai sou hai hamartiai), establishing that forgiveness is the deeper need. The present tense aphientai ('are forgiven') indicates an accomplished reality, not a future hope. The address teknon ('child') is tender, not condescending.
3. The charge of blasphemy (blasphēmei) is technically accurate by their reasoning — forgiving sins is a divine prerogative (Isaiah 43:25, 'I, I am he who blots out your transgressions'). The scribes reason silently (en heautois, 'within themselves'), which sets up Jesus's demonstration of knowing their thoughts.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 43:25 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The verb eidōs ('knowing') implies direct perception, not deduction — Jesus discerns their unspoken thoughts. The word enthymēseis ('thoughts, deliberations') comes from en + thymos ('in the passion/spirit'), suggesting these are not idle thoughts but deeply held convictions. The adjective ponēra ('evil, wicked') is strong — Jesus characterizes their reasoning as morally corrupt, not merely mistaken.
5. The question is rhetorically brilliant. Saying 'your sins are forgiven' is easier because it cannot be visibly verified or disproven; saying 'get up and walk' is harder because failure would be immediately public. Jesus will do the verifiable miracle to validate the unverifiable one.
6. The sentence breaks mid-thought (an anacoluthon): Jesus shifts from addressing the scribes to addressing the paralytic. The claim is staggering — the Son of Man possesses authority (exousian) on earth to forgive sins, which is functionally a claim to exercise divine prerogative. The phrase epi tēs gēs ('on earth') may emphasize that this heavenly authority is now operative in the earthly realm.
7. The brevity is striking — no fanfare, no extended description. The man who was carried in walks out. The simplicity of the Greek mirrors the effortlessness of the miracle.

8. The verb *ephobēthēsan* ('were afraid, were awed') conveys reverential fear, not mere admiration. The crowds glorify God rather than Jesus directly, and attribute the authority 'to human beings' (*tois anthrōpois*, plural) — they see Jesus as a divinely empowered human, not yet grasping the full implications of what they have witnessed. Matthew may intend the plural as a hint toward the church's future authority to pronounce forgiveness (cf. 18:18).
9. The *telōnion* ('tax booth, toll station') was where customs duties were collected, likely on goods passing through Capernaum along trade routes. Tax collectors (*telōnai*) were despised as collaborators with Rome and assumed to be corrupt. Jesus's two-word call (*akolouthei moi*, 'follow me') and Matthew's instant response (*anastas ēkolouthēsen*, 'getting up, he followed') mirror the call of the first disciples (4:18-22). The author's identification of himself as a tax collector is remarkably self-deprecating.
10. Table fellowship in the ancient world was a powerful social act — eating with someone signified acceptance and solidarity. The pairing 'tax collectors and sinners' (*telōnai kai hamartōloi*) was a standard phrase for social outcasts. The verb *synanekeinto* ('were reclining together') indicates a formal meal where diners reclined on couches, not a casual gathering.
11. The Pharisees address the disciples rather than Jesus directly, perhaps intending to undermine their confidence in him. The address 'your teacher' (*ho didaskalos hymōn*) is distancing — they do not call him 'teacher' themselves. Their objection is about ritual purity: eating with sinners could render one ritually contaminated.
12. Jesus overhears the Pharisees and responds directly with a proverbial saying. The metaphor reframes the situation: the Pharisees see sinners as sources of contamination, but Jesus sees them as patients in need of a physician. The implication is that Jesus's presence among sinners is therapeutic, not compromising.
13. Jesus quotes Hosea 6:6, a text he will cite again in 12:7. The phrase 'go and learn' (*poreuthentes mathete*) was a standard rabbinic formula used when sending students to study a passage more carefully — Jesus turns the Pharisees' own pedagogical language back on them. The Greek *eleos* ('mercy') translates the Hebrew *chesed* in Hosea 6:6. The SBLGNT does not include 'to repentance' (*eis metanoian*) after 'sinners,' which appears in some later manuscripts; we follow the critical text.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Hosea 6:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The question comes from John the Baptist's disciples, not the Pharisees — an important distinction. John's followers practiced ascetic discipline and would have expected Jesus's movement to do the same. The word *polla* ('often, much') appears in brackets in the SBLGNT, indicating manuscript uncertainty; we include it as it fits the context.
15. The phrase *huiioi tou nymphōnos* ('sons of the bridal chamber') is a Semitic idiom for wedding guests or attendants. Jesus casts himself as the bridegroom — an image rich with Old Testament associations where God is the husband of Israel (Hosea 2:19-20, Isaiah 54:5). The passive *aparthē* ('is taken away') contains a hint of violent removal, foreshadowing Jesus's death. Matthew uses *penthein* ('to mourn') where Mark has *nēsteuein* ('to fast'), linking fasting to grief.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 2:19-20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 54:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The Greek *rhakous agnaphou* ('unshrunk cloth, unprocessed fabric') refers to cloth that has not been fulled or treated. When washed, it would shrink and tear away from the older, already-shrunk fabric. The metaphor is about incompatibility — Jesus's ministry cannot simply be patched onto existing religious frameworks.
17. New wine still fermenting would expand and burst brittle old wineskins (*askous*), but fresh, supple skins could accommodate the expansion. The parallel with verse 16 reinforces the point: Jesus's ministry requires new structures. The word *kainos* ('new, fresh') denotes qualitative newness, not merely chronological newness (*neos*). Matthew adds the note that 'both are preserved' (*amphoterōi syntērountai*), perhaps suggesting that the old is not destroyed but simply cannot contain the new.
18. Matthew uses *archōn* ('ruler, leader') without specifying the type, though the context indicates a synagogue official (Mark 5:22 names him Jairus). Matthew compresses Mark's account dramatically — in Mark, the girl is initially dying and dies during the encounter; in Matthew, she is already dead when the father arrives. The verb *prosekynei* ('knelt before, worshipped') again carries the ambiguity of reverence or worship. The father's faith is remarkable: he believes Jesus can raise the dead.
19. The verb *ēkolouthēsen* ('followed') is notable when applied to Jesus — throughout Matthew, others follow Jesus. Here Jesus follows the father, indicating willingness to respond to faith-filled requests.
20. The participle *haimorroousa* ('suffering from a flow of blood') indicates a chronic hemorrhagic condition. Under Levitical law (Leviticus 15:25-30), this rendered her perpetually unclean and socially isolated — anyone she touched would also become unclean. The *kraspedon* ('fringe, tassel, border') likely refers to the *tzitzit*, the tassels worn on the corners of a garment in obedience to Numbers 15:38-39. Her approach from behind suggests both reverence and the social shame of her condition.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 15:25-30 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 15:38-39 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** The verb *sōthēsomai* ('I will be saved/healed') is the same root as *sōzō* ('to save'), connecting physical healing to the broader salvation vocabulary. Her internal reasoning (*en heautē*) reveals faith: she believes that even indirect, unauthorized contact with Jesus's garment will be sufficient.
- 22.** Jesus addresses her as *thygatēr* ('daughter') — a term of familial affection that publicly restores her to community after twelve years of isolation. The perfect tense *sesōken* ('has saved/healed') indicates a completed action with lasting results. Matthew compresses the account significantly compared to Mark 5:25-34, omitting the crowd dynamics and the woman's trembling confession. The phrase *apo tēs hōras ekeinēs* ('from that hour') echoes 8:13.
- 23.** The *aulētas* ('flute players') were professional mourners hired for funerals. The Mishnah (*Ketubot* 4:4) specifies that even the poorest family should hire at least two flute players and one wailing woman for a funeral. Their presence confirms the girl is genuinely dead, not merely ill.
- 24.** Jesus's statement that the girl 'is sleeping' (*kathendei*) has been interpreted either as a literal claim that she was unconscious (not dead), or as a metaphor for death in light of resurrection (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:13-14, John 11:11). The mourners' derisive laughter (*kategelōn*) — they who had just been weeping — suggests they knew she was dead and found his statement absurd.
- 25.** The passive *exelēthē* ('was put out') uses the same verb as casting out demons (*ekballō*), suggesting the mourners were forcibly removed. Matthew's account is remarkably compressed — Mark 5:41 includes Jesus's Aramaic words 'Talitha koum,' which Matthew omits. The verb *ēgerthē* ('she got up/was raised') is the same word used for resurrection throughout the New Testament.
- 26.** The noun *phēmē* ('report, news, fame') indicates that despite Jesus's frequent commands to silence, word spread. The phrase *holēn tēn gēn ekeinēn* ('all that land/region') likely refers to the surrounding area of Galilee, not the entire country.
- 27.** The title 'Son of David' (*huios Dauid*) is a messianic designation — the expected Davidic king was believed to have healing powers (based on traditions about Solomon as healer and exorcist). That blind men recognize Jesus as Messiah while the sighted religious leaders do not is deeply ironic. The verb *eleēson* ('have mercy') is an urgent plea that becomes the basis of the later Christian 'Kyrie eleison' prayer.
- 28.** Jesus delays the healing until they reach the house, testing their persistence and faith. The question *pisteuete* ('do you believe?') makes explicit what was implicit in the centurion and hemorrhaging woman episodes — faith is the prerequisite. Their simple affirmation *nai kyrie* ('yes, Lord') combines belief in Jesus's ability with acknowledgment of his authority.
- 29.** The phrase *kata tēn pistin hymōn genēthētō hymin* ('let it be done for you according to your faith') echoes the centurion episode (8:13). The imperative *genēthētō* again recalls the creative commands of Genesis. Jesus's healings are not arbitrary displays of power but responses to faith.
- 30.** The verb *enebrimēthē* ('sternly warned, was deeply moved/angered') is an intense word — it conveys emotional force, perhaps even agitation. The command to secrecy (the 'messianic secret') appears throughout the Gospels. Jesus's reasons may include avoiding premature political messianic fervor and maintaining control over his public identity.
- 31.** The verb *diephēmisān* ('spread the news, made widely known') is emphatic — they did precisely what Jesus told them not to do. Their disobedience is understandable (they can now see) but complicates Jesus's ministry by increasing crowds and public expectations.
- 32.** The adjective *kōphon* can mean 'mute,' 'deaf,' or both. In this context, where the man speaks after the demon is expelled (v. 33), 'mute' is the primary meaning. The man is brought by others — his condition prevents him from seeking Jesus himself.
- 33.** The crowd's declaration *oudepote ephanē houtōs en tō Israēl* ('never has such a thing appeared in Israel') is a superlative claim — not even the prophets or Moses performed such acts. This sets up the Pharisees' counter-interpretation in the next verse.
- 34.** The Pharisees attribute Jesus's power to the *archonti tōn daimoniōn* ('the ruler of the demons') — later identified as Beelzebul (12:24). Unable to deny the miracles, they reinterpret their source. This accusation will receive a full rebuttal in chapter 12. The same evidence (exorcism) produces opposite conclusions depending on the observer's posture toward Jesus.
- 35.** This summary verse nearly duplicates 4:23, creating an *inclusio* that frames the Sermon on the Mount (chs. 5-7) and miracle cycle (chs. 8-9) as a unified demonstration of Jesus's ministry. The three activities — teaching, proclaiming, healing — represent the fullness of his work. The phrase *to euangelion tēs basileias* ('the good news of the kingdom') is distinctively Matthean.
- 36.** The verb *esplanchnisthē* ('was moved with compassion') derives from *splanchna* ('entrails, inner organs') — it describes a visceral, gut-level emotional response, the deepest compassion possible. The participles *eskulmenoi* ('harassed, troubled, weary') and *errimmenoi* ('thrown down, helpless, cast aside') paint a picture of a people battered and abandoned. The shepherd image echoes Numbers 27:17, where Moses asks God to appoint a leader so Israel will not be 'like sheep without a shepherd,' and Ezekiel 34, where God condemns Israel's failed shepherds.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 27:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The metaphor shifts from shepherding to harvesting. The harvest (*therismos*) is an eschatological image — the gathering of people into God's kingdom. The contrast between 'plentiful' (*polys*) and 'few' (*oligoi*) creates urgency. Jesus sees the crowds not as a burden but as a ripe harvest

awaiting workers.

- 38.** The verb *ekbalē* ('send out, thrust out') is surprisingly strong — the same word used for casting out demons. God does not gently invite workers; he thrusts them out into the harvest. The 'Lord of the harvest' (*tou kyriou tou therismou*) is God, who owns the harvest and dispatches the laborers. This prayer request immediately precedes chapter 10, where Jesus himself sends out the Twelve — the prayer is answered in the next scene.

10

Summary: *Matthew 10 records Jesus's commissioning of the twelve apostles for their first mission. He names all twelve, instructs them to go only to 'the lost sheep of the house of Israel,' grants them authority over demons and diseases, gives detailed instructions about provisions, hospitality, and persecution, warns that following him will bring division — even within families — and concludes with promises of reward for those who receive them. This is the second of Matthew's five major discourses.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The discourse moves seamlessly from the immediate Galilean mission to language about persecution before governors and kings (v. 18), the coming of the Son of Man (v. 23), and being acknowledged before the Father in heaven (v. 32-33). This telescoping suggests Matthew compiled sayings from different occasions into a single discourse. The repeated command 'do not fear' (vv. 26, 28, 31) structures the middle section. The radical claim that Jesus brings 'not peace but a sword' (v. 34) and the demand to love him above family (v. 37) represent some of the most challenging statements in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The restriction to Israel (vv. 5-6) stands in tension with the Great Commission's universal scope (28:19). We render the text as given, noting the narrative development. The list of apostles varies slightly across the Gospels in name order and in some cases name forms. We follow the SBLGNT text. The phrase 'Son of Man' is capitalized as a title throughout.*

Connections: *The mission charge echoes Moses commissioning Joshua and Elijah commissioning Elisha. The 'lost sheep of the house of Israel' language connects to Ezekiel 34 and Jesus's shepherd compassion in 9:36. The warnings about persecution anticipate the Olivet Discourse (ch. 24-25). The family division sayings echo Micah 7:6, which Jesus explicitly quotes. The promise about sparrows and numbered hairs (vv. 29-31) connects to God's providential care throughout the Old Testament.*

¹He called his twelve disciples to him and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to drive them out and to heal every disease and every sickness. ²Now the names of the twelve messengers are these. The foremost, Simon, who is known as Peter, and Andrew his brother. James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother. ³Philip and Bartholomew; Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus; ⁴Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed him. ⁵Jesus sent out these twelve, instructing them: "Do not go on the road to the Gentiles, and do not enter any town of the Samaritans, ⁶However, go rather to the lost sheep of the home of Israel. ⁷As you go, proclaim this message: 'The kingdom of heaven has come near.' ⁸Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse those with skin diseases, drive out demons. You received without payment; give without payment. ⁹Do not acquire gold or silver or copper for your money belts, ¹⁰Nor scrip since your journey, and not two coats, neither shoes, nor yet staves — for the workman is worthy of his meat. ¹¹Whatever town or village you enter, find out who in it is worthy, and stay there until you leave. ¹²As you enter the house, greet it. ¹³If the house is worthy, let your peace rest on it. But if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you. ¹⁴If anyone does not receive you or listen to your words, shake the dust off your feet as you leave that house or town. ¹⁵Truly I tell you, it will be more bearable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah on the day of judgment than for that town. ¹⁶Look, I am sending you out like sheep among wolves. Therefore be shrewd as serpents and innocent as doves. ¹⁷Be on guard against people, for they will hand you over to courts and flog you in their synagogues. ¹⁸You will be brought before governors and kings because of me, as a testimony to them and to the Gentiles. ¹⁹When they hand you over, do not worry about how to speak or what to say, for what you are to say will be given to you at that time. ²⁰For it is not you who are speaking, but the Spirit of your Father speaking through you. ²¹Brother will betray brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against parents and

have them put to death. ²²You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But the one who endures to the end will be saved. ²³When they persecute you in one town, flee to the next. For truly I tell you, you will not finish going through the towns of Israel before the Son of Man comes. ²⁴A disciple is not above the teacher, nor a servant above the master. ²⁵It is enough for the disciple to become like the teacher, and the servant like the master. If they have called the head of the house Beelzebul, how much more the members of his household! ²⁶So do not be afraid of them. For there is nothing covered that will not be uncovered, and nothing hidden that will not be made known. ²⁷What I tell you in the dark, speak in the light; and what you hear whispered, proclaim from the housetops. ²⁸Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but cannot kill the soul. Rather, fear the one who can destroy both soul and body in Gehenna. ²⁹Are not two sparrows sold for a penny? Yet not one of them will fall to the ground apart from your Father. ³⁰Even the hairs of your head are all counted. ³¹So do not be afraid. You are worth more than many sparrows. ³²Therefore everyone who acknowledges me before others, I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven. ³³But whoever denies me before others, I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven. ³⁴Do not think that I came to bring peace to the earth. I did not come to bring peace, but a sword. ³⁵For I came to turn a man against his father, a daughter against her mother, and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law. ³⁶A person's enemies will be members of his own household. ³⁷Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. ³⁸Whoever does not take up his cross and follow me is not worthy of me. ³⁹Whoever finds his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it. ⁴⁰Whoever receives you receives me, and whoever receives me receives the one who sent me. ⁴¹Whoever receives a prophet because he is a prophet will receive a prophet's reward, and whoever receives a righteous person because he is righteous will receive a righteous person's reward. ⁴²And whoever gives even a cup of cold water to one of these little ones because he is a disciple — truly I tell you, that person will by no means lose his reward."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *proskalesamenos* ('having summoned') indicates a formal calling together, not a casual gathering. The authority (*exousia*) Jesus delegates is the same authority he himself exercises in chapters 8-9. The phrase *pneumatōn akathartōn* ('unclean spirits') echoes the Old Testament purity language — these spirits make people ritually and morally defiled.
2. This is the only place Matthew uses the term *apostolōn* ('apostles,' literally 'sent ones'). The designation *prōtos* ('first') for Simon Peter indicates rank, not merely sequence — Peter consistently holds primacy in all apostolic lists. The pairs reflect the calling narratives of 4:18-22.
3. Matthew identifies himself as 'the tax collector' (*ho telōnēs*) — a self-deprecating label that no one else in the list receives. The SBLGNT reads *Thaddaios* where the KJV has 'Lebbaeus, whose surname was Thaddaeus.' Luke's list has 'Judas the son of James' in this position, possibly the same person under a different name.
4. The term *Kananaios* is not 'Canaanite' (an ethnic designation) but an Aramaic equivalent of *zēlōtēs* ('zealot'), indicating either membership in the Zealot movement or zealous temperament. Rendering as 'the Zealot' follows Luke 6:15 and clarifies the meaning. Judas is listed last with the damning participle *paradous* ('the one who handed over, betrayed'). The name *Iskariōtēs* may derive from Hebrew *ish-Kerioth* ('man of Kerioth'), a town in Judea.
5. The restriction *eis hodon ethnōn* ('onto a road of Gentiles') limits the mission to Jewish territory. This is not ethnic prejudice but strategic priority — the message goes 'to the Jew first' (cf. Romans 1:16). The separate mention of Samaritans acknowledges their intermediate status, neither fully Jewish nor Gentile. This restriction is explicitly lifted in the Great Commission (28:19).
6. The phrase *ta probata ta apolōlota* ('the lost sheep') echoes Ezekiel 34:4-6, where God condemns Israel's leaders for failing to seek the lost, scattered sheep. Jesus sends his disciples to do what Israel's shepherds failed to do. The genitive *oikou Israēl* ('of the house of Israel') limits the scope but the compassion language is universal.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 34:4-6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The disciples' message is identical to John the Baptist's (3:2) and Jesus's own (4:17): *ēggiken hē basileia tōn ouranōn*. The perfect tense *ēggiken* indicates that the kingdom has drawn near and remains near — it is not merely approaching but arriving. The verb *kēryssete* ('proclaim') denotes public, authoritative announcement.
8. The four commands mirror Jesus's own miracle types from chapters 8-9. The phrase *dōrean elabete, dōrean dote* ('freely you received, freely give') establishes the principle of gratuitous ministry — the grace they have received must be passed on without charge. The word *dōrean* means 'as a gift, without cost,' from the same root as *dōron* ('gift').

9. The three metals — gold (chryson), silver (argyron), copper (chalkon) — represent a descending scale of value, emphasizing total financial dependence. The zōnas ('belts, girdles') had folds used as purses. The verb ktēsēsthe ('acquire, obtain') prohibits accumulating resources for the journey.
10. The pēran ('bag, knapsack') was a traveler's provision bag. The prohibition of extra clothing and a staff forces radical dependence on hospitality. The principle axios gar ho ergatēs tēs trophēs autou ('the worker deserves his food') is quoted by Paul in 1 Timothy 5:18. The logic: they should not stockpile because the communities they serve are obligated to support them.
11. The verb exetasate ('find out, inquire carefully') implies a deliberate search for a reputable host. 'Worthy' (axios) here means receptive to the message. The instruction to stay in one house (rather than moving to better accommodations) prevents the appearance of opportunism.
12. The greeting (aspasasthe) would have been the standard Jewish blessing of peace — 'Shalom aleichem' ('peace be upon you'). The command to greet 'the house' (tēn oikian) rather than 'the household' treats the home as a unit that receives or rejects the blessing.
13. The 'peace' (eirēnē, corresponding to Hebrew shalom) is treated as a substantial reality that can be bestowed, rest upon a place, or be recalled — not merely a polite wish. The concept of blessing as a tangible force that can be directed and returned reflects the Hebrew understanding of the power of spoken words.
14. Shaking dust from the feet (ektinaxate ton koniorton tōn podōn) was a gesture Jews performed when leaving Gentile territory, symbolically removing pagan contamination. Applied to Jewish towns that reject the message, it declares those towns equivalent to pagan lands — a shocking symbolic act.
15. Sodom and Gomorrah were the ultimate biblical symbols of divine judgment (Genesis 19). Jesus's comparison is deliberately extreme — towns that reject the gospel message face a more severe accounting than those cities destroyed by fire, because they have received a greater revelation and refused it.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The combination of animal metaphors is deliberately paradoxical — sheep (vulnerable), wolves (predatory), serpents (cunning), doves (gentle). The word phronimoi ('shrewd, wise, prudent') carries positive connotations of practical wisdom, not deception. The word akeraioi ('innocent, pure, unmixed') literally means 'unmixed' — without admixture of evil. The disciples need both qualities simultaneously.
17. The synedria ('councils, courts') refers to local Jewish judicial bodies. The verb mastigōsousin ('will flog') refers to the synagogue punishment of lashing (up to thirty-nine strokes, cf. 2 Corinthians 11:24). The phrase 'their synagogues' (tais synagōgais autōn) suggests a growing separation between Jesus's movement and the synagogue — language that may reflect Matthew's own community situation.
18. The scope expands beyond the immediate mission to encompass Roman governors (hēgemonas) and kings (basileis), anticipating Paul's trials and the broader post-resurrection mission. The phrase eis martyriōn ('as a testimony') could mean 'testimony to' (evangelistic opportunity) or 'testimony against' (judicial evidence). The ambiguity is preserved.
19. The verb merimnēsēte ('worry, be anxious') is the same word Jesus used in the Sermon on the Mount (6:25-34). The divine passive dothēsetai ('will be given') indicates God as the source of their words. This is not a promise about improvisation but about divine provision under pressure.
20. The phrase to pneuma tou patros hymōn ('the Spirit of your Father') is distinctively Matthean — Mark 13:11 has 'the Holy Spirit.' Matthew's formulation emphasizes the familial relationship: the Spirit who empowers their testimony belongs to the Father who cares for them.
21. The escalation from religious persecution (vv. 17-18) to family betrayal is jarring. The verb paradōsei ('will hand over, betray') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal of Jesus. The family breakdown described here echoes Micah 7:6, which Jesus will quote explicitly in verse 35-36.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 7:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The phrase dia to onoma mou ('because of my name') indicates that persecution comes specifically from identification with Jesus — his name is the cause. The promise ho de hypomeinas eis telos sōthēsetai ('the one who endures to the end will be saved') uses the verb hypomenō, which means to remain under pressure rather than flee from it. Salvation is promised not to those who escape suffering but to those who persist through it.
23. This is one of the most debated verses in Matthew. The statement ou mē telesēte tas poleis tou Israēl ('you will not finish the cities of Israel') before the Son of Man comes has been interpreted variously: as referring to the destruction of Jerusalem in AD 70, to the transfiguration, to the resurrection, to the ongoing mission of the church, or to the second coming. The double negative ou mē with the subjunctive is the strongest form of negation in Greek. We render the text without imposing a specific interpretation.
24. This proverb establishes the principle that disciples should expect no better treatment than their teacher received. The parallel structure mathētēs/didaskalon and doulos/kyrion reinforces the point. If Jesus himself faces rejection and persecution, his followers cannot expect exemption.
25. The argument moves from principle to application: if they called Jesus 'Beelzebul' (the accusation noted in 9:34 and expanded in 12:24), his disciples will receive worse. The name Beelzeboul likely derives from Hebrew ba'al zevul ('lord of the dwelling') — a mocking name for the prince of demons. The wordplay is rich: the oikodespotēs ('master of the house') is called 'lord of the dwelling' (Beelzebul), and his oikiakoi ('household members') share his reputation.

- 26.** The first of three 'do not fear' commands (vv. 26, 28, 31) that structure this section. The promise that all hidden things will be revealed (apokalyphthēsetai, from which 'apocalypse' derives) reassures persecuted disciples that the truth about their faithfulness and their persecutors' injustice will ultimately be exposed.
- 27.** The contrast between private instruction ('in the dark,' 'whispered into the ear') and public proclamation ('in the light,' 'from the housetops') indicates that Jesus's private teaching to the disciples is meant for public dissemination. The flat rooftops of Palestinian houses served as gathering places and announcement platforms.
- 28.** The second 'do not fear' command. The distinction between sōma ('body') and psychē ('soul') here reflects the belief that human identity has a dimension that persecutors cannot reach. Geenna (Gehenna) refers to the Valley of Hinnom south of Jerusalem, which had associations with child sacrifice (2 Kings 23:10) and became a symbol of divine judgment. We transliterate 'Gehenna' rather than using the interpretive 'hell' to preserve the specific geographic and theological reference.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Kings 23:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** The assarion was a Roman copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a denarius — the cheapest available currency. Sparrows (strouthia) were the least valuable birds sold in the market. The phrase aneu tou patros hymōn ('apart from your Father') is striking in its brevity — it does not say 'without your Father's knowledge' or 'permission' but simply 'apart from your Father,' implying total divine involvement in even the most insignificant events.
- 30.** The perfect passive ēριθμήμεναι ('having been counted') indicates a completed action — God has already counted every hair. The argument moves from lesser to greater: if God attends to sparrows (nearly worthless) and to hairs (individually insignificant), how much more to the whole person.
- 31.** The third and climactic 'do not fear' command. The verb διαφηρετε ('are worth more, surpass, differ from') establishes the basis for courage: the disciples' value to God exceeds that of the sparrows he already attends to.
- 32.** The verb homologēsō ('will acknowledge, confess') means to publicly declare allegiance. The phrase ἐν ἐμοί ('in me') suggests more than verbal acknowledgment — it implies union with Jesus. Jesus claims to serve as advocate or witness before the Father, placing himself in a role of cosmic juridical authority.
- 33.** The verb ἀρνήσεται ('denies, disowns') is the opposite of homologeō. The parallel structure creates a solemn either/or with no middle ground. This saying gains poignancy in light of Peter's later denial (26:69-75) and subsequent restoration.
- 34.** The verb βάlein ('to throw, cast') is more forceful than 'send' — Jesus throws down a sword, not peace. The μαχαιράν ('sword') here is not literal military violence but a metaphor for the division his message creates. The statement is deliberately provocative, contradicting expectations of the Messiah as a prince of peace (Isaiah 9:6). Jesus describes the effect of his mission: allegiance to him will cut through existing social bonds.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 9:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The verb διχασαί ('to divide, to turn against') describes Jesus's purpose in terms that echo Micah 7:6. The list moves through three family pairs, each representing a generational division. These are the closest family bonds in ancient Near Eastern culture — their rupture represents the most radical possible social disruption.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Micah 7:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** This is a direct quotation of Micah 7:6 (LXX). In Micah, the passage describes the social breakdown of Judah before divine restoration. Jesus applies it to the effect of his own mission — loyalty to him will create enmity within families. The word οἰκιακοί ('household members') connects to the οἰκodespotēs ('head of the house') language in verse 25.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 7:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The verb φιλῶν ('loving') here denotes natural family affection. Jesus does not prohibit loving family but demands that loyalty to him take precedence over the deepest human bonds. The repeated phrase οὐκ ἐστίν μου ἀξίος ('is not worthy of me') frames the demand as a question of worthiness for discipleship. Luke's parallel (14:26) uses the stronger 'hate' (miseō); Matthew's 'more than me' (hyper eme) may soften the expression.
- 38.** This is the first mention of the cross (stauron) in Matthew's Gospel. For Jesus's original audience, crucifixion was a Roman method of executing slaves, rebels, and non-citizens — the most shameful death imaginable. The condemned person carried the crossbeam (patibulum) to the execution site. The metaphor means accepting suffering, shame, and potentially death as the cost of following Jesus.
- 39.** The word psychē ('soul, life, self') means both physical life and one's total existence/identity. The paradox operates on both levels: clinging to self-preservation leads to ultimate loss, while surrendering life for Jesus's sake leads to ultimate gain. The phrase ἕνεκεν ἐμοῦ ('for my sake') is the distinguishing factor — not all loss is redemptive, only loss incurred through loyalty to Jesus.
- 40.** The chain of reception — disciples, Jesus, the Father — establishes the principle of agency: to receive the messenger is to receive the sender. This concept is rooted in the Jewish shaliah principle, where an authorized agent carries the full authority of the one who sends him. The verb δεχόμενος ('receives, welcomes') implies hospitality and acceptance of both person and message.

41. The phrase *eis onoma prophētou* ('in the name of a prophet') means 'because of his identity as a prophet' — the host shares in the reward because the hospitality is an act of faith in the prophet's mission. The principle extends to righteous people generally. Reward (*misthon*) in Matthew's Gospel is not wage-earning but gracious divine recompense.
42. The climax moves from prophets to righteous people to 'little ones' (*mikrōn*, the least and most vulnerable). The gift is reduced to its minimum — a cup of cold water (*potērion psychrou*) — yet even this smallest act of kindness to a disciple will be rewarded. The double negative *ou mē* ('by no means') provides emphatic assurance. The phrase 'these little ones' anticipates 18:6, 10, 14, where it becomes a major theme.

11

Summary: *Matthew 11 marks a turning point in the Gospel. John the Baptist, now imprisoned, sends disciples to ask whether Jesus is 'the one who is to come.'* Jesus responds by pointing to his deeds, then delivers a eulogy for John as the greatest born of women yet less than the least in the kingdom of heaven. He denounces the unrepentant cities of Chorazin, Bethsaida, and Capernaum, then delivers one of the most intimate prayers in the Gospels, thanking the Father for revealing truth to 'little children' rather than the wise. The chapter climaxes with the great invitation: 'Come to me, all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest.'

What Makes This Remarkable: *John's question from prison (v. 3) is striking — the one who declared Jesus the 'Lamb of God' now appears to doubt. Jesus's response does not rebuke but redirects: look at the evidence. The woe oracles against Galilean cities (vv. 20-24) are shocking because these are Jewish cities that witnessed Jesus's miracles firsthand. The mutual knowledge between Father and Son (v. 27) is one of the highest christological statements in the Synoptic Gospels, approaching Johannine theology. The invitation of vv. 28-30 uses the metaphor of a yoke — a rabbinic term for Torah obedience — and claims that Jesus's yoke is easy and his burden light.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the kingdom of heaven suffers violence' (v. 12) is notoriously difficult in Greek. The verb *biazetai* could be passive ('is being violently attacked') or middle ('is forcefully advancing'), and *biastai* ('violent ones') could be opponents who attack or passionate seekers who seize it. We render the ambiguity and note the options. The citation of Isaiah in vv. 4-5 is a composite from multiple passages.*

Connections: *John's question connects to his announcement in 3:11-12. The works Jesus cites (vv. 4-5) echo Isaiah 35:5-6, 61:1. The judgment on cities connects to the Sodom and Gomorrah language of 10:15. The Father-Son revelation passage (v. 27) anticipates the Great Commission's 'all authority' (28:18). The yoke invitation echoes Sirach 51:23-27 and reinterprets the Wisdom tradition.*

¹When Jesus had finished instructing his twelve disciples, he went on from there to teach and preach in their towns. ²When John heard in prison about the works of the Christ, he sent word through his disciples ³Stated to him, Art you he that should come, or do we look for another? ⁴Jesus answered them, "Go and report to John what you hear and see: ⁵The blind receive sight, the lame walk, those with skin diseases are cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are raised, and the poor have good news proclaimed to them. ⁶And blessed is the one who is not offended by me." ⁷As they were leaving, Jesus began to speak to the crowds about John: "What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed swaying in the wind? ⁸What then did you go out to see? A man dressed in fine clothes? Look, those who wear fine clothes are found in royal palaces. ⁹What then did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you — and more than a prophet. ¹⁰This is the one about whom it is written: 'Look, I am sending my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way before you.' ¹¹Truly I tell you, among those born of women no one greater than John the Baptist has appeared. Yet the least in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he. ¹²From the days of John the Baptist until now, the kingdom of heaven has been subjected to violence, and violent people are seizing it. ¹³For every one of the prophets and the law prophesied until John. ¹⁴And if you are willing to accept it, he is Elijah who is to come. ¹⁵Whoever has ears, let them hear. ¹⁶To what should I compare this generation? It is like children sitting in the marketplaces and calling out to others: ¹⁷'We played the flute for you, and you did not dance; we sang a funeral song, and you did not mourn.' ¹⁸He has a devil, for John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say. ¹⁹The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and they say, 'Look at him! A glutton and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' But wisdom is vindicated by her deeds." ²⁰Then he began to denounce the towns where most of his miracles had been performed, because

they did not repent: ²¹"Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles performed in you had been performed in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. ²²But I tell you, it will be more bearable for Tyre and Sidon on the day of judgment than for you. ²³And you, Capernaum — will you be exalted to heaven? You will be brought down to Hades. For if the miracles performed in you had been performed in Sodom, it would have remained to this day. ²⁴But I tell you, it will be more bearable for the land of Sodom on the day of judgment than for you." ²⁵At that time Jesus declared, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you have hidden these things from the wise and intelligent and have revealed them to little children. ²⁶Yes, Father, for this was your gracious will. ²⁷All things have been handed over to me by my Father. No one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him. ²⁸Come to me, all who are weary and burdened, and I will give you rest. ²⁹Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am gentle and humble in heart, and you will find rest for your souls. ³⁰My yoke is not heavy, and what I ask you to carry is light.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formula *kai egeneto hote etelesen* ('and it happened when he finished') is one of Matthew's five discourse-ending formulas (7:28, 11:1, 13:53, 19:1, 26:1), structuring the Gospel around five major teaching blocks. The phrase *en tais poleisin autōn* ('in their towns') is ambiguous — 'their' could refer to the disciples' towns or the people's towns. We follow the more natural reading of the surrounding towns.
2. Matthew refers to *ta erga tou Christou* ('the works of the Christ'), using the title with the article — 'the Christ,' the Messiah. John is in prison (*desmōtēriō*) under Herod Antipas, as explained later in 14:3-12. That John hears about Jesus's works but sends to question him suggests a gap between what he expected of the Messiah and what Jesus is doing.
3. The title *ho erchomenos* ('the coming one') is a messianic designation drawn from Psalm 118:26 ('Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the LORD') and Malachi 3:1. The question is not necessarily about doubt in Jesus's identity but possibly about the nature of his messiahship — John expected a figure who would baptize 'with fire' and judgment (3:11-12), but Jesus's ministry has been characterized by compassion and healing.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 118:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Malachi 3:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Jesus does not give a direct yes or no but points to evidence — his deeds speak for themselves. The verbs *akouete kai blepete* ('you hear and see') are present tense, directing them to what is happening right now around them.
5. This list combines Isaiah 35:5-6 (blind, deaf, lame) with Isaiah 61:1 (good news to the poor) and adds lepers and the dead. Each item corresponds to miracles already narrated in Matthew 8-9. The final item — *ptōchoi euaggelizontai* ('the poor are evangelized') — is climactic: the ultimate messianic sign is not spectacular power but that the marginalized receive God's message.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 35:5-6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 61:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *skandalisthē* ('is caused to stumble, is offended') carries the sense of a trap or snare — something that causes one to trip and fall away from faith. The gentle warning is directed at John: blessed is the person who can accept a Messiah who does not match expectations. The beatitude form (*makarios*, 'blessed') echoes the Sermon on the Mount.
7. Jesus defends John's significance with three rhetorical questions (vv. 7-9). The 'reed shaken by the wind' (*kalamon hypo anemou saleuomenon*) may be a political reference — Herod Antipas used a reed as his symbol on coins minted at his capital Tiberias. If so, Jesus is asking: did you go to see someone who bends to Herod's authority? The answer is clearly no.
8. The contrast between John's rough desert existence and the luxury of royal courts is pointed. The word *malakois* ('soft things') refers to expensive, luxurious garments. The implicit comparison with Herod's court — where John is now imprisoned — carries ironic force.
9. The third question answers itself and escalates: John is not merely a prophet but *perissoteron prophētou* ('more than a prophet'). The comparative form sets John above the entire prophetic tradition. What makes him 'more' is explained in the next verse.
10. The quotation combines Exodus 23:20 and Malachi 3:1, with a significant modification: Malachi's 'before me' becomes 'before you,' making Jesus the one whose way is prepared. The word *aggelon* ('messenger') is the same word translated 'angel' in other contexts. John is God's messenger who prepares the way for the Lord's arrival — a role that exceeds ordinary prophetic function.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Malachi 3:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 23:20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The phrase *en gennētois gynaikōn* ('among those born of women') encompasses all humanity. The paradox is sharp: John is the greatest human who ever lived, yet the least person in the kingdom of heaven surpasses him. This is not a diminishment of John but an elevation of the kingdom — the new era Jesus inaugurates transcends even the greatest achievements of the old. The comparative *mikroteros* ('lesser, least') could also be translated 'the younger one,' possibly referring to Jesus himself.
12. This is one of the most disputed verses in the New Testament. The verb *biazetai* can be middle voice ('is forcefully advancing') or passive ('is being violently attacked'). The *biastai* ('violent ones') can be positive (passionate seekers who forcefully lay hold of the kingdom) or negative (opponents who assault it). The passive/negative reading is adopted here because it fits the context of John's imprisonment and the opposition Jesus faces, but the alternative reading is well attested. Luke 16:16 has a clearly positive version: 'everyone forces their way into it.'
13. The unusual order 'the Prophets and the Law' (rather than the standard 'Law and Prophets') may emphasize the prophetic, forward-looking character of the entire Old Testament. The statement that prophecy extended 'until John' (*heōs Iōannou*) positions John at the hinge between the old era and the new — he is both the last of the old prophets and the first voice of the new age.
14. The identification of John with Elijah fulfills Malachi 4:5 ('I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and terrible day of the LORD'). The qualification *ei thelete dexasthai* ('if you are willing to accept it') acknowledges that this identification requires faith — it is not self-evident. Jesus does not mean that John is literally Elijah reincarnated but that he fulfills Elijah's prophetic role.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 4:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. This refrain (repeated in 13:9, 43) signals that what has just been said requires spiritual perception, not merely physical hearing. The distinction between hearing sound and understanding meaning runs throughout Jesus's teaching.
16. Jesus introduces a parable comparing 'this generation' (*tēn genean tautēn*) — a term of disapproval throughout Matthew — to petulant children in the marketplace. The agora was the town square where children would play. The image is of children who refuse to participate in any game their peers suggest.
17. The children's complaint describes two games refused: a wedding game (flute playing, dancing) and a funeral game (mourning songs, beating the breast). The point is that 'this generation' refuses to respond no matter what approach is used — they are determined not to participate.
18. John's ascetic lifestyle (fasting, desert living, restricted diet) is dismissed as demonic possession rather than recognized as prophetic discipline. The phrase *mēte esthiōn mēte pinōn* ('neither eating nor drinking') is hyperbolic — he ate and drank but not in normal social settings.
19. Jesus's social engagement at meals (eating and drinking) is dismissed as excess — the opposite accusation from that leveled at John. The terms *phagos* ('glutton') and *oinopotēs* ('drunkard') echo Deuteronomy 21:20, the charge against a rebellious son worthy of death. The closing proverb *edikaiōthē hē sophia apo tōn ergōn autēs* ('wisdom is vindicated by her deeds') personifies wisdom (as in Proverbs 8) and suggests that the results of both John's and Jesus's ministries will ultimately prove them right. The SBLGNT reads 'deeds' (*ergōn*) where Luke 7:35 has 'children' (*teknōn*).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Proverbs 8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The verb *oneidizein* ('to reproach, denounce') is strong language — public shaming. The noun *dynameis* ('mighty works, miracles') refers to the healings and exorcisms of chapters 8-9. The cause of the denunciation is not that they rejected his miracles but that they failed to repent (*metanoēsan*) — the miracles were intended to produce a turning of heart and life.
21. The woe oracle (*ouai*) is a prophetic form of lament-judgment found throughout the Old Testament prophets. Chorazin and Bethsaida are Galilean towns near Capernaum. Tyre and Sidon were Phoenician coastal cities that the prophets condemned for pride and wickedness (Isaiah 23, Ezekiel 26-28). Jesus's comparison is devastating: pagan cities would have responded more faithfully than these Jewish towns.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 26-28. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The comparative *anektoteron* ('more bearable, more tolerable') implies degrees of judgment — greater privilege brings greater accountability. The 'day of judgment' (*hēmera kriseōs*) is the eschatological reckoning.
23. Capernaum, Jesus's own base of operations, receives the harshest judgment. The language echoes Isaiah 14:13-15, originally addressed to the king of Babylon. The contrast between heaven (*ouranon*) and Hades (*hadou*) represents the extremes of exaltation and humiliation. Hades (*hadēs*) is the Greek equivalent of Hebrew *Sheol*, the realm of the dead — not 'hell' in the later Christian sense but the place of departed spirits. The claim about Sodom — the most judged city in biblical history — surpasses even the Tyre/Sidon comparison.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 14:13-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

24. The progression Tyre/Sidon (v. 22) to Sodom (v. 24) intensifies the judgment — each comparison city is more notorious than the last. Capernaum's judgment exceeds even Sodom's because its privilege was greater.
25. The verb *exomologoumai* ('I praise, I thank, I confess') introduces a prayer of startling intimacy after the preceding judgment oracles. Jesus addresses God as *pater* ('Father') and *kyrie tou ouranou kai tēs gēs* ('Lord of heaven and earth'). The paradox is that divine revelation bypasses the *sophōn kai synetōn* ('wise and intelligent') — those with religious expertise — and is given to *nēpiois* ('infants, little children') — those without status or credentials. This is not anti-intellectualism but a statement about the posture required to receive revelation.
26. The phrase *eudokia egeneto emprosthen sou* ('it was well-pleasing before you') is a Semitic construction meaning 'this was your deliberate, delighted purpose.' The word *eudokia* ('good pleasure, gracious will') indicates not arbitrary choice but purposeful delight. Jesus affirms the Father's sovereign decision as both right and good.
27. This verse is often called 'a bolt from the Johannine blue' because its mutual knowledge language (the Father knows the Son, the Son knows the Father) resembles the Fourth Gospel more than the Synoptics. The verb *epiginōskei* ('knows fully, recognizes deeply') indicates intimate, relational knowledge, not mere intellectual awareness. The claim that all things (*panta*) have been delivered to Jesus by the Father anticipates 28:18 ('all authority'). The Son's role as sole revealer of the Father places him in a position of unique mediatorial authority.
28. This invitation is one of the most beloved passages in the New Testament. The participle *kopiōntes* ('laboring, toiling to exhaustion') and the perfect participle *pephortismenoi* ('having been loaded down, burdened') describe people crushed under weight — likely the burden of religious obligation as enforced by the scribes and Pharisees (cf. 23:4). The promise *anapausō hymas* ('I will give you rest') echoes God's promise of rest in Exodus 33:14 and the Sabbath rest of creation. Jesus offers himself — not a system, not a set of rules — as the source of rest.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 33:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The 'yoke' (*zygon*) was a standard rabbinic metaphor for Torah obedience — students were said to 'take upon themselves the yoke of the kingdom of heaven' and 'the yoke of the commandments.' Jesus does not abolish the yoke but offers his own yoke as a replacement. The self-description *praus eimi kai tapeinos tē kardia* ('I am gentle and humble in heart') echoes the meekness beatitude (5:5) and the prophecy of the humble king in Zechariah 9:9 (quoted in 21:5). The phrase *anapausin tais psychais hymōn* ('rest for your souls') echoes Jeremiah 6:16.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 9:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 6:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The adjective *chrēstos* ('easy, pleasant, kind, good') is related to the word for 'Christ' (*Christos*) by sound (a wordplay early Christians noted). A well-fitted wooden yoke was 'easy' in the sense of fitting properly and not chafing — the metaphor is not that there is no yoke but that this one fits. The adjective *elaphron* ('light') contrasts with the heavy burdens of verse 28. Jesus does not promise freedom from all obligation but obligation that gives life rather than crushing it.

12

Summary: *Matthew 12 intensifies the conflict between Jesus and the Pharisees. It opens with two Sabbath controversies — the disciples plucking grain and Jesus healing a man's withered hand — followed by the Pharisees' plot to destroy Jesus. Matthew inserts a lengthy Isaiah Servant quotation (vv. 18-21). The Beelzebul controversy erupts when Jesus heals a blind and mute demoniac, and the Pharisees attribute his power to the prince of demons. Jesus responds with the 'kingdom divided' argument, warns about blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, teaches that a tree is known by its fruit, and warns about idle words. The Pharisees demand a sign, and Jesus offers only the sign of Jonah. The chapter ends with a redefinition of family: whoever does the Father's will is Jesus's brother, sister, and mother.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sabbath disputes (vv. 1-14) establish Jesus's authority over the Law's interpretation by invoking David, the priests, the temple, and the prophets — then claiming to be 'greater than the temple' (v. 6) and 'Lord of the Sabbath' (v. 8). The blasphemy against the Holy Spirit (v. 31-32) is Jesus's most severe warning in the Gospels — an 'unforgivable sin' that has generated centuries of pastoral anxiety. The sign of Jonah (vv. 39-41) links Jesus's death and resurrection to Jonah's three days in the fish. The redefinition of family (vv. 46-50) subordinates biological kinship to spiritual obedience.*

Translation Friction: *The Hosea 6:6 quotation appears for the second time (cf. 9:13). The phrase 'three days and three nights' (v. 40) does not correspond exactly to the timeline of Good Friday afternoon to Easter Sunday morning by modern counting, but Jewish reckoning counted partial days as full days. The 'unpardonable sin' passage requires careful rendering that preserves Jesus's actual words without either minimizing or exaggerating*

the warning.

Connections: The Sabbath grain episode echoes 1 Samuel 21:1-6 (David and the showbread). The Isaiah 42:1-4 quotation (vv. 18-21) is the longest Old Testament citation in Matthew. The Beelzebul controversy connects to the accusation in 9:34 and 10:25. The sign of Jonah points to the death and resurrection narratives. The family redefinition anticipates the church as a new community (ch. 18).

¹At that time Jesus went through the grain fields on the Sabbath. His disciples were hungry and began to pick heads of grain and eat them. ²When the Pharisees saw this, they said to him, "Look, your disciples are doing what is not lawful to do on the Sabbath." ³He said to them, "Have you not read what David did when he and his companions were hungry — ⁴How he went into the home of God, and did consume the shewbread, which was not permitted for him to eat, neither for them which were with him, but only for the priests? ⁵Or have you not read in the Law that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple break the Sabbath and yet are without guilt? ⁶But I tell you that something greater than the temple is here. ⁷If you had known what this means — 'I desire mercy, not sacrifice' — you would not have condemned the innocent. ⁸For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath." ⁹Moving on from there, he went into their synagogue. ¹⁰A man was there with a withered hand. They asked Jesus, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" — so that they could accuse him. ¹¹He said to them, "If any of you has a sheep and it falls into a pit on the Sabbath, will you not take hold of it and lift it out? ¹²How much more valuable then is a person than a sheep! Therefore it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath." ¹³Then he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and it was restored, as healthy as the other. ¹⁴The Pharisees went out and conspired against him, plotting how to destroy him. ¹⁵Aware of this, Jesus withdrew from there. Large crowds followed him, and he healed all of them. ¹⁶Charged them that they should not render him recognized: ¹⁷That it might be fulfilled which was spoken by Esaias the prophet and stated, ¹⁸"Here is my servant whom I have chosen, my beloved in whom my soul delights. I will put my Spirit upon him, and he will proclaim justice to the nations. ¹⁹He will not quarrel or cry out, nor will anyone hear his voice in the streets. ²⁰A bruised reed he will not break, and a smoldering wick he will not snuff out, until he leads justice to victory. ²¹And in his name the nations will put their hope." ²²Then a demon-possessed man who was blind and mute was brought to him. Jesus healed him so that the man could both speak and see. ²³All the crowds were astonished and said, "Could this be the Son of David?" ²⁴But when the Pharisees heard this, they said, "This man drives out demons only by Beelzebul, the ruler of the demons." ²⁵Knowing their thoughts, he said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is laid waste, and no city or household divided against itself will stand. ²⁶If Satan drives out Satan, he is divided against himself. How then will his kingdom stand? ²⁷And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your people drive them out? So then, they will be your judges. ²⁸But if I drive out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you. ²⁹Or how can anyone enter a strong man's house and carry off his possessions unless he first ties up the strong man? Then he can plunder his house. ³⁰Whoever is not with me is against me, and whoever does not gather with me scatters. ³¹Therefore I tell you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven people, but blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven. ³²Whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven, either in this age or in the age to come. ³³Either make the tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad, for the tree is known by its fruit. ³⁴You brood of vipers! How can you speak good things when you are evil? For out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks. ³⁵The good person brings good things out of a good treasure, and the evil person brings evil things out of an evil treasure. ³⁶I tell you that on the day of judgment people will give an account for every careless word they have spoken. ³⁷For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned." ³⁸Then some of the scribes and Pharisees said to him, "Teacher, we want to see a sign from you." ³⁹He answered them, "An evil and adulterous generation demands a sign, but no sign will be given to it except the sign of the prophet Jonah. ⁴⁰For just as Jonah was three days and three nights in the belly of the great fish, so the Son of Man will be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth. ⁴¹The people of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, for they repented at the preaching of Jonah — and look, something greater than Jonah is here. ⁴²The queen of the South will rise at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, for she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon — and look, something

greater than Solomon is here. ⁴³When an unclean spirit comes out of a person, it passes through waterless places seeking rest and does not find it. ⁴⁴Then it says, 'I will return to my house that I left.' When it arrives, it finds the house unoccupied, swept clean, and put in order. ⁴⁵Then it goes and brings along seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they enter and settle there. And the last condition of that person becomes worse than the first. So it will be with this evil generation." ⁴⁶While he was still speaking to the crowds, his mother and brothers stood outside, wanting to speak to him. ⁴⁷Someone told him, "Look, your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to speak to you." ⁴⁸But he replied to the one who told him, "Who is my mother, and who are my brothers?" ⁴⁹Pointing to his disciples, he said, "Here are my mother and my brothers. ⁵⁰For whoever does the will of my Father in heaven is my brother and sister and mother."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *sporimōn* ('sown fields, grain fields') refers to cultivated land with standing grain. The verb *tillein* ('to pluck, to pull off') describes pulling heads of grain by hand, which was permitted under Deuteronomy 23:25 but which the Pharisees considered 'reaping' — one of the thirty-nine categories of Sabbath-prohibited work in later rabbinic tradition. Matthew adds that the disciples 'were hungry' (*epeinasan*), providing a sympathetic motive absent in Mark.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 23:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Pharisees' charge *ouk exestin* ('it is not lawful') frames the issue as a legal violation. The prohibition is not from the written Torah itself (which permits plucking by hand) but from their interpretive tradition about what constitutes 'work' on the Sabbath. They address Jesus rather than the disciples, holding the teacher responsible for his students' behavior.
3. Jesus's counter-argument begins with the rhetorically sharp *ouk anegnōte* ('have you not read?') — a challenge to the Pharisees' scriptural expertise. The appeal to David (1 Samuel 21:1-6) establishes a precedent where human need overrode ceremonial regulation, and where the kingdom's anointed exercised freedom within the law.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 21:1-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The *artous tēs protheseōs* ('bread of the Presence,' literally 'bread of the setting forth') were twelve loaves placed on a table in the tabernacle and renewed weekly (Leviticus 24:5-9). Only priests could eat the old loaves. David's consumption of this bread (1 Samuel 21:1-6) was technically illegal yet not condemned by Scripture. Jesus's argument: if David's hunger justified breaking a ceremonial regulation, so does the disciples' hunger.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 24:5-9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 21:1-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The second argument is even more pointed: priests perform 'work' on the Sabbath (slaughtering animals, maintaining the fire, preparing offerings) yet are *anaitoi* ('guiltless, without blame'). The verb *bebēlousin* ('profane, desecrate') is deliberately provocative — Jesus uses the Pharisees' own categories against them. Temple service overrides Sabbath restriction by the Law's own provisions.
6. The neuter *meizon* ('something greater') rather than the masculine *meizōn* ('someone greater') makes the claim even more sweeping — not merely a greater person but a greater reality. If temple service overrides the Sabbath, and something greater than the temple is present, then this greater reality certainly overrides Sabbath regulations. The claim would be shocking to any first-century Jew — the temple was the center of Jewish religious life and the place of God's dwelling presence.
7. Jesus quotes Hosea 6:6 for the second time (cf. 9:13). The pluperfect *egnōkeite* ('if you had known,' implying 'but you did not') is a rebuke: the Pharisees who pride themselves on scriptural knowledge have failed to understand a key prophetic text. The word *anaitious* ('innocent, guiltless') declares the disciples formally acquitted — the same word used of the Sabbath-working priests in verse 5.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Hosea 6:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The climactic claim: the Son of Man has sovereign authority (*kyrios*, 'Lord') over the Sabbath itself. Since the Sabbath was instituted by God at creation (Genesis 2:2-3), claiming lordship over it is implicitly claiming divine authority. The word order in Greek places *kyrios* ('Lord') first for emphasis.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:2-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The phrase *tēn synagōgēn autōn* ('their synagogue') again uses the distancing possessive, suggesting tension between Jesus's movement and the synagogue establishment. The second Sabbath controversy follows immediately.

10. The adjective *xēran* ('dry, withered, shriveled') describes a hand that has atrophied or become paralyzed. The question is a trap (*hina katēgorēsōsin autou*, 'in order that they might accuse him'). Later rabbinic tradition permitted Sabbath healing only when life was in immediate danger — a withered hand was not life-threatening, so by their standards, healing could wait until the next day.
11. Jesus uses a *qal wahomer* (lesser to greater) argument, common in rabbinic reasoning. Even the stricter Sabbath interpreters allowed rescuing an animal from a pit on the Sabbath (though the Damascus Document from Qumran prohibited even this). The specification 'one sheep' (*probaton hen*) heightens the analogy — this is someone's only animal, their livelihood.
12. The conclusion *posō oun diapherei anthrōpos probatou* ('how much more a person differs from a sheep') establishes that if Sabbath rescue of an animal is permitted, Sabbath healing of a person must be permitted all the more. Jesus reframes the Sabbath question from 'what is prohibited?' to 'what is good?' — the Sabbath is for doing good (*kalōs poiein*), not for withholding compassion.
13. Jesus heals with a command alone — no physical contact, no medicine, no action that could be classified as 'work.' The verb *apekatestathē* ('was restored') indicates return to a former healthy state. The healing is complete (*hygiēs hōs hē allē*, 'healthy as the other') — not partial or gradual.
14. The response to a healing is a death plot — the irony is devastating. The phrase *symbolion elabon* ('took counsel together, conspired') is a formal term for deliberative action. The verb *apolesōsin* ('might destroy') foreshadows the passion narrative. A Sabbath healing provokes the defenders of the Sabbath to violate the commandment against murder.
15. Jesus's withdrawal (*anēchōrēsen*) is strategic, not fearful — the same verb was used for the family's flight to Egypt (2:14). Despite the growing opposition from leaders, the crowds continue to follow, and Jesus continues to heal — his compassion is not deterred by the conspiracy against him.
16. The command to secrecy (the messianic secret motif) continues. Jesus does not seek public confrontation at this point — his hour has not yet come. The verb *epetimēsen* ('warned, rebuked') is the same strong word used for rebuking storms and demons.
17. This introduces the longest Old Testament quotation in Matthew's Gospel — Isaiah 42:1-4, the first Servant Song. Matthew sees Jesus's withdrawal, quiet ministry, and compassion for the weak as fulfillment of this prophetic portrait.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 42:1-4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The word *pais* ('servant, child') echoes the Hebrew *eved* of Isaiah 42:1. The language of choosing, beloved status, and Spirit-bestowal recalls the baptism scene (3:16-17). The term *krisin* ('justice, judgment') translates Hebrew *mishpat* — not punitive judgment but restorative justice, the right ordering of society. The scope extends to *ta ethnē* ('the nations, the Gentiles'), anticipating the universal mission.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 42:1-4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The description of the Servant's quiet demeanor contrasts sharply with typical political or military messianic expectations. The verb *erisei* ('quarrel, wrangle') and *kraugasei* ('shout, cry out') describe the absence of aggressive self-promotion. This matches Jesus's repeated commands to silence and his withdrawal from public confrontation.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 42:1-4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The bruised reed (*kalamon syntetrimmenon*) and smoldering wick (*linon typhomenon*) are images of extreme fragility — things about to be discarded. The Servant refuses to crush what is already broken or extinguish what is barely alive. This describes Jesus's ministry to the weak, sick, and marginalized of chapters 8-9. The phrase *eis nikos* ('to victory') replaces the Hebrew 'in truth/faithfulness' (*le'emet*), interpreting justice as ultimately triumphant.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 42:1-4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The quotation concludes with the universal hope: *ethnē elpiousin* ('the nations will hope'). The Hebrew original has 'the coastlands will wait for his instruction (torah).' Matthew's Greek version shifts from *torah* to 'name' (*onomati*) and from 'wait' to 'hope' (*elpiousin*), emphasizing personal trust in the Servant rather than obedience to a teaching.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 42:1-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. This healing combines two conditions from the messianic signs of 11:5 (blind receive sight, mute speak), making it an unmistakable messianic indicator. The double restoration — speaking and seeing — provokes the two opposite responses that follow.
23. The verb *existanto* ('were amazed, astonished, beside themselves') indicates overwhelming wonder. The question *mēti houtos estin ho huios David* uses the particle *mēti*, which in Greek expects a negative answer but here expresses cautious hope — 'this couldn't be the Son of David, could it?' The crowds are tentatively arriving at the messianic conclusion.
24. The Pharisees' response directly counters the crowds' messianic question. Unable to deny the miracle, they attribute its source to Beelzeboul, *archonti tōn daimoniōn* ('the ruler of the demons'). The accusation is the same as in 9:34 but now stated publicly and explicitly. This is the charge Jesus will identify as approaching the unforgivable sin.

25. Jesus again perceives unspoken thoughts (eidōs tas enthymēseis autōn). The argument is logical: internal division destroys any entity — kingdoms, cities, households. The verb erēmoutai ('is made desolate, is laid waste') is strong, suggesting complete devastation. The principle is applied to Satan's kingdom in the next verse.
26. The name Satanias is a Greek transliteration of the Hebrew satan ('adversary, accuser'). Jesus's logic: if his exorcisms were powered by Satan, then Satan would be working against his own interests — destroying his own agents. This is self-evidently absurd.
27. The second argument: Jewish exorcists also existed (cf. Acts 19:13-14). If Jesus's exorcisms require a satanic explanation, consistency demands the same explanation for their own practitioners. The phrase hoi huiōi hymōn ('your sons/people') refers to Jewish exorcists associated with the Pharisees' own circles. Jesus turns their accusation into a self-indictment.
28. This is one of the rare places Matthew uses 'kingdom of God' (basileia tou theou) instead of his usual 'kingdom of heaven.' The verb ephthasen ('has arrived, has come upon') indicates that the kingdom is not merely approaching but has already arrived — present tense, operative now. Jesus's exorcisms are evidence of the kingdom's invasion of enemy territory. The conditional 'if' (ei) is a first-class condition in Greek, assuming the premise is true: 'since I drive out demons by God's Spirit...'
29. The parable of the strong man depicts the cosmic conflict behind exorcism. The 'strong man' (ischyros) is Satan; his 'house' is his domain over the demonized; his 'possessions' (skeuē) are the people he holds captive. Jesus is the one who has bound the strong man and is now plundering his domain. The verb dēsē ('bind') anticipates the binding authority Jesus gives to the church (16:19, 18:18).
30. This absolute either/or allows no neutrality toward Jesus. The agricultural metaphor — gathering (synagōn) versus scattering (skorpizein) — depicts the harvest of 9:37-38. Those who do not join Jesus in gathering people into God's kingdom are actively dispersing them. The saying stands in tension with Mark 9:40 ('whoever is not against us is for us'), but the different contexts address different situations.
31. The opening scope is extraordinarily generous — pasa hamartia kai blasphēmia aphethēsetai ('every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven'). The single exception stands out starkly: blasphemy against the Spirit (hē tou pneumatōs blasphēmia). In context, this refers specifically to attributing the Holy Spirit's work to Satan — seeing the evidence of God's kingdom and deliberately calling it demonic. It is not an isolated sinful word but a settled posture of willful misidentification of good as evil.
32. The distinction between speaking against the Son of Man (forgivable) and speaking against the Spirit (unforgivable) is significant. Rejecting the human Jesus out of ignorance can be forgiven — Peter's denial was forgiven. But deliberately attributing the Spirit's unmistakable work to Satan represents a hardening beyond recovery, because it rejects the very agent of conviction and repentance. The phrase oute en toutō tō aiōni oute en tō mellonti ('neither in this age nor in the coming age') uses eschatological language that covers all of time.
33. The imperative poiēsate ('make') is not a command to produce fruit but a demand for consistency — if the fruit (Jesus's deeds) is good, then the tree (Jesus's source of power) must be good. You cannot call the fruit good (acknowledging the healings) and the tree bad (attributing them to Satan). The principle ek tou karpou to dendron ginōsketai ('by the fruit the tree is known') echoes 7:16-20.
34. The insult gennēmata echidnōn ('offspring of vipers') repeats John the Baptist's words (3:7), linking the Pharisees to the serpent imagery of Genesis 3. The principle ek tou perisseumatōs tēs kardias to stoma lalei ('out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks') grounds speech in character — words reveal the inner person. The Pharisees' blasphemous words expose a blasphemous heart.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The word thēsauroi ('treasure, storehouse') depicts the heart as a repository from which words and deeds are drawn. The verb ekballei ('brings out, throws out') is the same word used for casting out demons — what is stored inside inevitably comes out. The parallelism is absolute: good in, good out; evil in, evil out.
36. The adjective argon ('idle, careless, useless') comes from a-ergon ('without work, unproductive'). In context, the 'careless word' is not merely thoughtless chatter but words like the Pharisees' blasphemous accusation — speech that seems offhand but reveals the heart's true orientation. The phrase apodōsousin logon ('will give an account, will render a word') uses the language of legal reckoning.
37. The passive verbs dikaiōthēsē ('will be justified, acquitted') and katadikasthēsē ('will be condemned') are divine passives — God is the implied judge. Words serve as evidence because they reveal character. This does not contradict justification by faith but affirms that genuine faith produces certain kinds of speech while its absence produces others.
38. The request for a sēmeion ('sign') comes immediately after Jesus has just healed a blind and mute demoniac — they have seen signs. The demand is for a spectacular, undeniable cosmic sign that would prove his authority beyond dispute. The address didaskalos ('teacher') is polite but uncommitted.
39. The labels ponēra ('evil') and moichalis ('adulterous') are severe. 'Adulterous' uses the Old Testament prophetic metaphor of Israel as God's unfaithful spouse (Hosea, Ezekiel 16). The sign of Jonah is the only sign Jesus will offer — and it requires faith to interpret, not the kind of overwhelming proof the Pharisees demand.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
40. The Greek kētous ('sea creature, great fish') is more accurate than the KJV's 'whale' — the Hebrew in Jonah 1:17 uses dag gadol ('great fish') without specifying the species. The phrase en tē kardia tēs gēs ('in the heart of the earth') refers to the grave/death. The 'three days and three nights' follows Jewish inclusive reckoning where any part of a day counts as a full day — Friday afternoon, all of Saturday, and Sunday morning constitute 'three

days.'

40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jonah 1:17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The Ninevites — pagans, Assyrians, Israel's enemies — repented at Jonah's reluctant, minimal preaching. 'This generation' has received far greater revelation and refuses to repent. The neuter pleion ('something greater,' not 'someone greater') makes the claim even more comprehensive — not just a greater prophet but a greater reality is present.
42. The 'queen of the South' is the Queen of Sheba (1 Kings 10:1-13), who traveled a great distance to hear Solomon's wisdom. Again a Gentile figure condemns 'this generation.' The parallel structure — Ninevites/Jonah, queen/Solomon — presents Jesus as greater than Israel's greatest prophet and wisest king. The neuter pleion ('something greater') is repeated.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 10:1-13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The anhydrōn topōn ('waterless, dry places') reflects the ancient Near Eastern belief that demons inhabit desolate wilderness regions (cf. Isaiah 13:21, 34:14; Baruch 4:35). The demon seeks anapausin ('rest') — ironically, the same word Jesus offers to the weary in 11:28. The passage functions as a parable about spiritual vacancy.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 13:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. The demon calls the person 'my house' (ton oikon mou), claiming ownership. The three participles — scholazonta ('empty, unoccupied, idle'), sesarōmenon ('swept clean'), kekosmēmenon ('put in order, decorated') — describe a person who has been cleaned up but not filled with anything positive. Moral reformation without spiritual filling leaves one vulnerable to worse occupation.
45. The number seven (hepta) symbolizes completeness — the reinfestation is total and overwhelming. The phrase ta eschata cheirona tōn prōtōn ('the last things worse than the first') warns that spiritual emptiness invites greater evil than the original condition. The application to 'this evil generation' (tē genea tautē tē ponēra) transforms the parable from individual exorcism to national warning — Israel has received temporary cleansing through John's ministry and Jesus's healings but refuses to be filled with the kingdom's reality.
46. The phrase heistēkeisan exō ('stood outside') creates a spatial metaphor — family members are on the outside while the listening crowd is on the inside. The mention of adelphoi ('brothers') indicates Jesus had siblings (see 13:55 for their names). Their desire to 'speak to him' may reflect concern about his safety given the growing opposition (cf. Mark 3:21).
47. This verse is bracketed in the SBLGNT, indicating uncertainty about whether it was in the original text — some important manuscripts omit it. Without it, verse 48 follows directly from verse 46 and still makes sense. We include it as it appears in the majority of manuscripts and provides the natural link to Jesus's response.
48. The question is rhetorically shocking — it appears to disown his biological family. Jesus is not rejecting his mother and brothers but redefining the category of family itself. The question demands a new answer that transcends biological kinship.
49. The physical gesture — ekteinas tēn cheira ('stretching out his hand') — makes the redefinition visible and public. The disciples are identified as Jesus's true family. This creates a new kinship community based not on blood but on shared commitment to God's will.
50. The criterion for belonging to Jesus's family is doing the will of the Father (to thelēma tou patros mou) — the same standard from the Sermon on the Mount (7:21). The threefold 'brother and sister and mother' (adelphos kaiadelphē kai mētēr) is inclusive of all — notably, 'father' is omitted because that role belongs exclusively to God. This redefinition of family becomes foundational for the church's self-understanding.

13

Summary: *Matthew 13 is the third of Matthew's five major discourses — the Parable Discourse. Jesus teaches seven parables about the kingdom of heaven: the sower (with explanation), the wheat and tares (with explanation), the mustard seed, the leaven, the hidden treasure, the pearl of great price, and the dragnet. Interspersed is a discussion with the disciples about why Jesus speaks in parables, a citation of Isaiah 6:9-10 about hearing without understanding, and a quotation of Psalm 78:2. The chapter concludes with Jesus's rejection in his hometown of Nazareth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks a decisive shift in Jesus's teaching method — from this point, parables become his primary public teaching vehicle. The purpose of parables is paradoxical: they both reveal and conceal. To those with receptive hearts, they illuminate the kingdom's nature; to those with hardened hearts, they confirm blindness (vv. 11-15). The parable of the wheat and tares is unique to Matthew and addresses the coexistence of good and evil within the kingdom community until the final judgment. The series of short parables (mustard seed, leaven, treasure, pearl, net) each capture a different facet of the kingdom's nature.*

Translation Friction: The Isaiah 6:9-10 quotation (vv. 14-15) raises the question of whether parables are designed to prevent understanding. We render Jesus's words and Isaiah's text as given without resolving the tension. The Greek conjunction hina in verse 13 can mean 'in order that' (purpose) or 'so that' (result), and this ambiguity affects whether the concealment is intended or consequential. The identification of the 'field' as 'the world' (v. 38) rather than 'the church' has significant implications for interpreting the wheat and tares.

Connections: The sower parable connects to the harvest imagery of 9:37-38. The wheat and tares anticipates the separation at the final judgment (25:31-46). The mustard seed echoes Daniel 4's tree that shelters nations. The parables of treasure and pearl echo the wisdom tradition (Proverbs 2:4, 8:11). The Nazareth rejection connects to the broader theme of Israel's unresponsiveness (chs. 11-12). The scribe trained for the kingdom (v. 52) may be Matthew's self-description.

¹That same day Jesus went out of the house and sat beside the sea. ²Such large crowds gathered around him that he got into a boat and sat down, while the whole crowd stood on the shore. ³He told them many things in parables, saying: "A sower went out to sow. ⁴As he was sowing, some seed fell along the path, and the birds came and ate it up. ⁵Other seed fell on rocky ground where it did not have much soil. It sprang up quickly because the soil was shallow, ⁶When the sun was up, they were scorched. And on account of the fact that they had no root, they withered away. ⁷Other seed fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up and choked it. ⁸Still other seed fell on good soil and produced a crop — some a hundred times, some sixty, some thirty what was sown. ⁹Whoever has ears, let them hear." ¹⁰The disciples came and asked him, "Why do you speak to them in parables?" ¹¹He answered, "To you it has been given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it has not been given. ¹²For whoever has will be given more, and will have an abundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him. ¹³This is why I speak to them in parables: because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear or understand. ¹⁴In them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled, which says: 'You will hear and hear but never understand; you will look and look but never perceive. ¹⁵For this people's heart has grown dull, and with their ears they barely hear, and they have shut their eyes, so that they might not see with their eyes and hear with their ears and understand with their heart and turn — and I would heal them.' ¹⁶But blessed are your eyes because they see, and your ears because they hear. ¹⁷For truly I tell you, many prophets and righteous people longed to see what you see but did not see it, and to hear what you hear but did not hear it. ¹⁸Listen then to the parable of the sower. ¹⁹When anyone hears the word of the kingdom and does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is the seed sown along the path. ²⁰The seed sown on rocky ground is the person who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy, ²¹Indeed, yet has he not root in himself, but dureth for a while — for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the message, by and by he is offended. ²²The seed sown among the thorns is the person who hears the word, but the worries of this age and the deceitfulness of wealth choke the word, and it becomes unfruitful. ²³But the seed sown on good soil is the person who hears the word and understands it, who indeed bears fruit and produces — some a hundred, some sixty, some thirty times what was sown." ²⁴He put another parable before them: "The kingdom of heaven may be compared to a man who sowed good seed in his field. ²⁵But while everyone was sleeping, his enemy came and sowed weeds among the wheat, and went away. ²⁶When the plants sprouted and produced grain, then the weeds also appeared. ²⁷The owner's servants came and said to him, 'Master, didn't you sow good seed in your field? Where then did the weeds come from?' ²⁸He said to them, 'An enemy has done this.' The servants said to him, 'Then do you want us to go and pull them up?' ²⁹He said, 'No, because while gathering the weeds you might uproot the wheat along with them. ³⁰Let both grow together until the harvest. At harvest time I will tell the reapers: First collect the weeds and tie them in bundles to be burned, then gather the wheat into my barn.'" ³¹He put another parable before them: "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed that a man took and planted in his field. ³²It is the smallest of all seeds, but when it has grown it is the largest of garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the sky come and nest in its branches." ³³He told them another parable: "The kingdom of heaven is like leaven that a woman took and mixed into three measures of flour until all of it was leavened." ³⁴Jesus spoke all these things to the crowds in parables. He did not say anything to them without a parable, ³⁵Indeed, that it could be fulfilled which had been spoken by the prophet of old and stated, I will open my mouth in parables. I will utter things which have been kept

secret from the foundation of the world. ³⁶Then he left the crowds and went into the house. His disciples came to him, saying, "Explain to us the parable of the weeds in the field." ³⁷He answered, "The one who sows the good seed is the Son of Man. ³⁸The field is the world. The good seed — these are the sons of the kingdom. The weeds are the sons of the evil one. ³⁹The enemy who sowed them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are angels. ⁴⁰Just as the weeds are gathered and burned in the fire, so it will be at the end of the age. ⁴¹The Son of Man will send his angels, and they will collect out of his kingdom everything that causes sin and all who practice lawlessness, ⁴²Will cast them into a furnace of fire — there will be wailing and gnashing of teeth. ⁴³Then the righteous will shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Whoever has ears, let them hear. ⁴⁴"The kingdom of heaven is like treasure hidden in a field. When a man found it, he hid it again, and in his joy he went and sold everything he had and bought that field. ⁴⁵Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a merchant searching for fine pearls. ⁴⁶When he found one pearl of great value, he went and sold everything he had and bought it. ⁴⁷Again, heaven's kingdom is like to a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind. ⁴⁸When it was full, they pulled it up on the shore, sat down, and sorted the good fish into containers but threw the bad away. ⁴⁹So it will be at the end of the age. The angels will go out and separate the wicked from among the righteous ⁵⁰Will cast them into the furnace of fire — there will be wailing and gnashing of teeth. ⁵¹"Have you understood all these things?" They said to him, "Yes." ⁵²He said to them, "Therefore every scribe who has been trained for the kingdom of heaven is like the master of a household who brings out of his storeroom new things and old." ⁵³When Jesus had finished these parables, he left that place. ⁵⁴He came to his hometown and taught them in their synagogue, so that they were astonished and said, "Where did this man get this wisdom and these miraculous powers? ⁵⁵Isn't this the carpenter's son? Isn't his mother called Mary, and his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas? ⁵⁶And aren't all his sisters with us? Where then did this man get all these things?" ⁵⁷And they took offense at him. But Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor except in his hometown and in his own household." ⁵⁸And he did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *en tē hēmera ekeinē* ('on that day') links this discourse to the events of chapter 12. The movement from house to seaside establishes the public setting for parabolic teaching. The Sea of Galilee serves as a natural amphitheater.
2. The sitting position (*kathēsthai*) was the standard posture for teaching in the ancient world. The boat creates natural distance and acoustics. The crowd standing (*heistēkei*) on the shore while Jesus sits in the boat reverses the typical rabbi-student arrangement and creates a visual tableau.
3. The noun *parabolē* ('parable,' from *para* + *ballō*, 'to throw alongside') refers to a comparison or illustration that places a familiar image alongside a spiritual truth. The sower parable is the foundational parable — its interpretation governs how all subsequent parables are read. The phrase *ho speirōn* ('the sower') uses the article, suggesting a representative or well-known figure.
4. Palestinian farmers sowed by broadcasting seed across a field. The path (*para tēn hodon*) was the hard-packed pathway through or alongside the field where seed could not penetrate the soil. The birds (*ta peteina*) are identified as representing 'the evil one' in verse 19.
5. The *petrōdē* ('rocky ground') refers not to ground with scattered stones but to thin soil over a limestone shelf — common in the Galilean landscape. The rapid growth (*eutheōs exaneteilen*, 'immediately it sprang up') is not a sign of health but of shallow rooting. Without depth (*bathos gēs*, 'depth of earth'), the growth is superficial.
6. The sun that nurtures deep-rooted plants destroys shallow-rooted ones — the same external pressure produces opposite outcomes depending on root depth. The verb *exēranthē* ('withered, dried up') describes complete death, not temporary wilting.
7. The *akanthas* ('thorns, thistles') represent competing plants that were already present in the soil. The verb *epnixan* ('choked, strangled') is violent — the thorns suffocated the grain by stealing light, water, and nutrients. This soil type has potential for growth but competing forces prevent fruitfulness.
8. The good soil (*gēn tēn kalēn*) is distinguished by its fruitfulness. The yields — hundredfold, sixtyfold, thirtyfold — range from extraordinary to very good. In ancient Palestine, a tenfold return was considered good; even the lowest yield here (thirtyfold) far exceeds normal expectations. The descending order (100, 60, 30) may suggest that any productive response to the word, whatever the degree, represents good soil.
9. The refrain from 11:15 returns, signaling that the parable demands more than surface hearing. The plural *ōta* ('ears') may suggest that physical hearing is not the issue — spiritual perception is required.
10. The disciples' question *dia ti* ('why?') indicates that parabolic teaching is a new method. The pronoun *autois* ('to them') distinguishes the crowds from the disciples — the disciples receive private explanation while the crowds receive parables.

11. The divine passive *dedotai* ('it has been given') indicates that understanding is a gift from God, not an achievement of intellect. The word *mystēria* ('mysteries') does not mean 'puzzles' but 'revealed secrets' — truths about God's kingdom that have been hidden and are now being disclosed to the initiated. The distinction between 'you' (the disciples) and 'them' (the crowds) reflects the growing division in response to Jesus.
12. This saying appears paradoxical and even harsh. The 'having' in question is receptivity to the kingdom message — those who respond to what they have received will receive more understanding, while those who refuse to engage will lose even the initial exposure they had. The principle is spiritual, not economic: responsiveness to truth generates more truth; indifference leads to loss.
13. Matthew uses *hoti* ('because') where Mark 4:12 has *hina* ('in order that'), softening the purpose clause into a causal explanation. The parables are given because the people have already demonstrated their inability to perceive — the parables respond to existing spiritual blindness rather than causing it. The paradox of seeing-without-seeing and hearing-without-hearing describes willful incomprehension.
14. The verb *anaplēroutai* ('is being fulfilled') is present tense — the fulfillment is happening now, in this moment. The quotation from Isaiah 6:9-10 was originally spoken to Isaiah at his commissioning, describing the stubborn unresponsiveness of Israel. Matthew sees the same pattern repeating. The emphatic doubling — *akoē akousete* ('hearing you will hear'), *blepontes blepsete* ('seeing you will see') — stresses the thoroughness of the incomprehension.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 6:9-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *epachynthē* ('has grown fat, has become dull') describes a heart that has become insensitive through accumulated resistance. The Isaiah passage attributes the closure to the people themselves (*tous ophthalmous ekammysan*, 'they have shut their eyes') — this is self-inflicted blindness. The sequence — see, hear, understand, turn, be healed — represents the progression that has been blocked. The conditional 'I would heal them' (*iasomai autous*) reveals God's desire to heal, frustrated by human refusal.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 6:9-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. After the harsh words about the unresponsive crowds, Jesus turns to the disciples with a contrasting beatitude. Their seeing and hearing is a gift (cf. v. 11) — they are privileged witnesses to the kingdom's arrival.
17. The verb *epethymēsan* ('longed, desired earnestly') expresses intense, unfulfilled desire. The prophets and righteous people of Israel's history anticipated the messianic age but did not live to see it. The disciples are living in the era the entire Old Testament pointed toward — a privilege greater than they realize.
18. The imperative *akousate* ('listen, hear') is emphatic — you who have been given the gift of hearing, now use it. The phrase *tēn parabolēn tou speirantos* ('the parable of the one who sowed') identifies this as the interpretive key for the others.
19. The interpretation identifies the seed as *ton logon tēs basileias* ('the word of the kingdom') — the message about God's reign. The birds of verse 4 are identified as *ho ponēros* ('the evil one,' Satan). The failure is comprehension — *mē synientos* ('not understanding') — the word never takes root because it is never grasped. The verb *harpazei* ('snatches away') is violent, depicting active opposition.
20. The immediate, joyful response (*euthys meta charas lambanōn*, 'immediately with joy receiving') sounds positive but proves shallow. Quick enthusiasm without depth of commitment characterizes this soil type. The joy is genuine but superficial.
21. The phrase *ouk echei rhizan en heautō* ('has no root in himself') describes internal shallowness — the word has not penetrated deeply enough to sustain the person through difficulty. The word *proskairos* ('temporary, short-lived, lasting only for a season') contrasts with the enduring fruit of good soil. The verb *skandalizetai* ('is caused to stumble, falls away') — the stumbling block that trips this person is suffering, not temptation.
22. Two thorns are named: *hē merimna tou aiōnos* ('the worry/anxiety of this age') — the same worry Jesus addressed in 6:25-34 — and *hē apatē tou ploutou* ('the deceitfulness of wealth'). The word *apatē* ('deceit, seduction') treats wealth as an active deceiver, not a passive possession. The result is *akarpōs* ('unfruitful') — the word survives but produces nothing.
23. The distinguishing mark of good soil is *synieis* ('understanding') — the word that was absent from the path soil (v. 19). Hearing plus understanding equals fruitfulness. The verb *karpophorei* ('bears fruit') is the goal of the entire parable. The varying yields (100, 60, 30) allow for different degrees of fruitfulness without disqualifying any productive response.
24. The formula *hōmoiōthē hē basileia tōn ouranōn* ('the kingdom of heaven has become like') introduces the comparison. This parable is unique to Matthew. The 'good seed' (*kalon sperma*) and 'his field' (*en tō agrō autou*) establish the owner's rightful possession and proper action.
25. The *zizania* ('weeds') is commonly identified as darnel (*Lolium temulentum*), a weed that closely resembles wheat in its early growth stages and cannot be distinguished until the grain heads form. Deliberately sowing darnel in an enemy's field was a known act of sabotage in the ancient world, serious enough to be addressed in Roman law. The enemy acts secretly (*en tō katheudein*, 'while sleeping') and departs (*apēlthen*) — evil often works covertly.
26. The weeds become visible only when the grain appears — at the earlier stages, wheat and darnel are indistinguishable. The word *ephanē* ('appeared, became visible') marks the moment of revelation.
27. The servants' question addresses the problem of evil in miniature: if the owner sowed good seed, where did the weeds come from? The word *pothen* ('from where?') asks about origin — the question humanity has always asked about the presence of evil in God's good creation.

- 28.** The master's answer *echthros anthrōpos* ('an enemy person, a hostile man') identifies the source simply and directly. The servants' eagerness to remove the weeds immediately (*syllēxōmen*, 'shall we gather/collect them?') represents the human impulse to purge evil from the community immediately and completely.
- 29.** The master's refusal is practical — dandelion roots intertwine with wheat roots, making selective removal impossible without destroying good plants. The theological implication: premature judgment of the community risks destroying genuine believers. The verb *ekrizōsēte* ('might uproot') describes tearing out by the roots — total destruction.
- 30.** The command *aphete synauxanesthai* ('let them grow together') requires patience — coexistence of good and evil within the kingdom community until God's appointed time. The *therismos* ('harvest') is the final judgment (v. 39). The order is significant: weeds are gathered first for burning, then wheat is gathered into the barn. The barn (*apothēkēn*) represents the final secure dwelling of the righteous.
- 31.** The *kokkō sinapeōs* ('mustard seed,' from the plant *Sinapis nigra* or *Brassica nigra*) was proverbially the smallest seed known in Palestine. Jesus uses the smallest to illustrate the kingdom's beginnings. The kingdom starts imperceptibly small.
- 32.** The contrast between *mikroteron pantōn tōn spermatōn* ('smallest of all seeds') and *meizon tōn lachanōn* ('largest of garden plants') captures the kingdom's trajectory from insignificant beginning to impressive result. The mustard plant can grow to 8-10 feet. The image of birds nesting in branches echoes Daniel 4:12 (Nebuchadnezzar's tree) and Ezekiel 17:23, 31:6, where a great tree sheltering birds symbolizes a kingdom that provides refuge for all nations.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 4:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 17:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** Leaven (*zymē*) is usually a negative symbol in Jewish tradition (cf. 16:6, 'leaven of the Pharisees'), making its positive use here surprising. The verb *enekrypsen* ('hid, concealed') emphasizes the invisible nature of the kingdom's working. Three measures (*sata tria*) of flour is an enormous quantity — approximately 50 pounds, enough to feed over 100 people. This echoes the amount Sarah prepared for the three visitors in Genesis 18:6 (three seahs). The point: a tiny amount of leaven transforms a massive quantity of dough.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 18:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The statement *chōris parabolēs ouden elalei autois* ('without a parable he said nothing to them') applies to this occasion and phase of ministry, not to Jesus's entire teaching career — he taught directly in the Sermon on the Mount (chs. 5-7). The shift to exclusively parabolic public teaching marks a new phase.
- 35.** The quotation is from Psalm 78:2, attributed to 'the prophet' (some manuscripts add 'Isaiah,' but the SBLGNT does not). The psalmist Asaph speaks of recounting Israel's history as parables. Matthew applies this to Jesus's parabolic teaching as revealing *kekrymmena apo katabolēs kosmou* ('things hidden since the foundation/creation of the world') — the kingdom truths that have been concealed in God's plan since creation itself.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 78:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The shift from public seaside teaching to private house instruction mirrors the pattern of the sower parable. The verb *diasaphēsōn* ('explain clearly, make plain') indicates the disciples cannot interpret the wheat-and-weeds parable without help.
- 37.** The allegorical interpretation begins with a series of identifications. The sower is the Son of Man — Jesus himself. This makes the parable autobiographical: Jesus is the one planting good seed in the world.
- 38.** The identification *ho agros estin ho kosmos* ('the field is the world') is significant — the field is not the church but the world. This means the coexistence of wheat and weeds is a reality of the world at large, not merely a problem within the church community. The 'sons of the kingdom' (*huiōi tēs basileias*) and 'sons of the evil one' (*huiōi tou ponērou*) live intermixed in the same world until the harvest.
- 39.** The enemy is identified as *ho diabolos* ('the devil,' literally 'the slanderer/accuser'). The harvest is the *synteleia aiōnos* ('completion/culmination of the age') — not the 'end of the world' (KJV) but the conclusion of the present age that gives way to the age to come. The reapers are angels, not humans — the final sorting is God's work through his heavenly agents.
- 40.** The analogy moves from agricultural practice (burning weeds) to eschatological reality. The verb *katakaietai* ('is burned up') describes complete destruction. The phrase *en tē synteleia tou aiōnos* ('at the completion of the age') repeats from verse 39.
- 41.** The Son of Man sends 'his angels' (*tous aggelous autou*) — a claim to authority over the heavenly host that belongs to God alone. They collect *ta skandala* ('stumbling blocks, things that cause sin') and *tous poiountas tēn anomian* ('those who practice lawlessness'). The word *anomia* ('lawlessness') is a key Matthean term (7:23, 23:28, 24:12) describing not ignorance of the law but willful disregard for God's will.
- 42.** The *kaminon tou pyros* ('furnace of fire') echoes Daniel 3, where the three young men were thrown into a furnace. The phrase *ho klauthmos kai ho brygmōs tōn odontōn* ('weeping and gnashing of teeth') recurs from 8:12 and appears again in 13:50, 22:13, 24:51, 25:30.
- 42.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

43. The promise eklamphousin hōs ho hēlios ('will shine forth like the sun') echoes Daniel 12:3 ('those who are wise will shine like the brightness of the sky'). The image of luminous glorification describes the final state of the righteous. The phrase tē basileia tou patros autōn ('the kingdom of their Father') is warm and familial. The 'ears to hear' refrain appears for the third time in this chapter.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 12:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Burying valuables in fields was common in the ancient world as a form of protection (no banks existed for ordinary people). The man's response is driven by joy (apo tēs charas, 'from the joy'), not grim duty — discovering the kingdom is exhilarating. He sells panta hosa echei ('everything he has') — total investment. The ethics of concealing the treasure before purchasing the field troubled later interpreters, but the parable's point is the kingdom's incomparable worth, not the man's business practices.
45. The emporō ('merchant, wholesaler') is a professional dealer, not a casual buyer — he is actively seeking (zētounti) quality merchandise. This contrasts with the man in verse 44 who stumbled upon treasure. Both responses to the kingdom are valid: some encounter it unexpectedly, others find it through dedicated seeking.
46. The hena polytimon margaritēn ('one pearl of great value') is singular — one incomparable item that renders all other possessions secondary. Pearls were the most valuable commodity in the ancient world, sometimes worth more than their weight in gold. The merchant's response mirrors the treasure-finder's: total divestiture for a single incomparable possession. The kingdom is worth everything.
47. The sagēnē ('dragnet') was a large net drawn between two boats or pulled from shore, capturing everything in its path indiscriminately. The phrase ek pantos genous ('of every kind') emphasizes the indiscriminate character of the catch. This parable is thematically parallel to the wheat and tares — the kingdom community contains a mixture that will be sorted at the end.
48. The sorting process (kathisantes synelexan, 'sitting down they collected') is careful and deliberate, not hasty. The adjective sapra ('bad, rotten, worthless') is the same word used for 'bad' trees and fruit in 7:17-18. The good fish go into containers (aggē, 'vessels'); the bad are discarded. The scene would be familiar to the Galilean fishermen among Jesus's disciples.
49. The interpretation closely parallels the wheat-and-tares explanation. The verb aphorizontin ('will separate, set apart') is the same root as 'Pharisee' (pharisaioi, 'separated one') — an irony perhaps intentional. The final separation is done by angels (as in v. 41), not by humans.
50. This verse repeats verse 42 nearly verbatim, creating an inclusio around the kingdom parables. The repetition of the judgment warning frames the entire parable discourse with eschatological seriousness.
51. The verb synēkate ('have you understood?') echoes the key word from the sower parable — understanding (synieis) is what distinguishes good soil from the path. The disciples' affirmative nai ('yes') claims comprehension. Whether they truly understand remains to be tested. The SBLGNT does not include kyrie ('Lord') after 'Yes,' which appears in some manuscripts.
52. The grammateus mathēteutheis ('scribe made a disciple, scribe trained') is a striking image — a Torah expert who has become a student of the kingdom. Many scholars see this as Matthew's self-description — a Jewish scribe who has become a disciple of Jesus. The storeroom (thēsauroi) contains both kaina kai palaia ('new things and old'), suggesting that the kingdom-trained scribe values both the old Scriptures and the new revelation in Jesus, drawing on both treasuries.
53. The formula kai egeneto hote etelezen ('and it happened when he finished') marks the end of the third discourse, paralleling 7:28, 11:1, 19:1, and 26:1.
54. The patrida ('hometown, fatherland') is Nazareth (cf. 2:23). The verb eklētesthai ('to be astounded, struck with amazement') is strong but leads to rejection rather than faith. The question pothen toutō ('where did this man get...?') focuses on the source of his authority — they know his background and cannot reconcile it with his present power.
55. The designation ho tou tektonos huios ('the carpenter's son') identifies Jesus by his father's trade. The Greek tektōn ('builder, craftsman') could refer to a woodworker, stoneworker, or general builder. Matthew names four brothers — Iakōbos, Iōsēph, Simōn, Ioudas — and verse 56 mentions sisters. The people's familiarity with his family becomes the basis for their rejection: they think they know everything about him.
56. The repeated pothen ('where from?') frames their inability to reconcile Jesus's extraordinary authority with his ordinary origins. The word pasai ('all') and the phrase pros hēmas ('with us, among us') emphasize that Jesus's family is local, known, and unremarkable. Familiarity breeds contempt.
57. The verb eskandalizōnto ('were offended, were caused to stumble') echoes the blessed/offended contrast of 11:6. Jesus responds with a proverbial saying about prophetic rejection at home — a pattern seen in Elijah, Jeremiah, and most prophets. The word atimos ('without honor, dishonored') is the opposite of the honor-shame dynamic that governed ancient Near Eastern social life.
58. The statement that Jesus ouk epoiēsen dynameis pollas ('did not do many mighty works') is remarkable — it does not say he could not but that he did not. The reason is dia tēn apistia autōn ('because of their unbelief'). Faith is presented as the environment in which Jesus's power operates, and unbelief (apistia) creates an environment that restricts it. Mark 6:5 says more boldly 'he could not do any mighty work there'; Matthew softens slightly to 'did not do many.'

14

Summary: *Matthew 14 opens with Herod Antipas hearing reports about Jesus and fearing that John the Baptist has risen from the dead. This triggers a flashback to John's execution: Herod had imprisoned John for condemning his marriage to Herodias, his brother's wife, and was manipulated into beheading John through Herodias's daughter's dance and request. Upon hearing the news, Jesus withdraws by boat to a deserted place, but crowds follow on foot. Moved by compassion, he heals their sick and feeds five thousand men (plus women and children) with five loaves and two fish. That night, Jesus walks on the sea to reach his disciples' storm-tossed boat. Peter attempts to walk on water but sinks when he becomes afraid. The chapter closes with healings in Gennesaret.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The feeding of the five thousand is the only miracle (besides the resurrection) recorded in all four Gospels, underscoring its centrality. The language of 'took, blessed, broke, gave' (v. 19) anticipates the Last Supper (26:26). Jesus walking on the sea echoes God's sovereignty over chaotic waters (Job 9:8, Psalm 77:19). Peter's water-walking attempt — unique to Matthew — dramatizes the relationship between faith and fear. Jesus's self-identification *egō eimi* ('it is I' / 'I AM') in verse 27 may carry the resonance of the divine name.*

Translation Friction: *The feeding miracle raises questions about the nature of the multiplication — whether it was instantaneous or progressive, visible or hidden. We render the text as given without speculating on mechanism. The number 'five thousand men' (andres) plus 'women and children' (v. 21) could put the total crowd at 15,000-20,000. Herodias's daughter is not named in Matthew (Josephus identifies her as Salome). The chronological relationship between John's death and Jesus's withdrawal is compressed in the narrative.*

Connections: *The feeding echoes Elisha feeding a hundred with twenty loaves (2 Kings 4:42-44) and Moses providing manna in the wilderness (Exodus 16). The sea-walking echoes God's mastery over the sea in the exodus (Exodus 14) and the psalms (Psalm 77:19). Peter's cry 'Lord, save me' (v. 30) echoes the disciples' cry in the earlier storm (8:25). The twelve baskets of leftovers (v. 20) may symbolize the twelve tribes of Israel — God's provision is more than sufficient for his people.*

¹At that time Herod the tetrarch heard the reports about Jesus ²Stated to his attendants, This is John the Baptist. He is returned to life from the no longer alive. And therefore mighty works do shew forth themselves in him. ³For Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison because of Herodias, his brother Philip's wife, ⁴For John stated to him, It is not lawful for you to have her. ⁵Although Herod wanted to kill him, he feared the crowd because they regarded John as a prophet. ⁶But when Herod's birthday celebration came, the daughter of Herodias danced before the guests and pleased Herod, ⁷Whereupon he swore with an oath to provide her whatsoever she would ask. ⁸Prompted by her mother, she said, "Give me the head of John the Baptist here on a platter." ⁹The king was distressed, but because of his oaths and his dinner guests, he commanded it to be given to her. ¹⁰He sent and had John beheaded in the prison. ¹¹His head was brought on a platter and given to the girl, and she brought it to her mother. ¹²John's disciples came, took the body, and buried it. Then they went and told Jesus. ¹³When Jesus heard this, he withdrew from there by boat to a deserted place by himself. But when the crowds heard about it, they followed him on foot from the towns. ¹⁴When he went ashore, he saw a large crowd, and he had compassion on them and healed their sick. ¹⁵When evening came, the disciples approached him and said, "This is a remote place and the hour is already late. Send the crowds away so they can go to the villages and buy food for themselves." ¹⁶But Jesus said to them, "They do not need to go away. You give them something to eat." ¹⁷They said to him, "We have nothing here except five loaves and two fish." ¹⁸He said, "Bring them here to me." ¹⁹He directed the crowds to sit down on the grass. Then he took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven, he blessed them and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowds. ²⁰They all ate and were satisfied. The disciples picked up twelve baskets full of broken pieces left over. ²¹Those who ate were about five thousand men, besides women and children. ²²Immediately Jesus made the disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, while he dismissed the crowds. ²³After dismissing the crowds, he went up on the mountain by himself to pray. When evening came, he was there

alone. ²⁴By this time the boat was many stadia from land, battered by the waves, because the wind was against them. ²⁵In the fourth watch of the night, he came to them, walking on the sea. ²⁶When the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were terrified, saying, "It is a ghost!" And they cried out in fear. ²⁷But immediately Jesus spoke to them, saying, "Take courage! It is I. Do not be afraid." ²⁸Peter answered him, "Lord, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." ²⁹He said, "Come." So Peter got out of the boat, walked on the water, and came toward Jesus. ³⁰But when he saw the strong wind, he was afraid, and beginning to sink, he cried out, "Lord, save me!" ³¹Immediately Jesus reached out his hand and caught him, saying to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?" ³²When they climbed into the boat, the wind stopped. ³³Those in the boat worshipped him, saying, "Truly you are the Son of God." ³⁴When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret. ³⁵When the people of that place recognized him, they sent word throughout the surrounding region. People brought to him all who were sick ³⁶Besought him that they might only touch the hem of his garment — and as numerous as touched were appointed perfectly whole.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Herod here is Herod Antipas, son of Herod the Great, who ruled Galilee and Perea as tetrarch (tetraarchēs, 'ruler of a fourth') from 4 BC to AD 39. He is not a king, though Mark 6:14 loosely calls him one. The noun akoēn ('report, what is heard, fame') indicates that Jesus's reputation has reached the political establishment.
2. Herod's conclusion reveals a guilty conscience — he leaps to the supernatural explanation that John has been raised (ēgerthē, the same verb used for Jesus's resurrection). The phrase hai dynamis energousin en autō ('the powers are at work in him') suggests Herod believes that death and resurrection have given John supernatural abilities he did not have before. The paidin autou ('his servants') are court attendants.
3. Matthew now explains Herod's guilt through a flashback. Herodias had been married to Herod's half-brother Philip (not the tetrarch Philip of Luke 3:1 but another son of Herod the Great). The sequence kratēsas... edēsen... apetheto ('having seized... bound... put away') describes a forcible, deliberate imprisonment. According to Josephus (Antiquities 18.5.2), John was imprisoned at the fortress of Machaerus east of the Dead Sea.
4. The imperfect tense elegen ('was saying, kept saying') indicates repeated confrontation — John did not make this accusation once but persistently. The prohibition is based on Leviticus 18:16 and 20:21, which forbid marriage to a brother's wife while the brother is alive. John spoke truth to power at the cost of his freedom and ultimately his life.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 18:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Herod's desire to kill (thelōn apokteinai) is restrained only by political calculation — fear of the crowd (ephobēthē ton ochlon), not moral scruple. The people's recognition of John as a prophet provides temporary protection. Mark 6:20 presents a more complex picture where Herod 'feared John' and 'heard him gladly'; Matthew simplifies the motivation to murderous intent.
6. The genesiois ('birthday celebration') was a banquet with court officials, military commanders, and leading citizens (cf. Mark 6:21). The daughter of Herodias (identified by Josephus as Salome) danced en tō mesō ('in the midst'), meaning before the assembled company. That a princess of the Herodian house would dance publicly before male banqueters was considered scandalous in Jewish culture. The verb ēresen ('pleased') has undertones left unstated.
7. The phrase meth' horkou hōmologēsen ('he promised with an oath') binds Herod with a vow — the same kind of rash oath that entrapped Jephthah (Judges 11:30-40). Jesus has just taught against swearing oaths in the Sermon on the Mount (5:33-37). Herod's oath creates the trap that Herodias will exploit.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Judges 11:30-40. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The participle probibistheisa ('having been prompted, coached, put forward') reveals that Herodias is the architect of the request — the daughter is her instrument. The demand for the head epi pinaki ('on a platter/dish') transforms the banquet setting into a scene of horror — a serving dish meant for food will carry a human head. The word hōde ('here') means immediately, at this banquet.
9. Matthew calls Herod basileus ('king') here, though technically he was only a tetrarch — the title may reflect popular usage or may be ironic. The verb lypētheis ('was grieved, distressed') suggests genuine discomfort, but Herod's concern for public face before his guests (tous synanakeimenous, 'those reclining at table with him') overrides his reluctance. The plural 'oaths' (horkous) may indicate he had repeated the promise.
10. The verb apekephalisen ('beheaded') is stark and without elaboration. The execution happens en tē phylakē ('in the prison'), away from the banquet — Herod does not watch. The brevity of the account contrasts with the elaborate setup, emphasizing the swiftness and finality of the act.
11. The passive ēnechthē ('was brought') maintains the impersonal horror. The chain of delivery — platter to girl, girl to mother — completes Herodias's plan. The word korasiō ('girl, young woman') emphasizes the daughter's youth, making the scene more disturbing. Herodias is the ultimate recipient, achieving through manipulation what Herod had been restrained from doing.

12. John's disciples perform the final act of devotion — burial of the ptōma ('corpse, body'). Their report to Jesus (apēggeilan tō Iēsou) connects the two movements: John's work is finished, and Jesus's intensifies. The narrative implies that John's fate foreshadows Jesus's own.
13. Jesus's withdrawal (anechōrēsen) upon hearing of John's death reflects grief and possibly a sense that his own time is drawing closer. The erēmōn topon ('deserted, isolated place') seeks solitude. The crowds' persistence (ēkolouthēsan... pezē, 'followed on foot') demonstrates their determination — they walked around the lake to reach him. Jesus's desire for solitude is overridden by the needs of the people.
14. The verb esplanchnisthē ('was moved with compassion') is the same visceral word used in 9:36 — a gut-level response to human need that overrides his own grief and desire for solitude. Despite the loss of John and the threat to his own life, Jesus's response to the crowd is not frustration but compassion. He heals tous arrōstous ('the sick, the infirm').
15. The disciples' concern is practical — a large crowd in an isolated area (erēmos topos) with no food as evening approaches. Their solution is dispersal — send them away (apolyson) to fend for themselves. The verb agorasōsin ('might buy') assumes normal economic mechanisms. Jesus will offer a different solution.
16. The emphatic pronoun hymeis ('you yourselves') shifts responsibility to the disciples. The command dote autois hymeis phagein ('you — give them to eat') echoes Elisha's instruction in 2 Kings 4:42-44. The impossibility of the task from a human perspective is the entire point — it requires divine intervention.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 4:42-44. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The disciples' report emphasizes scarcity — ouk echomen ('we do not have') except five loaves (artous, flat bread rounds) and two fish (ichthyas). These were likely small barley loaves and dried fish, a common meal for the poor. The disparity between the tiny provision and the massive need is the setup for the miracle.
18. Jesus's request is simple — pherete moi ('bring them to me'). He does not dismiss the inadequacy of the provision but asks for what is available. The principle: offer what you have to Jesus, however insufficient it seems.
19. The four verbs — labōn ('took'), eulogēsēn ('blessed'), klasas ('broke'), edōken ('gave') — form a sequence that will be repeated at the Last Supper (26:26). This eucharistic pattern (take, bless, break, give) shapes early Christian understanding of both miracles and the Lord's Supper. Looking up to heaven (anablepsas eis ton ouranon) signals prayer and divine dependence. The disciples serve as intermediaries — Jesus gives to them, and they distribute to the crowds.
20. The verb echortasthēsan ('were satisfied, were filled') denotes complete satiation, not mere nibbling. The twelve baskets (dōdeka kophinous) of leftovers exceed the original provision — there is more remaining than there was at the start. The kophinos was a wicker basket particularly associated with Jewish travelers. The number twelve likely symbolizes the twelve tribes of Israel — God provides abundantly for his whole people.
21. The count of pentakischilioi andres ('five thousand men/males') follows ancient convention of counting adult males. The addition chōris gynaikōn kai paidiōn ('apart from women and children') indicates the total number was significantly larger. This specification is unique to Matthew among the Synoptics and emphasizes the magnitude of the miracle.
22. The verb ēnagkασen ('compelled, forced, constrained') is unusually strong — Jesus does not suggest but insists that the disciples leave immediately. The urgency may relate to John 6:15, which reports that the crowd wanted to make Jesus king by force after the feeding. Jesus separates the disciples from the politically charged crowd and sends them across the lake.
23. Jesus finally achieves the solitude he sought in verse 13 — but now for prayer rather than rest. The mountain (to oros) connects to the Old Testament pattern of encountering God on mountains (Sinai, Horeb, Carmel). The phrase monos ēn ekei ('he was alone there') creates the setting for the sea-walking miracle — Jesus is on the mountain, the disciples are on the sea, and both are in darkness.
24. The SBLGNT reads stadios pollous ('many stadia') where some manuscripts have 'in the middle of the sea.' A stadion was approximately 600 feet (185 meters). The participle basanizomenon ('being tortured, battered') is intense — the same word used for human torment (8:6, 29). The wind is enantios ('contrary, opposing'), creating a situation of exhausting, fruitless rowing through the night.
25. The fourth watch (tetartē phylakē) was the Roman time division for 3:00-6:00 AM — the darkest, most exhausting hour of the night. The disciples have been struggling since evening. The phrase peripatōn epi tēn thalassan ('walking on the sea') echoes Job 9:8 (LXX), where God alone 'walks on the waves of the sea.' Jesus does what only God does.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Job 9:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The verb etarachthēsan ('were troubled, were agitated, were terrified') describes deep inner disturbance. The word phantasma ('ghost, apparition, phantom') reflects their inability to process what they are seeing — a human figure walking on water in the dark of night. Their cry (ekraxan) is a scream of terror, not a call for help.
27. Jesus responds euthys ('immediately') to their fear. The phrase egō eimi ('I am' / 'it is I') operates on two levels: a simple identification ('it's me, not a ghost') and a possible echo of God's self-revelation in Exodus 3:14 (egō eimi ho ōn, 'I AM WHO I AM') and Isaiah 43:10 ('I am he'). The command mē phobeisthe ('do not be afraid') is the characteristic divine greeting in theophanies throughout the Old Testament.

- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 43:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** This exchange is unique to Matthew and reveals Peter's character — impulsive faith that acts on what Jesus says. The conditional *ei sy ei* ('if it is you') is not doubt but a test: if Jesus commands and Peter can do it, then the identification is confirmed. The verb *keleuson* ('command') recognizes that Peter cannot walk on water on his own initiative — it requires Jesus's authoritative word.
- 29.** Jesus's one-word command *elthe* ('come') is sufficient. Peter obeys — he climbs out of the boat (*katabas*, 'having come down') and walks on the water (*periepatēsen epi ta hydata*). For a brief time, Peter does the impossible because Jesus commanded it and he obeyed. The phrase *ēlthen pros ton Iēsoun* ('came toward Jesus') shows that the miracle works as long as Peter's focus is on Jesus.
- 30.** The shift is dramatic: *blepōn ton anemon* ('seeing the wind') — Peter's attention moves from Jesus to the storm. Fear replaces faith, and he immediately begins to sink (*katapontizesthai*, 'to be drowned, to sink into the deep'). His cry *kyrie sōson me* ('Lord, save me') is the shortest prayer in the Gospels and echoes the disciples' cry in 8:25. The word *sōson* ('save') again carries both physical and theological weight.
- 31.** Jesus's response is immediate (*eutheōs*) — he does not let Peter drown. The verb *epelabeto* ('seized, caught hold of') describes a firm rescue grip. The address *oligopiste* ('you of little faith') — singular here, applied directly to Peter — is the same word used in 8:26 (plural, to all the disciples). The verb *edistasas* ('doubted, wavered') appears only here and in 28:17 in the New Testament. Peter's faith was real enough to get him out of the boat but insufficient to sustain him through the storm.
- 32.** The wind ceases (*ekopasen*, 'died down, became weary') the moment Jesus and Peter enter the boat — the connection between his presence and the cessation of the storm is implicit. The verb *kopazo* means literally 'to grow weary, to abate,' as if the wind exhausted itself.
- 33.** The verb *prosekynēsan* ('worshipped') here moves beyond the ambiguity of earlier uses (8:2, 9:18) — after witnessing Jesus walk on water and command the wind, the response is worship. The confession *alēthōs theou huios ei* ('truly you are God's Son') is the first time the disciples as a group make this declaration in Matthew. It anticipates Peter's confession at Caesarea Philippi (16:16). The absence of the article before *theou huios* could mean 'a son of God' or 'the Son of God'; in context, the definite reading is more appropriate.
- 34.** Gennesaret (Gennēsaret) was a fertile plain on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee, south of Capernaum. The name is related to Kinneret/Chinnereth (Numbers 34:11), the ancient name for the lake itself.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 34:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The verb *epignontes* ('having recognized') suggests Jesus was already known in this area from previous visits. The rapid communication network (*apesteilan eis holēn tēn perichōron*, 'sent into the whole surrounding region') demonstrates the organized response that Jesus's reputation generated.
- 36.** The request to touch *tou kraspedou tou himatiou* ('the fringe/tassel of his cloak') echoes the hemorrhaging woman's action in 9:20. Word of her healing has clearly spread, generating faith that even touching his garment is sufficient. The verb *diesōthēsan* ('were completely healed, were saved through') is a strengthened form of *sōzō* — total restoration, with no partial or failed healings. The chapter ends on a note of abundant, accessible healing power.

15

Summary: *Matthew 15 opens with a confrontation between Jesus and the Pharisees over ritual purity and human tradition versus divine commandment. Jesus declares that defilement comes from within, not from unwashed hands. He then withdraws to the region of Tyre and Sidon, where a Canaanite woman persistently begs for her daughter's healing — a tense exchange that ends with Jesus commending her great faith. The chapter closes with Jesus healing many on a mountainside by the Sea of Galilee and feeding four thousand men (plus women and children) with seven loaves and a few fish.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Canaanite woman episode is one of the most theologically striking passages in Matthew. Jesus initially seems to refuse her, using the metaphor of children's bread and dogs — yet the woman's witty reply ('even the dogs eat the crumbs that fall from their masters' table') draws from Jesus one of his strongest commendations of faith in the entire Gospel. This Gentile woman succeeds where Israel's leaders have failed. The feeding of the four thousand parallels the feeding of the five thousand (chapter 14) but occurs in predominantly Gentile territory, suggesting the extension of Israel's blessings to the nations.*

Translation Friction: Jesus's statement about being 'sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel' (v. 24) and the 'dogs' metaphor (v. 26) are difficult for modern readers. We render the Greek faithfully without softening the language. The word kynarion ('little dog, house dog') is a diminutive, but its force remains dismissive. The passage's resolution — healing given on the basis of faith — reframes the entire exchange. The discourse on defilement (vv. 10-20) contains a parenthetical observation that effectively abolishes kosher food laws, though Matthew is less explicit about this than Mark 7:19.

Connections: The handwashing controversy connects to Exodus 30:19-21 and the Pharisaic expansion of priestly purity rules to all Jews. Jesus quotes Isaiah 29:13 (lip-service vs. heart-worship) and cites the fifth commandment (Exodus 20:12) and its penalty (Exodus 21:17). The Canaanite woman evokes Old Testament encounters with Gentiles (1 Kings 17, Elijah and the widow of Zarephath). The feeding of four thousand parallels 2 Kings 4:42-44 (Elisha feeding one hundred) and the manna narrative of Exodus 16.

¹Then Pharisees and scribes came to Jesus from Jerusalem, saying, ²"Why do your disciples break the tradition of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat." ³He answered them, "And why do you break the commandment of God for the sake of your tradition? ⁴For God said, 'Honor your father and mother,' and, 'Whoever speaks evil of father or mother must be put to death.' ⁵But you say, 'Whoever tells his father or mother, "Whatever you might have received from me is a gift to God" — ⁶Honour not his Parent or his parent, he will be free. Thus possess you fashioned the commandment of God of none effect by your tradition. ⁷Hypocrites! Isaiah prophesied rightly about you when he said: ⁸"This people honors me with their lips, but their heart is far from me. ⁹They worship me in vain, teaching as doctrines the commandments of people." ¹⁰Then he called the crowd to him and said, "Listen and understand: ¹¹It is not what goes into the mouth that defiles a person, but what comes out of the mouth — this defiles a person." ¹²Then the disciples came and said to him, "Do you know that the Pharisees took offense when they heard what you said?" ¹³He answered, "Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be uprooted. ¹⁴Leave them alone. They are blind guides of the blind. And if a blind person guides a blind person, both will fall into a pit." ¹⁵Peter responded and said to him, "Explain this parable to us." ¹⁶Jesus said, "Are you still without understanding? ¹⁷Do you not understand that everything that enters the mouth passes into the stomach and is expelled into the latrine? ¹⁸But what comes out of the mouth proceeds from the heart, and that is what defiles a person. ¹⁹For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false testimony, and slander. ²⁰These are the things that defile a person. But eating with unwashed hands does not defile a person." ²¹Jesus left that place and withdrew to the region of Tyre and Sidon. ²²And a Canaanite woman from that region came out and kept crying, "Have mercy on me, Lord, Son of David! My daughter is severely tormented by a demon." ²³But he did not answer her a word. His disciples came and urged him, "Send her away, because she keeps crying out after us." ²⁴He answered, "I was sent only to the lost sheep of the house of Israel." ²⁵But she came and knelt before him, saying, "Lord, help me." ²⁶He answered, "It is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs." ²⁷She said, "Yes, Lord, yet even the dogs eat the crumbs that fall from their masters' table." ²⁸Then Jesus answered her, "Woman, your faith is great! Let it be done for you as you desire." And her daughter was healed from that moment. ²⁹Jesus moved on from there and went along the Sea of Galilee. He went up on the mountain and sat down there. ³⁰Large crowds came to him, bringing with them the lame, blind, crippled, mute, and many others, and they placed them at his feet, and he healed them. ³¹The crowd was amazed when they saw the mute speaking, the crippled made whole, the lame walking, and the blind seeing. And they glorified the God of Israel. ³²Jesus called his disciples to him and said, "I have compassion on the crowd, because they have been staying with me for three days now and have nothing to eat. I do not want to send them away hungry; they might collapse on the way." ³³The disciples said to him, "Where could we get enough bread in this desolate place to feed such a large crowd?" ³⁴Jesus asked them, "How many loaves do you have?" They said, "Seven, and a few small fish." ³⁵He directed the crowd to sit down on the ground. ³⁶He took the seven loaves and the fish, and after giving thanks, he broke them and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowds. ³⁷They all ate and were satisfied, and they picked up seven large baskets full of the leftover pieces. ³⁸Those who ate were four thousand men, not counting women and children. ³⁹After sending the crowds away, he got into the boat and went to the region of Magadan.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The detail 'from Jerusalem' (apo Hierosolymon) signals that this is an official delegation, not local Galilean opponents. Jerusalem was the center of religious authority, and their journey north to confront Jesus implies a deliberate investigation.
2. The 'tradition of the elders' (paradosis ton presbyteron) refers to the oral Torah — interpretive traditions transmitted alongside the written law. Ritual handwashing before meals was not commanded in the Mosaic law but was a Pharisaic extension of priestly purity practices to ordinary Jews. The verb parabainousin ('transgress, cross over') is deliberately strong — they accuse the disciples of violation, not mere oversight.
3. Jesus turns their accusation back on them using the same verb parabainete ('you break'). The contrast is sharp: they charge his disciples with violating human tradition; he charges them with violating God's commandment (entole tou theou). The phrase 'your tradition' (teen paradosin hymon) pointedly shifts ownership — it is their tradition, not God's.
4. Jesus cites two Old Testament texts: Exodus 20:12 (the fifth commandment) and Exodus 21:17 (its judicial penalty). The verb kakologon ('speaks evil of, reviles') is broader than 'curses' — it includes any verbal dishonoring. The death penalty (thanato teleutato) underscores the seriousness with which the Torah treats parental honor.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 21:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek doron ('gift') refers to the practice of qorban — dedicating property or funds to the temple so they cannot be used for other purposes. The irony is that the dedication could be nominal; the person retained the use of the assets while declaring them unavailable for parental support. Jesus is exposing a legal fiction that allows financial self-interest to masquerade as piety.
6. The verb ekyrosate ('you have nullified, voided, made invalid') is a legal term — their tradition has rendered God's commandment legally void. Matthew uses 'word of God' (ton logon tou theou) rather than 'commandment,' broadening the indictment: it is not merely a single rule they have circumvented but God's expressed will.
7. The term hypokritai ('hypocrites') derives from Greek theater, meaning 'actors' — those who perform a role that does not reflect their true character. Jesus applies the term to religious leaders whose outward piety masks disobedience to God's actual commands. The adverb kalos ('rightly, well, fittingly') adds rhetorical force.
8. Jesus quotes Isaiah 29:13 following the Septuagint text. The contrast between lips and heart is the core of the hypocrisy charge — external religious performance without internal devotion. The SBLGNT text omits 'draws near to me with their mouth' (found in the KJV, following the fuller Septuagint tradition and some later manuscripts).
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 29:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The adverb maten ('in vain, to no purpose') renders their entire worship project futile. The phrase entalmata anthropon ('commandments of people') directly contrasts with 'commandment of God' in verse 3, completing the rhetorical frame: human tradition has displaced divine command, and the resulting worship is empty.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 29:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Jesus shifts from the Pharisees to the crowd, broadening his audience for a public teaching. The double imperative akouete kai syniete ('listen and understand') demands not just hearing but comprehension — the same call that appears in the parable discourse (13:13-15).
11. The verb koinoi ('makes common, defiles') is a purity term — to make ritually unclean. Jesus reverses the direction of defilement: contamination flows outward from the heart, not inward from food. This principle, if followed to its logical conclusion, dismantles the entire system of dietary purity laws, though Matthew does not make this implication as explicit as Mark 7:19.
12. The verb eskandalisthesan ('were scandalized, took offense') carries the sense of being tripped up, stumbling over something. The disciples' question reveals their concern about the political consequences of offending Jerusalem's delegation.
13. The agricultural metaphor of planting and uprooting echoes Isaiah 5:1-7 (God's vineyard) and Jeremiah 1:10 (prophetic commission to uproot and plant). Jesus declares that the Pharisees' traditions, not having originated with God, will not endure. The phrase 'my heavenly Father' (ho pater mou ho ouranios) asserts Jesus's unique filial relationship.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 5:1-7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 1:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The proverbial saying about blind guides (typhloi hodegoi typhlon) is a devastating dismissal of the Pharisees' claim to spiritual authority. The word hodegos ('guide, leader') implies someone who shows the way — their blindness is not physical but spiritual. The 'pit' (bothnon) represents disaster or ruin.

15. Peter's request treats Jesus's statement in verse 11 as a parable (parabole) — an opaque saying requiring explanation. The verb phrasō ('explain, make clear') indicates the disciples did not grasp the revolutionary implications of Jesus's teaching on defilement.
16. The adverb akmen ('still, even now') conveys frustration — after all this time with Jesus, they remain asynetoi ('without understanding, lacking comprehension'). The 'also' (kai) links the disciples' incomprehension to that of the Pharisees and the crowds.
17. Jesus makes his argument crudely physical: food follows a digestive path and exits the body. The word aphedrona ('latrine, toilet') is earthy and deliberate — Jesus is demystifying the Pharisees' elaborate purity system by pointing to basic biology. The implication is that food cannot reach or contaminate the heart.
18. The heart (kardia) in biblical anthropology is the seat of will, thought, and intention — not merely emotion. Jesus locates the source of defilement in the human interior, the center of moral agency. Words reveal the heart's true condition.
19. The vice list moves from internal (dialogismoi ponerōi, 'evil thoughts/reasonings') to external acts. Several of the items echo the Ten Commandments: murder (sixth), adultery (seventh), theft (eighth), false testimony (ninth). The Greek porneiai ('sexual immorality') is broader than 'fornication' and covers any sexual conduct outside God's design. Blasphemiai here likely means 'slander' against others rather than blasphemy against God, given the context of interpersonal sins.
20. Jesus circles back to the Pharisees' original complaint about handwashing (v. 2), now reframing it within his radical redefinition of defilement. The contrast is complete: moral corruption from the heart defiles; ritual omission does not. The adjective anipto ('unwashed') appears only here and in Mark 7:2 in the New Testament.
21. The verb anechō ('withdrew') suggests deliberate retreat, used previously for Jesus withdrawing from conflict (2:14, 12:15, 14:13). Tyre and Sidon were Gentile coastal cities in Phoenicia (modern Lebanon), outside Jewish territory. This is the only time in Matthew's Gospel that Jesus enters explicitly Gentile land.
22. Matthew calls her 'Canaanite' (Chananaia) — an archaic term evoking Israel's ancient enemies, while Mark 7:26 calls her 'Syrophoenician.' Matthew's choice emphasizes the ethnic and religious gulf between her and Jesus. The imperfect ekrazen ('kept crying') indicates persistent, repeated calling. Her address 'Lord, Son of David' uses the Davidic messianic title — remarkable for a Gentile woman, suggesting she has heard of Jesus's identity.
23. Jesus's silence (ouk apekrithe autē logon, literally 'he did not answer her a word') is striking and deliberate. The disciples' request apolyson autēn ('send her away, dismiss her') is ambiguous — it could mean 'grant her request so she'll leave' or 'drive her away.' Their motivation is annoyance, not compassion.
24. The passive apostalein ('I was sent') points to the Father as the sender, and the restriction 'only' (ei me, 'except') to Israel echoes the mission charge of 10:5-6. This statement reflects Jesus's understanding of his earthly mission's scope within Matthew's Gospel. The universal commission does not come until 28:19. The metaphor of 'lost sheep' (ta probata ta apolota) recalls Ezekiel 34, where God condemns Israel's shepherds and promises to shepherd the flock himself.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The verb prosekynei ('worshipped, knelt before, prostrated') can indicate full worship or respectful supplication. The imperfect tense suggests ongoing action — she kept prostrating herself. Her plea is reduced to three words in Greek (kyrie, boethei moi) — stripped of all argument, pure appeal to mercy.
26. The diminutive kynariois ('little dogs, household dogs') is slightly softer than the full kyon ('dog'), which was a standard Jewish epithet for Gentiles. But the force is still dismissive — the 'children' (tekna) are Israel, and the Gentiles are compared to household pets. The word artos ('bread') anticipates the feeding miracle later in this chapter. Whether Jesus is testing her faith, teaching the disciples, or expressing genuine reluctance is debated; the narrative resolution suggests the exchange serves to display her extraordinary faith.
27. Her reply is a masterpiece of rhetorical persistence. She accepts the metaphor ('Yes, Lord') but turns it: even within the hierarchy Jesus has described, the dogs receive something. The word psichion ('crumb, small piece') suggests that what she asks for is not the full portion but the overflow — Israel's blessings are so abundant that even the surplus is enough to heal her daughter. She does not challenge Jesus's priority of Israel; she simply claims the excess.
28. The exclamation O gynai ('O woman') with megale sou he pistis ('great is your faith') is one of only two times Jesus explicitly praises someone's faith as 'great' — the other is the centurion, also a Gentile (8:10). The pattern is remarkable: Gentiles display the faith that Israel's leaders lack. The passive genetheto ('let it be done') mirrors the divine creative language of Genesis 1 in the Septuagint. The healing is instantaneous and at a distance, emphasizing the power of the word alone.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The definite article to oros ('the mountain') may indicate a specific well-known location or may simply reflect Semitic narrative style. Jesus sitting (ekatheto) is the posture of a teacher in Jewish tradition. The setting — a mountain by the sea — creates a tableau of authority reminiscent of Moses.
30. The verb erripsan ('threw, cast down') is vivid — the sick were deposited urgently at Jesus's feet. The list of afflictions (lame, blind, crippled, mute) echoes the messianic promises of Isaiah 35:5-6, where the coming of God brings healing to the blind, deaf, lame, and mute. The location in

predominantly Gentile territory gives this healing ministry a universal scope.

30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 35:5-6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The phrase 'the God of Israel' (ton theon Israel) is significant — if this crowd were Jewish, the phrase would be redundant. Its presence suggests that Matthew understands the crowd as at least partly Gentile, glorifying Israel's God in response to Jesus's miracles. This echoes the prophetic vision of Gentiles coming to worship Israel's God (Isaiah 2:2-4, 60:1-6).
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 2:2-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The verb *splanchnizomai* ('I have compassion') derives from *splanchna* ('intestines, gut') — it describes a visceral, gut-level response, not a mild sentiment. The three-day stay indicates the crowd's persistence in remaining with Jesus despite having no provisions. Jesus takes the initiative here, unlike the feeding of the five thousand where the disciples raised the problem (14:15).
33. Despite having witnessed the feeding of the five thousand (14:13-21), the disciples express the same helplessness. The word *eremia* ('desolate place, wilderness') echoes the wilderness feeding traditions of Exodus 16 (manna) and Numbers 11 (quail). Matthew does not comment on the disciples' apparent failure to remember the previous miracle.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. The diminutive *ichthydia* ('small fish') indicates these are not large catches but modest provisions. The number seven often symbolizes completeness in biblical numerology, contrasting with the five loaves of the earlier feeding.
35. The verb *parangeelas* ('commanded, directed') carries authority. The verb *anapesein* ('to recline, sit down') is the standard term for taking a meal position. Unlike the five thousand fed on grass (14:19), this crowd sits on bare ground (teen gen), consistent with a more desolate location.
36. The sequence — took, gave thanks (*eucharistesas*), broke, gave — follows the same pattern as the feeding of the five thousand (14:19) and anticipates the Last Supper (26:26). The verb *eucharisteo* ('to give thanks') is the root of 'Eucharist,' though Matthew does not draw explicit sacramental connections here. The disciples serve as intermediaries, distributing what Jesus provides.
37. The verb *echortasthesan* ('were satisfied, were filled to satisfaction') indicates not mere survival but abundance. The word *spyridas* ('large baskets') differs from the *kophinous* ('small baskets') of the five thousand feeding (14:20). The *spyris* was a large rope basket, possibly big enough to hold a person (cf. Acts 9:25, where Paul is lowered in a *spyris*). Seven full large baskets of surplus from seven loaves declares overwhelming abundance.
38. As with the feeding of the five thousand (14:21), only men (*andres*) are counted; the total number including women and children would have been significantly larger. The number four thousand, combined with the predominantly Gentile setting, may carry symbolic weight — four often represents universality (four corners of the earth, four winds).
39. The SBLGNT reads 'Magadan' (Magadan) rather than 'Magdala' (as in some manuscripts and the KJV). The location is uncertain — it may be the same as Magdala (home of Mary Magdalene) on the western shore of the Sea of Galilee, or a variant name for the same area. Mark's parallel (8:10) reads 'Dalmanutha,' another otherwise unknown location. Jesus returns from Gentile territory to the Jewish side of the lake.

16

Summary: *Matthew 16 opens with the Pharisees and Sadducees testing Jesus by demanding a sign from heaven. Jesus refuses, offering only 'the sign of Jonah,' and warns the disciples about the 'leaven' of the Pharisees and Sadducees. The chapter reaches its climax at Caesarea Philippi, where Peter confesses Jesus as 'the Christ, the Son of the living God.' Jesus responds with the famous declaration about building his church on 'this rock' and giving Peter the 'keys of the kingdom of heaven.' Immediately after this high point, Jesus makes his first explicit prediction of his suffering, death, and resurrection — and when Peter objects, Jesus rebukes him with the stunning words, 'Get behind me, Satan.' The chapter concludes with the cost of discipleship: 'Whoever wants to save his life will lose it.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Caesarea Philippi was a deliberately chosen setting — a Gentile city at the foot of a cliff face with a cave shrine to Pan, near temples to Augustus Caesar. Against this backdrop of pagan worship and imperial power, Peter's confession that Jesus is 'the Christ, the Son of the living God' is a political and theological declaration. The rapid reversal from Peter as recipient of divine revelation (v. 17) to Peter as mouthpiece of Satan (v. 23) is one of the most dramatic character moments in the Gospels. The 'keys' saying and the 'binding and loosing' language have generated*

centuries of ecclesiastical debate between traditions claiming Petrine authority and those reading the passage differently.

Translation Friction: The identity of 'this rock' (v. 18) — whether it refers to Peter himself, his confession, or Christ — is one of the most debated questions in New Testament interpretation. We translate the Greek without resolving the ambiguity. The wordplay between Petros (Peter's name) and petra (rock) is evident in Greek but involves a grammatical gender shift. 'Gates of Hades' (v. 18) is rendered literally; it refers to the power of death, not to a geographic location. Jesus's command to silence about his messiahship (v. 20) reflects what scholars call the 'messianic secret.'

Connections: The sign of Jonah connects to Jonah 1:17 and Matthew 12:39-40. Peter's confession echoes Psalm 2:7 and 2 Samuel 7:14 (Davidic sonship). The 'keys' imagery draws on Isaiah 22:22 (the key of the house of David given to Eliakim). 'Binding and loosing' was rabbinic language for authoritative legal rulings. The first passion prediction introduces the pattern of prediction-misunderstanding-teaching that structures chapters 16-20. The cross-bearing language (v. 24) anticipates the crucifixion narrative of chapters 26-27.

¹The Pharisees and Sadducees came and tested Jesus by asking him to show them a sign from heaven. ²He answered them, "When evening comes you say, 'It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.' ³And in the morning, 'There will be a storm today, for the sky is red and threatening.' You know how to read the appearance of the sky, but you cannot read the signs of the times." ⁴An evil and adulterous generation demands a sign, but no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah." Then he left them and went away. ⁵When the disciples reached the other side, they had forgotten to bring bread. ⁶Jesus said to them, "Watch out, and guard yourselves against the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees." ⁷They discussed this among themselves, saying, "It is because we did not bring any bread." ⁸Aware of this, Jesus said, "You of little faith, why are you discussing among yourselves the fact that you have no bread? ⁹Do you still not understand? Do you not remember the five loaves for the five thousand, and how many baskets you collected? ¹⁰Or the seven loaves for the four thousand, and how many large baskets you collected? ¹¹How do you not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Guard yourselves against the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees." ¹²Then they understood that he had not told them to guard against the leaven of bread, but against the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. ¹³When Jesus came to the region of Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, "Who do people say the Son of Man is?" ¹⁴They said, "Some say John the Baptist, others Elijah, and others Jeremiah or one of the prophets." ¹⁵He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?" ¹⁶Simon Peter answered, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God." ¹⁷Jesus answered him, "Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for flesh and blood did not reveal this to you, but my Father who is in heaven. ¹⁸And I tell you, you are Peter, and on this rock I will build my church, and the gates of Hades will not overpower it. ¹⁹I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven, and whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven." ²⁰Then he strictly ordered the disciples to tell no one that he was the Christ. ²¹From that time, Jesus began to show his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem and suffer many things from the elders, chief priests, and scribes, and be killed, and on the third day be raised. ²²Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him, saying, "God forbid, Lord! This must never happen to you." ²³But he turned and said to Peter, "Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me, for you are not thinking the things of God but the things of people." ²⁴Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If anyone wants to come after me, let him deny himself and take up his cross and follow me. ²⁵For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will find it. ²⁶For what will it profit a person to gain the whole world but forfeit his soul? Or what will a person give in exchange for his soul? ²⁷For the Son of Man is going to come in the glory of his Father with his angels, and then he will repay each person according to what they have done. ²⁸Truly I tell you, there are some standing here who will not taste death before they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The unusual alliance of Pharisees and Sadducees — normally theological opponents — united against Jesus signals the depth of opposition. The participle *peirazontes* ('testing') indicates hostile intent, not genuine inquiry. The phrase 'sign from heaven' (*semeion ek tou ouranou*) demands a cosmic spectacle beyond earthly miracles, implying their dissatisfaction with the healings and feedings they already knew about.

2. Verses 2b-3 are enclosed in brackets in the SBLGNT, indicating textual uncertainty — they are absent from important early manuscripts including Sinaiticus and Vaticanus. However, they are widely attested in other traditions. We include the text following the SBLGNT's bracketed reading. The weather proverb about red sky at evening is a folk observation still proverbial today.
3. The contrast is devastating: they can interpret weather patterns but are blind to the eschatological moment (ta semeia ton kairon, 'the signs of the times'). The word kairos ('appointed time, season') differs from chronos ('chronological time') — it refers to the decisive moment in God's plan. The SBLGNT does not include 'hypocrites' (hypokritai), which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV tradition.
4. The phrase 'adulterous generation' (genea moichalis) uses the Old Testament prophetic metaphor of Israel as an unfaithful spouse (Hosea 1-3, Ezekiel 16). Their sign-seeking is spiritual infidelity. The 'sign of Jonah' was explained in 12:40 as the Son of Man's three days in the earth, pointing to death and resurrection. Jesus's abrupt departure (katalipan autous apeelthen) is a dramatic rejection of their demand.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 1-3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The detail about forgetting bread sets up Jesus's teaching about 'leaven.' The irony is thick — they have just witnessed two miraculous feedings and are worried about bread supplies.
6. The double imperative horate kai prosechete ('watch out and guard') indicates urgent warning. Leaven (zyme) in Jewish tradition often symbolizes corruption — a small amount permeates the whole batch (cf. 1 Corinthians 5:6-8). Mark's parallel (8:15) includes 'the leaven of Herod' instead of the Sadducees.
7. The verb dielozigonto ('they were reasoning, discussing') shows the disciples taking Jesus's metaphorical warning literally. Their fixation on physical bread after two miraculous feedings demonstrates the obtuseness that Jesus will address in the following verses.
8. The term oligopistoi ('you of little faith') is distinctive to Matthew (6:30, 8:26, 14:31, 16:8) and describes not the absence of faith but its inadequacy. The participle gnous ('having known, perceiving') suggests either supernatural knowledge or simply overhearing their conversation.
9. Jesus appeals to their own experience. The word kophinous ('baskets') specifies the smaller Jewish provision baskets used at the feeding of the five thousand (14:20), distinct from the larger spyridas of 15:37. The parallel structure of the questions builds a rhetorical case against their forgetfulness.
10. The distinction between kophinous (v. 9, smaller baskets) and spyridas (larger baskets) is maintained precisely, confirming that Jesus and Matthew distinguish between the two feeding events. The rhetorical question expects the answer: 'We collected twelve baskets and seven baskets — so provision is obviously not the issue.'
11. The exasperated pos ou noeite ('how do you not understand') brings the rebuke to its peak. Jesus repeats the warning, now clarifying that 'leaven' is metaphorical. The disciples' confusion illustrates a recurring theme in Matthew: proximity to Jesus does not automatically produce comprehension.
12. Matthew, unlike Mark (8:21), resolves the disciples' confusion — they finally understand. The word didache ('teaching, doctrine') identifies the 'leaven' as the Pharisees' and Sadducees' interpretive tradition that, like yeast, invisibly permeates and corrupts. Mark 8:15 identifies the leaven as that of Herod rather than the Sadducees.
13. Caesarea Philippi (modern Banias) was located at the base of Mount Hermon, rebuilt by Philip the tetrarch and named for Caesar Augustus. It contained a grotto sacred to Pan and various pagan temples. The setting for the climactic identity question is deliberately Gentile. Jesus uses the third person 'Son of Man' (ton huion tou anthropou) — a title drawn from Daniel 7:13-14 that was his preferred self-designation.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:13-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The popular identifications are all prophetic figures, indicating that the crowds recognize Jesus as a prophet but not as the Messiah. The mention of Jeremiah is unique to Matthew — Jeremiah was the weeping prophet who predicted the destruction of the temple and the new covenant (Jeremiah 31:31-34), themes central to Matthew's portrayal of Jesus. Elijah's appearance reflects Malachi 4:5's promise of Elijah's return before the day of the LORD.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 31:31-34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 4:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The emphatic pronoun hymeis ('you yourselves') draws a sharp contrast between public opinion and the disciples' own conviction. This is the hinge question of the entire Gospel — everything that follows depends on the answer. The present tense legete ('do you say') demands a current, personal declaration.
16. Peter's confession combines two titles: 'the Christ' (ho Christos, the Messiah/Anointed One) and 'the Son of the living God' (ho huios tou theou tou zontos). The latter goes beyond messianic expectation to assert a unique divine relationship. The qualifier 'living' (tou zontos) distinguishes the true God from the dead idols of the surrounding pagan temples at Caesarea Philippi — a pointed contrast in this setting. Matthew's version is fuller than Mark's simple 'You are the Christ' (Mark 8:29).
17. The patronymic Bariona ('son of Jonah') uses the Aramaic bar ('son') — one of the few Aramaic forms preserved in Matthew. 'Flesh and blood' (sarx kai haima) is a Semitic idiom for human beings in their natural capacity. The point is that Peter's confession came not from human reasoning but from divine revelation (apokalypsis). This makes Peter both uniquely blessed and uniquely responsible.

- 18.** The wordplay between Petros (Peter's name, masculine) and petra ('rock,' feminine) is central but debated. In Aramaic, the underlying word kepha would be identical in both cases, making the connection tighter than in Greek. Whether 'this rock' refers to Peter, his confession, or Christ himself has been disputed since the patristic era. The Greek ekklesia ('assembly, church') appears in the Gospels only here and in 18:17 — it translates the Hebrew qahal, the assembly of God's people. 'Gates of Hades' (pylai hadou) refers to the power of death, not to a place of punishment. The image is of a fortress: death itself cannot breach the community Jesus builds.
- 19.** The 'keys' (kleidas) image draws on Isaiah 22:22, where the key of the house of David is placed on the shoulder of Eliakim the steward — authority to open and shut, admit and exclude. 'Binding and loosing' (deo and lyo) was standard rabbinic terminology for declaring something forbidden or permitted. The authority given to Peter here is extended to the whole community in 18:18. The periphrastic future perfect construction (estai dedemenon, 'will have been bound') may indicate that earthly decisions ratify what heaven has already determined, rather than heaven following earth's lead.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 22:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** The verb diesteilato ('he strictly ordered, charged') is emphatic. The command to secrecy about his messianic identity — the so-called 'messianic secret' — reflects Jesus's concern that the title 'Christ' carried political and military expectations he did not intend to fulfill. The immediately following passion prediction (v. 21) redefines what messiahship means.
- 21.** The phrase apo tote ('from that time') marks a major structural transition in Matthew (cf. 4:17). The verb dei ('it is necessary, must') indicates divine necessity, not mere fate — this is God's plan. The triad 'elders, chief priests, and scribes' represents the three components of the Sanhedrin, the Jewish ruling council. The passive egerthenai ('be raised') implies God as the agent of resurrection. This is the first of three passion predictions (16:21, 17:22-23, 20:17-19), each becoming progressively more detailed.
- 22.** The verb proslabomenos ('took aside, drew to himself') suggests Peter pulled Jesus aside privately. The audacity of a disciple rebuking (epitiman) his teacher is remarkable. The phrase hileos soi is an idiomatic expression meaning 'may God be merciful to you' or 'God forbid' — a strong rejection of what Jesus has just said. Peter's confession of Jesus as Messiah (v. 16) has not yet accommodated a suffering Messiah.
- 23.** The address 'Satan' (Satana) does not identify Peter as literally the devil but recognizes that Peter's words echo the tempter's offer of glory without suffering (4:8-10). The word skandalon ('stumbling block, snare, offense') means something that causes someone to fall — Peter, who was just called the rock of the church, is now called a stumbling stone. The verb phroneis ('you are thinking, you are minded') indicates that Peter's entire orientation is wrong — he is operating from a human framework, not a divine one.
- 24.** The three imperatives — deny (aparnesastho), take up (arato), and follow (akoloutheito) — form a sequence of escalating commitment. 'Deny himself' (aparnesastho heautou) means to renounce one's own claims, rights, and self-interest. The cross (stauros) was an instrument of Roman execution — for Jesus's original audience, this was not a metaphor for mild inconvenience but for lethal suffering and public shame. The present imperative akoloutheito ('keep following') indicates continuous, ongoing discipleship.
- 25.** The word psyche means both 'life' and 'soul' — the ambiguity is intentional. On one level, clinging to physical survival leads to spiritual death; on another, grasping at self-preservation in any form leads to ultimate loss. The paradox is sharpened by the phrase 'for my sake' (heneken emou) — Jesus makes himself the criterion that determines whether loss becomes gain.
- 26.** Here psyche is rendered 'soul' rather than 'life' because the context shifts to eternal valuation — what is the self ultimately worth? The verb zemiothee ('to suffer loss, to forfeit') is a commercial term: it frames the soul as an asset that can be lost in a transaction. The word antallagma ('exchange price, ransom') asks what could possibly serve as currency to buy back a forfeited soul. The answer is: nothing. The whole world is insufficient.
- 27.** The Son of Man who has just predicted his suffering and death now claims future glory, angelic retinue, and judicial authority. The phrase 'in the glory of his Father' (en tee doxe tou patros autou) claims a share in the Father's own divine splendor. The language of repaying 'according to their deeds' (kata teen praxin autou) echoes Psalm 62:12 and Proverbs 24:12. The combination of suffering-then-glory is the pattern Jesus has been establishing since verse 21.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 62:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 24:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** The solemn amen lego hymin ('truly I tell you') introduces a saying that has challenged interpreters for centuries. 'Taste death' (geusontai thanatou) is a Semitic idiom for experiencing death. What event Jesus refers to is debated: the Transfiguration (which immediately follows in chapter 17), the resurrection, Pentecost, the destruction of Jerusalem in AD 70, or the ongoing expansion of God's kingdom. The placement immediately before the Transfiguration narrative suggests Matthew understood at least a partial fulfillment in that event.

17

Summary: *Matthew 17 opens with the Transfiguration, where Jesus takes Peter, James, and John up a high mountain and is transformed before them — his face shining like the sun, his clothes becoming brilliant white. Moses and Elijah appear alongside him, and a voice from the cloud declares, 'This is my beloved Son; listen to him.' After descending, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy the disciples could not cure, rebuking their lack of faith. He makes his second passion prediction, and the chapter closes with the unusual incident of the temple tax, where Jesus instructs Peter to find a coin in a fish's mouth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Transfiguration is the most overtly theophanic scene in the Synoptic Gospels. Every element is loaded with Old Testament resonance: the high mountain (Sinai), the bright cloud (the shekinah glory), the voice from the cloud (the divine voice at Sinai), Moses (the law), and Elijah (the prophets). The scene reveals Jesus's true nature momentarily unveiled — what the disciples glimpse on the mountain is the glory that was hidden beneath the ordinary human appearance. Peter's offer to build three tabernacles (skenas) evokes the Feast of Tabernacles and the desire to prolong the experience of divine presence. The command 'Listen to him' echoes Deuteronomy 18:15, the promise of the prophet like Moses.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'high mountain' is unspecified — traditionally Mount Tabor, but Mount Hermon (near Caesarea Philippi) is geographically more likely given the preceding narrative. The phrase 'if you have faith as small as a mustard seed' (v. 20) appears in some manuscripts but is bracketed or absent in others; we follow the SBLGNT. Verse 21 is absent from the earliest manuscripts and is not included in the SBLGNT. The temple tax episode (vv. 24-27) raises questions about Jesus's relationship to the temple establishment and whether the miracle actually occurred — Matthew narrates the instruction but not the execution.*

Connections: *The Transfiguration connects to Exodus 24:15-18 and 34:29-35 (Moses on Sinai, his face shining), 1 Kings 19:8-18 (Elijah on Horeb), and Daniel 7:9 (the Ancient of Days with white garments). The divine voice combines Psalm 2:7, Isaiah 42:1, and Deuteronomy 18:15. The failed exorcism connects to the disciples' authority given in 10:1. The second passion prediction advances the pattern from 16:21. The temple tax discussion connects to Exodus 30:11-16 (the half-shekel tax for the tabernacle).*

¹After six days, Jesus took Peter, James, and John his brother and led them up a high mountain by themselves. ²He was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun, and his clothes became white as light. ³And there appeared to them Moses and Elijah, talking with him. ⁴Peter responded and said to Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be here. If you wish, I will make three shelters here — one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." ⁵While he was still speaking, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased. Listen to him!" ⁶When the disciples heard this, they fell facedown and were terrified. ⁷Jesus came and touched them, saying, "Get up, and do not be afraid." ⁸When they looked up, they saw no one except Jesus himself, alone. ⁹As they were coming down the mountain, Jesus commanded them, "Tell no one about the vision until the Son of Man has been raised from the dead." ¹⁰The disciples asked him, "Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?" ¹¹He answered, "Elijah is indeed coming and will restore all things. ¹²But I tell you that Elijah has already come, and they did not recognize him but did to him whatever they pleased. In the same way, the Son of Man is also going to suffer at their hands." ¹³Then the disciples understood that he was speaking to them about John the Baptist. ¹⁴When they came to the crowd, a man came up to him, kneeling before him ¹⁵Indeed, declaring, Lord, have mercy on my son — since he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water. ¹⁶I brought him to your disciples, but they could not heal him." ¹⁷Jesus answered, "O faithless and twisted generation, how long will I be with you? How long must I put up with you? Bring him here to me." ¹⁸Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of him, and the boy was healed from that moment. ¹⁹Then the disciples came to Jesus privately and asked, "Why could we not cast it out?" ²⁰He said to them, "Because of your little faith. For truly I tell you, if you have faith as small as a mustard seed, you will say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move, and nothing will

be impossible for you." ²²While they were gathering together in Galilee, Jesus said to them, "The Son of Man is going to be delivered into the hands of people, ²³They will kill him, and the third day he will be raised again. Then they were exceedingly sorry. ²⁴When they came to Capernaum, the collectors of the two-drachma tax came to Peter and said, "Does your teacher not pay the temple tax?" ²⁵He said, "Yes." When he came into the house, Jesus spoke to him first, saying, "What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes — from their own sons or from others?" ²⁶When he said, "From others," Jesus said to him, "Then the sons are free. ²⁷But so that we do not cause them to stumble, go to the sea, cast a hook, and take the first fish that comes up. When you open its mouth, you will find a four-drachma coin. Take that and give it to them for me and for you."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'six days' may echo Exodus 24:16, where the cloud covered Mount Sinai for six days before God spoke to Moses on the seventh. Peter, James, and John form an inner circle who witness events hidden from the other disciples (cf. the raising of Jairus's daughter, Mark 5:37, and the agony in Gethsemane, 26:37). The phrase *kat' idian* ('by themselves, privately') emphasizes the exclusive, revelatory nature of the experience.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 24:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The verb *metemorphothe* ('was transfigured, was transformed') describes a change of form (*morphe*), not merely appearance. The passive voice implies divine agency — God transforms Jesus. The shining face echoes Moses descending from Sinai with radiant skin (Exodus 34:29-35), but here the glory is Jesus's own, not reflected. The similes — face like the sun, clothes like light — push human language to its limits describing divine splendor.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 34:29-35. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Moses represents the Torah (the Law) and Elijah represents the Prophets — together they embody the entirety of Old Testament revelation. Both experienced theophanies on mountains (Sinai/Horeb). Both had unusual departures from earthly life (Moses's hidden burial, Deuteronomy 34:5-6; Elijah's ascent in a chariot of fire, 2 Kings 2:11). The verb *syllalountes* ('conversing with') indicates an active exchange, not mere presence. Luke 9:31 specifies they discussed Jesus's 'departure' (*exodus*) in Jerusalem.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 34:5-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Kings 2:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The word *skenas* ('tents, shelters, tabernacles') evokes the Feast of Tabernacles (*Sukkot*), when Israel dwelt in temporary shelters commemorating the wilderness wandering and God's presence among them. Peter's instinct to build three shelters may reflect a desire to prolong the moment of divine encounter, or an attempt to honor all three figures equally — a misunderstanding the divine voice will correct. Matthew's 'if you wish' (*ei theleis*) is more deferential than Mark's account, which notes Peter did not know what to say (Mark 9:6).
5. The bright cloud (*nephele photeina*) is the *shekinah* — the visible manifestation of God's presence that led Israel through the wilderness (Exodus 13:21-22) and filled the tabernacle and temple (Exodus 40:34-35, 1 Kings 8:10-11). The verb *epeskiasen* ('overshadowed') is the same word used of the Spirit overshadowing Mary in Luke 1:35. The divine voice repeats the baptismal declaration (3:17) with the crucial addition *akouete autou* ('listen to him'), echoing Deuteronomy 18:15 — the promise that God would raise up a prophet like Moses whom the people must heed. This command elevates Jesus above Moses and Elijah.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 13:21-22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 40:34-35 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 8:10-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 18:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Falling facedown (*epesan epi prosopon auton*) is the standard Old Testament response to a theophany — encountering the unmediated presence of God (cf. Genesis 17:3, Ezekiel 1:28, Daniel 8:17). The adverb *sphodra* ('extremely, greatly') intensifies their fear. This is not reverent awe but overwhelming terror in the presence of the divine.

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 17:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:28. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 8:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The physical touch (*hapsamenos auton*) bridges the gap between divine encounter and human comfort. The command 'do not be afraid' (*me phobeisthe*) echoes the angelic reassurance given throughout Scripture when humans encounter the divine (Genesis 15:1, Daniel 10:12, Luke 1:30). Jesus mediates between the overwhelming divine presence and his terrified friends.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 10:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The phrase 'Jesus himself, alone' (*auton Iesoun monon*) is theologically precise — Moses and Elijah have departed, and only Jesus remains. The Law and the Prophets have borne their witness and yielded the stage to the one they pointed toward. The disciples' gaze is redirected to Jesus alone, fulfilling the command 'Listen to him.'
9. The word *horama* ('vision') is Matthew's term for what they witnessed — it classifies the Transfiguration as a revelatory experience. The command to silence is tied to the resurrection: only after the cross and empty tomb will the Transfiguration be properly understood. Before the resurrection, glory without suffering would feed exactly the wrong kind of messianic expectation.
10. The disciples' question arises naturally from what they have just seen: if Elijah has appeared on the mountain, what about the scribal teaching (based on Malachi 4:5) that Elijah must return before the messianic age? The word *proton* ('first') reflects the expectation that Elijah's return would precede and prepare for the Messiah's arrival.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Malachi 4:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Jesus affirms the scribal expectation: Elijah will come and 'restore all things' (*apokatastisei panta*). The verb *apokathistemi* ('to restore, to reestablish') implies returning something to its original state. In the Malachi context, Elijah's mission is to turn the hearts of fathers to children and children to fathers before the great day of the LORD.
12. Jesus identifies John the Baptist as the Elijah who was to come — a typological, not literal, fulfillment. The phrase 'they did not recognize him' (*ouk epegnosan auton*) parallels Israel's historic failure to recognize its prophets. The ominous parallel 'in the same way the Son of Man is also going to suffer' links John's fate (beheading by Herod, 14:1-12) to Jesus's approaching passion. The pattern is clear: Israel rejects its prophets, and it will reject its Messiah.
13. Matthew, characteristically, resolves the disciples' confusion (cf. 16:12). The verb *synekan* ('they understood') indicates genuine comprehension. The identification of John with Elijah is not reincarnation but prophetic typology — John came 'in the spirit and power of Elijah' (Luke 1:17).
14. The descent from the mountain to the crowd creates a sharp narrative contrast — from divine glory to human suffering. The participle *gonypeton* ('kneeling') indicates a posture of urgent supplication. The scene parallels the descent of Moses from Sinai to find Israel's failure below (Exodus 32).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *seleniazetai* (literally 'is moon-struck') was associated with epileptic-like seizures, believed in the ancient world to be influenced by the moon. We render it 'has seizures' since modern English 'lunatic' carries different connotations. Matthew retains both the medical description (seizures) and the spiritual diagnosis (demon-possession, v. 18), without reducing one to the other. The dangerous symptoms — falling into fire and water — indicate the severity and life-threatening nature of the condition.
16. The disciples' failure is significant because Jesus had explicitly given them authority over unclean spirits (10:1). The verb *edyneethesan* ('they were able') with the negation *ouk* indicates inability, not unwillingness. The father's turning from the disciples to Jesus underscores the gap between delegated authority and its source.
17. The exclamation echoes Moses's frustration with Israel in the wilderness (Deuteronomy 32:5, 20). The adjective *diastrammene* ('twisted, perverted, distorted') describes a generation that has bent away from its proper orientation toward God. The double 'how long' (*heos pote*) expresses both exhaustion and anticipation of departure. The rebuke is directed broadly — at the disciples, the crowd, the entire generation — not just the father.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 32:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *epetimesen* ('rebuked') is a word of authoritative command, the same term used for rebuking the wind and sea (8:26). The healing is instantaneous — 'from that very hour' (*apo tes horas ekeines*) — and requires no ritual, no incantation, only Jesus's word of command. The contrast with the disciples' failure is total.

19. The private setting (kat' idian) suggests the disciples are embarrassed by their public failure. Their question is honest: they had been given authority (10:1) and had exercised it successfully (cf. Luke 10:17), so what went wrong? The answer in the next verse will locate the problem in their faith, not their authority.
20. The word oligopistian ('littleness of faith') is the noun form of the adjective oligopistos used throughout Matthew. The mustard seed was proverbially the smallest seed in Palestinian agriculture. The paradox is deliberate: their faith does not need to be large — even the smallest genuine faith can accomplish the impossible. 'This mountain' (to orei touto) may gesture toward the mountain they have just descended, or may simply be a proverbial expression for any insurmountable obstacle.
21. Verse 21 is absent from the earliest and most reliable Greek manuscripts, including Sinaiticus and Vaticanus, and is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears to have been added from Mark 9:29 in later manuscripts. The KJV includes it because it follows the Textus Receptus tradition. We omit it following the SBLGNT.
22. The verb systrefomenon ('gathering, assembling') suggests the disciples came together, possibly after dispersal. The verb paradidosthai ('to be delivered, to be handed over, to be betrayed') is a key passion term — the same word used for Judas's betrayal (26:15-16) and for God 'handing over' Jesus (Romans 8:32). The wordplay between 'Son of Man' (huios tou anthropou) and 'hands of people' (cheiras anthropou) creates a bitter irony: the quintessential human will be killed by humans.
23. This second passion prediction (cf. 16:21) is briefer and more blunt than the first — no specification of who will kill him, just the stark 'they will kill him.' The passive 'will be raised' (egertheesetai) again implies God as agent. The disciples' response — deep grief (elypeethesan sphodra) rather than Peter's rebuke of 16:22 — suggests they are beginning to accept what Jesus is saying, even if they do not fully understand it.
24. The didrachma was a two-drachma coin equivalent to the half-shekel temple tax required annually of every Jewish male aged twenty and above (Exodus 30:11-16). The tax supported the daily operations of the Jerusalem temple. The collectors' question implies uncertainty about whether Jesus would comply — his stance toward the temple was already controversial.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 30:11-16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Peter answers affirmatively without consulting Jesus. The verb proephthasen ('anticipated, spoke first') indicates Jesus raised the topic before Peter could report the conversation, displaying supernatural awareness. The analogy is straightforward: kings tax their subjects, not their own family. The implication — that Jesus as God's Son is exempt from a tax paid to God's temple — is a subtle Christological claim.
26. The conclusion is logical: if kings tax outsiders, not their children, then the Son of God is exempt from the tax levied for God's house. The adjective eleutheroi ('free, exempt') carries both legal (exempt from tax) and theological (free as sons) force. This is one of the subtlest Christological declarations in Matthew — Jesus claims the status of God's Son through an analogy rather than a direct statement.
27. Despite being exempt, Jesus pays the tax 'so that we do not cause them to stumble' (hina me skandalisomen autous) — the same concern for others' conscience that Paul will later develop (Romans 14, 1 Corinthians 8). The stater (stateera) was a four-drachma coin — exactly enough for two persons' temple tax. The miraculous provision of the coin in the fish's mouth is unique to Matthew and has no parallel elsewhere in the Gospels. Notably, Matthew does not narrate the execution of the miracle — only the instruction. Peter's inclusion ('for me and for you') underscores his special role as Jesus's representative.

18

Summary: *Matthew 18 is the fourth major discourse in Matthew's Gospel, focused on relationships within the community of disciples. It opens with the question 'Who is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven?' and Jesus's answer: a child. The chapter addresses the seriousness of causing others to stumble, the parable of the lost sheep, procedures for resolving conflict within the community, the authority of binding and loosing given to the assembled church, the promise of Jesus's presence wherever two or three gather, and Peter's question about the limits of forgiveness. The discourse climaxes with the parable of the unforgiving servant, whose enormous debt is forgiven by his master only for him to refuse mercy to a fellow servant who owes him a trivial sum.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains Matthew's only other use of ekklesia ('church,' also in 16:18), here referring not to a universal institution but to a local assembly with authority to adjudicate disputes. The forgiveness teaching is radical — Peter's suggestion of 'seven times' already exceeds normal rabbinic expectations, but Jesus's 'seventy-seven times' (or 'seventy times seven') demolishes all counting. The parable of the unforgiving servant makes the theological logic explicit: those who have received immeasurable forgiveness from God are obligated to extend proportional forgiveness to others. The chapter's movement from the greatness of children to the mechanics of community discipline to unlimited forgiveness creates a coherent vision of kingdom community.*

Translation Friction: The 'stumbling block' passage (vv. 6-9) uses hyperbolic language about millstones, cutting off hands, and plucking out eyes that must be read as deliberate exaggeration for rhetorical force, not literal instruction. The church discipline procedure (vv. 15-17) ending in treating someone 'as a Gentile and a tax collector' is ironic in a Gospel where Jesus befriends precisely those people. The debt figures in the parable are deliberately extreme — ten thousand talents is an astronomically impossible sum, making the contrast with one hundred denarii all the more devastating.

Connections: The child as model of greatness inverts the disciples' question and connects to 19:13-15. The lost sheep parable parallels Luke 15:3-7 but is applied differently — in Luke it is about seeking sinners, in Matthew about caring for vulnerable community members. The binding and loosing authority (v. 18) extends what was given to Peter in 16:19 to the whole community. 'Seventy-seven times' (v. 22) may echo Genesis 4:24, where Lamech boasts of seventy-sevenfold vengeance — Jesus inverts the principle from vengeance to forgiveness. The unforgiving servant parable connects to the Lord's Prayer petition 'forgive us our debts as we also have forgiven our debtors' (6:12).

¹At that time the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Who then is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven?" ²He called a child over and placed him in the middle of them ³Said, truly I tell you, Except you be converted, and become as little children, you will not enter into heaven's kingdom. ⁴Whoever humbles himself like this child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven. ⁵And whoever welcomes one such child in my name welcomes me. ⁶But whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble — it would be better for that person to have a large millstone hung around his neck and to be drowned in the open sea. ⁷Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks! It is inevitable that stumbling blocks will come, but woe to the person through whom the stumbling block comes. ⁸If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away. It is better for you to enter life crippled or lame than to have two hands or two feet and be thrown into the eternal fire. ⁹And if your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out and throw it away. It is better for you to enter life with one eye than to have two eyes and be thrown into the fire of Gehenna. ¹⁰"See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I tell you that in heaven their angels continually see the face of my Father who is in heaven. ¹²What do you think? If a man has a hundred sheep and one of them wanders off, will he not leave the ninety-nine on the hills and go search for the one that wandered away? ¹³And if he finds it, truly I tell you, he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine that did not wander off. ¹⁴In the same way, it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should be lost. ¹⁵"If your brother sins against you, go and point out the fault to him privately, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have won your brother back. ¹⁶But if he does not listen, take one or two others with you, so that every matter may be confirmed by the testimony of two or three witnesses. ¹⁷If he refuses to listen to them, tell it to the church. And if he refuses to listen even to the church, let him be to you as a Gentile and a tax collector. ¹⁸Truly I tell you, whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. ¹⁹Again, truly I tell you, if two of you agree on earth about anything they ask, it will be done for them by my Father in heaven. ²⁰For where two or three are gathered in my name, there I am among them." ²¹Then Peter came up and said to him, "Lord, how many times will my brother sin against me and I forgive him? Up to seven times?" ²²Jesus said to him, "I do not say to you seven times, but seventy-seven times. ²³"For this reason the kingdom of heaven may be compared to a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants. ²⁴When he began to settle them, one was brought to him who owed ten thousand talents. ²⁵Since he could not repay, his master ordered him to be sold, along with his wife and children and everything he had, in order to make payment. ²⁶So the servant fell down and prostrated himself before him, saying, 'Be patient with me, and I will repay you everything.' ²⁷Moved with compassion, the master of that servant released him and forgave him the loan. ²⁸But when that servant went out, he found one of his fellow servants who owed him a hundred denarii. He seized him and began to choke him, saying, 'Pay back what you owe!' ²⁹So his fellow servant fell down and pleaded with him, 'Be patient with me, and I will repay you.' ³⁰But he refused and went and threw him into prison until he should pay back what was owed. ³¹When his fellow servants saw what had happened, they were deeply distressed and went and reported to their master everything that had taken place. ³²Then his master summoned him and said to him, 'You wicked servant! I forgave you all that debt because you pleaded with me. ³³Should you not also have had mercy on your fellow servant, as I had mercy on you?' ³⁴And in anger his master handed him over to the jailers to

be tortured until he should repay all that was owed. ³⁵So also my heavenly Father will do to every one of you, if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The question about rank (tis ara meizon, 'who then is greatest') reveals the disciples' persistent misunderstanding of kingdom values. The particle ara ('then') connects this to the preceding events — perhaps Peter's special role in chapter 16 or the inner circle's experience on the mountain in chapter 17 has provoked a status competition. This question provides the occasion for the entire discourse.
2. The word paidion ('child, little child') refers to a young child, not an infant. Jesus uses a visual object lesson — the child stands before the disciples as a living illustration. In the ancient world, children had no social status, no legal standing, and no claim to honor. Setting a child in the center of a discussion about greatness is a deliberate inversion.
3. The verb straphete ('turn, turn around') implies a fundamental reorientation — not merely adding humility to existing ambition but reversing direction entirely. The double negative ou me ('never, absolutely not') is the strongest negation possible in Greek. Jesus does not answer the question 'Who is the greatest?' but instead challenges the premise: without becoming like children, they will not even enter the kingdom, let alone rank within it.
4. The verb tapeinosei ('will humble') is active, not passive — it requires deliberate self-lowering. The child models not innocence or simplicity (neither is the point) but lack of status. The child has no accomplishments, no rank, no claim. Whoever voluntarily occupies that position — expecting nothing, claiming nothing — is, paradoxically, the greatest.
5. The verb dexetai ('welcomes, receives') means to accept someone into one's care and fellowship. The phrase 'in my name' (epi to onomati mou) means on the basis of allegiance to Jesus. Jesus identifies himself with the lowest-status members of the community — to welcome a child (or anyone without social power) is to welcome Christ himself. This principle is expanded in 25:31-46.
6. The 'little ones' (ton mikron touton) shifts from literal children to vulnerable believers within the community. The verb skandalise ('to cause to stumble, to lead into sin') is the same root as 'stumbling block' in 16:23. The mylos onikos ('donkey millstone') is the large stone turned by a donkey, as opposed to the smaller hand-mill — large enough to ensure drowning. The image is deliberately gruesome: causing a vulnerable believer to fall away from faith is worse than a violent death.
7. The exclamation ouai ('woe') is a prophetic warning of judgment, not merely an expression of sorrow. The word ananke ('necessity, inevitability') acknowledges that in a fallen world, stumbling blocks are unavoidable — but this inevitability does not excuse the individual who serves as the instrument of harm. The tension between divine sovereignty (it must happen) and human responsibility (woe to the person) is maintained without resolution.
8. This saying parallels 5:29-30 but extends from eye and hand to include the foot. The language is hyperbolic — Jesus is not commanding literal self-mutilation but emphasizing the radical seriousness of anything that leads to sin. 'Eternal fire' (to pyr to aionion) uses aionios, which corresponds to the Hebrew olam — a duration whose end is beyond sight. The contrast between 'life' (zoe) and 'eternal fire' frames the ultimate stakes.
9. Here Matthew uses geenna ('Gehenna') rather than 'eternal fire' — Gehenna refers to the Valley of Hinnom (ge-hinnom) south of Jerusalem, associated with child sacrifice (2 Kings 23:10, Jeremiah 7:31) and later with divine judgment. By Jesus's time it had become a metaphor for the place of final punishment. We preserve 'Gehenna' rather than using 'hell,' which carries accumulated English connotations beyond the original term.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 23:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 7:31. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb kataphronesete ('despise, look down on') literally means to 'think down upon' — to regard as insignificant. The reference to 'their angels' (hoi angeloi auton) is the clearest New Testament basis for the concept of guardian angels. The phrase 'continually see the face of my Father' (dia pantos blepousin to prosopon tou patros mou) indicates these angels have direct, uninterrupted access to God — the highest court privilege, reserved for those with immediate access to the king. The little ones have powerful advocates.
11. Verse 11 is absent from the earliest manuscripts (Sinaiticus, Vaticanus) and is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears to have been imported from Luke 19:10 by later scribes. We omit it following the SBLGNT.
12. The opening question 'What do you think?' (ti hymin dokei) draws the audience into the parable as participants. The verb planetee ('wanders off, goes astray') can refer to both physical wandering and spiritual error (the English 'planet' derives from the same root — 'wanderer'). Unlike Luke's version (15:3-7), which addresses Pharisees about seeking sinners, Matthew's context applies the parable to the care of vulnerable community members ('these little ones').
13. The conditional 'if he finds it' (ean genetai heurein auto) introduces a note of realism — finding is not guaranteed. But the joy when it happens is disproportionate to the arithmetic: one sheep out of a hundred. This disproportion reveals the heart of God toward the vulnerable and lost. The solemn 'truly I tell you' (amen lego hymin) elevates the parable's conclusion to authoritative teaching.
14. The phrase 'the will of your Father' (thelema emprosthen tou patros hymon) uses the Semitic idiom 'will before' — literally 'it is not will before your Father,' meaning 'it is not your Father's desire.' The verb apoletai ('be lost, perish, be destroyed') carries both temporal (wandering from the community) and eternal (final destruction) connotations. The application is clear: the community must pursue its wandering members because God

does not want any of them lost.

15. The phrase 'against you' (eis se) is in brackets in the SBLGNT, indicating textual uncertainty — some manuscripts omit it, making the passage about any sin rather than personal offense. The verb elegxon ('point out, reprove, convict') implies direct, honest confrontation — not gossip, not avoidance, not public shaming. The verb ekerdesas ('you have won, gained') treats the restoration of the relationship as a profit or gain. The procedure begins with the smallest possible circle: one on one.
16. The escalation from private to semi-private follows the legal principle of Deuteronomy 19:15, where two or three witnesses are required to establish a charge. The phrase epi stomatos ('by the mouth of') is a Septuagint quotation. The witnesses serve a dual purpose: to verify the original confrontation was fair and to add weight to the appeal for repentance.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 19:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The verb parakouse ('refuses to listen, disregards') is stronger than mere failure to hear — it implies deliberate rejection. This is the only use of ekklesia ('church, assembly') in the Gospels outside of 16:18. The final status — 'as a Gentile and a tax collector' (hosper ho ethnikos kai ho telones) — places the unrepentant person outside the covenant community. The irony is profound: in Matthew's Gospel, Jesus is known precisely for welcoming Gentiles and tax collectors (9:10-11, 15:21-28). This may imply not permanent rejection but a new starting point — they become objects of mission rather than members of the community.
18. This repeats the binding and loosing authority given to Peter in 16:19 but now extends it to the community as a whole (the verbs are second person plural). In rabbinic usage, 'binding' (deo) meant declaring something forbidden, and 'loosing' (lyo) meant declaring it permitted. The periphrastic future perfect (estai dedemena, 'will have been bound') may indicate that the community's decisions ratify what heaven has already determined. The community acts with divine backing, not ahead of it.
19. The verb symphonesousin ('agree, harmonize') is the root of 'symphony' — it implies not mere verbal agreement but genuine harmony of purpose. In context, this refers to the community's prayers in connection with the discipline process just described, not a blank check for any request. The word pragmatos ('matter, thing, case') has legal overtones, supporting the judicial context.
20. This promise echoes the Jewish rabbinic saying that when two or three study Torah together, the Shekinah (divine presence) is among them. Jesus replaces Torah with himself ('in my name,' eis to emon onoma) as the gathering point that guarantees divine presence. The phrase 'there I am' (ekei eimi) may echo the divine self-disclosure formula of the Old Testament. In context, this assures the community that their discipline decisions are made in Jesus's presence, not by human authority alone.
21. Peter's suggestion of seven times is already generous — some rabbinic traditions limited the obligation to forgive the same person to three times (based on Amos 1:3, 'for three transgressions'). Peter doubles it and adds one for good measure. The number seven also carries symbolic weight as the number of completeness. Peter assumes forgiveness must have a reasonable upper limit.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Amos 1:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The Greek hebdomekontakis hepta is ambiguous — it can mean either 'seventy-seven times' or 'seventy times seven' (490). Either way, the point is the same: Jesus is not setting a higher limit but abolishing limits altogether. The number may deliberately invert Genesis 4:24, where Lamech boasts of seventy-sevenfold vengeance. Where Lamech's vengeance was boundless, Jesus's forgiveness must be equally boundless.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 4:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The introductory formula homoiothe he basileia ton ouranon ('the kingdom of heaven may be compared to') introduces one of Matthew's most powerful parables. The phrase synarai logon ('settle accounts, take a reckoning') is a financial term — the king is auditing his servants' management of royal funds. The 'servants' (douloi) in a royal context are high-ranking officials entrusted with significant resources.
24. Ten thousand talents (myrion talanton) is a deliberately absurd sum. A talent was the largest unit of currency, and ten thousand (myrioi) was the largest named number in Greek. The total would be roughly equivalent to 200,000 years of a laborer's wages — an unpayable debt, the entire annual tax revenue of a major province several times over. The exaggeration is the point: this is how large human sin-debt is before God.
25. The sale of a debtor and his family into slavery was legally practiced in the ancient Near East (cf. 2 Kings 4:1, Nehemiah 5:5). Even this drastic measure would raise only a tiny fraction of ten thousand talents — the gesture is more punitive than practical. The inclusion of 'wife and children and everything he had' underscores the totality of the ruin.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 4:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Nehemiah 5:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The verb prosekynei ('prostrated himself, worshipped') indicates complete submission. The verb makrothymeson ('be patient, be long-suffering') literally means 'be long-tempered' — the opposite of short-tempered. The servant's promise to 'repay everything' (panta apodoso soi) is transparently absurd given the size of the debt — but desperation makes impossible promises. The irony is that the master does something far better than patience: he forgives the debt entirely.

27. The verb *splanchnistheis* ('moved with compassion') is the same visceral term used of Jesus in 15:32 — gut-level mercy. The verb *apheeken* ('forgave, released, let go') is the standard term for forgiveness in the New Testament. The master does not merely defer payment or reduce the amount — he cancels the entire astronomical debt. This is the parable's image of God's forgiveness: total, unmerited, beyond all reasonable expectation.
28. The contrast is devastating. A hundred denarii was about four months' wages for a day laborer — a real debt, but roughly one six-hundred-thousandth of ten thousand talents. The physical violence (*kratesas auton epnigen*, 'seized him and began to choke him') is shocking after the mercy just received. The verb *pnigo* ('to choke, to strangle') is graphic. The demand 'Pay back what you owe' (*apodos ei ti opheileis*) uses the same language the servant used in his own plea (v. 26) — he has learned nothing from his own experience of mercy.
29. The fellow servant's plea is virtually identical to the first servant's plea in verse 26 — the same posture (falling down), the same words (*makrothymeson*, 'be patient'), the same promise to repay. The parallel is deliberately precise so that the first servant's refusal in the next verse is maximally damning. The difference is that this promise is actually keepable — a hundred denarii could be repaid.
30. The blunt 'he refused' (*ouk eethelen*, literally 'he was not willing') stands in stark contrast to the master's compassion. Imprisonment for debt was common in the ancient world, though it paradoxically made repayment harder since the prisoner could not earn. The verb *ebalen* ('threw') conveys harsh treatment.
31. The fellow servants' distress (*elypethesan sphodra*) and their report to the master serve as witnesses within the parable. The verb *diesaphesan* ('reported clearly, explained in detail') implies they gave a thorough account. The community of servants functions as a moral check — they recognize the injustice and bring it to the authority who can act.
32. The address *doule ponere* ('wicked servant') is a judgment — the servant's wickedness is not the original debt but his refusal to extend the mercy he received. The master's words make the logic explicit: 'I forgave you... because you pleaded' — the forgiveness was real, complete, and generous. What follows reveals the condition that was always implicit.
33. The verb *edei* ('it was necessary, you ought to have') expresses moral obligation — receiving mercy creates the duty to show mercy. The verb *eleesai* ('to show mercy, to have compassion') echoes the prayer of 'Lord, have mercy' (*kyrie, eleeson*) that runs through the Gospel. The question is rhetorical: the answer is obvious, and the servant's failure is inexcusable.
34. The verb *paredoken* ('handed over') is the same verb used for Jesus being 'handed over' to death (17:22, 26:15). The *basanistais* ('torturers, jailers who torture') indicates not merely imprisonment but active punishment. Since the debt of ten thousand talents can never be repaid, the punishment is effectively permanent. The parable's ending is deliberately harsh — unforgiveness brings devastating consequences.
35. The application is direct and severe: 'my heavenly Father will do the same to you.' The qualifier 'from your heart' (*apo ton kardion hymon*) rules out mere formal or verbal forgiveness — the forgiveness must be genuine, internal, and complete. This connects to 6:14-15 (the Lord's Prayer commentary) and 5:23-24 (reconciliation before worship). The entire discourse that began with a question about greatness ends with a warning about the necessity of heartfelt forgiveness.

19

Summary: *Matthew 19 marks Jesus's departure from Galilee toward Judea and his final journey to Jerusalem. The chapter addresses marriage, divorce, and celibacy in response to Pharisaic testing; Jesus blesses children who are brought to him; and a rich young man asks what he must do to inherit eternal life, only to depart in sorrow when told to sell everything. Jesus's declaration that it is easier for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom provokes the disciples' astonished question, 'Who then can be saved?' The chapter closes with Peter's question about the disciples' reward and Jesus's promise of the twelve thrones and the hundredfold return.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jesus's teaching on divorce is one of his most direct engagements with Mosaic law. He distinguishes between what Moses permitted (divorce certificate, Deuteronomy 24:1) and what God intended from the beginning (permanent one-flesh union, Genesis 1:27, 2:24). The 'exception clause' (*porneia*, v. 9) is unique to Matthew and has generated centuries of interpretation. The rich young man episode reveals the radical economic demands of discipleship — the man is not condemned for immorality but for attachment to wealth. The disciples' shock ('Who then can be saved?') shows that wealth was commonly understood as a sign of divine favor, making Jesus's teaching genuinely disorienting.*

Translation Friction: *The exception clause 'except for sexual immorality' (*me epi porneia*) in verse 9 is unique to Matthew (absent from Mark 10:11, Luke 16:18). The meaning of *porneia* is debated — it could refer to adultery, incest, premarital unfaithfulness during betrothal, or sexual immorality broadly. We render the Greek term and note the debate. The disciples' reaction in verse 10 ('it is better not to marry') suggests they found*

Jesus's teaching restrictive. Jesus's response about 'eunuchs for the kingdom' (v. 12) is unusual language that has been interpreted variously. The 'eye of a needle' saying (v. 24) is clearly hyperbolic; attempts to identify it as a small gate in Jerusalem are medieval inventions without ancient support.

Connections: The divorce teaching connects to Genesis 1:27 and 2:24 (creation ordinance), Deuteronomy 24:1-4 (Mosaic concession), and Malachi 2:13-16 ('God hates divorce'). The blessing of children connects back to 18:1-5. The rich young man's question echoes Deuteronomy 30:15-20 (choose life). Jesus's promise of twelve thrones (v. 28) connects to Daniel 7:9 (thrones set up) and Luke 22:28-30. The 'regeneration' (palingenesia, v. 28) is a term used in Stoic philosophy for cosmic renewal and here refers to the eschatological new creation.

¹When Jesus had finished these words, he left Galilee and went to the region of Judea beyond the Jordan. ²Large crowds followed him, and he healed them there. ³Some Pharisees came to him to test him and asked, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any reason?" ⁴He answered, "Have you not read that the one who created them from the beginning made them male and female, ⁵Stated, For this cause will a man leave Father and mother, and will cleave to his wife — then they twain will be one flesh? ⁶So they are no longer two but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let no person separate." ⁷They said to him, "Why then did Moses command a certificate of divorce to be given, and to send her away?" ⁸He said to them, "Moses permitted you to divorce your wives because of your hardness of heart, but from the beginning it was not this way. ⁹I tell you that whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another woman commits adultery." ¹⁰The disciples said to him, "If such is the case of a man with his wife, it is better not to marry." ¹¹He said to them, "Not everyone can accept this word, but only those to whom it has been given. ¹²For there are eunuchs who were born that way from their mother's womb, there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by others, and there are eunuchs who have made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of heaven. Let the one who is able to accept this accept it." ¹³Then children were brought to him so that he might lay his hands on them and pray. The disciples rebuked them. ¹⁴But Jesus said, "Let the children come to me, and do not hinder them, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such as these." ¹⁵After laying his hands on them, he went on from there. ¹⁶And someone came up to him and said, "Teacher, what good thing must I do to have eternal life?" ¹⁷He said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only one who is good. But if you want to enter into life, keep the commandments." ¹⁸He said to him, "Which ones?" Jesus said, "You shall not murder, you shall not commit adultery, you shall not steal, you shall not bear false witness, ¹⁹Honour your Father and your mother — and, you shalt love your neighbour as thyself. ²⁰The young man said to him, "I have kept all these. What do I still lack?" ²¹Jesus said to him, "If you want to be complete, go, sell your possessions and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me." ²²When the young man heard this, he went away grieving, for he had many possessions. ²³Jesus said to his disciples, "Truly I tell you, it will be hard for a rich person to enter the kingdom of heaven. ²⁴Again I tell you, it is easier for a camel to pass through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God." ²⁵When the disciples heard this, they were utterly astonished and asked, "Who then can be saved?" ²⁶Jesus looked at them and said, "With people this is impossible, but with God all things are possible." ²⁷Then Peter answered him, "See, we have left everything and followed you. What then will there be for us?" ²⁸Jesus said to them, "Truly I tell you, in the renewal of all things, when the Son of Man sits on his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also sit on twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel. ²⁹And everyone who has left houses or brothers or sisters or father or mother or children or fields for the sake of my name will receive a hundred times as much and will inherit eternal life. ³⁰But many who are first will be last, and the last first."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formula 'when Jesus had finished these words' (hote etelesen ho Iesous tous logous toutous) marks the end of the fourth discourse (chapter 18), paralleling the formula at the end of each major discourse in Matthew (7:28, 11:1, 13:53, 19:1, 26:1). The phrase 'beyond the Jordan' (peran tou Iordanou) refers to Perea, the region east of the Jordan. This marks the beginning of Jesus's final journey toward Jerusalem.
2. The summary statement of healing serves as a transition, indicating that Jesus's ministry continues even as the narrative shifts geographically toward Jerusalem. The crowds' following (ekoloutheesan) uses the verb that regularly describes discipleship.
3. The participle peirazontes ('testing') marks hostile intent. The phrase kata pasan aitian ('for any reason') reflects the debate between the rabbinic schools of Hillel and Shammai. Hillel's school allowed divorce for virtually any cause (including a burnt meal); Shammai's school restricted it to sexual immorality. The Pharisees are asking Jesus to take a side in a live controversy.

4. The phrase 'have you not read' (ouk anegnote) is a pointed challenge to biblical scholars — of course they have read it, but they have not understood it. Jesus appeals past the Mosaic legislation to the creation narrative (Genesis 1:27), establishing God's original design as the authoritative standard. The phrase *ap' arches* ('from the beginning') grounds the argument in the creation order.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Jesus now quotes Genesis 2:24. The verb *kollethesetai* ('will be joined, will be united, will cling to') is a strong term suggesting permanent adhesion. The phrase 'one flesh' (*sarka mian*) describes a union that creates a new entity — not merely a legal arrangement but an ontological change. The logic builds toward the conclusion in verse 6.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *synezeyxen* ('joined together, yoked together') is a strong term — the same root as 'yoke' (*zeugos*). God himself is identified as the agent of the union, not merely the officiant. The prohibition 'let no person separate' (*anthropos me chorizeto*) places the onus on human beings: divorce is a human act that undoes what God has done. Jesus transcends the Hillel-Shammai debate by returning to creation theology.
7. The Pharisees cite Deuteronomy 24:1-4 as a counterargument. Note their verb: they say Moses 'commanded' (*eneteilato*) divorce. Jesus will correct this in verse 8 — Moses did not command divorce; he permitted it. The *biblion apostasiou* ('certificate of divorce, document of separation') was a legal document that freed the woman to remarry. The Pharisees treat the Mosaic provision as normative; Jesus will treat it as a concession.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 24:1-4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Jesus makes two crucial corrections. First, Moses 'permitted' (*epetrepsen*), not 'commanded' — divorce is a concession, not an ideal. Second, the reason for the concession is 'hardness of heart' (*sklerokardia*, literally 'hard-heartedness'), a term used in the Old Testament for Israel's stubborn resistance to God's will (cf. Deuteronomy 10:16, Jeremiah 4:4). Jesus's phrase 'from the beginning' (*ap' arches*) reasserts the creation ideal as the standard by which all subsequent legislation must be measured.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 10:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 4:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The 'exception clause' (*me epi porneia*, 'except for sexual immorality') is unique to Matthew (cf. 5:32). The Greek *porneia* is broader than *moicheia* ('adultery') and can encompass any serious sexual transgression — its exact scope here is heavily debated. Some scholars argue it refers specifically to incestuous marriages (as in Acts 15:20, 29), others to adultery, others to premarital unfaithfulness. The SBLGNT text does not include the final clause about marrying a divorced woman, which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV tradition (*Textus Receptus*).
10. The disciples' reaction reveals how radical Jesus's teaching is — they conclude that if divorce is so restricted, marriage itself becomes too risky. The phrase *ou sympherei gamesai* ('it is not advantageous to marry') uses the language of practical calculation. Their response shows they understood Jesus to be significantly restricting the prevailing norms.
11. The phrase *ton logon touton* ('this word') is ambiguous — does 'this word' refer to the disciples' suggestion about not marrying, or to Jesus's teaching about divorce? The context suggests the former: not everyone has the gift of celibacy. The passive 'it has been given' (*dedotai*) implies God as the giver — celibacy, like marriage, is a divine calling.
12. Jesus identifies three categories of celibacy: congenital (born eunuchs), imposed (castrated by others, as was common for court officials), and voluntary (those who renounce marriage for the kingdom). The third category is metaphorical — Jesus is not advocating self-mutilation but describing those who voluntarily forgo marriage to devote themselves entirely to God's purposes. The closing invitation 'let the one who is able to accept this accept it' (*ho dynamenos chorein choreito*) acknowledges this is an extraordinary calling, not a universal requirement.
13. The passive *prosenechthesan* ('were brought') indicates parents bringing their children. The purpose — laying on of hands and prayer — is a request for blessing, not healing. The disciples' rebuke (*epetimesan*) suggests they thought Jesus's time was too valuable for children. This echoes their misunderstanding of 'the greatest in the kingdom' from 18:1-5 — they still have not grasped the lesson.
14. The double command — 'let' (*aphete*) and 'do not hinder' (*me koluete*) — corrects the disciples forcefully. The phrase *ton toiouton* ('of such as these') means 'people who are like these children' — those who come with the humility, dependence, and lack of status that characterize children. This reiterates the teaching of 18:3-4.
15. Jesus does exactly what was requested — he lays hands on the children. The simple narrative detail contrasts with the disciples' attempted barrier. Matthew's account is briefer than Mark's (10:16), which adds that Jesus embraced the children.
16. Matthew's version differs from Mark's ('Good Teacher'). Here the man asks 'what good thing' (*ti agathon*) rather than addressing Jesus as 'Good Teacher.' The question assumes that eternal life (*zoe aionios*) can be secured by performing a specific act. The man's approach is sincere — he is not testing Jesus — but his framework is transactional: what must I do to earn this?
17. Matthew's version redirects the question: 'Why do you ask me about the good?' rather than Mark's 'Why do you call me good?' (Mark 10:18). The statement 'there is only one who is good' (*heis estin ho agathos*) points to God as the sole source of goodness. Jesus's answer — 'keep the commandments' (*tereson tas entolas*) — meets the man where he is: if you want to approach this through doing, then the commandments are the

starting point.

18. The man's follow-up question 'Which ones?' (poias) may reflect genuine uncertainty or a desire for a specific checklist. Jesus cites commandments from the second table of the Decalogue — those governing human relationships (sixth through ninth commandments). The absence of the first four commandments (duties toward God) is notable and may be deliberate, as the man's real deficiency involves his relationship with God, not his ethical conduct.
19. Jesus adds the fifth commandment (honor parents) and Leviticus 19:18 ('love your neighbor as yourself'). The addition of the love command is significant — it summarizes the ethical intent of all the commandments Jesus has listed and signals that mere prohibition is insufficient; positive love is required.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Matthew identifies the man as neaniskos ('young man'), providing a detail the other Synoptics convey differently (Mark says Jesus loved him, Luke calls him a ruler). His claim to have kept all the commandments (panta tauta ephylaxa) is presented sincerely, not arrogantly. His question 'What do I still lack?' (ti eti hystero) reveals an awareness that commandment-keeping has not brought the assurance of eternal life he seeks.
21. The adjective teleios ('perfect, complete, mature') does not mean sinless perfection but wholeness — the young man's lack is not moral failure but incomplete devotion. The sequence of commands — go, sell, give, come, follow — dismantles the barrier between the man and full discipleship. 'Treasure in heaven' (thesauron en ouranois) contrasts with earthly treasure (cf. 6:19-21). The final imperative 'follow me' (akolouthei moi) is the definitive invitation to discipleship.
22. The participle lypoumenos ('grieving, sorrowing') indicates that the departure was not callous but painful. He understood what Jesus was asking and could not bring himself to do it. The phrase 'many possessions' (ktemata polla) explains his grief — his wealth owned him more than he owned it. He is the only person in the Gospels who is explicitly called to follow Jesus and walks away.
23. The adverb dyskolos ('with difficulty, hardly') indicates not impossibility but severe difficulty. The solemn introduction 'Truly I tell you' elevates this to authoritative teaching. In Jewish tradition, wealth was often viewed as a sign of divine blessing (cf. Deuteronomy 28:1-14), making Jesus's warning deeply counterintuitive.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 28:1-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The image is deliberately absurd — a camel (kamelon), the largest animal in Palestine, through the eye of a needle (trypematos raphidos), the smallest opening imaginable. Medieval interpreters invented a small gate called 'the eye of the needle' in Jerusalem, but no such gate is historically attested. The hyperbole is the point: this is humanly impossible. Matthew uses 'kingdom of God' (basileia tou theou) here rather than his usual 'kingdom of heaven,' perhaps following his source.
25. The verb exeplessonto ('were utterly astonished, were struck with amazement') is one of the strongest terms for shock in Greek. Their reasoning is clear: if even the rich — those who appear most blessed by God — cannot enter the kingdom, then who can? The question tis ara dynatai sotheenai ('Who then can be saved?') assumes what many first-century Jews assumed: wealth indicates divine favor. If God's favorites cannot be saved, salvation is impossible for everyone.
26. The verb emblepsas ('looked directly at, fixed his gaze on') indicates an intentional, significant look. Jesus does not soften his teaching about wealth — he confirms it is humanly impossible. But he adds the decisive qualifier: para theo panta dynata ('with God all things are possible'), echoing Genesis 18:14 ('Is anything too hard for the LORD?'). Salvation is God's work, not a human achievement. This reframes the entire conversation from 'What must I do?' (v. 16) to 'What can God do?'
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 18:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Peter's statement is factual — the disciples have left occupations, homes, and families (4:18-22). His question ti ara estai hemin ('What then will there be for us?') is characteristically blunt. It raises the issue of reward for sacrifice, which Jesus answers without rebuke, suggesting the question is legitimate even if the framing is self-interested.
28. The word palingenesia ('regeneration, renewal, rebirth') appears only here and in Titus 3:5 in the New Testament. In Stoic philosophy it referred to the cosmic renewal after periodic destruction. Here it refers to the eschatological restoration of all things — the new creation. 'His glorious throne' (thronou doxes autou) alludes to Daniel 7:9-14. The twelve thrones for the twelve apostles judging twelve tribes presents the reconstituted Israel under the authority of Jesus and his chosen leaders.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:9-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The promise extends beyond the twelve to 'everyone' (pas hostis) who sacrifices for Jesus. The list covers property (houses, fields) and family relationships — the full range of human attachment. The 'hundredfold' (hekatontaplasia) return and 'eternal life' (zoen aionion) represent both present-age blessings (new community, new family in the church) and future-age consummation. The SBLGNT omits 'wife' (gynaika), which appears in some manuscripts.

30. This saying reverses human expectations of status and reward — a theme running throughout this chapter (children over adults, poor over rich, servants over rulers). The reversal formula 'first/last, last/first' frames the parable of the workers in the vineyard that immediately follows (20:1-16), which also ends with this saying. The word 'many' (polloi) suggests the reversal is not absolute but widespread.

20

Summary: *Matthew 20 opens with the parable of the workers in the vineyard, where laborers hired at different hours all receive the same pay — a denarius — provoking complaint from those who worked longest. Jesus uses this to illustrate that God's generosity transcends human calculations of merit. The chapter then contains the third and most detailed passion prediction, the ambitious request of James and John's mother for her sons to sit at Jesus's right and left in his kingdom, Jesus's teaching that greatness means servanthood, and the healing of two blind men near Jericho.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vineyard parable is unique to Matthew and is one of the most provocative stories Jesus tells. It offends our sense of fairness — the workers who labored all day in the heat receive the same wage as those who worked one hour. The landowner's response ('Am I not allowed to do what I choose with what belongs to me? Or are you envious because I am generous?') reframes the issue from justice to generosity. The third passion prediction (vv. 17-19) is the most specific yet, adding details about being handed to Gentiles, mocking, flogging, and crucifixion. The request for honored seats and Jesus's response introduce the cup metaphor for suffering and culminate in the definitive statement of his mission: 'The Son of Man came not to be served but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many.'*

Translation Friction: *The parable's apparent unfairness is the point — God's grace does not operate by the merit-based system humans expect. We render the landowner's question in verse 15 as closely as possible to preserve the challenge. The SBLGNT places James and John's mother as the one making the request (v. 20), while Mark 10:35 has the brothers themselves asking — Matthew may be softening the brothers' image. The word *lytron* ('ransom,' v. 28) has significant theological weight and has been central to atonement theology; we render it directly without interpretive expansion.*

Connections: *The vineyard parable connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (God's vineyard = Israel) and echoes the 'first shall be last' saying from 19:30. The third passion prediction fulfills the pattern established in 16:21 and 17:22-23. The 'cup' metaphor (v. 22) anticipates Gethsemane (26:39). The 'ransom' saying (v. 28) connects to Isaiah 53:10-12 (the servant who bears others' sins) and the Passover redemption theology. The Jericho healing marks the last stop before Jerusalem.*

¹"For the kingdom of heaven is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire workers for his vineyard. ²After agreeing with the workers on a denarius for the day, he sent them into his vineyard. ³Going out about the third hour, he saw others standing idle in the marketplace ⁴Stated to them. Go you also into the vineyard, and whatsoever is right I will give you. Then they traveled their way. ⁵So they went. He went out again about the sixth hour and the ninth hour and did the same thing. ⁶About the eleventh hour he went out and found others standing around, and he said to them, 'Why have you been standing here idle all day?' ⁷They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.' He said to them, 'You go into the vineyard too.' ⁸When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his manager, 'Call the workers and pay them their wages, beginning with the last and ending with the first.' ⁹When those hired about the eleventh hour came, each received a denarius. ¹⁰When the first came, they expected to receive more, but each of them also received a denarius. ¹¹When they received it, they grumbled against the landowner, ¹²Indeed, declaring, These last have wrought but one hour, and you have created them as equal to us, which have borne the burden and heat of the day. ¹³But he answered one of them, 'Friend, I am not being unfair to you. Did you not agree with me for a denarius? ¹⁴Take what is yours and go. I choose to give to this last worker the same as I gave to you. ¹⁵Am I not allowed to do what I want with what belongs to me? Or is your eye envious because I am generous?' ¹⁶So the last will be first, and the first last." ¹⁷As Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, he took the twelve disciples aside privately and said to them on the way, ¹⁸"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and scribes. They will condemn him to death ¹⁹Indeed, will deliver him to the Gentiles to

mock, and to scourge, and to crucify him — and the third day he will come back to life. ²⁰Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee came to him with her sons, kneeling before him and making a request. ²¹He said to her, "What do you want?" She said to him, "Say that these two sons of mine will sit, one at your right hand and one at your left, in your kingdom." ²²Jesus answered, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?" They said to him, "We are able." ²³He said to them, "You will drink my cup, but to sit at my right and at my left is not mine to grant. That is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father." ²⁴When the ten heard about this, they were indignant with the two brothers. ²⁵But Jesus called them together and said, "You know that the rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their great ones exercise authority over them. ²⁶It must not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, ²⁷Whosoever will be chief in the midst of you, let him be your servant:. ²⁸Even as the Son of Man arrived not to be ministered to, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for numerous. ²⁹As they were leaving Jericho, a large crowd followed him. ³⁰And two blind men sitting beside the road, hearing that Jesus was passing by, cried out, "Lord, have mercy on us, Son of David!" ³¹The crowd rebuked them, telling them to be silent, but they cried out all the louder, "Lord, have mercy on us, Son of David!" ³²Jesus stopped and called them, saying, "What do you want me to do for you?" ³³They said to him, "Lord, let our eyes be opened." ³⁴Moved with compassion, Jesus touched their eyes, and immediately they received their sight and followed him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The parable is introduced with 'For' (gar), connecting it to the 'first shall be last' saying of 19:30. The oikodespotes ('master of the house, landowner') represents God. The vineyard (ampelon) is a traditional Old Testament symbol for Israel (Isaiah 5:1-7). Going out 'early in the morning' (hama proi) indicates the start of the workday at approximately 6:00 AM.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 5:1-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The verb symphonesas ('having agreed') indicates a mutual contract. A denarius (denarion) was the standard daily wage for a laborer. The KJV's 'penny' is misleading in modern English; we retain 'denarius' as the specific coin. The agreement establishes a just wage — the later controversy is not about underpayment but about equal payment for unequal work.
3. The 'third hour' (triten horan) is approximately 9:00 AM by Jewish reckoning (counting from sunrise). The marketplace (agora) was where day laborers gathered hoping for employment. The word argous ('idle, unemployed') does not necessarily imply laziness — these workers had no one to hire them.
4. Unlike the first group, these workers receive no specific wage agreement — only the promise of 'whatever is right' (ho ean e dikaion). The word dikaion ('right, just, fair') sets up the parable's central question about what constitutes fairness. These workers must trust the landowner's character.
5. The sixth hour is approximately noon, the ninth hour approximately 3:00 PM. The repeated hiring — at 6 AM, 9 AM, noon, and 3 PM — creates a pattern that makes the final hiring at the eleventh hour (v. 6) the climactic surprise. Each group works progressively less time.
6. The eleventh hour is approximately 5:00 PM — one hour before the workday ends at sundown. These workers have waited all day without employment. The landowner's question is not accusatory but inquisitive, and their answer (v. 7) reveals that unemployment, not laziness, is the cause.
7. Their explanation — 'no one hired us' (oudeis hemas emisthosato) — evokes sympathy. The SBLGNT does not include the additional phrase 'and whatever is right you will receive,' which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV tradition. The landowner simply sends them to work with no stated wage.
8. The instruction to pay 'from the last to the first' (arxamenos apo ton eschaton heos ton proton) is a deliberate narrative device — the first-hired must watch the last-hired receive their pay, which creates the expectation and subsequent outrage that drives the parable's point. The epitropos ('manager, steward') handles the actual payment. The evening payment complies with Leviticus 19:13 and Deuteronomy 24:15, which require same-day wages.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 19:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 24:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The eleventh-hour workers receive a full denarius for one hour of work. The phrase ana denarion ('a denarius each') emphasizes that every worker in this group received the same amount as was contracted with the first group. This is the parable's surprise — and it sets up the complaint.
10. The verb enomisan ('they supposed, expected') reveals their reasoning: if the last received a full denarius, proportional justice would give the first much more. The phrase kai autoi ('they also') emphasizes the equal treatment that the first group finds unjust. Their expectation is entirely logical by human standards — which is precisely the point.

11. The verb *egongyzon* ('grumbled, murmured') echoes Israel's murmuring against God in the wilderness (Exodus 16:7-8, Numbers 14:2). The allusion is probably deliberate: those who have been provided for complain that others have received undeserved generosity.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16:7-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 14:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The complaint is vivid and visceral: 'the burden of the day and the scorching heat' (to baros tes hemeras kai ton kausona) evokes twelve hours of physical labor under the Palestinian sun. The word *isous* ('equal') is the crux — they object not to the last group's payment but to the equality. They want hierarchical reward, not equal generosity. Their grievance feels entirely reasonable, which makes the landowner's response all the more challenging.
13. The address *hetaire* ('friend, companion') is polite but formal — Matthew uses it in contexts of gentle correction or warning (22:12, 26:50). The verb *adiko* ('I wrong, I am unjust to') directly addresses the complaint: no injustice has occurred. The contracted wage has been paid in full. The landowner's defense rests on two pillars: contractual integrity (v. 13) and sovereign generosity (v. 15).
14. The imperatives *aron* ('take') and *hype* ('go') are firm dismissals. The verb *thelo* ('I choose, I wish, I want') is the key — the landowner asserts his sovereign right to be generous beyond contractual obligation. The phrase *touto to eschato* ('to this last one') pointedly identifies the recipient of the generosity.
15. Two rhetorical questions drive the parable's theology home. The first asserts the owner's sovereign freedom over his own possessions. The second — literally 'Is your eye evil?' (ho ophthalmos sou poneros estin) — uses the Semitic idiom where an 'evil eye' denotes envy or stinginess (cf. 6:23). We render it 'envious' to capture the meaning. The word *agathos* ('good, generous') is the same word the young man used in his question to Jesus (19:16-17). The parable's God-figure claims the attribute of goodness that belongs to God alone.
16. The saying that opened this section (19:30) now closes it, forming an *inclusio*. The parable has illustrated the principle: God's generosity does not follow human hierarchies of merit. The SBLGNT does not include 'for many are called but few are chosen,' which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV tradition — that saying appears authentically at 22:14.
17. The verb *anabainon* ('going up') is geographically accurate — Jerusalem sits at approximately 2,500 feet elevation, and travelers from Jericho ascend significantly. But 'going up to Jerusalem' also carries theological weight as pilgrimage language. The private setting (*kat' idian*) indicates that the passion prediction is for the inner circle, not the crowds.
18. This third passion prediction (cf. 16:21, 17:22-23) is the most detailed. The verb *paradothesetai* ('will be handed over') adds the theme of betrayal/delivery. For the first time, the role of the Jewish leadership (chief priests and scribes) in condemning Jesus is specified alongside the role of the Gentiles (v. 19). The phrase *katakrinousin auton thanato* ('they will condemn him to death') indicates a formal legal sentence.
19. The Gentiles (*ethnesin*) are the Romans, who alone had the authority to execute by crucifixion. The three infinitives — *empaizai* ('to mock'), *mastigosai* ('to flog'), *staurosai* ('to crucify') — describe the precise sequence of the passion narrative as it will unfold in chapters 26-27. This is the first time Jesus explicitly names crucifixion (*staurosai*) as the method of his death. The passive 'will be raised' (*egertheesetai*) affirms God's final action beyond the human violence.
20. Matthew places the mother as the spokesperson, while Mark 10:35 has James and John making the request directly. This may reflect Matthew's tendency to soften the portrayal of the apostles. The sons of Zebedee are James and John (4:21). The participle *proskynousa* ('kneeling, worshipping') indicates the seriousness of the approach.
21. The request for seats at the right and left (*ek dexion* and *ex euonymon*) of the king was a request for the two highest positions of honor and authority in the coming kingdom. The mother has heard the promise of twelve thrones (19:28) and wants the best seats for her sons. The irony — visible only in retrospect — is that the positions at Jesus's right and left at his 'enthronement' will be occupied by two crucified criminals (27:38).
22. Jesus shifts from the mother to the sons (the verb *oidate* and *aisteisthe* are second person plural). The 'cup' (*poterion*) is a well-established Old Testament metaphor for suffering and divine judgment (Psalm 75:8, Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). The SBLGNT does not include the reference to baptism, which appears in Mark 10:38 and some Matthew manuscripts. The brothers' confident 'We are able' (*dynametha*) is sincere but uninformed — they do not yet know what the cup contains.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 75:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 51:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 25:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Jesus confirms their future suffering (James was martyred, Acts 12:2; John, according to tradition, endured exile) but refuses to grant the seating request, deferring to the Father's sovereign arrangement. The passive *hetoimastai* ('it has been prepared') indicates prior divine planning. Jesus's refusal reveals something about his self-understanding: he operates within the Father's authority, not independently of it.

- 24.** The verb *eganaktesan* ('were indignant, were angry') reveals that the other ten disciples share the same ambition — they are not offended by the desire for status but by the attempt to secure it first. Their anger provides the occasion for Jesus's teaching on servant leadership.
- 25.** The verbs *katakryieousin* ('lord it over, dominate') and *katexousiazousin* ('exercise authority over, tyrannize') both use the prefix *kata-* ('down upon'), indicating oppressive, top-down power. Jesus describes the standard model of leadership in the Roman world — and then explicitly rejects it for his community.
- 26.** The prohibition *ouch houtos estai en hymin* ('it must not be this way among you') is categorical. The word *diakonos* ('servant, minister, one who serves at table') was not a prestigious role — it denoted someone who waited on others at meals. Jesus redefines greatness as service, inverting the power structure he has just described.
- 27.** The escalation from *diakonos* ('servant,' v. 26) to *doulos* ('slave') intensifies the demand. A *doulos* had no rights, no autonomy, no personal agenda — only the master's will. The word 'first' (*protos*) echoes the parable's concern with first and last (vv. 8, 16) and the disciples' desire for preeminence.
- 28.** This is one of the most theologically dense sentences in the Gospels. Jesus defines his entire mission in terms of service and self-sacrifice. The word *lytron* ('ransom') appears only here and in Mark 10:45 in the Gospels. It refers to the price paid to free a slave or prisoner. The preposition *anti* ('in place of, instead of') indicates substitution — Jesus's life given in exchange for 'many' (*pollon*). The language echoes Isaiah 53:10-12, where the Servant of the LORD bears the sin of many. 'Many' (*polloi*) is a Semitic inclusive term that often means 'all' (cf. Romans 5:15-19).
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:10-12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** Jericho, about fifteen miles northeast of Jerusalem, was the last major stop on the pilgrim route to Jerusalem. The 'large crowd' (*ochlos polys*) suggests the growing numbers of Passover pilgrims joining Jesus as he approaches the capital.
- 30.** Matthew has two blind men where Mark 10:46 names one (Bartimaeus). This is consistent with Matthew's tendency to double figures (cf. two demoniacs in 8:28 where Mark has one). The address 'Son of David' (*huios Daud*) is a messianic title acknowledging Jesus as the expected Davidic king. The plea 'have mercy' (*eleeson*) echoes the Canaanite woman's cry (15:22) — the same faith-filled appeal from those on society's margins.
- 31.** The crowd's attempt to silence the blind men parallels the disciples' attempt to send away the children (19:13) and the Canaanite woman (15:23). The pattern is consistent: human gatekeepers try to prevent the marginal from reaching Jesus, and the desperate refuse to be silenced. The comparative *meizon* ('louder, more urgently') shows their persistence increasing under pressure.
- 32.** Jesus's stopping (*stas*) is significant — he is on his way to Jerusalem, to his death, yet he stops for two blind beggars. The question 'What do you want me to do for you?' (*ti thelete poieso hymin*) is the same question he effectively asked the mother of James and John (v. 21). The contrast is pointed: she wanted status; they want sight.
- 33.** Their request is simple and direct: 'that our eyes may be opened' (*hina anoigosin hoi ophthalmoi hemon*). The opening of blind eyes is a messianic sign (Isaiah 35:5, 42:7), so their request implicitly affirms the 'Son of David' title they have used. The passive *anoigosin* ('may be opened') acknowledges that they cannot heal themselves.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 35:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The verb *splanchnistheis* ('moved with compassion') again denotes the visceral, gut-level mercy characteristic of Jesus (cf. 9:36, 14:14, 15:32). The physical touch (*hepsato ton ommaton*, 'touched their eyes') is not strictly necessary for healing — Jesus has healed at a distance — but adds personal, intimate contact. The immediate result (*eutheos*) and their following (*ekoloutheesan*) indicate both physical healing and discipleship. As Jesus enters Jerusalem for the final time, he does so accompanied by those whose eyes he has opened — a fitting symbolic conclusion to the journey.

21

Summary: *Matthew 21 marks the beginning of Jesus's final week in Jerusalem. He enters the city riding on a donkey in fulfillment of Zechariah 9:9, acclaimed by crowds shouting 'Hosanna to the Son of David.' He then drives the merchants and money changers from the temple, declaring it should be a house of prayer. After cursing a barren fig tree -- which withers immediately -- Jesus teaches about faith and prayer. The chief priests and elders challenge his authority, and Jesus responds with three confrontational parables: the two sons, the wicked tenants, and (beginning in chapter 22) the wedding feast. The chapter escalates the conflict between Jesus and the Jerusalem religious establishment that will culminate in his arrest and crucifixion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Matthew's account of the entry uniquely mentions two animals -- a donkey and a colt -- following the parallelism of the Zechariah quotation literally. The temple action is presented not merely as reform but as prophetic judgment: Jesus quotes both Isaiah 56:7 and Jeremiah 7:11, framing the temple establishment as having betrayed its purpose. The fig tree episode functions as an enacted parable of Israel's spiritual barrenness. The parable of the wicked tenants is an allegory*

transparent enough that the chief priests recognize themselves in it (v. 45), yet its Old Testament foundation in Isaiah 5 gives it prophetic weight beyond mere polemic.

Translation Friction: The two-donkey detail in verses 2-7 has puzzled interpreters. Matthew appears to read Zechariah 9:9's Hebrew parallelism ('a donkey, even a colt, the foal of a donkey') as referring to two separate animals, while Mark and Luke mention only one. We render Matthew's text as written. The immediate withering of the fig tree (v. 19) differs from Mark's two-day sequence. Matthew has compressed the timeline, presenting the miracle and its lesson as a single dramatic unit. The stone quotation in verse 42 (Psalm 118:22-23) was a key text in early Christian apologetics and appears across multiple New Testament books.

Connections: The triumphal entry fulfills Zechariah 9:9 and echoes Solomon's royal procession on David's mule (1 Kings 1:33-40). 'Hosanna' comes from Psalm 118:25-26, a Hallel psalm sung at Passover and Tabernacles. The temple cleansing connects to Malachi 3:1-3 ('the Lord whom you seek will suddenly come to his temple'). The fig tree echoes Jeremiah 8:13 and Hosea 9:10. The parable of the wicked tenants draws on Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard). The rejected cornerstone (Psalm 118:22-23) ties the entry psalm to the passion narrative.

¹When they drew near to Jerusalem and came to Bethphage, to the Mount of Olives, Jesus sent two disciples, ²Declaring to them, Go into the village over opposed to you, and right away you will find an ass tied, and a colt with her — loose them, and bring them to me. ³If anyone says anything to you, say, 'The Lord needs them,' and he will send them at once." ⁴This took place to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet: ⁵"Say to the daughter of Zion, 'Look, your king is coming to you, humble and mounted on a donkey, and on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'" ⁶The disciples went and did as Jesus had directed them. ⁷They brought the donkey and the colt and placed their cloaks on them, and he sat on them. ⁸A very large crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches from the trees and spread them on the road. ⁹The crowds going ahead of him and those following were shouting, "Hosanna to the Son of David! Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord! Hosanna in the highest!" ¹⁰When he entered Jerusalem, the whole city was stirred up, saying, "Who is this?" ¹¹The crowds said, "This is the prophet Jesus, from Nazareth of Galilee." ¹²Jesus entered the temple and drove out all who were selling and buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those selling doves. ¹³He said to them, "It is written, 'My house will be called a house of prayer,' but you are making it a den of robbers." ¹⁴The blind and the lame went to him in the temple. And he healed them. ¹⁵But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the remarkable things he did, and the children shouting in the temple, "Hosanna to the Son of David!" they became indignant ¹⁶Stated to him, Hearst you what these say? And Jesus says to them, Yea. Have you never read, Out of the mouth of babes and sucklings you have perfected praise? ¹⁷And leaving them, he went out of the city to Bethany and spent the night there. ¹⁸In the morning, as he was returning to the city, he was hungry. ¹⁹Seeing a fig tree by the road, he went to it and found nothing on it except leaves only. He said to it, "May no fruit ever come from you again." And the fig tree withered at once. ²⁰When the disciples saw it, they marveled, saying, "How did the fig tree wither so quickly?" ²¹Jesus answered them, "Truly I say to you, if you have faith and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to the fig tree, but even if you say to this mountain, 'Be lifted up and thrown into the sea,' it will happen. ²²And whatever you ask in prayer with faith, you will receive." ²³When he entered the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came up to him as he was teaching and said, "By what authority are you doing these things, and who gave you this authority?" ²⁴Jesus answered them, "I also will ask you one question, and if you answer me, I will tell you by what authority I do these things. ²⁵The baptism of John -- where was it from? From heaven or from men?" They discussed it among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him?' ²⁶But if we say, 'From men,' we are afraid of the crowd, for they all regard John as a prophet." ²⁷So they answered Jesus, "We do not know." He said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things. ²⁸"What do you think? A man had two sons. He went to the first and said, 'Son, go and work in the vineyard today.' ²⁹He answered, 'I will not,' but afterward he changed his mind and went. ³⁰He went to the other and said the same thing. He answered, 'I will, sir,' but did not go. ³¹Which of the two did the will of his father?" They said, "The first." Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, the tax collectors and the prostitutes are entering the kingdom of God ahead of you. ³²For John came to you in the way of righteousness, and you did not believe him, but the tax collectors and the prostitutes believed him.

And even when you saw this, you did not afterward change your minds and believe him. ³³"Listen to another parable. There was a landowner who planted a vineyard and put a fence around it, dug a winepress in it, and built a watchtower. Then he leased it to tenants and went to another country. ³⁴When the season of fruit drew near, he sent his servants to the tenants to collect his produce. ³⁵But the tenants seized his servants, beat one, killed another, and stoned another. ³⁶Again he sent other servants, more than the first, and they treated them the same way. ³⁷Finally he sent his son to them, saying, 'They will respect my son.' ³⁸But when the tenants saw the son, they said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him and take his inheritance.' ³⁹They seized him, threw him out of the vineyard, and killed him. ⁴⁰When the owner of the vineyard comes, what will he do to those tenants?" ⁴¹They said to him, "He will bring those wretches to a wretched end and lease the vineyard to other tenants who will give him the fruits in their seasons." ⁴²Jesus said to them, "Have you never read in the Scriptures: 'The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone; this was the Lord's doing, and it is marvelous in our eyes'? ⁴³Therefore I tell you, the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and given to a people producing its fruits. ⁴⁴The one who falls on this stone will be broken to pieces, and it will crush anyone on whom it falls." ⁴⁵When the chief priests and the Pharisees heard his parables, they knew he was speaking about them. ⁴⁶Although they wanted to arrest him, they feared the crowds, because they regarded him as a prophet.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bethphage ('house of unripe figs') was a village on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, near Bethany. The Mount of Olives carried eschatological significance from Zechariah 14:4, where the LORD would stand on it in the day of final deliverance. Jesus's approach from the east mirrors Ezekiel's vision of God's glory returning to the temple from the east (Ezekiel 43:1-4).
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 14:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 43:1-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. Matthew uniquely mentions both the mother donkey (onon) and the colt (polon), reading Zechariah 9:9 as referring to two animals. Jesus's foreknowledge of the donkeys' exact location demonstrates prophetic authority. The untying of a tethered animal without the owner's prior consent required the explanation given in the next verse.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 9:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The title *ho kyrios* ('the Lord') here may function as either 'the master/owner' or with the fuller theological sense of 'the Lord.' The ambiguity may be deliberate -- Jesus claims sovereign right over the animals while the owner hears a reasonable request. The immediate compliance anticipated suggests prior arrangement or divine authority recognized.
4. This is Matthew's characteristic fulfillment formula (cf. 1:22, 2:15, 4:14, 8:17, 12:17, 13:35). The prophet is Zechariah, though Matthew does not name him. The passive *plerothē* ('might be fulfilled') indicates divine intentionality -- these events were orchestrated by God, not coincidence.
5. The quotation combines Isaiah 62:11 ('Say to the daughter of Zion') with Zechariah 9:9. The key word *praus* ('humble, gentle, meek') is the same word Jesus used of himself in 11:29 ('I am gentle and humble in heart'). In Zechariah's context, this king comes in peace, not on a warhorse. The Hebrew parallelism in Zechariah ('a donkey / a colt, the foal of a donkey') describes one animal in two ways, but Matthew's narrative presents two animals.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 9:9 -- see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 62:11 -- see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *synetaxen* ('directed, instructed, commanded') emphasizes the deliberate nature of the entry -- this was not spontaneous but a planned prophetic enactment. The disciples' obedience mirrors the pattern seen throughout Matthew.
7. The pronoun *auton* ('them') in 'he sat on them' most naturally refers to the cloaks, not both animals. The cloaks serve as an improvised saddle -- a mark of honor. The act of spreading garments echoes Jehu's anointing as king (2 Kings 9:13).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 9:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Spreading garments on the road was a gesture of royal homage (cf. 2 Kings 9:13). The cutting of branches recalls the Feast of Tabernacles (Leviticus 23:40) and the rededication of the temple under Judas Maccabeus (1 Maccabees 13:51, 2 Maccabees 10:7). The crowd instinctively treats Jesus's entry as a royal and liturgical event.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Kings 9:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 23:40 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The acclamation quotes Psalm 118:25-26, a Hallel psalm sung during Passover. 'Hosanna' (from Hebrew hoshi'a na, 'save now, please') had evolved from a plea into a shout of praise. 'Son of David' is an explicitly messianic title. 'The one who comes' (ho erchomenos) may echo Malachi 3:1 and the messianic expectation of 'the coming one' (cf. 11:3). 'In the highest' (en tois hypsistois) directs the praise heavenward.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 118:26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 3:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb *eseisthe* ('was shaken, stirred') is related to *seismos* ('earthquake') -- the same root used for the earthquake at Jesus's death (27:51) and resurrection (28:2). Matthew uses seismic language for moments of divine disruption. The city's question 'Who is this?' sets up the christological tension that dominates the rest of the Gospel.
11. The crowd identifies Jesus as 'the prophet' (ho prophetēs), possibly the eschatological prophet like Moses promised in Deuteronomy 18:15. The geographical identification 'from Nazareth of Galilee' is both factual and slightly deflating -- Galilee was considered peripheral, and Nazareth insignificant (cf. John 1:46). The crowd's answer falls short of the full confession 'Son of David' from verse 9.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Greek *hieron* refers to the broader temple complex, specifically the Court of the Gentiles where commercial activity took place. Money changers (*kollybiston*) converted Roman and Greek currency into the Tyrian shekel required for the temple tax. Doves were the offering prescribed for the poor (Leviticus 5:7, 12:8). Jesus's action targets a system that profited from worship and excluded Gentiles from their designated prayer space.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 5:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Jesus combines Isaiah 56:7 ('my house shall be called a house of prayer for all nations') with Jeremiah 7:11 ('has this house become a den of robbers in your eyes?'). The Jeremiah reference is especially pointed: in Jeremiah 7, God threatens to destroy the temple because the people treat it as a safe hideout while practicing injustice. The Greek *leston* ('robbers, bandits') is stronger than 'thieves' -- these are violent exploiters, not petty criminals.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 56:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 7:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. This detail is unique to Matthew. The blind and lame were traditionally excluded from the temple (cf. 2 Samuel 5:8, though the interpretation of that passage is debated). By healing them in the temple, Jesus enacts the restoration and inclusion that the prophets envisioned. The temple becomes what it was meant to be -- a place of divine healing and access.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 5:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The word *thaumasia* ('remarkable things, wonders') is used only here in the New Testament. The chief priests and scribes are angered not by the healings alone but by the children's messianic acclamation -- 'Hosanna to the Son of David' -- spoken in the temple itself. The Davidic title in the temple carries political and theological weight they cannot ignore.
16. Jesus quotes Psalm 8:2 (LXX), where God ordains praise from the youngest and most vulnerable. The quotation implies that the children perceive what the religious experts cannot -- or will not -- acknowledge. The verb *katertiso* ('you have prepared, perfected, established') suggests that God has deliberately arranged for this praise.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 8:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Bethany ('house of affliction' or 'house of dates') was a village about two miles east of Jerusalem on the southeastern slope of the Mount of Olives. It was the home of Mary, Martha, and Lazarus (John 11:1). Jesus's nightly withdrawal from Jerusalem during Passion Week was both practical (avoiding arrest) and symbolic (departing from the city that rejects its prophets).
18. Jesus's hunger is a reminder of his full humanity. The detail also sets up the fig tree episode as a prophetic sign-act rather than a fit of frustration -- the hunger provides the occasion, but the meaning goes far deeper.
19. The fig tree is a well-established prophetic symbol for Israel (Jeremiah 8:13, Hosea 9:10, Micah 7:1). A tree with leaves but no fruit advertises productivity it cannot deliver -- like a temple full of commerce but empty of justice. In Matthew's compressed timeline, the tree withers *parachrema* ('at once, immediately'), making the prophetic point unmistakable. Mark's account spreads this over two days.

- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 8:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 9:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Micah 7:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** The disciples focus on the speed of the miracle rather than its symbolic meaning. Their amazement (*ethaumasán*) opens the door for Jesus's teaching on faith and prayer in the following verses.
- 21.** The phrase *amen lego hymin* ('truly I say to you') is Jesus's characteristic formula for solemn pronouncement. 'This mountain' (to *orei touto*) likely refers to the Mount of Olives, visible from where they stood. Moving mountains was a Jewish metaphor for accomplishing the seemingly impossible. The verb *diakritete* ('doubt, waver') is related to the word used for Peter's doubt on the water (14:31).
- 22.** This promise is conditioned by two factors: prayer (*en te proseuche*) and faith (*pisteuontes*). It is not a blank check for material desires but a statement about the power of God channeled through trusting prayer. The present participle *pisteuontes* ('believing, having faith') indicates an ongoing disposition, not momentary confidence.
- 23.** The double question about authority (*exousia*) targets both the nature and the source of Jesus's power. 'These things' (*tauta*) refers to the temple cleansing, the healings, and the teaching -- all of which bypass the established religious hierarchy. The chief priests and elders represent the Sanhedrin, the recognized governing body. Their challenge is both theological and jurisdictional.
- 24.** Jesus's counter-question is a standard rabbinic debate technique -- not evasion but a method of exposing the real issue. By linking his answer to their answer, he forces them to confront the very authority they are trying to deny.
- 25.** The question 'from heaven or from men' (*ex ouranou e ex anthronon*) presents the only two options: divine origin or human origin. 'Heaven' is a Jewish circumlocution for God. The leaders' private calculation reveals that their concern is not truth but political advantage -- they reason from consequences rather than convictions.
- 26.** The leaders' fear of the crowd (*phoboumetha ton ochlon*) mirrors Herod's fear of the people regarding John (14:5). In both cases, political calculation overrides honest engagement with prophetic authority. Their inability to answer exposes their bad faith.
- 27.** Their answer 'We do not know' (*ouk oidamen*) is technically a lie -- they have a private opinion but refuse to state it. Jesus's refusal to answer is not evasion but justice: those who will not engage honestly with the evidence they already have do not deserve further revelation. The implicit answer is clear -- Jesus's authority, like John's, comes from heaven.
- 28.** The parable of the two sons is unique to Matthew. The opening 'What do you think?' (*ti hymin dokei*) draws the leaders into rendering judgment on themselves -- the same technique Nathan used against David (2 Samuel 12:1-7). The vineyard (*ampelon*) is a standard Old Testament symbol for Israel (Isaiah 5:1-7).
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 12:1-7 -- the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 5:1-7 -- the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** The verb *metameleteis* ('changed his mind, felt regret') is distinct from *metanoeo* ('repent' in the fuller sense). This son's initial refusal followed by obedience represents those who initially rejected God's call but later responded -- the tax collectors and prostitutes mentioned in verse 31.
- 30.** The second son addresses his father with the respectful *kyrie* ('sir, lord') and gives immediate verbal assent, but his actions contradict his words. He represents the religious leaders who profess obedience to God but fail to respond to John's (and now Jesus's) message. Words without corresponding action is a theme throughout Matthew (cf. 7:21-23).
- 31.** The leaders pronounce their own verdict. Jesus's application is devastating: the social outcasts (*telonai*, 'tax collectors'; *pornai*, 'prostitutes') who initially lived in rebellion but responded to John's call are entering the kingdom ahead of the religious establishment. The present tense *proagousin* ('are going ahead, are entering') indicates this is happening now, not merely in the future.
- 32.** The phrase 'in the way of righteousness' (*en hodo dikaiosynes*) may mean John came living righteously, or came teaching the way of righteousness, or both. The double indictment is severe: they rejected John's message, and even after seeing others respond, they refused to reconsider. The verb *metemelete* ('change your minds') echoes the first son's change of heart in verse 29.
- 33.** The parable's opening deliberately echoes Isaiah 5:1-2, the Song of the Vineyard, where God plants and cares for Israel as his vineyard. Every detail -- the fence, the winepress, the tower -- comes from Isaiah's text. The *oikodespotes* ('master of the house, landowner') represents God. The *georgoi* ('tenant farmers') represent Israel's leaders. The audience would have recognized the allusion immediately.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 5:1-2 -- the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The servants (*doulous*, 'slaves') represent the prophets sent to Israel throughout its history. The 'season of fruit' (*kairos ton karpon*) indicates the time when God expected a return on his investment in Israel -- justice, righteousness, and faithfulness.

35. The three-fold violence -- beating, killing, stoning -- summarizes Israel's treatment of the prophets, a theme running through the Old Testament (cf. 2 Chronicles 24:21, Jeremiah 26:20-23, Nehemiah 9:26) and explicit in Jesus's lament over Jerusalem (23:37). Stoning (elithobolisan) was the traditional punishment for blasphemy and false prophecy, ironically used against true prophets.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Chronicles 24:21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 26:20-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Nehemiah 9:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The landowner's persistence in sending more servants (pleionas ton proton, 'more than the first group') reflects God's patience and repeated appeals through successive generations of prophets. The tenants' unchanging response reveals the depth of their rebellion.
37. The shift from 'servants' to 'his son' (ton huion autou) marks the climax of the parable and its transparent christological claim. The sending of the son is qualitatively different from the sending of servants -- this is the final appeal, the last and greatest envoy. The verb entrapesontai ('will respect, will be put to shame before') expresses the owner's reasonable expectation.
38. The tenants recognize the son as the heir (kleronomos) -- their crime is not ignorance but deliberate rebellion. They calculate that killing the heir will give them ownership of the vineyard, a legal assumption in certain ancient property arrangements. The parallel to the Jerusalem leaders' conspiracy against Jesus is unmistakable.
39. The detail that they threw him 'out of the vineyard' before killing him prefigures Jesus's crucifixion outside the walls of Jerusalem (cf. Hebrews 13:12). The sequence -- seizure, expulsion, death -- will be enacted literally in chapters 26-27.
40. Jesus forces the leaders to pronounce judgment again -- the same technique used in the parable of the two sons (v. 31). The question assumes the owner's return is certain; only the timing is unknown. The phrase kyrios tou ampelonos ('lord/owner of the vineyard') carries both literal and theological weight.
41. The Greek kakous kakos ('wretches wretchedly' or 'evil ones evilly') is a wordplay -- the punishment fits the crime. The leaders unwittingly pronounce their own doom. The transfer of the vineyard to 'other tenants' (allois georgois) foreshadows the inclusion of the Gentiles and the reconstitution of God's people around Jesus.
42. Jesus quotes Psalm 118:22-23, the same Hallel psalm from which the crowds shouted 'Hosanna' at the entry (v. 9). The rejected stone becoming the cornerstone (kephalen gonias, literally 'head of the corner') was a key early Christian testimony text (cf. Acts 4:11, 1 Peter 2:7). The 'builders' who reject the stone are the leaders standing before Jesus.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 118:22-23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. This is one of the rare instances where Matthew uses 'kingdom of God' (basileia tou theou) rather than his preferred 'kingdom of heaven.' The word ethnei ('nation, people') is singular and does not necessarily mean 'Gentiles' (though that reading is possible); it may refer to a reconstituted people of God that includes both Jews and Gentiles who bear fruit. The emphasis is on fruit-bearing (karpos), connecting back to the fig tree (v. 19) and the vineyard's expected produce.
44. This verse draws on Isaiah 8:14-15 (the stone of stumbling) and Daniel 2:34-35, 44-45 (the stone that crushes the statue). The two scenarios -- falling on the stone and the stone falling on someone -- represent two ways of encountering Jesus: stumbling over him in offense, or being crushed by his judgment. Some scholars question this verse's originality, but it is present in the SBLGNT.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 8:14-15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 2:34-35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The verb egnoson ('knew, recognized, understood') confirms that the parables were not obscure -- the leaders understood them clearly. They are now named specifically: 'chief priests and Pharisees,' the two groups who will drive the passion narrative. Their comprehension without repentance fulfills the pattern of the second son in verse 30.
46. The chapter ends with the same dynamic that opened the John the Baptist flashback (14:5) -- the leaders want to act against God's messenger but fear the people. The crowd's recognition of Jesus as a prophet, while falling short of the full messianic confession, nevertheless provides temporary protection. The arrest is deferred but not abandoned; it will come in 26:47-56.

22

Summary: *Matthew 22 opens with the parable of the wedding banquet, in which a king's invited guests refuse to come and are replaced by strangers from the streets. The chapter then records three challenge questions posed to Jesus by various groups: the Pharisees and Herodians ask about paying taxes to Caesar, the Sadducees pose a hypothetical about resurrection and marriage, and a Pharisee lawyer asks which commandment is the greatest. Jesus answers each decisively, then poses his own question about the Messiah's identity as David's Lord — silencing all challengers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three challenge questions represent the major theological factions of first-century Judaism converging against Jesus: Pharisees (political trap about taxes), Sadducees (theological trap about resurrection), and a lawyer from among the Pharisees (legal trap about the commandments). Jesus not only escapes each trap but turns the final exchange into an offensive question about Psalm 110:1 that none of them can answer. The wedding banquet parable contains Matthew's distinctive addition of the guest without wedding garments (vv. 11-14), raising the stakes beyond mere invitation to proper response.*

Translation Friction: *The parable's violent imagery — the king destroying the murderous invitees and burning their city (v. 7) — has been read as a reference to the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD. We render the Greek as given without imposing a specific historical identification. The phrase 'many are called but few are chosen' (v. 14) has generated centuries of theological debate about election; we render the Greek straightforwardly. Jesus's answer about the greatest commandment combines Deuteronomy 6:5 and Leviticus 19:18, a combination not found elsewhere in Jewish literature of this period.*

Connections: *The wedding banquet parable echoes Isaiah 25:6-8 (the eschatological feast). The tax question connects to the broader theme of God's kingdom versus earthly kingdoms. The resurrection debate anticipates Matthew 28. Jesus's citation of Psalm 110:1 becomes foundational for early Christian Christology (Acts 2:34-35, Hebrews 1:13). The double love commandment becomes the hermeneutical key for the entire law (cf. Romans 13:8-10, Galatians 5:14).*

1Jesus spoke to them again in parables, saying: 2"The kingdom of heaven may be compared to a king who prepared a wedding feast for his son. 3He sent his servants to call those who had been invited to the feast, but they refused to come. 4Again he sent other servants, saying, 'Tell those who have been invited: Look, I have prepared my banquet — my oxen and fattened cattle have been slaughtered, and everything is ready. Come to the wedding feast.' 5But they paid no attention and went away — one to his field, another to his business. 6The rest seized his servants, mistreated them, and killed them. 7The king was enraged. He sent his armies, destroyed those murderers, and burned their city. 8Then he said to his servants, 'The wedding feast is ready, but those who were invited were not worthy. 9Go therefore to the main roads, and invite to the feast as many as you find.' 10Those servants went out into the roads and gathered everyone they found, both evil and good, and the wedding hall was filled with guests. 11But when the king came in to see the guests, he noticed a man there who was not wearing wedding clothes. 12He said to him, 'Friend, how did you get in here without wedding clothes?' And the man was speechless. 13Then the king said to the attendants, 'Bind his hands and feet and throw him into the outer darkness. In that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.' 14For numerous are called, but few are chosen. 15Then the Pharisees went and plotted how to trap him with his own words. 16They sent their disciples to him along with the Herodians, saying, 'Teacher, we know that you are truthful and teach the way of God honestly. You do not defer to anyone, for you show no partiality. 17So tell us what you think: is it lawful to pay the tax to Caesar, or not?' 18But Jesus, aware of their malice, said, 'Why are you testing me, you hypocrites? 19Show me the coin used for the tax.' They brought him a denarius. 20He said to them, 'Whose image and inscription is this?' 21They said, 'Caesar's.' Then he said to them, 'Give back to Caesar what belongs to Caesar, and to God what belongs to God.' 22When they heard this, they were amazed. And they left him and went away. 23That same day Sadducees came to him — those who say there is no resurrection — and they asked him, 24'Teacher, Moses said, 'If a man dies without children, his brother is to marry his wife and raise up offspring for his brother.' 25Now

there were seven brothers among us. The first married and died, and having no offspring, left his wife to his brother. ²⁶The same thing happened with the second, the third, and on through all seven. ²⁷Last of all, the woman died. ²⁸So in the resurrection, whose wife of the seven will she be? For they all had her as wife." ²⁹Jesus answered them, "You are mistaken, because you know neither the Scriptures nor the power of God. ³⁰For in the resurrection people neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like the angels in heaven. ³¹And concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what was spoken to you by God: ³²'I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob'? He is not God of the dead but of the living." ³³When the crowds heard this, they were astonished at his teaching. ³⁴When the Pharisees heard that he had silenced the Sadducees, they gathered together. ³⁵Then one of them, which was a lawyer, asked him a challenge, tempting him, ³⁶"Teacher, which commandment in the law is the greatest?" ³⁷He said to him, "'You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.' ³⁸This is the great and first commandment. ³⁹And a second is like it: 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself.' ⁴⁰On these two commandments hang every one of the law and the prophets. ⁴¹While the Pharisees were assembled, Jesus asked them, ⁴²"What do you think about the Christ? Whose son is he?" They said to him, "David's." ⁴³He said to them, "How then does David, speaking by the Spirit, call him Lord? ⁴⁴"The Lord said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand, until I put your enemies under your feet"? ⁴⁵How is he his son?, and if David then call him Lord. ⁴⁶No one was able to answer him a word, and from that day on no one dared to ask him any more questions.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *apokritheis* ('answering') does not imply a question was asked — it is a Semitic idiom meaning 'responded to the situation.' The plural *parabolais* ('parables') may indicate that Matthew groups this with the preceding parables of chapter 21, though only one parable follows here.
2. The Greek *gamous* (plural 'wedding festivities') encompasses the entire multi-day celebration, not just the ceremony. 'Wedding feast' captures the communal banquet dimension better than 'marriage.' The aorist *homiothee* ('was compared') frames the parable as a completed analogy.
3. The double invitation — first a prior invitation (*keklemenous*, perfect participle, 'those having been invited'), then the servants sent to summon them — reflects ancient Near Eastern banquet protocol. The refusal is deliberate: *ouk ethelon* ('they were not willing') emphasizes willful rejection, not inability.
4. The Greek *ariston* can mean 'breakfast' or 'midday meal' but here refers to a grand banquet. The detail of slaughtered oxen (*tauroi*) and fattened cattle (*sitista*) emphasizes lavish provision and the urgency of the invitation — the food is prepared and will not keep. The king's patience in sending a second delegation heightens the gravity of the refusal.
5. The verb *amelesantes* ('having disregarded, having been careless about') conveys not hostility but indifference — the most common form of rejection. The mundane alternatives (field, business) make the point: ordinary concerns displaced the king's extraordinary invitation.
6. The parable escalates sharply from indifference (v. 5) to violence. The verb *hybrisan* ('mistreated, insulted') denotes outrageous abuse. This mirrors the prophetic tradition of Israel killing God's messengers (cf. 2 Chronicles 36:15-16, Matthew 23:37).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Chronicles 36:15-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The burning of 'their city' (*teen polin auton*) has been widely read as an allusion to the Roman destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD. Whether this reflects a post-70 addition or Jesus's prophetic foresight is debated. The Greek *eneprēsen* ('burned') is vivid and specific.
8. The adjective *axioi* ('worthy, deserving') introduces a key theme: the invitation was free, but the invitees rendered themselves unworthy by their response. Worthiness here is defined by willingness to come, not by prior qualification.
9. The Greek *diexodous ton hodon* ('exits of the roads,' i.e., crossroads, intersections, or where roads leave the city) suggests the boundary between the city and the surrounding countryside — places where anyone might be found. The invitation becomes indiscriminate and universal.
10. The pairing *ponērous te kai agathous* ('both evil and good') is striking — the replacement guests are a mixed company, not a moral elite. This reflects Matthew's consistent picture of the kingdom as a mixed community (cf. the wheat and weeds, 13:24-30; the net, 13:47-50). The Greek *anakeimenōn* ('reclining ones') indicates the Greco-Roman dining posture.
11. The 'wedding garment' (*endyma gamou*) has generated much discussion. Some scholars suggest hosts provided garments; others see this as symbolic of righteousness or repentance. The man was gathered from the streets (v. 10), so the expectation of proper attire implies provision was made. The singular man among many guests suggests this is not about social class but about response — even among those who come, proper preparation is required.
12. The address *hetaire* ('friend, companion') appears only three times in Matthew (here, 20:13, 26:50) and always carries an ominous edge — it is used when someone has overstepped. The man's silence (*ephimōthē*, 'was muzzled, was silenced') indicates he has no defense; the passive voice may suggest divine silencing rather than mere embarrassment.

13. The attendants here are diakonoi ('servants, ministers') — different from the douloi ('slaves') sent to invite guests. 'Outer darkness' (skotos to exōteron) is a Matthean phrase (cf. 8:12, 25:30) depicting exclusion from the lit banquet hall into the night. 'Weeping and gnashing of teeth' is a formulaic expression in Matthew for eschatological judgment (8:12, 13:42, 13:50, 24:51, 25:30).
14. This summarizing statement distinguishes klētoi ('called, invited') from eklektoi ('chosen, selected'). The parable illustrates both categories of failure: those who refuse the call entirely (vv. 3-7) and those who come without proper response (vv. 11-13). The saying's theological weight — particularly regarding divine election versus human response — has been debated throughout church history. The Greek is rendered straightforwardly without resolving that tension.
15. The verb pagideusōsin ('to ensnare, to trap') is from pagis ('a snare, a trap') — hunting imagery. The Pharisees are now deliberately setting a verbal trap. The phrase en logō ('in a word/statement') means they want Jesus to say something that can be used against him.
16. The coalition of Pharisee disciples and Herodians is politically improbable — Pharisees resented Roman rule while Herodians supported the Herod dynasty and Roman accommodation. Their alliance against Jesus is itself revealing. The flattery is calculated: 'you show no partiality' (ou blepeis eis prosōpon anthrōpōn, literally 'you do not look at the face of people') is designed to pressure Jesus into giving a direct answer regardless of political consequences.
17. The Greek kēnsōn is a loanword from the Latin census, referring specifically to the Roman poll tax (tributum capitis). This was the most hated tax because it symbolized subjugation — every payment acknowledged Roman sovereignty. The trap is elegant: a 'yes' alienates the Jewish populace; a 'no' constitutes sedition against Rome.
18. The word ponērian ('wickedness, malice') is stronger than mere trickery — it ascribes evil intent. The verb peirazete ('you are testing') is the same word used for Satan's temptation of Jesus in chapter 4. Hypokritai ('hypocrites') originally meant 'stage actors' — people playing a role. Jesus exposes the flattery of verse 16 as performance.
19. The denarius (dēnariōn) was a Roman silver coin, a day's wage for a laborer (cf. 20:2). That they could produce one immediately in the temple precincts is itself telling — they carried the very coin bearing Caesar's image into sacred space. The KJV's 'penny' is a misleading anachronism.
20. The word eikōn ('image, likeness') carries theological resonance — humans are made in God's eikōn (Genesis 1:26-27 LXX). Jesus's question sets up a contrast between what bears Caesar's image and what bears God's image. The epigraphē ('inscription') on a Tiberian denarius would read 'Tiberius Caesar, son of the divine Augustus.'
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:26-27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The verb apodote ('give back, return, render') is crucial — it implies returning what already belongs to someone, not making a gift. Caesar's coin bears Caesar's image; give it back. But since humans bear God's image, the unstated implication is far more sweeping: give your whole self back to God. The answer transcends the political trap entirely by reframing the question from taxation to total allegiance.
22. The verb ethaumasan ('they marveled, were astonished') indicates that Jesus's answer genuinely surprised them — it was not the binary response they had prepared for. Their departure signals that the trap failed completely.
23. Matthew's parenthetical note about Sadducean theology (legontes mē einai anastasin, 'saying there is no resurrection') orients the reader to the nature of the coming trap. The Sadducees accepted only the Torah (Genesis-Deuteronomy) as authoritative and found no explicit resurrection teaching there. Their question is designed to make resurrection belief look absurd.
24. The Sadducees cite the levirate marriage law from Deuteronomy 25:5-6 (with echoes of Genesis 38). The Greek epigambreusei ('shall marry as next-of-kin') is a technical term for levirate marriage. By grounding their question in Moses — the one authority they accept — they believe they have framed an unanswerable challenge to resurrection belief.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 25:5-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 38. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The scenario is likely hypothetical, perhaps a stock riddle used in Sadducean-Pharisee debates. Seven brothers creates the maximum absurdity for a resurrection scenario. The phrase par' hēmin ('among us') may be a fictional framing device rather than a claim about real people.
26. Matthew compresses the narrative — Mark 12:21-22 provides slightly more detail. The repetition through all seven brothers drives home the point: whose wife would she be in the resurrection?
27. The phrase hysteron pantōn ('last of all') completes the hypothetical with finality — all eight parties are now dead, setting up the resurrection question.
28. The Greek pantes gar eschon autēn ('for they all had her') could be read crudely, but in context it means all seven were legally married to her in succession. The Sadducees believe they have created a logical impossibility that disproves resurrection — one woman cannot simultaneously be wife to seven men.
29. The verb planasthe ('you are led astray, you wander') implies not just intellectual error but spiritual disorientation. Jesus identifies two sources of their mistake: ignorance of Scripture (tas graphas, the very Torah they claim to champion) and ignorance of God's power (tēn dynamin tou theou) — they have limited God to what their theology permits.

- 30.** Jesus does not deny resurrection but redefines its nature. The distinction between gamousin ('they marry,' active, typically of men) and gamizontai ('they are given in marriage,' passive, typically of women being given by their father) reflects first-century marriage customs. The comparison to angels does not mean people become angels but that the resurrected state transcends the social structures of mortal life, including marriage. This directly dissolves the Sadducees' riddle.
- 31.** Jesus now turns to Scripture — specifically the Torah, the only authority the Sadducees accept. The phrase to rhēthen hymin ('what was spoken to you') is pointed: this was not spoken to ancient Israelites only but to you, the Sadducees, who claim to live by Moses.
- 32.** Jesus quotes Exodus 3:6, from the burning bush narrative — firmly within the Torah. His argument turns on the present tense 'I am' (egō eimi): God does not say 'I was' their God but 'I am,' implying that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are alive to God. This is an argument the Sadducees cannot dismiss as coming from the Prophets or Writings, which they considered less authoritative.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The verb exeplessonto ('were struck out of their senses, were astonished') is stronger than mere surprise — it connotes being overwhelmed. The same verb describes the crowd's reaction to the Sermon on the Mount (7:28). 'Teaching' (didachē) is preferred over the KJV's 'doctrine,' which in modern English implies systematic theology.
- 34.** The verb ephimōsen ('silenced, muzzled') is the same word used for the speechless guest in verse 12 — a verbal link suggesting divine authority that stops mouths. The Pharisees, having failed through their proxies (v. 16), now regroup for a direct challenge. The irony is that the Pharisees would have agreed with Jesus about resurrection — yet they still oppose him.
- 35.** The nomikos ('lawyer, legal expert') is someone skilled in the Torah and its interpretation. The participle peirazōn ('testing') again uses the temptation vocabulary (cf. v. 18, 4:1). Whether this lawyer has hostile or genuinely curious intent is ambiguous — Mark's parallel (12:28) presents the scribe more positively. Matthew's peirazōn tilts toward a hostile reading.
- 36.** The question poia entolē megalē ('which commandment is great?') reflects a real rabbinic debate. The rabbis identified 613 commandments in the Torah (248 positive, 365 negative) and debated which were 'heavy' (important) and which were 'light.' Asking Jesus to prioritize forces him to potentially diminish some commandments in favor of others.
- 37.** Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 6:5, the centerpiece of the Shema — the daily Jewish confession of faith. The Greek follows the Septuagint with three terms: kardia ('heart,' the seat of will and thought in Semitic usage), psychē ('soul/life'), and dianoia ('mind, understanding'). The Hebrew original has 'heart, soul, and strength' (me'od); Matthew's 'mind' may represent an interpretive rendering of the Hebrew or follow a variant Septuagint tradition. The threefold 'all' (holē) demands totality — no compartment of the self is exempt.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 6:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 38.** Jesus identifies the Shema command as both megalē ('great' in importance) and prōtē ('first' in rank). By citing Deuteronomy 6:5, Jesus answers from the Torah itself — the ground shared by Pharisees, Sadducees, and all Jewish groups.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 6:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 39.** Jesus volunteers a second commandment from Leviticus 19:18 that was not asked for. The word homoia ('like, similar') does not mean identical but says the second shares the same essential character as the first — love of God and love of neighbor are inseparable. The combination of Deuteronomy 6:5 and Leviticus 19:18 into a unified ethical framework appears to be original to Jesus, though Rabbi Hillel's 'Golden Rule' (b. Shabbat 31a) expresses a similar instinct.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 40.** The verb krematai ('hangs, depends') is vivid — the entire Torah and prophetic corpus is suspended from these two commands like a door on its hinges. Jesus does not replace the 613 commandments but provides their organizing center. 'The Law and the Prophets' (ho nomos kai hoi prophētai) is the standard Jewish designation for Scripture (cf. 5:17, 7:12).
- 41.** The initiative now shifts — Jesus moves from defense to offense. Having answered three challenges, he poses his own question. The genitive absolute synēgmenōn ('while being gathered') recalls their gathering in verse 34, making Jesus's counter-question an immediate response to their collective challenge.
- 42.** The question peri tou Christou ('about the Christ/Messiah') is about the expected Messiah, not about Jesus himself — at least not explicitly. The Pharisees' answer 'David's son' is theologically correct but incomplete, as Jesus will demonstrate. This was the standard messianic expectation drawn from 2 Samuel 7 and Isaiah 11.
- 42.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Samuel 7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The phrase *en pneumati* ('in/by the Spirit') attributes Davidic authorship of Psalm 110 to divine inspiration. Jesus's argument depends on two premises: (1) David wrote Psalm 110, and (2) he wrote it under the Spirit's guidance. Both were uncontested assumptions in first-century Judaism.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 110 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Jesus quotes Psalm 110:1 from the Septuagint. The Hebrew original distinguishes two figures: YHWH (the LORD) speaks to *adoni* ('my lord,' David's superior). In the Greek, both are *kyrios* ('Lord'), but the first represents God and the second the Messiah. The right hand is the position of co-regency and supreme honor. This psalm was the most frequently cited Old Testament text in the early church (Acts 2:34-35, 1 Corinthians 15:25, Hebrews 1:13).
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. Jesus's argument is not that the Messiah is not David's son — the genealogy in chapter 1 affirms that he is. Rather, the Messiah must be more than David's son: he must also be David's Lord. A father does not call his descendant 'my Lord.' The Messiah must therefore transcend mere Davidic descent. Jesus leaves the implication unspoken, forcing the Pharisees to grapple with it.
46. The double negative — no one could answer (*edynato apokrithēnai*) and no one dared ask (*etolmēsen eperōtēsai*) — creates a comprehensive silencing. The verb *tolmaō* ('to dare, to have courage') indicates that questions stopped not from satisfaction but from fear. This verse closes the series of public debates that began in 21:23 and transitions to Jesus's initiative in chapter 23.

23

Summary: *Matthew 23 records Jesus's most sustained public denunciation of the scribes and Pharisees. After warning the crowds and his disciples about their hypocrisy, Jesus delivers seven 'woe' pronouncements, each targeting a specific form of religious pretense: blocking others from the kingdom, exploiting converts, manipulating oaths, obsessing over minor rules while ignoring justice and mercy, maintaining outward purity while harboring inward corruption, and honoring dead prophets while persecuting living ones. The chapter closes with Jesus's lament over Jerusalem, expressing anguish at the city's refusal to receive God's messengers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The seven woes form a carefully structured prophetic oracle in the tradition of Isaiah and Amos. Each 'woe' (*ouai*) is addressed directly to the scribes and Pharisees as 'hypocrites' (*hypokritai*), creating a relentless rhetorical rhythm. The chapter stands in sharp tension with Jesus's instruction in 23:2-3 to respect the teaching authority of the scribes — the critique is not of the Torah but of those who teach it without practicing it. The lament over Jerusalem (vv. 37-39) shifts from prophetic anger to maternal grief, using the image of a hen gathering her chicks. This is one of the most emotionally raw passages attributed to Jesus in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *This chapter has a difficult history in Jewish-Christian relations. The language of condemnation has been weaponized against Jewish people as a whole, which is a misreading — Jesus himself is Jewish, his audience is Jewish, and this is an intra-Jewish prophetic critique in the tradition of Jeremiah and Amos. We render the Greek faithfully while noting that 'scribes and Pharisees' designates specific religious leaders, not the Jewish people. The relationship between Matthew's community and the synagogue likely shaped the intensity of this rhetoric.*

Connections: *The woe oracles echo Isaiah 5:8-23 and Habakkuk 2:6-20. The imagery of whitewashed tombs recalls Ezekiel 13:10-16. Jesus's lament over Jerusalem draws on the maternal imagery of Isaiah 66:13 and the prophetic grief of Jeremiah 8-9. The reference to Abel and Zechariah (v. 35) spans the entire Hebrew Bible from Genesis 4 to 2 Chronicles 24. The closing quotation from Psalm 118:26 connects to the triumphal entry (21:9) and will be fulfilled at the Parousia.*

1Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to his disciples: 2"The scribes and the Pharisees sit on Moses's seat. 3So do and observe everything they tell you, but do not follow their example, for they preach but do not practice. 4They tie up heavy burdens and lay them on people's shoulders, but they themselves are not willing to lift a finger to move them. 5Everything they do is done to be seen by others. They widen their phylacteries and lengthen their tassels. 6They love the place of honor at banquets and the best seats in the synagogues, 7Greetings in the markets, and to be known as of men, Rabbi, Rabbi. 8But you are not to be

called 'Rabbi,' for you have one teacher, and you are all brothers and sisters. ⁹And do not call anyone on earth your father, for you have one Father — the heavenly one. ¹⁰Nor are you to be called instructors, for you have one instructor — the Christ. ¹¹The greatest among you will be your servant. ¹²Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted. ¹³But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You shut the kingdom of heaven in people's faces. You yourselves do not enter, nor do you allow those who are trying to enter to go in. ¹⁵Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You cross sea and land to make a single convert, and when he becomes one, you make him twice as much a child of hell as yourselves. ¹⁶Woe to you, blind guides, who say, 'Whoever swears by the temple, it means nothing; but whoever swears by the gold of the temple is bound by the oath.' ¹⁷You blind fools! Which is greater: the gold, or the temple that makes the gold sacred? ¹⁸And you say, 'Whoever swears by the altar, it means nothing; but whoever swears by the gift on it is bound by the oath.' ¹⁹You blind ones! Which is greater: the gift, or the altar that makes the gift sacred? ²⁰So whoever swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it. ²¹And whoever swears by the temple swears by it and by the one who dwells in it. ²²And whoever swears by heaven swears by the throne of God and by the one who sits on it. ²³Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You tithe mint, dill, and cumin, but you have neglected the weightier matters of the law: justice, mercy, and faithfulness. These you should have practiced without neglecting the others. ²⁴Blind guides! You strain out a gnat but swallow a camel. ²⁵Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You clean the outside of the cup and dish, but inside they are full of greed and self-indulgence. ²⁶Blind Pharisee! First clean the inside of the cup, so that the outside may become clean as well. ²⁷Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You are like whitewashed tombs that appear beautiful on the outside but inside are full of dead people's bones and every kind of impurity. ²⁸In the same way, you appear righteous to people on the outside, but inside you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness. ²⁹Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You build the tombs of the prophets and decorate the monuments of the righteous, ³⁰Say, If we had been in the period of our fathers, we would not possess been partakers with them in the lifeblood of the God's spokespersons. ³¹So you testify against yourselves that you are the descendants of those who murdered the prophets. ³²Then fill up the measure of your ancestors! ³³You snakes, you brood of vipers! How will you escape the judgment of hell? ³⁴Therefore, I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes, some of whom you will kill and crucify, and some you will flog in your synagogues and pursue from city to city, ³⁵Indeed, that upon you may come every one of the righteous blood shed upon the world, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zacharias son of Barachias, whom you slew between the temple and the altar. ³⁶Truly I tell you, all these things will come upon this generation. ³⁷"Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you — how often I wanted to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing! ³⁸Look, your house is left to you desolate. ³⁹For I tell you, you will not see me again until you say, 'Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The dual audience — crowds (*ochlois*) and disciples (*mathētais*) — is significant. The warnings that follow are not private instruction but public proclamation. This positions Jesus as a prophet addressing the entire people, not just his inner circle.
2. The 'seat of Moses' (*Mōyseōs kathedras*) refers to the teaching authority inherited from Moses — the right to interpret and apply the Torah. Archaeological evidence confirms that synagogues had a literal stone seat from which the Torah was taught. Jesus acknowledges the legitimacy of the office even as he critiques its occupants.
3. This verse is striking: Jesus validates the scribes' and Pharisees' teaching authority (*panta hosa ean eipōsin*, 'everything they say') while completely rejecting their behavior (*kata ta erga autōn mē poieite*, 'do not do according to their works'). The critique is hypocrisy — the gap between word and deed — not the content of their teaching itself.
4. The imagery of *phortia barea* ('heavy loads') contrasts sharply with Jesus's own invitation in 11:30 ('my burden is light'). The verb *desmeuousin* ('they bind') suggests legal obligations tied tightly. The phrase *tō daktylō autōn ou thelousin kinēsai* ('they are not willing to move with their finger') exposes the asymmetry: they impose rules they do not share the burden of keeping.
5. Phylacteries (*phylaktēria*) are small leather boxes containing Scripture passages (Deuteronomy 6:8, 11:18), worn on the forehead and arm during prayer. Making them wider makes one's piety more visible. The tassels (*kraspeda*) are the fringed borders of the prayer shawl commanded in Numbers 15:38-39. Jesus does not condemn phylacteries or tassels — he himself wore tassels (9:20, 14:36) — but the ostentatious enlargement of them for public display.

5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 6:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 15:38-39 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The prōtoklisian ('first reclining place') at a banquet was the seat nearest the host, denoting highest status. The prōtokathedrias ('first seats') in the synagogue were those facing the congregation, reserved for distinguished persons. Both represent social capital — visible markers of religious rank.
7. The title Rabbi (Rhabbi, from the Hebrew rav, 'great one') means 'my master' or 'my teacher.' In the first century it was transitioning from a general honorific to a formal title for Torah scholars. The desire to be called Rabbi reflects the pursuit of status through religious authority.
8. The Greek adelphoi ('brothers') is rendered inclusively as 'brothers and sisters' since the audience includes the crowds (v. 1), not just male disciples. The SBLGNT reads ho didaskalos ('the teacher') without the addition 'even Christ' found in some manuscripts and reflected in the KJV. Jesus establishes a radically egalitarian community ethic — no hierarchy of religious titles.
9. The prohibition against calling anyone 'father' (patera) as a religious title parallels the Rabbi prohibition. 'Father' (abba, pater) was used as a title of respect for esteemed teachers. Jesus does not prohibit the biological use of the word but the use of parental titles to establish religious hierarchy — all authority derives from the heavenly Father alone.
10. The Greek kathēgētai ('guides, instructors, leaders') is distinct from didaskalos ('teacher,' v. 8). Jesus covers three titles — Rabbi, Father, Instructor — to prohibit any title that creates a spiritual hierarchy between believers. The Christ (ho Christos) is identified as the sole legitimate instructor, a significant Christological claim.
11. The word diakonos ('servant, one who serves') is the root of 'deacon.' Jesus redefines greatness not as authority over others but as service to others — a consistent theme (20:26-27). This inverts the entire religious hierarchy just described.
12. The passive verbs tapeinōthēsetai ('will be humbled') and hypsōthēsetai ('will be exalted') are divine passives — God is the unspoken agent who brings down the proud and lifts up the humble. This saying echoes Proverbs 29:23, Ezekiel 21:26, and appears elsewhere in Jesus's teaching (Luke 14:11, 18:14).
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 29:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 21:26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The first woe. The Greek ouai ('woe') is not a curse but a prophetic lament — it expresses grief as much as judgment (cf. Isaiah 5:8-23). The verb kleiete ('you shut, you lock') pictures the kingdom as a door being barred. The participle eiserchomous ('those entering, those in the process of entering') suggests people who were on their way into the kingdom but were blocked by the religious leaders' obstruction.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 5:8-23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Verse 14 is not present in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears in the KJV based on later manuscripts that likely imported it from Mark 12:40 or Luke 20:47. Modern critical editions omit it. The verse numbering jumps from 13 to 15 in the SBLGNT.
15. The second woe. The Greek prosēluton ('proselyte, convert') refers to a Gentile who fully converts to Judaism, including circumcision and Torah observance. The verb periatege ('you go around, you traverse') with 'sea and land' conveys exhaustive effort. The phrase huion geennēs ('son of Gehenna') uses the Semitic idiom 'son of X' meaning 'one characterized by X.' Geenna refers to the Valley of Hinnom south of Jerusalem, associated with child sacrifice (Jeremiah 7:31) and later with eschatological punishment.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 7:31 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The third woe. The address shifts from 'hypocrites' to 'blind guides' (hodēgoi typhloi), emphasizing not just their insincerity but their inability to lead others. The casuistry Jesus describes — distinguishing binding from non-binding oaths based on what one swears by — is a form of oath manipulation that allows deception while maintaining technical innocence. The verb opheilei ('is obligated, is bound') is a financial term applied to moral obligation.
17. The epithet mōroi ('fools') is the same word Jesus warned against using in 5:22 — its use here, in prophetic denunciation from the one with authority to judge, is deliberate. The participle hāgiasas ('having sanctified, having made holy') establishes the theological point: the temple consecrates the gold, not the reverse. Valuing the gold over the temple inverts the sacred order.
18. The same casuistry is now applied to the altar (thysiaστήριον) and the gift (δῶρον) placed upon it. The parallel with verses 16-17 exposes the systematic nature of the deception — it is not a single error but an entire system of oath manipulation.
19. The SBLGNT reads typhloi ('blind ones') without mōroi ('fools'), differing from some manuscripts reflected in the KJV. The argument parallels verse 17 exactly: the altar consecrates the offering, not the reverse.

- 20.** Jesus dismantles the casuistry: swearing by a sacred object includes everything associated with it. You cannot separate the container from the contents. This verse begins the logical conclusion (vv. 20-22) that makes all oaths equally binding.
- 21.** The participle *katoikounti* ('the one dwelling') refers to God's presence in the temple. The argument escalates: swearing by the temple invokes not just a building but God himself, who inhabits it. This connects to the Shekhinah tradition — God's dwelling presence in the sanctuary.
- 22.** The argument reaches its pinnacle: heaven is God's throne (cf. 5:34, Isaiah 66:1), so every oath invoking heaven invokes God. The conclusion is inescapable — no oath can be made 'non-binding' because all sacred things ultimately point to God, before whom all oaths are binding.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 66:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The fourth woe. Mint (*hēdyosmon*), dill (*anēthon*), and cumin (*kyminon*) are small garden herbs — tithing them represents extreme scrupulousness about minor regulations. The 'weightier matters' (*ta barytera*) — justice (*krisin*), mercy (*eleos*), and faithfulness (*pistin*) — echo Micah 6:8. Crucially, Jesus does not say they should stop tithing herbs; he says they should do both (*tauta edei poiēsai kakeina mē afienai*). The issue is proportion and priority, not abolition of the lesser commands.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 6:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 24.** This vivid hyperbole may contain a wordplay in Aramaic: *qalma* ('gnat') and *gamla* ('camel') are near-homophones. The image of straining wine to remove a tiny insect (for ritual purity) while somehow ingesting an entire camel (the largest animal in Palestine, also unclean per Leviticus 11:4) is deliberately absurd. It captures the inverted priorities of verse 23 in a single memorable image.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 11:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** The fifth woe. The cup and dish metaphor addresses ritual purity laws about vessels (cf. Mark 7:1-4). The Greek *harpagēs* ('robbery, plunder, greed') and *akrasias* ('lack of self-control, self-indulgence') describe the moral contents behind the ritually clean exterior. The contrast between *exōthen* ('outside') and *esōthen* ('inside') is the essence of hypocrisy.
- 26.** The singular address *Pharisaie typhle* ('Blind Pharisee') suddenly personalizes the critique. The logic is simple: if you clean the inside, the outside will follow naturally. Internal transformation produces external purity, not the reverse. This principle underlies Jesus's entire ethical teaching.
- 27.** The sixth woe. Tombs were whitewashed before Passover so that pilgrims could avoid accidental contact with them, which would cause ritual defilement (Numbers 19:16). The irony is devastating: the whitewash exists to warn people away from contamination, but here it becomes a metaphor for deliberate concealment. The word *akatharsias* ('impurity, uncleanness') is the ritual opposite of the purity the Pharisees obsessively cultivate.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 19:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** The application makes the metaphor explicit. The word *anomias* ('lawlessness') is striking — these are the very people who claim to be the Torah's guardians, yet Jesus accuses them of *anomia*, the negation of law (*a-nomia*, 'without law'). Their meticulous rule-keeping paradoxically constitutes a deeper form of lawlessness because it violates the law's true intent.
- 29.** The seventh woe. Archaeological evidence confirms that elaborate tomb monuments were being built around Jerusalem in this period. The verb *oikodomeite* ('you build') and *kosmeite* ('you adorn, you decorate') describe acts of memorial piety — honoring prophets of the past. The hypocrisy lies in what follows.
- 30.** The Greek *koinōnoi* ('partners, participants, sharers') implies active complicity, not just passive agreement. The claim to moral superiority over their ancestors is the setup for Jesus's devastating reversal in the next verse — by identifying their ancestors as prophet-killers, they unwittingly confess the family lineage.
- 31.** The verb *martyreite* ('you testify, you bear witness') is legal language — they have given testimony that convicts them. The word *huiōi* ('sons') means both biological descendants and spiritual heirs. Jesus's logic: by acknowledging that your fathers killed the prophets, you admit kinship with prophet-killers — and your current actions prove the family resemblance.
- 32.** The imperative *plērōsate* ('fill up!') is darkly ironic — possibly a command, possibly a sarcastic permission, possibly a prophetic declaration of inevitability. The 'measure' (*metron*) of sin is an image from Genesis 15:16, where God tells Abraham that the iniquity of the Amorites 'is not yet complete.' Jesus implies that his generation will bring the accumulated guilt to its fullness.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The epithets *opheis* ('snakes') and *gennēmata echidnōn* ('offspring of vipers') echo John the Baptist's language in 3:7. The rhetorical question *pōs phygēte* ('how will you flee?') implies no escape is possible. The word *geennēs* ('Gehenna/hell') refers to the Valley of Hinnom, the image of final divine judgment (cf. 5:22, 29-30, 10:28).
- 34.** The remarkable claim *egō apostellō* ('I am sending') places Jesus in the role of God himself, who in the Old Testament sends prophets. Jesus predicts the persecution of his own future messengers using four escalating verbs: kill (*apokteneite*), crucify (*staurōsete*), flog (*mastigōsete*), and pursue

(diōxete). The prediction of crucifixion is specifically Roman punishment, suggesting Jesus foresees the Roman context of early Christian persecution.

- 35.** Abel (Genesis 4) is the first murder victim in the Hebrew Bible; Zechariah son of Jehoiada (2 Chronicles 24:20-22) is the last, since Chronicles is the final book in the Hebrew canon. Together they span the entire scriptural record of innocent blood. The identification 'son of Barachiah' creates a difficulty — the Zechariah killed in the temple was the son of Jehoiada (2 Chronicles 24:20), not Barachiah. This may reflect confusion with the prophet Zechariah son of Berechiah (Zechariah 1:1), or it may represent a tradition otherwise lost to us. We render the Greek as given.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Chronicles 24:20-22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 1:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The solemn amēn legō hymin ('truly I say to you') marks this as an authoritative prophetic declaration. The phrase tēn genean tautēn ('this generation') most naturally refers to Jesus's contemporaries, placing the prophesied judgment within a generation — a timeframe consistent with the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD.
- 37.** The tone shifts dramatically from prophetic denunciation to lament. The double vocative Ierousalēm Ierousalēm expresses deep grief (cf. 'Absalom, Absalom!' in 2 Samuel 19:4). The maternal image of a hen (ornis) gathering chicks (nossia) under her wings (pterygas) is extraordinary — Jesus uses a feminine, nurturing metaphor for his own desire to protect Jerusalem. The divine wing as shelter echoes Psalm 91:4 and Ruth 2:12. The verb ēthelēsate ('you were willing') places the blame squarely on Jerusalem's refusal.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Samuel 19:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 91:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ruth 2:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 38.** The word oikos ('house') likely refers to the temple, though it could mean Jerusalem or the nation. The adjective erēmos ('deserted, desolate') echoes Jeremiah 22:5 ('this house will become a desolation'). The verb aphietai ('is left, is abandoned') suggests divine departure — God is vacating the premises. The passive voice is a divine passive: God is the one leaving.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 22:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 39.** Jesus quotes Psalm 118:26, the same psalm the crowds sang at his triumphal entry (21:9). The phrase ap' arti ('from now') marks a turning point — Jesus's public ministry in Jerusalem is ending. The 'until' (heōs an) implies a future moment of recognition, whether at the Parousia or at a future national repentance. The quotation frames Jesus's departure as a withdrawal of divine presence that will end only when Jerusalem welcomes him as the one coming in the LORD's name.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 118:26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

24

Summary: *Matthew 24 contains the Olivet Discourse — Jesus's extended teaching on the destruction of the temple, the signs of his coming, and the end of the age. Prompted by the disciples' question about when the temple will be destroyed and what signs will signal his return, Jesus describes a sequence of tribulations: false messiahs, wars, famines, earthquakes, persecution, the 'abomination of desolation,' cosmic disturbances, and finally the coming of the Son of Man. The chapter closes with parables and warnings about readiness, emphasizing that no one knows the day or hour.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Olivet Discourse is one of the most debated passages in the New Testament. The disciples' question in verse 3 may conflate two events (the temple's destruction and the end of the age) that Jesus addresses separately, or Jesus may see them as typologically connected. The phrase 'abomination of desolation' (v. 15) draws from Daniel 9:27, 11:31, and 12:11, originally referring to Antiochus Epiphanes' desecration of the temple in 167 BC, here reapplied to a future event. The discourse weaves together language of historical catastrophe (consistent with 70 AD) and cosmic apocalyptic imagery (suggesting an event beyond history).*

Translation Friction: The central interpretive challenge is distinguishing which predictions refer to the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 AD and which refer to the final return of Christ — or whether such a distinction is even intended. We render the Greek as given without imposing a particular eschatological framework. The phrase 'this generation will not pass away until all these things take place' (v. 34) has been interpreted as referring to the generation alive in Jesus's day, the generation alive when the signs begin, or 'generation' in the sense of 'race/people.' We render genea straightforwardly as 'generation' and note the interpretive range.

Connections: The discourse draws heavily on Daniel 7 (Son of Man coming on clouds), Daniel 9 (abomination of desolation), Isaiah 13 and 34 (cosmic upheaval language), Zechariah 12-14 (mourning and judgment), and Joel 2 (signs in sun and moon). The 'days of Noah' comparison (vv. 37-39) connects to Genesis 6-8. The discourse serves as the foundation for much of Revelation's imagery and for Paul's eschatological teaching in 1 Thessalonians 4-5 and 2 Thessalonians 2.

¹Jesus left the temple and was walking away when his disciples came to him to point out the buildings of the temple. ²He answered them, "Do you see all these things? Truly I tell you, not one stone here will be left on another — every one will be thrown down." ³As he sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately, saying, "Tell us, when will these things happen? And what will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?" ⁴Jesus answered them, "Watch out that no one deceives you. ⁵For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am the Christ,' and they will deceive many. ⁶You will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not alarmed, for this must take place, but the end is not yet. ⁷For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom, and there will be famines and earthquakes in various places. ⁸All these things are the beginning of birth pains. ⁹Then they will hand you over to tribulation and kill you, and you will be hated by all nations because of my name. ¹⁰At that time many will fall away, betray one another, and hate one another. ¹¹And many false prophets will arise and deceive many. ¹²And because lawlessness will increase, the love of many will grow cold. ¹³But the one who endures to the end will be saved. ¹⁴And this gospel of the kingdom will be proclaimed throughout the whole world as a testimony to all nations, and then the end will come. ¹⁵"So when you see the abomination of desolation, spoken of through the prophet Daniel, standing in the holy place" — let the reader understand — ¹⁶Then let them which be in Judaea escape into the hills. ¹⁷The one on the housetop must not go down to get things out of his house, ¹⁸And do not allow him that is in the field return back to take his clothes. ¹⁹How terrible it will be for pregnant women and nursing mothers in those days! ²⁰Pray that your flight will not take place in winter or on a Sabbath. ²¹For at that time there will be great tribulation, such as has not occurred since the beginning of the world until now, and never will again. ²²If those days had not been cut short, no one would survive. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be cut short. ²³Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'There he is!' — do not believe it. ²⁴For false messiahs and false prophets will arise and perform great signs and wonders, so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect. ²⁵See, I have told you in advance. ²⁶So if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness!' — do not go out. Or, 'Look, he is in the inner rooms!' — do not believe it. ²⁷For as lightning comes from the east and flashes to the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man. ²⁸Wherever the carcass is, there the vultures will gather. ²⁹"Immediately after the tribulation of those days, the sun will be darkened, the moon will not give its light, the stars will fall from the sky, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken. ³⁰Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and then all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. ³¹He will send out his angels with a loud trumpet call, and they will gather his elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other. ³²Now learn this lesson from the fig tree: when its branch becomes tender and puts out leaves, you know that summer is near. ³³In the same way, when you see all these things, you know that it is near — right at the door. ³⁴Truly I tell you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place. ³⁵Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away. ³⁶But concerning that day and hour, no one knows — not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son — but the Father alone. ³⁷For as were the days of Noah, so will be the coming of the Son of Man. ³⁸Until the day that noe entered into the ark,, for as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage. ³⁹Recognized not until the flood arrived, and picked up them all away. So will also the coming of the Son of Man be. ⁴⁰Then two men will be in the field: one will be taken and one left. ⁴¹Two women will be grinding at the mill: one will be taken and one left. ⁴²Therefore stay alert, for you do not know on what day your Lord is coming. ⁴³But

understand this: if the homeowner had known at what time of night the thief was coming, he would have stayed awake and would not have let his house be broken into. ⁴⁴For this reason, you also must be ready, because the Son of Man is coming at an hour you do not expect. ⁴⁵"Who then is the faithful and wise servant, whom his master has put in charge of his household, to give them their food at the proper time? ⁴⁶Blessed is that servant whom his master finds doing so when he arrives. ⁴⁷Truly I tell you, he will put him in charge of all his possessions. ⁴⁸But if that wicked servant says in his heart, 'My master is delayed,' ⁴⁹Will start to smite his fellowservants, and to eat and drink with the drunken. ⁵⁰The lord of that attendant will arrive in a time when he looketh not for him, and in an moment that he is not aware of,. ⁵¹Will cut him asunder, and appoint him his portion with the hypocrites — where there is sobbing and grinding of teeth.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *eporeueto* ('was going, was walking away') is imperfect, suggesting Jesus was in the process of departing — a symbolic act following the 'desolate house' pronouncement of 23:38. The disciples' impulse to show him the temple buildings (*oikodomas tou hierou*) reflects pride in Herod's temple, one of the architectural wonders of the ancient world. Josephus describes its massive stones and gold ornamentation.
2. The double negative *ou mē* ('absolutely not') with the subjunctive *aphethē* expresses the strongest possible negation in Greek — this will certainly happen. The prophecy was fulfilled literally in 70 AD when the Romans under Titus destroyed the temple. Josephus records that soldiers pried apart the stones to recover gold that had melted between them during the fire (Jewish War 7.1.1).
3. The disciples' question contains two or possibly three parts: (1) when will the temple be destroyed? (2) what is the sign of your coming (*parousia*)? (3) what signals the end of the age (*synteleias tou aiōnos*)? The Greek *parousia* means 'arrival, presence, coming' and became the technical term for Christ's return. The phrase *synteleias tou aiōnos* means 'completion of the age,' not 'end of the world' as in the KJV — *aiōn* is 'age,' not 'world' (*kosmos*). The Mount of Olives, east of the temple, is associated with eschatological events in Zechariah 14:4.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 14:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Jesus begins not with a timeline but with a warning. The verb *planēsē* ('leads astray, deceives') is from the same root as 'planet' (wandering star) — it suggests being led off course. The imperative *blepete* ('watch, be alert') sets the tone for the entire discourse: vigilance, not speculation, is the proper response to eschatological questions.
5. The phrase *epi tō onomati mou* ('on the basis of my name') means they will invoke Jesus's authority or claim to be his successor. The claim *egō eimi ho Christos* ('I am the Christ') predicts messianic pretenders. Josephus records several such figures in the decades before 70 AD (Theudas, the Egyptian, Bar Kokhba later in 132 AD).
6. The verb *throeisthe* ('be alarmed, be disturbed') suggests panic or anxiety. Jesus distinguishes between preliminary signs and the end itself (to *telos*). The word *dei* ('it is necessary, it must') indicates divine necessity — these events are part of the plan, not signs that the plan has failed. The phrase *oupō estin to telos* ('the end is not yet') prevents premature eschatological calculation.
7. The phrase *ethnos epi ethnos* ('nation against nation') echoes Isaiah 19:2 and 2 Chronicles 15:6. The SBLGNT does not include 'pestilences' (*loimoi*), which appears in some manuscripts reflected in the KJV. The catalog — wars, famines, earthquakes — represents the standard prophetic signs of divine judgment (cf. Isaiah 13, Ezekiel 38, Joel 2).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 19:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Chronicles 15:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 38. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek *ōdinōn* ('birth pains, labor contractions') is more specific than the KJV's 'sorrows.' The metaphor is significant: birth pains are not pointless suffering but purposeful agony that leads to new life. The image comes from the prophetic tradition (Isaiah 26:17, 66:7-9, Jeremiah 4:31, Micah 4:9-10) where Israel's suffering is compared to labor preceding deliverance.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 26:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 4:31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 4:9-10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb paradōsousin ('they will hand over, deliver up') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal of Jesus (26:15) and for Jesus being handed over to Pilate (27:2). The term thlipsin ('affliction, distress, tribulation') denotes severe pressure and suffering. The phrase dia to onoma mou ('because of my name') identifies the cause: association with Jesus himself.
10. The verb skandalisthēsontai ('will be caused to stumble, will fall away') describes apostasy under pressure — faith collapsing when the cost becomes too high. The triple repetition of allēlous ('one another') paints a picture of community disintegration: mutual betrayal and mutual hatred replacing mutual love.
11. The pseudoprophētai ('false prophets') are distinct from the false messiahs of verse 5. The term echoes Deuteronomy 13:1-5 and Jeremiah 23:9-40 — Israel's perennial problem of prophets who speak without divine commission. The repetition of pollous ('many') in both subject and object emphasizes the scale of the deception.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 13:1-5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 23:9-40. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The word anomian ('lawlessness') — the same term used in 23:28 — here describes societal moral collapse. The verb psygēsetai ('will be cooled, will grow cold') uses a temperature metaphor for love (agapē) — the opposite of the fervent love commanded in 22:37-39. The connection between rampant lawlessness and the cooling of love suggests that moral chaos erodes the capacity for genuine community.
13. The participle hypomeinas ('having endured, having persevered') is from hypomenō ('to remain under, to bear up under') — it pictures standing firm under pressure rather than escaping it. 'The end' (telos) may refer to the end of one's life, the end of the tribulation, or the consummation of the age. 'Will be saved' (sōthēsetai) encompasses both spiritual salvation and physical deliverance, depending on context.
14. The Greek oikoumenē ('inhabited world') referred to the known world of the Roman Empire, though its scope may extend beyond that. The phrase eis martyron ('as a testimony/witness') indicates that the proclamation itself constitutes a witness — whether people accept or reject it. This verse makes worldwide gospel proclamation a precondition for 'the end' (to telos), providing a missionary mandate embedded in eschatological prophecy.
15. The 'abomination of desolation' (to bdelygma tēs erēmōseōs) comes from Daniel 9:27, 11:31, and 12:11. In Daniel it referred to Antiochus IV Epiphanes setting up a pagan altar in the temple in 167 BC. Jesus reapplies it to a future desecration. The parenthetical 'let the reader understand' (ho anaginōskōn noeitō) may be Matthew's editorial note to his readers rather than Jesus's words, alerting them that this prophecy requires careful discernment. The 'holy place' (topō hagiō) is the temple area.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 9:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The imperative pheugetōsan ('let them flee') conveys urgency — immediate flight, no delay. The instruction to flee to the mountains is practical advice for a military siege: the Judean wilderness and hills east of Jerusalem provided natural refuge. The early church historian Eusebius records that Christians in Jerusalem fled to Pella in Transjordan before the Roman siege of 70 AD.
17. The flat roof (dōmatos) of a Palestinian house was used for daily activities and could be accessed by an external staircase. The instruction is to flee via the rooftops without even entering one's own home — the urgency is that extreme. Every moment spent collecting possessions risks death.
18. The himation ('cloak, outer garment') was an essential item — it served as both clothing and bedding (cf. Exodus 22:26-27). Even this necessity must be abandoned. The verb epistrepstō ('let him turn back') echoes Lot's wife (Genesis 19:26) — looking back is dangerous.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 22:26-27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 19:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The ouai ('woe, alas') here expresses compassion, not condemnation — grief for those whose physical condition makes flight nearly impossible. The phrase en gastri echousais ('having in the womb') and thēlāzousais ('nursing') depict the most vulnerable members of society in a crisis.
20. Winter (cheimōnos) makes travel through the Judean wilderness dangerous — cold, rain, swollen wadis. A Sabbath flight would face two obstacles: restricted travel distances (a 'Sabbath day's journey' was about 2,000 cubits or three-quarters of a mile) and city gates that might be shut. The mention of Sabbath assumes a Jewish-observant audience and reflects Matthew's Jewish-Christian community context.
21. The phrase thlipsis megalē ('great tribulation') has become a technical eschatological term in many traditions. The language of unprecedented suffering echoes Daniel 12:1. The superlative — nothing like it before or after — may be hyperbolic prophetic language (cf. Exodus 10:14 about the locusts, Joel 2:2) or may describe a truly singular event. Josephus's account of the siege of Jerusalem describes starvation, cannibalism, and mass crucifixion that corroborates extreme suffering.

- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 12:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 10:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joel 2:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 22.** The verb *ekolobōthēsan* ('were cut short, were curtailed') implies divine intervention to limit the duration of suffering. The term *pasa sarx* ('all flesh') means all living people, not just believers. The *eklektous* ('elect, chosen ones') are the reason for God's mercy in shortening the tribulation — divine compassion for his people sets a boundary on catastrophe.
- 23.** Jesus returns to the warning against false messiahs (cf. v. 5). The construction *ean tis* ('if anyone') is deliberately indefinite — the source of deception could be anyone. The imperative *mē pisteusēte* ('do not believe') is decisive and unqualified.
- 24.** The compound *pseudochristoi* ('false messiahs/false christs') appears only here and in Mark 13:22 in the entire New Testament. The phrase *sēmeia megala kai terata* ('great signs and wonders') uses the same language used positively for God's miraculous acts in the Old Testament (Deuteronomy 6:22) — the deception is sophisticated enough to mimic divine authentication. The clause *ei dynaton* ('if possible') leaves ambiguous whether the elect can actually be deceived — the conditional suggests it may approach but not achieve that.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** The verb *proieirēka* ('I have foretold') emphasizes that the warning comes before the events, removing any excuse for being caught off guard. The brevity of the statement gives it the force of a prophetic seal — 'You have been warned.'
- 26.** Two contrasting locations are named: the wilderness (*erēmō*), where prophetic and messianic movements typically gathered (cf. the Qumran community, various revolutionary movements), and the inner rooms (*tameiois*), suggesting secret, esoteric knowledge. Both are rejected — the true coming of the Son of Man will not be hidden or localized.
- 27.** The lightning metaphor (*astrapē*) establishes three qualities of the Parousia: it will be sudden, visible everywhere simultaneously, and unmistakable. No one needs to be told lightning has struck — you simply see it. This eliminates the possibility of a secret or localized return. The title 'Son of Man' (*huios tou anthrōpou*) draws from Daniel 7:13-14.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** This proverb-like saying is enigmatic. The Greek *aetoi* can mean 'eagles' or 'vultures' — vultures is more contextually appropriate since eagles do not typically feed on carrion (*ptōma*, 'fallen body, corpse'). The saying may mean that judgment naturally finds its target, just as vultures inevitably find a carcass. Some interpreters see a reference to Roman eagles (legionary standards). The exact application is deliberately obscure.
- 29.** The adverb *eutheōs* ('immediately') creates an interpretive challenge — if the tribulation of 'those days' refers to 70 AD, what follows 'immediately' after? The cosmic imagery draws heavily from Isaiah 13:10 (judgment on Babylon) and Isaiah 34:4 (judgment on Edom), where darkened sun and falling stars are prophetic language for political upheaval and divine judgment, not necessarily literal astronomical events. Whether Jesus uses this language literally or figuratively (as the prophets often did) remains debated. The 'powers of the heavens' (*dynameis tōn ouranōn*) may refer to celestial bodies or to spiritual forces.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 13:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 34:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The 'sign' (*sēmeion*) of the Son of Man is not identified — it may be the Son of Man himself, a banner, a light, or something else entirely. The mourning of 'all the tribes of the earth' (*pasai hai phylai tēs gēs*) echoes Zechariah 12:10-12, where Israel mourns one whom they have pierced. The coming 'on the clouds' (*epi tōn nephelōn*) directly fulfills Daniel 7:13-14, where the Son of Man receives universal dominion from the Ancient of Days. The combination of *dynamis* ('power') and *doxa* ('glory') contrasts with Jesus's first coming in humility.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 7:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 12:10-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The trumpet (*salpingos*) echoes the great trumpet of Isaiah 27:13, which summons the scattered Israelites home. The gathering of the elect (*eklektous*) from the four winds (*tessarōn anemōn*) fulfills the ingathering prophecies of Deuteronomy 30:4, Isaiah 11:11-12, and Zechariah 2:6. The phrase *ap' akrōn ouranōn heōs tōn akrōn autōn* ('from the extremities of the heavens to their extremities') means from one horizon to the other — a universal gathering.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 27:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 30:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 11:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 2:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The fig tree (sykēs) parable is an analogy from nature, not an allegory (the fig tree does not represent Israel here, despite some interpretive traditions). In Palestine, the fig tree's visible budding is a reliable harbinger of summer. The Greek hapalos ('tender, soft') describes the supple new growth. Jesus applies this to the preceding signs: when you see them, know that the fulfillment is near.
- 33.** The pronoun 'it' (implied by the verb *estin*) is ambiguous — 'it' could be the Son of Man, the kingdom, or the predicted destruction. The phrase *epi thyras* ('at the doors') is a vivid spatial metaphor: whatever is coming has arrived at the threshold and is about to enter.
- 34.** This is one of the most debated verses in the New Testament. The word *genea* ('generation') most naturally means the people alive at a given time (roughly 30-40 years). If taken at face value, Jesus predicts that everything described in vv. 4-31 will occur within the lifetime of his contemporaries. This fits the destruction of Jerusalem (70 AD, about 40 years after Jesus's ministry) but creates tension with the cosmic-scale events of vv. 29-31. Alternative readings take *genea* as 'race' (the Jewish people will not cease to exist) or 'type of people' (evil generation). We render the word in its primary sense and note the interpretive range.
- 35.** The contrast between the temporary (heaven and earth) and the permanent (Jesus's words) is a staggering claim. The verb *parelusetai* ('will pass away, will come to an end') applied to heaven and earth echoes Isaiah 51:6 and Psalm 102:26. The double negative *ou mē parelthōsin* ('absolutely will not pass away') applied to Jesus's words places them above creation itself in permanence — a claim of divine authority.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 51:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 102:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The SBLGNT includes *oude ho huioi* ('nor the Son'), which some manuscripts omit (the KJV follows manuscripts that omit it). The inclusion is generally considered original and theologically significant: Jesus acknowledges a limitation on his own knowledge regarding the timing of the end. The three-tiered exclusion (no human, no angel, not even the Son) concentrates all knowledge of the timing in the Father alone. This verse fundamentally undercuts all attempts to calculate the date of Christ's return.
- 37.** The Noah comparison (*hai hēmerai tou Nōe*) establishes an analogy not about wickedness but about normalcy — people will be going about ordinary life when the end comes. The Greek *Nōe* is the Septuagint form of the Hebrew Noah.
- 38.** The activities listed — eating (*trōgontes*), drinking (*pinontes*), marrying (*gamountes*), and giving in marriage (*gamizontes*) — are not sinful but ordinary. The point is not that they were doing evil things but that they were oblivious. The *kataklysmos* ('flood, deluge') is the Greek term used in the Septuagint for Noah's flood (Genesis 6-8).
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 6-8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 39.** The verb *ouk egnōsan* ('they did not know, they did not realize') is the key: the catastrophe was not unannounced (Noah was building the ark in plain sight) but unrecognized. The verb *ēren* ('took away, swept away') pictures sudden, total removal. The *parousia* will similarly overtake those who are not alert.
- 40.** The verb *paralambanetai* ('is taken, is received') and *aphietai* ('is left, is released') have been interpreted in opposite ways: 'taken' as gathered for salvation (cf. v. 31) or 'taken' in judgment (as the flood 'took' in v. 39). The Noah context suggests 'taken' means taken in judgment and 'left' means spared, though the reverse interpretation (taken to be with the Lord) is also defended. We render the Greek without interpretive addition.
- 41.** Grinding grain at a hand mill (*mylō*) was a common daily task for women in first-century Palestine. The parallel with verse 40 extends the point: the separation will occur during the most routine activities, without warning, in both men's and women's domains of daily life.
- 42.** The imperative *grēgoreite* ('stay awake, be watchful, be alert') becomes the dominant theme from here through chapter 25. The SBLGNT reads *hēmera* ('day') rather than *hōra* ('hour') found in some manuscripts. The practical application of the preceding prophecy is not calculation but constant readiness.
- 43.** The Greek *oikodespotēs* ('master of the house, homeowner') becomes the subject of a brief parable. The *phylakē* ('watch') refers to the Roman system dividing the night into four watches. The verb *diorychthenai* ('to be dug through') reflects Palestinian construction: mud-brick walls could literally be tunneled through by a thief. The analogy is startling — the Son of Man's coming is compared to a thief's break-in (cf. 1 Thessalonians 5:2, Revelation 3:3).
- 44.** The imperative *ginesthe hetoimoi* ('be ready, become prepared') calls for ongoing readiness, not a one-time preparation. The phrase *hē ou dokeite hōra* ('the hour you do not think/expect') adds an ironic twist: the one thing you can be sure of is that it will not be when you expect it.

45. The parable shifts to a household manager. The Greek *pistos* ('faithful, trustworthy') and *phronimos* ('wise, prudent') describe the ideal servant. The *oiketeia* ('household, household servants') represents those under the servant's care. The question 'who then is...?' invites the listener to identify with or aspire to this role.
46. The word *makarios* ('blessed, fortunate, happy') is the same word that opens the Beatitudes (5:3-11). The key phrase is *houtōs poiounta* ('doing thus') — blessedness is found in faithful action at the moment of the master's return, not in speculation about when the return will occur.
47. The reward for faithfulness is expanded responsibility — the servant who managed the household well is given authority over all the master's possessions (*pasin tois hyparchousin*). This principle — faithfulness in small things leading to authority over greater things — recurs in the parable of the talents (25:21, 23).
48. The phrase *en tē kardia autou* ('in his heart') indicates private calculation, not public rebellion. The verb *chronizei* ('delays, takes a long time') reveals the servant's reasoning: he assumes the master's absence will continue, so he can act with impunity. The adjective *kakos* ('wicked, evil') characterizes the servant by his response to the delay, not by a separate category of person.
49. The wicked servant's behavior manifests in two ways: abuse of those under his authority (*typtein tous syndoulous*, 'beating his fellow servants') and self-indulgence (eating and drinking with drunkards). The combination of oppression and excess characterizes unfaithful leadership — using one's position for personal gain while harming those one is supposed to serve.
50. The double expression — a day he does not expect (*ou prosdoka*) and an hour he does not know (*ou ginōskei*) — echoes verse 36. The servant's calculation that the master is delayed proves fatally wrong. The surprise element reinforces the discourse's central theme: readiness, not prediction.
51. The verb *dichotomēsei* ('will cut in two, will cut to pieces') is shockingly graphic — whether literal dismemberment or a metaphor for severe punishment is debated. The phrase *meta tōn hypokritōn* ('with the hypocrites') is distinctly Matthean (Luke's parallel has 'with the unfaithful'). The unfaithful servant is classified with the hypocrites of chapter 23 — those who had a role in God's household but served themselves instead. The formula 'weeping and gnashing of teeth' appears for the sixth and final time in Matthew.

25

Summary: *Matthew 25 continues the Olivet Discourse with three parables about readiness and accountability. The parable of the ten virgins warns against being unprepared for the bridegroom's delayed arrival. The parable of the talents teaches that faithful stewardship of what has been entrusted will be rewarded, while fearful inaction will be judged. The chapter culminates in the parable of the sheep and goats — a vision of the Son of Man judging all nations based on how they treated 'the least of these,' identifying care for the hungry, thirsty, stranger, naked, sick, and imprisoned as care for Christ himself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sheep and goats passage (vv. 31-46) is unique to Matthew and is one of the most ethically demanding texts in the Gospels. The criterion of judgment is not doctrinal correctness or religious observance but practical compassion for the vulnerable. Both the righteous and the unrighteous are surprised by the identification of Jesus with 'the least of these' — neither group knew they were serving or neglecting Christ himself. This radical identification of the exalted Son of Man with the suffering poor has shaped Christian ethics for two millennia.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'the least of these my brothers' (v. 40) is debated: does it refer to all suffering people, to persecuted Christians specifically, or to Christian missionaries? The Greek *adelphōn mou* ('my brothers') could support any of these. We render the text straightforwardly. The parable of the talents has been misused to justify economic exploitation; the original context is eschatological accountability, not capitalist productivity. The 'outer darkness' language (v. 30) and 'eternal punishment' (v. 46) raise questions about the nature and duration of divine judgment that we note without resolving.*

Connections: *The ten virgins echoes Song of Solomon 3:1-4 (seeking the beloved at night) and connects to the wedding feast imagery of 22:1-14. The talents parable develops the faithful/wicked servant contrast of 24:45-51. The sheep and goats scene draws on Daniel 7:9-14 (the Son of Man's tribunal), Ezekiel 34 (God judging between sheep), and Joel 3:1-3 (judgment of the nations). The six acts of mercy listed in vv. 35-36 became foundational for Christian charitable practice.*

¹"Then the kingdom of heaven will be like ten virgins who took their lamps and went out to meet the bridegroom. ²Five of them were foolish and five were wise. ³When the foolish ones took their lamps, they did not take oil with them. ⁴But the wise ones took oil in flasks along with their lamps. ⁵When the bridegroom was delayed, they all became drowsy and fell asleep. ⁶B

ut at midnight a shout rang out: 'Here is the bridegroom! Come out to meet him!' ⁷Then all those virgins got up and trimmed their lamps. ⁸The foolish said to the wise, 'Give us some of your oil, for our lamps are going out.' ⁹But the wise answered, 'There may not be enough for both us and you. Go instead to the dealers and buy some for yourselves.' ¹⁰While they were going away to buy oil, the bridegroom came, and those who were ready went in with him to the wedding feast. And the door was shut. ¹¹Later the other virgins came and said, 'Lord, lord, open the door for us!' ¹²But he answered, 'Truly I tell you, I do not know you.' ¹³Therefore stay alert, for you know neither the day nor the hour. ¹⁴"For it is like a man going on a journey who called his servants and entrusted his property to them. ¹⁵To one he gave five talents, to another two, and to another one — each according to his own ability. Then he went away. ¹⁶The one who had received the five talents went at once and traded with them, and made five more. ¹⁷In the same way, the one with two talents gained two more. ¹⁸But the one who had received one talent went off, dug a hole in the ground, and hid his master's money. ¹⁹After a long time, the master of those servants returned and settled accounts with them. ²⁰The one who had received five talents came forward and brought five more, saying, 'Master, you entrusted me with five talents. See, I have gained five more.' ²¹His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful with a few things; I will put you in charge of many things. Enter into the joy of your master.' ²²The one with two talents also came forward and said, 'Master, you entrusted me with two talents. See, I have gained two more.' ²³His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful with a few things; I will put you in charge of many things. Enter into the joy of your master.' ²⁴Then the one who had received one talent came forward and said, 'Master, I knew you to be a hard man, reaping where you did not sow and gathering where you did not scatter seed. ²⁵So I was afraid and went and hid your talent in the ground. Here — you have what is yours.' ²⁶His master answered him, 'You wicked and lazy servant! You knew that I reap where I did not sow and gather where I did not scatter? ²⁷Then you should have deposited my money with the bankers, and on my return I would have received it back with interest. ²⁸So take the talent from him and give it to the one who has ten talents. ²⁹For to everyone who has, more will be given, and he will have an abundance. But from the one who does not have, even what he has will be taken from him. ³⁰And throw the worthless servant into the outer darkness. In that place there will be weeping and gnashing of teeth.' ³¹"When the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the angels with him, then he will sit on his glorious throne. ³²All the nations will be gathered before him, and he will separate people from one another as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. ³³He will place the sheep on his right and the goats on his left. ³⁴Then the King will say to those on his right, 'Come, you who are blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. ³⁵For I was hungry and you gave me food, I was thirsty and you gave me drink, I was a stranger and you welcomed me, ³⁶I was naked and you clothed me, I was sick and you visited me, I was in prison and you came to me.' ³⁷Then the righteous will answer him, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you drink? ³⁸When did we see you a stranger and welcome you, or naked and clothe you? ³⁹When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?' ⁴⁰And the King will answer them, 'Truly I tell you, whatever you did for one of the least of these brothers and sisters of mine, you did for me.' ⁴¹Then he will say to those on his left, 'Depart from me, you who are cursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels. ⁴²For I was hungry and you gave me no food, I was thirsty and you gave me no drink, ⁴³I was a stranger and you did not welcome me, naked and you did not clothe me, sick and in prison and you did not visit me.' ⁴⁴Then they also will answer, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or sick or in prison, and did not serve you?' ⁴⁵Then he will answer them, 'Truly I tell you, whatever you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for me.' ⁴⁶And these will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *parthenois* ('virgins, unmarried young women') refers to the bridal attendants, not the bride herself. The *lampadas* ('torches, lamps') were likely torchlike lamps — oil-soaked cloths wrapped around sticks — used in wedding processions. The scene depicts a nighttime bridal procession, a common feature of Jewish weddings where the bridegroom came to collect the bride and bring her to his home.
2. Matthew reverses the typical order and names the foolish (*mōrai*) first, emphasizing their failure. The adjectives *mōrai* ('foolish') and *phronimoi* ('wise, prudent') are the same terms used for the builders on sand and rock in 7:24-26 — folly and wisdom are defined by preparedness for what is coming.

3. The Greek *elaion* ('olive oil') was the standard lamp fuel. Taking lamps without extra oil reveals short-term thinking — they prepared for the event but not for a delay. The folly is not malice but negligence.
4. The *ageiois* ('vessels, containers, flasks') represent reserve supply. The wise virgins' preparation was not extraordinary — they simply anticipated that the bridegroom might be delayed. Wisdom, in this parable, is realistic expectation combined with adequate preparation.
5. The participle *chronizontos* ('delaying, being late') uses the same root as 24:48 where the wicked servant said 'my master is delayed.' Crucially, all ten — wise and foolish — fell asleep. Sleep is not the failing; lack of oil is. The distinction between the two groups is not greater vigilance but better preparation.
6. The timing — *mesēs nyktos* ('middle of the night') — fulfills the theme of unexpected arrival (24:44, 50). The *kraugē* ('shout, cry') pierces the sleeping darkness. The imperative *exerchesthe* ('come out!') demands immediate action. The verb *apantēsin* ('meeting, encounter') was used technically for the welcoming delegation that went out to meet a visiting dignitary.
7. The verb *ekosmēsan* ('trimmed, arranged, put in order') involves adjusting the wicks and refueling — standard lamp maintenance. All ten perform the same action, but only now does the difference in preparation become apparent.
8. The present tense *sbennyntai* ('are being extinguished, are going out') describes the lamps flickering and dying — there is still a brief window, but it is closing. The request *dote hēmin* ('give us') reveals the crisis: preparation cannot be borrowed at the last moment.
9. The refusal is not selfishness but realism — *mēpote ou mē arkesē* ('perhaps there will certainly not be enough') acknowledges that sharing would leave all ten without adequate oil. The parable's point is that some things cannot be shared or transferred at the last moment: personal spiritual preparedness is not a communal resource.
10. The timing is cruel in its precision: the bridegroom arrives during the foolish virgins' absence. The word *hetoimoi* ('ready, prepared') is the same term from 24:44 ('you also must be ready'). The passive *ekeleisthē* ('was shut') has the finality of divine decision — the door, once closed, will not reopen. The shut door is the parable's climactic image.
11. The doubled vocative *kyrie kyrie* ('Lord, lord!') echoes 7:21-23, where Jesus warned that saying 'Lord, Lord' would not be enough without corresponding obedience. The frantic repetition conveys desperation. The request *anoixon hēmin* ('open for us!') meets the closed door of verse 10.
12. The bridegroom's response *ouk oida hymas* ('I do not know you') is not a factual claim of unfamiliarity but a legal-relational declaration of non-recognition — equivalent to disowning. This parallels 7:23 ('I never knew you'). In Semitic idiom, 'to know' implies relationship; 'not to know' means the relationship does not exist.
13. The SBLGNT does not include 'wherein the Son of man comes' (*en hē ho huioi tou anthrōpou erchetai*), which appears in later manuscripts and the KJV. The imperative *grēgoreite* ('stay alert, keep watch') provides the moral of the parable, linking back to 24:42. The emphasis is on the double ignorance: neither the day (*hēmeran*) nor the hour (*hōran*) is knowable.
14. The Greek *apodēmōn* ('going abroad, traveling away') indicates an extended absence — the master's return is indefinite. The verb *paredōken* ('handed over, entrusted') implies both trust and accountability. The master's property (*ta hyparchonta autou*) represents whatever God entrusts to his people. The SBLGNT does not include 'the kingdom of heaven is as' explicitly, but the meaning is implied by the connecting *gar* ('for').
15. A *talanton* ('talent') was a unit of weight (about 75 pounds / 34 kg), and when applied to money, represented approximately 6,000 denarii — about 20 years' wages for a laborer. Even one talent was an enormous sum. The phrase *kata tēn idian dynamin* ('according to his own ability') indicates that the distribution was personalized, not arbitrary — the master knew each servant's capacity.
16. The adverb *eutheōs* ('immediately, at once') indicates prompt action. The verb *ērgasato* ('worked, traded, did business') implies active investment. The verb *ekerdēsen* ('gained, profited') is from *kerdos* ('gain, profit'). The 100% return represents exceptional stewardship, not a specific investment strategy.
17. The word *hōsautōs* ('in the same way, likewise') establishes that the proportional return, not the absolute amount, is what matters. Both the five-talent and two-talent servants achieved 100% return — identical faithfulness despite different scales.
18. Burying money (*ōryxen gēn*, 'dug the earth') was a common method of safeguarding valuables in the ancient world and was considered a reasonable precaution in rabbinic law (b. Baba Metzia 42a). The servant did not lose the money or steal it — he preserved it. His failure was in doing nothing more than preserving it.
19. The phrase *meta polyn chronon* ('after much time') reinforces the theme of delayed return from 24:48 and 25:5. The expression *synairei logon* ('settles accounts,' literally 'takes up a reckoning together') is a commercial term for auditing — the time of accountability has come.
20. The servant's report is straightforward and factual: he acknowledges what was given (*paredōkas*, 'you entrusted') and presents the result (*ekerdēsa*, 'I gained'). There is no boasting — the credit structure of the sentence places the master's entrustment before the servant's achievement.
21. The exclamation *eu* ('well done!') is a single Greek word conveying approval. The adjectives *agathe* ('good') and *piste* ('faithful, trustworthy') describe character, not just performance. The phrase *epi oligā* ('over a few things') is remarkable — five talents was an enormous sum, yet the master calls it 'a few things' compared to what is coming. The invitation *eiselthe eis tēn charan* ('enter into the joy') transcends mere reward — it is admission to participation in the master's own celebration.

- 22.** The two-talent servant's report mirrors the five-talent servant's almost verbatim. The parallel structure emphasizes that the proportion of faithfulness, not the absolute amount, is what the master evaluates.
- 23.** The master's response is word-for-word identical to verse 21. The two-talent servant receives exactly the same commendation, the same reward, and the same invitation to joy as the five-talent servant. This is the parable's most important structural feature: God's approval is based on faithfulness relative to what was given, not on absolute output.
- 24.** The one-talent servant does not report results but offers an accusation: *egnōn se* ('I knew you') becomes a character indictment. The adjective *sklēros* ('hard, harsh, demanding') frames the master as exploitative. The agricultural metaphor — reaping where you did not sow (*therizōn hopou ouk espeiras*), gathering where you did not scatter (*synagōn hothēn ou dieskorpisas*) — accuses the master of profiting from others' labor. Whether this is an accurate description of the master or the servant's self-justifying distortion is the interpretive question.
- 25.** The participle *phobētheis* ('being afraid, having feared') reveals the servant's motivation: fear, not laziness. The phrase *ide echeis to son* ('look, you have what is yours') is simultaneously a return of property and a rejection of relationship. The servant treats the talent as a liability to be preserved, not a gift to be invested.
- 26.** The master's reply uses the servant's own words against him. The adjectives *ponēre* ('wicked') and *oknēre* ('lazy, slothful, hesitant') provide the master's counter-assessment. The word *oknēros* implies not just idleness but timid shrinking back. The master's question *ēdeis hoti* ('you knew that...?') can be read as accepting the servant's premise for argument's sake: 'Even if that were true, it should have motivated you to act, not to freeze.'
- 27.** The *trapezitais* ('bankers, money-changers,' literally 'table-men' from *trapeza*, 'table') operated exchange tables in the marketplace. The word *tokō* ('interest,' literally 'offspring' — money begetting money) refers to the return on a deposit. The master's argument is devastating: even the minimum effort — simply depositing the money — would have been acceptable. The servant did not even do that. The prohibition against charging interest to fellow Israelites (Deuteronomy 23:19-20) did not apply to banking deposits.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 23:19-20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** The command to redistribute the talent to the most productive servant (not divided equally) follows the principle stated in verse 29. The one talent is not returned to the master's treasury but given to another servant — unfaithfulness results in the loss of what was entrusted.
- 29.** This paradoxical principle appears four times in the Gospels (Matthew 13:12, 25:29; Mark 4:25; Luke 19:26). In context, 'having' means having produced results through faithful stewardship. The one who uses what is given receives more; the one who does not use it loses even the original gift. This is a spiritual principle about faithfulness, not an economic observation about wealth concentration.
- 30.** The adjective *achreion* ('useless, worthless, unprofitable') describes the servant's net contribution: nothing. The phrase *to skotos to exōteron* ('the outer darkness') and the formula 'weeping and gnashing of teeth' appear for the final time in Matthew (cf. 8:12, 22:13, 24:51). The severity of the punishment — identical to the hypocrites' fate — indicates that inactive preservation of what God gives is as culpable as active rebellion.
- 31.** The scene shifts from parable to apocalyptic vision. The Son of Man arrives *en tē doxē autou* ('in his glory') — the same glory foretold in 24:30. The phrase *thronos doxēs* ('throne of glory') echoes the divine throne room of Daniel 7:9-10 and 1 Enoch 62:5. Jesus claims the judicial authority that in the Old Testament belongs exclusively to God.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:9-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The phrase *panta ta ethnē* ('all the nations/peoples') is universal in scope. The verb *aphorisei* ('will separate, will set apart') uses the same root as 'Pharisee' (*pharisaïos*, 'separated one'). The pastoral imagery of a shepherd (*poimēn*) dividing sheep from goats echoes Ezekiel 34:17-22, where God himself judges between sheep. In Palestine, sheep and goats often grazed together but were separated at night.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 34:17-22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The right side (*dexiōn*) is the position of honor and favor throughout Scripture and the ancient world (cf. Psalm 110:1). The left (*euōnymōn*, literally 'well-named' — a euphemism, since the left was considered unlucky) is the position of disfavor. The spatial arrangement visualizes the coming verdict.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 110:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The title *basileus* ('King') replaces 'Son of Man' — the judge is also the king. The passive *eulogēmenoi* ('blessed ones') is a divine passive: blessed by God. The verb *klēronomēsate* ('inherit') frames the kingdom as an inheritance, not an earned wage — it was prepared (*hētoimasmenēn*, 'made ready') before the beneficiaries existed, from the foundation of the world (*apo katabolēs kosmou*). The kingdom is God's gift, even though the criterion of entry involves human action.
- 35.** The six acts of mercy begin. The first-person statements are extraordinary — the King identifies himself with the recipients of care. The word *xenos* ('stranger, foreigner') denotes someone outside the community, without local connections or legal protections. The verb *synēgagete* ('you gathered together, you took in') implies hospitality — bringing the outsider into community.

- 36.** The final three acts: clothing the naked (*gymnos*, which can mean 'poorly clothed' as well as completely unclothed), visiting the sick (*epeskepsasthe*, from *episkopeō*, 'to look upon, to visit, to care for' — the root of 'bishop/overseer'), and visiting prisoners (*en phylakē*, 'in custody/prison'). Ancient prisons provided no food or care — prisoners depended entirely on outside visitors for survival. These six acts (feeding, giving drink, hospitality, clothing, caring for the sick, visiting prisoners) became the traditional 'corporal works of mercy' in Christian ethics.
- 37.** The righteous (*dikaioi*) are genuinely surprised — their compassion was not calculated to earn a reward. The question *pote se eidomen* ('when did we see you?') reveals that they were unaware they were serving Christ. This unconscious righteousness is precisely the point: authentic compassion does not perform for an audience.
- 38.** The questions continue through the same six categories, emphasizing the righteous ones' complete lack of awareness that their acts of mercy had any connection to Christ. The repetition creates a liturgical rhythm.
- 39.** The final pair — sick and imprisoned — represents the most marginalized members of society. Visiting the sick and imprisoned carried social stigma and personal risk. The righteous ones' question implies they would have done more had they known.
- 40.** This is the theological center of the passage. The phrase *eph' hoson* ('inasmuch as, to the extent that, whatever') creates a comprehensive equivalence. The superlative *elachistōn* ('least, smallest, most insignificant') identifies Christ with society's most overlooked members. The phrase *tōn adelphōn mou* ('my brothers') has been interpreted as referring to all suffering people, to fellow Christians, or to Christian missionaries. The Greek *adelphōn* is rendered 'brothers and sisters' as the context addresses all nations. The identification *emoi epoiēsate* ('you did it to me') makes compassion for the vulnerable a direct encounter with Christ.
- 41.** The contrast with verse 34 is sharp: 'Come' versus 'Depart' (*poreuesthe ap' emou*); 'blessed by my Father' versus 'cursed' (*katēramenoi*); 'inherit the kingdom prepared for you' versus 'into the eternal fire prepared for the devil.' Note that the kingdom was prepared 'for you' while the fire was prepared 'for the devil and his angels' (*tō diabolō kai tois angelois autou*) — the fire's intended occupants are demonic, not human. Humans who end up there are in a place not designed for them. The adjective *aiōnion* ('eternal, age-long') is from *aiōn* ('age'); its precise meaning — unending or age-long — is debated.
- 42.** The accusation mirrors verses 35-36 point by point, with the devastating addition of *ouk* ('not') before each verb. The judgment is not for active harm but for passive neglect — sins of omission rather than commission.
- 43.** The six categories are compressed slightly here — 'sick and in prison' are combined into one clause — but the same acts of neglect are catalogued. The passive construction makes the failing clear: they saw need and did nothing.
- 44.** The goats' question mirrors the sheep's (vv. 37-39) — they too are surprised. They did not realize that neglecting the vulnerable was neglecting Christ. The verb *diēkonēsamen* ('we served, we ministered to') is from *diakoneō*, the root of 'deacon/servant.' Their defense is ignorance, but ignorance of Christ's identification with the suffering is not accepted as an excuse.
- 45.** The negative counterpart to verse 40. The word *adelphōn* ('brothers') is absent from the SBLGNT here (present in v. 40 but not v. 45), which may broaden the identification beyond 'my brothers' to 'the least' in general. The principle works in both directions: service to the least is service to Christ; neglect of the least is neglect of Christ.
- 46.** The parallel structure places *kolasin aiōnion* ('eternal punishment') and *zōēn aiōnion* ('eternal life') in direct opposition, both modified by the same adjective *aiōnion*. The word *kolasin* ('punishment, correction') comes from *kolazō* ('to prune, to cut short, to punish'). Whether *aiōnion* means 'everlasting' (without end) or 'of the age to come' (pertaining to the coming age) is debated; the same adjective modifies both destinies, so consistency requires reading them the same way. This verse concludes the Olivet Discourse and Jesus's public teaching in Matthew.

26

Summary: *Matthew 26 narrates the events leading to Jesus's arrest and trial. The chapter opens with the plot to kill Jesus, the anointing at Bethany, and Judas's agreement to betray him. Jesus then shares the Passover meal with his disciples, institutes the Lord's Supper, predicts Peter's denial, agonizes in prayer at Gethsemane, and is arrested. The chapter concludes with Jesus's trial before the high priest Caiaphas, Peter's three denials, and Peter's bitter weeping.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is dense with irony and theological significance. The woman who anoints Jesus performs a prophetic act that the disciples cannot understand — she is anointing him for burial while they debate the waste. Judas's betrayal price of thirty silver coins echoes Zechariah 11:12-13. The Last Supper reinterprets the Passover in terms of Jesus's own body and blood, establishing a 'new covenant.' Jesus's prayer in Gethsemane — 'not as I will, but as you will' — is the ultimate expression of submission to the Father. The arrest scene includes Jesus's enigmatic statement that he could summon twelve legions of angels but chooses not to, placing his suffering squarely within divine purpose.*

Translation Friction: The institution narrative (vv. 26-29) is among the most theologically disputed texts in Christianity — different traditions interpret 'this is my body' and 'this is my blood' in radically different ways (transubstantiation, consubstantiation, memorial, spiritual presence). We render the Greek without theological interpretation. The phrase 'blood of the covenant poured out for many' (v. 28) echoes both Exodus 24:8 (covenant blood) and Isaiah 53:12 (poured out for many). Jesus's statement 'the one who dipped his hand in the bowl with me' (v. 23) does not identify Judas publicly — in the reclining posture, multiple people shared the same dish.

Connections: The Passover setting connects to Exodus 12. The anointing echoes the anointing of priests and kings (Exodus 29, 1 Samuel 16). The thirty silver coins fulfill Zechariah 11:12. The cup language draws on Isaiah 51:17 and Jeremiah 25:15 (cup of God's wrath). Gethsemane ('oil press') connects to the Mount of Olives and the crushing imagery of Isaiah 53. Peter's denial fulfills Jesus's prediction and echoes the scattering of the sheep (Zechariah 13:7, quoted in v. 31). The trial before Caiaphas involves the Son of Man language of Daniel 7:13 and the right-hand imagery of Psalm 110:1.

¹When Jesus had finished all these words, he said to his disciples, ²"You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man will be handed over to be crucified." ³Then the chief priests and the elders of the people gathered in the courtyard of the high priest, whose name was Caiaphas, ⁴Plotted that they might take Jesus by subtility, and kill him. ⁵But they said, "Not during the festival, or there may be a riot among the people." ⁶In the house of Simon the leper,, and now after Jesus was in Bethany. ⁷There arrived to him a lady having an alabaster box of very costly ointment, and poured it on his head, as he sat at meat. ⁸When the disciples saw this, they were indignant. "Why this waste?" they asked. ⁹"This could have been sold for a large sum and the money given to the poor." ¹⁰Aware of this, Jesus said to them, "Why are you troubling this woman? She has done a beautiful thing for me. ¹¹For you will always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me. ¹²By pouring this perfume on my body, she has done it to prepare me for burial. ¹³Truly I tell you, wherever this gospel is proclaimed in the whole world, what she has done will also be told in memory of her." ¹⁴Went to the chief priests,, then one of the twelve, called Judas Iscariot. ¹⁵Stated to them, What will you give me, and I will deliver him to you? then they covenanted with him for thirty pieces of silver. ¹⁶From that time on, he looked for an opportunity to hand Jesus over. ¹⁷On the first day of Unleavened Bread, the disciples came to Jesus and asked, "Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the Passover?" ¹⁸He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and tell him, 'The Teacher says: My time is near. I will observe the Passover at your house with my disciples.'" ¹⁹The disciples did as Jesus directed them and prepared the Passover. ²⁰When evening came, he reclined at the table with the Twelve. ²¹While they were eating, he said, "Truly I tell you, one of you will betray me." ²²Deeply distressed, they began to say to him one after another, "Surely not I, Lord?" ²³He answered, "The one who has dipped his hand into the bowl with me — he will betray me. ²⁴The Son of Man goes as it is written about him, but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for that man if he had not been born." ²⁵Judas, who was betraying him, answered, "Surely not I, Rabbi?" Jesus said to him, "You have said it yourself." ²⁶While they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, broke it, and gave it to the disciples, saying, "Take, eat. This is my body." ²⁷Then he took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, "Drink from it, all of you. ²⁸For this is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins. ²⁹I tell you, from now on I will not drink of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom." ³⁰After singing a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives. ³¹Then Jesus said to them, "You will all fall away because of me this night, for it is written: 'I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep of the flock will be scattered.'" ³²But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you to Galilee." ³³Peter answered him, "Even if everyone else falls away because of you, I will never fall away." ³⁴Jesus said to him, "Truly I tell you, this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times." ³⁵Peter said to him, "Even if I must die with you, I will never deny you." And all the disciples said the same thing. ³⁶Then Jesus came with them to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to the disciples, "Sit here while I go over there and pray." ³⁷Taking Peter and the two sons of Zebedee with him, he began to be sorrowful and deeply troubled. ³⁸Then he said to them, "My soul is overwhelmed with sorrow to the point of death. Stay here and keep watch with me." ³⁹Going a little farther, he fell face down and prayed, "My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass from me. Yet not as I will, but as you will." ⁴⁰Then he came to the disciples and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter,

"So, could you not keep watch with me for one hour? ⁴¹Stay awake and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit is willing, but the flesh is weak." ⁴²Again, a second time, he went away and prayed, "My Father, if this cannot pass unless I drink it, your will be done." ⁴³Again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. ⁴⁴So he left them and went away once more, praying a third time, saying the same thing again. ⁴⁵Then he came to the disciples and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and resting? See, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners. ⁴⁶Get up, let us go. See, my betrayer is near." ⁴⁷While he was still speaking, suddenly Judas, one of the Twelve, arrived, and with him a large crowd armed with swords and clubs, sent from the chief priests and elders of the people. ⁴⁸Now the betrayer had given them a sign, saying, "The one I kiss — that is the man. Seize him." ⁴⁹Immediately he went up to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and kissed him. ⁵⁰Jesus said to him, "Friend, do what you came to do." Then they came forward, seized Jesus, and arrested him. ⁵¹Suddenly, one of those with Jesus reached for his sword, drew it, and struck the servant of the high priest, cutting off his ear. ⁵²Then Jesus said to him, "Put your sword back in its place, for all who draw the sword will die by the sword. ⁵³Do you think that I cannot appeal to my Father, and he will at once send me more than twelve legions of angels? ⁵⁴But then how would the Scriptures be fulfilled that say it must happen this way?" ⁵⁵At that hour Jesus said to the crowds, "Have you come out as if against a rebel, with swords and clubs to arrest me? Day after day I sat in the temple teaching, and you did not arrest me. ⁵⁶But all this has happened so that the writings of the prophets would be fulfilled." Then all the disciples abandoned him and fled. ⁵⁷Those who had arrested Jesus led him away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and elders had gathered. ⁵⁸But Peter followed him at a distance, right up to the courtyard of the high priest. He went inside and sat down with the guards to see the outcome. ⁵⁹The chief priests and the whole council were seeking false testimony against Jesus in order to put him to death, ⁶⁰But discovered none — yea, though numerous false witnesses arrived, yet discovered they none. At the last arrived two false witnesses, ⁶¹Stated, This fellow stated, I am able to destroy the sanctuary of God, and to build it in three period. ⁶²The high priest stood up and said to him, "Have you no answer? What is it that these men are testifying against you?" ⁶³But Jesus remained silent. The high priest said to him, "I put you under oath by the living God: tell us if you are the Christ, the Son of God." ⁶⁴Jesus said to him, "You have said so. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming on the clouds of heaven." ⁶⁵Then the high priest tore his robes and said, "He has blasphemed! Why do we still need witnesses? You have just heard the blasphemy. ⁶⁶What is your verdict?" They answered, "He deserves death." ⁶⁷Then they spat in his face and struck him with their fists, and some slapped him, ⁶⁸Declaring, Prophecy to us, you Christ, Who is he that smote you? ⁶⁹Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard, and a servant girl came up to him, saying, "You also were with Jesus the Galilean." ⁷⁰But he denied it before them all, saying, "I do not know what you are talking about." ⁷¹When he went out to the gateway, another servant girl saw him and said to the people there, "This man was with Jesus of Nazareth." ⁷²Again he denied it, with an oath: "I do not know the man." ⁷³After a little while, the bystanders came up and said to Peter, "Certainly you are one of them too — your accent gives you away." ⁷⁴Then he began to invoke curses on himself and to swear, "I do not know the man!" And immediately a rooster crowed. ⁷⁵And Peter remembered what Jesus had said: "Before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times." And he went outside and wept bitterly.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formula *kai egeneto hote etelesen* ('and it happened when he finished') marks the conclusion of each of Jesus's five major discourses in Matthew (7:28, 11:1, 13:53, 19:1, 26:1). This is the fifth and final occurrence, signaling the end of Jesus's teaching ministry. The verb *etelesen* ('finished, completed') shares its root with *tetelestai* ('it is finished,' John 19:30).
2. Jesus yokes the Passover (to *pascha*) to his own crucifixion — the Passover lamb and the Son of Man converge. The present tense *paradidotai* ('is being handed over') suggests the process is already underway. The verb *staurōthēnai* ('to be crucified') is the first explicit prediction of crucifixion as the method of death in Matthew's passion narrative.
3. The Greek *aulēn* ('courtyard, palace') refers to the enclosed court of the high priest's residence. Caiaphas (Joseph bar Caiaphas) served as high priest from approximately 18-36 AD — an unusually long tenure that suggests political skill. The SBLGNT does not include 'scribes' (*grammateis*), which appears in some manuscripts reflected in the KJV.

4. The verb *synebouleusanto* ('they counseled together, they plotted') indicates a formal conspiracy. The word *dolō* ('by guile, by stealth, by treachery') reveals that even the authorities recognized they could not act openly — Jesus's popularity required covert action.
5. The word *heortē* ('festival, feast') refers to Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread, when Jerusalem's population swelled with pilgrims. The fear of *thorybos* ('uproar, riot, tumult') reflects the political volatility of Passover — a celebration of liberation from oppression — under Roman occupation. Ironically, events will force them to act during the festival after all.
6. Bethany was a village about two miles east of Jerusalem on the Mount of Olives. Simon 'the leper' (*tou leproū*) was presumably healed — he would not host a dinner while ritually unclean. The designation likely preserves his former identity. This Simon is otherwise unknown.
7. Matthew does not name the woman (John 12:3 identifies her as Mary of Bethany). The *alabastron* ('alabaster flask') was a stone container with a sealed neck, broken open for use — a one-time expenditure. The *myron barytimou* ('very expensive ointment/perfume') was likely *spikenard*. Pouring it on Jesus's head (*epi tēs kephalēs*) evokes priestly and royal anointing (Exodus 29:7, 1 Samuel 16:13).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 29:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 16:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Matthew attributes the indignation (*ēganaktēsan*) to the disciples generally, not to Judas specifically (as in John 12:4-5). The word *apōleia* ('waste, destruction, loss') is ironic — the same word is used for perdition and damnation elsewhere. What the disciples see as waste, Jesus will interpret as prophetic worship.
9. The Greek *pollou* ('for much') is vague where Mark 14:5 specifies 'more than 300 denarii' (nearly a year's wages). The argument — resources should go to the poor (*ptōchois*) rather than to extravagant gestures — sounds reasonable, which is what makes Jesus's response surprising.
10. The Greek *ergon kalon* ('good/beautiful work/deed') uses *kalon*, which means both 'good' and 'beautiful' — the act is morally good and aesthetically fitting. Jesus reframes the anointing from 'waste' to 'beauty,' countering the disciples' utilitarian calculus with a different set of values.
11. Jesus echoes Deuteronomy 15:11 ('the poor will never cease from the land'). This is not a dismissal of poverty relief but a recognition of the unique moment: Jesus's death is imminent, and the window for this act is closing. The contrast between *pantote* ('always') for the poor and *ou pantote* ('not always') for Jesus underscores the urgency.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 15:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb *entaphiasai* ('to prepare for burial, to anoint for burial') reveals the prophetic dimension of her act. Whether the woman intended this meaning or not, Jesus interprets her anointing as anticipating his death — she has done what the disciples will not have the opportunity to do properly after the crucifixion.
13. The phrase *eis mnēmosynon autēs* ('as a memorial of her') uses liturgical language — *mnēmosynon* is the word for a memorial offering. Jesus guarantees that this unnamed woman's act will be remembered worldwide and perpetually — a remarkable promise for a single spontaneous gesture. The prophecy itself fulfills itself: the story is being told.
14. The placement of Judas's betrayal immediately after the anointing story creates a devastating juxtaposition: extravagant devotion versus calculated treachery. Matthew emphasizes Judas's identity — *heis tōn dōdeka* ('one of the Twelve') — the betrayer comes from the innermost circle. 'Iscaiot' (*Iskariōtēs*) may derive from Hebrew 'ish *Qeriyot*' ('man of Kerioth'), indicating his hometown.
15. Judas's question *ti thelete moi dounai* ('what are you willing to give me?') reduces betrayal to a transaction. The thirty silver coins (*triakonta argyria*) echoes Zechariah 11:12, where thirty pieces of silver is the contemptuous price for the shepherd of Israel — the price of a slave (Exodus 21:32). The verb *estēsan* ('they set, they weighed out, they paid') may indicate payment in advance.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 11:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 21:32 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The imperfect *ezētei* ('he was seeking, he kept looking for') indicates ongoing, deliberate effort. The word *eukairian* ('a good opportunity, a favorable moment') implies calculated patience — Judas needed a time when Jesus was away from the protective crowds.
17. The 'first day of Unleavened Bread' (*prōtē tōn azymōn*) technically refers to 15 Nisan, but colloquially included the preparation day (14 Nisan) when the Passover lamb was slaughtered. The question about preparation reflects the practical logistics: a room must be secured, a lamb purchased and sacrificed at the temple, and the meal prepared according to Passover regulations.
18. The phrase *ton deina* ('a certain man, such-and-such a person') is deliberately vague in Matthew — Mark and Luke provide more detail about how to identify the host. The statement *ho kairos mou engys estin* ('my time is near') has a double meaning: the time for the Passover meal, and the time of his death. The word *kairos* ('appointed time, critical moment') is more theologically loaded than *chronos* ('sequential time').

19. The verb *synetaxen* ('directed, instructed, arranged') implies detailed instructions. The verb *hētoimasan* ('prepared') encompasses the full Passover preparation: procuring and roasting the lamb, preparing unleavened bread, bitter herbs, and wine, and setting the table according to tradition.
20. The Passover meal began after sunset (the start of 15 Nisan in Jewish reckoning). The verb *anekeito* ('reclined') reflects the Hellenistic custom adopted for Passover — reclining on couches around a low table, a posture symbolizing freedom (slaves ate standing). 'The Twelve' (*tōn dōdeka*) includes Judas.
21. The announcement comes during the meal itself — the betrayer is eating the Passover with the one he will betray. The phrase *heis ex hymōn* ('one of you') is devastating: the threat comes from within, not from outside. The verb *paradōsei* ('will hand over') is the same word used throughout the passion narrative.
22. The particle *mēti* expects a negative answer ('it's not me, is it?') but betrays uncertainty — each disciple fears it might be possible. The adverb *sphodra* ('exceedingly, greatly') and the verb *lypoumenoi* ('being grieved, being distressed') capture the emotional shock. That each one asks individually (*heis hekastos*, 'each one') rather than pointing fingers reveals genuine self-doubt.
23. The phrase *ho embapsas* ('the one having dipped') refers to the shared dish used during the Passover meal for dipping bread or bitter herbs. Since multiple people shared the same dish at a communal meal, this does not necessarily single out Judas to the other disciples. The poignancy is in the intimacy — sharing food was a bond of friendship and trust in ancient culture (cf. Psalm 41:9, 'Even my close friend who ate my bread has lifted his heel against me').
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 41:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Jesus holds divine sovereignty and human responsibility in tension: the Son of Man goes 'as it is written' (*kathōs gegraptai*) — his death fulfills Scripture — but the betrayer is still held accountable. The phrase *kalon ēn autō ei ouk egennēthē* ('it would have been good for him if he had not been born') is the most severe personal condemnation Jesus utters in the Gospels. The divine plan does not excuse the human agent.
25. Judas asks the same question as the other disciples (*mēti egō eimi*, 'it isn't me, is it?') but addresses Jesus as 'Rabbi' (*rhabbi*) rather than 'Lord' (*kyrie*) as the others did (v. 22) — a subtle but possibly significant distinction in Matthew. Jesus's response *sy eipas* ('you have said it' or 'you yourself have said') is an affirmative that places the confession in Judas's own mouth. This exchange may have been quiet enough that the other disciples did not hear it clearly.
26. The four actions — took (*labōn*), blessed (*eulogēsas*), broke (*eklasen*), gave (*dous*) — become the liturgical pattern for the Eucharist/Lord's Supper across all Christian traditions. The blessing (*eulogēsas*) is the standard Jewish *berakah* ('Blessed are you, LORD our God, King of the universe, who brings forth bread from the earth'). The declaration *touto estin to sōma mou* ('this is my body') is rendered without interpretive addition — whether 'is' (*estin*) means 'is identical with,' 'represents,' or 'becomes' is the central question of eucharistic theology, and the Greek does not resolve it.
27. The verb *eucharistēsas* ('having given thanks') is the source of the word 'Eucharist.' For the bread Jesus 'blessed' (*eulogēsas*); for the cup he 'gave thanks' (*eucharistēsas*) — the two verbs are essentially synonymous in this context. The command *piete ex autou pantes* ('drink from it, all of you') emphasizes universal participation — the cup is for everyone, not just select members.
28. The phrase *to haima mou tēs diathēkēs* ('my blood of the covenant') echoes Exodus 24:8, where Moses sprinkled 'the blood of the covenant' on the people at Sinai. Jesus reinterprets the covenant blood as his own. The SBLGNT does not include 'new' (*kainēs*) before 'covenant,' though some manuscripts include it (cf. Luke 22:20, 'the new covenant in my blood'). The participle *ekchynnomenon* ('being poured out') uses sacrificial language. The phrase *peri pollōn* ('for many') echoes Isaiah 53:12. The phrase *eis aphesin hamartiōn* ('for the forgiveness of sins') is unique to Matthew's institution narrative.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 24:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The vow of abstinence (*ou mē piō*, 'I will certainly not drink') transforms the meal into both a farewell and a promise. The phrase *genēmatos tēs ampelou* ('fruit of the vine') is the standard Jewish blessing formula for wine. The adverb *kainon* ('new') may modify the wine (new wine in the kingdom) or the drinking (drink it in a new way). The promise *meth' hymōn* ('with you') assures reunion — this is not a final farewell but a temporary separation.
30. The hymn (*hymnēsantes*) is almost certainly the Hallel — Psalms 113-118, traditionally sung at the conclusion of the Passover meal. Psalms 115-118 would have been the final portion. The group leaves the upper room and walks east across the Kidron Valley to the Mount of Olives, about a fifteen-minute walk.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 113-118 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 115-118 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

31. The verb skandalisthēsēsthe ('you will be caused to stumble, you will fall away') predicts total abandonment by all the disciples. Jesus quotes Zechariah 13:7, but with a significant change: the original has 'Strike the shepherd' (imperative), while Matthew has 'I will strike the shepherd' (pataxō, first person) — God himself is the agent who strikes. The scattering of the sheep (diaskorpisthēsontai) will be fulfilled in verse 56.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 13:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The passive egerthēnai ('to be raised') is a divine passive — God will raise Jesus. The promise proaxō hymas ('I will go before you') uses shepherd imagery: the shepherd goes ahead and the sheep follow (cf. John 10:4). This promise anticipates the resurrection appearances in Galilee (28:7, 10, 16).
33. Peter's emphatic egō oudepote ('I — never!') places himself above the other disciples. The contrast between pantes ('all') and egō ('I') reveals Peter's self-confidence. The adverb oudepote ('never, at no time') is absolute — Peter makes a claim Jesus will prove false within hours.
34. Jesus counters Peter's 'never' with a precise timeframe: en tautē tē nykti ('on this very night'). The rooster's crow (alektora phonēsai) typically occurs in the early morning hours, around 3:00 AM (the Roman 'cockcrow' watch). The triple denial (tris aparnēsē, 'three times you will deny') will be fulfilled in verses 69-75.
35. Peter doubles down with the strongest possible claim: willingness to die (kan deē me syn soi apothanēin, 'even if it is necessary for me to die with you'). The double negative ou mē ('absolutely not') matches Jesus's own emphatic formulations. The phrase homoiōs kai pantes ('likewise also all') indicates unanimous agreement — every disciple makes the same pledge, and every one will fail to keep it.
36. The name Gethsēmani (Γεθσημανί) comes from the Aramaic gat shemanim ('oil press'), a fitting name for a place on the Mount of Olives and grimly appropriate for what will happen there — Jesus is about to be pressed to the point of anguish. The chōrion ('place, piece of land') was apparently a garden or estate they had visited before (cf. John 18:2, 'Jesus often met there with his disciples').
37. The inner circle — Peter, James, and John (the two sons of Zebedee) — are the same three who witnessed the Transfiguration (17:1-8). They have seen his glory; now they will see his agony. The verb lypeisthai ('to be grieved, to be sorrowful') and adēmonein ('to be distressed, to be in anguish') together describe intense emotional suffering. The word adēmonein may derive from a root meaning 'away from home' — a profound disorientation and alienation.
38. The phrase perilypos estin hē psychē mou heōs thanatou ('my soul is sorrowful to the point of death') echoes Psalm 42:5-6 and Jonah 4:9. The preposition heōs ('unto, as far as, to the point of') suggests grief so intense it approaches death — emotional suffering that threatens to be fatal. The request grēgoreite met' emou ('keep watch with me') uses the same verb from the parables of readiness (24:42, 25:13) — now applied to personal accompaniment in suffering.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 42:5-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jonah 4:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The posture — epesen epi prosōpon ('fell on his face') — expresses total prostration before God. The 'cup' (potērion) is a well-established Old Testament metaphor for suffering and divine judgment (Psalm 75:8, Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). Jesus asks for the cup to 'pass' (parelthato) — the same verb used for heaven and earth passing away in 24:35. The concluding clause ouch hōs egō thelō all' hōs sy ('not as I will but as you [will]') is the supreme expression of human will yielding to divine will. Jesus's humanity is fully engaged — his will must actively submit.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 75:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 51:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 25:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
40. Jesus addresses Peter specifically — the one who had pledged to die with him (v. 35) cannot even stay awake. The question carries more grief than anger. The plural ischysate ('could you [all] not?') extends the rebuke beyond Peter to all three. The 'one hour' (mian hōran) is a small ask compared to the death Peter had promised to face.
41. The imperative pair grēgoreite kai proseuchesthe ('stay awake and pray') links vigilance with prayer — one without the other is insufficient. The peirasmon ('testing, trial, temptation') refers to the coming crisis that will test their loyalty. The maxim to men pneuma prothymon hē de sarx asthenēs ('the spirit is willing but the flesh is weak') acknowledges the gap between intention and capacity — precisely the gap Peter will experience. This is not a philosophical dualism but a pastoral observation.
42. The second prayer shifts from conditional ('if it is possible') to acceptance ('if this cannot pass unless I drink it'). The closing genēthētō to thelēma sou ('your will be done') echoes the Lord's Prayer (6:10) — Jesus practices what he taught. The movement from first to second prayer shows the process of submission: not instantaneous capitulation but a wrestling that arrives at obedience.
43. The participle bebarēmenoi ('weighed down, heavy') describes exhaustion that overcomes willpower. The repeated discovery of sleeping disciples intensifies Jesus's isolation — he faces the crisis alone. There is no recorded rebuke this time.

44. The threefold prayer (ek tritou, 'for the third time') parallels the threefold denial that Peter will soon make (vv. 69-75). Where Jesus prays three times and submits to God's will, Peter will deny three times and fail. The phrase *ton auton logon* ('the same word/statement') indicates that the prayer did not change — the repetition is not rote but persistence.
45. The Greek *katheudete to loipon kai anapauesthe* can be read as a command ('sleep on and rest' — resigned permission), a question ('are you still sleeping?'), or ironic ('go ahead and sleep, if you can — it's too late'). We render it as a question, following the likely tone given the urgency of what follows. The phrase *hē hōra* ('the hour') is the decisive moment Jesus has been anticipating. The present tense *paradidotai* ('is being handed over') indicates the betrayal is happening now.
46. The imperatives *egeisthe* ('rise, get up') and *agōmen* ('let us go') are not flight but advance — Jesus walks toward his betrayer, not away from him. The participle *ho paradidous* ('the one handing over, the betrayer') identifies Judas without naming him. The verb *ēggiken* ('has drawn near, is at hand') is the same verb used for the kingdom of heaven being near (4:17) — an ironic echo.
47. The phrase *eti autou lalountos* ('while he was still speaking') emphasizes the immediacy — Jesus barely finishes speaking before Judas appears. The repeated identification *heis tōn dōdeka* ('one of the Twelve') drives home the betrayal's origin. The *ochlos polys* ('large crowd') with swords (*machairōn*) and clubs (*xylōn*) suggests a mixed force: temple police with swords and perhaps hired assistants with wooden clubs.
48. The pre-arranged signal (*sēmeion*, 'sign') uses the act of friendship — a kiss (*philēsō*, from *phileō*, 'to love, to show affection') — as the instrument of betrayal. The cruel inversion of an intimate gesture into a marker for arrest is universally recognized as one of history's most treacherous acts. The imperative *kratēsate* ('seize him, arrest him') reveals Judas directing the arrest operation.
49. The greeting *chaire* ('greetings, hail, rejoice') and the address *rhabbi* ('Rabbi') maintain the pretense of respect. The verb *katephilēsen* ('kissed') is intensified with the prefix *kata-*, suggesting an emphatic or prolonged kiss — making certain the crowd identifies the right person. Once again Judas addresses Jesus as 'Rabbi' rather than 'Lord' (cf. v. 25).
50. The address *hetaire* ('friend, companion') is the same ominous word used in 20:13 and 22:12 — a term of address that acknowledges the relationship while confronting the violation. The phrase *eph' ho parei* is notoriously difficult to translate: it could be a question ('why have you come?'), a command ('do what you came for'), or a statement ('this is why you have come'). We follow the imperative reading, which fits the context of Jesus actively accepting his fate. The arrest (*ekratēsān*, 'they seized') follows immediately.
51. Matthew does not identify the swordsman (John 18:10 names him as Peter). The action is impulsive: *ekteineas* ('stretching out his hand'), *apespasen* ('drew'), *pataxas* ('struck'). The *doulos tou archierōs* ('servant of the high priest') is named Malchus in John's account. The *ōtion* ('ear') could mean the entire ear or the earlobe. The act of violence represents the disciples' instinct to fight — the very response Jesus will reject.
52. The command *apostrepson* ('put back, return') rejects armed resistance. The proverbial statement *pantes hoi labontes machairan en machairē apolountai* ('all who take up the sword will perish by the sword') functions as a principle of reciprocal violence — those who initiate violence will meet violence. Jesus refuses to be defended by force even when his life is at stake.
53. A Roman legion (*legiōn*) consisted of approximately 6,000 soldiers, so twelve legions would be over 72,000 angels. The number twelve may correspond to the twelve disciples — one legion for each. Jesus's point is not military calculation but the voluntary nature of his suffering: he has access to overwhelming supernatural force but chooses not to use it. The verb *parakalesai* ('to call alongside, to appeal to, to ask') indicates that help is available for the asking.
54. The rhetorical question reveals Jesus's interpretive framework: the Scriptures (*hai graphai*) require (*dei*, 'it is necessary') that events unfold this way. Jesus's submission to arrest is not weakness but obedience to the scriptural plan. The verb *plērōthōsin* ('be fulfilled') connects to Matthew's fulfillment theology throughout the Gospel.
55. The word *lēstēs* ('bandit, rebel, insurrectionist') is the same word used for the men crucified alongside Jesus (27:38) and for those who made the temple a 'den of bandits' (21:13). Jesus points out the absurdity: he was publicly available every day in the temple, but they come at night with weapons as if he were a dangerous revolutionary. The contrast between his public teaching and their covert arrest exposes the injustice of the proceedings.
56. The fulfillment formula (*hina plērōthōsin*) appears here for the last time in the passion narrative. The statement *hoi mathētai pantes aphen tes auton ephygon* ('the disciples all, having left him, fled') fulfills both Jesus's prediction (v. 31) and Zechariah's prophecy (13:7). The word *pantes* ('all') is emphatic — no exceptions, despite the pledges of verses 33-35.
57. The verb *apēgagon* ('led away') implies forcible removal. Caiaphas the high priest is the same figure from verse 3 — the plot has reached its execution. The scribes (*grammateis*) and elders (*presbyteroi*) assembled at night suggests a hastily convened council, likely not a full formal Sanhedrin session but an irregular hearing.
58. The phrase *apo makrothen* ('from afar, at a distance') captures Peter's conflicted state — close enough to follow, too afraid to stand with Jesus. The word *hypēretōn* ('attendants, guards, officers') refers to the temple police. The phrase *idein to telos* ('to see the end/outcome') is poignant — Peter wants to know what will happen but is powerless to affect it.
59. The word *synedrion* ('council, Sanhedrin') refers to the Jewish ruling body. Matthew's description — they sought pseudomartyrian ('false testimony') — characterizes the trial as predetermined: they are not seeking truth but seeking a basis for execution. The verb *thanatōsōsin* ('they might put to death') reveals the goal from the outset.

60. The failure to find consistent testimony (ouch heuron, 'they did not find') despite many volunteers indicates that the witnesses contradicted each other — Deuteronomy 19:15 required at least two agreeing witnesses. The word hysteron ('finally, at last') suggests a prolonged and frustrating process for the council.
60. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 19:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
61. The accusation distorts something Jesus apparently said (cf. John 2:19, 'Destroy this temple and in three days I will raise it up'). The shift from 'destroy this temple' (a challenge to others) to 'I am able to destroy' (a threat by Jesus) is the crucial distortion. The verb katalysai ('to destroy, to tear down') and oikodomēsai ('to build, to construct') frame the claim as both demolition and reconstruction — an absurd claim if taken literally about Herod's temple.
62. The high priest's rising (anastas) is a dramatic gesture of authority. The double question — first about Jesus's silence, then about the testimony — presses for a response. The verb katamartyrosin ('testify against') uses the prefix kata- ('against'), making the adversarial nature of the testimony explicit.
63. Jesus's silence (esiōpa, 'was silent') fulfills Isaiah 53:7 ('like a sheep before its shearers is silent'). The high priest escalates to a formal oath-adjudication: exorkizō se kata tou theou tou zōntos ('I adjure you by the living God'). Under this oath, silence would constitute contempt of court. The question combines two titles — ho Christos ('the Christ/Messiah') and ho huios tou theou ('the Son of God') — forcing Jesus to make an explicit claim.
63. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
64. The response sy eipas ('you have said it') is affirmative but nuanced — Jesus accepts the titles but redefines them on his own terms. The plēn ('but, moreover') introduces a counter-declaration. Jesus combines Psalm 110:1 (seated at the right hand) with Daniel 7:13 (coming on the clouds) — the two most important messianic texts in early Christianity. 'Power' (tēs dynamēōs) is a circumlocution for God — 'the right hand of Power' means 'God's right hand.' The phrase ap' arti ('from now on') suggests that the exaltation begins immediately.
64. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
64. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
65. The tearing of robes (dierrhēxen ta himatia) was the prescribed response to hearing blasphemy (cf. Mishnah, Sanhedrin 7:5). Ironically, the high priest was prohibited from tearing his garments (Leviticus 21:10) — though some interpret this prohibition as applying only to mourning, not to judicial response. The charge of blasphemia ('blasphemy') rests on Jesus's claim to sit at God's right hand — a claim to divine status that, if false, constitutes the gravest offense against God.
65. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 21:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
66. The phrase enochos thanatou ('liable to death, deserving of death, guilty of a capital offense') is a formal legal verdict. The sentence is passed without formal vote procedure as described in the Mishnah — another irregularity in the proceedings.
67. The progression of abuse — spitting (eneptusam, fulfilling Isaiah 50:6), punching (ekolaphisan, 'struck with fists'), and slapping (erapisan, 'struck with open hand') — constitutes deliberate humiliation. The spitting in the face was the most degrading insult in the ancient world (cf. Numbers 12:14, Deuteronomy 25:9).
67. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 50:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
67. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 12:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
67. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 25:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
68. The taunt 'prophecy!' (prophēteuson) is ironic on multiple levels: Jesus has just prophesied about the Son of Man's exaltation, and the very events unfolding fulfill his earlier prophecies. The game — blindfolding someone and asking them to identify who struck them — mocks his claim to supernatural knowledge. The title Christe ('Christ') is used mockingly.
69. The scene shifts to the courtyard (aulē) where Peter sits with the guards (v. 58). The first accuser is a paidiskē ('servant girl, female slave') — the lowest-status person in the household. The identification 'Jesus the Galilean' (Iēsou tou Galilaiou) marks Jesus as an outsider, a northern provincial. Peter's denial before the least threatening accuser makes his cowardice more stark.
70. The first denial. The verb ἑρῆσατο ('denied') is the same root as aparnēsē ('you will deny') from Jesus's prediction in verse 34. The phrase emprosthen pantōn ('before all') makes the denial public. Peter's response ouk oida ti legeis ('I do not know what you are saying') is evasive rather than a direct denial — a strategy of feigned ignorance.

71. Peter retreats from the courtyard to the gateway (pylōna) — attempting to distance himself physically from the identification. A second servant girl (allē) makes the accusation to bystanders rather than to Peter directly, broadening the circle of awareness. The identification shifts from 'the Galilean' to 'of Nazareth' (tou Nazōraiou).
72. The second denial escalates — meta horkou ('with an oath') means Peter swears. This is deeply ironic given Jesus's teaching against oath-taking in 5:33-37. The phrase ouk oida ton anthrōpon ('I do not know the man') depersonalizes Jesus — 'the man' rather than 'Jesus' — creating verbal distance from the relationship.
73. The third accusation comes from multiple bystanders (hoi hestōtes, 'those standing by'). The evidence is now Peter's lalia ('speech, accent, dialect') — his Galilean accent was distinctive and recognizable (cf. the Shibboleth test, Judges 12:6). The adverb alēthōs ('truly, certainly') indicates growing confidence in the identification. Peter can no longer hide.
73. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Judges 12:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
74. The third denial reaches maximum intensity: katathematizein ('to invoke curses upon oneself') means Peter calls down divine punishment if he is lying — but he is lying. The verb omnuein ('to swear') adds formal oath-taking. Peter's denial has progressed from evasion (v. 70) to oath (v. 72) to self-cursing (v. 74). The rooster's crow (alektōr ephōnēsen) fulfills Jesus's exact prediction from verse 34 with devastating precision.
75. The verb emnēsthē ('remembered') marks the moment of devastating recognition — memory and reality collide. The adverb pikrōs ('bitterly') describes the quality of Peter's weeping — not gentle tears but anguished, bitter sobbing. Unlike Judas (27:3-5), Peter's response to failure is grief rather than despair. This is the last we see of Peter until the resurrection, and Matthew leaves him weeping — the restoration will come later (cf. John 21).

27

Summary: *Matthew 27 narrates the crucifixion, death, and burial of Jesus. The chapter opens with the council's formal decision to hand Jesus to Pilate, Judas's remorse and suicide, and the trial before Pontius Pilate. Pilate offers to release either Jesus or Barabbas; the crowd demands Barabbas and calls for Jesus's crucifixion. After scourging, mocking, and the journey to Golgotha, Jesus is crucified between two criminals. Darkness covers the land for three hours, and Jesus cries out in Aramaic from Psalm 22. At his death, the temple curtain tears, the earth quakes, and tombs open. Joseph of Arimathea buries Jesus in a new tomb, and the chief priests secure the tomb with a guard.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Matthew's passion narrative contains several elements unique to this Gospel: Judas's return of the silver and suicide (vv. 3-10), Pilate's wife's dream (v. 19), Pilate's hand-washing (v. 24), the crowd's cry 'His blood be on us and on our children' (v. 25), the earthquake and resurrection of the saints at Jesus's death (vv. 51-53), and the posting of the guard at the tomb (vv. 62-66). The Zechariah fulfillment citation (vv. 9-10) is attributed to Jeremiah, a well-known difficulty. The tearing of the temple curtain (v. 51) symbolizes the removal of the barrier between God and humanity.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 25 ('His blood be on us and on our children') has been weaponized throughout history to justify antisemitic violence and persecution. This is a misreading: the verse records the words of a specific crowd in a specific moment, not a divine curse on all Jewish people for all time. We render the Greek as given and note the historical misuse. The Barabbas episode raises historical questions — was the custom of releasing a prisoner at Passover a regular practice? The evidence is thin outside the Gospels. We render the narrative as given.*

Connections: *Judas's thirty silver coins and the potter's field connect to Zechariah 11:12-13 (and possibly Jeremiah 18-19, 32:6-9). The Barabbas release echoes the Day of Atonement scapegoat ritual (Leviticus 16). Jesus's cry from Psalm 22:1 connects to the entire psalm, which moves from abandonment to vindication. The torn curtain connects to Exodus 26:33 and the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16). The darkness echoes Amos 8:9-10. The burial by Joseph of Arimathea fulfills Isaiah 53:9 ('with a rich man in his death'). The guard at the tomb sets up the resurrection narrative of chapter 28.*

¹When the daybreak was come, all the leading priests and elders of the people took counsel against Jesus to put him to death. ²They bound him, led him away, and handed him over to Pilate the governor. ³Then when Judas, his betrayer, saw that Jesus had been condemned, he was seized with remorse and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and

elders, ⁴Indeed, declaring, I have sinned in that I have betrayed the innocent blood. Then they stated, What is that to us? see you to that. ⁵He threw the silver coins into the temple sanctuary and left. Then he went away and hanged himself. ⁶The chief priests picked up the silver coins and said, "It is not lawful to put this into the temple treasury, since it is blood money." ⁷After conferring together, they used the money to buy the potter's field as a burial place for foreigners. ⁸For this reason that field has been called the Field of Blood to this day. ⁹Then what was spoken through the prophet Jeremiah was fulfilled: "They took the thirty pieces of silver, the price set on him by the people of Israel, ¹⁰Offered them for the potter's field, as the Lord appointed me. ¹¹Now Jesus stood before the governor, and the governor asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?" Jesus said, "You have said so." ¹²But when he was accused by the chief priests and elders, he gave no answer. ¹³Then Pilate said to him, "Do you not hear how many charges they are bringing against you?" ¹⁴But he did not answer him, not even a single word, so that the governor was greatly amazed. ¹⁵Now at the festival the governor had a custom of releasing to the crowd one prisoner whom they wanted. ¹⁶At that time they had a notorious prisoner called Barabbas. ¹⁷So when they had gathered, Pilate said to them, "Whom do you want me to release for you — Barabbas, or Jesus who is called Christ?" ¹⁸For he knew it was out of envy that they had handed him over. ¹⁹While he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent word to him: "Have nothing to do with that righteous man, for I have suffered greatly today because of a dream about him." ²⁰But the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowds to ask for Barabbas and to have Jesus destroyed. ²¹The governor answered them, "Which of the two do you want me to release for you?" They said, "Barabbas." ²²Pilate said to them, "Then what should I do with Jesus who is called Christ?" They all said, "Let him be crucified!" ²³He said, "Why? What crime has he committed?" But they shouted all the more, "Let him be crucified!" ²⁴When Pilate saw that he was getting nowhere and that a riot was starting instead, he took water and washed his hands before the crowd, saying, "I am innocent of this man's blood. It is your responsibility." ²⁵All the people answered, "His blood be on us and on our children!" ²⁶Then he released Barabbas to them, and after having Jesus flogged, he handed him over to be crucified. ²⁷Then the governor's soldiers took Jesus into the governor's headquarters and gathered the whole cohort around him. ²⁸They stripped him and put a scarlet robe on him, ²⁹Following they had platted a crown of thorns, they put it upon his head, and a reed in his right hand — then they bowed the knee prior to him, and mocked him and stated, Hail, King of the Jews! ³⁰They spat on him and took the reed and struck him on the head. ³¹When they had finished mocking him, they stripped him of the robe, put his own clothes back on him, and led him away to crucify him. ³²As they were going out, they found a man from Cyrene named Simon, and they forced him to carry Jesus's cross. ³³When they came to a place called Golgotha (which means Place of a Skull), ³⁴They offered him vinegar to drink mingled with gall — and following he had tasted thereof, he would not drink. ³⁵After they crucified him, they divided his garments among themselves by casting lots. ³⁶Then they sat down and kept watch over him there. ³⁷Above his head they placed the written charge against him: THIS IS JESUS, THE KING OF THE JEWS. ³⁸Then two rebels were crucified with him, one on his right and one on his left. ³⁹Those who passed by hurled insults at him, shaking their heads ⁴⁰Declaring, you that destroyest the sanctuary, and buildest it in three period, rescue thyself. If you be the Descendant of God, come down from the cross. ⁴¹In the same way the chief priests, along with the scribes and elders, mocked him, saying, ⁴²"He saved others, but he cannot save himself! He is the King of Israel — let him come down now from the cross, and we will believe in him. ⁴³He trusts in God — let God rescue him now, if he wants him! For he said, 'I am the Son of God.'" ⁴⁴The rebels who were crucified with him also reviled him in the same way. ⁴⁵From noon, darkness came over the whole land until three in the afternoon. ⁴⁶About three in the afternoon, Jesus cried out in a loud voice, "Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?" — that is, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?" ⁴⁷When some of those standing there heard this, they said, "This man is calling for Elijah." ⁴⁸Immediately one of them ran and took a sponge, filled it with sour wine, put it on a reed, and held it up for him to drink. ⁴⁹But the rest said, "Leave him alone! Let us see if Elijah comes to save him." ⁵⁰Then Jesus cried out again with a loud voice and breathed his last. ⁵¹At that moment the curtain of the temple was torn in two from top to bottom, the earth shook, and the rocks were split. ⁵²The tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised. ⁵³They came out of the tombs after his resurrection, entered the holy city, and appeared to many. ⁵⁴When the centurion and those with him who were keeping watch over Jesus saw the earthquake and all that had happened, they were terrified and said, "Truly this man was the Son of God!" ⁵⁵Many women were there watching from a distance — those who had followed Jesus

from Galilee, serving him. ⁵⁶Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee. ⁵⁷When evening came, a rich man from Arimathea named Joseph arrived — he himself had also become a disciple of Jesus. ⁵⁸He went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him. ⁵⁹Joseph took the body and wrapped it in a clean linen cloth. ⁶⁰Placed it in his own new tomb, which he had hewn out in the rock — then he rolled a remarkable stone to the door of the sepulchre, and departed. ⁶¹Mary Magdalene and the other Mary were sitting there, facing the tomb. ⁶²The next day — that is, the day after the Day of Preparation — the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered before Pilate ⁶³Declaring, Sir, we remember that that deceiver stated, while he was yet alive, following three days I will rise again. ⁶⁴So give the order for the tomb to be secured until the third day. Otherwise his disciples may come and steal the body and tell the people, 'He has been raised from the dead,' and the last deception will be worse than the first." ⁶⁵Pilate said to them, "You have a guard. Go, make the tomb as secure as you know how." ⁶⁶So they went and secured the tomb by sealing the stone and posting a guard.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The morning session (prōias, 'early morning') may represent the formal ratification of the nighttime verdict, since Jewish law required capital sentences to be confirmed during daylight. The phrase symboulion elabon ('took counsel, reached a decision') indicates a formal resolution. The purpose clause hōste thanatōsai ('so as to put to death') confirms the death sentence from 26:66.
2. The verb dēsantes ('having bound') indicates Jesus was physically restrained for transfer. The verb paredōkan ('handed over') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal — the chain of 'handing over' continues from Judas to the council to Pilate. The Greek hēgemoni ('governor, prefect') is the general term for a Roman provincial administrator. Pontius Pilate served as prefect of Judea from approximately 26-36 AD.
3. The verb metamelētheis ('having felt regret, having changed his mind') is distinct from metanoō ('to repent'). Metamelētheis describes emotional regret over consequences, not the spiritual turning (teshuvah/metanoia) that leads to restoration. Judas regrets the outcome but does not seek reconciliation with God or Jesus. The act of returning (estrepseis) the silver attempts to undo the transaction but cannot undo the betrayal.
4. Judas's confession hēmarton ('I have sinned') and his acknowledgment of haima athōon ('innocent blood') are genuine recognitions of guilt. The priests' response — ti pros hēmas ('what is that to us?') — is chillingly dismissive: having used Judas, they discard him. The phrase sy opsē ('you will see to it,' or 'that is your concern') places all responsibility back on Judas.
5. The word naon ('temple sanctuary') refers specifically to the inner sanctuary, not the outer courts — Judas threw the money into the sacred space itself. The verb apēnxato ('hanged himself') describes suicide by hanging. Acts 1:18 gives a different account of Judas's death (falling and bursting open); the two accounts have been harmonized in various ways throughout church history. We render Matthew's account as given.
6. The irony is devastating: the priests who paid for innocent blood now scruple about the ritual propriety of depositing that payment. The word korbanan ('treasury,' from the Hebrew qorban, 'offering') refers to the temple treasury where offerings were deposited. The phrase timē haimatos ('price of blood') acknowledges what they paid for — they know they have purchased a man's life.
7. The 'potter's field' (agron tou kerameōs) was apparently a tract of land associated with pottery-making, perhaps where potters dug clay. Its purchase as a burial ground for xenois ('foreigners, strangers') — non-Jews who died in Jerusalem — ironically connects to Zechariah 11:13 (silver thrown 'to the potter').
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 11:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The name Agros Haimatos ('Field of Blood') corresponds to the Aramaic Akeldama (Acts 1:19). The phrase heōs tēs sēmeron ('until today') is an etiological formula indicating that the name persisted into Matthew's own time, connecting past event to present landmark.
9. The attribution to Jeremiah (Jeremiou) when the quotation primarily derives from Zechariah 11:12-13 is a well-known difficulty. Several explanations have been proposed: (1) Jeremiah was named because the quotation also draws on Jeremiah 18:1-4 (the potter) and 32:6-9 (buying a field); (2) Jeremiah stood first in the prophetic scroll and could refer to the entire collection; (3) a scribal error. We render the text as given and note the difficulty.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 11:12-13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 18:1-4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The quotation freely adapts Zechariah 11:13 with elements from Jeremiah. The phrase katha synetaxen moi kyrios ('as the Lord directed me') indicates that the disposal of the blood money was under divine sovereignty — even the priests' solution for the tainted silver fulfills prophecy.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 11:12-13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

11. The charge has shifted from the religious 'Christ/Son of God' (26:63) to the political 'King of the Jews' (basileus tōn Ioudaiōn) — the formulation relevant to Roman authority. Pilate's concern is political sedition, not theological heresy. Jesus's response sy legeis ('you say so') is the same ambiguous affirmation given to Caiaphas (26:64) and Judas (26:25).
12. Jesus's silence before accusers again evokes Isaiah 53:7. The verb katēgoreisthai ('to be accused') is a legal term from which 'category' derives. The phrase ouden apekritnato ('he answered nothing') emphasizes total silence despite multiple accusations.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Pilate's question reveals his expectation: a defendant should respond to accusations. The verb katamartyrosin ('testify against') and posa ('how many') suggest numerous charges. Roman legal procedure allowed the accused to defend himself.
14. The phrase pros oude hen rhēma ('not even one word') emphasizes the completeness of Jesus's silence. The governor's amazement (thaumazein lian) indicates this was extraordinary behavior — defendants typically fought for their lives. Jesus's silence is an active choice, not passive resignation.
15. The custom (eiōthei, 'was accustomed') of releasing a prisoner at Passover is not independently attested outside the Gospels, though analogous prisoner releases are documented in other Roman contexts. The phrase hon ēthelon ('whom they wanted') gives the crowd a choice — the mechanism that Pilate will attempt to use in Jesus's favor.
16. The adjective episēmon ('notable, notorious, well-known') suggests Barabbas was a famous criminal. The name Barabbas (Barabbas) means 'son of the father' (bar-abbā) in Aramaic — a striking irony given that Jesus is the Son of the Father. Some manuscripts include the first name 'Jesus Barabbas' (Iēsoun Barabban), which, if original, would make the choice between two men named Jesus even more pointed.
17. Pilate's question frames the choice as a binary: Barabbas or Jesus. The phrase ton legomenon Christon ('the one called Christ') uses the title without committing to its truth — Pilate reports the title attributed to Jesus. Pilate's strategy is transparent: he expects the crowd to choose Jesus, the less dangerous of the two.
18. The narrator provides Pilate's internal assessment: dia phthonon ('because of envy') — the chief priests' motivation was jealousy of Jesus's popularity and authority, not genuine concern about blasphemy or sedition. This editorial note reveals Pilate's political awareness — he understands the real dynamics at play.
19. This episode is unique to Matthew. Pilate's wife (tradition names her Claudia Procula) sends a message from outside the proceedings. The phrase tō dikaiō ekeinō ('that righteous man') provides an external witness to Jesus's innocence. Dreams in Matthew carry divine significance (1:20, 2:12, 2:13, 2:19, 2:22) — this is yet another dream-warning that the Roman authorities choose to ignore.
20. The verb epeisan ('persuaded, convinced') reveals active manipulation: the crowd's demand for Barabbas is not spontaneous but orchestrated by the religious leaders. The verb apolesōsin ('they should destroy') is stark — they do not merely want Jesus released or exiled but destroyed.
21. Pilate repeats his question, perhaps expecting a different answer. The crowd's single-word response — ton Barabban ('Barabbas') — is decisive. The brevity conveys the crowd's settled determination.
22. Pilate's question ti oun poiēsō ('what then should I do?') reveals his loss of control over the situation. The unanimous response — legousin pantes ('they all say') — and the passive imperative staurōthētō ('let him be crucified!') is the crowd's explicit demand for Roman execution. Crucifixion was not a Jewish punishment but a Roman one, reserved for slaves, rebels, and the lowest criminals.
23. Pilate's question ti gar kakon epoiēsen ('what evil has he done?') is his third attempt to prevent the execution. The comparative perissōs ('more exceedingly, all the more') indicates the crowd's response is escalating beyond reason — they are not answering his question but repeating their demand with increasing volume.
24. Pilate's hand-washing (apenipsato tas cheiras) is unique to Matthew and evokes the Deuteronomic ritual for unsolved murder (Deuteronomy 21:6-7), where elders wash their hands and declare innocence of blood. Whether a Roman governor would adopt a Jewish ritual is debated — this may be Matthew's theological interpretation of Pilate's attempt to deflect blame. The phrase athōos eimi ('I am innocent') uses the same word Judas used for Jesus's blood in verse 4. Pilate's hymeis opsesthe ('you will see to it') echoes the priests' dismissal of Judas in verse 4 — a chain of responsibility shifting.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:6-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. This verse has been the most misused text in the history of Jewish-Christian relations, weaponized to justify centuries of antisemitic persecution. The text records the words of a specific crowd (pas ho laos, 'all the people' present) at a specific moment, incited by specific leaders (v. 20). It is not a divine curse on all Jewish people for all time — such a reading contradicts the entire prophetic tradition and Paul's teaching in Romans 9-11. The phrase to haima autou eph' hēmas ('his blood upon us') is a legal formula accepting responsibility for a death (cf. Joshua 2:19, 2 Samuel 1:16). We render the Greek as given.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 2:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Samuel 1:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

- 26.** The verb phragellōsas ('having flogged, having scourged') describes the Roman flagellum — a whip with leather thongs embedded with bone or metal fragments. This was not a light beating but a severe punishment that often left victims near death. Pilate's action — releasing a criminal and scourging an innocent man — epitomizes the injustice of the proceedings. The verb paredōken ('handed over') completes the chain: Judas handed Jesus to the priests, the priests to Pilate, and now Pilate to the executioners.
- 27.** The praitōrion ('praetorium, governor's residence') was likely the Herodian palace on the western side of Jerusalem or the Antonia Fortress near the temple. The speira ('cohort') was a Roman military unit of 600 soldiers, though the entire cohort may not have been present — 'whole' (holēn) may be hyperbolic.
- 28.** The chlamyda kokkinēn ('scarlet cloak') was a Roman military cloak, used here as a mock royal robe (Mark and John describe it as purple). The mockery takes the form of a parody investiture — dressing Jesus as a king to ridicule the charge of kingship.
- 29.** The mock investiture includes three elements: a crown (stephanon ex akanthōn, 'crown from thorns' — painful and parodic), a scepter (kalamon, 'reed' — a flimsy imitation of royal authority), and obeisance (gonypetēsantes, 'kneeling'). The greeting chaire basileu tōn Ioudaiōn ('Hail, King of the Jews!') parodies the imperial salute Ave Caesar. The soldiers' mockery, intended as cruelty, unwittingly proclaims the truth.
- 30.** The imperfect etyton ('they kept striking') indicates repeated blows. Striking his head would drive the thorns deeper. The spitting (emptysantes) reprises the abuse at the Jewish trial (26:67). The reed given as a mock scepter is now used as a weapon — the symbols of kingship become instruments of torture.
- 31.** The re-dressing in Jesus's own clothes (ta himatia autou) before the crucifixion procession was standard procedure — the condemned carried their crossbeam through the streets as a public deterrent. The verb apēgagon ('led away') begins the final journey.
- 32.** The verb ēngareusan ('they compelled, they pressed into service') is a Persian loanword for requisitioning — Roman soldiers had the legal right to conscript civilians for temporary service (cf. 5:41, 'if anyone forces you to go one mile'). Cyrene was a city in North Africa (modern Libya) with a large Jewish community. Simon may have been a Jewish pilgrim in Jerusalem for Passover. The stauros ('cross') he carried would have been the crossbeam (patibulum), not the entire cross.
- 33.** Golgotha (Golgotha) is Aramaic for 'skull' (gulgalta). The Latin equivalent Calvaria gives us the English 'Calvary.' The name may refer to the shape of the hill or to its use as an execution site. The location was outside the city walls (Hebrews 13:12) but near enough for public visibility.
- 34.** The Greek cholēs ('gall, bile') may refer to a bitter substance (Matthew changes Mark's 'myrrh' to 'gall' to echo Psalm 69:21). A drugged wine was sometimes offered to condemned prisoners as a mild sedative. Jesus tastes it (geusamenos) but refuses (ouk ēthelēsen) — he will face the crucifixion fully conscious.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 69:21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The act of crucifixion itself is stated in a single participle — staurōsantes ('having crucified') — with no description of the physical process. The Gospel writers consistently avoid graphic details of the crucifixion itself. The division of garments (diemerisanto ta himatia) fulfills Psalm 22:18. The soldiers' share of the condemned person's clothing was a legal perquisite. The SBLGNT does not include the explicit Psalm 22 quotation found in some manuscripts and the KJV.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 22:18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The verb etēroun ('they were watching, they were guarding') indicates the soldiers' duty to prevent rescue attempts or premature removal. Their sitting (kathēmenoi) while Jesus hangs creates a stark visual contrast — bored guards and a dying man.
- 37.** The titulus (aitian, 'charge, accusation') was a placard stating the crime, carried ahead of the condemned or fixed to the cross. The inscription houtos estin Iēsous ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn ('This is Jesus the King of the Jews') states the political charge — sedition by claiming kingship. Each Gospel records the inscription slightly differently; Matthew's version is the longest. Like the soldiers' mockery, the inscription proclaims what it intends to ridicule.
- 38.** The Greek lēstai ('bandits, rebels, insurrectionists') is the same word from 26:55 — not mere thieves (kleptai) but violent criminals or political revolutionaries. Crucifixion between two criminals fulfills Isaiah 53:12 ('he was numbered with the transgressors'). The positions 'right and left' recall the request of James and John in 20:21 — the positions of honor in the kingdom are filled by criminals at the cross.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 39.** The verb eblasphēmoun ('they were blaspheming, they were reviling') is the same word used for the charge against Jesus (26:65) — now passersby commit the very act Jesus was condemned for. The head-shaking (kinountes tas kephalas) fulfills Psalm 22:7 and echoes Lamentations 2:15.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 22:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Lamentations 2:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 40.** The taunt recycles the distorted testimony from 26:61. The conditional ei huios ei tou theou ('if you are the Son of God') echoes Satan's temptation in 4:3, 6 — the same structure, the same challenge. The demand sōson seauton ('save yourself') misunderstands the nature of Jesus's mission: he saves others precisely by not saving himself.

41. The religious leaders who orchestrated Jesus's arrest and trial now come to witness and mock his execution. The presence of chief priests (archiereis), scribes (grammateōn), and elders (presbyterōn) — the full complement of the Sanhedrin — makes this an institutional act of rejection.
42. The taunt allous esōsen heauton ou dynatai sōsai ('he saved others, himself he cannot save') is theologically profound in ways the speakers do not intend — it states the precise logic of the atonement. The promise pisteusomen ('we will believe') is conditional on a sign (katabatō, 'let him come down') — the same demand Jesus consistently refused (12:39, 16:4).
43. This taunt directly echoes Psalm 22:8 ('He trusts in the LORD; let the LORD rescue him'). The leaders unknowingly recite the very psalm that Jesus is living out on the cross. The conditional ei thelei auton ('if he wants him') questions whether God actually cares about Jesus — the deepest possible taunt against a man of faith.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 22:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Matthew records both criminals joining in the mockery (unlike Luke 23:39-43, where one repents). The verb ōneidizon ('reviled, insulted, reproached') indicates verbal abuse. Jesus is mocked from every quarter — passersby, leaders, and fellow condemned.
45. The sixth hour (hektēs hōras) is noon; the ninth hour (enatēs) is 3:00 PM. The three hours of darkness (skotos) during midday echoes Amos 8:9 ('I will make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in broad daylight') and the ninth plague on Egypt (Exodus 10:21-23). The Greek gēn can mean 'land' (of Israel) or 'earth' (the whole world) — the scope is ambiguous.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Amos 8:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 10:21-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
46. Jesus quotes Psalm 22:1, partially in Aramaic (lema sabachthani) and partially in Hebrew (Eli, Eli — 'my God'). Matthew preserves the Semitic words and provides a Greek translation. This is the only saying from the cross recorded in Matthew. The cry expresses the experience of divine abandonment — whether as a genuine theological crisis, as the opening line of a psalm that ends in vindication, or as both, is a question the text does not resolve. The depth of this cry resists systematic theological explanation.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 22:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. The confusion between Eli ('my God') and Ēlian ('Elijah') may be genuine (the words sound similar, especially in a cry of anguish) or deliberate mockery. The popular expectation that Elijah would return before the Messiah (Malachi 4:5) gives the misidentification a theological edge — they wonder if the dying man is calling for supernatural rescue.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 4:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
48. The oxos ('sour wine, vinegar') was the cheap wine (posca) that Roman soldiers drank. The act may be compassionate (offering liquid to a dying man) or cruel (prolonging consciousness to extend suffering). The sponge on a reed (kalamō) was necessary to reach Jesus's mouth on the cross. The scene echoes Psalm 69:21 ('for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink').
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 69:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. The bystanders' response — aphes idōmen ('let us see') — treats Jesus's dying cry as entertainment. The phrase ei erchetai Ēlias sōsōn auton ('whether Elijah comes to save him') expresses mocking curiosity rather than genuine expectation. Even at the moment of death, the watching crowd is more interested in spectacle than compassion.
50. The second loud cry (kraxas phōnē megalē) is not identified with specific words in Matthew. The phrase aphēken to pneuma ('released the spirit') is unique to Matthew — the other Gospels say he 'breathed out' (exepneusen) or 'handed over' (paredōken) the spirit. Matthew's choice of aphēken ('released, let go, sent away') implies volition: Jesus did not have his life taken but actively gave it up.
51. The katapetasma tou naou ('curtain of the temple sanctuary') most likely refers to the inner curtain separating the Holy Place from the Holy of Holies (Exodus 26:33) — the barrier that only the high priest could pass through, once a year, on the Day of Atonement. The tearing ap' anōthen heōs katō ('from top to bottom') indicates divine action — it was torn from God's side, not from below. The accompanying earthquake (hē gē eseisthē) and splitting rocks (hai petrai eschisthēsan) represent cosmic responses to Jesus's death, echoing theophanic language from the Old Testament.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 26:33. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. This event is unique to Matthew and is one of the most enigmatic episodes in the Gospels. The phrase kekoimēmenōn hagiōn ('saints who had fallen asleep') uses the standard metaphor of death as sleep. The passive ēgerthēsan ('were raised') is a divine passive — God raised them. The relationship between these resurrections and Jesus's own resurrection (detailed in the next verse) is theologically complex.
53. The phrase meta tēn egersin autou ('after his resurrection') creates a chronological puzzle: if the tombs opened at Jesus's death (v. 52) but the saints emerged after his resurrection, what happened in between? Various solutions have been proposed. The 'holy city' (tēn hagian polin) is Jerusalem.

The verb *enephanisthēsan* ('appeared, became visible to') implies recognizable manifestations to multiple witnesses (*pollois*, 'many').

54. The confession comes from Gentile soldiers — the centurion (*hekatontarchos*, commander of 100 men) and his squad. The evidence that convinces them is the *seismon* ('earthquake') and *ta genomena* ('the things that happened'). The declaration *alēthōs theou huios ēn houtos* ('truly this was God's Son') echoes the disciples' confession in 14:33. The absence of the article before *theou huios* ('Son of God') might allow the reading 'a son of God' (i.e., a divine man), but in Matthew's narrative context the full Christological meaning is intended. The first people to confess Jesus as Son of God after his death are pagan soldiers.
55. The women who remained at the cross after all the male disciples had fled (26:56) are now named as witnesses. They watched *apo makrothen* ('from a distance') — the same phrase used for Peter's distant following in 26:58. The participle *diakonousai* ('serving, ministering to') uses the root of 'deacon' — these women had been active supporters of Jesus's ministry, a detail often overlooked.
56. Three women are named: Mary Magdalene (from Magdala on the Sea of Galilee), Mary the mother of James and Joseph (possibly Jesus's mother, since James and Joseph are brothers of Jesus in 13:55, though this identification is uncertain), and the mother of Zebedee's sons (James and John, who requested seats of honor in 20:20–21). These women become the essential witnesses who link the crucifixion, burial, and resurrection.
57. Evening (*opsias*) signals urgency: the Sabbath begins at sunset, and bodies must be buried before then (Deuteronomy 21:22–23). Joseph's wealth (*plousios*) is significant — it fulfills Isaiah 53:9 ('with a rich man in his death'). Arimathea is probably Ramathaim (1 Samuel 1:1). The verb *emathēteuthē* ('had become a disciple') indicates secret discipleship, now made public by this bold act.
57. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 21:22–23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
57. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
57. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 1:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
58. Requesting the body of an executed criminal required courage and status — a crucified person's body could be denied burial as additional punishment. The verb *ētēsato* ('requested, asked for') and Pilate's prompt order (*ekeleusen*, 'commanded') suggest Joseph had sufficient standing to make the request successfully.
59. The *sindoni kathara* ('clean linen cloth') was used for Jewish burial wrapping. The adjective *kathara* ('clean, pure') indicates both physical cleanliness and ritual purity — Joseph ensures proper, respectful burial. The wrapping (*enetylixen*, 'wound around, wrapped') was the first step of Jewish burial preparation.
60. The tomb was *kainō* ('new') and *autou* ('his own') — Joseph donated his personal tomb. Rock-cut tombs (*elatomēsen en tē petra*, 'hewn in the rock') were expensive, consistent with Joseph's wealth. The large stone (*lithon megan*) was a disc-shaped stone rolled in a channel to seal the entrance — these are well-attested archaeologically in first-century Jerusalem.
61. Two of the women from verse 55–56 remain as witnesses to the burial location. Their presence establishes continuity — the same women who saw Jesus die now see where he is buried, and they will be the first to discover the empty tomb (28:1). The phrase *kathēmenai apenanti* ('sitting opposite') indicates a vigil of grief.
62. The chronological note identifies the day: the day after Preparation (*paraskeuen*), which is the Sabbath. The chief priests and Pharisees approach Pilate on the Sabbath — an action that reveals the urgency of their concern about the tomb. This episode (vv. 62–66) is unique to Matthew and sets up the guard at the tomb.
63. The address *kyrie* ('sir, lord') is politely deferential. They call Jesus *ekeinos ho planos* ('that deceiver') — *planos* means 'wanderer, deceiver, impostor.' Their quotation *meta treis hēmeras egeiromai* ('after three days I rise/am raised') shows they understood Jesus's resurrection predictions even though the disciples apparently did not (cf. 16:21, 17:23, 20:19).
64. The request *asphalisthēnai* ('to be made secure') leads to the guard posting. The fear of body-snatching (*klepsōsin*, 'they might steal') by the disciples reveals that the leaders took the resurrection claim seriously enough to guard against it. The phrase *hē eschatē planē cheirōn tēs prōtēs* ('the last deception worse than the first') identifies the 'first deception' as Jesus's ministry and the feared 'last deception' as a resurrection claim. Ironically, Matthew includes this episode to show that the authorities themselves ensured the tomb was under guard — making the resurrection that much harder to explain away.
65. The phrase *echete koustōdian* could be imperative ('take a guard') or indicative ('you have a guard' — i.e., use your own temple police). The *koustōdia* is a Latin loanword (*custodia*) for a military guard unit. Pilate's response is terse and slightly dismissive — *asphalisasthe hōs oidate* ('secure it as you know how') leaves the details to them.
66. The verb *sphragisantes* ('having sealed') indicates that a seal — probably a cord with a wax or clay seal impression — was placed across the stone, so that any tampering would be immediately evident. The combination of a sealed stone and an armed guard represents the maximum human effort to prevent the resurrection from being claimed. Matthew's narrative irony is that these very precautions will become evidence that the resurrection was genuine: when the tomb is found empty despite a sealed stone and armed guard, natural explanations become far more difficult.

28

Summary: *Matthew 28, the final chapter of the Gospel, narrates the resurrection of Jesus and its immediate aftermath. Mary Magdalene and the other Mary come to the tomb at dawn and encounter an angel who announces that Jesus has risen. They meet the risen Jesus himself on their way to tell the disciples. The chief priests bribe the guards to spread the lie that the disciples stole the body. The chapter — and the entire Gospel — culminates with the Great Commission on a mountain in Galilee, where Jesus claims all authority in heaven and on earth and sends his disciples to make disciples of all nations, baptizing and teaching, with the promise of his presence until the end of the age.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Great Commission (vv. 18-20) is Matthew's theological climax. The Gospel that began with 'Emmanuel — God with us' (1:23) ends with 'I am with you always' (28:20) — the entire narrative is framed by divine presence. The Trinitarian baptismal formula ('in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit') is the most explicit Trinitarian statement in the Gospels. The universal scope — 'all nations' (panta ta ethnē) — fulfills the promise to Abraham (Genesis 12:3) and the trajectory that began with the Magi (2:1-12). The guards' bribery (vv. 11-15) represents Matthew's engagement with the competing narrative circulating in his day: the claim that the disciples stole the body.*

Translation Friction: *The guard story (vv. 11-15) is unique to Matthew and is often seen as apologetic — a response to Jewish counter-claims about the empty tomb. The phrase 'this story has been spread among the Jews to this day' (v. 15) reflects the tension between Matthew's community and the broader Jewish community. The Great Commission's Trinitarian formula has been questioned by some scholars as reflecting later liturgical development rather than Jesus's exact words. We render the Greek as given. The note that 'some doubted' (v. 17) at the resurrection appearance is a remarkably honest admission that even among the eleven, faith was not unanimous.*

Connections: *The angel's appearance echoes Daniel 10:5-6 and connects to the angel at Jesus's birth (1:20). The earthquake parallels 27:51-54. The mountain setting for the Great Commission recalls the mountain of the Sermon on the Mount (5:1), the Transfiguration (17:1), and ultimately Sinai/Horeb. The promise of universal presence ('I am with you always') echoes the divine name revealed at the burning bush (Exodus 3:14) and the Emmanuel prophecy (Isaiah 7:14, Matthew 1:23). The phrase 'the end of the age' (synteleias tou aiōnos) connects to the Olivet Discourse (24:3).*

¹After the Sabbath, as the first day of the week was dawning, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary went to see the tomb. ²Suddenly there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended from heaven, came and rolled back the stone, and sat on it. ³His appearance was like lightning, and his clothing was white as snow. ⁴The guards shook with fear of him and became like dead men. ⁵The angel said to the women, "Do not be afraid, for I know that you are looking for Jesus who was crucified. ⁶He is not here, for he has been raised, just as he said. Come, see the place where he lay. ⁷Then go quickly and tell his disciples, 'He has been raised from the dead, and look — he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him.' See, I have told you." ⁸So they left the tomb quickly, with fear and great joy, and ran to tell his disciples. ⁹Suddenly Jesus met them and said, "Greetings!" They came to him, clasped his feet, and worshiped him. ¹⁰Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid. Go and tell my brothers to go to Galilee, and there they will see me." ¹¹While the women were on their way, some of the guards went into the city and reported to the chief priests everything that had happened. ¹²After the chief priests had assembled with the elders and devised a plan, they gave a large sum of money to the soldiers, ¹³Declaring, Say you, His followers arrived by night, and stole him away while we slept. ¹⁴If this reaches the governor's ears, we will satisfy him and keep you out of trouble." ¹⁵The soldiers took the money and did as they were instructed. And this story has been widely circulated among the Jewish people to this day. ¹⁶Now the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain where Jesus had directed them. ¹⁷When they noticed him, they worshipped him — but some doubted. ¹⁸Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. ¹⁹Go therefore and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit, ²⁰Teaching them to observe all matters whatsoever I have

commanded you — and, lo, I am with you always, indeed to the end of the world. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *opse sabbatōn* ('late on the Sabbath' or 'after the Sabbath') combined with *tē epiphōskousē eis mian sabbatōn* ('as it was dawning toward the first of the week') describes the early morning of Sunday. The two Marys are the same women who witnessed the burial (27:61). The verb *theōrēsai* ('to see, to observe') suggests they came to visit the tomb, not expecting resurrection. Mark adds that they brought spices for anointing.
2. The second earthquake (*seismos megas*, cf. 27:51) accompanies divine action. The angel (*angelos kyriou*, 'angel of the Lord') descends from heaven (*katabas ex ouranou*) — the same phrase used for divine agents throughout Matthew. The angel rolls away the stone not to let Jesus out (he has already risen) but to show the women the empty tomb. The detail that the angel sat (*ekathēto*) on the stone conveys sovereign composure — the guards' seal and the massive stone are trivial obstacles.
3. The description echoes Daniel 7:9 (the Ancient of Days with garment 'white as snow') and Daniel 10:6 (face like lightning). The combination of *astrapē* ('lightning') and *chiōn* ('snow') — brilliant light and pure whiteness — are the standard biblical markers of heavenly beings. The word *eidea* ('appearance, form') occurs only here in the New Testament.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 10:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The verb *eseisthēsan* ('they shook, they were shaken') uses the same root as *seismos* ('earthquake') — the guards experience their own personal earthquake of terror. The phrase *egenēthēsan hōs nekroi* ('they became as dead men') describes paralysis from fear — ironic, since they were guarding a dead man who is now alive, and the living guards appear dead.
5. The emphatic *hymeis* ('you,' as opposed to the guards) distinguishes the women from the soldiers — the women need not fear because they come seeking (*zēteite*, 'you are seeking') Jesus. The perfect participle *estaurōmenon* ('the crucified one') keeps the crucifixion in view even at the moment of resurrection — the risen Jesus is still the crucified Jesus.
6. The announcement *ouk estin hōde* ('he is not here') is the empty tomb's testimony. The passive *ēgerthē* ('he was raised') is a divine passive — God raised Jesus. The phrase *kathōs eipen* ('just as he said') links the resurrection to Jesus's own predictions (16:21, 17:23, 20:19). The invitation *deute idete* ('come, see') makes the women eyewitnesses of the empty tomb. The SBLGNT does not include 'the Lord' (*ho kyrios*) before 'lay,' which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV.
7. The command is urgent: *tachy poreutheiasai* ('going quickly'). The women are commissioned as the first witnesses and messengers of the resurrection — apostles to the apostles. The phrase *proagei hymas eis tēn Galilaian* ('he goes ahead of you to Galilee') fulfills Jesus's promise in 26:32 and uses the shepherd imagery of going ahead of the flock. The closing *idou eipon hymin* ('see, I have told you') functions as a formal charge — the message has been entrusted.
8. The combination *meta phobou kai charas megalēs* ('with fear and great joy') captures the complex emotional state of encountering the divine — the two emotions are not contradictory but complementary. Fear at the angel's presence and joy at the news coexist. The verb *edramon* ('they ran') conveys urgency — they do not walk to deliver this message.
9. The greeting *chairete* ('Rejoice! Greetings!') is the ordinary Greek salutation, but in this context it carries its full weight — 'Rejoice!' The women's response — *kratēsan autou tous podas* ('they grasped his feet') — demonstrates both physical reality (the risen body can be touched) and devotion (clasping the feet is a posture of worship). The verb *prosekynēsan* ('they worshiped') is the same word used for worship of God throughout Matthew — applied to the risen Jesus without reservation.
10. Jesus repeats the angel's command (*mē phobeisthe*, 'do not be afraid') and the instruction about Galilee. Remarkably, he calls the disciples *tois adelphois mou* ('my brothers') — the men who abandoned him (26:56) are not disowned but claimed as family. This is the first word of the risen Jesus to his followers: reassurance and reconciliation, not rebuke.
11. The narrative shifts to the guards' report. The phrase *tines tēs koustōdias* ('some of the guard') suggests that not all the guards came — some may have fled in different directions. They report to the chief priests (*archiereusin*), not to Pilate — indicating that these were temple guards, not Roman soldiers, or that the priests were their primary employers. The word *hapanta* ('all things') means they gave a complete account of the earthquake, the angel, and the empty tomb.
12. The verb *synachthentes* ('having assembled') and *symbolion labontes* ('having taken counsel') mirror the conspiracy of 27:1 — the same group that plotted Jesus's death now plots to suppress his resurrection. The phrase *argyria hikana* ('sufficient silver, a large sum') repeats the pattern of financial corruption: first they paid Judas (26:15), now they pay the guards. Money is the weapon of choice.
13. The fabricated story is internally contradictory: if the guards were sleeping (*koimōmenōn*, 'while we were sleeping'), how would they know who took the body? The fact that sleeping on guard duty was a capital offense in the Roman military makes the story even less plausible — no soldier would voluntarily confess to this. Matthew includes this detail to expose the alternative explanation as absurd.

14. The priests promise protection: *peisomen auton* ('we will persuade him') and *hymas amerimous poiēsomen* ('we will make you free from worry/care'). The word *amerimous* ('without anxiety, free from concern') assures the soldiers that the political consequences of admitting they slept on duty will be handled. The priests are confident in their ability to manage Pilate — a confidence consistent with their political influence throughout the narrative.
15. The phrase *diēphēmisthē ho logos houtos* ('this story was spread abroad') indicates that the stolen-body theory was actively circulated and had currency in Matthew's time. The phrase *para Ioudaiois* ('among the Jews') reflects the distinction between Matthew's community and the broader Jewish community — a distinction that had sharpened by the time of writing. The phrase *mechri tēs sēmeron hēmeras* ('until the present day') is an authorial aside placing Matthew's writing at some distance from the events described.
16. The number 'eleven' (*hendeka*) is a permanent reminder of Judas's absence. The mountain (*to oros*) is not identified but connects to Matthew's mountain theology — major revelations occur on mountains (5:1, 17:1). The verb *etaxato* ('had directed, had appointed') indicates a prearranged meeting place, showing that the resurrection appearance was not random but planned.
17. The response is divided: *prosekynēsan* ('they worshiped') from some and *edistasan* ('they doubted, they hesitated') from others. The verb *distazō* ('to doubt, to waver, to hesitate') appears only twice in the New Testament — here and in 14:31 (Peter sinking in the water). Matthew's honesty about doubt within the resurrection community is remarkable — even a direct encounter with the risen Jesus does not compel unanimous faith. The 'some' (*hoi de*) who doubted may be a smaller group, but their presence is not hidden.
18. The claim *edothē moi pasa exousia* ('all authority has been given to me') is the most comprehensive authority claim in the New Testament. The passive *edothē* ('was given') indicates the Father as the source. The scope — *en ouranō kai epi tēs gēs* ('in heaven and on earth') — is total and universal. This fulfills Daniel 7:14, where the Son of Man receives authority, glory, and sovereign power from the Ancient of Days. The word *exousia* ('authority, right, power') has been a key theme in Matthew from the beginning (7:29, 9:6, 9:8, 10:1, 21:23-27).
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The main imperative is *mathēteusate* ('make disciples') — not merely 'go' (*poreuthentes* is a participle). The task is disciple-making, not just traveling. The scope *panta ta ethnē* ('all nations/peoples') breaks open the Jewish-focused mission of 10:5-6 ('do not go to the Gentiles') into universal mission. The Trinitarian baptismal formula *eis to onoma tou patros kai tou huiou kai tou hagiou pneumatos* ('into the name of the Father and of the Son and of the Holy Spirit') is unique in the Gospels. The singular 'name' (*onoma*) governing three persons is theologically significant — one name, three persons. This formula became the standard baptismal rite of the early church.
20. The second participle *didaskontes* ('teaching') defines discipleship: it involves instruction in *panta hosa eneteilamēn* ('everything I commanded') — the entire ethical and theological teaching of Jesus recorded in Matthew. The closing promise *egō meth' hymōn eimi pasas tas hēmeras* ('I am with you all the days') is the Gospel's final and climactic statement. It echoes the Emmanuel prophecy of 1:23 ('God with us'), forming an inclusio that frames the entire Gospel with the theme of divine presence. The phrase *heōs tēs synteleias tou aiōnos* ('until the completion of the age') connects to the eschatological language of 13:39-40, 49 and 24:3. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen' (*amēn*) at the end, which appears in some manuscripts and the KJV. Matthew's Gospel ends not with a period but with a promise — the open-ended assurance of Christ's continuing presence.

Mark

Summary: *Mark 1 opens with the ministry of John the Baptist in the wilderness, proclaiming a baptism of repentance and preparing the way for the one coming after him. Jesus arrives from Nazareth, is baptized by John, and the Spirit descends on him like a dove while a voice from heaven declares him God's beloved Son. The Spirit immediately drives Jesus into the wilderness for forty days of testing. After John's arrest, Jesus begins his public ministry in Galilee, announcing that the kingdom of God has drawn near. He calls his first disciples — Simon, Andrew, James, and John — then demonstrates his authority through exorcisms, healings, and teaching in Capernaum and throughout Galilee. The chapter culminates with Jesus healing a leper and being unable to enter towns openly because of the growing crowds.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Mark's Gospel begins without a birth narrative or genealogy, plunging directly into the action with John the Baptist. The word euthys ('immediately') appears repeatedly — a hallmark of Mark's urgent, fast-paced narrative style. The messianic secret theme emerges early: Jesus commands demons and the healed leper to remain silent about his identity. The opening verse may function as a title for the entire Gospel. Mark's Jesus is a man of decisive action who teaches with authority unlike the scribes, and whose identity the demons recognize even as humans struggle to comprehend it.*

Translation Friction: *The opening quotation in verses 2-3 is attributed to 'Isaiah the prophet' but actually combines Malachi 3:1 and Isaiah 40:3. Some manuscripts read 'in the prophets' to avoid this difficulty, but the SBLGNT follows the harder reading. We render the Greek as given. The phrase 'Son of God' in verse 1 is absent from some early manuscripts (notably Sinaiticus); we include it following the SBLGNT. Mark's abrupt transitions and paratactic style ('and... and... and...') are smoothed slightly in English while preserving the narrative urgency.*

Connections: *The opening quotation from Isaiah 40:3 and Malachi 3:1 frames Jesus's arrival as the fulfillment of Israel's prophetic hope for God's return to his people. The wilderness setting evokes Israel's exodus experience. The Spirit's descent at baptism recalls Genesis 1:2 (the Spirit hovering over the waters). The forty days of testing parallel Israel's forty years in the wilderness and Moses's forty days on Sinai. Jesus's authority over unclean spirits and disease demonstrates the in-breaking of God's kingdom that he announces.*

¹The beginning of the good news of Jesus Christ, the Son of God. ²As it is written in Isaiah the prophet: "Look, I am sending my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way." ³"A voice crying out in the wilderness: 'Prepare the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.'" ⁴John appeared, baptizing in the wilderness and proclaiming a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins. ⁵The whole Judean countryside and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him, and they were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins. ⁶Now John wore clothing made of camel's hair with a leather belt around his waist, and he ate locusts and wild honey. ⁷He proclaimed, "One who is more powerful than I is coming after me. I am not worthy to stoop down and untie the strap of his sandals. ⁸I have baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit." ⁹In those days, Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee and was baptized by John in the Jordan. ¹⁰Immediately, as he came up out of the water, he saw the heavens being torn open and the Spirit descending on him like a dove. ¹¹And a voice came from heaven: "You are my beloved Son; with you I am well pleased." ¹²Immediately the Spirit drove him out into the wilderness. ¹³He was in the wilderness forty days, being tested by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels were serving him. ¹⁴After John was arrested, Jesus came into Galilee proclaiming the good news of God, ¹⁵Saying, The time is fulfilled, and God's kingdom is drawing near. Repent you, and believe the gospel. ¹⁶As he passed along the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and his brother Andrew casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen. ¹⁷Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of people." ¹⁸Immediately they left their nets and followed him. ¹⁹Going on a little farther, he saw James the son of Zebedee and his brother John in their boat mending their nets. ²⁰Immediately he called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired workers and went after him. ²¹They went to Capernaum, and immediately on the Sabbath he entered the synagogue and began teaching. ²²They were astonished at his teaching, for he was teaching them as one who had authority, and not as the scribes. ²³Immediately there was in their synagogue a man with an unclean spirit, and he cried out, ²⁴"What do you want with us, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are — the Holy One of God!" ²⁵Jesus rebuked it, saying, "Be silent and come out of him!" ²⁶The unclean spirit convulsed the man, screamed with a loud voice, and came out of him. ²⁷They were all amazed, so that they debated among themselves, saying, "What is this? A new teaching with authority! He commands even the unclean spirits, and they obey him." ²⁸Immediately the news about him spread everywhere throughout the whole surrounding region of Galilee. ²⁹Immediately after leaving the synagogue, they went to the house of Simon and Andrew, along with James and John. ³⁰Simon's mother-in-law was lying ill with a fever, and immediately they told him about her. ³¹He went to her, took her by the hand, and raised her up. The fever left her, and she began serving them. ³²That evening, after the sun had set, they brought to him all who were sick and those who were demon-possessed. ³³The whole town was gathered at the door. ³⁴He healed many who were sick with various diseases and cast out many demons, and he would not allow the demons to speak, because they knew him. ³⁵Very early in the morning, while it was still dark, he got up, went out, and withdrew to a deserted place, and there he was praying. ³⁶Simon and those with him searched for him, ³⁷After they had found him, they stated to him, All men seek for you. ³⁸He said to them, "Let us go on to the neighboring towns, so that I may preach there also, for that is why I came out." ³⁹So he went throughout all of Galilee, preaching in their synagogues and casting out demons. ⁴⁰A man with a skin disease came to him, kneeling and begging him, "If you are willing, you can make me clean." ⁴¹Moved with compassion, he stretched out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." ⁴²Immediately the skin disease left him, and he was made clean. ⁴³Jesus sternly warned him and immediately sent him away, ⁴⁴Says to him, See you say nothing to any man — but go your way, shew thyself to the priest, and offer since your cleansing those things which Moses commanded, for a testimony to them. ⁴⁵But the man went out and began to proclaim it widely and spread the word, so that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly but stayed out in deserted places. Yet people came to him from everywhere.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek euangelion ('good news, gospel') was not originally a religious term — in the Roman world it referred to imperial proclamations, especially announcements of military victory or a new emperor's accession. Mark's use of it for Jesus is a counter-imperial claim. The phrase may function as a title for the entire book rather than the first sentence of a narrative.

1. The phrase 'Son of God' (huiou theou) is absent from Codex Sinaiticus and a few other witnesses, but the SBLGNT includes it. If original, it frames the entire Gospel with a christological declaration that the narrative will progressively unfold.
2. This verse actually quotes Malachi 3:1 (combined with Exodus 23:20), not Isaiah. The Isaiah quotation comes in verse 3. Mark attributes the composite quotation to Isaiah, likely because Isaiah was the more prominent prophet and the primary source. Some later manuscripts changed 'Isaiah the prophet' to 'the prophets' to resolve the difficulty, but the SBLGNT preserves the harder reading.
2. The Greek angelos ('messenger') is the same word used for 'angel.' Here it refers to John the Baptist as God's human messenger.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 3:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 23:20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. This quotes Isaiah 40:3 from the Septuagint. In the Hebrew original, the phrase division is 'A voice cries out: In the wilderness prepare the way of the LORD' — the wilderness is where the road is built, not where the voice cries. The Septuagint and Mark connect 'in the wilderness' with the voice, which conveniently describes John's actual location. The Greek euthys ('straight') here is an adjective, different from the adverb euthys ('immediately') that will become Mark's signature word.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 40:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek egeneto Iōannēs ho baptizōn ('there appeared John the one baptizing') introduces John as a figure bursting onto the scene. Mark uses his characteristic participial style. The word metanoia ('repentance') means a fundamental change of mind and direction, corresponding to the Hebrew teshuvah ('return'). Aphasis hamartōn ('forgiveness/release of sins') uses aphesis, which carries the sense of release or liberation — as in releasing a prisoner or canceling a debt.
5. The 'all' (pasa, pantes) is hyperbolic, a common Semitic literary device emphasizing the magnitude of the response. The imperfect tenses (exeporeueto, ebaptizonto) indicate ongoing, repeated action — the crowds kept coming and kept being baptized. Exomologoumenoi ('confessing') is a present participle indicating that confession accompanied the act of baptism.
6. John's appearance deliberately echoes Elijah's description in 2 Kings 1:8 ('a man wearing a garment of hair with a leather belt around his waist'). Mark presents John as the returning Elijah prophesied in Malachi 4:5, a connection Jesus makes explicit later (9:13). Locusts were a permissible food under Levitical law (Leviticus 11:22) and remain part of the diet in some regions of the Middle East today.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 1:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 4:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 11:22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Untying sandals was a task considered too menial even for a Hebrew slave — a rabbinic tradition held that a disciple must do everything for his teacher except remove his sandals. John claims he is not even worthy of the task that was beneath a slave. The comparative ischyroteros ('more powerful') is emphatic — John is not describing a slight superiority but an incomparable difference in status and power.
8. The contrast between water and Spirit baptism is stark. The pronoun ego ('I') and autos ('he') are both emphatic in Greek, creating a sharp personal contrast. Mark omits 'and fire' found in Matthew 3:11 and Luke 3:16, focusing solely on the Spirit. The verb baptizō literally means 'to immerse, to dip' — the Spirit baptism implies being immersed in God's Spirit.
9. Mark introduces Jesus abruptly — no birth narrative, no genealogy, no childhood. He simply arrives from the obscure village of Nazareth. The phrase en ekeinai tais hēmerais ('in those days') is a general temporal marker connecting Jesus's appearance to John's ministry. The preposition eis ('into') with the Jordan may suggest full immersion, though the preposition alone is not conclusive.
10. This is the first occurrence of Mark's characteristic euthys ('immediately, at once'), which appears over forty times in this Gospel, creating a sense of urgency and rapid action. The Greek schizomenous ('being torn, split') is much more violent than 'opened' — it is the same root used for the tearing of the temple curtain at Jesus's death (15:38). Mark depicts not a gentle opening but a forceful rending of the barrier between heaven and earth. The vision is described as Jesus's experience — 'he saw' (eiden) — making it a personal revelation rather than a public spectacle in Mark's account.
11. Mark's version addresses Jesus directly ('You are') rather than speaking about him in the third person ('This is') as in Matthew 3:17. The declaration combines Psalm 2:7 ('You are my Son') — a royal enthronement psalm — with Isaiah 42:1 ('my chosen one, in whom my soul delights') — the first Servant Song. Jesus is thus identified simultaneously as the Davidic king and the Suffering Servant, two strands that Mark's Gospel will weave together throughout. The Greek agapētos ('beloved') may also carry the sense of 'only' or 'unique,' echoing Genesis 22:2 where Isaac is called Abraham's 'beloved son.'

11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 2:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 42:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 22:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb *ekballei* ('drives out, casts out, expels') is startlingly forceful — it is the same word Mark uses for casting out demons. The Spirit does not lead or guide Jesus into the wilderness; he is thrust there. Mark's use of the historical present tense (*ekballei* rather than the aorist) makes the action vivid and immediate. The wilderness (*erēmos*) connects to the wilderness motifs of Exodus and Isaiah 40.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 40. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Mark compresses what Matthew and Luke expand into three specific temptations into a single, vivid summary. The 'forty days' echoes Israel's forty years in the wilderness (Deuteronomy 8:2), Moses's forty days on Sinai (Exodus 34:28), and Elijah's forty-day journey to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8). The detail about wild animals (*thērion*) is unique to Mark and may evoke either danger or the Edenic peace of Isaiah 11:6–9 where the messianic figure restores harmony with the animal kingdom. The Greek *peirazomenos* can mean 'tempted' or 'tested' — we use 'tested' to capture the broader sense of being put to the proof.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 8:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 34:28 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 11:6–9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The Greek *paradothēnai* ('to be handed over, arrested') is the same verb used later for Jesus's own betrayal and arrest (14:10, 41). Mark subtly foreshadows that the fate of the forerunner will become the fate of the one he announced. The phrase 'good news of God' (*euangelion tou theou*) means the good news that comes from God, about God, or both — the genitive is intentionally ambiguous.
15. The Greek *kairos* ('time') denotes an appointed or decisive moment, distinct from *chronos* (ordinary sequential time). The perfect tense *peplērōtai* ('has been fulfilled') indicates a completed action with ongoing significance — the decisive moment has arrived and remains in effect. The perfect tense *ēngiken* ('has drawn near') similarly indicates that the kingdom has arrived at the threshold and remains there. The two imperatives — *metanoete* ('repent') and *pisteuete* ('believe') — form the twofold human response to the kingdom's arrival.
16. The Greek *thalassa* ('sea') is technically a lake (Lake Gennesaret/Kinneret), but the Gospels consistently call it a 'sea,' which reflects local usage. The verb *amphiballontas* ('casting a net') is a technical fishing term — casting a circular hand net. Mark introduces Simon without explanation, suggesting his audience already knew who Simon Peter was.
17. The call narrative is remarkably brief — no prior conversation, no credentials, no negotiation. The metaphor 'fishers of people' (*halieis anthrōpōn*) draws on their existing vocation but transforms it. The plural *anthrōpōn* ('of people') is rendered inclusively rather than with the gendered 'of men,' since the Greek *anthrōpos* refers to human beings generally.
18. The word *euthys* ('immediately') again emphasizes the instantaneous nature of the response. The verb *aphentes* ('leaving, abandoning') conveys a decisive break. The aorist tense *ēkolouthēsan* ('followed') marks the beginning of a new course of life. The cost of discipleship is implicit — nets represent livelihood, investment, and family trade.
19. The verb *katartizontas* ('mending, preparing, making ready') suggests the brothers were repairing or preparing their nets for the next fishing trip — they were in the middle of their workday. James is named before John, likely indicating he was the elder brother.
20. Again *euthys* ('immediately') underscores the urgency of Jesus's call and the decisiveness of the response. The mention of hired workers (*misthōtōn*) is unique to Mark and indicates that Zebedee's fishing business was substantial enough to employ laborers — James and John were not destitute. Their leaving is therefore a sacrifice of relative comfort, not desperation.
21. Mark shifts to the historical present tense (*eisporeuontai*, 'they enter') for vivid narration, then back to the aorist. Capernaum (Kfar Nahum, 'village of Nahum') served as Jesus's base of operations in Galilee. The imperfect *edidasken* ('he was teaching') indicates ongoing or repeated action — he taught at length, not just a brief remark.
22. The Greek *exeplēssonto* ('were astonished, were struck out of their senses') is stronger than mild surprise — it conveys being overwhelmed or stunned. The scribes typically taught by citing prior rabbinic authorities ('Rabbi Hillel says... Rabbi Shammai says...'). Jesus taught on his own authority, without appealing to tradition. The noun *exousia* ('authority, power, right') implies both the right to speak and the power behind the words.

- 23.** The phrase 'in an unclean spirit' (en pneumatī akathartō) describes the man as being under the spirit's domination — literally 'in' its sphere of influence. The unclean spirit's presence in the synagogue is jarring — the place of worship is invaded by the impure. Mark's use of euthys here connects the teaching about authority directly to the demonstration of that authority.
- 24.** The phrase ti hēmin kai soi ('what to us and to you?') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'what business do we have with each other?' or 'leave us alone.' The spirit alternates between plural ('us') and singular ('I know'), perhaps speaking for the entire demonic realm. The title 'Holy One of God' (ho hagios tou theou) demonstrates supernatural knowledge of Jesus's identity — a key element in Mark's messianic secret theme. The spirit's recognition contrasts sharply with human incomprehension throughout the Gospel.
- 25.** The verb epetimēsēn ('rebuked') carries the force of a commanding reprimand. The imperative phimōthēti ('be muzzled, be silenced') is vivid — literally 'be muzzled' as one would muzzle an animal. Jesus's first miracle in Mark is an exorcism, establishing that his ministry is fundamentally a conflict with evil powers. The command to silence is the first instance of the messianic secret — Jesus does not want his identity proclaimed by demons.
- 26.** The verb sparaxan ('convulsed, tore at, threw into spasms') describes violent physical distress. The spirit's departure is not quiet or easy — it is violent and loud, demonstrating both the spirit's malice and Jesus's superior power. Despite the spirit's resistance, it cannot disobey Jesus's command.
- 27.** The Greek ethambēthēsan ('were amazed, alarmed, astonished') conveys not just wonder but a sense of alarm or awe — something unsettling has happened. The crowd links Jesus's teaching and his exorcism as two expressions of the same authority (exousia). The adjective kainē ('new') can mean new in kind (qualitatively unprecedented) rather than merely new in time — this is teaching unlike anything they have encountered.
- 28.** The Greek akoē ('report, news, fame, what is heard') literally means 'the hearing' — what people were saying and hearing about Jesus. Again euthys ('immediately') drives the narrative forward. The geographic scope — 'the whole surrounding region of Galilee' — shows how rapidly Jesus's reputation expanded.
- 29.** Again euthys marks the rapid transition. The four disciples just called now accompany Jesus. The house of Simon and Andrew in Capernaum becomes a base of operations. Archaeological excavations at Capernaum have identified a first-century house beneath the later 'Church of St. Peter' that tradition associates with this location.
- 30.** The detail that Simon had a mother-in-law presupposes he was married, a detail Paul confirms in 1 Corinthians 9:5. The verb katekeito ('was lying down') indicates she was bedridden. The impersonal 'they told him' reflects Mark's characteristic vagueness about who exactly is speaking.
- 31.** The verb ēgeiren ('raised') is the same verb used for resurrection throughout the New Testament. Mark may intend a double meaning — Jesus 'raises' Simon's mother-in-law from her sickbed, foreshadowing the greater raising to come. The verb diēkonei ('she was serving') uses the root from which 'deacon' comes; her immediate service demonstrates both complete healing and a model of discipleship as responsive service.
- 32.** The double time reference — 'evening' and 'after the sun had set' — is significant: the Sabbath ended at sundown, and only then could people carry the sick without violating Sabbath law. Mark shows the community's eagerness by noting they came as soon as they legally could. The distinction between those who are 'sick' (kakōs echontas, 'having it badly') and 'demon-possessed' (daimonizomenous) maintains two categories of affliction.
- 33.** Another Markan hyperbole — 'the whole town' (holē hē polis) creates a vivid image of the entire community crowding around the doorway of Simon's house. The periphrastic construction (ēn episynēgmenē) emphasizes the state of being gathered rather than the act of gathering — they were assembled and waiting.
- 34.** The shift from 'all' (v. 32) to 'many' (pollous) has been debated — does Mark mean he healed many but not all? More likely 'many' simply describes the large number healed from the large crowd brought. The silencing of demons (ouk ēphien lalein, 'he was not allowing them to speak') continues the messianic secret motif. The reason given — 'because they knew him' (hoti ēdeisan auton) — confirms that the demons possess supernatural knowledge of Jesus's identity that Jesus does not want publicly proclaimed at this stage.
- 35.** The piling up of temporal markers — prōi ('early morning'), ennycha ('while still night'), lian ('very') — emphasizes just how early Jesus rose. After the intense demands of the previous day, Jesus seeks solitude for prayer. Mark records Jesus praying at three key moments: here, at Gethsemane (14:32-42), and possibly by implication at other points. The imperfect prosēucheto ('he was praying') indicates extended, ongoing prayer, not a brief petition.
- 36.** The verb katediōxen ('pursued, hunted down, tracked') is much stronger than 'followed' — it implies an urgent, determined search. The KJV's 'followed after' is too gentle. Simon takes the initiative, already emerging as the leader and spokesman of the group.
- 37.** The disciples' report — 'everyone is looking for you' (pantes zētousin se) — reveals their expectation: the crowds want more miracles, and Jesus should return to meet the demand. The verb zēteō ('to seek, search for') is neutral here but will carry negative connotations later in Mark when opponents 'seek' to arrest Jesus.
- 38.** The word kōmopoleis ('market-towns') describes settlements larger than villages but smaller than cities — the small towns of rural Galilee. Jesus resists the pull of popular demand in Capernaum, insisting his mission extends beyond one location. The phrase eis touto gar exēlthon ('for this is why I came out') is ambiguous — 'came out' could mean from Capernaum, from his prayer retreat, or from God (a statement of divine mission). The ambiguity may be deliberate.

39. This verse serves as a summary statement for Jesus's early Galilean ministry, linking proclamation and exorcism as the twin activities that characterize his mission. The synagogues were the natural venues for a traveling teacher, and their mention 'throughout all Galilee' indicates a comprehensive itinerant ministry.
40. The Greek *lepros* traditionally rendered 'leper' covers a range of skin conditions described in Leviticus 13-14, not limited to modern Hansen's disease. 'Skin disease' is more accurate to the biblical category. The man's statement is remarkable — he does not doubt Jesus's power ('you can') but only questions his willingness ('if you are willing'). Kneeling (*gonypetōn*) expresses desperate supplication. Under Levitical law, a person with such a disease was ritually unclean and excluded from community life.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 13-14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The Greek *splanchnistheis* ('moved with compassion') derives from *splanchna* ('intestines, bowels'), indicating a deep, visceral emotional response — compassion felt in the gut. Some manuscripts read *orgistheis* ('moved with anger') instead, which would describe anger at the disease or the system that ostracized the man. The SBLGNT follows the compassion reading. The physical touch is the most striking detail — by touching a ritually unclean person, Jesus would normally contract uncleanness himself. Instead, the cleanness flows in the opposite direction.
42. The dual statement — the disease 'left' (*apēlthen*) and he 'was made clean' (*ekatharisthē*) — addresses both the physical condition and the ritual status. Healing and cleansing are distinct: the disease departs (medical), and the person is restored to cleanness (ritual/social). The word *euthys* again emphasizes the instantaneous nature of Jesus's healing power.
43. The verb *embrimēsamenos* ('sternly warned, snorted with indignation') is a strong word that implies deep emotion — it is used of horses snorting. The intensity is puzzling: why such a forceful warning after a compassionate healing? Some scholars suggest Jesus was moved by anger at the disease, the social system that excluded the man, or the situation that would unfold if the healing became public. The verb *exebalen* ('sent away, cast out') is the same word used for casting out demons, adding to the forcefulness of the scene.
44. The command to silence (the messianic secret) is combined with a command to obey the Levitical purification procedure of Leviticus 14:1-32. Jesus does not abolish the law but upholds it. The phrase *eis martyriōn autois* ('as a testimony to them') is ambiguous — 'to them' could refer to the priests (as proof of healing), to the people (as evidence of God's power), or as a witness against the religious establishment. The double negative *mēden mēden* ('to no one, nothing') is emphatic — absolute silence is demanded.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 14:1-32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The healed man's disobedience has ironic consequences — he does what Jesus commanded him not to do (proclaim the healing) and presumably neglects what Jesus commanded him to do (go to the priest). The verb *diaphēmizein* ('to spread abroad, make known far and wide') indicates enthusiastic, widespread broadcasting. The result inverts the leper's situation: the formerly excluded man now moves freely in society while Jesus, who touched the unclean, now remains outside in deserted places. Yet even in isolation, the crowds find him — the messianic secret cannot be contained.

2

Summary: *Mark 2 presents a series of five controversy stories that escalate tension between Jesus and the religious authorities. Jesus heals a paralytic and forgives his sins, provoking accusations of blasphemy. He calls Levi the tax collector and eats with sinners, scandalizing the Pharisees. Questions arise about fasting and Sabbath observance. Through these encounters, Jesus reveals himself as one with authority to forgive sins, as a physician for the sick rather than the righteous, and as lord of the Sabbath.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The five controversy stories in chapters 2-3 follow a chiastic or escalating pattern common in ancient rhetoric. The paralytic's healing is the first time Jesus explicitly claims divine prerogative (forgiving sins). The 'Son of Man' title appears here for the first time in Mark — Jesus's preferred self-designation, drawn from Daniel 7:13-14. The grain-plucking episode reveals Jesus's interpretive method: he appeals to narrative precedent (David) rather than legal technicality, subordinating Sabbath regulation to human need.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'Son of Man' (ho huīos tou anthrōpou) is notoriously difficult — it can mean simply 'a human being' (as in Ezekiel), or it can evoke the heavenly figure of Daniel 7. In Mark, Jesus uses it with both ordinary and exalted connotations. We render it literally and note the ambiguity. The identity of 'Levi son of Alphaeus' and his relationship to Matthew and to 'James son of Alphaeus' among the Twelve remains debated.*

Connections: The forgiveness of sins connects to Isaiah's new exodus themes (Isaiah 43:25). Jesus's table fellowship with sinners enacts the eschatological banquet. The David and showbread episode (1 Samuel 21:1-6) establishes a precedent for human need superseding ritual law. The bridegroom metaphor echoes Old Testament imagery of God as Israel's husband (Hosea 2, Isaiah 54).

¹When he returned to Capernaum after some days, word got out that he was at home. ²So many gathered that there was no longer room for them, not even around the door, and he was speaking the word to them. ³Some people came bringing a paralyzed man to him, carried by four men. ⁴Since they could not bring him to Jesus because of the crowd, they removed the roof above where he was, and after digging through it, they lowered the mat on which the paralyzed man was lying. ⁵When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, "Child, your sins are forgiven." ⁶Now some of the scribes were sitting there, questioning in their hearts, ⁷"Why does this man speak this way? He is blaspheming! Who can forgive sins except God alone?" ⁸Immediately Jesus, perceiving in his spirit that they were reasoning this way within themselves, said to them, "Why are you reasoning about these things in your hearts? ⁹Which is easier — to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, pick up your mat, and walk'? ¹⁰But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins" — he said to the paralyzed man — ¹¹"I say to you, get up, pick up your mat, and go home." ¹²He got up, immediately picked up his mat, and went out in front of everyone, so that they were all astounded and glorified God, saying, "We have never seen anything like this!" ¹³He went out again beside the sea, and the whole crowd was coming to him, and he was teaching them. ¹⁴As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax booth, and he said to him, "Follow me." And he got up and followed him. ¹⁵As Jesus reclined at table in his house, many tax collectors and sinners were dining with him and his disciples, for there were many who followed him. ¹⁶When the scribes of the Pharisees saw that he was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?" ¹⁷When Jesus heard this, he said to them, "Those who are well have no need of a physician, but those who are sick. I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners." ¹⁸Now John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting. People came and said to him, "Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but your disciples do not fast?" ¹⁹Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding guests fast while the bridegroom is with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast. ²⁰But the days will come when the bridegroom is taken away from them, and then they will fast on that day. ²¹No one sews a patch of unshrunk cloth on an old garment. Otherwise the new patch pulls away from the old, and the tear becomes worse. ²²And no one pours new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise the wine will burst the skins, and both the wine and the skins are ruined. Instead, new wine is for fresh wineskins." ²³One Sabbath he was going through the grainfields, and his disciples began to pick heads of grain as they made their way. ²⁴The Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing what is not lawful on the Sabbath?" ²⁵He said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was in need and hungry, he and those with him — ²⁶How he traveled into the home of God in the period of Abiathar the elevated priest, and did consume the shewbread, which is not lawful to consume but for the priests, and offered as well to them which were with him? ²⁷Then he said to them, "The Sabbath was made for people, not people for the Sabbath. ²⁸So the Son of Man is lord even of the Sabbath."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *en oikō estin* can mean 'in a house' or 'at home,' suggesting Capernaum had become Jesus's home base — likely Simon and Andrew's house from 1:29. The passive *ēkousthē* ('it was heard') vividly captures how news travels in a small town.
2. The phrase *ton logon* ('the word') in Mark refers to the message of the kingdom — the good news Jesus proclaimed in 1:14-15. The imperfect *elalei* ('he was speaking') indicates ongoing teaching when the interruption of the next verse occurs. The overcrowding sets the stage for the dramatic entry through the roof.
3. Mark's historical present (*erchontai*, 'they come') creates immediacy. The detail of 'four' carriers is unique to Mark, adding eyewitness specificity. The Greek *paralytikos* describes someone with paralysis or severe motor impairment.
4. Palestinian houses typically had flat roofs made of wooden beams covered with branches, mud, and packed earth, accessible by an exterior staircase. The verb *exoryxantes* ('having dug through') indicates the physical labor of breaking through this material. The *krabattos* ('mat, pallet') was a poor person's bed — a simple mat rather than a proper bed frame. The determination of the four friends is extraordinary and becomes a model of faith in

action.

5. Jesus sees 'their faith' (tēn pistin autōn) — the faith of the four friends, not just the paralytic. Faith in Mark is often corporate and active, not merely individual belief. The address teknon ('child') is tender and personal. The present passive aphientai ('are being forgiven') is a divine passive — God is the implied agent, and Jesus speaks with God's authority. The crowd came for a healing; Jesus addresses a deeper need first.
6. The scribes' objection is internal — dialogizomenoi en tais kardiais ('reasoning in their hearts') — not spoken aloud. This makes Jesus's response in verse 8 all the more striking, since he perceives their unspoken thoughts. The verb dialogizomai can mean 'to reason, debate, question' and here carries a tone of hostile deliberation.
7. The scribes' theological logic is sound: in Jewish theology, only God can forgive sins (cf. Isaiah 43:25, 'I, I am he who blots out your transgressions'). Their accusation of blasphemy (blasphēmei) is the most serious religious charge possible. The irony in Mark is that the reader knows from 1:1 that Jesus is the Son of God — the scribes are theologically correct about who can forgive sins, but wrong about who is standing before them.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 43:25. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The phrase epignous tō pneumati autou ('perceiving in his spirit') describes supernatural insight — Jesus knows their unspoken thoughts. The word euthys ('immediately') again marks the swift narrative pace. Jesus's question does not deny their premise (that only God forgives sins) but challenges them to draw the right conclusion from it.
9. Jesus's question is a masterful argument: pronouncing forgiveness is 'easier' to say because no one can verify it, while commanding a paralytic to walk demands visible proof. By performing the harder, verifiable act, Jesus validates the easier, unverifiable one. The logic assumes that the power to heal and the power to forgive both come from the same divine source.
10. This is the first appearance of 'Son of Man' (ho huios tou anthrōpou) in Mark. The title is drawn from Daniel 7:13-14, where 'one like a son of man' receives dominion and authority from God. In Aramaic, 'son of man' (bar enash) can also simply mean 'a human being.' Jesus uses the title to make a veiled claim — those who know Daniel will recognize the authority claim, while others may hear only a self-reference. The phrase 'on earth' (epi tēs gēs) may emphasize that this divine authority is now operative on earth, not only in heaven.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 7:13-14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The emphatic soi legō ('to you I say') places the full weight of Jesus's authority behind the command. Three imperatives follow in rapid succession: egeire ('get up'), aron ('pick up'), hypage ('go'). The command to go home implies full restoration — the man can now resume his place in family and community life.
12. The healing is instantaneous and complete — the man performs all three commanded actions. The verb existasthai ('to be astounded, beside oneself') is stronger than ordinary amazement; it suggests being overwhelmed to the point of losing composure. The crowd's response — glorifying God — is the correct theological interpretation of what they have witnessed. Their exclamation 'we have never seen anything like this' confirms the unprecedented nature of Jesus's ministry.
13. This transitional verse moves the setting from the house to the seaside. The imperfect tenses (ērchetō, edidasken) indicate continuous, repeated action — the crowds kept coming, and Jesus kept teaching. The seaside becomes a recurring venue for Jesus's teaching in Mark (cf. 3:7, 4:1).
14. The call of Levi mirrors the call of the fishermen in 1:16-20 — Jesus sees, calls, and the person immediately follows. The telōnion ('tax booth, customs post') was where tolls were collected on goods passing through. Levi was likely a toll collector for Herod Antipas rather than a direct agent of Rome, but the occupation was despised nonetheless as collaborationist and prone to corruption. The relationship between this Levi and the apostle Matthew (cf. Matthew 9:9) is uncertain — Mark never identifies them as the same person.
15. The phrase 'in his house' (en tē oikia autou) is ambiguous — it could be Levi's house or Jesus's house. Given the context of Levi's call, Levi's house is more likely. The verb synaneekento ('were reclining together') describes the Greco-Roman dining posture of reclining on couches. Shared meals in the ancient world signified acceptance and fellowship. The category 'sinners' (hamartōloi) likely refers to those whose occupations or lifestyles placed them outside the boundaries of Torah observance as defined by the Pharisees.
16. The phrase 'scribes of the Pharisees' (hoi grammateis tōn Pharisaion) designates legal scholars aligned with the Pharisaic movement specifically. They address the disciples rather than Jesus directly — perhaps a social convention of indirect confrontation. The Pharisaic concern about table fellowship reflected their understanding that eating together constituted a form of religious communion; sharing a meal with the impure made one impure by association.
17. The physician metaphor reframes the entire controversy: Jesus is not endorsing sin by eating with sinners but treating a disease. The SBLGNT does not include 'to repentance' (eis metanoian), which appears in some manuscripts harmonizing with Luke 5:32. The statement 'I did not come to call the righteous' may be ironic — in Mark's theology, no one is truly righteous apart from God's action. The verb kalēsai ('to call, invite') connects to the calling of disciples — Jesus's table fellowship is itself an act of calling sinners to follow him.
18. The question groups John's disciples with the Pharisees against Jesus's disciples — a surprising alignment, since John opposed the religious establishment. The fasting in question likely refers to voluntary fasting beyond the required Day of Atonement fast, which the Pharisees practiced twice weekly (cf. Luke 18:12). The implied criticism is that Jesus's disciples are insufficiently pious.

19. The phrase *hoi huioi tou nymphōnos* ('the sons of the bridal chamber') is a Semitic idiom for wedding guests, particularly the close friends of the groom. The bridegroom metaphor carries rich Old Testament resonance — God is frequently portrayed as Israel's bridegroom (Isaiah 54:5, 62:5; Hosea 2:16-20). By identifying himself as the bridegroom, Jesus implicitly claims a divine role. Jewish wedding celebrations lasted seven days, during which fasting was considered inappropriate and even prohibited.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 54:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 2:16-20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. This is Jesus's first veiled reference to his death in Mark. The passive *aparthē* ('is taken away') implies violent removal, not voluntary departure. The sudden shift from celebration to mourning foreshadows the Passion. The phrase 'on that day' (*en ekeinē tē hēmera*) may refer specifically to the day of Jesus's death or to the entire period of his absence.
21. The word *agnaphou* ('unshrunk, unfulled') refers to cloth that has not been processed by a fuller — it will shrink when washed, pulling away from the surrounding fabric. The parable illustrates that Jesus's ministry cannot simply be patched onto existing religious structures. The 'old garment' represents the current religious framework; the 'new cloth' represents what Jesus brings. The two are not merely different but incompatible.
22. The *askoi* ('wineskins') were made of animal hides. Old wineskins had lost their elasticity and could not expand with the fermentation of new wine. The metaphor reinforces the previous parable: the ferment of Jesus's ministry requires entirely new containers. Mark uses two different words for 'new' — *neos* (new in time, freshly made wine) and *kainos* (new in kind, qualitatively different wineskins) — a distinction that may be theologically significant.
23. The phrase *hodon poiein* ('to make a way, to make a path') combined with *tillontes tous stachyas* ('plucking the grain heads') describes the disciples pulling off grain heads as they walked through a field. Plucking grain from a neighbor's field was permitted under Deuteronomy 23:25, but the Pharisees considered it a form of 'reaping' — one of the thirty-nine categories of work prohibited on the Sabbath in later rabbinic tradition.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 23:25 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The imperfect *elegon* ('were saying') may suggest ongoing complaint rather than a single objection. The phrase *ho ouk exestin* ('what is not lawful') frames the issue as a legal violation. The Pharisees hold Jesus responsible for his disciples' behavior, which was standard in the teacher-disciple relationship — a rabbi was accountable for his students' conduct.
25. Jesus's response appeals to Scripture rather than engaging in legal debate on Pharisaic terms. The rhetorical question 'Have you never read?' (*oudepote anegnōte*) is pointed — he is asking legal experts if they know their own Scriptures. The appeal to David's precedent (1 Samuel 21:1-6) is an argument from the greater to the lesser: if David could override ritual law in a time of need, how much more can the Son of David?
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 21:1-6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The reference to 'Abiathar the high priest' poses a difficulty: according to 1 Samuel 21:1-6, the priest was Ahimelech, Abiathar's father. Various explanations have been proposed — the preposition *epi* can mean 'in the time of' (a general era reference), or this may be a genuine historical error in the tradition. The 'bread of the Presence' (*artous tēs protheseōs*) translates the Hebrew *lechem hapanim* — the twelve loaves placed before God in the tabernacle/temple weekly (Leviticus 24:5-9), restricted to priests.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 21:1-6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 24:5-9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. This revolutionary principle reorients Sabbath theology: the Sabbath is a gift designed to serve human well-being, not an institution to which humans are subordinated. The Greek *anthrōpos* ('human being') is generic, not male-specific, so 'people' captures the intended scope. A similar sentiment appears in later rabbinic literature (*Mekhilta* on Exodus 31:13: 'The Sabbath is handed over to you, not you to the Sabbath'), though Jesus draws a more radical conclusion in the next verse.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 31:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The concluding claim is extraordinary: Jesus asserts authority over the Sabbath itself — an institution established by God at creation (Genesis 2:2-3). The word *kyrios* ('lord, master') denotes sovereign authority. If the Sabbath was made for humanity (v. 27), and the Son of Man has authority over it (v. 28), then Jesus claims the right to define how the Sabbath is properly observed. The word 'even' (*kai*) in 'even of the Sabbath' suggests that lordship over the Sabbath is one instance of a broader authority.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:2-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

3

Summary: *Mark 3 concludes the five controversy stories with a Sabbath healing that provokes the Pharisees to conspire with the Herodians against Jesus. Crowds from across the region press in on Jesus, and unclean spirits fall before him, recognizing him as the Son of God. Jesus withdraws to a mountain to appoint the Twelve as his inner circle. The chapter closes with two linked controversies: scribes from Jerusalem accuse Jesus of operating by Beelzebul's power, and Jesus's own family comes to seize him, thinking he is out of his mind. Jesus redefines family as those who do God's will.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Beelzebul controversy contains some of Jesus's most tightly reasoned argumentation: the divided-kingdom analogy, the strong-man parable, and the warning about blaspheming the Holy Spirit. The appointment of the Twelve echoes Israel's twelve tribes and signals the reconstitution of God's people. The tension between Jesus's biological family and his spiritual family is stark — Mark uniquely records that his family thought he was 'out of his mind' (3:21). The twelve are called both to 'be with him' (relationship) and to 'be sent out' (mission).*

Translation Friction: *The 'unforgivable sin' passage (vv. 28-30) has generated centuries of theological debate. We render the Greek faithfully and note the interpretive range without resolving it. The list of the Twelve varies slightly across the Synoptics; we follow the SBLGNT text of Mark. The identity of Jesus's 'brothers' (adelphoi) in verse 31 is disputed among Christian traditions — biological siblings, half-siblings, or cousins.*

Connections: *The appointment of twelve apostles on a mountain echoes Moses and the twelve tribes at Sinai. The Beelzebul accusation connects to the broader theme of cosmic conflict in Mark. The redefinition of family anticipates the new community that will form around Jesus. The 'strong man' parable illuminates Jesus's exorcism ministry as plundering Satan's household.*

¹He entered the synagogue again, and a man was there who had a withered hand. ²They were watching him closely to see if he would heal the man on the Sabbath, so that they could accuse him. ³He said to the man with the withered hand, "Stand up here in the middle." ⁴Then he said to them, "Is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do evil, to save a life or to kill?" But they were silent. ⁵He looked around at them with anger, grieved at the hardness of their hearts, and said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored. ⁶The Pharisees went out and immediately began conspiring with the Herodians against him, plotting how to destroy him. ⁷Jesus withdrew with his disciples to the sea, and a large crowd from Galilee followed. Also from Judea, ⁸Jerusalem, Idumea, beyond the Jordan, and the region around Tyre and Sidon — a large crowd, hearing about all that he was doing, came to him. ⁹He told his disciples to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not crush him. ¹⁰For he had healed many, so that all who had diseases were pressing forward to touch him. ¹¹Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and cried out, "You are the Son of God!" ¹²He sternly ordered them not to make him known. ¹³He went up on the mountain and summoned those whom he wanted, and they came to him. ¹⁴He appointed twelve — whom he also named apostles — so that they would be with him and so that he could send them out to preach ¹⁵To have authority to heal sicknesses, and to cast out devils: ¹⁶He appointed the Twelve: Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter; ¹⁷James the son of Zebedee and his brother John — he gave them the name Boanerges, which means "Sons of Thunder"; ¹⁸Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, ¹⁹Judas Iscariot, which also betrayed him — then they traveled into an home. ²⁰Then he went home, and the crowd gathered again, so that they could not even eat a meal. ²¹When his family heard about it, they went out to seize him, for they were saying, "He is out of his mind." ²²The scribes who came down from Jerusalem were saying, "He has Beelzebul," and "He casts out demons by the ruler of the demons." ²³He called them to himself and spoke to them in parables: "How can Satan cast out Satan? ²⁴That kingdom cannot stand, and if a kingdom be divided against itself. ²⁵And if a household is divided against itself, that household will not be able to stand. ²⁶And if Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he cannot stand — his end has come. ²⁷But no one can enter a strong man's house and plunder his possessions unless he first ties up the strong man. Then he can plunder his house. ²⁸"Truly I say to you, all sins

will be forgiven the children of humanity, and whatever blasphemies they utter. ²⁹But whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit never has forgiveness but is guilty of an eternal sin." ³⁰He said this because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit." ³¹Then his mother and his brothers came, and standing outside, they sent word to him, calling for him. ³²A crowd was sitting around him, and they said to him, "Look, your mother and your brothers are outside asking for you." ³³He replied, "Who are my mother and my brothers?" ³⁴Looking around at those seated in a circle around him, he said, "Here are my mother and my brothers! ³⁵Whoever does the will of God — that person is my brother and sister and mother."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The perfect participle *exērammenēn* ('having been withered, dried up') suggests a condition that was not congenital but developed over time — the hand had dried up and remained in that state. The scene is set for a confrontation: Jesus, the synagogue, a person in need, and watching opponents.
2. The imperfect *paretēroun* ('they were watching closely') implies sustained, hostile surveillance. The verb carries connotations of lying in wait. The purpose clause *hina katēgorēsōsin* ('so that they might accuse') reveals their intent from the outset — they are not seeking truth but building a case. Later rabbinic law permitted healing on the Sabbath only when life was in danger; a withered hand was not life-threatening.
3. Jesus deliberately makes the healing public by calling the man to the center (*eis to meson*). He does not heal secretly to avoid confrontation but forces the issue in full view of his opponents. The command *egaire* ('rise, stand up') is the same word used in resurrection contexts.
4. Jesus reframes the legal question in stark binary terms: not healing is not neutral — it is 'doing evil' and 'killing.' The Pharisees' silence (*esiōpōn*) is telling — they cannot answer without either condemning themselves or conceding Jesus's point. The verb *sōsai* ('to save') and *apokteinai* ('to kill') may be doubly ironic, since the Pharisees are about to plot to kill Jesus (v. 6) on the very Sabbath when they forbid saving a life.
5. Mark is the only evangelist who records Jesus's anger (*met' orgēs*) and grief (*sylypoumenos*) together in this scene. The combination reveals a complex emotional response: anger at the opponents' callousness, grief at their spiritual blindness. The word *pōrōsis* ('hardness, callousness') literally refers to the calcification of bone — their hearts have become petrified. The same word describes Pharaoh's hardened heart in the Septuagint. The healing requires no touch, no word of power — just a command to stretch, and the restoration is immediate.
6. The alliance between Pharisees and Herodians is deeply ironic — these were natural enemies. The Pharisees represented strict Jewish piety; the Herodians supported the Herodian dynasty and its accommodation with Rome. Their shared hostility toward Jesus unites them. The verb *apolesōsin* ('might destroy') makes the murderous intent explicit. The word *euthys* ('immediately') underscores the urgency of their response — the Sabbath healing has pushed them to decisive action.
7. The verb *anechōrēsen* ('withdrew') indicates a strategic retreat from the hostility described in verse 6. The geographic catalog that follows (vv. 7-8) shows that Jesus's fame has spread far beyond Galilee, drawing people from virtually every region of Jewish settlement.
8. The geographic scope is remarkable: Galilee (north), Judea and Jerusalem (south), Idumea (far south — Edomite territory), Transjordan (east), and Tyre and Sidon (Phoenician northwest, Gentile territory). This represents virtually the entire extent of the Jewish diaspora in the region, plus Gentile areas. Mark presents Jesus's appeal as transcending all geographic and ethnic boundaries.
9. The verb *thlibōsin* ('press upon, crush, squeeze') conveys genuine physical danger from the pressing crowd. The small boat (*ploiaron*, diminutive form) would serve as both an escape route and a floating platform from which to teach (as in 4:1). This practical detail adds eyewitness vividness to the narrative.
10. The verb *epipiptein* ('to fall upon, press against') describes an almost frantic surge. The noun *mastigas* (literally 'whips, scourges') is used metaphorically for diseases — afflictions experienced as divine scourging. The desire to touch (*hapsōntai*) reflects the ancient belief that healing power could be transmitted through physical contact, a belief Mark affirms in the case of the woman with the hemorrhage (5:28-30).
11. The imperfect tenses (*etheōroun*, *prosepipten*, *ekrazon*) indicate repeated, habitual action — this happened consistently, not just once. The demons' recognition of Jesus as 'the Son of God' (*ho huios tou theou*) contrasts sharply with the human characters' inability to grasp his identity. The prostration (*prosepipten*, 'fell before') could express both involuntary submission to superior power and an attempt to gain control by naming Jesus.
12. The adverb *polla* ('much, repeatedly') with *epetima* ('rebuked, commanded') indicates that Jesus had to silence the demons repeatedly and emphatically. The messianic secret continues — Jesus controls the revelation of his identity. The phrase *phaneron poiēsōsin* ('make manifest, make known') implies public disclosure of his messianic identity.
13. The mountain setting (*to oros*, with the article — 'the mountain') evokes Sinai, where God constituted Israel as a people through Moses. Jesus now constitutes a new community. The verb *proskaleitai* ('summons, calls to himself') emphasizes Jesus's sovereign initiative — he chose them, not the reverse. The phrase *hous ēthelen autos* ('whom he himself wanted') stresses the personal, deliberate nature of the selection.
14. The verb *epoiēsen* ('made, appointed, created') is striking — the same verb used for God's creative acts. Jesus 'makes' the Twelve as a new creation. The number twelve corresponds to the twelve tribes of Israel, signaling the reconstitution of God's people. The dual purpose is significant: first, 'to be with him' (relationship and formation), and second, 'to be sent out' (mission). Some manuscripts omit 'whom he also named apostles,' but the SBLGNT includes it.

15. The SBLGNT does not include 'to heal sicknesses' (therapeuīn tas nosous), which appears in some later manuscripts. The authority (exousia) given to the Twelve is a delegated form of Jesus's own authority demonstrated in chapters 1-2. The focus on exorcism aligns with Mark's emphasis on Jesus's ministry as cosmic conflict with demonic powers.
16. The repetition of 'he appointed the Twelve' (epoiēsen tous dōdeka) may indicate that verses 14-15 state the general purpose while verses 16-19 list the specific members. The name Petros is the Greek translation of the Aramaic Kepha ('rock, stone'). The renaming signifies a new identity and mission, echoing the Old Testament pattern of God renaming Abram to Abraham and Jacob to Israel.
17. The Aramaic nickname Boanerges is difficult to reconstruct — the Greek transliteration does not correspond neatly to known Aramaic forms. It may derive from bene regesh ('sons of tumult/thunder'). Mark provides the translation for his Greek-speaking audience. The nickname may reflect the brothers' temperament (cf. Luke 9:54, where they want to call fire from heaven) or their powerful speaking style.
18. The name Kananaion is not 'Canaanite' (an ethnicity) but a transliteration of the Aramaic qan'ana ('zealot, enthusiast'), which Luke renders with the Greek Zēlōtēs. This may indicate membership in the Zealot movement or simply a zealous temperament. Thaddaeus appears here and in Matthew's list, while Luke has 'Judas son of James' in the same position — these may be the same person with different names, or the lists may reflect some variation in the group's composition.
19. Judas is listed last, and the note about his betrayal (paredōken, 'handed over') is attached immediately, ensuring the reader knows from the start what role he will play. The name Iskariōth may mean 'man of Kerioth' (a Judean town), which would make Judas the only non-Galilean among the Twelve. The verb paradidōmi ('hand over, betray, deliver up') is the same verb used for John's arrest in 1:14 and for Jesus's passion predictions.
20. The phrase eis oikon ('into a house' or 'home') likely refers again to the house in Capernaum. The detail that they cannot even eat (mēde arton phagein, literally 'not even bread to eat') underscores the overwhelming demand on Jesus — the ministry has become so consuming that basic needs go unmet.
21. The phrase hoi par' autou ('those from beside him') most likely refers to Jesus's family, as confirmed by verse 31 where his mother and brothers arrive. The verb kratēsai ('to seize, take hold of forcibly') is strong — the same verb used for arresting someone. The word exestē ('he has lost his mind, is beside himself') is a frank assessment that Jesus's behavior appeared mentally unstable. This remarkably candid detail is unique to Mark and would not have been invented by the early church.
22. These are not local scribes but representatives from Jerusalem — an official delegation sent to investigate and pronounce judgment. The accusation has two parts: Jesus is himself possessed ('He has Beelzebul'), and his exorcisms operate through demonic power. The name Beelzebul likely derives from the Philistine deity Ba'al Zebub ('Lord of the Flies,' 2 Kings 1:2), modified to Beelzebul ('Lord of the Dwelling/Dung'). The charge is devastating: Jesus's power is real, but its source is satanic.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 1:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The phrase en parabolais ('in parables') here refers to figurative speech and analogies rather than the extended narrative parables of chapter 4. Jesus addresses the scribes' charge with logical argumentation. The question itself exposes the absurdity of the accusation — if Satan were working against his own forces, his realm would collapse.
24. The conditional clause presents a self-evident political principle that any listener could verify from history. The verb meristhē ('is divided') implies internal faction and civil war. Jesus is arguing from common experience to expose the logical impossibility of the scribes' accusation.
25. The word oikia can mean both a physical 'house' and a 'household' (the extended family and its affairs). The second analogy moves from the political sphere to the domestic, making the point more personal and immediate. The same principle applies at every level of social organization.
26. Jesus applies the principle to the specific case: if Satan is fighting against his own agents (the demons Jesus expels), then Satan's kingdom is in self-destructive civil war. The phrase telos echei ('has an end') means 'is finished, is done for.' Jesus's argument is: either the accusation is false (Satan is not behind the exorcisms) or Satan's kingdom is collapsing — either way, the scribes' position fails.
27. Jesus now offers his own explanation of the exorcisms through the 'strong man' parable. Satan is the 'strong man' (ischyros); his 'house' is the domain of demonic oppression; his 'possessions' (skeuē) are the people held captive. Jesus is the one who has 'bound' (dēsē) the strong man — likely a reference to the wilderness testing (1:12-13) — and is now systematically plundering Satan's realm through exorcisms. The verb diarpasai ('plunder, thoroughly rob') implies a complete ransacking.
28. The introductory amēn legō hymin ('truly I say to you') is a solemn formula of authority unique to Jesus in the Gospels — no rabbi preceded his own statements with 'amen.' The sweeping scope of forgiveness — 'all sins' (panta ta hamartēmata) and 'all blasphemies' (hai blasphēmiai) — makes the exception in the next verse all the more striking. The phrase tois huiōis tōn anthrōpōn ('to the sons of men') is a Semitic expression for human beings in general.
29. The SBLGNT reads 'eternal sin' (aiōniou hamartēmatos) rather than 'eternal condemnation/judgment' found in some manuscripts. The phrase ouk echei aphesis eis ton aiōna ('has no forgiveness into the age') is an emphatic negation. The context (v. 30) defines this blasphemy specifically as attributing the Holy Spirit's work to Satan — calling divine good demonic evil. This is not a momentary sin of speech but a settled, deliberate posture of calling light darkness. Many interpreters note that the very anxiety about having committed this sin is itself evidence that one has not, since it presupposes sensitivity to the Spirit.

30. Mark provides the explicit reason for Jesus's warning: the scribes had attributed the work of the Holy Spirit to an unclean spirit. The imperfect elegon ('they were saying') suggests this was not a one-time remark but a sustained accusation. The blasphemy against the Spirit consists precisely in this inversion — seeing the Spirit's liberating work and calling it demonic.
31. This resumes the narrative begun in verse 21 — the family that set out to 'seize' Jesus has now arrived. The word adelphoi ('brothers') most naturally means biological siblings in Greek, though Catholic tradition interprets it as 'cousins' or 'step-brothers.' They stand 'outside' (exō), which becomes symbolically significant: they are on the outside while those sitting around Jesus are on the inside (v. 34).
32. The spatial arrangement is significant: the crowd sits 'around' (peri) Jesus in a circle, while the family stands 'outside' (exō). The verb zētousin ('are seeking, looking for') recalls the earlier note that the family came to seize him (v. 21). The crowd serves as messengers, informing Jesus of his family's presence.
33. The question is not a denial of his biological family but a redefinition of family itself. In a culture where kinship was the primary social bond and honoring parents was a foundational commandment, this question would have been shocking. Jesus does not go outside to his family; instead, he uses their arrival as a teaching moment.
34. The verb periblepsámenos ('looking around') is characteristically Markan — Jesus surveys the circle of listeners with a deliberate gaze. The demonstrative 'Here are' (ide, 'look, see') draws attention to those physically present. The insiders (those seated around Jesus, doing God's will) are his true family; the outsiders (his biological family, who think he is mad) are not.
35. The criterion for belonging to Jesus's family is singular: doing the will of God (to thelēma tou theou). The list — 'brother and sister and mother' — is inclusive of both genders but notably omits 'father,' perhaps because God alone holds that role in Jesus's reconstituted family. This saying creates a new kinship structure based on obedience to God rather than biological descent, a radical redefinition with profound implications for the early church's self-understanding as a family of faith.

4

Summary: *Mark 4 presents Jesus's major teaching discourse: a collection of parables about the kingdom of God delivered from a boat on the Sea of Galilee. The Parable of the Sower dominates the chapter, followed by Jesus's explanation of why he teaches in parables, the private interpretation for the disciples, and additional parables about a lamp, the measure, the seed growing secretly, and the mustard seed. The chapter concludes dramatically with Jesus calming a storm on the sea, revealing his authority over nature itself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Mark's parable discourse is shorter than Matthew's (chapter 13) but more focused on the mystery of the kingdom. The 'hardening' passage (vv. 11-12) is one of the most debated texts in the Gospels — does Jesus teach in parables to reveal or to conceal? Mark's answer appears to be both. The Parable of the Seed Growing Secretly (vv. 26-29) is unique to Mark. The storm-calming miracle transitions from the theme of hidden power in the parables to a dramatic display of cosmic authority, with the disciples' question 'Who then is this?' becoming the central question of the entire Gospel.*

Translation Friction: *The purpose of parables in verses 11-12 (quoting Isaiah 6:9-10) is theologically challenging. The Greek hina ('so that') appears to indicate purpose rather than result — Jesus teaches in parables so that outsiders will not understand. We render the Greek faithfully and note the interpretive options. The Parable of the Sower is technically a parable about soils/responses, but we retain the traditional title.*

Connections: *The sower parable draws on agricultural imagery common in prophetic literature (Isaiah 55:10-11; Hosea 10:12). The storm-calming echoes Psalm 107:23-32 and Jonah 1, where God alone controls the sea. The mustard seed parable may allude to Ezekiel 17:22-24 and Daniel 4:10-12, where great trees shelter the nations. The 'mystery of the kingdom' language connects to Daniel's apocalyptic framework.*

¹Again he began to teach beside the sea. Such a very large crowd gathered around him that he got into a boat on the sea and sat down, while the whole crowd was on the shore facing the sea. ²He was teaching them many things in parables, and in his teaching he said to them: ³"Listen! A sower went out to sow. ⁴As he sowed, some seed fell along the path, and the birds came and devoured it. ⁵Other seed fell on rocky ground where it did not have much soil, and it sprang up immediately because the soil had no depth. ⁶When the sun rose, it was scorched, and since it had no root, it withered. ⁷Other seed fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up and choked it, and it produced no grain. ⁸Still other seed fell on good soil and produced grain, growing up and increasing, yielding thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold." ⁹Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let them

hear." ¹⁰When he was alone, those around him along with the Twelve asked him about the parables. ¹¹He said to them, "To you the mystery of the kingdom of God has been given, but to those outside, everything comes in parables, ¹²That looking they may see, and not grasp the meaning. And hearing they may hear, and not understand. Lest at any time they should be converted, and their sins should be forgiven them. ¹³Then he said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? Then how will you understand all the parables? ¹⁴The sower sows the word. ¹⁵These are the ones along the path where the word is sown: when they hear, Satan immediately comes and takes away the word that was sown in them. ¹⁶And these are the ones sown on rocky ground: when they hear the word, they immediately receive it with joy. ¹⁷But they have no root in themselves and last only a short time. Then when trouble or persecution comes because of the word, they immediately fall away. ¹⁸Others are the ones sown among thorns. These are the ones who hear the word, ¹⁹Worldly concerns, and the deception of wealth, and cravings for other things creeping in, choke out the message, and it becometh unfruitful. ²⁰But those are the ones sown on good soil: they hear the word, accept it, and bear fruit — thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold." ²¹He said to them, "Is a lamp brought in to be put under a basket or under a bed? Is it not to be placed on a lampstand? ²²For there is nothing hidden except to be revealed, nor is anything secret except to come to light. ²³If anyone has ears to hear, let them hear." ²⁴He said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear. With the measure you use, it will be measured back to you — and more will be added to you. ²⁵For whoever has, more will be given to them. But whoever does not have, even what they have will be taken from them." ²⁶He also said, "The kingdom of God is like this: a man scatters seed on the ground. ²⁷He sleeps and rises, night and day, and the seed sprouts and grows — he does not know how. ²⁸The earth produces fruit by itself — first the stalk, then the head, then the full grain in the head. ²⁹But when the grain is ripe, he immediately sends in the sickle, because the harvest has come." ³⁰He also said, "How shall we picture the kingdom of God, or with what parable shall we present it? ³¹It is like a mustard seed, which when sown on the ground is the smallest of all the seeds on the earth. ³²Yet when it is sown, it grows up and becomes the largest of all garden plants, and produces such large branches that the birds of the sky can nest in its shade." ³³With many such parables he spoke the word to them, as much as they were able to hear. ³⁴He did not speak to them without a parable, but privately to his own disciples he explained everything. ³⁵On that day, when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us cross over to the other side." ³⁶Leaving the crowd behind, they took him along just as he was in the boat, and other boats were with him. ³⁷A fierce windstorm arose, and the waves were breaking over the boat so that the boat was already being swamped. ³⁸But he was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. They woke him and said to him, "Teacher, do you not care that we are perishing?" ³⁹He woke up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Silence! Be still!" The wind ceased, and there was a great calm. ⁴⁰He said to them, "Why are you so afraid? Do you still have no faith?" ⁴¹They were filled with great fear and said to one another, "Who then is this, that even the wind and the sea obey him?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The boat from 3:9 now serves its purpose as a teaching platform. The superlative *pleistos* ('very large, greatest') indicates an extraordinary crowd. The spatial arrangement — Jesus on the water, crowd on the land — creates a natural amphitheater. The detail that Jesus 'sat down' (*kathēsthai*) reflects the standard Jewish teaching posture; a rabbi sat to teach and stood to read Scripture.
2. The Greek *parabolē* covers a range of figurative speech — from simple comparisons to extended narrative allegories. Mark notes that Jesus taught 'many things' (*polla*) in parables, though only a selection is recorded. The phrase *en tē didachē autou* ('in his teaching') frames what follows as representative of Jesus's broader teaching ministry.
3. The imperative *akouete* ('listen!') demands attention and becomes thematically central — hearing and understanding are the parable's main concern. The verb *speirai* ('to sow') describes broadcast sowing, where seed is scattered by hand across a field before plowing. In Palestinian agriculture, sowing preceded plowing, which explains why seed falls on various types of ground.
4. The 'path' (*hodos*) refers to a footpath running through or alongside the field, where the ground was packed hard by foot traffic. Seed landing there could not penetrate the surface and was easily picked off by birds. The verb *katephagen* ('devoured, ate up completely') indicates total loss.
5. The 'rocky ground' (*petrōdes*) refers to a thin layer of soil over a limestone shelf, common in Galilee. The word *euthys* ('immediately') here describes the rapid germination caused by the rock underneath retaining heat — ironically, the fastest growth comes from the worst soil. The lack of depth (*bathos*) prevents root development.
6. The sun that normally nurtures growth becomes destructive when roots are absent. The verb *ekaumatisthē* ('was scorched, burned') and *exēranthē* ('withered, dried up') describe a rapid decline. The sequence — quick growth, scorching, withering — creates a vivid agricultural picture that any

Galilean farmer would recognize.

7. The thorns (akanthai) were dormant root systems already present in the soil — invisible at planting time but growing faster and more aggressively than the grain. The verb synepnixan ('choked, strangled together') is vivid — the thorns literally suffocate the crop by competing for light, water, and nutrients. The result: karpon ouk edōken ('it gave no fruit') — total fruitlessness despite genuine growth.
8. The good soil's harvest is described with three participles — 'growing up' (anabainonta), 'increasing' (auxanomena), and 'yielding' (epheren) — creating a sense of abundant, overflowing productivity. Normal yields in ancient Palestine were roughly seven to tenfold; thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold represent extraordinary, almost miraculous abundance. The escalating numbers build toward a climax of superabundant fruitfulness that more than compensates for the three types of loss.
9. This formulaic saying (repeated in 4:23 and elsewhere) signals that the parable requires deeper reflection. Physical hearing is not enough — true 'hearing' involves understanding and response. The phrase echoes Deuteronomy's call to 'hear, O Israel' (Shema Yisrael), where hearing means obedient response.
10. The phrase kata monas ('in private, alone') indicates a shift from public teaching to private instruction. Those asking include not just the Twelve but a wider circle of followers (hoi peri auton, 'those around him'). The plural tas parabolas ('the parables') suggests they asked about the meaning of parables in general, not just the Sower.
11. The word mystērion ('mystery, secret') in biblical Greek does not mean something unknowable but something that was hidden and is now being revealed to those chosen to receive it. The concept draws on Daniel's apocalyptic language (Daniel 2:28-29), where God reveals mysteries about his kingdom. The contrast between 'you' (insiders) and 'those outside' (ekeinois tois exō) creates two categories of hearers. The passive dedotai ('has been given') is a divine passive — God is the giver of understanding.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 2:28-29. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. This quotes Isaiah 6:9-10, the prophet's commission where God tells Isaiah that his preaching will harden, not soften, the people. The conjunction hina ('so that') appears to express purpose — the parables are given so that outsiders will not understand. This is theologically difficult and has been interpreted variously: (1) the hina expresses divine purpose in hardening, (2) it should be understood as result rather than purpose ('with the result that'), (3) it reflects an Aramaic conjunction that could mean 'who' rather than 'so that.' Mark's Greek as written presents the strongest version: the parables simultaneously reveal to insiders and conceal from outsiders.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 6:9-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Jesus expresses surprise — even mild exasperation — at the disciples' lack of understanding. The implication is that the Sower parable is foundational; it is the key that unlocks all the other parables. If they cannot grasp this one, they will struggle with the rest. This is the first hint of the disciples' persistent incomprehension, a major Markan theme.
14. The identification is simple but profound: the seed is 'the word' (ton logon) — the message of the kingdom that Jesus proclaims (cf. 1:14-15, 2:2). The parable is thus self-referential: it describes the reception of the very teaching that includes this parable.
15. The birds of verse 4 are identified as Satan. The word euthys ('immediately') here describes Satan's swift action in removing the word before it can take root. Mark's interpretation identifies the four soils as four types of human response to the proclaimed word. The first type represents a total failure of reception — the word never penetrates at all.
16. The second type receives the word with enthusiasm — meta charas ('with joy'). The immediate, joyful reception looks promising but proves shallow. Mark's euthys ('immediately') parallels the rapid germination of the seed on rocky soil — quick growth that lacks depth.
17. The word proskairoi ('temporary, lasting for a time') describes people whose commitment is seasonal. The terms thlipsis ('trouble, affliction, pressure') and diōgmos ('persecution') reflect the experience of the early church, suggesting Mark's audience would recognize themselves in this warning. The verb skandalizontai ('are caused to stumble, fall away') derives from skandalon, the trigger of a trap — they are ensnared and brought down.
18. The third soil type hears the word genuinely — the problem is not with reception but with competing commitments. The thorns represent internal rather than external obstacles, making this category perhaps the most insidious because the word does take root and grow but is gradually suffocated.
19. Three thorns are named: merimna tou aiōnos ('anxieties of the age' — daily worries), apatē tou ploutou ('the deception of wealth' — the false promise that material prosperity brings security), and epithumiai peri ta loipa ('desires for everything else' — a catch-all for competing attachments). The verb sympnigousin ('choke together') echoes the agricultural imagery. The result is akarpōs ('fruitless') — the word is present but produces nothing.
20. The good soil hearers do three things: akouousin ('hear'), paradechontai ('accept, welcome, embrace'), and karpophorousin ('bear fruit'). The verb paradechomai implies a hospitable reception — welcoming the word as one would welcome a guest. The varying yields (thirty, sixty, hundred) suggest that even among faithful hearers, there are differences in fruitfulness without any being inadequate.
21. The Greek modios is a dry measure container (roughly a peck or 8.75 liters), used here as a basket that could cover a lamp. The saying works against any interpretation of verses 11-12 that suggests permanent concealment — what is hidden now will eventually be revealed. The parable's logic: hiding

is temporary; revelation is the purpose.

22. The double negative construction emphasizes the absolute certainty of future revelation. The Greek *krypton* ('hidden') and *apokryphon* ('concealed, secret') are near synonyms used for emphasis. This saying qualifies the hardening passage of verses 11-12: the mystery is given to insiders now, but God's purpose is ultimate revelation, not permanent concealment.
23. This repetition of the hearing formula from verse 9 brackets the explanation section and emphasizes the parable's demand for responsive hearing. The conditional 'if anyone' (*ei tis*) makes the invitation universal while acknowledging that not all will respond.
24. The imperative *blepete* ('pay attention, watch out') shifts the responsibility to the hearer. The measure saying (*en hō metrō metreite metrēthēsetai hymin*) uses the figure of a measuring container: the more attention and obedience you invest in hearing, the more understanding you will receive in return. The addition (*prostēthēsetai*, 'will be added') suggests compounding returns — faithful hearing produces exponentially more understanding.
25. This paradoxical saying describes a spiritual principle: receptive hearing generates more capacity for understanding, while failure to receive causes even existing understanding to atrophy. The saying sounds harsh but describes an observable dynamic — engagement deepens capacity, while neglect erodes it. In context, it applies to the reception of Jesus's teaching.
26. This parable of the seed growing secretly is unique to Mark — neither Matthew nor Luke includes it. The introductory formula *houtōs estin hē basileia tou theou* ('thus is the kingdom of God') directly identifies the parable as describing how God's kingdom operates. The emphasis falls on the mysterious, autonomous growth of the seed apart from human effort.
27. The repetitive rhythm of 'sleeps and rises, night and day' conveys the ordinary passage of time. The farmer's ignorance (*ouk oiden autos*, 'he himself does not know') is the parable's key point: the growth happens independently of the farmer's knowledge, effort, or understanding. The kingdom of God has its own power and timetable that operates beyond human control.
28. The key word is *automatē* ('by itself, of its own accord') — from which we derive 'automatic.' The earth's productivity is inherent, not dependent on the farmer's intervention. The three stages — *chorton* (green shoot/stalk), *stachyn* (grain head), *plērēs siton en tō stachyi* ('full grain in the head') — describe the natural progression from germination to harvest. The parable assures: the kingdom will reach its fullness through God's own power, regardless of human inability to accelerate or control the process.
29. The verb *paradoi* ('yields, delivers itself up') uses the same root as *paradidōmi* ('hand over, betray') — the grain 'hands itself over' to be harvested. The harvest imagery echoes Joel 3:13 ('Put in the sickle, for the harvest is ripe'), which is a judgment image. The word *euthys* ('immediately') here suggests that when God's appointed time arrives, the harvest comes swiftly. The farmer's only role at harvest is to recognize the moment and act.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 3:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The deliberative subjunctives (*homoiōsōmen*, 'shall we liken'; *thōmen*, 'shall we set forth') use the first person plural, inviting the audience into the process of reflection. The double question creates anticipation. The verb *homoioō* means 'to make like, compare, represent' — Jesus is searching for adequate analogies for an unprecedented reality.
31. The mustard seed (*kokkos sinapeōs*) was proverbially the smallest seed known in Palestinian agriculture. The claim 'smallest of all seeds on earth' is not a botanical absolute but a proverbial expression — 'small as a mustard seed' was a common Jewish idiom for something tiny. The contrast between the seed's smallness and the plant's size is the parable's point.
32. The mustard plant (*Brassica nigra*) can grow to 8-12 feet in a single season — large enough for birds to perch in its branches. The birds 'nesting in its shade' (*kataskēnōn*) echoes Ezekiel 17:23 and Daniel 4:12, 21, where a great tree sheltering birds represents a powerful kingdom that provides for the nations. The kingdom of God begins as the smallest, most unimpressive seed but grows into something that shelters all who come to it.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 17:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 4:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The phrase *kathōs ēdynanto akouein* ('as they were able to hear') suggests Jesus calibrated his teaching to his audience's capacity. This qualification softens the hardening language of verses 11-12 — Jesus did not overwhelm people but met them where they were. The word *logos* ('the word') again refers to the kingdom message.
34. The contrast between public parabolic teaching and private explanation reinforces the insider/outsider distinction of verse 11. The verb *epelyen* ('explained, solved, interpreted') literally means 'to loose, untie' — Jesus 'unties' the parables for the disciples, unwinding their meaning. The word *panta* ('everything, all things') indicates thorough instruction.
35. The temporal note 'on that day' (*en ekeinē tē hēmera*) connects the storm miracle to the teaching day. The command 'let us cross to the other side' (*dielthōmen eis to peran*) initiates a journey to the eastern (Gentile) shore of the Sea of Galilee. The 'other side' will increasingly become the space where Jesus encounters Gentiles and the margins of Jewish society.
36. The phrase *hōs ēn en tō ploioi* ('just as he was in the boat') suggests they departed without preparation — Jesus was still in the teaching boat and simply set off. The mention of 'other boats' (*alla ploia*) is a detail unique to Mark that disappears from the narrative once the storm hits, adding to the sense of eyewitness recollection of incidental detail.

37. The word *lailaps* designates a sudden, violent squall — the Sea of Galilee, situated 700 feet below sea level and surrounded by hills, is notorious for sudden storms as cool Mediterranean air rushes down the surrounding valleys and collides with the warm air above the lake. The imperfect *epeballen* ('kept breaking over') describes wave after wave crashing into the boat. The passive *gemizesthai* ('being filled, being swamped') indicates the boat was taking on water to a dangerous degree.
38. The detail of Jesus sleeping on the *prospephalaion* ('cushion, headrest') in the stern (*prymna*) is remarkably specific — likely a rower's seat cushion or a sandbag used for ballast. Jesus's sleep during a life-threatening storm demonstrates either supreme faith or utter exhaustion (or both). The disciples' question — *ou melei soi* ('does it not matter to you?') — is a rebuke more than a request. Their verb *apolymetha* ('we are being destroyed, we are perishing') conveys genuine terror.
39. Jesus addresses the wind and sea with the same authority he uses against demons — *epetimēsen* ('rebuked') is the exorcism verb from 1:25. The command *pephimōso* ('be muzzled') is the same word used to silence the demon in 1:25. Mark may be implying that the storm has a demonic dimension, or simply that Jesus's authority extends over all forces, natural and supernatural. The instant result — 'a great calm' (*galēnē megalē*) — contrasts with the 'great windstorm' (*lailaps megalē*) of verse 37.
40. The word *deiloi* ('cowardly, fearful, timid') is stronger than ordinary fear — it implies a failure of nerve, a lack of trust. The question *oupō echete pistin* ('do you not yet have faith?') implies that by now, after all they have seen, they should have developed faith. The 'not yet' (*oupō*) suggests faith is a process that the disciples have barely begun.
41. The phrase *ephobēthēsan phobon megan* ('they feared a great fear') uses a cognate accusative for emphasis — the fear after the miracle is greater than the fear during the storm. They are more terrified of Jesus than of the storm. The question *tis ara houtos estin* ('who then is this?') is the central question of Mark's Gospel. The Old Testament answer is clear: it is God who controls the sea (Psalm 89:9, 'You rule the raging of the sea; when its waves rise, you still them'; Psalm 107:29, 'He made the storm be still'). The disciples' question thus points toward a divine identity they cannot yet articulate.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 89:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 107:29. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

5

Summary: *Mark 5 presents three powerful miracle stories that demonstrate Jesus's authority over the most extreme forms of human suffering. First, Jesus crosses to the eastern (Gentile) shore and encounters a man possessed by a legion of demons living among the tombs, whom he delivers in a dramatic exorcism involving a herd of pigs. Returning to the western shore, Jesus is approached by Jairus, a synagogue leader whose daughter is dying. On the way, a woman who has suffered from bleeding for twelve years touches Jesus's garment and is healed. Jesus then raises Jairus's daughter from death. The three stories form a crescendo: power over demons, power over chronic illness, and power over death itself.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Mark's intercalation technique is on full display — the story of Jairus's daughter is 'sandwiched' around the hemorrhaging woman's story, each enriching the other. Both feature the number twelve (the woman's twelve years of illness, the girl's age of twelve). Both involve ritual impurity — bleeding and death. Both require faith. The Gerasene demoniac is Mark's most detailed miracle account, with vivid narrative elements that suggest eyewitness memory. The healed demoniac becomes the first commissioned evangelist in Mark — and a Gentile one at that.*

Translation Friction: *The location of the Gerasene miracle is textually uncertain — manuscripts read 'Gerasenes,' 'Gadarenes,' or 'Gergesenes.' Gerasa is 30 miles from the lake, Gadara is 6 miles away, and Gergesa (modern Kursi) is on the shore. We follow the SBLGNT reading 'Gerasenes.' The drowning of the pigs raises ethical questions we do not resolve — we render the text faithfully. The Greek *talitha kum* in verse 41 is Aramaic preserved in the Greek text.*

Connections: *The Gerasene setting evokes the unclean lands of the nations. The legion of demons uses Roman military terminology — Mark's audience in Rome would not miss the irony. The hemorrhaging woman's healing connects to Levitical purity laws (Leviticus 15:25-30). Jairus's daughter anticipates Jesus's own resurrection. The command to silence in verse 43 contrasts with the command to proclaim in verse 19.*

¹They came to the other side of the sea, to the region of the Gerasenes. ²As soon as he got out of the boat, immediately a man from the tombs with an unclean spirit met him. ³He lived among the tombs, and no one could restrain him any longer, not even with a chain. ⁴For he had often been bound with shackles and chains, but he tore the chains apart and smashed the shackles, and no one had the strength to subdue him. ⁵Night and day among the tombs and on the mountains, he was always crying out and cutting himself with stones. ⁶When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran and fell down before him. ⁷Crying out with a loud voice, he said, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I implore you by God, do not torment me!" ⁸For Jesus had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit!" ⁹Jesus asked him, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, for we are many." ¹⁰He begged him earnestly not to send them out of the region. ¹¹Now a large herd of pigs was feeding there on the hillside. ¹²The demons begged him, "Send us into the pigs; let us enter them." ¹³He gave them permission. The unclean spirits came out and entered the pigs, and the herd — about two thousand — stampeded down the steep bank into the sea and drowned in the sea. ¹⁴Those tending the pigs fled and reported it in the town and in the countryside, and people came to see what had happened. ¹⁵They came to Jesus and saw the man who had been demon-possessed — the one who had had the legion — sitting there, clothed and in his right mind, and they were afraid. ¹⁶Those who had seen it described to them what had happened to the demon-possessed man and about the pigs. ¹⁷Then they began to beg him to leave their region. ¹⁸As Jesus was getting into the boat, the man who had been demon-possessed begged to go with him. ¹⁹But Jesus did not permit him. Instead he said to him, "Go home to your own people and report to them how much the Lord has done for you, and how he has had mercy on you." ²⁰He went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis how much Jesus had done for him, and everyone was amazed. ²¹When Jesus had crossed again in the boat to the other side, a large crowd gathered around him, and he was beside the sea. ²²One of the synagogue leaders, named Jairus, came, and when he saw Jesus, he fell at his feet. ²³Besought him greatly and stated, My little daughter lieth at the point of death — I pray you, come and lay your hands on her, that she may be healed. Then she will live. ²⁴So Jesus went with him, and a large crowd followed him and pressed in on him. ²⁵A woman who had suffered from a flow of blood for twelve years, ²⁶Had suffered numerous things of numerous physicians, and had spent all that she had, and was nothing bettered, but rather grew worse,. ²⁷When she had listened to of Jesus, arrived in the press behind, and touched his garment. ²⁸For she was saying, "If I just touch his clothes, I will be saved." ²⁹Immediately the flow of her blood dried up, and she felt in her body that she was healed of her affliction. ³⁰Immediately Jesus, aware that power had gone out from him, turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched my clothes?" ³¹His disciples said to him, "You see the crowd pressing against you, and yet you say, 'Who touched me?'" ³²But he kept looking around to see who had done this. ³³But the woman, knowing what had happened to her, came in fear and trembling, fell down before him, and told him the whole truth. ³⁴He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has saved you. Go in peace, and be healed of your affliction." ³⁵While he was still speaking, people came from the synagogue leader's house saying, "Your daughter has died. Why bother the teacher any further?" ³⁶But Jesus, overhearing what was said, told the synagogue leader, "Do not be afraid; just believe." ³⁷He did not allow anyone to go with him except Peter, James, and John the brother of James. ³⁸They came to the house of the synagogue leader, and he saw a commotion — people weeping and wailing loudly. ³⁹Going in, he said to them, "Why are you making a commotion and weeping? The child is not dead but sleeping." ⁴⁰They laughed at him. But he put them all outside, took the child's father and mother and those who were with him, and went in to where the child was. ⁴¹Taking the child by the hand, he said to her, "Talitha koum" — which means, "Little girl, I say to you, get up." ⁴²Immediately the girl stood up and began walking, for she was twelve years old. They were immediately overcome with great amazement. ⁴³He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this, and told them to give her something to eat.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads Gerasēnōn ('Gerasenes') rather than the KJV's 'Gadarenes.' The 'other side' (to peran) is the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee — predominantly Gentile territory, as the presence of a pig herd will confirm. Jesus is crossing from Jewish to Gentile space, a significant boundary in Mark's narrative geography.

2. The word euthys ('immediately') marks the instant confrontation — Jesus barely steps ashore before encountering the demoniac. The man comes 'from the tombs' (ek tōn mnēmeiōn), his dwelling place among the dead. Every detail accumulates uncleanness: Gentile territory, tombs, an unclean spirit. Jesus enters the most impure space imaginable.
3. The triple negative (oude... ouketi... oudeis, 'not even... no longer... no one') emphasizes the absolute impossibility of human control over this man. The verb dēsai ('bind, tie up') echoes the 'binding the strong man' language of 3:27 — no one can bind this man because the strong man (Satan) controls him. Only the one who has already bound the strong man can free his captive.
4. The distinction between pedais ('shackles' for the feet) and halysēs ('chains' for the hands/body) indicates repeated, thorough attempts at physical restraint. The verbs diespatthai ('tore apart') and syntetripthai ('crushed, smashed to pieces') convey superhuman strength. The verb damasai ('tame, subdue') is used for taming wild animals — the community has tried to treat this man as a beast. The perfect tenses indicate a history of failed attempts.
5. The description is harrowing: constant screaming (krazōn) and self-mutilation (katakoptōn heauton lithois, 'cutting himself down with stones'). The phrase dia pantos ('continually, always') with nyktos kai hēmeras ('night and day') portrays unceasing torment. The man oscillates between tombs (death) and mountains (isolation), with no rest and no human community. Mark paints the most extreme portrait of demonic oppression in the Gospels.
6. The verb prosekunēsēn ('fell down before, prostrated himself, worshipped') can mean either worship or obeisance. Given the demonic context, this is likely involuntary submission to Jesus's authority rather than genuine worship. The man runs toward Jesus — not away. Despite the demons' hostility, something in the man is drawn to Jesus as his only hope.
7. The demon uses the same defensive formula as in 1:24 — ti emoi kai soi ('what to me and to you?'). The title 'Son of the Most High God' (huie tou theou tou hypsistou) uses the Gentile designation for Israel's God (cf. Genesis 14:18-22), appropriate for the Gentile setting. The irony is profound: the demon adjures Jesus by God (horkizō se ton theon) — attempting to use divine authority against the divine Son. The verb basanisēs ('torment') refers to eschatological punishment — the demon fears Jesus has come to execute final judgment ahead of schedule.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 14:18-22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The imperfect elegen ('he was saying, had been saying') indicates that Jesus had already begun commanding the spirit before the exchange in verse 7. The demon's plea in verse 7 is a response to Jesus's initial exorcism command. Mark presents the encounter as a struggle, albeit one whose outcome is never in doubt.
9. In ancient practice, knowing a spirit's name gave power over it. Jesus's question asserts authority. The answer legiōn is a Latin loanword — a Roman legion numbered approximately 5,000-6,000 soldiers. The name evokes both the overwhelming number of demons and, for Mark's Roman audience, the occupying military force. The shift between singular ('my name') and plural ('we are many') reflects the blurred identity of the possessed man and the possessing spirits.
10. The imperfect parekalei ('kept begging') indicates persistent pleading. The demons' request not to be sent 'out of the region' (exō tēs chōras) is puzzling — perhaps they fear being sent to the abyss (cf. Luke 8:31) or prefer to remain in familiar territory. Their desperation and subservience to Jesus's authority is clear: they negotiate from a position of total weakness.
11. The presence of pigs confirms the Gentile setting — pigs were unclean animals under Jewish law (Leviticus 11:7) and would not be raised in Jewish territory. The word agelē ('herd') is typically used for cattle; its use for pigs may reflect the unusually large number. The hillside (pros tō orei) near the sea sets up the dramatic plunge of verse 13.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 11:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The demons' request to enter the pigs rather than be cast into the abyss reveals their desperate desire to remain embodied and in the earthly realm. Their need to ask Jesus's permission demonstrates his absolute authority — they cannot act without his consent.
13. The number 'about two thousand' (hōs dishilioi) reinforces the name 'Legion' and the scale of the oppression. The verb hōrmēsēn ('rushed, stampeded') describes a headlong, uncontrollable charge. The verb epnigonto ('were drowning, suffocating') is imperfect, depicting the ongoing process. The sea, which in Jewish cosmology was associated with chaos and evil, swallows the unclean spirits along with the unclean animals — a symbolic victory over the forces of chaos.
14. The herdsmen's flight (ephygon, 'fled') reflects terror at the supernatural event. Their report spreads to both urban (polis) and rural (agrous) areas. The phrase ti estin to gegonos ('what is the thing that has happened') uses the perfect participle — the accomplished event with ongoing implications.
15. The transformation is described in three participles: kathēmenon ('sitting' — formerly restless), himatismenon ('clothed' — formerly naked, implied), and sōphronounta ('in his right mind' — formerly raving). The fear (ephobēthēsan) is not gratitude but dread — the power that could do this is as terrifying as the demoniac himself had been. The townspeople fear Jesus's power more than they appreciate the man's healing.
16. The eyewitnesses (hoi idontes, 'those who saw') provide a detailed account (diēgēsanto, 'narrated, described'). The dual focus — what happened to the man and what happened to the pigs — reflects the community's twin concerns: the miraculous healing and the economic loss.

17. The verb *parakalein* ('to beg, urge, implore') is the same word the demons used in verse 10. The community asks Jesus to leave — they prefer the familiar misery of a demoniac to the disruptive power of the healer. The economic loss of two thousand pigs may also motivate their request. This is one of the rare occasions where Jesus is rejected by an entire community.
18. The verb *parakalei* ('was begging') appears for the third time in this passage — the demons begged (v. 10, 12), the townspeople begged (v. 17), and now the healed man begs. His request 'to be with him' (*hina met' autou ē*) echoes the purpose of the Twelve's appointment in 3:14 — he wants to become a disciple. In contrast to the community's rejection, the healed man is drawn to Jesus.
19. This is the only case in Mark where Jesus commands someone to proclaim rather than to keep silent. The messianic secret does not apply in Gentile territory, where there is no risk of politicized messianic misunderstanding. The phrase *ho kyrios* ('the Lord') could refer to God or to Jesus — the ambiguity may be intentional. The verb *ēlēsen* ('had mercy') attributes the healing to divine compassion.
20. The man exceeds his commission — Jesus said to tell 'your own people' what 'the Lord' had done; the man proclaims throughout the entire Decapolis (a league of ten Greco-Roman cities) what 'Jesus' had done. He identifies Jesus as the Lord. The Decapolis was predominantly Gentile territory, making this man effectively the first Gentile missionary in Mark. The imperfect *ethaumazon* ('were amazed, kept marveling') indicates an ongoing response.
21. Jesus returns to the western (Jewish) shore. The recurring setting — 'beside the sea' (*para tēn thalassan*) — connects this to previous lakeside scenes. The crowd's immediate gathering indicates Jesus's continued popularity despite official opposition.
22. The title *archisynagōgos* ('synagogue ruler/leader') denotes the person responsible for managing synagogue services and facilities — a position of considerable local prestige. That such a figure would prostrate himself publicly before an itinerant teacher indicates extreme desperation. The name *Iairos* is the Greek form of Hebrew *Ya'ir* ('he will enlighten/awaken'), which becomes poignant given the story's outcome.
23. The diminutive *thygatrion* ('little daughter') conveys parental tenderness. The phrase *eschatōs echei* ('is at the last, at extremity') indicates she is near death. The verb *sōthē* ('may be saved') carries both physical healing and theological salvation in its range — Mark often uses *sōzō* with this double sense. Jairus's faith is expressed in his confidence that Jesus's touch will heal.
24. The verb *synethlibon* ('were pressing together against, crushing') recalls 3:9 where Jesus needed a boat to escape the crowd. The crushing crowd creates the condition for the next episode — the hemorrhaging woman can approach Jesus unnoticed because of the dense press of bodies.
25. The phrase *rhyis haimatos* ('flow of blood') likely refers to chronic vaginal bleeding, which under Levitical law (Leviticus 15:25-30) rendered the woman perpetually ritually unclean and made anyone or anything she touched unclean as well. For twelve years she has been excluded from the temple, synagogue worship, and normal social contact. The twelve years will be paralleled by the twelve years of Jairus's daughter's life.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 15:25-30 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. Mark's description is blunt about the medical profession: the woman suffered (*pathousa*, 'having endured much') under (*hypo* — from) the doctors, spent all her money (*dapanēsasa ta par' autēs panta*, 'having spent all that she had'), received no benefit (*mēden ōphelētheisa*), and actually deteriorated (*eis to cheiron elthousa*, 'having gone to the worse'). This frank assessment of ancient medicine is unique to Mark — Luke, the physician-evangelist, softens it considerably.
27. Her approach from behind (*opisthen*) suggests both hope and fear — hope that Jesus can help, fear of public exposure of her condition. By touching his garment, she would technically transmit her ritual impurity to him. Her action is bold but covert, reflecting a woman who has been marginalized for twelve years and is reluctant to draw attention to herself.
28. The imperfect *elegen* ('she was saying, kept saying to herself') suggests ongoing internal deliberation as she worked up courage. The verb *sōthēsomai* ('I will be saved/healed') again carries the dual sense of physical healing and spiritual wholeness. Her faith, though expressed through what might seem a superstitious mechanism (touching clothing), is directed toward Jesus personally.
29. The healing is instantaneous (*euthys*) and physically perceptible. The word *pēgē* ('spring, fountain, source') for the bleeding is a medical term. The verb *egnō tō sōmati* ('she knew in her body') describes a somatic awareness — she could physically feel the change. The word *mastigos* ('affliction, scourge') is the same word used in 3:10 for diseases, viewing illness as a kind of divine whipping.
30. The phrase *epignous en heautō tēn ex autou dynamin exelthousan* ('perceiving in himself the power having gone out from him') presents healing power as something that flows from Jesus and that he can detect. The word *dynamis* ('power') here is almost tangible — it has direction and movement. Jesus's question is not about information (he will identify the woman) but about relationship — he refuses to let the healing be anonymous.
31. The disciples' response borders on exasperation — in a crushing crowd, everyone is touching him. They cannot distinguish between the incidental contact of the crowd and the deliberate, faith-driven touch of the woman. The imperfect *elegon* ('they were saying') suggests they pressed the point.
32. The imperfect *perieblepeto* ('he was looking around') indicates a sustained, searching gaze. The feminine participle *tēn touto poiēsasan* ('the woman who had done this') reveals that Jesus already knew it was a woman. His searching look gives her the opportunity to come forward voluntarily rather than being exposed.
33. Her fear (*phobētheisa*) and trembling (*tremousa*) may reflect fear of rebuke for transmitting impurity, fear of losing the healing, or awe at the divine power she has experienced. She tells 'the whole truth' (*pasan tēn alētheian*) — her twelve years of suffering, her desperate act, her healing. The public

confession is both brave and necessary: Jesus will not allow healing to be separated from relationship.

34. The address 'Daughter' (thygatēr) restores her to family — she has been isolated for twelve years, and Jesus claims her as kin. The phrase hē pistis sou sesōken se ('your faith has saved you') uses the perfect tense — the salvation is accomplished and enduring. The verb sōzō again carries both physical and spiritual dimensions. 'Go in peace' (hypage eis eirēnēn) is the Hebrew shalom blessing — 'go into wholeness.' The command isthi hygiēs ('be healthy') confirms the healing as permanent.
35. The timing is devastating — 'while he was still speaking' (eti autou lalountos), the worst news arrives. The delay caused by the hemorrhaging woman's interruption has cost Jairus his daughter. The verb skylleis ('trouble, bother, harass') suggests they view any further appeal as pointless. The message assumes death is the absolute limit of Jesus's power. Mark's intercalation technique creates maximum dramatic tension.
36. The verb parakousas can mean either 'overhearing' or 'ignoring/disregarding.' Both readings work: Jesus either overhears the message meant for Jairus, or he deliberately disregards its hopeless conclusion. His response — mē phobou, monon pisteue ('do not fear, only believe') — calls Jairus to the same kind of faith the hemorrhaging woman demonstrated. The present imperative pisteue ('keep believing') demands sustained trust in the face of apparent impossibility.
37. The inner circle of three — Peter, James, and John — appears here for the first time. They will also be present at the Transfiguration (9:2) and Gethsemane (14:33). This select group witnesses events too profound or intimate for the larger group. The exclusion of others creates privacy for the family and limits witnesses to the raising.
38. The noun thorybos ('commotion, uproar, tumult') describes the scene of ritual mourning. Professional mourners would have been summoned quickly; Jewish custom required even the poorest family to hire at least two flute players and one wailing woman (Mishnah Ketubbot 4:4). The verb alalazontas ('wailing, shrieking') describes the loud, ritualized cries of formal lamentation.
39. Jesus's statement 'the child is not dead but sleeping' (to paidion ouk apethanen alla katheudei) has been interpreted as either (1) a metaphor for death — the girl is dead but Jesus views death as temporary sleep, or (2) a literal claim that she is merely unconscious. Given the certainty of the death announcement (v. 35) and the mockery that follows, Mark appears to present an actual death that Jesus redefines as sleep because he intends to 'wake' her. The metaphor of death as sleep becomes standard Christian language (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:13-14).
40. The verb kategelōn ('were laughing at, ridiculing, mocking') indicates contemptuous dismissal. Their laughter confirms the girl is genuinely dead — they know death when they see it. The verb ekbalōn ('having thrown out') is the same forceful word used for casting out demons. Jesus removes the scorners and creates an intimate space with only the parents and the three disciples.
41. The preservation of the Aramaic talitha koum (or koumi in some manuscripts) is one of several instances where Mark retains Jesus's actual spoken words in Aramaic (cf. 7:34 ephphatha; 15:34 eloi eloi). Talitha means 'little girl' or 'lamb' (a term of endearment), and koum is the imperative 'arise, get up.' The tender address combined with the authoritative command creates a powerful contrast. Jesus touches a corpse, which would render him ritually unclean — but as with the leper, purity flows from Jesus rather than impurity flowing to him.
42. The girl's response is immediate (euthys) and complete — she not only rises but walks. Her age — twelve years — creates a link with the hemorrhaging woman (twelve years of illness). The woman has been ill for the girl's entire lifetime. The phrase exestēsan ekstasei megalē ('they were astonished with a great astonishment') uses a cognate construction for emphasis — the witnesses are utterly overwhelmed.
43. The messianic secret returns: diesteilato autois polla ('he ordered them repeatedly and emphatically'). Given that the mourners and crowd already know the girl died, keeping the raising secret seems impossible — yet Jesus commands it. The final detail — 'give her something to eat' — is profoundly human after the divine miracle. The command confirms the physical reality of her restoration: she is truly alive, with a living body that needs food. The juxtaposition of cosmic power and domestic tenderness is characteristically Markan.

6

Summary: *Mark 6 is the longest chapter in the Gospel and marks a turning point. Jesus is rejected at his hometown of Nazareth, then sends the Twelve on their first mission. Mark intercalates the account of John the Baptist's execution by Herod Antipas — a grim foreshadowing of Jesus's own fate. The chapter then presents two great wilderness miracles: the feeding of the five thousand and Jesus walking on the sea. The chapter closes with a summary of widespread healing activity in Gennesaret.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Nazareth rejection establishes that even Jesus's own community cannot see past his ordinary origins. The mission of the Twelve extends Jesus's authority through delegation. The death of John the Baptist is Mark's longest non-Jesus narrative and functions as a dark mirror of what awaits Jesus. The feeding of the five thousand is the only miracle (besides the resurrection) found in all four Gospels. The sea-walking scene contains the mysterious phrase 'he intended to pass them by' — echoing Old Testament theophanies where God 'passes by' (Exodus 33:19-22; 1 Kings 19:11).*

Translation Friction: Herod's identity as 'king' (v. 14) is technically inaccurate — he was a tetrarch, not a king. Mark may use the popular designation or employ irony. The relationship between Herodias, Philip, and Herod is historically complex. The 'passing by' in verse 48 is theologically loaded and we render it literally with a note on the theophanic background.

Connections: The feeding miracle echoes Elisha feeding a hundred men (2 Kings 4:42-44), Moses and the manna (Exodus 16), and anticipates the Last Supper. The sea-walking draws on divine prerogatives — God alone 'treads on the waves of the sea' (Job 9:8). The disciples' hardened hearts (v. 52) echo the Pharaoh motif from Exodus.

¹He left that place and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. ²On the Sabbath he began to teach in the synagogue, and many who heard him were astonished, saying, "Where did this man get these things? What is this wisdom given to him? How are such mighty works performed through his hands? ³Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and brother of James, Joses, Judas, and Simon? Are not his sisters here with us?" And they took offense at him. ⁴Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor except in his hometown, among his relatives, and in his own household." ⁵He was not able to do any mighty work there, except that he laid his hands on a few sick people and healed them. ⁶He was amazed at their unbelief. Then he went around among the villages teaching. ⁷He summoned the Twelve and began to send them out two by two, and he gave them authority over unclean spirits. ⁸He instructed them to take nothing for the journey except a staff — no bread, no bag, no money in their belts. ⁹They were to wear sandals but not put on two tunics. ¹⁰He said to them, "Whenever you enter a house, stay there until you leave that town. ¹¹If any place will not welcome you and they will not listen to you, as you leave, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony against them." ¹²So they went out and proclaimed that people should repent. ¹³They cast out many demons and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them. ¹⁴King Herod heard about it, for Jesus's name had become well known. Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and that is why miraculous powers are at work in him." ¹⁵Others were saying, "He is Elijah." And others were saying, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets of old." ¹⁶But when Herod heard about it, he said, "John, whom I beheaded — he has been raised!" ¹⁷For Herod himself had sent men to arrest John and had him bound in prison on account of Herodias, his brother Philip's wife, because Herod had married her. ¹⁸For John had been telling Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife." ¹⁹So Herodias held a grudge against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not, ²⁰For Herod feared John, knowing that he was a just man and an holy, and observed him. And when he listened to him, he did numerous things, and listened to him gladly. ²¹An opportune day came when Herod on his birthday gave a banquet for his courtiers, military commanders, and the leading men of Galilee. ²²When his daughter Herodias came in and danced, she pleased Herod and his dinner guests. The king said to the girl, "Ask me for whatever you wish, and I will give it to you." ²³He swore to her, "Whatever you ask me, I will give you, up to half my kingdom." ²⁴She went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask for?" She said, "The head of John the Baptist." ²⁵Immediately she hurried back to the king and made her request: "I want you to give me right now the head of John the Baptist on a platter." ²⁶The king was deeply distressed, but because of his oaths and his dinner guests, he did not want to refuse her. ²⁷Immediately the king sent an executioner and commanded him to bring John's head. He went and beheaded him in the prison, ²⁸brought his head in a charger, and offered it to the damsel — and the damsel offered it to her mother. ²⁹When his disciples heard about it, they came and took his body and laid it in a tomb. ³⁰The apostles gathered around Jesus and reported to him everything they had done and taught. ³¹He said to them, "Come away by yourselves to a deserted place and rest a while." For many were coming and going, and they had no opportunity even to eat. ³²So they went away in the boat to a deserted place by themselves. ³³But many saw them going and recognized them, and they ran there on foot from all the towns and arrived ahead of them. ³⁴When he went ashore, he saw a large crowd, and he had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd, and he began to teach them many things. ³⁵When the hour had grown late, his disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place and the hour is already late. ³⁶Send them away so they can go into the surrounding countryside and villages and buy themselves something to eat." ³⁷But he answered them, "You give them something to eat." They said to him, "Should we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?" ³⁸He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see." When they found out, they said, "Five, and two fish." ³⁹He directed them to have everyone sit down in groups on the green grass. ⁴⁰

They sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties. ⁴¹Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, blessed and broke the loaves, and gave them to his disciples to set before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all. ⁴²Everyone ate and was satisfied. ⁴³They picked up twelve baskets full of broken pieces and of the fish. ⁴⁴Those who ate the loaves were five thousand men. ⁴⁵Immediately he made his disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, toward Bethsaida, while he dismissed the crowd. ⁴⁶After saying farewell to them, he went up on the mountain to pray. ⁴⁷When evening came, the boat was in the middle of the sea, and he was alone on the land. ⁴⁸He saw them straining at the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night he came toward them, walking on the sea, and he intended to pass by them. ⁴⁹But when they saw him walking on the sea, they thought it was a ghost and screamed, ⁵⁰Since they all noticed him, and were troubled. And immediately he talked with them, and says to them, Be of good cheer — it is I. Be not afraid. ⁵¹He got into the boat with them, and the wind died down. They were utterly astounded, ⁵²Indeed, since they considered not the miracle of the loaves — for their heart was hardened. ⁵³When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret and moored the boat. ⁵⁴When they got out of the boat, people immediately recognized him ⁵⁵Ran by way of that whole region round about, and started to carry about in beds those that were sick, where they listened to he was. ⁵⁶Wherever he went — into villages, towns, or countryside — they laid the sick in the marketplaces and begged him to let them touch even the fringe of his garment. And all who touched it were healed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *patris* ('hometown, fatherland') refers to Nazareth, though Mark does not name it here (cf. 1:9). The historical present *erchetai* ('he comes') is characteristic of Mark's vivid narrative style. Jesus returns home, but after all that has happened, the homecoming will prove uncomfortable.
2. The townspeople's questions acknowledge both Jesus's wisdom and power but frame them as a puzzle rather than a revelation. The passive *dothesia* ('given') is a divine passive — they recognize that his wisdom comes from God but stumble over the delivery mechanism. The word *dynameis* ('mighty works, miracles') is plural, indicating they knew of his wider ministry.
3. The title *tektōn* ('carpenter, builder, craftsman') identifies Jesus by his trade — a worker in wood and possibly stone. Mark alone calls Jesus himself a carpenter; Matthew 13:55 calls him 'the carpenter's son.' The identification as 'son of Mary' (rather than 'son of Joseph') is unusual and may suggest Joseph had died, or may carry a hint of illegitimacy. Four brothers are named, and sisters (plural) are mentioned. The verb *eskandalizōnto* ('were offended, stumbled') indicates that his ordinariness became the obstacle to faith.
4. The proverb has parallels in Greek literature and appears to have been widely known. Mark's version is the most expansive: three concentric circles of rejection — hometown (*patris*), relatives (*syngeneusin*), and household (*oikia*). Each circle narrows toward greater intimacy and greater pain. Jesus implicitly identifies himself as a prophet — a claim with dangerous implications given what happened to prophets.
5. The bold statement *ouk edynato* ('he was not able, could not') is remarkable — Mark presents unbelief as genuinely limiting Jesus's power, not just his willingness. Matthew 13:58 softens this to 'he did not do many mighty works.' The exception — healing a few sick people — shows that even limited faith allowed some access to Jesus's power.
6. The verb *ethaumazen* ('was amazed, marveled') is used elsewhere in Mark for human amazement at Jesus; here uniquely, Jesus is amazed at human unbelief. The word *apistia* ('unbelief, faithlessness, lack of trust') is the opposite of the *pistis* ('faith') he commends elsewhere. Jesus does not remain to argue but moves on to the surrounding villages.
7. The verb *apostellein* ('to send out') is the root of 'apostle' — the Twelve are now being sent. Pairing them 'two by two' (*dyo dyo*) follows the Old Testament principle that testimony requires two witnesses (Deuteronomy 19:15) and provides mutual support. The authority (*exousia*) over unclean spirits extends Jesus's own exorcism ministry through his delegates.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 19:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Mark permits a staff (*rhabdon*), while Matthew 10:10 and Luke 9:3 forbid even that — a minor discrepancy among the Synoptics. The *pēra* ('bag') was a traveler's knapsack. The *chalkon* ('copper, bronze money') represents the smallest denomination. The radical simplicity forces dependence on God and the hospitality of those they serve.
9. Mark allows sandals; Matthew 10:10 forbids them. The *chitōn* ('tunic, inner garment') was the basic garment worn next to the skin. Forbidding a second tunic means traveling without a change of clothes or an extra layer for cold nights — radical vulnerability and trust.
10. The instruction to stay in one house prevents the missionaries from trading up to better accommodations — they are to accept whatever hospitality is offered and remain loyal to their host. This practice also provides a stable base for ministry in each location.
11. Shaking off dust (*ektinaxate ton choun*) was a Jewish gesture performed when leaving Gentile territory — symbolically removing foreign contamination. Directed at fellow Jews, it declares that the rejecting town has placed itself outside the covenant community. The SBLGNT does not

- include the Sodom and Gomorrah comparison found in some manuscripts and in the KJV; this is a later scribal addition harmonizing with Matthew 10:15.
12. The Twelve's message — *metanoōsin* ('that they should repent') — echoes Jesus's opening proclamation in 1:15. They extend his call for repentance to a wider audience. The verb *kēryssō* ('proclaim, preach as a herald') is the same verb used for Jesus's own preaching.
 13. The anointing with oil (*ēleiphon elaiō*) is unique to Mark's account of this mission. Oil was used medicinally in the ancient world (cf. Isaiah 1:6; Luke 10:34), but here it functions as a vehicle for divine healing — a practice the early church continued (James 5:14). The combination of exorcism and healing mirrors Jesus's own ministry pattern.
 13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 1:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
 14. Mark calls Herod Antipas 'king' (*basileus*), though his actual title was 'tetrarch' (ruler of a quarter). This may be popular usage, Markan irony, or deliberate contrast with Jesus as the true king. The SBLGNT reads 'they were saying' (*elegon*, third person plural) rather than 'he said,' attributing the opinion about John to popular rumor rather than to Herod directly. The belief that John had risen reflects a popular view that the powers of a martyred prophet could be transferred or amplified after death.
 15. Three theories about Jesus circulate: resurrected John, returned Elijah (expected before the Day of the Lord, Malachi 4:5), or a new prophet in the line of the great prophets. Notably, none of the popular opinions identifies Jesus as the Messiah — the true answer that Peter will give in 8:29. These same three theories reappear in 8:28.
 15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Malachi 4:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
 16. The emphatic word order places 'whom I beheaded' (*hon egō apekephalisa*) first for dramatic impact. Herod's guilty conscience interprets Jesus through the lens of his own crime. The verb *apekephalisa* ('I beheaded') is blunt and brutal. His conviction that John has risen suggests both superstitious fear and an inability to escape the consequences of his deed.
 17. The flashback begins. The historical situation: Herod Antipas divorced his first wife (a Nabatean princess) to marry Herodias, who had been wife of his half-brother. Josephus (*Antiquities* 18.5.1-2) confirms the basic story but attributes John's execution to political fears rather than the banquet scenario Mark describes. The phrase 'his brother Philip's wife' identifies the relationship that made the marriage unlawful under Leviticus 18:16 and 20:21.
 17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 18:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
 18. The imperfect *elegen* ('he was saying, kept saying') indicates this was not a one-time confrontation but a repeated prophetic challenge. John stands in the tradition of prophets who confronted kings — Nathan before David (2 Samuel 12), Elijah before Ahab (1 Kings 21). The prohibition is rooted in Leviticus 18:16.
 18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
 18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
 18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 18:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
 19. The verb *eneichen* ('held against, bore a grudge, harbored resentment') describes Herodias's sustained hostility. The parallel with Jezebel seeking to kill Elijah (1 Kings 19:2) is unmistakable and likely intentional — John is the new Elijah opposed by a new Jezebel. Herodias's desire to kill is blocked by Herod's ambivalence (v. 20).
 19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 19:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
 20. Herod's complex response to John — fear, recognition of his holiness, protection, perplexity, and fascination — makes him one of Mark's most psychologically nuanced characters. The SBLGNT reads *ēporei* ('was perplexed, at a loss') rather than *epoiei* ('did many things') found in some manuscripts. Herod is drawn to John's message but lacks the will to act on it — a tragic portrait of partial openness to truth.
 21. The word *eukairos* ('opportune, convenient') is loaded with dark irony — it is opportune for Herodias's scheme. The guest list — *megistanes* ('courtiers, nobles'), *chiliarchoi* ('commanders of a thousand,' military officers), and *prōtoi* ('leading men, elite') — represents the full spectrum of Galilean power. The birthday banquet (*genesiois*) sets the stage for the grim request that follows.
 22. The SBLGNT reads 'his daughter Herodias' (*tēs thygatros autou Hērōdiados*), which is textually difficult since the daughter is traditionally named Salome (Josephus, *Antiquities* 18.5.4). Some manuscripts read 'the daughter of Herodias herself.' The dance of a royal princess before a banquet of men was culturally extraordinary and suggests Herodias's manipulation. The rash promise echoes Esther 5:3, 6 and 7:2, where the Persian king makes a similar open-ended offer.
 22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Esther 5:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

- 23.** The oath (ōmosen) escalates the promise — Herod binds himself before his guests. The phrase 'up to half my kingdom' echoes Esther 5:3 almost verbatim. Since Herod was a tetrarch ruling at Rome's pleasure, the offer of half his kingdom was an empty boast, but it creates a binding social obligation.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Esther 5:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 24.** The girl's question reveals she is acting as Herodias's agent. Herodias's response is instant and specific — she has been waiting for this opportunity (the 'opportune day' of v. 21). The request for John's 'head' (kephalēn) is shockingly literal and demands immediate execution.
- 25.** The word euthys ('immediately') and meta spoudēs ('with haste, urgency') convey the girl's rush to lock in the request before Herod can reconsider. The addition 'on a platter' (epi pinaki) adds grotesque detail — the prophet's head served as a banquet dish. The demand exautēs ('right now, at once') leaves no room for delay or negotiation.
- 26.** The word perilypos ('deeply grieved, exceedingly sorrowful') is the same word used for Jesus in Gethsemane (14:34). But Herod's sorrow does not lead to right action — he is trapped by his oaths (plural, horkous — he had sworn repeatedly) and by social pressure (the guests witnessed the oath). Fear of losing face costs John his life. Herod chooses honor before men over honoring God.
- 27.** The Greek spekoulatōr is a Latin loanword (speculator) — a member of the bodyguard who could serve as executioner. The Latin military term is appropriate for Herod's court and reflects Mark's Roman audience. The execution happens with grim efficiency — euthys ('immediately') marking the speed of the killing.
- 28.** The chain of delivery — executioner to girl to mother — is narrated with chilling matter-of-factness. The prophet's head passes through three sets of hands like a dish at a banquet. The scene is a grim anti-feast that inverts the coming banquet of the five thousand.
- 29.** John's disciples perform the act of burial, paralleling what Joseph of Arimathea will do for Jesus (15:46). The word ptōma ('corpse, fallen body') is blunt — literally 'something that has fallen.' The burial in a tomb (mnēmeiō) provides closure to John's story and anticipates the empty tomb of chapter 16.
- 30.** This is the only place in Mark where the Twelve are called 'apostles' (apostoloi, 'sent ones') — the title applies specifically to their role as commissioned delegates who have now returned from their mission. Their report covers both actions (hosa epoiēsan, 'what they did') and teaching (hosa edidaxan, 'what they taught'), mirroring Jesus's own ministry of deed and word.
- 31.** Jesus recognizes the disciples' need for rest after their mission. The phrase kat' idian ('privately, by themselves') seeks solitude. The detail that they had no time to eat (oude phagein eukairoun) echoes 3:20. The word eukairoun ('had opportunity') uses the same root as the 'opportune' (eukairos) day of Herod's banquet (v. 21) — a subtle verbal link between the two scenes.
- 32.** The boat provides transportation to the 'deserted place' (erēmon topon) — the wilderness that will become the setting for the feeding miracle. The attempt at privacy will be frustrated by the crowds who see them leaving.
- 33.** The crowd's determination is remarkable — they outran the boat on foot (pezē), traveling along the northern shore of the lake. The verb synedramom ('ran together') describes a mass rush from multiple towns converging on the destination. The verb proēlthon ('arrived ahead of, preceded') means the crowd was waiting when the boat landed.
- 34.** The verb esplanchnisthē ('was moved with compassion') describes the same deep, visceral response as in 1:41. The simile 'sheep without a shepherd' (probata mē echonta poimena) echoes Numbers 27:17, where Moses asks God to appoint a successor so Israel will not be 'like sheep without a shepherd.' It also evokes Ezekiel 34, where God condemns Israel's failed shepherds and promises to shepherd the flock himself. Jesus's response to the shepherdless crowd is to teach — in Mark, teaching is the primary expression of pastoral care.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 27:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The disciples emphasize two problems: the isolation of the location (erēmos estin ho topos) and the lateness of the hour (hōra pollē). Both are practical concerns about feeding a large crowd in the wilderness — a problem that evokes the wilderness feeding narratives of Exodus and Numbers.
- 36.** The disciples propose the practical solution: dismiss the crowd to fend for themselves. The verb apolyson ('send away, dismiss') is an aorist imperative suggesting urgency. The surrounding farms (agrous) and villages (kōmas) would have limited supplies for such a multitude.
- 37.** The emphatic hymeis ('you yourselves') makes the command startling — Jesus places the responsibility on the disciples. Two hundred denarii was roughly eight months' wages for a laborer. Their response drips with incredulity, possibly sarcasm. The denarius was a Roman silver coin, the standard day's wage.
- 38.** Jesus redirects from what they cannot do to what they have. The instruction 'go and see' (hypagete idete) forces them to take inventory of their actual resources. The five loaves were likely flat barley bread, the common food of the poor. Two fish (ichthys) were probably dried or pickled fish from the lake.
- 39.** The Greek symposia symposia ('group by group') is a distributive repetition — the crowd was organized into table-fellowship groups, the word symposion normally meaning a drinking party or dinner gathering. The detail 'green grass' (chlōrō chortō) indicates spring — near Passover (cf. John 6:4) when grass would be green in Galilee. The organized seating transforms a chaotic crowd into an ordered meal.

40. The word *prasiai prasiai* ('garden beds, garden beds') paints a visual picture — from above, the arranged groups looked like rectangular garden plots. The groupings of hundreds and fifties echo the organization of Israel in the wilderness (Exodus 18:25), reinforcing the new-exodus theme of this wilderness feeding.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 18:25 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The four verbs — took (*labōn*), blessed (*eulogēsen*), broke (*kateklasen*), gave (*edidou*) — form the pattern that will reappear at the Last Supper (14:22) and become the structure of the Christian Eucharist. Looking up to heaven (*anablepsas eis ton ouranon*) acknowledges God as the source. The imperfect *edidou* ('kept giving') suggests the multiplication happened progressively as the bread was distributed.
42. The verb *echortasthēsan* ('were satisfied, filled to the full') originally described the feeding of animals — to be gorged, fully fed. Its use here emphasizes the abundance of the provision. The word *pantes* ('all, everyone') ensures no one was left out.
43. The twelve baskets (*dōdeka kophinōn*) correspond to the twelve tribes of Israel and the twelve apostles — the symbolism is likely intentional. The *kophinos* was a wicker basket distinctively associated with Jewish travelers (Juvenal, *Satire* 3.14). The surplus exceeds the initial supply, demonstrating superabundant provision.
44. The number *pentakischilioi andres* ('five thousand men') counts only adult males. Matthew 14:21 adds 'besides women and children,' suggesting the total crowd was much larger. The number may echo the military organization of the wilderness groups (v. 40), creating an image of a new Israel being fed by a new Moses in a new wilderness.
45. The verb *ēnagkasen* ('compelled, forced, made') is unusually strong — Jesus pressured the reluctant disciples to leave. John 6:15 explains why: the crowd wanted to make Jesus king by force, and Jesus needed to separate the disciples from the political enthusiasm. The word *euthys* ('immediately') marks the urgency. *Bethsaida* ('house of fishing') was a town on the northeastern shore.
46. The verb *apotaxamenos* ('having said farewell, having taken leave of') indicates a deliberate departure. Jesus again seeks solitude for prayer (cf. 1:35). The mountain (to *oros*) is a place of encounter with God in biblical tradition. This is Jesus's second recorded prayer in Mark, following a major public event, as in 1:35.
47. The scene is set with stark simplicity: the boat in the middle (*en mesō*) of the sea, Jesus alone (*monos*) on the land. The separation creates both physical and symbolic distance. The Sea of Galilee is roughly 7 miles wide at its widest point; 'in the middle' means 3-4 miles from shore.
48. That Jesus 'saw' (*idōn*) them from the mountain in darkness implies supernatural sight. The verb *basanizomenous* ('being tortured, strained, distressed') conveys the physical agony of rowing against a headwind. The fourth watch was 3-6 AM (Roman time reckoning). The phrase *ēthelen parelthein autous* ('he intended to pass by them') is the most theologically loaded detail; in the Old Testament, God 'passes by' Moses (Exodus 33:19-22) and Elijah (1 Kings 19:11) in theophanies — divine self-revelations. Jesus walking on the sea and intending to 'pass by' identifies him with the God of Israel.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 33:19-22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. The word *phantasma* ('apparition, ghost, phantom') reflects their terror — they interpret the figure on the water as a spirit of the dead. The verb *anekraxan* ('screamed, cried out') conveys raw terror. Their inability to recognize Jesus is part of Mark's theme of the disciples' persistent blindness.
50. The phrase *egō eimi* ('it is I' or 'I AM') is both a simple self-identification and potentially a divine self-revelation — the same phrase used by God in Exodus 3:14 (in the Septuagint) and Isaiah 43:10. In the context of a sea-theophany, the reader is meant to hear both levels. The command 'do not be afraid' (*mē phobeisthe*) is the standard reassurance in divine appearances (Genesis 15:1; Isaiah 41:10; Daniel 10:12).
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 43:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 15:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 41:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 10:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
51. The wind ceasing (*ekopasen*) when Jesus enters the boat echoes the storm-calming of 4:39 but without a verbal command — his mere presence stills the wind. The phrase *lian ek perissou* ('exceedingly, beyond all measure, utterly') piles up intensifiers to convey the disciples' overwhelming astonishment. The verb *existanto* ('were beside themselves, astounded') indicates they were mentally overwhelmed.
52. Mark's editorial comment is devastating: the disciples' astonishment at the sea-walking reveals that they missed the meaning of the feeding miracle. If they had understood *epi tois artois* ('about the loaves') — that Jesus had divine creative power — the sea-walking would not have shocked them. The phrase *hē kardia pepōrōmenē* ('their heart was hardened/calcified') uses the same word applied to Pharaoh's heart in the Septuagint and to the Pharisees in 3:5. Mark places the disciples dangerously close to Jesus's opponents.

53. Gennesaret (Gennēsaret) was a fertile plain on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee, south of Capernaum. The verb *prosōrmisthēsan* ('moored, anchored') is a nautical technical term, suggesting they pulled up at a landing or dock.
54. The adverb *euthys* ('immediately') once more. The verb *epignontes* ('recognizing, identifying') indicates Jesus was known by sight in this region — his reputation and face were familiar from previous ministry.
55. The verb *periedramon* ('ran around, ran throughout') indicates a frantic, widespread mobilization. The word *krabattois* ('mats, pallets') is the same as in 2:4 — poor people's beds on which the sick were carried. The phrase *hopou ēkouon hoti estin* ('wherever they heard he was') shows the crowd tracking Jesus's movements.
56. This summary statement covers an extended period of ministry. The *kraspedon* ('fringe, tassel, border') refers to the tassels (*tzitzit*) on the corners of a Jewish garment prescribed by Numbers 15:38-39. The desire to touch the fringe echoes the hemorrhaging woman's faith (5:28). The verb *esōzonto* ('were being saved/healed') is imperfect, indicating continuous, repeated healing. The word encompasses both physical restoration and the deeper salvation it signifies.
56. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 15:38-39. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

7

Summary: *Mark 7 centers on the theme of purity — what truly makes a person clean or unclean. Pharisees and scribes from Jerusalem challenge Jesus about his disciples' failure to observe handwashing traditions. Jesus responds with a sharp critique of human tradition that nullifies God's commandment, using the 'Corban' example. He then teaches the crowd that defilement comes from within, not from external contact with food. The chapter shifts to Gentile territory where Jesus heals the daughter of a Syrophoenician woman after a remarkable exchange, and then heals a deaf man with a speech impediment in the Decapolis.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Mark's parenthetical comment in verse 19 — 'thus he declared all foods clean' — is one of the most theologically significant editorial asides in the Gospel, effectively ending the Levitical food laws. The Syrophoenician woman is the only person in Mark who wins an argument with Jesus, and her faith opens the door to Gentile inclusion. The Aramaic word 'Ephphatha' preserved in verse 34 is another instance of Mark retaining Jesus's actual spoken words. The chapter moves from Jewish purity concerns to Gentile healing, enacting the very boundary-crossing that the teaching about inner purity makes possible.*

Translation Friction: *The 'all foods clean' comment in verse 19 is debated — is it Mark's theological interpretation or Jesus's explicit teaching? The Greek is ambiguous. The exchange with the Syrophoenician woman contains language ('dogs,' *kynaria*) that sounds harsh; we render it faithfully and note the cultural context. The geographic itinerary in verse 31 is circuitous and difficult to map precisely.*

Connections: *The Corban teaching connects to the fifth commandment (Exodus 20:12) and prophetic critiques of empty ritual (Isaiah 29:13). The Syrophoenician woman's story anticipates the Gentile mission. The healing of the deaf-mute echoes Isaiah 35:5-6 ('the ears of the deaf shall be opened... the tongue of the mute shall sing'). The 'Ephphatha' miracle in Gentile territory suggests the messianic age is dawning beyond Israel's borders.*

¹The Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around him. ²They noticed that some of his disciples were eating with defiled — that is, unwashed — hands. ³(For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully, holding to the tradition of the elders. ⁴When they come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they wash. And there are many other traditions they observe, such as the washing of cups, pitchers, copper vessels, and dining couches.) ⁵So the Pharisees and scribes asked him, "Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat with defiled hands?" ⁶He said to them, "Isaiah prophesied accurately about you hypocrites, as it is written: 'This people honors me with their lips, but their heart is far from me. ⁷They worship me in vain, teaching as doctrines the commandments of human beings.' ⁸You abandon the commandment of God and hold to human tradition." ⁹He also said to them, "How skillfully you set aside the commandment of God in order to establish your own tradition! ¹⁰For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and, 'Whoever speaks evil of father or mother must certainly die.' ¹¹But you say, 'If a man tells his father or mother, "Whatever support you might have received from me is Corban" — that is, an offering to God

— ¹²You suffer him no more to do anything for his father or his mother;. ¹³Making the message of God of none effect by way of your tradition, which you have delivered — and numerous such like things do you. ¹⁴He called the crowd to him again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand: ¹⁵There is nothing outside a person that by going in can defile them. Rather, it is what comes out of a person that defiles them." ¹⁷When he had left the crowd and entered a house, his disciples asked him about the parable. ¹⁸He said to them, "Are you also without understanding? Do you not see that whatever goes into a person from outside cannot defile them, ¹⁹On account of the fact that it entereth not into his inner self, but into the belly, and goes out into the draught, purging all meats? ²⁰He said, "It is what comes out of a person that defiles them. ²¹For from within, out of the human heart, come evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder, ²²Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness:. ²³All these evil things come from within and defile a person." ²⁴From there he set out and went to the region of Tyre. He entered a house and did not want anyone to know, but he could not escape notice. ²⁵Immediately a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit heard about him and came and fell at his feet. ²⁶The woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by birth. She kept asking him to cast the demon out of her daughter. ²⁷He said to her, "Let the children be fed first, for it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs." ²⁸But she answered him, "Lord, even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs." ²⁹He said to her, "Because of this word, go — the demon has left your daughter." ³⁰She went home and found her child lying on the bed, and the demon gone. ³¹Then he returned from the region of Tyre and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee, through the region of the Decapolis. ³²They brought to him a man who was deaf and could hardly speak, and they begged him to lay his hand on him. ³³He took him aside from the crowd privately, put his fingers into the man's ears, and after spitting, touched his tongue. ³⁴Looking up to heaven, he sighed deeply and said to him, "Ephphatha" — that is, "Be opened." ³⁵Immediately his ears were opened, the binding of his tongue was released, and he spoke clearly. ³⁶He ordered them to tell no one, but the more he ordered them, the more widely they proclaimed it. ³⁷They were utterly astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. As in 3:22, scribes from Jerusalem represent an official investigation. Their arrival 'from Jerusalem' (apo Hierosolymōn) indicates these are not local critics but representatives of the central religious authority. The historical present *synagontai* ('they gather') creates narrative immediacy.
2. The word *koinais* ('common, defiled, ritually impure') does not mean physically dirty but ritually contaminated. Mark provides the parenthetical explanation 'that is, unwashed' (tout' estin aniptoiois) for his Gentile readers who would not know Jewish purity customs. The issue is ritual hand-washing before meals, a Pharisaic tradition not required by the Torah itself.
3. Mark inserts a long parenthetical explanation (vv. 3-4) for readers unfamiliar with Jewish customs — strong evidence that his audience was predominantly Gentile. The word *pygmē* ('with a fist' or 'carefully, thoroughly') is debated — it may describe a specific washing technique or simply mean 'diligently.' The 'tradition of the elders' (*paradosis tōn presbyterōn*) refers to the oral law later codified in the Mishnah.
4. The verb *baptisōntai* ('wash, immerse') is the same root as 'baptize,' suggesting full immersion rather than merely rinsing hands. The marketplace (*agora*) was a place of contact with Gentiles and other sources of ritual contamination. The list of items requiring purification — cups (*potēriōn*), pitchers (*xestōn*, a Latin loanword from *sextarius*), copper vessels (*chalkiōn*), and dining couches (*klinōn*) — illustrates how extensively purity concerns pervaded daily life.
5. The verb *peripatousin* ('walk') is a metaphor for conduct or lifestyle — 'why do your disciples not live according to...' The question holds Jesus responsible for his disciples' behavior, as in 2:24. The phrase 'tradition of the elders' places oral tradition on par with Scripture — precisely the equation Jesus will challenge.
6. Jesus opens with a devastating quotation from Isaiah 29:13, applying it directly to his questioners. The word *hypokritēs* ('hypocrite') originally meant a stage actor — one who wears a mask and plays a role. Jesus accuses them of performing religion without genuine devotion. The quote comes from the Septuagint, which differs slightly from the Hebrew text of Isaiah.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 29:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The word *matēn* ('in vain, to no purpose, uselessly') declares their worship empty and ineffective. The core accusation: human traditions (*entalmata anthrōpōn*) have been elevated to the status of divine teaching (*didaskalias*). The verse strikes at the heart of the Pharisaic project of building a 'fence around the Torah' — Jesus sees the fence as replacing the Torah.

8. The contrast is stark: *aphentes* ('abandoning, leaving behind, forsaking') the commandment of God versus *krateite* ('holding fast, gripping, clinging to') human tradition. The verb *kratein* ('to hold, grip') implies a tight, determined grasp. They cling to tradition while letting go of God's actual command.
9. The adverb *kalōs* ('well, skillfully, finely') is biting sarcasm — 'how expertly you reject God's command.' The verb *atheteite* ('set aside, nullify, reject') is a legal term for annulling a contract or agreement. Jesus moves from a general critique (vv. 6-8) to a specific example (vv. 10-13).
10. Jesus cites two commandments: Exodus 20:12 (the fifth commandment) and Exodus 21:17. Together they establish the inviolable obligation of children to care for and respect their parents. The phrase *thanatō teleutatō* ('let him surely die, let him die the death') is an emphatic death sentence using the cognate dative construction from the Septuagint.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 20:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 21:17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Aramaic word *korban* (from the Hebrew *qorban*, meaning 'offering, gift dedicated to God') refers to a vow dedicating money or property to the temple. Mark translates it for his Gentile readers: *ho estin dōron* ('which is, a gift'). The practice Jesus critiques allowed a person to declare assets 'Corban' and thereby exempt them from being used to support aging parents — technically fulfilling a religious vow while violating the commandment to honor father and mother.
12. The verb *aphiete* ('you allow, permit') indicates that the religious authorities enforced the Corban vow even against the person's later desire to help their parents. Once declared, the vow was considered binding — tradition trumped the commandment. The irony: a supposedly pious act (vowing to God) is used to evade a clear divine command (caring for parents).
13. The verb *akyrountes* ('nullifying, invalidating, rendering void') is a legal term for canceling a valid document. The 'word of God' (*ton logon tou theou*) — the Torah itself — is voided by human tradition. The final remark, 'and many similar things you do' (*paromoia toiauta polla poieite*), generalizes: the Corban example is one of many instances where tradition overrides Scripture.
14. Jesus shifts from the scribes and Pharisees to the general crowd (*ton ochlon*). The double imperative — *akousate* ('listen') and *synete* ('understand') — demands not just hearing but comprehension. What follows is a teaching for everyone, not just the religious elite.
15. This is a revolutionary principle: defilement is internal, not external. The verb *koinōsai* ('make common, defile, pollute') is the same word from verse 2. Jesus overturns the entire external purity system in a single sentence. The logic is spatial: nothing from outside (*exōthen*) entering (*eisporeuomenon*) can contaminate; only what exits (*ekporeuomena*) from within defiles. The implications for food laws, Gentile contact, and the whole purity system are enormous.
16. Verse 16 does not appear in the earliest and most reliable manuscripts and is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It is a scribal addition harmonizing with 4:9 and 4:23. Some later manuscripts and the KJV include it: 'If anyone has ears to hear, let them hear.' We follow the SBLGNT in omitting it.
17. The pattern from chapter 4 repeats: public parabolic teaching followed by private explanation to the disciples. The disciples' need for explanation underscores their persistent difficulty in understanding. They call Jesus's statement a 'parable' (*parabolē*), meaning they recognized it as figurative speech requiring interpretation.
18. Jesus's exasperation is evident: *kai hymeis* ('you also, even you') — even the insiders need explanation. The adjective *asynetoi* ('without understanding, senseless') is blunt. Jesus repeats his principle and now explains the physiological reason why external food cannot defile spiritually.
19. Jesus's argument is straightforward: food enters the stomach (*koilia*), not the heart (*kardia*), and exits through the digestive system into the sewer (*aphedrōna*, 'latrine, drain'). The heart in biblical anthropology is the seat of moral and spiritual life. The parenthetical comment *katharizōn panta ta brōmata* can be read as the subject being Jesus ('he declared all foods clean') or as the process of digestion ('purifying all foods'). Most modern translations follow the former reading, understanding this as Mark's theological commentary declaring the end of kosher food laws. This is one of the most consequential editorial comments in the New Testament.
20. Jesus returns to the positive side of his principle: defilement originates from within. The repeated emphasis on what 'comes out' (*ekporeuomenon*) prepares for the vice list that follows, which catalogs the internal sources of true defilement.
21. The heart (*kardia*) is the source of all moral contamination. The list begins with *dialogismoi hoi kakoi* ('evil thoughts, wicked deliberations') as the root, then specifies manifestations. The word *porneiai* ('sexual immorality') covers all forms of sexual wrongdoing, broader than just adultery or prostitution. The list has twelve items, possibly echoing the twelve sons/tribes or simply providing a comprehensive catalog.
22. The list moves from plural actions (sexual immorality, theft, murder, adultery — things done) to singular dispositions (greed, wickedness, deceit — character traits). The 'evil eye' (*ophthalmos ponēros*) is a Semitic idiom for envy or stinginess. The word *aselgeia* ('sensuality, debauchery, licentiousness') refers to unrestrained self-indulgence. *Aphrosynē* ('foolishness') in biblical wisdom literature is not intellectual deficiency but moral and spiritual blindness — the refusal to acknowledge God.
23. The summary restates the principle: *panta tauta ta ponēra esōthen ekporeuetai* ('all these evil things come from within'). The argument is complete: true defilement is moral, not ritual; internal, not external. This teaching dismantles the entire system of external purity that the Pharisees' question

presupposed.

24. Jesus travels into unambiguously Gentile territory — Tyre was a Phoenician coastal city. The SBLGNT reads 'Tyre' only; 'and Sidon' appears in later manuscripts. His desire for anonymity (*oudena ēthelen gnōnai*, 'he wanted no one to know') again fails — as in 1:45, his reputation precedes him. The timing is significant: after declaring all foods clean and teaching that external purity does not matter, Jesus crosses into the unclean Gentile world.
25. The word *euthys* ('immediately') drives the narrative. The diminutive *thygatrion* ('little daughter') conveys the mother's tenderness. The woman's prostration (*prosepesen*, 'fell before') indicates desperate supplication. An unclean spirit in a Gentile girl — the encounter concentrates every purity boundary that Jesus has been challenging.
26. Mark provides a double identification: *Hellēnis* ('Greek' — culturally Hellenistic, i.e., pagan) and *Syrophoinikissa* ('Syrophoenician' — ethnically from the Phoenician region of Syria, distinguished from Libyphoenicians of North Africa). The imperfect *ērōta* ('kept asking') indicates persistent, repeated pleading.
27. This is one of the most debated sayings in the Gospels. The 'children' (*tekna*) represent Israel; the 'dogs' (*kynaria*, diminutive — 'little dogs, house dogs,' not wild street dogs) represent Gentiles. The word 'first' (*prōton*) is crucial to Mark — it implies a sequence, not an exclusion: Israel first, then Gentiles. The diminutive *kynaria* softens the harshness somewhat — these are household pets, not scavenging strays. Some interpret Jesus as testing the woman's faith; others see him articulating the salvation-historical priority of Israel that the woman then reframes.
28. The woman does not reject Jesus's metaphor but brilliantly extends it: she accepts the priority of the children but argues that feeding the dogs does not require depriving the children — crumbs fall naturally from the table while the children eat. Her response demonstrates both humility (she does not claim to be a child at the table) and bold faith (she insists that Jesus's power is so abundant that even the overflow is sufficient). She is the only person in Mark who outargues Jesus.
29. Jesus commends her *logos* ('word, saying, argument') — it is the quality of her faith as expressed in her reply that moves him. The perfect *exelēlythen* ('has gone out') indicates the exorcism is already accomplished at a distance — Jesus does not go to the house, touch the girl, or speak a word of command. The healing is performed solely on the basis of the mother's faith expressed through clever, humble argumentation. This is the only distance healing of an exorcism in the Synoptics.
30. The perfect participles — *beblēmenon* ('lying, thrown/placed') and *exelēluthos* ('having gone out') — describe the completed states the woman finds. The child is at rest on the bed (no longer convulsing or disturbed), and the demon has departed. The scene is quiet and domestic — a sharp contrast to the violent Gerasene exorcism. Faith, not spectacle, has been the instrument of deliverance.
31. The itinerary is geographically circuitous: north from Tyre to Sidon, then southeast through the Decapolis to the Sea of Galilee — a long loop through predominantly Gentile territory. This extended journey through Gentile lands follows naturally from the principle that what defiles comes from within, not from external contact. Jesus is enacting the boundary-crossing his teaching authorized.
32. The word *mogilalon* ('having difficulty speaking, speaking with impediment') appears only here in the New Testament and only once in the Septuagint — in Isaiah 35:6 ('then the tongue of the mute will shout for joy'). Mark's use of this rare word signals that Jesus is fulfilling Isaiah's messianic prophecy. The man's condition — deaf and nearly mute — represents complete communicative isolation.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 35:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. Jesus's healing method here is unusually physical and elaborate. He takes the man aside privately (*kat' idian*) — perhaps because the man cannot hear verbal instructions and needs physical communication. The fingers in the ears and spitting on the tongue are symbolic actions directed at the organs of hearing and speech. Saliva was believed to have healing properties in the ancient world, but Jesus's use of it appears to be a sign-act communicating what he is about to do to a man who cannot hear words.
34. The sigh (*estenaxen*) expresses deep emotion — compassion for the man's suffering, or the burden of confronting a broken world, or the spiritual effort of the healing act. The Aramaic *ephphatha* (from the root *p-t-ch*, 'to open') is another instance of Mark preserving Jesus's actual spoken words. The translation for Gentile readers — *dianoichthēti* ('be opened, be completely opened') — uses a compound verb intensifying the opening. The single word commands the opening of both ears and mouth.
35. The healing is instant (*eutheōs*, variant of *euthys*). The word *desmos* ('bond, chain, binding') describes the tongue as having been tied or bound — freed from whatever held it. The adverb *orthōs* ('correctly, plainly, clearly') indicates full, normal speech. The language of binding and release connects to the strong-man parable (3:27) — Jesus releases captives from the bonds of affliction.
36. The messianic secret continues, and continues to fail. The comparative construction — 'the more he ordered, the more they proclaimed' (*hoson diesteileto, autoi mallon perisoteron ekērisson*) — creates a paradox: Jesus's commands produce the opposite effect. The verb *ekērysson* ('proclaimed, heralded') is the same word used for public proclamation of the gospel. The people cannot contain their witness.
37. The adverb *hyperperissōs* ('exceedingly, beyond all measure') is one of Mark's strongest intensifiers. The crowd's exclamation 'he has done everything well' (*kalōs panta pepoieken*) echoes Genesis 1:31 ('God saw everything that he had made, and it was very good') and Isaiah 35:5-6 ('then the eyes of the blind shall be opened, and the ears of the deaf unstopped'). The people unknowingly declare that Jesus is doing the work of the Creator and fulfilling messianic prophecy in Gentile territory.

37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 35:5-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

8

Summary: *Mark 8 is the pivotal chapter of the Gospel. It begins with a second feeding miracle (four thousand this time), followed by the Pharisees demanding a sign, Jesus warning about the 'leaven' of the Pharisees and Herod, and the disciples' persistent failure to understand. A two-stage healing of a blind man at Bethsaida symbolically mirrors the disciples' gradual (and still incomplete) sight. The chapter reaches its climax at Caesarea Philippi, where Peter confesses Jesus as the Christ — but immediately reveals that he misunderstands what that means. Jesus delivers the first passion prediction and teaches that discipleship requires taking up one's cross.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two-stage healing of the blind man (vv. 22-26) is unique to Mark and functions as a parable of discipleship: the disciples, like the blind man, see partially but not yet clearly. Peter's confession is the hinge of the entire Gospel — everything before leads to this moment, and everything after redefines what 'Christ' means through the lens of suffering. The first passion prediction (v. 31) introduces the three-fold pattern of death-and-resurrection predictions. The rebuke 'Get behind me, Satan' is among the most dramatic moments in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the two feeding miracles is debated — are they doublets of the same event or distinct occasions? Mark's text treats them as separate (8:19-20 distinguishes them), and the differences in numbers, vocabulary, and setting support this. Peter's confession uses 'Christ' (Christos) without further qualification — Mark may intend this as both correct and insufficient.*

Connections: *The feeding of four thousand in Gentile territory parallels the feeding of five thousand in Jewish territory, suggesting Jesus is 'bread' for all peoples. The blindness theme connects to Isaiah 42:18-19 and 35:5. Caesarea Philippi, built by Philip the Tetrarch at the source of the Jordan near a shrine to Pan, provides an ironic backdrop for confessing the true God. The cross-bearing teaching echoes the reality of Roman crucifixion that Mark's audience knew firsthand.*

¹In those days, when there was again a large crowd with nothing to eat, he called his disciples and said to them, ²"I have compassion on the crowd, because they have already been with me three days and have nothing to eat. ³If I send them home hungry, they will collapse on the way, and some of them have come from a great distance." ⁴His disciples answered him, "How can anyone find enough bread to feed these people here in this desolate place?" ⁵He asked them, "How many loaves do you have?" They said, "Seven." ⁶He directed the crowd to sit down on the ground. Then he took the seven loaves, gave thanks, broke them, and gave them to his disciples to distribute, and they set them before the crowd. ⁷They also had a few small fish, and after blessing them, he said that these also should be distributed. ⁸They ate and were satisfied, and they collected seven baskets full of leftover broken pieces. ⁹There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away. ¹⁰Immediately he got into the boat with his disciples and went to the district of Dalmanutha. ¹¹The Pharisees came out and began to argue with him, demanding from him a sign from heaven, to test him. ¹²He sighed deeply in his spirit and said, "Why does this generation seek a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation." ¹³He left them, got back into the boat, and crossed to the other side. ¹⁴They had forgotten to bring bread and had only one loaf with them in the boat. ¹⁵He warned them, saying, "Watch out — guard against the leaven of the Pharisees and the leaven of Herod." ¹⁶They began discussing with one another the fact that they had no bread. ¹⁷Aware of this, he said to them, "Why are you discussing the fact that you have no bread? Do you still not perceive or understand? Are your hearts hardened? ¹⁸Having eyes, do you not see? Having ears, do you not hear? And do you not remember? ¹⁹When I broke the five loaves for the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces did you collect?" They said to him, "Twelve." ²⁰"And when I broke the seven for the four thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces did you collect?" They said, "Seven." ²¹He said to them, "Do you still not understand?" ²²They

came to Bethsaida, and some people brought a blind man to him and begged him to touch him. ²³He took the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. After spitting on his eyes and laying his hands on him, he asked him, "Do you see anything?" ²⁴He looked up and said, "I see people, but they look like trees walking around." ²⁵Then Jesus laid his hands on his eyes again, and the man looked intently, and his sight was restored, and he saw everything clearly. ²⁶Jesus sent him home, saying, "Do not even go into the village." ²⁷Jesus went out with his disciples to the villages of Caesarea Philippi. On the way he asked his disciples, "Who do people say that I am?" ²⁸They told him, "John the Baptist; others say Elijah; and still others, one of the prophets." ²⁹Then he asked them, "But who do you say that I am?" Peter answered him, "You are the Christ." ³⁰He sternly ordered them to tell no one about him. ³¹And after three days rise again, he began to teach them, that the Son of Man must suffer many things, and be rejected of the elders, and of the chief priests, and scribes, and be killed. ³²He spoke this word openly. Then Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him. ³³But turning and looking at his disciples, he rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind me, Satan! For you are not thinking about the things of God, but the things of human beings." ³⁴He called the crowd together with his disciples and said to them, "If anyone wants to follow me, let them deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me. ³⁵For whoever wants to save their life will lose it, but whoever loses their life for my sake and the sake of the good news will save it. ³⁶For what does it profit a person to gain the whole world and forfeit their life? ³⁷For what can a person give in exchange for their life? ³⁸For whoever is ashamed of me and of my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will also be ashamed of them when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *en ekeinai tais hēmerais* ('in those days') is a general temporal marker connecting this to Jesus's extended ministry in Gentile territory (Decapolis, 7:31). The word *palin* ('again') signals a parallel to the first feeding. This time Jesus takes the initiative rather than the disciples.
2. The verb *splanchnizomai* ('I have compassion, my gut is moved') is the same visceral compassion from 1:41 and 6:34. The three days (*hēmerai treis*) indicates the crowd's extraordinary persistence — they have stayed with Jesus for three days in a remote area without adequate food. This detail also foreshadows the 'three days' of the passion predictions.
3. The verb *eklythēsontai* ('will give out, collapse, become faint') describes physical exhaustion from hunger and travel. The note that some came 'from a great distance' (*apo makrothen*) may hint at the Gentile composition of the crowd — they have come from far away, perhaps symbolically representing the nations drawn to Israel's God.
4. The disciples' question is astonishing given that they witnessed the feeding of the five thousand. Their inability to connect that experience to this situation is precisely the 'hardness of heart' Mark identified in 6:52. The word *erēmia* ('wilderness, desolate place') evokes the Exodus feeding narratives. Their question *pothen* ('from where?') echoes Israel's complaint in the wilderness (Numbers 11:13).
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 11:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The number seven may carry symbolic weight — seven often represents completeness or universality in biblical numerology. Some interpreters see the five loaves of the first feeding as representing the five books of Torah (for the Jewish crowd) and seven as representing the completeness of God's provision for all nations (for the Gentile crowd).
6. The verb *eucharistēsas* ('having given thanks') differs from *eulogēsen* ('blessed') used in the first feeding (6:41). Both are standard Jewish meal blessings, but *eucharistēsas* became the technical term for the Lord's Supper (the 'Eucharist'). The same four-action pattern appears: taking, thanking, breaking, giving.
7. The diminutive *ichthydia* ('small fish') and the adjective *oliga* ('few') emphasize the meagreness of the supply. The fish receive their own separate blessing (*eulogēsas*), suggesting a careful, deliberate process. The verb *paratihenai* ('to set before, to serve') places the disciples in the role of servers at a divine banquet.
8. The word *spyridas* ('baskets') differs from the *kophinous* ('wicker baskets') of the first feeding. The *spyris* was a large rope basket, possibly large enough to hold a person (cf. Acts 9:25, where Paul is lowered in a *spyris*). Seven baskets from seven loaves — the surplus matches the initial supply, demonstrating abundance. The readers are meant to compare: twelve baskets from five loaves in the first feeding, seven from seven here.
9. The number four thousand (*tetrakischilioi*) is smaller than the first feeding's five thousand. The word 'about' (*hōs*) indicates an approximation. Jesus dismisses (*apelysen*) the crowd — the same verb used in 6:36 where the disciples wanted to dismiss the first crowd.
10. *Dalmanutha* is mentioned only in Mark and its location is uncertain — Matthew's parallel (15:39) reads 'Magadan' (or 'Magdala'). It was apparently on the western shore of the Sea of Galilee. The word *euthys* ('immediately') again drives the narrative pace.

11. The verb *syzetein* ('to argue, debate, dispute') indicates hostile engagement. The demand for a *sêmeion apo tou ouranou* ('sign from heaven') means a cosmic, unmistakable divine authentication — something beyond the healings and exorcisms they could attribute to other sources. The participle *peirazontes* ('testing') is the same word used for Satan's testing in 1:13; the Pharisees are aligned with the tempter.
12. The verb *anastenaxas* ('sighed deeply, groaned') is intensified with the prefix *ana-* and describes profound emotional distress. The phrase *ei dothēsetai* ('if a sign will be given') is a Hebrew oath formula — literally 'if [such a thing happens, may God punish me]' — meaning emphatically 'no sign will be given.' Mark's Jesus gives no sign at all; Matthew 12:39 adds 'except the sign of Jonah.' The word *genea* ('generation') implies not just the contemporaries but a type — a faithless generation that demands proof instead of responding in faith.
13. The abrupt departure — *apheis autous* ('leaving them behind') — reflects Jesus's frustration. He does not continue the argument but withdraws. The crossing to 'the other side' (*eis to peran*) continues the pattern of back-and-forth movement across the sea.
14. The detail that they forgot bread is both a narrative setup and deeply ironic — they are with the one who has just twice multiplied bread miraculously and they worry about having only one loaf. The 'one loaf' (*hena arton*) may symbolically refer to Jesus himself, the true bread, though Mark does not make this explicit.
15. Leaven (*zymē*) is used metaphorically for a pervasive, corrupting influence — a small amount of yeast transforms an entire batch of dough. The 'leaven of the Pharisees' is their demand for signs and their replacement of God's word with human tradition. The 'leaven of Herod' may refer to political power, worldly ambition, or moral compromise. Mark mentions Herod where Matthew 16:6 has 'Sadducees.' The disciples will completely miss the point.
16. The disciples interpret Jesus's metaphorical warning literally — they think he is talking about actual bread. The verb *dielogizonto* ('were reasoning, deliberating, arguing among themselves') is the same word used for the scribes' hostile reasoning in 2:6, 8. The irony is thick: they worry about bread in the presence of the one who fed thousands.
17. Jesus fires a barrage of questions — five in rapid succession (vv. 17-21) — each one more pointed than the last. The word *pepōrōmenēn* ('hardened, calcified, petrified') for their hearts echoes 6:52 and 3:5 (the Pharisees). Jesus is saying that his own disciples have the same spiritual condition as his opponents. The phrase *oupō* ('not yet') implies an expected progression that has stalled.
18. This echoes Jeremiah 5:21 ('Hear this, O foolish and senseless people, who have eyes but do not see, who have ears but do not hear') and Ezekiel 12:2. Jesus places his disciples in the category of those prophetically condemned for spiritual blindness and deafness. The question 'do you not remember?' (*ou mnēmoneuete*) shifts from perception to memory — they have the data but fail to interpret it.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 5:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 12:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Jesus catechizes the disciples like a teacher testing students. The word *kophinous* ('wicker baskets') is the distinctive basket type from the first feeding. The answer 'twelve' is correct — they remember the facts but miss their significance.
20. The word *spyridōn* ('large baskets') is the distinctive type from the second feeding. Again the disciples answer correctly: seven. The two feedings are explicitly distinguished — five/five thousand/twelve and seven/four thousand/seven — confirming they are separate events.
21. The final question *oupō syniete* ('do you not yet understand?') is left without an answer — the reader is left to supply it. The 'not yet' preserves hope that understanding will come, but the disciples remain blind. This sets the stage for the blind man of Bethsaida (vv. 22-26), whose gradual healing mirrors the disciples' gradual perception.
22. Bethsaida ('house of fishing') was a town at the north end of the Sea of Galilee. The pattern of others bringing the afflicted person to Jesus recurs throughout Mark (cf. 2:3, 7:32). The request to 'touch' (*hapsētai*) the blind man parallels the deaf man's story in 7:32-37. This healing — unique to Mark — is the only miracle in the Gospels that happens in stages.
23. As with the deaf man (7:33), Jesus takes the man aside privately, uses saliva, and lays on hands. The question 'do you see anything?' (*ei ti blepeis*) is extraordinary — Jesus asks about the result of his healing, something he never does elsewhere. The two-stage healing is unique and appears deliberate, not because of any limitation in Jesus's power but to serve a narrative-theological purpose.
24. The man's response describes partial sight — he can see shapes and movement but cannot distinguish people clearly. The comparison of people to trees suggests blurred, indistinct vision. This intermediate stage of sight mirrors the disciples' condition after the feeding miracles: they have some perception but cannot see clearly who Jesus is.
25. Three verbs describe the progression: *dieblpesen* ('he looked through, saw clearly' — a sudden piercing clarity), *apekatestē* ('was restored' — returned to full function), and *eneblepen tēlaugōs hapanta* ('was seeing everything at a distance clearly'). The adverb *tēlaugōs* ('clearly, distinctly, far-shiningly') indicates not just restoration but enhanced vision. The two-stage healing enacts what will happen to the disciples: Peter's confession (v. 29) is partial sight; full vision awaits the resurrection.
26. The command to avoid the village continues the messianic secret — the healing is not to be publicized. The SBLGNT has the shorter reading 'do not even go into the village' (*mēde eis tēn kōmēn eiselthēs*) without the additional prohibition about telling anyone, which appears in later manuscripts.

27. Caesarea Philippi (modern Banias) was located at the northern extreme of Jewish territory, near the sources of the Jordan River, at the foot of Mount Hermon. Philip the Tetrarch had rebuilt it and named it after Caesar and himself. The region was marked by pagan shrines, including a grotto dedicated to Pan. Against this backdrop of pagan worship, Jesus asks the central question of the Gospel. The phrase *en tē hodō* ('on the way') makes this a traveling conversation — the 'way' becomes a metaphor for discipleship in Mark.
28. These are the same three categories from 6:14-15 — resurrected John, returned Elijah, or a new prophet. All three recognize Jesus as a prophetic figure but none identifies him as the Messiah. Public opinion sees Jesus through the categories of the past rather than as something new.
29. The emphatic *hymeis de* ('but you') contrasts the disciples' answer with popular opinion. Peter speaks as the group's representative. His confession — *sy ei ho Christos* ('you are the Christ/Messiah') — is the correct answer to the question posed in 1:1. Mark's version is unadorned — no 'Son of the living God' (Matthew 16:16), no commendation. The confession is right but, as the next verses will show, Peter's understanding of what 'Christ' means is dangerously wrong.
30. The verb *epetimēsen* ('sternly warned, rebuked') is the same word used for rebuking demons (1:25) and the wind (4:39). The intensity suggests that premature proclamation of a misunderstood messiahship would be dangerous. Before anyone can proclaim Jesus as Christ, they must learn that the Christ must suffer — the teaching that follows immediately.
31. This is the first of three passion predictions (cf. 9:31, 10:33-34), each more detailed than the last. The word *dei* ('it is necessary, must') indicates divine necessity — this is not mere prediction but theological imperative. The title 'Son of Man' replaces 'Christ,' redefining messiahship through Daniel 7's suffering and vindicated figure. The three groups — elders, chief priests, and scribes — constitute the Sanhedrin, Israel's supreme council. The phrase *meta treis hēmeras* ('after three days') is Mark's way of expressing what other Gospels call 'on the third day.'
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The word *parrēsia* ('openly, plainly, boldly, without concealment') contrasts with the messianic secrecy — for the first time, Jesus speaks directly about his fate rather than in parables. The verb *proslabomenos* ('taking aside, drawing to himself') and *epitiman* ('to rebuke') are astonishing: Peter presumes to correct Jesus, using the same verb (*epitimaō*) that Jesus uses against demons. The one who just confessed Jesus as Christ now opposes Christ's self-defined mission.
33. Jesus turns to face the disciples — the rebuke is public, not private, because the temptation Peter represents threatens the entire group. Calling Peter 'Satan' (*Satana*) identifies Peter's opposition to suffering as the same temptation Jesus faced in the wilderness (1:13). The verb *phroneis* ('think, set your mind on, have a mindset toward') goes deeper than a single thought — it describes an entire orientation. Peter's mind is set on human values (power, victory, avoidance of suffering) rather than God's purposes (redemption through suffering).
34. Jesus expands the audience from the Twelve to the crowd — this teaching is for all, not just apostles. Three imperatives define discipleship: *aparnēsasthō heauton* ('let them deny themselves' — renounce self as the center of life), *aratō ton stauron autou* ('let them take up their cross' — accept the possibility of execution), and *akolouthēitō moi* ('let them follow me' — walk the same path). For Mark's Roman audience, 'taking up a cross' was not a metaphor — they had seen crucifixion victims carrying their crossbeams through the streets.
35. The word *psychē* means both 'life' (physical existence) and 'soul/self' (deeper identity). The paradox works on both levels: clinging to physical safety leads to spiritual loss; risking physical life for Jesus leads to ultimate salvation. The phrase *heneken emou kai tou euangeliou* ('for my sake and the gospel's') uniquely yokes Jesus's person to the message — the two are inseparable.
36. The commercial language — *ōphelei* ('profit, benefit'), *kerdēsai* ('gain'), *zēmiōthēnai* ('suffer loss, forfeit') — frames the question in terms of a cosmic cost-benefit analysis. The 'whole world' (*ton kosmon holon*) is the maximum possible gain; one's *psychē* is what is at stake. No amount of worldly acquisition can compensate for the loss of one's true self.
37. The word *antallagma* ('exchange, ransom price, equivalent') comes from commercial vocabulary — what could possibly serve as a buyback price for a forfeited soul? The implied answer: nothing. Once the *psychē* is lost, no transaction can recover it. This echoes Psalm 49:7-9 ('no one can redeem the life of another or give to God a ransom for them').
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 49:7-9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The verb *epaischynthē* ('is ashamed') describes the social pressure to distance oneself from Jesus — a very real temptation for Mark's audience facing persecution in Rome. The present generation is called *moichalidi* ('adulterous') — using the Old Testament prophetic image of Israel as an unfaithful spouse (Hosea 1-3). The Son of Man's future coming 'in the glory of his Father with the holy angels' draws on Daniel 7:13-14, where the Son of Man receives glory and dominion. The one who suffers now will be vindicated then.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Hosea 1-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:13-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

9

Summary: *Mark 9 moves from the Transfiguration on the mountain — where Jesus is revealed in divine glory alongside Moses and Elijah — to the valley below, where a desperate father brings his demon-possessed son to disciples who cannot heal him. Jesus delivers the boy and offers the second passion prediction. The chapter continues with teachings on true greatness (the least is the greatest), radical inclusion ('whoever is not against us is for us'), and radical self-discipline (the 'cutting off' sayings about sin). The chapter's arc moves from heavenly glory to earthly failure to ethical demand.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Transfiguration is the only episode in Mark where Jesus's divine identity is openly displayed before the resurrection. The voice from the cloud — 'This is my beloved Son; listen to him' — repeats the baptismal declaration (1:11) but now addresses the disciples directly. The failed exorcism below the mountain (vv. 14-29) creates a dramatic contrast between the glory above and the struggle below. The father's cry — 'I believe; help my unbelief!' (v. 24) — is one of the most honest prayers in Scripture.*

Translation Friction: *The saying 'this kind cannot come out except by prayer' (v. 29) raises questions about exorcism methodology. Some manuscripts add 'and fasting,' but the SBLGNT omits it. The 'salt' sayings at the end of the chapter (vv. 49-50) are notoriously difficult to interpret, and their connection to the preceding material is unclear. We render the Greek as given and address the interpretive challenges in the notes.*

Connections: *The Transfiguration echoes Moses on Sinai (Exodus 24, 34) — the mountain, the cloud, the voice, the shining appearance, the six days. Elijah's presence connects to Malachi 4:5-6 and the expected return of Elijah before the Day of the Lord. The second passion prediction (v. 31) advances the trajectory toward Jerusalem. The teaching on greatness (vv. 33-37) inverts all conventional honor systems and anticipates Jesus's own self-offering.*

¹And he said to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some standing here who will not taste death until they see the kingdom of God having come in power." ²After six days Jesus took Peter, James, and John and led them up a high mountain by themselves, alone. And he was transfigured before them, ³His raiment became gleaming, exceeding brilliant as snow. So as no fuller on earth can white them. ⁴And Elijah appeared to them along with Moses, and they were talking with Jesus. ⁵Then Peter said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters — one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah." ⁶For he did not know what to say, because they were terrified. ⁷Then a cloud came, overshadowing them, and a voice came from the cloud: "This is my beloved Son — listen to him." ⁸Suddenly, looking around, they no longer saw anyone with them but Jesus alone. ⁹As they were coming down the mountain, he ordered them to tell no one what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead. ¹⁰They kept the matter to themselves, questioning what this "rising from the dead" meant. ¹¹And they asked him, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?" ¹²He said to them, "Elijah does come first and restores all things. And how is it written of the Son of Man that he should suffer many things and be treated with contempt? ¹³But I tell you that Elijah has come, and they did to him whatever they wished, just as it is written about him." ¹⁴When they came to the other disciples, they saw a great crowd around them and scribes arguing with them. ¹⁵Immediately the whole crowd, when they saw him, were greatly amazed and ran to greet him. ¹⁶He asked them, "What are you arguing about with them?" ¹⁷Someone from the crowd answered him, "Teacher, I brought my son to you, for he has a spirit that makes him mute. ¹⁸Whenever it seizes him, it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth and grinds his teeth and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to cast it out, but they could not." ¹⁹He answered them, "O faithless generation, how long am I to be with you? How long am I to bear with you? Bring him to me." ²⁰They brought the boy to him. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw the boy into convulsions, and he fell on the ground and rolled around, foaming at the mouth. ²¹Jesus asked his father, "How long has this been happening to him?" He said, "From childhood. ²²It has often thrown him into fire and into water to destroy him. But if you can do anything, have compassion on us and help us." ²³Jesus said to him, "'If you can!' All things are possible for the one who believes." ²⁴Immediately the father of the child cried out, "I

believe — help my unbelief!" ²⁵When Jesus saw that a crowd was rapidly gathering, he rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, "You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him and never enter him again." ²⁶After crying out and convulsing him violently, it came out. The boy became like a corpse, so that most of them said, "He is dead." ²⁷But Jesus took him by the hand and raised him up, and he stood. ²⁸After he had gone indoors, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could we not cast it out?" ²⁹He said to them, "This kind cannot come out by anything except prayer." ³⁰They went out from there and passed through Galilee. He did not want anyone to know, ³¹Since he taught his followers, and stated to them, the Son of Man is delivered into the hands of men, then they will kill him. And following that he is killed, he will rise the third day. ³²But they did not understand the saying, and they were afraid to ask him. ³³They came to Capernaum. When he was in the house, he asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?" ³⁴But they were silent, for on the way they had argued with one another about who was the greatest. ³⁵He sat down, called the twelve, and said to them, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all." ³⁶Taking a child, he set him in the middle of them. Then taking him in his arms, he said to them, ³⁷"Whoever receives one such child in my name receives me, and whoever receives me receives not me but the one who sent me." ³⁸John said to him, "Teacher, we saw someone casting out demons in your name, and we tried to stop him because he was not following us." ³⁹But Jesus said, "Do not stop him, for no one who does a mighty work in my name will be able soon afterward to speak evil of me. ⁴⁰For whoever is not against us is for us. ⁴¹For truly I say to you, whoever gives you a cup of water to drink because you belong to Christ will by no means lose his reward. ⁴²"Whoever causes one of these little ones who believe in me to stumble, it would be better for him if a great millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. ⁴³If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter life crippled than with two hands to go into Gehenna, into the unquenchable fire. ⁴⁵And if your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter life lame than with two feet to be thrown into Gehenna. ⁴⁷And if your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out. It is better for you to enter the kingdom of God with one eye than with two eyes to be thrown into Gehenna, ⁴⁸Where their decay dieth not, and the fire is not put out. ⁴⁹For every one will be refined by fire. ⁵⁰Salt is good, but if the salt loses its saltiness, how will you make it salty again? Have salt in yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This saying is linked to 8:38 and serves as a transition to the Transfiguration. The phrase 'taste death' (geusōntai thanatou) is a Semitic idiom meaning 'experience death.' The perfect participle elēlythuiān ('having come') indicates a completed arrival, not a gradual process. The referent — what 'seeing the kingdom come in power' means — is debated: the Transfiguration, the resurrection, Pentecost, or the destruction of Jerusalem have all been proposed.
2. The 'six days' may echo Exodus 24:16, where the cloud covered Sinai for six days before God spoke to Moses on the seventh. Peter, James, and John form Jesus's inner circle (cf. 5:37, 14:33). The verb metamorphōthē ('was transfigured, was transformed') indicates a change of form (morphē), not merely appearance — the same root Paul uses in Romans 12:2 and 2 Corinthians 3:18.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 24:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Mark's description is earthy and vivid — he compares the supernatural brilliance to a launderer's best work and declares it surpassed. The word gnaphēus ('fuller, launderer, cloth-bleacher') is a working-class trade term. The whiteness signals heavenly origin (cf. Daniel 7:9, where the Ancient of Days wears white garments).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Mark names Elijah first (Matthew and Luke name Moses first), perhaps reflecting Mark's sustained interest in the Elijah-John the Baptist connection. Moses represents the Law, Elijah the Prophets — the entire Old Testament bears witness to Jesus. The content of their conversation is not recorded in Mark (Luke 9:31 says they discussed Jesus's 'departure' in Jerusalem).
5. Peter addresses Jesus as 'Rabbi' (teacher) — a title that seems inadequate given what he is witnessing. The proposal to build three skēnas ('tents, shelters, tabernacles') may reflect the Feast of Tabernacles, when Israel dwelt in booths commemorating the wilderness wandering. Peter's impulse is to prolong the mountaintop experience and to place Jesus on an equal footing with Moses and Elijah — both errors the divine voice will correct.
6. Mark's candid editorial comment explains Peter's remark: he spoke from terror (ekphoboi, 'terrified, struck with fear'), not from understanding. This is a theophanic response — the fear that grips humans in the presence of the divine (cf. Exodus 3:6, Isaiah 6:5).

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 6:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The cloud (*nephelē*) is the *shekinah* — the glory-cloud of God's presence that filled the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34-35) and the temple (1 Kings 8:10-11). The voice from the cloud repeats the baptismal declaration (1:11) with a crucial change: 'This is my Son' (third person, addressed to the disciples) replaces 'You are my Son' (second person, addressed to Jesus). The command 'listen to him' (*akouete autou*) echoes Deuteronomy 18:15, where Moses promises a prophet like himself whom the people must obey.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 40:34-35. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 8:10-11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 18:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The vision ends abruptly. Moses and Elijah have vanished; only Jesus remains. The theological point is clear: the Law and the Prophets have given way to Jesus. He alone is the one to whom they must listen.
9. The messianic secret here has an explicit time limit: silence until the resurrection. This is the clearest indication that the secrecy is temporary and pedagogical — the Transfiguration cannot be properly understood until after the cross and resurrection provide the interpretive framework.
10. The disciples obeyed the command to silence but were puzzled by the phrase 'rising from the dead.' While Jews believed in a general resurrection at the end of the age (cf. Daniel 12:2), the idea of a single individual rising before the general resurrection was unprecedented.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The appearance of Elijah on the mountain prompted the question. The scribal teaching was based on Malachi 4:5-6: 'I will send you Elijah the prophet before the great and terrible day of the LORD.' If Elijah must come first to restore all things, why is the Son of Man speaking of suffering?
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 4:5-6:. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. Jesus affirms the Elijah tradition but adds a counter-question: if Scripture speaks of Elijah's restoration, it also speaks of the Son of Man's suffering. The verb *exoudenēthē* ('treated with contempt, despised, counted as nothing') echoes Isaiah 53:3 and Psalm 22:6.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 22:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The reference is to John the Baptist, whose execution by Herod was narrated in 6:14-29. The pattern Jesus establishes is clear: Elijah came and was mistreated; the Son of Man will come and be mistreated. The phrase 'as it is written about him' is difficult — no Old Testament text explicitly describes Elijah being mistreated, though 1 Kings 19:2 and 19:10 recount threats against his life.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The descent from the mountain of glory to a scene of confusion and controversy mirrors Moses's descent from Sinai to find Israel's golden calf apostasy (Exodus 32). The nine disciples left behind are overwhelmed.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The crowd's amazement (*exethambēthēsan*) at seeing Jesus may suggest that some residual glory from the Transfiguration lingered on his face, as with Moses in Exodus 34:29-30, though Mark does not make this explicit.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 34:29-30 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Jesus addresses either the crowd or the scribes (the pronoun is ambiguous), asking about the dispute with the disciples.
17. The father addresses Jesus as 'Teacher' (*Didaskale*). The spirit is called *alalon* ('mute, speechless') — it has robbed the boy of speech. The description that follows (v. 18) also suggests seizure activity, leading many to identify epilepsy as the physical manifestation of the spiritual affliction.
18. The symptoms described — seizures, foaming, teeth-grinding, rigidity (*xērainetai*, literally 'dries up, withers, becomes stiff') — are consistent with severe epileptic episodes. The disciples' inability to cast out this spirit sets up the teaching in verse 29 about prayer.

19. Jesus's exasperation echoes Moses's frustration with Israel in the wilderness (Numbers 14:27, Deuteronomy 32:5, 20). The address 'faithless generation' (*genea apistos*) encompasses not just the disciples but the entire unbelieving context. The double question — 'how long... how long...' — expresses both impatience and poignant awareness of limited time.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 14:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 32:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The spirit reacts violently to Jesus's presence — a pattern in Mark's exorcism accounts (1:26, 5:6-7). The verb *synesparaxen* ('convulsed violently, tore') describes the physical violence of the seizure. The scene is raw and distressing.
21. Jesus's question is not for information-gathering (as if he needed it) but to draw out the father's faith and to reveal the depth of the suffering. The answer 'from childhood' (*ek paidiothen*) indicates years of torment.
22. The spirit is actively trying to kill the boy — the fires and waters are not accidental but purposeful attempts at destruction. The father's 'if you can' (*ei ti dynē*) reveals honest doubt after the disciples' failure. His plea is for 'us' (*hēmas*), not just the boy — the whole family suffers.
23. Jesus throws the father's words back at him with the quotation 'If you can!' (to *Ei dynē*) — the issue is not Jesus's ability but the father's faith. The declaration 'all things are possible for the one who believes' (*panta dynata tō pisteuonti*) locates the power in faith's connection to God, not in faith as a psychological force.
24. This is one of the most psychologically honest prayers in Scripture. The father simultaneously affirms faith and confesses its inadequacy. He does not pretend to more faith than he has, nor does he surrender to doubt. The paradox — believing and unbelieving at once — captures the human condition before God. The SBLGNT does not include 'with tears' (*meta dakryōn*), found in some manuscripts.
25. Jesus acts quickly before the crowd grows larger — consistent with his pattern of avoiding public spectacle. The emphatic pronoun *egō* ('I myself') asserts personal authority over the spirit. The command 'never enter him again' (*mēketi eiselhthēs eis auton*) goes beyond exorcism to permanent prohibition, ensuring the boy's lasting freedom.
26. The departure of the spirit is violent — a final act of destruction on the way out. The boy's apparent death creates a narrative of resurrection: he appears dead, then Jesus raises him. This prefigures Jesus's own death and resurrection.
27. The verb *egeiren* ('raised up') is the same word used for resurrection throughout the New Testament. The boy's raising prefigures the ultimate raising that Jesus has been predicting. The physical touch — taking the hand — echoes the raising of Jairus's daughter (5:41).
28. The private setting (*kat' idian*, 'privately') continues Mark's pattern of public ministry followed by private instruction. The disciples' question reveals their awareness of having received authority over unclean spirits (6:7) and their confusion at its failure.
29. The SBLGNT reads only 'prayer' (*proseuchē*) without 'and fasting' (*kai nēsteia*), which appears in later manuscripts. The point is that the disciples relied on their delegated authority as a technique rather than maintaining dependence on God through prayer. The word *genos* ('kind, type, class') suggests categories of spiritual opposition with varying degrees of resistance.
30. The desire for secrecy here serves the need for focused teaching: Jesus is preparing the disciples for what lies ahead in Jerusalem, and public ministry would be a distraction.
31. The second passion prediction is more concise than the first (8:31) but adds the detail of being 'delivered into the hands of men' (*paradidotai eis cheiras anthrōpōn*). The present tense *paradidotai* ('is being delivered') suggests the betrayal is already in process. The wordplay between 'Son of Man' (*huios tou anthrōpou*) and 'hands of men' (*cheiras anthrōpōn*) is deliberate — the Human One is handed over to humans.
32. After Peter's rebuke in 8:33, the disciples are now afraid to question Jesus about his passion predictions. The verb *ēgnōoun* ('they did not understand') is the imperfect of *agnōō* ('to be ignorant, to not comprehend') — their incomprehension was ongoing.
33. Capernaum was Jesus's base of operations in Galilee (cf. 1:21, 2:1). 'The house' (*tē oikia*) likely refers to Peter's house, used as a regular meeting place. Jesus's question draws out a confession the disciples are embarrassed to make.
34. Their silence reveals their shame. The irony is brutal: Jesus has just predicted his death, and the disciples are competing for rank. The question 'who is greatest' (*tis meizōn*) exposes the distance between Jesus's understanding of messiahship and theirs.
35. Sitting down (*kathisas*) is the posture of an authoritative teacher. The reversal is total: the one who wants to be first (*prōtos*) must become last (*eschatos*) and servant (*diakonos*). The word *diakonos* ('servant, one who serves at table') is not the word for slave (*doulos*) but for voluntary service — though Jesus will use *doulos* in 10:44.
36. The physical gesture — embracing the child (*enagkalisamenos*, 'having taken in his arms') — is tender and deliberate. In the ancient world, children had no social standing and were valued primarily as future adults. Jesus places a person of zero social status at the center of the community.
37. The chain of identification — child to Jesus to God — inverts the honor scale. To receive (*dexētai*, 'welcome, accept') the lowest is to receive the highest. The phrase 'in my name' (*epi tō onomati mou*) means 'for my sake, as my representative, on the basis of my authority.'
38. John's report introduces a question about boundaries: who has the right to act in Jesus's name? The disciples assumed that only those in their group had authority. The imperfect *ekōlyomen* ('we were trying to stop him') suggests repeated attempts.

39. Jesus's response is strikingly generous: effective use of his name is self-authenticating. The word *dynamis* ('mighty work, miracle, act of power') refers to the exorcism. The logic is practical: someone who experiences divine power through Jesus's name is unlikely to turn against him.
40. This principle of inclusion contrasts with the exclusionary version in Matthew 12:30 ('whoever is not with me is against me'). The two sayings address different situations: Matthew 12:30 confronts neutrality in the face of spiritual warfare; Mark 9:40 addresses overzealous boundary-drawing by the disciples.
41. The example descends to the smallest possible act of kindness — a cup of water. Even this minimal gesture, if motivated by allegiance to Christ, carries eternal significance. The phrase 'because you belong to Christ' (*hoti Christou este*) uses the genitive of possession.
42. The verb *skandalisē* ('cause to stumble, cause to fall into sin') gives us the English 'scandalize.' The 'little ones' (*mikrōn*) extends beyond children to include all vulnerable believers. The *mylos onikos* ('donkey-millstone') is the large upper millstone turned by a donkey, as opposed to the small hand-mill — a weight ensuring drowning. The image is deliberately extreme to convey the severity of leading others astray.
43. The hyperbolic language demands radical action against sin, not literal self-mutilation. 'Gehenna' (*geenna*) refers to the Valley of Hinnom south of Jerusalem, where child sacrifices were once offered (2 Kings 23:10) and which became a symbol of divine judgment. 'Unquenchable fire' (to *pyr* to *asbeston*) draws on Isaiah 66:24.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Kings 23:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 66:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Verse 44 is absent from the earliest and best manuscripts of Mark and is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It duplicates verse 48 and was likely added by scribes for symmetry. We follow the SBLGNT in omitting it while retaining the verse number for reference.
45. The pattern continues: hand, foot, eye — each body part represents a different avenue of sin (actions, paths taken, desires). The contrast between entering 'life' (*zōē*, eternal life with God) and being thrown into 'Gehenna' (judgment) frames existence as a binary choice.
46. Verse 46, like verse 44, is absent from the SBLGNT critical text and was likely added by scribes to create a refrain after each body-part saying. We follow the critical text in omitting it.
47. The final member of the triad uses 'kingdom of God' (*basileia tou theou*) where the previous two used 'life' (*zōē*), confirming that the two expressions are synonymous in this context. The eye represents desire and covetousness (cf. 7:22, 'evil eye').
48. Jesus quotes Isaiah 66:24, the final verse of Isaiah, which describes the fate of those who rebelled against God. The 'worm' (*skōlēx*) and 'fire' represent ongoing destruction. Whether this imagery describes eternal conscious torment or complete destruction has been debated throughout Christian history; the Greek text states the permanence of the agents of destruction.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 66:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. This is one of the most cryptic sayings in the Gospels. The connection between salt and fire may relate to the purifying function of both (Leviticus 2:13 required salt on every grain offering; fire tests and refines, cf. Malachi 3:2-3). The saying may mean that all disciples will undergo the refining fire of persecution and testing.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 2:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 3:2-3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. The chapter ends with a proverbial cluster around salt. Salt that becomes *analon* ('unsalty, tasteless') is worthless — a metaphor for discipleship that loses its distinctive character. The final command — 'be at peace with one another' (*eirēneuete en allēlois*) — returns to the dispute about greatness that opened this section (v. 34). The salt sayings bind together purification (v. 49), distinctiveness, and communal harmony.

10

Summary: Mark 10 records Jesus's journey from Galilee toward Jerusalem through the region beyond the Jordan. The chapter addresses marriage and divorce, the blessing of children, the encounter with a rich man who cannot part with his possessions, the third and most detailed passion prediction, the request of James and John for positions of honor, and the healing of blind Bartimaeus at Jericho. Each episode deepens the contrast between worldly values and kingdom values as Jesus moves steadily toward the cross.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rich man's encounter (vv. 17-27) contains Jesus's most direct teaching on wealth and the kingdom of God. The image of a camel passing through the eye of a needle is deliberately absurd — it is not softened by any appeal to narrow gates or rope-for-camel theories. The third passion prediction (vv. 33-34) is the most specific, naming the Gentiles and detailing mocking, spitting, flogging, and killing. Bartimaeus's healing (vv. 46-52) closes the journey section by restoring the sight that the disciples still lack — and Bartimaeus, unlike the healed blind man of 8:22-26, follows Jesus 'on the way' to Jerusalem.*

Translation Friction: *Jesus's teaching on divorce (vv. 2-12) has been interpreted variously across Christian traditions. We render the Greek as given: Jesus distinguishes between Moses's concession (Deuteronomy 24:1-4) and God's original intent (Genesis 1:27, 2:24). The 'exception clause' found in Matthew 19:9 is absent from Mark. The phrase 'for your hardness of heart' (pros tēn sklērokardian hymōn) is translated directly.*

Connections: *The divorce teaching connects to Genesis 1-2 (creation of male and female) and Deuteronomy 24 (certificate of divorce). The rich man episode echoes the Decalogue (Exodus 20:12-17). The third passion prediction fulfills Isaiah 50:6 (spitting and striking) and Isaiah 53 (the Suffering Servant). The 'ransom for many' saying (v. 45) is one of the clearest atonement statements in Mark, echoing Isaiah 53:10-12. Bartimaeus's cry 'Son of David' is the first public messianic acclamation in Mark.*

¹He got up and went from there to the region of Judea and beyond the Jordan, and crowds gathered around him again, and as was his custom, he taught them again. ²Pharisees came up and, to test him, asked, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife?" ³He answered them, "What did Moses command you?" ⁴They said, "Moses permitted a man to write a certificate of divorce and send her away." ⁵Jesus said to them, "Because of your hardness of heart he wrote you this commandment. ⁶But from the start of creation God created them as male and female. ⁷For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, ⁸Indeed, they twain will be one flesh — so then they are no more twain, but one flesh. ⁹Therefore what God has joined together, let no one separate." ¹⁰In the house, the disciples asked him again about this. ¹¹He said to them, "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery against her. ¹²And if she divorces her husband and marries another, she commits adultery." ¹³People were bringing children to him so that he might touch them, but the disciples rebuked them. ¹⁴When Jesus saw this, he was indignant and said to them, "Let the children come to me — do not hinder them, for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these. ¹⁵Truly I say to you, whoever does not receive the kingdom of God like a child will never enter it." ¹⁶And he took them in his arms and blessed them, laying his hands on them. ¹⁷As he was setting out on his journey, a man ran up and knelt before him and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?" ¹⁸Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone. ¹⁹You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, Do not commit adultery, Do not steal, Do not bear false witness, Do not defraud, Honor your father and mother.'" ²⁰He said to him, "Teacher, all these I have kept from my youth." ²¹Jesus, looking at him, loved him and said to him, "You lack one thing: go, sell everything you have and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me." ²²Disheartened by the word, he went away grieving, for he had many possessions. ²³Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, "How difficult it will be for those who have wealth to enter the kingdom of God!" ²⁴The disciples were amazed at his words. But Jesus said to them again, "Children, how difficult it is to enter the kingdom of God! ²⁵Than for a rich man to enter into god's kingdom, and it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. ²⁶They were exceedingly astonished and said to one another, "Then who can be saved?" ²⁷Jesus looked at them and said, "With man it is impossible, but not with God. For all things are possible with God." ²⁸Peter began to say to him, "Look, we have left everything and followed you." ²⁹Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or fields, for my sake and for the gospel's, ³⁰Yet he will accept an hundredfold now in this time, houses, and brothers and sisters, and sisters, and mothers, and children, and lands, with persecutions. And in the world to come eternal life. ³¹But many who are first will be last, and the last first." ³²They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was walking ahead of them. They were amazed, and those who followed were afraid. Taking the twelve aside again, he began to tell them what was about to happen to him: ³³"Look, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be delivered over to the chief priests and the scribes, and they will condemn him to death and deliver him over to the

Gentiles. ³⁴They will mock him, spit on him, flog him, and kill him. And after three days he will rise." ³⁵James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said to him, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask of you." ³⁶He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?" ³⁷They said to him, "Grant us to sit, one at your right hand and one at your left, in your glory." ³⁸Jesus said to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I drink, or to be baptized with the baptism with which I am baptized?" ³⁹They said to him, "We are able." Jesus said to them, "The cup that I drink you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you will be baptized. ⁴⁰But to sit at my right hand or at my left is not mine to grant, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared." ⁴¹When the ten heard this, they began to be indignant with James and John. ⁴²Jesus called them to him and said to them, "You know that those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles lord it over them, and their great ones exercise authority over them. ⁴³But it is not so among you. Instead, whoever wants to become great among you must be your servant, ⁴⁴Indeed, whosoever of you will be the chiefest, will be servant of all. ⁴⁵For even the Son of Man came not to be served but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many." ⁴⁶They came to Jericho. As he was leaving Jericho with his disciples and a large crowd, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, the son of Timaeus, was sitting by the roadside. ⁴⁷When he heard that it was Jesus of Nazareth, he began to cry out, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!" ⁴⁸Many rebuked him, telling him to be silent. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!" ⁴⁹Jesus stopped and said, "Call him." They called the blind man, saying to him, "Take heart! Get up, he is calling you." ⁵⁰Throwing off his cloak, he sprang up and came to Jesus. ⁵¹Jesus said to him, "What do you want me to do for you?" The blind man said to him, "Rabboni, let me recover my sight." ⁵²Jesus said to him, "Go, your faith has made you well." Immediately he recovered his sight and followed him on the way.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The geographical notice marks the shift from Galilee to Judea — Jesus is now on the road to Jerusalem. The route 'beyond the Jordan' (peran tou Iordanou) describes the Transjordan route through Perea, avoiding Samaria. The phrase 'as was his custom' (hōs eiōthei) reminds the reader that teaching was Jesus's primary activity.
2. The participle *peirazontes* ('testing') signals hostile intent, not genuine inquiry. The question about the legality (*exestin*, 'is it permitted') of divorce was debated among the rabbis — the school of Shammai allowed it only for sexual immorality, the school of Hillel for almost any cause. The question was designed to trap Jesus in a controversial position.
3. Jesus redirects the question to Scripture itself. His use of 'command' (*eneteilato*) rather than 'permit' is significant — he will soon distinguish between what Moses commanded and what Moses merely permitted.
4. The Pharisees answer with Deuteronomy 24:1-4, which assumes the practice of divorce and regulates it. They use the word *epetrepsen* ('permitted, allowed'), acknowledging this was a concession rather than a positive command. The 'certificate of divorce' (*biblion apostasiou*) was a legal document protecting the woman's right to remarry.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 24:1-4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The compound noun *sklērokardian* ('hardness of heart') combines *sklēros* ('hard, stiff') and *kardia* ('heart'). The Mosaic divorce provision is characterized as an accommodation to human fallenness, not an expression of God's ideal. Jesus frames the Deuteronomy passage as a concession, not a norm.
6. Jesus goes behind Moses to Genesis 1:27, treating the creation narrative as the foundational expression of God's will for humanity. The appeal to 'the beginning of creation' (*archēs ktiseōs*) establishes creation order as the standard against which the Mosaic concession is measured.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Jesus continues quoting, now from Genesis 2:24. The verb *kataleipsei* ('will leave, will forsake') indicates a fundamental reorientation of primary loyalty — from birth family to marriage covenant. Some SBLGNT manuscripts include 'and be joined to his wife' (*kai proskollēthēsetai pros tēn gynaika autou*) while others do not.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The quotation from Genesis 2:24 concludes, and Jesus draws the inference: if marriage creates a unity ('one flesh,' *mia sarx*), then divorce is not merely a legal action but a tearing apart of what has been joined. The phrase 'one flesh' encompasses the totality of the shared life — physical, emotional, economic, and spiritual.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb *synezeyxen* ('joined together, yoked together') comes from the world of harnessing animals — two made into a working pair. The prohibition 'let no one separate' (*anthrōpos mē chōrizetō*) uses the present imperative, forbidding an ongoing practice. The shift from 'Moses permitted' to 'God joined' reframes the entire discussion from legal permission to divine intention.
10. Mark's pattern of public teaching followed by private explanation continues (cf. 4:10, 7:17). The disciples need further clarification about the divorce teaching.
11. The phrase 'against her' (*ep' autēn*) is significant — in Jewish law, a man could commit adultery against another man (by violating his marriage) but not against his own wife. Jesus's statement grants the wife equal standing as the wronged party, a radical elevation of women's status in marriage.
12. This verse addresses a woman initiating divorce — possible under Roman and some Hellenistic Jewish law but not standard in Palestinian Judaism. Mark's inclusion reflects his Roman audience. The symmetry of the teaching (both husband and wife are held to the same standard) is remarkable for the ancient world.
13. The verb *epetimēsan* ('rebuked') is the strong word used for commanding demons — the disciples treat the children's approach as an intrusion. In a society where children had no social standing, the disciples' action reflects conventional values. Jesus will overturn those values.
14. The verb *ēganaktēsen* ('was indignant, was angry') is one of the few places Mark records Jesus's anger directed at his own disciples. The statement that the kingdom 'belongs to such as these' (*tōn toioutōn estin hē basileia tou theou*) does not idealize childhood innocence but identifies the child's position — dependent, without status, unable to earn — as the posture required for receiving the kingdom.
15. The double negative *ou mē* ('by no means, never') is the strongest negation in Greek. Receiving the kingdom 'like a child' (*hōs paidion*) means receiving it as a gift, without pretension, without credentials, in total dependence — the opposite of earning or deserving it.
16. The verb *kateulogeī* ('blessed fervently, blessed abundantly') is an intensified form — Mark emphasizes the warmth of Jesus's response. The physical gesture of taking children in his arms (*enagkalisamenos*) repeats the action of 9:36. Jesus does not merely permit the children's approach; he embraces and blesses them.
17. The man's urgency (running, kneeling) and respectful address ('Good Teacher') suggest genuine sincerity. The question frames eternal life as something to be 'inherited' (*klēronomēsō*) — received as a family right — yet also asks 'what must I do,' revealing a works-based framework. Mark does not call him 'young' (that is Matthew's addition) or 'ruler' (that is Luke's).
18. Jesus's response is not a denial of his own goodness but a challenge to the man's casual use of the word. If 'good' belongs properly to God alone, then calling Jesus 'good' either means nothing or means everything. The statement forces the man to reckon with who Jesus is.
19. Jesus cites the second table of the Decalogue (commandments governing human relationships). Notably absent is 'You shall not covet' — replaced by 'Do not defraud' (*mē apostērēsēs*), which may be a practical application of the covetousness prohibition, particularly relevant to a wealthy person. The first table (love of God) is not mentioned but will be implied by the demand in verse 21.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:12-16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The verb *ephyllaxamēn* ('I have guarded, kept, observed') indicates careful compliance. The claim is not dismissed by Jesus — he takes it at face value. 'From my youth' (*ek neotētos mou*) means from the age of accountability (approximately twelve or thirteen in Jewish practice).
21. The detail 'loved him' (*ēgapēsen auton*) is unique to Mark and is striking — Jesus's demand is motivated by love, not hostility. The verb *emblepsas* ('looking intently at') suggests a penetrating gaze. The 'one thing' (*hen*) is not merely divestiture but the total reorientation it represents: allegiance to Jesus over wealth. The SBLGNT does not include 'take up the cross' (*aras ton stauron*), found in some manuscripts.
22. The verb *stygnasas* ('became gloomy, was shocked, was appalled') describes a visible darkening of the face — the opposite of the eager approach in verse 17. The man's grief (*lypoumenos*) is genuine; he is not indifferent but cannot bring himself to act. He is the only person in the Gospels who comes to Jesus with a sincere question and leaves without following.
23. The adverb *dyskolōs* ('with difficulty, hardly') sets up the astonishment that follows. Jesus does not say it is impossible, but 'how difficult' (*pōs dyskolōs*) — the difficulty is stressed, not absolute impossibility.
24. The disciples' amazement (*ethambounto*) reveals their assumption that wealth was a sign of divine blessing. The address 'Children' (*Tekna*) is tender — Jesus softens his teaching with familial affection. The SBLGNT reads simply 'how difficult it is to enter the kingdom of God' without the qualification 'for those who trust in riches' found in some manuscripts.
25. The image is deliberately impossible — a camel (*kamēlon*) through the eye of a sewing needle (*trymalia raphidos*). Attempts to soften this (a 'rope' instead of a camel, or a small gate called 'the Needle's Eye') have no textual or archaeological support. Jesus uses comic hyperbole to make a serious point: wealth creates an attachment that is humanly impossible to overcome.
26. The disciples' question reveals their logic: if even the wealthy (assumed to be divinely blessed) cannot enter the kingdom, then salvation is impossible for anyone. This is exactly the conclusion Jesus wants them to reach — so that verse 27 can redirect them to God's power.

27. The statement echoes Genesis 18:14 ('Is anything too hard for the LORD?') and Job 42:2 ('I know that you can do all things'). Salvation is not a human achievement but a divine gift. The word *adynaton* ('impossible') is unqualified — Jesus does not say 'difficult' but 'impossible' for humans, possible only for God.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 18:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Job 42:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. Peter's statement is both a contrast to the rich man (who would not leave his possessions) and an implicit question: 'What will we get?' The verb *aphēkamen* ('we have left, abandoned') is the same word used for the rich man's failure — the disciples did what he could not.
29. The list of what may be left covers the entire social world: home, family, and livelihood. The phrase 'for my sake and for the gospel's' (*heneken emou kai heneken tou euangeliou*) links personal loyalty to Jesus with commitment to the mission of proclamation.
30. The promise of a hundredfold return is remarkable, but the parenthetical 'with persecutions' (*meta diōgmōn*) prevents any prosperity-gospel reading. The new community of faith provides the extended family, but that community exists under the cross. Note that 'fathers' are absent from the return list — there is only one Father in the new community. The two-age framework ('this present age' and 'the age to come') reflects Jewish eschatology.
31. This reversal saying (cf. 9:35) provides the hermeneutical key: the kingdom of God inverts every human hierarchy. The rich man who seemed 'first' ends up unable to enter; the disciples who left everything are promised abundance.
32. The scene is vivid: Jesus strides ahead toward Jerusalem with grim determination while the disciples follow in a mixture of amazement and fear. The verb *proagōn* ('going before, leading the way') shows Jesus actively leading toward his death, not being swept along by events. 'Going up' (*anabainontes*) is both geographical (Jerusalem sits at elevation) and theological (ascending to the place of sacrifice).
33. The third passion prediction (cf. 8:31, 9:31) is the most detailed, adding the condemnation by the Sanhedrin and the delivery to the Gentiles (the Romans). The verb *paradothēsetai* ('will be delivered over, betrayed') is used twice — first of the Jewish leaders handing Jesus to the Romans, then of the betrayal itself. The passive may imply divine agency: God is delivering the Son of Man into human hands.
34. The specificity is remarkable: mocking, spitting, flogging — each fulfilled in the passion narrative (14:65, 15:15-20). The verb *mastigōsousin* ('they will flog') refers to the Roman flagellum, a whip with embedded bone or metal. The prediction ends, as always, with resurrection — the suffering is not the last word.
35. The brazenness of the request — a blank check ('whatever we ask') — is remarkable coming immediately after the most detailed passion prediction. In Matthew's account (20:20), their mother makes the request; Mark attributes it directly to James and John.
36. Jesus asks the same question he will ask blind Bartimaeus in verse 51. The contrast is telling: James and John ask for thrones; Bartimaeus asks for sight.
37. The right and left positions are seats of highest honor, sharing the ruler's authority. The phrase 'in your glory' (*en tē doxē sou*) shows they believe in Jesus's coming triumph — they simply want the best seats. The irony is that the positions at Jesus's right and left in his 'glory' will be occupied by two crucified criminals (15:27).
38. The 'cup' (*potērion*) is a biblical metaphor for one's allotted portion, often God's wrath (Psalm 75:8, Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). The 'baptism' (*baptisma*) metaphor extends the image — being submerged in suffering. Jesus uses the present tense ('I drink,' 'I am baptized'), indicating that his suffering is already underway.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 75:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 51:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 25:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. Their confident 'We are able' (*Dynametha*) is brave but uninformed. Jesus affirms they will indeed share his suffering — James was the first apostle martyred (Acts 12:2), and John, according to tradition, endured exile. Sharing Jesus's suffering, however, does not guarantee sharing his throne.
40. Jesus distinguishes between what he can promise (shared suffering) and what belongs to the Father's sovereignty (positions of honor). The passive *hētoimastai* ('it has been prepared') is a divine passive — God is the unnamed agent who determines positions in the kingdom.
41. The indignation (*aganaktein*) of the other ten is not righteous — it stems from the same desire for status. They are angry not because the request was inappropriate but because James and John tried to get there first.
42. The verbs *katakuriēuousin* ('lord it over, dominate') and *katexousiazousin* ('exercise authority over, tyrannize') both have the prefix *kata-* ('down upon'), emphasizing the downward pressure of coercive power. The phrase 'those considered rulers' (*hoi dokountes archein*) is subtly ironic — they merely 'seem' to rule; true authority lies elsewhere.

43. The contrast is absolute: 'not so among you' (ouch houtōs en hymin). The kingdom community operates on an entirely different power structure. The word diakonos ('servant, attendant') describes one who serves others' needs.
44. Jesus escalates from diakonos ('servant') in verse 43 to doulos ('slave') here. A doulos had no rights, no status, no self-determination. This is the most radical statement of servant leadership in the Gospels — the one who would be 'first' (prōtos) must become a slave (doulos) to 'all' (pantōn).
45. This is Mark's clearest atonement statement. The word lytron ('ransom') is the price paid to liberate a slave or prisoner of war. The preposition anti ('in place of, instead of, in exchange for') indicates substitution. 'For many' (anti pollōn) echoes Isaiah 53:11-12, where the Servant bears the sins of 'the many.' Jesus grounds the call to service in his own example — the Son of Man's ultimate service is sacrificial death.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 53:11-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
46. Bartimaeus is one of the few people healed by Jesus whose name Mark preserves (cf. Jairus, 5:22), suggesting he was known to Mark's community. The name Bar-Timaïos is Aramaic for 'son of Timaeus.' His position — blind, begging, by the roadside — represents the lowest social status. Jericho was the last major stop before the ascent to Jerusalem.
47. Bartimaeus's cry 'Son of David' (Huie Daid) is the first public messianic acclamation in Mark. The blind man sees what the sighted crowd does not — that Jesus is the Davidic Messiah. The plea 'have mercy on me' (eleēson me) echoes the psalms of lament (Psalm 6:2, 9:13, 51:1).
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 6:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
48. The crowd tries to silence Bartimaeus, but like the Syrophenician woman (7:26-28), he refuses to be deterred. His persistence intensifies — 'all the more' (pollō mallon). Faith in Mark is characterized by persistence in the face of opposition.
49. Jesus stops the entire procession for a blind beggar — a dramatic reversal of social convention. The crowd that tried to silence Bartimaeus now encourages him. The three imperatives — 'Take heart' (tharsei), 'Get up' (egeire), 'he is calling you' (phōnei se) — convey excitement.
50. The cloak (himation) was a beggar's most valuable possession — his bedding, his shelter, his collection surface for coins. Bartimaeus throws it aside without hesitation, in stark contrast to the rich man who could not part with his possessions (v. 22). The verb anapēdēsas ('sprang up, jumped up') conveys explosive energy.
51. The question is identical to verse 36, asked of James and John. The contrast in answers is devastating: James and John wanted thrones; Bartimaeus wants sight. Rabbouni (an intensified form of 'Rabbi') appears only here and in John 20:16 (Mary Magdalene at the tomb).
52. The phrase 'your faith has saved you' (hē pistis sou sesōken se) uses the perfect tense of sōzō, which means both 'save' and 'heal.' Unlike the blind man at Bethsaida (8:22-26) who was sent home, Bartimaeus follows Jesus 'on the way' (en tē hodō) — the way to Jerusalem, the way of the cross. His story closes the journey section that began in 8:22 with another blind man, forming an inclusio of restored sight.

11

Summary: *Mark 11 narrates Jesus's entry into Jerusalem, the cursing of the fig tree, the cleansing of the temple, and a series of confrontations with the religious authorities. Jesus enters the city riding a colt in deliberate fulfillment of Zechariah 9:9, the crowds hailing him with messianic acclamations. The fig tree episode frames the temple action — the fruitless tree symbolizes the fruitless temple. Jesus drives out the merchants, accusing them of turning God's house of prayer into a den of robbers. The chapter concludes with a teaching on faith and prayer, and a challenge to Jesus's authority that he parries with a counter-question about John the Baptist.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fig tree and temple cleansing form a Markan 'sandwich' (intercalation): fig tree cursed (vv. 12-14), temple cleansed (vv. 15-19), fig tree withered (vv. 20-21). This literary structure signals that the fig tree interprets the temple — both are judged for failing to bear fruit. The quotation combining Isaiah 56:7 ('house of prayer for all nations') and Jeremiah 7:11 ('den of robbers') encapsulates Jesus's critique: the temple has failed its intended purpose of drawing all peoples to God.*

Translation Friction: *The cursing of the fig tree (v. 13) — especially Mark's note that 'it was not the season for figs' — has puzzled commentators. If it was not fig season, why expect fruit? The action is best understood as a prophetic sign-act (like Jeremiah's broken jar or Ezekiel's siege) rather than a display of frustration. The tree represents Israel's religious establishment. The 'den of robbers' language does not mean the merchants were overcharging; it means the temple itself had become a hideout for those who exploit others while maintaining a religious facade.*

Connections: The entry fulfills Zechariah 9:9 (the king coming on a donkey) and echoes 2 Kings 9:13 (garments spread for a new king). The temple action connects to Malachi 3:1-3 (the Lord whom you seek will suddenly come to his temple). The fig tree echoes Hosea 9:10, Jeremiah 8:13, and Micah 7:1, where figs symbolize Israel's faithfulness. The authority question (vv. 27-33) continues the pattern of Jesus turning hostile questions back on his questioners.

¹When they drew near to Jerusalem, to Bethphage and Bethany, at the Mount of Olives, he sent two of his disciples ²Says to them, Go your way into the village over opposed to you — and as soon as you be entered into it, you will find a colt tied, whereon never man sat. Loose him, and bring him. ³If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' say, 'The Lord has need of it and will send it back here immediately.'" ⁴They went away and found a colt tied at a door outside in the street, and they untied it. ⁵Some of the bystanders said to them, "What are you doing, untying the colt?" ⁶They told them what Jesus had said, and they let them go. ⁷They brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it. ⁸Many spread their cloaks on the road, and others spread leafy branches that they had cut from the fields. ⁹Those who went before and those who followed were crying out, "Hosanna! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord! ¹⁰Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David! Hosanna in the highest!" ¹¹He entered Jerusalem and went into the temple. After looking around at everything, since it was already late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve. ¹²On the following day, when they came from Bethany, he was hungry. ¹³Seeing in the distance a fig tree in leaf, he went to see if he could find anything on it. When he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs. ¹⁴He said to it, "May no one ever eat fruit from you again." And his disciples heard it. ¹⁵They came to Jerusalem. And he entered the temple and began to drive out those who were selling and those who were buying in the temple, and he overturned the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold pigeons. ¹⁶And he would not allow anyone to carry merchandise through the temple. ¹⁷He was teaching and saying to them, "Is it not written, 'My house shall be called a house of prayer for all the nations'? But you have made it a den of robbers." ¹⁸The chief priests and the scribes heard this and were looking for a way to destroy him, for they feared him, because the whole crowd was astonished at his teaching. ¹⁹And when evening came, they went out of the city. ²⁰As they passed by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots. ²¹Peter remembered and said to him, "Rabbi, look! The fig tree that you cursed has withered." ²²Jesus answered them, "Have faith in God. ²³Truly I say to you, whoever says to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,' and does not doubt in his heart but believes that what he says will happen, it will be done for him. ²⁴Therefore I tell you, whatever you ask in prayer, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours. ²⁵And whenever you stand praying, forgive, if you have anything against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven may also forgive you your trespasses." ²⁷They came again to Jerusalem. As he was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him ²⁸Say to him, By what authority doest you these things? and who offered you this authority to do these things? ²⁹Jesus said to them, "I will ask you one question; answer me, and I will tell you by what authority I do these things. ³⁰Was the baptism of John from heaven or from man? Answer me." ³¹They discussed it among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then did you not believe him?' ³²But shall we say, 'From man'?" — they were afraid of the crowd, for they all held that John really was a prophet. ³³So they answered Jesus, "We do not know." And Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Bethphage ('house of unripe figs') and Bethany ('house of affliction' or 'house of dates') were villages on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about two miles from Jerusalem. The Mount of Olives carried eschatological significance — Zechariah 14:4 places God's final intervention there.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 14:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The colt (pōlon) that has never been ridden fulfills the requirement that animals used for sacred purposes be previously unused (cf. Numbers 19:2, Deuteronomy 21:3, 1 Samuel 6:7). Jesus's foreknowledge of the colt's location and circumstances suggests either prophetic insight or prior arrangement.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 19:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 21:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 6:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The title 'the Lord' (ho kyrios) is ambiguous — it could mean 'the owner' or 'the Master.' If the latter, it would be one of the rare instances in Mark where Jesus applies the title kyrios to himself.
4. The Greek amphodou ('street, lane, the open road') indicates a public thoroughfare. The detail confirms Jesus's prediction exactly.
5. The challenge comes exactly as Jesus predicted, allowing the disciples to give the pre-arranged response.
6. The smooth exchange suggests either that the owners recognized Jesus's authority or that the arrangement had been made beforehand.
7. Spreading garments on the animal serves as an improvised saddle but also echoes the acclamation of Jehu as king in 2 Kings 9:13, where the people spread their garments under him.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 9:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek stibadas ('leafy branches, rushes, bedding of leaves') describes foliage cut from fields rather than palm branches specifically (that detail is in John 12:13). The gesture creates a processional carpet, a spontaneous royal welcome.
9. The crowd quotes Psalm 118:25-26, a Hallel psalm sung during Passover and the Feast of Tabernacles. 'Hosanna' (hōsanna) transliterates the Hebrew hoshia-na ('save, please!' or 'save now!'). Originally a prayer for deliverance, it had become an acclamation of praise. 'He who comes' (ho erchomenos) carried messianic overtones — the 'coming one' was an expected deliverer.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 118:26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The reference to 'the kingdom of our father David' is explicitly messianic and political — the crowd expects the restoration of David's kingdom. 'Hosanna in the highest' (en tois hypsistois, 'in the highest [heavens]') directs the acclamation upward, asking heaven itself to join the praise.
11. Mark uniquely records this preliminary survey visit — Jesus inspects the temple before acting. The verb periblespamenos ('having looked around') suggests a deliberate assessment. The temple cleansing the next day is therefore premeditated, not spontaneous. Jesus returns to Bethany for the night, probably staying with Lazarus, Mary, and Martha (cf. John 11:1).
12. The note about hunger serves the narrative by motivating the approach to the fig tree, but the symbolic dimension is primary. The fig tree episode begins the Markan sandwich that frames the temple action.
13. Mark's explanatory note — 'for it was not the season for figs' (ho gar kairos ouk ēn sykōn) — seems to excuse the tree, making Jesus's response puzzling if taken as a literal quest for fruit. The action is best understood as a prophetic sign-act: the tree advertises fruitfulness (it has leaves) but produces nothing, just as the temple advertises God's presence but has become spiritually barren. Fig trees in the Old Testament regularly symbolize Israel (Hosea 9:10, Jeremiah 8:13, Micah 7:1).
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Hosea 9:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 8:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 7:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The curse uses the optative mood (phagoi, 'may eat') — the strongest form of wish or prohibition. The note 'his disciples heard it' (ēkouon hoi mathētai autou) prepares for the discovery of the withered tree in verse 20 and the teaching that follows.
15. The action takes place in the Court of the Gentiles — the only area where non-Jews could pray. By filling this space with commerce, the temple authorities had effectively eliminated Gentile access to worship. The money changers (kollybistōn) converted foreign currency into the Tyrian shekels required for the temple tax. The pigeon sellers provided sacrificial animals for the poor (Leviticus 5:7, 12:8).
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 5:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The word skeuos ('vessel, object, goods') refers to commercial goods being transported as a shortcut through the temple courts. The Mishnah later prohibited this same practice (Berakhot 9:5), indicating that Jesus's concern was shared by later rabbinic authorities.
17. Jesus combines Isaiah 56:7 ('my house shall be called a house of prayer for all peoples') and Jeremiah 7:11 ('Has this house become a den of robbers?'). Mark alone includes 'for all the nations' (pasin tois ethnesin) — significant for his Gentile audience. The word lēstōn ('robbers, bandits, insurrectionists') is stronger than 'thieves' — Jeremiah used it for those who commit violence and then retreat to the temple for sanctuary.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 56:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 7:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The temple action seals Jesus's fate. The verb *apolesōsin* ('they might destroy') reveals murderous intent. The irony is layered: they fear Jesus because of his popularity, yet his popularity will not save him. The crowd is 'astonished' (*exēplēsseto*) but astonishment is not the same as faith.
19. Jesus continues the pattern of withdrawing from Jerusalem each evening, likely returning to Bethany. This may reflect both practical safety and the symbolic rejection of the city.
20. The phrase 'from the roots' (*ek rhizōn*) indicates total destruction — not merely wilted leaves but death from the foundation upward. The Markan sandwich is now complete: the withered tree interprets the temple cleansing. The temple, like the tree, advertises life but produces no fruit and faces judgment.
21. Peter's exclamation connects the cursing (v. 14) with the result (v. 20). Jesus will use the occasion to teach about faith and prayer, but the symbolic meaning — judgment on the barren temple — remains the primary narrative function.
22. The phrase *pistin theou* ('faith of God') could be translated 'faith in God' (objective genitive) or 'the kind of faith God has' (subjective genitive). Either way, the call is to radical trust in divine power.
23. 'This mountain' (*tō orei toutō*) may refer to the Mount of Olives or, more pointedly, to the Temple Mount visible from where they stood. The hyperbolic image of moving a mountain expresses the power of faith aligned with God's purposes. The verb *diakrithērē* ('doubt, waver, be divided') literally means 'to be separated within oneself.'
24. The aorist tense *elabete* ('you received') is striking — Jesus says 'believe that you received,' using the past tense for a future reality. Faith treats the answer as already given. This does not describe a psychological technique but the confidence of prayer aligned with God's revealed will.
25. Standing (*stēkete*) was the normal Jewish posture for prayer. The connection between divine forgiveness and human forgiveness echoes the Lord's Prayer (Matthew 6:12, 14-15). The word *paraptōmata* ('trespasses, transgressions, false steps') literally means 'falling beside' — stepping off the path.
26. Verse 26 is absent from the earliest and best manuscripts of Mark and is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears to be a later scribal addition, possibly drawn from Matthew 6:15. We follow the SBLGNT in omitting it while retaining the verse number for reference.
27. The three groups — chief priests, scribes, elders — constitute the Sanhedrin, the supreme Jewish council. Their approach is an official delegation, challenging Jesus's right to act as he did in cleansing the temple.
28. The question about authority (*exousia*) is legitimate from their perspective — they are the recognized authorities over the temple. 'These things' (*tauta*) refers to the temple cleansing, the teaching, and the implied messianic claims. The double question asks both the nature of the authority and its source.
29. Jesus's counter-question is not evasion but rabbinic method — answering a question with a question that, if answered honestly, would also answer the original. The connection between John's baptism and Jesus's authority will become clear in the next verses.
30. The binary question — 'from heaven' (divine origin) or 'from men' (human invention) — traps the authorities. If they say 'from heaven,' they must explain why they did not believe John, who testified about Jesus. If they say 'from men,' they risk the crowd's anger, since the people regarded John as a genuine prophet.
31. The leaders' internal deliberation reveals that their concern is political calculation, not truth. They are not asking 'What is the right answer?' but 'What answer will get us in the least trouble?'
32. The dash represents the breaking off of their deliberation — they cannot even finish the sentence because the consequences are too dangerous. The word *ontōs* ('really, actually, in truth') expresses the crowd's genuine conviction about John's prophetic status.
33. Their 'We do not know' (*Ouk oidamen*) is a lie — they have a strong opinion but are unwilling to state it publicly. Jesus's refusal to answer is not evasion but a response in kind: those who will not honestly answer a simple question have no right to demand answers from him. The contest of authority ends with Jesus in control.

12

Summary: *Mark 12 presents a series of confrontations in the temple courts during Jesus's final week in Jerusalem. Jesus tells the parable of the wicked tenants, exposing the religious leaders' rejection of God's messengers. The Pharisees and Herodians attempt to trap him with a question about taxes to Caesar, the Sadducees test him on the resurrection, and a scribe asks about the greatest commandment. Jesus then poses his own question about the Messiah's identity as David's son and Lord, warns against the scribes' hypocrisy, and commends a poor widow whose two small coins surpass every other offering.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parable of the wicked tenants (vv. 1-12) draws directly on Isaiah 5's vineyard imagery and compresses Israel's prophetic history into a single narrative. The tribute question (v. 17) produces one of Jesus's most famous responses, which neither endorses nor condemns Roman taxation but reframes the entire question around what belongs to God. The exchange on the greatest commandment (vv. 28-34) is the only place in Mark where Jesus tells an interlocutor 'You are not far from the kingdom of God' — a striking affirmation within a chapter of conflict. The widow's offering (vv. 41-44) closes the temple teaching section with a devastating contrast between religious performance and genuine devotion.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'Render to Caesar' (v. 17) has been applied to justify everything from tax compliance to separation of church and state. The Greek apodote ('give back, return') implies returning what already belongs to someone, not simply paying a bill. The question about David's son (vv. 35-37) uses Psalm 110:1, which in Hebrew distinguishes YHWH (the LORD) from adoni ('my lord') — a distinction lost in Greek where kyrios covers both. We render the Greek as given while noting the Hebrew background.*

Connections: *The vineyard parable connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 and the rejected-stone quotation to Psalm 118:22-23. The Shema quotation (v. 29) anchors the chapter in Deuteronomy 6:4-5, while the love-of-neighbor command comes from Leviticus 19:18. Psalm 110:1 is the most-quoted Old Testament text in the New Testament, and Jesus's use of it here establishes a Christological argument that runs through early Christian preaching (Acts 2:34-35; Hebrews 1:13).*

¹And he began to speak to them in parables: "A man planted a vineyard and put a fence around it and dug a pit for the winepress and built a tower. Then he leased it to tenant farmers and went away. ²At harvest time he sent a servant to the tenants to collect from them some of the fruit of the vineyard. ³But they seized him and beat him and sent him away empty-handed. ⁴Again he sent another servant to them, and they struck him on the head and treated him shamefully. ⁵He sent yet another, and that one they killed. And so with many others — some they beat, and some they killed. ⁶He had still one other — a beloved son. He sent him last of all to them, saying, 'They will respect my son.' ⁷But those tenants said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.' ⁸And they seized him and killed him and threw him out of the vineyard. ⁹What will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the tenants and give the vineyard to others. ¹⁰Have you not read this Scripture: 'The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone.' ¹¹And is it marvellous in our eyes?, and this was the Lord's doing. ¹²They were seeking to arrest him but feared the crowd, for they knew he had told the parable against them. So they left him and went away. ¹³Then they sent to him some of the Pharisees and some of the Herodians to trap him in his words. ¹⁴They came and said to him, "Teacher, we know that you are truthful and do not defer to anyone, for you show no partiality but truly teach the way of God. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar, or not? Should we pay them, or should we not?" ¹⁵But knowing their hypocrisy, he said to them, "Why are you testing me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it." ¹⁶They brought one. And he said to them, "Whose image is this, and whose inscription?" They said to him, "Caesar's." ¹⁷Jesus said to them, "Give back to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." And they were utterly amazed at him. ¹⁸Then Sadducees came to him — those who say there is no resurrection — and they asked him a question: ¹⁹"Teacher, Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies and leaves a wife but no child, his brother must take the wife and raise up offspring for his brother. ²⁰There were seven brothers. The first took a wife, and when he died he left no offspring. ²¹The second took her and died, leaving no offspring. And the third

likewise. ²²All seven left no offspring. Last of all, the woman also died. ²³In the resurrection, when they rise, whose wife will she be? For all seven had her as wife." ²⁴Jesus said to them, "Is this not the reason you are wrong — that you know neither the Scriptures nor the power of God? ²⁵For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but are like the angels in heaven. ²⁶But concerning the dead being raised, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the passage about the bush, how God spoke to him, saying, 'I am the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob'? ²⁷He is not God of the dead but of the living. You are greatly mistaken." ²⁸One of the scribes came and heard them debating. Seeing that Jesus had answered them well, he asked him, "Which commandment is the most important of all?" ²⁹Jesus answered, "The most important is: 'Hear, O Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one. ³⁰And you shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength.' ³¹The second is this: 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself.' There is no other commandment greater than these." ³²The scribe said to him, "Well said, Teacher. You have truly stated that he is one, and there is no other besides him. ³³And to love him with all the heart and with all the understanding and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself, is far more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices." ³⁴When Jesus saw that he answered wisely, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God." And after that, no one dared to ask him any more questions. ³⁵And as Jesus taught in the temple, he said, "How can the scribes say that the Christ is the son of David? ³⁶David himself said by the Holy Spirit, 'The Lord said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand, until I put your enemies under your feet."' ³⁷David himself calls him Lord, so how is he his son?" And the large crowd was listening to him with delight. ³⁸And in his teaching he said, "Beware of the scribes, who like to walk around in long robes and to receive greetings in the marketplaces ³⁹The prominent places in the synagogues, and the uppermost rooms at feasts. ⁴⁰They devour widows' houses and for a pretense make lengthy prayers. They will receive greater condemnation." ⁴¹He sat down opposite the treasury and watched the crowd putting money into the offering box. Many rich people put in large amounts. ⁴²And a poor widow came and put in two small copper coins, which make a penny. ⁴³He called his disciples to him and said to them, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all those contributing to the treasury. ⁴⁴For they all contributed out of their abundance, but she out of her poverty put in everything she had — all she had to live on."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The vineyard description echoes Isaiah 5:1-2 almost verbatim, and Jesus's audience would have recognized the allusion immediately. The Greek *georgois* ('farmers, tenants') denotes those who work the land under lease — they are caretakers, not owners.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 5:1-2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Greek *kairos* ('season, appointed time') carries more theological weight than *chronos* ('chronological time'). The servant represents the prophets sent to Israel to call for covenant faithfulness.
3. The escalating pattern of violence against the servants mirrors the biblical pattern of prophetic rejection throughout Israel's history (cf. 2 Chronicles 36:15-16; Nehemiah 9:26).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Chronicles 36:15-16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Nehemiah 9:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek *ekēphaliōsan* ('struck on the head') is a rare word. Some manuscripts and translations interpret it as stoning, but the verb derives from *kephalē* ('head') and most likely means they wounded his head.
5. The escalation from beating to killing compresses the history of prophetic martyrdom. The parable's audience — the chief priests, scribes, and elders (11:27) — would have recognized themselves in the tenants' role.
6. The phrase *huion agapēton* ('beloved son') echoes the voice from heaven at Jesus's baptism (1:11) and transfiguration (9:7), using identical language. Mark's audience would hear the parable as Jesus identifying himself as the beloved son who will be killed.
7. The Greek *klēronomos* ('heir') and *klēronomia* ('inheritance') carry covenantal weight — Israel's 'inheritance' is the land God promised. The tenants' reasoning exposes the logic of power: eliminate the rightful heir to seize what belongs to another.

8. In Mark's order, they kill first and cast out afterward — a detail that may foreshadow Jesus's death and burial outside the city walls. Matthew and Luke reverse the order to match the historical detail that Jesus was crucified outside Jerusalem (cf. Hebrews 13:12).
9. In Mark, Jesus answers his own question — unlike Matthew 21:41 where the audience answers. The phrase 'give the vineyard to others' points beyond the parable to the inclusion of Gentiles or to a new community of faith.
10. Jesus quotes Psalm 118:22-23, which was originally a psalm of thanksgiving for unexpected vindication. The 'stone' metaphor shifts from agriculture to construction but makes the same point: what the authorities reject, God exalts. The phrase *kephalēn gōnias* ('head of the corner') may refer to a cornerstone (foundation) or capstone (crowning stone).
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 118:22-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The quotation continues from Psalm 118:23. The Greek *thaumastē* ('marvelous, wonderful') indicates something that provokes astonishment — God's reversal of human judgment is both surprising and awe-inspiring.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 118:22-23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The leaders' recognition that the parable was directed 'against them' (*pros autous*) confirms its transparency. Their restraint is political, not moral — they fear the crowd's reaction, not God's judgment. This sets the stage for their clandestine plot in chapter 14.
13. The Pharisees and Herodians were natural enemies — the Pharisees resisted Roman cultural influence while the Herodians supported the Herodian dynasty and its Roman alliance. Their collaboration against Jesus reveals the depth of opposition. The Greek *agreuōsin* ('trap, catch, hunt') is a hunting term — they are stalking prey.
14. The flattery is calculated to prevent evasion. The Greek *kēnson* is a loanword from the Latin *census*, referring specifically to the Roman poll tax — a deeply resented symbol of subjugation. If Jesus says 'pay,' he alienates the populace; if he says 'don't pay,' he commits sedition against Rome. The phrase *ou blepeis eis prosōpon anthrōpōn* ('you do not look at the face of men') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'you show no partiality.'
15. The Greek *hypokrisin* ('hypocrisy') comes from the theater — a hypocrite is literally 'one who plays a role.' Jesus sees through the performance. The request for a coin is masterful: by producing a Roman denarius in the temple precincts, the questioners reveal that they already participate in Caesar's economy.
16. The Greek *eikōn* ('image') is theologically loaded — Genesis 1:26-27 declares that humans bear the image (*tselem*) of God. By asking whose image is on the coin, Jesus sets up a contrast: the coin bears Caesar's image, but human beings bear God's image. The inscription on a Tiberian denarius typically read 'Tiberius Caesar, son of the divine Augustus' — a claim that would have been offensive to Jewish monotheists.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:26-27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The Greek *apodote* ('give back, return, render') is stronger than 'give' — it implies returning what already belongs to someone. The second clause reframes everything: if Caesar's coins bear Caesar's image, then human beings — who bear God's image — belong entirely to God. The response neither endorses nor condemns taxation but subordinates all political claims to God's total claim on human life.
18. Mark introduces the Sadducees with a parenthetical note about their denial of the resurrection. The Sadducees accepted only the Torah (the five books of Moses) as authoritative and found no explicit resurrection teaching there. Their question is designed to make resurrection belief look absurd.
19. The Sadducees invoke the levirate marriage law from Deuteronomy 25:5-6. The term 'levirate' comes from the Latin *levir* ('husband's brother'). The purpose of the law was to preserve the deceased brother's name and inheritance within Israel — a practice also illustrated in the story of Ruth and Boaz.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 25:5-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The scenario is likely hypothetical, constructed for maximum rhetorical effect. The number seven — the number of completeness — ensures the problem has no easy resolution by simply choosing one husband.
21. The repetitive structure is deliberate — each death without offspring intensifies the absurdity the Sadducees are constructing.
22. The scenario concludes with universal death — the very reality the Sadducees believe is final. Ironically, their story about death becomes the occasion for Jesus to teach about life beyond death.
23. The Sadducees' question assumes that resurrection life would be a simple continuation of earthly existence. Jesus's answer will challenge this assumption entirely, reframing resurrection as transformation rather than restoration.
24. Jesus identifies two sources of error: ignorance of Scripture and ignorance of God's power. The Greek *planasthe* ('you are led astray, you wander') implies not just intellectual error but spiritual disorientation. The charge is sharp — the Sadducees prided themselves on scriptural expertise.
25. Jesus does not say the resurrected become angels but that they are 'like' (*hōs*) angels in this specific respect — the institution of marriage, which addresses mortality and procreation, is transcended. This addresses the power of God that the Sadducees have underestimated: resurrection is not mere resuscitation but a transformation of the conditions of existence.

- 26.** Jesus strategically argues from the Torah — the only portion of Scripture the Sadducees accepted as authoritative. The citation is Exodus 3:6. The reference 'in the passage about the bush' (epi tou batou) uses a method of citing Scripture by location, since there were no chapter and verse numbers. Jesus's argument is that God's use of the present tense 'I am' implies an ongoing relationship with the patriarchs — which requires their continued existence.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 27.** The concluding statement is emphatic: poly planasthe ('you are greatly in error'). The argument rests on the covenant relationship — if God identifies himself as the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, then those patriarchs must still exist in some meaningful sense, because God's covenant faithfulness does not terminate at death.
- 28.** Unlike the previous questioners, this scribe approaches with genuine interest — he has been impressed by Jesus's answers. The question about ranking commandments was a recognized topic in rabbinic discussion. Tradition counted 613 commandments in the Torah (248 positive, 365 negative), and rabbis debated which was the foundational principle.
- 29.** Jesus begins with the Shema (Hebrew: 'Hear!'), from Deuteronomy 6:4, which every observant Jew recited twice daily. Only Mark includes this preamble; Matthew and Luke skip directly to the love command. By quoting the Shema, Jesus grounds the love command in monotheism — love for God is the proper response to the reality that there is only one God.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The fourfold formula (heart, soul, mind, strength) expands the Hebrew original in Deuteronomy 6:5, which has three terms (heart, soul, strength). The addition of 'mind' (dianoia) may reflect the Septuagint tradition or an interpretive expansion. The cumulative effect is totality — every dimension of human existence is to be oriented toward loving God.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 6:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The neighbor command comes from Leviticus 19:18. Jesus's pairing of these two commandments — love of God and love of neighbor — was not entirely unique in Jewish tradition (cf. Testament of Issachar 5:2; Testament of Dan 5:3), but his elevation of them as the supreme summary of the law was distinctive. The phrase 'as yourself' (hōs seauton) sets self-love as the measure, not the motive, of neighbor-love.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 19:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The scribe's affirmation is remarkable — he validates Jesus's teaching as a peer might, using the adverb kalōs ('well, rightly'). His restatement of the Shema adds the phrase 'there is no other besides him,' echoing Deuteronomy 4:35 and Isaiah 45:21.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 4:35. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 45:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The scribe goes beyond Jesus's statement by adding a prophetic insight: love surpasses the entire sacrificial system. This echoes 1 Samuel 15:22 ('to obey is better than sacrifice'), Hosea 6:6 ('I desire steadfast love and not sacrifice'), and Micah 6:6-8. The word holokautōmatōn ('whole burnt offerings') refers to sacrifices entirely consumed by fire — the most complete form of offering — yet even these are surpassed by love.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 15:22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Hosea 6:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 6:6-8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The Greek nounechōs ('wisely, thoughtfully, with understanding') is a rare word in the New Testament. Jesus's response — 'not far from the kingdom of God' — is both commendation and invitation. The scribe is close but not yet there; understanding is the threshold, but entry requires something more. The note that no one dared ask further questions marks the end of the public debate sequence that began in 11:27.
- 35.** Having silenced his questioners, Jesus now poses his own question. He does not deny that the Messiah is David's son — the genealogies in Matthew and Luke affirm this — but he challenges the assumption that Davidic descent is the whole picture. The question probes whether 'son of David' adequately captures the Messiah's identity.
- 36.** Jesus quotes Psalm 110:1, attributing it to David and to the inspiration of the Holy Spirit. In the Hebrew, the first 'LORD' is YHWH and the second 'my lord' is adoni — a distinction lost in Greek where kyrios covers both. The psalm envisions a figure whom David calls 'my lord' being enthroned at God's right hand. Jesus's argument: if David calls the Messiah 'my lord,' the Messiah must be more than David's descendant.

36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. The question is not a denial of Davidic messiahship but an expansion of it — the Messiah is David's son and David's Lord simultaneously. The crowd's delight (hēdeōs, 'with pleasure, gladly') contrasts with the leaders' hostility. The common people enjoy seeing their leaders outmatched.
38. The Greek stolais ('long robes') refers to the flowing garments that marked a person of status and learning. The desire for public greetings (aspmous) in the marketplace reflects a culture of honor — being recognized and addressed with titles in public spaces.
39. The prōtokathedrias ('chief seats') in the synagogue were benches facing the congregation, reserved for the most respected members. The prōtoklisias ('first couches') at banquets were the reclining positions closest to the host. Both represent the social currency of religious prestige.
40. The Greek katesthiontes ('devour, consume') is vivid — these scribes are predators. 'Widows' houses' likely refers to mismanaging estates entrusted to their care or extracting excessive fees for legal or religious services. The phrase proophasēi ('as a pretext, for show') exposes their prayers as performance. The 'greater condemnation' (perissoteron krima) implies degrees of judgment — those who exploit the vulnerable while performing piety bear heavier accountability. This warning about widows transitions directly into the widow's offering that follows.
41. The Greek gazophylakion ('treasury') refers to the temple collection receptacles, traditionally described as thirteen trumpet-shaped containers in the Court of Women. The verb etheōrei ('he was watching, observing') implies sustained, attentive observation — Jesus is not glancing but studying the scene.
42. The Greek lepta duo ('two lepta') represents the smallest denomination of currency in circulation — each lepton was worth half a quadrans (kodrantēs), the smallest Roman coin. Mark provides the Roman equivalent for his Gentile readers. The widow could have kept one coin for herself but gave both — a detail Jesus will emphasize.
43. The solemn introduction 'Truly I say to you' (amēn legō hymin) marks a pronouncement of special authority. The Greek pleion pantōn ('more than all') is absolute — not 'more than most' but more than the combined total of all other givers. Jesus measures generosity not by amount but by cost.
44. The contrast is between perisseuontos ('surplus, abundance') and husterēseōs ('lack, poverty, deficiency'). The final phrase holon ton bion autēs ('her whole livelihood') is devastating — bios here means not just 'life' but 'means of living.' She gave not from surplus but from substance. Coming after the warning about scribes who devour widows' houses (v. 40), this scene may also carry an ironic edge: the temple system that should protect widows instead receives their last resources.

13

Summary: *Mark 13, commonly called the Olivet Discourse, is Jesus's longest continuous teaching in Mark's Gospel. Prompted by a disciple's admiration of the temple, Jesus predicts its destruction and then delivers an extended prophetic address from the Mount of Olives to Peter, James, John, and Andrew. The discourse warns of false messiahs, wars, persecutions, cosmic upheaval, and the coming of the Son of Man. It concludes with the parable of the doorkeeper and repeated calls to watchfulness: 'Stay awake — for you do not know when the master of the house will come.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The discourse blends near-future and eschatological horizons in ways that have generated centuries of interpretive debate. The destruction of the temple (fulfilled in AD 70) and the coming of the Son of Man appear interwoven rather than chronologically separated. The phrase 'this generation will not pass away until all these things take place' (v. 30) alongside 'concerning that day or hour, no one knows' (v. 32) creates a deliberate tension between imminence and unknowability. Jesus's admission that even 'the Son' does not know the timing (v. 32) is one of the most theologically striking statements in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the temple's destruction and the cosmic signs of vv. 24-27 is the central interpretive question. Preterist readers see the entire discourse fulfilled in AD 70; futurist readers see vv. 24-27 as still awaiting fulfillment; many scholars see a prophetic 'telescoping' where near and far events overlap. We render the Greek without imposing a particular eschatological framework. The 'abomination of desolation' (v. 14) alludes to Daniel 9:27, 11:31, and 12:11, originally referring to Antiochus IV's desecration of the temple in 167 BC — Jesus reapplies it to a future event.*

Connections: *The discourse draws heavily on Daniel 7:13-14 (Son of Man coming on clouds), Daniel 9:27 and 12:11 (abomination of desolation), Isaiah 13:10 and 34:4 (cosmic signs), and Zechariah 2:6 (gathering from the four winds). The call to watchfulness connects to the Gethsemane scene in 14:32-42, where the same disciples fail to stay awake. The fig tree parable (vv. 28-29) echoes the cursed fig tree of 11:12-14, 20-21.*

¹As he was going out of the temple, one of his disciples said to him, "Teacher, look! What massive stones and what magnificent buildings!" ²Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left upon another that will not be thrown down." ³As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately, ⁴"Tell us, when will these things be, and what will be the sign when all these things are about to be accomplished?" ⁵Jesus began to say to them, "Watch out that no one leads you astray. ⁶Many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,' and they will lead many astray. ⁷When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be alarmed. This must take place, but the end is not yet. ⁸For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be earthquakes in various places; there will be famines. These are the beginning of birth pains. ⁹But watch out for yourselves. They will hand you over to councils, and you will be beaten in synagogues, and you will stand before governors and kings because of me, as a testimony to them. ¹⁰And the gospel must first be proclaimed to all nations. ¹¹And when they bring you to trial and hand you over, do not worry beforehand about what to say. But say whatever is given to you in that hour, for it is not you who speak, but the Holy Spirit. ¹²Brother will betray brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise against parents and have them put to death. ¹³You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But the one who endures to the end will be saved. ¹⁴"But when you see the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be" — let the reader understand — "then let those in Judea flee to the mountains. ¹⁵Let the one on the housetop not go down or enter to take anything out of his house. ¹⁶And let the one in the field not turn back to get his cloak. ¹⁷How terrible it will be in those days for women who are pregnant and for those who are nursing! ¹⁸Pray that it may not happen in winter. ¹⁹For in those days there will be tribulation such as has not been from the beginning of the creation that God created until now, and never will be. ²⁰And if the Lord had not cut short the days, no human being would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, whom he chose, he cut short the days. ²¹And then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not believe it. ²²For false christs and false prophets will arise and perform signs and wonders, to lead astray, if possible, the elect. ²³But be on your guard. I have told you all things beforehand." ²⁴And the moon will not give her light, but at that time, after that tribulation, the sun will be darkened. ²⁵The stars of heaven will fall, and the powers that are in heaven will be shaken. ²⁶And then they will see the Son of Man coming in clouds with great power and glory. ²⁷And then he will send out the angels and gather his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of heaven. ²⁸"From the fig tree learn its lesson: as soon as its branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near. ²⁹So also, when you see these things taking place, you know that he is near, at the very gates. ³⁰Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all these things take place. ³¹Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will not pass away. ³²"But concerning that day or that hour, no one knows — not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son — but only the Father. ³³Be on guard, stay awake — for you do not know when the time will come. ³⁴It is like a man going on a journey, who left his house and put his servants in charge, each with his work, and commanded the doorkeeper to stay awake. ³⁵Therefore stay awake, for you do not know when the master of the house will come — in the evening, or at midnight, or when the rooster crows, or in the morning — ³⁶Indeed, lest coming suddenly he find you sleeping. ³⁷What I say to you, I say to all: Stay awake."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *potapoi* ('what sort of, what impressive') expresses wonder. Josephus describes the temple stones as approximately 37 feet long, 12 feet high, and 18 feet wide (*Antiquities* 15.392). Herod's temple complex was one of the architectural wonders of the ancient world, and the disciple's awe was entirely appropriate — which makes Jesus's response all the more shocking.
2. The double negative *ou mē* ('absolutely not') is the strongest form of denial in Greek. The prediction was fulfilled in AD 70 when Roman forces under Titus destroyed the temple. The phrase 'stone upon stone' became proverbial for total destruction. For Jesus's Jewish audience, this prediction was not merely architectural but theological — the temple was God's dwelling place on earth.
3. The Mount of Olives overlooks the temple mount from the east, providing a panoramic view of the complex Jesus has just predicted will be destroyed. The private audience — Peter, James, John, plus Andrew (who is not usually in this inner circle) — gives the discourse an intimate, revelatory character. In Jewish tradition, the Mount of Olives was associated with eschatological events (cf. Zechariah 14:4).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 14:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4. The disciples ask two questions: when (pote) and what sign (ti to sēmeion). In Mark, both questions concern the temple's destruction — unlike Matthew 24:3, which adds 'and of your coming and of the end of the age.' The Greek synteleisthai ('to be completed, accomplished, brought to an end') carries eschatological weight.
5. Jesus's first response is not an answer but a warning. The verb planēsē ('leads astray, deceives') is the same root used in 12:24, 27. The discourse begins not with timetables but with the imperative to avoid deception — the primary danger is not suffering but being led away from truth.
6. The phrase egō eimi ('I am') could mean 'I am the Christ' (supplying the predicate) or could echo the divine self-identification of Exodus 3:14 and Isaiah 43:25. Mark does not add 'Christ' — the claim is left ambiguous and therefore more ominous. History records several messianic claimants in the decades before AD 70 (cf. Acts 5:36-37; Josephus, Antiquities 20.97-99, 169-172).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 43:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek dei ('it is necessary, it must') introduces divine necessity — these events are within God's sovereign plan, not evidence of its failure. The distinction between wars and the end (telos) is crucial: Jesus explicitly warns against interpreting every crisis as the final event.
8. The phrase archē ōdinōn ('beginning of birth pains') draws on a well-established Jewish metaphor — the 'birth pains of the Messiah' (chevlei mashiach) referred to the period of intense suffering expected to precede the messianic age. Birth pains imply purpose: the suffering leads to new life, not meaningless destruction.
9. The shift from 'they' to 'you' personalizes the warning. The Greek paradōsoun ('they will hand over') uses the same verb used for Judas's betrayal (paradidōmi) — the disciples will be 'handed over' just as Jesus will be. Synedria ('councils') refers to local Jewish courts; synagogues were places of communal discipline including flogging; governors and kings represent Roman authority. The phrase eis martyron autois could mean 'as a testimony to them' or 'as evidence against them.'
10. This verse interrupts the persecution sequence with a mission imperative — before the end comes, the gospel must reach all nations (panta ta ethnē). The dei ('must') again signals divine necessity. The word kērychthenai ('be proclaimed, be heralded') comes from kēryx ('herald') — the gospel is a public announcement, not a private philosophy.
11. The Greek promerimnate ('worry beforehand, be anxious in advance') is a compound word unique to this passage — the prefix pro- ('before') intensifies the prohibition against pre-trial anxiety. The promise of the Holy Spirit's aid in persecution is one of Mark's clearest pneumatological statements.
12. The disintegration of family bonds under persecution echoes Micah 7:6, which Jesus also cites in Matthew 10:35-36. The Greek paradōsei ('will hand over, betray') again uses the paradidōmi language. The escalation is severe: even the most fundamental human bonds — sibling, parent-child — will fracture under the pressure of allegiance to Jesus.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Micah 7:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The promise is conditional on endurance (hypomeinas, 'having endured, having stood firm'). The Greek telos ('end') could refer to the end of the individual's life or the eschatological end. The verb sōthēsetai ('will be saved') encompasses both physical deliverance and ultimate salvation — the ambiguity may be intentional.
14. The phrase bdelygma tēs erēmōseōs ('abomination of desolation') comes from Daniel (9:27, 11:31, 12:11), where it refers to the pagan altar Antiochus IV Epiphanes erected in the temple in 167 BC. Jesus reapplies the phrase to a future desecration. The masculine participle hestēkota ('standing') with a neuter noun (bdelygma) may hint at a personal figure. The parenthetical 'let the reader understand' is Mark's editorial aside — addressing those who will later read the Gospel, urging them to discern the contemporary application.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 9:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Flat-roofed houses in first-century Palestine had external staircases; one could descend directly to the street without entering the house. The urgency is total — there is no time to retrieve possessions. The imagery conveys the speed required when the crisis arrives.
16. Workers in the field would leave their outer garment (himation) at the edge of the field while working. Even this brief detour is too dangerous. The echo of Lot's flight from Sodom (Genesis 19:17, 'Do not look back') may be intentional.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 19:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The Greek ouai ('woe, alas') expresses grief rather than condemnation — Jesus is lamenting, not cursing. Pregnant and nursing women cannot flee quickly and are especially vulnerable during siege warfare. Josephus's account of the siege of Jerusalem in AD 70 confirms the horrifying reality of these words (War 5-6).
18. The Greek cheimōnos ('winter, stormy season') refers to the rainy season when wadis flood and mountain travel becomes treacherous. The instruction to pray implies that while the event is certain, its timing and circumstances may be influenced by prayer.

19. The language echoes Daniel 12:1. The Greek *thlipsis* ('tribulation, distress, affliction') is a key eschatological term. The phrase 'from the beginning of creation' (*ap' archēs ktiseōs*) sets the tribulation against the entire sweep of cosmic history. Whether this refers solely to the siege of Jerusalem or to a still-future tribulation has been debated since the early church.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 12:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The Greek *ekolobōsen* ('shortened, cut short, curtailed') implies divine intervention to limit the duration of suffering. The phrase *pasa sarx* ('all flesh') is a Hebraism meaning 'any human being.' The *eklektous* ('elect, chosen ones') refers to God's people — those chosen by grace, for whose preservation God restrains the full measure of tribulation.
21. The warning repeats the opening theme (v. 5-6). In times of crisis, messianic expectation intensifies and false claims proliferate. The imperative *mē pisteuete* ('do not believe') is categorical — no exception is allowed.
22. The Greek *pseudochristoi* ('false christs') and *pseudoprophētai* ('false prophets') are compound words indicating counterfeit versions of the real. The phrase *ei dynaton* ('if possible') implies that the elect will be severely tested but are ultimately guarded by God's sovereign choice. Signs and wonders alone do not validate a messenger — a principle established in Deuteronomy 13:1-3.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 13:1-3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The emphatic *hymeis* ('you yourselves') places responsibility squarely on the disciples. The verb *proeirēka* ('I have told beforehand') means that forewarning eliminates the excuse of surprise. Jesus's prophecy is not meant to satisfy curiosity but to equip for faithfulness.
24. The cosmic imagery draws on Isaiah 13:10 (judgment on Babylon) and Joel 2:10, 31. In Old Testament prophetic language, the darkening of sun and moon frequently symbolizes the collapse of political powers and the upheaval of the existing order. Whether this is literal astronomical phenomena or symbolic prophetic language (or both) is a central interpretive question.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 13:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The language continues from Isaiah 34:4. The 'powers in the heavens' (*dynameis hai en tois ouranois*) may refer to celestial bodies, angelic beings, or spiritual forces — the Greek is deliberately encompassing. The shaking of cosmic structures signals that the entire created order is being disrupted in anticipation of God's decisive intervention.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 34:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The primary allusion is Daniel 7:13-14, where 'one like a son of man' comes on the clouds of heaven to receive dominion, glory, and kingdom from the Ancient of Days. In Daniel, the figure comes to God (ascending), not from God (descending) — which complicates simplistic interpretations. Jesus identifies himself as this figure throughout Mark (2:10, 2:28, 8:31, 8:38, 9:9, 9:31, 10:33, 10:45, 14:21, 14:41, 14:62).
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The gathering of the elect echoes Deuteronomy 30:4 ('Even if your outcasts are in the uttermost parts of heaven, from there the LORD your God will gather you') and Zechariah 2:6 (the four winds). The phrase *ap' akrou gēs heōs akrou ouranou* ('from the end of earth to the end of heaven') is a merism expressing totality — no elect person will be left behind.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 30:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 2:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The fig tree parable uses observable nature to teach discernment. In Palestine, the fig tree is one of the last trees to leaf out in spring, making its budding an unmistakable sign of approaching summer. The connection to the cursed fig tree in 11:12-14, 20-21 may be intentional — the fig tree that symbolized Israel's failed fruitfulness now serves as a parable of eschatological awareness.
29. The Greek *epi thurais* ('at the doors/gates') implies imminent arrival. The subject of 'is near' is ambiguous — it could be 'it' (the end) or 'he' (the Son of Man). We render 'he' following the Danielic context of verse 26, but the ambiguity may be deliberate.
30. This is one of the most debated verses in the Gospels. The Greek *genea* ('generation') most naturally means the people alive at the time of speaking — approximately 40 years, which would reach to AD 70. Some interpreters take 'generation' to mean 'race' (i.e., the Jewish people) or 'type of people' (i.e., the faithless), but these readings strain the word's normal usage. If 'all these things' includes the temple's destruction, the prophecy was fulfilled within the generation. If it includes the cosmic signs of vv. 24-27, the interpretive puzzle remains.
31. The claim is extraordinary: Jesus places his own words on a level of permanence that surpasses the physical cosmos. The double negative *ou mē* ('absolutely will not') strengthens the guarantee. In the Old Testament, only God's word is described with such permanence (Isaiah 40:8; 55:11). Jesus implicitly claims divine authority for his teaching.

31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. Jesus's admission that 'the Son' does not know the timing is one of the most theologically remarkable statements in the Gospels. It asserts a genuine limitation of knowledge within the incarnation. The ascending hierarchy of ignorance — humans, angels, the Son — makes the Father's exclusive knowledge emphatic. Some manuscripts omit 'nor the Son,' likely due to theological discomfort, but the harder reading is almost certainly original.
33. The twin imperatives *blepete* ('watch out, be alert') and *agrypneite* ('stay awake, be vigilant') establish the discourse's practical conclusion. The Greek *kairos* ('appointed time') is distinct from *chronos* — it is the decisive moment, not the passing of hours. Not knowing the time is not cause for anxiety but for constant readiness.
34. The parable of the absent master is unique to Mark in this form. Each servant receives *exousia* ('authority') and a specific *ergon* ('task, work'). The doorkeeper (*thyroōs*) receives the explicit command to watch — his role is vigilance itself. The parable implies that Jesus's departure places responsibility on his followers.
35. The four watches of the night correspond to the Roman division: evening (6-9 PM), midnight (9 PM-12 AM), rooster-crowing (12-3 AM), and morning (3-6 AM). The mention of *alektorophōnias* ('rooster-crowing') foreshadows Peter's denial in 14:30, 72, adding dramatic irony — Peter, who is hearing this warning, will fail to 'stay awake' in precisely this watch.
36. The Greek *katheudontas* ('sleeping') will recur in Gethsemane (14:37, 40, 41), where Jesus finds Peter, James, and John — the very audience of this discourse — sleeping when they should be watching. The literary connection between the Olivet Discourse and Gethsemane is deliberate.
37. The final word — *grēgoreite* ('stay awake, be watchful') — breaks the private frame of the discourse and addresses all of Mark's readers across time. The Greek *pasin* ('to all') universalizes the command beyond the four disciples on the Mount of Olives. The entire discourse concludes not with a timetable but with an imperative.

14

Summary: *Mark 14 narrates the final hours before Jesus's crucifixion in dense, rapid sequence. The chapter opens with the plot to kill Jesus and the anointing at Bethany, where a woman pours costly perfume over his head. Judas arranges to betray him. Jesus celebrates the Passover meal with his disciples, institutes the Lord's Supper, and predicts Peter's denial. In Gethsemane, Jesus prays in anguish while his disciples sleep. Judas arrives with an armed crowd, Jesus is arrested, and a young man flees naked. Jesus is tried before the Sanhedrin, where he declares himself the Christ and the Son of the Blessed One. Peter, waiting in the courtyard below, denies knowing Jesus three times — and the rooster crows.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The anointing woman (vv. 3-9) is the only person in Mark's Gospel whom Jesus says will be memorialized 'wherever the gospel is proclaimed in the whole world' — yet Mark never gives her name. The Last Supper (vv. 22-25) reinterprets the Passover through Jesus's own body and blood, creating the central ritual of Christian worship. Jesus's Gethsemane prayer (v. 36) with its Aramaic 'Abba' is the most intimate window into his inner life. His confession before the high priest (v. 62) breaks the 'messianic secret' that has defined Mark's narrative — only now, when it will lead to his death, does Jesus openly claim his identity. Peter's denial fulfills the prediction of verse 30 with devastating precision.*

Translation Friction: *The trial scene raises historical questions about Jewish legal procedure — holding a capital trial at night during a festival appears to violate Mishnaic rules (Sanhedrin 4:1), though the Mishnah postdates this event. We render the text as Mark presents it without adjudicating historicity. The young man who flees naked (vv. 51-52) is unique to Mark and has generated extensive speculation — some identify him as Mark himself, others as a symbolic figure representing the disciples' total abandonment. The Greek is straightforward; we render it without speculation.*

Connections: *The anointing connects to burial customs and anticipates 16:1. The Passover setting connects to Exodus 12. The cup saying echoes Exodus 24:8 ('the blood of the covenant') and Jeremiah 31:31 ('new covenant'). The Gethsemane prayer echoes Psalm 42:5-6 ('My soul is deeply grieved'). Jesus's trial declaration combines Psalm 110:1 (sitting at the right hand) and Daniel 7:13 (coming on clouds). Peter's denial fulfills 14:30 and contrasts with the Olivet Discourse command to 'stay awake' (13:37).*

¹It was two days before the Passover and the Feast of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking how to arrest him by stealth and kill him, ²Yet they stated, Not on the festival day, lest there be an uproar of the people. ³While he was at Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he reclined at table, a woman came with an alabaster flask of very expensive ointment of pure nard. She broke the flask and poured it over his head. ⁴Some were indignant, saying to one another, "Why was this ointment wasted? ⁵For this ointment could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii and given to the poor." And they scolded her harshly. ⁶But Jesus said, "Leave her alone. Why do you trouble her? She has done a beautiful thing to me. ⁷For you always have the poor with you, and whenever you want, you can do good for them. But you will not always have me. ⁸She has done what she could. She has anointed my body beforehand for burial. ⁹Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is proclaimed in the whole world, what she has done will also be told in memory of her." ¹⁰To betray him to them, Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went to the chief priests. ¹¹When they heard this, they were glad and promised to give him money. And he began looking for an opportunity to betray him. ¹²On the first day of Unleavened Bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, "Where do you want us to go and prepare for you to eat the Passover?" ¹³He sent two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the city, and a man carrying a jar of water will meet you. Follow him, ¹⁴Wheresoever he will go in, say you to the goodman of the home, The Master says, Where is the guestchamber, where I will eat the passover with my followers? ¹⁵He will show you a large upper room, furnished and ready. Make preparations for us there." ¹⁶The disciples set out and went to the city and found it just as he had told them, and they prepared the Passover. ¹⁷When it was evening, he came with the twelve. ¹⁸As they were reclining at table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, one of you will betray me — one who is eating with me." ¹⁹They began to be grieved and to say to him one by one, "Surely not I?" ²⁰He said to them, "It is one of the twelve, one who is dipping bread into the dish with me. ²¹For the Son of Man goes as it is written of him, but woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for that man if he had not been born." ²²While they were eating, he took bread, and after blessing it, he broke it and gave it to them and said, "Take; this is my body." ²³He gave it to them — and they all drank of it, he took the cup, and after he had given thanks. ²⁴And he said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, which is poured out for many. ²⁵Truly I say to you, I will not drink again of the fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God." ²⁶They left into the mount of olives, and after they had sung an hymn. ²⁷Jesus said to them, "You will all fall away, for it is written, 'I will strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered.' ²⁸But after I am raised up, I will go before you to Galilee." ²⁹Peter said to him, "Even if they all fall away, I will not." ³⁰Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today — this very night — before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times." ³¹But he kept saying emphatically, "Even if I must die with you, I will never deny you." And they all said the same. ³²They came to a place called Gethsemane, and he said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray." ³³He took Peter, James, and John with him, and he began to be deeply distressed and troubled. ³⁴He said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, to the point of death. Remain here and stay awake." ³⁵Going a little farther, he fell on the ground and prayed that, if it were possible, the hour might pass from him. ³⁶He said, "Abba, Father, all things are possible for you. Remove this cup from me. Yet not what I will, but what you will." ³⁷He came and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "Simon, are you asleep? Could you not stay awake one hour? ³⁸Stay awake and pray that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak." ³⁹Again he went away and prayed, saying the same words. ⁴⁰And again he came and found them sleeping, for their eyes were very heavy, and they did not know what to answer him. ⁴¹He came the third time and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and resting? It is enough. The hour has come. Look, the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners. ⁴²Get up, let us go. Look, my betrayer is near." ⁴³Immediately, while he was still speaking, Judas came — one of the twelve — and with him a crowd armed with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders. ⁴⁴Now his betrayer had given them a signal, saying, "The one I will kiss is the man. Arrest him and lead him away under guard." ⁴⁵When he came, he went up to him at once and said, "Rabbi!" And he kissed him. ⁴⁶Then they laid hands on him and arrested him. ⁴⁷But one of those standing by drew his sword and struck the high priest's servant and cut off his ear. ⁴⁸Jesus said to them, "Have you come out with swords and clubs to arrest me as though I were a rebel? ⁴⁹Day after day I was with you in the temple teaching, and you did not arrest me. But let the Scriptures be fulfilled." ⁵⁰And they all left him and fled. ⁵¹A young man was following him, wearing nothing but a linen cloth. They seized him, ⁵²He departed

the linen cloth, and fled from them naked. ⁵³They led Jesus to the high priest, and all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes assembled. ⁵⁴Peter had followed him at a distance, right into the courtyard of the high priest, and he was sitting with the guards and warming himself at the fire. ⁵⁵Now the chief priests and the whole council were seeking testimony against Jesus to put him to death, but they could not find any. ⁵⁶For many bore false witness against him, but their testimonies did not agree. ⁵⁷Some stood up and bore false witness against him, saying, ⁵⁸"We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another not made with hands.'" ⁵⁹Yet even in this their testimony did not agree. ⁶⁰The high priest stood up in the midst and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is it that these men testify against you?" ⁶¹But he remained silent and did not answer. Again the high priest asked him, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?" ⁶²Jesus said, "I am, and you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of Power and coming with the clouds of heaven." ⁶³The high priest tore his garments and said, "What further need do we have of witnesses? ⁶⁴You have heard his blasphemy! What is your judgment?" And they all condemned him as deserving death. ⁶⁵Some began to spit on him and to cover his face and to strike him, saying to him, "Prophecy!" And the guards received him with slaps. ⁶⁶While Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came, ⁶⁷When she noticed Peter warming himself, she looked upon him, and stated, And you also wast with Jesus of Nazareth. ⁶⁸But he denied it, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." And he went out into the gateway, and a rooster crowed. ⁶⁹The servant girl saw him and began again to say to the bystanders, "This man is one of them." ⁷⁰But again he denied it. After a little while, the bystanders again said to Peter, "Certainly you are one of them, for you are a Galilean." ⁷¹But he began to invoke a curse on himself and to swear, "I do not know this man you are talking about." ⁷²Immediately the rooster crowed a second time. And Peter remembered the word that Jesus had said to him, "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times." And he broke down and wept.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek pascha is a transliteration of the Aramaic form of the Hebrew pesach ('Passover'). The Feast of Unleavened Bread (ta azyma) technically followed Passover but by the first century the terms were used interchangeably for the entire festival period. The phrase en dolō ('by stealth, by deceit') reveals the conspirators' awareness that a public arrest would provoke a riot.
2. The irony is that Jesus will be arrested and executed during the feast — the very timing they tried to avoid. The Greek thorybos ('uproar, riot, commotion') reflects the volatile political atmosphere. Jerusalem's population swelled enormously during Passover, and the festival's themes of liberation from slavery made Roman and priestly authorities especially nervous.
3. The Greek alabastron refers to a sealed flask with a long neck that had to be broken to release its contents — the breaking means the entire quantity was given at once, with nothing held back. Nard (nardos) is an aromatic plant from the Himalayas; the adjective pistikēs probably means 'pure, genuine' (from pistos, 'faithful, reliable'). The anointing of the head is a royal action — kings were anointed on the head (1 Samuel 10:1; 16:13). Mark does not name this woman.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 10:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek aganaktoountes ('being indignant, being angry') is the same word used when the disciples were indignant about James and John's request (10:41). Mark says 'some' without specifying who — John 12:4 identifies Judas. The word apōleia ('waste, loss, destruction') frames the woman's gift as reckless extravagance.
5. Three hundred denarii represented roughly a year's wages for a common laborer (one denarius per day). The objection sounds morally serious — the poor are genuine. But Jesus will reframe the woman's act as itself a moral priority. The Greek enebrimōnto ('scolded harshly, rebuked, snorted at') is a strong word suggesting anger and contempt.
6. The Greek kalon ergon ('good/beautiful work') can mean either morally good or aesthetically beautiful. Jesus defends the woman against the group's hostility. The phrase 'in me' (en emoi) is striking — the act was performed on Jesus and finds its meaning in relation to him.
7. This echoes Deuteronomy 15:11 ('there will never cease to be poor in the land'), which is not a dismissal of poverty but a recognition that care for the poor is a permanent obligation. Jesus's point is not that the poor do not matter but that this moment — his imminent death — is unrepeatable. The opportunity to serve the poor is ongoing; the opportunity to anoint Jesus for burial is not.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 15:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

8. The phrase *proelaben myrisai* ('anointed beforehand') interprets the woman's act as prophetic preparation for Jesus's death. Whether she intended this meaning is unclear — Jesus assigns it regardless. The word *entaphiasmon* ('burial preparation') connects to 15:46 and 16:1, where the women who come to anoint Jesus after death find the tomb empty. This woman alone succeeded in anointing Jesus's body.
9. Jesus promises this unnamed woman a memorial (*mnēmosynon*) coextensive with the gospel's reach — wherever the good news goes, her story goes with it. The irony is pointed: the religious leaders will be remembered for plotting murder, the disciples for failing and fleeing, but this woman will be remembered for an act of extravagant devotion.
10. Mark places Judas's betrayal immediately after the anointing, creating a stark juxtaposition: a woman gives everything for Jesus; one of the twelve sells him out. The phrase *ho heis tōn dōdeka* ('the one of the twelve') emphasizes the scandal — this is not an outsider but a member of the inner circle. The Greek *paradoi* ('betray, hand over') uses the same *paradidōmi* language that runs throughout the passion narrative.
11. The chief priests' gladness (*echarēsan*) at finding an insider willing to betray Jesus contrasts with their earlier fear of public reaction (v. 2). The word *eukairōs* ('conveniently, at the right moment') suggests Judas was looking for a time when Jesus was away from the protective crowds.
12. The Passover lambs were sacrificed in the temple on the afternoon of Nisan 14. Mark's chronology places the Last Supper as a Passover meal — a point of tension with John's Gospel, which places the crucifixion on Nisan 14 when the lambs were being sacrificed. We render Mark's text as given.
13. A man carrying a water jar (*keramion hydatos*) would be unusual — water-carrying was typically women's work. This distinctive detail would make the man easy to identify. The prearranged sign suggests Jesus had made preparations, possibly secretly to prevent Judas from knowing the location in advance.
14. The Greek *katalyma* ('guest room, lodging') is the same word used in Luke 2:7 for the place where there was 'no room.' Here it refers to a room made available for Passover pilgrims. Jesus's use of 'my guest room' (to *katalyma mou*) suggests prior arrangement. The title 'the Teacher' (*ho didaskalos*) serves as an identifying code between Jesus and the homeowner.
15. The *anagaion* ('upper room') was a second-story room, often the largest space in a house. The word *estrōmenon* ('furnished, spread with carpets/cushions') indicates the room was already prepared for reclining at a meal. Passover preparations would include roasting the lamb, preparing unleavened bread, bitter herbs, and wine.
16. The phrase *kathōs eipen autois* ('just as he had told them') emphasizes Jesus's foreknowledge and control of events — even as his enemies plot against him, the details unfold according to his arrangements.
17. Evening (*opsias*) marked the beginning of Nisan 15 by Jewish reckoning, since the day began at sunset. Jesus arrives with 'the twelve' — including Judas, whose betrayal plan is already in motion.
18. The phrase *ho esthiōn met' emou* ('the one eating with me') echoes Psalm 41:9 ('Even my close friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted his heel against me'). Sharing a meal in ancient Near Eastern culture established a bond of trust and obligation — betrayal by a table companion was the deepest violation of hospitality and fellowship.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 41:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The Greek *mēti egō* expects a negative answer ('It's not I, is it?') — but the fact that each disciple asks reveals their own uncertainty about their loyalty. The phrase *heis kata heis* ('one by one, one after another') emphasizes that every single disciple asks the question, including Judas.
20. The Greek *embaptomenos* ('dipping') refers to dipping bread or herbs into a common dish — a standard part of the Passover meal. Jesus does not name Judas directly but narrows the identification. The shared dish intensifies the intimacy of the betrayal.
21. The statement holds two truths in tension: divine necessity ('as it is written') and human responsibility ('woe to that man'). The Son of Man's death is part of God's plan revealed in Scripture, yet Judas bears full moral culpability. The phrase *kalon autō ei ouk egennēthē* ('better for him if he had not been born') is among the most severe judgments Jesus pronounces on any individual.
22. The four verbs — took (*labōn*), blessed (*eulogēsas*), broke (*eklasen*), gave (*edōken*) — became the foundational pattern of Christian eucharistic practice. The blessing would have been the standard Jewish bread blessing: 'Blessed are you, O Lord our God, King of the universe, who brings forth bread from the earth.' The declaration *touto estin to sōma mou* ('this is my body') is without precedent in Jewish Passover practice and has generated centuries of theological debate about its meaning.
23. The Greek *eucharistēsas* ('having given thanks') is the root of 'Eucharist,' the term later used for the Lord's Supper. The Passover meal included four cups of wine; this is likely the third cup, called the 'cup of blessing' (cf. 1 Corinthians 10:16). Mark notes that all drank — including Judas, whose presence at this table of covenant renewal deepens the tragedy of his betrayal.
24. The phrase 'blood of the covenant' (*haima tēs diathēkēs*) echoes Exodus 24:8, where Moses sprinkled blood on the people saying, 'Behold the blood of the covenant that the LORD has made with you.' Jesus identifies his own death as the sacrifice that seals a new covenant. The SBLGNT does not include the word 'new' (*kainēs*) before 'covenant,' though some manuscripts add it under the influence of Luke 22:20 and 1 Corinthians 11:25. The phrase *hyper pollōn* ('for many') echoes Isaiah 53:12 and Mark 10:45.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 24:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Jesus declares this cup his last until the eschatological banquet in the kingdom of God. The phrase *kainon* ('new') suggests not merely temporal newness but qualitative transformation — a new kind of celebration in a renewed creation. The vow of abstinence gives the Last Supper both finality and hope: the next shared cup will be in God's kingdom.
26. The hymn (*hymnēsantes*) was almost certainly the second half of the Hallel — Psalms 115-118 — which was sung at the conclusion of the Passover meal. Psalm 118 contains the rejected-stone quotation Jesus used in 12:10-11 and the words 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord' (118:26), sung at his entry into Jerusalem (11:9). The psalms Jesus sang on the way to his death contained his own story.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 115-118. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The Greek *skandalisthēsēste* ('you will be caused to stumble, you will fall away') is from *skandalon* ('stumbling block'). The quotation is from Zechariah 13:7, with a significant change: the Hebrew has 'Strike the shepherd' (imperative), but the Greek uses the first person 'I will strike' — God himself strikes the shepherd. Jesus's death is simultaneously human violence and divine action.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 13:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. This promise is recalled by the young man at the empty tomb (16:7). The verb *proaxō* ('I will go before you, I will lead you') is a shepherd's term — the scattered sheep will be regathered by their risen shepherd in Galilee, where the story began. The passive *egerthēnai* ('to be raised') implies that God raises Jesus, consistent with early Christian theology.
29. Peter's declaration exemplifies confident self-assurance that overestimates one's own strength. The emphatic *ouk egō* ('not I') sets Peter apart from the group — he claims an exceptional loyalty that he will fail to deliver. This overconfidence was anticipated in Jesus's Olivet Discourse warning to 'watch and be on guard' (13:33).
30. Mark specifies 'twice' (*dis*) for the rooster and 'three times' (*tris*) for the denial — more precise than Matthew and Luke. The temporal markers 'today' (*sēmeron*) and 'this night' (*tautē tē nykti*) compress the timeline — Peter's failure is not distant but imminent. The verb *aparnēsē* ('you will deny, disown') means more than simple contradiction; it is a public repudiation of relationship.
31. The Greek *ekperissōs* ('emphatically, exceedingly, vehemently') shows Peter doubling down on his claim. The conditional *ean deē me synapothanein soi* ('even if it is necessary for me to die with you') raises the stakes to the ultimate level — Peter pledges his life. The final note that 'they all said the same' (*hōsautōs de kai pantes elegon*) means every disciple made this pledge and every disciple will break it.
32. The name *Gethsēmani* comes from the Aramaic *gat shemane*, meaning 'oil press' — an olive oil production site on the Mount of Olives. John 18:1 identifies it as a garden across the Kidron Valley from the temple. The instruction to 'sit here' separates the larger group from the inner three.
33. The same three disciples who witnessed the transfiguration (9:2) now witness the agony. The Greek *ekthambeisthai* ('to be deeply distressed, terrified, alarmed') is a strong word unique to Mark — it suggests something beyond sorrow, closer to horror or dread. The verb *adēmonein* ('to be troubled, anxious, distressed') adds a dimension of anguished restlessness.
34. The language echoes Psalm 42:5-6, 11 and 43:5 ('Why are you cast down, O my soul?'). The phrase *heōs thanatou* ('to the point of death') means the grief itself is life-threatening — this is not mere sadness but existential anguish. The command *grēgoreite* ('stay awake, watch') directly recalls the Olivet Discourse (13:34-37) — the very thing Jesus commanded, the disciples will fail to do.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 42:5-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Falling on the ground (*epipten epi tēs gēs*) is the posture of extreme desperation — not kneeling but prostration. The Greek *hōra* ('hour') carries the weight of the entire passion — it is the divinely appointed moment toward which the entire Gospel has been moving (cf. John 12:27). Jesus's prayer 'if it is possible' acknowledges God's sovereignty while expressing genuine human desire to avoid the coming suffering.
36. Mark preserves the Aramaic *Abba* alongside the Greek *ho patēr* ('the Father'). *Abba* is an intimate family term — not the casual 'daddy' sometimes claimed, but a term of close, trusting relationship rarely used for God in Jewish prayer. The 'cup' (*potērion*) is a biblical metaphor for God's wrath and judgment (Isaiah 51:17, 22; Jeremiah 25:15-16). Jesus's final clause — 'not what I will, but what you will' — is the supreme expression of obedient submission.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 51:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 25:15-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. Jesus addresses Peter by his original name 'Simon' — not 'Peter' (the Rock). The shift may signal disappointment: the man who pledged to die with Jesus cannot manage one hour of wakefulness. The Greek *mian hōran* ('one hour') is painfully minimal — the request was modest, and even that proved too much.
38. The Greek *peirasmon* ('temptation, trial, testing') encompasses both moral temptation and eschatological trial. The aphorism about spirit and flesh does not reflect later Greek dualism but a Semitic understanding: the human will (*pneuma*, 'spirit') desires faithfulness, but human limitation (*sarx*,

'flesh') makes failure possible. Jesus diagnoses the disciples' condition with compassion, not contempt.

39. The repetition — 'the same words' (ton auton logon) — is not formulaic but reflects the intensity of the struggle. Jesus's prayer does not evolve into acceptance through new arguments; he submits by returning to the same petition and the same surrender, again and again.
40. The Greek katabarynomenoi ('weighed down, very heavy') suggests a physical heaviness beyond mere tiredness — it may reflect the emotional exhaustion of grief and confusion. The clause ouk ēdeisan ti apokrithōsin autō ('they did not know what to answer him') echoes Peter's bewildered response at the transfiguration (9:6). When faced with divine moments beyond their comprehension, the disciples are speechless.
41. The Greek apechei is notoriously difficult — it can mean 'it is enough,' 'the account is settled,' or 'he (Judas) has received (his payment).' We follow the most common reading, 'It is enough.' The phrase ēlthen hē hōra ('the hour has come') marks the decisive turning point. The present tense paradidotai ('is being betrayed') captures the action in progress — Judas is already approaching.
42. The command egeisthe agōmen ('get up, let us go') is striking — Jesus does not flee but moves toward his betrayer. The verb ēggiken ('has drawn near, is at hand') is the same word used for the arrival of the kingdom of God (1:15). The hour of supreme evil and the hour of God's decisive action are one and the same moment.
43. Mark's characteristic euthys ('immediately') accelerates the narrative. The parenthetical 'one of the twelve' (heis tōn dōdeka) is repeated from verse 10, driving the scandal home again. The crowd comes armed with machairan ('swords') and xylōn ('clubs, wooden weapons') — the swords likely carried by temple police, the clubs by hired servants. The three groups — chief priests, scribes, elders — constitute the Sanhedrin.
44. The Greek syssēmon ('pre-arranged signal, sign') is a military term. The kiss (philēsō) was a standard greeting between a disciple and his rabbi — a sign of respect and affection. Judas weaponizes intimacy. The word asphalōs ('securely, safely, under guard') suggests they feared Jesus might escape or that the crowd might intervene.
45. The Greek katēphilēsen is an intensified form of phileō — 'kissed warmly, kissed repeatedly, kissed fervently.' The intensified verb makes the betrayal more grotesque: Judas does not give a perfunctory peck but an effusive greeting. The title 'Rabbi' ('my great one, my teacher') adds another layer of bitter irony — the language of discipleship employed to betray the master.
46. The Greek epebalon tas cheiras ('laid hands on') and ektratēsan ('seized, arrested') are violent terms. The arrest is physical and forceful. Jesus offers no resistance — a detail that becomes explicit in the next verses.
47. Mark does not identify this swordsman — John 18:10 names him as Peter and the servant as Malchus. The Greek ōtarion ('ear,' diminutive) may refer to the earlobe. The act of violence is futile and immediately abandoned — no further resistance occurs. Jesus will address this act in the next verse.
48. The Greek lēstēs ('robber, bandit, insurrectionist') is the same word used for the two men crucified alongside Jesus (15:27) and for those who had turned the temple into a 'den of robbers' (11:17). The term carried revolutionary connotations — Josephus uses it for armed Jewish resistance fighters. Jesus's question exposes the absurdity of armed force against a teacher who has been publicly accessible in the temple.
49. Jesus points out the hypocrisy of a nighttime ambush by those who could have arrested him publicly. The phrase alla hina plērōthōsin hai graphai ('but let the Scriptures be fulfilled') is not resignation but recognition — Jesus interprets his arrest as the fulfillment of God's plan revealed in Scripture.
50. The Greek apentes auton ('leaving him, abandoning him') and ephygon pantes ('all fled') fulfills the prediction of verse 27 — the sheep scatter when the shepherd is struck. The word pantes ('all') is absolute: not one disciple remained. The contrast with their collective pledge in verse 31 is devastating.
51. This episode is unique to Mark. The neaniskos ('young man') wearing only a sindona ('linen cloth') over his naked body has generated much speculation. Some identify him with Mark himself (an autobiographical detail), others with the young man at the tomb (16:5, same word neaniskos). The linen cloth (sindon) is the same word used for Jesus's burial shroud (15:46). The scene may symbolize the stripping away of everything — even a follower's last garment — in the hour of abandonment.
52. The flight into nakedness (gymnos ephygen) represents total loss — not merely of garments but of dignity and identity. The scene is the nadir of the disciples' failure: all have fled, and the last follower runs away with nothing. Some scholars see an echo of Amos 2:16 ('The bravest among warriors will flee naked on that day').
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 2:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. Mark does not name the high priest — Matthew 26:57 identifies him as Caiaphas. The assembly of 'all' (pantes) the chief priests, elders, and scribes constitutes a formal meeting of the Sanhedrin, the supreme Jewish governing council of seventy-one members.
54. Mark sets up a literary intercalation (sandwich structure): the trial of Jesus (vv. 55-65) is nested between the introduction (v. 54) and conclusion (vv. 66-72) of Peter's denial. While Jesus confesses his identity above, Peter denies his below. The phrase apo makrothen ('from a distance') captures Peter's compromised position — following, but not close enough to be identified as a disciple. The fire (phōs, literally 'light') will illuminate him in the darkness.

55. The Greek synedrion ('council, Sanhedrin') refers to the supreme judicial body. The imperfect tense *ezētoun* ('were seeking') and *ouch hēuriskon* ('were not finding') describe repeated, frustrated attempts. The outcome — execution (*thanatōsai*) — was predetermined; they needed only the legal basis. Mark presents the trial as a miscarriage of justice.
56. Jewish law required the testimony of at least two witnesses to agree (Deuteronomy 19:15). The Greek *pseudoemarturoun* ('bore false testimony') and the note that their testimony was not *isai* ('equal, consistent') means the legal standard was not met — even by the prosecution's own rules.
56. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 19:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
57. Mark again labels this testimony as false (*epseudomarturoun*), even though the substance of the claim (the next verse) contains a distorted version of something Jesus may actually have said (cf. John 2:19). The distortion, not the fabrication, makes it false witness.
58. The contrast between *cheiropoiēton* ('made with hands') and *acheiropoiēton* ('not made with hands') is theologically loaded. In the Septuagint, 'made with hands' often describes idols (Isaiah 2:18; 10:11). The charge distorts Jesus's words but ironically states a deep truth: through his death and resurrection ('three days'), a new temple — his risen body and the community of faith — will indeed replace the physical temple.
58. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 2:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
59. The repeated failure of witnesses to agree underscores the illegitimacy of the proceedings. By the Sanhedrin's own legal standards, there was no valid basis for conviction.
60. The high priest's frustration is evident — the witnesses have failed, so he intervenes directly. Standing 'in the midst' (*eis meson*) is an authoritative posture. His questions pressure Jesus to incriminate himself, since the external testimony has collapsed.
61. Jesus's silence fulfills Isaiah 53:7 ('He was oppressed and afflicted, yet he did not open his mouth'). The high priest's question combines two titles: 'the Christ' (*ho Christos*) and 'the Son of the Blessed One' (*ho huios tou eulogētou*). 'The Blessed One' (*tou eulogētou*) is a Jewish circumlocution for God, avoiding direct use of the divine name. This is the central question of Mark's entire Gospel.
61. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 53:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
62. This is the climactic moment of Mark's Gospel. The 'messianic secret' — Jesus's persistent command to silence about his identity — is broken at the moment it will cost him his life. The response *Egō eimi* ('I am') is an unambiguous affirmation that also echoes the divine self-identification (Exodus 3:14; Isaiah 43:10). Jesus then combines Psalm 110:1 ('seated at the right hand') with Daniel 7:13 ('coming with the clouds'), fusing messianic kingship with the divine Son of Man. 'Power' (*tēs dynamēs*) is another circumlocution for God.
62. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 110:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
62. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
62. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 43:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
62. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
63. Tearing garments (*diarrēxas tous chitōnas*) was the prescribed response to hearing blasphemy (cf. Mishnah Sanhedrin 7:5). The high priest's action declares that Jesus's words constitute blasphemy — a capital offense. The irony is that the garment-tearing may itself violate priestly regulations (Leviticus 21:10), though this point is debated.
63. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 21:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
64. The Greek *blasphēmias* ('blasphemy') technically refers to speech that dishonors God. The high priest interprets Jesus's messianic claim as blasphemous — either because claiming to be the Messiah was not itself blasphemous (it was not), or because the additional claim to sit at God's right hand was seen as equating himself with God. The unanimous verdict — *pantes katekrinan* ('all condemned') — means no dissenting voice is recorded (though Luke 23:51 notes Joseph of Arimathea's dissent).
65. The abuse fulfills Isaiah 50:6 ('I gave my back to those who struck me, and my cheeks to those who pulled out the beard; I did not hide my face from disgrace and spitting'). The blindfolding and demand to 'prophesy' ('tell us who hit you') mocks his prophetic claims. The cruel irony: at this very moment, Jesus's prophecy about Peter (v. 30) is being fulfilled in the courtyard below.
65. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 50:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
66. The word *katō* ('below') places Peter spatially beneath the room where Jesus is being tried — a physical detail with symbolic force. While Jesus stands before the council and speaks truth, Peter crouches below and lies. The challenger is a *paidiskē* ('servant girl') — the lowest-ranking person in the household, yet enough to break Peter's resolve.

67. The firelight that warms Peter also exposes him. The verb *emblepsasa* ('looked intently, fixed her gaze') suggests a careful, recognizing look. 'The Nazarene' (*tou Nazarēnou*) identifies Jesus by his hometown, which was considered insignificant (cf. John 1:46). The girl's statement is factual, not hostile — which makes Peter's reaction all the more revealing.
68. Peter's denial uses two verbs of non-knowledge: *oida* ('know') and *epistamai* ('understand'). The double denial is emphatic — he claims complete ignorance. Moving to the *proaulion* ('gateway, forecourt') is an attempt to distance himself from recognition. The rooster's first crow is the first warning, corresponding to Jesus's prediction of 'before the rooster crows twice' (v. 30). Some manuscripts omit the bracketed rooster crow here.
69. The Greek *hē paidiskē* ('the servant girl') with the article may indicate the same girl from verse 66, now broadening her accusation to the bystanders. The phrase *ex autōn* ('one of them') identifies Peter as part of Jesus's group — precisely the association he is trying to escape.
70. The imperfect *ērneito* ('he was denying, he kept denying') suggests ongoing, repeated denial. The bystanders identify Peter by his Galilean origin — Galilean Aramaic had a distinctive accent that was recognizable to Judeans (cf. Matthew 26:73). Peter's identity is written on his very speech, and no amount of denial can erase it.
71. The Greek *anathematizein* ('to invoke a curse, to place under anathema') means Peter calls down God's curse upon himself if he is lying — the strongest possible form of denial. The verb *omnynai* ('to swear an oath') adds a solemn oath to the curse. Peter refers to Jesus as 'this man' (*ton anthrōpon touton*) — refusing even to use his name. The escalation from simple denial (v. 68) to cursing and swearing (v. 71) traces Peter's descent.
72. The Greek *epibalōn eklaien* is difficult — *epibalōn* could mean 'having thrown himself down' (physical collapse), 'having set his mind on it' (reflection), or 'having begun' (bursting into tears). We render it 'broke down and wept,' which captures the emotional collapse. The imperfect *eklaien* ('he was weeping, he kept weeping') indicates sustained, ongoing grief — not a single outburst but a continuing flood of tears. Peter's story in Mark ends here in complete brokenness, with restoration implied only by the angel's specific mention of his name at the empty tomb (16:7).

15

Summary: *Mark 15 narrates the Roman trial, crucifixion, death, and burial of Jesus. The chapter opens early in the morning as the Sanhedrin hands Jesus over to Pilate. After a brief interrogation, Pilate offers the crowd a choice between Jesus and Barabbas; they choose Barabbas and demand crucifixion. Roman soldiers mock Jesus with a purple robe and crown of thorns. Simon of Cyrene is pressed into carrying the cross. Jesus is crucified at Golgotha between two rebels, mocked by passersby and religious leaders, and cries out in Aramaic, 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' He dies with a loud cry, the temple curtain tears from top to bottom, and a Roman centurion declares, 'Truly this man was the Son of God.' Women who followed Jesus from Galilee watch from a distance. Joseph of Arimathea buries Jesus in a rock-hewn tomb.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The cry of dereliction (v. 34) — Jesus quoting Psalm 22:1 in Aramaic — is the most theologically disturbing utterance in the Gospels. Mark does not soften or explain it. The tearing of the temple curtain (v. 38) from top to bottom signals divine action opening access to God's presence. The centurion's confession (v. 39) is the first time in Mark that any human being calls Jesus 'Son of God' without being corrected or silenced — and it comes from a pagan executioner standing at the foot of the cross. The women named in verses 40–41 become the crucial witnesses who will connect the crucifixion to the empty tomb.*

Translation Friction: *The choice between Jesus and Barabbas involves a Passover release custom for which no extra-biblical evidence exists. Mark presents it as established practice; we render his account as given. The cry 'Eloi, Eloi' (v. 34) is Aramaic (Hebrew would be 'Eli, Eli' as in Matthew); the bystanders' confusion with Elijah may reflect genuine mishearing or may be Markan irony. The centurion's declaration can be translated 'the Son of God' or 'a son of God' — Greek lacks the indefinite article, and a Roman soldier might have meant 'a divine man' rather than making a Christian confession. The ambiguity may be intentional.*

Connections: *Psalm 22 pervades the chapter: the casting of lots for garments (v. 24; Ps 22:18), the mocking (vv. 29–32; Ps 22:7–8), and the cry of abandonment (v. 34; Ps 22:1). Isaiah 53 is present in Jesus's silence before accusers and his burial with the rich. The darkness at noon (v. 33) echoes Amos 8:9–10 ('I will make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in broad daylight'). The torn curtain connects to the temple theme running through Mark 11–13.*

¹As soon as it was morning, the chief priests held a consultation with the elders and scribes and the whole council. They bound Jesus, led him away, and handed him over to Pilate. ²Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?" He answered him, "You say so." ³The chief priests accused him of many things. ⁴Pilate again asked him, "Have you no answer? See how

many charges they bring against you." ⁵But Jesus made no further answer, so that Pilate was amazed. ⁶Now at the feast he used to release for them one prisoner whom they requested. ⁷A man called Barabbas was imprisoned with the rebels who had committed murder during the insurrection. ⁸The crowd came up and began to ask Pilate to do as he usually did for them. ⁹Pilate answered them, "Do you want me to release for you the King of the Jews?" ¹⁰For he perceived that it was out of envy that the chief priests had handed him over. ¹¹But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to have him release Barabbas for them instead. ¹²Pilate again said to them, "Then what shall I do with the man you call the King of the Jews?" ¹³They shouted back, "Crucify him!" ¹⁴Pilate said to them, "Why? What evil has he done?" But they shouted all the more, "Crucify him!" ¹⁵So Pilate, wishing to satisfy the crowd, released Barabbas for them and, after having Jesus flogged, handed him over to be crucified. ¹⁶The soldiers led him away inside the palace, that is, the praetorium, and they called together the whole battalion. ¹⁷They put a purple cloak on him and, twisting together a crown of thorns, they put it on him. ¹⁸And they began to salute him: "Hail, King of the Jews!" ¹⁹They struck his head with a reed and spit on him and knelt down in mock worship before him. ²⁰When they had mocked him, they stripped him of the purple cloak and put his own clothes on him. Then they led him out to crucify him. ²¹They compelled a passerby, Simon of Cyrene, who was coming in from the country — the father of Alexander and Rufus — to carry his cross. ²²They brought him to the place called Golgotha, which means Place of a Skull. ²³They offered him wine mixed with myrrh, but he did not take it. ²⁴And they crucified him and divided his garments among them, casting lots for them to decide what each should take. ²⁵It was the third hour when they crucified him. ²⁶The inscription of the charge against him read: "The King of the Jews." ²⁷And with him they crucified two rebels, one on his right and one on his left. ²⁸Those who passed by mocked him, shaking their heads and saying, "Ha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, ²⁹Indeed, save thyself, and come down from the cross. ³⁰In the same way the chief priests also mocked him among themselves with the scribes, saying, "He saved others; he cannot save himself. ³¹Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, so that we may see and believe!" Those who were crucified with him also reviled him. ³²When the sixth hour came, darkness fell over the whole land until the ninth hour. ³³At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lema sabachthani?" — which means, "My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?" ³⁴Some of the bystanders hearing it said, "Look, he is calling Elijah." ³⁵Someone ran and filled a sponge with sour wine, put it on a reed, and held it up to him to drink, saying, "Wait, let us see whether Elijah will come to take him down." ³⁶Then Jesus let out a loud cry and breathed his last. ³⁷And the curtain of the temple was torn in two, from top to bottom. ³⁸When the centurion who stood facing him saw that he breathed his last in this way, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God." ³⁹There were also women looking on from a distance, among whom were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James the younger and of Joses, and Salome. ⁴⁰When he was in Galilee, they followed him and served him, and there were many other women who had come up with him to Jerusalem. ⁴¹When evening had come, since it was the day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath, ⁴²Joseph of Arimathea, a respected member of the council who was himself waiting for the kingdom of God, took courage and went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. ⁴³Pilate was surprised that he was already dead. He summoned the centurion and asked him whether Jesus had already died. ⁴⁴When he learned from the centurion that Jesus was dead, he granted the body to Joseph. ⁴⁵He bought a linen shroud and, taking him down, wrapped him in the linen shroud and laid him in a tomb that had been cut out of the rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb. ⁴⁶Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joses saw where he was laid.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *prōi* ('early morning') likely refers to the fourth watch (3-6 AM). The verb *paredōkan* ('handed over') is again the *paradidōmi* chain: God hands over the Son, Judas hands over Jesus to the authorities, and now the authorities hand him over to Rome. Each use of this verb links divine purpose to human action. Pontius Pilate served as prefect of Judea from AD 26-36.
2. The charge has been reformulated for Roman ears: the Sanhedrin's religious charge ('Christ, Son of the Blessed One,' 14:61) becomes a political charge ('King of the Jews'). Jesus's response *sy legeis* ('you say so') is ambiguous — it can be read as affirmation, deflection, or ironic agreement. It neither confirms nor denies in a way Pilate can use.
3. The imperfect *katēgoroun* ('were accusing, kept accusing') indicates a sustained barrage of charges. Mark does not specify the content, focusing instead on volume — 'many things' (*polla*). The chief priests function as prosecutors before the Roman governor.

4. Pilate's surprise reveals that silence before a Roman tribunal was highly unusual — defendants typically mounted vigorous defenses. The word *posa* ('how many, how great') emphasizes the volume of accusations. Pilate seems to be giving Jesus an opportunity to defend himself.
5. The Greek *thaumazein* ('to be amazed, to marvel') indicates that Jesus's silence is extraordinary. Isaiah 53:7 provides the theological background: 'He was oppressed and he was afflicted, yet he did not open his mouth; like a lamb that is led to the slaughter.' Jesus's silence is not passive but deliberate — a refusal to participate in a process whose outcome is already determined.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 53:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The imperfect *apelyen* ('he used to release') describes a recurring custom. No extra-biblical source confirms this practice, though Roman magistrates did sometimes grant amnesty. Mark presents it as an established Passover tradition — a feast celebrating liberation from bondage includes the liberation of a prisoner.
7. The name *Barabbas* (*bar-abba*) means 'son of the father' in Aramaic — an ironic contrast with Jesus, who is the Son of the Father. The *stasiastōn* ('rebels, insurrectionists') and *stasis* ('uprising, revolt') indicate that Barabbas was involved in armed political resistance against Rome. The crowd will choose the violent revolutionary over the peaceful messiah.
8. The crowd initiates the request — they come to Pilate expecting the customary release. The verb *anabas* ('having come up') suggests movement upward toward the praetorium. The crowd has not yet been prompted to choose between Jesus and Barabbas.
9. Pilate's use of the title 'King of the Jews' (*ton basilea tōn Ioudaiōn*) may be sarcastic, politically provocative, or an attempt to use popular support for Jesus to free him. The title will appear on the cross (v. 26), making the Roman charge visible to all.
10. The Greek *phthonon* ('envy, jealousy') is Pilate's assessment of the chief priests' motivation. Even a Roman governor could see that this was not about justice or theology but about threatened power. The verb *eginōsken* ('he knew, he perceived') implies ongoing awareness, not sudden insight.
11. The Greek *aneseisan* ('stirred up, incited, shook up') suggests active agitation. The chief priests work the crowd to ensure their preferred outcome. The people who shouted 'Hosanna' days earlier (11:9-10) are now manipulated into demanding the release of a murderer.
12. Pilate's question — 'What shall I do with...' — is extraordinary for a Roman governor. He defers the sentence to the mob, abdicating judicial responsibility. The phrase *hon legete* ('whom you call') distances Pilate from the title; he attributes it to the crowd rather than adopting it himself.
13. The Greek *staurōson* ('crucify!') is an aorist imperative — sharp, urgent, decisive. Crucifixion was Rome's penalty for slaves, rebels, and non-citizens. It was designed to be maximally painful and publicly humiliating. The crowd demands the most degrading form of execution available.
14. Pilate's question *ti gar epoiēsen kakon* ('what evil has he done?') implies he has found no basis for the death penalty. The adverb *perissōs* ('exceedingly, all the more') shows the crowd's intensity escalating beyond reason. The repetition of 'Crucify him!' without any stated crime reveals that this is a mob, not a judicial proceeding.
15. The Greek *to hikanon poiēsai* ('to do what was sufficient, to satisfy') reveals Pilate's motivation as political expediency, not justice. The verb *phragellōsas* ('having flogged') refers to the Roman *flagellum* — a whip with leather thongs embedded with bone or metal fragments. Roman flogging was so severe it sometimes killed the victim. The *paradidōmi* chain reaches its final human link: Pilate hands Jesus over to execution.
16. The *praitōrion* was the governor's official residence — likely either Herod's palace on the western hill or the Antonia Fortress adjacent to the temple. The *speira* ('cohort, battalion') was normally 600 soldiers, though the word could be used loosely for a smaller detachment. Mark explains the term for his non-Palestinian readers.
17. The purple cloak (*porphyran*) mocks royal attire — purple was the color of kings and emperors, and the soldiers drape Jesus in a parody of royal investiture. The *akanthinon stephanon* ('crown of thorns') is fashioned from a thorny plant common in Palestine. Whether intended primarily to cause pain or to mock a radiant crown (like those on Roman coins) is debated; both functions were likely served.
18. The greeting *Chaire basileu tōn Ioudaiōn* ('Hail, King of the Jews!') parodies the salute to the emperor: 'Ave, Caesar!' (*Chaire, Kaisar*). The soldiers mock Jesus by performing a coronation ritual in reverse — clothing, crowning, and acclaiming him as king, but in contempt rather than honor.
19. The reed (*kalamō*) may have served as a mock scepter before being used to strike. The triad of actions — striking, spitting, kneeling — is a grotesque inversion of royal honor. The verb *prosekynoun* ('worshiped, bowed down to') is the word used for genuine worship throughout the New Testament. Mark's readers would see the irony: the soldiers' mockery accidentally performs the truth.
20. The return of Jesus's own garments means the crowd watching the crucifixion procession would not have seen the mockery. The shift from indoor abuse to outdoor execution transitions the narrative from the private world of soldiers' cruelty to the public spectacle of crucifixion.
21. The Greek *angareuousin* ('they compel, conscript, press into service') is a Persian loanword for forced labor under military authority. Simon was from Cyrene, a city in modern Libya with a large Jewish community. Mark identifies him as 'the father of Alexander and Rufus' — a detail that only makes sense if these men were known to Mark's audience, suggesting they became part of the early Christian community (cf. Romans 16:13, which mentions a Rufus). The cross (*stauros*) that Simon carried was the horizontal beam (*patibulum*); the vertical post remained fixed at the execution site.
22. *Golgotha* is the Aramaic *gulgulta* ('skull'). The Latin equivalent is *calvaria*, from which 'Calvary' derives. The name may describe the skull-like shape of the rocky outcrop or may refer to its use as an execution site. Mark translates the Aramaic for his Greek-speaking audience. The site was outside the city walls (cf. Hebrews 13:12).

- 23.** Wine mixed with myrrh (esmyrnismenon oionon) may have been offered as a mild narcotic to dull pain — a charitable practice attributed to Jerusalem's women in the Talmud (Sanhedrin 43a). Jesus's refusal to take it suggests a determination to face death with full consciousness. This may also fulfill his vow not to drink 'of the fruit of the vine' until the kingdom comes (14:25).
- 24.** Mark narrates the crucifixion itself with stark brevity — three words in Greek: kai staurousin auton ('and they crucify him'). No description of the physical process is given. The division of garments fulfills Psalm 22:18 ('They divide my garments among them, and for my clothing they cast lots'), though Mark does not explicitly cite the psalm. A crucified person's possessions became the executioners' perquisite.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 22:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** The 'third hour' (hōra tritē) is approximately 9 AM by Jewish time-reckoning (counting from sunrise at approximately 6 AM). This creates a tension with John 19:14, which places Jesus still before Pilate at 'the sixth hour.' Various harmonization proposals exist; we render Mark's chronology as given.
- 26.** Roman practice required a titulus — a placard stating the condemned person's crime — to be carried before or attached to the cross. The charge ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn ('The King of the Jews') is political rather than religious. From Pilate's perspective, Jesus was executed for sedition — claiming kingship in Caesar's domain. From Mark's perspective, the inscription is ironically true.
- 27.** The Greek lēstas ('rebels, bandits, insurrectionists') is the same word used in verse 48 and in 11:17. These were likely associates of Barabbas's insurrection (v. 7). The positioning — one on the right, one on the left — recalls James and John's request to sit at Jesus's right and left in his glory (10:37). Jesus told them they did not know what they were asking; the positions of honor in his 'glory' are occupied by criminals on crosses.
- 28.** Verse 28 is not included in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears in later manuscripts and quotes Isaiah 53:12 ('he was numbered with the transgressors'). While the quotation is theologically apt, the verse is almost certainly a later scribal addition influenced by Luke 22:37. We note its absence from the earliest and best manuscripts.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** The head-shaking (kinountes tas kephalas) fulfills Psalm 22:7 ('All who see me mock me; they hurl insults, shaking their heads'). The Greek eblasphēmoun ('reviled, blasphemed') is the same word used for the charge against Jesus — those who accused him of blasphemy now commit it themselves. The temple accusation from 14:58 has become street mockery.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 22:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The imperative sōson seauton ('save yourself!') is deeply ironic in light of 8:35 ('whoever wants to save their life will lose it'). The demand to 'come down from the cross' assumes that divine power should manifest as self-preservation. The entire Gospel has been arguing the opposite: divine power is revealed through self-giving suffering.
- 31.** The phrase allous esōsen ('he saved others') is an unintended confession of Jesus's healing ministry. The taunt heauton ou dynatai sōsai ('he cannot save himself') states the theological truth Mark's Gospel has been building: the Messiah saves precisely by not saving himself. The paradox of the cross — power through powerlessness — is articulated by Jesus's enemies without their understanding it.
- 32.** The demand 'that we may see and believe' (hina idōmen kai pisteusōmen) inverts the order Jesus requires: believing in order to see, not seeing in order to believe (cf. John 20:29). The title 'King of Israel' (basileus Israēl) is the Jewish form of the Roman charge 'King of the Jews.' Even the two co-crucified men join the mockery (synestaurōmenoi, 'those crucified with him') — in Mark, there is no penitent thief. Jesus is entirely alone.
- 33.** The sixth to ninth hours are approximately noon to 3 PM. Darkness at midday echoes Amos 8:9 ('I will make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in broad daylight'). The phrase eph' holēn tēn gēn could mean 'over the whole land' (of Israel) or 'over the whole earth.' The darkness is cosmic and theological — creation itself responds to the death of its creator.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Amos 8:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** This is Psalm 22:1 in Aramaic (Eloi is Aramaic; Matthew's Eli is Hebrew). The cry is the only saying from the cross that Mark records. Whether Jesus is expressing genuine experience of divine abandonment, praying the entire psalm (which moves from lament to trust and praise by its end), or both, has been debated throughout Christian history. Mark does not soften the cry or explain it. The theological reality is presented without commentary: the Son of God experiences forsakenness.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 22:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The confusion between 'Eloi' (My God) and 'Elijah' (Ēlian) may be genuine mishearing — especially by non-Aramaic speakers — or may be deliberate Markan irony. Jewish tradition held that Elijah would appear before the messianic age (Malachi 4:5). The bystanders' interpretation reduces the most profound theological cry in the narrative to a misidentified name.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Malachi 4:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The sour wine (oxous, 'vinegar') was the cheap wine (posca) commonly drunk by soldiers and laborers — not a cruelty but possibly an act of rough compassion. The sponge on a reed echoes Psalm 69:21 ('for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink'). The words 'let us see whether Elijah will come' may be mockery or genuine curiosity.

36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 69:21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. The loud cry (phōnēn megalēn) before death is medically unusual — crucifixion typically ended in gradual asphyxiation, and the dying person would not have the strength for a loud shout. Mark may intend the cry to suggest that Jesus's death, though real, was not merely the result of physical exhaustion but a deliberate release. The Greek *exepneusen* ('breathed out, expired') is clinical and final.
38. The *katapetasma* ('curtain, veil') could refer to either the inner curtain separating the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place (the Holy of Holies), or the outer curtain visible from outside the temple. If the inner curtain, the tearing symbolizes direct access to God's presence; if the outer, it is a public sign visible to all. The direction 'from top to bottom' (ap' anōthen heōs katō) indicates divine action — God tears the curtain from heaven. The verb *eschisthē* ('was torn') uses the same root as the tearing of the heavens at Jesus's baptism (1:10, *schizomenous*), framing Jesus's ministry between two divine tearings.
39. The centurion (*kentyriōn*, a Latin loanword) is the first human being in Mark to call Jesus 'Son of God' (*huios theou*) without being rebuked or silenced. The messianic secret is finally broken — but by a pagan soldier at the foot of a cross, not by a disciple in a moment of glory. The Greek lacks the definite article: *huios theou* could mean 'the Son of God' or 'a son of God' ('a divine man'). Mark almost certainly intends the full Christian meaning, while acknowledging the centurion's limited understanding. What prompted this confession? Mark says it was seeing 'that he breathed his last in this way' (*hoti houtōs exepneusen*) — the manner of Jesus's death, not miracles or signs, revealed his identity.
40. The women are introduced for the first time in the narrative, yet they have been present all along (v. 41). Mark names three: Mary Magdalene (from Magdala, a town on the Sea of Galilee), Mary the mother of James and Joses (possibly Jesus's mother; cf. 6:3), and Salome (possibly the mother of James and John; cf. Matthew 27:56). These women become the crucial link between the crucifixion (they see where he dies), the burial (they see where he is laid, v. 47), and the empty tomb (they go to anoint him, 16:1).
41. The verbs *ēkolouthoun* ('they were following') and *diēkonoun* ('they were serving, ministering') are the same words used for discipleship throughout Mark. These women were disciples — following and serving Jesus from Galilee to Jerusalem. The imperfect tense indicates sustained, ongoing service. Mark reveals that Jesus's movement included a significant number of women disciples whose presence he had not previously mentioned.
42. The Greek *paraskeuē* ('Preparation') was the technical term for Friday, the day before the Sabbath, when work had to be completed before sunset. Mark explains the term for non-Jewish readers: 'the day before the Sabbath' (*prosabbaton*). The urgency is clear — burial must happen before sunset when Sabbath begins, and Jewish law prohibited leaving a body on a cross overnight (Deuteronomy 21:22-23).
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 21:22-23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. Joseph is described as *euschēmōn bouleutēs* ('a respected/prominent council member') — meaning he was a member of the Sanhedrin that had just condemned Jesus. The phrase *prosdexomenos tēn basileian tou theou* ('waiting for the kingdom of God') identifies him as sympathetic to Jesus's message. The Greek *tolmēsas* ('having taken courage, having dared') reveals that his request required bravery — he was risking his social position and political standing by publicly associating with a condemned criminal.
44. Crucifixion victims typically survived for days. That Jesus died in approximately six hours surprised even Pilate, who verified the death through the centurion — an official confirmation. The Greek *ethaumasen* ('was surprised, wondered') and the word *palai* ('already, some time ago') indicate that rapid death was unusual.
45. The Greek *ptōma* ('corpse, fallen body') is a harsher word than *sōma* ('body'), emphasizing the physical reality of death. The verb *edōrēsato* ('granted, gave as a gift') indicates an official release — Roman practice sometimes denied burial to the executed, so Pilate's permission was not automatic.
46. The *sindōn* ('linen cloth, shroud') is the same word used for the young man's garment in 14:51-52 — a possible literary connection. Rock-hewn tombs with rolling stones were typical of wealthy families in first-century Jerusalem. Joseph's tomb fulfills Isaiah 53:9 ('his grave was with the rich in his death'). The stone (*lithon*) was a large disk-shaped rock rolled along a groove to seal the entrance — it would require significant effort to move.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 53:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. The imperfect *etheōroun* ('they were watching, they were observing') indicates sustained attention — these women carefully noted the tomb's location. This detail is essential to the narrative: when they return on Sunday morning (16:1-2), they know exactly where to go. Their witness provides continuity between the crucifixion, burial, and empty tomb.

16

Summary: *Mark 16 narrates the discovery of the empty tomb and, in the longer ending, the appearances of the risen Jesus and his commission to the disciples. Early on the first day of the week, three women come to anoint Jesus's body. They find the stone rolled away, a young man in a white robe who announces that Jesus has risen, and the command to tell the disciples — especially Peter — that Jesus is going ahead of them to Galilee. The original ending of Mark at verse 8 leaves the women fleeing in trembling and astonishment, saying nothing to anyone because they were afraid. The longer ending (verses 9-20) records appearances to Mary Magdalene, two disciples, and the eleven, followed by the Great Commission with signs accompanying believers, and Jesus's ascension.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *If Mark's Gospel originally ended at verse 8, it is one of the most daring conclusions in all literature — a story of good news that ends in silence and fear. The emptiness of the tomb is presented as evidence not through appearances or proofs but through absence. The young man's message (v. 7) specifically names Peter, the disciple who denied Jesus most shamefully — an implicit promise of restoration. The longer ending (vv. 9-20), though not from Mark's hand, became deeply influential in Christian practice and theology, particularly the commission to 'go into all the world' and the signs that accompany believers.*

Translation Friction: *The textual evidence is clear: Mark 16:9-20 does not appear in the two earliest and most reliable Greek manuscripts (Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus), and early church fathers (Clement of Alexandria, Origen) show no knowledge of it. Eusebius and Jerome both note its absence from the best manuscripts available to them. The vocabulary, style, and theology of vv. 9-20 differ markedly from the rest of Mark. However, the passage was widely known by the second century and became part of the received text. We include it with a textual note, as it has shaped Christian reading for centuries regardless of its origin.*

Connections: *The women's visit connects to 15:40, 47 (the same women who witnessed crucifixion and burial). The young man in white (v. 5) may connect to the young man who fled naked in 14:51-52 (now clothed). The message to 'go to Galilee' (v. 7) fulfills Jesus's promise in 14:28. The fear and silence of v. 8 contrasts with the Olivet Discourse command to 'stay awake' (13:37). The longer ending draws on traditions preserved in Luke 24, John 20, and early preaching summaries in Acts.*

¹When the Sabbath was past, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices so that they might go and anoint him. ²Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the tomb when the sun had risen. ³They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance of the tomb?" ⁴Looking up, they saw that the stone had been rolled back — for it was very large. ⁵Entering the tomb, they saw a young man sitting on the right side, dressed in a white robe, and they were alarmed. ⁶He said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified. He has been raised; he is not here. See the place where they laid him. ⁷But go, tell his disciples and Peter that he is going before you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you." ⁸They went out and fled from the tomb, for trembling and astonishment had seized them. And they said nothing to anyone, for they were afraid. ⁹Now after he rose early on the first day of the week, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons. ¹⁰She went and told those who had been with him, as they mourned and wept. ¹¹But when they heard that he was alive and had been seen by her, they would not believe it. ¹²After this he appeared in another form to two of them as they were walking into the country. ¹³They went back and told the rest, but they did not believe them either. ¹⁴Afterward he appeared to the eleven themselves as they were reclining at table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they had not believed those who saw him after he had risen. ¹⁵And he said to them, "Go into all the world and proclaim the gospel to all creation. ¹⁶Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved, but whoever does not believe will be condemned. ¹⁷And these signs will accompany those who believe: in my name they will cast out demons; they will speak in new tongues; ¹⁸They will take up serpents. And if they drink any deadly thing, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, then they will recover. ¹⁹So then the Lord Jesus, after he had spoken to them, was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God. ²⁰And they went out and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the message by the signs that accompanied it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The women waited until the Sabbath ended (Saturday evening) to purchase *arōmata* ('aromatic spices') for anointing the body — a task the anointing woman of 14:3-9 had already performed, though these women apparently did not know. The same three women from 15:40 maintain the chain of witness. Their intention to anoint presupposes they expect to find a dead body, not an empty tomb.
2. The Greek *lian prōi* ('very early') combined with *anateilantos tou hēliou* ('the sun having risen') places the visit at dawn on Sunday morning. The phrase *tē mia tōn sabbatōn* ('on the first of the sabbaths/week') uses the Semitic way of naming weekdays by counting from the Sabbath. This is the day Christians will later call 'the Lord's Day.'
3. The imperfect *elegon* ('they were saying') suggests an ongoing conversation during the walk. The stone (*lithos*) described in 15:46 was substantial — the women recognize they cannot move it themselves. Their practical concern reveals that they have no expectation of resurrection; they anticipate a sealed tomb containing a dead body.
4. The Greek *anablepsasai* ('having looked up') suggests the tomb was above them on a hillside, or that they lifted their eyes from the path. The passive *apokeklystai* ('had been rolled back') implies an agent without naming one — the passive of divine action. Mark adds the explanatory note 'for it was very large' (*ēn gar megas sphodra*), underscoring that human effort alone could not account for its removal.
5. The *neaniskon* ('young man') is the same word used in 14:51 for the man who fled naked at Jesus's arrest. If the connection is intentional, the one who fled in shame is now clothed in glory (*stolēn leukēn*, 'white robe') — a symbol of transformation. White robes are associated with heavenly beings throughout Jewish and Christian literature. The verb *exethambēthēsan* ('they were utterly alarmed, astonished') is the same strong word used for Jesus's distress in Gethsemane (14:33) — it denotes overwhelming emotion in the face of the numinous.
6. The announcement is structured in three parts: identification ('Jesus of Nazareth, who was crucified'), proclamation ('he has been raised'), and evidence ('he is not here — see the place'). The passive *ēgerthē* ('he has been raised') attributes the resurrection to God's action — Jesus did not raise himself but was raised by the Father. The perfect participle *ton estaurōmenon* ('the crucified one') is significant: even risen, Jesus remains 'the crucified one.' The resurrection does not erase the crucifixion but vindicates the one who was crucified.
7. The specific mention of Peter — 'his disciples and Peter' (*tois mathētais autou kai tō Petrō*) — is unique to Mark and deeply significant. Peter, who denied Jesus three times, is singled out not for condemnation but for inclusion. The message assures him that his denial has not disqualified him from discipleship. The verb *proagei* ('he goes before you') fulfills 14:28 exactly. The phrase *kathōs eipen hymin* ('just as he told you') confirms that Jesus's predictions have been reliable throughout — his word is trustworthy.
8. If Mark's Gospel originally ended here, this is its final line. The Greek *tromos* ('trembling') and *ekstasis* ('astonishment, ecstasy, being beside oneself') describe the overwhelming response to a divine encounter. The double negative *oudenī ouden* ('nothing to no one, not a word to anyone') is emphatic. The final word — *ephobounto gar* ('for they were afraid') — is grammatically unusual (ending a book with the conjunction *gar*, 'for'), leading some to argue that the original ending was lost. Others argue that this abrupt, open ending is intentionally provocative: it leaves the reader to decide whether to be like the women (silent and afraid) or to proclaim what they have heard. The fear is not cowardice but numinous awe — the appropriate human response to the inbreaking of God.
9. **TEXTUAL NOTE:** Mark 16:9-20 (the 'Longer Ending') does not appear in the earliest and most reliable manuscripts, including Codex Sinaiticus and Codex Vaticanus (4th century). Eusebius and Jerome attest that it was absent from most Greek copies known to them. The vocabulary, style, and content differ notably from Mark 1:1-16:8. Most scholars conclude that these verses were added by a later hand to provide resurrection appearances and a commission that Mark's abrupt ending at verse 8 seemed to lack. The passage was widely known by the mid-second century and became part of the received text tradition. We include it as a significant part of the manuscript tradition while noting its secondary status.
9. The introduction of Mary Magdalene with the explanatory note about seven demons (*hepta daimonia*) reads as though she has not been mentioned before — a sign of a different author. The tradition of her encounter with the risen Jesus is also preserved in John 20:11-18.
10. The phrase *tois met' autou genomenois* ('those who had been with him') is an unusual circumlocution for the disciples, not characteristic of Mark's style. Their mourning (*penthousei*) and weeping (*klaiousin*) reflect their grief at Jesus's death and their ignorance of the resurrection.
11. The Greek *ēpistēsan* ('they disbelieved, they refused to believe') introduces a theme of disbelief that runs through the longer ending (cf. vv. 13, 14). This stands in some tension with Mark's earlier narrative, where the disciples' problem was more often misunderstanding than outright refusal to believe.
12. This is a compressed summary of the Emmaus road narrative found in Luke 24:13-35. The phrase *en hetera morphē* ('in another form') explains why the two did not recognize Jesus — a detail Luke develops at greater length. The Greek *agron* ('country, countryside, field') corresponds to Luke's village of Emmaus.
13. The pattern of testimony met with disbelief continues. The Greek *tois loipois* ('the rest, the remaining ones') refers to the other disciples. The repeated refusal to believe builds toward the rebuke in verse 14.
14. The appearance to 'the eleven' (*tois hendeka*) reflects Judas's absence. The Greek *ōneidisen* ('rebuked, reproached') is a strong word. The compound *sklērokardian* ('hardness of heart') echoes Mark 3:5, 6:52, 8:17, and 10:5 — a major Markan theme applied here with particular force. Even after multiple testimonies, the disciples refused to believe until confronted directly by the risen Jesus.

15. The commission is universal in scope: *ton kosmon hapanta* ('the whole world') and *pasē tē ktisei* ('all creation'). The verb *kēryxate* ('proclaim, herald') is an aorist imperative — urgent and decisive. This parallels the commission in Matthew 28:19-20 and extends the gospel's reach beyond ethnic Israel to all humanity, and indeed to the created order itself.
16. The pairing of faith (*pisteusas*) and baptism (*baptistheis*) reflects early Christian practice where conversion was expressed through baptism. Note that the second clause mentions only disbelief — not the absence of baptism — as the basis for condemnation (*katakristhēsetai*). The passage attributes salvation to faith expressed in baptism, and condemnation to the refusal of faith.
17. The signs (*sēmeia*) listed here correspond to activities recorded in Acts: casting out demons (Acts 16:18), speaking in tongues (Acts 2:4; 10:46; 19:6). The phrase *en tō onomati mou* ('in my name') indicates that these signs derive their power from Jesus's authority, not from the practitioners themselves. The Greek *glōssais kainais* ('new tongues') has been interpreted as both foreign languages and ecstatic speech.
18. The handling of serpents corresponds to Paul's experience on Malta (Acts 28:3-6). Protection from poison has no direct parallel in Acts but reflects the broader theme of divine protection in the mission. Healing by laying on hands (*cheiras epithēsousin*) continues Jesus's own practice (Mark 5:23; 6:5; 8:23, 25). These signs are presented as accompaniments to mission, not as ends in themselves.
19. The title *ho kyrios Iesous* ('the Lord Jesus') is not characteristic of Mark (who typically uses 'Jesus' alone) and reflects later Christian usage. The ascension (*anēlēphthē*, 'was taken up') is described more fully in Luke 24:51 and Acts 1:9-11. The phrase *ekathisen ek dexiōn tou theou* ('sat down at the right hand of God') fulfills Psalm 110:1, which Jesus quoted in 12:36 and 14:62. The 'right hand' denotes the position of supreme honor and co-regency.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The final verse provides a summary of the apostolic mission. The Greek *synergountos* ('working together with') describes the Lord's ongoing partnership with the disciples in mission — he is not absent after the ascension but actively cooperating through signs. The verb *bebaiontos* ('confirming, establishing') indicates that the signs serve the word, not vice versa. The longer ending thus transforms Mark's story from an open, unsettling conclusion (v. 8) into a triumphant summary of the church's mission — a resolution that later generations clearly felt the Gospel needed.

Luke

1

Summary: *Luke 1 opens with a formal literary prologue addressed to Theophilus, establishing Luke's method as careful, orderly investigation. The chapter then narrates two angelic birth announcements: Gabriel appears first to the priest Zechariah in the temple, declaring that his elderly wife Elizabeth will bear a son named John who will prepare the way of the Lord; then Gabriel appears to the virgin Mary in Nazareth, announcing that she will conceive by the Holy Spirit and bear a son named Jesus who will reign over David's throne forever. Mary visits Elizabeth, and the unborn John leaps in the womb. The chapter contains four major poetic passages: the Magnificat (Mary's song, vv. 46-55), the Benedictus (Zechariah's prophecy, vv. 68-79), and shorter hymnic passages in the angelic announcements.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's birth narratives are saturated with Old Testament echoes. Zechariah and Elizabeth recall Abraham and Sarah (aged, barren, promised a child). Gabriel's appearance in the temple connects to Daniel 8-9, where Gabriel also delivers prophetic messages about God's timing. Mary's Magnificat draws heavily on Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 2:1-10), and Zechariah's Benedictus weaves together Davidic, Abrahamic, and prophetic covenant themes. The Greek in these hymnic sections is heavily Septuagintal — Luke appears to be deliberately imitating the style of the Greek Old Testament to signal that God's ancient promises are being fulfilled.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek of the prologue (vv. 1-4) is polished literary Koine, while the birth narratives shift to a markedly Semitic style, possibly reflecting Hebrew or Aramaic sources. We render both registers in natural modern English without flattening the distinction entirely. The Magnificat and Benedictus are rendered as poetry, preserving their hymnic structure. The phrase 'highly favored one' (kecharitomene, v. 28) has significant theological weight in different Christian traditions; we render the Greek transparently and note the range of meaning.*

Connections: *The Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12, 15, 17) is explicitly invoked in both the Magnificat (v. 55) and Benedictus (vv. 72-73). The Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7) underlies Gabriel's promise to Mary (vv. 32-33). John's role as forerunner connects to Malachi 3:1 and 4:5-6 (Elijah's return). The priestly setting of Zechariah's vision connects to the temple theology of the Old Testament.*

¹Since many have undertaken to compile a narrative of the events that have been fulfilled among us, ²Indeed as they handed down them to us, which from the beginning were eyewitnesses, and ministers of the word. ³Indeed, it was decided by me

also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write to you in order, most excellent Theophilus,. 4 Indeed, that you mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein you have been instructed. 5In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a priest named Zechariah, of the division of Abijah. His wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. 6They were both righteous before God, walking blamelessly in all the commandments and regulations of the Lord. 7But they had no child, because Elizabeth was barren, and both were advanced in years. 8Now while Zechariah was serving as priest before God during his division's turn of duty, 9In keeping with to the custom of the priest's office, his lot was to burn incense when he traveled into the temple of the Lord. 10And the whole assembly of the people was praying outside at the hour of the incense offering. 11Then an angel of the Lord appeared to him, standing to the right of the altar of incense. 12Zechariah was shaken when he saw him, and fear overwhelmed him. 13But the angel said to him, "Do not be afraid, Zechariah, because your prayer has been heard. Your wife Elizabeth will bear you a son, and you are to name him John. 14He will be a joy and delight to you, and many will rejoice at his birth. 15For he will be great before the Lord, and he must never drink wine or strong drink. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit even from his mother's womb, 16Numerous of the children of Israel will he turn to the Lord their God. 17He will go before him in the spirit and power of Elijah, to turn the hearts of fathers toward their children and the disobedient to the wisdom of the righteous — to prepare a people made ready for the Lord." 18Zechariah said to the angel, "How can I be sure of this? For I am an old man, and my wife is advanced in years." 19The angel answered him, "I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God. I was sent to speak to you and to bring you this good news. 20Now listen: you will be silent and unable to speak until the day these things take place, because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled at their proper time." 21Meanwhile the people were waiting for Zechariah, and they were wondering at his delay in the sanctuary. 22When he came out, he was unable to speak to them, and they realized that he had seen a vision in the sanctuary. He kept making signs to them but remained unable to speak. 23When the days of his priestly service were completed, he went home. 24After those days his wife Elizabeth conceived, and she kept herself in seclusion for five months, saying, 25"This is what the Lord has done for me in the days when he looked on me, to take away my disgrace among people." 26Named nazareth,, and in the sixth month the angel Gabriel was sent from God to a city of Galilee. 27To a young woman pledged in marriage to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David. And the virgin's name was Mary. 28The angel came to her and said, "Greetings, favored one! The Lord is with you." 29But she was deeply troubled by his words and was wondering what kind of greeting this could be. 30The angel said to her, "Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. 31Listen: you will conceive in your womb and give birth to a son, and you are to name him Jesus. 32He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of his father David. 33He will reign over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end." 34Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not been intimate with a man?" 35The angel answered her, "The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. Therefore the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God. 36And listen — your relative Elizabeth has also conceived a son in her old age. This is the sixth month for her who was called barren. 37For nothing will be impossible with God." 38Mary said, "Here I am, the servant of the Lord. Let it be done to me according to your word." And the angel departed from her. 39In those days Mary set out and hurried to a town in the hill country of Judah, 40Went into into the house of Zacharias, and saluted Elisabeth. 41When Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, the baby leaped in her womb, and Elizabeth was filled with the Holy Spirit. 42She exclaimed with a loud cry, "Blessed are you among women, and blessed is the fruit of your womb! 43And why is this granted to me, that the mother of my Lord should come to me? 44For the moment the sound of your greeting reached my ears, the baby leaped for joy in my womb. 45Blessed is she who believed that what was spoken to her from the Lord would be fulfilled."

46And Mary said:

"My soul magnifies the Lord,

47My spirit has rejoiced in God my Saviour. 48Since he has regarded the low estate of his handmaiden — for, take notice, from henceforth all generations will call me blessed. 49Since he that is mighty has done to me remarkable things. And holy is his name.

⁵⁰His mercy extends to those who fear him,
from generation to generation.

⁵¹He has shown strength with his arm;
he has scattered the proud in the thoughts of their hearts.

⁵²He has brought down rulers from their thrones
and lifted up the humble.

⁵³He has filled the hungry with good things
and sent the rich away empty.

⁵⁴He has helped his servant Israel,
in remembrance of his mercy,

⁵⁵As he spoke to our fathers, to Abraham, and to his descendants for ever. ⁵⁶Mary stayed with Elizabeth for about three months and then returned to her home. ⁵⁷Now the time came for Elizabeth to give birth, and she bore a son. ⁵⁸Her neighbors and relatives heard that the Lord had shown great mercy to her, and they rejoiced with her. ⁵⁹On the eighth day they came to circumcise the child, and they were going to name him Zechariah after his father. ⁶⁰But his mother answered, "No! He is to be called John." ⁶¹They said to her, "There is no one among your relatives who has that name." ⁶²Then they made signs to his father, asking what he wanted the child to be named. ⁶³He asked for a writing tablet and wrote, "His name is John." And everyone was amazed. ⁶⁴Immediately his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed, and he began to speak, praising God. ⁶⁵Fear came upon all their neighbors, and throughout the entire hill country of Judea, all these events were being discussed. ⁶⁶All who heard these things stored them in their hearts, saying, "What then will this child become?" For the hand of the Lord was with him. ⁶⁷Then his father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied:

⁶⁸"Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel,
for he has visited and redeemed his people.

⁶⁹He has raised up a horn of salvation for us
in the house of his servant David,

⁷⁰As he spoke by the lips of his sacred God's spokespersons, which have been since the world began:. ⁷¹That we should be saved from our opponents, and from the hand of all that despise us. ⁷²To perform the compassion promised to our fathers, and to remember his holy covenant. ⁷³Indeed, the oath which he swore to our Father Abraham,. ⁷⁴That he would grant to us, that we while delivered out of the possession of our enemies may serve him without be afraid,. ⁷⁵In holiness and righteousness prior to him, every one of the days of our life.

⁷⁶And you, child, will be called a prophet of the Most High,
for you will go before the Lord to prepare his ways,

⁷⁷To give knowledge of salvation to his those present by the remission of their sins,. ⁷⁸By way of the tender mercy of our God. Whereby the dayspring from on high has visited us,. ⁷⁹To provide radiance to them that take a seat in the dark and in the shadow of death, to guide our feet into the way of peace. ⁸⁰The child grew and became strong in spirit, and he was in the wilderness until the day of his public appearance to Israel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *epecheiresan* ('have undertaken, have attempted') carries no negative connotation — Luke is not criticizing earlier efforts but acknowledging them. The verb *peplerophoremenon* ('fulfilled, accomplished, brought to completion') is stronger than the KJV's 'believed.' Luke views these events not merely as things believed but as things God has brought to fulfillment.

2. The Greek *autoptai* ('eyewitnesses') is a technical term — the root gives us the English 'autopsy' (seeing for oneself). Luke distinguishes himself from these original witnesses; he is a second-generation recipient. The phrase *hyperetai tou logou* ('servants of the word') may refer to a recognized role in the early church — those who faithfully transmitted the tradition.
3. The Greek *parekolouthēkoti* ('having followed closely, having investigated') implies active research, not passive reception — Luke has traced the tradition back to its sources. The adverb *akribos* ('accurately, carefully') emphasizes methodological rigor. *Kratiste* ('most excellent') is an honorific used for Roman officials (cf. Acts 23:26, 24:3, 26:25), suggesting Theophilus held some social status, though whether this is a real person or a symbolic name ('lover of God') is debated.
4. The Greek *asphaleia* ('certainty, security, reliability') suggests Theophilus has already received oral instruction (*katechetes*, 'been catechized, been taught') and Luke writes to provide a firm foundation. The verb *katecheo* is the root of 'catechism' — formal instruction in the faith.
5. The shift from polished literary Greek (vv. 1-4) to Septuagintal narrative style is immediate — *egeneto* ('it came about') echoes the Hebrew *vayyehi*. Zechariah's priestly division of Abijah was the eighth of twenty-four divisions (1 Chronicles 24:10). That Elizabeth is also of Aaronic descent means John will be of fully priestly lineage on both sides. Herod the Great reigned 37-4 BC, anchoring the narrative historically.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Chronicles 24:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek *dikaioi* ('righteous') and *amemptoi* ('blameless') together describe covenant faithfulness — not sinless perfection but faithful observance of the Torah. The distinction between *entolais* ('commandments') and *dikaïomasin* ('regulations, ordinances') may reflect the Torah's own distinction between different categories of law. This description echoes the characterization of Noah (Genesis 6:9) and Job (Job 1:1).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 6:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The barren-wife motif is one of the most significant patterns in the Old Testament: Sarah (Genesis 11:30), Rebekah (Genesis 25:21), Rachel (Genesis 29:31), the mother of Samson (Judges 13:2), and Hannah (1 Samuel 1:2). Luke signals that God is about to act in the same pattern — impossible circumstances overcome by divine intervention. The phrase *probebekotes en tais hemerais* ('advanced in their days') echoes the Septuagint description of Abraham and Sarah (Genesis 18:11).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 11:30. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 25:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 29:31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Judges 13:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 1:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 18:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Each priestly division served in the temple for one week, twice per year (plus the three pilgrimage festivals). The Greek *hierateuein* ('to serve as priest') is a technical term for performing temple duties. Luke places the divine encounter in the context of ordinary, faithful service.
9. The incense offering was performed on the golden altar in the Holy Place (Exodus 30:1-8), not in the Holy of Holies. The Greek *naon* ('sanctuary, inner temple') is distinguished from *hieron* ('temple complex'). Being chosen by lot for this duty was a once-in-a-lifetime honor for most priests, given the large number of priests and the twice-daily offering.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 30:1-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The incense offering coincided with the time of prayer (cf. Psalm 141:2, 'Let my prayer rise as incense before you'). The people waited outside in the Court of Israel while the priest performed the rite inside. This public context heightens the significance of what Zechariah is about to experience privately.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 141:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The right side is the position of favor and honor in biblical symbolism (cf. Psalm 110:1). The Greek *ophthe* ('appeared') is a divine passive — the angel was made visible by God's will. The altar of incense stood before the veil separating the Holy Place from the Holy of Holies (Exodus 30:6).

11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 30:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb *etarachthe* ('was troubled, was disturbed') indicates deep agitation, not mild surprise. The phrase *phobos epepesen* ('fear fell upon') is a Septuagintal expression for the terrifying impact of divine encounter (cf. Genesis 15:12, where 'a deep dread fell upon Abram'). Fear in the presence of the divine is a consistent biblical response.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The phrase *me phobou* ('do not be afraid') is the standard divine reassurance formula (cf. Genesis 15:1, Isaiah 41:10). The name *Ioannes* (John) is the Greek form of Hebrew *Yochanan*, meaning 'the LORD is gracious.' The passive *eisekousthe* ('has been heard') implies God is the one who has heard — divine response to persistent prayer.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 15:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 41:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The Greek *chara* ('joy') and *agalliasis* ('exultation, great gladness') form an intensifying pair. *Agalliasis* is a stronger term used frequently in the Septuagint Psalms for worship-level joy. The promise that 'many will rejoice' extends beyond the family to a national scope — John's birth is not just personal good news but Israel-wide good news.
15. The prohibition against wine and strong drink (*sikera*, from the Hebrew *shekar*) echoes the Nazirite vow (Numbers 6:3) and the instructions for Samson's mother (Judges 13:4-5). John is set apart for God's service from before birth. The phrase 'filled with the Holy Spirit from his mother's womb' is extraordinary — prophetic endowment before birth, which will be demonstrated when Elizabeth's womb leaps at Mary's greeting (v. 41).
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 6:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Judges 13:4-5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The verb *epistrepsei* ('will turn') is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew *shuv* — the central verb of repentance and return. John's mission is one of turning Israel back to their covenant God. The phrase 'children of Israel' (*huion Israel*) is deliberately archaic, evoking the Old Testament covenant identity.
17. This is a direct allusion to Malachi 4:5-6, the final prophecy of the Old Testament: 'I will send you Elijah the prophet before the great and terrible day of the LORD, and he will turn the hearts of fathers to their children.' Gabriel identifies John as the fulfillment of this four-hundred-year-old promise. The phrase 'spirit and power of Elijah' does not mean John is Elijah reincarnated but that he operates in the same prophetic tradition and with the same empowerment.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 4:5-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Zechariah's question *kata ti gnosomai touto* ('by what will I know this?') closely echoes Abraham's question in Genesis 15:8 (LXX: *kata ti gnosomai*). Yet Abraham's question was met with a covenant ceremony, while Zechariah's is met with rebuke — perhaps because Zechariah asks after receiving angelic revelation inside the temple, a context that should have compelled faith rather than doubt.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 15:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Gabriel's self-identification is both a rebuke and a credential: 'I stand in the presence of God' — the one doubting is speaking to someone who has come directly from God's throne room. Gabriel appears in the Old Testament only in Daniel 8:16 and 9:21, both times delivering prophetic revelation about God's eschatological timing. The verb *euangelisasthai* ('to bring good news') is the root of 'gospel' — this birth announcement is gospel proclamation.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 8:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The Greek *idou* ('look, listen') introduces the consequence of disbelief. Zechariah's muteness is both sign and discipline — he asked for a sign and received one, though not the kind he wanted. The phrase *eis ton kairon auton* ('at their proper time') uses *kairos*, the Greek word for an appointed or decisive moment, not merely chronological time (*chronos*). God's timing is purposeful.
21. The incense ritual was brief; prolonged absence would cause concern. The verb *ethaumazon* ('were wondering, were amazed') carries a note of unease — the congregation senses something unusual has occurred. The imperfect tense suggests ongoing, growing wonder.

- 22.** The Greek *kophos* can mean 'deaf' or 'mute' or both. The context (v. 62 suggests he is also deaf, since they make signs to him) indicates both senses may be intended. The verb *dianeuein* ('making signs, gesturing') paints a vivid scene of the frustrated priest trying to communicate what has happened. The people immediately recognize the signs of a prophetic vision — this was part of Israel's religious memory even after centuries without prophets.
- 23.** The Greek *leitourgias* ('service, ministry') is a technical term for priestly duty — it gives us the English 'liturgy.' Zechariah faithfully completes his week of temple service despite his muteness before returning home, presumably to the hill country of Judea (cf. v. 39).
- 24.** Elizabeth's five months of seclusion is unique to Luke and its purpose is debated. Possible reasons include: pious devotion and prayer during the miraculous pregnancy, avoidance of public scrutiny until the pregnancy was unmistakable, or simply a narrative device that allows the sixth month to align with Gabriel's visit to Mary (v. 26). The verb *periekryben* ('hid herself, kept in seclusion') is intensive.
- 25.** Elizabeth's words echo Rachel's response to the birth of Joseph: 'God has taken away my reproach' (Genesis 30:23). Barrenness in the ancient world was a social stigma and was often interpreted as a sign of divine disfavor. The Greek *oneidos* ('reproach, disgrace') carries the weight of public shame. God's intervention removes not just the biological condition but the social stigma.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 30:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** The sixth month refers to the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy, linking the two birth narratives. The scene shifts dramatically from the Jerusalem temple (center of Israel's worship) to Nazareth (an obscure village in Galilee, never mentioned in the Old Testament). This contrast is theologically significant — God's decisive act comes not in the religious capital but in an insignificant town.
- 27.** Luke repeats *parthenos* ('virgin') twice in one verse, emphasizing Mary's virginal status. The phrase *ex oikou Dauid* ('of the house of David') most naturally modifies Joseph, establishing the Davidic lineage through which Jesus will be the legal heir to David's throne. The name *Mariam* is the Greek form of the Hebrew *Miriam*.
- 28.** The Greek *kecharitomene* ('favored one, graced one') is a perfect passive participle of *charitoō* ('to bestow grace upon'). It indicates Mary has been and continues to be the recipient of God's grace. The Latin Vulgate rendered this *gratia plena* ('full of grace'), which shaped Catholic theology of Mary. The Greek itself simply indicates that God has graciously chosen her for this role. The KJV addition 'blessed art thou among women' is not in the earliest manuscripts of this verse (it appears in v. 42 from Elizabeth's mouth) and is omitted in the SBLGNT.
- 29.** The verb *dietarachthe* ('was deeply troubled, was thoroughly perplexed') is an intensified form — stronger than Zechariah's *tarachthe* in v. 12. Notably, Mary is troubled not by the angel's appearance but by his words (*epi* to *logo*). She is pondering the theological significance of the greeting, not merely frightened. The imperfect *dielozizeto* ('was considering, kept wondering') suggests extended reflection.
- 30.** The phrase 'found favor with God' (*heures charin para to theo*) echoes the Old Testament idiom used of Noah (Genesis 6:8), Moses (Exodus 33:12-17), and others whom God chose for significant roles. The word *charis* ('favor, grace') connects to *kecharitomene* in v. 28 — the same grace-root appears in both the angel's greeting and his reassurance.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 6:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 33:12-17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The announcement follows the pattern of Old Testament birth oracles: conception, birth, naming (cf. Genesis 16:11, Isaiah 7:14, Judges 13:3-5). The name *Iesous* (Jesus) is the Greek form of the Hebrew *Yeshua* ('the LORD saves'). The verb *kaleseis* ('you will call') — the naming is given to Mary, not to Joseph as in Matthew 1:21, though both parents are involved in the naming.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 16:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 7:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Judges 13:3-5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The title 'Son of the Most High' (*huios hypsistou*) draws on the divine sonship language of the Davidic covenant: 'I will be his father, and he shall be my son' (2 Samuel 7:14). 'Most High' (*hypsistos*) is a title for God used frequently in the Psalms (Psalm 7:17, 9:2, 21:7, 46:4, 47:2, 50:14). The promise of 'the throne of David his father' directly invokes the Davidic covenant of 2 Samuel 7:12-16 — an eternal dynasty that many believed had been interrupted by the exile.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Samuel 7:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 7:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

33. The phrase *eis tous aionas* ('into the ages, forever') echoes the 'forever' (*olam*) language of the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7:13, 16). 'The house of Jacob' uses the patriarch's name for Israel, emphasizing covenant continuity. The declaration 'of his kingdom there will be no end' echoes Daniel 7:14, where the Son of Man receives 'an everlasting dominion that will not pass away.' Gabriel's language weaves together Davidic and Danielic messianic expectations.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 7:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. Mary's question differs crucially from Zechariah's (v. 18). Zechariah asked 'How can I be sure?' (requesting proof); Mary asks 'How will this happen?' (requesting understanding of the mechanism). The phrase *andra ou ginosko* ('I do not know a man') uses *ginosko* in its sexual sense, corresponding to the Hebrew *yada*. Unlike Zechariah, Mary is not rebuked — her question is met with explanation rather than punishment.
35. The verb *episkiasei* ('will overshadow') recalls the cloud of God's presence overshadowing the tabernacle (Exodus 40:35, LXX uses the same verb). The language is theophanic, not sexual — God's creative, sheltering presence will bring about the conception. The parallel structure ('Holy Spirit / power of the Most High') is synonymous parallelism, a Hebrew poetic device. 'Son of God' (*huios theou*) here moves beyond the Davidic covenant title of v. 32 to a more direct claim about divine origin.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 40:35 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The Greek *syggenis* ('relative, kinswoman') does not specify the exact relationship — the KJV's 'cousin' is too specific. This kinship between Mary and Elizabeth creates a connection between the priestly family (Elizabeth, descendant of Aaron) and the Davidic family (Mary, through Joseph's lineage). Elizabeth's pregnancy serves as a confirmatory sign for Mary, though Mary did not ask for one.
37. This echoes Genesis 18:14 (LXX), where God says to Abraham regarding Sarah's promised pregnancy: 'Is anything impossible with God?' The Greek *rhema* ('word, thing, matter') carries the double sense of both 'word' and 'deed' — God's word and God's act are one. What God speaks, he accomplishes.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 18:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. Mary's response *doule kyriou* ('servant/slave of the Lord') is a title of honor in the Old Testament — Moses, David, and the prophets are called 'servants of the LORD.' The optative *genoito* ('let it be, may it happen') expresses willing consent, not passive resignation. Mary actively submits to God's plan. Her response contrasts sharply with Zechariah's doubt — she accepts the impossible on the basis of God's word alone.
39. The Greek *meta spoudes* ('with haste, with urgency') suggests eagerness rather than anxiety — Mary rushes to see the sign Gabriel mentioned. The hill country of Judah is south of Jerusalem, a journey of roughly 80-100 miles from Nazareth in Galilee, requiring several days of travel. The traditional identification is Ein Karem, west of Jerusalem.
40. The verb *espasato* ('greeted') is a standard greeting verb, but in context it triggers the extraordinary response of vv. 41-45. Mary's greeting becomes the catalyst for prophetic revelation — the sound of her voice causes the Spirit-filled response in both the unborn John and his mother.
41. The verb *eskirtesen* ('leaped, jumped for joy') is used in the Septuagint for joyful leaping (cf. Malachi 4:2, Genesis 25:22). This fulfills the angel's promise that John would be 'filled with the Holy Spirit even from his mother's womb' (v. 15). The unborn John's response to the presence of the unborn Jesus is Luke's first indication of Jesus's significance — recognized even before birth.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 4:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 25:22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. The verb *anephonesen* ('cried out, exclaimed') with *krauge megale* ('a great shout') indicates Spirit-empowered prophetic speech, not casual conversation. 'Blessed among women' (*eulogemene su en gynaixin*) echoes the praise given to Jael in Judges 5:24 — a woman who played a decisive role in God's deliverance of Israel. 'Fruit of the womb' is a Semitic idiom for a child (cf. Deuteronomy 7:13, 28:4).
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Judges 5:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. Elizabeth's question *pothen moi touto* ('from where is this to me?') echoes David's response when the ark of the covenant was brought to him: 'How can the ark of the Lord come to me?' (2 Samuel 6:9). The parallel suggests that Mary, carrying Jesus, is analogous to the ark carrying God's presence. The title 'my Lord' (*tou kyriou mou*) applied to the unborn Jesus is a remarkable christological confession — Elizabeth recognizes the child Mary carries as her Lord.

43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 6:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Elizabeth interprets her baby's movement as joyful recognition — *eskirtesen en agalliasai* ('leaped with exultation'). The word *agalliasis* ('exultation, great joy') is the same term used in v. 14 for the joy John would bring. John's prophetic role — pointing to Jesus — begins in the womb.
45. The Greek *makaria* ('blessed, happy, fortunate') pronounces a blessing on Mary's faith. The contrast with Zechariah's unbelief (v. 20) is implicit — Mary believed and is blessed; Zechariah doubted and was struck mute. The noun *teleiosis* ('fulfillment, completion, accomplishment') emphasizes that God's words will reach their intended completion.
46. The Magnificat (vv. 46-55) is traditionally named from the Latin translation of *megalynei* ('magnifies'). This hymn draws extensively on Hannah's prayer in 1 Samuel 2:1-10, which also celebrated God's reversal of the powerful and the lowly. 'My soul magnifies' means 'my whole being declares the greatness of' — the verb *megalyno* means to make great, to enlarge, to declare the greatness of someone.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 2:1-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. The parallel 'my soul / my spirit' is synonymous parallelism — Hebrew poetic form in Greek garb. The aorist *egalliasen* ('rejoiced') alongside the present *megalynei* ('magnifies') may express a past moment of joy that continues into the present. 'God my Savior' (to *theo* to *soteri mou*) echoes Habakkuk 3:18 and Psalm 24:5 (LXX). Mary identifies God specifically as her Savior.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 2:1-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Habakkuk 3:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 24:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
48. The Greek *tapeinosin* ('humble state, low position') echoes Hannah's prayer — God attends to the lowly. Mary's self-designation as *doule* ('servant, slave') repeats her response in v. 38. The prophecy 'all generations will call me blessed' (*makariouein me pasai hai geneai*) has been remarkably fulfilled across two millennia of Christian tradition.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 2:1-10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. The title *ho dynatos* ('the Mighty One, the Powerful One') echoes Zephaniah 3:17 and Psalm 24:8. 'Holy is his name' (*hagion to onoma autou*) echoes Psalm 111:9 (LXX). The structure shifts from personal testimony (what God has done for me) to universal declaration (God's character and actions in history).
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 2:1-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zephaniah 3:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 24:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 111:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. The Greek *eleos* ('mercy') here corresponds to the Hebrew *chesed* in the Septuagint tradition, though the Magnificat uses the simpler term rather than the full covenantal weight of *chesed*. 'Those who fear him' (*tois phoboumenois auton*) refers to reverent awe and covenant faithfulness, not terror. 'From generation to generation' (*eis geneas kai geneas*) echoes Psalm 103:17.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 2:1-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 103:17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
51. The 'arm of the LORD' is a consistent Old Testament metaphor for divine power in action, especially in the Exodus (Exodus 6:6, Deuteronomy 4:34, Isaiah 51:9). The aorist tense *epoiesen* ('he has done') may be a 'prophetic aorist' — speaking of future divine acts as though already accomplished. 'Scattered the proud' (*dieskorpisen hyperephanous*) draws on the theme of God humbling the arrogant (cf. Psalm 89:10, Isaiah 2:12-17).
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 2:1-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 6:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 4:34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 51:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 89:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 2:12-17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. This is the central reversal theme of the Magnificat, directly paralleling Hannah's song: 'The LORD makes poor and makes rich; he brings low, he also exalts' (1 Samuel 2:7). The Greek dynastas ('rulers, those in power') and tapeinous ('the lowly, the humble') form a deliberate contrast. Mary, a peasant girl from Nazareth, embodies the humble whom God exalts.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 2:1-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. The reversal continues: hungry filled, rich emptied. This echoes 1 Samuel 2:5 ('those who were full hire themselves out for bread, but those who were hungry cease to hunger'). Luke's Gospel will develop this theme extensively — the Beatitudes (6:20-26), the parable of the rich man and Lazarus (16:19-31), and Jesus's teaching on wealth throughout.
53. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 2:1-10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
54. The verb antelabeto ('has helped, has come to the aid of') implies taking someone by the hand to support them. Israel is called God's pais ('servant, child'), echoing Isaiah's servant language (Isaiah 41:8-9, 'you, Israel, my servant'). 'In remembrance of his mercy' (mnesthenai eleous) means God is acting because he remembers his covenant commitment — divine memory in the Old Testament is always linked to covenant action.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 2:1-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 41:8-9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
55. The Magnificat concludes with explicit reference to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12:1-3, 17:7-8, 22:17-18). The Greek sperma ('seed, offspring') is the same term used in the Septuagint for the covenant promises to Abraham. Mary understands the child she carries as the fulfillment of promises made to Abraham — a covenant arc spanning two thousand years. The phrase eis ton aiona ('forever, into the age') corresponds to the Hebrew olam.
55. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 2:1-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
55. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 12:1-3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
56. Three months would bring Elizabeth to full term (she was in her sixth month when Mary arrived, v. 26). Luke does not explicitly state whether Mary was present for John's birth — the narrative leaves this ambiguous. The phrase hos menas treis ('about three months') with the approximating hos suggests Luke is reporting a round number rather than an exact duration.
57. The phrase eplesthe ho chronos ('the time was fulfilled') echoes Genesis 25:24 (Rebekah) and uses the language of fullness and completion — God's timing has reached its appointed moment. The narrative moves swiftly and simply, as is typical of biblical birth accounts.
57. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 25:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
58. The verb emegalynen ('had made great, had magnified') echoes Mary's megalynai ('magnifies') in v. 46 — the same root appears in the community's recognition of God's mercy toward Elizabeth. The Greek eleos ('mercy') again corresponds to the Hebrew chesed. The communal rejoicing fulfills the angel's promise in v. 14 that 'many will rejoice at his birth.'
59. Circumcision on the eighth day follows the command of Genesis 17:12 and Leviticus 12:3. The naming at circumcision was customary practice. The imperfect ekalon ('they were calling, they were going to name') indicates an attempt that will be interrupted — the community assumed the child would follow the common pattern of being named after his father.
59. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 17:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
59. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 12:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
60. Elizabeth's emphatic ouchi ('No!') and her knowledge of the divinely appointed name is striking — Zechariah has been mute and presumably unable to communicate the angel's instructions in detail. Whether she learned the name from Zechariah through written communication or through her own Spirit-filled insight (v. 41) is not stated. Her insistence overrides social convention.
61. The community's objection reveals the social expectation that names should stay within the family. The Greek syggeneia ('kindred, family, relatives') emphasizes the clan identity system. Naming a child outside the family's traditional names was unusual and would require explanation.
62. That they make signs (enenuon, 'were gesturing') to Zechariah rather than simply speaking to him suggests he was deaf as well as mute — the Greek kophos in v. 22 can mean both. This detail confirms that the affliction was comprehensive, making Zechariah's restoration all the more dramatic.

63. The Greek *pinakidion* ('writing tablet') was a small wax-coated board used for notes. Zechariah's written confirmation of Elizabeth's declaration — without any prior consultation possible given his deafness — demonstrates divine orchestration. His phrasing 'his name is John' (*Ioannes estin onoma autou*) uses the present tense 'is' rather than 'shall be,' indicating the name has already been divinely assigned.
64. The passive *aneoichthe* ('was opened') indicates divine action — God removes the discipline at the moment of obedient faith. Zechariah's first words after months of silence are praise (*eulogon ton theon*, 'blessing God'). The verb *elalei* (imperfect, 'he was speaking, he began to speak') suggests continuous speech — the dam breaks and words pour out.
65. The 'fear' (*phobos*) that comes upon the community is reverential awe in the presence of the divine — the same response as Zechariah's in v. 12. The imperfect passive *dialaetto* ('were being discussed, were being talked about') indicates ongoing, widespread conversation. The phrase *panta ta remata tauta* ('all these words/events') uses *rhema* in its Semitic sense of both 'word' and 'event.'
66. The phrase *ethento en te kardia auton* ('placed in their hearts') echoes Mary's response in 2:19 and 2:51 — treasuring events in the heart is Luke's motif for those who are pondering God's actions. 'The hand of the Lord was with him' (*cheir kyriou en met autou*) is an Old Testament expression for divine empowerment and protection (cf. 1 Samuel 5:6, 2 Kings 3:15, Ezra 7:9).
66. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 5:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
66. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 3:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
66. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezra 7:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
67. Like Elizabeth (v. 41), Zechariah is filled with the Holy Spirit for prophetic speech. The verb *epropheteusen* ('prophesied') identifies the *Benedictus* (vv. 68-79) as Spirit-inspired prophecy, not merely personal praise. After months of enforced silence, Zechariah's first extended speech is prophetic proclamation.
68. The *Benedictus* (vv. 68-79) opens with a traditional Jewish blessing formula: *eulogetos kyrios* ('blessed be the Lord'), corresponding to the Hebrew *baruk YHWH*. The verb *epeskepsato* ('has visited') carries the sense of God paying attention, inspecting, and acting on behalf of his people (cf. Exodus 4:31, Ruth 1:6). The noun *lytrosis* ('redemption') is liberation through the payment of a ransom — language rooted in the Exodus and in the *go'el* (kinsman-redeemer) tradition.
68. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 41:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
68. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 4:31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
68. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ruth 1:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
69. The 'horn of salvation' (*keras soterias*) is a metaphor drawn from the powerful horns of animals — it signifies strength and power to save (cf. Psalm 18:2, 2 Samuel 22:3). 'In the house of David his servant' identifies this salvation as fulfillment of the Davidic covenant (2 Samuel 7). Zechariah, a priest, celebrates God's act through the royal line — priestly and royal streams converge in this moment.
69. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 18:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
69. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 22:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
69. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
70. The phrase *ap aionos* ('from of old, from the age, since ancient times') emphasizes the long-standing nature of God's prophetic promises. The prophets are described as God's mouthpiece — 'through the mouth of' (*dia stomatos*) indicates that the words were God's, spoken through human agents. This is Luke's articulation of prophetic inspiration.
71. The language of salvation from enemies (*soterian ex echthron*) echoes the Psalms of deliverance (Psalm 18:3, 17; 106:10). In Zechariah's immediate context, the 'enemies' would include Roman occupation and Herodian oppression, but the *Benedictus* will soon reveal a deeper spiritual dimension to this salvation (v. 77). The phrase is deliberately broad enough to encompass both political and spiritual deliverance.
71. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 18:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
72. The Greek *eleos* ('mercy') here carries the force of the Hebrew *chesed* — covenantal mercy shown to the fathers. The Greek *diathekes* ('covenant') translates the Hebrew *berit*. The phrase 'remember his holy covenant' does not mean God had forgotten but that he is now acting on what he has always remembered — divine remembering is covenant activation (cf. Genesis 8:1, Exodus 2:24).
72. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 8:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

- 72.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 2:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 73.** The reference to God's oath (horkon) to Abraham points to Genesis 22:16-18, where God swears by himself (since there is no one greater to swear by) after the near-sacrifice of Isaac. This is the most solemn form of divine commitment in the Old Testament — an oath-bound covenant. The author of Hebrews will later develop this same point (Hebrews 6:13-18).
- 73.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 22:16-18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 74.** The verb *latreuein* ('to serve, to worship') is the Septuagint's standard term for priestly or liturgical service to God. The purpose of deliverance is not mere freedom but worship — Israel is rescued from enemies so that they can serve God. This echoes the Exodus pattern: 'Let my people go so that they may serve me' (Exodus 7:16, 8:1, 9:1). Rescue is the means; worship is the goal.
- 74.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 7:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 75.** The pair *hosioteiti kai dikaiosyne* ('holiness and righteousness') describes the complete character of covenant faithfulness — devotion toward God (holiness) and right conduct toward others (righteousness). The phrase 'all our days' (*pasais tais hemerai hemon*) envisions a lifelong pattern, not momentary piety.
- 76.** Zechariah now turns from God's covenant faithfulness (vv. 68-75) to his own son's role. 'Prophet of the Most High' (*prophetes hypsistou*) parallels the title 'Son of the Most High' given to Jesus in v. 32. John's role is defined by the phrase from Malachi 3:1 and Isaiah 40:3 — the forerunner who prepares the way. The ambiguity of *kyrios* ('Lord') is significant — it could refer to God or to the Messiah. In context, it likely refers to Jesus, making Zechariah's prophecy a remarkable theological claim.
- 76.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 3:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 76.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 77.** Here Zechariah redefines the 'salvation' he has been celebrating. After the martial language of vv. 71 and 74 (enemies, deliverance), the climactic definition is: salvation through forgiveness of sins (*en aphesei hamartion*). The Greek *aphesis* ('release, forgiveness, pardon') is the Septuagint word for the liberation of the Jubilee year (Leviticus 25:10) — forgiveness is portrayed as release from bondage.
- 77.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 25:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 78.** The Greek *splanchna eleous* ('bowels/depths of mercy') is intensely physical — *splanchna* refers to the internal organs, the seat of deepest emotion in ancient thought. The word *anatole* ('rising, dawn, dayspring') can mean either 'sunrise' or 'branch/shoot' (cf. Jeremiah 23:5, Zechariah 3:8, where the Hebrew *tsemach*, 'branch,' is rendered *anatole* in the Septuagint). The ambiguity may be intentional — the coming one is both the Messianic Branch and the dawning light.
- 78.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 23:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 78.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 3:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 79.** This verse echoes Isaiah 9:2 ('the people who walked in darkness have seen a great light') and Psalm 107:10 ('those who sat in darkness and in the shadow of death'). The Greek *skia thanatou* ('shadow of death') translates the Hebrew *tsalmaveth*, the deep darkness of Sheol and despair. The Benedictus concludes with *eirene* ('peace'), corresponding to the Hebrew *shalom* — not merely absence of conflict but the fullness of well-being that comes when God's covenant purposes are fulfilled.
- 79.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 9:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 79.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 107:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 80.** This summary verse parallels the growth notices for Samuel (1 Samuel 2:26) and will be echoed for Jesus (2:40, 52). The phrase *en tais eremois* ('in the wilderness areas') suggests John lived in the Judean desert, perhaps near the Dead Sea, before beginning his public ministry. The noun *anadeixeos* ('public appearance, showing forth, commissioning') occurs only here in the New Testament and suggests a formal appointment or public presentation — John's ministry did not begin gradually but with a definitive public emergence.
- 80.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 2:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

2

Summary: *Luke 2 narrates the birth of Jesus in Bethlehem during a Roman census under Augustus, the angelic announcement to shepherds, the presentation of the infant Jesus at the Jerusalem temple where Simeon and Anna recognize him as the promised Messiah, and a childhood episode where the twelve-year-old Jesus is found teaching in the temple. The chapter contains the Gloria in Excelsis (the angels' song, v. 14) and the Nunc Dimittis (Simeon's prayer, vv. 29-32), both rendered as poetry.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke alone sets the birth of Jesus within the framework of Roman imperial history — the census of Augustus becomes the mechanism by which Davidic prophecy is fulfilled (Micah 5:2). The announcement comes to shepherds, the lowest rung of society, not to priests or rulers. Simeon's Nunc Dimittis introduces the universal scope of salvation ('a light for revelation to the Gentiles') alongside its Jewish fulfillment ('glory for your people Israel'). Anna, one of only a few named female prophets in the Bible, confirms Simeon's testimony. The chapter ends with the only canonical account of Jesus's childhood.*

Translation Friction: *The census under Quirinius (v. 2) presents a well-known historical difficulty — Quirinius's known census occurred in AD 6, after Herod's death (4 BC). Scholars have proposed various solutions; we render the Greek as given without harmonizing. The phrase 'firstborn son' (v. 7) describes birth order, not a claim about subsequent children. The 'manger' (phatne) could refer to a feeding trough or an animal stall. We render transparently and note the range.*

Connections: *The Bethlehem birth fulfills Micah 5:2. The shepherds connect to David's own origins as a Bethlehem shepherd (1 Samuel 16). Simeon's language draws on Isaiah 42:6, 49:6 (light to the nations), and Isaiah 52:10 (salvation before all peoples). The temple presentation follows Exodus 13:2, 12 and Leviticus 12:1-8. Jesus in the temple at age twelve anticipates his adult ministry and echoes Samuel's temple childhood (1 Samuel 2-3).*

¹In those days a decree went out from Caesar Augustus that the whole empire should be registered. ²This was the first registration, taken when Quirinius was governing Syria. ³So everyone went to be registered, each to his own city. ⁴Joseph also went up from Galilee, from the city of Nazareth, to Judea, to the city of David called Bethlehem, because he was of the house and family of David, ⁵Indeed, to be taxed with Mary his espoused wife, being remarkable with child. ⁶While they were there, the time came for her to give birth. ⁷She gave birth to her firstborn son, wrapped him in strips of cloth, and laid him in a feeding trough, because there was no room for them in the guest quarters. ⁸In that same region there were shepherds living out in the fields, keeping watch over their flock by night. ⁹An angel of the Lord stood before them, and the glory of the Lord shone around them, and they were terrified. ¹⁰The angel said to them, "Do not be afraid, for I bring you good news of great joy that will be for all the people. ¹¹For today in the city of David a Savior has been born for you, who is Christ the Lord. ¹²And this will be the sign for you: you will find a baby wrapped in strips of cloth and lying in a feeding trough." ¹³And suddenly there appeared with the angel a multitude of the heavenly army, praising God and saying,

¹⁴"Glory to God in the highest heaven,
and on earth peace among those on whom his favor rests."

¹⁵When the angels had gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said to one another, "Let us go over to Bethlehem and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us." ¹⁶They hurried off and found Mary and Joseph, and the baby lying in the feeding trough. ¹⁷When they had seen this, they made known what had been told them about this child. ¹⁸And all who heard it were amazed at what the shepherds told them. ¹⁹But Mary treasured all these things, pondering them in her heart. ²⁰The shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for everything they had heard and seen, just as it had been told them. ²¹When eight days had passed and it was time for his circumcision, he was named Jesus — the name given by the angel before he was conceived in the womb. ²²When the time required for her purification as the law of Moses required was completed, they brought him to Jerusalem, to dedicate him to the Lord;. ²³(As it is written in the law of the Lord, Every male that openeth the womb will be known as holy to the Lord;). ²⁴Or two young pigeons, to offer a sacrifice

according to that which is said in the law of the Lord, A pair of turtledoves. ²⁵Now there was a man in Jerusalem named Simeon. This man was righteous and devout, waiting for the consolation of Israel, and the Holy Spirit was upon him. ²⁶It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ. ²⁷Guided by the Spirit, he came into the temple courts. When the parents brought in the child Jesus to do for him what was customary under the law, ²⁸Simeon took him in his arms and blessed God, saying,

²⁹"Now, Master, you are releasing your servant in peace,
according to your word,

³⁰Because mine eyes have seen your salvation,. ³¹Which you have prepared before the face of all people. ³²A light to lighten the Gentiles, and the glory of your those present Israel. ³³His father and mother were amazed at what was being said about him. ³⁴Then Simeon blessed them and said to Mary his mother, "This child is destined for the falling and rising of many in Israel, and to be a sign that will be opposed — ³⁵(Yea, a sword will pierce by way of your own soul also,) that the thoughts of numerous hearts may be revealed. ³⁶There was also a prophetess named Anna, the daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher. She was very advanced in years, having lived with her husband for seven years after her marriage, ³⁷She was a widow of concerning fourscore and four years, which departed not from the sanctuary, but served God with fastings and prayers after dark and time. ³⁸Coming up at that very hour, she began to give thanks to God and to speak about him to all who were waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem. ³⁹When they had completed everything required by the law of the Lord, they returned to Galilee, to their own city of Nazareth. ⁴⁰The child grew and became strong, being filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him. ⁴¹His parents went to Jerusalem every year for the Festival of Passover. ⁴²When he was twelve years old, they went up according to the custom of the festival. ⁴³After the days of the festival were completed, as they were returning, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem, but his parents did not know it. ⁴⁴Assuming he was in the caravan, they traveled a day's journey and then began looking for him among their relatives and acquaintances. ⁴⁵When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem, searching for him. ⁴⁶After three days they found him in the temple, sitting among the teachers, listening to them and asking them questions. ⁴⁷All who heard him were astonished at his understanding and his answers. ⁴⁸When his parents saw him, they were overwhelmed. His mother said to him, "Child, why have you treated us like this? Your father and I have been searching for you in great distress." ⁴⁹He said to them, "Why were you searching for me? Did you not know that I must be in my Father's house?" ⁵⁰But they did not understand what he said to them. ⁵¹Then he went down with them and came to Nazareth and was obedient to them. And his mother treasured all these things in her heart. ⁵²And Jesus grew in wisdom and in stature, and in favor with God and people.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *oikoumene* ('the inhabited world') refers in practice to the Roman Empire. The verb *apographesthai* ('to be registered, to be enrolled') refers to a census for taxation purposes, not taxation itself — the KJV's 'taxed' is misleading. Luke frames the birth of the true King within the imperial machinery of a false one — Augustus claimed divine titles (son of god, savior, bringer of peace) that Luke will attribute to Jesus.
2. The Greek *haute apographe prote* ('this registration was the first') could also be rendered 'this registration took place before Quirinius was governing Syria' (taking *prote* as 'before' with a genitive absolute, as in John 15:18). The standard reading identifies this as the first of its kind under Quirinius. The historical difficulty — Quirinius's documented census was in AD 6-7, after Herod's death — remains unresolved among scholars. Luke may be referring to an earlier administrative role of Quirinius not otherwise attested.
3. Registration at one's ancestral city (rather than place of residence) reflects either a Jewish or Egyptian census practice — Roman censuses typically registered people where they lived. Luke presents this as the mechanism by which Joseph, a Galilean resident, must travel to Bethlehem, fulfilling the Davidic birthplace prophecy.
4. The verb *anebe* ('went up') is geographically literal — Bethlehem is at a higher elevation than Nazareth, and one always 'goes up' to Judea from Galilee. 'City of David' (*polin Daudid*) identifies Bethlehem as David's birthplace (1 Samuel 16:1, 17:12), distinct from Jerusalem, which is also called 'the city of David' (2 Samuel 5:7). Luke establishes Davidic lineage through Joseph, the legal father.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 16:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 5:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

5. The Greek *emnesteuomene* ('pledged in marriage, betrothed') is the same term used in 1:27. Luke does not say 'his wife' here (some manuscripts add *gynaiki*, 'wife,' but the SBLGNT does not include it). The phrase *ouse enkuo* ('being pregnant') states the fact directly. The journey from Nazareth to Bethlehem — approximately 80-90 miles — would have been arduous for a woman near full term.
6. The phrase *eplesthesan hai hemera* ('the days were fulfilled') uses the same fullness-of-time language seen in 1:57 for Elizabeth. The narrative is compressed — Luke does not specify how long they had been in Bethlehem before the birth. God's timing moves through the machinery of Roman bureaucracy to fulfill ancient prophecy.
7. The Greek *prototokos* ('firstborn') is a legal and cultural designation indicating rights and status, not necessarily implying subsequent children. The verb *esparganosen* ('wrapped in swaddling bands') describes the ancient practice of tightly wrapping a newborn in strips of cloth. The Greek *phatne* ('manger, feeding trough') is where animals eat — the word itself emphasizes the humble circumstances. The Greek *katalyma* ('guest room, lodging') is not the word for a commercial inn (*pandocheion*, which Luke uses in 10:34); it likely refers to the guest room of a private home, which was already occupied.
8. The Greek *agraoulountes* ('living in the fields, camping out') indicates these shepherds were sleeping outdoors with their flocks, not merely working during the day. Shepherds occupied one of the lowest social positions — they were considered unreliable as legal witnesses and were often suspected of grazing their flocks on others' land. That God's announcement comes to them first is theologically significant for Luke's Gospel, which consistently elevates the lowly.
9. The verb *epeste* ('stood before, appeared suddenly') indicates a sudden, startling appearance. The 'glory of the Lord' (*doxa kyriou*) is the visible manifestation of God's presence — the same term used for the cloud that filled the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34) and Solomon's temple (1 Kings 8:11). The phrase *ephobethesav phobon megan* (literally 'they feared a great fear') is a Semitic intensifying construction indicating extreme terror.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 40:34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 8:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb *euangelizomai* ('I bring good news, I announce gospel') is the same verb used of Gabriel's announcement to Zechariah (1:19). The 'great joy' (*charan megalen*) echoes the joy theme from chapter 1 (1:14, 44, 47). 'All the people' (*panti to lao*) in context refers primarily to Israel, though Luke's Gospel will extend this joy to all nations.
11. Three titles are stacked: *soter* ('Savior'), *christos* ('Christ/Messiah'), and *kyrios* ('Lord'). Each would have carried enormous weight. 'Savior' was a title used for Augustus Caesar; 'Christ' is the Greek form of Hebrew *mashiach*; 'Lord' (*kyrios*) is the Septuagint's standard rendering of YHWH. The combination 'Christ the Lord' (*christos kyrios*) is unique in the New Testament and may echo the Psalms of Solomon 17:32, a Jewish messianic text. The announcement to shepherds in the city of David is richly ironic — David was himself a shepherd from Bethlehem.
12. The 'sign' (*semeion*) is deliberately humble — not a cosmic portent but a baby in a feeding trough. The sign confirms the message by its very ordinariness combined with its specificity. The juxtaposition of the exalted titles (Savior, Christ, Lord) with the humble sign (a wrapped infant in an animal's feeding trough) is one of the most powerful contrasts in the New Testament.
13. The Greek *stratias ouraniou* ('heavenly army, heavenly host') is a military term — these are not gentle cherubs but the army of heaven. The same phrase is used in the Septuagint for the 'host of heaven' (*tseva hashamayim*) that surrounds God's throne. Their appearance 'suddenly' (*exaiphnes*) emphasizes the supernatural character of the event.
14. The Gloria in Excelsis is structured in two parallel lines: heaven/earth, God/humanity. The Greek *en anthropois eudokias* ('among people of [his] favor/good pleasure') follows the SBLGNT reading with the genitive *eudokias* rather than the nominative *eudokia*. This means 'among those whom God favors' rather than 'good will toward people.' The Dead Sea Scrolls use similar language — 'sons of his good pleasure' (*benei retsono*). 'Peace' (*eirene*) corresponds to the Hebrew *shalom* — the full vision of wholeness and flourishing that the Messiah brings.
15. The Greek *rhema* ('word, thing, event') again carries the dual meaning of word and event — what God has spoken has become an event they can go and see. The shepherds' immediate response echoes the pattern of faith-in-action seen in Mary (1:38) and Joseph (Matthew 1:24). The verb *egnorisen* ('has made known, has revealed') emphasizes that this is divine disclosure, not human discovery.
16. The verb *speusantes* ('having hurried') shows the urgency of their response — like Mary's haste to visit Elizabeth (1:39). The verb *aneuran* ('found, discovered after searching') suggests some effort was required to locate them. The order 'Mary and Joseph' places Mary first, consistent with Luke's emphasis on her role throughout the birth narrative.
17. The shepherds become the first evangelists — they 'made known' (*egnorisan*) the message, using the same verb used of God's disclosure to them (v. 15). The pattern is clear: God reveals, recipients believe, and believers proclaim. The shepherds are transformed from passive recipients of a message to active proclaimers of it.
18. The verb *ethaumasas* ('were amazed, were astonished') describes the natural response to extraordinary news. Luke frequently notes the amazement of crowds (cf. 1:63, 4:22, 8:25, 9:43, 11:14). The response is wonder but not yet faith — amazement is a starting point, not an endpoint.
19. The verb *syneterei* ('was keeping safe, was treasuring') implies careful preservation. The verb *syballousa* ('pondering, putting together, comparing') suggests active reflection — Mary is connecting the dots between Gabriel's announcement, Elizabeth's prophecy, and now the shepherds' report. This verse (and its parallel in v. 51) has been seen as a possible indication that Luke's source for the birth narrative was Mary herself.

- 20.** The phrase 'just as it had been told them' (kathos elalethe pros autois) confirms the exact fulfillment of the angelic sign — they found everything precisely as described. The shepherds' response of glorifying and praising God becomes a model for the proper response to encountering God's salvation in Luke's Gospel.
- 21.** As with John (1:59), circumcision and naming occur on the eighth day (Genesis 17:12, Leviticus 12:3). Luke emphasizes that the name was divinely given (through the angel, 1:31) before conception — the child's identity and mission were established before his existence. The name Iesous (Jesus/Yeshua, 'the LORD saves') is now formally conferred.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 17:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 12:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 22.** The SBLGNT reads auton ('their') rather than autes ('her'), though the purification ritual in Leviticus 12 applies specifically to the mother. Luke may use 'their' to include the family's broader obligation or to connect the purification with the presentation of the firstborn. The purification period for a male child was forty days (Leviticus 12:2-4). 'Present him to the Lord' reflects Exodus 13:2, 12 — every firstborn male belongs to God.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 13:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** This quotation draws on Exodus 13:2, 12, 15. The phrase 'opens the womb' (dianoigon metran) is the standard biblical idiom for a firstborn child. The consecration of the firstborn to God commemorates the Passover, when God spared Israel's firstborn in Egypt. The irony for Luke's reader is rich — this child who is 'called holy to the Lord' is in fact the Lord's own Son.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 13:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 24.** The offering of birds rather than a lamb (Leviticus 12:8) is the provision for families too poor to afford the standard offering of a lamb plus a pigeon. This detail quietly establishes the family's economic status — Jesus is born into poverty. The same law that allows the poor person's offering is the one Mary and Joseph follow, and Luke notes it without comment.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 12:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** Simeon is described with four characteristics: dikaios ('righteous' — covenant faithfulness), eulabes ('devout, reverent' — careful in religious observance), prosdechomenos paraklesis tou Israel ('waiting for the consolation of Israel' — messianic expectation), and Spirit-empowered. 'The consolation of Israel' (paraklesis tou Israel) draws on Isaiah 40:1 ('Comfort, comfort my people') — the promised end of exile and restoration of God's people.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** The Greek kechrematismenon ('had been divinely warned, had received an oracle') is a technical term for divine communication, often through dreams or oracles. 'The Lord's Christ' (ton christon kyriou) corresponds to the Hebrew mashiach YHWH ('the LORD's anointed'), the specific title for the Davidic king chosen by God (cf. 1 Samuel 24:6, 26:9, 2 Samuel 1:14). Simeon has received a personal promise that he will live to see the Messiah.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 24:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Samuel 1:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 27.** The phrase en to pneumati ('in the Spirit, by the Spirit') indicates Spirit-directed action — Simeon did not come to the temple by coincidence but by divine leading. Luke calls Joseph and Mary 'the parents' (tous goneis), a natural designation that does not contradict the virgin birth but reflects the social and legal reality. The meeting appears coincidental but is orchestrated by the Spirit.
- 28.** The verb edexato ('received, took, welcomed') combined with 'into his arms' (eis tas ankalas) creates a tender image — an elderly man cradling a newborn. His first response is to bless God (eulogesen ton theon), not to bless the child, acknowledging that this moment is God's gift to him.
- 29.** The Nunc Dimittis (vv. 29-32), named from the Latin 'now you dismiss,' is Simeon's prayer of departure. The address despota ('Master, Sovereign') is stronger than kyrios — it implies absolute authority, as of a master over a slave. The verb apolyeis ('you are releasing, you are dismissing') uses language of freeing a slave or sentinel from duty. Simeon views his life as a watch that is now fulfilled — he can die in peace because he has seen what God promised.
- 30.** The Greek soterion ('salvation, saving act') is not abstract — Simeon has seen it embodied in a six-week-old infant. The phrase echoes Isaiah 52:10, 'All the ends of the earth shall see the salvation of our God.' What Simeon holds in his arms is what Isaiah prophesied the nations would witness.

- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 52:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The phrase *kata prosopon panton ton laon* ('before the face of all peoples') is crucial — the plural 'peoples' (*laon*) extends salvation beyond Israel to all nations. This universalism echoes Isaiah 52:10 and prepares for the explicit statement in the next verse. Simeon's horizon is not merely Jewish but global.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 52:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The two parallel lines define salvation's dual scope: 'light for revelation to the Gentiles' (drawing on Isaiah 42:6 and 49:6, the Servant Songs) and 'glory to your people Israel.' The Greek *ethnon* ('nations, Gentiles') is placed first — a striking priority in a Jewish prayer. The 'light' imagery echoes Isaiah 9:2 and the *Benedictus* (1:78-79). Luke's Gospel will develop both dimensions — salvation for Israel and salvation for all nations.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 42:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 9:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The SBLGNT reads *ho pater autou* ('his father') rather than 'Joseph,' which some manuscripts substitute to protect the doctrine of the virgin birth. Luke uses 'father' naturally to describe Joseph's social and legal role. The imperfect *thaumazontes* ('were amazed, kept marveling') suggests ongoing astonishment — each new revelation about their child adds to their wonder.
- 34.** After the joyful *Nunc Dimittis*, Simeon's tone darkens. The Greek *ptosin kai anastasin* ('falling and rising') indicates that this child will be a dividing figure — some will stumble and fall because of him, others will be raised up. The order (falling before rising) may be deliberate. 'A sign opposed' (*semeion antilegomenon*) foreshadows the rejection Jesus will face. Simeon addresses Mary specifically, not Joseph — the next verse will explain why.
- 35.** The Greek *rhomphaia* ('sword, large sword') is not the common *machaira* but a large, broad sword — the imagery is of devastating penetration. This is traditionally understood as a prophecy of Mary's suffering at the cross (John 19:25-27). The purpose clause 'so that thoughts of many hearts may be revealed' indicates that Jesus's ministry and its opposition will force people to reveal their true loyalties — he will expose what is hidden in human hearts.
- 36.** Anna (Greek form of the Hebrew Hannah) is one of the few women in the Bible explicitly called a 'prophetess' (*prophetis*), joining Miriam (Exodus 15:20), Deborah (Judges 4:4), Huldah (2 Kings 22:14), and Isaiah's wife (Isaiah 8:3). Her tribe, Asher, was one of the ten 'lost' northern tribes — her presence in Jerusalem shows that not all Israelites of the northern tribes were lost. Luke provides remarkably detailed biographical information, emphasizing her as a credible witness.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 15:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Judges 4:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 22:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 8:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The phrase *heos eton ogdoekonta tessaron* could mean 'a widow for eighty-four years' (making her about 105 years old) or 'a widow until the age of eighty-four.' Either reading depicts extraordinary longevity and devotion. 'Never left the temple' (*ouk aphistato tou hierou*) is likely a hyperbole for constant attendance rather than literal residence. Her worship of fasting and prayer 'night and day' identifies her as a living embodiment of the faithful remnant who waited for God's redemption.
- 38.** The phrase *aute te hora* ('at that very hour') emphasizes the providential timing — Anna arrives at precisely the right moment. The verb *anthomologeito* ('was giving thanks, was praising') is a compound form intensifying the thanksgiving. Those 'waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem' (*prosdchomenois lutrosin Ierousalem*) parallels those 'waiting for the consolation of Israel' (v. 25) — a circle of faithful Jews who held to the messianic hope. The noun *lutrosin* ('redemption') echoes Zechariah's *Benedictus* (1:68).
- 39.** Luke compresses the narrative significantly — Matthew's account includes the visit of the magi and the flight to Egypt between the temple presentation and the return to Nazareth. Luke does not mention these events, nor does he explicitly contradict them; he simply moves from one episode to the next. The emphasis on completing 'everything required by the law' (*panta ta kata ton nomon*) underscores the family's faithful Torah observance.
- 40.** This growth summary parallels the one for John (1:80) and echoes Samuel's growth (1 Samuel 2:26). The SBLGNT does not include 'in spirit' (*pneumati*), which appears in some manuscripts, likely imported from 1:80. The phrase 'filled with wisdom' (*pleroumenon sophia*) is distinctive — where John grew strong 'in spirit,' Jesus grows in 'wisdom.' The grace of God (*charis theou*) covering the child echoes the favored-one language of Mary's own calling (1:28).

- 40.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 2:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 41.** The Torah required all Israelite males to appear before the Lord three times a year: at Passover, Pentecost, and Tabernacles (Exodus 23:14-17, Deuteronomy 16:16). That Mary also went reflects pious devotion beyond the legal minimum. The imperfect *eporeuonto* ('used to go, went regularly') indicates habitual practice.
- 41.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 23:14-17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 41.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 16:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 42.** Age twelve was significant in Jewish tradition — it was the year before a boy assumed full responsibility for Torah observance (later formalized as *bar mitzvah* at thirteen). Luke may include this specific age to mark the transition from childhood to religious maturity, setting the stage for Jesus's remarkable interaction in the temple.
- 43.** The Passover festival lasted seven days (Exodus 12:15). The verb *hupemeinen* ('stayed behind, remained') suggests a deliberate act on Jesus's part, not an accident. Large pilgrim caravans traveled together, and children could easily be assumed to be with other family members — the parents' ignorance is plausible and not negligent.
- 43.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 12:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 44.** The Greek *synodia* ('caravan, traveling company') was the standard mode of pilgrimage travel — large groups from the same region would travel together for safety. A day's journey was roughly 20-25 miles. The search among relatives and acquaintances (*syggenesin kai tois gnostois*) reflects the extended family and community network that traveled together.
- 45.** The return trip adds another day, meaning at least two full days pass before they find Jesus (a day's travel out, a day's travel back, then the search in Jerusalem on the third day, v. 46). The verb *anazetountes* ('searching for, seeking diligently') is intensive — this is an anxious, determined search.
- 46.** The 'three days' (*meta hemeras treis*) may foreshadow the three days between crucifixion and resurrection — a pattern Luke's reader might notice retrospectively. The scene of a twelve-year-old 'sitting among the teachers' (*kathemenon en meso ton didaskalon*) in the temple depicts the posture of a student in a rabbinical discussion. Jesus is both listening and asking — the ancient pedagogical method of learning through dialogue. The 'teachers' (*didaskalon*) were likely scribes and scholars who gathered in the temple courts.
- 47.** The verb *existanto* ('were amazed, were astounded') is stronger than the earlier *ethaumasas* (v. 18) — it implies being beside oneself with astonishment. The combination of *synesis* ('understanding, comprehension, insight') and *apokriseis* ('answers, responses') shows Jesus was not merely asking precocious questions but demonstrating a depth of comprehension that stunned the scholars.
- 48.** Mary's address *teknon* ('child') expresses both tenderness and maternal authority. The verb *odynomenoi* ('in distress, in anguish') is a strong word — the same root is used for the agony of the rich man in Hades (16:24-25). Mary's reference to 'your father' (*ho pater sou*) sets up Jesus's response, which will redefine the word 'father.'
- 49.** These are the first recorded words of Jesus in Luke's Gospel. The phrase *en tois tou patros mou* ('in the things/house of my Father') is ambiguous — it can mean 'in my Father's house' (referring to the temple) or 'about my Father's affairs' (referring to his mission). Both meanings may be intended. The key theological move is the implicit correction of Mary's 'your father': Jesus distinguishes between Joseph ('your father,' v. 48) and God ('my Father'). The verb *dei* ('it is necessary, must') introduces Luke's theme of divine necessity — Jesus's life follows a divinely determined path.
- 50.** The verb *synekan* ('understood, comprehended') indicates that even Mary and Joseph — who had received angelic revelations, heard Simeon's prophecy, and witnessed the shepherds' visit — did not fully grasp the implications of Jesus's words. Luke is honest about the gap between revelation received and revelation understood. Full understanding will come only later, in light of the resurrection.
- 51.** The verb *hypotassomenos* ('being subject, being obedient') emphasizes that Jesus's extraordinary temple dialogue did not lead to rebellion against parental authority. The one who called God 'my Father' nevertheless submits to his earthly parents — a profound theological juxtaposition. Mary's treasuring (*dieterei*, 'was carefully keeping') echoes v. 19 and reinforces the sense that Luke's source may have been Mary's own recollections.
- 52.** This closing summary echoes 1 Samuel 2:26 ('The boy Samuel continued to grow in stature and in favor with the LORD and with people'). The Greek *proekopten* ('was advancing, was progressing') implies steady development. The fourfold growth — wisdom (*sophia*), stature/age (*helikia*), favor with God (*chariti para theo*), favor with people (*anthropois*) — presents a fully human development. Luke's Gospel affirms both the divine identity and the genuine humanity of Jesus.
- 52.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 2:26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

3

Summary: *Luke 3 opens with an elaborate sixfold dating formula placing John the Baptist's ministry in precise historical context. John preaches a baptism of repentance in the wilderness, quoting Isaiah 40:3-5 at length. He delivers practical ethical teaching to crowds, tax collectors, and soldiers, and announces the coming of one greater than himself who will baptize with the Holy Spirit and fire. After Herod Antipas imprisons John, Luke narrates Jesus's baptism — the heavens open, the Spirit descends as a dove, and the Father's voice declares Jesus to be his beloved Son. The chapter concludes with Jesus's genealogy, traced backward from Joseph all the way to Adam and to God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's dating formula (vv. 1-2) is the most precise chronological anchor in the Gospels, naming the Roman emperor, the regional governor, three tetrarchs, and two high priests. The Isaiah quotation (vv. 4-6) extends beyond Matthew and Mark to include 'all flesh shall see the salvation of God' — characteristically Lukan universalism. John's practical ethics (vv. 10-14) are unique to Luke and reveal a prophet concerned not just with repentance but with social justice. Luke's genealogy runs backward (from Jesus to Adam to God), contrasting with Matthew's forward genealogy (from Abraham to Jesus), and extends to all humanity through Adam rather than stopping at Abraham.*

Translation Friction: *Luke's genealogy differs significantly from Matthew's from David onward — Matthew traces through Solomon, Luke through Nathan. Various harmonization theories exist; we render the Greek as given without harmonizing. The phrase 'as was supposed' (hos enomizeto, v. 23) guards the virgin birth while presenting Joseph's legal lineage. The genealogy counts roughly seventy-seven generations, possibly echoing the Enoch traditions or the seventy nations of Genesis 10.*

Connections: *Isaiah 40:3-5 (the voice in the wilderness) connects to the Exodus tradition of God preparing a way through the desert. John's call to repentance connects to the prophetic tradition of Elijah, Amos, and Micah. The baptism scene echoes Israel's crossing of the Jordan and the anointing of kings. The genealogy through Adam connects Jesus to all humanity and to the creation narrative of Genesis 1-5.*

¹In the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar, when Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene, ²Annas and Caiaphas being the high priests, the message of God arrived to John the son of Zacharias in the wilderness. ³He went into the entire region around the Jordan, proclaiming a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins, ⁴Indeed, as it is written in the book of the words of Esaias the prophet of old and stated, The voice of one crying in the desert, Prepare you the way of the Lord, make his paths straight.

⁵Every valley will be filled in,
and every mountain and hill will be made low.
The crooked will become straight,
and the rough paths will be made smooth.

⁶All flesh will see the salvation of God. ⁷He said to the crowds coming out to be baptized by him, "You brood of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? ⁸Therefore produce fruit consistent with repentance. And do not begin saying to yourselves, 'We have Abraham as our father.' For I tell you, God is able to raise up children for Abraham from these stones. ⁹Even now the axe is laid at the root of the trees. Every tree that does not produce good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire." ¹⁰The crowds asked him, "What then should we do?" ¹¹He answered them, "Whoever has two tunics should share with the one who has none, and whoever has food should do the same." ¹²Tax collectors also came to be baptized and said to him, "Teacher, what should we do?" ¹³He said to them, "Collect no more than what you have been authorized to collect." ¹⁴So soldiers also asked him, "What should we do?" He said to them, "Do not extort money from anyone by threats or false accusations, and be satisfied with your pay." ¹⁵As the people were filled with expectation and everyone was questioning in their hearts whether John might be the Christ, ¹⁶John answered them all, "I baptize you with water, but one who is more

powerful than I is coming. I am not worthy to untie the strap of his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire. ¹⁷His winnowing fork is in his hand to clear his threshing floor and to gather the wheat into his barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire." ¹⁸So with many other exhortations he proclaimed the good news to the people. ¹⁹But Herod the tetrarch, who had been rebuked by John concerning Herodias, his brother's wife, and concerning all the evil things Herod had done, ²⁰Indeed, added yet this above all, that he locked away John in prison. ²¹Now when all the people had been baptized and Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, the heavens were opened, ²²The Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice arrived from heaven, which stated, you are my Son, whom I love deeply. In you I am well pleased. ²³Jesus himself was about thirty years old when he began his ministry, being the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli, ²⁴Which was the son of Matthat, which was the son of Levi, which was the son of Melchi, which was the son of Janna, which was the son of Joseph,. ²⁵Which was the son of Mattathias, which was the son of Amos, which was the son of Naum, which was the son of Esli, which was the son of Nagge,. ²⁶Which was the son of Maath, which was the son of Mattathias, which was the son of Semei, which was the son of Joseph, which was the son of Juda,. ²⁷Which was the son of Joanna, which was the son of Rhesa, which was the son of Zorobabel, which was the son of Salathiel, which was the son of Neri,. ²⁸Which was the son of Melchi, which was the son of Addi, which was the son of Cosam, which was the son of Elmodam, which was the son of Er,. ²⁹Which was the son of Jose, which was the son of Eliezer, which was the son of Jorim, which was the son of Matthat, which was the son of Levi,. ³⁰Which was the son of Simeon, which was the son of Juda, which was the son of Joseph, which was the son of Jonan, which was the son of Eliakim,. ³¹Which was the son of Melea, which was the son of Menan, which was the son of Mattatha, which was the son of Nathan, which was the son of David,. ³²Which was the son of Jesse, which was the son of Obed, which was the son of Booz, which was the son of Salmon, which was the son of Naasson,. ³³Which was the son of Aminadab, which was the son of Aram, which was the son of Esrom, which was the son of Phares, which was the son of Juda,. ³⁴Which was the son of Jacob, which was the son of Isaac, which was the son of Abraham, which was the son of Thara, which was the son of Nachor,. ³⁵Which was the son of Saruch, which was the son of Ragau, which was the son of Phalec, which was the son of Heber, which was the son of Sala,. ³⁶Which was the son of Cainan, which was the son of Arphaxad, which was the son of Sem, which was the son of Noe, which was the son of Lamech,. ³⁷Which was the son of Mathusala, which was the son of Enoch, which was the son of Jared, which was the son of Maleleel, which was the son of Cainan,. ³⁸Which was the son of Enos, which was the son of Seth, which was the son of Adam, which was the son of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke's sixfold dating formula imitates the style of Old Testament prophetic introductions (cf. Isaiah 1:1, Jeremiah 1:1-3, Hosea 1:1) and Hellenistic historical writing. The fifteenth year of Tiberius would be approximately AD 28-29. The scope expands outward from the emperor to the local rulers, placing God's prophetic word within the structures of worldly power. 'Tetrarch' (tetraarchountos) literally means 'ruler of a quarter' — these were subordinate rulers under Roman authority.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 1:1-3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Hosea 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. Technically only one high priest served at a time; Caiaphas held the office officially (AD 18-36), but Annas, his father-in-law who had served earlier (AD 6-15), retained enormous influence (cf. John 18:13, Acts 4:6). Luke names both to reflect the political reality. The phrase *egeneto rhema theou epi Ioannen* ('the word of God came upon John') is a classic prophetic call formula — the same language used for Elijah (1 Kings 17:2), Jeremiah (Jeremiah 1:4), and Ezekiel (Ezekiel 1:3). After centuries of prophetic silence, God speaks again.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 17:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 1:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 1:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The phrase *baptisma metanoias* ('baptism of repentance') combines a ritual act (immersion in water) with its purpose (turning back to God). The Greek *metanoia* ('repentance, change of mind') corresponds to the Hebrew *teshuvah* — a turning, a return. 'For the forgiveness of sins' (*eis aphesisin hamarton*) indicates the goal or result of this repentance-baptism. John's baptism is preparatory, pointing forward to the one who will baptize with the Holy Spirit (v. 16).
4. The quotation is from Isaiah 40:3-5 (LXX). Luke quotes more of Isaiah than Matthew or Mark, extending to the universal climax in v. 6. In its original context, Isaiah 40 announced the end of Babylonian exile — God would make a highway through the desert to lead his people home. Luke sees John as the fulfillment of this prophetic voice. The 'way of the Lord' (*ten hodon kyriou*) in Isaiah refers to YHWH; Luke's application to Jesus carries a high christological claim.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 40:3-5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The imagery is of ancient road-building for a royal procession — filling valleys, leveling hills, straightening curves, and smoothing surfaces. The language operates on both literal and metaphorical levels: God is coming, and the landscape (both physical and spiritual) must be prepared. The reversal theme (valleys raised, mountains lowered) echoes the Magnificat's theme of the proud brought low and the humble lifted up (1:52).
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:3-5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. This final line of the Isaiah quotation is included only by Luke among the Synoptic Gospels. It is characteristically Lukan — 'all flesh' (*pasa sarx*) means all humanity, not just Israel. This universal vision connects to Simeon's prophecy (2:30-32) and anticipates the Gentile mission in Acts. The phrase *to soterion tou theou* ('the salvation of God') echoes Isaiah 52:10 and the Nunc Dimittis.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:3-5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 52:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. In Matthew 3:7, this denunciation is directed specifically at Pharisees and Sadducees; Luke directs it to 'the crowds' — a broader audience consistent with Luke's portrayal of John as a public preacher. 'Brood of vipers' (*gennemata echidnon*) is a devastating image — vipers fleeing a brush fire, scattering before the flames. The 'coming wrath' (*mellouses orges*) refers to eschatological judgment, which John sees as imminent.
8. The plural *karpous* ('fruits') in Luke (Matthew has the singular 'fruit') may emphasize the variety of righteous deeds expected. John attacks the presumption that ethnic descent from Abraham guarantees standing before God — a revolutionary claim that dismantles ethnic privilege. The wordplay between 'stones' (*lithon*) and 'children' (*tekna*) may reflect an Aramaic pun between *avanim* ('stones') and *banim* ('sons'), though the pun does not work in Greek.
9. The axe 'at the root' (*pros ten rhizan*) — not at the branches — indicates total destruction, not pruning. The present tenses *ekkoptetai* ('is being cut down') and *balletai* ('is being thrown') convey urgency: judgment is not merely future but already in process. The tree-and-fruit metaphor will recur throughout Luke's Gospel (6:43-44, 13:6-9).
10. This question — *ti oun poiesomen* ('what then should we do?') — will be asked three times (vv. 10, 12, 14), with each group receiving specific, practical instruction. This threefold dialogue is unique to Luke and reflects his characteristic interest in the practical outworking of repentance in daily life and social relationships.
11. The *chiton* ('tunic, inner garment') was a basic necessity, not a luxury. John is not asking for extraordinary sacrifice but for the sharing of essentials. The ethic is simple: if you have more than you need and your neighbor has less, share. This practical social ethic anticipates the economic themes that pervade Luke's Gospel (the rich fool, Lazarus and the rich man, Zacchaeus).
12. Tax collectors (*telonai*) were Jews who contracted with the Roman authorities to collect taxes, often extracting more than required and keeping the surplus. They were despised as collaborators and sinners. That they come to John for baptism is remarkable — Luke consistently shows tax collectors responding positively to God's message (5:27-32, 7:29, 15:1, 18:10-14, 19:1-10). Their address 'Teacher' (*didaskale*) shows respect for John's authority.
13. John does not tell the tax collectors to quit their profession — a surprising moderation. He calls them to practice their trade honestly. The Greek *diatetagmenon* ('what has been ordered, what has been appointed') refers to the official tax rate. The systemic corruption was not the tax itself but the overcharging. John's ethic addresses the specific temptation of each group.
14. The Greek *strateuomenoi* ('soldiers, those on military service') likely refers to Jewish soldiers serving under Herod Antipas rather than Roman legionaries. The verb *diaseiete* ('shake down, extort by intimidation') describes the common practice of soldiers using their power to extract money from civilians. The verb *sykophantesete* ('accuse falsely, blackmail') originally meant 'to inform on fig-smugglers' and came to mean malicious prosecution for personal gain. John again addresses the specific temptation of the group: abuse of power.
15. The verb *prosdokontos* ('were expecting, were in anticipation') indicates that messianic expectation was running high. The verb *dialogizomenon* ('were debating, were reasoning, were questioning') suggests internal deliberation. John's powerful preaching and moral authority raised the question that would require an explicit denial — was he the promised Messiah?

16. John's contrast is stark: water versus Holy Spirit and fire. The sandal-strap image places John below even the lowest slave — untying a master's sandals was considered too degrading for a Jewish slave. The phrase *en pneumatī hagio kai pyri* ('with the Holy Spirit and fire') is debated: does 'fire' refer to purifying judgment (v. 17), to the fire of Pentecost (Acts 2:3), or to both? The context of v. 17 suggests judgment, but Luke's later Pentecost narrative shows fulfillment in both senses.
17. The winnowing fork (*ptyov*) was used to toss harvested grain into the air; the heavier grain fell back to the threshing floor while the lighter chaff blew away. The metaphor depicts thorough separation — the coming one will distinguish genuine repentance from superficial compliance. 'Unquenchable fire' (*pyri asbesto*) intensifies the judgment theme. This agricultural image would have been immediately vivid to John's rural audience.
18. Luke's summary note is striking: even John's stern warnings about judgment constitute 'good news' (*euangelizeto*, 'he was gospeling'). The verb is the same one used for Gabriel's announcement to Zechariah (1:19) and the angel's announcement to the shepherds (2:10). Warning of judgment is gospel when it calls people to repentance and points them to the coming Savior.
19. Luke narrates Herod's imprisonment of John before Jesus's baptism, which is a literary rather than strictly chronological arrangement — Luke wants to conclude John's ministry before beginning Jesus's. Herod Antipas had married Herodias, the wife of his half-brother (Herod Philip). John's rebuke (*elegchomenos*, 'being reprov'd, being exposed') was a prophetic confrontation of royal sin in the tradition of Nathan confronting David (2 Samuel 12) and Elijah confronting Ahab (1 Kings 21).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The verb *prosetheken* ('added') with *epi pasin* ('to all the rest, on top of everything') presents the imprisonment as the crowning act of Herod's wickedness. The verb *katekleisen* ('shut up, locked away') is emphatic. According to Josephus (*Antiquities* 18.5.2), John was imprisoned at the fortress of Machaerus east of the Dead Sea. Luke leaves the story here and does not narrate John's execution until it is reported later.
21. Luke's account of Jesus's baptism is notably brief and places it after John's imprisonment narrative (vv. 19-20), so John is not explicitly present. Luke uniquely adds that Jesus was 'praying' (*proseuchomenou*) at the moment of the heavenly revelation — prayer at key moments is a distinctive Lukan theme (5:16, 6:12, 9:18, 9:28-29, 11:1, 22:41-44). The opening of the heavens (*aneochtenai ton ouranon*) signals divine communication breaking through the barrier between heaven and earth (cf. Ezekiel 1:1, Isaiah 64:1).
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 64:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Luke uniquely specifies *somatiko eidei* ('in bodily form') — the Spirit's descent was not merely a vision but a visible, physical manifestation. The heavenly voice combines Psalm 2:7 ('You are my Son') with Isaiah 42:1 ('my chosen, in whom my soul delights'), merging the royal Davidic identity with the Servant of the LORD. The second-person address 'You are' (*su ei*) makes this a personal declaration to Jesus, not merely an announcement to bystanders.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 2:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 42:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The age of thirty echoes David's age when he began to reign (2 Samuel 5:4), Joseph's age when he entered Pharaoh's service (Genesis 41:46), and the age at which Levites began temple service (Numbers 4:3). The parenthetical *hos enomizeto* ('as was supposed, as was thought') guards the virgin birth — Joseph was the legal but not biological father. Luke's genealogy differs from Matthew's from David onward. Heli may be Mary's father, with the genealogy traced through her line, though this is debated.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 5:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 41:46 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 4:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The genealogy from this point to David (v. 31) is largely unattested in Old Testament records, representing either a lesser-known branch of the Davidic family or sources no longer extant. The names are rendered in their standard English forms where recognizable.
25. The names Amos and Nahum are shared with Old Testament prophets, though these are different individuals. Luke's genealogy contains several names with theophoric elements — names that incorporate references to God.
26. The repetition of names like Mattathias and Joseph within the genealogy is common in Jewish naming practice — families frequently reused ancestral names across generations.

- 27.** Zerubbabel and Shealtiel appear in both Matthew's and Luke's genealogies, though the surrounding names differ. In 1 Chronicles 3:17-19, Shealtiel is the son of Jeconiah, while Luke makes him the son of Neri. This is one of the key points where the two genealogies diverge. Zerubbabel led the return from exile and rebuilt the temple (Ezra 3-6).
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Chronicles 3:17-19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezra 3-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** These names span the exilic and post-exilic period. The name Er ('watchful') appears in Genesis 38:3 as Judah's firstborn, though this is obviously a different individual. Many of these names are otherwise unattested in surviving records.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 38:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** The Greek Iesou here is the same name as Jesus (Yeshua/Joshua). This ancestor shares the name that means 'the LORD saves.' The name Eliezer ('my God is help') is prominent in the Old Testament as Abraham's servant (Genesis 15:2) and Moses's son (Exodus 18:4).
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 15:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 18:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The names Simeon, Judah, and Joseph echo the great patriarchal names. Their recurrence in the genealogy reflects the enduring practice of naming children after the ancestral heroes of Israel.
- 31.** Here is the decisive divergence from Matthew's genealogy: Luke traces the line through Nathan, a son of David (2 Samuel 5:14, 1 Chronicles 3:5), while Matthew traces through Solomon. Nathan was David's son by Bathsheba (1 Chronicles 3:5) but not a king. If Luke traces Mary's lineage, both parents descend from David but through different sons — Joseph through Solomon (the royal line) and Mary through Nathan (a non-royal branch).
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Samuel 5:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Chronicles 3:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** From David back to Nahshon, Luke's genealogy matches Matthew's and the Old Testament records (Ruth 4:18-22, 1 Chronicles 2:10-15). These are the ancestors familiar from the book of Ruth: Boaz the kinsman-redeemer, Obed the son of Ruth and Boaz, Jesse the father of David. The genealogy passes through the key figures of God's covenant faithfulness.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ruth 4:18-22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Chronicles 2:10-15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The SBLGNT includes Admin and Arni between Amminadab and Hezron, where Matthew has only Ram/Aram. This reflects a textual tradition with additional generations. Perez was the son of Judah and Tamar (Genesis 38), the beginning of the line that leads to David. The genealogy anchors in the patriarchal period with Judah, son of Jacob.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 38 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The patriarchal triad — Jacob, Isaac, Abraham — forms the backbone of Israel's covenant identity. Where Matthew's genealogy begins with Abraham, Luke passes through Abraham and continues backward. Abraham's father Terah and grandfather Nahor take the line into the pre-Abrahamic period (Genesis 11:24-26). Luke's genealogy is about to move beyond the covenant people into universal human ancestry.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 11:24-26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** These names follow the genealogy of Genesis 11:10-26. Eber is traditionally considered the ancestor from whom the name 'Hebrew' derives. Peleg's name means 'division' — 'for in his days the earth was divided' (Genesis 10:25), traditionally associated with the Tower of Babel event.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 11:10-26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** Luke includes Cainan between Arphaxad and Shelah, following the Septuagint text of Genesis 10:24 and 11:12-13. The Hebrew Masoretic Text does not include this generation. Shem ('name') is the ancestor of the Semitic peoples. Noah, the survivor of the flood, marks the genealogy's passage through the great judgment-and-renewal event of Genesis 6-9.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 10:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 6-9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. These names follow the genealogy of Genesis 5. Enoch is singled out in Genesis 5:24: 'Enoch walked with God, and he was not, for God took him.' Methuselah is traditionally the longest-lived person in the Bible (969 years, Genesis 5:27). These antediluvian figures connect Jesus to the earliest epochs of human history.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The genealogy reaches its theological climax: Adam, the son of God (tou theou). Where Matthew begins with Abraham (father of Israel), Luke ends with God (father of all humanity). This universal scope is characteristic of Luke's theology — Jesus is not only Israel's Messiah but the Savior of all humanity, descended from the first human whom God created. The phrase 'son of God' applied to Adam echoes Genesis 1:27 (created in God's image) and sets up a parallel with Jesus as 'Son of God' in a unique and ultimate sense. The genealogy thus frames Jesus's identity: he is both son of Adam (fully human, connected to all people) and Son of God (divinely begotten, announced by heaven).
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1:27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4

Summary: *Luke 4 narrates the temptation of Jesus in the wilderness, his programmatic sermon at the Nazareth synagogue (reading from Isaiah 61), his rejection and near-execution by his hometown, and the beginning of his Galilean ministry with healings and exorcisms in Capernaum. The Nazareth sermon functions as Luke's thesis statement for Jesus's entire ministry — good news to the poor, freedom for captives, sight for the blind, liberty for the oppressed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke reorders the temptations (compared to Matthew), placing the temple temptation last and ending in Jerusalem — the city where Jesus's ministry will climax. The Nazareth sermon is placed at the very beginning of Jesus's public ministry in Luke (though Mark and Matthew place similar events later), functioning as a programmatic declaration. Jesus's reference to Elijah's ministry to a Sidonian widow and Elisha's healing of a Syrian leper (vv. 25-27) provokes murderous rage by implying God's favor extends to Gentiles — a preview of the central tension in Luke-Acts.*

Translation Friction: *The chronological placement of the Nazareth episode differs across the Synoptics. Luke appears to have moved it forward for theological-literary purposes. The phrase 'Today this scripture is fulfilled' (v. 21) makes an extraordinary claim. The demons' recognition of Jesus (vv. 34, 41) and Jesus's silencing of them raises questions about the 'messianic secret' motif.*

Connections: *The temptation narrative recapitulates Israel's wilderness testing (Deuteronomy 6-8), with Jesus succeeding where Israel failed. The Isaiah 61 quotation connects to the Jubilee tradition (Leviticus 25) — the 'year of the Lord's favor' is a Jubilee proclamation. The Elijah and Elisha references (vv. 25-27) connect to 1 Kings 17 and 2 Kings 5 and anticipate Luke's Gentile mission theme.*

¹Jesus, full of the Holy Spirit, returned from the Jordan and was led by the Spirit in the wilderness ²Being forty days tempted of the devil. And at that time he did eat nothing — and when they were ended, he afterward hungered. ³The devil said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command this stone to become bread." ⁴Jesus answered him, "It is written: 'A person shall not live by bread alone.'" ⁵Then the devil led him up and showed him all the kingdoms of the world in an instant of time. ⁶The devil said to him, "I will give you all this authority and their glory, for it has been handed over to me, and I give it to anyone I wish. ⁷So if you worship before me, it will all be yours." ⁸Jesus answered him, "It is written: 'You shall worship the Lord your God, and him only shall you serve.'" ⁹Then he led him to Jerusalem and set him on the pinnacle of the temple and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down from here, ¹⁰Since it is written, He will give his angels charge over you, to keep you: ¹¹In their hands they will bear you up, lest at any time you dash your foot opposed to a stone. ¹²Jesus answered him, "It is said: 'You shall not put the Lord your God to the test.'" ¹³When the devil had finished every temptation, he departed from him until an opportune time. ¹⁴Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit to Galilee, and a report about him spread through the entire surrounding region. ¹⁵He taught in their synagogues, and everyone praised him. ¹⁶He came to

Nazareth, where he had been raised. As was his custom, he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day and stood up to read. ¹⁷The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him. He unrolled the scroll and found the place where it was written:

¹⁸"The Spirit of the Lord is upon me,
because he has anointed me
to bring good news to the poor.
He has sent me to proclaim release to the captives
and recovery of sight to the blind,
to set free the oppressed,

¹⁹Indeed, to preach the acceptable year of the Lord. ²⁰He rolled up the scroll, gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. The eyes of everyone in the synagogue were fixed on him. ²¹He began to say to them, "Today this Scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing." ²²All spoke well of him and were amazed at the gracious words coming from his mouth. They said, "Is this not Joseph's son?" ²³He said to them, "No doubt you will quote this proverb to me: 'Physician, heal yourself.' 'What we heard you did in Capernaum, do here in your hometown as well.'" ²⁴Then he said, "Truly I tell you, no prophet is accepted in his hometown. ²⁵But in truth I tell you, there were many widows in Israel in the days of Elijah, when the sky was shut for three years and six months and a severe famine came over all the land, ²⁶However, to none of them was Elias dispatched, save to Sarepta, a city of Sidon, to a woman that was a widow. ²⁷And there were many lepers in Israel in the time of the prophet Elisha, yet none of them was cleansed except Naaman the Syrian." ²⁸Everyone in the synagogue was filled with rage when they heard this. ²⁹They rose up, drove him out of the city, and led him to the edge of the hill on which their city was built, so that they could throw him off the cliff. ³⁰But he passed through the middle of them and went on his way. ³¹He went down to Capernaum, a city in Galilee, and was teaching them on the Sabbath. ³²They were astonished at his teaching, because his word carried authority. ³³In the synagogue there was a man who had the spirit of an unclean demon, and he cried out with a loud voice, ³⁴"Ha! What do you want with us, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are — the Holy One of God!" ³⁵Jesus rebuked him: "Be silent and come out of him!" The demon threw the man down in the middle of them and came out of him without injuring him. ³⁶Amazement came over all of them, and they said to one another, "What is this word? He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power, and they come out!" ³⁷And reports about him went out to every place in the surrounding region. ³⁸He left the synagogue and entered Simon's house. Simon's mother-in-law was suffering from a high fever, and they asked him about her. ³⁹He stood over her and rebuked the fever, and it left her. Immediately she got up and began serving them. ⁴⁰As the sun was setting, all who had anyone sick with various diseases brought them to him, and he laid his hands on each one of them and healed them. ⁴¹Demons also came out of many people, crying out, "You are the Son of God!" But he rebuked them and would not allow them to speak, because they knew he was the Christ. ⁴²At daybreak he went out to a deserted place. The crowds were searching for him, and when they came to him, they tried to keep him from leaving them. ⁴³But he said to them, "I must proclaim the good news of the kingdom of God to the other cities also, because that is why I was sent." ⁴⁴And he continued preaching in the synagogues of Judea.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke emphasizes the Spirit's role with two references in one verse: Jesus is 'full of' (pleres) the Spirit and 'led by' (egeto en) the Spirit. The wilderness (eremos) connects to Israel's forty years of testing and to John's wilderness ministry. The passive voice 'was led' indicates divine initiative — the Spirit directs Jesus into the place of testing.
2. The forty days echo Moses's forty days on Sinai (Exodus 34:28), Elijah's forty days to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8), and Israel's forty years in the wilderness. The Greek peirazomenos ('being tempted, being tested') uses the present participle, suggesting ongoing testing throughout the entire period, not just the three specific temptations. The Greek diabolos ('devil, slanderer, accuser') translates the Hebrew satan.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 34:28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 19:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

3. The conditional *ei* ('if') is a first-class condition in Greek, not expressing doubt but assuming the premise: 'Since you are the Son of God...' The temptation is not about proving identity but about using divine power for personal comfort outside the Father's will. Luke has the singular 'stone' and 'bread' where Matthew has the plural — a minor variation. The temptation echoes Israel's demand for bread in the wilderness (Exodus 16).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 8:3. The SBLGNT text ends the quotation at 'bread alone' without including the second half ('but by every word that comes from the mouth of God'), which appears in some manuscripts imported from Matthew 4:4. Jesus responds to each temptation exclusively with Scripture from Deuteronomy 6-8 — the very chapters about Israel's wilderness testing. Where Israel failed, Jesus succeeds by holding to God's word.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 8:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Luke's order places this temptation second (Matthew places it third). The SBLGNT does not include 'to a high mountain' (which appears in Matthew and in some Luke manuscripts). The phrase *en stigme chronou* ('in a point/instant of time') is unique to Luke and suggests a supernatural vision rather than a physical vantage point. The Greek *oikoumenes* ('of the inhabited world') is the same term used for the Roman Empire in 2:1.
6. The devil's claim — that worldly authority 'has been handed over' (*paradedotai*) to him — is a theological assertion that Jesus does not dispute. The passive voice implies God permitted this transfer (cf. Job 1-2, where Satan operates within divine permission). The temptation offers a shortcut to universal rule without the cross. The Greek *exousia* ('authority, power') is the same word Jesus will use for his own authority throughout the Gospel.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 1-2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek *proskynesēs* ('worship, bow down before') is the verb used for worship of God throughout the Septuagint and New Testament. The devil demands the one thing that belongs exclusively to God — worship. This is the most direct and naked of the three temptations: it explicitly asks Jesus to transfer his allegiance from God to Satan in exchange for earthly power.
8. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 6:13. The SBLGNT does not include 'Get behind me, Satan' (which appears in Matthew and some Luke manuscripts). The Deuteronomy passage is from the Shema context — the foundational confession of Israel's exclusive loyalty to God. The verb *latreusis* ('serve, render religious service') is the same verb used by Zechariah for the goal of redemption (1:74). Worship and service belong to God alone.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 6:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Luke places the temple temptation last (third), ending in Jerusalem — the city that will be the climax of Jesus's story. The Greek *pterygion* ('pinnacle, wing, highest point') of the temple may refer to the southeastern corner of the temple platform, which towered over the Kidron Valley. The temptation is to force God's hand — to compel a miraculous rescue that would prove sonship publicly.
10. The devil now quotes Scripture — Psalm 91:11-12. This is a psalm of divine protection for the righteous. The devil's use of Scripture demonstrates that quoting the Bible does not guarantee correct application. The citation is accurate but the application is twisted — Psalm 91 promises divine protection for those who trust God, not for those who recklessly test him.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 91:11-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The quotation from Psalm 91:12 continues. Notably, the devil omits the phrase 'in all your ways' from Psalm 91:11 — a significant omission that changes the meaning. The psalm promises protection for those walking in God's appointed ways, not for those deliberately seeking danger. The devil's exegesis is selective and misleading.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 91:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. Jesus quotes Deuteronomy 6:16, which specifically references Israel's testing of God at Massah (Exodus 17:1-7), where Israel demanded that God prove himself. The verb *ekpeiraseis* ('test, put to the test') is stronger than the simple *peirazo* — it implies testing with the intent to provoke or to force God's hand. Jesus completes the Deuteronomy trilogy (8:3, 6:13, 6:16), demonstrating mastery of the very scriptures that defined Israel's failure.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 6:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 17:1-7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The phrase *achri kairou* ('until an opportune time, until the right moment') is ominous — the devil has not been defeated permanently but has withdrawn temporarily. Luke will identify the devil's return at 22:3, when Satan enters Judas. The word *kairos* ('opportune moment') rather than *chronos* ('duration of time') suggests the devil is watching for the strategically right moment to attack again.

14. The threefold Spirit reference in the temptation narrative (4:1a, 4:1b, 4:14) shows progression: full of the Spirit, led by the Spirit, returning in the power of the Spirit. Jesus emerges from the testing with the Spirit's power demonstrated and confirmed. The Greek pheme ('report, fame, rumor') indicates Jesus's reputation is already spreading before Luke narrates any specific ministry.
15. The imperfect edidasken ('was teaching, kept teaching') indicates ongoing activity across multiple synagogues. The verb doxazomenos ('being glorified, being praised') creates an ironic contrast with what is about to happen in Nazareth — universal praise will give way to murderous rejection. Luke sets up the Nazareth scene by first noting the positive reception elsewhere.
16. The phrase kata to ethos auto ('as was his custom') indicates Jesus had a regular practice of synagogue attendance — this was not his first visit as an adult. The phrase 'where he had been raised' (hou en tethrammenos) connects to the childhood narrative of chapter 2. Standing to read was the posture for reading Scripture; sitting was the posture for teaching (v. 20). Luke provides the most detailed description of a synagogue service in the New Testament.
17. The Greek biblion ('scroll, book') refers to a physical scroll; 'unrolled' (anaptuxas) is the literal action. Whether Jesus chose this passage or it was the assigned reading for that Sabbath is debated — the verb heuren ('found') could support either deliberate seeking or providential coincidence. The Isaiah scroll would have been one of the most prominent scrolls in any synagogue.
18. The quotation is from Isaiah 61:1-2 with a line from Isaiah 58:6 ('to set free the oppressed') inserted. The verb echrisen ('anointed') is the verbal root of Christos ('Christ/Anointed One') — Jesus reads a passage about anointing and will claim it as his own identity. 'Good news to the poor' (euangelisasthai ptochois) is Luke's signature theme. The four activities — good news to the poor, release to captives, sight to the blind, freedom for the oppressed — define Jesus's mission programmatically.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 61:1-2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 58:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The 'year of the Lord's favor' (eniauton kyriou dektion) alludes to the Jubilee year (Leviticus 25), when debts were cancelled, slaves freed, and ancestral land returned. Isaiah 61 reinterprets the Jubilee eschatologically — the ultimate release, the final restoration. Critically, Jesus stops reading mid-verse. Isaiah 61:2 continues with 'and the day of vengeance of our God,' which Jesus deliberately omits. The omission is theologically significant — Jesus announces favor, not vengeance.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 61:1-2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 25. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Jesus sits down to teach — the seated posture of a rabbi delivering instruction. The verb atenizontes ('gazing intently, staring fixedly') conveys intense anticipation. The entire congregation senses that something significant is about to happen. The dramatic pause between sitting and speaking heightens the tension Luke is building.
21. The word semeron ('today') is one of the most important words in Luke's Gospel (cf. 2:11, 5:26, 19:5, 9, 23:43). It declares that the ancient prophecy has moved from promise to fulfillment in the present moment. The perfect tense peplerōtai ('has been fulfilled') indicates completed action with ongoing results — the fulfillment has happened and continues to be in effect. 'In your hearing' (en tois osin hymon, literally 'in your ears') emphasizes that they are eyewitnesses to the fulfillment event.
22. The initial reaction is positive — the congregation speaks well (emarturoun, 'bore witness, testified favorably') of Jesus and marvels at his 'words of grace' (logois tes charitos). But the question 'Is this not Joseph's son?' contains the seed of rejection: they know his ordinary origins and struggle to reconcile them with extraordinary claims. The shift from admiration to hostility (vv. 28-29) will be triggered by Jesus's own provocative words.
23. Jesus anticipates their demand — perform miracles here like you did in Capernaum. The proverb 'Physician, heal yourself' (iatre, therapeuson seauton) was a common ancient maxim meaning 'prove your claims on your own turf first.' This implies Jesus had already been active in Capernaum before the Nazareth visit, even though Luke places this scene first in his narrative — another indication of Luke's theological rather than strictly chronological arrangement.
24. The phrase amen lego hymin ('truly I tell you') is a solemn introductory formula unique to Jesus in the Gospels — no rabbi or prophet before him used 'amen' to introduce rather than conclude a statement. Jesus identifies himself as a prophet and simultaneously predicts his rejection. The word dektos ('accepted, welcome') echoes the 'acceptable year' (eniauton dektion) of v. 19 — the same root word. The year is acceptable; the prophet is not.
25. Jesus introduces two Old Testament precedents that will enrage his audience. The 'three years and six months' specification matches James 5:17 but exceeds the 1 Kings 18:1 reference to 'the third year.' The detail may come from Jewish tradition. The point is building: even in Elijah's day, God's prophet was rejected by Israel and sent instead to a Gentile.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 18:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The reference is to 1 Kings 17:8-24. Zarephath was in Phoenician territory — Gentile land. The scandalous implication is clear: God bypassed all the widows of Israel and sent his prophet to a Gentile woman. This is not just a historical anecdote but a prophetic pattern that Jesus is about to repeat — his ministry will extend beyond Israel's borders.

26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 17:8-24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The reference is to 2 Kings 5:1-14. Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army — not just a Gentile but an enemy military officer. Jesus's point is devastating: God's grace is not bound by ethnic boundaries, and when Israel rejects God's prophet, God sends that prophet's healing power to Israel's enemies. This is the statement that transforms admiration into rage (v. 28).
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 5:1-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The verb *eplesthesan* ('were filled') is the same word used for being 'filled with the Holy Spirit' (1:15, 41, 67) — here the filling is with *thymos* ('rage, fury, wrath'). The transition from 'all spoke well of him' (v. 22) to 'all were filled with rage' is abrupt and total. The trigger is clear: Jesus's implication that God's grace extends to Gentiles, especially when Israel proves unfaithful.
29. The mob action — expulsion from the city and attempted execution — mirrors the pattern of rejected prophets. Nazareth sits on a ridge with steep slopes. The verb *katakremisai* ('to throw down a cliff, to hurl headlong') describes a form of execution. The attempt to kill Jesus at the very beginning of his ministry foreshadows the crucifixion — rejection by his own people leading to his death outside the city.
30. The manner of Jesus's escape is left unexplained — whether by natural means (the crowd's hesitation, his composure) or supernatural intervention. The brevity of the statement (seven Greek words) is striking after the dramatic buildup. Jesus is untouchable until his appointed hour (cf. John 7:30, 8:59). The verb *eporeueto* ('was going on his way') uses the imperfect, suggesting calm, deliberate movement — not panicked flight.
31. The verb *katelton* ('went down') is geographically accurate — Capernaum sits on the shore of the Sea of Galilee, significantly lower than Nazareth in the hills. Capernaum becomes Jesus's base of operations in Galilee, replacing the hometown that rejected him. The imperfect 'was teaching' (*en didaskon*) indicates regular, ongoing instruction.
32. The Greek *exousia* ('authority, power') is a key Lukan term. Unlike the scribes who taught by citing rabbinic precedent, Jesus taught with inherent authority — his word itself carried weight. The verb *exeplessonto* ('were astonished, were struck with amazement') indicates the teaching made a deep impact. The contrast with Nazareth is implicit: in Capernaum, Jesus's authority is recognized; in Nazareth, it was rejected.
33. Luke's phrase *pneuma daimoniou akathartou* ('spirit of an unclean demon') is fuller than Mark's 'unclean spirit.' The encounter takes place in the synagogue — the sacred space is not immune to demonic presence. The loud cry (*anekraxen phone megale*) disrupts the worship setting. Luke presents exorcism as a core component of Jesus's ministry alongside teaching.
34. The interjection *ea* ('ha!' or 'leave us alone!') expresses alarm. The phrase *ti hemin kai soi* ('what to us and to you?') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'what business do you have with us?' The demon uses the plural 'us' (*hemin, hemas*), possibly speaking for all demons. The title 'the Holy One of God' (*ho hagios tou theou*) is a correct identification — the demons know exactly who Jesus is. In the ancient world, knowing and speaking someone's name was believed to give power over them; the demon attempts to control Jesus by identifying him.
35. The verb *phimotheti* ('be muzzled, be silenced') is a strong command — the same verb used for muzzling an animal. Jesus refuses the demon's identification not because it is wrong but because the testimony of demons is not the appropriate source for revealing his identity. The detail 'without injuring him' (*meden blapsan auton*) shows Jesus's protective concern for the man even during the dramatic exorcism.
36. The Greek *thambos* ('amazement, astonishment, wonder') is a stronger reaction than the earlier 'astonishment' at his teaching (v. 32). The combination of *exousia* ('authority') and *dynamis* ('power') represents both the right and the ability to command — Jesus has both the divine authorization and the supernatural power to cast out demons. The crowd recognizes that teaching authority (v. 32) and power over demons (v. 36) are manifestations of the same *logos* ('word').
37. The Greek *echos* ('sound, report, echo') suggests the news reverberates outward like sound waves. The verb *exeporeueto* (imperfect, 'kept going out') indicates ongoing, expanding fame. This echoes the summary of v. 14 and shows the growing impact of Jesus's combined ministry of teaching and healing.
38. Luke introduces Simon (Peter) without prior explanation — the reader is assumed to know who Simon is, or Luke treats his first mention as sufficient introduction. Luke the physician uses medical language: *pyreto megalo* ('a great/high fever'). The verb *synechomene* ('held fast, gripped, suffering from') suggests the fever's oppressive hold on her. That 'they asked him about her' indicates the household's trust in Jesus's power to heal.
39. Luke uniquely describes Jesus rebuking (*epetimesen*) the fever — the same verb used for rebuking the demon (v. 35). This suggests Luke views the fever as having a spiritual dimension or at least shows Jesus exercising the same authority over disease as over demons. The immediate recovery (*parachrona*, 'at once') and her ability to serve (*diekonei*, 'was serving, was ministering') demonstrate the completeness of the healing — no recovery period needed.
40. The timing 'as the sun was setting' (*dynontos tou heliou*) marks the end of the Sabbath — people waited until the Sabbath restrictions on carrying burdens were lifted before bringing the sick. Luke uniquely notes that Jesus laid hands 'on each one' (*heni hekasto*) — individual, personal attention to every sick person, not a mass healing from a distance. This detail reflects Luke's interest in Jesus's compassionate engagement with individuals.
41. The demons' confession 'You are the Son of God' (*su ei ho huios tou theou*) is theologically correct but procedurally inappropriate. Jesus silences them (*ouk eia auta lalein*, 'he was not permitting them to speak') because the messianic identity must be revealed on God's timetable and through proper channels, not through demonic proclamation. Luke explains the reason plainly: 'because they knew he was the Christ' (*edeisan ton christon auton einai*).

42. Jesus's withdrawal to a 'deserted place' (eremon topon) for prayer is a Lukan pattern (5:16, 6:12, 9:18, 28). The verb *kateichon* ('were holding back, were restraining') is strong — the crowds physically tried to prevent him from leaving. Their desire to keep him reflects the attractiveness of his healing ministry, but Jesus will redirect their attention to the broader mission.
43. The verb *dei* ('it is necessary, I must') again expresses divine necessity — Jesus's mission is not self-determined but divinely appointed. The phrase *euangelisasthai ten basileian tou theou* ('to proclaim the good news of the kingdom of God') is Luke's summary of Jesus's core message. 'The kingdom of God' (he *basileia tou theou*) is the central concept of Jesus's teaching — God's rule breaking into the present world. The passive *apestalen* ('I was sent') identifies Jesus as one sent by God, a prophetic self-understanding.
44. The SBLGNT reads 'Judea' (*Ioudaias*) rather than 'Galilee' (*Galilaias*, found in many manuscripts). Luke may use 'Judea' in the broader sense of 'the land of the Jews' (i.e., all of Palestine), which is attested elsewhere in Luke-Acts (cf. 6:17, 7:17, 23:5, Acts 10:37). The imperfect periphrastic *kerisson* ('was preaching, continued preaching') emphasizes the ongoing nature of Jesus's synagogue ministry.

5

Summary: *Luke 5 narrates the miraculous catch of fish and the calling of Simon Peter, James, and John; the healing of a man with leprosy; the healing of a paralytic lowered through a roof (with Jesus's claim to forgive sins); the calling of the tax collector Levi and the banquet at his house; and a series of confrontations about fasting and new wine. The chapter establishes the pattern of Jesus's ministry: miraculous power, radical inclusion, and escalating conflict with religious authorities.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's call of Peter is far more detailed than Mark's or Matthew's — it includes the miraculous catch that overwhelms professional fishermen and Peter's profound response: 'Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Lord.' This is a classic theophany response (cf. Isaiah 6:5). The paralytic story introduces the first explicit controversy about Jesus's authority to forgive sins — the Pharisees correctly identify this as a divine prerogative, which is precisely Jesus's point. Levi's banquet scandalizes the religious establishment by putting Jesus at table with 'sinners.'*

Translation Friction: *The chronological relationship between the call narratives in Luke 5 and those in Mark 1/Matthew 4 is debated — Luke places the call after a miracle, while Mark and Matthew place it as an immediate response to Jesus's command. The roof-opening scene differs between Mark ('dug through') and Luke ('through the tiles'), likely reflecting different audiences' familiarity with different building styles.*

Connections: *Peter's call echoes the prophetic call narratives (Isaiah 6, Jeremiah 1, Ezekiel 1-3) — encounter with the divine, awareness of unworthiness, commissioning for mission. The leper's cleansing fulfills the Isaiah 61 program (4:18-19). The paralytic scene raises the Christological question of divine authority. The new-wine parable points to the incompatibility of Jesus's movement with existing religious structures.*

¹Now it happened that while the crowd was pressing in on him to hear the word of God, he was standing beside the lake of Gennesaret. ²He saw two boats moored at the edge of the lake; the fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets. ³He got into one of the boats, which was Simon's, and asked him to put out a little from the shore. Then he sat down and taught the crowds from the boat. ⁴When he had finished speaking, he said to Simon, "Put out into the deep water, and let down your nets for a catch." ⁵Simon answered, "Master, we worked hard all night and caught nothing. But at your word, I will let down the nets." ⁶When they had done this, they enclosed such a large number of fish that their nets began to tear. ⁷They signaled to their partners in the other boat to come and help them. They came, and they filled both boats so full that they began to sink. ⁸When Simon Peter saw this, he fell at Jesus's knees, saying, "Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Lord!" ⁹For astonishment had seized him and all who were with him at the catch of fish they had taken, ¹⁰James and John, Zebedee's sons and Simon's fishing partners, were equally amazed. But Jesus told Simon, "Don't be afraid. From now on, you will be catching people." ¹¹When they had brought the boats to shore, they left everything and followed him. ¹²While he was in one of the cities, there was a man covered with leprosy. When he saw Jesus, he fell on his face and begged him, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean." ¹³He stretched out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." And immediately the leprosy left him. ¹⁴He ordered him to tell no one: "Go, show yourself to the priest, and make the offering for your cleansing that Moses commanded, as a testimony to them." ¹⁵But the word about him spread even more, and large

crowds gathered to listen and to be healed of their illnesses. ¹⁶But he would withdraw to deserted places and pray. ¹⁷On one of those days, as he was teaching, Pharisees and teachers of the law were sitting nearby. They had come from every village of Galilee and Judea and from Jerusalem. And the power of the Lord was present for him to heal. ¹⁸Then some men came carrying on a stretcher a man who was paralyzed, and they were trying to bring him in and set him before Jesus. ¹⁹Finding no way to bring him in because of the crowd, they went up on the roof and lowered him on his stretcher through the tiles into the middle of the crowd, right in front of Jesus. ²⁰When he saw their faith, he said, "Friend, your sins are forgiven you." ²¹The scribes and the Pharisees began to question this, saying, "Who is this who speaks blasphemy? Who can forgive sins but God alone?" ²²But Jesus, knowing their thoughts, responded to them, "Why are you questioning in your hearts? ²³Which is easier to say: 'Your sins are forgiven you,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'? ²⁴But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins" — he said to the paralyzed man — "I say to you, get up, pick up your stretcher, and go home." ²⁵Immediately he stood up before them, picked up what he had been lying on, and went home, glorifying God. ²⁶As astonishment seized all of them, and they glorified God. Filled with awe, they said, "We have seen extraordinary things today!" ²⁷After this he went out and saw a tax collector named Levi sitting at the tax booth, and he said to him, "Follow me." ²⁸And leaving everything behind, he got up and followed him. ²⁹Then Levi hosted a great banquet for Jesus at his house, and there was a large crowd of tax collectors and others reclining at table with them. ³⁰The Pharisees and their scribes complained to his disciples, "Why do you eat and drink with tax collectors and sinners?" ³¹Jesus answered them, "It is not the healthy who need a doctor, but the sick. ³²I have not come to call the righteous but sinners to repentance." ³³They said to him, "The disciples of John fast frequently and offer prayers, and so do the disciples of the Pharisees, but yours eat and drink." ³⁴Jesus said to them, "Can you make the wedding guests fast while the bridegroom is with them? ³⁵And then will they fast at that time, but the days will come, when the bridegroom will be taken away from them. ³⁶He also told them a parable: "No one tears a patch from a new garment and puts it on an old garment. Otherwise, the new garment would be torn, and the patch from the new would not match the old. ³⁷And no one puts new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise, the new wine will burst the skins — the wine will be spilled and the skins will be ruined. ³⁸Rather, new wine must be put into fresh wineskins. ³⁹And no one who drinks old wine wants new, for he says, 'The old is good enough.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'lake of Gennesaret' is the Sea of Galilee, named here after the fertile plain on its northwestern shore. Luke consistently calls it a 'lake' (limne) rather than 'sea' (thalassa) as in Mark and Matthew — a more geographically precise term, as it is a freshwater lake. The crowd 'pressing in' (epikeisthai, 'pressing upon, crowding') demonstrates the intensity of the response to Jesus's teaching.
2. The 'boats' (ploia) were fishing boats typical of the Sea of Galilee — roughly 26 feet long based on archaeological finds. Washing nets after fishing was standard maintenance to remove debris and prevent rotting. The detail places the scene after an unsuccessful night of fishing (v. 5 will confirm this). The fishermen's ordinary work becomes the setting for an extraordinary encounter.
3. Jesus uses Simon's boat as a floating pulpit — the water would create a natural amphitheater for his voice to carry to the shore. He sits to teach (the posture of a rabbi, as in 4:20). This practical use of Simon's boat precedes the command that will change Simon's life. Jesus first enters Simon's ordinary world before calling him to an extraordinary one.
4. The shift from singular ('put out' — epanagage, addressed to Simon as captain) to plural ('let down your nets' — chalasate, addressed to the crew) is natural: Simon steers the boat; everyone lowers the nets. The command to fish in deep water during daylight contradicts professional fishing practice — Galilean fishermen worked at night in shallow water. Jesus, a carpenter, tells professional fishermen how to fish.
5. Simon's address epistata ('master, chief, commander') is a Lukan term (used six times in Luke, nowhere else in the NT) that acknowledges authority without necessarily implying belief in divinity. His statement 'we worked hard all night and caught nothing' (di holes nyktos kopiasantes ouden elabomen) establishes the futility of human effort. His willingness to obey 'at your word' (epi de to remati sou) despite professional judgment is the first step of faith.
6. The verb synekleisan ('enclosed, caught, trapped') emphasizes the overwhelming quantity. The imperfect diērresseto ('were tearing, began to tear') indicates the nets were in the process of breaking — an ongoing struggle with an impossible abundance. The catch exceeds what human equipment can contain. This is the pattern of divine provision: superabundance beyond expectation (cf. the feeding of the five thousand, 9:10-17).
7. The verb kateneusan ('beckoned, signaled') suggests they were too far from shore or too overwhelmed to shout. The partners (metochois) in the other boat are identified as James and John in v. 10. Two fully loaded fishing boats beginning to sink (bythizesthai, 'to be submerged') paints a vivid picture of abundance threatening to overwhelm. The miracle exceeds all practical capacity.

8. This is the first time Luke uses the full name 'Simon Peter' (Simon Petros). Peter's response is a classic theophany reaction — when Isaiah sees God's glory, he cries 'Woe to me! I am a man of unclean lips' (Isaiah 6:5). Peter recognizes that the miracle reveals divine presence and that divine holiness exposes human sinfulness. The address *kyrie* ('Lord') here carries more weight than *epistata* in v. 5 — Peter's understanding of who Jesus is has deepened in the space of one miracle.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 6:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb *periaschen* ('had seized, had gripped, had surrounded') is a strong term — amazement doesn't just come upon them but seizes and encircles them. The reaction is collective — Peter, his crew, and everyone present is overwhelmed. These are professional fishermen who know what is natural and what is not.
10. James and John are introduced as business partners (*koinonoi*, 'partners, sharers') with Simon. Jesus's 'Do not be afraid' (*me phobou*) echoes the divine reassurance given to Abraham (Genesis 15:1), Moses (Numbers 21:34), and others who encounter God. The verb *zogron* ('catching alive, taking alive') means literally 'to capture alive' — used in the Septuagint for taking prisoners alive (cf. 2 Timothy 2:26). The metaphor transforms fishermen into rescuers of people.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 15:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 21:34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The phrase *aphentes panta* ('having left everything') is radical — they abandon boats, nets, the miraculous catch itself, their livelihood. Luke emphasizes the totality of their response more than Mark's account. The verb *ekolouthēsan* ('followed') is the standard term for discipleship — it implies not just physical movement but life commitment. This is the first formal calling of disciples in Luke's narrative.
12. Luke intensifies Mark's description with *pleres lepras* ('full of, covered with leprosy'), indicating an advanced case. 'Leprosy' (*lepra*) in the Bible covers a range of skin diseases, not just modern Hansen's disease. The man's approach violates Levitical quarantine laws (Leviticus 13:45-46) — he should not be in the city or near people. His statement is remarkable theology: he has no doubt about Jesus's ability ('you can'), only about his willingness ('if you are willing'). He addresses Jesus as *kyrie* ('Lord').
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 13:45-46. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The touch (*hepsato*) is extraordinary — touching a leper made a person ritually unclean (Leviticus 13-14). Instead of Jesus becoming unclean through contact, the man becomes clean through Jesus's touch. The direction of contamination is reversed by Jesus's holiness. The command *katharisthēti* ('be cleansed') is an aorist passive imperative — a single, decisive act of cleansing. The response is instantaneous (*eutheos*, 'immediately').
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 13-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Jesus commands compliance with Leviticus 14:1-32 — the elaborate priestly ritual for certifying that a leper has been cleansed. This included examination by the priest, two birds, cedar wood, scarlet yarn, hyssop, and a series of offerings over eight days. The phrase *eis martyron autois* ('as a testimony to them') is ambiguous — testimony to the priests that a genuine healing has occurred, or testimony against them if they reject it. Jesus affirms the Mosaic law even while transcending it.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 14:1-32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Despite the command to silence, the report (*logos*, 'word') spreads 'even more' (*mallon*). The crowds come for two things: hearing (*akouein*) and healing (*therapeuesthai*) — the twin pillars of Jesus's ministry. Luke consistently presents teaching and healing as inseparable aspects of the kingdom's arrival.
16. The imperfect periphrastic *en hypochoron* ('was withdrawing, would withdraw') indicates habitual practice — this was Jesus's regular pattern, not a single event. The connection between ministry demands and prayerful withdrawal is a consistent Lukan theme. Jesus's power comes through dependence on the Father, maintained through regular prayer.
17. Luke uniquely notes that Pharisees and *nomodidaskaloi* ('teachers of the law, experts in Torah') had gathered from across the land — this is an official observation, not a casual visit. The phrase *dynamis kyriou en eis to iasthai auton* ('the power of the Lord was present for him to heal') is a distinctive Lukan note — the Lord's healing power is specifically present in this moment, suggesting that divine power operates in particular moments rather than as a constant, automatic capacity.
18. The Greek *paralelymenos* ('having been paralyzed') is a perfect passive participle indicating an established, ongoing condition. The verb *ezetoun* ('were seeking, were trying') shows persistent effort — they did not give up when access was blocked. Luke does not specify the number of carriers (Mark says four, Mark 2:3). Their faith-in-action — bringing the paralyzed man to Jesus despite obstacles — is about to be commended.
19. Luke says 'through the tiles' (*dia ton keramon*) where Mark says they 'dug through' the roof (Mark 2:4). Palestinian roofs were typically made of wooden beams covered with branches and packed earth, which could be dug through; Luke may be adapting the description for a Gentile audience familiar with tiled roofs. The Greek *klinidion* ('small bed, stretcher') is a diminutive, emphasizing the improvised nature of the arrangement.

- 20.** Jesus sees 'their faith' (ten pistin auton) — the plural 'their' includes both the paralyzed man and his friends. Faith in this context is demonstrated through action, not verbal confession. The address anthrope ('man, friend') is a Lukan distinctive (cf. 12:14, 22:58, 60). The declaration apheontai soi hai hamartiai sou ('your sins have been forgiven you') is a divine passive — God is the implied agent of the forgiveness. Jesus speaks what only God can do.
- 21.** The religious leaders' theological logic is impeccable: only God can forgive sins (cf. Isaiah 43:25, 'I, even I, am the one who blots out your transgressions'). Their conclusion — that Jesus is blaspheming by claiming a divine prerogative — is correct if Jesus is merely human. The question 'Who is this?' (tis estin houtos) is the central christological question of Luke's Gospel. Jesus will answer it not by withdrawing the claim but by demonstrating the authority behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 43:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 22.** The verb epignous ('having known, having perceived') indicates supernatural knowledge of their internal reasoning — they have not spoken their objection aloud. Jesus knows their dialogismous ('thoughts, deliberations, reasonings'). This itself is a divine attribute (cf. 1 Kings 8:39, 'you alone know the hearts of all people'; Jeremiah 17:10, 'I the LORD search the heart').
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 8:39. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 17:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The question is a rhetorical trap for the critics. To say 'your sins are forgiven' is easier because it cannot be verified or falsified — no one can see whether forgiveness has actually occurred. To say 'get up and walk' is harder because it can be immediately tested. Jesus will do the harder, verifiable thing to prove the authority behind the easier, invisible thing.
- 24.** This is the first use of 'Son of Man' (ho huios tou anthropou) in Luke. The title draws on Daniel 7:13-14, where 'one like a son of man' receives authority, glory, and an everlasting kingdom from the Ancient of Days. Jesus claims that this heavenly authority operates 'on earth' (epi tes ges) — the divine prerogative of forgiveness is being exercised here and now. The sentence breaks mid-thought as Jesus turns from the critics to the patient — Luke preserves the dramatic pause.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:13-14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** The adverb parachrona ('immediately, at once') emphasizes the instantaneous nature of the healing. The man does exactly what Jesus commanded — stands, picks up the stretcher, goes home — demonstrating both the completeness of the healing and the authority of Jesus's word. His response of 'glorifying God' (doxazon ton theon) is the proper recognition that divine power has been at work.
- 26.** The Greek ekstasis ('astonishment, amazement, ecstasy') is the root of the English 'ecstasy' — a state of being outside oneself with wonder. The crowd is simultaneously amazed, glorifying God, and filled with phobos ('fear, awe'). The word paradoxa ('extraordinary things, things contrary to expectation') gives us the English 'paradox' — they have witnessed things that defy normal categories. The word semeron ('today') echoes the programmatic 'today' of 4:21.
- 27.** Levi (identified as Matthew in Matthew 9:9) is sitting at his telonion ('tax booth, toll station'), likely a customs post on a trade route near Capernaum. Tax collectors were despised as collaborators with Rome and presumed cheaters. Jesus's invitation 'Follow me' (akolouthei moi) is the same simple, authoritative command that called the fishermen. Jesus does not ask Levi to reform first and then follow — the call comes to him in the midst of his despised occupation.
- 28.** Like the fishermen (v. 11), Levi leaves 'everything' (panta). For a tax collector, this means abandoning a lucrative position — unlike fishing, the tax-collection franchise could not be easily resumed once abandoned. The imperfect ekolouthei ('was following, began to follow') may indicate the beginning of ongoing discipleship.
- 29.** Levi's response to his call is immediate hospitality — a 'great banquet' (dochen megalen) that introduces Jesus to Levi's social network. The verb katakeimenoi ('reclining') indicates a formal Greco-Roman banquet setting where diners reclined on couches. The guest list — tax collectors and 'others' (presumably those outside respectable society) — will provoke the criticism of v. 30. Table fellowship in the ancient world implied acceptance and social equality among the diners.
- 30.** The verb egongyzon ('were grumbling, were complaining') is the same word used for Israel's grumbling against Moses in the wilderness (Exodus 15:24, 16:2 LXX) — Luke may be drawing the parallel. The complaint is directed at the disciples rather than at Jesus directly. 'Tax collectors and sinners' (telonon kai hamartolon) is a stock phrase for the socially and religiously marginalized. The offense is table fellowship — eating with someone implied approval and solidarity.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 15:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** Jesus responds with a proverb that reframes the situation entirely. The Greek hugiainontes ('the healthy, those who are sound') and kakos echontes ('those having it badly, the sick') draw from medical vocabulary — fitting for Luke's audience. The proverb is both an explanation (I go where the need is) and a subtle challenge to the Pharisees (are you sure you're as healthy as you think?).

32. The verb *elelitha* ('I have come') implies purpose and mission — Jesus has come from somewhere (heaven) for a specific reason. The phrase *eis metanoian* ('to repentance') is added by Luke (Mark 2:17 lacks it), making the purpose explicit: Jesus seeks sinners not to condone their sin but to call them to transformation. Whether 'the righteous' (*dikaiois*) is said with irony (no one is truly righteous) or seriously (some are already in right relationship with God) is debated.
33. The complaint shifts from who Jesus eats with (v. 30) to the fact that his disciples eat at all rather than fasting. John's disciples and the Pharisees' disciples fasted 'frequently' (*pykna*) — the Pharisees fasted twice a week (Monday and Thursday, cf. 18:12). The contrast between fasting (religious austerity) and eating and drinking (celebration) sets up Jesus's response about the bridegroom.
34. The phrase *huios tou nymphonos* ('sons of the bridal chamber,' i.e., wedding guests, attendants of the bridegroom) is a Semitic idiom. The bridegroom image for God's relationship with his people has deep Old Testament roots (Isaiah 54:5, 62:5, Hosea 2:16-20). Jesus implicitly identifies himself as the bridegroom — a divine role. A wedding is a time of celebration, not fasting; Jesus's presence inaugurates a time of joy.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 54:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 2:16-20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The verb *aparthē* ('will be taken away') is a violent term — it suggests forcible removal, not voluntary departure. This is the first oblique reference to Jesus's death in Luke's Gospel. The passive voice implies others will take him away. The future fasting 'in those days' (*en ekeinaiis tais hemeraiis*) points to the period after the crucifixion. The statement subtly moves from the present joy of Jesus's ministry to the future sorrow of his death.
36. Luke's version of the patch parable is more elaborate than Mark's. Luke uniquely adds that the new garment would be ruined by cutting it — double loss. The point is not simply that new and old are incompatible but that trying to combine them destroys both. Jesus's movement is not a patch on existing religious structures but something entirely new.
37. New wine continues to ferment and expand; old wineskins have lost their elasticity. The metaphor drives home the same point as the patch parable: Jesus's message and movement cannot be contained within the old structures. The 'new wine' represents the kingdom of God breaking in; the 'old wineskins' represent the existing religious frameworks. Both the wine (the message) and the skins (the structure) are lost if forced together.
38. The verbal adjective *bleteon* ('must be put') expresses necessity — this is not optional but required. The new reality Jesus brings demands new forms to contain it. Luke does not include 'and both are preserved' (found in some manuscripts), keeping the focus on the necessity of the new.
39. This verse is unique to Luke and adds a surprising coda. The Greek *chrestos* ('good, pleasant, useful') — some manuscripts read *chrestoteros* ('better') — describes the old wine's appeal. The saying acknowledges a psychological reality: people prefer what they're accustomed to. The religious establishment will not readily embrace the new because the old system seems satisfactory. This verse may express gentle irony about the Pharisees' resistance or may acknowledge that the transition from old covenant to new is genuinely difficult.

6

Summary: *Luke 6 contains two Sabbath controversies (grain-picking and healing a withered hand), the choosing of the Twelve apostles after a night of prayer, and the Sermon on the Plain — Luke's parallel to Matthew's Sermon on the Mount. The sermon includes four blessings and four woes, teaching on loving enemies, not judging, and the parable of the two foundations. This chapter establishes Jesus's ethical teaching and the formation of his core community.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's Beatitudes differ significantly from Matthew's. Luke has four blessings and four corresponding woes (Matthew has eight/nine blessings and no woes). Luke's blessings are addressed in the second person ('Blessed are you who are poor') rather than Matthew's third person ('Blessed are the poor in spirit'). Luke's version appears more concrete and socioeconomic — 'poor' rather than 'poor in spirit,' 'hungry now' rather than 'hungry for righteousness.' The 'love your enemies' teaching (vv. 27-36) is the most radical ethical instruction in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Luke's Sermon on the Plain and Matthew's Sermon on the Mount is debated — whether they are different versions of the same event, different events with overlapping material, or literary compositions drawing on a common source. We render Luke's Greek text as given without harmonizing with Matthew.*

Connections: *The Sabbath controversies connect to Exodus 20:8-11 and Deuteronomy 5:12-15, with Jesus reinterpreting Sabbath in light of its original humanitarian purpose. The Beatitudes echo the Magnificat's reversal theme (1:46-55) and Hannah's prayer (1 Samuel 2:1-10). The 'love your enemies' teaching connects to Leviticus 19:18 while radically extending it. The two-foundations parable echoes Ezekiel 13:10-16 and Proverbs 10:25.*

¹On a Sabbath, as Jesus was passing through the grain fields, his disciples were picking heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands, and eating them. ²Some of the Pharisees said, "Why are you doing what is not permitted on the Sabbath?" ³Jesus answered them, "Have you not even read what David did when he and his companions were hungry? ⁴He entered the house of God, took the bread of the Presence and ate it, and gave some to his companions — bread that only the priests are permitted to eat." ⁵Then he said to them, "The Son of Man is lord of the Sabbath." ⁶On another Sabbath he entered the synagogue and was teaching. A man was there whose right hand was withered. ⁷The scribes and the Pharisees were watching him closely to see whether he would heal on the Sabbath, so that they might find a charge to bring against him. ⁸But he knew their thoughts and said to the man with the withered hand, "Get up and stand in the middle." He got up and stood there. ⁹Jesus said to them, "I ask you: is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?" ¹⁰After looking around at all of them, he said to him, "Stretch out your hand." He did so, and his hand was restored. ¹¹But they were filled with fury and began discussing with one another what they might do to Jesus. ¹²In those days he went out to the mountain to pray, and he spent the whole night in prayer to God. ¹³When day came, he called his disciples and chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles: ¹⁴Simon, whom he also named Peter, and Andrew his brother, and James and John, and Philip and Bartholomew, ¹⁵Matthew and Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, and Simon called Zelotes, ¹⁶Judas the brother of James, and Judas Iscariot, which also was the traitor. ¹⁷He came down with them and stood on a level place. A large crowd of his disciples was there, along with a great multitude of people from all Judea and Jerusalem and the coastal region of Tyre and Sidon, ¹⁸They that were vexed with unclean spirits — then they were healed. ¹⁹The whole crowd sought to touch him — for there traveled virtue out of him, and healed them all.

²⁰Then he looked up at his disciples and said:

"Blessed are you who are poor,
for yours is the kingdom of God.

²¹Blessed are you who are hungry now,
for you will be satisfied.
Blessed are you who weep now,
for you will laugh.

²²Blessed are you when people hate you, and when they exclude you and insult you and reject your name as evil on account of the Son of Man. ²³Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, for your reward is great in heaven. For their ancestors treated the prophets in the same way.

²⁴But woe to you who are rich,
for you have already received your comfort.

²⁵Woe to you who are full now,
for you will be hungry.
Woe to you who laugh now,
for you will mourn and weep.

²⁶Woe to you when all people speak well of you,
for their ancestors treated the false prophets in the same way.

²⁷"But I say to you who are listening: Love your enemies, do good to those who hate you, ²⁸Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which maliciously use you. ²⁹To the one who strikes you on the cheek, offer the other also, and from the one who takes your cloak, do not withhold your tunic either. ³⁰Give to everyone who asks you, and from the one who takes what is yours, do not demand it back. ³¹Treat others the way you want them to treat you. ³²If you love those who love you, what credit is that to you? Even sinners love those who love them. ³³And if you do good to those who do good to you, what credit is that to you? Even sinners do the same. ³⁴And if you lend to those from whom you expect to receive back, what credit is that

to you? Even sinners lend to sinners to get back the same amount. ³⁵But love your enemies, do good, and lend expecting nothing in return. Then your reward will be great, and you will be children of the Most High, for he is kind to the ungrateful and the wicked. ³⁶Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful. ³⁷"Do not judge, and you will not be judged. Do not condemn, and you will not be condemned. Forgive, and you will be forgiven. ³⁸Give, and it will be given to you — a good measure, pressed down, shaken together, and running over, will be poured into your lap. For the measure you use will be measured back to you." ³⁹He also told them a parable: "Can a blind person guide a blind person? Will they not both fall into a pit? ⁴⁰A disciple is not above the teacher, but everyone who is fully trained will be like the teacher. ⁴¹Why do you see the speck in your brother's eye, but do not notice the log in your own eye? ⁴²How can you say to your brother, 'Brother, let me take the speck out of your eye,' when you yourself do not see the log in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take the speck out of your brother's eye. ⁴³"No good tree produces bad fruit, nor does a bad tree produce good fruit. ⁴⁴Each tree is known by its own fruit. People do not gather figs from thornbushes, or pick grapes from a bramble bush. ⁴⁵The good person out of the good treasure of the heart produces good, and the evil person out of evil treasure produces evil. For out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks. ⁴⁶"Why do you call me 'Lord, Lord,' and not do what I tell you? ⁴⁷Everyone who comes to me and hears my words and acts on them — I will show you what that person is like. ⁴⁸That person is like someone building a house who dug deep and laid the foundation on rock. When a flood came, the river burst against that house but could not shake it, because it had been well built. ⁴⁹But the one who hears and does not act is like someone who built a house on the ground without a foundation. When the river burst against it, it collapsed immediately, and the destruction of that house was great."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads simply *en sabbato* ('on a Sabbath') without the textually difficult *deuteroproto* ('second-first') found in some manuscripts and reflected in the KJV. The disciples' actions — picking grain (*etillon*) and rubbing it (*psochontes*) — would have been considered reaping and threshing under strict Pharisaic Sabbath interpretation. Deuteronomy 23:25 permitted eating from a neighbor's field by hand; the issue was not theft but Sabbath work.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 23:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Greek *exestin* ('it is permitted, it is lawful') refers to halakhic legal interpretation — the Pharisees' oral tradition had elaborated thirty-nine categories of forbidden Sabbath work. The accusation is specific: the disciples are violating the Sabbath by performing agricultural labor. The Pharisees address 'you' (plural), including Jesus as responsible for his disciples' behavior.
3. Jesus's opening 'Have you not even read?' (*oude touto anegnote*) is a pointed challenge to the Pharisees' biblical expertise. The appeal to David's precedent (1 Samuel 21:1-6) is a brilliant rhetorical move: if David, the greatest king, could supersede the letter of the law when necessity demanded, how much more can the Son of David? The parallel is: David was hungry and broke the bread law; the disciples are hungry and break the Sabbath law.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 21:1-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The 'bread of the Presence' (*artos tes protheseos*, literally 'bread of the setting-forth') refers to the twelve loaves placed before God in the tabernacle and renewed weekly (Leviticus 24:5-9, Exodus 25:30). Only priests could eat the old loaves. David's action in 1 Samuel 21:1-6 established a principle: human need can take precedence over ritual restriction. Jesus does not argue that the Sabbath law is wrong but that its application must serve human well-being.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 24:5-9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 25:30. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 21:1-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The claim is extraordinary: the Son of Man is *kyrios* ('lord, master, sovereign') of the Sabbath — the day God himself instituted (Genesis 2:2-3, Exodus 20:8-11). If Jesus is lord of the Sabbath, he has authority to determine its proper observance. Luke does not include Mark's statement 'The Sabbath was made for man, not man for the Sabbath' (Mark 2:27), going directly to the christological claim.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:2-3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 20:8-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

6. Luke specifies 'the right hand' (he dexia) — a detail absent from Mark and Matthew. The right hand was considered the hand of power, skill, and blessing; its loss was particularly disabling. The Greek xera ('dry, withered, atrophied') indicates a chronic condition, not an acute injury. The scene is set for another Sabbath confrontation.
7. The verb *pareterounto* ('were watching closely, were observing carefully') suggests hostile surveillance. Luke reveals their intent: not to learn or to wonder but to 'find a charge' (*heurōsin kategorein*) — legal language for building a case. The healing has not yet occurred, but the opposition has already decided on their conclusion.
8. Again Jesus demonstrates knowledge of internal thoughts (*edei tous dialogismous auton*, cf. 5:22). Rather than avoiding the confrontation, Jesus makes it public — placing the man 'in the middle' (*eis to meson*) forces everyone to see the human need that stands at the center of the Sabbath debate. The man's obedient response sets the stage for the healing.
9. Jesus reframes the question entirely. The Pharisees asked whether healing was permitted; Jesus asks whether doing good or doing harm is permitted. The verbs *agathopoesai* ('to do good') and *kakopoesai* ('to do harm') create a stark binary — if healing is forbidden, then refusing to heal when one can is doing harm. The Sabbath, meant for human flourishing, becomes an instrument of suffering when its observance prevents mercy. Jesus forces the opposition to choose between their interpretation and basic human compassion.
10. The verb *periblepsamenos* ('having looked around at') describes a deliberate, sweeping gaze — Jesus looks each opponent in the eye before acting. The command 'stretch out your hand' (*ekteinon ten cheira sou*) requires the man to do what he cannot do — and in the act of obedience, ability is given. The passive *apekatestathē* ('was restored') is a divine passive — God restores through Jesus's command.
11. The Greek *anoias* ('madness, fury, senselessness') indicates an irrational rage — literally 'without mind.' They are 'filled' (*eplesthesan*) with it, as others have been 'filled' with the Holy Spirit. Luke presents two types of fullness: Spirit-filled praise and fury-filled plotting. Their discussion about 'what they might do to Jesus' (*ti an poiesian to Iesou*) is the beginning of the conspiracy that will lead to the cross.
12. The verb *dianyktereoun* ('spending the whole night') appears only here in the New Testament. Jesus's all-night prayer precedes the appointment of the Twelve — the most consequential leadership decision of his ministry is preceded by the most extended prayer Luke records. The phrase *en te proseuche tou theou* ('in the prayer of God') could mean 'in prayer to God' or possibly 'in a house of prayer dedicated to God.' The former is more likely.
13. The verb *exelexamenos* ('having chosen, having selected') indicates deliberate, Spirit-informed selection from a larger group of disciples. The title *apostolous* ('apostles, sent ones') from the verb *apostello* ('to send') defines their role: they are commissioned representatives, sent with the authority of the one who sends them. The number twelve corresponds to the twelve tribes of Israel — the apostles represent the reconstituted people of God.
14. Simon receives the name *Petros* ('Peter,' from *petra*, 'rock'). This renaming echoes the Old Testament pattern of God renaming those he commissions for special roles (Abram to Abraham, Jacob to Israel). Andrew and Simon are brothers; James and John are brothers (sons of Zebedee, 5:10). The list is arranged in pairs, a pattern that may reflect mission practice (cf. 10:1, sent 'two by two').
15. Matthew is identified with Levi the tax collector (5:27-28) by tradition. Thomas (from Aramaic *te'oma*, 'twin') will later be known for his doubt and his confession (John 20:24-28). James son of Alphaeus is distinguished from James son of Zebedee. Simon 'the Zealot' (*zeoloten*) indicates either membership in the Zealot political movement opposing Rome or simply religious zeal. The group includes a former tax collector (Roman collaborator) and a zealot (anti-Roman nationalist) — an extraordinary combination.
16. Two men named Judas (*Ioudas*) are listed. 'Judas of James' (*Ioudan Iakobou*) is called 'son of James' by most interpreters (though 'brother of James' is possible; the KJV chooses 'brother'). Judas Iscariot — whose surname may mean 'man of Kerioth' (a Judean town) or may derive from the Latin *sicarius* ('dagger-man') — is identified proleptically as *prodotes* ('traitor, betrayer'). Luke names the end from the beginning.
17. The Greek *topou pedinou* ('a level/flat place') gives this sermon its traditional name, 'Sermon on the Plain,' distinguishing it from Matthew's 'Sermon on the Mount.' Jesus has come down from the mountain (v. 12) to level ground. The audience includes people from Tyre and Sidon — Gentile territory — consistent with Luke's universal scope. The crowd includes 'disciples' (*mathetōn*, a larger group than the Twelve) and 'the people' (*laou*, the general population).
18. Luke distinguishes between those with diseases (*nosōn*, physical illness) and those troubled by unclean spirits (*pneumatōn akathartōn*) — different conditions requiring different interventions, though both are resolved by Jesus's power. The verb *etherapeuonto* ('were being healed, were cured') is in the imperfect, suggesting ongoing healing activity.
19. The verb *ezetoun* ('were seeking, were trying') shows the crowd's desperate urgency. The Greek *dynamis* ('power') literally 'was going out from him' (*par autou exercheto*) — Luke depicts healing power as a tangible force that radiates from Jesus's person. This same concept appears in the story of the woman who touched his garment (8:46). The universal scope — 'healing everyone' (*iato pantas*) — demonstrates the comprehensive nature of Jesus's restorative power.
20. Luke's Beatitudes are addressed directly to the disciples in the second person ('you who are poor') rather than Matthew's third person ('the poor in spirit'). The Greek *ptochoi* ('poor, destitute, beggars') without Matthew's qualifying 'in spirit' (*to pneumati*) refers primarily to material poverty, though spiritual poverty is not excluded. Luke's Jesus consistently champions the economically poor (1:52-53, 4:18, 7:22, 14:13, 16:19-31). The kingdom of God belongs to the poor — not as a future reward for suffering but as a present reality of divine reversal.

21. Luke adds *nyn* ('now') twice, creating a temporal contrast between present suffering and future reversal. The Greek *chortasthesesthe* ('you will be satisfied, you will be filled') was originally used for feeding animals to satisfaction — it implies complete, even excessive fullness. The verb *gelasete* ('you will laugh') is unique to Luke's Beatitudes — laughter as the reversal of weeping. The structure mirrors the Magnificat: God fills the hungry and satisfies those who mourn.
22. Four verbs describe escalating persecution: hate (*misesōsin*), exclude/separate (*aphorisosin* — possibly excommunication from the synagogue), insult/reproach (*oneidisōsin*), and reject/cast out your name (*ekbalosin to onoma*). The phrase 'on account of the Son of Man' (*heneka tou huiou tou anthrōpou*) specifies that the blessing applies specifically to persecution for loyalty to Jesus, not suffering in general.
23. The verb *skirtesate* ('leap for joy') is the same word used for the unborn John leaping in Elizabeth's womb (1:41, 44) — physical, exuberant joy. The persecuted are placed in the lineage of the prophets — to be rejected for God's sake is to share the fate of Isaiah, Jeremiah, and Elijah. The 'great reward in heaven' (*misthos polys en to ourano*) does not mean a distant, immaterial compensation but the heavenly reality that already exists and will be fully revealed.
24. The four woes (vv. 24-26) are unique to Luke and mirror the four blessings exactly. The Greek *ouai* ('woe') is not a curse but a prophetic lament — 'how terrible for you.' The verb *apechete* ('you have received in full') is a commercial term used for receipts — the rich have been paid in full; there is no more coming. The Greek *paraklesin* ('comfort, consolation') is the same word used for the 'consolation of Israel' Simeon awaited (2:25). Those who have already found their consolation in wealth will not find it in God.
25. The reversal is exact: full now/hungry later mirrors hungry now/satisfied later (v. 21); laughing now/mourning later mirrors weeping now/laughing later (v. 21). The word *nyn* ('now') again marks the temporal dimension — present condition does not determine ultimate destiny. Luke's Jesus consistently warns that present prosperity can be spiritually dangerous when it becomes self-sufficient and indifferent to the suffering of others.
26. The fourth woe mirrors the fourth blessing. Universal popularity is a danger sign — the false prophets who told people what they wanted to hear were praised (cf. Jeremiah 5:31, Micah 2:11), while the true prophets who spoke God's uncomfortable word were persecuted (v. 23). If everyone speaks well of you, you may be telling people what they want to hear rather than what God says.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 5:31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 2:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The phrase 'to you who are listening' (*hymn tois akouousin*) narrows the audience to those willing to hear. The command *agapate tous echthrous hymon* ('love your enemies') is the most radical ethical demand in the Gospels. The Greek *agapao* is not an emotion but a deliberate choice to act for another's good — it can be commanded because it is about action, not feeling. 'Do good' (*kalōs poieite*) specifies what love looks like in practice.
28. Four commands form two pairs: love/do good (v. 27) and bless/pray (v. 28). 'Bless' (*eulogeite*) means to speak well of, to invoke God's favor upon — the opposite of their cursing. 'Pray for' (*proseuchesthe peri*) goes beyond words to intercessory action. The verb *epereavonton* ('those who mistreat, those who abuse') describes deliberate hostility. Jesus commands active good toward those who actively harm.
29. The slap on the cheek (*siagona*) was an insult rather than an assault — a backhanded slap was a gesture of contempt. Offering the other cheek is not passive acceptance of abuse but a refusal to retaliate that asserts dignity. Luke reverses the garment order from Matthew (Matthew says tunic then cloak; Luke says cloak then tunic). The *himation* ('outer cloak') was essential for warmth; the *chiton* ('inner tunic') was the basic garment. The teaching demands radical non-retaliation that goes beyond what is taken.
30. The command is sweeping: *panti aitounti* ('to everyone who asks') allows no exceptions. The verb *apaitei* ('demand back') implies legal recourse — do not sue for recovery. These are radical economic principles that prioritize relationship over property. They are not legal codes for civil government but principles for kingdom living that demonstrate trust in God's provision rather than self-protection.
31. The 'Golden Rule' appears in positive form here and in Matthew 7:12. The negative form ('do not do to others what you would not want done to you') was already known in Judaism — attributed to Rabbi Hillel (b. Shabbat 31a). Jesus's positive formulation is more demanding: it requires active initiative, not merely passive restraint. The Greek *kathos thelete* ('as you want') makes the standard one's own desires for good treatment.
32. The Greek *charis* ('credit, grace, thanks') is used here in the sense of 'what is remarkable or praiseworthy about that?' Luke uses 'sinners' (*hamartoloi*) where Matthew uses 'tax collectors' — both make the same point: reciprocal love requires no grace or moral distinction. Even those outside the covenant community practice reciprocal love. Jesus's ethic demands something qualitatively different.
33. The threefold repetition (love, vv. 32; do good, v. 33; lend, v. 34) drives the point home: every form of reciprocal virtue is practiced by people who make no claim to follow God. The standard for disciples must exceed the baseline of ordinary human reciprocity.
34. The Greek *danisete* ('lend') and the expectation of receiving *ta isa* ('equal amount, same amount back') describes ordinary commercial lending. This is not charity but investment. Jesus challenges the economic logic of reciprocity: kingdom economics gives without calculating return.
35. The phrase *meden apelpizontes* ('expecting nothing back, despairing of nothing') captures the radical nature of kingdom generosity. The motivation is not reciprocity but imitation of God — 'you will be children of the Most High' (*esesthe huioi hypsistou*). To be God's children means to act like God. And God's character is defined here as *chrestos* ('kind, good, gracious') toward *tous acharistous kai ponerous* ('the ungrateful and the wicked'). This is Luke's version of Matthew's 'perfect as your heavenly Father is perfect.'

36. Where Matthew 5:48 says 'be perfect' (teleioi), Luke says 'be merciful' (oiktirmones). The Greek oiktirmon ('compassionate, merciful') echoes the Hebrew rachum (from rechem, 'womb') — the deep, visceral compassion of a parent for a child. The standard is not abstract moral perfection but God's own compassionate character. This verse encapsulates the entire Sermon on the Plain.
37. Three prohibitions and three corresponding promises form a tight structure. The Greek krinete ('judge') means to pass sentence, to render a verdict — not to exercise discernment (which is required elsewhere). The verb katadikazete ('condemn') is even stronger — to pass a guilty verdict. The verb apolyete ('forgive, release, let go') is the same word used for forgiveness of sins (aphesis). Each human action triggers a divine response: how we treat others determines how God treats us.
38. The imagery is from the grain market: filling a container, pressing the grain down to remove air, shaking it to settle, and piling more until it overflows. God's return is not merely proportional but superabundant. The 'lap' (kolpon, literally 'bosom' or the fold of a garment used as a pocket) was where merchants received their measured goods. The proverb 'the measure you use will be measured back to you' (ho metro metreite antimetrethesetai hymin) applies to generosity, judgment, forgiveness, and all human dealings.
39. The parable is brief and proverbial. In Matthew 15:14, it is directed at the Pharisees; in Luke, the context suggests it applies to the disciples — those who would teach others must first be able to see clearly themselves. The rhetorical questions expect obvious answers: no, a blind guide cannot lead; yes, both will fall.
40. The Greek katertismenos ('fully trained, fully equipped, made complete') does not mean 'perfect' in the moral sense (as the KJV suggests) but 'fully formed' or 'thoroughly prepared.' The principle is that a student's goal is to become like the teacher. If the teacher is blind, the student will also be blind (v. 39). The positive implication: if Jesus is the teacher, the fully trained disciple will be like him.
41. The Greek karpheos ('speck, splinter, small piece of straw') contrasted with dokos ('beam, log, main structural timber') creates deliberate absurdist humor. The contrast is comically exaggerated to make a serious point about self-righteousness. The verb katanoeis ('notice, observe carefully, consider') implies that failure to see one's own faults requires willful inattention.
42. The term hypokrita ('hypocrite') originally meant 'actor' — one who plays a role. Jesus applies it to those who perform the role of moral adviser while ignoring their own greater faults. Note that Jesus does not forbid helping others with their faults — he says 'first' (proton) deal with your own, 'and then' (kai tote) you will see clearly to help. The goal is not indifference to others' faults but honest self-examination as the prerequisite for genuine helpfulness.
43. The Greek sapron ('rotten, worthless, bad') describes fruit that is spoiled and useless. The tree-and-fruit metaphor establishes a direct connection between inner character and outward behavior. The logic is: examine the fruit to know the tree, examine the behavior to know the heart.
44. The examples are common-sense observations from Palestinian agriculture. Figs (syka) come from fig trees, not from thornbushes (akanthōn). Grapes (staphylen) come from grapevines, not from bramble bushes (batou). The principle is self-evident: the nature of the source determines the nature of the product. Applied to human character, one's actions inevitably reveal one's inner condition.
45. The Greek thesauros ('treasure, storehouse') of the heart is the accumulated deposit of character, conviction, and disposition. The verb propherei ('brings forth, produces') indicates that speech and action emerge from this inner storehouse. The concluding proverb — 'out of the overflow of the heart the mouth speaks' (ek perisseumatōs kardias lalei to stoma) — identifies speech as the most immediate revelation of the heart's condition.
46. The doubled kyrie kyrie ('Lord, Lord') indicates emphatic address — these are not casual followers but people who use the most respectful title. Yet verbal acknowledgment without corresponding obedience is empty. Jesus's challenge is directed at the gap between confession and conduct. The question is unanswerable — there is no good reason for the contradiction.
47. Three actions define the true disciple: coming to Jesus (erchomenos), hearing his words (akouon), and doing them (poion). All three are necessary — hearing without doing is insufficient (v. 49). Luke frames this as a comparison ('I will show you what that person is like'), introducing the parable of the two builders.
48. Luke's version emphasizes the effort of preparation: eskapsev kai ebathynen ('dug and went deep') — the builder deliberately dug down to bedrock rather than building on the surface. The flood (plemmys, a word unique to this passage in the NT) and the river's violent assault (proserexen, 'burst against, dashed against') represent the trials and crises of life. The house stands not because of the storm's weakness but because of the foundation's strength — dia to kalos oikodomesthai ('because it had been well built').
49. The contrast is not between two different storms but between two different foundations — choris themeliou ('without a foundation'). Both houses face the same crisis; the difference is entirely in the preparation. The collapse is immediate (euthys, 'at once') and total — to rhegma ('the destruction, the ruin, the crash') is catastrophic. Luke ends the sermon on this sobering note: hearing Jesus's words without obeying them leads not to a minor setback but to complete ruin.

7

Summary: *Luke 7 presents three major episodes that reveal Jesus's authority and compassion across social boundaries. A Roman centurion in Capernaum displays extraordinary faith by asking Jesus to heal his servant with a word alone — faith Jesus declares unmatched in Israel. At Nain, Jesus raises a widow's only son from the dead, evoking the Elijah-Elisha prophetic tradition. When John the Baptist sends disciples to ask if Jesus is 'the one who is to come,' Jesus responds by pointing to the evidence of his ministry. The chapter concludes with a sinful woman anointing Jesus's feet at a Pharisee's dinner, provoking a parable about forgiveness and love.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The centurion's faith is remarkable precisely because he is a Gentile who understands authority structures — he recognizes that Jesus commands illness the way a military officer commands soldiers. The raising at Nain has no parallel in Matthew or Mark and closely mirrors Elijah's raising of the widow's son at Zarephath (1 Kings 17:17-24). Jesus's reply to John's disciples (vv. 22-23) is a mosaic of Isaiah quotations (29:18-19, 35:5-6, 61:1) that implicitly identifies Jesus as the fulfillment of prophetic hope. The anointing scene demonstrates Luke's distinctive theology of forgiveness: the woman's great love is the evidence of great forgiveness already received, not its cause.*

Translation Friction: *The centurion story differs in detail from Matthew 8:5-13, where the centurion comes in person. Luke has him send intermediaries (Jewish elders, then friends), which many scholars consider the more historically precise account. We render Luke's text as it stands. The identity of the anointing woman is not specified — she is not Mary Magdalene (a later tradition) or Mary of Bethany (John 12). Luke calls her simply 'a woman in the city who was a sinner.'*

Connections: *The widow of Nain episode echoes 1 Kings 17:17-24 (Elijah) and 2 Kings 4:18-37 (Elisha). Jesus's words to John's disciples draw from Isaiah 29:18-19, 35:5-6, and 61:1-2. The parable of the two debtors (vv. 41-43) anticipates the parable of the unforgiving servant in Matthew 18:23-35. John the Baptist's question connects to his earlier testimony in Luke 3:15-17.*

¹After he had finished all his words in the hearing of the people, he entered Capernaum. ²Now a centurion's servant, who was highly valued by him, was sick and about to die. ³When he heard about Jesus, he sent Jewish elders to him, asking him to come and save the life of his servant. ⁴When they came to Jesus, they urged him earnestly, saying, "He is worthy for you to do this for him, ⁵Since he loveth our nation, then he has built us a synagogue. ⁶Jesus went with them. When he was not far from the house, the centurion sent friends, saying to him, "Lord, do not trouble yourself, for I am not worthy to have you come under my roof. ⁷Therefore I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you. But say the word, and let my servant be healed. ⁸For I too am a man placed under authority, with soldiers under me. I say to one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it." ⁹When Jesus heard this, he marveled at him, and turning to the crowd following him, said, "I tell you, not even in Israel have I found such faith." ¹⁰And when those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the servant in good health. ¹¹Soon afterward, he went to a town called Nain, and his disciples and a large crowd went with him. ¹²As he drew near to the gate of the town, a dead man was being carried out, the only son of his mother, and she was a widow. A large crowd from the town was with her. ¹³When the Lord saw her, he had compassion on her and said to her, "Do not weep." ¹⁴Then he came forward and touched the bier, and the bearers stood still. He said, "Young man, I say to you, arise." ¹⁵The dead man sat up and began to speak, and Jesus gave him to his mother. ¹⁶Fear seized them all, and they glorified God, saying, "A great prophet has risen among us!" and "God has visited his people!" ¹⁷And this report about him spread through all Judea and all the surrounding region. ¹⁸The disciples of John reported all these things to him. ¹⁹And John, summoning two of his disciples, sent them to the Lord, asking, "Are you the one who is to come, or should we expect someone else?" ²⁰When the men came to him, they said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you, asking, 'Are you the one who is to come, or should we expect someone else?'" ²¹In that very hour he healed many people of diseases and afflictions and evil spirits, and to many who were blind he gave sight. ²²And he answered them, "Go and tell John what you have seen and heard: the blind receive sight, the lame walk, lepers are cleansed, the deaf hear, the

dead are raised, and the poor have good news proclaimed to them. ²³And blessed is the one who is not offended by me." ²⁴When John's messengers had gone, Jesus began to speak to the crowds concerning John: "What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed shaken by the wind? ²⁵What then did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothing? Those who wear splendid clothing and live in luxury are in royal palaces. ²⁶What then did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I tell you, and more than a prophet. ²⁷This is the one about whom it is written, 'Look, I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way before you.' ²⁸I tell you, among those born of women none is greater than John. Yet the one who is least in the kingdom of God is greater than he." ²⁹When all the people heard this, and the tax collectors too, they declared God righteous, having been baptized with John's baptism. ³⁰But the Pharisees and the lawyers rejected the purpose of God for themselves, not having been baptized by him. ³¹"To what then shall I compare the people of this generation, and what are they like? ³²They are like children sitting in the marketplace and calling to one another, 'We played the flute for you, and you did not dance; we sang a dirge, and you did not weep.' ³³For John the Baptist has come eating no bread and drinking no wine, and you say, 'He has a demon.' ³⁴The Son of Man has come eating and drinking, and you say, 'Look at him! A glutton and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' ³⁵Yet wisdom is vindicated by all her children." ³⁶One of the Pharisees asked him to eat with him, and he went into the Pharisee's house and reclined at table. ³⁷And a woman of the city, who was a sinner, when she learned that he was reclining at table in the Pharisee's house, brought an alabaster flask of ointment. ³⁸Stood at his ankles behind him weeping, and started to wash his ankles with tears, and did wipe them with the hairs of her head, and kissed his feet, and anointed them with the ointment. ³⁹Now when the Pharisee who had invited him saw this, he said to himself, "If this man were a prophet, he would have known who and what sort of woman this is who is touching him — that she is a sinner." ⁴⁰Jesus answered him, "Simon, I have something to say to you." And he said, "Say it, Teacher." ⁴¹"A certain moneylender had two debtors. One owed five hundred denarii, and the other fifty. ⁴²When they could not pay, he graciously forgave them both. Now which of them will love him more?" ⁴³Simon answered, "I suppose the one to whom he forgave more." He said to him, "You have judged correctly." ⁴⁴Then turning toward the woman, he said to Simon, "Do you see this woman? I entered your house; you gave me no water for my feet, but she has wet my feet with her tears and wiped them with her hair. ⁴⁵You gave me no kiss, but from the time I came in she has not ceased kissing my feet. ⁴⁶You did not anoint my head with oil, but she has anointed my feet with ointment. ⁴⁷Therefore I tell you, her sins, which are many, are forgiven — for she loved much. But the one who is forgiven little, loves little." ⁴⁸Then he said to her, "Your sins are forgiven." ⁴⁹Then those who were at table with him began to say among themselves, "Who is this, who even forgives sins?" ⁵⁰And he said to the woman, "Your faith has saved you; go in peace."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse connects the Sermon on the Plain (chapter 6) to the narratives that follow. The phrase *eis tas akoas tou laou* ('in the hearing of the people') emphasizes the public nature of the teaching.
2. The word *entimos* ('valued, precious, honored') indicates this was no ordinary slave — the centurion had genuine affection for this servant. Luke uses *doulos* ('slave, servant') rather than Matthew's *pais* ('boy, servant, child').
3. Unlike Matthew's account where the centurion approaches directly, Luke has him send intermediaries — Jewish elders (*presbyterous tōn Ioudaiōn*). This may reflect the centurion's cultural sensitivity about a Gentile approaching a Jewish teacher, or Luke's interest in the relationship between this Roman and the Jewish community.
4. The Jewish elders vouch for the centurion's worthiness (*axios*) — a judgment that will be ironically reversed by the centurion's own words in verse 6. The elders' advocacy reveals an unusual relationship between this Roman officer and the local Jewish community.
5. A Roman centurion who loves (*agapa*) the Jewish nation and funds synagogue construction is a God-fearer — a Gentile sympathizer with Judaism who has not undergone full conversion. Such figures appear frequently in Luke-Acts (cf. Cornelius in Acts 10).
6. The centurion now sends a second delegation — friends (*philous*) — with a message of self-abasement. Where the elders said 'he is worthy' (*axios*, v. 4), the centurion says 'I am not worthy' (*ouk hikanos*). The concern about Jesus entering his house may reflect awareness of Jewish purity concerns about Gentile homes.
7. Luke uses *pais* ('servant, child') here rather than *doulos* ('slave') as in verse 2, suggesting the terms may be interchangeable for this relationship. The centurion's faith is in the authority of Jesus's word alone — no touch, no visit, no ritual required.

8. The centurion's reasoning is profound: he understands authority from the inside. Because he operates under the authority of Rome and exercises delegated authority over soldiers, he recognizes that Jesus operates under the authority of God and exercises delegated authority over illness. The 'how much more' logic is implicit — if a Roman officer's word commands obedience, how much more the word of one who commands on behalf of God.
9. The verb *ethaumasēn* ('marveled, was amazed') is striking — Jesus is rarely said to be amazed. That a Gentile soldier displays greater faith than anyone in Israel is a provocative declaration, anticipating Luke's consistent theme that outsiders often respond more readily than insiders (cf. the Samaritans, the prodigal's return).
10. Luke records the healing without narrating the moment — the messengers simply find the servant well (*hygiainonta*, 'in good health'). The healing has occurred at a distance, confirming the centurion's faith that Jesus's word alone is sufficient.
11. Nain is a small village about six miles southeast of Nazareth. This episode is unique to Luke. The detail that both disciples and a large crowd accompanied Jesus sets the stage for a public miracle with many witnesses.
12. Every detail heightens the pathos: the son is dead (*tethnēkōs*), he is her only son (*monogenēs*), and she is a widow (*chēra*). Without a son, a widow in the ancient world had no provider, no legal advocate, no social standing. The word *monogenēs* ('only-begotten, one-of-a-kind') is the same word John uses for Jesus (John 3:16). Two crowds converge at the town gate — one following Jesus, one following death.
13. Luke calls Jesus 'the Lord' (*ho kyrios*) — a title Luke uses in narrative more freely than the other Gospels. The verb *esplanchnisthē* ('had compassion') derives from *splanchna* ('intestines, bowels'), reflecting the ancient understanding that deep emotion was felt in the gut. Jesus initiates this miracle unprompted — no one asks him to intervene.
14. Touching a bier (*soros*, the open coffin or funeral stretcher) rendered a person ceremonially unclean (Numbers 19:11-16). Jesus's touch stops the procession. The command *egerthēti* ('arise, be raised') is the same verb used for resurrection throughout the New Testament. Jesus addresses the dead man directly — his word has authority even over death.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 19:11-16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The phrase 'gave him to his mother' (*edōken auton tē mētri autou*) directly echoes 1 Kings 17:23, where Elijah 'gave him to his mother' after raising the widow of Zarephath's son. Luke's readers would recognize the prophetic parallel. The detail that the young man began to speak confirms the reality of the restoration — he is not merely resuscitated but fully alive.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 17:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The crowd's response identifies Jesus as a prophet — specifically a great prophet, evoking Elijah or the prophet like Moses promised in Deuteronomy 18:15. The verb *epeskepsato* ('has visited') is a key Lukan term (cf. 1:68, 78) meaning God has come to intervene on behalf of his people, echoing the Hebrew *paqad*.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The word *logos* ('word, report, account') indicates that the story of the Nain miracle becomes widely known. 'Judea' here may refer broadly to the land of the Jews rather than strictly to the southern province.
18. John the Baptist is in prison (Luke 3:19-20). His disciples serve as intermediaries, bringing news of Jesus's ministry. The phrase *peri pantōn toutōn* ('about all these things') refers to the centurion's healing and the raising at Nain.
19. John's question is startling from the one who identified Jesus at the Jordan (Luke 3:16). Whether it reflects genuine doubt in prison, a desire for his disciples' benefit, or a prophetic impatience that the kingdom has not yet arrived in the way he expected (cf. Luke 3:17, the 'winnowing fork'), is debated. The phrase 'the one who is to come' (*ho erchomenos*) was a recognized messianic title.
20. The repetition of the question emphasizes its weight. Luke records the full exchange, showing the messengers faithfully relaying John's exact words.
21. Luke inserts this summary of healing activity so that Jesus's response to John in the next verse is grounded in observable evidence. The verb *echarisato* ('gave as a gift, granted graciously') shares the root of *charis* ('grace') — sight is a gift of grace.
22. Jesus does not answer John's question directly but points to evidence drawn from Isaiah's prophecies: Isaiah 29:18-19 (deaf hear, blind see), Isaiah 35:5-6 (blind, deaf, lame), and Isaiah 61:1 (good news to the poor). The list forms a composite fulfillment citation. The final item — the poor receiving good news — is climactic, echoing Jesus's own programmatic statement in Luke 4:18.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 29:18-19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 35:5-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 61:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

- 23.** The verb *skandalisthē* ('caused to stumble, take offense') is a warning: Jesus's ministry does not match the expected pattern of a conquering Messiah. The beatitude is gentle but pointed — even John may need to recalibrate his expectations. Jesus is the stumbling stone (*skandalon*) for those whose messianic hopes don't match his methods.
- 24.** Jesus waits until John's messengers leave before publicly praising John — perhaps to spare John's dignity. The image of a reed shaken by the wind suggests weakness and vacillation. The answer is obviously 'No' — John is anything but weak-willed.
- 25.** The contrast is between the desert prophet in rough garments and the courtier in fine robes. John is in Herod's prison, but he does not belong to Herod's world. Luke adds 'luxury' (*tryphē*) to Matthew's version, sharpening the contrast.
- 26.** Jesus affirms John's prophetic identity but elevates him beyond it — John is 'more than a prophet' (*perissoteron prophētou*) because he is the forerunner who directly precedes the Messiah.
- 27.** The quotation combines Exodus 23:20 and Malachi 3:1. In the original Malachi context, God sends his messenger before his own coming to the temple. By applying this to John as the forerunner of Jesus, the text implicitly identifies Jesus with the LORD whose coming Malachi announces.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 3:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 23:20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** The SBLGNT omits 'prophet' (*prophētēs*) after 'John' — making the statement even more sweeping: no human born has been greater than John. Yet the kingdom of God introduces a new order in which even the least participant surpasses the greatest figure of the old order. This is not a diminishment of John but an exaltation of the kingdom.
- 29.** The phrase *edikaiōsan ton theon* ('justified God, declared God righteous') is a remarkable expression — the people acknowledged that God's plan through John was right. Tax collectors (*telōnai*), despised as collaborators with Rome, are singled out as responsive to God's purposes.
- 30.** The contrast is stark: sinners accepted God's plan; the religious experts rejected (*ēthetēsan*) it. The phrase *boulēn tou theou* ('the purpose/counsel of God') is a weighty theological term — the Pharisees are not merely declining a ritual but rejecting God's redemptive plan.
- 31.** Jesus introduces a parable with a double rhetorical question — a common rabbinic teaching format. The phrase 'this generation' (*tēs geneas tautēs*) carries a negative connotation throughout the Gospels, suggesting stubbornness and spiritual obtuseness.
- 32.** The image is of petulant children who refuse to play along regardless of the game proposed. Whether the game is a wedding (flute, dancing) or a funeral (dirge, weeping), they refuse to participate. This generation rejected both John's austerity and Jesus's celebration.
- 33.** John's ascetic lifestyle — no bread, no wine — was consistent with prophetic and Nazirite traditions, but his critics dismissed it as demonic. The accusation 'He has a demon' is the most extreme form of rejection.
- 34.** The accusation *phagos kai oinopotēs* ('glutton and drunkard') echoes the charge against a 'rebellious son' in Deuteronomy 21:20, which carried the death penalty. Jesus's critics may be implicitly making a capital accusation. The phrase 'friend of tax collectors and sinners' (*philos telōnōn kai hamartōlōn*) was intended as an insult but has become one of the most beloved descriptions of Jesus.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The personification of Wisdom (*sophia*) echoes Proverbs 8-9. The meaning is that God's wisdom — expressed through both John's austerity and Jesus's celebratory presence — is proven right by its results ('children,' *teknōn*). Luke has 'all her children' where Matthew has 'her deeds' (Matthew 11:19).
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 8-9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** Jesus accepts dinner invitations from Pharisees as well as sinners — he is not partisan in his associations. The verb *kateklithē* ('reclined') indicates a formal meal; diners reclined on couches, leaning on the left elbow with feet extending behind them — a detail essential for understanding the woman's approach in verse 38.
- 37.** The woman is identified only as 'a sinner' (*hamartōlos*) — likely a euphemism for a prostitute, though Luke does not specify. She is not named, and there is no basis for identifying her with Mary Magdalene (a conflation dating to Pope Gregory I in 591 AD). The alabaster flask (*alabastron*) of *myron* ('perfumed ointment') was an expensive luxury item.
- 38.** Because diners reclined with feet extending away from the table, she could approach his feet from behind without disrupting the meal. Every action is extravagant: tears as washing water, unbound hair as a towel (a Jewish woman letting down her hair in public was scandalous), repeated kissing (*katephilei*, imperfect tense indicating continuous action), and costly ointment on feet rather than head. The scene is an act of lavish, self-abandoning devotion.
- 39.** The Pharisee's reasoning contains a double error: he assumes a prophet would (1) know the woman's character, and (2) refuse her touch. In fact, Jesus does know (as he will demonstrate), and his acceptance of her is precisely the prophetic act. The Pharisee is named Simon in verse 40.

40. Jesus 'answered' (apokritheis) the Pharisee's unspoken thought — demonstrating the very prophetic knowledge Simon doubted. By addressing Simon by name, Jesus personalizes the confrontation. Simon's polite response ('Teacher,' Didaskale) maintains social decorum.
41. A denarius (dēnariion) was approximately one day's wage for a laborer. The debts are therefore roughly 500 days' wages versus 50 — a tenfold difference. The parable is deceptively simple but contains the key to the entire scene.
42. The verb echarisato ('forgave graciously, granted as a favor') shares the root of charis ('grace'). Both debts are cancelled — forgiveness is complete in both cases. The question is about proportional response: who will be more grateful?
43. Simon's cautious 'I suppose' (hypolambanō) suggests he senses a trap. Jesus's confirmation — 'You have judged correctly' (orthōs ekrinas) — is both an affirmation and an ironic reversal: Simon has just pronounced the principle that condemns his own lack of hospitality.
44. Jesus physically turns toward the woman but speaks to Simon — forcing Simon to see her as a person, not a category. The threefold contrast (water/tears, kiss/kissing, oil/ointment) exposes Simon's failure of basic hospitality. Providing water for a guest's feet was a minimal courtesy.
45. A greeting kiss was standard hospitality. Simon neglected even this basic courtesy, while the woman's devotion has been continuous (ou dielipen, 'has not ceased') from the moment Jesus arrived.
46. The final contrast is the sharpest: Simon did not even provide basic olive oil (elaion) for Jesus's head; she provided expensive perfumed ointment (myron) for his feet. Anointing a guest's head was a sign of honor and welcome (cf. Psalm 23:5).
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 23:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. The logic of the parable makes clear that her love is the result of forgiveness, not its cause. The Greek hou charin ('for which reason') and hoti ('because') indicate evidence, not causation: her great love demonstrates that she has already received great forgiveness. The sentence about 'the one forgiven little' is a subtle rebuke of Simon's self-righteousness.
48. Jesus now addresses the woman directly for the first time. The perfect tense apheōntai ('have been and remain forgiven') confirms a completed action — her forgiveness is not new but is now publicly declared.
49. The other guests raise the question that has been building since Luke 5:21: forgiving sins is a divine prerogative. Their question is left unanswered — Luke lets the implicit Christological claim stand without resolution, forcing the reader to answer for themselves.
50. The verb sesōken ('has saved') is the same word used for physical healing and spiritual salvation. The phrase poreuou eis eirēnēn ('go into peace') translates the Hebrew lekhi leshalom and is a benediction of wholeness — she departs not merely forgiven but restored to shalom.

8

Summary: Luke 8 opens with a summary of Jesus's itinerant ministry, naming the women who supported it financially. Jesus teaches the Parable of the Sower, explaining how different responses to God's word yield different outcomes. He then redefines family around obedience to God's word. Three dramatic miracles follow in rapid succession: Jesus calms a violent storm on the Sea of Galilee, delivers the Gerasene demoniac from a 'Legion' of unclean spirits, and — in an interwoven double narrative — heals a woman with a twelve-year hemorrhage while raising Jairus's twelve-year-old daughter from death.

What Makes This Remarkable: The named women in verses 1-3 are extraordinary in ancient literature: Mary Magdalene, Joanna (wife of Herod's steward Chuza), and Susanna are identified as financial patrons of Jesus's mission. Luke alone preserves this detail, showing that the movement was funded by women of means. The Gerasene demoniac episode is the most detailed exorcism in the Gospels, with the demons self-identifying as 'Legion' — a Roman military term carrying political undertones in occupied Palestine. The sandwiched miracle stories of Jairus's daughter and the hemorrhaging woman share the number twelve, linking the girl's age with the woman's years of suffering and creating a literary frame of restoration.

Translation Friction: The Gerasene/Gadarene/Gergesene location varies across manuscripts; the SBLGNT reads Gerasenes (Gerasenon). The herd of pigs raises questions about property destruction and Gentile territory. We render the Greek as given without harmonizing with the Markan or Matthean parallels. The phrase 'your faith has saved you' (he pistis sou sesoken se) in verse 48 uses sozo, which means both 'save' and 'heal' — a double meaning impossible to capture in a single English word.

Connections: The Parable of the Sower parallels Mark 4:1-20 and Matthew 13:1-23. The storm narrative echoes Psalm 107:23-30 and Jonah 1. The demoniac episode parallels Mark 5:1-20. The Jairus/hemorrhage double story parallels Mark 5:21-43. The women patrons anticipate the women at the cross and tomb (Luke 23:49, 55; 24:1-10).

¹Soon afterward, he traveled through every city and village, proclaiming and announcing the good news of the kingdom of God, and the twelve were with him, ²Specific women, which had been healed of evil spirits and infirmities, Mary called Magdalene, out of whom traveled seven devils, ³Joanna the wife of Chuza Herod's manager, and Susanna, and numerous others, which served him of their substance. ⁴When a large crowd was gathering and people from every town were coming to him, he spoke by means of a parable: ⁵"A sower went out to sow his seed. And as he sowed, some fell along the path and was trampled underfoot, and the birds of the sky devoured it. ⁶Other seed fell on rock, and when it grew up, it withered because it had no moisture. ⁷Other seed fell among thorns, and the thorns grew up with it and choked it. ⁸And other seed fell into good soil, and when it grew up, it produced fruit a hundredfold." As he said these things, he called out, "The one who has ears to hear, let him hear." ⁹Then his disciples asked him what this parable meant. ¹⁰He said, "To you it has been given to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God, but to the rest they are given in parables, so that seeing they may not see, and hearing they may not understand. ¹¹Now the parable is this — The seed is the message of God. ¹²The ones along the path are those who have heard; then the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts, so that they may not believe and be saved. ¹³The ones on the rock are those who, when they hear, receive the word with joy. But these have no root; they believe for a time, and in a season of testing they fall away. ¹⁴As for what fell among the thorns, these are the ones who hear, but as they go on their way they are choked by the worries and riches and pleasures of life, and they do not bring fruit to maturity. ¹⁵But as for that in the good soil, these are the ones who, having heard the word, hold it fast in an honest and good heart, and bear fruit with endurance. ¹⁶"No one, after lighting a lamp, covers it with a jar or puts it under a bed, but puts it on a lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light. ¹⁷For nothing is hidden that will not become evident, nor anything concealed that will not be known and come to light. ¹⁸Pay attention, then, to how you hear. For whoever has, more will be given to him; and whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken from him." ¹⁹Then his mother and his brothers came to him, but they could not reach him because of the crowd. ²⁰He was told, "Your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to see you." ²¹But he answered them, "My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it." ²²One day he got into a boat with his disciples and said to them, "Let us cross over to the other side of the lake." So they set out. ²³As they were sailing, he fell asleep. A violent windstorm came down on the lake, and they were being swamped and were in danger. ²⁴They came and woke him, saying, "Master, Master, we are perishing!" And he got up and rebuked the wind and the surging waves, and they ceased, and there was a calm. ²⁵He said to them, "Where is your faith?" And they were afraid and marveled, saying to one another, "Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?" ²⁶They sailed to the region of the Gerasenes, which is across from Galilee. ²⁷When he stepped out on land, a man from the city met him who had demons. For a long time he had worn no clothing and did not live in a house but among the tombs. ²⁸When he saw Jesus, he cried out and fell down before him and said with a loud voice, "What do you have to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you, do not torment me!" ²⁹For he had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and he was kept under guard, bound with chains and shackles, but he would break the bonds and be driven by the demon into desolate places. ³⁰Jesus asked him, "What is your name?" He said, "Legion" — because many demons had entered him. ³¹And they were begging him not to command them to depart into the abyss. ³²Now a large herd of pigs was feeding there on the hillside, and they begged him to let them enter the pigs. And he gave them permission. ³³The demons came out of the man and entered the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep bank into the lake and drowned. ³⁴When the herdsmen saw what had happened, they fled and reported it in the city and in the countryside. ³⁵Then people went out to see what had happened, and they came to Jesus and found the man from whom the demons had gone out, sitting at the feet of Jesus, clothed and in his right mind. And they were afraid. ³⁶Those who had seen it told them how the demon-possessed man had been saved. ³⁷Then all the people of the surrounding region of the Gerasenes asked him to leave them, because they were gripped with great fear. So he got into the boat and

returned. ³⁸The man from whom the demons had gone out begged to go with him, but Jesus sent him away, saying, ³⁹"Return to your home, and declare what God has done for you." And he went away, proclaiming throughout the whole city what Jesus had done for him. ⁴⁰When Jesus returned, the crowd welcomed him, for they were all expecting him. ⁴¹And there came a man named Jairus, who was a ruler of the synagogue. He fell at Jesus's feet and begged him to come to his house, ⁴²Since he had one only daughter, concerning twelve years of age, and she lay a dying. But as he traveled the people thronged him. ⁴³And a woman who had suffered from a discharge of blood for twelve years, who could not be healed by anyone, ⁴⁴Indeed, arrived behind him, and touched the border of his garment — and immediately her issue of blood stanchd. ⁴⁵Jesus said, "Who touched me?" When everyone denied it, Peter said, "Master, the crowds are surrounding you and pressing against you!" ⁴⁶But Jesus said, "Someone touched me, for I perceived that power had gone out from me." ⁴⁷When the woman saw that she had not escaped notice, she came trembling, and falling down before him, she declared in the presence of all the people the reason she had touched him and how she was immediately healed. ⁴⁸He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has saved you. Go in peace." ⁴⁹While he was still speaking, someone came from the synagogue ruler's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead; do not trouble the Teacher any longer." ⁵⁰But Jesus, hearing this, answered him, "Do not be afraid; only believe, and she will be saved." ⁵¹When he came to the house, he allowed no one to enter with him except Peter, John, and James, and the father and mother of the child. ⁵²Everyone was weeping and mourning for her, but he said, "Stop weeping, for she has not died but is sleeping." ⁵³And they laughed at him, knowing that she had died. ⁵⁴But taking her by the hand, he called out, saying, "Child, arise." ⁵⁵Her spirit returned, and she got up at once. And he directed that she be given something to eat. ⁵⁶Her parents were amazed, but he ordered them to tell no one what had happened.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase euangelizomenos ten basileian tou theou ('announcing the good news of the kingdom of God') combines two verbs of proclamation — kerusson ('heralding') and euangelizomenos ('bringing good news'). Luke emphasizes the content of Jesus's preaching: the kingdom of God, not merely moral teaching.
2. Mary Magdalene is named first among the women, indicating her prominence. The 'seven demons' (daimonia hepta) denotes the severity of her former affliction, not moral failing — the text says nothing about sexual sin, a later tradition without biblical basis. 'Magdalene' identifies her hometown of Magdala on the western shore of the Sea of Galilee.
3. The verb diekonoun ('were serving, providing for') is the root of 'deacon/ministry.' These women were not passive followers but active financial supporters. Joanna's connection to Herod's court (Chuza was epitropos, a household manager or steward) means Jesus's movement had sympathizers within the ruling elite. Luke alone preserves this remarkable social detail.
4. The phrase dia parabolees ('by means of a parable') introduces Luke's version of the Sower. Luke compresses the parable material compared to Mark 4, but retains the core teaching about receptivity to God's word.
5. Luke adds the detail that the seed was 'trampled underfoot' (katepatethee), absent from Mark and Matthew. The sower broadcasts seed across all types of ground — ancient Palestinian farming practice involved sowing before plowing, so the different soil types would not yet be visible.
6. Luke uses ikmada ('moisture') where Mark has 'depth of earth' and 'root' — a slight difference in imagery but the same agricultural reality: thin soil over limestone bedrock, common in Palestine, allows quick germination but no sustained growth.
7. The verb apepnixan ('choked, strangled') is vivid — the thorns do not merely crowd the grain but suffocate it. Luke's symphueisai ('growing up together with') emphasizes that the competing growth was simultaneous.
8. Luke simplifies to a single yield — 'a hundredfold' (hekatontaplasiona) — whereas Mark gives thirty, sixty, and a hundredfold. A hundredfold yield was extraordinary in ancient agriculture, where tenfold was typical. The closing formula 'the one who has ears to hear' signals that the parable demands active interpretation.
9. Luke's version is simpler than Mark's, where the disciples ask about parables in general. Here they ask specifically about this parable's meaning.
10. The word mysteria ('mysteries') does not mean puzzles but divine secrets now being revealed to insiders. The Isaiah 6:9-10 allusion ('seeing they may not see') raises the difficult question of whether parables conceal or reveal — Luke softens Mark's harder formulation but retains the tension between revelation and hiddenness.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 6:9-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Luke identifies the seed as ho logos tou theou ('the word of God'), where Mark has simply 'the word.' Luke's version makes the divine origin of the message explicit.

12. Luke alone adds the purpose clause 'so that they may not believe and be saved' (hina mee pisteusantes sothōsin), making explicit what Mark leaves implicit: the stakes of receptivity to the word are salvation itself. Luke uses 'the devil' (ho diabolos) where Mark has 'Satan.'
13. Luke uses peirasmos ('testing, trial, temptation') where Mark has 'tribulation or persecution' — a broader term that encompasses both external persecution and internal spiritual trial. The verb aphistantai ('they fall away, withdraw') is the root of 'apostasy.'
14. Luke adds hēdonōn ('pleasures') to the thorns' identification — worries, riches, and pleasures form a three-pronged threat. The verb telesophorousin ('bring to maturity, bring to completion') is unique to Luke's version and implies that fruit-bearing requires sustained growth, not merely initial response.
15. The phrase kardia kalē kai agathē ('an honest and good heart') echoes Greek moral vocabulary — kalos kai agathos was the classical Greek ideal of nobility. Luke may be adapting the parable for a Hellenistic audience. The word hypomonē ('endurance, patient steadfastness') is a key virtue in Luke-Acts, emphasizing that fruitfulness requires perseverance.
16. The lamp saying follows naturally from the parable's theme of revelation. What is taught in parables is not meant to remain hidden permanently. Luke's version specifies 'those who enter' (hoi eisporuomenoi), possibly reflecting the setting of a house church where the lamp illuminates a room for newcomers.
17. The double negative ou mē ('certainly not') with the subjunctive gnōsthē ('be known') creates the strongest possible assurance: what is now hidden will without exception be revealed. This applies both to the mysteries of the kingdom and to human secrets.
18. Luke writes 'how you hear' (pōs akouete) where Mark has 'what you hear' — Luke stresses the manner of reception, not merely the content. The paradox of having and losing echoes the parable's logic: those who receive the word rightly gain more understanding, while those who receive it poorly lose even their initial grasp.
19. Luke softens Mark's account where Jesus's family comes to seize him thinking he is out of his mind (Mark 3:21). Luke omits the negative motivation entirely, presenting the family's arrival neutrally.
20. The notification sets up Jesus's redefinition of family in the next verse. The physical separation — they are 'outside' (exō) — becomes symbolic of the distinction between biological and spiritual kinship.
21. This saying redefines kinship around obedience to God's word — the same theme as the Sower parable. Luke connects hearing and doing (akouontes kai poiountes), a pair that will recur in 6:47-49 (the house on the rock) and 11:28. The saying does not reject biological family but subordinates it to the family formed by response to God's word.
22. Luke uses limnēs ('lake') rather than Mark's thalassēs ('sea') — geographically more accurate for the Sea of Galilee, which is a freshwater lake. The command to cross to 'the other side' moves them toward Gentile territory, where the Gerasene episode will take place.
23. The verb aphypnōsen ('he fell asleep') emphasizes Jesus's full humanity. The geography matters: the Sea of Galilee sits 700 feet below sea level, surrounded by hills through which winds funnel suddenly. The verb ekindyneuon ('they were in danger') is unique to Luke's account and underscores the life-threatening nature of the storm.
24. Luke uses epistatēs ('Master, overseer') — a title unique to Luke's Gospel — rather than Mark's 'Teacher.' The doubled address 'Master, Master' conveys urgency. Jesus 'rebuked' (epetimēsen) the storm with the same verb used for rebuking demons, suggesting the storm is treated as a hostile force. The sudden calm (galēnē) echoes Psalm 107:29.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 107:29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The question 'Where is your faith?' implies the disciples should have trusted Jesus even during the storm. Their response combines fear (phobēthentes) and wonder (ethaumasan) — the typical human reaction to a theophany. The Old Testament reserves power over sea and storm for God alone (Job 38:8-11; Psalm 89:9; Psalm 107:29), so the question 'Who is this?' carries an implicit christological answer.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Job 38:8-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 89:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 107:29 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The SBLGNT reads Gerasēnōn ('Gerasenes'). Gerasa was a city of the Decapolis, predominantly Gentile territory. Luke clarifies the geography for his readers: it is 'across from Galilee' (antipera tēs Galilaias), on the eastern shore of the lake.
27. Luke describes three marks of the man's dehumanization: demon possession, nakedness, and habitation among the dead. Living in tombs would make him perpetually unclean under Jewish purity law. The detail 'from the city' (ek tēs poleōs) suggests he had once been part of normal society before his affliction drove him out.
28. The formula ti emoi kai soi ('what to me and to you?') is a Semitic idiom expressing incompatibility or protest. The demon recognizes Jesus as 'Son of the Most High God' (huie tou theou tou hypsistou) — 'Most High' (hypsistos) is the same title used of God in Genesis 14:18-22 and in Gabriel's announcement to Mary (Luke 1:32). The irony is that the demon correctly identifies Jesus while the disciples have just asked 'Who is this?'

- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 14:18-22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** This parenthetical explains why the demon cried out — Jesus had already issued a command. The description of the man's superhuman strength in breaking chains and his being 'driven' (elauneto) into wilderness areas portrays total domination by the demonic power. The passive voice emphasizes the man's lack of agency.
- 30.** A Roman legion comprised approximately five to six thousand soldiers. The name 'Legion' (Legiōn) is a Latin loanword in Greek, carrying military overtones that would resonate in Roman-occupied territory. The name also reveals how thoroughly the man's identity has been consumed — he no longer has a personal name, only the collective designation of his oppressors.
- 31.** The abyssos ('abyss') is the place of confinement for evil spirits (cf. Revelation 9:1-2, 11; 20:1-3). Luke uses this term where Mark does not, reflecting Jewish apocalyptic belief that demons feared premature imprisonment. The demons recognize Jesus's authority to sentence them.
- 32.** The presence of pigs confirms this is Gentile territory — pigs were unclean animals forbidden to Jews (Leviticus 11:7). The demons must ask Jesus's permission, demonstrating his absolute authority even over a legion of evil spirits. The verb *epetrepsen* ('he permitted') shows that Jesus controls the terms.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 11:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The verb *hōrmēsen* ('rushed, charged') is violent and sudden. The verb *apepnigē* ('drowned, were choked') is the same root used for the thorns 'choking' the seed in verse 7 — an ironic verbal connection. The destruction of the herd serves as visible proof that the demons have genuinely departed from the man.
- 34.** The herdsmen's flight and report set up the confrontation between Jesus and the townspeople. They function as witnesses to both the loss of the pigs and the implied power of the exorcism.
- 35.** The contrast is stunning: the man who was naked, chained, and living among the dead is now clothed (*himatismenon*), in his right mind (*sōphronounta*), and seated at Jesus's feet — the posture of a disciple. Each detail reverses his former condition. The townspeople's fear (*ephobēthēsan*) mirrors the disciples' fear after the storm, but leads to a different response.
- 36.** Luke uses *esōthē* ('was saved') rather than merely 'was healed' — the verb *sōzō* carries both physical and spiritual dimensions. The man's deliverance is described as salvation, not simply a medical cure.
- 37.** The entire population asks Jesus to leave — the only place in the Gospels where a community rejects Jesus's presence after witnessing a miracle. Their great fear (*phobō megalō*) is not reverence but terror, possibly compounded by the economic loss of the pigs. Jesus complies without protest, respecting their choice.
- 38.** The man's desire to follow Jesus contrasts sharply with the townspeople's desire for Jesus to leave. 'To be with him' (*einai syn autō*) uses the language of discipleship. Unusually, Jesus refuses — in Gentile territory, the healed man himself will be the witness.
- 39.** Jesus says 'what God has done for you'; the man proclaims 'what Jesus has done for him.' Luke lets the substitution stand without comment — the reader is left to draw the christological conclusion. The man becomes the first Gentile evangelist in Luke's narrative.
- 40.** The contrast between the Gerasenes' rejection and the Galilean crowd's welcome is deliberate. The verb *apedexato* ('welcomed, received gladly') sets up the warm reception that frames the two miracle stories to follow.
- 41.** Jairus (*Iairos*, from Hebrew *Ya'ir*, 'he enlightens') is named only in Luke and Mark. As *archōn tēs synagōgēs* ('ruler of the synagogue'), he was responsible for organizing worship services — a prominent community figure. His prostration before Jesus shows the desperation that overrides social status.
- 42.** Luke emphasizes she is *monogenēs* ('only-begotten, one and only') — the same word used of Jesus in John's Gospel. She is about twelve years old — the same number of years the hemorrhaging woman has suffered (v. 43), creating a deliberate literary connection. The crowd 'pressing in' (*synepnigon*) sets up the interruption by the hemorrhaging woman.
- 43.** The 'discharge of blood' (*rhysei haimatos*) made her perpetually unclean under Levitical law (Leviticus 15:25-27), excluding her from worship and social contact. For twelve years she has lived in isolation. Some manuscripts add 'who had spent all her livelihood on physicians' (paralleling Mark 5:26), but the SBLGNT omits this clause.
- 43.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 15:25-27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 44.** The *kraspedon* ('fringe, tassel, border') refers to the tassels (Hebrew *tzitzit*) on the corners of a Jewish garment as commanded in Numbers 15:38-39. Her approach from behind reflects her awareness of her unclean status — touching someone would transmit impurity. Instead, Jesus's holiness flows outward and cleanses her. The adverb *parachrēma* ('immediately') is characteristic of Luke.
- 44.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 15:38-39. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

45. Jesus's question is not about information — he distinguishes between the crowd's jostling and one person's deliberate touch of faith. Peter's response, using epistatēs ('Master') again, expresses bewilderment: in such a crush, how could one touch be singled out?
46. The word dynamin ('power') is not 'virtue' in the modern English sense (as the KJV might suggest) but active healing energy. Jesus experiences the outflow of power — a remarkable detail suggesting that the healing was not merely willed but cost something.
47. Her trembling (tremousa) reflects fear — she had taken a social risk by touching someone while unclean. But Jesus forces a public declaration for her benefit: her healing must be witnessed by the community so that her social restoration is public, not merely private. She is healed in body but needs public vindication to be restored to community life.
48. The address 'Daughter' (Thygatēr) is extraordinary — it is both tender and restorative, publicly declaring her a member of the family of God. The phrase hē pistis sou sesōken se ('your faith has saved you') uses sōzō, which means both 'save' and 'heal.' The double meaning is intentional: physical healing and spiritual salvation converge. 'Go in peace' (poreuou eis eirēnēn) echoes the Hebrew shalom — complete well-being, not merely absence of conflict.
49. The timing is devastating — the interruption caused by the hemorrhaging woman's healing has cost Jairus precious minutes. The messenger's words 'do not trouble the Teacher' (mēketi skylle ton didaskalon) assume that death is beyond Jesus's power. The verb skyllō ('to trouble, bother, harass') suggests the messenger views further appeal as pointless.
50. Jesus responds to the death announcement with the same sōzō ('will be saved/made whole') used for the hemorrhaging woman. The command structure — 'Do not fear... only believe' — strips away every response except faith. Jairus has just witnessed the hemorrhaging woman's faith rewarded; now he must exercise the same trust in a more extreme situation.
51. The inner circle of Peter, John, and James witnesses the most significant miracles (also the Transfiguration, Luke 9:28). Luke reverses Mark's order, placing John before James — possibly reflecting John's greater prominence in the early church as known to Luke's audience.
52. The verb ekoptonto ('were mourning, beating their breasts') describes the loud, demonstrative mourning customary in ancient Jewish funerals. Jesus's statement that the girl is 'sleeping' (katheudei) is either a metaphor for death (as Paul uses in 1 Thessalonians 4:13-14) or a literal claim that she is not yet dead. Luke leaves the ambiguity intact.
53. The verb kategelōn ('were laughing scornfully') indicates mocking derision, not amusement. The mourners' certainty that she is dead sets up the miracle — there is no ambiguity about her condition in the minds of witnesses.
54. Jesus takes her hand — touching a corpse would normally render one unclean (Numbers 19:11), but as with the hemorrhaging woman, Jesus's power flows outward to restore rather than receiving contamination inward. Luke simplifies Mark's Aramaic talitha kum to the Greek hē pais egeire ('Child, arise'). The verb egeirō is the same word used for resurrection throughout the New Testament.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 19:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
55. The phrase 'her spirit returned' (epstrepsen to pneuma autēs) is unique to Luke and confirms that she had genuinely died — her spirit had departed and now comes back. The command to give her food serves two purposes: it proves the resurrection is physical (a spirit does not eat) and it shows Jesus's practical compassion even in a moment of cosmic power.
56. The command to silence (the 'messianic secret') contrasts with the Gerasene demoniac, who was told to proclaim. In Jewish territory, public reports of raising the dead would provoke dangerous political attention. The parents' amazement (exestēsan, literally 'were beside themselves') is the appropriate response to witnessing death reversed.

9

Summary: Luke 9 is a pivotal chapter that marks the transition from Jesus's Galilean ministry to the journey toward Jerusalem. Jesus sends the Twelve on their first independent mission, feeds five thousand with five loaves and two fish, and elicits Peter's confession that he is the Christ. The chapter then introduces the cost of discipleship, reveals Jesus's glory at the Transfiguration, heals a demon-possessed boy, and repeatedly warns the disciples about his coming suffering. The chapter closes with three would-be followers who each face the radical demands of following Jesus.

What Makes This Remarkable: Luke compresses an enormous range of material into this chapter, creating a deliberate theological arc: Jesus empowers the Twelve (vv. 1-6), the crowds respond (vv. 7-17), Peter confesses (vv. 18-20), and then Jesus immediately redefines messiahship through suffering (vv. 21-27). The Transfiguration (vv. 28-36) — unique in Luke for noting that Jesus was praying when it happened — confirms divine sonship just after the first passion prediction. Luke alone records that Moses and Elijah spoke with Jesus about his 'exodus' (exodon) that he was about to accomplish in Jerusalem, a word loaded with Old Testament resonance. The chapter's final

section (vv. 51-62) sets Jesus's face toward Jerusalem, a journey that will occupy the next ten chapters of Luke's Gospel.

Translation Friction: The feeding of the five thousand is the only miracle recorded in all four Gospels, and Luke's version is the most compressed. Herod's perplexity about Jesus (vv. 7-9) is unique to Luke in its emphasis on Herod's desire to see Jesus — a thread that will not resolve until the passion narrative (23:8). The phrase 'set his face' (to prosōpon estērisen) in v. 51 echoes Isaiah's Servant Songs (Isaiah 50:7) and signals a decisive shift in the narrative structure. The Samaritan village's rejection (vv. 52-56) introduces the Samaritan theme that Luke will develop more fully than any other Gospel.

Connections: The feeding miracle echoes Elisha feeding a hundred men in 2 Kings 4:42-44. The Transfiguration connects to Moses on Sinai (Exodus 34) and Elijah on Horeb (1 Kings 19). Peter's confession parallels the Caesarea Philippi accounts in Matthew 16 and Mark 8, though Luke omits the geographic marker. The 'exodus' language at the Transfiguration ties Jesus's coming death to Israel's foundational deliverance event. The journey to Jerusalem beginning in v. 51 initiates Luke's distinctive 'Travel Narrative' (9:51-19:27).

¹He called the Twelve together and gave them power and authority over all demons, and to heal diseases. ²He sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal the sick. ³He told them, "Take nothing for the journey — no staff, no bag, no bread, no money, and do not have two tunics each. ⁴Whatever house you enter, stay there and depart from there. ⁵Wherever people do not welcome you, as you leave that town, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony against them." ⁶So they set out and traveled through the villages, proclaiming the good news and healing people everywhere. ⁷Now Herod the tetrarch heard about everything that was happening, and he was perplexed because some were saying that John had been raised from the dead, ⁸Of some, that Elias had appeared. And of others, that one of the ancient God's spokespersons was risen again. ⁹Herod said, "I beheaded John. So who is this about whom I hear such things?" And he kept trying to see him. ¹⁰When the apostles returned, they reported to him everything they had done. He took them and withdrew privately to a town called Bethsaida. ¹¹But the crowds found out and followed him. He welcomed them, spoke to them about the kingdom of God, and healed those who needed healing. ¹²As the day began to decline, the Twelve came to him and said, "Send the crowd away so they can go to the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food, because we are in a desolate place here." ¹³But he told them, "You give them something to eat." They said, "We have no more than five loaves and two fish — unless we are to go and buy food for all these people." ¹⁴For there were about five thousand men. He said to his disciples, "Have them sit down in groups of about fifty." ¹⁵They did so and had everyone sit down. ¹⁶Taking the five loaves and the two fish, he looked up to heaven, blessed them, broke them, and kept giving them to the disciples to set before the crowd. ¹⁷They all ate and were satisfied, and twelve baskets of leftover pieces were picked up. ¹⁸Once when Jesus was praying alone, the disciples were with him, and he asked them, "Who do the crowds say that I am?" ¹⁹They answered, "John the Baptist; others say Elijah; and still others, that one of the ancient prophets has risen." ²⁰He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?" Peter answered, "The Christ of God." ²¹He strictly warned them and commanded them to tell this to no one, ²²Declaring, the Descendant of Person must suffer numerous matters, and be rejected of the elders and chief priests and legal experts, and be slain, and be raised the third day. ²³Then he said to them all, "If anyone wants to come after me, let him deny himself, take up his cross daily, and follow me. ²⁴For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it. ²⁵For what does it profit a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself? ²⁶For whoever is ashamed of me and my words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of that person when he comes in his glory and the glory of the Father and of the holy angels. ²⁷But I tell you truly, there are some standing here who will not taste death until they see the kingdom of God." ²⁸About eight days after these words, he took Peter, John, and James and went up on the mountain to pray. ²⁹As he was praying, the appearance of his face changed, and his clothing became dazzling white. ³⁰And suddenly two men were talking with him — Moses and Elijah, ³¹They appeared in radiant glory and spoke about the departure he was about to carry out in Jerusalem. ³²Now Peter and those with him were heavy with sleep, but when they became fully awake, they saw his glory and the two men standing with him. ³³As they were departing from him, Peter said to Jesus, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Let us make three shelters — one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah" — not knowing what he was saying. ³⁴While he was saying this, a cloud came and overshadowed them, and they were afraid as they entered the cloud. ³⁵A voice came from the

cloud, saying, "This is my Son, my Chosen One — listen to him!" ³⁶When the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone. And they kept silent and told no one in those days anything of what they had seen. ³⁷The next day, when they had come down from the mountain, a large crowd met him. ³⁸Suddenly a man from the crowd cried out, "Teacher, I beg you to look at my son, for he is my only child. ³⁹A spirit seizes him, and he suddenly screams. It convulses him until he foams at the mouth, and it scarcely leaves him, battering him as it goes. ⁴⁰I begged your disciples to cast it out, but they could not." ⁴¹Jesus answered, "O faithless and twisted generation, how long must I be with you and put up with you? Bring your son here." ⁴²While the boy was still approaching, the demon threw him down and convulsed him. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, healed the boy, and gave him back to his father. ⁴³Everyone was astonished at the majesty of God. But while they were all marveling at everything he was doing, he said to his disciples, ⁴⁴"Let these words sink into your ears: the Son of Man is about to be delivered into the hands of men." ⁴⁵But they did not understand this saying. It was concealed from them so that they could not grasp it, and they were afraid to ask him about it. ⁴⁶An argument arose among them about which of them was the greatest. ⁴⁷But Jesus, knowing the reasoning of their hearts, took a child and placed the child beside him. ⁴⁸He told them, "Whoever welcomes this child in my name welcomes me, and whoever welcomes me welcomes the one who sent me. For the one who is least among all of you — that person is great." ⁴⁹John responded, "Master, we saw someone casting out demons in your name, and we tried to stop him because he does not follow with us." ⁵⁰Jesus said to him, "Do not stop him, for whoever is not against you is for you." ⁵¹When the days were approaching for him to be taken up, he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. ⁵²He sent messengers ahead of him. They went and entered a Samaritan village to prepare for his arrival, ⁵³Indeed, they did not accept him, because his face was as though he would go to Jerusalem. ⁵⁴When the disciples James and John saw this, they said, "Lord, do you want us to call fire down from heaven to consume them?" ⁵⁵But he turned and rebuked them. ⁵⁶They traveled to another village. ⁵⁷As they were traveling along the road, someone said to him, "I will follow you wherever you go." ⁵⁸Jesus said to him, "Foxes have dens and birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." ⁵⁹He said to another, "Follow me." But the man said, "Lord, let me first go and bury my father." ⁶⁰Jesus said to him, "Let the dead bury their own dead, but you go and proclaim the kingdom of God." ⁶¹Still another said, "I will follow you, Lord, but first let me say goodbye to those at my home." ⁶²Jesus said to him, "No one who puts his hand to the plow and looks back is fit for the kingdom of God."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke distinguishes between *dynamis* ('power' — the ability to act) and *exousia* ('authority' — the right to act). This pairing is distinctive to Luke's account of the commissioning and emphasizes that the disciples operate with both divine capability and divine authorization.
2. The verb *apostelein* ('sent out') is the root of 'apostle' (*apostolos*). Luke uses the formal commissioning verb here, underscoring that this is an authorized mission, not a voluntary outing. The dual mandate — proclamation and healing — mirrors Jesus's own ministry pattern established in Luke 4:18-19.
3. Luke's version prohibits even a staff (*rabdon*), whereas Mark 6:8 allows one — a well-known discrepancy between the Synoptic accounts. The Greek *pēran* ('bag') refers to a traveler's knapsack or beggar's bag. The prohibition of provisions forces total dependence on God's provision through local hospitality, a radical trust that mirrors Israel's wilderness dependence on manna.
4. The instruction to remain in one house prevents the disciples from seeking better accommodations — moving from a poor host to a wealthier one. This preserves the dignity of the first household to offer hospitality and keeps the mission free from the appearance of self-interest.
5. Shaking dust from one's feet was a Jewish practice when leaving Gentile territory, symbolizing the removal of ritual impurity. Applied to Jewish towns, it is a prophetic warning: those who reject the kingdom's messengers place themselves outside the covenant community. The phrase *eis martyron* ('as a testimony') indicates a visible sign that will serve as evidence at the future judgment.
6. The participle *euangelizomenoi* ('proclaiming good news') is Luke's characteristic vocabulary — he uses this verb more than any other New Testament writer. The word carries the sense of announcing glad tidings, specifically the arrival of God's reign. 'Villages' (*kōmas*) rather than 'towns' or 'cities' suggests a rural, grassroots mission.
7. This is Herod Antipas, son of Herod the Great, who ruled Galilee and Perea as tetrarch (literally 'ruler of a quarter'). The verb *diēporei* ('was perplexed, was at a loss') is stronger than mere curiosity — it suggests genuine confusion and unease. Luke alone among the Synoptics emphasizes Herod's ongoing perplexity rather than his fear.

8. The three popular theories about Jesus — resurrected John, returned Elijah, or a risen ancient prophet — all frame him within prophetic categories. The expectation of Elijah's return was rooted in Malachi 4:5. Luke's phrase 'ancient prophets' (prophētēs tis tōn archaiōn) is distinctive and may reflect popular beliefs about eschatological prophetic return.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Malachi 4:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The emphatic egō ('I myself') in Herod's statement stresses personal responsibility and perhaps defensive anxiety. The imperfect ezētei ('kept trying, was seeking') indicates ongoing, unfulfilled desire — Herod will not actually see Jesus until the passion narrative (Luke 23:8), where this thread finally resolves. Luke plants a narrative seed here that will not bear fruit for fourteen chapters.
10. Luke uses 'apostles' (apostoloi) here rather than 'disciples,' the only time he uses this title in the narrative before Acts. The verb hypechōrēsen ('withdrew') suggests intentional retreat, possibly for rest after the mission or to avoid Herod's attention. Bethsaida was just outside Herod Antipas's jurisdiction, in the tetrarchy of Philip.
11. Despite seeking privacy, Jesus 'welcomed' (apodexamenos) the crowds — a gracious response that contrasts with the disciples' later suggestion to send them away (v. 12). Luke's note that Jesus both taught and healed reinforces the dual nature of his ministry: word and deed together constitute the kingdom's arrival.
12. The phrase hē hēmera ērxato klinein ('the day began to decline') is a literary expression for late afternoon. The word epistimon ('provisions, food') appears only here in the New Testament — it is a supply-chain term suggesting the practical concern behind the disciples' request. Luke's erēmō topō ('desolate place') evokes the wilderness, connecting this feeding to the manna narrative.
13. The emphatic hymeis ('you yourselves') places the responsibility squarely on the disciples, testing their faith and resourcefulness. The disciples' response reveals both their literal-mindedness and the absurdity of the situation from a human perspective. The five loaves would have been flat barley bread, the standard food of the poor.
14. The count of andres ('men') likely excludes women and children, following ancient Near Eastern counting conventions. The organized seating in groups of fifty echoes Moses' organization of Israel in the wilderness (Exodus 18:21, 25), reinforcing the new-exodus typology that runs through the feeding narrative.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 18:21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The brief obedience statement — they simply did as instructed — mirrors the pattern of faithful response that Luke highlights throughout his Gospel. No objections, no further questions.
16. The sequence — took, blessed, broke, gave — anticipates the Last Supper (Luke 22:19) and the Emmaus meal (Luke 24:30). Luke's readers would recognize eucharistic echoes. The imperfect edidou ('kept giving') suggests a continuous action: the bread did not run out as he distributed it. The act of looking up to heaven before blessing follows standard Jewish mealtime prayer practice.
17. The verb echortasthēsan ('were satisfied, were filled') implies being fully fed, not merely having a taste. The twelve baskets (kophinoi) — one for each apostle — may symbolize God's provision for all twelve tribes of Israel. The kophinos was a distinctly Jewish wicker basket, different from the larger spuris used in the feeding of the four thousand.
18. Luke uniquely sets this pivotal scene in the context of prayer — kata monas ('alone') modified by the prayer participle. Luke consistently places major revelatory moments at times of prayer (baptism 3:21, Transfiguration 9:28-29, Gethsemane 22:41). The apparent paradox of being 'alone' yet 'with' the disciples likely means Jesus had been praying privately and the disciples then joined him, or that they were present but not praying.
19. The disciples relay the same three popular opinions reported in verses 7-8, forming a deliberate literary echo. These prophetic identifications, while honoring Jesus by placing him in exalted company, all fall short of the truth Peter is about to confess.
20. The emphatic hymeis ('but you') contrasts the disciples' personal knowledge with popular opinion. Peter's confession ton Christon tou theou ('the Christ of God') is more compact in Luke than in Matthew ('the Christ, the Son of the living God,' Matt 16:16). Luke's simpler form focuses on the messianic title itself — the Anointed One who belongs to God.
21. The verb epitimēsas ('rebuked, sternly warned') is the same word used for silencing demons (4:35, 41). The messianic secret motif — suppressing the Christ title — likely reflects the danger that popular messianic expectations (military deliverer, political king) would distort Jesus's mission before the cross redefines messiahship.
22. The word dei ('it is necessary, must') introduces divine necessity — this is not merely a prediction but a theological imperative rooted in God's plan. The title 'Son of Man' (ho huios tou anthrōpou) alludes to Daniel 7:13-14, where the 'one like a son of man' receives universal dominion. Jesus fuses this exalted figure with the Suffering Servant of Isaiah 53 — a combination his contemporaries did not expect. The three groups named — elders, chief priests, scribes — compose the Sanhedrin.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

23. Luke alone adds *kath' hēmeran* ('daily') to the cross-bearing command, transforming it from a one-time act of martyrdom into an ongoing pattern of self-renunciation. The address 'to them all' (*pros pantas*) extends the invitation beyond the Twelve to the entire crowd. For a first-century hearer, 'take up his cross' was not a metaphor — it evoked the Roman practice of forcing condemned prisoners to carry the crossbeam to the execution site.
24. The Greek *psychē* means both 'life' and 'soul,' and Jesus exploits this double meaning. The person who clings to physical life (self-preservation) loses their true self, while the one who surrenders their life for Jesus's sake discovers authentic life. The paradox is structurally chiasmic: save-lose / lose-save.
25. Luke's version has 'lose or forfeit himself' (*heauton apolesys ē zēmiotheis*) where Mark has 'his soul' — Luke makes it more personal and existential. The verb *zēmioō* ('to suffer loss, to forfeit') is a commercial term: the image is of a catastrophic business deal where the gains cannot compensate for what was surrendered.
26. The triple glory — his own, the Father's, and the angels' — is unique to Luke and creates a vision of overwhelming majesty. The verb *epaischunthēsetai* ('will be ashamed of') establishes a principle of reciprocity: present shame leads to future shame. Jesus speaks of the Son of Man in the third person, which may indicate a distinction between his present humble state and his future glorified state, or may simply be the idiom of the title.
27. The expression 'taste death' (*geusōntai thanatou*) is a Semitic idiom meaning 'experience death.' This saying has been interpreted variously as referring to the Transfiguration (which follows immediately), the resurrection, Pentecost, the destruction of Jerusalem in AD 70, or the ongoing advance of God's reign. Luke's placement of this saying directly before the Transfiguration account may suggest he understood the Transfiguration as its primary fulfillment.
28. Luke says 'about eight days' where Mark and Matthew say 'after six days' — this is not a contradiction but reflects different counting conventions (Luke may include the bookend days). Luke uniquely notes that the purpose of ascending was prayer (*proseuxasthai*), consistent with his emphasis on Jesus at prayer before revelatory moments. Peter, John, and James form the inner circle present at key moments (also at Jairus's house, 8:51, and Gethsemane in Mark 14:33).
29. Luke says the 'appearance of his face changed' (to *eidōs tou prosōpou autou heteron*) rather than Mark's 'was transfigured' (*metemorphōthē*). Luke may avoid the Greek *metamorphosis* terminology because of its associations with pagan mythology for his Gentile audience. The adjective *exastraptōn* ('flashing like lightning, dazzling') suggests supernatural radiance, echoing the description of angels (Luke 24:4, Acts 1:10).
30. The phrase *idou* ('look, suddenly') marks the supernatural irruption. Moses represents the Law and Elijah the Prophets — together they embody the whole of Israel's Scripture bearing witness to Jesus. Both figures had unusual departures from earthly life: Moses was buried by God (Deuteronomy 34:6) and Elijah was taken up in a chariot of fire (2 Kings 2:11).
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 34:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 2:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. This verse is unique to Luke and is theologically momentous. The word *exodon* ('departure, exodus') is loaded with Old Testament resonance — Jesus's death in Jerusalem is framed as a new exodus, a liberation event parallel to Israel's deliverance from Egypt. The verb *plēroun* ('to fulfill, accomplish') indicates that this death is not merely an ending but a completion of divine purpose. Moses, who led the first exodus, now discusses the second with Jesus.
32. The detail of the disciples' sleepiness is unique to Luke and foreshadows their sleeping in Gethsemane (Luke 22:45). The verb *diagrēgorēsantes* ('having become fully awake') is rare and emphatic — despite their drowsiness, they were fully alert when they witnessed the glory. Luke may include this detail to establish that the vision was not a dream.
33. Luke uses *epistata* ('master, commander') rather than Mark's 'rabbi,' reflecting Luke's Gentile readership. The word *skēnas* ('tents, tabernacles, shelters') may allude to the Feast of Tabernacles (*Sukkot*), when Israel commemorated God's dwelling with them in the wilderness. Peter's offer to build shelters, while well-intentioned, attempts to prolong and domesticate a revelatory moment. Luke's editorial note — 'not knowing what he was saying' — is a gentle correction of Peter's impulse.
34. The cloud (*nephelē*) recalls the pillar of cloud that guided Israel through the wilderness and the cloud of God's glory (*kavod/doxa*) that filled the tabernacle and temple (Exodus 40:34-35, 1 Kings 8:10-11). The verb *epeskiazēn* ('overshadowed') is the same verb used of the Holy Spirit overshadowing Mary (Luke 1:35), creating a connection between the incarnation and the Transfiguration. The disciples' fear at entering the cloud reflects the proper human response to divine presence.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 40:34-35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 8:10-11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Luke's reading has *ho eklelegmenos* ('the Chosen One') where Matthew and Mark have *ho agapētos* ('the Beloved'). This variant is well attested in the SBLGNT and echoes Isaiah 42:1, the first Servant Song: 'my chosen one in whom my soul delights.' The command 'listen to him' (*autou akouete*) echoes Deuteronomy 18:15, where Moses predicts a prophet like himself whom God will raise up: 'you shall listen to him.' The voice thus identifies Jesus as both the Servant of Isaiah and the Prophet like Moses.

35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 42:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 18:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The sudden disappearance of Moses and Elijah leaves Jesus alone — a visual demonstration of the voice's command to listen to him alone. The disciples' silence is voluntary in Luke (where in Mark 9:9, Jesus commands it), suggesting the experience was too overwhelming to articulate. The phrase 'in those days' implies they eventually did speak — Luke himself is reporting what they later testified.
37. Luke specifies 'the next day' (tē hexēs hēmera), a detail absent from Matthew and Mark. The descent from the mountain of glory to the chaos of the crowd below creates a deliberate contrast — from heaven's affirmation to earth's brokenness. The pattern echoes Moses descending from Sinai to find Israel in disorder (Exodus 32).
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 32. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The word monogenēs ('only, unique, one and only') is the same term used of Jesus in John's Gospel (John 1:14, 18; 3:16). Luke uses it three times for human children (here, 7:12, 8:42), each time heightening the pathos — this father's only hope is in peril. The verb deomai ('I beg, I plead') conveys desperate urgency.
39. The father's description is vivid and medically detailed: seizure (lambanei), sudden screaming (exaiphnēs krazei), convulsions (sparassei), foaming (aphrou), and physical damage (syntribon, 'crushing, bruising'). The symptoms described overlap with what modern medicine would classify as epileptic seizures, though Luke attributes the cause to a spirit (pneuma). The verb mogis ('scarcely, with difficulty') suggests the spirit is reluctant to release the boy even temporarily.
40. The disciples' failure is especially striking given that Jesus had delegated power and authority over all demons to them (v. 1). Their inability raises the question of what has gone wrong — a question Jesus addresses in the next verse with sharp disappointment.
41. The exclamation echoes Moses' frustration with Israel in Deuteronomy 32:5, 20 — the 'twisted generation' (genea diestrammenē) language comes directly from the Song of Moses. Jesus's exasperation is directed broadly at 'this generation,' not solely at the disciples. The rhetorical question 'how long?' expresses the pain of divine patience with unbelief, similar to God's lament in Numbers 14:11.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 32:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 14:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. The demon's violent attack as the boy approaches Jesus represents a last desperate assault. The verb apedōken ('gave back, restored') is tender — Jesus returns the child to his father as a gift, restoring the family unit that the demon had torn apart. This same verb was used when Elijah restored the widow's son (1 Kings 17:23 LXX), and Luke may intend the echo.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 17:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The word megaleioteeti ('majesty, grandeur, greatness') appears only here and in Acts 19:27 and 2 Peter 1:16 in the New Testament. Luke's framing is significant: the crowd attributes the miracle to God's majesty, not to Jesus's personal power. Jesus immediately pivots from this moment of popular acclaim to another passion prediction — a jarring juxtaposition that Luke leaves unresolved.
44. The idiom thesthe eis ta ōta hymōn ('place into your ears') means 'listen carefully and remember.' The passive paradidosthai ('to be delivered, to be handed over') implies divine agency — God is the unstated subject who will deliver his Son. The wordplay between 'Son of Man' (huios tou anthrōpou) and 'hands of men' (cheiras anthrōpōn) creates an ironic contrast: the heavenly Man will be subjected to merely human power.
45. Luke presents a threefold failure: ignorance (ēgnooun), concealment (parakekalyimmenon), and fear (ephobounto). The passive 'it was concealed' (ēn parakekalyimmenon) suggests divine hiddenness — God has temporarily veiled the meaning. This is not merely intellectual failure but a divinely ordered inability that will persist until the resurrection opens their understanding (Luke 24:45). Their fear of asking reveals they sense the gravity of Jesus's words even without comprehending them.
46. The juxtaposition is brutal: Jesus has just predicted his death and the disciples immediately argue about rank. The word dialogismos ('reasoning, argument, dispute') can mean an internal thought or an external debate — the context suggests it became vocal, since Jesus responds to it. This scene exposes how thoroughly the disciples have misunderstood the nature of Jesus's messiahship.
47. Jesus's perception of their hearts (eidōs ton dialogismon tēs kardias autōn) demonstrates supernatural knowledge. The physical placement of the child 'beside him' (par' heautō) is a visual lesson: the child occupies the position of honor, the very position the disciples were arguing about.
48. Jesus establishes a chain of representation: child Jesus God. Welcoming the powerless is equivalent to welcoming God himself. The paradox 'the least is great' (ho mikroteros... houtos estin megas) directly inverts the disciples' argument. In the ancient world, children had no social status or power — they were the definitional 'least.' Jesus redefines greatness as service to those with nothing to offer in return.

49. John's concern is about institutional boundaries — 'he does not follow with us' (ouk akolouthei meth' hēmōn). The irony is sharp: the disciples who could not cast out the demon in verse 40 are trying to prevent someone who can. Luke uses epistata ('master') rather than Mark's didaskale ('teacher'), consistent with his pattern for the disciples' address of Jesus.
50. The principle 'whoever is not against you is for you' (hos gar ouk estin kath' hymōn hyper hymōn estin) appears to contradict Luke 11:23 ('whoever is not with me is against me'). The two sayings address different situations: here, the point is tolerance toward allies working outside the inner circle; in 11:23, the point is that neutrality toward Jesus himself is not possible. Jesus refuses to restrict God's work to his own followers' circle.
51. This verse marks the decisive turning point of Luke's Gospel, initiating the 'Travel Narrative' (9:51-19:27). The phrase to prosōpon estērisen ('set his face firmly') echoes Isaiah 50:7 (Servant Song): 'I have set my face like flint.' The word analēmpseōs ('taking up, ascension') encompasses not just the ascension but the entire complex of death-resurrection-ascension. Luke views these as a single redemptive event. Jesus moves toward his destiny with deliberate resolve, not reluctant submission.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 50:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. The phrase angelous pro prosōpou autou ('messengers before his face') echoes Malachi 3:1, where God sends a messenger before his face. The route through Samaria was the most direct path from Galilee to Jerusalem but was avoided by many Jews due to the Samaritan-Jewish hostility. Jesus's choice of this route is itself a statement.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 3:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. The Samaritans' refusal is theological, not personal: they reject him because Jerusalem is his destination. The Samaritan-Jewish schism centered on rival worship sites — Mount Gerizim versus the Jerusalem temple (cf. John 4:20). A Jewish pilgrim traveling to Jerusalem represented everything the Samaritans opposed. The phrase 'his face was going toward Jerusalem' preserves the Semitic idiom of v. 51.
54. James and John's proposal alludes to Elijah calling fire from heaven on the soldiers of King Ahaziah (2 Kings 1:10-12) — a connection made explicit in some manuscripts though not in the SBLGNT. The irony is layered: they have just witnessed the Transfiguration with Elijah and now want to play Elijah themselves. Their desire for destructive judgment is precisely the kind of messianic power Jesus is rejecting by heading toward the cross.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 1:10-12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
55. The SBLGNT contains only the brief rebuke without the additional words found in some later manuscripts ('You do not know what spirit you are of' and 'The Son of Man came not to destroy lives but to save them'). While these additions express authentic Lukan theology, we follow the critical text. The physical turning (strapheis) suggests Jesus had been walking ahead and deliberately turned back to correct them.
56. The matter-of-fact simplicity of this verse contrasts sharply with the disciples' violent proposal. Jesus does not retaliate, does not curse the village, does not even complain — he simply moves on. This models the non-retaliatory ethic that will characterize his teaching in the Travel Narrative.
57. This begins a series of three encounters with would-be followers (vv. 57-62), each illustrating a different obstacle to discipleship. The first volunteer is enthusiastic but uninformed about the cost. Luke does not identify this person (Matthew 8:19 says 'a scribe'), keeping the encounter universal — any reader can see themselves here.
58. The contrast is between the most common animals (foxes, birds) and the Son of Man — even creatures with no social standing have shelter, but the one to whom Daniel 7 promises universal dominion lives as a homeless itinerant. The phrase 'birds of the sky' (ta peteina tou ouranou) is a Septuagint expression. Jesus does not refuse the volunteer but ensures he understands the cost.
58. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
59. Unlike the first volunteer, this person is called by Jesus but hesitates. Burying one's father was considered the most sacred obligation in Jewish culture — it took precedence over virtually all other religious duties, even Torah study and temple service (cf. Mishnah Berakhot 3:1). The request may mean the father has just died, or it may be an idiom for 'let me wait until my father dies and I've fulfilled my family obligations.'
60. This is one of the most shocking sayings in the Gospels. 'Let the dead bury their own dead' uses 'dead' in two senses: the spiritually dead can attend to the physically dead. The command to prioritize kingdom proclamation over the most sacred family duty would have been deeply offensive in first-century Jewish culture. Jesus is not callous — he is asserting that the kingdom's arrival creates an unprecedented urgency that relativizes even the most honored obligations.
61. The third encounter — unique to Luke — echoes Elisha's call by Elijah in 1 Kings 19:19-21, where Elisha asked to kiss his parents goodbye and Elijah permitted it. The request seems entirely reasonable, which makes Jesus's response in the next verse all the more startling. The verb apotaxasthai ('to say farewell, to take leave of') implies a formal departure, not a quick wave.
61. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 19:19-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
62. The agricultural image is precise: a farmer plowing with a wooden plow and a team of oxen must look ahead to maintain a straight furrow. Looking backward produces a crooked line and wastes the field. The verb euthetos ('fit, suitable, useful') implies that backward-looking discipleship is not merely imperfect but useless for kingdom work. The implicit contrast with Elisha's call is significant: what Elijah permitted, Jesus does not —

because the kingdom's demands exceed even the prophetic calling.

10

Summary: *Luke 10 opens with Jesus sending out seventy-two disciples on a broader mission, paralleling but expanding the commissioning of the Twelve in chapter 9. The chapter contains the famous parable of the Good Samaritan — Jesus's answer to the question 'Who is my neighbor?' — which redefines love of neighbor by making a despised outsider the moral hero. The chapter closes with the contrasting portraits of Martha and Mary in Bethany, where Jesus affirms that attentive listening to his word is the 'one thing needed.' Between these memorable narratives, Jesus rejoices in the Spirit, pronounces blessings on the disciples for what they see and hear, and reveals the intimate mutual knowledge between Father and Son.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sending of the seventy-two (or seventy, depending on the manuscript tradition) likely alludes to the seventy elders of Israel (Numbers 11:16-25) or the seventy nations of Genesis 10, suggesting a mission that extends beyond Israel. The Good Samaritan parable is uniquely Lukan and is one of the most culturally influential stories in Western civilization. Its placement as the answer to 'Who is my neighbor?' transforms a question about the limits of obligation into a challenge about becoming the kind of person who shows mercy. The Mary and Martha story, also unique to Luke, elevates the role of women as disciples who learn at a rabbi's feet — a radical social claim in the first century.*

Translation Friction: *The number seventy-two versus seventy is a well-known textual variant; the SBLGNT reads seventy-two (hebdomekonta duo). The lawyer's question in v. 25 uses ekpeirazon ('testing'), a verb with hostile overtones, yet Jesus engages him seriously. The Samaritan parable would have been profoundly offensive to a Jewish audience — making a Samaritan the moral exemplar over a priest and a Levite was a deliberate provocation. The Martha/Mary episode has been read as privileging contemplation over action, but Luke's point is more nuanced: Martha's distraction (periespato) is the problem, not her service (diakonia) itself.*

Connections: *The commissioning echoes and expands the Twelve's mission (Luke 9:1-6). Jesus's rejoicing in the Spirit (v. 21) connects to his programmatic Spirit-anointing in Luke 4:18. The Good Samaritan parable reinterprets Leviticus 19:18 ('love your neighbor as yourself') and draws on the Samaritan theme Luke has been developing (9:52-56). The Mary/Martha story anticipates the theme of faithful hearing that runs through Luke's Travel Narrative. The woe oracles over Chorazin, Bethsaida, and Capernaum echo Old Testament prophetic judgment oracles.*

¹After this the Lord appointed seventy-two others and sent them two by two ahead of him into every town and place where he himself was about to go. ²He told them, "The harvest is plentiful, but the workers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest to send out workers into his harvest. ³Go! I am sending you out like lambs among wolves. ⁴Carry no money bag, no traveler's bag, no sandals, and greet no one on the road. ⁵Whatever house you enter, first say, 'Peace to this house.' ⁶If a person of peace is there, your peace will rest on that person. But if not, it will return to you. ⁷Stay in that same house, eating and drinking what they provide, for the worker deserves his wages. Do not move from house to house. ⁸Whenever you enter a town and they welcome you, eat what is set before you. ⁹Heal the sick who are there and tell them, 'The kingdom of God has come near to you.' ¹⁰But whenever you enter a town and they do not welcome you, go out into its streets and say, ¹¹'Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you. But know this: the kingdom of God has come near.' ¹²I tell you, on that day it will be more bearable for Sodom than for that town. ¹³"Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the miracles done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes. ¹⁴But it will be easier for Tyre and Sidon on the day of judgment, than it will be for you. ¹⁵And you, Capernaum — will you be exalted to heaven? You will be brought down to Hades. ¹⁶Whoever listens to you listens to me, and whoever rejects you rejects me, and whoever rejects me rejects the one who sent me." ¹⁷The seventy-two returned with joy, saying, "Lord, even the demons submit to us in your name!" ¹⁸He said to them, "I was watching Satan fall from heaven like lightning. ¹⁹Look, I have given you authority to trample on snakes and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing will harm

you in any way. ²⁰Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven." ²¹In that same hour he rejoiced in the Holy Spirit and said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you have hidden these things from the wise and intelligent and revealed them to infants. Yes, Father, for this was your gracious will. ²²All things have been handed over to me by my Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father, or who the Father is except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him." ²³Then turning to the disciples privately, he said, "Blessed are the eyes that see what you see. ²⁴For I tell you that many prophets and kings desired to see what you see and did not see it, and to hear what you hear and did not hear it." ²⁵Then a legal expert stood up to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?" ²⁶He said to him, "What is written in the Law? How do you read it?" ²⁷He answered, "You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself." ²⁸He said to him, "You have answered correctly. Do this and you will live." ²⁹But wanting to justify himself, he said to Jesus, "And who is my neighbor?" ³⁰Jesus replied, "A man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho and fell among robbers. They stripped him, beat him, and went away, leaving him half dead. ³¹By coincidence, a priest was going down that road, and when he saw him, he passed by on the other side. ³²Likewise a Levite, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side. ³³But a Samaritan who was traveling came upon him, and when he saw him, he was moved with compassion. ³⁴He went to him and bandaged his wounds, pouring on oil and wine. Then he placed him on his own animal, brought him to an inn, and took care of him. ³⁵The next day he took out two denarii, gave them to the innkeeper, and said, 'Take care of him, and whatever more you spend, I will repay you when I come back.' ³⁶Which of these three do you think proved to be a neighbor to the man who fell among the robbers?" ³⁷He said, "The one who showed mercy to him." Jesus said to him, "Go and do likewise." ³⁸As they continued on their way, he entered a certain village, and a woman named Martha welcomed him into her home. ³⁹She had a sister called Mary, who sat at the Lord's feet and was listening to his word. ⁴⁰But Martha was distracted by all her preparations. She came to him and said, "Lord, don't you care that my sister has left me to serve alone? Tell her to help me!" ⁴¹The Lord answered her, "Martha, Martha, you are worried and upset about many things, ⁴²However, one thing is needful — and Mary has chosen that good part, which will not be taken away from her."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The textual variant between 'seventy' and 'seventy-two' (hebdomēkonta duo) is one of the most debated in Luke. The SBLGNT reads seventy-two. Seventy may allude to the elders appointed by Moses (Numbers 11:16-25), while seventy-two may reflect the number of nations in the Septuagint's version of Genesis 10, suggesting a universal mission scope. Sending in pairs follows the Old Testament principle that testimony requires two witnesses (Deuteronomy 19:15).
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 11:16-25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 19:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The harvest metaphor draws on Old Testament prophetic imagery where harvest represents God's gathering of people (cf. Joel 3:13, Isaiah 27:12). The verb *ekbalē* ('to throw out, to send out forcefully') is surprisingly strong — the same word used for casting out demons. God must thrust workers into the field; they will not go on their own initiative.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 3:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 27:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The image of lambs (*arnas*) among wolves is more vulnerable than Matthew's 'sheep' (*probata*, Matt 10:16). Lambs are younger, weaker, more defenseless. The present tense apostellō ('I am sending') conveys immediacy. The mission is deliberately risky — Jesus does not promise safety but commissions them into danger.

4. The prohibition against greeting people on the road does not reflect rudeness but urgency — Near Eastern greetings were elaborate, time-consuming social rituals. Elisha gave the same instruction to Gehazi (2 Kings 4:29). The three prohibited items (purse, bag, sandals) strip the missionaries of all provision and self-sufficiency, forcing reliance on God's provision through hospitality.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 4:29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The greeting *eirēnē tō oikō toutō* ('peace to this house') reflects the Hebrew *shalom* greeting. In this context, it is not merely a pleasantry but a performative blessing — the peace carried by the messengers of the kingdom is an actual spiritual reality that can rest on a household or return to the messenger (v. 6).
6. The Semitic expression *huios eirēnēs* ('son of peace') means a person characterized by peace, one who is receptive to the kingdom message. The concept of peace as a quasi-physical force that can 'rest on' someone or 'return' to the sender reflects the Hebrew understanding of a spoken blessing as having real power — a word once released either finds its target or comes back.
7. The principle 'the worker deserves his wages' (*axios ho ergatēs tou misthou autou*) establishes that hospitality for kingdom workers is not charity but fair compensation for spiritual labor. Paul quotes this saying as authoritative in 1 Timothy 5:18, placing it on the level of Scripture. The prohibition against moving between houses prevents the appearance of seeking luxury or playing hosts against each other.
8. The instruction to eat 'what is set before you' (*ta paratithemena hymin*) may have significance beyond mere hospitality — for Jewish missionaries entering Gentile or Samaritan homes, this could mean eating food not prepared according to Jewish dietary laws. If so, the instruction anticipates the breaking down of food boundaries that becomes explicit in Acts 10.
9. The combination of healing and proclamation demonstrates that the kingdom of God is not merely a verbal announcement but a present reality that transforms bodies and communities. The perfect tense *ēngiken* ('has come near, has arrived') indicates a completed approach — the kingdom is not distant but has reached their doorstep through the messengers' presence and power.
10. The public declaration in the streets (*plateias*, 'broad streets, public squares') transforms the rejection into a witnessed prophetic act. The messengers are not to slink away in shame but to make a formal, visible proclamation of judgment.
11. The dust-wiping gesture is more detailed here than in 9:5, with the addition of 'that clings to our feet' (*ton kollēthenta hēmin ek tēs poleōs hymōn eis tous podas*), emphasizing thoroughness of separation. The ironic twist is that the kingdom's nearness remains true regardless of the town's response — their rejection does not prevent God's reign from arriving, only their participation in it.
12. Sodom was the quintessential symbol of divine judgment in Jewish thought (Genesis 19). To say that any town's fate will be worse than Sodom's is the most severe warning imaginable. The logic is one of accountability: Sodom never received kingdom messengers with healing power, so rejecting such messengers incurs greater responsibility.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Chorazin and Bethsaida were Galilean towns near Capernaum where Jesus had ministered extensively. Tyre and Sidon were Gentile coastal cities that the Old Testament prophets condemned (Isaiah 23, Ezekiel 26-28). The argument from lesser to greater is devastating: pagan cities under prophetic judgment would have repented if given what these Jewish towns received. Sackcloth and ashes were the traditional signs of mourning and repentance.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 26-28 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The phrase *en tē krisei* ('at the judgment') refers to the eschatological final judgment. Jesus implies graduated accountability — greater privilege brings greater responsibility and thus more severe judgment for rejection. The comparative *anektoterōn* ('more bearable, more tolerable') suggests degrees of judgment rather than a uniform outcome.
15. The language echoes Isaiah 14:13-15, the taunt against the king of Babylon who sought to ascend to heaven but was brought down to Sheol. Capernaum was Jesus's base of operations in Galilee (Luke 4:31) and had received more of his teaching and miracles than any other town. The Greek *hadēs* translates the Hebrew *Sheol* — the realm of the dead, not the later Christian concept of hell as a place of punishment.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 14:13-15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. This verse establishes a chain of representation parallel to 9:48 but in the negative direction: messenger → Jesus → God. The verb *athetōn* ('rejects, sets aside, nullifies') is a legal term meaning to declare something invalid or to annul a contract. Rejecting the messengers is not merely a social offense but a rejection of divine authority. The sending language (*ton aposteilanta me*) affirms Jesus's own identity as the sent one of God.
17. The disciples' report focuses on demonic submission (*hypotassetai*, 'submit, are subject to') — the one result that most astonished them. Their joy is genuine but slightly misdirected, as Jesus will redirect their attention in v. 20. The phrase 'in your name' (*en tō onomati sou*) indicates they acted not by their own power but as authorized representatives of Jesus.

- 18.** The imperfect *etheōroun* ('I was watching, I kept seeing') suggests Jesus was observing in real time as the disciples were on their mission. The imagery of Satan falling like lightning combines the speed and brilliance of a lightning strike with the finality of a fall. This may allude to Isaiah 14:12 (the fall of the 'morning star') or may describe a visionary experience of Satan's cosmic defeat being enacted through the disciples' mission.
- 18.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 14:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 19.** The perfect tense *dedōka* ('I have given') indicates an accomplished and continuing gift. Snakes and scorpions function both literally (protection from physical danger) and symbolically (power over demonic forces, cf. the serpent of Genesis 3). The phrase *pasan tēn dynamin tou echthrou* ('all the power of the enemy') identifies Satan as 'the enemy' and declares his complete subordination to the authority Jesus delegates. The double negative *ou mē* ('by no means, absolutely not') is the strongest negation in Greek.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** Jesus redirects their joy from what they can do (power over spirits) to what God has done (inscribing their names in heaven). The perfect passive *engegraptai* ('have been written and remain written') indicates a permanent record. The image of names written in heaven draws on the Old Testament concept of God's book (Exodus 32:32-33, Daniel 12:1, Psalm 69:28). The point is that identity and security in God's eternal record matters more than spiritual power.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 32:32-33 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 69:28 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** Luke alone specifies that Jesus rejoiced 'in the Holy Spirit' (*en tō pneumati tō hagiō*), one of the rare moments where Jesus's own emotional experience is described in terms of the Spirit's activity. The verb *ēgalliasato* ('rejoiced greatly, exulted') denotes intense, exuberant joy. The prayer follows the Jewish *todah* (thanksgiving) form. The 'wise and intelligent' (*sophōn kai synetōn*) may refer to religious scholars whose learning becomes an obstacle, while 'infants' (*nēpiois*) represents the unlettered disciples whose openness allows revelation.
- 22.** This verse, sometimes called the 'Johannine thunderbolt' because it sounds more like John's Gospel than the Synoptics, asserts mutual exclusive knowledge between Father and Son. The verb *paredothē* ('have been handed over') implies total delegation of authority. The claim of reciprocal knowing — only the Father knows the Son, only the Son knows the Father — places Jesus in a relationship with God that is unique and unparalleled. The Son's sovereign choice in revelation (*boulētai*, 'wills, chooses') makes him the sole mediator of knowledge of God.
- 23.** The beatitude form (*makarioi*, 'blessed, fortunate, to be envied') frames the disciples' experience as a supreme privilege. The physical turning (*straphēis*) signals a shift from public prayer to private instruction. The emphasis on seeing (*ophthalmoi... blepontes... blepete*) highlights the revelatory nature of the disciples' experience — they are witnessing what centuries of faithful people longed to see.
- 24.** Luke says 'prophets and kings' where Matthew 13:17 says 'prophets and righteous people' — Luke's version may be more pointed, since kings like David and Solomon, despite their power and privilege, never witnessed the messianic fulfillment. The disciples, simple Galileans, are more privileged than Israel's greatest leaders. The parallel structure (see/did not see, hear/did not hear) creates a chiasm of privilege and longing.
- 25.** The *nomikos* ('legal expert, lawyer') was an expert in the Torah, not a secular attorney. The verb *ekpeirazōn* ('testing, putting to the test') carries hostile undertones — this is an attempt to trap Jesus, not a sincere inquiry (though Jesus transforms it into genuine teaching). The question about inheriting eternal life assumes that eternal life is an inheritance, something received from a prior relationship rather than earned — a covenant concept.
- 26.** Jesus's counter-question is a classic rabbinic technique — answering a question with a question that directs the questioner back to Scripture. The double question ('what is written?' and 'how do you read?') distinguishes between the text itself and the interpreter's understanding of it. As a Torah expert, the lawyer should already know the answer.
- 27.** The lawyer combines the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:5) with Leviticus 19:18, joining love of God with love of neighbor into a single commandment. In Luke's account, it is the lawyer who produces this synthesis (in Mark 12:29-31, Jesus gives it). The fourfold formula (heart, soul, strength, mind) slightly expands the Hebrew original, with 'mind' (*dianoia*) added to the traditional three, perhaps reflecting the Septuagint tradition.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 6:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 19:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** Jesus's response echoes Leviticus 18:5: 'Keep my statutes... by which, if a person does them, he will live.' The imperative 'do this' (*touto poiei*) shifts the conversation from theory to practice — knowing the right answer is not enough. The present tense *poiei* implies ongoing, habitual action, not a one-time performance.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 18:5: — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

29. The phrase *thelōn dikaiōsai heauton* ('wanting to justify himself') reveals the lawyer's motivation — he seeks to define 'neighbor' narrowly enough that he can claim compliance. The question 'who is my neighbor?' asks for the limits of obligation: who can I legitimately exclude? Jesus's parable will invert the question entirely: instead of asking 'who qualifies as my neighbor?' the question becomes 'to whom am I willing to be a neighbor?'
30. The Jerusalem-to-Jericho road descended about 3,400 feet over roughly seventeen miles through desolate, rocky terrain notorious for banditry. The word *lēstai* ('robbers, bandits') denotes violent criminals, not petty thieves (*kleptai*). The victim is deliberately left unidentified — no name, no ethnicity, no social status — so that the story cannot be limited to any particular group. Stripped and half dead, the man's identity cannot be determined by his clothing or speech, making the response to him purely a matter of mercy versus indifference.
31. The phrase *kata synkyrian* ('by coincidence') is used only here in the New Testament and frames the encounters as unplanned — this is not a setup but a test of character in an unexpected moment. The priest's avoidance (*antiparēlthen*, 'passed by on the opposite side') may have been motivated by purity concerns: contact with a corpse would render him ritually unclean (Leviticus 21:1-3), and the man appeared to be dead. However, Jesus's parable implies no excuse is adequate when a life hangs in the balance.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 21:1-3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The Levite's behavior mirrors the priest's — seeing (*idōn*) and passing by (*antiparēlthen*). The Levites were a secondary priestly class who served in the temple. Together, priest and Levite represent the religious establishment of Israel. The pattern of two religious figures failing creates the expectation that the third character will be an ordinary Israelite who succeeds — making the Samaritan identity in verse 33 a deliberate shock.
33. The word *esplanchnisthē* ('was moved with compassion, felt it in his guts') is one of the strongest emotional verbs in Greek — it refers to a visceral, gut-level response. In the Gospels, this verb is used primarily of Jesus himself (7:13, 15:20). The Samaritan sees the same wounded man the priest and Levite saw, but his seeing produces a fundamentally different response. For a first-century Jewish audience, making a Samaritan the hero would have been deeply offensive — Samaritans were considered heretical half-breeds (cf. John 4:9, 8:48).
34. The care is described in meticulous detail: approaching, bandaging, applying medicine (oil to soothe, wine to disinfect), mounting the man on his own animal (meaning the Samaritan walked), transporting him to an inn, and personally nursing him. Each action represents a personal cost — time, supplies, transportation, and the risk of being a Samaritan caring for a possibly Jewish stranger in hostile territory. The *pandocheion* ('inn') was a commercial establishment, not private hospitality.
35. Two *denarii* represented about two days' wages for a laborer and could cover roughly two weeks of lodging and food. The Samaritan's open-ended promise — 'whatever more you spend, I will repay' — represents an unlimited financial commitment to a stranger. The verb *prosdapanēsēs* ('spend in addition') indicates he expects the care to exceed the initial payment. The promise to return creates ongoing accountability.
36. Jesus's question brilliantly inverts the lawyer's original question. The lawyer asked 'who is my neighbor?' (who must I help?) — Jesus asks 'who proved to be a neighbor?' (who acted with mercy?). The question is no longer about the identity of the recipient but about the character of the responder. The verb *gegonenai* ('proved to be, became') suggests that being a neighbor is not a status but an action.
37. The lawyer cannot bring himself to say 'the Samaritan' — he answers with a circumlocution: 'the one who showed mercy' (*ho poiēsas to eleos*). The word *eleos* ('mercy, compassion') echoes the Septuagint's vocabulary for God's own compassion. Jesus's final command — 'go and do likewise' (*poreuou kai sy poiei homoiōs*) — turns the theological question into a practical mandate. The 'likewise' (*homoiōs*) means: be like the Samaritan. For a Jewish lawyer, this is a radical reorientation.
38. Luke does not name the village, though John 11:1 identifies Martha's home as Bethany, near Jerusalem. The verb *hypedexato* ('welcomed, received as a guest') indicates hospitality — Martha is the householder who opens her home. Luke places this domestic scene immediately after the Good Samaritan parable, creating a pairing: the parable teaches about active mercy, while the Martha/Mary story teaches about receptive listening. Both are needed.
39. The phrase *parakathētheisa pros tous podas tou kyriou* ('seated at the Lord's feet') is the technical posture of a rabbinic disciple — Paul describes himself as educated 'at the feet of Gamaliel' (Acts 22:3). For a woman to assume this posture was socially radical; women were not typically accepted as students of Torah. Luke presents Mary as a full disciple. The imperfect *ēkouden* ('was listening, kept listening') suggests sustained, absorbed attention.
40. The verb *periespato* ('was distracted, was pulled in different directions') suggests that Martha's many tasks were fragmenting her attention rather than centering it. The word *diakonia* ('service, ministry') is significant — it is the root of 'deacon' and is a valued activity in Luke-Acts. Martha's service is not condemned; her distraction is. Her complaint addresses Jesus rather than Mary directly, asking him to arbitrate — and her tone reveals frustration bordering on accusation: 'don't you care?' (*ou meleī soi*).
41. The double name 'Martha, Martha' (Martha Martha) is a form of address that conveys gentle concern and intimacy — compare 'Simon, Simon' (Luke 22:31) and 'Jerusalem, Jerusalem' (Luke 13:34). The two verbs *merimnās* ('you are anxious, worried') and *thorybazē* ('you are troubled, agitated') describe an internal state of fragmentation. Jesus does not criticize Martha's service but her anxiety — the inner turmoil that has overtaken her.
42. The phrase *henos estin chreia* ('one thing is necessary') is textually debated — some manuscripts read 'few things are necessary, or only one' (*oligōn de estin chreia ē henos*). The SBLGNT reading is the most concise. The word *merida* ('portion, share, part') may carry meal imagery — while Martha is busy with many dishes, Mary has chosen the one dish that matters. The passive 'will not be taken away' (*ouk aphairethēsetai*) implies divine protection of Mary's choice. Jesus affirms that attentive hearing of the word takes priority, though he does not condemn Martha's service itself.

11

Summary: *Luke 11 centers on prayer, spiritual warfare, and confrontation with religious hypocrisy. The chapter opens with Jesus teaching the Lord's Prayer in its shorter Lukan form, followed by the parable of the persistent friend and the promise that God gives good gifts to those who ask. The middle section addresses the Beelzebul controversy — Jesus's defense against the charge that he casts out demons by demonic power — and includes the parable of the strong man and the warning about the return of unclean spirits. The chapter closes with a series of sharp woe pronouncements against the Pharisees and legal experts, attacking their obsession with external purity while neglecting justice and the love of God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's Lord's Prayer is significantly shorter than Matthew's version (five petitions versus seven), likely reflecting an earlier or more compressed tradition. The prayer arises naturally from watching Jesus pray — a uniquely Lukan setting. The Beelzebul controversy is one of the most theologically charged episodes in the Gospels, as Jesus argues that his exorcisms are evidence that the kingdom of God has arrived. The six woes (three against Pharisees, three against lawyers) form one of the fiercest prophetic denunciations in the New Testament, echoing the 'woe' oracles of Isaiah and Amos. Luke's placement of these woes at a Pharisee's dinner table heightens the social tension dramatically.*

Translation Friction: *The differences between Luke's Lord's Prayer and Matthew's have generated extensive scholarly discussion. We render Luke's text as it stands without harmonizing with Matthew. The phrase 'your kingdom come' in some manuscripts is followed by a variant reading requesting the Holy Spirit, which reflects early liturgical practice but is not in the SBLGNT. The Beelzebul passage raises difficult questions about the 'unforgivable sin' (blasphemy against the Holy Spirit), though Luke's version is less explicit on this than Mark's. The woe pronouncements present Jesus in a confrontational prophetic mode that may surprise readers accustomed to 'gentle Jesus.'*

Connections: *The Lord's Prayer connects to Jesus's own prayer life (3:21, 5:16, 6:12, 9:18, 9:28-29). The Beelzebul controversy draws on Old Testament language about 'the finger of God' (Exodus 8:19). The sign of Jonah connects to the Jonah narrative and the repentance of Nineveh. The lamp saying (v. 33-36) echoes the same imagery in 8:16. The woes parallel Matthew 23 but in a different narrative context. The reference to Abel's blood to Zechariah's blood spans the Hebrew canon from Genesis to Chronicles.*

¹He was praying in a certain place, and when he finished, one of his disciples said to him, "Lord, teach us to pray, just as John taught his disciples." ²He said to them, "When you pray, say: 'Father, let your name be held holy. Let your kingdom come. ³Give us each day our daily bread. ⁴Forgive us our sins, for we ourselves also forgive everyone indebted to us. And do not bring us into temptation.'" ⁵Then he said to them, "Suppose one of you has a friend, and you go to him at midnight and say, 'Friend, lend me three loaves of bread, ⁶Because a friend of mine in his journey is come to me, and I have nothing to set prior to him? ⁷And suppose the one inside answers, 'Don't bother me. The door is already locked and my children are with me in bed. I cannot get up and give you anything.' ⁸I tell you, even if he will not get up and give him anything because of their friendship, yet because of his shameless persistence he will get up and give him whatever he needs. ⁹So I say to you: Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you. ¹⁰For everyone who asks receives, and the one who seeks finds, and to the one who knocks it will be opened. ¹¹What father among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake instead? ¹²Or if he asks for an egg, will give him a scorpion? ¹³If you then, being evil, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to those who ask him!" ¹⁴He was casting out a demon that was mute. When the demon had gone out, the mute man spoke, and the crowds were amazed. ¹⁵But some of them said, "He casts out demons by Beelzebul, the ruler of demons." ¹⁶Others, testing him, demanded a sign from heaven. ¹⁷But he, knowing their thoughts, said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is laid waste, and a house divided against itself falls. ¹⁸If Satan is divided against himself, how will his kingdom stand? For you say that I cast out demons by Beelzebul. ¹⁹If I cast out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your sons cast them out? Therefore they will be your judges. ²⁰But if I cast out demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you. ²¹When a strong man,

fully armed, guards his own courtyard, his possessions are secure. ²²But when one stronger than he attacks and overpowers him, he takes away the full armor in which the strong man trusted and distributes his plunder. ²³Whoever is not with me is against me, and whoever does not gather with me scatters. ²⁴"When an unclean spirit goes out of a person, it passes through waterless places seeking rest, and finding none, it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.' ²⁵When it arrives, it finds the house swept and put in order. ²⁶Then it goes and brings along seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they enter and settle there. And the final condition of that person becomes worse than the first." ²⁷As he was saying these things, a woman in the crowd raised her voice and said to him, "Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts that nursed you!" ²⁸But he said, "Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and keep it!" ²⁹As the crowds were increasing, he began to say, "This generation is an evil generation. It seeks a sign, and no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah. ³⁰For just as Jonah became a sign to the people of Nineveh, so also will the Son of Man be to this generation. ³¹The queen of the South will rise at the judgment with the people of this generation and condemn them, because she came from the ends of the earth to hear Solomon's wisdom — and look, something greater than Solomon is here. ³²The people of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation and condemn it, because they repented at the preaching of Jonah — and look, something greater than Jonah is here. ³³"No one lights a lamp and puts it in a hidden place or under a basket, but on a lampstand, so that those who enter may see the light. ³⁴Your eye is the lamp of your body. When your eye is healthy, your whole body is full of light. But when it is bad, your body is full of darkness. ³⁵Therefore be careful that the light in you is not darkness. ³⁶If then your whole body is full of light, with no part dark, it will be entirely full of light, as when a lamp with its rays gives you light." ³⁷While he was speaking, a Pharisee invited him to eat with him. So he went in and reclined at the table. ³⁸The Pharisee was surprised to see that he did not first wash before the meal. ³⁹The Lord said to him, "Now you Pharisees clean the outside of the cup and the dish, but inside you are full of greed and wickedness. ⁴⁰Fools! Did not the one who made the outside make the inside also? ⁴¹But give what is inside as charity, and then everything is clean for you. ⁴²But woe to you Pharisees! For you tithe mint and rue and every herb, but you neglect justice and the love of God. These you should have done without neglecting the others. ⁴³Woe to you Pharisees! For you love the best seats in the synagogues and the greetings in the marketplaces. ⁴⁴Woe to you! For you are like unmarked graves, and the people who walk over them do not realize it." ⁴⁵One of the legal experts answered him, "Teacher, when you say these things, you insult us too." ⁴⁶He said, "Woe to you legal experts as well! For you load people with burdens hard to bear, but you yourselves will not touch the burdens with one of your fingers. ⁴⁷Woe to you! For you build the tombs of the prophets, and your fathers killed them. ⁴⁸So you are witnesses and you approve of the deeds of your fathers, because they killed them and you build their tombs. ⁴⁹For this reason the wisdom of God said, 'I will send them prophets and apostles, and some of them they will kill and persecute,' ⁵⁰That the lifeblood of all the prophets, which was shed from the foundation of the present age, may be required of this generation. ⁵¹In deed, from the blood of Abel to the blood of Zacharias, which perished between the altar and the temple — truly I tell you, it will be required of this generation. ⁵²Woe to you legal experts! For you have taken away the key of knowledge. You did not enter yourselves, and you hindered those who were entering." ⁵³When he left there, the scribes and the Pharisees began to press him hard and to provoke him to speak about many things, ⁵⁴They watched him closely, trying to trap him into saying something they could use against him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke uniquely grounds the Lord's Prayer in Jesus's own practice of prayer — the disciples see him praying and want to learn. The reference to John the Baptist teaching his disciples to pray indicates that distinctive prayers functioned as community identity markers; rabbinic schools and prophetic movements each had their own prayer traditions. The request is not simply for words to say but for a way of approaching God that distinguishes Jesus's community.
2. Luke's address is simply *Pater* ('Father') without Matthew's 'Our Father who is in heaven.' The bare 'Father' may reflect the Aramaic *Abba*, the intimate family address that Jesus used for God. The aorist passive *hagiasthētō* ('let it be made holy, let it be sanctified') is a divine passive — the petition asks God to act to hallow his own name, to cause his holiness to be recognized and honored. Luke omits Matthew's 'your will be done on earth as in heaven,' though the petition is implicit in 'let your kingdom come.'

3. The word *epiousios* ('daily') is one of the rarest words in Greek — it appears almost nowhere outside the Lord's Prayer, and its exact meaning is debated. Possible meanings include: 'for the coming day' (from *epi* + *ienai*, 'for tomorrow'), 'necessary for existence' (from *epi* + *ousia*, 'for being'), or 'supersubstantial' (a patristic reading connecting it to spiritual nourishment). The present tense *didou* ('keep giving') with 'each day' (to *kath' hēmeran*) in Luke's version (versus Matthew's aorist *dos*, 'give today') emphasizes ongoing daily dependence, echoing the daily manna provision in the wilderness.
4. Luke uses *hamartias* ('sins') where Matthew has *opheilēmata* ('debts'). Luke's version then switches to debt language in the second clause (*opheilonti*, 'indebted to'), creating a mixed metaphor that reveals the underlying connection: sins are debts owed to God. The present tense *aphiomen* ('we forgive') indicates habitual practice, not a one-time act. Luke omits Matthew's final petition 'but deliver us from evil/the evil one.' The petition about temptation (*peirasmon*) asks not to be led into a situation of testing that could overwhelm faith — the same word will appear in Jesus's Gethsemane warning (22:40, 46).
5. This parable is unique to Luke. The scenario assumes a Palestinian village where hospitality is a communal obligation — a host who cannot provide for an unexpected guest would bring shame on the entire village. The midnight hour (*mesonyktiou*) heightens the inconvenience. Three loaves would constitute a modest meal for one person.
6. The traveler's arrival 'from a journey' (*ex hodou*) at midnight was common in the ancient Near East, where people traveled in the cooler night hours to avoid the heat. The host's confession 'I have nothing' (*ouk echō*) creates urgency — hospitality failure was a serious social disgrace in this culture.
7. The reply from inside paints a realistic picture of a one-room peasant house where the entire family slept on a raised platform or mat. Opening the door and getting bread would mean stepping over sleeping children, unbarring the door, and fumbling in the dark. The perfect tense *kekleistai* ('has been locked and remains locked') emphasizes the finality of the closure.
8. The key word *anaideia* has been traditionally translated 'importunity' or 'persistence,' but it literally means 'shamelessness, lack of shame.' The argument is from lesser to greater (*qal wahomer*): if a reluctant neighbor responds to shameless persistence, how much more will God — who is not reluctant — respond to persistent prayer? God is not the reluctant friend; the parable contrasts human reluctance with divine generosity.
9. The three imperatives (*aiteite*, *zēteite*, *krouete*) are all present tense, indicating continuous action: 'keep asking, keep seeking, keep knocking.' The escalating verbs suggest increasing effort and urgency. The divine passives (*dothēsetai*, 'it will be given'; *anoigēsetai*, 'it will be opened') indicate God as the agent. The promise is absolute in form, though the context (vv. 11-13) clarifies that God gives what is genuinely good.
10. The universal qualifier *pas* ('everyone') removes any limitation — the promise is not restricted to the pious, the worthy, or the experienced. The shift from imperative (v. 9) to indicative (v. 10) moves from command to assurance: this is not merely what you should do, but what actually happens. The present tenses (*lambanei*, *heuriskei*) describe a reliable pattern, not an occasional exception.
11. The SBLGNT text here differs from some manuscripts. Some include the bread/stone comparison found in Matthew 7:9, but the critical text begins with the fish/snake pair. The items are chosen for their visual similarity — a snake could resemble a fish, an egg could resemble a stone — making the substitution conceivable but cruel. The argument assumes that human fathers, despite their imperfection, would never deliberately harm their children.
12. The egg/scorpion pair is unique to Luke. A white scorpion with its tail curled could superficially resemble an egg. The escalation from snake (dangerous) to scorpion (deadly) heightens the absurdity — no parent would do this. The logic builds toward the climactic argument in verse 13.
13. Luke's version culminates with the Holy Spirit (*pneuma hagion*) where Matthew 7:11 has 'good things' (*agatha*). This is theologically significant: for Luke, the Holy Spirit is the supreme gift, the ultimate 'good thing' that encompasses all others. The acknowledgment of human evil (*ponēroi hyparchontes*, 'being evil by nature') is not rhetorical — it establishes the lesser-to-greater argument: even flawed humans give well; a perfect Father gives incomparably better. The phrase *ho patēr ho ex ouranou* ('the Father from heaven') is Luke's distinctive formulation.
14. The adjective *kōphon* ('mute, deaf') is applied to the demon rather than the man, suggesting the demon was the cause of the muteness. The immediate restoration of speech upon the demon's departure confirms this causation. The crowds' amazement (*ethaumasan*) is a typical response to Jesus's exorcisms, setting the stage for the divided reactions that follow.
15. Beelzebul (Beelzeboul) is derived from the name Baal-zebul ('lord of the flies') in 2 Kings 1:2, though the *-zebul* form may mean 'lord of the dwelling' or 'lord of the exalted place.' The accusation that Jesus works by the authority of Satan's chief officer is the most extreme charge his opponents could level — it acknowledges his power while attributing it to the worst possible source.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 1:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The demand for a 'sign from heaven' (*sēmeion ex ouranou*) implies that an exorcism is not sufficient proof — they want a cosmic, undeniable display of divine power. The verb *peirazontes* ('testing') echoes the temptation narrative (4:2) and v. 25's description of the lawyer. Jesus will address this demand in vv. 29-32 with the sign of Jonah.
17. Jesus's knowledge of their thoughts (*eidōs autōn ta dianōēmata*) again demonstrates supernatural perception. The argument is logical: a kingdom at war with itself will collapse. The word *erēmoutai* ('is made desolate, is laid waste') echoes the prophetic language of national destruction. The 'house against house' (*oikos epi oikon*) may refer to families or to internal factions within a household.
18. The phrase 'his kingdom' (*hē basileia autou*) applies kingdom language to Satan — he has a counter-kingdom that opposes God's reign. Jesus accepts the premise that there is an organized demonic realm but argues that the Beelzebul hypothesis is internally incoherent: Satan would not authorize the destruction of his own forces.

19. The 'sons' (huiōi) refers to Jewish exorcists who were contemporaries of Jesus — exorcism was practiced within Judaism (cf. Acts 19:13-14, Josephus Antiquities 8.2.5). The argument is: if exorcism proves Satanic alliance, then your own exorcists stand condemned by the same logic. If their exorcisms are legitimate, then exorcism itself cannot be evidence of demonic power.
20. Luke preserves the phrase 'finger of God' (daktylō theou) where Matthew 12:28 has 'Spirit of God.' The 'finger of God' alludes directly to Exodus 8:19, where Pharaoh's magicians conceded that Moses' plagues were 'the finger of God' — a power they could not replicate. Jesus frames his exorcisms as a new exodus: God's finger is again at work, liberating people from bondage. The aorist ephthasen ('has come upon, has arrived') is decisive — the kingdom is not merely approaching but has already arrived.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 8:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The 'strong man' (ho ischyros) represents Satan. The phrase kathōplismenos ('fully armed, having armed himself completely') emphasizes thorough military preparedness. His 'courtyard' (aulēn) is his domain of control — the lives and territories under demonic oppression. The false 'peace' (eirēnē) of his possessions means the captives are secure only in the sense of being securely imprisoned.
22. The 'stronger one' (ischyroteros) is Jesus himself. The word panoplian ('full armor, complete suit of armor') includes every defensive weapon — the stronger one does not merely defeat the strong man but strips him completely bare. The verb diadidōsin ('distributes') implies the liberation of captives and the redistribution of what was stolen. Luke's version is more detailed than Mark's, emphasizing the totality of the victory.
23. This saying appears to contradict 9:50 ('whoever is not against you is for you'), but the contexts differ. Here the issue is personal allegiance to Jesus in the cosmic battle against evil — neutrality is impossible. In 9:50, the issue was tolerance toward others who work in Jesus's name. The gathering/scattering language (synagōn/skorpizei) uses shepherd imagery: Jesus gathers the flock, and anyone working at cross-purposes scatters it.
24. The 'waterless places' (anhydron topōn) reflect the Jewish belief that demons inhabited deserts and desolate regions (cf. Isaiah 13:21, 34:14; Baruch 4:35). The spirit's reference to the person as 'my house' (ton oikon mou) reveals a possessive claim — the demon considers the human being its property. The seeking of 'rest' (anapausin) parallels the wandering of unhoused spirits in Jewish demonology.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 13:21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The perfect participles sesarōmenon ('swept clean') and kekosmēmenon ('put in order, decorated') describe a house that has been cleaned but not occupied. The critical point is what is absent: there is no new tenant, no positive spiritual presence filling the space. Exorcism without replacement — removal of evil without the filling of good — creates a dangerous spiritual vacuum.
26. Seven represents completeness — the reinfestation is total. The comparative ponērotera ('more evil') indicates escalation: the returned spirits are worse than the original. The verb katoikei ('settle, take up permanent residence') is stronger than temporary inhabitation — they intend to stay. The warning applies both to individuals and, by extension, to Israel: deliverance (exodus, exile's end) without genuine commitment to God leads to a worse condition than before.
27. This exchange is unique to Luke. The woman's praise honors Jesus indirectly by blessing his mother — a common Near Eastern form of expressing admiration for a person by praising the mother who raised him. The language is earthy and physical: koilia ('womb, belly') and mastoi ('breasts'). Jesus will redirect this biological blessing to a spiritual one.
28. The particle menoun ('indeed, rather, on the contrary') does not necessarily negate the woman's blessing but redirects and surpasses it. The true blessing is not biological connection to Jesus but hearing and obeying God's word. The participles akouontes ('hearing') and phyllassontes ('keeping, guarding, obeying') describe ongoing habitual action. This saying echoes Luke 8:21: 'My mother and brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it.'
29. The verb epathroisomenōn ('were gathering in addition, crowding together') indicates swelling numbers. Jesus addresses the sign-seekers from v. 16. The phrase genea ponēra ('evil generation') echoes Deuteronomy 1:35 and frames the present generation as comparable to the rebellious wilderness generation. The 'sign of Jonah' is explained differently in Matthew (three days in the belly of the fish = three days in the tomb); Luke's explanation in v. 30 focuses on Jonah himself as the sign.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 1:35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. Luke's version does not specify how Jonah was a sign — whether through his preaching of judgment, his survival from the fish, or his person itself. The parallel simply states that as Jonah functioned as a sign to Ninevites, so Jesus functions as a sign to this generation. The Ninevites responded to Jonah with repentance (Jonah 3:5-10); the implication is that this generation is failing to respond to one far greater.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jonah 3:5-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The 'queen of the South' is the Queen of Sheba (1 Kings 10:1-13), who traveled from southern Arabia to hear Solomon. The neuter pleion ('something greater'), not the masculine pleiōn ('someone greater'), is significant — Jesus may be referring to the kingdom of God rather than merely claiming personal superiority to Solomon. A pagan queen's pursuit of wisdom will stand as evidence against a generation that has God's wisdom in its midst and ignores it.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 10:1-13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

- 32.** Luke reverses Matthew's order, placing the Ninevites second for emphasis — they connect back to the sign of Jonah discussion. The verb *metanoēsān* ('repented, changed their minds') describes the complete turnaround of a pagan city. The repeated formula 'something greater than X is here' (pleion + genitive + *hōde*) establishes a pattern: if outsiders responded to lesser revelations, this generation has no excuse for rejecting the greater.
- 33.** This lamp saying reappears in a different context (cf. 8:16). Here, following the sign-seeking discussion, the point is that Jesus's message is not hidden or cryptic — it is publicly displayed like a lamp on a stand. The problem is not insufficient evidence but refusal to see. The word *kryptēn* ('hidden place, cellar') is unique to Luke's version.
- 34.** The adjective *haplous* ('single, healthy, generous') is contrasted with *ponēros* ('bad, evil, sick'). In the ancient world, the eye was understood as the organ that admits light into the body (like a window, not a camera). A 'single' or 'good' eye admits light; an 'evil' or 'diseased' eye blocks it. The metaphor also carries moral overtones — a 'good eye' in Jewish idiom meant generosity, while an 'evil eye' meant stinginess or envy.
- 35.** The warning is paradoxical: what you think is light may actually be darkness. The verb *skopei* ('watch carefully, take heed') implies active vigilance. The danger is not simply lacking light but having a distorted perception that mistakes darkness for light — a more insidious condition because the person is unaware of their blindness.
- 36.** The verse describes total illumination — no dark corners, no hidden areas. The comparison to a lamp's *astrapē* ('flash, radiance, lightning') suggests intense, penetrating brightness. The point is holistic spiritual perception: when the inner eye is healthy, the entire person is illuminated and can perceive God's truth clearly.
- 37.** The verb *aristēsē* refers to the morning or midday meal, not dinner. Jesus accepts invitations from Pharisees on multiple occasions in Luke (7:36, 14:1), demonstrating willingness to engage with his critics. The verb *anepesen* ('reclined') describes the typical posture at a formal meal — reclining on one's left side on a couch.
- 38.** The verb *ebaptisthē* (literally 'was baptized, was immersed') refers to the ritual hand-washing practiced by Pharisees before meals. This was not a matter of hygiene but of ritual purity — removing ceremonial contamination acquired through contact with common people or objects. The practice was a Pharisaic tradition, not a Torah commandment, which is precisely Jesus's point in what follows.
- 39.** The cup and dish metaphor is brilliantly chosen at a dinner table. The word *harpagēs* ('greed, robbery, plunder') suggests that the contents of the Pharisees' clean cups were obtained through exploitation. The contrast between *exōthen* ('outside') and *esōthen* ('inside') establishes the external-versus-internal theme that drives all six woes.
- 40.** The address *aphrones* ('fools, senseless ones') is sharp and direct. The theological argument is that God who created the exterior also created the interior — therefore both require purification. To clean only the outside is to ignore the Creator's concern with the whole person. The question expects the answer 'yes' — of course God made both.
- 41.** This enigmatic verse has been interpreted variously. The phrase *ta enonta* ('the things within, the contents') likely refers to the contents of their cups and dishes — give away what you have as alms rather than hoarding it. When the inside (the heart's disposition toward generosity) is cleansed through charitable giving, the external purity rituals become genuinely meaningful rather than empty performance.
- 42.** The first woe targets misplaced priorities. Tithing garden herbs (*hēdyosmon*, 'mint'; *pēganon*, 'rue') was an extreme extension of the tithing law — the Torah required tithes of grain, wine, and oil (Deuteronomy 14:22-23), but the Pharisees extended it to small garden herbs. Jesus does not condemn tithing itself (*tauta edei poiēsai*, 'these you should have done') but the neglect of weightier matters: justice (*krisin*) and the love of God (*tēn agapēn tou theou*). Luke's version uniquely includes 'the love of God' where Matthew has 'mercy and faithfulness.'
- 42.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 14:22-23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 43.** The second woe targets the desire for public honor. The *prōtokathedrian* ('chief seat, front seat') in the synagogue was the bench facing the congregation, reserved for the most distinguished. The *aspasous* ('greetings') in the marketplace were elaborate public acknowledgments of status — being hailed with titles and deference. The verb *agapate* ('you love') ironically uses the same love-word that the previous verse said they neglect toward God.
- 44.** The third woe compares the Pharisees to *adēla mnēmeia* ('unmarked, invisible graves'). Contact with a grave rendered a person ritually unclean for seven days (Numbers 19:16). The irony is devastating: the Pharisees who are obsessed with purity are themselves hidden sources of contamination. People who interact with them become spiritually defiled without knowing it. Matthew 23:27 uses the opposite image — whitewashed tombs that are visible but beautiful outside. Luke's version is sharper: these graves are invisible.
- 44.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 19:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 45.** The *nomikos* ('legal expert') is distinct from the Pharisees — these were professional scholars of Torah law, whereas the Pharisees were a broader religious movement. The legal expert's complaint (*hybrizeis*, 'you insult, you treat shamefully') inadvertently invites Jesus to extend his critique to a second group, which he does in the next three woes.
- 46.** The fourth woe (first against the lawyers) targets the imposition of religious obligations that the teachers themselves evade. The word *phortia* ('burdens, loads') refers to the accumulated legal rulings and interpretations that multiplied the Torah's requirements. The adjective *dysbastakta* ('hard to bear, oppressive') conveys crushing weight. The image of not touching with 'one finger' (*heni tōn daktylōn*) suggests they will not offer even minimal assistance in carrying the burdens they impose.

47. The fifth woe exposes an ironic complicity: building elaborate tombs for the prophets appears to honor them, but it actually serves as a monument to the violence of previous generations. The implied argument continues in the next verse — by building the tombs, they demonstrate solidarity with the killers, completing the cycle: the fathers killed, the sons build memorials, and both participate in the rejection of God's messengers.
48. The verb *syneudokeite* ('approve, consent to, share in the approval of') makes the charge explicit: tomb-building constitutes endorsement. The logic is sharp: the act of memorializing dead prophets while continuing to reject living ones reveals that the honor is for dead voices only. A dead prophet cannot challenge you; a living one can.
49. The phrase 'the wisdom of God said' (*hē sophia tou theou eipen*) is unique to Luke and its source is debated — it may be quoting a lost wisdom writing, or Jesus may be speaking as the Wisdom of God personified (cf. Proverbs 8), or Luke may be paraphrasing a saying that in Matthew 23:34 is spoken by Jesus directly ('I send you prophets'). The addition of 'apostles' (*apostolous*) alongside 'prophets' anticipates the early church's experience of persecution as described in Acts.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Proverbs 8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. The passive *ekzētēthē* ('may be required, may be sought out, may be charged') uses judicial language — God will hold this generation accountable for the accumulated guilt of prophet-killing throughout history. The phrase *apo katabolēs kosmou* ('from the foundation of the world') extends the scope to all of human history. The logic is that this generation, by rejecting the final prophet and his messengers, brings the full weight of all previous rejections to a climax.
51. Abel's murder (Genesis 4) is the first murder in Scripture; Zechariah's (2 Chronicles 24:20-21) is the last in the Hebrew canon, which ends with Chronicles. Thus 'from Abel to Zechariah' spans the entire Old Testament from first book to last. Zechariah was killed 'between the altar and the sanctuary' (*metaxy tou thysiastēriou kai tou oikou*) — murdered in the temple precinct itself, the ultimate desecration. The identification is with Zechariah son of Jehoiada the priest.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Chronicles 24:20-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. The sixth and final woe is perhaps the most devastating. The 'key of knowledge' (*tēn kleida tēs gnōseōs*) refers to the proper understanding of Scripture that the legal experts were supposed to teach. Instead of unlocking the Scriptures for people, they have removed the key — their interpretations block rather than facilitate understanding. Matthew 23:13 has 'you shut the kingdom of heaven' — Luke's version focuses on knowledge as the gateway. The double failure (they neither enter nor allow others to enter) makes them obstacles to the very truth they claim to teach.
53. The verb *deinōs enechēin* ('to press hard, to be bitterly hostile') describes intense antagonism. The word *apostomatizein* ('to provoke to speak, to cross-examine, to draw out statements') is rare and means to force someone to speak on specific topics — essentially trying to catch Jesus making incriminating statements. The shift from dinner conversation to hostile interrogation is abrupt and threatening.
54. The verb *enedrevontes* ('lying in ambush, setting a trap') is a hunting term — they are stalking Jesus like prey. The goal *thēreusai* ('to catch, to trap, to hunt') continues the predatory imagery. The phrase *ek tou stomatos autou* ('from his mouth') specifies that they want words they can use against him. This verse sets the stage for the escalating conflict that will dominate the rest of Luke's narrative.

12

Summary: *Luke 12 is a sweeping discourse on anxiety, possessions, and readiness for judgment. Jesus warns against the leaven of the Pharisees (hypocrisy), assures the disciples that God values them more than sparrows, tells the parable of the rich fool who stores up wealth only to die that night, teaches about freedom from anxiety by pointing to ravens and lilies, urges readiness for the master's return through parables of watchful servants and a faithful steward, and warns that his coming brings not peace but division. The chapter closes with Jesus's frustration that the crowds can read weather signs but not the signs of the present time.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parable of the rich fool (vv. 13-21) is unique to Luke and encapsulates his distinctive concern about wealth — the man's soliloquy with his own soul is one of the most psychologically revealing passages in the Gospels. The anxiety discourse (vv. 22-34) parallels Matthew's Sermon on the Mount material but is placed in a different context, following the rich fool parable, which gives the teaching a sharper economic edge. Luke alone includes the promise 'Do not be afraid, little flock, for your Father has been pleased to give you the kingdom' (v. 32) — one of the most tender sayings attributed to Jesus. The fire/baptism/division sayings (vv. 49-53) present a startlingly combative Jesus who expects his mission to fracture families.*

Translation Friction: The transition between the rich fool parable and the anxiety discourse creates tension: is material security wrong, or only anxiety about it? Jesus appears to condemn both storing up wealth (v. 21) and worrying about basic needs (vv. 22-31), which raises questions about the practical ethic being proposed. The 'fire on earth' and 'baptism' sayings (vv. 49-50) are cryptic and have been interpreted variously. The family division passage (vv. 51-53) draws on Micah 7:6 and challenges the common assumption that Jesus's message is primarily about peace and harmony.

Connections: The rich fool parable connects to the broader Lukan theme of wealth reversal (1:53, 6:20-26, 16:19-31, 18:18-30). The anxiety discourse parallels Matthew 6:25-34 but with distinctive Lukan additions. The faithful steward parable anticipates the parables of chapter 16. The fire and division sayings connect to John the Baptist's prophecy of fire-baptism (3:16). The weather signs passage echoes the prophetic tradition of discerning God's activity in current events.

¹Meanwhile, when a crowd of many thousands had gathered, so that they were trampling on one another, he began to say to his disciples first, "Watch out for the leaven of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy. ²Nothing is concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be made known. ³Therefore whatever you have said in the dark will be heard in the light, and what you have whispered in inner rooms will be proclaimed from the housetops. ⁴I tell you, my friends, do not fear those who kill the body and after that can do nothing more. ⁵But I will show you whom to fear: fear the one who, after killing, has authority to cast into Gehenna. Yes, I tell you, fear him! ⁶Are not five sparrows sold for two assaria? Yet not one of them is forgotten before God. ⁷Indeed, even the hairs of your head are all counted. Do not be afraid — you are worth more than many sparrows. ⁸I tell you, everyone who acknowledges me before people, the Son of Man will also acknowledge before the angels of God. ⁹But the one who denies me before people will be denied before the angels of God. ¹⁰Everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man will be forgiven, but the one who blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will not be forgiven. ¹¹When they bring you before the synagogues and the rulers and the authorities, do not worry about how or what you should say in your defense, or what you should speak. ¹²For the Holy Spirit will teach you in that very hour what you must say." ¹³Someone in the crowd said to him, "Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me." ¹⁴But he said to him, "Friend, who appointed me as a judge or arbitrator over you?" ¹⁵Then he said to them, "Watch out! Guard yourselves against every kind of greed, because a person's life does not consist in the abundance of his possessions." ¹⁶He told them a parable, saying, "The land of a certain rich man produced abundantly. ¹⁷He reasoned to himself, 'What should I do, since I have no place to store my crops?' ¹⁸Then he said, 'This is what I will do: I will tear down my barns and build larger ones, and there I will store all my grain and my goods. ¹⁹And I will say to my soul, 'Soul, you have many good things stored up for many years. Relax, eat, drink, and celebrate.'" ²⁰But God said to him, 'Fool! This very night your soul is demanded of you. And the things you have prepared — whose will they be?' ²¹So it is with the one who stores up treasure for himself and is not rich toward God." ²²He said to his disciples, "Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat, or about your body, what you will wear. ²³For life is more than food, and the body more than clothing. ²⁴Consider the ravens: they neither sow nor reap, they have no storeroom or barn, yet God feeds them. How much more valuable are you than birds! ²⁵And which of you by worrying can add a single hour to your life span? ²⁶If then you cannot do even this small thing, why do you worry about the rest? ²⁷Consider the lilies, how they grow: they neither toil nor spin. Yet I tell you, not even Solomon in all his glory was clothed like one of these. ²⁸If God so clothes the grass that is in the field today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, you of little faith! ²⁹So do not keep striving for what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not be anxious. ³⁰For all the nations of the world pursue these things, and your Father knows that you need them. ³¹Instead, seek his kingdom, and these things will be added to you. ³²Do not be afraid, little flock, for your Father has been pleased to give you the kingdom. ³³Sell your possessions and give to the needy. Make for yourselves purses that do not wear out — an inexhaustible treasure in heaven, where no thief comes near and no moth destroys. ³⁴For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also. ³⁵"Stay dressed for action and keep your lamps burning, ³⁶Be like servants waiting for their master to return from a wedding banquet, ready to open the door for him the moment he arrives and knocks. ³⁷Blessed are those servants whom the master finds awake when he comes. Truly I tell you, he will dress himself for service, have them recline at the table, and come and serve them. ³⁸If he comes in the second watch, or even in the third, and finds them ready — blessed

are those servants! ³⁹But know this: if the homeowner had known at what hour the thief was coming, he would not have let his house be broken into. ⁴⁰You also must be ready, because the Son of Man is coming at an hour you do not expect." ⁴¹Peter said, "Lord, are you telling this parable for us or for everyone?" ⁴²The Lord said, "Who then is the faithful and wise steward whom the master will put in charge of his household servants, to give them their food allowance at the proper time? ⁴³Blessed is that servant whom his master finds doing so when he comes. ⁴⁴Truly I tell you, he will put him in charge of all his possessions. ⁴⁵But if that servant says in his heart, 'My master is taking a long time in coming,' and begins to beat the male and female servants, and to eat and drink and get drunk, ⁴⁶That servant's master will come on a day he does not expect, at a time he does not know. The master will cut him off and assign him a place with the unfaithful. ⁴⁷That servant who knew his master's will but did not prepare or act according to his will shall receive a severe beating. ⁴⁸But the one who did not know, yet did things deserving punishment, will receive a light beating. From everyone who has been given much, much will be required; and from the one who has been entrusted with much, even more will be demanded. ⁴⁹"I came to cast fire on the earth, and how I wish it were already kindled! ⁵⁰I have a baptism to undergo, and how distressed I am until it is completed! ⁵¹Do you think I came to bring peace on earth? No, I tell you, but rather division! ⁵²For from now on, five in one household will be divided, three against two and two against three. ⁵³Father will be divided against son and son against father, mother against daughter and daughter against mother, mother-in-law against her daughter-in-law and daughter-in-law against mother-in-law." ⁵⁴He also said to the crowds, "When you see a cloud rising in the west, you immediately say, 'A rainstorm is coming,' and so it happens. ⁵⁵And when the south wind blows, you say, 'It will be scorching hot,' and it happens. ⁵⁶Hypocrites! You know how to interpret the appearance of the earth and sky, but why do you not know how to interpret the present time? ⁵⁷"And why do you not judge for yourselves what is right? ⁵⁸For as you are going with your adversary to the magistrate, make an effort to settle with him on the way, or he may drag you before the judge, and the judge hand you over to the officer, and the officer throw you into prison. ⁵⁹I tell you, you will never get out until you have paid the very last penny."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *myriadōn* ('myriads, tens of thousands') indicates an enormous crowd — Luke hyperbolically suggests tens of thousands. The crushing press (*katapatein allēlous*, 'trampling one another') creates a vivid physical scene. Despite the public setting, Jesus addresses the disciples 'first' (*prōton*), indicating priority of instruction. He defines the Pharisees' leaven specifically as hypocrisy (*hypokrisis*) — the disconnect between external appearance and internal reality, the theme of chapter 11's woes.
2. The perfect participle *synkekalymmenon* ('covered up, concealed') paired with the future passive *apokalyphthēsetai* ('will be uncovered, revealed') establishes an eschatological certainty: what hypocrisy hides, God's judgment will expose. The passive voice implies God as the agent of revelation.
3. The contrast between private speech (in darkness, whispered in inner rooms) and public exposure (in the light, proclaimed from rooftops) warns that hidden conversations will become public knowledge. The *tameiois* ('inner rooms, storerooms') were the most private spaces in a house. Housetops (*dōmatōn*) were flat roofs used as public gathering and proclamation spaces in the ancient Near East.
4. The address 'my friends' (*tois philois mou*) is uniquely Lukan and remarkably intimate — Jesus identifies the disciples as friends, not merely followers or students. The prohibition against fear of those who can only kill the body relativizes even death: physical destruction is the absolute limit of human power, and 'after that' (*meta tauta*) they are impotent.
5. The word *geennan* ('Gehenna') refers to the Valley of Hinnom (Hebrew *ge-hinnom*) south of Jerusalem, associated with child sacrifice to Molech (2 Kings 23:10) and later used as the city's burning garbage dump. It became a metaphor for divine judgment and destruction. The identity of 'the one' to fear is debated: most interpreters understand it as God, who alone has authority (*exousian*) beyond death. The emphatic repetition 'yes, I tell you, fear him' (*nai legō hymin, touton phobēthēte*) underscores the seriousness.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 23:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Luke has five sparrows for two assaria where Matthew (10:29) has two for one assarion — Luke's version implies a bulk discount (buy four, get one free), emphasizing even greater cheapness. An assarion was worth roughly one-sixteenth of a denarius, about ten minutes of a laborer's wage. The point is not that sparrows are valuable but that even the most commercially worthless creatures are individually known to God.
7. The perfect passive *ērithmēntai* ('have been counted and remain counted') indicates God's thorough, ongoing knowledge. The average human head has about 100,000 hairs — God's attention to detail is incomprehensibly minute. The argument moves from lesser to greater: if God does not forget sparrows, and if God counts your hairs, then your life is absolutely secure in his attention.
8. The verb *homologēsē* ('confess, acknowledge, declare openly') means to make a public declaration of allegiance. The phrase 'before the angels of God' (*emprosthen tōn angelōn tou theou*) envisions a heavenly courtroom scene where Jesus serves as advocate. The reciprocity is exact: public confession leads to heavenly acknowledgment.

9. The passive *aparnēthēsetai* ('will be denied') implies that God or the Son of Man is the agent of denial. The shift from active (the human denies) to passive (the person is denied) creates distance — the judgment is not vindictive but a natural consequence of the choice. Peter's threefold denial (Luke 22:54-62) will test this saying dramatically.
10. This is Luke's version of the 'unforgivable sin' saying. The distinction between speaking against the Son of Man (forgivable) and blaspheming the Holy Spirit (unforgivable) is difficult. One interpretation: rejecting the earthly Jesus out of ignorance or confusion is forgivable (as with Paul, who persecuted the church before his conversion), but willfully attributing the Holy Spirit's work to evil (the Beelzebul charge of 11:15) represents a hardened condition that places oneself beyond the reach of repentance.
11. Three venues of persecution are named: synagogues (Jewish religious courts), rulers (archas, civil authorities), and authorities (exousias, governing powers). The verb *merimnēsēte* ('do not worry, do not be anxious') is the same word Jesus will use in the anxiety discourse later in this chapter (v. 22). The threefold 'how or what... or what' (*pōs ē ti apologēsēsthe ē ti eipēte*) covers both strategy and content of their defense.
12. The promise that the Holy Spirit will provide words *en autē tē hōra* ('in that very hour') excludes advance preparation in favor of in-the-moment divine guidance. The verb *didaxei* ('will teach') makes the Spirit the true instructor. This promise is fulfilled repeatedly in Acts (4:8, 6:10, 7:55). The word *dei* ('must, it is necessary') implies divinely scripted testimony.
13. This interruption from the crowd shifts the discourse from persecution to possessions. Rabbis were commonly asked to mediate disputes, including inheritance matters. Under Jewish law, the eldest son received a double portion (Deuteronomy 21:17), and disputes over the remainder were common. The man wants Jesus to serve as an authoritative arbitrator.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 21:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The address *anthrōpe* ('man, sir, friend') is blunt but not hostile. Jesus's refusal to arbitrate echoes Moses' questioner in Exodus 2:14: 'Who made you a ruler and judge over us?' Jesus declines the role of legal mediator, not because the question is unimportant, but because it addresses the symptom (unfair division) rather than the disease (greed), which he will address in the next verse.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 2:14: See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The double imperative *horate kai phylassesthe* ('watch out and guard yourselves') conveys urgency. The word *pleonexias* ('greed, covetousness, desire for more') literally means 'the desire to have more.' The qualifier *pasēs* ('every kind of') broadens the warning beyond obvious avarice to include all forms of acquisitiveness. The principle that follows — life is not defined by possessions — directly contradicts the prevailing cultural assumption that wealth equals life, security, and value.
16. The parable is unique to Luke. The man is already rich (*plousiou*) before the bumper crop — the harvest creates surplus, not need. The verb *euphorēsen* ('produced well, bore good fruit') applies to the land, not the farmer: the productivity is a gift from the soil, not the man's achievement. This detail subtly undermines the man's later claim of ownership over what the land produced.
17. The internal monologue (*diologizeto en heautō*, 'reasoned within himself') reveals a man with no community — he consults no one, considers no one's needs, speaks only to himself. The possessive 'my crops' (*tous karpous mou*) begins a pattern of self-referential language that intensifies through the parable. His problem — too much abundance — is ironically a 'good' problem that reveals the poverty of his imagination.
18. The decisive 'this is what I will do' (*touto poiēsō*) shows a man who has resolved his dilemma entirely by himself. The solution — bigger barns — addresses only the storage problem. No thought is given to distribution, charity, or the community. The repeated possessives (*mou*, 'my') continue: my barns, my grain, my goods. The verb *kathelō* ('tear down, demolish') implies destruction of what was adequate in order to build something excessive.
19. The self-address to his own soul (*tē psychē mou*) is the climax of his isolation — his only conversation partner is himself. The four imperatives (*anapauou, phage, pie, euphraiou*: 'relax, eat, drink, celebrate') echo the philosophy of Ecclesiastes 8:15 and anticipate Paul's quotation of the Epicurean maxim in 1 Corinthians 15:32. The man assumes his future is secured by accumulated goods. The phrase 'many years' (*etē polla*) is about to be dramatically shortened.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ecclesiastes 8:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. God's direct speech is rare in Jesus's parables, making this intervention especially dramatic. The address *aphrōn* ('fool, senseless one') echoes Psalm 14:1: 'The fool says in his heart, there is no God.' The verb *apaitousin* ('they demand, they require back') uses the third person plural impersonally — 'they' may refer to angels of death or simply be a way of saying 'your life is being demanded.' The devastating question 'whose will they be?' (*tini estai*) exposes the futility of accumulation without God.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 14:1: — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The application distinguishes between storing up for oneself (*thēsaurizōn heautō*) and being 'rich toward God' (*eis theon ploutōn*). The phrase 'rich toward God' is unique and provocative — it suggests that true wealth is measured by one's relationship with God and generosity, not by accumulated possessions. The contrast implies that the two orientations are mutually exclusive: self-directed hoarding prevents God-directed richness.
22. The connecting phrase *dia touto* ('therefore, for this reason') links the anxiety teaching directly to the rich fool parable — because hoarding for oneself is foolish, worrying about material needs is equally misguided but from the opposite direction. The verb *merimnate* ('do not worry, do not be anxious') prohibits the kind of fretting that dominates one's thinking, not responsible planning. The two concerns (food for life, clothing for body)

cover the basic necessities.

23. The argument is from greater to lesser: if God gave you the greater gift (life, a body), he will surely provide the lesser gift (food, clothing) that sustains it. The word *psychē* here means 'life' in the biological sense, not 'soul' in the metaphysical sense.
24. Luke specifies ravens (*korakas*) where Matthew has 'birds of the air.' Ravens were unclean animals under Jewish law (Leviticus 11:15), making the choice pointed: God provides even for unclean scavengers. The mention of 'storeroom or barn' (*tameion oude apothēkē*) directly echoes the rich fool's barns — the ravens have none and yet are fed. The argument from lesser to greater (if God feeds ravens, how much more you) invites trust.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 11:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The word *hēlikian* can mean either 'stature' (height) or 'lifespan' (age). A cubit (*pēchyn*, roughly 18 inches) is absurd as an addition to height but makes more sense as a metaphor for a small unit of time added to one's life. Most modern interpreters prefer 'lifespan' — worrying cannot extend your life even slightly. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no one.'
26. The word *elachiston* ('smallest, least, most trivial') frames extending one's life even slightly as the smallest imaginable accomplishment — and even that is beyond human power. The logical conclusion: if you cannot control the smallest thing, anxiety about larger matters is futile. This verse is unique to Luke.
27. The verb *katanoēsate* ('consider carefully, look closely at') invites sustained observation, not a glance. The lilies (*krina*) are likely wildflowers rather than cultivated lilies — common field flowers that require no human effort. The comparison with Solomon at the height of his royal splendor is hyperbolic and memorable: the most lavishly dressed king in Israel's history cannot match what grows wild in a field.
28. The dried grass and wildflowers were commonly used as fuel for bread ovens (*klibanon*) in Palestine. The contrast between their ephemeral existence (today alive, tomorrow fuel) and God's care for them makes the argument from lesser to greater even more powerful. The gentle rebuke *oligopistoi* ('you of little faith, you with small trust') appears four times in Matthew but only here in Luke. It implies that anxiety is a faith problem, not a planning problem.
29. The rare verb *meteōrizethe* ('do not be anxious, do not be in suspense, do not be tossed about') literally means 'to be raised up in the air' or 'to be suspended' — like a ship tossed on waves or a mind that cannot find solid ground. The image is of a person whose mind is constantly agitated, lifted and dropped by worry. This verb appears only here in the New Testament.
30. The phrase *ta ethnē tou kosmou* ('the nations of the world') refers to those who do not know God — their relentless pursuit of material security is understandable because they have no Father who provides. The disciples' situation is different: 'your Father knows' (*hymōn ho patēr oiden*) eliminates the need for anxious pursuit. Knowledge precedes provision — God knows before you ask.
31. Luke's shorter form — 'his kingdom' (*tēn basileian autou*) rather than Matthew's 'the kingdom of God and his righteousness' — focuses the command with singular clarity. The verb *prostethēsetai* ('will be added') implies that material provision comes as a byproduct of kingdom-seeking, not as a separate pursuit. The passive voice indicates God as the provider.
32. This verse, unique to Luke, is one of the most tender and reassuring sayings of Jesus. The diminutive 'little flock' (*to mikron poimnion*) acknowledges the disciples' smallness and vulnerability while the shepherd imagery implies Jesus's protective care. The verb *eudokēsen* ('has been pleased, has graciously decided') indicates that the kingdom is not earned by the flock's efforts but freely given by the Father's delight. The aorist tense suggests this decision has already been made.
33. The command to sell possessions (*pōlēstate ta hyparchonta hymōn*) is radical and specific to Luke's version. The metaphor shifts from earthly to heavenly economics: earthly purses (*ballantia*) wear out, but heavenly ones (*mē palaïoumena*, 'not growing old') endure. The word *anekleipton* ('unfailing, inexhaustible') describes a treasure that cannot be depleted. The threats of thief and moth represent loss through theft and slow decay — neither can touch heavenly investment.
34. This principle works in both directions: the heart follows the treasure, and where you invest reveals where your heart already is. The future tense *estai* ('will be') suggests that current investment decisions determine future heart orientation. This applies the rich fool's lesson positively: rather than storing up for yourself, invest in heaven and your heart will follow.
35. The image of girded loins (*hai osphyes periezōsmenai*) refers to tucking long robes into a belt for physical activity — the posture of a servant ready to work (cf. Exodus 12:11, Israel's posture at the first Passover). Combined with burning lamps, the image is of a household on alert, expecting the master's return at any moment.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 12:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The wedding feast (*gamōn*) could last days, making the master's return time genuinely uncertain. The verb *analsē* ('return, depart from') literally means 'to loose' or 'to break up' — to leave the feast. The emphasis on 'at once' (*eutheōs*) stresses instant readiness: no delay between knock and response. The parable envisions servants whose sole purpose is attentive waiting.
37. This verse contains one of the most astonishing reversals in Jesus's teaching. The master who returns does not sit down and demand service — he girds himself (*perizōsetai*, the servant's posture from v. 35) and serves his servants. This is a radical inversion of the master-servant relationship. The image anticipates Jesus washing the disciples' feet (John 13) and his self-description as 'one who serves' (Luke 22:27). The verb *diakonēsei* ('will serve, will minister') is the root of 'deacon.'

38. Luke uses the Jewish two-watch night system (second watch = roughly 10 PM to 2 AM; third watch = 2 AM to 6 AM) rather than the Roman four-watch system. The later the hour, the harder it is to stay awake, which increases the merit of readiness. The repeated 'blessed' (makarioi) reinforces that watchfulness itself is rewarded.
39. The metaphor shifts from master/servant to homeowner/thief. The word diorychthenai ('to be dug through') reflects first-century construction — mud-brick walls could be literally dug through by a burglar. The thief image for the Lord's return is deliberately jarring: Jesus comes like a thief only in the sense of unexpected timing, not in intent. The point is that unpredictability demands constant readiness.
40. The application identifies 'the master' and 'the thief' with the Son of Man — Jesus's preferred self-designation. The phrase hē hōra ou dokeite ('the hour you do not expect') makes the timing inherently unpredictable. Any attempt to calculate the moment is already a misunderstanding of the teaching: the point is perpetual readiness, not chronological calculation.
41. Peter's question is pragmatic: does this teaching about watchfulness apply only to the disciples (leaders) or to all followers? Jesus's answer (vv. 42-48) addresses both: it begins with the faithful steward (leadership responsibility) and ends with graduated accountability for all. Notably, Jesus never directly answers Peter's question — he tells another parable instead.
42. The word oikonomos ('steward, household manager') is the source of 'economy' — a steward managed the master's entire household. The sitometrion ('food ration, grain allowance') was the measured portion given to household servants at regular intervals. The steward's job is not to consume the master's resources but to distribute them faithfully. This parable addresses Peter's question by focusing on leadership responsibility.
43. The beatitude (makarios) rewards faithful action, not mere waiting. The participle poiounta ('doing') emphasizes ongoing activity — the blessed servant is found in the act of faithful service, not merely expecting the master's return.
44. The reward for faithful management of part is management of the whole. The promotion from household steward to manager of 'all possessions' (pasin tois hyparchousin autou) represents total trust. This principle of graduated authority — faithful in small things leads to responsibility for great things — runs throughout Jesus's parables (cf. 16:10, 19:17).
45. The internal reasoning ('says in his heart') mirrors the rich fool's self-dialogue. The servant's abuse of power takes two forms: violence against those under him (beating servants) and self-indulgence (eating, drinking, getting drunk). The perceived delay (chronizei, 'is taking a long time') becomes the excuse for both cruelty and excess. This is a warning to church leaders who exploit their position when accountability seems distant.
46. The verb dichotomēsei ('will cut in two, will cut to pieces') is shockingly violent — it may be literal (execution by bisection was practiced in the ancient world) or metaphorical for severe punishment. The phrase 'with the unfaithful' (meta tōn apistōn) — Luke's reading versus Matthew's 'hypocrites' — places the abusive steward among those who have no faith at all, the ultimate demotion from trusted insider to rejected outsider.
47. This verse begins a section unique to Luke that establishes the principle of graduated accountability. Knowledge increases responsibility: the servant who knew (gnous) the master's will and still disobeyed receives 'many blows' (darēsetai pollas, with plēgas implied). The double failure — neither preparing (hetoimasas) nor doing (poiasas) — covers both intention and action.
48. The principle of graduated accountability is stated twice: first negatively (more knowledge = more punishment for failure) and then positively in the famous maxim 'from everyone who has been given much, much will be required' (panti hō edothē poly, poly zētēthēsetai). The passive voices ('has been given,' 'has been entrusted') point to God as the giver. The progression from 'required' (zētēthēsetai) to 'demanded' (aitēsousin) intensifies the expectation.
49. This enigmatic saying is unique to Luke. The 'fire' (pyr) likely represents judgment, purification, or the crisis that Jesus's mission brings (cf. John the Baptist's prediction of fire-baptism, Luke 3:16). The phrase ti thelō ei ēdē anēphthē is debated — it could mean 'how I wish it were already burning!' (expressing eager anticipation) or 'what do I want, since it has already been kindled?' (acknowledging the process has begun). The former reading fits better with v. 50's longing.
50. The 'baptism' (baptisma) is a metaphor for his coming suffering and death — immersion in affliction (cf. Mark 10:38). The verb synechomai ('I am constrained, pressed, distressed') conveys intense inner pressure. The word telesthē ('be completed, be accomplished') echoes the cry from the cross: tetelestai ('it is finished,' John 19:30). Jesus experiences his approaching death not with resignation but with urgent tension — a desire for the crisis to come and be resolved.
51. Luke has 'division' (diameterismon) where Matthew 10:34 has 'a sword.' The word diameterismon ('division, separation, dissension') is more precise — the result of Jesus's coming is the splitting of communities and families along the fault line of faith. This saying appears to contradict the angels' announcement of 'peace on earth' (2:14), but the point is that the peace Jesus ultimately brings first creates a crisis of decision that divides.
52. The specific number five — an oddly precise detail — represents a typical household (parents, adult children, perhaps a grandparent or in-law). The uneven split (three versus two) means no neat halving — the division cuts irregularly through families, creating minority and majority factions within the same home.
53. The family relationships listed echo Micah 7:6, a prophetic text describing the breakdown of social order in the last days. Jesus applies this eschatological language to the present: the kingdom's arrival through his ministry is already creating the divisions that the prophets associated with the end times. The threefold pattern (father/son, mother/daughter, mother-in-law/daughter-in-law) covers three generations and both genders.
53. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 7:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

54. The weather signs are geographically specific to Palestine: clouds from the west (from the Mediterranean Sea) bring rain. Jesus uses familiar meteorological knowledge to expose a deeper failure of perception. The adverb *eutheōs* ('immediately') emphasizes how quickly people can read weather signs — the contrast with their inability to read 'the present time' (v. 56) is the point.
55. The south wind (*noton*) blew from the Negev desert and brought extreme heat (*kausōn*, 'burning heat, scorching wind'). These two weather patterns (western cloud = rain, southern wind = heat) were universally known in Palestine. The repeated *kai ginetai* ('and it happens') confirms their reliability as signs.
56. The address 'hypocrites' (*hypokritai*) returns to the chapter's opening theme (v. 1). The word *kairon* ('time, opportune moment, season') is distinct from *chronos* (mere chronological time) — *kairos* refers to a decisive moment pregnant with significance. Jesus's ministry is the *kairos*: the kingdom is arriving, judgment is approaching, and the crowds are as oblivious as a farmer who cannot read clouds. The verb *dokimazein* ('to test, to interpret, to discern') means to evaluate evidence and draw conclusions.
57. The phrase *aph' heautōn* ('from yourselves, on your own') implies that moral discernment should not require external prophetic signs — they have the capacity to judge what is right (to *dikaion*) if they would use it. This is a call to moral common sense, not just theological insight.
58. The parable functions as both practical legal advice and eschatological warning. The *antidikos* ('adversary, opponent in a lawsuit') represents those with claims against you. The phrase *dos ergasian* ('make an effort, do your best') urges proactive reconciliation before the matter reaches court. On the theological level: settle accounts before the final judgment, while there is still time. The chain of consequences (adversary magistrate judge officer prison) shows escalating severity that could have been avoided by early action.
59. The *lepton* ('penny, mite') was the smallest coin in circulation — worth about one-128th of a denarius. The double negative *ou mē* ('absolutely not, never') makes the sentence emphatic: escape is impossible until every fraction of the debt is paid. The warning reinforces the urgency of v. 58: settle now, because the consequences of inaction are total and inescapable.

13

Summary: *Luke 13 opens with Jesus challenging the assumption that suffering indicates special sinfulness, using two contemporary tragedies — Pilate's massacre of Galilean worshipers and the collapse of the tower of Siloam — to call the entire nation to repentance. The parable of the barren fig tree extends the warning: Israel has been given one more season of grace. Jesus then heals a crippled woman on the Sabbath, provoking a confrontation with a synagogue ruler. The chapter continues with the parables of the mustard seed and leaven, followed by the sobering teaching about the narrow door. The chapter concludes with Jesus's defiance of Herod's threats and his lament over Jerusalem.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke 13 is uniquely Lukan in its opening section (vv. 1-9), which addresses theodicy — the question of why people suffer — with an answer that refuses the simplistic equation of suffering with personal sin. The healing of the bent-over woman (vv. 10-17) is unique to Luke and presents a woman who has been bound by Satan for eighteen years, framing illness as spiritual bondage and healing as liberation — a thoroughly Lukan emphasis. The lament over Jerusalem (vv. 34-35) is one of the most emotionally charged passages in the Gospels, revealing Jesus's grief over the city that kills its prophets.*

Translation Friction: *The historical incidents in vv. 1-5 (Pilate's massacre, the Siloam tower collapse) are not recorded outside Luke's Gospel but fit the known character of Pilate's brutal governance. The fig tree parable (vv. 6-9) raises questions about Israel's final chance — is the 'one more year' an offer of hope or a final warning? The narrow door saying (vv. 24-30) contains some of the most exclusive language in the Gospels, including 'I do not know where you come from' — a statement of relationship denial from the master, not merely ignorance.*

Connections: *The fig tree parable connects to Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard) and Micah 7:1. The Sabbath healing connects to Luke's pattern of Sabbath controversies (6:1-11, 14:1-6). The mustard seed and leaven parables parallel Matthew 13 and Mark 4. The narrow door teaching echoes Matthew 7:13-14 but with distinctive elements. The Jerusalem lament appears in Matthew 23:37-39 in a different narrative context. The Herod warning (vv. 31-33) is unique to Luke and continues the Herod thread from 9:7-9.*

¹At that very time some people came and reported to him about the Galileans whose blood Pilate had mixed with their sacrifices. ²He answered them, "Do you think these Galileans were worse sinners than all other Galileans because they suffered these things? ³No, I tell you! But unless you repent, you will all perish in the same way. ⁴Or those eighteen on whom

the tower in Siloam fell and killed them — do you think they were worse offenders than all the other people living in Jerusalem? ⁵No, I tell you! But unless you repent, you will all perish just as they did." ⁶Then he told this parable: "A man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard. He came looking for fruit on it and found none. ⁷He said to the gardener, 'Look, for three years now I have come looking for fruit on this fig tree and have found none. Cut it down! Why should it waste the soil?' ⁸But the gardener answered, 'Sir, leave it alone for one more year, until I dig around it and put on fertilizer. ⁹If it bears fruit next year, fine. But if not, you can cut it down.'" ¹⁰He was teaching in a synagogue on the Sabbath day. ¹¹A woman was there who had been disabled by a spirit for eighteen years. She was bent over and could not straighten up at all. ¹²When Jesus saw her, he called her over and said to her, "Woman, you are freed from your disability." ¹³Then he laid his hands on her, and immediately she straightened up and began glorifying God. ¹⁴But the synagogue ruler, indignant because Jesus had healed on the Sabbath, responded by saying to the crowd, "There are six days on which work should be done. Come on those days and be healed, and not on the Sabbath day." ¹⁵The Lord answered him, "Hypocrites! Does not each of you on the Sabbath untie his ox or donkey from the manger and lead it away to water it? ¹⁶Then should not this woman, a daughter of Abraham whom Satan has bound for eighteen long years, be released from this bondage on the Sabbath day?" ¹⁷When he said these things, all his opponents were put to shame, and the entire crowd rejoiced at all the glorious things being done by him. ¹⁸He said therefore, "What is the kingdom of God like, and what shall I compare it to? ¹⁹It is like a mustard seed that a man took and planted in his garden. It grew and became a tree, and the birds of the sky made nests in its branches." ²⁰Again he said, "What shall I compare the kingdom of God to? ²¹It is like leaven that a woman took and hid in three measures of flour until the whole batch was leavened." ²²He went through town after town and village after village, teaching as he made his way to Jerusalem. ²³Someone asked him, "Lord, are only a few being saved?" He said to them, ²⁴"Strive to enter through the narrow door, because many, I tell you, will try to enter and will not be able. ²⁵Once the master of the house gets up and shuts the door, you will stand outside knocking and saying, 'Lord, open to us!' But he will answer you, 'I do not know where you come from.' ²⁶Then you will begin to say, 'We ate and drank in your presence, and you taught in our streets.' ²⁷But he will say, 'I tell you, I do not know where you come from. Depart from me, all you workers of unrighteousness!' ²⁸There will be weeping and gnashing of teeth when you see Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and all the prophets in the kingdom of God, but you yourselves thrown out. ²⁹People will come from east and west, from north and south, and recline at the table in the kingdom of God. ³⁰And indeed, some who are last will be first, and some who are first will be last." ³¹At that same hour, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Get out and leave here, because Herod wants to kill you." ³²He said to them, "Go tell that fox, 'Look, I am casting out demons and performing healings today and tomorrow, and on the third day I will reach my goal.' ³³But I must keep going today, tomorrow, and the next day, because it is impossible for a prophet to perish outside Jerusalem. ³⁴"Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you — how often I have wanted to gather your children together, as a hen gathers her brood under her wings, but you were not willing! ³⁵Look, your house is abandoned. I tell you, you will not see me until the time comes when you say, 'Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This incident is unattested outside Luke but is consistent with Pilate's character as described by Josephus and Philo — he was notorious for violent suppression of perceived threats. The mixing of victims' blood 'with their sacrifices' (*meta tōn thysiōn autōn*) means Pilate's soldiers killed them in the act of offering temple sacrifices, a supreme desecration. The reporters likely expected Jesus to comment on the victims' sinfulness as an explanation for their fate.
2. Jesus directly challenges the assumption that suffering is proportional to sin (the retributive theology that Job's friends advocated). The comparative *hamartōloi para pantas* ('sinners beyond all') implies the question 'were they especially sinful?' Jesus's answer in the next verse is an emphatic no — but with a surprising turn.
3. Jesus refuses the theodicy question ('why did they suffer?') and redirects to repentance. The word *homoiōs* ('in the same way, likewise') is striking — it may mean 'similarly' (by violent, sudden death) rather than 'for the same reason.' Given that Jerusalem would be destroyed by Rome in AD 70, this warning may carry historical as well as spiritual weight. The verb *metanoëte* ('repent, change your mind and direction') is the fundamental demand of Jesus's ministry.
4. Jesus provides a second example, this time of accidental death rather than political violence, to make the same point from a different angle. The word *opheiletai* ('debtors, offenders, those who owe') frames sin as a debt — these eighteen did not owe God more than other Jerusalemites. The tower of

Siloam was likely part of the construction project associated with the Pool of Siloam in southeast Jerusalem.

5. The repetition of the repentance call with the variant *hōsautōs* ('just as, in the same way') instead of *homoiōs* (v. 3) reinforces the universal application. The double example (political violence, accidental disaster) covers every category of unexpected death and strips away any excuse for complacency.
6. The parable is unique to Luke and extends the repentance theme. A fig tree in a vineyard was common in Palestine — the tree would benefit from the vineyard's cultivated soil. The owner's expectation of fruit is entirely reasonable. The fig tree in Old Testament prophecy often symbolizes Israel (Jeremiah 8:13, Hosea 9:10, Micah 7:1), and the vineyard itself is Israel's classic symbol (Isaiah 5:1-7).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 8:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Hosea 9:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 7:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 5:1-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Three years represents a full probationary period — fig trees typically bear fruit within three years of planting. The verb *katargei* ('renders useless, wastes, makes unproductive') suggests the tree is not merely barren but actively depletes the soil of nutrients that could benefit other plants. The owner's frustration is justified: the tree is not just unproductive but counterproductive.
8. The gardener's intercession introduces a note of grace into a judgment parable. He does not argue the tree is healthy or that the owner is wrong — he asks for one more year (*kai touto to etos*, 'this year also') and promises intensive care: digging around the roots (*skapsō*, to aerate the soil) and adding *kopria* ('manure, fertilizer'). If the gardener represents Jesus or the prophetic mission, the plea is for one final period of intensive ministry before judgment falls.
9. The parable leaves the outcome open — the tree may yet bear fruit. The conditional structure (*ean men... ei de mē ge*) creates genuine suspense: the reprieve is real but not permanent. The verb *ekkopseis* ('you will cut it down') remains the default outcome if repentance (fruit) does not come. The parable thus offers both hope and warning: there is still time, but not unlimited time.
10. This is the last recorded instance of Jesus teaching in a synagogue in Luke's Gospel. The Sabbath setting establishes the context for the controversy that follows — healing on the Sabbath was a persistent flashpoint between Jesus and religious authorities (cf. 6:6-11, 14:1-6).
11. The phrase *pneuma echousa astheneias* ('having a spirit of weakness') attributes her condition to a spiritual cause, which Jesus later identifies as Satanic bondage (v. 16). The condition described — chronic severe kyphosis (forward curvature of the spine) — left her unable to look up. The eighteen years of suffering parallel the eighteen killed by the Siloam tower (v. 4), possibly an intentional literary connection.
12. Jesus initiates the encounter — the woman does not approach or ask for healing. The perfect passive *apolelytai* ('you have been freed, you are released') uses liberation language: the same verb is used for releasing prisoners. The tense indicates a completed action with continuing results — her freedom is already accomplished in Jesus's declaration, even before the physical touch in v. 13.
13. The laying on of hands (*epethēken tas cheiras*) is Jesus's characteristic healing gesture, conveying physical contact and personal compassion. The word *parachrēma* ('immediately, at once') is a favorite Lukan term for the instantaneous nature of Jesus's healings. The verb *anōrthōthē* ('was straightened, was restored to upright') is the physical reversal of her eighteen-year condition. Her response — glorifying God (*edoxazen ton theon*) — is the model response to divine healing in Luke's Gospel.
14. The synagogue ruler's anger (*aganaktōn*, 'being indignant, being outraged') is directed at the crowd rather than at Jesus directly — a passive-aggressive approach that avoids direct confrontation with a popular teacher. His reasoning is based on Exodus 20:9 (six days for work) and classifies healing as 'work' that violates Sabbath rest. The irony is devastating: he sees no urgency in liberating a woman who has been bound for eighteen years.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Jesus's argument is from lesser to greater (*qal wahomer*): if the Sabbath permits untying an animal from a manger for basic care, it certainly permits untying a human from eighteen years of bondage. The verb *lyei* ('untie, loose, release') deliberately echoes the liberation language of v. 12 (*apolelytai*) and v. 16 (*lythēnai*). The address 'hypocrites' (plural) indicts not just the synagogue ruler but all who share his reasoning.
16. The title 'daughter of Abraham' (*thygatera Abraam*) is remarkable — the parallel 'son of Abraham' is used for Zacchaeus (19:9), but this is the only place in the Gospels where a woman is called 'daughter of Abraham.' It affirms her full membership in the covenant community. The framing of her illness as Satanic bondage (*edēsen ho satanas*, 'Satan bound') connects healing to spiritual liberation — the Sabbath, a day of rest and freedom, is the perfect day to break Satan's chains. The word *desmou* ('bond, chain, imprisonment') makes the metaphor explicit.
17. The contrast between the opponents' shame (*katēschynonto*, 'were put to shame, were humiliated') and the crowd's joy (*echairen*) creates a split response. The adjective *endoxois* ('glorious, splendid, honorable') is applied to all of Jesus's works — not just this healing but the full pattern of his ministry. Luke presents Jesus's ministry as a source of public delight that his opponents cannot suppress.

18. The double question (*tini homoia... tini homoiōsō*) is a standard rabbinic formula for introducing a parable: 'to what shall I liken X?' The word *oun* ('therefore') connects these parables to the preceding healing — the kingdom of God is at work in the liberation of the bent-over woman, and these parables describe its nature.
19. The mustard seed (*kokkō sinapeōs*) was proverbially the smallest seed known to Palestinian agriculture. Luke says it was planted in a garden (*kēpon*) rather than a field (Mark's version), reflecting a Gentile horticultural context. The tree image with birds nesting in its branches alludes to Daniel 4:12 and Ezekiel 17:23, where a great tree sheltering birds represents a kingdom that provides refuge for many nations. The point is disproportionate growth: the kingdom begins insignificantly but becomes vast.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 4:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 17:23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The repeated question introduces a second parable that complements the first. Where the mustard seed illustrates visible, external growth, the leaven illustrates invisible, internal transformation.
21. Three sata of flour is approximately forty pounds — enough bread for a large feast or community gathering (cf. Genesis 18:6, where Sarah uses this amount for divine visitors). The verb *enekrypsen* ('hid, concealed') emphasizes the leaven's invisibility — once mixed in, it disappears but transforms everything. Leaven usually carries negative associations in Jewish thought (corruption, sin), making Jesus's positive use of it provocative. The kingdom works like leaven: hidden, pervasive, and transformative from within.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 18:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. This travel notice reminds the reader of the journey framework established in 9:51. Luke periodically reorients the reader to the Jerusalem destination (cf. 9:51, 13:22, 17:11, 18:31, 19:11, 19:28). The phrase *poreian poioumenos eis Ierousalēm* ('making his journey toward Jerusalem') keeps the shadow of the cross over all the intervening teaching.
23. The question about the number of the saved (*ei oligoi hoi sōzomenoi*) was debated among Jewish teachers. Jesus characteristically refuses to answer the speculative question directly and instead issues a practical command — the issue is not how many will be saved but whether you will respond now.
24. The verb *agōnizesthe* ('strive, struggle, agonize, fight') is an athletic term — it describes the intense exertion of a competitor in a contest (the English 'agonize' comes from it). The 'narrow door' (*stenēs thyras*) suggests a door that requires effort and intentionality to pass through. The warning that many will 'seek' (*zētēsousin*) but 'not be able' (*ouk ischysousin*) implies that casual interest is insufficient — the door requires determined effort.
25. The image shifts from a narrow door to a closed door. The verb *apokleisei* ('shuts, locks') indicates finality — once locked, the door does not reopen. The phrase *ouk oida hymas pothen este* ('I do not know where you come from') is not a statement of ignorance but of non-recognition — the master refuses to acknowledge a relationship. This echoes Matthew 7:23's 'I never knew you.'
26. The claims offered — eating together and hearing his teaching — represent proximity without commitment. They have been near Jesus but have not entered through the narrow door of genuine discipleship. Luke's version (eating in his presence, hearing his street teaching) is more concrete than Matthew's (prophesying and casting out demons in his name), focusing on passive proximity rather than active ministry.
27. The repeated denial and the command to depart (*apostēte ap' emou*) echoes Psalm 6:8 (LXX). The phrase *ergatai adikias* ('workers of unrighteousness, practitioners of injustice') identifies the excluded not as strangers but as people whose lives were characterized by injustice — their proximity to Jesus did not translate into righteous living.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 6:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The 'weeping and gnashing of teeth' (*klauthnos kai brygmōs tōn odontōn*) is a fixed formula for the anguish of exclusion that appears six times in Matthew but only here in Luke. The particular torment is not physical pain but the sight of the patriarchs and prophets inside the kingdom while the self-assured are 'thrown out' (*ekballomenous*) — the verb for casting out demons is used for casting out the presumptuous.
29. The four compass points (*anatolōn, dysmōn, borra, notou*) represent universal inclusion — people from all directions, meaning all nations. The verb *anakhthēsontai* ('will recline at table') indicates the messianic banquet, a well-established Jewish image for the kingdom's fulfillment (cf. Isaiah 25:6-8). The irony is that those who considered themselves insiders (v. 26) are excluded while outsiders from every direction take their places.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:6-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. This great reversal saying summarizes the preceding teaching: those who assume priority (Israel's religious establishment) may find themselves displaced, while those considered last (Gentiles, sinners, the marginalized) may find themselves first. Luke's version is more balanced than some parallels — 'some' (*eisin*) in each category, not universal condemnation of 'the first' or universal elevation of 'the last.'
31. This episode is unique to Luke. Remarkably, it is Pharisees who warn Jesus — demonstrating that not all Pharisees were hostile (cf. Nicodemus, Joseph of Arimathea). Whether their warning was genuinely protective or an attempt to divert Jesus from his mission is debated. The threat from Herod Antipas continues the thread from 9:7-9.

32. Calling Herod 'that fox' (tē alōpeki tautē) is a pointed insult — in Jewish tradition, the fox was associated with cunning, destructiveness, and insignificance (as opposed to the lion's nobility and power). The phrase 'today and tomorrow and the third day' (sēmeron kai aurion kai tē tritē) is not a literal timetable but an idiom for 'a short, complete period.' The verb teleioumai ('I will be completed, I will reach my goal, I will be perfected') carries the sense of reaching the destined completion — the cross.
33. The word dei ('it is necessary, I must') again introduces divine necessity (cf. 9:22). The bitter irony of 'it is impossible for a prophet to perish outside Jerusalem' (ouk endechetai prophētēn apolesthai exō Ierousalēm) is devastating — Jerusalem, the holy city, is identified as the prophet-killing city. Herod cannot kill Jesus because that role belongs to Jerusalem. Jesus is not fleeing from death but walking toward it in the appointed place.
34. The double address 'Jerusalem, Jerusalem' echoes prophetic lament (cf. 'Martha, Martha' in 10:41; 'Simon, Simon' in 22:31). The hen image (ornis tēn heautēs nossian hypo tas pterygas) is strikingly maternal — Jesus expresses divine love through a mother-bird metaphor, echoing Deuteronomy 32:11 and Psalm 91:4, where God shelters Israel under protective wings. The tension between divine desire (ēthelēsa, 'I wanted') and human resistance (ouk ēthelēsate, 'you were not willing') preserves both God's initiative and human responsibility.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 32:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 91:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The phrase 'your house' (ho oikos hymōn) likely refers to the temple, which is now 'abandoned' (aphietai, 'left, forsaken') — God's protective presence is departing. The SBLGNT does not include 'desolate' (erēmos), which appears in some manuscripts. The quotation from Psalm 118:26 ('Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord') will be fulfilled at the triumphal entry (Luke 19:38), though whether that fulfillment is genuine or ironic is debated. The statement 'you will not see me' frames Jesus's departure as both judgment and future hope.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 118:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

14

Summary: *Luke 14 takes place entirely at a Sabbath meal in the house of a prominent Pharisee, where Jesus heals a man with dropsy, then delivers a series of teachings on humility, hospitality, and the cost of following him. He tells the parable of the great banquet — where the invited guests refuse to come and the host fills the hall with the poor, the crippled, and outsiders from the highways. The chapter closes with three stark sayings about counting the cost of discipleship: the tower builder, the warring king, and the demand to renounce everything.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The entire chapter is structured as a symposium — a Greco-Roman literary form in which teaching occurs at a banquet. Jesus subverts every expectation of the dinner party: he heals on the Sabbath (violating the host's assumptions), critiques the guests' jockeying for honor, instructs the host to invite the uninvitable, and tells a parable in which the original guests are replaced by social outcasts. The progression from table manners to radical discipleship is seamless — Luke presents following Jesus as a total social reorientation. The three 'cannot be my disciple' statements (vv. 26, 27, 33) are among the most demanding sayings in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The healing of the man with dropsy (hydrops, fluid retention) on the Sabbath follows a pattern of Sabbath controversies in Luke (6:1-11; 13:10-17). Jesus's argument from the lesser to the greater (if you rescue a son or an ox, surely you can heal a person) assumes a shared ethical framework. The saying about hating father and mother (v. 26) uses miseō in its Semitic comparative sense — 'love less by comparison' — not as a command to feel hatred. The parable of the great banquet has a parallel in Matthew 22:1-14 but differs significantly in details.*

Connections: *The Sabbath healing connects to Luke 6:6-11 and 13:10-17. The banquet parable echoes Isaiah 25:6-8 (the messianic feast) and anticipates the eschatological meal themes of Luke 22. The cost-of-discipleship sayings connect to Luke 9:23-26 (taking up the cross) and 18:18-30 (the rich ruler). The 'salt' saying at the end parallels Mark 9:50 and Matthew 5:13.*

1One Sabbath, when he went to eat at the house of a ruler of the Pharisees, they were watching him closely. 2And there in front of him was a man suffering from dropsy. 3Jesus responded to the lawyers and Pharisees, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?" 4But they remained silent. So he took hold of the man, healed him, and sent him away. 5And he said to them, "Which of you, having a son or an ox that has fallen into a well, will not immediately pull him out on a Sabbath day?" 6And they could not reply to this. 7He told a parable to those who had been invited, when he noticed how they were choosing

the places of honor, saying to them, ⁸"When you are invited by someone to a wedding feast, do not recline at the place of honor, in case someone more distinguished than you has been invited by him. ⁹Then the host who invited both of you will come and say to you, 'Give your place to this person,' and then in disgrace you will begin to take the lowest place. ¹⁰But when you are invited, go and recline at the lowest place, so that when the one who invited you comes, he will say to you, 'Friend, move up higher.' Then you will have honor in the presence of all who are reclining at the table with you. ¹¹For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and the one who humbles himself will be exalted." ¹²He also said to the one who had invited him, "When you give a lunch or a dinner, do not invite your friends or your brothers or your relatives or rich neighbors, so that they may not invite you in return and you be repaid. ¹³But when you give a feast, invite the poor, the crippled, the lame, and the blind. ¹⁴And you will be blessed, because they have nothing with which to repay you. For you will be repaid at the resurrection of the righteous." ¹⁵When one of those reclining at the table with him heard these things, he said to him, "Blessed is the one who will eat bread in the kingdom of God!" ¹⁶But he said to him, "A man once gave a great banquet and invited many. ¹⁷At the time of the banquet, he sent his servant to say to those who had been invited, 'Come, for everything is now ready.' ¹⁸But they all alike began to make excuses. The first said to him, 'I have bought a field, and I must go out and see it. Please have me excused.' ¹⁹Another said, 'I have bought five yoke of oxen, and I am going to examine them. Please have me excused.' ²⁰And therefore I cannot come, another said, I have married a wife. ²¹So the servant came and reported these things to his master. Then the master of the house became angry and said to his servant, 'Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the city, and bring in the poor and crippled and blind and lame.' ²²And the servant said, 'Sir, what you commanded has been done, and still there is room.' ²³Then the master said to the servant, 'Go out to the roads and hedgerows and compel them to come in, so that my house may be filled. ²⁴For I tell you, none of those men who were invited will taste my banquet.'" ²⁵Now large crowds were traveling with him, and he turned and said to them, ²⁶"If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters, yes, and even his own life, he cannot be my disciple. ²⁷Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple. ²⁸For which of you, wanting to build a tower, does not first sit down and calculate the cost, to see whether he has enough to complete it? ²⁹Otherwise, when he has laid a foundation and is not able to finish, all who see it will begin to mock him, ³⁰And was not able to finish, and declared, This man began to build. ³¹Or what king, going out to encounter another king in war, will not first sit down and deliberate whether he is able with ten thousand to meet the one who comes against him with twenty thousand? ³²If not, while the other is still far away, he sends a delegation and asks for terms of peace. ³³So therefore, any of you who does not renounce all that he has cannot be my disciple. ³⁴"Salt is good, but if even salt has lost its taste, with what will it be seasoned? ³⁵It is of no use either for the soil or for the manure pile. It is thrown away. The one who has ears to hear, let him hear."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *paraterēmenoi auton* ('watching him closely') carries the sense of hostile surveillance. The Sabbath meal was a formal occasion, and Jesus's presence at a Pharisee's table shows that he maintained social engagement with his critics even while challenging them. The 'ruler of the Pharisees' (*archontōn tōn Pharisaion*) was likely a synagogue leader who belonged to the Pharisaic party.
2. Hydrops (*δρωπικός*, 'dropsical') refers to edema — abnormal fluid retention causing visible swelling. This is the only occurrence of this condition in the New Testament. Whether the man was a guest or was placed there as a test is left ambiguous by Luke.
3. Jesus takes the initiative, addressing the tension directly. The *nomikoi* ('lawyers, experts in the Torah') and *Pharisaioi* ('Pharisees') represent the religious establishment's interpretive authority. The question forces them to articulate their position openly rather than hiding behind passive observation.
4. Their silence (*hēsychasan*) is telling — they cannot say healing is unlawful without appearing callous, nor can they affirm it without conceding Jesus's point. Jesus acts physically (*epilabomenos*, 'taking hold of') and then releases the man, removing him from the charged atmosphere.
5. The SBLGNT reads *huios* ('son') rather than *onos* ('donkey') — a textual variant with significant implications. If 'son,' the argument moves from human compassion; if 'donkey,' from animal husbandry. Either way, the *qal wahomer* ('lesser to greater') reasoning is clear: if emergency rescue is permissible, how much more healing? The Sabbath debates assume that saving life overrides Sabbath rest.

6. The verb *antapokrithēnai* ('to answer back, respond in opposition') implies they had no counter-argument. Jesus's logic has left them unable to defend their position without contradicting their own practice.
7. The *prōtoklisias* ('first couches, places of honor') were the reclining positions nearest the host at a formal meal. Jockeying for these positions was a visible display of social ambition. Jesus observes the behavior and uses it as a teaching occasion — the parable arises from direct observation of human vanity.
8. The wedding feast (*gamous*) setting raises the social stakes — weddings were the most public and hierarchical of ancient meals. The verb *katakliths* ('recline') reflects the ancient practice of reclining on couches rather than sitting at tables. The advice echoes Proverbs 25:6-7.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 25:6-7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The public humiliation (*meta aischnēs*, 'with shame') of being demoted would be devastating in an honor-shame culture. The scenario is socially realistic — hosts managed seating hierarchies carefully, and miscalculating one's status had real consequences.
10. The strategy of deliberate self-lowering leads to public elevation — a pattern that mirrors the theological principle stated in the next verse. The address 'Friend' (*Phile*) adds warmth to the public honor. The word *doxa* ('glory, honor') is the same used for God's glory — here applied to social standing, but pointing toward a deeper reality.
11. This axiom appears multiple times in Luke (1:52; 18:14) and throughout the Gospels. The passive voice ('will be humbled... will be exalted') is the divine passive — God is the implied agent. What appears as social advice becomes a statement about God's eschatological reversal of human hierarchies.
12. Jesus now turns from the guests to the host. The four categories — friends, brothers, relatives, rich neighbors — represent the entire network of reciprocal obligation in ancient Mediterranean society. The verb *antikalessōsin* ('invite in return') and the noun *antapodoma* ('repayment') expose the economy of social exchange: hospitality given to peers is an investment, not generosity.
13. The four categories — poor, crippled, lame, blind — are the same groups who will fill the banquet hall in the parable that follows (v. 21). These are people who cannot reciprocate, making the invitation pure grace. In the Qumran community (Dead Sea Scrolls), these same groups were explicitly excluded from the messianic banquet; Jesus inverts that exclusion.
14. The promise of repayment at 'the resurrection of the righteous' (*tē anastasei tōn dikaiōn*) shifts the reward from social reciprocity to eschatological recompense. The Pharisees believed in resurrection (unlike the Sadducees), so this appeal meets them on their own theological ground. True generosity is not unrewarded — it is rewarded by God, not by social peers.
15. This exclamation, perhaps pious but self-satisfied, triggers the parable of the great banquet. The speaker assumes he will be among those eating at the messianic feast. Jesus's parable will challenge exactly that assumption — the originally invited guests may find themselves excluded.
16. The 'great banquet' (*deipnon mega*) evokes the messianic feast of Isaiah 25:6. In ancient practice, a formal banquet involved two invitations: the initial announcement and a second summons when the meal was ready. The 'many' (*pollous*) who are invited represent Israel, the covenant people.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 25:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The second summons ('Come, for everything is now ready') represents the present moment of Jesus's ministry — the kingdom feast is being prepared and the invitation is going out. The single servant (*doulon*, 'slave') contrasts with Matthew's version, which has multiple servants.
18. The phrase *apo mias* ('with one accord, unanimously') emphasizes the collective nature of the refusal. The excuse is transparently absurd — no one buys a field without first inspecting it. The polite formula 'have me excused' (*eche me parētimenon*) masks the insult of rejecting a prepared feast.
19. Five yoke of oxen (ten animals) represents significant wealth — this is a man of means. Again, the excuse is implausible: one tests oxen before purchasing. The pattern of three excuses follows the rule of three in ancient storytelling.
20. This third excuse echoes Deuteronomy 24:5, where a newly married man is exempt from military service for one year. But a banquet is not military service, and this excuse — the most blunt of the three, without even asking to be excused — reveals that the refusals escalate in rudeness. Property, possessions, and family relationships all become obstacles to accepting the invitation.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 24:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The master's anger (*orgistheis*) is justified — to refuse a prepared banquet was a grave social insult. The four groups summoned — poor, crippled, blind, lame — are the same groups from verse 13, now given narrative embodiment. These are the people who cannot repay the invitation, making this the feast of pure grace that Jesus commanded.
22. The report that 'still there is room' (*eti topos estin*) is theologically charged — the feast has capacity for more. God's banquet is not a zero-sum table. The inclusion of the marginalized does not fill the hall to capacity; grace expands to accommodate all who will come.
23. The movement extends beyond the city to 'roads and hedgerows' (*hodos kai phragmous*) — the places where travelers and the homeless would be found. The verb *anankason* ('compel, urge strongly') does not imply violence but the insistence needed to overcome the resistance of those who would never imagine themselves invited to such a feast. This second sending likely represents the Gentile mission.

24. The shift from 'his' banquet to 'my' banquet (mou tou deipnou) is striking — the master of the parable speaks in a way that bleeds into Jesus's own voice. The exclusion is self-imposed: the original guests chose not to come. The door remains open to the unexpected guests who did accept.
25. The scene shifts from the Pharisee's house to the open road. Jesus 'turned' (strapheis) — a deliberate, confrontational gesture directed at those who were following casually. What follows are the most stringent discipleship demands in the Gospels.
26. The verb misēi ('hate') must be understood in its Semitic sense of 'love less by comparison' (cf. Genesis 29:31, where Leah is 'hated' meaning 'less loved'; Malachi 1:2-3). Matthew's parallel (10:37) clarifies: 'loves father or mother more than me.' The demand is not emotional hostility but absolute priority — when loyalties conflict, Jesus claims first allegiance over every human bond, including self-preservation (tēn psychēn heautou, 'his own life/soul').
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 29:31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 1:2-3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The stauros ('cross') was not a religious symbol in Jesus's time but an instrument of Roman execution — the most shameful and painful death available. To 'carry one's cross' meant to walk to one's own execution. The image would have been shocking and literal for Jesus's audience. This is the second 'cannot be my disciple' statement.
28. The tower (pyrgon) could be a farm watchtower or a defensive structure. The verb psēphizei ('calculate, count with pebbles') gives us the concept of 'counting the cost.' Jesus is not discouraging discipleship but demanding informed commitment — the parable warns against starting what one cannot finish.
29. The abandoned foundation becomes a permanent monument to failed ambition. The verb empaizein ('to mock, ridicule') carries the sting of public shame — the same word used for the mocking of Jesus at his trial (Luke 22:63; 23:11).
30. The mockers' words are devastating in their simplicity. The verb ērxato ('began') paired with ouk ischysen ('was not able') creates a stark contrast between aspiration and failure.
31. The second parable escalates from personal construction to national warfare. The odds are two-to-one against — the question is whether the king can realistically prevail. Like the tower builder, the king must assess his resources before committing. The parallel to discipleship is clear: following Jesus is a total commitment with opposition guaranteed.
32. The word presbeian ('delegation, embassy') is the root of 'presbyter' and 'ambassador.' The wise king who cannot win negotiates — but Jesus does not offer a negotiation option for discipleship. The parable's logic demands total commitment because there is no middle ground with God.
33. The third 'cannot be my disciple' statement specifies the cost: apotassetai pasin tois heautou hyparchousin ('renounce all his own possessions'). The verb apotassomai means 'to say farewell to, take leave of, renounce.' This is not merely spiritual detachment but literal willingness to release everything. Luke's Gospel consistently highlights the danger of wealth (6:20-26; 12:13-21; 16:19-31; 18:18-25).
34. The salt saying (also in Matthew 5:13 and Mark 9:50) serves as a warning metaphor following the discipleship demands. Salt that has lost its saltiness (mōranthē, literally 'become foolish' — the same root as 'moron') is useless. A disciple who will not pay the cost is like flavorless salt — purposeless. Chemically, pure sodium chloride cannot lose its salinity, but the impure salt from the Dead Sea region could leach and lose effectiveness.
35. Useless salt cannot even serve as fertilizer (eis gēn, 'for the land') or as a catalyst in a compost heap (eis koprian, 'for the manure pile'). It has absolutely no remaining function. The chapter closes with the same formula that concluded the Sower parable in chapter 8: 'The one who has ears to hear, let him hear' — an urgent call to active listening and obedience.

15

Summary: Luke 15 is the Lost Chapter — three parables of loss, search, and joyful recovery, told in response to Pharisees and scribes who grumble that Jesus 'welcomes sinners and eats with them.' A shepherd leaves ninety-nine sheep to find one lost lamb. A woman tears her house apart to find one lost coin. A father watches the horizon for a son who squandered his inheritance in a far country. Each parable culminates in extravagant celebration, and together they form Jesus's most sustained defense of his scandalous welcome of outcasts. The Parable of the Prodigal Son (15:11-32) is widely regarded as the greatest short story ever told — a narrative that moves from ruin to restoration, from death to life, and closes with an unanswered question to the older brother standing outside the party.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The three parables form a deliberate progression: a shepherd (male, outdoors, one of a hundred), a woman (female, indoors, one of ten), and a father (domestic, one of two). The ratio of lost to found intensifies — one percent, ten percent, fifty percent — making the stakes increasingly personal. The Prodigal Son parable is unique to Luke and contains some of the most psychologically complex characterization in ancient literature. The father's running (v. 20) would have been considered undignified for an elder in Middle Eastern culture — a deliberate humiliation undertaken for love. The older brother's refusal to enter the feast mirrors the Pharisees' refusal to celebrate Jesus's ministry to sinners. The parable has no resolution: we never learn whether the older brother enters.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'righteous persons who need no repentance' (v. 7) may be ironic — Jesus may be describing the Pharisees as they see themselves rather than as they truly are. The younger son's descent to feeding pigs (v. 15) represents the ultimate defilement for a Jewish audience, as pigs were unclean animals. The 'far country' (chōran makran) symbolizes moral and spiritual distance from the father. The father's statement 'this son of mine was dead and is alive again' (v. 24) uses resurrection language for a spiritual restoration — the same death-to-life pattern that defines Christian conversion.*

Connections: *The parables respond to the Pharisees' complaint in verse 2, which echoes Luke 5:30 and 19:7. The joy-in-heaven theme connects to Luke 10:20. The Prodigal Son anticipates the Zacchaeus story (19:1-10) and Jesus's declaration that 'the Son of Man came to seek and save the lost' (19:10). The father's compassion (splanchnistheis, v. 20) uses the same word applied to Jesus in Luke 7:13. The older brother's anger mirrors Jonah's anger at God's mercy toward Nineveh (Jonah 4).*

¹Now all the tax collectors and sinners were drawing near to him to hear him. ²And the Pharisees and the scribes were grumbling, saying, "This man receives sinners and eats with them." ³So he told them this parable: ⁴"What man among you, having a hundred sheep and losing one of them, does not leave the ninety-nine in the open country and go after the one that is lost until he finds it? ⁵Rejoicing, when he has found it, he layeth it on his shoulders. ⁶Rejoice with me, when he comes home, he calleth together his friends and neighbours, and declared to them. For I have found my sheep which was lost. ⁷I tell you, in the same way there will be more joy in heaven over one sinner who repents than over ninety-nine righteous persons who need no repentance. ⁸"Or what woman, having ten silver coins, if she loses one coin, does not light a lamp and sweep the house and search carefully until she finds it? ⁹And when she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, 'Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin that I had lost!' ¹⁰In the same way, I tell you, there is joy before the angels of God over one sinner who repents." ¹¹And he said, "A man had two sons. ¹²The younger of them said to his father, 'Father, give me the share of the property that is coming to me.' So he divided his livelihood between them. ¹³Not many days later, the younger son gathered everything together and traveled to a distant country, and there he squandered his property in dissolute living. ¹⁴When he had spent everything, a severe famine arose in that country, and he began to be in need. ¹⁵So he went and hired himself out to one of the citizens of that country, who sent him into his fields to feed pigs. ¹⁶And he was longing to be fed with the carob pods that the pigs ate, and no one gave him anything. ¹⁷But when he came to himself, he said, 'How many of my father's hired servants have more than enough bread, but I am perishing here with hunger! ¹⁸I will get up and go to my father, and I will say to him, "Father, I have sinned against heaven and before you. ¹⁹I am no longer worthy to be called your son. Treat me as one of your hired servants.'" ²⁰And he got up and came to his father. But while he was still a long way off, his father saw him and was moved with compassion, and ran and fell on his neck and kissed him. ²¹Then the son said to him, 'Father, I have sinned against heaven and before you. I am no longer worthy to be called your son.' ²²But the father said to his servants, 'Quickly, bring out the best robe and put it on him, and put a ring on his hand and sandals on his feet. ²³And bring the fattened calf and slaughter it, and let us eat and celebrate. ²⁴For this son of mine was dead and is alive again; he was lost and is found!' And they began to celebrate. ²⁵He heard musick and dancing, and now his elder son was in the field — and as he arrived and drew nigh to the house. ²⁶And asked what these things meant, and he called one of the servants. ²⁷The servant said to him, 'Your brother has come, and your father has slaughtered the fattened calf, because he has received him back safe and sound.' ²⁸But he was angry and refused to go in. His father came out and was pleading with him, ²⁹He answering said to his father, Lo, these many years do I serve you, neither transgressed I at any time your

commandment — and yet you never gavest me a kid, that I might make merry with my friends:. ³⁰But when this son of yours came, who has devoured your livelihood with prostitutes, you slaughtered the fattened calf for him!' ³¹But he said to him, 'Child, you are always with me, and everything that is mine is yours. ³²But it was necessary to celebrate and be glad, because this brother of yours was dead and is alive, and was lost and is found.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *pantes* ('all') is hyperbolic but emphasizes that Jesus attracted the very people the religious establishment avoided. 'Tax collectors' (*telōnai*) were despised as collaborators with Rome and assumed to be corrupt. 'Sinners' (*hamartōloi*) was a catch-all term for those who did not observe the Torah as the Pharisees defined it. That they came 'to hear him' (*akouein autou*) shows they were drawn to his message, not merely his miracles.
2. The verb *diegongyzon* ('were grumbling') echoes Israel's grumbling in the wilderness (Exodus 16:7-8; Numbers 14:27) — Luke draws a deliberate parallel between the Pharisees and rebellious Israel. Table fellowship (*synesthiein*, 'eats with') in ancient Judaism implied acceptance and equality; eating with sinners was not merely socializing but a theological statement. This complaint provides the occasion for all three parables that follow.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 16:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 14:27. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Luke introduces all three stories as one parable (*tēn parabolēn tautēn*, singular), suggesting they form a unified literary whole — three variations on one theme of loss, search, and celebration.
4. The opening 'What man among you' (*tis anthrōpos ex hymōn*) invites the audience to place themselves in the shepherd's role. The expected answer is 'Of course you would go.' Leaving ninety-nine in the *erēmō* ('wilderness, open country') is risky — the argument is that the lost sheep's value justifies the risk. A hundred sheep represented substantial wealth in first-century Palestine.
5. The image of the shepherd carrying the sheep on his shoulders (*epi tous ōmous*) became one of the earliest Christian artistic motifs. The lost sheep does not walk back on its own — the shepherd carries it. The participle *chairōn* ('rejoicing') is emphatic: this is not dutiful retrieval but exuberant recovery. The image echoes Isaiah 40:11 and Ezekiel 34:11-16, where God himself is the shepherd who seeks the lost.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 34:11-16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *syncharēte* ('rejoice together with') demands communal celebration — joy over recovery cannot be experienced alone. This detail sets up the application in verse 7: heaven itself celebrates communally over one repentant sinner. The shepherd does not scold the sheep; he throws a party.
7. The phrase 'righteous persons who need no repentance' (*dikaiois hoitines ou chreian echousin metanoias*) may be gently ironic — Jesus may be describing the Pharisees as they perceive themselves. Alternatively, it may acknowledge genuinely faithful people while insisting that recovery of the lost produces a particular kind of joy. The word *metanoēō* ('to repent, change one's mind') involves a complete reorientation of life, not merely feeling sorry.
8. The drachma was a Greek silver coin roughly equivalent to a day's wage. Ten drachmas may represent her entire savings, or they may have been sewn into a headband worn as a marriage token (similar to coins on a Palestinian bridal headdress). Losing one-tenth of her wealth warrants a thorough search. The lamp, sweeping, and diligent searching reflect the dark, windowless interior of a typical Palestinian peasant home with a packed-earth floor.
9. The exact same pattern as the shepherd's celebration: communal joy over recovery. The feminine forms (*tas philas kai geitonas*, 'her female friends and neighbors') reflect the social world of women in a gender-segregated society. Jesus's willingness to cast God in a female role (a woman searching for what is precious) is remarkable in its cultural context.
10. The phrase 'joy before the angels' (*chara enōpion tōn angelōn*) is a reverential circumlocution — the joy is God's own, expressed 'in the presence of his angels. This second application reinforces the first: heaven's economy values the recovery of the lost above all else.
11. The opening is deceptively simple. 'Two sons' immediately signals a story about contrasting responses — a familiar pattern in the Hebrew Bible (Cain/Abel, Esau/Jacob, Joseph and his brothers). The father, not either son, is the central character — some scholars prefer the title 'The Parable of the Prodigal Father' (prodigal in the sense of extravagantly generous).
12. The request is culturally outrageous — asking for one's inheritance while the father is still alive is tantamount to wishing the father dead. Under Jewish law (Deuteronomy 21:17), the younger son would receive one-third of the estate. The father's compliance (*dieilen*, 'he divided') without argument or rebuke is the first sign of his extraordinary character. The word *bion* ('livelihood, means of living') emphasizes that the father is giving away his actual resources, not merely liquid assets.

12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 21:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The phrase *chōran makran* ('distant country') represents both geographic and spiritual distance from the father. The adverb *asōtōs* ('dissolutely, wastefully') gives us the English word 'prodigal' — it means reckless extravagance. The verb *dieskorpisen* ('scattered, squandered') is vivid: he did not merely spend his inheritance but scattered it like seed on barren ground.
14. The convergence of personal bankruptcy and natural disaster creates complete destitution. The verb *hystereisthai* ('to be in need, lack, fall short') is the same word Paul uses for the human condition in Romans 3:23 ('all have sinned and fall short'). The son's self-inflicted poverty is compounded by circumstances beyond his control.
15. The verb *ekollēthē* ('joined himself to, attached himself to') suggests desperation rather than genuine employment — he clung to this foreigner for survival. For a Jewish audience, feeding pigs (choirous) represents the absolute nadir of defilement. Pigs were unclean (Leviticus 11:7), and tending them placed the son in daily contact with what the Torah forbade. He has reached the furthest possible point from his father's house.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 11:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The *keratia* ('carob pods') were used as animal feed — long, dark pods from the carob tree, sometimes called 'St. John's bread.' The son is now lower than the pigs: they eat while he goes hungry. The phrase 'no one gave him anything' (*oudeis edidou autō*) underscores his total abandonment — in the far country, there is no community, no compassion, no father.
17. The phrase *eis heauton elthōn* ('coming to himself') is a turning point — it implies he had been 'beside himself,' alienated from his true identity. This is the moment of self-awareness that precedes repentance. His reasoning is initially pragmatic rather than spiritual: the hired servants (*misthioi*, day laborers with no family status) eat better than he does. Whether his motive is genuine contrition or strategic self-interest, the movement toward the father begins.
18. The verb *anastas* ('rising up') is the same root as 'resurrection' (*anastasis*) — the son's return begins with rising from his degradation. His prepared speech echoes David's confession in Psalm 51:4 ('Against you, you only, have I sinned'). 'Against heaven' (*eis ton ouranon*) is a reverential circumlocution for 'against God' — the sin is not merely against the father but against the divine order.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 51:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The son's planned demotion from son to hired servant (*misthios*) shows he understands he has forfeited his status. A hired servant had no family rights but received wages and food. The son's self-assessment is accurate — he has squandered everything — but the father's response will overturn this calculation entirely.
20. This is the emotional center of the parable. That the father 'saw him while still far off' implies he had been watching — scanning the road, waiting. The verb *esplanchnisthē* ('was moved with compassion') describes a visceral, gut-level response (from *splanchna*, 'intestines, inward parts'). The father's running (*dramōn*) would have required him to lift his robes, exposing his legs — an act considered deeply undignified for an elder in Middle Eastern culture. He humiliates himself to reach his son before the village can shame him. The verb *katephilēsen* ('kissed fervently, kissed repeatedly') is intensive — not a formal greeting but an outpouring of affection.
21. The son delivers his rehearsed speech (from vv. 18-19) but never gets to finish — the crucial last line ('make me as one of your hired servants') is cut off by the father's instructions to the servants. The father does not allow the demotion to be spoken. The confession is received; the proposed terms are overridden by grace.
22. Every item is a symbol of restored sonship, not servanthood. The 'best robe' (*stolēn tēn prōtēn*, literally 'the first robe') is the father's own finest garment — clothing him in the father's honor. The ring (*daktylion*) signifies authority, likely a signet ring used for sealing documents and transacting business. The sandals (*hypodēmata*) distinguish a free son from a slave, who went barefoot. The father does not negotiate or set conditions — he restores fully and immediately.
23. The 'fattened calf' (*ton moschon ton siteuton*) was grain-fed and reserved for the most significant occasions — its slaughter would feed the entire village. This is not a private family meal but a community feast, paralleling the communal celebrations of the lost sheep and lost coin parables. The verb *euphranthōmen* ('let us celebrate, be glad') is the same word used in the Septuagint for feasting in God's presence.
24. The father uses resurrection language: *nekros ēn kai anezēsen* ('was dead and has come alive'). The son's departure was a kind of death; his return is a kind of resurrection. The parallel 'lost and found' (*apolōlōs kai heurethē*) connects this parable to the lost sheep and lost coin — all three stories culminate in the same recovery and the same celebration. The verb *ērξαντο* ('they began') implies the celebration is just getting started — setting up the older brother's arrival.
25. The older son enters the story for the first time, and he enters from the outside — he has been working in the field, dutifully serving his father. The *symphōnias* ('music,' literally 'sounds together') and *chorōn* ('dancing') indicate a major celebration. He approaches the party as an outsider, which is precisely the Pharisees' position relative to Jesus's welcome of sinners.
26. That the older son must ask a servant what is happening reveals his emotional distance from his father's household — he is physically present but relationally absent. The verb *epynthaneto* ('was inquiring') is in the imperfect, suggesting ongoing questioning.

- 27.** The servant's report is matter-of-fact: 'your brother' (ho adelphos sou) and 'your father' (ho patēr sou) — family language that the older son will shortly reject. The word *hygiainonta* ('healthy, safe and sound') is the root of 'hygiene' — the father is celebrating not just the son's return but his physical survival.
- 28.** The older son's anger (*ōrgisthē*) and refusal to enter parallels the Pharisees' anger at Jesus's table fellowship with sinners. His refusal to enter is as much an insult as the younger son's departure — in both cases, a son rejects the father's household. And in both cases, the father goes out: he ran to meet the younger son, and now he comes out to plead with the older. The verb *parekalei* ('was pleading, urging, entreating') is in the imperfect — sustained, patient appeal.
- 29.** The older son's complaint reveals a servile mentality: *douleuō soi* ('I have slaved for you') — he sees himself as a servant, not a son. He has obeyed commands (*entolēn*, 'commandment') but missed the relationship. The contrast between a young goat (*eriphon*, the cheapest animal for a feast) and the fattened calf underscores his sense of injustice. His complaint is factually plausible but spiritually blind — he has had access to everything his father owned (v. 31) and never realized it.
- 30.** The older son refuses to say 'my brother,' using instead the distancing 'this son of yours' (ho huios sou houtos) — a deliberate disowning. He adds the detail 'with prostitutes' (*meta pornōn*), which the narrative never mentioned — he either knows more than the story tells or is embellishing to strengthen his case. The verb *kataphagōn* ('devoured, consumed') is contemptuous. His resentment is directed as much at the father's generosity as at the brother's sin.
- 31.** The father's response begins with *teknon* ('child') — an intimate, affectionate address. The statement 'you are always with me' (*sy pantote met' emou ei*) is both reassurance and gentle rebuke: the older son has always had access to the father's presence and possessions but has experienced neither as gift. 'Everything that is mine is yours' (*panta ta ema sa estin*) is a staggering declaration — the father withholds nothing. The older son's poverty is not material but relational.
- 32.** The father gently corrects the older son's language: where the son said 'this son of yours' (v. 30), the father says 'this brother of yours' (ho adelphos sou houtos) — insisting on the fraternal bond. The verb *edei* ('it was necessary') carries divine compulsion — the celebration is not optional but morally required by the nature of what has happened. The parable ends without resolution: we do not know whether the older brother enters the feast. The open ending forces the Pharisees — and every reader — to decide: will you join the celebration or remain outside in your resentment? The repeated death-to-life, lost-to-found formula seals the chapter's theology: God's joy over the recovery of the lost is the heartbeat of the kingdom.

16

Summary: *Luke 16 contains two of Jesus's most provocative teachings about wealth. The Parable of the Shrewd Manager (16:1-13) presents a dishonest steward who, facing termination, reduces his master's debtors' bills to secure future friendships — and is commended for his shrewdness. Jesus draws the paradoxical lesson that worldly people are more strategic than 'children of light' and urges his followers to use wealth to gain eternal friends. A series of sayings on faithfulness, the impossibility of serving both God and money, and the enduring authority of the Law follows. The chapter culminates in the Parable of the Rich Man and Lazarus (16:19-31), where a wealthy man who ignored a beggar at his gate finds their positions reversed in the afterlife — and Abraham refuses to send a warning to the rich man's brothers, declaring that Moses and the Prophets are sufficient.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Parable of the Shrewd Manager is perhaps the most debated parable in the Gospels. Jesus appears to commend dishonesty, but the commendation is for shrewdness (*phronimōs*), not for the fraud itself — the steward's cleverness in using present resources to secure a future relationship becomes an analogy for how disciples should use material wealth to secure eternal outcomes. The Rich Man and Lazarus is the only parable in which a character is named (Lazarus), and it provides the most detailed picture of the afterlife in Jesus's teaching. The rich man is never condemned for a specific sin — his offense is indifference to suffering at his own gate. The final line ('neither will they be convinced even if someone rises from the dead') is deeply ironic in light of Jesus's own resurrection and the continued unbelief it met.*

Translation Friction: *The Shrewd Manager parable's moral logic has troubled interpreters for centuries. The manager may have been removing his own commission from the bills (making his action honest), or he may have been canceling usurious interest forbidden by Torah (making his action just), or he may simply be a rogue whose worldly cleverness Jesus repurposes as a spiritual lesson. We render the Greek as given and let the translator notes present the interpretive options. The word 'Hades' (*hadēs*) in verse 23 is the Greek equivalent of Hebrew Sheol — the realm of the dead — not the later Christian concept of hell. The 'great chasm' (*chasma mega*) is unique to this passage.*

Connections: The Shrewd Manager continues Luke's sustained focus on wealth and discipleship (12:13-34; 14:33; 18:18-30; 19:1-10). The Pharisees' love of money (v. 14) connects to their role throughout Luke as opponents who misunderstand the kingdom. The Rich Man and Lazarus echoes the Magnificat's reversal theme (1:52-53) and the Beatitudes/Woes of 6:20-26. Abraham's refusal to send Lazarus back foreshadows the resurrection appearances and the persistent unbelief of Acts. The 'Law and Prophets' (v. 16) connects to Luke 24:27, 44.

¹He also said to his disciples, "There was a rich man who had a manager, and this manager was reported to him as squandering his possessions. ²So he called him and said to him, 'What is this I hear about you? Turn in the account of your management, for you can no longer be manager.' ³The manager said to himself, 'What shall I do, since my master is taking the management away from me? I am not strong enough to dig, and I am ashamed to beg. ⁴I know what I will do, so that when I am removed from the management, people will receive me into their homes.' ⁵So, summoning his master's debtors one by one, he said to the first, 'How much do you owe my master?' ⁶He said, 'A hundred measures of olive oil.' He said to him, 'Take your bill, sit down quickly, and write fifty.' ⁷Then he said to another, 'And how much do you owe?' He said, 'A hundred measures of wheat.' He said to him, 'Take your bill and write eighty.' ⁸The master commended the dishonest manager because he had acted shrewdly. For the children of this age are more shrewd in dealing with their own generation than the children of light. ⁹And I tell you, make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth, so that when it fails, they may receive you into the eternal dwellings. ¹⁰The one who is faithful in a very little is also faithful in much, and the one who is dishonest in a very little is also dishonest in much. ¹¹If then you have not been faithful with unrighteous wealth, who will entrust to you the true riches? ¹²And if you have not been faithful with what belongs to another, who will give you what is your own? ¹³No servant can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or he will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and money." ¹⁴The Pharisees, who were lovers of money, heard all these things, and they ridiculed him. ¹⁵He said to them, "You are those who justify yourselves before people, but God knows your hearts. For what is exalted among people is an abomination in the sight of God. ¹⁶The Law and the Prophets were until John; since then the good news of the kingdom of God is being proclaimed, and everyone is urged forcefully into it. ¹⁷But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the Law to fall. ¹⁸Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and the one who marries a woman divorced from her husband commits adultery. ¹⁹"There e was a rich man who was clothed in purple and fine linen, feasting sumptuously every day. ²⁰And a poor man named Lazarus was laid at his gate, covered with sores, ²¹Longing to be nourished with the scraps that fell from the rich man's table — moreover the dogs arrived and licked his sores. ²²The poor man died and was carried by the angels to Abraham's side. The rich man also died and was buried. ²³And in Hades, being in torment, he lifted up his eyes and saw Abraham far off, and Lazarus at his side. ²⁴And he called out, 'Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus to dip the tip of his finger in water and cool my tongue, for I am in anguish in this flame.' ²⁵But Abraham said, 'Child, remember that you received your good things during your life, and Lazarus likewise bad things. But now he is comforted here, and you are in anguish. ²⁶And besides all this, between us and you a great chasm has been fixed, so that those who want to cross from here to you cannot, nor can anyone cross from there to us.' ²⁷He said, 'Then I beg you, father, to send him to my father's house, ²⁸For I have five brothers and sisters. That he may testify to them, lest they also come into this location of torment. ²⁹But Abraham said, 'They have Moses and the Prophets; let them listen to them.' ³⁰He said, 'No, father Abraham, but if someone goes to them from the dead, they will repent.' ³¹He said to him, 'If they do not listen to Moses and the Prophets, neither will they be convinced even if someone rises from the dead.'"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The *oikonomos* ('manager, steward') was responsible for administering the master's estate — a position of significant trust and authority. The verb *diaskorpizōn* ('squandering, scattering') is the same word used for the prodigal son's waste in 15:13, creating a verbal link between the two parables. The passive *dieblēthē* ('was reported, was accused') does not confirm whether the accusation was true.
2. The demand *apodos ton logon* ('give the account, render the reckoning') uses commercial language for a financial audit. The phrase *ou dynē eti oikonomein* ('you are no longer able to manage') is a termination notice. The manager is given a brief window to close the books — a window he will exploit.

3. The internal monologue (eipen en heautō, 'said within himself') parallels the prodigal son's self-reflection in 15:17. The manager's self-assessment is brutally honest: he cannot do manual labor (skaptein, 'to dig') and will not beg (epaitein). He is a white-collar worker facing unemployment with no fallback skills. His dilemma forces the creative — if ethically questionable — solution that follows.
4. The verb egnōn ('I know, I have realized') marks the eureka moment. His strategy is to create a network of obligation: by reducing the debtors' bills, he will have friends who owe him favors when he loses his position. The phrase dexōntai me eis tous oikous autōn ('they will receive me into their houses') will be echoed in verse 9 with 'eternal dwellings.'
5. The chreopheiletōn ('debtors') were likely tenant farmers or merchants who owed the master commodities as rent or payment. The manager acts individually with each debtor (hena hekaston, 'one by one'), creating personal obligation rather than a collective arrangement.
6. A batos was approximately eight to nine gallons; a hundred batous of olive oil was a substantial debt — roughly 800-900 gallons, the yield of about 150 olive trees. The reduction of fifty percent is enormous. The urgency (tacheōs, 'quickly') reflects the need to act before the termination takes effect. Whether the reduction represents the manager's commission, the master's usurious interest, or outright fraud is debated.
7. A koros was approximately ten to twelve bushels; a hundred koroi of wheat equaled roughly 1,000-1,200 bushels — a very large commercial quantity. The reduction here is only twenty percent, compared to fifty percent for the oil. The different percentages may reflect different commission rates or interest structures on different commodities.
8. The crucial question: does 'the master' (ho kyrios) refer to the rich man in the parable or to Jesus? Most interpreters read it as the rich man, who grudgingly admires the manager's cleverness even though it cost him money. The commendation is for phronimōs ('shrewdly, wisely') — strategic thinking about the future — not for the dishonesty (adikias). The contrast between 'children of this age' (huiōi tou aiōnos toutou) and 'children of light' (huiōus tou phōtos) is a wisdom observation: worldly people invest more strategic effort in their temporal futures than God's people invest in their eternal ones.
9. Jesus now applies the parable. The mamōna tēs adikias ('mammon of unrighteousness') is Aramaic mammon ('wealth, property') modified by a genitive of quality — 'wealth characterized by its worldly nature.' The instruction is: use material resources to build relationships that have eternal significance. The 'eternal dwellings' (aiōnious skēnas, literally 'eternal tents') contrast with the temporary shelters of this life. The identity of 'they' (dexōntai) is debated — the poor who benefit from generosity, the angels, or God himself.
10. This proverb establishes the principle that character is consistent across scale. Small responsibilities reveal the character that will govern large ones. The adjective elachistō ('very little, least') applied to wealth frames material possessions as the smallest arena of faithfulness — preparation for greater spiritual responsibilities.
11. The contrast between adikō mamōna ('unrighteous wealth') and to alēthinon ('the true, genuine thing') is sharp. Material wealth is not the 'real' treasure — it is a test, a proving ground. Failure in this lesser arena disqualifies one from receiving the greater spiritual treasure. The question format (tis hymin pisteusei, 'who will entrust to you?') implies God as the one who evaluates and entrusts.
12. The word allotriō ('another's, belonging to someone else') reframes all material wealth as borrowed — it belongs to God, and humans are stewards, not owners. The 'your own' (to hymeteron) refers to spiritual inheritance that becomes genuinely one's own. The implication is radical: everything material is on loan; only the spiritual treasure is truly yours.
13. Luke adds oiketēs ('household servant') to the saying found also in Matthew 6:24. The word douleuein ('to serve as a slave') implies total ownership — a slave cannot divide loyalty. The personification of mamōna as a competing kyrios ('master') is the climax of the wealth teaching: money is not neutral but a power that demands allegiance. The final statement is absolute: ou dynasthe ('you are not able') — this is not a recommendation but a declaration of impossibility.
14. Luke's editorial comment — philargyroi ('lovers of money,' literally 'lovers of silver') — is pointed. The verb exemyktērizon ('ridiculed, sneered at,' literally 'turned up their noses') suggests contemptuous dismissal. Their mockery reveals that Jesus's teaching about wealth has struck a nerve.
15. The phrase dikaious tes heautous ('justifying yourselves') means constructing a public reputation of righteousness. The word bdelygma ('abomination') is the strongest term of revulsion in biblical Greek — the same word used for the 'abomination of desolation' in Daniel 9:27 and Mark 13:14. What humans celebrate (wealth, status, prestige), God may find detestable. The reversal is total.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 9:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. This compressed saying divides salvation history: the era of 'the Law and the Prophets' extends to John the Baptist, after which the kingdom of God is actively proclaimed. The verb biazetai is ambiguous — it can mean 'everyone forces their way in' (middle voice) or 'everyone is being urged/pressed in' (passive). We render the passive sense, which fits Luke's theology of God's initiative, but the middle sense ('everyone is pressing into it eagerly') is also possible.
17. The keraia ('horn, stroke, serif') refers to the tiny decorative marks distinguishing similar Hebrew letters (such as beth and kaph). Jesus affirms the Law's enduring authority in the strongest possible terms — the cosmos will dissolve before the smallest detail of Torah fails. This statement prevents the previous verse from being read as abrogation of the Law.
18. This saying, placed between statements about the Law's permanence and the Rich Man and Lazarus parable, may serve as a concrete example of the Law's enduring moral authority. The prohibition is absolute in Luke's version — no exception clause appears as in Matthew 19:9. The verb moicheuei ('commits adultery') applies to both scenarios.

- 19.** The porphyran ('purple') was the most expensive dye in the ancient world, extracted from murex sea snails. The bysson ('fine linen') was imported Egyptian fabric. Together they represent extreme luxury. The phrase *euphrainomenos kath' hēmeran lamprōs* ('celebrating splendidly every day') means his entire life was one continuous feast — while Lazarus starved at his gate. The rich man is traditionally called 'Dives' (Latin for 'rich'), but the text never names him.
- 20.** Lazarus (Lazaros) is the Greek form of the Hebrew Eleazar ('God helps') — the name itself is ironic, as no human helps him. He is the only named character in any of Jesus's parables, which may suggest a historical basis or may serve to personalize the poor man in contrast to the unnamed rich man. The passive *ebeblēto* ('had been placed, was lying') suggests he was too weak to position himself. The *pylōna* ('gate, entrance') implies a large, wealthy estate.
- 21.** The parallel with the prodigal son's hunger is deliberate (*epithymōn chortasthēnai*, 'longing to be fed' — cf. 15:16). But whereas the prodigal chose his degradation, Lazarus's suffering is involuntary. The dogs (*kynes*) are unclean street scavengers, not pets — their licking adds humiliation to misery. Whether Lazarus actually received the fallen scraps is left unclear; the text says he 'longed' for them.
- 22.** The contrast in death is stark: Lazarus is escorted by angels to 'Abraham's bosom' (*ton kolpon Abraam*) — the place of honor at the patriarchal feast, the position of the beloved guest reclining next to the host. The rich man simply 'died and was buried' (*etaphē*) — his funeral was presumably grand, but no angels attend him. The reversal from their earthly conditions has begun.
- 23.** The Greek *hadēs* corresponds to the Hebrew *Sheol* — the realm of the dead, not the later Christian concept of hell as a place of final punishment. In Jewish thought of this period, Hades contained both the righteous and the unrighteous in separate compartments. The rich man can see Abraham and Lazarus but cannot cross to them — proximity without access. The word *basanois* ('torments') originally referred to a touchstone for testing metals, then came to mean torture or torment.
- 24.** Even in Hades, the rich man treats Lazarus as a servant to be dispatched on errands — 'send Lazarus' (*pempson Lazaron*). He has learned Lazarus's name (he always knew who was at his gate) but has not grasped the reversal. The request for a finger-dip of water is pathetically minimal, measuring the depth of his suffering. The address 'Father Abraham' claims covenant identity — he considers himself Abraham's heir despite his behavior.
- 25.** Abraham addresses him as *teknon* ('child') — acknowledging the covenant relationship while denying the request. The principle is reversal: *ta agatha sou* ('your good things') in life are spent; Lazarus's suffering is now compensated. The verb *parakaleitai* ('is comforted') is the same root as *paraklētos* ('comforter, advocate'). The reversal echoes the Beatitudes and Woes of Luke 6:20-26.
- 26.** The *chasma mega* ('great chasm') represents the irreversible finality of the afterlife condition. The perfect passive *estēriktai* ('has been fixed, established') indicates a permanent divine arrangement, not a temporary boundary. The impossibility of crossing in either direction means there is no post-mortem remedy — choices made in life determine one's eternal state.
- 27.** The rich man's second request is to send Lazarus as a messenger — still treating him as an errand-runner. But the request also reveals that the rich man now understands something he failed to grasp in life: his choices had consequences, and his brothers are making the same ones.
- 28.** The five brothers suggest a large, wealthy family. The verb *diamartyrētai* ('warn, solemnly testify') is a compound verb intensifying the urgency. The 'place of torment' (*topon touton tēs basanou*) is the first time the rich man names his location. His compassion for his brothers, absent for Lazarus in life, arrives too late.
- 29.** Abraham's response is that the existing revelation — the Torah ('Moses') and the Prophets — is sufficient. The Hebrew Scriptures already command justice for the poor, generosity to the needy, and compassion for the suffering (Deuteronomy 15:7-11; Isaiah 58:6-7; Amos 2:6-7). No additional supernatural sign is needed. The imperative *akousatōsan* ('let them hear, let them listen') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4) and the repeated refrain 'let him hear' from the parables.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 15:7-11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 58:6-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Amos 2:6-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The rich man contradicts Abraham — *ouchi* ('No!') — insisting that a supernatural visitor from the dead would succeed where Scripture has failed. His assumption is that the problem is insufficient evidence, not hardness of heart. The verb *metanoēsousin* ('they will repent') is confident but mistaken, as the next verse will make clear.
- 31.** Abraham's final word is devastating in its irony. The verb *anastē* ('rises,' from *anistēmi*, the standard word for resurrection) points beyond the parable to Jesus's own resurrection — and the fact that many still did not believe even after it occurred (cf. Acts 4:1-2; 17:32). The verb *peisthēsontai* ('they will be convinced, persuaded') suggests that the problem is not evidence but willingness. Those who ignore the witness of Scripture will not be moved by miracles. The parable ends on this note of solemn warning: no sign can substitute for listening to what God has already spoken.

17

Summary: *Luke 17 contains a collection of Jesus's teachings on stumbling blocks, forgiveness, faith, and duty, followed by the healing of ten lepers (only the Samaritan returns to give thanks), and a discourse on the coming of the kingdom of God. Jesus teaches that the kingdom does not come with observable signs but is 'in your midst,' then warns of the sudden, visible nature of the Son of Man's coming, comparing it to the days of Noah and Lot.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The healing of the ten lepers is unique to Luke and highlights his recurring theme of Samaritan faithfulness contrasted with Jewish ingratitude. The phrase 'the kingdom of God is among you' (entos hymōn) is one of the most debated sayings in the Gospels — does it mean 'within you' (interior/spiritual) or 'in your midst' (present in Jesus's person)? The discourse on the Son of Man's coming blends language from Daniel 7 with flood and fire imagery from Genesis, creating an eschatological tapestry that resists neat systematization.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 21's entos hymōn is genuinely ambiguous — 'within you' and 'in your midst' are both linguistically defensible. We render 'in your midst' as the more contextually appropriate reading (Jesus is addressing Pharisees, to whom 'within you' seems unlikely), but note the alternative. The servant parable in verses 7-10 uses the language of slavery, which we render transparently.*

Connections: *The ten lepers narrative connects to 2 Kings 5 (Naaman the Syrian leper) — another foreigner healed when Israelites were not. The Noah and Lot comparisons draw from Genesis 6-7 and 19. The 'days of the Son of Man' language echoes Daniel 7:13-14. The faith-as-mustard-seed saying appears also in Matthew 17:20, though in a different context.*

¹He said to his disciples, "It is inevitable that causes of stumbling will come, but woe to the one through whom they come. ²It would be better for him if a millstone were hung around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than for him to cause one of these little ones to stumble. ³Watch yourselves. If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him. ⁴Even if he sins against you seven times in a day, and seven times turns back to you saying, 'I repent,' you must forgive him." ⁵The apostles said to the Lord, "Increase our faith!" ⁶The Lord said, "If you had faith like a mustard seed, you could say to this mulberry tree, 'Be uprooted and planted in the sea,' and it would obey you. ⁷"Which of you, having a slave who is plowing or tending sheep, would say to him when he comes in from the field, 'Come at once and recline at the table'? ⁸Instead, would he not say to him, 'Prepare something for me to eat, and dress yourself for service and wait on me while I eat and drink; after that, you may eat and drink'? ⁹Does he thank the slave because he did what was commanded? ¹⁰So you also, when you have done everything you were commanded, say, 'We are unworthy slaves; we have only done what was our duty.'" ¹¹While traveling to Jerusalem, Jesus passed along the border between Samaria and Galilee. ¹²As he entered a village, ten men with a skin disease met him. They stood at a distance ¹³They raised up their voices, and stated, Jesus, Master, have mercy on us. ¹⁴When he saw them, he said, "Go and show yourselves to the priests." And as they went, they were cleansed. ¹⁵One of them, when he saw that he was healed, turned back, praising God in a loud voice. ¹⁶He fell facedown at Jesus's feet, thanking him — and he was a Samaritan. ¹⁷Jesus responded, "Were not all ten cleansed? Where are the other nine? ¹⁸Was no one found to return and give glory to God except this foreigner?" ¹⁹Then he said to him, "Get up and go on your way. Your faith has saved you." ²⁰When asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them, "The kingdom of God does not come with signs to be observed. ²¹Nor will people say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For the kingdom of God is in your midst." ²²Then he said to the disciples, "The days are coming when you will long to see one of the days of the Son of Man, and you will not see it. ²³People will say to you, 'Look, there!' or 'Look, here!' Do not go out or chase after them. ²⁴For just as lightning flashes and lights up the sky from one end to the other, so will the Son of Man be in his day. ²⁵And he rejected of this generation, and but first must he suffer many things. ²⁶Just as it was in the days of Noah, so it will be in the days of the Son of Man. ²⁷They were eating, drinking, marrying, and being given in marriage, up to the day Noah entered the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed them all. ²⁸It was the same in the days of Lot: they were eating, drinking, buying, selling, planting, and building. ²⁹But on the day Lot left Sodom, fire and sulfur rained from heaven and destroyed them all. ³

◦It will be just like this on the day the Son of Man is revealed. ³¹On that day, the one who is on the housetop with his belongings in the house must not go down to get them. Likewise, the one who is in the field must not turn back. ³²Remember what happened to Lot's wife. ³³Whoever seeks to preserve his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life will keep it alive. ³⁴I tell you, on that night two will be in one bed; one will be taken and the other left. ³⁵Two women will be grinding grain together; one will be taken and the other left. ³⁶Two will be in the field; one will be taken and the other left." ³⁷They asked him, "Where, Lord?" He said to them, "Where the body is, there the vultures will gather."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek anendekton ('impossible not to happen, inevitable') is stronger than a mere prediction — it acknowledges the fallen reality of the world. The word skandala ('stumbling blocks, snares') refers to anything that causes someone to fall away from faith, not merely 'offenses' in the modern sense.
2. The lithos mylikos ('millstone') refers to the large upper stone of a donkey-driven mill — heavy enough to guarantee drowning. The 'little ones' (mikrōn) likely refers to new or vulnerable believers, not only children. The hyperbolic comparison — drowning is preferable to leading others astray — underscores the gravity of spiritual harm.
3. The Greek prosechete heautois ('watch yourselves, be on guard') shifts the focus from the one who causes stumbling to the disciples' own responsibility. The verb epitimēson ('rebuke') carries the sense of a corrective confrontation, not mere criticism. The sequence — rebuke, repentance, forgiveness — presents reconciliation as a structured process, not an automatic response.
4. The number 'seven' (heptakis) represents completeness and fullness in biblical numerology — the point is not a literal count but an unlimited willingness to forgive. The verb epistrepō ('turns back') carries the same turning/returning imagery as the Hebrew teshuvah. The command aphēseis ('you will forgive') is a future indicative used as an imperative, making forgiveness not optional but obligatory.
5. This is one of only six times Luke uses the term apostoloi ('apostles') rather than mathētai ('disciples') during the ministry narrative. Their request reveals that they recognize the demands of verses 3-4 as exceeding their current capacity. The verb prosthes ('add to, increase') suggests they view faith as something quantifiable — a misunderstanding Jesus corrects in the next verse.
6. The sykaminō ('mulberry tree') is distinct from the sykomorea ('sycamore-fig') of 19:4. Luke's version uses a mulberry tree rather than Matthew's mountain (17:20), but the point is identical: the issue is not the quantity of faith but its genuine presence. A mustard seed (kokkon sinapeōs) was proverbially the smallest seed known in Palestine. The conditional ei echete ('if you had') is a contrary-to-fact condition, implying they do not yet possess even this minimal faith.
7. The Greek doulos means 'slave,' not merely 'servant' — the parable depends on the absolute obligation of a slave to his master. The verb anapese ('recline') refers to the Greco-Roman dining posture of reclining on a couch, the standard position for meals in Jesus's context.
8. The verb perizōsamenos ('having girded yourself') refers to tucking up the outer garment into a belt for active work — a practical preparation for serving. The sequence is clear: the master's needs come first, the slave's needs second. This is not an endorsement of slavery but a parable using a familiar social structure to make a theological point about duty.
9. The expected answer is 'no.' The Greek charin echei ('have gratitude toward') implies that obedience to clear commands does not earn special recognition. The KJV's 'I trow not' is an addition — the Greek simply asks the rhetorical question and moves on.
10. The word achreioi ('unworthy, useless, unprofitable') is striking — Jesus instructs his followers to consider themselves 'useless' even after full obedience. This counters any theology of merit: complete obedience is the baseline, not an achievement deserving reward. The verb ōpheilomen ('we were obligated') frames service as debt, not generosity.
11. The phrase dia meson Samareias kai Galilaias ('through the middle of Samaria and Galilee') is geographically unusual — traveling south to Jerusalem, one would pass through Galilee first, then Samaria. 'Along the border between' captures the sense that Jesus was traveling the boundary region where the two territories met, which is the most coherent geographical reading.
12. The Greek leproi ('lepers') covers a range of skin conditions beyond what modern medicine calls leprosy (Hansen's disease). Levitical law (Leviticus 13-14) required those with such conditions to remain isolated. Their standing 'at a distance' (porrōthen) reflects the social and ritual separation required by the Torah.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 13-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The title epistata ('master, commander') is used exclusively in Luke among the Gospels and always by disciples or those seeking help — it implies recognized authority. Their loud cry from a distance reflects both their desperation and the physical separation their condition imposed.
14. The command to show themselves to the priests follows the Levitical procedure for certifying a healed skin condition (Leviticus 14:1-32). The healing occurs en route — 'as they went' (en tō hypagein) — requiring them to act in faith before seeing results. This is the only mass healing of lepers recorded in the Gospels.

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 14:1-32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *hypestrepsen* ('turned back, returned') contrasts with the obedient departure of the nine — this one interrupts his journey to the priest in order to give thanks. His loud praise (*phōnēs megalēs*, 'great voice') echoes the loud cry of verse 13, transforming a plea for mercy into a shout of gratitude.
16. Luke delays the revelation that the man is a Samaritēs ('Samaritan') until the end of the verse for dramatic effect. The Samaritans were despised by Jews as religious and ethnic outsiders (cf. John 4:9). The posture — falling on his face at Jesus's feet — is the posture of worship. The verb *eucharistōn* ('giving thanks') is the root of 'Eucharist,' linking gratitude to the deepest form of worship.
17. Jesus's two rhetorical questions expose the ingratitude of the nine — they received healing but did not return to give glory to God. The verb *ekatharisthēsan* ('were cleansed') recalls the Levitical language of ritual purification, connecting physical healing with spiritual restoration.
18. The word *allogēnēs* ('foreigner, one of another race') is a loaded term — it was inscribed on the warning stones in the Jerusalem temple prohibiting non-Jews from entering the inner courts. Jesus uses it to highlight the irony: the one deemed unfit for God's temple is the only one who returns to glorify God.
19. The phrase *hē pistis sou sesōken se* ('your faith has saved you') uses *sōzō*, which means both 'to heal' and 'to save.' All ten were cleansed (*katharizō*, v. 14), but only this one is 'saved' (*sōzō*). Luke distinguishes between physical healing (which all ten received) and the deeper salvation that comes through faith and gratitude. This same phrase appears in 7:50 (the sinful woman) and 8:48 (the hemorrhaging woman).
20. The word *paratērseōs* ('observation, watching') suggests watching for visible, datable signs — the kind of apocalyptic timetable the Pharisees were seeking. Jesus rejects the premise: the kingdom cannot be tracked like a military campaign or astronomical event.
21. The phrase *entos hymōn estin* is one of the most debated in the Gospels. *Entos* can mean 'within' (interior, spiritual) or 'among/in the midst of' (present in the community). Since Jesus is addressing Pharisees hostile to his message, 'within you' seems unlikely as a commendation of their spiritual state. 'In your midst' better captures the idea that the kingdom is present in Jesus's own person and activity, standing right before them whether they recognize it or not. The alternative reading 'within you' is noted for completeness.
22. Jesus shifts from addressing the Pharisees to the disciples. The phrase 'one of the days of the Son of Man' is unusual — it may mean 'even a single day' of the messianic age, suggesting a period of absence or suffering during which the disciples will yearn for his visible presence. The title 'Son of Man' (*huios tou anthrōpou*) draws from Daniel 7:13.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The warning against following false messianic claims echoes the Pharisees' question in verse 20. The verbs *apelthēte* ('go out') and *diōxēte* ('pursue, chase') suggest an active and potentially dangerous quest that Jesus forbids.
24. The simile of lightning (*astrapē*) makes two points: the Son of Man's coming will be sudden (no time to prepare) and universally visible (no need to search for it). This directly answers both the Pharisees' question about timing and the warning against localized messianic claims. Some manuscripts omit 'in his day' (*en tē hēmera autou*), but the SBLGNT retains it.
25. The word *dei* ('it is necessary, must') indicates divine necessity — the suffering is not accidental but part of God's plan. The verb *apodokimasthēnai* ('to be rejected after examination') implies a deliberate evaluation and verdict: this generation examines Jesus and officially declares him unfit. This passion prediction interrupts the eschatological discourse to anchor future glory in present suffering.
26. The comparison to Noah's days (Genesis 6-7) emphasizes not the wickedness of that generation but their obliviousness — they were living normally, unaware of impending judgment. The Greek *Nōe* is the Septuagint spelling of the Hebrew Noah.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 6-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The four imperfect verbs (*ēsthion*, *epinon*, *egamoun*, *egamizonto*) describe ongoing, routine activities — the emphasis is on normalcy, not depravity. The shift to the aorist 'came' (*ēlthen*) and 'destroyed' (*apōlesen*) marks the sudden, decisive interruption of judgment. The *kibōton* ('ark, chest') is the same word used for the ark of the covenant in the Septuagint.
28. The Lot comparison (unique to Luke's version) adds commercial and agricultural activities to the list — buying, selling, planting, building. These are not sinful activities but routine preoccupations that blinded people to coming judgment. Six imperfect verbs create a rhythm of uninterrupted normalcy.
29. The reference is to Genesis 19:24-25. The Greek *theion* ('sulfur, brimstone') combined with fire from heaven represents total divine judgment. As with Noah, the transition from imperfect (routine activity) to aorist (sudden destruction) is abrupt and decisive.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 19:24-25. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The verb *apokalypsetai* ('is revealed') is a present tense used for future certainty. The passive voice implies that God is the one doing the revealing — the Son of Man does not simply appear but is unveiled by divine action. This is the theological climax of the Noah-Lot comparison.

31. The flat rooftops of Palestinian houses were used as living and working spaces, accessed by an external staircase. The instruction not to go back inside emphasizes the urgency and suddenness of the coming judgment. The parallel with Lot's escape (Genesis 19:17, 'Do not look back') is explicit.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 19:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The shortest verse in this discourse — three words in Greek (mnēmoneuete tēs gynaikos Lōt). Lot's wife looked back at Sodom and became a pillar of salt (Genesis 19:26). She serves as the paradigmatic example of attachment to what is being left behind. The imperative 'remember' (mnēmoneuete) is plural, addressed to all disciples.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 19:26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The Greek psychē means both 'life' and 'soul,' creating a deliberate double meaning. The verb peripoiēsasthai ('to preserve, to acquire for oneself') suggests self-protective hoarding. The contrasting verb zōgonēsei ('will give life to, will keep alive') is vivid — it means to generate life, to bring to life. The paradox: grasping at life kills it; releasing it generates it.
34. The Greek does not specify 'men' — the masculine form is generic, and the reference to sharing a bed could apply to any two people in a household. The verbs paralēmphthēsetai ('will be taken') and aphethēsetai ('will be left') are both passive — the agent of separation is not specified, leaving the meaning deliberately open: taken in judgment or taken in rescue? The text does not resolve this.
35. The participle alēthousai ('grinding') is feminine, so 'women' is explicit in the Greek here. Grinding grain with a hand mill was a daily domestic task typically done by women. The imagery pairs with the previous verse: whether in rest (bed) or work (grinding), the separation is sudden and total.
36. This verse is absent from many early manuscripts and is likely assimilated from Matthew 24:40. The SBLGNT includes it in brackets. We include it here following the SBLGNT text but note its disputed status. The pattern of three pairs (bed, mill, field) creates a comprehensive picture: judgment reaches into every sphere of life.
37. The Greek aetoi can mean either 'eagles' or 'vultures.' Since eagles do not typically feed on carrion while vultures do, and the saying describes gathering around a corpse (sōma, 'body'), 'vultures' is the more accurate zoological rendering. The proverb is enigmatic — it may mean that judgment, like vultures, finds its target inevitably, or that the signs of the end will be as unmistakable as vultures circling over death. Jesus answers the 'where' question with a riddle rather than a map coordinate.

18

Summary: *Luke 18 opens with two parables on prayer — the persistent widow and the unjust judge, followed by the Pharisee and the tax collector — then moves through Jesus's teaching on children and the kingdom, the encounter with the rich ruler, a third passion prediction, and the healing of a blind man near Jericho. The chapter traces a thematic arc from persistent, humble prayer to radical surrender of wealth and status, culminating in faith-driven healing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parable of the Pharisee and the tax collector (unique to Luke) is a masterclass in reversal: the righteous man leaves unjustified while the sinner goes home right with God. The rich ruler episode reveals that salvation is 'impossible' for humans but 'possible with God' — a statement that redefines the entire framework of religious achievement. Peter's question about the disciples' own sacrifice and Jesus's response promise both present-age restoration and eternal life.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'justified rather than the other' (v. 14) uses dikaiōtheis in a way that anticipates Pauline theology — we render it without importing later theological systems. The 'camel through the eye of a needle' (v. 25) is rendered literally; we do not adopt the later medieval legend about a small gate called 'The Needle's Eye,' as there is no historical evidence for it.*

Connections: *The persistent widow connects to the eschatological discourse of chapter 17 — God will vindicate his elect. The Pharisee-tax collector parable connects to Luke's programmatic concern with reversal (1:52-53, 14:11, 16:15). The rich ruler parallels Mark 10:17-31 and Matthew 19:16-30. The blind man's healing (paralleling Mark 10:46-52) serves as the final healing miracle before the Jerusalem entry.*

¹Then Jesus told them a parable about their need to pray always and not give up, ²Declaring, There was in a city a pass judgment on, which feared not God, neither regarded man. ³There was a widow in that city, and she kept coming to him, saying, 'Grant me justice against my adversary.' ⁴For a time he refused. But afterward he said to himself, 'Even though I do not fear God or respect anyone, ⁵Yet because this widow troubles me, I will give justice to her, so that not by her continual

coming she wear out me. ⁶And the Lord said, "Listen to what the unjust judge says. ⁷Will not God bring about justice for his chosen ones, who cry out to him day and night? Will he keep putting them off? ⁸I tell you, he will bring about justice for them quickly. But when the Son of Man comes, will he find faith on the earth?" ⁹He also told this parable to some who trusted in themselves that they were righteous and looked down on everyone else: ¹⁰"Two men went up to the temple to pray, one a Pharisee and the other a tax collector. ¹¹The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself: 'God, I thank you that I am not like other people — swindlers, the unjust, adulterers — or even like this tax collector. ¹²I fast twice a week; I give a tenth of everything I acquire.' ¹³But the tax collector, standing far off, would not even lift his eyes toward heaven, but beat his chest, saying, 'God, be merciful to me, a sinner!' ¹⁴I tell you, this man went home justified rather than the other. For everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and the one who humbles himself will be exalted." ¹⁵People were also bringing infants to him so that he might touch them. When the disciples saw this, they rebuked them. ¹⁶But Jesus called them to himself, saying, "Let the children come to me, and do not hinder them, for the kingdom of God belongs to such as these. ¹⁷Truly I tell you, whoever does not receive the kingdom of God like a child will never enter it." ¹⁸A certain ruler asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?" ¹⁹Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone. ²⁰You know the commandments: 'Do not commit adultery, do not murder, do not steal, do not bear false witness, honor your father and mother.'" ²¹He said, "I have kept all these since my youth." ²²When Jesus heard this, he said to him, "You still lack one thing. Sell everything you have and distribute it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me." ²³When he heard this, he became deeply grieved, because he was extremely wealthy. ²⁴Jesus, seeing his grief, said, "How difficult it is for those who have wealth to enter the kingdom of God! ²⁵For it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God." ²⁶Those who heard this said, "Then who can be saved?" ²⁷He said, "What is impossible with people is possible with God." ²⁸Peter said, "Look, we have left what we had and followed you." ²⁹He said to them, "Truly I tell you, there is no one who has left house or wife or brothers or parents or children for the sake of the kingdom of God ³⁰Indeed, who will not accept manifold more in this present time, and in the world to come life everlasting. ³¹Taking the Twelve aside, he said to them, "Look, we are going up to Jerusalem, and everything written by the prophets about the Son of Man will be fulfilled. ³²For he will be handed over to the Gentiles and will be mocked and mistreated and spit upon. ³³After flogging him, they will kill him. And on the third day he will rise." ³⁴But the disciples understood none of this. This saying was hidden from them, and they did not grasp what was being said. ³⁵As Jesus approached Jericho, a blind man was sitting beside the road, begging. ³⁶Hearing a crowd passing by, he asked what was happening. ³⁷They told him, "Jesus the Nazarene is passing by." ³⁸He called out, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!" ³⁹Those in front rebuked him, telling him to be silent. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!" ⁴⁰Jesus stopped and ordered the man to be brought to him. When he came near, Jesus asked him, ⁴¹"What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, let me see again." ⁴²Jesus said to him, "Receive your sight. Your faith has saved you." ⁴³Gave praise to god, immediately he received his sight, and followed him, glorifying God — and all the people, when they saw it.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke provides the interpretive key before the parable itself — an unusual technique. The verb *enkakein* ('to lose heart, to give up, to grow weary') suggests the temptation to stop praying when answers are delayed. The infinitive *dein* ('it is necessary') frames persistent prayer as a divine requirement, not merely a recommendation.
2. The judge is characterized by two negatives: no fear of God (the vertical relationship) and no respect for people (the horizontal relationship). The verb *entrepomenos* ('regarding, respecting, having shame before') implies a complete absence of social conscience. This is not a model of God but a foil — if even this judge eventually responds, how much more will a just God?
3. The imperfect *ērchetō* ('she kept coming') indicates repeated, persistent visits — not a single request. The verb *ekdikēson* ('vindicate, grant justice to') does not mean 'avenge' in the modern sense of retaliation but rather 'render a just verdict.' A widow in the ancient world had no male advocate and was legally vulnerable — her persistence was her only leverage.
4. The phrase *epi chronon* ('for a time') indicates a significant delay, not a brief pause. The judge's internal monologue (*eipen en heautō*, 'said within himself') reveals that his eventual action is motivated entirely by self-interest, not justice — making the *a fortiori* argument of verses 6-8 even more powerful.

5. The verb hypopiazē ('wear out, strike under the eye, give a black eye') is a boxing metaphor — the judge fears the widow will figuratively beat him into submission. The coarse humor is deliberate: a powerful judge is being pummeled by a powerless widow's persistence. The word kopon ('trouble, weariness') reinforces that her persistence is her only weapon.
6. Luke calls Jesus 'the Lord' (ho kyrios), his characteristic title for Jesus in the narrative framework. The phrase ho kritēs tēs adikias ('the judge of unrighteousness') is a Semitic genitive construction meaning 'the unrighteous judge.' Jesus draws attention to the judge's own words as the basis for the argument from lesser to greater.
7. The phrase eklektōn autou ('his chosen ones, his elect') carries covenantal weight — these are people God has specifically chosen and bound himself to. The verb makrothymeī ('is patient, delays') is ambiguous: is God patient with the elect (sustaining them during the wait) or patient regarding their enemies (delaying judgment)? We render as a second rhetorical question to preserve the ambiguity.
8. The phrase en tachei ('quickly, speedily, without delay') creates a tension with the parable's emphasis on prolonged waiting — 'quickly' is from God's perspective, not the petitioner's. The final question (ara heurēsei tēn pistin, 'will he indeed find the faith?') is haunting and unanswered. The article tēn before pistin ('the faith') may specify the kind of faith described in this parable — persistent, trusting prayer. Jesus leaves the question open, challenging the listener.
9. Luke again provides the interpretive key before the parable. The perfect participle pepoithotas ('having trusted, being confident') indicates a settled, ongoing self-assurance. The verb exouthenountas ('despising, treating as nothing') is strong — it means to regard others as utterly worthless. The combination of self-righteousness and contempt for others is the target of what follows.
10. The verb anebēsan ('went up') reflects Jerusalem's topography — the temple was on the highest point. The pairing of a Pharisee (the religious elite, known for scrupulous Torah observance) with a telōnēs ('tax collector,' despised as a collaborator with Rome and assumed to be corrupt) creates the maximum possible social and moral contrast for a Jewish audience.
11. The phrase pros heauton ('to himself' or 'about himself') is ambiguous — it could mean he prayed silently or that his prayer was self-directed rather than God-directed. His prayer is technically a thanksgiving (eucharisteō) but functions as self-congratulation. Every comparison is negative: he defines himself by what he is not rather than by who God is. The climactic 'or even like this tax collector' (ē kai hōs houtos ho telōnēs) drips with contempt — he has noticed the man and judged him.
12. The Torah required fasting only on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:29-31). Fasting twice weekly (Monday and Thursday, the traditional days) was a voluntary Pharisaic practice that exceeded the law's requirements. Similarly, tithing 'everything I acquire' (panta hosa ktōmai) goes beyond the Torah's agricultural tithe — he tithes even purchased goods, in case the seller had not tithed. His claims are probably truthful, which makes the parable's verdict all the more startling.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 16:29-31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Every detail contrasts with the Pharisee: the tax collector stands 'far off' (makrothen) rather than prominently, refuses to raise his eyes (the normal posture of prayer), and beats his chest (etypon to stēthos, a gesture of grief and self-condemnation). The verb hilasthēti ('be merciful, be propitiated') is related to hilastērion ('mercy seat, place of atonement') — he is essentially asking God to do for him what the Day of Atonement sacrifice does: to cover his sin. The article tō hamartōlō ('the sinner') is significant — he does not say 'a sinner' but 'the sinner,' as though he is the only one.
14. The perfect participle dedikaiōmenos ('having been justified, declared righteous') is a divine passive — God is the one who justifies. This is startling: the tax collector, who offered nothing but confession, leaves in right standing with God, while the Pharisee, who exceeded every requirement, does not. The concluding proverb (repeated from 14:11) is Luke's signature reversal theme. The verb katebē ('went down') contrasts with anebēsan ('went up') in verse 10 — the physical descent from the temple mirrors the spiritual descent of humility.
15. Luke uses brephē ('infants, babies') rather than Mark's paidia ('children'), emphasizing that these were very young — too young to come on their own. The verb haptētai ('to touch') implies a blessing through physical contact. The disciples' rebuke (epetimōn) uses the same word used for rebuking demons and storms, suggesting they viewed the interruption as inappropriate and beneath Jesus's dignity.
16. Jesus shifts from brephē ('infants') to paidia ('children') — a broader term that includes the infants but extends the principle. The present imperative with mē (mē kōlyete, 'stop hindering') implies the disciples are currently doing something that must cease. The phrase tōn toioutōn ('of such as these, to such ones') clarifies that the kingdom belongs not to children per se but to those who share their characteristics — dependence, receptivity, lack of status.
17. The double negative ou mē ('never, by no means') is the strongest form of negation in Greek — there are no exceptions. The comparison 'like a child' (hōs paidion) is about how one receives, not about innocence or purity. Children in the ancient world had no legal standing, no achievements to present, no leverage — they could only receive what was given. This connects directly to the Pharisee-tax collector parable: the one who receives God's mercy without presenting credentials is the one who enters.
18. Luke identifies the man as an archōn ('ruler, official') — Matthew calls him 'young' (neaniskos) and Mark simply 'a man.' The title 'Good Teacher' (didaskale agathe) is unusual and becomes the basis for Jesus's response. The question itself contains a tension: 'inherit' (klēronomēsō) implies receiving a gift, while 'what must I do' (ti poiēsas) implies earning it.

19. Jesus's response does not deny his own goodness but challenges the ruler's casual use of the term. The statement 'No one is good except God alone' (oudeis agathos ei mē heis ho theos) establishes an absolute standard that will prove relevant: if only God is truly good, then human moral achievement alone cannot secure eternal life. The implicit question is whether the ruler understands the full weight of calling someone 'good.'
20. Jesus cites five of the Ten Commandments — all from the second table (duties toward other people) — but conspicuously omits the tenth: 'You shall not covet.' Given the story's outcome, this omission may be deliberate. The order differs from the Hebrew Bible (Exodus 20) but follows the Septuagint order in some manuscripts (Deuteronomy 5:17-18 LXX places adultery before murder).
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 5:17-18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The verb ephylaxa ('I have guarded, kept, observed') implies careful, watchful obedience. The phrase ek neotētos ('from youth') refers to the age of accountability (around twelve or thirteen in Jewish practice). Jesus does not dispute his claim — this man may genuinely have lived an outwardly commandment-keeping life. The problem lies elsewhere.
22. The phrase eti hen soi leipei ('one thing still remains lacking for you') pierces through the ruler's self-assessment. The command is fourfold: sell (pōlēson), distribute (diados), come (deuro), follow (akolouthēi). Luke's version specifies 'everything' (panta hosa echeis) and 'distribute to the poor' (diados ptōchois), making the demand as radical as possible. The promise of 'treasure in heaven' (thēsauros en tois ouranois) reframes wealth: true riches are stored elsewhere.
23. The adjective perilypos ('deeply grieved, exceedingly sorrowful') is the same word used of Jesus in Gethsemane (Mark 14:34). Luke adds sphodra ('exceedingly, extremely') to plousios ('rich'), emphasizing the magnitude of what is being asked. The man's sorrow confirms both his genuine desire and his inability to pay the cost. Luke does not record him leaving — a subtle openness that Mark's account resolves more definitively (Mark 10:22).
24. The adverb dyskolōs ('with difficulty, hardly') is the key word — entering the kingdom is not impossible for the wealthy (as verse 27 will clarify) but extremely difficult. The phrase ta chrēmata echontes ('those having possessions') describes not merely the rich but those who hold onto their possessions as defining possessions.
25. The image is deliberately absurd — a kamēlon ('camel'), the largest animal in Palestine, through a trēmatis belonēs ('eye of a needle'), the smallest opening. There is no historical evidence for a medieval legend about a small gate called 'The Needle's Eye' in Jerusalem. Some manuscripts read kamilon ('rope') instead of kamēlon ('camel'), which would create a more logical comparison (rope through needle), but the harder reading (camel) is almost certainly original. The hyperbole underscores the impossibility of wealth-based entry into the kingdom.
26. The question reveals the audience's assumption: if the wealthy — who were commonly viewed as blessed by God — cannot enter the kingdom, then salvation seems impossible for anyone. The verb sōthēnai ('to be saved') broadens the discussion from kingdom entry to salvation itself. Their shock is genuine and theologically significant.
27. This is the theological center of the passage. The adjective adynata ('impossible things') is unqualified — Jesus does not soften it to 'difficult.' Human effort cannot achieve salvation; only divine power can accomplish it. This echoes the angel's word to Mary in 1:37: 'Nothing will be impossible with God' (ouk adynatēsei para tou theou pan rhēma).
28. Peter's statement is an implicit question: if the rich ruler failed to give up everything, what about those who did? The phrase ta idia ('our own things, what belonged to us') is more modest than Mark's panta ('everything') — Luke's Peter does not claim to have left 'everything' but rather 'what was ours.' The aorist verbs aphentes ('having left') and ēkolouthēsamen ('we followed') present the decision as completed and definitive.
29. Luke's list of what might be left behind includes 'wife' (gynaika), which is unique among the Synoptic parallels and provocative — it does not necessarily advocate abandoning a spouse but recognizes that discipleship may require separation (cf. 14:26). The phrase heneken tēs basileias tou theou ('for the sake of the kingdom of God') replaces Mark's 'for my sake and the gospel's,' focusing on the kingdom rather than Jesus personally.
30. The promise is twofold: pollaplasiona ('many times more, manifold') in this present age (en tō kairō toutō), plus eternal life (zōēn aiōnion) in the age to come. Luke omits Mark's specification of 'houses, brothers, sisters, mothers, children, and fields' as well as 'with persecutions,' offering a more streamlined promise. The two-age framework (this age/the coming age) reflects standard Jewish eschatology.
31. This is Jesus's third and most detailed passion prediction in Luke (cf. 9:22, 9:44). The phrase telesthēsetai panta ta gegrammena ('everything written will be completed/fulfilled') frames the passion as the fulfillment of scripture, not a tragic accident. Luke's version uniquely emphasizes prophetic fulfillment — Mark and Matthew focus more on the events themselves.
32. The sequence of passive verbs (paradothēsetai, empaiχthēsetai, hybristhēsetai, emptysthēsetai) creates a crescendo of humiliation. The 'Gentiles' (ethnesin) refers to the Roman authorities — Jesus specifies that his death will involve both Jewish and Roman agency. The verb hybristhēsetai ('to be treated with hubris, outrageously mistreated') implies deliberate degradation.
33. The verb mastigōsantes ('having flogged') refers to the Roman flagellum — a whip with embedded bone and metal that tore flesh. The prediction moves from humiliation through death to resurrection in a single sentence. The phrase tē hēmera tē tritē ('on the third day') is the standard early Christian formula for the resurrection (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:4).
34. Luke's threefold emphasis on incomprehension is unique and emphatic: they did not understand (synēkan), the meaning was hidden (kekrymmenon) from them, and they did not know (eginōskon) what was said. The passive kekrymmenon ('having been hidden') suggests divine

concealment — God deliberately veiled the meaning until after the resurrection (cf. 24:45, where the risen Jesus 'opens their minds'). This is not merely intellectual failure but a divinely imposed limitation.

35. Luke places the healing as Jesus approaches Jericho, while Mark 10:46 places it as Jesus leaves Jericho — a well-known discrepancy. Various harmonizations have been proposed (two Jerichos, two healings), but we render Luke's text as written. Mark names the man Bartimaeus; Luke does not. The blind beggar sat beside the road (para tēn hodon), the only location where a beggar could access passing travelers.
36. The imperfect epythnato ('he was asking, he kept asking') suggests repeated inquiry — the blind man could hear but not see the commotion and persistently sought information. The optative eiē ('might be') indicates indirect discourse in a formal literary style characteristic of Luke.
37. The designation Nazōraios ('Nazarene') identifies Jesus by his hometown of Nazareth. The present tense parerchetai ('is passing by') conveys immediacy — the opportunity is now and will not last. The crowd serves as intermediary between the blind man and Jesus.
38. The title 'Son of David' (huie Daid) is a messianic title — the blind man confesses Jesus as the expected Davidic Messiah. This is remarkable: a blind beggar sees what the disciples cannot (v. 34). The plea eleēson me ('have mercy on me') uses the same verb as the tax collector's prayer in 18:13, connecting the two stories thematically.
39. As with the parents bringing children (v. 15), the crowd tries to prevent access to Jesus, and as with the persistent widow (vv. 1-8), refusal only intensifies the plea. The imperfect ekrazen ('he kept crying out') paired with pollō mallon ('much more, all the more') shows an escalation — he refuses to be silenced. His persistence mirrors the parable that opened this chapter.
40. The verb statheis ('having stood still, having stopped') is significant — Jesus halts his journey to Jerusalem for this one man. The verb ekeleusen ('commanded, ordered') shows authority — Jesus directs the same crowd that tried to silence the man to now bring him forward. The question that follows (v. 41) is not for information but for the man's own confession of need.
41. Jesus asks the same question he implicitly asked the rich ruler — 'What do you want?' The blind man's answer is direct and humble: anablepsō ('to see again, to look up') implies he was not born blind but had lost his sight. His address kyrie ('Lord') may be simple respect ('sir') or a deeper confession, given his use of 'Son of David' earlier.
42. The imperative anablepsō ('see again!') is a command, not a prayer — Jesus speaks healing into existence with a word. The phrase hē pistis sou sesōken se ('your faith has saved you') is identical to 17:19 (the grateful leper), again using sōzō to indicate that physical healing and spiritual salvation are bound together. The blind man's faith was demonstrated in his persistent refusal to be silenced.
43. The adverb parachrēma ('immediately, at once') is a Lukan favorite for emphasizing the instantaneous nature of divine action. The healed man ēkolouthēi ('was following') Jesus — the imperfect tense suggests ongoing discipleship, not a one-time response. Unlike the rich ruler who went away grieving, the blind man follows. The chapter ends with communal praise (pas ho laos, 'all the people'), a characteristic Lukan conclusion that frames the miracle as a public revelation of God's power.

19

Summary: *Luke 19 narrates Zacchaeus's conversion in Jericho, the parable of the ten minas (pounds), Jesus's triumphal entry into Jerusalem, his weeping over the city, and the cleansing of the temple. The chapter marks the decisive transition from the travel narrative (9:51-19:27) to Jesus's Jerusalem ministry. Themes of wealth, repentance, judgment, and kingship converge as Jesus enters his final week.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Zacchaeus story (unique to Luke) is the counterexample to the rich ruler of chapter 18 — another wealthy man who, unlike the ruler, actually surrenders his wealth and receives salvation. The parable of the minas differs from Matthew's parable of the talents (25:14-30) in key details: the nobleman goes to 'receive a kingdom,' and his citizens send a delegation rejecting his rule — likely an allusion to Archelaus's contested succession in 4 BC, an event the original audience would have recognized. Jesus's weeping over Jerusalem (unique to Luke) is one of only two recorded instances of Jesus weeping, the other being at Lazarus's tomb (John 11:35).*

Translation Friction: *The parable of the minas and Matthew's parable of the talents share significant overlap but differ enough to be treated as separate traditions. We render Luke's version on its own terms without harmonizing. The 'cleansing of the temple' is placed differently in John (2:13-22); we follow Luke's chronology. The phrase 'today salvation has come to this house' (v. 9) is rendered without importing later systematic theology about the mechanism of salvation.*

Connections: Zacchaeus connects to the theme of tax collectors throughout Luke (3:12, 5:27-32, 7:29, 15:1, 18:10-14). The parable of the minas echoes the parable of the talents (Matthew 25) but with distinctive political overtones. The triumphal entry fulfills Zechariah 9:9 (though Luke does not quote it explicitly, unlike Matthew 21:5). Jesus's weeping connects to the prophetic lament tradition (Jeremiah 8:18-9:1). The temple cleansing quotes Isaiah 56:7 and Jeremiah 7:11.

¹Jesus entered Jericho and was passing through it. ²A man was there named Zacchaeus. He was a chief tax collector and was wealthy. ³He was trying to see who Jesus was, but he could not because of the crowd, since he was short in stature. ⁴So he ran ahead and climbed up into a sycamore-fig tree to see him, because Jesus was about to pass that way. ⁵When Jesus reached the spot, he looked up and said to him, "Zacchaeus, hurry and come down, for I must stay at your house today." ⁶He hurried down and welcomed Jesus joyfully. ⁷When the people saw this, they all grumbled, "He has gone to be the guest of a man who is a sinner." ⁸But Zacchaeus stood and said to the Lord, "Look, Lord, I am giving half of my possessions to the poor, and if I have cheated anyone of anything, I am paying back four times as much." ⁹Jesus said to him, "Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. ¹⁰For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the lost." ¹¹While they were listening to this, he went on to tell a parable, because he was near Jerusalem and they supposed that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately. ¹²He said, "A man of noble birth went to a distant country to receive a kingdom for himself and then return. ¹³He called ten of his slaves and gave them ten minas, saying, 'Conduct business with this until I come back.' ¹⁴But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We do not want this man to rule over us.' ¹⁵When he returned, having received the kingdom, he ordered the slaves to whom he had given the money to be called to him so that he could find out what they had earned by conducting business. ¹⁶The first came forward, saying, 'Master, your mina has earned ten minas more.' ¹⁷He said to him, 'Well done, good slave! Because you have been faithful in a very small matter, you shall have authority over ten cities.' ¹⁸The second came, saying, 'Master, your mina has produced five minas.' ¹⁹He said to this one also, 'You shall be over five cities.' ²⁰Then another came, saying, 'Master, here is your mina. I kept it stored away in a cloth. ²¹For I was afraid of you, because you are a harsh man. You take out what you did not put in, and reap what you did not sow.' ²²He said to him, 'I will judge you by your own words, you wicked slave! You knew that I am a harsh man, taking out what I did not put in and reaping what I did not sow? ²³Then why did you not put my money in the bank? At least when I returned, I could have collected it with interest.' ²⁴Then he said to those standing by, 'Take the mina from him and give it to the one who has ten minas.' ²⁵They said to him, 'Master, he already has ten minas!' ²⁶I tell you, to everyone who has, more will be given, but from the one who does not have, even what he has will be taken away. ²⁷But as for these enemies of mine who did not want me to rule over them — bring them here and slaughter them in front of me.'" ²⁸After saying this, he went on ahead, going up to Jerusalem. ²⁹As he approached Bethphage and Bethany, near the hill called the Mount of Olives, he sent two of the disciples, ³⁰Declaring, Go you into the village over opposed to you. In the which at your entering you will find a colt tied, whereon yet never man sat — loose him, and bring him hither. ³¹If anyone asks you, 'Why are you untying it?' you are to say, 'The Lord has need of it.'" ³²Those who were sent went and found everything just as he had told them. ³³As they were untying the colt, its owners said to them, "Why are you untying the colt?" ³⁴They said, "The Lord has need of it." ³⁵They brought it to Jesus, and throwing their cloaks on the colt, they put Jesus on it. ³⁶As he rode along, people spread their cloaks on the road. ³⁷As he was now approaching the descent of the Mount of Olives, the whole crowd of disciples began to praise God joyfully with a loud voice for all the mighty works they had seen, ³⁸Declaring, Blessed be the King that comes by the authority of the Lord — peace in heaven, and glory in the highest. ³⁹Some of the Pharisees in the crowd said to him, "Teacher, rebuke your disciples." ⁴⁰He answered, "I tell you, if these were silent, the stones would cry out." ⁴¹As he drew near and saw the city, he wept over it, ⁴²Declaring, If you hadst known, even you, at least in this your day, the things which belong to your peace! but now they are hid from your eyes. ⁴³For the days will come upon you when your enemies will build an embankment against you and surround you and hem you in on every side. ⁴⁴They will dash you to the ground — you and your children within you. They will not leave one stone upon another in you, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation." ⁴⁵Then he entered the temple and began to drive out those who were selling, ⁴⁶Declaring to them, It is written, My home is the home of petition — but you have made it a den of thieves. ⁴⁷He was teaching daily in

the temple. The chief priests, the scribes, and the leading men of the people were seeking to destroy him, ⁴⁸Could not find what they might do — for all the people were very eager to listen to him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The imperfect *diērcheto* ('was passing through') suggests Jesus intended to travel through Jericho without stopping — the encounter with Zacchaeus will interrupt his transit. Jericho was a prosperous city near the Jordan River, a major customs and taxation center on the trade route from the east.
2. The name *Zakchaïos* is the Greek form of the Hebrew *Zakkai* ('pure, innocent, righteous') — an ironic name for a man whose profession made him ritually and socially impure. The title *architelōnēs* ('chief tax collector') appears only here in the New Testament and indicates he supervised other tax collectors in the Jericho district, profiting from their collections. The detail 'he was wealthy' (*autos plousios*) immediately connects him to the rich ruler of 18:18-23.
3. The imperfect *ežētei* ('he was seeking, he kept trying') indicates persistent effort. The phrase *tē hēlikia mikros* ('small in stature/height') is stated without judgment — Luke simply explains the physical obstacle. The detail is practical: the crowd would not have made way for a despised tax collector, so his short stature compounded his social exclusion.
4. The verb *prodramōn* ('having run ahead') shows undignified haste — a wealthy man running was socially inappropriate in the ancient Near East (cf. the father in 15:20). The *sykomorea* ('sycamore-fig') is a distinct species from the *sykaminō* ('mulberry') of 17:6 — it has a short trunk with wide, low branches, making it easy to climb. Luke specifies that Jesus was going to pass by that exact spot, setting up the 'chance' encounter that is anything but accidental.
5. Jesus calls Zacchaeus by name — unexplained by the narrative, suggesting either prior knowledge or supernatural perception. The verb *dei* ('it is necessary, I must') indicates divine compulsion, the same word used for the necessity of the passion (9:22, 18:31). The word *sēmeron* ('today') is a theologically loaded term in Luke, always marking the present moment of salvation (2:11, 4:21, 23:43). Jesus does not ask permission but announces his intention.
6. Zacchaeus's response mirrors Jesus's urgency: *speusas* ('having hurried') echoes Jesus's *speusas* in verse 5. The verb *hypedexato* ('welcomed, received as a guest') implies formal hospitality. The participle *chairōn* ('rejoicing') shows that the encounter is received as gift, not imposition. The contrast with the rich ruler's grief (18:23) is stark — same demand for radical surrender, opposite emotional response.
7. The verb *diegongyzon* ('they were grumbling, murmuring') echoes Israel's wilderness complaints and is a recurring response to Jesus's association with sinners in Luke (5:30, 15:2). The word *pantes* ('all') indicates universal disapproval — not just Pharisees but the entire crowd. The verb *katalysai* ('to find lodging, to be a guest') means Jesus accepted the full hospitality of the house, sharing table and shelter with a 'sinner' (*hamartōlō*).
8. The verb *statheis* ('having stood') indicates a formal, public declaration. The present tense *didōmi* ('I am giving') and *apodidōmi* ('I am paying back') may indicate a new resolution or may describe an existing practice — the Greek is ambiguous. The fourfold restitution (*tetraploun*) exceeds the Torah's requirement (Numbers 5:7 requires the principal plus one-fifth) and matches the penalty for stealing and slaughtering a sheep (Exodus 22:1). The verb *esykophantēsa* ('extorted, defrauded') is the same word used for the soldiers' question in 3:14.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 5:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 22:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The word *sēmeron* ('today') echoes verse 5 and is the fulfillment of the divine necessity announced there. 'Salvation' (*sōtēria*) comes to the 'house' (*oikō*) — extending beyond Zacchaeus to his entire household. The phrase 'son of Abraham' (*huios Abraam*) reclaims Zacchaeus's identity: despite his profession and reputation, he belongs to the covenant people. Jesus does not say Zacchaeus has become a son of Abraham but that he is one — his covenant identity was never lost, only obscured.
10. This verse functions as a mission statement for Jesus in Luke's Gospel, summarizing the theology of chapter 15 (the lost sheep, lost coin, lost son) in a single sentence. The two infinitives *zētēsai* ('to seek') and *sōsai* ('to save') present Jesus as active searcher, not passive recipient — he goes to the lost, not the other way around. The neuter participle *to apolōlos* ('the lost thing, that which has been destroyed') encompasses anyone in the state of lostness. This verse directly answers the crowd's grumbling in verse 7.
11. Luke explicitly states the parable's purpose: to correct the expectation that the kingdom would arrive instantly (*parachrēma*, 'immediately') upon Jesus's entry into Jerusalem. The proximity to Jerusalem (*engys einai Ierousalēm*) and the crowd's eschatological excitement provide the interpretive context. The verb *anaphainesthai* ('to appear, to be revealed') suggests they expected a dramatic, visible manifestation of God's rule.
12. The scenario closely mirrors the historical precedent of Archelaus, son of Herod the Great, who traveled to Rome in 4 BC to receive confirmation of his kingship from Augustus. The Jericho audience would have recognized the allusion immediately, as Herod had built a winter palace near Jericho. The verb *hypostrepsai* ('to return') foreshadows the return of the Son of Man.
13. A *mna* ('mina') was a Greek unit of currency worth about 100 denarii — roughly three to four months' wages for a laborer. Unlike Matthew's parable of the talents (where different amounts are given to different servants), here each slave receives one mina each, making the different outcomes purely a matter of effort and skill. The verb *pragmateusasthe* ('do business, trade, conduct commerce') is a clear commercial term.

14. This detail is unique to Luke's parable and has no parallel in Matthew's version. Historically, a Jewish delegation of fifty traveled to Rome to oppose Archelaus's appointment (Josephus, *Antiquities* 17.11.1). In the parable, the citizens (*politai*, those who owe civic allegiance) represent those who reject the nobleman's — and by extension, Jesus's — kingship. The verb *basileuein* ('to rule as king') makes the political and theological stakes explicit.
15. The nobleman returns with the kingdom secured — his authority is now confirmed. The verb *diepragmateusanto* ('they had gained by trading') is a compound form of the commercial verb from verse 13. The accounting scene represents final judgment: the absent king returns and demands an account.
16. A tenfold return (1,000 percent) represents extraordinary stewardship. The slave attributes the success to 'your mina' (*hē mna sou*), acknowledging that the capital belonged to the master. The address *kyrie* ('master, lord') maintains the master-slave relationship.
17. The exclamation *euge* ('well done, excellent') is rare in the New Testament. The phrase *en elachistō* ('in a very small thing') is startling — a mina was not an insignificant sum, yet compared to ruling ten cities it is tiny. The principle: faithfulness with small trust leads to responsibility over much greater things. The reward is authority (*exousian*), not rest — kingdom service expands rather than ends.
18. A fivefold return is still excellent, though less than the first slave's tenfold. The verb *epoiēsen* ('made, produced') differs from the first slave's *prosērgasato* ('earned in addition'), perhaps reflecting a slight narrative variation without theological significance.
19. The reward is proportional: ten minas earned yields authority over ten cities; five minas earned yields five cities. This proportionality distinguishes Luke's parable from Matthew's, where both the five-talent and two-talent servants receive the same commendation. The brevity of the response — no 'well done' or 'good slave' — may reflect the proportional nature of the reward.
20. The *soudarion* ('cloth, face-cloth, handkerchief') was a small piece of fabric — storing money in it rather than investing it represents the deliberate choice to do nothing. The slave returns exactly what was given, with no increase. The verb *apokeimenēn* ('stored away, laid aside') suggests hiding rather than protecting.
21. The adjective *austēros* ('harsh, strict, exacting') is the slave's characterization of the master, not the narrator's. The accusations — taking what he did not deposit and reaping what he did not sow — portray the master as exploitative. Whether this reflects the slave's genuine perception or a self-serving excuse is left to the reader. In the parabolic context, it represents a distorted view of God that produces paralysis rather than faithful action.
22. The master turns the slave's own characterization against him: 'Out of your own mouth' (*ek tou stomatos sou*) means 'by your own testimony.' The address *ponēre doule* ('wicked slave') contrasts sharply with 'good slave' (*agathe doule*) in verse 17. The master does not deny being *austēros* but uses the slave's own assessment to condemn his inaction: if you believed I was demanding, you should have been more motivated, not less.
23. The *trapezan* ('table, bank') refers to a money-changer's table where deposits could earn interest (*tokos*, 'interest, offspring'). Even the minimal action of depositing the money would have produced some return. The Torah prohibited charging interest to fellow Israelites (Deuteronomy 23:19-20) but allowed it with foreigners — Jesus uses banking as a parabolic illustration, not an endorsement of lending practices.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 23:19-20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The redistribution is counterintuitive: the mina goes to the one who already has the most, not to the one with five. The 'those standing by' (*tois parestōsin*) are courtiers or attendants, emphasizing the king's authority to command. The principle of compounding faithfulness — more is given to those who have used what they were given — is made explicit in the next verse.
25. This interjection by the bystanders (or possibly the other slaves) expresses surprise at what seems unfair — giving more to the one who has the most. The protest highlights the counterintuitive logic of the kingdom, which defies human expectations of equal distribution.
26. This saying appears in multiple contexts across the Gospels (Matthew 13:12, 25:29; Mark 4:25), always articulating the same principle: faithfulness increases capacity while unfaithfulness diminishes it. 'The one who has' refers not to material wealth but to productive use of what has been entrusted. The passive verbs (*dothēsetai*, *arthēsetai*) are divine passives — God is the agent of both giving and taking.
27. This is the most violent conclusion to any of Jesus's parables. The verb *kataspaxate* ('slaughter, butcher') is graphic — it was used for killing sacrificial animals. Historically, Archelaus did execute his opponents upon receiving his kingdom. Within the parable, this represents the fate of those who actively oppose the king's rule (v. 14). Whether this maps directly onto eschatological judgment or functions as a warning within the parabolic world is a matter of interpretation. We render the Greek as stated.
28. The imperfect *eporeueto* ('he was going') resumes the travel narrative, and *anabainōn* ('going up') reflects Jerusalem's elevation — all roads to Jerusalem ascend. The phrase 'went on ahead' (*emprosthen*) shows Jesus leading, with the crowd and disciples following. The transition from parable to narrative is abrupt: the warning about rejected kingship gives way to the very journey that will lead to its fulfillment.
29. Bethphage ('house of unripe figs') and Bethany ('house of affliction' or 'house of dates') were villages on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about two miles from Jerusalem. The Mount of Olives (to *oros* to *kaloumenon Elaiōn*) held eschatological significance: Zechariah 14:4 prophesied that the LORD would stand on it in the last days. Jesus's approach from this direction is symbolically charged.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 14:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

30. The pōlon ('colt, young animal') in Luke is not specified as a donkey's colt (Matthew and John make this explicit). The detail that no one had ever sat on it (oudeis pōpote anthrōpōn ekathisen) indicates a ritually unused animal — in the Old Testament, animals dedicated to sacred purposes were to be unworked (Numbers 19:2, Deuteronomy 21:3, 1 Samuel 6:7). Jesus's foreknowledge of the colt's presence and status is either prophetic or pre-arranged.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 19:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 21:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 6:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The phrase ho kyrios autou chreian echei ('the Lord has need of it') is ambiguous: kyrios could mean 'the Lord' (Jesus, making a divine claim), 'the master' (the colt's owner, who has authorized the borrowing), or 'its owner' (explaining the action). In context, 'the Lord' as a reference to Jesus seems most likely, as the phrase serves as a password of sorts that the disciples are told will be sufficient.
32. The phrase kathōs eipen autois ('just as he had told them') emphasizes Jesus's prophetic accuracy and sovereign knowledge. The narrative moves briskly through the fulfillment of his instructions.
33. The plural hoi kyrioi autou ('its owners') is noteworthy — the colt was jointly owned, perhaps by a family. The question matches Jesus's prediction exactly (v. 31), further confirming his foreknowledge.
34. The disciples repeat Jesus's exact words, and the response is apparently sufficient — the owners do not object further. This suggests either that Jesus was known to the owners, that 'the Lord' functioned as an agreed-upon authorization, or that the narrative compresses a longer exchange.
35. The casting of garments (himatia, 'outer cloaks') over the animal serves as an improvised saddle but also echoes the coronation of Jehu, where supporters threw their cloaks under him on the steps (2 Kings 9:13). The verb epebibasan ('they set upon, they mounted') indicates the disciples physically helped Jesus onto the animal — a formal enthronement gesture.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 9:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The imperfect hypestrōnnyon ('they were spreading') indicates a continuous action as the procession moved — people kept laying cloaks in his path. This echoes 2 Kings 9:13 more directly. Luke omits the palm branches mentioned in John 12:13 and the 'branches from the fields' in Mark 11:8.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 9:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. Luke specifies the location precisely: the katabasei ('descent, downward slope') of the Mount of Olives, where the panoramic view of Jerusalem and the temple would have come into full sight. Luke's version attributes the praise to 'the whole crowd of disciples' (hapan to plēthos tōn mathētōn) rather than the general crowd. The dynameis ('mighty works, miracles') they had witnessed become the basis for their praise.
38. The acclamation quotes Psalm 118:26 but Luke inserts 'the king' (ho basileus) into the psalm citation — making the royal claim explicit where the original psalm was more general. The phrase 'peace in heaven and glory in the highest' (en ouranō eirēnē kai doxa en hypsistois) echoes the angels' song at Jesus's birth (2:14) but reverses the direction: at the nativity, peace was proclaimed on earth; here, peace is proclaimed in heaven. The inclusio (literary bookend) connecting birth and entry into Jerusalem is deliberate.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 118:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The Pharisees are 'in the crowd' (apo tou ochlou), not separate from it — they are witnesses to the procession. Their demand that Jesus silence the disciples reveals their alarm at the messianic implications of the acclamation. The address 'Teacher' (didaskale) rather than 'Lord' reflects their refusal to acknowledge Jesus's royal claim.
40. Jesus's response is among his most memorable sayings (unique to Luke). The imagery of stones crying out may echo Habakkuk 2:11 ('the stone will cry out from the wall'). The declaration implies that the praise is cosmically necessary — creation itself would testify if humans fell silent. The conditional ean ... siōpēsousin ('if they should be silent') uses a future indicative in a conditional clause, expressing a vivid, almost impossible hypothetical.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Habakkuk 2:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The verb eklausen ('he wept') indicates audible weeping or sobbing, not silent tears (for which dakryō would be used, as in John 11:35). This is unique to Luke and profoundly ironic: the crowd is celebrating while Jesus mourns. He weeps at the moment of his greatest public triumph because he sees what the crowd cannot — the city's coming destruction.
42. The sentence breaks off — an anacoluthon (grammatically incomplete sentence) that mimics the emotion of the speaker. The phrase kai sy ('even you') is emphatic: Jerusalem, of all cities, should have recognized the moment. The ta pros eirēnēn ('the things pertaining to peace') echoes the city's name (Yerushalayim, traditionally connected to shalom). The passive ekrybē ('they have been hidden') is a divine passive — God has concealed from Jerusalem what it needed to see, a judicial act of divine hardening.

43. The military language precisely describes a Roman siege: *charaka* ('palisade, siege embankment') refers to the wooden and earthen rampart that encircled a besieged city. The verb *perikyklōsousin* ('will encircle') and *synexousin* ('will press in, constrict') describe progressive tightening of the siege. This was fulfilled literally in AD 70 when Titus's forces built a circumvallation wall around Jerusalem (Josephus, War 5.12.1-2).
44. The verb *edaphiousin* ('dash to the ground, level, raze') is violent — it includes the image of smashing against the ground. The inclusion of 'your children within you' (*ta tekna sou en soi*) makes the prophecy personal and devastating. The phrase *ton kairon tēs episkopēs sou* ('the time of your visitation') is the theological crux: *episkopē* means 'visitation, inspection' — God has come to inspect his city and found it wanting. The *kairos* ('appointed time, decisive moment') is distinguished from *chronos* ('ordinary time'); this was the unique, unrepeatable moment of divine visitation that Jerusalem missed.
45. Luke's account of the temple cleansing is the most compressed of all four Gospels — he mentions only sellers (*pōlountas*), not buyers, money changers, or dove sellers. The verb *ekballein* ('to drive out, to throw out') is the same word used for casting out demons, giving the action a purging quality. The temple commerce, though necessary for sacrifice, had apparently expanded beyond appropriate bounds, commercializing sacred space.
46. Jesus combines two prophetic texts: Isaiah 56:7 ('my house shall be called a house of prayer for all nations') and Jeremiah 7:11 ('Has this house become a den of robbers in your eyes?'). Luke omits Isaiah's 'for all nations' (which Mark 11:17 includes). The word *lēstōn* ('robbers, bandits') is stronger than 'thieves' — it implies violent, predatory exploitation. Jeremiah's original context was a warning that the first temple's destruction was imminent because the people treated it as a safe haven for injustice; Jesus implies the same fate for the second temple.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 56:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 7:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. The imperfect *ēn didaskōn* ('he was teaching') and *ezētoun* ('they were seeking') establish two ongoing, simultaneous activities: Jesus teaches publicly while the authorities plot privately. Luke adds *hoi prōtoi tou laou* ('the leading men of the people') to Mark's chief priests and scribes, broadening the opposition to include the lay aristocracy. The verb *apolesai* ('to destroy, to kill') is the same word used for what the flood did to Noah's generation (17:27).
48. The verb *exekremeto* ('hung upon, was suspended from') is a vivid metaphor — the people literally 'hung from him listening.' It appears only here in the New Testament. The popular support for Jesus creates a political obstacle that forces the authorities to seek covert means, which they eventually find through Judas (22:1-6). This verse sets up the tension that drives the passion narrative: the leaders want Jesus dead, but the people's devotion makes open action impossible.

20

Summary: *Luke 20 records a series of confrontations between Jesus and the Jerusalem authorities during his final week of teaching in the temple. The chapter moves through the question of Jesus's authority, the parable of the wicked tenants, the question about paying taxes to Caesar, the Sadducees' question about the resurrection, and Jesus's counter-question about David's son. Each encounter escalates the conflict that will lead to his arrest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The parable of the wicked tenants is one of the clearest allegorical parables in the Synoptic tradition, with the vineyard owner representing God, the tenants representing Israel's leaders, the servants representing the prophets, and the beloved son representing Jesus. The 'render to Caesar' saying is one of the most cited and debated pronouncements in Christian political theology. The Sadducees' resurrection question provides rare insight into an intra-Jewish theological dispute that Jesus adjudicates by appealing to the Torah itself — the only scripture the Sadducees accepted.*

Translation Friction: *The parable of the wicked tenants has been historically misused to justify antisemitism. The parable targets the leadership class, not the Jewish people as a whole. We render the Greek as written and note the parable's allegorical dimensions without importing supersessionist theology. The 'render to Caesar' passage is deliberately ambiguous — Jesus does not resolve the tension between divine and imperial claims, and we do not resolve it either.*

Connections: *The vineyard parable draws on Isaiah 5:1-7 (the Song of the Vineyard). The rejected cornerstone quotation comes from Psalm 118:22, the same psalm quoted during the triumphal entry (19:38). The resurrection argument cites Exodus 3:6 (the burning bush). The 'David's son' question quotes Psalm 110:1, the most frequently cited Old Testament text in the New Testament.*

¹One day, as he was teaching the people in the temple and proclaiming the good news, the chief priests and the scribes, together with the elders, confronted him. ²Spoke to him and stated, Tell us, by what authority doest you these things? or who is he that offered you this authority? ³He answered them, "I will also ask you a question. Tell me: ⁴Was the baptism of John from heaven, or from human origin?" ⁵They discussed it among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why did you not believe him?' ⁶But if we say, 'From human origin,' all the people will stone us, because they are convinced that John was a prophet." ⁷So they answered that they did not know where it came from. ⁸Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things." ⁹He began to tell the people this parable: "A man planted a vineyard, leased it to tenant farmers, and went away for a long time. ¹⁰At harvest time he sent a slave to the tenants so they would give him his share of the vineyard's fruit. But the tenants beat him and sent him away empty-handed. ¹¹He sent yet another slave, and they beat that one too, dishonored him, and sent him away empty-handed. ¹²He sent still a third, and they wounded this one too and threw him out. ¹³Then the owner of the vineyard said, 'What shall I do? I will send my beloved son. Perhaps they will respect him.' ¹⁴But when the tenants saw him, they discussed it among themselves, saying, 'This is the heir. Let us kill him, so that the inheritance will be ours.' ¹⁵They threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. What then will the owner of the vineyard do to them? ¹⁶He will come and destroy those tenants and give the vineyard to others." When they heard this, they said, "May it never be!" ¹⁷But Jesus looked directly at them and said, "Then what is the meaning of this scripture: 'The stone the builders rejected has become the cornerstone'? ¹⁸Everyone who falls on that stone will be broken to pieces, and the one on whom it falls — it will crush him." ¹⁹The scribes and the chief priests wanted to seize him at that very hour, but they feared the people, for they knew he had told this parable against them. ²⁰Watching for an opportunity, they sent spies who pretended to be sincere, so that they might catch him in something he said, in order to hand him over to the authority and jurisdiction of the governor. ²¹They questioned him, saying, "Teacher, we know that you speak and teach correctly and show no partiality, but teach the way of God truthfully. ²²Is it lawful for us to pay taxes to Caesar, or not?" ²³But he saw through their craftiness and said to them, ²⁴"Show me a denarius. Whose image and inscription does it bear?" They said, "Caesar's." ²⁵He said to them, "Then give back to Caesar what belongs to Caesar, and to God what belongs to God." ²⁶They were unable to catch him in anything he said in front of the people, and amazed by his answer, they fell silent. ²⁷Some of the Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him and asked, ²⁸"Teacher, Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies leaving a wife but no children, the man should marry the widow and raise up offspring for his brother. ²⁹Now there were seven brothers. The first married a wife and died childless. ³⁰The second ³¹The third picked up her. And in like manner the seven also — then they departed no children, and died. ³²Finally, the woman also died. ³³In the resurrection, therefore, whose wife will the woman be? For all seven had her as wife." ³⁴Jesus said to them, "The people of this age marry and are given in marriage. ³⁵But those who are considered worthy to attain that age and the resurrection from the dead neither marry nor are given in marriage. ³⁶For they cannot die anymore, because they are like angels and are children of God, being children of the resurrection. ³⁷But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed in the passage about the bush, where he calls the Lord 'the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob.' ³⁸He is not the God of the dead but of the living, for all are alive to him." ³⁹Some of the scribes responded, "Teacher, you have spoken well." ⁴⁰For they no longer dared to ask him anything. ⁴¹Then he said to them, "How can they say that the Christ is David's son? ⁴²For David himself says in the Book of Psalms, 'The Lord said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand, ⁴³Till I make your enemies your footstool. ⁴⁴David thus calls him 'Lord' — so how can he be his son?" ⁴⁵While all the people were listening, he said to his disciples, ⁴⁶"Watch out for the scribes, who like to walk around in long robes, and love greetings in the marketplaces, the best seats in the synagogues, and the places of honor at banquets. ⁴⁷They devour the houses of widows and make long prayers for appearance's sake. These will receive a more severe judgment."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Luke uses the verb *euangelizomenou* ('proclaiming good news, preaching the gospel'), unique to his version of this scene. The three groups — chief priests (*archiereis*), scribes (*grammateis*), and elders (*presbyteroi*) — constitute the Sanhedrin, the supreme Jewish governing council. Their approach is described as *epestēsan* ('stood upon, confronted'), implying an official and possibly hostile approach.

2. The double question targets both the nature ('what kind of authority') and the source ('who authorized you') of Jesus's actions. The word *exousia* ('authority, right, power') is a legal and religious term — they are demanding his credentials. The phrase *tauta poieis* ('you are doing these things') refers to the temple cleansing and the teaching; both require rabbinic or priestly authorization that Jesus has not sought.
3. Jesus's counter-question is a standard rabbinic technique — answering a question with a question was not evasion but a recognized form of argumentation. By establishing that they must answer first, Jesus shifts the power dynamic of the exchange.
4. The dichotomy is absolute: *ex ouranou* ('from heaven,' meaning 'from God') or *ex anthrōpōn* ('from humans,' meaning 'of merely human invention'). There is no middle ground. The question is strategically brilliant because the authorities' answer to this question will logically determine the answer to their own question about Jesus's authority — since John endorsed Jesus.
5. The verb *synlogisanto* ('they reasoned together, calculated together') reveals that their deliberation is political calculation, not theological inquiry. They evaluate each possible answer not for its truth but for its consequences. If John's baptism was from God, their failure to submit to it indicts them.
6. The verb *katalithasei* ('will stone') may be literal or hyperbolic — stoning was the Torah-prescribed punishment for blasphemy and false prophecy, and denying a true prophet could be perceived as blasphemous. The perfect participle *pepeismenos* ('having been convinced, firmly persuaded') indicates a settled, unshakeable popular conviction about John's prophetic status.
7. Their answer *mē eidenai pothen* ('not to know from where') is an admission of either ignorance or cowardice — the religious leaders of Israel profess inability to evaluate a major prophetic movement. The admission damages their own credibility: if they cannot assess John, how can they assess Jesus?
8. Jesus does not refuse to answer because he cannot but because they have refused to engage honestly. The logical implication is clear to the audience: if they had acknowledged John's divine authority, the answer about Jesus's authority would follow naturally. Their dishonesty forfeits their right to a direct answer.
9. The parable draws directly on Isaiah 5:1-7, where the vineyard represents Israel and the owner represents God. The *geōrgois* ('farmers, vine-dressers, tenants') are those entrusted with caring for what belongs to another. The detail *apedēmēsen chronous hikanous* ('went away for a considerable time') explains why the tenants might grow presumptuous — the owner's long absence leads them to act as though the vineyard were their own.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 5:1-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The *kairō* ('at the appointed time, at the season') refers to the harvest — the owner sends for what is rightfully his. The verb *deirantes* ('having beaten, having flayed') indicates a physical assault. The slave represents the prophets sent to Israel's leaders demanding the fruit of faithful obedience. Being sent away *kenon* ('empty') means the owner received nothing of what was owed.
11. The verb *prosetheto* ('he added, he proceeded') is a Septuagintalism — a Hebrew idiom (*vayosef*, 'he added again') rendered literally in Greek. Each subsequent sending represents another prophetic mission. The addition of *atimasantes* ('having dishonored, having treated shamefully') escalates the violence beyond the first episode.
12. The escalation continues: the first slave was beaten, the second beaten and dishonored, the third *traumatisantes* ('wounded') and *exebalon* ('thrown out, expelled'). Luke uses three slaves (Mark has multiple unnamed servants); the threefold pattern creates a climactic buildup to the sending of the son. The history of Israel's treatment of the prophets (cf. Nehemiah 9:26, 2 Chronicles 36:15-16) is compressed into three episodes.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Nehemiah 9:26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Chronicles 36:15-16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The phrase *ton huion mou ton agapēton* ('my beloved son') is identical to the divine voice at Jesus's baptism (3:22) and transfiguration (9:35), making the allegorical identification unmistakable. The word *isōs* ('perhaps') reveals the owner's vulnerability — he sends his most precious envoy without certainty of success, an astonishing portrayal of divine risk-taking. The question *ti poiēsō* ('what shall I do?') humanizes the owner's deliberation.
14. The tenants' reasoning reflects first-century land law: if an owner died without clear succession and the land was unclaimed, those working it could potentially claim it by possession. Their calculation is both logical and monstrous. The word *klēronomos* ('heir') and *klēronomia* ('inheritance') are covenantal terms — the inheritance of Israel's promises is at stake. The verb *apokteinōmen* ('let us kill') is a deliberative subjunctive expressing a cold, calculated decision.
15. Luke reverses Mark's order: in Mark 12:8, they kill the son first and then throw the body out; in Luke, they throw him out first and then kill him. Luke's order may reflect Jesus's actual death outside the walls of Jerusalem (Hebrews 13:12). The question *ti oun poiēsei* ('what then will he do?') turns the audience into judges of their own case — they must pronounce the verdict before realizing it applies to them.
16. In Luke (unlike Mark and Matthew), Jesus answers his own question rather than letting the audience answer. The phrase *allois* ('to others') is deliberately unspecified — it could refer to Gentiles, to new leaders, or to a renewed community. The audience's response *mē genoito* ('may it never happen!') is a strong deprecation indicating they understood the parable's implication and recoiled from it. This phrase is Paul's characteristic expression of horror (Romans 6:2, 9:14, etc.).

17. The verb *emblepsas* ('having looked intently at, having fixed his gaze upon') conveys a penetrating, searching look. Jesus quotes Psalm 118:22, which was already a messianic text in Jewish interpretation. The 'builders' (*oikodomountes*) are the temple authorities — those responsible for constructing God's house. The *kephalēn gōnias* ('head of the corner, cornerstone') is the stone that determines the alignment of the entire structure. The rejected stone becomes the most important one.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 118:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This expansion of the stone imagery draws on Isaiah 8:14-15 (a stone of stumbling) and Daniel 2:34-35, 44-45 (the stone that crushes the statue). Two fates are described: those who stumble over the stone are 'shattered' (*synthlasthēsetai*), and those the stone falls upon are 'winnowed to dust' (*likmēsei*). The verb *likmēsei* ('will winnow, will scatter like chaff') is agricultural imagery — total pulverization. There is no neutral response to the cornerstone.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 8:14-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 2:34-35 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The phrase *en autē tē hōra* ('at that very hour') indicates an immediate, rage-driven impulse. The verb *epibalein tas cheiras* ('to lay hands upon, to seize') is a technical term for arrest. Their recognition that the parable was *pros autous* ('against them, directed at them') confirms the allegorical reading: they are the wicked tenants. Fear of the people (*ephobēthēsan ton laon*) is the only restraint, not conscience or uncertainty.
20. The word *enkathetous* ('spies, secret agents, persons planted in ambush') appears only here in the New Testament. The verb *hypokrinomenous* ('pretending, play-acting') is the root of 'hypocrite' — they perform sincerity. The ultimate goal is *paradounai* ('to hand over, to betray') Jesus to the Roman governor (*hēgemonos*, Pontius Pilate). The authorities have moved from wanting to kill him (19:47) to a concrete strategy for using Roman power to accomplish it.
21. The flattery is elaborate and calculated. The phrase *ou lambaneis prosōpon* ('you do not receive a face, you show no partiality') is a Septuagintalism translating the Hebrew *nasa panim*, a judicial term meaning to judge without favoritism. By praising Jesus's impartiality, the spies set up a question designed to force a politically compromising answer regardless of which side he takes.
22. The word *phoron* ('tribute, tax') refers specifically to the Roman poll tax (*tributum capitis*), which was deeply resented as a symbol of subjugation. The question *exestin* ('is it lawful/permitted?') frames the issue in terms of Torah compliance. If Jesus says 'yes,' he alienates Jewish nationalists; if 'no,' he can be reported to Rome as a seditious revolutionary. The trap is a masterpiece of political engineering.
23. The verb *katanoēsas* ('having perceived, having seen through') implies thorough understanding. The noun *panourgian* ('craftiness, cunning, trickery') is a strong word — it suggests malicious cleverness. Luke omits Jesus's counter-accusation 'Why are you testing me?' (found in Mark 12:15 and Matthew 22:18), moving directly to his response.
24. The *dēnariou* ('denarius') was a Roman silver coin worth a day's wage, bearing the image (*eikona*) of the emperor (likely Tiberius) and an inscription (*epigraphēn*) reading 'Tiberius Caesar, Son of the Divine Augustus.' The word *eikōn* ('image') is the same word used in Genesis 1:26-27 (Septuagint) for humanity made in God's 'image' — a connection Jesus will exploit in the next verse. The fact that the spies can produce a Roman coin in the temple precincts is itself ironic.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:26-27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The verb *apodote* ('give back, return, repay') implies returning what already belongs to someone — the coin bears Caesar's image and therefore is already his. The parallel structure (*ta Kaisaros Kaisari ... ta tou theou tō theō*) creates an apparent equivalence, but the second clause subverts the first: if the coin bearing Caesar's image belongs to Caesar, then human beings bearing God's image belong to God. The claim of God is total and ultimate; the claim of Caesar is derivative and limited. Jesus neither endorses nor condemns Roman taxation but reframes the entire question.
26. The verb *ischysan* ('they were able, they had the strength') with the negative *ouk* indicates complete failure of their strategy. The verb *thaumasantes* ('having been amazed, astonished') indicates genuine surprise — even his enemies recognize the brilliance of his response. The verb *esigēsan* ('they became silent, they held their peace') marks the end of this confrontation: the spies withdraw, speechless.
27. Luke explains the Sadducees' theological position (*antilegontes anastasin mē einai*, 'denying that there is a resurrection') for his predominantly Gentile audience. The Sadducees were the priestly aristocracy who accepted only the Torah (five books of Moses) as authoritative and rejected the oral tradition, angels, spirits, and bodily resurrection — doctrines they considered innovations without Pentateuchal support.
28. The Sadducees cite the levirate marriage law from Deuteronomy 25:5-6, which required a surviving brother to marry his deceased brother's widow and produce an heir in the dead brother's name. The verb *exanastēsē* ('raise up') is ironic — they use 'resurrection' language (*anastasis*) in the context of procreation while denying actual resurrection. The law's purpose was to preserve the deceased brother's name and inheritance in Israel.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 25:5-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The number seven represents completeness — seven brothers ensures the scenario is exhaustive. The hypothetical case is likely a stock argument the Sadducees used regularly in debates with Pharisees about the resurrection.

- 30.** Luke compresses the narrative here. The SBLGNT has only *kai ho deuteros* ('and the second') with the remaining details implied from context. Some manuscripts expand the verse, but the critical text is remarkably terse.
- 31.** The phrase *hōsautōs de kai hoi hepta* ('likewise also the seven') telescopes the remaining four brothers into a single statement. The cumulative effect — seven marriages, seven deaths, no children — is designed to make the resurrection scenario seem absurd: whose wife would she be if all seven rise?
- 32.** The word *hysteron* ('lastly, finally') closes the scenario. All eight parties are now dead, setting up the question in the next verse. The woman's death is mentioned without comment — she is the silent center of a legal puzzle constructed entirely by men.
- 33.** The question assumes that resurrected life is simply a continuation of earthly life with all its social structures intact. The Sadducees consider this *reductio ad absurdum* proof that resurrection is logically impossible. Their error, as Jesus will show, lies in their assumption about the nature of the resurrected state.
- 34.** The phrase *hoi huiōi tou aiōnos toutou* ('the sons of this age') is a Semitism meaning 'those who belong to the present age' — people living in the current world order. The two verbs *gamousin* ('marry,' active, typically of men) and *gamiskontai* ('are given in marriage,' passive, typically of women) reflect the ancient social reality of arranged marriages.
- 35.** The phrase *hoi kataxiōthentes* ('those considered worthy, those deemed deserving') raises the question of who determines worthiness — the passive voice suggests God makes this determination. 'That age' (*tou aiōnos ekeinou*) is the age to come, the new creation. Jesus's answer demolishes the Sadducees' premise: resurrected life is qualitatively different from present life, not merely a continuation of it. Marriage, as a social institution tied to procreation and mortality, is unnecessary in a state where death no longer exists.
- 36.** The word *isangeloi* ('equal to angels, angel-like') appears only here in the New Testament. The comparison is specific: like angels, the resurrected do not die and do not procreate — it does not mean they become angels. The chain of logic: no death no need for marriage (which exists partly to replace the dying) the Sadducees' question is based on a false premise. The phrase *huiōi theou* ('children of God') is defined by the following phrase: they are God's children precisely because they are *huiōi tēs anastaseōs* ('children of the resurrection').
- 37.** Jesus's brilliance lies in citing the Torah itself — the only scripture the Sadducees accepted. The phrase *epi tēs batou* ('at the bush') uses a common method of scriptural reference (naming a passage by its prominent feature), referring to Exodus 3:6. The argument: God identifies himself as the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob long after their deaths. If they no longer exist, the statement is meaningless — God would be the God of nothing.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 38.** The concluding statement is devastating to the Sadducean position: if God is the God of the living, and if he identifies himself as the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, then Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob must be alive. The phrase *pantes gar autō zōsin* ('for all are alive to him') is unique to Luke and extends the principle beyond the three patriarchs: from God's perspective, all the covenant dead are living. This is not a proof of bodily resurrection *per se* but of continued personal existence after death — which is the necessary precondition for resurrection.
- 39.** The scribes who commend Jesus here are likely Pharisees, who affirmed the resurrection and would have been delighted to see the Sadducees' argument dismantled. The phrase *kalōs eipas* ('you have spoken well, you have answered beautifully') is a genuine academic compliment from theological allies on this particular point.
- 40.** The verb *etolmōn* ('they dared, they had the courage') with the negative *ouketi* ('no longer') indicates that Jesus's series of responses has silenced all challengers. The progression through the chapter — Pharisees, Herodians (via spies), Sadducees — represents every major faction, and all have been defeated. The intellectual conflict is over; only political violence remains as their option.
- 41.** Having silenced all challengers, Jesus now poses his own question. The 'they' (*legousin*) is impersonal — 'how is it said?' The question does not deny Davidic descent (which Matthew and Luke's genealogies affirm) but challenges whether 'son of David' adequately describes the Messiah's identity. The question introduces a christological riddle that the audience cannot resolve.
- 42.** Jesus quotes Psalm 110:1, the most frequently cited Old Testament text in the New Testament. The Greek has *kyrios* ('Lord') for both the Hebrew *YHWH* and *Adonai*, creating an ambiguity that the Hebrew original distinguishes: 'YHWH said to my lord (adoni).' The psalm is attributed to David, and Jesus accepts Davidic authorship as the basis for his argument. The 'right hand' position (*ek dexiōn*) is the position of supreme honor and shared authority.
- 42.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 110:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 43.** The image of enemies as a footstool (*hypopodion tōn podōn*) derives from the ancient Near Eastern practice of a conqueror placing his foot on the neck of a defeated king (cf. Joshua 10:24). The 'until' (*heōs an*) does not imply a time limit on the enthronement but marks the completion of the conquest.
- 43.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 110:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 43.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joshua 10:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

44. The argument is straightforward: in the culture of the ancient Near East, a father never calls his son 'lord' — the honor flows upward, from son to father. If David calls the Messiah 'my Lord,' the Messiah must be greater than David, not merely his descendant. Jesus does not deny that the Messiah is David's son but implies that he is also something more — a claim the audience must work out for themselves. The question is left unanswered, hovering over the narrative.
45. The phrase *akouontos pantos tou laou* ('all the people listening') specifies that Jesus's warning about the scribes is delivered publicly, not privately. The people hear his critique of their religious leaders, adding to the leaders' humiliation and rage.
46. The *stolais* ('long robes') were distinctive garments that marked the wearer as a person of learning and status. Four desires are listed in ascending order of social privilege: public recognition in the streets (greetings), public honor in commerce (marketplaces), religious honor (synagogue seats), and social honor (banquet positions). The verb *philountōn* ('loving, desiring') reveals that these are not incidental perks but actively sought status markers.
47. The verb *katesthousin* ('they devour, they consume') is visceral — the metaphor of eating someone's house evokes predatory exploitation. Widows (*chērōn*) were the most vulnerable members of society, the very people the Torah commanded to protect (Exodus 22:22, Deuteronomy 10:18). The phrase *prophasei* ('for a pretext, for appearance') exposes their prayers as performance. The 'greater judgment' (*perissoteron krima*) implies degrees of accountability — those who exploit the vulnerable while performing piety face the most severe divine reckoning.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 22:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 10:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

21

Summary: *Luke 21 opens with the widow's offering, transitions to Jesus's prediction of the temple's destruction, and then delivers the extended eschatological discourse — sometimes called the Olivet Discourse, though Luke does not locate it on the Mount of Olives. Jesus describes the signs preceding Jerusalem's fall and the coming of the Son of Man: wars, earthquakes, persecution, the siege of Jerusalem, cosmic disturbances, and the command to watch and pray. The chapter concludes with a summary of Jesus's daily teaching routine during his final week.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's version of the eschatological discourse is notably more specific about the fall of Jerusalem (AD 70) than Mark's or Matthew's versions. Verse 20's reference to 'Jerusalem surrounded by armies' replaces Mark's more cryptic 'abomination of desolation' (Mark 13:14), suggesting Luke writes for an audience that either witnessed or is aware of the Roman siege. The parable of the fig tree and the declaration that 'this generation will not pass away' create one of the most debated interpretive puzzles in the Gospels.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the destruction of Jerusalem and the coming of the Son of Man is ambiguous — whether Jesus describes one event, two events separated by time, or two aspects of one reality is debated. We render the text without harmonizing or imposing a particular eschatological framework. 'This generation' (v. 32) is rendered literally; its referent (Jesus's contemporaries, or the generation that sees the signs) is left to the reader.*

Connections: *The widow's offering connects thematically to 20:47 (scribes who devour widows' houses). The temple destruction prophecy fulfills 19:44. The persecution predictions anticipate Acts (where they are fulfilled in detail). The cosmic signs draw on Isaiah 13:10, Joel 2:30-31, and Daniel 7:13-14. The fig tree parable echoes the cursed fig tree of Mark 11 (which Luke omits). The command to 'watch and pray' prepares for Gethsemane (22:40-46).*

¹He looked up and saw the rich putting their gifts into the temple treasury. ²He also saw a poor widow putting in two small copper coins. ³He said, "Truly I tell you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them. ⁴For all these others contributed out of their abundance, but she out of her poverty put in all the livelihood she had." ⁵When some were speaking about the temple, how it was adorned with beautiful stones and dedicated gifts, he said, ⁶"As for these things you are looking at, the days will come when not one stone will be left on another — every one will be torn down." ⁷They asked him, "Teacher, when will these things happen? And what will be the sign when these things are about to take place?" ⁸He said, "Watch out that you are not deceived. For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,' and, 'The time is near.' Do not follow them. ⁹When

you hear of wars and uprisings, do not be terrified. These things must happen first, but the end will not come immediately." ¹ Then he said to them, "Nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. ¹¹ There will be great earthquakes, and famines and plagues in various places, and there will be terrifying events and great signs from heaven. ¹² But before all this, they will seize you and persecute you, handing you over to synagogues and prisons, and you will be brought before kings and governors because of my name. ¹³ This will be your opportunity to testify. ¹⁴ So resolve in your hearts not to prepare your defense in advance, ¹⁵ For I will provide you a mouth and wisdom, which all your adversaries will not be able to oppose nor resist. ¹⁶ You will be handed over even by parents, brothers, relatives, and friends, and they will put some of you to death. ¹⁷ You will be hated by everyone because of my name. ¹⁸ But not a hair of your head will perish. ¹⁹ By your endurance you will gain your lives. ²⁰ "When you see Jerusalem being surrounded by armies, then know that its desolation has drawn near. ²¹ Then let those in Judea flee to the mountains, let those inside the city get out, and let those in the countryside not enter it. ²² For these are days of vengeance, so that everything that has been written will be fulfilled. ²³ How terrible it will be for those who are pregnant and for those who are nursing infants in those days! For there will be great distress upon the land and wrath against this people. ²⁴ They will fall by the edge of the sword and be led away as captives to all the nations, and Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled. ²⁵ "There will be signs in the sun, moon, and stars, and on the earth distress among nations, bewildered by the roaring and surging of the sea. ²⁶ People will faint from fear and dread of what is coming upon the inhabited world, for the powers of the heavens will be shaken. ²⁷ Then will they see the Son of Man coming in a cloud with authority and remarkable glory. ²⁸ When these things begin to happen, stand up and raise your heads, because your redemption is drawing near." ²⁹ He told them a parable: "Look at the fig tree and all the trees. ³⁰ When they sprout leaves, you can see for yourselves and know that summer is already near. ³¹ In the same way, when you see these things happening, know that the kingdom of God is near. ³² Truly I tell you, this generation will certainly not pass away until all these things have happened. ³³ Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away. ³⁴ "Watch yourselves, so that your hearts are not weighed down with carousing, drunkenness, and the worries of this life, and that day closes on you suddenly ³⁵ Because as a snare will it come on all them that dwell on the face of the whole earth. ³⁶ Stay alert at all times, praying that you may have strength to escape all these things that are going to take place, and to stand before the Son of Man." ³⁷ During the day he was teaching in the temple, but at night he would go out and spend the night on the hill called the Mount of Olives. ³⁸ And all the people would come to him early in the morning in the temple to listen to him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The gazophylakion ('treasury') was located in the Court of the Women, where thirteen trumpet-shaped collection boxes lined the wall, each designated for a specific type of offering. The verb *ballontas* ('throwing, casting') suggests the coins made audible noise as they fell — the rich would have made a conspicuous display.
2. The adjective *penichran* ('needy, poor') is stronger than the usual word for poor (*ptōchos*); it implies destitution. The *lepta* ('small coins') were the smallest denomination in circulation — each worth about one-128th of a denarius. Two *lepta* made a *quadran*, the Roman minimum for a transaction. She gives the absolute smallest possible offering.
3. The phrase *pleion pantōn* ('more than all') is a comparative that reverses human arithmetic: by every measurable standard, her gift is the smallest, yet Jesus declares it the largest. The adverb *alēthōs* ('truly') emphasizes the counterintuitive nature of the claim. Jesus measures giving not by amount but by cost to the giver.
4. The contrast is between *perisseuontos* ('surplus, abundance, what overflows') and *hysterēmatos* ('deficit, lack, poverty'). The phrase *panta ton bion hon eichen* ('all the life/livelihood she had') uses *bios*, which means both 'life' and 'livelihood' — she gave not just her money but her means of survival. This connects directly to 20:47's denunciation of scribes who devour widows' houses: the temple system that should protect her consumes her last resources.
5. Herod's temple was one of the ancient world's architectural wonders. The *lithois kalois* ('beautiful stones') likely refers to the massive white limestone blocks (some weighing over 500 tons) that formed the walls. The *anathēmasin* ('dedicated gifts, votive offerings') included golden vine decorations and shields donated by wealthy patrons. Josephus describes the temple as covered in gold plates that blazed in the morning sun.
6. The prophecy *lithos epi lithō* ('stone upon stone') predicts total destruction. This was fulfilled in AD 70 when Titus's legions dismantled the temple, reportedly prying apart stones to recover gold that had melted into the crevices during the fire. The verb *katalythēsetai* ('will be torn down, demolished') is emphatic. The double negative construction (*ouk ... hos ou*) means 'there will not be a single stone left standing upon another that is not torn down' — comprehensive destruction without exception.

7. The two questions — 'when?' (pote) and 'what sign?' (ti to sēmeion) — shape the rest of the discourse. Luke's version has only two questions (unlike Matthew's three in 24:3, which adds 'and of the end of the age'). This gives Luke's discourse a tighter focus on the destruction of Jerusalem rather than the end of the world.
8. The first warning is against deception (planēthēte, 'be led astray'). The phrase ego eimi ('I am he') echoes the divine self-revelation formula (Exodus 3:14; Isaiah 43:10), suggesting false messiahs who claim divine status. Luke uniquely adds ho kairos ēngiken ('the time has drawn near'), warning against those who claim the end is imminent. The command mē poreuthēte opisō autōn ('do not go after them') prohibits joining their movements.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 3:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 43:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Luke uses akatastasias ('disorders, instabilities, uprisings') instead of Mark's 'rumors of wars,' a term that better fits the political turbulence of the 60s AD in Judea. The verb ptoēthēte ('be terrified, be startled') implies a visceral, panicked fear. The phrase ouk eutheōs to telos ('not immediately the end') is another distinctly Lukan addition, tempering eschatological urgency: wars are not the end itself but precursors.
10. The formula ethnos ep' ethnos kai basileia epi basileian ('nation against nation and kingdom against kingdom') echoes Isaiah 19:2 and 2 Chronicles 15:6, drawing on prophetic language for catastrophic upheaval. The scope is international, not merely local — the entire political order will be convulsed.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 19:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Chronicles 15:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Luke combines seismoi ('earthquakes'), limoi ('famines'), and loimoi ('plagues, pestilences') — the last two form a near-rhyme in Greek (limoi kai loimoi), which may be a mnemonic device. The phobētra ('terrifying things, terrors') and sēmeia megala ('great signs') from heaven are unique to Luke and expand the catalog of portents beyond the natural to the cosmic.
12. The phrase pro de toutōn pantōn ('but before all these things') establishes a chronological marker: persecution of the disciples precedes the cosmic upheavals. The progression from synagogue trials to prison to royal courts mirrors exactly what happens in Acts: apostles before the Sanhedrin (Acts 4-5), Stephen's synagogue trial (Acts 6-7), James and Peter in prison (Acts 12), Paul before governors Felix and Festus and King Agrippa (Acts 24-26). Luke's Jesus prophesies what Luke the historian later narrates.
13. The phrase apobēsetai hymin eis martyron ('it will result for you in testimony') reframes persecution as opportunity. The word martyron ('testimony, witness') is the root of 'martyrdom' — in early Christianity, the two concepts were inseparable. What the persecutors intend as silencing becomes a platform for proclamation.
14. The phrase thete en tais kardiais hymōn ('set in your hearts, settle it firmly') indicates a decided commitment. The verb promeletān ('to practice beforehand, to rehearse') was used for rehearsing speeches — Jesus forbids the kind of anxious preparation that suggests reliance on human eloquence rather than divine provision.
15. Unlike Mark 13:11, which attributes the words to the Holy Spirit, Luke has Jesus say 'I will give' (egō dōsō) — a first-person divine promise. The pair stoma kai sophian ('a mouth and wisdom') means both the content of speech and the skill to deliver it. The two verbs antistēnai ('to resist, withstand') and anteipein ('to contradict, speak against') cover both physical intimidation and intellectual rebuttal — opponents will fail on both fronts. This is fulfilled in Acts: Stephen's opponents 'could not withstand the wisdom and the Spirit with which he was speaking' (Acts 6:10).
16. The verb paradothēsethe ('you will be handed over, betrayed') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal of Jesus (22:4, 6). The escalating list — parents, brothers, relatives, friends — describes the disintegration of the most intimate bonds. The phrase thanatōsousin ex hymōn ('they will kill some of you') is blunt: following Jesus will cost some disciples their lives. This is fulfilled in Acts with the deaths of Stephen (Acts 7) and James (Acts 12:2).
17. The phrase hypo pantōn ('by all') is hyperbolic but communicates the universality of the hostility — opposition will come from every direction. The phrase dia to onoma mou ('because of my name') identifies Jesus's name as the cause of hatred, connecting back to verse 12. Bearing his name marks the disciples as targets.
18. This creates an apparent paradox with verse 16 ('some of you will be put to death'): how can not a hair perish if some will die? The resolution lies in the eschatological perspective — physical death does not represent ultimate loss for those who belong to Christ. The double negative ou mē ('by no means, absolutely not') is the strongest Greek negation, expressing absolute divine protection of the disciples' ultimate destiny, even through martyrdom.
19. The word hypomonē ('endurance, steadfast persistence, patient endurance under suffering') is a key virtue in early Christianity. The verb ktēsasthe can be either imperative ('gain!') or future indicative ('you will gain') — the ambiguity may be intentional, functioning as both command and promise. The psychas ('souls, lives') echoes 17:33: the way to preserve one's life is not through self-protection but through faithful endurance.
20. This is Luke's most distinctive departure from the Markan parallel: where Mark 13:14 has the cryptic 'abomination of desolation standing where it should not,' Luke has the concrete image of Jerusalem surrounded by armies (stratopedōn, 'military camps'). The word erēmōsis ('desolation,

devastation, depopulation') echoes Daniel 9:27 and 12:11, connecting Jesus's prophecy to the Danielic tradition. This verse is often cited as evidence that Luke wrote after AD 70, though prophetic specificity does not require post-event composition.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 9:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** Three groups receive three commands: those in Judea (flee to mountains), those inside Jerusalem (leave immediately), those in the surrounding countryside (do not seek refuge in the city). According to Eusebius (Church History 3.5.3), the Jerusalem Christians did flee to Pella in Transjordan before the Roman siege, possibly in response to this prophecy. The verb *ekchōreitōsan* ('let them depart, withdraw') is unique to Luke among the Synoptics.
- 22.** The phrase *hēmerai ekdikēseōs* ('days of vengeance/retribution') echoes Hosea 9:7 and Isaiah 63:4 — prophetic language for divine judgment on a faithless people. The phrase *panta ta gegrammena* ('everything written') refers to the prophetic warnings in the Hebrew Bible about judgment on Jerusalem (cf. Deuteronomy 28:49-57, Daniel 9:26-27). Luke frames the destruction not as a Roman political action but as the fulfillment of prophetic scripture.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Hosea 9:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 63:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 28:49-57. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 9:26-27. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The 'woe' (*ouai*) is an expression of grief, not a curse — Jesus mourns the suffering of the most vulnerable. Pregnant women and nursing mothers would be the least able to flee. The phrase *anankē megalē* ('great distress, dire necessity') describes the extreme suffering of the siege. Luke adds *orgē tō laō toutō* ('wrath against this people'), making explicit what is implicit in Mark — the siege is an expression of divine judgment.
- 24.** This verse is unique to Luke and describes the post-destruction fate of Jerusalem with remarkable precision: *stomati machairēs* ('by the mouth/edge of the sword') — Josephus reports that 1.1 million Jews died in the siege; *aichmalōtisthēsontai* ('will be taken captive') — Josephus reports 97,000 taken prisoner. The phrase *kairoi ethnōn* ('times of the Gentiles') introduces a mysterious period of Gentile domination over Jerusalem with a definite end (*achri hou*, 'until'). This implies eventual restoration, but the timeline is deliberately unspecified.
- 25.** The discourse shifts from Jerusalem's destruction to cosmic upheaval, drawing on prophetic imagery from Isaiah 13:10, Joel 2:30-31, and Amos 8:9. Whether these cosmic signs are literal or metaphorical for political upheaval is debated — in Old Testament prophetic literature, cosmic language often describes the fall of political powers (cf. Isaiah 13:10 about Babylon, Ezekiel 32:7 about Egypt). The word *synochē* ('distress, anguish, constriction') suggests a tightening, suffocating fear. The *aporia* ('bewilderment, perplexity, helplessness') adds cognitive paralysis to the emotional distress.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 13:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joel 2:30-31 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Amos 8:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 32:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** The verb *apopsychontōn* ('fainting, breathing out, expiring from fear') is unique to the New Testament — literally 'breathing away,' suggesting people will be so terrified they lose consciousness or die of fright. The *oikoumenē* ('inhabited world') is the entire civilized world, not merely Judea. The *dynameis tōn ouranōn* ('powers of the heavens') may refer to celestial bodies (sun, moon, stars as cosmic forces), angelic powers, or both — the shaking (*saleuthēsontai*) of these powers represents the dissolution of the created order itself.
- 27.** This alludes directly to Daniel 7:13-14, where 'one like a son of man' comes 'with the clouds of heaven' to receive dominion from the Ancient of Days. Luke uses the singular *nephelē* ('a cloud,' not 'clouds'), emphasizing the theophanic quality — in the Old Testament, the cloud is associated with God's presence (Exodus 13:21, 40:34). The combination of *dynamis* ('power') and *doxa* ('glory') marks this as a divine appearance. The verb *opsontai* ('they will see') indicates universal visibility — this is not a secret or spiritual event.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 13:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** While the world faints from terror (v. 26), the disciples are told to stand up (*anakypsate*, 'straighten up, look up with confidence') and raise their heads (*eparate tas kephalas*, 'lift your heads') — postures of hope, not fear. The word *apolytrōsis* ('redemption, liberation, ransom') is a commercial term for buying a slave's freedom. The same events that terrify the world signal liberation for believers. This verse is the emotional heart of the discourse: the coming of the Son of Man is not a threat but a rescue.

- 29.** Luke adds 'and all the trees' (kai panta ta dendra) to Mark's 'fig tree,' universalizing the analogy — any deciduous tree demonstrates the same principle. In Palestine, the fig tree's leaf cycle was a particularly reliable seasonal marker because it was one of the last trees to leaf out in spring.
- 30.** The verb probalōsin ('put forth, sprout') refers to the visible budding of leaves. The phrase aph' heautōn ('from yourselves, on your own') emphasizes that this is observable common sense — no special revelation is needed. The analogy is simple: just as natural signs indicate coming seasons, the events described in this discourse will indicate the coming of the kingdom.
- 31.** Luke has 'the kingdom of God' (hē basileia tou theou) where Mark 13:29 has simply 'he is near' or 'it is near' — Luke makes the referent explicit. The signs described in this discourse do not predict the kingdom's arrival but signal its proximity. The present imperative ginōskete ('know, recognize') demands ongoing awareness.
- 32.** The phrase hē genea hautē ('this generation') is among the most debated expressions in the Gospels. It could mean: (1) Jesus's contemporaries (fulfilled if 'all these things' refers to AD 70), (2) the generation alive when the signs begin (making it future-referential), (3) 'this kind of people' (the faithless generation, making it a moral category). The double negative ou mē ('certainly not, by no means') expresses absolute certainty. We render the Greek literally and leave the interpretive question to the reader.
- 33.** The claim is extraordinary: the most permanent things in human experience — heaven and earth — are declared temporary, while Jesus's words are declared eternal. The same verb pareuasetai ('will pass away') is used for both, creating a direct contrast. This is an implicit claim to divine authority — only God's word endures forever (Isaiah 40:8). Jesus places his own words on par with the word of God.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 40:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The warnings are uniquely Lukan. The verb barēthōsin ('be weighed down, be made heavy') echoes the Gethsemane scene (22:45, where the disciples are 'weighed down with grief'). Three dangers are listed: kraipale ('carousing, hangover, dissipation'), methē ('drunkenness'), and merimnais biōtikais ('worries of daily life, anxieties about livelihood'). The third is as dangerous as the first two — ordinary anxieties can dull spiritual alertness as effectively as excess.
- 35.** The word pagis ('trap, snare') describes something that springs shut suddenly and inescapably. The scope is universal: epi pantas tous kathēmenous epi prosōpon pasēs tēs gēs ('upon all who sit/dwell upon the face of all the earth'). No one is exempt. The imagery connects to the Noah and Lot comparisons of 17:26-30 — the day catches people in the midst of ordinary life.
- 36.** The verb agrypneite ('stay awake, be vigilant, be sleepless') is stronger than the usual grēgoreite ('watch') — it implies a state of constant wakefulness. The verb katischysēte ('have strength, prevail, be able') emphasizes that escaping the coming tribulations and standing before the Son of Man requires divine empowerment obtained through prayer. The goal is dual: ekphygein ('to escape') the coming calamities and stathēnai ('to stand') — to be found standing rather than fallen when the Son of Man appears. This verse bookends the discourse with verse 8's opening warning: the proper response to eschatological expectation is not calculation but prayer.
- 37.** This summary verse establishes Jesus's routine during his final week: temple teaching by day, withdrawal to the Mount of Olives by night. The verb ēlizeto ('lodged, spent the night, bivouacked') suggests sleeping outdoors rather than in a house — possibly at the garden of Gethsemane on the olive-tree-covered hillside. This pattern explains how Judas knew where to find Jesus at night (22:39).
- 38.** The verb ōrthrizen ('came early, rose at dawn') indicates the people's eagerness — they arrived at the temple at first light to hear Jesus teach. This popular devotion explains the authorities' dilemma (19:47-48, 20:19): the people's intense attachment to Jesus makes a public arrest politically impossible, forcing the leaders to seek a covert opportunity, which Judas will provide.

22

Summary: *Luke 22 narrates the final hours before Jesus's arrest: Judas's conspiracy with the chief priests, preparations for the Passover meal, the institution of the Lord's Supper, the dispute about greatness among the disciples, the prediction of Peter's denial, the agony in Gethsemane, the arrest, Peter's denial, the mocking and beating of Jesus, and his appearance before the Sanhedrin at dawn. This is the longest chapter in Luke and the most theologically dense, encompassing the transition from ministry to passion.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's Last Supper account contains unique material not found in the other Gospels: the dispute about greatness occurring during the meal (not earlier as in Mark/Matthew), Jesus's declaration that he has earnestly desired to eat this Passover, the two-cup structure, and the extended farewell discourse. The Gethsemane account includes the textually disputed verses 43-44 (the angel strengthening Jesus and his sweat becoming like drops of blood), which are among the most famous textual variants in the New Testament. Luke alone records Jesus healing the ear of the high priest's servant during the arrest.*

Translation Friction: Verses 43-44 (the strengthening angel and the bloody sweat) are absent from important early manuscripts (P75, Aleph, A, B, T, W) but present in others (Aleph-2, D, L, Theta, family 13, and most Byzantine manuscripts). Their authenticity is disputed. We include them following the SBLGNT's double-bracketed text but note the manuscript evidence. The two-cup structure (vv. 17-18 and v. 20) is debated — some scholars see it as a Passover seder with its multiple cups, while others view it as a textual issue.*

Connections: The Passover setting connects to Exodus 12 (the original Passover). The words of institution ('this is my body... this cup is the new covenant in my blood') connect to Jeremiah 31:31-34 (the new covenant promise) and Exodus 24:8 (the blood of the covenant). Peter's denial fulfills Jesus's prediction. The Sanhedrin trial fulfills the passion predictions of 9:22, 18:31-33. Jesus's prayer in Gethsemane connects to the Lord's Prayer (11:2-4) and the teaching on persistent prayer (18:1-8).

¹Now the Festival of Unleavened Bread, called the Passover, was approaching. ²The chief priests and the scribes were looking for a way to put him to death, for they feared the people. ³Then Satan entered into Judas, the one called Iscariot, who was numbered among the Twelve. ⁴He went and discussed with the chief priests and temple officers how he might hand Jesus over to them. ⁵They were delighted and agreed to give him money. ⁶He agreed and began looking for an opportunity to hand him over to them when no crowd was present. ⁷Then the day of Unleavened Bread came, on which the Passover lamb had to be sacrificed. ⁸He sent Peter and John, saying, "Go and prepare the Passover for us, so that we may eat it." ⁹They asked him, "Where do you want us to prepare it?" ¹⁰He said to them, "When you have entered the city, a man carrying a jar of water will meet you. Follow him into the house he enters, ¹¹You will say to the goodman of the house, The Master says to you, Where is the guestchamber, where I will eat the passover with my followers? ¹²He will show you a large upper room, furnished and ready. Make preparations there." ¹³They went and found everything just as he had told them, and they prepared the Passover. ¹⁴When the hour came, he reclined at the table, and the apostles with him. ¹⁵He said to them, "I have earnestly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer. ¹⁶For I tell you, I will not eat it again until it is fulfilled in the kingdom of God." ¹⁷Then he took a cup, and after giving thanks, he said, "Take this and divide it among yourselves. ¹⁸For I tell you, from now on I will not drink of the fruit of the vine until the kingdom of God comes." ¹⁹Then he took bread, gave thanks, broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is my body, which is given for you. Do this in remembrance of me." ²⁰In the same way, after the meal he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. ²¹But look — the hand of the one who betrays me is with me on the table. ²²For the Son of Man goes as it has been determined, but woe to that man by whom he is betrayed!" ²³They began to question among themselves which of them it could be who was going to do this. ²⁴A dispute also arose among them as to which of them was considered the greatest. ²⁵He said to them, "The kings of the Gentiles lord it over them, and those in authority over them are called 'Benefactors.' ²⁶But you are not to be like that. Instead, the greatest among you should become like the youngest, and the leader like the one who serves. ²⁷For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one reclining? Yet I am among you as the one who serves. ²⁸You are those who have stood by me in my trials. ²⁹And I confer on you a kingdom, just as my Father conferred one on me, ³⁰And sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel, and that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom. ³¹"Simon, Simon, look — Satan has demanded to sift all of you like wheat. ³²But I have prayed for you that your faith may not fail. And when you have turned back, strengthen your brothers." ³³Peter said to him, "Lord, I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death." ³⁴Jesus said, "I tell you, Peter, the rooster will not crow today before you have denied three times that you know me." ³⁵Then he said to them, "When I sent you out without a money bag, a traveler's bag, or sandals, did you lack anything?" They said, "Nothing." ³⁶He said to them, "But now, the one who has a money bag should take it, and likewise a traveler's bag. And the one who has no sword should sell his cloak and buy one. ³⁷For I tell you, this scripture must be fulfilled in me: 'And he was counted among the lawless.' Indeed, what is written about me is reaching its fulfillment." ³⁸They said, "Lord, look, here are two swords." He said to them, "It is enough." ³⁹He went out and made his way to the Mount of Olives, as was his custom, and the disciples followed him. ⁴⁰When he arrived at the place, he said to them, "Pray that you will not fall into temptation." ⁴¹He withdrew from them about a stone's throw, knelt down, and prayed, ⁴²"Father, if you are willing, take this cup from me. Yet not my will but yours be done." ⁴³An angel from heaven appeared to him,

strengthening him. ⁴⁴And being in anguish, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like drops of blood falling to the ground. ⁴⁵When he rose from prayer and went to the disciples, he found them sleeping from grief. ⁴⁶He said to them, "Why are you sleeping? Get up and pray, so that you will not fall into temptation." ⁴⁷While he was still speaking, a crowd appeared, and the one called Judas, one of the Twelve, was leading them. He approached Jesus to kiss him, ⁴⁸However, Jesus stated to him, Judas, betrayest you the Son of Man with a kiss? ⁴⁹When those around him saw what was about to happen, they said, "Lord, should we strike with the sword?" ⁵⁰And one of them struck the high priest's servant and cut off his right ear. ⁵¹But Jesus responded, "No more of this!" And he touched the man's ear and healed him. ⁵²Then Jesus said to the chief priests, temple officers, and elders who had come for him, "Have you come out with swords and clubs as if against a revolutionary? ⁵³When I was with you day after day in the temple, you did not lay a hand on me. But this is your hour — and the power of darkness." ⁵⁴They seized him and led him away, bringing him to the high priest's house. Peter was following at a distance. ⁵⁵When they had kindled a fire in the middle of the courtyard and sat down together, Peter sat among them. ⁵⁶A servant girl saw him sitting in the firelight and, staring at him, said, "This man was with him too." ⁵⁷But he denied it, saying, "Woman, I do not know him." ⁵⁸A little later, someone else saw him and said, "You are one of them too." But Peter said, "Man, I am not." ⁵⁹About an hour later, another person insisted, saying, "Certainly this man was with him too, for he is a Galilean." ⁶⁰Peter said, "Man, I do not know what you are talking about." And immediately, while he was still speaking, the rooster crowed. ⁶¹The Lord turned and looked at Peter, and Peter remembered the word of the Lord, how he had told him, "Before the rooster crows today, you will deny me three times." ⁶²And he went outside and wept bitterly. ⁶³The men who were holding Jesus in custody began mocking and beating him. ⁶⁴They blindfolded him and kept asking, "Prophecy! Who is it that struck you?" ⁶⁵And they said many other blasphemous things against him. ⁶⁶When day came, the council of the elders of the people assembled — both chief priests and scribes — and they led him before their Sanhedrin. ⁶⁷Art you the Christ? tell us. Then he stated to them, If I tell you, you will not trust:. ⁶⁸If I as well ask you, you will not answer me, nor let me depart. ⁶⁹But from now on, the Son of Man will be seated at the right hand of the power of God." ⁷⁰They all said, "Are you then the Son of God?" He said to them, "You say that I am." ⁷¹They said, "What further testimony do we need? We have heard it ourselves from his own mouth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Technically, the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread were distinct celebrations (Passover on Nisan 14, Unleavened Bread from Nisan 15-21), but by the first century, the terms were used interchangeably in popular speech. Luke's phrase *hē legomenē pascha* ('which is called Passover') reflects this common usage. The imperfect *ēngizen* ('was approaching') creates narrative tension — the reader knows what the festival will bring.
2. The imperfect *ezētoun* ('they were seeking') indicates ongoing, frustrated plotting. The verb *anelōsin* ('to destroy, to kill, to do away with') is a euphemism for execution. Their fear of the people (*ephobountos ton laon*) has been the obstacle since 19:47-48 and 20:19. What changes the equation is Judas's offer in the next verses.
3. Luke and John (13:27) are the only Gospels that attribute Judas's betrayal to Satan's direct intervention. Luke last mentioned Satan in 4:13, where the devil departed from Jesus 'until an opportune time' (*achri kairou*) — this is that opportune time. The epithet 'Iscariot' (*Iskariōtēn*) may mean 'man of Keriōth' (a Judean town) or may derive from the Latin *sicarius* ('dagger-man, assassin'). The phrase *onta ek tou arithmou tōn dōdeka* ('being from the number of the twelve') underscores the horror: the betrayer comes from within the innermost circle.
4. Luke uniquely includes *stratēgois* ('temple officers, captains of the temple guard'), the security force that controlled the temple precincts. Their involvement is practical — any arrest in or near the temple would require their cooperation. The verb *paradō* ('hand over, betray') is the same word used for Jesus being 'handed over' to the Gentiles (18:32) and for God 'handing over' his Son — the word carries multiple theological layers.
5. The verb *echarēsan* ('they rejoiced, were delighted') reveals the authorities' emotional state — they are pleased to have found their solution. The verb *synthēto* ('they agreed, covenanted together') is a formal term for making an agreement. Luke does not specify the amount (Matthew 26:15 names 'thirty pieces of silver'). The word *argyriōn* ('silver, money') is generic.
6. The verb *exōmologēsen* ('he consented, agreed, confessed') here means 'he assented to the arrangement.' The phrase *ater ochlou* ('without a crowd, in the absence of the multitude') is the crucial tactical detail — Judas's value to the authorities is his ability to deliver Jesus at a time and place where public reaction cannot interfere. This solves the problem identified in 19:48, 20:19, and 22:2.
7. The phrase *edei thyesthai to pascha* ('it was necessary to sacrifice the Passover') refers to the afternoon of Nisan 14, when the Passover lambs were slaughtered in the temple. The verb *dei* ('it was necessary') indicates Torah requirement (Exodus 12:6). The chronological relationship between Luke's account and John's (where Jesus dies at the hour the lambs are slaughtered) is a well-known harmonization challenge that we do not attempt to resolve.

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 12:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Luke alone names the two disciples sent — Peter and John, the inner circle. Preparing the Passover involved acquiring a lamb, having it sacrificed at the temple, roasting it, and preparing the accompanying elements (unleavened bread, bitter herbs, wine, charoset). This was a substantial task requiring several hours.
9. The question is practical — Jerusalem would have been packed with pilgrims for the festival, and securing a suitable room for the meal was not trivial. The subjunctive *hetoimasōmen* ('should we prepare') expresses deference to Jesus's choice.
10. A man carrying a *keramion* ('earthenware jar') of water would have been conspicuous — water-carrying was typically women's work, and men used leather skins rather than clay jars. This detail would make the man easy to identify in a crowded city. Whether this was a prearranged signal or prophetic knowledge is debated; Luke's narrative implies the latter.
11. The title *ho didaskalos* ('the Teacher') functions as a recognized identifier, suggesting an existing relationship between Jesus and the homeowner. The word *katalyma* ('guest room, lodging place') is the same word used for the place where there was 'no room' at Jesus's birth (2:7) — creating a subtle literary connection between the beginning and end of Luke's narrative.
12. The *anagaion* ('upper room') was a second-story room, typically the best room in the house, used for important gatherings. The participle *estrōmenon* ('furnished, spread out, arranged') indicates the room already has the necessary carpets, cushions, and dining arrangements for a Passover meal. This level of preparation suggests prior arrangement.
13. The phrase *kathōs eirēkei autois* ('just as he had told them') echoes the preparation for the triumphal entry (19:32) — the same pattern of prophetic instruction followed by exact fulfillment. The verb *hetoimasan* ('they prepared') covers the extensive work of Passover preparation, compressed into a single word.
14. The phrase *hē hōra* ('the hour') carries theological weight beyond mere clock time — this is the appointed hour, the *kairos* toward which the entire Gospel has been moving. The verb *anepesen* ('he reclined') describes the dining posture: reclining on the left side on cushions around a low table, the standard practice for formal meals and required for the Passover seder. Luke uses 'apostles' (*apostoloi*) rather than 'disciples,' emphasizing their commissioned role.
15. The phrase *epithymia epethymēsa* ('with desire I have desired') is a Semitic intensifying construction (cognate accusative) that expresses the deepest possible longing. This statement is unique to Luke and reveals Jesus's emotional state — he has longed for this meal. The phrase *pro tou me pathein* ('before I suffer') shows Jesus's full awareness of what lies ahead.
16. The double negative *ou mē* ('I will by no means eat') is emphatic — this is Jesus's last Passover. The word *plērōthē* ('is fulfilled, completed') implies that the Passover itself is a type that points forward to a greater reality to be consummated in the kingdom. The Passover lamb, the exodus from Egypt, the covenant meal — all find their fulfillment in what Jesus is about to accomplish through his death.
17. This is the first of two cups in Luke's account (the second appears in v. 20). The Passover seder traditionally included four cups of wine. This first cup likely corresponds to one of the earlier seder cups. The verb *eucharistēsas* ('having given thanks') is the root of 'Eucharist' and refers to the Jewish blessing over wine (likely the *kiddush*: 'Blessed are you, LORD our God, King of the universe, who creates the fruit of the vine').
18. The phrase *genēmatos tēs ampelou* ('fruit of the vine') is the traditional liturgical term for wine in Jewish blessings. The eschatological vow — not drinking wine until the kingdom comes — mirrors the Nazirite vow's abstinence from wine as a sign of consecration. Jesus consecrates himself for his coming sacrifice. The phrase 'until the kingdom of God comes' (*heōs hou hē basileia tou theou elthē*) holds the future open — this is not the end of fellowship but a temporary suspension until its consummation.
19. The four actions — took (*labōn*), gave thanks (*eucharistēsas*), broke (*eklasen*), gave (*edōken*) — become the foundational pattern of Christian worship. The phrase *to hyper hymōn didomenon* ('which is being given for you') uses the present participle, indicating an ongoing action — Jesus's body is being given in the very act of the meal. The command *touto poieite eis tēn emēn anamnēsin* ('do this in remembrance of me') establishes the meal as a repeated memorial. The word *anamnēsis* ('remembrance, memorial') in Jewish thought means not merely mental recall but active re-presentation — making the past event present again.
20. The phrase *meta to deipnēsai* ('after having eaten the meal') places this second cup after the main course, likely corresponding to the third cup of the Passover seder (the 'cup of blessing,' cf. 1 Corinthians 10:16). The phrase *hē kainē diathēkē* ('the new covenant') explicitly invokes Jeremiah 31:31-34, the only Old Testament passage that uses 'new covenant.' The *diathēkē* ('covenant, testament') is not a contract between equals but God's sovereign arrangement. The phrase *en tō haimati mou* ('in my blood') echoes Exodus 24:8 ('This is the blood of the covenant'), where Moses sealed the Sinai covenant with sacrificial blood.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 24:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. In Luke's arrangement (unlike Matthew and Mark), the betrayal announcement comes after the institution of the supper, not before. This means Judas participates in the covenant meal, intensifying the horror of the betrayal. The phrase *hē cheir tou paradidontos me* ('the hand of the one handing me over') places the betraying hand literally on the same table where Jesus has just given his body and blood. Psalm 41:9 (quoted in John 13:18) provides the background: 'Even my close friend in whom I trusted, who ate my bread, has lifted his heel against me.'

21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 41:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The phrase *kata to hōrismenon* ('according to what has been determined, decreed') uses the same root as *horizō* ('to fix, to decree, to appoint'), which Luke uses elsewhere for God's sovereign plan (Acts 2:23, 10:42, 17:26, 31). The tension between divine determination and human responsibility is held without resolution: the Son of Man's death is God's plan (*kata to hōrismenon*), yet the betrayer bears full moral culpability (*ouai*). Luke does not collapse either side of this tension.
23. The verb *syzētein* ('to discuss, to dispute, to investigate') indicates animated debate rather than quiet reflection. The optative *eiē* ('might be') expresses uncertainty and speculation. Their inability to identify the betrayer reveals both their self-awareness (each apparently considers himself capable) and their ignorance (no one suspects Judas specifically).
24. The word *philoneikia* ('rivalry, love of strife, contentiousness') appears only here in the New Testament. The timing is staggering — at the very meal where Jesus gives his body and blood and announces his betrayal, the disciples argue about rank. In Mark and Matthew, this dispute occurs earlier in the ministry; Luke's placement at the Last Supper maximizes the contrast between Jesus's self-giving and the disciples' self-seeking.
25. The verb *kyrieuousin* ('exercise lordship, dominate') describes coercive, top-down power. The title *euergetai* ('Benefactors') was an actual honorific title given to Hellenistic rulers — Ptolemy III and VIII of Egypt were both called 'Euergetes.' The irony: those who dominate are called 'benefactors,' wrapping exploitation in the language of generosity. Jesus exposes the fundamental dishonesty of power structures.
26. The 'youngest' (*neōteros*) held the lowest status in ancient households — they served the eldest. The 'one who serves' (*ho diakonōn*) is literally 'the one who waits tables.' Jesus inverts the hierarchy completely: greatness is defined by service, leadership by the willingness to take the lowest position. The word *diakonōn* is the root of 'deacon,' later institutionalized as a church office.
27. Jesus asks a question with an obvious cultural answer — the one reclining is always greater than the one serving — and then claims the server's role for himself. The phrase *egō de en mesō hymōn eimi hōs ho diakonōn* ('I am among you as the one serving') is the most radical leadership statement in the Gospels. The present tense *eimi* ('I am') makes this a permanent identity, not a temporary condescension. John's Gospel dramatizes this with the foot-washing scene (John 13:1-17).
28. The perfect participle *diamemenēkotes* ('having remained throughout, having continued steadfastly') acknowledges the disciples' loyalty despite everything. The word *peiramois* ('trials, testings, temptations') encompasses the full range of opposition Jesus has faced. Despite their failures (which will become more apparent in the hours ahead), Jesus credits them with faithfulness.
29. The verb *diatithēmai* ('I confer, I covenant, I bequeath') is related to *diathēkē* ('covenant') — Jesus is making a covenant grant of royal authority. The chain of conferral runs from the Father to Jesus to the disciples, establishing a succession of delegated authority. This is a testamentary act — the last will of someone about to die.
30. The promise has two dimensions: table fellowship (eating and drinking with Jesus) and governmental authority (sitting on thrones judging the tribes). The verb *krinontes* ('judging') echoes the judges of Israel who both governed and adjudicated. The 'twelve tribes' indicates the restoration of all Israel, not merely the existing southern tribes. This promise is given to the same men who moments ago were arguing about rank — Jesus answers their ambition with a grant that far exceeds anything they imagined.
31. The double name 'Simon, Simon' (*Simōn Simōn*) signals urgency and tenderness. The verb *exētēsato* ('demanded, asked for, claimed') echoes Job 1-2, where Satan requests permission to test Job. The 'you' (*hymas*) is plural — Satan targets all the disciples, not Peter alone. The sifting metaphor (*siniasai*, 'to sift') describes violent shaking to separate grain from chaff; the trials ahead will expose what each disciple is truly made of.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 1-2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The 'you' (*sou*) switches to singular — Jesus prays specifically for Peter. The verb *edeēthēn* ('I have prayed, I have besought') is an aorist indicating a specific, completed prayer. The phrase *eklipē hē pistis sou* ('your faith might fail, give out, be eclipsed') uses a word that means to cease or be extinguished — like a lamp going out. The verb *epistrepsas* ('having turned back, having returned') acknowledges that Peter will fall but also promises restoration. The command *stērison* ('strengthen, establish, make firm') gives Peter a post-failure ministry: his own recovery becomes the basis for strengthening others.
33. Peter's declaration is sincere but overconfident. He offers willingness for the extreme scenarios (prison and death) but will stumble at a far lesser test (a servant girl's question). Luke places Peter's boast in the context of the Last Supper discourse rather than on the Mount of Olives (as in Mark 14:29-31), integrating it into the farewell conversation.
34. Jesus uses Peter's apostolic name (*Petre*) rather than 'Simon,' sharpening the personal address. The specificity is devastating: not merely a general prediction of failure but a precise count (three denials), a precise timeframe (before the rooster crows), and a precise content (denying that he knows Jesus). Luke adds *eidenai* ('to know me'), specifying that Peter will deny the relationship itself, not just association.
35. Jesus refers back to the mission of the seventy-two (10:1-12), where he sent them out with no provisions and they lacked nothing. The three items — *ballantion* ('money bag'), *pēra* ('traveler's bag, knapsack'), and *hypodēmata* ('sandals') — represent financial resources, food supplies, and basic equipment. Their unanimous answer 'Nothing' (*outhenos*) confirms that divine provision was sufficient during the earlier, more receptive phase of ministry.

36. The phrase *alla nyn* ('but now') marks a dramatic shift in circumstances. The earlier instructions (travel without provisions) are reversed — the time of hospitality and reception is over; a time of hostility and self-provision has arrived. The instruction to sell one's himation ('outer cloak,' essential for warmth and sleeping) to buy a machaira ('sword, large knife') is startling. Whether Jesus speaks literally (prepare for danger) or figuratively (the situation has become dire) is debated. The next verses suggest the disciples take it literally and Jesus corrects them.
37. Jesus quotes Isaiah 53:12 ('he was numbered with the transgressors'), the fourth Servant Song. The word *anomōn* ('lawless ones, transgressors') foreshadows his crucifixion between two criminals (23:32-33). The phrase *to peri emou telos echei* ('what concerns me has its end/completion') can mean either 'is being fulfilled' or 'is coming to its conclusion.' Luke's Jesus frames his death as the fulfillment of Isaiah's suffering servant prophecy — the only explicit quotation of Isaiah 53 by Jesus in the Synoptic Gospels.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The disciples take Jesus's words literally and produce two swords. Jesus's response *hikanon estin* ('it is enough') is often read as weary dismissal: 'Enough of this' — they have missed his point entirely. Two swords would be militarily useless against a Roman cohort; Jesus was not calling for armed resistance. Alternatively, 'it is enough' may mean two swords suffice to fulfill the prophecy of being 'counted among the lawless' (v. 37) — mere possession of weapons classifies them as armed rebels.
39. The phrase *kata to ethos* ('according to custom, as was his habit') connects to 21:37 — Jesus regularly spent nights on the Mount of Olives. This habitual pattern is what enabled Judas to know where to find him (v. 47). Luke does not name Gethsemane (as Mark and Matthew do) but simply refers to the Mount of Olives.
40. The phrase *epi tou topou* ('at the place') is vague in Luke — no garden is named. The command *proseuchē* the *mē eiselthein eis peirasmon* ('pray not to enter into temptation/testing') echoes the Lord's Prayer (11:4) and frames what follows: the disciples' failure to pray will lead to their failure in the testing. The *peirasmos* ('temptation, trial, testing') refers specifically to the crisis of Jesus's arrest and death.
41. The verb *apespasthē* ('he was torn away, he withdrew') carries the connotation of painful separation — the passive voice may suggest reluctance. The distance 'about a stone's throw' (*hōsei lithou bolēn*) is roughly 50-100 feet — close enough to be seen but far enough for privacy. Kneeling (*theis ta gonata*, 'placing the knees') was not the usual Jewish prayer posture (standing with uplifted hands was standard), suggesting intense supplication.
42. Luke's version of the prayer is more concise than Mark's. The address 'Father' (*Pater*) without 'Abba' (which Mark includes) still conveys intimate filial relationship. The 'cup' (*potērion*) is a biblical metaphor for suffering and divine judgment (Psalm 75:8, Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). The conditional *ei boulei* ('if you are willing') respects the Father's sovereignty. The concluding *mē to thelēma mou alla to son ginesthō* ('not my will but yours be done') is the model of perfect submission — the same petition Jesus taught in the Lord's Prayer (11:2, 'your will be done') now enacted at infinite personal cost.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 75:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 51:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 25:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. TEXTUAL NOTE: This verse and the next (v. 44) are absent from several important early manuscripts (P75, Codex Vaticanus, the original hand of Codex Sinaiticus) but present in others (the corrected Sinaiticus, Codex Bezae, and most later manuscripts). The SBLGNT places them in double brackets, indicating their disputed status. If original, they are unique to Luke and present a portrait of Jesus's genuine human vulnerability — the Son of God needs angelic strengthening. If later additions, they reflect early Christian reflection on Jesus's humanity. We include them but note the evidence. The verb *enischyōn* ('strengthening') implies giving power to endure rather than removing the cause of distress.
44. TEXTUAL NOTE: See note on verse 43 regarding the disputed status of this verse. The word *agōnīa* ('agony, anguish, intense struggle') is a contest metaphor — it describes the strain of an athlete in the arena. The comparative *ektenesteron* ('more earnestly, more intensely') shows prayer escalating under pressure. The phrase *hōsei thromboi haimatos* ('like clots/drops of blood') uses *hōsei* ('as if, like'), indicating a comparison — Luke says the sweat resembled blood drops in appearance (thick, heavy drops), not necessarily that it was blood. The medical condition *hematidrosis* (sweat mixed with blood under extreme stress) is rare but documented.
45. Luke compresses Mark's three prayer episodes into one and offers an explanation for the disciples' sleep: *apo tēs lypēs* ('from grief, because of sorrow'). This is a compassionate detail unique to Luke — they are not merely indifferent but emotionally overwhelmed. Their grief, however, does not excuse their failure to pray.
46. Jesus's rebuke forms a bracket with verse 40 — the same command to pray against temptation opens and closes the Gethsemane scene. The question *ti katheudete* ('why are you sleeping?') is not merely rhetorical; it expresses genuine anguish that at the hour of greatest need, his closest companions have failed to keep watch. The imperative *anastantes proseuchesthe* ('having risen, pray!') demands immediate action.
47. The phrase *eti autou lalountos* ('while he was still speaking') emphasizes the abruptness — there is no pause between the prayer and the arrest. Judas is again identified as *heis tōn dōdeka* ('one of the Twelve'), a phrase that never loses its shock. The verb *philēsai* ('to kiss') refers to the standard greeting kiss between rabbi and disciple — Judas weaponizes a gesture of loyalty and affection. He *proērchetō* ('was going before, was

leading') the crowd, placing himself at the head of the arrest party.

48. Jesus addresses Judas by name and exposes the horrifying irony: the gesture of devotion (philēmati, 'with a kiss') is the instrument of betrayal (paradidōs, 'you are handing over'). The question form allows Judas one final moment of self-awareness — Jesus does not merely accuse but invites recognition of what he is doing. The title 'Son of Man' frames the betrayal in its full cosmic significance.
49. The phrase hoi peri auton ('those around him') refers to the disciples. Their question is addressed to kyrie ('Lord') and shows they are prepared to fight — the two swords from verse 38 are at hand. The question pataxomen en machairē ('shall we strike with a sword?') uses the same verb (patassō) used in the Septuagint for the LORD striking Egypt with plagues (Exodus 12:12).
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 12:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. Luke does not name the attacker (John 18:10 identifies him as Peter) or the victim (John 18:10 names him Malchus). The detail 'right ear' (to ous autou to dexion) is shared with John and adds realistic specificity. The verb apeilen ('cut off, removed') indicates a clean severing. The disciple acts without waiting for Jesus's answer to the question in verse 49.
51. The phrase eate heōs toutou ('permit until this point' or 'stop, that is enough') ends the violence. Jesus's healing of the servant's ear is unique to Luke and is his last recorded miracle — an act of mercy toward his enemy during his own arrest. The verb iasato ('he healed') indicates complete restoration. The juxtaposition of a disciple causing harm and Jesus healing it encapsulates the contrast between their understanding of the mission and his.
52. Luke uniquely specifies that the chief priests, temple officers, and elders themselves are present at the arrest — in Mark, they send subordinates. The word lēstēs ('bandit, revolutionary, insurrectionist') is the same word used for the men crucified with Jesus (Mark 15:27) and for Barabbas's associates. It carries political overtones of armed rebellion. Jesus's question exposes the absurdity: he taught openly in the temple every day (v. 53) and could have been confronted at any time.
53. The final phrase is unique to Luke and theologically profound: hautē estin hymōn hē hōra kai hē exousia tou skotous ('this is your hour and the authority of darkness'). Jesus concedes that this specific hour belongs to his enemies and to the cosmic power of darkness (skotous) behind them. The word exousia ('authority, power, right') indicates that darkness has been given temporary jurisdiction — not by its own power but by divine permission (cf. v. 53's connection to v. 22's 'as it has been determined'). This is not defeat but a controlled yielding.
54. The verbs syllabontes ('having seized'), ēgagon ('they led'), and eisēgagon ('they brought into') mark the progression from arrest to custody. Luke does not name the high priest (Caiaphas, according to Matthew 26:57). Peter's following makrothen ('from a distance') is an ominous detail — close enough to be tested, far enough to be alone. The imperfect ēkolouthei ('was following') indicates ongoing, hesitant pursuit.
55. The aulē ('courtyard') was the open-air interior space of the high priest's residence. The fire (pyr) provides both warmth (it was a spring night in Jerusalem, which can be cold) and light — the light that will illuminate Peter's face and lead to his identification. Peter sits mesos autōn ('in the middle of them'), surrounded by those loyal to the high priest. The setting is claustrophobic and dangerous.
56. The paidiskē ('servant girl, maid') holds no social power whatever — Peter, who declared readiness for prison and death (v. 33), is undone by the lowest-ranking person in the household. The verb atenisasa ('having fixed her gaze, having stared intently') indicates she studied his face carefully. The phrase syn autō ēn ('was with him') identifies Peter as a follower of Jesus.
57. The verb ἕρᾱσατο ('he denied') is the verb Jesus used in his prediction (v. 34). Peter denies knowing Jesus (ouk oida auton, 'I do not know him'), fulfilling the specific content predicted. The address gynai ('woman') is not disrespectful in Greek (Jesus uses it for his mother in John 2:4) but is dismissive in this context.
58. The second accuser is male (heteros, masculine), providing a different source for the identification. The accusation ex autōn ei ('you are of them') identifies Peter as belonging to Jesus's group. Peter's denial ouk eimi ('I am not') is a stark inversion of Jesus's egō eimi ('I am') declarations. Each denial drives Peter further from his declared identity.
59. The interval hōsei hōras mias ('about one hour') makes the third denial deliberate rather than impulsive. The verb diischyrizeto ('insisted, affirmed confidently, maintained vehemently') is a strong word — this accuser is certain. The evidence is Peter's accent: kai gar Galilaios estin ('for he is indeed a Galilean'). Galilean Aramaic had distinctive pronunciation features that were recognizable in Jerusalem.
60. Peter's final denial is not merely 'I don't know him' but 'I don't know what you're talking about' — he denies understanding the accusation itself. The phrase parachrēma eti lalountos autou ('immediately while he was still speaking') means the rooster crows before Peter finishes his sentence — the prediction is fulfilled with devastating precision.
61. This detail — the Lord turning and looking at Peter (strapheis ho kyrios eneblepsen tō Petrō) — is unique to Luke and is one of the most poignant moments in the Gospels. The verb eneblepsen ('looked intently at') is the same word used in 20:17 when Jesus 'looked directly at' the religious leaders. The look carries no recorded words — only the gaze that Peter must have remembered for the rest of his life. Jesus is apparently being led through the courtyard, making eye contact possible. The title ho kyrios ('the Lord') emphasizes the contrast: the Lord remembers and watches; Peter forgot and failed.
62. The verb eklausen ('he wept') indicates audible sobbing (the same word used for Jesus weeping over Jerusalem in 19:41). The adverb pikrōs ('bitterly') describes the quality of the tears — not merely sad but acutely painful. Peter leaves the courtyard (exelthōn exō, 'going out outside'), removing himself from the scene of his failure. This is the last we see of Peter in Luke's passion narrative until the empty tomb report reaches him (24:12).

63. The verb *synechontes* ('holding, guarding, keeping in custody') identifies the abusers as the guards. The verbs *enepaizon* ('were mocking, were ridiculing') and *derontes* ('beating, striking, flogging') describe sustained physical abuse and humiliation. In Luke, this abuse occurs before the trial (unlike Mark, where it follows the trial), placing it during the night while Peter's denial is still reverberating.
64. The verb *perikalypsantes* ('having covered around, having blindfolded') sets up the cruel game: they blindfold Jesus and then demand he identify who strikes him, mocking his prophetic claims. The imperative *prophēteuson* ('prophecy!') is deeply ironic — at this very moment, Jesus's prophecy about Peter's denial has just been fulfilled with exact precision. The guards mock a prophetic ability they do not realize has been demonstrated.
65. The verb *blasphēmountes* ('blaspheming, reviling') is notable — Luke uses 'blasphemy' for what the guards say to Jesus, a term the Sanhedrin will use against Jesus in verse 71. The irony is double: those who blaspheme accuse Jesus of blasphemy. The phrase *hetera polla* ('many other things') indicates the abuse was extensive and sustained.
66. Luke's trial before the Sanhedrin occurs at dawn (*hōs egeneto hēmera*, 'when it became day'), not during the night as in Mark. This may reflect Luke's knowledge of Jewish legal procedure, which prohibited capital trials at night. The *presbyterion* ('council of elders') is defined as consisting of *archiereis* ('chief priests') and *grammateis* ('scribes'). The *synedrion* ('Sanhedrin, council') was the supreme judicial body of Judaism.
67. The question *ei sy ei ho christos* ('if you are the Christ') demands a direct messianic claim. Jesus's response *ean hymin eipō ou mē pisteusēte* ('if I tell you, you will by no means believe') exposes their bad faith — they are not seeking truth but building a case. The double negative *ou mē* ('you will absolutely not believe') indicates Jesus's certainty about their disposition.
68. The second conditional extends the point: not only will they not believe his answer, they will not engage honestly with his questions. This recalls their refusal to answer his question about John's baptism (20:1-8). The trial is predetermined, not a genuine inquiry.
69. Jesus combines Daniel 7:13 (Son of Man) with Psalm 110:1 (seated at the right hand) — the two texts he brought together in 20:41-44. The phrase *apo tou nyn* ('from now on, henceforth') is a temporal marker unique to Luke, indicating that the exaltation begins immediately, not at some distant future point. The seated position (*kathēmenos*) is a position of completed authority. The circumlocution *tēs dynamēōs tou theou* ('the power of God') avoids speaking God's name directly, as was customary.
69. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
69. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
70. The question shifts from 'Christ' (v. 67) to 'Son of God' (*huios tou theou*) — the council draws the theological implication from Jesus's claim about the Son of Man. Jesus's answer *hymeis legete hoti egō eimi* ('you say that I am') is neither a direct affirmation nor a denial — it places the declaration in their mouths while not disowning it. The phrase *egō eimi* ('I am') echoes the divine name (Exodus 3:14), which the council would recognize.
70. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
71. The council declares that Jesus's own words constitute sufficient evidence (*martyrias*, 'testimony, witness') — no additional witnesses are needed. The phrase *apo tou stomatos autou* ('from his own mouth') emphasizes that Jesus has self-incriminated. Luke's trial account is more compact than Mark's — there are no false witnesses, no torn robes, no formal verdict of blasphemy. The council proceeds directly from Jesus's self-identification to the decision to bring him before Pilate (23:1). The speed of the proceedings underscores their predetermined outcome.

23

Summary: *Luke 23 narrates the Roman trial and crucifixion of Jesus. The chapter moves through the trial before Pilate, the hearing before Herod Antipas (unique to Luke), the crowd's demand for Barabbas, the way to the cross with Simon of Cyrene and the weeping women of Jerusalem, the crucifixion between two criminals, the mocking by rulers and soldiers, the repentant criminal's plea and Jesus's promise of paradise, the darkness and torn curtain, Jesus's death, and the burial by Joseph of Arimathea. Luke's crucifixion narrative emphasizes Jesus's innocence (declared three times by Pilate and once by Herod) and his mercy even in death.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke's passion narrative is distinguished by several unique elements: the Herod Antipas hearing, the weeping women of Jerusalem (with Jesus's prophecy about Jerusalem's coming destruction), the dialogue between the two criminals (with the promise 'Today you will be with me in paradise'), and the centurion's declaration that Jesus was 'righteous' (rather than Mark's 'Son of God'). The textually disputed verse 34a — 'Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing' — is one of the most famous sayings attributed to Jesus and epitomizes Luke's portrait of Jesus as merciful even to his executioners.*

Translation Friction: Verse 34a ('Father, forgive them...') is absent from P75, Sinaiticus (original), Vaticanus, and other early witnesses, but present in Sinaiticus (corrected), Bezae, and most later manuscripts. Its authenticity is disputed among scholars. We include it following the SBLGNT's double-bracketed text and note the manuscript evidence. The historical details of Roman crucifixion are rendered without sanitizing. Luke's account of Pilate's three declarations of innocence (vv. 4, 14, 22) creates a more sympathetic portrait of Pilate than other sources support.

Connections: The Barabbas exchange echoes the Day of Atonement scapegoat ritual (Leviticus 16). The darkness at the crucifixion echoes the plague of darkness in Exodus 10:22 and the prophetic warnings of Amos 8:9. The torn curtain connects to the theology of access to God (Hebrews 10:19-22). Jesus's final words ('Father, into your hands I commit my spirit') quote Psalm 31:5. Joseph of Arimathea's burial fulfills Isaiah 53:9 ('with the rich in his death'). The women at the cross connect to the women who will discover the empty tomb (24:1-10).

¹Then the whole assembly rose and led him before Pilate. ²They began to accuse him, saying, "We found this man misleading our nation, forbidding the payment of taxes to Caesar, and claiming to be Christ, a king." ³Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?" Jesus answered him, "You say so." ⁴Pilate said to the chief priests and the crowds, "I find no basis for a charge against this man." ⁵But they pressed their case more urgently, saying, "He stirs up the people with his teaching throughout all Judea, from Galilee all the way here." ⁶When Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean. ⁷When he learned that Jesus was under Herod's jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod, who was also in Jerusalem during those days. ⁸When Herod saw Jesus, he was greatly pleased, for he had been wanting to see him for a long time because he had heard about him, and he was hoping to see some sign performed by him. ⁹He questioned him at considerable length, but Jesus gave him no answer. ¹⁰The chief priests and the scribes stood there, accusing him vehemently. ¹¹Herod, along with his soldiers, treated him with contempt and mocked him. Dressing him in an elegant robe, he sent him back to Pilate. ¹²That day Herod and Pilate became friends with each other; before this they had been enemies. ¹³Pilate then called together the chief priests, the rulers, and the people ¹⁴Said to them, you have brought this man to me, as one that perverteth the people — and, take notice, I, having examined him before you, have found no fault in this man touching those things whereof you accuse him:. ¹⁵Neither has Herod, for he sent him back to us. Clearly, he has done nothing deserving death. ¹⁶Therefore, I will have him flogged and then release him." ¹⁸But they all cried out together, "Away with this man! Release Barabbas to us!" ¹⁹Barabbas had been thrown into prison for an insurrection that had taken place in the city and for murder. ²⁰Pilate, wanting to release Jesus, addressed them again. ²¹But they kept shouting, "Crucify! Crucify him!" ²²For the third time he said to them, "Why? What crime has this man committed? I have found no grounds for the death penalty in his case. Therefore I will have him flogged and release him." ²³But they were insistent, demanding with loud cries that he be crucified, and their voices prevailed. ²⁴So Pilate decided to grant their demand. ²⁵He released the man who had been thrown into prison for insurrection and murder — the one they asked for — but he handed Jesus over to their will. ²⁶As they led him away, they seized a man named Simon from Cyrene, who was coming in from the countryside, and placed the cross on him to carry behind Jesus. ²⁷A large crowd of the people followed him, including women who were mourning and wailing for him. ²⁸Jesus turned to them and said, "Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for me. Weep for yourselves and for your children, ²⁹For, take notice, the days are coming, in the which they will say, Blessed are the barren, and the wombs that never bare, and the paps which never offered suck. ³⁰Then they will begin to say to the mountains, 'Fall on us!' and to the hills, 'Cover us!' ³¹For if they do these things when the wood is green, what will happen when it is dry?" ³²Two other criminals were also led away with him to be executed. ³³When they came to the place called The Skull, they crucified him there, along with the criminals — one on his right, the other on his left. ³⁴Jesus said, "Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing." And they divided his garments among themselves by casting lots. ³⁵The people stood watching, and the rulers sneered at him, saying, "He saved others; let him save himself, if he is the Christ of God, the Chosen One." ³⁶The soldiers also mocked him, coming up and offering him sour wine, ³⁷Declaring, If you be the king of the Jews, save thyself. ³⁸There was also an inscription above him: "This is the King of the Jews." ³⁹One of the criminals hanging there hurled insults at him, saying, "Aren't you the Christ? Save yourself and us!" ⁴⁰But the other rebuked him, saying, "Do you not even fear God, since you are under the same sentence? ⁴¹We are getting what we deserve for what we have done, but this man has done nothing wrong." ⁴

²Then he said, "Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom." ⁴³Jesus said to him, "Truly I tell you, today you will be with me in paradise." ⁴⁴It was now about the sixth hour, and darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour, ⁴⁵The sun stopped shining, and the curtain of the temple was torn down the middle. ⁴⁶Then Jesus called out with a loud voice, "Father, into your hands I commit my spirit." Having said this, he breathed his last. ⁴⁷When the centurion saw what had happened, he praised God, saying, "Surely this man was righteous." ⁴⁸And all the crowds that had gathered for this spectacle, when they saw what had taken place, went home beating their chests. ⁴⁹All those who knew him stood at a distance, including the women who had followed him from Galilee, watching these things. ⁵⁰Now there was a man named Joseph, a member of the council, a good and righteous man, ⁵¹Indeed, (The same had not consented to the counsel and deed of them;) he was of Arimathaea, a city of the Jews — who also himself waited for God's reign. ⁵²This man went to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. ⁵³He took it down, wrapped it in a linen cloth, and placed him in a rock-cut tomb where no one had yet been laid. ⁵⁴It was the day of Preparation, and the Sabbath was about to begin. ⁵⁵The women who had come with him from Galilee followed and saw the tomb and how his body was placed in it. ⁵⁶Then they returned and prepared spices and ointments. And on the Sabbath they rested according to the commandment.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *hapan to plēthos autōn* ('the whole multitude of them') indicates a corporate decision by the full Sanhedrin. They bring Jesus to Pilate (Pontius Pilatus, Roman prefect of Judea, AD 26-36) because only the Roman governor had the authority to execute a death sentence (*ius gladii*). The transition from Jewish religious tribunal to Roman political court requires reframing the charges.
2. The charges are three, and all are political rather than religious: (1) *diastephonta to ethnos* ('misleading/perverting the nation') — sedition; (2) *kōlyonta phorous Kaisari didonai* ('forbidding taxes to Caesar') — a direct lie, since Jesus said the opposite in 20:25; (3) *legonta heauton christon basilea einai* ('claiming to be Christ, a king') — technically true but framed as a political claim against Caesar's sovereignty. The Sanhedrin transforms a religious charge (blasphemy) into a political one (treason) to engage Roman jurisdiction.
3. Pilate seizes on the only charge that matters to Rome: kingship. The question *sy ei ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn* ('you are the king of the Jews?') is the charge that will appear on the cross (v. 38). Jesus's answer *sy legeis* ('you say so' or 'you are the one saying it') is identical in form to his answer before the Sanhedrin (22:70) — an acknowledgment that neither fully affirms nor denies, placing the characterization in the questioner's framework.
4. This is the first of Pilate's three declarations of Jesus's innocence (see also vv. 14 and 22). The phrase *ouden heuriskō aition* ('I find nothing blameworthy, no cause for accusation') is a formal legal verdict of acquittal. Despite this, Pilate does not release Jesus — the political pressure overrides the judicial finding. Luke's emphasis on Pilate's repeated acquittals serves his broader theme of Jesus's innocence.
5. The verb *epischyon* ('they were insistent, they pressed harder') shows escalating pressure. The verb *anaseiei* ('stirs up, incites, agitates') carries connotations of rebellion. The geographical sweep — 'from Galilee all the way here' — is designed to portray Jesus as a widespread, destabilizing influence. The mention of 'Galilee' (Galilaias) catches Pilate's attention, as the next verse shows.
6. Pilate's question about Galilean origin is not mere curiosity but jurisdictional — if Jesus is from Galilee, he falls under Herod Antipas's authority, and the case can be transferred. This offers Pilate a political exit: he can defer the decision to someone else.
7. Herod Antipas (son of Herod the Great, tetrarch of Galilee and Perea) was in Jerusalem for the Passover festival. The phrase *ek tēs exousias Hērōdou* ('from Herod's jurisdiction') refers to territorial authority. The Herod episode is unique to Luke and historically plausible — Roman officials sometimes deferred cases to local rulers. Pilate's referral is a political maneuver, not a legal requirement.
8. Herod's reaction *echarē lian* ('he was very glad') is grotesque in context — he treats Jesus as an entertainer. His desire to see a *sēmeion* ('sign, miracle') reduces Jesus's ministry to spectacle. This connects to 9:9, where Herod expressed curiosity about Jesus and tried to see him. His 'joy' at meeting Jesus contrasts with Jesus's silence, creating a scene of failed encounter between the fascinated ruler and the silent prisoner.
9. The phrase *en logois hikanois* ('with many words, at considerable length') indicates extensive questioning. Jesus's total silence (*ouden apekrinat autō*, 'he answered him nothing') echoes Isaiah 53:7 ('like a sheep before its shearers is silent, so he did not open his mouth'). Jesus, who answered both the Sanhedrin and Pilate, says nothing to Herod — the man who killed John the Baptist (9:9) receives no word at all.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The adverb *eutonōs* ('vehemently, vigorously, with great intensity') indicates aggressive prosecution. The religious leaders have followed Jesus from Pilate to Herod to maintain the pressure. The verb *katēgorountes* ('accusing') is a legal term for formal prosecution.
11. The verb *exouthenēsas* ('having treated with contempt, having despised') is the same word used in 18:9 for those who 'despised' others. The *esthēta lampran* ('bright/splendid garment') is a mock-royal robe, a parody of kingly attire. Herod's mockery is political theater: by dressing Jesus as a pretend king, he dismisses the charge as ridiculous. He does not condemn Jesus — his sending him back constitutes an implicit acquittal.

12. This detail is unique to Luke and deeply ironic: the trial of Jesus, the Prince of Peace, reconciles two political enemies. Their enmity (echthra) may have stemmed from the incident described in 13:1 (Pilate's slaughter of Galileans, which would have offended Herod as ruler of Galilee). The joint handling of the Jesus case creates a political bond: both can share responsibility while neither takes full blame.
13. Pilate reassembles all parties — religious leaders, civic leaders, and the general public. The inclusion of *ton laon* ('the people') is significant: Pilate makes his second acquittal public, presumably hoping popular opinion will support release.
14. The verb *anakrinās* ('having examined, having conducted a judicial investigation') is a legal technical term for a formal hearing. Pilate's second declaration of innocence is more detailed than the first (v. 4) — he specifies that the examination was thorough (*enōpion hymōn*, 'in your presence') and that none of the specific charges (*hōn katēgoreite*, 'of which you accuse') has substance.
15. Pilate appeals to Herod's verdict as corroboration: two independent authorities have found no capital offense. The phrase *ouden axion thanatou* ('nothing worthy of death') is a formal legal assessment. The perfect participle *pepragmenon* ('having been done') indicates a thorough review of Jesus's entire record, not just the current charges. The double acquittal should, in any fair legal system, result in release.
16. The verb *paideusas* ('having disciplined, having punished, having flogged') is a euphemism for a severe beating that typically preceded release in Roman provincial justice. Pilate's proposal is a compromise: punish Jesus enough to satisfy the accusers without executing an innocent man. The injustice is already apparent — Pilate proposes to flog someone he has just declared innocent.
17. Verse 17 is absent from the SBLGNT and most critical editions. It appears in some later manuscripts as an explanatory gloss about the custom of releasing a prisoner at the festival, drawn from Mark 15:6/Matthew 27:15. We follow the SBLGNT in omitting it from the rendering. The custom is referenced in verse 18 without this explanatory note.
18. The adverb *pamplēthei* ('all together, with the whole multitude') indicates a unified crowd reaction. The verb *aire* ('take away, remove, destroy') expresses violent rejection. The name Barabbas (Barabbas) means 'son of the father' (*bar-abba*) in Aramaic — an ironic name, as the crowd demands the release of 'the son of the father' while calling for the death of the Son of the Father. The crowd's demand for Barabbas is not explained in Luke — the reader must accept this sudden reversal from the people who 'hung on his words' (19:48).
19. Luke specifies Barabbas's crimes: *stasin* ('insurrection, revolt, sedition') and *phonon* ('murder'). The irony is devastating: Jesus, falsely accused of inciting revolt (v. 2), is condemned, while Barabbas, who actually committed insurrection and murder, is released. The charges the authorities fabricated against Jesus accurately describe Barabbas.
20. Luke emphasizes Pilate's desire (*thelōn*, 'wanting, wishing') to release Jesus — the Roman governor is portrayed as reluctantly pushed toward crucifixion rather than eagerly pursuing it. The verb *prosephōnēsen* ('called out to, addressed') suggests Pilate is trying to persuade the crowd.
21. The imperfect *epephōnoun* ('they kept shouting') indicates sustained, repeated demands. The doubled imperative *staurou staurou* ('crucify, crucify') is a demand for the most degrading Roman punishment — reserved for slaves, pirates, and those convicted of treason. The crowd's chant drowns out Pilate's appeal.
22. Luke explicitly notes this is the third time (*triton*) Pilate declares Jesus's innocence, creating a structural parallel with Peter's three denials. The question *ti gar kakon epoiēsen houtos* ('what evil has this man done?') demands a specific crime, which is never provided. Pilate repeats his compromise offer (flogging and release) word for word from verse 16, but the crowd's response will be different this time.
23. The verb *epekeinto* ('they pressed upon, they were insistent, they bore down') describes overwhelming pressure. The verb *katischyon* ('prevailed, won out, gained strength') is a legal term indicating that the crowd's demand overcame Pilate's resistance. Luke's account makes clear that Pilate capitulated to pressure rather than reaching a judicial decision — the voices (*phōnai*), not evidence, determined the outcome.
24. The verb *epekrinen* ('he pronounced judgment, he decided, he decreed') is a judicial term — Pilate formally grants the crowd's *aitēma* ('demand, request'). The sentence is technically illegal by Roman standards: the governor condemns a man he has three times declared innocent. Luke does not soften this injustice.
25. Luke restates Barabbas's crimes (*stasis* and *phonos*) to maximize the irony of the exchange. The phrase *paredōken tō thelēmati autōn* ('he handed over to their will') uses *paradidōmi*, the same verb used for Judas's betrayal and for God's sovereign handing-over. Pilate surrenders Jesus not to justice but to 'their will' — mob desire replaces legal verdict.
26. Roman practice required the condemned to carry the horizontal crossbeam (*patibulum*) to the execution site. Jesus's inability to carry it suggests extreme physical weakness from the flogging. Simon of Cyrene (a city in modern Libya) was likely a Jewish pilgrim in Jerusalem for Passover. The phrase *pherein opisthen tou Iēsou* ('to carry behind Jesus') takes on symbolic meaning in light of Jesus's teaching: 'Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple' (14:27). Simon literally fulfills the discipleship metaphor.
27. This scene is unique to Luke. The women who mourn (*ekoptonto*, 'were beating their breasts') and wail (*ethrēnoun*, 'were lamenting with funeral dirges') perform the traditional Jewish mourning rites while Jesus is still alive. The distinction between 'the people' (*tou laou*) and 'women' (*gynaikōn*) may indicate that Luke sees the women as a distinct group within the larger crowd. Their grief is genuine, unlike the crowd's demand for crucifixion.
28. The address *thygateres Ierousalēm* ('daughters of Jerusalem') echoes the Song of Solomon (1:5, 2:7, 3:5, 5:8, 8:4) and the prophets. Jesus redirects their grief from himself to what awaits Jerusalem — the coming destruction he prophesied in 19:41-44 and 21:20-24. Even on the way to his own execution, Jesus is concerned for others. The phrase 'your children' (*ta tekna hymōn*) connects to 19:44 ('they will dash you to the ground — you and your children within you').

- 29.** This is a devastating inversion of the normal beatitude: in Jewish culture, barrenness was considered a curse (cf. Elizabeth's 'disgrace' in 1:25), but Jesus declares that the coming siege will be so horrific that childless women will be the fortunate ones — they will have no children to watch suffer. Josephus records instances of cannibalism during the siege of Jerusalem (War 6.3.4), making this prophecy terrifyingly specific.
- 30.** Jesus quotes Hosea 10:8, the prophet's description of Israel's desperate flight from divine judgment. The plea for mountains to crush them and hills to cover them expresses a preference for death over the horrors that are coming. This passage is later echoed in Revelation 6:16, where the kings of the earth cry the same words at the cosmic judgment.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 10:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** This proverb is unique to Luke and enigmatic. The 'green wood' (hygō xylō) is fresh and difficult to burn; the 'dry wood' (xērō) catches fire easily. If Rome does this to an innocent man (the green wood, full of life), what will Rome do to a guilty, rebellious nation (the dry wood, ready to burn)? The proverb warns that the suffering Jesus endures is mild compared to what Jerusalem will face.
- 32.** The word kakourgoi ('criminals, evildoers') is more general than Mark's lēstai ('revolutionaries, bandits'). The phrase syn autō ('with him') fulfills the Isaiah 53:12 quotation from 22:37: 'he was counted among the lawless.' The grammatical structure heteroi kakourgoi duo ('two other criminals') could be read as classifying Jesus as a criminal too — some manuscripts adjust the word order to avoid this implication.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The Greek Kranion ('Skull') translates the Aramaic Golgotha (which only Mark and Matthew transliterate; Luke gives only the Greek). The traditional site was a rocky outcrop outside the city walls. Luke's account of the crucifixion itself is understated: estayrōsan auton ('they crucified him') — four words in Greek for the most agonizing form of execution the Roman world knew. The positioning of the two criminals on either side physically enacts Isaiah 53:12.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** TEXTUAL NOTE: The first sentence ('Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing') is absent from P75, the original hand of Codex Sinaiticus, Codex Vaticanus, and other early witnesses. It is present in the corrected Sinaiticus, Codex Bezae, and most later manuscripts. The SBLGNT includes it in double brackets. The saying is consistent with Luke's portrait of Jesus (cf. the prayer for persecutors and Stephen's echo in Acts 7:60) and may have been removed by scribes who thought it inappropriate after the destruction of Jerusalem. We include it but note the disputed evidence. The imperfect elegen ('he was saying, he kept saying') may indicate repeated prayer. The casting of lots for garments echoes Psalm 22:18.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 22:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** Luke distinguishes between the people (ho laos) who simply watch (theōrōn, 'observing') and the rulers (hoi archontes) who actively mock (exemyktērizon, 'were sneering, were turning up their noses'). The taunt 'he saved others' (allous esōsen) is unwittingly true — Jesus did save others, and the irony is that saving himself would make saving others impossible. The title ho eklektos ('the Chosen One') echoes the divine voice at the transfiguration (9:35), spoken by God in affirmation and now by the rulers in mockery.
- 36.** The soldiers' mockery adds a military dimension to the religious rulers' scorn. The oxos ('vinegar, sour wine') was posca, the cheap wine-vinegar mixture that Roman soldiers drank. Offering it to a crucified man was a form of taunting — the soldiers' drink, not a prisoner's comfort. The scene echoes Psalm 69:21 ('they gave me vinegar for my thirst').
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 69:21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The soldiers' mockery parallels the rulers' (v. 35) but uses the political title 'King of the Jews' (ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn) rather than the religious title 'Christ.' Three groups now mock: rulers (v. 35), soldiers (vv. 36-37), and one of the criminals (v. 39). The conditional ei ('if') challenges Jesus to prove his claim through self-rescue — the fundamental misunderstanding of his mission.
- 38.** The epigraphē ('inscription, titulus') was the charge plaque (titulus crucis) that Roman practice required to be displayed above the condemned, stating the crime. Luke's version is the shortest of the four Gospels. The charge — basileus tōn Ioudaiōn ('King of the Jews') — was political treason against Rome. Ironically, the inscription is theologically true: the crucified man is indeed the King of the Jews, enthroned on a cross.
- 39.** The verb eblasphēmei ('was blaspheming, was reviling') is strong — the criminal does not merely ask for help but insults Jesus. The participle kremasthentōn ('hanging') uses a verb associated with the curse of Deuteronomy 21:23 ('cursed is anyone who hangs on a tree'). His demand echoes the rulers' and soldiers' mockery, adding 'and us' — he wants rescue without repentance.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 40.** The second criminal's response is unique to Luke and theologically remarkable. He rebukes (epitimōn) the first criminal — the same verb used for rebuking demons and storms. His question 'Do you not fear God?' (oude phobē sy ton theon) identifies the fundamental problem: even facing death, the first criminal lacks reverence for God. The phrase en tō autō krimati ('under the same judgment/condemnation') acknowledges that they share Jesus's fate.

41. The criminal confesses his own guilt (*dikaiōs*, 'justly, rightly') and declares Jesus's innocence (*ouden atapon epraxen*, 'he has done nothing out of place, nothing wrong'). The word *atapon* ('out of place, wrong, improper, evil') is a litotes — a profound understatement. This criminal becomes the fifth witness to Jesus's innocence in Luke's passion narrative (after Pilate three times and Herod). A condemned criminal sees what the religious and political authorities refuse to acknowledge.
42. The criminal addresses Jesus by name (*Iēsou*) without a title — an intimacy that goes beyond formality. The plea *mnēsthēti mou* ('remember me') echoes the language of the Psalms (Psalm 25:7, 106:4), where 'remember' means to act in someone's favor. The phrase *hotan elthēs eis tēn basileian sou* ('when you come into your kingdom') is astonishing: hanging beside a dying man, the criminal confesses faith in Jesus's kingship and future reign. This is perhaps the most radical act of faith in the Gospels.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 25:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The response exceeds the request: the criminal asked to be remembered in a future kingdom; Jesus promises presence with him today (*sēmeron*) in paradise (*paradeisō*). The word *paradeisos* (borrowed from Persian, meaning 'enclosed garden, park') is used in the Septuagint for the Garden of Eden (Genesis 2:8) and in Jewish apocalyptic literature for the dwelling of the righteous dead. Luke's characteristic *sēmeron* ('today') — the same word used at Jesus's birth (2:11), in the Nazareth sermon (4:21), and at Zacchaeus's house (19:9) — marks the present moment as the time of salvation. The promise *met' emou esē* ('you will be with me') defines paradise not as a place but as communion with Jesus.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. The 'sixth hour' (*hōra hektē*) is noon; the 'ninth hour' (*hōras enatēs*) is 3 PM — three hours of midday darkness. The darkness (*skotos*) echoes the plague of darkness over Egypt (Exodus 10:21-23) and the prophetic warnings of Amos 8:9 ('I will make the sun go down at noon and darken the earth in broad daylight'). The phrase *eph' holēn tēn gēn* ('over the whole land/earth') is ambiguous — it could mean the land of Israel or the entire earth. The phenomenon was not a normal solar eclipse (impossible during Passover's full moon).
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 10:21-23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Amos 8:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The verb *eklipontos* ('failing, being eclipsed') is the same root used in 22:32 for faith 'failing.' Luke places the tearing of the temple curtain before Jesus's death (unlike Mark, who places it after), making it a sign that accompanies the dying rather than follows it. The *katapetasma tou naou* ('curtain of the sanctuary') most likely refers to the inner curtain separating the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place (Exodus 26:33). Its tearing *meson* ('in the middle, in two') symbolizes the removal of the barrier between God and humanity — access to God's presence is opened through Jesus's death.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 26:33 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
46. Luke's Jesus dies with the words of Psalm 31:5 on his lips — a psalm of trust in God's protection. This replaces Mark's cry of dereliction ('My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' from Psalm 22:1). Luke's last word is 'Father' (*Pater*), maintaining the intimate filial relationship that characterized Jesus's prayer life throughout the Gospel (10:21, 11:2, 22:42, 23:34). The verb *paratithēmai* ('I entrust, I commit, I deposit for safekeeping') is a banking term for depositing something valuable with a trusted guardian. The verb *exepneusen* ('he breathed out, he expired') is a dignified description of death — Jesus releases his spirit actively rather than having it taken from him.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 31:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 22:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
47. Luke's centurion declares Jesus *dikaio*s ('righteous, innocent') rather than Mark's 'Son of God' (*huios theou*). This serves Luke's apologetic purpose: even the Roman executioner acknowledges Jesus's innocence. The verb *edoxazen* ('he was glorifying, praising') is a Lukan term — the centurion does not merely express an opinion but praises God. This is the sixth witness to Jesus's innocence in the passion narrative. The word *ontōs* ('truly, certainly, in reality') expresses firm conviction.
48. The crowds who had demanded crucifixion now return home *typtones ta stēthē* ('beating their chests') — a gesture of grief, mourning, and possibly repentance. Luke's portrait of the crowd is more nuanced than often recognized: they are not uniformly hostile but move from demand (v. 21) to grief (v. 48). The word *theōrian* ('spectacle, sight') reduces the crucifixion to public entertainment, which makes the crowd's emotional reversal all the more striking.
49. The 'acquaintances' (*gnōstōi*) and the Galilean women remain — they are witnesses who will bridge the gap between crucifixion and resurrection. Their position *apo makrothen* ('from a distance') echoes the ten lepers' position (17:12) and Peter's following (22:54). The women are named in 24:10 (Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James). Their faithful watching (*horōsai*, 'seeing, observing') contrasts with the disciples' absence — Luke does not record any male disciple at the cross.

50. Joseph of Arimathea is described as a bouleutēs ('councilor'), meaning he was a member of the Sanhedrin — the very body that condemned Jesus. Luke's description of him as agathos kai dikaios ('good and righteous') uses the same language applied to Simeon (2:25) and to Barnabas (Acts 11:24). The dash at the end indicates the description continues.
51. The phrase ouk ēn synkatatetheimenos ('had not agreed, had not voted with') is a legal term indicating dissent from the Sanhedrin's verdict. This detail is unique to Luke and establishes Joseph's moral integrity — he opposed the plot. Arimathea (probably Ramathaim, Samuel's hometown in 1 Samuel 1:1) was a town in the Judean hills. The phrase prosedecheto tēn basileian tou theou ('was waiting expectantly for the kingdom of God') links Joseph to Simeon (2:25, 'waiting for the consolation of Israel') and Anna (2:38, 'looking forward to the redemption of Jerusalem').
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. Requesting the body of a crucified criminal required courage — it identified Joseph publicly as an associate of a condemned man. Under Roman law, the bodies of the executed usually belonged to the state; release to family or friends required special permission. Joseph's willingness to approach Pilate marks him as willing to bear the social cost of association with Jesus.
53. The verb kathelōn ('having taken down') implies Joseph personally removed the body from the cross — an act of extraordinary devotion. The sindoni ('linen cloth, linen shroud') was used for burial wrapping. The mnēmati laxeutō ('tomb hewn/cut from rock') was an expensive, newly excavated burial cave. The detail 'where no one had yet been laid' (hou ouk ēn oudeis oupō keimenos) ensures that the subsequent resurrection cannot be confused with another body's presence.
54. The paraskeuē ('Preparation') was Friday, the day before the Sabbath, when all work for the Sabbath had to be completed before sunset. The verb epephōskēn ('was dawning, was beginning') refers to the Jewish reckoning where a new day began at sunset, not sunrise — the Sabbath was 'dawning' as the sun set on Friday evening. The urgency of the burial is explained: once the Sabbath began, no burial work could be performed.
55. The women serve as witnesses to both the death (v. 49) and the burial — they know exactly where the tomb is and how the body was positioned. The verb etheasanto ('they observed carefully, they saw with attention') indicates deliberate observation, not a passing glance. This eyewitness knowledge will be critical when they return after the Sabbath (24:1) and find the tomb empty. Their role as witnesses is legally significant in Luke's narrative, even though women's testimony was not accepted in Jewish courts.
56. The women's preparation of arōmata kai myra ('spices and ointments') for proper burial anointing demonstrates both their devotion and their expectation that Jesus is permanently dead — they are preparing for a body, not awaiting a resurrection. The final clause kata tēn entolēn ('according to the commandment') refers to the Sabbath law of Exodus 20:8-11. Even in grief, they observe Torah. The chapter ends on the Sabbath rest — silence, stillness, waiting. Luke places the reader in the suspended moment between death and resurrection.
56. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 20:8-11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

24

Summary: *Luke 24 narrates the resurrection and its aftermath: the women discover the empty tomb and receive the angelic announcement, Peter visits the tomb, the risen Jesus walks with two disciples on the road to Emmaus and is recognized in the breaking of bread, Jesus appears to the gathered disciples in Jerusalem, opens their minds to understand Scripture, commissions them as witnesses, and ascends into heaven. The chapter is a theological masterpiece that demonstrates how the resurrection transforms everything — grief becomes joy, confusion becomes understanding, and scattered disciples become commissioned witnesses.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Emmaus road narrative (unique to Luke) is one of the most carefully crafted resurrection accounts in the New Testament. The literary structure is exquisite: two disciples walk away from Jerusalem in despair, encounter the risen Jesus without recognizing him, receive a comprehensive Bible study on messianic suffering, recognize him in the breaking of bread, and immediately return to Jerusalem transformed. The phrase 'Did not our hearts burn within us?' captures the subjective experience of encounter with the risen Christ. Jesus's opening of their minds to understand Scripture (v. 45) resolves the incomprehension noted throughout the Gospel (9:45, 18:34). The ascension in verses 50-53 brings the Gospel full circle — it began in the temple (1:8-9) and ends in the temple (24:53).*

Translation Friction: *The Emmaus road episode raises questions about the nature of the resurrection body — Jesus walks, talks, and eats, yet is not recognized by people who knew him. The phrase 'their eyes were kept from recognizing him' (v. 16) uses a divine passive, suggesting God prevented recognition until the proper moment. We render the text as written without speculating about the physics of resurrection bodies. The ascension is*

described very briefly here (v. 51) and in more detail in Acts 1:9-11.

Connections: The empty tomb tradition is shared with all four Gospels. The Emmaus road echoes Genesis 18 (Abraham's hospitality to divine visitors) and the post-exile journey motif in Isaiah 40-55. Jesus's scriptural exposition connects to the promise of 21:15 ('I will give you words and wisdom'). The commission to be 'witnesses' (v. 48) is the programmatic statement that launches Acts. The blessing at Bethany (v. 50) connects to the priestly blessing of Numbers 6:24-26. The return to the temple (v. 53) completes the inclusio with Luke 1.

¹On the first day of the week, at early dawn, the women came to the tomb, bringing the spices they had prepared. ²They found the stone rolled away from the tomb, ³They entered in, and discovered not the body of the Lord Jesus. ⁴While they were puzzling over this, suddenly two men stood beside them in dazzling clothing. ⁵The women were terrified and bowed their faces to the ground, but the men said to them, "Why do you seek the living among the dead? ⁶He is not here; he has been raised. Remember how he told you while he was still in Galilee, ⁷Indeed, declaring, the Son of Man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and be crucified, and the third day come back to life. ⁸Then they remembered his words. ⁹When they returned from the tomb, they reported all these things to the Eleven and to all the others. ¹⁰It was Mary Magdalene, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them who told these things to the apostles. ¹¹But these words seemed to them like nonsense, and they did not believe them. ¹²But Peter got up and ran to the tomb. Bending down, he saw the linen cloths by themselves. Then he went home, amazed at what had happened. ¹³Now that same day, two of them were walking to a village called Emmaus, about seven miles from Jerusalem. ¹⁴They talked as one of all these matters which had happened. ¹⁵While they were talking and discussing, Jesus himself came near and walked with them, ¹⁶However, their eyes were holden that they should not know him. ¹⁷He said to them, "What are you discussing with each other as you walk along?" They stood still, their faces downcast. ¹⁸One of them, named Cleopas, answered him, "Are you the only visitor to Jerusalem who does not know the things that have happened there in these days?" ¹⁹He asked them, "What things?" They said to him, "The things concerning Jesus of Nazareth, who was a prophet mighty in deed and word before God and all the people — ²⁰How the leading religious leaders and our rulers delivered him to be condemned to death, and have crucified him. ²¹But we had hoped that he was the one who was going to redeem Israel. And besides all this, it is now the third day since these things happened. ²²Moreover, some women from our group astonished us. They went to the tomb early this morning ²³When they discovered not his body, they arrived and stated, that they had also seen a vision of angels, which stated that he was alive. ²⁴Some of those who were with us went to the tomb and found it just as the women had said, but him they did not see." ²⁵Then he said to them, "How foolish you are, and how slow of heart to believe all that the prophets have spoken! ²⁶Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things and then enter into his glory?" ²⁷And beginning with Moses and all the Prophets, he interpreted for them the things concerning himself in all the Scriptures. ²⁸As they approached the village where they were going, he acted as though he were going farther. ²⁹But they urged him strongly, saying, "Stay with us, because it is nearly evening and the day is almost over." So he went in to stay with them. ³⁰When he had reclined at the table with them, he took the bread, blessed it, broke it, and began giving it to them. ³¹Then their eyes were opened and they recognized him — and he vanished from their sight. ³²They said to each other, "Were not our hearts burning within us while he was speaking to us on the road, while he was opening the Scriptures to us?" ³³They got up that very hour and returned to Jerusalem. There they found the Eleven and those with them gathered together, ³⁴Declaring, The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon. ³⁵Then they described what had happened on the road and how he had been made known to them in the breaking of the bread. ³⁶While they were saying these things, Jesus himself stood among them and said to them, "Peace to you." ³⁷They were startled and terrified, thinking they were seeing a ghost. ³⁸He said to them, "Why are you troubled, and why do doubts arise in your hearts? ³⁹Look at my hands and my feet — it is I myself! Touch me and see, because a ghost does not have flesh and bones as you can see that I have." ⁴⁰When he had said this, he showed them his hands and his feet. ⁴¹While they still could not believe it because of their joy and amazement, he said to them, "Do you have anything here to eat?" ⁴²They gave him a piece of broiled fish, ⁴³He picked up it, and did eat before them. ⁴⁴Then he said to them, "These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you — that everything written about me in the Law of Moses, the Prophets, and the Psalms must be fulfilled." ⁴⁵Then he opened their minds to understand the Scriptures. ⁴⁶He said to them, "Thus it is written: the

Christ will suffer and rise from the dead on the third day, ⁴⁷That repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name in the midst of all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. ⁴⁸You are witnesses of these things. ⁴⁹And look, I am sending what my Father promised upon you. But stay in the city until you have been clothed with power from on high." ⁵⁰Then he led them out as far as Bethany, and lifting up his hands, he blessed them. ⁵¹While he was blessing them, he parted from them and was carried up into heaven. ⁵²They worshipped him, and returned to Jerusalem with remarkable joy:. ⁵³They spent all their time in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *tē mia tōn sabbatōn* ('on the first [day] of the Sabbaths/week') became the standard designation for Sunday, the day of resurrection. The phrase *orthrou batheōs* ('at deep dawn, very early') indicates the first light before sunrise — they came as early as possible after the Sabbath rest ended. The 'spices' (*arōmata*) are those prepared in 23:56. The women's visit is motivated by love and grief, not by any expectation of resurrection.
2. The perfect participle *apokeklystmenon* ('having been rolled away') indicates a completed action with ongoing results — the stone is already moved when they arrive. Rock-cut tombs in first-century Jerusalem were typically sealed with a large disc-shaped stone rolled in a channel across the entrance. Luke does not describe who moved the stone (Matthew attributes it to an angel; Mark leaves it unexplained).
3. Luke uses the full title *tou kyriou Iēsou* ('of the Lord Jesus'), which is more characteristic of Acts than of the Gospel — it reads from a post-resurrection perspective where the lordship of Jesus is established. The negative *ouch heuron* ('they did not find') is stark: the absence of the body is the first datum of the resurrection, though the women do not yet interpret it that way.
4. The verb *aporeisthai* ('to be at a loss, to be perplexed, to be puzzled') describes genuine confusion — the empty tomb is not self-interpreting. The 'two men' (*andres duo*) are later identified as angels (v. 23) and described as wearing *esthēti astraptousē* ('clothing that flashes like lightning'). Luke uses 'two men' rather than 'angels,' perhaps to emphasize the witness motif (two witnesses establish testimony, Deuteronomy 19:15). The same 'two men in white' appear at the ascension (Acts 1:10).
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 19:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The posture *emphobōn* ('terrified') and *klinousōn ta prosōpa eis tēn gēn* ('bowing their faces to the ground') is the standard response to angelic appearance. The question *ti zēteite ton zōnta meta tōn nekrōn* ('why do you seek the living one among the dead?') is one of the most theologically significant questions in the New Testament. The participle *ton zōnta* ('the living one') is not merely 'someone alive' but a title — Jesus is 'the Living One,' an attribute of God himself (cf. 'the living God'). The question reframes the entire situation: the tomb is the wrong place to look for someone who is alive.
6. The core proclamation is three words in Greek: *ouk estin hōde* ('he is not here') followed by *alla ēgerthē* ('but he has been raised'). The passive voice *ēgerthē* ('he was raised') is a divine passive — God raised Jesus from the dead. The command *mnēsthēte* ('remember!') redirects them to Jesus's own words. Luke's version refers to Galilee as the location of the prediction, not as the location where Jesus will appear (contrast Mark 16:7, 'he is going ahead of you to Galilee').
7. The angels quote Jesus's passion predictions (9:22, 9:44, 18:31-33), compressing them into a three-part summary: delivery (*paradothēnai*), crucifixion (*staurōthēnai*), and resurrection (*anastēnai*). The word *dei* ('must, it is necessary') reaffirms divine necessity — the passion was not an accident but a plan. The phrase *anthrōpōn hamartōlōn* ('sinful men') encompasses both Jewish and Roman agents, without singling out either group.
8. The verb *emnēsthēsan* ('they remembered') marks the turning point — the angelic reminder triggers recognition. What was hidden (18:34, 'this saying was hidden from them') is now uncovered. Remembering in Luke is not passive recall but the activation of understanding that transforms the present.
9. The women are the first witnesses and first proclaimers of the resurrection — they *apēngeilan* ('reported, announced') the news. The 'Eleven' (*tois hendeka*) reflects Judas's defection. The phrase *pasin tois loipois* ('all the rest') indicates a larger group of disciples beyond the Twelve.
10. Luke now names the women: Mary Magdalene (from whom seven demons had been cast out, 8:2), Joanna (wife of Chuza, Herod's steward, 8:3 — unique to Luke), and Mary the mother of James. The inclusion of Joanna connects the resurrection witness to the women who supported Jesus's ministry financially. Luke notes 'the other women with them' (*hai loipai syn autais*), indicating the named women were not the only witnesses.
11. The word *lēros* ('nonsense, idle talk, foolish chatter') is a medical term that Hippocrates used for the delirious talk of the feverish. Luke's use of it is devastatingly frank: the apostles dismiss the women's testimony as the ravings of grief-stricken, hysterical women. The verb *ēpistoun* ('they were disbelieving, they refused to believe') is in the imperfect tense, indicating sustained disbelief, not a momentary reaction. The early church would never have invented women as the primary resurrection witnesses in a culture where women's testimony was legally inadmissible — this detail's embarrassment guarantees its historicity.
12. Peter's response is somewhere between the women's belief and the apostles' dismissal — he runs to verify but does not yet fully understand. The verb *parakypsas* ('having bent down, having stooped to peer in') indicates he looked into the low tomb entrance without entering. The *othonia* ('linen cloths, strips of linen') lying *mona* ('by themselves, alone') are significant: if the body had been stolen, the wrappings would have been taken with it. Peter's reaction is *thaumazōn* ('wondering, marveling') — not yet faith, but no longer dismissal. Some manuscripts omit this verse, but the SBLGNT includes it.

13. The Emmaus road narrative (vv. 13-35) is unique to Luke and is considered one of the finest pieces of narrative art in the New Testament. The 'two of them' (duo ex autōn) are disciples (not apostles) — one is named Cleopas (v. 18); the other is unnamed. The distance stadiou hexēkonta ('sixty stadia') is approximately seven miles (11 km). The exact location of Emmaus is debated among archaeologists; several sites have been proposed.
14. The verb hōmiloun ('were conversing, were discussing') gives us the English word 'homily.' The perfect participle symbebēkotōn ('things that have happened and are still in effect') indicates events with ongoing impact — the crucifixion's effects are still reverberating. They are trying to make sense of what has occurred.
15. The phrase autos Iēsous ('Jesus himself') emphasizes the personal, physical presence of the risen Lord. The verb engisas ('having drawn near, having approached') shows Jesus taking the initiative — he joins their journey unsolicited. The verb syneporeueto ('was walking along with') indicates sustained companionship, not a brief encounter. Jesus enters the conversation already in progress.
16. The passive verb ektratounto ('were being held, were being restrained') is a divine passive — God prevents their recognition. The phrase tou mē epignōnai ('from knowing, from recognizing') uses the stronger compound verb (epignōnai, 'to recognize fully') rather than simple gnōnai ('to know'). This divine restraint serves a narrative and theological purpose: Jesus will first teach them from Scripture before being revealed in the breaking of bread. Understanding must precede sight.
17. The verb antiballete ('you are tossing back and forth, you are exchanging') suggests animated but inconclusive debate. Jesus's question draws them into conversation. The verb estathēsan ('they stopped, they stood still') indicates they halt in their tracks. The adjective skythrōpoi ('gloomy, sad-faced, with a dark expression') appears only here and in Matthew 6:16 (describing the faces of hypocritical fasters). Their faces mirror their grief.
18. Cleopas (Kleopas, possibly short for Kleopatros) is named but the other disciple is not — the unnamed companion has invited endless speculation (Cleopas's wife? Luke himself?). The question sy monos paroikeis Ierusalēm ('are you the only one residing as a stranger in Jerusalem?') implies that the crucifixion was the talk of the entire city — everyone knows except, apparently, this stranger. The dramatic irony is profound: they are explaining Jesus's death to Jesus.
19. Jesus's question poia ('what things?') draws out their testimony. Their description of Jesus as anēr prophētēs dynatos en ergō kai logō ('a man who was a prophet powerful in deed and word') is accurate but incomplete — they know him as a prophet but not yet as the risen Messiah. The phrase 'before God and all the people' (enantion tou theou kai pantos tou laou) acknowledges both divine and public approval. Their description echoes the characterization of Moses in Acts 7:22.
20. They identify the agents of Jesus's death as 'our chief priests and rulers' (hoi archiereis kai hoi archontes hēmōn) — 'our' indicates they still identify as part of the community whose leaders condemned Jesus. The phrase krima thanatou ('sentence of death, death penalty') is a legal term. The verb estaurōsan ('they crucified') assigns the crucifixion to the Jewish leaders even though Rome performed the execution — Luke's account emphasizes the instigators over the executioners.
21. The imperfect ēlpizomen ('we were hoping, we had been hoping') is one of the saddest verbs in the New Testament — their hope is stated in the past tense. The verb lytrouthai ('to redeem, to ransom, to liberate') echoes Zechariah's prophecy in 1:68 ('he has visited and accomplished redemption for his people') and connects to the concept of the go'el, the kinsman-redeemer. Their messianic expectation was political liberation; the crucifixion destroyed that hope. The mention of 'the third day' (tritēn tautēn hēmeran) is ironic — they note the timeframe that Jesus predicted for his resurrection but do not connect it.
22. The verb exestēsan ('astonished, amazed, disturbed') indicates that the women's report was not simply dismissed (as verse 11 might suggest) but created genuine disturbance among the group. The phrase genomenai orthrinai ('having been early-rising, having gone early') places the women's visit in context.
23. The word optasian ('vision, appearance') may reflect the disciples' interpretation of the women's experience — calling it a 'vision' allows them to acknowledge the report without accepting its implications. The final phrase hoi legousin auton zēn ('who say he is alive') is the heart of the Christian proclamation compressed into five Greek words. The disciples report this as information, not yet as belief.
24. The verification visit (tines tōn syn hēmin, 'some of those with us,' referring to Peter and possibly others) confirmed the empty tomb but not the resurrection itself — auton de ouk eidon ('but him they did not see'). The tomb's emptiness is a necessary but insufficient condition for belief. The physical absence of Jesus is confirmed; his living presence has not yet been encountered. The emphatic final position of ouk eidon ('they did not see') communicates the disappointment.
25. The exclamation ō anoētoi ('O senseless ones, O foolish ones') is not an insult but an expression of loving exasperation. The word anoētos means 'not understanding, not thinking through' — they have the data but have not drawn the conclusion. The phrase bradeis tē kardia ('slow of heart') locates the problem not in the intellect but in the will — they are sluggish to believe. The phrase epi pasin hois elalēsan hoi prophētai ('concerning all things the prophets spoke') indicates the prophetic witness is comprehensive, not piecemeal.
26. The question is rhetorical: ouchi tauta edei pathein ton christon ('was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer?'). The verb edei ('it was necessary') is the same word used throughout Luke for divine necessity (2:49, 4:43, 9:22, 13:33, 17:25, 22:37, 24:7). Jesus's argument is that messianic suffering was not a contradiction of God's plan but its fulfillment. The sequence — suffering first (pathein), then glory (eiselthein eis tēn doxan) — is the pattern the disciples had not grasped: the cross precedes the crown.
27. The phrase arxamenos apo Mōyseōs kai apo pantōn tōn prophētōn ('beginning from Moses and from all the prophets') indicates a comprehensive, canonical exposition — Jesus explains the entire Old Testament as pointing to himself. The verb diermēneusen ('he interpreted, he explained, he

- translated') is the root of 'hermeneutics' — Jesus provides the interpretive key that unlocks the whole of Scripture. The phrase *ta peri heautou* ('the things concerning himself') reveals that Jesus is the subject of the entire Bible. What we would give to have the content of this exposition — Luke records only that it happened, not what was said.
- 28.** The verb *prosepoiēsato* ('he pretended, he acted as though, he made as if') indicates that Jesus created the impression he intended to continue walking. This is not deception but an invitation: he waits to be welcomed. The pattern is significant: the risen Christ does not force his presence on anyone but waits for invitation. The disciples must choose to extend hospitality.
- 29.** The verb *parebiasanto* ('they strongly urged, they compelled by entreaty') indicates persistent, warm insistence. The phrase *meionon meth' hēmōn* ('stay with us') is a simple invitation that becomes the moment of grace. The time reference — evening approaching, day declining — is both practical (travel was dangerous after dark) and symbolic (spiritual darkness is about to give way to light). Jesus accepts their hospitality: *eisēlthen tou meinai syn autois* ('he entered to remain with them').
- 30.** The four actions — took (*labōn*), blessed (*eulogēsēn*), broke (*klasas*), gave (*epedidou*) — mirror the Last Supper (22:19) and the feeding of the five thousand (9:16). The guest has become the host: the one invited to dinner takes the role of the host who distributes bread. This reversal is the moment of revelation. The imperfect *epedidou* ('was giving, began giving') suggests the recognition occurred during the distribution, not after.
- 31.** The passive *diēnoichthēsan* ('were opened') reverses the divine closing of verse 16 — God who held their eyes shut now opens them. The verb *epegnōsan* ('they recognized fully, they knew him completely') is the same compound verb from verse 16 (*epignōnai*). Recognition comes through the breaking of bread, not through the Scripture exposition — though the exposition prepared them. The word *aphantos* ('invisible, unseen, vanished') occurs only here in the New Testament. Jesus does not walk away but simply ceases to be visible. The risen Christ's appearances are under his sovereign control.
- 32.** The phrase *hē kardia hēmōn kaiomenē ēn* ('our heart was burning') describes the subjective experience of encountering the risen Christ through Scripture — warmth, illumination, and kindling of what was extinguished. The verb *diēnoigen* ('was opening') uses the same root as the opening of their eyes (v. 31) and the opening of their minds (v. 45) — opening is the central action of this chapter. Their hearts burned during the walk, but they did not understand the burning until after the recognition. Retrospectively, the Scripture exposition was already the presence of the risen Christ.
- 33.** The phrase *autē tē hōra* ('that very hour') indicates they left immediately — despite the late hour and the seven-mile journey back to Jerusalem in the dark. The resurrection reverses their direction: they had walked away from Jerusalem in despair; now they rush back in joy. The verb *hypestrepsan* ('they returned') is significant in Luke — the faithful always return (the leper in 17:15, the women in 23:56). They find the Eleven already gathered (*ēthroumeous*), indicating the community has regathered despite the scattering.
- 34.** Before the Emmaus disciples can share their news, they are greeted with a proclamation: *ontōs ēgerthē ho kyrios* ('the Lord has truly been raised'). The adverb *ontōs* ('truly, really, in fact') marks the shift from rumor to conviction. The appearance to Simon (Peter) is mentioned only here and in 1 Corinthians 15:5 — Luke does not narrate it, but this brief reference confirms that Peter had a personal encounter with the risen Jesus between verses 12 and 34, transforming his amazement into faith.
- 35.** The verb *exēgounto* ('they were narrating, explaining in detail') gives us 'exegesis.' They share two things: what happened on the road (*ta en tē hodō*) and how recognition came in the breaking of bread (*en tē klasei tou artou*). The phrase 'the breaking of the bread' (*tē klasei tou artou*) uses the article, suggesting this is already becoming a technical term for the communal meal that would later be called the Eucharist (Acts 2:42, 46; 20:7). Jesus is recognized not in supernatural display but in the ordinary act of sharing a meal.
- 36.** The appearance is sudden: *autos estē en mesō autōn* ('he himself stood in their midst'). The greeting *eirēnē hymin* ('peace to you') is the standard Hebrew *shalom aleichem* — but in this context it carries its full theological weight: the peace of the risen Christ, the restoration of all that was broken. This is not merely a greeting but a bestowal.
- 37.** Despite having just heard the Emmaus report and having proclaimed 'The Lord has truly been raised,' the disciples react with terror (*ptoēthentes*, 'startled, frightened') and fear (*emphoboi*, 'filled with fear'). The word *pneuma* ('spirit, ghost') indicates they think they are seeing an apparition of a dead person, not a resurrected body. This detail underscores that the resurrection was not expected or easily believed, even by those who had reasons to expect it.
- 38.** The verb *tetaragmenoi* ('disturbed, agitated, troubled') describes inner turmoil. The word *dialogismoi* ('reasonings, doubts, debates') can mean either 'thoughts' or 'doubts' — in context, the skeptical nuance predominates. The phrase *anabainousin en tē kardia hymōn* ('rise up in your hearts') locates doubt in the heart, not the mind, connecting to 'slow of heart to believe' in verse 25.
- 39.** Jesus offers empirical evidence: visual (*idete*, 'look'), tactile (*psēlaphēsate*, 'touch, handle, feel'), and rational (a ghost lacks *sarka kai ostea*, 'flesh and bones'). The phrase *egō eimi autos* ('I am myself, it is I myself') is a strong identity claim — the same person who was crucified is now standing before them. The hands and feet (*tas cheiras mou kai tous podas mou*) bear the crucifixion wounds — the nail marks are the proof that this is the same body, transformed but continuous. The resurrection body is physical, tangible, and material.
- 40.** The verb *edeixen* ('he showed, he displayed') indicates Jesus actively presented the evidence. The crucifixion wounds are not hidden or healed but displayed as identifying marks — the risen body retains the marks of the passion. This detail is theologically significant: the resurrection does not erase the cross but transforms it.
- 41.** The phrase *apistountōn apo tēs charas* ('disbelieving from joy') is one of Luke's most psychologically acute observations: their joy is so overwhelming that they cannot yet fully absorb the reality. This is not skeptical unbelief but the stunned incredulity of receiving something too good to be true.

Jesus's request for food (brōsimon, 'something edible') serves as further evidence of physical reality — ghosts do not eat.

42. The ichthys optou ('broiled fish') is ordinary food — a common part of a Jerusalem meal. Some later manuscripts add 'and a honeycomb' (kai apo melissiou kēriou), but the SBLGNT follows the shorter reading. The fish connects to Jesus's ministry around the Sea of Galilee and to the post-resurrection breakfast in John 21:9-13.
43. The phrase enōpion autōn ('before them, in their presence, in front of them') emphasizes that the eating was publicly witnessed — this is a demonstration, not a private meal. The risen Jesus eats physical food with his physical body in the physical presence of witnesses. This detail served as crucial evidence against Docetism (the later heresy that Christ only appeared to have a physical body).
44. The phrase eti ōn syn hymin ('while I was still with you') is striking — Jesus speaks of his pre-resurrection ministry as a distinct, completed phase. The threefold division — nomō Mōyseōs ('Law of Moses'), prophētais ('Prophets'), and psalmois ('Psalms') — represents the three sections of the Hebrew Bible: Torah, Nevi'im, and Ketuvim (the Psalms representing the Writings as its largest and most prominent book). This is the earliest reference to the tripartite structure of the Hebrew canon. The verb dei ('must') reaffirms divine necessity for the final time.
45. The verb diēnoixen ('he opened') echoes the opening of eyes (v. 31) and the opening of Scriptures (v. 32). Now it is the nous ('mind, understanding, intellect') that is opened. This is a divine act — the disciples cannot understand Scripture on their own; the risen Christ must unlock their comprehension. This verse resolves the incomprehension that has been a motif throughout the Gospel (9:45, 18:34). What was hidden by divine design (18:34, 'this saying was hidden from them') is now revealed by divine action.
46. The formula houtōs gegraptai ('thus it is written, so it stands written') is a standard introductory formula for Scripture citation. The two elements — suffering (pathein) and resurrection (anastēnai ek nekrōn, 'to rise from the dead') on the third day — constitute the foundational Christian kerygma (proclamation), the same pattern found in 1 Corinthians 15:3-4, which Paul identifies as the tradition he received.
47. The infinitive kērychthēnai ('to be proclaimed, to be heralded') extends the 'it is written' formula: Scripture foretold not only the suffering and resurrection but also the resulting worldwide mission. The content of the proclamation is metanoian eis aphesin hamartiōn ('repentance leading to forgiveness of sins'). The scope is eis panta ta ethnē ('to all the nations') — the universal mission that Luke will narrate in Acts. The phrase arxamenoi apo Ierousalēm ('beginning from Jerusalem') provides the geographic starting point and the programmatic outline for Acts (cf. Acts 1:8, 'in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth').
48. The declaration hymeis martyres toutōn ('you are witnesses of these things') is the commission statement that bridges the Gospel and Acts. The word martyres ('witnesses') carries legal weight — they have seen and can testify. The 'these things' (toutōn) encompasses everything: the suffering, resurrection, and the scriptural interpretation. This single sentence defines the apostolic mission: to bear witness to what they have seen and heard.
49. The phrase tēn epangelian tou patros mou ('the promise of my Father') refers to the Holy Spirit (cf. Acts 1:4-5, 2:33). The verb apostellō ('I am sending') is a present tense indicating certainty. The command kathisate en tē polei ('sit, stay, remain in the city') requires waiting — the disciples must not begin their mission until equipped. The metaphor endysēsthe ('you are clothed with') presents the Holy Spirit as a garment — power (dynamis) from on high (ex hypsous) that covers and transforms them. This promise is fulfilled at Pentecost (Acts 2).
50. Bethany (Bēthanian) is on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about two miles from Jerusalem (cf. 19:29). The gesture eparas tas cheiras ('having lifted his hands') is the priestly blessing posture (cf. Leviticus 9:22, where Aaron 'lifted his hands toward the people and blessed them'). Jesus departs not as a prophet or teacher but as a priest, bestowing the final benediction on his people. The verb eulogēsēn ('he blessed') connects to the Benedictus of Zechariah (1:68, 'Blessed be the Lord God of Israel').
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 9:22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
51. The ascension occurs en tō eulogein auton autous ('while he was blessing them') — his last earthly act is benediction. The verb diestē ('he parted, he was separated, he withdrew') conveys gentle departure. The phrase anephereto eis ton ouranon ('he was being carried up into heaven') is in the imperfect passive, suggesting a gradual, visible ascent. Some manuscripts omit 'and was carried up into heaven,' but the SBLGNT includes it. Acts 1:9-11 provides the more detailed account.
52. The verb proskynēsantes ('having worshiped, having prostrated themselves') is the first unambiguous act of worship directed at Jesus in Luke's Gospel — his departure prompts what his presence did not. The phrase meta charas megalēs ('with great joy') is counterintuitive: their master has just left them, yet they are filled with joy rather than grief. This transforms the departure from loss into exaltation. The verb hypēstrepsan ('they returned') completes the movement: the Emmaus disciples returned to Jerusalem in verse 33; now all the disciples return, and the centripetal pull toward Jerusalem continues into Acts.
53. The Gospel ends where it began: in the temple (en tō hierō). Luke 1:8-9 opened with Zechariah serving in the temple; Luke 24:53 closes with the disciples worshipping in the temple. The phrase dia pantos ('continually, at all times') indicates this was not a single visit but a sustained practice of worship. The participle eulogountes ('blessing, praising') uses the same verb Jesus used in blessing them (v. 50) — they return to God the blessing they received from Christ. The Gospel of Luke concludes not with an ending but with a beginning: the community of praise that will, in the opening of Acts, receive the Spirit and become the church.

John

1

Summary: *John 1 opens with one of the most theologically dense passages in the New Testament: the Prologue (1:1-18), which identifies Jesus as the eternal Word (logos) who was with God, was God, and became flesh to dwell among humanity. The chapter then introduces John the Baptist as a witness to the light, narrates the Baptist's testimony before the priests and Levites, and concludes with the calling of the first disciples — Andrew, Simon Peter, Philip, and Nathanael — as they begin to recognize Jesus as the Messiah, the Son of God, and the King of Israel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Prologue draws on both Jewish Wisdom tradition (Proverbs 8, Sirach 24) and Greek philosophical vocabulary to present Jesus as the pre-existent, creative, and revelatory Word of God. The Greek logos carried immense weight in both traditions — for Jews, the word of God was the agent of creation (Genesis 1, Psalm 33:6); for Greeks, logos was the rational principle ordering the universe. John's genius is to take this loaded term and declare that it 'became flesh' — a claim that would have shocked both audiences. The 'I am' language that will dominate the Gospel appears implicitly in the Baptist's self-identification as 'not the Christ' and his pointing to 'one standing among you whom you do not know.'*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the Prologue's logos theology and the narrative that follows requires careful handling. We render logos as 'Word' (capitalized) to preserve its theological weight as a title for Christ. The Baptist's denial sequence (1:19-28) requires attention to the political and religious expectations surrounding messianic figures. Nathanael's skepticism about Nazareth (1:46) reflects a real geographical prejudice in first-century Judaism. The title 'Son of Man' in verse 51 draws on Daniel 7:13 and will require expanded treatment.*

Connections: *The Prologue connects to Genesis 1:1 ('In the beginning'), Proverbs 8:22-31 (Wisdom as God's companion in creation), and Isaiah 40:3 (the voice in the wilderness). The 'Lamb of God' title (1:29, 36) connects to the Passover lamb of Exodus 12 and the suffering servant of Isaiah 53. Jacob's ladder (Genesis 28:12) is explicitly referenced in 1:51. The entire chapter establishes the identity claims that the rest of the Gospel will develop through signs and discourse.*

¹In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. ²He was in the beginning with God. ³All things came into being through him, and apart from him not one thing came into being that has come into being. ⁴In him was life, and the life was the light of humanity. ⁵The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it. ⁶There

e came a man sent from God; his name was John. ⁷He came as a witness, to testify about the light, so that all might believe through him. ⁸He himself was not the light, but he came to testify about the light. ⁹The true light, which gives light to every person, was coming into the world. ¹⁰He was in the world, and the world came into being through him, yet the world did not recognize him. ¹¹He came to his own, and his own people did not receive him. ¹²But to all who received him — to those who believe in his name — he gave the right to become children of God, ¹³Which were brought into the world, not of lifeblood, nor of the will of the physical nature, nor of the will of man, but of God. ¹⁴And the Word became flesh and dwelt among us, and we have seen his glory — glory as of the only Son from the Father — full of grace and truth. ¹⁵John testified about him and cried out, saying, "This is the one of whom I said, 'The one coming after me has surpassed me, because he existed before me.'" ¹⁶For from his fullness we have all received grace upon grace. ¹⁷For the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Jesus Christ. ¹⁸No one has ever seen God. The only God, who is at the Father's side — he has made him known. ¹⁹This is John's testimony, when the Jewish leaders sent priests and Levites from Jerusalem to ask him, "Who are you?" ²⁰He confessed and did not deny it, but confessed, "I am not the Christ." ²¹They asked him, "What then? Are you Elijah?" He said, "I am not." "Are you the Prophet?" He answered, "No." ²²So they said to him, "Who are you? We need to give an answer to those who sent us. What do you say about yourself?" ²³He said, "I am 'a voice crying out in the wilderness: Make straight the way of the Lord,'" as the prophet Isaiah said. ²⁴Now they had been sent from the Pharisees. ²⁵They questioned him, "Then why are you baptizing, if you are not the Christ, nor Elijah, nor the Prophet?" ²⁶John answered them, "I baptize with water, but among you stands one whom you do not know — ²⁷He it is, who coming following me is preferred prior to me, whose shoe's latchet I am not worthy to unloose. ²⁸These things took place in Bethany beyond the Jordan, where John was baptizing. ²⁹The next day he saw Jesus coming toward him and said, "Look — the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!" ³⁰This is the one about whom I said, 'A man is coming after me who has surpassed me, because he existed before me.' ³¹I myself did not know him, but the reason I came baptizing with water was so that he might be revealed to Israel." ³²And John testified, saying, "I saw the Spirit descending from heaven like a dove, and it remained on him. ³³I myself did not know him, but the one who sent me to baptize with water told me, 'The one on whom you see the Spirit descending and remaining — he is the one who baptizes with the Holy Spirit.' ³⁴And I have seen and have testified that this is the Son of God." ³⁵The next day John was standing again with two of his disciples, ³⁶Looking upon Jesus as he walked, he says, take notice the Lamb of God! ³⁷The two disciples heard him say this, and they followed Jesus. ³⁸Jesus turned and saw them following and said to them, "What are you looking for?" They said to him, "Rabbi" (which means Teacher), "where are you staying?" ³⁹He said to them, "Come and you will see." So they came and saw where he was staying, and they remained with him that day. It was about the tenth hour. ⁴⁰Andrew, Simon Peter's brother, was one of the two who heard John and followed Jesus. ⁴¹He first found his own brother Simon and said to him, "We have found the Messiah" (which is translated Christ). ⁴²He brought him to Jesus. Jesus looked at him and said, "You are Simon son of John. You will be called Cephas" (which is translated Peter). ⁴³The next day Jesus decided to go to Galilee. He found Philip and said to him, "Follow me." ⁴⁴Now Philip was from Bethsaida, the city of Andrew and Peter. ⁴⁵Philip found Nathanael and said to him, "We have found the one Moses wrote about in the Law, and the prophets wrote about as well — Jesus son of Joseph, from Nazareth." ⁴⁶Nathanael said to him, "Can anything good come from Nazareth?" Philip said to him, "Come and see." ⁴⁷Jesus saw Nathanael coming toward him and said of him, "Look — a true Israelite, in whom there is no deceit!" ⁴⁸Nathanael said to him, "How do you know me?" Jesus answered him, "Before Philip called you, while you were under the fig tree, I saw you." ⁴⁹Nathanael answered him, "Rabbi, you are the Son of God! You are the King of Israel!" ⁵⁰Jesus answered him, "Do you believe because I told you I saw you under the fig tree? You will see greater things than these." ⁵¹And he said to him, "Truly, truly, I tell you, you will see heaven opened and the angels of God ascending and descending on the Son of Man."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *en arche* ('in the beginning') deliberately echoes the opening of Genesis (*bereshit* in Hebrew, *en arche* in the Septuagint). The imperfect verb *en* ('was') denotes continuous past existence, not a point of origin — the Word already existed when the beginning occurred.

1. The preposition *pros* ('with') in 'the Word was with God' suggests not merely proximity but relational orientation — face-to-face communion. The Word was directed toward God, in dynamic relationship.
1. In the final clause, 'God' (*theos*) appears without the article, which in Greek grammar indicates qualitative force — the Word shared the nature and essence of God. This is distinct from saying 'the Word was the God' (which would conflate the persons) or 'the Word was a god' (which would diminish the claim). The rendering 'the Word was God' preserves the theological precision of the Greek.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The pronoun *houtos* ('this one, he') personalizes the *logos* — no longer 'it' but 'he.' This verse reaffirms what verse 1 stated, functioning as a summary transition before the creation theme of verse 3. The repetition is characteristic of John's literary style, where key ideas are restated with slight variation for emphasis.
3. The verb *egeneto* ('came into being') contrasts with the *en* ('was') of verses 1-2. The Word 'was' (eternal existence); all things 'came into being' (originated existence) through him. The preposition *dia* ('through') identifies the Word as the agent of creation, echoing Proverbs 8:30 and Colossians 1:16.
3. The punctuation of the final phrase *ho gegonen* ('that has come into being') is disputed. The SBLGNT places it with verse 3 as the conclusion of the creation statement. Some manuscripts and church fathers attach it to verse 4: 'What has come into being in him was life.' We follow the SBLGNT punctuation.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 8:30 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek *zoe* ('life') in John always carries theological weight beyond mere biological existence — it points toward the 'eternal life' (*zoe aionios*) that becomes a central theme of the Gospel. The chain of identification — Word, life, light — establishes the conceptual framework for the entire book. 'Of humanity' renders *ton anthronon* more inclusively than the KJV's 'of men,' reflecting the universal scope of the claim.
5. The verb *katelaben* (from *katalambano*) carries a double meaning: 'to comprehend/understand' (as the KJV renders it) and 'to seize/overcome/extinguish.' Both senses are likely intended — the darkness neither understood the light nor was able to overpower it. We render 'overcome' as the primary sense, since the light-versus-darkness imagery suggests conflict rather than mere cognition.
5. The present tense *phainei* ('shines') amid past-tense narration may indicate that the light's shining is an ongoing reality, not merely a past event.
6. The verb *egeneto* ('there came, there appeared') contrasts with the *en* ('was') used of the Word in verses 1-2. John the Baptist 'came into being' — he is a creature, not the eternal Word. The participle *apestalmenos* ('sent') is from *apostello*, the root of 'apostle,' emphasizing John's divinely commissioned role.
7. The word *martyria* ('witness, testimony') and its verb *martyreo* ('to testify') appear prominently throughout John's Gospel. The Baptist's role is defined entirely in terms of witness — he is not the light but the one who points to it. The purpose clause 'so that all might believe' establishes that faith (*pistis/pisteuo*) is the intended response to testimony, a theme John develops throughout.
8. The emphatic *ekeinos* ('that one, he himself') underscores the distinction between the Baptist and the light. This careful distancing may reflect a historical situation in which some followers of John the Baptist continued to venerate him as a messianic figure (cf. Acts 19:1-7). John's Gospel consistently subordinates the Baptist to Jesus.
9. The adjective *alethinon* ('true, genuine, real') does not merely mean 'not false' but 'the authentic reality of which all other lights are shadows.' The participle *erchomenon* ('coming') can modify either 'light' (the true light was coming into the world) or 'person' (every person coming into the world). We attach it to 'light,' following the flow of the Prologue's narrative about the Word entering the world.
10. The threefold repetition of *kosmos* ('world') creates a devastating irony: the world that owed its very existence to the Word failed to recognize its maker. The verb *egno* ('knew, recognized') implies relational knowledge, not merely intellectual awareness — the world failed to acknowledge or receive the one through whom it was made.
11. The Greek shifts from neuter *ta idia* ('his own things/domain') to masculine *hoi idioi* ('his own people'). He came to his own place — Israel, the covenant people — and his own people rejected him. This verse encapsulates the tragic theme of the Gospel: the divine Word comes home and is turned away by those who should have recognized him.
12. The Greek *exousia* means 'right, authority, power' — not merely ability but authorized status. 'Children' (*tekna*) rather than 'sons' (*huioi*) is John's deliberate word choice, emphasizing the intimacy of the relationship rather than legal standing. The present tense 'believe' (*pisteuousin*) suggests ongoing faith, not a one-time act. 'In his name' means trusting in the person and character that the name represents.
13. The plural 'bloods' (*haimaton*) is unusual and may refer to the mixture of parental blood thought in antiquity to produce offspring. The threefold negation — not from blood, not from physical desire, not from human decision — systematically eliminates every natural means of generation. This divine birth is entirely God's initiative. Some early church fathers read the singular ('who was born') referring to Christ's virgin birth, but the plural is better attested in the manuscripts.

14. The verb *eskenosen* ('tabernacled, pitched his tent') is one of John's most theologically loaded words. It echoes the Hebrew *shakan* ('to dwell'), from which *Shekhinah* derives — God's indwelling presence in the tabernacle and temple. The Word does not merely visit but takes up residence in human flesh.
14. *Monogenous* ('only, unique, one-of-a-kind') is rendered 'only Son' rather than the KJV's 'only begotten.' The Greek does not emphasize manner of origin (begetting) but uniqueness of relationship. The Word is God's one-of-a-kind Son.
14. The pairing 'grace and truth' (*charitos kai aletheias*) corresponds to the Hebrew *chesed ve'emet* of Exodus 34:6, where God reveals himself as 'abounding in faithful love and truth.' John claims that this divine self-revelation is now embodied in a person.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 34:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The perfect tense *kekragen* ('has cried out') indicates that John's testimony continues to resonate. The paradox is deliberate: the one who comes 'after' John in time (born later, began ministry later) 'was before' him in preexistence. The Greek *protos mou en* ('he was first/before me') points to the eternal existence affirmed in verse 1.
16. The phrase *charin anti charitos* ('grace upon grace') is notoriously difficult. The preposition *anti* can mean 'in place of,' 'in return for,' or 'upon.' The sense is likely wave upon wave — one expression of grace replaced and exceeded by the next, an inexhaustible supply. 'Fullness' (*pleroma*) indicates that the incarnate Word lacks nothing of the divine nature.
17. John does not set Moses and Jesus in opposition (note the absence of 'but' — the Greek has no adversative conjunction here, though the KJV adds one). The law was given (passive, from God) through Moses; grace and truth came (active, from their source) through Jesus Christ. The comparison is one of escalation, not contradiction. This is the first time the name 'Jesus Christ' appears in the Gospel.
18. The SBLGNT reads *monogenes theos* ('the only God' or 'the unique one, God') rather than the variant *monogenes huios* ('the only Son') found in later manuscripts. This is one of the strongest christological statements in the New Testament — the Word is not merely the only Son but 'the only God,' a second use of *theos* applied to the Word (cf. 1:1c).
18. The verb *exegesato* ('has made known, has explained') is the root of 'exegesis.' The Son 'exegetes' the Father — he is the authoritative interpretation and revelation of the invisible God. The image of being 'at the Father's side' (*eis ton kolpon*, literally 'in the bosom') conveys the most intimate possible relationship.
19. The term *hoi Ioudaioi* ('the Jews') in John's Gospel almost always refers to the religious authorities in Jerusalem, not the Jewish people as a whole. We render 'the Jewish leaders' to reflect this. The delegation of priests and Levites indicates an official inquiry from the temple establishment — John's activity in the wilderness had attracted enough attention to prompt an investigation.
20. The emphatic double statement — 'confessed and did not deny' — uses a literary device (*litotes*: affirming by negating the opposite) to stress the forcefulness of John's declaration. The *ego ouk eimi* ('I am not') is a deliberate contrast with Jesus's *ego eimi* ('I am') statements that will follow throughout the Gospel.
21. Three messianic expectations are probed: the Christ, Elijah (expected to return before the Messiah, per Malachi 4:5), and 'the Prophet' (the prophet like Moses promised in Deuteronomy 18:15-18). John denies all three. The synoptic Gospels identify John as Elijah (Matthew 11:14, 17:12-13), but John's Gospel has the Baptist himself deny this identification — a tension scholars have long noted. 'The Prophet' with the definite article indicates a specific expected figure, not just any prophet.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 4:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:15-18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The delegation's frustration is evident — they need a report for the authorities in Jerusalem. The question 'What do you say about yourself?' forces John to define his own identity positively after three negative denials.
23. John identifies himself not with a title but with a function — he is a voice, nothing more. The quotation is from Isaiah 40:3 (Septuagint), which in its original context announced the end of the Babylonian exile and God's return to his people. John applies this to Jesus's coming. In the Hebrew of Isaiah 40:3, 'in the wilderness' modifies 'prepare the way' (prepare in the wilderness a way for the LORD), but the Septuagint (and John) attach it to 'crying' — a voice crying in the wilderness.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 40:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. This parenthetical note identifies the theological party behind the inquiry. The Pharisees, who were deeply concerned with ritual purity and proper religious practice, would have been particularly interested in an unauthorized baptizer operating in the wilderness. This explains the question that follows in verse 25 about John's authority to baptize.
25. The logic is clear: if John holds none of the recognized eschatological offices, by what authority does he perform a rite of purification? Baptism (immersion) was known in Judaism — proselyte baptism, Qumran immersions — but an unauthorized figure calling all Israel to repentance through baptism was unprecedented.

- 26.** John deflects the question about his own authority by pointing to a greater figure already present but unrecognized. The verb *hesteken* ('stands,' perfect tense) suggests a settled, ongoing presence — the one they seek is already there. The irony is characteristic of John's Gospel: the religious authorities are investigating the wrong person.
- 27.** Untying a master's sandal was considered too menial even for a Jewish slave — it was reserved for Gentile slaves. John declares himself unworthy of even the lowest servant's task in relation to the coming one. The image is vivid and culturally specific, conveying radical self-abasement.
- 28.** This Bethany is distinct from the Bethany near Jerusalem (11:1). The SBLGNT reads 'Bethany' (Bethania) rather than 'Bethabara,' which is an early emendation by Origen, who could not locate a Bethany east of the Jordan in his day. The location 'beyond the Jordan' places the events in Perea or Transjordan.
- 29.** The title 'Lamb of God' (*ho amnos tou theou*) is unique to John's Gospel and carries multiple Old Testament resonances: the Passover lamb (Exodus 12), the lamb led to slaughter in Isaiah 53:7, and possibly the daily *tamid* offerings in the temple. The verb *airon* ('takes away, bears, removes') can mean both 'to carry' and 'to remove,' and both senses may be intended — the lamb both bears sin and removes it.
- 29.** The scope is universal — 'the sin of the world' (*tou kosmou*), not merely Israel. This fits the Prologue's universal vision of light for 'every person' (1:9).
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** This repeats the testimony of verse 15, now spoken in narrative context rather than within the Prologue. The paradox remains: Jesus comes 'after' John chronologically but existed 'before' him eternally. The word *aner* ('man') is significant — the eternal Word (1:1) is now identified as a specific human being.
- 31.** John's confession 'I did not know him' (*ouk edein auton*) is striking — even the forerunner required divine revelation to identify the one he was preparing for. His entire baptizing ministry had a single purpose: to create the occasion for Jesus's public unveiling to Israel. The passive 'might be revealed' (*phanerothe*) implies God as the agent of revelation.
- 32.** John's Gospel does not narrate the baptism of Jesus directly but presents it through the Baptist's eyewitness testimony. The perfect tense *tetheamai* ('I have seen, I have observed') indicates a vivid, lasting impression. The dove imagery and the Spirit's descent connect to Genesis 1:2 (the Spirit hovering over the waters) and Isaiah 11:2 (the Spirit resting on the Messiah). The key detail is that the Spirit 'remained' (*emeinen*) — not a temporary empowerment but a permanent anointing.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 11:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** John's recognition of Jesus depended on a prior divine sign — the Spirit's descent and remaining. The description of Jesus as 'the one who baptizes with the Holy Spirit' defines his ministry in contrast to John's water baptism. The verb *menon* ('remaining') is a key Johannine word (*meno*, 'to remain, abide') that will become central to the Gospel's theology of relationship with God.
- 34.** The perfect tenses *heoraka* ('I have seen') and *memartyrika* ('I have testified') indicate completed action with continuing relevance — John's witness is settled and permanent. Some manuscripts read 'the Chosen One of God' (*ho eklektos tou theou*) instead of 'the Son of God,' which would echo Isaiah 42:1. The SBLGNT reads 'Son of God,' which we follow.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 42:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** This marks the third day in John's opening sequence (day 1: vv. 19-28; day 2: vv. 29-34; day 3: vv. 35-42). The progressive narrative builds toward Jesus's gathering of his first followers. That these are John's own disciples who will leave him for Jesus underscores the Baptist's role as a transitional figure.
- 36.** The verb *emblepsas* ('having looked intently at') suggests a fixed, penetrating gaze — John does not casually glance but stares with recognition. The declaration is shorter than in verse 29, omitting 'who takes away the sin of the world,' as if the title alone now suffices. This is the second and final time John identifies Jesus as the Lamb.
- 37.** The verb *ekoloutheesan* ('followed') carries both the literal sense of walking after someone and the theological sense of becoming a disciple. The Baptist's testimony achieves its intended purpose — his disciples transfer their allegiance to the one he has been pointing toward.
- 38.** Jesus's first words in John's Gospel are a question — 'What are you looking for?' (*ti zeteite*) — which functions on multiple levels: practically (what do you want?), spiritually (what are you seeking in life?). John translates 'Rabbi' for his Greek-speaking audience as 'Teacher' (*didaskalos*). The verb *meneis* ('are you staying/remaining') connects to the Johannine theme of 'remaining/abiding' (*meno*) that pervades the Gospel.
- 39.** Jesus's invitation 'Come and you will see' (*erchesthe kai opsesthe*) becomes a pattern in the Gospel — seeing leads to believing. The 'tenth hour' is approximately 4 PM by Roman reckoning (or 10 AM by Jewish reckoning, counting from sunrise). The precise time detail is the kind of eyewitness memory that suggests the narrator was one of the two disciples present.

40. Andrew is identified through his relationship to Simon Peter, who was evidently better known to the audience. The other unnamed disciple is traditionally identified as the author of the Gospel (the 'beloved disciple'), though the text does not say so explicitly.
41. This is one of only two places in the New Testament where the Hebrew/Aramaic title *Messias* ('Anointed One') is transliterated into Greek (the other is John 4:25). John translates it as *Christos* for his Greek audience. The adverb *proton* ('first') implies that Andrew found Simon before doing anything else — the discovery was too important not to share immediately.
42. The verb *emblemsas* ('having looked intently') is the same word used of the Baptist in verse 36 — a penetrating gaze that sees beyond the surface. Jesus demonstrates supernatural knowledge by naming Simon before being introduced. 'Cephas' is Aramaic (*kepha*, 'rock'); John translates it into Greek as *Petros* ('rock, stone'). The SBLGNT reads 'son of John' (*Ioannou*) rather than the variant 'son of Jonah' (*Iona*) found in some manuscripts.
43. This marks the fourth day in John's opening sequence. Unlike Andrew and the unnamed disciple who came to Jesus through the Baptist's testimony, Philip is called directly by Jesus. The command 'Follow me' (*akolouthei moi*) is the standard call to discipleship in the Gospels — a summons to leave one's current path and walk with Jesus.
44. Bethsaida ('house of fishing') was located on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. The note connecting Philip to Andrew and Peter's hometown suggests a pre-existing social network that facilitated the chain of recruitment: John the Baptist to Andrew, Andrew to Peter, and now the connection extends to Philip.
45. Philip's identification of Jesus draws on the full breadth of Jewish Scripture — both the Torah (Moses) and the Prophets. The phrase 'Jesus son of Joseph from Nazareth' presents Jesus in purely human terms — his legal parentage and hometown. The irony is that the reader already knows from the Prologue that Jesus's true identity far transcends these categories. Nathanael is traditionally identified with Bartholomew in the Synoptic lists of the Twelve.
46. Nathanael's skepticism reflects a real geographical prejudice — Nazareth was a small, insignificant village in Lower Galilee with no prophetic associations. The Old Testament nowhere mentions Nazareth. Philip's response echoes Jesus's own invitation in verse 39 ('Come and you will see'), turning the method of encounter into a chain: come, see, and judge for yourself.
47. The phrase 'a true Israelite in whom there is no deceit' (*dolos*, 'guile, treachery, deceit') alludes to Jacob/Israel, whose name means 'supplanter/deceiver.' Nathanael is everything his ancestor Jacob was not — an Israelite without the craftiness. The allusion prepares for the Jacob's ladder reference in verse 51. The adverb *alethos* ('truly, genuinely') emphasizes that Nathanael embodies the ideal of Israel.
48. Sitting under a fig tree was associated in Jewish tradition with studying Torah (cf. Micah 4:4; Zechariah 3:10). If Nathanael was engaged in prayer or Scripture study, Jesus's supernatural knowledge of this private moment would be deeply startling. The verb *eidon* ('I saw') implies more than physical sight — Jesus perceived Nathanael's character and activity from a distance.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Micah 4:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 3:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. Nathanael's confession moves from skepticism ('Can anything good come from Nazareth?') to the highest christological titles in a single encounter. 'Son of God' and 'King of Israel' are parallel messianic titles drawn from Psalm 2:6-7 and Zephaniah 3:15. The rapid escalation of faith through personal encounter is characteristic of John's narrative theology.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 2:6-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zephaniah 3:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. Jesus's response affirms Nathanael's faith but points beyond it — the sign that prompted belief (supernatural knowledge) is only the beginning. 'Greater things' (*meizo touton*) anticipates the signs that will follow throughout the Gospel: water to wine, healing, raising the dead. Faith based on signs is accepted but will be surpassed by deeper revelation.
51. The double 'Amen, amen' (*amen amen*) is unique to John's Gospel and marks solemn, authoritative declarations — Jesus is speaking with the authority of God himself. The imagery draws directly from Jacob's dream at Bethel (Genesis 28:12), where a ladder connected heaven and earth with angels ascending and descending. Jesus replaces the ladder — he is the point of connection between heaven and earth.
51. The shift from singular 'you' (*soi*, verse 50) to plural 'you' (*hymin*) indicates that this promise extends beyond Nathanael to all disciples. 'Son of Man' (*ho huios tou anthropou*) is Jesus's preferred self-designation, drawing on Daniel 7:13 where the 'one like a son of man' receives dominion from the Ancient of Days.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 28:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

2

Summary: *John 2 presents two dramatically different scenes that together establish Jesus's authority over both celebration and worship. At the wedding in Cana, Jesus performs his first sign — transforming water into wine — revealing his glory and prompting his disciples to believe. In Jerusalem, he enters the temple and drives out the merchants and money changers, provoking the authorities to demand a sign of his authority. Jesus responds with a cryptic prophecy about destroying and raising 'this temple' in three days, which the narrator explains refers to his body and resurrection.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *John identifies the Cana miracle as the 'beginning of signs' (archen ton semeion), using his distinctive word semeion ('sign') rather than the Synoptic dynamis ('mighty work'). A sign in John is not merely a display of power but a revelation of identity — each sign points beyond itself to who Jesus is. The six stone water jars 'for Jewish purification rites' symbolically represent the old order that Jesus transforms. The temple action, placed at the beginning of Jesus's ministry rather than at the end as in the Synoptics, signals John's theological rather than chronological arrangement.*

Translation Friction: *Jesus's address to his mother as 'Woman' (gynai) sounds harsh in English but was a respectful form of address in Greek. His statement 'My hour has not yet come' introduces the 'hour' motif that runs through the Gospel, pointing to his death and glorification. The temple cleansing's placement differs from the Synoptics — scholars debate whether this represents a different event, a theological rearrangement, or a literary convention. We render without harmonizing.*

Connections: *The wine miracle connects to Old Testament imagery of wine as a sign of the messianic age (Isaiah 25:6, Amos 9:13-14, Joel 3:18). The temple action connects to Psalm 69:9 ('Zeal for your house will consume me'), Malachi 3:1-3 (the Lord suddenly coming to his temple), and the destruction/rebuilding motif that recurs at Jesus's trial (Mark 14:58). The pattern of sign followed by controversy will structure the entire first half of the Gospel.*

¹On the third day there was a wedding in Cana of Galilee, and the mother of Jesus was there. ²Jesus and his disciples had also been invited to the wedding. ³When the wine ran out, the mother of Jesus said to him, "They have no wine." ⁴Jesus said to her, "Woman, what does that have to do with me? My hour has not yet come." ⁵His mother said to the servants, "Whatever he tells you, do it." ⁶Now six stone water jars were standing there for the Jewish rites of purification, each holding two or three measures. ⁷Jesus said to them, "Fill the jars with water." And they filled them to the brim. ⁸Then he said to them, "Now draw some out and take it to the master of the feast." So they took it. ⁹When the master of the feast tasted the water that had become wine — not knowing where it came from, though the servants who had drawn the water knew — he called the bridegroom ¹⁰Says to him, Every man at the beginning does set forth good wine. And when men have well drunk, then that which is worse — but you have kept the good wine until now. ¹¹Jesus did this as the first of his signs in Cana of Galilee, and he revealed his glory, and his disciples believed in him. ¹²After this he went down to Capernaum — he, his mother, his brothers, and his disciples — and they stayed there a few days. ¹³The Passover of the Jewish people was near, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. ¹⁴In the temple he found people selling cattle, sheep, and doves, and the money changers seated at their tables. ¹⁵So he made a whip out of cords and drove them all out of the temple, both the sheep and the cattle. He scattered the coins of the money changers and overturned their tables. ¹⁶To those selling doves he said, "Take these things away from here! Do not make my Father's house a marketplace!" ¹⁷His disciples remembered that it is written, "Zeal for your house will consume me." ¹⁸The Jewish leaders then responded and said to him, "What sign do you show us as your authority for doing these things?" ¹⁹Jesus answered them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up." ²⁰The Jewish leaders said, "This temple has been under construction for forty-six years, and you will raise it up in three days?" ²¹But he was speaking about the temple of his body. ²²So when he was raised from the dead, his disciples remembered that he had said this, and they believed the Scripture and the word that Jesus had spoken. ²³Now while he was in Jerusalem during the Passover festival, many believed in his name when they saw the signs he was performing. ²⁴But Jesus himself did not entrust himself to them, because he knew all people ²⁵Needed not that any should testify of man — since he recognized what

was in man.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'third day' continues John's opening day-sequence (1:29, 1:35, 1:43, now 2:1). Some scholars see a symbolic connection to the resurrection 'on the third day.' John never names Jesus's mother — she is always 'the mother of Jesus' or 'woman,' a pattern that may emphasize her role rather than her personal identity.
2. The passive eklethe ('was called, invited') indicates Jesus attended as a guest, not as a host or official. The presence of 'his disciples' shows the group from chapter 1 is already functioning as a recognizable unit.
3. Running out of wine at a wedding was a serious social embarrassment in the ancient Near East, where hospitality obligations were paramount. The mother's statement is not merely informational but implicitly requests action. The Greek *hysteresantos oinou* ('the wine having failed') uses a genitive absolute construction indicating the wine was completely gone, not merely running low.
4. The address *gynai* ('woman') was a respectful form in Greek, comparable to 'ma'am' — not dismissive as it sounds in English. The idiom *ti emoi kai soi* ('what to me and to you?') is a Semitic expression creating distance — 'what concern is that of ours?' or 'why involve me?' The 'hour' (*hora*) is a loaded theological term in John, referring to Jesus's death, resurrection, and glorification (cf. 7:30, 8:20, 12:23, 13:1, 17:1). Jesus's public ministry operates on a divine timetable.
5. Despite Jesus's apparent reluctance, his mother proceeds with confident expectation. Her instruction to the servants (*diakonois*, 'attendants, servants') echoes the language of covenant obedience — 'whatever he tells you, do it' resonates with Israel's response at Sinai (Exodus 19:8, 'All that the LORD has spoken we will do'). The word *diakonos* is the root of 'deacon.'
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The detail that the jars were 'for Jewish purification rites' (*kata ton katharismenon ton Ioudaion*) is theologically significant — Jesus transforms the water of ritual cleansing into the wine of celebration. A *metretes* was approximately 9 gallons (34 liters), making the total volume between 108 and 162 gallons — an extraordinary quantity, signaling the abundance of the messianic age. The number six (one short of seven, the number of completion) may symbolize the incompleteness of the old order that Jesus is about to fulfill.
7. The servants' immediate obedience follows the mother's instruction in verse 5. The phrase *heos ano* ('up to the top, to the brim') emphasizes completeness — there is no room for anyone to add wine, eliminating the possibility of fraud. The human action (filling jars) and the divine action (transforming the contents) work together.
8. The *architriklinos* ('master of the feast, head steward') was the person responsible for managing the banquet, including tasting and serving the wine. The verb *antlesate* ('draw out') was used for drawing water from a well — Jesus does not announce a miracle but simply instructs them to serve what they have drawn.
9. John creates a layered irony: the master of the feast has no idea what has happened, the servants know the physical fact but perhaps not its significance, and only the disciples will understand the sign. The word *pothen* ('from where') carries theological weight in John — the question of where Jesus and his gifts come from points to his divine origin (cf. 3:8, 7:27-28, 8:14, 9:29-30, 19:9).
10. The steward's observation follows common banquet logic — after guests have drunk enough to dull their palates, cheaper wine is served. The verb *methysthosin* ('have drunk freely, become intoxicated') is frank about the level of consumption at such feasts. The theological irony is profound: God has saved the best for last. The old covenant provisions (water for purification) are surpassed by the new (wine of the messianic age).
11. John uses *semeion* ('sign') rather than the Synoptic *dynamis* ('mighty work') or *teras* ('wonder'). A sign in John is not merely a display of power but a pointer — it reveals something about who Jesus is. This first sign reveals his 'glory' (*doxa*), connecting back to the Prologue's claim that 'we have seen his glory' (1:14). The sequence — sign, glory revealed, faith — establishes the pattern for the entire 'Book of Signs' (chapters 1-12).
12. The verb *katebe* ('went down') is geographically accurate — Cana is in the Galilean hills, while Capernaum sits on the shore of the Sea of Galilee, which is approximately 680 feet below sea level. The mention of 'his brothers' (*hoi adelphoi autou*) introduces Jesus's biological family, who will later express skepticism about his mission (7:3-5). The brief stay transitions to the Jerusalem scene.
13. This is the first of three Passovers mentioned in John's Gospel (cf. 6:4, 11:55), which is the basis for estimating Jesus's ministry at approximately three years. The verb *anebe* ('went up') is the technical term for pilgrimage to Jerusalem, which sits on a hill — one always 'goes up' to Jerusalem regardless of the starting point. 'Passover of the Jewish people' distinguishes the feast for John's mixed audience.
14. The *hieron* ('temple') refers to the broader temple complex, specifically the Court of the Gentiles where commercial activity took place. The animals were sold for sacrificial use — pilgrims traveling long distances needed to purchase offerings locally. Money changers exchanged foreign currency for Tyrian shekels, the only coinage accepted for the temple tax. The commerce was technically legitimate but had become exploitative.
15. The *phragellion* ('whip') made from *schoinion* ('cords, rushes') was likely improvised from materials at hand. The Greek syntax of *pantas exebalen* ('drove them all out') is ambiguous — 'all' could refer to the animals, the sellers, or both. The violent action recalls prophetic symbolic acts (cf. Jeremiah's breaking of the pot, Ezekiel's siege model). Jesus acts with prophetic authority to purify the place of worship.

16. The dove sellers are addressed separately, probably because doves could not be driven out but had to be carried in their cages. The phrase 'my Father's house' (ton oikon tou patros mou) is a bold claim to filial relationship with God and echoes the boy Jesus's words in Luke 2:49. The word emporion ('marketplace, trading house') is the root of 'emporium.' John's version differs from the Synoptics' quotation of Isaiah 56:7/Jeremiah 7:11 ('den of robbers').
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 56:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 7:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The quotation is from Psalm 69:9. The Septuagint uses the aorist katephagen ('consumed/ate'), but John changes to the future kataphagetai ('will consume'), shifting the reference from David's past experience to Jesus's future suffering. The disciples' 'remembering' (emnesthesan) is a characteristic Johannine device — Scripture is understood retrospectively in light of Jesus's actions (cf. 2:22, 12:16).
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 69:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The demand for a semeion ('sign') is ironic — Jesus has just performed a prophetic sign-act, but the authorities want a legitimizing credential. Their question assumes that only someone with recognized authority (the Messiah, a prophet) could act this way in the temple. The request for signs will become a recurring tension in the Gospel (cf. 4:48, 6:30).
19. Jesus uses naos ('temple sanctuary, inner shrine') rather than hieron ('temple complex'), a shift the authorities do not catch. The imperative lysate ('destroy') is not a command but a conditional challenge — 'if you destroy this temple.' The word egerō ('I will raise') is the standard resurrection verb, and Jesus claims the authority to do it himself. This statement will be cited at his trial (Mark 14:58) and mocked at the cross (Mark 15:29).
20. The forty-six years of construction dates from Herod the Great's temple renovation, which began approximately 20-19 BC, placing this exchange around AD 27-28. The temple was not actually completed until AD 63, only seven years before its destruction. The authorities take Jesus's statement at face value — they assume he is making an absurd claim about the physical building.
21. This is the narrator's interpretive aside, a characteristic feature of John's Gospel (cf. 7:39, 11:51-52, 12:33). The identification of Jesus's body as the naos ('sanctuary') makes an extraordinary theological claim: the physical temple where God's presence dwelt is being replaced by the incarnate body of Christ. After the resurrection, God's dwelling place among humanity is no longer a building but a person.
22. This is the second post-Easter retrospective in the chapter (cf. v. 17). The passive egerthe ('was raised') could be divine passive (God raised him) or middle voice (he rose). The pairing of 'the Scripture' (te graphe) and 'the word that Jesus spoke' (to logo) places Jesus's own words on par with sacred Scripture — a remarkable claim about his authority.
23. This is the first mention of signs (semeia, plural) performed in Jerusalem — John does not describe them individually, focusing instead on the response they provoked. The belief described here is sign-based faith, which the next verses will show to be inadequate. The imperfect epoiei ('was performing') suggests multiple signs over a period of time.
24. The verb episteuen ('entrust') is the same word as 'believe' (pisteuo) in verse 23 — creating a deliberate wordplay. They 'believed' in him, but he did not 'believe in/entrust himself to' them. Their faith was based on signs alone; his knowledge of them was deeper than their knowledge of him. The imperfect tense suggests an ongoing posture of reserve.
25. This verse attributes to Jesus a divine prerogative — knowing the human heart (cf. 1 Samuel 16:7, Jeremiah 17:10). The phrase ti en to anthropo ('what was in a person') is deliberately general — it applies to all humanity, not just the Jerusalem crowds. This divine knowledge of human interiority prepares for the Nicodemus encounter that follows immediately in chapter 3.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 16:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 17:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

3

Summary: *John 3 opens with Nicodemus, a Pharisee and member of the Jewish ruling council, coming to Jesus at night. Their conversation moves from the necessity of being 'born from above' through the Spirit to one of the most quoted verses in Scripture (3:16), which declares that God's love for the world is the motivation for sending his Son. The chapter then transitions to John the Baptist's final testimony, in which the Baptist joyfully accepts his diminishing role as the 'friend of the bridegroom' and declares 'He must increase, but I must decrease.' The chapter concludes with a theological reflection on the relationship between the one who comes from above and the one who is from the earth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Greek anōthen in verse 3 is a masterful double entendre — it means both 'again' and 'from above.' Nicodemus hears 'again' (and is confused); Jesus means 'from above' (and is revealing the divine origin of new birth). John 3:16 compresses the entire Gospel narrative — God's love, his sending of the Son, the world as the scope, belief as the means, and eternal life as the result — into a single sentence. The Baptist's self-designation as 'the friend of the bridegroom' (3:29) draws on ancient Near Eastern wedding customs where the friend managed the ceremony and then stepped aside for the groom.*

Translation Friction: *The boundary between Jesus's direct speech and the narrator's theological commentary is notoriously uncertain in this chapter. Most scholars place the transition somewhere between verses 12 and 21, with verses 16-21 possibly being John's own reflection rather than Jesus's words to Nicodemus. We render without quotation marks after verse 15, following the SBLGNT punctuation. Similarly, the Baptist's speech may end at verse 30, with verses 31-36 being the narrator's voice.*

Connections: *The 'born of water and Spirit' language connects to Ezekiel 36:25-27 (cleansing water and a new spirit). The bronze serpent reference (v. 14) connects to Numbers 21:4-9. The light-darkness judgment theme (vv. 19-21) echoes the Prologue (1:4-5). The bridegroom imagery (v. 29) connects to Old Testament depictions of God as Israel's husband (Hosea 2, Isaiah 54:5, Jeremiah 2:2). The 'wrath of God' in verse 36 is the only use of orge in John's Gospel.*

¹Now there was a man of the Pharisees named Nicodemus, a leader of the Jewish people. ²He came to Jesus at night and said to him, "Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher who has come from God, for no one could perform these signs that you do unless God were with him." ³Jesus answered him, "Truly, truly, I tell you, unless a person is born from above, they cannot see the kingdom of God." ⁴Nicodemus said to him, "How can a person be born when they are old? Can they enter their mother's womb a second time and be born?" ⁵Jesus answered, "Truly, truly, I tell you, unless a person is born of water and the Spirit, they cannot enter the kingdom of God. ⁶What is born of the flesh is flesh, and what is born of the Spirit is spirit. ⁷Do not be astonished that I said to you, 'You must be born from above.' ⁸The wind blows where it wishes, and you hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it is going. So it is with everyone who is born of the Spirit." ⁹Nicodemus answered him, "How can these things be?" ¹⁰Jesus answered him, "You are the teacher of Israel, and you do not understand these things? ¹¹Truly, truly, I tell you, we speak of what we know, and we testify to what we have seen, but you do not accept our testimony. ¹²If I have told you about earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things? ¹³No one has ascended into heaven except the one who descended from heaven — the Son of Man. ¹⁴As Moses raised up the serpent in the wilderness, in the same way the Son of Man be raised up:. ¹⁵so that everyone who believes in him will not be destroyed but will have eternal life. ¹⁶For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him should not perish but have eternal life. ¹⁷For God did not send the Son into the world to condemn the world, but so that the world might be saved through him. ¹⁸The one who believes in him is not condemned, but the one who does not believe has been condemned already, because they have not believed in the name of the only Son of God. ¹⁹And this is the judgment: the light has come into the world, and people loved the darkness rather than the light, because their works were evil. ²⁰For everyone who practices evil hates the light and does not come to the light, so that their works may not be exposed. ²¹But the one who practices the truth comes to the light, so that it may be clearly seen that their

works have been done in God. ²²After this, Jesus and his disciples went into the Judean countryside, and he spent time there with them and was baptizing. ²³John also was baptizing at Aenon near Salim, because there was plenty of water there, and people were coming and being baptized. ²⁴For John had not yet been thrown into prison. ²⁵Now a dispute arose between some of John's disciples and a Jewish man about purification. ²⁶They came to John and said to him, "Rabbi, the one who was with you beyond the Jordan, to whom you testified — look, he is baptizing, and everyone is going to him." ²⁷John answered, "A person cannot receive even one thing unless it has been given to them from heaven. ²⁸You yourselves can testify that I said, 'I am not the Christ, but I have been sent ahead of him.' ²⁹The one who has the bride is the bridegroom, but the friend of the bridegroom, who stands and hears him, rejoices greatly at the bridegroom's voice. So this joy of mine is now complete. ³⁰He must increase, and I must decrease." ³¹The one who comes from above is above all. The one who is from the earth belongs to the earth and speaks from an earthly perspective. The one who comes from heaven is above all. ³²He testifies to what he has seen and heard, yet no one accepts his testimony. ³³The one who has accepted his testimony has certified that God is true. ³⁴For the one whom God has sent speaks the words of God, for he gives the Spirit without measure. ³⁵The Father loves the Son and has placed all things in his hand. ³⁶The one who believes in the Son has eternal life, but the one who disobeys the Son will not see life — instead, the wrath of God remains on them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Nicodemus is identified by three markers: he is a Pharisee (theological party), he has a Greek name meaning 'conqueror of the people,' and he is an archon ('ruler, leader') — likely a member of the Sanhedrin, the Jewish governing council. He appears three times in John (here, 7:50-52, 19:39), each time moving closer to faith. The connection to 2:25 is immediate — Jesus knows what is in a person, and now a specific person comes to him.
2. Nicodemus comes 'at night' (nyktos) — in John's symbolic world, night represents spiritual darkness and ignorance (cf. 9:4, 11:10, 13:30). Whether Nicodemus comes by night for secrecy, out of fear, or simply because rabbis often studied at night is debated, but the symbolic resonance is unmistakable. His use of the plural 'we know' (oidamen) may indicate he speaks for a group of sympathetic Pharisees. He acknowledges Jesus as a divinely authorized teacher based on the signs — precisely the inadequate sign-faith described in 2:23-25.
3. The Greek anōthen is deliberately ambiguous — it means both 'again' (a second time) and 'from above' (from a higher place, from God). Nicodemus hears the first meaning; Jesus intends the second (as confirmed by verse 31, where anōthen clearly means 'from above'). We render 'from above' to preserve Jesus's intended meaning, noting the wordplay. This is the only passage in John's Gospel where Jesus speaks of the 'kingdom of God' (basileia tou theou), a phrase dominant in the Synoptics but rare in John.
4. Nicodemus's response reveals he has heard anōthen as 'again' — he takes the statement with wooden literalism, imagining a physical re-entry into the womb. This misunderstanding is a Johannine literary device: a character takes Jesus's words at the surface level, prompting Jesus to explain the deeper spiritual meaning (cf. 4:11, 6:42, 8:33, 11:11-12). The word geron ('old man') may hint at Nicodemus's own age.
5. The phrase 'water and Spirit' (hydatos kai pneumatōs) has been interpreted in numerous ways: (1) water baptism and the Holy Spirit, (2) natural birth (amniotic fluid) and spiritual birth, (3) an echo of Ezekiel 36:25-27 where God promises to sprinkle clean water and give a new spirit. The Ezekiel connection is strongest, given that Jesus expects Nicodemus as 'the teacher of Israel' (v. 10) to understand this reference. One preposition (ek) governs both nouns, suggesting water and Spirit are aspects of a single birth, not two separate events.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 36:25-27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Jesus establishes a categorical distinction: flesh (sarx) produces flesh; Spirit (pneuma) produces spirit. Human effort cannot generate spiritual birth — it requires an entirely different source. 'Flesh' here does not mean 'sinful' (as often in Paul) but 'merely human, natural, limited.' The point is not that flesh is evil but that it cannot do what only the Spirit can accomplish.
7. The shift from singular 'you' (soi, addressing Nicodemus) to plural 'you' (hymas, 'you all must be born from above') indicates that the requirement is universal, not personal to Nicodemus. The verb dei ('must, it is necessary') expresses divine necessity — this is not optional spiritual advice but an absolute requirement. We maintain 'from above' for anōthen, consistent with verse 3.
8. The Greek pneuma means both 'wind' and 'spirit' — Jesus exploits this double meaning brilliantly. The wind/Spirit is real and observable in its effects but unpredictable and uncontrollable in its movements. The analogy teaches that spiritual birth, like wind, is sovereignly initiated by God, perceptible in its results but not subject to human management. The verb pnei ('blows') is etymologically related to pneuma, reinforcing the wordplay.
9. Nicodemus's third question ('How can these things be?') shows he remains at the level of human comprehension. His 'how' (pos) asks for mechanism — how does this work? — but spiritual birth is not a process to be understood and replicated. It is a divine act to be received. This is Nicodemus's last recorded word in this conversation; from this point, Jesus speaks alone.

10. The definite article is significant — ho didaskalos ('the teacher'), not merely 'a teacher.' Nicodemus holds a recognized position of authority in Israel's religious instruction. Jesus's mild rebuke implies that the Old Testament itself teaches spiritual renewal (Ezekiel 36-37, Jeremiah 31:31-34) — a scholar of Nicodemus's standing should already know this. The irony is that Israel's authorized teacher cannot grasp what the unauthorized teacher from Nazareth is explaining.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 36-37 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The shift to the plural 'we' (oidamen, laloumen, heorakamen, martyroumen) is debated — it may be a majestic plural, or Jesus may be including the Spirit, or the narrator's voice may be beginning to merge with Jesus's. The plural 'you' (lambanete) indicates that the rejection extends beyond Nicodemus to the religious leadership as a whole. The vocabulary of seeing (heorakamen) and testifying (martyroumen) connects to the Gospel's central themes.
12. The distinction between 'earthly things' (ta epigeia) and 'heavenly things' (ta epourania) creates a vertical axis. The 'earthly things' are likely the analogy of wind/Spirit and the concept of new birth — observable realities used to explain spiritual truths. The 'heavenly things' are the divine realities themselves — God's love, the sending of the Son, the nature of judgment — which Jesus alone can reveal because he alone has been in heaven.
13. Jesus claims unique access to heavenly realities: no human has ascended to heaven to gain this knowledge — only the Son of Man, who came down from heaven, possesses it. The perfect tense anabebeken ('has ascended') may refer to Jesus's post-resurrection ascension, spoken from the narrator's post-Easter perspective, or may assert that no one has made the journey except the Son of Man. Some manuscripts add 'who is in heaven' (ho on en to ourano), but the SBLGNT omits this phrase.
14. The reference is to Numbers 21:4-9, where the Israelites bitten by poisonous serpents were healed by looking at a bronze serpent lifted up on a pole. The verb hypsothenai ('to be lifted up') carries a Johannine double meaning throughout the Gospel: it refers both to being lifted up on the cross (physical elevation) and to being exalted in glory (theological elevation). In John, the cross is simultaneously an instrument of death and the throne of glorification (cf. 8:28, 12:32-34).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 21:4-9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The SBLGNT does not include 'should not perish' (me apoletai), which appears in some manuscripts under influence from verse 16. The parallel with Numbers 21 is complete: as the Israelites looked at the serpent and lived, so those who believe in the lifted-up Son of Man receive eternal life. 'Eternal life' (zoe aionion) in John is not merely endless duration but a quality of life — the life of the coming age experienced now through faith.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The adverb houtos ('so, in this way, thus') modifies the verb — it describes the manner or extent of God's love: 'God loved the world in this way' or 'to this degree.' The aorist edoken ('gave') points to a specific, decisive act of giving. The scope is universal — ton kosmon ('the world'), not merely Israel. The verb apoletai ('perish, be destroyed') indicates total loss, not merely death. This verse compresses the entire Gospel narrative into a single sentence: the motive (God's love), the act (giving the Son), the condition (belief), and the result (eternal life versus perishing).
16. Whether this verse is spoken by Jesus or is the narrator's theological commentary is debated. The SBLGNT does not use quotation marks, and the language shifts from second-person dialogue to third-person theological reflection.
17. The verb krine ('judge, condemn') introduces the judgment theme that will dominate verses 18-21. The purpose of the incarnation is salvation (sothe, 'be saved'), not condemnation — though condemnation will result for those who refuse the light. The threefold repetition of kosmos ('world') emphasizes the universal scope: God sent his Son into the world, not to condemn the world, but to save the world.
18. The judgment described here is not a future event awaiting a final tribunal but a present reality determined by one's response to the Son. The perfect tense kekritai ('has been condemned') and pepisteuken ('has believed') indicate settled states with present consequences. The structure creates a stark binary: belief or condemnation, with no middle ground. 'In the name' (eis to onoma) means trusting in the person and character the name represents.
19. The judgment is not an arbitrary decree but a self-executing reality — when light appears, those whose deeds are evil flee from it. The perfect tense ellythen ('has come') indicates the light's arrival is a settled fact with ongoing consequences. The verb egapesan ('loved') is striking — the same word used of God's love for the world in verse 16 is now used of humanity's love for darkness. The moral failure is a disordered love: choosing darkness over light.
20. The verb elegchthe ('be exposed, reproved, convicted') means to bring hidden things into the open. The present participle phaula prasson ('practicing worthless/evil things') describes a habitual pattern, not isolated acts. The logic is psychological: evil deeds create an aversion to light because light reveals what people want hidden. This may retrospectively illuminate Nicodemus's choice to come 'at night' (v. 2).
21. The striking phrase 'practices the truth' (poion ten aletheian) combines action and truth — truth in John is not merely believed but done. This Hebrew-influenced idiom (cf. 1 John 1:6) treats truth as something lived out, not merely known. The passive phanerothe ('may be made visible') and the phrase en theo ('in God') indicate that righteous works originate from and are sustained by God — they are not independent human achievements but God-empowered deeds.

- 22.** The transition moves from Jerusalem (where the Nicodemus conversation took place) to the Judean countryside. The statement that Jesus 'was baptizing' (ebaptizen) is qualified in 4:2, which notes that Jesus himself did not baptize but his disciples did. The imperfect tense suggests an ongoing ministry period. This is the only Gospel to describe a period of overlapping baptismal ministries between Jesus and John.
- 23.** The location of Aenon ('springs') near Salim is debated — candidates include a site in the Jordan Valley and one in Samaria. The practical note about 'plenty of water' (hydata polla, literally 'many waters') indicates that immersion, not sprinkling, was the mode of baptism. The imperfect tenses (pareginonto, ebaptizonto) describe ongoing activity — people kept coming and being baptized.
- 24.** This parenthetical note synchronizes John's narrative with the Synoptic timeline, where Jesus's Galilean ministry begins after John's arrest (Mark 1:14). John's Gospel uniquely preserves this period of overlapping ministries before the Baptist's imprisonment.
- 25.** The SBLGNT reads the singular Ioudaiou ('a Jewish man') rather than the plural 'Jews' found in some manuscripts. The dispute about katharismou ('purification, cleansing') connects baptism to the broader Jewish purity system. The specific content of the dispute is not given — it serves primarily as the trigger for the question brought to John in the next verse.
- 26.** John's disciples report Jesus's growing popularity with evident concern — their teacher is losing followers. They carefully avoid using Jesus's name, referring to him only as 'the one who was with you' and 'the one you testified about.' The hyperbolic 'everyone' (pantes) expresses their alarm. The irony is that this is exactly what John predicted and intended (1:26-27).
- 27.** John's response begins with a statement of radical divine sovereignty — every role, every gift, every ministry is heaven's assignment. The principle applies both to Jesus (whose growing ministry is heaven-given) and to John himself (whose diminishing role is equally heaven-assigned). The perfect participle dedomenon ('having been given') emphasizes the settled, divine origin of each person's calling.
- 28.** John appeals to his own earlier testimony (1:20) — his disciples heard him say it. The phrase apostalmenos eimi ('I have been sent') uses the perfect passive, emphasizing that his role as forerunner was divinely appointed. John's identity is entirely defined by his relationship to the one who follows.
- 29.** The 'friend of the bridegroom' (ho philos tou nymphiou) was a recognized role in Jewish weddings — the shoshbin who arranged the wedding, guarded the bridal chamber, and announced the groom's arrival. His joy was in the groom's joy, not his own. John casts himself in this role: he prepared everything for the bridegroom's arrival, and now that the groom has come, his task is fulfilled. The bridegroom imagery echoes Old Testament depictions of God as Israel's husband (Hosea 2:16, Isaiah 62:5). The cognate accusative chara chairei ('rejoices with joy') is a Semitic intensifier expressing overwhelming gladness.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 2:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 62:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** This is perhaps the most memorable statement of the Baptist in any Gospel. The verb dei ('must, it is necessary') again expresses divine necessity — this is not John's reluctant concession but his joyful acceptance of God's design. The verbs auxanein ('to grow, increase') and elattousthai ('to diminish, decrease') describe an inverse relationship: as Jesus's ministry expands, John's contracts. The present infinitives suggest an ongoing process, not a sudden event.
- 31.** Whether this is the Baptist's continued speech or the narrator's theological commentary is uncertain — the language closely resembles the narrator's voice throughout the Gospel. The word anōthen ('from above') echoes verse 3, where it was the word Nicodemus misunderstood. The contrast between 'from above' and 'from the earth' parallels the flesh/Spirit contrast of verse 6. The repetition of 'above all' (epano panton) creates an inclusio bracketing the earthly description.
- 32.** The perfect tense heoraken ('has seen') indicates firsthand, ongoing knowledge — the one from heaven testifies from direct experience of divine realities. The sweeping 'no one' (oudeis) is hyperbolic (as verse 33 immediately shows some do accept), expressing the general pattern of rejection that marks the Gospel's narrative. The language echoes verse 11, reinforcing whether this is narrator or Baptist speaking.
- 33.** The verb esphragisen ('has sealed, certified, attested') is a legal metaphor — to affix one's seal to a document was to authenticate it. Accepting Jesus's testimony is equivalent to affirming God's truthfulness, because Jesus speaks God's words. Conversely, rejecting Jesus's testimony makes God a liar (cf. 1 John 5:10).
- 34.** The phrase ou gar ek metrou ('not by measure, without limit') indicates that the Spirit is given to the Son without restriction or rationing. In rabbinic thought, the Spirit was given to prophets in limited portions for specific tasks; the Son receives the Spirit in unlimited fullness (cf. 1:32-33, where the Spirit 'remained' on Jesus). The subject of 'gives' (didōsin) could be God (giving the Spirit to the Son) or the Son (giving the Spirit to believers), but the former is more natural in context.
- 35.** The verb agapa ('loves') is the present tense of agapao, indicating the Father's continuous, active love for the Son. The perfect tense dedōken ('has given, has placed') indicates a completed transfer of authority with lasting effect. 'All things' (panta) is comprehensive — nothing is withheld. The metaphor 'in his hand' (en te cheiri) denotes authority, power, and possession — a Semitic idiom for total control.
- 36.** The present tense echei ('has') is significant — eternal life is a present possession, not merely a future hope, for those who believe. The contrasting verb apeithon ('disobeying, refusing to be persuaded') is stronger than 'not believing' — it implies active resistance, not mere ignorance. The word orge ('wrath') appears only here in John's Gospel. The verb menei ('remains, abides') is the same word used positively elsewhere for abiding in Christ — here it describes the settled, ongoing state of divine displeasure resting upon the disobedient. This verse serves as a summary of the entire chapter's theology: belief brings life, disobedience brings wrath.

4

Summary: *John 4 narrates Jesus's encounter with a Samaritan woman at Jacob's well near Sychar. The conversation moves from physical water to 'living water,' from the woman's marital history to the nature of true worship, and culminates in Jesus's self-identification as the Messiah. The woman becomes the first evangelist in John's Gospel, bringing her town to Jesus. The chapter then transitions to a discourse on spiritual harvest with the disciples, and concludes with the healing of a royal official's son in Cana — the second sign in John's narrative.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the longest recorded conversation between Jesus and any individual in the Gospels. Jesus crosses three boundaries that a first-century Jewish teacher would normally observe: ethnic (Jew-Samaritan), gender (man-woman alone), and moral (righteous-sinful). The woman's progressive recognition of Jesus mirrors Nicodemus's failure to understand — she moves from 'a Jew' (v. 9) to 'sir' (v. 11) to 'prophet' (v. 19) to 'the Christ' (v. 29). The Messiah terminology in verse 25 is notable — the Samaritans awaited a Taheb ('restorer'), not a Davidic king, making this conversation cross-cultural at every level.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'living water' (hydor zon) carries a double meaning — it means 'running water' (as opposed to still cistern water) in ordinary usage, but Jesus uses it to mean the water that gives spiritual life. The woman's marital situation (five husbands and a current partner) has been read allegorically (representing the five foreign gods of 2 Kings 17:24-34) and literally. We render the text without imposing either reading. The worship discussion (vv. 20-24) addresses the Samaritan-Jewish dispute over the proper place of worship — Gerizim versus Jerusalem.*

Connections: *Jacob's well connects to the patriarch Jacob (Genesis 33:18-20). The 'living water' theme connects to Jeremiah 2:13 (God as the fountain of living water), Zechariah 14:8, and Ezekiel 47:1-12 (the river from the temple). The harvest imagery (vv. 35-38) connects to Joel 3:13 and Amos 9:13. The healing of the official's son parallels the Synoptic centurion's servant narrative (Matthew 8:5-13, Luke 7:1-10) but is likely a distinct event.*

¹Now when Jesus learned that the Pharisees had heard he was making and baptizing more disciples than John — ²(Though Jesus himself baptized not, but his followers,). ³He departed Judaea, and departed again into Galilee. ⁴Now he had to pass through Samaria. ⁵So he came to a Samaritan town called Sychar, near the plot of land that Jacob had given to his son Joseph. ⁶Jacob's well was there, and Jesus, tired from the journey, sat down beside the well. It was about noon. ⁷A Samaritan woman came to draw water. Jesus said to her, "Give me a drink." ⁸For his disciples had gone into the town to buy food. ⁹The Samaritan woman said to him, "How is it that you, a Jew, ask for a drink from me, a Samaritan woman?" (For Jews do not share vessels with Samaritans.) ¹⁰Jesus answered her, "If you knew the gift of God, and who it is that is saying to you, 'Give me a drink,' you would have asked him, and he would have given you living water." ¹¹The woman said to him, "Sir, you have no bucket and the well is deep. Where then do you get this living water?" ¹²You are not greater than our father Jacob, are you? He gave us this well and drank from it himself, as did his sons and his livestock." ¹³Jesus answered her, "Everyone who drinks from this water will be thirsty again, ¹⁴However, whosoever drinketh of the water that I will give him will never thirst. But the water that I will give him will be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life. ¹⁵The woman said to him, "Sir, give me this water so that I will not be thirsty and will not have to keep coming here to draw water." ¹⁶He said to her, "Go, call your husband, and come back here." ¹⁷The woman answered, "I have no husband." Jesus said to her, "You are right to say, 'I have no husband,' ¹⁸For you have had five husbands. Then he whom you now hast is not your husband — in that saidst you truly. ¹⁹The woman said to him, "Sir, I can see that you are a prophet. ²⁰Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you say that Jerusalem is the place where people must worship." ²¹Jesus said to her, "Believe me, woman, the hour is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem. ²²You worship what you do not know; we worship what we know, because salvation is from the Jews. ²³But the hour is coming, and is now here, when the true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father is seeking such people to worship him. ²⁴God is spirit, and those who worship him must worship in spirit and truth." ²⁵The woman said to him, "I know that the Messiah is coming" (the one called Christ). "When he comes, he will explain everything to us." ²⁶Jesus said to her, "I am he — the one

speaking to you." ²⁷Just then his disciples returned. They were astonished that he was speaking with a woman, but no one said, "What are you looking for?" or "Why are you speaking with her?" ²⁸So the woman left her water jar and went back into the town and said to the people, ²⁹"Come, see a man who told me everything I have ever done! Could this be the Christ?" ³⁰They left the town and were coming to him. ³¹Meanwhile the disciples were urging him, "Rabbi, eat something." ³²But he said to them, "I have food to eat that you do not know about." ³³So the disciples said to one another, "No one brought him anything to eat, did they?" ³⁴Jesus said to them, "My food is to do the will of the one who sent me and to complete his work. ³⁵Do you not say, 'There are still four months and then comes the harvest'? Look, I tell you, lift up your eyes and see the fields — they are already white for harvest. ³⁶Already the reaper is receiving wages and gathering fruit for eternal life, so that the sower and the reaper may rejoice together. ³⁷For in this case the saying is true: 'One sows and another reaps.' ³⁸I sent you to reap what you did not labor for. Others have labored, and you have entered into their labor." ³⁹Many Samaritans from that town believed in him because of the woman's testimony: "He told me everything I have ever done." ⁴⁰So when the Samaritans came to him, they asked him to stay with them, and he stayed there two days. ⁴¹Numerous more believed because of his own word;. ⁴²Stated to the woman, Now we trust, not because of your declaring — since we have listened to him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Saviour of the world. ⁴³After the two days he departed from there to Galilee. ⁴⁴For Jesus himself had testified that a prophet has no honor in his own hometown. ⁴⁵So when he came to Galilee, the Galileans welcomed him, having seen all that he had done in Jerusalem at the festival, for they too had gone to the festival. ⁴⁶So he came again to Cana of Galilee, where he had turned the water into wine. Now there was a royal official whose son was ill in Capernaum. ⁴⁷When he heard that Jesus had come from Judea to Galilee, he went to him and asked him to come down and heal his son, for the boy was about to die. ⁴⁸Jesus said to him, "Unless you see signs and wonders, you will never believe." ⁴⁹The royal official said to him, "Sir, come down before my child dies." ⁵⁰Jesus said to him, "Go — your son lives." The man believed the word that Jesus spoke to him and started on his way. ⁵¹While he was still going down, his servants met him and told him that his boy was alive. ⁵²So he asked them the hour when his son began to recover, and they told him, "Yesterday at one in the afternoon the fever left him." ⁵³The father realized that this was the exact hour when Jesus had said to him, "Your son lives." And he himself believed, along with his entire household. ⁵⁴This was the second sign that Jesus performed after coming from Judea to Galilee.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads 'Jesus' (Iesous) rather than 'the Lord' (ho kyrios) found in some manuscripts. The Pharisees' attention to Jesus's growing movement creates the narrative motivation for his withdrawal northward through Samaria. The comparison with John frames the situation as a potential political complication.
2. This parenthetical correction qualifies 3:22 and 4:1. The narrator clarifies that Jesus directed the baptizing ministry but did not personally perform the rite. The distinction may reflect a theological concern about the relative authority of baptisms, or simply a factual correction.
3. Jesus withdraws from Judea to avoid premature confrontation with the Pharisees — his 'hour' has not yet come (cf. 2:4, 7:6, 7:30). The verb *apheken* ('left, departed from') suggests a deliberate decision, not flight.
4. The verb *edei* ('it was necessary') suggests more than geographical necessity — many Jews deliberately avoided Samaria by taking a longer route through Perea east of the Jordan. The 'necessity' may be divine — Jesus must pass through Samaria because there is a woman at a well whom the Father intends him to meet. The word carries the same divine compulsion as in 3:7, 3:14, 3:30.
5. Sychar is likely modern Askar, near ancient Shechem. The reference to Jacob's gift of land to Joseph connects to Genesis 33:19 and 48:22, and Joshua 24:32, where Joseph's bones were buried. The detail grounds the narrative in patriarchal history and establishes why this well is called 'Jacob's well' in the next verse.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 33:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 24:32 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The word *page* ('spring, well, fountain') suggests a natural spring-fed well, though the site today is a deep cistern. The detail that Jesus was *kekopiakos* ('weary, exhausted') from the journey is a vivid human touch — the Word who became flesh (1:14) experiences genuine physical fatigue. The 'sixth hour' is noon by either Jewish or Roman reckoning, the hottest part of the day — an unusual time for a woman to come to draw water, suggesting she may have been avoiding the other women of the town.

7. Jesus initiates the conversation — a striking social reversal. A Jewish rabbi would not normally address an unknown woman in public, much less a Samaritan woman. The request 'Give me a drink' (dos moi peïn) places Jesus in a position of need, creating an opening for dialogue. The verb antlesai ('to draw') is the same used at the Cana wedding (2:8), creating a subtle verbal link between the two water-related narratives.
8. The narrator explains why Jesus is alone — the disciples are away buying provisions. The detail that they purchase food in a Samaritan town implies a less rigid attitude toward Samaritan uncleanness than some Pharisaic standards would permit. The absence of the disciples allows the private conversation that follows.
9. The woman immediately identifies the social boundary Jesus has crossed. The parenthetical explanation ou gar sunchrōntai Ioudaioi Samaritais has been debated — synchromai may mean 'use together with' (share utensils) rather than 'have dealings with.' The issue is ritual purity: drinking from a Samaritan's vessel would render a Jew ceremonially unclean. The hostility between Jews and Samaritans dated to the Assyrian resettlement (2 Kings 17) and the destruction of the Samaritan temple on Mount Gerizim in 128 BC.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Jesus reverses the dynamic — the one asking for water is actually the one who has water to give. The phrase dorean tou theou ('gift of God') is deliberately ambiguous: it could refer to the living water itself, to the Holy Spirit (cf. Acts 2:38), or to Jesus himself. The term hydor zon ('living water') means 'running/flowing water' in ordinary usage (as opposed to stagnant cistern water) but carries a deeper meaning that Jesus will develop. The conditional construction (if you knew... you would have asked) implies the woman does not yet know, but could.
11. The woman hears 'living water' at the physical level — running water from a deep well requires equipment. Her address kyrie ('sir, lord') marks a step up from 'Jew' (v. 9) but remains at the level of polite address. The question pothen ('from where') is one of John's theological keywords — the question of Jesus's origin runs through the Gospel (cf. 2:9, 7:27-28, 8:14, 9:29-30, 19:9).
12. The Greek particle me introduces a question expecting a negative answer: 'You're not greater than Jacob, are you?' The irony is that the reader knows Jesus is indeed greater than Jacob. The woman claims Jacob as 'our father' — the Samaritans traced their lineage to the northern tribes and regarded the patriarchs as their ancestors. The mention of Jacob drinking from the well authenticates it by ancestral use.
13. Jesus now contrasts the water from Jacob's well — which satisfies temporarily — with the living water he offers. The future tense dipsesei ('will thirst') states an inevitable limitation: physical water cannot permanently satisfy. The 'this water' (tou hydatos toutou) refers specifically to the well water, creating a bridge to the contrast in the next verse.
14. The double negative ou me dipsesei ('will never, ever be thirsty') is the strongest possible negation in Greek. The water Jesus gives does not merely satisfy — it transforms the recipient into a source: it becomes 'a spring' (pege) within them. The verb hallomenou ('springing up, leaping, bubbling') conveys dynamic, self-renewing energy. The destination is 'eternal life' (zōen aionion), the quality of divine life that is John's central theme. The image anticipates 7:37-39, where Jesus explicitly connects living water to the Holy Spirit.
15. Like Nicodemus (3:4), the woman remains at the literal level — she wants water that eliminates the daily chore of coming to the well. Yet her request 'give me this water' (dos moi touto to hydor) echoes the language of genuine petition. John's irony operates on multiple levels: the woman asks for more than she understands, and what she is about to receive will far exceed what she requested.
16. The abrupt shift in topic is a deliberate pastoral strategy — Jesus moves from theological discussion to personal reality. The request to bring her husband will expose the woman's life situation and demonstrate Jesus's supernatural knowledge, paralleling the Nathanael encounter (1:47-48). The verb phōneson ('call, summon') indicates Jesus intends the husband to be present for what follows.
17. The woman's reply is technically true but evasive — she has no husband, but the full story is more complex. Jesus affirms her statement with kalos epas ('you have spoken well/correctly') before revealing the deeper truth. The affirmation before the exposure demonstrates pastoral sensitivity.
18. Jesus reveals knowledge he could not have obtained naturally, demonstrating the same supernatural perception shown with Nathanael (1:47-48) and anticipated in 2:25. The five previous marriages could reflect widowhood, divorce, or a combination — the text does not moralize or explain. The current relationship is distinguished from marriage ('is not your husband'). Some scholars read the five husbands allegorically as the five foreign nations settled in Samaria (2 Kings 17:24), but the narrative functions powerfully at the literal level.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Kings 17:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The woman's identification of Jesus advances from 'Jew' (v. 9) to 'sir' (v. 11) to 'prophet' (v. 19). Her recognition is based on Jesus's supernatural knowledge of her personal history. The Samaritans expected a prophetic figure — the Taheb ('restorer') modeled on Moses (Deuteronomy 18:15-18). Calling Jesus a prophet places him within this expectation.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 18:15-18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. 'This mountain' is Mount Gerizim, visible from Jacob's well, where the Samaritans had built their temple (destroyed by John Hyrcanus in 128 BC but still sacred). The Samaritan-Jewish dispute over the proper location of worship was one of the deepest divisions between the two communities. The woman may be testing the prophet with the central theological question of her tradition, or she may be deflecting from the personal topic Jesus has raised.
21. Jesus transcends the either/or framework of the woman's question. The coming 'hour' (hora) connects to the theological hour motif that runs through the Gospel (2:4, 7:30, 12:23) — the death and resurrection of Jesus will render both worship locations obsolete. The address 'woman' (gynai)

is respectful, as in 2:4. The reference to 'the Father' (to patri) introduces a new dimension — worship is relational, directed to a Father, not merely performed at a location.

22. Jesus does not treat both traditions as equally valid — while transcending the location debate, he affirms the Jewish tradition's superiority in theological knowledge. The Samaritans accepted only the Torah (the five books of Moses) and rejected the Prophets and Writings, limiting their understanding of God. 'Salvation is from the Jews' (he soteria ek ton Ioudaion estin) is a remarkable statement given the Gospel's frequent criticism of 'the Jews' (religious leaders). Jesus identifies himself with Israel's heritage even as he transcends it.
23. The phrase 'is coming and is now here' (erchetai hora kai nyn estin) collapses future and present — the new age of worship is both imminent and already inaugurated in Jesus's ministry. 'In spirit and truth' (en pneumati kai aletheia) does not mean 'sincerely' or 'from the heart' in a vague sense — pneuma likely refers to the Holy Spirit, and aletheia to the truth revealed in Jesus (14:6). True worship is Spirit-empowered and Christ-centered. The astonishing statement that 'the Father is seeking' (ho pater zetei) such worshipers portrays God as the active pursuer, not merely the recipient of worship.
24. The statement pneuma ho theos ('God is spirit') is not a philosophical definition of God's essence but a statement about the nature of genuine encounter with God. Because God is spirit (not confined to physical locations), worship must be correspondingly spiritual — empowered by the Spirit, oriented toward truth. The verb dei ('must') expresses divine necessity: this is not one option among many but the only authentic mode of worship.
25. This is the second of only two uses of the Aramaic 'Messiah' in the New Testament (cf. 1:41). The Samaritan expectation was for the Taheb ('restorer'), a prophet-like-Moses who would restore true worship and reveal all things. The woman's statement 'he will explain everything to us' (anangelei hemin hapanta) reflects this expectation of a revealer figure. John translates 'Messiah' as Christos for his Greek audience.
26. The Greek ego eimi ('I am') is the first explicit 'I am' statement in the Gospel. On the surface, it means 'I am [the Messiah]' — a direct answer to the woman's expectation. But ego eimi also echoes the divine name revealed to Moses (Exodus 3:14, 'I AM WHO I AM') and will become Jesus's most characteristic self-identification in John (6:20, 8:24, 8:28, 8:58, 13:19, 18:5-6). This is the most explicit messianic self-declaration in any Gospel conversation — and it is given not to a Jewish leader but to a Samaritan woman.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The disciples' astonishment (ethaumazon) is at the gender boundary being crossed — rabbinic teaching discouraged extended conversation with women (Pirke Avot 1:5: 'Do not talk much with a woman'). The fact that she is also Samaritan compounds the surprise. Their silence — not asking 'what do you want?' or 'why are you talking to her?' — suggests a combination of respect and bewilderment.
28. The detail that she 'left her water jar' (apheken ten hydrian) is vivid and significant — the original errand is forgotten in the urgency of her discovery. She came for physical water and leaves without it, having found something greater. The abandoned jar also ensures she will return (and perhaps serves as a pledge to Jesus that she will come back). She goes to tois anthropois ('the people'), not just the men — she evangelizes the entire town.
29. Her invitation 'Come, see' (deute idete) echoes the invitation chain of chapter 1 (1:39, 1:46). The hyperbolic 'everything I have ever done' (panta hosa epoiesas) reflects the overwhelming impression of Jesus's supernatural knowledge. The question meti houtos estin ho christos ('Could this be the Christ?') uses the particle meti, which expects an uncertain or negative answer — she frames her testimony as a question, inviting investigation rather than demanding belief. This is remarkably effective evangelism.
30. The imperfect erchonto ('were coming') describes the townspeople in process — they are on their way, creating a narrative pause during which Jesus will speak to his disciples about the harvest (vv. 31-38). The woman's testimony has set an entire town in motion toward Jesus.
31. The imperfect eroton ('were urging, kept asking') suggests repeated requests. The disciples have returned with the food they purchased (v. 8) and are concerned about Jesus's physical needs. The conversation about food that follows will parallel the water conversation with the Samaritan woman — physical need becomes a springboard for spiritual teaching.
32. As with the woman and water, Jesus transforms a physical topic (food) into a spiritual teaching. The word brosin ('food, nourishment') will be defined in verse 34. The disciples' ignorance ('that you do not know about') parallels the woman's incomprehension about living water.
33. Like Nicodemus (3:4) and the Samaritan woman (4:11, 15), the disciples misunderstand by taking Jesus's words at the literal, physical level. The particle me expects a negative answer — they are fairly sure no one brought food but are puzzled. This triple pattern of misunderstanding reinforces John's theme that spiritual truth requires more than natural comprehension.
34. Jesus defines his 'food' as obedience to the Father's mission. The verb teleiosas ('to complete, to bring to perfection') anticipates Jesus's dying word tetelestai ('it is finished,' 19:30). The phrase 'the one who sent me' (tou pempantos me) is a characteristic Johannine description of the Father, emphasizing Jesus's role as the authorized emissary. Doing God's will is not merely a duty but sustenance — it nourishes Jesus in the way food sustains the body.
35. The 'four months until harvest' may be a common proverb or a literal time marker (placing this scene in December/January, four months before the April/May barley harvest). Jesus contrasts agricultural patience with spiritual urgency — the spiritual harvest is ready now. 'Lift up your eyes and see' may gesture toward the Samaritans walking toward them from the town (v. 30). The 'white fields' could refer to the white garments of approaching Samaritans or is simply harvest imagery.

36. In normal agriculture, sowing and reaping are separated by months; in the spiritual harvest, they overlap. The 'fruit' (karpon) gathered is people brought to faith — the harvest goal is 'eternal life' (zoen aionion). The shared rejoicing of sower and reaper transcends the proverb of verse 37, where they are separate. This may envision Old Testament prophets (sowers) and Jesus/his disciples (reapers) celebrating together.
37. Jesus quotes what appears to be a common proverb, usually carrying a negative sense (one person labors and another benefits). Jesus reframes it positively: the division of labor in God's harvest is by design, not injustice. The sower's work is essential to the reaper's harvest.
38. Jesus explicitly assigns the disciples the role of reapers. The 'others' (alloi) who labored before them likely include the Old Testament prophets, John the Baptist, and possibly Jesus himself. The verb kekopiakate ('have labored') uses the same root as the word describing Jesus's weariness at the well (v. 6, kekopiakos) — there is real toil in sowing, and the reapers inherit its fruit.
39. The woman's testimony (martyrouses, from martyreo) uses the same vocabulary applied to John the Baptist's witness (1:7, 15, 32, 34). A Samaritan woman becomes a credible witness whose word leads to faith — a remarkable statement in a culture where women's testimony was often discounted. Her simple report of personal experience ('He told me everything') proves more effective than theological argument.
40. The Samaritans' invitation to 'stay' (meinai) and Jesus's response of 'staying' (emeinen) use the theologically loaded Johannine verb meno ('abide, remain'). A Jewish teacher staying in a Samaritan town for two days would have been scandalous to many. The hospitality extended and accepted across ethnic lines anticipates the Gospel's universal scope.
41. The progression is from believing through the woman's testimony (v. 39) to believing through Jesus's own word (ton logon autou). The growth from 'many' to 'many more' shows the expanding impact of direct encounter with Jesus. John presents a model of evangelism: personal testimony brings people to Jesus, and Jesus's own word deepens and confirms their faith.
42. The title 'Savior of the world' (ho soter tou kosmou) is the climactic confession of the chapter. Remarkably, it comes from Samaritans — not from Jewish disciples or leaders. 'Savior' (soter) was used for God in the Old Testament (Isaiah 43:3, 11) and for emperors in Greco-Roman culture. The Samaritans claim Jesus for the whole world (tou kosmou), not just for Israel or Samaria. The SBLGNT does not include 'the Christ' (ho Christos), which appears in some manuscripts.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 43:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The narrative resumes the journey begun in verse 3. The two-day stay in Samaria delays but does not prevent the return to Galilee. The transition shifts from the Samaritan mission to the Galilean ministry.
44. This proverb (cf. Mark 6:4, Matthew 13:57, Luke 4:24) creates interpretive difficulty in context. If Galilee is Jesus's 'homeland' (patris), the statement seems to contradict the reception described in the next verse. Some scholars take 'homeland' as referring to Judea (the land of his birth in John's theology) or explain that the Galileans' reception is based on signs, not genuine honor. The proverb may serve as an ironic contrast: rejected at home, received abroad (in Samaria).
45. The Galileans' welcome is based on signs they witnessed in Jerusalem during Passover (cf. 2:23). This is the sign-based faith that Jesus did not trust (2:24-25) and that stands in contrast to the Samaritans' faith based on Jesus's word (4:41-42). The Galileans 'received' (edexanto) him, but the quality of their reception is ambiguous.
46. The return to Cana creates a literary frame with the first sign (2:1-11). The basilikos ('royal official') was likely an officer in the service of Herod Antipas, tetrarch of Galilee. The word could mean 'king's man' or 'nobleman.' His son is in Capernaum, roughly 16 miles from Cana — a significant distance that will become important to the story.
47. The imperfect erota ('kept asking, was begging') indicates persistent, urgent pleading. The verb katabee ('come down') is geographically precise — Cana sits higher in the hills than Capernaum on the lake shore. The father assumes Jesus must be physically present to heal, a limitation Jesus will soon transcend. The son's condition is critical: emellen apothneskein ('was about to die').
48. The plural 'you' (idete, pisteusete) indicates this is addressed not only to the official but to the Galileans generally — their faith is sign-dependent (cf. v. 45). The pairing of semeia kai terata ('signs and wonders') is unique in John; usually John uses semeia alone. The addition of terata ('wonders, portents') may carry a mildly negative connotation — seeking spectacle rather than understanding. The double negative ou me ('never') is emphatic.
49. The official ignores Jesus's theological challenge and presses his desperate request. The urgency of a parent facing a child's death overwhelms theological debate. The word paidion ('little child') is more affectionate than huios ('son') used in verse 46, revealing the father's emotional vulnerability. The repeated katabethi ('come down') shows he still assumes Jesus must be physically present.
50. Jesus heals at a distance, without going to Capernaum — his word alone is sufficient. The present tense ze ('lives') is not a promise but a declaration of present reality. The man's response marks a significant step: he 'believed the word' (episteusen to logo) — not a sign he could see, but a word he could only trust. This contrasts with the sign-dependent faith critiqued in verse 48. The verb eporeueto (imperfect, 'was going, started on his way') shows him acting on faith before receiving confirmation.
51. The servants use the same verb ze ('lives') that Jesus spoke in verse 50, creating a verbal link between the word of healing and its confirmation. The word pais ('boy, child, servant') is used here for the son, echoing the affectionate paidion of verse 49. The fact that the servants came out to meet him suggests the recovery was so dramatic they did not wait for his arrival.

52. The father investigates the timing to verify the connection between Jesus's word and the healing. The 'seventh hour' is 1:00 PM by Roman reckoning or 1:00 PM by Jewish reckoning (counting from sunrise at approximately 6:00 AM). The word 'yesterday' (echthes) indicates the official traveled overnight or stayed somewhere along the way — a detail suggesting he did not rush home in anxious unbelief but traveled at a normal pace, trusting Jesus's word.
53. The temporal correspondence confirms the healing was not coincidence but the direct effect of Jesus's word. The father's faith deepens — from initial desperate request (v. 47) to trusting Jesus's word (v. 50) to full belief confirmed by evidence (v. 53). The conversion of 'his entire household' (he oikia autou hole) reflects the ancient pattern where a household head's decision affected the whole family unit. This is the first 'household faith' in the Gospel.
54. John explicitly numbers this as the 'second sign' (deuteron semeion), connecting it to the first sign at Cana (2:11). Both signs occur in Cana, creating a geographic frame. Both involve transformation: water to wine, death to life. The numbering system will cease after this, though John continues to record signs. The phrase 'coming from Judea to Galilee' frames both signs as occurring in the context of Jesus's movement from the south to the north.

5

Summary: *John 5 opens with Jesus healing a man who had been disabled for thirty-eight years at the pool of Bethesda in Jerusalem on the Sabbath. When the Jewish leaders confront the healed man and then Jesus for violating Sabbath regulations, Jesus responds with a profound discourse on his relationship with the Father. He claims that 'my Father is still working, and I am working' — a statement the authorities correctly understand as a claim to equality with God. The extended discourse that follows develops themes of the Son's authority to give life and execute judgment, the reality of resurrection, and the witnesses that testify to Jesus's identity: John the Baptist, Jesus's own works, the Father himself, and the Scriptures.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sabbath controversy triggers the most extended christological discourse in the first half of the Gospel. Jesus's claim that the Father 'shows' the Son everything he does (5:20) presents their relationship as one of intimate transparency. The authority claims escalate steadily: the Son gives life to whom he wills (v. 21), the Father has entrusted all judgment to the Son (v. 22), honoring the Son equals honoring the Father (v. 23), and the dead will hear the Son's voice and live (v. 25). The four witnesses (John, works, Father, Scripture) establish a legal case for Jesus's identity, using the courtroom language that pervades the Gospel.*

Translation Friction: *The SBLGNT omits verse 4 entirely (the angel stirring the water), regarding it as a later scribal addition. We follow the critical text. The thirty-eight years of the man's illness may allude to Israel's thirty-eight years of wilderness wandering (Deuteronomy 2:14), but this is uncertain. The transition from the healing narrative to the theological discourse is seamless in Greek, with no clear paragraph break. The 'works' Jesus refers to as witnesses (v. 36) likely include his signs but extend to his entire mission.*

Connections: *The Sabbath controversy connects to Genesis 2:2-3 (God's rest) and the ongoing Jewish debate about whether God observes the Sabbath. The resurrection theme connects to Daniel 12:2 and Ezekiel 37. The testimony of Scripture (vv. 39-47) specifically invokes Moses, connecting to Deuteronomy 18:15-18 and the entire Torah. The pool of Bethesda has been archaeologically confirmed, with its five-portico structure matching John's description.*

¹After this there was a festival of the Jewish people, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem. ²Now in Jerusalem by the Sheep Gate there is a pool called Bethzatha in Aramaic, which has five covered colonnades. ³In these lay a large number of disabled people — blind, lame, and paralyzed. ⁴One man was there who had been disabled for thirty-eight years. ⁵When Jesus saw him lying there and knew that he had already been there a long time, he said to him, "Do you want to get well?" ⁶The disabled man answered him, "Sir, I have no one to put me into the pool when the water is stirred up. While I am trying to get there, someone else goes in ahead of me." ⁷Jesus said to him, "Get up, pick up your mat, and walk." ⁸Immediately the man was made well, and he picked up his mat and began to walk. Now that day was a Sabbath. ⁹So the Jewish leaders said to the man who had been healed, "It is the Sabbath, and it is not lawful for you to carry your mat." ¹⁰But he answered them, "The man who made me well told me, 'Pick up your mat and walk.'" ¹¹They asked him, "Who is the man who told you, 'Pick it up and walk?'" ¹²But the man who had been healed did not know who it was, for Jesus had slipped away into the crowd that was

there. ¹⁴Later Jesus found him in the temple and said to him, "See, you have been made well. Do not sin anymore, so that nothing worse happens to you." ¹⁵The man went away and told the Jewish leaders that it was Jesus who had made him well. ¹⁶For this reason the Jewish leaders began persecuting Jesus, because he was doing these things on the Sabbath. ¹⁷But Jesus answered them, "My Father is still working, and I also am working." ¹⁸For this reason the Jewish leaders were seeking all the more to kill him, because he was not only breaking the Sabbath but was also calling God his own Father, making himself equal with God. ¹⁹So Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, the Son can do nothing on his own, but only what he sees the Father doing. For whatever the Father does, the Son does likewise. ²⁰For the Father loves the Son and shows him everything that he himself is doing. And he will show him greater works than these, so that you will be astonished. ²¹For just as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also the Son gives life to whom he wishes. ²²For the Father judges no one but has given all judgment to the Son, ²³That all people should honour the Descendant, not even as they honour the Parent. He that honoureth not the Descendant honoureth not the Father which has dispatched him. ²⁴Truly, truly, I tell you, the one who hears my word and believes the one who sent me has eternal life and does not come under judgment but has passed from death to life. ²⁵Truly, truly, I tell you, the hour is coming and is now here when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live. ²⁶For just as the Father has life in himself, so also he has granted the Son to have life in himself. ²⁷Because he is the son of man, and has given him authority to execute judgment also. ²⁸Do not be astonished at this, for the hour is coming when all who are in the tombs will hear his voice ²⁹Indeed, will come forth. They that have done good, to the resurrection of life. Then they that have done evil, to the resurrection of damnation. ³⁰I can do nothing on my own. As I hear, I judge, and my judgment is just, because I do not seek my own will but the will of the one who sent me. ³¹"If I testify about myself, my testimony is not valid. ³²There is another who testifies about me, and I know that the testimony he gives about me is true. ³³You sent messengers to John, and he has testified to the truth. ³⁴Not that I accept human testimony, but I say these things so that you may be saved. ³⁵He was a burning and shining lamp, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while. ³⁶But I have a testimony greater than John's, for the works that the Father has given me to accomplish — the very works I am doing — testify about me that the Father has sent me. ³⁷And the Father who sent me has himself testified about me. You have never heard his voice nor seen his form, ³⁸You have not his word abiding in you — for whom he has dispatched, him you believe not. ³⁹You search the Scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life, and it is they that testify about me. ⁴⁰You will not come to me, that you might have life. ⁴¹I do not accept glory from people. ⁴²But I know you — that you do not have the love of God in yourselves. ⁴³I have come in my Father's name, and you do not receive me. If another comes in his own name, you will receive that one. ⁴⁴How can you believe when you accept glory from one another and do not seek the glory that comes from the only God? ⁴⁵Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father. The one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have placed your hope. ⁴⁶For if you believed Moses, you would believe me, because he wrote about me. ⁴⁷But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads *heorte* without the definite article ('a festival'), leaving the specific festival unidentified. Various proposals include Passover, Tabernacles, Pentecost, or Purim. The lack of specificity may be deliberate — John focuses on the event, not the calendar. The verb *anebe* ('went up') is the standard pilgrimage term for traveling to Jerusalem.
2. The SBLGNT reads 'Bethzatha' rather than 'Bethesda' (found in some manuscripts; the name means 'house of mercy') or 'Bethsaida.' The 'Sheep Gate' (*probatike*) is known from Nehemiah 3:1, 32; 12:39. Archaeological excavations near St. Anne's Church in Jerusalem have uncovered a pool with the five-colonnade structure John describes — four colonnades around the edges and one dividing the pool in two. The present tense *estin* ('there is') may suggest John writes before the pool's destruction in AD 70, or may simply be vivid narration.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Nehemiah 3:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The SBLGNT ends verse 3 after 'paralyzed' (*xeron*, literally 'withered, dried up'), omitting the phrase 'waiting for the moving of the water.' This phrase and all of verse 4 (about an angel stirring the water) are absent from the earliest and best manuscripts and are considered a later scribal addition explaining a local healing tradition. We follow the critical text. The three categories — blind, lame, paralyzed — represent the kinds of disabilities that Jesus will heal throughout the Gospel, echoing Isaiah 35:5-6.

3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 35:5-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
5. The duration of thirty-eight years exceeds any healing in the Synoptic Gospels and establishes the hopelessness of the man's condition. The possible allusion to Israel's thirty-eight years of wilderness wandering between Kadesh-Barnea and the crossing of the Wadi Zered (Deuteronomy 2:14) may suggest that this man represents Israel in its helpless, prolonged suffering. Verse 4 is omitted following the SBLGNT critical text.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 2:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Jesus takes the initiative — the man does not call out, does not know who Jesus is, and does not ask for healing. The verb *gnous* ('knowing') implies supernatural knowledge, as in 1:47-48, 2:24-25, 4:18. The question *theleis hygies genesthai* ('do you want to become well?') seems obvious but is probing — after thirty-eight years, the man's identity may be bound up with his illness. The question also establishes the man's will as a factor in the encounter.
7. The man's answer reveals his isolation (no one to help him) and his assumption that the pool itself is the source of healing. The reference to water being 'stirred up' (*tarachthe*) reflects the local tradition about the pool's intermittent spring, which archaeological evidence confirms — the pool was fed by a spring that flowed irregularly. The man answers Jesus's question about desire with a description of his helplessness — he wants healing but has no means to obtain it.
8. Three imperatives in rapid succession: *egire* ('get up, rise'), *aron* ('pick up, carry'), *peripatei* ('walk'). The command requires no intermediate steps — no washing in a pool, no waiting for stirred water. The word *krabatton* ('mat, pallet, cot') indicates a poor man's bedding, light enough to carry. The command to carry the mat will become the point of Sabbath controversy (v. 10), since carrying objects on the Sabbath was prohibited by rabbinic interpretation of Jeremiah 17:21-22.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 17:21-22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The healing is instantaneous (*eutheos*, 'immediately') and complete (*hygiees*, 'sound, whole, healthy') — thirty-eight years of disability reversed in a moment. The man obeys all three commands. The narrator's final note — 'that day was a Sabbath' — is placed last for dramatic effect, signaling the conflict about to erupt. The Sabbath detail transforms a healing miracle into a legal controversy.
10. The prohibition against carrying objects on the Sabbath derives from Jeremiah 17:21-22 as interpreted by rabbinic tradition, particularly the Mishnah's listing of thirty-nine prohibited categories of work (Shabbat 7:2). The authorities focus on the legal violation rather than the miraculous healing — a priority that Jesus will address. They confront the healed man, not Jesus, whom they have not yet identified.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 17:21-22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The healed man shifts responsibility — he obeyed the one who healed him. His logic is implicit: if someone has the power to heal a thirty-eight-year disability, his authority to command actions on the Sabbath must be legitimate. The emphasis on 'the man who made me well' (*ho poiesas me hygie*) places the healing authority above the Sabbath regulation.
12. The authorities ask about the identity of the one who commanded the Sabbath violation, not the one who performed the healing. Their question focuses on the command to carry, not the miracle of restoration. The omission of the healing from their question reveals their theological priorities.
13. Unlike the Samaritan woman or Nathanael, this man does not know Jesus's identity even after being healed. The verb *exeneusen* ('turned aside, withdrew, slipped away') indicates Jesus deliberately avoided the attention. The crowd provided cover. This detail highlights the contrast with chapter 4 — the Samaritan woman sought out her community to tell them; this man cannot even identify his healer.
14. Jesus seeks the man out — the verb *heuriskei* ('finds') suggests a deliberate search. The warning 'do not sin anymore' (*meketi hamartane*) implies a connection between the man's past sin and his disability, though Jesus elsewhere denies a universal cause-and-effect between sin and suffering (9:3). The 'something worse' (*cheiron ti*) may refer to eschatological judgment rather than physical suffering. The man is now in the temple — having been healed, he can enter the sacred precincts from which his disability may have excluded him.
15. The man's action is ambiguous — is he naively reporting to those who asked (v. 12), or is he informing on Jesus? The verb *anengeilen* ('reported, announced') is neutral, but the result is that Jesus is now identified as the Sabbath violator. Unlike the Samaritan woman's testimony (4:29), which brings people to Jesus in faith, this man's report brings the authorities to Jesus in opposition.
16. The imperfect *ediokon* ('were persecuting, began to persecute') indicates the beginning of an ongoing campaign. The SBLGNT does not include 'and sought to kill him,' which appears in some manuscripts. The imperfect *epoiei* ('was doing') suggests a pattern of Sabbath activity, not just this single incident. The Sabbath issue becomes the initial flashpoint for the opposition that will eventually lead to the cross.
17. This is one of the most theologically explosive statements in the Gospel. The argument has a Jewish background: rabbis debated whether God himself observes the Sabbath. The prevailing view was that God continues to sustain creation (giving life, judging the dead) even on the Sabbath — if God stopped all work, the universe would collapse. Jesus claims to participate in this ongoing divine work. The phrase 'my Father' (*ho pater mou*) rather than 'our Father' claims a unique filial relationship. The conjunction *kago* ('and I also') places Jesus's work alongside and equivalent to the Father's.

18. The narrator confirms two charges: Sabbath violation and blasphemy. The phrase *patera idion* ('his own Father') with the adjective *idion* ('own, personal, particular') distinguishes Jesus's claim from the general Jewish understanding of God as Father of the nation. The authorities correctly perceive the implication: *ison heauton poion to theo* ('making himself equal with God'). Rather than deny this charge, Jesus's following discourse will elaborate and intensify it.
19. Jesus responds to the charge of 'making himself equal with God' not by denying equality but by clarifying its nature: the Son's equality is not independent autonomy but perfect dependent imitation. 'Cannot do nothing on his own' (*ou dynatai poiein aph heautou ouden*) expresses not inability but the Son's chosen submission to the Father's will. The analogy reflects the ancient apprenticeship model — a son learns his father's trade by watching and replicating. The Son's works are the Father's works made visible.
20. The verb *philei* ('loves') is used here rather than *agapa* — in this context, *phileo* conveys intimate, personal affection between Father and Son. The 'greater works' (*meizona ergon*) that will astonish them are specified in what follows: giving life (v. 21) and executing judgment (v. 22). The Father's showing (*deiknusin*, present tense) is ongoing and complete — nothing is hidden from the Son.
21. Giving life to the dead (*zoopoiei*, 'makes alive') was universally acknowledged as God's exclusive prerogative in Jewish theology. Jesus claims this power for himself without qualification — 'to whom he wishes' (*hous thelei*) asserts sovereign freedom, not arbitrary caprice. This is one of the most direct claims to divine authority in the Gospel.
22. The second divine prerogative — judgment — is now entrusted entirely to the Son. The perfect tense *dedoken* ('has given') indicates a completed, permanent transfer of authority. The claim is breathtaking: the God of Israel does not judge directly but has delegated all judgment to the Son. This redefines the Jewish understanding of the final judgment — the Son stands at the center of eschatology.
23. The purpose of delegated judgment is that the Son receives the same honor (time) as the Father. The word *kathos* ('just as, to the same degree as') demands equivalent honor — not similar, not lesser, but identical. The negative corollary is equally strong: dishonoring the Son is dishonoring the Father. This makes christology inseparable from theology — one's relationship to God is determined by one's response to the Son.
24. This verse presents realized eschatology — the future judgment and resurrection are experienced in the present through faith. The present tense *echei* ('has') and the perfect tense *metabebeken* ('has crossed over, has passed') indicate that eternal life is a current possession and the transition from death to life has already occurred for the believer. The believer does not await a future verdict but has already been acquitted.
25. As in 4:23, the phrase 'is coming and is now here' (*erchetai hora kai nyn estin*) collapses future and present. 'The dead' (*hoi nekroi*) operates on two levels: the spiritually dead who hear Jesus now and come to life (present reality), and the physically dead who will be raised at the last day (future hope, developed in vv. 28-29). The title 'Son of God' (*tou huiou tou theou*) is the most exalted title used so far in this discourse.
26. This may be the most profound christological statement in the Gospel. 'Life in himself' (*zoen en heauto*) means self-existent, uncaused, underived life — the very definition of God. The Father possesses this life by nature; the Son possesses it by the Father's gift (*edoken*, 'has given, granted'). The paradox is deliberate: the Son's self-existent life is a gift — he is eternally begotten, not self-generated, yet possesses the same quality of life as the Father.
27. The Greek *huios anthropou* ('Son of Man') appears without the definite article, which is unusual and may echo Daniel 7:13 in the Septuagint. The authority to judge is connected to his identity as Son of Man — the figure in Daniel who receives dominion from the Ancient of Days. The combined claims of this discourse are staggering: the Son gives life (v. 21), receives all judgment (v. 22), possesses self-existent life (v. 26), and exercises judicial authority (v. 27).
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. Here the eschatology shifts from realized (v. 25, 'and is now here') to purely future ('the hour is coming' — without the 'and is now here' qualifier). The reference to 'all who are in the tombs' (*pantes hoi en tois mnemeios*) is unambiguously about physical resurrection, not spiritual awakening. The scope is universal — 'all' in the tombs, not merely believers.
29. This is the clearest statement of a dual resurrection in John's Gospel, echoing Daniel 12:2 ('some to everlasting life, some to shame and everlasting contempt'). The distinction between 'resurrection of life' (*anastasin zoes*) and 'resurrection of judgment' (*anastasin kriseos*) describes two outcomes, not two events. The basis appears to be conduct ('done good' vs. 'practiced evil'), though this must be read alongside verse 24, where faith is the criterion for escaping judgment.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 12:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. Jesus returns to the theme of verse 19 — his dependent relationship with the Father. His judgment is just (*dikaia*) precisely because it is not autonomous but aligned with the Father's will. The phrase 'as I hear' (*kathos akouo*) parallels 'what he sees the Father doing' (v. 19) — the Son both sees and hears from the Father, indicating complete communication. This self-limitation is paradoxically the basis of his authority.
31. Jesus now shifts to a legal argument about witnesses, following the principle of Deuteronomy 19:15 that a single witness is insufficient. The concession is formal, not substantive — Jesus is not saying his self-testimony is false but that it would not be accepted as legally sufficient standing alone. The courtroom language (*martyro*, *martyria*) introduces the four-witness section that follows.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 19:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

32. The 'another' (allos) most likely refers to the Father (cf. v. 37), not to John the Baptist (who is mentioned separately in v. 33). Jesus asserts that the Father's testimony is true (alethes) — reliable and authoritative. This sets up the hierarchy of witnesses that follows: John the Baptist (human witness), Jesus's works (visible evidence), the Father (divine testimony), and the Scriptures (written witness).
33. Jesus references the delegation described in 1:19-27. The perfect tense memartyreiken ('has testified') indicates that John's testimony remains on the record — it is settled and permanent. The dative te aletheia ('to the truth') indicates that John's testimony aligned with and pointed toward the truth, which in John's Gospel is ultimately Jesus himself (14:6).
34. Jesus clarifies that he does not depend on human witnesses for his authority — he cites John the Baptist for the audience's benefit, not his own. The purpose clause 'so that you may be saved' (hina hymeis sothete) reveals a pastoral motive behind the legal argument. Even in the midst of controversy, Jesus's goal is the salvation of his opponents.
35. John the Baptist is called a lychnos ('lamp') — a portable, temporary, derivative light — not the phos ('light') that the Prologue attributes to Christ (1:4-5, 8-9). The distinction is deliberate: John was a lamp that burned with borrowed fire, not the source of light itself. The phrase 'for a while' (pros horan, 'for an hour') suggests the authorities' initial enthusiasm for John's ministry was temporary and superficial.
36. The second witness is Jesus's own works (ta erga) — the signs and the entire mission the Father has assigned. The verb teleioso ('to complete, accomplish, bring to perfection') echoes 4:34 and anticipates 19:30 (tetelestai, 'it is finished'). The works are not merely evidence of power but evidence of origin — they testify 'that the Father has sent me' (hoti ho pater me apostalken).
37. The third witness is the Father himself. The statement 'you have never heard his voice nor seen his form' is striking — did not Israel hear God's voice at Sinai? Jesus may be saying that his opponents have never truly heard or perceived God despite their religious activity. The word eidos ('form, appearance, shape') and phone ('voice') correspond to the two primary modes of divine revelation in the Old Testament — theophany and oracle. The audience has been blind and deaf to both.
38. The Johannine verb meno ('remaining, abiding') appears here negatively — God's word does not abide in them. The proof of this absence is their rejection of Jesus, whom God sent. The logic is circular by design: if they had God's word in them, they would recognize the one God sent; their failure to recognize him proves they do not have God's word.
39. The verb eraunate could be imperative ('Search!') or indicative ('You search'). We read it as indicative — Jesus is describing their practice, not commanding it. The fourth witness is Scripture itself. The irony is devastating: they study Scripture diligently believing it contains eternal life, and it does — but it points to Jesus, whom they refuse. The Scriptures are not an end in themselves but a witness that leads to the living Word.
40. The verb thelete ('you are willing, you want') frames the refusal as volitional — they do not come because they choose not to. The invitation remains open ('come to me') and the offer is unchanged ('to have life'), but the will is resistant. Jesus diagnoses the problem not as intellectual failure but as a failure of the will.
41. The word doxa ('glory, honor, praise') connects to the Prologue's theme (1:14). Jesus disclaims any need for human recognition — his glory comes from the Father alone. This sets up the contrast with his opponents in the next verse.
42. The perfect tense egnoka ('I have come to know, I know') asserts settled, deep knowledge. The 'love of God' (ten agapen tou theou) could mean their love for God or God's love in them — both senses may be intended. Their rejection of Jesus reveals an absence of love for God, despite their religious devotion. This is the root diagnosis beneath all the surface symptoms.
43. The contrast is between coming 'in my Father's name' (authorized by God) and coming 'in his own name' (self-authorized). The prediction that they will receive a self-appointed figure may refer to false messiahs generally or to specific historical figures. The irony is that the one with divine authorization is rejected while self-promoters are welcomed.
44. Jesus identifies the root obstacle to faith: a disordered desire for human approval. Those who live for peer recognition cannot receive the one who comes in God's name. The phrase tou monou theou ('the only God') echoes Deuteronomy 6:4 (the Shema) and is both a theological affirmation and an implicit charge — they claim to serve the only God but their honor system serves human opinion.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The courtroom language continues — kategoreso ('I will accuse') is a legal term for formal prosecution. Jesus will not need to accuse them because their own champion, Moses, will do so. The perfect tense elpikate ('have hoped, have placed your hope') indicates their settled trust in Moses and the Torah. The irony is that the very authority they claim will condemn them.
46. Jesus claims that Moses's writings point to him — not tangentially but centrally. The conditional construction (ei episteuete... episteuete an) is contrary to fact in the present: 'if you were believing Moses (but you are not), you would be believing me (but you are not)'. The specific Mosaic texts Jesus has in mind likely include Deuteronomy 18:15-18 (the prophet like Moses) and perhaps Genesis 3:15, 12:3, and 49:10.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:15-18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
46. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 3:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

47. The discourse ends with a devastating rhetorical question. The distinction between grammatsin ('writings, letters') and remasin ('words, spoken utterances') contrasts Moses's written Torah with Jesus's oral teaching. If they cannot believe the written, established, revered text of Moses, how will they believe the spoken words of the one Moses wrote about? The question has no answer — it is an indictment that hangs in the air.

6

Summary: *John 6 is the longest chapter in the Gospel, centered on the fourth sign — the feeding of five thousand — and the extended Bread of Life discourse that follows. After feeding the crowd with five barley loaves and two fish, Jesus walks on the Sea of Galilee to his disciples. The next day, the crowd pursues him to Capernaum, and Jesus delivers the Bread of Life discourse, declaring 'I am the bread of life' — the first of the great 'I am' statements with predicate. The discourse escalates from spiritual bread to eating his flesh and drinking his blood, provoking widespread desertion. The chapter ends with Peter's confession and Jesus's identification of one of the Twelve as 'a devil.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The feeding of the five thousand is the only miracle (aside from the resurrection) recorded in all four Gospels, making it central to early Christian memory. John alone records the walking on water as occurring in direct sequence, creating a Moses typology: as Moses provided manna and crossed the sea, so Jesus provides bread and masters the water. The Bread of Life discourse is structured as a synagogue homily on Exodus 16 (the manna), following a pattern of quotation, explanation, and application. The ego eimi ('I am') statement 'I am the bread of life' (6:35, 48) inaugurates the series of seven 'I am' declarations that define the Gospel.*

Translation Friction: *The eucharistic language of verses 53-58 ('eat my flesh,' 'drink my blood') has been interpreted sacramentally (referring to the Lord's Supper), metaphorically (referring to faith in Jesus's death), and both simultaneously. We render the Greek without imposing either reading. The verb trogo ('to chew, to munch') in verses 54-58 is more visceral than the earlier phago ('to eat'), intensifying the scandal. The mass desertion of disciples (v. 66) and Jesus's identification of Judas as 'a devil' (v. 70) create one of the Gospel's darkest moments.*

Connections: *The entire chapter is structured around Exodus 16 (manna) and Psalm 78:24 ('He gave them bread from heaven to eat'). The walking on water echoes Exodus 14 (the Red Sea crossing) and Psalm 77:19 ('Your way was through the sea'). The Bread of Life discourse connects to the Last Supper tradition (1 Corinthians 11:23-26) and to Wisdom's invitation to eat (Proverbs 9:5, Sirach 24:21). Peter's confession parallels the Synoptic confession at Caesarea Philippi (Mark 8:27-30).*

¹After this, Jesus went across the Sea of Galilee, that is, the Sea of Tiberias. ²A large crowd kept following him because they were seeing the signs he was performing on the sick. ³Jesus went up on the mountain and sat down there with his disciples. ⁴Now the Passover, the festival of the Jewish people, was near. ⁵When Jesus looked up and saw a large crowd coming toward him, he said to Philip, "Where are we to buy bread for these people to eat?" ⁶He said this to test him, for he himself knew what he was going to do. ⁷Philip answered him, "Two hundred denarii worth of bread would not be enough for each of them to get even a little." ⁸Says to him,, one of his followers, Andrew, Simon Peter's brother. ⁹"There is a boy here who has five barley loaves and two fish, but what are these among so many people?" ¹⁰Jesus said, "Have the people sit down." Now there was plenty of grass in that place. So the men sat down, numbering about five thousand. ¹¹Then Jesus took the loaves, and after giving thanks, he distributed them to those who were seated. He did the same with the fish, as much as they wanted. ¹²When they were satisfied, he said to his disciples, "Gather up the leftover pieces, so that nothing is wasted." ¹³So they gathered them up and filled twelve baskets with pieces from the five barley loaves left over by those who had eaten. ¹⁴When the people saw the sign that he had performed, they said, "This is truly the Prophet who is coming into the world!" ¹⁵So Jesus, knowing that they were about to come and seize him to make him king by force, withdrew again to the mountain by himself alone. ¹⁶When evening came, his disciples went down to the sea, ¹⁷Went into into a ship, and traveled over the lake toward Capernaum. And it was now dark, and Jesus was not arrive to them. ¹⁸The sea was becoming rough because a strong wind was blowing. ¹⁹When they had rowed about three or four miles, they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the

boat, and they were frightened. ²⁰But he said to them, "I am — do not be afraid." ²¹They were willing to take him into the boat, and immediately the boat reached the land where they were heading. ²²The next day the crowd that had remained on the other side of the sea noticed that there had been only one boat there, and that Jesus had not gotten into the boat with his disciples, but that his disciples had gone away alone. ²³However, boats from Tiberias came near the place where they had eaten the bread after the Lord had given thanks. ²⁴So when the crowd saw that neither Jesus nor his disciples were there, they themselves got into the boats and went to Capernaum looking for Jesus. ²⁵When they found him on the other side of the sea, they said to him, "Rabbi, when did you get here?" ²⁶Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, you are looking for me not because you saw signs, but because you ate the loaves and were filled. ²⁷Do not work for food that perishes, but for the food that endures to eternal life, which the Son of Man will give you. For on him God the Father has set his seal." ²⁸Then they said to him, "What must we do to perform the works of God?" ²⁹Jesus answered them, "This is the work of God: that you believe in the one he has sent." ³⁰So they said to him, "Then what sign do you perform, so that we may see it and believe you? What work do you do? ³¹Our fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, just as it is written: 'He gave them bread from heaven to eat.'" ³²Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, it was not Moses who gave you the bread from heaven, but it is my Father who gives you the true bread from heaven. ³³For the bread of God is the one who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world." ³⁴They said to him, "Sir, give us this bread always." ³⁵Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life. Whoever comes to me will never be hungry, and whoever believes in me will never be thirsty. ³⁶But I told you that you have seen me and yet do not believe. ³⁷Everyone the Father gives me will come to me, and the one who comes to me I will never drive away, ³⁸For I arrived down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that dispatched me. ³⁹And this is the will of the one who sent me: that I should not lose any of all that he has given me, but raise them up on the last day. ⁴⁰For this is the will of my Father: that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him should have eternal life, and I will raise them up on the last day." ⁴¹Then the Jewish leaders began to grumble about him because he said, "I am the bread that came down from heaven." ⁴²They were saying, "Is this not Jesus the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How can he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?" ⁴³Jesus answered them, "Stop grumbling among yourselves. ⁴⁴No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws them, and I will raise them up on the last day. ⁴⁵It is written in the Prophets: 'And they will all be taught by God.' Everyone who has heard the Father and learned from him comes to me. ⁴⁶Not that anyone has seen the Father except the one who is from God — he has seen the Father. ⁴⁷Truly, truly, I tell you, the one who believes has eternal life. ⁴⁸I myself am the living bread. ⁴⁹Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died. ⁵⁰This is the bread that comes down from heaven, so that a person may eat of it and not die. ⁵¹I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats of this bread, they will live forever. And the bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh." ⁵²The Jewish leaders then disputed among themselves, saying, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?" ⁵³So Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I tell you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. ⁵⁴The one who eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise them up on the last day. ⁵⁵For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink. ⁵⁶The one who eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in them. ⁵⁷Just as the living Father sent me and I live because of the Father, so the one who feeds on me will also live because of me. ⁵⁸This is the bread that came down from heaven — not like the bread the fathers ate, and died. The one who feeds on this bread will live forever." ⁵⁹He said these things while teaching in the synagogue in Capernaum. ⁶⁰When many of his disciples heard this, they said, "This is a hard teaching. Who can accept it?" ⁶¹But Jesus, knowing within himself that his disciples were grumbling about this, said to them, "Does this offend you? ⁶²Then what if you were to see the Son of Man ascending to where he was before? ⁶³It is the Spirit who gives life; the flesh is of no help at all. The words that I have spoken to you are spirit and life. ⁶⁴But there are some among you who do not believe." For Jesus knew from the beginning who the ones were that did not believe, and who would betray him. ⁶⁵And he said, "This is why I told you that no one can come to me unless it is granted to them by the Father." ⁶⁶After this many of his disciples turned back and no longer walked with him. ⁶⁷So Jesus said to the Twelve, "You do not want to leave too, do you?" ⁶⁸Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom would we go? You have the words of eternal life. ⁶⁹And we have come to believe and know that you are the Holy One of God." ⁷⁰Jesus answered them, "Did I not choose you, the Twelve? Yet one of you is a devil." ⁷¹He was speaking of Judas son of Simon

Iscariot, for he, one of the Twelve, was going to betray him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double designation — 'Sea of Galilee' (the traditional Jewish name) and 'Sea of Tiberias' (the Roman name, from the city Herod Antipas built and named for Emperor Tiberius) — accommodates both Jewish and Gentile readers. A considerable time gap separates chapters 5 and 6; Jesus has moved from Jerusalem back to Galilee.
2. The imperfect tenses *ekolouthēi* ('kept following') and *etheoroun* ('were seeing') indicate ongoing action — the crowd's pursuit is persistent. Their motivation is the signs (*semeia*), confirming the pattern of sign-based faith that Jesus has questioned (2:23-25, 4:48). John mentions healing signs not described in his narrative, indicating selectivity in his account.
3. The definite article to *oros* ('the mountain') may indicate a specific well-known hill on the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee, or may evoke Mount Sinai, where Moses received the Torah and the manna provision was first given. Jesus's posture of sitting (*ekatheto*) is the position of a teacher in Jewish tradition.
4. This is the second Passover in John's Gospel (cf. 2:13), providing the theological backdrop for the entire chapter. The feeding miracle and the Bread of Life discourse gain their deepest meaning against the Passover context — Jesus is the new Passover bread, the true manna from heaven. The note 'festival of the Jewish people' continues John's practice of explaining Jewish customs for a mixed audience.
5. Jesus initiates the encounter with a question — as with the woman at the well (4:7), he begins from a point of human need. The question is addressed specifically to Philip, possibly because Philip was from Bethsaida (1:44), near the likely location. The word *pothen* ('where, from what source') echoes the theological question of origins that runs through the Gospel (cf. 2:9, 4:11, 7:27-28).
6. The narrator's aside reveals that Jesus's question is not born of uncertainty but serves as a test (*peirazōn*, 'testing, proving') of Philip's faith. The verb *edei* ('he knew') attributes supernatural foreknowledge to Jesus, consistent with 1:48, 2:24-25. The test exposes whether Philip will think in human or divine categories.
7. Philip answers in economic terms — two hundred denarii represents roughly eight months' wages for a laborer. His calculation is practical but faithless; he evaluates the problem from a purely human resource perspective. The response fails the test: Philip sees only the impossibility rather than the one who is asking the question.
8. Andrew is again identified through his relationship to Simon Peter (cf. 1:40). Andrew's contribution, while modest, at least brings available resources to Jesus's attention — a pattern consistent with his role as the disciple who brings people to Jesus (1:41-42, 12:22).
9. The word *paidarion* ('boy, young lad') is a diminutive, emphasizing the smallness of the source. Barley loaves (*artos krithinous*) were the bread of the poor — wheat was more expensive. The detail echoes the Elisha miracle in 2 Kings 4:42-44, where twenty barley loaves fed a hundred men. Andrew's question 'what are these among so many?' expresses the same logic as Philip's calculation — human resources are comically inadequate.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Kings 4:42-44. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The detail 'plenty of grass' (*chortos polys*) is an eyewitness memory consistent with springtime near Passover. The number five thousand (*pentakischilioi*) counts only the men (*andres*), as Matthew 14:21 explicitly notes ('besides women and children'). The verb *anapesein* ('to recline, to sit down') is the posture for a formal meal, suggesting Jesus is hosting a banquet — the messianic banquet prefigured.
11. The verb *eucharistesas* ('having given thanks') is the root of 'Eucharist' and creates a clear connection to the Last Supper tradition and early Christian meal practice. In John's account, Jesus distributes directly to the crowd (unlike the Synoptics, where the disciples serve as intermediaries). The phrase *hoson ethelon* ('as much as they wanted') emphasizes abundance — there is no rationing.
12. The verb *eneplesthesan* ('were satisfied, were filled') indicates complete satiation, not mere taste. The command to gather leftovers (*ta perisseusanta klasmata*, 'the surplus fragments') serves both a practical and symbolic function. The verb *apoletai* ('be lost, be wasted, perish') is the same word used in 3:16 for perishing — John may intend a deeper resonance about God's intention that nothing and no one be lost.
13. The twelve baskets (*dodeka kophinous*) likely correspond to the twelve tribes of Israel — the provision is abundant enough for all God's people with surplus to spare. The *kophinos* was a large wicker basket distinctively Jewish in use. Five loaves produce twelve baskets of surplus — the mathematics of divine provision inverts human calculation.
14. The crowd identifies Jesus as 'the Prophet' (*ho prophetes*) — the Moses-like figure promised in Deuteronomy 18:15-18. The connection is logical: Moses gave manna, Jesus gives bread. But as the discourse will show, their understanding is superficial — they want a political deliverer who provides free food, not the bread of life that gives eternal sustenance.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 18:15-18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *harpazein* ('to seize, to snatch, to take by force') reveals the crowd's intention to impose a political kingship on Jesus. This confirms that their identification of Jesus as 'the Prophet' (v. 14) was politically motivated. Jesus withdraws to prevent the misappropriation of his mission — he will be king, but not on their terms. The phrase 'by himself alone' (*autos monos*) emphasizes his solitary retreat, possibly for prayer (cf. Mark 6:46).
16. The transition to the walking-on-water narrative begins. The disciples descend from the mountain to the lake shore without Jesus. The sequence — bread in the wilderness, crossing the sea — mirrors the Exodus pattern (manna in Exodus 16, Red Sea crossing in Exodus 14), though in reverse

chronological order.

16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The note that it was 'already dark' (skotia ede egegenei) carries Johannine symbolic weight — darkness represents the absence of Jesus, who is the light (1:4-5, 8:12). The phrase 'Jesus had not yet come to them' heightens the sense of vulnerability and separation.
18. The Sea of Galilee (actually a large freshwater lake, about 13 miles long and 8 miles wide) is susceptible to sudden, violent storms when cool air from the surrounding hills descends onto the warm lake surface. The imperfect diegeireto ('was being stirred up, was becoming rough') describes an escalating danger.
19. Twenty-five to thirty stadia equals approximately three to four miles — roughly halfway across the lake at its widest point. They are in the middle of the sea, in the dark, in a storm. The phrase peripatounta epi tes thalasses ('walking on the sea') is unambiguous — epi with the genitive means 'on, upon.' The word ephobethesan ('they were frightened') captures the terror of seeing a figure walking on water in a storm at night. The Old Testament presents walking on water as a divine prerogative (Job 9:8, Psalm 77:19).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Job 9:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 77:19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The phrase ego eimi ('I am') functions on two levels: as simple self-identification ('It is I') and as a divine self-declaration echoing the divine name (Exodus 3:14). In context — walking on water during a storm, a divine prerogative — the deeper resonance is unmistakable. The command 'do not be afraid' (me phobeisthe) echoes the Old Testament theophany pattern, where God's appearance is typically accompanied by reassurance (Genesis 15:1, Isaiah 41:10, 43:1).
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 15:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 41:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. John adds a detail absent from the Synoptic accounts: the boat immediately (eutheos) arrived at shore. This may be another miraculous element — instantaneous transportation — or may simply mean the remainder of the crossing passed quickly once Jesus was aboard. The verb ethelon ('were willing, wanted to') suggests their fear gave way to welcome.
22. This complicated verse establishes the crowd's perplexity — they know Jesus did not board the only available boat with his disciples. How then did he get to Capernaum? John leaves the question unanswered for the crowd, letting the mystery of the sea-walking remain implicit rather than narrated publicly.
23. This parenthetical explains how the crowd was able to follow Jesus across the lake — additional boats arrived from the city of Tiberias. The phrase 'after the Lord had given thanks' (eucharistesantos tou kyriou) recalls 6:11 and is the narrator's characteristic use of the title kyrios ('Lord') for Jesus.
24. The crowd pursues Jesus across the lake, motivated by the sign they witnessed. The verb zetountes ('seeking, looking for') will be picked up by Jesus in verse 26 — they seek him, but for the wrong reasons.
25. The crowd's question 'when did you get here?' implicitly asks 'how did you get here?' — since they know he did not take the only boat. Jesus does not answer their question but redirects the conversation to their true motivations.
26. Jesus exposes their motivation: they did not come because they understood the signs (semeia, pointing to Jesus's identity) but because they got a free meal. They saw 'signs' but did not truly 'see' them — the miraculous provision did not lead them to perceive who Jesus is. The verb echortasthete ('were filled, were satisfied') is the same word used for feeding animals in some contexts, suggesting consumption without comprehension.
27. Jesus redirects their effort (ergazesthe, 'work, labor') from temporal food to eternal food. The contrast between 'food that perishes' (ten brosin ten apollymenen) and 'food that endures' (ten brosin ten menousan) echoes the water conversation with the Samaritan woman (4:13-14). The Son of Man is both the giver and the gift. The 'seal' (esphragisen) is a mark of authentication and ownership — God has certified Jesus as the authorized source of eternal nourishment.
28. The crowd's question assumes that obtaining this food requires human effort — 'works of God' (ta erga tou theou) means 'the works God requires.' They think in terms of religious performance. Jesus's answer will subvert their entire framework.
29. Jesus reduces the plural 'works' to a single 'work' (to ergon) — faith. The many required works collapse into one: believing in Jesus. The present subjunctive pisteuete ('that you believe, keep believing') suggests ongoing faith, not a one-time decision. This answer redefines the entire religious economy: the 'work' God requires is not human effort but receptive trust in God's sent one.
30. The demand for a sign is remarkable — they have just witnessed the feeding of five thousand and crossed the lake to find Jesus because of it. Yet they ask for another sign. The logic seems to be: Moses gave manna for forty years; you gave bread once. If you claim to surpass Moses, prove it with an ongoing provision. Their faith is transactional: they will believe if given sufficient evidence, on their terms.

31. The crowd cites Psalm 78:24 (or possibly Exodus 16:4, 15; Nehemiah 9:15). The quotation becomes the text for Jesus's discourse — he will offer a rabbinic-style commentary on 'bread from heaven.' The crowd uses the manna tradition to challenge Jesus: Moses gave bread from heaven for decades; what can you offer that compares?
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 78:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Nehemiah 9:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. Jesus corrects two errors in their argument: (1) Moses was not the source — God was; (2) the manna was not the true bread from heaven — it was a pointer to the reality now being revealed. The shift from past tense *dedoken* ('gave') to present tense *didotin* ('gives') is significant: the true bread is being given now, in the present moment. The adjective *alethinon* ('true, genuine, real') distinguishes the ultimate reality from the type that foreshadowed it.
33. The participle *katabainon* ('the one coming down') shifts from neuter ('that which comes down') to masculine — the bread is a person, not a substance. The scope is again universal: 'life to the world' (*zoen to kosmo*), not merely to Israel. The manna fed Israel in the wilderness; this bread gives life to the entire world.
34. Like the Samaritan woman's 'give me this water' (4:15), the crowd requests the gift while still understanding it physically. The adverb *pantote* ('always, at all times') reveals their desire for a permanent food supply. They will soon learn that the bread Jesus offers is himself — a claim that will divide them.
35. This is the first of the seven great 'I am' statements with a predicate in John's Gospel: *ego eimi ho artos tes zoes* ('I am the bread of life'). Jesus does not merely provide bread — he is the bread. 'Coming' and 'believing' are parallel actions describing the same movement of faith. The double negative *ou me* ('never') is the strongest possible assurance of permanent satisfaction.
36. Seeing and not believing is the persistent failure of the crowd. They have seen both the sign (feeding) and the sign-giver (Jesus himself), yet refuse the faith that seeing should produce. This verse transitions into the theological section about the Father's drawing and the Son's preservation of those who come.
37. This verse holds two realities in tension: divine initiative (the Father 'gives' people to the Son) and human responsibility (the one who 'comes'). The neuter *pan* ('everything, all') in the first clause treats those given as a collective whole; the masculine *ton erchomenon* ('the one coming') in the second clause treats each person individually. The double negative *ou me ekbalō* ('I will never cast out') is an absolute guarantee of reception.
38. The perfect tense *katabebeka* ('I have come down') indicates a completed descent with ongoing presence. Jesus's will is entirely submitted to the Father's will — a claim of perfect obedience that echoes 4:34 and 5:30. This verse provides the theological basis for the assurance of verse 37: Jesus will never reject anyone the Father sends because rejecting them would be disobeying the Father.
39. The Father's will is stated with crystalline clarity: zero loss and final resurrection. The verb *apoleso* ('lose, destroy') is the same word as 'perish' in 3:16 — what God wills is that none of his given ones perish. The phrase *te eschate hemera* ('on the last day') introduces future eschatology alongside the realized eschatology of verse 24. The resurrection promise will be repeated four times in this discourse (vv. 39, 40, 44, 54).
40. Verse 39 stated the Father's will in terms of preservation (not losing any); verse 40 states it in terms of human response (seeing and believing). Both perspectives are true simultaneously — divine keeping and human believing are not alternatives but complementary. The verb *theoron* ('seeing, beholding') implies more than glancing — it means perceiving, contemplating, recognizing Jesus for who he is.
41. The verb *egongyzon* ('were grumbling, were murmuring') deliberately echoes Israel's murmuring against Moses in the wilderness (Exodus 16:2, 7-9; Numbers 11:1). The typological parallel is precise: as Israel grumbled against Moses when given bread from heaven, so these leaders grumble against Jesus when he claims to be the bread from heaven. History repeats its pattern of unbelief.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 11:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. The objection is based on familiarity — they know his human family and therefore reject his heavenly origin. The question 'whose father and mother we know' assumes that known parentage excludes divine origin. The irony is thick: they think they know his father (Joseph), but they do not know his true Father (God). This is the same stumbling block Nathanael initially faced ('Can anything good come from Nazareth?' 1:46).
43. The command *me goggызete* ('stop grumbling') directly echoes Moses's rebuke of Israel in Exodus 16:8-9. Jesus assumes Moses's role in the wilderness narrative, further establishing the typological parallel.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 16:8-9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

44. The verb *helkyse* ('draws, attracts, drags') is a strong word — it is used for drawing a net (21:6), drawing a sword (18:10), and drawing Paul through the streets (Acts 16:19). This is not gentle persuasion but decisive, powerful attraction. The claim is that coming to Jesus requires divine initiative — apart from the Father's drawing, no one can come. The third repetition of 'I will raise them up on the last day' reinforces the resurrection promise.
45. The quotation is from Isaiah 54:13, part of the new covenant vision. Being 'taught by God' (*didaktōi theou*) means direct divine instruction — those who are open to God's teaching recognize Jesus. The logic is: if you have truly heard and learned from the Father, you will come to the Son, because the Father's teaching leads to the Son.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 54:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
46. Jesus qualifies verse 45: being 'taught by God' does not mean anyone has seen God directly. Only the one who is 'from God' (*para tou theou*) — Jesus himself — has seen the Father (cf. 1:18). All human knowledge of God is mediated through the Son.
47. The statement is stark in its simplicity: belief equals eternal life, present tense. The SBLGNT does not include 'in me' (*eis eme*) though some manuscripts add it; the object of belief is clear from context. This is a restatement of 3:16 and 5:24 in its most compressed form.
48. The 'I am' statement from verse 35 is repeated, now functioning as the transition to the more scandalous claims that follow. The repetition creates emphasis and marks the beginning of the discourse's intensification.
49. The manna's limitation is stated bluntly: those who ate it died. Physical bread, even miraculously given, cannot prevent death. This establishes the need for a different kind of bread — one that conquers death itself.
50. The bread from heaven surpasses the manna in its essential quality: it prevents death. The phrase *me apothanē* ('not die') refers to spiritual/eternal death, not physical death — Jesus's followers still die physically, but death no longer has the final word.
51. The discourse reaches its most provocative claim: the bread is his flesh (*he sarx mou*). The word *sarx* ('flesh') echoes 1:14 ('the Word became flesh') and now receives a sacrificial dimension — this flesh is given 'for the life of the world' (*hyper tes tou kosmou zoes*). The preposition *hyper* ('for, on behalf of') indicates substitutionary sacrifice. The shift from metaphor to shocking literalism sets up the controversy of the next verses.
52. The verb *emachonto* ('were fighting, were disputing') indicates heated argument, not merely questioning. Their question 'How can this man give us his flesh to eat?' takes Jesus's words at face value and finds them absurd and offensive. Eating human flesh would violate every dietary and moral law they knew. Jesus does not soften the claim in response — he intensifies it.
53. Rather than moderating the offensive claim, Jesus escalates it by adding 'drink his blood' — an absolute prohibition in Jewish law (Genesis 9:4, Leviticus 17:10-14). The double requirement (eating flesh and drinking blood) and the negative conditional (unless... you have no life) make this the most scandalous statement in Jesus's public ministry. Whether understood sacramentally (Eucharist), metaphorically (total appropriation of Jesus's sacrificial death by faith), or both, the language is deliberately confrontational.
53. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 9:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
53. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 17:10-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
54. The verb shifts from *phago* ('to eat,' used earlier) to *trogo* ('to chew, to munch, to gnaw') — a more visceral, physical word that intensifies the scandal. This is the fourth occurrence of 'I will raise them up on the last day' (cf. vv. 39, 40, 44), making the resurrection promise the drumbeat of the entire discourse.
55. The adjective *alethes* ('true, genuine') in the SBLGNT (some manuscripts read *alethōs*, 'truly') means that Jesus's flesh and blood are the authentic reality of which all other food and drink are shadows. This is not metaphor diminishing into symbol but reality claiming its full weight.
56. The mutual indwelling language — 'remains in me and I in them' (*en emoi menei kago en auto*) — introduces the abiding theme that will be fully developed in the Farewell Discourse (chapters 14-17, especially 15:1-11). Eating and drinking create a relationship of mutual inhabitation between the believer and Christ.
57. The chain of life is explicit: the Father (source of life) gives life to the Son, and the Son gives life to the believer. The phrase 'the living Father' (*ho zon pater*) is unique in the New Testament and identifies the Father as the ultimate source of all life. The preposition *dia* ('because of, through') indicates that Jesus's life is derived from the Father, and the believer's life is derived from Jesus.
58. The discourse concludes by returning to its starting point — the contrast with the manna — creating an *inclusio*. The manna sustained life temporarily; this bread gives life forever. The verb *trogo* ('feeds on') maintains the visceral language to the end. The final promise — *zesei eis ton aiona* ('will live forever') — is the discourse's ultimate claim.
59. The narrator identifies the setting: a synagogue in Capernaum. This context confirms that the Bread of Life discourse is a formal teaching, delivered in a liturgical setting where Scripture would have been read and expounded. The synagogue setting makes the desertion that follows even more dramatic — these are not casual listeners but members of the worshiping community.
60. The word *skleros* ('hard, harsh, offensive') does not mean difficult to understand but difficult to accept. They understand the claim well enough — and find it intolerable. The 'disciples' (*mathetai*) here are the broader group of followers, not just the Twelve. The question 'who can hear it?' (*tis dynatai autou akouein*) means 'who can bear to listen to this?'

61. The verb *skandalizei* ('offend, cause to stumble, shock') is strong — the teaching is a stumbling block, an obstacle to continued following. Jesus knows their reaction before they express it (cf. 2:25) and addresses it directly without softening the teaching.
62. The sentence is deliberately incomplete — Jesus leaves the conclusion unstated. Will the ascension confirm or resolve their offense? The phrase 'where he was before' (*hopou en to proteron*) asserts pre-existence: the Son of Man was in heaven before his descent. The ascension will prove that his heavenly origin claims are true.
63. This verse is the interpretive key to the entire discourse. 'The flesh is of no help' (*he sarx ouk ophelei ouden*) does not retract the flesh-eating language but clarifies the mode of reception: the discourse cannot be understood at the level of flesh (human reasoning, physical consumption) but only through the Spirit. Jesus's words are 'spirit and life' — they carry the Spirit's life-giving power and must be received in the Spirit.
64. The narrator's aside reveals that Jesus's knowledge extends to the identity of the unbelievers within his own circle and to the identity of his future betrayer. The phrase *ex arches* ('from the beginning') indicates this was not a gradual discovery but foreknowledge. The first mention of betrayal (*paradoson*, 'the one who would hand over') in John's Gospel — an ominous foreshadowing.
65. Jesus restates the divine initiative of verse 44 — coming to him is not a human achievement but a divine gift. The perfect passive participle *dedomenon* ('having been given, granted') emphasizes that the ability to come is God's prior work. The 'therefore' (*dia touto*) connects unbelief to the absence of this divine enablement.
66. The phrase *apelthon eis ta opiso* ('went back, turned away') is the language of apostasy — they reverse course and abandon discipleship. The imperfect *periepatoun* ('were walking') with the negative *ouketi* ('no longer') indicates a permanent departure, not a temporary wavering. This is the greatest crisis of faith in Jesus's ministry as John narrates it.
67. This is the only place in John's Gospel where 'the Twelve' (*tois dodeka*) are mentioned as a distinct group. The question *me kai hymeis thelete* ('you don't want to go too, do you?') uses the particle *me*, which expects a negative answer, but the possibility is real. Jesus does not compel anyone to stay — he offers the freedom to leave.
68. Peter's response is not a triumphant confession but an honest acknowledgment of having no alternative. The question 'to whom would we go?' admits the difficulty of the teaching while recognizing that there is no other source of 'words of eternal life' (*remata zoes aioniou*). Peter does not say 'we understand' but 'we have nowhere else to go.' This is faith in the face of incomprehension.
69. The SBLGNT reads 'the Holy One of God' (*ho hagios tou theou*) rather than 'the Christ, the Son of the living God' found in some manuscripts (influenced by Matthew 16:16). The title 'Holy One of God' appears in Mark 1:24 on the lips of a demon. The perfect tenses *pepistukamen* ('we have believed') and *egnokamen* ('we have known') indicate settled, ongoing conviction. The order is significant: belief leads to knowledge, not the reverse.
70. The word *diabolos* ('devil, accuser, slanderer') is shocking when applied to a disciple. Jesus affirms that he chose all twelve deliberately (*exelexamen, I selected*), including the one who will betray him. The divine foreknowledge of verse 64 is now applied directly. The presence of a betrayer within the chosen circle is a mystery Jesus acknowledges but does not explain.
71. The narrator identifies the betrayer by full name: Judas, son of Simon Iscariot. The designation 'Iscariot' (*Iskariōtou*) may derive from the Hebrew *ish-Qeriyot* ('man of Kerioth'), indicating Judas's origin in a Judean town — making him possibly the only non-Galilean among the Twelve. The phrase 'one of the Twelve' (*heis on ek ton dodeka*) emphasizes the insider nature of the betrayal. The imperfect *emellen* ('was going to') indicates this was settled in advance.

7

Summary: *John 7 takes place during the Feast of Tabernacles (Sukkot) in Jerusalem. Jesus initially stays in Galilee while his brothers urge him to go public in Judea, then travels to Jerusalem secretly and teaches in the temple midway through the festival. The chapter is structured around escalating division: the crowds are split over whether Jesus is a good man or a deceiver, whether he could be the Christ, and whether the authorities want to arrest or believe him. On the last day of the feast, Jesus makes his climactic declaration: 'If anyone is thirsty, let them come to me and drink' — a claim the narrator connects to the Holy Spirit. The chapter ends with the Pharisees and chief priests failing to arrest him, and Nicodemus making a cautious defense.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Feast of Tabernacles provides the symbolic backdrop for Jesus's teaching. The festival celebrated the wilderness wandering with water-pouring ceremonies (commemorating the water from the rock) and light ceremonies (commemorating the pillar of fire). Jesus's 'living water' declaration (7:37-39) directly engages the water-pouring ritual, and his 'light of the world' declaration in 8:12 engages the light ceremony. The division among the people (*schisma*, 7:43) becomes a structural element — Jesus is the great divider, forcing a decision. The officers sent to arrest him return empty-handed, declaring 'No one ever spoke like this man' (7:46).*

Translation Friction: The punctuation of 7:37-38 is heavily debated. The traditional reading makes the believer the source of living water ('Out of their heart will flow rivers'). An alternative reading makes Jesus the source ('Out of his heart will flow rivers'). We follow the traditional punctuation while noting the alternative. The reference to 'Scripture' in 7:38 does not correspond to any single Old Testament passage — it may be a composite allusion to Isaiah 55:1, Ezekiel 47:1-12, and Zechariah 14:8. Jesus's brothers' unbelief (7:5) and the confused expectations of the crowd create a portrait of widespread misunderstanding.

Connections: The Feast of Tabernacles connects to Leviticus 23:33-43, Nehemiah 8:14-18, and Zechariah 14:16-19. The water-pouring ceremony connects to Isaiah 12:3 ('With joy you will draw water from the wells of salvation'). The crowd's debate about whether the Christ comes from Bethlehem (7:42) ironically confirms Jesus's qualification — they do not know he was born there. Nicodemus's reappearance (7:50-52) continues his arc from chapter 3.

¹After this, Jesus traveled around in Galilee. He did not want to travel in Judea because the Jewish leaders were seeking to kill him. ²Now the Jewish Feast of Tabernacles was near. ³So his brothers said to him, "Leave here and go to Judea, so that your disciples there can also see the works you are doing. ⁴For no one does anything in secret if they want to be known publicly. If you are doing these things, show yourself to the world." ⁵For not even his brothers believed in him. ⁶So Jesus said to them, "My time has not yet come, but your time is always ready. ⁷The world cannot hate you, but it hates me because I testify about it that its works are evil. ⁸You go up to the festival. I am not going up to this festival because my time has not yet been fulfilled." ⁹After saying this, he stayed behind in Galilee. ¹⁰But after his brothers had gone up to the festival, then he also went up — not publicly but in secret. ¹¹The Jewish leaders were looking for him at the festival, saying, "Where is that man?" ¹²There was much whispering about him among the crowds. Some were saying, "He is a good man," while others were saying, "No, he is leading the people astray." ¹³Yet no one spoke openly about him for fear of the Jewish leaders. ¹⁴When the festival was already half over, Jesus went up to the temple and began teaching. ¹⁵The Jewish leaders were astonished, saying, "How does this man know Scripture without having been formally educated?" ¹⁶Jesus answered them, "My teaching is not my own but comes from the one who sent me. ¹⁷If anyone chooses to do God's will, they will know whether this teaching is from God or whether I speak on my own authority. ¹⁸The one who speaks on their own authority seeks their own glory, but the one who seeks the glory of the one who sent him — this person is true, and there is no falsehood in them. ¹⁹Did not Moses give you the law? Yet none of you keeps the law. Why are you seeking to kill me?" ²⁰The crowd answered, "You have a demon! Who is seeking to kill you?" ²¹Jesus answered them, "I did one work, and all of you are astonished. ²²Moses gave you circumcision — not that it originated with Moses but with the patriarchs — and you circumcise a man on the Sabbath. ²³If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken, are you angry with me because I made an entire man well on the Sabbath? ²⁴Do not judge by appearances, but judge with right judgment." ²⁵Some of the people of Jerusalem were saying, "Is this not the man they are trying to kill? ²⁶And look — he is speaking publicly and they say nothing to him! Could it be that the rulers really know that this is the Christ? ²⁷But we know where this man is from. When the Christ comes, no one will know where he is from." ²⁸Then Jesus cried out in the temple as he was teaching, "You know me, and you know where I am from! But I have not come on my own. The one who sent me is true, and you do not know him. ²⁹I know him, because I am from him and he sent me." ³⁰So they tried to arrest him, but no one laid a hand on him because his hour had not yet come. ³¹But many in the crowd believed in him. They were saying, "When the Christ comes, will he perform more signs than this man has done?" ³²The Pharisees heard the crowd whispering these things about him, and the chief priests and the Pharisees sent temple officers to arrest him. ³³So Jesus said, "I will be with you only a little while longer, and then I am going to the one who sent me. ³⁴You will look for me and will not find me, and where I am you cannot come." ³⁵The Jewish leaders said among themselves, "Where does this man intend to go that we will not find him? He does not intend to go to the Dispersion among the Greeks and teach the Greeks, does he? ³⁶What does he mean by saying, 'You will look for me and will not find me, and where I am you cannot come'?" ³⁷On the last and greatest day of the festival, Jesus stood and cried out, "If anyone is thirsty, let them come to me and drink. ³⁸Whoever believes in me, as the Scripture has said, 'Out of their heart will flow rivers of living water.'" ³⁹Now he said this about the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were going to receive, for the Spirit had not yet been given because Jesus had not yet been glorified. ⁴⁰When some in the crowd heard

these words, they said, "This man is truly the Prophet." ⁴¹Others were saying, "This is the Christ." But some were saying, "Surely the Christ does not come from Galilee, does he? ⁴²Has not the Scripture said that the Christ comes from the offspring of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David lived?" ⁴³So there was a division among the crowd because of him. ⁴⁴Some of them wanted to arrest him, but no one laid hands on him. ⁴⁵The temple officers then returned to the chief priests and Pharisees, who asked them, "Why did you not bring him in?" ⁴⁶The officers answered, "No one has ever spoken like this man." ⁴⁷The Pharisees answered them, "Have you been deceived too? ⁴⁸Have any of the rulers or of the Pharisees put their trust in him? ⁴⁹But this crowd that does not know the law — they are cursed!" ⁵⁰Nicodemus — the one who had come to Jesus earlier, and who was one of them — said to them, ⁵¹"Does our law condemn a man without first hearing from him and finding out what he is doing?" ⁵²They answered him, "You are not from Galilee too, are you? Search and see — no prophet arises from Galilee!" ⁵³Then each of them went to his own home.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *periepatei* ('was walking around, was traveling') indicates a period of itinerant ministry in Galilee. The reason for avoiding Judea is explicit: the authorities were seeking to kill him (cf. 5:18). The narrative tension between Galilee (relative safety) and Jerusalem (mortal danger) structures the chapter.
2. The *skenopegia* ('Feast of Tabernacles, Feast of Booths') was one of the three pilgrimage festivals (with Passover and Pentecost) requiring attendance in Jerusalem. Celebrated in September/October (Tishri 15-22), it commemorated Israel's wilderness wandering and gave thanks for the autumn harvest. It was the most joyful of the festivals, involving temporary shelters (*sukkot*), torch-lit processions, and water-drawing ceremonies.
3. Jesus's brothers (*adelphoi*, cf. 2:12) urge him to go public on the largest possible stage. Their advice is worldly wisdom: if you want followers, perform in the capital during the biggest festival. The reference to 'your disciples' in Judea distinguishes the broader circle of followers from the Galilean group.
4. The brothers' logic is strategic: public figures need public platforms. The contrast between *en krypto* ('in secret') and *en parresia* ('openly, publicly, with boldness') frames the issue as marketing. The conditional 'if you are doing these things' (*ei tauta poieis*) may carry a note of doubt — they are not entirely sure about his works. The command 'show yourself to the world' (*phaneroson se auton to kosmo*) echoes the narrator's role-description of signs as 'revelations' (2:11).
5. The narrator's blunt assessment — 'not even his brothers believed' (*oude gar hoi adelphoi autou episteuon*) — is one of the most poignant notes in the Gospel. The imperfect tense *episteuon* indicates their unbelief at this point in time; Acts 1:14 shows them among the believers after the resurrection. The word 'even' (*oude*) emphasizes the scandal: those closest to him by blood do not believe.
6. The word *kairos* ('time, opportune moment') is distinct from *chronos* ('chronological time'). Jesus operates on a divine timetable; his brothers can go to Jerusalem whenever they choose because nothing of cosmic significance depends on their timing. The phrase *oupo parestin* ('has not yet arrived') connects to the 'hour' motif (2:4, 7:30, 8:20) — Jesus's movements are determined by the Father's schedule, not human advice.
7. The world (*kosmos*) has no reason to hate Jesus's brothers — they share its values and pose no threat to its order. Jesus provokes hatred because he exposes evil (cf. 3:19-20). The verb *martyro* ('I testify') places Jesus in the role of witness against the world — his very presence is an indictment of human darkness.
8. The SBLGNT reads *ouk* ('not') rather than *oupo* ('not yet'), which some manuscripts have. With *ouk*, Jesus says flatly 'I am not going' — then goes secretly (v. 10). This is not deception but a refusal to go on their terms and their timetable. The perfect tense *peplerotai* ('has been fulfilled') indicates that the *kairos* is not yet complete — God's timing has not yet arrived for a public appearance.
9. Jesus remains (*emeinen*) in Galilee — temporarily. His brothers go ahead publicly; he will follow privately. The verb *meno* ('to stay, to remain') carries its usual Johannine weight of deliberate, purposeful presence.
10. Jesus goes to Jerusalem, but on his own terms — *en krypto* ('in secret'), the opposite of the *en parresia* ('publicly') his brothers demanded (v. 4). He will make a public appearance, but at the time and in the manner the Father determines, not as a publicity stunt orchestrated by unbelieving family members.
11. The imperfect *ezetoun* ('were looking for') indicates an ongoing search. The demonstrative *ekeinos* ('that one, that man') can be either neutral or disdainful — they refer to Jesus without naming him. The authorities expect him at the festival and are prepared to act.
12. The word *goggysmos* ('murmuring, whispering') indicates guarded, secretive conversation — people are afraid to speak openly (v. 13). The division is between those who see Jesus as 'good' (*agathos*) and those who see him as a deceiver who 'leads astray' (*plana*, the root of 'planet' — one who wanders and causes others to wander). This division (*schisma*) will deepen throughout the chapter.
13. The word *parresia* ('openly, boldly, with freedom of speech') contrasts with the secretive whispering of verse 12. Fear of the authorities (*ton phobon ton Ioudaion*) suppresses public discourse about Jesus. This fear of the authorities recurs in 9:22, 12:42, 19:38, 20:19, revealing the coercive power of the religious establishment.

14. Jesus makes his public appearance on his own schedule — midway through the seven-day festival (approximately day three or four). He teaches in the temple (hieron, the temple complex), the most public forum in Jerusalem. The imperfect edidasken ('was teaching, began teaching') indicates sustained instruction, not a single statement.
15. The phrase grammata oiden ('knows letters/learning') refers not to basic literacy but to the formal study of Scripture under a recognized rabbi. Jesus had no rabbinic credentials — he had not studied under any recognized teacher. The verb memathekas ('having learned, having studied') is from the same root as mathetes ('disciple'). Their astonishment acknowledges his competence while questioning his credentials.
16. Jesus explains his lack of formal credentials by identifying the source of his teaching: the Father who sent him. His teaching is not self-generated (ouk estin eme) but received from God. This continues the pattern of the Son doing nothing on his own but only what the Father gives (5:19, 30).
17. Jesus offers an epistemological principle: obedience is the pathway to knowledge. Those who are willing to do God's will (to thelema autou poiein) will be able to discern whether Jesus's teaching comes from God. The willingness to obey precedes the ability to evaluate — moral alignment opens the way to theological understanding.
18. Jesus provides a test for authenticating a teacher: examine whose glory they seek. Self-promoters seek their own glory (ten doxan ten idian); an authentic teacher seeks the glory of the one who commissioned them. The word adikia ('unrighteousness, falsehood, injustice') here carries the sense of dishonesty or deception — the teacher who seeks God's glory is trustworthy.
19. Jesus turns the tables: they claim to follow Moses's law, yet they are plotting murder — which the law forbids (Exodus 20:13). The argument is devastating: the very law they accuse Jesus of violating (Sabbath regulations) condemns their own intent to kill. The phrase oudeis ex hymon poiei ton nomon ('none of you keeps the law') is either hyperbolic or a specific charge about the murder plot.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The crowd (ochlos), as opposed to the authorities (Ioudaioi), appears unaware of the murder plot. Their accusation 'you have a demon' (daimonion echeis) attributes Jesus's claims to insanity or demonic influence — a charge that will recur (8:48, 52, 10:20). The crowd's ignorance of the leadership's intentions reveals a disconnect between the people and their rulers.
21. The 'one work' (hen ergon) refers to the Sabbath healing at the pool of Bethesda (5:1-9), which triggered the persecution. Jesus returns to the unfinished argument from chapter 5. The verb thaumazete ('you are astonished/troubled') indicates the Sabbath healing still provokes them.
22. Jesus constructs a rabbinic argument from lesser to greater (qal vahomer). Circumcision predates Moses (Genesis 17) but was incorporated into Mosaic law (Leviticus 12:3). When the eighth day after birth falls on a Sabbath, circumcision proceeds — the obligation to circumcise overrides the Sabbath prohibition of work. This was settled Jewish law (cf. Mishnah Shabbat 18:3, 19:2).
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 12:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The argument from lesser to greater: if circumcision (which benefits one part of the body) can override the Sabbath, how much more should healing the whole person (holon anthropon hygie, 'an entire person well') override it? The word cholate ('are angry, are furious') is unusually strong — suggesting that Jesus perceives their opposition as irrational rage rather than principled disagreement.
24. Jesus concludes with a general principle: judgment (krisis) should be based on reality (dikaia, 'righteous, just, correct'), not surface appearances (kat opsin, 'according to the face/sight'). Applied to the Sabbath controversy: judging Jesus as a Sabbath-breaker is a superficial verdict that fails to see the deeper reality of what God is doing through him.
25. The 'people of Jerusalem' (Hierosolymitōn) are distinct from the festival crowds (who are pilgrims from elsewhere). The residents know about the authorities' intentions, confirming Jesus's claim in verse 19. Their question implies surprise that Jesus is teaching publicly unmolested.
26. The crowd speculates that the authorities' inaction might mean they have secretly concluded Jesus is the Christ. The adverb parresia ('publicly, boldly') is the very quality his brothers demanded (v. 4) — now Jesus displays it, but on the Father's timetable. The particle mepote ('could it be that?') introduces a tentative, almost hopeful possibility.
27. The crowd dismisses their own suggestion based on a popular belief about the Christ's hidden origin — some Jewish traditions held that the Messiah would appear suddenly and mysteriously (cf. 1 Enoch 48:6, 4 Ezra 13:51-52). Since they know where Jesus is from (Galilee/Nazareth), he cannot be the Christ. The irony is multilayered: they think they know his origin, but they do not know his true origin (from the Father, from heaven, as the Prologue declares).
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezra 13:51-52. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The verb ekraxen ('cried out, shouted') indicates a public proclamation — Jesus raises his voice to address the crowd's discussion about his origins. His response is both concessive and corrective: yes, you know my human identity, but you do not know the one who sent me. The claim 'I have not come on my own' (ap emautou ouk elelyta) asserts divine commissioning. The accusation 'you do not know him' (hon hymeis ouk oidate) is devastating to a people who pride themselves on knowing God.

- 29.** Jesus claims two things: personal knowledge of God (ego oida auton, 'I know him') and origin from God (par autou eimi, 'I am from him'). The preposition para ('from the side of, from the presence of') indicates intimate proximity — Jesus comes from God's very presence. The aorist apesteilen ('sent') marks a specific, decisive commissioning.
- 30.** The attempt to arrest (piasai, 'to seize, to arrest') fails — not because of human protection but because of divine timing. The narrator's explanation 'his hour had not yet come' (oupo elythei he hora autou) indicates that the 'hour' of Jesus's death is determined by the Father, not by his enemies. No human action can advance or prevent the divinely appointed hour.
- 31.** The question expects a negative answer: the Christ will not do more signs than Jesus has done. The logic is simple: if the Messiah will be identified by his works, and no one could surpass Jesus's works, then Jesus must be the Messiah. This is sign-based faith, which John presents as genuine but incomplete.
- 32.** The growing popular support alarms the authorities. The coalition of 'chief priests and Pharisees' (hoi archiereis kai hoi Pharisaioi) represents both the Sadducean temple establishment and the Pharisaic party — political rivals united against Jesus. The hyperetas ('officers, servants, attendants') are the temple police, authorized to make arrests within the temple precincts.
- 33.** Jesus speaks past the immediate crisis to his impending departure — the 'going to the one who sent me' refers to his return to the Father through death, resurrection, and ascension. The phrase chronon mikron ('a little while') introduces the temporal urgency that marks the second half of the Gospel. His presence is temporary; the opportunity to respond is limited.
- 34.** This enigmatic statement will be repeated in 8:21 and 13:33. The meaning is that after his departure, those who rejected him will seek him in vain. 'Where I am' (hopou eimi ego) refers to the Father's presence — a destination accessible only through faith in the Son. The inability to come (ou dynaste elthein) reflects spiritual incapacity, not physical distance.
- 35.** The 'Dispersion' (diaspora) refers to Jews living outside the land of Israel among Greek-speaking populations. Their speculation is ironic — while meant dismissively, it prophetically anticipates the mission to the Gentile world that will follow Jesus's departure. The word Hellenas ('Greeks') here means Gentiles generally, not merely Greek nationals.
- 36.** The leaders repeat Jesus's words but cannot penetrate their meaning. Their incomprehension is a recurring Johannine pattern — Jesus speaks on a heavenly register and his listeners hear on an earthly one. The irony persists throughout: they cannot understand because they do not know the one who sent him (v. 28).
- 37.** The 'last and greatest day' (te eschate hemera te megale) is either the seventh day (the climax of the water-pouring ceremonies) or the eighth day (a closing assembly, Leviticus 23:36). During the festival, priests processed from the Pool of Siloam to the temple altar, pouring water as a prayer for rain and a commemoration of the water from the rock (Exodus 17:1-7). At this precise liturgical moment, Jesus stands (heistekei, the posture of proclamation) and cries out (ekraxen), offering himself as the fulfillment of everything the water ceremony signified.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 23:36. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 17:1-7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 38.** The punctuation of verses 37-38 is heavily debated. The traditional reading (which we follow) makes the believer the source of living water: 'Whoever believes in me... out of their heart will flow rivers.' An alternative reading makes Jesus the source: 'Let the one who believes in me drink. As the Scripture said, out of his (Jesus's) heart will flow rivers.' Both readings are theologically sound. The word koilia ('belly, inner being, heart') refers to the innermost part of a person. No single Old Testament verse matches this quotation exactly — it may be a composite of Isaiah 55:1, 58:11, Ezekiel 47:1-12, and Zechariah 14:8.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 55:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 47:1-12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 38.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 14:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 39.** The narrator provides the authoritative interpretation: 'living water' = the Holy Spirit. The startling phrase oupo gar en pneuma ('for the Spirit was not yet') does not mean the Spirit did not exist but that the Spirit had not yet been given in the post-resurrection, post-glorification manner. The Spirit's full giving awaits Jesus's glorification (his death, resurrection, and ascension). This is fulfilled in 20:22, where the risen Jesus breathes the Spirit on his disciples.
- 40.** The crowd identifies Jesus as 'the Prophet' (ho prophetes) — the Moses-like figure promised in Deuteronomy 18:15-18, the same identification made after the feeding miracle (6:14). The adverb alethos ('truly, really') indicates conviction. But as in 6:14, this identification, while correct as far as it goes, falls short of the full truth.
- 40.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 18:15-18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

41. The schisma (division) deepens: some affirm Jesus as the Christ, others object on geographical grounds. The particle *me* introduces a question expecting a negative answer — 'the Christ doesn't come from Galilee, does he?' The objection assumes Jesus's Galilean origin, not knowing about his birth in Bethlehem.
42. The crowd cites Micah 5:2 (the Messiah from Bethlehem) and 2 Samuel 7:12-16 (the Messiah from David's line). The irony is devastating: the very Scripture they cite to disqualify Jesus actually confirms his identity. Matthew and Luke both record Jesus's birth in Bethlehem (Matthew 2:1, Luke 2:4-7). John does not correct the crowd's error — he lets the dramatic irony stand for the reader to appreciate.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Micah 5:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Samuel 7:12-16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. The word *schisma* ('division, split, tear') is emphatic — Jesus divides the crowd into irreconcilable camps. This is the first of three uses of *schisma* in John (cf. 9:16, 10:19), each time caused by Jesus's words or actions. The preposition *di auton* ('because of him') makes Jesus the cause of the division.
44. For the second time (cf. v. 30), an attempt to seize Jesus fails. The repeated failure underscores the principle that Jesus's 'hour' is divinely protected. No human agency can touch him before the appointed time.
45. The officers sent in verse 32 return empty-handed. The authorities demand an explanation for the failed arrest. The scene shifts from the public forum to the private council, revealing the frustration of the leadership.
46. The temple police — trained professionals, not easily impressed — testify that Jesus's speech is without parallel. The adverb *oudepote* ('never, at no time') and *houtos* ('in this way, like this') combine to declare Jesus's teaching absolutely unique. Their testimony is unintentionally profound: the Word made flesh (1:14) speaks as no mere human can.
47. The Pharisees respond with contempt — *me kai hymeis peplanesthe* ('surely you too have not been led astray?') uses the same verb (*planao*, 'to lead astray, deceive') from verse 12, where some accused Jesus of 'leading the people astray.' The irony is that the officers were affected not by deception but by the truth of Jesus's teaching.
48. The question expects a negative answer and uses social status as the criterion for truth: if no authorities believe, the teaching must be false. This is an argument from institutional authority, not from evidence. The irony is that Nicodemus — a ruler and a Pharisee — is about to speak up (v. 50).
49. The Pharisees dismiss the common people (*ho ochlos houtos*) as ignorant of the law and therefore cursed (*eparatoi*, 'accursed'). The term reflects the rabbinic category of *am ha-aretz* ('people of the land') — the uneducated masses whom some Pharisees regarded as ritually and morally deficient. The arrogance of the statement is staggering and is immediately challenged by one of their own.
50. Nicodemus reappears for the second of his three appearances in John (3:1-21, 7:50-52, 19:39). The narrator identifies him as 'the one who had come to Jesus earlier' (*ho elthon pros auton proteron*), linking back to the nighttime visit in chapter 3. The phrase 'one of them' (*heis on ex auton*) emphasizes that dissent comes from within the Pharisaic party itself — contradicting their claim in verse 48.
51. Nicodemus's intervention is careful and procedural rather than confessional — he does not defend Jesus directly but appeals to legal process. The principle is from Deuteronomy 1:16-17 and 17:2-6: proper judgment requires hearing the accused. By invoking 'our law' (*ho nomos hemon*), Nicodemus turns the Pharisees' own weapon against them — they who accused the crowd of not knowing the law are themselves violating its procedures.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 1:16-17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. The Pharisees respond with personal attack rather than legal argument — they sarcastically ask if Nicodemus is a Galilean sympathizer. Their claim that 'no prophet arises from Galilee' (*ek tes Galilaias prophetes ouk egeiretai*) is historically inaccurate — Jonah was from Gath-hepher in Galilee (2 Kings 14:25), and possibly other prophets as well. Some manuscripts read 'the prophet does not arise' (*ho prophetes*, with the article), specifically denying the Prophet-like-Moses from Galilee. The scene ends with the council in deadlock.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 14:25. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. This verse is included in the SBLGNT as the conclusion to chapter 7, though it is often grouped with the Pericope Adulterae (7:53-8:11) in many manuscripts. The verse itself simply narrates the council dispersing — without resolution, without arresting Jesus, and without answering Nicodemus's legal challenge. The chapter ends with the authorities frustrated, the crowd divided, and Jesus unharmed.

Summary: *John 8 opens with the Pericope Adulterae (7:53-8:11), in which a woman caught in adultery is brought before Jesus as a legal trap — he disarms the accusers with 'Let the one without sin throw the first stone.' The remainder of the chapter records an extended confrontation between Jesus and the Jewish leaders in the temple courts, centered on Jesus's identity and authority. Jesus declares himself the light of the world (8:12), claims that the Father testifies on his behalf, warns that those who reject him will die in their sins, and reveals his divine origin. The chapter climaxes with the explosive declaration 'Before Abraham was, I AM' (8:58), prompting an attempt to stone him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Pericope Adulterae (7:53-8:11) is one of the most textually disputed passages in the New Testament — absent from the earliest and most reliable Greek manuscripts (P66, P75, Sinaiticus, Vaticanus), it appears in various locations across later manuscripts. The SBLGNT does not include it in the main text. We include it here with full textual notation, as it has been part of the received tradition for centuries. The ego eimi ('I AM') declaration in 8:58 is the chapter's theological summit — Jesus uses the absolute form of the divine self-identification from Exodus 3:14, and his audience understands the claim immediately, responding with attempted execution for blasphemy.*

Translation Friction: *The textual status of 7:53-8:11 requires transparent handling. The ego eimi statements throughout this chapter carry varying force — some are ordinary predicate uses ('I am the light'), while 8:58 is the absolute, divine-name usage. We render all as 'I am' but note the distinction. The dialogue in 8:31-59 involves escalating hostility that modern readers may find harsh; we render the Greek as given without softening.*

Connections: *The 'I AM' declaration connects to Exodus 3:14 (the divine name revealed to Moses), Isaiah 41:4 and 43:10-13 (the LORD's self-identification), and John's own Prologue (1:1-18). The light-of-the-world claim connects to Isaiah 9:2, 42:6, and 49:6. The discussion of Abraham connects to Genesis 12-22 and the covenant promises. The theme of judgment and testimony connects to Deuteronomy 17:6 and 19:15 (the two-witness requirement).*

⁵³Then each of them went to his own house, ¹Jesus traveled to the mount of Olives. ²At dawn he went again to the temple, and all the people came to him. He sat down and began teaching them. ³The scribes and the Pharisees brought a woman who had been caught in adultery. They made her stand in the middle of the group ⁴They say to him, Teacher, this lady was removed in adultery, in the very act. ⁵In the Law, Moses commanded us to stone such women. So what do you say?" ⁶They said this to test him, so that they would have grounds to accuse him. But Jesus bent down and began writing on the ground with his finger. ⁷When they kept pressing him, he straightened up and said to them, "Let the one among you who is without sin be the first to throw a stone at her." ⁸Then he bent down again and continued writing on the ground. ⁹When they heard this, they went away one by one, beginning with the elders, until Jesus was left alone with the woman still standing there. ¹⁰Jesus straightened up and said to her, "Woman, where are they? Has no one condemned you?" ¹¹She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go, and from now on do not sin anymore." ¹²Again Jesus spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world. Whoever follows me will never walk in darkness but will have the light of life." ¹³So the Pharisees said to him, "You are testifying about yourself — your testimony is not valid." ¹⁴Jesus answered them, "Even if I testify about myself, my testimony is valid, because I know where I came from and where I am going. But you do not know where I came from or where I am going. ¹⁵You judge by human standards. I judge no one. ¹⁶Yet even if I do judge, my judgment is true, because I am not alone — I and the Father who sent me judge together. ¹⁷In your own Law it is written that the testimony of two witnesses is valid. ¹⁸I am the one who testifies about myself, and the Father who sent me testifies about me." ¹⁹Then they said to him, "Where is your Father?" Jesus answered, "You know neither me nor my Father. If you knew me, you would know my Father as well." ²⁰He spoke these words while teaching in the treasury area of the temple. Yet no one arrested him, because his hour had not yet come. ²¹Then he said to them again, "I am going away, and you will look for me, but you will die in your sin. Where I am going, you cannot come." ²²So the Jewish leaders said, "Is he going to kill himself? Is that why he

says, 'Where I am going, you cannot come?'" ²³He said to them, "You are from below; I am from above. You are of this world; I am not of this world. ²⁴That is why I told you that you will die in your sins. For if you do not believe that I am he, you will die in your sins." ²⁵They said to him, "Who are you?" Jesus said to them, "What I have been telling you from the beginning. ²⁶I have much to say about you and much to judge. But the one who sent me is true, and what I have heard from him — these things I speak to the world." ²⁷They did not understand that he was speaking to them about the Father. ²⁸So Jesus said to them, "When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then you will know that I am he, and that I do nothing on my own authority, but I speak just as the Father taught me. ²⁹The one who sent me is with me. He has not left me alone, because I always do what pleases him." ³⁰As he was saying these things, many believed in him. ³¹So Jesus said to the Jews who had believed him, "If you remain in my word, you are truly my disciples, ³²You will know the truth, and the truth will make you free. ³³They answered him, "We are Abraham's descendants and have never been enslaved to anyone. How can you say, 'You will be set free'?" ³⁴Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, everyone who practices sin is a slave to sin. ³⁵A slave does not remain in the household forever, but a son remains forever. ³⁶So if the Son sets you free, you will be truly free. ³⁷I know that you are Abraham's descendants. Yet you are seeking to kill me because my word finds no room in you. ³⁸I speak of what I have seen in the presence of the Father, and you do what you have heard from your father." ³⁹They answered him, "Abraham is our father." Jesus said to them, "If you were Abraham's children, you would be doing the works Abraham did. ⁴⁰But now you are seeking to kill me — a man who has told you the truth that I heard from God. Abraham did not do this. ⁴¹You are doing the works of your father." They said to him, "We were not born of sexual immorality. We have one Father — God." ⁴²Jesus said to them, "If God were your Father, you would love me, for I came from God and I am here. I did not come on my own, but he sent me. ⁴³Why do you not understand what I am saying? It is because you cannot bear to hear my word. ⁴⁴You are of your father the devil, and you want to carry out your father's desires. He was a murderer from the beginning and has not stood in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he lies, he speaks from his own nature, for he is a liar and the father of lies. ⁴⁵Yet because I tell the truth, you do not believe me. ⁴⁶Which of you can convict me of sin? If I speak the truth, why do you not believe me? ⁴⁷The one who is from God hears the words of God. The reason you do not hear is that you are not from God." ⁴⁸The Jewish leaders answered him, "Are we not right in saying that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?" ⁴⁹Jesus answered, "I do not have a demon. On the contrary, I honor my Father, and you dishonor me. ⁵⁰I do not seek my own glory. There is one who seeks it, and he is the judge. ⁵¹Truly, truly, I say to you, if anyone keeps my word, he will never see death." ⁵²The Jewish leaders said to him, "Now we know that you have a demon. Abraham died, and the prophets died, yet you say, 'If anyone keeps my word, he will never taste death.' ⁵³Are you greater than our father Abraham, who died? The prophets died too. Who do you make yourself out to be?" ⁵⁴Jesus answered, "If I glorify myself, my glory means nothing. It is my Father who glorifies me — the one you claim is your God. ⁵⁵You have not known him, but I know him. If I said I did not know him, I would be a liar like you. But I do know him, and I keep his word. ⁵⁶Your father Abraham rejoiced that he would see my day. He saw it and was glad." ⁵⁷So the Jewish leaders said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?" ⁵⁸Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was born, I AM." ⁵⁹So they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- 53.** This verse concludes the scene of 7:45-52 in the traditional placement. The Greek is straightforward narrative transition. The Pericope Adulterae begins here in manuscripts that include it.
1. The Mount of Olives is mentioned frequently in the Synoptic Gospels but only here in John (another indicator of the passage's non-Johannine origin). The contrast between 'each to his own house' and Jesus going to the mount suggests he had no home in Jerusalem.
 2. The Greek orthrou ('at dawn') indicates very early morning. The posture of sitting (kathisas) was the standard teaching position for a Jewish rabbi — the teacher sat while the audience stood or sat around him.
 3. The Greek kateilēmmenēn ('having been caught, seized') is a perfect passive participle indicating she was caught in the very act. The public shaming of placing her 'in the middle' (en mesō) is deliberate humiliation designed to pressure Jesus into a ruling.
 4. The Greek ep' autophōrō ('in the very act, red-handed') is emphatic — they stress that there is no ambiguity about her guilt. The address 'Teacher' (Didaskale) frames the encounter as a legal question put to a rabbi. Notably absent is the man involved, though the law required both parties to be

present (Leviticus 20:10).

4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 20:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The reference is to Leviticus 20:10 and Deuteronomy 22:22-24, which prescribe death for adultery (though the specific method of stoning is debated — Deuteronomy 22:24 specifies stoning for a betrothed virgin). The trap is designed to force Jesus into a dilemma: upholding the law would conflict with Roman authority (Jews could not execute), while showing mercy would appear to dismiss Moses.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 20:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 22:22-24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *peirazontes* ('testing') reveals their motive — this is entrapment, not a sincere legal question. The Greek *kategraphēin* ('to write down') is used only here in the New Testament. What Jesus wrote has been the subject of endless speculation — the text does not say, and we do not speculate. The KJV's addition 'as though he heard them not' is not in the Greek manuscripts.
7. The Greek *anamatētos* ('without sin') appears only here in the New Testament. Jesus does not deny the law's validity or the woman's guilt — he redirects the moral scrutiny to the accusers themselves. Under Deuteronomy 17:7, the witnesses were required to cast the first stones, so Jesus's statement may also challenge whether legitimate witnesses are present.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 17:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The imperfect *egraphen* ('was writing, continued to write') suggests ongoing action — Jesus did not write briefly and stop but continued writing while the accusers processed his words. The repetition of the writing gesture frames the central pronouncement.
9. The detail 'beginning with the elders' (*arxamenoi apo tōn presbyterōn*) is psychologically acute — the oldest, presumably with the most accumulated guilt or the most wisdom, leave first. The KJV's 'convicted by their own conscience' is an addition not found in the best manuscripts of this passage; the Greek simply says they left after hearing.
10. The address *gynai* ('woman') is respectful in Greek, not dismissive — the same form Jesus uses to address his mother at Cana (2:4) and from the cross (19:26). The verb *katekrinen* ('condemned') is a legal term — Jesus asks whether any formal judgment has been rendered.
11. Jesus's response is neither legal acquittal nor moral indifference — he declines to condemn (*katakrinō*) while commanding a changed life. The phrase *apo tou nyn* ('from now on') marks a turning point. The imperative *mēketi hamartane* ('sin no more') is a present imperative with the negative, meaning 'stop the ongoing practice of sinning.' Grace and moral demand stand together without tension.
12. This is the second of John's seven 'I am' statements with a predicate (following 6:35). The double negative *ou mē* ('never, by no means') is the strongest negation in Greek. If this discourse occurs during the Feast of Tabernacles (cf. 7:2), the four giant candelabra lit in the Court of Women provide a vivid backdrop — Jesus claims to be what the festival rituals symbolized.
13. The Pharisees invoke the legal principle of Deuteronomy 19:15: no one can serve as their own witness. The Greek *alēthēs* here means 'valid, legally admissible' rather than 'factually true' — they are challenging the admissibility of self-testimony, not calling Jesus a liar. This directly engages the two-witness law that governs Jewish legal proceedings.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 19:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Jesus's defense rests on his unique origin and destiny — his knowledge of his divine origin (*pothen elthon*, 'where I came from') and divine destination (*pou hypagō*, 'where I am going') validates his self-testimony in a way that applies to no ordinary witness. This appears to contradict 5:31 ('If I testify about myself, my testimony is not valid') but the contexts differ: there Jesus was speaking hypothetically about isolated self-testimony, while here he argues that his testimony is never truly isolated because the Father always testifies with him.
15. The phrase *kata tēn sarka* ('according to the flesh') means by external, superficial, merely human criteria. Jesus's statement 'I judge no one' seems to conflict with other Johannine statements about judgment (5:22, 9:39); the resolution is that Jesus does not judge in the flawed, appearance-based way his opponents do.
16. The word *alēthinē* ('true, genuine, real') differs from *alēthēs* in verse 13 — it implies not merely factual accuracy but genuine, ultimate reality. Jesus grounds the validity of his judgment in his unity with the Father, introducing the two-witness theme that he develops in the next verse.
17. Jesus cites Deuteronomy 17:6 or 19:15 (the two-witness requirement). The phrase 'your law' (*tō hymetero nomō*) does not mean Jesus disowns the Torah — the pronoun 'your' appeals to an authority his opponents accept. The argument is: you require two witnesses; I have two — myself and my Father.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 17:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

18. The ego eimi ('I am') here functions as a simple copula ('I am the one who...') rather than the absolute divine claim, but John may intend a double resonance — Jesus identifies himself as a witness while using the phrase that will carry divine force in verse 58.
19. The question 'Where is your Father?' may be a genuine misunderstanding (thinking of a human father) or a veiled insult about Jesus's parentage. Jesus's response links knowledge of himself inseparably to knowledge of the Father — a recurring Johannine theme (cf. 14:7). The conditional ei ēdeite ('if you knew') uses the imperfect, indicating they do not currently know.
20. The gazophylakion ('treasury') was located in the Court of Women, a public area of the temple — Jesus was teaching openly, not in hiding. The phrase 'his hour' (hē hōra autou) is a key Johannine motif referring to the appointed time of Jesus's death and glorification (cf. 2:4, 7:30, 12:23, 13:1, 17:1). John presents Jesus's safety as divinely governed, not circumstantial.
21. The singular 'sin' (hamartia, not the plural hamartiais as in verse 24) may refer to the specific sin of rejecting Jesus rather than sins in general. The statement 'where I am going, you cannot come' echoes 7:34 and provokes the same confusion — his opponents think in geographical terms while Jesus speaks of his return to the Father.
22. The Greek mēti introduces a question expecting a negative answer, but with ironic uncertainty. The suggestion of suicide is deeply offensive in a Jewish context, where it was viewed as a sin that would consign someone to the lowest part of Sheol — they are inadvertently suggesting Jesus would go where they truly cannot follow. We render hoi Ioudaioi as 'Jewish leaders' since the context indicates the religious authorities in debate with Jesus, not the Jewish people broadly.
23. The spatial dualism — below/above, this world/not of this world — is characteristic of John's theology. The Greek ek tōn katō ('from the things below') and ek tōn anō ('from the things above') establish an ontological distinction, not merely a moral one. Jesus claims a fundamentally different origin from his opponents.
24. The phrase ego eimi ('I am') here stands without a predicate — 'I am he' is supplied by English translators for grammatical sense, but the Greek is absolute: 'unless you believe that I AM.' This is the first instance in the chapter of the potentially divine-name usage of ego eimi. The plural 'sins' (hamartiais) replaces the singular of verse 21, broadening the reference.
25. Jesus's response (tēn archēn ho ti kai lalō hymin) is one of the most debated phrases in the Gospel. It could mean: (1) 'What I have been telling you from the start,' (2) 'Why do I speak to you at all?' (taking tēn archēn as 'at all'), or (3) 'I am the beginning — what I tell you.' We follow the first reading as most contextually natural, but the ambiguity may be intentional.
26. Jesus restrains himself from full judgment ('I have much to say and judge') and instead speaks only what he has received from the Father. The adjective alēthēs ('true, truthful') applied to the Father affirms the reliability of everything Jesus has been commissioned to say.
27. John's editorial comment highlights the persistent misunderstanding that characterizes the opponents throughout this chapter — they hear Jesus's words but cannot grasp that 'the one who sent me' refers to God as his Father.
28. The verb hypsōsete ('lift up') carries a deliberate double meaning in John: physical lifting up on the cross and exaltation to glory (cf. 3:14, 12:32-34). The 'you' (hymeis) makes the opponents themselves the agents of the lifting up — they will crucify him, and that very act will reveal his identity. The ego eimi ('I am he') is again absolute, with the full meaning to become clear only at the cross.
29. The claim 'I always do what pleases him' (ta aresta autō poiō pantote) is an extraordinary assertion of perfect moral alignment with God. This is not a boast but a statement of the Son's complete dependence on and obedience to the Father — the basis for their unity.
30. The verb episteusan ('believed') uses the aorist tense, which may indicate an initial response rather than deep, lasting faith — as the following verses will test. John often distinguishes between shallow and genuine belief (cf. 2:23-25, 6:60-66).
31. Jesus addresses those who 'believed' (pepisteukotas, perfect participle — 'who had come to believe') but immediately sets a condition: genuine discipleship requires remaining (meinēte, aorist subjunctive of menō) in his word. The verb menō ('remain, abide') is central to Johannine theology (cf. ch. 15). The shift from initial belief to tested commitment drives the rest of this conversation.
32. One of the most quoted verses in the Gospel. The Greek alētheia ('truth') in John is not abstract philosophical truth but the revealed reality of God embodied in Jesus (cf. 14:6). The verb eleutherōsei ('will set free, will liberate') points forward to the freedom from sin discussed in verses 34-36. The future tense gnōsethe ('you will know') makes knowledge the result of abiding, not its prerequisite.
33. The claim 'we have never been enslaved to anyone' (oudenī dedouleukamen pōpote) is historically astonishing — they had been slaves in Egypt, exiles in Babylon, and were currently under Roman occupation. The statement likely reflects a theological self-understanding: as Abraham's seed, they considered themselves spiritually free regardless of political circumstances. The perfect tense dedouleukamen ('have been enslaved') emphasizes their ongoing status claim.
34. The double amēn ('truly, truly') is unique to John's Gospel and marks solemn, authoritative declarations. The present participle ho poiōn ('the one who practices, who keeps on doing') indicates habitual action, not a single lapse. The Greek doulos ('slave') is stronger than the KJV's 'servant' — Jesus speaks of genuine bondage, directly countering their claim of freedom.
35. Jesus draws a contrast between the legal status of a slave and a son within a household. The slave has no permanent rights; the son has an enduring place. The Greek oikia ('house, household') and the verb menei ('remains, abides') carry double meaning — the earthly household analogy points to the Father's house and the permanent standing of those who belong to the Son. The phrase eis ton aiōna ('into the age, forever') echoes the Hebrew olam.

36. The adverb *ontōs* ('truly, really, in reality') contrasts with their illusory sense of freedom in verse 33. The Son's freedom is the only genuine freedom — ontological liberation from sin's mastery, not merely political or social freedom. This verse completes the thought begun in verse 32: the truth (embodied in the Son) produces real freedom.
37. Jesus concedes their physical descent from Abraham (*sperma Abraam*) while denying its spiritual significance. The verb *chōrei* ('has room, makes progress, finds place') suggests that Jesus's word cannot penetrate or advance within them — there is no space for it. This is not a failure of the word but of the hearers.
38. The contrast between 'my Father' (*tō patri*, with the article — the Father) and 'your father' (*tou patros*, without possessive in some manuscripts) introduces the devastating paternity argument that dominates the rest of the chapter. Jesus speaks from direct vision (*heōraka*, perfect of *horaō*, 'I have seen') of the Father; they act on what they received from their father — whose identity Jesus will soon reveal.
39. Jesus shifts from *sperma* ('seed, descendant' — physical lineage, v. 37) to *tekna* ('children' — relational belonging). Physical descent is not denied, but spiritual sonship requires doing Abraham's works. The imperfect *epoiete* ('you would be doing') is a contrary-to-fact condition — they are not doing Abraham's works, therefore they are not truly his children in the way that matters.
40. Jesus identifies himself as *anthrōpon* ('a man') — the one who has spoken truth from God — and notes that Abraham, who welcomed divine messengers (Genesis 18), would never have sought to kill someone bringing God's word. The contrast is damning: those who claim Abraham as father act in ways Abraham never would.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The Greek *porneias* ('sexual immorality, fornication') may carry a double edge: (1) they are asserting spiritual legitimacy — unlike the Samaritans, they are not 'illegitimate' children of God through syncretism; (2) some interpreters see a veiled attack on Jesus's own birth — rumors about his parentage (cf. Mark 6:3 where Jesus is called 'son of Mary' rather than 'son of Joseph'). They escalate from Abraham to God himself as their father.
42. The conditional *ei... ēn* ('if he were') with the imperfect is a second-class (contrary to fact) condition — Jesus directly states that God is not their father. The verbs *exēlthon* ('came out from') and *hēkō* ('I am here, I have arrived') describe both origin and present reality. The verb *apestellen* ('sent') is the root of 'apostle' — Jesus is God's authorized emissary.
43. Jesus distinguishes between *lalia* ('speech, manner of speaking') and *logos* ('word, message') — they fail to grasp even the surface level of his speech because they cannot receive the deeper reality of his message. The verb *dynamai* ('to be able') suggests an incapacity, not merely an unwillingness — their spiritual condition renders them unable to hear.
44. This is the sharpest language in the chapter. The Greek *diabolos* ('devil, slanderer, accuser') literally means 'the one who throws across' — the one who creates division. The title *anthrōpoktonos* ('murderer, man-killer') is a compound word used only here and in 1 John 3:15 in the NT, linking the devil to the first murder (Cain, Genesis 4) or to the introduction of death through deception (Genesis 3). The phrase 'father of lies' (*ho patrēr autou*, lit. 'his father') is ambiguous — it could mean the devil is 'the father of the lie' or 'the father of the liar.' We follow the traditional reading.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The irony is sharp: the very fact that Jesus speaks truth is the reason they reject him — those aligned with the father of lies find truth intolerable. The Greek construction (*hoti tēn alētheian legō*) makes truth-telling itself the cause of disbelief.
46. The verb *elenchei* ('convict, expose, prove guilty') is a legal term — Jesus issues an open challenge to prove any sin against him. The question is rhetorical: no one can. The logic is: if you cannot convict me of sin, then I am a truthful witness; and if I speak truth, your refusal to believe is inexcusable.
47. Jesus completes the argument: hearing God's words is the natural capacity of those who belong to God. Their inability to hear is diagnostic — it reveals their origin. The Greek *ek tou theou* ('from God') uses the same preposition (*ek*, 'from, out of') that described their origin from the devil in verse 44.
48. The double insult — 'Samaritan' (heretic, impure lineage) and 'demon-possessed' (insane, deluded) — represents their most hostile response yet. Calling someone a Samaritan accused them of being a religious half-breed who worshiped God wrongly. The charge of demon-possession was a standard way of dismissing someone whose claims seemed outrageous (cf. 7:20, 10:20).
49. Jesus addresses only the demon charge, not the 'Samaritan' label — whether by silence he refuses to dignify the ethnic slur or whether the distinction between true and false worship (cf. 4:21-24) makes the label irrelevant. The contrast between *timō* ('I honor') and *atimazete* ('you dishonor') is a deliberate wordplay using the same root (*timē*, 'honor') with and without the alpha-privative.
50. Jesus disclaims self-promotion (*ou zētō tēn doxan mou*) while affirming that the Father actively seeks Jesus's glory and renders judgment on those who dishonor him. The participle *krinōn* ('the one who judges') warns that rejecting Jesus carries consequences determined by God himself.
51. The double *amēn* again marks a solemn pronouncement. The verb *tērēsē* ('keeps, guards, obeys') implies more than intellectual assent — it requires active obedience and faithful preservation of Jesus's word. The double negative *ou mē* with *theōrēsē* ('see, experience') is the strongest possible denial: such a person will absolutely never experience death. Jesus means spiritual/eternal death, but his opponents will take it literally in the next verse.

52. Their response reveals the misunderstanding: they hear Jesus's spiritual claim in purely physical terms. They shift from theōreō ('see') to geuomai ('taste'), perhaps intensifying the imagery — not even a taste of death. The argument from Abraham and the prophets is logical within their framework: if the greatest figures in Israel's history died, who is this man to promise immortality?
53. The particle *mē* expects a negative answer ('You're not greater than Abraham, are you?'), but John's irony is that the correct answer is yes. The question 'Who do you make yourself out to be?' (*tina seauton poieis*) is the central question of the chapter — and Jesus is about to answer it definitively.
54. Jesus returns to the theme of verse 50: he does not seek his own glory. The verb *doxazō* ('glorify') and noun *doxa* ('glory') correspond to the Hebrew *kavod*. The pointed phrase 'whom you say is your God' (*hon hymeis legete hoti theos hēmōn estin*) challenges their claim to know God while rejecting the one God sent.
55. Jesus uses two different Greek words for 'know': *egnōkate* (*ginosko*, 'come to know through experience') for their lack of knowledge, and *oida* ('know intuitively, know with certainty') for his own knowledge. The distinction suggests Jesus's knowledge of the Father is innate and direct, not acquired. Calling them 'liars' (*pseustēs*) connects back to verse 44 — they resemble the father of lies.
56. The verb *ēgalliasato* ('rejoiced, exulted') is strong — Abraham's joy was exuberant. 'My day' (*tēn hēmeran tēn emēn*) most likely refers to the day of the Messiah's coming. Jewish tradition held that Abraham was given a vision of future ages (cf. 2 Esdras 3:14, Apocalypse of Abraham 31). The statement that Abraham 'saw it and was glad' implies Abraham had prophetic knowledge of Christ's coming — a claim that prepares for the explosive verse 58.
57. The number fifty (*pentēkonta*) is a round number, not a precise indication of Jesus's age. Some manuscripts read 'forty' instead. Their objection focuses on chronological impossibility — Abraham lived roughly two thousand years before Jesus. They miss the deeper claim entirely: Jesus is not saying he saw Abraham but that Abraham saw him.
58. The contrast between *genesthai* (aorist infinitive of *ginomai*, 'to come into being') for Abraham and *eimi* (present indicative of *eimi*, 'I am') for Jesus is theologically precise: Abraham came into existence at a point in time; Jesus simply IS, without beginning. The double *amēn* underscores the gravity. This is the climactic *ego eimi* of chapter 8, completing the sequence begun in verses 24 and 28.
59. Stoning was the prescribed punishment for blasphemy (Leviticus 24:16), confirming that they understood Jesus's *ego eimi* as a divine claim. The Greek *ekrybē* ('hid himself') is passive — whether Jesus physically hid or was divinely concealed is left ambiguous. The KJV adds 'going through the midst of them, and so passed by,' which is not in the earliest manuscripts. The SBLGNT ends the verse at 'went out of the temple.'
59. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 24:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

9

Summary: *John 9 tells the story of a man born blind whom Jesus heals by making mud with saliva and sending him to wash in the Pool of Siloam. The healing triggers an escalating investigation by the Pharisees, who interrogate the man, his parents, and the man again. The narrative functions as both a literal sign and a profound metaphor: the man born blind progressively gains spiritual sight (calling Jesus a man, a prophet, someone from God, and finally Lord), while the Pharisees who claim to see become progressively more blind. The chapter closes with Jesus's declaration that he came into the world for judgment — so that the blind might see and those who see might become blind.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is one of the most carefully structured narratives in the Fourth Gospel, built on dramatic irony. Seven scenes alternate between the healed man's growing insight and the Pharisees' deepening blindness. The man's progression of faith — from identifying Jesus as 'the man called Jesus' (v. 11) to 'a prophet' (v. 17) to 'from God' (v. 33) to worshiping him as 'Lord' (v. 38) — is one of the clearest discipleship trajectories in the Gospels. The Pharisees, meanwhile, move from division (v. 16) to suspicion (v. 18) to hostility (v. 28) to excommunication (v. 34). The healing on the Sabbath connects to the broader conflict about Jesus's authority over Sabbath law (cf. 5:1-18).*

Translation Friction: *The Pool of Siloam was archaeologically confirmed in 2004, giving historical grounding to the narrative. The Greek Siloam (Silōam) translates the Hebrew Shiloach, and John provides the etymology 'Sent' (apostalmenos), connecting the pool's name to Jesus as the one 'sent' by the Father. The parents' fear of excommunication (v. 22) reflects a later historical situation (the Birkat ha-Minim) that many scholars date after Jesus's lifetime, though others argue synagogue exclusion was possible in Jesus's era.*

Connections: The healing connects to 8:12 ('I am the light of the world') — now demonstrated in giving sight to the blind. The Sabbath controversy connects to 5:1-18. The expulsion from the synagogue foreshadows 16:2. The theme of spiritual blindness connects to Isaiah 6:9-10 (quoted in John 12:40) and Isaiah 42:7 (the Servant opens blind eyes). The judgment theme connects to 3:17-21 and 5:22-30.

¹As he passed by, he saw a man blind from birth. ²His disciples asked him, "Rabbi, who sinned — this man or his parents — that he was born blind?" ³Jesus answered, "It was not that this man sinned, or his parents, but so that the works of God might be displayed in him. ⁴We must do the works of the one who sent me while it is day. Night is coming, when no one can work. ⁵I am the light in the world, and as long as I am in the world. ⁶After saying this, he spat on the ground and made mud with the saliva. Then he spread the mud on the man's eyes ⁷Stated to him, Go, wash in the pool of Siloam, (which is by interpretation, dispatched.) He traveled his way therefore, and washed, and arrived seeing. ⁸His neighbors and those who had previously seen him as a beggar said, "Is this not the man who used to sit and beg?" ⁹Some said, "It is him." Others said, "No, but he looks like him." He kept saying, "I am the one." ¹⁰So they asked him, "Then how were your eyes opened?" ¹¹He answered, "The man called Jesus made mud and spread it on my eyes and told me, 'Go to Siloam and wash.' So I went and washed, and I received my sight." ¹²They asked him, "Where is he?" He said, "I do not know." ¹³They brought the man who had formerly been blind to the Pharisees. ¹⁴Now it was a Sabbath day when Jesus made the mud and opened his eyes. ¹⁵So the Pharisees also asked him how he had received his sight. He told them, "He put mud on my eyes, and I washed, and now I see." ¹⁶Some of the Pharisees said, "This man is not from God, because he does not keep the Sabbath." But others said, "How can a man who is a sinner perform such signs?" And there was a division among them. ¹⁷So they asked the blind man again, "What do you say about him, since he opened your eyes?" He said, "He is a prophet." ¹⁸The Jewish leaders did not believe that he had been blind and had received his sight until they called the parents of the man who had received his sight. ¹⁹They asked them, "Is this your son, who you say was born blind? How is it that he now sees?" ²⁰His parents answered, "We know that this is our son and that he was born blind. ²¹But how he now sees, we do not know, nor do we know who opened his eyes. Ask him — he is of age. He can speak for himself." ²²His parents said this because they were afraid of the Jewish leaders, for the Jewish leaders had already agreed that anyone who confessed Jesus as the Christ would be expelled from the synagogue. ²³That is why his parents said, "He is of age; ask him." ²⁴So for a second time they called the man who had been blind and said to him, "Give glory to God. We know that this man is a sinner." ²⁵He answered, "Whether he is a sinner, I do not know. One thing I do know: I was blind, and now I see." ²⁶They said to him, "What did he do to you? How did he open your eyes?" ²⁷He answered them, "I already told you, and you did not listen. Why do you want to hear it again? Do you also want to become his disciples?" ²⁸They reviled him and said, "You are his disciple, but we are disciples of Moses! ²⁹We know that God spoke to Moses, but as for this man, we do not know where he comes from." ³⁰The man answered them, "This is remarkable! You do not know where he comes from, and yet he opened my eyes. ³¹We know that God does not listen to sinners, but if anyone is devout and does his will, God listens to that person. ³²Never since the world began has anyone been heard of who opened the eyes of a person born blind. ³³He could do nothing, and if this man were not of God. ³⁴They answered him, "You were born entirely in sins, and you are trying to teach us?" And they threw him out. ³⁵Jesus heard that they had thrown him out, and finding him, he said, "Do you believe in the Son of Man?" ³⁶He answered, "And who is he, sir, that I may believe in him?" ³⁷Jesus said to him, "You have seen him, and it is he who is speaking with you." ³⁸I believe, he said, Lord. And he worshipped him. ³⁹Jesus said, "For judgment I came into this world, so that those who do not see may see, and those who see may become blind." ⁴⁰Some of the Pharisees who were with him heard this and said to him, "Are we blind too?" ⁴¹Jesus said to them, "If you were blind, you would have no sin. But now that you say, 'We see,' your sin remains."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The narrative connects directly to 8:59 — Jesus has just left the temple. The phrase *ek genetēs* ('from birth') is crucial: this is not acquired blindness but a congenital condition, ruling out any connection to the man's own sin and setting up the theological question of verse 2.

2. The disciples assume a direct causal link between sin and suffering, reflecting a common Jewish theology of retribution (cf. Exodus 20:5, Ezekiel 18:20). The question about whether the man himself sinned before birth may reflect belief in prenatal sin (attested in some rabbinic texts) or simply reveals the logical absurdity their framework produces when confronted with congenital conditions.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 18:20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Jesus rejects the entire sin-causation framework for this case. The hina ('so that') clause does not mean God caused the blindness in order to heal it later (a common misreading); it redirects the question from cause to purpose — whatever the origin of the blindness, its purpose now is to reveal God's works. The verb phanerōthē ('be made visible, displayed') connects to the light/sight theme of the chapter.
4. The SBLGNT reads hēmas ('we') rather than eme ('I'), including the disciples in the mission. 'Day' and 'night' function metaphorically: day is the time of Jesus's active ministry; night is his departure through death. The urgency (dei, 'it is necessary') reflects divine mandate, not mere preference.
5. This repeats the claim of 8:12 but adds the temporal qualifier hotan ('as long as, whenever'). The light-of-the-world declaration immediately precedes giving sight to a blind man — the metaphor is about to become literal. The implicit corollary is that after Jesus's departure, the disciples must carry the light (cf. Matthew 5:14).
6. The act of making mud (pēlon, 'clay, mud') echoes Genesis 2:7 where God forms man from the ground — Jesus performs a creative act. Saliva was believed to have healing properties in the ancient world (cf. Mark 7:33, 8:23). The verb epechrisein ('smeared, anointed') may carry overtones of the christos/anointing theme. Making mud on the Sabbath would constitute 'kneading,' one of the thirty-nine categories of prohibited Sabbath work in the Mishnah.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. John provides the etymology of Siloam (Silōam from Hebrew Shiloach, related to shalach, 'to send') as apostalmenos ('sent'), connecting the pool's name to Jesus as the one 'sent' by the Father — a recurring Johannine theme (cf. 3:17, 5:36, 6:29, 7:29). The man's obedience is immediate and unquestioning, reminiscent of Naaman washing in the Jordan (2 Kings 5:10-14). The simple statement 'came back seeing' (ēlthen blepōn) is understated for the magnitude of the miracle — a lifetime of blindness ends in a single washing.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 5:10-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The SBLGNT reads prosaitēs ('beggar') rather than typhlos ('blind'), though some manuscripts have 'blind.' The question introduces the first of several investigations — even the man's identity is disputed, setting up a narrative in which seeing and knowing are constantly in question.
9. The man's ego eimi ('I am') is an ordinary identification ('I am the one'), not a divine claim — but John may intend an ironic echo of Jesus's ego eimi statements in chapter 8. The imperfect elegen ('kept saying') suggests he had to assert his identity repeatedly against doubt.
10. The passive ēneōchthēsan ('were opened') is a divine passive — the question inadvertently acknowledges that the healing came from a power beyond the man himself. This is the first of three times the man will be asked to explain how he was healed (cf. vv. 15, 26).
11. The man's first identification of Jesus is minimal: ho anthrōpos ho legomenos Iēsous ('the man called Jesus'). He knows a name and an action but nothing more. This is the starting point of his progressive understanding. The verb aneblepsa ('I received sight, I looked up') can mean both 'to see again' and 'to see for the first time' — here it must mean the latter, since he was born blind.
12. The man does not know where Jesus is — he was sent to the pool and returned to find Jesus gone. This physical separation mirrors his theological distance: he knows Jesus by name and action but does not yet know him as prophet, as from God, or as Lord.
13. The phrase ton pote typhlon ('the one formerly blind') is John's editorial confirmation that the healing was real and complete. The Pharisees function as the investigative authority — the neighbors bring the case to them for evaluation.
14. John withholds this critical detail until verse 14, after the healing and the neighbors' investigation — a masterful narrative technique that raises the stakes retroactively. The Sabbath issue transforms the healing from a wonder to a legal problem. Making mud (kneading) and possibly healing (which some rabbis classified as work) both potentially violated Sabbath regulations.
15. The man's account becomes more compressed with each retelling — the three-step process (mud, wash, see) is stated with increasing economy. The present tense blepō ('I see') is emphatic: the evidence stands before them. This is the second interrogation (cf. v. 10).
16. The schisma ('division, split') among the Pharisees reveals two competing theological principles: (1) a true prophet would keep the Sabbath, therefore Jesus cannot be from God; (2) a sinner cannot perform genuine miracles, therefore Jesus must be from God. John uses the word sēmeia ('signs') — his preferred term for Jesus's miracles, emphasizing their revelatory function. This internal Pharisaic debate mirrors the broader division Jesus causes throughout the Gospel (cf. 7:43, 10:19).
17. The man's understanding has advanced: from 'the man called Jesus' (v. 11) to prophētēs ('a prophet'). A prophet is one who speaks and acts with divine authority — the man draws the logical conclusion from the evidence of his own healing. This is the second stage in his progressive recognition

of Jesus.

18. Unable to refute the healing theologically, the opponents shift to challenging the facts — perhaps the man was never really blind. The term *hoi Ioudaioi* ('the Jews') here refers to the investigating authorities, not the Jewish people generally. The calling of the parents introduces a new phase of the investigation.
19. The three questions embedded in this verse — (1) Is this your son? (2) Was he born blind? (3) How does he now see? — are designed to find a crack in the testimony. The phrase 'who you say was born blind' (*hon hymeis legete hoti typhlos egennēthē*) subtly casts doubt on the parents' claim, as if the blindness itself might be fabricated.
20. The parents confirm two of the three points with certainty (*oidamen*, 'we know'): identity and congenital blindness. They will deflect the third question — how he now sees — out of fear, as the next verses explain.
21. The parents' threefold 'we do not know' (*ouk oidamen*) is evasive rather than honest — they redirect all inquiry to their son. The phrase *hēlikian echei* ('he is of age, he has maturity') indicates he is old enough to give legal testimony on his own behalf, likely meaning he is over thirteen (the age of legal responsibility in Jewish law).
22. John provides the narrator's explanation for the parents' evasion: fear of excommunication. The term *aposynagōgos* ('expelled from the synagogue, put out of the synagogue') appears only in John (here, 12:42, 16:2) and describes formal exclusion from the Jewish worshiping community — a devastating social and religious penalty. The verb *synetethento* ('had agreed, had decided together') indicates a formal policy decision by the authorities.
23. John repeats the parents' deflection to underscore its motivation: fear, not ignorance, drives their evasion. The contrast with their son's increasing boldness is deliberate — the parents protect themselves while their son faces the authorities alone.
24. The phrase *dos doxan tō theō* ('give glory to God') is a solemn adjuration equivalent to 'tell the truth before God' (cf. Joshua 7:19, where Joshua uses the same phrase to compel Achan's confession). The Pharisees have already reached their verdict — 'we know' (*hēmeis oidamen*) — and are pressuring the man to confirm it. The irony is thick: they claim knowledge while demonstrating blindness.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joshua 7:19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. One of the most memorable lines in the Gospel. The man refuses to be drawn into theological debate and stands on the irrefutable evidence of his own experience. The contrast between their claimed knowledge ('we know he is a sinner') and his actual knowledge ('one thing I know') is the chapter's central irony — the formerly blind man sees more clearly than the experts.
26. This is the third time the man is asked to recount the healing (cf. vv. 10, 15). The repetition serves the Pharisees' investigative purpose — they hope to find an inconsistency — and also serves John's literary purpose of highlighting the futility of their resistance to evident truth.
27. The man's boldness escalates — the *mē* particle expects a negative answer ('you don't want to become his disciples too, do you?'), but the question is deliberately provocative. The word 'also' (*kai*) implies the man already considers himself a disciple, though he has not yet met the risen Jesus. The verb *ēkousate* ('you did not hear/listen') carries the Johannine double meaning: they physically heard but did not truly receive.
28. The verb *eloidorēsan* ('reviled, insulted, heaped abuse on') marks the shift from investigation to hostility. They draw a sharp line: his loyalty to Jesus versus their loyalty to Moses. The pronoun emphasis (*sy/hēmeis*, 'you/we') makes the division absolute. Ironically, Jesus has already claimed that Moses wrote about him (5:46).
29. Their confession 'we do not know where he comes from' (*ouk oidamen pothen estin*) is deeply ironic in John's framework — Jesus's origin (*pothen*, 'from where') is one of the Gospel's central questions (cf. 7:27-28, 8:14, 19:9). They think their ignorance of his origin discredits Jesus; in reality, it reveals their own spiritual blindness.
30. The man's argument is devastatingly simple: the evidence of the miracle should resolve any uncertainty about Jesus's origin. The adjective *thaumaston* ('remarkable, amazing, astonishing') is used with sharp irony — what is truly astonishing is not the healing but the leaders' refusal to draw the obvious conclusion from it.
31. The man uses their own theological framework against them: the principle that God hears the righteous but not sinners is widely attested in Scripture (cf. Psalm 66:18, Proverbs 15:29, Isaiah 1:15). The adjective *theosebēs* ('God-fearing, devout') appears only here in the NT. His logic is irresistible within their system: God answered Jesus's act, therefore Jesus must be devout and obedient to God's will.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 66:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 15:29. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 1:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The phrase *ek tou aiōnos* ('from the age, since the world began') emphasizes the unprecedented nature of the miracle. While there are Old Testament healings and even resurrections, there is no recorded case of congenital blindness being healed — this is a creative act, not merely a restorative one. The man's theological reasoning is more sophisticated than his opponents'.

33. The man's conclusion — *para theou* ('from God') — represents his third stage of recognition (after 'the man called Jesus' in v. 11 and 'a prophet' in v. 17). The conditional is contrary to fact: since Jesus has done something (opened blind eyes), the only possible conclusion is that he is from God. The former beggar out-argues the trained theologians.
34. Their response reveals the very theology Jesus rejected in verse 3 — they revert to the assumption that his congenital blindness proves his sinfulness. The phrase *en hamartiais... holos* ('entirely in sins') is contemptuous: you are nothing but sin from birth. The irony is complete: the religious experts resort to the argument Jesus already dismantled. The verb *exebalon* ('threw out, cast out') likely refers to formal expulsion from the synagogue (cf. v. 22), not merely physical ejection from the room.
35. The SBLGNT reads *ton huion tou anthrōpou* ('the Son of Man') rather than *ton huion tou theou* ('the Son of God') found in some later manuscripts. We follow the critical text. Jesus seeks out the expelled man — the shepherd finds the one cast out by the religious establishment. The question is not whether the man believes in Jesus generally but whether he believes in the Son of Man — a title with eschatological and divine connotations from Daniel 7:13-14.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 7:13-14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The address *kyrie* could mean either 'sir' (a polite form of address) or 'Lord' (a confessional title). At this point in the conversation, the man does not yet know who the Son of Man is, so 'sir' is the more natural rendering here. The willingness in his question — 'that I may believe' (*hina pisteusō*) — shows readiness, not resistance.
37. The verb *heōrakas* ('you have seen') carries profound irony: the man who was born blind has now not only received physical sight but is using that sight to see the Son of Man himself. The self-revelation follows the pattern of John 4:26 (the Samaritan woman) — Jesus discloses his identity to an outsider who has shown faith.
38. Now *kyrie* is clearly 'Lord' — a confessional title, not mere politeness. The verb *prosekynēsen* ('worshiped, bowed down before') is the same word used for worship of God throughout the Septuagint and New Testament. This is the man's final stage of recognition: from 'the man called Jesus' (v. 11) to 'a prophet' (v. 17) to 'from God' (v. 33) to worshiping him as Lord. The progression is complete — the man born blind now sees more clearly than anyone in the chapter.
39. This statement appears to contradict 3:17 ('God did not send the Son into the world to condemn the world') but the tension is deliberate: Jesus's primary purpose is salvation, but his coming inevitably produces judgment because it forces a response. The *krima* ('judgment, verdict') is not condemnation imposed from outside but the self-sorting that occurs when light enters darkness (cf. 3:19-21). The chapter has enacted this principle: the blind man now sees; the seeing Pharisees are now blind.
40. The *mē* particle expects a negative answer ('we aren't blind too, are we?'), revealing their confidence in their own spiritual sight. The irony is that their very confidence is the proof of their blindness — they cannot even conceive that Jesus's words might apply to them.
41. Jesus's final statement inverts their assumption completely: genuine blindness (acknowledged ignorance) would remove culpability; claimed sight (self-assured knowledge) locks them into sin. The verb *menei* ('remains, abides') is the same word used positively of abiding in Jesus (15:4) — here it describes sin's permanent residence in those who refuse to acknowledge their blindness. The chapter ends with the devastating conclusion: those who claim to see are the truly blind, and their condition is incurable precisely because they refuse the diagnosis.

10

Summary: *John 10 contains Jesus's extended shepherd discourse, in which he identifies himself as both the gate of the sheepfold and the good shepherd who lays down his life for the sheep. The chapter opens with a parable about shepherds and thieves (vv. 1-6), followed by two 'I am' declarations: 'I am the gate' (vv. 7-10) and 'I am the good shepherd' (vv. 11-18). Jesus distinguishes himself from hired hands who flee when wolves attack. He speaks of 'other sheep' not of this fold whom he must also bring. The discourse provokes yet another division (vv. 19-21). At the Feast of Dedication (Hanukkah), the Jewish leaders confront Jesus directly about whether he is the Christ, leading to Jesus's declaration 'I and the Father are one' (v. 30) and a second attempt to stone him (v. 31). The chapter closes with Jesus withdrawing beyond the Jordan.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The shepherd imagery draws on deep Old Testament roots: God as shepherd (Psalm 23, Isaiah 40:11), David as shepherd-king (2 Samuel 5:2), and Ezekiel's devastating critique of Israel's failed shepherds (Ezekiel 34), where God promises to shepherd his people himself and raise up 'my servant David.' Jesus's claim to be the good shepherd is simultaneously a claim to fulfill Ezekiel 34 and to embody God's own shepherding. The 'I and the Father are one' declaration (v. 30) is the theological climax — neuter *hen* ('one thing') rather than masculine *heis* ('one person'), indicating unity of purpose and being without collapsing the distinction between Father and Son.*

Translation Friction: The relationship between 10:1-21 and the preceding chapter is debated — some scholars see it as a continuation of the post-chapter-9 dialogue, others as an independent discourse. The Feast of Dedication (Hanukkah) setting in verse 22 marks a chronological shift (roughly December, two months after Tabernacles). The 'other sheep' (v. 16) is traditionally interpreted as referring to Gentile believers, though the text does not specify. Jesus's scriptural argument from Psalm 82:6 (vv. 34-36) is complex and has been interpreted in various ways.

Connections: The shepherd discourse connects to Psalm 23, Ezekiel 34, Zechariah 11:4-17, and Isaiah 40:11. The gate imagery connects to Psalm 118:20. The 'I and the Father are one' declaration connects to the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4) and to Jesus's prayer in John 17:11, 22. The laying down of life anticipates the cross narrative (chs. 18-19). The Hanukkah setting (rededication of the temple) provides ironic context for Jesus's claim that the Father 'consecrated' him (v. 36).

¹"Truly, truly, I say to you, the one who does not enter the sheepfold through the gate but climbs in by another way is a thief and a robber. ²The one who enters through the gate is the shepherd of the sheep. ³The gatekeeper opens the gate for him, and the sheep hear his voice. He calls his own sheep by name and leads them out. ⁴When he has brought out all his own, he goes ahead of them, and the sheep follow him because they know his voice. ⁵They will never follow a stranger but will flee from him, because they do not know the voice of strangers." ⁶Jesus told them this figure of speech, but they did not understand what he was saying to them. ⁷So Jesus said again, "Truly, truly, I say to you, I am the gate for the sheep. ⁸All who came before me are thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not listen to them. ⁹I am the gate. If anyone enters through me, he will be saved and will go in and out and find pasture. ¹⁰The thief comes only to steal and kill and destroy. I came so that they may have life, and have it abundantly. ¹¹I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep. ¹²The hired hand, who is not the shepherd and does not own the sheep, sees the wolf coming and abandons the sheep and runs away — and the wolf snatches them and scatters them. ¹³The hireling fleeth, on account of the fact that he is an hireling, and careth not for the sheep. ¹⁴I am the good shepherd. I know my own, and my own know me, ¹⁵Indeed, as the Father knows me, even so know I the Father — and I lay down my life for the sheep. ¹⁶I have other sheep that are not of this fold. I must bring them also, and they will hear my voice. There will be one flock, one shepherd. ¹⁷For this reason the Father loves me — because I lay down my life so that I may take it up again. ¹⁸No one takes it from me, but I lay it down of my own accord. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. This command I received from my Father." ¹⁹There was again a division among the Jewish people because of these words. ²⁰Many of them said, "He has a demon and is out of his mind. Why listen to him?" ²¹Others said, "These are not the words of someone possessed by a demon. Can a demon open the eyes of the blind?" ²²Then came the Feast of Dedication in Jerusalem. It was winter, ²³Jesus walked in the sanctuary in Solomon's porch. ²⁴So the Jewish leaders surrounded him and said to him, "How long will you keep us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us plainly." ²⁵Jesus answered them, "I have told you, and you do not believe. The works that I do in my Father's name testify about me, ²⁶But you trust not, because you are not of my sheep, as I stated to you. ²⁷My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, then they Come, follow me: ²⁸I give them eternal life, and they will never perish, and no one will snatch them out of my hand. ²⁹My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one is able to snatch them out of the Father's hand. ³⁰I and the Father are one." ³¹The Jewish leaders picked up stones again to stone him. ³²Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father. For which of these works are you going to stone me?" ³³The Jewish leaders answered him, "It is not for a good work that we are going to stone you, but for blasphemy, because you, a mere man, make yourself God." ³⁴You are gods?, Jesus responded them, Is it not written in your law, I said. ³⁵If he known as them gods, to whom the word of God arrived, and the scripture cannot be broken: ³⁶Say you of him, whom the Father has sanctified, and dispatched into the world, you blasphemest. Because I stated, I am the Son of God? ³⁷If I am not doing the works of my Father, then do not believe me. ³⁸But if I do them, even though you do not believe me, believe the works, so that you may know and understand that the Father is in me and I am in the Father." ³⁹So they tried again to arrest him, but he escaped from their grasp. ⁴⁰He went away again across the Jordan to the place where John had been baptizing at first, and he stayed there. ⁴¹Many came to him and said, "John performed no sign, but everything John said about this man was true." ⁴²Numerous believed on him there.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The double amēn marks solemn declaration. The aulē tōn probatōn ('sheepfold, courtyard of the sheep') refers to an enclosed area, often a stone-walled courtyard with a single entrance, used to protect sheep at night. John distinguishes between kleptēs ('thief,' one who steals by stealth) and lēstēs ('robber, bandit,' one who uses violence). The parable follows directly from the expulsion of the blind man in chapter 9 — the Pharisees are the false shepherds.
2. The Greek thyra ('door, gate') is the legitimate entry point. The poimēn ('shepherd') enters openly, with nothing to hide. The contrast is between legitimacy (through the gate) and illegitimacy (any other way).
3. The identity of the thurōros ('gatekeeper, doorkeeper') is not explained and should not be allegorized — the focus is on the shepherd's relationship with his sheep. The phrase phōnei kat' onoma ('calls by name') reflects actual Palestinian shepherding practice, where shepherds knew and named individual sheep. The sheep recognize and respond to the shepherd's specific voice — an image of intimate, personal relationship.
4. The verb ekbalē ('brought out, put forth') is the same word used in 9:34 for the Pharisees casting out the healed man — a deliberate contrast. The Pharisees 'cast out'; the shepherd 'leads out.' Middle Eastern shepherds lead from the front rather than driving from behind — the sheep follow voluntarily because they recognize the shepherd. The verb oidasin ('they know') indicates deep, experiential knowledge.
5. The double negative ou mē ('never, by no means') with the future akolouthēsousin ('will follow') is emphatic. The allotriō ('stranger, outsider') is not the same as the thief/robber — it is anyone whose voice the sheep do not recognize. The sheep's discernment is instinctive, based on relationship rather than analysis.
6. John calls this a paroimia ('figure of speech, proverb, riddle') rather than parabolē ('parable'). The paroimia in John is an enigmatic saying that requires interpretation (cf. 16:25, 29). The audience's failure to understand sets up Jesus's explanatory statements in the following verses.
7. This is the third of John's 'I am' statements with a predicate. Jesus identifies himself not as the shepherd (that comes in v. 11) but as the thyra ('gate, door') — the point of access and protection. In some shepherding practices, the shepherd himself would lie across the opening of the fold at night, literally becoming the gate. We render thyra as 'gate' rather than 'door' to maintain the pastoral setting.
8. The sweeping statement 'all who came before me' (pantes hosoi ēlthon pro emou) cannot refer to Moses and the prophets (whom Jesus affirms elsewhere) but to false leaders who claimed authority over God's flock without legitimate commission — the failed shepherds of Ezekiel 34. Some manuscripts omit 'before me' (pro emou), which would change the sense to 'all who came [apart from me].'
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 34 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The three-fold promise — salvation (sōthēsetai), freedom of movement (eiseleusetai kai exeleusetai, 'will go in and out'), and sustenance (nomēn heurēsei, 'will find pasture') — describes the complete provision of the shepherd through the gate. 'Going in and out' is a Hebrew idiom for living freely and securely (cf. Numbers 27:17, Deuteronomy 28:6, Psalm 121:8).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 27:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 28:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 121:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The three verbs describing the thief — klepsē ('steal'), thysē ('slaughter, sacrifice'), apolesē ('destroy') — escalate in violence. The verb thysē is the same word used for ritual sacrifice, adding bitter irony: the thief 'sacrifices' the sheep for his own benefit. Against this, Jesus's purpose is stated in two stages: life (zōēn) and abundance (perisson, 'surplus, overflow, more than enough'). The Greek perisson means not barely adequate life but overflowing life.
11. The fourth 'I am' statement with predicate. The adjective kalos ('good, noble, beautiful, excellent') means more than morally good — it connotes the ideal, the model, the shepherd as he was meant to be. The phrase tēn psychēn autou tithēsīn ('lays down his life') uses the deliberate act of placing (tithēmi) — this is not accidental death but voluntary sacrifice. The preposition hyper ('for, on behalf of') indicates substitutionary action.
12. The misthotos ('hired hand, wage worker') is not a villain like the thief — he is simply not the owner. His relationship to the sheep is economic, not relational. When danger comes (the lykos, 'wolf'), the cost-benefit analysis favors flight. The verbs harpazei ('snatches, seizes by force') and skorpizei ('scatters') describe the devastation that follows failed leadership.
13. The phrase ou melei autō ('it does not matter to him, he does not care') reveals the hired hand's fundamental deficiency: lack of genuine care (cf. Mark 4:38, where the same phrase appears). The issue is not competence but commitment — the hired hand may be skilled but lacks the ownership-stake that produces sacrificial devotion.
14. The verb ginōskō ('know') here describes deep, mutual, relational knowledge — not mere awareness but intimate acquaintance. The reciprocity (I know them / they know me) echoes the covenant relationship pattern: God knows his people, and they know him (cf. Jeremiah 31:34). The next verse will ground this mutual knowledge in the relationship between Father and Son.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 31:34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

15. The comparison *kathōs* ('just as') is extraordinary: the mutual knowledge between shepherd and sheep is patterned on the mutual knowledge between Father and Son. This elevates the shepherd-sheep relationship to a divine model. The second clause returns to the theme of voluntary death (*tēn psychēn mou tithēmi*, 'I lay down my life'), now grounded in the Father-Son relationship that motivates it.
16. The 'other sheep' (*alla probata*) not of 'this fold' (*tēs aulēs tautēs*) is traditionally understood as Gentile believers who will be gathered into one community with Jewish believers. The *dei* ('must, it is necessary') indicates divine compulsion — this is part of God's plan, not optional. Note the critical distinction: 'one flock' (*mia poimnē*) not 'one fold' (*mia aulē*) — the KJV's 'one fold' is a mistranslation. The unity is in the flock (the people under one shepherd), not in a single enclosure (one institution).
17. The Father's love (*agapa*) for the Son is connected to the Son's willingness to die and rise. The verb *tithēmi* ('lay down, place') followed by *labō* ('take up, receive back') describes a voluntary, temporary surrender — death followed by resurrection. The 'again' (*palin*) points to resurrection as the completion of the act, not its reversal.
18. The Greek *exousia* ('authority, right, power') appears twice, asserting Jesus's sovereign control over both his death and his resurrection. The verb *airei* ('takes away') is negated absolutely (*oudeis*, 'no one') — Jesus's death is not imposed but chosen. Yet this sovereign freedom operates within the Father's command (*entolē*) — Jesus freely does what the Father has ordained. The tension between freedom and obedience is resolved in perfect alignment of wills.
19. The schisma ('division, split') recurs from 9:16 and 7:43 — Jesus's words consistently divide his audience. The adverb *palin* ('again') indicates this is a pattern, not an anomaly.
20. The charge of demon possession (*daimonion echei*) repeats from 7:20 and 8:48. The verb *mainetai* ('is mad, is insane') adds a new charge — raving madness. The combination suggests they hear his claims as the ravings of a possessed person. Their dismissive question ('why listen?') attempts to shut down the conversation.
21. The counter-argument has two parts: (1) Jesus's words are too coherent and meaningful to be demonic ravings, and (2) the healing of the blind man in chapter 9 provides concrete evidence that his power comes from God, not demons. The *mē* particle expects a negative answer: 'a demon can't open blind eyes, can it?' The reference back to the blind man's healing links chapters 9 and 10.
22. The *egkainia* ('Dedication, Renewal') is Hanukkah, commemorating the rededication of the temple by Judas Maccabeus in 164 BC after its desecration by Antiochus IV Epiphanes (1 Maccabees 4:36-59). The festival falls in Kislev (November-December). The note 'it was winter' (*cheimōn ēn*) may be simply calendrical or may carry symbolic weight — the season of cold and darkness as the theological conflict intensifies.
23. Solomon's Colonnade (*stoa tou Solomōnos*) was a covered portico on the eastern side of the temple mount, believed to date to Solomon's original temple. It was a common gathering place for teaching and debate (cf. Acts 3:11, 5:12). The location is public and prominent.
24. The verb *ekyklōsan* ('surrounded, encircled') suggests both physical and psychological pressure — they close in on him. The idiom *tēn psychēn hēmōn aireis* (lit. 'you take away our soul/life') means 'you hold us in suspense' or 'you keep us agitated.' The demand for *parrhēsia* ('plainness, openness, boldness') reflects their frustration with Jesus's indirect self-revelation. During Hanukkah, the question of messianic identity would carry particular weight — the festival commemorates a military deliverer.
25. Jesus's response reframes the problem: the issue is not insufficient evidence but insufficient faith. He has told them (*eipon hymin*) — through his 'I am' statements and his signs — and they have not believed. The works (*erga*, including healings, signs, and teaching) done 'in my Father's name' (*en tō onomati tou patros*) carry the Father's own authority and serve as testimony.
26. The logic is direct: unbelief is the evidence that they do not belong to Jesus's flock, not the cause of being excluded from it. The phrase *ek tōn probatōn tōn emōn* ('from my sheep') connects their unbelief to the shepherd discourse — they cannot hear his voice because they are not his sheep (cf. 8:47).
27. Three marks of the true sheep: they hear (*akouousin*, present tense — ongoing hearing), they are known by the shepherd (*ginōskō*, personal relational knowledge), and they follow (*akolouthousin*, habitual following). The order matters: hearing precedes knowing precedes following.
28. Three assurances correspond to the three marks of verse 27: eternal life is given (*didōmi*, present tense — ongoing gift), they will never perish (*ou mē apolōntai*, the strongest possible negation), and no one can forcibly remove them (*ouch harpasei*, 'will not snatch' — the same verb used of the wolf in v. 12). The security of the sheep rests in the shepherd's power, not in the sheep's strength.
29. The textual tradition here is complex — some manuscripts read 'what my Father has given me is greater than all' (emphasizing the gift), others 'my Father who has given them to me is greater than all' (emphasizing the Father). The theological point is the same: the sheep are doubly secure, held in both the Son's hand (v. 28) and the Father's hand. No external force can overcome either.
30. This is the theological summit of the chapter. The statement is concise to the point of explosive — five Greek words that generated centuries of theological debate. The audience's response (picking up stones, v. 31) confirms they hear this as a divine claim. The statement follows logically from vv. 28-29: if the sheep are equally secure in the Son's hand and the Father's hand, the two hands must be one.
31. The adverb *palin* ('again') connects to the stoning attempt in 8:59. The verb *ebastasan* ('picked up, carried') suggests they found stones in the temple precincts — possibly from ongoing construction work on the temple complex. Their intent to stone him for blasphemy (cf. v. 33) confirms they understood verse 30 as a divine claim, not merely a statement of prophetic alignment.

32. The adjective *kala* ('good, noble, beautiful') for the works echoes *kalos* in 'good shepherd' (v. 11) — the works are beautiful, noble, worthy of praise. The question forces them to identify which specific act merits death — the absurdity of stoning someone for doing good is laid bare.
33. The charge is explicit: *blasphēmia* ('blasphemy') — and the specific form of blasphemy is that a human being (*anthrōpos ōn*, 'being a man') claims to be *theon* ('God'). The phrase *poieis seauton theon* ('make yourself God') is how they interpret 'I and the Father are one.' They understand the claim correctly; what they dispute is Jesus's right to make it.
34. Jesus quotes Psalm 82:6, where God addresses the divine council or Israel's judges as 'gods' (*theoi*). The phrase 'your Law' (*tō nomō hymōn*) uses 'Law' broadly to include the Psalms (the entire Hebrew Scripture). Jesus's argument is a *qal wahomer* ('lesser to greater'): if Scripture itself applies the word 'gods' to human beings, how can it be blasphemy for the one the Father consecrated and sent to call himself God's Son?
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 82:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The parenthetical 'Scripture cannot be broken' (*ou dynatai lythēnai hē graphē*) is a significant assertion of the authority and inviolability of the written text. The verb *lythēnai* ('broken, loosened, dissolved') means Scripture cannot be invalidated or set aside. 'To whom the word of God came' identifies the 'gods' of Psalm 82 as recipients of divine revelation — mere humans who were nonetheless called 'gods' by God's own word.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 82 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The verb *hēgiasen* ('consecrated, set apart, sanctified') is particularly resonant during the Feast of Dedication (Hanukkah), which celebrates the rededication/consecration of the temple. Jesus implies he is the true consecrated one — the living temple (cf. 2:19-21). Note that Jesus says 'Son of God' (*huios tou theou*) here, not 'God' — he reframes their charge. The argument is: if Scripture calls humans 'gods,' how much more appropriate for the one the Father himself consecrated to say 'I am the Son of God'?
37. Jesus offers a falsifiable test: his works are the evidence. If they do not bear the character of the Father's works, disbelief is warranted. This is not an appeal to blind faith but to observable evidence — the signs and works he has performed throughout the Gospel.
38. The phrase 'the Father is in me and I am in the Father' (*en emoi ho patēr kagō en tō patri*) expresses mutual indwelling — a concept developed further in 14:10-11 and 17:21. The two verbs *gnōte kai ginōskēte* ('know and keep knowing') move from initial recognition (aorist) to ongoing understanding (present). Jesus offers the works as an entry point for those who cannot yet accept his word directly.
39. The verb *piasai* ('arrest, seize') indicates an official arrest attempt, not merely stoning. The phrase *exēlthen ek tēs cheiros autōn* ('went out from their hand') echoes the shepherd discourse: no one can snatch from the Father's hand (v. 29), and no one can seize the shepherd either. Jesus's escape is narrated without explanation — divine protection is implied.
40. Jesus returns to the location of his ministry's beginning (cf. 1:28) — a geographic and thematic return to origins. The verb *emeinen* ('stayed, remained') uses the key Johannine verb *menō*. The withdrawal beyond the Jordan is strategic, removing himself from Jerusalem's immediate danger while remaining accessible.
41. The contrast between John (no signs) and Jesus (many signs) highlights that John's authority was prophetic testimony, not miraculous power. Yet John's testimony is vindicated — 'everything John said about this man was true' (*alēthē ēn*). This verse connects the end of chapter 10 back to the beginning of the Gospel (1:19-34) and John the Baptist's witness.
42. The chapter ends on a note of faith — 'many believed' (*polloi episteusan*). In contrast to the rejection in Jerusalem, the people beyond the Jordan receive Jesus. The adverb *ekei* ('there') is emphatic: away from Jerusalem, away from the religious establishment, faith flourishes. This provides a hopeful conclusion before the Lazarus narrative in chapter 11.

11

Summary: *John 11 narrates the raising of Lazarus from the dead — the climactic seventh sign in John's Gospel. When Jesus receives word that his friend Lazarus is ill, he deliberately delays two days before traveling to Bethany, where he finds Lazarus already four days dead. Martha meets Jesus with a statement of faith and grievance: 'Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.' Jesus declares 'I am the resurrection and the life' and asks if she believes. At the tomb, Jesus weeps, then commands the stone removed and calls Lazarus out of the grave. The raising triggers two opposite responses: many believe, but the Sanhedrin convenes to plot Jesus's death. Caiaphas unwittingly prophesies that Jesus will die for the nation. The chapter closes with Jesus withdrawing to Ephraim as the authorities issue orders for his arrest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the longest sustained narrative in John's Gospel and the most theologically dense sign. The raising of Lazarus functions simultaneously as a historical event, a demonstration of Jesus's power over death, a prophetic sign of the general resurrection, and a catalyst for the crucifixion — the one who raises from death is sentenced to death precisely because he raises from death. The 'I am the resurrection and the life' declaration (v. 25) is the fifth 'I am' with predicate and*

arguably the most sweeping. Jesus's weeping at the tomb (v. 35, the shortest verse in the Bible) reveals the fully human emotional life of the one who has just claimed divine authority over death. Caiaphas's unwitting prophecy (vv. 49-52) is one of John's most brilliant ironies.

Translation Friction: The four-day delay is crucial — Jewish tradition held that the soul lingered near the body for three days, meaning by the fourth day decomposition confirmed death was irreversible. Jesus's emotional response involves two Greek words: dakryō ('shed tears,' v. 35) and embrimaomai ('deeply moved/indignant,' vv. 33, 38). The latter may indicate anger — at death itself, at the grief it causes, or at unbelief — rather than mere sadness. Lazarus's raising is not mentioned in the Synoptic Gospels, a significant omission that has generated extensive scholarly discussion.

Connections: The raising connects to Jesus's earlier claims about giving life (5:21, 25-29), the bread of life discourse (6:39-40, 54), and the good shepherd who lays down his life (10:11-18). Martha's confession (v. 27) parallels Peter's confession in the Synoptics (Matthew 16:16). The unwinding of grave cloths (v. 44) anticipates the resurrection narrative (20:6-7). Caiaphas's prophecy connects to Isaiah 53 (the servant dying for the people) and to John's understanding of the cross as gathering (cf. 12:32).

¹Now a man named Lazarus was ill. He was from Bethany, the village of Mary and her sister Martha. ²Mary was the one who anointed the Lord with perfume and wiped his feet with her hair; it was her brother Lazarus who was ill. ³So the sisters sent word to him, saying, "Lord, the one you love is ill." ⁴When Jesus heard this, he said, "This illness does not lead to death. It is for the glory of God, so that the Son of God may be glorified through it." ⁵And Lazarus, now Jesus loved Martha, and her sister. ⁶So when he heard that Lazarus was ill, he stayed where he was for two more days. ⁷Then after this he said to the disciples, "Let us go to Judea again." ⁸The disciples said to him, "Rabbi, the Jewish leaders were just now trying to stone you, and you are going there again?" ⁹Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve hours in a day? If anyone walks during the day, he does not stumble, because he sees the light of this world. ¹⁰But if anyone walks at night, he stumbles, because the light is not in him." ¹¹After saying this, he told them, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, but I am going to wake him up." ¹²The disciples said to him, "Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will recover." ¹³Jesus had spoken about his death, but they thought he was talking about ordinary sleep. ¹⁴So then Jesus told them plainly, "Lazarus has died. ¹⁵And for your sake I am glad that I was not there, so that you may believe. But let us go to him." ¹⁶So Thomas, called the Twin, said to his fellow disciples, "Let us also go, so that we may die with him." ¹⁷When Jesus arrived, he found that Lazarus had already been in the tomb for four days. ¹⁸Bethany was near Jerusalem, about two miles away, ¹⁹Numerous of the Jews arrived to Martha and Mary, to comfort them concerning their brother. ²⁰When Martha heard that Jesus was coming, she went to meet him, but Mary stayed seated in the house. ²¹Martha said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died. ²²But even now I know that whatever you ask from God, God will give you." ²³Jesus said to her, "Your brother will rise again." ²⁴Martha said to him, "I know that he will rise again in the resurrection on the last day." ²⁵Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection and the life. The one who believes in me, even if he dies, will live, ²⁶Whosoever liveth and believes in me will never die. Believest you this? ²⁷So he said to her, "Yes, Lord. I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God, the one coming into the world." ²⁸After saying this, she went and called her sister Mary, saying quietly, "The Teacher is here and is asking for you." ²⁹When she heard this, she got up quickly and went to him. ³⁰Jesus had not yet come into the village but was still at the place where Martha had met him. ³¹When the Jewish people who were with her in the house consoling her saw Mary get up quickly and go out, they followed her, assuming she was going to the tomb to weep there. ³²When Mary came to where Jesus was and saw him, she fell at his feet and said to him, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died." ³³When Jesus saw her weeping, and the Jewish people who had come with her also weeping, he was deeply moved in his spirit and troubled. ³⁴He said, "Where have you laid him?" They said to him, "Lord, come and see." ³⁵Indeed, Jesus wept. ³⁶So the Jewish people said, "See how he loved him!" ³⁷But some of them said, "Could not this man, who opened the eyes of the blind man, have kept Lazarus from dying?" ³⁸Then Jesus, deeply moved again within himself, came to the tomb. It was a cave, and a stone was lying against it. ³⁹Jesus said, "Remove the stone." Martha, the sister of the dead man, said to him, "Lord, by now there will be a stench, for he has been dead four days." ⁴⁰Jesus said to her, "Did I not tell you that if you believe, you will see the glory of God?" ⁴¹So they removed the stone. Jesus looked upward and said, "Father, I thank you that you have heard me. ⁴²I knew

that you always hear me, but I said this for the sake of the crowd standing here, so that they may believe that you sent me." ⁴³ After saying this, he cried out with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out!" ⁴⁴ The dead man came out, his hands and feet bound with linen strips, and his face wrapped with a cloth. Jesus said to them, "Unbind him, and let him go." ⁴⁵ Many of the Jewish people who had come to Mary and had seen what he did believed in him. ⁴⁶ But some of them went to the Pharisees and told them what Jesus had done. ⁴⁷ So the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered a council meeting and said, "What are we going to do? For this man is performing many signs. ⁴⁸ If we let him go on like this, everyone will believe in him, and the Romans will come and take away both our place and our nation." ⁴⁹ But one of them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, "You know nothing at all. ⁵⁰ You do not consider that it is better for you that one man die for the people than that the whole nation perish." ⁵¹ He did not say this on his own, but being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus was going to die for the nation, ⁵² Not for that nation sole, but that as well he should gather as one in one the God's children that were scattered abroad. ⁵³ So from that day on they plotted to put him to death. ⁵⁴ Therefore Jesus no longer walked openly among the Jewish leaders but went from there to the region near the wilderness, to a town called Ephraim, and he stayed there with his disciples. ⁵⁵ Now the Passover of the Jewish people was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the countryside before the Passover to purify themselves. ⁵⁶ They were looking for Jesus and asking one another as they stood in the temple, "What do you think? Surely he will not come to the feast?" ⁵⁷ Now the chief priests and the Pharisees had given orders that anyone who knew where he was should report it, so that they could arrest him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Lazarus (Greek Lazaros from Hebrew Eleazar, 'God has helped') is introduced by his illness, his hometown, and his sisters. Bethany was a village about two miles east of Jerusalem on the slopes of the Mount of Olives (cf. v. 18). John identifies the village by its residents rather than its geography, suggesting the sisters were well known to his audience.
2. John identifies Mary by an event he has not yet narrated (the anointing occurs in 12:1-8), suggesting his readers already knew the story. The detail 'wiped his feet with her hair' distinguishes this Mary from other anointing accounts in the Synoptics. The parenthetical identification reinforces the family connection: Lazarus is defined in relation to his sisters.
3. The message is restrained — no explicit request, only a statement of fact that assumes Jesus will act. The verb *phileis* ('you love,' from *phileō*) indicates personal affection and friendship. The sisters trust that the information alone will be sufficient to move Jesus to come.
4. Jesus's statement is true at a deeper level than it appears: Lazarus will die, but his death is not the final destination — it serves the glory (*doxa*) of God. The purpose clause *hina doxasthē* ('so that he may be glorified') connects the sign to its ultimate meaning. The phrase 'the Son of God' (*ho huios tou theou*) appears rarely in John as a self-designation and carries full Christological weight here.
5. The verb *ēgapa* (from *agapaō*) is used here rather than *phileō* (v. 3). John uses both verbs for Jesus's love without a clear semantic distinction in this passage. The sentence is placed before the delay, emphasizing that Jesus's decision to wait is not a failure of love but operates within it.
6. The conjunction *oun* ('so, therefore') is startling — 'therefore he stayed.' The delay is deliberate, not accidental. Combined with one day's travel each way, the two-day delay ensures Lazarus will have been dead four days when Jesus arrives. The delay serves the sign: a four-day-dead man is beyond any natural recovery, making the miracle unmistakable.
7. The verb *agōmen* ('let us go') is a hortatory subjunctive, inviting the disciples to join him. The adverb *palin* ('again') recalls the danger — they had just fled Judea after the stoning attempt (10:31, 39). The return to Judea is a return to danger.
8. The adverb *nyn* ('just now, recently') emphasizes the immediacy of the danger — the stoning attempt was not ancient history but recent experience. The disciples' question reveals understandable fear mixed with incredulity.
9. The question is rhetorical: daylight hours are appointed and sufficient. The metaphor means Jesus has an appointed time for his work, and while that time lasts, he cannot be stopped. 'The light of this world' (to *phōs tou kosmou toutou*) here refers to the sun, but John's readers would hear the echo of 8:12 and 9:5 where Jesus is the light of the world.
10. The shift from 'sees the light of this world' (external light, v. 9) to 'the light is not in him' (internal light, v. 10) is significant. The one who walks in darkness stumbles not merely because it is dark outside but because there is no light within. This connects to the Johannine theme of internal illumination through faith.
11. Jesus uses the metaphor of sleep (*kekoimētai*, perfect of *koimaō*, 'has fallen asleep') for death — a common biblical euphemism (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:13-14, Daniel 12:2) that takes on literal force when spoken by the one who can reverse death. The perfect tense indicates a completed state: Lazarus is currently in the state of having fallen asleep. The verb *exypnisō* ('wake up') shows Jesus views death as a temporary condition he can reverse.

11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 12:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The disciples understand Jesus literally: if Lazarus is sleeping, sleep is healing, and he will get better (sōthēsetai, 'he will be saved/healed'). The misunderstanding is typically Johannine — the audience takes Jesus's words at face value while the deeper meaning escapes them.
13. John provides the narrator's clarification, as he often does after misunderstandings (cf. 2:21, 6:71, 7:39, 12:33). The phrase koimēseōs tou hypnou ('the rest of sleep') is emphatic — literal, physical sleep, not the metaphorical sleep of death.
14. The adverb parrēsia ('plainly, openly') contrasts with the figurative language of verse 11. The blunt statement Lazaros apethanen ('Lazarus died') uses the aorist — a completed event. Jesus knows Lazarus is dead without having been told, demonstrating the supernatural knowledge that characterizes John's portrayal of Jesus.
15. Jesus's gladness (chairō) is not callousness about Lazarus's death but satisfaction that the disciples will witness a sign that deepens their faith. His absence was deliberate (cf. v. 6): had he been present, he would have healed Lazarus, and the disciples would have seen another healing. Instead, they will see a resurrection — a sign of a completely different order.
16. Thomas (Aramaic for 'twin,' translated by the Greek Didymos) appears here with characteristic blunt pessimism (cf. 14:5, 20:25). His statement is darkly loyal: he expects the trip to Judea to result in death but is willing to share it. The 'him' (autou) is ambiguous — it could mean 'die with Jesus' or 'die with Lazarus.' Most naturally it refers to Jesus, since the danger is in Judea.
17. The four days (tessaras hēmeras) is theologically significant: Jewish tradition held that the soul departed the body definitively after three days, when decomposition set in (cf. v. 39). By the fourth day, death was considered irreversible. Jesus arrives when human hope has been exhausted.
18. The Greek stadiōn dekapente ('fifteen stadia') equals approximately 1.7 miles (2.8 km). We render with the approximate modern equivalent for clarity. The proximity to Jerusalem explains both the presence of many mourners from the city (v. 19) and the rapid report of the miracle to the authorities (v. 46).
19. The verb paramythēsōntai ('console, comfort, encourage') describes the formal Jewish mourning practice of visiting the bereaved. Here hoi Ioudaioi refers to Jewish people from Jerusalem generally (neighbors and acquaintances), not the hostile authorities. The pluperfect elēlytheisan ('had come') indicates they were already present when Jesus arrived.
20. The sisters' responses are consistent with their characterizations in Luke 10:38-42: Martha is active and initiative-taking; Mary remains seated. The verb ekathezeto ('was sitting, remained seated') may indicate mourning posture — mourners traditionally sat on low seats or the ground during the shiva period.
21. The conditional ei ēs hōde ('if you had been here') is a contrary-to-fact condition expressing both grief and implicit trust — she believes Jesus could have prevented the death. Mary will say the identical words in verse 32, suggesting the sisters had spoken these words to each other during the waiting period. The address Kyrie ('Lord') carries genuine reverence.
22. The phrase alla kai nyn ('but even now') pushes beyond grief to tentative hope. Martha does not explicitly ask for resurrection, but her words leave the door open. The verb aitēsē ('ask, request') and the confident oida ('I know') express a faith that does not fully grasp what is about to happen but trusts in Jesus's relationship with God.
23. The verb anastēsetai ('will rise') is deliberately ambiguous — it could refer to the general resurrection at the last day (as Martha takes it in v. 24) or to an imminent, present-tense rising. Jesus's statements in John frequently operate on multiple levels simultaneously.
24. Martha's response is orthodox Pharisaic theology — belief in bodily resurrection at the eschaton (cf. Daniel 12:2, 2 Maccabees 7:9). Her oida ('I know') is theologically correct but inadequate to the moment: she knows about future resurrection but does not yet grasp that the resurrection stands before her in person. Jesus will redirect her from eschatological hope to present encounter.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 12:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The fifth 'I am' statement with predicate. By identifying himself as both hē anastasis ('the resurrection') and hē zōē ('the life'), Jesus claims to be the source and embodiment of both. The sequence 'even if he dies, will live' addresses physical death: faith in Jesus does not prevent physical death but renders it temporary.
26. The second clause addresses the living: those who believe in Jesus will never experience the ultimate death (ou mē apothanē eis ton aiōna, 'will absolutely never die into the age'). Verse 25 addresses those who have already died; verse 26 addresses those now living. Together they cover all cases. The direct question 'Do you believe this?' (pisteueis touto) shifts from theological declaration to personal challenge — Martha must respond.
27. Martha's confession is one of the most complete in the Gospels, paralleling Peter's confession in Matthew 16:16. Three titles: ho Christos ('the Christ/Messiah'), ho huios tou theou ('the Son of God'), and ho eis ton kosmon erchomenos ('the one coming into the world'). The perfect tense pepisteuka ('I have believed and continue to believe') indicates settled, enduring faith. This is the confession the Fourth Gospel aims to produce in its readers (cf. 20:31).
28. Martha calls Jesus ho didaskalos ('the Teacher') — a title of respect and intimacy. The adverb lathra ('secretly, quietly') suggests discretion: Martha does not want the mourners to follow and create a commotion before Mary and Jesus can meet privately. The verb phonei ('calls, summons') indicates a specific request from Jesus to see Mary.

29. The adverb tachy ('quickly') shows Mary's eager response — she does not hesitate. The passive ēgerthē ('was raised, got up') uses the same verb root (egeirō) that describes resurrection, a coincidence John may intend: Mary rises from mourning at the Teacher's call.
30. This geographical note explains why Mary must go out to Jesus rather than Jesus coming to her. He remained outside the village, perhaps deliberately — the encounter will eventually move to the tomb, which was also outside the village.
31. The mourners' assumption (doxantes, 'supposing, assuming') is wrong but natural — a bereaved sister rushing out would typically be going to the tomb to grieve. Their following creates an audience for the miracle, fulfilling the narrative requirement that many witnesses be present (cf. vv. 45-46).
32. Mary's words are identical to Martha's in verse 21, but her posture differs — she falls at Jesus's feet (epesen autou pros tous podas), a gesture of both reverence and grief. Unlike Martha, Mary does not add any expression of continued hope (cf. Martha's v. 22). Her grief is raw and unqualified. This is the same posture she will take in 12:3 when she anoints Jesus's feet.
33. The verb enebrimēsato (from embrimaomai) is difficult to translate: it denotes a deep, forceful emotion — sometimes anger, indignation, or a snorting like a horse. The most likely sense here is a combination of grief at the devastation death causes and anger at death itself as an enemy. The reflexive etaraxen heauton ('troubled himself') indicates this was not involuntary emotion but something Jesus allowed himself to feel fully. The same verb (tarassō) appears at 12:27 and 13:21.
34. Jesus's question 'Where have you laid him?' does not indicate ignorance (he already knew of Lazarus's death in v. 14) but draws the mourners into active participation in what is about to happen. The invitation 'come and see' (erchou kai ide) echoes the invitation in 1:39 and 1:46 — words that in John lead to revelation.
35. The shortest verse in the Bible, but among the most theologically significant. The verb edakrysen (from dakryō, 'to shed tears') is distinct from the loud wailing (klaiō) used of Mary and the mourners. Jesus's tears are quiet and controlled but genuine. The one who has just claimed to be the resurrection and the life weeps at the tomb of his friend — the fully divine one is fully human. The rendering matches the KJV because the Greek is so simple and direct that there is no meaningfully different modern rendering.
36. The mourners' observation is genuine and correct — ephilei ('he loved,' imperfect of phileō) indicates ongoing personal affection. The imperfect tense captures habitual, characteristic love. Even Jesus's opponents recognize the depth of his friendship with Lazarus.
37. The reference to opening blind eyes connects directly to chapter 9. The question is logical: if Jesus can heal congenital blindness, why not prevent death? The implied criticism is that Jesus's power (or willingness) has limits. The answer will come in the next few verses — Jesus's power exceeds their imagination.
38. The second occurrence of embrimaomai (cf. v. 33) underscores the intensity of Jesus's emotional engagement. The tomb is described as a spēlaion ('cave') with a stone placed against (epekeito, 'was lying upon/against') the entrance — a typical first-century Jewish rock-cut tomb sealed with a rolling stone or blocking stone.
39. Martha's objection is practical and visceral: ozei ('it stinks, there is an odor') refers to the decomposition of a four-day-old corpse. The term tetartaïos ('fourth-day,' an adjective meaning 'of the fourth day') confirms what the narrative has established — Lazarus is unambiguously dead and decomposing. Martha's faith (v. 27) does not yet encompass the immediate possibility of resurrection.
40. Jesus refers back to verse 4 (the illness is for God's glory) and verse 25 (the resurrection claim), though neither statement was made directly to Martha in those exact words — the reference may encompass the message sent through the sisters (v. 4) and the conversation of vv. 25-26. The conditional ean pisteusēs ('if you believe') makes sight dependent on faith, not faith on sight.
41. The prayer begins with eucharistō ('I thank, I give thanks') — not petition but thanksgiving, as if the outcome is already settled. The aorist ēkousas ('you heard') treats the hearing as a completed event. Jesus's prayer is not a request but an acknowledgment that the Father has already answered.
42. Jesus explains that the audible prayer is pedagogical — the crowd needs to hear it so they understand the miracle's source. The phrase pantote mou akoueis ('you always hear me') asserts a permanent, unbroken communion between Father and Son. The purpose clause hina pisteusōsin ('so that they may believe') reveals that the entire event — including the delay, the grief, and the miracle — serves the mission of bringing people to faith.
43. The verb ekraugasen ('cried out, shouted') with phōnē megalē ('a great/loud voice') describes a commanding shout — not a whisper or a prayer but a sovereign summons to the dead. The command deuro exō ('come out here') is simple, direct, and imperative. Augustine famously noted that Jesus specified 'Lazarus' by name because, had he simply said 'come out,' all the dead would have risen.
44. John describes Lazarus as ho tethnēkōs ('the one having died, the dead man') — even in the act of emerging, the narrative emphasizes he was genuinely dead. The keiriai ('linen strips, burial wrappings') bound hands and feet according to Jewish burial custom. The soudarion ('face cloth, sweat cloth') is the same word used in 20:7 for the cloth found in Jesus's empty tomb — but at Jesus's resurrection, the cloths are left behind neatly, not unwound by human hands. The command 'unbind him and let him go' (lysate auton kai aphete auton hypagein) involves the community in the miracle's completion.
45. The expected response: eyewitnesses of the raising believe (episteusan, aorist — they came to faith). The sign fulfills its purpose (cf. v. 42). These are the same mourners from verse 19 who had come to console the sisters.
46. The tines ('some') who report to the Pharisees may be hostile informants or may simply be reporting a remarkable event — John does not specify their motive. Either way, the report triggers the fateful council meeting in the next verse. The proximity of Bethany to Jerusalem (v. 18) makes the

rapid communication plausible.

47. The synedrion ('council, Sanhedrin') indicates a formal session of the ruling body. The question *ti poioumen* ('what are we doing?' or 'what should we do?') reveals panic and paralysis. They do not dispute the signs (*sēmeia*) — the reality of the miracles is conceded. Their concern is entirely political and practical, not theological.
48. The fear is political: a popular messianic movement will provoke Roman intervention. The 'place' (*topon*) likely refers to the temple, and the 'nation' (*ethnos*) to Jewish national autonomy. John's readers, writing after 70 AD, would recognize the bitter irony: the Romans did come and destroy both the temple and the nation — the very outcome the council hoped to prevent by killing Jesus.
49. The phrase *archiereus ōn tou eniautou ekeinou* ('being high priest that year') does not mean the office rotated annually — Caiaphas served as high priest from about 18-36 AD. John specifies the year to connect the high priesthood to the specific year of Jesus's death. Caiaphas's opening dismissal (*hymeis ouk oidate ouden*, 'you know nothing') is contemptuous and politically shrewd.
50. Caiaphas's political calculus — sacrifice one to save many — is straightforward realpolitik. The verb *sympherei* ('it is advantageous, it is better') is coldly pragmatic. But John will immediately reinterpret these words as unwitting prophecy (vv. 51-52). The phrase *heis anthrōpos apothanē hyper tou laou* ('one man die for the people') uses the same preposition (*hyper*, 'for, on behalf of') that Jesus used of the good shepherd laying down his life (10:11, 15).
51. John's editorial comment transforms Caiaphas's political statement into prophetic oracle. The phrase *aph' heautou ouk eipen* ('he did not say this on his own') indicates that a power beyond Caiaphas was speaking through him — the high priestly office carried prophetic capacity that operated independently of the priest's own intentions. The verb *eprophēteusen* ('he prophesied') is the narrator's authoritative interpretation.
52. John expands the prophecy beyond Caiaphas's intent: Jesus dies not only for the Jewish nation but to gather (*synagagē*, from *synagō* — the verb root of 'synagogue') all God's scattered children into one community. The phrase *ta tekna tou theou ta dieskorpismena* ('the scattered children of God') echoes the 'other sheep' of 10:16 and connects to the prophetic vision of Israel's regathering (Isaiah 11:12, 43:5-6, Ezekiel 37:21) now extended to include Gentiles.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 11:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 37:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. The verb *ebouleusanto* ('they deliberated, resolved, plotted') marks the formal decision to kill Jesus. The raising of Lazarus — Jesus's greatest sign of life — becomes the direct cause of the decision to end his life. This is John's supreme irony: the one who gives life is condemned to death for giving life.
54. Ephraim is likely the modern village of et-Taiyibeh, about fifteen miles northeast of Jerusalem on the edge of the Judean wilderness. The withdrawal is temporary — Jesus will return for Passover (v. 55). The verb *emeinen* ('stayed, remained') uses *menō*, and he remains with his disciples (*meta tōn mathētōn*), withdrawing from public ministry to the community of faith.
55. This is the third and final Passover in John's Gospel (cf. 2:13, 6:4). The purification (*hagnisōsin heautous*) refers to ritual cleansing required before participating in the Passover — those who had contracted uncleanness through contact with a corpse or other sources needed to purify themselves in advance (cf. Numbers 9:6-12). The irony: they purify themselves for Passover while the true Passover Lamb is about to be slaughtered.
55. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 9:6-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
56. The crowd's speculation builds suspense: will Jesus come to this Passover, knowing the authorities want him dead? The *ou mē* ('surely not') with the subjunctive *ēlthē* expects a negative answer — they doubt he will risk it. But the readers know Jesus has already indicated he will lay down his life voluntarily (10:17-18).
57. The pluperfect *dedōkeisan* ('had given') indicates the orders preceded the crowd's speculation — the authorities had already set the trap. The verb *mēnysē* ('report, inform, disclose') makes the public complicit in the arrest — everyone becomes a potential informant. The chapter ends with the net closing around Jesus, setting the stage for the events of chapters 12-19.

12

Summary: *John 12 transitions from public ministry to the passion narrative. It opens with Mary's anointing of Jesus at Bethany — an extravagant act of devotion that Jesus interprets as preparation for his burial. The triumphal entry into Jerusalem follows, with crowds waving palm branches and shouting 'Hosanna.' Greeks seeking Jesus trigger his declaration that 'the hour has come' for the Son of Man to be glorified, which he describes through the metaphor of a grain of wheat dying to bear fruit. A voice from heaven confirms him. Jesus reflects on the meaning of his death — 'when I am lifted up from the earth, I will draw all people to myself' — then withdraws as the crowd fails to understand. The chapter closes with John's theological summary: despite the signs, most did not believe, fulfilling Isaiah's prophecy. Jesus makes a final public appeal about light, judgment, and the Father's command.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter marks the hinge of John's Gospel — the end of the 'Book of Signs' (chs. 1-12) and the threshold of the 'Book of Glory' (chs. 13-21). The anointing at Bethany, the triumphal entry, and the coming of the Greeks form a triptych that interprets Jesus's death as simultaneously an act of love, a royal claim, and a universal mission. The grain-of-wheat metaphor (v. 24) is one of Jesus's most profound self-descriptions: life through death, glory through humiliation. The voice from heaven (v. 28) is the Johannine equivalent of the Synoptic transfiguration. Isaiah 6:10 and 53:1 are quoted together (vv. 38-40), weaving together the themes of prophetic rejection and suffering servanthood.*

Translation Friction: *The chronology of the anointing differs between John (six days before Passover) and the Synoptics. Judas is identified as the objector in John, while in Matthew it is the disciples generally. The identification of the voice from heaven as 'thunder' or 'an angel' by the crowd (v. 29) parallels the Synoptic transfiguration accounts but occurs in a different setting. The 'Greeks' (Hellēnes, v. 20) are likely Gentile God-fearers who attended Jewish festivals, not Greek-speaking Jews.*

Connections: *The anointing connects to Mark 14:3-9 and anticipates the burial in 19:38-42. The triumphal entry fulfills Zechariah 9:9 and connects to Psalm 118:25-26. The grain-of-wheat metaphor connects to 1 Corinthians 15:36-37. 'Lifted up' (v. 32) resumes the language of 3:14 and 8:28. The Isaiah quotations connect to the broader theme of prophetic rejection. The 'prince of this world' (v. 31) connects to 14:30 and 16:11.*

¹Six days before the Passover, Jesus came to Bethany, where Lazarus was — the one whom Jesus had raised from the dead. ²So they gave a dinner for him there. Martha served, and Lazarus was one of those reclining at table with him. ³Mary then took a pound of expensive perfume made of pure nard, anointed Jesus's feet, and wiped his feet with her hair. The house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume. ⁴But Judas Iscariot, one of his disciples — the one who was about to betray him — said, ⁵"Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and the money given to the poor?" ⁶He said this not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief. As keeper of the money bag, he used to help himself to what was put into it. ⁷Jesus said, "Leave her alone. She intended to keep it for the day of my burial. ⁸You always have the poor with you, but you do not always have me." ⁹When the large crowd of the Jewish people learned that Jesus was there, they came not only because of him but also to see Lazarus, whom he had raised from the dead. ¹⁰So the chief priests made plans to put Lazarus to death as well, ¹¹because that by reason of him numerous of the Jews traveled away, and believed on Jesus. ¹²The next day the large crowd that had come for the feast heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem. ¹³They took palm branches and went out to meet him, shouting, "Hosanna! Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord — the King of Israel!" ¹⁴Jesus found a young donkey and sat on it, as it is written: ¹⁵"Do not be afraid, daughter of Zion. See, your king is coming, seated on a donkey's colt." ¹⁶His disciples did not understand these things at first, but when Jesus was glorified, then they remembered that these things had been written about him and that they had done these things to him. ¹⁷The crowd that had been with him when he called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him from the dead continued to testify about it. ¹⁸This is also why the crowd went to meet him — because they heard that he had performed this sign. ¹⁹So the Pharisees said to one another, "You see that you are gaining nothing. Look — the whole world has gone after him!" ²⁰Now there were some Greeks among those who had come up to worship at the feast. ²¹So they came to Philip, who was from Bethsaida in Galilee, and asked him, "Sir,

we want to see Jesus." ²²Philip went and told Andrew; then Andrew and Philip went and told Jesus. ²³Jesus answered them, "The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified. ²⁴Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains just a single grain. But if it dies, it produces much fruit. ²⁵The one who loves his life loses it, and the one who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life. ²⁶If anyone serves me, he must follow me, and where I am, there my servant will be also. If anyone serves me, the Father will honor him." ²⁷"Now my soul is troubled. And what should I say — 'Father, save me from this hour'? But it is for this purpose that I have come to this hour. ²⁸Father, glorify your name." Then a voice came from heaven: "I have glorified it, and I will glorify it again." ²⁹The crowd standing there heard it and said it had thundered. Others said, "An angel has spoken to him." ³⁰Jesus answered, "This voice came not for my sake but for yours. ³¹Now is the judgment of this world. Now the ruler of this world will be cast out. ³²And I, when I am lifted up from the earth, will draw all people to myself." ³³He said this to indicate the kind of death he was going to die. ³⁴So the crowd answered him, "We have heard from the Law that the Christ remains forever. How can you say that the Son of Man must be lifted up? Who is this Son of Man?" ³⁵So Jesus said to them, "The light is among you for a little while longer. Walk while you have the light, so that the darkness does not overtake you. The one who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going. ³⁶While you have the light, believe in the light, so that you may become children of light." After saying this, Jesus departed and hid himself from them. ³⁷Although he had performed so many signs in their presence, they did not believe in him, ³⁸Indeed, that the declaring of Esaias the prophet of old could be fulfilled, which he spoke, Lord, who has believed our report? and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed? ³⁹For this reason they could not believe, because Isaiah also said: ⁴⁰"He has blinded their eyes and hardened their hearts, so that they would not see with their eyes or understand with their hearts, and turn — and I would heal them." ⁴¹Isaiah said these things because he saw his glory and spoke about him. ⁴²Nevertheless, many even among the leaders believed in him, but because of the Pharisees they did not confess it, so that they would not be expelled from the synagogue. ⁴³For they loved the glory that comes from people more than the glory that comes from God. ⁴⁴Then Jesus cried out and said, "The one who believes in me does not believe in me only, but in the one who sent me. ⁴⁵And the one who sees me sees the one who sent me. ⁴⁶I have come into the world as light, so that everyone who believes in me may not remain in darkness. ⁴⁷If anyone hears my words and does not keep them, I do not judge him, for I did not come to judge the world but to save the world. ⁴⁸The one who rejects me and does not receive my words has a judge: the word that I have spoken will judge him on the last day. ⁴⁹For I have not spoken on my own authority, but the Father who sent me has himself given me a commandment — what to say and what to speak. ⁵⁰And I know that his commandment is eternal life. So whatever I say, I say just as the Father has told me."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The time marker 'six days before the Passover' (pro hex hēmerōn tou pascha) places the anointing on the Saturday evening before the final week. The identification of Bethany through Lazarus — 'whom Jesus had raised from the dead' — keeps the raising miracle in view and reminds the reader that Lazarus is living proof of Jesus's power over death.
2. Martha's serving (diēkonei, from diakoneō, the root of 'deacon') is consistent with her characterization in Luke 10:40. Lazarus reclining at table (anakeimenōn, the standard posture for formal dining) is a quiet, powerful detail: the man who was dead four days ago now dines as a living guest.
3. The litra ('pound,' approximately 327 grams or 12 ounces) of nard — an aromatic oil imported from the Himalayas — was extraordinarily expensive (v. 5 values it at 300 denarii, nearly a year's wages). The adjective pistikēs ('pure, genuine, unadulterated') emphasizes quality. Mary anoints Jesus's feet (not his head, as in Mark 14:3), an act of extreme humility, and wipes them with her hair — a shocking intimate gesture in a culture where women kept their hair covered in public. The detail that the fragrance filled the house (hē oikia eplērōthē) is sensory and symbolic: the extravagance of devotion permeates everything.
4. John identifies the objector specifically as Judas (the Synoptics generalize), and immediately adds the editorial tag ho mellōn auton paradidonai ('the one about to betray him'). This characterization colors everything Judas says with duplicity. The verb paradidonai ('hand over, betray') is the standard term for Judas's act throughout the Gospels.
5. Three hundred denarii represented approximately a year's wages for a common laborer (cf. Matthew 20:2, where one denarius is a day's wage). Judas frames his objection as concern for the poor, giving it moral weight. The question implies Mary's act is wasteful.
6. John's narrator strips away Judas's pretense with blunt editorial commentary. The word kleptēs ('thief') is the same word used for the one who does not enter the sheepfold through the gate (10:1). The glōssokomon ('money bag, money box,' originally a case for flute reeds) was the common purse of the group. The verb ebastazen can mean 'carried' (neutral) or 'carried away, pilfered' (negative) — John intends the latter.

7. The Greek is syntactically difficult: hina... tērēsē auto ('so that she might keep it') has been interpreted as (1) 'let her keep the remaining perfume for my burial,' (2) 'she bought it in order to keep it for my burial day,' or (3) 'leave her alone — she has kept it for the purpose of my burial.' We follow the second sense: the anointing itself is the burial preparation, whether Mary fully understands this or not. Jesus interprets her act as prophetically anticipating his death.
8. Jesus alludes to Deuteronomy 15:11 ('the poor will never cease from the land'). The statement does not dismiss care for the poor (Deuteronomy 15:11 commands generosity) but asserts the unique, unrepeatable nature of this moment. Jesus's physical presence is temporary; the opportunity to honor him in this way will soon pass.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 15:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Lazarus has become a living attraction — people come to see the man who was dead and is now alive. He is walking evidence of Jesus's power. The dual motivation (dia ton Iēsoun... kai ton Lazaron) shows the raising has become inseparable from Jesus's public reputation.
10. The plot extends to Lazarus — they want to destroy the evidence. The logic is brutally pragmatic: a living Lazarus is an ongoing testimony to Jesus's power. The verb ebouleusanto ('resolved, plotted') is the same word used for the decision to kill Jesus (11:53). The priests' willingness to murder an innocent man to suppress a miracle reveals how far institutional self-preservation has corrupted their mission.
11. The verb hypēgon ('were going away, were departing') suggests people were leaving the authority of the religious leaders and transferring their allegiance to Jesus. The imperfect tense indicates an ongoing trend, not a single event. Lazarus's existence was causing a steady hemorrhage of loyalty.
12. The 'next day' (tē epaurion) places the triumphal entry on the day after the anointing — traditionally identified as Sunday (Palm Sunday). The crowd consists of Passover pilgrims (ho elthōn eis tēn heortēn), not merely Jerusalem residents. The news of Jesus's approach creates spontaneous excitement.
13. The baia tōn phoinikōn ('branches of palm trees') are mentioned only in John among the Gospel accounts. Palm branches were symbols of Jewish nationalism and military victory (cf. 1 Maccabees 13:51, 2 Maccabees 10:7). The crowd quotes Psalm 118:25-26, a Hallel psalm sung at Passover, adding 'the King of Israel' (ho basileus tou Israēl) — a political-messianic title not in the original psalm. 'Hosanna' (Hebrew hoshi'a na, 'save now, please save') had evolved from a prayer into an acclamation of praise.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 118:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. John's account is compressed compared to the Synoptics (no disciples sent to fetch the animal). The onarion ('young donkey, donkey colt') fulfills the prophecy quoted in the next verse. The verb heurōn ('having found') suggests Jesus actively sought the donkey — the act is deliberate, not accidental.
15. The quotation combines Zephaniah 3:16 ('Do not fear, O Zion') with Zechariah 9:9 ('your king comes to you... riding on a donkey'). John abbreviates the Zechariah text, omitting 'humble and mounted on a donkey' — the full context in Zechariah presents a king who comes in humility and peace, not on a war horse. The choice of a donkey is a deliberate counter-symbol to Roman military procession.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 9:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zephaniah 3:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. A characteristic Johannine retrospective note (cf. 2:22, 7:39): understanding comes after the resurrection ('when Jesus was glorified,' hote edoxasthē). The verb emnēsthēsan ('they remembered') describes a Spirit-aided recollection that connects Scripture to the events they witnessed. John is honest about the disciples' initial incomprehension.
17. The imperfect emartyrei ('kept testifying, continued to bear witness') shows the Lazarus witnesses were actively spreading the story. The eyewitnesses function as evangelists — their testimony drives the growing crowds of verse 18.
18. John explicitly connects the triumphal entry to the Lazarus miracle: the crowds come because of the raising. The word sēmeion ('sign') rather than 'miracle' maintains John's theological vocabulary — the raising is not merely a wonder but a pointer to Jesus's identity.
19. The Pharisees' frustrated exaggeration — ho kosmos opisō autou apēlthen ('the world has gone after him') — is deeply ironic in John's theology, where kosmos ('world') is precisely what Jesus came to save (3:16). They speak more truth than they know. Their admission of failure ('you are gaining nothing,' ouk ōpheleite ouden) is also ironic: the verb ōpheleō is the same root Caiaphas used in 11:50 ('it is better,' sympherei) — their efforts are futile.
20. The Hellēnes ('Greeks') are Gentile God-fearers — non-Jews who were attracted to Jewish monotheism and came to worship at the temple festivals. They would have been limited to the Court of the Gentiles. Their arrival immediately following the Pharisees' statement 'the world has gone after him' is John's ironic confirmation: the world — including Gentiles — is indeed coming to Jesus.
21. The Greeks approach Philip, possibly because his Greek name made him seem approachable to non-Jews. Bethsaida, in the tetrarchy of Philip, had a significant Gentile population. The request thelomen ton Iēsoun idein ('we want to see Jesus') is simple and direct. The verb idein ('to see') in John often carries the deeper meaning of perceiving, understanding, and believing.

22. Philip and Andrew, the only two disciples with Greek names, serve as intermediaries between the Gentile seekers and Jesus. The chain of communication (Greeks Philip Andrew Jesus) may reflect early church practice of Gentile inclusion through apostolic mediation. John does not record whether the Greeks actually met Jesus — the request triggers Jesus's discourse on his death rather than a meeting.
23. Throughout the Gospel, 'the hour' (hē hōra) has been approaching but not yet arrived (2:4, 7:30, 8:20). Now, triggered by the Greeks' approach, Jesus declares elēlythen hē hōra ('the hour has come,' perfect tense — it has arrived and is now present). The coming of the Gentiles signals that the time for Jesus's death-as-glorification has arrived. In John, glorification and crucifixion are the same event seen from different perspectives.
24. The agricultural metaphor is precise: a seed that is preserved intact remains alone (autos monos menei); a seed that is buried and 'dies' (its outer shell breaking open) produces abundance (polyn karpon, 'much fruit'). Jesus applies this to himself: his death is not loss but the condition for universal fruitfulness. The 'much fruit' is the gathered community of believers — including the very Greeks who have just sought him.
25. The paradox parallels the Synoptic sayings (Matthew 10:39, Mark 8:35, Luke 9:24). The Greek psychē ('life, soul, self') refers to one's entire existence, not merely biological life. The verb misōn ('hating') is Semitic hyperbole for 'placing in second priority' — not literal hatred but radical subordination of self-preservation to the call of following Jesus.
26. The verb diakoneō ('serve') connects service to following — discipleship is both imitation and participation. The promise 'where I am, there my servant will be' (hopou eimi egō ekei kai ho diakonos ho emos estai) unites the servant's destiny with Jesus's destiny. Since Jesus is about to enter glory through death, this is both promise and warning: following Jesus means sharing his path.
27. This is John's equivalent of the Gethsemane agony (absent from John's passion narrative). The verb tetaraktai ('is troubled, is agitated') is the same word used at Lazarus's tomb (11:33). Jesus's inner conflict is real — he contemplates asking for rescue — but immediately reaffirms his purpose. The rhetorical question format (ti eipō, 'what should I say?') shows Jesus thinking through the temptation and rejecting it in real time.
28. Instead of asking for deliverance, Jesus asks for the Father's name to be glorified — a prayer that accepts the cross as the means of glorification. The heavenly voice (phōnē ek tou ouranou) is the third instance of the bat qol ('daughter of a voice,' divine speech) in the Gospels (cf. baptism, transfiguration). The response spans past ('I have glorified,' edoxasa) and future ('I will glorify again,' palin doxasō) — the Father's glory has been manifested throughout Jesus's ministry and will be manifested supremely through the cross and resurrection.
29. The crowd hears the sound but cannot discern the content — some hear thunder (natural phenomenon), others hear angelic speech (supernatural but impersonal). Neither group perceives that the Father himself has spoken. This graduated perception mirrors the chapter's theme of seeing without understanding.
30. Jesus does not need the audible confirmation — his communion with the Father is unbroken (cf. 11:42). The voice is pedagogical, intended to give the crowd evidence of divine involvement. The distinction between Jesus's needs and the crowd's needs underscores his unique relationship with the Father.
31. The double nyn ('now') marks the decisive moment. The krisis ('judgment') is not a future courtroom scene but a present event — the cross is the judgment of the world. The archōn tou kosmou toutou ('the ruler of this world') refers to Satan (cf. 14:30, 16:11). The paradox: at the very moment the world appears to condemn Jesus, it is the world — and its ruler — that stands judged.
32. The verb hypsōthō ('am lifted up') carries the characteristic Johannine double meaning: physical elevation on the cross and spiritual exaltation to glory (cf. 3:14, 8:28). The verb helkysō ('will draw, will drag') suggests powerful, irresistible attraction — not coercion but a gravitational pull emanating from the cross. The word pantas ('all') is universal: Jew and Gentile, echoing the Greeks who have just sought him and the 'other sheep' of 10:16.
33. The verb sēmainōn ('signifying, indicating') shares the root of sēmeion ('sign') — even Jesus's words about his death are signs pointing to deeper meaning. The phrase poiō thanatō ('what kind of death') specifies crucifixion — the death that involves being physically lifted up.
34. The crowd's objection reveals their messianic expectations: the Christ (ho Christos) should reign forever (menei eis ton aiōna, cf. Psalm 89:36, Isaiah 9:7, Daniel 7:14). If the Son of Man must be 'lifted up' (die), he cannot be the eternal Messiah. Their question 'Who is this Son of Man?' is genuinely confused — they cannot reconcile messianic permanence with the necessity of death.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 89:36. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 9:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Jesus does not directly answer their question but issues an urgent warning. The 'light' (to phōs) is himself (cf. 8:12, 9:5), and it is about to be withdrawn through his death. The verb katalabē ('overtake, seize, overcome') is the same word used in 1:5 ('the darkness has not overcome it'). The urgency (eti mikron chronon, 'yet a little time') presses for immediate response before the opportunity passes.
36. The call to 'believe in the light' (pisteuete eis to phōs) and become 'children of light' (huiōi phōtos) connects to the Prologue (1:12, 'to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God'). The phrase 'children of light' also appears in the Dead Sea Scrolls and in Paul (1 Thessalonians 5:5). Jesus's departure and hiding (ekrybē, 'hid himself,' cf. 8:59) marks the end of his public ministry in John — he will next appear with his disciples in the upper room (ch. 13).

37. John begins his theological summary of the public ministry. The concessive clause (tosauta... sēmeia pepoiēkotos, 'though he had done so many signs') emphasizes the abundance of evidence and the inexcusability of unbelief. The perfect participle pepoiēkotos indicates signs performed with lasting results — they stand as permanent testimony.
38. John quotes Isaiah 53:1, the opening of the fourth Servant Song. The connection between Jesus and the Suffering Servant is made explicit: the Servant's rejection was prophesied. The 'arm of the Lord' (ho brachiōn kyriou) is a metaphor for God's saving power — the question implies that God's power was present in Jesus's signs but went unrecognized.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The phrase ouk ēdynanto pisteuein ('they could not believe') is stark — John presents inability, not merely unwillingness. The second Isaiah quotation (v. 40) provides the explanation: God has judicially hardened those who persistently rejected the signs.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 6:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
40. John quotes Isaiah 6:10, modifying it to make God the subject of the blinding and hardening. The verbs tetyphlōken ('has blinded') and epōrōsen ('has hardened, petrified') are in the perfect tense, indicating completed action with ongoing results. The theological tension between human responsibility (they refused to believe, v. 37) and divine sovereignty (they could not believe, v. 39) is left unresolved — John presents both as true without harmonizing them.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 6:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The stunning claim: Isaiah's vision in the temple (Isaiah 6:1-4, where he saw 'the Lord seated on a throne, high and exalted') was a vision of Jesus's glory. The pronoun autou ('his') refers to Jesus — John identifies the pre-incarnate Christ as the one Isaiah saw enthroned. This is one of the highest Christological statements in the Gospel.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 6:1-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. This verse qualifies the preceding judgment: not all rejected Jesus — even among the archontōn ('rulers, leaders') many believed. But their faith was secret, suppressed by fear of aposynagōgoi ('expelled from the synagogue,' cf. 9:22). John presents closet discipleship as a real but compromised form of faith — belief without public confession.
43. The Greek doxa ('glory, honor, praise') is used for both human and divine approval, forcing the reader to choose between them. The verb ēgapēsan ('they loved') applies the agapaō word (usually reserved for the highest form of love) to misdirected devotion — they loved human approval with the intensity that should be reserved for God's approval. This diagnosis echoes 5:44.
44. The verb ekraxen ('cried out, shouted') marks an urgent, public declaration — Jesus's final appeal to the crowd. The statement that belief in Jesus is belief in the Father who sent him restates the fundamental Johannine principle of the unity between sender and sent (cf. 5:23-24, 13:20). We add 'only' for English clarity — the Greek negation ou... alla means 'not merely X but Y,' not 'not X at all.'
45. The verb theōreō ('see, perceive, behold') denotes more than physical sight — it is perceptive, contemplative seeing. To see Jesus with understanding is to see the Father (cf. 14:9). This statement grounds all knowledge of God in the encounter with Jesus.
46. The light imagery returns for Jesus's final public statement, connecting back to 1:4-5, 3:19, 8:12, and 9:5. The purpose clause hina... mē meinē ('so that he might not remain') uses menō — the darkness is not the natural human condition from which Jesus rescues (remaining is negative here); light is the transformative alternative.
47. Jesus reaffirms 3:17: his mission is salvific, not condemnatory. The verb phylaxē ('keep, guard, observe') describes active obedience to Jesus's words, not mere hearing. Those who hear but do not keep are not judged by Jesus directly — but verse 48 explains what does judge them.
48. The verb athetōn ('rejecting, setting aside, nullifying') is a strong term for willful dismissal. The judge is not a person but a word — ho logos hon elalēsa ('the word that I spoke'). Jesus's words carry inherent judicial authority that will manifest 'on the last day' (en tē eschatē hēmera). Present rejection stores up future judgment.
49. Jesus grounds the judicial authority of his words in the Father's commissioning: every word carries divine mandate. The Father has given a specific entolē ('commandment, instruction') governing both content (ti eipō, 'what to say') and delivery (ti lalēsō, 'what to speak'). Jesus's words are the Father's words — to reject them is to reject the Father.
50. The final verse of Jesus's public ministry ends with the identification of the Father's command as zōē aiōnios ('eternal life') — the Father's will is not arbitrary law but life-giving reality. Jesus's closing declaration of obedience (kathōs eirēken moi ho patēr, houtōs lalō, 'just as the Father has told me, so I speak') summarizes his entire public ministry: faithful transmission of the Father's word. The public voice falls silent; the private teaching of chapters 13-17 follows.

13

Summary: *John 13 marks the transition from Jesus's public ministry to the private instruction of his disciples during the final Passover. Jesus washes his disciples' feet — an act of radical self-humiliation that embodies the love he is about to command. He predicts his betrayal, identifies Judas by dipping bread and giving it to him, and Judas departs into the night. After Judas leaves, Jesus announces his glorification, gives the 'new commandment' to love one another, and predicts Peter's threefold denial.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *John's account of the Last Supper contains no institution of the Eucharist — instead, the foot-washing functions as the defining act. This substitution is deliberate: John's eucharistic theology is already expressed in the Bread of Life discourse (chapter 6). The foot-washing is unique to John and is presented as both a concrete act of service and a symbolic anticipation of the cross. The phrase 'having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end' (eis telos, v. 1) can mean both 'to the utmost' and 'to the end/completion' — the cross is the full expression of this love. Judas's departure 'into the night' (v. 30) is one of the most haunting lines in Scripture, where physical darkness embodies spiritual reality.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the foot-washing and baptism has been debated since the patristic era. The exchange with Peter (vv. 6-10) has been read sacramentally, ethically, or christologically. We translate the Greek without imposing any single interpretive framework. The identity of the Beloved Disciple (v. 23) remains John's great mystery — we follow the text without speculating. The morsel given to Judas (v. 26) has eucharistic overtones that intensify the horror of his departure.*

Connections: *The foot-washing connects to the servant songs of Isaiah (especially 52:13-53:12) and to Jesus's own teaching about the greatest being the servant of all (Mark 10:43-45). The new commandment (v. 34) echoes Leviticus 19:18 ('love your neighbor') but transcends it — the standard is now 'as I have loved you.' Judas's departure connects to 6:70-71 and anticipates 18:1-5. Peter's predicted denial foreshadows 18:15-27. The 'hour' (v. 1) fulfills the anticipation built throughout the Gospel (2:4, 7:30, 8:20, 12:23, 27).*

¹Now before the Feast of the Passover, Jesus, knowing that his hour had come to depart out of this world to the Father, having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end. ²During supper, when the devil had already put it into the heart of Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot, to betray him, ³Jesus, knowing that the Father had given all things into his hands, and that he had come from God and was going back to God, ⁴Indeed, he riseth from supper, and laid aside his garments. And picked up a towel, and girded himself. ⁵Then he poured water into a basin and began to wash the disciples' feet and to wipe them with the towel that was wrapped around him. ⁶He came to Simon Peter, who said to him, "Lord, do you wash my feet?" ⁷Jesus answered him, "What I am doing you do not understand now, but afterward you will understand." ⁸Peter said to him, "You will never wash my feet!" Jesus answered him, "If I do not wash you, you have no share with me." ⁹But also my hands and my head, Simon Peter says to him, Lord, not my feet only. ¹⁰Jesus said to him, "The one who has bathed does not need to wash, except for his feet, but is completely clean. And you are clean — but not all of you." ¹¹For he knew who was to betray him; that is why he said, "Not all of you are clean." ¹²When he had washed their feet and put on his outer garments and reclined at table again, he said to them, "Do you understand what I have done to you? ¹³You call me Teacher and Lord, and you are right, for so I am. ¹⁴Have washed your feet, if I then, your Lord and Master. You also ought to wash one another's feet. ¹⁵For I have given you an example, that you also should do just as I have done to you. ¹⁶Truly, truly, I say to you, a servant is not greater than his master, nor is a messenger greater than the one who sent him. ¹⁷If you know these things, blessed are you if you do them. ¹⁸I am not speaking of all of you; I know whom I have chosen. But the Scripture will be fulfilled: 'The one who eats bread with me has lifted his heel against me.' ¹⁹I am telling you this now, before it takes place, so that when it does take place you may believe that I am. ²⁰Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever receives the one I send receives me, and whoever receives me receives the one who sent me." ²¹After saying these things, Jesus was troubled in his spirit, and he testified, "Truly, truly, I say to you, one of you will betray me." ²²The disciples looked at one another, uncertain of whom he was speaking. ²³One of his disciples, whom Jesus loved, was reclining at table close to Jesus. ²⁴So Simon Peter

motioned to him to ask Jesus of whom he was speaking. ²⁵So that disciple, leaning back against Jesus, said to him, "Lord, who is it?" ²⁶Jesus answered, "It is he to whom I will give this morsel of bread when I have dipped it." So when he had dipped the morsel, he took it and gave it to Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot. ²⁷Then after he received the morsel, Satan entered into him. Jesus said to him, "What you are going to do, do quickly." ²⁸Now no one at the table knew why he said this to him. ²⁹Some thought that, because Judas had the money box, Jesus was telling him, "Buy what we need for the feast," or that he should give something to the poor. ³⁰So, after receiving the morsel, he went out immediately. And it was night. ³¹And god is glorified in him, therefore, while he was gone out, Jesus declared, Now is the Son of Man glorified. ³²If God is glorified in him, God will also glorify him in himself, and will glorify him at once. ³³Little children, I am with you only a little longer. You will seek me, and just as I said to the Jews, 'Where I am going, you cannot come,' so now I say it to you. ³⁴A new commandment I give to you: that you love one another. Just as I have loved you, you also are to love one another. ³⁵By this all people will know that you are my disciples: if you have love for one another." ³⁶Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, where are you going?" Jesus answered, "Where I am going, you cannot follow me now, but you will follow afterward." ³⁷Peter said to him, "Lord, why can I not follow you now? I will lay down my life for you." ³⁸Jesus answered, "Will you lay down your life for me? Truly, truly, I say to you, the rooster will not crow until you have denied me three times."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse is the theological overture to the entire Farewell Discourse (chapters 13-17). The phrase *eis telos* ('to the end') carries a double meaning: 'to the uttermost' (the fullest extent of love) and 'to the completion' (love expressed in the cross). The word *hora* ('hour') is the culmination of every previous reference to 'his hour' throughout the Gospel. The phrase 'his own' (*tous idious*) echoes the Prologue (1:11) but here refers specifically to the disciples, not Israel as a whole.
2. The genitive absolute *deipnou ginomenou* means 'while supper was taking place,' not 'after supper was ended' as the KJV renders. The devil (*ho diabolos*) is the external agent, Judas's heart is the internal battleground. The perfect participle *beblakotos* ('having already put') indicates that the decision has been made before the foot-washing — Judas's betrayal is already in motion even as Jesus washes his feet.
3. The triple knowledge — all authority, divine origin, divine destination — makes the foot-washing astonishing. It is precisely the one who possesses absolute authority who takes the position of the lowest slave. The phrase 'from God ... back to God' (*apo theou ... pros ton theon*) frames the incarnation as a round trip: origin, mission, return.
4. The historic present tense (*egeiretai*, 'rises'; *tithesin*, 'lays aside') gives the narrative vivid immediacy. The verb *tithesin* ('lays aside') is the same word used for laying down one's life in 10:11, 15, 17-18 — a verbal foreshadowing of the cross. The actions described are precisely those of a household slave: removing outer clothing, wrapping a towel, and preparing to wash feet.
5. Foot-washing was a menial task assigned to the lowest-ranking servant in a household, or performed by a wife for her husband or a student for his teacher — never by a master for his servants. In Jewish custom, even a Hebrew slave could not be compelled to wash feet (Mekilta on Exodus 21:2). Jesus's act overturns every social expectation.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 21:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Peter's question carries shock and protest. The Greek word order emphasizes the incongruity: *sy mou* — 'You ... my?' The emphatic pronouns set the Lord against the servant, making Peter's objection not mere politeness but theological protest — this inversion of status is intolerable to him.
7. Jesus distinguishes between present incomprehension (*ouk oidas arti*) and future understanding (*gnosei de meta tauta*). The 'afterward' may refer to the cross, the resurrection, or the coming of the Spirit — all of which will illuminate the meaning of this act. The foot-washing is a parable-in-action that requires interpretation.
8. Peter's *ou me* ('never, by no means') is the strongest possible refusal. Jesus's response raises the stakes to the ultimate level: *meros* ('share, portion, inheritance') is the same word used for Israel's inheritance in the Promised Land (cf. Deuteronomy 12:12). Without receiving Jesus's cleansing service, Peter has no part in Jesus's kingdom. The washing symbolizes the cleansing that comes through Jesus's sacrificial death.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 12:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Peter's response swings from refusal to excess — characteristically impulsive. If washing means sharing in Jesus, he wants the maximum. The mention of hands, feet, and head may echo priestly washing rituals (Exodus 30:19-21), though the connection is not explicit.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 30:19-21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Jesus distinguishes between the full bath (*ho leloumenos*, from *louō*, 'to bathe the whole body') and the foot-washing (*nipsasthai*, from *niptō*, 'to wash a part'). The one who has been bathed needs only the foot-washing — a metaphor whose precise referent is debated: the bath may represent initial conversion/baptism, and the foot-washing ongoing cleansing from sin. The ominous qualification 'but not all' (*all' ouchi pantes*) points to

Judas.

11. The narrator clarifies the cryptic remark. Jesus's knowledge of the betrayer is emphasized throughout this chapter (vv. 2, 11, 18, 21, 26-27). The uncleanness is moral, not physical — Judas has been washed but remains unclean because his heart belongs to the devil (v. 2).
12. The verb *elaben* ('took up, received') reverses the *tithesin* ('laid aside') of verse 4 — Jesus resumes his garments, having completed the act of service. The question *ginōskete* ('do you understand?') shifts from the act to its meaning. The foot-washing is not merely exemplary behavior; it carries theological significance that requires explanation.
13. Jesus affirms the titles 'Teacher' (*ho didaskalos*, corresponding to 'Rabbi') and 'Lord' (*ho kyrios*). The affirmation is crucial: the foot-washing does not erase the hierarchy but redefines how authority is exercised. The one who is genuinely Teacher and Lord chooses to serve — this is not a renunciation of authority but its highest expression.
14. The verb *opheilete* ('you ought, you owe it') expresses moral obligation, not merely suggestion. The reciprocal 'one another' (*allelōn*) makes the command communal — every disciple serves every other, with no one exempt. Note the reversal of title order: 'Lord and Teacher' (not 'Teacher and Lord' as in v. 13), placing the higher title first to maximize the force of the argument.
15. The word *hypodeigma* ('example, pattern, model') indicates that the foot-washing is paradigmatic — it establishes a pattern of self-giving service that defines the community's life. The 'just as' (*kathōs*) sets a standard: not merely serving in general, but serving in the specific manner of Jesus — sacrificially, without concern for status.
16. The double amen introduces a solemn principle. The word *apostolos* ('one who is sent, messenger') here carries its original meaning rather than the later technical sense of 'Apostle.' The logic is a fortiori: if the Master serves, the servants have no ground for refusing to serve.
17. The beatitude (*makarioi*, 'blessed, fortunate') hinges on the conditional *ean poiete* ('if you do'). Knowledge without practice yields no blessing. This echoes the Sermon on the Mount's emphasis on doing, not merely hearing (Matthew 7:24-27). John rarely uses *makarios*, making this instance particularly striking.
18. Jesus quotes Psalm 41:9, which describes the betrayal of a close friend — one who shares table fellowship. The verb *trogōn* ('the one eating, feeding on') is the same visceral word used in the Bread of Life discourse (6:54-58). The image of lifting the heel (*epēren ... tēn pternan*) may suggest a horse kicking its master, or simply turning one's back in contempt. The Scripture is not merely predicted but 'fulfilled' (*plērōthē*) — Judas's betrayal is woven into the divine plan.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 41:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The ego *eimi* ('I am') at the end of this verse is the absolute form — without a predicate. Jesus's foreknowledge of the betrayal is itself a sign of divine identity. When the betrayal occurs as predicted, the disciples will recognize that Jesus is the 'I AM' of Exodus 3:14 — the one who knows the end from the beginning.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 3:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. This saying establishes a chain of representation: the sent one represents Jesus, and Jesus represents the Father. The principle of agency (*shaliach*) in Jewish law held that a person's agent was legally equivalent to the person himself. This prepares for the sending of the disciples after the resurrection (20:21).
21. The verb *etarachthē* ('was troubled, disturbed, agitated') is the same word used at Lazarus's tomb (11:33) and in the 'soul troubled' passage (12:27). Jesus is not detached from the anguish of betrayal — he feels it deeply. The verb *emarturēsen* ('testified, bore witness') elevates the prediction to a formal declaration.
22. The imperfect *eblepon* ('were looking') captures the prolonged, bewildered exchange of glances. The participle *aporoumenoi* ('being at a loss, uncertain') indicates genuine confusion — none of the disciples suspects Judas, which speaks either to Judas's skill at concealment or to the disciples' trust.
23. This is the first explicit appearance of the Beloved Disciple (*hon egapa ho Iesous*, 'whom Jesus loved'). The phrase *en tō kolpō* ('at the chest/bosom') describes the position of honor at a Roman-style dining arrangement, where guests reclined on their left sides — the one reclining in front of Jesus would have his head near Jesus's chest. The phrase echoes 1:18, where the Son is 'in the bosom' (*eis ton kolpon*) of the Father.
24. Peter's resort to gestures (*neuei*, 'nods, signals') shows the intimacy of the reclining arrangement — direct conversation required physical proximity that Peter apparently lacked. He relies on the Beloved Disciple's privileged position to gain information.
25. The Beloved Disciple leans back (*anapesōn*) toward Jesus's chest to ask privately. The question is whispered — this is not a public exchange. The physical intimacy between the Beloved Disciple and Jesus mirrors the theological intimacy between the Son and the Father (1:18).
26. The *psōmion* ('morsel, small piece of bread') dipped and given was a gesture of honor at a meal — the host would offer choice morsels to favored guests. Jesus's act is thus a final gesture of intimacy and generosity toward his betrayer, making the betrayal all the more grievous. The identification is made privately to the Beloved Disciple, not publicly to the group.
27. The shift from 'the devil' (*diabolos*, v. 2) to 'Satan' (*Satanas*) marks an escalation — Satan himself takes possession. The timing 'after the morsel' is chilling: the gesture of fellowship becomes the occasion of total satanic invasion. Jesus's command 'do quickly' (*poiēson tachion*) is not permission

but sovereign dismissal — he controls even the timing of his own betrayal.

28. Despite the identification to the Beloved Disciple, the rest of the group remains ignorant. The secrecy is maintained — Jesus does not expose Judas publicly, preserving the betrayer's dignity even at this late moment.
29. The mention of the glossokomon ('money box') recalls 12:6, where John noted that Judas was a thief who helped himself from it. The fact that Judas was entrusted with the group's finances despite his character speaks to the mundane realities of the community. The two guesses — festival supplies or almsgiving — show that the disciples' explanation is utterly domestic; they have no idea that cosmic treachery is underway.
30. The three-word phrase *en de nyx* ('and it was night') is one of the most theologically charged sentences in the Gospel. On the literal level, it is a time marker. On the symbolic level, Judas steps out of the light of Jesus's presence into the darkness that represents the domain of evil (cf. 1:5, 3:19, 8:12, 9:4, 11:10, 12:35-36, 46). Night has come.
31. Judas's departure triggers the glorification language. The aorist *edoxasthē* ('was glorified') is proleptic — the cross is already accomplished in Jesus's mind. In John, 'glorification' (*doxa*) encompasses the cross, resurrection, and ascension as a single event. The mutual glorification ('the Son of Man glorified' and 'God glorified in him') expresses the inseparability of Father and Son.
32. The cascade of 'glorify' language (five uses of the *doxaz-* root in vv. 31-32) creates an intense concentration. The 'at once' (*euthys*) emphasizes the immediacy — there is no gap between the Son's obedient death and the Father's vindication.
33. The address *teknia* ('little children') is unique to Jesus in John and is found nowhere else in the Gospels (though John uses it in 1 John 2:1, 12, 28). It conveys tender affection and paternal care. Jesus applies to the disciples the same warning he gave to the Jewish leaders (7:33-34, 8:21), but with a crucial difference: for the disciples, the separation is temporary.
34. The 'new commandment' (*entolēn kainēn*) is not new in commanding love — Leviticus 19:18 already did that. It is new in its standard: 'just as I have loved you' (*kathōs ēgapēsa hymas*). The measure of love is no longer 'as yourself' but 'as Christ' — a standard that includes sacrificial death. The command defines the community's identity: they are not marked by knowledge, power, or ritual, but by mutual love.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Love is the public badge of discipleship — not miracles, not doctrine, not moral rigor, but mutual love. The verb *gnōsontai* ('will know') makes love an epistemological category: the world gains knowledge of Christ through the community's love. This is the most visible and most demanding criterion of authentic Christianity.
36. Peter's question picks up on verse 33. Jesus's answer contains both a refusal and a promise: 'not now' (*nyn*) but 'afterward' (*hysteron*). The verb *akolouthēseis* ('you will follow') contains a double meaning — Peter will follow Jesus both in discipleship and in death (cf. 21:18-19, where Peter's crucifixion is predicted).
37. Peter's declaration uses the exact language of the Good Shepherd: 'lay down my life' (*tēn psychēn mou ... thēsō*, cf. 10:11, 15, 17-18). He claims to do for Jesus what Jesus does for the sheep. The irony is painful — within hours, Peter will not lay down his life but will deny three times that he even knows Jesus.
38. Jesus echoes Peter's words back as a question, exposing the gap between Peter's intention and his capacity. The prediction is precise: three denials before the rooster crows. The fulfillment in 18:15-27 is exact. The double amen underscores the certainty of this painful prophecy. Yet the chapter does not end in despair — the following discourse (chapters 14-17) will provide the resources for Peter's eventual restoration.

14

Summary: John 14 is part of Jesus's Farewell Discourse, delivered to his disciples on the night before his crucifixion. Jesus consoles the troubled disciples by promising that his Father's house has many rooms and that he goes to prepare a place for them. He declares himself 'the way, the truth, and the life' — the exclusive path to the Father. He promises that those who believe will do even greater works, that prayers in his name will be answered, and that the Father will send another Advocate (Parakletos), the Spirit of Truth, to be with them forever. The chapter closes with Jesus bequeathing his peace — distinct from the world's peace — and urging the disciples not to be troubled or afraid.

What Makes This Remarkable: This chapter contains some of the most theologically concentrated statements in the New Testament. The 'I am the way' declaration (14:6) is the sixth of John's seven great 'I am' sayings. The introduction of the Parakletos ('Advocate, Helper, Comforter') is unique to John's Gospel and becomes the foundation for later trinitarian theology. Jesus's language moves fluidly between departure and presence — he is leaving, yet he will come to them; they will not see him, yet they will see him. This paradox is resolved through the Spirit, who makes Jesus's continued presence real after his physical departure. The phrase 'my Father's house' (14:2) has been debated for centuries: does it refer to heaven as a destination, or to the temple as a community of God's

dwelling?

Translation Friction: The Greek monai ('rooms, dwelling places') in verse 2 has traditionally been rendered 'mansions' (KJV), following the Latin Vulgate's mansiones. The Greek word simply means 'dwelling places' or 'rooms' and carries no connotation of luxury. The term Parakletos (14:16, 26) resists single-word translation: 'Comforter' (KJV), 'Advocate,' 'Helper,' and 'Counselor' each capture only part of its legal and relational semantic range. We render it 'Advocate' with notation. The relationship between 14:28 ('the Father is greater than I') and Johannine high Christology has generated extensive theological debate; we render the Greek as stated without harmonizing.

Connections: The Farewell Discourse (John 13-17) parallels Moses's farewell in Deuteronomy and David's in 1 Chronicles 28-29. The Parakletos promise anticipates the Pentecost narrative in Acts 2. 'I am the way' connects to Old Testament path/way imagery (Psalm 1, Isaiah 40:3). The 'many rooms' language echoes temple theology and Ezekiel's vision of the restored temple. Jesus's peace declaration (14:27) contrasts with the world's shalom and connects to Isaiah's 'Prince of Peace' (Isaiah 9:6).

¹Do not let your hearts be troubled. You believe in God; believe also in me. ²In my Father's house are many rooms. If it were not so, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you? ³And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and take you to myself, so that where I am, you also may be. ⁴And you know the way to where I am going. ⁵Thomas said to him, "Lord, we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?" ⁶Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. ⁷If you have known me, you will also know my Father. From now on you do know him and have seen him." ⁸Philip said to him, "Lord, show us the Father, and it is enough for us." ⁹Jesus said to him, "Have I been with you so long, and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" ¹⁰Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I say to you I do not speak on my own, but the Father who dwells in me does his works. ¹¹Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else believe on account of the works themselves. ¹²Truly, truly, I say to you, whoever believes in me will also do the works that I do, and will do greater works than these, because I am going to the Father. ¹³Whatever you ask in my name, I will do it, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. ¹⁴If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it. ¹⁵If you love me, you will keep my commandments. ¹⁶And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate, to be with you forever — ¹⁷Even the Spirit of truth. Whom the world cannot accept, because it sees him not, neither knows him — but you know him. Since he dwelleth with you, and will be in you. ¹⁸I will not leave you as orphans. I am coming to you. ¹⁹In a little while the world will no longer see me, but you will see me. Because I live, you also will live. ²⁰On that day you will know that I am in my Father, and you in me, and I in you. ²¹Whoever has my commandments and keeps them is the one who loves me. And whoever loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and reveal myself to him." ²²Judas (not Iscariot) said to him, "Lord, what has happened that you are going to reveal yourself to us and not to the world?" ²³Jesus answered him, "If anyone loves me, he will keep my word, and my Father will love him, and we will come to him and make our home with him. ²⁴Whoever does not love me does not keep my words. And the word that you hear is not mine but the Father's who sent me. ²⁵These things I have spoken to you while remaining with you. ²⁶But the Advocate, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and bring to your remembrance all that I have said to you. ²⁷Peace I leave with you; my peace I give to you. Not as the world gives do I give to you. Do not let your hearts be troubled, and do not be afraid. ²⁸You heard me say to you, 'I am going away, and I am coming to you.' If you loved me, you would rejoice that I am going to the Father, because the Father is greater than I. ²⁹And now I have told you before it takes place, so that when it does take place you may believe. ³⁰I will no longer speak much with you, for the ruler of this world is coming. He has no power over me, ³¹However, that the world may know that I love the Father. And as the Father offered me commandment, even so I do. Arise, let us go hence.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb tarassestho ('be troubled, be agitated') is the same word used of Jesus himself in 11:33 and 13:21. The imperative can be read as either indicative-then-imperative ('you believe in God; believe also in me') or as two imperatives ('believe in God, and believe in me'). The Greek is ambiguous; we follow the more traditional reading that takes the first clause as indicative.

2. The Greek *monai* ('dwelling places, rooms') has been famously rendered 'mansions' in the KJV, following the Latin Vulgate's *mansiones*. The Greek word carries no connotation of grandeur; it simply means 'abiding places' or 'rooms,' from the verb *meno* ('to remain, abide'), a key Johannine term. The punctuation of this verse is debated: some take 'I go to prepare a place for you' as a statement, others as part of the preceding question. We follow the reading that takes the final clause as part of the rhetorical question.
3. The verb *paralempomai* ('take to myself, receive') implies personal accompaniment, not merely granting access. The promise 'where I am, you also may be' is the heart of Johannine eschatology — the goal of salvation is being with Jesus. Whether this refers to his return at death, at the resurrection, or at the *parousia* has been debated since the earliest centuries.
4. Some manuscripts read 'you know where I am going, and you know the way,' which the KJV follows. The SBLGNT follows the shorter reading, which is more likely original and sets up Thomas's question in verse 5 more naturally.
5. Thomas's honest confusion mirrors the recurring Johannine pattern of misunderstanding that leads to deeper revelation. His question provokes one of the Gospel's most important declarations. Thomas appears elsewhere in John as a figure of honest doubt (11:16, 20:24-29).
6. This is the sixth of John's seven great *ego eimi* ('I am') declarations. The three nouns — *hodos* ('way'), *aletheia* ('truth'), *zoe* ('life') — may be read as three coordinate claims or as a single claim with two appositional qualifiers: 'I am the way, that is, the truth and the life.' The definite articles before each noun are emphatic: not a way but the way. The exclusivity clause ('no one comes to the Father except through me') is absolute in the Greek and we render it without softening.
7. The textual tradition is divided between a contrary-to-fact condition ('if you had known me, you would have known') and a fulfilled condition ('if you have known me, you will know'). The SBLGNT follows the latter reading, which is more encouraging than rebuking. The claim that they have 'seen' the Father through knowing Jesus anticipates Philip's question in verse 8.
8. Philip's request echoes Moses's plea in Exodus 33:18 ('Show me your glory'). The verb *deiknumi* ('show, reveal') implies a visible manifestation. Philip has not yet grasped that seeing Jesus is seeing the Father — the central christological claim of the Fourth Gospel.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 33:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The statement 'whoever has seen me has seen the Father' (*ho heorakos eme heoraken ton patera*) is one of the highest christological claims in the New Testament. The perfect tense *heoraken* implies a completed seeing with continuing results. Jesus is not merely a representative of God but the visible manifestation of the invisible Father (cf. Colossians 1:15).
10. The mutual indwelling formula — 'I in the Father and the Father in me' — is a distinctive Johannine expression of the unity between Father and Son. The verb *meno* ('dwell, abide, remain') is one of John's most important theological terms. Jesus grounds his claim not in abstract theology but in observable evidence: his words and works are the Father's own activity.
11. Jesus offers two grounds for faith: his word and his works. The appeal to works as evidence recalls 10:38 and anticipates the theme of signs throughout John. The concessive 'or else' (*ei de me*) acknowledges that direct trust in his word is the higher form of faith, while trust based on evidence is still valid.
12. The double *amen* ('truly, truly') is a distinctive Johannine formula that introduces solemn declarations. The promise of 'greater works' (*meizona touton*) is striking — greater than Jesus's own miracles. The 'because' clause (*hoti*) ties the greater works to Jesus's departure: his going to the Father enables the sending of the Spirit, which empowers the disciples' mission.
13. Asking 'in my name' (*en to onomati mou*) is not a formula appended to prayers but denotes asking in accord with Jesus's character, mission, and authority. The purpose clause — 'so that the Father may be glorified in the Son' — defines the scope and aim of such prayer.
14. This verse repeats and reinforces the promise of verse 13. Some manuscripts omit 'me' (*me*), making the request directed to the Father rather than to Jesus. The SBLGNT includes it, placing Jesus as both the mediator and the one who acts.
15. The future indicative *teresete* ('you will keep') is preferable to reading this as an imperative ('keep'). Jesus states a fact about love's nature rather than issuing a command: genuine love for him will naturally express itself in obedience. This connection between love and obedience is a central theme of the Farewell Discourse.
16. The word *Parakletos* appears only in John's writings in the New Testament (here, 14:26, 15:26, 16:7, and 1 John 2:1). The KJV's 'Comforter' follows the Latin *consolator* but captures only one dimension. The Greek term has legal overtones ('advocate, one called alongside to help') and relational dimensions ('counselor, helper'). We render it 'Advocate' while acknowledging the broader range. The word *allon* ('another') implies one of the same kind — the Spirit is another Advocate like Jesus himself.
17. The 'Spirit of truth' (*to pneuma tes aletheias*) identifies the Advocate with truth itself — a key Johannine theme (cf. 'I am the truth,' 14:6). The contrast between the world's inability and the disciples' capacity to receive the Spirit is absolute. The shift from 'remains with you' (present tense, *menei*) to 'will be in you' (future, *estai*) marks a transition from the Spirit's presence alongside them during Jesus's ministry to the Spirit's indwelling after Pentecost.
18. The Greek *orphanous* ('orphans') is more specific than the KJV's 'comfortless.' The metaphor casts the disciples as children who would be fatherless without Jesus's continued presence. The present tense *erchomai* ('I am coming') conveys certainty and immediacy rather than a distant future event.

19. The contrast between the world and the disciples regarding 'seeing' Jesus extends beyond physical sight to spiritual perception. The declaration 'because I live, you also will live' compresses the entire Christian hope into a single sentence — the disciples' life depends on and flows from Jesus's resurrection life.
20. The mutual indwelling now extends beyond the Father-Son relationship (v. 10) to include the disciples: Father in Son, Son in believers, believers in Son. This threefold chain of indwelling is the Johannine vision of salvation — not merely forgiveness but participatory union. 'That day' likely refers to the post-resurrection encounters and the coming of the Spirit.
21. The chain of love is striking: the believer's love for Jesus expressed through obedience leads to the Father's love for the believer and Jesus's self-revelation. The verb *emphaniso* ('reveal, manifest, make visible') suggests a personal, experiential disclosure — not merely intellectual knowledge but encounter.
22. The parenthetical 'not Iscariot' distinguishes this Judas from the betrayer, who has already departed (13:30). This is likely the same as 'Judas son of James' in Luke 6:16. His question reflects the common expectation that the Messiah would manifest himself publicly to the entire world, not privately to a small group.
23. The word *monen* ('home, dwelling place') is the singular of the *monai* ('rooms') in verse 2. There, Jesus goes to prepare rooms in the Father's house for the disciples; here, the Father and Son come to make a dwelling within the believer. The movement is reciprocal: believers dwell in God's house, and God dwells in believers. The first-person plural 'we will come' (*eleusometha*) unites Father and Son in a single action toward the believer.
24. The negative counterpart to verse 23: failure to keep Jesus's words reveals the absence of love. The second clause reinforces the unity of Father and Son — rejecting Jesus's words is rejecting the Father's words. The shift from 'words' (*logous*, plural) to 'word' (*logos*, singular) may suggest that Jesus's individual sayings constitute a unified message.
25. The perfect tense *lelaleka* ('I have spoken') emphasizes the lasting significance of what has been said. The phrase 'while remaining with you' (*par hymin menon*) uses the key Johannine verb *meno* and marks the transition from Jesus's physical presence to the Spirit's coming ministry.
26. Here the *Parakletos* is explicitly identified as the Holy Spirit (to *pneuma* to *hagion*). The Spirit's twofold ministry is teaching and reminding — not introducing new content unrelated to Jesus but illuminating and recalling what Jesus has already taught. The Father sends the Spirit 'in Jesus's name' (*en to onomati mou*), meaning in Jesus's authority and as his representative.
27. The Greek *eirene* corresponds to the Hebrew *shalom*, which encompasses wholeness, well-being, and right relationship — far more than the absence of conflict. Jesus distinguishes his peace from the world's peace: the world offers temporary, conditional peace; Jesus offers a peace grounded in his relationship with the Father. The repetition of 'do not let your hearts be troubled' forms an *inclusio* with verse 1, framing the entire chapter. The verb *deiliao* ('be afraid, be cowardly') appears only here in the New Testament.
28. The statement 'the Father is greater than I' (*ho pater meizon mou estin*) has been one of the most debated verses in christological history. In context, Jesus speaks of his incarnate, pre-glorification state — his return to the Father is a return to glory, which should cause the disciples to rejoice. The statement does not necessarily address the ontological relationship between Father and Son but rather the functional relationship during the incarnation.
29. Jesus's foreknowledge serves a pastoral purpose: when the events of the crucifixion unfold, the disciples will remember his predictions and find their faith strengthened rather than destroyed. This pattern of prediction-fulfillment runs throughout John (cf. 13:19, 16:4).
30. The 'ruler of this world' (*ho tou kosmou archon*) refers to Satan (cf. 12:31, 16:11). The declaration 'he has nothing in me' (*en emoi ouk echei ouden*) means Satan has no claim, no foothold, no authority over Jesus. Jesus goes to the cross not as Satan's victim but voluntarily, as the next verse makes clear.
31. Jesus frames his approaching death as an act of obedient love toward the Father — the supreme demonstration that the world can see. The command 'Rise, let us go from here' (*egeiresthe, agomen enteuthen*) suggests a physical departure, yet the discourse continues through chapters 15-17. Some scholars propose that chapters 15-17 were originally spoken en route to Gethsemane; others see a literary rather than geographical transition.

15

Summary: *John 15 continues Jesus's farewell discourse with the extended metaphor of the vine and the branches, calling his disciples to remain connected to him as the condition for bearing fruit. The chapter moves from the intimacy of abiding love to the gravity of the world's hatred, culminating in the promise of the Spirit of truth who will testify about Jesus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The vine metaphor draws on deep Old Testament imagery where Israel is God's vineyard (Isaiah 5:1-7, Psalm 80:8-16, Jeremiah 2:21). Jesus's claim 'I am the true vine' redirects this identity to himself — he is now the locus of covenant fruitfulness. The 'no greater love' declaration in verse 13 becomes one of the most recognized statements in all of Scripture. The Greek *meno* ('abide, remain') appears eleven times in verses 4-10, creating a literary drumbeat of relational*

permanence.

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 'abiding' (meno) and fruitfulness raises theological questions about whether the branches that are 'taken away' (v. 2) represent genuine believers who fall away or those who were never truly connected. We render the Greek without resolving this debate. The phrase 'I chose you' (v. 16) uses exelexamen, the same verb used for divine election in the Septuagint, but the context is specifically the Twelve's apostolic commission.*

Connections: *The vine imagery connects to Isaiah 5 (the vineyard song), Psalm 80 (Israel as vine), and Ezekiel 15 (the useless vine). The love command (vv. 12-17) intensifies the 'new commandment' of 13:34. The world's hatred (vv. 18-25) prepares for the persecution themes of chapter 16. The Paraclete promise (vv. 26-27) continues the Spirit passages of 14:16-17 and 14:26.*

¹"I am the true vine, and my Father is the vinedresser. ²Every branch in me that does not bear fruit, he removes, and every branch that bears fruit, he prunes so that it may bear more fruit. ³You are already clean because of the word I have spoken to you. ⁴Remain in me, and I will remain in you. Just as the branch cannot bear fruit by itself unless it remains in the vine, neither can you unless you remain in me. ⁵I am the vine; you are the branches. Whoever remains in me, and I in him, bears much fruit, because apart from me you can do nothing. ⁶If anyone does not remain in me, he is thrown out like a branch and withers. Such branches are gathered, thrown into the fire, and burned. ⁷If you remain in me and my words remain in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be done for you. ⁸My Father is glorified by this: that you bear much fruit and so prove to be my disciples. ⁹As the Father has loved me, so I have loved you. Remain in my love. ¹⁰If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, just as I have kept my Father's commandments and remain in his love. ¹¹I have told you these things so that my joy may be in you, and your joy may be made complete. ¹²As I have loved you, this was my commandment, That you love one another. ¹³No one has greater love than this: to lay down his life for his friends. ¹⁴You are my friends if you do what I command you. ¹⁵I no longer call you servants, because a servant does not know what his master is doing. Instead, I have called you friends, because everything I have heard from my Father I have made known to you. ¹⁶You did not choose me, but I chose you and appointed you so that you would go and bear fruit — fruit that will last — so that whatever you ask the Father in my name, he will give you. ¹⁷These things I command you, so that you may love one another. ¹⁸You know that it hated me before it hated you, and if the world hate you. ¹⁹If you belonged to the world, the world would love its own. But because you do not belong to the world — because I chose you out of the world — for this reason the world hates you. ²⁰Remember the word I spoke to you: 'A servant is not greater than his master.' If they persecuted me, they will persecute you as well. If they kept my word, they will keep yours also. ²¹But they will do all these things to you on account of my name, because they do not know the one who sent me. ²²If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not be guilty of sin. But now they have no excuse for their sin. ²³The one who hates me hates my Father also. ²⁴If I had not done among them the works that no one else has done, they would not be guilty of sin. But now they have seen and yet hated both me and my Father. ²⁵But this is to fulfill the word written in their Law: 'They hated me without cause.' ²⁶When the Advocate comes, whom I will send to you from the Father — the Spirit of truth who proceeds from the Father — he will testify about me. ²⁷And you also will testify, because you have been with me from the beginning."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the last of John's seven 'I am' (ego eimi) declarations with a predicate. The adjective alethinee ('true, genuine') distinguishes Jesus from Israel as the failed vine of Old Testament imagery (Isaiah 5:1-7, Jeremiah 2:21). The Greek georgos ('farmer, vinedresser') is more specific than the KJV's 'husbandman' — it denotes one who tends and cultivates the land, here specifically a vineyard keeper.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 5:1-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 2:21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. There is a wordplay in the Greek between airei ('takes away, lifts up') and kathairei ('prunes, cleanses'). Some scholars argue airei should be translated 'lifts up' (as a vinedresser lifts trailing branches off the ground), but the context of removal versus pruning favors 'removes.' The verb kathairei is the root of katharos ('clean'), connecting to Jesus's statement in verse 3.

3. The adjective *katharoi* ('clean') connects to *kathairei* ('prunes/cleanses') in verse 2 — the disciples have already undergone a cleansing through Jesus's word. This also echoes 13:10 where Jesus told the disciples 'you are clean' after washing their feet. The *logos* ('word') here encompasses the entirety of Jesus's teaching, not a single statement.
4. The verb *meno* ('remain, abide, stay') appears here for the first of eleven uses in verses 4-10, forming the thematic center of the passage. The imperative *meinate* ('remain!') is an aorist command implying decisive, sustained commitment. The mutual indwelling ('in me... I in you') echoes the Father-Son mutual indwelling of 14:10-11 and extends it to the disciples.
5. The absolute claim *choris emou ou dynasthe poein ouden* ('apart from me you can do nothing') is among the most radical statements of dependence in the New Testament. The word *choris* ('apart from, separated from') reinforces the vine metaphor — a severed branch is not merely weakened but wholly incapable of producing fruit.
6. The aorist tenses *eblethee* ('was thrown out') and *exeranthee* ('withered') are striking — they describe the result as already accomplished, giving the warning a sense of finality. The impersonal 'they gather' (*synagousin*) avoids naming who performs this judgment. The imagery of fire for useless branches reflects standard Palestinian viticultural practice and echoes John the Baptist's warning in Matthew 3:10.
7. The promise of answered prayer is conditioned on a double remaining: the disciple in Christ and Christ's words (*reemata*, 'spoken words, sayings') in the disciple. This is not a blank check but a promise that those whose desires are shaped by Jesus's teaching will find their prayers aligned with God's will and therefore answered.
8. The aorist *edoxasthee* ('was glorified') could be rendered as a timeless truth ('is glorified') in English since the aorist here expresses a general principle. The conjunction *kai* before *genesthe* could mean 'and' (additional result) or 'and so' (consequential). We render it as consequential — bearing fruit is the proof of discipleship, not a separate item alongside it.
9. The comparison *kathos* ('just as, in the same way as') establishes that Jesus's love for his disciples is patterned on the Father's love for the Son — the same quality, not merely a lesser imitation. The imperative *meinate* ('remain!') shifts from the vine metaphor to love itself as the sphere in which disciples are to dwell.
10. Obedience to commandments (*entolas*) is presented not as the means of earning love but as the means of remaining within the sphere of love already given. The perfect tense *teteereka* ('I have kept and continue to keep') emphasizes Jesus's completed and ongoing obedience to the Father. This parallels the covenantal pattern of the Old Testament where obedience is the response to grace, not its cause.
11. The Greek *pleerothee* ('may be fulfilled, made complete') suggests joy brought to its full capacity, not merely increased. Jesus speaks of 'my joy' (*hee chara hee emee*) — the joy that belongs to him and originates from his relationship with the Father — being transferred to the disciples. This is not human happiness but divine joy shared.
12. The singular *entolee* ('commandment') reduces all of Jesus's commands to a single imperative. The standard of love is not abstract but personal — *kathos eegapeesa hymas* ('as I have loved you'). This intensifies the 'new commandment' of 13:34 by anchoring it in the self-sacrificial love Jesus is about to demonstrate on the cross.
13. The Greek *psycheen* ('soul, life') here means one's entire existence, not merely biological life. The verb *thee* ('to lay down, to place') is the same word used in 10:11, 15, 17-18 for the Good Shepherd laying down his life for the sheep. Jesus defines the supreme expression of love and is about to enact it. The word *philon* ('friends') anticipates verse 15 where Jesus redefines the disciples' status from servants to friends.
14. The conditional *ean poieete* ('if you do') uses the present subjunctive, indicating ongoing action — 'if you continue doing.' Friendship with Jesus is not unconditional in the sense of requiring no response; it is maintained through obedience. The concept of being 'friends of God' has deep Old Testament roots — Abraham was called 'friend of God' (2 Chronicles 20:7, Isaiah 41:8).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Chronicles 20:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 41:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek *doulos* ('slave, servant') denotes one who serves without understanding the master's purposes. The shift from *douloi* to *philo* ('friends') is a dramatic elevation — friends are confidants who share in the master's knowledge. The perfect tense *egnorisa* ('I have made known') indicates a completed act of revelation. Jesus's entire ministry has been an act of sharing the Father's counsel with his disciples.
16. The verb *exelexameen* ('I chose') is the same word used in the Septuagint for God's election of Israel (Deuteronomy 7:6-7). The verb *etheka* ('I appointed, placed, set') is stronger than the KJV's 'ordained' — it carries the sense of deliberate commissioning. The purpose clause contains three elements: going (mission), bearing fruit (productivity), and fruit that remains (permanence). The prayer promise is tied to this fruitfulness.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 7:6-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This verse serves as a closing bracket to the love section (vv. 9-17), echoing the command of verse 12. The *hina* clause ('so that') could indicate purpose ('in order that you may love') or content ('namely, that you love'). The effect is the same: mutual love among disciples is both the goal and the substance of Jesus's commands.
18. The conditional *ei* with the indicative *misei* ('hates') presents the world's hatred as a real condition, not a hypothetical. The Greek *ginooskete* could be indicative ('you know') or imperative ('know!'). The imperative reading fits the context better — Jesus is commanding awareness, not merely acknowledging what they already understand. The perfect *memiseeken* ('has hated') indicates an ongoing state of enmity.

19. The phrase *ek tou kosmou* ('out of/from the world') appears five times in this single verse, creating an emphatic contrast between belonging and separation. The verb *exelexameen* ('I chose') again echoes divine election language. The word *idion* ('its own') indicates that the world recognizes and embraces what belongs to it — the disciples' rejection proves they no longer belong to the world system.
20. Jesus refers back to 13:16 where he made this statement in the context of foot-washing. The parallel structure ('if they persecuted me... if they kept my word') presents both outcomes as real possibilities within different groups of people. The verb *ediooksan* ('persecuted') and *eteereesan* ('kept/obeyed') represent the two responses the world gives to divine truth.
21. The phrase *dia to onoma mou* ('on account of my name') indicates that persecution comes not because of who the disciples are but because of whom they represent. The verb *oidasin* ('they know') uses the perfect form of *oida*, meaning intuitive or relational knowledge — the persecutors lack not merely information about God but genuine knowledge of him.
22. The Greek *hamartian ouk eichosan* ('they would not have sin') does not mean they were sinless before Jesus came, but that they would not bear the specific guilt of rejecting God's self-revelation. The word *prophasin* ('excuse, pretext') — rendered 'cloak' in the KJV — means a justification or defense. Jesus's coming has removed all plausible deniability.
23. This brief statement encapsulates Johannine Christology: Jesus and the Father are so united that one's response to Jesus is necessarily one's response to God. Hatred of Jesus cannot be separated from hatred of God himself.
24. Verse 22 addressed the witness of Jesus's words; this verse addresses the witness of his works (*erga*). The perfect tenses *heorakasin* ('they have seen') and *memiseekasin* ('they have hated') describe settled states — they have witnessed the evidence and have chosen enmity. The claim that these are works 'no one else has done' heightens the culpability of rejection.
25. The quotation is from Psalm 35:19 or 69:4 (both contain the phrase). Jesus refers to the Psalms as 'their Law' (to *nomos auton*), using 'Law' in its broad sense to encompass all of Scripture. The word *dorean* ('without cause, freely, for no reason') emphasizes the gratuitous nature of the hatred — there is no rational basis for it.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 35:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The Greek *parakletos* ('advocate, helper, counselor') is rendered 'Advocate' to capture its forensic meaning — one who comes alongside to defend and represent. The KJV's 'Comforter' reflects an older English sense of 'one who strengthens' but has lost that meaning in modern usage. The phrase 'who proceeds from the Father' (*ho para tou patros ekporeuetai*) became theologically significant in the later filioque controversy between Eastern and Western Christianity. The masculine pronoun *ekeinos* ('he') is used for the Spirit, despite *pneuma* being neuter in Greek — this personalizes the Spirit.
27. The verb *martyreite* could be indicative ('you testify') or imperative ('testify!'). Either reading works — the disciples both will and should bear witness. The phrase *ap' archees* ('from the beginning') refers to the beginning of Jesus's public ministry, establishing the disciples as eyewitnesses. Their testimony alongside the Spirit's testimony creates a dual witness as required by Jewish law (Deuteronomy 19:15).
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 19:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

16

Summary: *John 16 continues and concludes the farewell discourse. Jesus warns the disciples of coming persecution, then explains that his departure is necessary for the Advocate (the Spirit of truth) to come. He describes the Spirit's work of convicting the world and guiding the disciples into all truth. Jesus then uses the metaphor of a woman in labor to describe the transition from sorrow to joy, promises direct access to the Father in prayer, and closes with the declaration 'I have overcome the world.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Paraclete teaching reaches its fullest development in this chapter: the Spirit will convict the world (v. 8), guide into all truth (v. 13), and glorify Jesus (v. 14). The labor metaphor (vv. 21-22) draws on prophetic imagery of Zion's birth pangs (Isaiah 26:17-18, 66:7-8). The climactic declaration 'I have overcome the world' (v. 33) uses the perfect tense *nenikeeka*, indicating a victory already accomplished even before the cross — an extraordinary claim at the moment of Jesus's greatest apparent vulnerability.*

Translation Friction: *The precise meaning of the Spirit 'convicting' (*elenchei*) the world regarding sin, righteousness, and judgment (vv. 8-11) has been debated extensively. The Greek *elegchein* can mean 'convict, expose, reprove, or prove wrong.' We render the verb and let the explanatory clauses speak for themselves. The phrase 'a little while' (*mikron*) in verses 16-19 is deliberately ambiguous — it could refer to the crucifixion/resurrection gap, the ascension, or the *parousia*.*

Connections: The persecution warnings connect to 15:18-25 and look forward to the early church's experience in Acts. The Paraclete promises continue from 14:16-17, 14:26, and 15:26-27. The 'little while' language echoes Isaiah 26:20. The labor metaphor draws on the prophetic tradition of eschatological birth pangs. The 'I have overcome' declaration connects to Revelation's conquering language (Revelation 2-3, 5:5).

¹"I have told you these things so that you will not fall away. ²They will expel you from the synagogues. In fact, an hour is coming when everyone who kills you will think he is offering service to God. ³They will do these things because they have not known the Father or me. ⁴But I have told you these things so that when their hour comes you will remember that I told you about them. I did not tell you these things from the beginning because I was with you. ⁵But now I am going to the one who sent me, and none of you asks me, 'Where are you going?' ⁶But because I have told you these things, sorrow has filled your hearts. ⁷But I am telling you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go away. For if I do not go away, the Advocate will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you. ⁸When he comes, he will convict the world regarding sin, righteousness, and judgment: ⁹Of sin, because they trust in not on me; ¹⁰about righteousness, because I am going to the Father and you will no longer see me; ¹¹Of the time of reckoning, because the prince of this world is judged. ¹²I still have many things to tell you, but you cannot bear them now. ¹³But when he comes, the Spirit of truth, he will guide you into all the truth. For he will not speak on his own authority, but whatever he hears he will speak, and he will declare to you the things that are to come. ¹⁴He will glorify me, because he will take what is mine and declare it to you. ¹⁵Everything the Father has is mine. That is why I said that he takes what is mine and will declare it to you. ¹⁶A little while, and you will no longer see me. Then again a little while, and you will see me." ¹⁷Some of his disciples said to one another, "What is this that he is telling us: 'A little while, and you will not see me, and then again a little while, and you will see me'? And, 'Because I am going to the Father'?" ¹⁸They kept saying, "What is this 'little while' he is talking about? We do not understand what he is saying." ¹⁹Jesus knew that they wanted to ask him, so he said to them, "Are you discussing with one another what I meant by saying, 'A little while, and you will not see me, and then again a little while, and you will see me'? ²⁰Truly, truly, I tell you, you will weep and mourn, but the world will rejoice. You will be sorrowful, but your sorrow will be turned into joy. ²¹When a woman is giving birth, she has pain because her hour has come. But when she has delivered the baby, she no longer remembers the anguish, because of the joy that a person has been born into the world. ²²So you also have sorrow now, but I will see you again, and your hearts will rejoice, and no one will take your joy from you. ²³In that day you will ask me nothing. Truly, truly, I tell you, whatever you ask the Father in my name, he will give you. ²⁴Until now you have asked for nothing in my name. Ask, and you will receive, so that your joy may be made complete. ²⁵I have said these things to you in figures of speech. An hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you in figures of speech, but will tell you plainly about the Father. ²⁶In that day you will ask in my name, and I am not saying that I will ask the Father on your behalf, ²⁷And have believed that I came out from God, because the Father himself loveth you, because you have loved me. ²⁸I came from the Father and have come into the world. Now I am leaving the world and going to the Father." ²⁹His disciples said, "Now you are speaking plainly and not using figures of speech! ³⁰Now we know that you know all things and do not need anyone to question you. By this we believe that you came from God." ³¹Jesus responded them, Do you now believe? ³²Look, an hour is coming — and has come — when you will be scattered, each to his own home, and you will leave me alone. Yet I am not alone, because the Father is with me. ³³I have told you these things so that in me you may have peace. In the world you have tribulation. But take courage — I have overcome the world."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *skandalisthete* ('be caused to stumble, fall away') is stronger than the KJV's 'offended.' It means to be tripped up in faith, to abandon one's commitment. The word *skandalon* originally referred to the trigger of a trap. Jesus's warnings about persecution are meant to inoculate the disciples against the shock that could destroy their faith.
2. The term *aposynagougous* ('expelled from the synagogue') appears only in John (9:22, 12:42, 16:2) and refers to formal exclusion from the Jewish community — a devastating social and religious penalty. The phrase *latreian prospheerein* ('offering service/worship') is cultic language — those who kill the disciples will regard it as an act of religious worship. This reflects the historical reality of zealous persecution.

3. The aorist *egnosan* ('they knew') points to a fundamental failure of recognition rather than a temporary misunderstanding. The persecutors' ignorance of both the Father and Jesus is presented as the root cause of religious violence — they are acting in the name of a God they do not actually know.
4. The phrase *hee hora auton* ('their hour') parallels the language of Jesus's own 'hour' throughout John (2:4, 7:30, 12:23, 13:1). As Jesus has his hour appointed by the Father, so the persecutors have their hour permitted by God. The explanation for not telling them earlier — 'because I was with you' — implies that Jesus's physical presence provided the protection that the Spirit's presence will provide after his departure.
5. This statement seems to contradict 13:36 (Peter asked 'Where are you going?') and 14:5 (Thomas's question). The point is that now, overwhelmed by grief (v. 6), the disciples have stopped asking the right question. They are consumed by sorrow over the departure rather than curiosity about the destination — which would have led to hope.
6. The perfect tense *pepleeroken* ('has filled') describes sorrow as having completely occupied their hearts — leaving no room for the hope Jesus is trying to communicate. The Greek *lypee* ('grief, sorrow, pain') refers to deep emotional distress, not mere sadness.
7. The verb *sympherei* ('it is advantageous, it is better for') is a strong claim — Jesus asserts that his physical absence is better for the disciples than his physical presence. This is because the Spirit's presence will be universal and internal rather than localized and external. The paradox is startling: the incarnate presence of God will be replaced by something even more beneficial.
8. The verb *elenxei* ('will convict, prove wrong, expose') is forensic language — the Spirit acts as a prosecutor demonstrating guilt. The three charges — sin, righteousness, and judgment — are explained in the following verses. The KJV's 'reprove' is weaker than the Greek, which implies successful conviction, not merely accusation.
9. Sin is defined here not as moral failure in general but specifically as unbelief — the refusal to trust in Jesus. This is consistent with John's theology throughout the Gospel, where believing or not believing in Jesus is the fundamental human decision (3:18, 3:36, 5:24).
10. The logic is compressed: Jesus's departure to the Father vindicates his righteousness (*dikaio synees*). The world judged Jesus as a sinner and criminal, but his return to the Father proves the world's verdict wrong. The Spirit will expose this — the one the world condemned was in fact the Righteous One.
11. The perfect tense *kekritai* ('has been judged') indicates that the ruler of this world (*ho archon tou kosmou toutou*) has already been condemned — the verdict is settled even before the cross. This echoes 12:31 ('now the ruler of this world will be cast out'). The Spirit convicts the world that its ruler has lost, and therefore the world's system of values stands condemned.
12. The verb *bastazein* ('to bear, carry, endure') suggests that the additional truths would be too heavy for the disciples in their current state of grief and incomprehension. Jesus exercises pastoral restraint — revelation is given in accordance with the disciples' capacity to receive it.
13. The verb *hodegesei* ('will guide') pictures the Spirit as a guide leading travelers along a path. The phrase *en tee aleetheia pasee* ('into all the truth') uses the article — 'the truth' — indicating the full truth about Jesus and his significance, not abstract omniscience. The Spirit's dependence on what he 'hears' parallels Jesus's own dependence on the Father (5:30, 8:28). The phrase *ta erchomena* ('the things coming') refers to future events and their meaning.
14. The Spirit's primary work is Christocentric — he glorifies Jesus, not himself. The verb *leempsetsai* ('will take, receive') indicates that the Spirit's teaching content comes from Jesus. This establishes a chain of revelation: Father to Son to Spirit to disciples.
15. The claim *panta hosa echei ho pateer ema estin* ('everything the Father has is mine') is one of the most sweeping claims of unity with the Father in the Gospel. Because the Father and Son share everything, the Spirit's drawing from Jesus is simultaneously drawing from the Father. The revelation chain is unbroken.
16. The SBLGNT does not include the final clause 'because I go to the Father' (*hoti hypago pros ton patera*), which is present in some manuscripts and in the KJV. We follow the critical text. The word *mikron* ('a little while') is deliberately enigmatic, creating the confusion the disciples express in the next verses. The two different verbs for 'see' — *theoreite* (present, continuous observation) and *opsesthe* (future, experiential seeing) — may indicate different qualities of perception.
17. The disciples quote Jesus back to one another, trying to understand his meaning. Their confusion is characteristic of the Johannine misunderstanding motif, where characters take Jesus's words at face value and miss the deeper meaning (cf. 3:4, 4:15, 6:52). The phrase 'because I am going to the Father' appears in the disciples' quotation even though the SBLGNT omits it from verse 16 — suggesting they are combining statements from different points in the discourse.
18. The imperfect *elegon* ('they kept saying') indicates repeated, ongoing discussion — the disciples are turning the phrase over among themselves without resolution. Their honest confession *ouk oidamen* ('we do not know/understand') echoes a persistent theme in John where the disciples struggle to comprehend Jesus's teaching until after the resurrection (cf. 2:22, 12:16).
19. The verb *egnou* ('knew') indicates Jesus's supernatural awareness of their thoughts, a recurring feature in John (1:48, 2:24-25, 6:64). The verb *eethelohn* ('they wanted') suggests they desired to ask but were too confused or intimidated to voice the question directly.
20. The double *ameen* ('truly, truly') signals a solemn and authoritative declaration. The three pairs — weeping/mourning, world rejoicing/disciples sorrowing, sorrow/joy — create a carefully structured prophecy of the crucifixion-to-resurrection reversal. The phrase *eis charan geneesetai* ('will become into joy') means not that sorrow will be replaced by joy but that the very sorrow itself will be transformed into joy — the same event (the cross) that causes grief will become the source of joy.

- 21.** The phrase 'her hour has come' (eelthen hee hora autees) deliberately echoes the language of Jesus's own 'hour' (12:23, 13:1, 17:1), connecting the woman's suffering to Jesus's passion. The Greek anthropos ('a person, a human being') rather than a more specific term gives the birth a universal quality. The prophetic tradition uses labor imagery for the suffering that precedes divine deliverance (Isaiah 26:17-18, 66:7-8, Micah 4:9-10).
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 26:17-18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Micah 4:9-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 22.** The application of the labor metaphor is direct: the disciples' current sorrow corresponds to labor pains, and Jesus's return (the resurrection) corresponds to the birth that transforms pain into joy. The promise 'no one will take your joy from you' (teen charan hymoon oudeis airei aph hymoon) uses the present tense airei, suggesting that this joy, once given, is permanently beyond anyone's power to remove.
- 23.** The Greek uses two different verbs for 'ask': erooteesete ('ask a question, inquire') and aiteesete ('ask for, request, petition'). In that day — the post-resurrection era — the disciples will no longer need to question Jesus for understanding (the Spirit will guide them), and their prayers to the Father in Jesus's name will be answered. 'In my name' (en to onomati mou) means by his authority and in alignment with his character, not as a magic formula.
- 24.** The adverb heos arti ('until now') marks a turning point — a new era of prayer in Jesus's name is about to begin. The connection between prayer, answered requests, and complete joy (pepleeromenee, 'having been made full') echoes 15:11. The imperative aiteite ('ask!') is a present tense command implying ongoing, habitual practice.
- 25.** The Greek paroimiais ('proverbs, figures of speech, riddles') is broader than 'proverbs' — it includes any indirect or veiled speech. The contrast with parresia ('plainly, openly, with boldness') promises a shift from enigmatic teaching to direct revelation. This shift is associated with the coming of the Spirit (v. 13) who will make plain what Jesus taught in veiled terms.
- 26.** This verse has been misread as Jesus saying he will not intercede (contradicting Romans 8:34 and 1 John 2:1). The point is rather that direct intercession will not be the primary dynamic — the disciples will have their own direct access to the Father. Jesus is not denying his intercessory role but emphasizing the Father's direct love for the disciples.
- 27.** The verb philei ('loves') here is the word for personal, affectionate love rather than agapao. The Father's love for the disciples is warm and intimate. The perfect tenses pephileekate ('you have loved') and pepisteukate ('you have believed') indicate ongoing states that began in the past. The phrase para tou theou ('from God, from the presence of God') asserts Jesus's divine origin.
- 28.** This verse summarizes the entire Johannine Christology in four movements: origin (from the Father), incarnation (into the world), departure (leaving the world), and return (to the Father). The chiasmic structure (Father world world Father) frames Jesus's earthly ministry as a round trip from and back to the Father's presence.
- 29.** The disciples' enthusiasm is somewhat premature — they think they have achieved the understanding Jesus promised for 'that day' (v. 25), but Jesus will immediately challenge this confidence (v. 31). The irony is characteristic of John: the disciples claim clarity at the very moment they are about to demonstrate their confusion by abandoning Jesus.
- 30.** The disciples' confession oidamen ('we know') and pisteuomen ('we believe') represents genuine but still immature faith. Jesus's knowledge of their unspoken questions (v. 19) has convinced them of his omniscience and divine origin. Yet the faith expressed here will be severely tested within hours.
- 31.** The question arti pisteuete could be read as a statement ('Now you believe') or a question ('Do you now believe?'). The interrogative reading fits better with the following prediction of their scattering. The adverb arti ('now, at this moment') carries a note of irony — their belief is real but about to be tested by catastrophic events.
- 32.** The verb skorpisthete ('be scattered') echoes Zechariah 13:7 ('Strike the shepherd, and the sheep will be scattered'), which Jesus quotes in the Synoptic accounts (Matthew 26:31, Mark 14:27). The phrase eis ta idia ('to his own things/home') is the same expression used in the Prologue (1:11, 'his own'). The juxtaposition of abandonment by the disciples and the Father's continued presence demonstrates that Jesus faces the cross in conscious reliance on the Father.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 13:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The contrast is spatial: 'in me' (en emoi) peace; 'in the world' (en to kosmo) tribulation. The imperative tharseite ('take courage, be of good cheer') is a command, not a suggestion. The perfect tense nenikeeka ('I have overcome') is extraordinary — Jesus speaks of his victory as already accomplished before the cross. This is not future hope but present reality declared in advance. The verb nikao ('to conquer, overcome') becomes a key term in Revelation for the victory of Christ and his followers.

17

Summary: *John 17 records Jesus's extended prayer to the Father, traditionally called the 'High Priestly Prayer.' It is the longest recorded prayer of Jesus in the Gospels. The prayer moves in three concentric circles: Jesus prays for himself and the completion of his mission (vv. 1-5), for his immediate disciples (vv. 6-19), and for all future believers (vv. 20-26). The dominant themes are glory, unity, protection, sanctification, and the revelation of the Father's name.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This prayer is unique in the Gospel tradition — nowhere else do we hear Jesus pray at such length and with such theological depth. The opening petition 'Glorify your Son' (v. 1) reverses normal prayer convention where the petitioner glorifies God; here the Son asks the Father to glorify him, revealing the mutual glorification within the Godhead. The prayer's Christology is extraordinarily high: Jesus speaks of glory shared with the Father 'before the world existed' (v. 5), implying pre-existence. The unity prayer (vv. 21-23) grounds human unity in the divine unity of Father and Son — 'that they may be one, just as we are one.'*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'eternal life is that they know you' (v. 3) redefines eternal life as relational knowledge rather than temporal duration. We render this without theological commentary. The 'son of destruction' (v. 12) is widely understood as referring to Judas, but the phrase itself (ho huios tees apoleias) is a Semitic idiom meaning 'one destined for destruction.' The prayer's placement before the arrest creates a literary tension — Jesus prays with serene authority while betrayal approaches.*

Connections: *The prayer connects to the Prologue (1:1-18) through its themes of glory, pre-existence, and the Father-Son relationship. The sanctification language (vv. 17-19) echoes the consecration of priests in Exodus 28-29. The unity theme anticipates the early church's struggle and hope (Acts 4:32, Ephesians 4:1-6). The 'I am not of the world' language (vv. 14-16) develops the farewell discourse's world/disciple contrast (15:18-19, 16:33).*

¹After Jesus had spoken these things, he lifted up his eyes to heaven and said, "Father, the hour has come. Glorify your Son, so that the Son may glorify you, ²As you have given him authority over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as numerous as you have given him. ³And this is eternal life: that they know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ whom you have sent. ⁴I have glorified you on the earth by completing the work you gave me to do. ⁵And now, Father, glorify me in your own presence with the glory I had with you before the world existed. ⁶I have made your name known to the people you gave me out of the world. They were yours, and you gave them to me, and they have kept your word. ⁷Now they know that everything you have given me comes from you, ⁸For I have given to them the words which you gavest me. Then they have received them, and have known surely that I arrived out from you, then they have believed that you didst send me. ⁹I am praying for them. I am not praying for the world, but for those you have given me, because they are yours. ¹⁰All that is mine is yours, and all that is yours is mine, and I have been glorified in them. ¹¹I am no longer in the world, but they are in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them in your name, which you have given me, so that they may be one, just as we are one. ¹²While I was with them, I kept them in your name, which you have given me. I guarded them, and not one of them has been lost except the son of destruction, so that the Scripture might be fulfilled. ¹³But now I am coming to you, and I speak these things in the world so that they may have my joy made complete in themselves. ¹⁴I have given them your word. Even as i am not in the world, and the world has hated them, because they are not in the world. ¹⁵I am not asking that you take them out of the world, but that you keep them from the evil one. ¹⁶Even as i am not in the world, and they are not in the world. ¹⁷Sanctify them in the truth; your word is truth. ¹⁸Just as you sent me into the world, so I have sent them into the world. ¹⁹And for their sake I consecrate myself, so that they also may be sanctified in truth. ²⁰I am not asking on behalf of these alone, but also on behalf of those who will believe in me through their word, ²¹That they all may be one. As you, Father, art in me, and I in you, that they also may be one in us — that the world may trust that you have dispatched me. ²²The glory that you have given me I have given to them, so that they may be one just as we are one — ²³I in them and you in me, that they may be brought to complete unity, so that the world may know that you sent me and loved them just as you

loved me. ²⁴Father, I desire that those you have given me may also be with me where I am, so that they may see my glory that you have given me, because you loved me before the foundation of the world. ²⁵Righteous Father, the world has not known you, but I have known you, and these have known that you sent me. ²⁶I have made your name known to them and will continue to make it known, so that the love with which you have loved me may be in them, and I in them."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The gesture of lifting eyes to heaven (*eparas tous ophthalmous eis ton ouranon*) is a traditional Jewish prayer posture (cf. Psalm 123:1). The perfect tense *eleelyhen* ('has come') marks the arrival of the 'hour' that has been anticipated throughout the Gospel (2:4, 7:30, 8:20, 12:23, 13:1). The mutual glorification — Son glorifies Father, Father glorifies Son — reveals a reciprocal dynamic within the Godhead.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 123:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The phrase *exousian pasees sarkos* ('authority over all flesh') is a Semitic expression meaning authority over all humanity. The neuter singular *pan ho* ('everything that') is collective, referring to believers as a unified whole, while the plural *autois* ('to them') sees them as individuals. The Father gives people to the Son; the Son gives them eternal life — a chain of divine giving.
3. This verse redefines eternal life (*aiōnios zōē*) not as endless duration but as relational knowledge of God and Jesus Christ. The verb *ginōskōsin* (present subjunctive of *ginōskō*) indicates ongoing, deepening knowledge — not a one-time acquisition but a continual knowing. The phrase *ton monon aleethinon theon* ('the only true God') echoes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4) and the first commandment. The juxtaposition of knowing the Father and knowing Jesus Christ places Jesus alongside God as the co-object of saving knowledge.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 6:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The aorist *edoxasa* ('I glorified') and the participle *teleiōsas* ('having completed') speak of Jesus's earthly mission as already finished — a proleptic perspective that views the cross as accomplished even before it occurs. The word *teleiōsas* shares its root with *tetelestai* ('It is finished,' 19:30), creating a verbal link between this prayer and the cross.
5. This is one of the strongest pre-existence claims in the New Testament. Jesus asks to be restored to the glory (*tee doxee*) he shared with the Father *pro tou ton kosmon einai* ('before the world existed'). The phrase *para seautō* ('in your own presence, at your own side') echoes the Prologue's *pros ton theon* ('with God,' 1:1). The prayer assumes that the incarnation involved a voluntary setting aside of divine glory, which is now to be resumed.
6. The verb *ephanērōsa* ('I revealed, manifested, made known') indicates that Jesus's entire ministry was an act of revealing the Father's name — his character, identity, and purposes. 'Name' (*onoma*) in Semitic thought encompasses the person's entire nature. The possessive chain — 'they were yours, you gave them to me' — emphasizes that the disciples belong first to the Father and are entrusted to the Son.
7. The perfect *egnōkan* ('they have come to know') indicates a settled conviction. The disciples have reached the understanding that Jesus's teaching, authority, and mission all originate with the Father — not from himself independently. This echoes the disciples' confession in 16:30.
8. The chain of transmission is explicit: Father gives words to Son, Son gives words to disciples, disciples receive them. The three verbs — *elabon* ('received'), *egnōsan* ('understood'), *episteusan* ('believed') — describe the progression of faith: reception, comprehension, and trust. The adverb *alēthōs* ('truly, genuinely') affirms the reality of their knowledge despite its limitations.
9. The limitation 'not for the world' (*ou peri tou kosmou*) does not mean Jesus has no concern for the world (cf. 3:16) but that this particular prayer focuses on the disciples who form the nucleus of the future community. The reason given — 'because they are yours' (*hoti soi eisin*) — grounds the petition in the Father's ownership of the disciples.
10. The mutual possession — 'mine is yours and yours is mine' — is a striking declaration of complete unity between Father and Son. The perfect passive *dedoxasmai* ('I have been glorified') in the disciples suggests that the disciples' faith and witness already constitute a glorification of Jesus, even before the cross.
11. The address *pater hagio* ('Holy Father') is unique in the New Testament — this combination appears nowhere else. The petition *teerēson autous en tō onomati sou* ('keep them in your name') asks the Father to protect the disciples within the sphere of his revealed character. The unity requested — 'that they may be one, just as we are' — sets the standard for human community at the level of the divine unity between Father and Son.
12. Two verbs describe Jesus's protective work: *eteeroun* ('I kept, watched over') and *ephylaxa* ('I guarded, protected'). The phrase *ho huiois tees apōleias* ('the son of destruction') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'one destined for or characterized by destruction.' The same phrase appears in 2 Thessalonians 2:3. The reference to Scripture being fulfilled likely points to Psalm 41:9 (quoted in 13:18) or Psalm 109:8.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 41:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 109:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

13. Jesus prays aloud ('in the world') so the disciples can hear. The phrase *teen charan teen emeen pepleerōmeneen* ('my joy made complete') echoes 15:11 and 16:24. The joy Jesus offers is his own joy — the joy of his relationship with the Father — shared with the disciples and brought to fullness.
14. The logic is: receiving God's word alienates the disciples from the world-system, making them targets of hatred. The parallel 'just as I am not of the world' (*kathōs egō ouk eimi ek tou kosmou*) places the disciples' experience in direct parallel with Jesus's own rejection. The world's hatred is evidence of their belonging to God, not a sign of failure.
15. The phrase *ek tou poneerou* could mean 'from evil' (abstract) or 'from the evil one' (personal). Given John's references to the 'ruler of this world' (12:31, 14:30, 16:11), the personal reading is more likely. Jesus does not pray for escape from the world but for protection while remaining in it — the mission requires presence, not withdrawal.
16. This verse nearly repeats verse 14b, creating a frame around the petition in verse 15. The repetition emphasizes the foundational claim: the disciples' identity is defined by their origin ('not of the world') rather than their location (they remain in the world). This grounds both the world's hostility and the need for divine protection.
17. The verb *hagiason* ('sanctify, set apart, consecrate') is cultic language — the same verb used in the Septuagint for consecrating priests and offerings (Exodus 28:41, Leviticus 8:10-12). The disciples are being set apart for a sacred mission. The instrument of sanctification is truth (*en tee aletheia*), which is then identified with God's word (*ho logos ho sos*). Truth in John is not abstract proposition but the reality of God revealed through Jesus.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 28:41. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 8:10-12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *aposteila* ('I sent') is the root of *apostolos* ('apostle, sent one'). Jesus's mission becomes the model and mandate for the disciples' mission. The parallel is comprehensive: as the Father sent the Son into a hostile world, so the Son sends his followers into that same world. The mission is outward, not inward.
19. Jesus 'consecrates himself' (*hagiazō emauton*) — language that evokes a sacrifice being set apart for offering. The phrase *hyper autōn* ('for their sake, on their behalf') gives his self-consecration a substitutionary quality. Jesus sets himself apart for the cross so that the disciples might be set apart for mission. The shift from 'sanctify' (for the disciples in v. 17) to 'consecrate' (for Jesus here) reflects the sacrificial nuance of Jesus's self-dedication.
20. The prayer expands from the present disciples to all future believers — everyone who will come to faith through the apostolic witness. The present participle *pisteuontōn* ('those believing') envisions an ongoing community that extends through time. This verse makes every subsequent Christian a subject of Jesus's prayer.
21. The unity prayer has three layers: unity among believers ('that they may all be one'), participation in the divine life ('that they also may be in us'), and missional witness ('that the world may believe'). The standard for human unity is nothing less than the mutual indwelling of Father and Son. This is not organizational uniformity but relational oneness patterned on the Godhead.
22. The claim that Jesus has given his glory (*teen doxan*) to the disciples is remarkable. This glory is not the pre-incarnate glory of verse 5 but the glory revealed through the incarnation and the cross — the glory of self-giving love. Shared glory becomes the basis for unity: those who share in the same glory naturally share in one another.
23. The perfect participle *teteleiōmenoi* ('having been brought to completion, perfected') describes unity as a realized state, not merely an aspiration. The chain of indwelling — Jesus in the disciples, the Father in Jesus — creates a unity that has missional impact: the world will 'know' (*ginōskee*) God's sending of Jesus and God's love for the disciples. The astounding claim is that God loves the disciples *kathos eme eegapeesas* ('just as you loved me') — with the same quality of love he has for the Son.
24. The verb *thelō* ('I desire, I will') is unusually direct for prayer — Jesus does not merely ask but expresses his will to the Father, reflecting the intimacy and unity of their relationship. The phrase *pro katabolees kosmou* ('before the foundation of the world') reaches further back than verse 5 ('before the world existed'), grounding the Father's love for the Son in eternity. The ultimate destiny of believers is to see (*theōrōsin*) Jesus's full, unveiled glory — a beatific vision.
25. The address *pater dikaie* ('Righteous Father') shifts from 'Holy Father' (v. 11) — holiness related to the petition for protection, righteousness to the appeal for justice and vindication. Three levels of knowing are contrasted: the world does not know the Father at all, Jesus knows the Father directly, and the disciples know that the Father sent Jesus. The disciples' knowledge is mediated through Jesus.
26. The prayer ends with a final statement of purpose that encompasses the entire Gospel: the revelation of the Father's name (his character) results in the Father's own love dwelling in the disciples, with Jesus himself in them. The future *gnōrisō* ('I will make known') indicates that Jesus's revelatory work continues beyond the cross through the Spirit. The prayer's final word is 'in them' (*en autois*), placing the focus not on Jesus's return to glory but on his ongoing presence within the believing community.

18

Summary: *John 18 narrates the arrest of Jesus in the garden, the Jewish interrogation before Annas and Caiaphas, Peter's three denials, and the Roman trial before Pilate. John's account differs from the Synoptics in key details: Jesus initiates the encounter with the arresting party, there is no Gethsemane agony, and the Jewish proceedings focus on Annas rather than a formal Sanhedrin trial. Pilate's interrogation centers on the question of kingship and culminates in the crowd's choice of Barabbas.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *John's arrest scene is theologically charged: when Jesus says ego eimi ('I am he,' v. 5), the soldiers fall to the ground — a detail unique to John that echoes the divine name theophany. Peter's sword-strike is attributed to him by name (only John identifies him). The interweaving of Peter's denials with Jesus's interrogation creates a literary contrast between Jesus's bold confession and Peter's craven denial. Pilate's question 'What is truth?' (v. 38) is one of the most famous philosophical moments in literature, left unanswered while Truth incarnate stands before him.*

Translation Friction: *John's chronology of the Jewish proceedings differs from the Synoptics — Jesus is taken first to Annas (the former high priest and father-in-law of Caiaphas), then to Caiaphas, with no detailed account of a Sanhedrin trial. We render John's account as given without harmonizing. The phrase 'not into the Praetorium, so that they would not be defiled' (v. 28) reflects the irony John intends — the Jewish leaders avoid ritual defilement while engineering the death of the innocent.*

Connections: *The garden arrest connects to the Gethsemane accounts in the Synoptics (Matthew 26:36-56, Mark 14:32-52, Luke 22:39-53). The ego eimi declaration echoes Exodus 3:14 and John's earlier 'I am' statements (8:24, 8:28, 8:58). Peter's denials fulfill Jesus's prediction in 13:38. Pilate's encounter with Jesus develops the kingship theme running through John (1:49, 6:15, 12:13-15). The Barabbas choice echoes the scapegoat ritual of Leviticus 16.*

¹After Jesus had said these things, he went out with his disciples across the Kidron Valley to a place where there was a garden, and he and his disciples entered it. ²Now Judas, who was betraying him, also knew the place, because Jesus had often met there with his disciples. ³So Judas, having procured a detachment of soldiers and officers from the chief priests and Pharisees, came there with lanterns, torches, and weapons. ⁴Then Jesus, knowing everything that was going to happen to him, came forward and said to them, "Who are you looking for?" ⁵They answered him, "Jesus the Nazarene." Jesus said to them, "I am he." Judas, who was betraying him, was also standing with them. ⁶When he said to them, "I am he," they drew back and fell to the ground. ⁷So he asked them again, "Who are you looking for?" They said, "Jesus the Nazarene." ⁸Jesus answered, "I told you that I am he. So if you are looking for me, let these men go." ⁹This was to fulfill the word he had spoken: "I have not lost a single one of those you gave me." ¹⁰Then Simon Peter, who had a sword, drew it and struck the high priest's servant, cutting off his right ear. The servant's name was Malchus. ¹¹Jesus said to Peter, "Put your sword back in its sheath. Am I not to drink the cup the Father has given me?" ¹²So the detachment of soldiers, their commander, and the officers of the Jewish leaders arrested Jesus and bound him. ¹³They led him first to Annas, for he was the father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was high priest that year. ¹⁴It was Caiaphas who had advised the Jewish leaders that it was better for one man to die for the people. ¹⁵Simon Peter and another disciple followed Jesus. That disciple was known to the high priest and went with Jesus into the courtyard of the high priest, ¹⁶However, Peter was standing at the door without. Then traveled out that other disciple, which was recognized to the elevated priest, and spoke to her that kept the door, and brought in Peter. ¹⁷The servant girl at the door said to Peter, "You are not also one of this man's disciples, are you?" He said, "I am not." ¹⁸Now the servants and officers had made a charcoal fire because it was cold, and they were standing around it warming themselves. Peter was also standing with them, warming himself. ¹⁹The high priest then questioned Jesus about his disciples and about his teaching. ²⁰Jesus answered him, "I have spoken openly to the world. I always taught in synagogues and in the temple, where all the Jewish people gather, and I have said nothing in secret. ²¹Why do you question me? Ask those who heard what I said to them. They know what I said." ²²When he had said this, one of the officers standing nearby struck Jesus, saying, "Is that how you answer the high priest?" ²³Jesus answered him, "If I have spoken wrongly, testify about what was wrong. But if

I spoke rightly, why do you strike me?" ²⁴Then Annas sent him, still bound, to Caiaphas the high priest. ²⁵Now Simon Peter was standing and warming himself. So they said to him, "You are not also one of his disciples, are you?" He denied it and said, "I am not." ²⁶One of the high priest's servants, a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off, said, "Didn't I see you in the garden with him?" ²⁷Peter denied it again, and immediately a rooster crowed. ²⁸Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas to the governor's headquarters. It was early morning. They did not enter the headquarters themselves, so that they would not be defiled but could eat the Passover. ²⁹So Pilate went outside to them and said, "What charge do you bring against this man?" ³⁰They answered him, "If this man were not a criminal, we would not have handed him over to you." ³¹Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and judge him according to your own law." The Jewish leaders said to him, "It is not permitted for us to execute anyone." ³²This was to fulfill what Jesus had said when he indicated the kind of death he was going to die. ³³So Pilate entered the headquarters again and called Jesus and said to him, "Are you the King of the Jews?" ³⁴Jesus answered, "Are you asking this on your own, or did others tell you about me?" ³⁵Pilate answered, "I am not a Jew, am I? Your own nation and the chief priests handed you over to me. What have you done?" ³⁶Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world. If my kingdom were of this world, my servants would be fighting so that I would not be handed over to the Jewish leaders. But as it is, my kingdom is not from here." ³⁷So Pilate said to him, "Then you are a king?" Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king. For this I was born, and for this I came into the world: to testify to the truth. Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice." ³⁸Pilate said to him, "What is truth?" After he said this, he went back out to the Jewish leaders and told them, "I find no basis for a charge against him. ³⁹But you have a custom that I release one prisoner for you at the Passover. So do you want me to release the King of the Jews for you?" ⁴⁰They shouted back, "Not this man, but Barabbas!" Now Barabbas was a revolutionary.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *cheimmarrou tou Kedrōn* ('the winter-torrent of Kidron') refers to the Kidron Valley east of Jerusalem, between the city and the Mount of Olives. John does not name Gethsemane (a Synoptic detail) but simply refers to a 'garden' (*kēpos*). The Kidron crossing echoes David's flight from Absalom (2 Samuel 15:23), creating a typological parallel between the rejected kings.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Samuel 15:23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The present participle *paradidous* ('the one handing over, betraying') describes Judas's action as ongoing — he is in the process of betrayal. The detail that Jesus 'often met there' (*pollakis synēchthē*) explains how Judas knew where to find him and emphasizes that Jesus made no attempt to avoid arrest by changing his routine.
3. The Greek *speiran* ('cohort, detachment') technically denotes a Roman military unit of 200-600 soldiers, though it may be used loosely here for a smaller detachment. The involvement of Roman soldiers alongside Jewish temple officers (*hypēretas*) indicates cooperation between Roman and Jewish authorities. The detail of lanterns and torches at Passover (during a full moon) carries Johannine irony — they bring artificial light to arrest the Light of the World.
4. John emphasizes Jesus's omniscience (*eidōs panta ta erchomena*) — he is not caught off guard but moves toward his captors deliberately. The verb *exēlthen* ('went out, came forward') shows Jesus taking the initiative rather than being discovered or seized. The question *tina zēteite* ('Who are you looking for?') is not a request for information but a sovereign challenge.
5. The response *egō eimi* ('I am he' or simply 'I am') functions on two levels: as a simple identification ('I'm the one you're looking for') and as an echo of the divine self-revelation in Exodus 3:14 and Isaiah 43:10. John's Gospel has used *egō eimi* repeatedly with divine overtones (8:24, 8:28, 8:58). The effect in verse 6 confirms the deeper reading. The detail of Judas standing with the arresting party (*met' autōn*) emphasizes his position — he has crossed from Jesus's side to the opposition.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 43:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The physical recoil (*apēlthon eis ta opisō*, 'went backward') and falling (*epesan chamai*, 'fell to the ground') are unique to John and carry theophanic overtones. In the Old Testament, people fall before divine presence (Ezekiel 1:28, Daniel 10:9). This detail transforms the arrest scene: Jesus is not a victim being seized but a sovereign figure before whom armed men collapse. He permits his own arrest.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:28. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 10:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Jesus repeats the question (palin epērōtēsen) after the soldiers recover, demonstrating complete control of the situation. The repetition also serves to set up the protective command in verse 8.
8. Jesus negotiates the disciples' freedom even at the moment of his own arrest. The imperative aphete toutous hypagein ('let these go') is a command, not a request. Jesus acts as the Good Shepherd protecting his flock (10:11-15) — he offers himself in exchange for the safety of his followers.
9. John applies fulfillment language (hina pleerōthee, 'so that it might be fulfilled') not to an Old Testament text but to Jesus's own words from 6:39 and 17:12. Jesus's own statements carry the authority of Scripture. The physical protection of the disciples here points to the spiritual protection Jesus promised in the prayer of chapter 17.
10. Only John identifies Peter as the one who struck (the Synoptics leave the swordsman anonymous) and names the servant Malchus. The specificity suggests eyewitness knowledge. The Greek ōtarion ('ear,' diminutive form) denotes the outer ear or earlobe. Peter's violent response contrasts sharply with Jesus's sovereign self-surrender.
11. The 'cup' (poteerion) is a well-established Old Testament metaphor for divinely appointed suffering or judgment (Psalm 75:8, Isaiah 51:17, Jeremiah 25:15). John's account omits the Gethsemane agony over the cup (Matthew 26:39, Mark 14:36, Luke 22:42) and presents Jesus as wholly resolved — the rhetorical question expects the answer 'yes.' The perfect tense dedōken ('has given') indicates the Father's settled determination.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 75:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 51:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 25:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Greek chiliarchos ('commander of a thousand') is a Roman military title, confirming the involvement of Roman forces. The verb edēsan ('they bound') emphasizes the indignity — the one who spoke as sovereign moments ago now submits to being bound. John lists three groups cooperating: Roman soldiers (speira), their commander (chiliarchos), and Jewish temple police (hypēretai).
13. Annas had served as high priest from AD 6-15 and retained enormous influence. The Synoptics do not record this preliminary hearing before Annas. John's phrase 'high priest that year' (archiereus tou eniautou ekeinou) does not imply an annual rotation (which did not exist) but identifies which year is in view — the year of Jesus's death.
14. John reminds the reader of Caiaphas's unwitting prophecy from 11:49-52. The word sympherei ('it is advantageous, it is better') is the same word Jesus used in 16:7 about his departure being 'to your advantage.' The irony is layered: Caiaphas spoke cynical political calculus, but John understood it as genuine prophecy about substitutionary death.
15. The identity of the 'other disciple' (allos matheetes) is debated — traditionally identified with the Beloved Disciple (the author). The word gnōstos ('known') implies a personal connection with the high priest's household, not merely acquaintance. The Greek aulēn ('courtyard') rather than 'palace' — the proceedings take place in the open courtyard of the high priest's residential compound.
16. The female doorkeeper (thyrooro, feminine) plays a small but significant role — she will initiate Peter's first denial in the next verse. The other disciple's ability to enter freely and arrange Peter's admission underscores his connection to the high priest's household.
17. The question expects a negative answer (mee kai sy, 'surely you're not also...'), giving Peter an easy path to denial. Peter's response ouk eimi ('I am not') stands in devastating contrast to Jesus's egō eimi ('I am') in verses 5-6 and 8. Where Jesus boldly identified himself, Peter denies his own identity as a disciple.
18. The detail of the charcoal fire (anthrakian) is significant because the same rare word appears in 21:9 when Jesus makes a charcoal fire on the beach — creating a literary connection between Peter's denial and his restoration. The image of Peter warming himself among Jesus's enemies visually places him on the wrong side.
19. The 'high priest' here is Annas (v. 13), who retains the title by courtesy despite having been deposed. The two topics — disciples and teaching (didachēs) — suggest an inquiry into whether Jesus leads a seditious movement. John provides no false witnesses or blasphemy charge as in the Synoptic accounts.
20. The adverb parrēsia ('openly, with boldness') contrasts with en kryptō ('in secret'). Jesus asserts that his teaching has been entirely public — there is no hidden revolutionary agenda. The appeal to public teaching implicitly challenges the legitimacy of a secret nighttime proceeding. The phrase is reminiscent of Isaiah 45:19: 'I have not spoken in secret.'
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 45:19: — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Jesus's response implicitly invokes a legal principle — under Jewish law, a defendant should not be compelled to testify against himself. Witnesses should be called. The perfect participle akēkootas ('those who have heard') refers to the many public witnesses of his teaching. Jesus's bold response

before the high priest contrasts with Peter's denials in the courtyard.

22. The Greek *edōken rhapsima* ('gave a blow') could mean a slap with the open hand or a strike with a rod. The officer's rebuke assumes that any challenge to the high priest's authority is disrespectful. This is the first physical violence against Jesus in the passion narrative (in John's account), and it comes from a Jewish officer, not a Roman soldier.
23. Jesus's response is a model of dignified resistance — he does not retaliate but demands legal accountability. The contrast between *kakōs* ('wrongly, badly') and *kalōs* ('rightly, well') frames the issue as a matter of justice, not authority. If Jesus said something false, let it be proved; if true, the violence is unjust.
24. The perfect participle *dedemenon* ('having been bound') emphasizes that Jesus remained bound throughout. John provides no details of the proceedings before Caiaphas, moving directly to the continuation of Peter's denials. The Synoptic accounts place the main trial before Caiaphas and the Sanhedrin; John's focus remains on the theological significance of the events rather than legal procedure.
25. The scene returns to Peter, still at the charcoal fire (v. 18), creating a literary interweaving with Jesus's interrogation. The second denial uses the same formula as the first — *ouk eimi* ('I am not') — reinforcing the contrast with Jesus's *egō eimi*. The verb *ērēsato* ('he denied') is emphatic.
26. This third challenge is the most dangerous — the questioner is a relative (*syngenēs*) of Malchus (v. 10) and claims to be an eyewitness (*ouk egō se eidon*, 'didn't I see you?'). Peter is now in real physical danger, not merely social embarrassment. The detail of the family connection is unique to John and suggests firsthand knowledge of the events.
27. The fulfillment of Jesus's prediction (13:38) is stated without commentary — John lets the bare fact speak. The word *eutheos* ('immediately') compresses the moment: denial and rooster-crow are nearly simultaneous. Unlike Luke (22:61-62), John does not record Peter's emotional response — the scene simply ends, leaving the reader to feel the weight of the silence.
28. The Greek *praitōrion* ('praetorium') is the Roman governor's official residence, likely the former palace of Herod the Great or the Antonia Fortress. The irony is unmistakable: the Jewish leaders avoid entering a Gentile building to preserve ceremonial purity for Passover while simultaneously delivering an innocent man to death. John's Passover chronology differs from the Synoptics — here the Passover meal has not yet been eaten, placing the crucifixion on the day the Passover lambs are slaughtered.
29. Pilate accommodates the Jewish leaders' purity concerns by going outside — a detail that structures the entire trial scene as a series of movements between inside (with Jesus) and outside (with the crowd). The word *katēgorian* ('accusation, charge') is a legal term requiring a formal indictment.
30. The response avoids a specific charge, instead asserting a general claim of criminality (*kakon poiōn*, 'one doing evil'). The evasion suggests either that their real charge (blasphemy) would not interest a Roman court, or that they expected Pilate to simply ratify their judgment without independent investigation. The verb *paredōkamen* ('we handed over') is the same root (*paradidōmi*) used for Judas's betrayal.
31. Pilate's response is dismissive — he attempts to return the case to Jewish jurisdiction. The Jewish leaders' reply reveals their true intention: they want execution, not merely punishment. The phrase *ouk exestin* ('it is not permitted') refers to the Roman restriction on Jewish capital punishment (the *ius gladii* reserved to the governor). This legal constraint ensures that Jesus will die by Roman crucifixion rather than Jewish stoning.
32. John explains the theological significance: Roman execution means crucifixion, which fulfills Jesus's own predictions about being 'lifted up' (3:14, 8:28, 12:32-33). The verb *sēmainōn* ('signifying, indicating') is the same word used in 12:33 where Jesus spoke of being 'lifted up from the earth.' Death by lifting up — on a cross — rather than by casting down (stoning) was divinely ordained.
33. Pilate moves inside to question Jesus privately — this inside/outside movement structures the entire trial (vv. 28-29 outside, 33-38a inside, 38b-40 outside). The question *sy ei ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn* ('Are you the king of the Jews?') indicates that the Jewish leaders have now framed the charge in political terms — kingship claims would constitute sedition against Rome.
34. Jesus's counter-question probes the source and intent of Pilate's inquiry. If Pilate asks on his own, the question has a Roman political meaning (Are you a revolutionary?). If others prompted it, the question carries Jewish messianic meaning (Are you the promised king?). The distinction matters because Jesus's answer depends on which sense of 'king' is intended.
35. Pilate's question *mēti egō Ioudaios eimi* ('I'm not a Jew, am I?') expects a negative answer and expresses disdain — he has no interest in Jewish messianic categories. The emphasis on 'your own nation' (to *ethnos* to son) and 'the chief priests' underscores that the initiative for Jesus's arrest came from his own people. Pilate's final question — 'What have you done?' — returns to the Roman concern: what crime warrants this proceeding?
36. The phrase *ouk estin ek tou kosmou toutou* ('is not from this world') uses *ek* ('from, out of') to indicate origin, not location. Jesus does not say his kingdom has no relevance to this world, but that it does not derive its authority, methods, or power from worldly sources. The proof is the absence of armed resistance — a kingdom of this world would fight. The threefold repetition of 'my kingdom' (*hee basileia hee emee*) emphasizes personal ownership.
37. Jesus's response *sy legeis hoti basileus eimi* ('you say that I am a king') is ambiguous — it neither confirms nor denies the title but redirects it. Jesus then redefines his kingship in terms of truth-bearing rather than political power. The phrase *eis touto gegennēmai* ('for this I was born') combined with *eis touto elēlytha eis ton kosmon* ('for this I came into the world') distinguishes birth from incarnation, implying pre-existence. The claim 'everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice' echoes the shepherd discourse (10:3-4, 27).
38. Pilate's question *ti estin alētheia* ('What is truth?') has been interpreted as cynical dismissal, philosophical inquiry, or weary pragmatism. John leaves it unanswered — Pilate does not wait for a reply but immediately exits. The irony is profound: Pilate asks 'What is truth?' while standing

before the one who said 'I am the truth' (14:6). His judicial verdict — oudemian heuriskō en autō aitian ('I find no charge in him') — is the first of three declarations of innocence (cf. 19:4, 6).

39. The Passover amnesty custom (synētheia, 'custom, usual practice') is not attested outside the Gospels but is plausible within Roman provincial practice. Pilate's use of the title 'the King of the Jews' (ton basilea tōn Ioudaiōn) may be mocking or strategic — using the title to minimize the charge. The Passover context deepens the theological resonance: the festival celebrating Israel's liberation from slavery becomes the setting for a choice between releasing a criminal and condemning the innocent.
40. The verb ekraugasan ('they shouted, cried out') indicates a loud, collective outcry. The name Barabbas (Bar-Abbas) means 'son of the father' in Aramaic — an ironic detail since the crowd chooses the 'son of the father' over the Son of the Father. The Greek lēstēs can mean 'robber, bandit, or insurrectionist.' Given the political context and the parallel accounts (Mark 15:7 mentions insurrection and murder), 'revolutionary' better captures the political dimension. The crowd prefers a violent revolutionary to the king whose kingdom is 'not of this world.'

19

Summary: *John 19 narrates the climax of the passion: Pilate's final attempts to release Jesus, the scourging and mocking, the crowd's demand for crucifixion, the crucifixion itself at Golgotha, Jesus's final words and death, and the burial by Joseph of Arimathea and Nicodemus. John's account emphasizes Jesus's sovereignty throughout — he carries his own cross, speaks from the cross with deliberate purpose, and chooses the moment of his death with the declaration 'It is finished.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *John's crucifixion account is rich with theological symbolism. The inscription in three languages (v. 20) proclaims Jesus's kingship to the world. The seamless tunic (vv. 23-24) may symbolize the high priestly garment. Jesus's care for his mother (vv. 26-27) demonstrates love even in death. The flow of blood and water (v. 34) carries sacramental overtones. The fulfillment of Scripture is noted repeatedly (vv. 24, 28, 36-37). The word tetelestai ('It is finished,' v. 30) is the Greek perfect of teleō — not a cry of defeat but a shout of completion. The same root appeared in the prayer of 17:4 ('I have completed the work').*

Translation Friction: *John's account differs from the Synoptics in several details: Jesus carries his own cross (no Simon of Cyrene), only three sayings from the cross are recorded (compared to seven across all Gospels), and the darkness and temple veil are not mentioned. We render John's text as given. The identity of the Beloved Disciple (v. 26) remains debated — traditionally identified as John son of Zebedee. The emphasis on eyewitness testimony (v. 35) asserts historical reliability at the most theologically charged moment.*

Connections: *The scourging and crown of thorns connect to Isaiah 53 (the suffering servant). The seamless tunic echoes Psalm 22:18 and possibly the high priestly garment of Exodus 28. 'It is finished' completes the work described in 4:34 and 17:4. The unbroken bones fulfill Exodus 12:46 (Passover lamb) and Psalm 34:20. The piercing fulfills Zechariah 12:10. The burial with myrrh and aloes connects to Nicodemus's first appearance in chapter 3. The garden burial echoes the garden of Eden and anticipates the garden resurrection of chapter 20.*

¹Then Pilate took Jesus and had him flogged. ²The soldiers twisted together a crown of thorns and placed it on his head, and they dressed him in a purple robe. ³They kept coming up to him and saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!" and striking him in the face. ⁴Pilate went outside again and said to them, "Look, I am bringing him out to you so that you may know I find no basis for a charge against him." ⁵So Jesus came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. Pilate said to them, "Here is the man!" ⁶When the chief priests and the officers saw him, they shouted, "Crucify! Crucify!" Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and crucify him, for I find no basis for a charge against him." ⁷The Jewish leaders answered him, "We have a law, and according to that law he ought to die because he made himself the Son of God." ⁸When Pilate heard this, he was even more afraid. ⁹He entered the headquarters again and said to Jesus, "Where are you from?" But Jesus gave him no answer. ¹⁰So Pilate said to him, "You refuse to speak to me? Do you not know that I have authority to release you and authority to crucify you?" ¹¹Jesus answered him, "You would have no authority over me at all unless it had been given to you from above. For this reason, the one who handed me over to you has the greater sin." ¹²From then on Pilate sought to release him, but the Jewish leaders shouted, "If you release this man, you are no friend of Caesar. Everyone who makes himself a king opposes Caesar." ¹³When Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus outside and sat down on the judgment seat at a place called the

Stone Pavement — in Aramaic, Gabbatha. ¹⁴Now it was the day of Preparation for the Passover, about the sixth hour. He said to the Jewish leaders, "Here is your king!" ¹⁵They shouted, "Away with him! Away with him! Crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Shall I crucify your king?" The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar." ¹⁶So he handed him over to them to be crucified. They took Jesus, ¹⁷He bearing his cross traveled forth into a location called the location of a skull, which is called in the Hebrew Golgotha. ¹⁸There they crucified him, and with him two others, one on each side, with Jesus in the middle. ¹⁹Pilate also wrote an inscription and placed it on the cross. It read: "Jesus the Nazarene, the King of the Jews." ²⁰Many of the Jewish people read this inscription, because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city, and it was written in Aramaic, Latin, and Greek. ²¹So the chief priests of the Jewish people said to Pilate, "Do not write, 'The King of the Jews,' but rather, 'This man said, I am King of the Jews.'" ²²Indeed, Pilate answered, What I have written stands as written. ²³When the soldiers had crucified Jesus, they took his garments and divided them into four parts, one for each soldier. They also took his tunic. Now the tunic was seamless, woven in one piece from top to bottom. ²⁴So they said to one another, "Let us not tear it, but cast lots for it to decide whose it will be." This was to fulfill the Scripture that says: "They divided my garments among themselves, and for my clothing they cast lots." So that is what the soldiers did. ²⁵Standing near the cross of Jesus were his mother, his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene. ²⁶When Jesus saw his mother and the disciple whom he loved standing nearby, he said to his mother, "Woman, here is your son." ²⁷Then he said to the disciple, "Here is your mother." And from that hour the disciple took her into his own home. ²⁸After this, Jesus, knowing that everything was now completed, said (to fulfill the Scripture), "I am thirsty." ²⁹A jar full of sour wine was standing there. So they put a sponge soaked in the sour wine on a hyssop branch and held it to his mouth. ³⁰When Jesus had received the sour wine, he said, "It is finished," and bowing his head, he gave up his spirit. ³¹Since it was the day of Preparation, and so that the bodies would not remain on the cross during the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was a high day), the Jewish leaders asked Pilate to have the legs broken and the bodies taken down. ³²So the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first man and then of the other who had been crucified with him. ³³But when they came to Jesus and saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs. ³⁴Instead, one of the soldiers pierced his side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out. ³⁵The one who saw it has testified, and his testimony is true, and he knows that he is telling the truth, so that you also may believe. ³⁶For these things took place to fulfill the Scripture: "Not one of his bones will be broken." ³⁷And another Scripture says: "They will look on the one whom they pierced." ³⁸After these things, Joseph of Arimathea, who was a disciple of Jesus — but secretly, for fear of the Jewish leaders — asked Pilate for permission to take away the body of Jesus. Pilate gave permission, so he came and took his body. ³⁹Nicodemus also came — the one who had first come to Jesus at night — bringing a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about seventy-five pounds. ⁴⁰So they took the body of Jesus and wrapped it in linen cloths with the spices, according to the Jewish burial custom. ⁴¹Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden, and in the garden a new tomb in which no one had ever been laid. ⁴²So because it was the Jewish day of Preparation, and since the tomb was nearby, they laid Jesus there.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *emastigōsen* ('scourged, flogged') refers to the Roman *flagellum* — a brutal punishment using a multi-tailed whip embedded with bone or metal. Roman scourging often preceded crucifixion but could also serve as a lesser punishment. Pilate may have intended the flogging as a substitute for execution, hoping it would satisfy the crowd (cf. Luke 23:16, 22).
2. The crown of thorns (*stephanon ex akanthōn*) parodies a royal crown or possibly the laurel wreath of a Roman victor. The purple robe (*himation porphyroun*) mocks royal status — purple was the color of royalty and extreme wealth. The irony in John's narrative is that the mockery accidentally declares the truth: Jesus is a king, and the thorns echo the curse of Genesis 3:18.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 3:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The imperfect tenses *ērchonto* ('they kept coming') and *elegon* ('they kept saying') indicate repeated, ongoing mockery. The greeting *chaire* ('hail, rejoice') parodies the formal salutation to the emperor: 'Ave Caesar.' The verb *edidosan* ('they kept giving') with *rapismata* ('slaps, blows') describes repeated strikes. The soldiers' mockery is a cruel game, but for John's readers it is unwitting testimony.

4. This is Pilate's second declaration of Jesus's innocence (cf. 18:38). The verb *agō* ('I bring, I lead out') presents Jesus as being exhibited to the crowd. Pilate's strategy appears to be: display the beaten, humiliated prisoner and demonstrate that he poses no political threat, hoping the crowd will be satisfied short of execution.
5. The Latin *Ecce Homo* ('Behold the man') is one of the most famous phrases in Western culture. The Greek *idou ho anthrōpos* may carry several layers: Pilate's dismissive 'Look at this pathetic figure' (hoping to evoke pity), an ironic echo of 'Son of Man' (*ho huios tou anthrōpou*), or an unwitting declaration of Jesus's true humanity. For John's readers, the beaten figure in mock-royal garments is simultaneously the most pitiful and the most regal sight in history.
6. The double imperative *staurōson staurōson* ('Crucify! Crucify!') is a frenzied demand. John identifies the chief priests and officers as leading the cry, not the general populace. Pilate's third declaration of innocence (*ego gar ouch heuriskō en autō aitian*) makes his eventual capitulation all the more damning — he condemns a man he knows to be innocent. His suggestion to 'take him yourselves and crucify him' is likely sarcastic, since the Jewish leaders lack authority to crucify.
7. The charge shifts from political (king) to religious (Son of God). The law they reference is likely Leviticus 24:16 regarding blasphemy. The phrase *huion theou heauton epoiesen* ('he made himself Son of God') reveals the core theological offense — not merely claiming to be Messiah but claiming a unique divine relationship. For Pilate, a Roman, the phrase 'Son of God' (*huios theou*) would evoke the divine claims associated with the emperor.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 24:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The comparative *mallon ephobēthē* ('he was more afraid') implies Pilate was already uneasy — the claim of divine sonship intensifies his discomfort. Roman superstition took divine claims seriously; Pilate may fear divine retribution for mistreating a being with supernatural connections. The fear also has political dimensions — executing someone with a divine following could provoke unrest.
9. Pilate's question *pothen ei sy* ('Where are you from?') operates on two levels: Pilate asks about Jesus's origin in light of the 'Son of God' claim, but the question of Jesus's origin is one of the great themes of John's Gospel (7:27-28, 8:14, 9:29-30). Jesus's silence echoes Isaiah 53:7 ('like a sheep before its shearers is silent'). Having already declared his origin to Pilate (18:36-37), Jesus offers no further testimony to one who dismissed truth itself (18:38).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Pilate asserts his *exousian* ('authority, power') — the Roman governor's judicial authority over life and death. The double claim of authority (to release and to crucify) is meant to compel a response. The irony is that Pilate's authority is about to be overridden by the crowd's pressure, exposing its fragility.
11. Jesus breaks his silence to correct Pilate's claim to autonomous authority. All authority is *anōthen* ('from above') — derived from God. The phrase *paradous me soi* ('the one who handed me over to you') most likely refers to Caiaphas (who formally delivered Jesus to Pilate) rather than Judas (who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders). The comparative 'greater sin' (*meizona hamartian*) implies Pilate also bears sin, but the one with fuller knowledge of God's purposes bears more guilt.
12. The phrase *philos tou Kaisaros* ('friend of Caesar') may be a formal title (*amicus Caesaris*) denoting loyalty to the emperor, or simply a threat that Pilate would be reported as disloyal. Under the emperor Tiberius, accusations of disloyalty were extremely dangerous — many officials were executed on such charges. This political threat is the lever that finally breaks Pilate's resistance. The irony is that the Jewish leaders, who chafe under Roman rule, now invoke Caesar's authority to destroy their own Messiah.
13. The verb *ekathisen* ('sat down') could be transitive ('he seated Jesus on the judgment seat') — a reading some scholars favor as another layer of Johannine irony: the judge is being judged, and the condemned man occupies the seat of judgment. The more natural reading is intransitive ('Pilate sat down'). The *Lithostroton* ('Stone Pavement') was likely a paved area in the governor's complex. John provides both the Greek and Aramaic names, characteristic of his concern for multilingual readers.
14. The chronological note is theologically loaded: *paraskeue tou pascha* ('Preparation of the Passover') is the day the Passover lambs were slaughtered in the temple. At the very hour the lambs are being prepared for sacrifice, the Lamb of God (1:29) is being condemned. The 'sixth hour' (about noon) conflicts with Mark 15:25 ('the third hour'); John may be using Roman time-reckoning (6 AM) or emphasizing the symbolic correspondence with the lamb-slaughtering hour. Pilate's *idou ho basileus hymōn* ('Here is your king!') parallels his earlier *idou ho anthrōpos* ('Here is the man!', v. 5).
15. The double imperative *aron aron* ('Take away! Take away!') expresses urgent demand for removal. The chief priests' declaration *ouk echomen basilea ei mē Kaisara* ('We have no king but Caesar') is a devastating theological surrender — Israel's foundational confession was that God alone is king (Judges 8:23, 1 Samuel 8:7, Isaiah 33:22). The religious leaders renounce their own theological heritage to secure Jesus's death.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Judges 8:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 8:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 33:22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The verb *paredōken* ('he handed over') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal (*paradidōmi*). Pilate becomes another link in the chain of 'handing over.' The subject shifts abruptly — 'they took Jesus' begins the crucifixion narrative. John compresses the transition from verdict to execution.

17. John emphasizes that Jesus carried his own cross (bastazōn heautō ton stauron) — unlike the Synoptics where Simon of Cyrene is pressed into service (Mark 15:21). John may omit Simon to emphasize Jesus's sovereign self-determination. The stauros ('cross') here refers to the crossbeam (patibulum), which the condemned carried to the execution site where the upright post was fixed. Golgotha is Aramaic Gulgaltā ('skull'), possibly named for the skull-shaped topography of the site.
18. John records the crucifixion itself with stark brevity — estaurōsan ('they crucified') — without describing the physical process. The placement of Jesus meson ('in the middle') between two others may symbolize his role as mediator or may ironically fulfill Isaiah 53:12 ('he was numbered with the transgressors'). John does not identify the two others as criminals (a Synoptic detail).
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The Greek titlon is a loanword from the Latin titulus, the official placard stating the condemned person's crime. The inscription — Iesous ho Nazōraios ho basileus tōn Ioudaiōn — becomes the inadvertent proclamation that John's entire Gospel has been building toward. Pilate, who asked 'What is truth?' now unwittingly publishes the truth for all to read.
20. The three languages represent the three major linguistic communities in the region: Hebraisti (Aramaic, the local language), Rhōmaisti (Latin, the language of power), and Hellēnisti (Greek, the language of culture and commerce). The trilingual inscription proclaims Jesus's kingship to the entire known world. John uses Hebraisti to mean 'in the local Semitic language,' which at this period was Aramaic rather than classical Hebrew.
21. The chief priests want the inscription changed from a factual declaration to a reported claim — the difference between 'The King of the Jews' (a statement of identity) and 'He said he was King of the Jews' (a recorded accusation). The objection reveals their awareness that Pilate's wording, as written, amounts to an official Roman acknowledgment of Jesus's kingship.
22. The perfect tense gegrapha ('I have written and it stands written') carries the force of finality — the decision is irreversible. This is Pilate's one act of resolve in the entire proceeding. Whether from stubbornness, spite, or unconscious obedience to a higher purpose, Pilate ensures that the proclamation of Jesus's kingship stands permanently over the cross.
23. The detail of four soldiers (tessara merē, 'four parts') establishes the standard Roman crucifixion squad (a quaternion). The chitōn ('tunic, inner garment') is distinguished from the outer himation ('garments'). The seamless tunic (araphos, 'without seam') woven ek tōn anōthen ('from the top') has been interpreted as symbolizing the high priestly garment (Josephus, Antiquities 3.161 describes the high priest's robe as woven without seam) or as representing the unity of Jesus's work that cannot be divided.
24. The Scripture quoted is Psalm 22:18, one of the most detailed prophetic correspondences in the passion narrative. John sees the two halves of the psalm verse fulfilled in two distinct actions: the dividing of the outer garments and the casting of lots for the inner tunic. Psalm 22 opens with 'My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?' — words Jesus speaks from the cross in Matthew and Mark but not in John.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 22:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The Greek could list three or four women depending on whether 'his mother's sister' and 'Mary the wife of Clopas' are the same person or two different individuals. If four women, they form two pairs; if three, one pair is identified. We render the list as given without resolving the ambiguity. The courage of these women contrasts with the absence of the male disciples (except the Beloved Disciple, v. 26).
26. The address gynai ('woman') is not disrespectful in Greek (cf. 2:4) but is notably formal rather than intimate. The 'disciple whom he loved' (ton mathētēn hon ēgapa) is the Beloved Disciple, traditionally identified as John son of Zebedee. From the cross, Jesus establishes a new family relationship — his mother is entrusted to the Beloved Disciple's care. The scene has both pastoral and symbolic dimensions: the formation of a new community at the foot of the cross.
27. The phrase eis ta idia ('into his own home/things') is the same expression used in 1:11 and 16:32, creating a literary connection. The Beloved Disciple's immediate obedience (elaben, 'he took') mirrors Joseph's obedience in Matthew 1:24. The phrase 'from that hour' (ap ekeinēs tēs hōras) marks a decisive moment — even from the cross, Jesus's words create new realities.
28. The perfect tense tetelestai ('has been completed') indicates that Jesus's mission is accomplished. The verb teleiōthē ('might be fulfilled/completed') connects Scripture fulfillment to the completion of Jesus's work — the two are inseparable. The Scripture referenced is likely Psalm 69:21 ('for my thirst they gave me vinegar to drink') or Psalm 22:15 ('my tongue sticks to the roof of my mouth'). The declaration dipsō ('I thirst') is both a genuine expression of physical suffering and a deliberate action to fulfill Scripture.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 69:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 22:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The oxos ('sour wine, vinegar') was the posca — cheap vinegar-wine commonly drunk by Roman soldiers. The hyssop (hyssōpō) is a significant detail: hyssop was used to apply the Passover lamb's blood to the doorposts in Exodus 12:22. John connects Jesus's death to the Passover sacrifice through this botanical detail. Some manuscripts read hyssō ('javelin') instead of hyssōpō, but the Passover connection favors the majority reading.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 12:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

30. The word *tetelestai* ('It is finished, It has been completed') is the perfect tense of *teleō* — denoting a completed action with lasting results. This is not a cry of defeat ('It's over') but a shout of accomplishment ('It is accomplished'). The same root appears in 4:34 ('to complete his work'), 17:4 ('I have completed the work'), and 19:28 ('everything was completed'). The phrase *paredōken to pneuma* ('he handed over his spirit') portrays Jesus's death as a voluntary act — he 'gave' his spirit rather than having it taken. The verb *paradidōmi* ('to hand over') is the same word used for Judas's betrayal, creating a theological contrast: Judas handed Jesus over to death; Jesus hands his spirit over to the Father.
31. Deuteronomy 21:22-23 required that a hanged body not remain overnight. The request to break legs (*crurifragium*) was a method of hastening death — unable to push up on their legs to breathe, the crucified would suffocate quickly. The note that this Sabbath was *megalē* ('great, high') indicates it coincided with a festival — in John's chronology, the first day of Passover, making it doubly sacred.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 21:22-23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The soldiers proceed systematically from one end to the other. Jesus, crucified in the middle (v. 18), would be last. The verb *kateaxan* ('they broke') refers to the *crurifragium* — smashing the shin bones with a heavy mallet.
33. The perfect participle *tethnēkota* ('having died, being dead') emphasizes that Jesus's death was already complete and verified by professional soldiers. The fact that his legs were not broken becomes theologically significant in verses 36-37 as the fulfillment of Scripture.
34. The spear thrust (*lonchē*, 'lance, spear') was likely a verification of death. The flow of *haima kai hydōr* ('blood and water') has been interpreted medically (pericardial fluid and blood, indicating death by cardiac rupture), sacramentally (symbolizing the Eucharist and baptism), and typologically (echoing the water from the rock in Exodus 17:6). John's emphasis on this detail (reinforced by the eyewitness attestation in v. 35) suggests he sees deep significance beyond mere physical description.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 17:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. This is a rare intrusion of the narrator's voice asserting eyewitness authority. The perfect tenses *heōrakōs* ('having seen') and *memartyrēken* ('has testified') indicate that the witness continues to bear testimony. The double affirmation — 'his testimony is true' (*alēthinē*) and 'he tells the truth' (*alēthē*) — uses two different Greek words for truth, reinforcing the reliability of the account. The purpose clause 'so that you may believe' (*hina kai hymeis pisteusēte*) connects the eyewitness report directly to the Gospel's evangelistic purpose (cf. 20:31).
36. The Scripture cited is Exodus 12:46 (or Numbers 9:12), which prohibits breaking the bones of the Passover lamb, or Psalm 34:20 ('He keeps all his bones; not one of them is broken'). The Passover lamb connection is primary in John's theology — Jesus is the Lamb of God (1:29, 36) whose bones remain unbroken according to the Passover regulations. The sacrificial typology is complete.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 12:46. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 9:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 34:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. The quotation is from Zechariah 12:10, which in its original context describes a future mourning in Jerusalem: 'They will look on me, the one they have pierced, and they will mourn for him as one mourns for an only son.' The Hebrew has 'on me' (*alai*) while John's Greek has 'on the one whom' (*eis hon*), following a textual tradition that avoids the startling first-person reference to God being pierced. Revelation 1:7 also cites this passage in connection with Jesus's return.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 12:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. Joseph's status as a 'secret disciple' (*mathētēs kekrymmenos*) connects him to the 'many rulers' who believed but would not confess openly (12:42). The fear that silenced him during Jesus's life gives way to courage after his death — Joseph publicly identifies himself with the crucified Jesus by requesting his body, an act that would end any remaining concealment. Roman law allowed the bodies of the executed to be claimed by friends or family.
39. John reminds the reader of Nicodemus's nighttime visit in chapter 3 (*ho elthōn pros auton nyktos to prōton*). His progression in the Gospel is notable: he came secretly at night (3:1-2), spoke cautiously in Jesus's defense (7:50-52), and now openly participates in the burial. The quantity — *hōs litras hekatōn* ('about a hundred litrai') — is enormous, approximately 75 modern pounds (33 kg). This is a royal burial provision, befitting a king. The spices (*myrrh* and *aloes*) were used to mask the odor of decomposition and honor the dead.
40. The Greek *othoniois* ('linen cloths, strips of linen') are burial wrappings. The phrase *kathos ethos estin tois Ioudaiois entaphiazēin* ('as is the custom of the Jews to bury') distinguishes Jewish burial practice from Egyptian embalming or Roman cremation. The spices are packed within and around the wrappings. These grave cloths will be significant in the resurrection account (20:5-7).
41. John frames the death and burial in a garden (*kēpos*), creating a literary inclusion with the arrest in a garden (18:1) and anticipating the resurrection in the same garden (20:15). The 'new tomb' (*mnēmeion kainon*) where 'no one had ever been placed' (*oudepō oudeis ēn tetheimenos*) ensures that any resurrection from this tomb can only be Jesus's. The garden setting also evokes Eden — humanity fell in a garden, and new creation begins in a

garden.

42. The burial is hasty — driven by the approaching Sabbath (*paraskeuen tōn Ioudaiōn*). The proximity of the tomb (*engys ēn to mnēmeion*) was providential rather than planned. The verb *ethēkan* ('they placed, they laid') is simple and final. The chapter ends not with triumph or commentary but with a body laid in a tomb — the silence between death and resurrection.

20

Summary: *John 20 narrates the resurrection and its aftermath: Mary Magdalene discovers the empty tomb, Peter and the Beloved Disciple investigate, Mary encounters the risen Jesus in the garden, Jesus appears to the gathered disciples and commissions them with the Holy Spirit, and Thomas moves from doubt to the climactic confession 'My Lord and my God.' The chapter concludes with the Gospel's purpose statement: 'these are written so that you may believe.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains some of the most intimate and theologically significant scenes in the Gospels. Mary Magdalene's encounter with the risen Jesus (vv. 11-18) is deeply personal — she recognizes him only when he speaks her name, echoing the shepherd who 'calls his own sheep by name' (10:3). Thomas's confession 'My Lord and my God' (v. 28) is the highest Christological declaration in the Gospel, forming an *inclusio* with the Prologue's 'the Word was God' (1:1). The purpose statement (vv. 30-31) reveals that the entire Gospel has been evangelistic testimony designed to produce faith.*

Translation Friction: *Mary's instruction 'Do not cling to me' (v. 17) with the explanation 'I have not yet ascended' is theologically puzzling — the relationship between touching Jesus and his ascension is not self-evident. We render the Greek without resolving the debate. The phrase 'he breathed on them' (v. 22) uses the same verb (*emphysaō*) as Genesis 2:7 in the Septuagint, suggesting a deliberate new-creation parallel. Whether this constitutes the Johannine Pentecost or an anticipation of Acts 2 is debated.*

Connections: *The empty tomb narrative connects to all four Gospel accounts while retaining John's distinctive perspective. Mary's garden encounter echoes Song of Songs 3:1-4 (seeking the beloved). The breathing of the Spirit echoes Genesis 2:7 (creation of humanity) and Ezekiel 37:9 (revival of dry bones). Thomas's confession answers the question of Jesus's identity posed throughout the Gospel. The purpose statement connects to 1 John 5:13 and frames the entire Gospel as testimony.*

¹On the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene came to the tomb early, while it was still dark, and saw that the stone had been removed from the tomb. ²So she ran and went to Simon Peter and the other disciple, the one Jesus loved, and said to them, "They have taken the Lord out of the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid him." ³So Peter and the other disciple set out and went toward the tomb. ⁴They were both running together, but the other disciple outran Peter and reached the tomb first. ⁵Stooping to look in, he saw the linen cloths lying there, but he did not go in. ⁶Then Simon Peter came, following him, and went into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying there, ⁷The napkin, that was concerning his head, not lying with the linen clothes, but wrapped together in a location by itself. ⁸Then the other disciple, who had reached the tomb first, also went in, and he saw and believed. ⁹For they did not yet understand the Scripture that he must rise from the dead. ¹⁰Then the disciples went back to their homes. ¹¹But Mary stood outside the tomb weeping. As she wept, she stooped to look into the tomb, ¹²Sees two angels in brilliant sitting, the one at the skull, and the other at the feet, where the body of Jesus had lain. ¹³They said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?" She said to them, "They have taken away my Lord, and I do not know where they have laid him." ¹⁴After she said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not recognize that it was Jesus. ¹⁵Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Who are you looking for?" She, thinking he was the gardener, said to him, "Sir, if you have carried him away, tell me where you have laid him, and I will take him." ¹⁶Jesus said to her, "Mary." She turned and said to him in Aramaic, "Rabboni!" — which means "Teacher." ¹⁷Jesus said to her, "Do not cling to me, for I have not yet ascended to the Father. But go to my brothers and tell them, 'I am ascending to my Father and your Father, to my God and your God.'" ¹⁸Mary Magdalene went and announced to the disciples, "I have seen the Lord!" — and she told them what he had said to her. ¹⁹On the evening of that day, the first day of the week, the doors being

locked where the disciples were for fear of the Jewish leaders, Jesus came and stood among them and said to them, "Peace be with you." ²⁰After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. The disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord. ²¹Jesus said to them again, "Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, so I am sending you." ²²And after he said this, he breathed on them and said, "Receive the Holy Spirit. ²³If you forgive the sins of any, they are forgiven them; if you retain the sins of any, they are retained." ²⁴Now Thomas, one of the twelve, called the Twin, was not with them when Jesus came. ²⁵So the other disciples told him, "We have seen the Lord." But he said to them, "Unless I see the mark of the nails in his hands and put my finger into the mark of the nails and put my hand into his side, I will never believe." ²⁶Eight days later, his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them and said, "Peace be with you." ²⁷Then he said to Thomas, "Put your finger here and see my hands. Reach out your hand and put it into my side. Do not be unbelieving, but believing." ²⁸Thomas answered him, "My Lord and my God!" ²⁹Jesus said to him, "Have you believed because you have seen me? Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have believed." ³⁰Now Jesus performed many other signs in the presence of his disciples that are not written in this book. ³¹But these are written so that you may believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and that by believing you may have life in his name.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *tee mia tōn sabbatōn* ('the first of the week') is a Semitic way of saying 'Sunday.' The detail *skotias eti ousēs* ('while it was still dark') is characteristically Johannine — darkness in this Gospel symbolizes spiritual blindness and separation from Jesus (cf. 1:5, 3:19, 13:30). Mary comes in literal darkness and will move toward the light of recognition. John mentions only Mary Magdalene, unlike the Synoptics which include other women.
2. Mary's first interpretation is grave robbery (*ēran ton kyrion*, 'they have taken the Lord'). The plural 'we do not know' (*ouk oidamen*) may suggest other women were present (as in the Synoptic accounts) even though John mentions only Mary. The 'other disciple whom Jesus loved' (*tonallon mathētēn hon ephilei ho Iēsous*) is the Beloved Disciple, here described with *phileō* ('loved with personal affection') rather than the *agapaō* used in 13:23 and 19:26.
3. The imperfect *ērchonto* ('they were going, they were on their way') captures the ongoing action — the narrative builds suspense as the two disciples make their way to the tomb.
4. The detail of the foot race (*proedragen tachion*, 'ran ahead faster') has the feel of eyewitness memory — specific, personal, and unnecessary for the theological point. The Beloved Disciple's greater speed and earlier arrival set up the distinction between seeing (v. 5) and believing (v. 8).
5. The verb *parakypsas* ('stooping, bending over to look') indicates the low entrance of a first-century rock-cut tomb. The Beloved Disciple sees (*blepei*) the linen cloths (*othonia*) but hesitates to enter — whether from reverence, fear, or deference to Peter is not stated.
6. Peter arrives and enters without hesitation — consistent with his impulsive character throughout the Gospels. The verb *theōrei* ('he observed, he looked carefully at') is a more intensive form of seeing than the Beloved Disciple's *blepei* in verse 5, suggesting Peter examined the scene closely.
7. The *soudarion* ('face cloth, handkerchief') is a separate piece from the body wrappings. The detail that it was *entetyligmenon* ('rolled up, folded') and placed *choris* ('separately, apart') suggests orderliness rather than the haste of grave robbery — a thief would not neatly fold the burial cloths. The arrangement of the grave cloths is evidence that something other than theft has occurred.
8. Three different Greek verbs for 'seeing' appear in verses 5-8: *blepei* (v. 5, 'he sees'), *theōrei* (v. 6, 'he observes'), and *eiden* (v. 8, 'he saw' — from *horaō*, implying perception with understanding). The Beloved Disciple's seeing leads immediately to believing — he is the first to believe in the resurrection based on the evidence of the empty tomb and the arrangement of the burial cloths, without yet seeing the risen Jesus.
9. The narrator explains that the disciples' understanding was still incomplete — they had not yet grasped the scriptural necessity (*dei*, 'it is necessary') of the resurrection. The specific Scripture (*graphēn*, singular) is not identified; possibilities include Psalm 16:10 ('you will not abandon my soul to Sheol'), Hosea 6:2 ('on the third day he will raise us up'), or Isaiah 53:10-12. The Beloved Disciple believed based on what he saw, but fuller scriptural understanding would come later.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 16:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 6:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:10-12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The phrase *pros autous* ('to themselves, to their own') indicates they returned to where they were staying. The departure sets the stage for Mary's solitary encounter with the risen Jesus — the disciples leave, but Mary stays.
11. The imperfect *eistēkei* ('she was standing') and the present participle *klaiousa* ('weeping') paint a vivid picture of sustained grief. Mary's sorrow dominates the scene — she is weeping for a dead man, unaware that death has been conquered. The verb *parekypsen* ('she stooped to look') echoes the Beloved Disciple's action in verse 5.

12. The two angels (angelous) in white recall the cherubim on the mercy seat (kapporet) of the Ark of the Covenant, positioned at each end (Exodus 25:18-20). If this parallel is intended, the place where Jesus's body lay corresponds to the mercy seat — the place of atonement. The white garments (en leukois) are characteristic of heavenly beings in the New Testament.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 25:18-20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Mary's response repeats her earlier report (v. 2) but now uses the singular 'I do not know' (ouk oida) and the personal 'my Lord' (ton kyrion mou) — the grief has become deeply personal. She is so consumed by sorrow that the presence of angels does not startle her or redirect her attention.
14. Mary's failure to recognize Jesus (ouk ēdei hoti Iēsous estin) echoes other post-resurrection non-recognition scenes (Luke 24:16, 24:37). This may indicate a transformation in Jesus's risen body, or it may reflect Mary's grief-blurred perception, or both. The dramatic irony is intense — the reader knows who stands before her.
15. Jesus's question tina zēteis ('Who are you looking for?') echoes his first question in the Gospel to Andrew and John (1:38, 'What are you seeking?') and his question to the arresting party (18:4, 'Who are you looking for?'). Mary's assumption that Jesus is the kēpouros ('gardener') is natural given the garden setting — but for John's readers, there is a deeper truth: the risen Jesus is the true gardener of the new Eden, the one who tends the garden of new creation.
16. The recognition comes through a single word — her name. This fulfills 10:3 ('he calls his own sheep by name') and 10:27 ('my sheep hear my voice'). The shift from non-recognition to recognition pivots on the personal address. Mary's response 'Rabboni' (rabbouni) is an intensified form of 'Rabbi' — 'my great teacher' or 'my dear teacher.' John translates it as didaskalos ('teacher') for his Greek readers. The scene is one of the most intimate in all four Gospels.
17. The present imperative mee mou haptou is better rendered 'stop clinging to me' or 'do not keep holding on to me' rather than 'do not touch me' — Mary has apparently grasped him and Jesus tells her to release him. The reason given — 'I have not yet ascended' (oupō anabebēka) — implies that the old mode of physical relationship must give way to a new mode of spiritual relationship mediated by the Spirit. The phrase 'my brothers' (tous adelphous mou) is the first time Jesus uses this family language for his disciples. The careful distinction 'my Father and your Father, my God and your God' maintains Jesus's unique relationship to the Father while including the disciples in a genuine filial relationship.
18. Mary becomes the first witness to the resurrection and the first evangelist — she is sent (poreuou, 'go!') by Jesus to proclaim the news. The verb angellousa ('announcing, reporting') is related to angelos ('messenger') — Mary fulfills an angelic function. Her declaration heōraka ton kyrion ('I have seen the Lord') uses the perfect tense, indicating a sight with lasting impact.
19. The locked doors (tōn thyron kekleisimenōn) emphasize both the disciples' fear and the supernatural character of Jesus's appearance — he enters without the doors being opened. The greeting eirēnē hymin ('Peace to you') is the standard Semitic greeting (shalom aleichem) but carries enormous weight in this context. Jesus had promised 'my peace I give to you' (14:27) and 'in me you may have peace' (16:33). Now the risen Jesus delivers on that promise.
20. Jesus shows his wounds as identification — the risen body bears the marks of the cross. The resurrection does not erase the crucifixion but transforms it. The disciples' joy (echarēsan, 'they rejoiced') fulfills Jesus's promise in 16:20-22 that their sorrow would be turned to joy. The verb echarēsan echoes 16:22: 'your hearts will rejoice.'
21. The second eirēnē hymin transitions from greeting to commissioning. The perfect apostalken ('has sent,' denoting the ongoing mission) is paired with the present pempō ('I am sending,' denoting the immediate commission). This echoes 17:18: 'As you sent me into the world, so I have sent them into the world.' The disciples' mission is patterned on Jesus's own mission from the Father.
22. The verb enepheysēsen ('he breathed on/into') appears in the Septuagint only in Genesis 2:7 (God 'breathed into' Adam the breath of life) and Ezekiel 37:9 (the Spirit 'breathes' life into the dry bones). The allusion is deliberate — Jesus's act is a new creation, a new breathing of life into his people. Whether this constitutes the full giving of the Spirit (as in Johannine theology) or an anticipation of Pentecost (as in Lukan theology) is debated. In John's narrative, this is the moment the Spirit is given.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 37:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The authority to forgive or retain sins (aphēte, 'release, forgive' and kratēte, 'hold, retain') is given to the community of disciples, not to an individual. The perfect tenses apheōntai ('they stand forgiven') and kekratēntai ('they stand retained') indicate permanent results. This commission extends the forgiveness ministry that Jesus exercised during his earthly life. The precise exercise of this authority — whether sacramental, declarative, or disciplinary — has been debated throughout church history.
24. The name Thomas (Thōmas) is itself Aramaic for 'twin' (te'oma), and Didymos is the Greek equivalent. John consistently identifies Thomas with this double name (11:16, 14:5, 21:2). His absence from the first appearance sets up one of the Gospel's most dramatic scenes.
25. Thomas's demand escalates from seeing (idō) to touching (balō ton daktylo mou, 'put my finger') to thrusting his hand into the spear wound (balō mou tēn cheira eis tēn pleuran). The double negative ou mē pisteusō ('I will absolutely not believe') is the strongest form of denial in Greek. Note that Thomas demands the same evidence Jesus had already provided the other disciples (v. 20) — his request is not unreasonable, merely emphatic.

The mention of nails (hēlōn) confirms crucifixion by nailing (rather than tying).

26. The phrase meth' hēmeras oktō ('after eight days') by inclusive counting means the following Sunday — establishing the pattern of first-day-of-the-week gatherings that would become Christian worship practice. The repeated detail of locked doors and Jesus's supernatural entry underscores the nature of the resurrection body: physical enough to be seen and touched, yet not bound by physical barriers.
27. Jesus addresses Thomas's exact demands (vv. 25) — demonstrating both his knowledge of Thomas's words (he was not present when Thomas spoke them) and his willingness to meet Thomas where he is. The imperative mē ginou apistos alla pistos ('stop becoming unbelieving but be believing') uses the present imperative ginou, suggesting a process: Thomas is not yet fixed in unbelief but is moving toward it, and Jesus intervenes. The text does not say whether Thomas actually touched Jesus's wounds — the narrative moves directly to his confession.
28. Thomas's confession ho kyrios mou kai ho theos mou ('My Lord and my God') is the climactic Christological declaration of the Gospel. The use of the nominative with the article (ho kyrios, ho theos) as vocative gives the confession maximum force. This directly identifies Jesus as theos ('God'), completing the theological arc that began in 1:1 ('the Word was God'). Thomas moves from the most extreme doubt to the most exalted confession in the Gospel — a transformation John presents as the paradigm of faith.
29. The first clause can be read as a statement ('Because you have seen me, you have believed') or a question ('Have you believed because you have seen me?'). Both readings work theologically. The beatitude for those who believe without seeing (makarioi hoi mē idontes kai pisteusantes) reaches beyond Thomas to all future believers — including every reader of the Gospel. This is the bridge between the apostolic eyewitnesses and the ongoing community of faith.
30. The word sēmeia ('signs') is John's characteristic term for Jesus's miracles — they are not mere displays of power but signs pointing to deeper realities about Jesus's identity. The acknowledgment that 'many other signs' exist admits the Gospel's selectivity — what is included has been deliberately chosen for the purpose stated in verse 31.
31. This is the Gospel's purpose statement, revealing that everything written has been evangelistic testimony. The verb pisteusēte could be aorist subjunctive ('come to believe' — evangelistic, aimed at unbelievers) or present subjunctive ('continue believing' — pastoral, aimed at the community). The manuscript evidence is divided; both purposes are served by the Gospel. The double object of faith — that Jesus is the Christ (Messiah) and the Son of God — summarizes the Gospel's dual Christological claim: Jesus fulfills Jewish messianic expectation and shares in the divine identity. The result of believing is zōē ('life') — the life that has been the Gospel's theme from the Prologue (1:4: 'In him was life').

21

Summary: *John 21 is the epilogue of the Gospel, set by the Sea of Tiberias (Galilee). Seven disciples go fishing and catch nothing until the risen Jesus appears on the shore and directs them to an enormous catch. After a breakfast of bread and fish, Jesus three times asks Peter 'Do you love me?' — restoring him from his threefold denial. Jesus predicts Peter's martyrdom, addresses the fate of the Beloved Disciple, and the chapter closes with a final testimony to the authenticity of the Gospel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter is widely regarded as an epilogue added after the original conclusion (20:30-31), though it is present in all manuscripts. The miraculous catch of 153 fish has generated centuries of interpretation — the number may be symbolic (Jerome claimed it was the number of known species of fish, representing the universal mission). The threefold 'Do you love me?' dialogue restores Peter from his threefold denial (18:17, 25, 27), creating a literary and pastoral symmetry. The charcoal fire (anthrakian, v. 9) uses the same rare word as the fire where Peter denied Jesus (18:18), connecting the two scenes. Jesus's final commission — 'Feed my sheep' — establishes pastoral care as the expression of love for Christ.*

Translation Friction: *The interchange between agapaō and phileō in the Peter dialogue (vv. 15-17) has been interpreted as theologically significant (agapaō as divine love, phileō as human affection) or as Johannine stylistic variation without distinction. We render both as 'love' since English lacks the Greek differentiation, and note the variation in translator notes. The identity of the Beloved Disciple (v. 20) remains the Gospel's enduring mystery. The final verse (v. 25) is hyperbolic, a literary convention for closing a work of vast scope.*

Connections: *The fishing scene echoes Luke 5:1-11 (the first miraculous catch). The charcoal fire connects to 18:18 (Peter's denials). The threefold restoration mirrors the threefold denial. 'Feed my sheep' connects to the shepherd discourse (10:1-18). Peter's predicted death by stretching out his hands (v. 18) has traditionally been understood as crucifixion. The Beloved Disciple's testimony (vv. 24-25) connects to the eyewitness claim of 19:35.*

¹After these things, Jesus revealed himself again to the disciples by the Sea of Tiberias. He revealed himself in this way: ²Simon Peter, Thomas called the Twin, Nathanael from Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee, and two other of his disciples were together. ³Simon Peter said to them, "I am going fishing." They said to him, "We will come with you." They went out and got into the boat, but that night they caught nothing. ⁴Just as day was breaking, Jesus stood on the shore, but the disciples did not know that it was Jesus. ⁵Jesus said to them, "Children, you do not have any fish, do you?" They answered him, "No." ⁶He said to them, "Cast the net on the right side of the boat, and you will find some." So they cast it, and they were not able to haul it in because of the great number of fish. ⁷So the disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, "It is the Lord!" When Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he put on his outer garment — for he had stripped for work — and threw himself into the sea. ⁸The other disciples came in the boat, dragging the net full of fish, for they were not far from the land — only about a hundred yards. ⁹When they got out on land, they saw a charcoal fire there with fish laid on it, and bread. ¹⁰Jesus said to them, "Bring some of the fish you have just caught." ¹¹So Simon Peter went aboard and hauled the net ashore, full of large fish — a hundred and fifty-three. And although there were so many, the net was not torn. ¹²Jesus said to them, "Come and have breakfast." None of the disciples dared to ask him, "Who are you?" — because they knew it was the Lord. ¹³Jesus came and took the bread and gave it to them, and the fish likewise. ¹⁴This was now the third time Jesus appeared to the disciples after he was raised from the dead. ¹⁵When they had finished breakfast, Jesus said to Simon Peter, "Simon, son of John, do you love me more than these?" He said to him, "Yes, Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Feed my lambs." ¹⁶He said to him a second time, "Simon, son of John, do you love me?" He said to him, "Yes, Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Tend my sheep." ¹⁷He said to him the third time, "Simon, son of John, do you love me?" Peter was grieved because he said to him the third time, "Do you love me?" and he said to him, "Lord, you know everything; you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Feed my sheep. ¹⁸Truly, truly, I tell you, when you were young, you used to dress yourself and walk wherever you wanted. But when you are old, you will stretch out your hands, and another will dress you and carry you where you do not want to go." ¹⁹He said this to indicate the kind of death by which Peter would glorify God. After saying this, he said to him, "Follow me." ²⁰Peter turned and saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following them — the one who had reclined next to Jesus at the supper and had said, "Lord, who is it that is going to betray you?" ²¹When Peter saw him, he said to Jesus, "Lord, what about this man?" ²²Jesus said to him, "If I want him to remain until I come, what is that to you? You follow me!" ²³So the word spread among the brothers that this disciple would not die. But Jesus did not say to him that he would not die. Rather, he said, "If I want him to remain until I come, what is that to you?" ²⁴This is the disciple who is testifying about these things and who wrote these things, and we know that his testimony is true. ²⁵Now there are also many other things that Jesus did. If every one of them were written down, I suppose that the world itself could not contain the books that would be written.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *ephanērōsen* ('he revealed, manifested') emphasizes Jesus's initiative — he chooses when and how to appear. The Sea of Tiberias is an alternate name for the Sea of Galilee, named after the city built by Herod Antipas in honor of Emperor Tiberius. The repetition of *ephanērōsen* creates a formal introduction, as if presenting an official account.
2. Seven disciples are listed — seven being the number of completeness. This is the only mention of the sons of Zebedee (James and John) in the Fourth Gospel, supporting the traditional identification of the Beloved Disciple with John son of Zebedee. Nathanael, introduced in 1:45-51, reappears only here in John. The two unnamed disciples remain unidentified.
3. Peter's return to fishing has been interpreted as apostasy (returning to his old life), pragmatism (they needed to eat), or simply filling time while waiting for further instruction. The narrative does not condemn the decision. The fruitless night of fishing (*epiasan ouden*, 'they caught nothing') sets up the contrast with the abundance that Jesus provides — apart from him they can do nothing (15:5).
4. The transition from night to dawn (*prōias ēdē genomenēs*, 'morning already having come') carries symbolic weight: the fruitless darkness gives way to the presence of the Light (cf. 1:5, 8:12). The disciples' failure to recognize Jesus (*ouk ēdeisan hoti Iēsous estin*) echoes Mary Magdalene's experience (20:14) and the Emmaus road encounter (Luke 24:16).
5. The address *paidia* ('children, lads') is informal and affectionate. The word *prosphagion* ('something to eat with bread, fish') specifically refers to the relish or fish eaten alongside bread. The question *mē ti prosphagion echete* expects a negative answer — Jesus already knows the result of their night's labor. The stark monosyllable *ou* ('no') captures the disciples' frustrated exhaustion.

6. The direction 'right side' (ta dexia merē) may be coincidental or may carry symbolic significance (the right side being associated with favor and blessing in biblical and ancient Near Eastern thought). The contrast between total failure without Jesus's direction and overwhelming abundance with it illustrates the principle of 15:5 ('apart from me you can do nothing'). The verb *hēlkysai* ('to drag, haul') will reappear in verse 11.
7. The Beloved Disciple recognizes Jesus first (spiritual perception), but Peter acts first (impulsive action) — a pattern consistent with their characterizations throughout the Gospel (cf. 20:4-8). The word *gymnos* ('naked') here means stripped to a loincloth for work, not fully unclothed. Peter puts on his *ependytēn* ('outer garment') before jumping in — seemingly illogical for swimming, but motivated by the desire not to greet his Lord in a state of undress.
8. The Greek *pēchōn diakosiōn* ('two hundred cubits') is approximately 300 feet or 90 meters. We render this as 'about a hundred yards' for modern comprehension. The diminutive *ploiariō* ('small boat') distinguishes their vessel from a larger ship. While Peter swims, the others bring the catch to shore.
9. The word *anthrakian* ('charcoal fire') appears only here and in 18:18 (the fire where Peter denied Jesus) in the entire New Testament. The verbal link is deliberate — Jesus will restore Peter at the same type of fire where Peter fell. The prepared meal (*opsarion*, 'fish,' and *arton*, 'bread') recalls the feeding of the five thousand (6:9, 11) where the same two words appear. Jesus provides for his people.
10. Jesus already has fish on the fire (v. 9) but invites the disciples to contribute from their catch. This combines divine provision with human participation — a pattern consistent with the feeding miracles. The adverb *nyn* ('now, just now') emphasizes the freshness of the catch.
11. The exact count of 153 fish (*hekaton pentēkonta triōn*) has generated extensive speculation: Jerome claimed it was the number of known fish species (universal mission); Augustine noted it is the triangular number of 17 (1+2+3...+17=153); others connect it to Ezekiel 47:10 (the prophetic vision of abundant fishing in the Dead Sea). The precision of the count suggests eyewitness memory. The unbroken net (*ouk eschisthē to diktyon*) may symbolize the unity of the church despite the great number gathered into it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 47:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The invitation *deute aristēsate* ('come, have breakfast') is warm and domestic. The verb *aristēsate* specifically refers to the morning meal. The tension between knowing (*eidotes hoti ho kyrios estin*, 'knowing that it was the Lord') and wanting to ask (*exetasai*, 'to examine, to question') captures the awe and strangeness of encountering the risen Jesus — they recognize him but his transformed presence inhibits normal interaction.
13. The verbs *lambanei...* *didōsin* ('he takes... he gives') echo the actions at the feeding of the five thousand (6:11: 'Jesus took the loaves... and distributed them') and the Last Supper (13:26). The risen Jesus continues to be the one who feeds his people. The act is eucharistic in resonance without being explicitly identified as a sacramental meal.
14. The narrator counts Jesus's appearances to the disciples as a group: first on Easter evening (20:19-23), second a week later with Thomas (20:26-29), and now third by the sea. Mary Magdalene's encounter (20:14-18) is not counted because it was to an individual, not to the gathered disciples. The passive *egertheis* ('having been raised') attributes the resurrection to divine action.
15. Jesus addresses Peter by his birth name *Simōn Iōannou* ('Simon son of John') rather than his apostolic name Peter — recalling the moment of their first meeting (1:42). The phrase *pleon toutōn* ('more than these') could mean 'more than these other disciples love me,' 'more than you love these men,' or 'more than you love these things (the boats and fish).' The first reading fits Peter's earlier boast of superior loyalty (13:37). Jesus uses *agapas* ('do you love with *agapē*?'') while Peter responds with *philō* ('I love with *philia*'). Whether this distinction is theologically significant or merely stylistic variation is debated. The command *boske ta arnia mou* ('feed my lambs') commissions Peter as an under-shepherd.
16. The second question drops 'more than these' — the comparison is removed and the question is simple and direct. Jesus again uses *agapas*; Peter again responds with *philō*. The command shifts from *boske* ('feed') to *poimaine* ('tend, shepherd') and from *arnia* ('lambs') to *probata* ('sheep'). The shepherd imagery connects directly to chapter 10 where Jesus is the Good Shepherd; Peter is now commissioned to continue that shepherding work.
17. In the third question, Jesus switches to Peter's own verb — *phileis me?* ('do you have affection for me?'). This is what grieves Peter (*elypēthē*, 'he was hurt, pained') — Jesus seems to question even Peter's *philia*-level love. Peter's response appeals to Jesus's omniscience: *panta sy oidas* ('you know everything'). The switch from *oidas* ('you know intuitively') to *ginōskeis* ('you know from experience') is emphatic — Peter trusts that Jesus's comprehensive knowledge includes knowledge of Peter's heart. The threefold question-and-commission corresponds to the threefold denial, effecting a complete restoration.
18. The double *amēn* introduces a solemn prediction. The phrase *ekteneis tas cheiras sou* ('you will stretch out your hands') has traditionally been understood as a reference to crucifixion — the stretching out of arms on a cross. The progression from self-determination ('you dressed yourself, walked where you wanted') to submission ('another will dress you, carry you where you do not want') describes the movement from freedom to martyrdom. Church tradition records that Peter was crucified in Rome under Nero, reportedly upside down at his own request.
19. The verb *sēmainōn* ('signifying, indicating') is the same word used in 12:33 and 18:32 for Jesus indicating the manner of his own death. Peter's death, like Jesus's, will 'glorify God' (*doxasei ton theon*) — martyrdom is presented not as tragedy but as the ultimate expression of discipleship. The command *akolouthei moi* ('follow me') recalls the original call to discipleship (1:43) and takes on new meaning in light of the predicted death — 'follow me' now means 'follow me to the cross.'

- 20.** The Beloved Disciple is identified by his posture at the Last Supper (13:23-25) — reclining at Jesus's chest and asking about the betrayer. This lengthy identification emphasizes the intimacy of his relationship with Jesus and connects the epilogue to the upper room narrative. Peter's natural curiosity about the Beloved Disciple's fate follows immediately from the prediction about his own.
- 21.** Peter's question *houtos de ti* ('But this one — what?') is characteristically blunt and impulsive. Having learned his own fate, Peter wants to know the Beloved Disciple's. The question reveals a natural human tendency to compare one's calling and suffering with others'.
- 22.** Jesus's response is both an answer and a rebuke: each disciple's calling is between him and Jesus, and comparison is inappropriate. The conditional *ean auton thelō menein* ('if I want him to remain') is deliberately hypothetical — Jesus does not predict the Beloved Disciple's survival until the *parousia* but uses the hypothetical to redirect Peter's focus. The emphatic *sy moi akolouthei* ('you — follow me!') places the pronoun first for emphasis: 'As for you, your job is to follow me.'
- 23.** The narrator corrects a misunderstanding that had circulated in the early Christian community (*eis tous adelphous*, 'among the brothers'). The rumor that the Beloved Disciple would not die had apparently persisted, perhaps because he lived to an advanced age. This correction suggests the chapter was written or finalized after the Beloved Disciple's death (or near the end of his life) when the community needed clarification.
- 24.** The present participle *martyrōn* ('the one testifying') indicates ongoing witness, while the aorist *grapsas* ('the one who wrote') points to a completed literary act. The first-person plural *oidamen* ('we know') shifts from the individual voice of the Beloved Disciple to a community that vouches for his testimony. This suggests a circle of disciples who knew the Beloved Disciple and endorsed his Gospel. The claim *alēthēs autou hē martyria estin* ('his testimony is true') echoes 19:35.
- 25.** The closing verse is a literary convention of hyperbolic modesty (cf. Ecclesiastes 12:12, 'Of making many books there is no end'). The first person *oimai* ('I suppose, I think') is the only clear first-person singular in the Gospel, giving the ending a personal and reflective tone. The hyperbole — the world could not contain the books — expresses the inexhaustible significance of Jesus's life and work. Some manuscripts add 'Amen,' but the SBLGNT does not include it.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ecclesiastes 12:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

Acts

1

Summary: *Acts 1 opens with Luke's prologue addressing Theophilus, connecting this volume to the Gospel of Luke. The risen Jesus instructs his apostles to wait in Jerusalem for the promise of the Holy Spirit. After forty days of post-resurrection appearances, Jesus ascends into heaven from the Mount of Olives. The apostles return to Jerusalem and devote themselves to prayer. The chapter closes with the selection of Matthias to replace Judas Iscariot, restoring the Twelve.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke explicitly frames Acts as a sequel — 'the first account' (ton proton logon) refers to his Gospel. The forty-day period of post-resurrection teaching echoes Israel's forty years in the wilderness and Moses' forty days on Sinai. The ascension narrative is remarkably restrained — no dramatic special effects, just Jesus 'lifted up' and a cloud receiving him. The 'two men in white' echo the angelic figures at the empty tomb (Luke 24:4). The lot-casting for Matthias is the last recorded instance of this Old Testament decision-making method; after Pentecost, the Spirit replaces the lot.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek phrase 'baptized with the Holy Spirit' (baptistesesthe en pneumati hagio) in verse 5 creates the theological foundation for the Pentecost narrative in chapter 2. The question about restoring the kingdom to Israel (v. 6) reveals the disciples' persistent expectation of a political Messiah, which Jesus redirects without directly denying. The criteria for Judas's replacement (vv. 21-22) — someone present from John's baptism through the ascension — defines apostolic witness as eyewitness testimony.*

Connections: *The prologue connects to Luke 1:1-4. The promise of the Spirit connects to Joel 2:28-32 (quoted in Acts 2). The ascension connects to Daniel 7:13-14 (the Son of Man coming with clouds). The replacement of Judas fulfills the Psalms citations in verses 16 and 20 (Psalm 69:25 and Psalm 109:8). The number twelve connects to the twelve tribes of Israel, maintaining the symbolic completeness of the apostolic body.*

¹I wrote the first account, Theophilus, about all that Jesus began to do and to teach, ²Until the day in which he was taken up, following that he by way of the Holy Ghost had given commandments to the apostles whom he had chosen:. ³He also presented himself alive to them after his suffering, with many convincing proofs, appearing to them over a period of forty days and speaking about the kingdom of God. ⁴While he was eating with them, he commanded them not to leave Jerusalem but to wait for the promise of the Father. "This is what you heard from me," he said. ⁵"For John baptized with water, but you

will be baptized with the Holy Spirit not many days from now." ⁶So when they had gathered together, they asked him, "Lord, is it at this time that you are restoring the kingdom to Israel?" ⁷He said to them, "It is not for you to know the times or seasons that the Father has set by his own authority. ⁸But you will receive power when the Holy Spirit has come upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, and in all Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth." ⁹After he had said these things, while they were watching, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him from their sight. ¹⁰While they were staring intently into the sky as he was going, suddenly two men in white clothing stood beside them. ¹¹They said, "Men of Galilee, why do you stand looking into the sky? This Jesus, who has been taken up from you into heaven, will come in the same way as you saw him go into heaven." ¹²Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mountain called Olivet, which is near Jerusalem, a Sabbath day's journey away. ¹³When they arrived, they went up to the upper room where they were staying — Peter and John and James and Andrew, Philip and Thomas, Bartholomew and Matthew, James son of Alphaeus and Simon the Zealot and Judas son of James. ¹⁴All these were devoting themselves with one mind to prayer, together with the women and Mary the mother of Jesus, and with his brothers. ¹⁵In those days Peter stood up among the brothers and sisters — the gathering numbered about one hundred and twenty — and said, ¹⁶"Brothers, the Scripture had to be fulfilled that the Holy Spirit spoke beforehand through the mouth of David concerning Judas, who became a guide for those who arrested Jesus. ¹⁷For he was counted among us and received his share in this ministry." ¹⁸(Now this man acquired a field with the reward of his wickedness, and falling headfirst, his body burst open and all his intestines spilled out. ¹⁹This became known to all the residents of Jerusalem, so that field was called in their own language Hakeldamach — that is, 'Field of Blood.') ²⁰"For it is written in the book of Psalms, 'Let his dwelling become desolate, and let no one live in it,' and, 'Let another take his position of oversight.' ²¹So one of the men who accompanied us during the entire time that the Lord Jesus went in and out among us, ²²starting from John's baptism all the way to the day Jesus was taken up from among us. One of these men must join us as a witness of his resurrection. ²³They proposed two men: Joseph called Barsabbas, who was also known as Justus, and Matthias. ²⁴Then they prayed and said, "You, Lord, who know the hearts of all, show which one of these two you have chosen ²⁵Indeed, that he may take part of this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas by sin fell, that he might go to his own location. ²⁶Then they cast lots for them, and the lot fell on Matthias, and he was counted with the eleven apostles.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *ton proton logon* ('the first account/word') refers to Luke's Gospel. The verb *epoiesameen* ('I made/composed') is a standard literary term for writing a work. 'Theophilus' means 'lover of God' or 'friend of God' — whether this is a real person or a symbolic addressee is debated, though the honorific 'most excellent' used in Luke 1:3 suggests a real patron.
1. The phrase 'began to do and to teach' (*eerxato poiein te kai didaskein*) implies that what Jesus 'began' in the Gospel continues through his apostles in Acts — the ascension does not end Jesus's work but changes its mode.
2. The verb *aneleemphthee* ('was taken up') is the technical term for the ascension, used again in verse 11 and in 1 Timothy 3:16. The phrase 'through the Holy Spirit' (*dia pneumatos hagiou*) can modify either 'given instructions' or 'chosen' — the ambiguity is present in the Greek. We follow the more natural reading linking it to the instructions.
2. The word *apostolois* ('apostles') here designates the specific group Jesus chose, not the broader later usage of the term. Luke uses it as a technical title for the Twelve.
3. The Greek *tekmeriois* ('proofs, convincing evidence') is a strong term from legal and philosophical discourse — these are not casual sightings but demonstrable evidence. Luke the historian emphasizes the evidentiary quality of the resurrection appearances.
3. The forty-day period (*di' heemerōn tesserakonta*) is mentioned only here in the New Testament. It echoes Moses' forty days on Sinai (Exodus 24:18) and Elijah's forty-day journey to Horeb (1 Kings 19:8). The risen Jesus uses this time to teach about the kingdom — a post-resurrection seminar on God's reign.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 24:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek *synalizomenos* is debated: it may mean 'eating together with' (from *hals*, 'salt') or 'being assembled with' (from *syn* + *halizō*). The eating interpretation is favored by many scholars as it emphasizes the physical reality of the risen Jesus sharing meals with his disciples (cf. Luke 24:41-43). We follow this reading.

4. The 'promise of the Father' (teen epangelian tou patros) refers to the Holy Spirit, as clarified in verse 5. This connects to Joel 2:28-29 and Jesus's own promises in Luke 24:49 and John 14-16.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:28-29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The contrast between John's water baptism and the coming Spirit baptism is a key theme in Luke-Acts (cf. Luke 3:16). The preposition en can mean 'with' or 'in' — 'baptized in the Holy Spirit' and 'baptized with the Holy Spirit' are both valid renderings. We choose 'with' for clarity, though the immersion imagery of 'in' captures the Greek metaphor better.
5. The phrase 'not many days from now' (ou meta pollas tautas heemeras) deliberately avoids specifying the exact timing, building anticipation for the Pentecost event in chapter 2.
6. The imperfect tense eerōtōn ('they were asking, kept asking') suggests persistent questioning, not a single query. The verb apokathistaneis ('are you restoring') carries overtones of the prophetic hope for Israel's restoration (cf. Malachi 4:5-6, where Elijah 'restores' all things). The disciples assume the Spirit's coming means political restoration — Jesus redirects but does not deny the eventual restoration of Israel.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 4:5-6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Jesus distinguishes two temporal concepts: chronous ('times,' referring to duration or chronological periods) and kairous ('seasons,' referring to appointed moments or decisive occasions). Together they cover both the timeline and the turning points of God's plan. The Father alone holds authority (exousia) over these — this is a boundary on human knowledge, not a denial that restoration will occur.
8. This verse serves as the programmatic outline for the entire book of Acts: Jerusalem (chapters 1-7), Judea and Samaria (chapters 8-12), and to the ends of the earth (chapters 13-28). The Greek dynamin ('power') is the root of English 'dynamite' — the Spirit's power is not passive but active and transformative.
8. The word martyres ('witnesses') is the root of English 'martyr.' In Acts, bearing witness will cost some disciples their lives (Stephen in chapter 7, James in chapter 12). Witness and suffering are linguistically and theologically intertwined.
8. The phrase 'ends of the earth' (eschatou tees gees) echoes Isaiah 49:6, where the Servant of the LORD is 'a light for the nations, that my salvation may reach to the end of the earth.' Jesus's commission fulfills the Isaianic servant vision.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 49:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The ascension is described with remarkable restraint. The passive epeerthee ('was lifted up') indicates divine action — Jesus does not fly away under his own power but is taken up by God. The cloud (nephelee) echoes the cloud of divine presence throughout the Old Testament: the pillar of cloud in the wilderness (Exodus 13:21), the cloud on Sinai (Exodus 24:15-18), the cloud filling the temple (1 Kings 8:10-11), and the Son of Man coming with clouds (Daniel 7:13). The cloud is not weather but theophany.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 13:21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 24:15-18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 8:10-11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb atenizantes ('staring intently, gazing fixedly') conveys the disciples' stunned focus — they cannot look away. The 'two men in white' (andres duo en esthesesin leukais) parallels the two figures at the empty tomb in Luke 24:4. Luke identifies them as men rather than angels, though their white clothing signals heavenly origin. Two witnesses fulfill the Deuteronomic requirement for valid testimony (Deuteronomy 19:15).
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 19:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The address 'Men of Galilee' (andres Galilaiot) identifies the apostles by their regional origin and echoes the pattern of address used throughout Acts (cf. 'Men of Israel,' 'Men of Athens'). The promise of return 'in the same way' (hon tropon) — visibly, bodily, with clouds — becomes the foundation of the Christian hope of the second coming. The threefold repetition of 'heaven' (ouranos) in this verse emphasizes both Jesus's destination and the direction from which he will return.
12. A 'Sabbath day's journey' (sabbatou echon hodon) was approximately 2,000 cubits or about half a mile (roughly 1 kilometer), the maximum distance one could travel on the Sabbath according to rabbinic tradition. Luke's geographical note serves both literary and practical purposes — the Mount of Olives is close enough that the disciples could quickly obey Jesus's command to stay in Jerusalem.
12. The Mount of Olives (Elaiōnos, 'of olives') was associated with eschatological expectation in Zechariah 14:4, where the LORD's feet stand on the Mount of Olives at the final redemption.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 14:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

13. The 'upper room' (to hyperōon) was likely a large second-story room in a Jerusalem house, possibly the same location as the Last Supper (Luke 22:12). The list of eleven apostles differs in order from Luke 6:14-16 — notably Peter and John are paired here (as they will be partners throughout Acts 1-8), whereas in Luke's Gospel Peter and Andrew are paired as brothers. Simon 'the Zealot' (ho zeelotees) may indicate former membership in the Zealot political movement or simply intense religious zeal.
13. 'Judas son of James' (Ioudas Iakōbou) — the KJV renders this 'brother of James,' but the Greek more naturally reads 'son of.' This is the same figure called Thaddaeus in Matthew 10:3.
14. The Greek proskarterountes ('devoting themselves, persisting, being steadfast in') is a strong word indicating persistent, wholehearted commitment — not casual prayer meetings but intense, unified intercession. The adverb homothymadon ('with one mind, unanimously') is a favorite word of Luke in Acts, appearing ten times to describe the early church's unity.
14. This is Mary's last appearance in the New Testament. She is mentioned among the community of prayer, not elevated above it. The 'brothers' (adelphois) of Jesus are mentioned — the same brothers who did not believe during his ministry (John 7:5) are now part of the believing community. James the brother of Jesus will emerge as a leader of the Jerusalem church (Acts 15, 21).
15. The Greek adelphōn ('brothers') is used inclusively here, as the context clearly includes women (v. 14). We render 'brothers and sisters' to reflect the inclusive usage. The number 120 may be symbolically significant — Jewish tradition required a minimum of 120 men to establish a local council (sanhedrin), so the community meets the threshold for self-governance.
15. The phrase ochlos onomatōn ('a crowd of names') is an unusual expression; 'names' (onomatōn) here means 'persons' — a Semitic idiom reflected in the Greek.
16. Peter's speech demonstrates early Christian hermeneutics: the Psalms of David are read as prophetic, spoken 'through' David by the Holy Spirit. The verb edei ('it was necessary') expresses divine necessity — Judas's betrayal, while morally culpable, fell within God's sovereign plan. The description of Judas as 'guide' (hodēgou) for the arrest party emphasizes his active role in leading them to Jesus.
17. The verb kateerithmemenos ('numbered, counted among') emphasizes that Judas was a genuine member of the Twelve, not an outsider. The word kleeron ('lot, share, portion') is the same word used for the lot-casting in verse 26 — Judas received his allotted portion of the ministry (diakonia), making his betrayal all the more grievous.
18. This parenthetical note (vv. 18-19) is Luke's aside to the reader, not part of Peter's speech. The account of Judas's death differs from Matthew 27:3-10, where Judas hangs himself and the priests buy the field. Various harmonizations have been proposed, but the texts present genuinely different traditions. We render the Greek as given without attempting to reconcile.
18. The Greek preeness genomenos ('falling headfirst/prone') and elakēsen mesos ('burst open in the middle') is graphic and visceral. Luke does not sanitize the scene. The 'reward of wickedness' (misthou tees adikias) echoes the language of Balaam's wages in 2 Peter 2:15.
19. Luke translates the Aramaic name for his Greek-speaking audience. Hakeldamach (κελδαμάχ) represents the Aramaic chaqel dema ('field of blood'). The phrase 'in their own language' (tee idia dialektō autōn) refers to Aramaic, the common spoken language of Jerusalem. Luke's geographical and linguistic notes serve his role as historian writing for a Gentile audience.
20. Peter quotes two Psalms: Psalm 69:25 (LXX 68:26) and Psalm 109:8 (LXX 108:8). The first applies to Judas's vacated place; the second provides the scriptural basis for selecting a replacement. The Greek episkopeen ('position of oversight, office') is the root of 'bishop/episcopate' — the KJV's 'bishopric' is a translation that reads later church structure back into the text. We render it as 'position of oversight' to preserve the original sense.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 69:25 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 109:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Peter establishes the criteria for apostolic replacement: the candidate must have been a continuous companion of the Twelve throughout Jesus's public ministry. The phrase 'went in and out' (eisēlthen kai exēlthen) is a Semitic idiom for daily life and activity (cf. Deuteronomy 28:6, 'when you come in and when you go out'). This defines apostleship as grounded in firsthand eyewitness experience.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 28:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The timeframe spans from John's baptism (the beginning of Jesus's public ministry) to the ascension. The central qualification is being a 'witness of his resurrection' (martyra tees anastaseōs autou) — the resurrection is the core apostolic testimony in Acts. The verb genesthai ('become') indicates appointment to a role, not ordination in the later ecclesiastical sense.
23. Joseph Barsabbas bears three names: his given name Joseph, his Aramaic patronymic Barsabbas ('son of the Sabbath' or 'son of the elder'), and his Latin cognomen Justus ('the righteous one'). The triple naming reflects the multilingual culture of first-century Jerusalem. Matthias (Maththias) is a shortened form of Mattathias ('gift of the LORD'). Neither man appears elsewhere in Acts after this passage.
24. The title kardiognōsta ('knower of hearts') appears only here and in Acts 15:8 in the New Testament. It is ambiguous whether the prayer is addressed to God the Father or to the risen Jesus — 'Lord' (kyrie) can refer to either in Acts. The verb exelexō ('you have chosen') is aorist, implying that God has already made the selection; the lot merely reveals the divine choice.

25. The phrase 'his own place' (ton topon ton idion) is a grim euphemism for Judas's fate after death. The verb parebee ('turned aside, transgressed') suggests a deliberate departure from the path — Judas did not merely fall but actively deviated. The coupling of 'ministry and apostleship' (diakonia and apostolees) defines the role as both service and commission.
26. Lot-casting was an established Old Testament method for discerning God's will (cf. Proverbs 16:33, 'The lot is cast into the lap, but its every decision is from the LORD'). This is the last recorded use of lots in the New Testament — after Pentecost, the Holy Spirit provides direct guidance, making the mechanical method unnecessary.
26. The verb synkatepsēphisthee ('was counted together with, was enrolled with') is a compound word suggesting formal addition to the group by common vote or reckoning. Matthias becomes the twelfth apostle, restoring the symbolic number that represents the twelve tribes of Israel.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 16:33. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

2

Summary: *Acts 2 narrates the day of Pentecost: the Holy Spirit descends on the gathered believers with wind and fire, enabling them to speak in the languages of the nations. Peter delivers the first Christian sermon, interpreting the event through Joel 2, Psalm 16, and Psalm 110. He proclaims Jesus as the crucified and risen Messiah whom God has made both Lord and Christ. Three thousand people respond, are baptized, and form the first church community characterized by apostolic teaching, fellowship, breaking of bread, and prayer.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Pentecost was already a major Jewish festival (Shavuot, the Feast of Weeks) celebrating the wheat harvest and, by the first century, also commemorating the giving of the Torah at Sinai. The Spirit's descent on this day reframes Sinai: where the first covenant was given with fire and thunder on a mountain, the new covenant is given with fire and wind in a city. The gift of languages reverses Babel (Genesis 11) — where God confused languages to scatter humanity, God now gives languages to gather humanity. Peter's sermon is a masterpiece of early christological argument, using Israel's own scriptures to demonstrate that Jesus is the promised Messiah.*

Translation Friction: *The nature of the 'tongues' in verses 4-11 (known human languages vs. ecstatic speech) has been debated throughout church history. Luke's description clearly indicates known languages understood by the international audience. The Joel quotation in verses 17-21 follows the Septuagint rather than the Hebrew text in several details. Peter's argument from Psalm 16 (vv. 25-28) depends on the assumption that David could not have been speaking about himself since David died and was buried.*

Connections: *The Pentecost event fulfills Jesus's promise in Acts 1:5, 8. Joel 2:28-32 provides the prophetic framework. Psalm 16:8-11 and Psalm 110:1 provide the christological proof texts. The community description in verses 42-47 becomes the model for church life throughout Acts (cf. 4:32-35). The 'last days' language connects to Isaiah 2:2 and Micah 4:1.*

¹When the day of Pentecost arrived, they were all together in one place. ²Suddenly a sound came from heaven like a violent rushing wind, and it filled the entire house where they were sitting. ³Tongues as of fire appeared to them, distributing themselves, and one rested on each of them. ⁴They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak in other languages as the Spirit gave them the ability to speak out. ⁵Now there were devout Jews living in Jerusalem from every nation under heaven. ⁶When this sound occurred, the crowd gathered and was bewildered, because each one was hearing them speak in his own language. ⁷They were astonished and amazed, saying, "Are not all these who are speaking Galileans?" ⁸How is it that each of us hears them in our own native language? ⁹Parthians and Medes and Elamites, and residents of Mesopotamia, Judea and Cappadocia, Pontus and Asia, ¹⁰Phrygia and Pamphylia, Egypt and the parts of Libya near Cyrene, and visitors from Rome — ¹¹Cretans and Arabs alike — we hear them declaring the mighty works of God in our own languages! ¹²They were all astonished and perplexed, saying to one another, "What does this mean?" ¹³But others were mocking and saying, "They are full of sweet wine." ¹⁴But Peter, standing with the eleven, raised his voice and addressed them: "Men of Judea and all who live in Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and pay attention to my words. ¹⁵For these people are not drunk, as you suppose, since it is only nine in the morning. ¹⁶Rather, this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel: ¹⁷"And it will be in

the last days,' God says, 'that I will pour out my Spirit on all flesh. Your sons and your daughters will prophesy, your young men will see visions, and your old men will dream dreams. ¹⁸Even on my male servants and female servants I will pour out my Spirit in those days, and they will prophesy. ¹⁹And I will show wonders in the heaven above and signs on the earth below — blood and fire and billows of smoke. ²⁰The sun will be turned to darkness and the moon to blood, before the great and glorious day of the Lord comes. ²¹And it will be that everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved.' ²²"Men of Israel, hear these words: Jesus the Nazarene, a man attested to you by God through mighty works and wonders and signs that God performed through him in your midst, as you yourselves know — ²³Him, while delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you possess removed, and by corrupt hands have crucified and slain. ²⁴But God raised him up, having freed him from the agony of death, because it was not possible for him to be held by it. ²⁵For David says concerning him: 'I saw the Lord always before me, for he is at my right hand so that I will not be shaken. ²⁶Therefore my heart was glad and my tongue rejoiced; moreover, my flesh also will live in hope, ²⁷Because you will not leave my soul in hell, neither wilt you suffer your Holy One to see corruption. ²⁸You have made known to me the paths of life; you will fill me with joy in your presence.' ²⁹"Brothers, I can speak to you confidently about the patriarch David: he both died and was buried, and his tomb is with us to this day. ³⁰Since he was a prophet and knew that God had sworn an oath to him that he would seat one of his descendants on his throne, ³¹Indeed, he seeing this prior to spoke of the resurrection of Christ, that his soul was not departed in hell, neither his flesh did see corruption. ³²This Jesus God raised up, and of this we are all witnesses. ³³Therefore, having been exalted to the right hand of God and having received from the Father the promise of the Holy Spirit, he has poured out this that you both see and hear. ³⁴For David did not ascend into the heavens, but he himself says: 'The Lord said to my Lord, "Sit at my right hand, ³⁵Until I make your foes your footstool. ³⁶Therefore let the entire house of Israel know with certainty that God has made him both Lord and Christ — this Jesus whom you crucified." ³⁷When they heard this, they were pierced to the heart and said to Peter and the rest of the apostles, "Brothers, what should we do?" ³⁸Peter said to them, "Repent and be baptized, each of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. ³⁹For the promise is for you and for your children and for all who are far off — everyone whom the Lord our God calls to himself." ⁴⁰With many other words he solemnly testified and kept urging them, saying, "Be saved from this crooked generation!" ⁴¹So those who received his message were baptized, and about three thousand people were added that day. ⁴²They devoted themselves to the apostles' teaching and to fellowship, to the breaking of bread and to prayer. ⁴³Aw e came upon everyone, and many wonders and signs were being done through the apostles. ⁴⁴All who believed were together and held everything in common. ⁴⁵They would sell their possessions and belongings and distribute the proceeds to all, as anyone had need. ⁴⁶Every day they continued to meet together with one purpose in the temple courts, and breaking bread from house to house, they shared their meals with joy and sincerity of heart, ⁴⁷They praised God and enjoyed the goodwill of all the people. And every day the Lord added to their number those who were being saved.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *symplērousthai* ('to be fulfilled, to arrive in fullness') suggests not merely that the day came but that it reached its appointed fullness — a theologically loaded term. Pentecost (*pentēkostē*, 'fiftieth') fell fifty days after Passover. As a harvest festival (*Shavuot*), it was one of three pilgrimage feasts requiring attendance in Jerusalem, explaining the international crowd described in verses 5-11.
1. The phrase *epi to auto* ('in one place' or 'together') echoes 1:15 and emphasizes the unity of the community at the moment of the Spirit's descent.
2. The Greek *pnoē* ('wind, breath, blast') is related to *pneuma* ('spirit/wind') — the wordplay connects the physical phenomenon to the Holy Spirit (*pneuma hagian*). The wind comes 'from heaven' (*ek tou ouranou*), marking its divine origin. The verb *eplērōsen* ('filled') anticipates the believers being 'filled' with the Spirit in verse 4. The violence of the wind (*biaias*, 'forceful, violent') recalls the theophany at Sinai (Exodus 19:16-19) and Elijah's experience at Horeb (1 Kings 19:11).
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 19:16-19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 19:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

3. The Greek *diamerizomenai* ('distributing themselves, dividing') describes the fire separating into individual flames — one for each person. The word *glōssai* ('tongues') does double duty: the fire appears in tongue-like shapes, and the result is speaking in tongues (languages). Fire is a consistent symbol of divine presence in the Old Testament: the burning bush (Exodus 3:2), the pillar of fire (Exodus 13:21), and the fire on Sinai (Exodus 19:18). That the fire rests on 'each one' (*hena hekaston*) emphasizes the individual, personal nature of the Spirit's coming — not corporate only but personal.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 3:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 13:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The passive *eplēsthēsan* ('were filled') indicates divine action — the Spirit fills them; they do not generate the experience themselves. The phrase *heterais glōssais* ('other tongues/languages') is clarified by verses 6-11 as known human languages, not ecstatic speech. The verb *apophthengesthai* ('to speak out, to declare boldly') is rare in the New Testament (used only here, v. 14, and 26:25) and carries the connotation of inspired, prophetic utterance — weighty proclamation, not babbling.
5. The phrase 'from every nation under heaven' (*apo pantos ethnous tōn hypo ton ouranon*) is hyperbolic but reflects the reality that the Jewish diaspora extended throughout the Roman Empire and beyond. These are not tourists but *katoikountes* ('residing, dwelling') — diaspora Jews who had settled in Jerusalem, likely for religious reasons. The word *eulabeis* ('devout, reverent, God-fearing') characterizes them as pious Jews, not yet Christians.
6. The 'sound' (*phōnēs*) likely refers to the sound of the wind from verse 2 rather than the speaking in tongues. The verb *synechythē* ('was bewildered, confounded, thrown into confusion') is a strong word indicating deep cognitive dissonance — they cannot make sense of what they are experiencing. The phrase *tē idia dialektō* ('in his own dialect/language') specifies that this is not generic babbling but precise, recognizable languages corresponding to each listener's mother tongue.
7. The double expression *existanto kai ethaumazon* ('were astonished and amazed') piles up terms for shock. Galileans were known for their distinctive accent (cf. Matthew 26:73) and were generally regarded by Judeans as less educated and culturally unsophisticated. The rhetorical question highlights the incongruity: how can these provincial Galileans speak fluently in the sophisticated languages of the wider world?
8. The phrase 'in which we were born' (*en hē egennēthēmen*) specifies these as mother tongues — the languages heard in childhood, the deepest linguistic identity. This detail rules out the interpretation that the audience merely understood a common language like Aramaic or Greek; they each heard their own distinct dialect.
9. The list begins with regions east of the Roman Empire (Parthia, Media, Elam — modern Iran and Iraq) and moves westward. This geographical sweep represents the entire known world. The inclusion of 'Judea' is surprising in a Jerusalem setting — some scholars emend it to 'Armenia' or 'India,' but the text may simply mean Jews from the Judean countryside as opposed to Jerusalem residents, or it may represent the complete geographical coverage Luke intends.
10. The list continues through Asia Minor (Phrygia, Pamphylia), North Africa (Egypt, Libya/Cyrene), and reaches Rome itself. The 'visitors from Rome' (*hoi epidēmoutēs Rhōmaioi*) are temporary residents or pilgrims, distinguished from the permanent Jerusalem settlers of verse 5. Cyrene in Libya had a large Jewish community; Simon of Cyrene who carried Jesus's cross came from there (Luke 23:26).
11. The phrase 'Jews and converts' (*Ioudaioi te kai prosēlytoi*) is a parenthetical clarification covering the entire list — all these nationalities include both ethnic Jews and Gentile converts to Judaism. The content of the Spirit-enabled speech is 'the mighty deeds of God' (*ta megaleia tou theou*) — not random utterances but coherent praise of God's great acts. This echoes the Hebrew *magnalia Dei* tradition found in the Psalms.
11. The list ends with Cretans (island Mediterranean) and Arabs (the desert south and east), completing the compass-point coverage of the known world.
12. The verb *diēporoun* ('were perplexed, were at a loss') indicates genuine intellectual struggle, not dismissal. These are devout people trying to make sense of an unprecedented event. The question 'What does this mean?' (*ti thelei touto einai*, literally 'What does this wish to be?') sets up Peter's sermon, which will provide the scriptural interpretation.
13. The verb *diachleuazontes* ('mocking, jeering, sneering') is intensified by the prefix *dia-*, indicating thorough mockery. *Gleukos* ('sweet wine, new wine') was unfermented or partially fermented grape juice — lower in alcohol than aged wine. The accusation is somewhat absurd: it would take large quantities of sweet wine to produce drunkenness, especially in the morning. Peter addresses this directly in verse 15.
14. Peter stands 'with the eleven' (*syn tois hendeka*), showing apostolic solidarity — he speaks as their representative, not as an individual. The verb *apophthengato* ('spoke out, declared') is the same rare verb used in verse 4 for Spirit-inspired speech, linking Peter's sermon to the same Spirit-empowerment that produced the tongues. The phrase *enōtistashe* ('give ear, listen carefully') is a Septuagintalism echoing the prophetic call to attention (cf. Isaiah 1:2).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 1:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The 'third hour' (*hōra tritē*) is approximately 9:00 AM by Jewish time reckoning (counting from sunrise at roughly 6:00 AM). Peter's argument from the time of day is practical: even on feast days, people did not drink before the morning prayers and sacrifices were complete. The defense is simple but effective — and it is merely the setup for the real explanation that follows.

16. Peter identifies the Pentecost event as the fulfillment of Joel's prophecy — 'this is that' (touto estin to) is a direct identification formula. The preposition *dia* ('through') presents Joel as the instrument through whom God spoke, consistent with the view of prophetic inspiration expressed in 1:16.
17. Peter's quotation modifies Joel 2:28 (LXX 3:1) in a significant way: Joel has 'after these things' (*meta tauta*), but Peter substitutes 'in the last days' (*en tais eschatais hēmerais*), explicitly interpreting Pentecost as the inauguration of the eschatological age. The pouring out of the Spirit is universal in scope — 'all flesh' (*pasan sarka*) breaks barriers of gender (sons and daughters), age (young and old), and as verse 18 will add, social status.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:28-32. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Joel's original text has 'servants and female servants' without the possessive 'my'; Peter's version (following the LXX variant) adds 'my' (*mou*), transforming social servants into God's own servants. This universalization of the Spirit breaks the social hierarchy: slaves and free, male and female all receive the prophetic Spirit. The addition of 'and they will prophesy' (*kai prophēteusousin*) is not in the Hebrew of Joel 2:29 — Peter extends the prophetic promise explicitly to the lowest social stratum.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joel 2:28-32 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Peter adds 'above' (*anō*) and 'below' (*katō*) to Joel's text, emphasizing the cosmic scope of God's activity. The triad 'blood and fire and billows of smoke' may echo the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:18) or anticipate the destruction of Jerusalem in AD 70. The Greek *atmida kapnou* ('vapor/billow of smoke') suggests thick, rising columns of smoke, not mere wisps.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:28-32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Joel's Hebrew has 'great and terrible' (*gadol v'nora*); the LXX renders *nora* as *epiphanē* ('glorious, manifest, splendid') rather than 'terrible' — a significant interpretive shift from fear to revelation. The 'day of the Lord' (*hēmeran kyriou*) is a major prophetic concept throughout the Old Testament (Isaiah 2:12, Amos 5:18-20, Zephaniah 1:14-18), originally a day of judgment that Peter now connects to the events surrounding Jesus.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joel 2:28-32 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 2:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Amos 5:18-20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zephaniah 1:14-18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. This is the climactic line of the Joel quotation and the hinge of Peter's sermon. In Joel, 'the Lord' (*kyrios*) translates YHWH — calling on the name of Israel's God. Peter will argue in verses 34-36 that Jesus is this Lord (*kyrios*), so that calling on the name of Jesus is calling on the name of the LORD. The verb *sōthēsetai* ('will be saved') encompasses both immediate rescue and eschatological salvation — the same word Paul will use in Romans 10:13 when quoting this same verse.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joel 2:28-32. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Peter shifts from Joel's prophecy to its christological application. The designation 'the Nazarene' (*ton Nazōraion*) identifies Jesus by his hometown, grounding the theological claims in historical specificity. The triad 'mighty works and wonders and signs' (*dynamesin kai terasin kai sēmeiois*) covers the full range of Jesus's miraculous activity. Crucially, Peter says God performed these 'through him' (*di' autou*) — the miracles attest God's endorsement of Jesus. The appeal to the audience's own knowledge ('as you yourselves know') grounds the argument in shared public memory.
23. Peter holds two truths in tension without resolving the paradox: Jesus's death was both 'the determined plan and foreknowledge of God' (*tē hōrismenē boulē kai prognōsei tou theou*) and the moral responsibility of those who crucified him. The 'lawless men' (*anomōn*) are the Roman soldiers who physically performed the crucifixion — 'lawless' because they were outside the Torah. But the 'you' (the Jewish audience) are also implicated: 'you put to death' (*aneilate*). Peter does not soften either side of this tension.
24. The phrase 'agony of death' (*tas ōdinas tou thanatou*) literally means 'birth pangs of death' — the image is of death in labor, unable to hold its prey, forced to 'give birth' to the risen Jesus. The LXX of Psalm 18:5 (= 2 Samuel 22:6) uses the same phrase. The declaration 'it was not possible' (*ouk ēn dynaton*) is theologically profound: death's inability to hold Jesus is not merely historical but ontological — it lies in the nature of who Jesus is.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 18:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 22:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Peter now quotes Psalm 16:8-11 (LXX 15:8-11), attributing the words to David and applying them to Jesus. The Greek *proorōmēn* ('I saw beforehand, I kept before me') translates the Hebrew *shiviti* ('I have set'). The Lord at the right hand provides stability and protection — 'I will not be shaken' (*mē saleuthō*) expresses unshakeable confidence in divine presence.

25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 16:8-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The LXX has 'tongue' (glōssa) where the Hebrew of Psalm 16:9 has 'glory' (kavod) — a significant textual divergence. The Hebrew kavod ('glory, weightiness') likely refers to the inner self or honor, which the LXX translators rendered as 'tongue' (perhaps reading kavod as kaved, 'liver,' an organ associated with deep emotion). The phrase 'my flesh will live in hope' (hē sarx mou kataskēnōsei ep' elpidi) becomes Peter's key proof text: if David's flesh 'lives in hope,' whose flesh found that hope fulfilled?
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 16:8-11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Hades (hadēn) is the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew Sheol — the realm of the dead, not the later Christian concept of hell as a place of punishment. 'Decay' (diaphthoran) translates the Hebrew shachat, which can mean 'pit' or 'corruption/decay.' The LXX's choice of diaphthora ('decay, corruption') is crucial for Peter's argument: David's body did see decay (v. 29), but Jesus's did not (v. 31). The term 'Holy One' (hōsion) translates the Hebrew chasid ('faithful, loyal, devoted one').
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 16:8-11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The 'paths of life' (hodos zōēs) implies not merely survival but the way to fullness of life — a path through death to resurrection. The final image — 'joy in your presence' (euphrosynēs meta tou prosōpou sou, literally 'gladness with your face') — is the ultimate hope: restored face-to-face relationship with God. The Psalm quotation ends on this note of joy, which Peter will now apply to the risen Jesus.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 16:8-11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. Peter's argument is straightforward: David cannot have been speaking about himself in Psalm 16 because David died, was buried, and his tomb is still present in Jerusalem — his body did see decay. The word parrhēsia ('confidently, boldly, with freedom of speech') indicates Peter is making a potentially controversial claim about Israel's greatest king. David's tomb was a well-known Jerusalem landmark, so the point is verifiable.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. Peter identifies David as a prophet, not merely a king and poet — this justifies reading the Psalms as prophetic. The oath refers to 2 Samuel 7:12-13 and Psalm 132:11, where God promises David an eternal dynasty. The Greek ek karpou tēs osphyos autou ('from the fruit of his loins') is a Hebraic idiom for physical descendants. We render this as 'one of his descendants' for natural modern English while noting the idiom.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Samuel 7:12-13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 132:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. Peter now makes the interpretive move explicit: David's words in Psalm 16 were prophetic speech about the Messiah's resurrection. The two key claims from Psalm 16:10 — not abandoned to Hades and no bodily decay — are applied to Jesus's resurrection. Peter's argument depends on the physical nature of the resurrection: Jesus's actual body did not decompose.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. The sentence is emphatic in Greek: 'This Jesus' (touton ton Iēsoun) is placed first for emphasis — this specific historical person, not an abstract concept. The claim to be 'witnesses' (martyres) circles back to 1:8 — the apostles fulfill their commission as witnesses to the resurrection. The 'all' (pantes) includes the eleven standing with Peter, a claim that could be immediately verified or challenged by the audience.
33. Peter connects the ascension (exaltation to God's right hand), the reception of the Spirit from the Father, and the Pentecost event in a single theological chain: Jesus is exalted Jesus receives the Spirit from the Father Jesus pours out the Spirit on his followers. The verb exechēen ('poured out') directly echoes the Joel quotation in verse 17 ('I will pour out my Spirit'). The appeal to sensory evidence — 'what you both see and hear' (blepete kai akouete) — grounds the theological claim in observable phenomena.
34. Peter now quotes Psalm 110:1 (LXX 109:1), the most frequently cited Old Testament text in the New Testament. The same argument applies: David did not ascend to heaven, so these words must refer to someone greater than David. The double 'Lord' (eipen ho kyrios tō kyriō mou) reflects the Hebrew 'the LORD (YHWH) said to my lord (adoni)' — David's lord is the Messiah, who sits at God's right hand.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The image of enemies as a footstool reflects ancient Near Eastern conquest imagery — victorious kings literally placed their feet on the necks of conquered enemies (cf. Joshua 10:24). The Psalm envisions a period of reigning at God's right hand until all opposition is subdued. Peter leaves the implication hanging: if Jesus is now at God's right hand, then the subjugation of all enemies is underway.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 110:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 10:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. This is the sermon's climax. The adverb *asphalōs* ('with certainty, beyond doubt') demands intellectual assent, not mere emotional response. 'Lord and Christ' (*kyrion kai christon*) — the two titles Peter has argued for throughout the sermon converge: *kyrios* from Psalm 110:1 and *christos* from Psalm 16. The final phrase — 'this Jesus whom you crucified' (*touton ton Iēsoun hon hymeis estaurōsate*) — is deliberately confrontational, pressing the audience to reckon with the implications of having killed God's anointed one.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. The verb *katenygēsan* ('were pierced, were cut to the heart') is a powerful word describing deep emotional and spiritual conviction — it appears only here in the New Testament. The audience's question 'What should we do?' (*ti poiēsōmen*) is the proper response to conviction: not debate but action. Their address 'brothers' (*adelphoi*) shows they still consider Peter and the apostles fellow Jews.
38. Peter's response contains four elements: repentance, baptism, forgiveness, and the gift of the Spirit. The verb *metanoēsate* ('repent') means to change one's mind and direction — the Greek equivalent of the Hebrew *teshuvah* ('return'). The preposition *epi* ('in/on/upon') with 'the name of Jesus Christ' indicates that baptism is performed on the authority of and in connection with Jesus. The preposition *eis* before 'forgiveness' can mean 'for the purpose of' or 'on the basis of' — both translations are grammatically possible.
39. The scope of the promise expands in three concentric circles: 'you' (the present audience), 'your children' (the next generation), and 'all who are far off' (*tous eis makran*). The phrase 'those far off' echoes Isaiah 57:19 and Ephesians 2:13, 17 — it can refer to future generations, to diaspora Jews, or to Gentiles. Peter may not yet fully grasp the Gentile implications, but Luke's reader does. The final clause — 'everyone whom the Lord our God calls' — grounds the universal offer in divine initiative.
39. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 57:19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
40. Luke summarizes the rest of Peter's sermon rather than recording it fully — 'many other words' (*heterois logois pleiosin*) indicates this is an excerpt. The verb *diemartyrato* ('solemnly testified') carries legal weight, while *parekalei* ('kept urging, exhorting') is imperfect tense indicating ongoing, persistent appeal. The phrase 'crooked generation' (*geneas tēs skolias*) echoes Moses' words in Deuteronomy 32:5 and Jesus's own language in Matthew 17:17.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The number 'about three thousand' (*hōsei trischiliai*) represents a massive response to a single sermon. The passive *prosetethēsan* ('were added') implies divine agency — God adds to the community. The word *psychai* ('souls/people') is used in the Semitic sense of 'persons,' not in the Greek philosophical sense of immortal souls. The logistics of baptizing three thousand people in a single day likely involved the numerous *mikva'ot* (ritual immersion pools) near the Temple, which have been archaeologically confirmed.
42. This verse is often called the four marks of the early church: teaching (*didachē*), fellowship (*koinōnia*), breaking of bread (*klasis tou artou*), and prayers (*proseuchais*). The verb *proskarterountes* ('devoting themselves') is the same word used in 1:14 — the persistence that characterized the pre-Pentecost community continues and intensifies. 'Breaking of bread' may refer to ordinary communal meals, the Lord's Supper, or both — Luke does not distinguish. The plural 'prayers' (*proseuchais*) may indicate set times of prayer, possibly following the Jewish daily prayer schedule.
43. The word *phobos* ('fear, awe, reverence') here indicates reverential awe rather than terror — the community lived with a sense of the sacred. The 'wonders and signs' (*terata kai sēmeia*) performed through the apostles echo the description of Jesus's own ministry in verse 22, showing continuity between Jesus's work and the apostles' work through the Spirit. The imperfect tense *egineto* ('were being done') indicates ongoing, repeated miraculous activity.
44. The phrase *epi to auto* ('together, in the same place') echoes verses 1 and 1:15 — unity of place reflects unity of heart. The economic sharing described here — 'held everything in common' (*eichon hapanta koina*) — is voluntary community, not enforced communism. The sharing arises from the *koinōnia* described in verse 42, not from external compulsion. Luke presents this as an ideal, not necessarily as a permanent economic model.
45. Luke distinguishes between 'possessions' (*ktēmata*, typically real property like land) and 'belongings' (*hyparxeis*, personal goods and assets). The imperfect tenses (*epipraskon*, *diemerizon*) indicate ongoing, repeated action — they sold as needs arose, not in a single liquidation event. Distribution was based on need (*chreia*), not equality — a principle of sufficiency rather than uniformity.
46. The early believers maintained a dual pattern of worship: public gathering in the temple (*en tō hierō*, referring to the temple courts, especially Solomon's Portico per 3:11) and private fellowship in homes (*kat' oikon*). They did not abandon Jewish temple worship but supplemented it with distinctly Christian home gatherings. The word *aphelotēti* ('sincerity, simplicity, generosity') occurs only here in the New Testament — it suggests an unaffected, genuine quality of heart free from pretense.
47. The chapter ends with two complementary realities: human praise ('praising God') and divine growth ('the Lord was adding'). The present participle *sōzomenous* ('those being saved') indicates an ongoing process, not a completed transaction — salvation in Acts is both an event and a journey. The phrase *epi to auto* ('to their number, together') echoes the opening of the chapter, creating a literary frame: the community that gathered in verse 1

has grown from 120 to over 3,000.

47. Luke does not use the word 'church' (ekklēsia) here, though the KJV adds it. The SBLGNT simply has 'adding together' — the community is described by its life rather than by a title.

3

Summary: *Acts 3 narrates the healing of a man lame from birth at the Beautiful Gate of the temple by Peter and John. The miracle draws a crowd in Solomon's Portico, and Peter delivers his second major sermon, arguing that the healing was performed through faith in the name of Jesus — the same Jesus whom the people of Jerusalem rejected and handed over for crucifixion. Peter calls for repentance and identifies Jesus as the prophet like Moses foretold in Deuteronomy 18, and as the fulfillment of the Abrahamic covenant promise that through Abraham's offspring all the families of the earth would be blessed.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The healing at the temple gate is the first recorded miracle of the apostolic church after Pentecost. Peter's declaration 'Silver and gold I do not have, but what I do have I give you' (v. 6) has become one of the most quoted lines in Acts. The sermon presents a distinctive christological argument: Jesus is both the Suffering Servant (v. 13, 'glorified his servant Jesus') and the Prophet like Moses (v. 22). The concept of 'times of refreshing' (v. 19) and 'the restoration of all things' (v. 21) introduce eschatological themes unique to this speech.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek pais in verse 13 can mean 'servant' or 'child' — its connection to the Servant Songs of Isaiah (especially Isaiah 52:13) is likely but debated. Peter's accusation in verses 13-15 is direct and pointed ('you denied the Holy and Righteous One and asked for a murderer to be granted to you'), raising questions about corporate responsibility versus individual guilt. The phrase 'restoration of all things' (apokatastaseōs pantōn) in verse 21 has been interpreted variously as universal salvation, cosmic renewal, or Israel's political restoration.*

Connections: *The healing fulfills Jesus's promise that the apostles would do the works he did (John 14:12). Peter's sermon connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12:3, 22:18), the Mosaic promise of a prophet (Deuteronomy 18:15-19), and the Servant Songs of Isaiah. The 'times of refreshing' language connects to prophetic hopes in Isaiah 28:12 and 32:15. The identification of Jesus as 'the Holy and Righteous One' (v. 14) echoes messianic titles from Isaiah and the Psalms.*

1Now Peter and John were going up to the temple at the hour of prayer, the ninth hour. 2A man who had been lame from birth was being carried, whom they placed daily at the temple gate called the Beautiful Gate to beg for alms from those entering the temple. 3When he saw Peter and John about to enter the temple, he asked them for money. 4Peter looked intently at him, as did John, and said, "Look at us." 5He fixed his attention on them, expecting to receive something from them. 6But Peter said, "I have no silver or gold, but what I do have, I give to you: in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene — walk!" 7Taking him by the right hand, he raised him up, and immediately his feet and ankles were made strong. 8Leaping up, he stood and began to walk, and he entered the temple with them, walking and leaping and praising God. 9Every one of the people noticed him walking and praising God:. 10They recognized that it was he which sat for alms at the Beautiful gate of the temple — then they were overflowing with wonder and amazement at that which had happened to him. 11While the man clung to Peter and John, all the people ran together to them at what is called Solomon's Portico, utterly astonished. 12When Peter saw this, he addressed the people: "Men of Israel, why are you amazed at this? Why do you stare at us as though we made him walk by our own power or godliness? 13The God of Abraham and of Isaac and of Jacob, the God of our fathers, has glorified his servant Jesus, whom you handed over and denied before Pilate, when he had decided to release him. 14You denied the Holy and Righteous One and asked for a murderer to be given to you. 15You killed the Author of life, but God raised him from the dead. We are witnesses of this. 16And on the basis of faith in his name, his name has made this man strong — this man whom you see and know. The faith that comes through Jesus has given him this complete health in the presence of all of you. 17"And now, brothers, I know that you acted in ignorance, as did your rulers. 18But what God foretold through the mouth of all the prophets — that his Christ would suffer — he has fulfilled in this way. 19Repent therefore, and

turn back, so that your sins may be wiped away, ²⁰He will send Jesus Christ, which prior to was preached to you:. ²¹Whom the heaven must accept until the times of restitution of all matters, which God has spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the present age began. ²²Moses said, 'The Lord your God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers. You must listen to him in everything he tells you. ²³And it will be that every person who does not listen to that prophet will be utterly destroyed from among the people.' ²⁴And all the prophets, from Samuel and those who came after him, as many as have spoken, also proclaimed these days. ²⁵You are the sons of the prophets and of the covenant that God made with your fathers, saying to Abraham, 'And in your offspring all the families of the earth will be blessed.' ²⁶God raised up his servant and sent him to you first, to bless you by turning each of you from your wicked ways."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The ninth hour (approximately 3:00 PM) was one of the three daily prayer times in Jewish practice, coinciding with the afternoon tamid (daily sacrifice). Peter and John's continued participation in temple worship shows that the early believers remained within Judaism. The imperfect anebanion ('were going up') captures them in mid-journey, setting the scene for the encounter at the gate.
2. The phrase 'lame from his mother's womb' (chōlos ek kolias mētros autou) establishes that this is a congenital condition — not an injury but a lifelong disability, making the healing all the more remarkable. The Beautiful Gate (tēn Horaian) is likely the Nicanor Gate, a massive bronze gate on the east side of the temple connecting the Court of the Gentiles to the Court of Women. Its identification is debated among archaeologists. The man's daily placement at this gate means he was a well-known figure, which matters for the public impact of the miracle (cf. v. 10).
3. The man asks for eleēmōsynēn ('alms, charitable gift') — the standard term for religiously motivated charity. He has no expectation of healing; his request is purely economic. The imperfect ērōta ('was asking, kept asking') suggests ongoing, repeated begging — this was his daily routine.
4. The verb atenisas ('looked intently, fixed his gaze') is the same word used for the disciples staring at the sky during the ascension (1:10). Peter's fixed gaze signals that something more than a casual encounter is about to happen. The command 'Look at us' (blepson eis hēmas) is not merely a request for eye contact but a call to attention — something is about to be given that is far more than coins.
5. The verb epeichen ('fixed attention, turned toward') shows the man's responsive engagement. His expectation (prosdokōn) is limited to financial assistance — the gap between what he expects and what he is about to receive creates the narrative tension.
6. Peter's declaration has a poetic rhythm in Greek: argyrion kai chrysiōn ouch hyparchei moi ('silver and gold do not belong to me'). The phrase 'in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene' (en tō onomati Iēsou Christou tou Nazōraiou) is not a magic formula but an invocation of Jesus's authority and power. The command peripatei ('walk!') is a present imperative — 'start walking and keep walking.' The name of Jesus becomes the central controversy in chapter 4.
7. The physical act of grasping the right hand (piasas tēs dexias cheiros) is both practical assistance and symbolic — the right hand signifies strength and authority. Luke, traditionally identified as a physician, provides medical detail: the baseis ('feet, soles') and sphyra ('ankles, ankle bones') are specific anatomical terms. The verb estereōthēsan ('were made strong, were solidified') indicates instant structural transformation — bones and muscles that had never functioned properly were immediately restored.
8. The sequence of verbs captures the man's escalating joy: exallomenos ('leaping up'), estē ('stood'), periepatei ('walked around'), hallomenos ('leaping'), ainōn ('praising'). The repetition of walking and leaping reflects someone testing and celebrating abilities he has never had. His entrance into the temple is theologically significant: lame persons were excluded from certain temple areas (cf. 2 Samuel 5:8). The healing restores not just physical function but full participation in worship. The scene echoes Isaiah 35:6: 'Then the lame will leap like a deer.'
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 5:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 35:6: — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The public nature of the miracle is emphasized — 'all the people' (pas ho laos) in the temple courts witnessed it. This public setting in the temple provides both the audience for Peter's sermon and the provocation for the authorities' response in chapter 4.
10. The verb epeginōskon ('recognized, identified') confirms the man's identity — this is not a stranger but the well-known beggar at the temple gate. The combination thambous kai ekstaseōs ('wonder and astonishment') describes an overwhelming emotional response. Ekstasis (the root of 'ecstasy') literally means 'standing outside oneself' — the crowd is beside themselves with amazement.
11. The healed man 'clung to' (kratountos) Peter and John — a detail of physical attachment that is both grateful and dramatic. Solomon's Portico (stoa Solomōntos) was a covered colonnade along the eastern side of the temple's outer court. It was a traditional gathering place for teaching (cf. John 10:23) and would become the regular meeting place of the early church (5:12). The adjective ekthambol ('utterly astonished') intensifies the amazement already described in verse 10.

12. Peter immediately redirects the crowd's attention from the apostles to God. The two potential misunderstandings he addresses — 'our own power' (idia dymamei) and 'our own godliness' (eusebeia) — represent the temptation to attribute the miracle to human ability or human merit. This deflection establishes a pattern repeated throughout Acts: miracles are not the apostles' achievement but God's work through them.
13. Peter begins with the covenant formula 'The God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob' (cf. Exodus 3:6, 15), anchoring his christology in Israel's covenant history. The word paida ('servant/child') echoes Isaiah 52:13 LXX ('my servant shall be exalted and glorified'), identifying Jesus with Isaiah's Suffering Servant. We render 'servant' rather than 'Son' because the Isaianic servant background is primary here, though the filial resonance is present.
13. The accusation is sharp: 'you handed over and denied' (paredōkate kai ěrnēasthe) before Pilate, who wanted to release Jesus. The contrast heightens the guilt: even the pagan governor judged more rightly than the covenant people.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 3:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 52:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The titles 'the Holy One' (ton hagion) and 'the Righteous One' (ton dikaion) are messianic designations drawn from the Old Testament (cf. Isaiah 53:11, 'my righteous servant'). The contrast is devastating: they rejected the Holy and Righteous One and chose a murderer (andrea phonea) — Barabbas (Luke 23:18-25). The irony is sharp: they asked for the life of a killer while demanding the death of the life-giver (v. 15).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The title archēgon tēs zōēs ('author/originator/prince of life') is strikingly paradoxical: the source of life was put to death. The Greek archēgos can mean 'founder, pioneer, author, prince, leader' — it appears again in 5:31 and Hebrews 2:10, 12:2. 'Author of life' captures the creative agency implied. The contrast 'you killed... God raised' is the core kerygma (proclamation) of early Christianity, repeated throughout Acts.
16. This verse is grammatically complex, with 'name' and 'faith' mentioned twice each. The 'name' (onoma) of Jesus represents his person, authority, and power — it is not a magical incantation but a relationship of trust. The word holoklērian ('complete health, perfect wholeness') appears only here in the New Testament — it means total, nothing-missing wholeness, covering both physical healing and restoration to full community membership.
17. After the sharp accusations of verses 13-15, Peter softens with a recognition of mitigating circumstance: ignorance (agnoian). This echoes Jesus's prayer on the cross, 'Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing' (Luke 23:34). The inclusion of 'your rulers' (hoi archontes hymōn) extends the ignorance defense to the Sanhedrin and priestly leadership. Ignorance does not remove guilt but makes repentance possible — the door is not shut.
18. Peter claims that the prophets collectively ('all the prophets,' pantōn tōn prophētōn) spoke of the Messiah's suffering. This is a bold hermeneutical claim — the concept of a suffering Messiah was not the dominant expectation in Second Temple Judaism. Peter reads the entirety of prophetic literature as converging on the cross. The verb prokatēngeilen ('foretold, announced beforehand') emphasizes that the suffering was not an accident but a plan.
19. Peter uses two verbs: metanoēsate ('repent,' change your mind) and epistrepsate ('turn back, return'). Together they capture the full biblical concept of repentance: a cognitive change (meta-noeo) and a directional change (epi-strephō). The verb exaleipthēnai ('be wiped away, blotted out') pictures sins being erased from a record — the same word used for wiping tears from eyes in Revelation 21:4.
20. The phrase kairoi anapsyxēōs ('times of refreshing') is unique to this passage. Anapsysis means 'cooling, relief, refreshment' — it suggests respite from hardship, a divine breath of fresh air. These times come 'from the presence of the Lord' (apo prosōpou tou kyriou, literally 'from the face of the Lord'). The verb prokecheirismenon ('appointed beforehand, designated in advance') indicates that Jesus's messianic role was established before the events of his earthly life.
21. The phrase apokatastaseōs pantōn ('restoration of all things') is theologically rich and debated. Apokatastasis means 'restoration to a former state' and was later adopted by Origen and others to argue for universal salvation. In Peter's context, it likely refers to the prophetic hope of cosmic renewal — the restoration of all that sin and evil have damaged (cf. Isaiah 65:17, Romans 8:19-22). Jesus remains in heaven 'until' (achri) these times arrive, implying his return will coincide with or inaugurate the restoration.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 65:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Peter quotes Deuteronomy 18:15, 18-19 — Moses' promise of a future prophet who would be 'like me' (hōs eme). In Jewish tradition, this promise was understood to refer to a specific future prophet (cf. John 1:21, 6:14). Peter identifies Jesus as this prophet. The verb anastēsei ('will raise up') carries a double meaning in context: God 'raised up' Jesus both in the sense of appointing him as prophet and in the sense of raising him from the dead.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 18:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Peter intensifies the Deuteronomy passage by adding exolethreuthēsetai ('will be utterly destroyed'), which echoes the language of covenant curse (cf. Leviticus 23:29, 'cut off from the people'). The warning is severe: failure to heed the prophet-like-Moses is not mere ignorance but covenant

violation. This sharpens the call to repentance — rejecting Jesus is not a neutral choice but an act with eschatological consequences.

23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 18:19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 23:29 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Peter extends the prophetic witness beyond Moses to include the entire prophetic tradition beginning with Samuel, traditionally considered the first of the classical prophets (after Moses). The phrase 'these days' (tas hēmeras tautas) is deliberately ambiguous — it includes the present time of fulfillment as well as the future consummation. Peter's point is that the entire prophetic corpus converges on the events now unfolding.
25. Peter quotes Genesis 22:18 (cf. 12:3), connecting the present moment to the Abrahamic covenant. The word diathēkē ('covenant') is the Septuagint translation of the Hebrew berit. The phrase 'sons of the prophets and of the covenant' (huiōi tōn prophētōn kai tēs diathēkēs) means heirs and beneficiaries — the audience stands in the direct line of covenant promise. The word sperma ('seed, offspring') is singular, which later Christian interpretation (cf. Galatians 3:16) applied to Christ individually, though the original context includes collective meaning.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 22:18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The sermon ends where it began — with God's servant (paida, the same word as v. 13). The word prōton ('first') is crucial: the gospel goes to Israel first, before extending to the Gentiles — a priority that Luke will trace through the entire book of Acts (cf. 13:46). The blessing is defined not as material prosperity but as moral transformation: 'turning each of you from your wicked ways' (apostrephein hekaston apo tōn ponērion hymōn). The verb anastēsas ('having raised up') again carries the double sense of 'appointing' and 'resurrecting.'

4

Summary: *Acts 4 recounts the arrest of Peter and John by the temple authorities following the healing in chapter 3. Brought before the Sanhedrin, Peter boldly declares that the healing was done in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazarene, whom they crucified but God raised. He proclaims that salvation is found in no one else. The council, unable to deny the miracle but unwilling to accept the message, threatens the apostles and releases them. Peter and John return to the believing community, which prays for boldness. The Spirit shakes the meeting place, and the chapter closes with a description of the community's radical sharing of possessions.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Peter's declaration in verse 12 — "There is no other name under heaven given among people by which we must be saved" — is one of the most definitive christological claims in the New Testament. The Sanhedrin's dilemma in verses 14-16 is striking: the healed man stands before them as undeniable evidence, yet they cannot accept its implications. The community prayer in verses 24-30 quotes Psalm 2 and provides the first recorded instance of the early church interpreting its persecution through the lens of the Psalms. Barnabas appears for the first time (v. 36).*

Translation Friction: *The number of believers reaches 'about five thousand men' (v. 4), raising questions about whether this includes only males or the total community. Peter is described as 'filled with the Holy Spirit' (v. 8) though he was already filled at Pentecost — Luke presents Spirit-filling as repeated rather than one-time. The community's property sharing (vv. 32-37) is idealized and will be complicated by the Ananias and Sapphira episode in chapter 5.*

Connections: *The Sanhedrin trial echoes Jesus's own trial before the same body (Luke 22:66-71). Peter's use of Psalm 118:22 (the rejected stone) connects to Jesus's use of the same text (Luke 20:17). The community prayer's citation of Psalm 2 (vv. 25-26) provides the theological framework for understanding opposition to the church. The sharing of possessions continues the pattern from 2:44-45 and anticipates 5:1-11.*

¹While they were speaking to the people, the priests, the captain of the temple, and the Sadducees confronted them, ²They were deeply disturbed that the apostles were teaching the people and proclaiming that the resurrection of the dead had been proven through Jesus. ³They seized them and put them in custody until the next day, for it was already evening. ⁴But many of those who heard the message believed, and the number of the men came to about five thousand. ⁵The next day their rulers and elders and scribes assembled in Jerusalem, ⁶Annas the elevated priest, and Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander, and as numerous as were of the kindred of the elevated priest, were gathered as one at Jerusalem. ⁷They placed them in the center

and began to question them: "By what power or by what name did you do this?" ⁸Then Peter, filled with the Holy Spirit, said to them, "Rulers of the people and elders, ⁹If we are being questioned today about an act of kindness shown to a disabled man and how he was healed, ¹⁰Be it known to you all, and to every one of the people of Israel, that by the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, whom you crucified, whom God raised from the dead, even by him does this man stand here before you whole. ¹¹This Jesus is the stone that was rejected by you, the builders, which has become the cornerstone. ¹²And there is salvation in no one else, for there is no other name under heaven given among people by which we must be saved." ¹³Now when they saw the boldness of Peter and John and realized that they were uneducated, ordinary men, they were astonished. And they recognized that they had been with Jesus. ¹⁴And seeing the man who had been healed standing with them, they had nothing to say in opposition. ¹⁵After ordering them to leave the council, they conferred with one another, ¹⁶"What should we do with these men?" they asked. "Everyone living in Jerusalem knows they have performed a remarkable miracle, and we cannot deny it." ¹⁷But so that it does not spread any further among the people, let us warn them with threats to speak no longer to anyone in this name." ¹⁸So they called them in and ordered them not to speak or teach at all in the name of Jesus. ¹⁹But Peter and John answered them, "Whether it is right in the sight of God to listen to you rather than to God, you must judge. ²⁰For we are not able to stop speaking about what we have seen and heard." ²¹After threatening them further, they released them, finding no way to punish them because of the people, for everyone was glorifying God for what had happened. ²²For the man on whom this sign of healing had been performed was more than forty years old. ²³When they were released, they went to their own people and reported everything that the chief priests and elders had said to them. ²⁴When they heard this, they raised their voices together to God and said, "Sovereign Lord, you who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and everything in them, ²⁵Who by the mouth of your servant David hast stated, Why did the heathen rage, and the people imagine vain matters? ²⁶The kings of the earth took their stand, and the rulers gathered together against the Lord and against his Anointed One.' ²⁷For truly in this city there gathered together against your holy servant Jesus, whom you anointed, both Herod and Pontius Pilate, along with the Gentiles and the peoples of Israel, ²⁸For to do whatsoever your hand and your counsel determined prior to to be done. ²⁹And now, Lord, consider their threats and grant your servants the ability to speak your word with all boldness, ³⁰Indeed, by stretching forth your hand to heal. And that signs and wonders may be done by the name of your holy child Jesus. ³¹When they had prayed, the place where they were gathered was shaken, and they were all filled with the Holy Spirit and began to speak the word of God with boldness. ³²Now the full number of those who believed were of one heart and soul, and no one said that any of their possessions was their own, but they held everything in common. ³³With great power the apostles continued to give their testimony to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great grace was upon them all. ³⁴There was not a needy person among them, for as many as were owners of lands or houses would sell them and bring the proceeds of what was sold ³⁵Laid them down at the apostles' feet — and distribution was appointed to every man according as he had need. ³⁶Joseph, who was called Barnabas by the apostles (which means 'Son of Encouragement'), a Levite and a native of Cyprus, ³⁷Having land, sold it, and brought the money, and placed it at the messengers' feet.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'captain of the temple' (ho stratēgos tou hierou) was the sagan, the second-ranking temple official after the high priest, responsible for temple security. The Sadducees appear as the primary opponents because the apostles' preaching of resurrection directly challenged Sadducean theology, which denied resurrection (Luke 20:27). The verb *epestēsan* ('confronted, stood over, came upon') has a hostile overtone — this is an official intervention, not a casual interruption.
2. The participle *diaponoumenoi* ('greatly annoyed, deeply disturbed, indignant') reveals the emotional motivation behind the arrest — this is not calm judicial procedure but irritated reaction. The phrase 'proclaiming in Jesus the resurrection from the dead' (*katangelein en tō Iēsou tēn anastasin*) can mean either 'proclaiming the resurrection through Jesus' (Jesus as the agent) or 'proclaiming in the case of Jesus the resurrection' (Jesus as the example). Both readings are theologically valid.
3. Jewish law prohibited trials at night (Mishnah Sanhedrin 4:1), so Peter and John are held overnight. The phrase *epebalon tas cheiras* ('laid hands on, seized') indicates physical arrest. The detail 'it was already evening' (*ēn gar hespera ēdē*) explains the delay and shows that Peter's sermon lasted through the afternoon.

4. Despite the arrest, the message spreads — Luke consistently shows that persecution cannot stop the gospel's advance. The number 'about five thousand' (hōs chiliades pente) likely refers to the total male believers, not just those converted this day. The word andrōn ('men') may indicate a male-only count following Jewish census conventions, meaning the total community including women and children would be significantly larger.
5. The three groups — rulers (archontas), elders (presbyterous), and scribes (grammateis) — constitute the Sanhedrin, the supreme Jewish council. This is the same body that tried Jesus. Luke's description of a formal assembly emphasizes the gravity of the proceedings.
6. Annas served as high priest from AD 6-15 and remained the power behind the office, which was held by his son-in-law Caiaphas (AD 18-36). Luke calls Annas 'the high priest' reflecting his continued authority and influence. John and Alexander are otherwise unknown — they may be sons of Annas who later held the office. The phrase 'high-priestly family' (genous archieratikou) indicates the aristocratic priestly clan that controlled the temple.
7. The positioning 'in the center' (en tō mesō) reflects formal judicial proceedings — the accused stand surrounded by the seated council. The question about 'power' (dynamei) and 'name' (onomati) is legally significant: they want to know the source of authority behind the miracle. Ironically, their question plays directly into Peter's hands, giving him the opportunity to proclaim the name of Jesus before the highest authority in Israel.
8. The phrase 'filled with the Holy Spirit' (plēstheis pneumatōs hagiou) marks this as Spirit-empowered testimony, fulfilling Jesus's promise in Luke 12:11-12 that the Spirit would teach them what to say when brought before authorities. This is a fresh filling for a specific moment, not a reference back to Pentecost — Luke presents the Spirit's empowerment as dynamic and situational.
9. Peter's opening is rhetorically masterful: he reframes the trial as an absurdity — they are being interrogated for performing a 'good deed' (euergesia, 'act of beneficence'). The word sesōtai ('has been healed/saved') is deliberately ambiguous: sōzō means both 'to heal' and 'to save,' and Peter will exploit this double meaning in verse 12.
10. Peter answers the council's question from verse 7 with maximum directness: the name is Jesus Christ the Nazarene. The parallel clauses 'whom you crucified / whom God raised' compress the entire gospel into a single antithesis. The healed man standing before them (parestēken... hygiēs) is living evidence that cannot be cross-examined away. Peter addresses both the council ('all of you') and the broader nation ('all the people of Israel').
11. Peter quotes Psalm 118:22, a text Jesus himself applied to his own rejection (Luke 20:17). The 'builders' (oikodomōn) are now explicitly identified as the council members themselves — 'by you, the builders' (hyph' hymōn tōn oikodomōn). The 'cornerstone' (kephalēn gōnias, literally 'head of the corner') is the foundational or capstone that holds the structure together. The one the builders rejected has become the most important stone.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 118:22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. This verse is the theological climax of Peter's defense. The double negative construction — 'salvation in no one else' (ouk estin en allō oudeni hē sōtēria) and 'no other name' (oude onoma estin heteron) — is emphatic and exclusive. The word sōtēria ('salvation') now carries its full theological weight, expanding from the physical healing of the lame man to cosmic salvation. The verb dei ('it is necessary, must') indicates divine necessity — salvation through Jesus is not one option among many but the singular provision of God.
13. The word parrhēsia ('boldness, frank speech, freedom of expression') was prized in Greek democratic culture as the right of free citizens. The council expects deference from agrammatōi ('uneducated, unlettered' — meaning without formal rabbinic training) and idiōtai ('ordinary, untrained, laymen'). The final recognition — 'they had been with Jesus' (syn tō Iēsou ēsan) — is both identification and explanation: their boldness comes from the same source as their former master's.
14. The healed man's physical presence is the unanswerable argument. The verb tetherapeumenon ('having been healed') is a perfect participle — the healing is a completed fact with ongoing results. The phrase ouden eichon anteipein ('they had nothing to say against it') captures the council's impotence: they cannot deny the miracle, cannot discredit the witnesses, and cannot refute the theology.
15. The private deliberation (syneballon pros allēlous, 'conferred with one another') reveals the political nature of the proceedings. The Sanhedrin is not seeking truth but managing a crisis. Luke's ability to report their private discussion may come from later sources, possibly including council members who became believers (cf. 6:7, 'a great many of the priests became obedient to the faith').
16. The council's admission is extraordinary: 'a remarkable sign' (gnōston sēmeion) that is 'evident to all' (phaneron) and 'we cannot deny it' (ou dynametha arneisthai). They acknowledge the miracle's reality while seeking to suppress its implications. The word sēmeion ('sign') rather than teras ('wonder') is significant — a sign points beyond itself to a greater reality, which the council refuses to follow.
17. The council's strategy is containment: stop the message from spreading (dianeēthē, 'to spread, to distribute'). Their concern is not theological truth but public order and their own authority. The phrase 'this name' (tō onomati toutō) — they avoid saying 'Jesus' — betrays their awareness that the name itself carries power. The irony is thick: threatening people for performing an act of mercy.
18. The prohibition covers both informal speech (phtheggēsthai, 'to utter, to speak out') and formal instruction (didaskein, 'to teach'). The phrase to katholou ('at all, entirely') makes the ban absolute. This is a direct attempt to silence the apostolic witness — the very thing Jesus commissioned them to do in 1:8.
19. Peter and John's response establishes the principle of divine authority over human authority — when the two conflict, God takes precedence. The phrase 'in the sight of God' (enōpion tou theou) appeals to the council's own religious convictions. The invitation 'you must judge' (krinate) turns the tables: the judges are now asked to judge their own judgment. This principle of civil disobedience on religious grounds echoes the Hebrew midwives (Exodus 1:17) and Daniel's companions (Daniel 3:16-18).

- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 1:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 3:16-18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** The double negative *ou dynametha... mē lalein* ('we are not able not to speak') expresses compulsion: the apostles literally cannot stop themselves. Their witness is not a choice that can be turned off but an inner necessity driven by what they have personally experienced (*eidamen*, 'we saw'; *ēkousamen*, 'we heard'). The eyewitness nature of their testimony is again emphasized.
- 21.** The council is caught between their desire to punish and their fear of the people (*dia ton laon*). Public opinion constrains their power — the same dynamic that protected Jesus during his ministry (Luke 20:19). The phrase 'everyone was glorifying God' (*pantes edoxazon ton theon*) shows that popular sentiment sided with the apostles and their miracle.
- 22.** Luke adds this detail to emphasize the miracle's magnitude: the man had been lame for over forty years, making the healing all the more remarkable and undeniable. The age also echoes Israel's forty years in the wilderness — a symbolic period of waiting that ends in restoration.
- 23.** The phrase 'their own people' (*tous idious*) designates the believing community — a distinct group identity is forming. The apostles' first instinct after release is corporate: they return to the community to share and to pray. The response that follows (vv. 24-30) is communal, not individual.
- 24.** The word *homothymadon* ('with one accord, together') is the characteristic Lukan term for early church unity. The address *despota* ('Sovereign Lord, Master') is distinct from *kyrios* ('Lord') — it emphasizes God's absolute sovereignty and is used in contexts of prayer under persecution (cf. Revelation 6:10). The creation language echoes Exodus 20:11 and Psalm 146:6, establishing God's authority as Creator before addressing the specific crisis.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 146:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** The community quotes Psalm 2:1-2, a royal psalm traditionally read at the coronation of Davidic kings. The attribution is triply layered: God spoke through the Holy Spirit through David — a rich statement of inspiration. David is called *pais* ('servant'), the same title applied to Jesus in verse 27 and 3:13, creating a servant-parallel between David and Jesus. The Greek text here is grammatically difficult in the manuscripts; we follow the SBLGNT reading.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 2:1-2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** The Psalm speaks of 'kings' and 'rulers' conspiring against 'the LORD and his Anointed' (*christou*, 'Christ/Messiah'). The community will apply these four categories to specific historical actors in verses 27-28. The phrase 'his Anointed One' (*tou christou autou*) preserves the messianic title in its original context before the christological application.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 2:1-2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 27.** The Psalm's categories are now mapped onto the passion narrative: 'kings' = Herod Antipas (Luke 23:6-12), 'rulers' = Pontius Pilate, 'nations' = the Gentile (Roman) soldiers, 'peoples' = the peoples of Israel. The verb *echrisas* ('you anointed') connects Jesus's title 'Christ/Anointed' to a specific divine act — God anointed Jesus, making the conspiracy against him a conspiracy against God's own chosen one.
- 28.** The community affirms what Peter stated in 2:23: the crucifixion was simultaneously a human crime and a divine plan. The verb *proōrisen* ('predestined, determined beforehand') is a strong predestination term. 'Your hand and your plan' (*hē cheir sou kai hē boulē sou*) attributes both the power and the purpose to God. The prayer finds comfort not in denying the opposition's reality but in placing it within God's sovereign design.
- 29.** The prayer's request is remarkable for what it does not ask for: they do not pray for the persecution to stop, for their enemies to be punished, or for deliverance from danger. They pray for boldness (*parrhēσίας*) — the same quality the council noticed in Peter and John (v. 13). The word *doulois* ('servants, slaves') expresses their self-understanding as God's owned people, contrasting with the authority claims of the Sanhedrin.
- 30.** The prayer ends by requesting continued miraculous activity 'through the name of your holy servant Jesus' — the very name the council tried to suppress. 'Stretching out your hand' (*tēn cheira sou ekteinein*) is an Old Testament image of divine intervention (Exodus 6:6, Deuteronomy 4:34). The prayer boldly asks for more of exactly what provoked the persecution.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 6:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 4:34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The physical shaking (*esaleuthē*) of the meeting place recalls Sinai (Exodus 19:18) and serves as divine confirmation of the prayer. This is a second Pentecost-like experience — the community is again filled with the Spirit, confirming that Spirit-filling is repeatable and responsive to prayer. The prayer asked for boldness (v. 29); the answer is immediate: they 'began to speak the word of God with boldness' (*elaloun ton logon tou theou meta parrhēσίας*). Prayer requested, God granted.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 19:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

32. The phrase 'one heart and soul' (kardia kai psychē mia) echoes Deuteronomy 6:5 ('with all your heart and all your soul') — the community's unity fulfills the Shema's call to wholehearted devotion. The radical economic sharing — no one claiming private ownership — is described as voluntary disposition ('no one said,' *elegen*, indicating attitude) rather than compulsion. This idealizing summary will be qualified by the Ananias and Sapphira episode in 5:1-11.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 6:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The twin superlatives — 'great power' (*dynamei megalē*) and 'great grace' (*charis megalē*) — characterize the community. The apostles' central message remains the resurrection (*tēs anastaseōs tou kyriou Iēsou*). The 'great grace' upon them could refer to divine favor, the community's generosity, or both — Luke allows the ambiguity to stand.
34. The phrase 'not a needy person among them' (*oude endees tis ēn en autois*) echoes Deuteronomy 15:4, where Moses envisions a community with no poor 'if you carefully obey the LORD your God.' The early church is presented as fulfilling the Deuteronomic ideal. Property owners voluntarily liquidated assets to fund communal welfare. The imperfect tenses (*pōlountes epheron*) indicate repeated, ongoing action over time.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 15:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Placing funds 'at the apostles' feet' (*para tous podas tōn apostolōn*) is a gesture of deference and trust — the apostles served as administrators of the communal fund. Distribution was need-based (*kathoti an tis chreian eichen*), not equal — the principle was sufficiency, not uniformity. This administrative arrangement will later require modification as the community grows (6:1-6).
36. Barnabas is introduced here and will become one of the most important figures in Acts (chapters 9-15). His given name is Joseph; 'Barnabas' is a nickname meaning 'Son of Encouragement' (*huios paraklēseōs*) or 'Son of Consolation' — the Aramaic *bar-nabas*. The etymology is debated: *nabas* may relate to Aramaic or Hebrew words for 'prophecy' or 'consolation.' As a Levite, he would have had temple responsibilities; as a Cypriot, he represents the diaspora Jewish community.
37. Barnabas serves as the positive example of communal generosity, standing in deliberate contrast to Ananias and Sapphira in the immediately following passage (5:1-11). His action — selling property and giving the full proceeds — illustrates the ideal described in verses 34-35. The fact that Luke names him specifically, among many who presumably did the same, suggests that Barnabas's generosity was especially notable or that his later prominence warranted this introduction.

5

Summary: *Acts 5 opens with the sobering story of Ananias and Sapphira, who sell property but secretly withhold part of the proceeds while claiming to give the full amount. Peter confronts each of them separately, and both fall dead — producing great fear in the church. The chapter then describes the apostles' ongoing miraculous ministry in Solomon's Portico, including healings that draw crowds from surrounding cities. The Sanhedrin arrests the apostles again, but an angel releases them from prison. Brought before the council, the apostles declare they must obey God rather than men. Gamaliel's wise counsel — 'if this plan is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them' — leads the council to release them after a flogging.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Ananias and Sapphira episode serves as a warning parallel to Achan's sin in Joshua 7 — just as the conquest community was purified through judgment, so the church community faces divine discipline for deception. Peter's statement 'You have not lied to men but to God' (v. 4) and the reference to 'testing the Spirit of the Lord' (v. 9) reveal a high pneumatology — the Holy Spirit is identified with God himself. Gamaliel, the great Pharisaic teacher (Paul's mentor per 22:3), provides the most moderate voice on the council. His historical examples (Theudas and Judas the Galilean) frame the Christian movement within the broader context of first-century Jewish messianic movements.*

Translation Friction: *The deaths of Ananias and Sapphira raise difficult theological questions about divine judgment in the age of grace. Peter makes clear in verse 4 that the property was theirs to keep and the proceeds were theirs to control — the sin was deception, not withholding. Gamaliel's historical references present chronological difficulties: Josephus places Theudas's revolt around AD 44-46, after Gamaliel's speech, raising questions about Luke's sources.*

Connections: *The Ananias and Sapphira story connects to Achan (Joshua 7) and to the theme of testing God (Deuteronomy 6:16). The apostles' prison release anticipates Peter's more dramatic release in chapter 12. Gamaliel's 'if it is from God' principle echoes Elijah's challenge on Carmel (1 Kings 18). The apostles' joy in suffering (v. 41) connects to Jesus's teaching in Luke 6:22-23.*

¹But a man named Ananias, together with his wife Sapphira, sold a piece of property. ²Kept back part of the price, his wife as well being privy to it, and brought a specific part, and laid it at the apostles' feet. ³But Peter said, "Ananias, why has Satan filled your heart to lie to the Holy Spirit and to keep back part of the proceeds of the land? ⁴While it remained unsold, was it not your own? And after it was sold, were the proceeds not at your disposal? Why is it that you conceived this deed in your heart? You have not lied to people but to God." ⁵When Ananias heard these words, he fell down and breathed his last. And great fear came upon all who heard of it. ⁶The young men rose, wrapped his body, carried him out, and buried him. ⁷About three hours later his wife came in, not knowing what had happened. ⁸Peter said to her, "Tell me, did you sell the land for this amount?" She said, "Yes, for that amount." ⁹Peter said to her, "How is it that you agreed together to test the Spirit of the Lord? Look, the feet of those who buried your husband are at the door, and they will carry you out as well." ¹⁰Immediately she fell down at his feet and breathed her last. When the young men came in, they found her dead, and they carried her out and buried her beside her husband. ¹¹Great fear came upon the whole church and upon all who heard about these things. ¹²Now many signs and wonders were being done among the people through the hands of the apostles. They were all together in Solomon's Portico, ¹³No one else dared to associate with them publicly, yet the people held them in high regard. ¹⁴Yet more than ever believers were added to the Lord, multitudes of both men and women, ¹⁵To these people a degree that they brought forth the sick into the streets, and placed them on beds and couches, that at the least the shadow of Peter passing by might overshadow some of them. ¹⁶The people also gathered from the towns surrounding Jerusalem, bringing the sick and those tormented by unclean spirits, and they were all healed. ¹⁷Then the high priest and all who were with him (that is, the party of the Sadducees) rose up, filled with jealousy, ¹⁸Placed their hands on the messengers, and put them in the common prison. ¹⁹But during the night an angel of the Lord opened the prison doors, brought them out, and said, ²⁰"Go, stand in the temple and speak to the people all the words of this Life." ²¹When they heard this, they entered the temple at daybreak and began to teach. When the high priest and those with him arrived, they convened the Sanhedrin — the full council of elders of the people of Israel — and sent to the jail to have the apostles brought. ²²But when the officers arrived at the jail, they did not find them there. So they returned and reported, ²³"We found the jail securely locked and the guards standing at the doors, but when we opened them, we found no one inside." ²⁴When the captain of the temple and the chief priests heard these words, they were greatly perplexed about them, wondering what this might come to. ²⁵Then someone came and reported to them, "Look! The men you put in jail are standing in the temple and teaching the people." ²⁶Then the captain went with the officers and brought them back, but without force, for they were afraid of being stoned by the people. ²⁷When they had brought them, they stood them before the Sanhedrin, and the high priest questioned them, ²⁸Indeed, declaring, Did not we straitly command you that you should not teach in this name? and, take notice, you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine, and intend to bring this man's blood upon us. ²⁹But Peter and the apostles answered, "We must obey God rather than men. ³⁰The God of our fathers raised up Jesus, whom you killed by hanging him on a tree. ³¹God exalted him at his right hand as Leader and Savior, to give repentance to Israel and forgiveness of sins. ³²And we are witnesses to these things, and so is the Holy Spirit, whom God has given to those who obey him." ³³When they heard this, they were enraged and wanted to kill them. ³⁴But a Pharisee in the Sanhedrin named Gamaliel, a teacher of the law respected by all the people, stood up and ordered that the men be put outside for a short time. ³⁵He said to them, "Men of Israel, be careful about what you are about to do with these men. ³⁶For some time ago Theudas rose up, claiming to be somebody, and a number of men, about four hundred, joined him. He was killed, and all who followed him were dispersed and came to nothing. ³⁷After him, Judas the Galilean rose up in the days of the census and drew people away after him. He too perished, and all who followed him were scattered. ³⁸So in the present case I tell you: stay away from these men and let them go. For if this plan or this work is of human origin, it will fail. ³⁹But if it is from God, you will not be able to overthrow them — you may even be found fighting against God!" ⁴⁰They were persuaded by him, and after calling in the apostles, they had them flogged, ordered them not to speak in the name of Jesus, and released them. ⁴¹So they left the presence of the Sanhedrin, rejoicing that they were counted worthy to be dishonored for the sake of the Name. ⁴²And every day, in the temple and from house to house, they did not stop teaching and proclaiming the good news that Jesus is the Christ.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The name Ananias (Hananiah) means 'the LORD is gracious' — the irony is sharp given the story that follows. Sapphira (Sapphirē) means 'beautiful' or 'sapphire.' Luke introduces them together because their sin is collaborative. The word *ktēma* ('property, possession') refers to real estate, likely land, connecting to the land-selling of 4:34-37.
2. The verb *enosphisato* ('kept back, embezzled, misappropriated') is the same word the LXX uses for Achan's theft from the devoted things in Joshua 7:1 — Luke deliberately echoes that earlier story of deception within a covenant community. The phrase *syneiduiēs kai tēs gynaikos* ('his wife also being privy to it') establishes Sapphira as a knowing co-conspirator, not an unwitting partner.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joshua 7:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Peter attributes the deception to satanic influence — 'Satan filled your heart' (*eplērōsen ho satanas tēn kardian sou*) — using filling language that contrasts with the Spirit-filling of 4:31. Where the Spirit fills for bold truth, Satan fills for calculated deception. The verb *pseusasthai* ('to lie to, to deceive') takes the Holy Spirit as its object, establishing the Spirit as a personal being who can be lied to, not merely an impersonal force.
4. Peter makes two crucial clarifications. First, the giving was voluntary — the property was Ananias's to keep and the money his to control (*en tē sē exousia*, 'in your own authority'). The sin was not in withholding but in pretending to give everything while secretly keeping back. Second, Peter equates lying to the Holy Spirit (v. 3) with lying to God (v. 4) — a direct identification of the Spirit with God that has significant trinitarian implications.
5. The verb *exepsyxen* ('breathed his last, expired') is clinical — Luke does not say God struck him dead, though the implication is divine judgment. The 'great fear' (*phobos megas*) that results is distinct from the reverential awe of 2:43; this is genuine terror at the holiness of God active in the community. The immediate death without opportunity for repentance parallels the judgment on Achan (Joshua 7:25) and on Nadab and Abihu (Leviticus 10:1-2).
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 7:25 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 10:1-2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The 'young men' (*neōteroi*) appear to serve as practical helpers in the community — not an official order but an informal group of younger members. The verb *synesteilan* ('wrapped up') refers to preparing the body for burial. Jewish custom required prompt burial, usually on the same day of death. The speed of the burial — no mention of mourning rites — adds to the narrative's severity.
7. The three-hour interval (*hōs hōrōn triōn diastēma*) provides time for the burial and sets up the separate testing of Sapphira. Her ignorance of Ananias's death (*mē eiduia to gegonos*) means her responses are uncoerced — she has a genuine opportunity to tell the truth.
8. Peter's question gives Sapphira an opportunity for honesty — 'for this amount?' (*ei tosoutou*) presumably indicating the amount Ananias had presented. Her affirmative answer (*nai, tosoutou*) confirms her complicity in the deception. She could have told the truth and been spared; the test reveals her heart.
9. The phrase *synephōnēthē hymin* ('you agreed together') reveals a deliberate conspiracy — the same verb gives us 'symphony,' indicating coordinated action. 'Testing the Spirit of the Lord' (*peirasai to pneuma kyriou*) echoes Israel's sin of testing God in the wilderness (Exodus 17:2, Deuteronomy 6:16). Peter's announcement of the burial party at the door is simultaneously a prophecy and a judgment.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 17:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The word *parachrēma* ('immediately') emphasizes the instantaneous nature of the judgment. The parallel with Ananias's death is exact — the same verb *exepsyxen* ('breathed her last') and the same agents (the young men) performing the burial. She is buried 'beside her husband' (*pros ton andra autēs*) — united in death as they were in deception.
11. This is the first use of *ekklēsia* ('church, assembly, congregation') in Acts. The word derives from *ek-kaleō* ('to call out') and was used in the Septuagint to translate the Hebrew *qahal* ('assembly'). Luke introduces the term at a moment of holy fear rather than celebration. The fear extends beyond the church to outsiders ('all who heard'), creating a double effect: purification within and reverence without.
12. The summary returns to the pattern of 2:43 — signs and wonders accompany the apostles' ministry. Solomon's Portico (*Stoa Solomōntos*) has become the church's regular public meeting place (cf. 3:11). The phrase 'through the hands' (*dia tōn cheirōn*) emphasizes that the apostles are instruments, not the source of the miraculous power.
13. The 'rest' (*tōn loipōn*) likely refers to non-believers or marginal sympathizers who respected the movement but feared full commitment — perhaps because of the Ananias and Sapphira episode. The verb *etolma* ('dared') suggests that joining required courage given the Sanhedrin's opposition and the community's evident holiness. The paradox is that fear kept some away while admiration drew others in.
14. Despite (or because of) the fear, the church grows — 'more than ever' (*mallon*) indicates accelerating growth. Luke explicitly notes 'both men and women' (*andrōn te kai gynaikōn*), a detail that emphasizes the inclusive nature of the community and corrects the male-only counting of 4:4.

15. The detail about Peter's shadow (hē skia) is remarkable — people believed that even his shadow carried healing power. Luke does not explicitly confirm that shadow-healings occurred, only that people sought them. The parallel to Jesus's ministry is clear: people touched the fringe of Jesus's garment seeking healing (Luke 8:44). The two types of beds — klinarion ('small bed, cot') and krabattos ('pallet, stretcher, mat') — indicate both middle-class and poor patients.
16. The ministry expands beyond Jerusalem to the surrounding region, beginning to fulfill the geographical progression of 1:8 ('Judea'). Two categories of affliction are distinguished: physical illness (astheneis, 'sick, weak') and spiritual oppression (ochloumenous hypo pneumatōn akathartōn, 'harassed/tormented by unclean spirits'). The comprehensive result — 'they were all healed' (etherapeuonto hapantes) — mirrors Jesus's own healing ministry (Luke 6:19).
17. The word zēlou can mean either 'zeal' or 'jealousy' — in this context, jealousy at the apostles' popularity is the primary motivation, though it may include religious zeal against perceived heresy. Luke identifies the opposition party as Sadducees, consistent with 4:1 — the resurrection preaching is the primary irritant for this group that denies resurrection. The word haireisis ('party, sect, school of thought') is the root of 'heresy' but does not yet carry that negative connotation.
18. Unlike the previous arrest of just Peter and John (4:3), all the apostles are now arrested. The 'public jail' (tērēsei dēmosia) distinguishes this from private temple detention — this is official civic imprisonment, escalating the conflict. The phrase epebalon tas cheiras ('laid hands on') indicates physical seizure.
19. The phrase angelos kyriou ('angel of the Lord') echoes the Hebrew malak YHWH — a divine messenger acting on God's authority. The prison escape is narrated with minimal dramatic detail, in contrast to Peter's more elaborate release in chapter 12. The angel does not merely free them but gives them a commission (v. 20), indicating that the release serves the mission, not merely the apostles' comfort.
20. The angel's command is direct and defiant: return to the very place where you were arrested and continue teaching. The phrase 'all the words of this Life' (panta ta rhēmata tēs zōēs tautēs) is remarkable — the gospel message is summarized as 'this Life,' identifying the message with the life it proclaims. Some scholars capitalize 'Life' here as a christological reference.
21. The apostles obey the angel immediately, entering the temple 'at daybreak' (hypo ton orthron), the earliest possible hour. Meanwhile, the Sanhedrin assembles in formal session. Luke emphasizes the full body: both the synedrion ('Sanhedrin, council') and the gerousia ('council of elders, senate') — possibly the same body described two ways, or a reference to the plenary session as opposed to an executive committee. The dramatic irony builds: the council sends for prisoners who are no longer there.
22. The hypēretai ('officers, servants, attendants') are the temple police, subordinate to the captain of the temple (v. 26). The empty jail creates a narrative parallel to the empty tomb — divine power has overturned human confinement.
23. The officers' report emphasizes the impossibility of the escape by natural means: the prison was 'securely locked' (kekleisimenon en pasē asphaleia), the guards were at their posts ('standing at the doors'), yet the prisoners were gone. Every security measure was intact. The supernatural nature of the release is undeniable, adding to the council's bewilderment in the next verse.
24. The verb diēporoun ('were perplexed, were at a loss') is the same word used for the Pentecost crowd's confusion (2:12). The authorities cannot explain what has happened and fear where events are heading. The phrase ti an genoito touto ('what this might become') reveals anxiety about the movement's trajectory — a concern Gamaliel will address in verses 35-39.
25. The dramatic irony reaches its peak: while the council deliberates about the missing prisoners, the apostles are doing exactly what they were arrested for — standing in the temple teaching. The unnamed reporter's exclamation 'Look!' (idou) captures the absurdity of the situation from the authorities' perspective.
26. The detail 'without force' (ou meta bias) is significant — the temple police feared the people more than they feared the Sanhedrin's displeasure. The ironic reversal is complete: the authorities are the ones afraid, while the apostles who should be afraid are freely teaching. The threat of stoning (mē lithasthōsin) shows how popular the apostles had become.
27. The scene replicates 4:7 — the apostles again stand before the council. The repetition underscores the escalating conflict: the first hearing produced warnings (4:17-18), this one will produce violence (v. 40).
28. The high priest's complaint inadvertently confirms the success of the apostles' mission: 'you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching' (peplērōkate tēn Ierousalēm tēs didachēs hymōn). The phrase 'this man's blood upon us' (to haima tou anthrōpou toutou) is deeply ironic: in Matthew 27:25, the crowd accepted precisely this responsibility ('His blood be on us and on our children'). The high priest avoids saying Jesus's name, calling him 'this man' (tou anthrōpou toutou).
29. This sharpens the principle stated in 4:19. There, Peter asked the council to judge; here, he simply declares the verdict. The verb peitharchein ('to obey, to submit to authority') is a strong term for compliance with authority — the apostles recognize the Sanhedrin's authority but assert a higher one. The word dei ('it is necessary, one must') expresses divine compulsion, not personal preference.
30. Peter again begins with 'the God of our fathers' (ho theos tōn paterōn hēmōn), maintaining the claim that the apostles represent authentic Israelite faith. The verb diecheirisasthe ('killed, laid violent hands on, did away with') is blunt. The phrase 'hanging on a tree' (kremasantes epi xylou) deliberately evokes Deuteronomy 21:22-23, where a person hung on a tree is 'cursed by God.' Peter turns the curse into an argument: Jesus bore the covenant curse, but God reversed it through resurrection (cf. Galatians 3:13).

30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 21:22-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The twin titles archēgon ('Leader, Author, Pioneer') and sōtēra ('Savior') recall 3:15 ('Author of life'). Jesus is exalted 'at his right hand' (tē dexia autou), echoing Psalm 110:1 and Peter's Pentecost sermon (2:33). The purpose of the exaltation is dual: 'to give repentance' (dounai metanoian) and 'forgiveness of sins' (aphesin hamartiōn). That repentance is something Jesus 'gives' suggests it is a divine gift, not merely a human decision.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. Peter names two witnesses: the apostles ('we are witnesses') and the Holy Spirit. The Spirit's witness is not merely internal but observable — the Pentecost phenomena and the ongoing miraculous signs are the Spirit's public testimony. The Spirit is given to 'those who obey' (tois peitharchousin) — the same verb used in verse 29, creating an implicit contrast: the apostles obey God and receive the Spirit; the council disobeys and opposes.
33. The verb diepionto ('were cut through, were sawn in two') describes a visceral, furious reaction — literally 'cut to the quick.' This is rage, not conviction (contrast the pierced hearts of 2:37). The same word appears in 7:54 at Stephen's trial. The council's impulse is murderous (eboulonto anein, 'wanted to kill') — the conflict has escalated from warnings (4:17) to threats (4:21) to now lethal intent.
34. Gamaliel I (Rabban Gamaliel the Elder) was one of the most respected rabbis of the first century, grandson of Hillel, and the teacher of Saul of Tarsus (22:3). He is the first Pharisee to speak in Acts — significantly, the Pharisees are more moderate than the Sadducees toward the Christian movement, a pattern Luke emphasizes throughout. His title nomodidaskalos ('teacher of the law') and the description timios ('honored, respected') underscore his authority.
35. Gamaliel addresses the council, not the apostles. His opening — prosechete heautois ('take heed to yourselves, be careful about yourselves') — warns that rash action could harm the council's own interests and reputation. His concern is pragmatic wisdom, not theological agreement with the apostles.
36. Gamaliel's first historical example is Theudas, who 'claimed to be somebody' (legōn einai tina heauton) — a vague messianic or prophetic pretension. Josephus records a Theudas who led a movement around AD 44-46 (Antiquities 20.97-98), but that would be after this speech. Either Luke or Josephus has the chronology wrong, or there were two figures named Theudas (not uncommon), or the historical problem remains unresolved. Gamaliel's point is clear regardless: the movement died with its leader.
37. Judas the Galilean is well-attested historically. He led a revolt against the Roman census of AD 6 conducted by Quirinius (Josephus, Antiquities 18.1-10, War 2.118). His movement gave rise to the Zealot ideology that Rome must be resisted as a matter of religious principle. Josephus records that his descendants continued the revolutionary tradition. Gamaliel's point: another self-proclaimed leader, another failure.
38. Gamaliel's counsel is pragmatic: let time decide. If the movement is merely human (ex anthrōpōn), it will collapse on its own as Theudas's and Judas's did. The verb katalythēsetai ('will be destroyed, will be overthrown, will come to nothing') indicates complete dissolution. His argument does not require the council to approve of the apostles — only to wait.
39. The warning theomachoi ('fighters against God, God-fighters') is Gamaliel's strongest word — to oppose what God has initiated is not merely futile but sacrilegious. The compound word theo-machoi appears only here in the New Testament. Gamaliel does not say the movement is from God; he says the risk of opposing it if it is from God is too great to take. His logic is asymmetric: if human, no harm in waiting; if divine, catastrophic to oppose.
40. The council accepts Gamaliel's advice but still inflicts punishment. The verb deirantes ('having beaten, having flogged') refers to the malkot or makkot — the standard judicial flogging of up to thirty-nine lashes (2 Corinthians 11:24). This is not a light punishment; it left the body severely bruised and lacerated. The repeated command 'not to speak in the name of Jesus' (mē lalein epi tō onomati tou Iēsou) echoes 4:18 — the order the apostles have already declared they cannot obey.
41. The apostles' response to flogging is joy (chairontes) — a radical reversal of normal human response to violence. They consider it an honor to 'be dishonored' (atimasthēnai) for 'the Name' (tou onomatos). The paradox is intentional: worldly shame becomes spiritual honor. This fulfills Jesus's beatitude: 'Blessed are you when people hate you... on account of the Son of Man. Rejoice in that day and leap for joy' (Luke 6:22-23). 'The Name' without further specification has become a shorthand for Jesus.
42. The chapter's final verse shows complete defiance of the council's order: 'they did not stop' (ouk epauonto) teaching. The dual venue — temple and homes — continues the pattern from 2:46. The content of their message is precisely identified: 'the Christ, Jesus' (ton christon Iēsou) — that Jesus is the Messiah. The verb euangelizomenoi ('proclaiming good news') gives us 'evangelizing.' The flogging accomplished nothing; the gospel advances without pause.

6

Summary: *Acts 6 presents the first internal crisis in the church: Greek-speaking Jewish widows are being overlooked in the daily food distribution. The apostles propose that the community select seven men to manage this practical service, freeing the apostles for prayer and teaching. The seven are chosen, all bearing Greek names, and are commissioned by prayer and the laying on of hands. Stephen, described as full of grace and power, performs great signs and engages in synagogue debates. Unable to refute him, his opponents bring false witnesses who accuse Stephen of speaking against the temple and the law. The chapter ends with Stephen standing before the Sanhedrin, his face appearing like the face of an angel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The selection of the Seven represents the first organizational development of the church beyond the apostles. All seven have Greek names, suggesting the community addressed the complaint by giving the Hellenists oversight of the distribution — a remarkably generous solution. Stephen emerges as a figure whose theological vision will prove more radical than the apostles' own preaching: his accusers claim he speaks of Jesus destroying the temple and changing Mosaic customs. The description of Stephen's face 'like the face of an angel' echoes Moses' shining face after encountering God (Exodus 34:29-35).*

Translation Friction: *The term 'Hellenists' (Hellenistai) versus 'Hebrews' (Hebraioi) likely refers to a linguistic and cultural division within the Jewish-Christian community: Greek-speaking diaspora Jews versus Aramaic-speaking Palestinian Jews. The Seven are traditionally called 'deacons' though Acts never uses that title. The charges against Stephen in verses 13-14 are called 'false' by Luke, yet Stephen's speech in chapter 7 will arguably confirm some of their substance — the relationship between the false charges and Stephen's actual teaching is complex.*

Connections: *The appointment of the Seven parallels Moses' appointment of elders in Numbers 11:16-17. Stephen's story anticipates and parallels Jesus's passion: false witnesses, a Sanhedrin trial, and a prayer for his persecutors. The Freedmen's synagogue (v. 9) connects to the diaspora communities listed in 2:9-11. The note about priests becoming obedient to the faith (v. 7) represents a remarkable penetration of the gospel into the temple establishment.*

¹Now in those days, as the disciples were increasing in number, a complaint arose from the Hellenists against the Hebrews, because their widows were being overlooked in the daily distribution of food. ²So the twelve summoned the full body of the disciples and said, "It is not right for us to neglect the word of God in order to wait on tables. ³Therefore, brothers, select from among you seven men of good reputation, full of the Spirit and of wisdom, whom we will appoint to this duty. ⁴And we will devote ourselves to prayer and to the ministry of the word." ⁵This proposal pleased the whole group, and they chose Stephen, a man full of faith and of the Holy Spirit, and Philip, Prochorus, Nicanor, Timon, Parmenas, and Nicolaus, a convert to Judaism from Antioch. ⁶They presented them before the apostles, who prayed and laid their hands on them. ⁷The word of God kept spreading, and the number of the disciples in Jerusalem increased greatly, and a large number of the priests became obedient to the faith. ⁸Stephen, full of grace and power, was performing great wonders and signs among the people. ⁹But some from the synagogue called the Synagogue of the Freedmen (including Cyrenians, Alexandrians, and people from Cilicia and Asia) rose up and debated with Stephen. ¹⁰But they could not withstand the wisdom and the Spirit with which he was speaking. ¹¹Then they secretly instigated men who said, "We have heard him speak blasphemous words against Moses and God." ¹²They stirred up the people and the elders and the scribes, and they came upon him, seized him, and brought him before the Sanhedrin. ¹³They produced false witnesses who said, "This man never stops speaking against this holy place and the law. ¹⁴For we have heard him say that this Jesus the Nazarene will destroy this place and change the customs that Moses handed down to us." ¹⁵And gazing at him, all who sat in the Sanhedrin saw that his face was like the face of an angel.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *gonguysmos* ('complaint, murmuring, grumbling') echoes Israel's murmuring in the wilderness (Exodus 16:7-8, Numbers 11:1). The 'Hellenists' (*Hellēnistai*) are Greek-speaking Jewish Christians, likely from the diaspora, while the 'Hebrews' (*Hebraioi*) are Aramaic/Hebrew-speaking Jewish Christians from Palestine. The complaint is specific: widows — the most vulnerable members of ancient society — were being neglected (*paretheōrounto*, 'overlooked, neglected') in the daily food distribution (*diakonia*, 'service, ministry'). Growth has created administrative strain.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 16:7-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 11:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Twelve convene the entire community (to *plēthos tōn mathētōn*, 'the full number of the disciples') for a communal decision — this is not top-down decree but participatory governance. The phrase 'wait on tables' (*diakonein trapezais*) refers to the practical administration of the food distribution. The apostles do not disparage this work but recognize a division of labor: their primary calling is the word of God, not logistics. The verb *kataleipsantas* ('having neglected, having abandoned') suggests that attempting both was already causing neglect of preaching.
3. The community selects; the apostles appoint (*katastēsomen*, 'we will install, we will place in charge'). The qualifications are spiritual, not administrative: 'full of the Spirit and of wisdom' (*plēreis pneumatōs kai sophias*). The number seven may echo the tradition of seven elders in Jewish communities, or it may simply be a practical number. The word *martyroumenous* ('of good reputation, well-attested, testified about') means people whose character is publicly verified.
4. The apostles describe their own work using the same word (*diakonia*, 'ministry, service') used for the food distribution — both are forms of service. The two priorities — prayer (*proseuchē*) and the ministry of the word (*diakonia tou logou*) — define the apostolic calling. The verb *proskarterēsomen* ('we will devote ourselves') is the same word used for the community's devotion in 1:14 and 2:42.
5. All seven names are Greek, which is remarkable given that the complaint was about Hellenist widows being neglected by Hebrew administrators. The community's solution was to give the Hellenists themselves oversight — a generous and trust-building response. Stephen is singled out with an expanded description: 'full of faith and of the Holy Spirit.' Nicolaus is identified as a *prosēlytos* ('proselyte, convert') from Antioch — the only non-born-Jew in the list, showing the community's diversity. Antioch will become a major center of the Gentile mission in chapters 11-13.
6. The laying on of hands (*epethēkan autois tas cheiras*) is a biblical gesture of commissioning and empowerment, rooted in Moses' commissioning of Joshua (Numbers 27:18-23) and the Levitical practice of transferring authority. Prayer accompanies the physical gesture, indicating that the power comes from God, not from the apostles' touch. This becomes the standard pattern for church leadership appointment in Acts (cf. 13:3, 14:23).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 27:18-23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. This is one of Luke's periodic growth summaries (cf. 9:31, 12:24, 16:5, 19:20). The phrase 'the word of God kept spreading' (*ho logos tou theou ēuxanen*) personifies the word as a growing, living force. The most striking detail is that 'a large number of priests' (*polys te ochlos tōn hierēōn*) joined the faith. Given the thousands of priests who served in rotational courses at the temple, even a 'large number' could represent a significant minority. Their conversion represents the gospel's penetration into the heart of the temple establishment.
8. The SBLGNT reads *charitos* ('grace') rather than *pisteōs* ('faith') found in some manuscripts. Stephen's ministry goes beyond the food distribution — he is performing 'great wonders and signs' (*terata kai sēmeia megala*), the same language used for the apostles in 5:12. The Seven are not limited to administrative roles; they are Spirit-empowered ministers in their own right.
9. The 'Freedmen' (*Libertinōn*, from Latin *libertinus*) were likely descendants of Jews taken to Rome as slaves by Pompey in 63 BC and later freed. These diaspora Jews had their own synagogue in Jerusalem. The list includes Jews from North Africa (Cyrene, Alexandria), Asia Minor (Cilicia, Asia), and Rome — Greek-speaking Jews like Stephen himself. Cilicia is Paul's home province (Tarsus), raising the possibility that Paul was among the debaters. The verb *syzētoutes* ('debating, disputing') indicates formal argument.
10. Stephen's irrefutability fulfills Jesus's promise in Luke 21:15: 'I will give you a mouth and wisdom that none of your adversaries will be able to withstand or contradict.' The phrase 'the wisdom and the Spirit' (*tē sophia kai tō pneumati*) echoes the qualifications for the Seven in verse 3. Unable to win the argument, his opponents resort to other means (v. 11).
11. The verb *hypebalon* ('secretly instigated, suborned, put up to it') indicates a covert operation — the opponents coach false witnesses, exactly as happened at Jesus's trial (Matthew 26:59-60). The charge is twofold blasphemy: against Moses (representing the Torah) and against God. These are the most serious possible accusations in a Jewish context, capable of triggering the death penalty.
12. The verb *synekinēsan* ('stirred up, aroused, incited') indicates a deliberate campaign to turn public opinion against Stephen. For the first time in Acts, 'the people' (*ton laon*) are part of the opposition — previously the people supported the apostles (4:21, 5:26). The combination of popular anger, elder and scribe involvement, and Sanhedrin proceedings creates a judicial lynching atmosphere.

13. Luke explicitly labels these as 'false witnesses' (*martyras pseudeis*), using the same language as Jesus's trial (Matthew 26:60). The charge refines the earlier accusation: Stephen speaks against 'this holy place' (the temple) and 'the law' (the Torah). As with Jesus's trial, the charges likely contain a distorted kernel of truth — Stephen probably did teach that Jesus's coming relativized both temple and law, which his opponents twisted into blasphemy.
14. The specific charges are: (1) Jesus will destroy the temple (*katalyseĩ ton topon touton*) and (2) Jesus will change Mosaic customs (*allaxeĩ ta ethē*). Both echo charges made against Jesus himself (Mark 14:58, John 2:19). The word *ethē* ('customs, traditions, practices') refers to the oral and written legal traditions. Stephen's speech in chapter 7 will address both charges, not by denying them outright but by reframing Israel's relationship to temple and law through salvation history.
15. The chapter ends with this arresting image: Stephen's face radiates like an angel's. The parallel to Moses is unmistakable — when Moses descended from Sinai after meeting God, his face shone (Exodus 34:29-35). The man accused of speaking against Moses now bears Moses' own mark of divine encounter. The verb *atenisantes* ('gazing intently') is the same word used repeatedly for intense, fixed attention in Acts. The council sees divine glory on the face of their prisoner but will refuse to recognize what it means.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 34:29-35 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

7

Summary: *Acts 7 contains Stephen's monumental speech before the Sanhedrin — the longest speech in Acts at 53 verses. Stephen recounts Israel's history from Abraham through Moses to Solomon, arguing that God's presence has never been confined to a single place, that Israel has a pattern of rejecting God's chosen messengers, and that the temple was never intended to contain God. His narrative moves from Abraham in Mesopotamia, to Joseph in Egypt, to Moses in the wilderness, to the tabernacle, and finally to Solomon's temple — where he turns accusatory. He charges his hearers with being stiff-necked resisters of the Holy Spirit who, like their ancestors, have betrayed and murdered the Righteous One. The council erupts in fury. Stephen sees a vision of Jesus standing at God's right hand, and they drag him out and stone him to death. He dies praying for his killers. Saul of Tarsus appears for the first time, approving Stephen's execution.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Stephen's speech is a radical rereading of Israel's sacred history. He systematically demonstrates that every pivotal encounter between God and his people happened outside the promised land: Abraham received his call in Mesopotamia, Joseph was God's instrument in Egypt, Moses met God at the burning bush in Midian, the Torah was given at Sinai — not in Jerusalem. The heroes of faith were all initially rejected by their own people before being vindicated. The theological implications are devastating: if God has never been bound to a place, the temple cannot contain him; if Israel has always resisted its prophets, rejecting Jesus fits the pattern. Stephen becomes the first Christian martyr, and his death mirrors Jesus's in profound ways: he prays for his persecutors and commits his spirit to the Lord.*

Translation Friction: *Stephen's retelling contains several historical details that differ from the Genesis account: he says Abraham left Haran after his father died (v. 4, but Genesis 11:26, 32 and 12:4 suggest Terah lived another 60 years), he places 75 members of Jacob's family going to Egypt (v. 14, following the LXX) rather than 70 (Hebrew text), and he attributes the purchase of the Machpelah tomb to Abraham rather than to Jacob (v. 16, conflating Genesis 23 and 33:19). These discrepancies likely reflect Stephen's use of the Septuagint and Jewish interpretive tradition rather than strict historical error. We render the Greek as given without harmonizing.*

Connections: *Stephen's speech draws on Genesis 12-50 (Abraham, Joseph), Exodus 1-20 (Moses), Deuteronomy 18:15 (prophet like Moses), 1 Kings 6-8 (temple), Isaiah 66:1-2 (heaven as God's throne), and Amos 5:25-27 (idolatry). Stephen's martyrdom anticipates Paul's persecution-to-conversion arc. The stoning scene echoes Jesus's crucifixion (Luke 23:34, 46). Saul's introduction here foreshadows the dramatic reversal of chapter 9.*

¹The high priest said, "Are these things so?" ²Stephen replied, "Brothers and fathers, listen. The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham when he was in Mesopotamia, before he lived in Haran, ³Said to him, Get you out of your country, and from your kindred, and come into the land which I will shew you. ⁴Then he left the land of the Chaldeans and settled in Haran. After his father died, God moved him from there into this land in which you are now living. ⁵He gave him no inheritance in

it, not even a foot's length, but he promised to give it to him as a possession and to his descendants after him, even though he had no child. ⁶And God spoke in this way: that his descendants would be strangers in a foreign land, and that the people there would enslave and mistreat them for four hundred years. ⁷'But I will judge the nation they serve,' God said, 'and after that they will come out and worship me in this place.' ⁸And he gave him the covenant of circumcision. So Abraham fathered Isaac and circumcised him on the eighth day, and Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob fathered the twelve patriarchs. ⁹The patriarchs, out of jealousy, sold Joseph into Egypt. But God was with him ¹⁰Delivered him out of all his afflictions, and offered him favour and wisdom in the sight of Pharaoh king of Egypt. Then he appointed him governor over Egypt and all his house. ¹¹Then a famine came over all of Egypt and Canaan, with great suffering, and our fathers could find no food. ¹²When Jacob heard that there was grain in Egypt, he sent our fathers there on their first visit. ¹³On the second visit Joseph made himself known to his brothers, and Joseph's family became known to Pharaoh. ¹⁴Then Joseph sent and invited his father Jacob and all his relatives, seventy-five persons in all. ¹⁵So Jacob went down to Egypt, and he died there — he and our fathers. ¹⁶Their bodies were brought back to Shechem and placed in the tomb that Abraham had bought for a sum of silver from the sons of Hamor in Shechem. ¹⁷"As the time of the promise that God had made to Abraham drew near, the people increased and multiplied in Egypt, ¹⁸Till another king arose, which recognized not Joseph. ¹⁹He exploited our people and oppressed our fathers, forcing them to abandon their infants so they would not survive. ²⁰At that time Moses was born, and he was beautiful before God. He was raised for three months in his father's house, ²¹When he was cast out, Pharaoh's daughter picked up him up, and nourished him for her own son. ²²Moses was educated in all the wisdom of the Egyptians and was powerful in his words and deeds. ²³When he was about forty years old, it came into his heart to visit his brothers, the sons of Israel. ²⁴When he saw one of them being wronged, he came to his defense and avenged the oppressed man by striking down the Egyptian. ²⁵He assumed his brothers would understand that God was giving them deliverance through him, but they did not understand. ²⁶The next day he appeared to them as they were fighting and tried to reconcile them, saying, 'Men, you are brothers! Why are you wronging each other?' ²⁷But the man who was wronging his neighbor pushed him away, saying, 'Who appointed you as a ruler and judge over us? ²⁸Do you want to kill me as you killed the Egyptian yesterday?' ²⁹At this remark, Moses fled and became a foreigner in the land of Midian, where he fathered two sons. ³⁰"When forty years had passed, an angel appeared to him in the wilderness of Mount Sinai, in the flame of a burning bush. ³¹When Moses saw it, he was amazed at the sight. As he approached to look more closely, the voice of the Lord came to him: ³²'I am the God of your fathers — the God of Abraham and Isaac and Jacob.' Moses trembled and did not dare to look. ³³The Lord said to him, 'Take off the sandals from your feet, for the place where you are standing is holy ground.' ³⁴'I have surely seen the mistreatment of my people in Egypt and have heard their groaning, and I have come down to rescue them. Now come, I will send you to Egypt.' ³⁵"This Moses whom they rejected, saying, 'Who appointed you as ruler and judge?' — this man God sent as both ruler and redeemer, through the angel who appeared to him in the bush. ³⁶This man led them out, performing wonders and signs in the land of Egypt and at the Red Sea and in the wilderness for forty years. ³⁷This is the Moses who said to the sons of Israel, 'God will raise up for you a prophet like me from among your brothers.' ³⁸This is the one who was in the assembly in the wilderness with the angel who spoke to him at Mount Sinai, and with our fathers. He received living oracles to give to us. ³⁹Our fathers refused to obey him. Instead, they rejected him and in their hearts turned back to Egypt, ⁴⁰Indeed, declaring to Aaron, 'Make us gods to go prior to us — for as for this Moses, which brought us out of the land of Egypt, we wot not what is become of him. ⁴¹They made a calf in those days, offered sacrifice to the idol, and celebrated the works of their hands. ⁴²But God turned away and gave them over to worship the host of heaven, as it is written in the book of the Prophets: 'Did you bring me slaughtered animals and sacrifices during those forty years in the wilderness, house of Israel? ⁴³You took up the tent of Moloch and the star of your god Rephan, the images you made to worship. I will exile you beyond Babylon.' ⁴⁴"Our fathers had the tabernacle of testimony in the wilderness, just as the one who spoke to Moses directed him to make it according to the pattern he had seen. ⁴⁵Our fathers who received it in turn brought it in with Joshua when they dispossessed the nations that God drove out before our fathers. It remained until the days of David, ⁴⁶Who discovered favour prior to God, and desired to find a tabernacle for the God of Jacob. ⁴⁷But it was Solomon who built a house for him. ⁴⁸Yet the Most High does not dwell in houses made by human hands, as the prophet says: ⁴⁹'Heaven is my throne, and the earth is my

footstool. What kind of house will you build for me?' says the Lord. 'Or what is the place of my rest? ⁵⁰Did not my hand make all these things?' ⁵¹"You stiff-necked people, uncircumcised in heart and ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit. As your fathers did, so do you. ⁵²Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? They killed those who announced beforehand the coming of the Righteous One, whose betrayers and murderers you have now become — ⁵³Who possess received the instruction of Moses by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it. ⁵⁴When they heard these things, they were enraged in their hearts and ground their teeth at him. ⁵⁵But Stephen, full of the Holy Spirit, gazed into heaven and saw the glory of God, and Jesus standing at the right hand of God. ⁵⁶He said, "Look! I see the heavens opened and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God!" ⁵⁷But they cried out with a loud voice, covered their ears, and rushed at him with one impulse. ⁵⁸They drove him out of the city and began to stone him. The witnesses laid their garments at the feet of a young man named Saul. ⁵⁹As they were stoning Stephen, he called out, "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit!" ⁶⁰Then he knelt down and cried out with a loud voice, "Lord, do not hold this sin against them!" And having said this, he fell asleep.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The high priest's question is brief and procedural — he gives Stephen the formal opportunity to respond to the charges of 6:13-14. The question *ei tauta houtōs echei* ('are these things so?') is open-ended, allowing Stephen to speak at length.
2. Stephen opens respectfully — 'brothers and fathers' (*andres adelphoi kai pateres*) — but his argument will be deeply confrontational. The title 'the God of glory' (*ho theos tēs doxēs*) echoes Psalm 29:3 and immediately establishes the theme: God's glorious presence is not bound to a place. His first point is geographical: God appeared to Abraham in Mesopotamia — in pagan territory, far from any sacred site. The Hebrew Bible records God's call to Abraham in Genesis 12:1 while he was in Haran, but Jewish tradition (following Genesis 15:7 and Nehemiah 9:7) understood a prior call while still in Ur of the Chaldees.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 29:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 12:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Nehemiah 9:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Stephen quotes Genesis 12:1 (LXX). God's first command to Abraham was to leave — departure, not settlement, begins the covenant story. The phrase 'the land that I will show you' emphasizes divine initiative and Abraham's trust: he went without knowing the destination.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 12:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Stephen says Abraham left Haran 'after his father died' (*meta to apothanein ton patera autou*). According to Genesis 11:26, Terah was 70 when Abraham was born; Abraham left Haran at 75 (Genesis 12:4); and Terah died at 205 (Genesis 11:32) — which would mean Terah lived 60 more years after Abraham's departure. Stephen follows the Samaritan Pentateuch and possibly a Jewish tradition that placed Terah's death at 145, or he may simply be following narrative logic. We render the Greek as given.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 11:26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 12:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Stephen's point is theologically sharp: Abraham received the promise but not the land. The covenant patriarch lived his entire life in the promised land without owning any of it — 'not even a foot's length' (*oude bēma podos*). This undermines any theology that ties God's blessing to a specific place. The paradox is heightened by the note that Abraham had no child (*ouk ontos autō teknou*) when the promise was given — promise precedes fulfillment by generations.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 12:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Stephen quotes Genesis 15:13-14. The word *paroikon* ('strangers, resident aliens, sojourners') describes Abraham's descendants as outsiders in someone else's land — again emphasizing that God's people were not defined by their territory. The four hundred years is a round number (Exodus 12:40 gives 430 years). Stephen's retelling emphasizes suffering and displacement as characteristic of God's people.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 15:13-14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 12:40. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The phrase 'worship me in this place' (latreusousin moi en tō topō toutō) is from Exodus 3:12 rather than Genesis 15, where God tells Moses the people will worship 'on this mountain' (Sinai). Stephen may deliberately blur the reference so that 'this place' could mean Sinai, Canaan, or wherever God chooses to meet his people — supporting his argument that worship is not location-bound.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The 'covenant of circumcision' (diathēkēn peritomēs) refers to Genesis 17, where circumcision is the sign of the Abrahamic covenant. Stephen quickly traces the lineage from Abraham through Isaac and Jacob to the twelve patriarchs (tous dōdeka patriarchas) — the ancestors of Israel's twelve tribes. The rapid genealogical summary moves the narrative toward Joseph and Egypt.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Here Stephen introduces his central theme: Israel rejects its own deliverers. The patriarchs — the revered ancestors — acted out of jealousy (zēlōsantes, the same word used for the Sanhedrin's jealousy in 5:17) and sold their brother into slavery. Yet 'God was with him' (ēn ho theos met' autou) — divine presence follows the rejected one, not those who reject. The parallel to Jesus is unmistakable.
10. God rescues the rejected one and exalts him to authority — the Joseph pattern prefigures the Jesus pattern. The terms 'favor' (charin) and 'wisdom' (sophian) echo Stephen's own description in 6:8, 10. Joseph rules over the very nation where he was sold as a slave — divine reversal of human injustice.
11. The famine (limos) drives the plot: the brothers who sold Joseph are now dependent on him for survival. Stephen's phrase 'our fathers' (hoi pateres hēmōn) identifies himself with his audience — he is not attacking their heritage but interpreting it.
12. The word prōton ('first') sets up the pattern: the brothers go to Egypt twice. On the first visit, they do not recognize Joseph. Stephen emphasizes the two-visit structure because it parallels his argument about Jesus: rejected on the first encounter, recognized on the second.
13. The phrase en tō deuterō ('on the second') is emphatic. Stephen's point: the brothers rejected Joseph initially but recognized him on their second encounter. The implied parallel: Israel rejected Jesus on his first coming but will recognize him at his return. The pattern of initial rejection followed by recognition is the interpretive key to Stephen's entire speech.
14. Stephen gives the number as seventy-five (hebdomēkonta pente), following the Septuagint of Genesis 46:27 and Exodus 1:5, while the Hebrew text gives seventy. The difference likely reflects whether or not Joseph's descendants born in Egypt are included. Stephen follows the Greek textual tradition available to his Hellenistic audience.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 46:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 1:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Stephen moves quickly through the narrative. Jacob and the patriarchs die in Egypt, not in the promised land — again emphasizing that God's people spent their formative period as foreigners in a foreign land.
16. This verse conflates two Old Testament traditions: Abraham bought a burial site at Machpelah from the sons of Heth near Hebron (Genesis 23:3-16), and Jacob bought a plot at Shechem from the sons of Hamor (Genesis 33:19). Stephen appears to combine these transactions, attributing the Shechem purchase to Abraham. This may reflect a Jewish interpretive tradition unknown to us, or it may be a compressed retelling. We render the Greek as Stephen spoke it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 23:3-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 33:19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Stephen now transitions from the patriarchal era to the Exodus. The phrase 'the time of the promise' (ho chronos tēs epangelias) introduces the concept of divine timing — God works according to a predetermined schedule. The people's growth 'in Egypt' (en Aigyptō) fulfills the Abrahamic promise of numerous descendants, but in a foreign land under oppression.
18. Stephen quotes Exodus 1:8. The 'different king' (basileus heteros) who 'did not know Joseph' marks a political and social rupture. The word heteros ('another of a different kind') may suggest a change of dynasty. The loss of Joseph's memory leads directly to Israel's oppression.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 1:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

19. The verb *katasophisamenos* ('dealing shrewdly, exploiting by craft') implies calculated, cunning oppression. The forced exposure of infants (*ta brephē ektheta*, 'making the babies exposed/abandoned') was the standard method of infanticide in the ancient world — leaving newborns outside to die of exposure. Stephen's retelling emphasizes the brutality to heighten the drama of Moses' rescue.
20. The phrase *asteios tō theō* ('beautiful before God' or 'divinely beautiful') uses a dative of reference that intensifies the adjective — Moses was not merely attractive but superlatively so, beautiful in God's sight. This echoes Exodus 2:2 where his mother saw he was 'good' (*tov*). The phrase carries overtones of divine destiny.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 2:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The verb *aneilato* ('took up, adopted') is a technical term for picking up and claiming an exposed infant — in Roman and Egyptian practice, this constituted legal adoption. Moses is rescued from death by the oppressor's own daughter — a divine irony that Stephen highlights.
22. Stephen's portrayal of Moses trained in Egyptian wisdom is not from Exodus directly but from Jewish interpretive tradition (cf. Philo, *Life of Moses* 1.21-24). The description 'powerful in words and deeds' (*dynatos en logois kai ergois*) echoes the description of Jesus in Luke 24:19. Moses' competence was developed in a pagan environment — again, God works outside Israel's boundaries.
23. Stephen divides Moses' life into three forty-year periods (vv. 23, 30, 36): forty years in Egypt, forty years in Midian, forty years in the wilderness. This tripartite scheme comes from Jewish tradition rather than Exodus directly. The phrase *anebē epi tēn kardian autou* ('it came up into his heart') is a Hebraism suggesting an inner prompting, possibly divine.
24. Stephen portrays Moses' killing of the Egyptian (Exodus 2:11-12) positively — as defense of the oppressed (*ēmynato*, 'defended') and justice for the wronged (*epoiēsen ekdikēsin*, 'avenged'). This sets up the devastating irony of the next verse: Moses acts as deliverer, but his own people reject him.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 2:11-12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. This verse is not in Exodus — it is Stephen's theological interpretation. Moses expected recognition as God's deliverer, but 'they did not understand' (*hoi de ou synēkan*). This is the critical parallel to Jesus: God sent a deliverer, the deliverer expected recognition, and the people failed to understand. Stephen is building his case that Israel has a pattern of rejecting the very ones God sends to save them.
26. Moses tries to be a peacemaker among his own people. The word *synēllassen* ('reconciled, brought together') indicates an attempt at mediation. His appeal — 'you are brothers' (*adelphoi este*) — invokes shared identity as a basis for peace. But the appeal fails.
27. The verb *apōsato* ('pushed away, rejected, repudiated') is the key word — it will be reused in verse 39 about Israel's rejection of Moses in the wilderness. Stephen quotes Exodus 2:14. The question 'Who appointed you ruler and judge?' (*tis se katestēsen archonta kai dikastēn*) is a challenge to Moses' authority — the same kind of challenge the Sanhedrin makes against the apostles. The irony: God did appoint Moses, but the people refuse to recognize it.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 2:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The accusation forces Moses to flee. His attempt at deliverance is met not with gratitude but with hostility and exposure. Stephen's audience would recognize the parallel: those who should welcome God's deliverer instead threaten and accuse him.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 2:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. Moses becomes a *paroikos* ('foreigner, resident alien') in Midian — the same word used for Abraham's descendants in verse 6. The rejected deliverer lives in exile for forty years. Stephen's parallel: Jesus was rejected and has departed to heaven (3:21), but he will return.
30. The second forty-year period ends with theophany — but where? In the wilderness, far from any temple or sacred city. God appears at a random bush on a mountain in the desert. Stephen's geographical point is relentless: God's most important self-revelations happen in the least expected places.
31. Moses' curiosity draws him toward the divine presence. The verb *ethaumazen* ('was amazed, marveled') captures the initial wonder. Stephen's retelling follows Exodus 3:3-4, emphasizing the auditory encounter — 'the voice of the Lord' (*phōnē kyriou*) speaks from the bush.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:3-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
32. God identifies himself through the covenant lineage — the same formula used in Exodus 3:6. Moses' response is trembling (*entromos genomenos*) and aversion of his gaze. The God of the patriarchs speaks to Moses in Midian — covenantal identity transcends geography.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. This verse is devastating to Stephen's opponents' theology: 'holy ground' (*gē hagia*) is in the Midian wilderness, not in Jerusalem or at the temple. If God can make pagan desert soil holy by his presence, then holiness is not a property of places but of divine encounter. Stephen is dismantling the theological foundation for temple-exclusivism.

33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 3:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. Stephen quotes Exodus 3:7-8, 10. The phrase *idōn eidon* ('seeing I have seen,' a Hebraism for emphasis) conveys God's intense, compassionate attention to suffering. God both sees and acts — 'I have come down to rescue them' (*katebēn exelesthai autous*). And the instrument of rescue is Moses — the same Moses his brothers rejected in verses 27-28. God is about to send the rejected deliverer back.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 3:7-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. This is the rhetorical climax of the Moses section. Stephen uses the emphatic 'this Moses' (*touton ton Mousēn... touton*) with anaphoric repetition: the very one they rejected, that one God sent as ruler (*archonta*) and redeemer (*lytrōtēn*). The word *lytrōtēs* ('redeemer, deliverer') echoes the Hebrew *go'el* — the kinsman who rescues family. The parallel to Jesus is now unmistakable: the rejected one is the sent one.
36. Moses' ministry spans three geographical zones — Egypt, Red Sea, wilderness — none of which is the promised land. Stephen continues to emphasize that God's mighty acts occurred outside the land. The third forty-year period begins. The 'wonders and signs' (*terata kai sēmeia*) echo the description of Jesus's ministry (2:22) and the apostles' ministry (5:12).
37. Stephen quotes Deuteronomy 18:15, the same text Peter used in 3:22. The implication is clear: if Moses himself pointed to a future prophet like himself, then Moses' authority is not undermined by recognizing Jesus but fulfilled by it. Rejecting the prophet-like-Moses is rejecting Moses himself.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 18:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The word *ekklēsia* ('assembly, church') is used here for Israel's wilderness congregation — the same word used for the Christian community in 5:11. Moses stood as mediator between 'the angel who spoke at Sinai' and 'our fathers.' He received 'living oracles' (*logia zōnta*) — the Torah is described as alive, not dead tradition. Stephen is not anti-Torah; he honors Moses and the law even as he reinterprets them.
39. The verb *apōsanto* ('rejected, pushed away') is the same word used in verse 27 — the pattern repeats. Israel rejected Moses twice: first in Egypt (vv. 27-28), then in the wilderness (v. 39). 'In their hearts turned back to Egypt' (*estraphēsān en tais kardiais autōn eis Aigipton*) — they may have left Egypt physically, but their hearts remained enslaved to it. The accusation builds toward the climax.
40. Stephen quotes Exodus 32:1. The dismissive phrase 'this Moses' (*ho Mōysēs houtos*) on the people's lips contrasts with Stephen's reverent 'this Moses' (*houtos*) in verses 35-38. The demand for 'gods who will go before us' (*theous hoi proporeuontai hēmōn*) is a request for a visible, controllable deity — the opposite of the invisible, sovereign God who appeared in bush and cloud.
40. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 32:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
41. The verb *emoschopoiēsan* ('made a calf') is a single word describing the golden calf incident (Exodus 32:4). The phrase 'the works of their hands' (*tois ergois tōn cheirōn autōn*) is a standard Old Testament description of idols (Psalm 115:4, Isaiah 2:8). Stephen's point: at the very moment God gave the Torah through Moses, the people turned to handmade idols. The pattern of rejection includes idolatry.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 32:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 115:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 2:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. God's response to their idolatry is judicial abandonment — 'gave them over' (*paredōken autous*) to the consequences of their choices (cf. Romans 1:24, 26, 28). Stephen now quotes Amos 5:25-27 (LXX), a prophetic critique of Israel's worship. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no' — even during the wilderness period, Israel's worship was compromised by idolatry.
42. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 5:25-27. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
43. Stephen continues the Amos quotation. The Hebrew of Amos 5:26 has 'Sikkuth' and 'Kiyyun'; the LXX renders these as 'tent of Moloch' and 'Rephan' (*Raiphan*). Amos originally said 'beyond Damascus'; Stephen (following the LXX) says 'beyond Babylon' — an update that reflects the actual Babylonian exile. The point: Israel's history of idolatry led to exile. Stephen implies that rejecting Jesus may lead to a worse judgment.
43. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Amos 5:25-27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
44. Stephen now turns to the temple issue. He begins with the tabernacle (*skēnē tou martyriou*, 'tent of testimony/witness'), not the temple — the original place of God's dwelling with Israel was portable, not permanent. It was made 'according to the pattern' (*kata ton typon*) God showed Moses on Sinai (Exodus 25:40). The tabernacle's design was divine, but it traveled with the people rather than binding them to a location.

44. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 25:40. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
45. The Greek *Iēsou* here refers to Joshua (the Greek forms of 'Joshua' and 'Jesus' are identical). The tabernacle accompanied Israel through the conquest and the period of the judges — for centuries, the portable tabernacle was sufficient for God's presence among his people. Stephen's implicit argument: if the tabernacle served for over four hundred years, the temple is not essential.
46. The SBLGNT reads 'house of Jacob' (*oikō Iakōb*) rather than 'God of Jacob' — a textual variant with significant theological implications. If 'house of Jacob,' David sought a dwelling for God's people; if 'God of Jacob,' he sought a dwelling for God. Both readings are attested in ancient manuscripts. We follow the SBLGNT. David asked (*ētēsato*) but was not permitted to build — even the greatest king's request was redirected.
47. The sentence is terse and pointed. The adversative 'but' (*de*) sets up the contrast with what follows: Solomon built a house, but... The brevity is striking after the extended narration — Stephen moves quickly past the temple's construction because his argument is that the temple, however magnificent, cannot contain God.
48. This is the theological pivot of Stephen's entire speech. The word *cheiropoiētois* ('made by hands, handmade') is the same word used for idols in Isaiah 46:6 and Mark 14:58. Stephen does not call the temple an idol, but the vocabulary creates an unsettling association. Solomon himself acknowledged this truth at the temple's dedication: 'But will God indeed dwell on the earth? The heavens, even the highest heaven, cannot contain you, how much less this house I have built' (1 Kings 8:27).
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 46:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
48. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 8:27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
49. Stephen quotes Isaiah 66:1-2a. God's throne is heaven; his footstool is the entire earth. The rhetorical questions — 'what house?' and 'what resting place?' — expose the absurdity of thinking any building can house the Creator. Isaiah's own words undermine temple-centrism from within the prophetic canon.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 66:1-2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. The final line of the Isaiah quotation is devastatingly simple: God made everything — heaven, earth, and every material that could be used to build a temple. How can the creature house the Creator? Stephen's argument from Scripture is complete. Now he turns to direct accusation.
50. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 66:1-2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
51. Stephen's tone shifts abruptly from historical narration to prophetic indictment. 'Stiff-necked' (*sklērotracheloi*) echoes Exodus 33:3, 5 and Deuteronomy 9:6 — a charge God himself made against Israel. 'Uncircumcised in heart and ears' (*aperitmētoi kardiais kai tois ōsin*) quotes Jeremiah 6:10 and Ezekiel 44:7 — outward circumcision without inner transformation. The charge of 'always resisting the Holy Spirit' (*aei tō pneumati tō hagiō antipēte*) makes the accusation timeless: not just your fathers, but you too.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 33:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 9:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 6:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
51. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 44:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
52. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'none' — every prophet was persecuted. 'The Righteous One' (*tou dikaïou*) is a messianic title (cf. 3:14, Isaiah 53:11). The accusation escalates: your fathers persecuted prophets; you have become 'betrayers and murderers' (*prodotai kai phoneis*) of the Messiah himself. These are the most inflammatory words spoken in Acts.
52. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
53. The final charge is devastating: accused of speaking against the law (6:13), Stephen turns the accusation on his accusers — you received the law and did not keep it (*ouk ephylaxate*). The reference to angels delivering the law (*eis diatagas angelōn*) reflects Jewish tradition that angels mediated the Sinai covenant (cf. Galatians 3:19, Hebrews 2:2, Deuteronomy 33:2 LXX). Stephen's defense is now complete: he has not blasphemed the law; they have broken it.
53. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 33:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

54. The verb *dieprionto* ('were cut through, were sawn') is the same word used in 5:33 — visceral, uncontrolled rage. 'Ground their teeth' (*ebrychon tous odontas*) is an expression of furious hostility, used in the Psalms for enemies of the righteous (Psalm 35:16, 37:12). The council has become a mob.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 35:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
55. While the council rages, Stephen sees a vision. The phrase 'full of the Holy Spirit' (*plērēs pneumatōs hagiou*) echoes 6:5 — the Spirit fills him in his final hour. He sees 'the glory of God' (*doxan theou*) — the *kavod*, the weighty divine presence. Uniquely, Jesus is described as 'standing' (*hestōta*) at God's right hand, not sitting (as in Psalm 110:1 and elsewhere). Interpreters debate whether Jesus stands to receive Stephen, to testify on his behalf, or to vindicate him.
55. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
56. Stephen announces his vision publicly. The title 'Son of Man' (*ton huion tou anthrōpou*) echoes Daniel 7:13-14 and Jesus's own self-designation. This is the only time in the New Testament that someone other than Jesus uses this title. The 'opened heavens' (*tous ouranous diēnoigmenous*) recall Jesus's baptism (Luke 3:21) and Ezekiel's vision (Ezekiel 1:1). For the Sanhedrin, this claim is the ultimate provocation — it confirms Jesus's own claim before this same body (Luke 22:69).
56. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:13-14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
56. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
57. The council's reaction is primal: screaming (*kraxantes phōnē megalē*), covering their ears (*syneschon ta ōta autōn*) — the physical refusal to hear what the 'uncircumcised in ears' (v. 51) cannot bear — and a collective rush (*hōrmēsan homothymadon*). The word *homothymadon* ('with one accord') is grimly ironic: the same word Luke uses for the church's beautiful unity (1:14, 2:46) now describes a mob's unified violence.
58. The stoning takes place outside the city (*exō tēs poleōs*), following the Levitical requirement (Leviticus 24:14). Jesus was also executed outside the city (Hebrews 13:12). The 'witnesses' (*martyres*) are those who testified against Stephen — Jewish law required accusers to cast the first stones (Deuteronomy 17:7). They remove their outer garments for freedom of movement and place them at the feet of Saul — this is Luke's introduction of the man who will dominate the second half of Acts. Saul's role as garment-guardian indicates approval and likely active participation in the proceedings.
58. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 24:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
58. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 17:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
59. Stephen's dying prayer is addressed to Jesus (*kyrie Iēsou*), not to God the Father — a remarkable expression of early Christian devotion to Jesus as Lord. The prayer 'receive my spirit' (*dexai to pneuma mou*) echoes Jesus's own final words in Luke 23:46 ('Father, into your hands I commit my spirit,' quoting Psalm 31:5), but Stephen directs his prayer to Jesus rather than the Father.
59. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 31:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
60. Stephen's second dying prayer parallels Jesus's prayer on the cross: 'Father, forgive them' (Luke 23:34). The phrase *mē stēsēs autois* ('do not set against them, do not charge to their account') uses accounting language — do not record this sin in their ledger. Kneeling under a hail of stones to pray for his killers is the ultimate expression of the Christ-like life.
60. The euphemism 'fell asleep' (*ekoimēthē*) is the early Christian term for death (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:13-14). It implies the expectation of resurrection — sleep is temporary. Among those for whom Stephen prayed was Saul, who would become the greatest apostle. Augustine later wrote: 'If Stephen had not prayed, the church would not have had Paul.'

8

Summary: Acts 8 narrates the aftermath of Stephen's martyrdom. A great persecution scatters the church beyond Jerusalem, fulfilling Jesus's commission to Judea and Samaria (1:8). Saul leads the persecution. Philip, one of the Seven, preaches in Samaria with great success, performing signs and exorcisms. Simon the magician believes and is baptized but later attempts to purchase apostolic power with money, earning Peter's sharp rebuke. The chapter concludes with Philip's encounter with an Ethiopian official who is reading Isaiah 53 on the road from Jerusalem to Gaza. Philip explains the passage, baptizes the Ethiopian, and is then transported by the Spirit to Azotus.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The scattering of the church becomes the mechanism of its expansion — persecution intended to destroy the movement instead propagates it. The Samaritan mission is theologically significant: Samaritans were considered half-pagans by Jews, and the gospel's acceptance there breaks the first ethnic barrier. Simon Magus becomes a symbol of spiritual corruption (the term 'simony' derives from his attempt). The Ethiopian eunuch represents multiple boundary-crossings: he is African, a eunuch (excluded from the assembly per Deuteronomy 23:1), and a Gentile God-fearer — yet he receives the gospel without conditions.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between water baptism, the laying on of hands, and receiving the Holy Spirit is complex in this chapter. The Samaritans believe and are baptized but do not receive the Spirit until Peter and John come (vv. 15-17) — a sequence that does not match Pentecost or later conversion accounts. Various theological traditions interpret this differently. The sudden transportation of Philip (v. 39) is one of the most unusual supernatural events in Acts. Verse 37 is absent from the earliest manuscripts and the SBLGNT; we follow the critical text and omit it.*

Connections: *The persecution fulfills Jesus's pattern in 1:8 (Jerusalem Judea and Samaria). Philip's Samaritan mission connects to Jesus's own engagement with Samaritans (Luke 9:52, 10:30-37, 17:11-19, John 4). The Ethiopian reading Isaiah 53 connects to the Suffering Servant theology of 3:13, 26. Philip's transport by the Spirit echoes Elijah's experiences (1 Kings 18:12, 2 Kings 2:16). The Ethiopian's conversion anticipates the full Gentile mission.*

¹Now Saul was in full agreement with Stephen's execution. On that day a great persecution broke out against the church in Jerusalem, and all except the apostles were scattered throughout the regions of Judea and Samaria. ²Devout men buried Stephen and mourned deeply over him. ³But Saul was ravaging the church. Going from house to house, he dragged off both men and women and had them thrown into prison. ⁴Now those who were scattered went about proclaiming the good news of the word. ⁵Philip went down to a city in Samaria and began proclaiming the Christ to them. ⁶The crowds paid close attention with one mind to what Philip was saying, as they heard and saw the signs he was performing. ⁷For unclean spirits came out of many who had them, screaming with a loud voice, and many who were paralyzed or lame were healed. ⁸There was remarkable joy in that city. ⁹Now a man named Simon had previously practiced sorcery in the city and had amazed the people of Samaria, claiming to be someone great. ¹⁰Everyone, from the least to the greatest, paid attention to him, saying, "This man is the power of God called 'the Great Power.'" ¹¹They paid attention to him because for a long time he had amazed them with his sorcery. ¹²But when they believed Philip as he proclaimed the good news about the kingdom of God and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women. ¹³Even Simon himself believed and was baptized. He stayed close to Philip, and when he saw the signs and great miracles being performed, he was amazed. ¹⁴When the apostles in Jerusalem heard that Samaria had received the word of God, they sent Peter and John to them. ¹⁵When they arrived, they prayed for them that they might receive the Holy Spirit, ¹⁶For as yet he was fallen upon none of them — only they were baptized by the authority of the Lord Jesus.). ¹⁷Then they laid their hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit. ¹⁸When Simon saw that the Spirit was given through the laying on of the apostles' hands, he offered them money, ¹⁹Declaring, Give me also this authority, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may accept the Holy Ghost. ²⁰But Peter said to him, "May your silver perish with you, because you thought you could acquire the gift of God with money! ²¹You have no part or share in this matter, for your heart is not right before God. ²²Repent therefore of this wickedness of yours, and pray to the Lord that, if possible, the intent of your heart may be forgiven you. ²³For I see that you are full of bitter poison and bound by wickedness." ²⁴Simon answered, "Pray to the Lord for me yourselves, so that nothing of what you have said may come upon me." ²⁵After they had testified and spoken the word of the Lord, they returned to Jerusalem, proclaiming the good news in many Samaritan villages along the way. ²⁶An angel of the Lord said to Philip, "Get up and go south to the road that goes down from Jerusalem to Gaza." (This is a desert road.) ²⁷So he got up and went. And there was an Ethiopian man, a eunuch, a court official of Candace, queen of the Ethiopians, who was in charge of all her treasury. He had come to Jerusalem to worship ²⁸Indeed, was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Esaias the prophet of old. ²⁹The Spirit said to Philip, "Go over and join that chariot." ³⁰Philip ran up and heard him reading Isaiah the prophet and said, "Do you understand what you are reading?" ³¹He said, "How could I, unless someone guides me?" And he invited Philip to come up and sit with him. ³²Now the passage of Scripture he was reading was this: "Like a sheep he was led to the slaughter, and like a lamb silent before

its shearer, so he does not open his mouth. ³³In his humiliation justice was denied him. Who can describe his generation? For his life is taken from the earth." ³⁴The eunuch said to Philip, "I ask you, about whom does the prophet say this — about himself or about someone else?" ³⁵Then Philip opened his mouth and, beginning from this Scripture, proclaimed the good news about Jesus to him. ³⁶As they were going along the road, they came to some water, and the eunuch said, "Look, here is water! What prevents me from being baptized?" ³⁸He ordered the chariot to stop, and they both went down into the water — Philip and the eunuch — and Philip baptized him. ³⁹When they came up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord carried Philip away, and the eunuch did not see him again but went on his way rejoicing. ⁴⁰But Philip found himself at Azotus, and as he passed through, he proclaimed the good news in all the towns until he came to Caesarea.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The participle *syneuddokōn* ('approving, consenting, being in full agreement') is stronger than passive tolerance — Saul actively endorsed Stephen's death. The word *diōgmos* ('persecution') is intensified by *meas* ('great'). The verb *diesparēsan* ('were scattered') uses agricultural imagery — scattering seed — and Luke may intend the irony: persecution scatters the believers like seed, producing a wider harvest. The apostles alone remain in Jerusalem, perhaps because their public profile made them targets who needed to stand their ground, or because they refused to abandon the Jerusalem base.
2. The word *eulabeis* ('devout, reverent') may refer to pious Jews rather than Christians — burying the dead was a sacred duty, and even opponents of Stephen might have ensured proper burial. The 'great lamentation' (*kopeton megan*) defied the rabbinic rule that prohibited public mourning for those executed by the court (Mishnah Sanhedrin 6:6), suggesting these mourners considered Stephen's death unjust.
3. The verb *elymaineto* ('was ravaging, was destroying, was laying waste to') is used in the LXX for a wild boar devastating a vineyard (Psalm 80:13). Saul's persecution is systematic — house by house (*kata tous oikous*) — and indiscriminate in targeting both men and women (*andras kai gynaiikas*). The verb *syron* ('dragging') implies physical violence. This is the man who will become Paul.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 80:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The scattered believers do not go into hiding — they go preaching. The verb *euangelizomenoi* ('proclaiming good news') indicates that mission is not the exclusive work of apostles but the activity of ordinary believers. Persecution accomplishes exactly the opposite of its intention: instead of silencing the message, it multiplies the messengers.
5. This is Philip the evangelist (one of the Seven from 6:5), not Philip the apostle. Some manuscripts read 'the city' (*tēn polin*, a specific city, possibly Sebaste/Samaria or Shechem/Sychar) while others read 'a city' — we follow the reading that treats it as a specific city. The Samaritan mission is momentous: Samaritans worshiped YHWH but rejected the Jerusalem temple in favor of Mount Gerizim, making them the first non-Jewish audience for the gospel.
6. The Samaritan response is positive and unified — *homothymadon* ('with one mind') describes the same kind of communal agreement that characterized the Jerusalem church (1:14, 2:46). The combination of hearing the message and seeing the signs creates a complete witness — word and deed together, as in Jesus's own ministry.
7. The signs parallel those of Jesus and the apostles: exorcisms and physical healings. The unclean spirits (*pneumata akatharta*) cry out as they depart — as they did when confronted by Jesus (Luke 4:33-35). The two categories of healing — paralyzed (*parelumenoi*) and lame (*chōloi*) — echo Isaiah 35:5-6, the prophetic description of messianic restoration.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 35:5-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The phrase 'great joy' (*pollē chara*) characterizes the gospel's arrival in new territory throughout Acts (cf. 13:52, 15:3). Joy is the consistent fruit of the gospel wherever it is received.
9. Simon Magus becomes one of the most discussed figures in early Christianity — later tradition (especially the Church Fathers) identified him as the founder of Gnosticism. The verb *mageuōn* ('practicing sorcery/magic') places him in the tradition of pagan magical practice. His self-aggrandizement — 'claiming to be someone great' (*legōn einai tina heauton megan*) — echoes the description of Theudas in 5:36. The contrast between Simon's magic and Philip's signs will be a key theme.
10. The title 'the Great Power of God' (*hē dynamis tou theou hē kaloumenē megalē*) appears to be a Samaritan religious title, possibly related to Samaritan theology's emphasis on divine power. The phrase 'from the least to the greatest' (*apo mikrou heōs megalou*) indicates Simon's universal influence across all social levels.
11. The phrase *hikanō chronō* ('for a long time, for a considerable period') indicates Simon's established influence — this was not a recent phenomenon. The verb *exestakenai* ('had amazed, had astonished') suggests a hold over the people through supernatural display. Philip's ministry will break this hold.

12. Philip's message has two components: 'the kingdom of God' (tēs basileias tou theou) and 'the name of Jesus Christ' (tou onomatos Iēsou Christou). The kingdom message connects to Jesus's own preaching; the name of Jesus identifies the king. Both men and women are baptized — gender equality in baptism is consistently noted in Acts.
13. Simon's belief (episteusen) and baptism raise the question of whether his faith was genuine. His subsequent behavior (vv. 18-24) suggests his attraction was to the power rather than to the person of Christ. The verb existato ('was amazed') — the same word used for the crowds' response to Simon (v. 9, 11) — now describes Simon himself. The sorcerer is out-astonished by genuine divine power.
14. The apostles' dispatch of Peter and John serves to validate the Samaritan mission and to ensure continuity with the Jerusalem church. That 'Samaria had received the word of God' (dedektai hē Samareia ton logon tou theou) is a landmark statement — the ancient enmity between Jews and Samaritans is being overcome by the gospel.
15. Peter and John pray specifically for the Samaritan believers to receive the Holy Spirit — indicating that the Spirit had not yet been given to them. This raises theological questions: were they truly converted without the Spirit? Various traditions explain this differently. Luke may be emphasizing that the Samaritan church needed apostolic validation to prevent a schism between Jewish and Samaritan Christianity.
16. Luke describes the Spirit as having 'fallen' (epeptōkos) — a dramatic term suggesting a sudden, powerful descent (cf. 10:44, 11:15). The word 'only' (monon) does not diminish baptism but distinguishes it from the Spirit's empowering presence. The Samaritan situation is unique in Acts and may reflect special circumstances rather than a normative sequence.
17. The laying on of hands (epitithēsan tas cheiras) conveys the Spirit — the physical gesture accompanies the spiritual gift. The reception of the Spirit is described without specifying its outward manifestation, though verse 18 implies something visible occurred that Simon could observe.
18. Simon 'saw' (idōn) something — the Spirit's reception had visible manifestations. His response reveals his fundamental misunderstanding: he treats the Spirit's power as a commodity that can be purchased, like a magical technique. The verb prosēnenken ('offered, brought forward') implies a formal business transaction. The word chrēmata ('money') derives from chraomai ('to use') — Simon sees the Spirit as a useful tool.
19. Simon wants the exousian ('authority, power, right') to confer the Spirit — he seeks control over the distribution of divine power. This is the fundamental error: the Spirit is God's gift, not a human transaction. The term 'simony' — the buying or selling of spiritual offices or privileges — derives from this episode.
20. Peter's response is fierce: 'may your silver perish with you' (to argyriou sou syn soi eiē eis apōleian) is a conditional curse — may your money go to destruction, and you with it. The key theological principle: the gift of God (tēn dōrean tou theou) is exactly that — a gift (dōrea). It cannot be purchased (ktasthai, 'to acquire, to possess'). This verse draws a permanent line between God's grace and human commerce.
21. The phrase 'no part or share' (meris oude klēros) echoes the language of inheritance in Israel — Simon has no portion in the kingdom. The diagnosis is cardiovascular: 'your heart is not right' (hē kardia sou ouk estin eutheia, literally 'not straight') before God. The problem is not the outward act but the inward orientation.
22. Peter offers repentance as a possibility, not a certainty — the phrase 'if possible' (ei ara) introduces genuine uncertainty about whether forgiveness is available for this particular sin. The word epinoia ('intent, thought, scheme') suggests a calculated plan, not a momentary impulse. Peter calls him to repent and pray, leaving the outcome to God.
23. Peter's diagnosis echoes Deuteronomy 29:18 (LXX), where Moses warns against 'a root bearing poisonous and bitter fruit' among the covenant people. The phrase 'gall of bitterness' (cholēn pikrias) and 'bond of iniquity' (syndesmon adikias) describe both Simon's internal condition (bitter poison) and his external bondage (chained by sin). Peter sees through Simon's profession of faith to the corruption beneath.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 29:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Simon's response is ambiguous — he asks for prayer but does not repent himself. He asks Peter and John to pray for him rather than praying directly, and his concern is avoiding punishment rather than seeking transformation. Luke leaves Simon's fate unresolved; later patristic tradition (especially Irenaeus and Justin Martyr) developed extensive accounts of Simon as the arch-heretic.
25. Peter and John expand the Samaritan mission on their return journey — they do not merely validate Philip's work but extend it. The phrase 'many villages of the Samaritans' (pollas kōmas tōn Samaritōn) shows the gospel spreading throughout the region, not limited to a single city. The Jewish apostles are now evangelizing Samaritans — a remarkable transformation from the attitudes described in Luke 9:52-54.
26. The divine direction shifts Philip from a successful urban ministry in Samaria to a deserted highway — God's priorities do not always match human expectations. The phrase kata mesēmbrian can mean 'toward the south' or 'at midday'; we follow the directional sense. The parenthetical 'this is desert' (hautē estin erēmos) may describe the road or the city of Gaza itself, which had been destroyed and rebuilt.
27. The Ethiopian eunuch represents multiple boundary-crossings. He is African (from the kingdom of Meroe, modern Sudan), a eunuch (castrated court officials served as trusted treasury administrators), and a God-fearer (he came to Jerusalem to worship but as a eunuch could not fully convert to Judaism per Deuteronomy 23:1). 'Candace' (Kandakēs) is not a personal name but the title of the queen mother who wielded executive power in the Meroitic kingdom, similar to 'Pharaoh' or 'Caesar.' His high position as treasurer (epi pasēs tēs gazēs, 'over all her treasury') indicates great authority and trust.

27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 23:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The eunuch reads Isaiah aloud (ancient practice was to read aloud even when alone). His choice of Isaiah is significant — Isaiah 56:3-5 specifically promises eunuchs a place in God's house: 'I will give in my house and within my walls a monument and a name better than sons and daughters.' The eunuch's reading is a search for inclusion.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 56:3-5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. Now it is the Spirit (to pneuma) rather than the angel (v. 26) who directs Philip. The command kollēthēti ('join yourself to, attach yourself to, stay close to') suggests walking alongside the slowly moving chariot. Divine orchestration brings the right messenger to the right seeker at the right moment.
30. Philip runs (prosdramōn) — urgency marks Spirit-directed encounters. His question creates a Greek wordplay: ginōskeis ha anaginōskeis ('do you know what you are reading?' — ginōskō and anaginōskō share the root gnō-). The question is not condescending but opens the door for dialogue.
31. The eunuch's response is humble and eager — he recognizes his need for interpretation and welcomes a guide (hodēgēsei, 'will lead along the way'). The verb parekalesen ('invited, urged, encouraged') shows genuine desire for understanding. He invites Philip into his chariot — a foreigner climbing into a court official's chariot represents the breaking of social barriers.
32. The eunuch is reading Isaiah 53:7-8 (LXX), the heart of the Suffering Servant passage. The image of a lamb led to slaughter in silence is the defining portrait of redemptive suffering in the Old Testament. That this particular passage is what the eunuch happened to be reading when Philip arrived is presented as divine providence.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The LXX of Isaiah 53:8 differs from the Hebrew in some details. 'In his humiliation his justice was taken away' (en tē tapeinōsei hē krisis autou ērthē) — the Servant was denied a fair trial. 'Who can describe his generation?' (tēn genean autou tis diēgēsetai) is ambiguous: it could refer to his descendants (he died without offspring), his lifespan (cut short), or the wickedness of his contemporaries. 'His life is taken from the earth' — a statement of violent death.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:7-8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. The eunuch's question reflects genuine scholarly inquiry — who is the Suffering Servant? Jewish interpretation offered multiple answers: the prophet himself (Isaiah), the nation of Israel collectively, a future messiah, or a specific historical figure. The eunuch's question is the right question, and Philip is about to give the Christian answer.
35. The phrase 'opened his mouth' (anoixas to stoma autou) is a solemn introduction to important speech (cf. Matthew 5:2). Philip begins with the text the eunuch is reading and moves from there to Jesus — arxamenos apo tēs graphēs tautēs ('beginning from this Scripture'). The method is christological interpretation of the Old Testament: Isaiah 53 finds its fulfillment in Jesus. Luke does not record the content of Philip's explanation, but the result (v. 36) shows that it included instruction about baptism.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 53 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The eunuch's question 'What prevents me?' (ti kōlyei me) is deeply poignant. As a eunuch, he had been prevented from full participation in Israel's worship (Deuteronomy 23:1). His whole life has been defined by barriers. Now he asks whether there is a barrier to baptism — and the answer is no. The gospel removes the exclusions that the old covenant imposed. Finding water on a 'desert road' (v. 26) adds to the sense of divine provision.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 23:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
38. Note: Verse 37 is absent from the SBLGNT and the earliest manuscripts. It appears in later manuscripts as the eunuch's confession of faith ('I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God') and was likely added by scribes who felt the baptism needed an explicit confession. We follow the critical text and omit it.
38. Both Philip and the eunuch go 'down into the water' (katebēsan amphoteroi eis to hydōr), suggesting immersion rather than sprinkling, though the text does not specify the precise method. The baptism of a eunuch — someone excluded from the assembly of Israel — is a powerful statement of the gospel's inclusive scope.
39. The verb hērpasen ('snatched away, carried off, caught up') describes a sudden, supernatural transportation — the same word used for Paul's rapture to the third heaven (2 Corinthians 12:2) and the catching up of the church (1 Thessalonians 4:17). The Spirit literally relocates Philip. The eunuch's response is joy (chairōn) — the characteristic mark of genuine conversion in Acts. He continues his journey to Ethiopia, presumably carrying the gospel with him. Church tradition credits him with founding the Ethiopian church.
40. Azotus (the Greek name for the old Philistine city of Ashdod) is on the Mediterranean coast, about 20 miles north of Gaza. Philip evangelizes along the coastal plain northward to Caesarea, the major Roman administrative center, where he apparently settles (cf. 21:8, where Paul visits 'Philip the evangelist' in Caesarea). The gospel now has a foothold on the coast, opening a corridor from Jerusalem to the wider Mediterranean world.

9

Summary: *Acts 9 narrates the dramatic conversion of Saul of Tarsus on the road to Damascus. While traveling with letters authorizing him to arrest Christians, Saul is confronted by a blinding light and the voice of the risen Jesus: 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?' Blinded for three days, Saul is visited by Ananias of Damascus, who restores his sight, baptizes him, and conveys God's commission. Saul immediately begins preaching Jesus as the Son of God in Damascus synagogues. After escaping a murder plot in Damascus, Saul goes to Jerusalem where Barnabas vouches for him to the apostles. The chapter then describes Peter's ministry in Lydda and Joppa, including the healing of Aeneas (paralyzed for eight years) and the raising of Tabitha (Dorcas) from the dead. Peter stays in Joppa with Simon the tanner, setting the stage for the Cornelius episode in chapter 10.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Saul's conversion is the pivotal event in Acts and is narrated three times (here, 22:3-21, 26:9-23), reflecting its importance. The identification of Jesus with his persecuted church — 'why are you persecuting me?' — is a profound christological statement: to persecute the church is to persecute Christ himself. Ananias's reluctance and God's response reveal Jesus's plan for Saul: 'he is a chosen instrument of mine to carry my name before the Gentiles and kings and the sons of Israel.' The raising of Tabitha parallels Elijah's raising of the widow's son and Jesus's raising of Jairus's daughter.*

Translation Friction: *The three accounts of Saul's conversion differ in details: whether companions heard the voice (9:7 vs. 22:9), whether they saw the light, and whether Saul received his commission directly or through Ananias. These variations likely reflect the different rhetorical settings of each retelling rather than contradictions. Peter's lodging with 'Simon the tanner' (v. 43) is notable because tanning was considered an unclean occupation in Jewish law — Peter is already relaxing purity boundaries before the Cornelius vision.*

Connections: *Saul's conversion fulfills Jesus's statement to Ananias about suffering for his name (v. 16), which will play out through the rest of Acts. The Damascus road experience connects to prophetic call narratives (Isaiah 6, Jeremiah 1, Ezekiel 1-3). Peter's miracles in Lydda and Joppa mirror Jesus's miracles and demonstrate that the apostolic mission continues Jesus's work. The tanner's house in Joppa prepares for the vision of clean and unclean animals in 10:9-16.*

¹Meanwhile Saul, still breathing threats and murder against the disciples of the Lord, went to the high priest ²He asked for letters addressed to the synagogues in Damascus, so that if he found anyone who belonged to the Way — whether men or women — he could arrest them and bring them back to Jerusalem. ³As he was traveling and approaching Damascus, suddenly a light from heaven flashed around him. ⁴He fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to him, "Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?" ⁵He said, "Who are you, Lord?" And he replied, "I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting. ⁶But get up and enter the city, and you will be told what you must do." ⁷The men traveling with him stood speechless, hearing the sound but seeing no one. ⁸Saul got up from the ground, and although his eyes were open, he could see nothing. So they led him by the hand and brought him into Damascus. ⁹For three days he was without sight, and he neither ate nor drank. ¹⁰Now there was a disciple in Damascus named Ananias. The Lord said to him in a vision, "Ananias." He said, "Here I am, Lord." ¹¹The Lord said to him, "Get up and go to the street called Straight, and at the house of Judas look for a man from Tarsus named Saul, for he is praying. ¹²He has seen in a vision a man named Ananias come in and lay his hands on him so that he might regain his sight." ¹³But Ananias answered, "Lord, I have heard from many about this man — how much harm he has done to your saints in Jerusalem. ¹⁴And here he has authority from the chief priests to arrest all who call on your name." ¹⁵But the Lord said to him, "Go, for he is a chosen instrument of mine to carry my name before Gentiles and kings and the sons of Israel. ¹⁶For I will show him how much he must suffer for the sake of my name." ¹⁷So Ananias departed and entered the house. Laying his hands on him, he said, "Brother Saul, the Lord Jesus, who appeared to you on the road by which you came, has sent me so that you may regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." ¹⁸Immediately something like scales fell from his eyes, and he regained his sight. Then he got up and was baptized. ¹⁹Following he had received meat, he was strengthened. Then was Saul certain days with the followers which were at Damascus. ²⁰And immediately he began

proclaiming Jesus in the synagogues, saying, "He is the Son of God." ²¹All who heard him were astonished and said, "Is this not the man who destroyed those in Jerusalem who called on this name? And did he not come here for the very purpose of bringing them bound before the chief priests?" ²²But Saul kept growing stronger and was confounding the Jews who lived in Damascus by proving that Jesus is the Christ. ²³When many days had passed, the Jews plotted to kill him. ²⁴But their plot became known to Saul. They were also watching the gates day and night in order to kill him. ²⁵But his disciples took him at night and lowered him through an opening in the wall, letting him down in a large basket. ²⁶When he arrived in Jerusalem, he tried to join the disciples, but they were all afraid of him, not believing that he was a disciple. ²⁷But Barnabas took him, brought him to the apostles, and described to them how on the road Saul had seen the Lord and that the Lord had spoken to him, and how in Damascus he had spoken boldly in the name of Jesus. ²⁸So he went in and out among them in Jerusalem, speaking boldly in the name of the Lord. ²⁹He spoke and debated with the Hellenists, but they were trying to kill him. ³⁰When the brothers learned of this, they brought him down to Caesarea and sent him off to Tarsus. ³¹So the church throughout all Judea and Galilee and Samaria had peace and was being built up. Walking in the fear of the Lord and in the encouragement of the Holy Spirit, it increased in numbers. ³²As Peter was traveling through all the region, he came down also to the saints living in Lydda. ³³There he found a man named Aeneas, bedridden for eight years, who was paralyzed. ³⁴Peter said to him, "Aeneas, Jesus Christ heals you. Get up and make your bed." And immediately he got up. ³⁵All the residents of Lydda and the Sharon Plain saw him and turned to the Lord. ³⁶In Joppa there was a disciple named Tabitha, which is translated Dorcas. She was full of good works and acts of charity. ³⁷In those days she became ill and died. After washing her body, they laid her in an upper room. ³⁸Since Lydda was near Joppa, the disciples, hearing that Peter was there, sent two men to him with the urgent request, "Please come to us without delay." ³⁹So Peter rose and went with them. When he arrived, they took him to the upper room, and all the widows stood beside him weeping and showing him the tunics and garments that Dorcas had made while she was with them. ⁴⁰But Peter sent them all out, knelt down, and prayed. Then turning to the body he said, "Tabitha, arise." She opened her eyes, and when she saw Peter, she sat up. ⁴¹He gave her his hand and raised her up. Then calling the saints and the widows, he presented her alive. ⁴²This became known throughout all Joppa, and many believed in the Lord. ⁴³He stayed in Joppa for many days with a man named Simon, a tanner.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The participle *empneōn* ('breathing') creates a vivid image: Saul exhaled threats as naturally as he exhaled air — persecution was his very breath. The combination 'threats and murder' (*apeilēs kai phonou*) intensifies from words to actions. The present participle indicates ongoing, habitual activity. The phrase 'disciples of the Lord' (*tous mathētas tou kyriou*) is the first use of 'disciples' since chapter 6, now describing the broader Christian community.
2. The 'letters' (epistolās) from the high priest would authorize Saul to act with Sanhedrin authority in the Damascus synagogues. The term 'the Way' (*tēs hodou*) is the earliest designation for the Christian movement in Acts (cf. 19:9, 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22) — it identifies Christianity as a path or way of life, possibly echoing Isaiah 40:3 ('prepare the way of the Lord'). Damascus had a significant Jewish population and was within the traditional boundaries of the land of Israel as understood by some authorities, justifying Jerusalem's jurisdictional claim.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 40:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The adverb *exaiphnēs* ('suddenly') marks the divine irruption — there is no preparation, no gradual awareness. The light (*phōs ek tou ouranou*) comes 'from heaven,' establishing its divine origin. The verb *periēstrapsen* ('flashed around') describes light enveloping Saul from every direction. In 26:13, Paul will specify it was brighter than the midday sun. The theophanic light recalls Moses at the burning bush and Ezekiel's vision of divine glory.
4. The double address 'Saul, Saul' (Saoul Saoul) uses the Hebrew/Aramaic form of the name (not the Greek Saulos), echoing divine addresses in the Old Testament: 'Abraham, Abraham' (Genesis 22:11), 'Moses, Moses' (Exodus 3:4), 'Samuel, Samuel' (1 Samuel 3:10). The question 'why are you persecuting me?' (*ti me diōkeis*) contains the explosive identification: Jesus is so united with his church that persecuting believers is persecuting him personally. This is not metaphor — it is christological reality.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 22:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 3:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 3:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

5. Saul's question 'Who are you, Lord?' (tis ei, kyrie) uses kyrie, which could mean simply 'sir' at this point — Saul does not yet know who speaks. The response 'I am Jesus' (egō eimi Iēsous) is devastating: the one Saul believed was a dead false messiah is alive and speaking from heaven. The addition 'whom you are persecuting' (hon sy diōkeis) repeats the identification from verse 4. The SBLGNT does not include 'it is hard for you to kick against the goads,' which appears in later manuscripts and in Paul's retelling in 26:14.
6. The SBLGNT omits the initial question 'Lord, what do you want me to do?' which appears in later manuscripts. Jesus's command is simple: go to the city and wait. The phrase ho ti se dei poiein ('what you must do') uses the divine necessity verb dei — Saul's future is determined by God's plan, not his own.
7. The companions hear the 'sound' (phōnēs) but see no one. In 22:9, Paul says they saw the light but 'did not hear the voice of the one speaking to me.' The apparent discrepancy likely reflects the difference between hearing a sound and understanding speech — they perceived noise but not articulate words. The adjective enei ('speechless') captures their stunned inability to respond.
8. The man who set out to Damascus with authority and purpose arrives blind and dependent. The irony is profound: the one who could not 'see' who Jesus was now literally cannot see. His eyes are open (aneōgmenōn tōn ophthalmōn) but perceive nothing — a physical condition mirroring his previous spiritual state. Being led by the hand (cheiragōgountes) reduces the powerful persecutor to the helplessness of a child.
9. The three days of blindness and fasting echo death and burial — Saul's old life as persecutor is dying. The three-day period recalls Jonah's three days in the fish and, most significantly, Jesus's three days in the tomb. Saul's emergence from this period will be a kind of resurrection.
10. Ananias is simply called a 'disciple' (mathētēs) — an ordinary believer, not an apostle or leader. The vision dialogue follows the pattern of Old Testament call narratives: God calls by name, the person responds 'Here I am' (idou egō, echoing Abraham in Genesis 22:1, Moses in Exodus 3:4, Samuel in 1 Samuel 3:4). This Ananias should be distinguished from the Ananias of chapter 5 and the high priest Ananias of chapter 23.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 22:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 3:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The 'street called Straight' (tēn rhymēn tēn kaloumenēn Eutheian) is likely the main east-west thoroughfare of Damascus, still identifiable today. The specific address — Judas's house on Straight Street — gives the narrative historical particularity. The note 'for he is praying' (idou gar proseuchetai) signals Saul's transformation: the persecutor is now a petitioner. God orchestrates a double vision: Saul prays and sees Ananias coming; Ananias receives instructions to go.
12. Saul's vision of Ananias arriving is a confirming vision — when Ananias actually appears, Saul will know this is from God. The divine coordination of the two visions (Ananias's in v. 10, Saul's in v. 12) mirrors the coordination in the Cornelius-Peter narrative (10:3-6, 10:9-16). God prepares both parties for the encounter.
13. Ananias's protest is understandable — he is being asked to visit the most dangerous man in the world for a Damascus Christian. His intelligence about Saul is accurate: 'how much harm he has done to your saints' (hosa kaka tois hagiois sou epoiēsen). The word hagiois ('saints, holy ones') is used here for the first time in Acts for believers — those set apart for God. Ananias's reluctance adds dramatic tension and makes his eventual obedience all the more commendable.
14. Ananias knows Saul's mission: arrest 'all who call on your name' (pantas tous epikaloumenous to onoma sou). The phrase 'calling on the name' echoes Joel 2:32 quoted in 2:21 — the very act of salvation (calling on the Lord's name) is the crime Saul has come to punish. The irony deepens: Saul will soon be calling on that name himself.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:32. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Lord overrides Ananias's objection with a revelation of Saul's destiny. The phrase 'chosen instrument' (skeuos eklogēs, literally 'vessel of election/choice') presents Saul as a container selected by God for a specific purpose. His mission has three audiences: Gentiles (ethnōn), kings (basileōn), and the sons of Israel (huiōn Israēl) — all three will be fulfilled in Acts. The order is significant: Gentiles first, reflecting Paul's primary calling.
16. Saul's calling includes suffering (pathein) — the word dei ('must') makes suffering a divine necessity, not an accident. 'For the sake of my name' (hyper tou onomatos mou) — the name Saul tried to destroy will become the name he suffers for. The rest of Acts will document this suffering: beatings, imprisonments, shipwreck, stoning, and ultimately martyrdom.
17. Ananias's first word to the feared persecutor is 'brother' (adelphe) — a single word of reconciliation that bridges the chasm between persecutor and persecuted. Ananias identifies the Lord who sent him as 'Jesus' (Iēsous), confirming for Saul the identity of the voice on the road. The mission is twofold: physical healing ('regain your sight') and spiritual empowerment ('be filled with the Holy Spirit'). Ananias obeys despite his fear — faith overcomes terror.
18. The 'scales' (lepides, 'flakes, scales') falling from Saul's eyes is both a physical healing and a spiritual metaphor — the blindness that covered his understanding is removed. The sequence is immediate: sight restored rising baptism. The brevity contrasts with the elaborate detail of the vision and conversion — Luke gives the baptism just four words (anastas ebaptisthē), suggesting it is the natural, expected response to faith.

19. After three days of fasting (v. 9), Saul eats and recovers physical strength (enischysen). He immediately joins 'the disciples in Damascus' (tōn en Damaskō mathētōn) — the very people he came to arrest. The persecutor has become a brother. The phrase 'several days' (hēmeras tinas) covers an unspecified period during which Saul transitions from persecutor to preacher.
20. The adverb eutheōs ('immediately') captures the urgency of Saul's new conviction. He preaches in the very synagogues (en tais synagōgais) where he had authority to make arrests. His message: Jesus is 'the Son of God' (ho huios tou theou) — this title appears only here in Acts and represents the highest christological claim. The man who came to destroy the Way now proclaims its central confession.
21. The audience's astonishment (existanto) mirrors the amazement that follows every major event in Acts. The verb porthēsas ('destroyed, ravaged') is a military term describing the sacking of a city — Saul's persecution was remembered as devastation. The rhetorical questions express the shock of radical transformation: the same man, the same name, but everything has reversed.
22. The verb enedynamouto ('was being strengthened, was growing in power') indicates progressive empowerment by the Spirit. The verb synechynnen ('was confounding, was bewildering') means he left them unable to respond — his arguments were irrefutable. The participle symbibazon ('proving, demonstrating, bringing together') suggests logical argumentation from Scripture — Saul was already using the method that would characterize his later ministry: demonstrating from the Hebrew Scriptures that Jesus is the Messiah.
23. The phrase 'many days' (hēmerai hikanai) covers a significant period. According to Galatians 1:17-18, Paul spent time in Arabia and then returned to Damascus before going to Jerusalem — a period of about three years. Luke compresses the timeline. The plot to kill Saul mirrors the plots against Jesus and the apostles — the pattern of rejection continues, but now directed at the former persecutor.
24. The conspirators watch the city gates (tas pylas) to prevent Saul's escape. According to 2 Corinthians 11:32-33, the ethnarch under King Aretas IV was guarding the city — suggesting cooperation between Jewish opponents and the Nabatean authorities. The surveillance is around the clock (hēmeras te kai nyktos), indicating serious intent.
25. The escape 'through the wall' (dia tou teichous) likely means through a window in a house built into the city wall (cf. Joshua 2:15, Rahab's house). The word spyridi ('large basket') is the same word used for the baskets at the feeding of the 4,000 (Mark 8:8). Paul himself recounts this humiliating escape in 2 Corinthians 11:33. The phrase 'his disciples' (hoi mathētai autou) is remarkable — Saul already has followers of his own.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 2:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. Saul's reception in Jerusalem is understandably hostile — 'they were all afraid of him' (pantes ephobounto auton). His reputation as a persecutor preceded him, and his conversion was too dramatic to be easily believed. The verb epeirazen ('tried, attempted') suggests repeated, unsuccessful efforts to gain acceptance. Saul is caught between two worlds: hunted by his former allies and mistrusted by his new brothers.
27. Barnabas, the 'Son of Encouragement' (4:36), lives up to his name by bridging the gap between Saul and the apostles. The verb epilabomenos ('took hold of, took charge of') indicates decisive action. Barnabas vouches for three things: the Damascus road vision, the Lord's direct speech to Saul, and Saul's bold preaching in Damascus. This mediation was crucial for Saul's acceptance and for the unity of the church. Barnabas's willingness to stake his reputation on a former persecutor is an act of extraordinary faith.
28. The phrase 'going in and going out' (eisporuomenos kai ekporuomenos) is the same Semitic idiom used in 1:21 for daily life and activity. Saul is now a full member of the Jerusalem community, speaking with parrhēsia ('boldness') — the same quality the church prayed for in 4:29.
29. Saul engages the same Greek-speaking Jews (Hellēnistas) who had opposed Stephen (6:9). The verb synezētei ('debated, disputed') suggests vigorous intellectual engagement. Their response — attempted murder (epecheiroun anein auton) — mirrors the response to Stephen. Saul has stepped into Stephen's role and faces Stephen's fate, creating a narrative parallel that Luke emphasizes.
30. The community protects Saul by evacuating him — first to Caesarea (the port city) and then to Tarsus (his hometown in Cilicia). According to Galatians 1:21, Paul went to 'the regions of Syria and Cilicia.' Saul disappears from the narrative until Barnabas retrieves him in 11:25-26. The 'silent years' in Tarsus were likely a period of further reflection and teaching preparation.
31. This is one of Luke's major summary statements. The singular 'church' (ekklēsia) encompasses the entire community across three regions — Judea, Galilee, and Samaria — indicating a unified body despite geographical spread. The description includes peace (eirēnē), edification (oikodomoumenē, 'being built up'), reverent living ('walking in the fear of the Lord'), and the Spirit's encouragement (paraklēsei tou hagiou pneumatos). Saul's departure from active persecution may have contributed to the period of peace.
32. The narrative shifts from Saul to Peter, who will dominate chapters 9-12 before Saul/Paul takes center stage. Peter is traveling (dierchomenon, 'passing through') the churches, exercising an itinerant oversight ministry. Lydda (modern Lod) was a town about 25 miles northwest of Jerusalem, on the road to Joppa and the coast.
33. The name Aeneas (Ainean) is Greek, suggesting he may have been a Hellenistic Jew or Gentile. His paralysis for eight years (ex etōn oktō) establishes the chronic, hopeless nature of his condition. The detail 'bedridden' (katakeimenon epi krabattou, 'lying on a pallet') emphasizes his complete immobility.
34. Peter explicitly credits Jesus Christ as the healer — 'Jesus Christ heals you' (iatai se Iēsous Christos) is present tense, indicating Jesus's active power in the present moment. The command 'make your bed' (strōson seautō) is a practical instruction that demonstrates the completeness of the healing — the man who has been bedridden for eight years can now perform ordinary domestic tasks. The healing is immediate (eutheōs), as in Jesus's own healings.

35. The miracle has a regional impact — not only Lydda but the entire Sharon Plain (ton Sarōna, the fertile coastal plain stretching from Joppa to Mount Carmel) responds. The phrase 'turned to the Lord' (epestrepsan epi ton kyrion) describes conversion, using the same language as the Old Testament prophets' call to return to God.
36. Tabitha is explicitly called a 'disciple' (mathētria) — the feminine form of mathētēs, used only here in the New Testament. Her Aramaic name Tabitha and its Greek equivalent Dorcas both mean 'gazelle.' Luke characterizes her by her deeds: 'full of good works and acts of charity' (plērēs ergōn agathōn kai eleēmosynōn). She is defined not by theology but by practical compassion.
37. The washing of the body (lousantes) was the customary Jewish preparation for burial. Placing her in an upper room (hyperōō) rather than immediately burying her (Jewish custom normally required same-day burial) suggests the community hoped for intervention — they had heard that Peter was nearby in Lydda (v. 38).
38. Lydda was about 10-12 miles from Joppa, a distance easily traveled in a few hours. The urgency of the request — mē oknēsēs ('do not hesitate, do not delay') — suggests they hoped Peter could do something about Tabitha's death, though they do not explicitly ask for a resurrection.
39. The widows' display of Dorcas's handiwork is deeply moving — each garment (chitōnas, 'tunics/undergarments' and himatia, 'cloaks/outer garments') is a tangible memorial of her charity. The phrase 'while she was with them' (met' autōn ousa) is the language of grief — she is no longer with them. The scene echoes Jesus at Jairus's house, where mourners surrounded the dead girl.
40. Peter's actions closely follow Jesus's pattern at the raising of Jairus's daughter (Luke 8:51-56): he sends everyone out, addresses the dead person directly by name, and she rises. The Aramaic 'Tabitha, arise' (Tabitha, anastēthi) is phonetically similar to Jesus's 'Talitha, arise' (Talitha koum, Mark 5:41) — only one letter differs. Peter prays first (prosēuxato), acknowledging that the power comes from God, not from himself. The response is immediate: she opens her eyes and sits up.
41. Peter gives Tabitha his hand (dous autē cheira) — the same gesture he used to raise the lame man in 3:7. He then 'presented her alive' (parestēsen autēn zōsan) to the community — the word zōsan ('living') is emphatic. The distinction between 'the saints' (tous hagious, the believers generally) and 'the widows' (tas chēras, those who especially benefited from her ministry) suggests two overlapping groups.
42. As with Aeneas's healing (v. 35), the miracle produces widespread faith. The pattern repeats: sign testimony belief. Each miracle extends the reach of the gospel geographically and numerically.
43. Peter's lodging with Simon the tanner (Simōni byrsei) is theologically significant. Tanners worked with animal carcasses and were considered ritually unclean in Jewish tradition — their occupation required constant contact with dead animals. That Peter stays with a tanner suggests his purity boundaries are already loosening, preparing the reader for the revolutionary vision that will come in 10:9-16. Joppa (modern Jaffa/Tel Aviv) is on the Mediterranean coast, positioning Peter for the Gentile mission that is about to begin.

10

Summary: *Acts 10 narrates the pivotal conversion of Cornelius, a Roman centurion in Caesarea, and the dramatic expansion of the gospel to Gentiles. Cornelius, a God-fearer, receives a vision directing him to send for Peter. Meanwhile, Peter receives his own vision on a rooftop in Joppa: a sheet descending from heaven filled with unclean animals, with a voice commanding him to 'kill and eat.' Peter refuses three times, and the voice responds, 'What God has made clean, do not call common.' When Cornelius's messengers arrive, the Spirit instructs Peter to go with them. Peter preaches at Cornelius's house, and while he is still speaking, the Holy Spirit falls on the Gentile listeners — astonishing the Jewish believers present. Peter orders their baptism.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is the theological hinge of Acts. Luke devotes more space to this episode than to any other single event (it is retold in chapter 11 and referenced in chapter 15), signaling its centrality. The vision of unclean animals does not primarily concern dietary laws — Peter himself interprets it as God showing him 'not to call any person common or unclean' (10:28). The falling of the Spirit before baptism reverses the Pentecost pattern (baptism then Spirit) and removes any human gatekeeping from God's acceptance of Gentiles. The phrase 'God shows no partiality' (10:34) becomes a foundational principle of early Christian theology.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek koinos ('common') and akathartos ('unclean') carry specific Levitical connotations. Peter's vision does not explicitly abrogate Torah dietary laws — it redefines the categories of clean and unclean as they apply to persons. We render the Greek as given without resolving the ongoing theological debate about the vision's implications for food laws versus ethnic boundaries. The term phobeomai ton theon ('God-fearer') describes Cornelius's status as a Gentile who worshiped Israel's God without full conversion — a historically attested category in Second Temple Judaism.*

Connections: The Cornelius episode fulfills Jesus's commission in Acts 1:8 to be witnesses 'to the ends of the earth.' It connects to the Ethiopian eunuch's baptism (Acts 8:26-40) as a progressive opening to outsiders. Peter's sermon echoes the kerygma of Acts 2 but now explicitly includes 'every nation.' The vision of clean and unclean connects to Leviticus 11 and Mark 7:19. The Spirit's sovereign action parallels Joel 2:28-32, quoted at Pentecost.

¹Now there was a man in Caesarea named Cornelius, a centurion of the cohort called the Italian Cohort. ²He was a devout man who feared God with all his household, gave generously to the people, and prayed to God continually. ³About the ninth hour of the day he clearly saw in a vision an angel of God come in to him and say, "Cornelius." ⁴He stared at the angel in fear and said, "What is it, Lord?" The angel said to him, "Your prayers and your acts of charity have ascended as a memorial offering before God. ⁵Now send men to Joppa and summon a man named Simon who is called Peter. ⁶He is staying with Simon, a tanner, whose house is by the sea." ⁷When the angel who spoke to him had departed, he called two of his household servants and a devout soldier from among those who attended him. ⁸After explaining everything to them, he sent them to Joppa. ⁹The next day, as they were on their journey and approaching the city, Peter went up on the housetop about the sixth hour to pray. ¹⁰He became hungry and wanted something to eat, but while the meal was being prepared, he fell into a trance. ¹¹He saw heaven opened and something like a large sheet descending, being let down by its four corners to the earth. ¹²In it were all kinds of four-footed animals and reptiles of the earth and birds of the air. ¹³And a voice came to him: "Rise, Peter; kill and eat." ¹⁴But Peter said, "By no means, Lord, for I have never eaten anything common or unclean." ¹⁵And the voice came to him again a second time: "What God has made clean, do not call common." ¹⁶This happened three times, and immediately the sheet was taken up into heaven. ¹⁷Now while Peter was puzzling over what the vision might mean, the men sent by Cornelius, having asked directions to Simon's house, stood at the gate. ¹⁸They called out and asked whether Simon, who was called Peter, was staying there. ¹⁹While Peter was still reflecting on the vision, the Spirit said to him, "Look, three men are looking for you. ²⁰Rise, go down, and accompany them without hesitation, for I have sent them." ²¹Peter went down to the men and said, "I am the one you are looking for. What is the reason you have come?" ²²They said, "Cornelius, a centurion, a righteous and God-fearing man well spoken of by the whole Jewish nation, was directed by a holy angel to send for you to come to his house and to hear a message from you." ²³So he invited them in and gave them lodging. The next day he rose and went with them, and some of the brothers from Joppa accompanied him. ²⁴The following day they entered Caesarea. Cornelius was expecting them and had called together his relatives and close friends. ²⁵When Peter entered, Cornelius met him and fell at his feet to worship him. ²⁶But Peter lifted him up, saying, "Stand up; I myself am also just a man." ²⁷And as he talked with him, he went in and found many people gathered. ²⁸He said to them, "You yourselves know that it is unlawful for a Jewish man to associate with or visit a foreigner. But God has shown me that I should not call any person common or unclean. ²⁹So when I was sent for, I came without objection. Now I ask, for what reason did you send for me?" ³⁰Cornelius said, "Four days ago at this very hour, I was praying at the ninth hour in my house, and a man stood before me in bright clothing ³¹Stated, Cornelius, your prayer is listened to, and your alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. ³²Send therefore to Joppa and ask for Simon who is called Peter. He is staying in the house of Simon, a tanner, by the sea." ³³So I sent for you at once, and you were kind enough to come. Now therefore we are all here in the presence of God to hear everything that the Lord has commanded you to say." ³⁴So Peter opened his mouth and said, "Truly I understand that God shows no partiality, ³⁵However, in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh moral integrity, is accepted with him. ³⁶As for the word that he sent to the children of Israel, proclaiming the good news of peace through Jesus Christ — he is Lord of all — ³⁷You know what happened throughout Judea, beginning in Galilee after the baptism that John proclaimed — ³⁸How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Ghost and with authority — who traveled concerning doing good, and healing all that were oppressed of the devil. For God was with him. ³⁹We are witnesses of everything he did both in the country of the Jews and in Jerusalem. They put him to death by hanging him on a tree, ⁴⁰God raised him on the third day and allowed him to be seen openly. ⁴¹Not to all the people, but to witnesses chosen before of God, indeed to us, who did consume and feast with him after he rose from the dead. ⁴²He commanded us to preach to the people and to testify that he is the one appointed by God as judge of the living and the dead. ⁴³To him all the prophets bear witness that everyone who believes in him receives forgiveness of sins through his name." ⁴⁴While Peter was still speaking these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all who were

hearing the message. ⁴⁵The circumcised believers who had come with Peter were astonished, because the gift of the Holy Spirit had been poured out even on the Gentiles. ⁴⁶For they heard them speaking in tongues and magnifying God. Then Peter declared, ⁴⁷"Can anyone withhold water for baptizing these people, who have received the Holy Spirit just as we have?" ⁴⁸And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ. Then they asked him to stay for some days.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A centurion (hekatontarches) commanded approximately eighty soldiers within a cohort (speira). The Italian Cohort (speira Italike) was a Roman auxiliary unit composed of Italian-born soldiers stationed in the province of Judea. Caesarea Maritima was the Roman administrative capital, making it a natural location for a Roman military officer.
2. The description 'fearing God' (phoboumenos ton theon) is a semi-technical term for Gentiles who worshiped Israel's God, observed certain Jewish practices, and attended synagogue, but had not undergone full proselyte conversion including circumcision. Archaeological evidence confirms this category in the Second Temple period.
3. The ninth hour (approximately 3 PM) was one of the established Jewish times of prayer. That Cornelius observes this practice confirms his devotion to Israel's God. The adverb phaneros ('clearly, openly') emphasizes that this was not a vague impression but a distinct vision.
4. The language of 'ascending as a memorial' (anebesan eis mnemosunon) echoes the Old Testament sacrificial vocabulary — particularly the memorial portion (azkarah) of grain offerings (Leviticus 2:2). Cornelius's prayers and charity are presented as a kind of sacrifice that has reached God, even though he is uncircumcised.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 2:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Joppa (modern Jaffa/Yafo) lies approximately 30 miles south of Caesarea along the Mediterranean coast. The angel does not deliver the message himself but directs Cornelius to send for Peter — God orchestrates the encounter through human agents.
6. That Peter lodges with a tanner (burseus) is significant: tanning involved contact with animal carcasses, rendering tanners ritually unclean in Jewish practice. Peter is already crossing purity boundaries before his rooftop vision. Some manuscripts add 'he will tell you what you must do,' but the SBLGNT omits this addition.
7. The devout soldier (stratioten eusebe) reflects Cornelius's influence — his piety has shaped those under his command. The word proskarterounton ('attending, waiting on') suggests personal aides assigned to his service.
8. Cornelius shares the full vision with his servants before sending them — he does not merely issue orders but explains the divine directive. This transparency characterizes him throughout the narrative.
9. The sixth hour (approximately noon) was another established time of prayer. Flat-roofed houses in the ancient Mediterranean provided private space for prayer. Luke carefully synchronizes the two narratives — as Cornelius's men approach, Peter is being prepared through vision.
10. The word ekstasis ('trance, ecstasy') denotes a state in which normal consciousness is suspended and divine vision becomes possible. Peter's physical hunger becomes the occasion for a vision about food — God uses his immediate experience to communicate a deeper truth.
11. The opened heaven (ton ouranon aneogmenon) signals divine revelation — the same imagery appears at Jesus's baptism (Luke 3:21) and Stephen's martyrdom (Acts 7:56). The 'four corners' suggest universality, representing all directions and all peoples.
12. The categories echo the creation account in Genesis 1:24-26 and the clean/unclean distinctions of Leviticus 11. The word 'all' (panta) is emphatic — the sheet contains every category without distinction, deliberately mixing what Torah separates.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:24-26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The command thuson ('slaughter, sacrifice') followed by phage ('eat') uses sacrificial vocabulary. The voice does not specify which animals to eat — the command is comprehensive and undifferentiated, challenging the entire clean/unclean classification system.
14. Peter's refusal combines two terms: koinon ('common,' i.e., not sanctified, profane) and akatharton ('unclean,' i.e., forbidden by Torah). His response echoes Ezekiel's protest when commanded to eat unclean food (Ezekiel 4:14). The juxtaposition of 'by no means' (medamos) with 'Lord' (kyrie) captures Peter's inner conflict — he refuses a divine command out of devotion to divine law.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 4:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. This is the interpretive key to the entire vision. The verb ekatharisen ('has made clean, has cleansed') is aorist, indicating a completed divine action. God has already declared clean what Peter still considers common. The imperative me koinou ('do not call common, do not treat as profane') directly countermands Peter's categories. As Peter himself will explain in verse 28, the vision is ultimately about people, not food.

16. The threefold repetition recalls Peter's threefold denial (Luke 22:54-62) and his threefold restoration (John 21:15-17). The pattern of three emphasizes divine persistence in overcoming human resistance. The sheet's return to heaven confirms its heavenly origin and authority.
17. The verb *diaporeo* ('be puzzled, be at a loss') shows that Peter does not immediately understand the vision's meaning. God's timing is precise: the vision's interpretation arrives not through explanation but through the arrival of Gentile visitors. The narrative structure itself teaches Peter — and the reader — what the vision means.
18. The verb *xenizomai* ('stay as a guest, be hosted') is related to *xenos* ('stranger, foreigner'). Peter is himself a guest — a stranger in someone else's house — when he is asked to go to another stranger's house. The theme of hospitality across boundaries pervades this chapter.
19. The Spirit speaks directly to Peter, connecting the vision to the arriving visitors. Some manuscripts read 'two men' instead of 'three' (accounting only for the servants, not the soldier). The SBLGNT reads 'three,' which matches the narrative in verse 7.
20. The participle *diakrinomenos* can mean 'doubting' or 'making distinctions' — both senses are relevant. Peter is not to doubt the Spirit's instruction, and he is not to make ethnic distinctions about his visitors. The Spirit claims responsibility: 'I have sent them' (*ego apostalka autous*), making the Gentile visitors divine emissaries.
21. Peter's obedience is immediate — he goes down from the rooftop without further argument. His self-identification ('I am the one you are looking for') and his question show readiness to hear what God has arranged.
22. The servants' description emphasizes Cornelius's credentials to reassure Peter: he is righteous, God-fearing, and respected even by Jews. The verb *echrematisthe* ('was directed, received a divine instruction') is used in the New Testament specifically for divine oracles and revelations (cf. Matthew 2:12, 22).
23. Peter's act of inviting Gentiles in and hosting them overnight is itself a boundary-crossing act — sharing table and lodging with Gentiles violated Jewish purity conventions. The 'brothers from Joppa' (six of them, according to 11:12) serve as witnesses to what will happen at Cornelius's house.
24. Cornelius's faith is shown by his preparation — he assembles a gathering before Peter arrives, fully trusting that God's plan will unfold. The phrase *anagkaious philous* ('close friends, intimate friends') suggests deep personal relationships. This is not an individual conversion but a household event.
25. The verb *prosekunesen* ('worshiped, did obeisance') can denote either divine worship or extreme honor toward a superior. Cornelius, accustomed to Roman hierarchy and perhaps viewing Peter as a divine messenger, offers an excessive gesture that Peter immediately corrects.
26. Peter's refusal of worship contrasts sharply with Herod's acceptance of divine honors in Acts 12:22-23. The phrase 'I myself am also a man' (*kai ego autos anthropos eimi*) emphasizes shared humanity — precisely the lesson Peter has just learned from his vision.
27. The casual verb *synomilon* ('conversing, talking together') suggests Peter and Cornelius speak as equals. Peter enters a Gentile house — a boundary he would not have crossed days earlier — and finds a large assembly waiting.
28. Peter now reveals his interpretation of the rooftop vision: it was about people, not food. The word *athemiton* ('unlawful, forbidden') does not refer to Torah prohibitions per se but to the extra-biblical purity traditions that had developed prohibiting table fellowship with Gentiles. Peter's declaration 'I should not call any person common or unclean' (*medena koinon e akatharton legein anthronon*) applies the categories of his vision directly to human beings.
29. The adverb *anantirretos* ('without objection, without contradiction') shows that Peter has accepted the vision's teaching fully, at least in principle. His question to Cornelius is not hesitation but an invitation for Cornelius to share his own divine encounter, establishing that both sides have been led by God.
30. Cornelius retells his vision, now describing the angel as 'a man in bright clothing' (*aner en estheti lampra*). The 'bright clothing' is a standard biblical marker for heavenly beings (cf. Luke 24:4, Acts 1:10). Some manuscripts add 'fasting and' before 'praying,' but the SBLGNT omits it.
31. The passive verbs — 'has been heard' (*eisekousthe*) and 'have been remembered' (*emnesthesan*) — use the divine passive: God is the one hearing and remembering. Cornelius's devotion has not gone unnoticed.
32. Cornelius faithfully recounts the angel's specific instructions, including the detail about the tanner's house by the sea. The precision of the directions confirms the vision's divine origin.
33. Cornelius's words 'we are all here in the presence of God' (*enopion tou theou*) frame the gathering as a sacred assembly. His readiness to hear 'everything commanded' shows complete openness to divine instruction. This is one of the most receptive audiences in all of Acts.
34. The phrase 'opened his mouth' (*anoixas to stoma*) is a Semitic idiom signaling a solemn, weighty declaration. The word *prosopolempptes* ('one who shows partiality, respecter of persons') appears only here in the New Testament. It derives from the Hebrew *nasa panim* ('to lift the face'), meaning to show favoritism. Peter's new understanding directly contradicts the ethnic exclusivism he held before the vision.
35. This verse does not teach salvation by works apart from the gospel — Peter is about to preach Christ. Rather, it declares that God's acceptance is not limited by ethnicity. The person who fears God and practices righteousness, in any nation, is one whom God welcomes to hear the gospel and receive its promise.

- 36.** The grammatical structure is difficult; the sentence begins here but does not resolve easily until verse 37. The parenthetical declaration 'he is Lord of all' (houtos estin panton kyrios) is theologically explosive in this setting: if Jesus is Lord of all, not just of Israel, then Gentiles are included in his lordship. The phrase 'good news of peace' (euangelizomenos eirenen) echoes Isaiah 52:7.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 52:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** Peter assumes his audience has heard about Jesus's ministry — the events were widely known. The summary that follows (vv. 37-43) is a compressed kerygma (gospel proclamation) covering Jesus's ministry, death, and resurrection, structured similarly to the Gospel of Mark.
- 38.** The verb echrisen ('anointed') connects Jesus to his title Christos ('Anointed One'). The anointing refers to Jesus's baptism and the Spirit's descent (Luke 3:22). The description of Jesus 'doing good and healing' (euergeton kai iomenos) is the most concise summary of Jesus's ministry in the New Testament. The phrase 'God was with him' echoes the Emmanuel theme.
- 39.** Peter claims eyewitness authority (hemeis martyres, 'we are witnesses'). The phrase 'hanging on a tree' (kremasantes epi xylou) alludes to Deuteronomy 21:22-23, where one hung on a tree is 'cursed by God.' This Old Testament allusion appears repeatedly in early Christian preaching (Acts 5:30, Galatians 3:13) as part of the scandal and theology of the cross.
- 39.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:22-23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 40.** The contrast is sharp: 'they put him to death' (v. 39) but 'God raised him' (v. 40). Human violence is overturned by divine action. The verb edoken ('gave, caused') with emphane genesthai ('to become visible') suggests that the resurrection appearances were God's deliberate act of disclosure, not something Jesus did independently.
- 41.** The risen Jesus appeared not to the general public but to chosen witnesses (martusin tois prokecheirotonemenois). The detail of eating and drinking with the risen Jesus (synepagomen kai synepiomen) emphasizes the bodily, physical reality of the resurrection — this was not a ghost or a vision but a person who shared meals.
- 42.** Jesus is presented not only as Savior but as judge (krites) — the one who will evaluate all humanity, both living and dead. The verb horismenos ('appointed, designated') is related to the English word 'horizon' — God has set the boundary of final judgment in the person of Jesus.
- 43.** Peter grounds the gospel in the prophetic witness of the entire Old Testament — 'all the prophets' (pantes hoi prophetai). The offer of forgiveness is universal: 'everyone who believes' (panta ton pisteuonta), with no ethnic qualification. This is the climax of Peter's sermon, and the Spirit will dramatically confirm it in the next verse.
- 44.** The Spirit interrupts Peter's sermon — he is 'still speaking' (eti lalountos) when the Spirit falls. God does not wait for Peter to finish, issue an altar call, or baptize. The verb epepesen ('fell upon') conveys sudden, powerful, uninvited arrival. This is the Gentile Pentecost — the Spirit's sovereign act that settles the question of Gentile inclusion before any human decision can be made.
- 45.** The phrase 'circumcised believers' (hoi ek peritomes pistoi) identifies Peter's Jewish Christian companions. Their astonishment (exestesan) reveals how unexpected Gentile inclusion was — even after Peter's vision, they did not anticipate this. The verb ekkechutai ('has been poured out') echoes Joel 2:28 and Acts 2:17-18, explicitly linking this event to Pentecost.
- 45.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joel 2:28 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 46.** The evidence of the Spirit's presence is the same as at Pentecost: speaking in tongues (glossais) and praising God. This parallel is essential to Luke's argument — the same Spirit, the same manifestation, the same gift given to Gentiles as to Jews. No additional requirement can be imposed.
- 47.** Peter's rhetorical question expects a negative answer: no one can deny baptism to those whom God has already accepted. The phrase 'just as we have' (hos kai hemeis) is the decisive argument — the Gentiles' experience is identical to the apostles' own. Water baptism follows Spirit baptism as confirmation, not as prerequisite.
- 48.** Peter commands baptism 'in the name of Jesus Christ' (en to onomati Iesou Christou), the standard formula in Acts (cf. 2:38, 8:16, 19:5). The invitation to stay (epimeinai) indicates table fellowship — Peter remains in a Gentile household, sharing meals and life with the newly baptized. The barrier has been permanently broken.

11

Summary: *Acts 11 opens with Peter defending his visit to Cornelius's household before the Jerusalem church, which criticizes him for eating with uncircumcised Gentiles. Peter recounts his vision and the Spirit's falling on the Gentiles in sequence, and the critics are silenced, glorifying God that 'even to the Gentiles God has granted repentance leading to life.' The chapter then shifts to Antioch, where scattered believers from the persecution following Stephen's death begin preaching to Greeks (not just Jews). A thriving church emerges, and Barnabas is sent from Jerusalem to investigate. He recruits Saul from Tarsus, and together they teach in Antioch for a year. It is here that the disciples are first called 'Christians.' The chapter closes with the prophet Agabus predicting a famine, prompting the Antioch church to send relief to Judea through Barnabas and Saul.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Luke retells the Cornelius episode a second time through Peter's own lips — an unusually detailed repetition that underscores the event's theological centrality. The Jerusalem church's initial objection is not about doctrine but about table fellowship: 'You went to uncircumcised men and ate with them.' The Antioch church represents a new model of community — Jew and Gentile worshiping together — and becomes the launching point for the Gentile mission. The name 'Christians' (Christianoi) appears here for the first time, coined by outsiders in Antioch, probably as a political designation meaning 'partisans of Christ.'*

Translation Friction: *The Greek Hellenistas in verse 20 is textually uncertain: some manuscripts read Hellenas ('Greeks,' i.e., Gentiles), while others read Hellenistas ('Hellenists,' i.e., Greek-speaking Jews). The SBLGNT reads Hellenistas, but the narrative logic — contrasting these recipients with the 'Jews only' of verse 19 — strongly favors the meaning 'Greek-speaking Gentiles' or simply 'Greeks.' We follow the SBLGNT text while noting the issue. The famine under Claudius (v. 28) is historically attested by Josephus and Suetonius, though its exact dating is debated.*

Connections: *Peter's defense echoes and completes the Cornelius narrative of chapter 10. The Antioch church connects to the scattering of Acts 8:1-4 — persecution intended to destroy the movement instead spreads it. The Barnabas-Saul partnership anticipates the first missionary journey (Acts 13). The famine relief establishes the pattern of Gentile churches supporting the Jerusalem church (cf. Romans 15:25-27, 2 Corinthians 8-9). The name 'Christians' connects to the broader Roman political context of the early church.*

¹Now the apostles and the brothers throughout Judea heard that the Gentiles also had received the word of God. ²So when Peter went up to Jerusalem, the circumcision party criticized him, ³Indeed, declaring, you wentest in to men uncircumcised, and didst eat with them. ⁴But Peter began and explained it to them step by step, saying, ⁵"I was in the city of Joppa praying, and in a trance I saw a vision: something like a large sheet descending, being let down from heaven by its four corners, and it came right down to me. ⁶Looking at it closely, I observed and saw four-footed animals of the earth, wild beasts, reptiles, and birds of the air. ⁷I also heard a voice saying to me, 'Rise, Peter; kill and eat.' ⁸But I said, 'By no means, Lord, for nothing common or unclean has ever entered my mouth.' ⁹But the voice answered a second time from heaven, 'What God has made clean, do not call common.' ¹⁰This happened three times, and then everything was pulled back up into heaven. ¹¹And at that very moment, three men who had been sent to me from Caesarea arrived at the house where we were. ¹²The Spirit told me to go with them, making no distinction. These six brothers also accompanied me, and we entered the man's house. ¹³He told us how he had seen the angel stand in his house and say, 'Send to Joppa and bring Simon who is called Peter. ¹⁴He will speak words to you by which you will be saved, you and all your household.' ¹⁵As I began to speak, the Holy Spirit fell on them just as on us at the beginning. ¹⁶And I remembered the word of the Lord, how he said, 'John baptized with water, but you will be baptized with the Holy Spirit.' ¹⁷If then God gave them the same gift that he gave us when we believed in the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I to stand in God's way?" ¹⁸When they heard these things, they fell silent and glorified God, saying, "Then God has granted even to the Gentiles the repentance that leads to life." ¹⁹Now those who were scattered because of the persecution that arose over Stephen traveled as far as Phoenicia, Cyprus, and Antioch, speaking the word to no one except Jews. ²⁰But among them were some men from Cyprus and Cyrene who, when they came to Antioch, began speaking to the

Greeks also, proclaiming the Lord Jesus as good news. ²¹The hand of the Lord was with them, and a great number who believed turned to the Lord. ²²The report about them reached the ears of the church in Jerusalem, and they sent Barnabas to Antioch. ²³When he came and saw the grace of God, he was glad and encouraged them all to remain faithful to the Lord with steadfast purpose of heart, ²⁴Since he was a good man, and full of the Holy Ghost and of faith — and much those present was added to the Lord. ²⁵Then Barnabas went to Tarsus to look for Saul, ²⁶After he had found him, he brought him to Antioch. And it happened that, that a whole year they assembled themselves with the church, and taught much people. And the followers were called Christians first in Antioch. ²⁷In those days prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch. ²⁸One of them named Agabus stood up and predicted by the Spirit that a severe famine was about to come over the whole inhabited world — this took place during the reign of Claudius. ²⁹So the disciples, each according to his ability, determined to send relief to the brothers living in Judea. ³⁰And they did so, sending it to the elders by the hand of Barnabas and Saul.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The news travels fast: the phrase 'the Gentiles also' (kai ta ethne) carries the force of surprise — this was unprecedented. The verb edexanto ('received, welcomed') implies active acceptance, not mere passive hearing.
2. The phrase hoi ek peritomes ('those of the circumcision') here denotes Jewish believers who insisted on maintaining Jewish identity markers, particularly circumcision, as requirements for fellowship. The verb diekrinonto ('contended, criticized, took issue') indicates serious objection, not casual questioning.
3. The charge focuses on table fellowship (synephages, 'you ate with'), not on preaching or baptism. Eating together implied social equality and religious communion. The phrase 'uncircumcised men' (andras akrobystian echontas, literally 'men having foreskin') is deliberately blunt, emphasizing the boundary Peter crossed.
4. The adverb kathexes ('in order, step by step') indicates a careful, sequential retelling. Peter does not argue from theology but from narrative — he lets the events speak for themselves.
5. Peter retells his vision from Acts 10:9-16 in the first person. The detail 'it came right down to me' (elthen achri emou) personalizes the vision — this was directed specifically at Peter.
6. Peter adds 'wild beasts' (theria) to the retelling, a detail not explicitly mentioned in 10:12 in all manuscripts. The comprehensive list emphasizes the indiscriminate mixture of clean and unclean creatures.
7. The command is identical to 10:13. In the retelling, Peter faithfully reproduces the divine directive that shocked him.
8. Peter's retelling makes the refusal even more emphatic with 'entered into my mouth' (eiselthen eis to stoma mou) — a visceral way of expressing his lifelong observance of dietary law.
9. The addition of 'from heaven' (ek tou ouranou) emphasizes the divine authority behind the command. The principle stands: God's cleansing overrides human categories of purity.
10. The verb anespasthe ('was pulled up, was drawn up') differs slightly from 10:16's anelemphthe but conveys the same idea. The threefold pattern confirms divine insistence.
11. The timing — 'at that very moment' (exautes) — underscores divine orchestration. The vision and the visitors arrive in perfect coordination.
12. Peter specifies 'these six brothers' (hoi hex adelphoi houtoi), indicating they are present in Jerusalem as witnesses. Their presence gives Peter's testimony legal weight — multiple witnesses confirm the events. The phrase 'making no distinction' (meden diakrinanta) can also mean 'without hesitation,' carrying both meanings simultaneously.
13. Peter now incorporates Cornelius's vision into his defense. The double vision — one to Cornelius, one to Peter — demonstrates that God was working from both sides simultaneously.
14. This detail — that Peter's message would bring salvation to Cornelius's entire household — is not explicitly stated in chapter 10's account of the angel's message. Peter either recalls additional detail or interprets the angel's directive in light of what subsequently happened. The household salvation motif is prominent in Acts (cf. 16:15, 31).
15. The phrase 'at the beginning' (en arche) refers to Pentecost (Acts 2). Peter draws a direct line from the original outpouring of the Spirit to this Gentile experience. The parallel is exact and undeniable: same Spirit, same manifestation, same divine initiative.
16. Peter quotes Jesus's words from Acts 1:5. The remembering (emnesthe) is prompted by the Spirit's own action — the event interprets the prophecy. The distinction between water baptism and Spirit baptism is not a contrast between inferior and superior but between preparation and fulfillment.
17. Peter's argument is simple and irrefutable: God acted first, giving the Gentiles the 'same gift' (ten isen dorean). To refuse them would be to oppose God himself. The rhetorical question 'who was I to stand in God's way?' (ego tis emen dynatos kolusai ton theon) is Peter's strongest argument — not theological reasoning but divine fait accompli.

18. The critics' response moves from silence (*hesuchasan*) to praise (*edoxasan*) — a dramatic reversal. The phrase 'repentance leading to life' (*ten metanoian eis zoen*) describes repentance not merely as a human act of turning but as a divine gift (*edoken*, 'granted, gave'). God gives repentance; he does not merely demand it.
19. Luke picks up the thread from Acts 8:1-4. The scattering (*diasparentes*) that began with Stephen's martyrdom has produced a diaspora mission, but initially only to Jews. Antioch, the third-largest city in the Roman Empire after Rome and Alexandria, will become the strategic center for the Gentile mission.
20. The SBLGNT reads *Hellenistas*, which typically means 'Greek-speaking Jews' (as in 6:1), but the context — contrasting with 'Jews only' in verse 19 — demands the meaning 'Greek-speaking Gentiles' or simply 'Greeks.' Some manuscripts read *Hellenas* ('Greeks'), which may be the original reading. These unnamed missionaries from Cyprus and Cyrene initiate the Gentile mission at Antioch independently of the Cornelius episode.
21. The phrase 'the hand of the Lord' (*cheir kyriou*) is a Hebraic idiom for divine power and blessing, frequent in the Old Testament (e.g., 1 Kings 18:46, Ezra 7:9). The combination of 'believed' (*pisteusas*) and 'turned' (*epetrepsen*) describes conversion as both cognitive assent and life reorientation.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 18:46. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezra 7:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Jerusalem sends Barnabas — not to suppress but to assess and encourage. The choice of Barnabas is strategic: he is a Levite from Cyprus (4:36), giving him cultural affinity with the Cypriots who started the work, and his name means 'son of encouragement.' His generous spirit (4:37) makes him ideal for this mission.
23. Barnabas 'saw the grace of God' (*idon ten charin tou theou*) — grace was visible in the transformed community. The wordplay between *charin* ('grace') and *echare* ('was glad, rejoiced') connects divine grace to human joy. His encouragement to 'remain faithful' (*prosmenein*) with 'purpose of heart' (*prothesei tes kardias*) addresses the challenge of perseverance in a new and vulnerable community.
24. Luke's character summary of Barnabas — 'a good man, full of the Holy Spirit and of faith' — is one of the highest commendations in Acts. Similar language is used of Stephen (6:5). The passive 'were added to the Lord' (*proseteche to kyrio*) credits God with the growth, not Barnabas.
25. The verb *anazetesai* ('to look for, to search out') suggests Saul was not easily found — Tarsus was a large city and several years had passed since Saul's departure from Jerusalem (9:30). Barnabas's initiative in recruiting Saul is one of the most consequential acts in church history.
26. The name *Christianoi* ('Christians,' literally 'Christ-partisans' or 'those belonging to Christ') follows the Latin pattern of political party names (e.g., *Herodianoi*, *Kaisarianoi*). It was likely coined by Roman authorities or the general public in Antioch as a label for this new group. The term appears only three times in the New Testament (here, 26:28, and 1 Peter 4:16). That it was a name given by outsiders, not self-chosen, suggests the movement had become publicly visible and distinct from Judaism.
27. The verb *kathelthon* ('came down') reflects the geographical reality — Jerusalem is at a higher elevation — and the theological convention that one always 'goes up' to Jerusalem and 'comes down' from it. The presence of prophets (*prophetai*) in the early church is well attested (cf. 13:1, 15:32, 21:10).
28. Agabus appears again in 21:10-11, predicting Paul's arrest. The phrase 'the whole inhabited world' (*holen ten oikoumenen*) is a standard expression for the Roman Empire. Claudius reigned AD 41-54. Josephus records a severe famine in Judea around AD 46-47 (*Antiquities* 20.49-53), and Suetonius mentions food shortages under Claudius. Luke's parenthetical note — 'this took place' — confirms the prophecy's fulfillment.
29. The phrase 'each according to his ability' (*kathos euporeto tis*) establishes proportional giving as the standard — not equal amounts but equal sacrifice. The Gentile church in Antioch sends aid to the Jewish church in Judea, reversing the expected direction of benefaction and demonstrating the unity of the body across ethnic lines.
30. This is the first mention of 'elders' (*presbyterous*) in the Jerusalem church, indicating an organizational structure developing beyond the apostles alone. Barnabas and Saul serve as the delivery agents, a mission that brings them to Jerusalem (12:25) and sets the stage for their commissioning in chapter 13.

12

Summary: *Acts 12 narrates the persecution of the church under Herod Agrippa I. James the brother of John is executed by the sword — the first apostolic martyrdom. Herod arrests Peter during Passover, intending to bring him to trial afterward. The church prays earnestly for Peter. An angel appears in the prison at night, wakes Peter, causes his chains to fall off, and leads him past the guards and through the iron gate into the city. Peter goes to the house of Mary, mother of John Mark, where the church is gathered in prayer. The servant Rhoda recognizes his voice but in her joy leaves him standing at the gate. The chapter concludes with Herod's gruesome death: accepting divine acclamation from the crowd, he is struck down by an angel and eaten by worms.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The contrast between James and Peter is stark and unexplained: James is killed, Peter is rescued, and Luke offers no theological explanation for why one apostle dies and another is delivered. This narrative honesty is striking. The scene at Mary's house contains rare humor in Acts — the praying church refuses to believe their prayer has been answered, insisting it must be Peter's angel rather than Peter himself. Herod Agrippa I's death is independently confirmed by Josephus (Antiquities 19.343-350), who describes the same event at Caesarea with additional details.*

Translation Friction: *Herod Agrippa I (here called simply 'Herod') was the grandson of Herod the Great and ruled Judea from AD 41-44. His persecution of the church was politically motivated — currying favor with the Jewish leadership. The 'angel' (angelos) who rescues Peter and the 'angel of the Lord' who strikes Herod represent two sides of divine intervention: deliverance and judgment. The prayer gathering at Mary's house provides the earliest glimpse of a house church in Jerusalem.*

Connections: *James's execution fulfills Jesus's prediction that James and John would share his cup of suffering (Mark 10:39). Peter's deliverance from prison echoes the apostles' earlier prison escape (Acts 5:19-20). Herod's death by accepting divine honors contrasts with Peter's refusal of worship from Cornelius (10:25-26). The mention of John Mark (v. 12) introduces a figure who will feature prominently in 13:13 and 15:37-39.*

¹About that time Herod the king laid violent hands on some who belonged to the church. ²He executed James, John's brother by the sword. ³When he saw that it pleased the Jews, he proceeded to arrest Peter also. This was during the days of Unleavened Bread. ⁴When he had seized him, he put him in prison and handed him over to four squads of four soldiers each to guard him, intending after the Passover to bring him out before the people. ⁵So Peter was kept in prison, but earnest prayer for him was being made to God by the church. ⁶The very night before Herod was going to bring him out, Peter was sleeping between two soldiers, bound with two chains, and sentries before the door were guarding the prison. ⁷And suddenly an angel of the Lord appeared, and a light shone in the cell. He struck Peter on the side and woke him, saying, "Get up quickly." And the chains fell off his hands. ⁸The angel said to him, "Dress yourself and put on your sandals." And he did so. Then the angel said, "Wrap your cloak around you and follow me." ⁹He went out and followed, and he did not know that what was happening through the angel was real — he thought he was seeing a vision. ¹⁰When they had passed the first guard and the second, they came to the iron gate leading into the city. It opened for them by itself, and they went out and went along one street, and immediately the angel left him. ¹¹When Peter came to himself, he said, "Now I know for certain that the Lord has sent his angel and rescued me from the hand of Herod and from all that the Jewish people were expecting." ¹²When he realized this, he went to the house of Mary, the mother of John who was called Mark, where many were gathered together and were praying. ¹³When he knocked at the door of the gateway, a servant girl named Rhoda came to answer. ¹⁴Recognizing Peter's voice, she was so overjoyed that she did not open the gate but ran inside and reported that Peter was standing at the gate. ¹⁵They said to her, "You are out of your mind." But she kept insisting that it was so. They said, "It is his angel." ¹⁶But Peter kept on knocking, and when they opened the door, they saw him and were astonished. ¹⁷Motioning to them with his hand to be silent, he described to them how the Lord had brought him out of the prison. And he said, "Report these things to James and to the brothers." Then he departed and went to another place. ¹⁸When day came, there was no small commotion among the soldiers over what had become of Peter. ¹⁹Herod searched for him and could not find him, and after examining the guards, he ordered them to be led away to execution. Then he went down from Judea to Caesarea and stayed there. ²⁰No

Herod was furious with the people of Tyre and Sidon. They came to him with one accord, and having persuaded Blastus, the king's chamberlain, they asked for peace, because their country depended on the king's territory for food. ²¹On an appointed day Herod put on his royal robes, took his seat on the tribunal, and delivered a public address to them. ²²And the people were shouting, "The voice of a god and not of a man!" ²³Immediately an angel of the Lord struck him down, because he did not give God the glory, and he was eaten by worms and died. ²⁴But the word of God continued to increase and spread. ²⁵And Barnabas and Saul returned from Jerusalem when they had completed their mission of relief, bringing with them John who was called Mark.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase 'laid violent hands on' (epebalen tas cheiras kakosai) combines physical seizure with intent to harm. 'Herod the king' is Herod Agrippa I, grandson of Herod the Great, who ruled all of Judea from AD 41-44 under Emperor Claudius.
2. James son of Zebedee becomes the first of the Twelve to be martyred. Luke reports it in a single sentence with no elaboration — a striking restraint. Execution by sword (machaira) was considered a more honorable death than crucifixion. This James should be distinguished from James the brother of Jesus, who leads the Jerusalem church (15:13, 21:18).
3. Herod's motivation is political popularity (areston estin tois Ioudaiois, 'it was pleasing to the Jews'). The parenthetical note about the Feast of Unleavened Bread (immediately following Passover) creates a parallel with Jesus's arrest during the same festival season. The timing also explains why Herod delays the trial — he will not execute during the holy week.
4. Sixteen soldiers (four squads of four, tessarsin tetradiois) were assigned to Peter — an extraordinary security measure, likely prompted by the earlier escape in Acts 5:19. The KJV's 'Easter' is anachronistic; the Greek pascha refers to the Jewish Passover festival. Herod plans a public trial for maximum political effect.
5. The contrast is dramatic: 'Peter was kept in prison, but...' (ho men oun... de...) — human power holds Peter, divine power is invoked through prayer. The adverb ektenos ('earnestly, fervently, unceasingly') conveys intensity and persistence, not merely duration.
6. Peter sleeps soundly on the eve of his expected execution — a detail that suggests either extraordinary faith or exhaustion, likely both. He is chained to a soldier on each side (standard Roman practice for high-security prisoners), with additional guards at the door. The security emphasis makes the coming escape unmistakably supernatural.
7. The angel's appearance is accompanied by light (phos elampen) — a theophanic marker. The angel must physically strike (pataxas) Peter's side to wake him, reinforcing how deeply he was sleeping. The chains falling (exepesan hai haluseis) without waking the soldiers is the first of several miraculous details that bypass the elaborate security.
8. The step-by-step instructions — belt, sandals, cloak — suggest Peter is disoriented and needs explicit guidance. The detail is vivid and personal, likely reflecting Peter's own retelling of the experience. Each instruction must be given individually.
9. Peter's confusion between reality and vision (horama) is psychologically realistic. The experience is so extraordinary that he cannot distinguish it from a dream. Luke's honest portrayal of Peter's disorientation adds credibility to the account.
10. The word automate ('by itself, of its own accord') — from which English derives 'automatic' — describes the iron gate opening without human or visible cause. The angel departs abruptly (eutheos apeste) once Peter is safely in the city, having completed the rescue mission.
11. The phrase 'came to himself' (en heauto genomenos) marks the transition from trance-like confusion to clear awareness. Peter recognizes both the divine source of his rescue and its double significance: deliverance from Herod's power and from the people's expectation of a public execution.
12. Mary's house apparently served as a meeting place for the Jerusalem church — she was likely a woman of means to host such gatherings. John Mark (Ioannou tou epikaloumenou Markou) is traditionally identified as the author of the Gospel of Mark. He is Barnabas's cousin (Colossians 4:10) and will accompany Barnabas and Saul on their first journey (13:5).
13. The name Rhode ('Rhoda') means 'rose.' The paidiske ('servant girl') answering the outer gate suggests a household of some size and status. The detail of her name suggests she was known to the early Christian community and may have been a source for this account.
14. The scene is vividly comic: Rhoda recognizes Peter's voice, becomes so excited (apo tes charas, 'from joy') that she forgets to open the gate, and runs to tell the others while Peter remains standing outside. Luke preserves this detail — likely from eyewitness testimony — with evident delight.
15. The church that has been praying for Peter's deliverance refuses to believe it has happened. The accusation mainei ('you are mad, you are out of your mind') and the alternative explanation 'it is his angel' (ho angelos estin autou) reflect the Jewish belief that each person has a guardian angel who can appear in their likeness. The irony is rich: they would rather believe in an angel's appearance than in an answered prayer.
16. Peter's persistent knocking (epemenen krouon) while the church debates inside adds to the scene's humor and humanity. Their astonishment (exestesan) upon seeing him demonstrates that they were praying without fully expecting the answer they received.

17. Peter gestures for silence (*kataseisas te cheiri sigan*) — the excited group needs calming. The 'James' referenced is James the brother of Jesus, who has emerged as the leader of the Jerusalem church after the apostle James's execution. Peter's departure to 'another place' (*heteron topon*) is deliberately vague — Luke either does not know or chooses not to reveal where Peter went, perhaps for security reasons.
18. Luke's characteristic litotes — 'no small commotion' (*tarachos ouk oligos*) — means extreme agitation. Under Roman military law, guards who lost a prisoner could face the prisoner's punishment, making their distress a matter of life and death.
19. The verb *apachthenai* ('to be led away') is a euphemism for execution — the guards pay with their lives for Peter's escape. Herod's move from Jerusalem to Caesarea shifts the scene to the Roman administrative capital, where his own death will follow.
20. Tyre and Sidon were Phoenician coastal cities dependent on Galilee's agricultural production for grain — an economic reality attested since the time of Solomon (1 Kings 5:9-11). Their need for peace (*eirenēn*) was economic, not military. Blastus's role as chamberlain (*epi tou koitonos*, literally 'over the bedchamber') gave him personal access to Herod.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 5:9-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Josephus describes the same scene: Herod wore a garment made entirely of silver that glittered spectacularly in the morning sun (*Antiquities* 19.344). The *bema* ('tribunal, judgment seat') was the raised platform from which official pronouncements were made.
22. The crowd's acclamation — 'a god's voice, not a man's' (*theou phone kai ouk anthropou*) — is blasphemous flattery. In the Roman imperial context, divine honors for rulers were common, but Jewish sensibility found such claims abhorrent. Herod's failure to deflect this worship seals his fate.
23. The same angelic agency that rescued Peter now strikes Herod. The stated reason — 'he did not give God the glory' (*ouk edoken ten doxan to theo*) — is the opposite of Peter's response in 10:26 when Cornelius worshiped him. The detail of being 'eaten by worms' (*skolekobros*) describes a horrifying death. Josephus similarly reports that Herod was seized with sudden abdominal pain and died five days later (*Antiquities* 19.346-350). Herod Agrippa I died in AD 44.
24. Luke's summary statement contrasts human power with divine word: Herod dies, but the word grows. The verbs *euxanen* ('increased') and *eplethuneto* ('multiplied') are growth language that personifies the gospel as a living, expanding force. This is one of Luke's periodic progress reports (cf. 6:7, 9:31, 16:5, 19:20).
25. Some manuscripts read 'returned to Jerusalem' (*eis Ierousalem*) and others 'returned from Jerusalem' (*ex Ierousalem*). The SBLGNT reads *eis*, but the context — they had gone to Jerusalem with the famine relief (11:30) — means they are returning from Jerusalem to Antioch. They bring John Mark with them, setting the stage for the first missionary journey in chapter 13.

13

Summary: Acts 13 marks the beginning of the first missionary journey. The Holy Spirit commissions Barnabas and Saul from the church at Antioch. They travel to Cyprus, where they encounter the sorcerer Bar-Jesus (Elymas) and the proconsul Sergius Paulus. From this point, Saul begins using his Roman name Paul, and Paul emerges as the mission's leader. They sail to Perga in Pamphylia, where John Mark departs. In Pisidian Antioch, Paul delivers a major synagogue sermon surveying Israel's history from the exodus through David to Jesus, declaring forgiveness of sins through Christ and warning of judgment on those who reject the message. Many respond positively, but Jewish opposition arises, and Paul and Barnabas announce their turn to the Gentiles, citing Isaiah 49:6. The Gentiles rejoice, but the missionaries are expelled from the region.

What Makes This Remarkable: Paul's sermon in Pisidian Antioch is the longest recorded speech in Acts directed at a Jewish audience and serves as Luke's model for Paul's synagogue preaching. It parallels Peter's Pentecost sermon in structure but with distinctly Pauline emphases: justification, the inadequacy of the law of Moses, and the prophetic warning against rejection. The transition from 'Saul' to 'Paul' occurs mid-narrative (13:9) without explanation — Luke simply begins using the Roman name, signaling the shift toward the Gentile world. The declaration 'we are turning to the Gentiles' (13:46) is one of the most pivotal statements in Acts.

*Translation Friction: The identity of 'Simeon called Niger' (v. 1) has generated speculation — Niger means 'black' in Latin, suggesting African origin. Lucius of Cyrene is North African. Manaen is described as a *syntrophos* ('childhood companion') of Herod Antipas. This leadership team reflects remarkable ethnic and social diversity. Paul's sermon condenses Israelite history selectively, and his claim that the law of Moses could not justify (v. 39) introduces Pauline soteriology into the narrative. The quotation composite in verses 33-35 draws from Psalm 2, Isaiah 55, and Psalm 16.*

Connections: The commissioning scene (vv. 1-3) parallels Isaiah 6 and Jeremiah 1 as a prophetic sending. Paul's historical survey echoes Stephen's speech in Acts 7. The citation of Isaiah 49:6 ('a light for the Gentiles') connects to Simeon's prophecy in Luke 2:32. The pattern of synagogue preaching followed by Jewish rejection and Gentile reception becomes the template for Paul's ministry throughout Acts.

¹Now there were in the church at Antioch prophets and teachers: Barnabas, Simeon who was called Niger, Lucius of Cyrene, Manaen who had been a childhood companion of Herod the tetrarch, and Saul. ²While they were worshiping the Lord and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them." ³Then after fasting and praying, they laid their hands on them and sent them off. ⁴So, being sent out by the Holy Spirit, they went down to Seleucia, and from there they sailed to Cyprus. ⁵When they arrived at Salamis, they proclaimed the word of God in the synagogues of the Jews. They also had John as their assistant. ⁶When they had traveled through the whole island as far as Paphos, they found a certain man, a Jewish sorcerer and false prophet named Bar-Jesus, ⁷Which was with the deputy of the region, Sergius Paulus, a prudent person. Who named for Barnabas and Saul, and desired to listen the message of God. ⁸But Elymas the sorcerer (for that is the meaning of his name) opposed them, seeking to turn the proconsul away from the faith. ⁹But Saul, who was also called Paul, filled with the Holy Spirit, looked intently at him ¹⁰Stated, O full of all cunning and all mischief, you child of the devil, you enemy of all righteousness, wilt you not cease to pervert the right ways of the Lord? ¹¹And now, look, the hand of the Lord is against you, and you will be blind and unable to see the sun for a time." Immediately mist and darkness fell on him, and he went about seeking someone to lead him by the hand. ¹²Then the proconsul believed, when he saw what had happened, for he was astonished at the teaching of the Lord. ¹³Paul and his companions set sail from Paphos and came to Perga in Pamphylia. But John left them and returned to Jerusalem. ¹⁴But they went on from Perga and came to Antioch in Pisidia. On the Sabbath day they went into the synagogue and sat down. ¹⁵After the reading of the Law and the Prophets, the synagogue leaders sent word to them, saying, "Brothers, if you have any word of encouragement for the people, speak." ¹⁶So Paul stood up and motioning with his hand said, "Men of Israel and you who fear God, listen. ¹⁷The God of this people Israel chose our fathers and made the people great during their stay in the land of Egypt, and with uplifted arm he led them out of it. ¹⁸And for about forty years he put up with them in the wilderness. ¹⁹After destroying seven nations in the land of Canaan, he gave them their land as an inheritance ²⁰Following that he offered to them judges concerning the space of four hundred and fifty years, until Samuel the prophet. ²¹Then they asked for a king, and God gave them Saul the son of Kish, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, for forty years. ²²After removing him, he raised up David as their king, to whom he also bore witness and said, 'I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after my heart, who will do all my will.' ²³From this man's offspring God has brought to Israel a Savior, Jesus, as he promised. ²⁴Before his coming, John had proclaimed a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel. ²⁵As John was finishing his course, he said, 'What do you suppose that I am? I am not he. But after me one is coming, the sandals of whose feet I am not worthy to untie.' ²⁶Brothers, sons of Abraham's family, and those among you who fear God, to us the message of this salvation has been sent. ²⁷For the residents of Jerusalem and their rulers, because they did not recognize him nor understand the words of the prophets that are read every Sabbath, fulfilled them by condemning him. ²⁸Though they found no grounds for a death sentence, they asked Pilate to have him executed. ²⁹When they had carried out everything that was written about him, they took him down from the tree and laid him in a tomb. ³⁰However, God brought him back to life. ³¹He was seen numerous days of them which arrived up with him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are his witnesses to the people. ³²And we bring you the good news that the promise made to the fathers ³³God has fulfilled this for us, their children, by raising up Jesus, as it is also written in the second Psalm: 'You are my Son; today I have begotten you.' ³⁴And as for the fact that he raised him from the dead, no longer to return to decay, he has spoken in this way: 'I will give you the holy and sure blessings of David.' ³⁵Therefore he also says in another psalm, 'You will not let your Holy One see decay.' ³⁶For David, after he had served God's purpose in his own generation, fell asleep and was laid with his fathers and saw decay, ³⁷Yet he, whom God raised again, noticed no corruption. ³⁸Let it be known to you therefore, brothers, that through this man forgiveness of sins is proclaimed to you, ³⁹By him all that trust are justified from all things, from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. ⁴⁰Beware, therefore, lest what is said in the prophets should come about: ⁴¹'Look, you scoffers, be astounded and perish, for I am doing a work in your days, a

work that you will never believe, even if someone tells you."⁴² As they went out, the people urged them to speak about these things the next Sabbath.⁴³ When the meeting of the synagogue broke up, many Jews and devout converts followed Paul and Barnabas, who spoke with them and urged them to continue in the grace of God.⁴⁴ The next Sabbath almost the whole city gathered to hear the word of the Lord.⁴⁵ But when the Jews saw the crowds, they were filled with jealousy and began contradicting what was spoken by Paul, reviling him.⁴⁶ And Paul and Barnabas spoke out boldly, saying, "It was necessary that the word of God be spoken first to you. Since you thrust it aside and judge yourselves unworthy of eternal life, we are turning to the Gentiles.⁴⁷ For so the Lord has commanded us, saying, 'I have made you a light for the Gentiles, that you may bring salvation to the ends of the earth.'" ⁴⁸ When the Gentiles heard this, they began rejoicing and glorifying the word of the Lord, and as many as were appointed to eternal life believed.⁴⁹ And the word of the Lord was spreading throughout the whole region.⁵⁰ But the Jews incited the devout women of high standing and the leading men of the city, stirred up persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and drove them out of their district.⁵¹ So they shook the dust off their feet against them and went to Iconium.⁵² And with the holy ghost, and the followers were filled with joy.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The leadership team reflects extraordinary diversity: Barnabas (a Levite from Cyprus), Simeon Niger (likely of African descent, the Latin cognomen Niger meaning 'black'), Lucius of Cyrene (North African), Manaen (syntrophos, 'foster brother' or 'childhood companion' of Herod Antipas, thus from the ruling class), and Saul (a Pharisee from Tarsus). Barnabas stands first, Saul last — an order that will soon reverse.
2. The verb leitourgounton ('worshiping, ministering') is the root of 'liturgy' and denotes formal, communal worship. The Spirit speaks directly — how is not specified (through a prophet, an audible voice, or communal discernment). The command 'set apart for me' (aphorise de moi) echoes God's call of the prophets (cf. Jeremiah 1:5, Galatians 1:15 where Paul uses the same verb of his own calling).
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 1:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The laying on of hands (epithentes tas cheiras) is a commissioning gesture, not ordination in the later ecclesiastical sense. Barnabas and Saul are already prophets and teachers (v. 1); the church is confirming and releasing what the Spirit has directed. The verb apelusan ('released, sent away') suggests both permission and blessing.
4. Luke attributes the sending to the Holy Spirit (ekpempthentes hypo tou hagiou pneumatos), not merely to the church. Seleucia was Antioch's port city on the Mediterranean, about sixteen miles west. Cyprus was Barnabas's homeland (4:36), making it a natural first destination.
5. Salamis was the largest city on the eastern coast of Cyprus. The plural 'synagogues' indicates a significant Jewish population. The pattern of beginning in synagogues becomes standard Pauline practice. John (Mark) serves as hyperetes ('assistant, attendant'), a role that may have included practical arrangements and possibly catechetical instruction.
6. Paphos was the Roman capital of Cyprus, on the western coast. Bar-Jesus (Bariesou, 'son of Jesus/Joshua') is identified with three descriptors: magos ('sorcerer, magician'), pseudoprophetes ('false prophet'), and Ioudaios ('Jewish'). A Jewish man practicing sorcery and claiming prophetic gifts violated Torah prohibitions (Deuteronomy 18:10-12).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:10-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Luke correctly identifies the governor as anthupatos ('proconsul'), the title for governors of senatorial provinces — Cyprus had been transferred to senatorial control in 22 BC. The name Sergius Paulus is attested in inscriptions. His description as sunetos ('intelligent, discerning') distinguishes him from Bar-Jesus's influence.
8. The name Elymas (Elymas) is presented as a translation or equivalent of his function, though the etymology is uncertain — it may derive from an Aramaic or Arabic root meaning 'wise man' or 'sorcerer.' His opposition is strategic: if the proconsul converts, Elymas loses his position and influence.
9. This is the pivotal moment when Luke introduces the name Paul (Paulos). The parenthetical 'who was also called Paul' (ho kai Paulos) indicates he had both names throughout — Saul was his Jewish name, Paul his Roman cognomen. From this point forward, Luke uses only 'Paul.' The transition occurs as Paul confronts a Roman-world figure, signaling the Gentile orientation of his mission.
10. Paul's denunciation is fierce and deliberate. The title 'son of the devil' (huie diabolou) is a pointed reversal of Bar-Jesus's name ('son of Jesus/salvation') — he is actually a son of the adversary. The phrase 'making crooked the straight paths of the Lord' (diastrephon tas hodous tou kyriou tas eutheias) alludes to Isaiah 40:3-4 and its call to prepare straight paths.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:3-4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

11. The punishment is temporary ('for a time,' *achri kairou*) and fitting: the one who sought to keep others in spiritual darkness is plunged into physical darkness. There may be a parallel with Paul's own experience of temporary blindness on the Damascus road (9:8-9), suggesting the possibility of eventual restoration and conversion.
12. The proconsul's faith is prompted by what he saw (*idon to gegonos*) but grounded in the teaching (*didache tou kyriou*). Luke distinguishes between the miracle as attention-getting and the teaching as the actual content of faith. This is the first conversion of a Roman official in Paul's ministry.
13. The phrase 'Paul and his companions' (*hoi peri Paulon*) marks the shift in leadership — Barnabas is now subordinate. John Mark's departure (*apochoresas*, 'having departed, withdrawn') is recorded without explanation, but Paul later viewed it as a desertion serious enough to cause a sharp disagreement with Barnabas (15:37-39). Perga was about eight miles inland from the coast of Pamphylia in southern Asia Minor.
14. Pisidian Antioch (distinct from Syrian Antioch) was a Roman colony in the interior of Asia Minor, about 100 miles north of Perga through difficult mountain terrain. Sitting down in the synagogue indicates their role as visitors; speakers were typically seated during instruction.
15. The synagogue service included readings from the Torah (*nomos*) and the Prophets (*prophetai*), followed by an invitation for qualified visitors to offer a 'word of encouragement' (*logos parakleseos*). This was standard practice and gave Paul a natural platform. The plural *archisynagogoi* ('synagogue leaders') suggests a council of leaders rather than a single ruler.
16. Paul addresses two groups: 'Men of Israel' (ethnic Jews) and 'those who fear God' (God-fearing Gentiles who attended synagogue). The dual address reflects the mixed audience and anticipates the sermon's universal conclusion. The gesture of motioning with the hand (*kataseisas te cheiri*) is characteristic of Paul in Acts (cf. 21:40, 26:1).
17. Paul begins his historical survey with the exodus, the foundational event of Israelite identity. The phrase 'with uplifted arm' (*meta brachionos hupselou*) is a classic Old Testament metaphor for divine power in the exodus (cf. Exodus 6:6, Deuteronomy 5:15). The word *paroikia* ('sojourning, stay as foreigners') emphasizes Israel's alien status in Egypt.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 6:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 5:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *etropophoresn* has two possible readings: *tropophoresn* ('bore with their ways, endured their behavior') or *trophophoresn* ('nourished, cared for them'). The SBLGNT reads the former, emphasizing God's patience with Israel's wilderness rebellion. The forty-year period is standard (cf. Numbers 14:34, Deuteronomy 8:2).
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 14:34 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 8:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The seven nations of Canaan are listed in Deuteronomy 7:1. The verb *katekleronomenen* ('gave as an inheritance, allotted') connects the land to the covenant promise to Abraham (Genesis 15:18-21).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 7:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 15:18-21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The 450 years likely covers the period from the patriarchs through the judges, not the judges period alone. The chronology is approximate and theological rather than strictly historical. Samuel serves as the bridge between the judges and the monarchy.
21. Paul, himself from the tribe of Benjamin and originally named Saul, mentions his royal namesake. Saul's forty-year reign is not stated in the Old Testament but is attested by Josephus (*Antiquities* 6.378). The people's request for a king is presented negatively in 1 Samuel 8:4-22.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 8:4-22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Paul's quotation combines Psalm 89:20 ('I have found David'), 1 Samuel 13:14 ('a man after my heart'), and Isaiah 44:28 ('who will do all my will') into a composite testimony. The phrase 'a man after my heart' (*andra kata ten kardian mou*) is the theological apex of the historical survey — David's heart orientation toward God is the quality that defines his kingship.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 13:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 89:20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 44:28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

- 23.** The entire historical survey has been leading to this declaration: Jesus is David's descendant and Israel's promised Savior. The phrase *kat' epangelian* ('according to promise') grounds Jesus's coming in God's covenant faithfulness to David (2 Samuel 7:12-16). The title *sotera* ('Savior') connects to the meaning of Jesus's name ('the LORD saves').
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 7:12-16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 24.** John the Baptist serves as the herald (*prokeryxantos*, 'having proclaimed beforehand') who prepared for Jesus's arrival. The 'baptism of repentance' (*baptisma metanoias*) was John's distinctive rite, calling Israel to prepare for the coming Messiah.
- 25.** John explicitly denies being the Messiah and points to one greater. The image of untying sandals describes the task of the lowest slave — John considers himself unworthy even of this menial service for the one who follows him. The verb *ephlrou* ('was completing, was finishing') uses the same root as 'fulfill,' suggesting John's ministry had a divinely appointed course (*dromon*, 'race, course').
- 26.** Paul again addresses both groups — Jewish descendants of Abraham and God-fearing Gentiles. The phrase 'message of this salvation' (*ho logos tes soterias tautes*) identifies the gospel as the fulfillment of the salvation story Paul has been narrating. The passive 'has been sent' (*exapestale*) indicates divine initiative.
- 27.** The irony is profound: those who read the prophets every Sabbath fulfilled the prophets' words by rejecting the one the prophets foretold. Their ignorance (*agnoesantes*) does not absolve them but paradoxically accomplishes God's purpose. Paul presents the crucifixion as both human failure and divine plan.
- 28.** The absence of legitimate charges (*medemian aitian thanatou*, 'no cause of death') echoes the trial narratives in the Gospels where Pilate repeatedly declares Jesus innocent. The request for execution despite innocence heightens the injustice that God's plan nevertheless encompasses.
- 29.** Again, the 'tree' (*xylon*) alludes to Deuteronomy 21:22-23. The verb *etelesn* ('completed, fulfilled') shows that even the enemies' actions accomplished what Scripture had foretold. Paul compresses the burial narrative into a single clause, moving quickly toward the resurrection.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:22-23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** The decisive 'but' (*de*) marks the reversal: human authorities condemned him, but God raised him. This is the kerygmatic core — the same proclamation found in every apostolic sermon in Acts.
- 31.** Paul appeals to the testimony of eyewitnesses (*martyres*) who are still alive and active. He notably does not include himself among the Galilean witnesses, though he will later appeal to his own Damascus road encounter (26:12-18). The phrase 'many days' (*epi hemeras pleious*) refers to the forty-day period mentioned in Acts 1:3.
- 32.** The verb *euangelizometha* ('we bring good news, we preach the gospel') gives the formal content of the mission: the promise to the patriarchs has been fulfilled. Paul presents the gospel not as something new but as the fulfillment of Israel's oldest hopes.
- 33.** The quotation from Psalm 2:7 was originally spoken at the coronation of Israelite kings. Paul applies it to Jesus's resurrection — the 'begetting' is not biological but enthronement. The resurrection is Jesus's installation as the messianic King who fulfills the Davidic promise. The verb *anastesas* ('having raised up') can mean both 'raised to life' and 'raised up as a leader' — both senses may be intended.
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 2:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** The quotation from Isaiah 55:3 (LXX) promises the 'holy and faithful things of David' (*ta hosia Daud ta pista*) — the covenant mercies promised to David now fulfilled in Jesus's resurrection. The key point is 'no longer to return to decay' (*meketi mellonta hypostrephein eis diaphthoran*) — Jesus's resurrection is permanent and irreversible, unlike temporary resuscitations.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 55:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** This quotation from Psalm 16:10 (LXX 15:10) is the same text Peter used at Pentecost (Acts 2:27). Paul now applies the same argument: David's words cannot refer to David himself (who did see decay, v. 36) but must refer to the Messiah whose body did not decay in the tomb.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 16:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** Paul's argument mirrors Peter's in Acts 2:29 — David died, was buried, and his body decayed. Therefore Psalm 16 must be prophetic, pointing beyond David to someone whose body would not decay. The phrase 'served God's purpose in his own generation' (*idia genea huperetesas te tou theou boule*) is a concise and dignified epitaph for David.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The contrast is stark and simple: David saw decay; the one God raised did not. The argument depends on the historical fact of Jesus's resurrection and the physical preservation of his body in the brief period between death and resurrection.

38. Paul moves from the historical argument to the soteriological application. 'Through this man' (dia toutou) identifies Jesus as the agent of forgiveness. The noun aphesis ('forgiveness, release, remission') carries overtones of the Jubilee year's release of debts (Leviticus 25).
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 25 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. This is the most explicitly Pauline theological statement in Acts, introducing the concept of justification by faith. The verb dikaiontai ('is justified, is declared righteous') is the cornerstone of Pauline soteriology (cf. Romans 3:21-26, Galatians 2:16). The law of Moses could not achieve full justification; faith in Christ accomplishes what the law could not.
40. Paul shifts to warning, quoting the prophets as a cautionary voice. The imperative blepete ('beware, watch out') introduces urgency — the offer of grace carries the gravity of potential rejection.
41. Paul quotes Habakkuk 1:5 from the Septuagint. In its original context, the prophet warned that God was raising up the Babylonians as an instrument of judgment — an act so incredible that people would not believe it even when told. Paul applies this to the present: God is doing something through Jesus that scoffers will refuse to believe. The word kataphronetai ('scoffers, despisers') replaces the Hebrew's 'among the nations,' adapting the warning to the audience.
41. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Habakkuk 1:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
42. The SBLGNT does not specify 'Gentiles' as the ones asking — the request comes from the general audience. The phrase eis to metaxy sabbaton ('on the next/intervening Sabbath') indicates eagerness to hear more.
43. The sebomenoi proselytoi ('devout converts/proselytes') are Gentiles who had fully converted to Judaism, distinct from the God-fearers. Paul and Barnabas encourage them to 'continue in the grace of God' (prosmenein te chariti tou theou) — to remain in what they have received rather than returning to previous ways.
44. The hyperbolic 'almost the whole city' (schedon pasa he polis) indicates an extraordinary response. The curiosity extends well beyond the synagogue community to the broader population of Pisidian Antioch. Some manuscripts read 'word of God' (tou theou) rather than 'word of the Lord' (tou kyriou).
45. The motivating emotion is zelos ('jealousy, zeal') — the crowds' enthusiasm for Paul's message threatened the synagogue leaders' authority and social standing. The verb blasphemountes ('blaspheming, reviling') likely means they spoke abusively about the claims being made for Jesus.
46. The adverb parresiasamenoi ('speaking boldly, with confidence') characterizes the apostolic proclamation throughout Acts. The theological principle 'to you first' (hymen proton) reflects Romans 1:16 — the gospel goes first to the Jew, then to the Gentile. The phrase 'judge yourselves unworthy of eternal life' (ouk axious krinete heautous tes aioniou zoes) is ironic — by rejecting the message, they pass sentence on themselves.
47. Paul quotes Isaiah 49:6, originally addressed to the Servant of the LORD, and applies it to his own mission. The 'light for the Gentiles' (phos ethnon) echoes Simeon's prophecy about the infant Jesus (Luke 2:32). Paul sees his Gentile mission not as a departure from God's plan but as its fulfillment — Isaiah had always envisioned salvation reaching 'the ends of the earth' (eschatou tes ges).
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 49:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
48. The phrase 'as many as were appointed to eternal life' (hosoi esan tetagmenoi eis zoen aionion) uses the perfect passive participle of tasso ('arrange, appoint, assign'). The divine passive indicates God as the one who appoints. This is one of the strongest statements of divine election in Acts, presented without qualification or explanation.
49. The verb diephereto ('was being carried through, was spreading') again personifies the word as an active agent. The spread is geographic — 'throughout the whole region' (di holes tes choras) — extending beyond Pisidian Antioch to the surrounding territory.
50. The opponents work through influential social networks — 'devout women of high standing' (sebomenas gynaikas tas euschemonas) were God-fearing Gentile women of the upper class who had synagogue connections. By mobilizing civic elites against the missionaries, the Jewish leaders use social pressure rather than theological argument.
51. Shaking off dust (ektinaxamenoi ton koniorton) is a gesture of renunciation commanded by Jesus (Luke 9:5, 10:11), symbolically declaring that those who reject the message bear responsibility for their own judgment. Iconium lay about 80 miles southeast of Pisidian Antioch.
52. The chapter ends not with the persecution but with the persecuted community's joy. Despite the missionaries' expulsion, the new believers remain, filled with joy (charas) and the Holy Spirit (pneumatOS hagiou). Persecution has failed to destroy what God has planted.

14

Summary: *Acts 14 continues the first missionary journey as Paul and Barnabas preach in Iconium, where both Jews and Gentiles respond but opposition forces them to flee. They move to Lystra, where Paul heals a man lame from birth. The astonished crowds assume Paul and Barnabas are the Greek gods Hermes and Zeus and attempt to offer sacrifices to them. Paul and Barnabas rush to stop the worship, declaring themselves mere mortals and preaching the living God who made heaven and earth. Jews from Antioch and Iconium arrive and turn the crowd against them; Paul is stoned and dragged outside the city, left for dead. He survives, and they move on to Derbe. After making disciples there, they retrace their route, strengthening the new churches and appointing elders, before returning to Antioch in Syria.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Lystra episode reveals the volatile religious landscape of rural Asia Minor — the same crowd that tries to worship Paul as a god quickly turns to stoning him. The attempted sacrifice to 'Zeus and Hermes' reflects a local legend recorded by Ovid (Metamorphoses 8.611-724) about these gods visiting the region in human disguise. Paul's speech at Lystra (vv. 15-17) is the first recorded address to a purely pagan audience with no Jewish biblical framework, and it accordingly argues from creation and providence rather than from Scripture. The pattern of appointing elders (presbyters) in every church (v. 23) shows rapid institutional development.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of Barnabas as 'Zeus' and Paul as 'Hermes' (v. 12) is explained by the fact that Paul was the chief speaker (ho hegoumenos tou logou), and Hermes was the messenger god. Luke uses the Greek names Zeus and Hermes rather than the local Lycaonian equivalents. The Lycaonian language (v. 11) was a local Anatolian dialect distinct from Greek, which explains why Paul and Barnabas did not immediately understand what the crowd intended. Paul's survival of stoning (v. 20) is remarkable — whether by miracle or natural resilience, Luke does not specify.*

Connections: *The healing at Lystra parallels Peter's healing of the lame man at the temple gate (Acts 3:1-10). Paul's natural theology speech anticipates his fuller treatment on Mars Hill (Acts 17:22-31). The stoning at Lystra is likely the event Paul references in 2 Corinthians 11:25. The appointment of elders connects to Paul's later instructions to Timothy and Titus about church leadership. The return journey through hostile territory demonstrates the principle stated in verse 22: 'through many tribulations we must enter the kingdom of God.'*

¹Now in Iconium they entered the Jewish synagogue together and spoke in such a way that a great number of both Jews and Greeks believed. ²But the Jews who refused to believe stirred up the Gentiles and poisoned their minds against the brothers. ³So they remained for a long time, speaking boldly for the Lord, who bore witness to the word of his grace, granting signs and wonders to be done through their hands. ⁴But the people of the city were divided; some sided with the Jews and some with the apostles. ⁵When an attempt was made by both Gentiles and Jews, with their rulers, to mistreat and stone them, ⁶Indeed, they were ware of it, and fled to Lystra and Derbe, cities of Lycaonia, and to the region that lieth round concerning:. ⁷In deed, there they preached the gospel. ⁸Now at Lystra there was a man sitting who could not use his feet. He was lame from birth and had never walked. ⁹He listened to Paul speaking. And Paul, looking intently at him and seeing that he had faith to be made well, ¹⁰Stated with a loud voice, Stand upright on your feet. Then he leaped and walked. ¹¹When the crowds saw what Paul had done, they lifted up their voices, saying in the Lycaonian language, "The gods have come down to us in human form!" ¹²They called Barnabas Zeus and Paul Hermes, because Paul was the chief speaker. ¹³The priest of Zeus, whose temple was at the entrance to the city, brought oxen and garlands to the gates and wanted to offer sacrifice with the crowds. ¹⁴But when the apostles Barnabas and Paul heard of it, they tore their garments and rushed out into the crowd, crying out, ¹⁵"Men, why are you doing these things? We too are men with the same nature as you, and we bring you good news, that you should turn from these worthless things to the living God, who made the heaven and the earth and the sea and everything in them. ¹⁶In past generations he allowed all the nations to walk in their own ways. ¹⁷Yet he did not leave himself without witness, for he did good by giving you rains from heaven and fruitful seasons, satisfying your hearts with food and gladness." ¹⁸Even with these words they scarcely restrained the crowds from offering sacrifice to them. ¹⁹But Jews came from Antioch

and Iconium, and having won over the crowds, they stoned Paul and dragged him out of the city, supposing him to be dead. ²⁰But when the disciples gathered around him, he got up and entered the city, and on the next day he went on with Barnabas to Derbe. ²¹After they had proclaimed the good news to that city and made many disciples, they returned to Lystra, then to Iconium, and then to Antioch. ²²Confirming the souls of the followers, and exhorting them to continue in the faith, and that we must by way of much tribulation enter into God's kingdom. ²³And when they had appointed elders for them in every church, with prayer and fasting they committed them to the Lord in whom they had believed. ²⁴Then they passed through Pisidia and came to Pamphylia. ²⁵And after speaking the word in Perga, they went down to Attalia. ²⁶From there they sailed to Antioch, where they had been commended to the grace of God for the work that they had now completed. ²⁷When they arrived, they gathered the church together and reported all that God had done with them, and how he had opened a door of faith to the Gentiles. ²⁸And they remained no small time with the disciples.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Iconium (modern Konya, Turkey) was a significant city in the region of Phrygia/Galatia. The pattern continues: synagogue first, then broader response. The phrase 'spoke in such a way' (lalēsai houtōs hōste) credits the manner of their preaching, not merely its content, for the large response.
2. The verb apeithesantes ('who refused to believe, who were disobedient') combines unbelief with active resistance. The verb ekakosan ('poisoned, made evil, embittered') describes a deliberate campaign to turn Gentile opinion against the new believers.
3. Despite the opposition, they do not flee immediately but stay 'a long time' (hikanon chronon). The Lord himself is the active agent — he 'bore witness' (martyrounti) to the gospel message through signs and wonders. The missionaries are instruments ('through their hands'), not the source of miraculous power.
4. The verb eschisthe ('was divided, was split') is the root of 'schism.' Notably, Luke here calls Barnabas and Paul 'apostles' (apostolois) — one of only two places in Acts where this title extends beyond the Twelve (cf. v. 14). The city is literally torn between two allegiances.
5. The word horme ('attempt, rush, impulse') suggests a mob action rather than a legal proceeding. The coalition of Gentiles and Jews acting together is notable — opposition to the gospel unites otherwise divided groups.
6. Lystra was about 18 miles south-southwest of Iconium; Derbe about 60 miles southeast. Luke notes that these cities belong to Lycaonia, a distinct cultural region where the local language (v. 11) differed from Greek. Flight is strategic retreat, not cowardice — they continue preaching in the new location.
7. The periphrastic construction euangelizomenoi esan ('they were proclaiming the good news') emphasizes ongoing, continuous activity. Fleeing persecution does not interrupt the mission.
8. The threefold description — unable to use his feet, lame from birth, never walked — establishes the severity and permanence of the condition beyond any doubt, paralleling the description of the lame man at the temple gate (Acts 3:2). The healing that follows will be unmistakably miraculous.
9. Paul perceives the man's faith (pistin tou sothenai, literally 'faith to be saved/healed' — the verb sozo carries both meanings) through careful observation (atenisas, 'looking intently'). The connection between faith and healing echoes Jesus's own practice (cf. Mark 5:34, 10:52).
10. The loud voice (megale phone) makes the command public — this is no private healing but a demonstration before witnesses. The man's response — springing up (helato) and walking (periepatei) — is immediate and complete, echoing the healed man of Acts 3:8 who went 'walking and leaping and praising God.'
11. The crowds speak in Lycaonian (Lykaonisti), a local Anatolian language distinct from Greek, which is why Paul and Barnabas do not immediately understand what is being planned. Their interpretation — gods visiting in human form — reflects the local legend about Zeus and Hermes visiting the region, as recorded by the Roman poet Ovid.
12. The identification of Barnabas as Zeus (the chief god) may suggest that Barnabas had a more imposing physical presence. Paul is called Hermes because he was 'the chief speaker' (ho hegoumenos tou logou, literally 'the leader of the word'), and Hermes was the divine messenger and patron of speech. The KJV uses the Latin names Jupiter and Mercury.
13. The temple of Zeus 'at the entrance to the city' (tou ontos pro tes poleos) was a civic shrine guarding the city gates — a common feature of Greco-Roman cities. The priest brings oxen (taurous) for sacrifice and garlands (stemmata) of flowers for decorating the sacrificial animals and the honorees. This was a formal religious act, not merely spontaneous enthusiasm.
14. Tearing garments (diarrexantes ta himatia) is the traditional Jewish response to blasphemy (cf. Matthew 26:65). The urgency of their reaction — rushing (exepedesan) into the crowd, crying out (krazontes) — shows they understood the gravity of what was about to happen. Again Luke calls them 'apostles' (apostoloi), extending the title beyond the Twelve.
15. The word homoiopatheis ('of the same nature, with the same feelings') emphasizes shared humanity — we are not gods but people just like you. The term mataia ('worthless things, vain things, futilities') is the standard Septuagint designation for idols (cf. 1 Samuel 12:21, Jeremiah 2:5). Paul's appeal is to 'the living God' (theon zonta) who made everything — a creation-based argument for an audience without Jewish scriptural knowledge.

15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Samuel 12:21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 2:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Paul acknowledges a period of divine forbearance — God 'allowed' (eiasen) the nations to follow their own paths without direct intervention. This does not mean God approved of idolatry but that he did not immediately judge it. The same idea appears in Romans 3:25 and Acts 17:30.
17. God's 'witness' (amartyron) to himself is not Scripture (unknown to this audience) but creation's provision: rain, seasons, food, and joy. This is natural theology — the argument from creation and providence to the Creator. The agricultural imagery is especially appropriate for a rural Lycaonian audience dependent on seasonal rains for their crops.
18. The adverb *molis* ('scarcely, with difficulty') reveals how close they came to having sacrifices offered to them. The crowds' religious enthusiasm is so strong that even direct denial of divinity barely stops them. The cultural conditioning to honor visiting deities was deeply ingrained.
19. The volatility of the crowd is extreme: they shift from worshiping Paul as a god to stoning him at the instigation of visiting opponents. Jews traveled from Antioch (about 100 miles) and Iconium (about 18 miles) specifically to pursue and undermine Paul — their opposition was persistent and organized. Paul likely references this stoning in 2 Corinthians 11:25.
20. The scene is remarkable: Paul, left for dead after stoning, rises and walks back into the city. Luke does not call this a miracle, but the natural reading suggests something extraordinary. The 'disciples' (*matheton*) who gather around him are the new Lystran believers — the persecution has not prevented a community from forming. The very next day, Paul resumes the journey.
21. The verb *mathetheusantes* ('made disciples') goes beyond mere conversion — it implies instruction and formation. Remarkably, they retrace their route through the very cities from which they were expelled, risking renewed persecution in order to strengthen the fledgling churches.
22. The message is honest rather than triumphalist: 'through many tribulations' (*dia pollon thlipseon*) is presented not as a possibility but as a necessity (*dei*, 'it is necessary, one must'). Paul and Barnabas prepare the new believers for suffering, not from it. The phrase 'the kingdom of God' (*ten basileian tou theou*) is the eschatological goal that makes the tribulations bearable.
23. The verb *cheirotonestantes* ('having appointed, having chosen by raising hands') may indicate either appointment by the missionaries or election by the congregations with apostolic confirmation. The term *presbyterous* ('elders') follows the Jewish synagogue model of governance. These churches are mere weeks or months old, yet they receive formal leadership. The committing (*parethento*, 'entrusted') to the Lord acknowledges that the missionaries must leave and the Lord himself must sustain these communities.
24. The return journey moves south through the mountainous region of Pisidia to the coastal plain of Pamphylia, retracing their northward route.
25. On their initial passage through Perga (13:13-14), no preaching was recorded. Now, on the return, they preach there before descending to Attalia (modern Antalya), a port city on the Pamphylian coast from which they can sail back to Syria.
26. They return to their sending church — Syrian Antioch — completing a geographic and spiritual circle. The phrase 'commended to the grace of God' (*paradedomenoi te chariti tou theou*) recalls the commissioning in 13:1-3. The work (*ergon*) that the Spirit assigned (13:2) has been 'completed' (*eplerosen*) — the first missionary journey is finished.
27. The report emphasizes what 'God had done with them' (*ho theos epoiesen met auton*) — not their own accomplishments but God's work through them. The metaphor of an 'opened door of faith' (*enoixen thyran pisteos*) for the Gentiles becomes a recurring Pauline image (1 Corinthians 16:9, 2 Corinthians 2:12, Colossians 4:3).
28. Luke's *litotes* — 'no small time' (*chronon ouk oligon*) — means a considerable period. This interval in Antioch provides rest, reflection, and consolidation before the events of chapter 15 bring the question of Gentile inclusion to a head in Jerusalem.

15

Summary: Acts 15 records the Jerusalem Council, the most important deliberative assembly in the early church. Men from Judea arrive in Antioch teaching that Gentile believers must be circumcised to be saved. Paul and Barnabas dispute this strongly, and the church sends them to Jerusalem to resolve the question. Peter testifies about the Cornelius episode, arguing that God gave the Gentiles the same Spirit without requiring circumcision. Paul and Barnabas report the signs and wonders God performed among the Gentiles. James, the brother of Jesus, delivers the decisive judgment: Gentiles should not be burdened with circumcision but should abstain from food polluted by idols, from sexual immorality, from what has been strangled, and from blood. A letter is sent to the Gentile churches. The chapter closes with the sharp disagreement between Paul and Barnabas over John Mark, resulting in their separation — Barnabas taking Mark to Cyprus, Paul taking Silas through Syria and Cilicia.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Jerusalem Council resolves the most explosive question of the early church: must Gentile converts become Jews? The answer — no — is reached through a process combining testimony, scriptural argument, and communal discernment. James's citation of Amos 9:11-12 (from the Septuagint) provides the scriptural basis, arguing that God always intended to include Gentiles. The four prohibitions in the decree are widely debated: are they moral requirements, minimum purity rules for table fellowship, or echoes of the Noahide laws? The Paul-Barnabas split is recorded with remarkable honesty, showing that the early church was not free from personal conflict even among its greatest leaders.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the Jerusalem Council's decree and Paul's letters (especially Galatians 2) is complex and debated. Paul never quotes the decree in his letters and seems to handle the food issues differently (Romans 14, 1 Corinthians 8-10). The four prohibitions — idolatry, sexual immorality (porneia), what has been strangled, and blood — may reflect the 'laws for resident aliens' in Leviticus 17-18, which applied to non-Israelites living among God's people. James's quotation of Amos 9:11-12 follows the Septuagint, which differs significantly from the Hebrew text. The sharp disagreement (paroxysmos) between Paul and Barnabas is the last mention of Barnabas in Acts.*

Connections: *The Council resolves the tension introduced by the Cornelius episode (Acts 10-11) and the first missionary journey (Acts 13-14). Peter's argument reprises his defense in 11:1-18. James's leadership role confirms his emergence as head of the Jerusalem church (cf. 12:17, 21:18, Galatians 2:9). The decree's four prohibitions connect to Leviticus 17-18. The Paul-Silas partnership launches the second missionary journey (Acts 15:40-18:22).*

¹But some men came down from Judea and were teaching the brothers, "Unless you are circumcised according to the custom of Moses, you cannot be saved." ²And after Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and debate with them, the brothers appointed Paul and Barnabas and some others of them to go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders about this question. ³ So, being sent on their way by the church, they passed through both Phoenicia and Samaria, describing in detail the conversion of the Gentiles, and they brought great joy to all the brothers. ⁴When they arrived in Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the church and the apostles and the elders, and they reported all that God had done with them. ⁵But some believers who belonged to the party of the Pharisees rose up and said, "It is necessary to circumcise them and to order them to keep the law of Moses." ⁶The apostles and the elders gathered together to consider this matter. ⁷After much debate, Peter stood up and said to them, "Brothers, you know that in the early days God made a choice among you, that through my mouth the Gentiles should hear the word of the gospel and believe. ⁸And God, who knows the heart, bore witness to them by giving them the Holy Spirit just as he did to us, ⁹Indeed, put no difference between us and them, purifying their hearts by way of faith. ¹⁰Now therefore why are you testing God by putting a yoke on the neck of the disciples that neither our fathers nor we have been able to bear? ¹¹But we believe that we will be saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, just as they will." ¹²The whole assembly fell silent and listened to Barnabas and Paul as they told of all the signs and wonders that God had done through them among the Gentiles. ¹³After they finished speaking, James replied, "Brothers, listen to me. ¹⁴Simeon has related how God first visited the Gentiles to take from them a people for his name. ¹⁵And with this the words of the prophets agree, as it is written, ¹⁶'After this I will return and rebuild the tent of David that has fallen; I will rebuild its ruins and restore it, ¹⁷That the residue of men might seek following the Lord, and every one of the Gentiles, upon whom my name is called, says the Lord, who doeth all these things. ¹⁸Recognized to God are all his labors from the beginning of the age. ¹⁹Therefore my judgment is that we should not trouble those of the Gentiles who turn to God, ²⁰However, that we write to them, that they abstain from pollutions of idols, and from sexual immorality, and from things strangled, and from blood. ²¹For from ancient generations Moses has had in every city those who proclaim him, for he is read every Sabbath in the synagogues." ²²Then it seemed good to the apostles and the elders, with the whole church, to choose men from among them and send them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas — Judas called Barsabbas and Silas, leading men among the brothers, ²³They wrote letters by them following this manner. The apostles and elders and brothers and sisters send greeting to the brothers and sisters which are of the Gentiles in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia:. ²⁴Since we have heard that some persons have gone out from us and troubled you with words, unsettling your minds — though we gave them no instructions — ²⁵Inde

ed, it was decided by us, being assembled with one accord, to send chosen men to you with our dear Barnabas and Paul, ²⁶People that possess hazarded their lives for the identity of our Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁷We have therefore sent Judas and Silas, who themselves will tell you the same things by word of mouth. ²⁸For the Holy Spirit and we have decided, not to burden you beyond these essential requirements; ²⁹That you abstain from meats offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from sexual immorality — from which if you keep yourselves, you will do well. Fare you well. ³⁰So when they were sent off, they went down to Antioch, and having gathered the congregation together, they delivered the letter. ³¹When they read it, they rejoiced because of its encouragement. ³²And Judas and Silas, who were themselves prophets, encouraged and strengthened the brothers with many words. ³³After they had spent some time there, they were sent off in peace by the brothers to those who had sent them. ³⁵But Paul and Barnabas remained in Antioch, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord, with many others also. ³⁶After some days Paul said to Barnabas, "Let us return and visit the brothers in every city where we proclaimed the word of the Lord, and see how they are doing." ³⁷Now Barnabas wanted to take with them John called Mark. ³⁸But Paul insisted that they should not take with them one who had withdrawn from them in Pamphylia and had not gone with them to the work. ³⁹And there arose a sharp disagreement, so that they separated from each other. Barnabas took Mark with him and sailed away to Cyprus, ⁴⁰Paul chose Silas, and departed, being recommended by the brothers and sisters to the grace of God. ⁴¹He went through Syria and Cilicia, strengthening the churches.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The issue is not circumcision as a cultural practice but as a soteriological requirement — 'you cannot be saved' (ou dynasthe sothenai) makes it a matter of eternal consequence. These teachers claim Mosaic authority for their position. They are not the apostles' representatives (v. 24 will clarify this).
2. The litotes 'no small dissension' (staseos ouk oliges) means a fierce argument. The decision to take the matter to Jerusalem shows the Antioch church's recognition of the Jerusalem apostles' authority on such fundamental questions. The delegation includes 'some others' — unnamed witnesses who can corroborate the Antioch church's experience.
3. The journey itself becomes a preaching tour — they tell the story of Gentile conversion (epistrophēn ton ethnōn, 'the turning of the Gentiles') and receive an enthusiastic response. The 'great joy' (charan megalēn) of the believers in Phoenicia and Samaria suggests that opposition to Gentile inclusion was concentrated among a specific faction, not universal.
4. The warm welcome (paredechthesan, 'were received, welcomed') and the phrasing 'what God had done with them' (hosa ho theos epoiesen met auton) — identical to 14:27 — frames the report as a testimony of divine action, not human achievement.
5. These are believing Pharisees (ton apo tes hairesēos ton Pharisaion pepisteukotes) — they have accepted Jesus as Messiah but insist that Gentile believers must also keep the entire Mosaic law. Their position goes beyond circumcision alone to full Torah observance. The word hairesēos ('party, sect') here means 'faction' without the later connotation of 'heresy.'
6. The formal assembly of apostles and elders constitutes what is traditionally called the Jerusalem Council or Apostolic Council — the first church-wide deliberative body. The verb synechthesan ('gathered together') indicates a formal convening, not a casual meeting.
7. Peter speaks after 'much debate' (polles zeteseos), indicating the assembly first heard various arguments. His appeal is to his own experience with Cornelius — 'in the early days' (aph' hemeron archaion) refers back to the events of Acts 10, perhaps a decade earlier. He frames it as God's choice (exelexato ho theos), not his own initiative.
8. The term kardiognōstes ('knower of hearts, heart-knower') appears only here and in Acts 1:24. God's knowledge of hearts means he accepted the Gentiles based on their inner reality, not their external status. The repeated phrase 'just as he did to us' (kathos kai hemin) is Peter's decisive argument: identical gift, identical acceptance.
9. The verb diekrinen ('made a distinction, discriminated') directly addresses the issue: if God makes no distinction, neither should the church. The phrase 'cleansed their hearts by faith' (te pistei katharistas tas kardias) is remarkable — cleansing comes through faith, not through circumcision or Torah observance. This is Pauline theology from Peter's lips.
10. Peter characterizes the demand for circumcision and Torah observance as 'testing God' (peirazete ton theon) — acting against what God has clearly demonstrated. The 'yoke' (zugon) metaphor for the law is a Jewish image (cf. Galatians 5:1). Peter's honest assessment that 'neither our fathers nor we' could bear it is a striking admission of the law's inability to save.
11. Peter reverses the expected comparison: he does not say 'they will be saved like us' but 'we will be saved like them' — through grace, not through law. Jewish believers are saved the same way Gentile believers are: by grace through faith. This is the theological climax of Peter's argument.
12. The silence (esigēsen) following Peter's speech indicates its persuasive power. Barnabas is named first — perhaps reflecting Jerusalem's greater familiarity with him. Their testimony is experiential: signs and wonders (sēmeia kai terata) that God performed among the Gentiles confirm divine

approval of the uncircumcised mission.

13. James the brother of Jesus speaks last and gives the decisive judgment. His position of authority in the Jerusalem church is evident — he presides over the Council and renders the final decision. The sequence — Peter's theological argument, Paul and Barnabas's experiential testimony, James's scriptural judgment — represents a complete case.
14. James uses Peter's Semitic name 'Simeon' (Symeon), the only instance in Acts. The phrase 'a people for his name' (laon to onomati autou) is theologically loaded — laos ('people') is the term reserved for Israel as God's covenant people. God is now creating a 'people' from among the Gentiles (ex ethnon), extending the covenant community beyond ethnic Israel.
15. James grounds the decision in Scripture — 'the words of the prophets agree' (symphonousin hoi logoi ton propheton). Experience and testimony have been presented; now comes the scriptural confirmation. The verb symphonousin ('agree, harmonize') suggests that multiple prophetic voices point in the same direction.
16. James quotes Amos 9:11-12 from the Septuagint. The 'tent of David' (ten skenen Daud) refers to David's dynasty and kingdom, which had 'fallen' with the exile and the end of the monarchy. God's restoration of David's tent is fulfilled in Jesus, the Davidic Messiah. The Septuagint text differs significantly from the Hebrew here, and James follows the Greek version.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Amos 9:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The critical difference between the Septuagint and the Hebrew is that the Hebrew reads 'that they may possess the remnant of Edom' while the Septuagint reads 'that the rest of mankind may seek the Lord.' The Septuagint, likely reading 'adam (mankind) for 'edom and doresh (seek) for yarash (possess), provides James with a text that explicitly predicts Gentile inclusion in God's people.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 9:11-12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This brief phrase — 'known from of old' (gnosta ap aionos) — asserts that Gentile inclusion is not an innovation but something God planned from the beginning. What seems new is actually ancient divine purpose now being revealed.
19. The verb krino ('I judge, I decide') shows James rendering an authoritative decision, not merely offering an opinion. The word parenochein ('trouble, make difficulties for, harass') characterizes the circumcision requirement as an unnecessary burden. Gentile conversion is described as 'turning to God' (epistrephousin epi ton theon) — they are already turning; circumcision is not needed for this turning to be valid.
20. The four prohibitions are: (1) alisgematon ton eidolon ('pollutions of idols' — food offered to idols), (2) porneia ('sexual immorality' — broadly defined), (3) pnikton ('what has been strangled' — meat from animals not properly slaughtered), and (4) haima ('blood' — either consuming blood or possibly bloodshed/murder). These likely correspond to the laws in Leviticus 17-18 that applied to 'resident aliens' (gerim) living among Israelites.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 17-18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. This enigmatic verse may mean: (1) Jewish sensibilities must be respected since Moses is preached everywhere, so the four prohibitions preserve table fellowship with Jewish believers; or (2) Gentiles can learn the rest of Moses's teaching from the synagogue readings as they grow. The former interpretation is more commonly held.
22. The decision involves the whole church (syn hole te ekklesia), not just the leaders. Judas Barsabbas and Silas are sent as independent witnesses to confirm the letter's authenticity and to represent Jerusalem's goodwill. Silas (Silvanus) will become Paul's companion on the second missionary journey.
23. The letter follows standard Hellenistic epistolary form: sender, recipient, greeting (chairein). The addressees are specifically 'brothers from the Gentiles' (adelphois tois ex ethnon) in the three regions affected. The use of 'brothers' (adelphoi) for the Gentile believers is itself a theological statement — they are family.
24. The letter explicitly disowns the troublemakers: 'we gave them no instructions' (hois ou diesteilametha). The verbs etaraxan ('troubled') and anaskeuazontes ('unsettling, dismantling') describe the damage done. Some manuscripts add 'saying you must be circumcised and keep the law,' but the SBLGNT omits this addition.
25. The phrase 'having come to one accord' (genomenois homothumadon) emphasizes unanimity. Barnabas and Paul are described as 'our beloved' (tois agapetois hemon), a public endorsement countering any suggestion that they are unauthorized agents.
26. The phrase paradedokosi tas psychas ('having given over their lives, having risked their souls') may allude to Paul's stoning at Lystra (14:19) and other dangers. It is a ringing endorsement of their courage and commitment.
27. Judas and Silas serve as living confirmations of the letter — they can answer questions and provide context that a written document cannot. The phrase 'the same things' (ta auta) ensures consistency between the written and oral messages.
28. The remarkable phrase 'the Holy Spirit and us' (to pneumatikoi kai hēmin) claims divine authority for the decision — the Council's deliberation was guided by the Spirit. The word 'burden' (baros) echoes Peter's 'yoke' language in verse 10. Only the 'necessary things' (ton epanankes) are required, and even these are minimal.

29. The four prohibitions are restated in slightly different order and terminology: *eidolothyton* ('idol-sacrificed food') replaces the broader 'pollutions of idols' from verse 20. The closing 'farewell' (*erroshe*) is the standard Hellenistic letter closing, meaning 'be strong, be well.'
30. The delegation goes directly to Antioch and presents the letter to the assembled church. The verb *epedokan* ('delivered, handed over') indicates a formal presentation.
31. The congregation's response is joy (*echaresan*) at the *paraklesis* ('encouragement, consolation'). The letter is received as good news — the Gentile believers are free from the circumcision requirement. The word *paraklesis* connects to the role of the Holy Spirit as *Parakletos*.
32. Judas and Silas are identified as prophets (*prophetai*), giving their encouragement additional spiritual authority. Their ministry goes beyond delivering the letter to active pastoral care — 'many words' (*dia logou pollou*) of encouragement and strengthening.
33. The phrase 'sent off in peace' (*apeluthesan met eirenes*) is a formal dismissal with blessing — the Antioch church releases them to return to Jerusalem with goodwill and harmony restored.
34. Verse 34 is absent from the SBLGNT and other critical Greek texts. It appears in some later manuscripts and the KJV tradition ('Notwithstanding it pleased Silas to abide there still'), likely added by scribes to explain how Silas was available in Antioch when Paul chose him in verse 40. We follow the SBLGNT in omitting it.
35. The Antioch church has a rich leadership — 'many others' (*heteron pollon*) are involved in teaching and preaching alongside Paul and Barnabas. The two verbs 'teaching' (*didaskontes*) and 'preaching the good news' (*euangelizomenoi*) describe both internal instruction and outward evangelism.
36. Paul's concern is pastoral — he wants to check on the new churches' welfare (*pos echousin*, 'how they are'). This impulse to revisit and strengthen existing churches, not merely plant new ones, characterizes Paul's missionary strategy throughout Acts and his letters.
37. Barnabas's desire to include his cousin John Mark (cf. Colossians 4:10) reflects his character as 'son of encouragement' (4:36) — he is willing to give the young man a second chance after his earlier departure in 13:13.
38. Paul views Mark's departure in Pamphylia as a disqualifying failure. The verb *apostanta* ('having withdrawn, having deserted') carries negative connotations. The phrase 'not gone with them to the work' (*me synelthonta autois eis to ergon*) implies that the mission's demands require reliable companions.
39. The word *paroxysmos* ('sharp disagreement, irritation, provocation') — from which English derives 'paroxysm' — indicates an intense emotional conflict. Luke does not assign blame to either party. The separation doubles the mission: Barnabas and Mark go to Cyprus (Barnabas's homeland), while Paul takes a new partner. Later, Paul and Mark are reconciled (Colossians 4:10, 2 Timothy 4:11, Philemon 24).
40. Paul receives the church's commendation (*paradotheis te chariti*, 'commended to the grace'), while Barnabas's departure receives no such mention — a possible indication that the church sided with Paul's assessment. Silas, as a Jerusalem prophet and Roman citizen (16:37), is an ideal partner for the mission ahead.
41. Paul's route takes him overland through Syria (where Antioch lies) and into Cilicia (his home province, where Tarsus is located). The verb *episterizon* ('strengthening, establishing') is the same word used in 14:22 — a key element of Paul's pastoral strategy. The second missionary journey has begun.

16

Summary: *Acts 16 narrates the second missionary journey's expansion into Europe. Paul circumcises Timothy at Lystra and recruits him as a companion. The Holy Spirit twice redirects their itinerary — forbidding them from preaching in Asia and Bithynia — until Paul receives the Macedonian vision at Troas: 'Come over to Macedonia and help us.' They sail to Philippi, a Roman colony, where Lydia, a dealer in purple cloth, becomes the first European convert. Paul casts out a spirit of divination from a slave girl, provoking her owners to drag Paul and Silas before the magistrates. They are beaten and imprisoned. At midnight, Paul and Silas sing hymns; an earthquake shakes the prison open, but no one escapes. The terrified jailer asks, 'What must I do to be saved?' Paul responds, 'Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved — you and your household.' The jailer and his household are baptized. The next morning, Paul reveals his Roman citizenship, forcing the magistrates to publicly apologize.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Timothy's circumcision (v. 3) seems to contradict the Jerusalem Council's ruling — but Paul circumcises Timothy not as a soteriological requirement but as a strategic concession, since Timothy's Jewish mother made him Jewish by halakhic standards. The Spirit's double prohibition (vv. 6-7) and the Macedonian vision represent one of the most dramatic instances of divine guidance in Acts, redirecting the mission from Asia to Europe. The Philippian jailer episode contains perhaps the most concentrated salvation narrative in Acts: terror, the question of salvation, faith, baptism, joy — all within a single night.*

Translation Friction: The 'we' passages begin in verse 10 (the first in Acts), suggesting the author Luke joined the team at Troas. The 'spirit of Python' (pneuma pythona, v. 16) refers to the prophetic spirit associated with the oracle at Delphi, where the Pythia (priestess) supposedly channeled Apollo's messages. Paul's use of Roman citizenship (vv. 37-39) raises questions about why he did not invoke it before the beating — possibly because the mob action prevented orderly legal procedure.

¹Paul came also to Derbe and to Lystra. A disciple was there named Timothy, the son of a Jewish woman who was a believer, but his father was a Greek. ²He was well spoken of by the brothers at Lystra and Iconium. ³Paul wanted Timothy to accompany him, and he took him and circumcised him because of the Jews who were in those places, for they all knew that his father was a Greek. ⁴As they went through the cities, they delivered to them for observance the decisions that had been reached by the apostles and elders in Jerusalem. ⁵So the churches were strengthened in the faith, and they increased in number daily. ⁶They went through the region of Phrygia and Galatia, having been forbidden by the Holy Spirit to speak the word in Asia. ⁷When they came to the border of Mysia, they attempted to go into Bithynia, but the Spirit of Jesus did not allow them. ⁸So, passing by Mysia, they went down to Troas. ⁹And a vision appeared to Paul in the night: a man of Macedonia was standing there, urging him and saying, "Come over to Macedonia and help us." ¹⁰And when Paul had seen the vision, immediately we sought to go on into Macedonia, concluding that God had called us to preach the good news to them. ¹¹So, setting sail from Troas, we made a direct voyage to Samothrace, and the following day to Neapolis, ¹²From there we went to Philippi, the leading city in that district of Macedonia and a Roman colony. We stayed in that city for several days. ¹³On the Sabbath day we went outside the gate to the riverside, where we supposed there was a place of prayer, and we sat down and spoke to the women who had gathered there. ¹⁴One who heard us was a woman named Lydia, from the city of Thyatira, a dealer in purple cloth, who was a worshiper of God. The Lord opened her heart to pay attention to what was said by Paul. ¹⁵After she was baptized, and her household as well, she urged us, saying, "If you have judged me to be faithful to the Lord, come to my house and stay." And she prevailed upon us. ¹⁶As we were going to the place of prayer, we were met by a slave girl who had a spirit of divination and brought her owners much profit by fortune-telling. ¹⁷She followed Paul and us, crying out, "These men are servants of the Most High God, who proclaim to you the way of salvation." ¹⁸She kept doing this for many days. Paul, having become greatly annoyed, turned and said to the spirit, "I command you in the name of Jesus Christ to come out of her." And it came out that very hour. ¹⁹But when her owners saw that their hope of profit was gone, they seized Paul and Silas and dragged them into the marketplace before the rulers. ²⁰And when they had brought them to the magistrates, they said, "These men are Jews and they are disturbing our city. ²¹They are advocating customs that are not lawful for us as Romans to accept or practice." ²²The crowd joined in attacking them, and the magistrates tore their garments off them and ordered them to be beaten with rods. ²³And when they had inflicted many blows on them, they threw them into prison, ordering the jailer to guard them securely. ²⁴Having received this order, he put them into the inner prison and fastened their feet in the stocks. ²⁵About midnight Paul and Silas were praying and singing hymns to God, and the other prisoners were listening to them. ²⁶Suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the prison were shaken. Immediately all the doors were opened and everyone's chains were unfastened. ²⁷When the jailer woke and saw that the prison doors were open, he drew his sword and was about to kill himself, since he supposed that the prisoners had escaped. ²⁸But Paul cried out in a loud voice, "Do not harm yourself, for we are all here!" ²⁹The jailer called for lights and rushed in, and trembling with fear he fell down before Paul and Silas. ³⁰Then he brought them out and said, "Sirs, what must I do to be saved?" ³¹And they said, "Believe in the Lord Jesus, and you will be saved, you and your household." ³²And they spoke the word of the Lord to him and to all who were in his house. ³³And he took them that same hour of the night and washed their wounds; and he was baptized at once, he and all his family. ³⁴Then he brought them up into his house and set food before them. And he rejoiced along with his entire household that he had believed in God. ³⁵When it was day, the magistrates sent the lictors, saying, "Release those men." ³⁶The jailer reported these words to Paul, saying, "The magistrates have sent to release you. So come out now and go in peace." ³⁷But Paul said to them, "They have beaten us publicly without a trial, men who are Roman citizens, and threw us into prison. And now do they want to send us away secretly? Certainly not! Let them come themselves and escort us out." ³⁸The lictors reported these words to the magistrates, and they were afraid

when they heard that they were Roman citizens. ³⁹So they came and apologized to them, and they brought them out and asked them to leave the city. ⁴⁰So they went out of the prison and visited Lydia. When they had seen the brothers, they encouraged them and departed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Timothy's mixed parentage — Jewish mother, Greek father — places him in a complicated identity position. By rabbinic standards (which determined Jewish status through the mother), Timothy was Jewish. His mother Eunice and grandmother Lois are named in 2 Timothy 1:5. Timothy will become Paul's most trusted associate.
2. Timothy's good reputation (emartureito, 'was testified about') spans two cities, indicating wide recognition of his character and gifting.
3. Paul circumcises Timothy not because it is necessary for salvation (the Jerusalem Council just decided otherwise) but for strategic reasons: an uncircumcised person of Jewish descent would be a stumbling block in synagogue ministry. This contrasts with Paul's refusal to circumcise Titus, a full Gentile (Galatians 2:3). The distinction is between accommodation and capitulation.
4. The dogmata ('decisions, decrees') are the Jerusalem Council's rulings from chapter 15. Paul distributes them to the churches as authoritative guidelines, showing that he recognized the Council's authority despite his own apostolic independence.
5. This is one of Luke's progress reports. The dual growth — qualitative ('strengthened in the faith') and quantitative ('increased in number daily') — shows healthy church development.
6. The Holy Spirit's prohibition (koluthentes, 'having been forbidden') is stated without explaining how it was communicated — through prophecy, inner conviction, or circumstantial closure. 'Asia' here means the Roman province of Asia (western Asia Minor, including Ephesus), not the continent. The Spirit is actively directing the mission by closing doors.
7. The unusual phrase 'Spirit of Jesus' (to pneuma Iesou) rather than 'Holy Spirit' occurs only here in Acts. It may emphasize the risen Christ's personal direction of the mission. The double redirection — forbidden from Asia, blocked from Bithynia — funnels them toward the coast and the crossing to Europe.
8. Troas (Alexandria Troas) was a major port city on the Aegean coast, across from the European mainland. It is the launching point for the crossing to Macedonia — the gospel's entry into Europe.
9. How Paul identified the man as Macedonian is not stated — perhaps by dress, accent in the vision, or direct knowledge. The plea 'help us' (boetheson hemin) is both urgent and communal — it represents an entire region's need. This vision provides the positive direction after the two negative prohibitions.
10. The shift from 'they' to 'we' (ezetesamen, 'we sought') marks the first of the 'we' passages in Acts, indicating that the author Luke has joined the missionary team at Troas. The verb symbibazontes ('concluding, putting together') suggests communal discernment — the team collectively interprets the vision as God's call.
11. The nautical detail euthudromesamen ('we ran a straight course') indicates favorable winds — the same crossing took five days in the opposite direction (20:6). Samothrace is an island midway across the northern Aegean. Neapolis (modern Kavala) was the port city serving Philippi, about ten miles inland.
12. Philippi was named after Philip II of Macedon (father of Alexander the Great). Its status as a kolonia ('colony') meant it operated under Roman law with rights equivalent to Italian cities. Luke describes it as 'a leading city of the district' (prote tes meridos poleis) — the precise administrative terminology has been debated but reflects Luke's careful attention to local designations.
13. The absence of a synagogue in Philippi (a quorum of ten Jewish men was traditionally required) meant that the small Jewish community met informally by the river for prayer. The gathering consists entirely of women — Lydia, mentioned next, is among them. That Paul begins his European mission by speaking to women at a riverside prayer meeting is a humble and unexpected beginning.
14. Lydia is identified by her trade — porphyropolis ('dealer in purple goods') — indicating she was a businesswoman of means, since purple dye was expensive. Thyatira (in the province of Asia) was famous for its purple dyeing industry. She is a 'worshiper of God' (sebomene ton theon), a God-fearer. The decisive theological note is 'the Lord opened her heart' (ho kyrios dienoixen ten kardian) — her faith is God's work before it is her response.
15. Lydia's household baptism (ho oikos autes) includes servants and dependents — the household conversion pattern of Acts (cf. 10:48, 16:33, 18:8). Her invitation to stay is confident and assertive — parebiastao ('she prevailed upon us, she insisted forcefully') shows a strong personality. Her house becomes the base of the Philippian church (v. 40).
16. The Greek pneuma pythona ('spirit of Python') refers to the prophetic spirit associated with the oracle at Delphi, where the Pythia served as Apollo's mouthpiece. The girl is doubly enslaved — to a demonic spirit and to human owners who exploit her condition for profit. The word ergasian ('profit, gain') reveals the commercial dimension of her bondage.
17. The girl's declaration is technically accurate — they are servants of the Most High God proclaiming salvation. But the title 'Most High God' (tou theou tou hypsistou) was used in pagan contexts for Zeus or a supreme deity, potentially confusing the gospel message with syncretistic religion. Demonic

testimony, even when factually correct, distorts by association.

18. Paul tolerates the disruption for 'many days' (epi pollas hemeras) before acting. The verb diaponetheis ('greatly annoyed, deeply troubled') combines frustration with spiritual grief. The exorcism is performed 'in the name of Jesus Christ' — the authority behind the command. The spirit's departure is immediate (aute te hora, 'that very hour').
19. The phrase 'their hope of profit was gone' (exelthen he elpis tes ergasias auton) uses the same verb as the exorcism — the spirit 'went out' and so did their profit. Their grievance is economic, not religious, but they will frame their charges in political terms. The agora ('marketplace') was the civic center where legal proceedings took place.
20. The strategoi ('magistrates') are the duumviri, the two chief officials of a Roman colony. The charge plays on anti-Jewish sentiment: 'These men are Jews' (Ioudaioi hyparchontes) is stated as if it were itself an accusation. The verb ektarassousin ('are disturbing, are throwing into confusion') frames the missionaries as public threats.
21. The charge is deliberately vague — 'customs' (ethe) could mean anything. The real issue is the loss of income from the slave girl, but the accusation is framed as a matter of Roman identity ('us as Romans,' Romaiois ousin) versus foreign Jewish practices. Philippi's pride in its Roman colonial status makes this charge effective.
22. The magistrates tear Paul and Silas's clothing off (perirexantes auton ta himatia) to expose them for beating. The rhabdizein ('beating with rods') was administered by lictors, the magistrates' official attendants who carried fasces (bundles of rods). Paul references being beaten with rods three times in 2 Corinthians 11:25.
23. The 'many blows' (pollas plegas) indicates a severe beating. The adverb asphalos ('securely, safely') places the jailer under strict orders — failure to hold the prisoners could cost him his life.
24. The 'inner prison' (ten esoteran phylaken) was the most secure cell, furthest from any exit. The stocks (xylon, literally 'wood') immobilized the prisoners' legs, often in a painfully spread position. The security emphasis — inner cell plus stocks — sets the stage for the dramatic liberation to come.
25. The combination of praying and singing (prosuchomenoi hymnountes ton theon) at midnight, after severe beating and in stocks, is extraordinary. The verb epeokroonto ('were listening attentively') indicates the other prisoners were captured by what they heard — worship from the depths of suffering.
26. The earthquake is comprehensive: foundations shaken, all doors opened, all chains unfastened (panton ta desma anethe). This affects not just Paul and Silas but every prisoner. The supernatural character of the event is evident — earthquakes do not typically unfasten chains and open locked doors simultaneously.
27. Roman law held jailers personally responsible for escaped prisoners (cf. Acts 12:19 where guards are executed). The jailer's suicide attempt is a rational response within the Roman honor system — death by his own hand would be more honorable than execution for dereliction of duty.
28. Paul's shout saves the jailer's life. The fact that all prisoners remain (hapantes gar esmen enthade, 'for we are all here') — despite open doors and unfastened chains — adds to the supernatural character of the event. Paul's concern for the jailer's life demonstrates grace in action.
29. The jailer's progression — calling for lights, rushing in (eisepeidesn), trembling (entromos), falling down (prosepesen) — vividly narrates his transition from despair to awe. He recognizes that something beyond natural explanation has occurred.
30. The jailer's question — ti me dei poiein hina sotho ('what must I do to be saved?') — is one of the most famous questions in the New Testament. The word sotho ('be saved') may carry both physical and spiritual meaning: saved from the earthquake's implications and saved in the deeper sense that the slave girl's spirit had proclaimed (v. 17). The address kyrioi ('sirs, lords') reflects deep respect.
31. The response is the gospel in its simplest form: believe in the Lord Jesus. The promise extends to 'your household' (ho oikos sou), not that the jailer's faith automatically saves his family, but that the same promise of salvation is available to all in his household who believe (as the next verse clarifies). The SBLGNT reads 'Lord Jesus' without 'Christ.'
32. The gospel is shared with the entire household (pasin tois en te oikia auton) — faith comes through hearing the message. This ensures that the household's subsequent baptism is an informed response, not merely participation in the head of household's decision.
33. The sequence is powerful: the jailer washes Paul's wounds, then is himself washed in baptism. The physical washing of wounds and the spiritual washing of baptism mirror each other. Everything happens 'that same hour of the night' (en ekeine te hora tes nyktos) — the urgency of faith matches the urgency of compassion. The household (hoi autou hapantes, 'all his') is baptized together.
34. The chapter's emotional arc — from beating and imprisonment to washing wounds, baptism, shared meals, and rejoicing — captures the transformative power of the gospel in a single night. The word panoikei ('with the whole household') and the verb egalliasato ('rejoiced greatly, exulted') describe household-wide celebration of newfound faith.
35. The rhabdouchous ('lictors, rod-bearers') were the magistrates' official attendants who had administered the beating. Their return with the release order shows the magistrates considered the matter closed. Why they decided to release Paul and Silas is not stated — perhaps they felt the punishment sufficient, or the earthquake had unsettled them.

36. The jailer — now a fellow believer — delivers the good news. The phrase 'go in peace' (poreuesthe en eirene) is a standard Semitic farewell, here spoken by a Roman jailer who has just become a member of the new community.
37. Paul now reveals what the magistrates should have ascertained before the beating: he and Silas are Roman citizens (anthropous Romaious). The Lex Porcia and Lex Valeria prohibited beating a Roman citizen without trial. The violation is threefold: public beating (demosio), without trial (akatakritous), of Roman citizens. Paul demands a public escort to clear their names and protect the fledgling church from further persecution.
38. The magistrates' fear (ephobethesan) is well-founded — beating Roman citizens without trial was a serious offense that could result in their removal from office and legal penalties. The tables have turned completely.
39. The verb parekalesan ('appealed to, apologized to, entreated') indicates the magistrates come in a conciliatory posture. The request to leave the city is a face-saving measure — they cannot admit full wrongdoing publicly, but they acknowledge the error by personally escorting the prisoners out.
40. Before leaving Philippi, Paul and Silas visit Lydia's house — the church's meeting place — and encourage the new believers. The 'we' narration pauses here (resuming in 20:5), suggesting Luke may have remained in Philippi to nurture the church. Paul and Silas depart, but the Philippian church will become one of Paul's most beloved communities (Philippians 1:3-8).

17

Summary: *Acts 17 follows Paul through Thessalonica, Berea, and Athens. In Thessalonica, Paul reasons from the Scriptures in the synagogue for three Sabbaths, and some Jews and many God-fearing Greeks believe. Jealous opponents incite a mob and drag Jason (Paul's host) before the city authorities, accusing the missionaries of 'turning the world upside down' and proclaiming 'another king, Jesus.' Paul is sent to Berea, where the Jews are described as 'more noble' because they examined the Scriptures daily. But Thessalonian opponents pursue Paul there too, and he is sent to Athens. Alone in Athens, Paul is provoked by the city's idols and engages Epicurean and Stoic philosophers. He is brought to the Areopagus (Mars Hill), where he delivers his famous speech: beginning with the altar 'To an Unknown God,' he proclaims the Creator who does not live in temples, who gives all life, who made all nations from one man, and who now commands repentance because he has appointed a day of judgment through a man he raised from the dead. The response is mixed: some mock, some believe.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's Areopagus speech is the theological and literary centerpiece of Acts — a model of contextual proclamation to a pagan intellectual audience. Paul does not quote Scripture (his audience would not recognize it) but argues from creation, divine providence, and even pagan poets (Epimenides and Aratus). He does not begin with sin but with worship, taking the Athenians' religious impulse seriously while redirecting it. The charge at Thessalonica — 'these men have turned the world upside down' (17:6) — is one of the most striking descriptions of early Christianity's revolutionary impact. The Berean model of examining Scripture has become paradigmatic for responsible biblical study.*

Translation Friction: *The altar 'To an Unknown God' (Agnosto Theo) is attested by ancient sources (Pausanias, Diogenes Laertius), though the exact inscription Paul references has not been archaeologically discovered. Paul quotes from pagan poets — 'in him we live and move and have our being' is attributed to Epimenides of Crete, and 'for we are indeed his offspring' comes from Aratus's Phaenomena (and possibly Cleanthes's Hymn to Zeus). Paul's willingness to find truth in pagan literature while rejecting idolatry demonstrates sophisticated engagement with Greco-Roman culture. The 'politarchs' (politarchas) of Thessalonica (v. 6) — a title once thought to be a Lukan error — have been confirmed by multiple inscriptions.*

Connections: *Paul's synagogue method of reasoning from Scripture (vv. 2-3) continues the pattern of chapters 13-14. The charge of 'another king' (v. 7) echoes the charges against Jesus before Pilate (Luke 23:2). The Areopagus speech develops the natural theology introduced at Lystra (14:15-17). Paul's appeal to God as Creator connects to Genesis 1-2 and Isaiah 40-45. The resurrection as the basis for judgment connects to the apostolic kerygma throughout Acts.*

¹After Paul and Silas had passed through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where there was a Jewish synagogue. ²And Paul went in, as was his custom, and on three Sabbath days he reasoned with them from the Scriptures, ³He explained and demonstrated that the Messiah had to suffer and rise from the dead, and then declared, "This Jesus I am telling you about is the Messiah." ⁴Some of them were persuaded and joined Paul and Silas, as did a great many of the

devout Greeks and not a few of the leading women. ⁵But the Jews became jealous, and taking some wicked men from the marketplace rabble, they formed a mob and set the city in an uproar. They attacked the house of Jason, seeking to bring Paul and Silas out to the crowd. ⁶When they could not find them, they dragged Jason and some brothers before the city authorities, shouting, "These men who have turned the world upside down have come here also, ⁷Indeed, whom Jason has received — and these all do contrary to the decrees of Caesar and stated that there is another king, one Jesus. ⁸The people and the city authorities were disturbed when they heard these things. ⁹And when they had taken a bond from Jason and the rest, they released them. ¹⁰The brothers immediately sent Paul and Silas away by night to Berea, and when they arrived they went into the Jewish synagogue. ¹¹Now these Jews were more noble than those in Thessalonica; they received the word with all eagerness, examining the Scriptures daily to see if these things were so. ¹²Many of them therefore believed, with not a few Greek women of high standing as well as men. ¹³But when the Jews from Thessalonica learned that the word of God was proclaimed by Paul at Berea also, they came there too, agitating and stirring up the crowds. ¹⁴Then the brothers immediately sent Paul off on his way to the sea, but Silas and Timothy remained there. ¹⁵Those who escorted Paul brought him as far as Athens, and after receiving instructions for Silas and Timothy to come to him as soon as possible, they departed. ¹⁶Now while Paul was waiting for them at Athens, his spirit was provoked within him as he saw that the city was full of idols. ¹⁷So he reasoned in the synagogue with the Jews and the devout persons, and in the marketplace every day with those who happened to be there. ¹⁸Some of the Epicurean and Stoic philosophers also conversed with him. Some said, "What does this babblers wish to say?" Others said, "He seems to be a proclaimer of foreign divinities" — because he was preaching Jesus and the resurrection. ¹⁹And they took him and brought him to the Areopagus, saying, "May we know what this new teaching is that you are presenting? ²⁰For you bring some strange things to our ears. We wish to know therefore what these things mean." ²¹(Now all the Athenians and the foreigners who lived there spent their time in nothing except telling or hearing something new.) ²²So Paul, standing in the middle of the Areopagus, said: "Men of Athens, I perceive that in every way you are very religious. ²³For as I passed along and observed the objects of your worship, I found also an altar with this inscription: 'To an unknown god.' What therefore you worship as unknown, this I proclaim to you. ²⁴The God who made the world and everything in it, being Lord of heaven and earth, does not live in temples made by human hands, ²⁵And not is worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he gives to all life, and breath, and all matters;. ²⁶And he made from one man every nation of mankind to live on all the face of the earth, having determined allotted periods and the boundaries of their dwelling place, ²⁷Indeed, that they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel following him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us:. ²⁸Because in him we live, and move, and have our being. As certain also of your own poets have stated, since we are also his offspring. ²⁹Being then God's offspring, we ought not to think that the divine being is like gold or silver or stone, an image formed by the art and imagination of man. ³⁰The times of ignorance God overlooked, but now he commands all people everywhere to repent, ³¹Because he has appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he has ordained. Whereof he has given assurance to all men, in that he has raised him from the dead. ³²Now when they heard of the resurrection of the dead, some mocked. But others said, "We will hear you again about this." ³³So Paul went out from their midst. ³⁴But some men joined him and believed, among whom were Dionysius the Areopagite and a woman named Damaris and others with them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Amphipolis and Apollonia were stations along the Via Egnatia, the major Roman road connecting the Adriatic to the east. Thessalonica (modern Thessaloniki) was the capital and largest city of Macedonia. The presence of a synagogue (singular, unlike the plural at Salamis) indicates a Jewish community sufficient for one congregation.
2. The phrase *kata to eiothos* ('as was his custom') establishes Paul's consistent practice of beginning in the synagogue. The verb *dielexato* ('reasoned, discussed, argued') implies dialogue, not just monologue — Paul engaged in back-and-forth discussion. Three Sabbaths indicates at least a three-week ministry, though Paul's total stay may have been longer (cf. Philippians 4:16).
3. Paul's argument has two steps: (1) the Scriptures require a suffering and rising Messiah (*ton Christon edei pathein kai anastenai*), and (2) Jesus fulfills this pattern. The verb *dianoigon* ('opening, explaining') is the same word used of Jesus opening the Scriptures to the Emmaus disciples (Luke 24:32). The verb *paratithemenos* ('setting before, presenting evidence') is a legal term for presenting a case.

4. The response is stratified: 'some' Jews believed, but a 'great many' (plethos poly) God-fearing Greeks and 'not a few' (ouk oligai) prominent women. The larger Gentile response becomes the pattern throughout Paul's mission. The 'leading women' (gynaikon ton proton) occupied significant social positions in Macedonian society, where women had more public roles than in many other parts of the empire.
5. The jealous Jews recruit agoraion ('marketplace loafers, idlers') — men who hung around the agora without employment — to form a mob. The verb ochlopoiesantes ('having made a crowd, having formed a mob') is used only here in the New Testament. Jason is Paul's host, likely a Jewish believer (the name is the Greek form of Joshua/Jesus).
6. Unable to find Paul and Silas, the mob seizes Jason as a proxy. The politarchas ('city authorities, politarchs') was the correct title for Thessalonica's magistrates — confirmed by inscriptions found in the city. The famous accusation 'turned the world upside down' (ten oikoumenen anastatosantes) is intended as an indictment but reads as an inadvertent tribute to the gospel's power.
7. The charge is politically framed: 'acting against Caesar's decrees' (apenanti ton dogmaton Kaisaros) and proclaiming 'another king' (basilea heteron). This echoes the charges against Jesus before Pilate (Luke 23:2). Hosting the missionaries makes Jason legally liable. The claim of 'another king' transforms the theological title 'Christ/Messiah' into a political threat within the Roman system.
8. The charge of sedition against Caesar effectively disturbs (etaraxan) both the common people and the officials. In the Roman system, any perceived challenge to imperial authority required a response.
9. The 'bond' (to hikanon, literally 'the sufficient thing') was a financial guarantee — Jason and the others posted bail ensuring that the missionaries would not cause further disturbance. This bond likely explains why Paul could not return to Thessalonica (1 Thessalonians 2:18) — doing so would have put Jason at legal and financial risk.
10. The nighttime departure (dia nyktos) is for safety. Berea (modern Veria) lay about 45 miles southwest of Thessalonica. Despite the recent violence, Paul's first action in a new city remains the same: he goes to the synagogue.
11. The Bereans are called eugenestroi ('more noble, more fair-minded, of better character'). Their nobility consists of two things: receptivity ('received the word with all eagerness,' meta pases prothymias) and critical examination ('examining the Scriptures daily,' to kath hemeran anakrinontes tas graphas). They model the ideal response: open hearts combined with rigorous study.
12. The result of the Berean method is widespread belief: 'many' (polloi) Jews believed, plus prominent Greek women and men. The pattern is similar to Thessalonica but more extensively positive.
13. The Thessalonian opponents travel 45 miles to Berea specifically to disrupt Paul's ministry — their opposition is relentless. The same pattern of external agitation disrupts what had been a positive reception.
14. Paul is the primary target; Silas and Timothy can remain safely. The phrase 'to the sea' (heos epi ten thalassan) indicates Paul traveled to the coast, from where he likely sailed to Athens. Timothy reappears here — he was last mentioned in 16:1-3 and has been with the team throughout.
15. Paul arrives in Athens escorted by Berean believers, who carry back his urgent request for Silas and Timothy to join him. Paul's time in Athens begins alone — an unusual circumstance that shapes his experience there.
16. The verb paroxyneto ('was provoked, was deeply stirred') is the same root as the paroxysmos of 15:39 — it denotes intense emotion, here righteous anger and grief. The word kateidolon ('full of idols, overwhelmed with idols') appears only here in the New Testament. Ancient sources confirm that Athens was saturated with religious images and temples.
17. Paul operates in two settings simultaneously: the synagogue (with Jews and God-fearers) and the agora (with whoever is present). Engaging in philosophical discussion in the Athenian agora placed Paul in the tradition of Socrates, who had done the same centuries earlier.
18. The Epicureans (followers of Epicurus, 341-270 BC) emphasized pleasure, withdrawal from public life, and denial of divine providence. The Stoics (from the Stoa Poikile in Athens) taught rational virtue, divine providence through logos, and living according to nature. These represent the two dominant philosophical schools. The term spermologos ('babbler,' literally 'seed-picker' — a bird that picks up scraps) was a derisive term for an intellectual scavenger who picks up bits of ideas without systematic understanding.
19. The Areopagus (Areios Pagos, 'hill of Ares/Mars') served both as a geographic location (the rocky hill northwest of the Acropolis) and as the name of the council that met there. The council had oversight of education and religious matters in Athens. Being brought before it was not necessarily hostile — they want to evaluate this 'new teaching' (kaine didache).
20. The word xenizonta ('strange, surprising, foreign') characterizes Paul's message as novel and unfamiliar. The Athenian appetite for novelty (described in the next verse) makes them curious rather than hostile.
21. Luke's parenthetical observation about Athenian culture — their insatiable appetite for novelty (ti kainoteron, 'something newer') — is confirmed by ancient writers including Thucydides and Demosthenes. This cultural trait provides Paul's opportunity to be heard but also explains the superficial response of some listeners.
22. The word deisidaimonesterous can mean either 'very religious' (positive/neutral) or 'very superstitious' (negative). As a skilled rhetorician, Paul likely uses it with deliberate ambiguity — the audience would hear a compliment, while the deeper meaning carries critique. We render it positively, following the rhetorical convention of beginning with praise.

23. The altar Agnosto Theo ('To an Unknown God') provides Paul's rhetorical point of contact. Ancient sources attest altars to unknown gods in Athens. Paul does not condemn their worship impulse but redirects it: what you worship without knowing, I can identify. The neuter pronoun *ho* ('what') rather than the masculine *hon* ('whom') may be deliberate — Paul begins with their conceptual framework before introducing the personal God.
24. Paul begins with creation — a starting point that both Jews and philosophically minded pagans could engage. The claim that God does not live in temples (*ouk en cheiropoiotois naois katoikei*) echoes Isaiah 66:1-2 and Stephen's speech (Acts 7:48), but would also resonate with Stoic critiques of popular religion. This is said within sight of the Parthenon.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 66:1-2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. God is not dependent on human service (*oude hypo cheiron anthroponon therapeutetai*) — a rejection of the temple-cult system that assumed gods needed human provision. Instead, God is the source of 'life and breath and everything' (*zoe kai pnoen kai ta panta*). This echoes both Genesis 2:7 and Stoic ideas about divine self-sufficiency.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The phrase 'from one man' (*ex henos*) — some manuscripts add 'blood' (*haimatos*) — asserts the unity of the human race from a single ancestor (Adam). This directly challenges Greek ethnic pride, particularly Athenian claims of autochthony (being 'born from the earth' of Attica, not descended from outsiders). God sovereignly determines both the times (*kairous*) and boundaries (*horothusias*) of nations.
27. The verb *pselaphesaien* ('feel, grope, touch') suggests searching in darkness or uncertainty — humanity reaches for God imperfectly. The optative mood (a rare grammatical form) expresses hope mixed with uncertainty. But the resolution is encouraging: God is 'not far' (*ou makran*) from any person. The gap between divine transcendence and human accessibility is bridged by God's proximity.
28. Paul quotes two pagan poets. 'In him we live and move and have our being' is attributed to Epimenides of Crete (6th century BC). 'For we are indeed his offspring' (*tou gar kai genos esmen*) comes from the Cilician poet Aratus (*Phaenomena* 5) and possibly also from Cleanthes's Hymn to Zeus. Paul appropriates pagan insight to build a bridge to biblical truth — these poets spoke more truly than they knew.
29. Paul draws a logical conclusion from the poets: if we are God's offspring, then God cannot be less than human — he cannot be mere metal or stone, no matter how artfully crafted. The word *charagmati* ('image, engraving, mark') denotes something produced by *techne* ('craft, art') and *enthymeseos* ('thought, imagination'). The argument moves from the poets' premise to an anti-idolatry conclusion.
30. Paul echoes the principle of 14:16 — God 'overlooked' (*hyperidon*) past ignorance — but adds a decisive 'but now' (*ta nun*). The age of tolerated ignorance is over. The command to repent (*metanoein*) is universal: 'all people everywhere' (*tous anthropous pantas pantachou*). The scope is absolute — no nation, class, or philosophical school is exempt.
31. Paul reaches the gospel's core: judgment, a specific appointed man, and resurrection. He does not name Jesus explicitly (the audience would not know the name) but identifies him through the resurrection. The word *pistin* ('assurance, proof, guarantee') is related to *pistis* ('faith') — God has given grounds for faith by raising this man from the dead. The resurrection is both proof of Jesus's appointment and the basis for universal accountability.
32. The response divides into three groups: mockers, the curious, and believers (v. 34). The bodily resurrection was the stumbling block for Greek thought, which generally held the body in low regard and could not conceive of its restoration. Epicureans denied any afterlife; Stoics held to a dissolution of the individual into the cosmic *logos*. Physical resurrection was offensive to both.
33. Paul departs without being expelled — a contrast with the violent rejections in other cities. The Areopagus encounter ends not with persecution but with a mixture of intellectual dismissal and genuine interest.
34. The converts include Dionysius, a member of the Areopagus council itself — a significant social and intellectual conversion. Damaris is named specifically, suggesting she was well known to the early church. The phrase 'others with them' (*heteroi syn autois*) indicates a small but genuine community of believers. Athens produced a quieter response than other cities, but it produced real faith.

18

Summary: Acts 18 records Paul's eighteen-month ministry in Corinth, the commercial capital of the province of Achaia. Paul meets Aquila and Priscilla, Jewish tentmakers expelled from Rome by Emperor Claudius's edict, and works alongside them at their trade. He reasons in the synagogue each Sabbath. When Silas and Timothy arrive from Macedonia, Paul intensifies his preaching, declaring Jesus to be the Christ. Jewish opposition leads Paul to declare, 'Your blood is on your own heads; from now on I will go to the Gentiles.' He moves next door to the house of Titius Justus, and Crispus, the synagogue ruler, believes. The Lord encourages Paul in a night vision: 'Do not be afraid; keep speaking, for I have many people in this city.' Paul remains a year and a half. Jewish opponents bring Paul before the proconsul Gallio, who dismisses the case as a Jewish internal matter. The chapter ends with Paul's departure through Cenchreae, a brief stop in Ephesus, and his return to Antioch, before Apollos is introduced in Ephesus.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Gallio episode is one of the most historically significant passages in Acts. An inscription found at Delphi dates Gallio's proconsulship to approximately AD 51-52, providing the single most important fixed point for Pauline chronology. Gallio's refusal to adjudicate religious disputes effectively establishes a Roman legal precedent that Christianity is a legitimate religio licita within Judaism. The Lord's night vision to Paul (vv. 9-10) contains the remarkable promise 'I have many people in this city' (laos moi polys en te polei taute) — God claims a people in Corinth before they have yet believed.*

Translation Friction: *Claudius's expulsion of Jews from Rome (v. 2) is independently attested by Suetonius (Claudius 25.4), who mentions disturbances 'at the instigation of Chrestus' — likely a garbled reference to disputes about Christ within the Roman Jewish community. The dating is typically placed around AD 49. Paul's vow at Cenchreae (v. 18) — shaving his head — is likely a Nazirite vow (Numbers 6), showing that Paul continued to practice Jewish customs voluntarily. The introduction of Apollos (vv. 24-28) raises questions about the diversity of early Christian teaching — he knew only 'the baptism of John' until Priscilla and Aquila instructed him.*

Connections: *Paul's Corinthian ministry produces the congregation to which he later writes 1 and 2 Corinthians. Aquila and Priscilla reappear in Romans 16:3-5, 1 Corinthians 16:19, and 2 Timothy 4:19. Apollos becomes a significant figure in the Corinthian church (1 Corinthians 1:12, 3:4-6). The tentmaking detail connects to Paul's principle of financial self-support (1 Thessalonians 2:9, 1 Corinthians 9:1-18). Gallio's legal ruling anticipates the broader question of Christianity's status under Roman law.*

¹After this Paul left Athens and went to Corinth. ²And he found a Jew named Aquila, a native of Pontus, who had recently come from Italy with his wife Priscilla, because Claudius had commanded all the Jews to leave Rome. Paul went to see them, ³On account of the fact that he was of the same craft, he abode with them, and wrought — for by their occupation they were tentmakers. ⁴He reasoned in the synagogue every Sabbath and tried to persuade Jews and Greeks. ⁵When Silas and Timothy arrived from Macedonia, Paul was occupied with the word, testifying to the Jews that the Christ was Jesus. ⁶And when they opposed and reviled him, he shook out his garments and said to them, "Your blood be on your own heads! I am innocent. From now on I will go to the Gentiles." ⁷He left there and went to the house of a man named Titius Justus, a worshiper of God, whose house was next door to the synagogue. ⁸Crispus, the ruler of the synagogue, believed in the Lord, together with his entire household. And many of the Corinthians, hearing Paul, believed and were baptized. ⁹And the Lord said to Paul one night in a vision, "Do not be afraid, but go on speaking and do not be silent, ¹⁰For I am with you, and no man will set on you to hurt you — for I have many those present in this city. ¹¹And he stayed a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them. ¹²But when Gallio was proconsul of Achaia, the Jews made a united attack on Paul and brought him before the tribunal, ¹³Indeed, declaring, This fellow persuadeth men to worship God contrary to the law. ¹⁴But when Paul was about to open his mouth, Gallio said to the Jews, "If it were a matter of wrongdoing or vicious crime, O Jews, I would have reason to accept your complaint. ¹⁵But since it is a matter of questions about words and names and your own law, see to it yourselves. I refuse to be a judge of these things." ¹⁶And he drove them from the tribunal. ¹⁷And they all seized Sosthenes, the ruler of the synagogue, and beat him in front of the tribunal. But Gallio paid no attention to any of this. ¹⁸After this, Paul stayed many days longer and then took leave of the brothers and set sail for Syria, accompanied by Priscilla and Aquila. At Cenchreae he had cut his hair, for he was under a vow. ¹⁹They arrived at Ephesus, and he left them there. He himself went into the synagogue and reasoned with the Jews. ²⁰When they asked him to stay for a longer period, he declined, ²¹However, bade them farewell and stated, I must by all means keep this feast that comes in Jerusalem — but I will return again to you, if God will. Then he sailed from Ephesus. ²²When he had landed at Caesarea, he went up and greeted the church, and then went down to Antioch. ²³After spending some time there, he departed and went from place to place through the region of Galatia and Phrygia, strengthening all the disciples. ²⁴Now a Jew named Apollos, a native of Alexandria, arrived in Ephesus. He was an eloquent man, competent in the Scriptures. ²⁵He had been instructed in the way of the Lord. And being fervent in spirit, he spoke and taught accurately the things concerning Jesus, though he knew only the baptism of John. ²⁶He began to speak boldly in the synagogue, but when Priscilla and Aquila heard him, they took him aside and explained the way of God to him more accurately. ²⁷When he wished to cross to Achaia, the brothers encouraged him and wrote to the disciples to welcome

him. When he arrived, he greatly helped those who through grace had believed, ²⁸Since he powerfully demonstrated to the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Corinth, about 50 miles west of Athens, was the capital of the Roman province of Achaia and a major commercial center situated on the narrow isthmus connecting the Peloponnese to mainland Greece. Its two harbors (Cenchreae on the east, Lechaeum on the west) made it a crossroads of Mediterranean trade.
2. Aquila was originally from Pontus (a region on the southern coast of the Black Sea). The expulsion under Claudius (dia to diatetachenai Klaudion) is dated to approximately AD 49. Suetonius reports that Claudius expelled Jews from Rome because of disturbances 'impulsore Chresto' ('at the instigation of Chrestus'), likely garbling 'Christus' — suggesting that disputes about Jesus within the Roman synagogues led to public disorder.
3. The word skenopoiōi ('tentmakers') may refer specifically to making tents from leather or cilicium (a cloth from Cilicia, Paul's home province), or more broadly to leather-working. Paul's manual labor was both practical necessity and theological principle — he worked to avoid being a burden on the communities he served (cf. 1 Thessalonians 2:9, 2 Thessalonians 3:8).
4. The imperfect tense epeithen ('was persuading, tried to persuade') suggests an ongoing process rather than immediate results. Paul's weekly Sabbath teaching addresses the usual mixed audience of Jews and Greek God-fearers.
5. The arrival of Silas and Timothy (likely bringing financial support from the Philippians, cf. 2 Corinthians 11:9, Philippians 4:15) freed Paul from tentmaking to devote himself fully to preaching. The phrase syneicheto to logo ('was occupied with the word, was gripped by the word') suggests an intensification of his preaching ministry.
6. Shaking out garments (ektinaxamenos ta himatia) is a variant of shaking off dust — a prophetic gesture of renunciation. The phrase 'your blood on your own heads' (to haima hymon epi ten kephalen hymon) echoes Ezekiel 33:1-6, where the watchman who warns is absolved of responsibility. 'I am innocent' (katharos ego, literally 'I am clean') declares Paul has fulfilled his obligation. This is the second declaration of turning to the Gentiles (cf. 13:46).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 33:1-6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The move next door (synomorousa, 'sharing a wall with, adjacent to') to the synagogue is both provocative and strategic — Paul remains visible and accessible to synagogue attendees who might be interested. Titus Justus is a God-fearing Gentile whose Roman name (tria nomina) suggests Roman citizenship.
8. The conversion of the synagogue ruler himself (archisynagogos) is a dramatic loss for the Jewish opposition. Paul personally baptized Crispus (1 Corinthians 1:14). The imperfect tenses episteuon kai ebaptizonto ('were believing and being baptized') describe an ongoing stream of conversions.
9. The Lord's night vision to Paul implies that Paul was experiencing fear — understandable given the pattern of persecution in every previous city. The triple command — 'do not be afraid' (me phobou), 'go on speaking' (lalei), 'do not be silent' (me siopeses) — addresses both emotional fear and the temptation to retreat from proclamation.
10. The promise 'I am with you' (ego eimi meta sou) echoes God's assurances to patriarchs and prophets (Genesis 26:24, Jeremiah 1:8). The promise 'I have many people in this city' (laos moi polys en te polei taute) is theologically striking — God claims a 'people' (laos, the covenant term) in Corinth who have not yet come to faith. Their future conversion is so certain that God speaks of them as already his.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 26:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 1:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Eighteen months is one of the longest stays recorded in Acts (comparable to his three years in Ephesus, 20:31). This extended ministry allowed the Corinthian church to develop roots. It was during this period that Paul likely wrote 1 and 2 Thessalonians.
12. Gallio (Lucius Junius Gallio Annaeanus) was the brother of the philosopher Seneca. An inscription at Delphi dates his proconsulship to approximately AD 51-52, making this the most important chronological anchor for Pauline studies. The bema ('tribunal, judgment seat') in Corinth has been archaeologically identified — a large raised platform in the agora.
13. The charge is ambiguous: 'contrary to the law' (para ton nomon) could mean contrary to Jewish law or contrary to Roman law. The accusers likely intend both — Paul's teaching violates Jewish interpretation and promotes an unauthorized religio. The vagueness of the charge proves to be its undoing.
14. Gallio interrupts before Paul can even speak — he needs no defense because the case has no merit. Gallio distinguishes between adikema ('wrongdoing,' a civil or criminal offense) and rhaidiourgema poneron ('vicious crime, wicked fraud') — matters a Roman magistrate would adjudicate.

15. Gallio classifies the dispute as an internal Jewish matter involving 'words and names and your own law' (peri logou kai onomaton kai nomou tou kath hymas). This is a landmark ruling: a Roman proconsul formally declares that the debate about Jesus is a Jewish theological question, not a Roman legal matter. The decision effectively protects Christian missionaries from prosecution on religious grounds.
16. The verb *apelasen* ('drove away, expelled') indicates a forceful dismissal — Gallio has no patience for what he views as a trivial religious squabble wasting his court's time.
17. Sosthenes, who succeeded Crispus as synagogue ruler, becomes the victim of the crowd's frustration. Whether 'they all' (*pantes*) refers to Greeks expressing anti-Jewish sentiment or to Jews punishing Sosthenes for failing to prosecute successfully is debated. The same Sosthenes may later have become a believer (1 Corinthians 1:1). Gallio's indifference (*ouden touton* to Gallioni *emelen*) demonstrates the Roman attitude toward Jewish disputes.
18. Cenchreae was Corinth's eastern port on the Saronic Gulf. Paul's vow (*euchen*) that involved cutting his hair is almost certainly a Nazirite vow (Numbers 6:1-21), demonstrating that Paul continued to observe Jewish practices voluntarily while teaching that they were not required for salvation. Priscilla is named before Aquila here and in several other passages, possibly indicating her prominence in the partnership.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 6:1-21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Paul leaves Aquila and Priscilla in Ephesus — they will prepare the ground for his later extended ministry there (19:1-41). His brief synagogue visit is a preliminary contact. Ephesus, the largest city in the Roman province of Asia, will become Paul's longest single base of operations.
20. The Ephesian Jews' positive response — asking Paul to stay — contrasts with the opposition in most other cities. Paul declines but will return (19:1).
21. The conditional 'if God wills' (*tou theou thelontos*) expresses Paul's submission to divine direction. Some manuscripts add 'I must by all means keep the coming feast in Jerusalem,' but the SBLGNT omits this addition. Paul's promise to return is fulfilled in 19:1.
22. The phrase 'went up' (*anabas*) without naming Jerusalem almost certainly means Paul visited the Jerusalem church — one always 'goes up' to Jerusalem. 'Went down' (*katebe*) to Antioch completes the second missionary journey's circuit, returning to the sending church. Luke compresses the entire conclusion of the journey into a single verse.
23. This verse marks the beginning of the third missionary journey. The familiar pattern of strengthening (*episterizon*) existing churches continues. The Galatian and Phrygian churches are those founded during the first and second journeys.
24. Apollos is introduced with impressive credentials: Alexandrian origin (Alexandria was the intellectual capital of the Hellenistic world, home to the great library and to Philo), *logos* ('eloquent, learned'), and *dynatos en tais graphais* ('powerful in the Scriptures'). He becomes an important figure in the early church (1 Corinthians 1:12, 3:4-6, Titus 3:13).
25. Apollos's knowledge was genuine but incomplete — he knew about Jesus but only within the framework of John's baptism, which pointed to the coming Messiah without knowledge of Pentecost and the Spirit. The phrase *zeon to pneumati* ('fervent in spirit') may refer to the Holy Spirit or to his own zealous disposition. His teaching was *akribos* ('accurately') as far as it went.
26. Priscilla is named first — again suggesting her leadership role in the instruction. They do not correct Apollos publicly but take him aside privately (*proselabonto auton*, 'took him to themselves'), showing both tact and love. They explain God's way *akribesterion* ('more accurately, more precisely') — completing what was incomplete in his understanding.
27. The Ephesian church provides Apollos with a letter of recommendation for the Corinthian church — an early example of inter-church communication and credentials. The phrase 'through grace' (*dia tes charitos*) can modify either 'those who had believed through grace' or 'he helped through grace those who had believed.' Both readings are theologically valid.
28. The adverb *eutonos* ('powerfully, vigorously') and the verb *diakatelencheto* ('refuted thoroughly, argued down') describe Apollos's formidable debating ability. His strength was in public (*demosia*) scriptural demonstration — proving from the Old Testament that Jesus is the Messiah. His Alexandrian education and scriptural mastery made him an exceptionally effective advocate for the gospel.

19

Summary: Acts 19 records Paul's extended ministry in Ephesus, the major city of Roman Asia. Paul encounters about twelve disciples who knew only John's baptism; he baptizes them in the name of Jesus, lays hands on them, and the Holy Spirit comes with tongues and prophecy. Paul teaches for two years in the hall of Tyrannus, until 'all the residents of Asia heard the word of the Lord.' Extraordinary miracles occur through Paul — even handkerchiefs and aprons from his body heal the sick. Jewish exorcists attempt to use Jesus's name as a magic formula and are overpowered by an evil spirit. This produces a widespread fear of God, and many practitioners of magic publicly burn their scrolls, valued at fifty thousand pieces of silver. The chapter climaxes with the riot of the silversmiths: Demetrius, whose trade depends on making silver shrines of Artemis, incites the craftsmen against Paul, and the city erupts in

two hours of chanting 'Great is Artemis of the Ephesians!' The city clerk eventually calms the crowd and dismisses the assembly.

What Makes This Remarkable: Luke devotes more space to Ephesus than any other city except Jerusalem, reflecting its strategic importance. The three-year ministry there (20:31) produced churches throughout the province of Asia (Colossae, Laodicea, Hierapolis — cf. Colossians 4:13). The burning of magic scrolls worth fifty thousand silver coins (roughly 137 years of daily wages) demonstrates the radical economic implications of conversion. The Artemis riot reveals the intersection of religion, economics, and civic identity — the goddess was not just a religious figure but the foundation of Ephesus's identity, tourism, and economy. The temple of Artemis was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.

Translation Friction: The 'disciples' in verse 1 who knew only John's baptism raise questions about the boundaries of early Christian identity — were they Christians with incomplete understanding or followers of John who had not yet encountered the Christian message? Luke treats them as the latter. The 'handkerchiefs and aprons' (soudaraia kai simikinthia) in verse 12 are medical and artisanal terms — cloths used for wiping sweat and leather aprons worn during manual labor. The sons of Sceva are called 'a Jewish high priest' (v. 14), but no high priest named Sceva is known; the title may be an exaggeration or a claim to priestly lineage.

Connections: The re-baptism of John's disciples connects to Apollos's similar situation (18:25) and raises the question of baptism's sufficiency. Paul's extended teaching ministry parallels Jesus's pattern of sustained instruction. The burning of magic scrolls echoes the Deuteronomic prohibition of sorcery (Deuteronomy 18:10-12). The Artemis riot anticipates the charges Paul will face in Jerusalem. Paul wrote 1 Corinthians during this Ephesian ministry (1 Corinthians 16:8) and likely Galatians and Philippians as well.

1It happened that while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul passed through the interior regions and came to Ephesus. There he found some disciples. 2And he said to them, "Did you receive the Holy Spirit when you believed?" And they said, "No, we have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit." 3And he said, "Into what then were you baptized?" They said, "Into John's baptism." 4And Paul said, "John baptized with the baptism of repentance, telling the people to believe in the one who was to come after him, that is, Jesus." 5On hearing this, they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. 6And when Paul had laid his hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them, and they began speaking in tongues and prophesying. 7There were about twelve men in all. 8He entered the synagogue and for three months spoke boldly, reasoning and persuading them about the kingdom of God. 9But when some became stubborn and continued in unbelief, speaking evil of the Way before the congregation, he withdrew from them and took the disciples with him, reasoning daily in the hall of Tyrannus. 10This continued for two years, so that all the residents of Asia heard the word of the Lord, both Jews and Greeks. 11And God was doing extraordinary miracles through the hands of Paul, 12So that from his physical body were brought to the sick handkerchiefs or aprons, and the diseases went away from them, and the evil spirits traveled out of them. 13Then some of the itinerant Jewish exorcists undertook to invoke the name of the Lord Jesus over those who had evil spirits, saying, "I adjure you by the Jesus whom Paul proclaims." 14Seven sons of a Jewish high priest named Sceva were doing this. 15But the evil spirit answered them, "Jesus I know, and Paul I recognize, but who are you?" 16And the man in whom the evil spirit lived leaped on them, mastered all of them, and overpowered them, so that they fled out of that house naked and wounded. 17This became known to all residents of Ephesus, both Jews and Greeks. And fear fell upon them all, and the name of the Lord Jesus was exalted. 18Also many of those who were now believers came, confessing and divulging their practices. 19And a number of those who had practiced magic brought their books together and burned them in the sight of all. And they counted the value of them and found it came to fifty thousand pieces of silver. 20So the word of the Lord continued to increase and prevail mightily. 21After these events Paul resolved in the Spirit to pass through Macedonia and Achaia and go to Jerusalem, saying, "After I have been there, I must also see Rome." 22And having sent into Macedonia two of his helpers, Timothy and Erastus, he himself stayed in Asia for a while. 23About that time there arose no small disturbance concerning the Way. 24For a man named Demetrius, a silversmith, who made silver shrines of Artemis, brought no little business to the craftsmen. 25These he gathered together, along with the workers in similar trades, and said, "Men, you know that from this business we have our prosperity. 26And you see and hear that not only in Ephesus but in almost all of Asia this Paul has

persuaded and turned away a great many people, saying that gods made with hands are not gods. ²⁷And there is danger not only that this trade of ours may come into disrepute, but also that the temple of the great goddess Artemis may be counted as nothing, and that she may even be deposed from her magnificence — she whom all Asia and the world worship." ²⁸When they heard this they were enraged and were crying out, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians!" ²⁹Confusion swept through the whole city. The crowd grabbed Gaius and Aristarchus, Paul's traveling companions from Macedonia, and rushed together into the theater. ³⁰But when Paul wished to go in among the crowd, the disciples would not let him. ³¹Even some of the provincial officials of Asia, who were friends of Paul, sent him a message urging him not to risk going into the theater. ³²Now some cried out one thing, some another, for the assembly was in confusion, and most of them did not know why they had come together. ³³Some of the crowd prompted Alexander, whom the Jews had put forward. And Alexander, motioning with his hand, wanted to make a defense to the crowd. ³⁴But when they recognized that he was a Jew, for about two hours they all cried out with one voice, "Great is Artemis of the Ephesians!" ³⁵And when the city clerk had quieted the crowd, he said, "Men of Ephesus, who is there who does not know that the city of the Ephesians is temple keeper of the great Artemis, and of the sacred stone that fell from the sky? ³⁶Since these things cannot be denied, you ought to be calm and do nothing rash. ³⁷For you have brought these men here who are neither sacrilegious nor blasphemers of our goddess. ³⁸If therefore Demetrius and the craftsmen with him have a complaint against anyone, the courts are open and there are proconsuls — let them bring charges against one another. ³⁹But if you seek anything further, it shall be settled in the regular assembly. ⁴⁰For we really are in danger of being charged with rioting today, since there is no cause that we can give to justify this commotion." ⁴¹And when he had said these things, he dismissed the assembly.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'interior regions' (ta anoterika mere) likely refers to the inland route through the Phrygian highlands rather than the main coastal road. Paul fulfills his promise to return to Ephesus (18:21). The 'disciples' (mathetas) he finds will prove to have an incomplete understanding of the faith.
2. Paul's diagnostic question reveals the gap: these disciples have no knowledge of the Holy Spirit's outpouring at Pentecost. Their response — 'we have not even heard that there is a Holy Spirit' (oud' ei pneuma hagion estin ekousamen) — does not mean they were unaware of the Spirit's existence (the Old Testament speaks of God's Spirit) but that they had not heard of the Spirit's new-covenant activity.
3. The connection Paul draws between the Spirit and baptism leads to his diagnostic question about their baptism. Their answer — 'John's baptism' — explains their incomplete understanding. They stand at the threshold between the old and new covenants.
4. Paul distinguishes John's baptism from Christian baptism: John's was preparatory, pointing forward to 'the one coming after him.' John's baptism expressed repentance; Christian baptism expresses faith in Jesus as the one John announced. The baptism of repentance is fulfilled and superseded by baptism into Jesus's name.
5. This is the only clear instance of re-baptism in the New Testament. The distinction between John's baptism and baptism 'in the name of the Lord Jesus' (eis to onoma tou kyriou Iesou) is significant enough to warrant a new baptism rather than supplementing the old one.
6. The laying on of hands (epithontos cheiras) precedes the Spirit's coming, connecting apostolic mediation to the Spirit's gift. The manifestations — tongues and prophecy — echo Pentecost (Acts 2) and the Cornelius episode (Acts 10:46), establishing continuity between Jewish, Gentile, and now incomplete believers' experiences of the Spirit.
7. The number twelve (dodeka) may be coincidental or may carry symbolic weight — twelve men forming a new community, echoing the twelve apostles and the twelve tribes. The qualifier 'about' (hosei) suggests Luke's approximation.
8. Three months of synagogue ministry is the longest such period recorded in Acts. Paul's message is summarized as 'the kingdom of God' (tes basileias tou theou) — the comprehensive term for God's redemptive reign inaugurated through Jesus.
9. The term 'the Way' (ten hodon) is the early church's self-designation (cf. 9:2, 22:4, 24:14, 24:22). The scholē Tyrannou ('hall/school of Tyrannus') was likely a lecture hall or teaching space rented from a man named Tyrannus. Some manuscripts add 'from the fifth to the tenth hour' (approximately 11 AM to 4 PM), suggesting Paul taught during the afternoon siesta when the hall was available.
10. Two years of daily teaching from a single urban center produces province-wide impact — 'all the residents of Asia' (pantas tous katoikountas ten Asian) is hyperbolic but indicates extraordinarily wide dissemination. The churches of Colossae, Laodicea, and Hierapolis (Colossians 4:13) were likely founded during this period by Paul's associates, not by Paul himself.
11. The litotes ou tas tuchousas ('not the ordinary kind') means 'extraordinary, uncommon.' Luke carefully attributes the miracles to God (ho theos epoiei) working 'through Paul's hands' — Paul is the instrument, not the source.

12. The soudarion ('handkerchief, sweat cloth') and simikinthion ('apron, work cloth') are items from Paul's tentmaking labor. This parallels the healing through Peter's shadow (5:15) and the woman healed by touching Jesus's garment (Mark 5:27-30). Luke reports the phenomenon without endorsing it as normative — the extraordinary nature of these events is emphasized by the unusual vocabulary.
13. Jewish exorcism was a recognized practice in the ancient world (cf. Josephus, *Antiquities* 8.46-49). These itinerant exorcists attempt to use Jesus's name as a magical formula — a tool of power rather than an expression of faith. The phrase 'the Jesus whom Paul proclaims' (ton Iesoun hon Paulos keraussei) reveals their secondhand relationship to both Jesus and Paul.
14. No Jewish high priest named Sceva is known from any source. The title archieros ('high priest') may be a self-claimed designation to enhance their exorcistic authority, or it may indicate membership in a high-priestly family. Seven sons practicing exorcism together suggests a family business.
15. The evil spirit's response uses two different verbs: ginosko ('I know' — deep knowledge) for Jesus and epistamai ('I recognize, I am acquainted with') for Paul. The dismissive 'but who are you?' (hymeis de tines este) exposes the exorcists as unauthorized — they have no relationship with Jesus and no spiritual authority. The spirit's recognition of Jesus and Paul contrasts sharply with its contempt for the pretenders.
16. The demonized man's supernatural strength overpowers the exorcists completely. The word amphoteron ('both/all') suggests two or more of the seven were present. They flee gymnous ('naked, stripped') and tetraumatismenous ('wounded, injured') — a humiliating defeat that demonstrates the danger of treating Jesus's name as a magic charm.
17. The failed exorcism paradoxically magnifies Jesus's name — it demonstrates that his name carries real power that cannot be casually manipulated. The 'fear' (phobos) that falls on the city is reverent awe before genuine spiritual authority, contrasting with the fraudulent use of that authority.
18. The confession comes from believers (ton pepisteukotōn) — those who had already professed faith but were still secretly involved in magic. The dual verbs exomologoumenoi ('confessing') and anagellontes ('divulging, making known') indicate both acknowledgment of wrong and public disclosure of specific practices.
19. The ta perierga ('magic arts, curious practices') refers specifically to the magical papyri and spell books for which Ephesus was famous — 'Ephesian letters' (Ephesia grammata) was a technical term for magical formulas. The public burning (katekaion enopion panton) demonstrates radical repentance. Fifty thousand pieces of silver (arguriou myriadas pente) — approximately 50,000 days' wages — represents an enormous financial sacrifice, demonstrating the depth of conversion.
20. Another of Luke's progress reports: 'mightily' (kata kratos, 'according to power') describes the gospel's advance. The word both 'increases' (euxanen) in extent and 'prevails' (ischuen) in power — quantitative and qualitative growth.
21. Paul's itinerary — Macedonia, Achaia, Jerusalem, then Rome — maps the trajectory of Acts' final chapters. The phrase en to pneumatī ('in the Spirit') may refer to the Holy Spirit's direction or Paul's own determined spirit. The word dei ('I must') suggests divine necessity — Rome is not merely a destination but a destiny (cf. 23:11, 27:24).
22. Timothy and Erastus are sent ahead to prepare the Macedonian churches for Paul's visit. Erastus may be the city treasurer of Corinth mentioned in Romans 16:23 — an inscription found in Corinth names an Erastus who paved a street at his own expense. Paul remains in Asia to complete his Ephesian work.
23. Luke's characteristic litotes — 'no small disturbance' (tarachos ouk oligos) — introduces the Artemis riot, one of the most dramatic episodes in Acts. The cause is 'the Way' (tes hodou), the early church's self-designation.
24. Demetrius is an argyropokos ('silversmith, silver-worker') who makes naous argorous ('silver shrines') — miniature replicas of the temple of Artemis or statuettes of the goddess. The temple of Artemis at Ephesus was one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. The souvenir trade was a major industry, and Paul's preaching against idols threatened their livelihood.
25. Demetrius assembles not just his own workers but all craftsmen in related trades — a guild meeting. His first argument is economic: 'from this business we have our prosperity' (ek tautes tes ergasias he euporia hemin estin). Religion and economics are inseparable in his appeal.
26. Demetrius inadvertently confirms the success of Paul's mission — his preaching has impacted 'almost all of Asia' (schedon pases tes Asias). Paul's message is summarized as 'gods made with hands are not gods' (ouk eisin theoi hoi dia cheiron ginomenoi) — an echo of Isaiah's anti-idol polemic (Isaiah 44:9-20) and Paul's Areopagus speech.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 44:9-20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Demetrius escalates from economics to religion and civic identity: the temple's reputation, the goddess's dignity, and the city's worldwide fame are all at stake. The title 'the great goddess Artemis' (tes megales theas Artemidos) and the claim of worldwide worship (hole he Asia kai he oikoumene sebetai) are not exaggerations — the Artemis cult was one of the most widespread in the ancient world.
28. The crowd's chant — Megale he Artemis Ephesion ('Great is Artemis of the Ephesians') — is a liturgical acclamation that has been found in inscriptions from Ephesus. It combines religious devotion with civic pride. The repetition of this cry (cf. v. 34) creates a mob atmosphere.
29. The theater of Ephesus, seating approximately 25,000, was the largest in Asia Minor and served as a venue for public assemblies. Gaius and Aristarchus are seized as proxies for Paul. Aristarchus reappears in 20:4, 27:2, Colossians 4:10, and Philemon 24, indicating he remained a faithful companion despite this traumatic experience.

- 30.** Paul's courage — he wants to enter the mob-filled theater — is matched by the disciples' wisdom in restraining him. His willingness to face danger personally is consistent with his character throughout Acts.
- 31.** The Asiarchai ('Asiarchs') were prominent citizens who served as patrons of the provincial cult of Rome and the emperor — the highest social rank in the province. That some were Paul's friends (ontes auto philoi) reveals the breadth of his social connections in Ephesus. Their warning adds to the picture of danger.
- 32.** Luke captures the chaos of mob psychology with dry precision: most people in the theater do not even know why they are there (hoi pleious ouk edeisan tinos heneka syneleluthiesan). The word ekklesia ('assembly') is used here in its secular sense of a civic gathering, though it is the same word used for the church.
- 33.** The Jews push Alexander forward, apparently to distance themselves from the Christians and avoid being caught up in the anti-Paul sentiment. Alexander attempts to address the crowd — likely to explain that mainstream Jews are distinct from the followers of the Way — but is shouted down.
- 34.** The crowd's recognition that Alexander is Jewish only inflames them further — they associate all Jews with opposition to their goddess. Two hours (hos epi horas duo) of continuous chanting demonstrates the frenzy of religiously motivated mob violence. The scene is chaotic, dangerous, and profoundly irrational.
- 35.** The grammateus ('city clerk, town secretary') was the chief executive officer of Ephesus, responsible for public order. The title neokoros ('temple keeper, temple warden') was an official civic honor attested in Ephesian inscriptions. The diopetes ('that which fell from Zeus/the sky') likely refers to a meteorite or ancient image believed to have fallen from heaven and housed in the Artemis temple.
- 36.** The clerk's argument is pragmatic: Ephesus's status as temple keeper is undeniable, so there is nothing to be agitated about. The word propetes ('rash, reckless, hasty') characterizes the mob's behavior as undignified and unnecessary.
- 37.** The clerk makes a legal observation: Gaius and Aristarchus have committed no crime — they are not hierosulous ('temple robbers, sacrilegious') and have not blasphemed Artemis. This suggests Paul's preaching, while opposing idols in principle, was conducted without directly attacking the Artemis cult.
- 38.** The clerk directs legitimate grievances to the proper legal channels: agoraioi ('court days, assizes') are held regularly, and anthypatoi ('proconsuls') are available for jurisdiction. The plural 'proconsuls' may be a general reference to the office or may reflect the specific historical moment when two proconsuls briefly served after the assassination of M. Junius Silanus.
- 39.** The ennomo ekklesia ('lawful assembly, regular assembly') was the formal citizens' assembly that met three times a month in Ephesus. The clerk implicitly contrasts this unlawful gathering with the legitimate civic process.
- 40.** The clerk's strongest argument is the threat of Roman intervention: unauthorized assemblies could result in the city losing its privileged status. The word staseos ('riot, sedition, insurrection') was a serious charge under Roman law. The phrase 'no cause' (medenos aitiou) means they cannot justify the gathering to Roman authorities. Roman suppression of civil disorder was swift and severe.
- 41.** The clerk's authority is sufficient to end the two-hour disturbance. The verb apelusen ('dismissed, released') is the technical term for closing a formal assembly. Luke again uses ekklesia in its secular sense. The crisis is resolved through civic procedure rather than violence — a pattern Luke highlights to show that Christianity does not inherently threaten public order.

20

Summary: Acts 20 narrates Paul's journey through Macedonia and Greece back toward Jerusalem, including a memorable scene in Troas where the young man Eutychus falls from a window during Paul's midnight sermon and is restored to life. The chapter concludes with Paul's farewell address to the elders of the Ephesian church at Miletus — a deeply emotional speech in which he warns of future threats to the community and commends them to God's grace. This is the only speech in Acts addressed to a Christian audience by Paul, making it a unique window into his pastoral theology.

What Makes This Remarkable: The 'we' narrative resumes at verse 5, indicating the author's presence as a traveling companion. Paul's Miletus speech (vv. 18-35) is structured like a Greco-Roman farewell discourse: it reviews past conduct, warns of future dangers, and entrusts the audience to a higher authority. The quotation of Jesus in verse 35 — 'It is more blessed to give than to receive' — appears nowhere in the Gospels, representing an otherwise unrecorded saying of Jesus (an agraphon). The speech's emphasis on 'the whole counsel of God' (v. 27) and elders as 'overseers' (episkopoi, v. 28) became foundational for later church governance theology.

Translation Friction: The Eutychus episode (vv. 7-12) uses language that parallels Elijah's raising of the widow's son (1 Kings 17:21). Whether Eutychus actually died or was merely thought dead is debated — Paul's statement 'his life is in him' (v. 10) could indicate either resurrection or reassurance. We render the Greek as given without resolving the ambiguity. The terms 'elders' (presbyteroi, v. 17) and 'overseers' (episkopoi, v. 28) are used interchangeably here, though later church tradition distinguished them as separate offices.

Connections: Paul's determination to reach Jerusalem by Pentecost (v. 16) echoes the pilgrimage theology of the Old Testament festivals. The farewell speech connects to Moses' farewell in Deuteronomy 31-33, Samuel's farewell in 1 Samuel 12, and Jesus' farewell discourse in John 13-17. The 'wolves' imagery (v. 29) echoes Jesus' warnings in Matthew 7:15 and John 10:12. Paul's self-description as 'serving the Lord with all humility' (v. 19) connects to his portrait in the Epistles (cf. 2 Corinthians 11:23-29).

¹After the uproar had ceased, Paul sent for the disciples, and after encouraging them and saying farewell, he left to travel to Macedonia. ²After traveling through those regions and giving them much encouragement, he came to Greece. ³He stayed there three months, and when a plot was formed against him by the Jews as he was about to set sail for Syria, he decided to return through Macedonia. ⁴He was accompanied by Sopater son of Pyrrhus from Berea, Aristarchus and Secundus from Thessalonica, Gaius from Derbe, Timothy, and Tychicus and Trophimus from Asia. ⁵These men went on ahead and were waiting for us at Troas. ⁶We sailed from Philippi after the days of Unleavened Bread, and in five days we joined them at Troas, where we stayed for seven days. ⁷On the first day of the week, when we had gathered to break bread, Paul began speaking to them, intending to leave the next day, and he prolonged his message until midnight. ⁸There were many lamps in the upper room where we were gathered. ⁹A young man named Eutychus was sitting on the windowsill and was sinking into a deep sleep as Paul talked on and on. Overcome by sleep, he fell from the third story and was picked up dead. ¹⁰But Paul went down, threw himself on the young man, and embracing him said, "Do not be alarmed, for his life is in him." ¹¹Then Paul went back upstairs, broke bread and ate, and after conversing with them until dawn, he departed. ¹²They took the young man away alive and were greatly comforted. ¹³We went on ahead to the ship and sailed to Assos, where we intended to pick up Paul, for he had arranged it this way, planning to go there on foot. ¹⁴When he met us at Assos, we took him aboard and went to Mitylene. ¹⁵Sailing from there, the next day we arrived opposite Chios. The following day we crossed over to Samos, and the day after that we came to Miletus. ¹⁶For Paul had decided to sail past Ephesus so that he would not have to spend time in Asia, since he was hurrying to be in Jerusalem, if possible, by the day of Pentecost. ¹⁷From Miletus he sent word to Ephesus and called for the elders of the church. ¹⁸When they came to him, he said to them: "You yourselves know how I lived among you the entire time from the first day I set foot in Asia, ¹⁹I served the Lord with complete humility and with tears, enduring the trials that came through the plots of the Jewish opponents. ²⁰You know that I held nothing back that would be helpful to you. I taught you publicly and went from house to house, ²¹urging both Jews and Greeks to turn to God in repentance and to place their faith in our Lord Jesus Christ. ²²And now, compelled by the Spirit, I am going to Jerusalem, not knowing what will happen to me there, ²³Indeed, save that the Holy Spirit witnesseth in every city and stated that bonds and afflictions abide me. ²⁴But I do not consider my life of any value to myself, if only I may finish my course and the ministry that I received from the Lord Jesus — to testify to the gospel of the grace of God. ²⁵And now I know that none of you among whom I went about proclaiming the kingdom will see my face again. ²⁶Therefore I testify to you this day that I am innocent of the blood of all of you, ²⁷For I have not shunned to declare to you every one of the counsel of God. ²⁸Pay careful attention to yourselves and to all the flock, in which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to shepherd the church of God, which he obtained through his own blood. ²⁹I know that after my departure fierce wolves will come in among you, not sparing the flock, ³⁰Also of your own selves will men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away followers following them. ³¹Therefore be alert, remembering that for three years I did not cease night or day to admonish every one of you with tears. ³²And to give you an inheritance among all them which are sanctified, now, brothers and sisters, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up. ³³I coveted no one's silver or gold or clothing. ³⁴You yourselves know that these hands served my own needs and the needs of those who were with me. ³⁵In all things I have shown you that by working hard in this way we must help the weak and remember the words of the Lord Jesus, that he himself said, 'It is more

blested to give than to receive." ³⁶When he had said these things, he knelt down and prayed with them all. ³⁷And there was much weeping among them all, and they embraced Paul and kissed him, ³⁸What grieved them most was his statement that they would never see his face again. Then they accompanied him to the ship.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'uproar' (thorybos) refers to the riot of the silversmiths in Ephesus described in chapter 19. Paul's departure is not flight but an orderly transition. The verb parakalesas covers both encouragement and exhortation.
2. The Greek Hellas ('Greece') appears only here in the New Testament. Luke typically uses the Roman provincial name 'Achaia'; the use of 'Greece' may reflect the perspective of a traveling companion.
3. The plot (epiboule) likely aimed to ambush Paul on a pilgrim ship crowded with Jewish travelers heading to Jerusalem for Passover. His decision to travel overland through Macedonia was a practical security measure.
4. This delegation likely represents churches contributing to the collection for Jerusalem (cf. Romans 15:25-26, 1 Corinthians 16:1-4). Each person represents a different region, suggesting an organized multi-church effort. The SBLGNT includes 'son of Pyrrhus,' absent from some manuscripts.
5. The first-person plural 'us' (hemas) marks the resumption of a 'we' section, indicating the author's presence as a traveling companion. The 'we' narrative was last active at 16:17 (Philippi). The author apparently remained in Philippi during the intervening period and now rejoins Paul.
6. The 'we' narration continues, confirming the author's firsthand presence. The reference to the days of Unleavened Bread (the festival following Passover) provides a chronological anchor and shows that Paul continued to observe the Jewish liturgical calendar. The five-day crossing from Philippi to Troas contrasts with the two-day crossing in 16:11, suggesting unfavorable winds.
7. The phrase 'the first day of the week' (te mia ton sabbaton, literally 'the first of the sabbaths') is one of the earliest references to Christian worship on Sunday. 'Breaking bread' (klasai arton) likely refers to the Lord's Supper combined with a communal meal. The gathering appears to be in the evening, following Jewish reckoning where the day begins at sunset.
8. The detail about lamps (lampades) is characteristically vivid eyewitness reporting. The many lamps in a closed upper room would have produced heat and smoke, contributing to drowsiness. The 'upper room' (hyperoon) recalls the upper room of Acts 1:13.
9. The name Eutychos means 'fortunate' or 'lucky' — an ironic detail given his fall, though the name proves apt by the end of the episode. The Greek erthe nekros ('was picked up dead') states plainly that he was dead, not merely unconscious. Luke, who as a physician would be attentive to such distinctions, uses unambiguous language here.
10. Paul's action of throwing himself on Eutychus (epepesen auto) deliberately echoes Elijah's stretching himself over the widow's son (1 Kings 17:21) and Elisha's similar action (2 Kings 4:34). The phrase 'his life is in him' (he psyche autou en auto estin) may announce the restoration of life rather than deny that death occurred.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 17:21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 4:34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The breaking of bread here completes the meal that was the original purpose of the gathering (v. 7). Paul's continued conversation until dawn (achri auges) — even after the dramatic interruption — underscores the urgency of his message on this final visit.
12. The litotes 'not a little' (ou metrios) is characteristically Lukan — an understatement meaning 'immensely.' The word paida ('boy, young man') may suggest Eutychus was younger than the neanias ('young man') of verse 9 implies, or it may be a stylistic variation.
13. The 'we' narration continues. Paul's choice to walk the roughly 20-mile road from Troas to Assos while his companions sailed may reflect a desire for solitary reflection, or practical reasons. Assos was a coastal city in Mysia with a direct road from Troas.
14. Mitylene was the chief city of the island of Lesbos, a natural stopping point on the coastal route south along Asia Minor.
15. The SBLGNT does not include the reference to Trogyllium found in the KJV (from the Western text tradition). The itinerary shows island-hopping along the Aegean coast — Chios and Samos are major islands off the coast of Asia Minor.
16. Paul's urgency to reach Jerusalem by Pentecost (pentekoste, 'fiftieth' — fifty days after Passover) reflects both practical scheduling and theological significance. Pentecost was one of the three pilgrimage festivals, and Acts 2 records the founding event of the church at Pentecost. Paul's return at this festival creates a narrative symmetry.
17. Miletus was about 30 miles south of Ephesus. Summoning the elders there avoided the delay of visiting Ephesus itself. The term presbyterous ('elders') denotes the recognized leaders of the local congregation — the same group called episkopous ('overseers') in verse 28.
18. Paul's farewell speech begins with an appeal to the elders' personal knowledge of his conduct — a standard rhetorical move in Greco-Roman farewell discourses. The phrase 'the entire time' (ton panta chronon) covers roughly three years of ministry in Ephesus (cf. v. 31).
19. The word tapeinophrosynes ('humility') was not a virtue in Greco-Roman culture, where it often connoted servility. Paul redefines it as a mark of authentic service to the Lord. The 'plots' (epiboulais) refer to opposition Paul faced during his Ephesian ministry, some of which is described in 19:23-41 and alluded to in 1 Corinthians 15:32.

20. The verb *hyposteilamen* ('shrink back, hold back') implies courage in the face of opposition. Paul's teaching operated in two settings: public (*demasia*, in synagogues and lecture halls) and private (*kat' oikous*, in homes), reflecting the dual structure of early Christian community life.
21. Paul summarizes his message in two complementary terms: repentance (*metanoia*, a turning of the mind toward God) and faith (*pistis*, trust directed toward Jesus as Lord). This dual formulation encompasses both the Jewish and Greek audiences of his ministry.
22. The phrase *dedemenos to pneumati* ('bound in/by the spirit') is ambiguous — it could mean Paul's own spirit (his inner resolve) or the Holy Spirit's compulsion. The rendering 'compelled by the Spirit' follows the interpretation that this is divine leading, consistent with the Spirit's role throughout Acts in directing Paul's movements.
23. The Holy Spirit's warnings come 'city by city' (*kata polin*), suggesting prophetic utterances at multiple stops along the journey (cf. 21:4, 11). The word *desma* ('bonds, chains') specifically foreshadows Paul's imprisonment, while *thlipseis* ('afflictions, pressures') is broader.
24. The athletic metaphor 'finish my course' (*teleiosai ton dromon mou*) pictures life as a race to be completed (cf. 2 Timothy 4:7). The phrase 'the gospel of the grace of God' (*to euangelion tes charitos tou theou*) is unique in the New Testament and encapsulates Paul's message: divine favor freely given.
25. This solemn declaration gives the speech its farewell character. The phrase 'proclaiming the kingdom' (*kerisson ten basileian*) — with 'of God' implied — connects Paul's message to Jesus' own proclamation in the Gospels. Whether Paul in fact never returned to Ephesus is debated; the Pastoral Epistles suggest he may have (cf. 1 Timothy 1:3).
26. The declaration 'innocent of the blood' (*katharos apo tou haimatos*) echoes the watchman imagery of Ezekiel 33:1-9, where a watchman who faithfully warns bears no guilt for those who reject the warning. Paul claims to have fulfilled his prophetic responsibility as a watchman over the Ephesian community.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 33:1-9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The phrase 'the whole counsel of God' (*pasan ten boulen tou theou*) implies a comprehensive body of teaching — God's full plan and purpose, not merely select doctrines. The verb *hyposteilamen* ('shrink back') repeats from verse 20, framing this section.
28. This verse is theologically dense. The same leaders called 'elders' (*presbyteroi*) in verse 17 are here called 'overseers' (*episkopoi*), demonstrating that these were interchangeable terms at this stage. The phrase 'through his own blood' (*dia tou haimatos tou idiou*) is textually and theologically complex — 'his own' (*tou idiou*) could refer to God's own blood (a startlingly high Christological claim) or to 'his own one' (a term of endearment for Christ). The SBLGNT reads 'church of God' (*ekklesian tou theou*).
29. The wolf-and-flock metaphor continues from verse 28. 'Fierce wolves' (*lykoi bareis*) echoes Jesus' warning about false prophets in Matthew 7:15 and the threat to the shepherd's flock in John 10:12. The threat comes from outside the community ('come in among you').
30. The second threat is internal — from within the leadership itself. The word *diestrammena* ('twisted, distorted, perverted') indicates not outright falsehood but distortion of truth. Paul's letters to Timothy, who later served in Ephesus, confirm that such internal threats materialized (cf. 1 Timothy 1:3-7, 2 Timothy 2:17-18).
31. The 'three years' (*trietian*) provides the length of Paul's Ephesian ministry. 'Night and day' indicates the relentlessness of his pastoral care. The tears (*dakryon*) are a recurring motif in this speech (cf. v. 19), presenting Paul as emotionally invested rather than merely professionally dutiful.
32. The speech transitions from warning to commendation. Paul entrusts the elders not to a human successor but to God and 'the word of his grace.' The language of 'inheritance' (*kleronimian*) among 'those who are sanctified' (*hegiasmenois*) echoes the Old Testament promise of the land reinterpreted as the people of God's shared inheritance.
33. Paul's denial of material greed echoes Samuel's farewell speech in 1 Samuel 12:3-5, where the departing leader calls on witnesses to confirm his financial integrity. The triad 'silver, gold, clothing' represents comprehensive material wealth.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 12:3-5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
34. Paul gestures to his own hands — a vivid detail suggesting this speech is based on eyewitness memory. He worked as a tentmaker (cf. 18:3) to avoid burdening the community, a practice he also mentions in 1 Corinthians 4:12 and 1 Thessalonians 2:9.
35. This saying of Jesus is not found in any of the four Gospels, making it an *agraphon* — an unwritten saying preserved in oral tradition. Its attribution to Jesus ('he himself said') by Paul demonstrates that early Christians transmitted sayings of Jesus outside the written Gospel tradition. The word *makarion* ('blessed, happy, fortunate') is the same term used in the Beatitudes.
36. Kneeling for prayer (*theis ta gonata*) was not the standard Jewish posture (which was standing); it indicates special intensity or solemnity. The communal prayer following the speech seals the farewell.
37. The emotional scene — weeping, embracing, kissing — is among the most personal in Acts. The verb *katephiloun* ('kissed repeatedly, kissed affectionately') is intensive, indicating deep affection rather than a formal greeting.

38. The Greek *odynomenoi* ('grieving, being in anguish') is a strong word for emotional pain. The final image — the elders escorting Paul to the ship — mirrors ancient farewell scenes and closes the Ephesian chapter of Paul's ministry with profound pathos.

21

Summary: *Acts 21 chronicles Paul's final journey to Jerusalem against repeated prophetic warnings. The 'we' narrative provides a detailed travel itinerary from Miletus through Cos, Rhodes, Patara, Tyre, Ptolemais, and Caesarea. At Caesarea, the prophet Agabus dramatically predicts Paul's arrest. Upon arriving in Jerusalem, Paul follows James's advice to demonstrate his Torah observance by sponsoring four men under a Nazirite vow. Despite this conciliatory gesture, Jews from Asia recognize Paul in the temple, incite a mob, and Paul is rescued by Roman soldiers — beginning the chain of custody that will eventually carry him to Rome.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter contains one of the most vivid 'we' sections in Acts, with detailed nautical and geographical information that reflects firsthand travel experience. Agabus's symbolic prophecy — binding his own hands and feet with Paul's belt (v. 11) — imitates the enacted prophecies of the Old Testament prophets (cf. Isaiah 20, Jeremiah 13, Ezekiel 4). The community's response, 'The Lord's will be done' (v. 14), echoes Jesus' prayer in Gethsemane (Luke 22:42). Paul's arrest at the temple creates a narrative parallel with Jesus' arrest in Jerusalem — both are seized in a holy space, both face Jewish and Roman authorities, both endure a series of trials.*

Translation Friction: *The advice of James to Paul (vv. 23-24) raises questions about the relationship between Pauline theology and Torah observance. Paul's willingness to sponsor a Nazirite vow and undergo purification rites has been viewed as either genuine piety, pastoral accommodation, or diplomatic compromise. We render the text without resolving this tension. The accusation that Paul brought a Gentile (Trophimus) into the temple (v. 29) was false, as Luke explicitly states, but it reflects real anxieties about boundary violations in Second Temple Judaism.*

Connections: *Paul's journey to Jerusalem deliberately parallels Jesus' journey to Jerusalem in Luke's Gospel. The repeated warnings about suffering (vv. 4, 11) echo Jesus' passion predictions (Luke 9:22, 44; 18:31-33). The Nazirite vow (Numbers 6) connects to the OT purity system. The 'middle wall of partition' in the temple (implied in v. 28) is the barrier Paul describes metaphorically in Ephesians 2:14 as destroyed by Christ.*

¹After we had torn ourselves away from them and set sail, we ran a straight course to Cos, the next day to Rhodes, and from there to Patara. ²Finding a ship crossing to Phoenicia, we went aboard and set sail. ³When we came in sight of Cyprus, we passed it on our left and sailed to Syria and landed at Tyre, for the ship was to unload its cargo there. ⁴After finding the disciples, we stayed there seven days. Through the Spirit they kept telling Paul not to go to Jerusalem. ⁵When our days there were ended, we left and went on our way, with all of them — including wives and children — accompanying us until we were outside the city. And kneeling on the beach, we prayed. ⁶Then we said farewell to one another, and we went aboard the ship while they returned to their homes. ⁷When we had completed the voyage from Tyre, we arrived at Ptolemais, and we greeted the brothers and stayed with them for one day. ⁸The next day we left and came to Caesarea, and we went to the house of Philip the evangelist, who was one of the seven, and stayed with him. ⁹He had four unmarried daughters who prophesied. ¹⁰While we were staying there for several days, a prophet named Agabus came down from Judea. ¹¹He came to us, took Paul's belt, bound his own feet and hands, and said, "This is what the Holy Spirit says: 'In this way the Jews in Jerusalem will bind the man who owns this belt and will hand him over to the Gentiles.'" ¹²When we heard this, both we and the local residents urged him not to go up to Jerusalem. ¹³Then Paul answered, "What are you doing, weeping and breaking my heart? For I am ready not only to be bound but even to die in Jerusalem for the name of the Lord Jesus." ¹⁴Since he would not be persuaded, we fell silent and said, "The Lord's will be done." ¹⁵After these days we made our preparations and went up to Jerusalem. ¹⁶Some of the disciples from Caesarea went with us and brought us to the home of Mnason of Cyprus, an early disciple, with whom we were to stay. ¹⁷When we arrived in Jerusalem, the brothers received us warmly. ¹⁸The next day Paul went in with us to James, and all the elders were present. ¹⁹After greeting them, he reported in detail what God had done among the Gentiles through his ministry. ²⁰When they heard it, they glorified God. Then they said to him, "You see, brother, how many

thousands there are among the Jews who have believed, and they are all zealous for the law. ²¹They have been informed about you that you teach all the Jews who live among the Gentiles to abandon Moses, telling them not to circumcise their children or walk according to our customs. ²²What then is to be done? They will certainly hear that you have come. ²³Therefore do what we tell you. We have four men who are under a vow. ²⁴Take these men and purify yourself along with them and pay their expenses, so that they may shave their heads. Then everyone will know that there is nothing to what they have been told about you, but that you yourself also live in observance of the law. ²⁵But as for the Gentiles who have believed, we have sent a letter with our decision that they should abstain from what has been sacrificed to idols, and from blood, and from what has been strangled, and from sexual immorality." ²⁶Then Paul took the men, and the next day he purified himself along with them and went into the temple, giving notice of when the days of purification would be completed and the offering presented for each one of them. ²⁷When the seven days were almost completed, the Jews from Asia, seeing him in the temple, stirred up the whole crowd and seized him, ²⁸Crying out, Men of Israel, help — This is the man, that teaches all men every where against the people, and the law, and this place: and further brought Greeks also into the temple, and has polluted this holy place. ²⁹For they had previously seen Trophimus the Ephesian in the city with him, and they assumed that Paul had brought him into the temple. ³⁰The whole city was stirred up, and the people rushed together. They seized Paul and dragged him out of the temple, and immediately the doors were shut. ³¹While they were trying to kill him, word reached the commander of the cohort that all Jerusalem was in an uproar. ³²He immediately took soldiers and centurions and ran down to them. When they saw the commander and the soldiers, they stopped beating Paul. ³³Then the commander came up and arrested him and ordered him to be bound with two chains. He inquired who he was and what he had done. ³⁴Some in the crowd were shouting one thing, some another. Since the commander could not learn the facts because of the uproar, he ordered Paul to be brought into the barracks. ³⁵When Paul reached the steps, he had to be carried by the soldiers because of the violence of the crowd, ³⁶For the crowd of the people followed after, crying, Away with him. ³⁷As Paul was about to be brought into the barracks, he said to the commander, "May I say something to you?" The commander replied, "Do you know Greek? ³⁸Are you not the Egyptian who some time ago stirred up a revolt and led the four thousand men of the Assassins out into the wilderness?" ³⁹Paul replied, "I am a Jew, from Tarsus in Cilicia, a citizen of no insignificant city. I beg you, allow me to speak to the people." ⁴⁰When the commander had given him permission, Paul stood on the steps and motioned with his hand to the people. When there was a great silence, he addressed them in the Hebrew language, saying:

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'we' narration continues from chapter 20. The verb *apospasthentas* ('having been torn away') conveys the emotional difficulty of leaving the Ephesian elders. The nautical term *euthydromesantes* ('running a straight course') indicates favorable winds for the island-hopping route along the southwestern coast of Asia Minor.
2. At Patara, Paul's group transfers from a coastal vessel to a larger merchant ship capable of the open-sea crossing to Phoenicia — a voyage of about 400 miles. This kind of detail reflects the eyewitness narrator's travel experience.
3. The nautical detail of passing Cyprus on the port side ('left,' *euonymon*) indicates a course south of the island. Tyre, the ancient Phoenician port city, was a major commercial hub where cargo ships regularly docked.
4. The imperfect tense *elegon* ('they kept saying') suggests repeated urging. The tension between the Spirit's warning and Paul's Spirit-led determination to go (20:22) is not resolved by Luke. The warnings may reveal what will happen rather than commanding Paul to avoid it — prophetic information about danger rather than a prohibition.
5. The scene of an entire community — men, women, and children — escorting Paul to the shore and kneeling to pray on the beach is among the most tender images in Acts. It parallels the farewell at Miletus (20:36-38) and demonstrates that early Christian communities included whole families.
6. The simple narrative — farewell, boarding, returning — closes the Tyre episode with quiet dignity. The phrase *eis ta idia* ('to their own [places]') echoes the same phrase used in John 1:11 and 19:27.
7. Ptolemais (modern Akko/Acre) was about 25 miles south of Tyre. The brief one-day visit contrasts with the seven days at Tyre, reflecting Paul's haste to reach Jerusalem. The existence of a Christian community here shows the spread of the faith along the Phoenician coast.
8. Philip 'the evangelist' is identified as 'one of the seven' — the group appointed in Acts 6:5 to serve the Hellenistic Jewish widows. His last appearance was in 8:40, settling in Caesarea after his encounter with the Ethiopian eunuch. The title 'evangelist' (*euangelistou*) appears only here and in Ephesians 4:11 and 2 Timothy 4:5.

9. The mention of Philip's four prophesying daughters is significant for understanding women's roles in the early church. The Greek parthenoi ('virgins, unmarried women') combined with propheteuousai ('prophesying') indicates an ongoing prophetic ministry. This fulfills Joel 2:28-29, quoted by Peter at Pentecost (Acts 2:17-18): 'your sons and your daughters shall prophesy.'
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:28-29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Agabus previously appeared in Acts 11:28, where he predicted a famine. His arrival from Judea — 'came down,' the standard expression for traveling from the elevated region of Jerusalem — introduces the final and most dramatic warning about Paul's fate.
11. Agabus's enacted prophecy follows the pattern of Old Testament prophetic sign-acts (Isaiah 20:2-4, Jeremiah 13:1-11, Ezekiel 4:1-3). The introductory formula 'This is what the Holy Spirit says' (tade legei to pneuma to hagion) mirrors the prophetic 'Thus says the LORD' (ko amar YHWH). The prediction that Jews will 'hand him over to the Gentiles' (paradosousin eis cheiras ethnon) directly parallels Jesus' passion predictions (Luke 18:32).
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 20:2-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 13:1-11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 4:1-3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The 'we' narrator includes himself among those pleading with Paul — a rare moment of personal involvement by the author. The verb parekalouemen ('we were urging') is imperfect tense, indicating persistent entreaty.
13. Paul's response reveals both his emotional vulnerability (they are 'breaking' his heart — synthryptontes, literally 'crushing together') and his resolute commitment. His readiness to die 'for the name of the Lord Jesus' (hyper tou onomatou tou kyriou Iesou) uses the same preposition (hyper, 'for, on behalf of') that characterizes sacrificial language throughout the New Testament.
14. The community's final words — 'The Lord's will be done' (tou kyriou to thelema ginestho) — directly echo Jesus' prayer in Gethsemane (Luke 22:42: 'not my will, but yours be done'). This verbal parallel reinforces the Lukan theme of Paul's journey to Jerusalem as a parallel passion narrative.
15. The verb episkeuasamenoi ('having prepared, having packed up') replaces the KJV's archaic 'took up our carriages' (which meant 'packed our baggage' in 17th-century English). The verb 'went up' (anebainomen) reflects the geographical and theological ascent to Jerusalem.
16. Mnason is described as an 'early disciple' (archaio mathete) — possibly meaning he was a believer from the earliest days, perhaps even from Pentecost. As a Cypriot, he may have been associated with the Hellenistic Jewish believers of Acts 11:19-20. His willingness to host Paul's mixed Jewish-Gentile group in or near Jerusalem was significant.
17. The warm reception (asmenos, 'gladly, with pleasure') contrasts with the tensions that follow. The 'we' narration confirms the author's presence in Jerusalem. This is the culmination of Paul's long journey from Acts 20:1.
18. James is the brother of Jesus and leader of the Jerusalem church (cf. 12:17, 15:13). The meeting is with James and the elders — not with the apostles, suggesting they may have been absent from Jerusalem by this point. The 'we' narrator is present at this meeting.
19. Paul attributes the work to God rather than to himself — 'what God had done' (hon epoiesen ho theos). The phrase kath' hen hekaston ('one by one, in detail') suggests a thorough report. This likely included the delivery of the collection from the Gentile churches, though Luke surprisingly does not mention it explicitly.
20. The word myriades ('tens of thousands') may be hyperbolic, but it indicates a substantial Jewish-Christian community in Jerusalem. The critical point is that these Jewish believers remain 'zealous for the law' (zelotai tou nomou) — they continue to observe Torah. This sets up the tension with Paul's reputation.
21. The charge is specific: Paul supposedly teaches Jewish believers in the diaspora to abandon circumcision and Jewish customs. This is a distortion of Paul's actual position — he taught that Gentiles need not be circumcised (Galatians 5:2-6) but did not forbid Jewish believers from maintaining their practices (cf. 1 Corinthians 7:18). The word apostasian ('apostasy, rebellion') is charged language.
22. The SBLGNT text is shorter than the Textus Receptus behind the KJV, omitting the reference to the multitude assembling. The rhetorical question acknowledges the practical problem: Paul's arrival will become known and the rumors must be addressed.
23. James proposes a plan to demonstrate Paul's Torah loyalty. The 'vow' (euchen) is almost certainly a Nazirite vow (Numbers 6:1-21), which involved abstaining from wine, not cutting one's hair, and avoiding corpse impurity for a specified period.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 6:1-21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Sponsoring the expenses of a Nazirite vow's completion was considered a pious act in Judaism (cf. Josephus, Antiquities 19.294). The shaving of heads marked the vow's completion (Numbers 6:18). Paul's willingness to do this aligns with his principle of becoming 'all things to all people' (1 Corinthians 9:22).

24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 6:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. James reaffirms the Jerusalem Council's decision from Acts 15:20, 29. The four requirements for Gentile believers remain unchanged. This verse clarifies that Paul's Torah observance for Jewish believers does not contradict the lighter requirements for Gentile believers — the two are not in tension but address different communities.
26. Paul enters the temple to notify the priests of the completion date for the Nazirite vow, at which point the prescribed offerings would be made (Numbers 6:13-17: a male lamb, a female lamb, a ram, grain offerings, and drink offerings). This was a significant financial commitment.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 6:13-17:. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The plan fails at the last moment. The 'Jews from Asia' — likely from Ephesus, who would recognize both Paul and Trophimus (v. 29) — initiate the violence. The irony is sharp: Paul is in the temple demonstrating his Torah loyalty when he is accused of violating the temple.
28. The three-fold accusation — against the people, the law, and the temple — parallels the charges against Stephen (6:13) and against Jesus (Mark 14:58, Luke 23:2). The charge of bringing Greeks into the temple was a capital offense; inscriptions in Greek and Latin on the barrier (the *soreg*) warned Gentiles that entry beyond the Court of the Gentiles meant death.
29. Luke explicitly states the charge was based on an assumption (*enomizon*, 'they supposed, assumed'), not on fact. Trophimus was a Gentile from Ephesus (cf. 20:4) whom the Asian Jews recognized. The false inference — seeing them together in the city and assuming they entered the temple together — was enough to ignite the mob.
30. Paul is dragged out of the temple rather than killed inside it — the mob avoids defiling the sacred space with bloodshed. The closing of the doors by the temple police (Levitical guards) was both a security measure and a symbolic act: the temple shuts Paul out. The detail 'immediately the doors were shut' has narrative and theological weight.
31. The *chiliarchos* ('commander of a thousand,' *tribune*) was the commanding officer of the Roman cohort stationed in the Antonia Fortress, which overlooked the temple from the northwest corner. The fortress's strategic position allowed rapid response to disturbances in the temple courts.
32. The plural 'centurions' (*hekatontarchas*) indicates at least two centurions, meaning the commander brought at least 200 soldiers — a substantial force. The stairway from the Antonia Fortress led directly down into the temple courts, enabling the rapid intervention described here.
33. The two chains (*halysessin dysi*) likely means Paul was chained between two soldiers, a common Roman security measure. This fulfills Agabus's prophecy from verse 11. The commander's arrest is protective as well as custodial — it removes Paul from the mob.
34. The 'barracks' (*parembolen*) is the Antonia Fortress, the Roman military headquarters in Jerusalem. The confused shouting of the crowd prevents any coherent investigation at the scene, a detail that parallels the Ephesian riot (19:32).
35. The steps (*anabathmous*) connected the temple courts to the Antonia Fortress. The crowd's violence was so intense that the soldiers had to physically carry Paul up the stairs — a graphic detail suggesting a near-lynching in progress.
36. The cry 'Away with him!' (*Aire auton*) echoes the crowd's cry against Jesus before Pilate in Luke 23:18 (*Aire touton*, 'Away with this man!'). Luke draws a deliberate verbal parallel between Paul's and Jesus' experiences before hostile crowds in Jerusalem.
37. Paul's ability to speak Greek surprises the commander, who had made a different assumption about his identity (v. 38). The question *Hellenisti ginoskeis* ('Do you know Greek?') implies the commander expected Paul to be an uneducated agitator, not a cultured, multilingual figure.
38. Josephus records an Egyptian false prophet who led a large following to the Mount of Olives, promising that Jerusalem's walls would collapse at his command (*Jewish War* 2.261-263; *Antiquities* 20.169-172). Josephus gives the number as 30,000; Luke's 4,000 may be more accurate. The *sicarioi* ('dagger-men, Assassins') were Jewish militants who carried concealed daggers and assassinated Roman collaborators in crowds.
39. Paul identifies himself by ethnicity (Jewish), origin (Tarsus), and civic status (citizen of a notable city). Tarsus was a major intellectual and commercial center — the phrase 'no insignificant city' (*ouk asemou poleos*) employs *litotes* (understatement) for rhetorical effect. Paul does not yet mention his Roman citizenship, saving that for a more strategic moment (22:25-28).
40. Paul's choice to speak in 'the Hebrew language' (*te Hebraidi dialekto*) — almost certainly Aramaic, the common spoken language of Palestinian Jews — immediately establishes rapport with a crowd that had just been trying to kill him. The 'great silence' that falls over the mob is a dramatic narrative moment, setting the stage for the defense speech in chapter 22.

22

Summary: *Acts 22 contains Paul's defense speech to the Jerusalem crowd from the steps of the Antonia Fortress. Speaking in Aramaic, he recounts his Jewish credentials, his persecution of the Way, his encounter with the risen Jesus on the Damascus road, and his commission to preach to the Gentiles. The crowd listens until Paul mentions the Gentile mission, at which point they erupt again. As the Roman soldiers prepare to examine Paul by flogging, he reveals his Roman citizenship, which immediately halts the proceedings and creates a new legal situation. The commander, Claudius Lysias, arranges for Paul to appear before the Jewish council.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the second of three accounts of Paul's conversion in Acts (cf. 9:1-19, 26:9-18), each tailored to its audience. Before the Jewish crowd, Paul emphasizes his impeccable Jewish credentials: trained under Gamaliel, zealous for the law, persecuting the Way. The Aramaic speech momentarily silences the mob (v. 2). The turning point is verse 21 — the word 'Gentiles' (ethne) triggers explosive fury, suggesting that the inclusion of Gentiles, not Christology, was the primary offense. Paul's Roman citizenship (acquired by birth, not purchase like the commander's) introduces the legal framework that will shape the rest of Acts.*

Translation Friction: *The differences between this account and the Acts 9 version of Paul's conversion (e.g., what the companions saw and heard) are well-documented. These variations likely reflect rhetorical adaptation to different audiences rather than contradictions. Ananias is described here as 'devout according to the law, well spoken of by all the Jews' (v. 12) — details absent from chapter 9 but strategically relevant for this audience. We render each account as given without harmonizing.*

Connections: *Paul's appeal to his training under Gamaliel connects to the Gamaliel of Acts 5:34-39. The Damascus road vision echoes Old Testament theophanies (Exodus 3, Isaiah 6, Ezekiel 1). Paul's citation of his persecution of 'this Way' (v. 4) connects to the earliest designation for Christianity (cf. 9:2, 19:9, 23, 24:14, 22). Roman citizenship law (the lex Porcia and lex Julia) protected citizens from being bound or beaten without trial, which Paul invokes here as he did at Philippi (16:37).*

¹"Brothers and fathers, hear the defense I now make before you." ²When they heard that he was addressing them in the Hebrew language, they became even more quiet. Then he said: ³"I am a Jew, born in Tarsus of Cilicia but raised in this city, educated at the feet of Gamaliel according to the strict manner of the law of our fathers, being zealous for God just as all of you are today. ⁴I persecuted this Way to the point of death, binding and delivering to prison both men and women, ⁵As also the high priest does bear me witness, and all the estate of the elders — from whom also I received letters to the brothers and sisters, and traveled to Damascus, to bring them which were there bound to Jerusalem, for to be punished. ⁶"As I was on my way and approaching Damascus, about noon a great light from heaven suddenly flashed around me. ⁷I fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to me, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?' ⁸I answered, 'Who are you, Lord?' And he said to me, 'I am Jesus of Nazareth, whom you are persecuting.' ⁹Those who were with me saw the light but did not understand the voice of the one who was speaking to me. ¹⁰I said, 'What should I do, Lord?' And the Lord said to me, 'Get up and go into Damascus, and there you will be told everything that has been appointed for you to do.' ¹¹Since I could not see because of the brightness of that light, I was led by the hand by those who were with me and came into Damascus. ¹²A certain Ananias, a devout man according to the law, well spoken of by all the Jews living there, ¹³Arrived to me, and stood, and stated to me, Brother Saul, accept your sight. And the same hour I looked up upon him. ¹⁴Then he said, 'The God of our fathers has appointed you to know his will, to see the Righteous One, and to hear a voice from his mouth, ¹⁵For you shalt be his witness to all men of what you have seen and listened to. ¹⁶And now why do you delay? Get up, be baptized, and wash away your sins, calling on his name.' ¹⁷"When I had returned to Jerusalem and was praying in the temple, I fell into a trance ¹⁸Noticed him declaring to me, Make haste, and get you quickly out of Jerusalem — since they will not receive your testimony concerning me. ¹⁹I said, 'Lord, they themselves know that in one synagogue after another I imprisoned and beat those who believed in you. ²⁰And when the blood of Stephen your witness was being poured out, I myself was standing by and approving and guarding the garments of those who killed him.' ²¹Then he said to me, 'Go, for I will send you far away to the

Gentiles."²² They listened to him up to this word. Then they raised their voices and said, "Away with such a man from the earth! For he should not be allowed to live!"²³ As they were shouting and throwing off their cloaks and tossing dust into the air,²⁴ The chief captain commanded him to be brought into the castle, and bade that he should be examined by scourging. That he might know for this reason they cried so opposed to him.²⁵ But when they had stretched him out for the lashing, Paul said to the centurion standing by, "Is it lawful for you to flog a man who is a Roman citizen and has not been condemned?"²⁶ When the centurion heard this, he went to the commander and reported, saying, "What are you about to do? For this man is a Roman citizen."²⁷ So the commander came and said to him, "Tell me, are you a Roman citizen?" And he said, "Yes."²⁸ The commander answered, "I acquired this citizenship for a large sum of money." Paul said, "But I was born a citizen."²⁹ Immediately those who were about to examine him withdrew from him, and the commander himself was alarmed when he realized that Paul was a Roman citizen and that he had bound him.³⁰ The next day, wanting to find out the real reason Paul was being accused by the Jews, he released him and ordered the chief priests and the whole council to assemble. Then he brought Paul down and set him before them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The address 'brothers and fathers' (andres adelphoi kai pateres) mirrors Stephen's speech (7:2), creating a literary parallel between two defendants before hostile Jewish audiences. The word apologia ('defense') is a formal legal term — Paul frames his speech as a courtroom defense.
2. The use of Aramaic (called 'the Hebrew language,' te Hebraidi dialekto) achieves its intended effect: the crowd gives Paul a deeper hearing. The comparative mallon ('more, even more') indicates that the silence deepened when they recognized the language — Paul is identifying himself as one of them.
3. Paul's self-introduction is carefully structured: birth (Tarsus), upbringing (Jerusalem), education (under Gamaliel), and character (zealous). Gamaliel was the most prominent Pharisaic teacher of the first century and grandson of Hillel. The phrase 'at the feet of' (para tous podas) describes the posture of a disciple before a rabbi. Paul's claim to be 'zealous for God' (zelotes tou theou) uses language associated with Phinehas (Numbers 25:13) and the Maccabees — the highest praise for Jewish piety.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 25:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The capitalized 'Way' (hodon) is the earliest self-designation of the Christian movement (cf. 9:2, 19:9, 23, 24:14, 22). Paul's persecution extended to death sentences (achri thanatou) — Stephen's execution being the most notable example (7:58-8:1). The inclusion of 'both men and women' emphasizes the thoroughness of his persecution.
5. Paul appeals to living witnesses — the high priest and the Sanhedrin — who can verify his former anti-Christian activity. The letters of authorization from the Sanhedrin to the Damascus synagogues (cf. 9:2) gave Paul quasi-official standing to extradite believers.
6. This account adds 'about noon' (peri mesembrian), absent from the chapter 9 narrative — the detail intensifies the miracle, since a light that outshines the midday sun must be extraordinary indeed (cf. 26:13). The light 'from heaven' (ek tou ouranou) marks this as a theophany.
7. The double vocative 'Saul, Saul' (Saoul Saoul) uses the Hebrew/Aramaic form of Paul's name and echoes divine addresses in the Old Testament (Genesis 22:11, 'Abraham, Abraham'; Exodus 3:4, 'Moses, Moses'). The question 'Why are you persecuting me?' identifies Christ with his persecuted church.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 22:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 3:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. This account specifies 'of Nazareth' (ho Nazoraiois), absent from 9:5. Before a Jewish audience, the Nazarene identification is significant — it anchors the risen Lord to the historical Jesus of Nazareth whom Paul's audience would know by reputation. The emphatic 'whom you are persecuting' (hon sy diokeis) reiterates the identification of Christ with his followers.
9. In Acts 9:7, Paul's companions 'heard the voice but saw no one.' The apparent discrepancy is best understood through the Greek verb akouo, which can mean either 'hear' (perceive sound) or 'understand' (comprehend meaning). In 9:7 they heard the sound; here they did not understand the words. The distinction parallels the crowd at Jesus' baptism in John 12:28-29.
10. Paul's question 'What should I do?' (ti poieso) portrays him as immediately submissive to the risen Lord's authority. The passive 'has been appointed' (tetaktai) implies divine foreordination — Paul's mission was predetermined.
11. The word doxa ('glory, brightness') adds theological depth — Paul's blindness resulted from the 'glory' of the light, the same word used for God's manifest presence (the Shekinah) in the Septuagint. Being led by the hand portrays the once-powerful persecutor as helpless.

12. This description of Ananias is unique to this account and tailored for the audience. In Acts 9, Ananias is simply called 'a disciple.' Here, before a Jewish crowd, Paul emphasizes that Ananias was 'devout according to the law' (eulabes kata ton nomon) and respected by the Jewish community — a Torah-observant Jew, not a lawless renegade.
13. The verb *anablepson* has a double meaning: 'look up' and 'receive sight.' The healing is immediate — 'at that very moment' (*aute te hora*) — emphasizing divine power working through Ananias. The address 'Brother Saul' (*Saoul adelphe*) indicates Ananias's acceptance of the former persecutor.
14. Ananias frames Paul's commission using thoroughly Jewish language: 'the God of our fathers' (*ho theos ton pateron hemon*) connects to the patriarchal promises. 'The Righteous One' (*ton dikaion*) is a messianic title rooted in Isaiah 53:11 and used for Jesus in Acts 3:14 and 7:52. The threefold commission — know, see, hear — echoes prophetic call narratives.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The word *martyrs* ('witness') carries its full weight here — Paul is commissioned as an eyewitness of the risen Christ. The phrase 'to all people' (*pros pantas anthrōpous*) already hints at the universal scope of Paul's mission, though the explosive word 'Gentiles' is not yet used.
16. The command to 'wash away your sins' (*apolousai tas hamartias sou*) connects baptism with cleansing — language that resonates with Jewish purification rituals. The middle voice of both *baptisai* and *apolousai* suggests Paul's active participation. 'Calling on his name' (*epikalesamenos to onoma autou*) echoes Joel 2:32, quoted by Peter at Pentecost (Acts 2:21).
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joel 2:32. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This temple vision is unique to this account — it does not appear in Acts 9 or 26. Paul strategically emphasizes that he received his Gentile commission while praying in the Jerusalem temple, demonstrating that his mission did not originate in opposition to the temple but within it. The word *ekstasis* ('trance, ecstasy') describes the same kind of visionary state Peter experienced in Acts 10:10.
18. The Lord's command to leave Jerusalem — 'hurry' (*speuson*) combined with 'quickly' (*en tachei*) — conveys urgency. The prediction that Jerusalem will reject Paul's testimony is both warning and explanation: Paul's Gentile mission was not Plan B but God's response to Israel's refusal.
19. Paul argues that his dramatic conversion — from violent persecutor to believer — should make him the most credible witness to his own people. The reasoning: anyone who would abandon his previous position so dramatically must have been compelled by overwhelming evidence.
20. The word *martyrs* here means 'witness' but is on its way to its later meaning of 'martyr' — Stephen's witness was sealed by his blood. Paul's admission of complicity in Stephen's death (cf. 7:58, 8:1) is the strongest possible evidence of his former anti-Christian commitment. The detail of 'guarding the garments' recalls the stoning procedure where witnesses removed outer garments to throw more effectively.
21. This single verse triggers the crowd's explosion. The word *ethne* ('nations, Gentiles') is the flashpoint. The Lord's commission to Paul — 'I will send you far away to the Gentiles' — uses the verb *exapostelo*, from which 'apostle' derives. Paul is being sent (*apostled*) to the nations. For the Jerusalem crowd, the claim that God commissioned a mission to include Gentiles as equals was intolerable.
22. The crowd's tolerance snaps at the word 'Gentiles.' Their fury — 'he should not be allowed to live' (*ou katheeken auton zen*) — reveals that the real offense was not theology about Jesus but the inclusion of Gentiles. The cry 'Away from the earth' (*Aire apo tes ges*) demands execution.
23. The three actions — shouting, throwing garments, tossing dust — express extreme outrage. Throwing dust may signify cursing (cf. 2 Samuel 16:13, where Shimei throws dust at David) or preparation for stoning. Removing garments echoes the stoning of Stephen (7:58), which Paul himself referenced moments earlier.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 16:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The commander could not understand Paul's Aramaic speech and only witnessed the crowd's violent reaction. Roman 'examination by scourging' (*mastixin anetazesthai*) was a method of extracting information from non-citizens — a brutal interrogation technique using leather whips often embedded with bone or metal. It was distinct from the lesser punishment of beating with rods.
25. Paul times his revelation of Roman citizenship for maximum legal effect — when he is already being tied up for flogging. The question is rhetorical: it was emphatically illegal. The *lex Porcia* (c. 195 BC) and the *lex Julia* (c. 23 BC) prohibited binding, beating, or executing a Roman citizen without due process. The word *akarakriton* ('uncondemned, without trial') emphasizes the procedural violation.
26. The centurion's alarmed report — 'What are you about to do?' — reflects the serious legal consequences of violating a Roman citizen's rights. A commander who flogged a citizen without trial could face severe punishment, including loss of rank.
27. The commander personally verifies the claim. Falsely claiming Roman citizenship was a capital offense (Suetonius, Claudius 25), so the claim carried its own credibility. Paul's single-word answer — 'Yes' (*Nai*) — is quietly authoritative.
28. The exchange reveals a social hierarchy within citizenship. The commander (whose name, Claudius Lysias, per 23:26, suggests he obtained citizenship under Emperor Claudius, who was known for selling it) purchased his status. Paul inherited his — his family held citizenship, possibly granted for services to Rome in Tarsus. Birth citizenship outranked purchased citizenship in social prestige.

29. The immediate withdrawal (eutheos apestes) of the interrogators demonstrates the power of Roman citizenship rights. The commander's fear (ephobethee) is specifically about having already bound Paul (auton en dedekos) — the binding itself was a violation, even before any flogging occurred.
30. Unable to examine Paul by force (because of his citizenship) and unable to understand the charges (because the speech was in Aramaic), the commander convenes the Jewish council (synedrin, the Sanhedrin) to clarify the matter. This sets the stage for chapter 23. The Roman commander's authority to convene the Sanhedrin demonstrates the power dynamics of the occupation.

23

Summary: *Acts 23 opens with Paul before the Sanhedrin, where his claim of a clear conscience provokes the high priest Ananias to order him struck. Paul then strategically divides the council by declaring that he is on trial for the hope of the resurrection, splitting the Pharisees and Sadducees against each other. That night, the Lord appears to Paul and assures him he will testify in Rome. Meanwhile, more than forty Jews form a conspiracy to assassinate Paul, swearing an oath not to eat or drink until he is dead. Paul's nephew learns of the plot, warns the commander, and Claudius Lysias transfers Paul under heavy military escort to the governor Felix in Caesarea.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's appeal to the resurrection as the issue at stake (v. 6) is both theologically true and tactically brilliant — it exploits the well-known Pharisee-Sadducee divide on this doctrine. The Lord's nighttime appearance (v. 11) is the theological center of the chapter, confirming that Paul's journey to Rome is divinely ordained, not merely the result of political maneuvering. The assassination conspiracy and its foiling through Paul's nephew introduces the only family member of Paul mentioned in Acts. Claudius Lysias's letter (vv. 26-30) is a masterpiece of bureaucratic spin — he rewrites events to make himself look better.*

Translation Friction: *Paul's response to the high priest ('God will strike you, you whitewashed wall,' v. 3) and his subsequent claim not to have known Ananias was high priest (v. 5) have been debated endlessly. Possible explanations include poor eyesight, the high priest's lack of distinctive vestments in a hastily convened session, or ironic denial. We render the text without resolving the question. Claudius Lysias's letter significantly distorts the actual sequence of events — he claims to have rescued Paul because he learned he was a Roman citizen, when in fact he learned this only after ordering the flogging.*

Connections: *Paul's claim of a 'clear conscience' (v. 1) connects to his consistent self-defense throughout the epistles (cf. 2 Corinthians 1:12, 2 Timothy 1:3). The Pharisee-Sadducee split over resurrection connects to the Sadducees' challenge to Jesus in Luke 20:27-40. The Lord's assurance 'you must testify in Rome' (v. 11) parallels 19:21 and drives the narrative toward its conclusion. The military escort of 470 soldiers for one prisoner underscores the seriousness of the threat and the strategic importance Roman authorities placed on maintaining order.*

¹Paul looked intently at the council and said, "Brothers, I have lived my life before God in all good conscience up to this day."
²The high priest Ananias ordered those standing near him to strike him on the mouth. ³Then Paul said to him, "God is going to strike you, you whitewashed wall! Are you sitting there to judge me according to the law, and yet in violation of the law you order me to be struck?" ⁴Those standing nearby said, "Would you insult God's high priest?" ⁵Paul said, "I did not know, brothers, that he was the high priest. For it is written, 'You shall not speak evil of a ruler of your people.'" ⁶Now when Paul perceived that one part were Sadducees and the other Pharisees, he cried out in the council, "Brothers, I am a Pharisee, a son of Pharisees. It is with respect to the hope and the resurrection of the dead that I am on trial!" ⁷When he said this, a dispute arose between the Pharisees and the Sadducees, and the assembly was divided. ⁸For the Sadducees say that there is no resurrection, nor angel, nor spirit, but the Pharisees acknowledge them all. ⁹Then a great clamor arose, and some of the scribes of the Pharisees' party stood up and contended sharply, "We find nothing wrong with this man. What if a spirit or an angel has spoken to him?" — ¹⁰When the dispute became violent, the commander, fearing that Paul would be torn apart by them, ordered the soldiers to go down, take him by force from among them, and bring him into the barracks. ¹¹The following night the Lord stood by him and said, "Take courage, for as you have testified about me in Jerusalem, so you must also testify in Rome." ¹²When day came, the Jews formed a conspiracy and bound themselves by an oath, saying that they would neither eat nor drink until they had killed Paul. ¹³There were more than forty who formed this conspiracy. ¹⁴They went to the

chief priests and elders and said, "We have strictly bound ourselves by an oath to taste nothing until we have killed Paul. ¹⁵Now then, you and the council must notify the commander to bring him down to you, as though you were going to examine his case more carefully. And we are ready to kill him before he gets near." ¹⁶But the son of Paul's sister heard about the ambush, and he went and entered the barracks and told Paul. ¹⁷Paul called one of the centurions and said, "Take this young man to the commander, for he has something to report to him." ¹⁸So he took him and brought him to the commander and said, "The prisoner Paul called me and asked me to bring this young man to you, as he has something to tell you." ¹⁹The commander took him by the hand, drew him aside privately, and asked, "What is it that you have to report to me?" ²⁰He said, "The Jews have agreed to ask you to bring Paul down to the council tomorrow, as though they were going to inquire more carefully about his case. ²¹But do not be persuaded by them, for more than forty of their men are lying in ambush for him, having bound themselves by an oath neither to eat nor drink until they have killed him. They are ready now, waiting for your consent." ²²The commander dismissed the young man, ordering him, "Tell no one that you have reported these things to me." ²³Then he called two of the centurions and said, "Get two hundred soldiers ready to go to Caesarea, with seventy horsemen and two hundred spearmen, by the third hour of the night. ²⁴Also provide mounts so that Paul may ride and be brought safely to Felix the governor." ²⁵He wrote a letter to this effect: ²⁶"Claudius Lysias, to His Excellency the governor Felix: Greetings. ²⁷This man was seized by the Jews and was about to be killed by them when I came with the soldiers and rescued him, having learned that he was a Roman citizen. ²⁸Wanting to know the charge for which they were accusing him, I brought him down to their council. ²⁹I found that he was being accused about questions of their law, but had no charge deserving death or imprisonment. ³⁰When I was informed of a plot against the man, I sent him to you at once, ordering his accusers also to state their charges against him before you." ³¹So the soldiers, according to their orders, took Paul and brought him by night to Antipatris. ³²The next day they let the horsemen go on with him and returned to the barracks. ³³When they came to Caesarea, they delivered the letter to the governor and presented Paul before him. ³⁴After reading the letter, he asked what province Paul was from, and when he learned that he was from Cilicia, ³⁵I will hear you, stated he, when your accusers are also come. Then he commanded him to be kept in Herod's judgment hall.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *atenisas* ('looked intently, gazed') suggests direct, unflinching eye contact. Paul's opening claim — a 'good conscience' (*syneideesei agathee*) before God — is a bold assertion of innocence. The word *pepoliteumai* ('I have lived as a citizen, conducted myself') implies both civic and religious faithfulness.
2. Ananias son of Nedebeaus was high priest from approximately AD 47 to 59. He was known for violence and corruption (Josephus, *Antiquities* 20.199-207) and was eventually assassinated by Jewish revolutionaries at the outbreak of the revolt in AD 66. Striking a defendant on the mouth was intended to silence what was considered blasphemous or offensive speech.
3. The epithet 'whitewashed wall' (*toiche kekoniamene*) echoes Ezekiel 13:10-15, where whitewashed walls conceal structural corruption. Jesus used similar imagery for the Pharisees (Matthew 23:27, 'whitewashed tombs'). Paul's retort exposes the irony: the judge is the lawbreaker. Jewish law required that defendants be presumed innocent and not struck during proceedings.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 13:10-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The bystanders' rebuke appeals to the sanctity of the high priestly office. The verb *loidoreis* ('revile, insult') was a serious charge — insulting the high priest could be construed as violating Exodus 22:28.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 22:28. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Paul quotes Exodus 22:28 from the Septuagint. His claim not to have recognized the high priest remains puzzling — proposed explanations include poor eyesight (cf. Galatians 4:15, 6:11), the informality of the session, the high priest not wearing vestments, or Paul speaking with irony (implying 'I could not have imagined that a man who acts this way is the high priest'). The text does not resolve the ambiguity.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 22:28 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Paul's declaration is both true and strategic. He genuinely believed in the resurrection (1 Corinthians 15), and the resurrection of Jesus was central to his message. But by framing the issue this way, he exploits the fundamental Pharisee-Sadducee doctrinal divide. The Sadducees denied resurrection, angels, and spirits; the Pharisees affirmed all three (v. 8).

7. The verb *eschisthe* ('was split, divided') is vivid — the council literally fractures along doctrinal lines. Paul has successfully redirected the debate from his alleged crimes to an internal Jewish theological controversy.
8. Luke provides this explanatory note for readers unfamiliar with Jewish sectarian differences. The Sadducees' denial of resurrection, angels, and spirits reflected their strict adherence to the written Torah alone, where these concepts are less developed. The Pharisees accepted the oral tradition and later prophetic writings that developed these doctrines.
9. The Pharisaic scribes now defend Paul — a dramatic reversal. Their argument ('What if a spirit or an angel spoke to him?') inadvertently validates Paul's Damascus road experience. The SBLGNT text breaks off mid-sentence with a dash, leaving the conditional clause unfinished (aposiopesis) — the sentence is interrupted by the chaos. The KJV's addition 'let us not fight against God' (from the Textus Receptus) echoes Gamaliel's words in 5:39 but is not in the critical text.
10. The verb *diaspasthe* ('torn apart, pulled to pieces') is graphic — the commander fears Paul will be literally dismembered as the two factions pull him in opposite directions. This is the second time the Roman military has had to rescue Paul from a Jewish crowd (cf. 21:32-35). The pattern establishes Rome as Paul's unlikely protector.
11. This is the theological pivot of the entire narrative from Acts 21 onward. The divine *dei* ('it is necessary, you must') indicates that Paul's journey to Rome is not a contingent political outcome but a divinely ordained necessity. The word 'courage' (*tharsei*) is the same word Jesus used to calm the disciples on the sea (Matthew 14:27) and to assure the paralytic (Mark 2:5). Everything that follows — the conspiracy, the transfer to Caesarea, the trials, the appeal to Caesar, the shipwreck — serves this divine purpose.
12. The verb *anethematisan* ('bound themselves by a curse, placed themselves under a ban') means they invoked divine punishment on themselves if they failed. The Hebrew equivalent is *cherem* — a self-imposed ban of the most solemn kind. The oath not to eat or drink creates narrative urgency.
13. The number 'more than forty' (pleious tesserakonta) indicates a substantial, organized group — not a spontaneous mob but a premeditated assassination squad. The word *synomosian* ('conspiracy, joint oath') emphasizes the formal, sworn nature of their pact.
14. The conspirators approach the chief priests and elders (Sadducean leadership) — not the Pharisees who had just defended Paul. The Hebrew-style emphatic construction *anathemati anethematisamen* ('with a curse we have cursed ourselves') intensifies the solemnity of the oath.
15. The plan involves the Sanhedrin as decoy — requesting a second hearing while the assassins ambush Paul en route. The participation of the chief priests and elders in this conspiracy implicates the Jewish leadership in a murder plot, a serious narrative charge that Luke presents matter-of-factly.
16. This is the only mention of any of Paul's relatives in Acts. The nephew's access to both the conspiracy information and the Roman barracks suggests the family may have had social connections in Jerusalem. How a young man learned of a secret conspiracy of forty men is unexplained — perhaps the plotters were not as discreet as they imagined.
17. Paul's ability to summon a centurion and make requests indicates that his status as a Roman citizen afforded him certain privileges even in custody. He acts decisively, channeling the information through proper military channels.
18. Paul is now referred to as 'the prisoner' (*ho desmios*) — his new identity in the narrative. The centurion faithfully relays Paul's request, and the commander receives the young man personally, indicating that he took Paul's status seriously.
19. The commander's gesture of taking the young man by the hand (*epilabomenos tes cheiros autou*) suggests both kindness and discretion. He recognizes the sensitivity of the information and ensures privacy. The detail is characteristically Lukan in its attention to personal interaction.
20. The nephew relays the plan accurately, demonstrating good intelligence. The phrase 'as though' (*hos mellon*) reveals the deception — the request for a hearing is a pretext for the ambush.
21. The nephew provides specific, actionable intelligence: the number of conspirators (more than forty), the nature of their oath, and their current state of readiness. The phrase 'waiting for your consent' (*prosdechomenoi ten apo sou epangelian*) reveals that the plot depends on the commander's cooperation.
22. The commander's secrecy order protects both the nephew (from retaliation) and his own operational plans. He acts with professional military competence — receiving intelligence, maintaining security, and immediately formulating a response.
23. The escort totals 470 military personnel for one prisoner — an extraordinary force that reflects both the seriousness of the threat and the importance of protecting a Roman citizen. The 'third hour of the night' is approximately 9 PM, ensuring departure under cover of darkness. The *dexiolabous* ('spearmen' or 'light-armed troops') is a rare word whose exact meaning is debated.
24. Multiple mounts (*ktene*, 'animals, beasts') suggests provisions for changing horses to maintain speed. Felix (Marcus Antonius Felix) was procurator of Judea from approximately AD 52 to 59. Tacitus describes him as one who 'exercised the power of a king with the spirit of a slave' (Histories 5.9).
25. The phrase 'to this effect' (*echousan ton typon touton*) indicates Luke may be paraphrasing rather than quoting the letter verbatim. This is one of the few embedded letters in Acts (cf. 15:23-29) and provides insight into Roman administrative communication.
26. The letter follows standard Greco-Roman epistolary form: sender, recipient, greeting (*chairein*). The title *kratisto* ('most excellent, His Excellency') is the same used for Theophilus in Luke 1:3 and for Felix and Festus elsewhere in Acts (24:3, 26:25). The commander's full name — Claudius Lysias — appears only here. 'Claudius' was likely his adopted Roman nomen, taken when he purchased citizenship under Emperor Claudius.

27. Lysias's letter strategically rearranges the sequence of events. In reality, he rescued Paul first and only later discovered his citizenship (21:33-34 vs. 22:25-29). By writing 'having learned that he was a Roman citizen,' Lysias makes his intervention appear to be a deliberate act of protecting Roman rights rather than a routine crowd-control operation. This bureaucratic self-serving is a realistic touch.
28. Lysias presents the Sanhedrin hearing as his own initiative to determine charges — a reasonable summary of events that also emphasizes his procedural diligence before a superior.
29. Lysias's assessment — that the dispute concerns Jewish law and involves no Roman crime — is the same conclusion that Gallio reached in Corinth (18:14-15) and that Festus and Agrippa will later reach (25:25, 26:31). This repeated Roman verdict of innocence on matters of Roman law is a major theme in Acts.
30. Lysias transfers both the prisoner and the legal responsibility to Felix. By ordering the accusers to present their case before the governor, he ensures a proper trial while removing himself from a dangerous situation. The SBLGNT omits the closing 'Farewell' (erroso) found in the Textus Receptus.
31. Antipatris was located about 35 miles northwest of Jerusalem on the road to Caesarea — a hard night's march. The city was rebuilt by Herod the Great and named after his father Antipater. The overnight forced march would put Paul beyond the reach of the Jerusalem conspirators by dawn.
32. Once past the danger zone of the Judean hills, the infantry and spearmen were no longer needed — the horsemen alone could escort Paul through the coastal plain to Caesarea. The remaining journey was about 25 miles. This practical military detail reflects the author's familiarity with such operations.
33. The official handoff is complete: the letter explains the case, and the prisoner is formally transferred to the governor's jurisdiction. Caesarea Maritima was the Roman administrative capital of Judea, with the governor's residence in Herod's former palace (the praetorium).
34. Felix's first question — about Paul's province of origin — is a jurisdictional inquiry. Under Roman law, a governor could either try the case himself or remit it to the defendant's home province. Cilicia was at this time part of the combined province of Syria-Cilicia, but Felix decides to retain jurisdiction.
35. Felix agrees to hear the case but requires the accusers' presence — standard Roman legal procedure. 'Herod's praetorium' (to praitorio tou Herodou) was the palace built by Herod the Great in Caesarea, now serving as the governor's official residence and courthouse. Paul's detention there, rather than in a common prison, reflects his Roman citizenship and the nature of the charges.

24

Summary: *Acts 24 presents Paul's formal trial before the Roman governor Felix in Caesarea. The high priest Ananias and a professional orator named Tertullus bring charges against Paul, accusing him of sedition, being a ringleader of the Nazarene sect, and attempting to profane the temple. Paul delivers his own defense, denying the charges and reframing his faith as the fulfillment of Jewish hope in the resurrection. Felix, who has considerable knowledge of the Way, adjourns the case. He later summons Paul privately to hear about faith in Christ, but becomes frightened when Paul speaks of righteousness, self-control, and coming judgment. Felix keeps Paul in custody for two years, hoping for a bribe, until he is succeeded by Porcius Festus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The trial follows proper Roman cognitio procedure: accusation by prosecution (vv. 2-8), defense by the accused (vv. 10-21), and adjudication by the governor. Tertullus's speech is a masterclass in forensic rhetoric — flattery of the judge, character assassination of the defendant, and specific legal charges. Paul's defense is equally skillful, systematically denying each charge. The private conversations between Felix and Paul (vv. 24-26) reveal a governor caught between intellectual curiosity, moral fear, and financial corruption. Felix's two-year delay (v. 27) becomes a pivotal factor in the narrative, eventually leading to Paul's appeal to Caesar.*

Translation Friction: *Felix's familiarity with 'the Way' (v. 22) is historically plausible — his wife Drusilla was Jewish (v. 24), and Caesarea had a significant Christian community. His trembling at Paul's preaching on judgment (v. 25) but refusal to release him reveals the complex interplay of conviction and corruption in Roman governance. Luke does not explain why Paul did not offer the bribe Felix wanted — this silence may itself be the point.*

Connections: *The charges against Paul — sedition, sectarianism, temple profanation — echo the charges against Jesus before Pilate (Luke 23:2, 5). Paul's affirmation that he worships 'the God of our fathers' (v. 14) and believes 'everything written in the Law and the Prophets' (v. 14) positions Christianity as the fulfillment of Judaism, not its contradiction. The two-year imprisonment (v. 27) parallels Jesus' final journey to Jerusalem and provides the setting for Paul's prison epistles if the traditional dating is accepted.*

¹Five days later the high priest Ananias came down with some elders and a lawyer named Tertullus, and they presented their case against Paul before the governor. ²When Paul had been summoned, Tertullus began the accusation, saying: "Since through you we enjoy much peace, and since reforms are being made for this nation by your foresight, ³We acknowledge this in every way and everywhere, most excellent Felix, with deep gratitude. ⁴But so that I may not detain you any further, I beg you in your kindness to hear us briefly. ⁵For we have found this man to be a plague, one who stirs up riots among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the sect of the Nazarenes. ⁶He even tried to profane the temple, so we seized him. ⁸By examining him yourself you will be able to learn about all these things of which we accuse him." ⁹The Jews also joined in the attack, asserting that these things were so. ¹⁰When the governor motioned to him to speak, Paul replied: "Knowing that for many years you have been a judge over this nation, I cheerfully make my defense. ¹¹You can verify that it is not more than twelve days since I went up to worship in Jerusalem, ¹²They and not discovered me in the temple disputing with any man, neither raising up the people, neither in the synagogues, nor in the city. ¹³Nor can they prove to you the charges they are now bringing against me. ¹⁴But this I confess to you: according to the Way, which they call a sect, I worship the God of our fathers, believing everything laid down according to the Law and written in the Prophets, ¹⁵Possess confident expectation toward God, which they themselves also allow, that where there is a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust. ¹⁶Because of this I also strive to maintain a clear conscience before both God and people at all times. ¹⁷After several years I came to bring charitable gifts to my nation and to present offerings. ¹⁸While I was doing this, they found me purified in the temple, without any crowd or disturbance. ¹⁹But there were some Jews from Asia — who ought to be here before you to make their accusation, if they have anything against me. ²⁰Or else let these men themselves state what crime they found when I stood before the council, ²¹Indeed, except it be for this one voice, that I cried standing in the midst of them, Touching the resurrection of the dead I am called in question by you this day. ²²But Felix, having a rather accurate knowledge of the Way, adjourned the proceedings, saying, "When Lysias the commander comes down, I will decide your case." ²³Then he ordered the centurion to keep Paul in custody but to give him some freedom and not prevent any of his friends from attending to his needs. ²⁴Some days later Felix came with his wife Drusilla, who was Jewish, and he sent for Paul and heard him speak about faith in Christ Jesus. ²⁵And as Paul discussed righteousness, self-control, and the coming judgment, Felix became frightened and answered, "Go away for now. When I find a convenient time, I will summon you." ²⁶At the same time he was hoping that money would be given to him by Paul, so he sent for him more frequently and conversed with him. ²⁷After two years had passed, Felix was succeeded by Porcius Festus. And wanting to do the Jews a favor, Felix left Paul in prison.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The delegation's five-day delay likely reflects travel time from Jerusalem to Caesarea plus preparation. The employment of a professional rhetor (Tertullus, a Latin name suggesting he may have been Roman or Romanized) indicates the seriousness of the prosecution. The verb *enephanisan* ('presented formally, laid charges') is a technical legal term.
2. Tertullus opens with a *captatio benevolentiae* — flattery designed to win the judge's favor. The claims of 'much peace' and wise 'reforms' under Felix are historically ironic; Josephus and Tacitus both describe Felix's administration as corrupt and violent. Tertullus tells Felix what Felix wants to hear.
3. The accumulation of universal terms — 'every way,' 'everywhere,' 'all gratitude' — is rhetorical excess typical of forensic flattery. The title 'most excellent' (*kratiste*) is the standard address for a Roman governor.
4. The conventional apology for taking the governor's time (*praeteritio*) is another rhetorical device. Tertullus transitions from flattery to the substance of the charges.
5. Tertullus levels three charges: (1) Paul is a 'plague' (*loimon*, literally a disease) — a personal character attack; (2) he incites sedition (*staseis*) among Jews worldwide — a political charge with Roman legal weight; (3) he leads 'the sect of the Nazarenes' (*ton Nazoraion haireseos*) — the only place in the New Testament where Christians are called 'Nazarenes,' a term derived from Jesus' hometown. The word *hairesis* ('sect, party') was not yet negative in itself — Josephus uses it for the Pharisees and Sadducees.
6. The third specific charge — attempted temple profanation (*bebelosai*) — is the most serious because it carried a death penalty even under Roman law. The SBLGNT text is shorter here than the Textus Receptus, omitting the reference to judging Paul by Jewish law and Lysias's intervention. We follow the critical text.
7. This verse is not present in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears only in later manuscripts behind the Textus Receptus/KJV. The SBLGNT moves directly from verse 6 to verse 8. We follow the critical text and note the verse's absence.

8. In the SBLGNT text, 'him' refers to Paul — Tertullus invites Felix to interrogate Paul directly. In the longer Textus Receptus text, 'him' refers to Lysias. The critical text makes better sense of the prosecution's strategy: they are confident the examination will confirm their charges.
9. The verb *synepethento* ('joined in the attack, supported the accusation') indicates that the Jewish delegation collectively endorsed Tertullus's charges. This is formal legal testimony, not mere agreement.
10. Paul's opening is notably restrained compared to Tertullus's extravagant flattery. He offers one factual observation — Felix's long tenure as judge — which is both complimentary and relevant (a long-serving judge would understand the issues). The word *euthymos* ('cheerfully, with good courage') contrasts with the anxiety one might expect from a defendant.
11. Paul appeals to verifiable facts. The twelve days can be roughly reconstructed from the narrative: arrival (21:17), meeting with James (21:18), purification in the temple (21:26), arrest (21:27), Sanhedrin hearing (22:30), transfer to Caesarea (23:23), five days until trial (24:1). His stated purpose for going to Jerusalem — 'to worship' (*proskyneseon*) — directly contradicts the charge of temple profanation.
12. Paul systematically denies the sedition charge across three venues: temple, synagogues, city. He was not debating (*dialogomenon*), not inciting crowds (*epistatsin poiounta ochlou*), and no witnesses can place him doing so. This is a point-by-point factual rebuttal.
13. Paul shifts the burden of proof to the accusers — a sound legal strategy. The verb *parastesai* ('prove, demonstrate, present evidence') is a legal technical term. Paul's point is devastating: the prosecution has no witnesses, no evidence, only assertions.
14. Paul's confession (*homologe*) is carefully worded. He admits to following 'the Way' (*ten hodon*) but reframes it: what they call a 'sect' (*haireisin*), he calls the authentic worship of Israel's God. He affirms belief in 'everything' in the Law and Prophets — the complete Jewish Scriptures. This positions Christianity not as an innovation but as faithful Judaism.
15. Paul identifies resurrection as common ground between himself and his accusers (the Pharisaic members of the Sanhedrin). The inclusion of 'both the righteous and the unrighteous' (*dikaion te kai adikion*) indicates a general resurrection leading to judgment — a belief shared with the Pharisees and rooted in Daniel 12:2.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Paul returns to the conscience theme from 23:1. The verb *asko* ('I train, I strive, I discipline myself') implies continuous effort — maintaining a blameless conscience is not passive but requires active discipline. The dual orientation — 'before God and people' — covers both religious and civil responsibility.
17. This is Luke's only explicit reference to the collection for the Jerusalem poor that Paul organized across the Gentile churches (cf. Romans 15:25-28, 1 Corinthians 16:1-4, 2 Corinthians 8-9). The word *eleemosynas* ('charitable gifts, alms') and *prosphoras* ('offerings') — one for the poor, one for the temple — demonstrate Paul's continued commitment to both the Jewish community and the temple.
18. Paul's factual summary directly contradicts the prosecution's narrative. He was in the temple — but purified (*hegnismenon*), not profaning it. He had no crowd (*ou meta ochlou*) — therefore no riot was his doing. He caused no disturbance (*oude meta thorybou*) — the disorder came from his accusers.
19. Paul makes a devastating procedural point: the actual eyewitnesses — the Jews from Asia who started the riot (21:27) — are absent. Under Roman law, accusers had to appear in person. Their absence fatally weakens the prosecution's case. The dash in the Greek indicates an *anacolouthon* — Paul's sentence breaks off, leaving the implication hanging.
20. Paul challenges his present accusers to name a specific crime from the Sanhedrin hearing. The word *adikema* ('crime, wrongdoing') is a legal term — Paul demands a specific charge, not vague accusations.
21. Paul's defense ends with ironic brilliance. The only 'crime' anyone can identify from the Sanhedrin hearing is his declaration about resurrection — a doctrine shared by the Pharisees on the council. This effectively reduces the prosecution's case to an internal Jewish theological dispute, which Roman law had no interest in adjudicating.
22. Felix's adjournment (*anebaletō*, 'put off, deferred') without a verdict is significant. His 'rather accurate knowledge of the Way' (*akribesteron eidos ta peri tes hodou*) suggests prior familiarity with Christianity, likely through his Jewish wife Drusilla. The reference to awaiting Lysias is a procedural excuse — there is no indication Lysias ever came.
23. The arrangement is *custodia militaris* — military custody with privileges. The 'freedom' (*anesin*, literally 'relaxation, loosening') means Paul was not in a dungeon but in supervised detention. Allowing friends to visit and provide for him was a privilege of his Roman citizenship and Felix's implicit recognition that Paul posed no real threat.
24. Drusilla was the youngest daughter of Herod Agrippa I (the Agrippa of Acts 12) and sister of Agrippa II (who appears in chapters 25-26). She had left her first husband to marry Felix — a scandalous union that makes the topics Paul addresses in the next verse particularly pointed.
25. Paul's three topics — righteousness (*dikaïosynes*), self-control (*enkrateias*), and coming judgment (*krimatos tou mellontos*) — are not random but directly relevant to Felix's life. Felix was notorious for injustice (Josephus), had stolen Drusilla from her husband (lacking self-control), and faced divine accountability (judgment). His fear (*emphobos genomenos*) is a genuine response to conviction — but he chooses delay over repentance.
26. Luke exposes Felix's true motive: bribery. The hope for 'money' (*chremata*) explains why Felix kept summoning Paul — not for spiritual conversation but for financial negotiation. Roman law technically prohibited governors from accepting bribes (the *lex Iulia repetundarum*), but the practice was

endemic. Paul's mention of bringing 'charitable gifts' (v. 17) may have suggested to Felix that Paul had access to significant funds.

27. The two-year imprisonment (dietias) without verdict is a miscarriage of justice by any standard. Felix's final act regarding Paul — leaving him imprisoned as a political favor to the Jews — reveals that the case was never about law but about politics. Porcius Festus took office around AD 59-60. The word dedemenon ('bound, imprisoned') recalls Agabus's prophecy (21:11) and the Lord's assurance that Paul must reach Rome (23:11).

25

Summary: *Acts 25 introduces the new governor Porcius Festus, who inherits Paul's unresolved case. The Jerusalem leaders immediately press Festus to transfer Paul to Jerusalem — concealing a plan to ambush him en route. Festus instead conducts a hearing in Caesarea, where the same unproven charges are repeated. When Festus suggests transferring the case to Jerusalem as a political gesture, Paul exercises his right as a Roman citizen to appeal to Caesar. Festus grants the appeal. Subsequently, King Agrippa II and his sister Bernice arrive for a state visit, and Festus consults Agrippa about the case, confessing that he finds no crime worthy of death and needs help formulating charges to send with the prisoner to Rome.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's appeal to Caesar (v. 11) is the decisive legal act that sends him to Rome, fulfilling the Lord's promise in 23:11. The appeal (provocatio) was a fundamental right of Roman citizens — once invoked, no lower authority could override it. Festus's candid admission to Agrippa that he has nothing substantive to write to the emperor (v. 26) is both politically embarrassing and theologically significant: the Roman governor cannot identify any crime because there is none. The chapter introduces Agrippa II and Bernice, the last of the Herodian dynasty to appear in the New Testament.*

Translation Friction: *Festus's suggestion to transfer the case to Jerusalem (v. 9) is ambiguous — was it a genuine attempt at jurisdictional fairness, or a political concession to the Jews? Luke says he wanted to 'do the Jews a favor' (v. 9), echoing Felix's motivation (24:27). Paul's appeal may have been partly strategic (to escape local politics) and partly providential (to reach Rome). We render the text without privileging one interpretation.*

Connections: *The repeated attempts to transfer Paul to Jerusalem (23:15, 25:3) echo the persistent plots against Jesus in the Gospels. Festus's declaration of Paul's innocence joins a growing chorus of Roman officials who find no fault in him (Gallio, 18:14-15; Lysias, 23:29; Festus here; Agrippa, 26:31-32). This cumulative pattern parallels Pilate's triple declaration of Jesus' innocence (Luke 23:4, 14, 22). King Agrippa II is the great-grandson of Herod the Great (Matthew 2) and son of Herod Agrippa I (Acts 12).*

1Three days after Festus had arrived in the province, he went up from Caesarea to Jerusalem. 2The chief priests and the leading men of the Jews presented their case against Paul to him and appealed to him, 3Indeed, desired favour opposed to him, that he would send for him to Jerusalem, laying wait in the way to kill him. 4Festus replied that Paul was being kept in custody at Caesarea and that he himself was about to go there shortly. 5"Therefore," he said, "let those among you who are in authority come down with me, and if there is anything wrong with the man, let them bring charges against him." 6After staying among them not more than eight or ten days, he went down to Caesarea. The next day he took his seat on the tribunal and ordered Paul to be brought. 7When Paul appeared, the Jews who had come down from Jerusalem stood around him, bringing many serious charges that they were not able to prove, 8While he answered for himself, Neither opposed to the law of the Jews, neither opposed to the temple, nor yet opposed to Caesar, have I offended any thing at all. 9But Festus, wanting to do the Jews a favor, answered Paul and said, "Are you willing to go up to Jerusalem and be tried there before me on these charges?" 10Paul said, "I am standing before Caesar's tribunal, where I ought to be tried. I have done no wrong to the Jews, as you yourself know very well. 11If then I am a wrongdoer and have committed anything deserving death, I do not seek to escape death. But if there is nothing to their charges against me, no one can hand me over to them. I appeal to Caesar." 12Then Festus, after conferring with his council, answered, "To Caesar you have appealed; to Caesar you shall go." 13After some days had passed, King Agrippa and Bernice arrived at Caesarea to welcome Festus. 14As they were spending several days there, Festus laid Paul's case before the king, saying, "There is a man left as a prisoner by Felix. 15When I was in

Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews presented their case against him, asking for a sentence of condemnation. ¹⁶I answered them that it is not the custom of Romans to hand over any person before the accused meets the accusers face to face and has an opportunity to make a defense against the charge. ¹⁷So when they came together here, I made no delay but took my seat on the tribunal the very next day and ordered the man to be brought in. ¹⁸When the accusers stood up, they brought no charge of the kind of crime I was expecting. ¹⁹Instead they had certain disputes with him about their own religion and about a certain Jesus who had died, whom Paul claimed to be alive. ²⁰Since I was at a loss how to investigate these matters, I asked whether he wished to go to Jerusalem and be tried there regarding them. ²¹But when Paul appealed to be held for the decision of the Emperor, I ordered him to be kept in custody until I could send him to Caesar." ²²Then Agrippa said to Festus, "I would like to hear the man myself." "Tomorrow," said Festus, "you shall hear him." ²³So the next day Agrippa and Bernice came with great pomp and entered the audience hall, along with the military commanders and the prominent men of the city. At Festus's command, Paul was brought in. ²⁴Festus said, "King Agrippa, and all who are present with us, you see this man about whom the whole Jewish community has petitioned me, both in Jerusalem and here, shouting that he ought not to live any longer. ²⁵But I found that he had done nothing deserving death. And since he himself appealed to the Emperor, I decided to send him. ²⁶But I have nothing definite to write to my lord about him. Therefore I have brought him before all of you, and especially before you, King Agrippa, so that after this examination I may have something to write. ²⁷For it seems to me unreasonable to send a prisoner without also indicating the charges against him."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Festus moves quickly — within three days of assuming office he travels to Jerusalem, the religious capital, demonstrating political awareness. The verb *anebe* ('went up') reflects both geography and the conventional language of pilgrimage to Jerusalem.
2. The Jewish leaders waste no time — Paul's case is apparently their top priority with the new governor. The plural 'chief priests' (*archiereis*) includes the current high priest and former holders of the office who retained influence.
3. The assassination plot from 23:12-15 has been revived, or a new one formed. Two years have passed, but the determination to kill Paul persists. Luke reveals the hidden plot (*enedran poiountes*, 'setting an ambush') that the request to Festus conceals. The word *charin* ('as a favor') exposes the request as political rather than judicial.
4. Festus declines the transfer request — whether from good judgment, adherence to protocol, or simply because Caesarea was the proper judicial venue. His response thwarts the ambush plan without his being aware of it. Providence operates through bureaucratic procedure.
5. Festus invites the Jewish leaders to present their case in Caesarea — proper Roman procedure. The conditional 'if there is anything wrong' (*ei ti estin atopon*) is diplomatically neutral but subtly skeptical. The word *atopon* ('out of place, wrong, amiss') is mild legal language.
6. Festus acts with considerably more dispatch than Felix. The *bema* ('tribunal, judgment seat') was the elevated platform from which Roman governors rendered official judgments. The same word is used for Pilate's judgment seat in John 19:13 and Gallio's in Acts 18:12.
7. Luke's summary is devastating to the prosecution: 'many serious charges' (*polla kai barea aitiomata*) that they 'could not prove' (*ouk ischyon apodeixai*). The verb *apodeixai* ('prove, demonstrate') is the same standard of evidence Paul demanded in 24:13. Two years have produced no new evidence.
8. Paul's defense addresses three jurisdictions: Jewish law, the temple, and Roman authority. This tripartite denial covers every possible basis for charges. The addition of 'against Caesar' (*eis Kaisara*) is new — Paul now explicitly addresses the political dimension, denying any sedition against Rome.
9. Festus repeats Felix's pattern: political calculation overrides judicial integrity. The phrase 'wanting to do the Jews a favor' (*thelon tois Ioudaiois charin katathesthai*) echoes 24:27. Festus offers a compromise — trial in Jerusalem but with himself presiding — but Paul recognizes the danger.
10. Paul's response is legally precise. He asserts that he is already before the proper court ('Caesar's tribunal' — the governor's *bema* represents Caesar's authority). His statement 'you yourself know very well' (*su kallion epiginoskeis*) is a pointed challenge: Festus knows Paul is innocent but is considering a politically motivated transfer.
11. Paul's appeal to Caesar (*Kaisara epikaloumai*) is the legal climax of the narrative. The *provocatio ad Caesarem* was an irrevocable right of Roman citizens, transferring jurisdiction to the emperor's court in Rome. Paul's logic is airtight: if guilty, he accepts death; if innocent, no one has the right to sacrifice him to political expediency. The verb *charisasthai* ('hand over as a favor, grant as a gift') pointedly echoes the 'favor' (*charin*) Festus wanted to do for the Jews.
12. Festus consults his advisory council (*symbolion*) — a standard group of legal advisors who assisted Roman governors. The response has a formal, almost formulaic quality: 'To Caesar you have appealed; to Caesar you shall go.' Once the appeal is granted, the case passes beyond Festus's jurisdiction. The divine purpose declared in 23:11 ('you must testify in Rome') now has its legal mechanism.

13. Agrippa II (Marcus Julius Agrippa, AD 27-c. 100) was the last of the Herodian dynasty. He ruled territories northeast of Galilee and had been granted authority over the Jerusalem temple and the appointment of high priests. Bernice was his sister; their relationship was the subject of scandalous rumors in antiquity (Josephus, *Antiquities* 20.145). Their visit to welcome the new governor was a diplomatic courtesy.
14. Festus consults Agrippa because of Agrippa's expertise in Jewish religious matters. The phrase 'left as a prisoner by Felix' (kataleimmenos hypo Felikos desmios) implicitly criticizes Felix's failure to resolve the case.
15. Festus summarizes events for Agrippa. The Jewish leaders sought a katadiken ('condemnation, guilty verdict') — not merely a hearing but a predetermined outcome.
16. Festus articulates a foundational principle of Roman law: the right of the accused to confront accusers and present a defense. This principle — confrontation and defense — is one of Rome's lasting contributions to Western legal tradition. Festus presents himself favorably to Agrippa as a defender of proper procedure.
17. Festus emphasizes his own efficiency — 'no delay' (anabolen medemian) — in contrast to Felix's two-year procrastination. The detail is accurate (cf. v. 6) and presents Festus in the best possible light before a royal audience.
18. Festus's admission is revealing: he expected serious criminal charges (violent sedition, assassination plots) and found none. The word poneron ('evil, criminal') indicates he anticipated accusations of substantive wrongdoing under Roman law.
19. The word deisidaimonias can mean either 'religion' (neutral) or 'superstition' (pejorative). In a diplomatic context, Festus likely intends the neutral sense. His summary of the case — 'a certain Jesus who had died, whom Paul claimed to be alive' — is a remarkable outsider's reduction of the resurrection to its simplest terms. For Festus, it is a puzzling Jewish dispute; for the reader, it is the central claim of the entire book of Acts.
20. Festus reframes his suggestion about Jerusalem as stemming from genuine perplexity (aporoumenos, 'being at a loss') rather than political favoritism. His version omits the motivation Luke attributed to him in verse 9 ('wanting to do the Jews a favor'). This is diplomatic self-presentation before Agrippa.
21. The title Sebastos (Greek equivalent of Latin Augustus, 'the Revered One') refers to the reigning emperor, Nero (AD 54-68). At this point in his reign (c. AD 59-60), Nero's government was still relatively competent under the influence of Seneca and Burrus. The word diagnōsis ('decision, examination, hearing') is a legal term for the imperial court's review.
22. Agrippa's interest — 'I would like to hear the man myself' (eboulomen kai autos tou anthropou akousai) — sets up the hearing in chapter 26. The imperfect eboulomen ('I was wishing, I have been wanting') suggests Agrippa had already heard about Paul and been curious. Festus's immediate 'Tomorrow' shows eagerness to accommodate the king.
23. The scene is deliberately theatrical: royalty, military commanders, civic leaders — all assembled 'with great pomp' (meta polles phantasias). The Greek phantasia (from which 'fantasy' derives) means 'display, pageantry, spectacle.' Luke creates a vivid contrast: all the power of the world arrayed before one prisoner in chains, who turns out to be the most powerful person in the room.
24. Festus introduces the case to the assembled dignitaries. His description of the Jewish community's united demand — 'shouting that he ought not to live' — frames the intensity of the opposition while implicitly distancing himself from their demands.
25. Festus's declaration — 'nothing deserving death' (meden axion thanatou) — is another in the series of Roman acquittals that runs through Acts. He presents the appeal to Caesar as the reason for the transfer, though his own political maneuvering was a significant factor.
26. Festus's problem is bureaucratic but revealing: he must send Paul to Rome with a written summary of charges, but he has no charges to write. The title 'my lord' (to kyrio) for the emperor was becoming common under Nero, though earlier emperors like Augustus had rejected it (Suetonius, Augustus 53). Agrippa's expertise in Jewish affairs makes him the ideal consultant.
27. The word alogon ('unreasonable, absurd, illogical') is a striking admission. It would indeed be absurd to send a prisoner to the emperor without articulated charges. The irony is thick: Rome's judicial system has failed to produce a single substantive charge against Paul, yet he remains imprisoned and is being sent for imperial trial.

26

Summary: Acts 26 contains Paul's defense speech before King Agrippa II, Bernice, Festus, and the assembled dignitaries in Caesarea. This is the longest and most rhetorically polished of Paul's defense speeches in Acts, and it includes the third and most detailed account of his conversion on the Damascus road. Paul argues that his entire ministry is rooted in the hope of Israel — the promise God made to the twelve tribes — and that the resurrection of Jesus is the fulfillment of that hope. Festus interrupts, calling Paul mad; Paul respectfully disagrees and turns directly to Agrippa with a personal appeal. Agrippa's famous response — 'In a short time you will persuade me to become a Christian' — is followed by the private verdict: Paul could have been set free if he had not appealed to Caesar.

What Makes This Remarkable: *This third account of the Damascus road experience (cf. 9:1-19, 22:6-16) is the most theologically developed. Jesus speaks at greater length, commissioning Paul in language drawn from the servant songs of Isaiah and Jeremiah's call narrative. The phrase 'it is hard for you to kick against the goads' (v. 14) is a Greek proverb known from Euripides and Aeschylus, appropriate for the educated audience. Paul's speech builds to a direct evangelistic appeal to a king — an audacious rhetorical move. The verdict of innocence in verse 32 ('this man could have been set free') provides the final Roman declaration of Paul's legal innocence in Acts.*

Translation Friction: *Agrippa's response in verse 28 is notoriously difficult to translate. The Greek *en oligo me peitheis Christianon poiesai* can be read as sincere ('you almost persuade me'), dismissive ('in such a short time you think to make me a Christian?'), or ironic. We follow the rendering that captures Agrippa's deflection without resolving the ambiguity. The relationship between this conversion account and the earlier versions involves significant additions (vv. 16-18) not present in chapters 9 or 22.*

Connections: *Paul's commission in verses 16-18 draws on Isaiah 42:7, 16 (opening blind eyes), Jeremiah 1:7-8 (the prophetic call), and Isaiah 61:1 (liberty for captives) — the same passage Jesus read in the Nazareth synagogue (Luke 4:18-19). The phrase 'the hope of the promise made by God to our fathers' (v. 6) connects to the Abrahamic covenant (Genesis 12, 15, 17), the Davidic promise (2 Samuel 7), and the resurrection hope expressed throughout the Psalms and Prophets. Paul's appeal that Agrippa believes the prophets (v. 27) echoes Jesus' teaching in Luke 24:25-27, 44-47.*

¹Agrippa said to Paul, "You have permission to speak for yourself." Then Paul stretched out his hand and made his defense: ²"I consider myself fortunate, King Agrippa, that it is before you I am about to make my defense today against all the accusations of the Jews, ³Especially because I know you to be expert in all customs and questions which are in the midst of the Jews — for this reason I beseech you to hear me patiently. ⁴All the Jews know my manner of life from my youth, spent from the beginning among my own nation and in Jerusalem. ⁵They have known me for a long time and can testify, if they are willing, that I lived as a Pharisee according to the strictest party of our religion. ⁶And now I stand here on trial because of my hope in the promise made by God to our fathers, ⁷To which promise our the Twelve tribes, instantly serving God time and after dark, confident expectation to arrive. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews. ⁸Why is it considered incredible among you that God raises the dead? ⁹I myself was once convinced that I ought to do many things in opposing the name of Jesus of Nazareth. ¹⁰And this I did in Jerusalem. I not only locked up many of the saints in prison after receiving authority from the chief priests, but when they were put to death I cast my vote against them. ¹¹I punished them often in all the synagogues and tried to force them to blaspheme, and in raging fury against them I persecuted them even to foreign cities. ¹²"In this connection I was traveling to Damascus with the authority and commission of the chief priests, ¹³Indeed, at midday, O king, I noticed in the way a light from heaven, above the brightness of the sun, shining round concerning me and them which journeyed with me. ¹⁴When we had all fallen to the ground, I heard a voice saying to me in the Hebrew language, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me? It is hard for you to kick against the goads.' ¹⁵I said, 'Who are you, Lord?' And the Lord said, 'I am Jesus whom you are persecuting. ¹⁶But get up and stand on your feet, for I have appeared to you for this purpose: to appoint you as a servant and witness of the things in which you have seen me and of the things in which I will appear to you, ¹⁷Delivering you from the people, and from the Gentiles, to whom now I send you,. ¹⁸To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the authority of Satan to God, that they may accept forgiveness of sins, and inheritance in the midst of them which are sanctified by way of faith that is in me. ¹⁹"Therefore, King Agrippa, I was not disobedient to the heavenly vision, ²⁰However, shewed first to them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout every one of the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should turn back and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance. ²¹For this reason the Jews seized me in the temple and tried to kill me. ²²To this day I have had the help that comes from God, and so I stand here testifying both to small and great, saying nothing beyond what the prophets and Moses said would come to pass: ²³that the Messiah would suffer, and that by being the first to rise from the dead, he would proclaim light both to our people and to the Gentiles. ²⁴As Paul was saying these things in his defense, Festus said with a loud voice, "You are out of your mind, Paul! Your great learning is driving you insane!" ²⁵But Paul said, "I am not out of my mind, most excellent Festus, but I am speaking true and rational words. ²⁶For the king knows about these things, and to him

I speak boldly. For I am persuaded that none of these things has escaped his notice, since this was not done in a corner. ²⁷King Agrippa, do you believe the prophets? I know that you believe." ²⁸Agrippa said to Paul, "In a short time would you persuade me to become a Christian?" ²⁹Paul replied, "Whether in a short time or a long time, I would pray to God that not only you but also all who hear me today might become such as I am — except for these chains." ³⁰Then the king rose, and the governor, and Bernice, and those who were sitting with them. ³¹After they had withdrawn, they said to one another, "This man is doing nothing to deserve death or imprisonment." ³²Agrippa said to Festus, "This man could have been set free if he had not appealed to Caesar."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Agrippa, not Festus, grants permission to speak — reflecting his superior rank in this setting. Paul's gesture of stretching out his hand (*ekteinas ten cheira*) is an orator's gesture, beginning a formal rhetorical address. This is Paul's most elaborate and carefully structured speech in Acts.
2. Paul's opening compliment to Agrippa is more substantive than Tertullus's flattery of Felix. The word *makarion* ('fortunate, blessed') is genuine — Agrippa's knowledge of Jewish affairs makes him an ideal judge for Paul's case.
3. Agrippa's expertise in Jewish affairs was well-known — he had authority over the Jerusalem temple and appointed high priests. The word *gnosten* ('expert, one who knows') is more than flattery; it establishes that Agrippa can evaluate the theological nuances of Paul's defense.
4. Paul appeals to public knowledge of his upbringing. The word *biosin* ('manner of life, way of living') encompasses his entire pre-conversion existence. His claim that 'all the Jews know' is a broad appeal to common knowledge.
5. Paul identifies Pharisaism as 'the strictest party' (*ten akribestaten haireisin*) of Judaism — a claim consistent with how both Josephus and the rabbis characterized the Pharisees. The conditional 'if they are willing' (*ean thelosi*) subtly implies that his accusers might not be forthcoming about facts that support his case.
6. Paul frames the entire case as being about 'the promise made by God to our fathers' (*tes eis tous pateras hemon epangelias*). This is the same theological move he made before the Sanhedrin (23:6) — centering the trial on Israel's hope rather than on alleged crimes.
7. The phrase 'our twelve tribes' (*to dodekaphylon hemon*) is remarkable — Paul speaks as if all twelve tribes still exist and worship together, despite the dispersion of the ten northern tribes. The word *ekteneia* ('earnestness, intense devotion') describes the persistent worship of the faithful remnant. Paul's rhetorical point is powerful: he is being accused by Jews for believing what all Jews hope for.
8. This rhetorical question cuts to the heart of the matter. Paul shifts from the specific resurrection of Jesus to the general principle: if God exists and is powerful, why should resurrection be considered impossible (*apiston*, 'unbelievable, incredible')? The question implicitly challenges the Sadducean and Greek skepticism about bodily resurrection.
9. Paul now narrates his pre-conversion hostility to Christianity, establishing that his transformation was not the result of prior sympathy but occurred against his own deeply held convictions. The phrase 'the name of Jesus of Nazareth' (*to onoma Iesou tou Nazoraion*) identifies the historical person whose followers Paul persecuted.
10. Paul uses the term 'the saints' (*ton hagion*) for believers — the only time in Acts this Pauline designation appears. The phrase 'cast my vote' (*katenegeka psephon*) has been debated: it could indicate Paul was a member of the Sanhedrin with voting authority, or it could be figurative for 'expressing approval.' The reference to multiple executions (plural) goes beyond Stephen's case, indicating broader persecution.
11. This is the most detailed description of Paul's persecution in any of the three accounts. The attempt to 'force them to blaspheme' (*enagkazon blasphemein*) — presumably to curse Jesus — reveals the systematic nature of the persecution. The phrase 'raging fury' (*perissos emmainomenos*) uses the language of madness, which Paul will later turn to ironic effect when Festus accuses him of madness (v. 24).
12. Paul emphasizes the official nature of his mission — 'authority and commission' (*exousias kai epitropes*) from the chief priests — to underscore that his conversion contradicted everything his former authorities wanted.
13. This account specifies the light was 'brighter than the sun' (*hyper ten lamproteta tou heliou*) — an intensification from the earlier accounts. At midday the sun is at full strength, making a light that surpasses it unmistakably supernatural. The detail that the light shone on 'those traveling with me' is unique to this account.
14. Two details are unique to this account: all the companions fell to the ground (earlier accounts differ), and the voice spoke 'in the Hebrew language' (*te Hebraidi dialekto*, i.e., Aramaic). The proverb about 'kicking against the goads' (*pros kentra laktizein*) is well-known in Greek literature (Euripides, *Bacchae* 795; Aeschylus, *Prometheus Bound* 324) — a goad is a sharp stick used to drive oxen. The saying means resisting an irresistible force causes only self-harm. Its use in Aramaic before Paul but reported in Greek for Agrippa shows rhetorical sophistication.
15. The exchange is consistent across all three accounts. The identification 'I am Jesus' (*Ego eimi Iesous*) uses the emphatic *ego eimi* construction that echoes the divine self-revelation in the Old Testament (Exodus 3:14).
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

16. In this account, Jesus' commission is far more detailed than in chapters 9 or 22. The command 'Get up and stand on your feet' (anastethi kai stethi epi tous podas sou) echoes God's words to Ezekiel (Ezekiel 2:1). The dual role — 'servant and witness' (hypereten kai martyra) — combines the language of Isaiah's servant and the apostolic witness theme of Acts.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 2:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The promise of rescue 'from the people and from the Gentiles' (ek tou laou kai ek ton ethnon) covers both Jewish and Gentile opposition — exactly what Paul has experienced. The verb apostello ('I am sending') is the root of 'apostle'; Jesus commissions Paul as his apostle to the nations. The language echoes Jeremiah 1:7-8.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 1:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This verse is a compressed summary of Paul's entire theological mission, structured in three parallel movements: (1) opening eyes — from ignorance to knowledge; (2) turning from darkness to light and from Satan to God — from bondage to freedom; (3) receiving forgiveness and inheritance — from condemnation to inclusion. The language draws heavily on Isaiah 42:6-7, 16 (the servant opens blind eyes) and Isaiah 61:1 (liberty for captives). The phrase 'sanctified by faith in me' (pistei te eis eme) places faith in Jesus as the means of sanctification.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 42:6-7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 61:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Paul addresses Agrippa directly, resuming the relationship established in verses 2-3. The phrase 'heavenly vision' (ourania optasia) characterizes the Damascus road experience in terms any educated Greco-Roman audience would understand. Paul's claim is simple: he was obedient to a divine revelation.
20. Paul summarizes his entire ministry geographically: Damascus, Jerusalem, Judea, then the Gentiles — an outward-expanding pattern that mirrors Acts' own structure (1:8). His message has two components: repentance (metanoein, inner change) and turning to God (epistrephein, outward reorientation), demonstrated by appropriate deeds (axia tes metanoias erga). This echoes John the Baptist's preaching (Luke 3:8).
21. Paul identifies the real cause of his persecution: his obedience to the heavenly vision, specifically his preaching to Gentiles. The verb diacheirisaithai ('to lay hands on, to kill') is a strong word implying violent intent.
22. Paul attributes his survival to divine help (epikourias apo tou theou), not to Roman protection or personal resourcefulness. His claim to teach 'nothing beyond' (ouden ekτος) Moses and the prophets positions the gospel as the fulfillment of the Jewish Scriptures — not an innovation but a completion.
23. Paul's summary of the prophetic message has three elements: (1) the Christ must suffer (pathetos ho Christos) — a claim that scandalized Jews who expected a triumphant Messiah; (2) the Christ would be first to rise from the dead (protos ex anastaseos nekron) — not just raised, but 'first,' implying a sequence others will follow; (3) he would proclaim light to both Jews and Gentiles — universalizing the salvation. Each point can be traced to specific prophetic texts: suffering (Isaiah 53), resurrection (Psalm 16:10), and light to the nations (Isaiah 42:6, 49:6).
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 16:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 42:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Festus interrupts — unable to contain himself at the talk of resurrection. His charge of madness (Maine, 'You are mad') echoes the ironic language Paul used of his own pre-conversion fury (emmainomenos, v. 11). The phrase 'great learning' (polla grammata) could mean 'much study of Scripture' or 'much education generally.' Festus attributes Paul's resurrection claims to intellectual excess rather than divine revelation.
25. Paul's response is calm, respectful, and pointed. He addresses Festus with full courtesy (kratiste, 'most excellent') while firmly denying the charge. The word sophrosynes ('soundness of mind, rationality, self-control') is the direct opposite of mania — Paul claims his words are not the product of frenzy but of clarity and truth.
26. Paul pivots from Festus to Agrippa, who as a Jewish king would understand the scriptural framework. The phrase 'not done in a corner' (ouk estin en gonia pepragmenon) is proverbial — the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection were public, not secret. This is both a historical claim and a rhetorical challenge.
27. Paul's direct question to the king is audacious. He answers his own question — 'I know that you believe' — placing Agrippa in a rhetorical trap. If Agrippa affirms belief in the prophets, Paul can argue that the prophets predicted exactly what he has described. If Agrippa denies it, he alienates his Jewish subjects.

- 28.** This famous verse is notoriously ambiguous. The Greek *en oligo me peitheis Christianon poiesai* can be read multiple ways: (1) 'In a short time you are persuading me to become a Christian' (KJV tradition — near-conversion); (2) 'With so little effort you think to make me a Christian?' (dismissive); (3) 'In short, you are trying to make me a Christian' (deflecting). The rendering captures the question as a deflection — Agrippa sidesteps Paul's trap by reframing the exchange. This is the second of only three uses of *Christianos* in the New Testament (cf. 11:26, 1 Peter 4:16).
- 29.** Paul's response is the emotional climax of the speech. He takes Agrippa's deflection and turns it into a genuine wish — not just for Agrippa but for everyone present. The final phrase 'except for these chains' (*parektos ton desmon touton*) is both poignant (he is in chains) and rhetorically powerful (he would share everything about his life except the imprisonment). The gesture implied — Paul likely raised his chained hands — would have been deeply affecting.
- 30.** The king's rising signals the end of the hearing. The order of names — king, governor, Bernice — reflects the protocol of rank. The hearing was consultative, not judicial; Agrippa had no authority to render a verdict on a case appealed to Caesar.
- 31.** The private deliberation produces a unanimous verdict of innocence — from a king, a governor, and the assembled dignitaries. This is the culminating Roman declaration of Paul's innocence in Acts, parallel to Pilate's declaration about Jesus (Luke 23:4, 14, 22).
- 32.** Agrippa's statement is the final word on Paul's legal status: he could have been released (*apolelysthai edynato*) — his innocence is beyond question. But the appeal to Caesar is irrevocable. The narrative irony is profound: the appeal that prevents Paul's release is the very mechanism that will bring him to Rome, fulfilling the Lord's promise (23:11). What appears to be a legal miscalculation is actually divine strategy.

27

Summary: *Acts 27 is one of the most vivid narrative passages in ancient literature, describing Paul's voyage to Rome and the catastrophic shipwreck on the island of Malta. The 'we' narrative resumes with detailed nautical terminology as Paul and other prisoners sail under the centurion Julius's custody. The voyage proceeds through unfavorable conditions — Paul's warning against continuing is overruled. A ferocious northeast storm called the Euraquilo catches the ship near Crete, driving it for fourteen days across the open Mediterranean. Paul receives a divine assurance that all 276 persons aboard will survive. After dramatic scenes of despair, a midnight approach to land, a failed escape attempt by the sailors, and Paul's eucharistic-like meal, the ship runs aground on Malta and breaks apart. All hands reach shore alive.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The nautical detail in this chapter is so precise that it has been used to reconstruct ancient sailing routes and seamanship practices. The 'we' narrator's firsthand account includes technical terms for sailing gear, wind conditions, navigational techniques, and ship construction that demonstrate genuine seafaring experience. Paul emerges as the de facto leader of the voyage — a prisoner who commands more authority than the captain or centurion because he speaks with divine backing. The divine promise that all 276 souls would be saved (v. 24) inverts the expected pattern: it is the prisoner who saves the ship, not the ship that carries the prisoner.*

Translation Friction: *The chapter presents Paul as having prophetic foreknowledge (vv. 10, 22-26) alongside practical leadership, which some interpreters find in tension. The 'we' sections present a narrator with genuine nautical knowledge — the level of technical detail exceeds what is typical in ancient fiction. We render the Greek maritime vocabulary with modern equivalents where possible. The number 276 (v. 37) is large for an ancient merchant vessel but not impossible for the grain ships of the Alexandria-Rome trade.*

Connections: *The storm narrative echoes Jonah 1 — another prophet on a ship in a storm, where the cargo is thrown overboard and divine intervention saves lives. Paul's breaking of bread (v. 35) echoes the Last Supper and the Emmaus road meal (Luke 24:30). The promise 'not a hair of your head will perish' (v. 34) repeats Jesus' words in Luke 21:18. The entire voyage narrative demonstrates the Lord's promise in 23:11 ('you must testify in Rome') being fulfilled through and despite natural catastrophe.*

¹When it was decided that we should sail to Italy, they handed Paul and some other prisoners over to a centurion named Julius, of the Augustan Cohort. ²We boarded a ship from Adramyttium that was about to sail to ports along the coast of Asia, and we put to sea. Aristarchus, a Macedonian from Thessalonica, was with us. ³The next day we put in at Sidon, and Julius treated Paul kindly and allowed him to go to his friends and receive their care. ⁴From there we put to sea and sailed under the lee of Cyprus, because the winds were against us. ⁵After sailing across the open sea along Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra in Lycia. ⁶There the centurion found a ship of Alexandria sailing for Italy and put us aboard it. ⁷We sailed slowly for

a number of days and arrived with difficulty off Cnidus. Since the wind did not allow us to go farther, we sailed under the lee of Crete off Salmone. ⁸Coasting along with difficulty, we came to a place called Fair Havens, near the city of Lasea. ⁹Since much time had been lost and the voyage was now dangerous because even the Fast had already gone by, Paul advised them, ¹⁰Stated to them, Sirs, I perceive that this voyage will be with hurt and greatly damage, not only of the lading and ship, but also of our lives. ¹¹But the centurion was more persuaded by the pilot and the ship's owner than by what Paul said. ¹²Since the harbor was not suitable for wintering, the majority decided to put to sea from there, hoping somehow to reach Phoenix, a harbor of Crete facing both southwest and northwest, and spend the winter there. ¹³When a gentle south wind began to blow, thinking they had achieved their purpose, they weighed anchor and sailed along the coast of Crete, close to shore. ¹⁴But before long a violent wind called the Euraquilo rushed down from the island. ¹⁵When the ship was caught and could not face the wind, we gave way to it and were driven along. ¹⁶Running under the lee of a small island called Cauda, we managed with difficulty to get the ship's boat under control. ¹⁷After hoisting it aboard, they used supports to undergird the ship. Then, fearing that they would run aground on the Syrtis, they lowered the sea anchor and so were driven along. ¹⁸Since we were being violently battered by the storm, the next day they began to throw the cargo overboard. ¹⁹On the third day they threw the ship's tackle overboard with their own hands. ²⁰When neither sun nor stars appeared for many days, and no small storm continued to rage, all hope of our being saved was at last abandoned. ²¹Since they had been without food for a long time, Paul stood up among them and said, "Men, you should have listened to me and not set sail from Crete. Then you would have avoided this damage and loss. ²²But now I urge you to take heart, for there will be no loss of life among you, but only of the ship. ²³For this very night an angel of the God to whom I belong and whom I serve stood before me ²⁴Declaring, Fear not, Paul. You must be brought prior to Caesar — and, lo, God has given you all them that sail with you. ²⁵So take heart, men, for I have faith in God that it will be exactly as I have been told. ²⁶But we must run aground on some island." ²⁷When the fourteenth night had come, as we were drifting across the Adriatic Sea, about midnight the sailors suspected that they were nearing land. ²⁸They took soundings and found twenty fathoms. A little farther on they took soundings again and found fifteen fathoms. ²⁹Fearing that we might run aground on rocks, they dropped four anchors from the stern and prayed for daylight. ³⁰When the sailors tried to escape from the ship and had lowered the boat into the sea, pretending that they were going to lay out anchors from the bow, ³¹Paul said to the centurion and the soldiers, "Unless these men stay in the ship, you cannot be saved." ³²Then the soldiers cut the ropes of the boat and let it drift away. ³³As day was about to dawn, Paul urged them all to take some food, saying, "Today is the fourteenth day that you have continued in suspense and without food, having eaten nothing. ³⁴Therefore I urge you to take some food, for this is for your preservation. For not a hair will perish from the head of any of you." ³⁵After saying this, he took bread, gave thanks to God in the presence of all, and after breaking it he began to eat. ³⁶Then they all were encouraged and ate some food themselves. ³⁷We were in all 276 persons on the ship. ³⁸After they had eaten their fill, they lightened the ship by throwing the wheat into the sea. ³⁹When day came, they did not recognize the land, but they noticed a bay with a beach, and they planned to run the ship ashore there if they could. ⁴⁰So they cast off the anchors, leaving them in the sea. At the same time they untied the ropes that held the steering oars, hoisted the foresail to the wind, and made for the beach. ⁴¹But striking a sandbar where two seas met, they ran the vessel aground. The bow stuck fast and remained immovable, but the stern was being broken up by the force of the waves. ⁴²The soldiers' plan was to kill the prisoners, so that none of them could swim away and escape. ⁴³But the centurion, wanting to save Paul, kept them from carrying out their plan. He ordered those who could swim to jump overboard first and make for land, ⁴⁴Indeed, the rest, some on boards, and some on broken pieces of the ship. And so it happened that, that they escaped all safe to land.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'we' narrative resumes, indicating the author's presence on the voyage. The 'Augustan Cohort' (speires Sebastes) was likely a cohort honorifically named after Augustus, possibly the cohorts I Augusta attested in inscriptions from Syria. Julius's later courteous treatment of Paul (v. 3) suggests he recognized Paul's social status as a Roman citizen.
2. Adramyttium was a port city in Mysia (northwest Asia Minor). This was a coastal vessel, not the ship that would cross the open sea to Italy. Aristarchus was one of Paul's traveling companions (cf. 19:29, 20:4), here accompanying Paul voluntarily on his journey as a prisoner.

3. Julius's 'kind treatment' (philanthropos, literally 'with love of humanity') of Paul reflects the privileges due a Roman citizen even in custody. Allowing Paul to visit friends in Sidon shows considerable trust. The word epimeleias ('care, attention') suggests Paul received provisions or medical attention from the Christian community there.
4. Sailing 'under the lee of Cyprus' (hypepleusmen ten Kypron) means they passed north and east of the island, using it as a windbreak against the prevailing westerly winds. This is the opposite direction from the outbound route (21:3), demonstrating the author's awareness of seasonal wind patterns.
5. The route along the southern coast of Asia Minor, using the coastal countercurrent to make headway against westerly winds, is confirmed by ancient sailing manuals. Myra was a major port on the Lycian coast and a regular transfer point for the Egyptian grain fleet sailing to Rome.
6. The Alexandrian grain ship was part of the fleet that supplied Rome with Egyptian wheat — a critical supply line that the emperor monitored closely. These were the largest merchant vessels in the ancient Mediterranean, capable of carrying several hundred passengers plus cargo. The centurion had authority to requisition passage for his prisoner detail.
7. The slow progress and difficulty reflect the prevailing northwesterly winds of late summer in the Aegean. Cnidus is at the southwestern tip of Asia Minor. Unable to round it, the ship turned south to shelter behind Crete. Salmone (Cape Sidero) is the northeastern point of Crete.
8. Fair Havens (Kalous Limenas) is an identifiable bay on the south coast of Crete, still bearing the same name. It provided limited shelter but was not a suitable harbor for wintering. Lasea has been identified with ruins about five miles east of Fair Havens.
9. The 'Fast' (ten nesteian) is the Day of Atonement (Yom Kippur), which falls in September or October. After this date, Mediterranean sailing was considered hazardous; navigation typically ceased from November to March. The reference provides a chronological anchor: they are already in the danger period.
10. Paul's warning is presented as practical observation (theoro, 'I can see, I perceive') rather than explicit prophecy, though it will prove accurate. The word hybreos ('damage, injury, violence') refers to damage from the storm. Paul, as an experienced traveler who had been shipwrecked before (2 Corinthians 11:25), had practical grounds for his assessment.
11. The centurion makes the rational decision to trust the professional sailors — the kubernetes ('helmsman, pilot') and the nauklerous ('ship owner, captain') — over a prisoner. The narrative creates dramatic irony: the professionals are wrong, and the prisoner speaks truth.
12. Phoenix (modern Loutro or possibly Phineka) was a better harbor on Crete's south coast, about 40 miles west of Fair Havens. The description of its orientation — 'facing southwest and northwest' (kata liba kai kata choron) — matches a harbor open to the west but sheltered from northerly storms. The decision was reasonable but fatally timed.
13. The gentle south wind (notou) seemed to confirm the decision to sail — it was exactly the wind needed to coast westward along Crete's south shore. The word doxantes ('thinking, supposing') signals that their confidence was premature.
14. The Euraquilo (Eurakulon in SBLGNT, a hybrid of Greek euros 'east wind' and Latin aquilo 'north wind') was a fierce northeaster — exactly the worst wind possible for a ship trying to coast westward along Crete's south shore. The word typhonikos ('typhoon-like, hurricane-force') indicates extreme violence. The storm hit suddenly, coming 'down from' the island — off the mountains of Crete.
15. The verb antophthalmein (literally 'to look against, to face into') is a vivid nautical metaphor — the ship could not 'look the wind in the eye.' The decision to 'give way' (epidontes, literally 'giving over') means they stopped trying to sail and let the storm drive them. This is the beginning of fourteen days of helpless drifting.
16. Cauda (modern Gavdos) is a small island about 23 miles south of Crete. Its brief windbreak gave the crew a chance to secure the ship's boat (skaphes) — the small dinghy towed behind or alongside. In rough seas, such boats became waterlogged and could damage the hull or capsize.
17. Undergirding (hypozyonnytes) involved passing ropes or cables under and around the hull to keep the planking from separating — a well-attested ancient emergency procedure called 'frapping.' The Syrtis was the feared sandbank region off the North African coast (modern Libya), a graveyard of ships. The lowered 'gear' (skeuos) was likely a sea anchor or drogue deployed to slow the drift.
18. Jettisoning cargo (ekbolen epoiounto) was a desperate measure that sacrificed valuable goods to reduce weight and raise the hull. For a grain ship, this meant dumping hundreds of tons of wheat — a significant financial loss and politically sensitive given the grain supply's importance to Rome. The parallel with Jonah 1:5 is striking.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jonah 1:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The 'ship's tackle' (ten skeuen tou ploiou) likely included spare rigging, heavy yards, and non-essential equipment. The phrase 'with their own hands' (autocheries) emphasizes the desperation — passengers and crew together were heaving equipment overboard, not just the professional sailors.
20. Without sun or stars, ancient navigation was impossible — they had no compass or instruments. The litotes 'no small storm' (cheimonos ouk oligou) is characteristic Lukan understatement for a catastrophic tempest. The loss of 'all hope' (elpis pasa) sets the stage for Paul's intervention — when human hope ends, divine assurance begins.
21. The 'long abstinence from food' (polles asitias) reflects both the difficulty of cooking in storm conditions and the seasickness and despair of the passengers. Paul's 'I told you so' (edei peitharchesantas moi) is not petulance but establishment of credibility for the prophetic message that follows.

22. Paul transitions from rebuke to encouragement. The promise is specific and extraordinary: every person will survive, though the ship will be lost. This corrects his earlier warning (v. 10), which predicted loss of life — divine revelation has updated the situation.
23. Paul identifies himself by his fundamental identity: he belongs to God and serves God. The angel's visit parallels the Lord's appearance to Paul in 23:11. Before a pagan crew, Paul speaks of 'the God' (tou theou) rather than using Jewish terminology — adapting his language to his audience while maintaining theological substance.
24. The divine dei ('you must') reaffirms the necessity established in 23:11. The phrase 'God has graciously given you' (kecharistai soi ho theos) uses the verb charizomai — Paul's fellow passengers are saved as a gift of grace on account of Paul's presence. The 276 people on the ship survive because of one prisoner's divine calling.
25. Paul's personal declaration — 'I have faith in God' (pisteuo gar to theo) — is the foundation of his confidence. His faith is not in favorable winds or skilled sailors but in the character of God who has spoken. The phrase 'exactly as I have been told' (katho hon tropon lelaletai moi) claims precise fulfillment.
26. Paul adds a specific prediction: the shipwreck will occur on an island. The divine dei ('we must') again indicates necessity. This prediction will prove accurate when they reach Malta (28:1).
27. Fourteen days of drifting places the ship approximately in the central Mediterranean. The 'Adriatic' (Adria) in ancient usage covered a much larger area than the modern Adriatic Sea — it included the waters between Crete, Italy, and North Africa. The sailors' detection of land — probably hearing breakers or noticing a change in wave patterns — demonstrates professional seamanship even in crisis.
28. Sounding (bolisantes, from bolis, 'a lead weight') involved dropping a weighted line to measure depth. Twenty fathoms (about 120 feet) decreasing to fifteen fathoms (about 90 feet) confirms they were approaching a shelving seabed — consistent with the approach to Malta from the east. This detail is so precise that it has been verified against modern charts of St. Paul's Bay, Malta.
29. Anchoring from the stern (ek prymnes) rather than the bow was a deliberate tactic — it kept the ship oriented toward the shore so they could beach it at dawn. Four anchors provided maximum holding power. The phrase 'prayed for daylight' (euchonto hemeran genesthai) captures the desperate waiting of that final night.
30. The sailors' attempt to abandon ship under a plausible pretext — laying bow anchors — is a realistic detail. Professional sailors knew their best chance of survival was in the small boat rather than on the disintegrating ship. But if the sailors escaped, the remaining passengers and soldiers would have no one capable of beaching the vessel.
31. Paul alerts the military, not the captain — recognizing where actual authority lies. His warning that survival requires the sailors' presence balances divine promise with human agency: God has promised to save everyone, but that promise works through the sailors' skill in beaching the ship.
32. The soldiers' drastic action — cutting away the only lifeboat — eliminates the escape route but also ensures the sailors must stay and help. It demonstrates the centurion's trust in Paul over the sailors. The loss of the boat means everyone's fate is bound together.
33. Paul takes practical leadership as dawn approaches. The 'fourteen days without food' likely means fourteen days of irregular, inadequate eating rather than absolute fasting — in extreme storm conditions, preparing and keeping down food would have been nearly impossible.
34. Paul's assurance that 'not a hair will perish from your head' (oudenos gar hymon thrix apo tes kephales apoleitai) quotes Jesus' words from Luke 21:18. The connection is deliberate — the same God who protects his people through tribulation in the end times protects them through a storm at sea. The word soterias ('preservation, salvation') functions on two levels: physical survival and deeper deliverance.
35. The sequence — taking bread, giving thanks, breaking it — echoes the eucharistic actions of Jesus at the Last Supper (Luke 22:19) and the Emmaus meal (Luke 24:30). Whether Paul intended a formal Eucharist or simply a Jewish meal blessing before a mixed pagan-Jewish audience is debated. Either way, Luke's language evokes eucharistic resonance for his readers. Paul thanks God publicly (enopion panton) before a crew that mostly worships other gods — a bold act of witness.
36. Paul's leadership has transformed the mood of the entire ship — from despair (v. 20) to courage (euthumoi, 'cheerful, encouraged'). The prisoner has become the moral authority.
37. The specific number — 276 (diakosiai hebdomekonta hex) — has the ring of an eyewitness detail. Large Alexandrian grain ships could carry several hundred passengers plus crew. Josephus reports traveling to Rome on a ship with 600 aboard (Life 15). The number also recalls the total who survived, fulfilling the angel's promise (v. 24).
38. The wheat (siton) — the primary cargo of the Alexandrian grain ship — is now dumped to lighten the vessel for beaching. This final jettisoning represents the total loss of the ship's commercial value. Having eaten, the passengers have strength for the ordeal ahead.
39. The sailors did not recognize the coast — indicating they were off normal shipping routes. The 'bay with a beach' (kolpon echonta aigialon) has been identified with St. Paul's Bay on Malta's northeast coast, which has a sandy beach within a bay, exactly matching this description.
40. The technical sequence is precise: (1) slip the anchor cables (faster than hauling them up); (2) free the steering oars (which had been lashed during the storm); (3) raise the foresail (artemon, a small sail at the bow) to provide steerage. Each action is the correct seamanship procedure for beaching a disabled vessel. The detail confirms the narrator's nautical competence.

41. A 'place where two seas met' (topon dithalassonon) describes a shoal or sandbar between two bodies of water — consistent with the small island (Salmonetta) in St. Paul's Bay where currents from two directions converge. The ship's bow wedged into the sand while the stern, exposed to the surf, began to disintegrate. The image is vivid and terrifying.
42. Under Roman military law, a soldier who lost a prisoner could face the prisoner's sentence, including death (cf. 12:19, 16:27). The soldiers' plan to execute the prisoners was a rational, self-preserving calculation — brutal but legally grounded. The prisoners' lives depended entirely on the centurion's next decision.
43. The centurion Julius's desire to save Paul (diasosai ton Paulon) overrides military protocol and saves all the prisoners' lives. Paul's influence has grown from that of a mere prisoner to a figure the centurion is willing to take career risks to protect. The evacuation is orderly: swimmers first, then the rest.
44. The final sentence — 'all were brought safely to land' (pantas diasothennai epi ten gen) — fulfills the angel's promise (v. 24) and Paul's assurance (v. 22). All 276 persons survive. The verb diasothennai ('were brought safely through') carries its full theological weight: God's deliverance is complete. The wreckage that kills the ship saves the passengers — a fitting image for the narrative theology of Acts, where destruction and preservation work together in the divine plan.

28

Summary: *Acts 28 is the final chapter of Luke's two-volume work, bringing Paul's journey to its destination: Rome. After the shipwreck, the survivors discover they have landed on Malta. Paul is bitten by a viper but suffers no harm, astonishing the locals. He heals the father of the island's chief official Publius and many other islanders. After three months, the company sails to Syracuse, Rhegium, and Puteoli, then travels overland to Rome, where Christians come out to meet Paul along the Appian Way. In Rome, Paul lives under house arrest for two years, freely receiving visitors and proclaiming the kingdom of God. His final recorded act is a meeting with Jewish leaders in which he quotes Isaiah 6:9-10 — the prophecy of hearing without understanding — and declares that the salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles. The book ends with Paul preaching 'without hindrance.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The viper episode (vv. 3-6) inverts the expected pattern: the Maltese first think Paul is a murderer receiving divine justice, then decide he is a god — both assessments are wrong, but Luke lets the scene speak for itself. The final scene in Rome (vv. 17-31) is the theological conclusion not just of Acts but of Luke's entire project. Paul's quotation of Isaiah 6:9-10 — the same passage Jesus quoted in Luke 8:10 and the same one used in all four Gospels — serves as the prophetic explanation for Israel's partial rejection of the gospel. The final word of Acts, akolutos ('without hindrance'), is programmatic: despite chains, trials, storms, and snakebite, nothing ultimately hinders the proclamation of the gospel.*

Translation Friction: *The ending of Acts has puzzled readers for centuries. Luke does not narrate the outcome of Paul's trial, his possible release, further travels, or death. Whether this indicates Luke wrote before the trial's conclusion, chose to end on a theological note rather than a biographical one, or had other reasons remains debated. We render the text as given without speculating about what follows. The Isaiah quotation (vv. 26-27) raises the perennial question of whether Israel's unbelief is divinely caused or divinely permitted — Paul's use of the passage emphasizes the prophetic pattern rather than resolving the theological tension.*

Connections: *The Malta events connect to Jesus' promise in Mark 16:18 (handling serpents and healing the sick). Paul's arrival in Rome fulfills the divine dei of 19:21, 23:11, and 27:24. The Isaiah 6 quotation creates an inclusio with Jesus' use of the same passage in Luke 8:10. The phrase 'the kingdom of God' in the final verse connects to the opening question of Acts 1:3, 6 — the book begins and ends with the kingdom. The declaration that salvation goes 'to the Gentiles' (v. 28) echoes the programmatic statement of 13:46-47 and fulfills the Isaianic servant's mission to be 'a light for the nations' (Isaiah 49:6, quoted in Acts 13:47).*

¹After we were brought safely through, we then learned that the island was called Malta. ²The native people showed us extraordinary kindness. They kindled a fire and welcomed us all, because it had begun to rain and it was cold. ³When Paul had gathered a bundle of sticks and put them on the fire, a viper came out because of the heat and fastened itself on his hand. ⁴When the native people saw the creature hanging from his hand, they said to one another, "No doubt this man is a murderer. Though he was saved from the sea, Justice has not allowed him to live." ⁵He, however, shook the creature off into

the fire and suffered no harm. ⁶They were expecting him to swell up or suddenly fall down dead. But after they waited a long time and saw nothing unusual happen to him, they changed their minds and said he was a god. ⁷Now in the vicinity of that place were lands belonging to the leading man of the island, named Publius. He welcomed us and hosted us hospitably for three days. ⁸It happened that the father of Publius was lying sick with fever and dysentery. Paul visited him, and after praying and laying his hands on him, he healed him. ⁹After this happened, the rest of the people on the island who had diseases also came and were healed. ¹⁰They also honored us with many gifts, and when we were ready to sail, they supplied us with everything we needed. ¹¹After three months we set sail in a ship of Alexandria that had wintered at the island, with the Twin Brothers as its figurehead. ¹²Putting in at Syracuse, we stayed there for three days. ¹³From there we made a circuit and arrived at Rhegium. After one day a south wind sprang up, and on the second day we came to Puteoli. ¹⁴There we found brothers and were invited to stay with them for seven days. And so we came to Rome. ¹⁵The brothers there, when they heard about us, came as far as the Forum of Appius and Three Taverns to meet us. On seeing them, Paul thanked God and took courage. ¹⁶When we came into Rome, Paul was allowed to stay by himself, with the soldier who was guarding him. ¹⁷After three days he called together the local leaders of the Jews. When they had gathered, he said to them, "Brothers, though I had done nothing against our people or the customs of our fathers, I was delivered as a prisoner from Jerusalem into the hands of the Romans. ¹⁸When they had examined me, they wanted to release me because there was no reason for the death penalty in my case. ¹⁹But since the Jews objected, I was compelled to appeal to Caesar — not that I had any charge to bring against my nation. ²⁰For this reason, then, I have asked to see you and speak with you, since it is because of the hope of Israel that I am wearing this chain." ²¹They said to him, "We have received no letters from Judea about you, and none of the brothers coming here has reported or spoken anything bad about you. ²²But we would like to hear from you what your views are, for regarding this sect, we know that everywhere it is spoken against." ²³When they had set a day for him, they came to him at his lodging in greater numbers. From morning until evening he explained to them, testifying to the kingdom of God and trying to persuade them about Jesus from both the Law of Moses and the Prophets. ²⁴Some were convinced by what he said, but others refused to believe. ²⁵Disagreeing among themselves, they began to leave. Paul made one final statement: "The Holy Spirit was right in saying to your fathers through Isaiah the prophet: ²⁶'Go to this people and say: You will indeed hear but never understand, and you will indeed see but never perceive. ²⁷For this people's heart has grown dull, and with their ears they can barely hear, and their eyes they have closed; lest they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears and understand with their heart and turn, and I would heal them.' ²⁸Therefore let it be known to you that this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles; they will listen." ³⁰He lived there two whole years at his own expense, and welcomed all who came to him, ³¹Indeed, preaching God's reign, and teaching those things which concern the Lord Jesus Christ, with all confidence, no man forbidding him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'we' narration confirms the author's continued presence. The word *diasothentes* ('brought safely through') echoes 27:44, maintaining the salvation vocabulary. Malta (Melite) was a significant island with a Phoenician heritage and Roman administration. The identification with modern Malta (rather than the Adriatic island Mljet) is supported by the nautical details of chapter 27.
2. The word *barbaroi* ('barbarians, native people') does not imply savagery — it simply means non-Greek speakers. Malta's population spoke a Punic dialect. The *litotes* 'no ordinary kindness' (*ou ten tuchousan philanthropian*) means 'extraordinary, exceptional.' The practical hospitality — fire, shelter from rain and cold — for 276 strangers is remarkable.
3. Paul participates in the practical work alongside everyone else — gathering firewood is not beneath him. The *echidna* ('viper') emerged from the bundled sticks, driven out by the fire's heat. The verb *kathepse* ('fastened on, seized') indicates the snake attached itself to his hand, whether by biting or coiling. No venomous vipers are found on Malta today, but this may reflect habitat changes over two millennia.
4. The Maltese interpret the snakebite through the lens of divine retribution: a man who survived the sea must be a murderer whom Dike (the Greek goddess of Justice) is pursuing. This folk theology — that misfortune indicates guilt — is the same logic Job's friends used and that Jesus challenged in Luke 13:1-5 and John 9:2-3.
5. Paul's calm reaction — simply shaking the viper into the fire — contrasts with the bystanders' alarm. The statement 'suffered no harm' (*epathen ouden kakon*) is emphatic. This recalls Jesus' promise to his disciples about authority over serpents (Luke 10:19) and the longer ending of Mark (16:18).

6. The crowd swings from one extreme ('murderer') to the other ('a god') — the same pattern seen at Lystra (14:11-18). Luke records both reactions without correction, letting the irony stand. The expected symptoms — swelling (pimprasthai) or sudden death — are medically accurate for a viper bite. Paul is neither a murderer nor a god, but the scene demonstrates divine protection.
7. The title 'leading man' (proto, literally 'first man') of the island has been confirmed by inscriptions from Malta using the Latin equivalent princeps. Publius is a Roman praenomen, suggesting Roman administration. His hospitality of 'three days' for a large group would have been a significant expense.
8. The medical description — 'fever and dysentery' (pyretois kai dysenterio) — uses precise clinical terminology that reflects Luke's medical vocabulary (cf. Colossians 4:14). The plural 'fevers' (pyretois) may indicate recurrent bouts, consistent with brucellosis (Malta fever), which was endemic on the island. Paul heals through prayer and laying on of hands — the same method used by Jesus and the apostles.
9. The healing ministry extends beyond Publius's father to the broader island population. Luke uses two different verbs: iasato ('healed,' v. 8, often used for miraculous healing) and etherapeuonto ('were treated/healed,' here, which could also encompass medical care). The imperfect tense suggests ongoing ministry during their three-month stay.
10. The Maltese respond with gratitude — 'many honors' (pollais timais) likely included both monetary gifts and provisions. The phrase 'everything we needed' (ta pros tas chreias) covers supplies for the remaining voyage to Italy. The shipwrecked travelers, who arrived with nothing, leave fully provisioned.
11. The three months spent on Malta covered the winter sailing closure (roughly November to February). The new ship is another Alexandrian grain vessel, identified by its figurehead: the Dioskouroi (Castor and Pollux), the twin sons of Zeus who were patron gods of sailors. The detail about the figurehead is a characteristically precise eyewitness observation.
12. Syracuse was the chief city of Sicily and a major port on the route from the eastern Mediterranean to Italy. The three-day stop likely awaited favorable winds for the crossing of the Strait of Messina.
13. The verb perielontes ('making a circuit, tacking') suggests they had to sail indirectly due to wind conditions. Rhegium (modern Reggio di Calabria) is at the toe of Italy. The south wind carried them swiftly up the coast to Puteoli (modern Pozzuoli), near Naples — the main port for the Alexandrian grain fleet and the gateway to Rome.
14. The existence of a Christian community at Puteoli — one of Italy's most important ports — confirms the early spread of Christianity through trade routes. The centurion's willingness to allow a seven-day stay (another indication of Paul's privileged treatment) suggests Julius was in no hurry. The sentence 'And so we came to Rome' (kai houtos eis ten Rhomen elthamen) is quietly monumental — the journey promised in 19:21 and guaranteed in 23:11 is now accomplished.
15. Two groups of Roman Christians come out to meet Paul at different points along the Via Appia (Appian Way): the Forum of Appius (about 43 miles from Rome) and Three Taverns (about 33 miles from Rome). This reception — going out to meet an arriving dignitary — was a formal act of honor called an apantesis. Paul's response — thanksgiving and courage (tharsos, the same word the Lord used in 23:11) — shows his emotional state after years of imprisonment and a harrowing voyage.
16. Paul's arrangement — private quarters with a single guard (custodia militaris) — was the lightest form of Roman custody. The SBLGNT omits the reference to the centurion delivering prisoners to the captain of the guard (found in the Textus Receptus). Paul's ability to receive visitors (vv. 17, 23, 30) confirms this was house arrest, not imprisonment.
17. Paul follows his consistent pattern: he approaches the Jewish community first (cf. 13:5, 14, 17:1-2, 18:4). The three-day interval allowed him to settle in. His address to the Roman Jewish leaders summarizes his case, maintaining that he committed no offense against the Jewish people or ancestral customs — the same defense given throughout Acts 22-26.
18. Paul summarizes the Roman officials' repeated verdict of innocence (cf. 23:29, 25:25, 26:31-32). The phrase 'no reason for the death penalty' (medemian aitian thanatou) is the consistent Roman finding throughout Paul's trials.
19. Paul emphasizes that his appeal to Caesar was defensive, not offensive — he is not counter-suing the Jewish community. The phrase 'not that I had any charge against my nation' (ouch hos tou ethnous mou echon ti kategorein) is a diplomatic gesture toward the Roman Jewish community.
20. Paul's climactic statement identifies his imprisonment with 'the hope of Israel' (tes elpidos tou Israel) — the same phrase used in 26:6-7. The singular 'chain' (halysin) refers to the chain binding him to his guard. Paul's point is theological: he is in chains not despite being a faithful Jew but because of Israel's own hope — the resurrection of the dead and the coming of the Messiah.
21. The Roman Jewish leaders claim ignorance of Paul's case — no letters from Jerusalem, no visiting Jews with negative reports. Whether this is entirely accurate or diplomatically cautious is unclear. The winter sailing closure during which Paul traveled may have prevented advance communication.
22. The Jewish leaders' response is notable: they want to hear Paul's views directly. Their characterization of Christianity as a 'sect' (haireseos) that is 'everywhere spoken against' (pantachou antilegetai) reflects the mixed reception the early church received. The language is neutral to skeptical — they are open to hearing but aware of the controversy.
23. This extended session — 'from morning until evening' (apo proi heos hesperas) — demonstrates the depth and seriousness of the engagement. Paul's method is scriptural persuasion: he argues from the Law and the Prophets that Jesus is the fulfillment of Israel's hope. The combination of 'the

kingdom of God' and 'Jesus' summarizes the content of all apostolic preaching in Acts.

- 24.** The response is divided — exactly the pattern that has characterized Jewish responses to the gospel throughout Acts. Some are 'convinced' (epeithonto); others 'refused to believe' (epistoun). This divided response triggers Paul's final prophetic declaration.
- 25.** The word asymphonoi ('disagreeing, not in harmony') describes the divided state in which the group departs. Paul's 'one word' (hrema hen) is actually an extended quotation of Isaiah 6:9-10 — the prophetic passage most frequently cited in the New Testament to explain Israel's unbelief (cf. Matthew 13:14-15, Mark 4:12, Luke 8:10, John 12:40, Romans 11:8).
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 6:9-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** Paul quotes Isaiah 6:9-10 from the Septuagint. The passage is from Isaiah's commissioning — God tells the prophet that his message will not be received. The Hebrew intensifying construction ('hearing you will hear') emphasizes the completeness of the failure to comprehend. Luke places this quotation at the very end of his two-volume work, giving it climactic theological significance.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 6:9-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 27.** The threefold diagnosis — dull heart, heavy ears, closed eyes — describes a progressive hardening against God's message. The sequence reverses in the potential cure: seeing, hearing, understanding, turning. The verb iasomi ('I would heal') holds out the possibility of restoration — the door is not absolutely shut. In Isaiah's original context, this was a temporary condition, not a permanent sentence.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 6:9-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** Paul's declaration — 'this salvation of God has been sent to the Gentiles' (tois ethnesin apostale touto to soterion tou theou) — echoes his earlier turning points at Antioch (13:46) and Corinth (18:6). The phrase 'they will listen' (autoi kai akousontai) is both a prediction and a contrast with Israel's failure to hear (v. 27). This is the theological climax of Acts: the gospel, offered first to Israel, now goes freely to the nations.
- 29.** This verse is not present in the SBLGNT critical text. It appears in the Textus Receptus and thus in the KJV, but the earliest and best manuscripts lack it. We follow the critical text and note the verse's absence.
- 30.** The 'two whole years' (dietian holon) specifies Paul's house arrest. The phrase 'at his own expense' (en idio misthomati) indicates Paul rented his quarters — possibly funded by the churches or by his own work. The open-door policy — 'welcoming all who came' (apedecheto pantas) — shows unrestricted access despite his custody.
- 31.** The final verse of Acts is its theological summary. Paul's message has two components — 'the kingdom of God' and 'the Lord Jesus Christ' — encompassing the entire apostolic proclamation. The phrase 'with all boldness' (meta pases parresias) echoes the prayer of Acts 4:29. The final word, akolytos ('without hindrance, unhindered'), is the last word Luke writes. Despite imprisonment, opposition, storms, and snakebite, nothing stops the advance of the gospel. The word is adverbial, modifying everything — Paul preaches, teaches, and lives unhindered. It is a quietly triumphant ending: the prisoner is free, and the Word of God is unchained.

Romans

1

Summary: *Romans 1 opens with Paul's self-introduction as an apostle set apart for the gospel, expressing his longing to visit the Roman believers. He then states the letter's thesis: the gospel is God's power for salvation to everyone who believes, because in it God's righteousness is revealed from faith to faith (1:16-17). The chapter then turns to the universal human problem — God's wrath is revealed against all ungodliness and unrighteousness, because what can be known about God is evident from creation, yet humanity suppressed this truth, exchanged God's glory for idols, and was given over to degrading passions and a debased mind.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 16-17 function as the thesis statement for the entire letter and arguably for Pauline theology as a whole. The phrase 'from faith to faith' (ek pisteos eis pistin) has generated centuries of interpretation. Paul's argument in 1:18-32 is not merely moral condemnation but a carefully structured case that all humanity stands under divine judgment — a setup for the surprising turn in chapter 2 where Paul indicts the moral judge as well. The vice list in verses 29-31 follows Greco-Roman rhetorical conventions but is grounded in the theological logic of idolatry producing moral disorder.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek dikaiosyne theou ('righteousness of God') in verse 17 is notoriously complex — it can mean God's own righteousness, the righteousness God gives, or the righteousness that comes from God. We render it as 'the righteousness of God' and note the ambiguity. Verses 26-27 address same-sex relations in language that has been intensely debated; we render the Greek as given without softening or amplifying. The phrase 'para physin' ('contrary to nature') reflects Paul's first-century understanding of the created order.*

Connections: *The Habakkuk 2:4 quotation in verse 17 ('the righteous shall live by faith') is foundational to Reformation theology and connects to Galatians 3:11 and Hebrews 10:38. The creation theology of 1:19-20 echoes Psalm 19 and Wisdom of Solomon 13. The pattern of 'God gave them over' (paredoken, vv. 24, 26, 28) structures the wrath section and will be contrasted with God 'giving over' his Son in 8:32.*

¹Paul, a servant of Christ Jesus, called as an apostle, set apart for the gospel of God — ²(Which he had promised afore by his God's spokespersons in the sacred scriptures.). ³Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was appointed of the seed of David in keeping with to the flesh;. ⁴Declared to be the Descendant of God with authority, according to the inner life of holiness, by the resurrection from the no longer alive:. ⁵By whom we have received grace and apostleship, for obedience to

the faith in the midst of all nations, for his name:.⁶In the midst of whom are you also the called of Jesus Christ:.⁷To all those in Rome who are loved by God and called as saints: Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ.⁸ First, I thank my God through Jesus Christ for all of you, because your faith is proclaimed throughout the whole world.⁹For God, whom I serve in my spirit in the gospel of his Son, is my witness that without ceasing I mention you¹⁰I constantly pray, asking that somehow, by God's will, I may finally succeed in coming to visit you.¹¹For I long to see you, so that I may share with you some spiritual gift to strengthen you —¹²What I mean is that we will encourage each other through the faith we share — both yours and mine.¹³I do not want you to be unaware, brothers and sisters, that I often planned to come to you — but have been prevented until now — so that I might have some fruit among you as well, just as among the rest of the nations.¹⁴I am under obligation both to Greeks and to non-Greeks, both to the wise and to the foolish.¹⁵So, for my part, I am eager to proclaim the gospel to you who are in Rome as well.¹⁶For I am not ashamed of the gospel, for it is the power of God for salvation to everyone who believes — to the Jew first and also to the Greek.¹⁷For in it the righteousness of God is revealed from faith to faith, as it is written: "The righteous one will live by faith."¹⁸For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of people who suppress the truth by their unrighteousness,¹⁹On account of the fact that that which may be known of God is manifest in them. For God has shewed it to them.²⁰For his invisible attributes — his eternal power and divine nature — have been clearly seen since the creation of the world, being understood through what has been made, so that they are without excuse.²¹For although they knew God, they did not honor him as God or give him thanks, but became futile in their thinking, and their senseless hearts were darkened.²²Claiming to be wise, they became fools,²³Changed the splendor of the uncorruptible God into an image appointed like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping matters.²⁴Therefore God gave them over in the desires of their hearts to impurity, so that their bodies would be dishonored among them.²⁵They exchanged the truth about God for a lie, and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.²⁶For this reason God gave them over to dishonorable passions. For their females exchanged natural sexual relations for those contrary to nature,²⁷Indeed, likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another. Men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error which was meet.²⁸And since they did not see fit to acknowledge God, God gave them over to a debased mind, to do what is not proper —²⁹Being overflowing with all unrighteousness, sexual immorality, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness. Full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity. Whisperers,.³⁰Backbiters, haters of God, spiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil matters, rebellious to parents,.³¹Without discernment, covenantbreakers, without normal affection, relentless, unmerciful:.³²Although they know God's righteous decree — that those who practice such things deserve death — they not only do them but also approve of those who practice them.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *doulos* means 'slave' or 'bondservant,' not merely 'servant.' It carries connotations of total ownership and devotion. We render 'servant' to maintain the dignity of the self-designation while noting the stronger Greek sense. The SBLGNT reads 'Christ Jesus' (*Christou Iesou*) rather than the KJV's 'Jesus Christ' — the order varies in manuscripts.
2. The verb *proepengeilato* ('promised beforehand') is a compound emphasizing prior commitment. Paul establishes from the outset that the gospel is not an innovation but the fulfillment of Israel's scriptural hope. The phrase 'holy Scriptures' (*graphais hagiáis*) refers to what Christians call the Old Testament.
3. The phrase *kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') limits the Davidic descent to the human, physical dimension — setting up the contrast with *kata pneuma* ('according to the Spirit') in verse 4. The Greek *genomenou* ('having become, born') from *ginomai* emphasizes the incarnation: the Son entered into human lineage.
4. The verb *horisthentos* ('declared, appointed, designated') does not mean Jesus became the Son at the resurrection but that the resurrection publicly demonstrated and vindicated his identity. The phrase *pneuma hagiosynes* ('Spirit of holiness') is unusual — it may be a Semitic idiom for the Holy Spirit or may refer to Christ's own spirit of holiness. We capitalize 'Spirit' as the most likely referent is the Holy Spirit's role in resurrection.

5. The phrase *hypakoēn pisteōs* ('obedience of faith') is programmatic for Romans and its meaning is debated — it could mean 'the obedience that is faith,' 'the obedience that comes from faith,' or 'obedience to the faith.' The genitive is likely expegetical: faith itself is the obedience Paul calls for. The same phrase bookends the letter (cf. 16:26).
5. The word *ethnesin* ('nations') is the standard Greek term that can mean 'Gentiles' or 'nations.' Paul's apostolic commission is specifically to non-Jewish peoples.
6. The phrase *klētoi Iēsou Christou* ('called of Jesus Christ') can be parsed as 'called by Jesus Christ' (genitive of agent) or 'called to belong to Jesus Christ' (possessive genitive). We render the possessive sense, which fits the context of believers' identity. The Roman Christians are included among the nations to whom Paul has been sent.
7. Paul's greeting combines the standard Greek epistolary greeting (*charis*, 'grace') with the Hebrew *shalom* greeting (*eirēnē*, 'peace'). The word *hagiois* ('saints, holy ones') does not mean morally perfected people but those set apart by God's call — corresponding to the Hebrew *qadosh*. Paul places God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ on the same level as the joint source of grace and peace.
8. The verb *katangelletai* ('is proclaimed, announced') is stronger than the KJV's 'spoken of' — it implies active, deliberate proclamation. 'The whole world' (*holō tō kosmō*) is hyperbolic, referring to the Roman Empire and the network of early Christian communities, but it testifies to Rome's strategic importance.
9. Paul invokes God as witness — a solemn oath formula rooted in Old Testament covenant practice. The verb *latreuō* ('I serve, worship') is cultic language, used in the Septuagint for priestly and temple service. Paul redefines worship: his liturgical service is gospel proclamation.
10. The verb *euodōthēsomai* ('I may be prospered, succeed on my journey') contains the root *hodos* ('road, way'). Paul's desire to visit Rome has been repeatedly frustrated (cf. 15:22), and he subordinates his travel plans to God's will — a significant qualifier given that his actual arrival in Rome will come as a prisoner (Acts 28).
11. The word *charisma* ('gift of grace, spiritual gift') shares the root of *charis* ('grace'). Paul immediately qualifies this somewhat presumptuous statement in verse 12, showing pastoral sensitivity toward a church he did not found.
12. Paul corrects the potential impression of verse 11 that he would arrive as a superior dispensing gifts. The compound verb *symparaklēthēnai* ('to be encouraged together') emphasizes mutuality. Paul acknowledges that he, too, will benefit from the Roman believers' faith.
13. The formula *ou thelō hymas agnoein* ('I do not want you to be unaware') is a standard Pauline disclosure formula (cf. 11:25; 1 Corinthians 10:1; 12:1). We render *adelphoi* as 'brothers and sisters' since the Greek term functioned as an inclusive address for the whole community. Paul does not specify what prevented him — the passive *ekōlythēn* ('I was prevented') may imply divine hindrance or practical obstacles.
14. The Greek-barbarian distinction was the fundamental cultural divide of the ancient world: *Hellēnes* were Greek-speakers, *barbaroi* were everyone else (the term originated as onomatopoeia for incomprehensible speech — 'bar-bar'). We render *barbarois* as 'non-Greeks' to avoid the modern connotation of 'barbaric.' Paul's obligation crosses every cultural boundary.
15. The adjective *prothymon* ('eager, ready, willing') conveys personal enthusiasm. The verb *euangelisasthai* ('to proclaim good news') shares the root of *euangelion* ('gospel'). Paul's eagerness to preach in Rome — the imperial capital — reflects the universal scope of his commission.
16. The SBLGNT omits 'of Christ' (*tou Christou*) after 'gospel,' which appears in later manuscripts reflected in the KJV. We follow the critical text. The verb *epaischynomai* ('I am ashamed') carries social weight — in the honor-shame culture of Rome, the gospel of a crucified Jew would invite ridicule. Paul's 'not ashamed' is an understatement (*litotes*) meaning 'I am proud of.'
16. The phrase *Ioudaiō te prōton kai Hellēni* ('to the Jew first and also to the Greek') establishes the salvation-historical priority of Israel that Paul will defend in chapters 9–11, while insisting on the universality of the gospel.
17. The phrase *dikaiosynē theou* ('righteousness of God') is the theological center of Romans. The genitive *theou* can be subjective ('God's own righteousness'), objective ('the righteousness that comes from God'), or both simultaneously. Luther's breakthrough reading — that this is a righteousness God gives, not demands — launched the Reformation.
17. The quotation from Habakkuk 2:4 can be parsed two ways: 'the righteous-by-faith will live' or 'the righteous will live by faith.' Paul likely intends both senses. The Hebrew of Habakkuk reads 'by his faithfulness' (*be'emunato*), using *emunah*.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Habakkuk 2:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The parallel structure with verse 17 is deliberate: God's righteousness is 'revealed' (*apokalyptetai*) in the gospel (v. 17), and God's wrath is 'revealed' (*apokalyptetai*) against sin (v. 18). Both are present realities, not merely future events. The verb *katechontōn* means 'to hold down, suppress, restrain' — humanity actively suppresses truth, not merely ignores it. The word *adikian* ('unrighteousness') is the direct negation of *dikaiosynē* ('righteousness').
19. The phrase *gnōston tou theou* ('what is knowable of God') implies a limited, partial knowledge — not everything about God, but enough to leave humanity without excuse (v. 20). The repetition of *phaneron/ephanerōsen* ('plain/made plain') emphasizes that this knowledge is not hidden but actively disclosed by God.

20. Paul employs a deliberate paradox: the 'invisible' (aorata) attributes are 'clearly seen' (kathoratai). The knowledge of God comes through rational reflection on creation (noumena, 'being understood by the mind'), not through mystical experience. The word theiotēs ('divine nature, divinity') differs from theotēs ('deity, godhead') used in Colossians 2:9 — theiotēs refers to divine qualities perceivable in creation, not the full essence of God. The result is that humanity is anapologētos ('without defense, without excuse').
21. The verb edoxasan ('glorified, honored') connects to the glory exchange in verse 23. The failure is twofold: refusing to honor God and refusing to give thanks. The verb emataiōthēsan ('became futile, empty') echoes the Septuagint's description of idol worship (cf. Jeremiah 2:5; 2 Kings 17:15). The 'heart' (kardia) in biblical usage is the center of thought and will, not primarily emotion.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 2:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 17:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The verb emōranthēsan ('became foolish, were made foolish') is the root of the English 'moron.' The irony is sharp: the pursuit of wisdom apart from acknowledging God produces its opposite. This echoes the wisdom tradition of Proverbs 1:7 ('The fear of the LORD is the beginning of knowledge; fools despise wisdom and instruction').
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 1:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The verb ēllaxan ('exchanged') introduces the 'exchange' motif that structures 1:18-32: humanity exchanged God's glory (v. 23), exchanged the truth for a lie (v. 25), and exchanged natural relations (v. 26). The descending list — humans, birds, animals, reptiles — mirrors the creation order of Genesis 1 in reverse, depicting idolatry as de-creation. The language echoes Psalm 106:20 and Jeremiah 2:11 on Israel's own idol worship.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 106:20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 2:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The verb paredōken ('gave over, handed over') is the first of three occurrences (vv. 24, 26, 28) that structure this section. God's wrath is expressed not by active punishment but by allowing human choices to reach their natural consequences — a judicial handing over to the trajectory already chosen. The same verb is used of Christ being 'handed over' to death (4:25; 8:32), creating a profound theological contrast.
25. The second 'exchange' (metēllaxan): truth for falsehood. The Greek para ton ktisanta ('rather than the Creator') means 'instead of,' not merely 'more than' as the KJV suggests. This is replacement, not comparison. Paul breaks into a doxology ('who is blessed forever, Amen') — even in describing idolatry, he cannot mention the Creator without praising him.
26. The second 'God gave them over' (paredōken). The third 'exchange' (metēllaxan) now applies to sexual practice. The phrase para physin ('contrary to nature') reflects Paul's understanding of the created order, drawing on both Jewish creation theology and Greco-Roman natural law concepts. The word thēleiai ('females') rather than gynaikes ('women') uses biological rather than social terminology, as does arsenes ('males') in verse 27.
27. The verb exekauthēsan ('were inflamed, burned') denotes intense, consuming desire. The word aschēmosynēn ('shameless acts, indecency') is used in the Septuagint of Leviticus 18:22 and 20:13 for sexual prohibitions. The phrase antimisthian ('recompense, due penalty') suggests that the disordered desire is itself part of the judgment — the consequence is built into the act. Paul presents same-sex relations as symptomatic of the broader exchange of Creator for creature.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 18:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The third 'God gave them over' (paredōken). Paul employs a wordplay: they did not edokimasan ('approve, consider worthy') to acknowledge God, so God gave them over to an adokimon ('unapproved, debased, failing the test') mind. The same root (dokimos, 'tested, approved') appears in both, creating an ironic correspondence between human rejection and divine response.
29. The vice list follows Greco-Roman rhetorical convention but is grounded in Paul's theological argument: the debased mind (v. 28) produces debased behavior. The Greek contains a wordplay between phthonou ('envy') and phonou ('murder') — the words differ by one letter, suggesting that envy and violence are closely linked. The SBLGNT does not include porneia ('fornication') which appears in some manuscripts reflected in the KJV.
30. The word theostygeis ('God-haters') can also be rendered 'hateful to God' (passive rather than active), but the active sense fits Paul's argument better — those who refuse to acknowledge God develop active hostility toward him. The list moves from social vices to spiritual rebellion to family breakdown, suggesting that the corruption permeates every sphere.
31. The four alpha-privative adjectives (a- prefix negating each quality) create a staccato rhetorical effect: asyne-tous, asyn-the-tous, a-storgous, an-eleēmonas. Each describes the absence of a basic human quality. Asynthetous ('faithless, covenant-breaking') is particularly significant in a letter about covenant faithfulness. Astorgous ('without natural affection') denotes the absence of storge, the instinctive family love.

32. The climax of the argument: the deepest level of depravity is not merely doing evil but celebrating it in others. The word *dikaiōma* ('righteous decree, just requirement') shows that even in their rebellion, people retain knowledge of God's moral standard. Paul uses two different verbs for 'do' — *prassō* (habitual practice) and *poieō* (performing acts) — though the distinction may be stylistic rather than semantic here.

2

Summary: *Romans 2 turns the argument against the moral judge — the one who condemns the vices listed in chapter 1 while practicing the same things. Paul argues that God's judgment is impartial and based on deeds, not ethnic identity or possession of the law. He addresses the Jewish interlocutor directly, arguing that circumcision and Torah possession without obedience are worthless, while uncircumcised Gentiles who keep the law's requirements will condemn those who have the written code but violate it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's rhetorical strategy is devastating: having described Gentile sinfulness in chapter 1, he now springs a trap on the Jewish reader who nodded along. The diatribe style — addressing an imaginary interlocutor — was a standard Stoic philosophical technique that Paul adapts for theological argument. The distinction between 'hearers of the law' and 'doers of the law' (v. 13) anticipates James 1:22-25. Paul's concept of the law 'written on hearts' (v. 15) echoes Jeremiah 31:33.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 2:6-11 (judgment by works) and 3:20-28 (justification by faith apart from works) is one of the most debated tensions in Pauline theology. We render both passages faithfully without harmonizing. The identity of the Gentiles who 'do by nature the things of the law' (v. 14) is disputed — they may be moral pagans, Gentile Christians, or a hypothetical case.*

Connections: *The 'day of wrath' (v. 5) connects to the Old Testament Day of the LORD tradition (Amos 5:18; Zephaniah 1:15). The law written on hearts (v. 15) echoes Jeremiah 31:33. Paul's argument about true circumcision (vv. 28-29) develops Deuteronomy 30:6 and Jeremiah 4:4. The impartiality of God (v. 11) reflects Deuteronomy 10:17.*

¹Therefore you have no excuse, every one of you who passes judgment. For in passing judgment on another you condemn yourself, because you who judge practice the very same things. ²We know that God's judgment against those who practice such things is based on truth. ³Do you suppose, you who judge those who practice such things yet do them yourself, that you will escape God's judgment? ⁴Or do you despise the riches of his kindness, restraint, and patience, not recognizing that God's kindness is meant to lead you to repentance? ⁵But because of your hard and unrepentant heart, you are storing up wrath for yourself on the day of wrath when God's righteous judgment will be revealed, ⁶He will repay each person according to their works: ⁷To those who persist in doing good and seek glory, honor, and immortality, he will give eternal life. ⁸However, to them that are argumentative, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath,. ⁹There will be affliction and distress for every human being who does evil — the Jew first and also the Greek, ¹⁰However, splendor, honour, and wholeness, to every person that worketh good, to the Jew first, and also to the Gentile:. ¹¹For God shows no partiality. ¹²For all who have sinned without the law will also perish without the law, and all who have sinned under the law will be judged by the law. ¹³For it is not the hearers of the law who are righteous before God, but the doers of the law who will be justified. ¹⁴For when Gentiles who do not have the law do by nature what the law requires, they are a law to themselves even though they do not have the law, ¹⁵They show that the work of the law is written on their hearts, while their conscience also bears witness and their conflicting thoughts accuse or even defend them, ¹⁶In the day when God will pass judgment on the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel. ¹⁷But if you call yourself a Jew and rely on the law and boast in God, ¹⁸You know his will. Because you have been taught from the law, you can recognize what really matters. ¹⁹You are convinced that you are a guide for the blind and a light for those in darkness, ²⁰An instructor of the foolish, a teacher of babes, which hast the form of knowledge and of the what is genuine in the instruction of Moses. ²¹You as a result which teachest another, teachest you not thyself? you that preachest a man should not steal, dost you steal? ²²You who say not to commit adultery, do you commit adultery? You who abhor idols, do you rob temples? ²³You who boast in the law, do you dishonor God by breaking the law? ²⁴For "the name of God is blasphemed among the nations because of you," as it is written. ²⁵Circumcision

has value if you practice the law, but if you are a law-breaker, your circumcision has become uncircumcision. ²⁶So if an uncircumcised man keeps the requirements of the law, will not his uncircumcision be regarded as circumcision? ²⁷Then the one who is physically uncircumcised but keeps the law will condemn you who have the written code and circumcision but break the law. ²⁸For a person is not a Jew who is one only outwardly, nor is circumcision something outward in the flesh. ²⁹Rather, a person is a Jew who is one inwardly, and circumcision is of the heart, by the Spirit, not by the written code. Such a person's praise comes not from people but from God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *anapologētos* ('without excuse, without defense') deliberately echoes 1:20, where it described pagan idolaters. Now the same verdict falls on the moral judge. Paul springs his rhetorical trap — the reader who agreed with chapter 1's condemnation now stands self-condemned. The shift to second person singular ('you') marks the transition to diatribe style.
2. The phrase *kata alētheian* ('according to truth') means God judges based on reality, not appearances — a principle that will undermine any claim to exemption based on external privilege. The first-person plural 'we know' (*oidamen*) appeals to common ground between Paul and his audience.
3. The verb *logizē* ('do you reckon, suppose, calculate') is a key Pauline term that will reappear throughout Romans in contexts of reckoning righteousness (4:3-6). Here it exposes faulty moral calculation — the judge imagines himself exempt from the standard he applies to others.
4. Three attributes of God are listed: *chrēstotēs* ('kindness, goodness'), *anochēs* ('restraint, forbearance, holding back'), and *makrothymias* ('patience, long-suffering'). Together they describe God's generous delay of judgment — which the self-righteous person mistakes for approval. The word *metanoian* ('repentance') corresponds to the Hebrew *teshuvah* — a turning back, a fundamental reorientation.
5. The verb *thēsaurizeis* ('you are storing up, treasuring') creates a bitter irony — instead of treasuring up goodness, the impenitent person stockpiles wrath. The compound *dikaiokrisia* ('righteous judgment') appears only here in the New Testament, combining *dikaioi* ('righteous') with *krisis* ('judgment'). The 'day of wrath' draws on the Old Testament yom YHWH tradition.
6. Paul quotes Psalm 62:12 (LXX 61:13) and Proverbs 24:12. The principle of judgment according to works appears throughout Scripture and is affirmed by Jesus (Matthew 16:27). This does not contradict justification by faith — Paul is establishing the standard of divine judgment to which all are accountable, preparing the ground for the gospel's solution in chapter 3.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 62:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 24:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The word *hypomonē* ('perseverance, patient endurance') denotes sustained, tested faithfulness rather than a single act. The triad of *doxa* ('glory'), *timē* ('honor'), and *aphtharsia* ('immortality, imperishability') describes the eschatological reward. The phrase *zōen aiōnion* ('eternal life') corresponds to the Hebrew concept of *olam* — life of the age to come.
8. The word *eritheias* ('selfish ambition, self-seeking') originally referred to work done for hire and came to mean partisan, self-interested behavior. The contrast between obeying truth and obeying unrighteousness personifies both as competing masters demanding allegiance.
9. The word pair *thlipsis* ('affliction, tribulation') and *stenochōria* ('distress, anguish' — literally 'narrow space') describes the crushing consequences of judgment. The phrase 'the Jew first' now applies to judgment, not just salvation (cf. 1:16) — priority in receiving God's revelation means priority in accountability.
10. The triad now shifts: 'immortality' (v. 7) is replaced by *eirēnē* ('peace'), corresponding to the Hebrew *shalom* — wholeness, well-being, and restored relationship with God. The parallel structure of verses 9-10 reinforces the impartiality principle: the same standard applies to both Jew and Greek.
11. The word *prosōpolēmpsia* ('partiality' — literally 'receiving the face') is a Septuagint coinage translating the Hebrew *nasa panim* ('to lift the face'), which meant to show favoritism. This principle, grounded in Deuteronomy 10:17, is the theological foundation for Paul's argument: if God is impartial, then ethnic identity alone cannot secure acquittal.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 10:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. Paul distinguishes two groups: those *anomōs* ('without law' — Gentiles who lack Torah) and those *en nomō* ('in/under the law' — Jews who possess Torah). Neither group's relationship to Torah determines the outcome; both are judged by the same God. The verb *apolountai* ('will perish') describes eschatological destruction, while *krithēsontai* ('will be judged') implies a judicial process.
13. The distinction between *akroatai* ('hearers') and *poiētai* ('doers') anticipates James 1:22-25. In the synagogue, the Torah was read aloud, making 'hearing the law' a concrete weekly experience. Paul's point is that hearing without doing confers no advantage. The future tense *dikaiōthēsontai* ('will be justified') points to the final judgment.

14. The identity of these Gentiles is debated: they may be (1) moral pagans who instinctively follow some moral law, (2) Gentile Christians in whom the Spirit produces obedience, or (3) a hypothetical case illustrating a principle. The phrase *physei* ('by nature') complicates each reading differently. We render the Greek without resolving the ambiguity. The phrase 'a law to themselves' (*heautois eisin nomos*) does not mean 'lawless' but 'their own law' — they demonstrate the law's demands through their conduct.
15. The phrase 'the work of the law written on their hearts' echoes Jeremiah 31:33, though Paul uses *ergon* ('work,' singular) rather than *nomos* ('law'). This may mean the law's requirement or the deed the law demands. The word *syneidēsis* ('conscience') was a Stoic philosophical concept that Paul adopts — an internal witness that evaluates moral conduct. The imagery of internal accusation and defense anticipates the courtroom scene of the final judgment.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:33 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The phrase *ta krypta tōn anthrōpōn* ('the secrets of people') indicates that final judgment penetrates beyond external behavior to internal reality — the hidden thoughts and motives. The phrase *kata to euangelion mou* ('according to my gospel') is striking: Paul's gospel includes the message of coming judgment, not only the offer of grace. Christ is presented as the agent of divine judgment.
17. Paul now addresses the Jewish interlocutor directly. The SBLGNT reads *ei de* ('but if') rather than *ide* ('behold') found in some manuscripts and the KJV. The verb *epanapaue* ('rest upon, rely on') suggests confidence in Torah possession as a source of security. The verb *kauchaomai* ('boast') is key in Romans — Paul will argue that boasting is excluded by the gospel (3:27) and redirected toward God (5:2, 11).
18. The verb *dokimazeis* ('approve, test, discern') means to evaluate and recognize genuine value. The word *katēchoumenos* ('being instructed, catechized') gives us the English 'catechism.' Paul acknowledges real advantages of Torah education — knowledge of God's will and moral discernment — but these become liabilities when not matched by practice.
19. The self-descriptions in verses 19-20 draw on Israel's vocation as 'a light to the nations' (Isaiah 42:6; 49:6). The irony builds: each claim is legitimate as a calling but presumptuous as a boast when the claimant fails to live up to it.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 42:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The word *morphōsin* ('embodiment, outward form, formulation') can mean either 'the true form' or 'mere outward form.' In this context, Paul likely means the Torah genuinely embodies knowledge and truth — the problem is not with the law but with those who possess it without obeying it. The word *nēpiōn* ('infants, immature ones') describes Gentiles from the perspective of Jewish self-understanding.
21. The series of rhetorical questions (vv. 21-23) mirrors the style of Hellenistic moral philosophers who exposed hypocrisy. The shift from conditional clauses (vv. 17-20) to pointed questions increases the pressure on the interlocutor. Paul's charges may be general or may reflect specific accusations known to him about the Roman Jewish community.
22. The verb *hierosyleis* ('rob temples, commit sacrilege') is specific: it may refer to Jews profiting from the sale of confiscated pagan temple goods, or more broadly to any compromise with the idolatrous economic system. The charge of temple robbery appears in Acts 19:37. The irony is sharp — those who claim to abhor idolatry may still profit from idolatrous systems.
23. The verb *atimazeis* ('dishonor') reverses the intended effect of Torah observance. The law was meant to bring honor to God among the nations; its violation by those who claim it produces the opposite — the desecration of God's name, as the following quotation confirms.
24. Paul quotes Isaiah 52:5 (LXX), though the original context refers to the nations blaspheming God because of Israel's suffering in exile, not because of Israel's sin. Paul applies it to the present situation where Jewish moral failure gives Gentiles reason to disrespect the God of Israel — a different but related form of desecration of the divine name (*chilul hashem*).
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 52:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Paul does not dismiss circumcision (he will affirm its value in 3:1-2) but relativizes it. The shocking claim is that covenant identity can be functionally reversed by disobedience: a circumcised law-breaker becomes, in God's reckoning, as if uncircumcised. This would be deeply provocative to any Jewish audience.
26. The verb *logisthēsetai* ('will be regarded, reckoned') is the same verb Paul will use for Abraham being 'reckoned righteous' (4:3). God's reckoning overrides external markers. The word *dikaiōmata* ('righteous requirements, ordinances') refers to the law's just demands.
27. The phrase *ek physeōs* ('by nature, physically') contrasts with the spiritual reality Paul will describe in verses 28-29. The word *grammatos* ('letter, written code') refers to the written Torah and introduces the letter-Spirit contrast Paul will develop further in 2 Corinthians 3:6 and Romans 7:6.
28. Paul redefines Jewish identity in terms of inner reality rather than external markers. The phrase *en tō phanerō* ('in the open, outwardly, visibly') contrasts with *en tō kryptō* ('in secret, inwardly') in verse 29. This is not a rejection of Jewish identity but a deepening of it — Paul argues for what authentic covenant membership means.
29. The phrase *peritomē kardias* ('circumcision of the heart') draws on Deuteronomy 10:16 and 30:6, where Moses calls Israel to circumcise their hearts. Paul identifies the Spirit (*pneumati*) as the agent of this inner transformation, contrasting it with *grammati* ('the written code'). The word *epainos* ('praise') contains a wordplay: the name 'Judah' (*Yehudah*) derives from the Hebrew root meaning 'praise' (Genesis 29:35). A true 'Judah' — a true praiser — receives praise from God, not from human recognition.

29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 10:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 29:35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

3

Summary: *Romans 3 begins by addressing the implied objection: if inner reality matters more than external markers, what advantage does the Jew have? Paul affirms Israel's advantage — they were entrusted with God's oracles — but insists that Jewish unfaithfulness does not nullify God's faithfulness. He then marshals a chain of Old Testament quotations to prove that all people, Jew and Gentile alike, are under sin. The chapter climaxes in 3:21-26, where Paul declares that God's righteousness has now been revealed apart from the law — through faith in Jesus Christ, for all who believe. God put Christ forward as a propitiation, demonstrating his righteousness by passing over former sins, so that he is both just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 21-26 are widely regarded as the theological center of Romans and one of the densest passages in the entire New Testament. Nearly every word carries heavy theological freight. The word hilastērion (v. 25) is the same word used in the Septuagint for the kapporet — the mercy seat atop the Ark of the Covenant where atonement was made on Yom Kippur. Paul presents Christ as the ultimate mercy seat, the place where God's wrath and mercy meet. The argument that 'all have sinned' (v. 23) is the universal premise that makes the universal offer of grace coherent.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase pistis Iēsou Christou (v. 22) can be translated as 'faith in Jesus Christ' (objective genitive) or 'the faithfulness of Jesus Christ' (subjective genitive). Both readings have strong scholarly support. We render the objective genitive ('faith in Jesus Christ') as the more traditional reading while noting the alternative. The word hilastērion (v. 25) is rendered 'propitiation' rather than 'expiation' — propitiation (turning away wrath) better captures the context, where God's wrath (1:18) demands resolution.*

Connections: *The Old Testament catena in vv. 10-18 draws from Psalms 14, 5, 140, 10, Isaiah 59, and Psalm 36. The hilastērion of v. 25 connects to Leviticus 16 (Day of Atonement), Exodus 25:17-22 (mercy seat), and Hebrews 9:5. The principle 'no one is righteous' (v. 10) echoes Ecclesiastes 7:20. Paul's argument about boasting (v. 27) will be developed through the Abraham narrative in chapter 4.*

¹Then what advantage does the Jew have? Or what is the value of circumcision? ²Much in every way. First of all, they were entrusted with the oracles of God. ³What then? If some were unfaithful, will their unfaithfulness nullify God's faithfulness? ⁴Absolutely not! Let God be true and every person a liar, as it is written: "So that you may be justified in your words and prevail when you are judged." ⁵But if our unrighteousness serves to demonstrate God's righteousness, what should we say? That God is unjust in inflicting wrath? (I speak in human terms.) ⁶Absolutely not! For then how would God judge the world? ⁷But if God's truth is magnified through my falsehood to his glory, why am I still being condemned as a sinner? ⁸And why not say — as we are slanderously charged and as some claim we say — "Let us do evil so that good may come"? Their condemnation is deserved. ⁹What then? Are we any better off? Not at all. For we have already charged that both Jews and Greeks are all under sin, ¹⁰As it is recorded, There is none upright, no, not one:. ¹¹There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh following God. ¹²All have turned aside; together they have become worthless. There is no one who does good, not even one." ¹³"Their throat is an open grave; they use their tongues to deceive." "The venom of vipers is under their lips." ¹⁴"Their mouth is full of curses and bitterness." ¹⁵Indeed, their feet are swift to shed blood:. ¹⁶Indeed, destruction and misery are in their ways:. ¹⁷Indeed, the way of peace have they not known:. ¹⁸There is no fear of God prior to their eyes. ¹⁹No w we know that whatever the law says, it speaks to those who are under the law, so that every mouth may be silenced and the whole world may be held accountable to God. ²⁰For by works of the law no human being will be justified in his sight, since through the law comes knowledge of sin. ²¹But now, apart from the law, the righteousness of God has been revealed, as attested by the Law and the Prophets — ²²Even the righteousness of God which is by way of faith of Jesus Christ to all and upon all them that trust — for there is no difference:. ²³for everyone has sinned and fallen short of God's glory. ²⁴Being

justified freely by his grace by way of the redemption that is in Christ Jesus. ²⁵God presented him as the atoning sacrifice through faith in his blood. He did this to demonstrate his righteousness, because in his patience he had left earlier sins unpunished. ²⁶It was to demonstrate his righteousness at the present time, so that he might be just and the justifier of the one who has faith in Jesus. ²⁷Then what becomes of boasting? It is excluded. By what kind of law? By a law of works? No, but by the law of faith. ²⁸For we hold that a person is justified by faith apart from works of the law. ²⁹Or is God the God of Jews only? Is he not the God of Gentiles also? Yes, of Gentiles also, ³⁰Seeing it is one God, which will justify the circumcision by way of faith, and uncircumcision by way of faith. ³¹Do we then overthrow the law through faith? Absolutely not! Rather, we uphold the law.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The diatribe continues with the interlocutor's implied objection: if circumcision can become uncircumcision (2:25), why be Jewish at all? Paul takes this objection seriously rather than dismissing it — his answer affirms real advantage while denying automatic immunity from judgment.
2. Paul says *prōton* ('first'), suggesting a list, but never returns to give a second or third point — he is sidetracked by the implications of his first point. The word *logia* ('oracles, sayings') refers to the Scriptures, particularly God's covenant promises to Israel. The passive *epistēthesan* ('were entrusted') emphasizes both privilege and responsibility.
3. The wordplay on *pistis* is central: *ēpistēsan* ('were unfaithful/unbelieving'), *apistia* ('unfaithfulness'), and *pistin tou theou* ('faithfulness of God') all share the same root. 'Some' (tines) is an understatement — Paul is diplomatic. The verb *katargēsei* ('nullify, render ineffective') is a strong word Paul uses frequently for the cancellation of a power or reality.
4. The exclamation *mē genoito* ('may it never be!') is Paul's strongest negation, used ten times in Romans. We render it 'absolutely not' rather than the KJV's 'God forbid,' which imports God's name where the Greek does not. Paul quotes Psalm 51:4 (LXX 50:6), where David acknowledges God's righteousness in judging. The application is that God's faithfulness stands regardless of human failure — when the two are weighed, God is always vindicated.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 51:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The verb *synistēsēin* ('demonstrates, commends, establishes') suggests that human sin inadvertently showcases God's righteousness by contrast. The parenthetical *kata anthrōpon legō* ('I speak according to a human perspective') is Paul's disclaimer that this objection represents flawed human reasoning, not his own theology.
6. Paul's *reductio ad absurdum*: if God cannot punish sin that highlights his righteousness, then God cannot judge anyone, since all sin ultimately serves to display divine attributes. But God's role as world-judge is non-negotiable in Jewish theology (Genesis 18:25).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 18:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The first-person singular shifts from the corporate 'our' (v. 5) to the individual 'my' — Paul voices the objection from the sinner's own perspective. The verb *eperisseusen* ('abounded, overflowed') anticipates the 'where sin increased, grace overflowed' language of 5:20.
8. Paul reveals that opponents have caricatured his gospel of grace as moral license — an accusation he takes up again in 6:1 and 6:15. The phrase *hōn to krima endikon estin* ('their condemnation is just') delivers a sharp verdict on those who distort the gospel into antinomianism. Paul does not argue the point here but dismisses it with a judicial pronouncement.
9. The verb *proechometha* is debated — it can mean 'are we better?' (middle) or 'are we at a disadvantage?' (passive). The context favors 'are we better?' with the answer 'not at all.' The phrase *hyph' hamartian* ('under sin') presents sin as a ruling power, not just a collection of misdeeds — a personification Paul develops in chapters 5-7. This is the thesis that the following Scripture chain will support.
10. Paul begins a *catena* (chain) of Old Testament quotations, primarily from the Psalms, to establish universal human sinfulness. This verse echoes Psalm 14:1-3 (LXX 13:1-3) and Ecclesiastes 7:20. The emphatic double negative (*ouk...oude heis*) leaves no exceptions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 14:1-3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ecclesiastes 7:20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Continuing from Psalm 14:2. The two deficiencies — understanding and seeking — correspond to the intellectual and volitional dimensions of the human failure described in 1:21-23. The claim is not that people never have religious impulses but that no one naturally and consistently pursues the true God.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 14:1-3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

12. The conclusion of the Psalm 14 quotation. The verb *exeklinan* ('turned aside, deviated') uses a road metaphor — humanity has left the right path. The verb *ēchreōthēsan* ('became worthless, became useless') means to become sour or rancid, like spoiled milk — a vivid image of moral corruption.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 14:1-3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Paul draws from Psalm 5:9 (LXX 5:10) and Psalm 140:3 (LXX 139:3). The anatomy of sin moves from throat to tongue to lips — speech organs become instruments of death. The 'open grave' metaphor suggests speech that brings death and corruption. The progression creates a portrait of verbal violence.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 5:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 140:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. From Psalm 10:7 (LXX 9:28). The word *aras* ('cursing') and *pikrias* ('bitterness') complete the anatomy of sinful speech — from the throat (v. 13a) through the tongue (v. 13b) and lips (v. 13c) to the mouth (v. 14).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 10:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. From Isaiah 59:7. The quotation shifts from organs of speech to feet — from verbal violence to physical violence. The adjective *oxeis* ('swift, quick, sharp') suggests eagerness for bloodshed.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 59:7-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Continuing Isaiah 59:7. The nouns *syntrimma* ('destruction, ruin, crushing') and *talaipōria* ('wretchedness, misery') describe the devastation that sinful humanity leaves in its wake.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 59:7-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. From Isaiah 59:8. The word *eirēnēs* ('peace') corresponds to the Hebrew *shalom* — the wholeness and well-being that humanity was created for but has abandoned. The path they follow produces the opposite of *shalom*.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 59:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. From Psalm 36:1 (LXX 35:2). This final quotation names the root cause: the absence of reverent awe before God. In the wisdom tradition, 'the fear of the LORD is the beginning of wisdom' (Proverbs 9:10). Without this fear, the moral collapse described in the preceding quotations is inevitable.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 36:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 9:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Paul draws a crucial inference: the Old Testament quotations (vv. 10-18) address Jews first ('those under the law'), so Jews cannot claim exemption from the universal indictment. The result is universal: 'every mouth silenced' — no defense can be offered. The adjective *hypodikos* ('accountable, liable to judgment') is a legal term meaning 'under judicial sentence.'
20. Paul echoes Psalm 143:2 (LXX 142:2). The phrase *ex ergōn nomou* ('by works of the law') has been debated: does it mean 'by doing what the law commands' or 'by the identity markers (circumcision, food laws, Sabbath) that define the Jewish community'? Both dimensions are likely in view. The word *sarx* ('flesh') here means 'human being' — no mortal creature can achieve right standing through law-keeping. The law's function is diagnostic, not curative: it identifies sin but cannot heal it.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 143:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The adverb *nyini* ('but now') is both temporal (the Christ-event has happened) and logical (the argument has reached its resolution). The perfect tense *pephanērōtai* ('has been revealed and remains revealed') emphasizes the permanence of this disclosure. The phrase *chōris nomou* ('apart from the law') qualifies the means, not the content: the righteousness is consistent with the law but does not come through law-keeping.
22. The phrase *dia pisteōs Iēsou Christou* ('through faith in/of Jesus Christ') is the center of the 'pistis Christou' debate. The objective genitive reading ('faith in Jesus Christ') makes human faith the instrument by which righteousness is received. The subjective genitive reading ('the faithfulness of Jesus Christ') makes Christ's own fidelity the ground. Both are theologically valid; we render the traditional objective genitive. The phrase *ou gar estin diastolē* ('there is no distinction') eliminates any Jew-Gentile differential in access to salvation.
23. The aorist *hēmarton* ('sinned') views humanity's sin as a historical fact, while the present tense *hysterountai* ('fall short, lack') describes an ongoing condition. The phrase 'glory of God' (*doxēs tou theou*) refers to the divine image and splendor humanity was created to reflect (cf. 1:23 and 8:29-30) — sin has caused humanity to lose its designed glory. The prefix *hystero-* suggests falling behind, being left wanting.

- 24.** Three metaphors converge: legal (*dikaoumenoi*, 'being justified' — declared righteous in court), commercial (*dōrean*, 'freely, as a gift' — without payment), and redemptive (*apolytrōseōs*, 'redemption' — liberation by payment of a ransom). The word *apolytrōsis* originally described the purchase of a slave's freedom and echoes the Hebrew *ga'al* (kinsman-redemption) tradition.
- 25.** The verb *proetheto* ('put forward, set forth publicly') indicates a deliberate, public divine act — not something hidden but something God displayed openly. The word *hilastērion* can be translated 'propitiation' (turning away wrath), 'expiation' (cleansing sin), or 'mercy seat' (the place of atonement). We render 'propitiation' because the context of divine wrath (1:18) demands resolution, but the mercy seat allusion is noted in the expanded rendering.
- 25.** The phrase *dia pisteōs* ('through faith') specifies how the propitiation is received by the individual. The phrase *en tō autou haimati* ('by his blood') specifies the means of the atoning act — the death of Christ. The word *paresin* ('passing over') differs from *aphesis* ('forgiveness') — it means a temporary passing by, not permanent cancellation, suggesting that God's forbearance in the old covenant awaited the cross for final resolution.
- 26.** The phrase *dikaion kai dikaionta* ('just and the justifier') is the theological climax of the passage. The same root (*dik-*) appears in both words, underscoring that God's justifying act is itself an expression of his justice, not a contradiction of it. The phrase *en tō nyn kairō* ('at the present time') contrasts with the past era of forbearance — the cross is the moment when God's righteousness is definitively displayed.
- 27.** The word *kauchēsis* ('boasting') returns from 2:17, 23. If justification is by grace through faith, no one can claim credit. Paul uses *nomos* ('law') in an unusual sense here — 'principle' or 'system' rather than the Mosaic Torah. The 'law of faith' is the principle that right standing before God comes through trust, not achievement.
- 28.** The verb *logizometha* ('we reckon, hold, conclude') is a deliberate summary statement. This verse became the watchword of the Protestant Reformation. Luther famously added 'alone' (*allein*) after 'faith' in his German translation — the word is not in the Greek but captures Paul's intent in this context. The phrase *chōris ergōn nomou* ('apart from works of the law') does not mean faith is opposed to obedience but that the ground of justification is trust in Christ, not law-keeping performance.
- 29.** Paul's argument now appeals to monotheism: if there is one God (the fundamental Jewish confession, the *Shema*), then he must be God of all peoples, not Jews exclusively. The theological ground for Gentile inclusion is not a new revelation but the oldest confession in Israel's faith.
- 30.** Paul varies the prepositions — *ek pisteōs* ('from/by faith') for the circumcised and *dia tēs pisteōs* ('through faith') for the uncircumcised — but the variation is likely stylistic rather than theologically significant. Both groups are justified by the same faith. The one God has one means of justification for all.
- 31.** The verb *katargoumen* ('abolish, overthrow, nullify') is the same word from verse 3. Paul anticipates the charge that justification by faith makes the law irrelevant. His emphatic denial (*mē genoito*) is followed by the claim that faith actually 'establishes' (*histanomen*, 'causes to stand') the law. How faith upholds the law is not explained here but is developed through the Abraham argument in chapter 4 and the Spirit's work in chapter 8.

4

Summary: *Romans 4 presents Abraham as the paradigmatic case of justification by faith. Paul argues from Genesis 15:6 that Abraham was reckoned righteous through faith, not works — and that this reckoning occurred before circumcision (Genesis 17), making Abraham the father of both believing Gentiles and believing Jews. David is cited as a second witness to the blessedness of being reckoned righteous apart from works. Paul concludes by showing that Abraham's faith — trusting God to bring life from the deadness of his body and Sarah's womb — is the prototype of Christian faith in the God who raised Jesus from the dead.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's exegesis of Genesis 15:6 is one of the most influential readings of any Old Testament text in Christian history. The entire argument hinges on the Greek verb *logizomai* ('to reckon, credit') — used eleven times in this chapter. The chronological argument (vv. 9–12) is precise: Genesis 15 (faith reckoned as righteousness) precedes Genesis 17 (circumcision) by at least fourteen years, proving that Abraham's right standing predated and was independent of circumcision. The chapter redefines who Abraham's true children are.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Paul's reading of Abraham and James 2:21–24 (which argues Abraham was justified by works) has been debated since the Reformation. Paul and James use 'justify' in different senses and address different situations. We render Paul's Greek faithfully without harmonizing with James. The phrase 'apart from works' must be understood in Paul's specific argumentative context — he is not denying that genuine faith produces obedience (cf. 1:5, 'obedience of faith').*

Connections: Genesis 15:6 is the foundational text, also cited in Galatians 3:6 and James 2:23. The David quotation comes from Psalm 32:1-2. The promise to Abraham (v. 13) draws on Genesis 12:1-3 and 17:4-5. Abraham's faith in the life-giving God (v. 17) connects to 2 Corinthians 1:9 and Hebrews 11:17-19. The resurrection formula in verse 25 echoes Isaiah 53:4-5, 12.

¹What then shall we say that Abraham, our forefather according to the flesh, found? ²For if Abraham was justified by works, he has something to boast about — but not before God. ³For what does the Scripture say? "Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness." ⁴Now to the one who works, wages are not credited as a gift but as an obligation. ⁵But to the one who does not work but trusts in him who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness. ⁶Just as David also speaks of the blessedness of the person to whom God credits righteousness apart from works: ⁷"Blessed are those whose lawless deeds are forgiven, and whose sins are covered; ⁸Pronounced a blessing on is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin. ⁹Is this blessedness then only for the circumcised, or also for the uncircumcised? For we say, "Faith was credited to Abraham as righteousness." ¹⁰How then was it credited — when he was circumcised or uncircumcised? It was not after but before he was circumcised. ¹¹He received the sign of circumcision as a seal of the righteousness that he had by faith while still uncircumcised. The purpose was to make him the father of all who believe without being circumcised, so that righteousness would be credited to them as well, ¹²The Parent of circumcision to them who are not of the circumcision sole, but who as well conduct your lives in the steps of that trust of our Parent Abraham, which he had being yet uncircumcised. ¹³For the promise to Abraham and his offspring that he would be heir of the world did not come through the law but through the righteousness of faith. ¹⁴For if those who are of the law are heirs, faith is emptied and the promise is nullified. ¹⁵For the law produces wrath, but where there is no law there is no transgression. ¹⁶That is why it depends on faith, in order that the promise may rest on grace and be guaranteed to all his offspring — not only to those who are of the law but also to those who share the faith of Abraham, who is the father of us all, ¹⁷Indeed, as it is written, I have made you a Father of numerous nations,) prior to him whom he believed, even God, who quickeneth the dead, and calleth those things which be not as though they were. ¹⁸Against all hope, Abraham in hope believed that he would become the father of many nations, just as it had been spoken to him: "So shall your offspring be." ¹⁹Without weakening in his faith, he considered his own body, which was as good as dead since he was about a hundred years old, and the deadness of Sarah's womb. ²⁰Yet he did not waver in unbelief regarding God's promise but was strengthened in his faith, giving glory to God, ²¹Being fully persuaded that, what he had sworn, he was able also to perform. ²²That is why "it was credited to him as righteousness." ²³Now the words "it was credited to him" were not written for Abraham's sake alone, ²⁴However, for us also, to whom it will be imputed, if we trust in on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead; ²⁵Who was handed over for our wrongdoings, and was brought back again for our justification.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') most likely modifies 'forefather' — Abraham is the physical ancestor of the Jewish people. Some scholars attach it to 'found' — what did Abraham discover by human effort? The former reading is more natural syntactically. Paul begins with Abraham because he is the foundational figure of Jewish identity and the recipient of the covenant promises.
2. Paul concedes the hypothetical: if justification were by works, boasting would be warranted. The critical qualifier is 'not before God' — human achievement may impress humans, but no one can stand before God on the basis of personal merit. The word *kauchēma* ('ground for boasting') differs from *kauchēsis* ('act of boasting') in 3:27.
3. Paul quotes Genesis 15:6 (LXX), the theological foundation of the entire chapter. The verb *episteusen* ('believed, trusted') is the aorist of *pisteuō* — Abraham placed his trust in God's promise. The verb *elogisthē* ('was credited, reckoned') is the key term: righteousness was not earned but counted to Abraham's account by God's sovereign decision. The same quotation appears in Galatians 3:6 and James 2:23.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 15:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Paul uses an employment analogy: a worker's pay (*misthos*) is not a gift but a debt the employer owes. If justification were earned, God would be obligated to pay — but grace, by definition, is unearned. The contrast between *charin* ('grace, gift') and *opheilēma* ('debt, obligation') is absolute.

5. The phrase *ton dikaounta ton asebē* ('the one who justifies the ungodly') is shocking by Old Testament standards. Proverbs 17:15 declares 'he who justifies the wicked is an abomination to the LORD.' Yet Paul claims this is exactly what God does — he declares righteous those who are not righteous in themselves. The paradox is resolved by the *hilastērion* of 3:25: God can justify the ungodly because the penalty has been paid.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 17:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Paul introduces a second witness (David) following the legal principle of two witnesses. The word *makarismōn* ('blessedness, pronouncement of blessing') is a declaration of well-being, not a description of emotion. David, like Abraham, received God's grace despite — and in the midst of — serious sin.
7. Paul quotes Psalm 32:1-2 (LXX 31:1-2), traditionally attributed to David after his sin with Bathsheba. The two parallel lines use different vocabulary: *anomia* ('lawless deeds') and *hamartiai* ('sins') are forgiven and covered respectively. The verb *epekalyphthēsan* ('were covered') echoes the Hebrew *kippur* ('to cover, atone') — the very language of atonement.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 32:1-2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The double negative *ou mē* with the subjunctive *logisētai* creates the strongest possible denial: the Lord will absolutely never reckon sin to this person's account. The same verb *logizomai* now describes what God does not do — he refuses to enter sin into the ledger. Justification is not only the crediting of righteousness but the non-crediting of sin.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 32:1-2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Paul now poses the decisive question that will determine whether Abraham is the father of Jews only or of all believers. The argument hinges on chronology: when was faith credited as righteousness?
10. The chronological argument is simple but devastating: Genesis 15:6 (the crediting of righteousness) precedes Genesis 17 (the institution of circumcision) by at least fourteen years in the biblical narrative. Abraham was justified while still technically a Gentile. This means circumcision was not the basis of his right standing.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 15:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Paul redefines circumcision: it is a *sēmeion* ('sign') and *sphragida* ('seal') — a confirmation of a righteousness already received, not the means of obtaining it. Like a seal on a completed document, circumcision authenticated what faith had already accomplished. The word 'father' (*pater*) establishes Abraham's spiritual paternity of Gentile believers.
12. The verb *stoichousin* ('walk in line, follow in step') is a military metaphor — walking in formation, following the same path. Jewish believers must follow Abraham's faith-path, not merely bear his physical mark. Abraham is father of believing Gentiles (v. 11) and of believing Jews (v. 12), but not of unbelieving Jews — a radical redefinition of Abrahamic lineage.
13. The phrase *klēronomon kosmon* ('heir of the world') goes beyond the specific land promise of Genesis 12-15. Jewish tradition had already expanded Abraham's inheritance to cosmic scope (cf. Sirach 44:21). Paul sees this as fulfilled in the gospel's universal reach. The word *spermati* ('seed, offspring') is collective, pointing to all Abraham's descendants — both physical and spiritual.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 12-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The verbs *kekenōtai* ('has been emptied, voided') and *katērgētai* ('has been nullified') describe devastating consequences: if law-keeping is the condition of inheritance, then faith becomes meaningless and the promise is cancelled. Paul argues that law and promise are different modes of God's relating to his people — promise is unconditional and prior.
15. Paul identifies the law's actual function: not to save but to define and expose sin, thereby activating wrath. The word *parabasis* ('transgression, violation') differs from *hamartia* ('sin') — *parabasis* is specifically the conscious violation of a known commandment. Sin existed before the law (5:13), but transgression (conscious law-breaking) requires a law to break.
16. Paul links faith, grace, and the certainty of the promise in a logical chain: because it is by faith, it is by grace; because it is by grace, it is guaranteed (*bebaian*, 'firm, secure, reliable'). If the promise depended on human performance, it would be uncertain. The phrase 'father of us all' includes Paul's Gentile readers in Abraham's family.
17. Paul quotes Genesis 17:5. The verb *tethika* ('I have made/appointed') is a perfect tense — God's declaration makes it an accomplished fact even before the physical fulfillment. The two divine attributes — 'giving life to the dead' and 'calling into existence what does not exist' — describe creation *ex nihilo* and resurrection. These are the powers Abraham trusted and the powers that raised Jesus (v. 24).
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 17:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

18. The paradox *par' elpida ep' elpidi* ('against hope, in hope') captures the nature of faith: the circumstances offered no ground for hope (humanly speaking), yet Abraham chose to hope based on God's word. The quotation is from Genesis 15:5, where God tells Abraham to count the stars — the very context of the Genesis 15:6 quotation.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 15:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Some manuscripts read *ou katenōēsen* ('he did not consider') while the SBLGNT reads *katenōēsen* without the negative — meaning Abraham did consider the obstacles but was not overcome by them. This is the harder and likely original reading: faith is not denial of reality but trust in God despite reality. The word *nenekrōmenon* ('made dead, deadened') uses the same root as *nekrous* ('dead') in verse 17, connecting Abraham's body to the God who raises the dead.
20. The verb *diekrithē* ('wavered, doubted, was divided') literally means 'to be divided against oneself.' Abraham was not internally torn between faith and doubt. Instead, he was *enedunamōthē* ('was empowered, strengthened') — the passive suggests God strengthened his faith. The participle *dous doxan* ('giving glory') shows that faith and worship are inseparable: trusting God's promises is the highest form of glorifying him.
21. The participle *plērophorētheis* ('being fully convinced, fully assured') means to be carried to full measure — Abraham's conviction was complete, not partial. The logic of faith is simple: God promised; God is able; therefore it will happen. The focus is on God's ability (*dynatos*), not Abraham's worthiness.
22. Paul returns to Genesis 15:6, closing the circle of the argument. The conjunction *dio* ('therefore, for this reason') shows that the faith described in verses 18-21 is what Genesis 15:6 was talking about — trust in God's promise against all odds.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Paul explicitly states his hermeneutical principle: Old Testament narratives are not merely historical records but have ongoing relevance for later believers. Scripture was written 'for us' (v. 24). This does not mean the original context is irrelevant but that the pattern of faith established in Abraham is paradigmatic.
24. The parallel between Abraham's faith and Christian faith is precise: Abraham believed in the God who gives life to the dead (v. 17); Christians believe in the God who raised Jesus from the dead. The object of faith is the same life-giving God; only the specific act differs. The title 'our Lord' (*ton kyrion hēmōn*) applies to the risen Jesus the Septuagint title for YHWH.
25. This verse is likely a pre-Pauline creedal formula that Paul quotes. The verb *paredothē* ('was delivered up, handed over') echoes Isaiah 53:12 (LXX) and the same verb used of God 'giving over' in 1:24, 26, 28 — but now the direction is reversed. In chapter 1, God gave humanity over to sin; here, God gives his Son over for sinners. The word *dikaiōsin* ('justification') appears only here and in 5:18 in Paul's letters — it is the noun form of *dikaioō* ('to justify'). The preposition *dia* with the accusative can mean 'because of' or 'for the purpose of' — Christ was raised both because our justification was accomplished and in order to secure it.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 53:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

5

Summary: Romans 5 opens with the results of justification: peace with God, access to grace, hope of glory, and the ability to rejoice even in suffering (vv. 1-11). God's love is poured into believers' hearts through the Holy Spirit, and Christ's death for the ungodly is the supreme proof of that love. The chapter then shifts to a sweeping Adam-Christ comparison (vv. 12-21): through one man sin and death entered the world; through one man grace and life overflow. Where sin increased, grace overflowed all the more.

*What Makes This Remarkable: Verses 1-11 present the most comprehensive summary of the benefits of justification in the New Testament. The 'boasting in suffering' sequence (vv. 3-5) — suffering produces endurance, endurance produces character, character produces hope — is not Stoic endurance but eschatological hope grounded in the Holy Spirit. The Adam-Christ typology (vv. 12-21) is Paul's most ambitious theological construction, treating the entire human race as represented by two figures. The rhetorical crescendo of 'much more' (*pollō mallon*, vv. 9, 10, 15, 17) drives the argument: if God did the harder thing (dying for enemies), how much more will he do the easier thing (saving those now reconciled).*

Translation Friction: Verse 12 contains a famously difficult clause: eph' hō pantes hēmarton ('because all sinned'). This has been read as 'because all sinned [in Adam]' (Augustine), 'because all sinned [individually]' (Pelagius), or 'with the result that all sinned.' We render the causal sense ('because all sinned') while noting the ambiguity. The precise nature of Adam's headship over humanity — federal representation, biological inheritance, or archetypal pattern — is debated.

Connections: The peace and reconciliation themes (vv. 1, 10-11) connect to 2 Corinthians 5:18-21. The Adam-Christ typology is developed further in 1 Corinthians 15:21-22, 45-49. The Spirit's role in pouring out love (v. 5) anticipates Romans 8. The 'reign of grace through righteousness' (v. 21) prepares for the 'shall we sin that grace may abound?' question of 6:1.

¹Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, ²By whom as well we possess access by path of trust into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in confident expectation of the glory of God. ³Not only that, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, knowing that suffering produces endurance, ⁴Indeed, patience, experience. And experience, hope:. ⁵Indeed, hope makes not ashamed. Because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given to us. ⁶For while we were still weak, at the right time Christ died for the ungodly. ⁷For one would scarcely die for a righteous person — though perhaps for a good person someone might even dare to die. ⁸But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: while we were still sinners, Christ died for us. ⁹How much more then, having now been justified by his blood, will we be saved through him from the wrath. ¹⁰For if while we were enemies we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son, how much more, having been reconciled, will we be saved by his life. ¹¹Not only that, but we also rejoice in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have now received reconciliation. ¹²Therefore, just as sin entered the world through one man, and death through sin, and in this way death spread to all people, because all sinned — ¹³For until the instruction of Moses wrongdoing was in the world — but sin is not imputed when there is no law. ¹⁴Yet death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over those whose sinning was not like Adam's transgression. Adam is a type of the one who was to come. ¹⁵But the free gift is not like the trespass. For if the many died through the one man's trespass, how much more have the grace of God and the free gift by the grace of that one man, Jesus Christ, overflowed to the many. ¹⁶And the gift is not like the result of that one man's sin. For the judgment following one trespass brought condemnation, but the free gift following many trespasses brought justification. ¹⁷For if, because of one man's trespass, death reigned through that one man, how much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and the free gift of righteousness reign in life through the one man, Jesus Christ. ¹⁸Therefore, as one trespass led to condemnation for all people, so one act of righteousness leads to justification and life for all people. ¹⁹For just as through the one man's disobedience the many were made sinners, so also through the one man's obedience the many will be made righteous. ²⁰Now the law came in alongside so that the trespass would increase. But where sin increased, grace overflowed all the more, ²¹That as sin has reigned to death, even so might grace reign by way of righteousness to eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. A significant textual variant exists: some manuscripts read echomen ('we have,' indicative) while others read echōmen ('let us have,' subjunctive). The indicative is preferred (SBLGNT) because Paul is stating the result of justification, not issuing an exhortation. The whole section (vv. 1-11) describes what is true of the justified, not what they should pursue.
2. The word prosagōgēn ('access, introduction, approach') is a court term — the prosagōgeus was the official who introduced visitors to a king. Christ is the one who ushers believers into the royal presence of grace. The perfect tense hestēkamen ('we stand') indicates a settled, secure position. The verb kauchōmetha ('we boast, rejoice, exult') resumes the boasting theme from 2:17 and 3:27 — boasting is not eliminated but redirected from self to God's glory.
3. The shift from rejoicing in hope (v. 2) to rejoicing in suffering (v. 3) is deliberate and paradoxical. The Greek thlipsis ('tribulation, suffering, pressure') refers to the afflictions that accompany faith in the present age. Paul does not say suffering is good but that it produces something good. The verb katergazetai ('produces, works out, accomplishes') describes a process with an intended outcome.
4. The word dokimēn ('proven character, tested quality') describes metal that has passed through fire and been verified as genuine. The KJV's 'experience' misses this — the idea is character that has been tested and approved. The chain of progression (suffering endurance character hope) is not automatic but describes the Spirit-empowered process of maturation.

5. The verb *ekkechytai* ('has been poured out') is a perfect tense — the pouring happened and the love remains. The image is of abundant, overflowing love. This is the first mention of the Holy Spirit in Romans since 1:4, and it introduces the Spirit's crucial role that will dominate chapter 8. The phrase 'love of God' (*agapē tou theou*) is primarily God's love for us (subjective genitive), not our love for God, as the following verses (6-10) demonstrate.
6. The word *asthenōn* ('weak, powerless, helpless') describes humanity's inability to save itself. The phrase *kata kairon* ('at the right time, at the appointed time') echoes Galatians 4:4 ('when the fullness of time had come'). Paul uses three terms to describe those for whom Christ died: 'weak' (v. 6), 'sinners' (v. 8), and 'enemies' (v. 10) — an escalating description of unworthiness.
7. Paul distinguishes between *dikaioi* ('righteous' — one who meets obligations) and *agathos* ('good' — one who goes beyond obligations, who is generous and beneficent). Even for such people, voluntary death is rare. The word *tolma* ('dare') suggests that dying for another requires exceptional courage. The point of the comparison: what Christ did (dying for the ungodly) exceeds what anyone would do even for the best of people.
8. The verb *synistēsai* ('demonstrates, proves, shows') is present tense — God's love is not a past event but an ongoing demonstration. The cross is the permanent exhibit of divine love. The phrase *eti hamartōlōn ontōn hēmōn* ('while we were still sinners') is the crucial qualifier: God's love is not a response to human worthiness but an initiative toward the unworthy.
9. The first of the 'much more' (*pollō mallon*) arguments. The logic: if God did the costly thing (justifying enemies by Christ's blood), how much more will he do the less costly thing (preserving the already-justified from final wrath). 'The wrath' (*tēs orgēs*) with the definite article points to the eschatological day of wrath (2:5). Justification is past; salvation from wrath is future — a reminder that salvation has a 'not yet' dimension.
10. The word *echthroi* ('enemies') is the strongest of the three descriptions (weak, sinners, enemies). Reconciliation (*katallassō*) is a relational metaphor — the restoration of a broken relationship. The two-stage argument: reconciliation comes through Christ's death; ongoing salvation comes through his life (his resurrection life and continuing intercession, cf. 8:34). This 'much more' is the second in the series.
11. The section that began with peace (v. 1) ends with rejoicing. The word *katallagēn* ('reconciliation') is better than the KJV's 'atonement,' which in modern English suggests the means of reconciliation rather than the reconciled state itself. The verb *elabomen* ('we received') is aorist — reconciliation is a completed gift, already possessed.
12. This verse begins a sentence Paul never completes — the 'just as' (*hōsper*) expects a 'so also' that does not arrive until verse 18. The parenthetical material (vv. 13-17) interrupts the comparison. The phrase *eph' hō pantes hēmarton* is one of the most debated in the New Testament. The Latin Vulgate's 'in quo' ('in whom') led to the Augustinian doctrine of original sin — all sinned 'in Adam.' The Greek more naturally reads 'because' (*eph' hō* as a causal conjunction). We render the causal sense while acknowledging the complexity.
12. Sin is personified as an invading power that 'entered' (*eisēlthen*) the world. Death came 'through' (*dia*) sin — death is sin's consequence and agent. Paul traces the universal human condition to a historical origin in Adam.
13. Paul addresses a logical problem: if sin is transgression of a known law, how can sin exist before the law was given? His answer: sin was present but not formally 'counted' (*ellogeitai*, an accounting term meaning 'charged to one's account'). The word *ellogeitai* is related to *logizomai* from chapter 4 but emphasizes formal bookkeeping.
14. The verb *ebasileusen* ('reigned') personifies death as a king — a monarch whose rule extends over all humanity from Adam to Moses (the pre-law period). People died even though they had not sinned by violating a specific divine command as Adam had. The word *typos* ('type, pattern, figure') introduces typology: Adam foreshadows Christ. Paul will now show how the type and the antitype both correspond and differ.
15. Paul insists the analogy breaks down because the gift far exceeds the trespass. The third 'much more' (*pollō mallon*). The word *charisma* ('gift of grace, free gift') shares the root of *charis* ('grace'). The phrase *hoi polloi* ('the many') in Semitic idiom means 'the totality, the great number' — not 'many but not all.' The verb *eperisseusen* ('overflowed, abounded') means the gift doesn't merely match the damage but far surpasses it.
16. A second contrast: the judgment (*krima*) came from one sin (Adam's) and resulted in condemnation (*katakrima*); the gift (*charisma*) dealt with many trespasses and resulted in justification (*dikaiōma*, 'righteous verdict, acquittal'). The asymmetry is staggering: one sin condemnation for all; many sins justification for all who believe. Grace is not merely proportional to sin but exponentially exceeds it.
17. The fourth 'much more.' The stunning shift: in the Adam-regime, death reigned over people; in the Christ-regime, people reign over death. Believers are not merely rescued from death's kingdom but enthroned in life's kingdom. The phrase *perisseian tēs charitos* ('abundance of grace') uses the language of overflow and excess. The gift is not just righteousness but the gift of righteousness — *dikaiōsynē* as something received, not achieved.
18. Paul finally completes the sentence begun in verse 12. The parallel is precise: one trespass (*paraptōmatos*) all people condemnation; one righteous act (*dikaiōmatos*) all people justification of life. The phrase *dikaiōsin zōēs* ('justification of life') ties justification to its result — not merely a legal verdict but life itself. The 'all people' (*pantas anthrōpous*) in the second half has been debated: universalists read it as universal salvation; most interpreters qualify it by the reception language of verse 17 ('those who receive').
19. The contrast between *parakoēs* ('disobedience' — literally 'hearing amiss') and *hypakoēs* ('obedience' — literally 'hearing under, heeding') connects to 1:5 ('obedience of faith'). Christ's obedience refers to his entire life of faithful submission to the Father's will, culminating in the cross (cf. Philippians 2:8). The verb *katestathēsan/katastathēsontai* ('were constituted, will be constituted') may mean 'made' or 'appointed to the category of.'
20. The verb *pareisēlthen* ('came in alongside, entered as a side-issue') is striking — the law is not the main storyline but a subsidiary element in the Adam-Christ drama. The purpose clause *hina pleonasē* ('so that the trespass would increase') is intentionally provocative: the law's purpose was not to reduce sin but to multiply it (by making sin conscious and deliberate, cf. 7:7-13). The verb *hypereperisseusen* ('super-abounded, overflowed exceedingly') is a double-compound superlative — Paul coins an extravagant word to express the extravagance of grace.

21. The chapter concludes with two personified monarchs: sin reigned through death (its instrument), and grace now reigns through righteousness (its instrument) leading to eternal life. The phrase *dia dikaiosynēs* ('through righteousness') is crucial — grace does not bypass righteousness but operates through it. God's grace and God's justice are not in competition. The chapter ends where every major section of Romans ends — with Jesus Christ our Lord.

6

Summary: *Romans 6 answers the objection provoked by 5:20-21: if grace increases where sin increases, should believers keep sinning to get more grace? Paul's emphatic answer is no — believers have died to sin through baptism into Christ's death and have been raised to walk in newness of life. The old self was crucified so that the body of sin would be rendered powerless. Believers are now dead to sin and alive to God. The chapter then addresses a second form of the question (v. 15): since believers are under grace, not law, can they sin freely? Again no — they have changed masters, from sin leading to death to obedience leading to righteousness. They are now slaves of righteousness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's baptismal theology here is the most developed in his letters. Baptism is not merely a ritual of initiation but a participation in Christ's death, burial, and resurrection. The 'old self' (palaios anthrōpos, v. 6) was co-crucified with Christ — a past, completed event. The slavery metaphor (vv. 15-23) is deliberately provocative: true freedom is not autonomy but willing submission to the right master. The chapter's logic is identity-based: believers do not avoid sin to become righteous; they avoid sin because they are righteous — their identity has changed.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the indicative ('you have died to sin') and the imperative ('do not let sin reign') is central to Pauline ethics and has been variously interpreted. We render both as Paul states them without resolving the tension. The phrase 'body of sin' (sōma tēs hamartias, v. 6) may mean 'the sinful body,' 'the body dominated by sin,' or 'sin considered as a body/corporate entity.'*

Connections: *The baptismal language connects to Galatians 3:27 and Colossians 2:12. The 'old self/new self' contrast develops in Ephesians 4:22-24 and Colossians 3:9-10. The slavery-to-righteousness theme echoes 1 Corinthians 7:22. The 'wages of sin is death' conclusion (v. 23) is one of the most quoted verses in Christian tradition.*

¹What shall we say then? Should we continue in sin so that grace may increase? ²Absolutely not! How can we who died to sin still live in it? ³Or do you not know that all of us who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? ⁴We were therefore buried with him through baptism into death, so that just as Christ was raised from the dead through the glory of the Father, we too might walk in newness of life. ⁵For if we have been united with him in a death like his, we will certainly also be united with him in a resurrection like his. ⁶We know this: that our old self was crucified with him so that the body of sin might be rendered powerless, so that we would no longer be enslaved to sin. ⁷For the one who has died has been set free from sin. ⁸Now if we died with Christ, we believe that we will also live with him. ⁹We know that Christ, having been raised from the dead, will never die again. Death no longer has mastery over him. ¹⁰For the death he died, he died to sin once for all; but the life he lives, he lives to God. ¹¹In the same way, consider yourselves dead to sin and alive to God in Christ Jesus. ¹²Therefore, do not let sin reign in your mortal body so that you obey its desires. ¹³Do not present your members to sin as instruments of unrighteousness, but present yourselves to God as those who have been brought from death to life, and your members to God as instruments of righteousness. ¹⁴For sin will not have mastery over you, since you are not under law but under grace. ¹⁵What then? Should we sin because we are not under law but under grace? Absolutely not! ¹⁶Do you not know that if you present yourselves to anyone as obedient slaves, you are slaves of the one you obey — either of sin leading to death, or of obedience leading to righteousness? ¹⁷But thanks be to God that although you were once slaves of sin, you have become obedient from the heart to the pattern of teaching to which you were entrusted, ¹⁸Having been set free from sin, you became slaves of righteousness. ¹⁹I am speaking in human terms because of the weakness of your flesh. For just as you once presented your members as slaves to impurity and to lawlessness leading to more lawlessness, so now present your members as slaves to righteousness leading to sanctification. ²⁰For when you were slaves of sin, you were free in regard to righteousness. ²¹What fruit did you reap at that time from the things of which you are now ashamed? For the outcome of

those things is death. ²²But now that you have been set free from sin and have become slaves of God, the fruit you reap leads to sanctification, and the outcome is eternal life. ²³For the wages of sin is death, but the free gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The deliberative subjunctive *epimenōmen* ('should we continue, shall we remain') poses a question Paul's opponents actually raised (cf. 3:8). The verb *epimenō* means to remain in a place or state — to persist in sin as a way of life. Paul takes the objection seriously because it follows logically from 5:20 if grace is misunderstood as mere permission.
2. The aorist *apethanomen* ('we died') describes a definitive past event, not an ongoing process. The dative *tē hamartia* ('to sin') indicates separation — death severs the relationship. Paul's argument is not moral exhortation ('you should not sin') but ontological declaration ('you have died to sin') — continuing in sin contradicts who believers now are.
3. The phrase *eis Christon Iēsoun* ('into Christ Jesus') indicates incorporation — baptism unites the believer to Christ's person and story. The phrase *eis ton thanaton autou* ('into his death') specifies the particular aspect of Christ's story that baptism enacts. Paul assumes his readers know the basic baptismal theology — the question 'do you not know?' (*ē agnoeite*) implies established teaching.
4. The compound verb *synetaphēmen* ('we were co-buried') emphasizes union with Christ — his burial became our burial. The phrase *dia tēs doxēs tou patros* ('through the glory of the Father') attributes resurrection power to the Father's *kavod* — his weighty, substantial, overwhelming power. The phrase *kainotēti zōēs* ('newness of life') is qualitative: not merely continued existence but a fundamentally different kind of life. The verb *peripatēsōmen* ('we might walk') uses the Hebrew metaphor of 'walking' for daily conduct.
5. The adjective *symphytoi* ('grown together, united, fused') suggests organic union, like a graft into a living tree. The word *homoīōmati* ('likeness, form') indicates that baptism is an enacted likeness of Christ's death, not the death itself. The future *esometha* ('we will be') may refer to the final bodily resurrection or to present resurrection-life — the ambiguity is likely intentional.
6. The phrase *palaios anthrōpos* ('old self, old person, old humanity') refers to who the believer was in Adam — the entire pre-Christ identity. The verb *synestaurōthē* ('was co-crucified') is an aorist passive — a completed event, not an ongoing process. The verb *katargēthē* ('might be rendered powerless, nullified, put out of commission') does not mean 'destroyed' (KJV) but 'made ineffective' — the body is not annihilated but freed from sin's control. The verb *douleuein* ('to serve as a slave') identifies the prior condition as slavery.
7. The verb *dedikaiōtai* ('has been justified, freed, acquitted') is the same verb used for justification in chapters 3-5, here applied to the believer's liberation from sin's mastery. A dead person has no further obligation to a former master. Paul applies a legal principle: death cancels all claims.
8. The conditional *ei* ('if') assumes the reality of the condition — 'since we died with Christ.' The verb *syzēsomen* ('we will co-live') is future, suggesting that while death with Christ is past and completed, the fullness of life with Christ awaits the resurrection. However, present resurrection-life is also implied (cf. v. 4, 'walk in newness of life').
9. The verb *kyrieuei* ('has mastery, lords over, dominates') treats death as a would-be lord — but Christ's resurrection broke its claim permanently. The adverb *ouketi* ('no longer') implies death once had a temporary hold on Christ during his passion but was decisively defeated at the resurrection.
10. The word *ephapax* ('once for all') is emphatic — Christ's death was a unique, unrepeatable event. The dative *tē hamartia* ('to sin') parallels *tō theō* ('to God'): Christ's death severed the connection to sin's realm; his life is directed entirely toward God. This pattern — death to sin, life to God — is the template for Christian existence (v. 11).
11. The verb *logizesthe* ('consider, reckon, count') is the same word used for God's reckoning in chapter 4. Here believers are told to reckon themselves what God has already declared them to be — dead to sin and alive to God. This is not self-deception but faith appropriating an accomplished reality. The phrase *en Christō Iēsou* ('in Christ Jesus') is Paul's most characteristic phrase, denoting the new sphere of existence in which the believer lives.
12. The shift from indicative (vv. 2-11, what is true) to imperative (vv. 12-14, what to do) is the hallmark of Pauline ethics: become what you are. The verb *basileuetō* ('let reign') echoes the personification of sin as king from 5:21. The phrase *thnētō sōmati* ('mortal body') acknowledges that the body remains subject to death and therefore vulnerable to sin's attempts to reassert control.
13. The word *hopla* can mean 'instruments' or 'weapons' — the military connotation fits the context of two competing kingdoms. The verb *paristanete/parastēsate* shifts from present imperative (stop the ongoing practice) to aorist imperative (make a decisive commitment). The phrase *hōsei ek nekrōn zōntas* ('as those alive from the dead') grounds the imperative in the indicative — believers can choose God because they have already been raised with Christ.
14. This is a promise, not a command: sin will not master you. The reason is surprising: not 'because you try harder' but 'because you are under grace, not under law.' Paul implies that law actually empowers sin rather than defeating it (a theme he develops in chapter 7). Grace, not moral effort, is sin's antidote. This statement provokes the next question in verse 15.
15. A second version of the opening question (v. 1), now triggered by verse 14. The verb *hamartēsōmen* is aorist subjunctive — 'should we commit acts of sin?' (punctiliar) rather than the present tense of verse 1 ('should we continue in sin?' — habitual). Paul addresses both the lifestyle of sin and individual sinful acts.

16. Paul introduces the slavery metaphor that dominates the rest of the chapter. The logic is straightforward: everyone serves someone. The only question is which master. The two options are mutually exclusive: sin death, or obedience righteousness. There is no neutral ground, no true autonomy. The second option ('obedience') is the opposite of sin, not a separate concept from faith (cf. 1:5, 'obedience of faith').
17. The past tense *ête* ('you were') marks a definitive change of status. The phrase *ek kardias* ('from the heart') indicates genuine, interior transformation, not mere external compliance. The phrase *typon didachēs* ('pattern of teaching') refers to the body of apostolic instruction about the gospel. The passive *paredothēte* ('you were entrusted/delivered') is unusual — normally teaching is delivered to people, but here people are delivered to teaching. The gospel is the master to whom they have been handed over.
18. The passive *eleutherōthentes* ('having been freed') attributes liberation to God's action. The paradox is deliberate: freedom from sin is slavery to righteousness. True freedom is not the absence of all obligation but service to the right master. The language of slavery is uncomfortable — Paul will acknowledge this in verse 19.
19. Paul apologizes for the slavery metaphor — *anthrōpinon legō* ('I speak in human terms') acknowledges that comparing service to God with slavery is inadequate. The phrase 'weakness of your flesh' means their limited human capacity to grasp spiritual realities. The progression *anomia eis anomian* ('lawlessness to lawlessness') describes sin's self-compounding nature; the parallel *hagiasmon* ('sanctification, holiness') describes the progressive outworking of the new identity.
20. The ironic 'freedom' — when enslaved to sin, they were 'free' from righteousness, meaning righteousness had no claim on them. This is not genuine freedom but its perverse inversion. Paul is pointing out the absurdity: no one boasts of that kind of freedom.
21. The agricultural metaphor of 'fruit' (*karpos*) asks about the harvest of the former life. The answer is shame and death. The verb *epaischynesthe* ('you are ashamed') uses the same root as 1:16 ('I am not ashamed of the gospel') — the contrast is pointed. The word *telos* ('end, outcome, goal') can mean both 'result' and 'destination.'
22. The 'but now' (*nyni de*) mirrors 3:21 — marking the decisive change from the old situation to the new. The fruit contrast is complete: sin's fruit shame and death (v. 21); God's slavery sanctification and eternal life (v. 22). The word *hagiasmon* ('sanctification') here denotes the progressive transformation of the believer's life.
23. The word *opsōnia* ('wages, soldier's pay, rations') is a military term for the compensation a soldier earns. Sin pays what it owes: death. The contrast with *charisma* ('free gift') is absolute: death is earned; eternal life is given. Paul deliberately avoids saying 'the wages of righteousness is eternal life' — life is never a wage earned but always a gift received. The chapter ends, as always in Romans, with the phrase 'in Christ Jesus our Lord.'

7

Summary: *Romans 7 explores the believer's relationship to the law. Using a marriage analogy, Paul argues that death releases one from legal obligations — believers have died to the law through Christ's body to belong to the risen Christ. He then defends the law itself: the law is not sin, but sin used the law's commandment to provoke desire and bring death. The chapter's second half (vv. 14-25) contains Paul's famous description of inner conflict — wanting to do good but doing evil instead — culminating in the cry 'Wretched man that I am! Who will deliver me from this body of death?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The identity of the 'I' in verses 14-25 is one of the most debated questions in Pauline scholarship. Is Paul describing (1) his pre-conversion experience as a Jew under the law, (2) the ongoing struggle of the Christian believer, (3) Adam's fall, or (4) unregenerate humanity seen from a Christian perspective? The shift from past tense (vv. 7-13) to present tense (vv. 14-25) is the primary evidence for reading it as present Christian experience, though this is not conclusive. The passage has resonated profoundly with readers across centuries precisely because the struggle it describes is universally recognizable.*

Translation Friction: *We render the present tense of vv. 14-25 as present tense without resolving whether Paul describes Christian or pre-Christian experience. The marriage analogy (vv. 1-4) has been criticized as imprecise — in the analogy, the husband dies; in the application, the believer dies — but Paul's point is the legal principle (death ends obligation), not a precise one-to-one correspondence.*

Connections: *The marriage analogy connects to 2 Corinthians 11:2 and Ephesians 5:25-32. The 'I' passage echoes Ovid's Medea ('I see and approve the better, I follow the worse') and similar Greco-Roman moral psychology. The cry of verse 24 is answered by 8:1-2. The role of the law in provoking sin connects to Galatians 3:19-24. The 'law of sin' (v. 25) anticipates the 'law of the Spirit' (8:2).*

¹Or do you not know, brothers and sisters — for I am speaking to those who know the law — that the law has authority over a person only as long as that person lives? ²For a married woman is bound by law to her husband while he lives, but if her husband dies, she is released from the law regarding the husband. ³So then, if she is joined to another man while her husband is living, she will be called an adulteress. But if her husband dies, she is free from that law, and if she is joined to another man, she is not an adulteress. ⁴Therefore, my brothers and sisters, you also have died to the law through the body of Christ, so that you may belong to another — to him who was raised from the dead — in order that we may bear fruit for God. ⁵For while we were living in the flesh, our sinful passions, aroused by the law, were at work in our members to bear fruit for death. ⁶But now we have been released from the law, having died to that which held us captive, so that we serve in the new way of the Spirit and not in the old way of the written code. ⁷What shall we say then? Is the law sin? Absolutely not! Yet I would not have known sin except through the law. For I would not have known covetousness if the law had not said, "You shall not covet." ⁸But sin, seizing an opportunity through the commandment, produced in me every kind of covetous desire. For apart from the law, sin lies dead. ⁹I was once alive apart from the law, but when the commandment came, sin sprang to life, ¹⁰I died — and the commandment, which was ordained to life, I discovered to be to death. ¹¹For sin, seizing an opportunity through the commandment, deceived me and through it killed me. ¹²So the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, righteous, and good. ¹³Did what is good, then, become death to me? Absolutely not! It was sin — in order that sin might be exposed as sin — producing death in me through what is good, so that through the commandment sin might become utterly sinful. ¹⁴For we know that the law is spiritual, but I am of the flesh, sold under sin. ¹⁵For I do not understand my own actions. For I do not do what I want, but I do the very thing I hate. ¹⁶Now if I do what I do not want, I agree with the law that it is good. ¹⁷But as it is, it is no longer I who do it, but sin that dwells in me. ¹⁸For I know that nothing good dwells in me, that is, in my flesh. For the desire to do what is right is present with me, but the ability to carry it out is not. ¹⁹For I do not do the good I want to do, but the evil I do not want — that is what I keep doing. ²⁰Now if I do what I do not want, it is no longer I who do it, but sin that dwells in me. ²¹So I find this principle at work: when I want to do good, evil lies close at hand. ²²For I delight in God's law in my inner being, ²³However, I see another law in my members, warring opposed to the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. ²⁴Wretched man that I am! Who will rescue me from this body of death? ²⁵Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord! So then, I myself serve the law of God with my mind, but with my flesh I serve the law of sin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The parenthetical 'those who know the law' (ginōskousin nomon) addresses hearers familiar with Torah, likely Jewish Christians or God-fearers in the Roman church. The verb *kyrieuei* ('has authority, exercises lordship') echoes 6:9 and 6:14 — the question is who or what has mastery. Paul's principle is basic: legal obligations bind the living, not the dead.
2. The adjective *hypandros* ('under a man, married') is a legal term for a woman under marital authority. The verb *katērgētai* ('is released, discharged, freed') is the same word used for 'rendered powerless' in 6:6. Death dissolves legal bonds. The illustration draws on the Torah's own marriage laws.
3. The verb *chrēmāteisei* ('will be designated, called, publicly labeled') is a formal, official designation — not mere gossip but a legal status. Paul's point is established: death changes legal relationships. The analogy is imperfect by design — Paul is illustrating a principle, not constructing an allegory.
4. In the application, it is the believer who dies (to the law), not the law itself. The phrase *dia tou sōmatos tou Christou* ('through the body of Christ') refers to Christ's physical death on the cross, in which believers participate (6:3-6). The word *heteros* ('another') is the second husband in the analogy — the risen Christ. The purpose of the new union is fruitfulness (*karpophorēsōmen*, 'bear fruit'), contrasting with the 'fruit of death' in verse 5.
5. The phrase *en tē sarki* ('in the flesh') describes the pre-conversion state dominated by the sinful nature, not merely physical existence. The explosive phrase *ta dia tou nomou* ('those through the law') directly states that the law aroused sinful passions — a claim Paul will develop in verses 7-13. The fruit imagery is inverted: instead of fruit for God (v. 4), the old life produced fruit for death.
6. The verb *katērgēthēmen* ('we have been released, discharged') echoes verses 2-3. The contrast between 'newness of Spirit' (*kainotēti pneumatōs*) and 'oldness of letter' (*palaiotēti grammatos*) parallels 2:29 and anticipates 8:2-4. The Spirit replaces the written code as the governing principle of the believer's life. This does not mean the law's content is abandoned but that the mode of obedience has changed.
7. Paul defends the law against the implication of verse 5. The law is not sinful but diagnostic — it reveals sin. The tenth commandment (*ouk epithymēseis*, 'you shall not covet,' Exodus 20:17) is chosen because covetousness is an internal desire, not an external act. This suggests that the law's deepest function is to expose the interior disposition of the heart, not merely to regulate behavior. The switch to first person 'I' (*egō*) begins here.

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The word *aphormēn* ('opportunity, base of operations, launching point') is a military term for a beachhead from which to mount an attack. Sin is personified as a strategist who uses the commandment as a base of operations. The paradox is that the good commandment became the instrument of evil. The phrase *chōris nomou hamartia nekra* ('apart from the law, sin is dead') does not mean sin does not exist without law but that it lies dormant, unactivated.
9. The phrase 'I was alive apart from the law' likely alludes to Adam's pre-fall state in Eden or to Paul's pre-bar-mitzvah childhood before conscious moral accountability. The verb *anezēsen* ('came back to life, revived') implies sin was dormant and the commandment reawakened it. The language echoes Genesis 2-3: a command given, a prohibition, and sin exploiting the prohibition.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 2-3:. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The ironic reversal: the commandment was *eis zōēn* ('toward life') by design but *eis thanaton* ('toward death') in effect. Leviticus 18:5 promises 'the one who does these things will live by them,' but in the hands of sin, the commandment became an instrument of death. Paul is not blaming the law but the power of sin that hijacks it.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 18:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The verb *exēpatēsen* ('deceived, thoroughly deluded') echoes Genesis 3:13, where Eve says 'the serpent deceived me.' Paul presents sin as the true serpent — the commandment is the tree, and sin is the deceiver who uses the prohibition to entice. The verb *apekteinen* ('killed') makes sin a murderer who uses the law as its weapon.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 3:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. Paul's conclusion exonerates the law completely. Three adjectives defend the commandment: *hagia* ('holy' — set apart by God), *dikaia* ('righteous' — in accord with God's character), and *agathē* ('good' — beneficial in purpose). The problem is not the law but sin's exploitation of it. This is Paul's most positive statement about the law in Romans.
13. The double purpose clause is important: the law exposes sin's true nature. By using something good (the commandment) to produce something evil (death), sin reveals itself as *kath' hyperbolēn hamartōlos* ('exceedingly sinful, sinful beyond measure'). The law functions as a diagnostic that makes the disease visible in its full severity.
14. The shift to present tense begins here and continues through verse 25. The adjective *pneumatikos* ('spiritual') affirms the law's divine origin. The adjective *sarkinos* ('made of flesh, fleshly') describes the human condition in stark contrast. The phrase *pepramenos hypo tēn hamartian* ('sold under sin') uses slave-market language — a person sold into slavery to a master called Sin. This echoes 1 Kings 21:20, 25 (LXX), where Ahab is said to have 'sold himself to do evil.'
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 21:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *katēgazomai* ('accomplish, produce, carry out') describes the actual result of one's actions. The verb *ginōskō* ('know, understand') here means 'comprehend, recognize as mine' — the 'I' is bewildered by its own behavior. The three-part confession — I do not do what I want; I do what I hate — describes the fragmentation of the will that sin produces. The language resonates with Ovid's *Medea*: '*video meliora proboque, deteriora sequor*' ('I see the better and approve it; I follow the worse').
16. The verb *sympḗmi* ('agree, consent, concur') means that the divided will of the 'I' — wanting the good but doing the evil — proves that the law is *kalos* ('good, beautiful, admirable'). The desire for good, even when unfulfilled, is itself a testimony to the law's goodness.
17. Paul distinguishes the 'I' (the willing self that approves the good) from 'sin dwelling in me' (the alien power that produces the evil). This is not an evasion of responsibility but an analysis of the human predicament: sin has colonized the self. The verb *oikousa* ('dwelling, residing') presents sin as a resident alien occupying the territory of the self.
18. The crucial qualifier *tout' estin en tē sarki mou* ('that is, in my flesh') limits the claim. Paul does not say the self is entirely devoid of good — the inner self desires the good (v. 22) — but the flesh (the unredeemed human condition) is incapable of producing it. The verb *parakeitai* ('is present, lies at hand') means the will is available but the execution is not.
19. A restatement of verse 15 with heightened intensity. The verb *prassō* (present tense, 'I keep doing') emphasizes the repetitive, habitual nature of the failure. The parallel structure — 'the good I want / I do not do' and 'the evil I do not want / I practice' — creates a rhetorical cage from which the 'I' cannot escape.
20. A repetition of verse 17, reinforcing the conclusion: the true 'I' and indwelling sin are distinguishable. This is not philosophical dualism (two equal powers) but a description of the enslaved will — the self wants the good but is overpowered by sin's occupation.
21. The word *nomos* ('law') here means 'principle' or 'pattern' rather than the Torah — a regularity Paul has discovered through experience. The verb *parakeitai* ('lies close at hand, is present') from verse 18 now applies to evil rather than the desire for good. Evil is always the closer companion.

22. The verb *synēdomai* ('I delight in, rejoice with') expresses genuine joy in God's law — this is not reluctant compliance but heartfelt approval. The phrase *esō anthrōpon* ('inner person, inner self') describes the deepest part of the self, the part that aligns with God's purposes. This inner delight in the law echoes Psalm 1:2 and 119:97.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 1:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Three 'laws' (principles) are in play: the law of God (v. 22), the law of the mind (*tō nomō tou noos*, the rational self that approves God's law), and the law of sin (*tō nomō tēs hamartias*, sin's governing principle operating in the body). The military metaphors *antistrateuomenon* ('waging war against') and *aichmalōtizonta* ('capturing, taking prisoner') depict an internal battle the 'I' is losing. This sets up the desperate cry of verse 24.
24. The exclamation *talaipōros* ('wretched, miserable, pitiable') is a cry of anguish, not self-pity. The phrase *sōmatos tou thanatou toutou* ('this body of death') may mean 'this body doomed to death,' 'this body in which death operates,' or 'this deathly body.' The question 'who?' (*tis*) is the crucial word — the 'I' has exhausted all self-rescue options and can only look outside itself for deliverance.
25. The thanksgiving answers the question of verse 24: deliverance comes through Jesus Christ. The summary statement that follows describes the dual reality: the mind (*nous*) serves God's law, while the flesh (*sarx*) serves sin's law. This tension, unresolved in chapter 7, is resolved in chapter 8 through the Spirit. The phrase *autos egō* ('I myself') emphasizes that this divided condition describes the same person — not two people but one person in two simultaneous states.

8

Summary: *Romans 8 is the climax of Paul's theological argument, moving from no condemnation (v. 1) to no separation (v. 39). The Spirit — mentioned only once in chapters 1-7 (apart from 1:4 and 5:5) — appears over twenty times here, replacing the law as the governing power of the believer's life. The Spirit sets free from sin and death, fulfills the law's requirement, gives life, adopts believers as God's children, and intercedes for them. Paul then discusses the groaning of creation, the groaning of believers, and the groaning of the Spirit, all awaiting final redemption. The chapter concludes with one of the most soaring passages in all of Scripture: God works all things together for good, and nothing in all creation can separate believers from God's love in Christ Jesus.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter moves from cosmic theology (creation groaning) to intimate personal assurance (the Spirit crying 'Abba, Father') to majestic doxology (nothing can separate us). The 'golden chain' of verse 29-30 (foreknew, predestined, called, justified, glorified) presents salvation as an unbreakable divine sequence. The shift to 'glorified' in the past tense (*edoxasen*) — treating the future consummation as already accomplished — is one of the boldest grammatical choices in the New Testament. The chapter's final question-and-answer series (vv. 31-39) is structured as a courtroom drama with God as judge, Christ as advocate, and all possible accusers silenced.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the mind set on the flesh is death' (v. 6) and 'those who are in the flesh cannot please God' (v. 8) have been variously interpreted. We render them as describing the unregenerate state, not the ongoing struggle of believers. The 'groaning' of creation (v. 22) uses language of childbirth, not despair — the groaning is productive, anticipating new birth. The list of potential separators (vv. 35, 38-39) reflects first-century cosmological categories (angels, rulers, height, depth) that may correspond to spiritual powers.*

Connections: *The 'no condemnation' of v. 1 answers the condemnation of 5:16, 18. The Spirit's work fulfilling the law (v. 4) resolves 7:14-25. The adoption language (vv. 15-17, 23) connects to Galatians 4:4-7. The groaning of creation (vv. 19-22) develops Genesis 3:17-19. The 'all things work together for good' (v. 28) is one of the most quoted promises in Scripture. The Psalm 44:22 quotation (v. 36) is the only direct quotation in the chapter.*

1There is therefore now no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. 2For the law of the Spirit of life has set you free in Christ Jesus from the law of sin and death. 3For God has done what the law, weakened by the flesh, could not do. By sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh and as a sin offering, he condemned sin in the flesh, 4That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not following the flesh, but following the Spirit. 5For those who live according to the flesh set their minds on the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the Spirit set their minds on the things of the Spirit. 6For the mind set on the flesh is death, but the mind set on the Spirit is life and peace. 7For the mind set on the flesh is hostile to God, for it does not submit to God's law — indeed, it cannot. 8Those who are in the flesh

cannot please God. ⁹You, however, are not in the flesh but in the Spirit, if in fact the Spirit of God dwells in you. Anyone who does not have the Spirit of Christ does not belong to him. ¹⁰But if Christ is in you, although the body is dead because of sin, the Spirit is life because of righteousness. ¹¹If the Spirit of him who raised Jesus from the dead dwells in you, he who raised Christ from the dead will also give life to your mortal bodies through his Spirit who dwells in you. ¹²So then, brothers and sisters, we are debtors — not to the flesh, to live according to the flesh. ¹³For if you live according to the flesh, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the deeds of the body, you will live. ¹⁴For all who are led by the Spirit of God are children of God. ¹⁵For you did not receive a spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you received the Spirit of adoption as children, by whom we cry, "Abba! Father!" ¹⁶The Spirit himself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, ¹⁷If children, then heirs. Heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ. If so be that we suffer with him, that we may be as well glorified as one. ¹⁸For I consider that the sufferings of this present time are not worth comparing with the glory that is about to be revealed to us. ¹⁹For the creation waits with eager longing for the revealing of the children of God. ²⁰For the creation was subjected to futility, not by its own will, but because of him who subjected it, in hope ²¹Indeed, because the creature itself also will be delivered from the bondage of corruption into the glorious liberty of the God's children. ²²For we know that the whole creation has been groaning together in the pains of childbirth until now. ²³And not only the creation, but we ourselves, who have the firstfruits of the Spirit, groan inwardly as we eagerly await adoption as children — the redemption of our bodies. ²⁴For in this hope we were saved. Now hope that is seen is not hope. For who hopes for what they see? ²⁵But if we hope for what we do not see, we wait for it with endurance. ²⁶Likewise the Spirit also helps us in our weakness. For we do not know what to pray for as we should, but the Spirit himself intercedes for us with groanings too deep for words. ²⁷And he who searches hearts knows what the mind of the Spirit is, because the Spirit intercedes for the saints according to God's will. ²⁸And we know that for those who love God, all things work together for good, for those who are called according to his purpose. ²⁹For those whom he foreknew, he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, so that he might be the firstborn among many brothers and sisters. ³⁰And those whom he predestined, he also called; and those whom he called, he also justified; and those whom he justified, he also glorified. ³¹What then shall we say to these things? If God is for us, who can be against us? ³²He who did not spare his own Son but gave him up for us all — how will he not also, along with him, graciously give us all things? ³³Who will bring a charge against God's chosen ones? It is God who justifies. ³⁴Who is to condemn? Christ Jesus is the one who died — more than that, who was raised — who is at the right hand of God, who indeed is interceding for us. ³⁵Who will separate us from the love of Christ? Will affliction, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or danger, or sword? ³⁶As it is written: "For your sake we are being put to death all day long; we are regarded as sheep to be slaughtered." ³⁷Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors by way of him that loved us. ³⁸For I am convinced that neither death nor life, neither angels nor rulers, neither things present nor things to come, nor powers, ³⁹neither height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation, will be able to separate us from the love of God that is in Christ Jesus our Lord.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT text is shorter than the KJV, omitting 'who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.' This longer reading appears in later manuscripts and was likely assimilated from verse 4. The word *ara* ('therefore') connects to the entire argument of chapters 1-7: because of justification by faith, union with Christ in death and resurrection, and release from the law, there is now no condemnation.
2. The adverb *nyn* ('now') is both temporal (in the present age of grace) and logical (given the preceding argument). The preposition *en* ('in') *Christō Iēsou* marks the foundational Pauline concept of incorporation into Christ.
3. Two 'laws' (governing principles) are contrasted: the law of the Spirit of life and the law of sin and death (introduced in 7:23, 25). The Spirit is the new governing power that replaces sin's regime. The SBLGNT reads *se* ('you,' singular) rather than *me* ('me'), though manuscripts vary. The aorist *ēleutherōsen* ('set free') points to a completed liberation.
4. The phrase *to adynaton tou nomou* ('the impossibility of the law') identifies the law's limitation: not a defect in the law itself but in the flesh it addressed (cf. 7:12-14). The phrase *en homoiōmati sarkos hamartias* ('in the likeness of sinful flesh') is carefully worded: Christ took real human flesh (not merely its appearance) but without the dominion of sin. The phrase *peri hamartias* ('concerning sin' / 'for sin') may be a technical term for a sin offering (cf. Leviticus 4-5 LXX, where *peri hamartias* translates the Hebrew *chatta't*). We render 'as a sin offering' to capture this allusion.

3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 4-5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The word *dikaiōma* ('righteous requirement, just demand') is singular — the law's fundamental demand. The passive *plērōthē* ('might be fulfilled') does not specify whether believers fulfill it actively or Christ fulfills it on their behalf — likely both are in view. The Spirit enables the obedience the law demanded but the flesh could not produce. This resolves 3:31 ('do we overthrow the law through faith? We uphold it').
5. The verb *phronousin* ('set their minds on, are oriented toward, give attention to') describes a fundamental orientation of the whole person, not merely intellectual focus. The two groups — *kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') and *kata pneuma* ('according to the Spirit') — represent two modes of human existence, not two parts of every person.
6. The word *phronēma* ('mindset, orientation, way of thinking') appears only in Romans 8 in the New Testament (vv. 6, 7, 27). It describes not individual thoughts but a settled disposition. The flesh-oriented mindset results in *thanatos* ('death') — not merely physical death but spiritual separation from God. The Spirit-oriented mindset results in *zōē* ('life') and *eirēnē* ('peace,' the Hebrew *shalom* — wholeness and reconciliation with God).
7. The word *echthra* ('hostility, enmity') is not mere indifference but active opposition to God. The flesh-orientation is structurally incapable of submission to God's law — *oude gar dynatai* ('nor is it able'). This is not about effort but capacity: the flesh-mind cannot obey God no matter how hard it tries. This explains why the law was 'weakened by the flesh' (v. 3).
8. The phrase *en sarki ontes* ('being in the flesh') describes an unregenerate state, not the mere fact of having a physical body. Believers still have physical bodies but are no longer 'in the flesh' in Paul's theological sense — they are 'in the Spirit' (v. 9). The verb *aresai* ('to please') echoes the Old Testament language of what is pleasing to God.
9. Paul uses three titles interchangeably: 'the Spirit' (to *pneuma*), 'the Spirit of God' (*pneuma theou*), and 'the Spirit of Christ' (*pneuma Christou*) — indicating that the Spirit proceeds from both the Father and the Son. The conditional *eiper* ('if indeed, assuming that') assumes the condition is true for his readers. The negative statement is defining: possession of the Spirit is the essential mark of belonging to Christ.
10. The interchange continues: verse 9 said the Spirit is in you; verse 10 says Christ is in you — the Spirit mediates Christ's indwelling. The body remains 'dead' (*nekron*) in the sense that it is mortal and still subject to sin's legacy of physical death. But the Spirit is 'life' (*zōē*) — present tense reality, not merely future promise. The phrase *dia dikaiosynēn* ('because of righteousness') can mean 'because of the righteousness God has granted' or 'for the purpose of righteous living.'
11. The logic is simple and powerful: the same Spirit who raised Jesus now lives in believers; therefore, that Spirit will do the same work in their mortal bodies. The verb *zōpoiēsei* ('will make alive, give life') points to bodily resurrection, not merely spiritual vitality. The phrase *ta thnēta sōmata* ('your mortal bodies') — bodies that still die — will be transformed. The Spirit's current indwelling is the guarantee of future resurrection.
12. The word *opheiletai* ('debtors, those under obligation') sets up a contrast Paul does not explicitly complete: we are not debtors to the flesh (the implicit completion: we are debtors to the Spirit). The believer's obligation is to the Spirit who gave life, not to the flesh that produced death.
13. The conditional presents a stark binary: flesh-living death; Spirit-empowered mortification life. The verb *thanatoute* ('you put to death, you kill') is violent and active — not passive resignation but active assault on sinful habits. Crucially, this is done *pneumati* ('by the Spirit') — not by willpower alone but by the Spirit's power. The 'deeds of the body' (*praxeis tou sōmatos*) are the sinful behaviors the unredeemed body habitually performs.
14. The verb *agontai* ('are led, guided, driven') is present passive — an ongoing experience of the Spirit's direction. The word *huiōi* ('sons') in the ancient world denoted legal heirs regardless of gender; we render 'children' to reflect the inclusive scope while noting that 'sons' carried specific inheritance rights in Roman law that Paul will exploit in verses 15-17.
15. The contrast between 'spirit of slavery' and 'Spirit of adoption' defines the change: the old relationship to God was fear-based; the new is family-based. The verb *krazomen* ('we cry out') is a strong word suggesting spontaneous, Spirit-driven exclamation — not a quiet prayer but an instinctive cry of a child to a parent. The switch from 'you' (*elabete*) to 'we' (*krazomen*) includes Paul himself in the experience.
16. The compound verb *symmartyrei* ('bears witness together with, co-testifies') implies two witnesses: the Holy Spirit and the believer's own spirit. Together they confirm the reality of adoption. We render 'himself' (*auto*) rather than the KJV's 'itself' because the Spirit is personal. The word *tekna* ('children') differs from *huiōi* ('sons') — *tekna* emphasizes the familial relationship, *huiōi* the legal status.
17. The logic: children heirs co-heirs with Christ. In Roman law, all children inherited equally. The compound *syn-* ('together with') appears three times: *synklēronomoi* ('co-heirs'), *sympaschomen* ('co-suffer'), and *syndoxasthōmen* ('co-glorified'). The path to glory passes through suffering — not as a condition to be earned but as the pattern of Christ's own journey.
18. The verb *logizomai* ('I reckon, consider, calculate') is the same word used for God's reckoning righteousness (4:3). Paul makes a deliberate cost-benefit calculation: present suffering versus future glory. The result is that suffering is *xiā* ('worthy, equivalent') — the scales are not even close. The phrase *eis hēmas* ('to/in us') can mean the glory will be revealed 'to us' (we will see it) or 'in us' (we will embody it). Both are true.
19. The word *apokaradokia* ('eager expectation, anxious longing') is a vivid compound: *apo* (away) + *kara* (head) + *dokēō* (to watch) — literally 'craning the neck forward to see.' Creation itself is personified as expectantly waiting. The 'revealing of the children of God' (*apokalypsin tōn huiōn tou theou*) refers to the final manifestation of believers' glorified identity at the return of Christ.

- 20.** The word *mataiotēti* ('futility, emptiness, purposelessness') echoes Ecclesiastes' refrain 'vanity of vanities' (*hebel* in Hebrew). Creation was subjected to this futility *ouch hekousa* ('not willingly') — it did not choose this condition. The one who subjected it is most likely God (in response to Adam's sin, Genesis 3:17-19), though some identify Adam. The crucial qualifier is *eph' helpidi* ('in hope') — the subjection was not final but forward-looking.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 3:17-19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** Creation's destiny is linked to humanity's: when God's children are glorified, creation itself will be liberated. The phrase *douleias tēs phthoras* ('bondage to decay/corruption') describes the second law of thermodynamics in theological terms — everything deteriorates. The phrase *eleutherian tēs doxēs* ('freedom of glory') is the opposite: the liberated creation will share in the glory of the redeemed.
- 22.** The compound verbs *systemazei* ('groans together') and *synōdinei* ('labors in birth-pain together') use the *syn-* prefix to indicate that all of creation participates. The childbirth metaphor is significant: the groaning is not death-agony but labor-pain — it anticipates new birth, not extinction. The phrase *achri tou nyn* ('until now') indicates this is the current reality.
- 23.** Three groanings: creation (v. 22), believers (v. 23), and the Spirit (v. 26). Believers groan despite having the *aparchēn tou pneumatōs* ('firstfruits of the Spirit') — the Spirit is the initial installment of the full harvest. The word *huiōthesian* ('adoption') reappears: believers already have adoption (v. 15) but await its full consummation — the redemption of the body at resurrection.
- 24.** The aorist *esōthēmen* ('we were saved') points to the decisive moment of salvation while the context makes clear that salvation has a 'not yet' dimension — the body's redemption is still future. Hope by definition involves the unseen; visible possession would eliminate the need for hope.
- 25.** The word *hypomonēs* ('endurance, patient steadfastness') is the same virtue produced by suffering in 5:3-4. The chain continues: hope is not passive but actively enduring, pressing through the present age toward the promised future.
- 26.** The compound verb *synantilambantai* ('helps, comes to assist alongside') pictures the Spirit as one who takes hold of a burden together with the one carrying it. The honest admission *ouk oidamen* ('we do not know') is pastoral: believers often lack the words or clarity for prayer. The Spirit's *stenagmois alalētois* ('wordless groanings, sighs beyond speech') correspond to the groanings of creation (v. 22) and believers (v. 23). The Spirit translates human helplessness into effective intercession.
- 27.** The 'one who searches hearts' is God (cf. 1 Samuel 16:7; 1 Chronicles 28:9; Jeremiah 17:10). God understands the Spirit's wordless intercession because the Spirit intercedes *kata theon* ('according to God,' in alignment with God's will). The prayers the Spirit offers on behalf of believers are always perfectly aligned with what God purposes.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Samuel 16:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Chronicles 28:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 17:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** Some manuscripts read 'God works all things together for good' (*ho theos panta synergei*), making God the explicit subject. The SBLGNT reading (*panta synergei*) can mean 'all things work together' or 'he [God] works all things together.' Either way, God's sovereignty is the theological point. The promise is not that all things are good but that they are worked together (*synergei*) for good — even suffering, even what seems pointless. The qualifying phrase *tois agapōsin ton theon* ('for those who love God') and *tois kata prothesin klētois* ('those called according to purpose') identifies the recipients.
- 29.** The 'golden chain' begins. The verb *proegnō* ('foreknew') in biblical usage means more than advance knowledge — it implies intimate, relational knowing and choosing (cf. Amos 3:2). The verb *proōrisen* ('predestined, predetermined') specifies the goal of God's knowing: conformity to Christ's image (*symmorphous tēs eikōnos*). The phrase 'firstborn among many brothers and sisters' (*prōtotokon en pollois adelphois*) makes Christ the eldest in a large family, not an only child.
- 29.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Amos 3:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 30.** Five links: foreknew predestined called justified glorified. Each step leads inevitably to the next — no one is lost between links. The most stunning word is the final one: *edoxasen* ('glorified') is in the aorist (past) tense, treating the future glorification of believers as already accomplished. From God's perspective, the outcome is so certain it can be spoken of as a completed fact. This is called the 'proleptic aorist' — the future made present by divine certainty.
- 31.** The rhetorical questions of verses 31-35 form a courtroom crescendo. The first question — 'if God is for us, who can be against us?' — is not the claim that no one opposes believers (they clearly do) but that no opposition can ultimately prevail. The preposition *hyper* ('for, on behalf of') means God is an active advocate, not a neutral bystander.
- 32.** The verb *epheisato* ('spared') echoes Genesis 22:16 (LXX), where God says to Abraham 'you did not spare (*ouk epheisō*) your only son.' Paul presents the cross as God's own *Aqedah* — what Abraham was willing to do, God actually did. The verb *paredōken* ('gave over, handed over') is the same word used of God 'giving over' humanity in 1:24, 26, 28 — now inverted: God gives over his own Son for the sake of those he once gave over to judgment. The 'much more' argument: if God gave the greater gift (his Son), the lesser gifts (all things) are guaranteed.

32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 22:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. The verb *enkalesei* ('bring a charge, accuse') is a legal term for a formal prosecution. The answer is that no accuser can stand because the Judge himself has declared the verdict: justified. The word *eklektōn* ('chosen ones, elect') emphasizes divine initiative in salvation.
34. Four actions of Christ silence condemnation: he died (atonement), was raised (vindication), sits at God's right hand (authority, cf. Psalm 110:1), and intercedes (ongoing advocacy). The verb *entynchanei* ('intercedes, intervenes on behalf of') presents the risen Christ as believers' permanent advocate before God. The phrase *mallon de* ('more than that, rather') corrects the first statement — the resurrection, not just the death, is the decisive factor.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 110:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. The list of seven potential separators moves from general suffering to violent death. These are not hypothetical — Paul experienced all of them (cf. 2 Corinthians 11:23-27). The phrase 'love of Christ' (*agapēs tou Christou*) is primarily Christ's love for us (subjective genitive), not our love for him. The question expects the answer 'no one and nothing.'
36. Paul quotes Psalm 44:22 (LXX 43:23), a communal lament from Israel's history. The Psalm describes suffering that comes not from sin but from faithfulness to God ('for your sake'). Paul applies it to the church's present experience: suffering is the norm for God's people, not the exception. Yet even this does not separate from Christ's love.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 44:22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. The verb *hypernikōmen* ('we super-conquer, we overwhelmingly prevail') is another Pauline superlative compound — not merely victory but overwhelming triumph. The preposition *en* ('in') is significant: believers conquer not by escaping suffering but in the midst of it. The phrase *dia tou agapēsantos* ('through the one who loved') identifies Christ's love as the power source for this conquest.
38. The perfect tense *pepeismai* ('I am and remain convinced') expresses settled, unshakable certainty. Paul lists potential separators in pairs: death/life (the two modes of existence), angels/rulers (supernatural powers), present/future (all time). The word *archai* ('rulers, principalities') and *dynameis* ('powers') refer to cosmic spiritual authorities, whether benign or hostile. Paul asserts that even the most powerful spiritual beings in the universe cannot override God's love.
39. The final pair *hypsōma/bathos* ('height/depth') may refer to astrological terms for the highest and lowest points of a celestial body's orbit, encompassing all cosmic space. The sweeping phrase *tis ktisis hetera* ('any other created thing') is a catch-all: if Paul has missed anything in his list, this covers it. The conclusion lands on 'the love of God that is in Christ Jesus our Lord' — all of God's love is mediated through Christ. The chapter that began with 'no condemnation' ends with 'no separation.' The phrase *en Christō Iēsou tō kyriō hēmōn* closes the chapter with the same formula that ends chapters 5, 6, and 7.

9

Summary: *Romans 9 opens a new section (chapters 9-11) addressing the most pressing theological problem raised by Paul's gospel: if righteousness comes by faith apart from the law, what about Israel? Has God's word failed? Paul expresses his deep anguish over Israel's unbelief, then argues that God's word has not failed because not all descended from Israel are truly Israel. God's purposes have always operated by sovereign election — choosing Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau. Paul defends God's right as Creator to show mercy and harden as he chooses, using the potter-and-clay metaphor. The chapter concludes by arguing that Gentiles have obtained the righteousness of faith while Israel, pursuing righteousness through the law, stumbled over Christ — the stumbling stone.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's anguish (vv. 1-5) is extraordinary — he wishes he could be cursed and cut off from Christ for the sake of his kinspeople. This is the same Paul who just declared nothing can separate from Christ's love. The list of Israel's privileges (v. 4-5) is one of the fullest in the New Testament: adoption, glory, covenants, law, worship, promises, patriarchs, and the Messiah. The potter-clay metaphor (vv. 19-24) is drawn from Isaiah 29:16, 45:9, and Jeremiah 18:1-10. The chapter's argument about divine sovereignty is counterbalanced by chapters 10-11, which emphasize human responsibility and God's ultimate purpose of mercy.*

Translation Friction: *The tension between divine sovereignty (God hardens whom he wills, v. 18) and human responsibility (Israel pursued works rather than faith, v. 32) is one of the deepest theological tensions in Scripture. We render both emphases without harmonizing them. The Pharaoh hardening (v. 17) must be read alongside Exodus, where Pharaoh also hardens his own heart. The 'vessels of wrath' and 'vessels of mercy' language*

(vv. 22-23) has been debated between Calvinist and Arminian interpreters for centuries.

Connections: The Old Testament quotations are extensive: Genesis 21:12 (v. 7), Genesis 18:10 (v. 9), Genesis 25:23 (v. 12), Malachi 1:2-3 (v. 13), Exodus 33:19 (v. 15), Exodus 9:16 (v. 17), Isaiah 29:16/45:9 (v. 20), Hosea 2:23/1:10 (vv. 25-26), Isaiah 10:22-23 (vv. 27-28), Isaiah 1:9 (v. 29), Isaiah 8:14/28:16 (v. 33).

¹I am speaking the truth in Christ — I am not lying, as my conscience confirms in the Holy Spirit — ²Indeed, that I have remarkable heaviness and continual sorrow in my heart. ³For I could wish that I myself were accursed and cut off from Christ for the sake of my brothers and sisters, my kinspeople according to the flesh — ⁴They are Israelites, and to them belong the adoption, the glory, the covenants, the giving of the law, the worship, and the promises. ⁵To them belong the patriarchs, and from them, according to the flesh, is the Christ, who is God over all, blessed forever. Amen. ⁶It is not as though the word of God has failed. For not all who are descended from Israel are Israel. ⁷Indeed, neither, because they are the seed of Abraham, are they all children — but, In Isaac will your seed be called. ⁸This means that it is not the children of the flesh who are children of God, but the children of the promise are counted as offspring. ⁹For this is what the promise said: "About this time I will return, and Sarah shall have a son." ¹⁰And not only that, but also when Rebekah had conceived children by one man, our ancestor Isaac — ¹¹(For the offspring while not yet brought into the world, neither possessing done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, ¹²Indeed, not of works, but of him that calleth;) it was stated to her, The elder will serve the younger. ¹³As it is written, "Jacob I loved, but Esau I hated." ¹⁴What shall we say then? Is there injustice on God's part? Absolutely not! ¹⁵And I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion, for he says to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy. ¹⁶So then it depends not on human will or effort, but on God who has mercy. ¹⁷For the Scripture says to Pharaoh, "For this very purpose I have raised you up, that I might display my power in you, and that my name might be proclaimed in all the earth." ¹⁸So then he has mercy on whomever he wills, and he hardens whomever he wills. ¹⁹You will say to me then, "Why does he still find fault? For who has resisted his will?" ²⁰But who are you, a mere human, to argue back to God? Will what is molded say to its molder, "Why have you made me like this?" ²¹Has the potter no right over the clay, to make out of the same lump one vessel for honorable use and another for common use? ²²What if God, desiring to show his wrath and to make known his power, has endured with great patience vessels of wrath prepared for destruction, ²³Indeed, that he might make known the riches of all his splendor on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared to glory, ²⁴Indeed us, whom he has known as, not of the Jews only, but also of the Gentiles? ²⁵As indeed he says in Hosea: "Those who were not my people I will call 'my people,' and her who was not beloved I will call 'beloved.'" ²⁶"And in the very place where it was said to them, 'You are not my people,' there they will be called 'children of the living God.'" ²⁷And Isaiah cries out concerning Israel: "Though the number of the children of Israel were as the sand of the sea, only a remnant will be saved, ²⁸Indeed, since he will finish the work, and cut it short in righteousness — because a short work will the Lord make upon the world. ²⁹And as Isaiah predicted: "If the Lord of Hosts had not left us offspring, we would have become like Sodom and been made like Gomorrah." ³⁰What shall we say then? That Gentiles who did not pursue righteousness have obtained it — that is, a righteousness that is by faith; ³¹However, Israel, which followed following the law of righteousness, has not attained to the law of righteousness. ³²Why? Because they pursued it not by faith but as if it were based on works. They stumbled over the stumbling stone, ³³As it is written, take notice, I lay in Sion a stumblingstone and rock of offence — and whosoever believes on him will not be ashamed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul invokes a triple oath: truth in Christ, denial of falsehood, and the witness of his Spirit-informed conscience. This unusually intense affirmation signals that what follows is deeply personal and potentially misunderstood. Paul, the apostle to the Gentiles, must demonstrate that his gospel does not represent indifference to Israel.
2. The word *lypē* ('grief, sorrow') is strong; *odynē* ('anguish, sharp pain') is stronger. The adjective *adialeiptos* ('unceasing, constant') — the same word used for prayer in 1:9 — means this grief never leaves Paul. His pain over Israel's unbelief is not occasional but perpetual.
3. The verb *ēuchomēn* (imperfect) can mean 'I was wishing' or 'I could wish' — either a past wish or a present hypothetical. The word *anathema* ('accursed, devoted to destruction') is the Greek equivalent of Hebrew *cherem* — total separation from God. Paul echoes Moses in Exodus 32:32, who asked God to blot him from the book of life for Israel's sake. The irony is stunning: Paul who just said nothing can separate from Christ's love now

wishes for separation on behalf of others.

3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 32:32 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Paul lists eight privileges of Israel: (1) *huiiothesia* — adoption as God's son (Exodus 4:22), (2) *doxa* — God's glory-presence (the *Shekinah*), (3) *diathekai* — the covenants (Abrahamic, Mosaic, Davidic), (4) *nomiothesia* — the giving of the Torah, (5) *latreia* — the temple worship system, (6) *epangeliai* — the covenant promises. The plural *diathekai* ('covenants') is notable — God made multiple covenants with Israel.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 4:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The final two privileges: (7) the patriarchs (Abraham, Isaac, Jacob) and (8) the Messiah himself. The phrase *to kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') limits Christ's Israelite identity to his human nature. The doxological clause *ho ōn epi pantōn theos eulogētos* ('who is God over all, blessed forever') is one of the most debated punctuation questions in the New Testament. It can be read as (a) a statement about Christ: 'who is God over all, blessed forever' or (b) a separate doxology to God the Father: 'God who is over all be blessed forever.' We follow reading (a), which is the more natural Greek syntax.
6. This is the thesis of chapters 9-11. The verb *ekpeptōken* ('has fallen, has failed') means to fall to the ground, to prove empty. Paul's answer to the apparent failure of God's promise is a redefinition of Israel: physical descent does not automatically equal covenant membership. There is an 'Israel within Israel' defined by God's electing purpose.
7. Paul quotes Genesis 21:12. Abraham had two sons — Ishmael and Isaac — but only Isaac was the child of promise. Physical descent from Abraham did not automatically make Ishmael an heir. The principle of selective election operates within the family from the very beginning.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 21:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Paul draws the theological conclusion: *tekna tēs sarkos* ('children of the flesh,' born by natural means) are distinguished from *tekna tēs epangelias* ('children of the promise,' born by God's word). The verb *logizetai* ('are counted, reckoned') is the same verb from chapter 4 — divine reckoning, not human achievement, determines who belongs to Abraham's true line.
9. Paul quotes Genesis 18:10, 14. Isaac's birth was not a natural event but a supernatural fulfillment of God's promise to a barren, elderly couple. The point: God's people are constituted by divine promise, not natural processes.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 18:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Paul introduces a stronger example. With Isaac and Ishmael, one could argue the difference was due to different mothers (Sarah vs. Hagar). With Jacob and Esau, the same mother (Rebekah) and the same father (Isaac) produced two sons, eliminating any argument based on parentage. The Greek *koitēn echousea* ('having a bed/conception') is a euphemism for sexual intercourse and conception.
11. Paul emphasizes that God's choice was made before the twins' birth and before any action — good or bad — that could serve as a basis for merit. The phrase *kat' eklogēn prothesis* ('purpose according to election') places the ground of God's choice in his own purpose, not in foreseen human merit.
12. Paul quotes Genesis 25:23. The reversal of primogeniture — the elder serving the younger — is a consistent pattern in Genesis (Ishmael/Isaac, Esau/Jacob, Manasseh/Ephraim). God's choice does not follow human convention but divine freedom. The phrase *ek tou kalountos* ('from the one who calls') makes God's calling the sole basis of election.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 25:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Paul quotes Malachi 1:2-3, written over a thousand years after the twins. 'Hated' (*emisēsa*) in Semitic idiom can mean 'loved less' or 'not chosen' (cf. Genesis 29:31; Luke 14:26) — it denotes non-election rather than personal animosity. Malachi's original context concerns the nations of Israel and Edom, not merely the individuals Jacob and Esau.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Malachi 1:2-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 29:31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The objection is predictable: if God chooses before birth without regard to works, is that unjust? Paul's *mē genoito* is emphatic. The word *adikia* ('injustice, unrighteousness') is the negation of *dikaioσynē* — the charge is that God's election violates his own righteousness.
15. Paul quotes Exodus 33:19, God's response to Moses' request to see his glory. The double statement (mercy/mercy, compassion/compassion) is a Hebrew idiom emphasizing divine freedom: God's mercy is determined by God's own will. This was spoken in a context of grace — God had just forgiven the golden calf incident.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 33:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

16. The three sources are contrasted: not the willing person (tou thelontos), not the running person (tou trechontos, a metaphor for striving), but God who shows mercy (tou eleountos theou). Human desire and effort, however sincere, cannot compel divine mercy. This does not eliminate human response but grounds the possibility of response in prior divine initiative.
17. Paul quotes Exodus 9:16. The verb *exēgeira* ('I raised up, I brought onto the stage') does not necessarily mean God created Pharaoh for the purpose of destruction but that God elevated him to power and sustained him through the plagues to display divine power. The purpose is the proclamation of God's name throughout the earth — even Pharaoh's hardening serves a redemptive-historical purpose.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 9:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Paul draws the double conclusion: God's sovereignty operates in both directions — mercy and hardening. The verb *sklērynei* ('hardens') echoes the Exodus narrative where God hardened Pharaoh's heart. This must be read in its full Exodus context, where Pharaoh also hardened his own heart (Exodus 8:15, 32). Divine hardening is judicial — confirming a direction already chosen — not arbitrary.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 8:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The diatribe partner objects: if God's will is irresistible, how can God blame anyone? This is the logical conclusion of verse 18 pushed to its extreme. The verb *antheistēken* ('has resisted, has stood against') is a perfect tense — who has ever successfully opposed God's purpose? Paul takes the objection seriously but reframes it.
20. Paul's response appeals to the Creator-creature distinction. The verb *antapokrinomenos* ('arguing back, answering in opposition') implies presumptuous back-talk. The potter-clay metaphor draws on Isaiah 29:16, 45:9, and Jeremiah 18:1-10. The point is not that human questions are illegitimate but that the creature has no standing to put the Creator on trial.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 29:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 18:1-10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The word *exousian* ('right, authority, power') establishes the potter's prerogative. The phrase *ek tou autou phymatos* ('out of the same lump') emphasizes that the difference between vessels is not in the material but in the potter's purpose. We render *eis atimian* as 'for common use' rather than 'for dishonor' — the contrast is between special and ordinary, not necessarily between good and evil. However, in context, Paul is building toward the 'vessels of wrath' in verse 22.
22. The sentence begun here continues through verse 24. The phrase *skeuē orgēs* ('vessels of wrath') describes those destined for judgment. The participle *katērtismena* ('prepared, fitted') is in the middle/passive voice and does not specify who did the preparing — God, the individuals themselves, or sin. This ambiguity may be intentional. The phrase *en pollē makrothymia* ('with great patience') shows that even toward vessels of wrath, God exercises long-suffering restraint.
23. The contrast with verse 22 is significant: the vessels of wrath are described with a passive participle (*katērtismena*, 'prepared' — agent unspecified), while the vessels of mercy are described with an active verb (*proētoimasen*, 'he prepared beforehand' — God is the explicit agent). This asymmetry suggests that God actively prepares the vessels of mercy but does not actively prepare the vessels of wrath in the same direct way.
24. The vessels of mercy are now identified: 'us' — both Jewish and Gentile believers. God's electing purpose, which operated within Israel (choosing Isaac over Ishmael, Jacob over Esau), now operates beyond Israel's ethnic boundaries to include Gentiles.
25. Paul quotes Hosea 2:23 (LXX). In Hosea's original context, the promise of restoration refers to Israel itself — the unfaithful northern kingdom. Paul applies it to Gentile inclusion: those who were outside the covenant ('not my people') are now called God's people. This typological reading sees the same pattern of grace operating in a new context.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 2:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. Paul quotes Hosea 1:10 (LXX 2:1). The reversal is total: the location of rejection becomes the location of adoption. 'The living God' (*theou zōntos*) contrasts with dead idols and reinforces the theme of God's life-giving power (cf. 4:17).
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Hosea 1:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Paul now turns from Gentile inclusion to the painful reality of Israel's partial rejection, quoting Isaiah 10:22-23. The word *hypoleimma* ('remnant') introduces a concept central to prophetic theology: God always preserves a faithful core within the nation, even when the majority falls away. The verb *krazei* ('cries out') suggests urgency and prophetic passion.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 10:22-23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The phrase *logon syntelōn kai syntemnōn* ('completing and cutting short the word/sentence') describes God's decisive, swift judicial action. The LXX text Paul uses differs from the Hebrew of Isaiah 10:23. The point: God's judgment will be thorough and final.

28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 10:22-23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. Paul quotes Isaiah 1:9. The title *kyrios sabaōth* ('Lord of Hosts/Armies') transliterates the Hebrew *YHWH Tseva'ot*. The comparison with Sodom and Gomorrah — total destruction — emphasizes that even the remnant exists only by God's grace, not by human merit. The word *sperma* ('seed, offspring') echoes the Abrahamic promise.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 1:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The irony is sharp: Gentiles who were not even trying to achieve righteousness received it, while Israel who was intensely pursuing it missed it. The verb *katelaben* ('obtained, grasped, attained') suggests catching something that was not being chased. The qualifier *ek pisteōs* ('from faith') identifies the kind of righteousness obtained.
31. The verb *diōkōn* ('pursuing') is the same verb used for pursuit in a race or persecution of an enemy — Israel was zealously, energetically chasing righteousness. The tragic verb *ouk ephthasen* ('did not arrive, did not reach') describes failure at the finish line. The phrase *nomon dikaiosynēs* ('law of righteousness') is debated — it may mean 'the law that would lead to righteousness' or 'the standard of righteousness.'
32. Paul diagnoses Israel's failure: wrong method, not wrong goal. They pursued righteousness as if (*hōs*) it could be achieved by works rather than received by faith. The verb *prosekopsan* ('stumbled against, struck against') introduces the stone metaphor that the following quotation develops. Israel's very zeal for the law became the obstacle to receiving the gospel.
33. Paul combines Isaiah 28:16 and Isaiah 8:14 — one text about a cornerstone, the other about a stumbling stone. The same Christ is both: a foundation for faith and an obstacle for unbelief. The promise 'will not be put to shame' (*ou kataischynthēsetai*) echoes 5:5 and 10:11. The pronoun *ep' autō* ('in him') personalizes the stone — it is not an abstract principle but Christ himself.
33. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 28:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

10

Summary: *Romans 10 continues Paul's argument about Israel. He affirms Israel's zeal for God while lamenting that it is not based on knowledge — they seek to establish their own righteousness rather than submitting to God's righteousness. Christ is the end (telos) of the law for righteousness to everyone who believes. Paul then presents the accessibility of the gospel through the 'word of faith' — no one needs to ascend to heaven or descend to the abyss, because the word is near, in your mouth and heart. Confession of Jesus as Lord and belief in his resurrection lead to salvation. The chapter concludes with the famous missionary logic: calling requires believing, believing requires hearing, hearing requires a preacher, preaching requires being sent. Paul ends by noting that Israel heard but did not obey.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 4 — 'Christ is the telos of the law' — is one of the most consequential verses for understanding Paul's theology of the law. The word telos can mean 'end' (termination), 'goal' (purpose), or 'fulfillment' (completion). Each reading has different theological implications. Verses 6-8 are a creative midrash on Deuteronomy 30:12-14, replacing the Torah with Christ. The preaching logic of verses 14-15 has been foundational to Christian missionary theology. The Isaiah 52:7 quotation ('how beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news') has become iconic.*

Translation Friction: *The meaning of telos in verse 4 is the primary exegetical challenge. We render 'end' (culmination/goal) and note the range. The relationship between 'the righteousness of faith' (vv. 6-8) and Moses' words in Deuteronomy 30 is a bold hermeneutical move by Paul that has been variously assessed.*

Connections: *The Deuteronomy 30:12-14 reinterpretation (vv. 6-8) connects to Baruch 3:29-30. The missionary sending logic (vv. 14-15) cites Isaiah 52:7 and connects to Matthew 28:19-20. The 'word of faith' (v. 8) connects to the 'obedience of faith' bookend (1:5; 16:26). Isaiah 53:1 (v. 16), Psalm 19:4 (v. 18), Deuteronomy 32:21 (v. 19), and Isaiah 65:1-2 (vv. 20-21) all contribute.*

¹Brothers and sisters, my heart's desire and prayer to God for them is that they may be saved. ²For I can testify about them that they have a zeal for God, but it is not based on knowledge. ³For, being ignorant of the righteousness of God and seeking to establish their own, they did not submit to God's righteousness. ⁴For Christ is the culmination of the law so that there may be righteousness for everyone who believes. ⁵For Moses writes about the righteousness that is based on the law: "The person

who does these things will live by them." ⁶But the righteousness based on faith says, "Do not say in your heart, 'Who will ascend into heaven?'" — that is, to bring Christ down — ⁷or 'Who will go down into the depths below?' (that is, to bring Christ back from the dead). ⁸But what does it say? "The word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart" — that is, the word of faith that we proclaim. ⁹That if you shalt confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt trust in your heart that God has raised him from the dead, you shalt be saved. ¹⁰For with the heart one believes and is justified, and with the mouth one confesses and is saved. ¹¹For the Scripture says, "Everyone who believes in him will not be put to shame." ¹²For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek; for the same Lord is Lord of all, richly blessing all who call on him. ¹³For "everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved." ¹⁴How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? And how are they to believe in him of whom they have never heard? And how are they to hear without someone preaching? ¹⁵And how are they to preach unless they are sent? As it is written, "How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news!" ¹⁶But not all have obeyed the gospel. For Isaiah says, "Lord, who has believed what he has heard from us?" ¹⁷So faith comes from hearing, and hearing through the word of Christ. ¹⁸But I ask, have they not heard? Indeed they have: "Their voice has gone out to all the earth, and their words to the ends of the world." ¹⁹But I ask, did Israel not understand? First Moses says, "I will make you jealous of those who are not a nation; with a foolish nation I will make you angry." ²⁰Then Isaiah is so bold as to say, "I was found by those who did not seek me; I revealed myself to those who did not ask for me." ²¹But of Israel he says, "All day long I have held out my hands to a disobedient and contrary people."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul reaffirms his personal anguish (cf. 9:1-3). The word *eudokia* ('desire, delight, good pleasure') expresses a deep longing of the will, not merely a wish. The fact that Paul prays for Israel's salvation implies it is still possible — they are not irreversibly rejected. Some manuscripts read 'for Israel' (hyper tou Israēl) rather than 'for them' (hyper autōn); the SBLGNT follows the shorter reading.
2. Paul speaks from personal experience — he himself had the same misdirected zeal before his conversion (Philippians 3:6; Galatians 1:14). The word *zēlon* ('zeal, jealousy, enthusiasm') is positive but insufficient. The word *epignōsin* ('full knowledge, recognition, understanding') with the *epi-* prefix implies accurate, deep comprehension rather than mere information.
3. The word *agnoontes* ('being ignorant, not recognizing') does not excuse Israel but diagnoses their error. The phrase *idian dikaiosynēn* ('their own righteousness') is righteousness achieved by human effort — Paul's pre-conversion pursuit (Philippians 3:9). The verb *hypētagēsan* ('submitted') suggests that receiving God's righteousness requires surrender of self-generated righteousness.
4. The word *telos* ('end, goal, culmination, fulfillment') is deliberately ambiguous: Christ is both the goal toward which the law pointed and the termination of the law as a means of achieving righteousness. We render 'culmination' to capture both dimensions. The qualifier *panti tō pisteuonti* ('to everyone who believes') universalizes the offer — not just Jews or just Gentiles but everyone. This verse is the theological hinge between Israel's failed pursuit (v. 3) and the accessibility of faith-righteousness (vv. 5-13).
5. Paul quotes Leviticus 18:5. The 'do and live' principle defines law-righteousness: perfect obedience yields life. But as Paul has shown (3:20; 7:7-13), no one actually achieves this. The law's righteousness is real but unattainable by sinful humanity. This sets up the contrast with faith-righteousness in the following verses.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 18:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Paul personifies faith-righteousness as a speaker and paraphrases Deuteronomy 30:12-14. In Moses' original context, the point was that the Torah was accessible — no one needed to go to heaven to find it. Paul applies the same accessibility to Christ: the gospel does not require impossible feats. The interpretive gloss 'that is, to bring Christ down' (*tout' estin Christon katagagein*) replaces Moses' reference to the commandment with Christ.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 30:12-14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Deuteronomy 30:13 originally said 'who will cross the sea?' Paul substitutes 'the abyss' (*abyssos*), the realm of the dead, and interprets it as referring to Christ's resurrection. No human effort is needed to accomplish incarnation (v. 6) or resurrection (v. 7) — God has already done both. The gospel is near, not distant.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 30:12-14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 30:14. What Moses said about the Torah, Paul says about the gospel: it is near, accessible, ready to be received. The phrase *rhēma tēs pisteōs* ('word of faith') identifies the gospel message that demands and enables faith. The two locations — mouth and heart — correspond to the confession and belief of verse 9.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 30:12-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. This is the earliest Christian confession formula. The verbal confession *kyrion Iēsoun* ('Jesus is Lord') was the baptismal declaration and the most concise summary of Christian faith. In the Roman world, 'Lord' (*kyrios*) was a title for Caesar; confessing Jesus as Lord was both a theological claim and a political act. The heart-belief specified is the resurrection — the historical event that vindicated Jesus' identity. Mouth (external confession) and heart (internal belief) together constitute saving faith.
10. Paul reverses the order of verse 9 (mouth/heart heart/mouth), creating a chiasmic structure. The two clauses are not describing two separate events but two dimensions of one reality: believing leads to righteousness (*dikaiosynēn*, justification), and confessing leads to salvation (*sōtērian*). These are not sequential steps but simultaneous aspects of faith.
11. Paul returns to Isaiah 28:16 (quoted in 9:33) but adds the crucial word *pas* ('everyone') — making the promise explicitly universal. No one who trusts Christ will be disappointed or disgraced. The verb *kataischynthēsetai* ('will be put to shame') has eschatological force: at the final judgment, those who believed will be vindicated.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 28:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The phrase *ou diastolē* ('no distinction') echoes 3:22. The universality of sin (3:22-23) corresponds to the universality of salvation (10:12-13). The participle *ploutōn* ('being rich, bestowing richly') describes God's generosity as inexhaustible — there is enough grace for all who call.
13. Paul quotes Joel 2:32 (LXX 3:5). In Joel's original context, 'the Lord' (*kyrios*) translates YHWH. Paul applies this to Jesus as Lord — those who call on Jesus' name receive the salvation promised to those who call on YHWH's name. This is one of the clearest implicit affirmations of Christ's divine status in Paul's letters.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joel 2:32 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Paul constructs a chain of necessary conditions working backward from calling to believing to hearing to preaching. Each link depends on the prior one. The logic establishes the necessity of gospel proclamation — faith is not a spontaneous human achievement but a response to a proclaimed message. The Greek *hou ouk ēkousan* can mean 'whom they have not heard' (hearing Christ himself through the preacher) or 'of whom they have not heard' (hearing about Christ).
15. The chain's final link: preaching requires sending (*apostolōsin*, from *apostellō* — the root of 'apostle'). Paul quotes Isaiah 52:7, which describes messengers bringing news of Israel's return from exile. Paul applies it to gospel preachers. The SBLGNT has a shorter quotation than the KJV, omitting 'the gospel of peace' — which appears in the fuller Isaiah text.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 52:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The verb *hypēkousan* ('obeyed') equates believing the gospel with obeying it — consistent with the 'obedience of faith' framework (1:5; 16:26). Paul quotes Isaiah 53:1, the opening of the Suffering Servant passage. The word *akoē* ('what is heard, report, message') connects to the hearing-chain of verse 14. Isaiah's lament is that the message was proclaimed but not believed.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 53:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Paul summarizes the chain: faith originates in hearing (*ex akoēs*), and hearing is mediated by the word of Christ (*dia rhēmatos Christou*). The SBLGNT reads 'word of Christ' (*Christou*) rather than the KJV's 'word of God' (*theou*) — the critical text attributes the gospel message specifically to Christ. The *rhēma* ('word, message, spoken word') is the concrete, proclaimed gospel.
18. Paul addresses a potential excuse: perhaps Israel did not hear. He refutes this with Psalm 19:4 (LXX 18:5), which originally described creation's testimony to God. Paul applies it to the gospel's proclamation — the message has reached everywhere. Israel's failure is not for lack of hearing.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 19:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. A second potential excuse: perhaps Israel did not understand. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 32:21 — God himself predicted that he would provoke Israel's jealousy through Gentile inclusion. The Gentiles, once considered 'no nation' (*ouk ethnei*) and 'foolish' (*asyneto*), now receive what Israel rejected. This theme of provoking jealousy will be central to 11:11-14.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 32:21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Paul quotes Isaiah 65:1. The verb *apitolma* ('dares, is bold enough') acknowledges that Isaiah's statement is provocative. God was found by those not seeking him and revealed himself to those not asking — this is the Gentile experience of unexpected grace. The verbs are passive/reflexive from God's perspective: God actively reveals himself to those who had no claim on him.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 65:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

21. Paul quotes Isaiah 65:2. The image of God stretching out his hands (*exepetasa tas cheiras*) is one of the most poignant in Scripture — God reaching out, arms extended, to a people who refuse to come. The two adjectives *apeithonta* ('disobedient, rebellious') and *antilegonta* ('contradicting, opposing') describe Israel's active resistance, not passive ignorance. The chapter ends with this image of divine longing and human stubbornness — but the outstretched hands suggest God has not given up. This sets up chapter 11's argument.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 65:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

11

Summary: *Romans 11 resolves the Israel question. Paul asks: has God rejected his people? No — Paul himself is proof. A remnant exists by grace. The rest were hardened, but their stumbling has brought salvation to the Gentiles, which will in turn provoke Israel to jealousy. Using the olive tree metaphor, Paul warns Gentile believers not to boast against the natural branches — if God did not spare the natural branches, he will not spare the grafted ones either. Paul then reveals a mystery: a partial hardening has come upon Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, and so all Israel will be saved. The chapter concludes with a doxology praising the depth of God's wisdom and knowledge.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'mystery' of verse 25-26 is one of the most debated passages in the New Testament. 'All Israel will be saved' has been interpreted as (1) all ethnic Israel will eventually believe, (2) the elect from Israel across all generations, or (3) the full people of God (Jew and Gentile). The olive tree metaphor (vv. 17-24) is Paul's most vivid illustration of the relationship between Israel and the church — Gentile believers are grafted into Israel's olive tree, not the reverse. The concluding doxology (vv. 33-36) is one of the most sublime passages of theological worship in all of Scripture.*

Translation Friction: *The meaning of 'all Israel' (*pas Israēl*) in verse 26 is the central interpretive challenge. We render the Greek as given and note the range of interpretations. The olive tree metaphor involves botanically unusual grafting (wild branches onto a cultivated tree), which Paul himself acknowledges as 'contrary to nature' (v. 24).*

Connections: *The Elijah narrative (vv. 2-4) draws from 1 Kings 19:10-18. The hardening motif quotes Deuteronomy 29:4, Isaiah 29:10, and Psalm 69:22-23. The olive tree may allude to Jeremiah 11:16. The 'deliverer from Zion' quotation (v. 26) combines Isaiah 59:20-21 and Isaiah 27:9. The doxology echoes Isaiah 40:13 and Job 41:11.*

1I ask then, has God rejected his people? Absolutely not! For I myself am an Israelite, a descendant of Abraham, from the tribe of Benjamin. 2God has not rejected his people whom he foreknew. Or do you not know what the Scripture says about Elijah, how he appeals to God against Israel? 3"Lord, they have killed your prophets, they have torn down your altars, and I alone am left, and they seek my life." 4But what is God's reply to him? "I have kept for myself seven thousand men who have not bowed the knee to Baal." 5So too at the present time there is a remnant chosen by grace. 6But if it is by grace, it is no longer on the basis of works; otherwise grace would no longer be grace. 7What then? Israel failed to obtain what it was pursuing. The elect obtained it, but the rest were hardened, 8According as it is recorded, God has granted them the inner life of slumber, sight that they should not witness, and ears that they should not hear;) to this day. 9And David says: "Let their table become a snare and a trap, a stumbling block and a retribution for them; 10Let their eyes grow dark so they cannot see, and let their backs be bent under the burden forever. 11So I ask, did they stumble so as to fall beyond recovery? Absolutely not! Rather, through their trespass salvation has come to the Gentiles, so as to make Israel jealous. 12Now if their trespass means riches for the world, and their failure means riches for the Gentiles, how much more will their full inclusion mean! 13Now I am speaking to you Gentiles. Inasmuch as I am an apostle to the Gentiles, I magnify my ministry, 14If by any means I may provoke to emulation them which are my physical nature, and may rescue some of them. 15For if their rejection means the reconciliation of the world, what will their acceptance mean but life from the dead? 16If the dough offered as firstfruits is holy, then the whole batch is holy; and if the root is holy, so are the branches. 17But if some of the branches were broken off, and you, a wild olive shoot, were grafted in among them and now share in the nourishing root of the olive tree, 18Boast not opposed to the branches. But if you boast, you bearest not the root, but the root you. 19Then you will say, "Branches were

broken off so that I might be grafted in." ²⁰True enough. They were broken off because of their unbelief, and you stand by faith. So do not be arrogant, but be afraid. ²¹For if God did not spare the natural branches, neither will he spare you. ²²Consider then the kindness and the severity of God: severity toward those who have fallen, but God's kindness toward you — provided you continue in his kindness. Otherwise you too will be cut off. ²³And even they, if they do not persist in their unbelief, will be grafted in, for God has the power to graft them in again. ²⁴For if you were cut from what is by nature a wild olive tree and grafted, contrary to nature, into a cultivated olive tree, how much more will these natural branches be grafted back into their own olive tree! ²⁵For I do not want you to be unaware, brothers and sisters, of this mystery — lest you be wise in your own sight — that a partial hardening has come upon Israel until the fullness of the Gentiles has come in, ²⁶So all Israel will be saved — as it is written, There will come out of Sion the Deliverer, and will turn away ungodliness from Jacob: ²⁷"And this will be my covenant with them, when I take away their sins." ²⁸Regarding the gospel, they are enemies for your sake; but regarding election, they are beloved for the sake of the patriarchs. ²⁹For the gifts and the calling of God are irrevocable. ³⁰For just as you were once disobedient to God but now have received mercy because of their disobedience, ³¹In deed, even so have these also now not believed, that by way of your mercy they also may obtain mercy. ³²For God has consigned all to disobedience, so that he may have mercy on all. ³³Oh, the depth of the riches and wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments and how untraceable his ways! ³⁴Since who has known what the Lord is thinking? or who has been his advisor? ³⁵"Or who has given a gift to him that he might be repaid?" ³⁶Are all things — to whom be glory for ever, for of him, and through him, and to him. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *apōsato* ('pushed away, rejected') echoes the language of Psalm 94:14 (LXX 93:14): 'the LORD will not reject his people.' Paul offers himself as exhibit A: if God had rejected Israel, Paul — a thoroughbred Israelite — would not be an apostle. The tribe of Benjamin was significant: it remained loyal to the house of David and was the tribe of Israel's first king, Saul (Paul's namesake).
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 94:14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The verb *proegnō* ('foreknew') links back to 8:29 — God's foreknowledge is not mere advance awareness but relational choosing. A people whom God foreknew cannot be ultimately rejected. The verb *entynchanei* ('appeals, intercedes') is the same word used for Christ's intercession in 8:34, but here Elijah intercedes against Israel.
3. Paul quotes 1 Kings 19:10, 14 (with slight modifications from the LXX). Elijah's despair is absolute — he believes he is the sole remaining faithful person in Israel. The historical parallel to Paul's time is clear: apparent wholesale rejection of God's purposes.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The word *chrēmatismos* ('divine reply, oracle') is a formal, authoritative response. God corrects Elijah's perception: seven thousand remained faithful. The verb *katelipōn* ('I kept, I reserved for myself') is emphatic — God preserved the remnant by his own initiative. The phrase *emautō* ('for myself') makes the remnant God's personal possession. Paul quotes 1 Kings 19:18.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Paul applies the Elijah precedent to his own era: just as God preserved seven thousand in Elijah's day, so now a remnant of Jewish believers exists. The phrase *kat' eklogēn charitos* ('according to the election of grace') identifies grace, not merit, as the basis of remnant membership.
6. Paul states the logical incompatibility of grace and works as bases for election. The SBLGNT omits the longer reading found in the KJV ('But if it be of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work'), which appears in later manuscripts. The principle is absolute: if the remnant is chosen by grace, works cannot be the basis — the two are mutually exclusive.
7. Paul distinguishes two groups within Israel: *hē eklogē* ('the elect,' the remnant that believed) and *hoi loipoi* ('the rest,' the majority). The verb *epōrōthēsan* ('were hardened, made callous') is a divine passive — God hardened them, as in 9:18. The word *pōrōsis* suggests the formation of a callus or the hardening of stone.
8. Paul combines Deuteronomy 29:4 (LXX) and Isaiah 29:10. The word *katanyxeōs* ('stupor, deep sleep, numbness') describes a spiritual insensibility — aware of God's truth yet unable to perceive it. The phrase *heōs tēs sēmeron hēmeras* ('until this present day') extends the condition from Moses and Isaiah's time to Paul's own.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 29:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 29:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Paul quotes Psalm 69:22-23 (LXX 68:23-24), attributed to David. The 'table' (trapeza) may symbolize the Torah or the temple sacrifices — Israel's privileges become the very instruments of their ensnaring when they cling to them as substitutes for faith in Christ.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 69:22-23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The continuation of Psalm 69:23. Darkened eyes and bent backs describe a people burdened and blinded. The phrase *dia pantos* ('forever, continually') seems final — but Paul will argue in the following verses that this hardening is not permanent. The Psalm's imprecatory language is applied typologically, not as Paul's personal wish.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 69:22-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Paul distinguishes between stumbling (*ptaiō*, a temporary misstep) and falling (*piptō*, a permanent collapse). Israel stumbled but did not fall permanently. The divine purpose behind Israel's trespass is twofold: (1) salvation goes to the Gentiles, and (2) Israel is provoked to jealousy by Gentile faith. This jealousy is redemptive, not destructive — it is meant to draw Israel back.
12. Another 'how much more' (*posō mallon*) argument: if Israel's rejection produced worldwide blessing, Israel's acceptance will produce something even greater. The word *plērōma* ('fullness, full number, full inclusion') is the positive counterpart to 'failure' (*hēttēma*) — the full restoration of Israel.
13. Paul turns to address the Gentile believers in Rome directly. The verb *doxazō* ('I glorify, magnify, honor') applied to his ministry means he takes his apostolic role seriously and exercises it strategically.
14. Paul reveals his strategy: by successfully evangelizing Gentiles, he hopes to provoke his fellow Jews (*mou tēn sarka*, 'my flesh,' i.e., his kinspeople) to jealousy. The modest 'some of them' (*tinas ex autōn*) is realistic — Paul does not expect all Israel to believe through his personal ministry.
15. The parallel is breathtaking: rejection (*apobolē*) world reconciliation; acceptance (*proslēmpsis*) life from the dead. The phrase *zōē ek nekrōn* ('life from the dead') may mean (1) the general resurrection at the end of the age, triggered by Israel's restoration, or (2) a spiritual renewal of extraordinary proportions. Either way, Israel's future restoration will produce something beyond what their rejection produced.
16. Two analogies making the same point: the part consecrates the whole. The 'firstfruits' (*aparchē*) and 'root' (*rhiza*) likely refer to the patriarchs (Abraham, Isaac, Jacob), whose consecration sanctifies their descendants (the 'lump' and 'branches'). The reference to Numbers 15:17-21, where a portion of dough was offered to consecrate the whole batch, supports this reading.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 15:17-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The olive tree metaphor begins. The natural branches (Israel) were partially broken off; the wild olive shoot (Gentile believers) was grafted in. The word *tines* ('some') is crucial — not all branches were broken off. The Gentile believer shares in (*synkoinōnos*, 'co-partaker of') the root's richness. The olive tree represents the covenant people of God, rooted in the patriarchs.
18. The verb *katakauchō* ('boast against, exult over') is a compound suggesting boasting at the expense of others. The corrective is theologically fundamental: Gentile Christians are supported by Israel's heritage ('the root bears you'), not the reverse. The church does not replace Israel but is grafted into Israel's covenant story.
19. Paul voices the Gentile believer's triumphalist logic: Israel's rejection was for our benefit. While there is a partial truth (cf. v. 11), the tone of self-congratulation is dangerous.
20. Paul concedes the factual point (*kalōs*, 'true enough, granted') but redirects the conclusion. The dative *pistei* ('by faith') is the only basis for the Gentile believer's standing — not ethnic merit or moral superiority. The imperative *phobou* ('fear, be afraid') is a warning: the same God who broke off natural branches can break off grafted ones.
21. The verb *epheisato* ('spared') echoes 8:32, where God 'did not spare his own Son.' The argument from lesser to greater: if God did not spare the natural (*kata physin*) branches who had prior claim, Gentile grafts should not presume on his patience.
22. The word *chrēstotēta* ('kindness, goodness') and *apotomia* ('severity, sternness' — literally 'cutting off') describe two aspects of God's character, both equally real. The conditional *ean epimenēs* ('if you continue') introduces a genuine warning: standing in grace is maintained by continuing in faith. The threat *ekkopēsē* ('you will be cut off') is addressed to Gentile believers corporately.
23. The door remains open: Israel's unbelief is not a permanent condition but can be reversed. The phrase *dynatos estin ho theos* ('God is able') appeals to divine power — the same God who raised the dead (4:17) can restore broken branches.
24. Paul acknowledges the botanical oddity: grafting wild stock onto cultivated stock is *para physin* ('contrary to nature') — normally the reverse is done. If God performed this unnatural grafting for Gentiles, how much more easily can he regraft Israel's own natural branches into their own tree. The phrase *tē idia elaiā* ('their own olive tree') is poignant — Israel belongs to this tree.

25. Paul uses his disclosure formula (cf. 1:13) to reveal a *mystērion* ('mystery') — not something secret but something previously hidden now revealed. The mystery has three elements: (1) the hardening is partial (*apo merous*, 'from a part'), (2) it is temporary (*achris hou*, 'until'), and (3) its terminus is the entry of 'the fullness of the Gentiles' (to *plērōma tōn ethnōn*). The purpose of revealing this mystery is to prevent Gentile arrogance (en *heautois phronimoi*, 'wise in your own estimation').
26. The phrase *pas Israēl* ('all Israel') is the interpretive crux. The word *houtōs* ('in this way, thus') points to the process described: through the dynamic of Gentile fullness provoking Jewish response. Paul quotes Isaiah 59:20-21 with modifications. 'The Deliverer' (*ho rhyomenos*) is Christ at his return. 'All Israel' most likely refers to the ethnic nation as a whole (not every individual but the nation as an entity), consistent with the Mishnaic usage of 'all Israel' (Sanhedrin 10:1).
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 59:20-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Paul quotes from Isaiah 27:9 (LXX), connecting it to the new covenant promise. The word *diathēkē* ('covenant') echoes Jeremiah 31:31-34 — the new covenant includes the forgiveness of sins. Israel's salvation will be a covenant act of divine grace, not human achievement.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 59:20-21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 27:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 31:31-34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. Paul holds two realities in tension: in terms of their present response to the gospel, unbelieving Israel is in opposition (*echthroi*, 'enemies'); in terms of God's eternal purpose, they remain *agapētoi* ('beloved'). The ground of their belovedness is not their own merit but the patriarchs — God's covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
29. The word *ametamelēta* ('irrevocable, without regret, not to be taken back') is the theological anchor: God does not revoke his gifts or calling. What was given to Israel (the privileges listed in 9:4-5) remains theirs. God's faithfulness to his covenant promises is permanent.
30. Paul traces a providential pattern: Gentile disobedience Gentile mercy (through Israel's faithfulness in preserving Scripture and producing the Messiah); Israel's disobedience Gentile mercy (through the gospel going to the nations). The verb *ēpēthēsate* ('were disobedient') and *ēlēthēte* ('received mercy') summarize the Gentile journey.
31. The pattern continues: Israel's present disobedience serves the purpose of their future mercy. The phrase *tō hymeterō eleēi* ('by the mercy shown to you') means that Gentile mercy provokes Jewish jealousy (v. 11), which leads to Jewish mercy. The word *nyn* ('now') appears twice in some manuscripts — the SBLGNT includes both, emphasizing present-tense mercy.
32. The verb *synekleisen* ('shut up together, imprisoned, consigned') presents God as deliberately allowing universal disobedience — not because he delights in sin but because universal disobedience is the prerequisite for universal mercy. If anyone could claim self-achieved righteousness, mercy would be unnecessary. The double *tous pantas* ('all...all') encompasses both Jew and Gentile. This verse is the theological conclusion of chapters 9-11 and arguably of Romans 1-11.
33. Paul erupts into doxology. The exclamation *ō bathos* ('O depth!') expresses wonder at the fathomless nature of God's plan. Three divine attributes are celebrated: *ploutou* ('riches' — abundance of resources), *sophias* ('wisdom' — skill in deploying resources), and *gnōseōs* ('knowledge' — comprehensive awareness). The adjectives *anexeraunēta* ('unsearchable, beyond investigation') and *anexichniastoi* ('untraceable, beyond tracking') mean God's ways cannot be fully mapped by human reason.
34. Paul quotes Isaiah 40:13 (LXX). The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'no one.' God does not consult advisors; his wisdom is self-generated. This is not an anti-intellectual statement but a confession that divine wisdom exceeds human capacity.
34. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 40:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
35. Paul alludes to Job 41:11. No one has put God in their debt. God is the ultimate source; all things flow from him. The verb *proedōken* ('gave first, gave in advance') implies a prior gift that creates obligation — no such gift exists. God's mercy is free because no one can establish a prior claim.
35. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Job 41:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
36. The threefold prepositional phrase encompasses all reality: *ex autou* ('from him' — origin), *di' autou* ('through him' — sustenance), *eis auton* ('to him' — destination). All things come from God, are sustained by God, and exist for God's glory. The doxology 'to him be glory forever, Amen' brings the theological argument of chapters 1-11 to a fitting conclusion before the ethical exhortations of chapters 12-16 begin.

12

Summary: *Romans 12 marks the transition from theological argument (chapters 1-11) to ethical exhortation (chapters 12-16). Paul urges believers to present their bodies as living sacrifices and to be transformed by the renewing of their minds (vv. 1-2). He then addresses the body of Christ: each member has different gifts — prophecy, service, teaching, exhortation, giving, leadership, mercy — and all should function within their calling. The chapter concludes with a series of rapid-fire ethical instructions about genuine love, honoring one another, serving the Lord, rejoicing in hope, overcoming evil with good, and living at peace with everyone.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 1-2 function as the hinge of the entire letter — the 'therefore' (oun) connects all of chapters 1-11 to all of chapters 12-16. The theological indicative becomes the ethical imperative. The concept of 'living sacrifice' (thysia zōsa) is a deliberate paradox: sacrifices are normally dead. Paul redefines worship from temple ritual to total-life offering. The phrase 'be transformed by the renewing of your mind' (metamorphousthe tē anakainōsei tou noos) uses the same verb as Christ's transfiguration (Mark 9:2). The rapid ethical commands of vv. 9-21 echo the Sermon on the Mount and Proverbs.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase logikēn latreian (v. 1) is difficult: 'rational worship,' 'spiritual worship,' or 'reasonable service'? Each translation captures a different dimension. We render 'true and proper worship' but note the alternatives. The gifts list (vv. 6-8) is not systematic or exhaustive — it differs from 1 Corinthians 12 and Ephesians 4.*

Connections: *The living sacrifice language (v. 1) transforms Old Testament sacrificial theology (Leviticus 1-7). The body metaphor (vv. 4-5) parallels 1 Corinthians 12:12-27. The 'overcome evil with good' (v. 21) echoes Jesus' teaching in Matthew 5:38-48. The command to bless persecutors (v. 14) directly reflects Jesus' words (Luke 6:28).*

¹Therefore I urge you, brothers and sisters, by the mercies of God, to present your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and pleasing to God — this is your true and proper worship. ²Do not be conformed to this age, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, so that you may discern what is the will of God — what is good, pleasing, and perfect. ³For by the grace given to me I say to everyone among you: do not think of yourself more highly than you ought to think, but think with sober judgment, each according to the measure of faith that God has assigned. ⁴For as in one body we have many members, and the members do not all have the same function, ⁵So we, being numerous, are one body in Christ, and every one members one of yet another. ⁶Having gifts that differ according to the grace given to us: if prophecy, in proportion to faith; ⁷Or ministry, let us remain on our ministering — or he that teaches, on teaching. ⁸Or he that exhorteth, on encouragement — he that gives, allow him do it with generosity. He that ruleth, with diligence. He that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness. ⁹Let love be genuine. Abhor what is evil; hold fast to what is good. ¹⁰Be devoted to one another in brotherly love. Outdo one another in showing honor. ¹¹Do not be slothful in zeal, be fervent in spirit, serve the Lord. ¹²Rejoice in hope, be patient in affliction, be persistent in prayer. ¹³Contribute to the needs of the saints and pursue hospitality. ¹⁴Bless those who persecute you; bless and do not curse. ¹⁵Rejoice with those who rejoice; weep with those who weep. ¹⁶Live in harmony with one another. Do not be haughty, but associate with the lowly. Never be wise in your own sight. ¹⁷Repay no one evil for evil, but give thought to do what is honorable in the sight of everyone. ¹⁸If possible, so far as it depends on you, live peaceably with all people. ¹⁹Beloved, never avenge yourselves, but leave room for the wrath of God, for it is written, "Vengeance is mine; I will repay, says the Lord." ²⁰To the contrary, "if your enemy is hungry, feed him; if he is thirsty, give him something to drink; for by doing this you will heap burning coals on his head." ²¹Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome evil with good.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb parastēsai ('to present, offer') is the same word used for presenting sacrifices at the altar (cf. 6:13). Three adjectives describe the sacrifice: zōsan ('living' — not dead), hagian ('holy' — set apart for God), euaireston ('pleasing' — acceptable to God). The phrase logikēn latreian is notoriously difficult. We render 'true and proper worship,' capturing both the rational and the fitting dimensions.

2. Two contrasting verbs: *sychēmatizesthe* ('be conformed, shaped by external pressure') and *metamorphousthe* ('be transformed, changed from within'). The first suggests external molding; the second suggests organic, internal change. The word *aïōni* ('age') refers to the present world-system, not geography. The verb *dokimazein* ('to test, prove, discern') means evaluating and approving what is genuinely excellent. Three adjectives describe God's will: *agathon* ('good'), *euaireston* ('pleasing'), *teleion* ('perfect, complete, mature').
3. Paul uses four forms of the *phronein* ('think, have a mindset') word group in rapid succession — a wordplay impossible to reproduce in English. The compound *hyperphronein* ('to over-think, to think arrogantly') is contrasted with *sōphronein* ('to think soundly, soberly'). The 'measure of faith' (*metron pisteōs*) determines one's function within the body — different gifts reflect different allocations of faith.
4. Paul introduces the body metaphor he develops more extensively in 1 Corinthians 12. The word *praxin* ('function, activity, practice') emphasizes that different members have different roles — diversity of function is by design.
5. The phrase *en Christō* ('in Christ') defines the sphere in which the many become one. The phrase *allēlōn melē* ('members of one another') emphasizes mutual interdependence — each believer belongs not just to the body but to every other member.
6. The word *charismata* ('gifts of grace') shares the root of *charis* ('grace') — gifts are grace-given, not self-generated. The phrase *analogian tēs pisteōs* ('proportion of faith') means prophecy should be exercised within the bounds of sound faith, not exceeding one's measure.
7. The word *diakonian* ('service, ministry') is the root of 'deacon.' Paul's instruction is simple: whatever your gift, devote yourself to it. The repeated *en* ('in') construction emphasizes focus and dedication to one's calling.
8. Three gifts receive qualifiers: giving should be done *en haplotēti* ('with generosity, sincerity, simplicity'), leading *en spoudē* ('with diligence, eagerness, earnestness'), and mercy *en hilarotēti* ('with cheerfulness, gladness'). The last word gives us 'hilarity' — mercy should not be grudging but joyful. The list covers intellectual (prophecy, teaching), practical (service, giving, leadership), and relational (exhortation, mercy) gifts.
9. The adjective *anypokritos* ('genuine, unhypocritical, without pretense') contains the root *hypokrisis* ('hypocrisy, play-acting'). Love must be real, not performed. The verb *apostygountes* ('abhorring, detesting viscerally') is a strong word — revulsion, not mere disapproval. The verb *kollōmenoi* ('clinging to, being glued to') suggests adhesion — goodness should stick.
10. The word *philadelphia* ('brotherly love') and *philostorgoi* ('warmly affectionate') combine family love terms. The phrase *allēlous proēgoumenoi* ('outdoing one another, taking the lead in honoring') creates a competition of generosity rather than self-promotion.
11. Three rapid commands: negative (not *oknēroi*, 'lazy, sluggish'), positive (*zeontes*, 'boiling, on fire' — the Spirit is compared to boiling water), and directional (*douleuontes*, 'serving as a slave to the Lord'). Some manuscripts read 'serving the time' (*kairō*) instead of 'serving the Lord' (*kyriō*), but the SBLGNT reads *kyriō*.
12. Three more rapid commands forming a triad: hope rejoicing (looking forward), affliction patience (enduring the present), prayer persistence (sustained communion with God). The verb *proskarterountes* ('persisting, being devoted to, not giving up') implies consistent, unwavering prayer.
13. The verb *koinōnountes* ('sharing, participating in, contributing to') implies personal involvement, not distant charity. The verb *diōkontes* ('pursuing, chasing after') is the same verb used for pursuing righteousness (9:30) — hospitality should be actively sought out, not merely offered when convenient. The word *philoxenian* ('hospitality, love of strangers') was a crucial virtue in the ancient world where travelers depended on hosts.
14. This directly echoes Jesus' teaching (Matthew 5:44; Luke 6:28). The verb *eulogeite* ('bless, speak well of, invoke good upon') is the opposite of *katarasthe* ('curse, invoke evil upon'). The repetition of 'bless' (*eulogeite kai mē katarasthe*) emphasizes the command — the natural response to persecution is cursing; the Christ-shaped response is blessing.
15. Two infinitives of purpose expressing empathy: shared joy and shared grief. The simplicity of the command belies its difficulty — it is often harder to rejoice with others' success than to weep with their sorrow. Both require genuine emotional identification with another person.
16. Three commands about social orientation: (1) to *auto phronountes* ('think the same thing' — unity of mind), (2) *tois tapeinois synapagomenoi* ('being carried along with the humble' — identifying with those of low status), (3) *mē ginesthe phronimoi par' heautois* ('do not become wise in your own eyes' — quoting Proverbs 3:7). The word *tapeinois* can be masculine ('humble people') or neuter ('humble things').
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 3:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The prohibition against retaliation (*kakon anti kakou*, 'evil in exchange for evil') echoes 1 Thessalonians 5:15 and 1 Peter 3:9. The verb *pronoumenoi* ('giving thought to, planning for, considering in advance') suggests that honorable conduct requires deliberate planning, not merely spontaneous reaction. Paul quotes Proverbs 3:4 (LXX).
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 3:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The double qualifier — *ei dynaton* ('if possible') and *to ex hymōn* ('so far as it depends on you') — is realistic: peace is not always achievable because it requires two willing parties. The believer's responsibility is to do everything within their power to maintain peace while recognizing that others may refuse.
19. The address *agapētoi* ('beloved') softens the stern command. The phrase *dote topon tē orgē* ('give place to the wrath') means step aside and let God handle justice. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 32:35. Relinquishing vengeance is not passive acceptance of injustice but active trust that God will judge

rightly.

19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 32:35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Paul quotes Proverbs 25:21-22. The 'burning coals' (anthrakas pyros) metaphor is debated: it may mean (1) causing the enemy's shame and repentance, (2) an Egyptian ritual of carrying coals on the head as a sign of contrition, or (3) intensifying divine judgment. The context (overcoming evil with good, v. 21) favors the redemptive reading — kindness produces contrition.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 25:21-22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The chapter's concluding command summarizes the entire ethical section's approach: the Christian response to evil is not passive acceptance or retaliatory violence but active goodness that defeats evil on its own terms. The verb *nika* ('conquer, overcome, prevail') uses battle language — this is spiritual warfare waged with the weapons of kindness, generosity, and love.

13

Summary: *Romans 13 addresses three topics: the believer's relationship to governing authorities (vv. 1-7), the debt of love that fulfills the law (vv. 8-10), and the urgency of the present eschatological moment (vv. 11-14). Paul argues that governing authorities are instituted by God and serve as his agents for order; therefore believers should submit, pay taxes, and give proper respect. He then summarizes the law's commands under the single command to love one's neighbor. The chapter concludes with an appeal to wake from sleep, cast off the works of darkness, and put on the Lord Jesus Christ.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The passage on governing authorities (vv. 1-7) is one of the most consequential and controversial texts in Christian political theology. Written to Christians in Rome — the seat of imperial power — it enjoins submission to the very government that would soon persecute them under Nero. The passage must be read alongside Revelation 13 (where the state is the beast), Acts 5:29 ('we must obey God rather than men'), and the broader biblical witness about unjust governments. The love-fulfills-the-law argument (vv. 8-10) is remarkably concise and anticipates the fuller treatment in Galatians 5:14.*

Translation Friction: *The scope of submission to governing authorities (vv. 1-7) has been extensively debated. Paul's statement appears absolute but was written in a specific context (the relatively stable early years of Nero's reign) and must be balanced with the rest of Scripture. We render the text as given without limiting or extending its application. The clause 'there is no authority except from God' (v. 1) has been used to justify tyranny; this is a misreading that ignores the purpose clause (v. 4) — authorities are God's servants for good.*

Connections: *The submission to authorities echoes Jesus' 'render to Caesar' teaching (Mark 12:17) and 1 Peter 2:13-17. The love-command summary (v. 9) quotes Leviticus 19:18, as does Jesus (Mark 12:31) and James (James 2:8). The 'put on Christ' language (v. 14) connects to Galatians 3:27 and the baptismal 'clothing with Christ.' The eschatological urgency (vv. 11-12) echoes 1 Thessalonians 5:1-8.*

¹Let every person be subject to the governing authorities. For there is no authority except from God, and those that exist have been established by God. ²Therefore whoever resists the authority resists what God has appointed, and those who resist will incur judgment. ³For rulers are not a terror to good conduct, but to bad. Would you have no fear of the authority? Then do what is good, and you will receive its approval, ⁴Since he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do that which is evil, be afraid. Since he beareth not the sword in vain — since he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that doeth evil. ⁵Therefore one must be subject, not only because of wrath but also because of conscience. ⁶For the same reason you also pay taxes, for the authorities are ministers of God, attending to this very thing. ⁷Pay to all what is owed to them: taxes to whom taxes are owed, revenue to whom revenue is owed, respect to whom respect is owed, honor to whom honor is owed. ⁸Owe no one anything, except to love each other, for the one who loves another has fulfilled the law. ⁹For the commandments, "You shall not commit adultery, You shall not murder, You shall not steal, You shall not covet," and any other commandment, are summed up in this word: "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." ¹⁰Love does no wrong to a neighbor; therefore love is the fulfillment of the law. ¹¹Besides this, you know the time, that the hour has already come for

you to wake from sleep. For salvation is nearer to us now than when we first believed. ¹²The night is far gone; the day is at hand. So then let us cast off the works of darkness and put on the armor of light. ¹³Let us walk properly as in the daytime, not in orgies and drunkenness, not in sexual immorality and sensuality, not in quarreling and jealousy. ¹⁴Instead, put on the Lord Jesus Christ, and make no provision for the flesh to gratify its desires.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *pasa psychē* ('every soul, every person') includes all believers without exception. The verb *hypotassesthō* ('be subject, be subordinate') is a military term for ranking under authority. The passive *tetagmenai* ('have been established, ordered, arranged') attributes the existence of governing structures to God's providential ordering. This does not mean every governmental action is divinely approved but that the institution of governance itself is God's provision for human society.
2. The verb *antitassomenos* ('resists, opposes, sets oneself against') uses the same root as *hypotassō* in verse 1 — it is the opposite of submission. The word *krima* ('judgment') here likely means judgment from the governing authority (cf. vv. 3-4) rather than eternal damnation — the KJV's 'damnation' is too strong.
3. Paul describes the ideal function of government: rewarding good and punishing evil. This describes how government should function and often does function, not an absolute guarantee. When government reverses these functions — punishing good and rewarding evil — other biblical principles (obedience to God above all, prophetic critique of injustice) come into play.
4. The word *diakonos* ('servant, minister') is used twice: the governing authority serves God's purposes. The phrase *tēn machairan phorei* ('bears the sword') refers to the government's authority to use coercive force, including capital punishment. The word *ekdikos* ('avenger, agent of justice') describes the government as executing a function that belongs ultimately to God (12:19). Paul draws a direct line between God's wrath (1:18; 2:5) and its earthly administration through government.
5. Paul gives two motivations for submission: fear of punishment (*dia tēn orgēn*, 'because of wrath') and moral conviction (*dia tēn syneidēsin*, 'because of conscience'). The higher motivation is conscience — knowing that submission to legitimate authority is right before God.
6. The word *leitourgoi* ('ministers, public servants') is a cultic/liturgical term (from which we get 'liturgy') — governing authorities perform a kind of divine service. The verb *proskartterountes* ('attending to, being devoted to') suggests diligent, sustained attention to governing duties.
7. The word *opheilas* ('what is owed, debts') connects to the 'debt of love' in verse 8. Paul lists four obligations: *phoron* ('direct taxes, tribute'), *telos* ('indirect taxes, customs, tolls'), *phobon* ('fear, respect'), and *timēn* ('honor'). The movement from financial to personal obligations broadens the scope of civic duty. This echoes Jesus' 'render to Caesar' teaching (Mark 12:17).
8. The transition from civic obligations (v. 7) to love's obligation (v. 8) uses the same vocabulary of 'owing' (*opheilete*). All debts can be discharged except one: the debt of love, which remains perpetually outstanding. The perfect tense *peplērōken* ('has fulfilled') indicates that love is the complete and ongoing fulfillment of the law's demands.
9. Paul lists four of the Ten Commandments (all from the 'second table' — obligations to neighbor) and subsumes them under Leviticus 19:18. The verb *anakephalaioitai* ('is summed up, is recapitulated, is brought under one heading') means love is not a replacement for the specific commands but their summary and fulfillment. The SBLGNT omits 'you shall not bear false witness,' which appears in some manuscripts.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:13-17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Paul states love's relationship to the law in both negative (does no harm) and positive (fulfills) terms. The word *plērōma* ('fulfillment, completion, fullness') is the same word used for the 'fullness of the Gentiles' (11:25) and the 'fullness of Christ' (Ephesians 4:13). Love fills up the law's requirements completely.
11. The word *kairon* ('time, season, decisive moment') denotes not clock time (*chronos*) but the strategic, eschatological moment. The metaphor of sleep (*hypnos*) represents spiritual complacency. The word *sōtēria* ('salvation') here refers to the consummation — the return of Christ and final redemption — which draws closer with each passing day.
12. Two metaphors: clothing (casting off/putting on) and light/darkness. The 'night' is the present evil age; the 'day' is the coming age of Christ's return. The word *hopla* ('armor, weapons') — the same word from 6:13 — indicates that the Christian life is a battle requiring divine equipment. Light is not merely moral goodness but the radiance of the approaching day.
13. The adverb *euschēmonōs* ('properly, decently, honorably') means living as if the day has already arrived. Three pairs of vices are listed: *kōmois/methais* ('orgies/drunkenness' — excesses of consumption), *koitais/aselgeiais* ('sexual immorality/sensuality' — excesses of the body), *eridi/zēlō* ('quarreling/jealousy' — excesses of the ego). The word *koitais* (literally 'beds') is a euphemism for illicit sexual activity.
14. The metaphor of 'putting on' (*endysasthe*) Christ echoes the baptismal language of Galatians 3:27 — Christ is the garment that covers and transforms the believer. The phrase *tēs sarkos pronoian mē poieisthe* ('do not make provision for the flesh') means do not plan or prepare for sin — starve the flesh of opportunity. This verse was famously the one that Augustine read in the garden at his conversion (Confessions VIII.12.29), which immediately ended his struggle with sexual temptation.

14

Summary: *Romans 14 addresses disputes between the 'weak' and 'strong' within the Roman church over food restrictions and the observance of special days. Paul argues that both positions are legitimate expressions of faith and that neither group should despise or judge the other, since each person stands or falls before their own Lord. The chapter establishes key principles: the kingdom of God is not about food and drink but about righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit; each person will give an account to God; and no one should put a stumbling block before a brother or sister for whom Christ died.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's pastoral approach here is remarkable for its balance. He clearly agrees with the 'strong' that all foods are clean (v. 14, 'I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus that nothing is unclean in itself'), yet he devotes the entire chapter to urging the strong not to use their correct theology as a weapon against the weak. The twice-repeated 'Christ died and lived again' formula (vv. 9, 15) grounds the ethics of tolerance in Christology. The quotation of Isaiah 45:23 (v. 11) — a monotheistic confession in Isaiah — is applied to Christ as the one before whom every knee will bow.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'weak' and 'strong' is debated. The weak may be Jewish Christians maintaining Torah food laws, Gentile Christians influenced by ascetic philosophy, or a mixed group with various scruples. Paul does not fully identify them, and the labels 'weak' and 'strong' may reflect the groups' own self-designations or Paul's assessment. The statement 'nothing is unclean in itself' (v. 14) appears to set aside Levitical food laws entirely, which raises questions about the continuity of Torah for Jewish believers.*

Connections: *The 'weak and strong' discussion parallels 1 Corinthians 8-10 (food offered to idols). The phrase 'we do not live to ourselves' (v. 7) echoes Galatians 2:20. The Isaiah 45:23 quotation (v. 11) is also used in Philippians 2:10-11. The 'stumbling block' language (v. 13) connects to the stumbling stone of 9:32-33. The kingdom language (v. 17) echoes Jesus' teaching on the kingdom of God.*

¹As for the one who is weak in faith, welcome him, but not to quarrel over opinions. ²One person believes he may eat anything, while the weak person eats only vegetables. ³Let not the one who eats despise the one who abstains, and let not the one who abstains pass judgment on the one who eats, for God has welcomed him. ⁴Who are you to pass judgment on the servant of another? It is before his own master that he stands or falls. And he will be upheld, for the Lord is able to make him stand. ⁵One person considers one day more sacred than another, while another considers every day alike. Each one should be fully convinced in his own mind. ⁶The one who observes the day, observes it in honor of the Lord. The one who eats, eats in honor of the Lord, since he gives thanks to God, while the one who abstains, abstains in honor of the Lord and gives thanks to God. ⁷For none of us lives to himself, and none of us dies to himself. ⁸For if we live, we live to the Lord, and if we die, we die to the Lord. So then, whether we live or whether we die, we are the Lord's. ⁹For to this end Christ died and lived again, that he might be Lord both of the dead and of the living. ¹⁰Why do you pass judgment on your brother? Or you, why do you despise your brother? For we will all stand before the judgment seat of God. ¹¹And every tongue will confess to god, for it is written, As I live, says the Lord, every knee will bow to me. ¹²So then each of us will give an account of himself to God. ¹³Therefore let us not pass judgment on one another any longer, but rather decide never to put a stumbling block or hindrance in the way of a brother. ¹⁴I know and am persuaded in the Lord Jesus that nothing is unclean in itself, but it is unclean for anyone who thinks it is unclean. ¹⁵For if your brother is grieved by what you eat, you are no longer walking in love. By what you eat, do not destroy the one for whom Christ died. ¹⁶So do not let what you regard as good be spoken of as evil. ¹⁷For the kingdom of God is not a matter of eating and drinking but of righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit. ¹⁸Whoever thus serves Christ is acceptable to God and approved by others. ¹⁹So then let us pursue what makes for peace and for mutual upbuilding. ²⁰Do not, for the sake of food, destroy the work of God. Everything is indeed clean, but it is wrong for anyone to make another stumble by what he eats. ²¹It is good not to eat meat or drink wine or do anything that causes your brother to stumble. ²²The faith that you have, keep between yourself and God. Blessed is the one who has no

reason to pass judgment on himself for what he approves. ²³But whoever has doubts is condemned if he eats, because the eating is not from faith. For whatever does not proceed from faith is sin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *proslambanesthe* ('welcome, accept, receive into fellowship') is the same word used for God's acceptance of believers (v. 3, 15:7). The phrase *diakriseis dialogismon* ('quarrels over opinions, disputes about doubtful matters') indicates that the issues in question are matters of conscience, not core doctrine.
2. The 'strong' believer's faith extends to all foods without restriction. The 'weak' believer restricts their diet to vegetables (*lachana*), likely to avoid any possibility of eating unclean meat or meat associated with idol sacrifice. The vegetarian practice appears to be a strategy of avoidance rather than a principled vegetarianism.
3. Paul identifies the characteristic sins of each group: the strong tend to *exoutheneito* ('despise, look down on, treat with contempt') the weak as backward, while the weak tend to *krineteo* ('judge, condemn') the strong as worldly. Both responses are forbidden because God has welcomed (*proselabeto*) both.
4. The metaphor is from household slavery: a servant (*oiketen*, 'household slave') answers to his own master, not to another household's slaves. The believer's 'master' (*kyrio*) is Christ. The promise 'he will be upheld' (*stathesetai*) expresses confidence that God sustains his servants even when they err on secondary matters.
5. A second issue emerges: the observance of special days, likely Sabbaths and Jewish festivals. Paul's approach is the same as with food — both positions are acceptable. The verb *plerophoreitho* ('be fully convinced, be fully assured') demands that each person act from genuine conviction, not from peer pressure or unexamined habit.
6. Paul's criterion is not the practice itself but the intention behind it: both the one who eats and the one who abstains do so *kyrio* ('to the Lord, for the Lord'). The act of thanksgiving (*eucharistei to theō*) is the evidence that both practices are oriented toward God. The SBLGNT omits the clause about the one who does not observe the day, found in some manuscripts.
7. This verse universalizes the principle: the Christian life in its entirety — living and dying — belongs to the Lord, not to the individual. Self-autonomy is displaced by christological ownership.
8. The threefold repetition builds to the climactic declaration *tou kyriou esmen* ('we belong to the Lord'). This ownership by Christ is the basis for Christian freedom from human judgment — since we belong to the Lord, only his verdict matters. The structure is liturgical, almost creedal.
9. The SBLGNT has the shorter reading: 'died and lived' (*apethanen kai ezesen*) rather than 'died, rose, and lived' in the Textus Receptus. The purpose of Christ's death and resurrection is lordship (*kyrieuse*) over all human existence, encompassing death and life. This lordship is the basis for his exclusive right to judge his servants.
10. Paul addresses both groups in turn — the judging weak and the despising strong — using the second person singular for direct challenge. The phrase *bemati tou theou* ('judgment seat of God') refers to the eschatological tribunal. The SBLGNT reads 'God' rather than 'Christ' (found in some manuscripts), though both refer to the same judgment.
11. Paul quotes Isaiah 45:23, prefaced with the oath formula from Isaiah 49:18 ('As I live'). In Isaiah, YHWH declares that every knee will bow to him — the ultimate monotheistic claim. Paul applies this to the final judgment, where God (through Christ, as in Philippians 2:10-11) will be the universal judge.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 45:23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 49:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The phrase *logon dosei* ('will give an account, will render a word') is judicial language — each person will explain their life directly to God. The emphasis on 'himself' (*heautou*) makes judging others irrelevant: focus on your own account, not your neighbor's.
13. Paul plays on the word *krinomen* ('judge'): stop judging each other and instead make a judgment (*krinate*) about your own behavior. The terms *proskomma* ('stumbling block') and *skandalon* ('hindrance, trap, cause of falling') refer to actions that cause a weaker believer to violate their conscience.
14. Paul reveals his own position: he sides with the strong. The double attestation 'I know and am persuaded' (*oida kai pepeismai*) is emphatic. The word *koinon* ('common, unclean') is the technical term for ritually impure food (cf. Mark 7:2, Acts 10:14). Yet Paul immediately qualifies: if someone's conscience regards a food as unclean, for that person it is unclean. Conscience has real moral authority even when objectively mistaken.
15. The verb *lypeitai* ('is grieved, is distressed') indicates real spiritual harm, not mere annoyance. The command 'do not destroy' (*me apollye*) uses a strong word — *apollymi* means to ruin or bring to utter loss. The climactic phrase 'for whom Christ died' (*hyper hou Christos apethanen*) is the ultimate argument: if Christ valued this person enough to die for them, how can you not sacrifice a food preference for them?

16. The 'good' (to agathon) refers to the strong believer's legitimate freedom. The verb blasphemeistho ('be blasphemed, be spoken evil of') indicates that misusing freedom provokes others to slander the faith. Freedom exercised without love becomes a scandal.
17. This is one of Paul's rare uses of 'the kingdom of God' (he basileia tou theou), a phrase more common in the Gospels. The triad of dikaiosyne ('righteousness'), eirene ('peace'), and chara ('joy') defines the kingdom's essence in relational rather than ritual terms. The phrase 'in the Holy Spirit' (en pneumati hagio) indicates that these qualities are Spirit-produced, not humanly achieved.
18. Serving Christ 'in this' (en touto) — in righteousness, peace, and joy — gains both divine acceptance (euairestos to theos) and human approval (dokimos tois anthropois). The word dokimos ('approved, tested and found genuine') is a technical term for metals that have passed the assayer's test.
19. The verb diokomen ('let us pursue') is the same word used for pursuing hospitality (12:13) — peace and mutual edification require active effort. The word oikodomes ('building up, edification') is an architectural metaphor: the community is a building under construction, and every member's actions either build it up or tear it down.
20. The phrase to ergon tou theou ('the work of God') refers to the believing community or the individual believer — both are God's workmanship. Paul again affirms the strong position: panta kathara ('all things are clean,' echoing Jesus' teaching in Mark 7:19). Yet clean food becomes a moral problem when it causes others to stumble.
21. Paul extends the principle beyond food to wine and 'anything' (the open-ended category) that might cause a brother to stumble. The word kalon ('good, noble, right') describes the moral quality of voluntary self-restriction for the sake of others. The SBLGNT has a shorter reading than the Textus Receptus.
22. Paul addresses the strong: your freedom is real, but it is between you and God — do not flaunt it. The macarism ('blessed is') describes the person whose conscience is clear about their choices. The verb dokimazei ('approves, tests and approves') indicates thoughtful, examined freedom rather than careless license.
23. The verb diakrinomenos ('doubting, hesitating, being divided in mind') describes an unsettled conscience. The principle is profound: acting against one's conscience, even if the action is objectively permissible, is sin because it does not proceed from faith. The closing maxim — 'whatever is not from faith is sin' — has broad application beyond food disputes: it establishes conscience informed by faith as the necessary basis for all Christian conduct.

15

Summary: *Romans 15 concludes the 'weak and strong' discussion by pointing to Christ as the ultimate example of bearing with others rather than pleasing oneself. Paul grounds mutual acceptance in Scripture, citing a chain of Old Testament texts that promise the inclusion of the Gentiles in God's praise. He then describes his own apostolic ministry as a priestly service bringing the Gentile offering to God, recounts his missionary strategy of preaching where Christ has not been named, and outlines his travel plans — first to Jerusalem with the collection from Macedonia and Achaia, then to Rome en route to Spain. The chapter closes with an urgent request for prayer as Paul faces danger in Judea.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The density of Old Testament quotations in vv. 9-12 is striking: Paul strings together Psalm 18:49, Deuteronomy 32:43, Psalm 117:1, and Isaiah 11:10 in rapid succession, all demonstrating that Gentile inclusion was always God's plan. Paul's self-description as a 'priestly minister' (leitourgon, v. 16) performing the 'priestly service' (hierourgounta) of the gospel is unique in his letters — he reimagines his apostolic mission in cultic terms, with the Gentiles themselves as the acceptable offering. The collection for Jerusalem (vv. 25-27) represents Paul's concrete attempt to bind Jewish and Gentile churches together, and his anxiety about its reception (v. 31) reveals the real tensions in the early church.*

Translation Friction: *Paul's claim to have 'fully proclaimed the gospel of Christ' from Jerusalem to Illyricum (v. 19) raises historical questions — did Paul personally evangelize every region, or does he mean he established representative churches? His planned trip to Spain (v. 24, 28) is mentioned nowhere else in the undisputed letters, and whether he ever reached Spain remains debated. The collection's theological logic (v. 27) — Gentiles owe material gifts because they received spiritual blessings — has been read as either a voluntary gesture of gratitude or an obligatory debt.*

Connections: The 'bearing with the weak' theme (vv. 1-3) directly continues chapter 14 and parallels 1 Corinthians 9:19-23. Christ quoting Psalm 69:9 (v. 3) connects to John 2:17. The Isaiah 11:10 citation (v. 12) links to the 'root of Jesse' in Revelation 5:5 and 22:16. The collection for Jerusalem (vv. 25-28) is discussed in detail in 2 Corinthians 8-9 and referenced in 1 Corinthians 16:1-4 and Galatians 2:10. Paul's request for prayer (vv. 30-32) foreshadows the events of Acts 21:27-36.

¹Now we who are strong have an obligation to bear with the failings of the weak, and not to please ourselves. ²Let each of us please his neighbor for his good, to build him up. ³For Christ did not please himself, but as it is written, "The insults of those who insult you have fallen on me." ⁴For whatever was written in former days was written for our instruction, so that through endurance and through the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope. ⁵May the God of endurance and encouragement grant you to live in harmony with one another, in accord with Christ Jesus, ⁶so that together, with one voice, you may glorify the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁷Therefore welcome one another, just as Christ has welcomed you, for the glory of God. ⁸For I tell you that Christ became a servant to the circumcised to show God's truthfulness, in order to confirm the promises given to the patriarchs, ⁹and in order that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy. As it is written, "For this reason I will praise you among the nations, and sing to your name." ¹⁰And again it says, "Rejoice, O nations, together with his people." ¹¹And again, "Praise the Lord, all nations, and let all the peoples extol him." ¹²And again Isaiah says, "The root of Jesse will come, the one who rises to rule the nations; in him the nations will hope." ¹³May the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you trust in him, so that you may overflow with hope by the power of the Holy Spirit. ¹⁴I myself am convinced about you, my brothers and sisters, that you yourselves are full of goodness, filled with all knowledge, and able to instruct one another. ¹⁵But on some points I have written to you rather boldly by way of reminder, because of the grace given me by God ¹⁶to be a minister of Christ Jesus to the Gentiles, serving as a priest of God's gospel, so that the offering of the Gentiles may be acceptable, sanctified by the Holy Spirit. ¹⁷In Christ Jesus, then, I have reason to boast in my work for God. ¹⁸For I will not venture to speak of anything except what Christ has accomplished through me to bring the Gentiles to obedience — by word and deed, ¹⁹by the power of signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God — so that from Jerusalem and all the way around to Illyricum I have fully proclaimed the gospel of Christ. ²⁰and so I make it my ambition to preach the gospel not where Christ has already been named, so that I would not build on another person's foundation, ²¹but as it is written, "Those who have never been told of him will see, and those who have never heard will understand." ²²This is the reason why I have so often been prevented from coming to you. ²³But now, since I no longer have room for work in these regions and have longed for many years to come to you, ²⁴I hope to see you in passing as I go to Spain, and to be helped on my journey there by you, once I have enjoyed your company for a while. ²⁵But at present I am going to Jerusalem to serve the saints there. ²⁶For Macedonia and Achaia have been pleased to make a contribution for the poor among the saints in Jerusalem. ²⁷They were pleased to do it, and indeed they owe it to them. For if the Gentiles have shared in their spiritual blessings, they ought also to be of service to them in material things. ²⁸When I have completed this task and have delivered this fruit to them safely, I will set out for Spain by way of you. ²⁹I know that when I come to you I will come in the fullness of the blessing of Christ. ³⁰I appeal to you, brothers and sisters, by our Lord Jesus Christ and by the love of the Spirit, to strive together with me in your prayers to God on my behalf, ³¹that I may be rescued from the unbelievers in Judea, and that my service for Jerusalem may be acceptable to the saints, ³²so that by God's will I may come to you with joy and be refreshed in your company. ³³Now the God of wholeness remain with you all. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *opheilomen* ('we ought, we are obligated') indicates moral duty, not mere recommendation. The word *asthenēmata* ('weaknesses, failings') refers to the scruples of the weak conscience, not moral failures. The word *bastazein* ('to bear, carry') implies active support, like carrying a burden, not passive tolerance.
2. The phrase *eis to agathon* ('for his good') qualifies the pleasing — not flattery or people-pleasing, but genuinely seeking the other's benefit. The word *oikodomēn* ('building up, edification') continues the architectural metaphor from 14:19.

3. Paul quotes Psalm 69:9 (LXX 68:10), a psalm widely used in the NT as a passion psalm (cf. John 2:17, 15:25, 19:28-29; Acts 1:20). The logic is christological: if Christ himself absorbed insults directed at God rather than pleasing himself, believers must likewise absorb inconvenience for the sake of others. Christ is both the model and the motive for self-denial.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 69:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Paul articulates a hermeneutical principle: the entire Old Testament (hosa proographē, 'whatever was written beforehand') serves the instruction of the present community. The Scriptures produce two things: hypomonē ('endurance, steadfast patience') and paraklēsis ('encouragement, comfort'). Together these sustain elpida ('hope'), a key Pauline virtue.
5. This is a wish-prayer: Paul asks God to give what the Scriptures teach. The phrase to auto phronein ('to think the same thing, to be of one mind') does not mean uniformity of opinion but a shared disposition oriented toward Christ. The standard kata Christon Iēsoun ('according to Christ Jesus') means Christ is the model for the community's unity.
6. The adverb homothymadon ('with one mind, unanimously') is characteristic of Luke-Acts (Acts 1:14, 2:46) but rare in Paul. The phrase 'with one mouth' (en heni stomati) is a vivid image of united worship. The goal of mutual acceptance is not mere tolerance but doxological unity — praise that rises from a reconciled community.
7. This verse is the conclusion of the weak/strong argument that began at 14:1. The verb proslambanesthe ('welcome, receive') echoes 14:1 and 14:3. The SBLGNT reads hymas ('you') rather than hēmas ('us') in the Textus Receptus. The purpose clause eis doxan tou theou ('for the glory of God') gives the ultimate rationale: mutual welcome among believers glorifies God.
8. Paul describes Christ's earthly ministry as diakonon peritomēs ('servant of the circumcision') — Christ served the Jewish people first. This fulfilled two purposes: to demonstrate God's faithfulness (alētheias theou) and to confirm (bebaiōsai) the covenant promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. Christ's Jewish ministry is the prerequisite for Gentile inclusion.
9. The Gentiles glorify God for eleous ('mercy') rather than for faithfulness to promises — mercy, because they had no covenant claim. Paul begins a catena of four OT quotations proving Gentile inclusion. The first is from Psalm 18:49 (LXX 17:50, = 2 Samuel 22:50), where David praises God 'among the nations.'
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 18:49. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 2 Samuel 22:50. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The second quotation is from Deuteronomy 32:43 (LXX), the Song of Moses. The nations are summoned to rejoice with (meta) God's people — not as outsiders observing, but as participants alongside Israel. The LXX reading differs from the MT here, and Paul follows the LXX.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:43 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The third quotation is Psalm 117:1 (LXX 116:1), the shortest psalm. It commands all nations (panta ta ethnē) and all peoples (pantes hoi laoi) to praise the Lord. Paul reads this as a prophetic summons that is now being fulfilled in the Gentile churches.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 117:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The fourth quotation is Isaiah 11:10 (LXX), climaxing the chain with an explicitly messianic text. The 'root of Jesse' (rhiza tou Iessai) refers to the Messiah as David's descendant. The LXX's 'rising to rule' (ho anistamenos archein) may carry resurrection overtones for Paul. The word elpiousin ('will hope') connects to the theme of hope that frames this section (vv. 4, 13).
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 11:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. This benediction closes the theological argument of the letter (chs. 1-15:13). God is named ho theos tēs elpidos ('the God of hope'), picking up the hope theme from the preceding quotations. The prayer asks for joy and peace (echoing 14:17) that overflow (perisseuein) into hope. The source of this overflow is the Holy Spirit's power (dynamei pneumatos hagiou), not human effort.
14. Paul begins the personal section of the letter with a diplomatic affirmation of the Roman church's maturity. The triad — agathōsynēs ('goodness'), gnōseōs ('knowledge'), and the ability to nouthetein ('instruct, admonish') — indicates they do not need an apostle to resolve their disputes. This is pastoral tact: Paul has spent four chapters correcting them while affirming their competence.
15. The adverb tolmēroteron ('more boldly, rather daringly') acknowledges that writing to a church he did not found required courage. He softens this with apo merous ('on some points, in part') and epanamimnēskōn ('reminding'), framing his letter as a refresher, not a rebuke. His authority rests on charin ('grace') — his apostolic commission from God.
16. This verse contains Paul's most explicitly priestly self-description. He is a leitourgon ('minister, liturgical servant') who performs hierourgounta ('priestly service') with the gospel. The prosphora tōn ethnōn ('offering of the Gentiles') is ambiguous: it could mean the offering that the Gentiles themselves constitute (genitive of apposition) or the offering that the Gentiles bring. The former reading is more likely — the Gentile believers are the sacrificial offering Paul presents to God, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.

17. Paul's *kauchēsīn* ('boasting, ground for pride') is qualified: it is *en Christō Iēsou* ('in Christ Jesus') and concerns *ta pros ton theon* ('things pertaining to God'). This is not self-congratulation but a recognition of what God has accomplished through him. The 'boasting in Christ' language recalls 1 Corinthians 1:31 and 2 Corinthians 10:17.
18. Paul insists he will only report what Christ has done through him (*di' emou*), not claim credit for others' work. The goal is *hypakoēn ethnōn* ('obedience of the Gentiles'), echoing the letter's opening (1:5) and closing (16:26). The phrase *logō kai ergō* ('by word and deed') encompasses Paul's preaching and his practical ministry.
19. Paul claims a ministry confirmed by *sēmeiōn kai teratōn* ('signs and wonders'), a phrase rooted in Exodus traditions (Deut 34:11). The geographical scope — from Jerusalem to Illyricum (modern Albania/Croatia) — describes an arc through the eastern Mediterranean. The verb *peplērōkenai* ('I have fulfilled, completed') does not mean every person was reached but that representative churches were planted throughout this region.
20. The verb *philotimoumenon* ('aspiring, making it a point of honor') reveals Paul's missionary strategy: pioneer evangelism in unreached areas. He avoids building on another's *themelion* ('foundation'), using the same construction metaphor as 1 Corinthians 3:10-11. This explains why he has not yet visited Rome — someone else founded that church.
21. Paul quotes Isaiah 52:15 (LXX), part of the fourth Servant Song. In Isaiah, the nations are astonished by the Servant's suffering and exaltation. Paul applies this to his pioneer missionary work — he fulfills the prophetic vision by bringing the message to those who have never heard. The quotation also functions as a scriptural warrant for his strategy.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 52:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The verb *enekoptomēn* ('I was hindered, cut off') explains why Paul has never visited Rome — not lack of desire (1:13) but the demands of his pioneer work in the East. The passive voice may imply divine direction or simply the pressure of circumstances.
23. The remarkable claim *mēketi topon echōn* ('no longer having a place') indicates Paul considers his work in the eastern Mediterranean complete — not that every person is converted, but that churches are established in each region. The word *epipothian* ('longing, deep desire') expresses personal affection for a church he has never visited.
24. Spain (*Spanian*) represents the western frontier of the known world — Paul's ambition is to bring the gospel to the ends of the earth. The verb *propemphthēnai* ('to be sent on, to be helped on one's way') is a technical term for providing material support for a missionary journey (cf. 1 Cor 16:6, 3 John 6). Paul diplomatically signals he needs Rome's logistical support for the Spanish mission. Whether he ever reached Spain is unknown from his letters; 1 Clement 5:7 may refer to it.
25. Before Rome and Spain, Paul must first go to Jerusalem. The verb *diakonōn* ('serving, ministering') describes his role as bearer of the collection. The 'saints' (*hagiois*) refers to the Jerusalem church, which Paul consistently identifies as the mother community.
26. The collection is a major project spanning several years (cf. 1 Cor 16:1-4, 2 Cor 8-9, Gal 2:10). Macedonia and Achaia (northern and southern Greece) are the contributing regions. The word *koinōnian* ('sharing, participation') frames the gift as an act of fellowship, not charity. The phrase *tous ptōchous tōn hagiōn* ('the poor among the saints') specifies economic need in the Jerusalem church.
27. Paul establishes a theological logic of reciprocity: the Gentiles are *opheiletai* ('debtors') to Jerusalem because they received *pneumatikois* ('spiritual things') — the gospel, the Scriptures, the Messiah himself. In return, they should share *sarkikois* ('fleshly, material things'). The verb *leitourgēsai* ('to serve, to render service') has cultic overtones, elevating the financial gift to an act of worship.
28. The verb *sphragisamenos* ('having sealed') likely means 'having delivered securely' — as one seals a document or package to guarantee its integrity. The *karpon touton* ('this fruit') refers to the collection, described as the fruit of the Gentile churches' faith and love. Paul's travel plan is clear: Jerusalem first, then Rome, then Spain.
29. Paul expresses confidence (*oida*, 'I know') that his visit will bring *plērōmati eulogias* ('fullness of blessing'). The SBLGNT omits 'of the gospel' (*tou euangelion*) found in the Textus Receptus. The 'blessing of Christ' encompasses both Paul's teaching and the spiritual enrichment of mutual fellowship.
30. Paul's appeal is unusually urgent, invoking both Christ and the Spirit (a trinitarian formula). The verb *synagōnisasthai* ('to struggle alongside, to contend together') portrays prayer as combat — Paul is heading into danger and needs the Romans' active intercession, not passive well-wishes. The phrase *tēs agapēs tou pneumatōs* ('the love of the Spirit') is unique in Paul.
31. Paul has two fears: first, physical danger from *hoi apeithountes* ('the disobedient, the unbelieving') in Judea; second, the possibility that the Jerusalem church might reject the collection. Both fears proved well-founded — Acts 21:27-36 records his arrest in Jerusalem, and the acceptance of the collection is never explicitly confirmed in Acts. The verb *rhysthō* ('may I be rescued') is the same word used in the Lord's Prayer (Matt 6:13).
32. The ultimate goal of Paul's prayer request: to arrive in Rome *en chara* ('with joy'), not as a prisoner. The verb *synanapausōmai* ('may I be refreshed together with') is a compound expressing mutual refreshment — Paul expects to receive as well as give. The phrase *dia thelēmatos theou* ('by the will of God') submits all his plans to divine sovereignty. Ironically, Paul did reach Rome — but as a prisoner (Acts 28:16).
33. A brief peace benediction using the title *ho theos tēs eirēnēs* ('the God of peace'), which Paul also uses in 16:20, Philippians 4:9, and 1 Thessalonians 5:23. If the letter originally ended here (as some scholars propose), this would be a fitting conclusion. The 'amen' seals the benediction as a liturgical prayer.

16

Summary: *Romans 16 opens with a commendation of Phoebe, a deacon of the church at Cenchreae, and then unfolds the longest greeting list in any Pauline letter — naming twenty-six individuals and several households. The greetings reveal a remarkably diverse community: Jews and Gentiles, men and women, slaves and free, with women prominently featured in leadership roles. After the greetings, Paul inserts a sharp warning against those who cause divisions and put obstacles before the community, urging the Romans to avoid them. The letter closes with greetings from Paul's companions in Corinth and a grand doxology praising God who is able to strengthen the believers according to the revelation of the mystery now disclosed through the prophetic Scriptures to all nations.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The greeting list is a goldmine for understanding the early Roman church. Women hold prominent roles: Phoebe is a diakonos ('deacon') and prostatis ('patron/benefactor'); Prisca is named before her husband Aquila (vv. 3-4), suggesting her greater prominence; Junia (v. 7) is described as 'outstanding among the apostles'; and Mary, Tryphaena, Tryphosa, and Persis are all commended for hard labor in the Lord. The diversity of names — Latin, Greek, and Jewish — reflects Rome's cosmopolitan character. Several names are attested in Roman inscriptions for imperial slaves and freedpersons, suggesting the church drew heavily from the slave and freed population.*

Translation Friction: *Romans 16:7 is a famous crux: is Iounian ('Junia') a woman's name or the contracted male form 'Junias'? The overwhelming scholarly consensus now identifies Junia as a woman, and 'outstanding among the apostles' (episēmoi en tois apostolois) as indicating she was an apostle, not merely known to the apostles. The doxology (vv. 25-27) poses a textual problem: some manuscripts place it after 14:23, others after 15:33, and some omit it entirely. Its Pauline authorship has been questioned, though its theology is consistent with Paul. The warning passage (vv. 17-20) is surprisingly harsh compared to the rest of the letter and may address a specific situation Paul has learned about.*

Connections: *Prisca and Aquila (v. 3) appear in Acts 18:2-3, 18:18-26, 1 Corinthians 16:19, and 2 Timothy 4:19. Epäenetos as the 'first convert in Asia' (v. 5) connects to Paul's Ephesian ministry (Acts 19). The 'crushing of Satan' language (v. 20) echoes Genesis 3:15. The 'mystery now revealed' theme of the doxology (vv. 25-26) parallels Colossians 1:26-27 and Ephesians 3:4-6. The phrase 'obedience of faith' (v. 26) forms an inclusio with 1:5, bracketing the entire letter.*

¹I commend to you our sister Phoebe, who is a deacon of the church at Cenchreae, ²so that you may welcome her in the Lord in a manner worthy of the saints, and help her with whatever she may need from you, for she has been a patron and benefactor of many, and of myself as well. ³Greet Prisca and Aquila, my coworkers in Christ Jesus, ⁴who risked their own necks for my life. Not only I give thanks to them, but so do all the churches of the Gentiles. ⁵Greet also the church that meets in their house. Greet my dear friend Epäenetos, who was the first convert to Christ in Asia. ⁶Greet Mary, who has worked very hard for you. ⁷Greet Andronicus and Junia, my fellow Jews and my fellow prisoners. They are outstanding among the apostles, and they were in Christ before I was. ⁸Greet Ampliatos, my dear friend in the Lord. ⁹Greet Urbanus, our coworker in Christ, and my dear friend Stachys. ¹⁰Greet Apelles, who is approved in Christ. Greet those who belong to the household of Aristobulus. ¹¹Greet my fellow Jew Herodion. Greet those in the household of Narcissus who are in the Lord. ¹²Greet Tryphaena and Tryphosa, who labor in the Lord. Greet the dear Persis, who has worked hard in the Lord. ¹³Greet Rufus, chosen in the Lord, and his mother, who has been a mother to me as well. ¹⁴Greet Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermes, Patrobas, Hermas, and the brothers and sisters who are with them. ¹⁵Give my greetings to Philologos and Julia, to Nereus and his sister, and to Olympas, along with all the believers who gather with them. ¹⁶Greet one another with a holy kiss. All the churches of Christ send you greetings. ¹⁷I urge you, brothers and sisters, to watch out for those who cause divisions and create obstacles contrary to the teaching that you have learned. Avoid them. ¹⁸For such people do not serve our Lord Christ, but their own appetites, and by smooth talk and flattery they deceive the hearts of the unsuspecting. ¹⁹For the report of your obedience has reached everyone. I rejoice over you, but I want you to be wise about what is good and innocent about what is evil. ²⁰The God of peace will soon crush Satan under your feet. The grace of our Lord Jesus be with you. ²¹Timothy, my

coworker, sends greetings to you, as do Lucius and Jason and Sosipater, my fellow Jews. ²²I, Tertius, the one who wrote this letter, greet you in the Lord. ²³Gaius, who is host to me and to the whole church, sends you greetings. Erastus, the city treasurer, and our brother Quartus greet you. ²⁴The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with all of you. Amen. ²⁵Now to the one who is able to strengthen you according to my gospel and the proclamation of Jesus Christ, according to the revelation of the mystery that was kept silent for long ages ²⁶but now disclosed and made known through the prophetic Scriptures, according to the command of the eternal God, to bring about the obedience of faith among all the nations — ²⁷to the only wise God, through Jesus Christ, be glory forever. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul uses the formal verb *synistēmi* ('I commend, I introduce officially'), a technical term for letters of recommendation in the ancient world. Phoebe is likely the bearer of the letter to Rome. She is identified with the title *diakonon* ('deacon, minister') — the same word used for church officers in Philippians 1:1 and 1 Timothy 3:8-13. The church at Cenchreae was the port town east of Corinth, confirming Paul writes from the Corinthian area.
2. Paul asks the Romans to welcome Phoebe *axiōs tōn hagiōn* ('in a manner worthy of the saints') and to assist her in whatever *pragmati* ('matter, business') she requires — she may be conducting personal or church business in Rome. The title *prostatis* ('patron, benefactor') indicates Phoebe was a woman of wealth and social standing who supported the church financially and perhaps legally. Paul himself benefited from her patronage.
3. Prisca (the formal Latin name; Priscilla is the diminutive used in Acts) is named before Aquila in four of six NT references, suggesting her greater prominence in ministry. They were Jewish Christians expelled from Rome by Claudius's edict (Acts 18:2), met Paul in Corinth, moved to Ephesus (Acts 18:18-19, 1 Cor 16:19), and have now returned to Rome. Paul calls them *synergous* ('coworkers'), his highest term of commendation.
4. The phrase *ton heautōn trachēlon hypethēkan* ('they placed their own neck under,' i.e., risked decapitation) refers to a specific life-threatening episode, possibly during the Ephesian crisis (Acts 19:23-41, cf. 1 Cor 15:32, 2 Cor 1:8-10). The gratitude extends beyond Paul to all the Gentile churches — Prisca and Aquila's service had wide impact.
5. Prisca and Aquila hosted a house church (*kat' oikon ekklēsia*) — as they also did in Ephesus (1 Cor 16:19). Early Christians had no dedicated buildings; worship met in private homes. Epānetus is called *aparchē tēs Asias* ('firstfruit of Asia'), meaning the first convert in the Roman province of Asia (western Turkey). The SBLGNT reads 'Asia' rather than 'Achaia' (found in some MSS).
6. Mary (Marian) is a Jewish name (Hebrew Miriam). The verb *ekopiasen* ('labored hard, toiled') is Paul's standard term for strenuous ministry work (cf. 1 Cor 15:10, Gal 4:11, Phil 2:16). The SBLGNT reads *eis hymas* ('for you,' i.e., for the Roman church) rather than *eis hēmas* ('for us').
7. This verse is among the most discussed in Pauline studies. Andronicus and Junia are *syngeneis* ('fellow Jews, relatives') and *synaichmalōtous* ('fellow prisoners') — they shared imprisonment with Paul, though when and where is unknown. The identification of Junia as a woman is supported by the unanimous testimony of patristic commentators and by the fact that the male name 'Junias' does not exist in any ancient inscription or text. They became Christians before Paul (*pro emou*), placing their conversion in the earliest years of the church, possibly in Jerusalem.
8. Ampliatius (Ampliaton) is a common Latin slave name, attested frequently in inscriptions from the imperial household. The name appears in the catacomb of Domitilla in Rome in an elaborately decorated tomb, suggesting this early Christian of humble origin achieved honored status in the community.
9. Urbanus (Latin for 'city person') is another common slave name in Roman inscriptions. He is called *synergon* ('coworker'), Paul's term for ministry partners. Stachys (Greek for 'ear of grain') is a rare name but attested among members of the imperial household in Rome.
10. Apelles is called *dokimon* ('approved, tested and found genuine') — the same word used in 14:18 for the believer approved by God. The phrase *tous ek tōn Aristoboulou* ('those from [the household] of Aristobulus') likely refers to slaves or freedpersons of an Aristobulus who may not himself be a Christian. A possible identification is the grandson of Herod the Great who lived in Rome.
11. Herodion's name suggests a connection to the Herodian dynasty, possibly a freedman. He is *syngenē mou* ('my fellow Jew'). The household of Narcissus — specified as those who are *en kyriō* ('in the Lord'), indicating not all household members were Christians — may be the household of the famous freedman Narcissus who served under Emperor Claudius. After Narcissus's death, his slaves would have passed to the emperor.
12. Three more women commended for ministry labor. Tryphaena and Tryphosa (names derived from *tryphē*, 'daintiness') may be sisters or even twins — the pairing of similar names was common. Both are *tas kopiōsas* ('those laboring'), using the standard Pauline term for strenuous ministry. Persis (a name meaning 'Persian woman') receives the intensified commendation *polla ekopiasen* ('labored much'), with the past tense possibly indicating advanced age or a completed phase of work.
13. Rufus is *ton eklekton en kyriō* ('the chosen one in the Lord') — either a general description of all believers as 'elect' or a special commendation of Rufus as an outstanding Christian. Mark 15:21 identifies Simon of Cyrene as 'the father of Alexander and Rufus,' and if Mark's gospel was written for a Roman audience, this may be the same Rufus. Paul's description of Rufus's mother as *kai emou* ('and mine') indicates she had cared for Paul with maternal kindness.

14. These five names are all common slave or freedman names in Roman inscriptions. They are grouped together with 'the brothers who are with them' (tous syn autois adelphous), suggesting they form a distinct house church. The two names Hermēn and Herman (both derived from the god Hermes) indicate the prevalence of pagan theophoric names among early Christians of slave origin.
15. Another cluster forming a probable second house church. Philologus and Julia may be husband and wife — both names are common among imperial slaves. Nereus is known from Roman mythology (a sea god), and the name appears in inscriptions of the imperial household. The unnamed sister of Nereus is one of several women whose contributions are acknowledged even without a name. Olympas may be a shortened form of Olympiodorus.
16. The 'holy kiss' (philēmati hagiō) was a liturgical greeting in early Christian worship (cf. 1 Cor 16:20, 2 Cor 13:12, 1 Thess 5:26, 1 Pet 5:14). The claim that 'all the churches of Christ' (hai ekklēsiai pasai tou Christou) send greetings is bold — Paul speaks as the apostle to the Gentiles with authority to represent the wider church. This is the only time the phrase 'churches of Christ' appears in Paul.
17. The warning is abrupt after the warm greetings — Paul shifts to urgent imperative. The verb skopein ('watch out for, keep your eye on') implies active vigilance. The troublemakers create dichostasias ('divisions, dissensions') and skandala ('stumbling blocks, traps') that contradict the teaching the Romans received. The identity of these opponents is debated — they may be Judaizers, libertines, or false teachers of another kind.
18. The phrase tē heautōn koilia ('their own belly') may be literal (gluttons who violate food ethics) or metaphorical (self-serving in general); cf. Philippians 3:19. The words chrēstologias ('smooth talk, fine-sounding speech') and eulogias ('flattery, pleasant words') describe persuasive rhetoric used to manipulate. The akakōn ('innocent, naive, unsuspecting') are the vulnerable members of the community who lack discernment.
19. Paul balances his warning with affirmation: the Romans' obedience (hypakoē) is widely known (cf. 1:8). His desire that they be sophous eis to agathon ('wise toward the good') and akeriaous eis to kakon ('innocent toward evil') echoes Jesus' instruction to be 'wise as serpents and innocent as doves' (Matt 10:16). The word akeraious ('unmixed, pure, innocent') means untainted by evil, not naive about its existence.
20. This verse combines a promise with a benediction. The phrase ho theos tēs eirēnēs ('the God of peace') appeared in 15:33. The crushing of Satan echoes Genesis 3:15 (LXX), where God promises that the woman's offspring will crush the serpent. The en tachei ('quickly, soon') expresses eschatological urgency. The SBLGNT omits the 'amen' found in some manuscripts after the grace benediction.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 3:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Timothy is Paul's most prominent coworker, co-sender of six letters. Lucius may be Lucius of Cyrene (Acts 13:1), though identification is uncertain. Jason is likely the Jason of Thessalonica who hosted Paul (Acts 17:5-9). Sosipater may be the Sopater of Beroea mentioned in Acts 20:4. All three are called syngeneis ('fellow Jews, kinsmen').
22. A rare moment where the secretary (amanuensis) identifies himself. Tertius physically wrote the letter at Paul's dictation — a common practice in antiquity (cf. Gal 6:11, where Paul notes his own handwriting). The Latin name Tertius ('third') is a common slave name. His personal greeting en kyriō ('in the Lord') identifies him as a fellow believer, not merely a hired scribe.
23. Gaius is Paul's host and host to holēs tēs ekklēsias ('the whole church'), indicating his house is the main meeting place in Corinth (likely the Gaius of 1 Cor 1:14). Erastus holds the office of oikonomos tēs poleōs ('city treasurer, city steward'), one of the highest-ranking Christians mentioned in the NT. An inscription found in Corinth reads 'Erastus in return for his aedileship laid [this pavement] at his own expense.' Quartus ('fourth') is another Latin numerical name, likely indicating slave origin.
24. This grace benediction is absent from many early manuscripts of the SBLGNT tradition and is bracketed or omitted in critical editions. Some scholars regard it as a scribal addition harmonizing with v. 20b. If original, it serves as a second closing blessing before the doxology. Its placement varies across manuscript families, reflecting the complex textual history of Romans 16.
25. The doxology (vv. 25-27) is one of the most debated textual issues in Paul's letters. Some manuscripts place it after 14:23, others here, others in both locations, and some omit it. Its vocabulary has affinities with Colossians and Ephesians, leading some scholars to question Pauline authorship, though its themes are thoroughly Pauline. The phrase to euangelion mou ('my gospel') is characteristically Pauline (2:16, 2 Tim 2:8). The mystērion ('mystery') is not esoteric knowledge but God's previously hidden plan now revealed.
26. The mystery, once hidden, is now phanerōthentos ('made manifest, disclosed'). The means of disclosure is dia graphōn prophētikōn ('through the prophetic Scriptures') — the OT writings, now read in light of Christ. The phrase eis hypakoēn pisteōs ('for the obedience of faith') forms an inclusio with 1:5, bracketing the entire letter. The goal is universal: eis panta ta ethnē ('to all the nations').
27. The doxology reaches its climax: monō sophō theō ('to the only wise God') echoes 11:33-36 and Jewish liturgical formulations. The mediation of Jesus Christ (dia Iēsou Christou) is characteristic of Paul's theology — glory reaches God through Christ. The relative pronoun hō ('to whom') creates a grammatical ambiguity: does glory go to God or to Christ? The overall structure directs it to God through Christ. The final 'amen' seals the entire letter as an act of worship, concluding Paul's most systematic theological work.

1 Corinthians

1

Summary: *Paul opens his letter to the Corinthian church with a standard apostolic greeting, affirming his calling and the sanctified status of his readers. He gives thanks for the spiritual gifts present in Corinth, then immediately addresses the central crisis: the church has fractured into rival factions claiming allegiance to Paul, Apollos, Cephas, or Christ himself. Paul argues that Christ cannot be divided and that the cross — foolishness to the world — is the true power and wisdom of God. He reminds the Corinthians that God chose what the world considers foolish, weak, and insignificant to shame the wise and strong.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's opening establishes the theological framework for the entire letter: the cross inverts worldly values. The Corinthian factions reflect a culture obsessed with rhetorical skill and social status — values Paul systematically dismantles. The phrase 'the word of the cross' (ho logos tou staurou) in verse 18 is startling in its original context: crucifixion was so shameful that Roman writers avoided detailed discussion of it. Paul places this scandal at the center of God's wisdom.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek schismata (v. 10) literally means 'tears' or 'rips' — the same word used for tearing cloth. We render it as 'divisions' for clarity. The phrase 'Christ crucified' (Christon estauromenon, v. 23) uses the perfect passive participle, indicating a past event with ongoing significance — Christ is not merely 'one who was crucified' but remains 'the crucified one.' The relationship between sophia ('wisdom') and logos ('word/message') in this chapter is complex and resists neat English equivalents.*

Connections: *Paul's argument about divine wisdom overturning human wisdom draws on Isaiah 29:14 (quoted in v. 19) and Jeremiah 9:23-24 (echoed in vv. 26-31). The theme of God choosing the weak to shame the strong echoes the Old Testament pattern seen in David vs. Goliath, Gideon's reduced army, and the election of Israel itself. The baptism discussion (vv. 14-17) will be revisited in chapters 10 and 12.*

¹Paul, called as an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and our brother Sosthenes, ²To the church of God that is in Corinth, to those who have been sanctified in Christ Jesus, called as saints, together with all who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ in every place — their Lord and ours: ³Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. ⁴I always thank my God for you because of the grace of God that was given to you in Christ Jesus, ⁵Through him you have been made rich in every way — in all your speaking and in all your knowledge. ⁶Indeed as the testimony of Christ was confirmed in you:. ⁷As a result, you are not lacking any spiritual gift while you eagerly wait for our Lord Jesus Christ to

return. ⁸He will also sustain you to the end, so that you will be blameless on the day of our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁹God is faithful, by whom you were called into fellowship with his Son, Jesus Christ our Lord. ¹⁰Now I urge you, brothers and sisters, by the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that all of you agree and that there be no divisions among you, but that you be united in the same mind and the same purpose. ¹¹For it has been reported to me about you, my brothers and sisters, by Chloe's people, that there are quarrels among you. ¹²What I mean is this: each of you says, "I belong to Paul," or "I belong to Apollos," or "I belong to Cephas," or "I belong to Christ." ¹³Is Christ divided? was Paul crucified for you? or were you baptized by the authority of Paul? ¹⁴I am grateful to God that I did not baptize any of you, but Crispus and Gaius; ¹⁵Lest any should say that I had immersed in mine own identity. ¹⁶I did baptize the household of Stephanas as well. Beyond that, I do not know whether I baptized anyone else. ¹⁷For Christ did not send me to baptize but to proclaim the gospel — and not with eloquent wisdom, so that the cross of Christ would not be emptied of its power. ¹⁸For the message of the cross is foolishness to those who are perishing, but to us who are being saved it is the power of God. ¹⁹For it is written: "I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and the discernment of the discerning I will set aside." ²⁰Where is the wise person? Where is the scribe? Where is the debater of this age? Has God not made the wisdom of the world foolish? ²¹For since, in the wisdom of God, the world through its wisdom did not come to know God, God was pleased through the foolishness of the proclamation to save those who believe. ²²For Jews ask for signs and Greeks seek wisdom, ²³However, we preach Christ crucified, to the Jews a stumblingblock, and to the Greeks foolishness; ²⁴And the wisdom of god, but to them which are called, both Jews and Greeks, Christ the power of God. ²⁵For the foolishness of God is wiser than human wisdom, and the weakness of God is stronger than human strength. ²⁶For consider your calling, brothers and sisters: not many of you were wise by human standards, not many were powerful, not many were of noble birth. ²⁷But God chose the foolish things of the world to shame the wise, and God chose the weak things of the world to shame the strong, ²⁸Base matters of the age, and matters which are despised, has God chosen, yea, and matters which are not, to bring to nought things that are:. ²⁹Indeed, that no flesh should glory in his presence. ³⁰It is because of him that you are in Christ Jesus, who became for us wisdom from God — our righteousness, sanctification, and redemption — ³¹That, in keeping with as it is written, He that glorieth, let him glory in the Lord.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *kletos apostolos* ('called apostle') lacks the infinitive 'to be' — Paul is not 'called to become' an apostle but 'a called apostle,' one whose identity is defined by divine summons. Sosthenes may be the synagogue ruler mentioned in Acts 18:17, though this identification is uncertain.
2. The Greek *hegiasmenois* ('having been sanctified') is a perfect passive participle — sanctification is something God has already done to them, not something they achieved. As with *kletos* in verse 1, *kletois hagios* ('called saints') lacks the infinitive 'to be.' They are not 'called to become saints' but are 'called-saints' — their identity is established by God's call. The final phrase *autōn kai hēmōn* ('theirs and ours') is grammatically ambiguous: it could modify 'place' (every place, theirs and ours) or 'Lord' (their Lord and ours). We follow the latter reading as it reinforces the letter's unity theme.
3. Paul's greeting combines the Greek *charis* ('grace') with the Hebrew-rooted *eirēnē* ('peace,' corresponding to *shalom*). This dual greeting bridges the Greek and Jewish worlds represented in the Corinthian congregation. The pairing of God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ as co-source of grace and peace reflects early high Christology.
4. Paul's thanksgiving section (vv. 4-9) is diplomatically crafted — he thanks God for what God has done among them, not for what they have accomplished. The grace (*charis*) is described as 'given' (*dotheisē*, aorist passive) — a definite past act of divine generosity.
5. The verb *eploutisthēte* ('you were enriched') is aorist passive — God did the enriching. The two areas of enrichment, *logos* ('speech/word') and *gnōsis* ('knowledge'), are precisely the gifts the Corinthians valued most and would later abuse. Paul's thanksgiving subtly sets up his critique.
6. The Greek *martyrion tou Christou* ('testimony of/about Christ') could be an objective genitive ('testimony about Christ') or subjective genitive ('testimony from Christ'). We take it as objective — the apostolic witness about Christ was validated in their experience. The verb *ebēbaiōthē* ('was confirmed') is a legal term for establishing or guaranteeing something.
7. The Greek *charisma* ('gift of grace') will become a major topic in chapters 12-14. Paul acknowledges the Corinthians' giftedness while framing it eschatologically — gifts serve the community while they await Christ's return. The word *apokalypsis* ('revelation, unveiling') refers to Christ's return, not a private spiritual experience.
8. The verb *ebēbaiōsei* ('will confirm/sustain') echoes *ebēbaiōthē* in verse 6 — the same God who confirmed the testimony will confirm the believers. The word *anenklētous* ('blameless, without accusation') is a legal term: they will stand unindicted on judgment day. 'The day of our Lord Jesus Christ' refers to the final judgment, corresponding to the Old Testament 'day of the LORD.'

9. The declaration *pistos ho theos* ('faithful is God') anchors the entire thanksgiving — the Corinthians' security rests not on their performance but on God's faithfulness. The word *koinōnia* ('fellowship, participation, sharing') denotes a deep, mutual participation in Christ's life, not merely social association. This term will recur at 10:16 in connection with the Lord's Supper.
10. The Greek *schismata* ('divisions, tears') is the word from which English 'schism' derives — it literally means rips or tears in fabric. The church is being torn apart. The verb *katērtismenoi* ('restored, mended, made complete') is used in Mark 1:19 for mending fishing nets — Paul envisions the torn community being stitched back together. The Greek *adelphoi* ('brothers') is rendered 'brothers and sisters' since Paul addresses the entire congregation, as the context of the letter makes clear.
11. Chloe is named without further identification, suggesting she was well-known to both Paul and the Corinthians. The phrase *tōn Chloēs* ('those of Chloe') likely refers to members of her household — slaves, freedpersons, or family members who had traveled to Paul. That Paul names his source openly suggests he is not trafficking in gossip but acting on reliable intelligence. The word *erides* ('quarrels, strife') indicates active verbal conflict, not merely differing opinions.
12. The four slogans reveal faction lines in the Corinthian church. Apollo was an eloquent Alexandrian Jew (Acts 18:24) whose rhetorical skill likely attracted those who valued sophisticated speech. Cephas (Aramaic for 'rock,' = Peter) may represent a more Jewish-oriented faction. The 'Christ party' is the most debated — they may have claimed a direct, unmediated relationship with Christ that bypassed apostolic authority. Paul's point is that all four slogans are equally problematic.
13. Three rhetorical questions, each expecting a negative answer. The first — *memeristic ho Christos* ('Has Christ been divided?') — could also be read as a statement: 'Christ has been divided!' (an outraged exclamation). Either way, the implication is that factional loyalty tears apart the one body of Christ. The second and third questions establish the logic: only the one who was crucified for them and in whose name they were baptized has any claim on their allegiance.
14. Crispus was the synagogue ruler who believed (Acts 18:8). Gaius is likely the Gaius of Romans 16:23 who hosted the whole church in Corinth. Paul's relief at having baptized so few reveals how baptism was being used as a badge of factional identity — 'I was baptized by Paul' became a status claim.
15. Paul is grateful in retrospect — not that baptism is unimportant, but that the Corinthians' misuse of it to form factions was limited by the fact that he personally baptized so few of them.
16. The correction mid-thought ('I did baptize the household of Stephanas as well') adds an unpolished, authentic quality — Paul is dictating and remembering as he goes. Stephanas's household will be mentioned again at 16:15 as the 'firstfruits of Achaia.' The Greek *oikos* ('household') would include family members, slaves, and dependents.
17. The phrase *ouk en sophia logou* ('not in wisdom of speech/word') targets the Corinthian obsession with rhetorical skill. Corinth was a city that prized sophisticated oratory. Paul insists that clever rhetoric actually undermines the gospel by shifting attention from the cross to the speaker. The verb *kenōō* ('to empty, to make void') is striking — human eloquence can drain the cross of its power by making the message about the messenger.
18. The Greek *ho logos tou staurou* ('the word/message of the cross') is Paul's programmatic statement. Both participles — *apollymenois* ('perishing') and *sōzomenois* ('being saved') — are present tense, indicating ongoing processes rather than fixed states. The word *mōria* ('foolishness, stupidity') is blunt — the cross is not merely misunderstood by outsiders but actively regarded as idiotic.
19. Paul quotes Isaiah 29:14 (from the Septuagint). The original context is God's judgment against Jerusalem's leaders who relied on political alliances rather than trusting God. Paul applies it more broadly to all human wisdom that operates independently of God. The verb *athetēsō* ('I will set aside, reject, nullify') is stronger than the KJV's 'bring to nothing' — it implies active divine rejection.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 29:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Three rhetorical questions echo Isaiah 33:18. The 'wise person' (*sophos*) represents Greek philosophical culture, the 'scribe' (*grammateus*) represents Jewish legal scholarship, and the 'debater' (*syzētētēs*) may represent either or both — anyone who relies on human argumentation. The phrase *tou aiōnos toutou* ('of this age') frames worldly wisdom as temporary and passing.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 33:18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The phrase *en tē sophia tou theou* ('in the wisdom of God') suggests that the failure of human wisdom was itself part of God's design — God arranged things so that unaided human intellect would prove insufficient. The Greek *kērygma* ('proclamation, preaching') refers to the content proclaimed, not the act of preaching — it is 'the foolishness of what is proclaimed,' not 'the foolishness of the act of proclaiming.'
22. Paul identifies two cultural orientations: the Jewish demand for miraculous validation (*sēmēia*, 'signs') and the Greek pursuit of philosophical insight (*sophia*, 'wisdom'). Both are legitimate desires misdirected — God does give signs and does offer wisdom, but not in the forms these cultures expect.
23. The phrase *Christon estaurōmenon* ('Christ crucified') uses the perfect passive participle — Christ remains permanently 'the crucified one.' This is not merely a past event but an abiding identity. The word *skandalon* ('stumbling block, snare, offense') gives us 'scandal' — a crucified Messiah was an oxymoron in Jewish expectation, since Deuteronomy 21:23 declares anyone hung on a tree to be under God's curse. For Greeks, the idea that ultimate wisdom would manifest in an executed criminal was simply *mōria* ('stupidity').
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 21:23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

24. The 'called' (kletois) — the same word from verses 1-2 — now transcend ethnic and cultural categories. What Jews sought in signs (power) and Greeks sought in philosophy (wisdom), both find in the crucified Christ. The sentence structure is compressed: 'Christ [is] the power of God and the wisdom of God' — no verb in the Greek, creating a declarative force.
25. Paul uses the neuter substantive adjectives to mōron ('the foolish thing') and to asthenes ('the weak thing') of God — not attributes God actually possesses, but what human beings perceive as foolish and weak in God's actions. The comparative forms (sophōteron, ischyroteron) create an understatement: God's apparent foolishness exceeds all human wisdom, and God's apparent weakness exceeds all human strength.
26. The verb blepete ('look at, consider') invites the Corinthians to examine the sociological evidence of their own congregation. Paul does not say 'none' (oudeis) but 'not many' (ou polloi) — there were some wealthy and educated members (like Erastus, the city treasurer, Romans 16:23), but the majority were from lower social strata. The phrase kata sarka ('according to the flesh') means 'by worldly standards.'
27. The verb exelegeto ('chose') is the aorist middle of eklegomai — God's deliberate, purposeful selection. The repetition of 'God chose' emphasizes divine initiative. The verb kataischynē ('to put to shame, to humiliate') is stronger than 'confound' — God's choices actively embarrass worldly power structures.
28. The Greek ta agenē ('the low-born, the insignificant') and ta exouthenēmena ('the despised, the things counted as nothing') escalate the social inversion. The climax is ta mē onta ('the things that are not') — God chose what has no existence or standing in the world's eyes. This echoes God's creation from nothing (creatio ex nihilo) and His calling of Abraham from obscurity. The verb katargēsē ('to render inoperative, to nullify, to abolish') is one of Paul's favorite words for describing how God dismantles existing power structures.
29. The Greek pasa sarx ('all flesh') is rendered 'no human being' (with the negative) for natural English. The verb kauchēsētai ('to boast, to glory') is a key term in Paul's theology — the human impulse to claim credit is the root of the problem. The entire argument from verses 26-29 builds to this single purpose clause: God's method of salvation is designed to eliminate human boasting.
30. The phrase ex autou ('from him') places the origin of the believers' union with Christ entirely in God's initiative. Christ himself is identified as sophia ('wisdom') from God, directly countering the Corinthians' pursuit of worldly wisdom. The three terms that follow — dikaiosynē ('righteousness'), hagiasmos ('sanctification'), and apolytrōsis ('redemption') — may be appositional to 'wisdom,' explaining what God's true wisdom looks like in practice.
31. Paul paraphrases Jeremiah 9:23-24 (via the Septuagint), where the prophet contrasts boasting in wisdom, strength, and riches with boasting in knowing the LORD who practices steadfast love (chesed), justice, and righteousness. The allusion perfectly caps the chapter: the only legitimate boast is in what God has done, not in human achievement, rhetorical skill, or factional loyalty.
31. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 9:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

2

Summary: *Paul continues his argument about the cross and wisdom, now with personal testimony. He reminds the Corinthians that he came to them not with impressive rhetoric but in weakness, choosing to know nothing among them except Christ crucified. Yet he does speak wisdom — a hidden wisdom of God, revealed by the Spirit, which the rulers of this age failed to recognize. The chapter culminates in the distinction between the 'natural person' (psychikos) who cannot receive spiritual things and the 'spiritual person' (pneumatikos) who has 'the mind of Christ.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's admission of personal weakness (vv. 1-5) is remarkable for a culture that prized self-confidence in public speakers. His description of divine wisdom as 'hidden' and 'decreed before the ages' (v. 7) introduces a concept of divine mystery that will shape later Christian theology. The quotation in verse 9 ('What no eye has seen...') may draw on Isaiah 64:4 but does not match any known Old Testament text exactly — its precise source remains debated. The Spirit-searches-everything claim in verse 10 is among the most profound pneumatological statements in Paul's letters.*

Translation Friction: *The term psychikos (v. 14) is notoriously difficult to translate. 'Natural' (KJV, ESV) misses the Greek nuance; 'unspiritual' (NRSV) is too negative. We render it as 'natural person' and explain the Greek in the notes. The phrase 'the deep things of God' (ta bathē tou theou, v. 10) may be language the Corinthians themselves used in a proto-Gnostic way; Paul co-opts it for his own purposes.*

Connections: The 'hidden wisdom' theme connects to Daniel's revelation language (Daniel 2:22, 28) and to Jewish apocalyptic literature. 'The rulers of this age' (v. 8) who crucified Christ echo the principalities and powers of Colossians 1:16 and Ephesians 6:12. The 'mind of Christ' (v. 16) will be developed further in Philippians 2:5-11.

¹When I came to you, brothers and sisters, I did not come with superior speech or wisdom as I proclaimed to you the mystery of God. ²For I decided to know nothing among you except Jesus Christ — and him crucified. ³I came to you in weakness, in fear, and in much trembling. ⁴My speech and my proclamation were not with persuasive words of wisdom but with a demonstration of the Spirit and of power, ⁵Indeed, that your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the authority of God. ⁶Yet we do speak wisdom among the mature — though not the wisdom of this age or of the rulers of this age, who are being brought to nothing. ⁷Rather, we speak God's wisdom in a mystery — the wisdom that was hidden, which God predetermined before the ages for our glory. ⁸None of the rulers of this age understood it, for if they had, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory. ⁹But as it is written: "What no eye has seen, and no ear has heard, and no human heart has imagined — these are the things God has prepared for those who love him." ¹⁰But God has revealed these things to us through the Spirit. For the Spirit searches everything, even the depths of God. ¹¹For who among humans knows a person's thoughts except the spirit of that person within them? In the same way, no one knows the things of God except the Spirit of God. ¹²Now we have received not the spirit of the world but the Spirit who is from God, so that we may understand the things freely given to us by God. ¹³And we speak about these things not in words taught by human wisdom but in words taught by the Spirit, interpreting spiritual realities to those who are spiritual. ¹⁴The natural person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to that person, and they cannot understand them because they are discerned spiritually. ¹⁵The spiritual person discerns all things but is not subject to anyone else's judgment. ¹⁶For "who has known the mind of the Lord, so as to instruct him?" But we have the mind of Christ.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads *mystērion* ('mystery') rather than *martyrion* ('testimony'), though manuscripts are divided. 'Mystery' fits the chapter's theme better — Paul is about to describe God's hidden wisdom. The phrase *kath' hyperochēn logou ē sophias* ('with superiority of speech or wisdom') targets the very skills Corinthian culture prized most. Paul deliberately chose not to compete on their terms.
2. The verb *ekrina* ('I decided, I determined') indicates a deliberate choice, not inability. Paul could have displayed rhetorical brilliance but chose instead to make Christ crucified his single message. The emphatic *kai touton estaurōmenon* ('and this one crucified') uses the perfect passive participle again — the crucified state is ongoing and definitive.
3. Paul's triple description of his condition — *astheneia* ('weakness'), *phobos* ('fear'), *tromos* ('trembling') — is a shocking self-portrait for someone claiming apostolic authority. The combination *phobos kai tromos* ('fear and trembling') appears elsewhere in Paul (2 Corinthians 7:15; Philippians 2:12; Ephesians 6:5) and may reflect awareness of standing before God's calling rather than mere stage fright. Paul arrived in Corinth after being beaten in Philippi and mocked in Athens (Acts 16-17).
4. The Greek *peithois sophias logos* ('persuasive words of wisdom') is textually uncertain — *peithois* is a rare word, possibly coined by Paul. The contrast is between human persuasion techniques and *apodeixis pneumatos* ('demonstration of the Spirit') — a term from rhetoric (*apodeixis* means 'proof') now applied to spiritual reality. Paul uses the rhetorician's own vocabulary to subvert rhetorical culture.
5. This purpose clause reveals why Paul chose weakness over eloquence — a faith built on impressive rhetoric would collapse when a better speaker came along. Only faith grounded in God's power endures. This is particularly pointed for the Corinthians, who were apparently swayed by Apollos's more polished speaking style (Acts 18:24-28).
6. The shift is significant: Paul is not anti-wisdom *per se* — he does speak *sophia*, but only among the *teleioi* ('mature, complete'). The term may ironically echo Corinthian self-descriptions; the Corinthians considered themselves advanced, but Paul will soon call them infants (3:1). The *archontes tou aiōnos toutou* ('rulers of this age') could refer to human political authorities, demonic powers, or both — the ambiguity may be deliberate.
7. The phrase *en mystērō* ('in a mystery') modifies how wisdom is spoken — it comes wrapped in divine secrecy, requiring revelation to understand. The verb *proōrisen* ('predetermined, foreordained') places this wisdom in eternity past — it was not an afterthought or improvisation. The phrase *eis doxan hēmōn* ('for our glory') is stunning: the destiny of believers is glory (*doxa*), the very attribute of God.
8. The title *ton kyrion tēs doxēs* ('the Lord of glory') is extraordinary — it applies to the crucified Jesus a title that in the Old Testament belongs to YHWH alone (Psalm 24:7-10). The irony is devastating: the rulers thought they were executing a criminal; in reality they were crucifying the cosmic Lord. Their ignorance was not exculpatory but revelatory — it exposed the bankruptcy of worldly power and wisdom.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 24:7-10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The quotation loosely combines Isaiah 64:4 and Isaiah 65:17 but does not match any known Old Testament text exactly. Some scholars suggest Paul draws on an otherwise unknown Jewish source. The phrase *epi kardian anthrōpou ouk anebē* ('has not ascended upon the human heart') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'has not entered the mind' or 'has never been imagined.' The point is not about heaven but about the incomprehensibility of God's plan apart from revelation.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 64:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 65:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb *apekalypsen* ('revealed, unveiled') is the aorist of *apokalypō* — God has already disclosed His hidden wisdom. The agent of revelation is the Spirit (*día tou pneumatos*). The claim that the Spirit *eraunā* ('searches, explores') even *ta bathē tou theou* ('the deep things of God') is a remarkable statement about the Spirit's access to the inner life of God. The Corinthians may have used 'the deep things' as spiritual self-congratulation; Paul relocates the concept entirely in the Spirit's activity, not human spiritual achievement.
11. Paul uses an analogy from human self-knowledge to explain divine self-knowledge. Just as only a person's own spirit knows their inner thoughts, only God's Spirit knows God's inner reality. The argument establishes that knowledge of God requires God's own Spirit as mediator — human intellect alone cannot penetrate divine reality, no matter how brilliant.
12. The contrast between 'the spirit of the world' (to *pneuma tou kosmou*) and 'the Spirit from God' (to *pneuma to ek tou theou*) parallels the wisdom contrast of chapter 1. The verb *charisthenta* ('freely given, graciously bestowed') shares the root of *charis* ('grace') — everything believers possess is gift, not achievement. The purpose clause *hina eidōmen* ('so that we may know') establishes that the Spirit's role is specifically cognitive — enabling understanding of what God has given.
13. The phrase *pneumatikōis pneumatika synkrinontes* is highly debated. *Synkrinō* can mean 'to compare,' 'to combine,' or 'to interpret' (as in Genesis 40:8 LXX). *Pneumatikōis* could be neuter ('spiritual things with spiritual') or masculine ('spiritual realities to spiritual people'). We follow the interpretation that Paul means 'interpreting/explaining spiritual realities to spiritual people,' which best fits the context of the mature versus immature distinction.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 40:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The Greek *psychikos* ('natural, soulish') derives from *psychē* ('soul/life') and describes someone operating on merely human capacities without the Spirit's illumination. It does not mean 'sinful' but 'limited to natural human faculties.' The verb *anakrinetai* ('are discerned, examined, judged') is a legal/judicial term — spiritual realities require a spiritual faculty of judgment that the *psychikos* person simply does not possess.
15. The *pneumatikos* ('spiritual person') possesses Spirit-given discernment that operates on a different plane than human evaluation. The claim that the spiritual person is 'judged by no one' (*hyp' oudenōs anakrinetai*) does not mean they are above accountability but that their Spirit-informed judgments cannot be evaluated by those lacking the Spirit. Paul will ironically undercut the Corinthians' self-identification as *pneumatikoi* in the next chapter (3:1).
16. Paul quotes Isaiah 40:13 (LXX) — the original context is the incomprehensibility of God's wisdom. The expected answer is 'no one can know or instruct the Lord.' But then Paul makes a stunning claim: *hēmeis de noun Christou echomen* ('but we have the mind of Christ'). Through the Spirit, believers have access to Christ's own way of thinking. This is not omniscience but a Spirit-given orientation toward reality that aligns with God's purposes.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

3

Summary: Paul confronts the Corinthians directly: despite their claims to spiritual maturity, their factionalism proves they are still infants in Christ, operating by merely human standards. He reframes the relationship between himself and Apollos as fellow workers in God's field, God's building. Paul then introduces the metaphor of building on the foundation of Jesus Christ — some build with gold and silver, others with wood and straw, and the fire of judgment day will test each person's work. The chapter closes with a warning against destroying God's temple (the community itself) and a final appeal to stop boasting about human leaders.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The agricultural and architectural metaphors in this chapter establish Paul's theology of ministry: ministers are servants, not celebrities. The temple imagery (vv. 16-17) is corporate, not individual — the Corinthian community as a whole is God's temple, and those who destroy the community through division are desecrating sacred space. The judgment-by-fire passage (vv. 12-15) has generated extensive debate about purgatory, rewards, and the nature of post-mortem judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'as to people of the flesh' (hōs sarkinois, v. 1) is distinct from sarkikoi (v. 3) — sarkinois means 'made of flesh' (a description of human nature) while sarkikoi means 'characterized by flesh' (a moral critique). This nuance is difficult to capture in English. The 'fire' of verse 13 has been variously interpreted as literal eschatological fire, metaphorical testing, or purgatorial purification; we render the Greek straightforwardly without importing any particular tradition.*

Connections: *The temple imagery connects to Exodus 25-40 (tabernacle construction), 1 Kings 6-8 (Solomon's temple), and Ezekiel 40-48 (eschatological temple). The 'fire will test' language echoes Malachi 3:2-3. The agricultural metaphor draws on Jesus's parables of sowing and growth (Mark 4). The closing quotation combines Job 5:13 and Psalm 94:11.*

¹And I, brothers and sisters, could not speak to you as spiritual people but as people of the flesh — as infants in Christ. ²I gave you milk to drink, not solid food, for you were not yet ready for it. And even now you are still not ready, ³For you are yet carnal — for whereas there is in the midst of you envying, and strife, and divisions, are you not carnal, and walk as men? ⁴For when someone says, "I follow Paul," and another says, "I follow Apollos," are you not merely human? ⁵What then is Apollos? And what is Paul? Servants through whom you came to believe, as the Lord assigned to each. ⁶I planted, Apollos watered, but God was causing the growth. ⁷So neither the one who plants nor the one who waters is anything, but only God who gives the growth. ⁸The one who plants and the one who waters are one, and each will receive his own reward according to his own labor. ⁹For we are God's fellow workers; you are God's field, God's building. ¹⁰According to the grace of God given to me, like a skilled master builder I laid a foundation, and someone else is building on it. But each one must be careful how he builds on it. ¹¹For no one can lay a foundation other than the one that has been laid, which is Jesus Christ. ¹²Now if anyone builds on the foundation with gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, or straw, ¹³Indeed, every man's work will be made manifest — for the day will declare it, because it will be revealed by fire. And the fire will try every man's work of what sort it is. ¹⁴If what anyone has built on the foundation survives, that person will receive a reward. ¹⁵If anyone's work is burned up, that person will suffer loss, though the person will be saved — but only as through fire. ¹⁶Do you not know that you are God's temple and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? ¹⁷If anyone destroys God's temple, God will destroy that person. For God's temple is holy, and you are that temple. ¹⁸Let no one deceive himself. If anyone among you thinks he is wise by the standards of this age, let him become a fool so that he may become truly wise. ¹⁹For the wisdom of this world is foolishness before God. For it is written: "He catches the wise in their craftiness," ²⁰And again the Scripture says, "The Lord knows that the reasoning of the wise is worthless." ²¹So let no one boast in human leaders. For all things belong to you: ²²Whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the present age, or life, or death, or matters present, or things to come. All are yours; ²³You are Christ's. And Christ is God's.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek sarkinois ('made of flesh, fleshly') describes their condition at the time of Paul's first visit — they were new believers, still operating from natural capacities. The word nēpiois ('infants, babies') is not pejorative in itself — newborn faith is expected — but the problem, as verse 2 will reveal, is that they have not grown. Paul had addressed them as 'saints' in 1:2; now he calls them babies. The tension is deliberate.
2. The milk/solid food metaphor appears also in Hebrews 5:12-14. Gala ('milk') represents foundational teaching, brōma ('food') represents mature doctrine. The sting is in the final clause: 'even now you are still not ready' (all' oude eti nyn dynasthe). Years have passed since Paul's initial visit, but the Corinthians remain spiritual infants.
3. Paul shifts from sarkinois (v. 1, 'made of flesh' — a description) to sarkikoi ('characterized by flesh' — a critique). The evidence of their immaturity is not theological ignorance but relational failure: zēlos ('jealousy') and eris ('strife'). The phrase kata anthrōpon peripateit ('walking according to human standards') means behaving no differently from those without the Spirit.

4. Paul reduces the four slogans of 1:12 to two — focusing on himself and Apollos, the figures he can address without causing offense. The question *ouk anthrōpoi este* ('are you not merely human?') equates factionalism with sub-Christian behavior. To be 'merely human' for Paul is to fall short of what the Spirit makes possible.
5. The Greek *ti* ('what') rather than *tis* ('who') is deliberate — Paul does not ask about their personal identity but their functional role. They are *diakonoī* ('servants, ministers') — the word from which 'deacon' derives, originally meaning table waiters. This radically deflates the Corinthians' celebrity culture around leaders. The phrase *hekastō hōs ho kyrios edōken* ('as the Lord gave to each') attributes all ministry effectiveness to divine assignment.
6. The agricultural metaphor assigns complementary roles: Paul as church planter and Apollos as nurturer. The imperfect tense *ēuxanen* ('was causing growth') for God's action — versus the aorist (punctiliar) for human actions — suggests that God's growth-giving is continuous and ongoing while human contributions are discrete, limited events.
7. The phrase *oute...estin ti* ('is not anything') is deliberately stark — Paul and Apollos are 'nothing' in comparison to God's agency. This is not false humility but theological precision: in agriculture, the farmer contributes labor but cannot make a seed grow. The parallel to ministry is exact.
8. The Greek *hen eisin* ('are one') means 'are one thing' — they share a single purpose and status. This undercuts any ranking system the Corinthians have constructed. Yet individuality is preserved: each receives *misthos* ('reward, wages') according to their own *kopos* ('labor, toil'). Unity of purpose does not erase individual accountability.
9. Three possessive genitives — *theou synergoi* ('God's co-workers'), *theou geōrgion* ('God's field'), *theou oikodomē* ('God's building') — all emphasize that God is the owner and ultimate agent. *Synergoi* does not mean Paul and Apollos are God's equals but that they work alongside each other in God's service. The shift from agricultural to architectural metaphor (*geōrgion* to *oikodomē*) transitions to the next section.
10. The Greek *architekton* ('master builder, architect') is the origin of the English word. Paul claims the role not by self-promotion but *kata tēn charin* ('according to the grace') — his skill is a gift. The warning *blepetō pōs* ('let him watch how') shifts responsibility to subsequent builders. The foundation is already laid (aorist *ethēka*); the construction continues (present *epoikodomei*).
11. This is a categorical statement: the foundation is non-negotiable and irreplaceable. The present participle *keimenon* ('the one lying, the one that has been laid') indicates a foundation already in place — Jesus Christ is not one option among many but the only possible basis for the community's life.
12. Six building materials descend in value and fire-resistance: gold, silver, and precious stones survive fire; wood (*xyla*), hay (*chorton*), and straw (*kalamēn*) do not. The metaphor concerns the quality of ministry work built upon the Christ-foundation, not the personal salvation of the builders. *Kalamē* ('straw, stubble') was used for cheap construction and burns almost instantly.
13. The definite article *hē hēmera* ('the Day') refers to the eschatological day of judgment without needing further specification — a concept well established in both Old Testament prophetic literature (the 'day of the LORD') and early Christian expectation. The verb *dokimasei* ('will test, will prove') is used for testing metals by fire — the metaphor is of assaying, not punishment. The fire reveals quality, not guilt.
14. The verb *menei* ('remains, survives, endures') is the test — will the work still be standing after the fire? The *misthos* ('reward') is distinct from salvation itself; it concerns the recognition of effective, lasting ministry. The nature of this reward is not specified.
15. This verse has been central in debates about purgatory. The Greek *zēmiothēsetai* ('will suffer loss') refers to the loss of the work and its reward, not the loss of salvation — as the next clause clarifies: *autos de sōthēsetai* ('the person will be saved'). The phrase *houtōs de hōs dia pyros* ('but as through fire') suggests a barely-escaped salvation, like someone fleeing a burning building with nothing but their life. The emphasis is on the waste of poor-quality ministry, not on post-mortem purification.
16. The Greek *naos* ('temple, sanctuary') refers specifically to the inner sanctuary where God's presence dwelt — not the broader temple complex (*hierōn*). The pronoun 'you' (*este, oikei en hymin*) is plural throughout — this is not about individual bodies (as in 6:19) but about the community as a whole being God's dwelling place. The question *ouk oidate* ('do you not know') implies this should be obvious.
17. The verb *phtheirō* means 'to corrupt, to ruin, to destroy' — Paul uses the same verb in both clauses, creating a precise retributive parallel: the one who destroys will be destroyed. In context, 'destroying the temple' means tearing apart the community through factionalism. The word *hagios* ('holy') echoes the Hebrew *qadosh* — the temple is set apart, consecrated. To violate it is to invite divine judgment.
18. The imperative *mōros genesthō* ('let him become a fool') demands a voluntary surrender of worldly-wisdom status. This is not anti-intellectualism but a call to abandon the specific kind of rhetorical-philosophical posturing that was fracturing the Corinthian church. True wisdom, in Paul's paradoxical theology, begins with accepting the 'foolishness' of the cross.
19. Paul quotes Job 5:13 — the only direct quotation from Job in the New Testament. The original speaker is Eliphaz, whose theology is partly refuted by the end of Job, yet Paul adopts this particular statement as valid. The verb *drassomenos* ('catching, seizing') pictures God grabbing the wise in the very trap of their own cunning (*panourgia*, 'craftiness, shrewdness').
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Job 5:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Paul quotes Psalm 94:11 (93:11 LXX), slightly modifying it — the psalm has 'the thoughts of humans' (*anthrōpōn*) while Paul substitutes 'the wise' (*sophōn*), sharpening the application to the Corinthian situation. The word *mataioi* ('futile, empty, vain') denotes not just incorrectness but ultimate pointlessness.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 94:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** The conclusion *mēdeis kauchasthō en anthrōpois* ('let no one boast in human beings') directly addresses the faction problem. Paul's reasoning is paradoxically generous: you do not need to choose between leaders because all of them — and everything else — already belong to you in Christ. Factional loyalty actually diminishes what the Corinthians already possess.
- 22.** The list expands breathtakingly from named individuals to cosmic categories. Paul, Apollos, and Cephas are placed alongside life, death, present, and future — all belong to the believers. This is not a claim to ownership but to inheritance: in Christ, believers have access to everything God has provided through every servant and every circumstance.
- 23.** The chain of belonging — all things you Christ God — establishes a hierarchy that dissolves factionalism. You cannot say 'I belong to Paul' when you belong to Christ. The final link, *Christos de theou* ('Christ belongs to God'), is not a subordinationist statement but a declaration of the Son's perfect alignment with the Father's purposes. The entire argument circles back to 1:31: the only legitimate boast is in the Lord.

4

Summary: *Paul defines apostles as servants of Christ and stewards of God's mysteries, accountable only to the Lord's judgment — not to human evaluation. He exposes the Corinthians' arrogance with biting irony: 'Already you are full! Already you have become rich! You have begun to reign without us!' He contrasts their self-satisfaction with the apostles' actual experience of suffering, hunger, and humiliation. The chapter closes with a fatherly appeal — Paul is their spiritual father through the gospel — and a warning that he may come with authority if they do not change.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'spectacle' passage (vv. 9-13) is one of Paul's most vivid self-descriptions, drawing on Roman triumphal procession imagery where condemned prisoners were paraded last before execution. The ironic contrast between the Corinthians' self-perceived royalty and the apostles' degradation is devastating rhetoric. Paul's claim to spiritual fatherhood (v. 15) is unique in his letters and establishes an authority claim distinct from mere teaching.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek hyperphronein in verse 6 ('to think beyond what is written') has no clear referent — 'what is written' could mean Scripture, Paul's earlier letter, or a maxim. We render the phrase and note the ambiguity. The word perikatharma (v. 13, 'scum, offscouring') may be a technical term for human scapegoats in Greek purification rituals, adding a sacrificial dimension to Paul's self-description.*

Connections: *The stewardship language (vv. 1-2) connects to Jesus's parables about faithful and unfaithful stewards (Luke 12:42-48). The 'spectacle' imagery echoes 2 Corinthians 2:14 and anticipates the suffering catalogs of 2 Corinthians 4, 6, and 11. The father-child relationship language anticipates Galatians 4:19 and 1 Thessalonians 2:11.*

¹This is how a person should regard us: as servants of Christ and stewards of the mysteries of God. ²Now what is required of stewards is that they be found faithful. ³But it is a very small thing to me that I should be evaluated by you or by any human court. In fact, I do not even evaluate myself. ⁴For I am not aware of anything against myself, but I am not acquitted by this. The one who evaluates me is the Lord. ⁵Therefore do not pronounce judgment before the time, before the Lord comes. He will bring to light the things hidden in darkness and will reveal the purposes of hearts. And then each person will receive commendation from God. ⁶Now, brothers and sisters, I have applied these things to myself and Apollos for your benefit, so that through us you may learn the meaning of the saying, "Nothing beyond what is written," so that none of you will be puffed up in favor of one against another. ⁷For who regards you as superior? What do you have that you did not receive? And if you received it, why do you boast as though you did not? ⁸Already you are satisfied! Already you have become rich! You have begun to reign — and that without us! I wish you really had begun to reign, so that we could reign with you! ⁹For I think that God has exhibited us apostles last of all, as though sentenced to death, because we have become a spectacle to the world — to angels and to human beings alike. ¹⁰We are fools for Christ's sake, but you are wise in Christ! We are weak, but you are strong! You are held in honor, but we are dishonored! ¹¹To this very hour we go hungry and thirsty, we are poorly clothed, we are roughly treated, and we are homeless. ¹²We work hard with our own hands. When we are cursed, we respond with

blessing. When we are persecuted, we endure it. ¹³While defamed, we intreat — we are fashioned as the filth of the age, and are the offscouring of all matters to this day. ¹⁴I am not writing these things to shame you but to admonish you as my beloved children. ¹⁵For even if you have ten thousand guardians in Christ, you do not have many fathers. For I fathered you in Christ Jesus through the gospel. ¹⁶I urge you, therefore, become imitators of me. ¹⁷For this reason I have sent Timothy to you. He is my beloved and faithful child in the Lord, and he will remind you of my ways in Christ Jesus, just as I teach them everywhere in every church. ¹⁸Some of you have become arrogant, as though I were not coming to you. ¹⁹But I will come to you soon, if the Lord wills, and I will find out not the talk of these arrogant people but their power. ²⁰For the kingdom of God is not a matter of talk but of power. ²¹What do you want? Should I come to you with a rod, or with love and a spirit of gentleness?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek hypēretas ('servant, attendant') originally referred to an under-rower in a galley — one who takes orders. The oikonomos ('steward, household manager') manages resources that belong to someone else. Both terms deflate any celebrity status. The 'mysteries of God' (mystērion theou) are the divine secrets entrusted to the apostles for proclamation, not private mystical experiences.
2. The word pistos ('faithful, trustworthy') echoes the faithfulness vocabulary (emunah in Hebrew, pistis in Greek) central to covenant theology. A steward's primary virtue is not brilliance or popularity but fidelity to the owner's instructions.
3. The verb anakrinō ('to examine, to investigate, to evaluate') is a judicial term used for preliminary investigation. The phrase anthrōpinēs hēmeras ('human day') literally means 'a human day [of judgment]' — Paul contrasts any human evaluation with the Lord's eschatological judgment day (v. 5). His refusal to evaluate even himself is not false humility but a recognition that only God has full knowledge of motives.
4. Paul's clean conscience does not equal innocence — ouden gar emautō synoida ('I am conscious of nothing against myself') is not a claim to sinlessness but an honest assessment of his ministry. The verb dedikaiōmai ('I am justified/acquitted') is passive — acquittal comes from outside, from the Lord who alone sees truly.
5. The verb phōtisei ('will bring to light, will illuminate') and phanerosei ('will reveal, will make visible') are both future — ultimate evaluation is reserved for the Lord's return. The phrase tas boulas tōn kardiōn ('the purposes/intentions of the hearts') suggests that God judges motives, not just outcomes. The word epainos ('praise, commendation') is surprisingly positive — Paul assumes that the faithful will receive divine approval, not merely avoid punishment.
6. The verb meteschēmatisa ('I have applied, I have transferred the form') means Paul has used himself and Apollos as illustrations of a principle that applies more broadly — the real targets may be unnamed local leaders. The phrase to mē hyper ha gegraptai ('not beyond what is written') remains one of the most debated phrases in the letter. It may be a slogan, a maxim, or a reference to the Scripture quotations in chapters 1-3. The verb physiousathe ('you are puffed up, inflated') pictures arrogance as hot air — inflation without substance.
7. Three questions demolish the basis for Corinthian arrogance. The first (tis se diakrinei, 'who distinguishes you?') challenges the premise of superiority. The second (ti echeis ho ouk elabes, 'what do you have that you didn't receive?') undercuts self-made accomplishment. The third draws the logical conclusion: if everything is received, boasting is absurd. This verse became foundational in Augustinian theology of grace.
8. Paul's irony is at full force. The three declarations — kekoresmenoi ('satiated'), eploutēsate ('you became rich'), ebasileusate ('you began to reign') — mock the Corinthians' spiritual self-satisfaction using the language of eschatological fulfillment. They think they have already arrived at the consummation. The final wish (ophelon ge ebasileusate) pierces through the sarcasm with genuine longing — Paul would love it if the kingdom had fully come.
9. The imagery is drawn from the Roman triumphal procession (pompa), where conquered prisoners were paraded through the streets before being executed in the arena. The word eschatous ('last') means the apostles occupy the place of the condemned at the end of the parade. Theatron ('spectacle, theater') is the origin of English 'theater' — the apostles' suffering is a public display. The audience includes the entire cosmos: angels and humans.
10. The three contrasts are dripping with irony — the terms applied to the Corinthians (phronimoi, 'prudent'; ischyroi, 'strong'; endoxoi, 'honored') are what they claim for themselves, while the terms for the apostles (mōroi, 'fools'; astheneis, 'weak'; atimoi, 'dishonored') echo the very values of the cross Paul preached in chapters 1-2. The Corinthians have embraced the world's values while their apostle lives out the cross.
11. Five present-tense verbs describe ongoing apostolic hardship: peinōmen ('we hunger'), dipsōmen ('we thirst'), gymniteuomen ('we are insufficiently clothed'), kolaphizometha ('we are struck with fists'), astatoumen ('we are unsettled/homeless'). These are not past sufferings but current reality — 'to this very hour' (achri tēs arti hōras). This catalog anticipates the more extensive hardship lists in 2 Corinthians.
12. Paul's manual labor (tais idiais chersin, 'with our own hands') was a point of contention — in Greco-Roman culture, manual work was degrading for an intellectual or teacher. Paul worked as a tentmaker (Acts 18:3) to avoid burdening the Corinthians, but some saw this as proof he was not a real apostle. The three responses to mistreatment — blessing when reviled, enduring when persecuted, responding gently when slandered — echo Jesus's teaching in Matthew 5:44 and Luke 6:27-28.

13. The words perikatharmata ('scum, off-scourings') and peripsēma ('refuse, scrapings') are among the most degrading terms Paul could choose. Perikatharma may carry sacrificial connotations — in some Greek cities, human scapegoats (peripsēmata) were expelled or killed to purify the community. If Paul intends this allusion, the apostles' suffering has a vicarious, purifying dimension.
14. The shift from biting irony to tender affection is abrupt and deliberate. The verb nouthetōn ('admonishing, counseling, warning') combines nous ('mind') and tithēmi ('to place') — it means to set someone's mind right, combining correction with care. The term tekna agapēta ('beloved children') establishes the parental relationship Paul will develop in the next verse.
15. The paidagōgos was a household slave who supervised a child's conduct and escorted them to school — not a teacher but a guardian. Paul's point: there may be many supervisors, but only one father. The verb egennēsa ('I fathered, I begot') claims a unique generative relationship — Paul brought the Corinthian church into existence through his gospel proclamation. This is the basis of his authority: not rank or office but spiritual parentage.
16. The Greek mimētai ('imitators') is the origin of English 'mimic.' Paul is not being egotistical — the call to imitate him is grounded in his fatherhood (v. 15) and will be qualified in 11:1 ('Be imitators of me, as I am of Christ'). In the ancient world, a father's character was the primary model for his children.
17. Timothy is also called teknon ('child'), extending the family metaphor — he is Paul's spiritual son, sent to Paul's spiritual children. The phrase tas en Christō ('my ways in Christ') refers to Paul's pattern of life and teaching, not merely his doctrines. The claim to teach pantachou en pasē ekklēsia ('everywhere in every church') asserts consistency — Paul's message and lifestyle are the same everywhere.
18. The verb ephysiōthēsan ('they were puffed up, they became inflated') returns from verse 6. Some Corinthians assumed Paul would not dare to return in person and grew bolder in his absence. The construction hōs mē erchomenou mou ('as though I were not coming') implies they are wrong — Paul does intend to come.
19. The qualification ean ho kyrios thelēḥ ('if the Lord wills') is not a polite formula but a genuine submission of travel plans to divine sovereignty (cf. James 4:15). The contrast between logos ('talk, speech') and dynamis ('power') echoes the chapter 1-2 argument: the Corinthians are all words and no power. Paul will test substance, not rhetoric.
20. The phrase hē basileia tou theou ('the kingdom of God') is relatively rare in Paul's letters compared to the Gospels. Here it serves as the ultimate standard of evaluation. The kingdom operates not on the level of logos ('word, talk, rhetoric') but dynamis ('power') — the transformative power of God that actually changes lives and communities.
21. The rhabdos ('rod, staff') evokes a father's right to discipline — not abuse, but the corrective authority that belongs to a parent. The choice Paul offers is genuine: the Corinthians' response to this letter will determine whether his visit is confrontational or gentle. The word prautētos ('gentleness, meekness') is not weakness but strength under control.

5

Summary: *Paul addresses a shocking case of sexual immorality in the Corinthian church: a man is living with his father's wife, and the congregation — far from being grieved — is arrogant about it. Paul demands the man's expulsion from the community, using Passover imagery to explain why: Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed, so the community must purge the old leaven of sin. The chapter closes with a clarification about Paul's earlier letter: he did not mean they should avoid all sinners in the world, but that they must not tolerate flagrant sin within the church.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command to 'deliver this man to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, so that his spirit may be saved' (v. 5) is one of the most debated passages in Paul's letters. The Passover typology (vv. 6-8) is one of the earliest Christian interpretations of Christ's death through the lens of Exodus. Paul's distinction between judging insiders and outsiders (vv. 12-13) establishes a principle of church discipline that has shaped Christian practice for centuries.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'his father's wife' (tēn gynaika tou patros, v. 1) likely refers to a stepmother, not the man's biological mother. Whether the father was dead or still living is unclear. The phrase 'for the destruction of the flesh' (eis olethron tēs sarkos, v. 5) could mean physical suffering, physical death, or the destruction of the sinful nature. We render the Greek literally and note the interpretive options.*

Connections: *The Passover lamb imagery connects to Exodus 12 and John 1:29. The leaven metaphor draws on Exodus 12:15-20 and Jesus's warning about the leaven of the Pharisees (Mark 8:15). The expulsion command echoes the Deuteronomic formula 'purge the evil from among you' (Deuteronomy 17:7, 19:19, 22:21, 24:7), which Paul quotes in verse 13.*

¹It is actually reported that there is sexual immorality among you — and of a kind that is not found even among the Gentiles — that a man has his father's wife. ²And you are arrogant! Should you not instead have mourned, so that the one who did this would be removed from among you? ³For though I am absent in body, I am present in spirit, and I have already pronounced judgment on the one who has done such a thing, as though I were present. ⁴When you are assembled in the name of our Lord Jesus — and my spirit is present with the power of our Lord Jesus — ⁵Hand this man over to Satan so that his sinful nature may be destroyed and his spirit may be saved on the day of the Lord Jesus. ⁶Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven leavens the whole batch of dough? ⁷Clean out the old leaven so that you may be a new batch, as you really are unleavened. For Christ, our Passover lamb, has been sacrificed. ⁸Therefore let us celebrate the feast, not with the old leaven or with the leaven of malice and evil, but with the unleavened bread of sincerity and truth. ⁹I wrote to you in my letter not to associate with sexually immoral people — ¹⁰Yet not altogether with the fornicators of this present age, or with the covetous, or extortioners, or with idolaters. For then must you needs go out of the present age. ¹¹But now I am writing to you not to associate with anyone who bears the name of brother or sister if that person is sexually immoral, or greedy, or an idolater, or verbally abusive, or a drunkard, or a swindler — not even to eat with such a person. ¹²For what business is it of mine to judge those outside the church? Is it not those inside that you are to judge? ¹³God judges those outside. "Purge the evil person from among you."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *porneia* ('sexual immorality') is the broad term for illicit sexual conduct. The phrase *gynaixa tina tou patros echein* ('to have a certain woman of the father') uses *echain* ('to have') as a euphemism for an ongoing sexual relationship. Leviticus 18:8 prohibits sexual relations with a father's wife, and Roman law also forbade such unions. Paul's point that even pagans consider this unacceptable heightens the scandal.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 18:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The verb *pephysiōmenoi* ('puffed up') recurs from 4:6, 18 — the Corinthians' arrogance now manifests as tolerance of flagrant sin, possibly justified by a misunderstanding of Christian freedom. The verb *epenthēsatē* ('mourned, grieved') is striking — the appropriate response to sin in the community is grief, not indifference or celebration.
3. Paul's language *apōn tō sōmati parōn de tō pneumatī* ('absent in body, present in spirit') is not mystical out-of-body experience but an assertion of apostolic authority that operates regardless of physical location. The perfect tense *kekrika* ('I have already judged') indicates a settled verdict — Paul is not deliberating but announcing a decision.
4. The syntax of verses 3-5 is notoriously tangled in Greek, with multiple phrases that can attach to different clauses. The assembly 'in the name of our Lord Jesus' carries judicial authority — they act not on their own behalf but under Christ's name. Paul's spirit (*tou emou pneumatos*) participates in the assembly despite his physical absence.
5. The phrase *paradounai ton toiouton tō satana* ('to hand over such a one to Satan') likely means excommunication — removing the person from the protective sphere of the community into the domain Satan rules (the fallen world). The purpose *eis olethron tēs sarkos* ('for the destruction of the flesh') is debated: it may mean physical suffering, death, or the destruction of the sinful nature. The ultimate goal is redemptive: *hina to pneuma sōthē* ('so that the spirit may be saved'). Even this severe action aims at restoration.
6. Paul transitions to Passover imagery. The proverb about leaven (*zymē*) was widely known — a small amount of yeast permeates an entire batch. In Jewish Passover practice, all leaven was removed from the house before the festival (Exodus 12:15). The Corinthians' tolerance of this sin is like leaving leaven in the dough — it will spread and corrupt the whole community.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 12:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The imperative *ekkatharate* ('clean out thoroughly') echoes the Passover preparation command. The logic is paradoxical: 'become what you already are' — they are unleavened (*azymoi*) in their identity in Christ, so they must live out that identity by removing the leaven of sin. The declaration to *pascha hēmōn etythē Christos* ('Christ our Passover [lamb] was sacrificed') is one of the earliest Passover-typological interpretations of Christ's death, connecting the cross to the Exodus 12 lamb.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The verb *heortazōmen* ('let us celebrate the feast') suggests the entire Christian life is a perpetual Passover festival. The old leaven is identified as *kakia* ('malice, wickedness') and *ponēria* ('evil, depravity'), while the unleavened bread represents *eilikrineia* ('sincerity, purity' — literally, 'tested by sunlight') and *alētheia* ('truth'). Paul transforms a Jewish ritual calendar into a metaphor for ongoing Christian existence.

9. The phrase *en tē epistolē* ('in the letter') refers to a previous letter, now lost, that predates our 1 Corinthians. This means our '1 Corinthians' is actually at least the second letter Paul wrote to this church. The Corinthians apparently misunderstood his instruction, applying it to outsiders rather than insiders.
10. Paul corrects their misunderstanding with practical logic: complete separation from sinners outside the church would require leaving the world entirely, which is impossible. The four categories — *pornoi* ('sexually immoral'), *pleonektai* ('greedy'), *harpaxin* ('swindlers, predators'), *eidōlōlatrai* ('idolaters') — represent common vices in Corinthian society.
11. The key qualifier is *adelphos onomazomenos* ('one called/named a brother') — the issue is not outsiders but insiders who claim Christian identity while living in flagrant contradiction. The six vices expand the earlier list to include *loidoros* ('reviler, verbally abusive person') and *methysos* ('drunkard'). The prohibition *mēde synesthien* ('not even to eat with') would include exclusion from the Lord's Supper and from fellowship meals, effectively cutting off social bonds.
12. Paul establishes a clear jurisdictional boundary: the church judges its own members (*tous esō*, 'those inside') but has no authority over outsiders (*tous exō*, 'those outside'). This distinction was foundational for later Christian thinking about church discipline and the relationship between church and society.
13. The command *exarate ton ponēron ex hymōn autōn* ('remove the evil one from among you') quotes the Deuteronomic formula that appears repeatedly in Deuteronomy (17:7, 19:19, 22:21, 22:24, 24:7) as the conclusion to laws requiring capital punishment. Paul applies the formula to excommunication rather than execution, but the gravity of the language is unmistakable — this is a community-survival matter.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 17:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

6

Summary: *Paul addresses two issues: lawsuits between believers in secular courts (vv. 1-11) and sexual immorality (vv. 12-20). He is astonished that Christians who will one day judge the world and angels cannot resolve disputes among themselves. He then confronts the Corinthian slogan 'All things are lawful for me' by insisting that the body is not for sexual immorality but for the Lord. The body is a temple of the Holy Spirit, bought at a price, and must be used to glorify God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul quotes and then corrects Corinthian slogans in verses 12-13, making this one of the earliest examples of a Christian leader engaging with libertine theology. The statement that the body is a 'temple of the Holy Spirit' (v. 19) shifts the temple language from corporate (3:16) to individual, establishing a theology of the body that has profoundly shaped Christian ethics. The vice list in verses 9-10 has been extensively debated, particularly the terms *malakoi* and *arsenokoitai*.*

Translation Friction: *The terms *malakoi* ('soft ones') and *arsenokoitai* ('man-bedders') in verse 9 are among the most contested words in New Testament scholarship. We render them with their most likely meaning in context while documenting the debate. The Corinthian slogans in verses 12-13 are not always clearly delineated from Paul's own words — we follow the scholarly consensus on where the quotations begin and end.*

Connections: *The 'body as temple' language connects to 3:16-17 and to Jesus's statement about destroying and rebuilding the temple (John 2:19-21). The vice list echoes similar catalogs in Romans 1:29-31 and Galatians 5:19-21. The 'bought with a price' language (v. 20) connects to the redemption vocabulary of 1:30 and anticipates 7:23.*

¹When one of you has a dispute with another, how dare you take it to court before the unrighteous instead of before the saints? ²Do you not know that the saints will judge the world? And if the world is to be judged by you, are you incompetent to try trivial cases? ³Do you not know that we will judge angels? How much more matters of this life! ⁴So if you have disputes about everyday matters, do you appoint as judges those who have no standing in the church? ⁵I say this to your shame. Is there really no one among you wise enough to settle a dispute between brothers and sisters? ⁶Instead, brother goes to court against brother, and this before unbelievers! ⁷The very fact that you have lawsuits against one another is already a defeat for you. Why not rather be wronged? Why not rather be cheated? ⁸But instead, you yourselves do wrong and cheat — and you do this to your own brothers and sisters! ⁹Or do you not know that the unrighteous will not inherit the kingdom of God? Do not be deceived: neither the sexually immoral, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor men who practice passive homosexual acts, nor men who practice active homosexual acts, ¹⁰Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, will

receive God's kingdom. ¹¹And that is what some of you were. But you were washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God. ¹²"All things are lawful for me" — but not all things are beneficial. "All things are lawful for me" — but I will not be mastered by anything. ¹³"Food is for the stomach, and the stomach for food" — and God will do away with both. But the body is not for sexual immorality but for the Lord, and the Lord for the body. ¹⁴God raised the Lord and will also raise us by his power. ¹⁵Do you not know that your bodies are members of Christ? Should I then take the members of Christ and unite them with a prostitute? Absolutely not! ¹⁶Do you not know that the one who joins himself to a prostitute becomes one body with her? For it says, "The two will become one flesh." ¹⁷But the one who is joined to the Lord becomes one spirit with him. ¹⁸Flee from sexual immorality. Every other sin a person commits is outside the body, but the sexually immoral person sins against his own body. ¹⁹Or do you not know that your body is a temple of the Holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God? You are not your own, ²⁰For you are bought with a price — as a result glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *tolma* ('dares') expresses indignation. The contrast is between *tōn adikōn* ('the unrighteous' — pagan judges) and *tōn hagiōn* ('the saints' — fellow believers). In the Roman colony of Corinth, courts were presided over by pagan magistrates. Paul's objection is not to the legal system per se but to believers airing their disputes before outsiders when the community should be capable of internal resolution.
2. The expectation that saints will judge the world draws on Daniel 7:22 and possibly Jesus's promise to the twelve in Matthew 19:28. Paul's argument moves from the greater to the lesser: if you will judge cosmic matters, surely you can handle small disputes (*kritērion elachistōn*, 'the most trivial courts/cases').
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The claim that believers will judge angels is stated without explanation — Paul treats it as something the Corinthians should already know. The background may be Jewish traditions about the final judgment of fallen angels (cf. Jude 6; 2 Peter 2:4). The word *biōtika* ('matters pertaining to daily life') is dismissive — everyday disputes are trivial compared to the cosmic judgment believers will exercise.
4. This verse is grammatically ambiguous — *kathizete* could be indicative ('you appoint') or imperative ('appoint!'). If indicative, Paul is rebuking them for using pagan judges (who have no standing in the church). If imperative, he is sarcastically saying even the least qualified church member would be better than a pagan court. The indicative reading fits the context of rebuke better.
5. The phrase *pros entropēn* ('to shame') is ironic — in 4:14 Paul said he was not writing to shame them, but here the issue warrants it. The word *sophos* ('wise') is pointed: the Corinthians prided themselves on wisdom (1:17-2:16), yet they cannot produce a single person wise enough to arbitrate an internal dispute.
6. The phrase *adelphos meta adelphou krinetai* ('brother is judged with brother') emphasizes the family bond being violated. The phrase *kai touto epi apistōn* ('and this before unbelievers') adds the scandal of public spectacle — the church's dirty laundry is displayed before those outside the faith.
7. The word *hētēma* ('defeat, failure, loss') reveals Paul's perspective: even winning a lawsuit is a loss for the community. The two rhetorical questions echo Jesus's teaching about turning the other cheek (Matthew 5:39-40). Paul suggests it would be better to absorb injustice than to damage the community's witness and unity through litigation.
8. The twist is devastating: not only are they suing fellow believers, but they are the ones doing the wronging (*adikeite*) and cheating (*apostereite*). They are both the perpetrators and the prosecutors. The emphatic *hymeis* ('you yourselves') and the final phrase *kai touto adelphous* ('and this to brothers') drive home the moral failure.
9. The vice list begins with the warning *mē planasthe* ('do not be deceived') — some Corinthians apparently believed that grace eliminated moral consequences. The terms *malakoi* and *arsenokoitai* are heavily debated. *Malakoi* (literally 'soft ones') in this context most likely refers to the passive partner in male homosexual intercourse, though some scholars argue for a broader meaning of 'morally weak' or 'self-indulgent.' *Arsenokoitai* (a compound of *arsēn* 'male' + *koitē* 'bed') appears to be coined from the Septuagint of Leviticus 18:22 and 20:13, referring to the active partner in male homosexual intercourse. Both terms refer to specific sexual behaviors, not to orientation as a modern concept.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 18:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The list concludes with five more categories: *kleptai* ('thieves'), *pleonektai* ('greedy/covetous'), *methysoi* ('drunkards'), *loidoroi* ('verbal abusers, revilers'), *harpages* ('swindlers, robbers'). The total of ten vices covers sexual, religious, economic, and social sins, suggesting a comprehensive moral vision rather than targeting any single group.
11. The pivotal conjunction *alla* ('but') marks the transition from past identity to present reality. Three aorist passive verbs — *apelousasthe* ('you were washed'), *hēgiasthēte* ('you were sanctified'), *edikaiōthēte* ('you were justified') — describe what God has already accomplished. The order is surprising — washing (baptism) comes first, then sanctification, then justification — which does not match later systematic theology but reflects

Paul's rhetorical emphasis. The dual agency 'in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and by the Spirit of our God' is implicitly trinitarian.

12. The phrase *panta moi exestin* ('all things are lawful/permissible for me') is likely a Corinthian slogan, possibly derived from Paul's own teaching about freedom from the law. Paul quotes it twice and qualifies it twice: first with *ou panta sympherei* ('not all things are beneficial/profitable'), then with *ouk egō exousiasthēsomai hypo tinos* ('I will not be dominated by anything'). Freedom that leads to slavery is not true freedom.
13. Another Corinthian slogan: 'Food for the stomach, stomach for food.' The Corinthians apparently reasoned that just as eating is a morally neutral bodily function, so is sex. Paul agrees that food and stomach are temporary (God will destroy both) but denies the analogy for the body (*sōma*): the body has an eternal destiny and belongs to the Lord. The stunning reciprocal phrase 'the Lord for the body' (*ho kyrios tō sōmati*) declares that the Lord is devoted to the body, not indifferent to it.
14. The bodily resurrection of Jesus is the guarantee of believers' bodily resurrection. The verb *exegerei* ('will raise') is future — the body has a destiny beyond this life, which is why sexual conduct matters. The Corinthian dismissal of bodily ethics rested on a dualism (body temporary/spirit eternal) that Paul rejects.
15. Paul's argument rests on the reality of union with Christ — believers' bodies are *melē Christou* ('members/limbs of Christ'). Sexual union with a prostitute would therefore make Christ's own members part of that union. The exclamation *mē genoito* ('may it never be!') is Paul's strongest expression of horror and rejection — it occurs fifteen times in his letters.
16. Paul quotes Genesis 2:24 (via the Septuagint) to argue that sexual union creates a real, ontological bond — not merely a physical act but a union of persons. The verb *kollōmenos* ('joining, clinging, being united') is the same word used in the Septuagint for the marriage bond in Genesis 2:24. Paul's argument assumes that sexual intercourse, even with a prostitute, creates the 'one flesh' reality that Genesis describes for marriage.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The parallel is precise: union with a prostitute creates one body (*hen sōma*); union with the Lord creates one spirit (*hen pneuma*). The two unions are incompatible — one cannot simultaneously be united to the Lord in spirit and to a prostitute in body, because the body belongs to the Lord.
18. The imperative *pheugete* ('flee!') demands immediate, decisive action — not negotiation or gradual withdrawal. The claim that *porneia* uniquely sins 'against one's own body' (*eis to idion sōma*) is debated — other sins also affect the body (drunkenness, gluttony). Paul's point may be that sexual sin uniquely involves the body as the instrument and site of the transgression, creating a union (v. 16) that violates the body's belonging to Christ.
19. Here the temple language shifts from corporate (3:16, 'you [plural] are God's temple') to individual — each believer's body is a *naos* ('sanctuary') of the Holy Spirit. The declaration *ouk este heautōn* ('you are not your own') directly challenges the Corinthian individualism and their slogan 'all things are lawful for me.' Autonomy is replaced by belonging.
20. The verb *ēgorasthēte* ('you were bought') is from the marketplace — specifically the slave market. The *timē* ('price') is not specified here but is elsewhere identified as Christ's blood (cf. Acts 20:28; 1 Peter 1:18-19). The imperative *doxasate ton theon en tō sōmati hymōn* ('glorify God in/with your body') makes the body the instrument of worship. The SBLGNT does not include the phrase 'and in your spirit, which are God's' found in later manuscripts and the KJV — we follow the shorter, earlier text.

7

Summary: *Paul responds to the Corinthians' letter about marriage and singleness. He addresses multiple situations: married couples should maintain sexual relations; the unmarried and widows may stay single (Paul's preference) or marry; believers should not divorce unbelieving spouses if the unbeliever is willing to stay; each person should remain in the condition in which they were called. Paul counsels virgins and those betrothed, arguing that singleness allows undivided devotion to the Lord, though marriage is not sin. Throughout, he distinguishes between the Lord's command and his own pastoral advice, and frames everything in light of the 'present distress' and the shortness of the remaining time.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is the longest sustained discussion of marriage and singleness in the New Testament. Paul's repeated distinction between 'I, not the Lord' (v. 12) and 'the Lord, not I' (v. 10) is remarkable transparency — he clearly differentiates between direct dominical command and his own Spirit-guided counsel. The eschatological urgency ('the appointed time has grown short,' v. 29) shapes all his advice. His affirmation that both marriage and singleness are legitimate callings was countercultural in both Jewish and Greco-Roman contexts.*

Translation Friction: The phrase 'it is good for a man not to touch a woman' (v. 1) may be another Corinthian slogan that Paul is quoting and then qualifying, not his own assertion. The meaning of 'virgin' (parthenos) in verses 25-38 is debated — it could refer to a man's betrothed, his unmarried daughter, or a 'spiritual marriage' partner. The 'present distress' (v. 26) is unidentified — it could be famine, persecution, or eschatological expectation.

Connections: Paul's teaching on divorce (vv. 10-11) directly references Jesus's prohibition (Mark 10:2-12). The 'remain as you are' principle (vv. 17-24) anticipates Paul's theology of contentment in Philippians 4:11-13. The slave/freedom discussion (vv. 21-23) connects to Philemon and Galatians 3:28.

¹Now concerning the matters you wrote about: "It is good for a man not to have sexual relations with a woman." ²But because of sexual immorality, each man should have his own wife and each woman her own husband. ³The husband should fulfill his obligation to his wife, and likewise the wife to her husband. ⁴The wife does not have authority over her own body, but the husband does. Likewise the husband does not have authority over his own body, but the wife does. ⁵Do not deprive each other, except perhaps by mutual consent for a set time, so that you may devote yourselves to prayer. Then come together again, so that Satan does not tempt you because of your lack of self-control. ⁶I say this as a concession, not as a command. ⁷I wish that all people were as I am. But each has a particular gift from God, one of one kind and one of another. ⁸To the unmarried and to widows I say: it is good for them to remain as I am. ⁹But if they cannot exercise self-control, let them marry. For it is better to marry than to burn with desire. ¹⁰To the married I give this charge — not I, but the Lord — that a wife should not separate from her husband ¹¹(but if she does separate, let her remain unmarried or be reconciled to her husband), and a husband should not divorce his wife. ¹²To the rest I say — I, not the Lord — if any brother has an unbelieving wife and she is willing to live with him, he should not divorce her. ¹³And if any woman has an unbelieving husband and he is willing to live with her, she should not divorce him. ¹⁴For the unbelieving husband is sanctified through his wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified through her brother in the faith. Otherwise your children would be unclean, but as it is, they are holy. ¹⁵But if the unbelieving partner separates, let that person go. The brother or sister is not bound in such cases. God has called you to peace. ¹⁶For how do you know, wife, whether you will save your husband? Or how do you know, husband, whether you will save your wife? ¹⁷Only let each person lead the life that the Lord has assigned and to which God has called that person. This is my rule in all the churches. ¹⁸Was anyone already circumcised when called? Let him not undo his circumcision. Was anyone uncircumcised when called? Let him not be circumcised. ¹⁹Circumcision is nothing and uncircumcision is nothing; what matters is keeping the commandments of God. ²⁰Each person should remain in the condition in which they were called. ²¹Were you a slave when called? Do not let it concern you. But if you can gain your freedom, take the opportunity. ²²For the one who was called in the Lord as a slave is the Lord's freedperson, and likewise the one who was free when called is Christ's slave. ²³You were bought with a price; do not become slaves of human beings. ²⁴Brothers and sisters, let each person remain with God in the condition in which they were called. ²⁵Now concerning virgins, I have no command from the Lord, but I give my opinion as one who by the Lord's mercy is trustworthy. ²⁶I think that in view of the present distress it is good for a person to remain as they are. ²⁷Are you bound to a wife? Do not seek to be released. Are you released from a wife? Do not seek a wife. ²⁸But if you do marry, you have not sinned, and if a virgin marries, she has not sinned. Yet those who marry will have worldly troubles, and I would spare you that. ²⁹This is what I mean, brothers and sisters: the appointed time has grown short. From now on, let those who have wives live as though they had none, ³⁰Those who mourn should live as though they do not grieve. Those who are happy should live as though they have no joy. Those who buy something should live as though it is not theirs to keep. ³¹They that use this age, as not abusing it — for the fashion of this age passeth off. ³²I want you to be free from anxieties. The unmarried man is concerned about the things of the Lord — how to please the Lord. ³³But the married man is concerned about worldly things — how to please his wife, ³⁴Indeed, there is difference also between a wife and a virgin. The unmarried woman careth for the things of the Lord, that she may be holy both in body and in spirit — but she that is married careth for the things of the world, how she may please her husband. ³⁵I say this for your own benefit, not to put a restraint on you, but to promote good order and undivided devotion to the Lord. ³⁶If anyone thinks he is not behaving properly toward his betrothed, and if his passions are strong and it must be so, let him do

as he wishes — he does not sin. Let them marry. ³⁷But the one who stands firm in his heart, being under no compulsion but having control over his own desire, and has determined in his heart to keep her as his betrothed — he will do well. ³⁸So then, the one who marries his betrothed does well, and the one who refrains from marriage will do even better. ³⁹A wife is bound as long as her husband lives. But if her husband dies, she is free to marry anyone she wishes, only in the Lord. ⁴⁰But in my judgment she is more blessed if she remains as she is. And I think that I too have the Spirit of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *peri de hōn egrapsate* ('now concerning what you wrote') marks the first of several responses to the Corinthians' letter (cf. 7:25, 8:1, 12:1, 16:1). The statement *kalon anthrōpō gynaikos mē haptesthai* ('it is good for a man not to touch a woman') is likely a Corinthian slogan — some members advocated sexual asceticism, possibly even within marriage. The verb *haptesthai* ('to touch') is a euphemism for sexual intercourse. Paul will qualify rather than endorse this absolutist position.
2. Paul's concession *dia de tas porneias* ('because of the acts of sexual immorality') is pragmatic rather than idealistic — marriage provides a legitimate context for sexual expression. The reciprocity is notable: both husband and wife have equal standing in this instruction. The verb *echetō* ('let him/her have') is present imperative, suggesting an ongoing relationship.
3. The word *opheilēn* ('debt, obligation, what is owed') frames marital sexual relations as a mutual obligation, not a one-sided right. The remarkable reciprocity — *homoiōs de kai hē gynē tō andri* ('and likewise also the wife to the husband') — was progressive in the ancient world, where sexual obligations were typically unilateral.
4. The verb *exousiazei* ('has authority over, exercises power over') is used symmetrically — each spouse has authority over the other's body. This mutual surrender of bodily autonomy within marriage is extraordinary in the first-century context. While the first half alone (wife does not control her own body) would have been culturally expected, the second half (husband does not control his own body) was revolutionary.
5. The verb *apostereite* ('deprive, defraud') is the same word used in 6:7-8 for financial fraud — withholding sexual relations from a willing spouse is framed as a form of cheating. Any abstinence must be *ek symphōnou* ('from agreement, by mutual consent'), *pros kairon* ('for a limited time'), and for a specific purpose (prayer). Paul's realism about *akrasia* ('lack of self-control') is characteristically honest.
6. The word *syngnōmēn* ('concession, allowance, pardon') indicates Paul is granting permission rather than issuing a mandate. What exactly is the concession — marriage itself, or the temporary abstinence for prayer? Most likely the latter: Paul is saying the abstinence provision is an allowance, not a requirement.
7. Paul reveals his personal preference for singleness but immediately qualifies it: both singleness and marriage are *charismata* ('gifts') from God. The phrase *ho men houtōs ho de houtōs* ('one in this way, another in that way') treats both states as equally valid divine callings. Neither is spiritually superior.
8. The *agamois* ('unmarried') could include the never-married, the divorced, or widowers. Paul recommends his own state (celibacy) as *kalon* ('good, advantageous') but does not command it. This suggests Paul was either never married or, more likely given his Pharisaic background, was widowed or divorced.
9. The verb *pyrousthai* ('to burn') most likely refers to burning with sexual passion, not to eschatological fire. Paul's pragmatism is evident: singleness is his preference, but marriage is far better than uncontrolled desire. The comparison *kreisson gar estin* ('for it is better') does not denigrate marriage — it positions it as a positive good for those not gifted with celibacy.
10. Paul explicitly attributes this command to the Lord, referencing Jesus's prohibition of divorce (Mark 10:9-12; Matthew 19:6). The verb *chōrīsthēnai* ('to separate, to be separated') is the standard term for divorce in Greek legal usage. Addressing the wife first may reflect a specific situation in Corinth where wives were initiating separations, possibly motivated by the ascetic teaching of verse 1.
11. The parenthetical concession acknowledges that separation sometimes happens despite the prohibition. In such cases, two options remain: singleness (*menetō agamos*) or reconciliation (*katallagētō*). Remarriage to someone else is not offered as an option. The verb *aphienai* ('to release, to divorce') is the legal term for a husband divorcing his wife.
12. Paul now addresses mixed marriages — a situation Jesus's teaching did not directly cover, hence 'I, not the Lord.' This is not a lesser authority claim but an honest acknowledgment that no dominical saying exists on this topic. Paul gives his own Spirit-guided instruction. The verb *syneudokei* ('consents, is pleased, agrees') makes the unbelieving spouse's willingness the key factor.
13. The instruction is perfectly symmetrical: neither believing husband nor believing wife should initiate divorce if the unbelieving partner is willing to remain. Paul addresses women as autonomous agents capable of initiating divorce — a legal reality in Roman (though not traditional Jewish) law that applied in Corinth as a Roman colony.
14. The verb *hēgiastai* ('has been sanctified') does not mean the unbeliever is saved but that the marriage relationship is consecrated — set apart, not defiled — by the believing partner's faith. Paul argues from the children's status: if the marriage were unclean (*akatharta*), the children would be too; but the Corinthians accept their children as *hagia* ('holy, set apart'). The logic assumes the Corinthians already recognize their children's sanctified status.

15. This is the 'Pauline privilege' — if the unbeliever initiates the departure, the believer is not enslaved (ou dedoulōtai, 'is not bound as a slave') to the marriage. Whether 'not bound' means free to remarry has been debated since the early church; the language suggests genuine release from the marriage bond. The closing phrase en de eirēnē keklēken hymas ho theos ('God has called you in peace') may support either maintaining the marriage (for peace) or accepting the separation (peace from conflict).
16. This rhetorical question is ambiguous in tone: it could mean 'you might save your spouse, so stay' (optimistic) or 'you cannot be sure of saving your spouse, so do not stay in an intolerable situation for that reason alone' (realistic). Given the context of verse 15 (letting the unbeliever go), the realistic reading seems more likely — hope of conversion is not sufficient grounds to force a reluctant spouse to stay.
17. This verse introduces the 'remain as you are' principle that governs the next section (vv. 17-24). The verb emerisen ('assigned, apportioned') and keklēken ('has called') both point to God's sovereign arrangement of life circumstances. Paul claims this is not unique counsel for Corinth but his standard teaching en tais ekklesiāis pasais ('in all the churches').
18. The verb epispathō ('let him not draw over [the foreskin]') refers to epispasm, a surgical procedure some Hellenistic Jews underwent to reverse circumcision and appear Greek in the gymnasium. Paul's point is that external religious markers are irrelevant to one's standing before God — neither circumcision nor uncircumcision matters after being called.
19. This statement is theologically striking: circumcision — the foundational covenant sign of Genesis 17 — is declared 'nothing' (ouden). Paul does not mean it was never important but that in Christ it no longer defines covenant membership. What matters is tērēsis entolōn theou ('keeping God's commandments'), which for Paul means the ethical commands as fulfilled through love (cf. Romans 13:8-10; Galatians 5:14).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The word klēsis ('calling') here means not vocation in the modern sense but the life circumstance in which a person was when God called them. The imperative menetō ('let them remain') does not forbid all change but counsels against change motivated by the assumption that a different social status would be spiritually superior.
21. The phrase mallon chrēsai ('rather make use of [it]') is famously ambiguous: 'make use of' what — your slavery or your opportunity for freedom? Most scholars now read it as 'take the opportunity for freedom' rather than 'make use of your slavery,' since Paul's counsel throughout this section is pragmatic, not masochistic. The verb meletō ('let it concern') counsels against anxiety, not against seeking improvement.
22. Paul creates a paradoxical reversal: the slave is the Lord's apeleutheros ('freedperson' — a specific legal status in the Roman world), while the free person is Christ's doulos ('slave'). This does not endorse slavery but relativizes all social categories by redefining them in terms of relationship to Christ.
23. Echoing 6:20, Paul declares that believers' purchase price (Christ's death) makes them God's property. The prohibition mē ginesthe douloi anthrōpōn ('do not become slaves of people') may mean: do not voluntarily surrender your freedom to human masters or human opinions. In context, it warns against allowing social pressure or human leaders to override one's calling from God.
24. The addition of para theō ('with God, before God, in God's presence') transforms the 'remain as you are' principle from passive resignation into active trust — remaining in one's circumstances is not settling but living before God wherever one is.
25. The word parthenōn ('virgins') introduces a new topic. Paul again distinguishes between dominical command (epitagēn kyriou ouk echō, 'I do not have a command from the Lord') and his own gnōmē ('opinion, counsel, judgment'). He grounds his authority not in a direct word from Jesus but in being ēlēēmenos ('having received mercy') and pistos ('trustworthy').
26. The phrase tēn enestōsan anankēn ('the present distress/necessity') is unspecified — it could refer to persecution, famine, general eschatological tribulation, or the ordinary difficulties of living in a fallen world. Whatever the specific reference, it shapes Paul's pragmatic preference for singleness: fewer attachments mean less suffering in times of crisis.
27. The verb dedesai ('you are bound') and the perfect passive lelytai ('you have been released') use binding/loosing language that echoes Jewish divorce terminology. 'Released' could mean divorced, widowed, or never married. Paul's counsel — do not seek change — applies the 'remain as you are' principle to marital status.
28. Paul emphatically clarifies: ouch hēmartēs ('you have not sinned'). Marriage is not sin. His preference for singleness is practical, not moral. The phrase thlipsin de tē sarki ('tribulation in the flesh') refers to the inevitable difficulties of married life — especially in times of distress (v. 26). The verb pheidomai ('I spare, I am trying to protect') reveals pastoral motivation.
29. The phrase ho kairos synestalmenos estin ('the time has been compressed/shortened') expresses eschatological urgency. The perfect passive participle synestalmenos suggests the time has already been shortened — the compression is underway. The series of 'as though not' (hōs mē) clauses (vv. 29-31) describe a posture of detachment from worldly attachments, not abandonment of responsibilities.
30. The 'as though not' (hōs mē) pattern describes eschatological detachment — not emotional suppression but a refusal to let any temporal experience become ultimate. Grief, joy, and commerce are all real but relativized by the nearness of Christ's return.
31. The verb parage ('is passing away') is present tense — the passing is already in progress. The word schēma ('form, outward appearance, shape') suggests the world's current configuration is temporary, like a stage set being dismantled. This does not devalue the world but locates it within a larger eschatological framework.

32. The adjective *amerimnous* ('free from anxiety, without worry') introduces Paul's practical argument for singleness. The verb *merimna* ('is anxious about, is concerned with') is the same word Jesus used in Matthew 6:25-34. Paul is not condemning married people but observing a practical reality: the unmarried person has undivided attention for the Lord's work.
33. The concern for 'worldly things' (*ta tou kosmou*) is not sinful but simply the practical demands of marriage — providing for a household, maintaining a relationship. Paul describes a real tension, not a moral failing.
34. The phrase *kai memeristai* ('and he/she is divided') is the hinge: marriage divides one's attention. Paul applies the same analysis to women as to men, maintaining the symmetry he has shown throughout this chapter. The phrase *hagia kai tō sōmati kai tō pneumati* ('holy in both body and spirit') refers to undivided consecration, not to sexual purity alone.
35. Paul clarifies his intent: *ouch hina brochōn hymin epibalō* ('not to throw a noose on you'). The image of the *brochōn* ('noose, snare') suggests that Paul's advice about singleness should not become another legalistic burden. The goal is *euschēmon* ('seemly, proper, good order') and *euparedron* ('constant attendance, devotion') to the Lord *aperispastōs* ('without distraction').
36. The identity of 'his virgin' (*tēn parthenon autou*) is debated: it could be a man's fiancée/betrothed, his virgin daughter, or a partner in a 'spiritual marriage' (celibate cohabitation). The word *hyperakmos* could mean 'past the bloom of youth' (of the woman) or 'with strong passions' (of the man). We follow the betrothed/fiancée interpretation as most natural in context. The emphatic *ouch hamartanei* ('he does not sin') again underscores that marriage is not sin.
37. Three conditions for choosing not to marry: standing firm (*hestēken hedraios*, 'established, stable'), having no necessity (*mē echōn anankēn*, no external pressure), and having control over one's own will (*exousian echei peri tou idiou thelēmatos*). The decision must be free, settled, and sustainable.
38. The Greek *gamizōn* can mean 'marrying' or 'giving in marriage.' If the subject is a father giving his daughter in marriage, the interpretation shifts, but we follow the reading where the man himself is the one choosing to marry or not. Paul's conclusion is characteristically balanced: marrying is *kalōs* ('well'), not marrying is *kreisson* ('better'). Neither choice is wrong.
39. The verb *dedetai* ('is bound') describes the marriage bond as lasting until death. The verb *koimēthē* ('falls asleep') is the standard early Christian euphemism for death. The phrase *monon en kyriō* ('only in the Lord') is understood to mean the new husband should be a fellow believer, though some interpret it as 'in a manner consistent with the Lord's will.'
40. Paul closes with the comparative *makariotēra* ('more blessed, happier') — widows who remain unmarried are more blessed in his estimation. The final clause *dokō de kagō pneuma theou echein* ('and I think I too have the Spirit of God') is likely ironic — some Corinthians apparently claimed Spirit-authority for views contradicting Paul, and his response is understated: 'I think I too have the Spirit.' The modesty of the claim masks its force.

8

Summary: *Paul addresses the question of eating food offered to idols. He begins by distinguishing knowledge from love: knowledge puffs up, but love builds up. He acknowledges that idols are nothing and there is only one God, so technically idol-food is harmless. But not everyone has this knowledge — some believers with a 'weak conscience' still associate the food with actual idol worship. The 'strong' who eat freely may cause the 'weak' to stumble. Paul concludes that if food causes a brother to fall, he will never eat meat again.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's christological monotheism in verse 6 is remarkable: he reformulates the Jewish Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4) to include Christ as the one Lord 'through whom are all things.' This is one of the highest Christological statements in Paul's letters, embedded almost casually in a discussion about dietary practices. The chapter establishes the principle that rights must yield to love — a theme that will dominate chapters 8-10.*

Translation Friction: *The 'weak' and 'strong' terminology can be misleading in English — the 'weak' are not morally inferior but have a conscience shaped by their pagan past. The phrase *syneidēsis* ('conscience') is a key Pauline concept that does not map perfectly onto modern psychological usage. We render it consistently as 'conscience' and explain the term in notes.*

Connections: *The idol-food discussion continues through chapters 9-10. The 'one God, one Lord' formula (v. 6) connects to Deuteronomy 6:4 and Philippians 2:9-11. The weak-conscience concept anticipates Romans 14-15. The willingness to limit freedom for others' sake connects to Christ's self-emptying in Philippians 2:5-8.*

¹Now concerning food offered to idols: we know that "all of us possess knowledge." Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up. ²If anyone thinks they know something, they do not yet know as they ought to know. ³But if anyone loves God, that person is known by God. ⁴As concerning as a result the eating of those matters that are offered in sacrifice to idols, we know that an idol is not a thing in the world, and that there is none other God but one. ⁵For even if there are so-called gods, whether in heaven or on earth — as indeed there are many 'gods' and many 'lords' — ⁶However, to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all matters, and we in him. And one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all matters, and we by him. ⁷But not everyone possesses this knowledge. Some, through former association with idols, still eat food as if it were really offered to an idol, and their conscience, being weak, is defiled. ⁸Food will not bring us closer to God. We are no worse off if we do not eat, and no better off if we do. ⁹But be careful that this right of yours does not become a stumbling block to the weak. ¹⁰For if someone with a weak conscience sees you — the one who has knowledge — reclining at table in an idol's temple, will not that person be encouraged to eat food offered to idols? ¹¹For by your knowledge the weak person is destroyed — the brother or sister for whom Christ died. ¹²In this way, by sinning against your brothers and sisters and wounding their weak conscience, you sin against Christ. ¹³Therefore, if food causes my brother or sister to stumble, I will never eat meat again, so that I will not cause my brother or sister to stumble.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *peri de* ('now concerning') marks another response to the Corinthians' letter. The statement *pantes gnōsin echomen* ('all of us possess knowledge') is likely a Corinthian slogan — they claimed universal knowledge about idols being nothing. Paul quotes it and then immediately qualifies it: *gnōsis physioi* ('knowledge puffs up/inflates') uses the same verb as 4:6, 18; 5:2. Love (*agapē*), by contrast, *oikodomei* ('builds up') — the same construction metaphor from chapter 3.
2. Paul deflates intellectual pride: the person who thinks they have arrived at knowledge (*dokei egnōkenai*, 'thinks they have known') has not yet begun to know properly (*oupō egnō kathōs dei gnōnai*). True knowledge is humble, recognizing its own limitations.
3. The shift is remarkable: Paul does not complete the expected pattern ('if anyone loves God, that person truly knows'). Instead, he switches to the passive — *egnōstai hyp' autou* ('is known by him'). What matters is not that we know God but that God knows us. Being known by God is more foundational than knowing about God.
4. Paul agrees with the Corinthian position in principle: *ouden eidōlon en kosmō* ('an idol is nothing in the world') and *oudeis theos ei mē heis* ('there is no God except one'). These statements reflect sound Jewish-Christian monotheism. The problem is not the theology but its application — correct knowledge does not automatically produce loving behavior.
5. Paul acknowledges the cultural reality: the Greco-Roman world was full of *legomenoi theoi* ('so-called gods'). The phrase *hōsper eisin theoi polloi* ('as indeed there are many gods') does not affirm their actual divinity but acknowledges their social and spiritual reality — these entities, whether demonic powers or human constructs, function as gods in people's lives.
6. This verse reformulates the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4, 'Hear, O Israel: the LORD our God, the LORD is one') to include Christ. The one God is the Father (*ex hou ta panta*, 'from whom all things' — the source) and the one Lord is Jesus Christ (*di' hou ta panta*, 'through whom all things' — the agent). Christ is included within the identity of the one God of Israel, not added as a second deity. This is one of the earliest and most explicit christological reformulations of Jewish monotheism.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 6:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek *synētheia* ('familiarity, former association, habit') — some manuscripts read *syneidēsei* ('conscience') — describes the ingrained habits of former pagans. Their past worship experience means they cannot separate the meat from its idol-worship context. Their *syneidēsis* ('conscience') is *asthenes* ('weak') — not morally inferior but conditioned by their history. The verb *molynetai* ('is defiled, stained') indicates real spiritual damage, not mere discomfort.
8. This may be another Corinthian slogan that Paul partially endorses. The verb *parastēsei* ('will present, will commend') is a legal term for presenting someone before a judge. Food has no bearing on one's standing before God — Paul agrees with this principle. But the application matters: the 'strong' cannot use this truth to override others' consciences.
9. The word *exousia* ('right, authority, freedom, power') — the same word used for power and authority elsewhere in Paul — is applied to the Corinthians' freedom to eat. Paul does not deny they have this right but warns that rights exercised without love become *proskomma* ('stumbling blocks, obstacles') for weaker believers.
10. Paul paints a specific scenario: a 'knowledgeable' Corinthian reclines (*katakeimenon*, the standard dining posture) in an *eidōleion* ('idol's temple'). Temple dining halls were common venues for social events, business meals, and celebrations in Corinth. The verb *oikodomēthēsetai* ('will be built up') is used ironically — the same word that describes love 'building up' (v. 1) is here used for building up someone toward sin.

11. The verb *apollytai* ('is being destroyed, is perishing') is the same word used in 1:18 for those who are 'perishing.' Paul raises the stakes dramatically: exercising knowledge without love can spiritually destroy a fellow believer. The appositional phrase *ho adelphos di' hon Christos apethanen* ('the brother for whom Christ died') is the theological knockout — how can you use your freedom to destroy someone Christ valued enough to die for?
12. Paul draws a direct line: sinning against a brother's conscience = sinning against Christ. The verb *typtontes* ('striking, beating, wounding') is physical violence language applied to spiritual harm — damaging someone's conscience is an act of assault. Because believers are members of Christ's body (6:15), wounding them wounds Christ himself.
13. Paul's personal pledge — *ou mē phagō krea eis ton aiōna* ('I will never ever eat meat') — uses the strongest possible negation in Greek (the double negative *ou mē* with the aorist subjunctive). This is not a hypothetical but a real commitment: Paul would permanently surrender his own freedom rather than damage a fellow believer. The verb *skandalizō* ('to cause to stumble, to cause to fall into sin') frames the issue as causing another person's spiritual ruin, not merely offending their sensibilities.

9

Summary: *Paul uses himself as an example of voluntarily surrendering rights for the gospel's sake. He defends his apostleship and his right to financial support, citing Scripture, common practice, and the Lord's command. Yet he has not used any of these rights — he preaches the gospel free of charge. He becomes 'all things to all people' to save some. The chapter closes with athletic imagery: Paul disciplines his body like a runner training for a prize, lest after preaching to others he himself be disqualified.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is Paul's most extended defense of apostolic rights, but its purpose is paradoxical — he lists his rights only to show he has waived them. The 'all things to all people' statement (v. 22) has been both celebrated and criticized throughout church history. The athletic imagery (vv. 24-27) draws on the Isthmian Games held near Corinth, making the metaphor locally resonant.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'a sister, a wife' (*adelphēn gynaika*, v. 5) is debated — does Paul claim the right to bring a believing wife on his journeys, or a 'sister-wife' (celibate female companion)? The traditional reading of a believing spouse is most natural. The word *adokimos* (v. 27, 'disqualified') has generated debate about whether Paul feared loss of salvation or loss of reward.*

Connections: *The ox quotation (v. 9) from Deuteronomy 25:4 anticipates Paul's hermeneutical method in 1 Timothy 5:18. The 'all things to all people' ethic connects to Romans 14-15 and the weak/strong discussion. The athletic imagery was common in Greco-Roman moral philosophy (Epictetus, Seneca) and connects to Philippians 3:12-14 and 2 Timothy 4:7-8.*

¹Am I not free? Am I not an apostle? Have I not seen Jesus our Lord? Are you not my work in the Lord? ²If I am not an apostle to others, at least I am to you, for you are the seal of my apostleship in the Lord. ³This is my defense to those who would examine me. ⁴Do we not have the right to eat and drink? ⁵Do we not have the right to be accompanied by a believing wife, as do the other apostles and the brothers of the Lord and Cephas? ⁶Or is it only Barnabas and I who have no right to refrain from working? ⁷Who serves as a soldier at his own expense? Who plants a vineyard and does not eat its fruit? Who tends a flock and does not drink the milk? ⁸Am I saying this merely on human authority? Does not the Law say the same thing? ⁹For it is written in the Law of Moses: "You shall not muzzle an ox while it is treading out the grain." Is God concerned about oxen? ¹⁰Or does he speak entirely for our sake? It was indeed written for our sake, because the plowman should plow in hope, and the thresher should thresh in hope of sharing in the crop. ¹¹If we have sown spiritual things among you, is it too much if we reap material things from you? ¹²If others share this right over you, do we not even more? But we have not made use of this right. Instead, we endure everything so that we may not put any obstacle in the way of the gospel of Christ. ¹³Do you not know that those who serve in the temple eat food from the temple, and those who serve at the altar share in what is offered on the altar? ¹⁴In the same way, the Lord commanded that those who proclaim the gospel should get their living from the gospel. ¹⁵But I have not used any of these rights, nor am I writing this so that it may be done for me. For I would rather die than — no one will deprive me of my ground for boasting! ¹⁶For if I preach the gospel, that gives me no ground for boasting, since an obligation is laid on me. Woe to me if I do not preach the gospel! ¹⁷For if I do this willingly, I have a reward. But if unwillingly, I am still entrusted with a stewardship. ¹⁸What then is my reward? That in my preaching I

may offer the gospel free of charge, so as not to make full use of my right in the gospel. ¹⁹For though I am free from all, I have made myself a slave to all, so that I might win more of them. ²⁰To the Jews I became as a Jew, in order to win Jews. To those under the law I became as one under the law — though I myself am not under the law — so that I might win those under the law. ²¹To those outside the law I became as one outside the law — not being outside God's law but under Christ's law — so that I might win those outside the law. ²²To the weak I became weak, so that I might win the weak. I have become all things to all people, so that by all possible means I might save some. ²³I do all things for the sake of the gospel, so that I may share in its blessings. ²⁴Do you not know that in a race all the runners compete, but only one receives the prize? Run in such a way that you may win it. ²⁵Every athlete exercises self-control in all things. They do it to receive a perishable wreath, but we an imperishable one. ²⁶So I do not run aimlessly; I do not box as one beating the air. ²⁷But I discipline my body and bring it under control, lest after preaching to others I myself should be disqualified.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Four rapid rhetorical questions, all expecting 'yes.' The SBLGNT order places 'free' before 'apostle,' connecting this chapter to the freedom discussion of chapter 8. The claim to have seen the Lord (heōraka Iēsoun ton kyrion hēmōn) refers to the Damascus road encounter (Acts 9; cf. 1 Corinthians 15:8) — the qualification for apostleship. The Corinthians themselves are Paul's proof: they are his ergon ('work, product') in the Lord.
2. The word sphragis ('seal') was a mark of authentication — like a wax seal on a document. The Corinthians' very existence as a church validates Paul's apostolic ministry. The concessive 'if I am not an apostle to others' suggests some questioned his credentials.
3. The word apologia ('defense') is a legal term for a courtroom defense speech. The verb anakrinousin ('examine, investigate') is the same judicial language from 2:14-15 and 4:3. Paul is under trial by some in Corinth; the following verses are his evidence.
4. The word exousia ('right, authority, power') — the same word from 8:9 — now applies to Paul himself. 'Eating and drinking' refers to being materially supported by the churches, not merely having food.
5. The phrase adelphēn gynaika ('a sister-wife,' i.e., a believing wife) indicates that the other apostles, Jesus's brothers (including James), and Cephas (Peter) all traveled with their wives at church expense. This verse is significant evidence that Peter was married and that Jesus's brothers held leadership roles. Paul mentions this right but does not exercise it — he apparently remained unmarried or traveled without a wife.
6. The mention of Barnabas suggests he, like Paul, supported himself through manual labor. This may reflect a Corinthian critique: because Paul works with his hands (an un-apostolic practice in their view), he must not be a real apostle. Paul reframes it: he works by choice, not necessity.
7. Three analogies from common life — soldier, farmer, shepherd — all make the same point: workers are entitled to benefit from their labor. The opsoinia ('wages, rations') of a soldier was expected; the karpos ('fruit') of a vineyard belonged to the farmer; the gala ('milk') of a flock belonged to the shepherd. Paul argues from universal human practice.
8. Paul escalates his argument from common sense (kata anthrōpon, 'according to human reasoning') to Scripture (ho nomos, 'the Law'). If even human practice supports the worker's right to compensation, how much more does divine revelation?
9. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 25:4. The original command protected working animals from cruel treatment. Paul's rhetorical question mē tōn boōn melei tō theō ('Is God not concerned about oxen?') does not deny God's care for animals but argues that the principle extends beyond the literal ox to human workers — a hermeneutical move common in Jewish interpretation.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 25:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Paul's hermeneutical claim — di' hēmas gar egraphē ('it was written for our sake') — asserts that Scripture's deeper intention applies to apostolic workers. The principle: workers (whether plowing or threshing) should labor with a reasonable expectation of benefiting from their work. Paul applies this to gospel ministry.
11. The contrast between ta pneumatika ('spiritual things') and ta sarkika ('fleshly/material things') frames financial support as a trivially small return on the spiritual investment Paul made in founding the church. The implication: the Corinthians are getting the better deal.
12. The 'others' (alloi) who receive financial support are probably Apollos or other traveling teachers. Paul's waiver of rights — ouk echrēsametha tē exousia tautē ('we have not used this right') — is the point of the entire chapter. The verb stegomen ('we endure, we cover, we bear') and the purpose clause hina mē tina enkopēn dōmen ('so that we may not give any hindrance') reveal his motivation: nothing must obstruct the gospel.
13. Paul cites temple practice — whether the Jerusalem temple or pagan temples (both practiced priestly sustenance from offerings). The principle is universal: those who perform sacred service are sustained by it. The parallel between temple service and gospel ministry elevates the status of apostolic work.
14. Paul cites a command of the Lord (ho kyrios dietaxen) — referencing Jesus's instruction to the disciples in Luke 10:7 ('the laborer deserves his wages') and Matthew 10:10. This is the highest authority Paul can invoke: a direct dominical command. Yet even this command Paul chooses not to exercise.

15. The sentence breaks mid-thought — Paul starts to say 'I would rather die than have anyone empty my boast' but interrupts himself with the emphatic declaration to *kauchēma mou oudeis kenōsei* ('no one will empty/void my boast'). The anacoluthon (broken sentence) reveals raw emotion. His 'boast' is that he preaches the gospel free of charge. This is his singular distinction, and he guards it fiercely.
16. Preaching is not Paul's choice but his compulsion — *anankē gar moi epikeitai* ('for necessity is placed upon me'). The Damascus road call was not an invitation but a commission. The exclamation *ouai gar moi estin* ('for woe to me!') echoes prophetic language — Paul sees himself in the tradition of the Hebrew prophets who spoke under divine compulsion (cf. Jeremiah 20:9, Amos 3:8).
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 20:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Amos 3:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The logic: if Paul chose to preach, he would deserve wages (*misthos*). But since he preaches under divine compulsion (*akōn*, 'unwillingly' in the sense of having no choice), he has been entrusted with an *oikonomia* ('stewardship, management') — the responsibility of a household manager (*oikonomos*, cf. 4:1-2). The reward he claims is not payment but the privilege of offering the gospel free of charge.
18. Paul's 'reward' (*misthos*) is paradoxical — it is the opportunity to give up reward. His compensation is the freedom to offer the gospel *adapanon* ('without cost, free of charge'). The phrase *mē katachrēsasthai* ('not to make full use of') echoes 7:31 — restraint in exercising rights is a mark of eschatological wisdom.
19. The paradox of freedom: Paul is *eleutheros* ('free') from all people, owing nothing to anyone, yet he voluntarily enslaves himself (*emauton edoulōsa*, 'I enslaved myself') to all. The verb *kerdēsō* ('I might gain, I might win') is commercial language — Paul 'profits' people for the gospel. This verse introduces the 'all things to all people' passage (vv. 19-23).
20. Paul's cultural flexibility is extraordinary for a Pharisee: he observes Jewish customs when among Jews (cf. Acts 16:3, where he circumcises Timothy; Acts 21:26, where he takes a Nazirite vow) even though he considers himself no longer 'under the law' (*mē ōn autos hypo nomon*). The distinction between 'Jews' and 'those under the law' may separate ethnic identity from legal observance.
21. The parenthetical qualification is crucial: *mē ōn anomos theou all' ennomos Christou* ('not being lawless toward God but in-lawed to Christ'). Paul's cultural flexibility is not moral relativism — he lives under 'Christ's law' (*ennomos Christou*), a law of love (cf. Galatians 6:2, 'the law of Christ'). His adaptability has ethical boundaries.
22. The climactic statement *tois pasin gegona panta* ('to all I have become all things') summarizes Paul's missionary strategy: radical cultural adaptation in service of the gospel. The word 'some' (*tinas*) is realistic — not all will respond, but some will. The purpose clause *hina pantōs tinas sōsō* ('so that by all means I might save some') reveals Paul's motivation: salvation of people, not preservation of cultural identity.
23. The word *synkoinōnos* ('co-sharer, fellow participant') connects to *koinōnia* (1:9). Paul is not merely a messenger of the gospel but a participant in its benefits. His sacrifice is not self-punishment but investment in a shared reality.
24. The Isthmian Games were held every two years near Corinth — this metaphor would have been vivid and local. The word *stadion* ('stadium, racecourse') and *brabeion* ('prize') come directly from athletic competition. Paul does not mean only one Christian will be saved but urges the kind of total commitment that an athlete brings to competition.
25. The verb *agōnizomenos* ('competing, striving') gives us 'agonize.' The *enkrateuetai* ('exercises self-control') refers to the strict training regimen athletes followed — diet, sleep, abstinence. The Isthmian Games prize was a pine wreath (*stephanos*), which would quickly wither. Paul contrasts this *phtharton* ('perishable') crown with the *aphtharton* ('imperishable') crown believers receive.
26. Paul switches from running to boxing (*pykteuo*, 'I box, I fight with fists'). The phrase *ouk adēlōs* ('not aimlessly, not without clear direction') and *ouk aera derōn* ('not beating the air') describe focused, purposeful effort — every punch lands, every step counts. This is not exercise but combat with a real opponent.
27. The verb *hypōpiázō* (literally 'I strike under the eye, I give a black eye') is boxing language — Paul treats his body as a sparring partner that must be subdued. The verb *doulagōgō* ('I make a slave of, I bring into servitude') echoes the slavery language of verse 19, now applied to his own physical desires. The word *adokimos* ('disqualified, failing the test, rejected') is an athletic term for failing to meet competition standards. Whether Paul fears loss of salvation or loss of reward is debated, but the severity of the warning is unmistakable.

10

Summary: *Paul uses Israel's wilderness experience as a warning: the Israelites all enjoyed spiritual privileges (passing through the sea, eating manna, drinking from the rock) yet most were destroyed because of idolatry, sexual immorality, testing God, and grumbling. He warns the Corinthians that they cannot participate in both the Lord's table and the table of demons. The chapter concludes with practical guidelines: eat whatever is sold in the market without asking questions, accept dinner invitations freely, but if someone specifically identifies food as idol-offered, abstain for the sake of the other's conscience. Do everything for the glory of God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's typological reading of the Exodus narrative (vv. 1-4) is one of his most sophisticated hermeneutical passages. The identification of the 'spiritual rock' that followed Israel with Christ (v. 4) is a stunning christological claim. The principle 'God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond your ability' (v. 13) has become one of the most quoted Pauline texts. The practical distinction between marketplace meat, dinner invitations, and explicitly identified idol-food (vv. 25-30) provides a nuanced ethical framework.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'spiritual food' and 'spiritual drink' (vv. 3-4) has been interpreted both sacramentally (as types of the Eucharist) and more broadly (as divine provision). The 'rock was Christ' identification (v. 4) draws on Jewish traditions about a mobile well that followed Israel. The command to 'flee from idolatry' (v. 14) stands in tension with the permission to eat marketplace meat (v. 25) — Paul distinguishes between direct participation in idol worship and incidental contact with idol-associated food.*

Connections: *The wilderness narrative draws on Exodus 13-17, Numbers 11, 14, 21, 25, and Psalm 78. The 'cup of blessing' and 'bread' language (v. 16) connects to the Last Supper traditions (11:23-26) and the Passover meal. The 'table of demons' concept (v. 21) draws on Deuteronomy 32:17. The 'do everything for the glory of God' principle (v. 31) anticipates Romans 14:6-8 and Colossians 3:17.*

¹For I do not want you to be unaware, brothers and sisters, that our ancestors were all under the cloud, and all passed through the sea, ²They were all united with Moses through baptism in the cloud and in the sea. ³Did all consume the same spiritual meat. ⁴Did all partake of the same the identical supernatural drink — since they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ. ⁵Nevertheless, God was not pleased with most of them, and they were struck down in the wilderness. ⁶Now these things took place as examples for us, so that we might not desire evil things as they did. ⁷Do not be idolaters, as some of them were. As it is written: "The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to revel." ⁸We must not engage in sexual immorality, as some of them did, and twenty-three thousand fell in a single day. ⁹We must not put Christ to the test, as some of them did, and were destroyed by serpents. ¹⁰And do not grumble, as some of them grumbled, and were destroyed by the destroyer. ¹¹Now these things happened to them as examples, and they were written down for our instruction, upon whom the ends of the ages have come. ¹²So let the one who thinks they stand take care lest they fall. ¹³No temptation has overtaken you that is not common to humanity. God is faithful, and he will not let you be tempted beyond what you can bear, but with the temptation he will also provide the way of escape, so that you may be able to endure it. ¹⁴The refore, my beloved, flee from idolatry. ¹⁵I speak to you as sensible people; judge for yourselves what I say. ¹⁶The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ? ¹⁷Because there is one bread, we who are many are one body, for we all partake of the one bread. ¹⁸Consider the people of Israel: are not those who eat the sacrifices participants in the altar? ¹⁹What am I saying then? That food offered to idols is anything, or that an idol is anything? ²⁰No, but what they sacrifice, they sacrifice to demons and not to God. I do not want you to be participants with demons. ²¹You cannot drink the cup of the Lord and the cup of demons. You cannot partake of the table of the Lord and the table of demons. ²²Are we trying to provoke the Lord to jealousy? Are we stronger than he? ²³"All things are lawful," but not all things are beneficial. "All things are lawful," but not all things build up. ²⁴Let no one seek their own good, but the good of the other person. ²⁵Eat whatever is sold in the meat market without raising questions of conscience, ²⁶Because the world is the Lord's, and the fulness thereof. ²⁷If an unbeliever invites you to a meal

and you want to go, eat whatever is set before you without raising questions of conscience. ²⁸But if someone says to you, "This has been offered in sacrifice," then do not eat, for the sake of the one who informed you, and for the sake of conscience — ²⁹I mean the other person's conscience, not your own. For why should my freedom be judged by someone else's conscience? ³⁰If I partake with thankfulness, why am I denounced because of something for which I give thanks? ³¹So whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, do everything for the glory of God. ³²Give no offense to Jews or to Greeks or to the church of God, ³³Indeed as I as well please all men in all things, not seeking mine own profit, but the profit of numerous, that they may be saved.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ou thelō hymas agnoein* ('I do not want you to be ignorant') is a standard Pauline disclosure formula. The 'cloud' (*nephēlē*) is the pillar of cloud from Exodus 13:21-22. Paul says 'our ancestors' (*hoi pateres hēmōn*) even though most Corinthians were Gentiles — he identifies the church with Israel's story. The fivefold repetition of *pantes* ('all') in verses 1-4 is emphatic: everyone received the blessings, yet most fell.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 13:21-22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. Paul reads the Red Sea crossing typologically as a 'baptism' — immersion into a new identity under Moses's leadership, just as Christian baptism brings immersion into Christ. The passive *ebaptisanto* ('were baptized') can also be read as middle voice ('baptized themselves'). The phrase *eis ton Mōusēn* ('into Moses') parallels 'into Christ' in Romans 6:3 and Galatians 3:27.
3. The 'spiritual food' (*pneumatikon brōma*) is the manna of Exodus 16. Paul calls it 'spiritual' not because it was immaterial but because it came from the Spirit's provision. The parallel with the Lord's Supper is likely intentional.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The claim *hē petra de ēn ho Christos* ('the rock was Christ') identifies the pre-incarnate Christ as the source of Israel's sustenance in the wilderness. The 'rock that followed' (*akolouthousēs petras*) draws on a Jewish rabbinic tradition (found in *Tosefta Sukkah* 3:11 and later sources) that the well of Miriam (based on Numbers 20:1-11 and 21:16-18) traveled with Israel through the desert. Paul christianizes this tradition by identifying the rock with Christ.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 20:1-11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The understatement *ouk en tois pleiosin* ('not with most of them') is darkly ironic — of the entire Exodus generation, only Joshua and Caleb entered the promised land (Numbers 14:29-30). The verb *katestrōthēsan* ('they were spread out, laid low') pictures corpses scattered across the desert floor (Numbers 14:29).
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 14:29-30 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The word *typoi* ('types, examples, patterns') establishes Paul's hermeneutical method: Old Testament events are typological patterns that prefigure and instruct the church. The reference to 'desiring evil things' (*epithumētas kakōn*) echoes Numbers 11:4-34, where Israel's craving for meat brought divine punishment.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 11:4-34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Paul quotes Exodus 32:6, the golden calf incident. The verb *paizein* ('to play, to revel') in context implies both feasting and sexual activity associated with the idol worship. The connection to the Corinthian situation is direct: participating in temple meals (8:10) is the same pattern of idolatrous feasting that destroyed Israel.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 32:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The reference is to the Baal Peor incident (Numbers 25:1-9), where Israelite men had sexual relations with Moabite women and worshiped their gods. Numbers 25:9 gives the death toll as 24,000; Paul says 23,000, possibly distinguishing those who died 'in one day' from the total, or following a different tradition.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 25:1-9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The SBLGNT reads 'Christ' (*ton Christon*) rather than 'the Lord' — Paul identifies the pre-incarnate Christ as the one Israel tested in the wilderness (cf. v. 4, 'the rock was Christ'). The reference is to Numbers 21:5-6, where Israel's complaints about food and water resulted in venomous serpent attacks.

9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 21:5-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb *gongyzō* ('to grumble, to murmur') is onomatopoeic — it sounds like what it describes. The 'destroyer' (*olothreutēs*) may refer to the angel of death from Exodus 12:23 or to the plague of Numbers 16:41-50. The reference is probably to Korah's rebellion and its aftermath (Numbers 16-17), where grumbling against God's appointed leaders brought deadly consequences — directly relevant to the Corinthians' disrespect of Paul.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 12:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 16:41-50 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 16-17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The phrase *eis hous ta telē tōn aiōnōn katēntēken* ('upon whom the ends of the ages have arrived') reveals Paul's eschatological framework: the church lives at the climax of history, the point toward which all previous ages were directed. The 'ends' (*telē*) is plural — multiple ages converge in the present eschatological moment.
12. A single, devastating sentence aimed at Corinthian overconfidence. The person who 'thinks they stand' (*ho dokōn hestanaī*) — who considers themselves spiritually secure — is precisely the one most at risk. Israel thought their spiritual privileges guaranteed safety; they were wrong.
13. The word *peirasmos* can mean 'temptation' (enticement to sin) or 'trial/testing' (hardship that tests faith). The declaration *pistos de ho theos* ('but God is faithful') echoes 1:9. God's faithfulness guarantees three things: temptation will not exceed capacity, an escape route (*ekbasis*, literally 'a way out') will be provided, and endurance (*hypenekenin*, 'to bear up under') will be possible. Note: the promise is endurance, not removal of the temptation.
14. The address *agapētoi mou* ('my beloved') softens the command with affection. The imperative *pheugete* ('flee!') — the same urgent command as 6:18 regarding sexual immorality — demands immediate, decisive separation. Paul does not say 'be careful around idolatry' but 'run from it.'
15. The phrase *hōs phronimois legō* ('I speak as to sensible/prudent people') may be mildly ironic — the Corinthians pride themselves on wisdom, so Paul appeals to that self-image. The imperative *krinate* ('judge, evaluate') invites their own assessment of his argument.
16. The phrase to *potērion tēs eulogias* ('the cup of blessing') is a technical term from the Jewish Passover meal — the third cup, over which a blessing was pronounced. The word *koinōnia* ('participation, communion, sharing') from 1:9 now describes the believers' relationship to Christ's blood and body through the Lord's Supper. This is not merely a memorial but genuine participation in Christ's sacrifice. Paul mentions the cup before the bread, which may reflect Corinthian liturgical order.
17. The logic moves from Eucharistic participation to ecclesial unity: shared bread creates shared body. The plural *hoi polloi* ('the many') becoming *hen sōma* ('one body') is the Eucharistic foundation of Paul's body-of-Christ theology (developed further in chapter 12).
18. The phrase *ton Israēl kata sarka* ('Israel according to the flesh') means ethnic/historical Israel. Paul draws on the principle that eating sacrificial food creates *koinōnia* with the altar — and by extension, with the deity worshiped there. This establishes the analogy for idol-feasts in the next verses.
19. Paul anticipates the objection: 'Are you contradicting chapter 8, where you said idols are nothing?' He is not. The idol is indeed nothing (8:4), but that does not mean idol-worship is harmless.
20. Paul draws on Deuteronomy 32:17 (LXX): 'They sacrificed to demons (*daimoniois*) and not to God.' While idols themselves are nothing, the spiritual reality behind pagan worship is demonic. Participation in temple feasts creates *koinōnia* with these demonic powers — the same kind of real participation that the Lord's Supper creates with Christ.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The parallel structure — *potērion kyriou* / *potērion daimoniōn*, *trapezēs kyriou* / *trapezēs daimoniōn* — makes the incompatibility absolute. The 'table of the Lord' (*trapezēs kyriou*) echoes Malachi 1:7, 12, where it refers to the altar. Paul draws a direct equivalence between the Lord's Supper and temple meals: both create real spiritual bonds, and the two bonds are mutually exclusive.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Malachi 1:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The verb *parazēlōmen* ('to provoke to jealousy') echoes Deuteronomy 32:21, where Israel provoked God's jealousy through idol worship. The final question — *mē ischyroteroi autou esmen* ('are we stronger than he?') — is chilling: do you really want to compete with God?
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 32:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Paul returns to the Corinthian slogan from 6:12, now with a new second qualifier: *ou panta oikodomei* ('not all things build up'). The criterion shifts from personal freedom to community edification. The verb *oikodomeō* ('to build up') has been a key word since 3:9-17 — the question is always: does this action build the community or damage it?

24. This concise principle — *mēdeis to heautou zēteitō alla to tou heterou* ('let no one seek their own but that of the other') — summarizes the entire ethical argument of chapters 8-10. Rights yield to love; freedom serves the neighbor.
25. The Greek *makellon* (from Latin *macellum*) is the public meat market. Archaeological remains of the *macellum* have been found in Corinth. Paul's practical ruling: buy and eat marketplace meat freely — do not investigate whether it was previously offered to an idol. The phrase *mēden anakrinontes* ('not examining, not investigating') uses the judicial verb from 2:14-15, here meaning 'don't interrogate the meat's history.'
26. Paul quotes Psalm 24:1 (23:1 LXX). The theological principle: since everything belongs to the Lord, no food is inherently contaminated. God's ownership of all creation provides the basis for Christian freedom in dietary matters.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 24:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. Second practical scenario: a dinner invitation from a pagan. Paul permits acceptance (*kai thelete poreuesthai*, 'and you wish to go' — attendance is optional, not required). The same rule applies: eat without investigating. Social meals with pagans are not forbidden — Paul does not advocate separation from the wider culture.
28. Third scenario: someone at the meal explicitly identifies the food as *hierothyton* ('offered in sacrifice' — a more neutral term than *eidōlothyton*, 'idol-offered'). The speaker might be a pagan host who thinks the religious origin adds value, or a weak believer troubled by the association. Either way, Paul says abstain — not because the food is inherently contaminated but *di' ekeinon* ('for the sake of that person').
29. Paul clarifies: it is the other person's conscience (*tēn tou heterou*) that matters in this situation, not your own. The rhetorical question about freedom being judged by another's conscience (vv. 29b-30) may voice the Corinthians' own objection, which Paul has been anticipating.
30. This continues the Corinthian objection: 'If I pray over the food and eat with gratitude, why should anyone criticize me?' Paul allows the objection to stand but redirects the conversation to the overriding principle in the next verse.
31. This verse provides the supreme criterion that resolves all the cases: *panta eis doxan theou poieite* ('do everything for the glory of God'). The word *doxa* ('glory') corresponds to the Hebrew *kavod* — to glorify God is to treat God as the weightiest reality in every decision. Eating, drinking, and all of life become acts of worship when oriented toward God's glory.
32. The adjective *aproskopoi* ('blameless, giving no offense, not causing to stumble') extends the principle to three audiences: Jews, Greeks, and the church. Paul envisions a life so shaped by love that it creates no unnecessary obstacles for anyone — the same missionary flexibility described in 9:19-23.
33. Paul's final appeal points back to his own example (chapter 9): he seeks to *tou sympheron* ('the advantage') of *tōn pollōn* ('the many') rather than his own. The purpose clause *hina sōthōsin* ('so that they may be saved') reveals the ultimate motivation behind all of Paul's ethical teaching on food, freedom, and rights: the salvation of people.

11

Summary: *Paul addresses two worship-related issues. First, he discusses head coverings during prayer and prophecy (vv. 2-16), arguing from creation, nature, and church practice that women should have a covering on their heads when praying or prophesying. Second, he rebukes the Corinthians' practice of the Lord's Supper (vv. 17-34), which has degenerated into a meal that reinforces social divisions — the wealthy eat and drink to excess while the poor go hungry. Paul recites the words of institution ('This is my body... this cup is the new covenant in my blood') and warns that eating and drinking without discerning the body brings judgment.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Lord's Supper tradition (vv. 23-26) is the earliest written account of the institution, predating even the Gospels. Paul claims to have 'received from the Lord' this tradition, placing it in the chain of authoritative teaching. The phrase 'new covenant in my blood' (v. 25) explicitly connects Jesus's death to Jeremiah's new covenant prophecy (Jeremiah 31:31-34). The head covering passage assumes women are actively praying and prophesying in the assembly — Paul does not silence them but regulates how they participate.*

Translation Friction: *The head covering passage (vv. 2-16) is among the most debated in Paul's letters. The Greek *kephalē* ('head') may mean 'authority over' or 'source/origin' — the choice dramatically affects interpretation. The word *exousia* ('authority') in verse 10 is also debated: is it the woman's own authority or a sign of being under authority? We render the Greek and note the options. The Lord's Supper section has fewer textual difficulties but raises profound theological questions about 'discerning the body' (v. 29).*

Connections: The creation argument (vv. 7-9) draws on Genesis 1:26-27 and 2:18-23. The Lord's Supper words connect to Exodus 24:8 (blood of the covenant), Jeremiah 31:31-34 (new covenant), and the Synoptic institution narratives (Mark 14:22-25, Matthew 26:26-29, Luke 22:14-20). The warning about judgment (vv. 29-32) anticipates the final judgment themes of chapter 15.

¹Be imitators of me, as I am of Christ. ²Now I commend you because you remember me in everything and maintain the traditions just as I delivered them to you. ³But I want you to understand that the head of every man is Christ, the head of a wife is her husband, and the head of Christ is God. ⁴Every man who prays or prophesies with his head covered dishonors his head. ⁵But every woman who prays or prophesies with her head uncovered dishonors her head, for it is the same as if her head were shaved. ⁶For if a woman will not cover her head, she should cut her hair short. But if it is disgraceful for a woman to cut off her hair or shave her head, let her cover her head. ⁷A man ought not to cover his head, since he is the image and glory of God, but the woman is the glory of the man. ⁸For man was not made from woman, but woman from man. ⁹Neither was man created for the sake of woman, but woman for the sake of man. ¹⁰For this reason a woman ought to have a symbol of authority on her head, because of the angels. ¹¹Nevertheless, in the Lord, woman is not independent of man, nor is man independent of woman. ¹²For just as woman came from man, so man comes through woman. But all things come from God. ¹³Judge for yourselves: is it proper for a woman to pray to God with her head uncovered? ¹⁴Does not nature itself teach you that if a man wears long hair, it is a disgrace to him, ¹⁵However, if a lady possess long hair, it is a glory to her — for her hair is given her for a covering. ¹⁶If anyone is inclined to be contentious, we have no such practice — nor do the churches of God. ¹⁷But in the following instructions I do not commend you, because when you come together it is not for the better but for the worse. ¹⁸For, in the first place, when you come together as a church, I hear that there are divisions among you, and I believe it in part. ¹⁹Indeed, there must be factions among you, so that those who are genuine may be recognized among you. ²⁰When you come together, it is not the Lord's Supper that you eat. ²¹For when the time comes to eat, each one goes ahead with his own meal. One goes hungry while another gets drunk. ²²Do you not have houses to eat and drink in? Or do you despise the church of God and humiliate those who have nothing? What should I say to you? Should I commend you in this? I will not commend you. ²³For I received from the Lord what I also delivered to you, that the Lord Jesus, on the night he was betrayed, took bread, ²⁴Indeed, following he had given thanks, he brake it, and stated, Take, eat — this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. ²⁵In the same way he also took the cup, after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me." ²⁶For as often as you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. ²⁷Therefore, whoever eats the bread or drinks the cup of the Lord in an unworthy manner will be guilty of sinning against the body and blood of the Lord. ²⁸Let a person examine himself, and then eat of the bread and drink of the cup. ²⁹For the one who eats and drinks without discerning the body eats and drinks judgment on himself. ³⁰That is why many of you are weak and ill, and some have died. ³¹But if we judged ourselves properly, we would not be judged. ³²But when we are judged by the Lord, we are being disciplined so that we may not be condemned along with the world. ³³So then, my brothers and sisters, when you come together to eat, wait for one another. ³⁴If anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, so that when you come together it will not be for judgment. The other matters I will address when I come.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse likely concludes the argument of chapter 10 (chapter divisions are later additions). Paul's call to imitation is now explicitly grounded: *mimētai mou gines̄the kathōs kagō Christou* ('imitate me as I imitate Christ'). The chain of imitation — Christ Paul Corinthians — prevents both hero worship (Paul is not the ultimate model) and autonomy (the Corinthians cannot claim to follow Christ while ignoring apostolic example).
2. The word *paradoxeis* ('traditions, teachings handed down') is technical language for authoritative tradition passed from teacher to student. Paul praises their general faithfulness before addressing the specific problems. The verb *paredōka* ('I delivered, I handed over') will recur in verse 23 for the Lord's Supper tradition.
3. The Greek *kephalē* ('head') is the crux of this passage. It can mean 'authority over' (as in most traditional readings) or 'source/origin' (as some scholars argue from its usage in Greek literature). The order — Christ/man, man/woman, God/Christ — is not hierarchical (God is mentioned last, not first) but likely traces the 'source' relationship. The Greek *anēr* can mean 'man' or 'husband,' and *gynē* can mean 'woman' or 'wife' — in this

context about married couples at worship, 'husband' and 'wife' are likely.

4. The phrase kata kephalēs echōn ('having [something] down from the head') likely refers to a cloth draped over the head. Roman men of high status sometimes covered their heads during religious rituals (capite velato), so Paul may be opposing a specific Roman practice rather than giving a universal rule. The double meaning of 'head' — the man's physical head and Christ as his metaphorical head — creates deliberate ambiguity.
5. Crucially, Paul assumes women pray and prophesy in the assembly — the issue is not whether they participate but how. The word akatakalyptō ('uncovered, unveiled') describes the absence of a head covering. Paul equates an uncovered head with a shaved head (exurēmēnē) — in the ancient world, a shaved female head was associated with shame, mourning, or the punishment of adulteresses.
6. Paul uses a reductio ad absurdum: if being uncovered is acceptable, then so is being shorn (keirasthō) or shaved (xyrasthai). But since the Corinthians agree that a shaved/shorn woman is shameful (aischron), they should agree that covering is appropriate. The argument assumes shared cultural values about female appearance.
7. Paul draws on Genesis 1:26-27. The statement that man is eikōn kai doxa theou ('image and glory of God') reflects Genesis 1:27. That woman is doxa andros ('glory of man') does not deny she bears God's image (Genesis 1:27 includes both male and female) but adds a relational dimension from the Genesis 2 narrative. The word doxa ('glory') here may mean 'that which reflects the glory of' — as the moon reflects the sun's light.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:26-27. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Paul references Genesis 2:21-22 (woman created from man's rib/side). The preposition ek ('from, out of') emphasizes origin. Note that Paul will qualify this in verse 12: 'as woman came from man, so man comes through woman' — the dependency is mutual.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:21-22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Paul references Genesis 2:18 ('It is not good for the man to be alone; I will make a helper suitable for him'). The phrase dia ton andra ('for the sake of the man') echoes the 'helper' (ezer) concept. In Hebrew, ezer does not imply subordination — God himself is called Israel's ezer (Psalm 33:20, 70:5).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 2:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 33:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. This verse is notoriously difficult. The Greek exousian echein epi tēs kephalēs ('to have authority on the head') could mean: (1) a sign of being under authority (traditional reading, requiring 'symbol of' as an interpretive addition), (2) the woman's own authority to pray and prophesy (the covering as her authorization), or (3) authority over her own head (the right to decide about covering). The phrase dia tous angelous ('because of the angels') may reference angels as guardians of worship order, or the Genesis 6:1-4 tradition, or angelic presence in the assembly. The ambiguity is genuine.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 6:1-4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The qualifier en kyriō ('in the Lord') is crucial — whatever hierarchical or source-relationship Paul has established, it is mutual in Christ. The double negative oute...chōris...oute...chōris ('neither without...nor without') creates complete interdependence. This verse significantly qualifies verses 7-9.
12. Paul balances his earlier creation argument: if woman originated from man (Genesis 2), every man since has been born through (dia) a woman. The final clause ta de panta ek tou theou ('but all things are from God') places both sexes under divine sovereignty, preventing either from claiming ultimacy over the other.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Paul appeals to the Corinthians' own sense of propriety (prepon, 'fitting, proper, appropriate'). This is an argument from cultural sensibility, not from divine command — a weaker form of argumentation that suggests Paul recognizes the cultural specificity of the practice.
14. The appeal to physis ('nature') is an argument from what seems natural or customary. The claim that long hair on men is atimia ('disgrace, dishonor') reflects Greco-Roman cultural norms, not universal biology — many ancient Near Eastern men wore long hair (Nazirites, Spartans). Paul is arguing from cultural convention, which weakens the argument's universal applicability.
15. The statement that long hair is given (dedotai, divine passive — given by God) as a peribolaion ('covering, wrap') creates a potential problem for Paul's argument: if long hair is a natural covering, why require an additional artificial covering? Some scholars argue Paul is saying long hair is the only covering needed; others that the natural covering teaches the principle of covering, which should be honored with an additional veil.
16. Paul's final argument is from church practice: hēmeis toiautēn synētheian ouk echomen ('we have no such custom'). The ambiguity is whether 'no such custom' means 'no custom of women being uncovered' or 'no custom of being contentious about it.' The appeal to universal church practice (hai ekklesiāi tou theou) serves as Paul's trump card when other arguments may not persuade.
17. The shift from praise (v. 2, 'I commend you') to criticism (ouk epainō, 'I do not commend you') signals a more serious problem. The Corinthians' assemblies are actually making things worse (eis to hēsson) rather than better (eis to kreisson) — their worship is counter-productive.

- 18.** The word *schismata* ('divisions') recurs from 1:10. The phrase *meros ti pisteuō* ('I partly believe') is diplomatically restrained — Paul does not dismiss the reports entirely but also does not accept every detail uncritically. The 'first of all' (*prōton men*) implies a list, but the second item is never explicitly stated (it may be the spiritual gifts discussion in chapters 12-14).
- 19.** The word *haireseis* ('factions, parties, sects' — the origin of 'heresies') in this context means party divisions, not formal theological heresy. Paul's statement that factions 'must' (*dei*) exist is not endorsement but recognition of a divine purpose: divisions reveal who is *dokimoi* ('tested, approved, genuine'). The furnace of conflict refines character.
- 20.** The phrase *kyriakon deipnon* ('the Lord's Supper') appears only here in the New Testament — Paul may have coined the term. The adjective *kyriakos* ('belonging to the Lord') marks this meal as distinct from ordinary dining. Paul's judgment is blunt: what they do when they gather is not the Lord's Supper at all. Their behavior has invalidated the meal.
- 21.** The verb *prolambanei* ('takes beforehand, goes ahead with') indicates that wealthier members, who could arrive earlier and bring better food, were eating before the poorer members arrived (slaves and laborers who could not leave work early). The result: *hos men peina hos de methyei* ('one hungers, another is drunk'). The Lord's Supper, which was supposed to enact equality in Christ, was instead reinforcing Corinthian social stratification.
- 22.** Paul's indignation builds through four questions. The key accusation: *kataphroneite tēs ekklēσίας tou theou* ('you despise the church of God') and *kataischynete tous mē echontas* ('you humiliate those who do not have'). The 'have-nots' (*tous mē echontas*) are poor members who arrive with little or no food. The wealthy are not merely eating their own food but humiliating the poor by creating a two-tier meal that mirrors the social hierarchy the gospel was supposed to dissolve.
- 23.** The technical language *parelabon...paredōka* ('I received...I delivered') is the standard terminology for transmitting authoritative tradition in both Jewish and early Christian circles. Paul claims to have received this tradition *apo tou kyriou* ('from the Lord') — whether through a direct revelation or through a chain of tradition originating from Jesus is debated. The phrase *en tē nykti hē paredideto* ('on the night he was being handed over/betrayed') uses *paredideto*, which can mean 'betrayed' (by Judas) or 'handed over' (by God — cf. Romans 8:32). The ambiguity may be intentional.
- 24.** The verb *eucharistēsas* ('having given thanks') is the origin of 'Eucharist.' The words *touto mou estin to sōma* to *hyper hymōn* ('this is my body which is for you') are among the most debated in Christian history — 'is' (*estin*) has been interpreted as literal identity, symbolic representation, spiritual presence, and more. The SBLGNT does not include 'broken' (*klōmenon*), which appears in later manuscripts. The command *touto poieite* ('do this') establishes the meal as a repeated practice, not a one-time event. The word *anamnēsis* ('remembrance') is more than mere memory — in Jewish Passover theology, it means making the past event present and effective.
- 25.** The phrase *meta to deipnēsai* ('after supper') indicates the cup came after the meal, not during it — the original context was a full Passover meal. The declaration *touto to potērion hē kainē diathēkē estin en tō emō haimati* ('this cup is the new covenant in my blood') explicitly invokes Jeremiah 31:31-34, where God promises a new covenant to replace the Sinai covenant. Jesus's blood is the ratifying sacrifice of this new covenant, just as the blood of Exodus 24:8 ratified the old.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 24:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 26.** Paul adds his own interpretive comment to the tradition. The verb *katangallete* ('you proclaim, you announce publicly') means the Lord's Supper is a proclamation — every celebration is a sermon in action. The temporal marker *achri hou elthē* ('until he comes') gives the meal an eschatological horizon: it looks backward to the cross and forward to the return. The meal exists in the tension between 'already' (Christ has died) and 'not yet' (Christ has not yet returned).
- 27.** The adverb *anaxiōs* ('unworthily, in an unworthy manner') modifies the manner of eating, not the worthiness of the eater. In context, 'unworthily' means eating in a way that perpetuates social divisions (vv. 21-22). The word *enochos* ('guilty, liable, answerable for') is a legal term — eating without regard for others makes one liable for the very body and blood the meal commemorates.
- 28.** The verb *dokimazatō* ('let him test, let him examine') is from the metallurgical testing vocabulary — test yourself as you would test metal for quality. The self-examination is not a general inventory of sins but specifically: am I participating in a way that honors the body of Christ (both the crucified body and the community)?
- 29.** The phrase *mē diakrinōn to sōma* ('not discerning the body') is ambiguous: 'the body' could mean Christ's body in the bread, the church as Christ's body, or both. Given the context of social divisions at the meal, 'the body' most likely refers to the community — failing to recognize the gathered church as Christ's body leads to judgment. The SBLGNT does not include 'unworthily' or 'of the Lord' in this verse, following the earliest manuscripts.
- 30.** Paul attributes actual physical illness and death in the Corinthian community to their abuse of the Lord's Supper. The verb *koimōntai* ('sleep') is the Christian euphemism for death (cf. 7:39; 15:6, 18, 20, 51). Whether Paul means divine punishment, natural consequences of social dysfunction, or a spiritual-physical connection is debated, but the severity of the statement is unmistakable.

31. The wordplay between *diekrinomen* ('we were judging/discerning ourselves') and *ekrinometha* ('we would be judged') connects back to verse 29's *diakrinōn* ('discerning'). Self-examination prevents divine judgment — the discipline is restorative, not retributive.
32. The verb *paideuometha* ('we are disciplined, educated, trained') uses the vocabulary of parental correction — God's judgment on the community is disciplinary (corrective) not condemnatory (destructive). The purpose clause *hina mē syn tō kosmō katakrithōmen* ('so that we may not be condemned with the world') distinguishes between divine discipline within the family and final condemnation.
33. The practical solution is remarkably simple: *allēlous ekdechesthe* ('wait for one another'). The entire problem — rich eating before poor arrive, social stratification at the Lord's table — is solved by the basic act of waiting. The verb *ekdechesthe* means 'welcome, receive, wait for' — it implies hospitality, not mere delay.
34. Paul's second practical instruction: if you cannot wait, eat at home (*en oikō esthietō*). The purpose clause *hina mē eis krima synerchēsthe* ('so that you may not come together for judgment') reframes their gatherings as potentially judicial events — assemblies that should bring blessing can instead bring *krima* ('judgment'). The closing phrase *ta de loipa* ('the remaining matters') indicates Paul has more to say but will handle it in person.

12

Summary: *Paul addresses 'spiritual things' (pneumatika) — the gifts of the Spirit and their proper use in the community. He establishes that the fundamental confession 'Jesus is Lord' is the Spirit's work, then describes the diversity of gifts given by the one Spirit, one Lord, and one God. Using the extended metaphor of the human body, Paul argues that every member is necessary, that no one can claim superiority or independence, and that God has specially honored the weaker members. The chapter closes with a list of roles God has appointed in the church and a series of rhetorical questions emphasizing that no one has all gifts.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The body-of-Christ metaphor is Paul's most developed ecclesiological image. The emphasis on the 'weaker' and 'less honorable' members receiving greater honor (vv. 22-25) directly addresses Corinthian social stratification. The triad of 'Spirit, Lord, God' in verses 4-6 is one of the earliest trinitarian patterns in Christian literature. The nine gifts listed in verses 8-10 have shaped charismatic theology for centuries.*

Translation Friction: *The distinction between pneumatika ('spiritual things') and charismata ('grace-gifts') in this chapter is debated — Paul may use them interchangeably or may distinguish them. The gift list is not exhaustive (cf. Romans 12:6-8 for a different list). The phrase 'varieties of tongues' (*genē glōssōn*) and 'interpretation of tongues' (*hermēneia glōssōn*) will be further discussed in chapter 14. Whether the 'body of Christ' is metaphor or ontological reality is a perennial theological question.*

Connections: *The body metaphor was common in Greco-Roman political rhetoric (e.g., Livy's fable of the belly) but Paul transforms it christologically. The gift lists parallel Romans 12:6-8 and Ephesians 4:11. The 'weaker members' theme connects to the weak-conscience discussion of chapters 8-10. The chapter leads directly into the love hymn of chapter 13, which provides the governing principle for all gift use.*

¹Now concerning spiritual gifts, brothers and sisters, I do not want you to be uninformed. ²You know that when you were pagans you were led astray to mute idols, however you were led. ³Therefore I want you to understand that no one speaking by the Spirit of God says "Jesus is cursed," and no one can say "Jesus is Lord" except by the Holy Spirit. ⁴But the same spirit, and now there are diversities of gifts. ⁵There are various kinds of administrations, but the same Lord. ⁶There are different kinds of working, but the same God is at work in all of them and in everyone. ⁷To each one is given the manifestation of the Spirit for the common good. ⁸For to one is given through the Spirit the utterance of wisdom, and to another the utterance of knowledge according to the same Spirit, ⁹to another person faith by that same Spirit, and to yet another gifts of healing by that one Spirit. ¹⁰To another performing miracles. To another prophecy. To another distinguishing between spirits. To another speaking in various languages. To another interpreting those languages:. ¹¹All these are empowered by one and the same Spirit, who distributes to each person individually as the Spirit wills. ¹²For just as the body is one and has many members, and all the members of the body, though many, are one body — so it is with Christ. ¹³For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body — Jews or Greeks, slaves or free — and we were all given one Spirit to drink. ¹⁴For the body does not consist of one member but of many. ¹⁵If the foot should say, "Because I am not a hand, I do not belong to the body," that

does not make it any less a part of the body. ¹⁶And if the ear should say, "Because I am not an eye, I do not belong to the body," that does not make it any less a part of the body. ¹⁷If the whole body were an eye, where would the sense of hearing be? If the whole body were an ear, where would the sense of smell be? ¹⁸But as it is, God arranged the members in the body, each one of them, as he chose. ¹⁹If all were a single member, where would the body be? ²⁰As it is, there are many members but one body. ²¹The eye cannot say to the hand, "I have no need of you," nor again the head to the feet, "I have no need of you." ²²On the contrary, the parts of the body that seem to be weaker are indispensable, ²³The parts of the body that seem less important we treat with special honor, and our less presentable parts receive a dignity that our more attractive parts do not need. ²⁴For our comely parts possess no need — but God has tempered the body as one, possessing granted more abundant honour to that part which lacked:. ²⁵so that there would be no division in the body, but instead every part would show equal concern for the others. ²⁶If one member suffers, all suffer together with it; if one member is honored, all rejoice together with it. ²⁷Now you are the body of Christ, and individually members of it. ²⁸And God has appointed in the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then miracles, then gifts of healing, forms of assistance, forms of leadership, and various kinds of tongues. ²⁹Is everyone an apostle? Is everyone a prophet? Is everyone a teacher? Does everyone perform miracles? ³⁰Do all possess gifts of healing? Do all speak in tongues? Do all interpret? ³¹But earnestly desire the greater gifts. And I will show you a still more excellent way.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *peri de* ('now concerning') marks another response to the Corinthians' letter. The Greek *pneumatikōn* could be neuter ('spiritual things/gifts') or masculine ('spiritual people'). Most translations take it as neuter, referring to the gifts, though Paul may intentionally leave it ambiguous. The disclosure formula *ou thelō hymas agnoein* ('I do not want you to be ignorant') signals an important correction of misunderstanding.
2. Paul reminds the Corinthians of their pre-Christian experience with idolatry. The adjective *aphōna* ('mute, voiceless, speechless') contrasts the silent idols with the speaking Spirit. The phrase *hōs an ēgesthe apagomenoi* ('however you were being led away') describes the directionless, passive experience of pagan religion — they were dragged along by forces they did not understand.
3. Paul provides the foundational test for authentic spiritual experience: the confession *kyrios Iēsous* ('Jesus is Lord'). The phrase *anathema Iēsous* ('Jesus is cursed') may reflect actual occurrences in Corinthian worship where ecstatic speakers uttered shocking statements, or it may be a hypothetical extreme. The declaration that only the Holy Spirit enables the lordship confession establishes the Spirit as the source of all genuine Christian experience. This is the christological criterion for evaluating spiritual claims.
4. The word *diakrisis* ('varieties, distributions, apportionments') emphasizes diversity within unity. The *charismata* ('gifts of grace') — from *charis* ('grace') — are the Spirit's concrete manifestations in the community. The trinitarian pattern begins: one Spirit distributes diverse gifts.
5. The word *diakoniōn* ('services, ministries') shifts from gifts to their expression in service. The 'same Lord' (*ho autos kyrios*) is Christ, continuing the trinitarian pattern: Spirit gifts, Lord service.
6. The word *energēmatōn* ('workings, activities, effects') and the verb *energōn* ('working, empowering') share the root from which English 'energy' derives. The trinitarian pattern completes: Spirit/gifts, Lord/service, God/empowerment. The phrase *ta panta en pasin* ('all things in all') emphasizes God's comprehensive activity — every genuine spiritual manifestation in every person traces back to the one God.
7. Two crucial points: first, *hekastō* ('to each one') — every believer receives a manifestation, not just an elite spiritual class. Second, *pros to sympheron* ('for the benefit, for what is advantageous') — the purpose is corporate benefit, not individual prestige. The word *phanerōsis* ('manifestation, disclosure, making visible') means the Spirit becomes visible through the gifts.
8. The gift list begins with *logos sophias* ('word/utterance of wisdom') and *logos gnōseōs* ('word/utterance of knowledge'). These are not general qualities but specific Spirit-enabled capacities for speaking wisdom and knowledge in the assembly. The distinction between them is not entirely clear — wisdom may be more practical/applied while knowledge may be more revelatory/doctrinal.
9. The 'faith' (*pistis*) mentioned here is not saving faith (which all believers share) but a special gift of extraordinary trust — the kind that moves mountains (13:2). The plural *charismata iamatōn* ('gifts of healings') is doubly plural, suggesting diverse types of healing for diverse conditions, not a single blanket ability.
10. Five more gifts complete the list of nine. *Energēmata dynamēōn* ('workings of powers/miracles') overlaps with healing but may include non-medical supernatural acts. *Prophēteia* ('prophecy') is Spirit-inspired speech that builds up the community (14:3). *Diakrisis pneumatōn* ('discernments of spirits') is the ability to evaluate whether a spiritual manifestation is genuinely from God. *Genē glōssōn* ('kinds of tongues') refers to Spirit-inspired speech in languages unknown to the speaker. *Hermēneia glōssōn* ('interpretation of tongues') makes tongue-speech intelligible to the community. Tongues and interpretation are placed last — possibly reflecting Paul's assessment of their relative importance in the assembly.

11. The summary statement reaffirms unity in diversity: *to hen kai to auto pneuma* ('the one and the same Spirit') is the single source of all gifts. The phrase *kathōs bouletai* ('as he wills') assigns sovereignty to the Spirit — gifts are not earned, chosen, or competed for but distributed according to the Spirit's own decision. This directly undercuts any Corinthian hierarchy of gifts.
12. The body metaphor was familiar in Greco-Roman rhetoric, but Paul's conclusion is startling: instead of saying 'so it is with the church,' he says *houtōs kai ho Christos* ('so also is Christ'). The church does not merely resemble a body — it is Christ's body. The identification is ontological, not merely illustrative.
13. Baptism by the Spirit creates the one body, transcending the most fundamental social divisions of the ancient world: ethnic (Jews/Greeks) and status (slaves/free). The verb *epotisthēmen* ('we were given to drink, we were drenched') may refer to the Spirit's infilling as a baptismal experience (being immersed) or to the ongoing experience of the Spirit as spiritual drink (echoing 10:4, drinking from the spiritual rock). Both images — baptism and drinking — convey saturation in the Spirit.
14. This simple statement introduces the extended body analogy (vv. 14-26). A body that was only one part would not be a body at all. The implication: a church where everyone has the same gift or speaks in tongues is not truly functioning as Christ's body.
15. Paul personifies body parts to address those who feel excluded because their gifts seem less impressive. The foot's self-exclusion ('I am not a hand') is absurd — one's identity as a body member does not depend on having a particular function. This addresses believers who feel inferior because they do not speak in tongues or exercise more visible gifts.
16. The second example reinforces the point with a different pair: ear and eye. The logic is the same — difference of function does not diminish membership.
17. Paul uses absurdist humor: a body that was entirely an eye could see everything but hear nothing. The Corinthians' obsession with one spectacular gift (likely tongues) would produce a monstrously dysfunctional body. Diversity is not a concession to weakness but a design requirement.
18. The verb *etheto* ('placed, arranged, appointed') assigns the body's design to God's deliberate choice (*kathōs ethelēsen*, 'as he wished'). No member chose its own placement, and no member can claim its position is accidental. This parallels the Spirit's sovereignty in distributing gifts (v. 11).
19. The question is rhetorical — a body that is all one part is not a body. Uniformity destroys the very thing it claims to perfect.
20. The summary statement: *polla men melē, hen de sōma* ('many members, one body'). Unity and diversity are not in tension — they are the two essential characteristics of a body.
21. Paul now addresses the opposite problem: not those who feel excluded but those who exclude others. The 'eye' and 'head' — presumably the more prominent members who possess impressive gifts — cannot dismiss the 'hand' and 'feet' as unnecessary. If verses 15-16 address inferiority, verses 21-25 address superiority.
22. The word *asthenestera* ('weaker') echoes the 'weak' members of chapters 8-10. Paul now makes a counterintuitive claim: the *ta dokounta melē* ('the members that seem') weaker are actually *anankaia* ('necessary, indispensable'). Internal organs — invisible and seemingly fragile — are more essential to survival than external, visible parts.
23. The metaphor extends to how we treat body parts: those considered 'less honorable' (*atimōtera*) receive more covering and attention — we clothe them with greater honor (*timēn perissoterein*). The 'unpresentable parts' (*ta aschēmona*) are given *euschēmosynēn* ('presentability, propriety'). Paul implies the community should operate the same way: those with less visible gifts should receive greater honor.
24. The verb *synekerasen* ('composed, blended, combined') describes God as the master designer who deliberately structured the body so that the less honored receive more. This is divine social engineering against hierarchy — God's own design favors the disadvantaged.
25. The purpose of God's design: *hina mē ē schisma en tō sōmati* ('so that there may be no schism/division in the body'). The word *schisma* returns from 1:10 and 11:18 — the body metaphor is Paul's answer to the division problem that has plagued the entire letter. The positive counterpart: *hyper allēlōn merimnōsin* ('they may care for one another equally').
26. The body's interdependence manifests in shared experience: sympathy (*sympaschei*, 'suffer with') and shared joy (*synchairei*, 'rejoice with'). The prefix *syn-* ('with, together') appears in both verbs, emphasizing solidarity. A church where some celebrate while others suffer is as dysfunctional as a body where one hand is healthy while the other is paralyzed.
27. The application is direct: *hymeis de este sōma Christou* ('you are Christ's body'). The phrase *melē ek merous* ('members from a part,' i.e., 'individually members') preserves both the corporate identity (you are the body) and individual significance (each person is a member). The Corinthians are not merely like a body — they are Christ's actual body in Corinth.
28. This second list is ordered with numerical markers (*prōton, deuteron, triton* — 'first, second, third'), suggesting a ranking by importance. Apostles, prophets, and teachers are foundational roles. Then come miracles and healing (gifts from vv. 9-10), followed by two new items: *antilēmpseis* ('acts of helping, forms of assistance') and *kybernēseis* ('acts of guidance, forms of leadership/administration' — from the word for steering a ship). Tongues appear last — pointedly, given the Corinthians' apparent elevation of this gift.
29. Seven rhetorical questions, all introduced by *mē* (expecting a 'no' answer). The point is inescapable: no one has all gifts, and not everyone has the same gift. The Corinthian assumption that everyone should speak in tongues is demolished.

30. The final three questions specifically target the gifts the Corinthians most prized: healing, tongues, and interpretation. The implied answer to each is emphatically 'no.' The diversity that Paul has celebrated is not optional but divinely mandated.
31. The imperative *zēloute* ('earnestly desire, strive for') could also be indicative ('you are striving for') — if indicative, Paul is observing their behavior rather than commanding it. The phrase *kath' hyperbolēn hodon* ('a way beyond all comparison') introduces chapter 13 — the 'more excellent way' is the way of love. This is one of the most celebrated transitions in all of Paul's letters: from the gifts of the Spirit to the supremacy of love.

13

Summary: *1 Corinthians 13 is Paul's celebrated exposition on love (agape), set within his larger argument about spiritual gifts. After listing the gifts in chapter 12 and before returning to their regulation in chapter 14, Paul inserts this passage to demonstrate that love is the indispensable context for all spiritual gifts. Without love, even the most spectacular abilities — tongues, prophecy, mountain-moving faith — are empty. Paul personifies love with fifteen characteristics (vv. 4-7), then argues that love alone endures when all other gifts pass away. The chapter closes with the triad of faith, hope, and love, declaring love the greatest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is often read in isolation at weddings and funerals, but its original context is a rebuke. The Corinthians were using spiritual gifts competitively, and Paul's praise of love is simultaneously an indictment of their lovelessness. The fifteen attributes of love in verses 4-7 are all verbs in Greek — love is defined by what it does, not what it feels. Several of the negative descriptions ('love does not envy, does not boast, is not arrogant') directly mirror the Corinthian problems catalogued elsewhere in the letter. The 'mirror' image in verse 12 refers to the polished bronze mirrors of Corinth, famously manufactured there but yielding only dim reflections.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek agape is rendered 'love' throughout, not the KJV's 'charity' (which reflected Latin caritas via the Vulgate). While 'charity' in 1611 could mean 'love,' in modern English it means 'almsgiving,' which distorts Paul's meaning. The verb forms in verses 4-7 resist smooth English translation; we preserve the verbal character as much as possible.*

Connections: *This chapter bridges chapters 12 and 14, which together form Paul's extended treatment of spiritual gifts. The eschatological vision of 'seeing face to face' (v. 12) echoes Moses's face-to-face encounter with God (Exodus 33:11, Numbers 12:8). The triad of faith, hope, and love appears also in 1 Thessalonians 1:3, 5:8, and Colossians 1:4-5.*

¹If I speak in the tongues of men and of angels but do not have love, I have become a noisy gong or a clanging cymbal. ²And if I have prophecy and understand all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith so as to move mountains, but do not have love, I am nothing. ³And if I give away all my possessions, and if I hand over my body so that I may boast, but do not have love, I gain nothing. ⁴Love is patient, love is kind, love does not envy. Love does not boast, it is not arrogant. ⁵It does not act dishonorably, it does not seek its own interests, it is not provoked, it does not keep a record of wrongs. ⁶It does not rejoice at wrongdoing but rejoices together with the truth. ⁷It bears all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things. ⁸Love never falls. But if there are prophecies, they will be set aside; if there are tongues, they will cease; if there is knowledge, it will be set aside. ⁹Since we know in part, and we prophesy in part. ¹⁰However, when that which is perfect is come, then that which is in part will be done away. ¹¹When I was a child, I spoke like a child, I thought like a child, I reasoned like a child. When I became an adult, I set aside childish things. ¹²For now we see in a mirror, dimly, but then face to face. Now I know in part, but then I will know fully, just as I have been fully known. ¹³And now these three remain: faith, hope, and love. But the greatest of these is love.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul begins with an extreme case: even angelic speech without love is mere noise. The Greek *chalkos echon* ('sounding bronze') and *kumbalon alalazon* ('wailing cymbal') evoke the percussion instruments of pagan worship in Corinth — the sound is loud but meaningless. The KJV's 'tinkling' is too gentle; *alalazon* means 'wailing, clashing.'

2. Paul escalates: prophecy, comprehensive knowledge, and miracle-working faith — all gifts the Corinthians prized — count for nothing without love. The mountain-moving faith echoes Jesus's teaching (Mark 11:23). The blunt 'I am nothing' (outhen eimi) is a deliberate shock, deflating the Corinthian fascination with spectacular gifts.
3. The SBLGNT reads kauchesomai ('that I may boast') rather than kauthesomia ('to be burned'), which is a variant reading reflected in the KJV. The critical text suggests that even martyrdom motivated by self-glory rather than love is worthless. The verb psomiso ('I feed by hand, I dole out') emphasizes the laborious, hands-on nature of the giving — and still it profits nothing without love.
4. Paul now defines love with fifteen verbs — love is described by what it does, not by what it feels. The first two are positive (patient, kind), then a cascade of negatives follows. The Greek perpereuesthai ('to boast, brag') occurs only here in the New Testament. The word physioutai ('is puffed up') echoes 4:6, 18, 19 and 8:1, targeting the Corinthians' specific vice.
5. The phrase ou zetei ta heautēs ('does not seek its own') directly echoes 10:24 and 10:33, where Paul made the same point about himself. The verb logizetai ('reckon, calculate') is an accounting term — love does not maintain a ledger of offenses. The KJV adds 'easily' before 'provoked,' softening what in Greek is absolute: love is not provoked.
6. The prefix syn- in synchairei ('rejoices with/together') suggests communal celebration — love joins in the truth's triumph rather than savoring another's failure. The contrast between adikia ('wrongdoing, injustice') and aletheia ('truth') pairs moral and intellectual integrity.
7. The fourfold panta ('all things') creates a powerful rhetorical climax. The verb stegei can mean 'covers' (as a roof covers a house) or 'bears' (as in bearing a load) — both senses apply. The sequence moves from passive endurance (bears) through trust and hope to active persistence (endures). Love's coverage is total.
8. The verb piptei ('falls') means 'collapses, fails' — love never loses its structural integrity. Paul now contrasts love's permanence with the temporary nature of gifts the Corinthians most valued. The verb katargeo ('to abolish, set aside, render inoperative') indicates that prophecy and knowledge serve a purpose that will be completed, after which they are no longer needed. Tongues 'will cease' (pausontai) uses a different verb, but Paul is not making a theological distinction between different modes of cessation.
9. The phrase ek merous ('from a part, partially') frames all present knowledge and prophecy as incomplete. This is not false or wrong but fragmentary — we see truly but not fully.
10. The Greek to teleion ('the complete, the perfect, the mature') is neuter, referring to a state or condition rather than a person. In context, this refers to the eschatological consummation when face-to-face knowledge replaces partial knowledge (v. 12). We render it 'the complete' rather than 'the perfect' to avoid confusion with moral perfection.
11. The analogy does not demean childhood but illustrates the natural supersession of one stage by another. The three verbs — speaking, thinking, reasoning — correspond loosely to the three gifts mentioned in verse 8 (tongues, prophecy, knowledge). The word aner ('adult male, man') is rendered 'adult' here since the contrast is maturity versus immaturity, not gender.
12. The Greek esoptron ('mirror') refers to the polished bronze mirrors for which Corinth was famous — clear enough to show a reflection but never as sharp as direct sight. The phrase en ainigmati ('in a riddle, dimly') echoes Numbers 12:8 (LXX), where God speaks to Moses 'not in riddles' but face to face — the very vision Paul anticipates for all believers at the consummation. The shift from ginosko ('I know') to epiginosko ('I will fully know') marks the difference between partial and complete knowledge.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 12:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The triad of faith, hope, and love is a Pauline signature (cf. 1 Thessalonians 1:3, 5:8). The verb menei ('remains, abides') contrasts with the passing away of gifts in verse 8. Why love is greatest is debated: perhaps because God himself is love (1 John 4:8), or because love alone continues unchanged into eternity while faith becomes sight and hope becomes possession. The declaration 'the greatest of these is love' is the climax of the entire three-chapter argument on spiritual gifts.

14

Summary: 1 Corinthians 14 applies the love principle of chapter 13 to the specific question of tongues and prophecy in corporate worship. Paul argues consistently that prophecy is superior to uninterpreted tongues because prophecy builds up the whole congregation, while unintelligible speech edifies only the speaker. He establishes practical regulations: tongues must be interpreted, prophets must speak in order, and everything must be done for building up. The chapter culminates in a call for orderly worship, grounded in the character of God, who is a God of peace, not confusion.

What Makes This Remarkable: Paul's insistence on intelligibility over ecstatic experience was counter-cultural in Corinth, where pagan worship at temples of Dionysus and Apollo featured frenzied, unintelligible utterances. His argument that uninterpreted tongues make the speaker a 'foreigner' (barbaros, v. 11) to fellow worshipers inverts the Corinthian pride in this gift. The Old Testament quotation from Isaiah 28:11-12 (v. 21) is used in a surprising way — tongues are a sign not for believers but for unbelievers, and a negative sign at that, signaling judgment rather than blessing.

Translation Friction: Verses 34-35, which command women to be silent in the churches, stand in tension with 11:5, where Paul assumes women pray and prophesy in the assembly. Proposals include: (a) Paul is quoting a Corinthian slogan he will then refute, (b) the silence concerns only the evaluation of prophecy, (c) the verses are a later interpolation (some manuscripts place them after v. 40). We render the SBLGNT text as given and note the interpretive difficulty.

Connections: This chapter completes the spiritual gifts discussion begun in chapter 12 and framed by chapter 13. The Isaiah 28 quotation connects Corinthian tongue-speaking to the prophetic tradition of judgment oracles. The worship regulations parallel those in 1 Thessalonians 5:19-22. The closing principle 'God is not a God of disorder but of peace' (v. 33) grounds liturgical practice in theology proper.

¹Pursue love, and earnestly desire the spiritual gifts, but especially that you may prophesy. ²For one who speaks in a tongue does not speak to people but to God, for no one understands, but he speaks mysteries in the Spirit. ³But the one who prophesies speaks to people for their building up, encouragement, and consolation. ⁴The one who speaks in a tongue builds up himself, but the one who prophesies builds up the church. ⁵Now I want all of you to speak in tongues, but even more that you would prophesy. The one who prophesies is greater than the one who speaks in tongues, unless he interprets, so that the church may be built up. ⁶Now, brothers and sisters, if I come to you speaking in tongues, how will I benefit you unless I bring you some revelation or knowledge or prophecy or teaching? ⁷Even lifeless instruments that produce sound, whether flute or harp — if they do not produce distinct notes, how will anyone recognize the tune being played on the flute or the harp? ⁸And if the trumpet produces an indistinct sound, who will prepare for battle? ⁹So it is with you. Unless you produce intelligible speech with your tongue, how will anyone know what is being said? For you will be speaking into the air. ¹⁰There are doubtless many different kinds of languages in the world, and none is without meaning. ¹¹So if I do not know the meaning of the language, I will be a foreigner to the speaker and the speaker will be a foreigner to me. ¹²So with you. Since you are eager for manifestations of the Spirit, strive to excel in building up the church. ¹³Therefore, let the one who speaks in a tongue pray that he may interpret. ¹⁴For if I pray in a tongue, my spirit prays but my mind is unfruitful. ¹⁵What then? I will pray with my spirit, but I will also pray with my mind. I will sing praise with my spirit, but I will also sing praise with my mind. ¹⁶Otherwise, if you give thanks with your spirit, how can the outsider say "Amen" to your thanksgiving, since he does not know what you are saying? ¹⁷For you may be giving thanks well enough, but the other person is not built up. ¹⁸I thank God that I speak in tongues more than all of you. ¹⁹But in the church I would rather speak five words with my mind in order to instruct others than ten thousand words in a tongue. ²⁰Brothers and sisters, do not be children in your thinking. In evil be infants, but in your thinking be mature. ²¹In the Law it is written: "By people of strange tongues and by the lips of foreigners I will speak to this people, and even then they will not listen to me, says the Lord." ²²So then, tongues are a sign not for believers but for unbelievers, while prophecy is a sign not for unbelievers but for believers. ²³So if the whole church comes together and everyone speaks in tongues, and outsiders or unbelievers enter, will they not say that you are out of your minds? ²⁴But if all prophecy and an unbeliever or outsider enters, he is convicted by all, he is examined by all, ²⁵Thus are the secrets of his inner self fashioned manifest. And so falling below on his face he will bow down before God, and report that God is in you of a truth. ²⁶What then, brothers and sisters? When you come together, each one has a hymn, a teaching, a revelation, a tongue, or an interpretation. Let all things be done for building up. ²⁷If anyone speaks in a tongue, let it be two or at most three, and each in turn, and let someone interpret. ²⁸But if there is no interpreter, let him be silent in the church and speak to himself and to God. ²⁹Let two or three prophets speak, and let the others evaluate what is said. ³⁰If a revelation is given to another person sitting there, let the first be silent. ³¹For you can all prophesy one by one, so that all may learn and all may be encouraged. ³²The prophets have control over their own prophetic spirits. ³³For God is not a God of disorder but

of peace. As in all the churches of the saints, ³⁴Indeed, let your women keep silence in the churches — since it is not permitted to them to speak. Yet they are commanded to be under obedience, as also says the law. ³⁵If they want to learn anything, let them ask their own husbands at home, for it is shameful for a woman to speak in the church. ³⁶Or did the word of God originate with you? Or are you the only ones it has reached? ³⁷If anyone thinks he is a prophet or spiritual, he should recognize that what I am writing to you is a command of the Lord. ³⁸But if anyone does not recognize this, he is not recognized. ³⁹So, my brothers and sisters, earnestly desire to prophesy, and do not forbid speaking in tongues. ⁴⁰But let all things be done properly and in order.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The imperative *diokete* ('pursue, chase') is aggressive — love must be actively hunted, not passively awaited. The transition from chapter 13 is seamless: love is supreme, but gifts still matter. Paul's preference for prophecy over tongues will dominate the chapter.
2. The KJV adds 'unknown' before 'tongue,' which is not in the Greek. Paul's point is not that tongues are bad but that they are vertically directed (to God) and therefore unintelligible to the horizontal audience without interpretation. The word *mysteria* ('mysteries') carries positive connotation — genuine spiritual content that lacks a human audience.
3. Three purposes of prophecy are named: *oikodome* ('building up,' from the construction metaphor Paul favors), *paraklesis* ('encouragement, exhortation'), and *paramythia* ('consolation, comfort'). Prophecy serves the community; tongues without interpretation do not.
4. Paul concedes that tongues do edify the individual speaker — this is not dismissed. But the standard for worship is communal edification. The verb *oikodomei* ('builds up') is used for both, but the object shifts from 'himself' to 'the church.'
5. Paul does not forbid or denigrate tongues — he wishes all spoke in tongues. But he ranks prophecy higher because of its communal benefit. The exception clause is critical: if tongues are interpreted, they become functionally equivalent to prophecy for building up the church.
6. Paul uses himself as an example. Four forms of intelligible speech are listed as alternatives to uninterpreted tongues: revelation, knowledge, prophecy, and teaching. All four communicate understandable content to the audience.
7. Paul draws an analogy from music. The word *diastole* ('distinction, difference') refers to the intervals between notes that create melody. Without distinguishable intervals, music becomes noise — precisely what unintelligible tongues are in worship.
8. The military analogy intensifies the point: an unclear trumpet call is not merely unhelpful but dangerous. In the Roman military context familiar to Corinth, different trumpet calls signaled advance, retreat, and various formations. An ambiguous signal could be fatal.
9. The phrase *eis aera lalountes* ('speaking into the air') is vivid — the words dissipate like breath in wind, reaching no one. The Greek *eusemon* ('clear, intelligible') literally means 'well-signed' or 'well-marked.'
10. The word *phone* can mean 'voice,' 'sound,' or 'language.' Paul's point is that every language, however foreign, carries meaning to its native speakers. The problem with uninterpreted tongues is not that they lack meaning but that their meaning is inaccessible.
11. The Greek *barbaros* ('barbarian, foreigner') was onomatopoeic — it mimicked the 'bar-bar' sound that foreign languages seemed to make to Greek ears. Paul's use is ironic: the Corinthians prized tongues as a spiritual achievement, but the practical effect is mutual incomprehension — they become barbarians to one another.
12. Paul redirects their zeal rather than quenching it. The word *pneumatōn* ('of spirits') is unusual — most translations supply 'spiritual gifts,' but the word may refer to spiritual manifestations more broadly. The imperative is clear: channel your enthusiasm toward what builds the community.
13. The connection between tongue-speaking and interpretation is presented as a matter of prayer. The tongue-speaker himself should seek the gift of interpretation, ensuring that his own utterance can serve the community.
14. Paul distinguishes between *pneuma* ('spirit') and *nous* ('mind'). In tongues-prayer, the human spirit engages God but the cognitive faculty (*nous*) produces no intelligible fruit for others. Paul does not dismiss spirit-prayer but insists that mind-engagement is also necessary in corporate settings.
15. Paul models the balanced approach: both spirit and mind are engaged. The verb *psalō* ('I will sing, I will make music') originally meant 'to pluck a stringed instrument' and came to mean 'to sing psalms or hymns.' Both prayer and singing should engage the full person.
16. The Greek *idiotes* ('outsider, layperson, uninstructed person') does not mean 'idiot' but refers to someone who lacks the specialized knowledge to understand — in this case, the unintelligible tongue. The congregational 'Amen' was a crucial element of early Christian worship (cf. Justin Martyr, First Apology 65), requiring comprehension of what was said.
17. Again Paul affirms that tongues-prayer is genuine thanksgiving — 'well enough' (*kalos*) is not sarcastic. The problem is not quality but accessibility. Individual spiritual experience, however authentic, must serve the community in corporate worship.
18. Paul establishes his authority to regulate tongues by revealing that he himself exercises this gift abundantly. He cannot be accused of envying a gift he lacks. The claim 'more than all of you' is remarkable and may be hyperbolic, but it prevents the Corinthians from dismissing his instructions as sour grapes.

19. The ratio is staggering: five intelligible words outweigh ten thousand unintelligible ones. The Greek *myrioi* ('ten thousand') is the largest number Greek had a single word for — it represents an overwhelming quantity. The verb *katecheso* ('I might instruct') is the root of 'catechism' — teaching that produces understanding.
20. Paul calls the Corinthians' obsession with tongues childish. The wordplay is sharp: be babies (*nepiazo*) in evil but adults (*teleioi*, 'mature, complete') in thinking. The word *phresin* ('in understanding/thinking') refers to practical judgment, not abstract intellect.
21. Paul quotes Isaiah 28:11-12, calling it 'the Law' (a common Jewish usage for the entire Old Testament). In Isaiah's original context, the 'strange tongues' were the Assyrian invaders — unintelligible speech was a sign of God's judgment on disobedient Israel. Paul applies this typologically to the Corinthian situation.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 28:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. This verse is notoriously difficult because the scenario in verses 23-25 seems to reverse the logic. If tongues are for unbelievers, why do unbelievers react negatively to tongues (v. 23)? The resolution may be that tongues are a negative sign (of judgment, as in the Isaiah passage) for unbelievers, while prophecy positively builds up believers.
23. The verb *mainesthe* ('you are mad, you are raving') was commonly used for the frenzied ecstasies of pagan worship. Paul warns that a worship service dominated by unintelligible tongues will look indistinguishable from pagan mania to visitors. The early church gathered in homes open to passersby, making this a real concern.
24. The verbs *elenchetai* ('is convicted, exposed') and *anakrinetai* ('is examined, investigated') describe prophetic speech penetrating to the conscience. Prophecy functions as a spiritual mirror, revealing what the visitor did not know about himself.
25. The phrase 'God is truly among you' (*Ontos ho theos en hymin estin*) echoes Isaiah 45:14 and Zechariah 8:23, where Gentiles recognize God's presence among Israel. The entire sequence — conviction, exposure, prostration, worship, confession — describes a conversion event triggered by intelligible prophetic speech.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 45:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 8:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. This verse provides a rare window into early Christian worship: it was participatory, with multiple members contributing different elements. The diversity of contributions — psalm, teaching, revelation, tongue, interpretation — suggests a dynamic, Spirit-led gathering. The governing principle is *oikodome* ('building up'): every contribution must serve the community.
27. Paul imposes three regulations on tongues: (1) a maximum of three speakers per gathering, (2) they must speak sequentially (*ana meros*, 'in turn'), not simultaneously, and (3) interpretation is mandatory. These rules balance freedom with order.
28. Without an interpreter, the tongue-speaker must be silent in the assembly — but may continue praying privately. The phrase *heauto laleitō kai tō theō* ('let him speak to himself and to God') dignifies private tongue-prayer while limiting its public exercise.
29. Prophecy is also regulated: two or three per gathering, with communal evaluation (*diakrinetōsan*, 'let them discern, judge, evaluate'). The 'others' who evaluate may be other prophets or the congregation as a whole. This prevents any individual from claiming unquestionable prophetic authority.
30. The prophetic gift is not an uncontrollable ecstatic seizure — the first prophet can and must yield to another. This implies that prophetic speech is under the speaker's control, a point Paul will make explicitly in verse 32.
31. The 'one by one' (*kath' hena*) reinforces orderly sequence. The dual purpose — learning and encouragement — restates the communal focus. The word 'all' (*pantes*) appears three times, emphasizing the universal scope of both participation and benefit.
32. This principle is foundational: the prophetic spirit does not overpower the prophet's will. Unlike pagan ecstasy, where the deity supposedly seized control of the human vessel, Christian prophecy operates within the prophet's conscious self-control. This makes the regulations of verses 27-31 enforceable.
33. The theological grounding of worship order: God's own character is peace (*eirene*), not confusion (*akatastasia*, 'instability, disorder, tumult'). The phrase 'as in all the churches of the saints' may begin the next sentence (connecting to vv. 34-35) or conclude this one. The SBLGNT punctuation connects it forward.
34. This passage is among the most debated in Paul's letters. It appears to contradict 11:5, where women pray and prophesy in the assembly. Major proposals: (1) the silence concerns only the evaluation of prophecy (v. 29), not all speech; (2) Paul is quoting a Corinthian position he will then refute in v. 36; (3) the verses are a later scribal interpolation (some manuscripts place them after v. 40). We render the SBLGNT text without resolving the tension, noting that Paul's own practice included women co-workers who prophesied and taught.
35. The word *aischron* ('shameful, disgraceful') is strong. If this represents Paul's own view, it must be reconciled with his practice of partnering with women like Priscilla, Phoebe, and Junia in ministry. If it is a Corinthian quotation, verse 36 becomes the rebuttal. The instruction 'ask their own husbands at home' may address a specific disruption pattern in Corinth rather than establishing a universal rule.

36. Paul's rhetorical questions deflate any claim to exclusive authority. If vv. 34-35 are a Corinthian quotation, this verse is Paul's sharp rebuttal: 'You did not invent the gospel, and you are not its sole recipients.' The questions challenge Corinthian arrogance regardless of how one reads the preceding verses.
37. Paul asserts apostolic authority as a test of prophetic genuineness: a true prophet will recognize Paul's instructions as carrying the Lord's authority. The singular 'command' (entole) rather than plural suggests Paul has a specific regulation in mind — likely the worship order guidelines of the entire chapter.
38. The wordplay on agnoei ('does not know/recognize') and agnoeitai ('is not known/recognized') is untranslatable in its full force. Some manuscripts read agnoeito ('let him be ignorant'), a dismissive imperative. The SBLGNT's passive agnoeitai is more pointed: the person who refuses to acknowledge Paul's apostolic authority forfeits recognition in the community.
39. Paul's conclusion maintains the balance he has struck throughout: prophecy is preferred but tongues are not prohibited. The imperative zelōte ('earnestly desire') for prophecy is positive; the prohibition me kōluete ('do not forbid') for tongues is protective. Both gifts have their place when properly ordered.
40. The final summary: euschemonos ('properly, with good form, decently') and kata taxin ('according to arrangement, in order'). The word taxis was used for military formation and civic procedure — worship should reflect the ordered character of the God who is worshiped (v. 33). This verse has become a foundational text for all subsequent Christian reflection on liturgical order.

15

Summary: *1 Corinthians 15 is Paul's most extensive treatment of resurrection. He begins by reciting the earliest Christian creed (vv. 3-8), grounding the resurrection in eyewitness testimony. He then argues that denying the future resurrection of believers logically entails denying Christ's resurrection, which would unravel the entire gospel (vv. 12-19). The chapter traces the cosmic scope of resurrection: Christ as firstfruits, then believers at his coming, culminating in the defeat of death itself and the Son's handing over the kingdom to the Father (vv. 20-28). Paul addresses the nature of the resurrection body — not a resuscitated corpse but a transformed, imperishable body suited for the age to come (vv. 35-49). The chapter climaxes with the mystery of final transformation and a triumphant declaration that death has been swallowed up in victory (vv. 50-57).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 3-7 constitute the earliest surviving Christian creed, likely formulated within five years of the crucifixion. The appearance list includes over five hundred witnesses, most of whom Paul says are still alive and could be consulted. The Adam-Christ typology (vv. 21-22, 45-49) establishes a framework that Paul develops further in Romans 5. The phrase 'if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile' (v. 17) is the most direct statement in Scripture that Christianity stands or falls with the bodily resurrection. The 'mystery' of verse 51 — that not all will die but all will be changed — introduces an eschatological surprise not found in prior Jewish expectation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'baptized on behalf of the dead' (v. 29) remains one of the most obscure statements in Paul's letters; over forty interpretations have been proposed. We render the Greek literally and note the difficulty. The meaning of 'he handed over the kingdom' (v. 24) and the Son's subjection to the Father (v. 28) raises complex Trinitarian questions we do not attempt to resolve. The 'spiritual body' (soma pneumatikon) of verse 44 is frequently misunderstood as 'immaterial body,' but Paul means a body animated and governed by the Spirit.*

Connections: *The creed of vv. 3-5 connects to the Gospel passion and resurrection narratives. The Adam-Christ typology links to Genesis 2-3 and Romans 5:12-21. The 'firstfruits' language echoes Leviticus 23:10-11. The defeat of death draws on Isaiah 25:8 and Hosea 13:14. The transformation imagery anticipates Philippians 3:20-21 and 2 Corinthians 5:1-5.*

¹Now I make known to you, brothers and sisters, the gospel that I proclaimed to you, which you also received, in which you also stand, ²Indeed, by which also you are saved, if you keep in memory what I preached to you, unless you have believed in vain. ³For I delivered to you as of first importance what I also received: that Christ died for our sins in accordance with the Scriptures, ⁴That he was buried, and that he rose again the third day in keeping with to the scriptures:. ⁵He appeared to Peter, and then to the twelve apostles. ⁶Then he appeared to more than five hundred brothers and sisters at one time, most of whom are still alive, though some have fallen asleep. ⁷Then he appeared to James, then to all the apostles. ⁸Last of all, as

to one untimely born, he appeared also to me. ⁹Because I persecuted the church of God, for I am the least of the apostles, that am not meet to be called an apostle. ¹⁰But by the grace of God I am what I am, and his grace toward me was not in vain. On the contrary, I worked harder than all of them — yet not I, but the grace of God that was with me. ¹¹Whether then it was I or they, so we proclaim and so you believed. ¹²Now if Christ is proclaimed as raised from the dead, how can some of you say that there is no resurrection of the dead? ¹³But if there is no resurrection of the dead, then not even Christ has been raised. ¹⁴And if Christ has not been raised, then our proclamation is empty and your faith is empty. ¹⁵We are even found to be false witnesses about God, because we testified about God that he raised Christ — whom he did not raise if in fact the dead are not raised. ¹⁶For if the dead are not raised, not even Christ has been raised. ¹⁷And if Christ has not been raised, your faith is futile and you are still in your sins. ¹⁸Then those also who have fallen asleep in Christ have perished. ¹⁹If in this life only we have hoped in Christ, we are of all people most to be pitied. ²⁰But in fact Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. ²¹For since death came through a man, the resurrection of the dead also comes through a man. ²²For just as in Adam all die, so also in Christ all will be made alive. ²³But each in his own order: Christ the firstfruits, then at his coming those who belong to Christ. ²⁴Then comes the end, when he delivers the kingdom to God the Father after he has destroyed every ruler and every authority and power. ²⁵For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. ²⁶The last enemy to be destroyed is death. ²⁷For "God has put all things in subjection under his feet." But when it says "all things are put in subjection," it is clear that the one who subjected all things to him is excepted. ²⁸When all things are subjected to him, then the Son himself will also be subjected to the one who subjected all things to him, so that God may be all in all. ²⁹Otherwise, what will those do who are baptized on behalf of the dead? If the dead are not raised at all, why are people baptized on behalf of them? ³⁰Why are we in danger every hour? ³¹I die every day! I swear it by my boasting in you, brothers and sisters, which I have in Christ Jesus our Lord. ³²If merely from a human perspective I fought with wild beasts at Ephesus, what does it profit me? If the dead are not raised, "Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die." ³³Do not be deceived: "Bad company corrupts good character." ³⁴Come to your senses as you should and stop sinning, for some have no knowledge of God. I say this to your shame. ³⁵But someone will ask, "How are the dead raised? With what kind of body do they come?" ³⁶Foolish one! What you sow does not come to life unless it dies. ³⁷And what you sow — you do not sow the body that will be, but a bare seed, perhaps of wheat or of some other grain. ³⁸But God gives it a body as he has chosen, and to each kind of seed its own body. ³⁹Not all flesh is the same flesh; rather, there is one kind for humans, another for animals, another for birds, and another for fish. ⁴⁰There are heavenly bodies and earthly bodies, but the glory of the heavenly is of one kind, and the glory of the earthly is of another kind. ⁴¹There is one glory of the sun, another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars; for star differs from star in glory. ⁴²So also is the resurrection of the dead. What is sown is perishable; what is raised is imperishable. ⁴³It is sown in dishonour. It is raised in glory — it is sown in weakness. It is raised in authority. ⁴⁴It is sown a natural body. It is raised a spiritual body. And there is a spiritual body, and there is a natural body. ⁴⁵So also it is written, "The first man Adam became a living being"; the last Adam became a life-giving spirit. ⁴⁶But the spiritual does not come first; rather, the natural comes first, then the spiritual. ⁴⁷The first man was from the earth, made of dust; the second man is from heaven. ⁴⁸As was the man of dust, so also are those who are of the dust, and as is the man of heaven, so also are those who are of heaven. ⁴⁹And just as we have borne the image of the man of dust, we will also bear the image of the man of heaven. ⁵⁰Now I say this, brothers and sisters: flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, nor does the perishable inherit the imperishable. ⁵¹Listen, I tell you a mystery: we will not all fall asleep, but we will all be changed, ⁵²Indeed, in a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trumpet — for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised incorruptible, and we will be changed. ⁵³For this perishable body must put on imperishability, and this mortal body must put on immortality. ⁵⁴When this perishable body puts on imperishability and this mortal body puts on immortality, then the saying that is written will come true: "Death has been swallowed up in victory." ⁵⁵"Where, O death, is your victory? Where, O death, is your sting?" ⁵⁶The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law. ⁵⁷But thanks be to God, which gives us the victory by way of our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁵⁸Therefore, my beloved brothers and sisters, be steadfast, immovable, always abounding in the work of the Lord, knowing that your labor in the Lord is not in vain.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul reintroduces the gospel he originally preached to Corinth. The three verbs trace the gospel's trajectory: proclaimed (euangelisamen), received (parelabete), and now stand firm in (hestekate). The perfect tense of hestekate indicates a settled, ongoing stance.
2. The present tense sozesthe ('you are being saved') presents salvation as an ongoing process, not merely a past event. The conditional 'if you hold fast' (ei katechete) introduces a note of warning that prepares for the chapter's argument against resurrection deniers.
3. The transmission language (paredoka/parelabon) matches 11:23 — Paul is passing on authoritative tradition, not inventing doctrine. The phrase en protois ('among the first things, as of first importance') indicates priority of content, not merely chronology. The creed that follows (vv. 3b-5) is widely recognized as pre-Pauline, likely dating to the early 30s AD.
4. Four clauses form the creed: died, buried, raised, appeared. The burial confirms the reality of death; the appearances confirm the reality of resurrection. The perfect tense egegetai ('has been raised') indicates a past event with continuing effects — Christ was raised and remains risen. 'According to the Scriptures' likely refers to Hosea 6:2 and/or Jonah 1:17 (cf. Matthew 12:40), though no single Old Testament text explicitly predicts a third-day resurrection.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 6:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jonah 1:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The verb ophthe ('appeared, was seen') is a divine appearance term in the Septuagint (cf. Genesis 12:7, Exodus 3:2). Cephas is the Aramaic name for Peter — Paul uses the Aramaic form, suggesting this creed originated in the Aramaic-speaking Jerusalem church. 'The Twelve' functions as a title for the apostolic group even after Judas's departure.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 12:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 3:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Paul's note that most of the five hundred are still alive functions as an implicit challenge: these witnesses can be consulted. This is the earliest form of historical evidence appeal in Christian literature. The appearance to five hundred simultaneously is not recorded in the Gospels.
7. This James is almost certainly James the brother of Jesus (cf. Galatians 1:19), who became the leader of the Jerusalem church. He was apparently not a follower during Jesus's ministry (cf. John 7:5), making the resurrection appearance a conversion experience. 'All the apostles' appears to be a broader group than 'the Twelve' of verse 5.
8. The word ektroma ('miscarriage, abortion, untimely birth') is shockingly self-deprecating. Paul sees his apostleship as abnormal — born violently and prematurely through the Damascus road encounter rather than through the normal process of following the earthly Jesus. The phrase 'last of all' (eschaton panton) may indicate Paul believes his was the final resurrection appearance.
9. Paul's self-assessment is not false humility — he genuinely regards his persecution of the church as disqualifying. The phrase ten ekklesian tou theou ('the church of God') uses the most elevated designation for the community, heightening the gravity of his offense.
10. The phrase chariti theou eimi ho eimi ('by the grace of God I am what I am') is one of Paul's most concentrated theological statements. The self-correction 'not I, but the grace of God' prevents boasting while still claiming the reality of his labor. Grace does not eliminate human effort but transforms and empowers it.
11. Paul closes the credal section by emphasizing apostolic unity: regardless of which apostle preached, the message was the same — Christ died, was buried, was raised. This common proclamation is the foundation for the argument that follows.
12. Paul reveals the problem: some Corinthians deny the resurrection of the dead. They likely accepted Christ's resurrection as a unique divine act but denied that ordinary believers would be bodily raised. This may reflect Greek philosophical contempt for the body (cf. Acts 17:32). Paul will show that the two resurrections stand or fall together.
13. The logic is tight: if resurrection is categorically impossible, then Christ's resurrection is also impossible. Paul refuses to make Christ's resurrection an exception to a general rule — it is instead the first instance of a general resurrection.
14. The word kenon ('empty, hollow, without content') is devastating: without resurrection, the entire Christian message collapses into an empty shell. Both the apostolic proclamation and the Corinthian response to it become meaningless.
15. The phrase pseudomartyres tou theou ('false witnesses of God') is a serious charge — the apostles would not merely be mistaken but guilty of bearing false testimony about God's actions. The preposition kata ('against') suggests testifying against God by attributing to him an act he did not perform.
16. Paul restates the premise of verse 13 for emphasis before drawing the most devastating consequence in verse 17.
17. The word mataia ('futile, useless, pointless') is stronger than kenon in verse 14 — not merely empty but worthless. The consequence 'still in your sins' means that without resurrection, Christ's death accomplished nothing. Atonement and resurrection are inseparable in Paul's theology.
18. The word apolonto ('have perished, are destroyed') stands in brutal contrast to 'fallen asleep in Christ.' If there is no resurrection, the euphemism of sleep is a cruel lie — the dead are simply gone.

19. The superlative *eleenoteroi* ('most pitiable, most to be pitied') is the climax of the *reductio ad absurdum*. Christians who have suffered persecution, social ostracism, and material loss for a false hope would be the most deluded people on earth. Paul's argument assumes that following Christ involves real worldly cost.
20. The emphatic *nyni de* ('but now, but in fact') signals the dramatic reversal from the hypothetical despair of vv. 12-19 to the triumphant reality. The word *aparche* ('firstfruits') is a Levitical term (Leviticus 23:10) — the first sheaf of the harvest, offered to God as a guarantee that the full harvest will follow. Christ's resurrection guarantees the resurrection of all who belong to him.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 23:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The Adam-Christ typology is introduced: the same channel through which death entered (a human being) is the channel through which resurrection comes. The parallelism demands a real, bodily human — not an angel or divine being acting apart from humanity.
22. The two 'all' (*pantes*) statements are symmetrical but not necessarily identical in scope. 'In Adam all die' is universal — physical death touches every human. Whether 'in Christ all will be made alive' is equally universal (all humanity) or limited to 'all who are in Christ' is debated. The context of verses 23-24 suggests the latter, as Paul specifies 'those who belong to Christ.'
23. The word *tagma* ('order, rank, division') is a military term for a unit in formation. The resurrection occurs in stages, not all at once: Christ first, then believers at the *parousia* ('coming, arrival, presence'). The *parousia* is the expected return of Christ.
24. The 'end' (to *telos*) is the consummation of all things. Christ's mediatorial reign ends when all hostile powers are defeated and the kingdom is handed over to the Father. The three terms — *arche*, *exousia*, *dynamis* ('ruler, authority, power') — encompass all forms of opposition to God, whether spiritual or political.
25. Paul alludes to Psalm 110:1, the most frequently quoted Old Testament text in the New Testament. The divine necessity (*dei*, 'it is necessary, he must') indicates this is God's predetermined plan. The reign is not yet complete — enemies remain — but the outcome is certain.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. Death is personified as an enemy — the final enemy. The passive *katargeitai* ('is being destroyed, is abolished') may be a prophetic present, treating the future event as already underway because Christ's resurrection has already begun death's defeat. Death is not merely an unfortunate reality but a hostile power that will be defeated.
27. Paul quotes Psalm 8:6 and adds a logical clarification: when the psalm says 'all things,' the Father who does the subjecting is obviously not included. This prevents the absurd conclusion that the Father is subject to the Son.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 8:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The Son's voluntary subjection to the Father is the final cosmic act. The phrase 'God may be all in all' (*ho theos ta panta en pasin*) envisions a reality where God's presence and authority are fully realized in every dimension of existence. This is the *telos* of the entire biblical narrative — God's unmediated presence filling all things.
29. This is one of the most obscure verses in the Pauline corpus. The phrase *baptizomenoi hyper ton nekron* ('being baptized on behalf of the dead') has generated over forty scholarly interpretations. The most straightforward reading is that some Corinthians practiced vicarious baptism for deceased persons — Paul neither endorses nor condemns the practice but uses it as an argument: their own behavior presupposes resurrection. We render the Greek literally without resolving the interpretive question.
30. Paul shifts from the Corinthians' practice (v. 29) to his own experience. If there is no resurrection, the constant danger of apostolic ministry is pointless. The phrase *pasan horan* ('every hour') emphasizes the unrelenting nature of the risk.
31. The oath formula *ne* ('I swear by') is rare in Paul and indicates the intensity of his claim. 'I die every day' (*kath' hemeran apothnesko*) describes the constant mortal danger of his apostolic work. Paul's daily dying is meaningless without the hope of resurrection.
32. Whether Paul literally fought animals in the Ephesian arena or speaks metaphorically of fierce human opposition is debated. The quotation 'Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die' comes from Isaiah 22:13, where it describes fatalistic hedonism in the face of judgment. Without resurrection, this becomes the only rational philosophy.
32. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 22:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
33. Paul quotes a line attributed to the Greek poet Menander (Thais, fragment 218). The Greek *ethē chresta* ('good character/morals') and *homiliai kakai* ('bad company/associations') form a proverbial warning. Paul's use of a pagan poet to make a moral point parallels his quotation of Aratus in Acts 17:28.
34. The verb *eknepsate* ('sober up, come to your senses') suggests the Corinthians have been drunk on their own theological confusion. The phrase *agnosian theou* ('ignorance of God') is a stinging rebuke — despite their intellectual pride, some Corinthians lack basic knowledge of God's character and purposes.

35. Paul now addresses the 'how' question. The objection assumes that resurrection means resuscitation of the same physical body — an idea many found absurd. Paul will show that the resurrection body is real but transformed.
36. The sharp address *aphron* ('fool, senseless one') echoes Jesus's parable of the rich fool (Luke 12:20). The seed analogy answers the 'how' question: just as a seed must die to produce a plant, the mortal body must die to produce the resurrection body. Continuity and transformation coexist.
37. The point is crucial: the seed and the plant are continuous (it is the same organism) but radically different in form. No one mistakes a wheat kernel for a stalk of wheat. Likewise, the resurrection body will be continuous with but transformed from the present body.
38. The resurrection body is God's gift and God's design — not a natural process but a divine creative act. The phrase 'as he has chosen' (*kathos ethelesen*) emphasizes divine sovereignty over the form of the resurrection body.
39. Paul expands the analogy: God already creates diverse kinds of bodies in the natural world. The diversity of earthly bodies demonstrates God's creative capacity to produce bodies suited for different environments — including the environment of the age to come.
40. The word *doxa* ('glory, radiance, splendor') refers to the visible splendor appropriate to each type of body. Heavenly bodies (sun, moon, stars) have a different kind of glory than earthly bodies — both are real, but they differ in mode of existence and splendor.
41. Even within the category of heavenly bodies, diversity of glory exists. The point is cumulative: God's creation already displays an enormous range of bodily forms and degrees of glory. The resurrection body will be yet another form — different from anything now known but no less real.
42. Paul now applies the analogies. Four contrasts follow (vv. 42-44), each using the sown/raised pattern. The first: *phthora* ('decay, perishability') versus *aphtharsia* ('imperishability, incorruption'). The mortal body decays; the resurrection body cannot.
43. Two more contrasts: dishonor versus glory, weakness versus power. The burial of a corpse is an act involving shame and frailty; the resurrection body possesses divine radiance and supernatural vitality. Each pair moves from the negative experience of death to the positive reality of resurrection.
44. The crucial fourth contrast: *soma psychikon* ('natural/soul-ish body') versus *soma pneumatikon* ('spiritual body'). The 'spiritual body' is not immaterial — it is still a *soma* ('body'). The adjective *pneumatikon* means 'animated by/oriented to the Spirit,' just as *psychikon* means 'animated by/oriented to the soul.' The resurrection body is a real, physical body fully governed by the Holy Spirit.
45. Paul quotes Genesis 2:7 for the first Adam and adds his own christological counterpart. The first Adam received life (*psyche zosan*, 'a living soul/being'); the last Adam gives life (*pneuma zoopoion*, 'a life-giving spirit'). Christ is not merely alive but the source of resurrection life for all who belong to him.
45. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
46. Paul insists on the sequence: natural before spiritual, Adam before Christ. This may counter a Corinthian belief that they had already attained the spiritual state and had no need of future bodily resurrection.
47. The adjective *choikos* ('dusty, earthy, made of soil') echoes Genesis 2:7, where God forms Adam from the dust of the ground. The second man — Christ — is 'from heaven' (*ex ouranou*), indicating his heavenly origin. The SBLGNT omits 'the Lord' after 'second man,' which appears in some manuscripts.
47. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
48. The representative principle: we share the nature of our representative head. Those united to Adam share his dusty, mortal nature; those united to Christ will share his heavenly, imperishable nature.
49. The SBLGNT reads the subjunctive *phoresomen* ('let us bear'), but many manuscripts read the future *phoresomen* ('we will bear'). The meaning is similar: just as our present bodies reflect Adam's dust-nature, our resurrection bodies will reflect Christ's heavenly nature. The word *eikon* ('image') connects to Genesis 1:26-27 — the image of God, marred in Adam, will be fully restored in the resurrection.
49. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:26-27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
50. The phrase 'flesh and blood' (*sarx kai haima*) refers to the present mortal human condition, not to physicality as such. The resurrection body will be physical but not 'flesh and blood' in this mortal sense. Transformation is necessary — the present body cannot enter the kingdom as-is.
51. The word *mysterion* ('mystery') in Paul means a truth previously hidden but now revealed by God. The 'mystery' is that not all believers will die before Christ returns — some will be alive at the *parousia*. But all, whether dead or living, must be transformed. This addresses a question left open by the preceding argument.
52. The Greek *atomō* ('indivisible instant') is the word from which 'atom' derives — the smallest possible unit of time. The 'last trumpet' (*eschatē salpingi*) echoes the shofar traditions of Jewish apocalyptic expectation (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:16, Matthew 24:31). The transformation is instantaneous and universal.
53. The clothing metaphor (*endysasthai*, 'to put on, to clothe oneself with') suggests that the resurrection is not the discarding of the body but its being clothed with new qualities. The mortal puts on immortality as a garment — transformation, not replacement. The divine necessity (*dei*, 'must') indicates this is God's determined plan.

54. Paul quotes Isaiah 25:8 ('he will swallow up death forever'), adapting it to read 'Death has been swallowed up in victory' (eis nikos). The prophetic promise will be fulfilled at the moment of resurrection transformation. The passive 'has been swallowed' indicates that death is not merely defeated but consumed — it ceases to exist.
54. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
55. Paul taunts death with a loose quotation of Hosea 13:14. The SBLGNT reads 'death' (thanate) in both lines rather than the KJV's 'grave' (hades) in the second. The word kentron ('sting, goad') evokes a scorpion's or bee's sting — death's weapon. In the resurrection, death is disarmed and mocked.
55. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 13:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
56. Paul inserts a compressed theological explanation: death's weapon is sin (without sin, death would have no power), and sin's power comes through the law (which defines transgression and pronounces the curse). This compressed argument anticipates the fuller treatment in Romans 5-7.
57. The present tense didonti ('who gives, who is giving') presents the victory as an ongoing gift, not merely a future event. The victory over death is secured by Christ's resurrection and appropriated by believers through union with him. The chapter's argument culminates in doxology.
58. The chapter ends not with speculation but with exhortation to faithful action. The adjectives hedraioi ('steadfast, firmly seated') and ametakinetoι ('immovable, not to be shifted') contrast with the instability of those who deny the resurrection. The final word kenos ('empty, vain') echoes verses 10, 14, and 17 — unlike a faithless gospel, labor done 'in the Lord' is never empty.

16

Summary: *First Corinthians 16 transitions from theological instruction to practical matters: the collection for the saints in Jerusalem, Paul's travel plans, commendations of co-workers, and final exhortations. Paul instructs the Corinthians to set aside money on the first day of each week so that no collection will be needed when he arrives. He outlines his intended route through Macedonia and expresses hope for an extended stay in Corinth. The chapter closes with commendations of Timothy, Apollos, and the household of Stephanas, and includes the Aramaic prayer-cry 'Maranatha' — 'Our Lord, come!' — embedded in a Greek letter as a witness to the earliest Aramaic-speaking church's expectation of Christ's return.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Aramaic word 'Maranatha' (v. 22) is one of the most significant linguistic fossils in the New Testament. Its preservation untranslated in a Greek letter to a Greek-speaking church demonstrates that this prayer-cry was so ancient and well-known that it needed no translation. It witnesses to the earliest post-resurrection community's worship of Jesus as Lord (maran) and their expectation of his imminent return. The conditional curse formula in verse 22 ('If anyone does not love the Lord, let him be accursed') followed immediately by 'Maranatha' creates a jarring juxtaposition of judgment and hope that reflects the eschatological tension of early Christian worship.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'anathema' (v. 22) is a strong term meaning 'devoted to destruction' or 'cursed,' borrowed from the Septuagint's rendering of the Hebrew cherem. We render it as 'accursed' to preserve its severity. The 'holy kiss' (v. 20) was a standard early Christian liturgical greeting, not a cultural peculiarity. Paul's note about writing 'with my own hand' (v. 21) indicates that an amanuensis wrote the rest of the letter and Paul added the closing personally as authentication.*

Connections: *The collection for Jerusalem connects to Paul's broader theology of Gentile-Jewish unity (Romans 15:25-27; 2 Corinthians 8-9). The travel plans anticipate the situation described in 2 Corinthians. The mention of Pentecost (v. 8) provides one of the few chronological anchors in Paul's correspondence. Stephanas is mentioned as the 'firstfruits of Achaia' (v. 15), connecting to the earlier reference in 1:16 where Paul baptized his household.*

¹Now concerning the collection for the saints: as I directed the churches of Galatia, so you also are to do. ²On the first day of every week, each of you is to set something aside and save, in keeping with how he has prospered, so that no collections will need to be made when I come. ³And when I arrive, I will send those whom you approve with letters to carry your gift to Jerusalem. ⁴And if it seems worthwhile for me to go as well, they will travel with me. ⁵I will come to you after I pass through Macedonia, for I intend to pass through Macedonia. ⁶And perhaps I will stay with you or even spend the winter, so that you may send me on my way wherever I go. ⁷For I do not want to see you just in passing. I hope to spend some time with you, if the Lord permits. ⁸But I will stay in Ephesus until Pentecost, ⁹For a remarkable door and effectual is opened to me, and

there are numerous adversaries. ¹⁰When Timothy comes, see that he has nothing to fear among you, for he is doing the work of the Lord, just as I am. ¹¹So let no one despise him. Send him on his way in peace, so that he may come to me, for I am expecting him with the brothers. ¹²Now concerning our brother Apollos, I strongly urged him to visit you with the brothers, but it was not at all his will to come now. He will come when he has the opportunity. ¹³Be watchful, stand firm in the faith, act with courage, be strong. ¹⁴Let all that you do be done in love. ¹⁵Now I urge you, brothers — you know that the household of Stephanas were the firstfruits of Achaia, and that they have devoted themselves to the service of the saints — ¹⁶That you place yourselves under the guidance of to such, and to every one that helps with us, and labors. ¹⁷I rejoice at the arrival of Stephanas, Fortunatus, and Achaicus, because they have made up for your absence. ¹⁸For they refreshed my spirit and yours. So give recognition to such people. ¹⁹The churches of Asia send you greetings. Aquila and Prisca, together with the church in their house, send you hearty greetings in the Lord. ²⁰All the brothers and sisters greet you. Greet one another with a holy kiss. ²¹This greeting is in my own hand — Paul. ²²If anyone does not love the Lord, let him be accursed. Maranatha! ²³The grace of the Lord Jesus be with you. ²⁴My love be with all of you in Christ Jesus.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *logeia* ('collection') is a term from the papyri associated with religious contributions. This collection for the Jerusalem church was a major project spanning several years of Paul's ministry, reflecting his commitment to unity between Gentile and Jewish believers.
2. The phrase *kata mian sabbatou* ('on the first day of the week') is an early witness to Christian assembly on Sunday rather than the Jewish Sabbath. The verb *euodotai* ('has prospered') is in the passive, implying God as the source of prosperity — the KJV makes this explicit, though it is only implied in the Greek.
3. The word *charin* ('gift, grace') is used here for the monetary contribution — Paul consistently elevates the collection by using theological vocabulary for it. The letters of commendation were standard practice for ensuring the integrity of financial transfers in the ancient world.
4. Paul leaves open the possibility that the collection may be large enough to warrant his personal delivery to Jerusalem — a journey that would eventually lead to his arrest (Acts 21).
5. Paul's travel plans here differ from what he later describes in 2 Corinthians 1:15-16, where he had originally planned to visit Corinth first. This change of plans became a point of contention that Paul addresses in the opening chapters of 2 Corinthians.
6. The verb *propempsete* ('send on my way') implies providing material support and traveling companions for the next leg of a journey — a common early Christian practice of hospitality. Winter travel by sea was considered dangerous and was generally avoided.
7. The conditional 'if the Lord permits' (*ean ho kyrios epitrepsee*) reflects Paul's characteristic submission of his plans to divine sovereignty, similar to James 4:15.
8. This verse provides a rare chronological anchor: Paul writes from Ephesus before the Jewish feast of Pentecost (*Shavuot*), placing the letter in the spring. The continued use of the Jewish calendar by Paul, even when writing to Gentile believers, shows the Jewish framework of early Christian life.
9. The metaphor of an 'open door' for ministry opportunity appears also in 2 Corinthians 2:12 and Colossians 4:3. The juxtaposition of great opportunity and many adversaries captures a characteristic Pauline tension — the advance of the gospel generates opposition.
10. The concern that Timothy might face intimidation suggests the Corinthians' contentious spirit could extend to mistreating Paul's delegates. Timothy's mission was mentioned in 4:17. The phrase 'the work of the Lord' (*to ergon kyriou*) elevates Timothy's ministry to the same level as Paul's own.
11. The verb *exouthenēsē* ('despise, treat with contempt') is strong language, suggesting a real risk that the Corinthians might dismiss Timothy due to his youth or because he lacked Paul's authority. Compare 1 Timothy 4:12, 'Let no one despise your youth.'
12. This verse is remarkable for what it reveals about the relationship between Paul and Apollos. Despite the factionalism in Corinth ('I follow Paul... I follow Apollos,' 1:12), Paul actively encourages Apollos to visit. The phrase 'it was not at all his will' (*pantos ouk en thelema*) is ambiguous — it could refer to Apollos's will or God's will. Most interpreters read it as Apollos's personal decision.
13. Four imperatives in rapid succession create a martial rhythm. The verb *andrizesthe* (literally 'act like men, be courageous') echoes the Septuagint of Joshua 1:6-9 and Psalm 31:24 (LXX 30:25). We render it 'act with courage' to capture the semantic force without the gendered idiom. The KJV's 'quit you like men' is archaic.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joshua 1:6-9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 31:24 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

14. This single sentence summarizes the entire practical section of the letter. After the extended discussion of love in chapter 13, Paul returns to *agapē* as the governing principle for all community life. The placement after the martial imperatives of verse 13 is deliberate — strength and courage must be exercised in love.
15. Stephanas was mentioned in 1:16 as one whom Paul personally baptized. The term *aparchē* ('firstfruits') means they were the first converts in the province of Achaia (southern Greece). Their self-appointed service (*etaxan heautous*) to the saints demonstrates voluntary leadership in the early church.
16. The verb *hypotassēthe* ('submit') here describes voluntary deference to recognized leaders, not hierarchical subordination. The criteria for recognition are service and labor, not office or title — a significant window into early church leadership structures.
17. These three likely carried the Corinthians' letter to Paul (cf. 7:1, 'Now concerning the matters about which you wrote'). The phrase 'made up for your absence' (to *hymeteron husterēma aneplērōsan*) is diplomatic — their presence compensates for the fact that the whole church could not come.
18. The verb *anepausan* ('refreshed, gave rest to') suggests that the delegation brought not only the letter but also encouraging news or personal comfort to Paul. The imperative *epiginōskete* ('recognize, acknowledge') calls the community to honor faithful servants.
19. Paul uses the formal name 'Prisca' rather than the diminutive 'Priscilla' found in Acts. This couple had previously been in Corinth (Acts 18:2) and now hosted a house church in Ephesus. The phrase *kat' oikon ekklēsia* ('church in their house') is one of the earliest references to the house-church model that characterized Christianity for its first three centuries.
20. The 'holy kiss' (*philēmati hagiō*) was a liturgical practice in the early church (cf. Romans 16:16; 2 Corinthians 13:12; 1 Thessalonians 5:26). It expressed familial bond and unity within the believing community. The adjective 'holy' distinguishes it from an erotic or merely social greeting.
21. Paul takes the pen from his *amanuensis* (secretary) to write the closing personally. This practice authenticated the letter as genuinely from Paul (cf. Galatians 6:11; Colossians 4:18; 2 Thessalonians 3:17). The shift to Paul's own handwriting would have been visually obvious to the original recipients.
22. The Greek *anathema* translates the Hebrew *cherem* — something devoted to God for destruction (cf. Joshua 6:17-18). The Aramaic *marana tha* can be divided two ways: *maran atha* ('our Lord has come') or *marana tha* ('our Lord, come!'). The latter is more likely given the eschatological context and its parallel in Revelation 22:20. This Aramaic phrase preserved in a Greek letter is a remarkable linguistic fossil, demonstrating that the earliest Aramaic-speaking Christians worshipped Jesus as 'Lord' (*maran*) — a divine title.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joshua 6:17-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The SBLGNT reads 'the Lord Jesus' without 'Christ,' a shorter reading preferred by the critical text. This grace benediction is Paul's standard letter-closing formula, though its exact wording varies across his letters.
24. This personal declaration of love is unique among Paul's letter closings and is especially striking given the severity of much of this letter. After confronting division, immorality, lawsuits, and doctrinal error, Paul closes not with a final rebuke but with an expression of genuine affection. The SBLGNT omits the 'Amen' found in some manuscripts and in the KJV.

2 Corinthians

1

Summary: *Second Corinthians opens with Paul's standard greeting from Paul and Timothy to the church at Corinth and all the saints in Achaia. Paul then launches into a deeply personal passage about affliction and comfort, recounting severe suffering he experienced in Asia that brought him to the brink of death. He frames this suffering theologically: God comforts the afflicted so they can comfort others, and the God who raises the dead is the one who delivered Paul and will deliver him again. The chapter closes with Paul defending his change of travel plans, insisting his word is not 'yes and no' but grounded in the faithfulness of God, whose promises in Christ are always 'Yes' and 'Amen.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The theological density of verses 19-22 is extraordinary. In defending himself against the charge of fickleness, Paul articulates a profound theology of divine faithfulness: all God's promises find their 'Yes' in Christ, believers say 'Amen' through him, and God has sealed believers with the Holy Spirit as a guarantee (arrabōn). This Trinitarian passage — involving God the Father, Christ the Son, and the Holy Spirit — emerges not from systematic theology but from Paul's self-defense. The suffering passage (vv. 3-11) introduces the letter's central paradox: weakness and affliction are the means through which God's power and comfort are displayed.*

Translation Friction: *The exact nature of Paul's affliction in Asia (v. 8) is debated — possibilities include a severe illness, a mob attack (Acts 19:23-41), or imprisonment. We translate the Greek without specifying what Paul himself leaves unspecified. The phrase 'sentence of death' (v. 9, apokrima tou thanatou) is difficult; apokrima may mean 'sentence, verdict, response' and appears only here in the New Testament. The identity of the 'brother' co-author Timothy and his role in the letter's composition is unclear.*

Connections: *The comfort language (paraklēsis) connects to Jesus's Beatitude ('Blessed are those who mourn, for they will be comforted,' Matthew 5:4) and to the Holy Spirit as Paraclete in John 14-16. Paul's near-death experience in Asia connects to the hardship catalogs later in the letter (4:7-12; 6:4-10; 11:23-33). The 'Yes and Amen' passage connects to Revelation 3:14, where Christ is called 'the Amen.' The arrabōn ('guarantee') of the Spirit appears again in 5:5 and Ephesians 1:14.*

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother, to the church of God that is in Corinth, together with all the saints throughout Achaia: ²And from the lord Jesus christ, and grace be to you and peace from God our Father. ³Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of mercies and God of all comfort, ⁴Who

comforts us in all our suffering, that we may be able to comfort them that are in any trouble, by the comfort by that we ourselves are receives comfort from God. ⁵For just as the sufferings of Christ overflow to us, so also through Christ our comfort overflows. ⁶If we are afflicted, it is for your comfort and salvation; and if we are comforted, it is for your comfort, which is effective as you patiently endure the same sufferings that we also suffer. ⁷And our hope for you is firm, because we know that as you share in the sufferings, so also you share in the comfort. ⁸For we do not want you to be unaware, brothers, of the affliction we experienced in Asia. We were burdened utterly beyond our strength, so that we despaired even of life itself. ⁹Indeed, we felt that we had received the sentence of death, so that we would not rely on ourselves but on God who raises the dead. ¹⁰He delivered us from such a deadly peril, and he will deliver us. In him we have set our hope that he will deliver us again, ¹¹You also helping together by petition for us, that for the gift bestowed upon us by the means of numerous persons thanks may be given by numerous on our behalf. ¹²For this is our boast: the testimony of our conscience that we conducted ourselves in the world with simplicity and godly sincerity, not by worldly wisdom but by the grace of God — and especially toward you. ¹³For we are not writing anything to you other than what you can read and understand, and I hope you will fully understand, ¹⁴As as well you possess acknowledged us in part, that we are your rejoicing, not even as you as well are ours in the time of the Lord Jesus. ¹⁵And because of this confidence, I wanted to come to you first, so that you might have a second experience of grace, ¹⁶I planned to visit you on my way to Macedonia, then return from Macedonia to you, and have you send me on my way to Judea. ¹⁷Was I being fickle when I intended this? Or do I make my plans according to the flesh, so that with me it is 'Yes, yes' and 'No, no' at the same time? ¹⁸But as God is faithful, our word to you has not been 'Yes' and 'No.' ¹⁹For the Son of God, Jesus Christ, whom we proclaimed among you — Silvanus, Timothy, and I — was not 'Yes' and 'No,' but in him it has always been 'Yes.' ²⁰For all the promises of God find their 'Yes' in him. That is why it is through him that we say our 'Amen' to God for his glory. ²¹And it is God who establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us, ²²Who has as well sealed us, and granted the earnest of the Inner life in our hearts. ²³But I call God as witness against my soul, that it was to spare you that I did not come again to Corinth. ²⁴Not that we lord it over your faith, but we work together for your joy, for you stand firm in your faith.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads 'Christ Jesus' (Christou Iēsou) rather than the KJV's 'Jesus Christ,' placing the title first. Timothy is named as co-sender but called 'the brother' (ho adelphos), not co-apostle. The address extends beyond Corinth to 'all Achaia' (the Roman province of southern Greece), suggesting a circular intent.
2. Paul's standard greeting fuses the Greek salutation (chairein, modified to charis, 'grace') with the Hebrew shalom ('peace'). The coordination of 'God our Father' and 'the Lord Jesus Christ' as joint source of grace and peace reflects the high Christology operative in Paul's earliest letters.
3. The opening eulogētos ('blessed') echoes the Jewish berakah (blessing formula) found in Psalms (e.g., Psalm 41:13; 72:18). The twin titles 'Father of mercies' (patēr tōn oiktirmōn) and 'God of all comfort' (theos pasēs paraklēseōs) establish the theological framework for the entire chapter. The noun paraklēsis and its cognates appear ten times in verses 3-7.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 41:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The cascade of paraklēsis vocabulary in this verse creates a deliberate rhetorical effect: comfort received becomes comfort given. The Greek thlipsis ('affliction, tribulation, pressure') carries the literal sense of being crushed or pressed, which Paul will develop through the letter (4:8, 'afflicted in every way but not crushed').
5. The verb perisseuei ('overflows, abounds') creates a proportional equation: suffering and comfort are both measured in terms of overflow. 'The sufferings of Christ' (ta pathēmata tou Christou) likely means sufferings endured for Christ's sake or in union with Christ, not a participation in Christ's atoning suffering.
6. Paul's suffering is not private but vicarious — it serves the Corinthians' comfort and salvation. The participle energoumenēs ('being made effective, working') suggests that comfort produces endurance as an active, dynamic process, not merely passive consolation.
7. The word koinōnoi ('partners, sharers') implies active participation, not mere sympathy. Paul's confidence (elpis bebaia, 'firm hope') rests on the theological principle that participation in suffering guarantees participation in comfort — a pattern that mirrors the death-and-resurrection logic of the gospel.

8. The phrase *kath' hyperbolēn hyper dynamin* ('utterly beyond our strength') piles prepositions to convey extremity. The verb *exaporēthēnai* ('to be utterly at a loss, to despair') is an intensified form found only in Paul. The exact nature of this affliction in the Roman province of Asia remains debated — possibilities include the Ephesian riot (Acts 19), an illness, or imprisonment.
9. The word *apokrima* ('sentence, verdict, response') appears only here in the New Testament. Paul interprets his brush with death teleologically — its purpose (*hina*, 'so that') was to redirect his trust from himself to God. The title 'God who raises the dead' (*tō theō tō egeironti tous nekrous*) echoes the second benediction of the Jewish Amidah prayer, connecting Paul's personal deliverance to the God of resurrection.
10. The threefold repetition of *rhysetai* ('he will deliver') creates a past-present-future framework of divine rescue: God delivered, delivers, and will deliver. This triple temporal structure mirrors Paul's understanding of salvation as already-accomplished, presently-experienced, and not-yet-completed.
11. The compound verb *synpourgoyntōn* ('joining together in helping') emphasizes communal participation in prayer. Paul envisions a theological circuit: many pray, God grants favor (*charisma*), and many give thanks — creating a chain of intercession and gratitude.
12. The word *kauchēsis* ('boast') is a key term in 2 Corinthians, appearing frequently as Paul defends his ministry. The SBLGNT reads *haplotēti* ('simplicity, sincerity') rather than the variant *hagiotēti* ('holiness'). The contrast between 'worldly wisdom' (*sophia sarkikē*) and 'the grace of God' echoes the argument of 1 Corinthians 1-2.
13. There is a wordplay between *anaginōskete* ('read') and *epiginōskete* ('understand, recognize') that cannot be fully captured in English. Paul is responding to accusations of hidden agendas or double-meaning in his letters. His correspondence says exactly what it means.
14. The phrase *apo merous* ('in part, partially') is a candid admission that the Corinthians' understanding of Paul is incomplete. 'The day of the Lord Jesus' refers to the eschatological judgment when all relationships and ministries will be evaluated. Mutual boasting at the final judgment is a remarkable expression of apostolic confidence.
15. The word *charin* ('grace, benefit, gift') here refers to the blessing of an apostolic visit. Paul's original plan was to visit Corinth twice — once on the way to Macedonia and once on the return. This plan changed, prompting the accusations of fickleness that Paul addresses in the following verses.
16. This double-visit plan differs from the single visit described in 1 Corinthians 16:5-7, where Paul planned to come only after passing through Macedonia. The verb *propemphthēnai* ('to be sent on one's way') implies material provision and accompaniment for travel.
17. Paul quotes his critics' accusation: that his changed plans reveal unreliability (*elaphria*, 'lightness, fickleness'). The phrase 'according to the flesh' (*kata sarka*) means making decisions by merely human calculation rather than divine guidance. The rhetorical questions expect negative answers.
18. Paul grounds the reliability of his word in the faithfulness of God (*pistos ho theos*). This is not merely an oath formula but a theological claim: Paul's integrity as an apostle derives from the God who sent him. The shift from defending travel plans to affirming divine faithfulness is characteristic of Paul's theological method.
19. Silvanus (the Latinized form of Silas) was Paul's companion on the founding mission to Corinth (Acts 18:5). The argument moves from Paul's personal reliability to Christ's cosmic reliability: if the message proclaimed is consistently 'Yes,' the messenger cannot be 'Yes and No.' Christ himself is the guarantee of Paul's truthfulness.
20. This verse is one of the most theologically compressed statements in the Pauline corpus. Every divine promise (*epangelia*) reaches its fulfillment ('Yes') in Christ. The Hebrew 'Amen' ('so be it, it is certain') is the believer's response to God's 'Yes' in Christ. The liturgical setting is evident: the congregation says 'Amen' through Christ, and this corporate response glorifies God.
21. There is a wordplay between *Christon* ('Christ, Anointed One') and *chrisas* ('having anointed'). God establishes believers 'into Christ' and 'anoints' them — believers participate in the anointing that defines Christ himself. This verse begins a Trinitarian sequence: God (the Father) anoints, seals, and gives the Spirit.
22. The word *arrabōn* ('guarantee, down payment, pledge') is a commercial term borrowed from Semitic languages (Hebrew 'eravon'), referring to a first installment that guarantees full payment to come. The Holy Spirit is God's down payment on the believer's full inheritance. The sealing (*sphragisamenos*) metaphor draws from the ancient practice of stamping a seal on property to mark ownership.
23. Paul now reveals the real reason for his changed plans: he wanted to spare the Corinthians a painful confrontation. The oath formula 'I call God as witness against my soul' is the most solemn form of self-imprecation available — Paul invokes divine judgment on himself if he is lying. The verb *pheidomenos* ('sparing') reveals pastoral concern behind what appeared to be fickleness.
24. Paul immediately qualifies his authority: sparing them was not an act of domination (*kyrieuomen*, 'lord it over') but of partnership (*synergoi*, 'co-workers, fellow laborers'). The final clause — 'for you stand firm in your faith' — affirms the Corinthians' spiritual maturity even as Paul exercises apostolic care. This balance between authority and partnership runs throughout 2 Corinthians.

2

Summary: *Paul continues explaining his delayed visit: he chose not to come in sorrow but wrote a painful letter instead, so that when he finally arrived, his joy would not be replaced by grief. He urges the Corinthians to forgive and restore the offender who had been disciplined by the majority, lest Satan exploit the situation through excessive punishment. Paul then recounts his journey to Troas, where an open door for the gospel awaited him, but his anxiety over Titus's absence drove him onward to Macedonia. The chapter closes with a magnificent metaphor: God leads believers in a triumphal procession, and through them spreads the fragrance of the knowledge of Christ everywhere — a fragrance of life to those being saved and of death to those perishing.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The triumphal procession imagery (vv. 14-16) draws from the Roman triumphus, in which a conquering general paraded through the streets with incense burning, captives in chains, and soldiers celebrating. Paul casts himself not as the general but as one led in the procession — a captive of Christ. The incense in a Roman triumph signaled life to the victors and death to the condemned captives. Paul applies this dual significance to the gospel itself: the same message that saves some condemns others. The closing rhetorical question, 'Who is sufficient for these things?' introduces the theme of apostolic sufficiency that dominates chapters 3-6.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the offender (v. 5) is much debated. Earlier interpreters identified him with the incestuous man of 1 Corinthians 5, but most modern scholars believe this is a different individual who personally wronged Paul, perhaps during an unrecorded 'painful visit.' The 'letter of tears' (v. 4) is likely a lost letter, distinct from 1 Corinthians. We translate the text without imposing either identification.*

Connections: *The forgiveness passage connects to Jesus's teaching on forgiveness (Matthew 18:21-35) and Paul's instruction in 1 Corinthians 5. The triumphal procession imagery connects to Colossians 2:15. The 'open door' in Troas echoes 1 Corinthians 16:9. The fragrance metaphor draws on Old Testament incense offerings (Exodus 30:34-38) and anticipates the 'aroma of Christ' language in Ephesians 5:2.*

¹For I made up my mind not to come to you again in sorrow. ²For if I cause you pain, who is there to make me glad but the one whom I have pained? ³And I wrote as I did so that when I came I would not be pained by those who should have made me rejoice, for I am confident about all of you that my joy is the joy of you all. ⁴For I wrote to you out of great affliction and anguish of heart, with many tears — not to cause you pain, but so that you might know the overflowing love I have for you. ⁵Now if anyone has caused pain, he has caused it not to me but in some measure — not to exaggerate — to all of you. ⁶For such a person, this punishment by the majority is sufficient, ⁷so that contrariwise you anything rather to pardon him, and comfort him, lest perhaps such a one should be swallowed up with overmuch sorrow. ⁸So I urge you to reaffirm your love for him. ⁹For this is why I wrote: to test you and to know whether you are obedient in everything. ¹⁰Anyone whom you forgive, I also forgive. Indeed, what I have forgiven — if there was anything to forgive — I have forgiven in the presence of Christ for your sake, ¹¹Indeed, lest Satan should get an advantage of us — since we are not ignorant of his devices. ¹²When I came to Troas to proclaim the gospel of Christ, even though a door was opened for me in the Lord, ¹³I had no rest in my spirit, because I discovered not Titus my brother — but taking my leave of them, I traveled from thence into Macedonia. ¹⁴But thanks be to God, who always leads us in triumphal procession in Christ and through us spreads the fragrance of the knowledge of him in every place. ¹⁵For we are the aroma of Christ to God among those who are being saved and among those who are perishing — ¹⁶To the one we are the savour of execution to execution. And to the other the savour of life to life. And who is sufficient for these things? ¹⁷For we are not, like so many, peddlers of the word of God, but as persons of sincerity, as commissioned by God, in the sight of God, we speak in Christ.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *palin* ('again') implies a previous sorrowful visit — this is the so-called 'painful visit' that is not recorded in Acts but is implied throughout 2 Corinthians. Paul's decision was deliberate (*ekrina emautō*, 'I judged for myself') rather than circumstantial.

2. Paul's reasoning reveals the depth of his emotional bond with the Corinthians: if he grieves them, he grieves his own source of joy. The logic is circular by design — the mutual dependence between apostle and community is the point.
3. The 'letter' Paul refers to is probably the so-called 'severe letter' or 'letter of tears' mentioned in verse 4, not 1 Corinthians itself. Paul's confidence (pepoithōs) that his joy and theirs are identical reveals his assumption of deep spiritual solidarity between apostle and church.
4. This verse gives the emotional background of the lost 'severe letter.' The phrase synochēs kardias ('anguish of heart') pairs psychological distress with the tears to emphasize that the letter was written in love, not anger. Paul's pastoral method combines confrontation with deep affection.
5. Paul deflects the personal offense away from himself and onto the community: the offender has grieved the whole church, not merely Paul. The phrase apo merous ('in part, to some degree') and hina mē epibarō ('so as not to overstate it') show Paul's reluctance to exaggerate the harm.
6. The word epitimia ('punishment, censure') appears only here in the New Testament. The phrase hypo tōn pleionōn ('by the majority') indicates that the disciplinary action was decided by a congregational vote, not unanimously — some may have dissented. Paul considers the punishment adequate and now calls for its end.
7. The verb charisasthai ('to forgive, to show grace') is related to charis ('grace'). The metaphor katapothē ('be swallowed up, overwhelmed') suggests that excessive punishment can destroy the person it was meant to correct. Paul's concern shifts from justice to pastoral care.
8. The verb kyrōsai ('to ratify, confirm, make legally valid') is a legal term — Paul asks the community to formally reinstate the offender through a public act of love, just as they had formally enacted the discipline.
9. The word dokimēn ('tested character, proof') implies that the entire episode — the offense, the letter, the discipline — served as a test of the Corinthians' willingness to follow apostolic guidance. Paul now reveals that their obedience, not just the punishment of the offender, was the goal.
10. The phrase en prosōpō Christou ('in the presence of Christ' or 'in the person of Christ') is striking — Paul's act of forgiveness is performed before Christ as witness, or as Christ's representative. The tentative 'if there was anything to forgive' downplays the personal offense to focus on the community's healing.
11. The verb pleonektēthōmen ('be taken advantage of, be outwitted, be defrauded') suggests that both excessive leniency and excessive severity can serve Satan's purposes. The noēmata ('schemes, designs, thoughts') of Satan include exploiting unforgiveness to divide the community. Paul identifies unresolved church conflict as a strategic opportunity for the adversary.
12. Troas (Alexandria Troas) was a major port city in northwest Asia Minor. The 'open door' metaphor for ministry opportunity echoes 1 Corinthians 16:9. The concessive force — 'even though a door was opened' — makes Paul's departure all the more striking: he left an open door because of his anxiety about Corinth.
13. Paul's anxiety about Titus — whom he had sent to Corinth with the severe letter — was so great that it overrode the missionary opportunity in Troas. This raw emotional disclosure is characteristic of 2 Corinthians. The resolution of this anxiety does not come until 7:5-7, creating a long narrative interruption filled with theological reflection (2:14-7:4).
14. The verb thriambeuonti ('leads in triumphal procession') does not mean 'causes us to triumph' (as the KJV implies) but 'leads us as captives in a victory parade.' In a Roman triumphus, the general led conquered enemies and his own soldiers through the streets while incense burned. Paul is the captive, not the conqueror — Christ is the triumphant general. The fragrance (osmē) of incense in the procession carried different implications for the victors (life, celebration) and the condemned (death).
15. The phrase euōdia Christou ('aroma of Christ') evokes the Old Testament burnt offering that produced a 'pleasing aroma to the LORD' (Genesis 8:21; Leviticus 1:9). The present participles sōzomenois ('being saved') and apollymenois ('perishing') indicate ongoing processes, not settled states — salvation and destruction are presented as present realities being worked out.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 8:21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 1:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The doubling — 'from death to death' and 'from life to life' — intensifies the effect: the gospel does not merely describe death and life but produces them. The rhetorical question 'who is sufficient?' (tis hikanos) is not defeatist but prepares for the answer in 3:5-6: 'our sufficiency is from God.' The word hikanos ('sufficient, adequate, competent') becomes a key term in the following chapters.
17. The verb kapēleuontes ('peddling, hawking, adulterating for profit') is a marketplace term for merchants who diluted wine for extra profit. Paul contrasts himself with traveling teachers who commercialized their message. The triple qualification — 'of sincerity,' 'from God,' 'in the sight of God' — establishes the integrity of his ministry against implicit charges of self-serving rhetoric.

3

Summary: *Paul contrasts the ministry of the old covenant with the ministry of the new covenant. He begins by declaring that the Corinthians themselves are his letter of recommendation, written not with ink but with the Spirit of the living God, not on stone tablets but on human hearts. Paul then develops an extended midrash on Exodus 34, where Moses veiled his face after encountering God's glory. The ministry of the old covenant, though glorious, was a ministry of death and condemnation written in letters on stone; the ministry of the new covenant, written by the Spirit, is a ministry of righteousness and life with surpassing glory. The veil that covered Moses's face now covers the hearts of those who read the old covenant without Christ, but when anyone turns to the Lord, the veil is removed. The chapter culminates in the declaration that all believers, with unveiled faces, are being transformed into the Lord's image from one degree of glory to another.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's reading of Exodus 34 is one of the most creative and theologically consequential interpretive moves in the New Testament. He transforms Moses's veil from a concealment of fading glory into a metaphor for spiritual blindness that persists wherever the old covenant is read apart from Christ. The statement 'the Lord is the Spirit' (v. 17) is one of the most debated phrases in Pauline theology — it does not collapse the persons of the Trinity but identifies the risen Lord as the one who operates through the Spirit in the new covenant. The final verse (v. 18) presents the Christian life as ongoing transformation (metamorphoumetha, the same word used for the Transfiguration) into Christ's image.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the Lord is the Spirit' (v. 17) is theologically complex and we render the Greek without systematic-theological paraphrase. Paul's contrast between old and new covenants has historically been used to denigrate Judaism; the text itself contrasts the modes of covenant administration (letter vs. Spirit, stone vs. heart), not the God who stands behind both. The 'fading glory' interpretation of Moses's face (vv. 7, 13) goes beyond the Exodus narrative, which does not say the glory faded — this is Paul's interpretive addition.*

Connections: *The 'tablets of the heart' language echoes Jeremiah 31:31-34 and Ezekiel 36:26-27 (the new covenant and heart-of-flesh promises). The veil imagery connects to Isaiah 25:7 (the shroud over all peoples). The transformation 'from glory to glory' anticipates Romans 8:29 (conformed to the image of the Son) and 1 Corinthians 15:49 (bearing the image of the heavenly man). The Spirit-letter contrast echoes Romans 2:29 and 7:6.*

¹Are we beginning to commend ourselves again? Or do we need, as some do, letters of recommendation to you, or from you? ²You yourselves are our letter, written on our hearts, known and read by everyone, ³Forasmuch as you are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God. Not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart. ⁴Such is the confidence we have through Christ before God. ⁵Not that we are sufficient in ourselves to claim anything as coming from us, but our sufficiency is from God, ⁶Who as well has fashioned us able ministers of the new testament. Not of the letter, but of the inner life — for the letter killeth, but the inner life gives life. ⁷Now if the ministry of death, carved in letters on stone, came with such glory that the Israelites could not gaze at Moses's face because of its glory, which was being set aside, ⁸How will not the ministration of the spirit be instead glorious? ⁹For if the ministry of condemnation had glory, how much more does the ministry of righteousness overflow with glory! ¹⁰Indeed, in this case, what once had glory has come to have no glory at all, because of the glory that surpasses it. ¹¹For if what was being set aside came through glory, how much more does what remains come in glory! ¹²Since we have such a hope, we act with great boldness, ¹³Not as Moses, which placed a vail over his face, that genuine offspring of Israel could not steadfastly pay attention to the end of that which is abolished. ¹⁴But their minds were hardened. For to this day, when they read the old covenant, the same veil remains unlifted, because only through Christ is it removed. ¹⁵Indeed, to this day whenever Moses is read, a veil lies over their hearts. ¹⁶But when one turns to the Lord, the veil is removed. ¹⁷Now the Lord is the Spirit, and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is freedom. ¹⁸And we all, with unveiled faces, beholding the glory of the Lord, are being transformed into the same image from one degree of glory to another. For this comes from the Lord who is the Spirit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Letters of recommendation (systatikōn epistolōn) were standard practice in the ancient world for traveling teachers and missionaries. Paul's opponents in Corinth apparently carried such letters; Paul's rhetorical question implies that his relationship with the Corinthians makes such documentation unnecessary.
2. Paul transforms the metaphor: the Corinthian believers themselves are his letter of recommendation, and they are written not on paper but on the apostle's heart. The wordplay between ginōskomenē ('known') and anaginōskomenē ('read') creates an elegant pairing in Greek.
3. The contrast between stone tablets and hearts of flesh directly evokes Ezekiel 36:26 ('I will remove the heart of stone and give you a heart of flesh') and Jeremiah 31:33 ('I will write my law on their hearts'). Paul fuses the new covenant prophecies of Jeremiah and Ezekiel with the Sinai narrative to distinguish his ministry from that of Moses. The phrase 'letter of Christ' (epistolē Christou) makes Christ the author and the Corinthians the document.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 36:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 31:33 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The word pepoithēsis ('confidence, trust') is directed 'through Christ toward God' — Paul's confidence in his ministry is not self-generated but mediated by Christ and directed toward God as its ultimate ground.
5. This answers the question of 2:16, 'Who is sufficient for these things?' The word hikanotēs ('sufficiency, competence, adequacy') is emphatically sourced in God (ek tou theou), not in the apostle's own ability. Paul's ministry operates by divine enablement, not human qualification.
6. The phrase kainēs diathēkēs ('new covenant') directly echoes Jeremiah 31:31 (LXX 38:31). The contrast between gramma ('letter') and pneuma ('Spirit') is not between literal and allegorical interpretation, nor between Old Testament and New, but between the mode of the old covenant (external law that exposes sin and condemns) and the mode of the new (the Spirit who transforms from within). The verb zōopoiei ('gives life, makes alive') is the same used for resurrection in 1 Corinthians 15:22.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 31:31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Paul calls the Sinai covenant the 'ministry of death' (diakonia tou thanatou) — not because the law is evil, but because when the law encounters human sin, it can only condemn (cf. Romans 7:10). The participle katargoumenēn ('being set aside, being brought to nothing') indicates that the glory of the old covenant was transitory by design, not that it was invalid. Paul is interpreting, not denigrating, the Mosaic ministry.
8. Paul argues from the lesser to the greater (qal vahomer in rabbinic terminology): if the ministry that brought death was glorious, how much more glorious is the ministry that brings the Spirit? The logic assumes that both ministries are genuinely glorious — the new does not negate the old but surpasses it.
9. A second qal vahomer argument, now using different terms: 'condemnation' (katakrisis) versus 'righteousness' (dikaioynē). The verb perisseuei ('overflows, abounds') indicates not merely a comparative but a qualitative superiority of the new covenant's glory.
10. Paul uses a startling paradox: the old covenant's glory is so outshone by the new that it appears gloryless by comparison — like stars that are invisible at sunrise, not because they have ceased to exist, but because a greater light overwhelms them.
11. The contrast is between to katargoumenon ('what is being set aside') and to menon ('what remains, what endures'). The old covenant was temporary by divine design; the new covenant is permanent. Both come in glory, but permanence confers greater glory.
12. The word parrēsia ('boldness, openness, confidence, freedom of speech') is a key political and philosophical term in the Greek world, denoting the citizen's right to speak freely. Paul contrasts his parrēsia with Moses's veil: the new covenant minister speaks openly because the glory he mediates does not fade.
13. Paul's interpretation goes beyond Exodus 34:33-35, where Moses veils his face after speaking with Israel, apparently to shield them from the residual glory. Paul reinterprets the veil's purpose: it prevented Israel from seeing the telos ('end, outcome, goal') of the fading glory. The word telos can mean both 'end' (cessation) and 'goal' (fulfillment), and Paul may intend both — the old covenant's glory was pointing toward Christ as its fulfillment.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 34:33-35 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The verb epōrōthē ('were hardened, were made dull') shifts the veil from Moses's face to the minds of his hearers. Paul transfers the image across time: what happened at Sinai continues 'to this day' whenever the old covenant is read without recognizing Christ as its fulfillment. The phrase palaia diathēkē ('old covenant') is the earliest use of this term for the Hebrew Scriptures, though Paul means the Sinai covenant specifically, not the entire Old Testament.

15. The shift from 'minds' (v. 14) to 'hearts' (kardia) deepens the diagnosis: the problem is not merely intellectual but affects the core of the person. 'Moses' is used by metonymy for the Torah or the entire old covenant scripture read in synagogue.
16. Paul alludes to Exodus 34:34, where Moses removed the veil when he entered the LORD's presence. Paul universalizes this: whenever anyone (not just Moses) turns to the Lord, the veil is taken away. The verb *periaireitai* ('is removed') is in the present tense — this is not a future eschatological event but a present reality available to any who turn to Christ.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 34:34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This is one of the most debated sentences in Paul. 'The Lord is the Spirit' does not mean that the second and third persons of the Trinity are identical, but that in the experience of the new covenant, the risen Lord encounters believers through the Spirit. The 'Lord' whom Moses approached (Exodus 34:34) is now encountered as 'the Spirit' who transforms. The freedom (*eleutheria*) is freedom from the veil, from the letter that kills, and from condemnation.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 34:34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *katoptrizomenoi* can mean 'beholding as in a mirror' or 'reflecting.' Either sense works: believers see Christ's glory and, in seeing it, are transformed. The verb *metamorphoumetha* ('are being transformed') is the same word used for the Transfiguration (Matthew 17:2; Mark 9:2) and for Romans 12:2. The present tense indicates an ongoing process. The phrase *apo doxēs eis doxan* ('from glory to glory') describes progressive transformation, and the source is identified as *kyriou pneumatos* ('the Lord who is the Spirit').

4

Summary: *Paul continues defending his ministry by insisting on transparency and rejecting shameful, underhanded methods. The gospel is veiled only to those who are perishing, whose minds the god of this age has blinded. Paul proclaims not himself but Christ Jesus as Lord, for the same God who said 'Let light shine out of darkness' has shone in the hearts of believers to give the light of the knowledge of God's glory in the face of Christ. This treasure, however, is held in 'jars of clay,' so that the surpassing power belongs to God, not to the apostles. Paul catalogs his afflictions — pressed but not crushed, struck down but not destroyed — always carrying the death of Jesus in his body so that the life of Jesus may also be revealed. The chapter closes with the contrast between the outer self wasting away and the inner self being renewed daily, and between the momentary lightness of affliction and the eternal weight of glory.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'jars of clay' metaphor (v. 7) is one of Paul's most enduring images. Clay pots were the cheapest, most fragile, most disposable containers in the ancient world — they held oil for lamps, stored provisions, and were easily shattered. Paul insists that the fragility of the human vessel is not a liability but the very means by which God's power is displayed. The paradoxes of verses 8-9 ('afflicted but not crushed, perplexed but not despairing, persecuted but not forsaken, struck down but not destroyed') form one of the great catalogs of apostolic endurance. The closing contrast between momentary affliction and eternal glory (v. 17) uses the language of weight: the 'light' burden of suffering is contrasted with the 'weight' (*baros*) of glory — the Hebrew word for glory (*kavod*) derives from the root meaning 'heavy.'*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the god of this age' (v. 4) is the only place in the New Testament where Satan is given this title, though the concept appears elsewhere (John 12:31; Ephesians 2:2). Some patristic interpreters took 'god' as a reference to the true God who blinded unbelievers in judgment, but the context strongly favors Satan as the referent. The phrase 'always carrying in the body the death of Jesus' (v. 10) is distinct from Paul's usual 'dying with Christ' language and may refer to the physical toll of apostolic ministry.*

Connections: *The creation-light imagery (v. 6) echoes Genesis 1:3 and Isaiah 9:2. The 'jars of clay' connects to the potter-clay imagery of Isaiah 29:16, 45:9, and Jeremiah 18. The death-life paradox anticipates the extended treatment in chapter 5. The 'eternal weight of glory' echoes the Hebrew *kavod* theology of the Old Testament. The catalog of sufferings connects to the longer lists in 6:4-10 and 11:23-33.*

¹Therefore, having this ministry by the mercy we received, we do not lose heart. ²But we have renounced shameful, hidden things, not walking in craftiness or adulterating the word of God, but by the open display of the truth commending ourselves to everyone's conscience in the sight of God. ³And even if our gospel is veiled, it is veiled to those who are perishing. ⁴In their

case, the god of this age has blinded the minds of the unbelievers, to keep them from seeing the light of the gospel of the glory of Christ, who is the image of God. ⁵For what we proclaim is not ourselves but Jesus Christ as Lord, with ourselves as your servants for Jesus's sake. ⁶To give the light of the knowledge of the glory of god in the face of jesus christ, for God, who commanded the light to shine out of darkness, has shined in our hearts. ⁷But we have this treasure in jars of clay, so that the surpassing power may be of God and not from us. ⁸We are afflicted in every way but not crushed, perplexed but not driven to despair, ⁹We are hunted down but never abandoned by God. We get knocked down but never destroyed. ¹⁰At all times bearing concerning in the body the dying of the Lord Jesus, that the life also of Jesus might be made manifest in our body. ¹¹For we who are alive are always being given over to death for Jesus's sake, so that the life of Jesus may also be revealed in our mortal flesh. ¹²So death is at work in us, but life in you. ¹³Since we have the same spirit of faith according to what has been written — "I believed, and so I spoke" — we also believe, and so we also speak, ¹⁴Being aware that he which raised up the Lord Jesus will raise up us also by Jesus, and will present us with you. ¹⁵For it is all for your sake, so that as grace extends to more and more people, it may increase thanksgiving, to the glory of God. ¹⁶So we do not lose heart. Though our outer self is wasting away, our inner self is being renewed day by day. ¹⁷For this momentary, light affliction is producing for us an eternal weight of glory beyond all comparison, ¹⁸While we pay attention not at the matters which are seen, but at the matters which are not seen — for the matters which are seen are temporal. But the matters which are not seen are eternal.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *engkakoumen* ('lose heart, become discouraged, grow weary') is the letter's refrain (also in v. 16). Paul's perseverance is grounded not in personal resilience but in divine mercy (*eleēthēmen*, 'we were shown mercy' — a divine passive).
2. The verb *dolountes* ('adulterating, falsifying, corrupting') recalls the 'peddlers' of 2:17 and the wine-merchant metaphor. Paul contrasts hidden deception with open manifestation (*phanērōsis*) — the transparency theme of chapter 3 continues. The phrase 'in the sight of God' (*enōpion tou theou*) places all ministry under divine scrutiny.
3. Paul takes up the veil imagery from chapter 3 and applies it to the gospel itself. The perfect participle *kekalymmenon* ('having been veiled') indicates a settled state. The present participle *apollymenois* ('perishing') echoes 2:15 and indicates an ongoing condition, not a final verdict.
4. The title 'the god of this age' (*ho theos tou aiōnos toutou*) refers to Satan, who exercises a usurped authority over the present evil age. Christ is called 'the image of God' (*eikōn tou theou*), a title with profound theological implications — it echoes Genesis 1:26-27 (humanity made in God's image) and anticipates Colossians 1:15. What was lost in Adam is perfectly realized in Christ.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:26-27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The double self-reference creates a deliberate contrast: Paul does not preach himself (as subject of the message) but presents himself as a servant (*doulos*, 'slave') of the Corinthians. The confession 'Jesus Christ as Lord' (*Iēsou Christon kyriōn*) is the earliest Christian creed (cf. Romans 10:9; Philippians 2:11).
6. Paul connects creation (Genesis 1:3) to conversion: the same God who spoke light into being at creation has illuminated the believer's heart. The phrase 'in the face of Jesus Christ' (*en prosōpō Iēsou Christou*) circles back to Moses's veiled face (3:7, 13) — what was hidden behind Moses's veil is now openly revealed in Christ's face. The chain of genitives ('the light of the knowledge of the glory of God') is theologically dense: God's glory is known and that knowledge illuminates.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The 'treasure' (*thēsauros*) is the gospel, the light of verse 6. The 'jars of clay' (*ostrakinois skeuesin*) were the cheapest containers in the ancient world — fragile, disposable, and utterly ordinary. The purpose clause (*hina*) reveals that human fragility is by divine design: the weakness of the vessel makes the power of God unmistakable. This is the thesis statement of 2 Corinthians' theology of weakness.
8. The first pair of paradoxes begins the catalog. The verbs *thlibomenoi* ('pressed, afflicted') and *stenochoroumenoi* ('crushed, hemmed in, confined') share a physical-pressure metaphor — squeezed but not compressed to the breaking point. The second pair uses *aporoumenoi* ('at a loss, perplexed') and *exaporoumenoi* ('utterly at a loss, in despair') — the same root intensified with the prefix *ex-*.
9. The third pair — 'persecuted but not forsaken' (*diōkomenoi all' ouk engkataleipomenoi*) — echoes Psalm 22:1 (LXX 21:2), where the psalmist cries out to a God who has not forsaken him. The fourth — 'struck down but not destroyed' — uses military imagery. Each pair insists on the same point: suffering is real but never final.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 22:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

10. The word *nekrōsin* ('death, dying, putting to death') is stronger than 'dying' — it denotes the state of death itself. Paul's physical body bears the marks of Jesus's death (through persecution and suffering), and this very participation in Christ's death becomes the means through which Christ's resurrection life is manifested. The logic is profoundly incarnational: the gospel is displayed through the apostle's body.
11. Paul restates verse 10 with greater specificity: 'we who are alive' (*hēmeis hoi zōntes*) emphasizes the paradox — they are living people constantly handed over to death. The phrase 'mortal flesh' (*thnētē sarki*) emphasizes the vulnerability of the body through which divine life is displayed.
12. This compressed sentence captures the vicarious logic of apostolic ministry: Paul's dying produces the Corinthians' living. The verb *energeitai* ('is at work, is operative') treats death as an active force, not a passive condition. The exchange — death in the apostle, life in the church — mirrors the pattern of Christ's own death-for-others.
13. Paul quotes Psalm 116:10 (LXX 115:1), a psalm of thanksgiving for deliverance from death. The 'spirit of faith' connects the psalmist's experience to Paul's own: both believed in the midst of suffering and therefore spoke. Faith compels proclamation, not silence.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 116:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The resurrection of Jesus is the ground of Paul's confidence: the same God who raised Jesus will raise his servants. The verb *parastēsei* ('will present, will bring before') suggests a formal presentation before God — the eschatological counterpart to the present suffering. The phrase 'with you' (*syn hūmin*) includes the Corinthians in this future hope.
15. Paul envisions a cascade: grace reaches more people, who give more thanks, which increases God's glory. The verb *pleonasasa* ('having increased, having extended') and *perisseuē* ('may overflow, may abound') are both words of surplus and abundance, characteristic of Paul's theology of grace.
16. The refrain 'we do not lose heart' (*ouk engkakoumen*) echoes verse 1, forming an *inclusio*. The contrast between the 'outer person' (*exō anthrōpos*) and the 'inner person' (*esō anthrōpos*) is not a Platonic body-soul dualism but a distinction between the visible, mortal dimension of existence and the Spirit-renewed core that is being transformed (3:18). The phrase 'day by day' (*hēmera kai hēmera*) emphasizes the dailiness of renewal.
17. The phrase *kath' hyperbolēn eis hyperbolēn* ('beyond all measure to beyond all measure') piles superlatives to describe the incomparability of future glory. The word *baros* ('weight, heaviness') is deliberately contrasted with *elaphron* ('light') — affliction is light, but glory is heavy. This is a theological wordplay rooted in the Hebrew *kavod* ('glory'), which derives from the root *kaved* ('heavy'). The verb *katergazetai* ('is producing, is working out') indicates that present suffering actively generates future glory.
18. The paradox of 'looking at what is unseen' is intentional: Paul inverts normal epistemology. The verb *skopountōn* ('looking at, fixing attention on, aiming at') implies deliberate focus, not passive sight. The visible world (suffering, decay, death) is *proskaira* ('temporary, for a season'), while the invisible world (glory, resurrection, God's presence) is *aiōnia* ('eternal'). This is not Platonic idealism but eschatological realism — the unseen things are more real because they endure.

5

Summary: *Paul extends his meditation on mortality and resurrection. He compares the earthly body to a tent that is being dismantled, and the resurrection body to a building from God, eternal in the heavens. While in this body, believers groan — not to be stripped naked (disembodied) but to be clothed with the heavenly dwelling so that mortality is swallowed up by life. God has given the Spirit as a guarantee of this future. Therefore, believers walk by faith, not by sight, and whether at home in the body or away from the body, they aim to please the Lord. Paul then declares that all must appear before the judgment seat of Christ. The chapter reaches its theological climax with the proclamation that if anyone is in Christ, there is a new creation; the old has passed away, the new has come. God was in Christ reconciling the world to himself, not counting their trespasses against them, and has entrusted to the apostles the ministry and message of reconciliation. Paul closes with the stunning exchange formula: God made Christ, who knew no sin, to be sin for us, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of the most quoted verses in the Pauline corpus. 'If anyone is in Christ — new creation!' (v. 17) is a declaration so compressed that its syntax is virtually exclamatory; the Greek has no verb, just the predicate 'new creation' (*kainē ktisis*). The reconciliation passage (vv. 18-21) is the fullest statement of atonement theology in Paul's letters, culminating in the 'great exchange' of verse 21 — a verse that has shaped atonement doctrine across every major Christian tradition. The phrase 'God was in Christ reconciling the world to himself' (v. 19) can be parsed in multiple ways, each with different theological implications, and we render the Greek without forcing a single reading.*

Translation Friction: The tent-and-building metaphor (vv. 1-5) is debated: does the 'building from God' refer to the resurrection body, to an intermediate heavenly state, or to Christ's body (the church)? Paul's language about preferring to be 'away from the body and at home with the Lord' (v. 8) suggests some form of conscious intermediate state, though Paul does not systematize this. The 'judgment seat of Christ' (v. 10) refers to the bēma, the Roman magistrate's tribunal, applied here to Christ as eschatological judge. Verse 21 ('made him to be sin') is among the most theologically dense statements in Scripture; we render the Greek without interpretive paraphrase.

Connections: The tent metaphor connects to the tabernacle language of the Old Testament and to 2 Peter 1:13-14. The 'new creation' declaration echoes Isaiah 43:18-19 and 65:17. The reconciliation theology connects to Romans 5:10-11. The judgment seat of Christ connects to Romans 14:10. The 'great exchange' of verse 21 connects to Isaiah 53 (the suffering servant who bears iniquity) and to Galatians 3:13 (Christ became a curse for us).

¹For we know that if the earthly tent we live in is destroyed, we have a building from God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. ²For in this tent we groan, longing to put on our heavenly dwelling. ³If so be that being clothed we will not be discovered naked. ⁴For while we are still in this tent, we groan, being burdened — not that we want to be unclothed, but to be further clothed, so that what is mortal may be swallowed up by life. ⁵He who has prepared us for this very thing is God, who has given us the Spirit as a guarantee. ⁶So we are always of good courage. We know that while we are at home in the body we are away from the Lord, ⁷Since we walk through faith, not by sight. ⁸Yes, we are of good courage, and we would rather be away from the body and at home with the Lord. ⁹So whether we are at home or away, we make it our aim to please him. ¹⁰For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may receive what is due for what he has done in the body, whether good or evil. ¹¹Therefore, knowing the fear of the Lord, we persuade others. But what we are is known to God, and I hope it is also known to your conscience. ¹²We are not commending ourselves to you again but giving you an opportunity to boast about us, so that you may have an answer for those who boast about outward appearance and not about what is in the heart. ¹³For if we are out of our mind, it is for God; if we are in our right mind, it is for you. ¹⁴For the love of Christ compels us, because we have concluded this: that one has died for all, therefore all have died. ¹⁵And he died for all, so that those who live might no longer live for themselves but for him who died and was raised for them. ¹⁶From now on, therefore, we regard no one according to the flesh. Even though we once regarded Christ according to the flesh, we regard him thus no longer. ¹⁷Therefore, if anyone is in Christ — new creation! The old has passed away; look, the new has come! ¹⁸All this is from God, who reconciled us to himself through Christ and gave us the ministry of reconciliation — ¹⁹The point is this: God was in Christ, reconciling the world to himself. He did not count people's sins against them, and he entrusted to us the message of reconciliation. ²⁰Therefore, we are ambassadors for Christ, God making his appeal through us. We implore you on behalf of Christ: be reconciled to God. ²¹For our sake he made him who knew no sin to be sin, so that in him we might become the righteousness of God.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word skēnos ('tent') is used in Greek literature for the body as a temporary dwelling. The contrast is between the fragile tent (earthly body) and the permanent building (oikodomē, 'construction, edifice') from God. The adjective acheiropoiēton ('not made with hands') is used elsewhere for the resurrected Christ's body as the new temple (Mark 14:58) and for the heavenly reality behind the earthly tabernacle (Hebrews 9:11, 24).
2. The verb stenazomen ('we groan') is not complaint but the deep yearning of creation itself (Romans 8:22-23). The verb endysasthai ('to put on over, to be clothed upon') suggests putting on the heavenly body over the earthly one — not exchange but overlay, so that mortality is absorbed rather than merely discarded.
3. The fear of being found 'naked' (gymnoi) likely reflects the Jewish hope for bodily resurrection rather than Greek-style disembodied immortality. Paul does not want to be a bodiless soul but to be re-clothed with a resurrection body. Some manuscripts read ekdysamenoi ('having taken off') instead of endysamenoi ('having put on'), which would mean 'even though we have taken off the body, we will not be found naked' — the SBLGNT reads endysamenoi.
4. The phrase katapothē to thnēton hypo tēs zōēs ('mortality may be swallowed up by life') echoes Isaiah 25:8 ('he will swallow up death forever') and anticipates 1 Corinthians 15:54. Paul's hope is not escape from the body but the transformation of the mortal into the immortal — not subtraction but addition.

4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The verb *katergasamenos* ('having prepared, having fashioned, having worked out') indicates that God has been actively shaping believers for resurrection. The *arrabōn* ('guarantee, down payment') of the Spirit repeats from 1:22 — the Holy Spirit is the first installment of the resurrection life, already operative in the present.
6. The verbs *endēmounes* ('being at home, residing') and *ekdēmoumen* ('being away from home, abroad') create a spatial metaphor for the believer's present condition: physically present in the body but not yet in the Lord's immediate presence. This implies a distinction between the present experience of Christ through faith and the future experience of Christ face to face.
7. The word *eidos* ('sight, appearance, visible form') contrasts with *pistis* ('faith, trust'). The present tense *peripatoumen* ('we walk, we conduct our lives') indicates that faith-based living is the ongoing mode of Christian existence in the present age. This is not a deficiency but the divinely appointed mode of the 'already-not yet.'
8. Paul expresses a preference (*eudokoumen mallon*, 'we prefer rather') for departure from the body and presence with the Lord, similar to Philippians 1:23 ('to depart and be with Christ, which is far better'). This verse has been taken as evidence for a conscious intermediate state between death and resurrection, though Paul does not elaborate on its nature.
9. The verb *philotimoumetha* ('we aspire, we make it our ambition, we strive eagerly') carries connotations of honor-seeking — Paul redirects the competitive Corinthian culture toward the goal of pleasing Christ. The either-or construction (*eite... eite*) covers both present earthly life and the post-mortem state: the goal remains constant regardless of location.
10. The *bēma* ('judgment seat, tribunal') was the raised platform where a Roman magistrate sat to render verdicts. Paul applies this image to Christ as eschatological judge. The verb *phanerōthēnai* ('to be made manifest, to be revealed') suggests not merely appearance but exposure — all will be laid bare. The evaluation covers deeds done 'through the body' (*dia tou sōmatos*), emphasizing that embodied life has eternal consequences.
11. The 'fear of the Lord' (*ton phobon tou kyriou*) here is not generalized piety but specific awareness of standing before Christ's judgment seat. The verb *peithomen* ('we persuade') indicates that apostolic ministry is persuasion, not coercion. Paul's transparency before God (*pephanerōmetha*, 'we have been made manifest') and his hope for transparency before the Corinthians' consciences continue the openness theme of 2:17 and 4:2.
12. Paul distinguishes between self-commendation and providing ammunition for the Corinthians' defense of his ministry. The opponents boast 'in face' (*en prosōpō*) — that is, in externals like credentials, eloquence, and physical presence — rather than 'in heart' (*en kardia*). This contrast anticipates the 'fool's boast' of chapters 10-12.
13. The verb *exestēmen* ('we were beside ourselves, we were out of our mind') likely refers to Paul's ecstatic spiritual experiences (cf. 12:1-4), which his opponents may have criticized or questioned. Paul's response is that both his ecstatic moments (directed toward God) and his sober teaching (directed toward the Corinthians) serve legitimate purposes.
14. The verb *synechei* ('constrains, compels, controls, holds together') can mean either 'urges forward' or 'holds in check.' Both senses may be intended: Christ's love both drives Paul forward and prevents him from self-serving ministry. The logic of the atonement statement is participatory: because Christ died for all, all have died in him — his death is their death.
15. The purpose (*hina*) of Christ's death is not merely forgiveness but transformation of the direction of life: from self-oriented to Christ-oriented. The pairing of 'died and was raised' (*apothanōnti kai egerthenti*) is the irreducible core of the gospel — death without resurrection would be tragedy, not salvation.
16. The phrase *kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') does not mean 'in a physical body' but 'by worldly standards.' Paul is not denying the historical, incarnate Jesus but saying that the categories by which people (including Christ) are evaluated have been transformed by the cross and resurrection. The old criteria — social status, ethnicity, power — are obsolete in the new creation.
17. The Greek has no verb and no article: the exclamatory *kainē ktisis* ('new creation!') is a declaration, not a description. The phrase echoes Isaiah 43:18-19 ('I am doing a new thing') and Isaiah 65:17 ('new heavens and a new earth'). Paul applies cosmic-renewal language to the individual believer 'in Christ' — each conversion is an act of new creation. The perfect tense *parēlthen* ('has passed away') and *gegonen* ('has come into being') indicate that the new creation is an accomplished reality, not merely a future hope.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 43:18-19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 65:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *katallaxantos* ('having reconciled') is an aorist participle indicating a completed action: reconciliation is something God has already accomplished through Christ. The 'ministry of reconciliation' (*diakonia tēs katallagēs*) is both the content of Paul's message and the nature of his vocation. God is consistently the subject — he reconciles; humanity is the object that is reconciled.
19. The Greek word order allows multiple readings: 'God was in Christ, reconciling the world' or 'God was reconciling the world to himself in Christ.' Both are theologically valid; the first emphasizes the incarnation, the second emphasizes the instrumental role of Christ. The phrase *mē logizomenos* ('not counting, not reckoning') uses accounting language — God refuses to enter the world's sins on the ledger. The *logos tēs katallagēs* ('message of reconciliation') is both the gospel content and the apostolic commission.

- 20.** The word *presbeuomen* ('we serve as ambassadors') is a diplomatic term — an ambassador represents the sovereign who sent him and speaks with the sovereign's authority. The appeal 'be reconciled to God' (*katallagēte tō theō*) is in the passive voice: 'let yourselves be reconciled,' 'accept the reconciliation God offers.' God has done the reconciling; the human response is to receive it.
- 21.** This verse is among the most theologically consequential sentences Paul ever wrote. The 'great exchange' operates on a double identification: Christ is made sin (*hamartian epoiēsen* — not 'a sinner' but 'sin' itself), and believers become 'the righteousness of God' (*dikaiosynē theou*) in him. The phrase 'knew no sin' (*mē gnōnta hamartian*) affirms Christ's sinlessness. How Christ was 'made sin' has been interpreted as bearing the penalty of sin, becoming a sin offering (the Hebrew *chatta't* means both 'sin' and 'sin offering'), or being identified with sinful humanity. We render the Greek without choosing among these interpretations.

6

Summary: *Paul continues his appeal as God's ambassador, urging the Corinthians not to receive the grace of God in vain. He quotes Isaiah 49:8 about the 'acceptable time' and 'day of salvation,' declaring that now is the favorable time. He then catalogs the marks of his authentic ministry: endurance through afflictions, hardships, sleepless nights, and beatings, as well as the weapons of righteousness. In a series of paradoxes, Paul describes himself as unknown yet well known, dying yet alive, sorrowful yet always rejoicing, poor yet making many rich, having nothing yet possessing everything. He then appeals with open heart for the Corinthians to open their hearts in return. The chapter concludes with a call to separate from unbelievers, citing a catena of Old Testament texts about God's dwelling with his people and the call to holiness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The hardship catalog (vv. 4-10) is one of the most powerful passages in the Pauline corpus. It moves through three registers: circumstances of suffering (vv. 4-5), qualities of character (vv. 6-7), and paradoxes of existence (vv. 8-10). The final series of antitheses — 'as dying and look, we live; as sorrowful yet always rejoicing; as poor yet making many rich; as having nothing yet possessing everything' — is not rhetorical flourish but a theological claim: the cross-shaped life is the pattern of authentic ministry. The Old Testament catena in verses 16-18 weaves together texts from Leviticus, Isaiah, Ezekiel, and 2 Samuel to construct a theology of holy separation grounded in God's covenant presence.*

Translation Friction: *The separation passage (vv. 14-18) has been much debated regarding its context. Many scholars consider it an interpolation from a separate Pauline letter (the 'previous letter' of 1 Corinthians 5:9), since it interrupts the emotional appeal of 6:11-13 that resumes in 7:2. We render the text as it stands in the SBLGNT without rearrangement. The call to 'not be unequally yoked with unbelievers' has been applied to various situations (marriage, business partnerships, religious syncretism); the original context likely addresses participation in pagan temple worship.*

Connections: *The Isaiah 49:8 quotation connects to the Servant Songs and Paul's self-understanding as fulfilling an Isaianic vocation. The hardship catalog connects to the lists in 4:8-9 and 11:23-33. The separation passage echoes Leviticus 26:11-12 (God dwelling among his people), Isaiah 52:11 (departing from uncleanness), Ezekiel 37:27 (the new covenant temple), and 2 Samuel 7:14 (the father-son relationship).*

¹Working together with him, then, we also appeal to you not to receive the grace of God in vain. ²For he says, "In a favorable time I listened to you, and in a day of salvation I helped you." Look, now is the favorable time; look, now is the day of salvation! ³We put no obstacle in anyone's way, so that no fault may be found with our ministry, ⁴However, in all matters approving ourselves as the ministers of God, in much patience, in afflictions, in necessities, in distresses, ⁵Through beatings, imprisonments, riots, hard work, sleepless nights, and times of fasting; ⁶Indeed, by pureness, by knowledge, by longsuffering, by kindness, by the Holy Spirit, by love unfeigned, ⁷By the message of truth, by the authority of God, by the armour of righteousness on the right hand and on the departed, ⁸By honour and dishonour, by wickedness report and good report — as deceivers, and yet true. ⁹As unknown, and yet well known. As dying, and, take notice, we live. As chastened, and not killed; ¹⁰Indeed, as sorrowful, yet always rejoicing. As poor, yet making numerous rich. As having nothing, and yet possessing all things. ¹¹We have spoken freely to you, Corinthians; our heart is wide open. ¹²You are not restricted by us, but you are restricted in your own affections. ¹³In return — I speak as to children — widen your hearts also. ¹⁴Do not be

unequally yoked with unbelievers. For what partnership is there between righteousness and lawlessness? Or what fellowship has light with darkness? ¹⁵What harmony is there between Christ and Beliar? Or what portion does a believer share with an unbeliever? ¹⁶What agreement has the temple of God with idols? For we are the temple of the living God; as God said, "I will make my dwelling among them and walk among them, and I will be their God, and they shall be my people." ¹⁷"Therefore go out from their midst, and be separate from them," says the Lord, "and touch nothing unclean; then I will welcome you, ¹⁸Will I be a Father to you, and you will be my sons and daughters, says the Lord Almighty.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The participle synergountes ('working together') most naturally takes God as the implied partner: Paul is God's co-worker (cf. 1 Corinthians 3:9). To receive grace 'in vain' (eis kenon, 'into emptiness') means to receive it without allowing it to transform one's life. The appeal is urgent: grace demands response.
2. Paul quotes Isaiah 49:8, a passage addressed to the Servant of the LORD. By applying it to the present moment, Paul declares that the prophesied day of salvation has arrived in the gospel era. The emphatic nyn ('now') repeated twice transforms prophetic future into realized present.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 49:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The word proskopēn ('stumbling block, cause of offense, obstacle') indicates Paul's concern that personal conduct could undermine the credibility of the gospel message. The passive mōmēthē ('be blamed, be found fault with') indicates that it is the ministry itself, not merely Paul, that is at stake.
4. The hardship catalog begins with three general terms for suffering: thlipseis ('afflictions, pressures'), anangkais ('hardships, necessities, compulsions'), and stenochōriais ('distresses, tight places'). The word hypomonē ('endurance, patient steadfastness') heads the list as the governing virtue — not mere passive endurance but active perseverance under pressure.
5. The list moves from externally imposed sufferings (beatings, imprisonments, riots) to self-imposed disciplines (labors, sleepless nights, hunger). The word akatastasiais ('riots, disorders, tumults') refers to the social upheaval that followed Paul's preaching. The nēsteiais ('fastings, hunger') may refer to involuntary hunger from poverty rather than voluntary fasting.
6. The list shifts from circumstances of suffering to qualities of character. The inclusion of 'the Holy Spirit' (pneumatī hagiō) among personal virtues is striking — the Spirit is not merely a quality Paul exercises but the divine source empowering all the other qualities. The phrase agapē anypokritos ('genuine love, love without hypocrisy') echoes Romans 12:9.
7. The 'weapons of righteousness for the right hand and the left' (hoplōn tēs dikaiosynēs tōn dexiōn kai aristerōn) is a military image: the right hand held the offensive weapon (sword), the left held the defensive weapon (shield). Paul is armed for both attack and defense, but his weapons are righteousness, not worldly power.
8. The paradoxes begin. Each pair contrasts how the world perceives the apostle with the deeper reality. 'Impostors' (planoi, 'deceivers, wanderers, misleaders') is the charge leveled against Paul by his opponents; 'true' (alētheis) is the divine verdict. The series moves between external reputation and internal reality.
9. The exclamatory 'and look, we live!' (kai idou zōmen) breaks the rhythmic pattern to express astonishment at survival. The paradox of being 'unknown yet well known' describes Paul's marginal social status (unknown by worldly standards) contrasted with his recognition by God and the churches. 'Punished' (paideuomenoi, 'disciplined, chastened') carries the connotation of parental correction, not merely punitive suffering.
10. The climactic triad reaches its peak: 'having nothing yet possessing everything.' Paul's poverty is real (he worked with his hands, 1 Corinthians 4:12), but his spiritual wealth enriches others. The paradox echoes the Beatitudes and anticipates the description of Christ in 8:9 ('though he was rich, yet for your sake he became poor'). The word katechontes ('possessing, holding fast') is stronger than merely 'having' — it implies firm, permanent possession.
11. Paul addresses the Corinthians by name — a rare and emotionally charged gesture in his letters (cf. Galatians 3:1; Philippians 4:15). The 'wide open heart' (peplatyntai, 'has been enlarged, expanded') is a Hebrew idiom for generosity and emotional openness (cf. Psalm 119:32). Paul has held nothing back.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 119:32. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb stenochōreisthe ('you are restricted, confined, cramped') creates a spatial metaphor: Paul's heart is wide open (v. 11), but the Corinthians' hearts are cramped. The 'bowels' (splachnois, 'viscera, gut, deepest affections') was the ancient locus of emotion, roughly equivalent to the modern 'heart.' The problem is not Paul's lack of openness but the Corinthians' withholding of affection.
13. The word antimisthian ('return, recompense, fair exchange') frames the request as reciprocity: Paul has opened his heart; now he asks the Corinthians to open theirs. The parenthetical 'as to children' (hōs teknois) reveals the paternal affection underlying the appeal and explains Paul's boldness.

14. The verb heterozygountes ('being yoked with a different kind') alludes to Deuteronomy 22:10, which prohibits yoking an ox and a donkey together. The five rhetorical questions (vv. 14-16) each expect the answer 'none' and establish absolute incompatibility between opposing principles. The context most likely addresses participation in pagan temple practices rather than all social contact with non-believers (cf. 1 Corinthians 5:9-10).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 22:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Beliar (or Belial) is a name for Satan found in Jewish intertestamental literature (especially Jubilees and the Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs). The Hebrew beliya'al ('worthlessness') was used in the Old Testament for wickedness and eventually became a personal name for the chief adversary. The pairing of Christ and Beliar personalizes the cosmic conflict between light and darkness.
16. The declaration 'we are the temple of the living God' (naos theou esmen zōntos) parallels 1 Corinthians 3:16 and 6:19, where the church and the individual body are called God's temple. The quotation combines Leviticus 26:11-12 and Ezekiel 37:27, both covenant-presence texts. The verb emperipatēsō ('I will walk among them') is extraordinarily intimate — God does not merely dwell in the temple but walks about among his people.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 26:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 37:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Paul quotes Isaiah 52:11, originally addressed to the exiles leaving Babylon. The call to 'go out' and 'be separate' is reapplied to the Corinthian situation: the new exodus is separation from pagan worship and idolatrous practices. The promise 'I will welcome you' (eisdexomai hymas) adds a positive dimension — separation from uncleanness leads to reception by God.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 52:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This quotation adapts 2 Samuel 7:14 (the Davidic covenant promise, 'I will be his father, and he shall be my son') and universalizes it: the father-child relationship promised to David's heir is now extended to all believers, including 'daughters' (thygateras) — an expansion not in the original text. The title pantokrator ('Almighty, ruler of all') translates the Hebrew Shaddai or Tsevaot and appears primarily in the Septuagint and Revelation.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Samuel 7:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

7

Summary: Paul resumes the personal appeal interrupted by 6:14-7:1, urging the Corinthians to make room for him in their hearts. He assures them he speaks not to condemn but out of deep affection. Paul then recounts his arrival in Macedonia, where he found no rest until Titus arrived with the good news that the Corinthians had responded to his severe letter with sorrow, longing, and zeal. Paul distinguishes between godly sorrow that produces repentance leading to salvation and worldly sorrow that produces death. The Corinthians' response demonstrated genuine repentance through their earnestness, eagerness, indignation, fear, longing, zeal, and justice. Paul concludes by expressing his complete confidence in the Corinthians and his overflowing joy.

What Makes This Remarkable: Paul's distinction between godly sorrow and worldly sorrow (vv. 9-11) is one of the most pastorally significant passages in his letters. Godly sorrow (kata theon lypē) produces metanoia — a genuine change of mind and direction — that leads to salvation without regret. Worldly sorrow produces death: it is the remorse that spirals into despair rather than transformation. The seven marks of genuine repentance listed in verse 11 (earnestness, eagerness to clear themselves, indignation, fear, longing, zeal, punishment of wrong) form a comprehensive portrait of what true repentance looks like in a community. The resolution of the Titus narrative (begun in 2:13) in verses 5-7 reveals the emotional vulnerability of the apostle in a way that is unmatched in ancient literature.

Translation Friction: The relationship between 7:2 ('Make room for us in your hearts') and 6:13 ('Widen your hearts also') suggests that 6:14-7:1 may interrupt an originally continuous appeal. We render the text as it stands without rearrangement. The identity of the offender (v. 12) remains debated, as in chapter 2.

Connections: The Titus narrative resumes from 2:13 and completes the suspense created there. The godly sorrow passage connects to Jesus's teaching on repentance and Paul's theology of transformation. Paul's comfort in the midst of affliction echoes the comfort theology of 1:3-7. The expression of confidence anticipates the collection appeal in chapters 8-9.

¹Since we have these promises, beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from every defilement of body and spirit, bringing holiness to completion in the fear of God. ²Make room for us in your hearts. We have wronged no one, we have ruined no one, we have taken advantage of no one. ³I do not say this to condemn you, for I said before that you are in our hearts, to die together and to live together. ⁴I have great confidence in you; I have great pride in you. I am filled with comfort; I am overflowing with joy in all our affliction. ⁵For even when we came into Macedonia, our bodies had no rest, but we were afflicted at every turn — conflicts without, fears within. ⁶But God, who comforts the downcast, comforted us by the arrival of Titus, ⁷Not by his coming only, but by the encouragement by which he was comforted in you, when he informed us your earnest desire, your mourning, your passionate concern toward me. So that I rejoiced the more. ⁸For even if I grieved you with my letter, I do not regret it — though I did regret it, for I see that that letter grieved you, though only for a while. ⁹As it is, I rejoice, not because you were grieved, but because your grief led to repentance. For you felt a godly grief, so that you suffered no loss through us. ¹⁰For godly grief produces a repentance that leads to salvation without regret, but worldly grief produces death. ¹¹For see what earnestness this godly grief has produced in you — what eagerness to clear yourselves, what indignation, what fear, what longing, what zeal, what punishment of wrong! At every point you have proved yourselves innocent in this matter. ¹²So although I wrote to you, it was not for the sake of the one who did the wrong, nor for the sake of the one who suffered the wrong, but in order that your earnestness for us might be revealed to you in the sight of God. ¹³Therefore we are comforted. And besides our own comfort, we rejoiced still more at the joy of Titus, because his spirit has been refreshed by all of you. ¹⁴For if I made any boast to him about you, I was not put to shame. But just as everything we said to you was true, so also our boasting before Titus has proved to be true. ¹⁵And his affection for you is even greater, as he remembers the obedience of you all, how you received him with fear and trembling. ¹⁶I rejoice, because I have complete confidence in you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This verse concludes the separation appeal of 6:14-18. The promises (epangelias) are those quoted in 6:16-18 — God's dwelling, fatherhood, and welcome. Holiness is not merely negative (cleansing from defilement) but positive (epitelountes, 'completing, perfecting'). The phrase 'fear of God' (phobō theou) provides the motivational context for holy living.
2. The imperative chōrēsate ('make room, receive, open up') resumes the appeal of 6:11-13. The triple denial — 'wronged no one, ruined no one, taken advantage of no one' — responds to accusations apparently leveled against Paul, perhaps related to the collection for Jerusalem or his exercise of authority.
3. The infinitives synapothanein ('to die together') and syzēn ('to live together') express the totality of Paul's bond with the Corinthians — a bond that encompasses both death and life. This echoes the death-and-life theme that pervades the letter (4:10-12; 5:14-15).
4. Four declarations of abundance: great confidence, great pride, filled with comfort, overflowing with joy. The verb hyperperisseuomai ('I overflow beyond measure') is an intensified form found only here and in Romans 5:20 in the New Testament. The paradox of overflowing joy 'in all our affliction' (epi pasē tē thlipsei) captures the letter's central paradox.
5. This resumes the narrative from 2:13, where Paul left Troas for Macedonia in search of Titus. The phrase 'our flesh had no rest' (oudēman eschēken anesin hē sarx hēmōn) echoes 2:13 ('my spirit had no rest'). The pair 'conflicts without, fears within' (exōthen machai, esōthen phoboi) reveals both external opposition and internal anxiety.
6. The title 'God who comforts the downcast' (ho parakalōn tous tapeinous) echoes the comfort theology of 1:3-4 and draws on Isaiah 49:13. The word tapeinous ('lowly, humble, downcast') describes Paul's emotional state without shame — vulnerability before God is the posture that receives comfort.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 49:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The comfort cascades: God comforts Paul through Titus, who was comforted by the Corinthians. Three responses characterize the Corinthians: longing (epithēsis — deep desire to see Paul), mourning (odymos — grief over the breach), and zeal (zēlos — passionate commitment). This triad demonstrates genuine repentance through relational action.

8. Paul's candor is remarkable: he admits to having initially regretted sending the severe letter (metemelomin, 'I was regretting'), but the Corinthians' positive response has resolved his regret. The temporal qualifier 'for a while' (pros hōran, 'for an hour') indicates that the grief was temporary, not permanent.
9. Paul carefully distinguishes: his joy is not sadistic pleasure in their grief but joy that the grief accomplished its purpose — metanoia ('repentance, change of mind'). The phrase kata theon ('according to God, in a godly manner') qualifies the grief as divinely directed, not merely psychologically painful.
10. This verse presents one of the most important pastoral distinctions in the New Testament. Godly grief (kata theon lypē) is grief aligned with God's purposes that produces genuine transformation. Worldly grief (tou kosmou lypē) is self-focused remorse that leads to despair and death — Judas being the paradigmatic example (Matthew 27:3-5). The adjective ametamelēton ('without regret, not to be regretted') can modify either 'repentance' or 'salvation'; grammatically it most naturally modifies 'repentance.'
11. Seven responses demonstrate genuine repentance: (1) spoudēn ('earnestness, diligence'), (2) apologian ('defense, eagerness to clear themselves'), (3) aganaktēsīn ('indignation' at the wrong), (4) phobon ('fear' of God's judgment or Paul's authority), (5) epipothēsīn ('longing' for Paul), (6) zēlon ('zeal' for righteousness), (7) ekdikēsīn ('punishment, vindication'). The repeated alla ('but also, indeed') creates an escalating rhetorical effect.
12. Paul reveals that the severe letter had a deeper purpose than dealing with the specific offense: it was a test of the Corinthians' loyalty and love. The phrase 'in the sight of God' (enōpion tou theou) raises the relational dynamic to a theological level — the community's response to Paul is ultimately a response to God.
13. The joy multiplies through relational connection: the Corinthians' response comforted Paul, and Titus's joy at their response added even more to Paul's comfort. The verb anapepautai ('has been refreshed, has been given rest') echoes 1 Corinthians 16:18 and indicates that Titus found genuine rest of spirit among the Corinthians.
14. Paul had staked his credibility with Titus by boasting about the Corinthians' character. The Corinthians' positive response vindicated Paul's confidence and proved that his boast was not empty but truthful (alētheia egenēthē, 'proved to be truth').
15. The phrase 'fear and trembling' (meta phobou kai tromou) echoes Philippians 2:12 and indicates reverent seriousness in their reception of Titus as Paul's representative. Titus's deep affection (splanchna, 'gut-level compassion') for the Corinthians grew through the experience of their obedience.
16. The chapter ends on a note of unqualified confidence (tharrō, 'I am confident, I take courage') — remarkable given the tensions evident throughout the letter. This positive conclusion prepares the ground for the collection appeal in chapters 8-9, where Paul will leverage this restored relationship for a concrete act of generosity.

8

Summary: *Paul turns to the collection for the Jerusalem saints, using the Macedonian churches as a model of extraordinary generosity. Despite their severe affliction and extreme poverty, the Macedonians gave beyond their means, begging earnestly for the privilege of participating. Paul urges the Corinthians to excel in this grace as well, reminding them of Jesus Christ's supreme example: though he was rich, for their sake he became poor, so that by his poverty they might become rich. Paul counsels that giving should be proportional — from what one has, not what one does not have — and appeals to the principle of equality, quoting the manna story from Exodus. He commends Titus and two unnamed brothers who will administer the collection with full accountability and transparency.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 9 is one of the most theologically loaded single verses in the Pauline corpus: 'For you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that though he was rich, yet for your sake he became poor, so that you by his poverty might become rich.' This is not merely an appeal to follow Christ's example but a statement about the incarnation itself — Christ's pre-existent divine wealth, his voluntary impoverishment in becoming human, and the spiritual enrichment that results. Paul's fundraising theology is remarkable: he never simply asks for money but always grounds the request in Christology, ecclesiology, and eschatology. The principle of 'equality' (isotēs, v. 14) is not communism but reciprocal sharing among communities — those with surplus supply those in need, and the roles may reverse.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'brother famous among all the churches for his preaching of the gospel' (v. 18) is unknown — Luke, Barnabas, and others have been suggested, but Paul's deliberate anonymity prevents identification. The relationship between chapters 8-9 is debated: some scholars see chapter 9 as a separate letter, others as a continuation. We render the text as continuous.*

Connections: The collection for Jerusalem connects to 1 Corinthians 16:1-4, Romans 15:25-28, and Acts 24:17. The Christ-hymn in verse 9 parallels Philippians 2:6-8 (the self-emptying of Christ). The manna quotation (v. 15) connects to Exodus 16:18. The theme of abundance from poverty echoes 6:10 ('poor yet making many rich').

¹We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given among the churches of Macedonia, ²In the midst of a severe trial, their overflowing joy and extreme poverty welled up into rich generosity. ³For they gave according to their means, as I can testify, and beyond their means, of their own accord, ⁴They urgently pleaded with us for the privilege of sharing in this service to God's people. ⁵This they did, not as we hoped, but foremost offered their own selves to the Lord, and to us, by the will of God. ⁶So we urged Titus that, as he had already made a beginning, he should also complete among you this act of grace. ⁷But as you excel in everything — in faith, in speech, in knowledge, in all earnestness, and in our love for you — see that you excel in this act of grace also. ⁸I say this not as a command, but through the earnestness of others I am testing the genuineness of your love. ⁹That you through his poverty might be rich, for you know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet because your sakes he became poor. ¹⁰And in this matter I give my judgment: this benefits you, who a year ago started not only to do this work but also to desire it. ¹¹Now finish doing it as well, so that your readiness in desiring it may be matched by your completing it out of what you have. ¹²For if the readiness is there, it is acceptable according to what a person has, not according to what he does not have. ¹³For I do not mean that others should be eased and you burdened, but that as a matter of fairness ¹⁴However, by an equality, that now at this time your abundance may be a supply for their want, that their abundance as well may be a supply since your want — that there may be equality:. ¹⁵As it is written, "Whoever gathered much had nothing left over, and whoever gathered little had no lack." ¹⁶But thanks be to God, who put into the heart of Titus the same earnest care for you. ¹⁷For he not only accepted our appeal but, being very earnest, he is going to you of his own accord. ¹⁸With him we are sending the brother who is famous among all the churches for his preaching of the gospel. ¹⁹And not only that, but he has been appointed by the churches to travel with us as we carry out this act of grace that is being administered by us for the glory of the Lord himself and to show our good will. ²⁰We take this course so that no one should blame us about this generous gift that is being administered by us, ²¹Providing for honest matters, not only in the sight of the Lord, but as well in the sight of men. ²²And with them we are sending our brother whom we have often tested and found earnest in many matters, but who is now more earnest than ever because of his great confidence in you. ²³As for Titus, he is my partner and fellow worker for your benefit. As for our brothers, they are messengers of the churches, a glory to Christ. ²⁴So give proof of your love and of our boasting about you to these men, before all the churches.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul frames the Macedonians' generosity as 'the grace of God' (tēn charin tou theou) — their giving is not merely a human achievement but a divine gift. The Macedonian churches include Philippi, Thessalonica, and Berea.
2. The paradox is striking: severe affliction + extreme poverty = overflowing generosity. The phrase kata bathous ptōcheia ('rock-bottom poverty') indicates not relative but absolute deprivation. Yet this poverty, combined with 'abundance of joy' (perisseia tēs charas), produced rich generosity (haplotētos, 'generosity, simplicity, single-mindedness').
3. Paul testifies (martyrō) that the Macedonians gave not only up to their capacity (kata dynamin) but beyond it (para dynamin). The key word is authairetoi ('of their own accord, voluntarily') — this was not coerced giving but spontaneous generosity.
4. The Macedonians actually begged to be allowed to give — an inversion of the expected dynamic. The word koinōnian ('partnership, participation, fellowship') indicates that the collection was not mere charity but an act of communion between churches. Paul uses charin ('grace, favor') again for the collection, maintaining its theological dignity.
5. The phrase 'they gave themselves first to the Lord' (heautous edōkan prōton tō kyriō) reveals the theological priority: self-surrender to Christ preceded and motivated their financial generosity. Money follows the person; giving flows from self-giving.
6. Titus had apparently begun organizing the Corinthian collection during a previous visit. Paul now urges him to complete (epitelessē) what was started. Again, the collection is called charin ('grace, act of grace'), not merely a financial transaction.
7. Paul lists five areas where the Corinthians already excel (partly echoing the gifts listed in 1 Corinthians 1:5), then adds generosity as a sixth. The SBLGNT reads 'our love for you' (tē ex hēmōn en hymin agapē) rather than 'your love for us.' By framing generosity as excelling (perisseuēte) in grace, Paul makes it a spiritual discipline, not merely a financial obligation.

8. Paul explicitly refuses to command (ou kat' epitagēn) generosity — it must be voluntary or it is not grace. The Macedonians' example serves as the test: will the Corinthians' love prove equally genuine (gnēsion, 'authentic, legitimate, true-born')?
9. This verse is a compressed incarnation-and-atonement Christology. Christ's 'riches' (plousios ōn) refer to his pre-existent divine glory; his 'poverty' (eptōcheusen, 'became a beggar') refers to the incarnation and its culmination in the cross. The 'riches' believers receive are the spiritual blessings of salvation. The entire verse functions as the ultimate paradigm for generosity: if Christ gave up infinite wealth for others' sake, how can his followers withhold their finite resources?
10. Paul distinguishes between gnōmēn ('judgment, opinion, counsel') and epitagēn ('command') from verse 8. He notes that the Corinthians began both the willing (to thelein) and the doing (to poiēsai) a year ago. The fact that willingness preceded action reflects the priority of heart disposition in Paul's theology of giving.
11. The principle is practical: eagerness must be followed through with action. The phrase ek tou echein ('out of what you have') establishes proportionality — Paul asks for completion based on actual means, not impossible standards.
12. This verse establishes a crucial principle of Christian giving: God evaluates the gift by the giver's willingness and means, not by the absolute amount. The word euprosdektos ('acceptable, welcome') indicates divine acceptance. The principle echoes the widow's mite (Mark 12:41-44) and protects the poor from guilt.
13. Paul's principle is not that one group should be impoverished to enrich another. The word isotētos ('equality, fairness, equity') introduces a reciprocal principle that he develops in verse 14.
14. The principle of reciprocity: the Corinthians' material surplus meets Jerusalem's material deficit now; Jerusalem's spiritual riches (cf. Romans 15:27) or future material surplus may meet a Corinthian need later. The isotēs ('fairness, equality') is not mathematical equality but mutual provision within the body of Christ.
15. Paul quotes Exodus 16:18, describing the miraculous equalization of the manna: regardless of how much each Israelite gathered, everyone ended up with exactly what they needed. Paul applies this wilderness provision narrative to the church's economic life — God's people are meant to share so that no one has too much and no one too little.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 16:18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Paul attributes Titus's concern for the Corinthians to divine action — God 'put' (donti, 'having given') this earnestness into Titus's heart. Even the delegate's motivation is a work of grace.
17. Titus's willingness exceeds the mere acceptance of Paul's request — he goes authairetos ('of his own accord, voluntarily'), the same word used of the Macedonians in verse 3. Genuine generosity is always voluntary.
18. This unnamed brother has been traditionally identified with Luke, Barnabas, Mark, or others — but Paul's deliberate anonymity prevents certainty. The phrase 'whose praise is in the gospel' (hou ho epainos en tō euangeliō) means he is praised for his gospel work throughout all the churches.
19. The verb cheirotoneō (appointed, elected, chosen by raising hands) indicates that this brother was selected by the churches through a formal process, not merely by Paul's personal preference. Multiple oversight of the collection funds demonstrates accountability — Paul is scrupulous about financial transparency.
20. The word hadrotēti ('generous gift, lavish amount, abundance') indicates the collection was substantial. Paul's caution about blame (mōmēsētai) reflects practical wisdom: handling large sums of money invites suspicion, so Paul ensures multiple trusted delegates are involved.
21. Paul echoes Proverbs 3:4 (LXX), establishing a dual standard of integrity: accountability before God and before people. Financial transparency in ministry is not optional but essential. The verb pronoumen ('we take thought in advance, we aim at, we provide for') indicates deliberate, proactive measures.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 3:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. A second unnamed brother accompanies Titus — also proven through testing (edokimasamen, 'we tested and approved'). The three-person delegation provides full accountability for what was apparently a significant sum.
23. Titus is called koinōnos ('partner') and synergos ('fellow worker'). The brothers are called apostoloi ekklesiōn ('messengers of the churches, apostles of the churches') — the word apostolos here means 'delegate, envoy' rather than carrying the technical sense of the Twelve. The title doxa Christou ('glory of Christ') is remarkable: these brothers are a visible display of Christ's glory.
24. Paul closes the chapter by placing the Corinthians' generosity on a public stage: their response will be visible to all the churches (eis prosōpon tōn ekklesiōn, 'in the face of the churches'). The collection is not a private transaction but a public demonstration of love that validates Paul's boasting about the Corinthians.

9

Summary: *Paul continues his appeal regarding the collection, explaining that he is sending the brothers ahead to Corinth to ensure the gift is ready before Paul arrives with the Macedonians, so that neither Paul nor the Corinthians will be embarrassed. He then develops a theology of generous giving through the agricultural metaphor of sowing and reaping: whoever sows sparingly will reap sparingly, and whoever sows bountifully will reap bountifully. Each person should give as they have decided in their heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver. God is able to make all grace abound so that believers always have enough of everything and can abound in every good work. The chapter climaxes with doxology: the collection will produce thanksgiving to God, demonstrate the Corinthians' obedience to the gospel, and bind the churches together in mutual prayer and love. Paul closes with the exclamation, 'Thanks be to God for his indescribable gift!'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'God loves a cheerful giver' (v. 7) is one of the most widely quoted verses in the Bible, drawn from Proverbs 22:8 (LXX). The Greek hilaros ('cheerful, glad, joyful') is the root of the English 'hilarious' — the giver God delights in is not merely willing but genuinely joyful. Paul's theology of giving is remarkably non-coercive: each person gives 'as they have decided in their heart' (v. 7), and God's grace is the source of both the ability and the willingness to give. The closing exclamation about God's 'indescribable gift' (v. 15) brings the entire collection discourse to a Christological climax — the ultimate gift behind all giving is Christ himself.*

Translation Friction: *Some scholars regard chapter 9 as a separate letter from chapter 8, noting the apparent fresh beginning in 9:1 ('Now it is superfluous for me to write to you'). We render the text as continuous. The phrase 'indescribable gift' (v. 15) is grammatically ambiguous — it could refer to Christ, to the grace of giving, or to the whole economy of salvation. We render the Greek without specifying.*

Connections: *The sowing-reaping imagery connects to Proverbs 11:24-25, Hosea 10:12, and Galatians 6:7-9. The 'cheerful giver' alludes to Proverbs 22:8 (LXX). The abundant provision of God connects to Psalm 112:9 (quoted in v. 9). The collection's role in producing thanksgiving connects to 1:11 and 4:15. The 'indescribable gift' forms an inclusio with 8:9 (the grace of Christ).*

¹Now it is superfluous for me to write to you about the ministry for the saints, ²I know how eager you are to help, and I have been boasting about it to the Macedonians. I told them that Achaia was ready a year ago, and your enthusiasm has stirred most of them to action. ³But I am sending the brothers so that our boasting about you may not prove empty in this matter, so that you may be ready, as I said you would be. ⁴Otherwise, if some Macedonians come with me and find you unprepared, we would be humiliated — to say nothing of you — in this undertaking. ⁵So I thought it necessary to urge the brothers to go on ahead to you and arrange in advance the generous gift you have promised, so that it may be ready as a willing gift, not as an extortion. ⁶The point is this: whoever sows sparingly will also reap sparingly, and whoever sows bountifully will also reap bountifully. ⁷Each one must give as he has decided in his heart, not reluctantly or under compulsion, for God loves a cheerful giver. ⁸And God is able to make all grace abound to you, so that having all sufficiency in all things at all times, you may abound in every good work. ⁹As it is written, "He has distributed freely, he has given to the poor; his righteousness endures forever." ¹⁰He who supplies seed to the sower and bread for food will supply and multiply your seed for sowing and increase the harvest of your righteousness. ¹¹You will be enriched in every way to be generous in every way, which through us will produce thanksgiving to God. ¹²For the ministry of this service is not only supplying the needs of the saints but is also overflowing in many thanksgivings to God. ¹³By their approval of this service, they will glorify God because of your submission that comes from your confession of the gospel of Christ, and the generosity of your sharing with them and with all, ¹⁴By their petition for you, which long following you for the exceeding grace of God in you. ¹⁵Thanks be to God for his indescribable gift!

1. The phrase *perisson moi estin* ('it is superfluous, unnecessary, excessive for me') is a rhetorical device (*praeteritio*) — by saying he does not need to write about it, Paul proceeds to write about it at length. The word *diakonia* ('ministry, service') elevates the collection from a mere financial transfer to an act of Christian service.
2. Paul reveals that he used the Corinthians' eagerness to motivate the Macedonians (just as he now uses the Macedonians' generosity to motivate the Corinthians). The verb *ērethisen* ('stirred up, provoked, stimulated') indicates healthy mutual encouragement between churches.
3. Paul is candid about his concern: if the Corinthians are not ready when the Macedonians arrive, his boasting will be exposed as hollow (*kenōthē*, 'be emptied, be made vain'). The advance delegation of Titus and the brothers (8:16-24) serves a practical purpose: to ensure the collection is complete before Paul arrives.
4. The parenthetical 'to say nothing of you' (*hina mē legō hymeis*) is wryly diplomatic — Paul acknowledges that the Corinthians' embarrassment would be even greater than his own. The word *hypostasei* ('undertaking, confidence, substance') can mean 'confident boasting' or 'project/enterprise.'
5. Paul uses *eulogia* ('blessing, generous gift, bounty') for the collection — a word that frames giving as blessing rather than obligation. The contrast between *eulogia* ('blessing, gift') and *pleonexia* ('greed, covetousness, extortion') reveals Paul's concern that the collection not appear coerced. The giving must be a blessing from the heart, not an extraction.
6. The agricultural metaphor of sowing and reaping was proverbial in the ancient world (cf. Proverbs 11:24; Galatians 6:7). The phrase *ep' eulogiais* ('upon blessings, bountifully') literally means 'sowing on the basis of blessings' — generosity produces abundance. The symmetry of the sentence makes the principle self-evident.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 11:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The verb *proērētai* ('has decided beforehand, has chosen freely') emphasizes deliberate, premeditated generosity. Two negatives frame the motive: *not ek lypēs* ('from grief, reluctantly') and *not ex anangkēs* ('from compulsion, under necessity'). The quotation 'God loves a cheerful giver' draws from Proverbs 22:8 (LXX). The word *hilaros* ('cheerful, glad, joyful') is the root of 'hilarious' — God delights in giving that flows from joy, not obligation.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 22:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The fourfold use of 'all/every' (*pasan... panti... pantote... pasan... pan*) emphasizes the comprehensiveness of God's provision. The word *autarkeia* ('sufficiency, self-sufficiency, contentment') was a Stoic virtue — having enough and needing no more. Paul transforms it: believers have *autarkeia* not through detachment but through God's abundant grace, which frees them for generosity.
9. Paul quotes Psalm 112:9 (LXX 111:9), which describes the righteous person's generosity. The verb *eskorpiō* ('scattered, distributed freely') suggests lavish, widespread giving. The 'righteousness' (*dikaïosynē*) that 'endures forever' is expressed through generous action — in the Psalm's logic, generosity is righteousness made visible.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 112:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Paul draws on Isaiah 55:10 and Hosea 10:12, combining the image of God as the one who supplies seed with the promise that he will multiply the harvest. The 'harvest of your righteousness' (*ta genēmata tēs dikaïosynēs hymōn*) connects generosity to righteousness as in the Psalm 112 quotation — giving produces a crop of righteous fruit.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 55:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 10:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 112 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The theological circuit completes: God enriches believers so they can be generous, and their generosity produces thanksgiving to God. The word *haplotēta* ('generosity, simplicity, single-mindedness') indicates that enrichment is not for hoarding but for giving. The whole economy runs on grace and returns to God as praise.
12. Paul uses two words for the collection: *diakonia* ('ministry, service') and *leitourgia* ('liturgical service, public duty'). The latter is a cultic term — the collection is an act of worship, not merely philanthropy. It has a double effect: it meets physical needs and produces spiritual thanksgiving.
13. The collection proves the sincerity of the Corinthians' confession (*homologias*). Paul links financial generosity to gospel fidelity: sharing material resources with fellow believers demonstrates that one's confession of Christ is not mere words but lived reality. The phrase *eis autous kai eis pantas* ('toward them and toward all') extends the scope of generosity beyond Jerusalem.
14. The collection creates mutual affection: the Jerusalem saints will pray for the Corinthians and long for them. The relationship is no longer merely donor-to-recipient but sibling-to-sibling, bound together by the 'surpassing grace of God' (*hyperballousan charin tou theou*) that is visible in the Corinthians' generosity.
15. The chapter and the entire collection discourse close with this doxological exclamation. The word *anekdiēgētō* ('indescribable, inexpressible, beyond words') appears only here in the New Testament. The 'gift' (*dōrea*) most likely refers to Christ himself — the gift behind all gifts, the grace that enables all generosity. Paul began the collection appeal with the grace of Christ (8:9) and ends with it here, framing the entire discussion as a response to the supreme gift of God in the gospel.

10

Summary: *The tone of the letter shifts sharply as Paul addresses his opponents directly. He appeals 'by the meekness and gentleness of Christ' but warns that he is prepared to wage spiritual warfare against every pretension that sets itself up against the knowledge of God. Paul's weapons are not worldly but divinely powerful for demolishing strongholds. He responds to the accusation that his letters are weighty but his physical presence is unimpressive and his speech contemptible. Paul warns that when he comes in person, his actions will match his letters. He refuses to compare himself with those who commend themselves by their own standards, instead claiming only the territory God has assigned him — which includes Corinth. He closes with the principle that the one who boasts should boast in the Lord, for it is not self-commendation but the Lord's commendation that counts.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The military imagery of verses 3-6 is among the most vivid in Paul's letters. The 'strongholds' (ochyrōmata) he demolishes are not physical fortifications but patterns of thought — arguments, speculations, and 'every lofty opinion raised against the knowledge of God.' This is intellectual and spiritual warfare, not physical combat, and Paul's weapons are truth and the power of God. The accusation quoted in verse 10 ('his letters are weighty and strong, but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech of no account') provides a rare glimpse of how Paul's opponents perceived him — and perhaps of Paul's actual physical appearance and rhetorical style.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship of chapters 10-13 to chapters 1-9 is one of the most debated questions in Pauline scholarship. The sharp change in tone has led many scholars to identify chapters 10-13 as part of the 'severe letter' or a separate letter fragment. We render the text as it stands in the SBLGNT. The identity of Paul's opponents (the 'super-apostles' of 11:5) remains debated — they appear to be Jewish-Christian missionaries who valued eloquence, visions, and physical impressiveness.*

Connections: *The spiritual warfare imagery anticipates Ephesians 6:10-17. The 'meekness and gentleness of Christ' echoes Matthew 11:29. The principle of boasting in the Lord quotes Jeremiah 9:24 (cf. 1 Corinthians 1:31). The territorial language ('the territory God has assigned to us') connects to Paul's apostolic commission in Galatians 2:7-9.*

¹I, Paul, myself appeal to you by the meekness and gentleness of Christ — I who am humble when face to face with you, but bold toward you when I am away! — ²I ask that when I am present I may not have to show boldness with such confidence as I intend to show against some who regard us as walking according to the flesh. ³For though we walk in the flesh, we do not wage war according to the flesh. ⁴For the weapons of our warfare are not of the flesh but have divine power to destroy strongholds. ⁵We destroy arguments and every lofty opinion raised against the knowledge of God, and take every thought captive to obey Christ, ⁶We are ready to punish every act of disobedience once your own obedience is complete. ⁷Look at what is before your eyes. If anyone is confident that he belongs to Christ, let him remind himself that just as he belongs to Christ, so also do we. ⁸For even if I boast a little too much of our authority, which the Lord gave for building you up and not for destroying you, I will not be ashamed. ⁹I do not want to seem as if I am trying to frighten you with my letters. ¹⁰For they say, "His letters are weighty and strong, but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech of no account." ¹¹Let such a person understand that what we say by letter when absent, we will do when present. ¹²Not that we dare to classify or compare ourselves with some of those who are commending themselves. But when they measure themselves by one another and compare themselves with one another, they are without understanding. ¹³But we will not boast beyond limits, but will boast only with regard to the area of influence God assigned to us, to reach even to you. ¹⁴For we are not overextending ourselves, as though we did not reach you. We were the first to come all the way to you with the gospel of Christ. ¹⁵We do not boast beyond limit in the labors of others. But our hope is that as your faith increases, our area of influence among you may be greatly enlarged, ¹⁶To preach the good news in the regions beyond you, and not to boast in another man's line of matters fashioned ready to our possession. ¹⁷"Let the one who boasts, boast in the Lord." ¹⁸For it is not the one who commends himself who is approved, but the one whom the Lord commends.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The emphatic *autos de egō Paulos* ('I myself, Paul') signals a major shift in tone. Paul quotes his opponents' criticism ironically: they say he is *tapeinos* ('humble, lowly, servile') in person but bold only from a distance. By appealing through 'the meekness and gentleness of Christ' (*prautētōs kai epieikeias tou Christou*), Paul transforms the accusation: his humility in person mirrors Christ's own self-lowering.
2. Paul issues a veiled warning: he prefers not to exercise the bold authority in person that he is willing to use. The charge that Paul walks 'according to the flesh' (*kata sarka*) implies that his opponents see his ministry as driven by human calculation rather than spiritual power.
3. Paul makes a crucial distinction: 'in the flesh' (*en sarki*, the sphere of ordinary human existence) versus 'according to the flesh' (*kata sarka*, by merely human means and standards). Living as a human does not mean fighting as one. The military metaphor *strateuometha* ('we wage war, we serve as soldiers') introduces the extended warfare imagery.
4. The phrase *dynata tō theō* ('powerful for God, divinely powerful, empowered by God') identifies the source of the weapons' effectiveness. The *ochyrōmata* ('strongholds, fortified places') are not physical fortresses but intellectual and spiritual constructions that oppose God's truth. The military language is metaphorical throughout.
5. The military imagery continues: *logismous* ('arguments, reasonings, calculations') and *hypsōma* ('lofty thing, high rampart, pretension') are demolished, and every *noēma* ('thought, scheme, mind') is taken prisoner (*aichmalōtizōntes*, 'taking captive as a prisoner of war'). The warfare is explicitly intellectual and spiritual — the enemy is wrong thinking about God, and the goal is the obedience (*hypakoē*) of every thought to Christ.
6. Paul holds back disciplinary action (*ekdikēsai*, 'to punish, to avenge, to execute justice') until the Corinthians' obedience (*hypakoē*) is complete. This shows pastoral restraint: he gives the community time to self-correct before intervening with apostolic authority.
7. The opening can be read as an imperative ('Look at what is in front of you!') or an indicative ('You look only at the surface'). Either way, Paul challenges the Corinthians' superficial evaluation. His opponents claim special connection to Christ; Paul asserts that his claim is equally valid.
8. Paul defines the purpose of apostolic authority: *eis oikodomēn* ('for building up, for edification') and *ouk eis kathairesin* ('not for tearing down, not for destruction'). The verb *kathairesin* uses the same root as the 'destruction of strongholds' in verse 4 — Paul destroys arguments, not people.
9. Paul acknowledges the perception problem: his forceful letters could be read as mere intimidation (*ekphobein*, 'to terrify, to frighten thoroughly'). He wants his words to be taken seriously but not as bullying.
10. Paul quotes his opponents directly (*phēsin*, 'he/she/one says'). The criticism reveals that Paul's letters were powerful (*bareiai kai ischyrai*, 'heavy and strong'), but his in-person ministry was perceived as physically unimpressive (*asthenēs*, 'weak') and rhetorically poor (*exouthenēmenos*, 'despised, of no account'). This provides a rare window into how Paul appeared to his contemporaries.
11. Paul warns that his in-person actions will match his written words. The dichotomy his opponents exploit (strong in writing, weak in person) will collapse when he arrives. The warning is direct and unqualified.
12. Paul's irony is sharp: his opponents form a closed system of mutual admiration, measuring themselves only against each other. The repeated reflexive pronouns (*heautous... heautois... heautous*) emphasize the circularity. Those who commend themselves (*synistanontōn*) have no external standard — they are 'without understanding' (*ou syniasin*).
13. Paul introduces the concept of a divinely assigned *kanōn* ('rule, measuring rod, standard, territory'). His boasting is not unlimited but bounded by the territory God has apportioned. Corinth falls within that territory — Paul reached them first with the gospel, and his apostolic claim over them is legitimate.
14. The verb *efthasamen* ('we arrived first, we reached') implies chronological priority: Paul was the first to bring the gospel to Corinth (Acts 18). His opponents are latecomers who are building on Paul's foundation — a point he made in 1 Corinthians 3:10.
15. Paul implicitly accuses his opponents of boasting 'in the labors of others' (*en allotriois kopois*) — taking credit for churches they did not found. Paul's own hope is that the Corinthians' growing faith will expand his ability to carry the gospel further, using Corinth as a base.
16. Paul's missionary ambition extends westward — 'the lands beyond you' (*ta hyperekeina hymōn*) likely refers to Spain (cf. Romans 15:24, 28). He refuses to claim credit for territory someone else has evangelized, a principle of missionary ethics that his opponents apparently violate.
17. Paul quotes Jeremiah 9:24 (LXX 9:23), as he did in 1 Corinthians 1:31. The principle reframes all boasting: the only legitimate ground for boasting is what the Lord has done, not personal achievement. This sets the standard against which Paul's 'fool's boast' in chapters 11-12 will be measured.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 9:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The chapter ends with the fundamental criterion of apostolic legitimacy: *dokimos* ('approved, tested, genuine') comes from the Lord's commendation (*synistēsīn*), not from self-promotion. This single sentence demolishes the opponents' entire project of self-commendation and returns the discussion to its proper ground: divine evaluation.

11

Summary: *Paul begins his 'fool's speech' — a sustained, ironic piece of self-defense in which he adopts the persona of a boasting fool to expose the absurdity of his opponents' credentials. He expresses jealousy for the Corinthians with a divine jealousy, fearing they will be led astray from sincere devotion to Christ. He sarcastically acknowledges the 'super-apostles' and defends his right to financial support while explaining why he chose to preach free of charge. He warns against false apostles who disguise themselves as servants of righteousness, just as Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. The chapter climaxes with an extraordinary catalog of sufferings: five times receiving thirty-nine lashes, three times beaten with rods, once stoned, three shipwrecks, a night and a day adrift at sea, danger from rivers, bandits, his own people, Gentiles, the city, the wilderness, the sea, and false brothers — along with sleeplessness, hunger, cold, and exposure. Beyond all these, Paul bears the daily pressure of his anxiety for all the churches.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The suffering catalog (vv. 23-28) is unparalleled in ancient literature for its combination of scope, specificity, and theological purpose. Paul lists sufferings that go far beyond the Acts narrative — only one of his five floggings and one of his three beatings can be correlated with Acts, meaning most of these events are otherwise unrecorded. The catalog functions as an anti-resume: where his opponents boast of impressive credentials, Paul boasts of the very things that prove his weakness. The ironic framework ('I am speaking as a fool,' v. 23) maintains the paradox throughout — the boast of suffering is simultaneously a refusal to boast in the conventional sense. The Damascus escape (vv. 32-33) is chosen as the climactic story not because it is the most dramatic but because it is the most humiliating: the great apostle fled like a smuggled package.*

Translation Friction: *The 'super-apostles' (hyperlian apostoloi, v. 5) are debated — some identify them with the Jerusalem apostles (Peter, James, John), others with Paul's opponents in Corinth. The context favors the Corinthian opponents. Paul's self-identification as 'unskilled in speech' (v. 6) may be genuine modesty, rhetorical strategy, or sarcastic understatement. The phrase 'another Jesus... a different spirit... a different gospel' (v. 4) suggests the opponents' theology differed significantly from Paul's, though the exact differences are unclear.*

Connections: *The 'divine jealousy' echoes Hosea and the prophetic tradition. Satan disguised as an angel of light connects to Jewish traditions about the fall of Satan. The suffering catalog connects to the shorter lists in 4:8-9 and 6:4-10, and to the imprisonments recorded in Acts. The Damascus escape connects to Acts 9:23-25. The 'anxiety for all the churches' (v. 28) encapsulates Paul's pastoral theology.*

¹I wish you would bear with me in a little foolishness. Do bear with me! ²For I feel a divine jealousy for you, since I betrothed you to one husband, to present you as a pure virgin to Christ. ³But I am afraid that as the serpent deceived Eve by his cunning, your thoughts will be led astray from a sincere and pure devotion to Christ. ⁴For if someone comes and proclaims another Jesus than the one we proclaimed, or if you receive a different spirit from the one you received, or if you accept a different gospel from the one you accepted, you put up with it readily enough. ⁵Indeed, I consider that I am not in the least inferior to these super-apostles. ⁶Even if I am unskilled in speaking, I am not so in knowledge; indeed, in every way we have made this plain to you in all things. ⁷Or did I commit a sin in humbling myself so that you might be exalted, because I preached God's gospel to you free of charge? ⁸I robbed other churches by accepting support from them in order to serve you. ⁹And when I was with you and was in need, I did not burden anyone, for the brothers who came from Macedonia supplied my need. So I refrained and will refrain from burdening you in any way. ¹⁰As the truth of Christ is in me, this boasting of mine will not be silenced in the regions of Achaia. ¹¹And why? Because I do not love you? God knows I do! ¹²And what I am doing I will continue to do, in order to undermine the claim of those who would like to claim that in their boasted mission they work on the same terms as we do. ¹³For such men are false apostles, deceitful workers, disguising themselves as apostles of Christ. ¹⁴And no wonder, for even Satan disguises himself as an angel of light. ¹⁵So it is no surprise if his servants also disguise themselves as servants of righteousness. Their end will correspond to their deeds. ¹⁶I repeat, let no one think me foolish. But even if you do, accept me as a fool, so that I too may boast a little. ¹⁷What I am saying with this boastful

confidence, I say not as the Lord would but as a fool. ¹⁸Since many boast according to the flesh, I too will boast. ¹⁹For you gladly bear with fools, being wise yourselves! ²⁰For you bear it if someone makes you a slave, or devours you, or takes advantage of you, or puts on airs, or strikes you in the face. ²¹To my shame, I must say, we were too weak for that! But whatever anyone else dares to boast of — I am speaking as a fool — I also dare to boast of that. ²²They are Hebrews? I am too. They are Israelites? So am I. They descend from Abraham? I do as well. ²³Are they servants of Christ? I am talking like a madman — I am a better one: with far greater labors, far more imprisonments, with countless beatings, and often near death. ²⁴Five times I received at the hands of the Jews the forty lashes less one. ²⁵Three times I was beaten with rods. Once I was stoned. Three times I was shipwrecked; a night and a day I was adrift at sea. ²⁶In journeyings frequently, in perils of waters, in perils of robbers, in perils by mine own countrymen, in perils by the heathen, in perils in the city, in perils in the desert, in perils in the sea, in perils among false brothers and sisters;. ²⁷In exhaustion and hardship, in many sleepless nights, going hungry and thirsty, frequently going without food, exposed to cold and lacking adequate clothing. ²⁸And, apart from other things, there is the daily pressure on me of my anxiety for all the churches. ²⁹Who is weak, and I am not weak? Who is made to stumble, and I am not indignant? ³⁰If I must boast, I will boast of the things that show my weakness. ³¹The God and Father of the Lord Jesus, he who is blessed forever, knows that I am not lying. ³²At Damascus, the governor under King Aretas was guarding the city of Damascus in order to seize me, ³³By way of a window in a basket was I let down by the wall, and escaped his hands.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word aphrosynēs ('foolishness, senselessness') signals the beginning of the 'fool's speech' that runs through chapter 12. Paul adopts the rhetorical convention of the fool's speech (known in the Greco-Roman world) but transforms it: his 'boasting' will consist entirely of weaknesses and sufferings.
2. Paul casts himself as the father who arranged the betrothal between the Corinthian church (the bride) and Christ (the husband). The 'divine jealousy' (theou zelō) echoes the LORD's jealousy for Israel in the Old Testament (Exodus 20:5; Deuteronomy 4:24). Paul's concern is that the bride remain faithful to her betrothed until the wedding day.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 4:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The allusion to Genesis 3 casts Paul's opponents as serpent-figures who lead the bride astray through deceptive cunning (panourgia). The word haplotēs ('sincerity, simplicity, single-mindedness') describes the undivided devotion that characterizes faithfulness to one husband.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The irony is biting: the Corinthians tolerate false teachers but are impatient with Paul. The threefold 'another/different' (allon Iēsoun... pneuma heteron... euangelion heteron) suggests the opponents' teaching differed substantially from Paul's, though the exact nature of 'another Jesus' is debated.
5. The term hyperlian apostolōn ('super-apostles, supreme apostles') is Paul's sarcastic coinage — the prefix hyper- ('super, excessive') mocks their inflated self-estimation. Whether these are the Corinthian opponents or the Jerusalem apostles is debated; the context favors the opponents in Corinth.
6. The word idiōtēs ('layperson, amateur, unskilled person') was used for someone without professional training. Paul may concede lack of formal rhetorical training while insisting that his knowledge (gnōsis) — his grasp of the gospel — is not lacking. The irony is that Paul's letters demonstrate extraordinary rhetorical skill.
7. The rhetorical question drips with irony: Paul's 'sin' was preaching without payment. In the Greco-Roman world, traveling teachers who charged fees were considered more credible; by refusing payment, Paul lowered his social status (tapeinōn, 'humbling himself'). His opponents apparently used this against him, suggesting that his free preaching proved he was not a real apostle.
8. The verb esylēsa ('I robbed, I plundered') is deliberately provocative military language — Paul 'plundered' other churches (particularly the Macedonians, Philippians 4:15-16) by accepting their financial support while serving Corinth for free. The exaggeration highlights the absurdity of criticizing his free ministry.
9. The verb katenarkēsa ('I was a burden, I was a deadweight') is a vivid word, possibly meaning 'I numbed no one' or 'I was a parasite to no one.' Paul's policy of financial independence from Corinth was deliberate and permanent (tērēsō, 'I will continue to keep').

10. Paul swears by the truth of Christ that he will never accept payment from Corinth. The verb *phragēsetai* ('will be blocked, will be silenced, will be stopped up') treats his boast about free ministry as a river that cannot be dammed.
11. The short, punchy question and answer reveal the emotional core beneath the theological argument. Paul's opponents had apparently suggested that his refusal of payment proved he did not love the Corinthians. Paul appeals to God as witness of his love.
12. Paul's free ministry removes his opponents' ability to claim equivalence with him. If they charge fees and Paul does not, they cannot say they work 'on the same terms' (*kathōs kai hēmeis*). Paul's financial policy is a strategic weapon against false apostles.
13. Paul drops the irony and speaks bluntly: his opponents are *pseudapostoloi* ('false apostles') and *ergatai dolioi* ('deceitful workers'). The verb *metaschēmatisomenoi* ('disguising themselves, masquerading') suggests deliberate deception, not mere error. They put on the appearance (*schēma*) of Christ's apostles while serving a different agenda.
14. Paul grounds the opponents' deception in a cosmic pattern: Satan himself practices disguise (*metaschēmatizetai*). The 'angel of light' image may draw on Jewish traditions about Satan's fall from angelic glory (cf. Life of Adam and Eve 9:1). If the master deceiver operates through attractive disguise, his servants will do the same.
15. Paul calls his opponents 'servants of Satan' (*diakonoι autou*) disguised as 'servants of righteousness.' The warning about their end (*telos*) corresponding to their deeds recalls the judgment seat of Christ (5:10) and places the opponents under eschatological judgment.
16. Paul re-establishes the ironic framework: he is about to boast 'as a fool' (*hōs aphrona*). The rhetorical device allows him to engage in self-promotion while simultaneously signaling that such behavior is foolish. The audience is put on notice that what follows is not Paul's normal mode of discourse.
17. The disclaimer *ou kata kyrion* ('not according to the Lord') is remarkable — Paul admits that self-boasting is not Christ's way. Yet the situation requires it: the Corinthians have been so impressed by his opponents' boasting that they need to hear Paul's credentials, even if presenting them feels foolish.
18. Paul matches his opponents' game — they boast 'according to the flesh' (*kata sarka*), by worldly credentials, so Paul will enter the same arena. But his boast, as it unfolds, will consist entirely of weaknesses and sufferings, inverting the entire convention.
19. Sharp irony: if the 'wise' Corinthians can tolerate the foolish boasting of his opponents, surely they can tolerate Paul's. The phrase *phronimoi ontes* ('being wise') echoes 1 Corinthians 4:10, where Paul called the Corinthians 'wise in Christ' with similar sarcasm.
20. Five abuses the Corinthians tolerate from Paul's opponents: enslavement (*katadouloi*), exploitation (*katesthiei*, 'devours, eats up'), theft (*lambanei*, 'takes'), arrogance (*epairetai*, 'exalts himself'), and physical abuse (*derei*, 'strikes, beats'). Whether the face-striking is literal or metaphorical is debated, but the rhetorical effect is clear: the Corinthians tolerate terrible treatment from impressive-looking leaders while rejecting Paul's genuine care.
21. More irony: Paul's 'shame' is that he was 'too weak' to abuse the Corinthians as his opponents do. The verb *ēsthenēkamen* ('we were weak') is the letter's central self-description, used both sarcastically here and sincerely elsewhere. Paul now turns to credentials that he shares with his opponents.
22. The three parallel claims establish ethnic and religious parity with his opponents, who apparently emphasized their Jewish credentials. 'Hebrews' (Hebrew-speaking Jews), 'Israelites' (members of the covenant people), and 'offspring of Abraham' (heirs of the promise) form an ascending scale of theological significance. Paul matches them at every level — but immediately surpasses them in the next verse.
23. Paul escalates from parity ('so am I') to superiority ('I am more,' hyper *egō*) — but his superiority consists entirely of suffering. The word *paraphronōn* ('talking like a madman, out of my mind') intensifies the foolishness motif. The catalog that follows is Paul's anti-resume: more labors, more prisons, more beatings, more brushes with death.
24. The 'forty lashes less one' (*tessarakonta para mian*) was the Jewish punishment prescribed in Deuteronomy 25:3, which set forty as the maximum. Jewish practice stopped at thirty-nine as a safeguard against exceeding the limit. None of these five floggings is recorded in Acts. The punishment indicates that Paul continued to submit to synagogue discipline, maintaining his identity within the Jewish community.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 25:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Beating with rods was a Roman punishment (Acts 16:22 records one instance at Philippi). The stoning likely refers to the event at Lystra (Acts 14:19). The three shipwrecks predate the one in Acts 27, which occurred after this letter was written. The 'night and a day adrift at sea' (*nychthēmeron en tō bythō*, literally 'in the deep') is otherwise unrecorded.
26. Eight instances of *kindynois* ('dangers') create a relentless catalog of peril. The dangers come from every direction: natural (rivers, sea), human (bandits, kinsmen, Gentiles), environmental (city, wilderness), and ecclesiastical (false brothers). The inclusion of 'false brothers' (*pseudadelphois*) at the climax of the list suggests that betrayal from within the church was the most painful danger of all.
27. The shift from dramatic dangers to grinding daily deprivation — sleeplessness, hunger, thirst, cold, nakedness (*gymnotēti*, 'inadequate clothing, exposure') — completes the picture. Paul's suffering was not only spectacular but mundane, not only episodic but chronic.
28. The phrase *choris tōn parektos* ('apart from the external things, besides what I have not mentioned') suggests the catalog is not even complete. The *epistasis* ('pressure, attack, concern, crowding upon') and *merimna* ('anxiety, care, worry') describe the weight of pastoral responsibility for multiple churches simultaneously. This verse reveals what Paul considered the heaviest burden: not physical suffering but spiritual care.

- 29.** Two rhetorical questions express Paul's empathetic identification with every member of his churches. When anyone is weak (*asthenei*), Paul feels their weakness. When anyone stumbles (*skandalizetai*), Paul burns with indignation (*pyroumai* — 'I am set on fire') on their behalf. This is not detached pastoral administration but visceral participation in others' suffering.
- 30.** This verse is the thesis statement of Paul's entire fool's speech: his boast consists not of strengths but of weaknesses (*astheneia*). The paradox that governs 2 Corinthians — power made perfect in weakness — finds its definitive expression here.
- 31.** Paul inserts a solemn oath, calling God as witness to the truth of his suffering catalog. The doxological phrase 'blessed forever' (*eulogētos eis tous aiōnas*) resembles the Jewish *berakah* formula and solemnizes the oath. The catalog of sufferings is so extraordinary that it requires divine attestation.
- 32.** King Aretas IV was the Nabataean king (reigned 9 BC - AD 40). The *ethnarchēs* ('governor, ethnarch') was his representative in Damascus. This episode (also in Acts 9:23-25) comes from the very beginning of Paul's ministry. Its placement here, after the grand catalog, seems anticlimactic — which is precisely the point.
- 33.** Paul closes the suffering catalog not with a triumphant deliverance but with an undignified escape — lowered through a window in a *sarganē* ('woven basket, hamper'). The great apostle to the Gentiles began his career being smuggled out of a city like a bundle of goods. This story is the perfect capstone for the fool's boast: Paul's signature moment of escape was simultaneously a moment of humiliation.

12

Summary: *Paul continues his fool's speech with an account of extraordinary visions and revelations, speaking of himself in the third person as 'a man in Christ' who was caught up to the third heaven and heard inexpressible things. To keep him from becoming conceited, a 'thorn in the flesh' was given to him — a messenger of Satan to torment him. Three times Paul pleaded with the Lord for its removal, and the Lord answered: 'My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness.' Paul embraces this paradox, declaring that he will boast all the more gladly in his weaknesses, for when he is weak, then he is strong. He then defends his apostleship by pointing to the signs, wonders, and mighty works performed among the Corinthians, while reiterating his refusal to burden them financially. He expresses his concern that when he comes, he will find quarreling, jealousy, and unrepentant sin, and that God will humble him before them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Lord's response to Paul's prayer — 'My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness' (v. 9) — is the theological heart of 2 Corinthians and arguably of Paul's entire ministry theology. It is one of only a few direct quotations of the risen Christ in the Pauline letters. The paradox that divine power reaches its full expression (*teleitai*, 'is completed, is perfected') specifically through human weakness is not merely a silver lining to suffering but a fundamental principle of how God operates in the world. Paul's response — 'when I am weak, then I am strong' (v. 10) — is the letter's thesis in a single sentence. The vision account (vv. 2-4) is remarkable for its reticence: Paul distances himself from the experience by using the third person, claims not to know whether it was bodily or spiritual, and says nothing about what he heard except that it was 'inexpressible.'*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'thorn in the flesh' (v. 7) has been endlessly debated: chronic illness (eye disease, epilepsy, malaria), a spiritual trial, persecution, or a particular opponent. Paul's language is deliberately vague, using the metaphor *skolops* ('thorn, stake, splinter') and the phrase 'messenger of Satan' (*angelos satana*). We render the Greek without specifying. The 'third heaven' and 'paradise' (vv. 2, 4) reflect Jewish cosmological categories in which multiple heavens exist; Paul uses these terms without explaining them.*

Connections: *The vision of paradise connects to Jewish apocalyptic literature (1 Enoch, Testament of Levi, 2 Baruch). The 'thorn in the flesh' connects to Numbers 33:55 and Ezekiel 28:24 (thorns as instruments of divine testing). The threefold prayer echoes Jesus's threefold prayer in Gethsemane (Matthew 26:39-44). The 'signs of an apostle' (v. 12) connect to Romans 15:18-19 and Hebrews 2:4. The power-in-weakness theme reaches back to 1:8-9, 4:7, and 6:4-10.*

¹I must go on boasting. Though there is nothing to be gained by it, I will go on to visions and revelations of the Lord. ²I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago was caught up to the third heaven — whether in the body or out of the body I do not know, God knows. ³And I know that this man was caught up — whether in the body or out of the body I do not know, God knows — ⁴How that he was caught up into paradise, and listened to unspeakable words, which it is not permitted for a man

to utter. ⁵On behalf of this man I will boast, but on my own behalf I will not boast, except of my weaknesses. ⁶Though if I should wish to boast, I would not be a fool, for I would be speaking the truth; but I refrain from it, so that no one may think more of me than he sees in me or hears from me. ⁷So to keep me from becoming conceited because of the surpassing greatness of the revelations, a thorn was given me in the flesh, a messenger of Satan to harass me, to keep me from becoming conceited. ⁸Three times I pleaded with the Lord about this, that it should leave me. ⁹But he said to me, "My grace is sufficient for you, for my power is made perfect in weakness." Therefore I will boast all the more gladly of my weaknesses, so that the power of Christ may rest upon me. ¹⁰For the sake of Christ, then, I am content with weaknesses, insults, hardships, persecutions, and calamities. For when I am weak, then I am strong. ¹¹I have been a fool! You forced me to it, for I ought to have been commended by you. For I was not at all inferior to these super-apostles, even though I am nothing. ¹²The signs of a true apostle were performed among you with utmost patience, with signs and wonders and mighty works. ¹³For in what were you less favored than the rest of the churches, except that I myself did not burden you? Forgive me this wrong! ¹⁴Here for the third time I am ready to come to you. And I will not be a burden, for I seek not what is yours but you. For children are not obligated to save up for their parents, but parents for their children. ¹⁵I will most gladly spend and be spent for your souls. If I love you more, am I to be loved less? ¹⁶But granting that I myself did not burden you, I was crafty, you say, and got the better of you by deceit. ¹⁷Did I take advantage of you through any of those I sent to you? ¹⁸I urged Titus to go, and sent the brother with him. Did Titus take advantage of you? Did we not act in the same spirit? Did we not take the same steps? ¹⁹Have you been thinking all along that we have been defending ourselves to you? It is in the sight of God that we have been speaking in Christ, and all for your upbuilding, beloved. ²⁰For I fear that perhaps when I come I may find you not as I wish, and that you may find me not as you wish — that perhaps there will be quarreling, jealousy, anger, hostility, slander, gossip, conceit, and disorder. ²¹I fear that when I come again my God may humble me before you, and I may have to mourn over many of those who sinned earlier and have not repented of the impurity, sexual immorality, and sensuality that they have practiced.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul acknowledges the unprofitability of boasting (ou sympheron, 'not beneficial') yet continues, driven by the rhetorical necessity of the fool's speech. The transition from suffering (ch. 11) to visions reveals another arena where Paul can match his opponents — but he will handle even this credential with characteristic self-deprecation.
2. Paul speaks of himself in the third person ('a man in Christ'), creating distance from the experience. The verb harpagenta ('caught up, snatched away') is passive — Paul did not achieve this experience through technique or merit; he was seized by divine power. The 'third heaven' in Jewish cosmology was the highest heaven, the dwelling place of God. The repeated disclaimer 'I do not know... God knows' reflects genuine uncertainty about the nature of the experience and a refusal to claim more than he can verify.
3. The repetition of the disclaimer emphasizes Paul's epistemological humility. Unlike his opponents who presumably boasted about their visions with elaborate detail, Paul refuses to claim knowledge he does not have about the mechanics of the experience.
4. The word paradeisos ('paradise') is a Persian loanword (pairidaeza, 'enclosed garden') used in the LXX for the Garden of Eden (Genesis 2:8) and in Jewish apocalyptic for the heavenly dwelling of the righteous. The arrēta rēmata ('inexpressible words, unspeakable utterances') are doubly inaccessible: they cannot be expressed (arrēta) and they are not permitted to be spoken (ouk exon). Paul's vision account is remarkable for what it withholds rather than what it reveals.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 2:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Paul maintains the third-person fiction: he will boast about 'that man' (the one who received the vision) but not about himself — except concerning his weaknesses. The distinction is theologically precise: the vision was God's doing and cannot be claimed as Paul's achievement; only his weaknesses are truly 'his own.'
6. Paul could legitimately boast about his visions — it would be truth, not foolishness. But he deliberately restrains himself (pheidomai, 'I spare, I refrain') so that people evaluate him only by what they can observe: his words and actions. He refuses to trade on secret spiritual experiences.
7. The skolops ('thorn, stake, splinter') is one of the most debated words in the Pauline corpus. Its identity has been suggested as a chronic illness, a spiritual affliction, an opponent, or persecution. Paul describes it with two phrases: 'in the flesh' (tē sarki, locating it in his bodily or human experience) and 'a messenger of Satan' (angelos satana, attributing it to demonic agency while recognizing it serves divine purpose). The purpose clause is repeated: 'to keep me from becoming conceited' (hina mē hyperairōmai) — God uses even Satan's torment to accomplish sanctification.

8. The threefold prayer echoes Jesus's threefold prayer in Gethsemane (Matthew 26:39, 42, 44). In both cases, the answer is not removal of the suffering but grace to endure it. 'The Lord' (ton kyrion) to whom Paul prays is Christ, as the following verse makes clear — an early witness to prayer directed to the risen Jesus.
9. The perfect tense eirēken ('he has said and it still stands') indicates that Christ's answer is permanently valid, not a one-time response. The verb teleitai ('is made perfect, is completed, reaches its goal') means that divine power achieves its full expression specifically through human weakness — not despite it, not alongside it, but through it. Paul's response transforms suffering into opportunity: he will 'boast all the more gladly' (hēdista mallon) in weakness because weakness is the condition for experiencing Christ's power. The verb episkēnōsē ('may rest upon, may tabernacle upon, may spread a tent over') echoes the shekinah glory — God's dwelling presence — resting on the tabernacle (Exodus 40:34-35).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 40:34-35. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verb eudokō ('I am content, I delight, I take pleasure') does not describe masochism but the settled conviction that weakness is the arena of divine power. The final sentence — hotan gar asthenō, tote dynatos eimi ('for when I am weak, then I am strong') — is the thesis of the entire letter compressed into eight Greek words. It is the definitive Pauline paradox.
11. Paul closes the fool's speech by blaming the Corinthians for making it necessary — they should have been defending him instead of requiring him to defend himself. The phrase 'even though I am nothing' (ei kai ouden eimi) is both genuine humility and ironic understatement: Paul has just demonstrated superiority to the 'super-apostles' in every relevant category.
12. Paul mentions 'signs of an apostle' (sēmeia tou apostolou) as a recognized category — the Corinthians knew what authenticated an apostle. The triad sēmeiois te kai terasin kai dynamisin ('signs and wonders and mighty works') is a standard biblical formula for miracles (cf. Acts 2:22; Romans 15:19). Yet Paul places 'utmost patience' (pasē hypomonē) first, suggesting that endurance under suffering is the primary apostolic credential, not miraculous power.
13. Devastating irony: the only way the Corinthians were 'less favored' than other churches was that Paul did not take their money. 'Forgive me this wrong!' (charisasthe moi tēn adikian tautēn) is sarcasm at its most cutting — Paul's refusal to be a financial burden is cast as an 'injustice' requiring forgiveness.
14. The phrase 'I seek not what is yours but you' (ou zētō ta hymōn alla hymas) is one of the most beautiful expressions of pastoral love in the New Testament. Paul wants the Corinthians themselves, not their money. The parent-child analogy is apt: as their spiritual father (1 Corinthians 4:15), Paul provides for his children, not the reverse.
15. The verbs dapanēsō ('I will spend') and ekdapanēthēsomai ('I will be utterly spent, I will be completely exhausted') move from active to passive, from spending resources to being spent as a resource. Paul offers himself as an expendable commodity for the Corinthians' benefit. The closing question is poignant: greater love receives less love in return — the disproportionate economy of pastoral care.
16. Paul quotes another accusation: even if he did not accept payment directly, he was 'crafty' (panourgōs) and got money through deception — perhaps through the collection for Jerusalem. Paul's sarcastic tone indicates he is repeating slander, not confessing to it.
17. Paul challenges the accusation with a specific question: can the Corinthians name a single delegate of Paul's who exploited them? The verb epleonektēsa ('took advantage of, defrauded') is the same used in 7:2.
18. Paul cites Titus as a specific test case: the Corinthians can verify that Titus conducted himself with the same integrity as Paul. The rhetorical questions expect the answer 'No, he did not take advantage' and 'Yes, you acted the same way.' Paul's delegates replicate his character.
19. Paul corrects a misperception: his fool's speech was not self-defense (apologia) but was spoken 'in the sight of God' (katenanti theou) for the Corinthians' edification (oikodomēs, 'building up'). Everything Paul has said serves not his reputation but their spiritual growth. The address 'beloved' (agapētoi) reminds them of the relational warmth beneath the sharp rhetoric.
20. Paul lists eight vices he fears finding in Corinth — a catalog of relational sins that destroy community. The fear is mutual: Paul may not find the Corinthians as he wishes, and they may encounter a Paul they do not want (i.e., a disciplinarian). Many of these vices echo the problems already addressed in 1 Corinthians.
21. Paul's deepest fear is that unrepentant sin will force a painful confrontation. The triad akatharsia ('impurity'), porneia ('sexual immorality'), and aselgeia ('sensuality, debauchery') describes the sexual sins that were endemic in Corinthian culture and had apparently persisted in the church. The verb penthēsō ('I will mourn, I will grieve') shows that Paul's response to sin in the community is grief, not anger — the pastoral heart behind the apostolic authority.

13

Summary: *Paul prepares for his third visit to Corinth, warning that he will not spare the unrepentant. He cites the Old Testament requirement of two or three witnesses and warns those who have sinned that when he comes he will not be lenient. He challenges the Corinthians to examine themselves to see whether they are in the faith, pointing out that Christ speaks through him — the same Christ who was crucified in weakness but lives by the power of God. Paul prays that they will do what is right so that he will not need to use his authority severely. The letter closes with final exhortations to restore relationships, agree with one another, and live in peace. The benediction that concludes the letter — 'The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with you all' — is the fullest Trinitarian formula in the Pauline corpus and has become the most widely used blessing in Christian worship.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The closing benediction (v. 14) is one of the most theologically significant sentences in the New Testament. It names all three persons of the Trinity in a single blessing formula: the grace of Christ, the love of God (the Father), and the fellowship (koinōnia) of the Holy Spirit. This is not a later credal formulation imposed on Paul but an early, pre-systematic expression of the church's experience of the triune God. The order — Christ first, then the Father, then the Spirit — reflects Paul's experiential starting point: believers encounter God's love through Christ's grace, and this encounter is made real by the Spirit's fellowship. The earlier paradox in verse 4 ('crucified in weakness... lives by the power of God') encapsulates the entire letter's theology in a single sentence about Christ.*

Translation Friction: *The 'two or three witnesses' citation (v. 1) from Deuteronomy 19:15 may refer to Paul's three visits (each visit being a 'witness' against the offenders) or to the standard legal requirement for church discipline. The phrase 'Christ is not weak in dealing with you but is powerful among you' (v. 3) could be heard as a threat of disciplinary action through apostolic authority, or as a statement about Christ's ongoing presence and power in the community. We render the Greek without privileging either reading.*

Connections: *The two-or-three-witnesses principle connects to Deuteronomy 19:15, Matthew 18:16, and 1 Timothy 5:19. The 'crucified in weakness / lives by the power of God' formulation connects to Romans 1:4, 1 Corinthians 1:23-25, and Philippians 2:7-8. The self-examination call echoes 1 Corinthians 11:28. The Trinitarian benediction connects to Matthew 28:19 and the later development of Trinitarian theology in the early councils.*

¹This is the third time I am coming to you. "Every charge must be established by the evidence of two or three witnesses." ²I warned those who sinned before and all the others, and I warn them now while absent, as I did when present on my second visit, that if I come again I will not spare them — ³since you are demanding proof that Christ is speaking through me. He is not weak in dealing with you but is powerful among you. ⁴For he was crucified in weakness, but lives by the power of God. For we also are weak in him, but in dealing with you we will live with him by the power of God. ⁵Examine yourselves, to see whether you are in the faith. Test yourselves. Or do you not realize this about yourselves, that Jesus Christ is in you? — unless indeed you fail to meet the test! ⁶I hope you will find out that we have not failed the test. ⁷But we pray to God that you may not do wrong — not that we may appear to have met the test, but that you may do what is right, even though we may seem to have failed. ⁸For we cannot do anything against the truth, but only for the truth. ⁹For we are glad when we are weak and you are strong. Your restoration is what we pray for. ¹⁰For this reason I write these things while I am away from you, so that when I come I may not have to be severe in my use of the authority that the Lord has given me for building up and not for tearing down. ¹¹Finally, brothers, rejoice. Aim for restoration, comfort one another, agree with one another, live in peace; and the God of love and peace will be with you. ¹²Welcome one another with a sacred embrace. ¹³All the saints greet you. ¹⁴The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be with all of you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 19:15, the legal requirement for establishing a charge. The application may be that each of Paul's three visits constitutes a 'witness' against the unrepentant — the first visit founded the church, the second ('painful visit') confronted the offense, and the third will bring judgment if necessary.

1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 19:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The phrase *ou pheisomai* ('I will not spare') is the same verb used in 1:23, where Paul explained his delayed visit was 'to spare' the Corinthians. The time for sparing is ending; if repentance has not occurred by the time he arrives, Paul will exercise apostolic discipline.
3. The Corinthians demanded proof (*dokimēn*) that Christ speaks through Paul. Paul's response is that Christ's power among them — seen in the gospel that transformed their lives and the signs that accompanied Paul's ministry — is that proof. The contrast between 'not weak' (*ouk asthenei*) and 'powerful' (*dynatei*) anticipates the next verse's paradox.
4. This verse is the Christological key to the entire letter. Christ's crucifixion was an act of weakness (*ex astheneias*) — the most helpless, degrading death imaginable. Yet from that weakness, he lives by the power of God (*ek dynamēōs theou*). Paul applies the same pattern to himself: his weakness mirrors Christ's crucifixion, and the power he exercises mirrors Christ's resurrection life. The cross-resurrection pattern is the template for apostolic ministry.
5. Paul redirects the demand for proof: instead of testing Paul, the Corinthians should test themselves (*heautous peirazete... heautous dokimazete*). The test is whether Christ is 'in' them — a statement of the mystical union that defines Christian existence. The word *adokimoi* ('failing the test, disapproved, disqualified') is the negative of *dokimos* ('approved, tested'), used in verse 3 for the proof they sought from Paul.
6. Paul expresses confidence (*elpizō*, 'I hope') that the Corinthians will recognize that he is not *adokimos* ('disqualified'). The logic is circular by design: if Christ is in the Corinthians (v. 5), and Paul brought them Christ, then Paul cannot be a fraud.
7. Paul's prayer reveals his deepest pastoral priority: he wants the Corinthians to do right, even if it means Paul looks bad. If they repent before he arrives, he will not need to exercise discipline — which means he will not get the chance to 'prove' his authority. He is willing to appear *adokimos* ('failed, disqualified') as long as the Corinthians are doing *kalon* ('what is good, what is right').
8. This deceptively simple sentence contains a profound claim about apostolic authority: it operates within boundaries set by truth itself. Paul's power is not arbitrary but bound to the truth of the gospel. He cannot act against the truth even if he wanted to — apostolic authority serves truth, not the reverse.
9. The final occurrence of the weakness-strength paradox in the letter: Paul rejoices when he is weak and the Corinthians are strong. The word *katartisin* ('restoration, mending, making complete') is related to the verb *katartizō* used for mending fishing nets (Matthew 4:21) and for setting a broken bone. Paul wants the Corinthian community healed and whole.
10. The purpose of this entire severe section (chs. 10-13) is restated: Paul writes firmly now so that he will not have to act firmly later. His authority (*exousia*) is for *oikodomēn* ('building up, edification'), not *kathairesin* ('tearing down, destruction') — the same distinction made in 10:8. The letter is an instrument of pastoral care, not punitive power.
11. Five imperatives close the letter: *chairete* ('rejoice' or 'farewell'), *katartizesthe* ('restore yourselves, be mended'), *parakaleisthe* ('comfort one another, encourage one another'), *to auto phroneite* ('think the same thing, be of one mind'), *eirēneuete* ('live in peace'). The promise attached is conditional in form: do these things, and 'the God of love and peace will be with you.' The title 'God of love and peace' is unique to this verse.
12. The 'holy kiss' (*hagiō philēmati*) is the standard early Christian liturgical greeting (cf. Romans 16:16; 1 Corinthians 16:20; 1 Thessalonians 5:26). It expressed familial bond and spiritual unity within the believing community, distinguishing itself from merely social or erotic greetings by the qualifier 'holy.'
13. The greeting from 'all the saints' (*hoi hagioi pantes*) encompasses the entire believing community from which Paul writes, connecting the Corinthians to the wider body of Christ. The universal scope ('all') emphasizes that the Corinthians are not isolated but part of a network of churches united in faith.
14. This is the fullest Trinitarian benediction in the New Testament and has become the most widely used liturgical blessing in Christian worship. Three divine persons are named with three distinct gifts: grace (*charis*) from Christ, love (*agapē*) from God the Father, and fellowship (*koinōnia*) from the Holy Spirit. The order — Christ, Father, Spirit — is unusual (Matthew 28:19 has Father, Son, Spirit) and reflects Paul's experiential starting point: believers first encounter Christ's grace, through which they know the Father's love, and this becomes real in the Spirit's fellowship. The SBLGNT omits the 'Amen' found in the KJV and some manuscripts.

Galatians

1

Summary: *Galatians 1 opens with Paul's apostolic greeting, immediately asserting that his commission comes from Jesus Christ and God the Father, not from any human authority. After a brief doxology, Paul expresses astonishment that the Galatian churches are so quickly abandoning the gospel he preached to them in favor of a distorted version. He pronounces a double curse on anyone — even an angel from heaven — who preaches a different gospel. Paul then defends his apostolic authority by narrating his personal history: his former life as a persecutor of the church, his dramatic call through divine revelation, his years in Arabia and Damascus, and his eventual brief visit to Jerusalem where he met only Peter and James.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The letter lacks Paul's customary thanksgiving section — he moves directly from greeting to rebuke, signaling the urgency of the crisis. The double anathema formula (vv. 8-9) is the strongest language Paul uses in any letter. His autobiographical defense establishes a pattern that dominates the first two chapters: the gospel he preaches was not received from humans but through a direct revelation of Jesus Christ. The Greek *apokalypsis* ('revelation, unveiling') in verse 12 is the same word used for apocalyptic disclosure — Paul's encounter with Christ was not instruction but unveiling.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'agitators' promoting a different gospel is debated — they likely advocated circumcision and Torah observance for Gentile believers (as clarified in later chapters). Paul's claim to have received his gospel independently of the Jerusalem apostles creates tension with Acts' account of his conversion and early ministry. We render the Greek as given without harmonizing. The phrase 'the churches of Galatia' leaves unresolved whether these are in north or south Galatia — the so-called North Galatian and South Galatian hypotheses.*

Connections: *Paul's call narrative echoes the prophetic call patterns of Jeremiah 1:5 ('before I formed you in the womb') and Isaiah 49:1 ('called me from my mother's womb'). The curse formula connects to Deuteronomy 27:15-26. The revelation of the Son 'in me' (en emoi, v. 16) connects to Paul's 'Christ in me' theology developed fully in 2:20.*

¹Paul, an apostle — not sent from human authority nor commissioned by any human being, but through Jesus Christ and God the Father who raised him from the dead — ²All the brothers and sisters which are with me, to the churches of Galatia:. ³Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, ⁴Who offered himself for our wrongdoings, that he may deliver us from this present wicked age, according to the will of God and our Father:. ⁵To him be glory through all the

ages. Amen. ⁶I am astonished that you are so quickly deserting the one who called you by the grace of Christ and turning to a different gospel — ⁷Not that there really is another gospel — it is simply that certain people are troubling you and trying to distort the good news about Christ. ⁸But even if we or an angel from heaven should proclaim to you a gospel contrary to what we proclaimed to you, let that one be cursed. ⁹As we have said before, so now I say again: if anyone is proclaiming to you a gospel contrary to what you received, let that one be cursed. ¹⁰Am I now seeking human approval, or God's? Am I trying to please people? If I were still trying to please people, I would not be a servant of Christ. ¹¹For I want you to know, brothers and sisters, that the gospel I proclaimed is not of human origin. ¹²For I did not receive it from any human source, nor was I taught it, but it came through a revelation of Jesus Christ. ¹³For you have heard about my former way of life in Judaism — how I persecuted the church of God violently and tried to destroy it. ¹⁴I was advancing in Judaism beyond many of my contemporaries among my people, being far more zealous for the traditions of my ancestors. ¹⁵But when God, who set me apart from my mother's womb and called me through his grace, was pleased ¹⁶To reveal his Son in me, that I might preach him in the midst of the heathen. Immediately I conferred not with flesh and blood: ¹⁷Neither traveled I up to Jerusalem to them which were apostles prior to me. But I traveled into Arabia, and returned again to Damascus. ¹⁸Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to get acquainted with Cephas and stayed with him fifteen days. ¹⁹I did not see any other of the apostles except James, the Lord's brother. ²⁰Now regarding what I am writing to you — before God, I am not lying. ²¹Then I went into the regions of Syria and Cilicia. ²²I was still personally unknown to the churches of Judea that are in Christ. ²³They only kept hearing, "The one who once persecuted us is now proclaiming the faith he once tried to destroy." ²⁴And they glorified God because of me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul's double negation (ouk ap' anthropon oude di' anthropou) distinguishes both the source and the agent of his apostleship. The preposition apo ('from') denies human origin; dia ('through') denies human mediation. This opening salvo establishes the letter's central argument: Paul's gospel and authority derive directly from God, not from Jerusalem or any human chain of authorization.
1. The participial clause 'who raised him from the dead' (tou egeirantos auton ek nekron) is not incidental — it anchors Paul's apostleship in the resurrection, the same event that commissioned him on the Damascus road.
2. The Greek adelphoi is grammatically masculine plural but functioned as an inclusive term for the community of believers. We render 'brothers and sisters' to reflect the inclusive reference. The plural 'churches' (ekklēsiai) indicates this is a circular letter addressed to multiple congregations in the region of Galatia.
3. Paul's standard greeting combines the Greek charis ('grace') with the Hebrew-rooted eirēnē ('peace,' translating shalom). The single preposition apo ('from') governs both 'God our Father' and 'the Lord Jesus Christ,' placing them in a coordinate relationship as the joint source of grace and peace.
4. The Greek aionos tou enestotos ponerou ('the present evil age') reflects Jewish apocalyptic theology that divides history into 'this age' and 'the age to come.' Paul's word is aiōn ('age'), not kosmos ('world') — the emphasis is temporal, not spatial. The rescue is from a corrupt era, not escape from the physical world.
4. The verb exelētai ('rescue, deliver') is in the middle voice, suggesting Christ's active, personal involvement in the deliverance. The phrase 'according to the will of God' grounds the entire saving act in divine initiative.
5. The doxology eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn ('unto the ages of the ages') is a Hebraism intensifying the concept of eternity — literally 'to the ages of ages.' This formula is standard in Pauline doxologies but unusual this early in a letter. Paul typically places his doxology later; its early placement here may reflect the gravity of the situation — he pauses to anchor his rebuke in worship before proceeding.
6. The verb metatitheske ('you are turning, deserting') is present tense, indicating the defection is in progress, not yet complete. The same verb was used for political or military defection — switching allegiance. Paul frames the Galatians' shift not as a theological adjustment but as treason against the one who called them.
6. The absence of a thanksgiving section (standard in Paul's other letters) is itself a rhetorical statement — Paul is too alarmed for pleasantries.
7. Paul plays on two Greek words for 'other': heteron ('different in kind,' v. 6) and allo ('another of the same kind,' v. 7). The so-called 'other gospel' is not actually a gospel at all — it is a distortion (metastrepsai, 'to turn around, reverse, pervert'). The verb tarassontes ('disturbing, agitating') was used for stirring up sedition; these unnamed opponents are creating upheaval in the community.
8. The Greek anathema ('cursed, devoted to destruction') corresponds to the Hebrew cherem — something placed under a ban, devoted to God for destruction. This is not mere disapproval but a solemn invocation of divine judgment. Paul includes himself ('we') in the hypothetical, establishing that the gospel's authority transcends even apostolic persons. The conditional ean with the subjunctive presents this as a real possibility, not an absurd hypothetical.

9. The repetition transforms the conditional warning into a direct verdict. The shift from 'we' to 'I' (legō) makes the pronouncement personal and authoritative. The verb *parelabete* ('you received') is a technical term for receiving tradition — the Galatians received a specific, defined gospel, and deviation from it is not progress but apostasy.
10. The rhetorical questions respond to an apparent accusation that Paul was a people-pleaser who tailored his message to gain approval. The word *doulos* ('servant, slave') carries its full force — Paul is Christ's slave, not a freelance diplomat. The adverb *eti* ('still') implies Paul once did seek human approval (in his former life as a Pharisee, perhaps), but that era is over.
11. The phrase *kata anthrōpon* ('according to a human standard') denies that Paul's gospel conforms to any human pattern or was generated by human reasoning. This verse introduces the autobiographical defense that runs through 2:14 — Paul will demonstrate the divine origin of his gospel by tracing his own story.
12. The genitive *Iēsou Christou* ('of Jesus Christ') is ambiguous — it could be objective ('a revelation about Jesus Christ') or subjective ('a revelation given by Jesus Christ'). Both senses may be intended: Christ was both the content and the agent of the revelation. The Greek *apokalypsis* ('unveiling, disclosure') denotes a direct divine disclosure, not gradual learning or instruction.
13. The Greek *anastrophē* ('way of life, conduct') is rendered 'conversation' in the KJV using the word's older English meaning. The phrase *kath' hyperbolēn* ('beyond measure, to an extraordinary degree') intensifies the verb — Paul's persecution was not casual but extreme. The imperfect tenses (*ediōkon*, *eporthoun*) indicate sustained, repeated action: 'I kept persecuting... I kept trying to destroy.'
14. The verb *proekopton* ('was advancing, making progress') was used for cutting a path forward — Paul was outpacing his peers. The word *zēlōtēs* ('zealot, one burning with zeal') echoes the Maccabean tradition of violent zeal for the Torah. Paul's pre-conversion identity was defined by aggressive devotion to ancestral tradition (*patrikōn paradoseōn*), which he now reinterprets through the lens of divine call.
15. The language directly echoes prophetic call narratives: 'set apart from my mother's womb' parallels Jeremiah 1:5 ('Before I formed you in the womb I knew you') and Isaiah 49:1 ('The LORD called me from the womb'). Paul interprets his entire life — including the persecution years — as part of a divine plan that predated his birth. The verb *aphorisas* ('having set apart') is related to *Pharisaios* ('Pharisee,' meaning 'separated one'), creating an ironic wordplay: God's separation of Paul preceded and superseded his self-separation as a Pharisee.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 1:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 49:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The phrase *en emoi* ('in me') rather than the expected 'to me' (*moi*) is striking — the revelation was not merely informational but internal and transformative. The Greek *ethnesin* ('nations, Gentiles') indicates that Paul's commission to the Gentiles was simultaneous with his call, not a later development. The idiom *sarki kai haimati* ('flesh and blood') means mortal humans — Paul did not seek human validation of his divine encounter.
17. The verb *anēlthon* ('went up') reflects Jerusalem's geographic and theological elevation — one always 'goes up' to Jerusalem. Paul's point is that he deliberately avoided the apostolic headquarters. 'Arabia' likely refers to the Nabatean kingdom east of Damascus, not necessarily the Arabian Peninsula. Paul's time in Arabia is unrecorded in Acts and its purpose is debated — possibly for reflection, possibly for early mission work.
18. The verb *historēsai* is significant — it means 'to inquire of, to get to know, to visit for the purpose of learning about someone.' It implies a purposeful visit to learn from Peter, but not to receive authorization. Paul uses the Aramaic name *Kēphas* (Cephas) rather than the Greek *Petros* (Peter), possibly reflecting the name's original use in the Jerusalem community. The fifteen-day visit is too brief for systematic instruction — Paul is arguing for independence, not dependence.
19. James (*Iakōbos*) is identified as 'the brother of the Lord' (*ton adelphon tou kyriou*), distinguishing him from James the son of Zebedee. Whether *adelphos* here means full brother, half-brother, or kinsman is debated across Christian traditions. Paul's limited contact — only Peter and James — reinforces his independence from the Jerusalem leadership. The phrase may also imply that James held apostolic status, though he was not one of the Twelve.
20. The solemn oath formula *enōpion tou theou* ('before God') invokes God as witness. That Paul feels compelled to swear he is telling the truth suggests the Galatians have heard a conflicting account of his early history — perhaps from the agitators who claimed Paul was dependent on Jerusalem and was now teaching a watered-down version of their gospel.
21. Syria and Cilicia were the provinces surrounding Paul's hometown of Tarsus (in Cilicia) and the base church of Antioch (in Syria). Paul's point is geographic distance from Jerusalem — he was active in ministry far from the apostolic center, further demonstrating his independence.
22. The phrase *agnoumenos tō prosōpō* ('unknown by face') means the Judean believers had not met Paul in person. The participle reinforces that Paul had no extended contact with the broader Jerusalem-area church. The phrase *en Christō* ('in Christ') marks these as specifically Christian assemblies, distinguished from the synagogues.
23. The article *ho diōkōn* ('the one persecuting') functions almost as a title — Paul was known as 'the Persecutor.' The irony is powerful: the faith (*tēn pistin*) he tried to destroy (*eporthēi*, the same verb as 1:13) is now the message he proclaims. Paul's conversion is framed as the most compelling evidence for the gospel's divine power.
24. The phrase *en emoi* ('in me' or 'because of me') echoes the same phrase in verse 16 where God revealed his Son 'in me.' The chapter closes with a striking reversal: the Judean churches — who never met Paul — praised God for the very transformation that his Galatian opponents now question. Paul's former enemies became his unwitting character witnesses.

2

Summary: *Galatians 2 continues Paul's autobiographical defense of his apostolic authority and gospel. He recounts his visit to Jerusalem fourteen years later, where he presented his gospel to the recognized leaders — James, Cephas, and John — who added nothing to his message and affirmed his mission to the Gentiles. Paul then narrates his public confrontation with Peter at Antioch, where Peter's withdrawal from table fellowship with Gentile believers exposed a contradiction between gospel truth and social pressure. The chapter culminates in Paul's most concentrated statement of justification theology: a person is made right with God not through works of the law but through the faithfulness of Jesus Christ. The chapter closes with the iconic declaration that Paul has been crucified with Christ and now lives by faith in the Son of God.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most theologically dense passages in all of Paul's writings (vv. 15-21). The Antioch incident (vv. 11-14) reveals that even Peter could compromise gospel integrity under social pressure. The phrase 'crucified with Christ' (v. 20) introduces participatory atonement language — believers do not merely benefit from Christ's death but are incorporated into it. The pistis Christou debate (v. 16) — whether the Greek means 'faith in Christ' or 'the faithfulness of Christ' — is one of the most consequential translation decisions in Pauline studies.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between Paul's Jerusalem visits in Galatians 2 and Acts 15 (the Jerusalem Council) is debated — they may describe the same event or different ones. The pistis Iēsou Christou construction in verse 16 is grammatically ambiguous (objective or subjective genitive), and we note both options. Paul's rebuke of Peter raises questions about early church unity that the text does not resolve.*

Connections: *The 'right hand of fellowship' (v. 9) echoes covenant-making gestures in the Old Testament. Paul's 'crucified with Christ' language connects to Romans 6:1-11 (baptismal death with Christ). The justification-by-faith argument is the compressed version of what Paul expands in Romans 3-4. The Antioch incident foreshadows the broader Jew-Gentile tension addressed in Ephesians 2.*

¹Then after fourteen years I went up again to Jerusalem with Barnabas, taking Titus along as well. ²I went up because of a revelation, and I laid before them the gospel that I proclaim among the Gentiles — but privately to those who were recognized as leaders — to make sure I was not running or had not run in vain. ³But not even Titus, who was with me, was compelled to be circumcised, though he was a Greek. ⁴Now this matter arose because of false brothers secretly brought in, who slipped in to spy on the freedom we have in Christ Jesus, so that they might enslave us. ⁵To them we did not yield in submission even for a moment, so that the truth of the gospel might be preserved for you. ⁶And from those recognized as important — whatever they once were makes no difference to me; God shows no favoritism — those leaders added nothing to my message. ⁷On the contrary, when they saw that I had been entrusted with the gospel for the uncircumcised, just as Peter had been entrusted with the gospel for the circumcised — ⁸For the same God who worked through Peter as an apostle to the Jewish people also worked powerfully through me as an apostle to the Gentiles. ⁹When James, Cephas, and John, who seemed to be pillars, perceived the grace that was given to me, they gave to me and Barnabas the right hands of fellowship. That we should go to the heathen, and they to the circumcision. ¹⁰They asked only that we remember the poor — the very thing I was eager to do. ¹¹But when Cephas came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face, because he stood condemned. ¹²For before certain people came from James, he used to eat with the Gentiles. But when they arrived, he began to draw back and separate himself, fearing those of the circumcision party. ¹³And the rest of the Jewish believers joined him in this hypocrisy, so that even Barnabas was led astray by their hypocrisy. ¹⁴But when I saw that they were not walking in line with the truth of the gospel, I said to Cephas in front of everyone: "If you, though a Jew, live like a Gentile and not like a Jew, how can you compel the Gentiles to live like Jews?" ¹⁵We ourselves are Jews by birth and not Gentile sinners, ¹⁶Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law — for by the works of the law will no flesh be justified. ¹⁷But if, in seeking to be justified in Christ, we ourselves have also been found to be sinners, does that make Christ an agent of sin? Absolutely not! ¹⁸For if I rebuild what I tore down, I demonstrate that I am a lawbreaker. ¹⁹For through the law I died to the

law, so that I might live for God. ²⁰I have been crucified with Christ. It is no longer I who live, but Christ lives in me. And the life I now live in the body, I live by faith in the Son of God, who loved me and gave himself for me. ²¹I do not set aside the grace of God, for if righteousness could be gained through the law, then Christ died for nothing.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Whether the fourteen years are counted from Paul's conversion or from the previous Jerusalem visit (1:18) is debated. Titus, a Gentile believer, serves as a living test case for the circumcision question — his presence in Jerusalem is itself an argument. Barnabas's inclusion signals that Paul is not a lone actor but represents the Antioch church.
2. The phrase kata apokalypsin ('according to a revelation') indicates divine direction, not human summons — Paul went because God sent him, not because Jerusalem called him. The verb anethēmēn ('laid before, set forth') means to present for consideration, not to submit for approval. The athletic metaphor trechō ('run') pictures ministry as a race that could be wasted if the Jerusalem leaders rejected Paul's gospel. The phrase tois dokousin ('those who seemed, those of reputation') carries a slight edge — Paul uses this somewhat ironic phrase three times in this passage.
3. The Titus test case is Paul's strongest evidence: in the very heart of Jerusalem, with the apostolic leadership present, an uncircumcised Greek believer was accepted without being required to undergo circumcision. The passive ēnagkasthē ('was compelled') leaves open whether there was pressure to circumcise him — only that the pressure did not succeed.
4. The vocabulary is militant: pareisaktos ('smuggled in'), pareisēlthon ('infiltrated'), kataskopēsai ('to spy out, reconnoiter' — a military intelligence term), katadoulōsousin ('to enslave completely'). Paul portrays the false brothers as enemy agents conducting covert operations against the community's freedom. The kata- prefix on katadoulōsousin intensifies the enslavement — they aimed to reduce believers to total bondage under the law.
5. The phrase pros hōran ('for an hour') is idiomatic for 'even momentarily.' Paul's resistance was absolute and immediate. The purpose clause hina hē alētheia tou euangeliiou diamenē ('so that the truth of the gospel might remain') frames the confrontation not as personal stubbornness but as gospel preservation. The Galatians' freedom is at stake in Paul's past decision.
6. Paul's parenthetical interruption is characteristically abrupt. The phrase prosōpon ou lambanei ('does not receive face') is a Hebraism (Hebrew: nasa panim, 'lift the face') meaning God does not show partiality based on status. The verb prosanethento ('added to, contributed to') means the Jerusalem leaders had nothing to supplement or correct in Paul's gospel — their authority did not enhance or alter it.
7. The passive pepisteumai ('I have been entrusted') indicates divine commissioning — God entrusted Paul with this work. The gospel itself is one; it is the audiences that differ. 'The uncircumcision' (akrobystia) and 'the circumcision' (peritomē) are metonyms for Gentiles and Jews respectively. Paul uses 'Peter' (Petros) here rather than 'Cephas' as in surrounding verses — possibly because Peter was the more widely recognized form.
8. The verb energeō ('to work in, to empower, to be active in') attributes the effectiveness of both apostolates to God's power working through each apostle. The parallel structure (ho energēsas Petrō... enērgēsēn kai emoi) places Paul's commission on precisely the same divine footing as Peter's — the same God, the same empowerment, different audiences.
9. James is listed first, suggesting his prominence in the Jerusalem church by this time. The 'pillars' (styloi) metaphor likely draws on the temple imagery — these leaders are foundational supports of the community. The 'right hand of fellowship' (dexias koinōnias) is a formal covenant gesture recognizing mutual partnership. The agreement is geographic and ethnic, not doctrinal — one gospel, two mission fields.
10. The 'poor' (ptōchōn) likely refers specifically to the Jerusalem church, which faced economic hardship. Paul's collection for Jerusalem (Romans 15:25-27; 1 Corinthians 16:1-4; 2 Corinthians 8-9) fulfills this request. The verb espoudasa ('I was eager, I made haste') indicates Paul's wholehearted agreement — care for the poor was not an imposed obligation but a shared commitment.
11. The shift from the Jerusalem accord to the Antioch confrontation is abrupt and dramatic. The phrase kata prosōpon ('to the face') means publicly, openly — not behind his back. The perfect participle kategnōsmenos ('having been condemned, standing condemned') indicates that Peter's actions had already self-evidently condemned him before Paul spoke. Paul's willingness to publicly confront the leading apostle demonstrates that gospel truth outranks apostolic hierarchy.
12. The imperfect synēsthien ('he was eating, he used to eat') indicates habitual practice — Peter had been regularly sharing meals with Gentile believers. The imperfections hypostellen ('was drawing back') and aphōrizen ('was separating') picture a gradual withdrawal, not a single dramatic exit. Table fellowship in the ancient world implied full social and religious acceptance; Peter's withdrawal communicated that Gentile believers were second-class. The 'certain people from James' may or may not have represented James's actual position.
13. The compound verb synpekrithēsan ('acted hypocritically together with') uses the theatrical term hypokrisis ('playing a role, wearing a mask'). Paul's charge is devastating: Peter and the others were not acting according to their actual convictions but performing for an audience. The word 'even' (kai) before Barnabas registers Paul's shock — his own ministry partner was swept up in the pretense. The verb synapēchthē ('was carried away, swept along') suggests Barnabas was pulled by the current rather than acting deliberately.
14. The verb orthopodousin ('walk straight, walk uprightly') occurs only here in the New Testament — literally 'to walk with straight feet.' Paul's accusation is that Peter's conduct is crooked relative to the gospel's straight line. The logic of Paul's rebuke is devastating: Peter himself had been living like a Gentile (eating non-kosher food with Gentile believers), which proves he knew the law's food restrictions were not binding. His

withdrawal now implicitly demands that Gentiles adopt Jewish practices — a requirement Peter himself had abandoned. The verb *ioudaizein* ('to judaize, to live as a Jew') appears only here in the New Testament.

15. It is debated where Paul's direct speech to Peter ends and his reflection for the Galatians begins — the transition may be gradual. The phrase 'Gentile sinners' (ex *ethnōn hamartōloi*) reflects standard Jewish categorization of Gentiles as outside the law and therefore sinners by definition. Paul adopts this language only to subvert it in the following verses.
16. This is the most theologically concentrated verse in Galatians. The phrase *pistis Iēsou Christou* (and *pistis Christou*) is the center of a major scholarly debate. The genitive can be objective ('faith in Jesus Christ') or subjective ('the faithfulness of Jesus Christ'). The subjective reading sees Christ's own faithfulness — his covenant loyalty unto death — as the ground of justification, with human faith as the response. The objective reading sees human faith directed toward Christ as the means of justification. The threefold denial of works of the law (ex *ergōn nomou*) echoes Psalm 143:2 LXX.
16. The verb *dikaioutai* ('is justified, is declared righteous') carries both forensic (legal declaration) and relational (right relationship) dimensions. Paul does not separate these.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 143:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Paul anticipates an objection: if Jewish believers abandon the law to be justified in Christ and are then found to be 'sinners' (by the law's standard), does that mean Christ promotes sin? The emphatic *mē genoito* ('may it never be!' — rendered 'absolutely not!') is Paul's strongest formula of denial, appearing fifteen times in his letters. The word *diakonos* ('servant, agent, minister') applied to Christ sarcastically — would Christ serve sin's interests? The very idea is absurd.
18. The building metaphor (*katalyō*, 'tear down'; *oikodomeō*, 'build up') pictures the law as a wall that Paul demolished. Rebuilding it — returning to law observance as the basis for acceptance — would prove Paul wrong to have torn it down in the first place. The word *parabatēs* ('transgressor, lawbreaker') turns the accusation around: the real transgression is not abandoning the law but returning to it after receiving grace.
19. The paradox is sharp: the law itself brought about Paul's death to the law. How the law accomplished this is debated — possibly through the law's curse that fell on Christ (3:13), or through the law's inability to produce life (3:21), which drove Paul to the end of himself. The purpose clause 'so that I might live for God' (*hina theō zēsō*) reframes death as liberation: death to the law is the prerequisite for life with God.
20. The perfect tense *synestaurōmai* ('I have been crucified with') indicates a past event with ongoing results — the crucifixion with Christ happened and remains in effect. This is Paul's most concentrated statement of participatory soteriology: the believer's identity is relocated from the old self to Christ. The phrase *en pistei zō tē tou huiou tou theou* could be rendered 'by the faithfulness of the Son of God' (subjective genitive) — maintaining consistency with verse 16. However, the deeply personal tone of this verse ('who loved me and gave himself for me') suits the objective genitive reading ('by faith in the Son of God') — the believer's personal trust responding to Christ's personal love. We render as objective genitive here while noting the ambiguity.
20. The verb *paradontos* ('having given over, having handed over') is the same verb used for Judas's betrayal — Christ's self-giving transforms the language of betrayal into the language of salvation.
21. The verb *athetēō* ('to set aside, to nullify, to treat as invalid') was used for annulling a treaty or breaking a covenant. To return to the law for justification would be to declare God's grace null and void. The final statement is devastating in its simplicity: *dōrean apethanen* ('he died gratuitously, for nothing, without cause'). If the law could produce righteousness, the cross was pointless — the most wasteful death in history. Paul leaves the Galatians with this stark either/or: grace or law, not both.

3

Summary: *Galatians 3 shifts from autobiography to theological argument. Paul begins with a sharp rebuke — 'You foolish Galatians!' — and asks whether they received the Spirit through law-keeping or through believing the gospel. He then builds a sustained case from Scripture that Abraham was justified by faith, that the law brings a curse from which Christ redeemed humanity by becoming a curse himself, that the Abrahamic promise operates through faith rather than law, and that the law served as a temporary guardian until Christ came. The chapter culminates in the declaration that in Christ there is neither Jew nor Greek, slave nor free, male nor female — all are Abraham's offspring and heirs according to the promise.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's argument moves through five distinct scriptural proofs: Abraham's faith (Genesis 15:6), the blessing of the nations (Genesis 12:3), the curse of the law (Deuteronomy 27:26), justification by faith (Habakkuk 2:4), and redemption from the curse (Deuteronomy 21:23). The 'seed' argument in verse 16 turns on the singular form of the Greek *sperma* — a striking piece of exegesis. The law as *paidagogos* (vv. 24-25) draws on the Greco-Roman institution of the slave-tutor who supervised a child until maturity. Verse 28 is one of the most radical equality*

statements in ancient literature.

Translation Friction: *Paul's claim that the law was given 'through angels by a mediator' (v. 19) draws on Jewish tradition not explicit in the Torah itself. His singular 'seed' argument (v. 16) has been criticized as grammatically forced, since collective nouns are regularly singular in both Hebrew and Greek. We render the text faithfully and note the exegetical complexity. The phrase 'baptized into Christ' (v. 27) raises questions about the relationship between faith and baptism that Paul does not resolve here.*

Connections: *Abraham's justification by faith (v. 6) is the same text Paul expounds in Romans 4. The 'curse of the law' argument (vv. 10-14) builds on Deuteronomy 27-28. The law as guardian until Christ anticipates the fuller development in Galatians 4:1-7. The baptismal formula of verse 28 likely reflects an early Christian confession used at baptism. The 'clothing' metaphor (v. 27) connects to the new-creation imagery Paul develops elsewhere (2 Corinthians 5:17; Colossians 3:9-10).*

¹You foolish Galatians! Who has bewitched you? Before your very eyes Jesus Christ was publicly portrayed as crucified! ²I want to learn only one thing from you: Did you receive the Spirit by works of the law, or by hearing with faith? ³Are you so foolish? Having begun by the Spirit, are you now trying to reach completion by the flesh? ⁴Did you experience so much for nothing? — if indeed it was for nothing. ⁵So then, does God supply the Spirit to you and work miracles among you because of works of the law, or because of hearing with faith? ⁶Just as Abraham "believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness." ⁷Understand, then, that those who are of faith — these are the children of Abraham. ⁸And the Scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, proclaimed the gospel in advance to Abraham: "In you all the nations will be blessed." ⁹So then, those who are of faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith. ¹⁰For all who rely on works of the law are under a curse. For it is written: "Cursed is everyone who does not continue in all the things written in the book of the law, to do them." ¹¹Now it is clear that no one is justified before God by the law, because "The righteous one will live by faith." ¹²But the law is not based on faith; rather, "The one who does them will live by them." ¹³Christ redeemed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us — for it is written: "Cursed is everyone who hangs on a tree" — ¹⁴That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles by way of Jesus Christ. That we might accept the promise of the Spirit by way of faith. ¹⁵Brothers and sisters, I speak in human terms: even a human covenant, once it has been ratified, no one annuls or adds conditions to it. ¹⁶Now the promises were spoken to Abraham and to his offspring. It does not say, "And to offsprings," as referring to many, but as referring to one: "And to your offspring," who is Christ. ¹⁷This is what I am saying: the law, which came four hundred and thirty years later, does not invalidate a covenant previously ratified by God, so as to nullify the promise. ¹⁸For if the inheritance comes from the law, it no longer comes from the promise. But God granted it to Abraham through a promise. ¹⁹Why then the law? It was added because of transgressions, until the offspring should come to whom the promise had been made, and it was arranged through angels by the hand of a mediator. ²⁰Now a mediator implies more than one party, but God is one. ²¹Is the law then opposed to the promises of God? Absolutely not! For if a law had been given that could give life, then righteousness would indeed have come through the law. ²²But the Scripture imprisoned everything under sin, so that the promise might be given through the faithfulness of Jesus Christ to those who believe. ²³Now before faith came, we were held in custody under the law, confined until the coming faith would be revealed. ²⁴So then, the law was our guardian until Christ came, so that we might be justified by faith. ²⁵But now that faith has come, we are no longer under a guardian. ²⁶For you are all children of God through faith in Christ Jesus. ²⁷For all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. ²⁸There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free, there is no male and female — for you are all one in Christ Jesus. ²⁹And if you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's offspring, heirs according to the promise.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *anoētoi* ('foolish, senseless, unthinking') is not an insult to intelligence but a charge of irrationality — they are failing to think through the implications of what they already know. The verb *ebaskanen* ('bewitched') evokes the 'evil eye' of ancient Mediterranean culture — someone has cast a spell over them. The verb *prographē* ('was publicly displayed, was placarded') was used for official public notices or proclamations posted in the marketplace. Paul's preaching was so vivid that it was as if Christ crucified had been posted on a billboard before their eyes.

2. Paul appeals to the Galatians' own experience as evidence. The phrase *ex akoēs pisteōs* ('from hearing of faith') is ambiguous: it could mean 'by hearing the message that calls for faith,' 'by hearing that comes from faith,' or 'by a faithful hearing.' The contrast with 'works of the law' suggests the emphasis is on receptive trust versus active effort. The Galatians' reception of the Spirit — presumably visible in charismatic experience — occurred without any law observance.
3. The contrast between *pneumati* ('by the Spirit') and *sarki* ('by the flesh') is not spirit versus body but divine power versus human effort. The verb *epiteleisthe* ('being completed, being perfected') in the middle voice suggests the Galatians are attempting to complete by their own effort what God started by his Spirit. The irony is sharp: moving from Spirit to flesh is not progress but regression.
4. The verb *epathete* can mean either 'suffered' or 'experienced' — both senses may be in play. The Galatians may have faced persecution as a result of their faith. The trailing phrase *ei ge kai eikē* ('if indeed even for nothing') leaves a sliver of hope — Paul has not yet given up on them.
5. The present participles *epichorēgōn* ('supplying, lavishly providing') and *energōn* ('working, being active in') indicate ongoing divine activity, not a one-time event. God is currently supplying the Spirit and currently working miracles — and this is happening without law observance. The verb *epichorēgeō* was used for a wealthy patron generously underwriting a public performance — God supplies abundantly, not grudgingly.
6. Paul quotes Genesis 15:6 (LXX), the foundational text for his justification theology (cf. Romans 4). The verb *elogisthē* ('was credited, was reckoned, was counted') is an accounting term — righteousness was deposited to Abraham's account on the basis of his trust, not his performance. This precedes the institution of circumcision (Genesis 17) by at least fourteen years, which becomes Paul's key chronological argument.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 15:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The imperative *ginōskete* ('know, understand, recognize') could also be indicative ('you know'). The phrase *hoi ek pisteōs* ('those out of faith, those whose identity is defined by faith') establishes faith, not ethnicity or law observance, as the marker of Abrahamic descent. This is the theological foundation for Gentile inclusion: Abraham's real children are identified by sharing Abraham's faith.
8. Paul personifies Scripture (*hē graphē*) as an agent that 'foresaw' and 'proclaimed the gospel in advance' (*proeuēngelisato* — a remarkable compound verb meaning 'pre-evangelized'). The quotation combines Genesis 12:3 and 18:18. Paul reads the Abrahamic promise to bless 'all nations' (*panta ta ethnē*) as a prophetic announcement of Gentile justification by faith — the gospel was already embedded in the Abrahamic covenant.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 12:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The adjective *pistō* ('faithful, believing') applied to Abraham emphasizes his defining characteristic: trust in God's promise. The preposition *syn* ('together with') establishes solidarity — those who share Abraham's faith share Abraham's blessing. Paul has redrawn the boundaries of the Abrahamic family: faith, not circumcision, is the membership marker.
10. Paul quotes Deuteronomy 27:26 to argue that the law's own terms condemn those who depend on it — since the law demands total, unbroken obedience (*pasin tois gegrammenois*, 'all the things written'), any failure brings the covenant curse. The word *katara* ('curse') is the opposite of *eulogia* ('blessing') from verse 9. Paul's logic: law-reliance leads to curse; faith leads to blessing. The assumption is that no one achieves perfect obedience.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 27:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Paul quotes Habakkuk 2:4, a text also central to Romans 1:17. The Hebrew of Habakkuk reads *be'emunato* ('by his faithfulness/faith'), and the ambiguity of *ek pisteōs* ('by faith/faithfulness') carries over into the Greek. The quotation establishes that the life of the righteous person is grounded in faith, not in law — and since this is Scripture's own testimony, the law itself witnesses against law-righteousness.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Habakkuk 2:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. Paul quotes Leviticus 18:5, which promises life through doing the commandments. His point is that law and faith operate on fundamentally different principles: law demands doing, faith demands trusting. The two systems are incompatible as bases for justification. This does not mean the law is evil (Paul addresses that in 3:19-22), but that its operating principle differs from faith's.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 18:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The verb *exēgorasen* ('redeemed, bought out of') is a marketplace term for purchasing a slave's freedom. Christ's redemption is presented as a commercial transaction: he paid the price to buy believers out of the law's curse. The mechanism is substitutionary: *genomenos hyper hēmōn katara* ('having become a curse on our behalf'). Paul quotes Deuteronomy 21:23, which pronounces a curse on anyone hung on a tree (*xylon*). The crucifixion fulfills this: Christ on the cross bore the covenant curse that rested on law-breakers.

- 13.** The word *xylon* means 'wood, tree, stake' — Paul uses it rather than *stauros* ('cross') to align with the Deuteronomy text. The early church read this passage as a divine explanation of why the Messiah had to die by crucifixion specifically.
- 13.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 21:23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 14.** Two purpose clauses (*hina... hina...*) spell out the twin results of Christ's redemptive act: (1) the Abrahamic blessing extends to the Gentiles, and (2) the promised Spirit is received through faith. The 'promise of the Spirit' (*tēn epangelian tou pneumatos*) links the Abrahamic promise to the Pentecost experience — the Spirit is the concrete fulfillment of what God promised to Abraham. The 'in Christ Jesus' (*en Christō Iēsou*) is the instrument through which the ancient promise reaches its intended recipients.
- 15.** Paul uses an everyday legal analogy (*kata anthrōpon legō*, 'I speak in human terms'). The word *diathēkē* means both 'covenant' and 'will/testament' in Greek — the legal force of the analogy depends on the irrevocability of a ratified agreement. The verb *kekyrōmenēn* ('having been ratified, confirmed') is a legal term for a document that has been officially validated. The verbs *athetei* ('annuls') and *epidiatassetai* ('adds additional stipulations') describe two ways a ratified covenant cannot be altered.
- 16.** Paul's argument turns on the singular *sperma* ('seed, offspring') versus the hypothetical plural *spermasin* ('seeds'). Grammatically, *sperma* is a collective noun regularly used in the singular for a group of descendants, so Paul's argument has been debated since antiquity. However, Paul may be making a typological rather than strictly grammatical point: the singular 'seed' finds its ultimate fulfillment in one person, Christ, through whom all the other 'seeds' (believers) are incorporated. The quotation draws from Genesis 13:15, 17:8, and 22:18.
- 16.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 12:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 16.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 13:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 17.** The 430-year figure comes from Exodus 12:40 (LXX). Paul's argument is chronological: the Abrahamic covenant was established and ratified by God centuries before Sinai. A later addition (the law) cannot override an earlier divine covenant (the promise). The verb *akyroī* ('invalidate, make void') is the legal term for overturning a valid agreement — the law simply does not have that power over God's prior commitment.
- 17.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 12:40. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 18.** The verb *kecharistai* ('has graciously given') is from *charizomai*, related to *charis* ('grace'). The inheritance was a gift of grace through promise, not a wage earned through law-keeping. Paul presents law and promise as mutually exclusive bases for inheritance — if one applies, the other is voided. Since God chose promise, law cannot be the operating principle.
- 19.** Paul anticipates the obvious question: if the law cannot justify, what purpose does it serve? His answer: it was 'added' (*prosetethē*) — supplementary, not foundational — 'because of transgressions' (*tōn parabaseōn charin*). This phrase is ambiguous: the law was added to define transgressions, to restrain them, or to provoke them (cf. Romans 5:20). The temporal limit 'until the offspring should come' makes the law a temporary measure, not a permanent arrangement. The reference to angelic mediation draws on Jewish tradition (cf. Acts 7:53; Hebrews 2:2) and Deuteronomy 33:2 LXX. The 'mediator' is Moses.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 33:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** This is one of the most cryptic verses in Paul's letters, generating hundreds of interpretations. The basic logic appears to be: a mediator (*mesitēs*) requires two parties, meaning the law involved a bilateral arrangement (God and Israel, mediated by Moses). But God's promise to Abraham was unilateral — God alone committed himself (Genesis 15, where only God passes between the animal pieces). The promise is therefore more secure than the law because it rests on God alone, not on two parties' faithfulness.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** Paul again uses *mē genoito* ('absolutely not!') to reject a false inference. The law is not the enemy of promise — it simply cannot do what promise does. The key verb is *zōopoīēsai* ('to make alive, to give life'). The law can diagnose sin but cannot resurrect; it can define the problem but cannot supply the remedy. The contrary-to-fact conditional (*ei... edothē... an ēn*) makes clear that no such life-giving law exists.
- 22.** The verb *synekleisen* ('shut up together, imprisoned, confined') pictures sin as a prison. Scripture — and by extension the law — functions as a jailer that locks up all humanity (*ta panta*, 'all things, everything') under sin's power. The purpose (*hina*) is redemptive: the imprisonment prepares for the promise's release. The phrase *ek pisteōs Iēsou Christou* again raises the subjective/objective genitive question. We render 'through the faithfulness of Jesus Christ' consistently with 2:16, while noting that *tois pisteuousin* ('to those who believe') again distinguishes Christ's faithfulness from the believers' response of faith.
- 23.** The verb *ephrourometha* ('we were being guarded, held in custody') is a military term for being under armed guard. The companion participle *synekleiomenoi* ('being confined, locked up') reinforces the imprisonment metaphor from verse 22. Paul speaks of 'faith' (*tēn pistin*) with the article — not faith as a general concept but the specific faith-era inaugurated by Christ. Before Christ, the law served as a holding cell; with Christ's coming, the cell doors opened.

- 24.** The Greek paidagōgos is not a 'schoolmaster' (KJV) but a household slave who supervised a child's daily conduct — walking the child to school, enforcing discipline, and overseeing behavior until the child reached maturity. The paidagōgos was neither the father nor the teacher but a temporary custodian whose authority ended when the child came of age. Paul's analogy: the law supervised Israel during its minority, but its supervisory role terminated when Christ (the age of maturity) arrived. The phrase eis Christon ('until Christ' or 'toward Christ') indicates both temporal limit and directional purpose.
- 25.** The genitive absolute elthousēs tēs pisteōs ('faith having come') treats faith as a historical event, not merely a personal experience. The coming of Christ inaugurated the age of faith. The adverb ouketi ('no longer') is emphatic: the guardian's role is finished. Returning to the law's supervision after Christ has come would be like a grown adult returning to the care of a childhood custodian.
- 26.** The shift from 'we' to 'you' (este, second person plural) directly addresses the Galatian believers. The term huioi theou ('sons of God') in its cultural context designated full legal heirs with the rights of mature adults, as opposed to minors under a guardian. We render 'children' to capture the inclusive sense, though the legal-heir implication is important: the Galatians are no longer minors under the law's custody but full heirs of God.
- 27.** The clothing metaphor (enedysasthe, 'you clothed yourselves with, you put on') may reflect the early Christian practice of new clothing at baptism, but the theological meaning goes deeper: to 'put on Christ' is to take on his identity. The phrase eis Christon ('into Christ') indicates that baptism effects a transfer of identity — the baptized person is now 'in Christ,' bearing Christ's identity rather than their former social markers. This prepares for the radical equality statement of verse 28.
- 28.** This verse likely preserves an early baptismal confession. The three pairs dismantle the three fundamental divisions of the ancient world: ethnic (Jew/Greek), social (slave/free), and gender (male/female). The shift from oude ('nor') to kai ('and') in the third pair echoes Genesis 1:27 LXX ('male and female he created them'), suggesting that in Christ even the creation-order distinction is transcended in terms of covenant status. The word heis ('one') is masculine singular — the Galatians are not merely united but constitute one entity in Christ. Paul's immediate context is covenant membership (who belongs to Abraham's family), though the implications extend further.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1:27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** Paul's argument comes full circle: Christ is Abraham's singular 'seed' (v. 16); those who are 'in Christ' (v. 28) share his identity; therefore those in Christ are Abraham's seed and heirs of the Abrahamic promise. The chain is Abraham promise Christ believers. Circumcision, Torah observance, and ethnic identity play no role in this chain of inheritance. The word klēronomoi ('heirs') carries full legal weight — these are not honorary members but rightful inheritors of everything God promised Abraham.

4

Summary: *Galatians 4 develops the heir/guardian analogy from chapter 3, arguing that before Christ came, God's people were like minor children under guardianship, subject to the 'elemental principles' of the world. But when the fullness of time arrived, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, to redeem those under the law and grant them adoption as children. Paul then appeals personally to the Galatians, reminding them of their initial warm reception of him despite his physical ailment. He warns that the agitators' attention is self-serving. The chapter culminates in an allegorical reading of Abraham's two sons — Ishmael (born of the slave Hagar, representing the Sinai covenant) and Isaac (born of the free woman Sarah, representing the promise) — concluding that believers are children of the free woman.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'fullness of time' passage (vv. 4-7) is one of the most important christological and soteriological texts in the New Testament, compressed into four verses. The Abba cry (v. 6) preserves the Aramaic word Jesus himself used in prayer (Mark 14:36). The Hagar-Sarah allegory (vv. 21-31) is Paul's most sustained use of allegorical interpretation and has been enormously influential — and controversial — in Jewish-Christian relations. Paul's identification of 'the present Jerusalem' with Hagar/slavery and 'the Jerusalem above' with Sarah/freedom inverts the expected categories.*

Translation Friction: *Paul's use of stoicheia tou kosmou ('elemental principles of the world,' vv. 3, 9) is debated — it could refer to basic religious principles, cosmic spiritual powers, or the physical elements. The Hagar-Sarah allegory (vv. 21-31) has been criticized for anti-Jewish implications, though Paul's target is not Judaism per se but the specific demand that Gentile believers submit to circumcision. The textual tradition varies between 'God sent the Spirit of his Son' and 'God sent the Spirit of the Son' in verse 6.*

Connections: The adoption (huiiothesia) language connects to Romans 8:14-17, 23. The 'Abba, Father' cry appears also in Romans 8:15 and Mark 14:36. The Hagar-Sarah typology draws on Genesis 16-21 and anticipates the 'Jerusalem above' concept developed in Hebrews 12:22 and Revelation 21. The 'born of a woman' phrase (v. 4) echoes Job 14:1 and the 'born under the law' connects to the circumcision of Jesus (Luke 2:21).

¹What I am saying is this: as long as the heir is a minor, he is no different from a slave, even though he is owner of everything. ²Instead, he is under guardians and trustees until the date set by the father. ³In the same way, when we were minors, we were enslaved under the elemental principles of the world. ⁴But when the fullness of time had come, God sent forth his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, ⁵Indeed, to redeem them that were under the law, that we might accept the adoption of sons. ⁶And because you are children, God sent the Spirit of his Son into our hearts, crying, "Abba! Father!" ⁷So you are no longer a slave but a child, and if a child, then an heir through God. ⁸Formerly, when you did not know God, you were enslaved to things that by nature are not gods. ⁹But now that you have come to know God — or rather, to be known by God — how can you turn back again to the weak and worthless elemental principles? Do you want to be enslaved to them all over again? ¹⁰You are observing special days and months and seasons and years! ¹¹I am afraid for you, that perhaps I have labored over you in vain. ¹²I beg you, brothers and sisters, become as I am, for I also became as you are. You have done me no wrong. ¹³You know that it was because of a physical ailment that I first proclaimed the gospel to you. ¹⁴And though my physical condition was a trial to you, you did not despise or scorn me. Instead, you received me as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus himself. ¹⁵What then has become of your joy? For I testify that, if possible, you would have torn out your own eyes and given them to me. ¹⁶So have I become your enemy by telling you the truth? ¹⁷Those people are zealous to win you over, but not with good intentions. They want to shut you out so that you will be zealous for them. ¹⁸It is always good to be courted for a good purpose, and not only when I am present with you. ¹⁹My children, for whom I am again in the anguish of childbirth until Christ is formed in you! ²⁰I wish I could be present with you now and change my tone, because I am perplexed about you. ²¹Tell me, you who want to be under the law: do you not listen to the law? ²²For it is written that Abraham had two sons, one by the slave woman and one by the free woman. ²³But the son of the slave woman was born according to the flesh, while the son of the free woman was born through the promise. ²⁴Now these things are to be understood allegorically: the women represent two covenants. One is from Mount Sinai, bearing children into slavery — this is Hagar. ²⁵Now Hagar stands for Mount Sinai in Arabia, and she corresponds to the present Jerusalem, for she is in slavery with her children. ²⁶But the Jerusalem above is free, and she is our mother. ²⁷For it is written: "Rejoice, barren woman who does not bear! Break forth and shout, you who are not in labor! For the children of the desolate woman are more than those of the woman who has a husband." ²⁸Now you, brothers and sisters, like Isaac, are children of the promise. ²⁹But just as at that time the one born according to the flesh persecuted the one born according to the Spirit, so also it is now. ³⁰But what does the Scripture say? "Drive out the slave woman and her son, for the son of the slave woman will certainly not inherit with the son of the free woman." ³¹Therefore, brothers and sisters, we are not children of the slave woman but of the free woman.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul extends the guardian analogy from 3:23-25 into Roman inheritance law. The Greek *nēpios* ('infant, minor, one who cannot yet speak for himself') describes a legal minor who possesses the title of heir but cannot exercise any rights. The paradox is striking: the heir owns everything (*kyrios pantōn*) yet experiences the life of a slave (*doulos*). This is Paul's picture of Israel under the law — rightful heirs living under restriction.
2. The *epitropoi* ('guardians') and *oikonomoi* ('trustees, estate managers') are legal terms from Roman law for those who managed a minor's person and property respectively. The *prothesmia* ('appointed date, deadline') is a specific legal term for the date fixed by the father's will when the child would come into his inheritance. Paul's point: the period of law-supervision had a divinely predetermined expiration date.
3. The phrase *stoicheia tou kosmou* ('elements/principles of the world') is one of the most debated expressions in Paul. *Stoicheia* can mean: (1) the physical elements (earth, water, air, fire); (2) basic or elementary principles (the ABCs); (3) cosmic or spiritual powers (astral deities or angelic forces); (4) the basic regulatory principles of pre-Christian religion (both Jewish and pagan). Paul may intend a deliberate overlap between these senses — any system of religious obligation that enslaves, whether Jewish Torah or pagan worship, functions as *stoicheia*. The perfect participle *dedoulōmenoi* ('having been enslaved') emphasizes the completed state of bondage.

4. The phrase to plērōma tou chronou ('the fullness of time') means the moment when God's appointed time reached its completion — the prothesmia of verse 2 arrived. The verb exapesteilen ('sent forth') implies prior existence: God sent the Son from his own presence. Two participial phrases define the Son's entry into human existence: genomenon ek gynaikos ('born of a woman') affirms full humanity, and genomenon hypo nomon ('born under the law') places him within the system he came to dismantle. The Son submitted to the very bondage he came to end.
5. Two purpose clauses (hina... hina...) state the double goal of the incarnation: (1) redemption (exagorasē, the same marketplace term from 3:13) of those enslaved under the law, and (2) adoption (huiiothesian) as children. The word huiiothesia ('adoption, placement as sons') is a Roman legal term for the formal adoption of an heir — the adopted child received all the rights, privileges, and inheritance of a natural-born son. Paul's theology: believers are not merely forgiven slaves but adopted heirs.
6. The structure parallels verse 4: God 'sent forth' (exapesteilen) the Son (v. 4) and 'sent forth' the Spirit of the Son (v. 6). The Spirit's cry is not the believer's prayer but the Spirit praying through the believer — the Spirit himself cries (krazon, a strong verb suggesting an involuntary shout). The Aramaic Abba is the intimate family address for 'father' — the same word Jesus used in Gethsemane (Mark 14:36). Its preservation in a Greek letter to Gentile believers suggests it was a recognized liturgical formula. The shift from 'you are sons' (este huiioi) to 'our hearts' (hēmōn) unites Paul with the Galatians in shared experience.
7. Paul shifts to the singular 'you' (ei, second person singular), making the declaration personal to each believer. The progression is slave child heir. The phrase dia theou ('through God') is unusual — most manuscripts and translations expect 'through Christ' or 'of God,' but the SBLGNT reading attributes the entire transaction to God's agency. Some manuscripts read 'heir of God through Christ' (klēronomos theou dia Christou), but we follow the SBLGNT text.
8. Paul addresses the Galatians' pre-conversion pagan past. The phrase tois physei mē ousin theois ('to those which by nature are not gods') echoes Old Testament polemic against idols (Isaiah 37:19; Jeremiah 2:11). The dative tois... theois could indicate service to or slavery under these false gods. Paul will argue in verse 9 that returning to Torah observance would be equivalent to returning to this pagan servitude — a provocative equation.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 37:19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 2:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Paul's self-correction is theologically significant: 'you have come to know God — or rather, to be known by God.' Divine initiative precedes human knowledge. The adjectives asthenē ('weak, powerless') and ptōcha ('poor, destitute, beggarly') are devastating descriptors for either the Torah or pagan religion — both are impoverished systems compared to the riches of knowing God. Paul's equation of Torah observance with stoicheia places it in the same category as the Galatians' former paganism — a shocking rhetorical move.
10. The calendar observances likely include Sabbaths (days), new moons (months), Jewish festivals (seasons/kairos), and sabbatical or jubilee years. Paul views these calendar regulations as part of the stoicheia system. The present tense paratēreisthe ('you are observing') indicates this practice has already begun among the Galatians — the defection is not hypothetical.
11. The verb phohoumai ('I fear') with mē pōs ('lest perhaps') expresses anxious concern. The perfect kekopiaka ('I have labored') indicates sustained effort with ongoing results now threatened. Paul's missionary labor may be wasted if the Galatians complete their defection to law observance.
12. Paul shifts from theological argument to personal appeal. 'Become as I am' (ginesthe hōs egō) — Paul, a Jew, lives free from the law; the Galatians, Gentiles, should not take up the law's yoke. 'I also became as you are' (kagō hōs hymeis) — when Paul came to them, he lived as a Gentile among Gentiles (cf. 1 Corinthians 9:21). The assurance 'you have done me no wrong' prepares for the warm reminiscence that follows.
13. The phrase di' astheneian tēs sarkos ('because of a weakness of the flesh') indicates that Paul's initial visit to Galatia was occasioned or prolonged by some physical condition — illness, injury, or chronic ailment. The nature of this ailment is unknown; proposals include malaria, eye disease (suggested by v. 15), or epilepsy. The phrase to proteron ('the first time, formerly') may imply more than one visit.
14. The verb exeptysate ('you did not spit out, you did not scorn') is vivid — spitting was an ancient gesture of contempt and also a magical act to ward off evil or disease. Paul's condition could have provoked revulsion, but the Galatians received him with extraordinary honor. The ascending comparison — 'as an angel of God, as Christ Jesus' — recalls 1:8, where even an angel's gospel could be false. Here the Galatians treated Paul as bearing divine authority.
15. The word makarismos ('blessing, happiness, congratulating oneself') recalls their initial joy at receiving the gospel. The reference to tearing out eyes (tous ophthalmous hymōn exoryxantes) has fueled speculation that Paul suffered from an eye condition. Whether literal or proverbial (an expression of extreme devotion), it highlights the dramatic contrast between their former warmth and their current coolness.
16. The participial phrase alētheuōn hymin ('telling you the truth, being truthful with you') contrasts with the flattery of the agitators (v. 17). Paul's truth-telling has earned him suspicion, while the agitators' flattery has gained them admiration. The irony is bitter: the one who speaks plainly is treated as an enemy.
17. The verb zēlousin ('they are zealous for, they court') describes the agitators' energetic pursuit of the Galatians' loyalty. The verb ekkleisai ('to shut out, to exclude') reveals the agitators' strategy: by making circumcision a requirement, they create a new boundary that excludes the Galatians unless they comply — generating dependence on the agitators as gatekeepers.

18. Paul acknowledges that zeal and attention are not inherently wrong — what matters is the motive (en kalō, 'in a good thing, for a good purpose'). The phrase 'not only when I am present' gently chides the Galatians for their fickleness: they were devoted when Paul was there but wavered when the agitators arrived.
19. Paul adopts maternal imagery: he is a mother in labor (ōdinō, 'to suffer birth pangs'). The word palin ('again') is striking — Paul already labored to birth them once; their defection has thrown him back into labor pains. The goal is morphōthē Christos en hymin ('Christ be formed in you') — not mere belief about Christ but Christ's character taking shape within them. The verb morphoō ('to form, to shape') suggests an organic, developmental process.
20. The verb aporoumai ('I am perplexed, I am at a loss') expresses genuine bewilderment — Paul cannot understand how the Galatians could abandon the gospel. The desire to 'change my tone' (allaxai tēn phōnēn mou) may mean he wishes he could speak more gently in person, or that he wants to adapt his approach to their specific situation. A letter is a blunt instrument; Paul would prefer the nuance of face-to-face conversation.
21. Paul's rhetorical question is pointed: the Galatians want to submit to the Torah, but have they actually read it? The verb akouete ('hear, listen to') implies not just hearing but understanding. Paul will now show that the Torah itself, properly read, argues against law-submission for Gentile believers. He uses the law against the law — a brilliant forensic strategy.
22. Paul draws on Genesis 16 and 21. The paidiskē ('slave girl, female servant') is Hagar, the Egyptian slave. The eleuthera ('free woman') is Sarah, though Paul does not name her until verse 31. The legal status of the mothers — slave versus free — determines the legal status of the children, which becomes the foundation for Paul's allegory.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The contrast is between kata sarka ('according to the flesh' — natural human effort) and di' epangelias ('through a promise' — divine intervention). Ishmael was conceived through normal means when Abraham and Sarah tried to fulfill God's promise by their own strategy (Genesis 16). Isaac was conceived through divine promise when both parents were beyond natural capacity for childbearing (Genesis 18:11-14; 21:1-2). The pattern maps onto law (human effort) versus grace (divine promise).
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 18:11-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The verb allēgoroumena ('being allegorized, being spoken allegorically') is the only use of this term in the New Testament. Paul signals he is reading the Genesis narrative typologically — the historical events carry a deeper, prophetic meaning. His identification of Hagar with the Sinai covenant is startling: the law given at Sinai produces slavery, just as Hagar's children are born into her slave status. The word diathēkai ('covenants') here distinguishes two divine arrangements — the Sinai covenant of law and the Abrahamic covenant of promise.
25. The verb systoichei ('corresponds to, stands in the same column as') is a mathematical term for items in the same column — Hagar, Sinai, and the present Jerusalem all line up on the 'slavery' side. Paul's identification of present-day Jerusalem with Hagar/slavery would have been deeply provocative — the holy city, the temple, the center of Jewish identity, aligned with the slave woman. Paul's target is not Jerusalem itself but the Jerusalem-based insistence on law observance for Gentile believers.
26. The 'Jerusalem above' (hē anō Ierousalēm) draws on Jewish apocalyptic tradition of a heavenly Jerusalem that exists as the archetype of the earthly city (cf. Hebrews 12:22; Revelation 21:2). This heavenly city corresponds to Sarah/freedom/promise on the allegory's other column. Paul's 'our mother' includes all believers — both Jewish and Gentile Christians are children of the free woman, citizens of the heavenly Jerusalem.
27. Paul quotes Isaiah 54:1, a promise of restoration after exile. In its original context, the 'barren woman' is Zion, temporarily desolate but destined for abundant offspring. Paul applies it to Sarah — barren, then miraculously fruitful — and by extension to the free woman's covenant community. The promise-children (Gentile believers born through faith) now outnumber the law-children. The connection between Paul's labor pains (v. 19) and this text about labor is not coincidental.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 54:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. Paul draws the application: the Galatian believers correspond to Isaac, not Ishmael. They are children kata Isaak ('according to the pattern of Isaac') — born through divine promise, not human effort. This identification carries immense implications: the Galatians, as Gentiles, occupy the position of the promised heir, while those insisting on law observance occupy the position of the slave woman's child.
29. Paul refers to the conflict between Ishmael and Isaac (Genesis 21:9, where Ishmael 'laughed' or 'mocked' — the Hebrew tsachaq is ambiguous). Paul reads this as persecution and applies it to the present: the agitators' pressure on Gentile believers mirrors Ishmael's harassment of Isaac. The pattern is structural: flesh persecutes spirit, law-children harass promise-children.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 21:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. Paul quotes Genesis 21:10, originally Sarah's demand to Abraham. By attributing it to 'Scripture' rather than Sarah, Paul elevates it to divine command. The double negative ou mē ('certainly not, by no means') with the future klēronomēsei makes the exclusion emphatic and final. The

implied application is that the agitators and their law-based system must be expelled from the community — the slave-woman covenant has no share in the inheritance.

30. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 21:10 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
31. The chapter's conclusion reaffirms the believers' identity: they belong to Sarah's line, not Hagar's — to promise, not law; to freedom, not slavery. The word *dio* ('therefore, for this reason') draws the final inference from the allegory. This declaration sets up the exhortation to freedom that opens chapter 5.

5

Summary: *Galatians 5 transitions from theological argument to ethical exhortation. Paul begins with a ringing declaration of Christian freedom and warns that accepting circumcision obligates one to the entire law, separating them from Christ and grace. He contrasts the law-based approach with faith working through love. After warning about the agitators' corrupting influence, Paul describes the life of freedom: not as license for the flesh, but as love-driven service to one another. He then presents his famous contrast between the works of the flesh and the fruit of the Spirit — a catalog of vices followed by a ninefold list of virtues produced by the Spirit's transforming work.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fruit of the Spirit (vv. 22-23) is one of the most memorized and beloved passages in Paul's letters. Notably, 'fruit' is singular (karpos), not plural — the nine qualities form a unified whole, not a menu of options. The declaration 'against such things there is no law' (v. 23) is both a legal observation and a profound theological statement: the Spirit produces what the law demanded but could never generate. Paul's ethics are pneumatological — moral transformation comes not from rule-keeping but from the Spirit's presence.*

Translation Friction: *The 'works of the flesh' catalog (vv. 19-21) reflects first-century moral categories. The Greek term pharmakeia (v. 20) is rendered 'sorcery' — its connection to modern 'pharmacy' is etymological, not semantic. The phrase 'will not inherit the kingdom of God' (v. 21) raises questions about the security of believers that Paul does not resolve here. The relationship between human effort ('walk by the Spirit,' v. 16) and divine agency ('the Spirit produces fruit,' v. 22) is held in tension.*

Connections: *The freedom declaration (v. 1) echoes the allegory conclusion of 4:31. The law fulfilled in love (v. 14) connects to Romans 13:8-10 and Jesus's teaching in Matthew 22:39. The flesh/Spirit contrast parallels Romans 8:5-13. The fruit of the Spirit echoes the qualities of love in 1 Corinthians 13. The 'crucified the flesh' language (v. 24) connects to 2:20 and 6:14.*

¹For freedom Christ has set us free. Stand firm, then, and do not submit again to a yoke of slavery. ²Look — I, Paul, tell you that if you let yourselves be circumcised, Christ will be of no benefit to you at all. ³I testify again to every person who lets himself be circumcised that he is obligated to keep the entire law. ⁴You who are trying to be justified by the law have been severed from Christ; you have fallen away from grace. ⁵For through the Spirit, by faith, we eagerly await the hope of righteousness. ⁶For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision nor uncircumcision counts for anything, but only faith working through love. ⁷You were running well. Who cut in on you and kept you from obeying the truth? ⁸This persuasion is not from the one who calls you. ⁹A little yeast leavens the whole batch of dough. ¹⁰I am confident in the Lord that you will take no other view. But the one who is disturbing you will bear the judgment, whoever he is. ¹¹But brothers and sisters, if I am still preaching circumcision, why am I still being persecuted? In that case the offense of the cross has been removed. ¹²I wish those who are unsettling you would go all the way and castrate themselves! ¹³For you were called to freedom, brothers and sisters. Only do not use your freedom as an opportunity for the flesh; rather, serve one another through love. ¹⁴For the entire law is fulfilled in a single statement: "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." ¹⁵But if you bite and devour one another, watch out that you are not consumed by one another. ¹⁶But I say, walk by the Spirit, and you will not gratify the desire of the flesh. ¹⁷For the flesh desires what is opposed to the Spirit, and the Spirit what is opposed to the flesh. They are in conflict with each other, so that you do not do whatever you want. ¹⁸But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under the law. ¹⁹Now the works of the flesh are obvious: sexual immorality, impurity, sensuality, ²⁰Idol worship, sorcery, hostility, quarreling,

jealousy, outbursts of anger, rivalry, division, false teaching,. ²¹Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like — of the which I tell you prior to, as I have also informed you in time past, that they which do such things will not inherit God's kingdom. ²²But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, ²³Meekness, temperance — opposed to such there is no law. ²⁴And those who belong to Christ Jesus have crucified the flesh with its passions and desires. ²⁵If we live by the Spirit, let us also keep in step with the Spirit. ²⁶Let us not become conceited, provoking one another, envying one another.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The dative *tē eleutheria* ('for freedom') is emphatic by position — freedom is both the means and the goal of Christ's liberation. The verb *ēleutherōsen* ('set free') is aorist, pointing to a definitive past act (the cross). The imperative *stēkete* ('stand firm') demands active resistance: freedom must be maintained, not passively enjoyed. The 'yoke of slavery' (*zygō douleias*) pictures the law as an animal yoke — the very metaphor used for Torah in Acts 15:10 and by the rabbis themselves, though they viewed it positively ('the yoke of the kingdom of heaven').
2. Paul speaks with full apostolic weight: 'I, Paul' (*egō Paulos*) puts his personal authority behind the warning. The conditional *ean peritemnēsthe* ('if you are circumcised') uses the present subjunctive, indicating a real and imminent possibility. The verb *ōphelēsei* ('will benefit, will profit') with *ouden* ('nothing') makes the stakes absolute: accepting circumcision as a requirement for covenant membership empties Christ of all saving value. Paul is not opposing circumcision as a cultural practice but as a soteriological requirement.
3. The verb *martyromai* ('I solemnly testify, I declare under oath') is a legal term. Paul's logic: circumcision is not a standalone act but an entry point into the entire Torah system. You cannot adopt one requirement in isolation — accepting circumcision means accepting the whole package (*holon ton nomon*, 'the whole law'). The word *opheiletēs* ('debtor, one under obligation') frames law-keeping as a debt that can never be fully paid.
4. The verb *katērgēthēte* ('you have been severed, you have been cut off, you have been rendered ineffective') is devastatingly ironic — those who seek circumcision (cutting) end up being cut off from Christ. The verb *exepesate* ('you have fallen out of') gives us the theological concept of 'falling from grace' — not losing salvation through moral failure, but abandoning the grace principle in favor of the law principle. The two systems are mutually exclusive: grace or law, not both.
5. Paul contrasts the law-based approach (v. 4) with the Spirit-faith approach. The verb *apekdechometha* ('we eagerly await, we look forward to') indicates patient, expectant hope. The 'hope of righteousness' (*elpida dikaiosynēs*) looks forward to final vindication — the full realization of right standing with God. Paul's ethics are eschatological: believers live between the 'already' of justification and the 'not yet' of final righteousness.
6. This verse is the hinge of Galatians' theology. The phrase *pistis di' agapēs energoumenē* ('faith working through love') prevents faith from becoming mere intellectual assent. Faith is not passive but active — and its activity is love. The verb *energoumenē* can be middle ('expressing itself, working') or passive ('being energized, being activated'). If middle: faith naturally expresses itself through love. If passive: faith is activated by love, or by the Spirit's power. Either way, faith and love are inseparable. This verse has been central to Protestant-Catholic dialogue on faith and works.
7. The athletic metaphor returns (cf. 2:2). The verb *enekopsen* ('cut in on, hindered, impeded') was used for cutting into a road to block an army's advance or for breaking into a runner's lane. The question is rhetorical — Paul knows who the agitators are — but the athletic imagery emphasizes that the Galatians were making progress until someone illegally interfered.
8. The word *peismonē* ('persuasion') occurs only here in the New Testament. The 'one who calls' (*tou kalountos*) is God (cf. 1:6, 15). Whatever arguments the agitators are using, they do not originate from God. The verse is terse and devastating — a one-sentence verdict on the agitators' theology.
9. A proverbial saying Paul also uses in 1 Corinthians 5:6. Yeast (*zymē*) works invisibly but transforms everything it touches. The agitators' teaching — even a 'small' requirement like circumcision — will eventually corrupt the entire gospel. The metaphor warns against compromising on what seems minor: in theology, small concessions produce total transformation.
10. Paul expresses confidence (*pepoitha*, 'I have come to trust') qualified by 'in the Lord' — his confidence is in God's work in them, not in their character. The singular *ho tarassōn* ('the one disturbing') may point to a specific ringleader among the agitators. The phrase *hostis ean ē* ('whoever he may be') suggests the person has some status or authority — Paul dismisses it as irrelevant before divine judgment (*krima*).
11. Paul apparently faced the accusation that he still preached circumcision (perhaps based on his circumcision of Timothy, Acts 16:3). His response: if he were preaching circumcision, no one would persecute him — the persecution itself proves he is not. The word *skandalon* ('stumbling block, offense, trap') applied to the cross: a crucified Messiah is inherently offensive because it eliminates human achievement as the basis for standing with God. Adding circumcision would remove this offense — and gut the gospel.
12. The verb *apokopsontai* ('cut off, mutilate') is a shocking escalation of the circumcision vocabulary. Paul's caustic wit: if cutting a little flesh is so beneficial, why not cut off the whole thing? The reference to castration also connects to pagan practices — the priests of Cybele, a goddess worshipped in Galatia, practiced ritual castration. Paul suggests the agitators' obsession with genital cutting has more in common with paganism than with the gospel. The verb *anastatountes* ('unsettling, stirring up, disturbing') is stronger than *tarassontes* (1:7) — these people are turning the community upside down.

13. Paul pivots from defending freedom to defining it. Freedom is not autonomy (doing whatever the flesh desires) but is redirected into voluntary service (*douleuete*, 'serve as slaves' — deliberately using the slavery vocabulary). The paradox of Christian freedom: truly free people choose to serve. The word *aphormē* ('base of operations, launching point, opportunity') is a military term — the flesh looks for any foothold to exploit. Freedom from the law does not mean freedom from love's obligations.
14. Paul quotes Leviticus 19:18. The verb *peplērōtai* ('has been fulfilled, has been brought to completion') is perfect passive — the law finds its full expression in love, not through rule-by-rule obedience but through the love that animates every genuine command. This does not abolish the law but reveals its true purpose. The same argument appears in Romans 13:8-10. Paul the opponent of law-righteousness affirms that love accomplishes what the law intended.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verbs escalate: *daknete* ('bite'), *katesthiēte* ('devour, eat up'), *analōthēte* ('be consumed, be destroyed'). The imagery is of animals tearing each other apart. This suggests the circumcision controversy has already caused serious community conflict in Galatia. Paul's warning: the agitators' teaching is not only theologically wrong but practically destructive — it is tearing the community apart.
16. The imperative *peripateite* ('walk') is Paul's standard term for daily conduct — the ongoing pattern of life, not a single decision. Walking 'by the Spirit' (*pneumati*, dative of means or sphere) means allowing the Spirit to direct one's steps. The double negative *ou mē* with the aorist subjunctive *telesēte* is the strongest negation in Greek: 'you will certainly not, you will by no means.' The promise is emphatic: Spirit-directed living is genuinely effective against the flesh's desires.
17. The verb *epithumei* ('desires, longs for') is used for both flesh and Spirit — both exert active desire. The preposition *kata* ('against') indicates direct opposition. The verb *antikeitai* ('stands opposed, is set against') describes a permanent state of war. The purpose clause *hina mē... poiēte* ('so that you may not do') can be read two ways: (1) the flesh prevents you from doing what the Spirit wants, or (2) the Spirit prevents you from doing what the flesh wants. Paul may intend both — the believer lives in the tension of conflicting desires.
18. The passive *agesthe* ('you are being led') indicates the Spirit's active guidance — believers follow, the Spirit leads. Being Spirit-led and being under law are mutually exclusive conditions. This verse answers the practical question: if not the law, then what guides behavior? Answer: the Spirit. The law was the guardian for minors (3:24-25); the Spirit is the guide for mature heirs.
19. The adjective *phanera* ('visible, obvious, evident') contrasts with the hidden work of the Spirit (v. 22, 'fruit'). The flesh produces visible, identifiable behaviors. The first cluster is sexual: *porneia* ('sexual immorality' — a broad term covering all sexual conduct outside marriage), *akatharsia* ('impurity' — ritual and moral uncleanness), *aselgeia* ('sensuality, debauchery, lack of self-restraint'). Note: the SBLGNT does not include 'adultery' (*moicheia*), which appears in some later manuscripts.
20. The second cluster covers religious deviance: *eidōlōlatia* ('idolatry') and *pharmakeia* ('sorcery, the use of drugs/potions in magical arts'). The third and largest cluster addresses social-communal sins: *echthra* ('hostilities, enmity'), *eris* ('strife, contention'), *zēlos* ('jealousy, envious rivalry'), *thymoi* ('outbursts of rage'), *eritheiai* ('selfish ambition, political manipulation' — originally meant 'working for hire'), *dichostasiai* ('dissensions, divisions'), *haireseis* ('factions, sects' — later 'heresies'). Many of these social sins were likely manifesting in the Galatian congregations as a direct result of the circumcision controversy.
21. The final cluster: *phthonoi* ('envy'), *methai* ('episodes of drunkenness'), *kōmoi* ('carousing, drinking parties'). The phrase *kai ta homoia toutois* ('and things similar to these') makes the list representative, not exhaustive. The verb *prassontes* ('practicing, habitually doing') is present participle indicating a lifestyle pattern, not isolated incidents. The verb *prolegō* ('I warn in advance') with the aorist *proeipon* ('I already warned') indicates Paul gave this warning during his original visit — this is not new teaching. The warning about not inheriting the kingdom (*basileian theou ou klēronomēsousin*) is the most severe: the inheritance language connects to the heir/adoption theme of chapters 3-4.
22. The singular *karpos* ('fruit') — not 'fruits' — indicates these nine qualities form an organic unity, not a list of separate items. Unlike the 'works' (*erga*) of the flesh, which are produced by human effort, 'fruit' grows naturally from the Spirit's life within the believer. The first triad (love, joy, peace) describes the believer's relationship with God. The second triad (patience, kindness, goodness) describes the believer's posture toward others. The third triad (faithfulness, gentleness, self-control) describes the believer's inner character. *Makrothymia* ('patience, long-suffering') is literally 'long-fused' — slow to anger. *Chrēstotēs* ('kindness') is grace expressed in action. *Agathōsynē* ('goodness') is moral excellence that benefits others.
23. *Prautēs* ('gentleness, meekness') is not weakness but strength under control — the quality Aristotle described as the mean between excessive anger and the inability to be angry at all. *Enkrateia* ('self-control, mastery over one's desires') was a central Greek philosophical virtue. The concluding statement *kata tōn toioutōn ouk estin nomos* ('against such things there is no law') operates on multiple levels: (1) obviously, no law prohibits love, joy, or peace; (2) more profoundly, where the Spirit produces these qualities, the law's regulatory function becomes unnecessary; (3) most pointedly for the Galatian context, the Spirit achieves what the law aimed for but could not produce.
24. The verb *estaurōsan* ('crucified') is aorist active — believers are the agents who crucified the flesh, yet this act is possible only because they participate in Christ's crucifixion (2:20). The flesh is not merely restrained but executed — crucifixion is lethal, not temporary. The 'passions' (*pathēmasin*) and 'desires' (*epithymiais*) are the flesh's driving forces. Paul's ethic requires the decisive death of the flesh's power, not its gradual improvement.
25. Paul uses a different word for 'walk' here: *stoichōmen* ('let us keep in step, let us walk in line, let us march in formation') rather than the general *peripateō* of verse 16. *Stoicheō* means to walk in a line, to keep rank — the military metaphor suggests disciplined, orderly following of the Spirit's lead. The conditional *ei zōmen* ('if we live') is a first-class condition assumed to be true: since we do live by the Spirit, we should therefore walk in

step with the Spirit.

- 26.** The adjective *kenodoxoi* ('vainglorious, conceited, empty of glory') literally means 'having empty glory.' The two participles describe the twin expressions of conceit: *prokalomenoi* ('provoking, challenging' — used for challenging someone to a contest) directed at those perceived as lower, and *phthonountes* ('envying') directed at those perceived as higher. Both attitudes destroy community. This verse likely reflects actual dynamics in the Galatian churches, where the circumcision debate had produced competitive factions.

6

Summary: *Galatians 6 concludes the letter with practical instructions for community life: restoring those caught in sin with gentleness, bearing one another's burdens (thus fulfilling 'the law of Christ'), avoiding self-deception, and the principle of sowing and reaping. Paul then takes the pen himself for a final, emphatic summary — the agitators want circumcision for their own glory, but Paul boasts only in the cross, through which the world has been crucified to him. He closes with a blessing of peace and mercy on 'the Israel of God.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'the law of Christ' (v. 2) is striking from the apostle who has spent five chapters arguing against the law. Paul distinguishes between the Torah as a system of justification and Christ's own 'law' of love and burden-bearing. The 'large letters' (v. 11) indicate Paul is writing the conclusion in his own hand, possibly due to the eye condition hinted at in 4:15. The 'marks of Jesus' (v. 17) — the stigmata — refers to the physical scars from Paul's persecution, which he contrasts with the circumcision mark the agitators prize. The closing phrase 'the Israel of God' (v. 16) is one of the most debated in the letter.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'Israel of God' (v. 16) is debated: does it refer to ethnic Israel, to the church as the new Israel, or specifically to Jewish believers? The grammar (kai epi) allows multiple readings. Paul's instruction about supporting teachers financially (v. 6) seems abruptly placed. The 'new creation' language (v. 15) compressed here is developed more fully in 2 Corinthians 5:17.*

Connections: *The 'law of Christ' (v. 2) connects to 1 Corinthians 9:21 and the love command of 5:14. The sowing/reaping principle (vv. 7-8) echoes Proverbs 22:8 and Hosea 8:7. The 'new creation' (v. 15) connects to 2 Corinthians 5:17 and Isaiah 65:17. The 'marks of Jesus' (v. 17) connect to 2 Corinthians 4:10 and 11:23-27. Paul's autograph (v. 11) parallels 1 Corinthians 16:21 and Colossians 4:18.*

¹Brothers and sisters, if anyone is caught in a transgression, you who are spiritual should restore that person in a spirit of gentleness — but watch yourself, so that you too are not tempted. ²Bear one another's burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ. ³For if anyone thinks they are something when they are nothing, they deceive themselves. ⁴Let each person examine their own work, and then their reason to boast will be in themselves alone, and not in comparison with someone else. ⁵For each one will carry their own load. ⁶Let the one who is taught the word share all good things with the one who teaches. ⁷Do not be deceived: God is not mocked. Whatever a person sows, that they will also reap. ⁸The one who sows to their own flesh will reap destruction from the flesh, but the one who sows to the Spirit will reap eternal life from the Spirit. ⁹Let us not grow weary of doing good, for at the proper time we will reap, if we do not give up. ¹⁰So then, as we have opportunity, let us do good to everyone, and especially to those who belong to the household of faith. ¹¹See what large letters I am writing to you with my own hand! ¹²Those who want to make a good impression outwardly are trying to compel you to be circumcised — only so that they will not be persecuted for the cross of Christ. ¹³For not even those who are circumcised keep the law themselves, but they want you to be circumcised so that they may boast in your flesh. ¹⁴But as for me, may I never boast except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world. ¹⁵For neither circumcision counts for anything, nor uncircumcision, but a new creation. ¹⁶And as for all who will walk by this rule, peace and mercy be upon them, and upon the Israel of God. ¹⁷From now on, let no one cause me trouble, for I bear on my body the marks of Jesus. ¹⁸The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit, brothers and sisters. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *prolēmphthē* ('be caught, be overtaken, be surprised by') suggests the person was caught off guard by the sin rather than deliberately pursuing it. The verb *katartizete* ('restore, mend, put in order') was used for setting a broken bone or mending a torn net — the goal is repair, not punishment. The phrase *hoi pneumatikoi* ('you who are spiritual') is not an elite class but describes all who walk by the Spirit (5:25). The shift from plural 'you' to singular 'yourself' (*seauton*) makes the warning intensely personal.
2. The word *barē* ('burdens, heavy loads') includes moral failures (v. 1), suffering, and any weight that crushes a person. The phrase *ton nomon tou Christou* ('the law of Christ') is remarkable — Paul who has argued against the law now speaks of Christ's law. This is not a new legal code but the love command (5:14) embodied in Christ's own life of self-giving (2:20). The verb *anaplērōsete* ('you will fulfill, you will fill up completely') intensifies the simple *plērōō* — the law of Christ is super-abundantly fulfilled through mutual burden-bearing.
3. The verb *phrenapatā* ('deceive one's own mind') is a compound: *phrēn* ('mind') + *apataō* ('deceive'). Self-deception is the flesh's most effective strategy. The phrase *einai ti* ('to be something') echoes Paul's ironic use of *dokountes* ('those who seem to be something') for the Jerusalem leaders in 2:6. Conceit — thinking oneself too important to serve — prevents the burden-bearing of verse 2.
4. The verb *dokimazetō* ('let him examine, let him test') was used for assaying metals — testing for genuineness. Paul redirects the Galatians from comparing themselves with others (which feeds conceit or envy) to honest self-examination. The *kauchēma* ('ground for boasting, reason for pride') when properly directed is not competitive but based on one's own work before God.
5. The word *phortion* ('load, pack') is different from *barē* ('burdens') in verse 2. *Barē* suggests crushing weights that require communal support; *phortion* is a soldier's personal pack or a ship's individual cargo — the normal responsibilities each person must carry. There is no contradiction: we share each other's crushing burdens (v. 2) while each carrying our own personal responsibilities (v. 5).
6. The verb *katēchoumenos* ('being instructed, being catechized') gives us the English word 'catechism.' It implies systematic teaching of the faith. The verb *koinōneitō* ('let him share, let him have fellowship in') indicates material support — the student should share financial resources with the teacher. The phrase *en pasin agathois* ('in all good things') likely means material goods. This instruction about supporting teachers is a practical application of burden-bearing.
7. The verb *myktērizetai* ('is mocked, is treated with contempt') literally means 'to turn up the nose at.' The agricultural metaphor of sowing and reaping is a universal wisdom principle (cf. Proverbs 22:8; Hosea 8:7; Job 4:8). Paul applies it specifically to the flesh/Spirit contrast that follows in verse 8. The warning *mē planasthe* ('do not be deceived, do not wander astray') suggests the Galatians may think they can adopt the flesh's system without consequences.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 22:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Hosea 8:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Job 4:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The preposition *eis* ('into, toward') with 'sowing' indicates the field in which one invests: sowing into the flesh means investing one's life in the flesh's priorities. The harvest (*therizo*) corresponds to the field: flesh produces *phthora* ('decay, corruption, destruction') and Spirit produces *zōēn aiōnion* ('life of the age to come, eternal life'). In the Galatian context, 'sowing to the flesh' includes the circumcision party's investment in external religious performance.
9. The verb *enkakōmen* ('grow weary, become discouraged, lose heart') acknowledges the real difficulty of persevering in good works when the harvest is delayed. The phrase *kairō idiō* ('at the proper time, in its own season') assures that God's timing, though often frustrating, is precise. The participial condition *mē eklyomenoi* ('not giving up, not becoming exhausted') uses a word that means 'to become slack, to faint' — the image is of a runner whose muscles give out before the finish line.
10. The phrase *hōs kairon echomen* ('as we have opportunity/time') treats the present moment as a limited window for action. The exhortation extends 'to everyone' (*pros pantas*) — not just fellow believers — but prioritizes 'the household of faith' (*tous oikeious tēs pisteōs*). The word *oikeios* ('belonging to the household, family member') pictures the believing community as a family or household. The priority is not exclusion of outsiders but special care for the faith family.
11. The phrase *pēlikois grammasin* ('with what large letters') refers to the size of the handwriting, not the length of the letter. Paul typically dictated his letters to a secretary (*amanuensis*) and added a personal note in his own handwriting at the end (cf. 1 Corinthians 16:21; 2 Thessalonians 3:17). The large letters may indicate Paul's poor eyesight (4:15), his emphasis (writing large for rhetorical effect), or simply unfamiliarity with writing (he was a speaker, not a scribe). From this point to the end of the letter, Paul writes personally.
12. The verb *euprosōpēsai* ('to make a good face, to put on a good appearance') occurs only here in the New Testament. The agitators' motive is exposed: they push circumcision not from theological conviction but to avoid persecution. If they can show Jewish authorities that their Gentile converts are being circumcised, they can present their movement as a Torah-observant sect rather than a law-free community — and escape the hostility that the cross provokes.

- 13.** Paul's charge is hypocrisy: the agitators demand circumcision but do not themselves observe the whole law (cf. 5:3). Their true motive is *kauchēsōntai* ('that they may boast') — they want to collect Gentile foreskins as trophies. The phrase *en tē hymetera sarki* ('in your flesh') is bitterly literal: the circumcised flesh of the Galatians would become the agitators' badge of missionary success.
- 14.** Paul's *mē genoīto* ('may it never be!') here is not a response to an objection but a vow. The cross is the only legitimate ground for boasting — the very thing that is an offense (5:11) and foolishness (1 Corinthians 1:23) to the world. The double crucifixion — 'the world to me, and I to the world' — indicates mutual death: Paul is dead to the world's value system, and the world's attractions have lost their power over him. The pronoun *hou* ('through which/whom') is ambiguous — it could refer to the cross or to Christ. The meaning converges either way.
- 15.** The phrase *kainē ktisis* ('new creation') is Paul's most radical category. Circumcision versus uncircumcision — the issue tearing the Galatian churches apart — is rendered utterly irrelevant by the new creation that Christ inaugurates. The word *kainē* means 'new in quality' (not *neos*, 'new in time'). This is not renovation but transformation — a new order of existence. The concept draws on Isaiah 65:17 ('new heavens and new earth') and is developed more fully in 2 Corinthians 5:17.
- 15.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 65:17 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 16.** The word *kanōn* ('rule, standard, measuring rod') refers to the new-creation principle of verse 15. The verb *stochēsousin* ('will walk in line with') echoes 5:25. The blessing *eirēnē... kai eleos* ('peace... and mercy') echoes Jewish synagogue blessings. The phrase *kai epi ton Israēl tou theou* ('and upon the Israel of God') is heavily debated: (1) *kai* is exegetical ('that is, the Israel of God'), making 'Israel of God' synonymous with 'all who walk by this rule'; (2) *kai* is additive ('and also upon the Israel of God'), adding a separate blessing on ethnic Israel or on Jewish Christians. The grammar supports both readings. Given Paul's argument throughout Galatians, reading (1) seems contextually stronger, but we preserve the ambiguity.
- 17.** The word *stigmata* ('marks, brands, tattoos') refers to the scars Paul carries from beatings, stonings, and other persecutions (cf. 2 Corinthians 11:23-27). In the ancient world, *stigmata* were brands placed on slaves, soldiers, or devotees of a deity to indicate ownership. Paul's scars are his brand of belonging to Jesus — far more significant than the circumcision mark the agitators promote. The irony: they boast in a mark on others' flesh; Paul boasts in marks on his own flesh, received in service to Christ.
- 18.** Paul closes with grace — the letter that opened with astonishment (1:6) ends with benediction. The word *adelphoi* ('brothers and sisters') — placed at the end for emphasis — is a final act of reconciliation: despite the sharp rebukes, Paul still considers the Galatians family. The phrase *meta tou pneumatou hymōn* ('with your spirit') is more intimate than the standard 'with you' — Paul prays that grace will penetrate to the deepest level of their being.

Ephesians

1

Summary: *Ephesians 1 opens with Paul's greeting and immediately launches into one of the most expansive theological statements in the New Testament — a single sentence in Greek (vv. 3-14) that sweeps from eternity past (predestination before the foundation of the world) through the present (redemption, forgiveness, the revelation of God's mystery) to eternity future (the summing up of all things in Christ). The chapter then transitions to a prayer of thanksgiving for the Ephesians' faith and a petition that they would know the hope of God's calling, the riches of his inheritance, and the surpassing greatness of his power — the same power that raised Christ from the dead and seated him at God's right hand, far above every authority, with all things under his feet.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 3-14 constitute the longest sentence in the Greek New Testament — a cascading doxology with three movements: the Father's election (vv. 3-6), the Son's redemption (vv. 7-12), and the Spirit's sealing (vv. 13-14). Each section concludes with a refrain about God's glory. The cosmic scope is breathtaking: God's plan encompasses the reconciliation of 'all things in heaven and on earth' (v. 10). The prayer section (vv. 15-23) reaches its climax in a vision of Christ's authority over all cosmic powers and his headship over the church, which is his body.*

Translation Friction: *The words 'in Ephesus' (en Ephesō, v. 1) are absent from important early manuscripts (P46, Sinaiticus, Vaticanus), suggesting this may have been a circular letter. Paul's predestination language (vv. 4-5, 11) has generated centuries of theological debate between Calvinist and Arminian traditions. We render the Greek faithfully without resolving these disputes. The cosmic language of 'rulers and authorities' (v. 21) reflects first-century Jewish angelology.*

Connections: *The blessing formula (v. 3) echoes Jewish berakah prayers. The predestination language connects to Romans 8:28-30. The 'mystery' (v. 9) is developed throughout Ephesians (3:3-6, 5:32, 6:19). The 'all things under his feet' (v. 22) quotes Psalm 8:6, also used in 1 Corinthians 15:27. The church as Christ's body (v. 23) develops the theme of 1 Corinthians 12 and Colossians 1:18.*

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, to the saints who are in Ephesus, the faithful in Christ Jesus: ²And from the lord jesus christ, grace be to you, and peace, from God our Father. ³Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavenly places, ⁴According as he has chosen us in him prior to the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame prior to him in love:. ⁵After

predestinated us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, in keeping with to the good pleasure of his will,. ⁶Indeed, to the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he has made us accepted in the dear. ⁷In him we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of our trespasses, according to the riches of his grace, ⁸In which he has abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence. ⁹After appointed known to us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he has purposed in himself:. ¹⁰That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather as one in one all matters in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth. Indeed in him:. ¹¹In him we have also been claimed as God's own, having been predestined according to the purpose of the one who accomplishes all things according to the counsel of his will, ¹²Indeed, that we should be to the praise of all his splendor, who first trusted in Christ. ¹³In him you also, when you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and believed in him, were sealed with the promised Holy Spirit, ¹⁴Indeed, which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, to the praise of all his splendor. ¹⁵For this reason, ever since I heard about your faith in the Lord Jesus and your love for all the saints, ¹⁶I have not stopped giving thanks for you, remembering you in my prayers, ¹⁷That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Parent of splendor, may provide to you the inner life of insight and revelation in the knowledge of him:. ¹⁸The sight of your understanding while enlightened. That you may recognize what is the confident expectation of his calling, and what the riches of the splendor of his inheritance in the saints,. ¹⁹What is the exceeding greatness of his authority to us-ward who trust, according to the working of his mighty authority,. ²⁰Indeed, which he wrought in Christ, when he brought him back to life, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,. ²¹Far beyond all principality, power, might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this present age, but also in that which is to come:. ²²And he put all things under his feet and gave him as head over all things to the church, ²³The church is his body, the full expression of him who fills everything in every way.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase 'in Ephesus' (en Ephesō) is absent from several of the earliest and best manuscripts, suggesting this may have been a circular letter with a blank space for the destination. The SBLGNT includes it. The word *hagiois* ('saints, holy ones') does not mean morally perfect people but those 'set apart' — consecrated to God's purposes. The qualifier *pistois* ('faithful, believing') further identifies them as the believing community.
2. Paul's standard greeting combining *charis* ('grace') and *eirēnē* ('peace'). The single preposition *apo* ('from') governs both God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ, presenting them as coordinate sources of grace and peace.
3. The opening *eulogētos* ('blessed') begins a Jewish-style *berakah* (blessing formula) that extends through verse 14 in a single Greek sentence. The phrase *en tois epouraniois* ('in the heavenly places') is distinctive to Ephesians (1:20; 2:6; 3:10; 6:12) — it designates the spiritual dimension where believers already exist 'in Christ.' The triple use of *eulog-* words (blessed, blessed, blessing) creates emphasis: God is blessed because he has blessed us with blessings. The phrase *en Christō* ('in Christ') is the letter's keynote — appearing about thirty-five times in Ephesians.
4. The verb *exelexato* ('chose, elected') is aorist middle — God chose for himself. The temporal marker *pro katabolēs kosmou* ('before the foundation of the world') places the election in eternity past, before creation itself. The purpose of election is holiness: *einai hēmas hagious kai amōmous* ('that we should be holy and blameless'). The word *amōmos* ('without blemish') is sacrificial language — a sacrificial animal had to be without defect. The phrase *en agapē* ('in love') is grammatically ambiguous — it could modify 'blameless before him in love' (describing the believer's character) or 'in love he predestined us' (describing God's motive). We punctuate it with verse 5 (God's love as the motive for predestination), though noting the ambiguity.
5. The verb *proorisas* ('having predestined, having determined beforehand') is from *pro* ('before') + *horizō* ('to set a boundary, to determine'). God established the boundary of his people before time. The goal of predestination is *huiōthesia* ('adoption') — the same Roman legal concept Paul used in Galatians 4:5. The phrase *kata tēn eudokian tou thelēmatos autou* ('according to the good pleasure of his will') grounds predestination in God's sovereign delight, not in human merit or foreseen faith.
6. The first refrain: *eis epainon doxēs tēs charitos autou* ('to the praise of the glory of his grace'). The chain of genitives piles glory upon glory. The verb *echarītōsen* ('graced, favored, freely bestowed grace') is from the same root as *charis* ('grace') — God 'graced us with grace.' The title *ho ēgapēmenos* ('the Beloved') for Christ echoes the baptismal voice: 'This is my beloved Son' (Matthew 3:17). This refrain closes the first movement (the Father's election).
7. The second movement begins: the Son's redemption. The word *apolytrōsis* ('redemption, release through ransom') echoes the Old Testament *go'el* concept — ransom of a kinsman from bondage. The phrase *dia tou haimatos autou* ('through his blood') specifies the ransom price. The appositive *tēn aphesin tōn paraptōmatōn* ('the forgiveness of trespasses') defines redemption's content: release from guilt. The phrase *to ploutos tēs charitos* ('the riches of grace') — grace is not meager but lavish.
8. The verb *eperisseusen* ('caused to abound, lavished, poured out in excess') indicates overflowing abundance — God does not meter grace but floods it. The phrase *en pasē sophia kai phronēsei* ('with all wisdom and understanding') can modify either God (he lavished grace wisely) or the believers (he gave us wisdom and insight along with grace). Both readings are theologically sound; the latter connects to the revelation in verse 9.

9. The word *mystērion* ('mystery') in Paul does not mean 'mysterious' or 'unknowable' but refers to a divine plan once hidden but now revealed. The content of this mystery is disclosed in verse 10. The verb *proetheto* ('set forth, planned beforehand, purposed') indicates a deliberate, prior decision. The phrase *en autō* could refer to God himself ('in himself') or to Christ ('in him'). Given Ephesians' persistent *en Christō* theme, the christological reading is preferred.
10. The word *oikonomia* ('administration, plan, management of a household') pictures God as a master steward implementing his cosmic household plan. The phrase *tou plērōmatos tōn kairōn* ('of the fullness of the times') echoes Galatians 4:4 but extends it cosmically. The verb *anakephalaiōsasthai* ('to sum up, to bring together under one head, to recapitulate') is the theological center of Ephesians. It combines *ana* ('again') + *kephalē* ('head') — literally 'to re-head,' to bring everything back under its proper headship. God's plan is the reunification of a fractured cosmos under Christ's authority. The scope is total: *ta panta* ('all things'), *ta epi tois ouranois kai ta epi tēs gēs* ('things in heaven and things on earth').
11. The verb *eklērōthēmen* is debated: it could mean 'we obtained an inheritance' (active sense) or 'we were made an inheritance' (passive sense — God claimed us as his possession). The passive reading aligns with Deuteronomy 32:9 ('the LORD's portion is his people') and is preferred here. The phrase *tou ta panta energountos* ('the one who works all things') asserts God's comprehensive sovereignty. The phrase *kata tēn boulēn tou thelēmatos autou* ('according to the counsel of his will') layers purpose upon purpose — God's actions are deliberate, not arbitrary.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 32:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The second refrain: *eis epainon doxēs autou* ('for the praise of his glory'). The participle *proēlpikotas* ('having hoped beforehand, having been the first to hope') likely distinguishes Jewish believers (who hoped in the Messiah before his coming) from Gentile believers (addressed in v. 13). This closes the second movement (the Son's redemption).
13. The third movement begins: the Spirit's sealing. The sequence is hear believe be sealed. The 'word of truth' is defined as 'the gospel of your salvation' — two phrases in apposition. The verb *esphragisthēte* ('you were sealed') uses the image of a seal (*sphragis*) pressed into wax — marking ownership, authenticity, and security. In the ancient world, a seal guaranteed that a document or container had not been tampered with. The Spirit is the seal that marks believers as God's property. The phrase *tō pneumati tēs epangelias tō hagiō* ('with the Holy Spirit of the promise') identifies the Spirit as the fulfillment of God's promise (cf. Joel 2:28-29; Acts 2:33).
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joel 2:28-29 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The word *arrabōn* ('down payment, deposit, guarantee') is a commercial term — a first installment that guarantees the full payment to come. The Spirit is not the complete inheritance but the preview that guarantees the rest. The phrase *eis apolytrōsin tēs peripoiēseōs* ('until the redemption of the possession') likely means 'until God fully redeems those he has acquired as his own.' The third refrain closes the doxology: *eis epainon tēs doxēs autou* ('to the praise of his glory'). The Trinitarian structure is complete: Father (vv. 3-6), Son (vv. 7-12), Spirit (vv. 13-14), each section ending in praise.
15. The phrase *dia touto* ('for this reason') links the prayer to the doxology: because of everything God has done (vv. 3-14), Paul prays. The mention of 'hearing about' their faith (*akousas*) may support the circular letter theory — Paul would not need to hear about the faith of a church he founded. Some manuscripts omit 'love' (*agapēn*), but the SBLGNT includes it.
16. The present tense *ou pauomai* ('I do not cease') indicates continuous, habitual prayer. The phrase *mneian poioumenos* ('making mention, remembering') is a standard epistolary convention, but Paul's extended prayer (vv. 17-23) shows it is more than formula.
17. The title *ho patēr tēs doxēs* ('the Father of glory') is unique — God is the source and origin of all glory. The phrase *pneuma sophias kai apokalypseōs* ('a spirit of wisdom and revelation') could refer to the Holy Spirit or to a disposition of wisdom — the lowercase 'spirit' is deliberately ambiguous. The word *epignōsis* ('full knowledge, deep recognition') is stronger than *gnōsis* ('knowledge') — it implies experiential, relational knowledge, not merely intellectual.
18. The phrase *tous ophthalmous tēs kardias* ('the eyes of the heart') combines seeing and feeling — the heart in Hebrew/biblical thought is the center of understanding and will, not merely emotion. Paul prays for illumination of their deepest perception. Three 'what' (*tis*) clauses follow, each more expansive: (1) the hope of his calling, (2) the riches of his inheritance, (3) the greatness of his power (v. 19). The phrase 'his inheritance among the saints' is ambiguous: either the inheritance God gives to the saints or God's own inheritance in the saints (i.e., the saints themselves are God's treasured possession).
19. Paul piles four power-words: *dynamis* ('power, ability'), *energeia* ('working, effective operation'), *kratos* ('might, dominion, ruling power'), *ischys* ('strength, force'). The accumulation is deliberate — no single word can capture the magnitude of God's power directed toward believers. The participle *hyperballon* ('surpassing, exceeding, going beyond') suggests that this power overflows every container. This is not theoretical power but power 'toward us who believe' (*eis hēmas tous pisteuontas*).
20. The power Paul prays about is not abstract — it has a specific historical demonstration: the resurrection and exaltation of Christ. The verb *enērgēsēn* ('exerted, worked, put into operation') is the verbal form of the noun *energeia* from verse 19. The phrase *kathisas en dexia autou* ('having seated at his right hand') echoes Psalm 110:1, the most quoted Old Testament verse in the New Testament. The right hand is the position of authority, honor, and power.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** The four terms — archē ('ruler, principality'), exousia ('authority'), dynamis ('power'), kyriotēs ('dominion, lordship') — likely refer to ranks of spiritual beings in first-century Jewish angelology. Christ is exalted hyperanō ('far above') all of them. The phrase pantos onomatos onomazomenou ('every name that is named') extends the scope beyond known categories — whatever power exists, named or unnamed, in any era, Christ is above it. The temporal extension 'not only in this age but also in the one to come' closes every loophole: Christ's supremacy is permanent.
- 22.** The phrase panta hypetaxen hypo tous podas autou ('put all things under his feet') quotes Psalm 8:6, applied to Christ as the true human who fulfills humanity's intended dominion over creation. The phrase kephalēn hyper panta ('head over all things') establishes Christ's universal lordship. But this cosmic head is 'given to the church' (edōken tē ekklēsia) — the church receives Christ as its head. The implication: the church is the community under Christ's direct authority, benefiting from his cosmic rule.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 8:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The church is identified as Christ's sōma ('body') — not merely an organization but an organic extension of Christ's presence. The word plērōma ('fullness, completeness') is a dense theological term: the church is the plērōma of Christ. This could mean the church fills up Christ (the church is what completes Christ's presence in the world) or Christ fills the church (the church is full of Christ). The participle plēroumenou can be middle ('who fills') or passive ('who is being filled'). The active sense — Christ fills all things in every way — best fits the context's emphasis on Christ's cosmic authority. The church is where the cosmos-filling Christ is most fully present.

2

Summary: *Ephesians 2 moves from the cosmic heights of chapter 1 to the personal and corporate experience of salvation. The first section (vv. 1-10) describes humanity's condition — dead in trespasses, enslaved to the world, the flesh, and the devil — and God's response: making them alive with Christ, raising them with him, and seating them with him in the heavenly places. The pivot comes in verses 8-9, the definitive statement of grace-based salvation through faith. Verse 10 grounds the believer's new identity as God's 'workmanship, created for good works.' The second section (vv. 11-22) addresses the Jew-Gentile divide: Gentiles who were once excluded from the covenants of promise have been brought near through Christ's blood. Christ himself is their peace, breaking down the dividing wall of hostility, creating one new humanity, and reconciling both groups to God through the cross. The chapter climaxes with the image of the church as a holy temple, built on the foundation of apostles and prophets, with Christ as the cornerstone.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 8-9 are among the most quoted verses in all of Scripture and the cornerstone of Reformation soteriology. The 'dividing wall of hostility' (v. 14) may allude to the physical barrier in the Jerusalem temple that separated the Court of the Gentiles from the inner courts — a wall with inscriptions threatening death to any Gentile who crossed it. The 'one new humanity' (v. 15) is a radical concept: God does not assimilate Gentiles into Israel or Jews into a Gentile church, but creates something entirely new. The temple imagery (vv. 19-22) presents the church as the new dwelling place of God — replacing the Jerusalem temple with a living structure.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'the law of commandments in ordinances' (v. 15) is debated: does Christ abolish the Mosaic law itself, or only the law as a barrier between Jews and Gentiles? The relationship between this text and Romans 3:31 ('we uphold the law') requires careful reading. The 'dividing wall' reference is historically specific — the temple barrier — but its theological application is broader.*

Connections: *The death-to-life movement (vv. 1-6) parallels Romans 6:1-11 and Colossians 2:13. Grace through faith (vv. 8-9) condenses the argument of Romans 3:21-28. The 'brought near' language (v. 13) echoes Isaiah 57:19. The temple imagery (vv. 19-22) connects to 1 Corinthians 3:16-17 and 1 Peter 2:4-5. The 'cornerstone' (v. 20) draws on Isaiah 28:16 and Psalm 118:22.*

¹And you were dead in your trespasses and sins, ²Wherein in moment past you walked according to the course of this age, according to the prince of the authority of the air, the inner life that now worketh in genuine offspring of disobedience:. ³Among them we all also once lived in the passions of our flesh, carrying out the desires of the body and the mind, and we were by nature children of wrath, just like the rest of humanity. ⁴But God, being rich in mercy, because of the great love with which he loved us, ⁵Not even when we were no longer alive in wrongdoings, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace

you are saved;). ⁶Has raised us up as one, and fashioned us take a seat together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:. ⁷Indeed, that in the ages to come he might shew the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us by way of Christ Jesus. ⁸For or by grace you have been saved through faith. And this is not from yourselves; it is the gift of God, ⁹Indeed, not of works, lest any man should boast. ¹⁰For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus for good works, which God prepared in advance so that we would walk in them. ¹¹Therefore remember that at one time you Gentiles in the flesh — called "the uncircumcision" by what is called "the circumcision," which is performed in the flesh by human hands — ¹²That at that occasion you were apart from Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and apart from God in the world. ¹³But now in Christ Jesus, you who once were far away have been brought near by the blood of Christ. ¹⁴For he himself is our peace, who has made the two groups one and has destroyed the dividing wall of hostility, in his flesh, ¹⁵By his sacrifice he set aside the law with its commandments and regulations. His purpose was to create one new humanity out of two groups, making peace. ¹⁶That he might reconcile both to God in one body by the cross, after slain the enmity thereby:. ¹⁷And he came and proclaimed peace to you who were far away and peace to those who were near. ¹⁸For by way of him we both have access by one Spirit to the Father. ¹⁹So then, you are no longer strangers and aliens, but fellow citizens with the saints and members of God's household, ²⁰Are built upon the foundation of the messengers and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone. ²¹In whom every one of the building fitly framed together groweth to an holy temple in the Lord:. ²²In whom you also are builded together for an habitation of God by way of the Spirit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The sentence that begins here does not reach its main verb until verse 5 ('made us alive'). The accusative hymas ('you') is the object held in suspension — 'you who were dead.' The word nekrous ('dead') is not metaphorical softening but a real theological claim: apart from God's intervention, the human condition is spiritual death. The plural paraptōmasin ('trespasses, false steps') and hamartiais ('sins, failures to hit the mark') describe two aspects of the same reality.
2. Three powers controlled the pre-Christian life: (1) ton aiōna tou kosmou toutou ('the age/course of this world') — the present evil age's value system; (2) ton archonta tēs exousias tou aeris ('the ruler of the power of the air') — a personal spiritual adversary; (3) the spirit (pneuma) at work in 'the children of disobedience' (tois huiōis tēs apeitheias — a Hebraism meaning 'those characterized by disobedience'). The 'air' (aeros) was believed in ancient cosmology to be the domain of spiritual beings between earth and heaven.
3. The shift from 'you' (Gentiles, vv. 1-2) to 'we all' (hēmeis pantes, including Jewish believers) universalizes the indictment — everyone, Jew and Gentile alike, was in the same condition. The phrase tekna physei orgēs ('children by nature of wrath') means that this condition was not incidental but inherent — humanity's default state. The word orgēs ('wrath') refers to God's settled opposition to sin, not emotional anger. The universality ('just like the rest') prevents any Jewish claim to exemption.
4. The two-word pivot ho de theos ('but God') is among the most dramatic transitions in Scripture. After the comprehensive indictment of verses 1-3, the subject changes from human failure to divine initiative. God's mercy is not scarce but plousios ('rich, abundant, overflowing'). The motive is agapē — not human merit or potential but God's own love. The verb ēgapēsen ('he loved') is aorist, pointing to the definitive act of love in Christ.
5. The main verb finally arrives: synezōopoiēsen ('made alive together with'). The syn- prefix ('together with') is the first of three 'co-' verbs (made alive with, raised with, seated with) that define the believer's participation in Christ's experience. The parenthetical chariti este sesōsmenoi ('by grace you have been saved') is a compressed version of verses 8-9, inserted as if Paul cannot wait to state the principle. The perfect participle sesōsmenoi ('having been saved and remaining saved') indicates a completed action with permanent results.
6. The second and third 'co-' verbs: synēgeiren ('raised together with') and synekathisen ('seated together with'). What happened to Christ (1:20) has happened to believers 'in Christ.' The present tense of the believer's existence is described in past tenses — they have already been raised and seated. This is 'realized eschatology': the believer's spiritual position is already in the heavenly places, even while they live on earth. The en Christō Iēsou ('in Christ Jesus') is the key — apart from Christ, none of this is real.
7. The purpose of salvation extends into eternity: God saved us to put his grace on permanent display. The phrase en tois aiōsin tois eperchomenois ('in the ages that are coming upon us') indicates endless future ages — an infinite gallery in which redeemed humanity is the exhibit of divine grace. The verb endeixētai ('might display, might demonstrate, might prove') was used for putting evidence on display in a courtroom. The saved are God's evidence of grace.
8. This verse is the compressed theological center of Ephesians and one of the most important soteriological statements in the New Testament. The dative tē chariti ('by grace') indicates the ground or basis. The prepositional phrase dia pisteōs ('through faith') indicates the means or channel. The phrase kai touto ouk ex hymōn ('and this not from yourselves') has been debated: what does 'this' (touto, neuter) refer to? Since both charis and pistis are feminine, touto likely refers to the entire salvific event — the grace-faith-salvation complex — rather than to faith alone. Theou to dōron ('God's

gift') is emphatic by position: the gift belongs to God, not to human effort.

9. The negative *ouk ex ergōn* ('not from works') excludes human effort as the basis for salvation. The purpose clause *hina mē tis kauchēsetai* ('so that no one might boast') reveals the reason for the exclusion: salvation by works would create grounds for human pride. Grace eliminates boasting by making salvation entirely God's initiative. This echoes Romans 3:27 ('Where then is boasting? It is excluded.').
10. The word *poiēma* ('workmanship, thing made, masterpiece') is from *poieō* ('to make') — we get 'poem' from this word. Believers are God's crafted work, his artistic creation. The verb *ktisthentes* ('having been created') is creation language — salvation is new creation, not self-improvement. Good works are the purpose (*epi ergois agathois*, 'for good works') but not the cause of salvation. The verb *proētoimasen* ('prepared beforehand, pre-arranged') indicates that even the good works were divinely planned — believers walk a path God laid out before they existed.
11. The section shifts from the individual experience of salvation (vv. 1-10) to its corporate, ethnic dimension: Jew-Gentile reconciliation. The verb *mnēmoneuete* ('remember') is an imperative — they must not forget where they came from. The labels 'uncircumcision' and 'circumcision' are introduced with double irony: both are 'called' (*legomenoi*) these names — they are conventional labels. The modifier *cheiropoiētou* ('made by hands') subtly relativizes physical circumcision — it is a human-made distinction (cf. 'not made by hands' in Colossians 2:11).
12. Five deprivations are listed: (1) *chōris Christou* ('without Christ, separated from the Messiah'); (2) *apellotriōmenoi tēs politeias tou Israēl* ('alienated from Israel's citizenship' — excluded from the covenant community); (3) *xenoi tōn diathēkōn tēs epangelias* ('strangers to the covenants of promise' — the plural 'covenants' likely includes the Abrahamic, Mosaic, and Davidic); (4) *elpida mē echontes* ('having no hope'); (5) *atheoi en tō kosmō* ('without God in the world' — *atheoi* means 'godless,' the only use of this word in the New Testament). The catalog moves from the theological (no Messiah) to the existential (no hope, no God).
13. The pivot *nyni de* ('but now') parallels the 'but God' of verse 4. The far/near language (*makran/engys*) echoes Isaiah 57:19 ('Peace, peace, to the far and to the near'). In Jewish usage, 'those who are far' referred to Gentiles, 'those who are near' to Israel. The instrument of this approach is *en tō haimati tou Christou* ('by the blood of Christ') — Christ's sacrificial death removes the barrier. The verb *egenēthēte* ('you were made, you became') indicates a definitive change of status.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 57:19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Christ is not merely the peacemaker but is himself *hē eirēnē hēmōn* ('our peace'). The phrase *ta amphotera hen* ('the two things one') refers to Jew and Gentile made into a single entity. The *mesotoichon tou phragmou* ('the middle wall of the partition/fence') likely alludes to the physical barrier in the Jerusalem temple — the *soreg*, a stone wall with inscriptions in Greek and Latin warning Gentiles that crossing it meant death. Archaeologists have recovered two of these inscriptions. Christ's body (*en tē sarki autou*) is the instrument of demolition. The word *echthran* ('hostility, enmity') is in apposition to 'the wall' — the wall is the hostility.
15. The phrase *ton nomon tōn entolōn en dogmasin* ('the law of the commandments in/consisting of ordinances') specifies what was abolished: the law in its function as a barrier between Jew and Gentile — the specific regulations (*dogmasin*, 'decrees, ordinances') that separated the two communities. The verb *katargēsas* ('having rendered inoperative, having abolished') is strong. The purpose is creation: *ktisē* ('might create') — the same verb used for divine creation. The 'one new humanity' (*hena kainon anthrōpon*) is not Jews becoming Gentiles or Gentiles becoming Jews, but a new category entirely. The word *kainos* ('new in kind') indicates something unprecedented.
16. The verb *apokatallaxē* ('might fully reconcile') has the double prefix *apo-kata-* intensifying the reconciliation — thorough, complete restoration. The reconciliation is double: horizontal (Jew with Gentile, 'both') and vertical (both groups with God, *tō theō*). The instrument is the cross (*dia tou staurou*). The phrase *apokteiras tēn echthran en autō* ('having killed the enmity in/by it') is brilliantly paradoxical: on the cross, Christ was killed, but the enmity was the real casualty. The hostility died with Christ.
17. Paul echoes Isaiah 57:19 ('Peace, peace, to the far and to the near'). The repetition of *eirēnēn* ('peace') — once for each group — emphasizes that the same peace is offered to both. Christ's 'coming' (*elthōn*) may refer to his earthly ministry, his post-resurrection appearances, or his coming through the apostolic proclamation. The far/near categories of verse 13 return: Gentiles (far) and Jews (near) both receive the same gospel of peace.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 57:19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verse is implicitly Trinitarian: through Christ (*di' autou*), in the Spirit (*en heni pneumatī*), to the Father (*pros ton patera*). The word *prosagōgē* ('access, introduction, approach') was used for being formally introduced into the presence of a king. Both Jew and Gentile now have royal audience with the Father — through the same Christ, by the same Spirit. The word *amphoteroi* ('both') is emphatic: neither group has privileged access.
19. The status change reverses verse 12: *xenoi* ('strangers') becomes *sympolitai* ('fellow citizens'); *paroikoi* ('resident aliens, sojourners without full rights') becomes *oikeioi tou theou* ('members of God's household, family members'). The movement is from outsider to insider, from excluded to integrated. The two images — citizenship and household — combine political and familial belonging.
20. The building metaphor begins. The *themelion* ('foundation') is 'of the apostles and prophets' — likely meaning the foundation that the apostles and prophets laid (their teaching), though some read it as the foundation consisting of the apostles and prophets themselves. The *akrogōniaios* ('cornerstone' or 'capstone') is the stone that determines the alignment of the entire structure. Whether this is a foundation cornerstone (setting the building's angle) or a capstone (crowning the arch) is debated; either way, Christ is the structurally decisive element.

- 21.** The verb *synarmologoumenē* ('being fitted together, being joined together') is an architectural term for precisely joining stones without mortar — each piece is cut to fit. The present tense indicates ongoing construction. The verb *auxei* ('grows') is striking — buildings do not normally grow. The mixture of architectural and organic metaphors (fitted structure that grows) suggests a living building. The goal is *naon hagion* ('a holy temple') — the church replaces the Jerusalem temple as God's dwelling place. The word *naos* (inner sanctuary) rather than *hieron* (whole temple complex) specifies the most sacred space.
- 22.** The verb *synoikodomeisthe* ('you are being built together') has the *syn-* prefix again — Gentile believers are co-built with Jewish believers into a single structure. The word *katoikētērion* ('dwelling place, permanent residence') is stronger than *paroikia* ('temporary lodging'). God does not visit this temple — he lives there. The phrase *en pneumati* ('by/in the Spirit') identifies the Spirit as the agent or atmosphere of this construction. The chapter ends where it began — with God's initiative — but the focus has shifted from individual salvation (vv. 1-10) to corporate, cosmic reconciliation (vv. 11-22).

3

Summary: *Ephesians 3 reveals the content of the 'mystery' introduced in 1:9 — that Gentiles are fellow heirs with Israel, members of the same body, and sharers in the promise through the gospel. Paul describes his unique commission to proclaim this mystery and marvels that God's wisdom is now made known through the church even to cosmic powers. The chapter concludes with one of Paul's most majestic prayers: that believers would be strengthened by the Spirit in their inner being, that Christ would dwell in their hearts through faith, that they would comprehend the incomprehensible dimensions of Christ's love, and that they would be filled with all the fullness of God. A doxology closes the prayer.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The mystery of Gentile inclusion (vv. 5-6) is the theological heart of Ephesians. The church's role as God's classroom for cosmic powers (v. 10) is one of the most extraordinary ecclesiological claims in the New Testament. The prayer (vv. 14-21) is among the most theologically rich passages Paul ever wrote, with its four-dimensional love (breadth, length, height, depth) and the paradox of knowing what surpasses knowledge. The doxology (vv. 20-21) employs a double comparative: God can do 'exceedingly abundantly beyond' (*hyperekekperissou*) what we ask or imagine.*

Translation Friction: *Paul begins a sentence in verse 1 that he does not complete until verse 14 — the digression in verses 2-13 is one of the longest parenthetical passages in the New Testament. The phrase 'holy apostles and prophets' (v. 5) is sometimes cited as evidence against Pauline authorship, since Paul elsewhere does not call the apostles 'holy.' The cosmic powers in verse 10 are debated — angelic beings, demonic forces, or both.*

Connections: *The mystery revealed connects to Colossians 1:26-27. Paul's imprisonment (v. 1) links to Philippians 1:12-14 and Colossians 4:3. The prayer for inner strengthening parallels Colossians 1:9-12. The 'fullness of God' (v. 19) echoes 1:23. The doxology's 'in the church and in Christ Jesus' (v. 21) binds ecclesiology and Christology together.*

¹For this reason I, Paul, the prisoner of Christ Jesus on behalf of you Gentiles — ²If you have listened to of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:. ³He made the mystery known to me by direct revelation, as I briefly described earlier. ⁴When you read this, you can perceive my insight into the mystery of Christ, ⁵Which in other ages was not made known to the sons of men, as it is now revealed to his sacred messengers and prophets by the Spirit. ⁶Here is the mystery: through the gospel, the Gentiles are fellow heirs with Israel, members of one body, and sharers together in the promise that comes through Christ Jesus. ⁷Of this gospel I was made a servant according to the gift of God's grace that was given to me by the working of his power. ⁸To me — the very least of all the saints — this grace was given: to proclaim to the Gentiles the unfathomable riches of Christ, ⁹To make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the present age has been hid in God, who created all matters by Jesus Christ:. ¹⁰God's intent was that now, through the church, the rulers and authorities in the heavenly realms would come to know his wisdom in all its rich variety. ¹¹This was according to the eternal purpose that he carried out in Christ Jesus our Lord, ¹²In him, and through faith in him, we may approach God with freedom and confidence. ¹³So I ask you not to lose heart over my sufferings for you, which are your glory. ¹⁴For this reason I kneel before the Father, ¹⁵Of whom the entire family in the heavens above and earth is named,.

¹⁶That he would grant you, in keeping with to the riches of all his splendor, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man;. ¹⁷Indeed, that Christ may dwell in your hearts by way of faith. That you, being rooted and grounded in love,. ¹⁸May be able to grasp together with all of God's people what is the breadth, length, depth, and height;. ¹⁹To know the love of Christ, which passeth knowledge, that you might be overflowing with every one of the fulness of God. ²⁰Now to the one who is able to do immeasurably more than all we ask or imagine, according to his power that is at work within us, ²¹To him be splendor in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, present age without end. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul begins a prayer ('for this reason... I bow my knees') but interrupts himself with a lengthy digression about his ministry (vv. 2-13) before resuming the prayer in verse 14. The title *desmios tou Christou Iēsou* ('prisoner of Christ Jesus') reframes his Roman imprisonment as Christ's assignment: he is Christ's prisoner, not Rome's. The phrase *hyper hymōn tōn ethnōn* ('on behalf of you Gentiles') identifies the cause of his imprisonment — his Gentile mission provoked the hostility that led to his arrest.
2. The conditional *ei ge ēkousate* ('if indeed you have heard') is not expressing doubt but invoking known information — 'as you surely have heard.' The word *oikonomia* ('stewardship, administration, management') pictures Paul as a household manager entrusted with distributing God's grace to the Gentiles. Grace is not just Paul's personal possession but a trust to be administered.
3. The phrase *kata apokalypsin* ('by revelation') echoes Galatians 1:12 — the mystery came through direct divine disclosure, not human instruction. The phrase *kathōs proegrapsa en oligō* ('as I wrote briefly before') likely refers to the earlier section of this same letter (1:9-10; 2:11-22) rather than to a separate earlier letter.
4. The phrase *tēn synesin mou* ('my understanding, my insight') is not self-congratulation but a claim to genuine comprehension of the mystery through revelation. The phrase *en tō mystērīō tou Christou* ('in/regarding the mystery of Christ') specifies the content: this is Christ's mystery — it belongs to him and concerns him.
5. The comparison *hōs nyn* ('as it has now') does not say the mystery was completely unknown before, but that it was not known with the clarity it now possesses. The phrase *hagiois apostolois kai prophētais* ('holy apostles and prophets') has been debated — some find 'holy' applied to apostles to be un-Pauline. The 'prophets' are likely New Testament prophets (cf. 2:20; 4:11) rather than Old Testament figures. The means of revelation is the Spirit (*en pneumati*).
6. The mystery's content is finally stated in three syn- compounds: *synklēronoma* ('co-heirs'), *syssōma* ('co-bodied, members of the same body'), and *symmetocha* ('co-sharers'). Each prefix *syn-* ('together with') emphasizes full participation alongside Jewish believers. The word *syssōma* appears only here in Greek literature — Paul likely coined it. Gentiles are not second-class members or honorary additions but fully integrated into the one body. The instrument is the gospel (*dia tou euangeliou*); the sphere is Christ (*en Christō Iēsou*).
7. The verb *egenēthēn* ('I was made, I became') is passive — Paul did not choose this ministry; he was appointed. The word *diakonos* ('servant, minister') carries no hierarchical weight here — Paul is a servant of the gospel. The phrase *kata tēn energeian tēs dynamēōs autou* ('according to the working of his power') attributes Paul's entire ministry to divine empowerment, not personal ability.
8. The word *elachistoterō* is a grammatical impossibility — a comparative form of a superlative ('leastest than the least'). Paul intensifies 'least' beyond normal grammar to express how undeserving he feels, likely in view of his persecution of the church (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:9). The adjective *anexichniaston* ('untraceable, unfathomable, inscrutable') was used for footprints that cannot be followed — Christ's riches are too vast to track to their source.
9. The verb *phōtīσαι* ('to illuminate, to bring to light') continues the light/darkness theme. The mystery was *apokekrymmenou* ('having been hidden') — perfect participle indicating long concealment — *apo tōn aiōnōn* ('from the ages, since eternity'). The mystery's hiding place was *en tō theō* ('in God') — only God knew the plan. The participial phrase *tō ta panta ktisanti* ('who created all things') connects the mystery of redemption to creation — the same God who made everything now reveals his plan for reuniting everything.
10. This is one of the most remarkable verses in Ephesians: the church is God's instrument for instructing cosmic powers. The adjective *polypoikilos* ('many-colored, multi-faceted, richly varied') is extremely rare — used for elaborately embroidered fabric. God's wisdom is not monochrome but endlessly complex and beautiful. The 'rulers and authorities in the heavenly places' (*tais archais kai tais exousiais en tois epouraniois*) are spiritual beings who learn about God's wisdom by observing what he does in the church. The reconciliation of Jew and Gentile into one body is the curriculum.
11. The phrase *prothesin tōn aiōnōn* ('purpose of the ages, eternal purpose') frames God's plan as spanning all of history. The verb *epoiēsen* ('he made, he carried out') indicates that this eternal purpose has been realized — it is accomplished fact, not merely intention. Christ Jesus is both the sphere and the agent of this accomplishment.
12. The word *parrēsia* ('boldness, freedom of speech, confidence') was used for the right of a citizen to speak openly in the assembly. The word *prostagōgē* ('access, introduction') repeats from 2:18. The phrase *en pepoiēthēsei* ('with confidence, in trust') intensifies the access — believers approach God not with cringing fear but with bold assurance. The phrase *dia tēs pisteōs autou* ('through his faithfulness/through faith in him') again raises the subjective/objective genitive question.

13. The verb *aitoumai* ('I ask, I request') closes the digression and prepares for the return to prayer. Paul's concern is not his own suffering but the Galatians' potential discouragement at it. The phrase *hētis estin doxa hymōn* ('which is your glory') reframes Paul's imprisonment: his suffering for their sake is their badge of honor — proof that God considers them worth suffering for.
14. Paul resumes the prayer interrupted at verse 1. The phrase *kamptō ta gonata mou* ('I bend my knees') is notable because Jews typically stood to pray; kneeling indicated extraordinary intensity or urgency. The preposition *pros* ('toward, before') indicates movement toward the Father in prayer.
15. There is a wordplay between *patēr* ('father') and *patria* ('family, clan, lineage'). Every family — heavenly and earthly, angelic and human — takes its identity from the one Father. The phrase *en ouranois kai epi gēs* ('in heaven and on earth') encompasses the entire created order.
16. The first petition: inner strengthening. The phrase *kata to ploutos tēs doxēs autou* ('according to the riches of his glory') sets the scale of God's giving — he gives according to the measure of his infinite glory, not according to human capacity. The phrase *eis ton esō anthrōpon* ('in the inner person') refers to the deepest level of human identity — the self that is being renewed by the Spirit (cf. 2 Corinthians 4:16; Romans 7:22).
17. The second petition: Christ's indwelling. The verb *katoikēsai* ('to dwell, to take up permanent residence') is stronger than *paroikeō* ('to sojourn temporarily'). Christ does not visit the heart — he moves in permanently. The perfect participles *errizōmenoi* ('having been rooted') and *tethemeliōmenoi* ('having been established on a foundation') mix botanical and architectural metaphors: love is both the soil and the foundation of the Christian life.
18. The third petition: comprehension of Christ's love. The verb *exischysēte* ('may have full strength, may be empowered') suggests this comprehension requires supernatural enablement. The four dimensions — *platos* ('breadth'), *mēkos* ('length'), *hypsos* ('height'), *bathos* ('depth') — describe something immeasurable. The object is unstated — what is four-dimensional? Most likely Christ's love (specified in v. 19), though some suggest the mystery, God's plan, or Christ himself. The phrase *syn pasin tois hagiois* ('with all the saints') indicates this is not private mysticism but communal knowledge.
19. The deliberate paradox: *gnōnai* ('to know') the love that *hyperballousan tēs gnōseōs* ('surpasses knowledge'). Paul prays for experiential knowledge of something that transcends intellectual comprehension. The final petition reaches the summit: *hina plērōthēte eis pan to plērōma tou theou* ('that you may be filled unto all the fullness of God'). The preposition *eis* ('unto, toward') indicates a goal that is never fully reached — believers are being filled toward God's own fullness. The scope of this prayer is staggering: nothing less than God's own fullness as the measure of human transformation.
20. The doxology opens with one of Paul's most exuberant expressions: *hyperekerisrou* ('super-abundantly beyond, immeasurably more'). This compound adverb piles prefix upon prefix: *hyper* ('beyond') + *ek* ('out of') + *perissou* ('abundance'). God's ability exceeds both our requests (*aitoumetha*, 'we ask') and our imagination (*nooumen*, 'we conceive, we think'). The power standard is not theoretical but experiential: *kata tēn dynamin tēn energoumenēn en hēmin* ('according to the power working in us'). The same power that raised Christ (1:19-20) is presently at work in believers.
21. The doxology's unique feature: glory is ascribed *en tē ekklēsia kai en Christō Iēsou* ('in the church and in Christ Jesus'). The church and Christ are paired as the dual venue of God's glory — an extraordinary elevation of the church's significance. The temporal phrase *eis pasas tas geneas tou aiōnos tōn aiōnōn* ('unto all the generations of the age of the ages') extends the doxology through all human history and beyond into eternity.

4

Summary: *Ephesians 4 marks the transition from theology (chapters 1-3) to ethics (chapters 4-6), opened by Paul's appeal to 'walk worthy of the calling.'* The chapter addresses church unity through a sevenfold confession (one body, one Spirit, one hope, one Lord, one faith, one baptism, one God), the diversity of spiritual gifts given by the ascended Christ, and the purpose of those gifts — building up the body until it reaches maturity. The second half contrasts the old way of life ('the old self') with the new ('the new self'), calling believers to put off falsehood, anger, stealing, corrupt speech, and bitterness, and to put on truth, generosity, edifying speech, kindness, and forgiveness.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sevenfold unity formula (vv. 4-6) may preserve an early baptismal confession. The quotation from Psalm 68:18 in verse 8 is modified from the original ('received gifts from people' becomes 'gave gifts to people'), a reading that follows an interpretive tradition also found in the Aramaic Targum. The 'descending/ascending' passage (vv. 9-10) is one of the most debated christological texts — does Christ descend to earth (incarnation), to Hades (descent to the dead), or is this the Spirit's descent at Pentecost? The 'speaking the truth in love' phrase (v. 15) has become proverbial.*

Translation Friction: The modification of Psalm 68:18 raises questions about Paul's exegetical method. The phrase 'lower parts of the earth' (v. 9) is ambiguous. The list of ministry gifts (v. 11) is debated in terms of whether these are permanent offices or temporary functions. The relationship between 'apostles' here and modern claims to apostleship is contested across traditions.

Connections: The 'worthy walk' echoes Colossians 1:10 and Philippians 1:27. The gift lists connect to Romans 12:6-8 and 1 Corinthians 12:4-11. The old self/new self language parallels Colossians 3:9-10. The ethical instructions share material with the vice/virtue catalogs of Galatians 5:19-23. The 'sealed with the Holy Spirit' (v. 30) echoes 1:13.

¹I therefore, the prisoner in the Lord, urge you to walk in a manner worthy of the calling to which you have been called, ²With all lowliness and meekness, with patience, forbearing one another in love; ³Endeavouring to observe the unity of the Inner life in the bond of wholeness. ⁴There is one body and one Spirit — just as you were called to the one hope that belongs to your call — ⁵One baptism,, one Lord, one faith. ⁶And in you all, one God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all. ⁷But grace was given to each one of us according to the measure of Christ's gift. ⁸Therefore it says, "When he ascended on high he led a host of captives, and he gave gifts to people." ⁹(Now the phrase "he ascended" — what does it mean except that he also descended to the lower regions, namely the earth? ¹⁰The one who descended is the same one who also ascended far above all the heavens, so that he might fill all things.) ¹¹And he himself gave some as apostles, some as prophets, some as evangelists, and some as pastors and teachers, ¹²to equip God's people for the work of ministry, so that the body of Christ would be built up, ¹³until we all reach unity in the faith and in the knowledge of the Son of God, becoming mature and growing to the full measure of Christ himself. ¹⁴Then we will no longer be like infants, tossed back and forth by waves, and blown around by every new teaching and by the cunning trickery of people who scheme to deceive. ¹⁵Rather, speaking the truth in love, we are to grow up in every way into him who is the head, into Christ, ¹⁶Indeed, from whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by that which every joint supplieth, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, makes increase of the body to the edifying of itself in love. ¹⁷So this I say and insist on in the Lord: you must no longer walk as the Gentiles do, in the futility of their thinking. ¹⁸They are darkened in their understanding, alienated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them, due to the hardness of their hearts. ¹⁹Having lost all sensitivity, they have given themselves over to sensuality so as to indulge in every kind of impurity with a continual craving for more. ²⁰But that is not how you learned Christ! ²¹If so be that you have listened to him, and have been taught by him, as the truth is in Jesus:. ²²That you put off concerning the former conversation the old man, which is corrupt in keeping with to the deceitful lusts;. ²³Let your thinking be made completely new;. ²⁴That you put on the new man, which following God is created in righteousness and true holiness. ²⁵Therefore, having put away falsehood, let each of you speak truth with your neighbor, for we are members of one another. ²⁶Be angry but do not sin; do not let the sun go down on your anger, ²⁷Neither give location to the devil. ²⁸Let the thief no longer steal, but rather let him labor, doing honest work with his own hands, so that he may have something to share with anyone in need. ²⁹Let no unwholesome talk come out of your mouths, but only what is good for building up, as the need arises, so that it may give grace to those who hear. ³⁰And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of God, by whom you were sealed for the day of redemption. ³¹Let all bitterness and wrath and anger and clamor and slander be put away from you, along with all malice. ³²Be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving each other, just as God in Christ forgave you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *oun* ('therefore') connects the ethical exhortation to the theological foundation of chapters 1-3. The verb *parakaleō* ('I urge, I appeal, I exhort') is not a command but a pastoral appeal. Paul again identifies himself as *desmios* ('prisoner'), lending moral authority to his exhortation. The phrase *axiōs peripatēsai* ('to walk worthily') uses the standard Pauline metaphor for daily conduct. The calling (*klēseōs*) refers to God's call described in chapters 1-3.
2. Four qualities define the worthy walk: *tapeinophrosynē* ('humility' — a virtue despised in Greco-Roman culture but prized in Christianity), *praūtēs* ('gentleness, meekness' — strength under control), *makrothymia* ('patience, long-suffering' — a slow fuse), and *anechomenoi allēlōn en agapē* ('bearing with one another in love' — tolerating others' weaknesses because love absorbs offense). These are the same qualities that characterize the fruit of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22-23).

3. The verb *spoudazontes* ('making every effort, being diligent, being zealous') indicates that unity requires active work, not passive agreement. The 'unity of the Spirit' (*tēn henotēta tou pneumatos*) is unity created by the Spirit — it already exists and must be maintained (*tērein*, 'to keep, to guard'), not manufactured. The 'bond of peace' (*syndesmō tēs eirēnēs*) is the ligament that holds the community together — peace is the binding agent.
4. The sevenfold confession begins. The first triad relates to the Spirit's work: one body (the church), one Spirit (the Holy Spirit who animates it), one hope (the eschatological expectation the Spirit generates). The number seven — the biblical number of completeness — may be deliberate: the unity is total.
5. The second triad relates to the Son's work: one Lord (Jesus Christ), one faith (the faith response to the one Lord), one baptism (the rite of initiation into the one body). 'One baptism' may be stated to counter the idea that different types of baptism produce different levels of membership. The creedal rhythm suggests this may be a pre-Pauline confessional formula.
6. The confession climaxes with the Father: one God who is *epi pantōn* ('over all' — sovereign), *dia pantōn* ('through all' — pervasive), *en pasin* ('in all' — immanent). The three prepositions describe God's relationship to creation and to the community from three angles: transcendence, pervasion, and indwelling. The Trinitarian structure of the confession is clear: Spirit (v. 4), Son (v. 5), Father (v. 6).
7. Paul pivots from unity to diversity: *heni de hekastō* ('but to each one'). Unity does not mean uniformity. The passive *edothē* ('was given') attributes the gift to divine initiative. The phrase *kata to metron tēs dōreas tou Christou* ('according to the measure of Christ's gift') indicates Christ determines the distribution — each person receives a measured portion appropriate to their role.
8. Paul quotes Psalm 68:18, but with a significant change: the Hebrew and Greek OT read 'received gifts from/among people,' while Paul writes 'gave gifts to people.' This may follow an interpretive tradition preserved in the Aramaic Targum of Psalm 68, which also reads 'gave.' Paul applies the psalm to Christ's ascension: as a conquering king who distributes spoils to his people, Christ ascended and distributed gifts (the ministry roles of v. 11) to the church.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 68:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The phrase *ta katōtera merē tēs gēs* ('the lower parts of the earth') is debated: (1) the earth as the lower region compared to heaven — 'the lower regions, namely the earth' (genitive of apposition), referring to the incarnation; (2) the regions beneath the earth — Hades/Sheol, referring to a descent to the dead between crucifixion and resurrection. Reading (1) is preferred by most modern commentators because the context focuses on incarnation and ascension, not a descent to the dead. We render with the appositional reading while noting the alternative.
10. The identity statement is emphatic: *ho katabas autos estin kai ho anabas* ('the one who descended is himself also the one who ascended'). One person encompasses the full trajectory from highest heaven to lowest earth and back again. The purpose clause *hina plērōsē ta panta* ('so that he might fill all things') connects to 1:23 — Christ fills the entire cosmos with his presence and authority.
11. Christ's gifts to the church are not things but people — he gave persons to serve in specific roles. Five roles (or four, if 'pastors and teachers' is one combined role — the Greek structure *tous de poimenas kai didaskalous* shares a single article, suggesting one role with two functions) are listed. These are not exhaustive (cf. Romans 12; 1 Corinthians 12) but emphasize leadership gifts for the church's growth. The word *euangelistas* ('evangelists') appears only here, in Acts 21:8, and in 2 Timothy 4:5.
12. The noun *katartismos* ('equipping, preparing, training') was used for setting a broken bone or outfitting a ship for a voyage. The leaders' purpose is not to do all the ministry themselves but to equip the saints (*tous hagious*) to do the work (*ergon diakonias*). Ministry belongs to the entire community; leaders prepare the community for it. The goal is *oikodomēn tou sōmatos tou Christou* ('building up the body of Christ') — growth and maturation of the church.
13. Three goals define the church's maturity: (1) unity in faith and knowledge, (2) mature personhood (*andra teleion* — *teleios* means 'complete, having reached the goal, mature'), (3) the measure of Christ's fullness (*metron hēlikias tou plērōmatos tou Christou*). The third standard is breathtaking: the church's growth target is nothing less than Christ's own fullness. The word *hēlikia* can mean 'stature' or 'maturity/age' — both senses apply.
14. The negative purpose: growth prevents childishness (*nēpioi*, 'infants' — the same word as 'minors' in Galatians 4:1). Two nautical metaphors describe doctrinal instability: *klydōnizomenoi* ('tossed by waves') and *peripheromenoi* ('carried about, driven off course'). The source of the instability is false teachers characterized by *kybeia* ('dice-playing, trickery' — loaded dice), *panourgia* ('craftiness, unscrupulousness'), and *methodeia* ('scheming, stratagems' — from *methodos*, 'a pursuing after, a method of attack').
15. The participle *alētheuontes* ('truthing, being truthful') is broader than just speech — it means living authentically, dealing honestly, being genuine in all things. The qualifier *en agapē* ('in love') prevents truth from becoming a weapon. Growth is directional: *eis auton* ('into him') — the church grows toward and into Christ, its head. The word *kephalē* ('head') carries both authority ('the one in charge') and origin ('the source of life').
16. An anatomical description of the church as Christ's body. The verb *synarmologoumenon* ('being fitted together') repeats from 2:21. The verb *symbibazsomenon* ('being held together, being knit together') adds the idea of organic connection. The phrase *dia pasēs haphēs tēs epichorēgias* ('through every joint/ligament of supply') pictures the body's connective tissue — each joint or ligament supplies what the neighboring parts need. The phrase *kat' energeian en metrō henos hekastou merous* ('according to the working in the measure of each individual part') means every single member contributes according to their proportion. The result: growth and self-building in love.

17. The verb *martyromai* ('I insist, I testify, I solemnly declare') intensifies the exhortation. The phrase *en mataiotēti tou noos autōn* ('in the futility/emptiness of their mind') diagnoses the root problem: pagan life is characterized by disordered thinking. The word *mataiotēs* ('futility, emptiness, pointlessness') echoes Romans 1:21 ('they became futile in their thinking'). The ethical collapse Paul describes in verses 17-19 is rooted in intellectual and spiritual dysfunction.
18. A chain of spiritual dysfunction: darkened understanding (*eskotōmenoi tē dianoia*) alienation from God's life (*apēllotriōmenoi tēs zōēs tou theou*) ignorance (*agnoian*) hardness of heart (*pōrosin tēs kardias*). The word *pōrosis* ('hardening, callousness') was a medical term for the calcification of bone around a fracture — the heart has become calcified, unable to feel or respond. The chain moves from symptom (darkness) to root cause (hardness).
19. The verb *apēlgēkotes* ('having become callous, having ceased to feel pain') describes moral numbness — the conscience no longer registers wrongdoing. The verb *paredōkan* ('they handed themselves over') echoes Romans 1:24, 26, 28 where God 'hands them over' — here the Gentiles actively surrender themselves. The triad of *aselgeia* ('sensuality'), *akatharsia* ('impurity'), and *pleonexia* ('greed, insatiable desire for more') describes a moral spiral: sensuality leads to impurity, driven by a craving that is never satisfied.
20. The phrase *emathete ton Christon* ('you learned Christ') is unusual — one normally learns about someone or from someone, not learns a person. Christ himself is the content of Christian education, not merely its subject. The emphatic *hymeis de ouch houtōs* ('but you — not in this way!') draws a sharp line between the Gentile lifestyle just described and the believers' new reality.
21. The conditional *ei ge* ('if indeed, assuming that') presumes the condition is met. The phrase *auton ēkousate* ('you heard him') suggests they heard Christ himself through the apostolic proclamation. The phrase *en autō edidachthēte* ('you were taught in him') means their instruction took place within the sphere of Christ's reality. The phrase *kathōs estin alētheia en tō Iēsou* ('just as truth is in Jesus') is striking — Paul rarely uses the bare name 'Jesus' without 'Christ' or 'Lord.' Here the human name may emphasize the concrete, historical reality of Jesus's life and teaching as the standard of truth.
22. The infinitive *apothesthai* ('to put off, to lay aside') uses the clothing metaphor — the old self is a garment to be removed. The *ton palaion anthrōpon* ('the old person, the old self') is not merely old habits but the entire pre-Christian identity. The present participle *phtheiromenon* ('being corrupted, being destroyed') indicates the old self was in a process of active decay — it was not merely flawed but disintegrating. The desires are *tēs apatēs* ('of deception') — they promise satisfaction but deliver destruction.
23. The infinitive *ananeousthai* ('to be renewed') is present tense — renewal is an ongoing process, not a one-time event. The passive voice indicates God's agency in the renewal. The phrase *tō pneumati tou noos hymōn* ('in the spirit of your mind') targets the deepest level of mental and spiritual orientation — the mindset, the inner disposition, the controlling attitudes that shape all thinking and behavior.
24. The clothing metaphor continues: *endysasthai* ('to put on, to clothe yourself with') the *ton kainon anthrōpon* ('the new self'). This new self is not self-generated but *kτισθenta* ('created') — the same creation language as 2:10. The phrase *kata theon* ('according to God, in God's likeness') echoes Genesis 1:26-27 — the new creation restores the divine image. The qualities are *dikaïosynē* ('righteousness' — right relationship) and *hosiōtēs* ('holiness, devout integrity') *tēs alētheias* ('of truth' — genuine, not counterfeit).
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:26-27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Paul applies the old self/new self principle to specific behaviors. The first: replace *to pseudos* ('falsehood, the lie') with *alētheia* ('truth'). Paul quotes Zechariah 8:16. The motivation is body-theology: *esmen allēlōn melē* ('we are members of one another'). Lying to a fellow believer is like one body part deceiving another — it is self-destructive absurdity.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 8:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. Paul quotes Psalm 4:4 (LXX). The imperative *orgizesthe* ('be angry') may be permissive ('if you become angry') or genuine ('anger is appropriate in some circumstances'). The qualifier *mē hamartanete* ('do not sin') separates anger from sin — anger itself is not inherently sinful, but it easily becomes so. The sun-going-down image imposes a time limit: anger must be resolved daily, not allowed to fester overnight. The word *parorgismō* ('anger, provocation, irritation') suggests the simmering variety.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 4:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The word *topon* ('place, room, opportunity') pictures unresolved anger as a beachhead — a foothold from which the devil (*tō diabolō*, 'the slanderer, the accuser') can expand his influence in the community. The connection between anger and the devil suggests that prolonged anger opens the door to evil's work in relationships.
28. The transformation is threefold: from stealing to honest labor to generous sharing. The ethic does not merely stop a negative behavior but redirects the energy toward a positive purpose. The motivation for work is not self-enrichment but *hina echē metadidonai* ('so that he may have something to share'). The entire economic orientation shifts from taking to giving.
29. The adjective *sapros* ('rotten, putrid, unwholesome') was used for rotten fruit or spoiled fish. The replacement is speech that is *agathos pros oikodomēn* ('good for building up') — constructive, timely, grace-giving. The phrase *hina dō charin tois akouousin* ('so that it may give grace to those who hear') makes speech a vehicle of grace — words are not neutral but carry either corruption or grace to their hearers.

30. The verb *lypeite* ('grieve, cause sorrow') attributes personal emotion to the Holy Spirit — the Spirit can be grieved by believers' conduct. This presupposes the Spirit's personhood. The reference to sealing (*esphragisthēte*) recalls 1:13. The phrase *eis hēmeran apolytrōseōs* ('for/until the day of redemption') indicates the seal holds until the final day — the Spirit's presence is the guarantee of complete, future redemption. The ethical implications are profound: the Spirit who guarantees salvation is wounded by the very sins Paul has been cataloging.
31. Six vices are expelled: *pikria* ('bitterness' — resentment that poisons), *thymos* ('wrath' — explosive fury), *orgē* ('anger' — settled hostility), *kraugē* ('clamor' — loud quarreling, shouting), *blasphēmia* ('slander, abusive speech' — not only against God but against people), and *kakia* ('malice' — the general disposition of ill will). The imperative *arthētō* ('let it be removed') is passive — these are to be taken away, eliminated from the community.
32. Three replacement virtues: *chrēstōi* ('kind, good, generous' — related to *Christos* by sound, a connection early Christians noticed), *eusplanchnoi* ('tenderhearted, compassionate' — literally 'good bowels,' since the intestines were considered the seat of deep emotion), and *charizomenoi heautois* ('forgiving one another' — from *charizomai*, 'to give freely, to grace'). The standard for forgiveness is divine: *kathōs kai ho theos en Christō echarisato hymin* ('just as God in Christ forgave you'). God's forgiveness is both the model and the motivation for human forgiveness.

5

Summary: *Ephesians 5 continues the ethical exhortation, calling believers to imitate God and walk in love as Christ loved them. Paul warns against sexual immorality, impurity, greed, and coarse talk — behaviors that have no place among 'children of light.' He contrasts the darkness of the old life with the fruit of light. The chapter then addresses wise living: making the most of every opportunity, understanding the Lord's will, being filled with the Spirit (expressed through psalms, hymns, thanksgiving, and mutual submission). The final section introduces the household code, beginning with the husband-wife relationship, which Paul elevates to a profound mystery about Christ and the church.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The command to 'be filled with the Spirit' (v. 18) is followed not by charismatic manifestations but by worship, thanksgiving, and mutual submission — the Spirit's fullness is expressed communally. The husband-wife passage (vv. 22-33) contains Paul's deepest reflection on marriage as an image of Christ's relationship with the church. The quotation of Genesis 2:24 ('the two shall become one flesh') is called a 'profound mystery' (v. 32) that Paul applies to Christ and the church. The 'Awake, O sleeper' fragment (v. 14) may preserve an early Christian hymn or baptismal formula.*

Translation Friction: *The household code (vv. 22-33) reflects patriarchal assumptions of the first-century Greco-Roman world. Paul both works within and subverts these structures: the call for wives to submit is framed by mutual submission (v. 21) and matched by the radical demand that husbands love their wives as Christ loved the church — sacrificially unto death. We render the text faithfully without either flattening or amplifying its cultural context. The verb 'submit' in verse 22 is not actually present in the Greek — it is carried over from verse 21.*

Connections: *Walking in love (v. 2) echoes 1 John 4:7-12. The light/darkness contrast parallels Romans 13:11-14 and 1 Thessalonians 5:4-8. The Spirit-filling connects to Acts 2 and Galatians 5:16-25. The household code parallels Colossians 3:18-4:1 and 1 Peter 3:1-7. The Christ-church marriage typology draws on Old Testament imagery of God as Israel's husband (Hosea 2; Isaiah 54; Ezekiel 16).*

¹Therefore be imitators of God, as beloved children. ²Conduct your lives in devotion, as Christ as well has loved us, and has granted himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour. ³But sexual immorality and any kind of impurity or greed must not even be mentioned among you, as is fitting for saints. ⁴Obscene language, foolish talk, and crude joking have no place among you. Instead, let there be thanksgiving. ⁵For you can be sure of this: no sexually immoral or impure or greedy person — such a person is an idolater — has any inheritance in the kingdom of Christ and of God. ⁶Let no one deceive you with empty words, for because of these things the wrath of God comes upon the children of disobedience. ⁷Therefore do not become partners with them. ⁸For at one time you were darkness, but now you are light in the Lord. Walk as children of light, ⁹(For the fruit of the Inner life is in all goodness and moral integrity and truth;). ¹⁰Indeed, proving what is acceptable to the Lord. ¹¹Take no part in the fruitless works of darkness, but instead expose them. ¹²For it is shameful even to speak of the things they do in secret. ¹³But everything exposed by the light becomes visible, ¹⁴For this reason he says, Awake

you that sleepest, and arise from the dead, and Christ will give you light. ¹⁵Look carefully then how you walk, not as unwise people but as wise, ¹⁶Indeed, redeeming the time, because the days are evil. ¹⁷Therefore do not be foolish, but understand what the will of the Lord is. ¹⁸And do not get drunk with wine, for that leads to reckless living. Instead, be filled with the Spirit, ¹⁹Speak to one another with psalms, hymns, and spiritual songs. Sing and make music from your heart to the Lord. ²⁰Giving thanks always for all things to God and the Father by the authority of our Lord Jesus Christ;. ²¹Submit to one another out of reverence for God. ²²Wives, submit to your own husbands as to the Lord, ²³For the husband is the skull of the wife, indeed as Christ is the head of the church — then he is the saviour of the body. ²⁴Now as the church submits to Christ, so also wives should submit to their husbands in everything. ²⁵Husbands, love your wives, just as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her, ²⁶Indeed, that he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the message,. ²⁷That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any these people thing. But that it should be sacred and without blemish. ²⁸In the same way husbands should love their wives as their own bodies. He who loves his wife loves himself. ²⁹For no one ever hated his own flesh, but nourishes and cherishes it, just as Christ does the church, ³⁰Indeed, since we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. ³¹"For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and be joined to his wife, and the two will become one flesh." ³²This mystery is profound, and I am saying that it refers to Christ and the church. ³³However, let each one of you love his wife as himself, and let the wife respect her husband.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *mimētai* ('imitators') gives us the English word 'mimic.' Children naturally imitate their parents — believers imitate their Father. The standard is breathtaking: imitate God. The phrase *hōs tekna agapēta* ('as beloved children') provides the relational basis: imitation flows from the security of being loved, not from the anxiety of earning approval.
2. Christ's self-giving love defines the content of the 'walk in love' command. The verb *paredōken heauton* ('gave himself over') echoes Galatians 2:20. Christ is both priest and offering. The phrase *prosphoran kai thysian* ('offering and sacrifice') uses Old Testament sacrificial terminology. The phrase *eis osmēn euōdias* ('for a fragrant aroma') quotes the language of acceptable sacrifice from Leviticus 1:9, 13, 17 — Christ's self-offering is the sacrifice God receives with pleasure.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 1:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The triad *porneia* ('sexual immorality'), *akatharsia* ('impurity'), and *pleonexia* ('greed') groups sexual and economic sin together — both involve taking what belongs to another. The phrase *mēde onomazesthō* ('must not even be named') indicates these behaviors should be so absent from the community that they are not even a topic of conversation. The standard is *kathōs prepei hagiois* ('as is fitting for holy ones') — the believers' identity as 'saints' defines what is appropriate.
4. Three speech vices: *aischrotēs* ('obscenity, shameful speech'), *mōrologia* ('foolish talk, silly speech'), and *eutrapelia* ('coarse wit, crude joking'). The last word (*eutrapelia*) was considered a virtue in Greek rhetoric — 'ready wit' — but Paul regards it as inappropriate when it crosses into sexual or degrading humor. The replacement is *eucharistia* ('thanksgiving') — speech directed upward rather than downward.
5. The equation *pleonektēs, ho estin eidōlōlatrēs* ('the greedy person, who is an idolater') identifies greed as a form of idolatry — the worship of material acquisition (cf. Colossians 3:5). The phrase *tē basileia tou Christou kai theou* ('the kingdom of Christ and of God') uses a single article governing both nouns, closely associating Christ and God as joint rulers of the kingdom. This is one of the strongest christological statements in Ephesians.
6. The 'empty words' (*kenois logois*) may refer to those who argued that grace covers all behavior — a libertine distortion of Paul's own teaching. The phrase *tous huiōus tēs apeitheias* ('the children of disobedience') repeats from 2:2, forming an inclusion: the lifestyle described in 2:1-3 brings divine wrath, and believers must not return to it.
7. The word *symmetochoi* ('co-partners, co-sharers') warns against participation in the behaviors of verse 3-5, not against all contact with unbelievers. The command is about shared practice, not social isolation.
8. Paul does not say they were 'in darkness' but that they were darkness (*ēte skotos*) — darkness was their identity, not merely their environment. Similarly, they do not merely have light — they are light (*phōs en kyriō*). The transformation is ontological, not merely behavioral. The qualifier *en kyriō* ('in the Lord') prevents this from becoming self-congratulation: they are light only in connection with the Lord.
9. The SBLGNT reads 'fruit of the light' (*phōtos*) rather than 'fruit of the Spirit' (*pneumatōs*) found in some manuscripts. The triad *agathōsynē* ('goodness'), *dikaioōsynē* ('righteousness'), and *alētheia* ('truth') describes the harvest produced by a life lived in the light.
10. The verb *dokimazontes* ('testing, discerning, approving after testing') indicates active moral discernment — not following rules mechanically but testing what genuinely pleases the Lord in each situation. This is mature Christian ethics: not a codebook but a relationship with the Lord that develops discernment.

11. The command has two parts: non-participation (*mē synkoinōneite*, 'do not co-participate') and active exposure (*elenchete*, 'reprove, expose, bring to light'). The adjective *akarpōis* ('fruitless, unproductive') contrasts with the 'fruit of the light' in verse 9. Darkness produces nothing of lasting value. The verb *elenchō* means both verbal rebuke and the act of exposing something to the light.
12. The phrase *ta krypte ginomena* ('the things done in secret') suggests practices too degrading to describe publicly. Paul's reticence stands in contrast to the Greco-Roman cultural tolerance — or celebration — of such behavior. The verb *legein* ('to speak of') indicates that detailed description would itself be a form of participation.
13. Light's function is revelation: *elenchomena hypo tou phōtos phaneroutai* ('things exposed by the light are made visible'). The light does not destroy but reveals — making the hidden visible. This is both a statement about moral truth (sin cannot hide from light) and about the community's prophetic function (believers' lives expose darkness).
14. The quotation is not from any known Old Testament text. It may be: (1) a free adaptation of Isaiah 60:1 ('Arise, shine, for your light has come'), (2) an early Christian hymn, or (3) a baptismal formula sung when candidates emerged from the water. The imagery of waking from sleep and rising from the dead suggests baptism as a transition from death/darkness to life/light. The promise *epiphausei soi ho Christos* ('Christ will shine on you') makes Christ the source of the light.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 60:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The adverb *akribōs* ('carefully, precisely, accurately') modifies either *blepete* ('look carefully') or *peripatite* ('walk carefully'). Either way, the point is deliberate attention to one's conduct. The wisdom/foolishness contrast echoes Old Testament wisdom literature (Proverbs, Ecclesiastes) and connects to the earlier warning about being 'tossed about' (4:14).
16. The participle *exagorazomenoi* ('buying up, redeeming, making the most of') uses marketplace language: snapping up a bargain before it disappears. The word *kairos* ('opportunity, critical moment') denotes not clock-time (*chronos*) but moments of significance. The reason for urgency: *hai hēmerai ponērai eisin* ('the days are evil'). The present era is hostile territory; opportunities for good must be seized.
17. The contrast between *aphrones* ('senseless, foolish') and *syniete* ('understand, put together') frames Christian living as an exercise in discernment. The goal is understanding to *thelēma tou kyriou* ('the will of the Lord') — not abstract theological knowledge but practical perception of what God wants in each situation.
18. The contrast between wine-intoxication and Spirit-filling is not merely illustrative but substitutionary: where pagans sought ecstasy through wine (particularly in Dionysian worship), believers find genuine fullness through the Spirit. The word *asōtia* ('reckless living, dissipation, debauchery' — literally 'unsaved-ness') describes the waste that drunkenness produces. The imperative *plērousthe* ('be filled') is present tense (continuous: 'keep on being filled'), passive (the Spirit does the filling, not the believer), and plural (this is a community experience). The four participles that follow (vv. 19-21) describe how Spirit-filling manifests.
19. The first expression of Spirit-filling is communal worship. The three categories — *psalmois* ('psalms' — possibly the Old Testament Psalter), *hymnois* ('hymns' — compositions praising God), and *ōdais pneumatikais* ('spiritual songs' — Spirit-inspired compositions) — may overlap. The phrase *tē kardia hymnōn* ('with your heart') indicates that external singing must be accompanied by internal reality. Worship is directed *tō kyriō* ('to the Lord').
20. The second expression: thanksgiving. The scope is *pantote* ('always') and *hyper pantōn* ('for everything'). The phrase *en onomati* ('in the name of') indicates that thanksgiving is offered through Christ's mediation and on his authority. Thanksgiving is directed *tō theō kai patri* ('to God the Father').
21. The third expression of Spirit-filling: mutual submission. The participle *hypotassomenoi* ('submitting, placing yourselves under') is reciprocal — *allēlois* ('to one another'). This verse functions as both the conclusion of the Spirit-filling section and the heading for the household code that follows (5:22-6:9). The phrase *en phobō Christou* ('in the fear/reverence of Christ') provides the motive: submission to others flows from reverence for Christ, not from inferiority.
22. The verb 'submit' does not appear in the Greek of this verse — it is carried over from the participle *hypotassomenoi* in verse 21. This grammatical link means the wife's submission to her husband is a specific instance of the mutual submission all believers owe one another. The phrase *hōs tō kyriō* ('as to the Lord') sets the analogy: the husband-wife relationship is patterned on the Christ-church relationship. The word *idiois* ('own') distinguishes this from a general submission of all women to all men.
23. The word *kephalē* ('head') is debated: it can mean 'authority over' or 'source of.' In context, the Christ-church analogy emphasizes sacrificial care more than hierarchical authority (see vv. 25-27). The additional phrase *autos sōtēr tou sōmatos* ('he himself is Savior of the body') applies uniquely to Christ — the husband is not the wife's savior. The analogy has limits, and Paul here acknowledges one.
24. The comparison is drawn: the church's submission to Christ provides the pattern for the wife's submission to her husband. The phrase *en panti* ('in everything') is comprehensive but must be read in light of the analogy's controlling context — submission to Christ is never dehumanizing, and submission 'as to the Lord' (v. 22) sets Christ, not the husband's will, as the ultimate authority.
25. The husband's obligation is staggering: *agapate tas gynaikas* ('love your wives') with the standard *kathōs kai ho Christos ēgapēsen tēn ekklēsia* ('just as Christ loved the church'). Christ's love for the church was expressed in total self-sacrifice (*heauton paredōken hyper autēs*, 'he gave himself up for her'). The husband is called not to command but to die — to sacrifice his own interests for his wife's well-being. In the patriarchal context, this demand was revolutionary.

- 26.** The purpose of Christ's self-giving: *hagiasē* ('to make holy, to sanctify'). The means: *tō loutrō tou hydatos* ('by the washing of water') — almost certainly a reference to baptism — *en rhēmati* ('with the word, in connection with the word'). The word (*rhēma*) may refer to a spoken baptismal confession, to the gospel proclaimed, or to Christ's authoritative word. Christ's sanctifying work combines water (the physical act) and word (the verbal/spiritual reality).
- 27.** The image shifts to a bridal presentation: Christ prepares the church like a bride being prepared for her wedding day. The verb *parastēsē* ('present, place alongside') was used for presenting a bride to the groom. The adjectives describe bridal perfection: *endoxon* ('glorious, splendid'), without *spilon* ('spot, stain'), *rhytida* ('wrinkle'), or any blemish. The goal is *hagia kai amōmos* ('holy and blameless') — the same words used of believers in 1:4. Christ's sanctifying work completes what election purposed.
- 28.** Paul shifts from the Christ-church analogy to a body-analogy: since husband and wife are 'one flesh' (v. 31), loving one's wife is loving oneself. The verb *opheilousin* ('ought, owe, are obligated') frames love not as optional generosity but as marital duty. The logic is profoundly practical: self-interest and spousal love converge in the one-flesh union.
- 29.** The verbs *ektrephei* ('nourishes, feeds, raises to maturity') and *thalpei* ('cherishes, warms, tenderly cares for') describe intimate, nurturing care. The argument from nature: since everyone naturally cares for their own body, and since husband and wife share one body, spousal care is an extension of self-care. The Christ-church analogy returns: Christ nourishes and cherishes the church as his own body.
- 30.** The simple statement *melē esmen tou sōmatos autou* ('we are members of his body') grounds the entire discussion: believers' union with Christ is bodily, intimate, and real. Some manuscripts add 'of his flesh and of his bones' — echoing Genesis 2:23 (Eve from Adam's body) and strengthening the marriage typology. The SBLGNT does not include this addition.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** Paul quotes Genesis 2:24 (LXX). The verb *proskollēthēsetai* ('will be joined, will be glued, will cleave') indicates permanent, inseparable attachment. The phrase *eis sarka mian* ('into one flesh') describes a new unity that transcends the original family bond. Paul quotes this not primarily to teach about marriage (though it does) but to reveal the deeper reality to which marriage points — as he explains in verse 32.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The word *mystērion* ('mystery') here does not mean 'puzzling' but 'a hidden reality now revealed.' The Genesis text about husband and wife becoming one flesh contains a deeper meaning (a 'mystery'): it prophetically describes the union of Christ and the church. Marriage is a living parable of the gospel. The Vulgate translated *mystērion* as *sacramentum*, which led to marriage being classified as a sacrament in Western Christianity. Paul's point is christological: marriage's deepest meaning is found in Christ's union with his people.
- 33.** Paul returns from the cosmic typology to practical application. The verb *agapatō* ('let him love') reiterates the husband's primary obligation. The word *phobētai* ('respect, revere') for the wife is debated — *phobos* can mean 'fear' or 'deep respect.' In context (where the controlling image is reverence for Christ, v. 21), 'respect' captures the sense. The summary is asymmetric: husbands are told to love; wives to respect. This may reflect different temptations in first-century marriage, not a permanent hierarchy of duties.

6

Summary: *Ephesians 6 completes the household code with instructions for children and parents, then slaves and masters. The chapter's climax is the armor of God passage (vv. 10-20), one of the most vivid and beloved sections in Paul's letters. Paul identifies the true battle — not against flesh and blood but against cosmic spiritual forces — and equips believers with divine armor: the belt of truth, the breastplate of righteousness, the shoes of the gospel of peace, the shield of faith, the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit. The chapter closes with personal notes about Tychicus and a final benediction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The armor of God passage draws on Isaiah's description of God's own armor (Isaiah 59:17; 11:5) — believers wear God's equipment, not their own. The list of spiritual enemies (v. 12) is the fullest taxonomy of evil powers in the New Testament. The only offensive weapon in the armor is 'the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God' (v. 17). Prayer (vv. 18-20) is not a separate piece of armor but the atmosphere in which all the armor functions. Paul's request for prayer that he might speak boldly 'in chains' (v. 20) is poignant — the ambassador is in prison.*

Translation Friction: *The slave-master instructions (vv. 5-9) operate within the institution of slavery without explicitly condemning it. Paul subverts slavery from within (masters and slaves have the same Master in heaven, v. 9) but does not call for abolition. The spiritual warfare language (vv. 10-20) raises questions about how literally to read the cosmic powers. We render the text as given without either literalizing or*

demythologizing.

Connections: *The children/parents instruction parallels Colossians 3:20-21. The slave/master code parallels Colossians 3:22-4:1 and Philemon. The armor imagery draws on Isaiah 59:17 and 11:5, and parallels 1 Thessalonians 5:8 and Romans 13:12. Tychicus also appears in Colossians 4:7-8, Acts 20:4, 2 Timothy 4:12, and Titus 3:12.*

¹Because this was right, children, obey your parents in the Lord:. ²"Honor your father and mother" — this is the first commandment with a promise — ³so that it may go well with you and that you may live long on the earth." ⁴Fathers, do not provoke your children to anger, but bring them up in the discipline and instruction of the Lord. ⁵Slaves, obey your earthly masters with fear and trembling, with a sincere heart, as you would obey Christ, ⁶Do not work only when they are watching, just to win their approval. Instead, work as servants of Christ, carrying out God's will wholeheartedly. ⁷With upright will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men. ⁸Indeed, knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doeth, the same will he accept of the Lord, whether he be bond or free. ⁹And masters, treat them the same way. Stop threatening, knowing that both their Master and yours is in heaven, and there is no favoritism with him. ¹⁰Finally, be strong in the Lord and in the strength of his might. ¹¹Put on the full armor of God, so that you may be able to stand against the schemes of the devil. ¹²For our struggle is not against flesh and blood, but against the rulers, against the authorities, against the cosmic powers of this present darkness, against the spiritual forces of evil in the heavenly places. ¹³Therefore take up the full armor of God, so that you may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done everything, to stand firm. ¹⁴Stand therefore, having fastened the belt of truth around your waist and having put on the breastplate of righteousness, ¹⁵Your ankles shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace. ¹⁶In all circumstances take up the shield of faith, with which you will be able to extinguish all the flaming arrows of the evil one. ¹⁷Take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the message of God:. ¹⁸Praying always with all prayer and earnest prayer in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and earnest prayer for all saints;. ¹⁹For me, that utterance may be granted to me, that I may unlock my lips boldly, to render known the mystery of the gospel,. ²⁰For which I am an ambassador in bonds — that in it I may speak boldly, as I anything to speak. ²¹So that you also may know how I am and what I am doing, Tychicus the beloved brother and faithful servant in the Lord will tell you everything. ²²I am sending him to you for this very purpose, so that you may know how we are and that he may encourage your hearts. ²³Peace to the brothers and sisters, and love with faith, from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁴Grace be with all who love our Lord Jesus Christ with an undying love.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb hypakouete ('obey, listen to, respond to') is stronger than hypotassō ('submit'): children are to obey, not merely defer. The phrase en kyriō ('in the Lord') qualifies the obedience — it is rendered within the context of the Lord's authority, not unconditionally. The word dikaion ('right, just') appeals to a universal moral principle recognized across cultures.
2. Paul quotes the fifth commandment (Exodus 20:12; Deuteronomy 5:16). The designation 'first commandment with a promise' (entolē prōtē en epangelia) is debated — the second commandment also contains a promise of sorts. Paul may mean 'first' in sequence among the commandments that regulate human relationships, or 'first in importance.' The verb tima ('honor') encompasses more than obedience — it includes respect, care, and financial support in old age.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 5:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The promise is twofold: eu soi genētai ('it may go well with you') and esē makrochronios epi tēs gēs ('you may be long-lived on the earth'). The original Deuteronomy text refers to 'the land' (the promised land of Israel). Paul universalizes it to 'the earth' (tēs gēs), applying the promise to all believers regardless of geography.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 20:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The counter-instruction to fathers (pateres, which could include both parents) limits parental authority: mē parorgizete ('do not provoke to anger, do not exasperate'). Harsh, arbitrary, or demeaning treatment drives children to frustration and resentment. The positive instruction: ektrephete ('bring up, nourish, raise to maturity') en paideia kai nouthesia kyriou ('in the discipline and instruction of the Lord'). Paideia ('discipline, training,

education') and nouthesia ('instruction, admonition, correction') together cover the full range of child-rearing — the Lord's standards, not the parents' whims, set the curriculum.

5. The word *douloi* ('slaves') refers to actual enslaved persons, not employees. The qualifying phrase *kata sarka* ('according to the flesh') relativizes the master's authority — they are masters only in the physical realm, not spiritually. The phrase *meta phobou kai tromou* ('with fear and trembling') is the same phrase Paul uses for approaching God's work (Philippians 2:12) — it suggests conscientious seriousness, not cringing terror. The phrase *en haplotēti tēs kardias* ('in sincerity of heart') means without duplicity.
6. The compound *ophthalmodouleian* ('eye-service, working only when watched') may be a Pauline coinage. The contrast: *anthrōpareskoi* ('people-pleasers') versus *douloi Christou* ('slaves of Christ'). The true master is Christ, and his 'eye' is always present. The phrase *ek psychēs* ('from the soul, from the heart') demands interior motivation, not merely external compliance.
7. The phrase *met' eunoias* ('with good will, with genuine enthusiasm') transforms compulsory labor into willing service. The phrase *hōs tō kyriō kai ouk anthrōpois* ('as to the Lord and not to people') reframes the entire master-slave relationship: every act of service, however menial, is rendered to Christ. This does not endorse slavery but radically transforms the slave's experience of it.
8. The verb *komisetai* ('will receive back, will be repaid') promises divine recompense for all good work. The equalizer *eite doulos eite eleutheros* ('whether slave or free') demolishes the social distinction before the Lord's judgment seat: at the final accounting, social status is irrelevant. The Lord evaluates and rewards the substance of the work, not the status of the worker.
9. The command to masters is revolutionary for its context: *ta auta poieite pros autous* ('do the same things toward them') — treat slaves with the same good will and sincerity required of slaves. The imperative *anientes tēn apeilēn* ('stop the threatening') uses the present participle suggesting an ongoing practice that must cease. The theological grounding is devastating to the institution: *kai autōn kai hymōn ho kyrios estin en ouranois* ('both their Lord and yours is in heaven'). Master and slave share the same Master. The word *prosōpolēmpsia* ('favoritism, partiality, respect of persons') literally means 'face-taking' — the heavenly Master does not judge by social face.
10. The phrase *tou loipou* ('finally, henceforth') signals the letter's closing section. The passive imperative *endynamousthe* ('be empowered, be made strong') indicates that the strength is not the believer's own but is received from outside — *en kyriō* ('in the Lord'). The phrase *en tō krati tēs ischyos autou* ('in the strength of his might') reuses two of the four power-words from 1:19, connecting the armor passage to the resurrection-power prayer. The same divine power that raised Christ is now the believer's equipment for spiritual battle.
11. The word *panoplian* ('full armor, complete equipment') is a military term for the complete outfit of a heavily armed soldier — not piecemeal protection but comprehensive equipment. It is *tou theou* ('of God') — God's own armor, not human manufacture. The purpose is *stēnai* ('to stand, to hold your ground'). The enemy's strategy is *methodeias* ('schemes, stratagems, cunning tactics') — the devil attacks through deception, not merely through force. The word *methodeias* (from *methodos*, 'a following after, a pursuit') suggests systematic, calculated attack plans.
12. The word *palē* ('wrestling, struggle') denotes hand-to-hand combat. The fourfold repetition of *pros* ('against') identifies the real enemies: (1) *archas* ('rulers, principalities'), (2) *exousias* ('authorities'), (3) *kosmokratoras tou skotous toutou* ('world-rulers of this darkness' — *kosmokratōr* is a title used for powerful gods and emperors), (4) *pneumatika tēs ponērias en tois epouraniois* ('spiritual forces of wickedness in the heavenly places'). The phrase 'flesh and blood' (*haima kai sarka* — note the reversed order) means other human beings. The real enemy is never the person in front of you but the spiritual forces behind them.
13. The imperative *analabete* ('take up, pick up') pictures a soldier reaching for weapons laid out before him. The phrase *en tē hēmera tē ponēra* ('in the evil day') could mean the final eschatological battle, a particularly intense season of testing, or any day of spiritual conflict. The goal is twice stated: *antistēnai* ('to resist, to withstand') and *stēnai* ('to stand'). The phrase *hapanta katergasamenoi* ('having accomplished everything, having done all') means after exhausting every effort — when the battle is over, still standing.
14. The first two pieces: (1) The belt (*perizōsamenoi tēn osphyn*, 'having girded the waist') of truth (*en alētheia*). The Roman soldier's belt held the tunic in place for movement and supported the scabbard — everything depended on it. Truth (both doctrinal integrity and personal honesty) is the foundation that holds all else together. (2) The breastplate (*thōraka*) of righteousness (*tēs dikaiosynēs*). The breastplate protected vital organs. Righteousness — both the imputed righteousness of Christ and the lived righteousness of the believer — protects the heart. This draws on Isaiah 59:17 where God puts on righteousness as a breastplate.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 59:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The third piece: military sandals (*caligae*) that gave soldiers sure footing on any terrain. The word *hetoimasia* ('readiness, preparation, firm footing') suggests either readiness to proclaim the gospel or the firm footing that the gospel provides. The phrase *tou euangeliou tēs eirēnēs* ('of the gospel of peace') is striking in a military context — the soldier's weapon is a message of peace. This echoes Isaiah 52:7 ('How beautiful are the feet of those who bring good news of peace').
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 52:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The fourth piece: the *thyreon* ('large shield, door-shaped shield') — the Roman *scutum*, a full-body shield that could be interlocked with others to form a wall. Faith as shield provides comprehensive protection. The phrase *ta belē tou ponērou ta pepyromēna* ('the flaming arrows/missiles of the evil one') refers to arrows dipped in pitch and ignited — designed to set targets on fire. The verb *sbesai* ('to extinguish, to quench') suggests the shield soaks the fire-arrows, absorbing their destructive power.

17. The fifth piece: the helmet (perikephalaian) of salvation (tou sōtēriou). The helmet protects the head — salvation guards the mind. This echoes Isaiah 59:17 and 1 Thessalonians 5:8. The sixth piece: the sword (machairan) of the Spirit (tou pneumatos) — the only offensive weapon. It is identified as rhēma theou ('the word of God'). The word rhēma (a specific spoken word) rather than logos (the broader concept of word/message) may emphasize the specific, situational application of Scripture — the right word at the right moment, wielded by the Spirit's guidance.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 59:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Prayer is not a seventh piece of armor but the atmosphere in which the armor functions — the breath of the warrior. Four 'all' words emphasize comprehensiveness: dia pasēs proseuchēs ('with every prayer'), en panti kairō ('at every opportunity'), en pasē proskarterēsei ('with all perseverance'), peri pantōn tōn hagiōn ('for all the saints'). The phrase en pneumatī ('in the Spirit') indicates Spirit-empowered prayer. The verb agrypnoūtes ('staying alert, keeping watch') is a military term for sentinel duty — spiritual warfare demands constant vigilance.
19. Paul requests prayer for himself — not for release from prison but for effective proclamation. The passive dothē logos ('words may be given') attributes effective speech to divine gift. The phrase en parrēsia ('with boldness, with freedom of speech') echoes 3:12. The content is to mystērion tou euangeliou ('the mystery of the gospel') — the full truth about Christ's universal reconciliation, the letter's central theme.
20. The phrase presbeuō en halysei ('I am an ambassador in chains') is magnificently ironic. An ambassador (presbeuō) carries the authority and dignity of the sovereign who sent him; a prisoner (en halysei, 'in a chain') has no authority or dignity. Paul is both — a royal envoy in shackles. The phrase hōs dei me lalēsai ('as it is necessary for me to speak, as I ought to speak') indicates that bold proclamation is not optional but obligatory.
21. Tychicus is described as agapētos adelphos ('beloved brother') and pistos diakonos ('faithful servant/minister'). He serves as the letter carrier and Paul's personal representative. The nearly identical wording in Colossians 4:7 suggests these letters were sent together. Tychicus would supplement the letter with firsthand reports about Paul's situation.
22. The dual purpose: (1) information about Paul (hina gnōte ta peri hēmōn, 'so that you may know about us'), and (2) encouragement (parakalesē tas kardias hymōn, 'that he may encourage your hearts'). The verb parakaleō here carries its comforting, encouraging sense — the Ephesians may have been anxious about Paul's imprisonment.
23. The benediction is unusual in its third-person form ('peace to the brothers') rather than the typical second-person ('peace to you'). This may support the circular-letter theory — the blessing addresses a wider audience. The triad eirēnē ('peace'), agapē ('love'), and pistis ('faith') summarizes the letter's major themes. The source is double: apo theou patros kai kyriou Iēsou Christou ('from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ').
24. The final word is en aphtharsia ('in incorruptibility, with an imperishable love'). The word aphtharia is typically used for immortality or imperishability (1 Corinthians 15:42, 50, 53-54). Applied to love for Christ, it describes a love that does not decay, fade, or end. The letter that began with grace (1:2) ends with grace — the alpha and omega of the Christian life.

Philippians

1

Summary: *Paul and Timothy write to the believers in Philippi, expressing gratitude for their partnership in the gospel from the first day until now. Paul describes his imprisonment as having advanced the gospel rather than hindered it, reports that Christ is being proclaimed even by rivals, and declares his famous conviction: 'to live is Christ and to die is gain.' He urges the Philippians to conduct themselves in a manner worthy of the gospel, standing firm in one spirit.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Philippians is the warmest of Paul's letters, written from prison yet saturated with joy. The word 'joy' and its cognates appear sixteen times across four chapters. Paul's relationship with Philippi was uniquely close — they were the only church from whom he accepted financial support (4:15). The theological climax of chapter 1 is the 'to live is Christ' declaration (v. 21), which frames existence itself as participation in Christ. Paul's candid reflection on preferring death yet choosing to remain for the Philippians' sake reveals a pastoral theology shaped by self-giving love.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of Paul's opponents in verses 15-17 is debated. Some preached Christ from envy and rivalry, hoping to afflict Paul in his imprisonment. Whether these are rival missionaries, Judaizers, or local preachers is unclear from the text alone. We render the Greek without resolving this ambiguity. The location of Paul's imprisonment — Rome, Ephesus, or Caesarea — is likewise debated; the text itself does not specify, though the mention of the praetorium (v. 13) suggests Rome.*

Connections: *The letter connects to Acts 16, which narrates the founding of the Philippian church through Lydia's conversion and the jailer's baptism. Paul's language of 'partnership in the gospel' (koinonia tou euangelion) echoes the covenant fellowship vocabulary of the Old Testament. The citizenship language in verse 27 anticipates the explicit heavenly citizenship declaration of 3:20.*

¹Paul and Timothy, servants of Christ Jesus, to all the saints in Christ Jesus who are in Philippi, together with the overseers and deacons: ²Grace to you and peace from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. ³I thank my God in all my remembrance of you, ⁴Always in every petition of mine for you all making request with joy, ⁵Since your fellowship in the gospel from the foremost day until now. ⁶I am confident of this very thing, that the one who began a good work in you will carry it on to completion until the day of Christ Jesus. ⁷It is right for me to feel this way about all of you, because I hold you in my heart, since both in my imprisonment and in the defense and confirmation of the gospel, all of you are partners with

me in grace. ⁸For God is my witness, how I long for all of you with the affection of Christ Jesus. ⁹And this is my prayer: that your love may overflow more and more with knowledge and all discernment, ¹⁰That you may approve things that are excellent. So you can become sincere and without offence till the day of Christ; ¹¹Indeed, being overflowing with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God. ¹²Now I want you to know, brothers and sisters, that what has happened to me has actually served to advance the gospel, ¹³As a result, it has become widely known throughout the whole imperial guard — and to everyone else — that I am in chains for the sake of Christ. ¹⁴Numerous of the brothers and sisters in the Lord, waxing confident by my bonds, are much more bold to speak the message without fear. ¹⁵Some indeed proclaim Christ out of envy and rivalry, but others out of good will. ¹⁶The latter do it out of love, knowing that I am put here for the defense of the gospel. ¹⁷The former proclaim Christ out of selfish ambition, not sincerely, thinking to afflict me in my imprisonment. ¹⁸What then? Only this: that in every way, whether from false motives or true, Christ is proclaimed, and in that I rejoice. Yes, and I will continue to rejoice, ¹⁹For I know that this will turn to my salvation by way of your petition, and the supply of the Spirit of Jesus Christ, ²⁰According to my earnest expectation and my confident expectation, that in nothing I will be ashamed, but that with all boldness, as always, so now also Christ will be magnified in my body, whether it be by life, or by death. ²¹And to die is gain, and for to me to live is Christ. ²²If I am to go on living in the body, that means fruitful labor for me. Yet which I will choose I cannot tell. ²³I am hard-pressed between the two. My desire is to depart and be with Christ, for that is far better. ²⁴But to remain in the body is more necessary for your sake. ²⁵Convinced of this, I know that I will remain and continue with all of you for your progress and joy in the faith, ²⁶Then when I come to you again, you will have even more reason to be proud in Christ Jesus because of me. ²⁷Only this: live as citizens worthy of the gospel of Christ, so that whether I come and see you or am absent, I may hear that you are standing firm in one spirit, contending side by side with one mind for the faith of the gospel, ²⁸In nothing intimidated by those who oppose you — which is to them a clear sign of their destruction, but to you of salvation, and that of God. ²⁹For it has been granted to you that for the sake of Christ you should not only believe in him but also suffer for his sake, ³⁰Having the same conflict which you noticed in me, and now hear to be in me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *douloi* ('slaves, servants') denotes total allegiance. Paul identifies himself not by apostolic title but as a slave of Christ — unusual for his letter openings and perhaps reflecting the intimate tone of this letter. The term *episkopoi* ('overseers') is rendered 'overseers' rather than the KJV's 'bishops,' which carries later ecclesiastical connotations absent from the first-century context. *Diakonoi* ('deacons, servants') refers to recognized servants of the congregation.
2. Paul's standard greeting fuses the Greek *charis* ('grace') with the Hebrew *shalom*-equivalent *eirene* ('peace'). The pairing of God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ as co-source of grace and peace is a high christological claim embedded in an ordinary salutation.
3. The phrase *epi pase tee mneia hymōn* can mean either 'upon every remembrance of you' (each time Paul thinks of them) or 'for all your remembrance of me' (their remembering him through gifts). The former reading is more natural in context and is followed here.
4. The repetition of *pas* ('all, every') is characteristic of Philippians — Paul uses the word more frequently here than in any other letter relative to length. *Joy (chara)* appears for the first time, establishing the letter's dominant theme.
5. The Greek *koinōnia* ('partnership, fellowship, sharing') is richer than the English 'fellowship' suggests. It denotes active participation and mutual sharing — the Philippians were not passive recipients of the gospel but active partners in its advancement, including through their financial support of Paul's mission.
6. The verb *enarchomai* ('to begin') and *epiteleo* ('to bring to completion') form a deliberate pair — what God initiated, God will finish. The 'day of Christ Jesus' (*hemeras Christou Iesou*) is an eschatological reference to Christ's return, adapted from the Old Testament 'day of the LORD' (*yom YHWH*).
7. The phrase *echein me en tee kardia hymas* is ambiguous — it could mean 'I hold you in my heart' or 'you hold me in your heart.' Both are grammatically possible; we follow the former as the more natural subject-object order. The compound *synkoinōnos* ('co-partners, fellow-sharers') intensifies the *koinōnia* theme of verse 5.
8. The Greek *splanchna* ('intestines, inner organs') was the ancient seat of deep emotion, equivalent to the modern 'heart.' The KJV's literal 'bowels' is misleading in modern English. Paul claims that his longing for the Philippians originates not from natural affection but from Christ's own love working through him.

9. Paul prays not merely for love but for love informed by epignōsis ('full knowledge, deep understanding') and aisthēsis ('perception, discernment, moral insight'). This is not sentimentality but a love that sees clearly and acts wisely.
10. The verb dokimazein ('to test, examine, approve') means to distinguish what truly matters from what merely appears important. The adjective eilikrineis ('pure, sincere') may derive from heilē ('sunlight') and krinō ('to judge') — that which is judged genuine when examined in full light.
11. The singular 'fruit' (karpon) follows the SBLGNT against the KJV's plural 'fruits.' Righteousness here is both status and conduct — the right standing before God that produces right living, all mediated through Christ. The phrase 'to the glory and praise of God' marks the goal of all Christian ethics in Paul's thought.
12. The Greek adelphoi ('brothers') is used inclusively here for the entire congregation, hence 'brothers and sisters.' The word prokopē ('advancement, progress') was a Stoic term for moral progress; Paul repurposes it for the spread of the gospel. His imprisonment, which might seem a setback, has paradoxically furthered the mission.
13. The praitōrion ('praetorium') could refer to the praetorian guard in Rome, the governor's residence in Caesarea, or a provincial headquarters in Ephesus. If Rome, Paul's chains have become a witness to the imperial guard itself. The phrase en Christō ('in Christ') modifies the imprisonment — his bonds are recognized as being 'for Christ' rather than for criminal activity.
14. Paul's suffering has had the opposite of its intended effect: rather than silencing the movement, his imprisonment has emboldened other believers. The verb tolmaō ('to dare, to be bold') suggests courage in the face of real danger — these believers preach knowing that imprisonment is a real possibility.
15. Paul acknowledges a painful reality: not all who preach Christ do so with pure motives. The pair phthonon ('envy') and erin ('rivalry, strife') suggests personal antagonism toward Paul rather than doctrinal error — these preachers proclaim the true Christ but from corrupt motives.
16. The SBLGNT reverses the order found in the KJV's underlying text (Textus Receptus), placing the love-motivated group in verse 16 and the rivalry-motivated group in verse 17. We follow the SBLGNT order. The verb keimai ('I am placed, I am appointed') suggests Paul views his imprisonment as a divine assignment rather than a misfortune.
17. The Greek eritheia ('selfish ambition, self-seeking') originally referred to working for hire and came to mean partisan, self-interested maneuvering. These preachers aim to increase Paul's suffering by highlighting his confinement while they enjoy freedom. Despite their malice, Paul will rejoice that Christ is preached (v. 18).
18. Paul's response to rivalrous preachers is astonishing generosity: as long as Christ is proclaimed, he rejoices regardless of the preacher's motives. The Greek prophasei ('pretext, false motive') contrasts with aletheia ('truth'). The shift from present chairō ('I rejoice') to future charēsomai ('I will rejoice') extends his joy from the present crisis into the future.
19. Paul echoes Job 13:16 (LXX: touto moi apobēsetai eis sōtērian). The word sōtēria here may mean spiritual salvation, physical release from prison, or vindication at trial. The 'supply' (epichorēgia, 'generous provision') of the Spirit is not a meager trickle but an abundant provision.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Job 13:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The rare compound apokaradokia ('eager expectation') literally suggests craning the neck forward in anticipation. Paul's singular concern is not his own survival but that Christ be 'magnified' (megalynthēsetai) in his body — whether that body lives or dies. The phrase 'whether by life or by death' sets up the extraordinary meditation in verses 21-26.
21. This is one of the most compressed and profound statements in the Pauline corpus. The Greek lacks a verb — literally 'to me the living Christ and the dying gain.' Life is not merely lived for Christ or with Christ but is Christ — existence itself is absorbed into Christ's person. If living is already Christ, then death can only bring more of him, hence 'gain' (kerdos). The logic is airtight: Paul cannot lose.
22. The syntax is notoriously difficult. Paul seems to say: if continued life in the body means productive ministry ('fruit of labor'), then he genuinely does not know which to prefer — death with Christ or fruitful service. The verb hairēsomai ('I will choose') is striking, as if the choice were actually his to make.
23. The verb synechomai ('I am pressed, constrained') conveys being squeezed from both sides. The verb analysai ('to depart, to break camp, to set sail') is a metaphor for death — either striking a tent (a soldier's image) or loosing a ship from its moorings. Paul's conviction that death means being 'with Christ' (syn Christō) reflects a personal eschatology of immediate presence with Christ after death.
24. Paul resolves the tension of verses 21-23 in favor of continued life — not because life is better for him, but because it is more necessary (anangkaioteron) for the Philippians. His pastoral love overrides his personal preference. The shift from 'flesh' (sarx) to 'body' in our rendering avoids the negative connotations 'flesh' carries elsewhere in Paul.
25. The verbs menō ('remain') and paramenō ('continue alongside') are nearly synonymous, creating emphasis through repetition. Paul expresses confidence in his release, though this is pastoral assurance rather than prophetic certainty. The pair prokopē ('progress') and chara ('joy') captures Paul's dual goal for the Philippians — growth and gladness.
26. The Greek kauchēma ('boast, ground of boasting') is not sinful pride but legitimate exultation — and it is 'in Christ Jesus,' not in human achievement. Paul envisions his return to Philippi as occasion for the church to celebrate God's faithfulness in preserving his life.

27. The verb *politeuesthe* ('live as citizens, conduct yourselves as citizens') is loaded with meaning for the Philippians, who held Roman citizenship as residents of a Roman colony. Paul calls them to a higher citizenship — one defined by the gospel rather than by Rome. The athletic metaphor *synathlēō* ('to contend together, to compete as teammates') pictures the church as a team striving in unified effort.
28. The verb *ptyromai* ('to be frightened, startled') is used of horses shying at danger. The Philippians' fearless stand serves as a double sign: it signals the opponents' destruction (*apōleia*) and the believers' salvation (*sōtēria*). The final phrase 'and that from God' (*kai touto apo theou*) means that both the sign and the salvation originate from God.
29. The verb *echaristhē* ('it has been graciously given') shares the root of *charis* ('grace'). Suffering, like faith, is presented as a gift — a startling claim that reframes persecution as divine privilege rather than misfortune. This theology of suffering as gift is distinctly Pauline.
30. The Greek *agōn* ('struggle, contest, fight') is an athletic term for a competitive event. The Philippians witnessed Paul's struggle firsthand when he was beaten and imprisoned in their city (Acts 16:19-40), and now they hear of his continued imprisonment. Their own suffering mirrors his — they share the same contest.

2

Summary: *Paul appeals for unity and humility in the Philippian church, grounding his appeal in the supreme example of Christ's self-emptying. The Christ Hymn (2:5-11) traces the arc from pre-existent divine equality through incarnation, servanthood, and crucifixion to exaltation and universal lordship. Paul then urges the Philippians to work out their salvation with fear and trembling, commends Timothy and Epaphroditus as models of self-giving service, and prepares to send both to Philippi.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Christ Hymn (2:5-11) is one of the highest christological passages in the New Testament. Whether Paul composed it, adapted an existing hymn, or quoted early liturgy is debated, but its theology is clear: Christ possessed equality with God, voluntarily emptied himself, took the form of a slave, became human, died on a cross, and was exalted to the highest place with the name above every name. The kenosis ('emptying') of verse 7 has generated centuries of theological reflection on how divinity and humanity relate in Christ. The hymn's climax — 'every tongue will confess that Jesus Christ is Lord' — echoes Isaiah 45:23, where every knee bows to YHWH alone, making an implicit identification of Jesus with the God of Israel.*

Translation Friction: *The precise meaning of kenosis ('he emptied himself,' v. 7) is a perennial theological question. The text does not say of what Christ emptied himself — it says he emptied himself by taking the form of a servant. We render the Greek without resolving the systematic theology. The phrase *harpagmon* ('something to be grasped/exploited,' v. 6) is one of the most debated words in Pauline studies; we render it as 'something to be exploited' following the majority consensus that Christ did not cling to his divine prerogatives.*

Connections: *The hymn's language echoes Isaiah's Servant Songs (especially Isaiah 52:13-53:12), where the Servant is exalted after humiliation. The universal confession of verse 11 quotes Isaiah 45:23. The 'form of God' / 'form of a servant' contrast recalls the Adam-Christ typology of Romans 5:12-21 — where Adam grasped at being like God, Christ did the opposite. Epaphroditus's near-death illness connects to 2 Corinthians 1:8-10 and Paul's theology of shared suffering.*

¹So if there is any encouragement in Christ, any comfort from love, any partnership in the Spirit, any affection and compassion, ²Fulfil you my delight, that you be likeminded, possessing the same devotion, being of one accord, of one mind. ³Do nothing from selfish ambition or empty conceit, but in humility regard others as more significant than yourselves. ⁴Let each of you look not only to your own interests, but also to the interests of others. ⁵Have this mind among yourselves, which is yours in Christ Jesus, ⁶Though he existed in the very form of God, he did not consider equality with God something to be grasped for his own advantage. ⁷However, made himself of no reputation, and picked up upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men: ⁸And being found in human form, he humbled himself by becoming obedient to the point of death — even death on a cross. ⁹Therefore God has highly exalted him and granted him the name that is above every name, ¹⁰That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of matters in heaven, and matters in earth, and things under the world; ¹¹To the glory of god the father, and that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord. ¹²Work out your own salvation with fear and trembling, therefore, my dear, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much

more in my absence. ¹³Indeed, since it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure. ¹⁴Do all things without grumbling or arguing, ¹⁵So you can become blameless and harmless, the sons of God, without rebuke, in the midst of a crooked and perverse nation, among whom you shine as lights in the present age;. ¹⁶as you hold firmly to the word of life. Then on the day of Christ I will be able to rejoice, knowing that my effort and hard work were not wasted. ¹⁷But even if I am being poured out as a drink offering upon the sacrificial offering of your faith, I am glad and rejoice with all of you. ¹⁸In the same way you also should be glad and rejoice with me. ¹⁹I hope in the Lord Jesus to send Timothy to you soon, so that I too may be encouraged by learning how you are. ²⁰For I have no one like-minded who will genuinely care about your welfare. ²¹For they all seek their own interests, not those of Jesus Christ. ²²But you know Timothy's proven character, that as a child with a father he has served with me in the gospel. ²³I hope therefore to send him just as soon as I see how things will go with me, ²⁴However, I trust in the Lord that I also myself will come shortly. ²⁵But I thought it necessary to send to you Epaphroditus — my brother and fellow worker and fellow soldier, and your messenger and minister to my need — ²⁶Since he longed following you all, and was full of heaviness, because that you had listened to that he had been sick. ²⁷Indeed he was ill, near to death. But God had mercy on him, and not only on him but on me also, so that I would not have sorrow upon sorrow. ²⁸I am the more eager to send him, therefore, so that when you see him again you may rejoice, and I may be less anxious. ²⁹So receive him in the Lord with all joy, and hold people like him in honor, ³⁰On account of the fact that for the labor of Christ he was nigh to passing, not regarding his life, to supply your lack of service toward me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourfold 'if' (ei tis) is not expressing doubt but stating conditions Paul knows to be true — 'since there is encouragement, since there is comfort...' The rhetorical force is: given all that you have experienced in Christ, act accordingly. The word paraklēsis ('encouragement, exhortation, comfort') is the noun form of the verb from which 'Paraclete' derives.
2. The verb phroneō ('to think, to set one's mind on') appears twice here and is the key verb of Philippians, occurring ten times in the letter. Unity is not uniformity of opinion but a shared orientation of mind and purpose. The compound sympsychoi ('united in soul, of one spirit') appears only here in the New Testament.
3. The word kenodoxia ('empty glory, vain conceit') appears only here in the New Testament. The noun tapeinophrosynē ('humility, lowliness of mind') was generally a negative quality in Greco-Roman culture — it meant 'servile-mindedness.' Paul and the early Christians transformed it into a virtue, modeled on Christ's own self-lowering (vv. 5-8).
4. The verb skopeō ('to look at, to pay attention to, to consider') does not prohibit self-care but redirects primary attention outward. The word 'also' (kai) is important — Paul does not forbid attention to one's own affairs but insists that concern for others must accompany it. This verse provides the ethical principle that the Christ Hymn will illustrate christologically.
5. This verse introduces the Christ Hymn (vv. 5-11). The verb phroneite ('think, have this mindset') connects back to the call for unity in verse 2. The phrase en hymin can mean 'in you' (individually) or 'among you' (corporately) — both senses are likely intended. Christ's mindset is not merely an external example to imitate but an internal reality for those who are 'in Christ Jesus.'
6. The Greek morphē theou ('form of God') does not mean mere appearance but essential character — the outward expression that corresponds to inner reality. Christ's pre-existence in the 'form of God' is an assertion of genuine divinity. The word harpagmon ('something seized, something exploited') is extremely rare and debated. The rendering 'something to be exploited' follows the res rapta interpretation: Christ possessed equality with God but refused to exploit it for his own advantage. The KJV's 'robbery' follows a different interpretation.
7. The verb ekenōsen ('he emptied') is the source of the theological term 'kenosis.' Crucially, the emptying is described not as subtraction (losing divine attributes) but as addition — 'by taking (labōn) the form of a servant.' Christ emptied himself of his prerogatives by adding servanthood to his identity. The 'form of a servant' (morphēn doulou) deliberately contrasts with 'form of God' (morphē theou) in verse 6. The word homoiōma ('likeness') affirms genuine humanity while preserving the distinction that Christ was not merely human.
8. The word schēma ('outward form, appearance, fashion') differs from morphē in verse 7 — schēma refers to the observable, external presentation. The descent continues: from divine form, to servant form, to human likeness, to humiliation, to obedience, to death, and finally to the most degrading form of death — crucifixion. The phrase 'death on a cross' (thanatou de staurou) is added as a shocking afterthought — the em-dash captures the Greek particle de, which introduces an unexpected intensification. Crucifixion was reserved for slaves and the worst criminals; it was so shameful that Roman citizens were exempt from it.
9. The conjunction dio ('therefore, for this reason') marks the turning point of the hymn — the exaltation is God's response to Christ's self-humiliation. The verb hyperypsoō ('to super-exalt, to raise to the highest position') is a compound intensification found only here in the New Testament. The verb echarisato ('graciously gave, granted as a gift') shares the root of charis ('grace'). The 'name above every name' is almost certainly 'Lord' (kyrios) as specified in verse 11, which in the Septuagint translates the divine name YHWH.

10. Paul quotes Isaiah 45:23, where YHWH declares: 'To me every knee shall bow.' By applying this text to Jesus, Paul makes an extraordinary claim: the homage owed to the God of Israel is now rendered to the crucified and exalted Jesus. The threefold cosmos — heaven, earth, and under the earth (epouraniōn, epigeiōn, katachthoniōn) — encompasses every realm of existence. Nothing is excluded from Christ's lordship.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 45:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The confession *kyrios Iesous Christos* ('Jesus Christ is Lord') is the earliest Christian creed. In the Roman Empire, the declaration *kyrios Kaisar* ('Caesar is Lord') was an oath of political allegiance; the Christian confession was therefore both theological and politically subversive. The title *kyrios* ('Lord'), when applied to Jesus in a context quoting Isaiah 45:23, carries the full weight of the divine name YHWH. Yet this exaltation of Jesus is not competitive with the Father — it is 'to the glory of God the Father,' maintaining the unity of divine purpose.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 45:23. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The command *katargazesthe* ('work out, bring to completion') does not mean 'earn' but 'bring to full expression' — salvation is a reality already given (by God, v. 13) that must be actively lived out in community. The phrase 'fear and trembling' (*phobou kai tromou*) echoes the Old Testament posture before God's holiness (Psalm 2:11; Isaiah 66:2). Paul's absence makes their obedience more significant — they must mature beyond dependence on his physical presence.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 2:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 66:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. This verse completes the paradox of verse 12: work out your salvation because God is the one working in you. Human effort and divine agency are not competitors but partners — God produces both the willing (to *thelein*) and the doing (to *energein*). The word *eudokia* ('good pleasure, delight, purpose') indicates that God's work in believers flows from his own joyful purpose, not reluctant obligation.
14. The word *gongysmōn* ('grumbling, murmuring') echoes Israel's wilderness complaints (Exodus 16:7-12; Numbers 14:27). Paul warns the Philippian church not to repeat Israel's pattern of dissatisfaction with God's provision and leadership. The word *dialogismōn* ('arguments, disputes, questionings') refers to divisive internal debates.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 16:7-12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 14:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The phrase 'crooked and twisted generation' (*geneas skolas kai diestrammenēs*) quotes Deuteronomy 32:5 from the Song of Moses, where it describes faithless Israel. Paul applies it to the surrounding pagan culture. The word *phōstēres* ('lights, luminaries, stars') is used in the Septuagint of Genesis 1:14-16 for the celestial bodies — believers are like stars set against the darkness of a corrupt world.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:14-16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The verb *epechō* can mean either 'hold fast' (retain) or 'hold forth' (offer). Both senses may be intended — the Philippians cling to the gospel and display it to the world. Paul's running and laboring metaphors draw from athletics and manual work. His boast (*kauchēma*) on the day of Christ will be the Philippians themselves — their faithfulness will validate his ministry.
17. The verb *spendomai* ('I am being poured out as a libation') is a sacrificial term — Paul pictures his life (or death) as a drink offering poured over the Philippians' faith, which is itself the main sacrifice. The imagery is drawn from Old Testament sacrificial practice where wine was poured as a libation alongside the primary offering (Numbers 15:5-10). Even contemplating martyrdom, Paul rejoices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 15:5-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Paul commands mutual rejoicing — even in the face of his possible death. The imperative *chairete* ('rejoice!') is a command, not merely a wish. Joy in Philippians is not dependent on circumstances but on the shared reality of being in Christ.
19. The rare verb *eupsycheō* ('to be encouraged, to be heartened') appears only here in the New Testament. Paul's concern for the Philippians is not one-directional — he needs news of them as much as they need Timothy's visit. The phrase 'in the Lord Jesus' frames even travel plans within the sphere of Christ's lordship.
20. The adjective *isopsychon* ('like-souled, kindred in spirit') appears only here in the New Testament. Timothy is uniquely aligned with Paul's pastoral heart. The adverb *gnēsiōs* ('genuinely, sincerely') comes from *gnēsios* ('legitimate, born in wedlock') — Timothy's care for the Philippians is not performative but authentic.

21. This stark assessment — 'all seek their own' — echoes the warning of verse 4 and contrasts with the Christ of the hymn who sought others' interests above his own. The 'all' is likely hyperbolic, referring to those currently available as potential envoys rather than every believer everywhere.
22. The word dokimē ('proven character, tested quality') means worth demonstrated through testing — Timothy is not untried. Paul starts to say 'as a son serves a father' but corrects the image to 'as a child with a father he served with me' — changing the hierarchical metaphor to one of partnership. Timothy is not Paul's subordinate but his co-laborer.
23. Paul will send Timothy once his own situation becomes clearer — presumably the outcome of his trial. The verb aphidō ('to see from a distance, to perceive clearly') suggests Paul is waiting for clarity about his case before sending his most trusted associate away.
24. Paul's confidence in his own visit is grounded 'in the Lord' — not in legal optimism but in trust in Christ's sovereign purposes. This hope of release aligns with his expectation in 1:25 that he will remain for the Philippians' benefit.
25. Paul introduces Epaphroditus with five titles arranged in two groups: three from Paul's perspective (brother, fellow worker, fellow soldier) and two from the Philippians' perspective (their apostolon — 'sent one, messenger' — and minister to Paul's need). The military metaphor systratiotēs ('fellow soldier') frames gospel ministry as warfare.
26. The verb adēmoneō ('to be distressed, troubled, anxious') is the same word used of Jesus in Gethsemane (Matthew 26:37). Epaphroditus's distress is not about his own illness but about the Philippians' worry — he is upset that they are upset. This other-centered concern exemplifies the mindset Paul commended in verses 3-4.
27. The phrase paraplēsion thanatō ('near to death, close to dying') indicates a life-threatening illness. Paul's candor is striking — he does not attribute the healing to his own prayers or apostolic power but simply to God's mercy (eleēsen). The phrase 'sorrow upon sorrow' (lypēn epi lypēn) suggests Paul already carries grief (perhaps from imprisonment) and would have been overwhelmed by Epaphroditus's death.
28. The comparative spoudaioterōs ('more eagerly, with greater urgency') and alypoteros ('less sorrowful, less anxious') show Paul's pastoral sensitivity — he acts swiftly to relieve both the Philippians' worry and his own. The so-called 'epistolary aorist' (epempsa, 'I sent') refers to the sending that will take place when the letter arrives.
29. The imperative prosdecheste ('receive, welcome') suggests that Epaphroditus might need an advocate — perhaps some in Philippi questioned why he returned without completing his mission to Paul. Paul preemptively defends him and commands the church to honor him.
30. The verb paraboleusamenos ('having risked, having gambled') is a gambling term — Epaphroditus wagered his life on Christ's work. The phrase 'what was lacking in your service' (to hymōn hystērēma tēs leitourgias) is not a criticism of the Philippians but acknowledges that their physical distance prevented personal service to Paul; Epaphroditus bridged that gap at the cost of his own health.

3

Summary: Paul warns the Philippians against Judaizing opponents whom he calls 'dogs' and 'mutilators of the flesh,' then offers his own credentials as a model of what he now considers worthless compared to knowing Christ. He describes his pursuit of Christ in athletic terms — pressing on toward the goal, forgetting what lies behind, straining toward what lies ahead. He contrasts those whose 'god is their belly' with believers whose citizenship is in heaven, from where they await a Savior who will transform their lowly bodies.

What Makes This Remarkable: Paul's autobiographical section (vv. 4-14) is the most detailed account of his Jewish credentials anywhere in his letters: circumcised on the eighth day, of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of Hebrews, a Pharisee, blameless under the law. His sweeping renunciation of these credentials as 'rubbish' (skybalon, v. 8) is not self-hatred but a radical revaluation — everything is loss compared to the surpassing worth of knowing Christ Jesus. The athletic metaphor of pressing toward the goal (vv. 12-14) has become one of the most quoted Pauline images, expressing the Christian life as disciplined forward movement rather than passive arrival.

Translation Friction: The sharp warning in verse 2 ('beware of the dogs') represents Paul's most aggressive anti-opponent language outside of Galatians. The identity of these opponents is debated — they may be the same Judaizers addressed in Galatians, or a different group. The term skybalon (v. 8) is deliberately vulgar, ranging from 'refuse' to 'excrement'; we render it as 'rubbish' to preserve the force without gratuitous shock. The phrase 'enemies of the cross' (v. 18) may refer to the same opponents or to a different group focused on libertine behavior.

Connections: Paul's list of Jewish credentials parallels 2 Corinthians 11:22 and Galatians 1:13-14. The athletic imagery of pressing toward the goal connects to 1 Corinthians 9:24-27 and 2 Timothy 4:7-8. The heavenly citizenship (politeuma) in verse 20 picks up the citizenship language of 1:27. The transformation of the body (v. 21) anticipates the resurrection theology of 1 Corinthians 15:42-54.

¹Finally, my brothers and sisters, rejoice in the Lord. To write the same things to you is no trouble to me and is a safeguard for you. ²Watch out for the dogs, watch out for the evildoers, watch out for those who mutilate the flesh. ³For we are the circumcision — we who worship by the Spirit of God and boast in Christ Jesus and put no confidence in the flesh — ⁴Though I may as well possess confidence in the physical nature. If any other man thinketh that he has whereof he might trust in the flesh, I more:. ⁵I was circumcised on the eighth day, born into the people of Israel from the tribe of Benjamin — a Hebrew descended from Hebrews. In regard to the law, I was a Pharisee. ⁶Concerning zeal, persecuting the church. Touching the moral integrity which is in the instruction of Moses, blameless. ⁷But whatever gain I had, I counted as loss for the sake of Christ. ⁸Indeed, I count everything as loss because of the surpassing worth of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord. For his sake I have suffered the loss of all things and count them as rubbish, in order that I may gain Christ ⁹Be discovered in him, not having mine own righteousness, which is of the law, but that which is by way of the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by way of faith:. ¹⁰I want to know Christ — to experience the power of his resurrection, to share in his sufferings, and to become like him in his death. ¹¹If by any means I may attain to the resurrection of the no longer alive. ¹²Not that I have already obtained this or have already been made perfect, but I press on to make it my own, because Christ Jesus has made me his own. ¹³Brothers and sisters, I do not consider that I have made it my own. But one thing I do: forgetting what lies behind and straining forward to what lies ahead, ¹⁴I press on toward the goal for the prize of the upward call of God in Christ Jesus. ¹⁵Let those of us then who are mature think this way, and if in anything you think otherwise, God will reveal that also to you. ¹⁶Only let us hold true to what we have attained. ¹⁷Brothers and sisters, join in imitating me, and keep your eyes on those who walk according to the example you have in us. ¹⁸For many, of whom I have often told you and now tell you even with tears, walk as enemies of the cross of Christ. ¹⁹Their end is destruction, their god is their belly, and they glory in their shame, with minds set on earthly things. ²⁰But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we eagerly await a Savior, the Lord Jesus Christ, ²¹Who will change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like to his glorious body, in keeping with to the working whereby he is able indeed to subdue all things to himself.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase to loipon ('finally, as for the rest') does not necessarily signal the end of the letter — Paul has two more chapters to go. It functions as a transition marker. The reference to 'the same things' suggests Paul has warned them before, either in person or in a previous letter now lost. The word asphales ('safe, secure, a safeguard') implies that repetition protects against error.
2. The threefold blepete ('watch out, beware') is urgent and aggressive. 'Dogs' (kynas) was a term Jews used for Gentiles; Paul turns it against the Judaizers themselves. The word katatomē ('mutilation, cutting') is a biting pun on peritomē ('circumcision') — Paul reduces their prized covenant sign to mere flesh-cutting. This is among the harshest language in Paul's letters.
3. Paul claims the title 'the circumcision' (hē peritomē) for believers in Christ, redefining the covenant marker from physical surgery to spiritual reality. Three characteristics define true circumcision: worship by God's Spirit, boasting in Christ Jesus (not in credentials), and refusal to trust in the flesh. This echoes the prophetic tradition of 'circumcision of the heart' (Deuteronomy 30:6; Jeremiah 4:4).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 30:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 4:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Paul pivots from theological principle to personal testimony. His argument is not that flesh-credentials are unattainable but that he possessed them in abundance — and chose to abandon them. This makes his renunciation in verses 7-8 all the more powerful: he is not sour grapes but a man who walked away from genuine wealth.
5. Paul lists seven credentials in ascending order of personal achievement. The first four are inherited: circumcision on the proper day (not a proselyte), Israelite descent, Benjaminite tribal identity (the tribe that gave Israel its first king, Saul — Paul's namesake), and 'Hebrew of Hebrews' (likely meaning Hebrew-speaking from Hebrew-speaking parents, not Hellenized). The last three (vv. 5b-6) are chosen: Pharisee, persecutor, and blameless under law.

6. Paul's zeal (zēlos) manifested as violence against the church — he considers this a credential, not a confession, within the value system he is about to reject. His claim to be 'blameless' (amemptos) under the law does not mean sinless perfection but that he fulfilled the law's external requirements without fault. The rhetorical force is devastating: even flawless Torah observance is 'loss' compared to Christ (v. 7).
7. The commercial metaphor shifts: what was once in the 'profit' column (kerdē, plural 'gains') Paul has transferred to the 'loss' column (zēmian). The perfect tense hēgēmai ('I have counted and still count') indicates a past decision with continuing force. This is not a momentary emotion but a settled conviction.
8. Paul intensifies: not just his Jewish credentials but 'everything' (panta) is loss compared to knowing Christ. The rare word skybala ('refuse, rubbish, excrement, scraps thrown to dogs') is deliberately crude — Paul uses the coarsest available term to express how worthless his former advantages now seem. The phrase 'knowing Christ Jesus my Lord' (tēs gnōseōs Christou Iesou tou kyriou mou) is deeply personal — 'my Lord' is intimate, not merely doctrinal.
9. Paul contrasts two kinds of righteousness: his 'own' (emēn) righteousness based on law-keeping versus the righteousness 'from God' (ek theou) received through faith. The genitive pisteōs Christou ('faith of/in Christ') can be read as 'faith in Christ' (objective genitive) or 'the faithfulness of Christ' (subjective genitive). We follow the objective genitive reading, which is more consistent with Paul's argument here about human response to God's gift.
10. Paul's supreme goal is not theological knowledge about Christ but relational knowledge of Christ — the Greek gnōnai ('to know') carries the Old Testament sense of intimate, experiential knowing. The order is striking: resurrection power first, then suffering. Paul does not romanticize suffering but sees it as inseparable from genuine knowledge of the risen Christ. The verb symmorphizomenos ('being conformed to, being shaped into the pattern of') means taking on the very form (morphē) of Christ's death — echoing the hymn's language of Christ taking the 'form' of a servant (2:7).
11. The rare compound exanastasin ('out-resurrection, resurrection out from among') is more specific than the common anastasis — it may emphasize resurrection out from among the dead, distinguishing the believer's resurrection from a general raising. The conditional 'if by any means' (ei pōs) does not express doubt about salvation but humility before a goal not yet achieved, consistent with the 'not yet perfected' language of verse 12.
12. The verb diōkō ('I press on, I pursue, I chase') is the same verb translated 'persecute' in verse 6 — Paul the former persecutor of the church is now a pursuer of Christ. The verb katalambanō ('to seize, to take hold of, to make one's own') appears twice: Paul pursues in order to grasp what Christ has already grasped in him. The logic is: because Christ seized me, I press on to fully realize what he seized me for.
13. The verb epekteinomenos ('straining forward, stretching out toward') is an athletic term picturing a runner leaning forward with every muscle extended toward the finish line. The 'forgetting' (epilanthanomenos) of what lies behind includes both Paul's former Jewish achievements and his past failures — neither past glory nor past shame determines his forward movement.
14. The skopos ('goal, target, mark') is the finish line toward which the runner strains. The brabeion ('prize') is the victor's wreath awarded at Greek athletic games (cf. 1 Corinthians 9:24). The 'upward call' (anō klēseōs) may mean the call that comes from above (God's heavenly summons) or the call to go upward (the final resurrection). Both senses converge in Paul's thought.
15. The word teleioi ('mature, perfect, complete') is deliberately paradoxical after verse 12, where Paul said he has not been 'made perfect' (teteleiōmai). The mature person is precisely the one who knows they are not yet perfected. Paul trusts God to correct any remaining disagreement — a remarkably patient approach to theological differences within the community.
16. The verb stoichein ('to walk in line, to keep in step, to conform to') is a military term for marching in formation. Whatever level of understanding they have reached, they must live consistently with it. The SBLGNT has a shorter text than the Textus Receptus behind the KJV, which adds 'let us mind the same thing.'
17. The compound symmimētai ('co-imitators, joint imitators') means 'imitate me together' — the imitation is communal, not individual. Paul does not hesitate to offer himself as a model (cf. 1 Corinthians 11:1), not from arrogance but because the Christian life is learned through embodied example. The verb skopeite ('observe, watch closely') is related to skopos ('goal') in verse 14.
18. Paul's tears (klaiōn, 'weeping') reveal that his harsh language in verse 2 is not cold fury but grieved love. These 'enemies of the cross' are not outsiders but people within or near the Christian movement who reject the cross's implications — that God's power works through weakness and self-giving rather than through triumphalism.
19. Four damning descriptions: (1) their destination is destruction (apōleia), (2) their god is appetite (koilia, 'belly, stomach'), (3) their boast is in what should shame them, (4) their thinking is earthbound. Whether 'belly' refers to food laws, gluttony, or physical indulgence generally is debated. The verb phroneō ('to set one's mind on') appears again — their fundamental orientation is toward earthly things rather than heavenly realities.
20. The Greek politeuma ('citizenship, commonwealth, colony') is loaded for Philippian readers. Philippi was a Roman colony whose citizens held Roman citizenship and governed themselves by Roman law even while living far from Rome. Paul says believers are a colony of heaven — they live on earth but their governing allegiance, legal identity, and ultimate homeland are heavenly. The verb apekdechometha ('we eagerly await') is used exclusively for Christ's return in Paul's letters.
21. The verb metaschēmatisei ('will transform, will refashion') uses the schēma root from 2:8 — the outward form of our humble bodies will be remade. The compound symmorphōn ('conformed to, sharing the same form') uses the morphē root from 2:6-7 — our bodies will share the essential form of Christ's glorified body. The chapter that began with warnings against flesh-confidence ends with the promise that even the physical body will be glorified. The cosmic scope — 'subject all things to himself' — echoes Psalm 8:6 and 1 Corinthians 15:27-28.

21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 8:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

4

Summary: *Paul closes Philippians with pastoral exhortations, beloved promises, and gratitude. He urges Euodia and Syntyche to agree in the Lord, commands the church to rejoice always, and delivers the famous promise that 'the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and minds in Christ Jesus' (4:7). He provides a catalogue of virtues worthy of contemplation, declares his contentment in all circumstances through the strength of Christ (4:13), and thanks the Philippians for their generous financial support — the occasion that prompted this letter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains two of the most quoted verses in the Pauline corpus: 'the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding' (v. 7) and 'I can do all things through him who strengthens me' (v. 13). The latter is frequently decontextualized as a promise of unlimited ability; in context, Paul is describing his learned capacity for contentment in both poverty and abundance. The virtue catalogue of verse 8 is remarkable for its overlap with Greco-Roman moral philosophy — Paul affirms pagan ethical vocabulary while grounding it in the gospel. The financial section (vv. 14-20) is a masterclass in gratitude without dependence, expressing deep appreciation while insisting that Paul's true sufficiency comes from God.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'true companion' (gnēsie syzge, v. 3) is unknown — proposals include Luke, Silas, Epaphroditus, or even a proper name ('Syzygus'). We transliterate the options in the notes without resolving the question. The phrase 'I can do all things' (v. 13) must be read in its immediate context of financial contentment, not as a blank check for any endeavor; our notes address this common misapplication.*

Connections: *The peace of God (v. 7) connects to the 'God of peace' (v. 9) and to Christ's peace discourse in John 14:27. The virtue catalogue (v. 8) parallels Wisdom of Solomon 8:7 and broader Stoic lists. Paul's financial language of 'giving and receiving' (v. 15) uses Greco-Roman accounting terminology. The 'fragrant offering' (v. 18) echoes Genesis 8:21 and Leviticus 1:9 — the Philippians' gift is described in sacrificial terms.*

¹Therefore, my brothers and sisters, whom I love and long for, my joy and crown, stand firm in this way in the Lord, my beloved. ²I urge Euodia and I urge Syntyche to agree in the Lord. ³Yes, I ask you also, true companion, help these women, for they have labored side by side with me in the gospel together with Clement and the rest of my co-workers, whose names are in the book of life. ⁴Rejoice in the Lord always; again I will say, rejoice. ⁵Let your gentleness be known to everyone. The Lord is near. ⁶Do not be anxious about anything, but in everything by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known to God. ⁷And the peace of God, which surpasses all understanding, will guard your hearts and your minds in Christ Jesus. ⁸Finally, brothers and sisters, whatever is true, whatever is honorable, whatever is just, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is commendable — if there is any excellence, if there is anything worthy of praise — think about these things. ⁹What you have learned and received and heard and seen in me — practice these things, and the God of peace will be with you. ¹⁰I rejoiced in the Lord greatly that now at last you have revived your concern for me. You were indeed concerned for me, but you had no opportunity. ¹¹Not that I am speaking of being in need, for I have learned in whatever situation I am to be content. ¹²I know how to be brought low, and I know how to abound. In any and every circumstance, I have learned the secret of facing plenty and hunger, abundance and need. ¹³I can do all things through him who strengthens me. ¹⁴Yet you did well to share with me in my affliction. ¹⁵And you Philippians yourselves know that in the beginning of the gospel, when I left Macedonia, no church entered into partnership with me in giving and receiving, except you only. ¹⁶For even in Thessalonica you dispatched once and again to my necessity. ¹⁷Not that I seek the gift, but I seek the profit that accumulates to your account. ¹⁸I have received full payment and more. I am well supplied, having received from Epaphroditus the gifts you sent — a fragrant offering, a sacrifice acceptable and pleasing to God. ¹⁹And my God will supply every need of yours according to his riches in glory in Christ Jesus. ²⁰To our God and Father be glory forever and ever.

Amen. ²¹**Greet every saint in Christ Jesus. The brothers and sisters who are with me greet you.** ²²**All the saints greet you, especially those of Caesar's household.** ²³**The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit.**

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The warmth of Paul's language is extraordinary — five affectionate terms in one verse: beloved, longed for, joy, crown, beloved again. The *stephanos* ('crown, wreath') is the victor's garland, not a royal crown (*diadēma*) — the Philippians themselves are Paul's prize at the finish line of his apostolic race (cf. 1 Thessalonians 2:19).
2. Both names are feminine — these are women leaders in the Philippian church. The repetition of *parakalō* ('I urge') with each name gives equal weight to both, refusing to take sides. The verb *phroneō* ('to think, to have a mindset') appears again — the letter's key verb. Their disagreement apparently affected the whole congregation, warranting a public appeal.
3. The Greek *syzge* ('yokefellow, companion') may be a proper name (*Syzygus*) or a description of an unnamed colleague. The adjective *gnēsie* ('true, genuine, legitimate') would be a pun if *Syzygus* is a name ('truly named Yokefellow'). The women 'labored side by side' (*synēthlēsan*, 'contended together as athletes') with Paul — the same athletic verb used in 1:27, indicating full co-laborer status. The 'book of life' (*biblos zōēs*) is an image drawn from Exodus 32:32-33 and Daniel 12:1.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 32:32-33 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 12:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The double imperative *chairete* ('rejoice!') from a man in prison is the letter's climactic command. The word *pantote* ('always') makes joy a non-negotiable posture, not dependent on favorable circumstances. The deliberate repetition — 'again I will say' — emphasizes that this is not casual advice but an apostolic command.
5. The Greek *epieikes* ('gentleness, forbearance, graciousness, reasonableness') is a quality Aristotle defined as 'justice that goes beyond the letter of the law' — a willingness to yield one's strict rights for the sake of others. The brief declaration *ho kyrios engys* ('the Lord is near') can mean temporal proximity (Christ's return is imminent) or spatial proximity (the Lord is present with you). Both readings are likely intended.
6. The verb *merimnate* ('be anxious, worry') is the same word Jesus used in the Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 6:25-34). The antidote to anxiety is not suppression but redirection — prayer, petition, and thanksgiving. The triad of *proseuche* ('prayer,' general worship), *deēsis* ('supplication,' specific requests), and *eucharistia* ('thanksgiving') forms a complete pattern of communication with God.
7. The verb *phrouresei* ('will guard, will garrison') is a military term — God's peace stands sentry over the believer's inner life like a soldier guarding a city. For Philippians living in a Roman garrison city, this image was vivid. The peace 'surpasses all understanding' (*hyperechousa panta noun*) not because it is irrational but because it exceeds what the human mind can produce or comprehend on its own. It guards both 'hearts' (*kardias*, the seat of will and emotion) and 'minds' (*noēmata*, thoughts and purposes).
8. This virtue catalogue is remarkable for its overlap with Greek moral philosophy. The words *aretē* ('excellence, virtue') and *epainos* ('praise') are rare in Paul but common in Hellenistic ethics. Paul does not reject pagan moral insight but baptizes it — whatever is genuinely excellent in human culture is worth a Christian's contemplation. The sixfold 'whatever' (*hosa*) creates a sweeping inclusiveness: truth, honor, justice, purity, loveliness, and good repute are valued wherever they are found.
9. Four verbs of transmission — 'learned' (*emathete*), 'received' (*parelabete*, a technical term for receiving tradition), 'heard' (*ēkousate*), and 'seen' (*eidete*) — cover every mode of instruction. Paul again offers himself as a living example (cf. 3:17). The promise shifts from 'the peace of God' (v. 7) to 'the God of peace' — not merely God's gift but God's presence.
10. The verb *anethalete* ('you have revived, you have blossomed again') is a botanical term for a plant putting forth new growth after winter. Paul immediately softens any hint of reproach — they always cared but lacked opportunity (*ēkaireisthe*, 'you had no favorable occasion'). The delay in sending support was circumstantial, not attitudinal.
11. The word *autarkēs* ('content, self-sufficient') was the supreme Stoic virtue — the wise person who needs nothing external. Paul adopts the term but radically redefines it: his sufficiency comes not from inner philosophical detachment but from Christ's empowering (v. 13). The verb *emathon* ('I have learned') indicates this contentment was not innate but acquired through experience.
12. The verb *memyēmai* ('I have been initiated, I have learned the secret') comes from the mystery religions — it means to be inducted into hidden knowledge through experience. Paul borrows the language of pagan initiation to describe his education in contentment. The four pairs — brought low/about, full/hungry, abundance/need — cover the full spectrum of material circumstances.
13. The Greek *panta ischyō* ('I am strong for all things, I have strength for everything') in context refers to Paul's ability to endure any circumstance — poverty or abundance, hunger or plenty — not a promise of unlimited capability for any endeavor. The SBLGNT does not include 'Christ' (*Christō*), reading simply 'the one who empowers me' (*tō endynamounti me*), though Christ is clearly implied. The verb *endynamoō* ('to empower, to strengthen within') indicates that the power source is internal — Christ working within Paul — yet external in origin.

14. After declaring his self-sufficiency through Christ, Paul immediately affirms the Philippians' gift — his contentment does not make their generosity unnecessary or unappreciated. The compound synkoinōnēsantes ('having shared in, having partnered with') extends the koinōnia theme: their gift was not mere charity but co-participation in Paul's suffering.
15. Paul addresses them by name — 'Philippians' (Philippēsiōi) — the only letter where he does this except Galatians. The phrase logon doseōs kai lēmψεōs ('an account of giving and receiving') uses Greco-Roman commercial bookkeeping language. The Philippians were the sole church to establish a mutual account with Paul — they gave financial support, he gave spiritual ministry. This unique relationship sets Philippi apart from all other churches.
16. Thessalonica was Paul's next stop after Philippi (Acts 17:1). The Philippians supported him even while he was in a neighboring city — their generosity was not a one-time gesture but repeated ('once and again,' hapax kai dis). This is remarkable given that Philippi was likely not a wealthy congregation.
17. Paul maintains his careful balance: he values their gift not for his material benefit but for the spiritual 'profit' (karpon, 'fruit') it produces in their account (logon, 'ledger'). The commercial metaphor continues — the Philippians are building up credit in a heavenly account through their generosity.
18. The verb apechō ('I have received in full') was the standard commercial term for acknowledging full payment — it appeared on receipts. Paul then shifts abruptly from accounting to altar: the Philippians' gift is a fragrant offering (osmēn euōdias), a sacrifice (thysian) acceptable and pleasing to God. The phrase 'fragrant offering' echoes the Hebrew reiaḥ nichoach used for offerings that please God (Genesis 8:21; Leviticus 1:9). Money sent to a prisoner becomes worship offered to God.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 8:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 1:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Paul responds to their generosity with a promise: the God who received their sacrifice will supply (plērōsei, 'fill to the full') their every need. The measure of God's supply is 'according to his riches in glory' — not out of his riches (as if taking a portion) but according to the full standard of his wealth. The phrase 'my God' (ho theos mou) is warmly personal.
20. The doxology eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn ('to the ages of the ages') is the strongest Greek expression for eternity — ages multiplied by ages. The letter that began with grace (1:2) ends with glory — the proper destination of all that God gives and all that believers offer back.
21. The greeting is to 'every saint' (panta hagion) — individually and without exception. Paul's companions send their own greetings, indicating a community around him even in imprisonment.
22. The phrase hoi ek tēs Kaisaros oikias ('those of Caesar's household') does not mean members of the imperial family but slaves and freedmen in the vast network of the emperor's administrative staff. That the gospel has penetrated even Caesar's household is a stunning demonstration of 1:12-13 — Paul's imprisonment has advanced the gospel into the heart of Roman power.
23. The SBLGNT reads 'with your spirit' (meta tou pneumatōs hymōn) rather than the Textus Receptus 'with you all.' The letter closes as it opened — with grace (charis). The singular 'spirit' (pneumatōs) may address the congregation as one body. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen' at the end.

Colossians

1

Summary: *Paul writes to the Colossian church, which he has never visited, expressing gratitude for their faith and love and praying for their spiritual growth. The chapter builds to the magnificent Christ Hymn (1:15-20), which declares Christ as the image of the invisible God, firstborn over all creation, the agent and goal of creation, the head of the church, and the one through whom God reconciles all things. Paul then describes his own suffering as completing what is lacking in Christ's afflictions for the sake of the church, and his commission to make known the mystery hidden for ages — 'Christ in you, the hope of glory.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Christ Hymn (1:15-20) is among the highest christological statements in Scripture. It makes claims about Christ that the Old Testament reserves for God alone: creating all things, sustaining all things, being before all things. The phrase 'image of the invisible God' (eikōn tou theou tou aoratou) does not mean a mere representation but the visible manifestation of the invisible deity — Christ makes God seeable. The dual declaration that 'all things were created through him and for him' (v. 16) and 'in him all things hold together' (v. 17) gives Christ a cosmic role that extends far beyond salvation history. The reconciliation of 'all things' through the blood of the cross (v. 20) is one of the broadest soteriological claims in the New Testament.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'firstborn of all creation' (prōtotokos pasēs ktiseōs, v. 15) has been debated since the Arian controversy. It does not mean Christ was created first but designates his supremacy and preeminence over creation, as the following verses make clear ('all things were created through him'). Paul's statement about 'completing what is lacking in Christ's afflictions' (v. 24) is notoriously difficult — it cannot mean Christ's atoning work was insufficient. We render the Greek without resolving the systematic theology, noting the options in the translator notes.*

Connections: *The Christ Hymn echoes Proverbs 8:22-31 (Wisdom as agent of creation), Genesis 1:1 (the beginning), and John 1:1-18 (the Logos hymn). The 'image of God' language connects to Genesis 1:26-27 and 2 Corinthians 4:4. The 'mystery' (mystērion) language anticipates Ephesians 3:3-9. The reconciliation theme extends Romans 5:10-11 and 2 Corinthians 5:18-20 to cosmic scope.*

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, and Timothy our brother, ²To the saints and faithful brothers and sisters in Christ at Colossae: Grace to you and peace from God our Father. ³We always thank God, the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, when we pray for you, ⁴And of the love which you have to all the saints,, and since we heard of your faith in Christ

Jesus. ⁵For the hope which is placed up for you in heaven, whereof you listened to before in the word of the truth of the gospel. ⁶Which is come to you, as it is in every one of the world. And brings forth fruit, as it does also in you, since the day you listened to of it, and recognized the grace of God in truth:. ⁷You learned the gospel from Epaphras, our dear fellow servant. He is a faithful minister of Christ on your behalf. ⁸Indeed, who also declared to us your love in the Spirit. ⁹And so, from the day we heard, we have not ceased to pray for you, asking that you may be filled with the knowledge of his will in all spiritual wisdom and understanding, ¹⁰so that you may live in a way that is worthy of the Lord and pleasing to him in every respect: producing fruit through every kind of good work and growing in the knowledge of God. ¹¹Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, to all patience and patience with joyfulness;. ¹²Give thanks with joy to the Father, who has qualified you to share in the inheritance of the saints who live in the light. ¹³He has rescued us from the domain of darkness and transferred us into the kingdom of his beloved Son, ¹⁴In whom we have redemption by way of his blood, even the forgiveness of sins:. ¹⁵He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. ¹⁶For by him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or rulers or authorities — all things were created through him and for him. ¹⁷And he is before all things, and in him all things hold together. ¹⁸And he is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that in everything he might be preeminent. ¹⁹For in him all the fullness was pleased to dwell, ²⁰And, possessing fashioned wholeness by way of the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things to himself. By him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven. ²¹And you, who once were alienated and hostile in mind, doing evil deeds, ²²Indeed, in the body of his flesh by way of death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight:. ²³If you continue in the faith grounded and settled, and be not moved away from the hope of the gospel, which you have listened to, and which was preached to every creature which is under heaven. Whereof I Paul am made a minister;. ²⁴Now I rejoice in my sufferings for your sake, and in my flesh I am filling up what is lacking in Christ's afflictions for the sake of his body, that is, the church, ²⁵Whereof I am appointed a minister, in keeping with to the dispensation of God which is given to me for you, to fulfil the word of God;. ²⁶Indeed the mystery which has been hid from ages and from generations, but now is appointed manifest to his saints:. ²⁷To them God chose to make known how great among the Gentiles are the riches of the glory of this mystery, which is Christ in you, the hope of glory. ²⁸Him we proclaim, warning everyone and teaching everyone with all wisdom, that we may present everyone mature in Christ. ²⁹For this I toil, struggling with all his energy that he powerfully works within me.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Unlike Philippians, Paul leads with his apostolic title — necessary when writing to a church he has not personally founded or visited. The phrase 'by the will of God' (dia thelēmatos theou) grounds Paul's authority not in personal ambition but in divine appointment.
2. Colossae was a small city in the Lycus Valley of Phrygia (modern Turkey), overshadowed by neighboring Laodicea and Hierapolis. The church was likely founded by Epaphras (v. 7), not Paul. The SBLGNT omits 'and the Lord Jesus Christ' found in the KJV's Textus Receptus, ending the greeting with 'from God our Father' alone.
3. The plural 'we' includes Timothy (v. 1). Paul identifies God specifically as 'the Father of our Lord Jesus Christ' — God's identity is defined in relation to Christ. The adverb *pantote* ('always') modifies their thanksgiving, indicating habitual prayer for a church they have never visited.
4. Paul has 'heard' about them — confirming he has not visited Colossae. The twin report of faith and love forms the classic Pauline triad when combined with hope in verse 5. Their love extends to 'all the saints' — not a clique but the entire body of believers.
5. Hope here is not a feeling but an objective reality — something 'laid up' (*apokeimenēn*, 'stored, reserved') in heaven, waiting to be received. The Colossians first heard about this hope through 'the word of the truth of the gospel' — a threefold description emphasizing the reliability and saving content of the message.
6. The gospel is described as a living, growing organism — 'bearing fruit and increasing' (*karpophoroumenon kai auxanomenon*) echoes the creation mandate of Genesis 1:28 and the parable of the sower (Mark 4). The phrase 'understood the grace of God in truth' (*epegnōte tēn charin tou theou en alētheia*) implies genuine, deep knowledge (*epignōsis*) as opposed to the false 'knowledge' the Colossian heresy may have been promoting.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:28. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Epaphras is the likely founder of the Colossian church (cf. 4:12-13). Paul calls him *syndoulos* ('fellow slave') — placing Epaphras on equal footing with himself under Christ's lordship. The SBLGNT reads 'on your behalf' (*hyper hēmōn* has the variant *hyper hymōn*, 'on your behalf'), indicating

Epaphras served the Colossians as Christ's representative.

8. Epaphras serves as the communication bridge between Paul and the Colossians. Their 'love in the Spirit' (agapēn en pneumati) is love produced by the Holy Spirit — the fruit of the Spirit that Paul describes in Galatians 5:22. This is the only explicit reference to the Holy Spirit in Colossians.
9. Paul's prayer is for epignōsis ('full knowledge, deep understanding') of God's will — a pointed term in a letter that will combat a rival 'knowledge' system (the Colossian heresy). The adjective pneumatikē ('spiritual') modifies both wisdom (sophia) and understanding (synesis), indicating that this knowledge comes from the Spirit, not from human speculation or esoteric tradition.
10. The verb peripatēsai ('to walk') is the standard Pauline metaphor for daily conduct (Hebrew halakh). The purpose of knowledge is ethical living, not intellectual attainment alone. 'Bearing fruit and increasing' (karpophorountes kai auxanomenoi) echoes verse 6, creating a parallel: as the gospel bears fruit in the world, so believers bear fruit in good works.
11. The accumulation of power language — dymamei, dynamoumenoi, kratos — emphasizes divine empowerment. But the goal of this power is surprising: not miraculous feats but 'endurance' (hypomonē, 'steadfast perseverance') and 'patience' (makrothymia, 'long-temperedness'). God's power enables believers to hold firm under pressure rather than escape it.
12. The verb hikanōsanti ('who qualified, who made sufficient') emphasizes that believers' share in the inheritance is God's doing, not their achievement. The 'inheritance' (klērou, 'lot, portion, allotment') echoes the land inheritance of Israel in Joshua — believers receive a spiritual allotment in the realm of light. The contrast between light and the 'domain of darkness' in verse 13 reflects the dualistic language common in Second Temple Judaism (cf. the Dead Sea Scrolls' 'sons of light' vs. 'sons of darkness').
13. The verb errysato ('he rescued, he delivered') is the language of military liberation — God has extracted believers from enemy territory. The verb metestēsen ('he transferred, he removed') was used for the deportation of conquered populations; here God 'deports' believers out of darkness and into Christ's kingdom. The phrase 'the Son of his love' (tou huiou tēs agapēs autou) is an unusual construction meaning 'his beloved Son' — the Son who is the object of the Father's love.
14. The word apolytrōsis ('redemption, release through ransom payment') is a slave-market term — the price paid to free a captive. Paul defines this redemption as 'the forgiveness of sins' (tēn aphesin tōn hamartiōn). The SBLGNT omits 'through his blood' (dia tou haimatos autou) found in the parallel passage in Ephesians 1:7 and in some Colossians manuscripts. This verse serves as the transition into the Christ Hymn.
15. The Christ Hymn begins. The word eikōn ('image') in Greek means not a mere picture but a manifestation that participates in the reality it represents — Christ is the visible expression of the invisible God. The term prōtotokos ('firstborn') does not mean 'first created' but denotes supremacy and rank — the firstborn son held preeminence and the right of inheritance. Psalm 89:27 uses 'firstborn' for David's royal status: 'I will make him the firstborn, the highest of the kings of the earth.' Christ holds that rank over all creation.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 89:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Three prepositions define Christ's relation to creation: en autō ('in him,' the sphere), di' autou ('through him,' the agent), eis auton ('for him,' the goal). Creation exists in Christ, was made through Christ, and aims toward Christ. The four terms for spiritual powers — thrones, dominions, rulers, authorities — may address the Colossian heresy's preoccupation with angelic hierarchies. Whatever powers exist, Christ created them and outranks them all.
17. The phrase pro pantōn ('before all things') asserts both temporal priority (he existed before creation) and positional supremacy (he ranks above all things). The verb synestēken ('hold together, cohere, are sustained') is a perfect tense indicating ongoing reality — the universe's coherence at this moment depends on Christ's sustaining power. Without him, creation would disintegrate. This is one of the strongest statements of Christ's cosmic significance in the New Testament.
18. The hymn pivots from creation (vv. 15-17) to new creation (vv. 18-20). Christ's headship (kephalē, 'head') of the church parallels his supremacy over creation. The word archē ('beginning, origin, first principle') echoes Genesis 1:1. As 'firstborn from the dead' (prōtotokos ek tōn nekrōn), Christ holds the same rank over the new creation that he holds over the original creation. The purpose clause — 'that in everything he might be preeminent' (prōteuōn) — states the hymn's thesis: Christ holds first place in absolutely everything.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 1:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The word plērōma ('fullness, completeness') is a key term in Colossians. It may have been a term used by the false teachers to describe the totality of divine powers; Paul claims it entirely for Christ. 'All the fullness' of God — not a fraction, not a partial manifestation, but the complete divine reality — permanently resides in Christ. The verb katoikēsai ('to dwell, to take up permanent residence') indicates not a temporary visit but an abiding presence.
20. The verb apokatallaxai ('to reconcile fully') is an intensified form found only in Colossians and Ephesians. The scope is staggering: 'all things' (ta panta) — the same phrase used for creation in verse 16 — are reconciled through Christ. The means is specified: 'the blood of his cross' (tou haimatos tou staurou autou), anchoring this cosmic vision in a brutal historical event. The hymn that began with creation's origin in Christ ends with creation's restoration through Christ.

21. Paul applies the cosmic reconciliation of verse 20 to the Colossians' personal experience. They were 'alienated' (apēllotriōmenous, 'estranged, made foreign') and 'hostile' (echthrous) — their minds were actively opposed to God, expressed through evil deeds. The transition from 'once' (pote) to 'now' (nyni, v. 22) marks the before-and-after of redemption.
22. The phrase 'in his body of flesh through death' (en tō sōmati tēs sarkos autou dia tou thanatou) emphasizes the physicality of Christ's atoning work — against any tendency to spiritualize or mythologize the cross. Three adjectives describe the intended result: 'holy' (hagious), 'blameless' (amōmous, a sacrificial term for animals without defect), and 'above reproach' (anengklētous, a legal term meaning no charge can be brought). The language spans temple, courtroom, and daily life.
23. The conditional 'if indeed' (ei ge) is not expressing doubt but emphasizing the necessity of perseverance. Three architectural metaphors reinforce stability: 'grounded' (tethemeliōmenoi, 'having a foundation laid'), 'steadfast' (hedraioi, 'firmly seated, immovable'), and 'not shifting' (mē metakinoumenoi). The claim that the gospel 'has been proclaimed in all creation under heaven' is hyperbolic, expressing the gospel's universal scope and unstoppable advance.
24. This is one of Paul's most debated statements. The verb antanaplēroō ('I fill up in turn, I complete in response') is found only here in the New Testament. Paul does not mean Christ's atoning death was insufficient — that would contradict verse 20. Rather, the Messianic afflictions that must precede the end times (a Jewish eschatological concept) still have a 'quota' to be filled, and Paul's sufferings contribute to completing that quota. His suffering is vicarious ('for your sake') and ecclesial ('for the sake of his body').
25. The word oikonomia ('stewardship, administration, management of a household') frames Paul's apostleship as a trust — he has been given responsibility for God's household, specifically to bring the gospel to the Gentiles (including the Colossians). The verb plērōsai ('to fulfill, to make fully known') means Paul's task is to ensure the complete proclamation of God's word.
26. The word mystērion ('mystery') in Paul does not mean something mysterious or unknowable but a divine secret that was hidden and has now been disclosed. The temporal contrast is dramatic: 'hidden from ages and generations' versus 'now revealed' (nyn ephanerōthē). The long concealment heightens the significance of the revelation — what God planned from eternity is now made known.
27. The mystery is now named: 'Christ in you, the hope of glory' (Christos en hymin, hē elpis tēs doxēs). The pronoun 'you' (hymin) is plural and addressed to Gentiles — the shocking content of the mystery is that Christ now dwells among and within Gentile believers, making them heirs of eschatological glory. This was the great scandal of Paul's gospel — that God's Messiah would take up residence in non-Jewish communities.
28. The threefold repetition of panta anthrōpon ('every person') emphasizes the universal scope of the gospel against any elitist tendency in the Colossian heresy that offered 'advanced' knowledge to a select few. Paul's goal — presenting everyone 'mature' (teleion) in Christ — is available to all, not a spiritual aristocracy. The word teleion means 'mature, complete, fully developed,' not sinlessly perfect.
29. The verb kopiaō ('I toil, I labor to exhaustion') and agōnizomai ('I struggle, I contend') describe intense effort — Paul does not coast on grace. Yet the energy (energeia) behind his effort is not his own but God's, 'powerfully working' (energoumenēn en dýnamei) within him. The paradox of divine empowerment and human exertion — identical to Philippians 2:12-13 — closes the chapter.

2

Summary: *Paul describes his struggle for the Colossians and Laodiceans, urging them to find all treasures of wisdom and knowledge in Christ. He warns against being deceived by persuasive but empty philosophy, declares that 'in Christ the whole fullness of deity dwells bodily' and that believers have been filled in him. He describes baptism as spiritual circumcision and co-burial with Christ, proclaims that God has canceled the record of debt that stood against them by nailing it to the cross, and warns against submitting to regulations about food, festivals, or angel worship that are merely shadows of the substance found in Christ.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains Paul's most direct engagement with the 'Colossian heresy' — a syncretistic system combining Jewish regulations (food laws, sabbath observance), mystical practices (angel worship, visionary experiences), and ascetic disciplines. Rather than refuting each element individually, Paul makes one devastating argument: Christ is the fullness of God, believers are complete in Christ, therefore nothing needs to be added. The image of God nailing the 'record of debt' (cheirographon) to the cross (v. 14) is one of Paul's most vivid atonement metaphors. The disarming and public shaming of cosmic powers (v. 15) portrays the cross as a Roman triumph in reverse — the crucified one is the conquering general.*

Translation Friction: *The exact nature of the Colossian heresy is reconstructed from Paul's polemics, since we have no independent description of it. Scholars debate whether it was Jewish mysticism, proto-gnostic speculation, syncretistic philosophy, or local Phrygian religious practice. We render Paul's warnings without committing to a single reconstruction. The phrase 'worship of angels' (thrēskeia tōn angelōn, v.*

18) could mean 'worship directed to angels' or 'worship performed by angels (which humans try to join)' — both readings are noted.

Connections: The 'fullness' (plērōma) language continues from 1:19. The circumcision/baptism connection (vv. 11-12) parallels Romans 6:3-4. The 'record of debt' (cheirographon) echoes the cancelled debt imagery of Matthew 18:23-35. The shadow/substance contrast (v. 17) resonates with Hebrews 8:5 and 10:1. The triumph over powers (v. 15) connects to the principalities and authorities of 1:16 and Ephesians 6:12.

1For I want you to know how great a struggle I have for you and for those at Laodicea and for all who have not seen me face to face, 2My goal is that their hearts would be encouraged, being joined together in love, so that they may have the full riches of complete understanding and may know the mystery of God, namely Christ. 3In whom are hid every one of the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. 4I say this so that no one may deceive you with persuasive arguments. 5For though I am absent in body, yet I am with you in spirit, rejoicing to see your good order and the firmness of your faith in Christ. 6Therefore, as you received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk in him, 7Let your roots grow deep in him. Build your lives on him. Grow stronger in the faith you were taught, and overflow with thankfulness. 8See to it that no one takes you captive by philosophy and empty deceit, according to human tradition, according to the elemental spirits of the world, and not according to Christ. 9For in him the whole fullness of deity dwells bodily, 10You are complete in him, which is the head of all principality and authority:. 11In him also you were circumcised with a circumcision made without hands, by putting off the body of the flesh, in the circumcision of Christ, 12Buried with him in baptism, wherein also you are risen with him by way of the faith of the operation of God, who has brought him back to life. 13And you, who were dead in your trespasses and the uncircumcision of your flesh, God made alive together with him, having forgiven us all our trespasses, 14He erased the record of charges that stood against us with its legal demands. He set it aside by nailing it to the cross. 15He disarmed the rulers and authorities and put them to open shame, by triumphing over them in him. 16Therefore let no one pass judgment on you in questions of food and drink, or with regard to a festival or a new moon or a Sabbath. 17These are a shadow of the things to come, but the substance belongs to Christ. 18Let no one disqualify you, insisting on asceticism and worship of angels, going on in detail about visions, puffed up without reason by his sensuous mind, 19Not holding the Skull, from which all the physical body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit as one, increaseth with the increase of God. 20If with Christ you died to the elemental spirits of the world, why, as if you were still living in the world, do you submit to regulations — 21"Do not handle, Do not taste, Do not touch" — 22Indeed, which all are to perish with the using;) following the commandments and doctrines of men? 23These have indeed an appearance of wisdom in promoting self-made religion and asceticism and severity to the body, but they are of no value in stopping the indulgence of the flesh.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word agōna ('struggle, contest') echoes 1:29 and the athletic imagery found throughout Paul's letters. The mention of Laodicea (a neighboring city about 10 miles west of Colossae) confirms that Paul's concerns extend to the broader Lycus Valley. The phrase 'have not seen my face in the flesh' confirms Paul has never visited these churches.
2. The verb symbibasthentes ('being knit together, being united') pictures the community being woven into a unified fabric through love. The goal is epignōsis ('deep knowledge') of God's mystery — and that mystery is identified simply as 'Christ' (Christou). The SBLGNT text is shorter than the Textus Receptus, which reads 'of God, and of the Father, and of Christ.' The critical text identifies the mystery directly as Christ himself.
3. The adjective apokryphoi ('hidden, stored away') may be a deliberate counter to proto-gnostic claims of secret knowledge. Paul does not deny hidden wisdom — he locates it entirely in Christ. All (pantes) the treasures are in Christ, leaving no wisdom to be sought elsewhere. This verse undercuts any supplementary 'philosophy' (v. 8) that claims to offer what Christ lacks.
4. The verb paralagizetai ('to deceive, to reason falsely, to delude') literally means 'to reason alongside' — to lead astray through plausible but ultimately false reasoning. The noun pithanologia ('persuasive speech, plausible argument') appears only here in the New Testament. The danger is not crude error but sophisticated-sounding teaching that draws people away from the sufficiency of Christ.
5. The military metaphors taxis ('order, battle formation, rank') and stereōma ('firmness, solid front, fortification') picture the Colossian church as a well-ordered army holding its defensive position. Paul commends them before warning them — the church is currently standing firm, but threats are approaching.

6. The verb *parelabete* ('you received') is a technical term for receiving authoritative tradition (cf. 1 Corinthians 15:3). What they received was not merely teaching about Christ but Christ himself — 'Christ Jesus the Lord.' The imperative *peripateite* ('walk!') commands them to continue in the same Christ they originally received, not to supplement him with additional spiritual systems.
7. Three metaphors describe spiritual stability: agricultural ('rooted,' *errizōmenoi* — a perfect participle indicating a past rooting with continuing effect), architectural ('built up,' *epoikodomoumenoi* — a present participle indicating ongoing construction), and legal ('established, confirmed,' *bebaioumenoi*). The foundation is Christ; the standard is the original teaching; the overflow is thanksgiving (*eucharistia*).
8. The verb *sylogōgōn* ('taking captive, carrying off as plunder') pictures the false teaching as a raiding party that captures believers and carries them away. The 'philosophy' (*philosophia*) is not Greek philosophy in general but the specific Colossian syncretism. The *stoicheia tou kosmou* ('elemental spirits/principles of the world') is debated: it may mean basic cosmic elements (earth, air, fire, water), elemental spiritual beings, or rudimentary religious principles. The final phrase — 'and not according to Christ' (*ou kata Christon*) — is Paul's decisive criterion: any system not grounded in Christ is empty deceit.
9. This verse intensifies 1:19. The word *theotētos* ('deity, divine nature, Godhead') is stronger than *theiotētos* ('divinity, divine quality') — it denotes the full essence of God, not merely divine characteristics. The adverb *sōmatikōs* ('bodily, in bodily form') insists that this divine fullness has taken permanent physical form in the incarnate Christ. The present tense *katoikei* ('dwells') indicates an ongoing reality — the risen Christ still possesses a body in which deity fully resides.
10. The verb *peplērōmenoi* ('you have been filled, you are complete') uses the same *plērōō* root as *plērōma* in verse 9. Because all divine fullness dwells in Christ, and believers are 'in him,' they share in that fullness. Nothing needs to be added — no angelic mediation, no dietary regulations, no ascetic practices. Christ is the 'head' (*kephalē*) of every cosmic power, making these powers subordinate rather than supplementary to him.
11. Paul redefines circumcision as an act accomplished 'in Christ' — not by human hands (*acheiropoiētō*) but by divine action. The 'putting off' (*apekdysai*, 'stripping away') of 'the body of the flesh' means the removal of the old sinful nature, not physical circumcision. The 'circumcision of Christ' may mean the circumcision Christ accomplished (through his death) or the circumcision that belongs to the Christian community. The SBLGNT omits 'of the sins' (*tōn hamartiōn*) found in some manuscripts.
12. Baptism is the visible enactment of the believer's union with Christ in death and resurrection. The *syn-* prefix ('with') appears in both verbs: *syntaphentes* ('co-buried') and *synēgerthēte* ('co-raised'). Unlike Romans 6:4-5, where the resurrection dimension is future, Colossians affirms that believers have already been raised with Christ — the emphasis is on present reality, not only future hope. Faith is directed toward God's *energeia* ('powerful working, operative power') — the same power that raised Christ is the basis of the believer's new life.
13. The Colossians' pre-conversion state was spiritual death — 'dead in trespasses' (*nekrous ontas en tois paraptōmasin*). The 'uncircumcision of your flesh' marks them as Gentiles, formerly outside the covenant community. The verb *synezōopoiēsen* ('he made alive together with') is another *syn-*compound — their new life is inseparable from Christ's resurrection. The shift from 'you' to 'us' (*hēmin*, 'having forgiven us') broadens the scope to include all believers.
14. The *cheirographon* ('handwritten document, certificate of debt, IOU') was a signed acknowledgment of debt in the ancient world. The metaphor is vivid: humanity's debt before God — the accumulated record of our violations of his righteous requirements (*dogmasin*, 'decrees, ordinances') — has been cancelled (*exaleipsas*, 'wiped away, erased'). The image of nailing the debt certificate to the cross may reflect the Roman practice of posting the charges against a crucified criminal above his head (cf. John 19:19-20). Christ's cross is the display of our cancelled debt.
15. The verb *apekdysamenos* ('having stripped, having disarmed') pictures Christ stripping the cosmic powers of their weapons and authority. The verb *edeigmatisen* ('he made a public spectacle, he exposed to shame') and *thriambeusas* ('having triumphed over') are drawn from the Roman triumphal procession (*triumphus*), where a victorious general paraded defeated enemies through the streets. The supreme irony: the cross, Rome's instrument of shame, becomes God's vehicle of cosmic victory. The phrase *en autō* ('in him' or 'in it') could refer to Christ or to the cross.
16. Paul now applies the theological argument of verses 9-15 to specific practices. The three categories — festivals (annual), new moons (monthly), Sabbaths (weekly) — cover the full cycle of Jewish calendar observance (cf. 1 Chronicles 23:31; Hosea 2:11). Paul does not condemn these practices in themselves but forbids anyone from using them as standards by which to judge believers in Christ.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Chronicles 23:31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Hosea 2:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The shadow-substance contrast (*skia / sōma*) is a powerful image: a shadow proves something real is casting it, but no one mistakes the shadow for the object itself. The Jewish regulations were real — they pointed forward to Christ — but now that Christ has come, clinging to the shadows while ignoring the substance is a fundamental confusion. The word *sōma* ('body, substance, reality') contrasts pointedly with *skia* ('shadow').
18. The verb *katababeuetō* ('let no one disqualify you, let no one act as umpire against you') is an athletic term — an unfair judge ruling against a competitor. The 'worship of angels' (*thrēskeia tōn angelōn*) could mean worship directed to angels or participation in angelic worship. The phrase *ha heōraken embateuōn* ('entering into what he has seen' or 'going on about visions') may describe mystical experiences claimed by the false teachers. The SBLGNT reads 'what he has seen' (*heōraken*) against the negation 'has not seen' in some manuscripts. Despite claims of deep spiritual insight, this person is 'puffed up by the mind of the flesh' — their supposed humility is actually arrogance.

19. The fundamental problem with the false teaching is disconnection from Christ, the Head (kephalēn). The body imagery uses medical terminology: haphōn ('joints, connections'), syndesmōn ('ligaments, sinews'), and epichorēgoumenon ('being supplied, being nourished'). A body severed from its head cannot grow, no matter how impressive its spiritual practices appear. The growth is tēn auxēsīn tou theou — growth that comes from God, not from human religious effort.
20. Paul's argument is from baptismal reality: you died with Christ (apethanete syn Christō). Death severs all obligations — a dead person owes nothing. If the Colossians died to the stoicheia ('elemental spirits/principles'), why do they let these defeated powers dictate rules for daily life? The verb dogmatizesthe ('you submit to decrees, you let yourselves be regulated') suggests voluntary submission to a system they have been freed from.
21. Paul quotes the slogans of the false teachers in descending order of contact: handle (hapsē, 'grasp, take hold of'), taste (geusē, 'eat, experience by tasting'), touch (thigēs, 'touch lightly'). The progression from major to minor contact underscores the ever-increasing restrictiveness of the legalistic system. These rules treat physical contact with certain substances as spiritually defiling.
22. Paul's argument echoes Jesus's teaching that what enters the body cannot defile a person (Mark 7:14-23). Food and drink are consumed and destroyed (phthoran, 'decay, destruction, perishing') — they have no lasting spiritual significance. The phrase 'commandments and teachings of humans' (entalmata kai didaskalias tōn anthrōpōn) directly quotes Isaiah 29:13 (LXX), which Jesus also cited against the Pharisees (Matthew 15:9).
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 29:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Paul's devastating conclusion: the entire system of regulations has a 'reputation for wisdom' (logon sophia) — it looks impressive — but it fails at the one thing it claims to accomplish. The rare word ethelothrēskia ('self-imposed worship, voluntary religion, self-made piety') describes religion invented by human will rather than revealed by God. Ascetic severity to the body (apheidia sōmatos, 'unsparing treatment of the body') may look holy but has no actual power against fleshly indulgence (plēsmōnē tēs sarkos). External regulations cannot transform the inner person — only union with Christ can.

3

Summary: *Paul pivots from theological argument to ethical exhortation, grounding the moral life in the believer's union with the risen Christ. He commands the Colossians to 'set your minds on things above, not on earthly things,' because they have died and their life is hidden with Christ in God. He lists vices to put to death and virtues to put on, climaxing with love as the bond of perfection. He instructs them to let the word of Christ dwell richly, to sing psalms and hymns, and to do everything in the name of the Lord Jesus. The chapter closes with a household code addressing wives and husbands, children and parents, and slaves and masters.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'put off / put on' metaphor (vv. 8-14) pictures moral transformation as changing garments — the old self is stripped away like soiled clothing and the new self is donned like a fresh outfit. This imagery may reflect the early Christian baptismal practice of removing garments before immersion and putting on new white robes afterward. The declaration that 'there is no Greek and Jew, circumcised and uncircumcised, barbarian, Scythian, slave, free; but Christ is all, and in all' (v. 11) is one of Paul's most radical equality statements. The household code (vv. 18-25) addresses relationships within the Greco-Roman family structure while subtly transforming them through the repeated phrase 'in the Lord.'*

Translation Friction: *The household code has generated significant debate. Paul appears to accept the existing social structures (including slavery) while introducing Christian modifications. Some scholars see this as accommodation to the surrounding culture; others see it as subversive transformation from within. We render the Greek without resolving this interpretive tension. The instruction to wives to 'submit' (v. 18) uses the middle voice hypotassethe ('arrange yourselves under'), which carries different nuances than a simple command to obey.*

Connections: *The 'set your minds above' command (v. 2) echoes Philippians 3:20 (heavenly citizenship). The put off/put on language parallels Ephesians 4:22-24 and Romans 13:12-14. The 'image of the creator' (v. 10) echoes Genesis 1:26-27 and Colossians 1:15. The household code parallels Ephesians 5:22-6:9 and 1 Peter 2:18-3:7. The 'whatever you do' principle (v. 17, 23) anticipates 1 Corinthians 10:31.*

1If then you have been raised with Christ, seek the things that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. 2Set your minds on things that are above, not on things that are on earth. 3For you have died, and your life is hidden with Christ in God. 4When Christ who is your life appears, then you also will appear with him in glory. 5Put to death therefore what is

earthly in you: sexual immorality, impurity, passion, evil desire, and covetousness, which is idolatry. ⁶On account of these the wrath of God is coming. ⁷In these you too once walked, when you were living in them. ⁸But now you must put them all away: anger, wrath, malice, slander, and obscene talk from your mouth. ⁹Do not lie to one another, seeing that you have stripped off the old self with its practices ¹⁰Have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge following the image of him that created him: ¹¹Here there is not Greek and Jew, circumcised and uncircumcised, barbarian, Scythian, slave, free; but Christ is all, and in all. ¹²Put on then, as God's chosen ones, holy and beloved, compassionate hearts, kindness, humility, gentleness, and patience, ¹³Indeed, forbearing one another, and forgiving one another, if any man have a quarrel opposed to any — even as Christ forgave you, so also do you. ¹⁴And above all these put on love, which binds everything together in perfect harmony. ¹⁵And let the peace of Christ rule in your hearts, to which indeed you were called in one body. And be thankful. ¹⁶Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly, teaching and admonishing one another in all wisdom, singing psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, with thankfulness in your hearts to God. ¹⁷And whatever you do, in word or deed, do everything in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God the Father through him. ¹⁸Wives, submit to your husbands, as is fitting in the Lord. ¹⁹Husbands, love your wives, and do not be harsh with them. ²⁰Children, obey your parents in everything, for this pleases the Lord. ²¹Fathers, do not provoke your children, lest they become discouraged. ²²Slaves, obey your earthly masters in everything, not by way of eye-service, as people-pleasers, but with sincerity of heart, fearing the Lord. ²³Whatever you do, work heartily, as for the Lord and not for people, ²⁴Knowing that of the Lord you will accept the reward of the inheritance — for you serve the Lord Christ. ²⁵For the wrongdoer will be paid back for the wrong he has done, and there is no partiality.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The conditional 'if' (ei) assumes the reality: 'since you have been raised with Christ.' The verb *synēgerthēte* ('you were co-raised') picks up from 2:12. Because believers have already been raised with Christ, their orientation must shift upward. 'The right hand of God' (en dexia tou theou) is the position of supreme authority and honor, quoting Psalm 110:1 — the most frequently cited Old Testament text in the New Testament.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The verb *phroneite* ('set your minds on, think about, be oriented toward') is the same key verb from Philippians. This is not escapism or indifference to earthly life — the practical instructions that follow (vv. 5-25) are thoroughly engaged with daily existence. Rather, it means that the believer's fundamental orientation, values, and loyalties are determined by heavenly realities rather than by the world's value system.
3. The perfect tense *kekryptai* ('is hidden and remains hidden') describes an ongoing state of concealment. The believer's true life is not visible to the world — it is tucked away 'with Christ in God,' doubly secure. The phrase carries both protection (hidden from harm) and mystery (not yet fully manifested). What the world sees is not the whole story.
4. The hidden life of verse 3 will be revealed (*phanerōthēsēte*, 'you will be made visible, you will be manifested') when Christ himself is revealed at his return. The astounding identification — Christ is 'your life' (*hē zōē hymōn*) — echoes Philippians 1:21 ('to live is Christ'). The SBLGNT reads 'your life' (*hymōn*) rather than 'our life' (*hēmōn*) found in some manuscripts.
5. The imperative *nekrōsate* ('put to death, kill, make dead') is violent and decisive — not 'manage' or 'minimize' but kill. The list of five vices moves from external act to internal desire: sexual immorality (*porneia*), impurity (*akatharsia*), passion (*pathos*, 'uncontrolled desire'), evil desire (*epithymia kakē*), and covetousness (*pleonexia*). The final identification of covetousness as idolatry (*eidōlōlatria*) reveals that greed is fundamentally a worship disorder — it gives to things the devotion owed to God alone.
6. The SBLGNT omits 'upon the sons of disobedience' (*epi tous huiōus tēs apeitheias*) found in the Textus Receptus and in the Ephesians parallel (Ephesians 5:6). God's wrath (*orgē*) is not capricious anger but his settled opposition to everything that destroys human flourishing and dishonors his name.
7. The past tenses — 'walked' (*periepatēsate*), 'were living' (*ezēte*) — firmly locate these behaviors in the Colossians' pre-Christian past. They once lived in these sins; they no longer do. The 'once... but now' pattern is central to Paul's understanding of conversion.
8. The verb *apothēsate* ('put off, strip off, lay aside') is the clothing metaphor — strip off these behaviors like dirty garments. This second vice list focuses on sins of speech and relational hostility: anger (*orgēn*), wrath (*thymon*, 'explosive fury'), malice (*kakian*, 'ill will'), slander (*blasphēmian*, 'abusive speech'), and obscene talk (*aischrologian*, 'shameful language'). The progression moves from internal attitude to verbal expression.
9. The prohibition against lying targets community-destroying speech. The participle *apekdysamenoi* ('having stripped off') uses the same verb applied to Christ's stripping of the cosmic powers in 2:15. The 'old self' (*ton palaion anthrōpon*) is not merely bad habits but the entire pre-conversion identity — the person shaped by the world's values and the flesh's desires.

10. The 'new self' (ton neon) is not merely improved behavior but a new creation being progressively renewed (anakainoumenon, present passive — ongoing renewal) in deep knowledge (epignōsin). The phrase 'according to the image of its creator' (kat' eikona tou ktisantos) echoes Genesis 1:27 — the new creation restores the divine image marred by the fall. The same word eikōn ('image') was applied to Christ in 1:15; believers are being renewed into the image that Christ perfectly embodies.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. In the new humanity, the fundamental divisions of the ancient world are abolished: ethnic (Greek/Jew), religious (circumcised/uncircumcised), cultural (barbarian/Scythian — the Scythians were considered the most uncivilized of all peoples), and social (slave/free). This does not mean differences disappear but that they no longer determine identity or status. The concluding declaration — 'Christ is all and in all' (ta panta kai en pasin Christos) — is breathtaking: Christ occupies every position and permeates every person in the new community.
12. The imperative endysasthe ('put on, clothe yourselves') completes the clothing metaphor. The motivation comes from identity: they are 'God's chosen ones, holy and beloved' (eklektōi tou theou hagioi kai ēgapēmenoi) — these are Old Testament titles for Israel now applied to the church. Five virtues are listed: compassion (splanchna oiktirmou, literally 'intestines of mercy'), kindness (chrēstotēta), humility (tapeinophrosynē), gentleness (prautēta), and patience (makrothymian). Each virtue is relational, oriented toward others.
13. The verb anechomenoi ('bearing with, putting up with') acknowledges that community life involves friction. The verb charizomenoi ('forgiving, granting grace') shares the root of charis ('grace'). The standard for forgiveness is not human capacity but divine precedent: 'as the Lord has forgiven you' (kathōs kai ho kyrios echarisato hymin). The SBLGNT reads 'the Lord' (ho kyrios) where some manuscripts have 'Christ' (ho Christos).
14. Love (agapē) is the outer garment that holds all other virtues together. The phrase syndesmos tēs teleiōtētōs ('the bond of perfection/completeness') pictures love as the belt or clasp that unifies the entire outfit. Without love, the other virtues are disconnected pieces; with love, they form a coherent whole. This echoes 1 Corinthians 13's declaration that without love, all other gifts are nothing.
15. The verb brabeuētō ('let it rule, let it act as umpire, let it arbitrate') is an athletic term — the same root as katabrabeuētō ('disqualify') in 2:18. Christ's peace serves as the internal umpire that adjudicates disputes and determines the proper course of action. The SBLGNT reads 'the peace of Christ' (tou Christou) rather than 'the peace of God' (tou theou). The call to thankfulness (eucharistoi ginesthe) is a constant refrain in Colossians.
16. The 'word of Christ' (ho logos tou Christou) — the gospel message — is to 'take up rich residence' (enoikeitō plousiōs) in the community. The three types of song — psalmois ('psalms,' likely Old Testament psalms), hymnois ('hymns,' compositions praising God or Christ), and ōdais pneumatikais ('spiritual songs,' Spirit-inspired singing) — suggest a rich variety in early Christian worship. Teaching and worship are intertwined; singing is a form of mutual instruction.
17. This verse serves as the comprehensive principle governing all Christian conduct: every word and every action is to be performed 'in the name of the Lord Jesus' — under his authority, as his representative, for his honor. The phrase covers the totality of life, leaving no secular realm untouched by Christ's lordship. Thanksgiving (eucharistountes) flows through Christ back to the Father — Christ is the mediator of both prayer and praise.
18. The household code begins. The verb hypotassasthe ('submit, arrange yourselves under') is in the middle voice, indicating voluntary self-ordering rather than forced subjugation. The qualifier 'as is fitting in the Lord' (hōs anēken en kyriō) places the instruction within the sphere of Christ's lordship — the submission is 'in the Lord,' not absolute or unconditional. This is notably shorter than the parallel in Ephesians 5:22-24.
19. The command to husbands is love (agapate), not authority. The verb pikrainesthe ('be bitter, be harsh, be embittered') prohibits the kind of resentful domination that characterized many ancient marriages. In a culture where husbands had virtually unlimited legal authority over wives, the command not to be harsh was a significant constraint on patriarchal power.
20. The verb hypakouete ('obey, listen to and comply with') is stronger than the 'submit' (hypotassasthe) used for wives — children are commanded to obey, not merely to arrange themselves under authority. The qualifier 'in everything' (kata panta) is broad, though 'in the Lord' provides the governing framework. That children are addressed directly indicates their presence in the worship gathering where this letter was read.
21. The verb erethizete ('provoke, irritate, stir up') addresses the abuse of paternal authority. The Roman paterfamilias had absolute legal authority (patria potestas) over children, including the right to punish severely. Paul limits this power: parental authority that crushes a child's spirit defeats its own purpose. The verb athymōsin ('become discouraged, lose heart, become spiritless') describes a child broken by harsh treatment.
22. The phrase 'earthly masters' (kata sarka kyrioi, literally 'masters according to the flesh') subtly relativizes their authority — they are masters in the fleshly realm only, not in the ultimate sense. The compound ophthalmoudoulia ('eye-service,' working only when watched) appears only in Paul. The contrast is between external performance (working to impress humans) and internal sincerity (haplotēti kardias, 'singleness of heart') motivated by reverence for the true Lord.
23. The phrase ek psychēs ('from the soul, heartily, with your whole being') demands wholehearted effort. The transformation is in perspective: the same task performed for a human master is reconceived as service to the Lord Christ. This does not legitimize the institution of slavery but transforms the slave's inner experience and ultimate allegiance.
24. The promise of an 'inheritance' (klēronomias) to slaves is revolutionary — in Roman law, slaves could not inherit property. Paul declares that these disinherited people will receive the ultimate inheritance from Christ himself. The phrase 'You are serving the Lord Christ' (tō kyriō Christō douleuete) can be read as indicative ('you are serving') or imperative ('serve!'). Either way, the slave's true master is Christ, not the human owner.

25. The warning against wrongdoing (adikōn, 'acting unjustly') applies to both slaves and masters — the lack of partiality (prosōpolēmpsia, literally 'face-receiving,' showing favoritism) means God judges everyone by the same standard regardless of social status. This is a veiled warning to masters that their position will not protect them from divine judgment, preparing for the explicit command to masters in 4:1.

4

Summary: *Paul concludes the household code with a command to masters, urges the Colossians to devote themselves to prayer and wise conduct toward outsiders, and sends a series of personal greetings that reveal the network of co-workers surrounding him. He names Tychicus and Onesimus as letter-bearers, sends greetings from Aristarchus, Mark, Justus, Epaphras, Luke, and Demas, gives instructions about sharing this letter with Laodicea (and vice versa), charges Archippus to complete his ministry, and closes with a handwritten greeting from prison.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The closing greetings of Colossians provide a remarkable snapshot of the early Christian network. The list includes Jews (Aristarchus, Mark, Justus — described as the only Jewish co-workers), Gentiles (Epaphras, Luke, Demas), a former slave (Onesimus, identified as 'one of you'), and a physician (Luke). The mention of Mark's potential visit is significant given his earlier falling out with Paul (Acts 15:37-39) — reconciliation has occurred. The instruction to exchange letters with Laodicea (v. 16) reveals that Paul's letters circulated among churches from the beginning, a practice that would eventually lead to their collection as Scripture.*

Translation Friction: *The 'letter from Laodicea' (v. 16) is lost — or may be the letter we know as Ephesians, which some scholars regard as a circular letter. The identity of Nympha (v. 15) and the gender of the name is debated; the SBLGNT reading supports a feminine name with 'her house' (autēs). The charge to Archippus (v. 17) is enigmatic — we do not know what ministry he received or why he needed encouragement to complete it.*

Connections: *Onesimus connects this letter to Philemon, where he is the central figure. Tychicus appears also in Ephesians 6:21 as letter-bearer. The house-church of Nympha (v. 15) reflects the standard meeting pattern of early Christianity before dedicated buildings existed. Paul's handwritten closing (v. 18) parallels Galatians 6:11, 2 Thessalonians 3:17, and 1 Corinthians 16:21.*

¹Masters, treat your slaves justly and fairly, knowing that you also have a Master in heaven. ²Continue steadfastly in prayer, being watchful in it with thanksgiving. ³At the same time, pray also for us, that God may open to us a door for the word, to declare the mystery of Christ, on account of which I am in prison, ⁴That I may make it manifest, as I anything to speak. ⁵Walk in wisdom toward outsiders, making the best use of the time. ⁶Let your speech always be gracious, seasoned with salt, so that you may know how you ought to answer each person. ⁷Tychicus will tell you all about my activities. He is a beloved brother and faithful minister and fellow servant in the Lord. ⁸I have sent him to you for this very purpose, that you may know how we are and that he may encourage your hearts, ⁹Indeed, with Onesimus, a faithful and dear brother, who is one of you. They will make known to you all things which are done here. ¹⁰Aristarchus my fellow prisoner greets you, and Mark the cousin of Barnabas (concerning whom you have received instructions — if he comes to you, welcome him), ¹¹Indeed, Jesus, which is called Justus, who are of the circumcision. These only are my fellowworkers to God's reign, which have been a comfort to me. ¹²Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Christ Jesus, greets you, always struggling on your behalf in his prayers, that you may stand mature and fully assured in all the will of God. ¹³For I bear him witness that he has worked hard for you and for those in Laodicea and in Hierapolis. ¹⁴Luke the beloved physician greets you, as does Demas. ¹⁵Give my greetings to the brothers and sisters at Laodicea, and to Nympha and the church in her house. ¹⁶And when this letter has been read among you, have it also read in the church of the Laodiceans; and see that you also read the letter from Laodicea. ¹⁷And say to Archippus, "See that you fulfill the ministry that you have received in the Lord." ¹⁸I, Paul, write this greeting with my own hand. Remember my chains. Grace be with you.

1. The command to masters uses two significant words: *dikaion* ('what is just, what is right') and *isotēta* ('equality, fairness'). The word *isotēta* is striking — it pushes toward equitable treatment even within an institution built on inequality. The theological leverage is powerful: masters have a Master (*kyrion en ouranō*), and that heavenly Master will hold them accountable for how they treat those under their authority.
2. The verb *proskartereite* ('continue steadfastly, persist, devote yourselves') implies sustained effort against the tendency to neglect prayer. The participle *grēgorountes* ('being watchful, being alert') adds urgency — prayer is not passive but vigilant, attentive to both spiritual realities and the present moment. Thanksgiving (*eucharistia*) appears yet again as the characteristic posture of the praying community.
3. Paul asks for prayer not for release from prison but for opportunity to proclaim the gospel — the 'open door' (*thyran tou logou*) metaphor pictures gospel advance, not personal comfort. The 'mystery of Christ' (*to mystērion tou Christou*) echoes 1:26-27. Paul's imprisonment is directly connected to his proclamation: he is in chains 'on account of' (*di' ho*) the mystery he preaches.
4. The verb *phanerōsō* ('I may make clear, I may manifest, I may reveal') uses the same root as 'revealed' in 1:26. Paul's prayer request is not for eloquence but for clarity — that the mystery of Christ would be made transparent and accessible. The phrase 'as I ought to speak' (*hōs dei me lalēsai*) indicates a sense of divine obligation.
5. The phrase 'those outside' (*tous exō*) is the standard early Christian term for non-believers (cf. 1 Corinthians 5:12; 1 Thessalonians 4:12). The verb *exagorazomenoi* ('buying up, redeeming, making the most of') pictures time or opportunity as a commodity in a marketplace — believers must seize every moment for wise witness. The same phrase appears in Ephesians 5:16.
6. Gracious speech (*en chariti*, 'with grace') and salt-seasoned speech are complementary: grace makes words kind, salt makes them interesting, preserving, and penetrating. Salt in the ancient world prevented decay and enhanced flavor. The phrase 'each person' (*heni hekastō*) emphasizes that wise speech is not formulaic but adapted to the individual — each person deserves a thoughtful, tailored response.
7. Tychicus is the letter-bearer, entrusted with both delivering the written letter and providing oral updates about Paul's situation. He is described with three titles: beloved brother (*agapētos adelphos*), faithful minister (*pistos diakonos*), and fellow servant (*syndoulos*) in the Lord. Tychicus also carried the letter to the Ephesians (Ephesians 6:21-22) and appears in Acts 20:4, 2 Timothy 4:12, and Titus 3:12.
8. The dual purpose of Tychicus's visit: to inform ('that you may know how we are') and to encourage ('that he may encourage your hearts'). The SBLGNT reads 'that you may know how we are' (*hina gnōte ta peri hēmōn*) rather than 'that he may know how you are' found in some manuscripts — the information flows from Paul to the Colossians, not the reverse.
9. This Onesimus is almost certainly the runaway slave of the letter to Philemon. Paul introduces him to the wider Colossian church as a 'faithful and beloved brother' (*tō pistō kai agapētō adelphō*) — the same elevated language used for Tychicus. The phrase 'who is one of you' (*hos estin ex hymōn*) identifies Onesimus as a Colossian, connecting this letter to the personal appeal of Philemon.
10. Aristarchus is called *synaichmalōtos* ('fellow prisoner of war, co-captive'), suggesting he shares Paul's imprisonment. Mark (Markos) is identified as Barnabas's cousin (*anepsios*, not 'nephew' as KJV). This is likely John Mark, who had deserted Paul and Barnabas on the first missionary journey (Acts 13:13, 15:37-39). Paul's instruction to 'welcome him' indicates the breach has been healed — a quiet testimony to reconciliation.
11. Jesus (Iesous, the Greek form of Joshua) called Justus bears the same name as the Lord — a common Jewish name in the first century. The note that only these three (Aristarchus, Mark, Justus) are Jewish co-workers (*ek peritomēs*, 'of the circumcision') reveals Paul's isolation from the broader Jewish-Christian community. The word *parēgoria* ('comfort, consolation') appears only here in the New Testament.
12. Epaphras, the probable founder of the Colossian church (1:7), is described as 'always struggling' (*pantote agōnizomenos*) in prayer — the athletic *agōn* metaphor applied to intercessory prayer. His prayer goal mirrors Paul's prayer in 1:9-10: maturity (*teleioi*) and full conviction (*peplērophōrēmenoi*, 'fully assured, completely convinced') in God's will. Prayer is depicted as strenuous spiritual labor, not passive meditation.
13. Paul personally vouches for Epaphras's labor. The word *ponon* ('toil, hard work, pain') emphasizes the costliness of his efforts. The three cities — Colossae, Laodicea, and Hierapolis — are all in the Lycus Valley, within about 12 miles of each other. Epaphras appears to have been the evangelist for the entire region.
14. Luke (Loukas) is identified as a physician (*iatros*) — the only mention of his profession in the New Testament. He is traditionally identified as the author of Luke-Acts. That he is not listed among the Jewish co-workers (v. 11) confirms he was a Gentile. Demas is mentioned without any commendation — a silence that becomes significant in light of 2 Timothy 4:10, where Paul writes that 'Demas, in love with this present world, has deserted me.'
15. The SBLGNT reads *autēs* ('her'), identifying Nympha (Nymphan) as a woman who hosts a house church. Other manuscripts read *autou* ('his'), making the name masculine (Nymphas). The house church was the standard meeting place for early Christian communities — purpose-built church buildings did not appear until the third century. Nympha's role as host of a church suggests significant social standing and leadership.
16. This verse reveals the circulation of Paul's letters among churches — a practice that contributed to their eventual collection and canonization. The 'letter from Laodicea' (*tēn ek Laodikeia*) is unknown. It may be a lost letter, or it may be the letter we know as Ephesians (which some scholars view as a circular letter). The verb *anagnōsthē* ('be read aloud') indicates that Paul's letters were read publicly in the worship assembly.
17. Archippus is mentioned also in Philemon 2 as a 'fellow soldier.' His ministry (*diakonian*) was received 'in the Lord' — a divine commission, not a human appointment. The fact that Paul delivers this charge through the congregation rather than privately suggests it is a matter of communal accountability. The nature of his ministry is unspecified.

- 18.** Paul takes the pen from his amanuensis (secretary) to write the final greeting in his own handwriting — a practice that authenticated the letter (cf. 2 Thessalonians 3:17). The brief imperative 'Remember my chains' (mnēmoneuete mou tōn desmōn) is both a prayer request and a reminder of the cost of the gospel he has proclaimed throughout this letter. The closing — 'Grace be with you' (hē charis meth' hymōn) — is characteristically brief. The SBLGNT omits the final 'Amen' found in the Textus Receptus.

1 Thessalonians

1

Summary: *Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy greet the church in Thessalonica, giving thanks for their faith, love, and hope. Paul recalls how the gospel came to them not merely in words but in power and the Holy Spirit, and how the Thessalonians became imitators of the apostles and of the Lord, receiving the word in the midst of affliction with joy from the Holy Spirit. Their faith became an example to believers throughout Macedonia and Achaia.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This is widely considered the earliest surviving letter of Paul, and possibly the earliest document in the New Testament (c. AD 49-51). The triad of faith, love, and hope (v. 3) appears here in what may be its earliest formulation, predating 1 Corinthians 13:13. The description of conversion in verses 9-10 provides one of the clearest summaries of early Christian proclamation: turning from idols, serving the living God, and awaiting the risen Son from heaven.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'election' (eklogē, v. 4) is rendered without imposing later Calvinist-Arminian frameworks. Paul's language about the gospel coming 'in power and in the Holy Spirit' (v. 5) describes experiential reality, not abstract doctrine. The reference to 'wrath that is coming' (v. 10) is eschatological, pointing to final judgment rather than a specific historical event.*

Connections: *The faith-love-hope triad reappears in 1 Corinthians 13:13 and Colossians 1:4-5. The description of turning from idols echoes Old Testament prophetic calls (Ezekiel 14:6, Isaiah 44:9-20). The expectation of Jesus's return from heaven connects to the fuller parousia teaching in chapters 4-5. Paul's self-description of his manner among them is expanded in chapter 2.*

¹Paul, and Silvanus, and Timotheus, to the church of the Thessalonians which is in God the Father and in the Lord Jesus Christ — Grace be to you, and peace, from God our Father, and the Lord Jesus Christ. ²We give thanks to God always for all of you, constantly mentioning you in our prayers, ³We continually remember before our God and Father your faithful work, your loving effort, and your patient hope in our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁴Knowing, brothers and sisters beloved, your election of God,. ⁵For our gospel arrived not to you in message only, but also in authority, and in the Holy Ghost, and in much assurance. As you know what manner of men we were in the midst of you since your sake. ⁶And you became imitators of us and of the Lord, for you received the word in great affliction with joy from the Holy Spirit, ⁷So that you were ensamples to all that trust in Macedonia and Achaia. ⁸For the word of the Lord has sounded out from you not only in Macedonia and Achaia,

but in every place your faith toward God has gone out, so that we have no need to say anything. ⁹For they themselves report about us what kind of reception we had among you, and how you turned to God from idols to serve the living and true God, ¹
^oTo wait for his Descendant from the heavens above, whom he raised from the no longer alive, not even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT has the shorter greeting 'Grace to you and peace' without the additional 'from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ' found in some manuscripts and reflected in the KJV. We follow the critical text. The Greek *charis* ('grace') and *eirēnē* ('peace') combine a Greek greeting with the Hebrew *shalom*, bridging the two cultural worlds of Paul's audience.
1. Silvanus is the Latin form of Silas, Paul's companion from Acts 15-18. The letter is co-authored, though Paul is the primary voice.
2. The adverb *adialeiptōs* ('constantly, without ceasing') modifies the thanksgiving and prayer, indicating habitual practice rather than unbroken activity. Paul's thanksgivings are not mere formality — they typically preview the letter's main themes.
3. The three genitives — 'of faith,' 'of love,' 'of hope' — are best understood as subjective genitives: faith produces the work, love motivates the labor, hope sustains the endurance. This is possibly the earliest written occurrence of the faith-love-hope triad that Paul develops more fully in 1 Corinthians 13:13.
3. The Greek *kopos* ('labor') implies toil to the point of exhaustion, stronger than simple 'work' (*ergon*). Paul distinguishes the two: faith produces activity (*ergon*), but love drives costly effort (*kopos*).
4. The Greek *adelphoi* ('brothers') is used inclusively throughout Paul's letters to address the entire congregation, including women. We render it 'brothers and sisters' to reflect the inclusive scope. The noun *eklogē* ('election, choosing') denotes God's initiative in calling the Thessalonians — Paul grounds their identity in divine action, not human achievement.
5. The Greek *plērophoria* ('full conviction, complete certainty') could refer to the apostles' conviction in preaching or the Thessalonians' conviction in receiving. The ambiguity may be intentional — both the proclaimers and the hearers experienced deep assurance. The phrase 'our gospel' does not mean Paul invented it but that he was entrusted with proclaiming it.
6. The Greek *mimētai* ('imitators') is stronger than the KJV's 'followers' — it implies deliberate imitation of a pattern of life. The paradox of receiving the word 'in great affliction with joy' defines the distinctive Christian experience: suffering and joy coexist through the Holy Spirit's work. The affliction (*thlipsis*) likely refers to persecution from both Jewish and Gentile opponents in Thessalonica (cf. Acts 17:5-9).
7. The singular *typon* ('pattern, model') is used collectively — the entire church is one pattern. Macedonia and Achaia together comprise most of Roman Greece, indicating the rapid and wide spread of the Thessalonians' reputation.
8. The verb *exēchētai* ('has sounded out, has rung out') is onomatopoeic, suggesting a trumpet blast or the reverberation of thunder. It occurs only here in the New Testament. Paul portrays the Thessalonians' faith as an audible proclamation that reverberates outward from their city.
9. The phrase 'turned to God from idols' confirms the congregation was predominantly Gentile, since Jews would not be described as turning from idols. The two-part description — turning from (idols) and turning to (God) — mirrors the Old Testament prophetic call to repentance. 'Living and true God' (*theō zōnti kai alēthinō*) contrasts with the dead and false nature of idols, echoing Jeremiah 10:10.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 10:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The present participle *rhyomenon* ('the one rescuing') portrays deliverance as ongoing, not merely a past event. 'The coming wrath' (*tēs orgēs tēs erchomenēs*) refers to eschatological judgment. This verse contains a compact early Christian creed: resurrection, heavenly exaltation, expected return, and deliverance from judgment. The three infinitives — serve (v. 9), wait (v. 10), and the implied rescue — summarize the Christian life as present service, future hope, and divine deliverance.

2

Summary: Paul defends the integrity of his ministry in Thessalonica, recalling how he and his companions came with boldness despite prior suffering in Philippi. He emphasizes their motives were pure — not from error, impurity, or deceit — and describes their gentle conduct, comparing themselves to a nursing mother caring for her children and a father encouraging his own. Paul then thanks God that the Thessalonians received his message as the word of God, not merely human speech. The chapter closes with Paul expressing his intense desire to revisit them, calling them his glory and joy.

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's extended self-defense in verses 1-12 likely responds to accusations from opponents in Thessalonica. The double parental metaphor — mother (v. 7) and father (v. 11) — is unusual in ancient rhetoric and reveals Paul's pastoral warmth. Verses 14-16 contain some of Paul's sharpest language about opposition, which has generated significant scholarly debate about its scope and intent.*

Translation Friction: *Verses 14-16 have been historically misused for anti-Jewish purposes. Paul's criticism is directed at specific opponents who hindered the gospel mission, not at the Jewish people as a whole — Paul himself remained proudly Jewish (cf. Romans 9:1-5, 11:1). We render the Greek as written while noting this critical context. The textual variant in verse 7 (ēpioi 'gentle' vs. nēpioi 'infants') affects the metaphor significantly; we follow the SBLGNT reading.*

Connections: *The suffering in Philippi is narrated in Acts 16:19-40. The description of opposition parallels Jesus's lament over Jerusalem (Matthew 23:37). Paul's longing to return anticipates the sending of Timothy in chapter 3. The 'crown of boasting' language (v. 19) connects to athletic and civic honor imagery Paul uses elsewhere (Philippians 4:1, 2 Timothy 4:8).*

¹For you yourselves know, brothers and sisters, that our coming to you was not without result. ²But though we had already suffered and been mistreated in Philippi, as you know, we had the boldness in our God to speak the gospel of God to you in the midst of great opposition. ³For our appeal does not come from error or from impurity or with deceit, ⁴However, as we were allowed of God to be placed in trust with the good news, not even so we talk. Not as pleasing people, but God, which trieth our hearts. ⁵For we never came with flattering speech, as you know, nor with a pretext for greed — God is our witness. ⁶Nor did we seek glory from people, whether from you or from others, ⁷But we were gentle in the midst of you, even as a nurse cherisheth her children:. ⁸So, being deeply fond of you, we were delighted to share with you not only the gospel of God but also our own selves, because you had become dear to us. ⁹For you remember, brothers and sisters, our labor and toil: working night and day so as not to burden any of you, we proclaimed the gospel of God to you. ¹⁰You are witnesses, and so is God, of how devoutly and justly and blamelessly we conducted ourselves toward you who believe, ¹¹As you recognize how we exhorted and comforted and charged every one of you, as a Parent does his offspring,. ¹²Indeed, that you would walk worthy of God, who has called you to his reign and glory. ¹³And for this reason we also thank God continually, because when you received the word of God that you heard from us, you accepted it not as a human message but as what it truly is — the word of God, which is also at work in you who believe. ¹⁴For you, brothers and sisters, became imitators of the churches of God in Judea that are in Christ Jesus, because you suffered the same things from your own countrymen as they did from the Judeans — ¹⁵Who both killed the Lord Jesus, and their own God's spokespersons, and possess persecuted us. Then they please not God, and are contrary to all people:. ¹⁶They try to keep us from speaking to the Gentiles so that they may be saved. In this way they keep piling up their sins to the limit. God's wrath has come upon them at last. ¹⁷But as for us, brothers and sisters, after being torn away from you for a short time — in person, not in heart — we made every effort with great longing to see you face to face. ¹⁸For we wanted to come to you — I, Paul, again and again — but Satan hindered us. ¹⁹For what is our hope or joy or crown of boasting? Is it not you, before our Lord Jesus at his coming? ²⁰For you are what we take pride in and joy.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The adjective kenē ('empty, vain, without result') can mean either 'empty of content' (the visit was not pointless) or 'empty of result' (the visit was not fruitless). The context favors the latter — Paul appeals to the visible fruit of his ministry among them.
2. The verb hybristhentes ('mistreated, shamefully treated') refers to the illegal beating and imprisonment described in Acts 16:22-24. The noun agōni ('struggle, opposition') carries athletic connotations — a contest or fight. Paul frames gospel proclamation as a struggle that requires divine boldness (parrēsia).
3. Paul denies three possible charges: planē ('error, delusion') — that his message is false; akatharsia ('impurity') — that his motives are impure, possibly with sexual overtones given the reputation of some itinerant teachers; and dolos ('deceit, trickery') — that he uses manipulative methods. This three-part denial suggests actual accusations were circulating.

4. The verb dokimazō ('to test, examine, approve') appears twice: God has tested and approved Paul (dedokimasmetha), and God continues to test (dokimazonti) their hearts. The same God who qualified them also holds them accountable. 'Hearts' (kardias) in biblical usage refers to the center of thought, will, and intention — not merely emotion.
5. The Greek kolakeia ('flattery') occurs only here in the New Testament. It was a standard accusation against sophists and traveling philosophers who told audiences what they wanted to hear for profit. Prophasis ('pretext, excuse') implies a hidden motive concealed behind a respectable front. Paul invokes God as witness precisely because hidden motives cannot be seen by humans.
6. The Greek doxa here means 'glory' in the sense of honor, recognition, or reputation from human sources. Paul's point is that apostolic ministry is not motivated by the desire for public acclaim.
7. The SBLGNT reads ēpioi ('gentle') rather than the variant nēpioi ('infants'), which would create the odd image of Paul being an infant in their midst. The metaphor of the trophos ('nursing mother') is remarkably intimate — Paul compares himself not to a hired nurse but to a mother with her own (heautēs) children. The phrase en barei einai ('to be burdensome' or 'to carry weight') likely refers to financial demands or the weight of apostolic authority.
8. The verb homeiromenoi ('being deeply fond of, yearning for') is rare and occurs only here in the New Testament. Its etymology is debated, but it expresses strong emotional attachment. The phrase tas heautōn psychas ('our own souls/selves') means Paul gave not just a message but his entire person — the gospel was embodied, not merely proclaimed.
9. The paired nouns kopos kai mochthos ('labor and toil') emphasize exhausting physical work — Paul supported himself through manual labor (tent-making, Acts 18:3) while simultaneously preaching. 'Night and day' is a Semitic idiom emphasizing totality of effort. Paul's refusal to accept financial support from the Thessalonians was a deliberate pastoral strategy, not mere preference.
10. Paul invokes both human witnesses (the Thessalonians) and the divine witness (God) — a legal formula establishing credibility. The three adverbs — hosiōs ('devoutly, in a holy manner'), dikaiōs ('justly, uprightly'), and amemptōs ('blamelessly') — cover duty toward God, duty toward others, and overall integrity.
11. Paul shifts from the mother metaphor (v. 7) to a father metaphor. The phrase 'each one of you' (hena hekaston hymōn) in verse 12 emphasizes individual pastoral attention — Paul did not merely address crowds but engaged persons one by one.
12. Three participles describe Paul's fatherly role: parakalountes ('urging, exhorting'), paramythoumenoi ('encouraging, consoling'), and martyromenoi ('charging, insisting'). The progression moves from encouragement to solemn appeal. The present participle kalountos ('who calls') indicates God's call is ongoing, not merely a past event. 'Kingdom and glory' is Paul's shorthand for the full eschatological reality.
13. Paul distinguishes between paralambanō ('received' — the act of receiving a tradition) and dechomai ('accepted' — the act of welcoming and embracing it). The Thessalonians both received the message as transmitted and accepted it as divine in origin. The verb energeitai ('is at work, is active') is middle voice, indicating the word of God is self-acting — it accomplishes its own purpose in believers.
14. The Greek symphyletōn ('fellow countrymen, compatriots') indicates the Thessalonians were persecuted by their own Gentile neighbors, paralleling the Jewish believers' experience in Judea. We render Ioudaiōn as 'Judeans' here because the context is geographical and sociopolitical — it refers to the local population in Judea who opposed the early church, not to the Jewish people globally.
15. Paul's language here echoes the Old Testament tradition of Israel's persecution of prophets (cf. Nehemiah 9:26, Jeremiah 26:20-23, 2 Chronicles 36:15-16). Jesus himself invoked this tradition (Matthew 23:31-37, Luke 13:34). Paul — himself Jewish — speaks as a prophetic voice within the tradition of intra-Jewish critique, not as an outsider condemning another religion. The verb ekdiōxantōn ('drove out, persecuted') may refer to the specific events in Thessalonica (Acts 17:5-10) and Berea (Acts 17:13).
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Nehemiah 9:26 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 26:20-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Chronicles 36:15-16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The phrase 'fill up the measure of their sins' (anaplērōsai autōn tas hamartias) echoes Genesis 15:16 where the Amorites' sins must reach their full measure before judgment comes. The final clause ephthasen de ep' autous hē orgē eis telos is debated: 'at last' (eis telos) could mean 'to the end, completely, finally.' The aorist ephthasen ('has overtaken') could be prophetic aorist (viewing a future event as already accomplished) or could refer to a recent event. Paul sees the obstruction of the Gentile mission as the culminating sin that triggers divine response.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 15:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The verb aporphanisthentes ('having been orphaned from') is deeply emotional — Paul uses the language of an orphan separated from family. This is the only occurrence of this word in the New Testament. Combined with the mother (v. 7) and father (v. 11) metaphors, it creates a sustained family-relationship framework for understanding the apostolic bond.

- 18.** Paul shifts to the singular 'I, Paul' (egō men Paulos) to emphasize his personal desire. The phrase hapax kai dis ('once and twice') means 'repeatedly.' The verb enekopsen ('cut in, hindered, blocked') is a military term for breaking up a road to prevent an army's advance. Paul does not specify how Satan hindered him — it could be opposition, illness, or circumstances.
- 19.** The noun stephanos ('crown, wreath') refers to the victory wreath given to athletic victors, not the royal diadēma. Paul's 'crown of boasting' (kauchēseōs) is the Thessalonian church itself — his evidence of faithful labor when he stands before Christ. The word parousia ('coming, arrival, presence') here takes on its technical eschatological meaning — the future return of Christ. This is one of the earliest uses of parousia as a theological term in Christian literature.
- 20.** This brief declaration serves as an emphatic conclusion to the chapter's argument. The word doxa ('glory') when applied to the Thessalonians means the visible evidence of God's work through Paul's ministry — they are the tangible proof that his labor was not in vain (cf. v. 1).

3

Summary: *Unable to return to Thessalonica himself, Paul sent Timothy to strengthen and encourage the believers in their faith amid persecution. Timothy has now returned with the good news that the Thessalonians' faith and love remain strong and that they remember Paul fondly. Paul expresses overwhelming relief and joy, describing Timothy's report as life-giving. The chapter closes with a prayer that God would direct Paul's path back to them and that the Lord would cause their love to increase and overflow toward one another and toward all people.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter reveals the anxiety Paul felt during the separation — the language is remarkably candid about emotional vulnerability. The phrase 'we really live now' (v. 8) shows that Paul's emotional and spiritual vitality was bound up with the health of his churches. The closing prayer (vv. 11-13) transitions from personal concerns to eschatological hope, ending with another reference to the parousia.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'the tempter' (v. 5) parallels 'Satan' in 2:18. Paul's statement that afflictions are 'destined' (v. 3) raises theological questions about suffering and divine will that we render without resolving. The phrase 'night and day' (v. 10) in Paul's prayer vocabulary indicates intensity, not literal continuous prayer.*

Connections: *Timothy's mission is briefly noted in Acts 18:5. The concern about being 'shaken' by afflictions (v. 3) connects to Jesus's parable of foundations (Matthew 7:24-27). The prayer for increasing love (v. 12) anticipates the ethical instructions of chapters 4-5. The parousia reference (v. 13) prepares for the extended teaching in 4:13-5:11.*

¹Therefore, when we could bear it no longer, we decided to be left behind in Athens alone, ²We sent Timothy, our brother and God's coworker in the gospel of Christ, to strengthen and encourage you in your faith, ³so that none of you would be shaken by these hardships. You know very well that we are destined for them. ⁴For even when we were with you, we kept telling you in advance that we were going to suffer affliction — and so it happened, as you know. ⁵For this reason, when I could bear it no longer, I sent to learn about your faith, fearing that the tempter had somehow tempted you and that our labor would be in vain. ⁶But Timothy has just now come to us from you and has brought us the good news of your faith and love, and that you always remember us kindly, longing to see us just as we long to see you. ⁷For this reason, brothers and sisters, in all our distress and affliction we have been encouraged about you through your faith. ⁸For we really live now, since you are standing firm in the Lord. ⁹For what thanksgiving can we return to God for you, in exchange for all the joy that we feel on your account before our God, ¹⁰After dark and time praying exceedingly that we may witness your face, and may perfect that which is lacking in your faith? ¹¹Now may our God and Father himself, and our Lord Jesus, direct our way to you. ¹²And may the Lord cause you to increase and overflow in love for one another and for all people, just as we do for you, ¹³May he strengthen your hearts so that you will be blameless and holy before our God and Father when our Lord Jesus returns with all his holy ones.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

- 1.** The verb stegontes ('bearing, enduring, containing') conveys the image of a container that can no longer hold its contents — Paul's anxiety about the Thessalonians overflowed. 'Left behind alone' (kataleiphthēnai monoī) emphasizes the cost of sending Timothy — Paul chose isolation in Athens

rather than continued uncertainty about the church.

2. The SBLGNT reads *synergon tou theou* ('God's coworker'), which is the more difficult reading — some manuscripts soften it to *diakonon* ('servant'). The bold claim that Timothy is God's coworker follows Paul's theology that human ministry participates in divine action. The two infinitives *stērixai* ('to strengthen, establish') and *parakalesai* ('to encourage, comfort') define Timothy's mission.
3. The verb *sainesthai* is rare and its meaning debated — it may mean 'to be shaken, disturbed' or possibly 'to be deceived, beguiled.' The context of afflictions (*thlipseis*) favors 'shaken.' The verb *keimetha* ('we are appointed, destined, set') indicates that suffering is not accidental but part of the expected Christian experience — Paul had warned them of this in advance (v. 4).
4. The imperfect *proelegomen* ('we kept telling') indicates repeated warning, not a single prediction. Paul had prepared the Thessalonians for persecution as a regular part of discipleship instruction, not an afterthought.
5. Paul shifts to the first person singular (*kagō*, 'I also') — the decision to send Timothy was personally his. The title *ho peirazōn* ('the tempter') identifies Satan by function rather than name (cf. 2:18). The concern that labor might be 'in vain' (*eis kenon*, 'into emptiness') echoes the same word (*kenē*) from 2:1 — Paul's deepest fear was that the Thessalonians' faith had not survived persecution.
6. Remarkably, Paul uses the verb *euangelisamenou* ('having brought good news') — the same word used for preaching the gospel — to describe Timothy's report about the Thessalonians. For Paul, news of their persevering faith is itself 'gospel.' The report covers three things: their faith (vertical relationship), their love (horizontal relationships), and their affection for Paul (the apostolic bond).
7. The noun *anankē* ('distress, necessity, hardship') combined with *thlipsis* ('affliction') reveals that Paul himself was under significant pressure — not just concerned for them but suffering in his own circumstances. Their faith became a source of encouragement (*paraklēsis*) for Paul in his own trials.
8. The emphatic *nyn zōmen* ('now we live') is one of Paul's most emotionally transparent statements — the news of their faithfulness was literally life-giving to him. The verb *stēkete* ('you stand firm') is present tense, describing their current state as reported by Timothy.
9. The verb *antapodounai* ('to give back in return, to repay') frames thanksgiving as a reciprocal act — God gave the joy; Paul wants to return adequate thanks. The rhetorical question implies that no thanksgiving is sufficient. The phrase *emprosthen tou theou* ('before our God') places Paul's joy in the context of worship.
10. The adverb *hyperēkperissou* ('beyond all measure, most earnestly') is a Pauline superlative found only in his letters — he piles up prefixes (*hyper* + *ek* + *perissou*) to intensify the expression. The verb *katartisai* ('to mend, complete, supply') was used for mending fishing nets (Mark 1:19) — Paul sees faith not as defective but as needing completion. The 'lacking' (*hysterēmata*) refers to areas where further instruction is needed, which chapters 4-5 will address.
11. The optative *kateuthynai* ('may he direct') introduces a wish-prayer. The singular verb with a compound subject ('God and Father... and our Lord Jesus') is grammatically notable — Paul treats the two as a unified source of action. The prayer for a directed path (*hodon*, 'road, way') reflects Paul's conviction that his travel plans are subject to divine sovereignty (cf. 2:18 where Satan blocked the way).
12. Two verbs intensify the prayer: *pleonasai* ('to increase, multiply') and *perisseusai* ('to overflow, abound'). The love Paul prays for has two directions: *eis allēlous* ('toward one another' — within the community) and *eis pantas* ('toward all' — beyond the community). Christian love is not exclusive but expansive.
13. The goal of increasing love (v. 12) is established holiness (v. 13) — Paul connects ethics and eschatology. 'Holy ones' (*hagiōn*) could refer to angels (as in Zechariah 14:5, which Paul may be echoing), to deceased believers, or to both. The ambiguity is preserved in 'holy ones.' Each major section of 1 Thessalonians ends with a reference to the *parousia* (2:19, 3:13, 4:15-17, 5:23), making Christ's return the structural center of the letter.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 14:5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4

Summary: Paul turns from personal narrative to instruction, addressing the 'what is lacking' in their faith (3:10). He begins with ethical exhortation: God's will is their sanctification, particularly in sexual purity and brotherly love. He then addresses the question that most concerned the Thessalonians: the fate of believers who have died before Christ's return. Paul provides the earliest written Christian teaching on the parousia — the Lord will descend from heaven with a shout, the dead in Christ will rise first, and then the living will be caught up together with them to meet the Lord in the air.

*What Makes This Remarkable: Verses 13-18 constitute the earliest surviving Christian text about the resurrection of the dead at Christ's return. This passage predates 1 Corinthians 15 and was written to address a specific pastoral crisis — grief over fellow believers who had died. The imagery of the 'meeting' (*apantēsis*, v. 17) is a technical term from Hellenistic civic life: when a dignitary approached a*

city, citizens would go out to meet him and escort him back in. Paul's eschatology is pastoral, not speculative — it ends with 'encourage one another with these words.'

Translation Friction: The phrase 'caught up' (harpagēsometha, v. 17) is the basis for the theological concept of 'the rapture,' though Paul himself does not use that term and the passage's imagery is debated. We render the Greek without imposing any particular eschatological framework. The phrase 'possess his own vessel' (v. 4) is ambiguous — it may refer to one's body or to one's wife. We note the ambiguity.

Connections: The parousia teaching connects to Jesus's Olivet Discourse (Matthew 24, Mark 13). The 'word of the Lord' (v. 15) may refer to an otherwise unrecorded saying of Jesus or to prophetic revelation. The trumpet imagery echoes Isaiah 27:13 and Exodus 19:16. The 'meeting the Lord in the air' language uses the civic apantēsis pattern found in Acts 28:15.

¹Finally then, brothers and sisters, we ask and urge you in the Lord Jesus, that as you received from us how you ought to walk and please God — as you are in fact doing — that you do so more and more. ²For you know what instructions we gave you through the Lord Jesus. ³For this is the will of God: your sanctification — that you abstain from sexual immorality, ⁴Each of you should learn to control your own body in a way that is holy and honorable, ⁵Not in the lust of sinful desire, even as the Gentiles which know not God:. ⁶That no person depart beyond and defraud his brother in any matter — on account of the fact that that the Lord is the avenger of all such, as we as well have forewarned you and testified. ⁷For God has not called us to impurity but to holiness. ⁸Therefore, whoever rejects this is not rejecting a human authority but God, who gives his Holy Spirit to you. ⁹Now concerning brotherly love, you have no need for anyone to write to you, for you yourselves are taught by God to love one another. ¹⁰For indeed you are practicing it toward all the brothers and sisters throughout Macedonia. But we urge you, brothers and sisters, to do so more and more, ¹¹Make it your goal to live a quiet life, to mind your own affairs, and to work with your hands, as we instructed you. ¹²That you may conduct your lives honestly toward them that are without, and that you may possess lack of nothing. ¹³But we do not want you to be uninformed, brothers and sisters, about those who have fallen asleep, so that you may not grieve as the rest do, who have no hope. ¹⁴For since we believe that Jesus died and rose again, so also God will bring with him those who have fallen asleep through Jesus. ¹⁵For this we declare to you by a word of the Lord: we who are alive, who are left until the coming of the Lord, will by no means precede those who have fallen asleep. ¹⁶For the Lord himself will descend from heaven with a commanding shout, with the voice of an archangel, and with the trumpet of God, and the dead in Christ will rise first. ¹⁷Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air, and so we will always be with the Lord. ¹⁸Therefore encourage one another with these words.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The transition loipon oun ('finally then') marks the shift from personal narrative (chs. 1-3) to ethical instruction (chs. 4-5). The verb peripatein ('to walk') is a Semitism for conduct or way of life, adopted from the Hebrew halak. Paul both affirms their current practice and calls for growth — they are already walking rightly but should abound (perisseuēte) increasingly.
2. The noun parangelias ('instructions, commands, charges') is a military term for orders passed down a chain of command. Paul's ethical instructions carry the authority of the Lord Jesus — they are not mere suggestions but authoritative directives mediated through apostolic teaching.
3. The noun hagioσmos ('sanctification, being made holy') is the practical outworking of holiness in daily life. The first concrete application is sexual ethics. The Greek porneia ('sexual immorality') is broader than 'fornication' (KJV) — it covers all sexual activity outside the covenant of marriage. Paul begins with this topic because Thessalonica's Greco-Roman culture was highly permissive sexually, and new converts needed clear guidance.
4. The phrase to heautou skeuos ktasthai is debated: skeuos ('vessel') could mean 'body' (as we render) or 'wife' (as in 1 Peter 3:7's 'weaker vessel'). The verb ktasthai means 'to acquire' or 'to possess/control.' If 'body,' the instruction is about self-mastery; if 'wife,' about honorable marriage. The context of sexual ethics supports either reading. We follow 'body' as more likely given the parallel with verse 5.
5. The phrase pathei epithymias ('passion of desire') denotes uncontrolled sexual craving. Paul distinguishes believers from ta ethnē ('the nations, Gentiles') — ironic given that most Thessalonian believers were themselves formerly Gentile pagans (1:9). The distinguishing factor is knowing God (eidota ton theon), which transforms sexual ethics from cultural convention into covenantal faithfulness.
6. The verbs hyperbainein ('to overstep, transgress') and pleonektein ('to take advantage of, exploit') combined with en tō pragmati ('in this matter') likely refer to sexual violation of another person's marriage or family — not general business ethics. The Lord as ekdikos ('avenger') draws on Old Testament language of God as the defender of the wronged (Psalm 94:1, Deuteronomy 32:35).

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 94:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 32:35. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Paul grounds sexual ethics in vocation — the call of God defines the standard. The prepositions shift meaningfully: *epi akatharsia* ('upon/toward impurity') versus *en hagioismo* ('in holiness') — impurity is a destination God rejects; holiness is the sphere God intends believers to inhabit.
8. The verb *athetōn* ('rejecting, setting aside, nullifying') was used for annulling a treaty or covenant — to reject Paul's instruction is to violate the covenant relationship with God. The present participle *didonta* ('the one giving') indicates the ongoing gift of the Spirit. Some manuscripts read 'us' (*hēmas*) instead of 'you' (*hymas*); the SBLGNT reads 'you,' making the point more direct.
9. The compound *theodidaktōi* ('God-taught') is found only here in the New Testament and may be a Pauline coinage. It echoes the prophetic promise of direct divine instruction (Isaiah 54:13, Jeremiah 31:33-34). Paul's compliment is genuine but also serves as encouragement to continue.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 54:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 31:33-34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The love of the Thessalonians extends beyond their local congregation to believers throughout the province — evidence of inter-church relationships and mutual support in the earliest Christian movement. Paul's pattern is consistent: affirm what is already happening, then call for growth (cf. v. 1).
11. The phrase *philotimeisthai hēsychazein* ('to make it your ambition to be quiet') is a deliberate paradox — 'ambitiously pursue non-ambition.' Some Thessalonians may have abandoned daily work in light of the expected *parousia*. Paul counters this with a call to ordinary, productive life. The three infinitives — live quietly, mind your own affairs, work with your hands — form a practical ethic for eschatological living.
12. The phrase *tous exō* ('those outside') refers to non-believers — Paul is concerned about the church's public witness. The practical goals are reputation (*euschēmōnōs*, 'properly, respectably') and self-sufficiency (*mēdenos chreian echēte*, 'having need of no one'). A church financially dependent on outsiders loses credibility.
13. The formula *ou thelomen hymas agnoein* ('we do not want you to be ignorant') introduces a new and important teaching section. 'Fallen asleep' (*koimōmenōn*) is a common early Christian metaphor for death — it implies the expectation of waking. The Thessalonians' grief was not about death in general but about the specific fear that deceased believers would miss the *parousia*. Paul does not forbid grief but grief 'as those who have no hope' — Christian grief is real but bounded by resurrection hope.
14. Paul's logic: Jesus's death and resurrection is the pattern for believers' death and resurrection. The phrase *dia tou Iēsou* ('through Jesus') could modify 'fallen asleep' (those who died as Christians) or 'will bring' (God will bring them through Jesus). The ambiguity may be intentional — Jesus is the means of both their death-experience and their resurrection. Note Paul uses *apethanen* ('died') for Jesus but *koimēthentas* ('fallen asleep') for believers — Jesus's death was the raw reality; believers' death is softened by his victory over it.
15. The phrase *en logō kyriou* ('by a word of the Lord') may cite an unrecorded saying of Jesus, a prophetic revelation given to Paul, or an interpretation of Jesus's known teaching (cf. Matthew 24:30-31). The double negative *ou mē* ('by no means, definitely not') is the strongest negation in Greek — the living will absolutely not have an advantage over the dead. Paul includes himself among 'we who are alive' (*hēmeis hoi zōntes*), suggesting he expected the *parousia* in his lifetime, though he later moderated this (cf. 2 Corinthians 5:1-10).
16. Three auditory images accompany the descent: *keleusma* ('a command, a shout of authority' — used for a military officer's command or a charioteer's cry), *phōnē archangelou* ('voice of an archangel'), and *salpingi theou* ('trumpet of God,' echoing the Sinai theophany of Exodus 19:16 and the eschatological trumpet of Isaiah 27:13). The phrase 'the Lord himself' (*autos ho kyrios*) emphasizes personal presence — this is not delegated to angels. 'Dead in Christ' (*nekroi en Christō*) defines the scope: those who died in union with Christ.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 19:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 27:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The verb *harpagēsometha* ('we will be caught up, snatched away') is the basis for the later theological term 'rapture' (from the Latin *rapturo* in the Vulgate). The Greek conveys sudden, forceful action. The noun *apantēsis* ('meeting') is a technical term from Hellenistic civic life: when an important dignitary approached a city, the citizens would go out to meet (*apantēsis*) him and escort him back into the city. This imagery suggests the believers go out to meet the descending Lord and accompany him — the destination is not specified as heaven but as permanent presence 'with the Lord.' The clouds echo Daniel 7:13 and the ascension narrative (Acts 1:9-11).
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb *parakaleite* ('encourage, comfort, exhort') frames the entire *parousia* teaching as pastoral, not speculative. Paul's purpose in describing the Lord's return is not to construct a detailed eschatological timeline but to provide comfort for the grieving. The instruction is communal — 'one another' (*allēlous*) — making this teaching a shared possession of the church, not private knowledge.

5

Summary: *Paul continues the eschatological teaching from chapter 4, now addressing the timing of the Lord's return. The 'day of the Lord' will come like a thief in the night — sudden and unexpected for the unprepared, but not for believers who are children of light. Paul calls them to remain sober and watchful, putting on the armor of faith, love, and hope. The chapter then delivers a rapid series of community instructions: respect your leaders, live at peace, admonish the disorderly, encourage the fainthearted, help the weak, be patient, pursue good, rejoice always, pray without ceasing, give thanks in everything, do not quench the Spirit, test everything, hold fast to what is good, abstain from every form of evil. The letter closes with a prayer for complete sanctification and a request for mutual prayer, greeting, and public reading.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The rapid-fire instructions in verses 12-22 form one of the densest collections of ethical imperatives in Paul's letters. The triad of 'rejoice always, pray without ceasing, give thanks in everything' (vv. 16-18) has become one of the most memorized passages in the New Testament. The closing prayer (v. 23) uses the tripartite 'spirit and soul and body,' the only place Paul uses all three terms together. The final verse's insistence that the letter be read to 'all the brothers and sisters' suggests awareness of its authoritative status.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'spirit and soul and body' (v. 23) should not be pressed into a systematic anthropological framework — Paul is using comprehensive language for the whole person, not teaching trichotomism. The 'thief in the night' imagery (v. 2) echoes Jesus's own teaching (Matthew 24:43, Luke 12:39) and was clearly part of early Christian tradition. We render without imposing a specific millennial framework.*

Connections: *The 'day of the Lord' language derives from Old Testament prophetic tradition (Amos 5:18-20, Joel 2:1-11, Zephaniah 1:14-18). The thief imagery appears in Matthew 24:43, Luke 12:39, 2 Peter 3:10, and Revelation 3:3, 16:15. The armor metaphor anticipates the fuller treatment in Ephesians 6:10-17. 'Do not quench the Spirit' connects to Paul's broader pneumatology in 1 Corinthians 12-14.*

¹Now concerning the times and the seasons, brothers and sisters, you have no need for anything to be written to you, ²For yourselves recognize perfectly that the time of the Lord so comes as a thief in the after dark. ³When they say, "Peace and security," then sudden destruction will come upon them, like labor pains on a pregnant woman, and they will not escape. ⁴But you, brothers and sisters, are not in darkness, so that the day would overtake you like a thief, ⁵You are every one of the children of light, and the children of the day — we are not of the night, nor of darkness. ⁶So then, let us not sleep as the rest do, but let us stay awake and be sober, ⁷Since they that sleep sleep in the night. Then they that be drunken are drunken in the night. ⁸But since we belong to the day, let us be sober, having put on the breastplate of faith and love, and as a helmet the hope of salvation. ⁹For God has not destined us for wrath but for obtaining salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ, ¹⁰Christ died for us so that whether we are awake or asleep, we will live together with him. ¹¹Therefore encourage one another and build each other up, just as you are in fact doing. ¹²Now we ask you, brothers and sisters, to recognize those who labor among you, who lead you in the Lord and admonish you, ¹³To esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake. And be at peace in the midst of yourselves. ¹⁴And we urge you, brothers and sisters: admonish the disorderly, encourage the fainthearted, help the weak, be patient with everyone. ¹⁵See that no one repays evil for evil to anyone, but always pursue what is good for one another and for all people. ¹⁶Rejoice always, ¹⁷Never stop praying. ¹⁸Give thanks in every situation, for this is what God wants for you in Christ Jesus. ¹⁹Do not quench the Spirit. ²⁰Do not despise prophecies, ²¹Indeed, prove all things. Hold fast that which is good. ²²Abstain from every form of evil. ²³Now may the God of peace himself sanctify you completely, and may your whole spirit and soul and body be kept blameless at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ. ²⁴The one who calls you is faithful, and he will do it. ²⁵Brothers and sisters, pray for us also. ²⁶Greet all the brothers and sisters with a holy kiss. ²⁷I put you under oath before the Lord to have this letter read to all the brothers and sisters. ²⁸May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ remain with you. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul distinguishes *chronōn* ('times' — chronological duration) from *kairōn* ('seasons' — significant or decisive moments). The combination covers both 'when' and 'what kind of time.' The phrase echoes Acts 1:7 where Jesus uses the same pair to deflect timeline questions. Paul's point is not that timing is knowable but that it is irrelevant to readiness.
2. The phrase *hēmera kyriou* ('day of the Lord') is drawn directly from Old Testament prophetic vocabulary (Hebrew: *yom YHWH*). In the prophets it refers to God's decisive intervention in judgment and salvation. Paul applies it to the return of Christ. The thief simile emphasizes unexpectedness, not stealth or evil intent — a thief comes when you do not expect him (cf. Jesus's use in Matthew 24:43).
3. The phrase *eirēnē kai asphaleia* ('peace and security') may echo Roman imperial propaganda — the Pax Romana promised exactly this. Paul subverts the claim: true security is not found in empire but in Christ. The labor pain metaphor (*ōdin*) emphasizes inevitability and suddenness, not gradual process. The double negative *ou mē* ('they will absolutely not') stresses the impossibility of escape for the unprepared.
4. Paul shifts from 'they' (v. 3) to 'you' — the believers are in a fundamentally different position. The metaphor of darkness represents moral and spiritual ignorance, not merely the absence of chronological information. Those who live in the light will not be surprised because they are already prepared.
5. The Semitic idiom 'sons/children of' (*huiōi*) expresses essential character — 'children of light' means people whose nature is defined by light. The phrase echoes language found in the Dead Sea Scrolls (War Scroll: 'sons of light vs. sons of darkness'). Paul shifts from 'you' to 'we' (*esmen*), including himself in the community of light.
6. The metaphors operate on two levels: literal sleep/waking (extending the night/day imagery) and moral alertness/negligence. The verb *grēgorōmen* ('let us stay awake, be watchful') becomes a key eschatological term in early Christianity (cf. Mark 13:35, 37). The verb *nēphōmen* ('let us be sober') refers to mental clarity and self-control, the opposite of spiritual intoxication.
7. Paul extends the night/day metaphor with commonsense observation — sleep and drunkenness are naturally associated with nighttime. The implication is that if believers belong to the day, they should exhibit daytime behavior: alertness and sobriety.
8. Paul introduces military armor imagery drawn from Isaiah 59:17 where God puts on righteousness as a breastplate and salvation as a helmet. Paul adapts the imagery: the breastplate protects the heart with faith and love, and the helmet guards the mind with hope. The faith-love-hope triad from 1:3 returns here in eschatological armor form. This is a condensed version of the fuller armor passage in Ephesians 6:10-17.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 59:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb *etheto* ('placed, appointed, destined') with *eis* ('toward, for') indicates divine purpose. The contrast is between *orgē* ('wrath' — eschatological judgment) and *peripoiēsis sōtērias* ('obtaining of salvation'). The noun *peripoiēsis* can mean 'possession' or 'obtaining/acquiring' — salvation is both God's gift and something believers receive.
10. The 'awake or asleep' language now carries double meaning: it refers to physical death and life (the concern from 4:13-18) as well as the moral alertness imagery of this chapter. Paul's answer to both questions — what about the dead? what about readiness? — is the same: Christ's death ensures that our state (alive or dead, alert or not) does not determine our destiny. Union with Christ does.
11. The verb *oikodomeite* ('build up, edify') uses construction imagery — the community is a building under construction, and each member contributes to the structure. The phrase *eis ton hena* ('one the one,' i.e., 'each other individually') emphasizes personal, one-on-one encouragement. Paul again affirms their current practice (cf. 4:1, 10).
12. Three participles describe church leaders: *kopiōntas* ('those laboring' — the same word for exhausting toil used in 1:3), *proistamenous* ('those who lead, stand before, care for'), and *nouthetountas* ('those who admonish, counsel, correct'). The verb *eidēnai* ('to know, recognize') means more than mere awareness — it implies respect and acknowledgment of their role. The leadership structure in Thessalonica was not yet formalized into offices (no 'elders' or 'deacons' are named).
13. The adverb *hyperekperissou* ('beyond all measure') recurs from 3:10 — Paul characteristically piles up intensifiers. Esteem for leaders is to be 'in love' (*en agapē*), not in fear or obligation. The abrupt imperative *eirēneuete en heautois* ('be at peace among yourselves') suggests tensions within the community, possibly related to the disorderly behavior addressed in verse 14.
14. Four imperatives addressed to the whole community, not just leaders: *noutheteite tous ataktous* ('admonish the disorderly' — *ataktos* is a military term for soldiers who break rank, referring to those who refuse to work per 4:11-12); *paramytheisthe tous oligopsychous* ('encourage the fainthearted' — *oligopsychos* means 'small-souled,' those crushed by grief or fear); *antechesthe tōn asthenōn* ('help the weak' — whether physically, economically, or spiritually); *makrothymete pros pantas* ('be patient with everyone' — including all three problem groups). The differentiated response is crucial: the disorderly need correction, the fainthearted need comfort, the weak need support. One-size-fits-all pastoral care fails.
15. The prohibition of retaliation (*kakon anti kakou*, 'evil in return for evil') parallels Romans 12:17 and 1 Peter 3:9, and ultimately echoes Jesus's teaching (Matthew 5:38-48). The verb *diōkete* ('pursue, chase after') implies active effort — doing good requires intentional action, not passive goodwill. The scope extends beyond the community (*eis allēlous*) to everyone (*eis pantas*).

16. The first of three brief imperatives (vv. 16-18) that form a well-known triad. *Pantote* ('always, at all times') is unqualified — Paul does not say 'rejoice when things go well.' Joy in Paul's theology is not dependent on circumstances but rooted in relationship with God (cf. Philippians 4:4, written from prison).
17. The adverb *adialeiptōs* ('without ceasing, constantly') appeared in 1:3 and 2:13 for Paul's own prayer practice. This does not mean unbroken verbal prayer but a persistent orientation of life toward God — prayer as habitual conversation with God woven into daily existence.
18. The phrase *en panti* ('in everything, in every circumstance') does not mean 'for everything' — Paul calls for thanksgiving in all situations, not necessarily for all situations. The phrase 'this is the will of God' (*touto gar thelēma theou*) may refer to all three imperatives (vv. 16-18) together, not just thanksgiving. God's will is the triad: joy, prayer, gratitude.
19. The verb *sbennyte* ('quench, extinguish') treats the Spirit's work as fire — a metaphor consistent with Pentecost imagery (Acts 2:3). 'Quenching' implies suppressing or stifling the Spirit's manifestations, likely prophetic gifts given the next verse. The present imperative with *mē* suggests 'stop quenching' — this may have already been happening.
20. The verb *exoutheneite* ('despise, treat as nothing, hold in contempt') suggests some Thessalonians were dismissive of prophetic speech. Prophecy in the Pauline churches was Spirit-inspired speech for edification, not fortune-telling (cf. 1 Corinthians 14:3). The next verse provides the corrective: test, don't dismiss.
21. The verb *dokimazete* ('test, examine, assess') is the same word used for testing metals to determine their purity. Applied to prophecy, it means evaluate rather than accept uncritically or reject reflexively. The imperative *katēchete* ('hold fast, retain') balances openness with discernment — accept what proves genuine, release what does not.
22. The Greek *eidous* can mean 'form, kind, type' or 'appearance.' The KJV's 'appearance of evil' has been misapplied to mean 'anything that looks bad.' The Greek more likely means 'every kind of evil' — each type or manifestation of evil should be avoided. This provides the negative counterpart to verse 21's positive imperative.
23. The title 'God of peace' (*theos tēs eirēnēs*) is a standard Pauline benediction formula. The adjective *holoteleis* ('completely, entirely') and the adjective *holoklēron* ('whole, complete, intact') create emphatic completeness — every part of the person is included. The threefold 'spirit and soul and body' (*pneuma kai psychē kai sōma*) is comprehensive language for the whole person, not a systematic anthropological division. This is the only place Paul lists all three together. The *parousia* serves once again as the horizon toward which sanctification is directed.
24. The brevity is powerful: *pistos ho kalōn* ('faithful is the one calling'). The present participle *kalōn* indicates God's call is ongoing. The assurance that 'he will do it' (*hos kai poiēsei*) grounds the prayer of verse 23 in God's faithfulness — sanctification will be completed because God's character guarantees it.
25. The request for prayer is brief and mutual — Paul who prays constantly for them (1:2, 3:10) asks for the same in return. The *kai* ('also') emphasizes reciprocity.
26. The 'holy kiss' (*philēmati hagiō*) was a standard greeting in early Christian worship (cf. Romans 16:16, 1 Corinthians 16:20, 2 Corinthians 13:12). The adjective 'holy' distinguishes it from romantic or familial kisses — it was a sign of spiritual kinship and mutual peace.
27. The verb *enorkizō* ('I put under oath, I adjure') is strikingly solemn for a letter closing — Paul uses oath language to ensure the letter is read publicly to the entire congregation, not just leaders. This suggests both the letter's authoritative status and the possibility that some might try to restrict its circulation. Paul shifts to the first person singular (*enorkizō*, 'I'), lending personal weight to the charge.
28. The closing benediction follows Paul's standard formula. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen,' which appears in some later manuscripts. 'Grace' (*charis*) forms an *inclusio* with the opening greeting (1:1), framing the entire letter in the reality of divine favor.

2 Thessalonians

1

Summary: *Paul, Silvanus, and Timothy greet the Thessalonian church again, thanking God for their growing faith and increasing love amid ongoing persecution. Paul assures them that their suffering is evidence of God's righteous judgment — God will repay affliction to their oppressors and grant relief to the afflicted when the Lord Jesus is revealed from heaven with his mighty angels in flaming fire. Those who do not know God and do not obey the gospel will face eternal destruction away from the Lord's presence, while Christ will be glorified among his saints on that day.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains one of the most vivid descriptions of Christ's return in judgment in the Pauline corpus. The language draws heavily on Old Testament theophany traditions — flaming fire (Exodus 3:2, Isaiah 66:15), angels as divine attendants (Deuteronomy 33:2), and divine vengeance (Isaiah 66:4, 15). The phrase 'eternal destruction away from the presence of the Lord' (v. 9) is Paul's most explicit statement about the nature of final judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The severity of the judgment language in verses 6-9 stands in tension with modern sensibilities but is consistent with Old Testament prophetic tradition and Jesus's own warnings. We render the Greek faithfully without softening. The authorship of 2 Thessalonians is debated among scholars; we render the text as it stands without adjudicating authorship questions.*

Connections: *The 'revelation' (apokalypsis) of the Lord Jesus (v. 7) parallels 1 Thessalonians 4:16-17 but emphasizes judgment rather than reunion. The flaming fire imagery echoes Exodus 3:2, Isaiah 66:15, and Daniel 7:9-10. The prayer for God to 'fulfill every resolve for good' (v. 11) anticipates the pastoral concerns of chapter 3.*

¹Paul, and Silvanus, and Timotheus, to the church of the Thessalonians in God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ. ²From god our father and the lord jesus christ, grace to you, and peace. ³We are obligated to give thanks to God always for you, brothers and sisters, as is fitting, because your faith is growing abundantly and the love of every one of you for one another is increasing. ⁴Because of this, we ourselves boast about you among the churches of God for your endurance and faith through all the persecutions and hardships you are facing. ⁵This is evidence of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you are also suffering. ⁶Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense suffering to them that trouble you; ⁷and to give relief to you who are suffering along with us. This will happen when the Lord Jesus appears from heaven with his mighty angels. ⁸He will come in blazing fire, bringing judgment on those

who do not know God and on those who refuse to obey the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁹They will suffer the penalty of eternal destruction, away from the presence of the Lord and from the glory of his might, ¹⁰When he will come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all them that trust (because our testimony in the midst of you was believed) in that day. ¹¹To this end we always pray for you, that our God may count you worthy of his calling and may fulfill every resolve for good and every work of faith by his power, ¹²According to the grace of our god and the lord Jesus Christ, that the name of our Lord Jesus Christ may be glorified in you, and you in him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The greeting nearly mirrors 1 Thessalonians 1:1 with one addition: 'our' (hēmōn) modifies 'Father,' which the shorter first letter lacked in the SBLGNT. This subtle addition emphasizes the relational bond between the writers and God.
2. The fuller greeting includes the source — 'from God our Father and the Lord Jesus Christ' — which the SBLGNT text of 1 Thessalonians 1:1 omitted. Grace (charis) and peace (eirēnē) again bridge Greek and Hebrew blessing traditions.
3. The phrase opheilomen ('we are obligated, we ought') replaces the spontaneous thanksgiving of 1 Thessalonians — Paul frames gratitude as a moral duty given the evidence of their growth. The verb hyperauxanei ('is growing beyond measure') is found only here in the New Testament and may be another Pauline coinage. The growth in faith and love answers the prayer of 1 Thessalonians 3:10-12.
4. The compound verb enkauchasthai ('to boast in, to glory in') intensifies the boasting — Paul takes personal pride in the Thessalonians' faithfulness. He boasts 'among the churches' (en tais ekklesiāis), using the Thessalonians as an example to other congregations. The present tense anechesthe ('you are bearing') indicates ongoing, current suffering.
5. The noun endeigma ('evidence, proof, sign') indicates that their faithful endurance under persecution serves as evidence — not that suffering earns the kingdom, but that their perseverance demonstrates the genuineness of their faith and thus God's righteous judgment in counting them worthy. The phrase 'kingdom of God' (basileia tou theou) is relatively rare in Paul (cf. 1 Thessalonians 2:12, 1 Corinthians 6:9-10, Galatians 5:21).
6. The phrase eiper dikaion ('since indeed it is righteous') appeals to the principle of divine justice: those who inflict suffering will receive suffering. The verb antapodounai ('to repay, recompense') echoes the lex talionis principle but placed in divine hands — God repays, not the believers (cf. Romans 12:19, Deuteronomy 32:35).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 32:35. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The noun anesin ('relief, rest, release') is the opposite of thlipsis ('affliction') — the present pressure will be replaced by release. The word apokalypsis ('revelation, unveiling') describes Christ's return as the removal of a veil — what is now hidden (Christ's glory and authority) will become visible. 'Angels of his power' (angelōn dynamēōs autou) portrays the angels as instruments of divine power.
8. The phrase en pyri phlogos ('in flaming fire') draws on theophany language — God's presence is associated with fire from the burning bush (Exodus 3:2) to Sinai (Exodus 19:18) to Isaiah's vision (Isaiah 66:15). 'Vengeance' (ekdikēsis) is not emotional retaliation but judicial retribution — the enactment of justice. The two groups — 'those who do not know God' (likely Gentiles) and 'those who do not obey the gospel' (possibly those who heard but rejected) — may be two descriptions of the same group or two distinct groups.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 3:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 66:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The phrase olethron aiōnion ('eternal destruction') describes not annihilation but permanent ruin — separation from God's presence. The preposition apo ('away from') defines the destruction as exclusion from God's presence (prosōpou, 'face') and glory. This echoes Isaiah 2:10, 19 where people flee from 'the splendor of his majesty.' The penalty is defined relationally — loss of God's presence — rather than as physical torment.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 2:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Christ's glory will be visible 'in' or 'among' (en) his saints — believers become the medium through which Christ's glory is displayed. The verb thaumasthenai ('to be marveled at, to be admired') suggests awe and wonder. The parenthetical 'because our testimony to you was believed' assures the Thessalonians they are included among those who will marvel. 'That day' (en tē hēmera ekeinē) is the eschatological 'day of the Lord.'
11. The phrase pasan eudokian agathōsynēs could mean 'every good resolve' (the Thessalonians' desire for goodness) or 'every desire of goodness' (God's good pleasure). The former fits better: Paul prays that God would empower their good intentions. 'Work of faith' (ergon pisteōs) echoes 1 Thessalonians 1:3, forming a thematic link between the two letters.

12. The mutual glorification — Christ glorified 'in you' and you glorified 'in him' — creates a remarkable reciprocity. Believers reflect Christ's glory, and Christ's glory elevates believers. The phrase *kata tēn charin* ('according to the grace') grounds everything in unmerited favor — neither the worthiness (v. 11) nor the glorification (v. 12) is earned. The single article before 'our God and the Lord Jesus Christ' (*tou theou hēmōn kai kyriou Iēsou Christou*) has been debated — some read it as equating God and Christ, though most scholars see two distinct referents sharing one governing article.

2

Summary: *Paul corrects a misunderstanding that the day of the Lord has already come. He insists that two events must occur first: a great rebellion (apostasia) and the revelation of the 'man of lawlessness' who will exalt himself above every so-called god, even seating himself in the temple of God and claiming to be God. Something — or someone — is currently restraining this figure, and once the restrainer is removed, the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will destroy with the breath of his mouth. Those who follow the lawless one do so because they refused to love the truth. Paul then thanks God for the Thessalonians' election and urges them to stand firm in the traditions they were taught.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This passage is one of the most debated in the Pauline corpus. The identity of the 'man of lawlessness' (*ho anthrōpos tēs anomias*), the 'restrainer' (*to katechon* / *ho katechōn*), and the 'mystery of lawlessness' (*to mystērion tēs anomias*) have generated centuries of interpretation without scholarly consensus. Paul assumes the Thessalonians already know what he means ('Do you not remember?' v. 5), leaving modern readers without the key to his allusions.*

Translation Friction: *We render the Greek without identifying the man of lawlessness with any specific historical or future figure. The 'restrainer' is rendered with deliberate ambiguity matching Paul's own shift between neuter (*to katechon*, v. 6) and masculine (*ho katechōn*, v. 7). The phrase 'God sends them a strong delusion' (v. 11) raises difficult theological questions about divine agency in deception, which we note without resolving.*

Connections: *The man of lawlessness draws on Daniel 11:36 (the king who exalts himself), Ezekiel 28:2 (the prince of Tyre who claims to be God), and Isaiah 14:13-14. Jesus's warning about false messiahs and signs (Matthew 24:24, Mark 13:22) parallels the deceptive signs of the lawless one. The 'breath of his mouth' destruction echoes Isaiah 11:4. The 'mystery of lawlessness' contrasts with the 'mystery' revealed in Christ (Colossians 1:26-27, Ephesians 3:3-6).*

1Now concerning the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ and our being gathered together to him, we ask you, brothers and sisters, 2That you be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by message, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is drawing near. 3Let no one deceive you in any way, for that day will not come unless the rebellion comes first and the man of lawlessness is revealed, the son of destruction, 4He will oppose and exalt himself above every so-called god or object of worship. He will even seat himself in God's temple, claiming to be God. 5Do you not remember that when I was still with you I kept telling you these things? 6And you know what is restraining him now, so that he may be revealed at the proper time. 7For the mystery of lawlessness is already at work; only the one who now restrains will do so until he is taken out of the way. 8And then the lawless one will be revealed, whom the Lord Jesus will destroy with the breath of his mouth and bring to nothing by the appearance of his coming. 9The coming of the lawless one is by the activity of Satan, with all power and false signs and wonders, 10With all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish. On account of the fact that they received not the devotion of the what is genuine, that they might be saved. 11For this reason God sends them a powerful delusion so that they will believe the lie, 12so that all who refused to believe the truth and took pleasure in wickedness will be condemned. 13But we are obligated to give thanks to God always for you, brothers and sisters beloved by the Lord, because God chose you as firstfruits for salvation through sanctification by the Spirit and belief in the truth. 14He called you to this through our gospel, so that you may obtain the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ. 15So then, brothers and sisters, stand firm and hold to the traditions that you were taught, whether by our spoken word or by our letter. 16Now may our Lord Jesus Christ himself, and God our Father, who loved us and gave us eternal comfort and good hope through grace, 17Comfort your hearts, and stablish you in every good message and work.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The noun *episynagōgēs* ('gathering together, assembling') is related to the *synagōgē* ('synagogue, assembly') and refers to the believers' reunion with Christ at the *parousia*, described in 1 Thessalonians 4:17. The preposition *epi* ('to, upon') indicates movement toward Christ as the gathering point.
2. Three possible sources of the false teaching are identified: *dia pneumatos* ('through a spirit' — a prophetic utterance), *dia logou* ('through a word' — oral teaching), or *di' epistolēs* ('through a letter' — a written communication). The phrase *hōs di' hēmōn* ('as if from us') suggests someone may have forged or misrepresented a Pauline letter. The verb *enestēken* ('has come, is present, has arrived') is perfect tense, indicating a claim that the day of the Lord had already arrived — not merely that it was near.
3. The noun *apostasia* ('rebellion, revolt, apostasy') denotes a decisive falling away — from what is debated (from God, from faith, from political order). In the Septuagint it describes political rebellion and religious unfaithfulness. The SBLGNT reads 'man of lawlessness' (*anomias*) rather than 'man of sin' (*hamartias*) found in some manuscripts. The title 'son of destruction' (*ho huios tēs apōleias*) is the same title applied to Judas in John 17:12 — a person defined by and destined for ruin.
4. The language closely parallels Daniel 11:36 ('the king shall exalt himself and magnify himself above every god'). The phrase *eis ton naon tou theou* ('in the temple of God') could refer to the Jerusalem temple (either the historical one or a rebuilt future temple), to the church as God's temple (1 Corinthians 3:16), or to a metaphorical enthronement in the sphere of divine authority. The verb *apodeiknynta* ('declaring, proclaiming, showing') implies an official claim — a public self-deification.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 11:36. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. This verse is both informative and frustrating for modern interpreters — Paul had taught them orally about these matters, and the Thessalonians knew what he meant. We do not have that oral teaching. The imperfect *elegon* ('I kept telling') indicates repeated instruction, not a single conversation. Paul's rhetorical question implies mild rebuke: they should not have been shaken by false claims about the day of the Lord.
6. The neuter participle *to katechon* ('the thing that restrains') is one of the great mysteries of Pauline interpretation. Proposed identifications include the Roman Empire, the rule of law, the Holy Spirit, the preaching of the gospel, an angelic power, or God's providential timing. Paul's 'you know' (*oidate*) assumes shared knowledge we no longer possess. The phrase *en tō heautou kairō* ('at his own time') indicates the lawless one has an appointed moment of revelation, which is currently being held back.
7. Paul shifts from the neuter 'what restrains' (v. 6) to the masculine 'the one who restrains' (*ho katechōn*) — possibly indicating both a force and a person behind it. The 'mystery of lawlessness' (*to mystērion tēs anomias*) means lawlessness is already operative but in hidden form — it has not yet been publicly revealed. The KJV's 'letteth' meant 'restrains' in 1611 English but now means the opposite, making the KJV misleading here. The phrase *ek mesou genētai* ('removed from the midst') does not specify who removes the restrainer.
8. The verb *anelei* ('will destroy, will slay') combined with *tō pneumati tou stomatos autou* ('with the breath of his mouth') echoes Isaiah 11:4: 'He shall strike the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips he shall kill the wicked.' The lawless one's destruction is effortless — a mere breath from Jesus suffices. The phrase *tē epiphaneia tēs parousias* ('the appearance of his coming') combines two technical terms for Christ's return: *epiphaneia* ('manifestation, appearing') and *parousia* ('coming, presence'). The combination emphasizes visible, overwhelming presence.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 11:4: — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The lawless one has his own *parousia* — a satanic parody of Christ's coming. The triad *dynamei kai sēmeiois kai terasin* ('power and signs and wonders') mirrors the language used for apostolic authentication (Romans 15:19, 2 Corinthians 12:12), but qualified by *pseudous* ('of falsehood, false'). The deception is not in the supernatural character of the events but in the source and purpose — they serve to deceive, not to reveal truth.
10. The phrase *tēn agapēn tēs alētheias* ('the love of the truth') is distinctive — Paul does not say they rejected the truth but that they rejected the love of truth. The disposition toward truth matters as much as intellectual assent. The present participle *apolymenoi* ('those who are perishing') describes a current state and trajectory, not a fixed category. The deception succeeds only against those who have already refused truth.
11. The statement that God sends (*pempei*) the delusion is theologically difficult. The logic follows the Old Testament pattern of judicial hardening: when people persistently refuse truth, God confirms their choice by giving them over to it (cf. Romans 1:24-28, 'God gave them over'). The 'lie' (*tō pseudei*) has the definite article — 'the lie,' a specific falsehood, perhaps the claim of the lawless one to be God (v. 4). This is not arbitrary divine cruelty but the consequence of refusing truth: one is left with what one chose.
12. The verb *eudokēsantes* ('took pleasure in, delighted in') is the same word used for God's good pleasure (*eudokia*) — but here directed toward unrighteousness. The contrast is stark: they found delight in *adikia* ('unrighteousness') rather than in *alētheia* ('truth'). Condemnation follows not just intellectual rejection but moral complicity — they enjoyed what was wrong.
13. The SBLGNT reads *aparchēn* ('firstfruits') rather than *ap' archēs* ('from the beginning') found in some manuscripts. 'Firstfruits' portrays the Thessalonians as the initial harvest of a greater ingathering. Two means of salvation are named: *hagiasmos pneumatos* ('sanctification by/of the Spirit') — the Spirit's transforming work — and *pistei alētheias* ('faith in the truth') — the human response. Together they describe God's initiative and human reception.

14. The noun *peripoiēsis* ('obtaining, possession') appeared in 1 Thessalonians 5:9 for 'obtaining salvation.' Here the object is even grander: the glory of Christ himself. The chain is: God chose (v. 13), God called (v. 14), and the instrument of the call was 'our gospel' (*dia tou euangeliou hēmōn*). The human proclamation is the means of the divine call.
15. The noun *paradoxeis* ('traditions, things handed down') is a technical term for authoritative teaching transmitted from teacher to student. Paul uses the same word that Jesus criticizes when applied to human traditions that override God's word (Mark 7:8), but here the traditions are apostolic and Spirit-guided. The two channels — *dia logou* ('through spoken word') and *di' epistolēs* ('through letter') — validate both oral and written apostolic teaching as authoritative.
16. Unusually, Paul names Christ before the Father in the prayer, perhaps because the eschatological teaching has focused on Christ's *parousia*. The singular participles ('who loved... and gave') with a compound subject again suggests a unity of action between Christ and the Father (cf. 1 Thessalonians 3:11). 'Eternal comfort' (*paraklēsin aiōnian*) and 'good hope' (*elpida agathēn*) are the gifts that sustain believers through present affliction and eschatological uncertainty.
17. The two optative verbs — *parakalesai* ('comfort, encourage') and *stērixai* ('establish, strengthen') — complete the prayer begun in verse 16. Paul reverses the expected order to 'work and word' (*ergō kai logō*) rather than 'word and work,' possibly emphasizing that action accompanies and sometimes precedes verbal expression. The prayer is for inner strengthening ('hearts') manifested in outward conduct ('every good work and word').

3

Summary: Paul requests prayer for the spread of the word and for deliverance from wicked people, expresses confidence in the Lord's faithfulness, and then addresses the problem of those living in idleness. He commands the community to keep away from every brother or sister living irresponsibly, pointing to his own example of working night and day so as not to be a burden. Those who will not work should not eat. Paul instructs the community not to associate with the idle in order to shame them into correction, but also not to treat them as enemies. The letter closes with a prayer for peace and a handwritten greeting that serves as an authentication mark.

*What Makes This Remarkable: The 'no work, no eat' principle (v. 10) is one of the most frequently quoted Pauline sayings in secular discourse, though it is often lifted from its pastoral context. Paul is not articulating a general economic philosophy but addressing a specific problem: some Thessalonians had apparently stopped working, possibly because they believed the *parousia* was imminent. The closing authentication (v. 17) suggests Paul was aware that letters were being circulated under his name (cf. 2:2).*

Translation Friction: The severity of the disciplinary measures (vv. 6, 14-15) reflects Paul's concern that idleness was disrupting the entire community. The balance between 'do not associate' and 'do not regard as an enemy' defines the tension of redemptive discipline. We render without softening the sharpness of Paul's instruction.

Connections: The idle/disorderly problem was already flagged in 1 Thessalonians 4:11-12 and 5:14. Paul's appeal to his own manual labor (v. 8) parallels 1 Thessalonians 2:9 and 1 Corinthians 9:3-18. The authentication in verse 17 connects to Galatians 6:11 and Colossians 4:18.

¹Finally, brothers and sisters, pray for us, that the word of the Lord may spread rapidly and be honored, just as it was among you, ²That we may be delivered from unreasonable and corrupt people — for all people have not faith. ³But the Lord is faithful; he will strengthen you and guard you from the evil one. ⁴And we have confidence in the Lord about you, that you are doing and will continue to do what we command. ⁵May the Lord direct your hearts to the love of God and to the steadfastness of Christ. ⁶Now we command you, brothers and sisters, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, to keep away from every brother or sister who lives irresponsibly and not according to the tradition that they received from us. ⁷For you yourselves know how you ought to imitate us, because we were not idle among you, ⁸We did not eat anyone's food without paying for it. Instead, we labored and toiled day and night so we would not be a burden to any of you. ⁹Not that we do not have the right, but to give you ourselves as an example to imitate. ¹⁰For even when we were with you, we used to give you this command: if anyone is not willing to work, let that person not eat. ¹¹For we hear that some among you are living irresponsibly, not busy at work but busybodies. ¹²Now such people we command and encourage in the Lord Jesus Christ to work quietly and eat their own bread. ¹³As for you, brothers and sisters, do not grow weary of doing good. ¹⁴If anyone does not obey what we say in this letter, take note of that person and do not associate with him, so that he may be put to shame. ¹⁵

Yet do not regard him as an enemy, but warn him as a brother. ¹⁶Now may the Lord of peace himself give you peace at all times in every way. The Lord be with you all. ¹⁷This greeting is in my own hand — Paul's. This is the mark in every letter of mine; this is how I write. ¹⁸May the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ remain with all of you. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *trechē* ('may run') is athletic imagery — the word of the Lord is personified as a runner in a race (cf. Psalm 147:15, 'His word runs swiftly'). The verb *doxazētai* ('may be glorified, honored') indicates that the word achieves its purpose and is received with respect. Paul asks for prayer not for his personal safety but for the mission's success.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 147:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The adjective *atopōn* ('out of place, improper, wicked') literally means 'having no place' — people who are morally displaced. Combined with *ponērōn* ('evil, malicious'), it describes active opposition to the gospel. The understated conclusion — 'not everyone has faith' (*ou gar pantōn hē pistis*) — is almost ironic in its simplicity, acknowledging that the gospel will be resisted.
3. The wordplay between *pistis* ('faith,' v. 2) and *pistos* ('faithful,' v. 3) is deliberate: not all people have faith, but the Lord is faithful. The phrase *apo tou ponērou* could mean 'from evil' (abstract) or 'from the evil one' (personal — Satan). Given the eschatological context of the letter and the reference to the 'lawless one' in chapter 2, 'the evil one' is more likely.
4. Paul's confidence is 'in the Lord' (*en kyriō*), not merely in the Thessalonians' character — divine faithfulness undergirds human obedience. The verb *parangellogen* ('we command') is the same military-order language used in 1 Thessalonians 4:2, emphasizing apostolic authority.
5. The optative *kateuthynai* ('may he direct') is a prayer-wish (cf. 1 Thessalonians 3:11). The two goals are: *tēn agapēn tou theou* ('the love of God') — possibly God's love for them or their love for God — and *tēn hypomonēn tou Christou* ('the steadfastness/endurance of Christ') — possibly Christ's own endurance as an example or the endurance that comes from Christ. The genitives are deliberately ambiguous, encompassing both divine gift and human response.
6. The adverb *ataktōs* ('disorderly, irresponsibly') is a military term for a soldier who abandons his post or breaks formation (cf. 1 Thessalonians 5:14). In this context it refers specifically to refusing to work (vv. 10-11). The verb *stellesthai* ('to keep away from, to withdraw from') prescribes social distancing as a disciplinary measure. The 'tradition' (*paradosis*) they violate is Paul's example and instruction regarding manual labor.
7. The verb *ētaktēsamen* ('we were disorderly, we were idle') is the verbal form of the same root as *ataktōs* in verse 6. Paul presents his own conduct as the pattern (cf. 1 Thessalonians 2:9-10). The obligation to imitate (*mimeisthai*) implies that apostolic behavior, not just apostolic teaching, carries normative authority.
8. The phrase *dōrean arton* ('bread for free') is an idiom for receiving support without contributing. Paul's language nearly verbatim repeats 1 Thessalonians 2:9 (*kopon kai mokhthon*, 'toil and hardship'), reinforcing consistency between the two letters. The right to financial support was legitimate (v. 9), but Paul chose to forgo it for pedagogical purposes.
9. Paul explicitly acknowledges his *exousia* ('right, authority') to receive financial support — he develops this argument at length in 1 Corinthians 9:3-14. His voluntary renunciation was strategic: he wanted to establish a visible pattern (*typon*, 'example, model') of self-supporting labor that the congregation could follow.
10. The conditional *ei tis ou thelei ergazesthai* ('if anyone is not willing to work') specifies unwillingness, not inability — Paul is addressing those who refuse to work, not those who cannot. The imperfect *parēngellomen* ('we used to command') indicates this was repeated instruction during Paul's visit. The principle may draw on a Jewish proverbial tradition (cf. Genesis Rabbah 2:2: 'If I do not work, I do not eat'). The command is pastoral, not economic theory — it addresses a specific community problem.
11. Paul employs a pointed wordplay: *mēden ergazomenous alla periergazomenous* — literally 'not working but over-working,' meaning 'not doing their own work but meddling in others' work.' The English 'not busy but busybodies' captures the pun. The problem is not just laziness but its byproduct: idle people who meddle in others' affairs, disrupting the community.
12. Paul combines authority (*parangellogen*, 'we command') with pastoral warmth (*parakaloumen*, 'we encourage'). The phrase *meta hēsychias* ('with quietness') echoes 1 Thessalonians 4:11 — living quietly means minding one's own affairs. 'Eat their own bread' (*ton heautōn arton esthiōsin*) means earn their own livelihood rather than depending on the community's resources.
13. The verb *enkakēsēte* ('grow weary, lose heart, give up') acknowledges the real temptation: when some members exploit communal generosity, the generous may become disillusioned. Paul addresses this directly — the irresponsibility of some must not extinguish the generosity of others.
14. The verb *sēmeiousthe* ('take note of, mark, identify') suggests a formal process of community recognition — the person is publicly identified. The verb *synanamiggysthai* ('to associate with, to mingle with') denotes social interaction, particularly shared meals. The purpose clause *hina entrapē* ('so that he may be ashamed') reveals the goal is redemptive, not punitive — shame is meant to produce change, not permanent exclusion.
15. This verse provides the critical guardrail for the discipline of verse 14. The person under discipline remains *adelphos* ('brother') — a family member in need of correction, not an outsider to be rejected. The verb *noutheteite* ('warn, admonish, counsel') implies instruction aimed at change of behavior, not condemnation. The tension between social exclusion (v. 14) and fraternal correction (v. 15) defines the narrow path of redemptive

discipline.

- 16.** The title 'Lord of peace' (ho kyrios tēs eirēnēs) parallels 'God of peace' (1 Thessalonians 5:23), applying a divine title to Christ. The double emphasis — dia pantos ('at all times') and en panti tropō ('in every way') — asks for peace that is both continuous and comprehensive. After a letter dealing with eschatological anxiety and community conflict, the prayer for total peace is especially apt.
- 17.** Paul typically dictated his letters through a secretary (amanuensis; cf. Romans 16:22) and then added a greeting in his own handwriting as authentication. Given the concern about forged letters in 2:2, this authentication takes on special urgency. The phrase sēmeion en pasē epistolē ('a sign in every letter') establishes Paul's handwriting as a security feature for all his correspondence.
- 18.** The closing benediction matches the standard Pauline formula. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen,' which appears in later manuscripts. The word pantōn ('all') may carry special weight after a letter about community discipline — grace extends to the entire congregation, including those under correction.

1 Timothy

1

Summary: *Paul writes to Timothy, his 'true child in the faith,' who has been left in Ephesus to confront false teachers promoting myths, endless genealogies, and speculative teachings that produce controversy rather than God's plan of faith. Paul clarifies the proper use of the law — it is for the lawless, not the righteous — and then offers his own testimony as the foremost of sinners who received mercy so that Christ's perfect patience might be displayed. The chapter closes with a charge to Timothy to fight the good fight, holding to faith and a good conscience, and warns about Hymenaeus and Alexander who have shipwrecked their faith.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Paul's self-description as 'the foremost of sinners' (v. 15) is one of the most quoted passages in Christian devotional tradition. The 'faithful saying' formula (pistos ho logos, v. 15) appears five times in the Pastoral Epistles and nowhere else in Paul, marking distinctive material. The vice list in verses 9-10 is unusual in following the structure of the Ten Commandments, connecting the law's proper use to its specific prohibitions.*

Translation Friction: *The authorship of the Pastoral Epistles is debated among scholars — some attribute them to Paul, others to a later Pauline disciple. We render the text as it stands without adjudicating authorship. The vice list in verses 9-10 includes arsenokoitais ('men who have sex with men'), a compound word whose precise scope and meaning are debated. We render the Greek term and note the interpretive issues.*

Connections: *The charge to Timothy anticipates the military language of 2 Timothy 2:3-4 and 4:7. The 'faithful saying' formula recurs at 3:1, 4:9, 2 Timothy 2:11, and Titus 3:8. The reference to Paul's conversion echoes Acts 9, 22, and 26. Hymenaeus appears again in 2 Timothy 2:17.*

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the command of God our Savior and of Christ Jesus our hope, ²To Timothy, my true child in the faith: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. ³As I urged you when I was leaving for Macedonia, remain in Ephesus so that you may instruct certain people not to teach different doctrine ⁴and not to occupy themselves with myths and endless genealogies. These promote speculation rather than the advancement of God's work, which is by faith. ⁵The goal of this instruction is love that comes from a pure heart, a good conscience, and a sincere faith. ⁶Some have strayed from these and turned to meaningless talk, ⁷They want to be teachers of the law, but they do not understand what they are saying or what they so confidently assert. ⁸Now we know that the law is good, if one uses it legitimately, ⁹Knowing this, that the instruction of Moses is not fashioned for a upright man, but for the lawless and

disobedient, for the ungodly and for sinners, for unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers,. ¹⁰For the sexually immoral, for those who practice homosexuality, for slave traders, for liars, for those who swear falsely, and if there be any other thing that is contrary to healthy teaching;. ¹¹In keeping with to the glorious gospel of the blessed God, which was committed to my trust. ¹²I am grateful to Christ Jesus our Lord, who has strengthened me, because he considered me faithful, appointing me to his service, ¹³Indeed, who was prior to a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and injurious — but I obtained mercy, because I did it ignorantly in unbelief;. ¹⁴The grace of our Lord poured out on me abundantly, along with the faith and love that come through Christ Jesus. ¹⁵The saying is trustworthy and deserving of full acceptance: Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners, of whom I am the foremost. ¹⁶But I received mercy for this reason: so that in me, as the foremost, Christ Jesus might display his perfect patience as an example to those who would come to believe in him for eternal life. ¹⁷To the King of the ages, immortal, invisible, the only God, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen. ¹⁸This charge I entrust to you, Timothy my child, in accordance with the prophecies previously made about you, so that by them you may fight the good fight, ¹⁹Holding trust, and a righteous conscience. Which some possessing placed away concerning faith have made shipwreck;. ²⁰Among them are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I have handed over to Satan so they would learn not to blaspheme.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The title 'God our Savior' (theou sōtēros hēmōn) is distinctive to the Pastoral Epistles (cf. Titus 1:3, 2:10, 3:4) and draws on Old Testament language for God as Israel's savior (Isaiah 43:3, 11). Christ is called 'our hope' (tēs elpidos hēmōn) — not merely the object of hope but hope itself personified. The phrase kat' epitagēn ('by command') frames Paul's apostleship as military commission, not personal choice.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 43:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The adjective gnēsio ('genuine, true, legitimate') indicates a deep spiritual bond — Timothy is Paul's authentic spiritual offspring. The greeting adds 'mercy' (eleos) to the usual 'grace and peace,' a distinctive feature of the Pastoral Epistles' greetings to individuals (cf. 2 Timothy 1:2). Mercy may be added because Timothy faces a difficult pastoral situation requiring divine compassion.
3. The verb heterodidaskalein ('to teach different doctrine, to teach otherwise') is a compound found only in the Pastoral Epistles (here and 6:3). It implies deviation from the established apostolic teaching rather than mere theological innovation. The vague 'certain people' (tisin) avoids naming them initially, though Paul names two in verse 20.
4. The 'myths' (mythois) and 'genealogies' (genealogiais) likely refer to speculative elaborations on Old Testament narratives — possibly Jewish-Gnostic or proto-Gnostic traditions. The noun oikonomia ('stewardship, plan, administration') has a rich theological range — here it refers to God's redemptive plan or strategy, which operates through faith (en pistei), not through speculative knowledge.
5. The telos ('goal, aim, end') of the paraggelia ('instruction, command') is not theological knowledge but love (agapē). Three sources of genuine love are named: a pure heart (inner motivation), a good conscience (moral integrity), and sincere faith (anypokritos — literally 'unhypocritical,' without pretense). The false teachers have missed all three.
6. The verb astochēsantes ('having missed the mark, having strayed') uses archery imagery — they aimed at love but missed. The noun mataiologian ('meaningless talk, empty discussion') characterizes the false teaching as vacuous — it produces noise without substance.
7. The compound nomodidaskaloi ('teachers of the law') is used only here and in Luke 5:17 and Acts 5:34. The irony is sharp: they aspire to teach the law but comprehend neither their own words nor the subjects they pronounce upon. The verb diabebaiountai ('make confident assertions, insist strongly') makes their ignorance more damaging — they speak with unwarranted authority.
8. The wordplay on nomos ('law') and nomimōs ('lawfully, legitimately') is deliberate — the law must be used in accordance with its own purpose. Paul affirms the goodness of the law (cf. Romans 7:12, 16) while qualifying its proper application.
9. The vice list follows the order of the Ten Commandments: the first pairs (lawless, rebellious, ungodly, sinful, unholy, irreverent) correspond to the first table (duties toward God); the next items follow the second table (duties toward others). Patrolōais kai mētrōlōais ('those who strike fathers and mothers') corresponds to the fifth commandment, and androphonois ('murderers') to the sixth.
10. The list continues through the Decalogue: pornois (sexually immoral, seventh commandment), arsenokoitais (a compound of arsēn 'male' + koitē 'bed,' appearing in the Septuagint language of Leviticus 18:22 and 20:13 — the precise scope of this term is debated among scholars), andrapodistais ('slave traders, kidnappers,' eighth commandment — enslaving people), pseustais ('liars') and epiorkois ('perjurers,' ninth commandment — false witness). The phrase hygiainousē didaskalia ('sound/healthy teaching') is a distinctive Pastoral Epistles expression, using medical imagery — true doctrine promotes health.

- 10.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 18:22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 11.** The phrase to euangelion tēs doxēs tou makariou theou ('the gospel of the glory of the blessed God') is a remarkably dense genitive chain. The gospel is characterized by God's glory, and God is described as makarios ('blessed, happy') — a term usually reserved for humans in Paul but here applied to God (cf. 6:15), a distinctive feature of the Pastoral Epistles.
- 12.** The verb endynamōsanti ('having empowered, having strengthened') is the same root Paul uses in Philippians 4:13 ('I can do all things through him who strengthens me'). The appointment to diakonia ('service, ministry') flows from Christ's assessment of Paul's faithfulness — yet the next verse reveals that Paul's 'faithfulness' was preceded by blasphemy and persecution.
- 13.** The three self-descriptions intensify: blasphemōn ('blasphemer' — against God), diōktēn ('persecutor' — against the church), and hybristēn ('violent, insolent aggressor' — the same word used in Romans 1:30). Paul's ignorance (agnoōn) does not excuse his actions but explains why mercy was possible — he was not sinning against known truth (cf. Numbers 15:27-31 on inadvertent vs. deliberate sin).
- 13.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 15:27-31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 14.** The verb hypereplenasen ('overflowed, super-abounded') is a Pauline intensive — where sin abounded, grace hyper-abounded (cf. Romans 5:20). Grace did not merely match Paul's sin but overwhelmed it. The paired nouns 'faith and love' (pisteōs kai agapēs) describe what grace produced in Paul — the very qualities the false teachers lack (v. 5).
- 15.** The formula pistos ho logos ('faithful is the saying, the saying is trustworthy') introduces what may be an early Christian confession or hymnic fragment. The core proclamation — Christos Iēsous ēlthen eis ton kosmon hamartōlous sōsai ('Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners') — is a compact statement of incarnational soteriology. Paul's claim to be prōtos ('foremost, first, chief') is present tense (eimi, 'I am'), not past — he does not merely recall his former persecution but maintains a present consciousness of unworthiness.
- 16.** Paul's conversion becomes a paradigm — a hypotypōsis ('pattern, model, outline') for all future believers. If the 'foremost of sinners' could receive mercy, no one is beyond reach. The noun makrothymia ('patience, longsuffering') describes Christ's restraint in the face of Paul's active persecution — a patience that endured until Paul's transformation. 'Eternal life' (zōēn aiōnion) is the ultimate goal of belief.
- 17.** Paul breaks into a doxology — the overflow of gratitude from his testimony. Four attributes describe God: basilei tōn aiōnōn ('King of the ages' — sovereign over all time), aphthartō ('imperishable, immortal'), aoratō ('invisible'), and monō theō ('the only God'). The SBLGNT does not include 'wise' (sophō), which appears in some manuscripts. The phrase eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn ('to the ages of the ages') is the strongest expression of unending duration in Greek.
- 18.** The military imagery — strateuē ('fight, serve as a soldier') and strateian ('campaign, warfare') — frames Timothy's ministry as a battle. The 'prophecies previously made about you' (proagousas epi se prophēteias) likely refer to prophetic words spoken over Timothy at his commissioning (cf. 4:14). These prophecies are not mere encouragement but equipment for spiritual combat.
- 19.** The verb enauagēsan ('shipwrecked') is vivid — faith is a vessel that can be wrecked on the rocks of a rejected conscience. The 'good conscience' (agathēn syneidēsin) from verse 5 returns: it is not optional equipment but essential to the integrity of faith. Those who pushed away (apōsamenoi, middle voice — 'pushed away from themselves') their conscience destroyed their own faith.
- 20.** Paul names the offenders — Hymenaeus reappears in 2 Timothy 2:17. 'Handed over to Satan' (paredōka tō satana) parallels 1 Corinthians 5:5 and likely refers to expulsion from the community — outside the protective sphere of the church, they are in Satan's domain. The purpose is remedial: hina paideutōsin ('so that they may be disciplined/educated') — the verb paideuō means to train as a child, to educate through correction. Even this severe action aims at restoration, not destruction.

2

Summary: *Paul instructs that prayers be offered for all people, especially for kings and those in authority, so that believers may live peaceful and godly lives. He grounds this universal concern in the nature of God, who desires all people to be saved and come to the knowledge of the truth. A christological statement declares one God and one mediator between God and humanity — the man Christ Jesus, who gave himself as a ransom for all. Paul then gives instructions about how men should pray and how women should conduct themselves in the assembly, including a controversial instruction about women not teaching or exercising authority over men.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 5-6 contain what many scholars consider an early Christian hymn or creedal formula: 'one God, one mediator... who gave himself as a ransom for all.' The phrase 'ransom for all' (antilytron hyper pantōn) is unique to this passage and represents one of the clearest universal atonement statements in the New Testament. The instructions about women (vv. 9-15) have generated more interpretive debate than almost any other passage in Paul.*

Translation Friction: Verses 11-15 regarding women's roles in the assembly are among the most debated texts in the New Testament. We render the Greek as written without imposing either complementarian or egalitarian interpretive frameworks. The reference to Eve's deception (v. 14) and salvation 'through childbearing' (v. 15) are notoriously difficult and we note the major interpretive options without choosing among them.

Connections: The prayer for authorities parallels Romans 13:1-7 and 1 Peter 2:13-17. The mediator language connects to Hebrews 8:6, 9:15, 12:24. The ransom statement echoes Mark 10:45. The discussion of women's roles relates to 1 Corinthians 11:2-16 and 14:34-35, though the relationship among these passages is debated.

¹First of all, then, I urge that supplications, prayers, intercessions, and thanksgivings be made for all people, ²Pray for kings and all those in authority, so that we may live peaceful and quiet lives in complete godliness and dignity. ³This is good and pleasing in the sight of God our Savior, ⁴Who will possess all people to be saved, and to arrive to the knowledge of the truth. ⁵For there is one God, and there is one mediator between God and humanity — the man Christ Jesus, ⁶Indeed, who offered himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. ⁷For this I was appointed a herald and an apostle — I am telling the truth, I am not lying — a teacher of the Gentiles in faith and truth. ⁸Therefore I want the men in every place to pray, lifting up holy hands, without anger or quarreling. ⁹Likewise, I want women to adorn themselves with proper clothing, modestly and with self-control, not with braided hair or gold or pearls or expensive clothing, ¹⁰However, (which becometh women professing godliness) with good deeds. ¹¹Let a woman learn quietly with all submissiveness. ¹²I do not permit a woman to teach or to exercise authority over a man; rather, she is to remain quiet. ¹³For Adam was formed first, then Eve, ¹⁴Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the sin. ¹⁵Yet she will be saved through childbearing, if they continue in faith and love and holiness with self-control.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Four types of prayer are listed: *deēseis* ('supplications' — specific requests arising from need), *proseuchas* ('prayers' — the general term), *enteuxeis* ('intercessions' — approaching God on behalf of others, literally 'petitions'), and *eucharistias* ('thanksgivings'). The phrase *hyper pantōn anthrōpōn* ('for all people') establishes the universal scope that the entire chapter develops.
2. The prayer for political rulers is pragmatic rather than political — stable governance allows peaceful Christian life. The noun *eusebeia* ('godliness, piety') is a key term in the Pastoral Epistles (appearing 10 times in 1-2 Timothy and Titus) and describes the outward manifestation of reverence for God. The noun *semmotēs* ('dignity, seriousness, respectability') describes conduct that commands respect.
3. The adjective *apodekton* ('acceptable, pleasing, welcome') indicates that universal prayer aligns with God's own character and desire. The title 'God our Savior' (*toū sōtēros hēmōn theou*) recurs from 1:1, connecting God's saving character to his desire that all be saved (v. 4).
4. The verb *thelei* ('desires, wills, wants') has been debated for centuries: does God's desire necessarily produce its result? We render the Greek without imposing either universalist or particularist frameworks. The phrase *epignōsis alētheias* ('full knowledge of the truth') implies not mere information but deep, experiential understanding. Salvation and knowledge are paired — being saved involves knowing truth.
5. This verse may preserve an early creedal formula. The numerical emphasis — *heis* ('one') repeated — stresses exclusivity: one God (echoing the Shema of Deuteronomy 6:4) and one mediator. The term *mesitēs* ('mediator, go-between') implies someone who stands in the middle, connecting two parties. Christ's humanity is emphasized — *anthrōpos Christos Iēsous* ('the man Christ Jesus') — because a mediator between God and humans must share in both natures.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 6:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The noun *antilytron* ('ransom, substitute payment') is unique to this verse in the New Testament. It intensifies the related word *lytron* (Mark 10:45) with the prefix *anti-* ('in exchange for, in place of'), emphasizing substitutionary exchange. The phrase *hyper pantōn* ('for all') completes the universal scope established in verses 1 and 4. The 'testimony at the proper time' (*to martyriōn kairos idiois*) indicates that this redemptive act has been publicly declared at the divinely appointed moment.
7. Three roles describe Paul's commission: *kēryx* ('herald, proclaimer' — one who announces a king's message), *apostolos* ('apostle, sent one'), and *didaskalos ethnōn* ('teacher of the Gentiles'). The parenthetical oath — *alētheian legō, ou pseudomai* ('I tell the truth, I do not lie') — is striking (cf. Romans 9:1, 2 Corinthians 11:31) and may respond to challenges to Paul's authority in Ephesus.
8. The verb *boulomai* ('I want, I desire, I intend') expresses authoritative will. The noun *andras* ('men, males') is gender-specific here (not the generic *anthrōpoi*), establishing a parallel with the instructions to women in verse 9. Lifting hands in prayer was standard Jewish and early Christian practice (cf. Psalm 134:2). The qualifications — 'without anger' (*chōris orgēs*) and 'without quarreling' (*dialogismou* — 'dispute, argument') — suggest the Ephesian church had conflict-ridden worship.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 134:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The adverb hōsautōs ('likewise, in the same way') connects women's instructions to the men's in verse 8. The noun kataistolē ('clothing, deportment, demeanor') refers to the overall presentation. The virtues aidous ('modesty, reverence') and sōphrosynēs ('self-control, sound judgment') contrast with extravagant adornment. The specifics — braided hair (plegmasin), gold (chrysiō), pearls (margaritais), expensive clothing (himatismō polytelei) — were markers of wealth and social status in Roman society that could create division in worship.
10. The noun theosebeian ('reverence for God, godliness') is the feminine counterpart to the eusebeia that characterizes the entire letter's moral vision. The true adornment of a godly woman is not external display but ergōn agathōn ('good works') — conduct that reflects character.
11. The verb manthanetō ('let her learn') is actually a positive command — women are to learn, which was not universally accepted in the ancient world. The noun hēsychia ('quietness, stillness') does not necessarily mean total silence but a receptive, non-disruptive posture (the same word is used in verse 2 for the 'quiet life' of all believers). The noun hypotagē ('submissiveness, proper order') describes alignment with established authority structures.
12. The verb epitrepō ('I permit') is present tense — some scholars read this as a universal principle, others as a situational directive addressing the Ephesian context. The verb authentein ('to exercise authority, to domineer') occurs only here in the New Testament, and its precise meaning is debated: it may mean 'to exercise authority' (neutral) or 'to domineer, to usurp authority' (negative). The range of meaning affects whether the prohibition targets all authority or only improper authority. We render with the standard translation while noting the interpretive complexity.
13. Paul appeals to the creation narrative (Genesis 2:7, 21-22) as the basis for his instruction. The verb eplasthē ('was formed, was molded') echoes the Septuagint of Genesis 2:7, 8. Whether the temporal priority of Adam's creation establishes a permanent hierarchical principle or describes a culturally mediated application is debated among interpreters.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Paul adds a second argument from Genesis 3: Eve was exapatētheisa ('thoroughly deceived') while Adam was not (ouk ēpatēthē). This does not absolve Adam — Romans 5:12-21 makes Adam fully responsible for the fall. Paul's point may be about susceptibility to deception in a context where false teachers were specifically targeting women (cf. 2 Timothy 3:6), rather than a universal statement about women's intellectual capacity. The relationship between this argument and the broader Pauline corpus remains debated.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3:. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. This is among the most difficult verses in the Pastoral Epistles. The phrase sōthēsetai dia tēs teknogonias ('she will be saved through the childbearing') has been interpreted as: (1) women will be preserved safely through the physical process of childbirth; (2) women will be saved through the Childbirth — the birth of Christ (the definite article tēs may point to a specific birth); (3) women will find their salvation expressed through faithful motherhood; (4) the curse of Genesis 3:16 will not have the final word. The shift from singular 'she' to plural 'they' (meinōsin) broadens the application. We render the Greek directly and note the complexity without selecting one interpretation.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 3:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

3

Summary: *Paul outlines the qualifications for overseers (episkopoi) and deacons (diakonoi) in the church. An overseer must be above reproach, the husband of one wife, sober-minded, self-controlled, hospitable, able to teach, not a drunkard, not violent, gentle, peaceable, not a lover of money, and must manage his own household well. He must not be a recent convert and must be well regarded by outsiders. Deacons similarly must be dignified, not double-tongued, not addicted to much wine, not greedy, holding the mystery of the faith with a clear conscience. Women (whether deacons' wives or female deacons) must likewise be dignified and faithful. The chapter concludes with a christological hymn: 'Great indeed is the mystery of godliness.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The qualifications for church officers focus overwhelmingly on character rather than competence or charisma. The only skill-based requirement is 'able to teach' (v. 2). The christological hymn in verse 16 — six clauses in three couplets — is widely regarded as a pre-Pauline hymn fragment that Paul quotes. Its structure moves from incarnation to exaltation in rhythmic parallels.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'husband of one wife' (mias gynaikos andra, v. 2) is debated: does it prohibit polygamy, remarriage after divorce, remarriage after a spouse's death, or require marital faithfulness? We render literally and note the debate. The 'women' (gynaikas) in verse 11 could be deacons' wives or female deacons — the Greek is ambiguous, and we preserve that ambiguity.*

Connections: The overseer qualifications parallel Titus 1:5-9. The deacon qualifications have no exact parallel but relate to Acts 6:1-6. The christological hymn echoes Philippians 2:6-11 and Colossians 1:15-20 in its hymnic structure. The 'pillar and foundation of truth' (v. 15) imagery connects to Ephesians 2:20-22.

¹The saying is trustworthy: if anyone aspires to the office of overseer, he desires a noble task. ²Therefore an overseer must be above reproach, the husband of one wife, sober-minded, self-controlled, respectable, hospitable, able to teach, ³Not given to wine, no striker, not greedy of dishonest profit. But patient, not a brawler, not covetous. ⁴He must manage his own household well, with all dignity keeping his children submissive. ⁵Because if a man know not how to rule his own home, how will he take care of the church of God? ⁶He must not be a recent convert, or he may become puffed up with conceit and fall into the condemnation of the devil. ⁷Moreover, he must be well thought of by outsiders, so that he may not fall into disgrace and into a snare of the devil. ⁸Deacons likewise must be dignified, not double-tongued, not addicted to much wine, not greedy for dishonest gain. ⁹They must hold the mystery of the faith with a clear conscience. ¹⁰And let them also be tested first; then let them serve as deacons if they prove blameless. ¹¹Women likewise must be dignified, not slanderers, sober-minded, faithful in all things. ¹²Let deacons each be the husband of one wife, managing their children and their own households well. ¹³For those who serve well as deacons gain a good standing for themselves and great confidence in the faith that is in Christ Jesus. ¹⁴I am writing these things to you, hoping to come to you soon, ¹⁵But if I am delayed, you will know how people should conduct themselves in God's household, which is the church of the living God — the pillar and foundation of the truth. ¹⁶Great indeed, we confess, is the mystery of godliness: He was manifested in the flesh, vindicated by the Spirit, seen by angels, proclaimed among the nations, believed in throughout the world, taken up in glory.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'faithful saying' formula (pistos ho logos) introduces the second such statement in the letter (cf. 1:15). The noun episkopē ('office of overseer, oversight') gives us the later English word 'bishop,' but in this period the role was local church leadership, not the hierarchical office that developed later. The verb oregetai ('aspires to, reaches for') is positive — desiring leadership is commendable when the character qualifications are met.
2. The overarching qualification is anepilēmpton ('above reproach, without anything to take hold of against him'). The phrase mias gynaikos andra ('a one-woman man') literally means 'a man of one woman.' Interpretations include: (1) prohibition of polygamy; (2) prohibition of remarriage after divorce; (3) prohibition of remarriage after widowhood; (4) requirement of marital faithfulness ('a faithful husband'). The last reading has the strongest contextual support. The list moves from personal character to social skills to a specific ability (didaktikon, 'able to teach').
3. The qualifications shift to negatives — what an overseer must not be. Mē paroinon ('not given to much wine, not a drunkard') does not necessarily prohibit all wine consumption but excessive drinking. Mē plēktēn ('not a striker, not violent') prohibits physical aggression. The positive counterpart is epikeikē ('gentle, yielding, forbearing') — a word Aristotle described as justice tempered by mercy.
4. The verb proistamenon ('managing, leading, caring for') is the same word used for church leadership in 1 Thessalonians 5:12 and Romans 12:8. Paul treats household management as a proving ground for church leadership. The noun semnotētos ('dignity, seriousness') may modify the father's manner of leadership rather than the children's behavior.
5. The verb epimelēsetai ('will care for, will take charge of') is the same word used for the Good Samaritan's care (Luke 10:34-35) — leadership is a form of caregiving, not dominion. The logic is from lesser to greater: the household is a microcosm of the church.
6. The noun neophyton ('newly planted') gives us the English 'neophyte.' The verb typhōtheis ('puffed up, conceited, clouded') literally refers to smoke — pride clouds the mind. The phrase krima tou diabolou ('condemnation of the devil') could mean: (1) the same condemnation the devil received for his pride, or (2) the condemnation that the devil brings upon the prideful. Both readings fit the context.
7. The phrase tōn exōthen ('those outside') refers to non-Christians — the overseer's reputation in the wider community matters. The 'snare of the devil' (pagida tou diabolou) adds to the devil's activity from verse 6: pride leads to condemnation, bad reputation leads to entrapment. A leader with a compromised public reputation becomes vulnerable to Satan's exploitation.
8. The noun diakonous ('deacons, servants, ministers') denotes those who serve — the role is defined by service rather than authority. The qualifications parallel the overseer's but with some differences: no teaching requirement, more emphasis on integrity in speech (mē dilogous, 'not double-tongued' — saying different things to different people). The term aischrokerdeis ('greedy for dishonest gain') suggests deacons may have handled community funds.
9. The phrase mystērion tēs pisteōs ('the mystery of the faith') refers to the revealed content of Christian belief — the truth previously hidden but now made known through the gospel (cf. v. 16). A 'clear conscience' (kathara syneidēsei) means their inner life matches their outward profession — the same concern Paul raised in 1:5, 19.

10. The verb dokimazesthōsan ('let them be tested, examined') is the same word used for testing metals (cf. 1 Thessalonians 5:21). A period of evaluation precedes service — deacons are not self-appointed but community-assessed. The adjective anegklētoi ('blameless, without accusation') sets a high bar: no credible charge can be brought against them.
11. The Greek gynaikas ('women') could mean: (1) wives of deacons, (2) female deacons (deaconesses), or (3) women in general. The parallel structure hōsautōs ('likewise') — used for deacons in verse 8 — suggests a third category of church workers rather than merely deacons' wives. Romans 16:1 identifies Phoebe as a diakonos, supporting the existence of female deacons. The adjective diabolous ('slandorous') is literally 'devil-like' — the devil (diabolos) is the slanderer par excellence.
12. The household management requirement repeats from the overseer qualifications (v. 4) but in condensed form. If verse 11 refers to female deacons, then verse 12 resumes the male deacon qualifications. The phrase mias gynaikos andres ('men of one woman') mirrors verse 2.
13. The noun bathmon ('step, standing, rank') may refer to social standing in the community, spiritual advancement, or both. The parrēsian ('boldness, confidence, freedom of speech') indicates that faithful service produces inner assurance and outward courage in the faith. Service is not merely duty but a means of spiritual growth.
14. Paul signals that the letter is a temporary substitute for his personal presence. The phrase en tachei ('soon, quickly') expresses hope rather than certainty — Paul does not know when he will arrive.
15. Three metaphors describe the church: oikos theou ('household of God' — a family), ekklēsia theou zōntos ('assembly of the living God'), and stylos kai hedraiōma tēs alētheias ('pillar and foundation of the truth'). The architectural imagery is powerful: the church supports and displays truth as a pillar holds up and displays a building. The phrase 'living God' (theou zōntos) distinguishes the true God from the dead idols of Ephesus (cf. Acts 19).
16. The SBLGNT reads hos ('who, he who') rather than theos ('God'), which appears in later manuscripts — the difference in uncial script is minimal (OC vs. ΘC) and the original reading was likely the relative pronoun. The six clauses form three antithetical pairs: flesh/Spirit, angels/nations, world/glory — moving between earthly and heavenly spheres. This is widely regarded as a pre-existing hymn that Paul quotes. The verb edikaiōthē ('was vindicated, was justified') in reference to Christ means his claims were confirmed, not that he needed moral justification. 'Taken up in glory' (anelēmphthē en doxē) refers to the ascension.

4

Summary: *Paul warns that the Spirit explicitly predicts that some will depart from the faith in later times, following deceiving spirits and teachings of demons. These false teachers forbid marriage and require abstinence from certain foods — practices Paul refutes by affirming that everything God created is good and is sanctified through the word of God and prayer. Paul then gives Timothy personal pastoral directives: train yourself in godliness (which has value both for the present and the coming life), do not let anyone look down on your youth, set an example in speech, conduct, love, faith, and purity. He is to devote himself to the public reading of Scripture, to exhortation, and to teaching, and not to neglect the gift given through prophecy and the laying on of hands.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The ascetic practices condemned here (forbidding marriage, requiring food abstinence) suggest a proto-Gnostic or Jewish-ascetic influence in Ephesus that viewed the material world as inherently evil. Paul's response affirms the goodness of creation — a fundamental Jewish-Christian conviction. The statement 'godliness is of value in every way' (v. 8) and the 'faithful saying' of verse 9 provide one of the Pastoral Epistles' most positive theological affirmations. The charge to Timothy not to neglect his gift (v. 14) reveals that even Spirit-given gifts require active cultivation.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'in later times' (en hysterois kairois, v. 1) is debated — Paul may view these times as already present or as still future. We render the Greek temporal reference without imposing a specific eschatological timeline. The 'faithful saying' formula in verse 9 is unusual because what precedes and what follows could each be the saying referred to.*

Connections: *The food laws discussion connects to Romans 14:1-4, 14:14-23 and Colossians 2:16-23. The training metaphor anticipates 2 Timothy 2:5 and 4:7-8. The laying on of hands (v. 14) parallels Acts 6:6, 13:3 and 2 Timothy 1:6. The 'public reading of Scripture' (v. 13) reflects synagogue practice adopted by the early church.*

1Now the Spirit expressly says that in later times some will depart from the faith, devoting themselves to deceitful spirits and teachings of demons, 2Speaking lies in hypocrisy. After their conscience seared with a hot iron;. 3They forbid people to marry and order them to avoid certain foods. But God created those foods to be received with thanksgiving by those who believe

and know the truth. ⁴For everything created by God is good, and nothing is to be rejected if it is received with thanksgiving, ⁵ Since it is sanctified by the message of God and prayer. ⁶If you put these things before the brothers and sisters, you will be a good servant of Christ Jesus, trained in the words of the faith and of the good teaching that you have followed. ⁷Have nothing to do with irreverent, silly myths. Rather, train yourself for godliness, ⁸Physical training has some value, but godliness has value in every way, since it holds promise for both the present life and the life to come. ⁹The saying is trustworthy and deserving of full acceptance. ¹⁰For to this end we toil and strive, because we have set our hope on the living God, who is the Savior of all people, especially of those who believe. ¹¹Command and teach these things. ¹²Let no one despise you for your youth, but set the believers an example in speech, in conduct, in love, in faith, in purity. ¹³Until I come, devote yourself to the public reading of Scripture, to exhortation, and to teaching. ¹⁴Do not neglect the gift that is in you, which was given to you through prophecy with the laying on of hands by the council of elders. ¹⁵Practice these things, immerse yourself in them, so that your progress may be evident to all. ¹⁶Keep a close watch on yourself and on the teaching. Persist in this, for by doing so you will save both yourself and your hearers.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The adverb *rhētōs* ('expressly, explicitly, in so many words') indicates a clear prophetic utterance, not vague prediction. The phrase *en hysterois kairois* ('in later times') is less urgent than the 'last days' (*eschatais hēmerais*) of 2 Timothy 3:1 — it describes a future period without specifying when. The 'spirits' (*pneumasin planois*) are not human false teachers but spiritual entities whose deceptive influence produces false teaching.
2. The verb *kekautēriasmenōn* ('having been seared, having been branded') uses medical/branding imagery — their consciences have been cauterized, rendered insensitive like burned flesh. The passive voice may suggest the searing was done to them by the 'deceitful spirits' of verse 1, not merely by their own choices.
3. The two prohibitions — forbidding marriage and requiring food abstinence — reflect an asceticism that views the material world as corrupting. Paul counters with a creation-affirming theology: these things were 'created' (*ektisen*) by God 'for receiving with thanksgiving' (*eis metalēmpsin meta eucharistias*). The qualifier 'those who believe and know the truth' does not restrict enjoyment but identifies those who understand creation's goodness.
4. Paul echoes Genesis 1 where God declares each element of creation 'good' (*kalon*). The phrase *pan ktisma theou kalon* ('every creature/creation of God is good') is a direct theological rebuttal of any dualism that considers the material world evil. The qualifying condition is *eucharistia* ('thanksgiving') — gratitude sanctifies the reception of God's gifts.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The verb *hagizetai* ('is made holy, is sanctified') does not mean the food was previously unholy but that it is consecrated for use through two means: *logos theou* ('word of God' — possibly a prayer of blessing, a scriptural declaration like Genesis 1's 'it was good,' or the gospel itself) and *enteuxeōs* ('prayer, intercession'). The meal prayer sanctifies ordinary food by acknowledging God as its source.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb *entrophomenos* ('being nourished, being trained') is a passive participle — Timothy is simultaneously nourishing the church and being nourished by sound doctrine. The phrase *kalēs didaskalias* ('good teaching') contrasts with the 'teachings of demons' in verse 1. The verb *parēkolouthēkas* ('you have followed, you have closely traced') implies not just intellectual understanding but personal adherence to the teaching.
7. The adjective *graōdeis* ('old-womanish, silly') was a common ancient rhetorical dismissal — the characterization is cultural, not gender-based. The verb *gymnaze* ('train, exercise') is from the athletic gymnasium — godliness requires the same deliberate, disciplined effort as physical fitness. This sets up the comparison in verse 8.
8. Paul does not dismiss physical training (*pros oligon estin ōphelimos*, 'is of some value') but relativizes it. Godliness (*eusebeia*) surpasses it because its benefits extend beyond the present life (*tēs nyn*) into the coming life (*tēs mellousēs*). The 'promise' (*epangelian*) attaches both temporal and eternal rewards to godliness — it is not merely heavenly insurance but transforms present existence.
9. The third 'faithful saying' formula in the letter (cf. 1:15, 3:1). Whether this refers back to verse 8 or forward to verse 10 is debated. The content of verse 8 — godliness is universally profitable — fits the formula well and is the more likely referent.
10. The SBLGNT reads *agōnizometha* ('we strive, we struggle') rather than *oneidizometha* ('we suffer reproach') found in some manuscripts. The phrase *sōtēr pantōn anthrōpōn* ('Savior of all people') has been debated: some read it as affirming universal salvation, others as affirming God's universal saving intent which is actualized especially (*malista*) in believers. The word *malista* ('especially, most of all') does not negate the universal statement but qualifies it — God's saving work extends to all but is fully realized in those who believe.
11. The two imperatives — *parangelle* ('command') and *didaske* ('teach') — combine authority with instruction. Timothy is both to require obedience and to educate understanding.

12. Timothy's 'youth' (neotētos) in ancient terms likely means he was under 40 — not necessarily what moderns would call young. The antidote to age-related dismissal is not assertion of authority but exemplary character. Five areas of example are named: logos ('speech'), anastrophē ('conduct, way of life'), agapē ('love'), pistis ('faith'), and hagneia ('purity'). The SBLGNT does not include en pneumati ('in spirit'), which appears in some manuscripts.
13. The noun anagnōsei ('reading') with the definite article refers to the formal, public reading of Scripture in the assembly — a practice inherited from the synagogue (cf. Luke 4:16-21, Acts 13:15). The three activities — reading, exhortation (paraklēsei), and teaching (didaskalia) — form the core of early Christian worship. Timothy is to ensure these continue in Paul's absence.
14. The charismatos ('gift, grace-gift') is a specific endowment for ministry, given at a definable moment through two means: prophētiās ('prophecy' — inspired speech identifying Timothy's calling) and epitheseōs tōn cheirōn tou presbyteriou ('laying on of hands by the elder council'). The command mē amelei ('do not neglect') implies that spiritual gifts can atrophy without active cultivation. The 'council of elders' (presbyterion) suggests a collective commissioning body. Second Timothy 1:6 adds that Paul himself participated in this laying on of hands.
15. The verb meleta ('practice, cultivate, meditate on') implies active engagement, not passive contemplation. The phrase en toutois isthi ('be in these things, immerse yourself in them') calls for total absorption — Timothy's ministry should be his consuming focus. The noun prokopē ('progress, advancement') was a Stoic term for moral growth, here applied to visible pastoral development.
16. The dual focus — seautō ('yourself') and tē didaskalia ('the teaching') — insists that personal character and doctrinal fidelity cannot be separated. The verb epimene ('persist, continue, remain') demands sustained commitment. The promise that Timothy will 'save' (sōseis) both himself and his hearers does not mean Timothy replaces Christ as savior but that faithful ministry is the instrument through which Christ's saving work reaches people.

5

Summary: *Paul instructs Timothy on relating to different groups within the church: older and younger men and women. He then provides extensive guidance on caring for widows, distinguishing between those who qualify for church support (truly desolate, over sixty, with a record of good works) and those whose families should provide for them. Younger widows are encouraged to remarry rather than enroll on the widow list. Paul addresses the compensation and discipline of elders, warns against partiality, and offers personal health advice about wine. The chapter closes with observations about the visibility of sins and good works.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter provides the most detailed early church organizational material in the New Testament. The widow enrollment list (vv. 9-16) reveals a formal structure for benevolence that included criteria for eligibility. The instruction to give elders 'double honor' (v. 17) and the scriptural argument for compensating church workers (v. 18) represent early Christian thinking about ministerial support. The personal note about wine (v. 23) offers a rare glimpse into Timothy's health and Paul's pastoral concern for his protege.*

Translation Friction: *The restrictions on younger widows (vv. 11-15) and the language about their potential behavior ('they grow wanton,' 'learn to be idlers,' 'gossips and busybodies') reflects ancient patriarchal assumptions about women's vulnerabilities. We render the Greek faithfully and note the cultural context without sanitizing or editorializing. The command to 'drink a little wine' (v. 23) has been variously interpreted regarding total abstinence debates.*

Connections: *The care of widows connects to Acts 6:1-6, James 1:27. The 'laborer deserves his wages' saying (v. 18) quotes Deuteronomy 25:4 and Luke 10:7 (or a common tradition). The requirement for two or three witnesses (v. 19) follows Deuteronomy 19:15. The laying on of hands (v. 22) connects to 4:14 and 2 Timothy 1:6.*

¹Do not rebuke an older man harshly, but appeal to him as a father, to younger men as brothers, ²Treat older women as mothers, and younger women as sisters, with complete purity. ³Honor widows who are truly widows. ⁴But if a widow has children or grandchildren, let them first learn to show godliness to their own household and to make some repayment to their parents, for this is pleasing in the sight of God. ⁵She who is truly a widow, left all alone, has set her hope on God and continues in supplications and prayers night and day, ⁶However, she that liveth in pleasure is dead while she liveth. ⁷Command these things as well, so that they may be above reproach. ⁸But if anyone does not provide for his own relatives, and especially for members of his household, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever. ⁹Let a widow be enrolled if she is not less than sixty years old, having been the wife of one husband, ¹⁰Well reported of for righteous deeds. If she

possess carried up offspring, if she have lodged strangers, if she have washed the saints' feet, if she have relieved the afflicted, if she have diligently followed every good work. ¹¹But refuse to enroll younger widows, for when their desires draw them away from Christ, they want to marry, ¹²They bring judgment on themselves because they have broken their original commitment. ¹³Besides that, they also learn to be idle, going from house to house, and not only idle but also gossips and busybodies, saying things they should not. ¹⁴So I would have younger widows marry, bear children, manage their households, and give the adversary no occasion for slander. ¹⁵For some have already strayed after Satan. ¹⁶If any believing woman has relatives who are widows, let her care for them. Let the church not be burdened, so that it may care for those who are truly widows. ¹⁷Let the elders who lead well be considered worthy of double honor, especially those who labor in preaching and teaching. ¹⁸For the Scripture says, "You shall not muzzle an ox while it treads out the grain," and, "The laborer deserves his wages." ¹⁹Do not accept an accusation against an elder except on the evidence of two or three witnesses. ²⁰As for those who persist in sin, rebuke them in the presence of all, so that the rest may stand in fear. ²¹In the presence of God and of Christ Jesus and of the elect angels, I charge you to keep these rules without prejudging, doing nothing out of partiality. ²²Do not be hasty in the laying on of hands, and do not share in the sins of others. Keep yourself pure. ²³No longer drink only water, but use a little wine for the sake of your stomach and your frequent ailments. ²⁴The sins of some people are conspicuous, going ahead of them to judgment, but the sins of others only follow later. ²⁵So also good works are conspicuous, and even those that are not cannot remain hidden.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The noun *presbyterō* here likely means 'older man' rather than the office of 'elder' (that topic begins at v. 17). The verb *epiplēxēs* ('rebuke sharply, strike at') is strong — Timothy should correct with family-appropriate respect, not public confrontation. The church is envisioned as a family with generational dynamics.
2. The addition of *en pasē hagneia* ('in all purity') specifically in reference to younger women is practical: a young pastor relating to younger women must maintain absolute propriety. The four-part schema (older men, younger men, older women, younger women) covers the entire congregation through family metaphors.
3. The verb *tima* ('honor') likely includes both respect and material support — 'honor' in this context has financial implications (cf. v. 17 where 'double honor' clearly includes payment). The phrase *ontōs chēras* ('truly widows, widows indeed') establishes a category: not all women who have lost husbands qualify for church support.
4. The verb *manthanetōsan* ('let them learn') — the subject is the children or grandchildren, not the widow. Family responsibility takes priority over church benevolence. The noun *amoibas* ('repayments, returns') frames the care of parents as reciprocal — children are repaying what they received. The KJV's 'nephews' reflects 17th-century English meaning 'grandchildren' (*ekgona*).
5. The qualifying portrait: a 'true widow' is *memonōmenē* ('left alone, isolated') with no family support, *ēlpiken epi theon* ('has set her hope on God' — perfect tense indicating settled trust), and devotes herself to continual prayer. This describes both her need (desolate) and her character (devoted).
6. The verb *spatalōsa* ('living in self-indulgence, living for pleasure') describes a widow who uses her status to pursue luxury rather than godliness. The paradox *zōsa tethnēken* ('living, she has died') is a spiritual death that coexists with physical life — a sharp rebuke that distinguishes genuine need from entitlement.
7. The adjective *anepilēmptoi* ('above reproach, not open to accusation') applies to both the widows and the families — the entire system of care must be conducted blamelessly.
8. The harshness of Paul's verdict — 'worse than an unbeliever' (*apistou cheirōn*) — underscores the seriousness of family responsibility. Even pagans care for their own; a Christian who fails to do so has contradicted the faith at its most basic level. The verb *ērñētai* ('has denied') is the same word used for denying Christ (2 Timothy 2:12).
9. The verb *katalegestho* ('let her be enrolled, let her be put on the list') indicates a formal register — the 'widow list' was an official church institution. The age requirement of sixty and the phrase *henos andros gynē* ('a one-man woman' — the feminine parallel to the overseer requirement in 3:2) establish formal criteria. This is not merely charity but an organized role.
10. Five examples of 'good works' illustrate the character required: child-rearing (*eteknotropēsen*), hospitality (*exenodochēsen*), foot-washing (*hagiōn podas enipsen* — indicating both humility and practical service), caring for the afflicted (*thlibomenois epērkesen*), and general devotion to good works. Foot-washing was a menial task usually performed by slaves or the lowest-ranking household member (cf. John 13:1-17).
11. The verb *katastrēniasōsin* ('to grow wanton against, to be drawn away by desire against') is rare and implies sensual desire that conflicts with a commitment — in this case, the enrollment may have involved a pledge of dedication to the church. The concern is not that remarriage itself is sinful (v. 14 encourages it) but that breaking a formal commitment constitutes unfaithfulness.

12. The noun *krima* ('judgment, condemnation') and the phrase *tēn prōtēn pistin* ('the first faith/pledge') are debated: *pistin* could mean 'faith' (they have abandoned their Christian faith) or 'pledge' (they have broken their enrollment vow). The enrollment context favors 'pledge' — they made a commitment they are now breaking. The KJV's 'damnation' is too strong for *krima*, which can mean 'censure' or 'adverse judgment.'
13. The verb *periechomenai* ('going around, visiting') describes house-to-house movement that becomes an occasion for *phylaroi* ('gossips, chatterers') and *periergoi* ('busybodies, meddlers' — the same word root as in 2 Thessalonians 3:11). The 'things they should not say' (*ta mē deonta*) may include spreading false teaching, which ties this passage to the broader concern about heterodox influence.
14. Paul's preference (*boulomai*, 'I want, I desire') for younger widows to remarry is not a prohibition of celibacy but practical pastoral counsel in context. The verb *oikodespotein* ('to manage a household, to be master of a house') assigns significant domestic authority to women. The 'adversary' (*tō antikeimenō*) could be Satan, human opponents of the church, or both.
15. The verb *exetrapēsan* ('have turned aside, have strayed') recurs from 1:6 — the same word for the false teachers. Paul implies that some younger widows have already followed the path he warns about, making this not hypothetical but pastoral response to actual situations.
16. The SBLGNT reads *pistē* ('believing woman') rather than *pistos ē pistē* ('believing man or woman') found in some manuscripts. The economic logic is clear: private family support frees the church's limited resources for those who have no other support. The verb *eparkeitō* ('let her care for, let her assist') is the same used for the enrolled widow's good works in verse 10.
17. The noun *presbyteroi* now clearly refers to the office of elder (not merely older men as in v. 1). The 'double honor' (*diplēs timēs*) likely includes both respect and financial remuneration — verse 18 confirms the financial dimension. The phrase *malista hoi kopiōntes en logō kai didaskalia* ('especially those laboring in preaching and teaching') distinguishes a subset of elders whose primary ministry is verbal — suggesting that not all elders preached or taught.
18. Two quotations support financial compensation for elders: Deuteronomy 25:4 (the working ox must be fed) and a saying attributed to Jesus in Luke 10:7 (the laborer deserves wages). The remarkable fact is that Paul introduces both with the formula *legei hē graphē* ('the Scripture says'), placing a saying of Jesus on equal authority with Old Testament Scripture — one of the earliest indications of written gospel traditions being treated as authoritative.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 25:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The protection of elders from false accusations follows the Mosaic requirement of multiple witnesses (Deuteronomy 19:15, which Jesus also cited in Matthew 18:16). The higher standard protects leaders from manipulation while still allowing legitimate charges. The verb *paradechou* ('accept, receive, entertain') means not that accusations cannot be heard but that they should not be acted upon without corroboration.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 19:15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The present participle *hamartanontas* ('those sinning, those who persist in sin') indicates ongoing sin, not a single lapse. Public rebuke follows the failure of private processes (v. 19). The phrase *enōpion pantōn* ('in the presence of all') makes the correction communal — the entire congregation witnesses it. The purpose is deterrent: *hina kai hoi loipoi phobon echōsin* ('so that the rest may fear').
21. The solemn adjuration — invoking God, Christ, and the elect angels as witnesses — gives this charge the gravity of a courtroom oath. The warnings against *prokrimatos* ('prejudging, prejudice') and *prosklisin* ('partiality, favoritism') address the two great temptations of church discipline: deciding before hearing evidence and playing favorites. The 'elect angels' (*eklektōn angelōn*) are the holy angels who serve as witnesses of human conduct.
22. The 'laying on of hands' (*cheiras epititheis*) likely refers to ordination (cf. 4:14) rather than restoration of the fallen, though both interpretations have support. The warning against haste means: do not ordain without adequate evaluation (cf. 3:10). 'Sharing in others' sins' (*koinōnei hamartiais allotriais*) means that premature ordination of an unqualified person makes the ordainer complicit in the subsequent failures.
23. This personal aside reveals that Timothy had been drinking only water (*mēketi hydropōtei* — 'no longer be a water-drinker'), possibly as an ascetic practice or to avoid any appearance of impropriety. Paul overrides this with practical medical advice: *oinō oligō* ('a little wine') as a digestive aid. In the ancient world, wine was commonly used medicinally and was often safer than water. The verse interrupts the flow of instructions, suggesting it was a parenthetical pastoral concern.
24. Paul returns to the theme of evaluating people for leadership. The point is practical: some people's disqualifying sins are immediately visible (*prodēloi*, 'evident, conspicuous'), while others' sins are hidden and only emerge later (*epakolouthousin*, 'follow after'). This is why hasty ordination is dangerous (v. 22) — time reveals what is hidden.
25. The parallel is encouraging: just as hidden sins eventually surface (v. 24), hidden good works will also become visible. The phrase *krybēnai ou dynantai* ('cannot remain hidden') assures Timothy that genuine godliness, even when unrecognized initially, will eventually be revealed. This gives both warning and encouragement for the evaluation process.

6

Summary: *Paul instructs enslaved people to honor their masters so that God's name is not blasphemed, and specifically addresses those with believing masters. He then returns to the problem of false teachers who use godliness as a means of financial gain, contrasting their mindset with the principle that godliness with contentment is great gain. The famous warning about the love of money follows: those who desire to be rich fall into temptation and a snare. Paul charges Timothy to flee these things and pursue righteousness, godliness, faith, love, endurance, and gentleness. The letter closes with a magnificent doxology to God as 'the blessed and only Sovereign, the King of kings and Lord of lords, who alone has immortality.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The statement 'the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil' (v. 10) is one of the most frequently quoted and misquoted verses in the Bible — Paul says love of money, not money itself. The closing doxology (vv. 15-16) is among the most exalted descriptions of God in the New Testament, drawing on Jewish liturgical traditions about God's transcendence. The 'good confession' Timothy is charged to maintain (v. 12) connects to Jesus's testimony before Pontius Pilate (v. 13), linking Timothy's pastoral courage to Christ's ultimate witness.*

Translation Friction: *The instructions to enslaved people (vv. 1-2) must be read in the context of ancient slavery, which was pervasive and varied in form. Paul does not endorse slavery but addresses the reality of enslaved believers within existing social structures. The 'deposit' (parathēkē, v. 20) that Timothy must guard has been interpreted as the body of apostolic teaching, anticipating 2 Timothy 1:12, 14.*

Connections: *The slavery instructions parallel Ephesians 6:5-9, Colossians 3:22-4:1, Titus 2:9-10, and Philemon. The love-of-money warning echoes Ecclesiastes 5:10 and Jesus's teaching in Matthew 6:19-24. The 'good confession' connects to Matthew 27:11 and John 18:36-37. The doxology echoes Deuteronomy 10:17, Daniel 2:47, and Revelation 17:14, 19:16.*

¹Let all who are under the yoke as slaves regard their own masters as worthy of all honor, so that the name of God and the teaching may not be blasphemed. ²Those who have believing masters must not be disrespectful on the ground that they are brothers; rather, they must serve all the more, since those who benefit from their good service are believers and beloved. Teach and urge these things. ³If anyone teaches a different doctrine and does not agree with the sound words of our Lord Jesus Christ and the teaching that accords with godliness, ⁴Indeed, he is proud, knowing nothing, but doting concerning questions and strifes of words, whereof comes envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings,. ⁵and constant friction between people whose minds are corrupted and who have lost hold of the truth. They think that godliness is a way to make money. Stay away from them. ⁶But godliness with contentment is remarkable gain. ⁷Indeed, since we brought nothing into this world, and it is certain we can carry nothing out. ⁸But if we have food and clothing, with these we will be content. ⁹But those who desire to be rich fall into temptation, into a snare, into many senseless and harmful desires that plunge people into ruin and destruction. ¹⁰For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. It is through this craving that some have wandered away from the faith and pierced themselves with many sorrows. ¹¹But as for you, O man of God, flee these things. Pursue righteousness, godliness, faith, love, endurance, gentleness. ¹²Fight the good fight of the faith. Take hold of the eternal life to which you were called and about which you made the good confession in the presence of many witnesses. ¹³I charge you in the presence of God, who gives life to all things, and of Christ Jesus, who in his testimony before Pontius Pilate made the good confession, ¹⁴That you keep this commandment apart from spot, unrebukeable, until the appearing of our Lord Jesus Christ. ¹⁵At the proper time, God will reveal Christ — God, the blessed and only Ruler, the King of kings and Lord of lords. ¹⁶Indeed, who only has immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach to. Whom no man has seen, nor can see — to whom be honour and authority everlasting. Amen. ¹⁷As for the rich in this present age, charge them not to be haughty or to set their hopes on the uncertainty of riches, but on God, who richly provides us with everything to enjoy. ¹⁸They are to do good, to be rich in good works, to be generous and ready to share, ¹⁹Indeed, laying up in store for themselves a good foundation opposed to the time to come, that they may lay hold on eternal life. ²⁰O Timothy, guard the deposit entrusted to

you. Avoid the irreverent babble and contradictions of what is falsely called 'knowledge,' ²¹Indeed, which some professing have erred concerning the faith. Grace remain with you. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *hypo zygon douloi* ('slaves under the yoke') acknowledges the burden of slavery without endorsing it. The motivation for honorable conduct is the reputation of God — *hina mē to onoma tou theou kai hē didaskalia blasphemētai* ('so that God's name and the teaching may not be blasphemed'). Disobedient Christian slaves would give outsiders reason to malign both God and the gospel.
2. A specific problem: some enslaved Christians with Christian masters were using their shared faith as grounds for insubordination — 'we are brothers, so why should I serve you?' Paul argues the opposite: shared faith should increase rather than decrease the quality of service. The phrase *hoi tēs euergeias antilambanomenoi* ('those who receive the benefit') likely refers to the masters benefiting from the slaves' service, though it could also mean both parties benefit from the relationship. The tension between spiritual equality and social hierarchy was a real challenge for early Christian communities.
3. The verb *heterodidaskalei* ('teaches differently') returns from 1:3, forming an *inclusio* for the letter's central concern. 'Sound words' (*hygiainousin logois*, 'healthy words') uses the medical metaphor characteristic of the Pastoral Epistles. The phrase *tois tou kyriou hēmōn Iēsou Christou* ('those of our Lord Jesus Christ') may refer to Jesus's own teachings or to the apostolic tradition about Christ.
4. The verb *tetyphōtai* ('is puffed up, is clouded with conceit') recurs from 3:6. The verb *nosōn* ('being sick, having an unhealthy craving') extends the medical metaphor — while sound teaching is 'healthy,' the false teacher is diseased, craving (*nosōn*) controversies (*zētēseis*) and word-fights (*logomachias*). The five fruit of false teaching — envy (*phthonos*), dissension (*eris*), slander (*blasphēmiai*), evil suspicions (*hyponoiai ponērai*), and the constant friction of verse 5 — describe a community being destroyed from within.
5. The noun *diaparatribai* ('constant friction, mutual irritation') occurs only here in the New Testament. The false teachers' fundamental corruption is described at three levels: corrupted minds (*diephtharmenōn ton noun*), deprived of truth (*apesterēmenōn tēs alētheias*), and mercenary motivation (*nomizontōn porismon einai tēn eusebeian* — 'thinking godliness is a means of profit'). The mercenary motive is the climactic accusation.
6. Paul redefines 'gain' (*porisimos*): true profit is not financial enrichment through religion but *eusebeia meta autarkeias* ('godliness with contentment'). The noun *autarkeia* ('contentment, self-sufficiency') was a key Stoic virtue meaning independence from external circumstances (cf. Philippians 4:11-12). Paul Christianizes it: contentment comes not from self-mastery but from trust in God's provision.
7. This proverbial wisdom echoes Job 1:21 ('Naked I came from my mother's womb, and naked I shall return') and Ecclesiastes 5:15. The logic is simple: material wealth has no eternal portability. The textual variant *hoti* ('because') or *dēlon hoti* ('it is clear that') does not affect the meaning significantly.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Job 1:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ecclesiastes 5:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The two essentials — *diatrophas* ('food, sustenance') and *skepasata* ('coverings' — which could include clothing and shelter) — define the baseline for contentment. The verb *arkesthēsometha* ('we will be content, we will be satisfied') is a future of resolution — 'we will consider these sufficient.' This is not asceticism but a rejection of acquisitiveness.
9. Paul targets not wealth itself but *boulomenoi ploutein* ('those who desire to be rich') — the craving for wealth. The sequence is a downward spiral: temptation (*peirasmon*), snare (*pagida*), many foolish and harmful desires (*epithymias pollas anoētous kai blaberas*), and finally ruin (*olethron*) and destruction (*apōleian*). The verb *bythizousin* ('plunge, drown') is nautical — those pursuing wealth are pulled under like a sinking ship.
10. The Greek *rhiza pantōn tōn kakōn* ('a root of all evils') lacks the definite article before *rhiza*, so 'a root' is more accurate than the KJV's 'the root.' The noun *philargyria* ('love of money, avarice') is the specific vice — not money itself but the love of it. The verb *perieperian* ('pierced through') is violent imagery — they have impaled themselves on their own desires, and the result is *odynais pollais* ('many sorrows, many pains'). The wandering (*apeplanēthesan*) from faith completes the pattern: doctrinal error, moral compromise, and financial corruption are interconnected.
11. The address *anthrōpe theou* ('man of God') is an Old Testament title for prophets (1 Samuel 9:6, 1 Kings 17:18, 2 Kings 1:9) — Paul identifies Timothy with the prophetic tradition. The six virtues to 'pursue' (*diōke*) are: righteousness (*dikaiosynēn*), godliness (*eusebeian*), faith (*pistin*), love (*agapēn*), endurance (*hypomonēn*), and gentleness (*praypathian*). The pattern is twofold: flee (*pheuge*) the dangers and pursue (*diōke*) the virtues — the Christian life involves active movement in both directions.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Samuel 9:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 17:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 1:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

12. The verb *agōnizōu* ('fight, compete, struggle') is athletic/military — the same word family used throughout both letters to Timothy. The noun *agōna* ('fight, contest, struggle') is the struggle itself. The 'good confession' (*kalēn homologian*) likely refers to Timothy's baptismal confession or ordination vow, made publicly (*enōpion pollōn martyron*, 'before many witnesses'). 'Take hold of' (*epilabou*) the eternal life suggests grasping what has already been given — eternal life is both present possession and future hope.
13. God is described as *zōgonountos ta panta* ('giving life to all things') — a title that grounds the charge in God's sovereign power over life. Christ's 'good confession' before Pilate (*martyrēsantos epi Pontiou Pilatou*) parallels Timothy's confession in verse 12 — Timothy's courage is modeled on Christ's courage. This is one of the few places in the Epistles that names Pontius Pilate, rooting the gospel in historical specificity.
14. The 'commandment' (*entolēn*) refers to the entire charge entrusted to Timothy — his apostolic commission. The adjectives *aspilon* ('unstained, spotless') and *anepilēmpton* ('above reproach') apply to Timothy's faithfulness in keeping it. The time horizon is *mechri tēs epiphaneias* ('until the appearing') of Christ — Timothy's duty extends to the parousia.
15. The doxology begins. God is described as *makarios* ('blessed, supremely happy'), *monos dynastēs* ('only Sovereign, sole Ruler'), *basileus tōn basileuontōn* ('King of those who reign'), and *kyrios tōn kyrieuontōn* ('Lord of those who exercise lordship'). These titles directly challenge imperial claims — in a Roman world where Caesar claimed supreme sovereignty, Paul declares that only God holds true power. The phrase *kairois idiois* ('at the proper time') places the timing of Christ's return under God's sovereign control.
16. Three divine attributes complete the doxology: *athanasian* ('immortality' — God alone inherently possesses deathlessness; all other immortality is derivative and gifted), *phōs aprositon* ('unapproachable light' — God's essential nature is so radiant that no creature can draw near), and invisibility (*hon eiden oudeis anthrōpōn* — 'whom no human has seen or is able to see,' echoing Exodus 33:20). The doxology closes with *timē kai kratos aiōnion* ('honor and eternal dominion') and the solemn *Amēn*.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 33:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. After the doxology about God's transcendence, Paul returns to practical instruction for wealthy believers. Two prohibitions: *mē hypselophronein* ('not to be arrogant') and *mēde ēlpikenai epi ploutou adēlotēti* ('not to have set their hope on the uncertainty of wealth'). The positive alternative — hope in God who provides *plousios* ('richly') *eis apolausin* ('for enjoyment') — is remarkable: God is not stingy but generous, and his gifts are meant to be enjoyed, not hoarded.
18. The verb *agathoergein* ('to do good') and the phrase *ploutein en ergois kalois* ('to be rich in good works') redefine 'wealth' — true riches are generosity, not accumulation. The adjectives *eumetadotous* ('generous, ready to give') and *koinōnikous* ('ready to share, sociable in giving') describe open-handed living. The progression from 'do good' to 'be rich in good works' to 'generous' to 'ready to share' intensifies the call to active generosity.
19. The verb *apothēsaurizontas* ('storing up treasure') echoes Jesus's teaching in Matthew 6:19-20 — generosity in the present stores treasure for the future. The phrase *tēs ontōs zōēs* ('the real life, the life that is truly life') distinguishes genuine life from mere existence — what passes for life among the wealthy may not be life at all. The verb *epilabōntai* ('take hold of') echoes verse 12, creating a thematic ring around the closing section.
20. The noun *parathēkēn* ('deposit, what has been entrusted') is a banking term for something placed in trust for safekeeping. Timothy must protect the body of apostolic teaching — not innovate upon it or allow it to be corrupted. The 'falsely called knowledge' (*pseudōnymou gnōseōs*) may anticipate the later Gnostic movement or refer to proto-Gnostic claims already present. The word *gnōsis* ('knowledge') with the prefix *pseudo-* ('false') brands the opponents' intellectual claims as counterfeit.
21. The verb *ēstochēsān* ('have missed the mark, have swerved') returns from 1:6, forming a final inclusio. Those who claimed superior 'knowledge' actually missed the target of faith. The closing 'Grace be with you' (*hē charis meth' hymōn*) uses the plural *hymōn* ('you all'), suggesting the letter was intended for the wider community, not Timothy alone. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen.'

2 Timothy

1

Summary: *Paul writes to Timothy from prison, expressing longing to see him and recalling Timothy's sincere faith, which first lived in his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice. He urges Timothy to fan into flame the gift of God, reminding him that God gave a spirit not of fear but of power, love, and self-discipline. Paul calls Timothy not to be ashamed of the testimony about the Lord or of Paul as his prisoner, but to share in suffering for the gospel by the power of God, who saved us and called us according to his own purpose and grace given in Christ Jesus before the ages began. This grace has now been manifested through the appearing of Christ Jesus, who abolished death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This letter is widely considered Paul's last — written from a Roman prison as he anticipates death (cf. 4:6-8). The emotional texture is unique in the Pauline corpus: deeply personal, retrospective, and urgent. The reference to Timothy's grandmother and mother (v. 5) is the only place in the New Testament where a believer's spiritual heritage is traced through female family members. The christological statement in verses 9-10 is one of Paul's most compact summaries of the gospel: pre-temporal grace, historical appearing, and the abolition of death.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'before the ages began' (pro chronōn aiōniōn, v. 9) describes God's purpose in eternity past — we render without imposing specific predestination frameworks. The reference to Paul's 'deposit' (parathēkē, vv. 12, 14) echoes 1 Timothy 6:20 and raises questions about the relationship between divine preservation and human guarding of the gospel.*

Connections: *Timothy's family faith connects to Acts 16:1. The 'fan into flame' metaphor for spiritual gifts connects to 1 Thessalonians 5:19 ('do not quench the Spirit'). The gospel summary in vv. 9-10 parallels Titus 1:2-3 and 3:4-7. Onesiphorus's loyalty (vv. 16-18) contrasts with the Asian believers' desertion (v. 15).*

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God according to the promise of the life that is in Christ Jesus, ²From god the father and christ jesus our lord, to Timothy, my dearly dear son — Grace, mercy, and peace. ³I am grateful to God, whom I serve with a clear conscience as my ancestors did, when I remember you constantly in my prayers night and day. ⁴As I remember your tears, I long to see you, that I may be filled with joy. ⁵I am reminded of your sincere faith, a faith that lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and now, I am persuaded, lives in you as well. ⁶For this reason I remind you to fan into flame the gift of God, which is in you through the laying on of my hands. ⁷Because God has not given

us the spirit of fear. But of authority, and of love, and of a sound mind. ⁸Therefore do not be ashamed of the testimony about our Lord, nor of me his prisoner, but share in suffering for the gospel by the power of God, ⁹Who has saved us, and known as us with an holy calling, not in keeping with to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began,. ¹⁰However, is now made manifest by the appearing of our Saviour Jesus Christ, who has abolished death, and has brought life and immortality to light by way of the gospel:. ¹¹For which purpose I am appointed as a herald, and an emissary, and an instructor to the non-Jewish peoples. ¹²For the which cause I also suffer these things — nevertheless I am not ashamed: for I know whom I have believed, and am persuaded that he is able to keep that which I have committed to him against that day. ¹³Follow the pattern of the sound words that you have heard from me, in the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus. ¹⁴Guard the good deposit entrusted to you by the Holy Spirit who dwells in us. ¹⁵You are aware that all who are in Asia turned away from me, among whom are Phygelus and Hermogenes. ¹⁶May the Lord grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, for he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chains. ¹⁷Instead, when he arrived in Rome, he searched for me earnestly and found me — ¹⁸Indeed, the Lord grant to him that he may find mercy of the Lord in that day — and in how numerous things he ministered to me at Ephesus, you knowest very well.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul's apostleship is grounded in *dia thelēmatos theou* ('by the will of God') — divine calling, not personal ambition. The prepositional phrase *kat' epangelian zōēs* ('according to the promise of life') defines his apostolic mission: he proclaims the life promised in Christ Jesus. This opening sets the letter's dominant theme: life in Christ versus the death Paul faces.
2. The adjective *agapētō* ('beloved') replaces *gnēsio* ('true, genuine') from 1 Timothy 1:2, reflecting the deeper emotional register of this final letter. The threefold greeting — *charis, eleos, eirēnē* ('grace, mercy, peace') — matches 1 Timothy's greeting.
3. Paul connects his service to God with his ancestral faith (*apo progenōn*, 'from ancestors') — his Christian faith is the fulfillment of Jewish faith, not a departure from it. The 'clear conscience' (*kathara syneidēsei*) assures Timothy that Paul's imprisonment is unjust, not the result of wrongdoing. The constant remembrance (*adialeipton... mnēian*) echoes 1 Thessalonians 1:2-3.
4. Timothy's tears (*dakryōn*) may refer to their last parting — a detail that reveals the depth of their relationship. The verb *epipothōn* ('longing, yearning') expresses intense desire. Paul's joy would be 'filled' (*plērōthō*) — made complete — by seeing Timothy again. From prison, facing death, Paul's greatest desire is personal reunion.
5. The adjective *anypokritos* ('sincere, unhypocritical, genuine') describes faith without pretense (cf. 1 Timothy 1:5). Paul traces this faith through three generations of women: grandmother (*mammē*) Lois and mother Eunice. This is the only New Testament passage that names a believer's grandmother in the context of faith transmission. Timothy's father was Greek (Acts 16:1), making his maternal line the source of his Jewish-Christian faith. The verb *enōkēsen* ('dwelt in, took up residence in') personifies faith as a living presence that inhabits successive generations.
6. The verb *anazōpyrein* ('to fan into flame, to rekindle') implies the gift is a fire that may have diminished — not extinguished but needing renewed attention. First Timothy 4:14 mentions the laying on of hands by the council of elders; here Paul mentions his own hands (*tōn cheirōn mou*) — both likely occurred at the same commissioning event. The gift (*charisma*) is specific to Timothy's calling and requires active cultivation.
7. The noun *deilias* ('cowardice, timidity, fear') is the only occurrence in the New Testament. Paul addresses what may be Timothy's temperamental tendency toward timidity. The three replacements for fear are: *dynamis* ('power' — the capacity to act), *agapē* ('love' — the motivation to act), and *sōphronismos* ('self-discipline, sound judgment' — the wisdom to act well). This triad equips Timothy for courageous ministry.
8. Two potential sources of shame: the testimony (martyrion) about Christ and Paul himself as a prisoner (desmion). In Roman culture, association with a convicted prisoner brought social stigma. The compound verb *synkakopathēson* ('share in suffering, join in hardship') calls Timothy to voluntary participation in the cost of the gospel. The enabling power for this is not Timothy's courage but *dynamis theou* ('the power of God').
9. This verse contains a compact gospel summary. Two divine actions — 'saved' (*sōsantos*) and 'called' (*kalesantos*) — are grounded not in human works (*ou kata ta erga hēmōn*) but in God's own 'purpose and grace' (*idian prothesin kai charin*). The stunning claim: this grace was given (*dotheisan*) in Christ Jesus *pro chronōn aiōniōn* ('before eternal ages, before time began'). God's saving purpose preceded creation itself.
10. The pre-temporal grace (v. 9) has been *phanerōtheisan* ('manifested, made visible') through Christ's *epiphaneia* ('appearing' — his incarnation and ministry). Two achievements of Christ are stated: *katargēsantos ton thanaton* ('having abolished/rendered powerless death') and *phōtisantos zōēn kai aphtharsian* ('having brought to light life and immortality'). The verb *katargeō* means not that death no longer occurs but that its power and finality have been broken. Light imagery pervades: death is darkness; life and imperishability (*aphtharsia*) are illuminated through the gospel.
11. The three roles mirror 1 Timothy 2:7 but without 'of the Gentiles' and without the oath formula. Paul's imprisonment is the direct result of his appointment — he suffers because of what he was commissioned to proclaim.

12. Paul's personal confession: *ouk epaischynomai* ('I am not ashamed') answers the call of verse 8. The ground of his confidence is relational — *oida gar hō pepisteuka* ('I know whom I have believed') — not abstract theology but personal trust in a known Person. The 'deposit' (*parathēkēn mou*) could mean 'what I have entrusted to him' (my life, my ministry) or 'what he has entrusted to me' (the gospel). Both readings are theologically rich. 'That day' (*ekeinēn tēn hēmeran*) is the day of Christ's return and final judgment.
13. The noun *hypotypōsin* ('pattern, model, outline') appeared in 1 Timothy 1:16 for Paul as a 'pattern' of conversion. Here it refers to the pattern of sound teaching — Timothy must not merely remember the content but maintain the form (the healthy framework) of apostolic doctrine. The qualifying phrase *en pistei kai agapē* ('in faith and love') means the pattern must be held with the right disposition, not merely intellectual adherence.
14. The 'good deposit' (*kalēn parathēkēn*) is the apostolic gospel and teaching. The means of guarding it is *dia pneumatōs hagiou* ('by the Holy Spirit') — human effort alone cannot preserve divine truth. The participle *enoikountos* ('dwelling in') describes the Spirit's permanent residence in believers, providing ongoing empowerment for the task.
15. The verb *apestraphēsan* ('turned away from') indicates abandonment — when Paul needed support, his Asian associates deserted him. 'All' (*pantes*) is likely hyperbolic but indicates widespread desertion. Phygelus and Hermogenes are named as representative defectors — they appear nowhere else in the New Testament. This personal pain sets up the contrast with Onesiphorus in the next verses.
16. Onesiphorus's name means 'profit-bearer' — fitting for one who brought refreshment (*anepsyxen*, 'cooled, refreshed' — the opposite of the 'rekindling' metaphor in v. 6). His loyalty is highlighted by what it cost: *ouk epaischynthē* ('was not ashamed') of Paul's chains (*halysin*). The prayer is directed to 'the household' (*oikō*) of Onesiphorus, which some interpreters take as evidence that Onesiphorus himself had died, though this is uncertain.
17. The adverb *spoudaiōs* ('earnestly, diligently') and the verb *ezētēsen* ('sought, searched for') indicate that finding Paul in Rome was not easy. Prisoners were not always easily located in the Roman system. Onesiphorus's persistence contrasts sharply with those who turned away (v. 15).
18. The prayer 'may the Lord grant him to find mercy from the Lord' (*dōē autō ho kyrios heurein eleos para kyriou*) uses 'Lord' twice — possibly distinguishing God the Father and Christ, or using 'Lord' for both as the source and the mediator of mercy. 'That day' (*ekeinē tē hēmera*) is the same day of judgment referenced in verse 12. Onesiphorus's service in Ephesus, well known to Timothy (*beltion sy ginōskeis*, 'you know better than I'), preceded his courageous service in Rome.

2

Summary: *Paul calls Timothy to endurance in ministry through a series of vivid metaphors: a soldier, an athlete, and a farmer — each illustrating single-minded devotion and the promise of reward. Paul grounds his exhortation in the faithfulness of Christ, offering a creedal fragment ('if we died with him, we will also live with him'). He warns against quarrelsome, divisive teaching — specifically naming Hymenaeus and Philetus, who claim the resurrection has already occurred — and contrasts it with the quiet competence of a worker rightly handling the word of truth. The chapter closes with instructions on gentleness toward opponents, in hope that God may grant them repentance.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'faithful saying' in verses 11-13 is likely an early Christian hymn or confession, exhibiting parallelism and conditional logic: faithfulness yields co-reign, denial yields denial, yet human faithlessness cannot override divine faithfulness ('he cannot deny himself'). The metaphor of a 'large house' containing vessels of honor and dishonor (vv. 20-21) draws on the Pauline body imagery but applies it to the church's mixed composition. The phrase 'rightly handling the word of truth' (*orthotomeo*, v. 15) literally means 'cutting straight' — a metaphor from road-building or tentmaking.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'faithful saying' (*pistos ho logos*) is debated — does it begin at verse 11 or earlier? We take verses 11b-13 as the quoted material. Hymenaeus appears also in 1 Timothy 1:20; whether this is the same person is assumed but uncertain. The 'resurrection has already happened' teaching (v. 18) likely reflects an over-realized eschatology that spiritualized the resurrection, a recurring problem in early churches.*

Connections: *The soldier/athlete/farmer triad connects to 1 Corinthians 9:7, 24-27 and the broader Pauline theme of disciplined endurance. The 'faithful saying' formula appears five times in the Pastoral Epistles (1 Tim 1:15, 3:1, 4:9; 2 Tim 2:11; Titus 3:8). The large-house metaphor recalls Romans 9:21 (potter and vessels). The call to gentleness toward opponents anticipates the warnings of chapter 3.*

¹You therefore, my child, be strengthened by the grace that is in Christ Jesus. ²And what you have heard from me in the presence of many witnesses, entrust to faithful people who will be able to teach others as well. ³Share in suffering as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. ⁴No soldier on active duty gets entangled in civilian affairs, since his aim is to please the one who enlisted him. ⁵Likewise, if anyone competes as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes according to the rules. ⁶The hardworking farmer ought to be the first to receive a share of the crops. ⁷Think over what I say, for the Lord will give you understanding in everything. ⁸Remember Jesus Christ, risen from the dead, descended from David — this is my gospel, ⁹Wherein I suffer trouble, as an evil doer, even to bonds. But the message of God is not bound. ¹⁰Therefore I endure everything for the sake of the elect, so that they also may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory. ¹¹This saying is trustworthy: If we died with him, we will also live with him; ¹²Indeed, if we suffer, we will also reign with him — if we deny him, he also will deny us: ¹³If we trust not, yet he remains faithful — he cannot deny himself. ¹⁴Remind them of these things, charging them before God not to quarrel about words, which does no good but ruins the hearers. ¹⁵Make every effort to present yourself to God as one approved, a worker who has no need to be ashamed, rightly handling the word of truth. ¹⁶But avoid irreverent, empty talk, for it will lead people into more and more ungodliness, ¹⁷Their word will eat as does a canker — of whom is Hymenaeus and Philetus; ¹⁸Indeed, who concerning the truth have erred and stated that the resurrection is past already. And overthrow the faith of some. ¹⁹But God's firm foundation stands, bearing this inscription: "The Lord knows those who are his," and, "Let everyone who names the name of the Lord depart from unrighteousness." ²⁰Now in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and silver but also of wood and clay, some for honorable use and some for dishonorable. ²¹Therefore, if anyone cleanses himself from what is dishonorable, he will be a vessel for honorable use, set apart, useful to the master of the house, ready for every good work. ²²So flee youthful passions and pursue righteousness, faith, love, and peace, along with those who call on the Lord from a pure heart. ²³Have nothing to do with foolish, ignorant controversies; you know that they breed quarrels. ²⁴And the Lord's servant must not be quarrelsome but kind to everyone, able to teach, patiently enduring evil, ²⁵In meekness instructing those that oppose themselves. If God perhaps will provide them repentance to the acknowledging of the truth. ²⁶so that they may come to their senses and escape the trap of the devil, who has taken them captive to do his will.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *endynamou* ('be strengthened') is a present passive imperative — Timothy is not told to muster his own strength but to be empowered by grace. The address *teknon* ('child') expresses Paul's paternal relationship to Timothy, established in 1 Timothy 1:2.
2. This verse outlines four generations of transmission: Paul to Timothy to faithful people to others. The Greek *parathou* ('entrust, deposit') uses banking language — the gospel is a deposit to be guarded and transmitted intact. 'Faithful people' (*pistoi anthrōpoi*) uses the gender-inclusive *anthrōpoi* rather than the male-specific *andrasin*.
3. The compound verb *synkakopatheson* ('share in suffering together') links Timothy's hardships to Paul's own — and ultimately to Christ's. The military metaphor is the first of three vocational images (soldier, athlete, farmer) that structure verses 3-6.
4. The Greek *empeketai* ('gets entangled') conveys the image of being woven into something that restricts movement. Roman soldiers were legally prohibited from engaging in trade during service. The application to ministry is clear: undivided loyalty to the commanding officer — Christ.
5. The athletic metaphor shifts from military endurance to disciplined competition. The Greek *nomimos* ('lawfully, according to the rules') refers to the strict training and competition regulations of the Greek games. The *stephanos* ('crown, wreath') is the victor's garland, not a royal diadem.
6. The third metaphor — the farmer — emphasizes both labor and reward. The Greek *kopiaonta* ('laboring, toiling') is the same word Paul uses for ministerial work (1 Cor 15:10, 1 Tim 5:17). The right to first fruits echoes Deuteronomy 18:4 and 1 Corinthians 9:7-11.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 18:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Paul invites Timothy to active reflection (*noei*, 'perceive, think over') but assures him that understanding ultimately comes from the Lord. The future indicative *dosei* ('will give') expresses confidence, not mere wish.
8. This compact creedal statement names the two essential facts: resurrection (*egegermenon*, perfect participle — risen and still alive) and Davidic descent. The order is significant: resurrection comes first, then lineage. 'My gospel' (*to euangelion mou*) does not mean Paul invented it but that he was entrusted with it (cf. Rom 2:16, 16:25).

9. The contrast is sharp: Paul is bound (desmōn, 'chains'), but the word of God is not bound (ou dedetai). The Greek kakourgos ('criminal, evildoer') is the same word used for the criminals crucified with Jesus (Luke 23:33). Paul's situation mirrors his Lord's.
10. Paul's suffering is vicarious — endured for the benefit of the elect (tous eklektous, 'the chosen ones'). The phrase meta doxes aioniou ('with eternal glory') places present suffering against the horizon of eschatological weight, echoing Romans 8:18 and 2 Corinthians 4:17.
11. The formula pistos ho logos ('the saying is trustworthy') introduces what appears to be an early Christian hymn or confession (vv. 11b-13). The aorist synapethanomen ('we died with') likely refers to baptismal identification with Christ's death (Rom 6:8), not physical martyrdom.
12. The parallelism intensifies: endurance yields co-reign (symbasileusomen), but denial yields reciprocal denial. The warning echoes Jesus' own words in Matthew 10:33 and Luke 12:9. The shift from first person plural ('we') maintains the hymnic, communal voice.
13. The hymn's climactic line shifts from conditional symmetry to asymmetry: human unfaithfulness does not cancel divine faithfulness. The reason is ontological — 'he cannot deny himself' (arnesasthai heauton ou dynatai). God's faithfulness is not contingent on human response but rooted in his own nature. This is not a promise of universal salvation but a statement about God's character.
14. The Greek logomachein ('to fight about words, quarrel verbally') is a compound of logos and machomai. Paul is not dismissing theology but condemning fruitless verbal combat. The strong word katastrophe ('ruin, destruction') — from which English 'catastrophe' derives — shows the stakes of divisive teaching.
15. The Greek spoudason ('be diligent, make every effort') is stronger than the KJV's 'study.' The key term orthotomeo literally means 'to cut straight' — possibly from road-building (cutting a straight path) or tentmaking (cutting fabric correctly). The KJV's 'rightly dividing' has sometimes been misused to support compartmentalizing Scripture; 'rightly handling' better captures the sense of accurate, faithful interpretation and proclamation.
16. The Greek kenophonias ('empty sounds, empty talk') is a compound of kenos ('empty') and phone ('sound, voice'). The verb periastaso ('stand away from, avoid') conveys deliberate distance. False teaching is not merely incorrect — it produces progressive moral decay (epi pleion, 'more and more').
17. The medical metaphor is graphic: gangraina ('gangrene') describes dead tissue that spreads to healthy flesh. The Greek nomen hexei ('will have pasture, will spread') uses a grazing image — the disease feeds and spreads. Hymenaeus also appears in 1 Timothy 1:20 as someone Paul 'handed over to Satan'; Philetus is mentioned only here.
18. The Greek estochesan ('missed the mark, swerved') is an archery metaphor. The heresy — that the resurrection has already occurred (teen anastasin ede gegonenai) — likely represents an over-realized eschatology that spiritualized bodily resurrection. This directly undermines the hope Paul grounded in verse 11. The verb anatrepousin ('overthrow, upset') means to flip something upside down.
19. The two inscriptions (sphragida, 'seal, inscription') combine Numbers 16:5 (God knows his own — from the Korah rebellion) and a paraphrase of Numbers 16:26 or Isaiah 52:11. The architectural metaphor of a foundation with an inscription evokes ancient building dedications. Despite defections, God's foundation remains unshaken (hesteken, perfect tense — 'stands and continues standing').
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 16:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 52:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The 'great house' (megale oikia) represents the church, containing a mix of vessels. The categories are material (gold/silver vs. wood/clay) and functional (honor vs. dishonor). The metaphor echoes Romans 9:21 but shifts agency — in the next verse, one can change one's category through self-purification.
21. The Greek ekkathare ('cleanses thoroughly') implies decisive separation from the false teachers and their influence. The progression — cleansed, set apart (hegiastmenon), useful (euchreston), ready (hetoimasmenon) — moves from purification to active service. The 'master' (despotes) refers to Christ as lord of the household.
22. The contrast between 'flee' (pheuge) and 'pursue' (dioke) creates a two-directional imperative: run away from and run toward. 'Youthful passions' (neotericas epithymias) may refer to Timothy's relative youth but more broadly to impulsive desires of any kind — impatience, combativeness, pride. The four virtues (righteousness, faith, love, peace) are pursued in community, not isolation.
23. The Greek apaideutos ('uneducated, ignorant, undisciplined') describes speculations that lack intellectual and moral formation. The verb gennōsin ('breed, give birth to') personifies these controversies as producing offspring — namely fights (machas).
24. The title 'the Lord's servant' (doulon kyriou) echoes the Old Testament 'servant of the LORD' (ebed YHWH) applied to Moses, David, and the prophets. The three qualities — kind (epion), able to teach (didaktikon), patient under mistreatment (anexikakon) — describe the temperament required for corrective ministry.
25. The Greek prauteti ('gentleness, meekness') is the quality Jesus claimed for himself (Matt 11:29). Repentance (metanoian) is here described as something God grants — not merely a human decision but a divine gift. The phrase epignōsin aletheias ('full knowledge of truth') uses the intensified form epignosis, indicating deep, experiential knowledge.
26. The Greek ananepsōsin ('come to their senses, become sober again') implies that the opponents are in a state of spiritual intoxication. The imagery combines hunting (pagidos, 'snare, trap') and military capture (ezōgremenoi, 'taken alive as prisoners'). The final phrase eis to ekeinou thelema ('to do his will') is ambiguous — 'his' could refer to the devil or to God. We take it as the devil's will, from which they may escape to do God's will.

3

Summary: *Paul warns Timothy that the last days will bring moral and spiritual decay, cataloguing vices that masquerade as piety — people who hold to the outward form of godliness while denying its power. He draws a parallel between these deceivers and Jannes and Jambres, the Egyptian magicians who opposed Moses. Against this backdrop, Paul points to his own life as an example: his teaching, conduct, persecution, and endurance. The chapter culminates in one of the most significant statements in Scripture about the nature of sacred writings: 'All Scripture is God-breathed and profitable for teaching, reproof, correction, and training in righteousness.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 16 contains the word theopneustos ('God-breathed'), found nowhere else in the New Testament or in earlier Greek literature — Paul may have coined it. The term does not describe the process of inspiration (how God did it) but the origin and character of Scripture (it comes from God's breath). The vice catalogue in verses 2-5 is structured around the concept of disordered love: love of self, love of money, and love of pleasure replace love of God. The reference to Jannes and Jambres (v. 8) draws on Jewish tradition not found in the Hebrew Bible but preserved in later texts — Paul treats this tradition as reliable.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'last days' (eschatai hemerai, v. 1) has been debated — does Paul refer to a future period or to the present age inaugurated by Christ? The Pastoral Epistles treat the 'last days' as already underway, with conditions worsening. The scope of 'all Scripture' (pasa graphe) in verse 16 originally referred to the Hebrew Scriptures (the only 'Scripture' Timothy knew from childhood), though the church later applied the principle to the New Testament writings as well. We render theopneustos as 'God-breathed' rather than the KJV's 'given by inspiration of God,' which is accurate but less precise about the metaphor.*

Connections: *The vice catalogue parallels Romans 1:29-31 in structure and content. The Jannes and Jambres tradition appears in the Targum of Pseudo-Jonathan on Exodus 7:11 and in later Jewish and early Christian texts. Paul's appeal to his own suffering (vv. 10-11) recalls 2 Corinthians 11:23-27. The Scripture passage (vv. 15-17) connects to the deposit language of 1 Timothy 6:20 and 2 Timothy 1:14, and provides the theological basis for the 'word of truth' in 2:15.*

¹But understand this: in the last days there will come times of difficulty. ²For people will be lovers of self, lovers of money, boastful, arrogant, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, ³Apart from natural affection, trucebreakers, false accusers, incontinent, fierce, despisers of those that are upright, ⁴Treacherous, reckless, conceited, loving pleasure rather than loving God; ⁵Indeed, having a form of godliness, but denying the authority thereof — from such turn away. ⁶For among them are those who creep into households and captivate vulnerable women, burdened with sins and led astray by various passions, ⁷Ever learning, and never able to arrive to the knowledge of the what is genuine. ⁸Just as Jannes and Jambres opposed Moses, so these men also oppose the truth — people of corrupted minds, disqualified regarding the faith. ⁹But they will not get very far, for their folly will be plain to all, as was the folly of those two. ¹⁰You, however, have followed my teaching, my conduct, my aim in life, my faith, my patience, my love, my endurance, ¹¹Persecutions, afflictions, which arrived to me at Antioch, at Iconium, at Lystra. What persecutions I endured — but out of them every one of the Lord delivered me. ¹²Indeed, all who desire to live a godly life in Christ Jesus will be persecuted. ¹³However, evil men and seducers will wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived. ¹⁴But as for you, continue in what you have learned and have firmly believed, knowing from whom you learned it ¹⁵That from a child you have known the holy scriptures, which are able to make you wise to salvation by way of faith which is in Christ Jesus. ¹⁶All Scripture is God-breathed and profitable for teaching, for reproof, for correction, and for training in righteousness, ¹⁷Indeed, that the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished to all good deeds.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek chalepoi ('difficult, hard, dangerous') is used in Matthew 8:28 to describe the Gadarene demoniacs as 'fierce.' The 'last days' (eschatai hemerai) in Pauline theology began with Christ's resurrection and continue until his return — they are not solely future.

2. The catalogue begins with two phil- compounds: philautoi ('lovers of self') and philargyroi ('lovers of money'), establishing disordered love as the root problem. This prepares for the climactic contrast in verse 4: 'lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God.' The list echoes Romans 1:29-31, where moral decay follows the rejection of God.
3. The Greek astorgoi ('without natural affection, heartless') denotes the absence of storge — the instinctive love within families. The word diaboloi ('slandereous') is the same word used as a title for the devil (ho diabolos, 'the slanderer'). These people take on the character of the adversary himself.
4. The catalogue reaches its climax with the contrast: philedonoi mallon e philotheoi ('lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God'). The structure mirrors the opening — phil-compounds frame the entire list. The Greek tetyphomenoi ('puffed up, blinded by smoke') suggests delusion caused by pride.
5. The Greek morphosin ('outward form, appearance') implies an external shape without internal reality — a religious veneer over moral emptiness. The 'power' (dynamis) of godliness is the transformative energy of the Holy Spirit working through genuine faith. The command apotrepeō ('turn away from, avoid') is present imperative — this is an ongoing stance, not a one-time action.
6. The Greek gynaikaria (diminutive of gynē) has often been translated pejoratively ('silly women'). The diminutive likely indicates vulnerability rather than contempt — these are people in precarious situations who are exploited by predatory teachers. 'Captivate' (aichmalotizontes) is military language: taking prisoners of war. The false teachers conduct household-level infiltration campaigns.
7. The paradox of perpetual learning without ever reaching truth (epignosis aletheias) describes a cycle of religious consumption without transformation. The intensified epignosis ('full, experiential knowledge') underscores what is missing — not information but genuine encounter with truth.
8. Jannes and Jambres are not named in the Hebrew Bible but appear in Jewish tradition as the Egyptian magicians who replicated Moses' signs (Exodus 7:11, 8:7). Paul draws on this extrabiblical tradition without qualification. The term adokimoi ('disqualified, failing the test') is the opposite of dokimos ('approved') in 2:15 — these men fail the very test Timothy is called to pass.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 7:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Paul offers reassurance: the false teachers' progress has limits. Just as Jannes and Jambres were ultimately exposed and defeated (Exodus 8:18-19, 9:11), so these opponents will be revealed. The Greek anoia ('folly, senselessness') contrasts with the 'knowledge of truth' they claim to possess.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 8:18-19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The Greek parekolouthesas ('followed closely, investigated, accompanied') means Timothy did not merely hear Paul's teaching but observed his entire life. The seven items form a comprehensive portrait: doctrine (didaskalia), behavior (agoge), purpose (prothesis), faith (pistis), patience (makrothymia), love (agape), and endurance (hypomone).
11. Paul cites three cities from his first missionary journey (Acts 13-14) — notably, these are cities in Timothy's home region. Timothy would have known firsthand about these events (Acts 16:1-2). The Lystra reference is especially poignant: Paul was stoned and left for dead there (Acts 14:19). The declaration 'the Lord rescued me from them all' (ek pantōn me erhysato ho kyrios) echoes Psalm 34:19.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 34:19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. This is a universal statement without qualification: all (pantes) who pursue godliness in Christ will face persecution. The passive diochthesontai ('will be persecuted') is a divine passive — God permits persecution as part of the faithful life. This verse functions as a theological axiom grounding the entire chapter.
13. The Greek goetes ('impostors, sorcerers, charlatans') originally meant 'wailing ones' — referring to the incantations of sorcerers. The double participle planōntes kai planōmenoi ('deceiving and being deceived') captures the self-referential nature of deception: the deceivers are themselves deceived. This is not merely about bad actors but about a contagion of falsehood.
14. The Greek epistōthes ('have become convinced, have been assured') implies settled conviction, not mere intellectual acceptance. 'From whom' (para tinōn) is plural — Timothy learned from multiple sources: Paul, his grandmother Lois, and his mother Eunice (1:5). The appeal to personal relationships as a basis for trust in teaching is characteristic of the Pastoral Epistles.
15. The Greek ta hiera grammata ('the sacred writings') refers to the Hebrew Scriptures — the Torah, Prophets, and Writings that Timothy learned from his Jewish mother and grandmother. The word brephos ('infant, baby') indicates that Timothy's scriptural education began in earliest childhood. These writings accomplish their saving purpose 'through faith in Christ Jesus' — the Old Testament is not superseded but fulfilled.
16. The Greek theopneustos ('God-breathed') is a compound of theos ('God') and pneō ('to breathe, blow'). It appears nowhere else in the New Testament and may be Paul's own coinage. The word describes not the process by which Scripture was written but its character and origin — it carries God's breath, his life-giving and authoritative word. The KJV's 'given by inspiration of God' accurately conveys the meaning but obscures the vivid breath metaphor. The four uses of Scripture — teaching (didaskalia), reproof (elegmon), correction (epanorthōsin), and training in righteousness (paideian tēn en dikaiosynē) — cover both doctrine and ethics, both confrontation and formation.

17. The Greek *artios* ('complete, capable, proficient') does not mean sinless perfection but fitness for purpose. The related verb *exertismenos* ('equipped, fully furnished') reinforces the practical aim: Scripture is not given for abstract knowledge but to produce people capable of every good work. 'The person of God' (*ho tou theou anthrōpos*) is a title with Old Testament roots (applied to Moses, Samuel, Elijah, and others) now applied to the Christian minister.

4

Summary: *Paul delivers his most solemn charge to Timothy: preach the word in season and out of season, for a time is coming when people will accumulate teachers to suit their own desires. Paul then shifts to a deeply personal valediction — 'I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race, I have kept the faith' — announcing that his departure is at hand and a crown of righteousness awaits him. The chapter closes with personal requests and greetings: Demas has deserted, Luke alone is with him, Paul asks for Mark and for his cloak and scrolls left at Troas. He reports on Alexander the coppersmith's opposition and notes that at his first defense, no one stood with him — but the Lord stood by him and strengthened him.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter is widely regarded as Paul's final written words — a spiritual last will and testament. The triple declaration in verse 7 ('I have fought... finished... kept') uses three perfect tenses, each indicating completed action with ongoing results. The metaphors shift from combat (*agōn*) to athletics (*dromos*) to stewardship (*pistin*) in three staccato clauses. The personal details in verses 9-21 provide an unparalleled window into Paul's final circumstances: the paths of abandonment, the practicality of requesting a cloak for Roman winter, and the enduring importance of his scrolls (likely Scripture).*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'first defense' (*prōtē apologia*, v. 16) is debated — it may refer to a preliminary hearing in Paul's current trial or to his first Roman imprisonment (Acts 28). 'The lion's mouth' (v. 17) may be literal (the arena), figurative (Satan or Nero), or an allusion to Psalm 22:21. Alexander the coppersmith (v. 14) may or may not be the Alexander of 1 Timothy 1:20 or Acts 19:33. The 'scrolls, especially the parchments' (v. 13) likely refer to Old Testament Scriptures, though their exact contents are unknown.*

Connections: *The charge to 'preach the word' (v. 2) builds on the Scripture passage in 3:16-17. The 'crown of righteousness' (v. 8) connects to the athletic crown in 2:5 and the crowns in 1 Corinthians 9:25, James 1:12, and Revelation 2:10. Paul's abandonment at his trial (v. 16) echoes Jesus' experience in Gethsemane, and his prayer 'may it not be charged against them' echoes Stephen (Acts 7:60). The lion's mouth alludes to Psalm 22:21 and Daniel 6:22.*

1I solemnly charge you in the presence of God and of Christ Jesus, who is to judge the living and the dead, and by his appearing and his kingdom: 2Preach the word; be ready in season and out of season; reprove, rebuke, and exhort, with complete patience and teaching. 3For the time is coming when people will not endure sound teaching but, having itching ears, they will accumulate for themselves teachers to suit their own passions, 4They will turn away their ears from the truth, and will be turned to fables. 5As for you, be sober-minded in everything, endure suffering, do the work of an evangelist, fulfill your ministry. 6For I am already being poured out as a drink offering, and the time of my departure has come. 7I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race, I have kept the faith. 8From now on there is laid up for me the crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will award to me on that day — and not only to me but also to all who have loved his appearing. 9Do your best to come to me soon. 10For Demas, in love with this present age, deserted me and went to Thessalonica. Crescens went to Galatia, Titus to Dalmatia. 11Only Luke is with me. Get Mark and bring him with you, for he is useful to me for ministry. 12Tychicus I have sent to Ephesus. 13When you come, bring the cloak that I left with Carpus at Troas, also the books, and above all the parchments. 14Alexander the coppersmith did me great harm; the Lord will repay him according to his deeds. 15Beware of him yourself, for he strongly opposed our message. 16At my first defense no one came to stand by me, but all deserted me. May it not be charged against them! 17But the Lord stood by me and strengthened me, so that through me the message might be fully proclaimed and all the Gentiles might hear it. So I was rescued from the lion's mouth. 18The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed and bring me safely into his heavenly kingdom. To him be the glory forever and ever. Amen. 19Greet Prisca and Aquila, and the household of Onesiphorus. 20Erast

us remained at Corinth, and I left Trophimus, who was ill, at Miletus. ²¹Do your best to come before winter. Eubulus sends greetings to you, as do Pudens and Linus and Claudia and all the brothers and sisters. ²²The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *diamartyromai* ('I solemnly testify, I charge under oath') is the strongest form of adjuration available. The charge is issued before two witnesses: God and Christ Jesus. The phrase 'the living and the dead' (*zōntas kai nekrous*) encompasses all humanity across all time. 'His appearing' (*tēn epiphaneian*) and 'his kingdom' (*tēn basileian*) serve as the eschatological horizon that gives urgency to the charge.
2. Five imperatives in rapid succession create urgency: preach (*kēryxon*), be ready (*epistēthi*), reprove (*elegxon*), rebuke (*epitimēson*), exhort (*parakaleson*). The phrase 'in season and out of season' (*eukairōs akairōs*) means 'when it is convenient and when it is not' — the preacher does not wait for ideal conditions. The final phrase adds the necessary temperament: patience (*makrothymia*) and substance (*didachē*).
3. The medical metaphor *hygiainousēs didaskalias* ('sound/healthy teaching') recurs throughout the Pastoral Epistles — false teaching is a disease, sound teaching is health. The vivid image of 'itching ears' (*knēthomenoi tēn akoēn*) describes people who crave novelty and flattery rather than truth. The verb *episōreuousin* ('pile up, accumulate') suggests an excess of teachers — not quality but quantity, selected to validate existing desires.
4. The contrast is between truth (*alētheia*) and myths (*mythous*). The Greek *mythoi* in the Pastoral Epistles likely refers to speculative theological narratives — genealogical fantasies, proto-gnostic origin stories, or fanciful reinterpretations of Scripture (cf. 1 Tim 1:4, 4:7; Titus 1:14). The passive *ektrapēsontai* ('will be turned aside') suggests they are led astray rather than making a fully conscious choice.
5. Four more imperatives directed at Timothy: be sober (*nēphe*), suffer (*kakopathēson*), evangelize (*ergon poiēson euangelistou*), fulfill (*plērophorēson*). The term 'evangelist' (*euangelistou*) designates one who proclaims the good news — a role distinct from but overlapping with pastor and teacher (cf. Eph 4:11). 'Fulfill your ministry' (*tēn diakonian sou plērophorēson*) means to carry it to completion, leaving nothing undone.
6. The Greek *spondomai* ('I am being poured out as a libation') is a sacrificial metaphor — Paul's life is being poured out like the wine offering that accompanied temple sacrifices (Num 15:5-7; Phil 2:17). The word *analyseos* ('departure, loosing, breaking camp') is a euphemism for death drawn from military or nautical language — a ship being untied from port or an army breaking camp to march. Paul faces death not with dread but with the composure of a completed mission.
7. Three perfect tenses in succession — each denoting completed action with lasting results. The 'good fight' (*kalon agōna*) may refer to an athletic contest or military campaign. The 'race' (*dromon*) is a footrace — Paul has reached the finish line. 'Kept the faith' (*tēn pistin tetērēka*) carries a double sense: he has maintained personal trust in Christ and has guarded the deposit of apostolic teaching (cf. 1 Tim 6:20). This is perhaps the most quoted passage in the Pastoral Epistles.
8. The *stephanos* ('crown, wreath') is the victor's garland, not a royal diadem (*diadēma*). The genitive 'of righteousness' may mean the crown that consists of righteousness, the crown given for righteousness, or the crown awarded by the righteous judge. Paul immediately universalizes the promise: the crown belongs to 'all who have loved his appearing' (*tois ēgapēkosin tēn epiphaneian autou*) — not just apostles but every believer. The perfect participle *ēgapēkosin* ('have loved and continue to love') indicates an ongoing disposition.
9. The shift from theological grandeur to personal urgency is jarring and deeply human. Paul is alone, facing death, and wants Timothy beside him. The imperative *spoudason* ('be diligent, hurry') conveys genuine urgency.
10. Demas is mentioned positively in Colossians 4:14 and Philemon 24 but here has 'loved this present age' (*agapēsas ton nyn aiōna*) — the same verb used of those who 'loved his appearing' in verse 8, creating a painful contrast. Crescens and Titus apparently left on legitimate missions (no negative language is used), unlike Demas who deserted (*egkatelipen*, 'abandoned').
11. Luke the physician (Col 4:14) — traditionally the author of the Gospel of Luke and Acts — is Paul's sole remaining companion. The request for Mark (John Mark) represents a remarkable reconciliation: Paul had refused to take Mark on the second missionary journey because Mark had deserted them earlier (Acts 15:37-39). Now Paul calls him *euchrēstos* ('useful, serviceable') — the same root as the name Onesimus ('useful') in Philemon.
12. Tychicus was Paul's trusted envoy, mentioned in Acts 20:4, Ephesians 6:21, Colossians 4:7, and Titus 3:12. He may have carried this very letter and was likely sent to relieve Timothy so Timothy could travel to Paul in Rome.
13. The *phailonēn* ('cloak') was a heavy outer garment needed for a Roman winter (cf. v. 21). The request is poignantly practical — Paul is cold. The *biblia* ('books, scrolls') were likely papyrus rolls, and the *membranas* ('parchments') were animal-skin documents — possibly Old Testament Scriptures, legal documents, or Paul's own notes. The distinction between papyrus and parchment suggests different types of documents. This verse provides a rare glimpse into the material conditions of Paul's imprisonment.
14. The identification 'the coppersmith' (*ho chalkeus*) distinguishes this Alexander from others with the same common name. His 'great harm' (*polla kaka*) may have been testimony against Paul at trial. Paul does not curse Alexander but commits judgment to the Lord — echoing Psalm 62:12 and Proverbs 24:12. The future *apodōsei* ('will repay') expresses confident trust in divine justice.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 62:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Proverbs 24:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The warning to Timothy suggests Alexander may still be active and dangerous. The phrase *tois hēmeterois logois* ('our words') could mean Paul's legal defense or the apostolic message more broadly.
16. The *apologia* ('defense') is a legal term for a formal defense in court. The abandonment by 'all' (*pantes*) parallels Jesus' experience when the disciples fled (Matt 26:56). Paul's prayer — *mē autois logistheīē* ('may it not be reckoned to them') — echoes Stephen's dying prayer (Acts 7:60) and Jesus' words from the cross (Luke 23:34). The optative mood (*logistheīē*) expresses a genuine wish.
17. The contrast is stark: all human companions deserted, but the Lord stood by (*parestē*) — the very verb used for human support in the previous verse. The purpose of divine strengthening was not personal comfort but mission completion: full proclamation (*plērophorēthē*) to all nations (*panta ta ethnē*). The 'lion's mouth' (*stomatos leontos*) most likely alludes to Psalm 22:21 and may refer to the immediate threat of execution, to Nero, or to Satan (cf. 1 Pet 5:8).
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 22:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Paul's confidence in rescue (*rhysetai*, future tense) is not necessarily about avoiding physical death — it is about deliverance from spiritual defeat. The ultimate salvation is entrance into 'his heavenly kingdom' (*tēn basileian autou tēn epouranion*). The doxology ('to him be the glory forever and ever, amen') follows the standard form of Jewish and early Christian praise, closing this section of the letter with worship.
19. Prisca (the formal name; Priscilla is the diminutive used in Acts) and Aquila were Paul's co-workers and hosts (Acts 18:2-3, Rom 16:3-4). The 'household of Onesiphorus' (rather than Onesiphorus himself) has led some scholars to conclude that Onesiphorus had died — Paul commended his past service in 1:16-18. However, this is not certain.
20. Erastus may be the city treasurer of Corinth mentioned in Romans 16:23. Trophimus was the Ephesian companion whose presence with Paul in Jerusalem triggered the riot in Acts 21:29. The detail that Paul left Trophimus ill (*asthenounta*) is significant — even Paul, who had healed others, did not always exercise miraculous healing.
21. The urgency 'before winter' (*pro cheimōnos*) is practical — sea travel ceased during winter, and Paul needed his cloak (v. 13). But it also carries the unspoken weight of Paul's limited time. Linus is traditionally identified as the first bishop of Rome after Peter. 'The brothers and sisters' (*hoi adelphoi*) uses the masculine plural inclusively, as is standard in Greek.
22. The closing benediction has two parts: a singular address to Timothy ('your spirit,' *sou*) and a plural blessing on the community ('with you,' *hymōn*). The shift from singular to plural suggests the letter, while personal, was also meant to be read in the congregation. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen' in the closing, which appears in some later manuscripts. This is Paul's final recorded word: grace.

Titus

1

Summary: *Paul opens his letter to Titus with a dense theological greeting that grounds apostolic authority in God's promise of eternal life 'before the ages began.' He then addresses the reason Titus was left in Crete: to appoint elders in every town. Paul provides qualifications for these leaders — blameless character, faithful family, and sound doctrine — before turning to the specific problem on Crete: insubordinate people, especially from the circumcision party, who are disrupting whole households for dishonest gain. Paul quotes a Cretan prophet (Epimenides) — 'Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy gluttons' — and affirms the assessment, urging Titus to rebuke them sharply so they may be sound in the faith.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening sentence (vv. 1-4) is one of the longest and most theologically compressed in the Pauline corpus, containing Paul's self-designation, God's pre-temporal promise, the revelation of the word through preaching, and the address to Titus — all in a single Greek sentence. The quotation of Epimenides (v. 12) is extraordinary: Paul cites a pagan poet-prophet and calls him a 'prophet of their own' (idios autōn prophētēs), granting a measure of truthful authority to a non-Israelite voice. This creates the famous 'liar paradox' — if a Cretan says all Cretans are liars, is the statement itself a lie?*

Translation Friction: *The elder/overseer terminology (presbyteros/episkopos) appears interchangeable in this passage, which has implications for church governance debates. Paul begins with 'elder' (v. 5) and shifts to 'overseer' (v. 7) without distinction. The Epimenides quotation raises questions about Paul's use of pagan literature and cultural stereotyping — he applies a broad ethnic generalization to a specific theological problem. We render the text as given without softening or qualifying Paul's argument.*

Connections: *The elder qualifications parallel 1 Timothy 3:1-7 closely but are adapted for the Cretan context. The 'circumcision party' (v. 10) connects to the controversy in Galatians 2:12 and Acts 15. The pre-temporal promise (v. 2) echoes Romans 16:25-26 and Ephesians 1:4. The Epimenides quotation is one of three pagan citations in Paul (cf. Acts 17:28, 1 Cor 15:33).*

¹Paul, a servant of God and an apostle of Jesus Christ, for the sake of the faith of God's elect and their knowledge of the truth that accords with godliness, ²In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the present age began;. ³However, has in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed to me in keeping with to the commandment of God our Saviour;. ⁴Indeed, to Titus, mine own son following the common faith — Grace, mercy, and peace,

from God the Father and the Lord Jesus Christ our Saviour. ⁵This is why I left you in Crete, so that you might put what remained into order, and appoint elders in every town as I directed you — ⁶An elder must be above reproach, faithful to his wife, and his children must be believers who are not wild or disobedient. ⁷For an overseer, as God's steward, must be above reproach. He must not be arrogant or quick-tempered or a drunkard or violent or greedy for gain, ⁸However, a lover of hospitality, a lover of good men, sober, just, holy, temperate. ⁹He must hold firm to the trustworthy word as taught, so that he may be able both to give instruction in sound doctrine and also to rebuke those who contradict it. ¹⁰For there are many who are insubordinate, empty talkers and deceivers, especially those of the circumcision party. ¹¹They must be silenced, since they are upsetting whole households by teaching for shameful gain what they ought not to teach. ¹²One of the Cretans, a prophet of their own, said, "Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy gluttons." ¹³This witness is true. For this reason rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith;. ¹⁴Not giving heed to Jewish fables, and commandments of people, that redirect from the what is genuine. ¹⁵To the pure, all things are pure, but to the defiled and unbelieving, nothing is pure; both their minds and their consciences are defiled. ¹⁶They profess to know God, but they deny him by their works. They are detestable, disobedient, unfit for any good work.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul identifies himself as both 'servant of God' (*doulos theou*) — a designation shared with Moses, David, and the prophets — and 'apostle of Jesus Christ.' The dual title grounds his authority in both the Old Testament heritage and the new apostolic commission. The phrase *kat' eusebeian* ('according to godliness') links knowledge of truth inseparably to reverent living.
2. The Greek *apseudēs* ('without falsehood, who never lies') is a hapax legomenon in the New Testament, applied to God as the one whose character makes deception impossible. The phrase *pro chronōn aiōniōn* ('before eternal times') places God's promise in eternity past — before creation, before history, the plan of salvation was already determined.
3. The shift from eternal promise (v. 2) to historical manifestation (v. 3) spans the entire sweep of redemptive history: what God purposed before time, he revealed in time. The title 'God our Savior' (*tou sōtēros hēmōn theou*) is distinctive to the Pastoral Epistles and applies 'Savior' directly to God the Father, not only to Christ — a pattern that alternates throughout Titus.
4. The Greek *gnēsio teknō* ('true, legitimate child') indicates that Paul was instrumental in Titus's conversion. The phrase *kata koinēn pistin* ('according to a shared faith') emphasizes that their bond is not ethnic or biological but rooted in the same gospel. The SBLGNT reads 'grace and peace' without 'mercy' (*eleos*), which appears in some manuscripts. Now 'Savior' (*sōtēros*) is applied to Christ Jesus — the alternation with 'God our Savior' (v. 3) is deliberate throughout Titus.
5. Paul's departure from Crete is not recorded in Acts, suggesting this letter was written during a period of ministry not covered by Acts (possibly after a release from the first Roman imprisonment). The verb *epidiorthōsē* ('set right, put in order') implies that the church organization on Crete was incomplete. The instruction to appoint elders (*presbyterous*) 'in every town' (*kata polin*) indicates multiple congregations across the island.
6. The qualification 'above reproach' (*anengklētos*, 'not able to be called to account') sets the baseline. 'Husband of one wife' (*mias gynaikos anēr*) is debated — it may prohibit polygamy, remarriage after divorce, or remarriage after a spouse's death, or it may more broadly require marital faithfulness. The children must be *pista* ('faithful, believing') — the expectation is that an elder's household reflects his leadership capacity.
7. The shift from 'elder' (*presbyteros*, v. 5) to 'overseer' (*episkopos*, v. 7) without distinction indicates that these are the same office described from different angles — *presbyteros* emphasizing seniority and *episkopos* emphasizing function. The five negatives (not arrogant, not quick-tempered, not a drunkard, not violent, not greedy) describe the vices an overseer must not have, paralleling the positive qualities that follow.
8. Six positive virtues replace the five negatives: hospitable (*philoxenos*, 'loving strangers'), lover of good (*philagathon*), self-controlled (*sōphrona*), upright (*dikaion*), holy (*hosion*), and disciplined (*enkratēs*). The pairing of *phil-* compounds (*philoxenos*, *philagathon*) echoes the vice catalogue in 2 Timothy 3:2-4 where disordered *phil-* words describe the wicked.
9. The capstone qualification is doctrinal: the elder must hold firm (*antechomenon*, 'cling to') the faithful word. This has a dual purpose: positive instruction (*parakalein*, 'exhort, encourage') and negative correction (*elegchein*, 'rebuke, convict'). The phrase *didaskalia hygiainousa* ('sound/healthy doctrine') is the medical metaphor characteristic of the Pastoral Epistles.
10. The 'circumcision party' (*hoi ek tēs peritomēs*) refers to Jewish Christians who insisted on Torah observance (including circumcision) as necessary for Gentile believers — the same faction opposed in Galatians and Acts 15. The three descriptors — insubordinate (*anypotaktoi*), empty talkers (*mataiologoi*), and deceivers (*phrenapitai*, 'mind-deceivers') — escalate from disobedience to delusion.
11. The Greek *epistomizein* ('to stop the mouth, to muzzle, to silence') is vivid — these teachers must be gagged. The damage is domestic: 'whole households' (*holous oikous*) are being overturned (*anatrepousin*). The motive is financial — *aischrou kerdous charin* ('for the sake of shameful gain'). The combination of theological error and financial exploitation characterizes the false teachers throughout the Pastoral Epistles.

12. The quotation is attributed to Epimenides of Knossos (c. 6th century BC), a semi-legendary Cretan poet-prophet. Paul calls him 'a prophet of their own' (idios autōn prophētēs), granting a degree of prophetic authority to a pagan voice — similar to his citation of Aratus in Acts 17:28. The three charges — liars (pseustai), evil beasts (kaka thēria), and lazy gluttons (gasteres argai, literally 'idle bellies') — are harsh by modern standards but serve Paul's rhetorical purpose.
13. Paul's endorsement — 'this testimony is true' (hē martyria hautē estin alēthēs) — has troubled commentators. Paul is not making a universal ethnic claim but using the Cretan poet's words to describe the specific false teachers at work in the Cretan churches. The adverb apotomōs ('sharply, severely') is from a root meaning 'to cut' — the rebuke must be surgical, aimed at restoring health (hygiainōsin, 'may be healthy/sound').
14. The 'Jewish myths' (Ioudaikois mythois) likely refer to speculative elaborations on Old Testament genealogies and narratives (cf. 1 Tim 1:4, 4:7). The 'commands of people' (entolais anthrōpōn) echoes Isaiah 29:13 (cited by Jesus in Mark 7:7) — human religious regulations that replace divine truth.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 29:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. This proverbial statement (panta kathara tois katharais) addresses the food laws and purity regulations the circumcision party was imposing. It echoes Jesus' teaching in Mark 7:15-19 and Paul's argument in Romans 14:14, 20. The principle is that purity is a matter of internal disposition, not external regulation. For the defiled (memiammenois), the corruption is total — both mind (nous) and conscience (syneidēsis) are contaminated.
16. The chapter ends with a devastating verdict: verbal profession of God (homologousin eidenai) is contradicted by behavioral denial (tois ergois amountai). The three final adjectives — detestable (bdelyktoi, a term for ritual abomination), disobedient (apeitheis), and disqualified (adokimoi, 'failing the test') — are especially ironic for people who claim special knowledge of God's requirements. The term adokimoi echoes 2 Timothy 3:8 and directly opposes the 'approved' (dokimos) worker of 2 Timothy 2:15.

2

Summary: *Paul instructs Titus to teach what accords with sound doctrine, then specifies age- and gender-appropriate exhortations: older men are to be temperate and sound in faith; older women are to be reverent and train the younger women in domestic virtues; younger men are to be self-controlled, with Titus himself as a model. The chapter then soars into one of the New Testament's most concentrated theological passages: 'The grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation for all people, training us to renounce ungodliness and to live self-controlled, upright, and godly lives in the present age, while we wait for the blessed hope — the appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ, who gave himself for us to redeem us from all lawlessness and to purify for himself a people of his own who are zealous for good works.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 11-14 constitute one of the densest christological and soteriological passages in the Pastoral Epistles. The phrase 'our great God and Savior Jesus Christ' (v. 13) is one of the clearest New Testament affirmations of Christ's deity, applying both 'God' and 'Savior' to Jesus in a single construction (the Granville Sharp rule in Greek grammar). Grace is personified as a teacher (paideuousa, v. 12) — the same grace that saves also trains. The tension between 'has appeared' (v. 11, first coming) and 'the appearing' (v. 13, second coming) structures Christian existence as life between two epiphanies.*

Translation Friction: *The household instructions in verses 2-10 reflect first-century social structures, particularly regarding women's roles. We render the Greek accurately without either modernizing or amplifying the cultural specifics. The phrase 'our great God and Savior Jesus Christ' (v. 13) is grammatically ambiguous — it could refer to one person (Jesus Christ who is both God and Savior) or two persons (God the Father and Jesus Christ the Savior). The Granville Sharp construction strongly favors the single-referent reading, which we adopt. The instruction for slaves (vv. 9-10) is rendered faithfully; Paul addresses the social reality without endorsing slavery as an institution.*

Connections: *The grace epiphany (vv. 11-14) parallels Titus 3:4-7 in structure and theology. The 'blessed hope' connects to Romans 8:23-25 and 1 Corinthians 15:51-52. Christ's self-giving 'to redeem us from all lawlessness' (v. 14) echoes Psalm 130:8 and Ezekiel 37:23. The phrase 'a people of his own' (laon periousion) quotes the Septuagint of Exodus 19:5 and Deuteronomy 14:2, applying Israel's covenant identity to the church.*

¹But as for you, teach what accords with sound doctrine. ²Older men are to be sober-minded, dignified, self-controlled, sound in faith, in love, and in endurance. ³Older women likewise are to be reverent in behavior, not slanderers or slaves to much wine. They are to teach what is good, ⁴That they may instruct the youthful women to be sober, to devotion their

husbands, to devotion their children,. ⁵to be self-controlled, pure, attentive to their homes, kind, and respectful toward their own husbands, so that the word of God will not be discredited. ⁶Likewise, urge the younger men to be self-controlled. ⁷Show yourself in all respects to be a model of good works, and in your teaching show integrity, dignity, ⁸Use wholesome speech that cannot be criticized, so that any opponent will be put to shame, having nothing bad to say about us. ⁹Bondservants are to be submissive to their own masters in everything; they are to be well-pleasing, not argumentative, ¹⁰Not purloining, but shewing all upright fidelity. That they may adorn the doctrine of God our Saviour in all matters. ¹¹For the grace of God has appeared, bringing salvation for all people, ¹²It teaches us to say no to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright, and godly lives in this present age. ¹³while we wait for the blessed hope — the glorious appearing of our great God and Savior, Jesus Christ. ¹⁴Who offered himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar those present, zealous of good deeds. ¹⁵Declare these things; exhort and rebuke with all authority. Let no one disregard you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The contrast with the false teachers of chapter 1 is marked by the emphatic 'you' (sy de). The verb lalei ('speak, teach') combined with prepei ('is fitting, accords with') demands that teaching content match doctrinal health. The medical metaphor *hygiainousē didaskalia* ('sound/healthy doctrine') continues from 1:9.
2. The Greek *presbytas* ('older men') refers to age, not the office of elder (*presbyteros*). The three character traits (sober-minded, dignified, self-controlled) are followed by three spheres of health: faith (*pistei*), love (*agapē*), and endurance (*hypomonē*). The medical metaphor appears again: *hygiainontas* ('being healthy/sound') in these three areas.
3. The Greek *hieroprepes* ('reverent, befitting a sacred person') literally means 'fitting for a temple' — older women are to carry themselves with priestly dignity. The prohibition against being diabolous ('slandorous') uses the same word as 'devil' — gossip makes one an agent of the accuser. The positive role *kalodidaskalous* ('teachers of good things') establishes older women as authorized teachers within the community.
4. The verb *sōphronizōsin* ('train, bring to their senses, encourage') implies practical mentoring, not merely theoretical instruction. The two *phil-* compounds — *philandrous* ('husband-loving') and *philoteknous* ('children-loving') — place domestic relationships at the center of the younger women's formation. This is mentorship by example, not classroom instruction.
5. The purpose clause — 'that the word of God may not be reviled' (*hina mē ho logos tou theou blasphēmētai*) — reveals the missional logic behind the instruction. In a Roman context where Christianity was already suspect, household disorder would bring public disgrace on the gospel. The Greek *oikourgous* ('working at home, managing the household') describes domestic productivity and management, not mere confinement.
6. The brevity is striking — younger men receive a single instruction: *sōphronein* ('to be self-controlled'). Self-control (*sōphrosynē*) is the virtue most frequently mentioned in this chapter, appearing in some form in verses 2, 4, 5, 6, and 12. It is the master virtue for the Cretan context.
7. Titus himself must be the *typon* ('pattern, model, example') — teaching is authenticated by the teacher's life. The qualities listed — *aphthorian* ('integrity, incorruptibility') and *semnotēta* ('dignity, gravity') — apply to both the content and the manner of his teaching.
8. The goal is apologetic: sound speech (*logon hygiē*) that is beyond condemnation (*akatagnōston*) removes ammunition from opponents. The Greek *entrapē* ('may be put to shame') describes the silencing of critics who can find no legitimate charge — a missional strategy through irreproachable conduct and teaching.
9. The Greek *doulous* ('slaves, bondservants') addresses the large enslaved population in the Roman world. Paul's instructions operate within the existing social structure while transforming the slave's motivation — as the next verse shows, the purpose is 'to adorn the doctrine of God.' Paul does not explicitly endorse or condemn the institution here; the Pastoral Epistles focus on conduct within existing circumstances.
10. The verb *kosmōsin* ('may adorn, may decorate') gives the passage its striking theological image: faithful living beautifies doctrine. The Christian slave's trustworthiness is not mere compliance but a form of witness — making the gospel attractive (*kosmos*, from which 'cosmetic' derives). 'God our Savior' (*tou sōtēros hēmōn theou*) applies the Savior title to God the Father, continuing the alternation noted throughout the letter.
11. The verb *epephanē* ('has appeared, has been manifested') is the root of 'epiphany' — grace arrived in history as a visible event, primarily in the incarnation and work of Christ. The adjective *sōtērios* ('saving, bringing salvation') modifies grace — grace itself is the saving agent. 'All people' (*pasin anthrōpois*) declares the universal scope of God's saving purpose, though the Pastoral Epistles do not thereby teach automatic universalism.
12. Grace is personified as a trainer (*paideuōsa*, from *paideuō* — 'to train, educate, discipline a child'). The same grace that saves also forms character. The training has two dimensions: negative (renouncing ungodliness and worldly passions) and positive (living with self-control, justice, and piety). The three adverbs — *sōphronōs* (self-controlled), *dikaiōs* (uprightly), *eusebōs* (godly) — correspond to one's relationship to self, neighbor, and God respectively.
13. The phrase *tou megalou theou kai sōtēros hēmōn Iēsou Christou* ('of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ') applies both titles — 'great God' and 'Savior' — to Jesus Christ. The Granville Sharp rule in Greek grammar (a single article governing two nouns joined by *kai* where the first noun is not

a proper name) indicates a single referent. This is among the most explicit New Testament affirmations of Christ's deity. The 'blessed hope' (makarian elpida) is the second epiphany — Christ's return in glory — which creates the frame: life between two appearances.

14. Christ's self-giving (edōken heauton) has a double purpose: redemption from lawlessness (lytrosētai, 'to ransom, to liberate by payment') and purification of a people. The phrase laon periousion ('a people for his own possession') directly quotes the Septuagint of Exodus 19:5 and Deuteronomy 14:2 — Israel's covenant identity is now applied to the church. 'Zealous for good works' (zēlōtēn kalōn ergōn) connects the doctrinal heights of verses 11-14 back to the practical ethics of the entire chapter.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 19:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 14:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Three imperatives — speak (lalei), exhort (parakalei), rebuke (elegche) — cover the full range of pastoral communication. The phrase meta pasēs epitagēs ('with all authority') underscores that Titus acts with apostolic delegation. The final command — mēdeis sou periphronēitō ('let no one think around you, let no one disregard you') — parallels 1 Timothy 4:12 and indicates that Titus, like Timothy, may have faced challenges to his authority.

3

Summary: *Paul instructs Titus to remind the Cretan believers to be subject to rulers and authorities, to be ready for every good work, and to speak evil of no one. He grounds this ethical instruction in a stunning theological statement: God saved us not because of works done in righteousness but according to his own mercy, through the washing of regeneration and renewal of the Holy Spirit, whom he poured out on us richly through Jesus Christ our Savior — so that, being justified by his grace, we might become heirs according to the hope of eternal life. Paul identifies this as a 'trustworthy saying' and urges Titus to insist on it. He warns against foolish controversies and genealogies, instructs Titus on handling divisive persons, shares travel plans, and closes with greetings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verses 4-7 form the second great soteriological passage in Titus (paired with 2:11-14). Together they constitute a comprehensive summary of salvation: its source (God's mercy and kindness), its means (the washing of regeneration and the Holy Spirit), its agent (Jesus Christ our Savior), its legal basis (justification by grace), and its goal (becoming heirs of eternal life). The phrase 'washing of regeneration' (loutron palingenesias) is unique in the New Testament and has been central to baptismal theology since the earliest centuries. The word palingenesia ('regeneration, new birth, new creation') appears only here and in Matthew 19:28.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 'washing of regeneration' and water baptism is debated. The language strongly evokes baptism but may describe spiritual regeneration symbolized by baptism rather than baptismal regeneration per se. We render the Greek without resolving the theological debate. The 'trustworthy saying' formula (pistos ho logos, v. 8) is the fifth and final occurrence in the Pastoral Epistles — whether it introduces or concludes the theological statement is debated. The instruction to reject a 'divisive person' after two warnings (v. 10) has shaped church discipline practices throughout history.*

Connections: *The salvation summary (vv. 4-7) parallels Titus 2:11-14, Ephesians 2:4-10, and Romans 3:21-26 in structure. The 'washing of regeneration' connects to John 3:5, Ezekiel 36:25-27, and the baptismal imagery of Romans 6:3-4. The 'pouring out' of the Spirit echoes Joel 2:28 (Acts 2:17) and Pentecost. The 'trustworthy saying' formula links to 1 Timothy 1:15, 3:1, 4:9, and 2 Timothy 2:11. The rejection of a factious person connects to Matthew 18:15-17.*

¹Remind them to be submissive to rulers and authorities, to be obedient, to be ready for every good work, ²To talk wicked of no person, to be no brawlers, but gentle, shewing all meekness to all people. ³For we ourselves were once foolish, disobedient, led astray, slaves to various passions and pleasures, passing our days in malice and envy, hated by others and hating one another. ⁴But when the goodness and loving kindness of God our Savior appeared, ⁵Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but in keeping with to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit; ⁶God poured out the Spirit on us generously through Jesus Christ our Savior, ⁷That while justified by his grace, we should be fashioned heirs according to the confident expectation of eternal life. ⁸The saying is trustworthy, and I want you to insist on these things, so that those who have believed in God may be careful to devote themselves to good works. These things are excellent and profitable for people. ⁹But avoid foolish controversies, genealogies,

dissensions, and quarrels about the law, for they are unprofitable and worthless. ¹⁰As for a person who stirs up division, after warning him once and then twice, have nothing more to do with him, ¹¹Being aware that he that is these people is subverted, and sinneth, being condemned of himself. ¹²When I send Artemas or Tychicus to you, do your best to come to me at Nicopolis, for I have decided to spend the winter there. ¹³Do your best to speed Zenas the lawyer and Apollos on their way; see that they lack nothing. ¹⁴And let our people learn to devote themselves to good works, so as to help cases of urgent need, and not be unfruitful. ¹⁵All who are with me send greetings to you. Greet those who love us in the faith. Grace be with you all.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek archais exousiais ('rulers and authorities') refers to civil government, not spiritual powers (as in Eph 6:12). The Cretan churches needed this instruction because the false teachers' insubordination (1:10) may have extended to civic life. The phrase 'every good work' (pan ergon agathon) recurs throughout the Pastoral Epistles as a summary of the Christian life's practical aim.
2. The scope is universal: 'no one' (mēdena) and 'all people' (pantas anthrōpous) — Christian conduct is not reserved for fellow believers but extends to everyone. The Greek epieikeis ('gentle, yielding, gracious') describes a quality that does not insist on its strict rights — the opposite of the combative false teachers.
3. Paul includes himself ('we ourselves,' hēmeis) in the pre-conversion portrait — this is not self-righteous judgment but shared confession. The catalogue of seven vices describes the human condition apart from grace: intellectual darkness (anoētoi), rebellion (apeitheis), deception (planōmenoi), slavery to desire (douleuontes), malice (kakia), envy (phthonos), and mutual hatred (misountes allēlous). This dark backdrop makes the light of verses 4-7 all the more brilliant.
4. The 'but' (de) marks the decisive turn from human depravity to divine initiative. Two divine attributes — chrēstotēs ('goodness, kindness') and philanthrōpia ('love for humanity, benevolence') — are the source of salvation. The word philanthrōpia (literally 'love of human beings') is the root of English 'philanthropy.' Once again, epephanē ('appeared') describes God's saving act as a visible, historical manifestation — paralleling 2:11.
5. The denial is categorical: 'not from works in righteousness which we did' (ouk ex ergōn tōn en dikaiosynē ha epoiēsamen hēmeis). Salvation is kata to autou eleos ('according to his mercy') — entirely God's initiative. The phrase loutrou palingenesias ('washing of regeneration') combines baptismal imagery with the concept of new birth/new creation. The word palingenesia (palin + genesis, 'again + origin') occurs only here and in Matthew 19:28 (where it refers to cosmic renewal). 'Renewal of the Holy Spirit' (anakainōseōs pneumatōs hagiou) describes the Spirit's work of making all things new — echoing Ezekiel 36:25-27.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 36:25-27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verb execheen ('poured out') echoes Joel 2:28 and Acts 2:17-18 — Pentecost language applied to every believer's experience of the Spirit. The adverb plousiōs ('richly, abundantly') emphasizes the lavish generosity of God's gift. 'Through Jesus Christ our Savior' (dia Iēsou Christou tou sōtēros hēmōn) places Christ as the mediator of the Spirit's outpouring — the Savior title now returns to Christ (cf. v. 4 where it applied to God the Father).
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joel 2:28. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The sequence is complete: saved by mercy (v. 5), renewed by the Spirit (vv. 5-6), justified by grace (v. 7), and constituted as heirs (klēronomoi) of eternal life. Justification (dikaiothentes, 'having been declared righteous') is by grace (tē ekeinou chariti), not by works (v. 5). The inheritance language connects to the Old Testament land promise now transformed into 'the hope of eternal life' (kat' elpida zōēs aiōniou) — the same phrase that opened the letter (1:2).
8. The fifth and final 'trustworthy saying' (pistos ho logos) in the Pastoral Epistles likely refers back to verses 4-7. Paul's instruction to 'insist' (diabebaiousthai, 'affirm confidently, speak with certainty') shows that doctrine must be taught with conviction. The purpose is practical: believers are to 'devote themselves to good works' (kalōn ergōn proistasthai). Sound theology produces good works — the connection is causal, not coincidental.
9. The contrast with the 'profitable' things of verse 8 is explicit: these controversies are anōpheleis ('unprofitable, useless') and mataioi ('worthless, futile'). The 'genealogies' (genealogias) likely refer to speculative expansions of Old Testament genealogies — a feature of early Jewish and proto-gnostic speculation. 'Quarrels about the law' (machas nomikas) specify that the circumcision party (1:10) is still in view.
10. The Greek hairētikon ('divisive, factious, heretical') is the source of English 'heretic,' but its primary sense here is 'one who creates factions' rather than the later technical meaning of doctrinal heresy. The two-warning process before rejection shows that the goal is correction, not punishment — only persistent divisiveness warrants exclusion. This parallels the two-or-three-witness principle in Matthew 18:15-17 and Deuteronomy 19:15.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 19:15 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek exēstraptai ('has been turned inside out, has been perverted') is a perfect passive — the person's distortion is established and ongoing. The striking word autokatakrites ('self-condemned') appears only here in the New Testament. The divisive person's continued factious behavior after two warnings constitutes his own verdict — no external judgment is needed because his actions condemn him.

12. Artemas is mentioned only here in the New Testament. Tychicus appears in Acts 20:4, Ephesians 6:21, Colossians 4:7, and 2 Timothy 4:12. One of them will replace Titus on Crete so Titus can join Paul. Nicopolis ('victory city') — most likely the city in Epirus, on the western coast of Greece — was a common winter destination. Paul's travel plans indicate this letter was written before the final Roman imprisonment.
13. Zenas is called 'the lawyer' (ton nomikon) — possibly an expert in Jewish law or Roman law. He appears only here. Apollos is the well-known Alexandrian teacher of Acts 18:24-28 and 1 Corinthians 1:12. 'Speed on their way' (propempson) is a technical term for providing travelers with supplies and assistance for their journey — an early form of missionary support.
14. The phrase 'our people' (hoi hēmeteroi) refers to the Cretan believers. The instruction to 'devote themselves to good works' (kalōn ergōn proistasthai) repeats the language of verse 8 — the letter ends where it has been pointing throughout. The fruit metaphor (mē ōsin akarpoi, 'not be unfruitful') connects to Jesus' vine imagery (John 15:2, 4, 8) and the broader New Testament expectation that faith produces visible results.
15. The closing follows standard Pauline form: greetings from companions, greetings to the community, and a grace benediction. 'Those who love us in the faith' (tous philountas hēmas en pistei) specifies that the love is grounded in shared faith — this is not generic well-wishing but community solidarity. The final word is charis ('grace') — the same grace that appeared in 2:11 and saved in 3:5 now accompanies the community as Paul's parting gift. The SBLGNT does not include 'Amen,' which appears in some later manuscripts.

Philemon

Summary: *Paul writes from prison to Philemon, a wealthy Christian in Colossae, on behalf of Onesimus — Philemon's runaway slave who has become a believer through Paul's ministry. Paul appeals not by apostolic authority but by love, asking Philemon to receive Onesimus back 'no longer as a slave but as a beloved brother.' He offers to repay any debt Onesimus owes, subtly reminds Philemon of his own spiritual debt to Paul, and expresses confidence that Philemon will do even more than Paul asks. The letter is a masterpiece of pastoral rhetoric, applying the gospel of reconciliation to a concrete social situation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Philemon is the shortest of Paul's letters and the most personal. It contains no doctrinal exposition, no church controversy, and no prophecy — yet it demonstrates the gospel's power to transform human relationships more vividly than any theological treatise. Paul's rhetorical strategy is extraordinarily sophisticated: he begins with praise (vv. 4-7), establishes the basis for his appeal as love rather than authority (vv. 8-9), reveals Onesimus's new identity in Christ (vv. 10-16), makes a concrete financial offer (vv. 17-19), and applies gentle pressure through expressed confidence (vv. 20-21). The pivotal verse — 'no longer as a slave but more than a slave, as a beloved brother' (v. 16) — does not explicitly command manumission but creates a framework in which continued enslavement becomes morally impossible. The letter's inclusion in the canon testifies to the early church's recognition that the gospel must address the most ordinary and difficult human situations.*

Translation Friction: *Paul does not explicitly command Philemon to free Onesimus. This silence has been debated for centuries: some see Paul as accommodating slavery, others see the letter as an implicit but devastating case for manumission. We render the Greek without resolving this debate, noting Paul's careful rhetoric in the translator notes. The legal situation of Onesimus is also debated — he may have been a fugitive slave (the traditional reading) or a slave sent by Philemon who overstayed his mission. The phrase 'separated from you' (v. 15) is more neutral than 'ran away.'*

Connections: *Onesimus and the other figures appear in Colossians 4:9-17, linking these two letters. The reconciliation theme echoes 2 Corinthians 5:18-20 — God's ministry of reconciliation is now applied horizontally between master and slave. Paul's offer to absorb Onesimus's debt (v. 18) mirrors Christ's substitutionary work. The letter's rhetorical structure parallels ancient letters of intercession (e.g., Pliny's letters to Sabinianus on behalf of a freedman).*

¹Paul, a prisoner for Christ Jesus, and Timothy our brother, to Philemon our beloved fellow worker, ²To our dear Apphia, and Archippus our fellowsoldier, and to the church in your home:.. ³From god our father and the lord jesus christ, grace to you, and peace. ⁴I thank my God always when I remember you in my prayers, ⁵Listening of your love and faith, which you have toward the Lord Jesus, and toward all saints. ⁶I pray that your partnership in the faith will become effective as you come to understand every good thing we share in Christ Jesus. ⁷For I have derived much joy and comfort from your love, my brother, because the hearts of the saints have been refreshed through you. ⁸Accordingly, though I am bold enough in Christ to command you to do what is required, ⁹Yet for love's sake I instead beseech you, being these people an one as Paul the aged, and now also a prisoner of Jesus Christ. ¹⁰I appeal to you for my child, Onesimus, whose father I became in my imprisonment. ¹¹Formerly he was useless to you, but now he is indeed useful to you and to me. ¹²I am sending him back to you, sending my very heart. ¹³I would have been glad to keep him with me, in order that he might serve me on your behalf during my imprisonment for the gospel, ¹⁴However, without your mind would I do nothing. That your benefit should not be as it were of necessity, but willingly. ¹⁵For this perhaps is why he was separated from you for a while, that you might have him back forever, ¹⁶Indeed, not now as a servant, but above a servant, a brother dear, specially to me, but how much more to you, both in the flesh, and in the Lord? ¹⁷So if you consider me your partner, receive him as you would receive me. ¹⁸If he has wronged you at all, or owes you anything, charge that to my account. ¹⁹I, Paul, am writing this with my own hand: I will repay it — to say nothing of your owing me even your own self. ²⁰Yes, brother, I want some benefit from you in the Lord. Refresh my heart in Christ. ²¹Confident of your obedience, I write to you, knowing that you will do even more than I say. ²²At the same time, prepare a guest room for me, for I am hoping that through your prayers I will be graciously given to you. ²³Epaphras, my fellow prisoner in Christ Jesus, sends you greetings, ²⁴Marcus, Aristarchus, Demas, Lucas, my fellowlabourers. ²⁵The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ be with your spirit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Paul identifies himself not as an apostle but as a 'prisoner' (desmios) — a deliberate rhetorical choice. The appeal that follows will be made from the position of one who has already sacrificed his freedom for the gospel, not from a position of institutional authority. Philemon is called 'beloved' (agapētō) and 'fellow worker' (synergō) — terms that establish the relationship as one of mutual respect and shared mission before the request is made.
2. Apphia is likely Philemon's wife and Archippus possibly their son (cf. Colossians 4:17). By addressing the letter not only to Philemon but to his household and the entire house church, Paul ensures that the appeal is not merely private — the community will hear it and hold Philemon accountable. The 'church in your house' (tē kat' oikon sou ekklēsia) confirms that early Christian assemblies met in private homes.
3. The standard Pauline greeting. The plural 'you' (hymen) addresses the entire group named in verses 1-2, though the letter's content primarily concerns Philemon.
4. The thanksgiving section (vv. 4-7) is the rhetorical foundation for the appeal. Paul establishes Philemon's character as generous and faithful before asking him to live up to that reputation. The phrase 'my God' (tō theō mou) is warmly personal.
5. Paul has heard reports of Philemon's love and faith — the two qualities that the forthcoming appeal will test. The structure may be a chiasm (ABBA): love—faith—Lord Jesus—all the saints, yielding faith toward the Lord Jesus and love toward all the saints. This reading connects the appeal: if Philemon loves 'all the saints,' that must now include Onesimus.
6. This verse is notoriously difficult to translate. The word koinōnia ('sharing, partnership, fellowship') may refer to Philemon's generosity, his evangelistic witness, or the mutual participation of faith. Paul prays that this koinōnia will become 'effective' (energēs, 'active, productive') through recognition (epignōsei) of every good thing in the community. The prayer subtly sets up the appeal: if Philemon can recognize the good that Christ produces in people, he will see that good in Onesimus.
7. The word splachna ('hearts,' literally 'inner organs, intestines') appears three times in this short letter (vv. 7, 12, 20), forming a verbal thread. Philemon has 'refreshed' (anapepautai, 'given rest to, renewed') the hearts of believers — Paul will soon ask him to refresh Paul's own heart (v. 20) by receiving Onesimus. The affectionate address 'brother' (adelphē) at the end of the sentence sets the emotional tone for what follows.
8. Paul's rhetoric is masterful: he mentions his right to command (epitassein, 'to order, to give authoritative instructions') precisely so he can renounce it. By stating what he could do but choosing not to, he makes the appeal more powerful — Philemon's response will be a free act of love rather than coerced compliance. The word anēkon ('what is fitting, what is proper, what is required') implies that what Paul asks is not optional but morally necessary.

9. The word *parakalō* ('I appeal, I urge, I encourage') replaces the command language of verse 8. Paul grounds his appeal in love (*agapēn*), not authority. He adds two qualifications designed to evoke compassion: he is a *presbyteros* ('old man' or possibly 'ambassador' — the words *presbyteros* and *presbutēs* differ by one letter, and some manuscripts read the latter) and a prisoner (*desmios*). The em-dashes set off this self-description as an emotional aside.
10. Paul delays naming Onesimus until the end of the sentence — a deliberate rhetorical strategy. Before Philemon hears the slave's name, he hears 'my child' (*tou emou teknou*), establishing the relationship. The verb *egennēsa* ('I fathered, I begot') indicates Paul led Onesimus to faith during his imprisonment. The name *Onēsīmon* ('useful, profitable') will be punned on in the next verse.
11. Paul plays on Onesimus's name (*Onēsīmos*, 'useful, beneficial'): the one whose name means 'useful' was once *achrēston* ('useless') but is now *euchrēston* ('very useful'). There may also be a further pun: *achrēstos* sounds like a-Christos ('without Christ'), and *euchrēstos* sounds like eu-Christos ('good in Christ'). The transformation from useless to useful encapsulates the gospel's power to change a person's identity and value.
12. The second use of *splanchna* ('heart, inner being') is the most emotionally charged: in sending Onesimus back, Paul is sending his own heart. The identification is complete — Onesimus is not merely a protege but an extension of Paul's own person. Any treatment of Onesimus will be experienced by Paul himself. The SBLGNT does not include 'receive him' (*proslabou*), which appears in some manuscripts.
13. Paul states his preference — he wanted to keep Onesimus — but immediately subordinates it to Philemon's rights. The phrase 'on your behalf' (*hyper sou*) is significant: Onesimus's service to Paul would have been a proxy for Philemon's own service. Paul frames Onesimus's presence as a gift from Philemon, not as his own possession.
14. The contrast between *anankē* ('compulsion, necessity') and *hekousion* ('voluntary, of one's own accord') is the letter's ethical crux. Paul could have kept Onesimus and presented Philemon with a *fait accompli*. Instead, he preserves Philemon's moral agency — the right response must be freely chosen to have moral value. This principle reflects Paul's broader theology of grace: God does not coerce love but invites it.
15. The verb *echōrīsthē* ('he was separated') uses the divine passive — avoiding the harsh 'he ran away' and suggesting that God's providence was at work in the separation. The adverb *tacha* ('perhaps') shows appropriate tentativeness about reading divine purpose into events. The contrast between 'for a while' (*pros hōran*, literally 'for an hour') and 'forever' (*aiōnion*) reframes the entire episode: a temporary loss has become an eternal gain.
16. This is the letter's theological climax. Onesimus returns to Philemon's household with a transformed identity: 'no longer as a slave' (*ouketi hōs doulon*) but 'more than a slave — a beloved brother' (*hyper doulon, adelphon agapēton*). The phrase 'both in the flesh and in the Lord' (*kai en sarki kai en kyriō*) means that the brother-relationship is not merely spiritual ('in the Lord') but also operates in the everyday, physical realm ('in the flesh'). Paul does not formally command manumission, but the logic is clear: you cannot own your brother. The phrase 'how much more to you' (*posō de mallon soi*) argues that if Onesimus is precious to Paul, he should be even more so to Philemon, who will have him present daily.
17. The word *koinōnon* ('partner, one who shares in common, associate') echoes the *koinōnia* of verse 6. Paul draws on the established partnership to leverage the appeal: if Philemon and Paul are partners, then Onesimus — who is Paul's 'very heart' (v. 12) — must be welcomed as Paul himself. The verb *proslabou* ('receive, take to yourself, welcome') is a hospitality term implying full acceptance into the household.
18. The conditional 'if' (*ei*) is diplomatic rather than doubtful — Onesimus likely did wrong Philemon or incur a debt (perhaps by stealing to fund his flight). The verb *elloga* ('charge to my account, reckon to me') is an accounting term — Paul creates a formal IOU. This is substitutionary language: Paul absorbs Onesimus's debt, just as Christ absorbed humanity's debt (Colossians 2:14). The parallel is unmistakable and intentional.
19. Paul signs the IOU in his own handwriting, making it legally binding. Then, in one of the most brilliantly ironic sentences in ancient literature, he adds: 'to say nothing of your owing me even your own self' (*hina mē legō soi hoti kai seauton moi prosopheileis*). The phrase 'to say nothing of' (*hina mē legō*) is a rhetorical device called *paralipsis* — saying something by claiming not to say it. The effect is devastating: Onesimus may owe Philemon money, but Philemon owes Paul his very soul (presumably Paul led Philemon to faith). The larger debt swallows the smaller one.
20. The verb *onaimēn* ('may I have benefit, may I have profit') is another pun on the name *Onesimos* ('beneficial, profitable'). Paul asks Philemon to be an 'Onesimus' to Paul — to live up to the very quality that Onesimus's name represents. The third appearance of *splanchna* ('heart') closes the literary frame opened in verse 7: Philemon has refreshed the hearts of the saints; now Paul asks him to refresh Paul's own heart by welcoming Onesimus.
21. The word *hypakoē* ('obedience') is striking — Paul has insisted on appealing rather than commanding, yet he describes Philemon's response as 'obedience.' The gospel appeal carries its own authority: to refuse love's request is a form of disobedience. The phrase 'even more than I say' (*hyper ha legō poiēseis*) leaves open the possibility that Paul hopes for manumission, or even that Philemon will send Onesimus back to Paul. By not specifying, Paul leaves room for Philemon to exceed expectations.
22. The request for lodging adds gentle pressure: Paul plans to visit and will see firsthand how Philemon has responded. The verb *charisthēsomai* ('I will be graciously given, I will be granted as a gift') uses the *charis* root — Paul's release from prison will be a gift of grace mediated through the Colossians' prayers. The request also expresses optimism about his release.
23. In Colossians 4:10, Aristarchus is the 'fellow prisoner' while Epaphras is not; here the designation is reversed. Paul may use the term *synaichmalōtos* ('co-prisoner of war') loosely for anyone who shares his captivity, whether literally imprisoned or voluntarily present. Epaphras, as founder of the Colossian church, has a personal connection to Philemon.

- 24.** The same names appear in Colossians 4:10-14, confirming that both letters were sent at the same time. All four are called *synergoi* ('fellow workers, co-laborers') — an egalitarian designation that includes both Jews (Mark, Aristarchus) and Gentiles (Demas, Luke) in the shared work of the gospel.
- 25.** The closing benediction matches Philippians 4:23 almost exactly. The plural 'your' (*hymōn*) addresses the entire community, not just Philemon. Grace — the undeserved generosity of God — is the letter's final word, as it was the first (v. 3). The entire letter is framed by grace: the same grace that freed Onesimus from sin now calls Philemon to free Onesimus from slavery. The SBLGNT omits the final 'Amen' of the *Textus Receptus*.

Hebrews

1

Summary: *Hebrews 1 establishes the supremacy of God's revelation through his Son over all prior communication through prophets. The Son is declared the exact representation of God's nature, the sustainer of all things, and the one who accomplished purification for sins before sitting at God's right hand. The chapter then marshals a chain of Old Testament quotations to demonstrate the Son's superiority over angels, establishing a theme that will dominate chapters 1-2.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening period (verses 1-4) is one of the most carefully constructed sentences in the New Testament, a single Greek sentence with seven descriptors of the Son. The catena of Old Testament quotations (verses 5-13) draws from Psalms 2, 104, 45, 102, and 110, plus 2 Samuel 7 and Deuteronomy 32, weaving a comprehensive scriptural argument. The author assumes his audience recognizes that angels mediated the Mosaic law (cf. Galatians 3:19, Acts 7:53), making the Son-versus-angels comparison directly relevant to the old covenant versus new covenant argument.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the author is unknown; the letter is anonymous. The Greek style is the most polished in the New Testament. The phrase 'exact representation' (charakteer) in verse 3 carries philosophical weight that must be rendered without importing later Nicene categories. We render the Greek as given, noting theological implications in the study layer.*

Connections: *The opening echoes Genesis 1 (creation through the Son), Proverbs 8 (Wisdom as agent of creation), and Colossians 1:15-20 (the cosmic Christ hymn). The quotation from Psalm 110:1 in verse 13 becomes the most important Old Testament text in Hebrews, returning in chapters 5, 7, 8, 10, and 12. The 'purification for sins' language anticipates the extended priestly argument of chapters 7-10.*

¹In many parts and in many ways, God spoke long ago to our ancestors through the prophets, ²Has in these last days spoken to us by his Son, whom he has appointed heir of all matters, by whom as well he made the worlds; ³He is the radiance of God's glory and the exact expression of his being, sustaining all things by his powerful word. After he had made purification for sins, he sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high, ⁴Being appointed so greatly better than the angels, as he has by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they. ⁵For to which of the angels did God ever say, "You are my Son; today I have fathered you"? Or again, "I will be a Father to him, and he will be a Son to me"? ⁶And again, when he brings the

firstborn into the world, he says, "Let all God's angels worship him." ⁷Of the angels he says, "He makes his angels winds, and his servants a flame of fire." ⁸But of the Son he says, "Your throne, O God, is forever and ever, and the scepter of uprightness is the scepter of your kingdom. ⁹You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness; therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of joy beyond your companions." ¹⁰And, "You, Lord, laid the foundation of the earth in the beginning, and the heavens are the work of your hands. ¹¹They will perish, but you remain. They will all wear out like a garment. ¹²You will roll them up like a cloak, and like a garment they will be changed. But you are the same, and your years will never end." ¹³But to which of the angels has he ever said, "Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet"? ¹⁴Are they not all serving spirits, sent out to serve those who are about to inherit salvation?

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *polymerōs kai polytropōs* ('in many parts and in many ways') is an alliterative pair that sets the rhetorical tone for the entire letter. The first term suggests fragmentary revelation — given piece by piece — while the second suggests varied modes (visions, dreams, direct speech, enacted parables). Together they characterize Old Testament revelation as genuine but incomplete.
1. We render 'fathers' (*patrasin*) as 'ancestors' since the reference is to the entire covenant community's forebears, not exclusively male figures.
2. The phrase *ep' eschatou tōn hēmerōn toutōn* ('in the last of these days') signals an eschatological framework — the Son's arrival inaugurates the final era. The anarthrous 'a Son' (*en huiō*, without the article) emphasizes the quality of sonship rather than identifying a specific person, though the context makes the identity clear.
2. The Greek *aiōnas* ('ages') is broader than the KJV's 'worlds' — it encompasses both time and the created order. The Son is the agent through whom God structured reality itself.
3. The Greek *apaugasma* can mean either 'radiance' (light emanating from a source) or 'reflection' (light bouncing off a surface). The context favors 'radiance' since the Son is described as active agent, not passive mirror. The term *charaktēr* ('exact expression') denotes the precise imprint made by a stamping tool — what emerges is identical to the original. This is stronger than 'image' (*eikōn*).
3. The participle *poiēsamenos* ('having made') is middle voice, suggesting the Son accomplished purification through his own action. The aorist tense marks this as a completed, once-for-all act — a contrast with the repeated sacrifices of the Levitical system that the author will develop in chapters 9–10.
3. The phrase 'sat down at the right hand' alludes to Psalm 110:1, the most quoted Old Testament verse in the New Testament and the theological backbone of Hebrews.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 110:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek *genomenos* ('having become') does not imply the Son was once inferior to angels. The verb marks his exaltation after the incarnation and cross — his human journey culminated in a publicly demonstrated superiority. The 'name' (*onoma*) is debated: it likely refers to 'Son' (as verses 5–14 will argue), though some scholars see it as the divine name itself. The verb *keklēronomēken* ('has inherited') connects to verse 2's appointment as 'heir of all things.'
5. The first quotation is from Psalm 2:7, a royal enthronement psalm originally spoken at the coronation of Davidic kings. The author of Hebrews applies it to Christ's exaltation. The verb *gegennēka* ('I have begotten/fathered') in the psalm context refers to the king's divine adoption at coronation, not biological generation.
5. The second quotation is from 2 Samuel 7:14, God's promise to David regarding his descendant — the foundational text of messianic hope. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'None' — God never addressed any angel with these words.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 2:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Samuel 7:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The quotation derives from Deuteronomy 32:43 (Septuagint) or Psalm 97:7. The Septuagint reading of Deuteronomy includes 'let all God's angels worship him,' which is absent from the Masoretic Text — the author uses the Greek Old Testament. The term *prōtotokon* ('firstborn') denotes preeminence and inheritance rights, not chronological birth order. The 'world' (*oikoumenē*) is literally 'the inhabited earth,' possibly referring to the incarnation or to the second coming.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 32:43. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 97:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

7. Quoting Psalm 104:4 (Septuagint). The Greek pneumata can mean either 'spirits' or 'winds' — the Hebrew of Psalm 104:4 speaks of God making winds his messengers, which the Septuagint reversed to 'making his messengers/angels winds.' The author's point is that angels are created, mutable servants — they can be transformed into wind or fire — while the Son's throne is eternal (verse 8).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 104:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Quoting Psalm 45:6-7, originally a royal wedding psalm. The vocative 'O God' (ho theos) addressed to the Son is the most direct divine attribution in the catena. Some scholars read it as 'God is your throne' or 'your throne is God's,' but the author of Hebrews clearly reads it as an address to the Son as God. The Greek euthytētos ('uprightness, straightness') is rendered 'uprightness' rather than 'righteousness' to distinguish it from dikaiosunē.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 45:6-7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The continuation of Psalm 45:6-7. The phrase 'God, your God' (ho theos, ho theos sou) creates a striking paradox — the one addressed as 'God' in verse 8 also has a God. This tension is central to New Testament Christology. The anointing with 'oil of joy' (elaion agalliaseōs) refers to the coronation anointing of kings, connecting to 'Christ' (Christos = 'anointed one'). The Greek anomian ('lawlessness') is rendered as such rather than the KJV's 'iniquity' for precision.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 45:6-7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Quoting Psalm 102:25-27 (Septuagint 101:26-28). In the original psalm, these words are addressed to YHWH. The author of Hebrews applies them to the Son without explanation, implying that the Son shares the divine identity of the Creator. The phrase kat' archas ('in the beginning') echoes Genesis 1:1 and John 1:1.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 102:25-27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The contrast is between the created order (heavens and earth) that will perish and the Son who endures. The clothing metaphor — creation wearing out like an old garment — is vivid and distinctly Hebrew in character (cf. Isaiah 51:6). The present tense 'you remain' (diameneis) against the future 'they will perish' (apolountai) emphasizes the Son's unchanging nature.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 102:25-27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 51:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb helixeis ('you will roll up') pictures the Son folding up the old creation like clothing being put away — a striking image of sovereign authority over the material universe. The declaration 'you are the same' (su de ho autos ei) asserts the Son's immutability, which becomes a key theme in Hebrews (cf. 13:8, 'Jesus Christ is the same yesterday, today, and forever'). This completes the Psalm 102 quotation.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 102:25-27. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Quoting Psalm 110:1, the most quoted Old Testament text in the New Testament and the theological anchor of Hebrews. The psalm presents a divine invitation to a human king to share God's throne — an honor never extended to any angel. The 'right hand' (dexiōn) is the position of co-regency and highest honor. This verse bookends the catena with verse 5's rhetorical question ('to which of the angels?'), forming an inclusio. Psalm 110 will return in Hebrews 5:6, 7:17, 7:21 regarding the Melchizedek priesthood.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 110:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'Yes.' Angels are leitourgika pneumata ('ministering/serving spirits') — their role is service, not sovereignty. The verb apostellomena ('sent out') is related to 'apostle' (apostolos) — angels are commissioned agents. The phrase 'those about to inherit salvation' (tous mellontas klēronomein sōtērian) echoes the Son's inheritance language from verses 2 and 4, but here applied to believers who share in the Son's inheritance.

2

Summary: *Hebrews 2 issues the first of the letter's warning passages (verses 1-4), urging listeners not to drift from the message delivered through the Son. The author then explains why the Son became lower than the angels — not because he was inferior, but because he took on humanity to share in flesh and blood, to die, and thereby to destroy the devil's power over death. Christ's solidarity with humanity is complete: he was made like his brothers in every way so he could serve as a merciful and faithful high priest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The quotation of Psalm 8:4-6 in verses 6-8 is a masterful reinterpretation. The psalm celebrates humanity's exalted place in creation; the author reads it as a description of Christ, the true human who fulfills humanity's intended role. The phrase 'tasting death for everyone' (verse 9) is startlingly physical. The description of Jesus as 'pioneer' (archēgos) of salvation introduces a term that will recur in 12:2.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'for a little while lower than the angels' (verse 7) could also mean 'a little lower than the angels' — the Greek brachy ti is ambiguous between time and degree, matching the same ambiguity in Psalm 8. We note both readings. The concept of Jesus being 'made perfect through suffering' (verse 10) does not imply moral imperfection but vocational completion.*

Connections: *The warning passage (verses 1-4) anticipates the more severe warnings of 6:1-8 and 10:26-31. The high priest theme introduced in verse 17 becomes the central argument of chapters 3-10. The 'pioneer' (archēgos) language returns in 12:2. Psalm 8 connects to the creation mandate of Genesis 1:26-28.*

¹For this reason, we must pay much closer attention to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away. ²For if the message spoken through angels proved reliable, and every violation and act of disobedience received its just penalty, ³How will we escape, if we neglect so remarkable salvation. Which at the first started to be spoken by the Lord, and was confirmed to us by them that listened to him;. ⁴God as well bearing them witness, both with signs and wonders, and with divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Spirit, in keeping with to his own will? ⁵For it is not to angels that he has subjected the coming world, about which we are speaking. ⁶But someone has testified somewhere, saying, "What is a human being that you remember him, or a son of man that you care for him? ⁷You made him for a little while lower than the angels; you crowned him with glory and honor, ⁸You placed all things under his feet." Now in placing all things under him, God left nothing outside his control. Yet at present, we do not yet see all things subjected to him. ⁹But we do see Jesus — who was made for a little while lower than the angels — now crowned with glory and honor because of his suffering of death, so that by the grace of God he might taste death for everyone. ¹⁰For it was fitting for him, for whom and through whom all things exist, in bringing many sons and daughters to glory, to make the pioneer of their salvation perfect through sufferings. ¹¹For both the one who sanctifies and those who are being sanctified all come from one origin. For this reason, he is not ashamed to call them brothers and sisters, ¹²Declaring, I will declare your name to my brothers and sisters, in the midst of the church will I sing praise to you. ¹³And again, "I will put my trust in him." And again, "Here I am, and the children God has given me." ¹⁴Therefore, since the children share in flesh and blood, he himself likewise shared in the same things, so that through death he might destroy the one who holds the power of death — that is, the devil — ¹⁵Deliver them who by way of fear of death were all their lifetime subject to bondage. ¹⁶For surely it is not angels he helps, but the descendants of Abraham. ¹⁷Therefore he had to be made like his brothers and sisters in every way, so that he might become a merciful and faithful high priest in things relating to God, to make atonement for the sins of the people. ¹⁸For because he himself suffered when he was tested, he is able to help those who are being tested.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek pararuōmen ('drift away') is a nautical metaphor — a ship slipping past its harbor because the crew was inattentive. The danger is not active rebellion but passive neglect. The verb prosechein ('to pay attention, to hold course toward') sustains the nautical image. This is the first of five warning passages in Hebrews (2:1-4; 3:7-4:13; 5:11-6:12; 10:26-31; 12:25-29).

2. The 'message spoken through angels' refers to the Mosaic law, which Jewish tradition held was mediated by angels at Sinai (cf. Acts 7:53, Galatians 3:19, Deuteronomy 33:2 LXX). The argument is from lesser to greater (a fortiori): if disobeying the angel-mediated law brought punishment, how much more serious is neglecting the Son-delivered message. The terms *parabasis* ('violation, stepping across a boundary') and *parakoē* ('disobedience, failure to hear') pair transgression of act with transgression of attention.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 33:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The rhetorical question expects no answer — there is no escape. The verb *amelēsantes* ('having neglected') continues the theme of passive drift rather than active rejection. The chain of transmission is explicit: the Lord spoke, those who heard him confirmed it to 'us.' This places the author in the second generation of Christians who received the gospel from eyewitnesses, which has implications for dating and authorship.
4. The fourfold attestation — signs (*sēmeiois*), wonders (*terasín*), powerful deeds (*dynamésin*), and Spirit distributions (*pneumatós hagiou merismois*) — parallels the language used in Acts for apostolic authentication. The compound verb *synepimarturomentos* ('testifying alongside, co-witnessing') means God added his own testimony to the human witnesses. The 'distributions' (*merismois*) of the Spirit suggests diverse gifts apportioned to different believers, echoing 1 Corinthians 12.
5. The phrase *tēn oikoumenēn tēn mellousan* ('the coming world/inhabited earth') introduces an eschatological horizon. The present world may involve angelic powers (cf. Daniel 10:13, 20-21), but the world to come belongs to the Son and, through him, to redeemed humanity. This sets up the Psalm 8 quotation that follows.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 10:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Quoting Psalm 8:4-6 (LXX). The vague citation formula 'someone has testified somewhere' (*pou tis*) is not carelessness — it directs attention to the divine author rather than the human psalmist. The Greek *anthrōpos* and *huios anthrōpou* are rendered 'human being' and 'son of man' respectively. In the original psalm, these are parallel terms for humanity in general; the author of Hebrews will read them christologically.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 8:4-6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek *brachu ti* can mean 'for a little while' (temporal) or 'a little bit' (degree). The Hebrew of Psalm 8 uses *me'at*, which is similarly ambiguous. The author of Hebrews reads it temporally — the Son was lower than angels only during his brief incarnation, not permanently. This temporal reading drives the argument: the lowering was temporary; the crowning is permanent. The SBLGNT omits 'and set him over the works of your hands,' which appears in some manuscripts.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 8:4-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The author's commentary on Psalm 8 contains a crucial 'not yet' (*oupō*) — the subjection of all things is real but not yet fully realized. This 'already but not yet' tension is characteristic of New Testament eschatology. The word *anypotakton* ('unsubdued, outside of subjection') emphasizes that the divine intention leaves no exceptions, even though current reality shows incomplete fulfillment.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 8:4-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The name 'Jesus' appears here for the first time in Hebrews, and its placement is emphatic — after the description of lowering and before the description of crowning. The phrase *geusētai thanatou* ('taste death') is viscerally physical — death is experienced, not merely encountered. The preposition *hyper* ('for, on behalf of') with *pantos* ('everyone') asserts the universal scope of Christ's death. Some manuscripts read 'apart from God' (*chōris theou*) instead of 'by the grace of God' (*chariti theou*), but the SBLGNT follows the majority reading.
10. The verb *eprepen* ('it was fitting') argues not from necessity but from divine appropriateness — God's character made this the right path. The Greek *archēgon* ('pioneer, founder, leader, captain') denotes one who goes first and opens the way for others to follow. It will recur in 12:2 for Jesus as 'pioneer and perfecter of faith.' The verb *teleiōsai* ('to make perfect, to bring to completion') does not imply moral deficiency but vocational completion — Jesus was made fully fit for his saving role through the experience of suffering.
10. We render 'sons' (*huios*) as 'sons and daughters' since the Greek plural can be inclusive and the theological point — believers being brought to glory — applies to all.
11. The phrase *ex henos* ('from one') is deliberately ambiguous — it could mean 'from one Father,' 'from one source,' or 'of one nature.' The ambiguity serves the author's purpose: whatever the precise reference, the sanctifier and the sanctified share a common origin, which grounds Jesus's willingness to identify with humanity. The present passive participle *hagiazomenoi* ('being sanctified') suggests an ongoing process, while the active *hagiazōn* ('sanctifying') points to Jesus as the agent.
12. Quoting Psalm 22:22. This psalm begins with the cry of dereliction ('My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?') and moves to praise in the midst of the assembly. The author of Hebrews places these words on Jesus's lips — the Son identifies believers as 'my brothers' (*adelphois mou*). The Greek *ekklēsia* ('assembly, congregation') here translates the Hebrew *qahal* of the psalm.

12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 22:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Two quotations from Isaiah 8:17-18. The first ('I will put my trust in him') shows the Son exercising the same faith that believers exercise — a profound statement of solidarity. The second ('Here I am and the children') originally referred to Isaiah and his children as signs to Israel; the author applies it to Jesus and his spiritual children. Together, these quotations establish that the Son shares humanity's dependence on God.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 8:17-18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The verb *kekoinōnēken* ('have shared, have participated in') is perfect tense — humanity's participation in flesh and blood is an ongoing state. The verb *meteschen* ('he shared in') is aorist — the Son's participation was a decisive, historical act. The difference in tense is theologically significant: we are always flesh and blood; he entered that condition by choice. The verb *katargēsē* ('destroy, render powerless, nullify') does not necessarily mean annihilation but rather the stripping of effective power.
15. The phrase *dia pantos tou zēn* ('throughout all of living') emphasizes that the fear of death pervaded the entirety of human existence, not just its final moments. The word *douleia* ('slavery, bondage') characterizes the human condition under death's shadow as a form of captivity. Christ's death breaks the power of this fear by removing death's finality.
16. The verb *epilambanetai* ('takes hold of, helps, grasps') is debated. The KJV reads it as 'took on the nature of,' but the more natural meaning is 'takes hold of to help' or 'comes to the aid of.' The present tense suggests ongoing action: Christ continually assists Abraham's descendants, not just at the incarnation. The phrase 'seed of Abraham' (*spermatos Abraam*) connects to the covenant promises of Genesis 12, 15, and 17.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This is the first appearance of *archiereus* ('high priest') in Hebrews — the title that will dominate the letter's central argument. The verb *hilaskesthai* ('to make atonement, to propitiate, to make expiation') corresponds to the Hebrew *kipper* (כִּפֶּר) and the mercy seat (*hilastērion/kapporet*). The requirement that the high priest be both 'merciful' (*eleēmōn*) and 'faithful' (*pistos*) defines the two qualities that chapters 3-5 will develop — faithfulness in chapter 3 (comparison with Moses) and mercy in chapter 5 (sympathy with human weakness).
18. The Greek *peirastheis/peirazomenois* ('tested/being tested') can mean either 'tempted' or 'tested' — the semantic range covers both moral temptation and trial by suffering. In context, the emphasis is on suffering as the mode of testing. The perfect tense *peponthen* ('has suffered') indicates that Jesus's suffering remains a present reality in his experience — it is not something he has left behind but something that equips him to help. The verb *boēthēsai* ('to help, to come to aid') is the same word used for crying out for help in battle.

3

Summary: *Hebrews 3 compares Jesus to Moses, arguing that while Moses was faithful as a servant in God's house, Jesus is faithful as a Son over God's house. The chapter then transitions into an extended warning passage based on Psalm 95:7-11, urging the audience not to repeat the wilderness generation's rebellion at Meribah. The hardening of hearts, the provocation in the wilderness, and the failure to enter God's rest become a cautionary paradigm for the Christian community.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The comparison with Moses is structurally daring — Moses held unparalleled authority in Judaism, yet the author subordinates him to Christ not by diminishing Moses but by elevating the category: servant versus Son, part of the house versus builder of the house. The Psalm 95 quotation initiates an argument that extends through chapter 4, making it the longest sustained Old Testament exposition in Hebrews.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'apostle and high priest of our confession' (verse 1) is the only place in the New Testament where Jesus is called 'apostle.' The warning language is strong — 'evil, unbelieving heart' (verse 12) — and the question of whether genuine believers can fall away remains debated. We render the text without resolving the theological tension.*

Connections: *The Moses comparison continues themes from Exodus 32-34 and Numbers 14. Psalm 95's 'rest' (*katapausis*) links to Genesis 2:2 (God's Sabbath rest) and will be developed in chapter 4. The 'house' language connects to the temple/tabernacle theology of chapters 8-9. The warning echoes Deuteronomy's exhortations to faithfulness.*

¹Therefore, holy brothers and sisters who share in a heavenly calling, consider Jesus, the apostle and high priest of our confession, ²He was faithful to the one who appointed him, just as Moses was faithful in all of God's household. ³For Jesus

has been considered worthy of more glory than Moses, just as the builder of a house has more honor than the house itself. ⁴For every house is built by someone, but the builder of all things is God. ⁵Now Moses was faithful in all God's house as a servant, as a testimony to the things that would be spoken later. ⁶But Christ was faithful as a Son over God's house — and we are his house, if we hold firmly to our confidence and the hope we boast in. ⁷Therefore, as the Holy Spirit says, "Today, if you hear his voice, ⁸Indeed, harden not your hearts, as in the provocation, in the day of temptation in the desert:. ⁹Indeed, when your fathers tempted me, proved me, and noticed my works forty years. ¹⁰For this reason I was grieved with that generation, and stated, They do alway err in their heart. Then they have not known my ways. ¹¹So I swore in my anger, 'They will never enter my rest.'" ¹²Watch out, brothers and sisters, so that none of you has an evil, unbelieving heart that turns away from the living God. ¹³Instead, encourage one another every day, as long as it is still called 'today,' so that none of you may be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin. ¹⁴For we have become partners with Christ, if indeed we hold our original confidence firm until the end. ¹⁵As it is said, "Today, if you hear his voice, do not harden your hearts as in the rebellion." ¹⁶For who were the ones who heard and rebelled? Was it not all those who came out of Egypt led by Moses? ¹⁷And with whom was he angry for forty years? Was it not with those who sinned, whose bodies fell in the wilderness? ¹⁸And to whom did he swear that they would not enter his rest, if not to those who were disobedient? ¹⁹So we see that they were unable to enter because of unbelief.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the only verse in the New Testament that calls Jesus 'apostle' (apostolon, 'sent one'). The title pairs with 'high priest' to define Jesus's dual role: sent from God to humanity (apostle) and representing humanity before God (high priest). The word 'confession' (homologias) refers to the community's shared profession of faith. The verb katanoēsatē ('consider, fix your mind on, examine carefully') demands sustained intellectual attention, not casual thought.
2. The verb poiēsanti ('the one who made/appointed him') could mean 'created' or 'appointed.' In context, 'appointed' is more suitable since the comparison is about role and function, not ontology. The phrase 'in all his house' (en holō tō oikō autou) alludes to Numbers 12:7 (LXX), where God vindicates Moses: 'He is faithful in all my house.' The author affirms Moses's faithfulness before surpassing it.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 12:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The argument is an analogy: as builder exceeds building, so Christ exceeds Moses. The verb kataskeuāsas ('the one who built, prepared, established') implies not just construction but design and purpose. Moses is part of the house (the people of God); Jesus built the house. The passive ēxiōtai ('has been considered worthy') is a divine passive — God has conferred this greater glory on Jesus.
4. This verse serves as a bridge in the argument. If every house requires a builder, and God is the ultimate builder of all things, then the one who built God's house (verse 3) operates with divine authority. The implication — that Jesus as builder shares in the creative work of God — is left for the reader to infer.
5. The Greek therapōn ('servant, attendant') is a more honorable term than doulos ('slave'). It denotes a trusted household attendant — Moses's role was noble but subordinate. The phrase eis martyrion tōn lalēthēsomenōn ('as a testimony to things that would be spoken later') casts Moses's entire ministry as preparatory and prophetic — pointing forward to Christ's fuller revelation.
6. The contrast is complete: Moses was faithful in (en) the house as servant; Christ is faithful over (epi) the house as Son. The conditional 'if' (ean) introduces the first of several conditional statements in the warning passages — membership in God's house is genuine but contingent on perseverance. The Greek parrēsia ('confidence, boldness, openness of speech') and kauchēma ('boast, ground of boasting') describe an outward, expressive faith. Some manuscripts add 'firm to the end' (mechri telous bebaian), but the SBLGNT omits it.
7. The quotation of Psalm 95:7-11 begins here and continues through verse 11. The attribution to the Holy Spirit (to pneuma to hagion) rather than to David reflects the author's view that Scripture's ultimate author is God himself. The word 'today' (sēmeron) becomes a key term — the author will apply this 'today' to the present moment of his audience in verses 13 and 15.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 95:7-11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek parapikrasmo ('rebellion, provocation, embitterment') translates the Hebrew Meribah ('strife, contention') from Psalm 95:8, which refers to the events at Meribah and Massah (Exodus 17:1-7). The Septuagint translates the place name as a description of the act. The verb sklērūnēte ('harden') echoes the Pharaoh narrative in Exodus — the same word group describes Pharaoh's hardened heart. The author warns against repeating the pattern.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 95:7-11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 17:1-7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The shift from 'do not harden your hearts' to God speaking in first person ('me,' 'my works') is dramatic — God himself recounts the offense. The Greek dokimasia ('testing, trial, proving') suggests they put God on trial, demanding proof. Despite seeing God's works (erga mou), they still refused to trust — a failure of will, not evidence.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 95:7-11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The author separates 'forty years' from the preceding verse and attaches it to God's anger rather than to the works — a subtle interpretive move that emphasizes the duration of God's displeasure. The verb prosōchthisa ('was angry, was disgusted, was grieved') is stronger than mere sadness — it carries overtones of revulsion. The Greek planōntai ('go astray, wander') pictures a people who have lost their way, a deliberate irony for a generation literally wandering in the wilderness.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 95:7-11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek ei eiseleusontai ('if they will enter') reproduces a Hebrew oath formula — 'if they enter' means 'they certainly will not enter.' The concept of God's 'rest' (katapausin mou) is multivalent: it refers to the promised land (which that generation forfeited), to God's Sabbath rest (Genesis 2:2), and potentially to an eschatological rest that chapter 4 will develop. The divine oath seals the exclusion with ultimate finality.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 95:7-11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb blepete ('watch out, be on guard') shifts from psalm quotation to direct application. The phrase kardia ponēra apistias ('evil heart of unbelief') is shocking in its directness — unbelief is not a minor failing but an evil disposition. The infinitive apostēnai ('to turn away, to stand away from') is the root of 'apostasy.' The title 'living God' (theou zōntos) heightens the gravity: the one they would be turning from is not an abstraction but the living, active God.
13. The imperative parakaleite ('encourage, exhort') is plural and reciprocal — perseverance is a community project, not an individual achievement. The phrase achris hou to sēmeron kaleitai ('as long as it is still called today') turns the psalm's 'today' into a limited window of opportunity. The personification of sin as deceptive (apatē tēs hamartias) suggests that the hardening process is gradual and disguised — people do not recognize their own drift until the heart is already hardened.
14. The term metochoi ('partners, sharers, participants') is stronger than casual association — it implies shared ownership and joint participation. The phrase tēn archēn tēs hypostaseōs ('the beginning of our confidence/substance') is debated: hypostasis can mean 'confidence' (subjective) or 'reality/substance' (objective). In context, 'confidence' fits — the initial assurance that marked their conversion must be maintained to the end. The conditional eanper ('if indeed') is more emphatic than simple ean ('if').
15. The psalm quotation from verse 7-8 is repeated, but now 'today' carries the full weight of the intervening argument — it is no longer just a word in an ancient psalm but a present-tense demand on the audience. The repetition functions as a literary hinge between the exposition of the psalm (verses 7-11) and its application (verses 16-19).
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 95:7-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The rhetorical questions in verses 16-18 form a devastating catechism. The answer to each is obvious and condemning. The word parepikranan ('rebelled, provoked') echoes parapikrasmos from verse 8. The shocking point: it was not some fringe group but 'all' (pantes) who came out of Egypt — the very people who witnessed the greatest deliverance in Israel's history. Privilege of experience did not guarantee faithfulness.
17. The Greek kōla ('limbs, bodies, corpses') is more graphic than 'carcasses' — it evokes bodies literally falling and lying scattered across the desert landscape. The image is drawn from Numbers 14:29, 32 where God declares that the bodies of the rebellious generation would fall in the wilderness. The forty years of anger corresponds to the forty years of wandering.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 14:29. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The Greek apeithēsas ('those who were disobedient') can also mean 'those who were unbelieving' — the semantic overlap between disobedience and unbelief is significant. In Hebrew thought, to disbelieve God is to disobey him, and to disobey is to disbelieve. The author will make this connection explicit in verse 19.
19. The chapter's conclusion is stark: the wilderness generation's failure was ultimately a failure of faith (apistian, 'unbelief'). The verb ēdunēthēsan ('they were able') is negated — their unbelief made entry impossible, not merely unlikely. The verse links disobedience (verse 18) with unbelief (verse 19), establishing that the two are inseparable. The 'rest' that was forfeited through unbelief will be explored further in chapter 4 as still available to the present audience.

4

Summary: *Hebrews 4 continues the argument about God's rest, demonstrating that the promise of entering God's rest still stands because neither Joshua nor the wilderness generation fully realized it. The rest is not merely the promised land but a Sabbath-rest that God has enjoyed since creation — a rest believers can enter through faithful obedience. The chapter then pivots with two powerful declarations: the word of God is living and active, sharper than any two-edged sword (verse 12), and Jesus the Son of God is a great high priest who sympathizes with human weakness, inviting believers to approach the throne of grace with confidence (verses 14-16).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The argument about rest is subtle and layered: the rest God offered was not exhausted by Joshua's conquest because David, centuries later in Psalm 95, still speaks of 'today' — implying the rest remains available. The word-of-God passage (verses 12-13) is among the most memorized in the New Testament. The high priest transition (verses 14-16) forms a literary bridge from the warning section (chapters 3-4) to the priestly exposition (chapters 5-10).*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'rest' (katapausis/sabbatismos) is debated — eschatological, spiritual, or eternal. We render the terms without forcing a single interpretation. The Greek Iēsous in verse 8 refers to Joshua (the same name in Greek), not Jesus of Nazareth, which English translations must clarify. The relationship between verses 12-13 (word of God) and the surrounding argument is debated; it may function as a warning about divine judgment or as motivation for perseverance.*

Connections: *The rest theme connects to Genesis 2:2 (God's Sabbath), Psalm 95 (continued from chapter 3), and Joshua's conquest. The word-of-God imagery echoes Isaiah 49:2 and Revelation 1:16. The high priest declaration (verse 14) formally introduces the topic that will dominate chapters 5-10. The invitation to the 'throne of grace' (verse 16) anticipates the access through the curtain described in 10:19-22.*

¹Therefore, let us fear, since a promise of entering his rest still stands, that none of you be found to have fallen short of it. ²For we also have had good news proclaimed to us, just as they did. But the message they heard did not benefit them, since it was not combined with faith in those who heard it. ³For we who have believed are entering that rest, just as he has said, "As I swore in my anger, "They will never enter my rest" — even though his works have been finished since the foundation of the world. ⁴For somewhere he has spoken about the seventh day in this way: "And God rested on the seventh day from all his works." ⁵And again in this passage: "They will never enter my rest." ⁶Therefore, since it remains for some to enter it, and those who formerly received the good news failed to enter because of disobedience, ⁷Again, he limiteth a certain day and stated in David, To day, following so long a time. As it is stated, To day if you will hear his voice, harden not your hearts. ⁸For if Joshua had given them rest, God would not have spoken later about another day. ⁹So then, a Sabbath rest remains for the people of God. ¹⁰For the one who has entered God's rest has also rested from his own works, just as God rested from his. ¹¹Let us therefore make every effort to enter that rest, so that no one may fall by following the same pattern of disobedience. ¹²For the word of God is living and active, sharper than any double-edged sword, penetrating to the point of dividing soul from spirit, joints from marrow, and able to judge the thoughts and intentions of the heart. ¹³And no creature is hidden from his sight, but all things are naked and exposed before the eyes of the one to whom we must give account. ¹⁴Therefore, since we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens — Jesus the Son of God — let us hold firmly to our confession. ¹⁵For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has been tested in every way as we are, yet without sin. ¹⁶Let us then approach the throne of grace with confidence, so that we may receive mercy and find grace for help at the right time.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The subjunctive phobēthōmen ('let us fear') is startling — the author includes himself. The participle kataleipomenēs ('being left, remaining') emphasizes that the promise is still active and unclaimed. The verb husterēkenai ('to have fallen short, to have come too late') suggests missing a deadline or arriving after the door has closed. The fear is not servile terror but reverent urgency.

2. The verb *euēngelismenoi* ('having received good news') is the same root as 'gospel' — the wilderness generation received a form of good news (the promise of rest), just as Christians have. The textual variant is significant: some manuscripts read 'not united by faith with those who heard' (referring to Joshua and Caleb who did believe), while others read 'not combined with faith in those who heard.' The SBLGNT reading emphasizes that hearing without faith is useless.
3. The present tense *eisrchometha* ('we are entering') describes an ongoing experience — believers are in the process of entering the rest, not merely hoping for it in the future. The parenthetical about God's works being finished since creation introduces the next argument: God's rest has existed since Genesis 2, which means the 'rest' offered to Israel was participation in God's own eternal rest, not merely settlement in Canaan.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 95:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Quoting Genesis 2:2 (LXX). The casual citation formula 'somewhere' (*pou*) again directs attention to the divine author rather than to the specific text location. The author's argument: God's rest began at creation and has continued ever since — it is an existing reality, not a future creation. The verb *katepausen* ('rested, ceased') does not imply exhaustion but completion and satisfaction.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 2:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The author juxtaposes Genesis 2:2 (God rested) with Psalm 95:11 (they will not enter my rest). The logic: the rest God enjoys since creation is the same rest the wilderness generation forfeited. Since that rest predates and outlasts the promised land, it must still be available.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 95:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The word *apeitheian* ('disobedience') here replaces *apistian* ('unbelief') from 3:19, reinforcing the interchangeability of the two concepts. The logic is compact: the rest exists (Genesis 2:2), the first recipients forfeited it (Psalm 95), therefore it must remain available for others.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 95. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The crucial argument: David wrote Psalm 95 centuries after Joshua led Israel into Canaan. If Joshua's conquest had fulfilled the promise of rest, David would not still be warning about it and offering a 'today.' The very existence of Psalm 95 proves the rest was not exhausted by the conquest. The verb *horizei* ('appoints, designates, defines') suggests God deliberately set a new day of opportunity.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 95:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek *Iēsous* here refers to Joshua, not Jesus of Nazareth — both names are the same in Greek (from Hebrew *Yehoshua*). Context makes the reference clear since the subject is the conquest of Canaan. The conditional is contrary-to-fact: Joshua did not give the ultimate rest, therefore the rest still awaits. The author's logic reaches its conclusion in verse 9.
9. The author introduces a new term: *sabbatismos* ('Sabbath rest'), found only here in the New Testament and rare in Greek literature. This is not the generic *katapausis* ('rest') used throughout the argument but a specifically Sabbath-quality rest — a rest modeled on God's own cessation on the seventh day. The term is the climax of the argument: what remains is not merely a promised land or a cessation of labor but a participation in God's own eternal rest.
10. The parallel is precise: as God ceased from the work of creation on the seventh day, so the believer who enters God's rest ceases from their own works. The meaning of 'works' (*ergōn*) here is debated — it could mean laborious self-effort for salvation, or it could mean the completion of one's life mission. The Genesis 2:2 echo suggests satisfaction and completion rather than exhaustion or relief.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The verb *spoudasōmen* ('let us be diligent, make every effort, be eager') is not contradictory to 'rest' — the effort is to enter the rest, not to earn it. The word *hypodeigmati* ('pattern, example, model') turns the wilderness generation's failure into a cautionary template. The verb *pesē* ('fall') echoes the 'falling bodies' of 3:17 — the same fate awaits those who follow the same path.
12. The phrase *logos tou theou* ('word of God') likely refers to God's spoken declaration (as in the psalm quotations and the gospel message) rather than to Scripture as a written text or to Christ as the living Word, though all three layers may be present. The four adjectives — living (*zōn*), active (*energēs*), sharp (*tomōteros*), penetrating (*diiknoumenos*) — build in intensity. The division of 'soul and spirit' does not establish a trichotomist anthropology but uses merismus (a literary device listing extremes to indicate totality) — the word penetrates everything, even the most intimate interior spaces. The term *kritikos* ('able to judge, discerning') is the root of 'critic' — God's word is the ultimate judge of inner reality.

13. The shift from 'word of God' (verse 12) to 'his sight' and 'his eyes' personalizes the logos — the word that judges is inseparable from the God who sees. The Greek tetrachēlismena ('laid bare, exposed') literally means 'bent back the neck' — a term from wrestling (an opponent pinned with neck exposed) or from sacrifice (an animal's throat bared for slaughter). The final phrase pros hon hēmin ho logos ('to whom our account/word is due') is a wordplay — our logos must answer to the divine logos.
14. This verse marks a major transition, formally introducing the high priest theme that will dominate chapters 5-10. The phrase 'passed through the heavens' (dielēluthota tous ouranous) pictures Jesus traversing the celestial realms as the high priest passed through the outer courts to enter the Holy of Holies. The full title 'Jesus the Son of God' combines his human name with his divine status. The exhortation kratōmen tēs homologias ('let us hold firmly to our confession') echoes 3:1 and 3:6, framing the warning section.
15. The double negative (ou ... mē dynamenon, 'not unable') is a rhetorical understatement (litotes) that emphatically affirms: our high priest can and does sympathize. The Greek sympathēsai ('to sympathize, to suffer with') means not just intellectual understanding but shared experience of suffering. The phrase kata panta kath' homoiotēta ('in every respect in the same way') asserts the completeness of Jesus's testing. The qualifier chōris hamartias ('without sin') does not diminish the reality of the testing but affirms its outcome — he was genuinely tested and genuinely victorious.
16. The verb proserchōmetha ('let us approach') is a priestly term — the same word used for priests approaching the altar. Because of this high priest, all believers have priestly access. The 'throne of grace' (thronō tēs charitos) transforms a throne of judgment into a throne of generosity — the same throne that terrifies in verse 13 invites in verse 16. The two gifts — mercy (eleos) for past failure and grace (charin) for future need — together cover the full scope of human need. The phrase eis eukairon boētheian ('for timely help') literally means 'for well-timed assistance' — grace arrives at precisely the right moment.

5

Summary: *Hebrews 5 begins the Melchizedek priesthood argument by establishing the qualifications of any high priest: he must be taken from among humans, he must be able to deal gently with the ignorant and wayward because of his own weakness, and he must be called by God. The author then shows how Christ meets these qualifications — particularly through his anguished prayers during his earthly life and his learning obedience through suffering. God designated him a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek. The chapter ends with a rebuke: the audience should be teachers by now but still need elementary instruction.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 7 contains a vivid and emotionally raw depiction of Jesus's prayer life — 'loud cries and tears' — likely alluding to Gethsemane. The statement that Jesus 'learned obedience through what he suffered' (verse 8) is among the most theologically daring in the New Testament. The introduction of Melchizedek via Psalm 110:4 opens an argument the author will not complete until chapter 7, creating intentional suspense.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'he was heard because of his reverent submission' (verse 7) is debated — Jesus prayed to be saved from death, and he did die. In what sense was he 'heard'? Options include: heard in the sense of being rescued from death through resurrection, or heard in the sense that his prayer was received. We note both readings. The rebuke in verses 11-14 is sharp and raises questions about the audience's spiritual state.*

Connections: *Psalm 2:7 (verse 5) was already quoted in 1:5. Psalm 110:4 (verse 6) introduces the Melchizedek theme from Genesis 14:18-20 that dominates chapter 7. The Gethsemane allusion connects to the Synoptic Gospels (Mark 14:32-42 and parallels). The 'milk versus solid food' metaphor (verses 12-14) parallels 1 Corinthians 3:1-3.*

1For every high priest chosen from among humans is appointed to represent them before God, to offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins. 2He is able to deal gently with the ignorant and wayward, since he himself is also subject to weakness. 3Because of this, he is obligated to offer sacrifices for sins not only for the people but also for himself. 4And no one takes this honor for himself, but only when called by God, just as Aaron was. 5So also Christ did not glorify himself to become high priest, but was appointed by the one who said to him, "You are my Son; today I have fathered you." 6As he also says in another passage, "You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek." 7During the days of his life in the flesh, he offered up prayers and pleas with loud cries and tears to the one who was able to save him from death, and he was heard because of his reverent submission. 8Although he was a Son, he learned obedience through what he suffered. 9And having been made perfect, he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him, 10Called of God an high priest following the order of Melchisedec. 11We have much to say about this, and it is difficult to explain since you have become slow to

understand. ¹²For by this time you ought to be teachers, yet you need someone to teach you again the basic elements of God's oracles. You have come to need milk, not solid food. ¹³For everyone who lives on milk is unskilled in the word of righteousness, since such a person is an infant. ¹⁴But solid food is for the mature — for those whose faculties have been trained by practice to distinguish good from evil.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *ex anthrōpōn lambanomenos* ('taken from among humans') establishes the first qualification: solidarity with humanity. The high priest must share the condition of those he represents. The verb *kathistatai* ('is appointed') indicates divine appointment, not self-selection. The twin offerings — gifts (*dōra*, voluntary offerings) and sacrifices (*thysias*, sin-related offerings) — cover the full range of priestly service.
2. The Greek *metriopathein* ('to deal gently, to moderate one's feelings') is a rare term — it describes a measured emotional response, neither indifferent nor overwhelmed. It was a term from Stoic philosophy for the moderation of passion. The Levitical high priest could be gentle because he knew his own frailty. This is both the strength and limitation of the old system — a weakness Christ transcends (he sympathizes without sharing the weakness of sin, 4:15).
3. This obligation to sacrifice for himself distinguishes the Levitical high priest from Christ. On the Day of Atonement, the high priest first offered a bull for his own sins before offering for the people (Leviticus 16:6, 11). Christ, being without sin (4:15), has no such need — a superiority the author will develop in 7:27.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 16:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The second qualification: divine calling. The high priesthood is not an office one can seize — it requires God's appointment. The reference to Aaron (Exodus 28:1) grounds this in the Levitical system. The author will immediately show that Christ too was divinely called (verses 5-6), satisfying this requirement through a different but equally valid divine appointment.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 28:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Psalm 2:7 returns from 1:5, now applied not to Christ's superiority over angels but to his priestly appointment. The logic: the same God who declared Jesus 'Son' also appointed him priest. The verb *edoxasen* ('glorified') indicates that the high priesthood is an honor (*doxa*/glory), not a position Christ arrogated to himself.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 2:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Quoting Psalm 110:4, which the author will expound at length in chapter 7. This is the key text for the entire priestly argument of Hebrews. The phrase *kata tēn taxin Melchisedek* ('according to the order of Melchizedek') establishes a priesthood that is neither Aaronic nor Levitical but of a different and prior order — the order of the priest-king who blessed Abraham in Genesis 14:18-20. The word *taxin* ('order, arrangement, succession') means a category or type of priesthood, not a sequential organization.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 110:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 14:18-20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The phrase *en tais hēmerais tēs sarkos autou* ('in the days of his flesh') refers to Jesus's entire earthly life, though the 'loud cries and tears' (*kraugēs ischyra kai dakryōn*) likely allude specifically to Gethsemane (Mark 14:32-42). The word *hiketērias* ('pleas, supplications') originally referred to olive branches held by those seeking mercy — it denotes urgent, desperate petition. The phrase *eisakoustheis apo tēs eulabeias* ('heard because of his reverent submission') is much debated. The preposition *apo* could mean 'because of' or 'out of.' His prayer to be saved from death was 'heard' — but he still died. Most scholars understand this as being heard through resurrection: God saved him not from dying but from remaining dead.
7. The Greek *eulabeia* ('reverent submission, godly fear, devotion') describes not terror but reverent awe before God's will.
8. The Greek *emathēn ... epathēn* ('he learned ... he suffered') is a deliberate wordplay — learning and suffering are paired by sound and by theology. The statement does not imply that Jesus was previously disobedient, but that obedience became experientially his through the process of suffering. As Son, he was always obedient; through suffering, he experienced what obedience costs in a fallen world. This is the 'perfecting' of verse 9 — vocational completion, not moral correction.
9. The passive *teleiōtheis* ('having been made perfect/complete') is the same verb used in 2:10. It describes vocational completion through suffering — Jesus was fully equipped as high priest through the full experience of human obedience under pressure. The word *aitios* ('source, cause, author') identifies Jesus not merely as an example of salvation but as its origin. The phrase 'all who obey him' (*pasin tois hypakouousin autō*) makes obedience the correlate of faith — those who are saved are those who respond with obedient trust.
10. The verb *prosaгореutheis* ('designated, addressed as, named') is a formal term — it denotes an official declaration or title conferral. God did not merely allow Jesus to function as priest; he formally proclaimed him one. This returns to Psalm 110:4 from verse 6 and completes the christological argument: Jesus meets both qualifications (solidarity with humanity, divine appointment) and exceeds them (his priesthood is of a superior order).

10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek *dysermēneutos* ('difficult to explain, hard to interpret') is a rare word indicating the complexity of the Melchizedek argument. But the difficulty is not in the subject matter alone — it is in the audience. The word *nōthroi* ('slow, sluggish, dull') suggests a regression, not an original state. They have 'become' (gegonate) sluggish — they were once more receptive. This sharp transition from christological exposition to pastoral rebuke is characteristic of Hebrews.
12. The phrase *dia ton chronon* ('because of the time') indicates they have been believers long enough to be mature. The 'basic elements' (*ta stoicheia tēs archēs*) literally means 'the ABC's of the beginning' — the elementary principles. The word *logia* ('oracles') refers to God's authoritative utterances. The milk/solid food metaphor parallels Paul's use in 1 Corinthians 3:1-3 and reflects a common ancient educational analogy. The regression from solid food back to milk represents spiritual decline.
13. The phrase *apeiros logou dikaiosynēs* ('unskilled in the word/message of righteousness') could mean 'inexperienced in the teaching about righteousness' or 'unfamiliar with the righteous word/message.' The metaphor is straightforward: infants cannot digest solid food, and immature believers cannot process advanced theological teaching — specifically, the Melchizedek argument the author wants to make.
14. The Greek *teleiōn* ('the mature, the complete') contrasts with *nēpios* ('infant') in verse 13. The word *aisthētēria* ('faculties, senses, organs of perception') refers to the spiritual equivalent of the physical senses — the capacity to perceive and evaluate theological truth. The verb *gegymnasmena* ('trained, exercised') is from the gymnasium — spiritual maturity requires regular, disciplined exercise, not merely accumulated time. The phrase *diakrisin kalou te kai kakou* ('distinguishing good from evil') echoes the tree of knowledge in Genesis 2:17 — maturity involves the capacity for moral and theological discernment.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 2:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

6

Summary: *Hebrews 6 contains the letter's most severe warning (verses 4-8), declaring that those who have experienced the full blessings of the new covenant and then fall away cannot be renewed to repentance. This alarming passage is immediately balanced by pastoral encouragement (verses 9-12): the author is confident of better things for his audience. The chapter concludes with a meditation on the unshakeable nature of God's promise to Abraham, confirmed by divine oath, which serves as an anchor for the soul — a hope that enters behind the curtain where Jesus has gone as forerunner and eternal high priest.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The warning of verses 4-8 is the most debated passage in Hebrews and one of the most contested in the entire New Testament. The five participial phrases describing the spiritual experience of those who fall away (enlightened, tasted, shared, tasted, participated) are maximally strong — these are not superficial inquirers. The agricultural metaphor (verses 7-8) grounds the abstract warning in vivid imagery. The shift to Abraham's oath (verses 13-20) provides the positive counterweight: God's promise is doubly guaranteed.*

Translation Friction: *The impossibility of restoration (verse 4) has generated centuries of debate. Does it describe a hypothetical impossibility, a practical impossibility, or an absolute theological impossibility? We render the text as written without resolving the debate. The phrase 'crucifying the Son of God again' (verse 6) is particularly strong. The connection between the warning section and the Abraham/oath section is debated but likely functions as comfort: God's promises are more reliable than human failure.*

Connections: *The warning echoes Numbers 14 (the wilderness generation's irreversible forfeiture of the land). The Abraham oath recalls Genesis 22:16-17. The 'anchor of the soul' (verse 19) draws on ancient navigation imagery. The 'forerunner' (prodromos, verse 20) introduces a term unique in the NT applied to Christ. The Melchizedek reference (verse 20) resumes the argument interrupted in 5:10.*

Therefore, leaving behind the elementary teaching about Christ, let us press on toward maturity, not laying again a foundation of repentance from dead works and of faith toward God, ²Of the doctrine of baptisms, and of laying on of care, and of resurrection of the no longer alive, and of eternal the time of reckoning. ³And this we will do, if God permits. ⁴For it is impossible, in the case of those who have once been enlightened, who have tasted the heavenly gift, who have shared in the Holy Spirit, ⁵Have tasted the good message of God, and the powers of the world to come,. ⁶and then fall away — it is impossible to restore them to repentance. By their rejection they are crucifying the Son of God all over again and exposing him to public disgrace. ⁷For land that has drunk the rain that often falls on it and produces a crop useful to those for whom it

is cultivated receives a blessing from God. ⁸But if it produces thorns and thistles, it is worthless and close to being cursed, and its end is burning. ⁹But in your case, dear friends, we are convinced of better things — things that accompany salvation — even though we speak this way. ¹⁰For God is not unjust so as to forget your work and the love you showed for his name by serving the saints — as you still do. ¹¹And we want each one of you to show the same diligence toward the full assurance of hope until the end, ¹²That you be not slothful, but followers of them who by way of faith and patience inherit the promises. ¹³For when God made his promise to Abraham, since he had no one greater to swear by, he swore by himself, ¹⁴Declaring, Surely blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply you. ¹⁵And so Abraham, having waited patiently, obtained the promise. ¹⁶For people swear by something greater than themselves, and the oath serves as a confirmation that ends every dispute. ¹⁷In the same way, when God wanted to show even more clearly to the heirs of the promise the unchangeable nature of his purpose, he guaranteed it with an oath, ¹⁸That by a pair of immutable matters, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we may possess a strong consolation, who possess fled for refuge to lay hold upon the confident expectation set prior to us:. ¹⁹We have this hope as an anchor for the soul, firm and secure, which enters the inner place behind the curtain, ²⁰Indeed, whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest for ever following the order of Melchisedec.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb *pherōmetha* ('let us press on, let us be carried along') suggests both active effort and divine momentum — like a ship under full sail. The 'elementary teaching' (*ton tēs archēs tou Christou logon*) is literally 'the word of the beginning of Christ' — the foundational instruction. The author does not reject these basics but insists on moving beyond them. The six foundational elements listed in verses 1-2 appear to constitute an early catechetical curriculum.
2. The six foundation stones are grouped in three pairs: repentance and faith (verse 1), washings and laying on of hands (verse 2a), resurrection and judgment (verse 2b). The plural *baptismōn* ('washings') rather than the singular *baptisma* ('baptism') is noteworthy — it may include instruction distinguishing Christian baptism from Jewish ritual washings and John's baptism (cf. Acts 19:1-5). These elements appear to reflect a basic catechism for new believers.
3. The conditional 'if God permits' (*eanper epitrepē ho theos*) is not mere piety — in light of what follows (verses 4-6), it carries a solemn undertone. Whether the audience can indeed advance to maturity depends partly on their own response and partly on God's enabling. The subjunctive *epitrepē* leaves the outcome genuinely open.
4. The word *adynaton* ('impossible') stands emphatically at the head of the sentence. The five participial phrases (verses 4-5) describe the richest possible spiritual experience: enlightenment (*photisthentas* — possibly referring to baptism, which early Christians called 'illumination'), tasting the heavenly gift, sharing in the Holy Spirit, tasting God's good word, and experiencing the powers of the coming age. Each term is stronger than casual or superficial contact.
5. The 'good word of God' (*kalon theou rhēma*) echoes the promised land scouts' report: the land was 'good' (Numbers 14:7). Those who tasted the land's fruit still refused to enter. The 'powers of the coming age' (*dynameis mellontos aiōnos*) refers to eschatological realities — healings, spiritual gifts, transformed life — already experienced in the present. These people have sampled the age to come and found it real.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 14:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The participle *parapesontas* ('having fallen away') describes a decisive act of apostasy, not merely stumbling. The two present participles — *anastaurountas* ('crucifying again') and *paradeigmatizontas* ('exposing to public shame') — describe the ongoing significance of the fall: apostasy reenacts the crucifixion and makes a public spectacle of Christ. The impossibility is not that God's grace is insufficient but that the apostate has exhausted the only remedy — there is no sacrifice beyond Christ to which one can appeal.
7. The agricultural metaphor illustrates the warning by analogy. Land that receives rain (divine blessing) and produces good crops (faithful response) receives further blessing. The imagery draws on Isaiah 5:1-7 (the vineyard song) and Deuteronomy 11:10-17 (rain contingent on obedience). The verb *piousa* ('having drunk') personalizes the land — it has received God's provision.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 5:1-7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 11:10-17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The thorns and thistles (*akanthas kai tribolous*) echo Genesis 3:18 — the curse on the ground after Adam's fall. Land that produces only cursed vegetation despite receiving rain is *adokimos* ('worthless, rejected, failing the test'). The burning (*kausin*) refers to the ancient agricultural practice of burning unproductive fields, but here carries eschatological overtones. Note that the text says 'close to cursing' (*kataras engys*), not 'cursed' — even in this severe warning, there remains a space before final judgment.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 3:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The address 'dear friends' (agapētoi, 'beloved') is the only time in Hebrews the author uses this endearment — it signals a deliberate pastoral shift from the severe warning to confident encouragement. The perfect tense pepeismetha ('we are convinced, we have been persuaded') indicates a settled confidence, not a tentative hope. The phrase ta kreissona ('the better things') uses the comparative that runs throughout Hebrews — the audience belongs to the 'better' category.
10. The litotes 'not unjust' (ou adikos) affirms God's absolute justice and faithfulness — he cannot overlook genuine service. The evidence of their salvation is practical: they served (diakonēsantes, aorist — past action) and continue serving (diakonountes, present — ongoing action) the saints. Their love is demonstrated in deed, not merely profession. This verse grounds the author's confidence from verse 9.
11. The phrase hekaston hymōn ('each one of you') individualizes the exhortation — corporate encouragement is not enough; each person must persevere. The word plērophorian ('full assurance, complete confidence') describes a hope that has reached its maximum capacity — not wishful thinking but settled certainty. The phrase achri telous ('until the end') repeats the perseverance theme from 3:6 and 3:14.
12. The word nōthroi ('sluggish') returns from 5:11, forming an inclusio around the warning section. The antidote to sluggishness is imitation (mimētai) of the faithful — a concept the author will develop extensively in chapter 11's catalogue of faith. The pair 'faith and patience' (pisteōs kai makrothymias) represents the active and enduring dimensions of perseverance. The verb klēronountōn ('inheriting') echoes the inheritance language of 1:2 and 1:14.
13. The Abraham narrative now provides positive support for perseverance. The logic of God's oath is elegant: human oaths invoke a higher authority as guarantor, but God has no superior — so he swore by himself, making his own nature the guarantee. This draws on Genesis 22:16-17, where God's oath follows Abraham's willingness to sacrifice Isaac.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 22:16-17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Quoting Genesis 22:17. The Hebrew construction behind the Greek (infinitive absolute + finite verb) expresses emphasis through repetition: 'blessing I will bless' means 'I will absolutely, without question, bless.' We render this emphatic construction with 'surely' and 'certainly' rather than preserving the repetitive form that sounds unnatural in English.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 22:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb makrothymēsas ('having waited patiently, having been long-suffering') picks up the 'patience' (makrothymia) of verse 12 — Abraham is the model of the patience the author recommends. The word epetychen ('obtained, attained') indicates successful arrival at the goal. Abraham waited twenty-five years for Isaac — the patience was not passive but active trust sustained over decades.
16. The author explains the universal logic of oath-taking: people invoke a higher authority to settle disputes. An oath brings finality (peras, 'end, limit, boundary') and confirmation (bebaiōsin, 'ratification, guarantee'). This human practice establishes the framework for understanding God's oath — if human oaths settle matters, how much more does a divine oath?
17. The word ametatheton ('unchangeable, irrevocable, immutable') is emphatic — God's purpose cannot be altered, reversed, or modified. The verb emesiteusen ('guaranteed, mediated, interposed') means God inserted an oath between his promise and its fulfillment as a mediating guarantee. The 'heirs of the promise' (klēronomois tēs epangelias) extends beyond Abraham to include all who inherit the Abrahamic blessing — including the Christian audience.
18. The 'two unchangeable things' (duo pragmatōn ametaethetōn) are God's promise and God's oath — either alone would suffice, but together they provide double assurance. The phrase 'impossible for God to lie' (adynaton pseusasthai ton theon) asserts a divine impossibility — not a limitation but a perfection. The image of 'fleeing for refuge' (kataphygontes) evokes the Old Testament cities of refuge (Numbers 35:9-15), where those who fled found legal protection.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 35:9-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The anchor metaphor is unique in the New Testament, though common in Greco-Roman literature as a symbol of stability. What is remarkable is where this anchor is fixed — not in the ocean floor but behind the curtain (katapetasmatos) of the heavenly sanctuary. The imagery combines nautical and temple language: the soul is anchored in the Holy of Holies. The adjectives asphalē ('firm, safe, unfailing') and bebaian ('secure, reliable, confirmed') double the assurance.
20. The term prodromos ('forerunner') is used only here of Christ in the New Testament. A forerunner goes ahead to prepare the way for others to follow — unlike the Levitical high priest who entered the Holy of Holies alone, Jesus enters on behalf of others who will follow him in. The phrase 'forever according to the order of Melchizedek' returns the argument to Psalm 110:4 from 5:6, resuming the Melchizedek discussion that the warning passage (5:11-6:12) interrupted. Chapter 7 will now expound this priesthood in full.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

7

Summary: *Hebrews 7 develops the Melchizedek priesthood argument at full length. The chapter moves in three stages: first, an exposition of Genesis 14:18-20 showing Melchizedek's superiority to Abraham and therefore to Levi (verses 1-10); second, an argument that the change from Levitical to Melchizedek priesthood implies a change of law (verses 11-19); third, the superiority of Christ's permanent, oath-guaranteed priesthood over the temporary, death-limited Levitical priesthood (verses 20-28). The chapter culminates in a description of Jesus as the perfect high priest — holy, innocent, undefiled, exalted above the heavens.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Melchizedek argument is the most sophisticated typological exegesis in the New Testament. The author uses the silence of Genesis (no recorded parents, birth, or death) as positive evidence — what the text does not say about Melchizedek becomes a type of Christ's eternal priesthood. The tithing argument (verses 4-10) is brilliantly constructed: Levi, though unborn, paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham's body, proving Melchizedek's superiority to the entire Levitical system.*

Translation Friction: *The argument from silence about Melchizedek's genealogy (verse 3) is a hermeneutical method unfamiliar to modern readers. The claim that the Levitical system is 'set aside' (verse 18) raises significant questions about continuity and discontinuity between the covenants. We render the text as the author presents it without adjudicating between dispensational and covenantal frameworks.*

Connections: *Genesis 14:18-20 (Melchizedek's appearance) and Psalm 110:4 (the divine oath) are the two pillars. The argument about a change of law (verse 12) anticipates the new covenant argument of chapter 8. The 'indestructible life' (verse 16) connects to the resurrection. The oath without repentance (verse 21) echoes the oath certainty of 6:13-20.*

¹For this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, met Abraham as he was returning from the defeat of the kings and blessed him, ²To whom as well Abraham offered a tenth part of all. First being by interpretation King of righteousness, and after that as well King of Salem, which is, King of peace. ³Without father, without mother, without genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but resembling the Son of God, he remains a priest forever. ⁴Now consider how great this man was — even the patriarch Abraham gave him a tenth of the finest spoils. ⁵Now the descendants of Levi who receive the priestly office have a commandment under the law to collect tithes from the people — that is, from their own brothers and sisters — even though they too are descended from Abraham. ⁶But this man, who does not trace his descent from them, received tithes from Abraham and blessed the one who had the promises. ⁷And beyond all dispute, the lesser is blessed by the greater. ⁸In the one case, mortal men receive tithes; but in the other case, one receives them of whom it is testified that he lives. ⁹And, so to speak, even Levi, who collects tithes, paid tithes through Abraham. ¹⁰For he was still in the body of his ancestor when Melchizedek met Abraham. ¹¹Now if perfection had been attainable through the Levitical priesthood — for on the basis of it the people received the law — what further need would there have been for another priest to arise according to the order of Melchizedek, rather than being designated according to the order of Aaron? ¹²For when the priesthood is changed, there must also be a change of law. ¹³For the one about whom these things are said belongs to a different tribe, from which no one has ever served at the altar. ¹⁴For it is clear that our Lord descended from Judah, and in connection with that tribe Moses said nothing about priests. ¹⁵And this becomes even more clear when another priest arises in the likeness of Melchizedek, ¹⁶Who is made, not following the law of a carnal commandment, but following the authority of an endless life. ¹⁷For it is testified of him, "You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek." ¹⁸For on the one hand, a former commandment is set aside because of its weakness and uselessness — ¹⁹For the instruction of Moses fashioned nothing perfect, but the bringing in of a better confident expectation did. By the which we draw nigh to God. ²⁰And this was not without an oath. For others became priests without an oath, ²¹For those priests were made without an oath. But this with an oath by him that stated to him, The Lord swears and will not turn back, you are a priest for ever following the order of Melchisedec.). ²²Accordingly, Jesus has also become the guarantee of a better covenant. ²³The former priests were

many in number because death prevented them from continuing in office. ²⁴But because he remains forever, he holds a permanent priesthood. ²⁵Therefore he is able to save completely those who approach God through him, since he always lives to intercede for them. ²⁶For it was fitting that we should have such a high priest: holy, innocent, unstained, separated from sinners, and exalted above the heavens. ²⁷He has no need, like those high priests, to offer sacrifices day after day, first for his own sins and then for those of the people, since he did this once for all when he offered up himself. ²⁸For the law appoints as high priests men who are subject to weakness, but the word of the oath, which came after the law, appoints the Son, who has been made perfect forever.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The author begins expounding Genesis 14:18-20 verse by verse. Melchizedek holds two offices simultaneously — king and priest — a combination forbidden under the Mosaic law (kings came from Judah, priests from Levi). Only Christ unites both offices. 'Salem' (Salēm) is traditionally identified with Jerusalem (cf. Psalm 76:2). The Greek *kopēs* ('defeat, slaughter, cutting down') refers to Abraham's military victory over the four kings who had captured Lot.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 14:18-20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 76:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The author interprets both the name and the title etymologically. Melchizedek (Hebrew *malki-tsedeq*) means 'king of righteousness.' Salem (Hebrew *shalem*) means 'peace.' The combination — righteousness and peace — echoes Psalm 85:10 ('righteousness and peace have kissed') and Isaiah 32:17 ('the fruit of righteousness will be peace'). The order matters: righteousness first, then peace — reflecting the biblical principle that true peace is founded on justice. Abraham's tithe to Melchizedek is the key datum for the argument in verses 4-10.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 14:18-20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 85:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 32:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The three alpha-privative adjectives — *apatōr* ('without father'), *amētōr* ('without mother'), *agenealogētos* ('without genealogy') — describe what Genesis does not record about Melchizedek, not necessarily what was historically true. The argument is typological: because the text records no beginning or end for Melchizedek, his literary portrait resembles the eternal Son. The crucial verb is *aphōmoiōmenos* ('made to resemble, being likened to') — Melchizedek resembles the Son, not the reverse. The type points to the reality, not the reality to the type. He 'remains' (*menei*) a priest *eis to diēnekes* ('in perpetuity, forever').
4. The imperative *theōreite* ('consider, observe') calls for careful thought. The word *pēlikos* ('how great') asks the audience to measure Melchizedek's stature. The word *akrothinion* ('finest spoils, choicest portion of plunder') indicates Abraham gave not a random tenth but the best of the best. The title 'patriarch' (*patriarchēs*) — the highest dignity in Jewish memory — is deliberately used to heighten the contrast: even the great Abraham paid tribute to this figure.
5. The argument builds: Levitical priests collect tithes from fellow descendants of Abraham. They tithe equals. But Melchizedek collected tithes from Abraham himself — the superior tithing the inferior. The phrase *exelēluthotas ek tēs osphyos Abraam* ('having come from the loins of Abraham') uses vivid physical language to emphasize shared ancestry.
6. Melchizedek stands outside the Levitical genealogical system entirely (*mē genealogoumenos ex autōn*) — his authority derives from a different source. Two actions demonstrate his superiority: he received tithes from Abraham, and he blessed Abraham. Verse 7 will explain why the second action proves superiority.
7. This is stated as an axiom: *chōris pasēs antilogias* ('beyond all dispute, without any contradiction'). Blessing flows downward — from the greater to the lesser. Since Melchizedek blessed Abraham, Melchizedek was the greater party. This inverts the expected hierarchy: Abraham, the father of the nation, the recipient of divine promises, was the lesser in this encounter.
8. The contrast is between Levitical priests who die (*apothnēskontes anthrōpoi*, 'dying humans') and Melchizedek of whom Scripture testifies 'he lives' (*hoti zē*). Since Genesis records no death for Melchizedek, the silence of the text functions as testimony to ongoing life. This argument from silence is characteristic of the author's exegetical method.
9. The cautious phrase *hōs epos eipein* ('so to speak, one might even say') shows the author is aware this is a bold claim. Levi, the ancestor of all priests, himself paid tithes to Melchizedek — not directly, but through his ancestor Abraham. The argument depends on the concept of corporate solidarity: descendants are present in their ancestors' actions.

10. The Greek *osphyi* ('loins, body') refers to the procreative capacity of the ancestor. Levi was 'in' Abraham seminally — his existence was contained within Abraham's future line. This concept of ancestral representation was common in ancient thought and appears in the rabbinic principle that what the fathers do affects the children. The argument is complete: if Levi paid tithes to Melchizedek through Abraham, then the Melchizedek priesthood is superior to the Levitical.
11. The argument shifts from Melchizedek's superiority (verses 1-10) to the insufficiency of the Levitical system (verses 11-19). The word *teleiōsis* ('perfection, completion, accomplishment') refers to the ability to bring worshipers into full, permanent relationship with God. If the Levitical system could do this, Psalm 110:4 would be unnecessary. The parenthetical note — the people received the law on the basis of the Levitical priesthood — shows how deeply intertwined priesthood and law were. To change one is to change the other (verse 12).
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The verb *metatithemenēs* ('being changed, being transferred') and the noun *metathesis* ('change, transfer, alteration') share the same root, creating emphasis through repetition. The logic is compact and revolutionary: priesthood and law are an integrated system. If the priesthood changes from Levitical to Melchizedek, the entire legal framework built on the Levitical priesthood must also change. This is the author's most direct statement about the obsolescence of the Mosaic law.
13. The practical proof: Jesus belongs to the tribe of Judah, not Levi. Under Mosaic law, no Judahite could serve as priest. The very fact that a non-Levite is declared priest confirms that the legal framework has changed. The phrase *proschēken tō thysiastērīō* ('attended to/served at the altar') refers to the priestly ministry of sacrifice.
14. The verb *anatetalken* ('has risen, has sprung up') is used for the rising of a star or the sprouting of a plant — both messianic images (Numbers 24:17, Isaiah 11:1). The phrase 'our Lord' (*ho kyrios hēmōn*) is one of the few times Hebrews uses 'Lord' for Jesus (cf. 2:3, 13:20). Moses's silence about Judahite priests is decisive: the Mosaic law made no provision for what God accomplished in Christ.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 24:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 11:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The phrase *katadēlon estin* ('it is thoroughly clear, it is abundantly evident') intensifies the argument. The word *homoiotēta* ('likeness, resemblance, similarity') echoes verse 3's *aphōmoiōmenos* — the resemblance between Melchizedek and Christ is the hinge of the entire argument.
16. The contrast is between two foundations for priesthood: *nomou entolēs sarkinēs* ('a law of fleshly/physical commandment') — meaning the genealogical requirement that priests descend from Aaron — and *dynameōs zōēs akatalytou* ('power of indestructible life'). The word *sarkinēs* ('fleshly, physical') is not pejorative but describes a system based on physical lineage. The word *akatalytou* ('indestructible, unable to be dissolved') is powerful — Christ's life cannot be terminated, making his priesthood permanent.
17. Psalm 110:4 is quoted again (cf. 5:6), now as scriptural testimony supporting the claim of verse 16. The 'forever' (*eis ton aiōna*) is the key word — it is the permanence of Christ's priesthood, grounded in his indestructible life, that distinguishes it from the temporary Levitical priesthood.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 110:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The word *athetēsis* ('setting aside, annulment, abrogation') is a legal term for the cancellation of a regulation. The 'former commandment' (*proagousēs entolēs*) refers to the Levitical priesthood system and its associated laws. The two reasons for annulment — weakness (*asthenes*, 'inability to accomplish its purpose') and uselessness (*anōpheles*, 'unprofitableness, inability to help') — are not moral judgments on the law itself but assessments of its capacity to bring perfection (verse 11).
19. The stark declaration 'the law made nothing perfect' (*ouden eteleiōsen ho nomos*) is the hinge of the argument. What the law could not do — bring people into full, permanent access to God — the 'better hope' (*kreittōn elpis*) accomplishes. The verb *engizomen* ('we draw near') is a priestly term for approaching God's presence, now democratized — all believers draw near, not just the high priest once a year. The word 'better' (*kreittonos*) is the signature adjective of Hebrews, appearing thirteen times.
20. The argument shifts to the oath guarantee. Levitical priests were appointed by genealogical qualification, not by divine oath. Christ's priesthood, by contrast, was established by God's sworn oath in Psalm 110:4. An oath-backed appointment is inherently more authoritative and permanent than one based on birth.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 110:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Quoting Psalm 110:4 with a new element emphasized: the oath includes the clause 'will not change his mind' (*ou metamelēthēsetai*). The Greek *metamelēthēsetai* ('will not repent, will not regret, will not change his mind') asserts the irrevocability of God's decision. Unlike human appointments that can be reversed, God's oath-backed priesthood stands permanently. Some manuscripts add 'according to the order of Melchizedek,' but the SBLGNT omits it here.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 110:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

- 22.** The word *engyos* ('guarantee, surety, bondsman') appears only here in the New Testament. A guarantor personally stakes themselves that an agreement will be honored. Jesus is not merely the mediator of the new covenant but its personal guarantee — his very person ensures its fulfillment. The word *diathēkēs* ('covenant') introduces the covenant theme that will dominate chapter 8. This is the first time in Hebrews that the new covenant is called 'better' (*kreittōn*).
- 23.** The argument is simple but devastating: the Levitical system required a succession of priests because each one died. The accumulation of priests (*pleiones*, 'many, numerous') is itself evidence of the system's impermanence. Each death was a disruption, requiring a new priest to be installed.
- 24.** The Greek *aparabaton* ('permanent, untransferable, inviolable') describes a priesthood that cannot be passed to another. The word literally means 'not passing to another' — Christ's priesthood has no successor because he never vacates the office. This is the practical implication of the 'indestructible life' of verse 16.
- 25.** The phrase *sōzein eis* *panteles* ('to save completely/to the uttermost') can mean both 'completely' (in scope — every dimension of salvation) and 'forever' (in duration — to the final end). Both meanings are likely intended. The present participle *proserchomenous* ('those who are approaching') describes an ongoing habit, not a one-time act. The word *entynchanein* ('to intercede, to appeal on behalf of') describes Christ's perpetual priestly ministry in the heavenly sanctuary — his saving work did not end at the cross but continues through intercession.
- 26.** Five attributes describe the ideal high priest, moving from moral character to cosmic status: *hosios* ('holy, devout, pious' — holy in personal character, distinct from *hagios* which emphasizes consecration), *akakos* ('innocent, without evil, guileless'), *amiantos* ('unstained, undefiled, pure'), *kechōrismenos apo tōn hamartōlōn* ('separated from sinners' — not in the sense of avoiding them, since he was 'made like his brothers in every way' in 2:17, but in the sense of being untouched by sin), and *hypsēloteros tōn ouranōn genomenos* ('having become higher than the heavens' — his exaltation to cosmic supremacy).
- 27.** Three contrasts with the Levitical system: frequency (daily versus once for all), sequence (first for himself, then for the people — Christ has no sins requiring atonement), and substance (animal sacrifices versus himself). The adverb *ephapax* ('once for all') is the most important word — it asserts the unrepeatable, completely sufficient nature of Christ's self-offering. This word will recur in 9:12 and 10:10 as the defining characteristic of the new covenant sacrifice.
- 28.** The chapter's concluding summary compresses the entire argument into one sentence with two contrasts: the law versus the oath, and weak men versus the perfected Son. The phrase *meta ton nomon* ('after the law') is chronologically significant — Psalm 110 was written after the Mosaic legislation, meaning God's oath supersedes the earlier arrangement. The perfect participle *teteleōmenon* ('having been made perfect') describes a completed state — the Son's perfection through suffering (2:10, 5:8-9) is permanent and irreversible.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 110 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

8

Summary: *Hebrews 8 is the theological summit of the letter's central argument. Christ is a high priest who serves in the true heavenly sanctuary, not the earthly copy. The earthly tabernacle and its priesthood were a shadow of the heavenly reality. The chapter then quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 in its entirety — the longest Old Testament quotation in the New Testament — to demonstrate that God himself declared the first covenant would be replaced by a new and better covenant. The chapter concludes with a devastating inference: by calling the covenant 'new,' God made the first one old, and what is old and aging is about to disappear.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Jeremiah 31 quotation is the longest continuous Old Testament quotation in the New Testament (verses 8-12). The author lets the prophet's words carry the full weight of the argument — the new covenant is not a Christian invention but a divine promise through Israel's own prophet. The four promises of the new covenant (law written on hearts, direct knowledge of God, universal knowledge, forgiveness of sins) define the essence of the Christian experience.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the 'shadow' (*skia*) and the 'true' (*alēthinos*) sanctuary reflects a Platonic-sounding framework that the author may draw from Hellenistic Judaism (particularly Philo). Whether this indicates direct Platonic influence or independent theological reasoning is debated. The final verse's statement that the first covenant 'is about to disappear' may reflect a pre-70 AD date (before the temple's destruction) or may be theological rather than historical language.*

Connections: *Jeremiah 31:31-34 is the foundational new covenant text, echoed in the Last Supper narratives (Luke 22:20, 1 Corinthians 11:25). The shadow/reality framework draws on Exodus 25:40 (the heavenly pattern shown to Moses). The obsolescence of the first covenant connects to 7:12 (change of priesthood requires change of law). The new covenant promises will be applied practically in 10:15-18.*

¹Now the main point of what we are saying is this: we have such a high priest, one who is seated at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in the heavens, ²He serves in the true sanctuary, the genuine tabernacle set up by the Lord and not by any human being. ³For every high priest is appointed to offer gifts and sacrifices; therefore it was necessary for this priest also to have something to offer. ⁴Now if he were on earth, he would not be a priest at all, since there are already those who offer gifts according to the law. ⁵They serve in a sanctuary that is a copy and shadow of the heavenly one, just as Moses was warned when he was about to construct the tent: "See that you make everything according to the pattern that was shown to you on the mountain." ⁶But now Christ has obtained a ministry that is as much more excellent as the covenant he mediates is better, since it is enacted on better promises. ⁷For if that first covenant had been faultless, there would have been no occasion to look for a second. ⁸For he finds fault with them when he says: "The days are coming, declares the Lord, when I will establish a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah — ⁹Not according to the covenant that I made with their fathers in the day when I picked up them by the hand to lead them out of the land of Egypt. Because they continued not in my covenant, and I regarded them not, says the Lord. ¹⁰For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, declares the Lord: I will put my laws into their minds, and I will write them on their hearts. And I will be their God, and they will be my people. ¹¹And they will not teach each one his neighbor and each one his brother, saying, 'Know the Lord,' for they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest. ¹²For I will be merciful toward their wrongdoing, and I will remember their sins no more." ¹³By calling it 'new,' he has made the first one obsolete. And what is becoming obsolete and growing old is about to disappear.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word *kephalaion* ('main point, summary, chief matter') signals that what follows is the central thesis of the entire letter. The phrase 'seated at the right hand' (*ekathisen en dexia*) returns to Psalm 110:1 from 1:3, 13 — the Son's session at God's right hand frames the entire argument. The title 'Majesty' (*megalōsynēs*) avoids the divine name while conveying supreme authority.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 110:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The word *leitourgos* ('minister, servant, one who performs public service') is a cultic term for priestly service. The phrase *tēs skēnēs tēs alēthinēs* ('the true tent/tabernacle') introduces the shadow/reality distinction. The 'true' (*alēthinos*) tabernacle is not 'true' as opposed to 'false' but 'true' as opposed to 'copy' — the heavenly original versus the earthly reproduction. The Lord (*kyrios*) pitched this tent, distinguishing it from the human-made tabernacle of Exodus.
3. The logic is simple: a priesthood requires an offering. Since Christ is a high priest, he must have an offering. The author does not specify the offering here — that revelation comes in 9:12-14 (his own blood) and 9:26 (himself). The verb *prosenegkē* (aorist subjunctive of *prospherō*) points to a definitive, singular offering rather than repeated acts.
4. The conditional is contrary-to-fact: Christ is not on earth but in the heavenly sanctuary. On earth, only Levitical priests could serve, and Christ is from Judah (7:14). His priesthood operates in a different sphere — the heavenly sanctuary. The present tense 'there are' (*ontōn*) those who offer according to the law suggests the earthly temple is still functioning when this letter was written, possibly indicating a pre-70 AD date.
5. Quoting Exodus 25:40. The terms *hypodeigmati* ('copy, imitation') and *skia* ('shadow') describe the earthly tabernacle's relationship to the heavenly reality. A shadow proves the existence of the object casting it but is not the object itself. The word *typon* ('pattern, model') shown to Moses on Sinai was the heavenly original — Moses built a replica. This framework is central to the author's argument: the earthly system was always derivative, pointing to the true reality where Christ now serves.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 25:40 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The verse establishes a proportion: ministry excellence corresponds to covenant excellence. Three uses of 'better' (*diaphorōteras*, *kreittōn*, *kreittosin*) drive the comparison. The word *mesitēs* ('mediator') describes one who stands between two parties to guarantee an agreement. The phrase *epi kreittosin epageliais nenomothetai* ('enacted on better promises') introduces the Jeremiah 31 quotation — the new covenant's superiority lies in its promises.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The logic parallels 4:8 (if Joshua had given rest, no second day would be appointed) and 7:11 (if perfection came through the Levitical priesthood, no Melchizedek priest would be needed). The word *amemptos* ('faultless, blameless, without defect') does not mean the first covenant was sinful but that it was unable to accomplish its ultimate purpose — permanent access to God. The very existence of Jeremiah 31's 'new covenant' prophecy proves the first was insufficient.

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Jeremiah 31:31-34 quotation begins here — the longest continuous Old Testament quotation in the New Testament. The Greek *memphomenos* ('finding fault with') could be directed at the people (*autous*, 'them') or at the covenant. The author reads Jeremiah's prophecy as God's own critique of the first covenant's inadequacy. The verb *synteleō* ('I will establish, I will bring to completion') suggests not mere replacement but fulfillment. The specification of 'Israel and Judah' encompasses the entire covenant people — both kingdoms.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 31:31-34 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The image of God taking Israel 'by the hand' (*epilabomenou mou tēs cheiros autōn*) is tender — like a parent leading a child. The contrast with their subsequent unfaithfulness is poignant. The Greek *ēmelēsa autōn* ('I showed no concern for them, I neglected them') translates a difficult Hebrew phrase in Jeremiah. The Septuagint rendering differs from the Masoretic Text's 'though I was a husband to them.' The author follows the Septuagint, which emphasizes God's withdrawal rather than his continued commitment.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 31:31-34. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The first two promises of the new covenant: internalized law and restored relationship. The move from external stone tablets to internal inscription (*dianoian*, 'mind'; *kardias*, 'hearts') transforms obedience from external compliance to internal disposition. The covenant formula 'I will be their God and they will be my people' (*esomai autois eis theon*) is the most ancient covenant declaration, running from Exodus 6:7 through Revelation 21:3. In the new covenant, this relationship is fully realized.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 6:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The third promise: universal, direct knowledge of God. The double negative *ou mē* ('they will never, they will not at all') is emphatic. The knowledge promised is not intellectual information about God but relational knowing (*gnōthi*, from *ginōskō*) — the personal, experiential knowledge of covenant intimacy. The phrase 'from the least to the greatest' (*apo mikrou heōs megalou*) asserts that this knowledge crosses all social and spiritual hierarchies.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 31:31-34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The fourth promise and the foundation of all the others: complete forgiveness. The word *hileōs* ('merciful, gracious, propitious') is related to *hilaskomai* ('to atone,' cf. 2:17) — God's mercy toward sin is rooted in atonement. The phrase *ou mē mnēsthō eti* ('I will never again remember') does not mean God literally forgets but that he will not hold sins against his people — they will never be counted in the record. This promise is what makes the new covenant 'better': the sin problem is definitively resolved. The author will return to this verse in 10:17 as the clinching argument.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 31:31-34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The author's commentary on the Jeremiah quotation is surgically precise: the single word 'new' (*kainēn*) in Jeremiah 31:31 logically renders the first covenant 'old' (*pepalaiōken*, 'has made old/obsolete'). The two participles — *palaïoumenon* ('becoming obsolete') and *gēraskon* ('growing old, aging') — describe a process rather than a sudden event. The phrase *engys aphanismou* ('near disappearance') is debated: is this a pre-70 AD prediction of the temple's destruction, or a theological statement about the first covenant's status regardless of the temple's physical fate? The text does not specify, and we leave it unresolved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 31:31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

9

Summary: Hebrews 9 provides a detailed comparison between the earthly tabernacle and the heavenly sanctuary. The chapter describes the furniture and rituals of the old covenant tabernacle (verses 1-10), then declares that Christ entered the heavenly sanctuary once for all through his own blood, obtaining eternal redemption (verses 11-14). Christ is the mediator of the new covenant, and his death is both sacrifice and testament-inauguration (verses 15-22). The chapter climaxes with the declaration that Christ appeared once at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself, and will appear a second time not to deal with sin but to save those who are eagerly waiting for him (verses 23-28).

What Makes This Remarkable: The tabernacle typology is the most sustained in the New Testament. The author describes the outer and inner sanctuaries, their furnishings, and the annual Day of Atonement ritual, all as shadows of Christ's work. The phrase 'once for all' (ephapax, verse 12) is the theological center of gravity. The double-entendre of diathēkē as both 'covenant' and 'testament/will' (verses 16-17) is a unique wordplay that works because a will requires the testator's death.

Translation Friction: The author's description of the tabernacle furniture (verses 2-5) contains some details that differ from the Old Testament layout (e.g., the golden altar of incense placed inside the Holy of Holies rather than outside). Scholars debate whether this reflects a different tradition, a theological point about the altar's function, or the Day of Atonement ritual when incense entered the inner chamber. We render the text as written and note the discrepancy.

Connections: The tabernacle description draws on Exodus 25-30. The Day of Atonement ritual follows Leviticus 16. The blood-of-the-covenant language echoes Exodus 24:8 and Jesus's words at the Last Supper (Mark 14:24). The 'once for all' theme connects to 7:27 and 10:10. Christ's second appearing (verse 28) connects to the eschatological hope throughout the New Testament.

¹Now even the first covenant had regulations for worship and an earthly sanctuary. ²For a tent was prepared — the outer section — in which were the lampstand, the table, and the bread of the Presence. This is called the Holy Place. ³Behind the second curtain was a tent called the Most Holy Place. ⁴It had the golden altar of incense and the ark of the covenant covered on all sides with gold, in which were a golden jar holding the manna, Aaron's staff that budded, and the tablets of the covenant. ⁵Above the ark were the cherubim of glory overshadowing the mercy seat. But we cannot speak about these things in detail now. ⁶With these arrangements in place, the priests continually enter the outer tent to carry out their duties of worship, ⁷However, into the second traveled the high priest alone once every year, not apart from blood, which he offered for himself, and for the errors of the people. ⁸By this the Holy Spirit was showing that the way into the Most Holy Place had not yet been disclosed as long as the outer tent still had standing. ⁹This is a symbol for the present time, during which gifts and sacrifices are offered that cannot perfect the conscience of the worshiper, ¹⁰These were outward regulations about food, drink, and various ceremonial washings — rules that applied only until the time when God would set things right. ¹¹But when Christ appeared as high priest of the good things that have come, he entered through the greater and more perfect tent — not made with hands, that is, not of this creation — ¹²Neither by the lifeblood of goats and calves, but by his own lifeblood he went into in once into the sacred location, possessing obtained eternal redemption for us. ¹³For if the blood of goats and bulls and the ashes of a heifer sprinkled on those who are ceremonially unclean sanctify them for the purification of the body, ¹⁴Purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living god?, how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God. ¹⁵For this reason he is the mediator of a new covenant, so that those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance, since a death has occurred that redeems them from the transgressions committed under the first covenant. ¹⁶For where a will is involved, the death of the one who made it must be established. ¹⁷For a will takes effect only at death; it has no force while the one who made it is still alive. ¹⁸Therefore not even the first covenant was inaugurated without blood. ¹⁹For when every commandment of the law had been declared by Moses to all the people, he took the blood of calves and goats, with water and scarlet wool and hyssop, and sprinkled both the scroll itself and all the people, ²⁰Indeed, declaring, This is the blood of the testament which God has enjoined to you. ²¹And in the same way he sprinkled the tent and all the vessels used in worship with blood. ²²Indeed, under the law almost everything is purified with blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness. ²³Therefore it was necessary for the copies of the heavenly things to be purified with these rites, but the heavenly things themselves require better sacrifices than these. ²⁴For Christ did not enter a sanctuary made by hands — a mere copy of the true one — but into heaven itself, to appear now in the presence of God on our behalf. ²⁵Nor was it to offer himself repeatedly, as the high priest enters the Most Holy Place every year with blood that is not his own. ²⁶Otherwise, he would have had to suffer repeatedly since the foundation of the world. But as it is, he has appeared once for all at the end of the ages to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. ²⁷And just as it is appointed for people to die once, and after that comes judgment, ²⁸So Christ was once offered to bear the wrongdoings of numerous. And to them that pay attention for him will he appear the second moment without sin to salvation.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The adjective kosmikon ('earthly, worldly, of this world') does not mean 'cosmetic' or 'ornamental' but 'belonging to this created order' — as opposed to the heavenly sanctuary. The word dikaiōmata ('regulations, ordinances') refers to the divinely prescribed rules of worship. The author acknowledges the first covenant had legitimate worship — it was real but provisional.
2. The author describes the tabernacle's two-chamber structure from Exodus 26. The 'first' (prōtē) tent is the outer chamber, the Holy Place. Its furnishings are: the lampstand (lychnia, the seven-branched menorah of Exodus 25:31-40), the table (trapeza, for the showbread, Exodus 25:23-30), and the prothesis tōn artōn ('the setting forth of the bread,' the bread of the Presence renewed weekly). We render 'the Holy Place' (Hagia) to distinguish it from the inner chamber.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 25:31-40. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The 'second curtain' (deuteron katapetasma) separated the Holy Place from the Most Holy Place (Hagia Hagiōn, literally 'Holy of Holies'). Only the high priest could pass this curtain, and only once a year on the Day of Atonement (Leviticus 16:2). This curtain is the same one that the author says Jesus has passed through (6:19, 10:20).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 16:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The word thymiaterion can mean either 'censer' (a portable incense burner) or 'altar of incense.' In the Old Testament, the altar of incense stood in the Holy Place, not in the Most Holy Place (Exodus 30:6). The author may be associating it with the inner room because on the Day of Atonement the high priest brought incense inside the curtain (Leviticus 16:12-13), or he may be describing a functional relationship rather than physical location. The three items inside the ark — manna (Exodus 16:33), Aaron's budded staff (Numbers 17:10), and the tablets (Exodus 25:16) — are all covenant tokens.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 30:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 16:12-13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 16:33. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 17:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 25:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The cherubim (Cheroubin doxēs, 'cherubim of glory') are the golden figures described in Exodus 25:18-22, their wings forming the space where God's presence was manifest. The word hilastērion ('mercy seat, place of atonement') is the same word Paul uses in Romans 3:25 for Christ as the 'place of atonement.' It is the lid of the ark where the high priest sprinkled blood on the Day of Atonement. The author deliberately abbreviates — his purpose is not a tour of the tabernacle but the contrast between the old system and Christ.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 25:18-22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The regular priests entered the Holy Place daily to tend the lampstand, set out the bread, and offer incense. The phrase dia pantos ('continually, at all times') emphasizes the repetitive nature of this service. The author's point will become clear in contrast: where the ordinary priests go continually, the high priest goes once a year (verse 7), and Christ goes once for all (verse 12).
7. Three restrictions govern the high priest's access to the Most Holy Place: only the high priest (monos), only once a year (hapax tou eniautou, on the Day of Atonement), and never without blood (ou chōris haimatos). These limitations demonstrate the imperfection of the system — access to God's presence was severely restricted. The word agnoēmātōn ('sins of ignorance, unintentional errors') refers to sins committed unknowingly, following Leviticus 4-5. Deliberate, defiant sins had no sacrificial remedy under the old system (Numbers 15:30-31).
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 4-5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 15:30-31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Holy Spirit is identified as the interpreter of tabernacle symbolism — the physical structure communicated a spiritual lesson. The closed curtain between the two chambers was not merely a liturgical boundary but a divine sign: full access to God's presence was 'not yet disclosed' (mēpō pephanerōsthai). The phrase 'still had standing' (eti echousēs stasin) could refer to the physical first chamber of the tabernacle or, figuratively, to the entire old covenant system.
9. The word parabolē ('symbol, parable, illustration') identifies the tabernacle as a parabolic structure — it teaches by analogy. The critical phrase is kata syneidēsīn teleiōsai ('to perfect with respect to conscience'). The old sacrifices could not cleanse the inner person — they dealt with external ritual purity but left the conscience (syneidēsis, the internal moral awareness) unresolved. This is the fundamental deficiency Christ's sacrifice addresses

(verse 14).

10. The phrase *dikaiōmata sarkos* ('regulations for the body/flesh') characterizes the old system as externally focused — food laws, drink laws, and ritual washings (baptismois, cf. 6:2). The word *diorthōseōs* ('new order, reformation, setting right') is used only here in the New Testament. It describes the time when the external, provisional regulations would be replaced by internal, permanent realities. The author identifies that time as the present — Christ's coming is the *diorthōsis*.
11. The Greek shifts dramatically from the old system to Christ. Some manuscripts read 'good things to come' (*mellontōn*) rather than 'good things that have come' (*genomenōn*); the SBLGNT reads *genomenōn*, emphasizing that the good things are already realized in Christ. The heavenly tent is described by three negatives: not made with hands (*ou cheiropoiētou*), not of this creation (*ou tautēs tēs ktiseōs*) — it belongs to an entirely different order of reality.
12. This verse is the theological center of Hebrews. Three contrasts with the Day of Atonement ritual: the medium (animal blood versus his own blood), the frequency (annually versus once for all, *ephapax*), and the result (temporary cleansing versus eternal redemption, *aiōnian lytrōsin*). The word *lytrōsin* ('redemption, ransoming, liberation by payment') evokes the Old Testament *go'el* — the kinsman who pays the price to set family members free. Christ's blood is both the means of entry and the price of redemption.
13. The argument is from lesser to greater (*a fortiori*). The three ritual elements — blood of goats, blood of bulls (Day of Atonement, Leviticus 16), and ashes of a heifer (the red heifer ceremony, Numbers 19) — achieved genuine but limited cleansing: purification of the 'flesh' (*sarkos*), meaning external ritual purity. The author concedes the old system's effectiveness within its domain before arguing for Christ's greater effectiveness.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The phrase *posō mallon* ('how much more') completes the *a fortiori* argument. Three elements make Christ's sacrifice superior: the agent (Christ, not an animal), the means (through the eternal Spirit, not through ritual procedure), and the quality (without blemish, *amōmon* — the sacrificial perfection requirement of Leviticus 1:3 applied to Christ's moral perfection). The result penetrates where the old system could not: it cleanses the conscience (*syneidēsin*), not just the body. The purpose is positive — not merely forgiveness but enablement: 'to serve the living God' (*latreuein theō zōnti*).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 1:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. Christ's death has retroactive power — it atones for sins committed under the first covenant as well as the second. The word *apolytrōsin* ('redemption, ransoming') extends the liberation language of verse 12. The phrase 'those who are called' (*hoi keklēmenoi*) uses the perfect passive — their calling is a completed divine act with ongoing effect. The 'eternal inheritance' (*aiōniou klēnomias*) echoes the inheritance language of 1:2, 14.
16. The author exploits the double meaning of *diathēkē*: in verses 15 and earlier, it means 'covenant'; here and in verse 17, it means 'will/testament.' A will becomes operative only when the testator dies. The wordplay works because the same Greek word serves both legal concepts. This is not a switch in meaning but an exploitation of the semantic overlap — Christ's death activates the new covenant just as a death activates a will.
17. The legal principle is straightforward: a will is valid (*bebaia*, 'secure, in force') only after the testator's death. It has no legal power (*ischyei*, 'is strong, is operative') during the testator's lifetime. Applied to Christ: the new covenant's blessings became operative through his death. This is the author's explanation of why the new covenant required a death — not merely to provide blood for sacrifice but to activate the testamentary provisions.
18. The verb *engekainistai* ('was inaugurated, was dedicated, was put into effect') indicates the formal activation of the covenant. The principle applies universally: both covenants required blood for their inauguration. The first covenant's inauguration with blood (Exodus 24:3-8) foreshadowed the new covenant's inauguration with Christ's blood.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 24:3-8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The author describes the covenant inauguration ceremony of Exodus 24:3-8, adding details not found in the Exodus account (goats, water, scarlet wool, hyssop, and sprinkling of the scroll). These additional elements may come from a tradition that combined the covenant ceremony with the Day of Atonement and red heifer rituals, or from a textual tradition no longer extant. The hyssop and scarlet wool appear in the red heifer ceremony (Numbers 19) and the leper cleansing (Leviticus 14).
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 24:3-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Quoting Exodus 24:8 with slight modification. The Hebrew/LXX reads 'which the LORD has made with you'; the author writes 'which God has commanded for you' (*eneteilato pros hymas*). The verb *eneteilato* ('commanded') emphasizes the obligatory nature of the covenant. Jesus's words at the Last Supper — 'This is my blood of the covenant' (Mark 14:24) — deliberately echo this covenant-inauguration language.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 24:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** The sprinkling of the tabernacle and its vessels with blood is not directly recorded in Exodus 24 but is attested in Leviticus 8:15, 19 (the consecration of the tabernacle) and in Josephus (*Antiquities* 3.206). Every element of the worship system was consecrated by blood, reinforcing the principle of verse 22.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 21.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 8:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 22.** The qualifier 'almost' (*schedon*) is precise — some purification under the law used water (Numbers 31:23), fire (Numbers 31:23), or flour (Leviticus 5:11-13) rather than blood. But the general principle stands: blood is the primary means of purification and atonement. The final clause — *chōris haimatekchysias ou ginetai aphesis* ('without blood-shedding there is no forgiveness/release') — is one of the most foundational statements in biblical theology. The word *haimatekchysias* ('blood-shedding') appears only here in the New Testament.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 31:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 5:11-13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The argument: if the earthly copies (*hypodeigmata*) required animal blood for purification, the heavenly originals require a better sacrifice — Christ's own blood. The plural 'sacrifices' (*thysiais*) is surprising since Hebrews emphasizes the singularity of Christ's offering; it may be a plural of category ('sacrifices of a better kind') rather than quantity.
- 24.** Three contrasts define Christ's superior priestly ministry: the sanctuary (handmade copy versus heaven itself), the timing (now — presently, continuously), and the purpose (on our behalf — *hyper hēmōn*, his presence before God is for us). The word *antitypa* ('copies, counterparts, representations') identifies the earthly tabernacle as a reproduction, not the original. The verb *emphanisthēnai* ('to appear, to be manifest') describes Christ's visible presence before God's face (*prosōpō*, literally 'face') — he stands before God representing us.
- 25.** The adverb *pollakis* ('repeatedly, often, many times') contrasts with the 'once for all' of verse 12. The phrase *en haimati allotriō* ('with blood belonging to another, with blood not his own') highlights both the distance between the Levitical high priest and his sacrifice (he offers someone else's blood) and between the Levitical system and Christ (who offers his own blood). Christ's self-offering is both more costly and more effective.
- 26.** The *reductio ad absurdum*: if Christ's sacrifice were not once-for-all sufficient, he would have needed to suffer repeatedly throughout all of history. The phrase *epi synteleia tōn aiōnōn* ('at the culmination of the ages') places Christ's sacrifice at the climax of history — all previous ages were leading to this moment. The verb *atheēs*in ('to put away, to set aside, to annul') uses the same word from 7:18 (the annulment of the old commandment) — here it is sin itself that is annulled.
- 27.** The analogy: human beings die once (*hapax*), not repeatedly. Death is a singular, unrepeatable event followed by judgment. Christ's death follows the same pattern — singular and unrepeatable — but with a different sequel: not judgment but salvation (verse 28). The word *apokeitai* ('is appointed, is laid up, is stored away') suggests a divine decree — death is not random but ordained.
- 28.** The chapter ends with a sweeping christological summary in three acts: Christ's first appearing was to deal with sin (verse 26), his present ministry is intercession before God (verse 24), and his second appearing will bring final salvation (this verse). The phrase *pollōn anenenkein hamartias* ('to bear the sins of many') echoes the Servant Song of Isaiah 53:12. The words *chōris hamartias* ('without sin, apart from sin') mean his second coming will have nothing to do with sin — the sin problem was fully and finally resolved at the cross. The verb *apekdechomenois* ('eagerly waiting, expectantly anticipating') describes an active, longing hope.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 53:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

10

Summary: *Hebrews 10 completes the central priestly argument and transitions to exhortation. The chapter first demonstrates that animal sacrifices could never take away sins (verses 1-4), then presents Christ's self-offering as the fulfillment of Psalm 40 — 'a body you have prepared for me' (verses 5-10). Christ's single offering has perfected believers forever (verses 11-18). The author then draws three practical conclusions: approach God with confidence, hold fast to hope, and encourage one another (verses 19-25). A fourth warning passage warns of judgment for deliberate sin after receiving the truth (verses 26-31). The chapter closes by urging the audience to remember their earlier endurance and not throw away their confidence (verses 32-39).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Psalm 40 quotation (verses 5-7) is theologically decisive — it places on Christ's lips a declaration that God does not desire animal sacrifices but has prepared a body for the purpose of doing God's will. The 'new and living way through the curtain, that is, his flesh' (verse 20) is one of the most profound metaphors in the letter. The warning passage (verses 26-31) is the most severe in the New Testament after the unforgivable sin passages.*

Translation Friction: *The Septuagint reading of Psalm 40:6 ('a body you have prepared for me') differs from the Masoretic Text ('ears you have dug/opened for me'). The author depends on the Septuagint reading for his argument. The warning of verses 26-31 raises the same questions about apostasy as 6:4-8. The phrase 'trampled the Son of God underfoot' (verse 29) is among the harshest in the New Testament.*

Connections: *The Psalm 40 quotation connects to the incarnation theology of chapter 2. The new covenant quotation from Jeremiah 31 returns in verses 16-17, closing the argument begun in chapter 8. The 'new and living way' (verse 20) connects to the 'forerunner' of 6:20. The call to perseverance (verses 32-39) anticipates the faith catalogue of chapter 11. The Habakkuk 2:3-4 quotation (verses 37-38) will be developed in chapter 11.*

¹For since the law has only a shadow of the good things to come and not the true form of these realities, it can never, by the same sacrifices that are continually offered year after year, make perfect those who draw near. ²Otherwise, would they not have stopped being offered, since the worshipers, once cleansed, would no longer have any consciousness of sins? ³But in these sacrifices there is a reminder of sins year after year. ⁴For it is impossible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away sins. ⁵Therefore, when Christ comes into the world, he says, "Sacrifices and offerings you have not desired, but a body you have prepared for me. ⁶In burnt offerings and sin offerings you have taken no pleasure. ⁷Then I said, 'See, I have come — in the scroll of the book it is written about me — to do your will, O God.'" ⁸When he said above, "You have neither desired nor taken pleasure in sacrifices and offerings and burnt offerings and sin offerings" — these are offered according to the law — ⁹Then stated he, Lo, I arrive to do your will, O God. He takes off the initially, that he may establish the second. ¹⁰By that will, we have been sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. ¹¹And every priest stands day after day ministering and offering the same sacrifices repeatedly, which can never take away sins. ¹²But when Christ had offered for all time a single sacrifice for sins, he sat down at the right hand of God, ¹³Since that time, he waits for his enemies to be made a footstool under his feet. ¹⁴For by a single offering he has perfected for all time those who are being sanctified. ¹⁵And the Holy Spirit also testifies to us, for after saying, ¹⁶"This is the covenant that I will make with them after those days, declares the Lord: I will put my laws on their hearts, and write them on their minds," ¹⁷Then he adds: "I will never again remember their sins and lawless acts." ¹⁸Where there is forgiveness of these, there is no longer any offering for sin. ¹⁹Therefore, brothers and sisters, since we have confidence to enter the Most Holy Place by the blood of Jesus, ²⁰He opened a new and living way for us through the curtain — that is, through his body. ²¹After an high priest over the house of God; ²²And our bodies washed with pure water, let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience. ²³Let us hold fast to the confession of our hope without wavering, for the one who promised is faithful. ²⁴And let us consider how to stir up one another to love and good works, ²⁵Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves as one, as the kind of some is. But exhorting one another — and so much the more, as you see the day approaching. ²⁶For if we go on sinning deliberately after receiving the knowledge of the truth, there no longer remains a sacrifice for sins, ²⁷However, a certain

fearful looking for of the time of reckoning and fiery indignation, which will devour the adversaries. ²⁸Anyone who rejected the law of Moses died without mercy on the testimony of two or three witnesses. ²⁹How much worse punishment, do you think, will be deserved by the one who has trampled the Son of God underfoot, who has treated the blood of the covenant by which he was sanctified as an ordinary thing, and who has outraged the Spirit of grace? ³⁰For we know the one who said, "Vengeance is mine; I will repay." And again, "The Lord will judge his people." ³¹It is a terrifying thing to fall into the hands of the living God. ³²But recall the earlier days when, after you were enlightened, you endured a hard struggle with sufferings. ³³Sometimes you were publicly exposed to ridicule and affliction, and sometimes you became partners with those who were treated that way. ³⁴For you showed sympathy to the prisoners and joyfully accepted the plundering of your property, since you knew that you yourselves had a better and lasting possession. ³⁵Therefore do not throw away your confidence, which has a great reward. ³⁶For you have need of endurance, so that when you have done the will of God, you may receive what is promised. ³⁷For, "In just a very little while, the one who is coming will come and will not delay. ³⁸But my righteous one will live by faith, and if he shrinks back, my soul has no pleasure in him." ³⁹But we are not among those who shrink back and are destroyed, but among those who have faith and preserve their souls.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The distinction between 'shadow' (skian) and 'true form' (eikona, literally 'image') refines the typology of 8:5. A shadow gives outline but no substance; the 'image' (eikōn) is the thing itself in its true form. The repetition of sacrifices 'year after year' (kat' eniauton) is itself evidence of their inadequacy — if they worked, they would not need repeating. The verb teleiōsai ('make perfect') carries the full weight of Hebrews' perfection concept: to bring into complete, permanent right relationship with God.
2. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'Yes.' If the sacrifices actually cleansed the conscience (syneidēsin hamartiōn, 'consciousness of sins'), they would be unnecessary after the first offering. The fact that they continue proves they have not accomplished their purpose. The word hapax ('once') here means 'once and for all' — genuine cleansing would be definitive.
3. The word anamnēsis ('reminder, remembrance, memorial') is deeply ironic: the sacrifices meant to deal with sin actually function as an annual reminder that sin has not been dealt with. The same word appears in the Last Supper accounts ('do this in remembrance of me,' Luke 22:19) — but Christ's memorial is of accomplished redemption, not unresolved guilt.
4. The declaration adynaton ('impossible') is categorical — not 'difficult' or 'unlikely' but absolutely impossible. The verb aphairein ('to take away, to remove') describes complete elimination. Animal blood could cover sins ceremonially (Leviticus 17:11) but could not remove them from the conscience or from God's account. This blunt assessment sets up the Psalm 40 quotation as the divine alternative.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 17:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 40. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Quoting Psalm 40:6-8 (LXX 39:7-9). The Greek sōma katērtisō moi ('a body you have prepared for me') differs from the Hebrew 'ears you have dug/opened for me.' The Septuagint translators apparently interpreted the Hebrew idiom (ears opened = readiness to hear and obey) with a broader reference to the whole body given for obedience. The author of Hebrews depends on this Septuagint reading — the 'body prepared' becomes the body Christ offered on the cross. The author places these words on Christ's lips as he enters the world (eiserchamenos eis ton kosmon), making the incarnation itself a priestly act of willing obedience.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 40:6-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The holokautōmata ('burnt offerings,' where the entire animal is consumed) and peri hamartias ('sin offerings') represent the full range of Levitical sacrifice. God's displeasure is not with the sacrifices themselves but with their inability to accomplish what he desires — the permanent removal of sin and the restoration of relationship.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 40:6-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The phrase en kephalidi bibliou ('in the scroll/heading of the book') likely refers to the Torah, where God's will for the Messiah is recorded. Christ's statement 'I have come to do your will' replaces the entire sacrificial system with personal, willing obedience. The obedience of the incarnate Son — culminating in the cross — is what God always desired, and what animal sacrifice could only symbolize.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 40:6-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The author now interprets the psalm quotation. Four categories of sacrifice are listed comprehensively (sacrifices, offerings, burnt offerings, sin offerings) and all four are rejected. The parenthetical 'these are offered according to the law' (kata nomon prosperontai) is significant: God does not desire the very sacrifices his own law prescribed. This paradox — God commanded what he did not ultimately want — is resolved by understanding

the sacrificial system as preparatory and typological.

9. The author's conclusion is decisive: the verb *anairei* ('he abolishes, he takes away, he removes') eliminates the first system (animal sacrifice), and the verb *stēsē* ('he may establish, he may set up') installs the second (Christ's willing obedience unto death). The 'first' and 'second' refer to the two systems, not the two covenants directly, though the implication is the same.
10. The phrase *en hō thelēmati* ('by that will') connects directly to Psalm 40:8 — Christ's doing of God's will is the instrument of our sanctification. The perfect passive *hēgiasmenoi esmen* ('we have been sanctified') describes a completed state with ongoing effect — the sanctification accomplished by Christ's offering is permanent. The word *ephapax* ('once for all') appears for the climactic fourth time in Hebrews (7:27, 9:12, 9:26, 10:10), definitively closing the argument about sacrifice.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 40:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The posture of the Levitical priests is significant: they stand (*hestēken*). There was no chair in the tabernacle because their work was never finished. The repetitive language — 'day after day' (*kath' hēmeran*), 'the same' (*tas autas*), 'repeatedly' (*pollakis*), 'never' (*oudepote*) — creates a sense of futile, endless repetition. The verb *perielein* ('take away, remove completely') is stronger than *aphairein* (verse 4) — these sacrifices cannot strip sin away.
12. The contrast with verse 11 is total: where Levitical priests stand (work unfinished), Christ sat down (work completed). Where they offer the same sacrifices repeatedly, Christ offered one sacrifice (*mian thysian*). The phrase *eis to diēnekes* ('for all time, in perpetuity') can modify either the offering ('one sacrifice that is effective for all time') or the sitting ('he sat down permanently'). Both readings are theologically true. The return to Psalm 110:1 ('sat down at the right hand') signals the completion of the priestly argument.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 110:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Quoting Psalm 110:1b. Christ's present activity is described as 'waiting' (*ekdechamenos*) — his sacrificial work is done, and he awaits the consummation when all opposition is subdued. The 'enemies made a footstool' imagery is ancient Near Eastern — a conquered king's enemies were placed under his feet as a sign of total subjection.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 110:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. This verse is the theological summary of the entire priestly argument. The perfect tense *teteleiōken* ('he has perfected') describes a completed act with permanent results. The present passive *hagiazomenous* ('those who are being sanctified') describes an ongoing process. The combination is precise: the sacrifice is complete and unrepeatable (perfect tense), but its application to believers is progressive (present tense). Believers are already perfected in status but still being sanctified in experience.
15. The Holy Spirit is again identified as the author of Scripture (cf. 3:7). The 'testimony' (*martyrei*) is from Jeremiah 31:33-34, returning to the new covenant passage quoted in full in chapter 8. The author now uses only the portions most relevant to his conclusion.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 31:33-34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The Jeremiah 31:33 quotation is repeated from 8:10 with slight variations in word order — hearts before minds rather than minds before hearts. This may reflect citation from memory or a different manuscript tradition. The author extracts the two promises most relevant to his argument: internalized law (verse 16) and forgiveness (verse 17).
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 31:33. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This is the clinching verse. The double negative *ou mē mnēsthēsomai* ('I will never, ever remember') from Jeremiah 31:34 asserts the absolute finality of new covenant forgiveness. The author has built an elaborate argument about sacrifice, priesthood, and covenant, and it all comes down to this: God will not remember sins.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 31:34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The conclusion is elegant and final: if sins are forgiven, no further sacrifice is needed. The word *aphesis* ('forgiveness, release, sending away') describes sins fully dismissed. The phrase *ouketi prosphora peri hamartias* ('no longer any offering for sin') closes the priestly argument — the sacrificial system is not merely superseded but rendered unnecessary by accomplished forgiveness. The argument that began in 5:1 reaches its definitive conclusion.
19. The transition from exposition to exhortation is marked by 'therefore' (*oun*). Everything argued in chapters 5-10 now yields practical application. The word *parrēsian* ('confidence, boldness, freedom of speech') describes the access believers now possess — access that was restricted to one person, one day per year under the old system. The Most Holy Place (*tōn hagiōn*) is now open through Jesus's blood.
20. The phrase *hodon prosphaton kai zōsan* ('a new and living way') describes a path that is freshly opened (*prosphaton*, 'newly slaughtered/newly made' — originally a sacrificial term) and living (*zōsan* — this is not a dead ritual path but one animated by resurrection life). The identification of the curtain with Christ's flesh (*toutestin tēs sarkos autou*) is one of the letter's most compressed theological statements: just as the high priest passed through the curtain to reach God's presence, so Christ's death (the tearing of his flesh) opened permanent access to God.

- 21.** The title 'great priest' (hierea megan) echoes the 'great high priest' of 4:14. The phrase 'over the house of God' (epi ton oikon tou theou) returns to the language of 3:6, where Christ was described as 'Son over God's house.' The two grounds for confidence are now stated: we have access (verses 19-20) and we have a priest (verse 21).
- 22.** The first of three exhortations (verses 22, 23, 24-25). Drawing near (proserchōmetha) is the priestly access language of 4:16. The requirements parallel the high priest's preparation for the Day of Atonement: sprinkling of blood (Leviticus 16:14-15, here applied to the heart) and washing with water (Leviticus 16:4, here likely a reference to baptism). The four qualifications — sincere heart, full faith, sprinkled conscience, washed body — unite inner disposition and outward sign.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 16:14-15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The second exhortation. The word *aklinē* ('without wavering, unbending, firm') describes a confession that does not tilt or lean. The ground for unwavering hope is not human determination but divine faithfulness — *pistos ho epangeilamenos* ('faithful is the one who promised'). This echoes 6:13-20 on the certainty of God's oath.
- 24.** The third exhortation is communal. The verb *katanoōmen* ('let us consider, let us pay careful attention to') demands thoughtful observation of one another's needs. The word *paroxysmon* ('stirring up, provocation, sharp incitement') is usually negative (cf. Acts 15:39, sharp disagreement), but here it is positive — provoking one another to love. Faith is not solitary but mutually dependent.
- 25.** The word *episynagōgēn* ('gathering together, assembling') refers to the Christian community's regular meetings. Some were already abandoning corporate worship — a danger the author treats as serious, since isolation makes apostasy easier (cf. 3:13, mutual daily encouragement). The 'Day' (*tēn hēmeran*) is the day of Christ's return (9:28), which serves as both motivation and deadline.
- 26.** The fourth and most severe warning passage begins. The word *hekousiōs* ('deliberately, willfully, voluntarily') contrasts with the sins of ignorance covered by the Levitical system (9:7). The present participle *hamartanontōn* ('sinning, continuing to sin') suggests a sustained pattern, not a single lapse. The phrase *epignōsin tēs alētheias* ('full knowledge of the truth') describes someone who has understood the gospel completely. The devastating conclusion: for such a person, *ouketi apoleipetai thysia* ('no sacrifice remains') — Christ's sacrifice is the last and only one, and if it is rejected, nothing else can atone.
- 27.** The Greek *phobera tis ekdochē kriseōs* ('a certain fearful expectation of judgment') describes the dread anticipation of divine judgment. The phrase *pyros zēlos* ('fury/jealousy of fire') alludes to Deuteronomy 4:24 and Isaiah 26:11 — God's jealous fire consuming those who oppose him. The word *hupēnantios* ('adversaries, opponents') is strong — those who reject Christ's sacrifice place themselves among God's enemies.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 4:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 26:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** Referring to Deuteronomy 17:2-6, which prescribed death for covenant violators when verified by two or three witnesses. The *a fortiori* argument follows: if rejection of the Mosaic law brought physical death, how much worse is the punishment for rejecting Christ?
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 17:2-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** Three acts of sacrilege are described with escalating severity: trampling the Son of God (*katapatēsas* — treating him as worthless, walking on him), treating the covenant blood as common/profane (*koinon hēgisamenos* — 'common' means 'not holy,' treating the sacred as ordinary), and outraging the Spirit of grace (*enyubrisas* — to insult with arrogant contempt). The phrase 'by which he was sanctified' (*en hō hēgiasthē*) is significant — the apostate was genuinely sanctified by Christ's blood, making the rejection more culpable.
- 30.** Two quotations from Deuteronomy 32:35-36 (the Song of Moses). The first ('vengeance is mine') asserts God's exclusive right to execute justice — vengeance is not human prerogative but divine. The second ('the Lord will judge his people') is ominous in this context: the word 'his people' (*ton laon autou*) means that God's judgment falls on his own covenant community, not just outsiders. Those inside the covenant who violate it face divine judgment.
- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:35-36 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** The adjective *phoberon* ('terrifying, fearful, dreadful') describes not irrational fear but appropriate terror before unmediated divine power. The verb *empesein* ('to fall into') suggests helpless collapse — not voluntary approach but involuntary exposure. The title 'living God' (*theou zōntos*) appears for the third time in Hebrews (3:12, 9:14), each time emphasizing God's active, dangerous vitality. This is not a philosophical abstraction but a God who acts.
- 32.** The tone shifts from warning to encouragement. The word *phōtisthentes* ('enlightened') echoes 6:4 and may refer to baptism. The word *athlēsin* ('struggle, contest, fight') is an athletic metaphor — their faith was tested in a grueling competition. The verb *hypemeinate* ('you endured') is the same word used of Jesus in 12:2-3. Their past endurance is evidence that they are capable of continuing.

33. The verb *theatrizomenoi* ('publicly exposed, made a spectacle') comes from *theatron* ('theater') — they were put on public display for mockery. The two dimensions of their suffering: direct persecution (ridicule and affliction) and solidarity with others who suffered (becoming partners/*koinōnoi* with the persecuted). Both are costly: one involves personal pain, the other the risk of guilt by association.
34. The Greek *synepathēsate* ('you sympathized with, you suffered alongside') recalls the sympathy language of 4:15. They visited and supported imprisoned believers at personal risk. Even more remarkably, they accepted the confiscation (*harpagēn*, 'plundering, seizure') of their property with joy (*meta charas*). The reason: they possessed something better (*kreitton* — the signature comparative) and lasting (*menousan*, 'remaining, enduring'). Earthly possessions could be taken; heavenly possession could not.
35. The imperative *mē apobalēte* ('do not throw away') pictures a deliberate discarding of something valuable. Their *parrēsian* ('confidence, boldness') — the same word from verse 19 — is not something to be lightly abandoned. It carries a great reward (*megalēn misthapodosian*, 'great repayment, great recompense'). The word *misthapodosian* connects to 11:6 ('God is a rewarder of those who seek him') and 11:26 (Moses looked to the reward).
36. The word *hypomonēs* ('endurance, patient steadfastness') is the essential virtue for the Hebrews community. It bridges the gap between doing God's will (to *thelēma tou theou poiēsantes* — echoing Christ's words from Psalm 40 in verse 7) and receiving the promise (*tēn epangelian*). The gap requires time, and time requires endurance.
36. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 40. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
37. Quoting a combination of Isaiah 26:20 (LXX) and Habakkuk 2:3-4 (LXX). The phrase *mikron hoson hoson* ('a very little while, just a bit more') intensifies the brevity of the remaining wait. The Septuagint's 'the one who is coming' (*ho erchomenos*) personalizes Habakkuk's vision — it is not an event but a person who is anticipated. This messianic reading was widely shared in early Christianity.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Habakkuk 2:3-4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 26:20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The Habakkuk 2:4 quotation is also foundational for Paul (Romans 1:17, Galatians 3:11), but the author of Hebrews uses it differently — Paul emphasizes justification by faith; Hebrews emphasizes perseverance in faith. The phrase *ek pisteōs zēsetai* ('will live by/from faith') describes faith as the sustaining principle of the righteous person's life. The warning — 'if he shrinks back' (*ean hyposteilētai*) — describes cowardly retreat, withdrawal from the battle.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Habakkuk 2:3-4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The chapter ends with a confident declaration that echoes 6:9 ('we are convinced of better things'). The two categories are starkly contrasted: *hypostolēs eis apōleian* ('shrinking back leading to destruction') versus *pisteōs eis peripoīēsin psychēs* ('faith leading to the preservation of the soul'). The word *peripoīēsin* ('preservation, obtaining, possession') means the soul is kept safe, secured, possessed. This verse serves as the bridge to chapter 11's great catalogue of faith — 'we are people of faith' leads naturally to 'now let me tell you what faith looks like.'

11

Summary: *Hebrews 11 is the celebrated 'Faith Hall of Fame,' a sweeping survey of Old Testament figures who lived and acted by faith. The chapter opens with a definition of faith (verse 1), then moves chronologically from Abel through Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Sarah, Isaac, Jacob, Joseph, Moses, Rahab, and a compressed catalogue of judges, kings, and prophets. Each example demonstrates that faith is not passive belief but active trust that shapes decisions, risks everything, and looks beyond present reality to future promise. The chapter concludes with the sobering note that none of these heroes received what was promised — God had planned something better, so that they would not be made perfect apart from the community of faith that includes the present audience.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The definition in verse 1 has shaped Christian theology for two millennia. The chapter functions as a narrative commentary on the entire Old Testament, selecting episodes that demonstrate the faith principle. The faith of women is specifically noted (Sarah, Rahab, the mothers of verse 35). The catalogue of unnamed sufferers in verses 35-38 is among the most harrowing passages in the Bible. The final twist — that these heroes are not complete without the present audience — transforms a historical survey into a pastoral appeal.*

Translation Friction: The attribution of faith to Sarah (verse 11) is textually disputed — some manuscripts make Abraham the subject. The assertion that Moses 'considered the reproach of Christ greater wealth than the treasures of Egypt' (verse 26) applies Christian categories to a pre-Christian figure. We render the text as written and note the interpretive framework. The compressed catalogue of verses 32-38 covers centuries in a few sentences.

Connections: The chapter draws on Genesis 4 (Abel), Genesis 5 (Enoch), Genesis 6-9 (Noah), Genesis 12-25 (Abraham and Sarah), Genesis 27 (Isaac), Genesis 48-49 (Jacob), Genesis 50 (Joseph), Exodus 1-14 (Moses), Joshua 2-6 (Rahab and Jericho), and dozens of Judges, Kings, and Prophets passages. The 'cloud of witnesses' in 12:1 refers back to this entire catalogue. The 'something better' of verse 40 echoes the 'better' theme throughout Hebrews.

¹Now faith is the reality of things hoped for, the proof of things not seen. ²For by this the people of old received commendation. ³By faith we understand that the ages were formed by the word of God, so that what is seen was not made from things that are visible. ⁴By faith Abel offered to God a more acceptable sacrifice than Cain, through which he was commended as righteous, God himself commending him by accepting his gifts. And through his faith, though he died, he still speaks. ⁵By faith Enoch was taken up so that he would not see death, and he was not found because God had taken him. For before he was taken up, he was commended as having pleased God. ⁶And without faith it is impossible to please God, for whoever would draw near to God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him. ⁷By faith Noah, being warned by God about events yet unseen, acted with reverent caution and constructed an ark for the saving of his household. By this he condemned the world and became an heir of the righteousness that comes by faith. ⁸By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out to a place that he was to receive as an inheritance, and he went out not knowing where he was going. ⁹By faith he lived as a stranger in the land of promise, as in a foreign country, dwelling in tents with Isaac and Jacob, co-heirs of the same promise. ¹⁰For he was looking forward to the city that has foundations, whose architect and builder is God. ¹¹By faith Sarah herself received power to conceive, even though she was past the age, since she considered faithful the one who had promised. ¹²Therefore from one man, and him as good as dead, there were born descendants as many as the stars of heaven and as innumerable as the sand on the seashore. ¹³All these died in faith without having received what was promised, but they saw it and greeted it from a distance, and they acknowledged that they were strangers and exiles on the earth. ¹⁴For people who speak in this way make it clear that they are seeking a homeland. ¹⁵If they had been thinking of the land they had left behind, they would have had opportunity to return. ¹⁶But as it is, they desire a better country, that is, a heavenly one. Therefore God is not ashamed to be called their God, for he has prepared a city for them. ¹⁷By faith Abraham, when he was tested, offered up Isaac; and he who had received the promises was in the act of offering his only son, ¹⁸Of whom it was stated, That in Isaac will your seed be called:. ¹⁹He considered that God was able even to raise from the dead, and figuratively speaking, he did receive him back from the dead. ²⁰Through faith Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau regarding what was still to happen. ²¹By faith Jacob, as he was dying, blessed each of Joseph's sons, and worshiped, leaning on the top of his staff. ²²By faith Joseph, at the end of his life, mentioned the exodus of the Israelites and gave instructions about his bones. ²³By faith Moses, when he was born, was hidden for three months by his parents, because they saw that the child was beautiful, and they were not afraid of the king's edict. ²⁴By faith Moses, when he had grown up, refused to be called a son of Pharaoh's daughter, ²⁵He chose to suffer alongside the people of God rather than enjoy the fleeting pleasures of sin. ²⁶He considered the reproach suffered for Christ as greater wealth than the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking ahead to the reward. ²⁷By faith he left Egypt, not fearing the king's anger, for he endured as one who sees the invisible God. ²⁸By faith he kept the Passover and the sprinkling of blood, so that the destroyer of the firstborn would not touch them. ²⁹By faith the people crossed the Red Sea as if on dry land, but when the Egyptians attempted to do so, they were drowned. ³⁰By faith the walls of Jericho fell after they had been encircled for seven days. ³¹By faith Rahab the prostitute did not perish with those who were disobedient, because she had welcomed the spies in peace. ³²And what more should I say? For time would fail me to tell of Gideon, Barak, Samson, Jephthah, David, Samuel, and the prophets — ³³Indeed, who by way of faith subdued kingdoms, wrought righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions,. ³⁴They quenched raging fires, escaped death by the sword. Their weakness was turned to strength. They became powerful in battle

and routed foreign armies. ³⁵Women received back their dead by resurrection. Others were tortured, refusing to accept release, so that they might gain a better resurrection. ³⁶Others endured mocking and flogging, and even chains and imprisonment. ³⁷They were stoned, they were sawn in two, they were killed with the sword. They went about in sheepskins and goatskins, destitute, afflicted, mistreated — ³⁸(Of whom the present age was not worthy:) they wandered in deserts, and in mountains, and in dens and caves of the world. ³⁹And all these, though commended through their faith, did not receive what was promised, ⁴⁰God after provided some better thing for us, that they without us should not be appointed perfect.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek hypostasis ('reality, substance, assurance, foundation') in this context means not merely subjective confidence but the substantial reality that gives content to hope. Faith is the present reality of what is hoped for, not mere wishful thinking. The word elegchos ('proof, conviction, evidence') means the inner conviction that unseen realities are real — faith functions as evidence in the court of the soul. Together, hypostasis and elegchos define faith as the capacity to live as though the unseen promises are already substantial and proven.
2. The phrase hoi presbyteroi ('the elders, the people of old') refers to the Old Testament figures about to be catalogued. The passive emartyrēthēsan ('received testimony, were commended') indicates that God himself bore witness to their faith — the verb martyreō ('to testify, to bear witness') runs through the chapter as a refrain.
3. Before cataloguing the faith of specific individuals, the author grounds faith in creation itself. The phrase tous aiōnas ('the ages') is the same word from 1:2 — the entire framework of time and space. The declaration that the visible came from the invisible (eis to mē ek phainomenōn to blepomenon gegonenai) asserts that the most fundamental reality is unseen — creation itself rests on the invisible word of God. Faith, which trusts the unseen (verse 1), thus aligns with the deepest structure of reality.
4. The catalogue begins with Abel (Genesis 4:1-16). The adjective pleiona ('more, greater, better') does not specify what made Abel's sacrifice superior — Genesis does not explain it either. The author attributes the difference to faith. The phrase apothanōn eti lalei ('though he died, he still speaks') is a powerful conclusion — Abel's faith outlived his murder. The 'speaking' may refer to his blood crying from the ground (Genesis 4:10) or to the ongoing testimony of his example.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 4:3-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Enoch's translation (Genesis 5:21-24) is described with the verb metatethē ('was transferred, was removed') — the same root used in 7:12 for the 'change' of priesthood. The Septuagint of Genesis 5:24 reads 'Enoch pleased God' (euairestēkenai tō theō) where the Hebrew reads 'Enoch walked with God.' The author works from the Septuagint text. The verb 'was not found' (ouch hēurisketo) echoes Genesis 5:24 — Enoch simply disappeared.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 5:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. This verse generalizes from Enoch's example to a universal principle. Two beliefs are necessary: that God exists (hoti estin, 'that he is') and that he rewards seekers (misthapodotēs ginetai, 'he becomes a rewarder'). The word ekzētousin ('earnestly seek, diligently search for') implies more than casual interest — it describes active, sustained pursuit. The word misthapodotēs ('rewarder') appears only here in the New Testament and connects to 10:35 (the 'great reward' of confidence) and 11:26 (the 'reward' Moses looked to).
7. Noah's faith (Genesis 6-9) exemplifies the definition of verse 1 — he acted on things 'not yet seen' (mēdepō blepomenōn). The word eulabētheis ('having acted with reverent caution, having revered') describes motivated obedience rooted in awe, not paralyzing fear. Noah's ark-building was itself an act of judgment — his obedience condemned the disobedient world by contrast. The phrase 'righteousness that comes by faith' (tēs kata pistin dikaiosynēs) connects to Habakkuk 2:4 and Paul's language in Romans.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 6:13-22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 6-9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Habakkuk 2:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Abraham's faith (Genesis 12:1-4) is the paradigmatic case in the chapter, receiving the most extended treatment (verses 8-19). The participle kaloumenos ('when he was called, while being called') suggests he obeyed during the calling — immediately, without delay. The phrase mē epistamenos pou erchetai ('not knowing where he was going') captures the essence of Abrahamic faith: obedience without complete information, trusting the caller rather than the destination.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 12:1-4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb parōkēsen ('lived as a stranger, sojourned') means Abraham never owned the promised land — he lived in it as a resident alien. The tents (skēnais) are concrete symbols of impermanence. The three generations sharing the same condition — Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob all dwelling in tents — demonstrates that the promise was not fulfilled in their lifetimes. They were synklēronomōn ('co-heirs, joint inheritors') of a promise they never

saw completed.

10. Abraham's tent-dwelling was not aimlessness but anticipation. He looked for a permanent city (polin, with foundations — themelious) in contrast to his temporary tents (without foundations). The two titles for God — technitēs ('architect, designer, craftsman') and dēmiourgos ('builder, creator, maker') — distinguish design from construction. God both designed and built the permanent city. This city will be identified in 12:22 and 13:14 as the heavenly Jerusalem.
11. The text is debated: some manuscripts and scholars read Abraham as the subject, with Sarah mentioned parenthetically. The SBLGNT includes 'Sarah herself' (autē Sarra) as the subject, which we follow. Despite her initial laughter (Genesis 18:12-15), Sarah ultimately trusted God's promise. The phrase para kairon hēlikias ('past the time of age') is a euphemism for post-menopausal. The reason for her faith: she considered God 'faithful' (piston) — the same word applied to Christ in 2:17 and 3:2.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 18:11-14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The phrase nenekrōmenou ('as good as dead') describes Abraham's advanced age — his body was effectively dead with respect to reproductive capacity (cf. Romans 4:19). The imagery of stars (Genesis 15:5) and sand (Genesis 22:17) represents the two great covenant promises of innumerable offspring. The contrast between the one dead man and the countless descendants demonstrates the power of God's promise working through faith.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 15:5. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 22:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. This is the first of two summary statements (the second is verses 39-40). The patriarchs died mē labontes tas epangelias ('not having received the promises') — they died with the promise unfulfilled. Yet they 'saw' (idontes) the fulfillment from afar and 'greeted' (aspasamennoi) it — like travelers who spot their destination on the horizon and wave to it. The self-identification as 'strangers and exiles' (xenoi kai parepidēmoi) quotes Genesis 23:4 and 47:9. Their impermanence on earth testified to the permanence of their heavenly hope.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 23:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The word patrída ('homeland, fatherland') is the place of origin, the place where one belongs. By calling themselves strangers on earth, the patriarchs revealed that earth was not their home — they were seeking their true homeland elsewhere.
15. Abraham could have returned to Mesopotamia — it was physically possible. The fact that he did not proves that his 'homeland' was not an earthly place. The verb emnēmoneuon ('were remembering, were thinking of') in the imperfect tense suggests sustained thought — if they had kept thinking of their origin, they could have gone back. Their forward orientation proved their faith was in the unseen future, not the visible past.
16. The word kreittōnos ('better') is the signature adjective of Hebrews for the final time in this chapter. The statement 'God is not ashamed to be called their God' (ouk epaischynetai autous ho theos theos epikaleisthai autōn) echoes Exodus 3:6 ('I am the God of Abraham') — God voluntarily binds his name to these faith-filled sojourners. The 'city' (polin) recalls verse 10 and will be identified in 12:22 as the heavenly Jerusalem.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The Aqedah, the binding of Isaac (Genesis 22), is the supreme test of faith. The perfect tense prosenēnochen ('has offered') indicates a completed act, while the imperfect prosepheren ('was offering') describes the ongoing process — Abraham was in the act of sacrificing when God intervened. The word monogenē ('only, unique, one and only') emphasizes that Isaac was irreplaceable — the entire promise line depended on him.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 22:1-10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Quoting Genesis 21:12. The paradox is sharp: God promised descendants through Isaac, then commanded Isaac's sacrifice. Abraham's faith held both realities simultaneously — the promise and the command — trusting that God could reconcile what appeared irreconcilable.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 21:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The verb logisamenos ('having reckoned, having considered') describes rational faith — Abraham calculated that if God promised descendants through Isaac and demanded Isaac's death, then God must be able to raise the dead. The phrase en parabolē ('figuratively, in a parable, as a type') indicates that Abraham's receiving Isaac back was a figure or type of resurrection — Isaac's near-death and restoration prefigured the death and resurrection of Christ.
20. Isaac's faith (Genesis 27) is demonstrated in his blessing, which spoke of future realities he could not see. Even though the blessing was obtained through deception, Isaac recognized it as binding and prophetic (Genesis 27:33). The order 'Jacob and Esau' (rather than Esau and Jacob, the birth order) reflects the reversal that was God's intention from the beginning (Genesis 25:23).

20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 27:27-29 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 25:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Jacob's faith (Genesis 48) was exercised at death — crossing his hands to give the greater blessing to the younger son Ephraim rather than Manasseh, trusting God's choice over natural order. The detail of worshiping while leaning on his staff comes from Genesis 47:31 (LXX), where the Hebrew 'bed' (mittah) was read as 'staff' (matteh) by the Septuagint translators. The author follows the Septuagint.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 48:15-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 47:31. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. Joseph's faith (Genesis 50:24-25) looked beyond his own death to the future exodus. His command about his bones — that they be carried out of Egypt — was a concrete expression of faith in God's promise to bring Israel to the promised land. He refused to be permanently buried in Egypt because he believed Israel's future lay elsewhere. The word *exodou* ('exodus, departure') here refers to the departure from Egypt.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 50:24-25. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. Moses's parents (Exodus 2:1-3) acted in faith by defying Pharaoh's decree to kill all Hebrew male infants. The word *asteion* ('beautiful, fine, elegant') is the same word used in the Septuagint of Exodus 2:2 and in Acts 7:20 ('beautiful before God'). They saw something in the child that gave them courage to risk their lives. The phrase *ouk ephobēthēsan* ('they were not afraid') echoes the courage demanded of faith throughout the chapter.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 2:2-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. Moses's personal faith now takes over from his parents' faith. The verb *ērēsato* ('refused, denied, rejected') describes a deliberate choice — he actively turned away from royal privilege and identity. The phrase *megas genomenos* ('having become great/grown up') marks the transition from childhood to adult decision-making.
25. The verb *synkakoucheisthai* ('to suffer with, to be mistreated alongside') emphasizes solidarity — Moses chose shared suffering over solitary comfort. The phrase *proskairin apolausin hamartias* ('temporary enjoyment of sin') does not deny that sin offers pleasure, but qualifies it as *proskairos* — 'for a season, temporary, fleeting.' The comparison between lasting suffering with God's people and fleeting pleasure through sin mirrors the audience's own choice.
26. The phrase *ton oneidismōn tou Christou* ('the reproach of Christ') is striking: the author reads Moses's suffering as participation in Christ's reproach — a suffering that belongs to the Messiah and is shared by all who follow him across all eras. The verb *apeblepen* ('was looking away toward') describes a focused gaze that looks past the present to fix on the future. The *misthapodosian* ('reward, recompense') is the same word from 10:35 and 11:6.
27. Whether this refers to Moses's flight after killing the Egyptian (Exodus 2:14-15) or the exodus itself is debated. The phrase *mē phobētheis ton thymon tou basileōs* ('not fearing the king's anger') better fits the exodus, since Exodus 2:14 says Moses 'was afraid.' The concluding phrase *ton aoraton hōs horōn* ('seeing the unseen one') is a paradox that encapsulates the chapter's entire message: faith sees what is invisible. The verb *ekartērēsen* ('he endured, he held firm') appears only here in the New Testament.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 2:14-15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. Moses's faith in instituting the Passover (Exodus 12) meant trusting that lamb's blood on the doorframes would protect against death — an extraordinary act of faith in the invisible. The word *proschysin* ('sprinkling, pouring') refers to the application of blood to the doorposts and lintel. The *olothreūōn* ('the destroyer') is the death-dealing agent of God's judgment, distinct from God himself.
28. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 12:21-23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
29. The faith here is corporate — the people (implied subject) crossed together. The phrase *hōs dia xēras gēs* ('as through dry ground') from Exodus 14:21-22. The Egyptians' attempt to cross using the same path failed — the distinction between the two groups was faith, not technique. The verb *katēpothēsan* ('were swallowed up, were drowned') is vivid — the sea consumed them.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 14:21-29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
30. The conquest of Jericho (Joshua 6) required faith expressed through obedience to an absurd military strategy — marching around a city for seven days. The walls fell not by siege engines but by faith and divine power. The passive *kyklōthenta* ('having been encircled') emphasizes the action of faithful obedience.

- 30.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 6:12-20 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 31.** Rahab (Joshua 2) is the second Gentile woman in the faith catalogue (after the implied inclusion of non-Israelite women among the mothers). Her designation as *hē pornē* ('the prostitute') is not sanitized — the text preserves her identity while celebrating her faith. The rest of Jericho is described as *apeithēsasin* ('the disobedient/unbelieving'), connecting disobedience and unbelief as in 3:18-19. Her faith was expressed in action: she welcomed (*dexamenē*) the spies.
- 31.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joshua 2:1-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 32.** The author shifts to a rapid catalogue, acknowledging that the full account of faith would take longer than the letter allows. The names are not in chronological order (Gideon precedes Barak in Judges; Samson follows both; Jephthah precedes Samson). The arrangement may be deliberate, grouping by type or significance rather than timeline. The move from individuals to 'the prophets' (*tōn prophētōn*) signals a transition to categories of faith-action.
- 32.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Judges 6:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 33.** The compressed catalogue begins with triumphant deeds. 'Conquered kingdoms' may refer to Joshua, David, or the judges. 'Administered justice' (*eirgasanto dikaiosynēn*) applies to all righteous rulers. 'Obtained promises' refers to partial fulfillments (though the ultimate promise remained outstanding, verse 39). 'Shut the mouths of lions' alludes to Daniel in the lions' den (Daniel 6:22).
- 33.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 6:22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 34.** More triumphant deeds: 'quenched fire' alludes to Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego (Daniel 3). 'Escaped the sword' may refer to David fleeing Saul or Elijah fleeing Jezebel. 'Made strong out of weakness' (*edynamōthēsan apo astheneias*) is the pattern of divine reversal — Gideon, Samson, Hezekiah's recovery from illness. 'Put foreign armies to flight' summarizes the judges and the Maccabean resistance.
- 34.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 35.** The tone shifts dramatically at the middle of this verse. 'Women received their dead by resurrection' alludes to the widow of Zarephath (1 Kings 17:17-24) and the Shunammite woman (2 Kings 4:17-37). Then the catalogue turns dark: 'others were tortured' (*etympanisthēsan*, literally 'beaten on a drum' — stretched on a rack or wheel and beaten to death). They refused release (*apolytrōsin* — the same word used for Christ's 'redemption' in 9:15) because they sought a 'better resurrection' (*kreittōnos anastaseōs*) — not temporary resuscitation but permanent, eschatological resurrection.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 17:17-24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 35.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 4:17-37 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 36.** The catalogue of suffering continues. Mocking (*empaigmōn*) may allude to the prophets ridiculed for their messages. Flogging (*mastigōn*) recalls Jeremiah's treatment (Jeremiah 20:2). Chains and imprisonment point to Joseph (Genesis 39:20), Micaiah (1 Kings 22:27), and Jeremiah (Jeremiah 37:15-16).
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 20:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 39:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 22:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 36.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 37:15-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 37.** The violence escalates: stoning (Zechariah son of Jehoiada, 2 Chronicles 24:21; Naboth, 1 Kings 21), sawing in two (tradition holds Isaiah was sawn in two by Manasseh), death by sword (1 Kings 19:10, Uriah the prophet in Jeremiah 26:23). Then the catalogue shifts to deprivation: sheepskins and goatskins as clothing (Elijah's mantle, 1 Kings 19:13, 2 Kings 1:8), destitution, affliction, mistreatment. Some manuscripts include *epeirasthēsan* ('they were tested/tempted') between 'sawn in two' and 'killed with the sword.'
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Chronicles 24:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 37.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 19:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 26:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
37. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 1:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
38. The parenthetical judgment 'of whom the world was not worthy' (hōn ouk ēn axios ho kosmos) is one of the most powerful interjections in the New Testament. The world rejected these people, but the author reverses the judgment: it was the world that was unworthy of them. Their hiding in deserts, mountains, and caves recalls Elijah (1 Kings 19:9), David (1 Samuel 22:1), and the Maccabean resisters (1 Maccabees 2:29-30).
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
38. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Samuel 22:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
39. The second summary statement (cf. verse 13). The martyrethentes ('commended, attested, testified about') returns the chapter to its opening refrain (verse 2). The stunning admission: ouk ekomisanto tēn epangelian ('they did not receive the promise'). Despite all their faith, suffering, and triumph, the ultimate promise remained unfulfilled in their lifetimes. The reason follows in verse 40.
40. The chapter's final verse is its theological climax. God had 'provided something better' (kreitton ti problepsamenou) for the present generation — the fulfillment in Christ that the Old Testament heroes could only anticipate. The phrase 'apart from us they would not be made perfect' (hina mē chōris hēmōn teleiōthōsin) means the old covenant saints and the new covenant community complete each other. The perfection (teleiōsis) that Hebrews has argued for throughout the letter is corporate — it requires the full company of the redeemed across all ages. The 'cloud of witnesses' of 12:1 awaits the arrival of the present audience to complete the assembly.

12

Summary: *Hebrews 12 opens with the famous exhortation to run the race of faith surrounded by the 'great cloud of witnesses' from chapter 11, looking to Jesus the pioneer and perfecter of faith. The chapter then interprets suffering as divine discipline — God trains his children as a father disciplines his sons — and calls for endurance. A warning against Esau's profanity follows. The chapter reaches its climax in a dramatic comparison between Sinai (the old covenant) and Zion (the new covenant): the terrifying mountain of law versus the joyful city of grace. The final warning declares that God's voice now speaks from heaven, and those who refuse him face a shaking that will remove everything except the unshakeable kingdom.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'cloud of witnesses' (12:1) transforms the historical survey of chapter 11 into a present reality — the heroes of faith are spectators watching the present generation run. The Sinai/Zion contrast (verses 18-24) is the most vivid typological comparison in Hebrews, moving from terror to celebration. The phrase 'consuming fire' (verse 29) echoes Deuteronomy 4:24 and closes the letter's theological argument with awe.*

Translation Friction: *The 'spirits of righteous people made perfect' (verse 23) raises questions about the intermediate state. The 'sprinkled blood that speaks a better word than Abel's' (verse 24) compresses enormous theology into a single phrase. The final shaking (verses 26-27) draws on Haggai 2:6 but applies it eschatologically. We render without resolving the many interpretive debates.*

Connections: *The cloud of witnesses connects to chapter 11. The discipline teaching draws on Proverbs 3:11-12. The Esau warning connects to Genesis 25:29-34 and the irreversibility theme of 6:4-8. The Sinai scene draws on Exodus 19-20 and Deuteronomy 4-5. Mount Zion anticipates the heavenly city of 13:14. The Haggai quotation develops the eschatological hope of 1:10-12.*

Therefore, since we are surrounded by so great a cloud of witnesses, let us also lay aside every weight and the sin that so easily entangles us, and let us run with endurance the race that is set before us, ²Keep your eyes on Jesus, who began and will complete our faith. For the joy that lay ahead of him, he endured the cross, disregarding its shame, and has sat down at the right hand of God's throne. ³Consider him who endured such hostility from sinners against himself, so that you may not grow weary or lose heart. ⁴You have not yet resisted to the point of shedding your blood in your struggle against sin. ⁵And

have you forgotten the exhortation that addresses you as sons and daughters? "My child, do not regard lightly the discipline of the Lord, nor grow weary when you are corrected by him. ⁶For the Lord disciplines the one he loves, and chastises every child he accepts." ⁷Endure your trials as discipline. God is treating you as his children. For what child is there whom a father does not discipline? ⁸But if you are without discipline, in which all have participated, then you are illegitimate children and not true sons and daughters. ⁹Besides, we had earthly fathers who disciplined us, and we respected them. Should we not much more submit to the Father of spirits and live? ¹⁰For they disciplined us for a short time as it seemed best to them, but he disciplines us for our good, so that we may share in his holiness. ¹¹All discipline seems painful at the time rather than pleasant, but later it yields the peaceful fruit of righteousness to those who have been trained by it. ¹²Therefore, strengthen your drooping hands and your weak knees, ¹³Make straight paths since your ankles, lest that which is lame be turned out of the way. But let it rather be healed. ¹⁴Pursue peace with everyone, and the holiness without which no one will see the Lord. ¹⁵See to it that no one falls short of the grace of God, that no 'root of bitterness' springs up and causes trouble, and through it many become defiled, ¹⁶Lest there be any sexually immoral person, or godless individual, as Esau, who for a single meal traded away his inheritance rights. ¹⁷For you know that afterward, when he wanted to inherit the blessing, he was rejected, for he found no opportunity to change his father's mind, even though he sought the blessing with tears. ¹⁸For you have not come to something that can be touched — a blazing fire, darkness, gloom, and a storm, ¹⁹The sound of a trumpet, and the voice of words. Which voice they that listened to intreated that the message should not be spoken to them any more:. ²⁰Since they could not endure that which was commanded, And if so much as a beast touch the mountain, it will be stoned, or thrust by way of with a dart:. ²¹And so terrifying was the sight that Moses said, "I am trembling with fear." ²²But you have come to Mount Zion and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to innumerable angels in festive assembly, ²³To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are recorded in the heavens above, and to God the pass the time of reckoning on of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect,. ²⁴To Jesus the mediator of the new binding agreement, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaketh better things than that of Abel. ²⁵See to it that you do not refuse the one who is speaking. For if they did not escape when they refused the one who warned them on earth, how much less will we escape if we reject the one who warns from heaven! ²⁶At that time his voice shook the earth, but now he has promised, "Yet once more I will shake not only the earth but also heaven." ²⁷This phrase 'yet once more' indicates the removal of what can be shaken — that is, created things — so that what cannot be shaken may remain. ²⁸Therefore, since we are receiving an unshakeable kingdom, let us be thankful, and so offer worship pleasing to God with reverence and awe, ²⁹Our God is indeed a consuming fire.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The athletic metaphor is sustained: *nephos martyron* ('cloud of witnesses') pictures the chapter 11 heroes as spectators in a stadium surrounding the runners. They are 'witnesses' (*martyron*) in a double sense — they testified to their own faith and now witness ours. The word *ogkon* ('weight, bulk, mass') refers to excess weight an athlete would shed before competing. The phrase *euperistaton hamartian* ('the sin that easily entangles/besets') is debated — the word *euperistatos* may mean 'easily encircling,' 'closely clinging,' or 'admired by many.' The athletic image suggests anything that hinders the runner. The race (*agona*) is an endurance event, not a sprint — *hypomonē* ('endurance, perseverance') is the required virtue.
2. The verb *aphorontes* ('looking away to, fixing the gaze on') means looking away from everything else to focus exclusively on Jesus. The two titles — *archegon* ('pioneer,' cf. 2:10) and *teleiōtēn* ('perfecter, completer') — describe Jesus as both the one who began faith and the one who brought it to completion. He is the supreme example of the faith described in chapter 11. The phrase *anti tēs prokeimenēs autō charas* ('for/instead of the joy set before him') is debated: *anti* can mean 'for the sake of' (he endured the cross to obtain the joy) or 'instead of' (he chose the cross rather than the joy he could have had). Both readings work theologically. The phrase *aischynēs kataphronēsas* ('disregarding the shame') treats the cross's disgrace as beneath consideration — not denied but dismissed.
3. The verb *analogisasthe* ('consider, think through, calculate') demands careful comparison — measure your suffering against his. The word *antilogian* ('hostility, opposition, contradiction') describes the opposition Jesus faced from sinners. The two dangers — *kamēte* ('grow weary, become exhausted') and *eklyomenoi* ('lose heart, become faint, go slack') — describe the spiritual fatigue the audience is experiencing. The remedy is sustained contemplation of Jesus's example.
4. The phrase *mechris haimatos* ('to the point of blood') means they have not yet been martyred. This is not dismissive but comparative — their suffering, while real, has not reached the ultimate cost. Jesus resisted to the point of blood (the cross); they have not yet been required to do the same. The athletic metaphor continues with *antagonizomenoi* ('struggling against, competing against') — sin is the opponent in the contest.

5. Quoting Proverbs 3:11-12 (LXX). The verb eklelēsthe ('have you forgotten?') suggests their suffering has caused them to lose sight of this foundational teaching. The word paideias ('discipline, training, education') is the key term for the passage — it means not punishment for punishment's sake but training for maturity. The two errors to avoid: oligōrei ('regard lightly, make little of') — dismissing discipline as meaningless — and eklyou ('grow weary, lose heart') — collapsing under it.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 3:11-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The paradox: discipline is evidence of love (agapa), not rejection. The verb mastigoi ('chastises, scourges') is strong — divine training can be painful. The word paradechetai ('accepts, receives, welcomes') means the child who is disciplined is a child who belongs. The logic reverses the audience's interpretation of their suffering: instead of evidence that God has abandoned them, their trials prove they are his children.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 3:11-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The imperative hypomenete ('endure') can also be read as indicative ('you are enduring'). The rhetorical question expects the answer 'None' — every father disciplines his children. The analogy assumes that good parenting involves correction, not permissiveness.
8. The argument from reverse: the absence of discipline would be worse than its presence, indicating that one is not a genuine child (nothoi, 'illegitimate children, born outside the family'). The word metochoi ('participants, sharers') from 3:1 and 3:14 — all genuine children share in the discipline.
9. The a fortiori argument: if we respected human fathers who disciplined us, how much more should we submit to God? The title 'Father of spirits' (patri tōn pneumatōn) distinguishes divine fatherhood from human ('fathers of our flesh'). The verb zēsomen ('and live') connects obedience to the discipline with life itself — submission to God's training leads to spiritual vitality.
10. Two contrasts: duration (short time versus permanent benefit) and quality (as seemed best to imperfect humans versus for genuine benefit from a perfect Father). The goal of divine discipline is metalabein tēs hagiōtētos autou ('to share in his holiness') — participation in God's own character. This is not legal status but transformative reality.
11. The author concedes the reality of pain — discipline does not 'seem' (dokei) joyful because it is not joyful in the moment. But the metaphor shifts from athletics to agriculture: discipline produces 'fruit' (karpon). The compound phrase karpon eirēnikon dikaiosynēs ('peaceful fruit of righteousness') describes the harvest — a life characterized by both peace and righteousness. The verb gegymnasmēnois ('trained') returns the athletic metaphor from 5:14 — discipline is training that produces capacity.
12. Alluding to Isaiah 35:3. The imagery is physical — hands hanging limp from exhaustion, knees buckling from fatigue. The verb anorthōsate ('straighten up, strengthen, restore') calls for physical and spiritual renewal. The athletic and military imagery continues — a runner or soldier whose hands and knees give out cannot finish the course.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 35:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Quoting Proverbs 4:26 (LXX). The 'straight paths' (trochias orthas) are both literal (running paths) and moral (right conduct). The concern for 'what is lame' (to chōlon) suggests the weaker members of the community — if the path is straight, even the injured can follow it. The verb ektrapē ('be turned aside, be dislocated, be put out of joint') continues the physical metaphor. The community's responsibility is to create conditions where the weak can be healed rather than lost.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 4:26 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. Two pursuits are commanded: peace (eirēnē) with all people and holiness (hagiasmon). The verb diōkete ('pursue, chase, run after') is intense — these are not passive states but active goals. The warning — 'without which no one will see the Lord' (hou chōris oudeis opsetai ton kyrion) — is absolute. Holiness is not optional but essential for the vision of God. This connects to 10:14 (perfected for holiness) and 12:10 (sharing God's holiness).
15. The verb episkopountes ('watching over, overseeing') makes perseverance a communal responsibility. The phrase riza pikrias ('root of bitterness') quotes Deuteronomy 29:18 (LXX), which warns against a person whose apostasy infects the community. The danger is not isolated failure but contagion — one bitter person can defile many (mianthōsin polloi). This is why the author urges communal vigilance.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 29:18 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Esau (Genesis 25:29-34) serves as the negative example to counter the positive examples of chapter 11. The word bebēlos ('godless, profane, irreverent') describes someone who treats sacred things as common — precisely the danger warned against in 10:29. Esau traded eternal blessing for immediate gratification. Whether pornos ('sexually immoral') applies to Esau specifically or is a separate warning is debated; the terms may form a hendiadys: 'immoral or irreverent.'
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 25:29-34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

17. The phrase *metanoias topon ouch heuren* ('he found no place/opportunity for repentance/change of mind') is debated: does it mean Esau could not repent, or that Isaac could not reverse the blessing, or that God would not grant Esau a reversal? The grammar allows 'he found no opportunity to change [his father's] mind' (the feminine *autēn* referring to the blessing or to *metanoia*). The connection to 6:4-6 (impossibility of restoration for apostates) is clear — some choices are irreversible. The tears (*meta dakryōn*) make the scene devastating.
18. The Sinai/Zion contrast begins. The description of Sinai (Exodus 19-20, Deuteronomy 4-5) emphasizes its terrifying sensory impact: fire, darkness (*gnophō*), deep gloom (*zophō*), and storm (*thyellē*). The word *psēlaphōmenō* ('something that can be touched') emphasizes the physical, earthly nature of the Sinai revelation — it was tangible but terrifying. The 'not' (*ou*) sets up the contrast with what they have come to in verse 22.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 19-20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 4-5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The trumpet blast (Exodus 19:16, 19) and the divine voice (Exodus 20:1, 18-19) were so overwhelming that the people begged Moses to mediate. They could not endure hearing God directly. The verb *parētēsanto* ('begged off, refused, asked to be excused') indicates their request that no more words be added — they had reached the limit of what they could bear.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 19:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 20:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. Quoting Exodus 19:12-13. The severity of the Sinai holiness — even an animal trespassing the boundary around the mountain must die — illustrates the unapproachable nature of God under the old covenant. Access was forbidden, contact was fatal. This is the opposite of the 'draw near' language of 4:16 and 10:22.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:12-13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. Even Moses — the greatest figure of the old covenant — was terrified. The phrase *ekphobos eimi kai entromos* ('I am full of fear and trembling') is not directly quoted from the Sinai narrative in Exodus but may draw from Deuteronomy 9:19 (where Moses feared God's anger after the golden calf) or from an extracanonical tradition. The point is that the old covenant experience terrified even its greatest leader.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 9:19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The contrast with Sinai is total. Instead of a mountain that could not be touched, they come to Mount Zion — the mountain of grace. Instead of terror, there is celebration (*panēgyrei*, 'festive assembly, joyful gathering'). The city is identified three ways: Mount Zion (the traditional name), the city of the living God (echoing 3:12 and 10:31), and the heavenly Jerusalem (the eternal city of 11:10, 16). The 'innumerable angels' (*myriasin angelōn*) are the hosts of heaven in celebration.
23. The list continues: the *ekklēsia* ('assembly, church') of the firstborn (*prōtotokōn*, plural — all believers share in Christ's firstborn status) whose names are registered (*apogegrammōn*) in heaven. Then God himself as judge (*kritē*) of all — not a terrifying judge as at Sinai but the judge who is present in the celebration. The 'spirits of the righteous made perfect' (*pneumasin dikaiōn teteleiōmenōn*) refers to the chapter 11 heroes who have now been 'made perfect' (*teleiōsis*, the goal of the entire letter) through Christ's work.
24. The climax of the list: Jesus himself, identified as *mesitē* ('mediator') of the new (*neās*) covenant. The sprinkled blood (*haimati rhanismou*) is the blood of Christ applied in the heavenly sanctuary. This blood 'speaks' (*lalounti*) — it has a voice, and that voice says something better (*kreitton*) than Abel's blood. Abel's blood cried out for vengeance (Genesis 4:10); Christ's blood speaks forgiveness and reconciliation. The comparative *kreittōn* makes its final appearance.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 4:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. The fifth and final warning passage. The *a fortiori* argument returns: if Israel could not escape judgment for rejecting the earthly Sinai revelation (*ton epi gēs chrēmatisationata*), how much more inescapable is judgment for rejecting the heavenly revelation (*ton ap' ouranōn*). The verb *apostrephomenoi* ('turning away from, rejecting') is stronger than *paraiteēsamenoi* ('refused') — it implies a deliberate turning of the back.
26. Quoting Haggai 2:6. At Sinai, God's voice shook the earth (Exodus 19:18). But a greater shaking is promised — one that will affect not only the earth but heaven itself. The phrase *eti hapax* ('yet once more') indicates a final, definitive event. The author interprets this eschatologically in verse 27.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Haggai 2:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
26. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 19:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
27. The author interprets Haggai: the 'once more' shaking will remove (*metathesis*, 'removal, change, transfer') everything that is shakable — the entire created order (*hōs pepoiēmenōn*, 'as things that have been made'). What remains is the unshakeable (*ta mē saleuomena*) — the kingdom of God. This is the ultimate expression of the permanent/temporary distinction that runs throughout Hebrews.

28. The present participle *paralambanontes* ('receiving') describes an ongoing reception — the kingdom is being received now, not merely in the future. The phrase *echōmen charin* can mean 'let us have grace' or 'let us be thankful' — both meanings are likely intended. The worship response to receiving an unshakeable kingdom is not casualness but *eulabeias kai deous* ('reverence and awe') — the same *eulabeia* from 5:7 and 11:7.
29. Quoting Deuteronomy 4:24. The chapter ends where Deuteronomy ends its Sinai account — with the declaration that God is *pyr katanaliskon* ('consuming fire'). This is not a contradiction of the grace celebrated in verses 22–24 but its complement: the same God who welcomes in grace judges in fire. The fire consumes everything that is shakeable, leaving only the unshakeable kingdom. The word 'our' (*hēmōn*) is significant — this consuming fire is not a distant, alien deity but our God.
29. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 4:24. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

13

Summary: *Hebrews 13 is the letter's practical conclusion, moving from theological argument to community ethics. The chapter covers hospitality, marriage, contentment, leadership, the unchanging Christ, and sacrificial living. Theologically, it declares that Jesus suffered outside the city gate to sanctify the people with his own blood, and calls believers to go to him 'outside the camp,' bearing his reproach. The chapter concludes with a benediction, personal notes, and greetings — the only section of Hebrews that reads like a typical first-century letter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The declaration 'Jesus Christ is the same yesterday and today and forever' (verse 8) is one of the most memorized verses in the Bible. The 'outside the camp' theology (verses 11–14) connects Jesus's crucifixion site to the old covenant practice of burning sin offerings outside the camp (Leviticus 16:27). The benediction (verses 20–21) is one of the most complete in the New Testament, containing resurrection, covenant, shepherd, and sanctification themes. The mention of Timothy (verse 23) provides the only personal connection to the Pauline circle.*

Translation Friction: *The final chapter's style differs from the rest of the letter — more practical, less theological, with personal notes. Some scholars view chapter 13 as a later addition, though this is a minority view. The 'outside the camp' language was used by various early Christian groups to justify separation from Judaism or from established religious institutions. We render the text without endorsing any particular ecclesiological application.*

Connections: *The hospitality command (verse 2) connects to Genesis 18 (Abraham's angelic visitors). 'Jesus Christ is the same' (verse 8) echoes 1:12 (Psalm 102). The 'outside the camp' imagery draws on Leviticus 16:27 and Numbers 19:3. The heavenly city (verse 14) completes the promise of 11:10, 16 and 12:22. The shepherd imagery (verse 20) echoes Psalm 23, Isaiah 40:11, and John 10. The 'great shepherd' title connects to 1 Peter 5:4.*

¹Let mutual love continue. ²Do not neglect to show hospitality to strangers, for by doing so some have entertained angels without knowing it. ³Remember those who are in prison, as though you were in prison with them, and those who are mistreated, since you also are in the body. ⁴Let marriage be honored by all, and let the marriage bed be kept undefiled, for God will judge the sexually immoral and adulterers. ⁵Keep your life free from the love of money, and be content with what you have, for he himself has said, "I will never leave you nor forsake you." ⁶So we can confidently say, "The Lord is my helper; I will not be afraid. What can anyone do to me?" ⁷Remember your leaders, those who spoke the word of God to you. Consider the outcome of their way of life, and imitate their faith. ⁸And for ever, Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day. ⁹Do not be carried away by various and strange teachings, for it is good for the heart to be strengthened by grace, not by foods, which have not benefited those who have been occupied with them. ¹⁰We have an altar from which those who serve the tent have no right to eat. ¹¹For the bodies of those animals whose blood is brought into the Most Holy Place by the high priest as a sin offering are burned outside the camp. ¹²Therefore Jesus also suffered outside the city gate in order to sanctify the people through his own blood. ¹³Therefore let us go out to him outside the camp, bearing his reproach. ¹⁴For here we have no lasting city, but we are seeking the city that is to come. ¹⁵Through him, then, let us continually offer up a sacrifice of praise to God, that is, the fruit of lips that confess his name. ¹⁶And do not neglect doing good and sharing with others, for with such sacrifices God is pleased. ¹⁷Obey your leaders and submit to them, for they are keeping watch over your souls as those who will have to give an account. Let them do this with joy and not with groaning, for that would be of no advantage to

you. ¹⁸Pray for us, for we are confident that we have a clear conscience, desiring to act honorably in all things. ¹⁹I urge you all the more to do this, so that I may be restored to you sooner. ²⁰Now may the God of peace, who brought back from the dead our Lord Jesus, the great shepherd of the sheep, by the blood of the eternal covenant, ²¹Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is wellpleasing in his sight, by way of Jesus Christ. To him be glory by way of every one of the ages. Amen. ²²I appeal to you, brothers and sisters, bear with my word of exhortation, for I have written to you only briefly. ²³You should know that our brother Timothy has been released. If he comes soon enough, I will see you with him. ²⁴Greet all your leaders and all the saints. Those from Italy send you greetings. ²⁵Grace be with all of you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The word philadelphia ('brotherly love, mutual love, love for fellow believers') describes the distinctive affection of the Christian community. The verb *menetō* ('let it continue, let it remain') assumes this love already exists — the command is not to start it but to sustain it. The brevity of the command is striking after twelve chapters of theological argument.
2. The word *philoxenias* ('hospitality, love of strangers') is the practical outworking of philadelphia. The reference to 'entertaining angels unawares' (*elathon tines xenisantes angelous*) alludes to Abraham and Sarah's hospitality to the three visitors at Mamre (Genesis 18:1-15), who turned out to be divine messengers. The implication: any stranger could be an angel, so treat all strangers with generous welcome.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 18:1-15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The command recalls 10:34 (showing sympathy to prisoners) and 10:33 (becoming partners with those who suffered). The phrase *hōs syndedemenoi* ('as though bound together with them') demands imaginative solidarity — placing oneself mentally and emotionally in their condition. The reminder 'you also are in the body' (*hōs kai autoi ontes en sōmati*) means either 'you also have physical bodies subject to the same treatment' or 'you are members of the same body (of Christ).'
4. The adjective *timios* ('honored, precious, valuable') elevates marriage as a respected institution. The phrase *hē koitē amiantos* ('the bed undefiled') uses *koitē* (literally 'bed,' euphemistic for sexual relations) to affirm marital sexuality as pure. The two categories of violators — pornous ('sexually immoral,' any sexual activity outside marriage) and *moichous* ('adulterers,' those who violate existing marriages) — face divine judgment (*krinei ho theos*). The statement is declarative, not conditional — God will judge.
5. The word *aphilargyros* ('free from love of money, not greedy') contrasts with the contentment (*arkoumenoi*, 'being satisfied') that trusts God's provision. The quotation combines Deuteronomy 31:6, 8 and Joshua 1:5. The Greek contains five negatives (*ou mē se anō oud' ou mē se enkatalipō*) — an emphatic accumulation: 'I will never, never, never, never leave or abandon you.' In context, freedom from greed is grounded not in asceticism but in God's promise of presence.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 31:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 1:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Quoting Psalm 118:6 (LXX 117:6). The confidence (*tharrountas*, 'being bold, being of good courage') is not self-generated but flows from God's promise in verse 5. The rhetorical question 'What can anyone do to me?' does not deny that people can inflict suffering (the audience has already experienced it, 10:32-34) but asserts that no human action can separate the believer from God's help.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 118:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The word *hēgoumenōn* ('leaders, those who lead') appears three times in this chapter (verses 7, 17, 24), framing the community's relationship to its leadership. These particular leaders are past tense — they 'spoke' (*elalēsan*, aorist) the word of God, and their 'way of life' (*anastrophēs*) has a visible 'outcome' (*ekbasin*), suggesting they have died, possibly as martyrs. The command is to imitate (*mimeisthe*) their faith — echoing the imitation theme of 6:12.
8. This verse stands as an independent declaration, functioning as both a conclusion to verse 7 (your leaders change; Christ does not) and an introduction to verse 9 (therefore do not be carried away by strange teachings). The three temporal markers — *echthes* ('yesterday,' the past), *sēmeron* ('today,' the present), and *eis tous aiōnas* ('forever,' the endless future) — assert Christ's absolute immutability. This echoes 1:12 ('you are the same, and your years will never end') and is the practical application of the Christology developed throughout the letter.
9. The verb *parapheresthe* ('be carried away, be swept along') pictures being blown off course. The 'various and strange teachings' (*didachais poikilais kai xenais*) likely refer to Jewish food regulations or cultic meals that some were promoting as necessary. The contrast is between grace (*chariti*) and foods (*brōmasin*) as the foundation for spiritual stability. The author dismisses food regulations as having provided no benefit (*ouk ōphelēthēsan*) to those who followed them.

10. The 'altar' (thysiatērion) is likely a reference to the cross or to Christ's sacrifice itself — not a physical altar but the sacrifice from which Christians 'feed' (in the Eucharist or spiritually). Those who serve the old covenant tent (tē skēnē latreuontes) have no access to what this altar provides. The statement asserts a Christian exclusive — the benefits of Christ's sacrifice are available only to those who embrace the new covenant.
11. The author draws on Leviticus 16:27, which prescribes that the bodies of the Day of Atonement sin offerings be burned outside the camp. The blood goes inside (into the Most Holy Place); the bodies go outside (beyond the camp). This creates the typological framework for what follows: Jesus's blood enters the heavenly sanctuary, but his body suffered outside the city.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 16:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The typological connection: as the sin offering was burned outside the camp, so Jesus suffered exō tēs pylēs ('outside the gate') — outside the walls of Jerusalem. The crucifixion site was deliberately outside the city, fulfilling the sin-offering typology. The purpose clause 'in order to sanctify' (hina hagiāsē) identifies Christ's death as the definitive act of consecration — his blood does what animal blood could not (9:13-14).
13. The practical application: since Jesus suffered outside, believers must go to him there — outside the familiar, respectable structures. The phrase exō tēs parembolēs ('outside the camp') symbolizes departure from the security of established religious systems. The word oneidismōn ('reproach, disgrace') echoes 11:26 (Moses's choosing 'the reproach of Christ'). Following Jesus means accepting social disgrace.
14. This verse completes the 'city' theme that runs from 11:10 (Abraham looked for the city with foundations), through 11:16 (God prepared a city), 12:22 (the heavenly Jerusalem), to this final statement. The present city (whatever earthly security the audience clings to) is not lasting (menousan, 'remaining, permanent'). The future city (tēn mellousan) is the heavenly Jerusalem. The verb epizētoumen ('we are seeking') echoes 11:14 — believers are still seeking the homeland.
15. The old animal sacrifices have been replaced by a new kind of sacrifice: thysian aineseōs ('sacrifice of praise'), echoing Hosea 14:2 (LXX) and Psalm 50:14, 23. The phrase karpon cheileōn ('fruit of lips') from Hosea 14:3 (LXX) identifies praise as the produce of the mouth. The word homologountōn ('confessing, acknowledging') connects to the 'confession' (homologia) theme of 3:1, 4:14, and 10:23. Praise is offered 'through him' (di' autou) — Christ is the mediator even of worship.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 14:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 50:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Two more sacrifices replace the old system: eupoiias ('doing good, beneficence') and koinōnias ('sharing, fellowship, generosity'). Together with praise (verse 15), these constitute the new covenant sacrificial system. The verb euarestetai ('is pleased, is well pleased') echoes Enoch's commendation (11:5, 6) — what pleases God is not ritual but faith expressed in praise, goodness, and generosity.
17. The second reference to leaders (hēgoumenoi, cf. verse 7). The verb peithesthe ('obey, be persuaded by, trust') implies willing submission based on trust rather than coerced compliance. The leaders agrypnousin ('keep watch, stay awake') — a word used for sleepless vigilance. They will give an account (logon apodōsontes) to God for their care of souls. The practical concern: difficult members who cause leaders to groan (stenazein) rather than rejoice create a situation that is alysiteles ('unprofitable, harmful') for everyone.
18. The request for prayer reveals the author's pastoral relationship with the audience. The claim of a 'clear conscience' (kalēn syneidēsin) may respond to suspicion or criticism. The verb anastrephesthai ('to conduct oneself, to live') describes the whole pattern of life. The plural 'us' (hēmōn) may refer to the author and his associates.
19. The switch to first person singular (parakalō, 'I urge') is one of the few personal moments in Hebrews. The verb apokatastatō ('be restored, be returned') implies the author has been separated from the community, possibly by imprisonment or travel. The urgency suggests a genuine desire for reunion.
20. The benediction is one of the richest in the New Testament. 'God of peace' (theos tēs eirēnēs) is a common Pauline title (Romans 15:33, 16:20). This is the only explicit reference to the resurrection in Hebrews (anagagōn ek nekron, 'having brought up from the dead'). The title 'great shepherd' (poimena ton probatōn ton megan) echoes Isaiah 63:11 (LXX) and Ezekiel 34:23 (the Davidic shepherd). The phrase en haimati diathēkēs aiōniou ('by the blood of the eternal covenant') may modify the resurrection ('God raised Jesus on the basis of the eternal covenant blood') or the shepherding ('Jesus shepherds by virtue of covenant blood').
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 63:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 34:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The verb katartisai ('equip, make complete, put in order, restore') is the same root as 'prepared' in 10:5 ('a body you have prepared for me') — God who prepared Christ's body now equips believers for service. The phrase poiōn en hēmin to euareston ('working in us what is pleasing') asserts that good works are ultimately God's work in the believer, mediated through Christ (dia Iēsou Christou). The doxology — 'to whom be glory forever' — may refer to Christ or to God; the grammar allows either.
22. The phrase logou tēs paraklēseōs ('word of exhortation') is the same phrase used in Acts 13:15 for a synagogue sermon. The author characterizes the entire letter as an exhortation. The claim to have written 'briefly' (dia bracheōn) is either self-deprecating humor (the letter is not short) or relative — compared to what could be said, he has been concise.

- 23.** This is the only personal name in Hebrews besides Jesus and the Old Testament figures. Timothy is identified as 'our brother' (ton adelphon hēmōn), linking the author to the Pauline circle. The word apolelumenon ('released, set free') implies Timothy was imprisoned, though no other New Testament text records this. The conditional 'if he comes soon' (ean tachion erchētai) suggests uncertain travel plans.
- 24.** The third reference to leaders (hēgoumenoi) alongside 'all the saints' (pantas tous hagiois) — the greeting encompasses the entire community. The phrase hoi apo tēs Italias ('those from Italy') is ambiguous: it could mean 'those who are in Italy' (the letter is being sent from Italy) or 'those who are from Italy' (Italian Christians now living elsewhere, sending greetings back home). If the latter, the letter may be addressed to a Roman church.
- 25.** The closing benediction is simple and universal: hē charis meta pantōn hymōn ('grace with all of you'). After thirteen chapters of complex theological argument, the letter ends with the single word that summarizes everything the new covenant provides: grace (charis). Some manuscripts add 'Amen,' but the SBLGNT omits it.

James

1

Summary: *James 1 opens with a greeting to 'the twelve tribes in the Dispersion' and immediately addresses the paradox of joy in trials: testing produces endurance, and endurance leads to maturity. The chapter then introduces several key themes that the letter will develop: asking God for wisdom without doubting, the reversal of rich and poor, the nature of temptation (which comes from one's own desires, not from God), God as the giver of every good gift, and the call to be 'doers of the word and not hearers only.' The chapter closes with a definition of true religion: caring for orphans and widows and keeping oneself unstained by the world.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *James's letter is the most practically oriented writing in the New Testament. The opening greeting to 'the twelve tribes in the Dispersion' is the broadest address in the NT epistles and may be literal (Jewish Christians abroad) or metaphorical (the church as renewed Israel). The theology of temptation in verses 13-15 is psychologically sophisticated, tracing sin from desire through conception to death using a birth metaphor. The 'perfect law of liberty' (v. 25) is a striking paradox that unites freedom and law — anticipating the letter's argument that genuine faith expresses itself in obedient action.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between James and Paul on faith and works has been debated since the Reformation. James's emphasis on works as evidence of faith is not a contradiction of Paul's emphasis on justification by faith but addresses a different problem: people who claim faith without any corresponding action. The phrase 'twelve tribes in the Dispersion' (v. 1) may indicate the letter was written to Jewish Christians, but the Greek is too polished for a simple pastoral letter to a single community.*

Connections: *The testing-produces-endurance theme connects to Romans 5:3-5. The wisdom request echoes Proverbs 2:1-6 and the wisdom tradition broadly. The reversal of rich and poor echoes the Magnificat (Luke 1:46-55) and the Sermon on the Plain (Luke 6:20-26). The mirror metaphor (v. 23) anticipates Paul's mirror image in 1 Corinthians 13:12. The 'pure and undefiled religion' definition (v. 27) echoes Isaiah 1:17 and Micah 6:8.*

¹James, a servant of God and of the Lord Jesus Christ, to the twelve tribes in the Dispersion: greetings. ²Count it all joy, my brothers and sisters, when you fall into various trials, ³Being aware this, that the trying of your faith works patience. ⁴And let endurance have its full effect, so that you may be mature and complete, lacking in nothing. ⁵If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask God, who gives generously to all without reproach, and it will be given to him. ⁶But let him ask in faith, with no

doubting, for the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea that is driven and tossed by the wind. ⁷For that person must not suppose that he will receive anything from the Lord; ⁸Such a person is divided in loyalty and unreliable in everything they do. ⁹Let the lowly brother boast in his exaltation, ¹⁰However, the rich, in that he is made low — because as the flower of the grass he will pass away. ¹¹For the sun rises with its scorching heat and dries up the grass; its flower falls and its beauty perishes. So also will the rich person fade away in the midst of his pursuits. ¹²Blessed is the man who endures trial, for when he has stood the test he will receive the crown of life, which God has promised to those who love him. ¹³Let no one say when he is tempted, "I am being tempted by God," for God cannot be tempted by evil, and he himself tempts no one. ¹⁴But each person is tempted when he is lured and enticed by his own desire. ¹⁵Then desire, when it has conceived, gives birth to sin, and sin, when it is fully grown, brings forth death. ¹⁶Do not be deceived, my beloved brothers and sisters. ¹⁷Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variation or shadow due to change. ¹⁸Of his own will he brought us forth by the word of truth, that we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creation. ¹⁹Know this, my beloved brothers and sisters: let every person be quick to hear, slow to speak, slow to anger, ²⁰Because the wrath of man worketh not the righteousness of God. ²¹Therefore put away all filthiness and rampant wickedness, and receive with meekness the implanted word, which is able to save your souls. ²²Deceiving your own selves, but be you doers of the word, and not hearers only. ²³For if anyone is a hearer of the word and not a doer, he is like a man who looks at his natural face in a mirror. ²⁴For he looks at himself and goes away and immediately forgets what he was like. ²⁵But the one who looks intently into the perfect law of freedom and perseveres, being not a forgetful hearer but a doer who acts — this person will be blessed in his doing. ²⁶If anyone considers himself religious and does not bridle his tongue but deceives his heart, this person's religion is worthless. ²⁷Religion that is pure and undefiled before God the Father is this: to visit orphans and widows in their affliction, and to keep oneself unstained by the world.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek Iakobos is the same name as the Hebrew Ya'akov (Jacob). The author identifies himself simply as doulos ('servant, slave') — not as an apostle or brother of the Lord, though tradition identifies him as the brother of Jesus who led the Jerusalem church (Acts 15:13). The address to the 'twelve tribes in the Dispersion' (diaspora) uses Israel's covenant identity language for the Christian community scattered across the Roman world.
2. The Greek pasan charan ('all joy, complete joy') is emphatic — not partial or reluctant joy but total joy. The word peirasmois can mean 'trials' (external hardships) or 'temptations' (internal enticements); here the context of 'falling into' (peripesete) suggests external trials. The adjective poikilois ('various, diverse, many-colored') indicates the trials come in multiple forms. James wastes no time on pleasantries — the very first command after the greeting is to rejoice in suffering.
3. The Greek dokimion ('testing, proving, means of testing') is related to the assaying of metals — faith is refined through trials like gold through fire (cf. 1 Peter 1:7). The verb katergazetai ('produces, works out, accomplishes') indicates an active process, not passive experience. The result is hypomone ('endurance, steadfastness, patient perseverance') — a quality that can only be forged through difficulty.
4. The Greek teleion ('perfect, complete, mature') and holokleroi ('complete, whole, entire') are near-synonyms reinforcing the idea of full spiritual development. James's use of teleios is not moral perfection but maturity — the fully developed character that results from endurance under trial. The phrase 'lacking in nothing' (en meedeni leipomenoi) is the positive flip side of the trials — what begins as loss ends as fullness.
5. The link to verse 4 is the word 'lacks' (leipetai) — if you lack nothing through endurance, but find you lack wisdom, simply ask. The Greek haplos ('generously, simply, without reserve') describes God's giving nature. The phrase me oneidizontos ('not reproaching, not finding fault') assures the asker that God does not shame those who come in need. This is one of the NT's most direct promises regarding prayer.
6. The Greek diakrinomenos ('doubting, wavering, being divided') literally means 'judging between two options' — the doubter is pulled in two directions. The sea-wave image (klydoni thalasses) captures the instability of a mind that trusts God one moment and fears the next. The verbs anemizomeno ('driven by wind') and rhipizomeno ('tossed, blown about') pile up to emphasize the chaotic motion of doubt.
7. The demonstrative 'that person' (ho anthropos ekeinos) creates distance — the doubter is held at arm's length as a cautionary example. The Greek leempsetai ('will receive') is emphatic in its negation: there is no expectation of receiving when the asking is halfhearted.
8. The Greek dipsychos ('double-souled, double-minded') may be a coinage of James — it does not appear in earlier Greek literature. It describes someone with two competing allegiances or belief systems. The instability (akatastatos, 'unsettled, disordered') is not limited to prayer but pervades 'all his ways' — the doubting mind produces an unstable life.
9. The Greek tapeinos ('lowly, humble, of low social standing') describes economic and social position, not merely a spiritual attitude. The verb kauchasthoo ('let him boast, let him glory') is surprising — the poor person is told to boast because in God's kingdom, their status is reversed. This is the first of James's strong statements about wealth and poverty.

10. The rich person is told to boast in being brought low (tapeinosei, 'humiliation') — a bitter irony. The flower-grass image comes from Isaiah 40:6-8, which James will develop in the next verse. Whether the 'rich brother' is a believer who should see wealth correctly or an unbeliever who will be judged is debated; the text is deliberately ambiguous.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:6-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. James expands Isaiah 40:6-7, adding vivid agricultural detail: the kausoni ('scorching wind' or 'burning heat') is the sirocco, the hot desert wind that withers vegetation in hours. The rich person will 'fade' (marantheesetai, 'wither, decay') in the very midst of their business activities (poreiais, 'journeys, pursuits, enterprises'). The point is not that wealth is inherently evil but that it provides no lasting security.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:6-8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The beatitude form (makarios, 'blessed, happy, fortunate') echoes Jesus's beatitudes. The 'crown of life' (stephanon tees zoos) is the victor's wreath — the stephanos of the athletic games, not the royal diadema. The promise is to those who 'love him' (agaposin auton), connecting endurance under trial to love for God. The SBLGNT does not specify 'the Lord' as the subject of the promise; the context implies God.
13. The word peirazomenos shifts from 'trial' (v. 12) to 'temptation' — the same Greek root covers both external hardship and internal enticement to sin. James categorically rejects the idea that God is the source of temptation. The Greek apeirastos ('untestable, unable to be tempted') means God has no vulnerability to evil and therefore cannot be its source.
14. The Greek exelkomenos ('being dragged out, being lured') and delezomenos ('being baited, being enticed') use fishing or hunting imagery — desire is the bait that hooks the person. The emphasis on 'his own' (idias) desire places responsibility squarely on the individual, not on external circumstances or divine testing.
15. James traces a genealogy of death using a birth metaphor: desire conceives (syllabousa), gives birth (tiktei) to sin, and sin when fully mature (apotelestheisa, 'brought to completion') produces (apokuei, 'gives birth to') death. The metaphor is darkly ironic — what appears to be life-giving (conception, birth) leads inexorably to death. This is one of the most psychologically penetrating analyses of sin in the NT.
16. The imperative me planasthe ('do not be led astray, do not be deceived') is a common NT warning formula (cf. 1 Corinthians 6:9, 15:33, Galatians 6:7). It serves as a hinge between the analysis of temptation (vv. 13-15) and the declaration of God's goodness (vv. 17-18).
17. The Greek has a rhythmic, almost poetic quality: pasa dosis agathe kai pan doorema teleion. The title 'Father of lights' (patros toon phoootoon) identifies God as creator of the heavenly luminaries (Genesis 1:14-18). Unlike the sun, moon, and stars that cast shifting shadows, God has no parallagee ('variation, change') or tropes aposkiasma ('shadow cast by turning'). The astronomical metaphor declares God's absolute constancy — he does not shift like celestial bodies.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:14-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The verb apekueesen ('brought forth, gave birth to') is the same used in verse 15 for sin producing death — but here God 'gives birth' to new life. The 'word of truth' (logo aleetheias) is the gospel. The 'firstfruits' (aparcheen) image comes from the OT offering of the first portion of the harvest (Leviticus 23:10), signifying that believers are the first installment of a larger redemption that will encompass all creation.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 23:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The triple command — quick to hear, slow to speak, slow to anger — has the form of a wisdom proverb (cf. Proverbs 10:19, 14:29, 17:27, Ecclesiastes 5:1-2). The Greek iste may be indicative ('you know this') or imperative ('know this!'); either way it introduces practical wisdom. This verse anticipates the extended discussion of the tongue in chapter 3.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Proverbs 10:19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ecclesiastes 5:1-2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The statement is categorical: human anger (orgee andros) is incapable of producing (ouk ergazetai) God's righteousness (dikaiosyneen theou). The 'righteousness of God' here likely means the righteous conduct that God requires, not God's own attribute of righteousness. James does not deny that anger exists or even that it can be justified, but insists it cannot generate the godly life.
21. The Greek rhyparian ('filthiness, moral uncleanness') and perisseian kakias ('abundance of wickedness, overflow of evil') describe the moral debris that must be cleared away before the word can take root. The 'implanted word' (emphyton logon) is a horticultural metaphor — the word is like a seed planted in the soil of the heart. The verb dexasthe ('receive, welcome') is an active choice, not passive absorption.
22. This is the programmatic statement of the entire letter. The Greek poieetai logou ('doers of the word') is the antithesis of akroatai ('hearers, listeners') — a distinction drawn from the synagogue practice of hearing Scripture read aloud. The verb paralagizomenoi ('deceiving, deluding by false reasoning') suggests that hearing without doing creates a dangerous illusion of spiritual health.
23. The Greek esoptro ('mirror') in the ancient world was polished bronze or silver — the reflection was real but imperfect. The phrase 'the face of his birth' (to prosopon tees geneseos autou) means his natural, God-given face. The mirror reveals the person's true condition, but without action the

revelation is useless.

24. The sequence is pointed: he 'looked at himself' (katenoesen heauton), 'went away' (apeleelythen), and 'immediately forgot' (eutheos epelatheto). The problem is not the looking but the failure to act on what was seen. The speed of forgetting — 'immediately' — satirizes the superficiality of hearing without doing.
25. The Greek parakupsas ('having stooped to look, having peered intently') describes a deliberate, focused examination — far more attentive than the casual glance of the mirror-gazer. The 'perfect law of freedom' (nomon teleion ton tees eleutherias) is a remarkable phrase that unites what many thought contradictory: law and liberty. For James, God's instruction (nomos) leads to freedom, not bondage. The promise of blessing is conditional on doing, not merely on looking.
26. The Greek threeskos ('religious, pious, devout') and threeskeia ('religion, worship, religious practice') refer to outward religious observance. The horse-bridling metaphor (chalinagagoon, 'putting a bridle on') anticipates the tongue imagery of chapter 3. James's point is devastating: uncontrolled speech invalidates all religious practice.
27. James defines true religion with two components: active mercy (visiting orphans and widows) and personal holiness (remaining unstained by the world). The Greek episkeptesthai ('to visit, to look after, to care for') means more than a social call — it implies providing practical help. Orphans and widows were the most vulnerable members of ancient society, and their care was a covenant obligation (Deuteronomy 14:29, 24:17-21, Isaiah 1:17). The word aspilon ('unstained, spotless') is a purity term — the believer is to remain uncontaminated by the world's values.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Deuteronomy 14:29. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 1:17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

2

Summary: *James 2 develops two interconnected arguments. The first (vv. 1-13) condemns partiality in the assembly: when believers honor the rich and dishonor the poor, they violate the 'royal law' of neighbor-love and stand condemned by the law of liberty. The second (vv. 14-26) is the letter's theological climax — the argument that faith without works is dead. James uses Abraham's offering of Isaac and Rahab's sheltering of the spies to demonstrate that genuine faith always produces corresponding action. The chapter's final verdict is stark: 'As the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter contains the most direct engagement with Pauline theology in the New Testament. James and Paul both cite Genesis 15:6 ('Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness') but draw different conclusions — Paul to demonstrate justification apart from law-works, James to demonstrate that the faith credited to Abraham was a living, acting faith. The two are addressing different errors: Paul confronts legalism, James confronts antinomianism. The pairing of Abraham and Rahab is striking — the patriarch of the covenant and a Gentile prostitute stand together as models of living faith.*

Translation Friction: *The apparent tension between James 2:24 ('a person is justified by works and not by faith alone') and Romans 3:28 ('a person is justified by faith apart from works of the law') has generated centuries of debate. We render both texts straightforwardly from the Greek without harmonizing. The word 'justify' (dikaioō) may carry different nuances in each context: Paul uses it for God's initial declaration of righteousness, while James uses it for the visible vindication of faith before others. The phrase 'faith alone' (pistis monon, v. 24) is the only place in the New Testament where these words appear together — and James denies it.*

Connections: *The partiality prohibition echoes Leviticus 19:15 and Deuteronomy 1:17. The 'royal law' (v. 8) quotes Leviticus 19:18, the same text Jesus identified as the second greatest commandment (Matthew 22:39). Genesis 15:6 (v. 23) is cited also in Romans 4:3 and Galatians 3:6. The Abraham-and-Isaac narrative (v. 21) draws on Genesis 22. Rahab's story (v. 25) comes from Joshua 2. The faith-and-works argument anticipates the pastoral concern of 1 John 3:17-18.*

1My brothers and sisters, do not hold the faith of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Lord of glory, with partiality. 2For if a man wearing a gold ring and fine clothing comes into your assembly, and a poor man in shabby clothing also comes in, 3Indeed,

you have respect to him that weareth the gay clothing, and say to him, Sit you here in a good location. And say to the poor, Stand you there, or sit here under my footstool: ⁴Are you not then partial in yourselves, and are become judges of wickedness thoughts? ⁵Listen, my beloved brothers and sisters: has not God chosen those who are poor in the world to be rich in faith and heirs of the kingdom that he promised to those who love him? ⁶But you have dishonored the poor. Are not the rich the ones who oppress you, and are they not the ones who drag you into court? ⁷Are they not the ones who blaspheme the noble name by which you were called? ⁸If you really fulfill the royal law according to the Scripture, 'You shall love your neighbor as yourself,' you are doing well. ⁹But if you show partiality, you are committing sin and are convicted by the law as transgressors. ¹⁰For whoever keeps the whole law but stumbles at one point has become guilty of all of it. ¹¹For the one who said, 'Do not commit adultery,' also said, 'Do not murder.' If you do not commit adultery but do murder, you have become a transgressor of the law. ¹²So speak and so act as those who are to be judged by the law of liberty. ¹³For judgment is without mercy to the one who has shown no mercy. Mercy triumphs over judgment. ¹⁴What good is it, my brothers and sisters, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can that faith save him? ¹⁵If a brother or sister is without clothing and lacking daily food, ¹⁶One of you say to them, Depart in peace, be you warmed and filled. Even so you give them not those things which are needful to the body. What does it profit? ¹⁷So also faith, if it does not have works, is dead by itself. ¹⁸But someone will say, 'You have faith and I have works.' Show me your faith apart from your works, and I will show you my faith by my works. ¹⁹You believe that God is one. You do well — even the demons believe that, and shudder. ²⁰Do you want to be shown, you empty person, that faith apart from works is useless? ²¹Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up his son Isaac on the altar? ²²You see that faith was working together with his works, and faith was completed by works. ²³Indeed, the scripture came to fulfillment which says, Abraham believed God, and it was imputed to him for righteousness — then he was called the Friend of God. ²⁴You see that a person is justified by works and not by faith alone. ²⁵And in the same way, was not Rahab the prostitute also justified by works when she received the messengers and sent them out by another route? ²⁶For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so also faith without works is dead.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *prosōpolēmpsiais* ('acts of partiality, favoritism') is a compound word literally meaning 'face-receiving' — judging by outward appearance. The genitive *tēs doxēs* ('of glory') is in apposition to Jesus Christ: he is 'the Lord of glory,' an exalted title that makes human status distinctions absurd. The plural 'acts of partiality' suggests a pattern of behavior, not an isolated incident.
2. The word *synagōgēn* ('assembly, synagogue') is used here for a Christian gathering — suggesting either a very early date for the letter or a Jewish-Christian audience that still used synagogue terminology. The compound *chrysodaktylios* ('gold-ringed') appears only here in the New Testament and describes someone conspicuously displaying wealth. The contrast between *lamptra* ('bright, splendid') and *rhypara* ('dirty, shabby') clothing is vivid and immediate.
3. The directive seating — 'sit here in a good place' versus 'stand over there or sit at my feet' — reflects actual social stratification in ancient assemblies. The Greek *hypo to hypopodion mou* ('under my footstool') is a position of extreme social inferiority. James paints the scene with sharp specificity to expose the absurdity.
4. The verb *diekrithēte* ('made distinctions, were divided') carries a double meaning: they have both discriminated between people and become internally divided. The phrase *kritai dialogismōn ponērōn* ('judges of evil reasonings') means they have become judges whose criteria are corrupt — wealth rather than character.
5. The imperative *akousate* ('listen!') signals a major theological point. God's election reverses worldly valuations: those poor 'in the world' (*tō kosmō*, dative of reference) are rich 'in faith.' The phrase 'heirs of the kingdom' echoes Jesus's beatitude in Matthew 5:3 and Luke 6:20. The kingdom is promised specifically to 'those who love him' — a covenantal condition.
6. The verb *ētimasate* ('dishonored, treated with contempt') is the opposite of the honor God bestows. The irony is biting: the rich whom believers fawn over are the very ones who *katadynasteuousin* ('exercise power against, oppress') them and physically *helkousin* ('drag') them to legal proceedings. James exposes the absurdity of honoring one's own oppressors.
7. The 'noble name' (to *kalon onoma*) is the name of Christ, invoked over believers at baptism. The phrase to *epiklēthen eph' hymas* ('that was called upon you') echoes the Old Testament formula for God's name being placed upon his people (cf. 2 Chronicles 7:14, Amos 9:12 LXX). To dishonor the poor while honoring those who blaspheme Christ's name is a profound contradiction.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Chronicles 7:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 9:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The 'royal law' (nomon basilikon) may be called royal because it comes from the King (God), governs the kingdom, or is the supreme law that rules over all others. The quotation is from Leviticus 19:18, which Jesus identified as the second greatest commandment (Mark 12:31). The adverb mentoi ('really, indeed') adds a conditional edge — 'if you truly do this.'
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The verb prosōpolēmpteite ('show partiality') is the verbal form of the noun in verse 1. Showing favoritism is not a minor social error — it is hamartian ('sin') and makes one a parabatēs ('transgressor, lawbreaker'). The law that convicts is not merely the Mosaic code but the 'royal law' of love.
10. The logic is not that every sin is equally severe but that the law is a unified whole — violating any part ruptures the entire relationship of obedience. The verb ptaisē ('stumbles') is gentler than 'transgresses,' suggesting that even a misstep brings full liability. This principle was recognized in rabbinic teaching as well.
11. James grounds the unity of the law in the unity of the lawgiver — 'the one who said' (ho eipōn) both commandments is the same God. The examples come from the Decalogue (Exodus 20:13-14). Selective obedience is no obedience at all.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 20:13-14. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The 'law of liberty' (nomou eleutherias) reprises 1:25 — the paradoxical idea that true freedom comes through obedience to God's law. Believers should live in awareness that their future judgment will be measured by this standard. Both speech (laleite) and action (poieite) are included — anticipating chapter 3's focus on the tongue.
13. The first clause warns: those who show no mercy (eleos) will face merciless judgment. The second clause is one of the great one-line summaries in the New Testament — katakauchatai eleos kriseōs, 'mercy boasts against / triumphs over judgment.' The verb katakauchaomai means to boast triumphantly over a defeated opponent. Mercy does not ignore judgment but overcomes it.
14. The pivotal section begins with a rhetorical question expecting a negative answer. Note carefully: James does not say 'if someone has faith' but 'if someone says he has faith' (legē tis echein) — the issue is claimed faith without evidence. The article hē pistis ('that faith,' 'the faith in question') is crucial: James asks not whether faith in general saves but whether this particular kind of faith — faith that produces no works — can save. The expected answer is no.
15. The illustration is deliberately simple and urgent — not a hypothetical but a scenario the audience would recognize. The phrase tēs ephēmerou trophēs ('of daily food') echoes the Lord's Prayer's petition for daily bread (Matthew 6:11). The need is not exotic but elemental: clothing and food.
16. The dismissal 'go in peace' (hypagete en eirēnē) uses pious language — the standard Hebrew farewell blessing — while withholding practical help. The passive imperatives 'be warmed and filled' (thermainesthē kai chortazesthē) are either middle ('warm and feed yourselves') or divine passives ('may God warm and fill you'). Either way, the speaker passes responsibility to someone else. James exposes religious language used as a substitute for action.
17. The first occurrence of the chapter's verdict: faith without works is nekra ('dead'). The phrase kath' heautēn ('by itself, on its own') clarifies that such faith is not merely incomplete but lifeless — it has no animating principle. This is not an attack on faith itself but on a counterfeit version of faith that exists only as verbal claim.
18. This is one of the most debated verses in James due to the difficulty of identifying the objector's position. The most natural reading is that James is addressing a hypothetical person who tries to separate faith and works as independent spiritual gifts. James's response is a challenge: demonstrate faith without works — it cannot be done. Faith is invisible apart from its expression in action. The verb deixon ('show') demands visible, demonstrable evidence.
19. James quotes the Shema (Deuteronomy 6:4), the most fundamental confession of Jewish faith: 'God is one' (heis estin ho theos). The devastating comparison follows: demons possess orthodox theology — they believe the correct proposition — yet their belief produces not obedience but phrissoousin ('shudder, tremble with horror'). Mere intellectual assent to truth, even the highest truth, is not saving faith.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 6:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The address ō anthrōpe kene ('O empty person') is sharp — kenos means hollow, lacking substance, like the faith being described. Some manuscripts read nekra ('dead') instead of argē ('useless, idle, barren'), but argē is the better-attested reading in critical editions and creates a wordplay: a-rgē means 'without work,' matching the 'without works' (chōris tōn ergōn) that James condemns.
21. James appeals to the Aqedah, the binding of Isaac (Genesis 22). The verb edikaiōthē ('was justified, was shown righteous') in James's usage means 'was demonstrated to be righteous' — Abraham's willingness to offer Isaac was the visible proof that his faith (confessed in Genesis 15:6) was genuine. Paul cites Genesis 15:6 for the moment of faith; James cites Genesis 22 for the demonstration of that same faith in action.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 15:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The verb *synēgei* ('was working together with, cooperated with') presents faith and works as collaborative, not competitive. The verb *eteleiōthē* ('was completed, was brought to its goal, was perfected') means that Abraham's faith reached its intended maturity through action. Faith without works is not merely deficient — it is unfinished, like a seed that never germinates.
23. The quotation is Genesis 15:6 (LXX), the same text Paul cites in Romans 4:3 and Galatians 3:6. James's argument is that Genesis 22 (the offering of Isaac) 'fulfilled' (*eplērōthē*) what Genesis 15 declared — Abraham's faith was genuine and was proven so by his obedience decades later. The title 'friend of God' (*philos theou*) is not found in Genesis but appears in Isaiah 41:8, 2 Chronicles 20:7, and Jewish tradition. It represents the highest intimacy between a human and God.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 15:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 41:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 2 Chronicles 20:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. This is the only verse in the New Testament that contains the phrase 'faith alone' (*pisteōs monon*) — and it denies its sufficiency. The statement must be read in context: James is not contradicting Paul but addressing a different problem. Paul argues against those who add law-observance as a requirement for initial acceptance by God; James argues against those who claim saving faith while producing no evidence of transformed life. The word *dikaïoutai* here means 'is shown to be righteous' in the visible, evidentiary sense.
25. The pairing of Abraham and Rahab is extraordinary: the father of the nation and a Canaanite prostitute. If Abraham represents the highest pedigree of faith, Rahab represents the most unlikely. Her 'work' was sheltering the Israelite spies (Joshua 2) and sending them away safely — an act of faith expressed in concrete, risky action. She appears in Matthew's genealogy (1:5) and Hebrews 11:31. The word *pornē* ('prostitute') is not softened; James retains it to emphasize that works-producing faith is available to anyone.
25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joshua 2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The chapter's closing analogy is devastating in its clarity. The Greek *pneumatōs* ('spirit, breath') refers to the animating life-force — without it, a body is a corpse. Works are to faith what breath is to the body: not an addition but the evidence of life. A faith that produces no works is not weak faith or immature faith — it is dead faith, a spiritual corpse. This is the third and final declaration of faith's death in the chapter (cf. vv. 17, 20), forming the definitive verdict.

3

Summary: James 3 addresses two related themes: the destructive power of the tongue (vv. 1-12) and the nature of true versus false wisdom (vv. 13-18). The tongue section uses a cascade of vivid metaphors — a horse's bit, a ship's rudder, a small fire, a restless evil, a spring, a fig tree — to demonstrate that the tongue, though small, wields disproportionate power for both blessing and destruction. James declares that no human being can tame the tongue and that using it to both praise God and curse people made in God's image is a fundamental contradiction. The wisdom section contrasts earthly wisdom (characterized by jealousy and selfish ambition) with wisdom from above (characterized by purity, peaceableness, gentleness, and mercy).

*What Makes This Remarkable: The density of metaphor in verses 3-8 is unmatched in the New Testament epistles. James piles image upon image — bit, rudder, fire, world of unrighteousness, animal kingdom, poison, spring, fig tree, vine — creating an overwhelming sense of the tongue's danger. The theological grounding in verse 9 is striking: cursing people is wrong not merely because it is unkind but because humans are made 'in the likeness of God' (*kath' homoiōsin theou*) — an appeal to Genesis 1:26-27. The wisdom passage (vv. 13-18) anticipates modern psychology's recognition that speech reveals character.*

Translation Friction: James's statement that 'no human being can tame the tongue' (v. 8) raises the question of whether he is describing an impossibility or an extreme difficulty. The context suggests that while human effort alone cannot master the tongue, the wisdom 'from above' (v. 17) provides the transformation needed. The relationship between this chapter's practical ethics and Paul's theology of Spirit-empowered transformation (Galatians 5:22-23) is complementary rather than contradictory.

Connections: The tongue's fire connects to Proverbs 16:27 and 26:20-21. The image of God in verse 9 echoes Genesis 1:26-27 and 9:6. The wisdom from above parallels the wisdom tradition of Proverbs 8 and Sirach 24. The 'fruit of righteousness sown in peace' (v. 18) echoes Isaiah 32:17 and Hosea 10:12. The list of wisdom's qualities anticipates the fruit of the Spirit in Galatians 5:22-23.

¹Not many of you should become teachers, my brothers and sisters, for you know that we who teach will be judged with greater strictness. ²For we all stumble in many ways. And if anyone does not stumble in what he says, he is a mature person, able to bridle the whole body as well. ³If we put bits into the mouths of horses so that they obey us, we guide their whole body as well. ⁴Look at ships too: though they are so large and driven by fierce winds, they are guided by a very small rudder wherever the will of the pilot directs. ⁵So also the tongue is a small member, yet it boasts of great things. How great a forest is set ablaze by such a small fire! ⁶And the tongue is a fire, a world of unrighteousness. The tongue is set among our members, staining the whole body, setting on fire the entire course of life, and itself set on fire by hell. ⁷For every kind of beast and bird, of reptile and sea creature, is tamed and has been tamed by humankind, ⁸However, the tongue can no man tame. It is an unruly evil, full of deadly poison. ⁹With it we bless the Lord and Father, and with it we curse people who are made in the likeness of God. ¹⁰From the same mouth come blessing and cursing. My brothers and sisters, these things ought not to be so. ¹¹Does a spring pour out from the same opening both fresh water and bitter? ¹²Can a fig tree, my brothers and sisters, produce olives, or a grapevine produce figs? Neither can a salt spring yield fresh water. ¹³Who is wise and understanding among you? By his good conduct let him show his works in the gentleness of wisdom. ¹⁴But if you have bitter jealousy and selfish ambition in your hearts, do not boast and be false to the truth. ¹⁵This is not the wisdom that comes down from above but is earthly, unspiritual, demonic. ¹⁶For where jealousy and selfish ambition exist, there will be disorder and every vile practice. ¹⁷But the wisdom from above is first pure, then peaceable, gentle, open to reason, full of mercy and good fruits, impartial and sincere. ¹⁸And a harvest of righteousness is sown in peace by those who make peace.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The warning targets the role of didaskaloi ('teachers'), not 'masters' as the KJV has it. In the early church, teachers held significant authority (cf. Acts 13:1, 1 Corinthians 12:28). James includes himself in the warning — 'we will receive' (lēmposometha) — acknowledging that greater responsibility brings greater accountability. The word krima here means 'judgment' or 'verdict,' not necessarily 'condemnation.'
2. The universal admission — 'we all stumble' (ptaiomen hapantes) — includes James himself. The logic is that speech is the hardest arena of self-control; mastering it means mastering everything. The metaphor chalinagōgēsai ('to bridle, to lead with a bridle') introduces the horse imagery that verse 3 will develop. The word teleios ('perfect, mature, complete') reprises its use in 1:4.
3. The first analogy: a small bit (chalinous) in a horse's mouth controls the entire animal. The parallel to the tongue is implicit — a small member directing the whole person. The verb metagomen ('we guide, we direct') emphasizes deliberate control over something much larger than the instrument.
4. The second analogy scales up: from a horse to a ship. The adjective tēlikauta ('so great, so large') emphasizes the disproportion between vessel and rudder (elachistou pēdaliou, 'smallest rudder'). Even fierce winds (anemōn sklērōn) cannot override the rudder's direction. The pilot's hormē ('impulse, will, intention') determines the ship's course — just as the intention behind speech determines its effect.
5. James now makes the application explicit: the tongue (glōssa) is mikron melos ('a small member') with disproportionate effect. The verb auchei ('boasts') can be positive or negative — the tongue claims great power, and the claim is true. The fire metaphor shifts to pure danger: hēlikon pyr hēlikēn hylēn anapteī — a tiny spark ignites a vast forest (hylē can mean 'forest' or 'wood/matter').
6. This is the most concentrated verse in the chapter. The tongue is identified flatly as pyr ('fire') and as ho kosmos tēs adikias ('the world of unrighteousness') — it is a microcosm of all that is wrong. The phrase ton trochon tēs geneseōs ('the wheel/course of birth/existence') is notoriously difficult; it likely means the entire cycle of human life from birth to death. The tongue is set on fire hypo tēs geennēs ('by Gehenna/hell') — its destructive power has a demonic origin. The progression moves from human body to the whole of life to hell itself.

7. The four categories — *thērion* ('beasts'), *peteinōn* ('birds'), *herpetōn* ('reptiles'), and *enaliōn* ('sea creatures') — echo the four domains of Genesis 1:26, where God gives humanity dominion over all living things. The double verb *damazetai kai dedamastai* ('is being tamed and has been tamed') covers both present and past — humanity has a comprehensive track record of subduing the animal kingdom.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1:26. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The contrast is stark: humanity tames every creature but cannot tame its own tongue. The adjective *akatastaton* ('restless, unstable, uncontrollable') appeared in 1:8 to describe the double-minded person. The tongue is *mestos iou thanatēphorou* ('full of death-bearing poison') — the image shifts from fire to venom, suggesting the tongue kills like a serpent. The echoes of Genesis 3 (the serpent's lethal speech) may be intentional.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The theological core of the passage: cursing a human being is an assault on the divine image they bear. The phrase *kath' homoiōsin theou* ('according to the likeness of God') quotes Genesis 1:26 (LXX). The repetition of *en autē* ('with it... with it') hammers the contradiction: the same tongue performs worship and destruction. The verb *katarōmetha* ('we curse') is strong — it means to invoke harm or judgment on someone.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 1:26. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The verdict is simple and direct: *ou chrē* ('it is not fitting, it must not be'). Blessing (*eulogia*) and cursing (*katara*) from the same mouth is a moral impossibility that believers routinely commit. The understated 'ought not to be so' carries the weight of divine expectation, not mere social etiquette.
11. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no.' A spring (*pēgē*) produces water according to its nature — it cannot produce both sweet (*glyky*) and bitter (*pikron*) water from the same source (*opēs*, 'opening'). The implication is that a person whose tongue produces both blessing and cursing has a divided nature that needs transformation at the source.
12. Three rapid-fire examples from nature — fig tree, grapevine, salt spring — all making the same point: nature is consistent; each thing produces according to its kind. The application to speech is unstated but clear: if your tongue consistently produces cursing, the problem is not the tongue but the heart that drives it. Jesus made the same argument with similar botanical imagery (Matthew 7:16-20, 12:33-37).
13. The transition to the wisdom section echoes the faith-works argument of chapter 2: true wisdom, like true faith, is demonstrated by visible evidence. The word *anastrophēs* ('conduct, manner of life') is far broader than 'conversation' (KJV). The phrase *en prāytēti sophias* ('in the gentleness/meekness of wisdom') defines what wise conduct looks like — not assertive self-promotion but humble, gentle action.
14. The opposite of gentle wisdom is *zēlon pikron* ('bitter jealousy') and *eritheian* ('selfish ambition, factious rivalry'). The word *eritheia* originally referred to a hired laborer and came to mean self-seeking partisanship. To claim wisdom while harboring these is to *pseudesthe kata tēs alētheias* ('lie against the truth') — not merely to be wrong but to actively oppose truth itself.
15. False wisdom receives a devastating three-word diagnosis: *epigeios* ('earthly, belonging to this world'), *psychikē* ('natural, unspiritual, of the soul rather than the Spirit'), and *daimoniōdēs* ('demonic, characteristic of demons'). The progression descends from merely human to actively evil. The term *psychikē* is the same word Paul uses in 1 Corinthians 2:14 for the 'natural person' who cannot receive the things of the Spirit.
16. Jealousy and selfish ambition produce *akatastasia* ('disorder, instability, chaos') — the same word family as the 'restless' (*akatastaton*) tongue in verse 8 and the 'unstable' (*akatastatos*) double-minded person in 1:8. James uses this word group as a signature marker of uncontrolled human nature. The result is *pan phaulon pragma* ('every worthless/vile deed').
17. The seven qualities of heavenly wisdom form one of the most beautiful ethical lists in the New Testament. The order is significant: purity (*hagnē*) comes first because it is foundational. Then follow: *eirēnikē* ('peaceable'), *epieikēs* ('gentle, fair, yielding'), *eupieithēs* ('open to reason, willing to yield, compliant'), *mestē eleous kai karpōn agathōn* ('full of mercy and good fruits'), *adiakritos* ('impartial, without favoritism' — connecting back to chapter 2), and *anypokritos* ('sincere, without pretense, unhypocritical'). This is James's portrait of the transformed life.
18. The chapter closes with an agricultural metaphor: the 'fruit of righteousness' (*karpos dikaiosynēs*) is both the seed and the harvest — peacemakers sow peace and reap righteousness. The echo of Jesus's beatitude is unmistakable: 'Blessed are the peacemakers' (Matthew 5:9). The phrase also echoes Isaiah 32:17: 'The fruit of righteousness will be peace.' Peace is both the method and the result.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 32:17: — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4

Summary: *James 4 diagnoses the root cause of conflict among believers: disordered desires that produce wars, quarrels, and unanswered prayer. The solution is radical humility before God. The chapter builds to its central command — 'Draw near to God, and he will draw near to you' (v. 8) — and frames the choice between God and the world as one of spiritual adultery. James then warns against speaking evil of one another (placing oneself as judge over the law) and against presumptuous planning that ignores the sovereignty of God. Life is a vapor, and all human plans should be held under the phrase 'If the Lord wills.'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The metaphor of spiritual adultery (v. 4) draws on the prophetic tradition of Hosea, Jeremiah, and Ezekiel, where Israel's unfaithfulness to God is portrayed as marital infidelity. The ten imperatives in verses 7-10 (submit, resist, draw near, cleanse, purify, lament, mourn, weep, let laughter be turned, humble yourselves) form the most concentrated call to repentance in the New Testament epistles. The quotation in verse 5 ('the spirit that he made to dwell in us yearns jealously') has no exact Old Testament source, making it one of the most debated citations in James.*

Translation Friction: *The quotation in verse 5 does not match any known Old Testament text exactly. It may be a free paraphrase of passages like Exodus 20:5 or a reference to a text now lost. We render the Greek as given without attempting to identify a specific source. The address 'adulteresses' (moichalides, v. 4) in some manuscripts reads 'adulterers and adulteresses' — the SBLGNT follows the shorter reading, understanding the feminine as a metaphorical address to the unfaithful community.*

Connections: *The 'wars and fights' language (v. 1) connects to the disorder of 3:16. The friendship-with-the-world theme echoes 1 John 2:15-17. 'Draw near to God' recalls Psalm 73:28 and Hebrews 10:22. 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble' (v. 6) quotes Proverbs 3:34 (LXX). The 'vapor' metaphor for life (v. 14) echoes Ecclesiastes and Psalm 39:5-6. The presumptuous planning warning parallels Proverbs 27:1 and Luke 12:16-21.*

¹What causes quarrels and what causes fights among you? Is it not this — your passions that are at war within your members? ²You desire and do not have, so you murder. You covet and cannot obtain, so you fight and quarrel. You do not have because you do not ask. ³You ask and do not receive, because you ask wrongly, in order to spend it on your passions. ⁴You adulteresses! Do you not know that friendship with the world is hostility toward God? Therefore whoever wishes to be a friend of the world makes himself an enemy of God. ⁵Or do you suppose it is to no purpose that the Scripture says, 'He yearns jealously over the spirit that he has made to dwell in us'? ⁶But he gives more grace. Therefore it says, 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble.' ⁷So place yourselves under God's authority. Stand firm against the devil, and he will run from you. ⁸Draw near to God, and he will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, you sinners, and purify your hearts, you double-minded. ⁹Be wretched and mourn and weep. Let your laughter be turned to mourning and your joy to gloom. ¹⁰Humble yourselves before the Lord, and he will exalt you. ¹¹Do not speak evil against one another, brothers and sisters. The one who speaks against a brother or judges his brother speaks evil against the law and judges the law. But if you judge the law, you are not a doer of the law but a judge. ¹²There is only one lawgiver and judge, the one who is able to save and to destroy. But who are you to judge your neighbor? ¹³Come now, you who say, 'Today or tomorrow we will go into such and such a town and spend a year there and trade and make a profit' — ¹⁴Whereas you know not what will be on the morrow. For what is your life? It is indeed a vapour, that appeareth for a little occasion, and then vanisheth away. ¹⁵Instead you ought to say, 'If the Lord wills, we will live and do this or that.' ¹⁶As it is, you boast in your arrogance. All such boasting is evil. ¹⁷So whoever knows the right thing to do and fails to do it, for him it is sin.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek polemoi ('wars') and machai ('battles, fights') may refer to literal conflicts within the community or to fierce interpersonal disputes. The cause is identified as hēdonōn ('pleasures, desires') — the English word 'hedonism' comes from this root. These desires are strateuomenōn ('warring, campaigning like soldiers') inside the person — an internal civil war that spills over into communal conflict.

2. The escalation is shocking: desire leads to murder (phoneuete). Some commentators take this metaphorically (cf. Matthew 5:21-22, 1 John 3:15), but James may intend the full force of the word. The cycle is: desire frustration violence more frustration. The solution shifts abruptly: 'you do not have because you do not ask' — the failure is not merely moral but prayerful. They grasp instead of asking.
3. Even when they do pray, the problem is motive: kakōs aiteisthe ('you ask badly, wrongly'). Prayer driven by hēdonais ('pleasures') — the same word as verse 1 — is prayer that treats God as a supplier for self-indulgence. The verb dapanēsēte ('spend, squander') suggests wasteful consumption, the same verb used for the prodigal son's squandering (Luke 15:14).
4. The address moichalides ('adulteresses') uses the prophetic metaphor of Israel as God's unfaithful spouse (Hosea 1-3, Jeremiah 3, Ezekiel 16). The SBLGNT reads only the feminine form, treating the community corporately as God's betrothed who has gone after other lovers. The stark binary — friendship with the world (philia tou kosmou) equals hostility toward God (echthra tou theou) — allows no middle ground. The verb kathistatai ('is established as, constitutes himself') indicates a deliberate stance, not an accidental drift.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 1-3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. This is one of the most debated verses in James. No Old Testament text matches the quotation exactly. The grammar is ambiguous: the subject could be 'the spirit' (our human spirit yearns enviously) or God (who yearns jealously for the spirit he placed in us). The rendering follows the interpretation that God is the subject — he jealously desires the complete loyalty of the spirit he gave to humanity. This reading fits the context of spiritual adultery and connects to the jealous God of Exodus 20:5 and 34:14.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 20:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The quotation is from Proverbs 3:34 (LXX). The verb antitassetai ('opposes, sets himself in battle array against') is a military term — God actively resists the proud. By contrast, he 'gives grace' (didōsin charin) to the humble. The opening phrase 'he gives more grace' (meizona didōsin charin) assures that God's grace is sufficient to overcome the jealous yearning described in verse 5. Grace exceeds the pull of worldly desire.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 3:34. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The first two of ten rapid-fire imperatives. The structure is chiasmic: submit to God (positive), resist the devil (negative). The verb hypotagēte ('submit, place yourself under') is the same word used for military subordination. The promise that the devil will 'flee' (pheuxetai) from those who resist is a remarkable assurance — the enemy's power is real but breakable. The KJV rendering is retained here as it accurately captures the Greek.
8. The chapter's central verse contains the letter's most famous promise: eggisate tō theō, kai engiei hymin — 'draw near to God and he will draw near to you.' The promise is conditional but certain: the initiative is human, but God's response is guaranteed. The following commands use temple purification language: 'cleanse your hands' (katharisate cheiras) echoes the priestly handwashing of Exodus 30:19-21, while 'purify your hearts' (hagnisate kardias) goes deeper than ritual to moral transformation. The terms 'sinners' (hamartōloi) and 'double-minded' (dipsychoi) are not insults but pastoral diagnoses — the hands represent external conduct, the heart represents internal loyalty.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 30:19-21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. Three imperatives of grief: talaipōrēsate ('be miserable, feel your wretchedness'), penthēsate ('mourn'), klausate ('weep'). These are not calls to perpetual sadness but to genuine repentance — feeling the weight of the spiritual adultery just described. The reversal of laughter to mourning and joy to gloom (katēpheian, 'downcast eyes, dejection') echoes the prophetic call of Joel 2:12-13 and Jesus's 'woe to you who laugh now' (Luke 6:25).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:12-13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The final imperative and the climax of the ten commands: tapeinōthēte ('humble yourselves, make yourselves low'). The promise mirrors the Proverbs 3:34 quotation in verse 6 — God gives grace to the humble. The verb hypsōsei ('will lift up, will exalt') is the same word used for Christ's exaltation (Acts 2:33, Philippians 2:9). The pattern is consistently biblical: the way up is down.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 3:34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The verb katalaleite ('speak against, slander, badmouth') connects to the tongue teaching of chapter 3. James's logic: the law commands love of neighbor (2:8); speaking against a brother violates that law; but instead of submitting to the law as a doer (poiētēs, cf. 1:22), the slanderer sets himself above it as its judge (kritēs). Only God is qualified for that role (v. 12).
12. The argument reaches its conclusion: God alone is nomothetēs ('lawgiver') and kritēs ('judge'), and he alone has the power to sōsai ('save') and apolesai ('destroy'). The rhetorical question su de tis ei ('but who are you?') is deliberately deflating — it reduces the self-appointed judge to insignificance before the one true Judge.
13. The phrase age nyn ('come now') is a sharp attention-getter, introducing a new audience: traveling merchants who plan their itineraries with confident self-sufficiency. The specificity of the plan — city, duration (a year), activity (trade), result (profit) — makes the presumption vivid. There is nothing wrong with planning; the problem is planning without acknowledging God's sovereignty over the outcome.

14. The metaphor *atmis* ('mist, vapor, steam') captures life's brevity and fragility with devastating economy. The verb *phainomenē* ('appearing') and *aphanizomenē* ('disappearing, vanishing') describe a vapor's entire existence — briefly visible, then gone. The echo of Ecclesiastes and Psalm 39:5 ('my days are a few handbreadths') is unmistakable. James does not sentimentalize this but states it as fact.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 39:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The corrective is not to stop planning but to hold all plans under divine sovereignty: *ean ho kyrios thelēō* ('if the Lord wills'). This phrase (Latin: *Deo volente*, abbreviated D.V.) became a standard Christian expression of dependence on God. Note the order: 'we will live' comes before 'and do this or that' — even continued existence is subject to God's will, not just the success of business ventures.
16. The word *alazoneia* ('arrogance, pretension, braggadocio') describes the false confidence of those who plan without God. It appears also in 1 John 2:16 ('the pride of life'). Such boasting (*kauchēsis*) is not merely foolish but *ponēra* ('evil, wicked') — it usurps God's place as sovereign over the future.
17. The chapter's closing sentence is a principle of universal application: sins of omission are real sins. The participle *eidoti* ('knowing') establishes that knowledge creates moral obligation. This is not a new category of sin but a summary of the entire letter's argument — faith that knows but does not act is dead (2:17), planning that knows God's sovereignty but ignores it is arrogant (4:13-16), and knowing the good but not doing it is *hamartia* ('sin'). James's ethics consistently demand action, not merely assent.

5

Summary: *James 5 opens with a thundering prophetic denunciation of the rich who have hoarded wealth, defrauded workers, and lived in self-indulgent luxury (vv. 1-6). The tone then shifts to pastoral encouragement: believers are called to patience until the Lord's coming, following the example of the prophets and Job (vv. 7-11). The chapter addresses oath-taking (v. 12), prayer in suffering, singing in cheerfulness, and the anointing of the sick by elders (vv. 13-15). It closes with the confession of sins, the power of Elijah-like prayer, and the restoration of wandering believers (vv. 16-20).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The denunciation of the rich (vv. 1-6) is among the most ferocious social criticism in the New Testament, rivaling the prophetic oracles of Amos and Isaiah. The rust on hoarded gold and silver will 'testify against you' and 'eat your flesh like fire' — wealth itself becomes the instrument of judgment. The prayer-and-anointing passage (vv. 14-15) has shaped Christian practice for two millennia, from Catholic last rites to Protestant healing ministries. The closing verses (19-20) contain no formal farewell — the letter simply ends with the urgency of rescuing the wanderer, as if James cannot be bothered with epistolary conventions when souls are at stake.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between James's denunciation of the rich (vv. 1-6) and his audience is debated — are these rich people within the church or outsiders? The shift to 'brothers and sisters' in verse 7 suggests the rich of verses 1-6 may be outside the community, but the warning still functions for believers. The anointing with oil (v. 14) may be medicinal (olive oil was used therapeutically), sacramental, or both — the text does not separate the physical from the spiritual. The phrase 'the prayer of faith will save the one who is sick' (v. 15) must be read alongside the letter's emphasis on God's sovereignty (4:15).*

Connections: *The condemnation of the rich echoes Amos 2:6-7, 5:11-12, and Isaiah 5:8-9. 'The Lord of hosts' (v. 4) is a rare NT use of the title *Kyrios Sabaōth*, drawn from Isaiah 5:9 (LXX). The farmer's patience (v. 7) echoes Deuteronomy 11:14. Job's endurance (v. 11) connects to the book of Job and the 'compassion of the Lord' echoes Exodus 34:6. The Elijah prayer passage (vv. 17-18) draws on 1 Kings 17-18. The restoration of wanderers (vv. 19-20) echoes Ezekiel 34 and Jesus's parable of the lost sheep (Luke 15:3-7).*

¹Come now, you rich, weep and howl for the miseries that are coming upon you. ²Your riches have rotted and your garments are moth-eaten. ³Your gold and silver have corroded, and their corrosion will be evidence against you and will eat your flesh like fire. You have laid up treasure in the last days. ⁴Behold, the wages of the laborers who mowed your fields, which you kept back by fraud, are crying out, and the cries of the harvesters have reached the ears of the Lord of hosts. ⁵You have lived on the earth in luxury and self-indulgence. You have fattened your hearts in a day of slaughter. ⁶You have condemned and murdered the righteous person. He does not resist you. ⁷Be patient, therefore, brothers and sisters, until the coming of the Lord. See how the farmer waits for the precious fruit of the earth, being patient about it, until it receives the early and the late rains. ⁸You also, be patient. Establish your hearts, for the coming of the Lord is near. ⁹Do not grumble against one

another, brothers and sisters, so that you may not be judged. Behold, the Judge is standing at the door. ¹⁰As an example of suffering and patience, brothers and sisters, take the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord. ¹¹Behold, we consider blessed those who remained steadfast. You have heard of the endurance of Job, and you have seen the purpose of the Lord, how the Lord is compassionate and merciful. ¹²But above all, my brothers and sisters, do not swear, either by heaven or by earth or by any other oath, but let your 'yes' be yes and your 'no' be no, so that you may not fall under judgment. ¹³Is anyone among you suffering? Let him pray. Is anyone cheerful? Let him sing praise. ¹⁴Is any sick in the midst of you? let him call for the elders of the church. And let them pray over him, anointing him with oil by the authority of the Lord:. ¹⁵And the prayer of faith will save the one who is sick, and the Lord will raise him up. And if he has committed sins, he will be forgiven. ¹⁶Therefore, confess your sins to one another and pray for one another, so that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous person has great power as it is working. ¹⁷Elijah was a man with a nature like ours, and he prayed fervently that it might not rain, and for three years and six months it did not rain on the earth. ¹⁸Then he prayed again, and heaven gave rain, and the earth produced its fruit. ¹⁹My brothers and sisters, if anyone among you wanders from the truth and someone brings him back, ²⁰I indeed, let him know, that he which converteth the sinner from the error of his way will save a soul from death, and will hide a crowd of sins.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The opening age nyn ('come now') echoes 4:13 but now addresses the rich directly. The verb *ololyzontes* ('howling, wailing') is an onomatopoeic word used in the prophets for the shrieking of those under divine judgment (Isaiah 13:6, 14:31 LXX). The *miserias* (*talaipōriais*) are not present but *eperchomenais* ('coming, approaching') — eschatological judgment is on the way.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 13:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The perfect tenses *sesēpen* ('have rotted') and *gegonen* ('have become') present the decay as already accomplished — from God's perspective, the judgment is already underway. Hoarded wealth is not merely useless but actively decomposing. Garments were a primary form of stored wealth in the ancient world (cf. Acts 20:33), making moth damage a vivid image of wealth's impermanence.
3. Gold and silver do not literally rust, but James uses *katiōtai* ('has corroded') to make a theological point: hoarded wealth self-destructs. The corrosion (*ios*) serves double duty — it testifies against the hoarders at judgment (*martyrion*) and consumes their flesh like fire (*phageai tas sarkas*). The final phrase is devastating: *ethēsaurisate en eschatais hēmerais* — 'you have treasured up in the last days.' With judgment imminent, hoarding is not merely foolish but insane.
4. The personification is extraordinary: the withheld wages themselves *krazei* ('cry out') — echoing the blood of Abel crying from the ground (Genesis 4:10). Wage theft violates Leviticus 19:13 and Deuteronomy 24:14-15. The title *Kyrios Sabaōth* ('Lord of hosts/armies') appears only here and in Romans 9:29 in the New Testament (both quoting Isaiah). It emphasizes God's power to act on behalf of the oppressed. The defrauded workers have an advocate who commands armies.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 4:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 19:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 24:14-15. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The verbs *etryphēsate* ('lived in luxury') and *espatalēsate* ('lived self-indulgently, lived wantonly') describe extravagant consumption. The image shifts to cattle: *ethrepsate tas kardias hymōn* ('you fattened your hearts') pictures the rich as livestock being fattened for *hēmera sphagēs* ('a day of slaughter'). The day of slaughter is the day of judgment — and the rich have been preparing themselves for it through their own indulgence. The irony is brutal: they think they are feasting; they are actually being fattened for the kill.
6. The climax of the indictment: the rich have used the legal system (*katedikasate*, 'condemned in court') to destroy (*ephoneusate*, 'murdered') the righteous person (*ton dikaion*). The singular 'the righteous one' may refer to a specific person (possibly Jesus, or James the Just himself), or to a type — the vulnerable righteous person who cannot fight back. The final clause *ouk antitassetai hymin* ('he does not resist you') underscores the victim's helplessness and, by implication, the gravity of the crime. The same verb (*antitassetai*) was used in verse 4:6 of God opposing the proud — the righteous does not resist, but God will.
7. The tone shifts dramatically from judgment oracle to pastoral encouragement. The verb *makrothymēsate* ('be patient, be long-tempered') is the chapter's keyword, appearing four times (vv. 7, 8, 10). The *parousia* ('coming, arrival, presence') of the Lord is the hoped-for event that makes present suffering endurable. The farmer analogy is drawn from Palestinian agriculture: the 'early rain' (*proimon*) comes in October-November to soften the ground for plowing, and the 'late rain' (*opsimon*) comes in March-April to mature the grain before harvest.

8. The command *stērixate tas kardias hymōn* ('strengthen, establish, make firm your hearts') calls for inner resolve. The assurance that the *parousia ēggiken* ('has drawn near, is at hand') uses the same verb Jesus used in Mark 1:15: 'The kingdom of God has drawn near.' The nearness of the Lord's coming provides both urgency and comfort.
9. The verb *stenazete* ('grumble, groan, sigh') refers to complaining against fellow believers under the pressure of suffering — blaming each other rather than enduring together. The image of the Judge standing *pro tōn thyrōn* ('before the doors') is vivid and immediate: Christ the judge is not distant but at the threshold, about to enter. The urgency makes petty mutual grievances absurd.
10. The prophets serve as a *hypodeigma* ('example, model, pattern') of both *kakopatheia* ('suffering, enduring hardship') and *makrothymia* ('patience, long-suffering'). The prophets suffered not despite speaking God's word but because of it — their faithfulness to the divine message brought them persecution. The audience is to see their own suffering in this prophetic lineage.
11. Job is the supreme Old Testament example of endurance (*hypomonē*) under suffering whose cause is hidden. The phrase *to telos kyriou* ('the end/purpose of the Lord') means the outcome that God brought about — Job's restoration (Job 42:10-17). The final description of God as *polysplanchnos* ('deeply compassionate,' literally 'of many intestines/feelings') is found only here in the New Testament. The companion word *oiktirmōn* ('merciful, pitying') echoes the great self-description of God in Exodus 34:6.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 42:10-17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 34:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The phrase *pro pantōn* ('above all, before everything') marks this as a matter of supreme importance. The prohibition against oath-taking closely parallels Jesus's teaching in Matthew 5:33-37. The point is not that oaths are inherently evil but that a community of truth-tellers should need no oaths — their simple word should be sufficient. The warning *hypo krisin pesēte* ('fall under judgment') connects oath-breaking to the eschatological judgment theme that runs through the chapter.
13. Two terse instructions covering the full range of human experience: suffering (*kakopathei*) calls for prayer (*proseuchesthō*), and cheerfulness (*euthymei*) calls for praise-singing (*psalletō*). The verb *psalletō* ('sing praise, make music') originally meant to pluck a stringed instrument and came to mean singing psalms or hymns. Every emotional state has an appropriate spiritual response.
14. The instruction is specific and communal: the sick person (*asthenei*, 'is weak/ill') initiates by calling (*proskalesasthō*) the elders (*presbyterous*), who pray and anoint with olive oil (*elaion*). The anointing is done *en tō onomati tou kyriou* ('in the name of the Lord'), indicating that the oil is not merely medicinal but functions as a sign of the Lord's healing power. Olive oil was widely used medicinally in antiquity (cf. Luke 10:34), so the action may be both therapeutic and sacramental.
15. The 'prayer of faith' (*euchē tēs pisteōs*) — not the oil — is the operative element. The verb *sōsei* ('will save') can mean physical healing or spiritual salvation; both may be intended. The Lord (not the elders) is the one who *egerei* ('will raise up') the sick person. The conditional clause about sin (*kan hamartias ē pepoiēkōs*, 'even if he has committed sins') acknowledges a possible connection between sickness and sin without making it automatic — 'if' (*kan*) leaves the connection open, not assumed.
16. The instruction is mutual — *allēlois* ('to one another') — not hierarchical. Confession is to fellow believers, not exclusively to clergy. The purpose is healing (*iathēte*), which may be physical, spiritual, or both. The final sentence is often quoted in isolation: *deēsis dikaïou energoumenē poly ischyei*. The participle *energoumenē* can be middle ('effective, at work') or passive ('energized by God'). Either way, the point is that righteous prayer is not passive wishing but a powerful force.
17. James emphasizes that Elijah was *homoioopathēs hēmin* ('of like nature/feelings with us') — not a superhuman figure but an ordinary person whose prayer had extraordinary power. The phrase *proseuchē prosēuxato* ('he prayed with prayer') is a Hebraism (cognate dative) meaning 'he prayed earnestly/fervently.' The three-and-a-half-year drought is drawn from 1 Kings 17-18, though the Old Testament does not specify the exact duration. Luke 4:25 gives the same timeframe.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 1 Kings 17-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The simplicity is the point: Elijah prayed, and heaven responded. The sequence — rain from heaven, fruit from earth — echoes the farmer analogy of verse 7 and completes the chapter's agricultural imagery. Prayer is the means by which heaven's resources reach earth's needs.
19. The letter closes without a formal farewell, turning instead to the urgent matter of reclaiming the straying. The verb *planēthē* ('wanders, goes astray, is deceived') is the root of the English 'planet' (wandering star). The 'truth' (*alētheias*) here encompasses both correct doctrine and faithful living — James makes no separation between the two.
20. The letter's final sentence is not about personal salvation but about the rescue of others. The one who turns a sinner back *sōsei psychēn autou ek thanatou* ('will save his soul from death') — the 'his' most naturally refers to the sinner being rescued, though some take it as the rescuer's own soul. The phrase *kalypsei plēthos hamartiōn* ('will cover a multitude of sins') echoes Proverbs 10:12 and 1 Peter 4:8. To 'cover' sins is to secure their forgiveness. The letter ends as it began — with practical, community-oriented faith that acts.

- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 10:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

1 Peter

1

Summary: *First Peter opens with a greeting from Peter to scattered believers across Asia Minor (modern Turkey), identifying them as chosen exiles. Peter blesses God for a living hope through Christ's resurrection, describes an inheritance kept in heaven, and encourages believers enduring trials that their tested faith is more precious than gold. He speaks of prophets who searched out the salvation now revealed, urges holiness in conduct, and reminds them they were ransomed not with perishable things but with the precious blood of Christ — the lamb foreknown before the foundation of the world.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Peter's opening is dense with Old Testament imagery recast around Christ. The 'sprinkling of blood' (v. 2) echoes the covenant ratification at Sinai (Exodus 24:8). The 'imperishable seed' (v. 23) and the Isaiah 40 quotation (vv. 24-25) ground the new birth in the enduring word of God. The letter addresses Gentile converts using Israel's identity language — exile, diaspora, election — a radical theological move that extends covenant identity to non-Jews.*

Translation Friction: *The addressees are described with the Greek *parepidēmois* diasporac ('exiles of the dispersion'), language traditionally reserved for Jews living outside Palestine. Peter applies this to predominantly Gentile churches, redefining 'exile' as a spiritual rather than ethnic category. The Trinitarian structure of verse 2 (foreknowledge of the Father, sanctification of the Spirit, sprinkling of Christ's blood) is theologically loaded but rendered as the Greek presents it without imposing later creedal formulations.*

Connections: *The 'living hope through resurrection' (v. 3) connects to the early kerygma of Acts 2. The lamb 'without defect or blemish' (v. 19) echoes Exodus 12 (Passover lamb) and Isaiah 53:7. The quotation from Isaiah 40:6-8 in verses 24-25 ties the permanence of God's word to the gospel proclaimed to these believers. The 'foreknown before the foundation of the world' language (v. 20) resonates with Ephesians 1:4 and Revelation 13:8.*

¹Peter, an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the chosen exiles of the dispersion in Pontus, Galatia, Cappadocia, Asia, and Bithynia, ^{2c}hosen according to God the Father's foreknowledge, set apart by the Spirit for obedience and for the sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ. May grace and peace be multiplied to you. ³Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ! According to his great mercy, he has given us new birth into a living hope through the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, ⁴an inheritance that can never perish, spoil, or fade — kept safe in heaven for you. ⁵Who are kept by the authority of God by way of faith to salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. ⁶In this you rejoice greatly, even though now for a little

while, if necessary, you have been grieved by various trials, ⁷That the trial of your faith, being greatly more precious than of gold that perisheth, though it be tried with fire, might be discovered to praise and honour and splendor at the appearing of Jesus Christ: ⁸Though you have not seen him, you love him; and though you do not see him now, you believe in him and rejoice with an inexpressible and glorious joy, ⁹for you are receiving the goal of your faith: the salvation of your souls. ¹⁰Concerning this salvation, the prophets who prophesied about the grace destined for you searched and investigated carefully, ¹¹They searched to find out the time and circumstances that the Spirit of Christ within them was pointing to when it predicted the sufferings of Christ and the glories that would follow. ¹²It was revealed to them that they were serving not themselves but you, in the things that have now been announced to you through those who proclaimed the good news to you by the Holy Spirit sent from heaven — things into which angels long to look. ¹³Therefore, prepare your minds for action, be self-controlled, and set your hope fully on the grace that will be brought to you at the revelation of Jesus Christ. ¹⁴As obedient children, do not be conformed to the desires you formerly had in your ignorance, ¹⁵However, as he which has called you is holy, so be you holy in all manner of conversation; ¹⁶Indeed, because it is written, Be you holy. For I am holy. ¹⁷And if you call on him as Father — the one who judges impartially according to each person's work — conduct yourselves with reverent fear during the time of your exile, ¹⁸Since as you know that you were not redeemed with corruptible matters, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers. ¹⁹However, with the costly blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. ²⁰He was foreknown before the foundation of the world but was revealed in these last times for your sake, ²¹Who by him do trust in God, that raised him up from the dead, and offered him glory. That your faith and hope might be in God. ²²Having purified your souls by your obedience to the truth for sincere brotherly love, love one another earnestly from a pure heart, ²³Being born again, not of corruptible seed, but of incorruptible, by the message of God, which liveth and remains for ever. ²⁴For "all flesh is like grass, and all its glory like the flower of grass. The grass withers, and the flower falls off, ²⁵But the message of the Lord endureth for ever. And this is the message which by the gospel is preached to you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *eklektois parepidēmois diasporac* combines three theologically charged terms: 'chosen' (*eklektois*), 'exiles/sojourners' (*parepidēmois*), and 'dispersion' (*diasporas*). The KJV's 'strangers scattered' flattens the covenantal weight. 'Dispersion' (*diaspora*) was a technical term for Jews living outside the land of Israel; Peter applies it to Gentile Christians, redefining covenant belonging.
1. The five provinces listed cover most of Roman Asia Minor (modern Turkey), suggesting a circular letter carried through these regions in order.
2. The verse has a Trinitarian structure: the Father's foreknowledge, the Spirit's sanctification, and Christ's blood. This is not a later theological imposition — the Greek naturally groups the three divine agents.
2. The Greek *rhantismōn* ('sprinkling') directly echoes the Septuagint of Exodus 24:8, where Moses sprinkled blood on the people at Sinai to ratify the covenant. Peter's audience would recognize this as covenant-ratification language.
2. The optative *plēthyntheî* ('may it be multiplied') is a prayer-wish, not a statement — grace and peace are not merely declared but invoked.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 24:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The Greek *anagennēsas* ('having begotten again, having given new birth') is a distinctively Petrine word — it appears only here and in verse 23 in the entire New Testament. The KJV's 'begotten us again' is literal but unclear in modern English; 'given us new birth' captures the regeneration concept.
3. The phrase *elpida zōsan* ('living hope') is striking — hope itself is described as alive, animated by the resurrection. This is not wishful thinking but a hope that has the quality of life because it is grounded in a resurrection that actually happened.
4. Peter uses three alpha-privative adjectives in succession — *aphtharton* ('imperishable'), *amianton* ('undefiled'), *amaranton* ('unfading') — creating a rhetorical triplet that emphasizes what this inheritance is not: it will not decay, it will not be polluted, it will not wither. The alliteration in Greek (all three begin with alpha-privative) is partly preserved by using 'im-/un-/un-' prefixes in English.
4. The concept of 'inheritance' (*klēronomia*) for these predominantly Gentile believers draws on Israel's land-inheritance language — what Israel had in the promised land, these believers have in heaven.
5. The Greek *phrouroumenous* ('being guarded') is a military term — a garrison protecting a city. God's power stands guard over believers like a military garrison. The present participle indicates ongoing, continuous protection.

5. The phrase *en kairō eschatō* ('in the last time') reflects early Christian expectation of an imminent consummation. The salvation is described as 'ready' (*hetoimēn*) — prepared and waiting to be unveiled.
6. The Greek *poikilois peirasmōis* ('various trials') uses *poikilos* ('many-colored, diverse, varied') — the trials come in many forms. The word *peirasmōs* can mean both 'trial' and 'temptation'; here the context of suffering favors 'trials.' The KJV's 'temptations' may mislead modern readers into thinking of moral temptation rather than external persecution and hardship.
7. The Greek *dokimion* ('tested quality, proven character') refers not to the trial itself but to the result of testing — the proven genuineness that emerges. Gold is tested by fire to prove its purity; faith is tested by suffering to prove its genuineness. The irony is that gold, which survives fire, still perishes — but proven faith endures forever.
7. The triad 'praise and glory and honor' (*epainon kai doxan kai timēn*) may refer to praise directed toward the believers at Christ's return, or to the glory that accrues to God through their faithfulness. The Greek is ambiguous and we preserve that ambiguity.
8. The Greek *aneklalētō* ('inexpressible, unspeakable') appears only here in the New Testament. It describes a joy that exceeds the capacity of language. The participle *dedoxasmenē* ('glorified, full of glory') suggests this joy already participates in the coming glory — it is not merely earthly happiness but a foretaste of eschatological glory.
8. Peter draws a contrast between sight and faith that resonates with John 20:29 ('blessed are those who have not seen and yet believe'). These believers never met Jesus in the flesh, yet their love and joy are real.
9. The Greek *telos* here means 'outcome, result, goal' rather than 'end/termination.' The KJV's 'end' is ambiguous in modern English. The 'salvation of souls' (*sōtērian psychōn*) uses *psychē* in its full biblical sense — not the disembodied 'soul' of Greek philosophy but the whole person, the living self. Peter is speaking of the complete deliverance of the whole person.
10. The compound verbs *exezētēsan* ('searched out') and *exēraunēsan* ('investigated thoroughly') convey intense, diligent inquiry — the prophets were not casual observers but passionate seekers trying to understand their own oracles. The prefix *ex-* intensifies both verbs.
11. The phrase to *pneuma Christou* ('the Spirit of Christ') identifies the spirit that inspired the Old Testament prophets as Christ's own Spirit — a remarkable christological claim. The prophets spoke of 'sufferings' (*pathēmata*, plural) and 'glories' (*doxas*, plural) — not a single event but a pattern of suffering followed by glorification.
11. The Greek *promarturomenon* ('testifying beforehand') is a compound found only here in the New Testament, emphasizing that the prophetic witness pointed forward to events the prophets themselves could not fully comprehend.
12. The final clause — *eis ha epithymousin angeloι parakypsaί* ('into which angels long to look') — is vivid. The verb *parakypsaί* means 'to bend over and peer into,' suggesting angels straining to see and understand the mystery of salvation. If even angels are fascinated by what God has done for believers, how much more should the recipients value it.
12. The prophets' ministry is reframed as service to a future generation — they spoke not for their own benefit but for these Gentile believers in Asia Minor, centuries later.
13. The Greek *anazōsamenoι tas osphyas tēs dianoias hymōn* is literally 'having girded up the loins of your mind' — a metaphor drawn from tucking robes into a belt for vigorous activity. The KJV preserves the metaphor literally; we render the meaning ('prepare your minds for action') since 'girding loins' is not a living metaphor in modern English.
13. The adverb *teleiōs* ('fully, completely, to the end') modifies the imperative 'hope' — this is not tentative hope but wholehearted, unreserved expectation.
14. The Greek *tekna hypakoēs* ('children of obedience') is a Semitic idiom meaning 'people characterized by obedience' — not biological children but those whose defining trait is obedience. The verb *sychēmatizomenoι* ('being conformed, being shaped') implies an external molding pressure; Paul uses the same word in Romans 12:2.
15. The Greek *anastrophē* means 'conduct, way of life, behavior' — not 'conversation' in the modern sense (the KJV's 'conversation' meant 'manner of living' in 17th-century English). The command to holiness is grounded in God's own character: 'as he is holy, you must be holy' — a direct echo of Leviticus 11:44-45 that Peter will quote in the next verse.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 11:44-45 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Peter quotes Leviticus 11:44-45 (also 19:2 and 20:7). The command was originally given to Israel at Sinai as part of the covenant obligations; Peter applies it directly to Gentile believers, further confirming their inclusion in the covenant people. The Greek *hagios* ('holy, set apart') corresponds to the Hebrew *qadosh*.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 19:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 11:44-45. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

- 17.** The Greek *aprosōpolēmtōs* ('without respect of persons, impartially') is a compound word found only here in the New Testament. It means God shows no favoritism based on external status — a theme running through the New Testament (Acts 10:34, Romans 2:11, James 2:1).
- 17.** The word *paroikias* ('sojourning, exile, temporary residence') reinforces the 'exile' language of verse 1. Believers are temporary residents in this world, and their conduct during this time of exile matters because the Father judges impartially.
- 18.** The Greek *elytrōthēte* ('you were ransomed, redeemed') uses the language of slave-redemption and the Old Testament *go'el* (kinsman-redeemer). The price of ransom is stated negatively first — not silver or gold — before the positive is revealed in verse 19.
- 18.** The phrase *mataias anastophēs patroparadotou* ('futile way of life inherited from ancestors') likely refers to the Gentile pagan practices these converts left behind. The word *patroparadotou* ('handed down from fathers') appears only here in the New Testament.
- 19.** The sacrificial imagery draws on both the Passover lamb (Exodus 12:5, which required a lamb 'without blemish') and the Suffering Servant of Isaiah 53:7 ('like a lamb led to slaughter'). The adjectives *amōmou* ('without defect') and *aspilou* ('without spot') echo the Levitical requirements for sacrificial animals — the offering had to be physically perfect.
- 19.** Peter places 'precious blood' (*timiō haimati*) in emphatic contrast with the 'perishable things' of verse 18. The ransom price is not material wealth but something infinitely more valuable.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 12:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** The Greek *proegnōsmenou* ('foreknown') is stronger than mere awareness — it implies divine foreordination and purposeful choice. The contrast between 'before the foundation of the world' (*pro katabolēs kosmou*) and 'in these last times' (*ep' eschatou tōn chronōn*) spans the entire arc of history: Christ's redemptive work was planned before creation and executed at the end of the ages.
- 20.** The phrase *di' hymas* ('for your sake, on account of you') is remarkable — the cosmic plan was revealed specifically for these particular believers in Asia Minor.
- 21.** The verse ties faith and hope together as directed toward God — not as abstract virtues but as relational trust in the God who demonstrated his power and faithfulness by raising Christ and glorifying him. The resurrection is the ground of both faith and hope.
- 22.** The Greek *philadelphian anypokriton* ('sincere brotherly love') combines the family metaphor (*philadelphia*, 'love of brothers/siblings') with the negation of hypocrisy (*anypokriton*, 'without a mask' — from the theatrical term for an actor's mask). The love commanded here must be genuine, not performed.
- 22.** The adverb *ektenōs* ('earnestly, fervently, intensely') describes a love that is stretched out, strained to its limit — not casual affection but deliberate, costly commitment to fellow believers.
- 23.** The Greek *anagegnēmēnoi* repeats the regeneration language of verse 3 but shifts the metaphor from birth to seed (*spora*, 'seed'). The new birth is not from a seed that decays (like biological reproduction) but from an imperishable seed — the word of God. The adjectives 'living' (*zōntos*) and 'enduring' (*menontos*) may modify either 'word' or 'God'; the Greek is ambiguous. Most interpreters take them with 'word,' which prepares for the Isaiah quotation in the next verses.
- 24.** Peter quotes Isaiah 40:6-8 from the Septuagint. The Hebrew original uses a different metaphor for transience — the 'breath of the LORD' that dries the grass — which the Septuagint omits. Peter follows the Septuagint text. The imagery contrasts human frailty and transience (flesh = grass) with the permanence of God's word (verse 25).
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 40:6-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** Peter's interpretive move is decisive: the 'word of the Lord' that Isaiah said endures forever is identified with the gospel message proclaimed to these believers. The eternal, imperishable word of God (Isaiah 40:8) is now equated with the Christian gospel. The Greek *rhēma* ('word, utterance, message') and the participle *euangelisthen* ('proclaimed as good news') make the connection explicit.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 40:6-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

2

Summary: *Peter urges believers to crave spiritual nourishment like newborn infants, then develops the metaphor of a living temple built of living stones with Christ as the cornerstone. He applies a constellation of Old Testament identity texts to these Gentile believers — they are now a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, God's own possession. Peter then addresses their conduct as exiles among unbelievers, gives instructions for submission to governing authorities, and concludes with a profound portrait of Christ's suffering as the model for enduring unjust treatment, drawing heavily on Isaiah 53.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 9 is the theological climax: Peter takes exodus language from Exodus 19:5-6 and applies it to Gentile Christians — 'a royal priesthood, a holy nation.' This is not metaphorical softening; Peter is claiming that these scattered Gentile believers now hold the identity that was promised to Israel at Sinai. The Isaiah 53 passage (vv. 22-25) is the longest sustained quotation of the Suffering Servant in the New Testament epistles, applied directly to Christ's atoning death.*

Translation Friction: *The household code instructions (vv. 13-20), particularly regarding slaves submitting to masters, reflect first-century social structures. We render the Greek as written without editorial softening. The word oiketai (v. 18) refers specifically to household slaves, not servants in a modern employment sense. The stone imagery (vv. 4-8) weaves together Isaiah 28:16, Psalm 118:22, and Isaiah 8:14 — three distinct Old Testament texts unified by the 'stone' metaphor.*

Connections: *The 'living stone' imagery (vv. 4-5) connects to Jesus's own use of Psalm 118:22 (Matthew 21:42). The 'royal priesthood' language (v. 9) draws on Exodus 19:5-6 and is echoed in Revelation 1:6 and 5:10. The Isaiah 53 quotation (vv. 22-25) parallels the use of that passage in Acts 8:32-35 and Romans 4:25. The 'shepherd and overseer of your souls' (v. 25) anticipates the pastoral imagery of chapter 5.*

¹So put away all malice, all deceit, hypocrisy, envy, and all slander. ²Like newborn infants, crave the pure spiritual milk, so that by it you may grow up into salvation, ³Indeed, if so be you have tasted that the Lord is gracious. ⁴As you come to him, a living stone rejected by people but chosen and honored by God, ⁵You also, like living stones, are being built into a spiritual house and a holy priesthood, offering spiritual sacrifices that are acceptable to God through Jesus Christ. ⁶For it stands in Scripture: "See, I am laying in Zion a stone, a cornerstone, chosen and honored, and whoever believes in him will never be put to shame." ⁷So the honor is for you who believe, but for those who do not believe, "the stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone," ⁸A rock of stumbling, and a rock of offence, not even to them which stumble at the message, while disobedient — whereunto as well they were appointed. ⁹But you are a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people for God's own possession, so that you may proclaim the excellencies of him who called you out of darkness into his marvelous light. ¹⁰Once you were not a people, but now you are God's people; once you had not received mercy, but now you have received mercy. ¹¹Dear friends, I urge you as foreigners and exiles to abstain from the desires of the flesh, which wage war against your soul. ¹²Maintain honorable conduct among the Gentiles, so that when they slander you as evildoers, they may observe your good works and glorify God on the day of visitation. ¹³Submit yourselves to every human institution for the Lord's sake, whether to the emperor as supreme, ¹⁴Indeed, or to governors, as to them that are dispatched by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of them that do well. ¹⁵For it is God's will that by doing good you should silence the ignorance of foolish people. ¹⁶Live as free people, but do not use your freedom as a cover for evil. Live as servants of God. ¹⁷Honor everyone. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the emperor. ¹⁸Household slaves, submit yourselves to your masters with all respect, not only to those who are good and gentle but also to those who are harsh. ¹⁹For this is a grace — if, because of your awareness of God, someone endures suffering unjustly. ²⁰For what credit is there if, when you sin and are beaten for it, you endure? But if you suffer for doing good and endure it, this is a grace before God. ²¹For to this you were called, because Christ also suffered for you, leaving you an example, so that you might follow in his steps. ²²"He committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth." ²³When he was insulted, he did not insult in return; when he suffered, he made no threats, but entrusted himself to the one who judges justly. ²⁴He himself bore our sins in his body on the tree, so

that having died to sins, we might live for righteousness. By his wounds you have been healed. ²⁵For you were like sheep going astray, but now you have returned to the Shepherd and Overseer of your souls.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The participle apothemenoi ('having put off, laid aside') uses the imagery of removing clothing — strip off these vices like a dirty garment. The list moves from internal disposition (malice) through deceptive behavior (deceit, hypocrisy) to interpersonal sins (envy, slander). The 'all...all...all' repetition (pasan...panta...pasas) emphasizes totality — no partial removal.
2. The Greek logikon adolon gala ('pure rational/spiritual milk') is debated. Logikon can mean 'rational' (pertaining to logos/reason) or 'spiritual' (pertaining to the word/logos). The KJV's 'milk of the word' is interpretive. Given the context of verse 1:25 (the word proclaimed to them), the connection to logos is likely intentional, but we render 'spiritual' as the broader term that captures the metaphor without over-specifying.
2. The verb epipothēsate ('crave, long for intensely') describes the desperate hunger of a newborn — not casual interest but survival-level need.
3. Peter quotes Psalm 34:8 (33:9 LXX), 'Taste and see that the LORD is good.' The Greek chrēstos ('good, kind, gracious') may contain a wordplay with Christos ('Christ') — in Greek pronunciation they would sound similar. The conditional 'if' (ei) is not expressing doubt but rather 'since you have tasted' — it assumes the experience is real.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 34:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The metaphor shifts from milk (v. 2) to stone (v. 4) — Christ is the 'living stone' (lithon zōnta), an apparent paradox since stones are the epitome of lifelessness. The double contrast — rejected by humans but chosen by God — sets up the extended stone theology of verses 6-8. The participial phrase proserchomenoi ('coming to, approaching') echoes the language of approaching God in worship at the temple.
5. The believers are not merely compared to stones — they are living stones being assembled into a spiritual temple. The Greek oikodomisthe can be read as indicative ('you are being built') or imperative ('let yourselves be built'). The passive voice suggests God is the builder. The 'holy priesthood' (hierateuma hagian) draws directly on Exodus 19:6 (LXX), anticipating the full quotation in verse 9.
5. The 'spiritual sacrifices' (pneumatikas thysias) replace the animal sacrifices of the Jerusalem temple — the entire sacrificial system is reimagined around this new community.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Peter quotes Isaiah 28:16 from the Septuagint. The original context is God establishing a foundation in Zion amid national crisis. Peter identifies this cornerstone with Christ. The Greek akrogōniaion ('cornerstone') could refer to either a foundation stone at the corner of a building or a capstone at the top — the architectural metaphor works either way, placing Christ as the defining structural element.
6. The strong negation ou mē ('never, by no means') with the subjunctive kataischynthē guarantees that trust in this stone will not result in shame — a double negative for emphatic assurance.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 28:16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Peter now quotes Psalm 118:22 (117:22 LXX), the stone rejected by builders that becomes the head of the corner. Jesus himself applied this psalm to his own rejection (Matthew 21:42, Mark 12:10, Luke 20:17). The Greek apistousin can mean either 'disbelieve' or 'disobey' — in biblical thought, unbelief and disobedience are inseparable.
7. The phrase kephalēn gōnias ('head of the corner') means the most important stone in the structure — the one that determines the alignment of everything else.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 118:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The third stone text is Isaiah 8:14, where God himself becomes a stone of stumbling for both houses of Israel. Peter completes the stone trilogy: Isaiah 28:16 (cornerstone), Psalm 118:22 (rejected stone), Isaiah 8:14 (stumbling stone). The same Christ is cornerstone to believers and stumbling-block to unbelievers.
8. The phrase eis ho kai etethēsan ('to which they were also appointed/destined') is theologically charged. It states that their stumbling was within God's purpose, though it does not explain the mechanism of that appointment. We render it plainly and let the tension stand.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 8:14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 28:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 118:22 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

9. This verse weaves together Exodus 19:5-6 ('a kingdom of priests and a holy nation'), Isaiah 43:20-21 ('my chosen people...the people I formed for myself that they might proclaim my praise'), and possibly Hosea 1-2 (the not-my-people who become my-people, developed in verse 10). The Greek *basileion hierateuma* ('royal priesthood') follows the Septuagint of Exodus 19:6 exactly.
9. The Greek *aretas* ('excellencies, virtues, mighty deeds') is broader than 'praises' (KJV) — it refers to God's praiseworthy acts and character, which the priestly people are called to announce to the world.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 19:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 43:20-21. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Hosea 1-2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. Peter echoes Hosea 2:23 and 1:6, 9 — the prophet's children named Lo-Ammi ('not my people') and Lo-Ruhamah ('not shown mercy') who were later renamed Ammi ('my people') and Ruhamah ('shown mercy'). Paul applies Hosea to Gentile inclusion in Romans 9:25-26. The 'once...now' structure emphasizes the radical transformation of status: those who had no covenant identity now possess the fullest covenant identity.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Hosea 2:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The Greek *paroikous kai parepidēmous* ('resident aliens and exiles') echoes the language of Genesis 23:4 (LXX), where Abraham describes himself as a 'sojourner and foreigner' in the land. Believers share Abraham's status — present in a place but not belonging to it.
11. The military metaphor *strateuntai* ('wage war, campaign against') portrays fleshly desires as an invading army besieging the soul. This is not abstract moral philosophy but vivid warfare imagery.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 23:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Greek *en hēmera episkopēs* ('on the day of visitation') echoes Isaiah 10:3 (LXX) and Luke 19:44. 'Visitation' (*episkopē*) can be either judgment or mercy — the day when God comes to inspect and act. Peter may mean that the pagans' observation of Christian conduct will lead them to glorify God when he comes — whether at their own conversion or at the final judgment.
12. The word *kakopoion* ('evildoers') suggests that Christians in Asia Minor were being accused of criminal behavior — a pattern attested in Roman sources (cf. Pliny's correspondence with Trajan about Christians in Bithynia, c. 112 AD).
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 10:3. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The Greek *pasē anthrōpinē ktisei* is literally 'every human creation/institution' — not merely laws (as the KJV's 'ordinance' implies) but the structures and authorities that humans establish. The submission is motivated 'for the Lord's sake' (*dia ton kyrion*) — it is not intrinsic obedience to human power but obedience rendered to God through human structures.
13. The word *basilei* ('king') in context refers to the Roman emperor — likely Nero at the time of writing.
14. The 'him' who sends governors could refer to the emperor (the immediate antecedent) or to God (the ultimate authority behind the human institution). Peter's phrasing allows both readings. The dual function of government — punishing evil and commending good — parallels Paul's discussion in Romans 13:1-7.
15. The Greek *phimoun* ('to muzzle, to silence') is vivid — good conduct literally shuts the mouth of ignorant accusers. The same verb is used of muzzling an ox (1 Timothy 5:18) and of Jesus silencing the Sadducees (Matthew 22:34). The 'foolish people' (*aphronōn anthrōpōn*) are not malicious but ignorant — their slander stems from misunderstanding, which exemplary behavior can correct.
16. The paradox is sharp: believers are simultaneously free (*eleutheroi*) and slaves of God (*theou douloi*). True freedom is not autonomy but willing service to God. The Greek *epikalymma* ('covering, cloak, pretext') warns against using Christian freedom as a disguise for malice — freedom is not license.
17. Four terse imperatives in ascending relational intensity: general respect for all people, special love for fellow believers, reverent fear toward God, and appropriate honor toward the emperor. The structure is notable — God receives 'fear' (*phobeisthe*) while the emperor receives only 'honor' (*timate*). The distinction in verbs is deliberate: the emperor gets respect but not the reverence owed to God alone.
18. The Greek *oiketai* refers specifically to household slaves — domestic workers who were the property of their masters — not employees or servants in a modern sense. The word *despotais* ('masters') is the root of English 'despot' and refers to the absolute authority of the slaveholder. Peter does not endorse the institution but addresses the reality his audience lives in.
18. The Greek *skoliois* ('crooked, perverse, harsh') is the KJV's 'froward' — an archaic term. We render it 'harsh' to capture the unjust, abusive nature of such masters.
19. The Greek *charis* here means not 'thankworthy' (KJV) but 'grace, a thing of grace, commendable before God.' Enduring unjust suffering with an awareness of God is itself an act of grace — a participation in the grace of God. The phrase *syneidēsin theou* ('consciousness/awareness of God') means the sufferer endures not out of passivity but out of a God-directed conscience.

- 20.** The Greek kolaphizomenoi ('being struck with a fist, beaten') is graphic — this is physical abuse, not metaphorical hardship. Peter distinguishes between deserved punishment (suffering for wrongdoing) and undeserved suffering (suffering for doing right). Only the latter is *charis* ('grace') before God.
- 20.** The word *kleos* ('credit, fame, glory') appears only here in the New Testament. It asks what reputation or honor one gains by enduring punishment that was deserved.
- 21.** The Greek hypogrammon ('example, pattern, model') originally referred to a writing template that students would trace — a master copy of letters that beginners followed stroke by stroke. Christ's suffering is the template for believers' response to unjust treatment. The phrase *tois ichnesin autou* ('in his footsteps') extends the tracing metaphor — believers walk in the exact tracks Christ laid down.
- 22.** Peter begins quoting Isaiah 53:9 (LXX), applying the Suffering Servant passage directly to Christ. The quotation extends through verse 25, making this the longest sustained use of Isaiah 53 in the New Testament epistles. The sinlessness of Christ is the foundation of his exemplary suffering — he suffered entirely without cause.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 53:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The Greek *antiloidorei* ('reviled in return') has the prefix *anti-* ('against, in return'), emphasizing the refusal to retaliate in kind. The pattern is: provocation no retaliation entrusting to God. This is the specific example believers are to follow (v. 21). The phrase *tō krinonti dikaiōs* ('the one who judges justly') is God — Christ committed his case to the divine court rather than taking justice into his own hands.
- 24.** The Greek *xylon* ('tree, wood') rather than *stauros* ('cross') echoes Deuteronomy 21:23 ('cursed is anyone who hangs on a tree') and connects to Acts 5:30 and 10:39 where the same word is used for the cross. The word carries the overtone of the Deuteronomic curse.
- 24.** The final clause quotes Isaiah 53:5 — 'by his wounds (*mōlōpi*, singular in Greek — one stripe, one wound) you were healed.' The shift from 'our sins' to 'you were healed' moves from the universal scope of Christ's atonement to the personal application to these specific believers.
- 24.** The verb *anēnenken* ('bore, carried up') is sacrificial language — the same word used for offering a sacrifice on an altar. Christ carried sins up onto the cross as a priest carries an offering up onto the altar.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 53:4-5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 24.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 21:23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 25.** Peter concludes with Isaiah 53:6 ('all we like sheep have gone astray') but adds the positive resolution: the straying sheep have now returned to their shepherd. The dual title 'Shepherd and Overseer' (*poimena kai episkopon*) applies to Christ terms that Peter will later use for church leaders (5:2-4). The word *episkopon* ('overseer, guardian, bishop') carries the sense of watchful care — Christ keeps watch over their souls as a shepherd watches a flock.
- 25.** The KJV's 'Bishop' reflects later ecclesiastical usage. We render *episkopon* as 'Overseer' to preserve the original pastoral meaning without importing institutional connotations.
- 25.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 53:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

3

Summary: *Peter continues the household code with instructions for wives and husbands, then turns to the entire community with exhortations toward unity, compassion, and blessing. The famous 'reason for hope' passage (v. 15) calls believers to be always ready to give a defense of their hope with gentleness and respect. The chapter concludes with one of the most debated passages in the New Testament — Christ's proclamation to the 'spirits in prison' from the days of Noah — connecting baptism to salvation through Christ's resurrection and exaltation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Verse 15 ('always be prepared to give a reason for the hope that is in you') has become the foundational text for Christian apologetics. The 'spirits in prison' passage (vv. 18-20) is among the most disputed texts in the New Testament, with at least four major interpretive traditions. Peter's reference to Noah and the flood as a 'type' of baptism (vv. 20-21) is one of the clearest examples of typological interpretation in the epistles.*

Translation Friction: *The instructions to wives (vv. 1-6) reflect first-century household structures and include Sarah's obedience to Abraham as a model. We render the Greek faithfully without modernizing the social context. The 'spirits in prison' passage (vv. 18-20) is genuinely ambiguous in Greek and we preserve that ambiguity. The baptism typology (v. 21) is carefully worded in the Greek to avoid implying that water itself saves — Peter adds the clarifying parenthesis about conscience.*

Connections: The Sarah reference (v. 6) connects to Genesis 18:12. The 'reason for hope' echoes the 'living hope' of 1:3. The Noah typology connects to Genesis 6-8 and Jesus's use of the flood narrative (Matthew 24:37-39). Christ's exaltation at God's right hand (v. 22) echoes Psalm 110:1 and the early Christian confession of Acts 2:33-34.

¹Likewise, wives, submit yourselves to your own husbands, so that even if some of them do not obey the word, they may be won over without a word through the conduct of their wives, ²While they take notice your chaste conversation coupled with fear. ³Your adornment should not be external — the braiding of hair, the wearing of gold jewelry, or the putting on of fine clothing. ⁴Rather, let your adornment be the hidden person of the heart, with the imperishable quality of a gentle and quiet spirit, which in God's sight is very precious. ⁵For this is how the holy women who hoped in God used to adorn themselves, by submitting to their own husbands, ⁶just as Sarah obeyed Abraham and called him her lord. You are her daughters when you do what is right and refuse to give way to fear. ⁷Husbands, likewise, live with your wives in an understanding way, showing honor to the woman as the weaker vessel, since they are also heirs with you of the grace of life, so that your prayers may not be hindered. ⁸Finally, all of you be like-minded, sympathetic, loving as brothers and sisters, compassionate, and humble, ⁹Not rendering wickedness for wickedness, or railing for railing — but contrariwise blessing. Knowing that you are thereunto called, that you should inherit a blessing. ¹⁰For "whoever desires to love life and see good days must keep the tongue from evil and the lips from speaking deceit. ¹¹Turn away from evil and do good; seek peace and pursue it. ¹²And his ears are open to their prayers — but the face of the lord is against them that do evil, and because the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous. ¹³Now who will harm you if you are devoted to what is good? ¹⁴But even if you should suffer for the sake of righteousness, you are blessed. Do not fear what they fear, and do not be disturbed, ¹⁵However, sanctify the Lord God in your hearts — and be ready at all times to provide an answer to every person that asketh you a reason of the confident expectation that is in you with meekness and fear. ¹⁶Having a upright conscience. That, whereas they speak wickedness of you, as of evildoers, they may be ashamed that falsely accuse your upright conversation in Christ. ¹⁷For it is better to suffer for doing good, if that should be God's will, than for doing evil. ¹⁸For Christ also suffered once for sins, the righteous for the unrighteous, that he might bring you to God, being put to death in the flesh but made alive in the spirit, ¹⁹By which also he traveled and preached to the spirits in prison; ²⁰Which sometime were rebellious, when once the patience of God waited in the days of Noah, during the building of the ark, in which only a few, that is, eight people, were brought safely through the water. ²¹Baptism, which corresponds to this, now saves you — not as a removal of dirt from the body, but as an appeal to God for a good conscience — through the resurrection of Jesus Christ, ²²Indeed, who is gone into heaven, and is on the right hand of God. Angels and authorities and powers being made under the control of him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *homoiōs* ('likewise') connects this instruction to the submission pattern begun in 2:13 (to government) and 2:18 (slaves to masters). The scenario Peter envisions is a believing wife married to an unbelieving husband — a common situation in the early church where women often converted independently.
2. The Greek *epoptesantes* ('having observed, having witnessed') is the same word used in 2:12 for pagans observing Christian behavior. The combination of *hagnēn* ('pure, chaste') and *en phobō* ('in reverence, with respect') describes conduct that is both morally clean and directed toward God — not fearful subservience to the husband but reverence toward God that shapes all behavior.
3. The Greek *kosmos* ('adornment, decoration, order') — from which English 'cosmetic' derives — sets up a contrast between external display and internal character. Peter does not absolutely prohibit these things (the grammar is 'not the external... but the internal' — a comparative negation, emphasizing priority rather than absolute prohibition). The specific items mentioned (elaborate hairstyles, gold, fine clothing) were associated with wealth and social status in the Roman world.
4. The phrase *ho kryptos tēs kardias anthrōpos* ('the hidden person of the heart') is a remarkable expression — the true self, invisible to others but visible to God. The 'imperishable' (*aphthartō*) quality of this inner adornment contrasts with the perishable nature of external decoration, echoing the 'imperishable inheritance' of 1:4.
4. The Greek *prautēs kai hēsychiou pneumatōs* ('of a gentle and quiet spirit') does not describe weakness or passivity. *Prautēs* ('gentleness') in Greek denotes controlled strength — a horse under bridle, power that is restrained. *Hēsychios* ('quiet, tranquil') refers to an inner calm, not silence.

5. Peter appeals to the matriarchs as models — 'the holy women' (hai hagai gynaikes) refers to Old Testament women of faith. The verb *ekosmoun* ('adorned themselves') uses the same *kosmos* root from verse 3, completing the contrast: their true adornment was not external but relational and spiritual.
6. The reference is to Genesis 18:12 (LXX), where Sarah refers to Abraham as 'my lord' (*kyrios*) in the context of the promise of Isaac. Peter's point is that these Gentile women have become 'daughters of Sarah' — they are now part of the covenant lineage through faith and conduct, not ethnicity.
6. The final phrase *mē phoboumenai mēdemian ptoēsīn* ('not fearing any intimidation') suggests that some of these women faced real social pressure or threat for their faith — yet they are to stand firm without being intimidated.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 18:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek *kata gnōsin* ('according to knowledge, in an understanding way') calls husbands to informed, attentive care — not ignorant or careless treatment. The phrase *astheneserō skeuei tō gynaikeiō* ('the weaker vessel, the feminine one') uses 'weaker' (*asthenestera*) in a comparative sense — not 'weak' absolutely but 'weaker' relatively. The word *skeuos* ('vessel') refers to the body or the whole person (cf. 1 Thessalonians 4:4).
7. The remarkable motivation is the final clause: mistreatment of one's wife hinders one's prayers. The marriage relationship has direct spiritual consequences — dishonor toward one's spouse creates a barrier between the husband and God. The phrase *synklēronomōis charitos zōēs* ('co-heirs of the grace of life') establishes full spiritual equality between husband and wife.
8. Five adjectives describe the communal character Peter envisions: *homophrones* ('like-minded, united in purpose'), *sympatheis* ('sympathetic, sharing in feelings'), *philadelphoi* ('loving as siblings'), *eusplanchnoi* ('compassionate, tender-hearted' — literally 'good-gutted,' from the Greek understanding that emotions resided in the intestines), and *tapeinophrones* ('humble-minded'). The KJV's 'courteous' for *tapeinophrones* is too weak — this is genuine humility, not mere politeness.
9. The non-retaliation ethic echoes both Jesus's teaching (Matthew 5:38-48) and Paul's instruction (Romans 12:17). The paradox: believers are called to bless even those who insult them, and in doing so they themselves inherit blessing. The word *eulogountes* ('blessing') is the opposite of *loidoria* ('insult, verbal abuse') — where others curse, believers bless.
10. Peter quotes Psalm 34:12-16 (33:13-17 LXX), a wisdom psalm that connects ethical conduct with divine blessing. The quotation extends through verse 12. The opening question in the psalm ('Who is the one who desires life?') becomes a conditional statement: if you want to experience the good life, here is the path.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 34:12-16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The imperatives move from negative (turn away from evil) to positive (do good), from passive avoidance to active pursuit. The verb *diōxatō* ('pursue, chase') is a hunting metaphor — peace must be actively tracked down, not merely hoped for. The same verb (*diōkō*) is used elsewhere for pursuing or persecuting someone — here it is channeled toward peace.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalms 34:12-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The psalm quotation concludes with a two-part assurance: God watches over the righteous and listens to their prayers, but his face is set against evildoers. The anthropomorphic language (eyes, ears, face) expresses God's attentive care and active opposition using body-part imagery common in Hebrew poetry.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 34:12-16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The Greek *zēlōtai* ('zealots, enthusiasts, devotees') is stronger than the KJV's 'followers' — it implies passionate, consuming dedication to goodness. The rhetorical question implies that those who pursue good are generally protected, though Peter immediately acknowledges the exception in verse 14.
14. The optative *paschoite* ('you should suffer') expresses a hypothetical but real possibility — not a certainty but not unlikely. The beatitude echoes Jesus's words in Matthew 5:10 ('blessed are those who are persecuted for righteousness' sake').
14. Peter quotes Isaiah 8:12-13 (LXX). The phrase *ton phobon autōn mē phobēthēte* can be read either as 'do not fear their terror' (what they threaten) or 'do not fear what they fear' (the things that terrify them). The Isaiah context supports the latter reading — God tells Isaiah not to share the people's panic.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 8:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek *hagiasate* ('sanctify, set apart as holy') applied to Christ means to give him the place of ultimate honor in one's inner life — to treat Christ as the holy Lord of one's heart. The phrase echoes Isaiah 8:13 ('the LORD of hosts, him you shall sanctify'), but Peter substitutes 'Christ' for 'the LORD of hosts,' a significant christological move.
15. The word *apologian* ('defense, reasoned account') is the origin of English 'apologetics.' It was a legal term for a defendant's speech in court. Peter envisions believers explaining their faith in a rational, articulate manner — not aggressive argument but calm, reasoned testimony. The 'hope that is

in you' (tēs en hymin elpidos) connects back to the 'living hope' of 1:3.

15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 8:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The manner of the defense is as important as its content: meta prautētos kai phobou ('with gentleness and reverence'). Aggressive, combative apologetics would undermine the very message being defended. The 'clear conscience' (syneidēsīn agathēn) ensures that the verbal defense matches the lived reality — there is no gap between what believers say and how they live.
17. The optative theloi ('should will') expresses that suffering is within God's sovereign plan but not his arbitrary whim. The comparison is not between suffering and comfort but between two kinds of suffering — for good conduct versus for bad. Peter assumes suffering is inevitable; the question is what kind.
18. The Greek hapax ('once, once for all') emphasizes the unrepeatable sufficiency of Christ's suffering — unlike the repeated sacrifices of the old covenant, this one was definitive. The phrase dikaios hyper adikōn ('righteous on behalf of unrighteous') is a compressed statement of substitutionary atonement.
18. The purpose clause hina hymas prosagagē tō theō ('that he might bring you to God') uses prosagō, a technical term for introducing someone into the presence of a king. Christ's death provides access to God's presence.
18. The contrast thanatōtheis sarki / zōopoiētheis pneumatī ('put to death in flesh / made alive in spirit') is debated. 'Spirit' may refer to the Holy Spirit, Christ's own spirit, or the sphere of spiritual existence. We render the datives as instrumental/spherical ('in the flesh...in the spirit') to preserve the ambiguity.
19. This is one of the most debated verses in the New Testament. The key questions: (1) When did Christ go? After his death, after his resurrection, or through Noah before the flood? (2) Who are the 'spirits in prison'? Fallen angels (cf. 2 Peter 2:4, Jude 6), deceased humans, or the generation of Noah? (3) What did he proclaim? The gospel, or a declaration of victory? The Greek ekēryxen ('proclaimed, heralded') does not specify the content — it could be a proclamation of triumph over evil powers rather than an evangelistic message.
19. We render the text as the Greek presents it without resolving the ambiguity. The phrase en hō ('in which') most naturally refers back to 'spirit' (pneumatī) from verse 18.
20. The 'spirits' are identified as those who disobeyed during the construction of Noah's ark. God's patience (makrothymia, 'long-suffering') extended through the construction period, giving opportunity for repentance. Only eight people (Noah, his wife, their three sons, and their wives) were saved.
20. The phrase diesōthēsan di' hydatos ('were saved through water') is ambiguous — were they saved 'by means of' water or 'through' water (i.e., passing safely through it)? The preposition dia with genitive can mean either. Peter will connect this to baptism in verse 21.
21. The Greek antitypon ('corresponding to, antitype') establishes a typological relationship: the flood waters that destroyed the old world and delivered Noah are a 'type' of baptism that delivers believers. Peter immediately qualifies: baptism saves not by its physical washing (ouch sarkos apothēsis rhy pou, 'not the removal of bodily dirt') but as an appeal or pledge of a good conscience toward God (syneidēseōs agathēs eperōtēma eis theon).
21. The word eperōtēma is debated — it can mean 'appeal, request, inquiry' or 'pledge, commitment.' Either reading works: baptism is either an appeal to God for a clear conscience or a pledge of a clear conscience before God. The saving power comes 'through the resurrection of Jesus Christ' — not through the water itself.
22. The verse is a compressed christological confession: ascension ('gone into heaven'), session ('at the right hand of God,' echoing Psalm 110:1), and cosmic lordship ('angels, authorities, and powers subjected'). The triad angelōn kai exousiōn kai dunameōn encompasses all categories of spiritual beings — whether good or evil, all are under Christ's authority.
22. The genitive absolute hypotagentōn ('having been subjected') uses the same root (hypotassō, 'to submit, to subject') that structured the household code of 2:13-3:7 — the pattern of submission that governs human relationships finds its ultimate ground in the submission of all cosmic powers to Christ.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 110:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

4

Summary: *Peter exhorts believers to arm themselves with the same mindset as Christ who suffered in the flesh, to live for God's will rather than human desires, and to recognize that the pagan lifestyle they have left behind now provokes hostility from former associates. He emphasizes that judgment begins with the household of God, encourages the faithful use of spiritual gifts for mutual service, and calls believers to rejoice in sharing Christ's sufferings so that they may also rejoice at his revelation.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'judgment begins with the household of God' (v. 17) has shaped Christian self-understanding for centuries — accountability starts with God's own people, not with outsiders. The passage on suffering 'as a Christian' (v. 16) contains one of only three uses of the word *Christianos* in the New Testament (also Acts 11:26 and 26:28), suggesting it was originally an outsider's label that believers were learning to wear without shame.*

Translation Friction: *The statement 'the gospel was proclaimed even to the dead' (v. 6) is nearly as debated as 3:19. We render the Greek as written. The eschatological urgency ('the end of all things is near,' v. 7) reflects the early church's expectation of an imminent return. The vice list in verse 3 is blunt and specific — we do not soften it.*

Connections: *The 'arm yourselves with the same mindset' (v. 1) echoes Philippians 2:5. The gift language (vv. 10-11) parallels Romans 12:6-8 and 1 Corinthians 12. The 'fiery trial' (v. 12) resonates with the tested-by-fire imagery of 1:7. The 'judgment begins with us' principle echoes Ezekiel 9:6 and Malachi 3:1-5.*

¹Since Christ suffered in the flesh, arm yourselves also with the same resolve, because whoever has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin, ²That he no longer should dwell the remainder of his moment in the physical nature to the lusts of men, but to the will of God. ³For the time already past is sufficient for doing what the Gentiles desire — living in sensuality, passions, drunkenness, orgies, drinking parties, and lawless idolatry. ⁴They are surprised that you no longer plunge with them into the same flood of dissipation, and they malign you. ⁵They will give account to the one who is ready to judge the living and the dead. ⁶For this is why the gospel was proclaimed even to the dead, so that though they were judged in the flesh as people are, they might live in the spirit as God does. ⁷The end of all things is near. Therefore be clear-minded and self-controlled for the sake of your prayers. ⁸Above all, maintain an earnest love for one another, because love covers a multitude of sins. ⁹Be hospitable to one another without grumbling. ¹⁰As each one has received a gift, use it to serve one another as good stewards of God's varied grace. ¹¹If anyone speaks, let it be as one speaking the very words of God. If anyone serves, let it be with the strength that God supplies, so that in everything God may be glorified through Jesus Christ. To him belong the glory and the power forever and ever. Amen. ¹²Dear friends, do not be surprised at the fiery trial that has come upon you to test you, as though something strange were happening to you. ¹³But rejoice insofar as you share in the sufferings of Christ, so that when his glory is revealed you may also rejoice with great joy. ¹⁴If you are insulted for the name of Christ, you are blessed, because the Spirit of glory and of God rests upon you. ¹⁵But let none of you suffer as a murderer, a thief, an evildoer, or as a meddler in others' affairs. ¹⁶But if anyone suffers as a Christian, let that person not be ashamed but glorify God by bearing that name. ¹⁷For it is time for judgment to begin with the household of God. And if it begins with us, what will be the outcome for those who do not obey the gospel of God? ¹⁸And "if the righteous person is scarcely saved, where will the ungodly and the sinner appear?" ¹⁹Therefore, let those who suffer according to God's will entrust their souls to a faithful Creator while doing good.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *hoplisasthe* ('arm yourselves') is a military metaphor — take up the mindset of Christ as a weapon. The word *ennoian* ('resolve, mindset, intention') refers to an inner disposition, not just intellectual agreement. Believers are to adopt Christ's willingness to suffer as their own combat readiness.
1. The clause *ho pathōn sarki pepautai hamartias* ('whoever has suffered in the flesh has ceased from sin') is theologically dense. It likely means that the person who has embraced suffering for Christ's sake has broken decisively with the sinful life — suffering marks the turning point away from sin's dominion.

2. The contrast is stark: anthrōpōn epithymiais ('human desires') versus thelēmati theou ('God's will'). The 'remaining time in the flesh' (ton epiloipon en sarki chronon) treats earthly life as a finite, limited period with a definite end — every day that remains should be oriented toward God's purposes rather than human passions.
3. The vice list is specific to the Greco-Roman social world: aselgeiais ('sensuality, debauchery'), epithymiais ('passions, lusts'), oinophylgiais ('drunkenness' — literally 'wine-bubbling'), kōmois ('orgies, revelries' — nocturnal processions associated with Dionysus worship), potois ('drinking bouts'), and athemitois eidōlatriais ('lawless idolatries'). These were not fringe activities but normal features of pagan social life in Asia Minor.
3. The word athemitois ('lawless, forbidden') applied to idolatry reflects a Jewish perspective — idol worship violated divine law even though it was legal in the Roman system.
4. The Greek xenizontai ('they are surprised, they find it strange') captures the social shock when someone withdraws from the expected communal activities. The vivid metaphor anachysin ('flood, outpouring, overflow') pictures dissipation as a raging torrent — former companions are being swept along in this flood and are bewildered that believers have climbed out. The word asōtias ('dissipation, debauchery') is literally 'unsavingness' — a life that wastes and destroys.
5. The phrase hetoimōs echonti krinai zōntas kai nekrous ('the one ready to judge the living and the dead') echoes an early creedal formula (cf. Acts 10:42, 2 Timothy 4:1). The judgment is comprehensive — it covers those alive at Christ's return and those already dead. The slanderers of verse 4 will face this judge.
6. This verse is among the most difficult in the New Testament. 'The dead' (nekrois) may refer to: (1) people who heard the gospel while alive and have since died, (2) the spiritually dead, or (3) the literally dead to whom Christ preached (connecting to 3:19). The most natural reading is that the gospel was proclaimed to people who are now dead — they heard it during their lifetime, were condemned by human judgment (perhaps through persecution and death), but live on in the spirit before God.
6. The contrast kata anthrōpous sarki ('according to humans in the flesh') versus kata theon pneumatī ('according to God in the spirit') places human and divine perspectives in opposition: human judgment ends at physical death, but God's purposes extend beyond it.
7. The Greek ēngiken ('has drawn near, is at hand') is the same verb used in Mark 1:15 for the kingdom of God. Peter shares the early Christian conviction that the consummation is imminent. The two imperatives — sōphronēsate ('be clear-minded, be sensible') and nēpsate ('be sober, be watchful') — are not redundant: the first addresses mental clarity, the second self-control. Both serve prayer.
8. The Greek ektenē ('earnest, stretched out, intense') describes love at full extension — love strained to its limit, as in 1:22. The proverb 'love covers a multitude of sins' echoes Proverbs 10:12 ('love covers all offenses'). The meaning is not that love hides sin or ignores it, but that love creates a relational environment where forgiveness flows freely and offenses do not fester.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 10:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The Greek philoxenoi ('hospitable,' literally 'lover of strangers') was a crucial virtue in the ancient world where inns were often dangerous or immoral. Christian hospitality — opening one's home to traveling believers — was essential for the spread of the gospel and the functioning of house churches. The qualifier aneu gongysmou ('without grumbling') acknowledges the cost of hospitality and insists it be given cheerfully.
10. The Greek charisma ('gift, grace-gift') is from the same root as charis ('grace') — every gift is a concrete expression of God's grace. The stewardship metaphor (oikonomoi, 'household managers') means these gifts are not personal possessions but resources entrusted for the benefit of others. The adjective poikilēs ('varied, many-colored, diverse') describes God's grace as multifaceted — it manifests differently in each person.
11. Peter divides gifts into two broad categories: speaking (lalei) and serving (diakonei). Both must be exercised in dependence on God — the speaker delivers God's words (logia theou, 'oracles of God'), not personal opinions; the servant operates from God's supplied strength (ischyos hēs chorēgei ho theos), not personal capacity.
11. The doxology ('to him belong the glory and the power') could refer to God the Father or to Jesus Christ. The nearest antecedent is 'Jesus Christ,' which would be a significant attribution of divine glory to Christ. The formula eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn ('to the ages of the ages') is the strongest temporal expression available in Greek — without end.
12. The Greek pyrōsei ('burning, fiery ordeal') echoes the gold-tested-by-fire imagery of 1:7. The verb xenizesthe ('be surprised, find strange') is the same word used in verse 4 for pagans being surprised at Christian behavior — now Peter tells believers not to be similarly surprised by persecution. Suffering is not an anomaly in the Christian life but an expected feature.
13. The Greek koinōneite ('you share, you participate') expresses real participation in Christ's sufferings — not mere imitation but genuine sharing. The logic is: present suffering with Christ guarantees future joy at his revelation. The verb agalliōmenoi ('rejoicing exceedingly') is the same word used in 1:6, creating a literary bracket — the joy that bookends suffering.
14. This beatitude echoes Matthew 5:11 ('Blessed are you when people insult you...on my account'). The phrase to tēs doxēs kai to tou theou pneuma ('the Spirit of glory and of God') is an unusual construction that identifies the Holy Spirit as both 'the Spirit of glory' and 'the Spirit of God.' The verb anapauetai ('rests') echoes Isaiah 11:2 (the Spirit of the LORD resting on the Messiah) — what rested on Christ now rests on his persecuted followers.
14. The SBLGNT does not include the longer reading found in some manuscripts ('on their part he is evil spoken of, but on your part he is glorified'), which the KJV includes. We follow the critical text.

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 11:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek allotrioepiskopos ('meddler, one who oversees others' business') is a rare word — found only here in the New Testament. It may refer to interfering in others' matters, or it could have a more specific social meaning: a Christian who provokes unnecessary conflict by inserting themselves into pagan affairs. Peter's point is that suffering must be for Christ's sake, not as a consequence of criminal or meddlesome behavior.
16. The word Christianos ('Christian') appears only three times in the New Testament (here, Acts 11:26, Acts 26:28). It was likely a label coined by outsiders — the Latin suffix -ianus indicates a partisan or follower. Peter takes what may have been a slur and transforms it into a badge of honor: do not be ashamed of this name; instead, glorify God through it.
16. The phrase en tō onomati toutō ('in this name, by this name') can mean either 'by bearing this name' or 'in this matter.' We follow the reading that connects to the name 'Christian,' which fits the context of identity-based suffering.
17. The principle echoes Ezekiel 9:6, where judgment begins at God's sanctuary. The 'household of God' (oikos tou theou) refers to the church — God's temple community (cf. 2:5). The argument from lesser to greater: if God's own people undergo purifying judgment through suffering, how much more severe will the judgment be for those who reject the gospel entirely.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 9:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Peter quotes Proverbs 11:31 from the Septuagint (which differs significantly from the Hebrew Masoretic Text here). The Greek molis ('scarcely, with difficulty') does not imply uncertainty of salvation but its costliness — the righteous are saved, but the path involves suffering and testing. The rhetorical question about the ungodly expects an answer of devastating judgment.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 11:31 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The chapter concludes with the only New Testament use of the title pistō ktistē ('faithful Creator'). In the context of suffering, Peter points believers back to the one who made them — the Creator is faithful and can be trusted with their souls. The verb paratithesthōsan ('let them entrust, deposit') is a banking term — depositing something valuable with a trustworthy guardian. The word echoes Jesus's final words in Luke 23:46, 'Father, into your hands I commit my spirit.'

5

Summary: *Peter addresses the elders as a fellow elder and witness of Christ's sufferings, urging them to shepherd God's flock willingly, not under compulsion or for dishonest gain, and not by domineering over those in their charge but by being examples. He promises the unfading crown of glory when the Chief Shepherd appears. Younger members are told to submit to elders, and all are called to clothe themselves with humility. The letter closes with the famous image of the devil prowling like a roaring lion, an exhortation to resist him firm in faith, and a benediction of the God of all grace who will restore, confirm, strengthen, and establish the suffering believers.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Peter identifies himself as a 'fellow elder' (sympresbyteros) and 'witness of Christ's sufferings' (v. 1) — extraordinary humility from the apostle, placing himself alongside local church leaders rather than above them. The 'crown of glory that does not fade' (v. 4) uses amarantinos, found only here in the New Testament, echoing the 'unfading' inheritance of 1:4. The lion metaphor (v. 8) would carry special resonance for Christians who knew of martyrdom in Roman arenas.*

Translation Friction: *The reference to 'Babylon' (v. 13) is almost certainly a code name for Rome, as in Revelation 14:8, 17:5, and 18:2. Some argue it refers to literal Babylon in Mesopotamia, but the letter's Roman context and the widespread early Christian use of 'Babylon' for Rome make this reading more probable. The mention of 'Mark, my son' (v. 13) is taken by tradition as John Mark, the author of the Second Gospel.*

Connections: *The shepherd imagery (vv. 1-4) connects to John 21:15-17 (Jesus's charge to Peter: 'Feed my sheep'). The humility command (v. 5) quotes Proverbs 3:34 (LXX). The lion metaphor recalls Psalm 22:13 and the language of the Psalms about enemies. The benediction (vv. 10-11) echoes Paul's doxological closings. Silvanus (v. 12) is likely the Silas of Acts 15:22-40 and Paul's companion.*

¹So I appeal to the elders among you as a fellow elder and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, as well as a partaker in the glory that is about to be revealed: ²Shepherd the flock of God that is among you, exercising oversight not under compulsion but willingly, as God would have it — not for shameful gain but eagerly, ³Do not lord it over the people entrusted to your care; instead, be examples to the flock. ⁴And when the Chief Shepherd appears, you will receive the unfading crown of glory.

⁵Likewise, you who are younger, submit yourselves to the elders. And all of you, clothe yourselves with humility toward one another, because God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble. ⁶Humble yourselves, therefore, under the mighty hand of God, so that he may exalt you at the proper time, ⁷Casting all your care upon him. Since he careth for you. ⁸Be self-controlled and alert. Your adversary the devil prowls around like a roaring lion, seeking someone to devour. ⁹Resist him, firm in your faith, knowing that the same kinds of suffering are being experienced by your brotherhood throughout the world. ¹⁰And the God of all grace, who called you to his eternal glory in Christ Jesus, will himself, after you have suffered for a little while, restore, confirm, strengthen, and establish you. ¹¹To him be the power forever and ever. Amen. ¹²Through Silvanus, whom I regard as a faithful brother, I have written to you briefly, encouraging you and testifying that this is the true grace of God. Stand firm in it. ¹³She who is in Babylon, chosen together with you, sends you greetings, and so does Mark, my son. ¹⁴Greet one another with a kiss of love. Peace to all of you who are in Christ.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Peter identifies himself with three titles: *sympresbyteros* ('fellow elder' — placing himself alongside the local leaders, not above them), *martyr tōn tou Christou pathēmātōn* ('witness of Christ's sufferings' — an eyewitness claim rooted in his presence at the crucifixion), and *koinōnos tēs mellousēs apokalypseōs* ('sharer in the coming glory' — linking present witness to future hope).
1. The word *martyr* here means 'witness' in the sense of eyewitness testimony, not yet the technical sense of 'martyr' (one who dies for faith), though Peter's own tradition held that he was martyred under Nero.
2. The imperative *poimane* ('shepherd') echoes Jesus's charge to Peter in John 21:16 — the very apostle who was told 'shepherd my sheep' now passes that charge to other leaders. The three contrasts define proper pastoral motivation: not by compulsion but willingly (*hekousiōs*), not for financial gain (*aischroterdōs*, 'in a shamefully greedy way') but eagerly (*prothymōs*), and (in verse 3) not by domineering but by example.
2. The phrase *kata theon* ('as God would have it, according to God') is present in some manuscripts and absent in others. The SBLGNT includes it, indicating that willing oversight must align with God's own character and purposes.
3. The Greek *kataklyreuous* ('lording it over, domineering') uses the same verb Jesus used in Mark 10:42 when he contrasted worldly rulers who 'lord it over' people with the servant leadership he modeled. The word *klērōn* ('those allotted, those assigned') literally means 'lots' or 'portions' — each group of believers has been assigned to its elders as a trust, not as a possession.
3. The word *typoi* ('models, examples, patterns') means the elders' lives should be templates that others can follow — leadership by lived example rather than by imposed authority.
4. The title *archipoimen* ('Chief Shepherd') appears only here in the New Testament. It establishes a hierarchy of shepherding: the elders shepherd under the authority of the Chief Shepherd, Christ. When he appears (*phanerōthentos* — the same word used for Christ's first appearing in 1:20), the faithful under-shepherds receive their reward.
4. The adjective *amarantinon* ('unfading, unwithering') is built from the same root as *amaranton* in 1:4 ('unfading inheritance'). Greek victory wreaths were made of leaves that quickly withered; this crown never will. The word is found only here in the entire New Testament.
5. The Greek *encombōsasthe* ('clothe yourselves, tie on like a garment') is a rare word — possibly referring to a slave's work apron (*encombōma*) tied over other clothing for service. If so, Peter is saying: put on the servant's apron of humility. The image is especially powerful coming from the apostle who watched Jesus tie on a towel and wash the disciples' feet (John 13).
5. The quotation 'God opposes the proud but gives grace to the humble' is from Proverbs 3:34 (LXX), also quoted by James (4:6). The Greek *antitassetai* ('opposes, sets himself in battle array against') is a military term — God actively resists the proud as an army opposes an enemy.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Proverbs 3:34 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The 'mighty hand of God' (*krataian cheira tou theou*) is exodus language — God's hand delivered Israel from Egypt (Exodus 3:19, Deuteronomy 5:15). The same hand that once rescued Israel now governs the circumstances of these suffering believers. The promise of exaltation (*hypsōsē*, 'may lift up') is conditioned on humility and timing — 'at the proper time' (*en kairō*), not immediately.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 3:19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 5:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The Greek *epirhpsantes* ('having cast, thrown upon') is a decisive, once-for-all action — hurl your entire burden of worry onto God. The word *merimnan* ('anxiety, care, worry') is the same word Jesus used in the Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 6:25-34). The reason for casting anxiety is personal and intimate: *autō melei peri hymōn* ('it matters to him concerning you') — God is personally invested in their well-being. Peter echoes Psalm 55:22 ('Cast your burden on the LORD, and he will sustain you').

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 55:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The twin imperatives *nēpsate* ('be sober, self-controlled') and *grēgorēsate* ('be watchful, stay alert') form a sentinel's posture — the soldier who falls asleep on guard duty is vulnerable. The Greek *antidikos* ('adversary, legal opponent') is a courtroom term, portraying the devil as a prosecutor seeking to bring charges.
8. The lion simile *ōs leōn ōryomenos* ('like a roaring lion') draws on the psalmist's imagery of enemies as predatory animals (Psalm 22:13). For believers in Asia Minor who knew of martyrdoms in Roman arenas where lions were used, this was not merely figurative. The participle *peripatei* ('walks about, prowls') suggests constant, restless hunting.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 22:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The imperative *antistēte* ('resist, stand against') is the same verb used in James 4:7 ('Resist the devil, and he will flee from you'). The resistance is not passive endurance but active opposition. The phrase *stereoi tē pistei* ('firm in the faith, solid in faith') uses an adjective meaning 'hard, solid, firm' — like a foundation that will not budge.
9. The final clause provides solidarity: these believers are not alone in their suffering. The same *pathēmatōn* ('sufferings') are being endured by the *adelphotēti* ('brotherhood, community of siblings') across the entire Roman world. Isolation amplifies suffering; shared experience provides strength.
10. Four future-tense verbs form a crescendo of divine action: *katartisei* ('restore, mend, make complete' — the same word used for mending nets in Mark 1:19), *stērixei* ('confirm, make firm'), *sthenōsei* ('strengthen'), and *themeliōsei* ('establish, lay a foundation'). God does not merely permit suffering — he personally completes the restoration afterward.
10. The title 'God of all grace' (*theos pasēs charitos*) is the letter's theological summary: every form of grace needed for every form of suffering flows from this God. The phrase *oligon pathontas* ('having suffered for a little while') puts suffering in eschatological perspective — it is real but brief compared to 'eternal glory' (*aiōnion doxan*).
11. The doxology is brief and emphatic: *to kratos* ('the power, the dominion') belongs to God *eis tous aiōnas* ('forever, to the ages'). The SBLGNT reads only *kratos* ('power') without 'glory' (*doxan*), which some manuscripts add. We follow the critical text. The doxology provides theological closure: the God who has the power forever is the same God who promises restoration in verse 10.
12. Silvanus (*Silouanos*) is most likely the Silas of Acts 15:22-40 who traveled with Paul. The phrase *dia Silouanou* ('through Silvanus') may mean Silvanus was the letter carrier, the secretary (*amanuensis*) who wrote at Peter's dictation, or both.
12. The phrase *tautēn einai alethē charin tou theou* ('this is the true grace of God') summarizes the letter's message: everything Peter has described — the living hope, the tested faith, the identity as God's people, the purpose in suffering — all of this is genuine grace. The imperative *stēte* ('stand firm') is the letter's final command: remain in this grace.
13. The feminine *hē syneklektē* ('she who is co-chosen') most likely refers to the church in 'Babylon' — the feminine article matching the implied *ekklēsia* ('church, assembly'). 'Babylon' is almost certainly a code name for Rome, a usage attested in Jewish apocalyptic literature and in Revelation (14:8, 17:5, 18:2). Literal Babylon in Mesopotamia was largely depopulated by this period.
13. Mark (Markos) is traditionally identified as John Mark of Acts 12:12, 25, the author of the Second Gospel. Peter calls him 'my son' (*ho huios mou*), indicating a spiritual father-son relationship. The early church tradition (via Papias, Eusebius) held that Mark recorded Peter's testimony in his Gospel.
14. The 'kiss of love' (*philēmati agapēs*) is a variation of Paul's 'holy kiss' (*philēma hagion*, Romans 16:16, 1 Corinthians 16:20). This was a liturgical greeting in early Christian worship — a physical expression of the family bond among believers.
14. The letter closes as it opened — with peace (*eirēnē*, cf. 1:2). The final phrase *tois en Christō* ('to those in Christ') defines the recipients by their fundamental identity: they are people who exist 'in Christ,' and within that sphere, peace is their possession. The SBLGNT does not include the final 'Amen' found in some manuscripts and in the KJV.

2 Peter

1

Summary: *Second Peter opens with a greeting from Simeon Peter, then immediately declares that God's divine power has granted everything needed for life and godliness through the knowledge of the one who called us. Through precious promises, believers may become partakers of the divine nature. Peter lists a chain of virtues to be cultivated — faith, virtue, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, mutual affection, and love — and warns that neglecting these means forgetting one's cleansing from sin. He affirms the reliability of apostolic testimony as eyewitness, not cleverly devised myth, recounting the Transfiguration, and closes by affirming prophetic Scripture as divinely inspired.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'divine power' passage (v. 3) and 'partakers of the divine nature' (v. 4) are among the most theologically distinctive statements in the New Testament, providing the biblical basis for the Eastern Orthodox doctrine of theosis (deification/divinization). The virtue chain (vv. 5-7) is a Greco-Roman literary form (sorites) adapted for Christian ethics. The Transfiguration account (vv. 16-18) is one of only two direct apostolic eyewitness claims to a specific event in Jesus's life found in the epistles.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between 2 Peter and Jude is debated — significant material in chapter 2 parallels Jude closely. The Greek style of 2 Peter differs markedly from 1 Peter, which some attribute to a different amanuensis or to pseudonymous authorship. We render the text as presented without adjudicating the authorship question. The phrase 'partakers of the divine nature' (v. 4) uses language at home in Hellenistic philosophy (particularly Stoicism) but repurposed for a distinctly Christian and covenantal meaning.*

Connections: *The 'divine power' language (v. 3) connects to the power language throughout the New Testament (Romans 1:16, 1 Corinthians 1:18). The Transfiguration account (vv. 16-18) parallels Matthew 17:1-8, Mark 9:2-8, Luke 9:28-36. The prophetic inspiration statement (vv. 20-21) provides one of the New Testament's clearest declarations about the origin of Scripture, alongside 2 Timothy 3:16.*

¹Simeon Peter, a servant and apostle of Jesus Christ, to those who have received a faith equal in value to ours through the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ: ²May grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord. ³His divine power has granted to us everything needed for life and godliness, through the knowledge of the one who called us by his own glory and excellence, ⁴Through these he has granted to us his precious and magnificent

promises, so that through them you may become partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world because of sinful desire. ⁵For this very reason, make every effort to supplement your faith with virtue, and virtue with knowledge, ⁶to knowledge add self-control; to self-control add endurance; to endurance add godliness; ⁷to godliness add mutual affection; and to mutual affection add love. ⁸For if these qualities are yours and are increasing, they keep you from being ineffective or unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. ⁹For whoever lacks these qualities is blind — nearsighted, in fact — having forgotten the cleansing from former sins. ¹⁰Therefore, brothers and sisters, be all the more diligent to make your calling and election certain, for if you practice these qualities you will never stumble. ¹¹For in this way, entry into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ will be richly provided to you. ¹²Therefore I intend always to remind you of these things, even though you know them and are established in the truth that you now have. ¹³I consider it right, as long as I am in this tent, to stir you up by way of reminder, ¹⁴Being aware that shortly I must put off this my tabernacle, indeed as our Lord Jesus Christ has shewed me. ¹⁵And I will make every effort so that after my departure you may be able at any time to recall these things. ¹⁶For we did not follow cleverly devised myths when we made known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, but we were eyewitnesses of his majesty. ¹⁷For he received honor and glory from God the Father when a voice came to him from the Majestic Glory, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased" — ¹⁸This voice which arrived from heaven we listened to, when we were with him in the holy mount. ¹⁹And we have the prophetic word made more sure, to which you do well to pay attention as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day dawns and the morning star rises in your hearts, ²⁰Being aware this foremost, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation. ²¹For no prophecy was ever produced by human will, but people spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek Symeōn is the Semitic form of the name (cf. Acts 15:14), lending an archaic, Hebraic flavor to the greeting. The phrase isotomon hēmīn lachousin pistin ('having obtained a faith of equal value with ours') uses isotimos ('of equal honor/value') — the faith of these recipients is not second-class compared to apostolic faith.
1. The phrase tou theou hēmōn kai sōtēros Iēsou Christou ('of our God and Savior Jesus Christ') is grammatically most naturally read as applying both titles — 'God' and 'Savior' — to Jesus Christ (the Granville Sharp rule in Greek). This would be one of the clearest New Testament identifications of Jesus as God.
2. The greeting echoes 1 Peter 1:2 but adds the distinctive phrase en epignōsei ('in the knowledge'). The word epignōsis ('full knowledge, deep knowledge') is a key term in 2 Peter, appearing four times (1:2, 3, 8; 2:20). It is more than intellectual awareness — it is relational, experiential knowledge of God. Grace and peace grow as knowledge of God deepens.
3. The Greek theias dynamēōs ('divine power') uses theios ('divine'), a word common in Hellenistic religious philosophy but rare in the New Testament (only here, v. 4, and Acts 17:29). Peter bridges Jewish-Christian theology and Greco-Roman vocabulary — communicating to a Hellenistic audience in their own conceptual language.
3. The phrase ta pros zōēn kai eusebeian ('the things pertaining to life and godliness') is comprehensive — 'life' (zōē) covers all of existence, and 'godliness' (eusebeia) covers all of religious practice. Together they leave nothing out.
4. The phrase theias koinōnoi physeōs ('sharers/partakers of the divine nature') is unique in the New Testament and has generated enormous theological discussion. In its Hellenistic context, 'divine nature' (theia physis) was philosophical language for the essence of deity. Peter claims that believers participate in this — not becoming divine in essence (as in pagan apotheosis) but sharing in God's moral character and eternal life.
4. The Eastern Orthodox tradition built its theology of theosis (deification) significantly on this verse. The Western tradition has generally interpreted it as moral transformation. The text itself supports both emphases without collapsing into either exclusively.
5. The Greek epichorēgēsate ('supply, furnish, provide generously') is from the theater — a chorēgos was a wealthy patron who funded a chorus. The word implies lavish, generous investment, not minimal addition. The sorites (chain-link) argument that follows (vv. 5-7) builds each virtue upon the previous one, creating an ascending staircase of character development.
5. The word aretē ('virtue, moral excellence') was the central concept in Greek ethics. Peter integrates it into the Christian framework, beginning with faith (pistis) and culminating in love (agapē).
6. The chain continues: gnōsis ('knowledge') leads to egkrateia ('self-control' — mastery over desires and impulses, a key virtue in Stoic ethics), which produces hypomonē ('endurance, steadfast perseverance under pressure'), which deepens into eusebeia ('godliness, piety, reverent devotion to God'). Each virtue both builds on and produces the next.

7. The chain culminates in agapē ('love') — the highest Christian virtue (1 Corinthians 13). Before agapē comes philadelphia ('mutual affection, brotherly/sisterly love'), which is love within the community. Agapē transcends philadelphia — it is the self-giving love that extends even beyond the boundaries of the Christian family. The progression from faith to love mirrors Paul's triad in 1 Corinthians 13:13, with the intervening virtues filling out the developmental path.
8. The Greek argous ('idle, useless, ineffective') literally means 'not-working' (a-ergos). Combined with akarpous ('unfruitful'), Peter warns against a faith that produces nothing. The knowledge (epignōsis) of Christ is not static information but a living relationship that bears fruit through the cultivation of these virtues.
9. The Greek myōpazōn ('being shortsighted, squinting') is found only here in the New Testament. The irony is deliberate: the person is not actually blind but has such narrow vision that they might as well be. They can see only what is immediately before them and have lost sight of the larger picture — specifically, the cleansing (katharismos) from sin that launched their Christian life. Forgetting their own salvation leads to moral stagnation.
10. The Greek bebaian ('firm, certain, reliable') applied to 'calling and election' (klēsīn kai eklogēn) does not mean that God's choice is uncertain and needs human help — rather, the cultivation of virtues provides subjective assurance and objective evidence that one's calling is genuine. The strong negation ou mē ptaisēte pote ('you will never, ever stumble') guarantees stability to those who pursue these virtues.
11. The verb epichorēgēthēsetai ('will be richly supplied, lavishly furnished') echoes the same root from verse 5 — believers who generously supply the virtues (epichorēgēsate) will receive a generous entry (epichorēgēthēsetai) into the eternal kingdom. The word plousiōs ('richly, abundantly') pictures not a bare-minimum entry but a triumphal welcome.
12. Peter acknowledges that his readers already know these truths and are established (estērigmenous, 'firmly planted') in them — yet he considers repeated reminders essential. The phrase tē parousē alētheia ('the truth that is present/that you have') may mean 'the truth now present among you' or 'the truth that has come to you.' Knowledge and stability do not eliminate the need for reinforcement.
13. The Greek skēnōmati ('tent, tabernacle, temporary dwelling') refers to Peter's body — a metaphor for the temporary nature of physical life. The image echoes Paul's tent metaphor in 2 Corinthians 5:1-4. Peter sees his earthly existence as a temporary encampment, not a permanent home, and uses the remaining time to reinforce essential teaching.
14. The Greek tachinē ('swift, soon, imminent') indicates Peter expects death in the near future. The phrase kathos kai ho kyrios hēmōn Iēsous Christos edēlōsen moi ('as our Lord Jesus Christ made clear to me') likely refers to Jesus's prediction of Peter's death in John 21:18-19, where Jesus told Peter that in old age he would be led where he did not wish to go — traditionally understood as a prediction of crucifixion.
15. The Greek exodon ('departure, exodus') for death is the same word used in Luke 9:31 for Jesus's 'departure' (death) that he discussed with Moses and Elijah at the Transfiguration — a connection Peter would have witnessed firsthand. The word carries overtones of the great Exodus from Egypt — death as a liberation journey. Peter's concern is for the church's ongoing memory after he is gone, which may explain the writing of this letter itself.
16. The Greek sesophismenois mythois ('cleverly devised myths, fabricated stories') uses sophizō ('to make clever, to contrive') — the apostolic message is not a skilled human invention. The word epoptai ('eyewitnesses') is a technical term — in the Greek mystery religions, an epoptēs was one who had seen the sacred rites at the highest level of initiation. Peter co-opts the term: the apostles are the true 'initiates' who witnessed Christ's glory firsthand.
16. The word parousian ('coming, presence, arrival') refers to Christ's second coming — a topic that will dominate chapter 3. Peter grounds the future hope in past eyewitness experience.
17. Peter recounts the Transfiguration (Matthew 17:1-8, Mark 9:2-8, Luke 9:28-36). The title megaloprepous doxēs ('the Majestic Glory') is a circumlocution for God — a reverent avoidance of the divine name, referring to God's visible, overwhelming presence. The divine voice repeats the baptismal declaration (Matthew 3:17) with the demonstrative houtos ('this one') — pointing to Jesus as the unique, beloved Son.
17. Peter's version of the heavenly voice matches Matthew's account more closely than Mark's or Luke's, which may reflect Peter's own memory since Matthew's Gospel draws on Petrine tradition.
18. The emphatic hēmeis ('we ourselves') stresses the eyewitness character of the testimony. The 'holy mountain' (hagiō orei) is not named — tradition identifies it as Mount Tabor or Mount Hermon — but Peter's point is not the geography but the experience. The mountain is 'holy' because God's presence sanctified it, as Sinai was holy when God descended upon it (Exodus 19:23).
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 19:23 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The phrase bebaieron ton prophētikon logon ('the prophetic word made more sure') can be read two ways: (1) the Transfiguration experience confirms the reliability of Old Testament prophecy, or (2) prophetic Scripture is even more reliable than eyewitness experience. Either reading elevates the authority of Scripture.
19. The metaphor of a lamp (lychnō) in a dark (auchēmō, 'murky, squalid, dry') place portrays the present age as dark and Scripture as the light that guides through it. The 'morning star' (phōsphoros, literally 'light-bearer') is Christ himself (cf. Revelation 22:16), whose full appearing will make the lamp of prophecy no longer necessary — the sunrise replaces the lamp.

- 20.** The Greek *epilyseōs* ('one's own interpretation/explanation') is debated. The KJV takes it as a statement about how prophecy should be interpreted (not privately but communally/ecclesially). However, the context of verse 21 suggests it is about the origin of prophecy — no prophetic Scripture arose from the prophet's own devising or interpretation of events. The prophet did not generate the message; it came from God. We render it in the origination sense, which fits the flow into verse 21.
- 21.** The Greek *pheromenoi* ('being carried, being borne along') is a nautical metaphor — like a ship driven by the wind. The prophets were not passive instruments (they spoke, using their own faculties and personalities) but neither were they autonomous authors. The Holy Spirit was the driving force; the prophets were the vessels carried along by that force.
- 21.** The phrase *apo theou* ('from God') identifies the origin of the prophetic message — it came from God, through the Spirit, and was spoken by human beings. This verse, alongside 2 Timothy 3:16, forms the New Testament's clearest statement about the divine inspiration of Scripture.

2

Summary: *Peter warns that false teachers will arise among the believers, just as false prophets arose in Israel. He draws on three Old Testament examples of divine judgment — the fallen angels, the flood, and Sodom and Gomorrah — to assure that God knows how to rescue the godly and punish the unrighteous. The chapter provides a vivid portrait of the false teachers: they exploit with fabricated words, follow the way of Balaam, are like waterless springs and mists driven by a storm, promise freedom while being slaves of corruption, and are ultimately worse off than before they knew Christ.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter shares extensive material with Jude (compare 2 Peter 2:1-18 with Jude 4-16). The literary relationship is debated — whether Peter drew on Jude, Jude drew on Peter, or both used a common source. Peter's version notably omits Jude's references to the Assumption of Moses and 1 Enoch, possibly adapting the material for a more Hellenistic audience. The Balaam tradition (vv. 15-16) includes the talking donkey episode, one of the most memorable stories from Numbers 22.*

Translation Friction: *The reference to angels who sinned being cast into Tartarus (v. 4) uses *tartarōsas*, a word drawn from Greek mythology (Tartarus was the deepest abyss of Hades) found nowhere else in the Bible. Peter adapts pagan cosmological vocabulary for theological purposes. The strong language describing the false teachers is some of the harshest in the New Testament. We render it faithfully without softening.*

Connections: *The three judgment examples (angels, flood, Sodom) parallel Jude 5-7. The Balaam material connects to Numbers 22-24 and is also referenced in Jude 11 and Revelation 2:14. The 'dog returns to its vomit' proverb (v. 22) quotes Proverbs 26:11. The 'waterless springs' imagery echoes Jude 12-13.*

¹But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you, who privily will bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. ²Many will follow their sensuality, and because of them the way of truth will be maligned. ³In their greed they will exploit you with fabricated words. Their condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not slumber. ⁴For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but cast them into Tartarus and committed them to chains of deepest darkness, to be held for judgment; ⁵Spared not the old present age, but saved Noah the eighth person, a preacher of righteousness, bringing in the flood upon the present age of the ungodly; ⁶He condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah by burning them to ashes, making them an example of what will happen to the ungodly. ⁷Handed down just Lot, vexed with the filthy conversation of the wicked. ⁸Indeed, (For that righteous man dwelling in the midst of them, in seeing and hearing, vexed his righteous soul from day to day with their unlawful deeds;). ⁹The Lord knows how to rescue the godly from their trials and how to hold the unrighteous for punishment on the day of judgment. ¹⁰However, chiefly them that conduct your lives following the physical nature in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous are they, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities. ¹¹Whereas angels, which are greater in authority and might, bring not railing accusation opposed to them prior to the Lord. ¹²But these people, like irrational animals, creatures of instinct born to be caught and destroyed — blaspheming about matters of which they are ignorant — will also be destroyed in their destruction, ¹³Will accept the reward of unrighteousness, as they that count it pleasure to riot in the day time. Spots they are and blemishes, sporting themselves

with their own deceivings while they feast with you;. ¹⁴They have eyes full of adultery, insatiable for sin. They entice unstable souls. They have hearts trained in greed. Accursed children! ¹⁵Forsaking the straight path, they have gone astray, following the way of Balaam son of Beor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness, ¹⁶However, was rebuked for his iniquity — the dumb ass speaking with man's voice forbad the madness of the prophet of old. ¹⁷These are waterless springs and mists driven by a storm. For them the gloom of utter darkness has been reserved. ¹⁸For by speaking bombastic, empty words, they entice through fleshly desires and sensuality those who are barely escaping from people who live in error. ¹⁹They promise them freedom, but they themselves are slaves of corruption. For whatever overcomes a person, to that he is enslaved. ²⁰For if, after escaping the defilements of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, they are again entangled in them and overcome, the last state has become worse for them than the first. ²¹For it would have been better for them never to have known the way of righteousness than, having known it, to turn back from the holy commandment delivered to them. ²²What the true proverb says has happened to them: "A dog returns to its own vomit," and, "A washed sow returns to wallowing in the mud."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek pseudodidaskaloi ('false teachers') parallels the pseudoprophētai ('false prophets') of Israel's history — the problem is not new. The verb pareisaxousin ('will secretly introduce, smuggle in') implies stealth — these teachings are not openly presented but infiltrated into the community.
1. The phrase ton agorasanta autous despotēn arnoumenoi ('denying the Master who bought them') uses commercial language: agorazō ('to buy in the marketplace') applied to Christ's redemptive work. The word despotēn ('Master, absolute Lord') emphasizes Christ's ownership claim over those he purchased.
2. The Greek aselgeiais ('sensuality, licentiousness, debauchery') indicates the false teachers' moral character, not just their doctrinal errors — the two are inseparable. 'The way of truth' (hē hodos tēs alētheias) is an early designation for the Christian movement (cf. Acts 9:2, 'the Way'). The public behavior of these teachers will cause outsiders to slander the entire Christian faith.
3. The Greek emporeuontai ('they will trade in, make merchandise of') portrays the false teachers as merchants who view believers as commodities to be exploited for profit. The word plastoīs ('fabricated, molded, invented') — from which English 'plastic' derives — describes their teaching as artificially shaped to serve their purposes.
3. The personification of judgment and destruction as active agents ('not idle,' 'does not slumber') is vivid — divine judgment is not sleeping or inactive but wakefully approaching.
4. The Greek tartarōsas ('having cast into Tartarus') is a hapax legomenon — it appears only here in the entire Bible. In Greek mythology, Tartarus was the lowest region of the underworld where the Titans were imprisoned. Peter uses this Greek cosmological term to describe the imprisonment of fallen angels, adapting pagan vocabulary for a Jewish-Christian narrative that draws on the tradition of Genesis 6:1-4 and the Book of 1 Enoch (cf. Jude 6).
4. The 'chains of deepest darkness' (seirais zophou) — some manuscripts read seirois ('pits') instead of seirais ('chains'). The SBLGNT reads seirais. Either way, the imagery is of imprisonment in complete darkness awaiting final judgment.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 6:1-4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek ogdoon Nōe ('Noah the eighth') means Noah and seven others — his wife, three sons, and their wives (Genesis 7:13, 1 Peter 3:20). Peter calls Noah kēruka dikaiosynēs ('a herald/preacher of righteousness'), a characterization not found in Genesis but present in Jewish tradition. The word kēryx ('herald, public announcer') portrays Noah as actively proclaiming righteousness during the ark's construction, not merely building in silence.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 7:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek tephrosās ('having reduced to ashes') is found only here in the New Testament. The word katastrophē ('overthrow, destruction') — source of English 'catastrophe' — describes total demolition. Peter presents Sodom and Gomorrah as a visible, permanent warning (hypodeigma, 'example, pattern') of divine judgment — what happened to those cities illustrates what awaits all who practice ungodliness.
7. Peter calls Lot dikaios ('righteous'), a characterization that might surprise readers of Genesis 19, where Lot's behavior is morally ambiguous at best. Peter focuses on Lot's inner distress at the surrounding wickedness rather than his compromised choices. The word kataponoumenon ('being oppressed, worn down, distressed') suggests chronic psychological suffering from living among the immoral — Lot was ground down by constant exposure to depravity.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

8. The Greek *ebasanizen* ('was tormented, tortured') is a strong word — the same verb used for physical torture (Matthew 8:6, Revelation 9:5). Lot's exposure to lawless behavior was not mere discomfort but soul-level anguish. The phrase *hēmeran ex hēmeras* ('day after day, day from day') emphasizes the relentless, cumulative nature of this torment — it never stopped.
9. This verse provides the resolution to the extended conditional that began in verse 4. The three examples (angels, flood, Sodom) all demonstrate the same dual principle: God rescues the righteous (Noah, Lot) and punishes the wicked. The word *kolazomenous* ('being punished') is a present participle — the unrighteous are already under punishment while awaiting the final judgment, not merely stored in neutral waiting.
10. Peter now turns from the historical examples to the present false teachers. They are characterized by two traits: indulging corrupt desires (*opisō sarkos en epithymia mias mou*, 'pursuing flesh in defiling desire') and rejecting authority (*kyriotētos kataphronountas*, 'despising lordship'). The 'glorious ones' (*doxas*) likely refers to angelic beings — the false teachers show contempt for the spiritual hierarchy.
10. The adjectives *tolmētai* ('bold, daring, presumptuous') and *authentai* ('self-willed, arrogant, stubborn') describe people who recognize no authority beyond their own will.
11. The argument is from greater to lesser: if angels — who are vastly more powerful than any human — do not presume to slander spiritual beings before God's tribunal, how much more outrageous that these human false teachers do so. Compare Jude 9, which provides the specific example of Michael the archangel refusing to pronounce a slanderous judgment against the devil regarding Moses's body.
12. The comparison to *aloga zōa* ('irrational animals, brute beasts') is harsh — these teachers operate on instinct (*physika*, 'natural, by nature') rather than reason or revelation. The wordplay on *phthora/phtharēsontai* ('corruption/they will be corrupted') creates a grim symmetry: they will be destroyed by the very corruption they promote. Ignorance and arrogance combine to produce destruction.
13. The Greek *misthon adikias* ('wages of unrighteousness') is ironic — they pursued profit through unrighteousness and receive unrighteousness as their payment. Carousing *en hēmera* ('in daytime') was considered especially shameful in the ancient world, where respectable people reserved evening hours for banqueting.
13. The words *spiloi* ('blots, stains') and *mōmoi* ('blemishes') contrast sharply with the 'without spot or blemish' language applied to Christ in 1 Peter 1:19 — these teachers are the opposite of Christ. The phrase *syneuōchoumenoi hymin* ('feasting together with you') indicates they are still participating in the community's shared meals, probably including the Lord's Supper.
14. The Greek *ophthalmous mestous moichalidos* ('eyes full of an adulteress') is literally 'eyes full of an adulteress' — every woman they see is seen as a potential partner in adultery. The participle *deleazontes* ('enticing, luring with bait') is a fishing metaphor — they bait and hook vulnerable believers. The phrase *kardian gegymnasmenen pleonexias* ('a heart trained/exercised in greed') uses the athletic training metaphor (*gymnazō*, from which 'gymnasium' derives) — they have disciplined themselves in the art of greed as an athlete trains for competition.
15. Balaam (Numbers 22-24) is the paradigmatic example of a prophet motivated by money. Despite being hired by Balak to curse Israel, God forced him to bless them instead. Yet Jewish tradition (and the New Testament: Jude 11, Revelation 2:14) consistently portrays Balaam as a negative example — a man with genuine prophetic gifts corrupted by greed. The false teachers follow his 'way' (*hodon*) — the path of using spiritual authority for financial gain.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 22-24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The story is from Numbers 22:28-30 — Balaam's donkey saw the angel of the LORD blocking the path when Balaam could not, and God opened the donkey's mouth to speak. The Greek *paraphronian* ('madness, insanity') is a strong word — a prophet so blinded by greed that a donkey had better spiritual perception. The irony is devastating: the wordless animal speaks while the speaking prophet is senseless.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 22:28-30. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Two nature metaphors: *waterless springs (pēgai anydroi)* — promising refreshment but delivering nothing — and *storm-driven mists (homichlai hypo lailapos elaunomenai)* — appearing to promise rain but blown away before delivering. Both images describe people who promise much and deliver nothing. The false teachers' promised 'freedom' (v. 19) is as empty as a dry well.
17. Compare Jude 12-13, which has 'waterless clouds' and 'wandering stars' — the imagery is parallel but not identical.
18. The Greek *hyperonka mataiotētos* ('swelling things of emptiness, bombastic vanities') describes speech that sounds impressive but is empty — inflated rhetoric with no substance. The targets are people *oligōs apopheugontas* ('barely escaping, just recently escaping') — new converts still vulnerable, who have only just begun to separate from their former way of life. The false teachers target the weakest members of the community.
19. The irony is pointed: the false teachers promise *eleutherian* ('freedom, liberty') while being themselves *douloi* ('slaves') of corruption. The principle *hō gar tis hēttētai, toutō dedoulōtai* ('by whatever someone is defeated, to that person they are enslaved') expresses a universal truth — the conqueror becomes the master. Those who are defeated by corruption become its permanent slaves. The promise of freedom through moral license actually produces deeper bondage.
20. The language echoes Jesus's parable of the unclean spirit that returns with seven others (Matthew 12:43-45, 'the last state of that person is worse than the first'). The word *emplagkentes* ('entangled') pictures someone caught in a net or snare — the defilements they once escaped have recaptured them. The knowledge (*epignōsis*) of Christ provided real escape, making the return to corruption inexcusable and the final condition

worse than the original state of ignorance.

21. The 'way of righteousness' (tēn hodon tēs dikaioynēs) and 'the holy commandment' (tēs hagian entolēs) both describe the Christian life as a path with clear moral direction. To know this path and then deliberately abandon it is worse than never having found it at all. The word hypostrepsai ('to turn back, to return') implies a conscious reversal — not gradual drift but deliberate retreat.
22. The first proverb quotes Proverbs 26:11 ('As a dog returns to its vomit, so a fool repeats his folly'). The second about the washed sow is not from the Old Testament but from a wider proverbial tradition (possibly from the Story of Ahikar or common Hellenistic wisdom). Both images are deliberately revolting — the animal's nature reasserts itself despite temporary cleaning. Peter's point is severe: the false teachers' return to corruption reveals that their nature was never truly transformed.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 26:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

3

Summary: *Peter addresses scoffers who mock the promise of Christ's return, arguing that the delay demonstrates God's patience, not his unfaithfulness. He reminds them that God's sense of time differs from humanity's — a thousand years is like a day. The day of the Lord will come unexpectedly like a thief, and the heavens and earth will be dissolved by fire. Yet Peter's hope looks beyond destruction to the promise of new heavens and a new earth where righteousness dwells. He closes by referencing Paul's letters and urging steadfastness.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'new heavens and a new earth in which righteousness dwells' (v. 13) is one of the great eschatological hopes of the New Testament, drawing on Isaiah 65:17 and 66:22 and anticipating Revelation 21:1. The reference to Paul's letters as Scripture (vv. 15-16) is one of the earliest witnesses to the collection of Paul's correspondence and its elevation to scriptural authority. The 'day equals a thousand years' passage (v. 8) draws on Psalm 90:4 and has profoundly shaped Christian thinking about time, eternity, and divine patience.*

Translation Friction: *The cosmological language of dissolution by fire (vv. 10-12) has been interpreted literally (cosmic conflagration), figuratively (radical transformation), and ecologically. We render the Greek without imposing any particular scientific or theological framework. The reference to Paul writing things 'hard to understand' (v. 16) is remarkably candid and has been treasured by exegetes who find Paul difficult.*

Connections: *The 'new heavens and new earth' draws on Isaiah 65:17, 66:22, and anticipates Revelation 21:1. The 'day of the Lord as a thief' echoes Jesus's teaching (Matthew 24:43, Luke 12:39) and Paul (1 Thessalonians 5:2). The Psalm 90:4 quotation (v. 8) connects to the Mosaic prayer tradition. The fire cosmology may connect to Stoic ekpyrosis (cosmic conflagration) concepts familiar to Peter's Hellenistic audience.*

¹This is now, dear friends, the second letter I am writing to you. In both of them I am stirring up your sincere mind by way of reminder, ²So you can become mindful of the words which were spoken prior to by the holy prophets, and of the commandment of us the apostles of the Lord and Saviour. ³Knowing this first, that there will come in the last days scoffers, walking following their own lusts, ⁴Declaring, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the start of creation. ⁵For they deliberately overlook this fact: that the heavens existed long ago, and the earth was formed out of water and through water by the word of God, ⁶Whereby the age that then was, while overflowed with the waters, perished. ⁷But by that same word the present heavens and earth are stored up for fire, being kept until the day of judgment and destruction of ungodly people. ⁸But do not overlook this one fact, dear friends: that with the Lord one day is like a thousand years, and a thousand years like one day. ⁹The Lord is not slow about his promise, as some consider slowness, but is patient toward you, not wanting anyone to perish but everyone to come to repentance. ¹⁰But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, and then the heavens will pass away with a roar, and the heavenly bodies will be dissolved with intense heat, and the earth and the works done on it will be exposed. ¹¹Since all these things are to be dissolved in this way, what sort of people ought you to be in lives of holiness and godliness, ¹²Indeed, looking for and hasting to the coming of the day of God, wherein the sky being on fire will be dissolved, and the elements will melt with fervent heat? ¹³But according to his promise we are waiting for new heavens and a new earth in which righteousness dwells. ¹⁴Therefore,

dear friends, since you are waiting for these things, be diligent to be found by him without spot or blemish, and at peace. ¹⁵And regard the patience of our Lord as salvation, just as our dear brother Paul also wrote to you according to the wisdom given to him, ¹⁶As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things. In which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, to their own destruction. ¹⁷You therefore, dear friends, since you know this in advance, be on your guard so that you are not carried away by the error of lawless people and lose your own stability. ¹⁸But grow in the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be the glory both now and to the day of eternity. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The reference to a 'second letter' (deuteran epistolēn) identifies 1 Peter as the first. The word eilikrinē ('sincere, pure, unmixed') literally means 'judged by sunlight' — tested and found genuine. Peter's purpose is not to introduce new teaching but to activate (diegeirō, 'stir up, rouse from sleep') what they already know.
2. Peter places two sources of authority side by side: the Old Testament prophets and the apostolic witness. The phrase tēs tōn apostolōn hymōn entolēs tou kyriou kai sōtēros ('the commandment of the Lord and Savior through your apostles') establishes a chain of authority: the Lord commands, the apostles transmit, the churches receive. This two-testament consciousness (prophets + apostles) anticipates the later canonical structure of the Christian Bible.
3. The Greek en empaigmonē empaiktai ('with mocking, mockers') is a cognate construction — the mockers mock. Their behavior is driven by desire (kata tas idias epithymias, 'according to their own desires') rather than by truth — the mocking of Christ's return is not intellectual doubt but moral convenience. If there is no coming judgment, there is no moral accountability.
4. The scoffers' argument is what modern philosophy would call uniformitarianism — the assumption that natural processes continue unchanging, therefore no divine intervention (parousia) should be expected. 'The fathers fell asleep' (hoi pateres ekoimēthēsan) refers to the first generation of Christians who died without seeing the return — their death seems to disprove the promise.
4. The rhetorical question 'Where is the promise?' (Pou estin hē epangelia) echoes the Old Testament taunt pattern: 'Where is your God?' (Psalm 42:3, 10; Joel 2:17; Malachi 2:17).
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 42:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 2:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek lanthanei autous touto thelontas ('it escapes them, this being willing' — i.e., 'they willingly ignore') marks their ignorance as deliberate, not innocent. Peter's counter-argument begins with creation: the world was not always as it is. It was formed by God's word (tō tou theou logō) out of and through water — referencing Genesis 1:2-9, where the primordial waters are separated and dry land appears at God's command.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:2-9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek di' hōn ('through which things') refers back to both the water and the word — the same elements that formed the world were used to destroy it in the flood. The uniformitarian argument ('everything continues unchanged') is refuted by history: there was a cataclysmic interruption. The word kataklustheis ('deluged, flooded') is the root of English 'cataclysm.'
7. The parallel is precise: as the ancient world was destroyed by water, the present world is reserved (tēroumenoi, 'being kept, guarded') for destruction by fire. The word tethēsaismenoi ('stored up, treasured') is ironic — the heavens and earth are 'treasured' for fire as one stores up valuables. The concept of cosmic conflagration by fire was also present in Stoic philosophy (ekpyrosis), which may have made Peter's argument accessible to Hellenistic readers.
8. Peter quotes Psalm 90:4 ('A thousand years in your sight are like a day that has just gone by'), but adds the reverse — not only does a millennium seem brief to God, but a single day can contain what seems like a millennium's worth of divine activity. The point is that God operates on a fundamentally different time scale. What seems like a 'delay' from a human perspective may be an instant in divine reckoning.
8. The verb lanthanetō ('let it escape, let it be hidden') echoes verse 5 where the same root described the scoffers' willful ignorance. Peter tells believers: do not make the same mistake of ignoring crucial facts.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalms 90:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. This verse reframes the 'delay' of the parousia: what appears to be divine procrastination is actually divine patience (makrothymēi, 'is long-tempered, is patient'). The purpose of the delay is soteriological — God extends the time before judgment so that more people have opportunity for repentance (metanoian, 'change of mind, turning of life direction').

9. The phrase *mē boulomenos tinas apolesthai* ('not wanting anyone to perish') expresses God's desire for universal salvation, while the history of judgment in chapter 2 shows that this desire does not override human choice. The tension between divine patience and divine justice runs throughout the letter.
10. The thief simile comes from Jesus himself (Matthew 24:43, Luke 12:39) and is used by Paul (1 Thessalonians 5:2). The Greek *rhoizēdon* ('with a rushing sound, with a roar, with a loud noise') appears only here in the New Testament — it describes the sound of an arrow in flight, the hiss of a serpent, or the rush of a flame.
10. The Greek *stoicheia* ('elements, elemental substances, heavenly bodies') could refer to the four classical elements (earth, water, air, fire), the celestial bodies (sun, moon, stars), or the spiritual 'elemental forces' (cf. Galatians 4:3, 9). Given the cosmological context, 'heavenly bodies' is most likely.
10. A major textual variant exists in the final clause: some manuscripts read *katakaesetai* ('will be burned up'), others *heurethēsetai* ('will be found/exposed'). The SBLGNT reads *heurethēsetai*, which is the more difficult reading and likely original — the earth and its works will be 'found out,' 'laid bare,' 'exposed' before God's judgment.
11. Peter draws ethical implications from eschatology: if everything material will be dissolved (*lyomenōn*, 'being loosened, being destroyed'), then clinging to material things is foolish and investing in holy conduct is wise. The rhetorical question *potapous dei* ('what sort must you be') expects the answer: people of extraordinary holiness and devotion. The plural *hagiois anastrophais kai eusebeiais* ('holy conducts and godlinesses') emphasizes that holiness and godliness are expressed in multiple, varied ways.
12. The Greek *speudontas* ('hastening, speeding up') is striking — believers can actually hasten the day of God's coming. How? The traditional interpretation is through repentance, holy living, and proclamation of the gospel (cf. v. 9, where God waits for all to come to repentance). The rabbinical tradition also held that Israel's repentance could hasten the Messiah's coming.
12. The phrase *tēs tou theou hēmeras* ('the day of God') rather than 'the day of the Lord' (v. 10) shifts the focus from judgment to the full arrival of God's purposes.
13. Peter draws on Isaiah 65:17 ('I am about to create new heavens and a new earth') and 66:22. The adjective *kainous* ('new') denotes newness of quality rather than mere chronological succession — not 'another' world but a 'renewed, transformed' world. The verb *katoikei* ('dwells, inhabits permanently') is present tense, vividly placing the reader in the future reality where righteousness is not visiting but residing.
13. This verse is the theological climax of the letter — beyond the dissolution of the present order lies not annihilation but renewal. The fire of judgment is the means to the end of a world where righteousness is the permanent atmosphere.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 65:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The adjectives *aspiloi kai amōmētoi* ('without spot and without blame') echo 1 Peter 1:19, where Christ is described as a lamb 'without defect or blemish' (*amōmou kai aspilou*). Believers are to mirror the character of their redeemer. The phrase *en eirēnē* ('in peace, at peace') describes both internal serenity and relational harmony — the opposite of the agitation produced by false teachers.
15. Peter reframes the delay as salvation: God's patience (*makrothymian*, cf. v. 9) is not weakness but redemptive opportunity. The reference to Paul as 'our dear brother' (*ho agapētos hēmōn adelphos Paulos*) is warm and collegial, despite the confrontation between them recorded in Galatians 2:11. Peter acknowledges Paul's wisdom as divinely given (*kata tēn dotheisan autō sophian*, 'according to the wisdom given to him').
16. The phrase *en pasais epistolais* ('in all the letters') implies Peter knows of a collection of Paul's letters — an early stage of the Pauline corpus taking shape. The candid admission *dysnoēta tina* ('some things hard to understand') is remarkable — an apostle acknowledging that another apostle's writing is difficult. This honesty has comforted generations of readers who struggle with Paul.
16. The phrase *hōs kai tas loipas graphas* ('as they do the other Scriptures') is momentous: it places Paul's letters in the same category as *graphai* ('Scriptures') — one of the earliest attestations of Paul's correspondence being regarded as Scripture alongside the Old Testament.
16. The verb *streblousin* ('twist, distort, torture on the rack') is violent — these false interpreters put Scripture on the rack and twist it until it says what they want.
17. The warning is practical: foreknowledge of these dangers should produce watchfulness (*phylassesthe*, 'guard yourselves'). The Greek *synapachthentes* ('carried away together with, swept along') pictures being caught in a current — the error of the lawless has momentum and can pull the unsuspecting along with it. The word *stērigmou* ('stability, steadfastness, firm standing') connects to the stable foundation language throughout the letter (1:10, 12).
18. The letter closes where it began — with grace (*charis*) and knowledge (*gnōsis*) of Jesus Christ (cf. 1:2). The imperative *auxanete* ('grow, increase') is the final command: not merely maintain but advance. The phrase *eis hēmeran aiōnos* ('to the day of eternity') is unusual — it combines temporal ('day') and eternal ('of eternity') language, pointing to a moment that opens into endless duration.
18. The doxology attributes glory (*doxa*) to Jesus Christ — both now and for eternity — a strong affirmation of his divine status, consistent with the letter's opening identification of Jesus as 'our God and Savior' (1:1).

1 John

1

Summary: *First John opens without a standard epistolary greeting, plunging directly into proclamation: what was from the beginning, heard, seen, and touched — the word of life — is now declared so that the readers may share in fellowship with the Father and the Son. John then states the letter's foundational theological assertion: 'God is light, and in him there is no darkness at all.' The remainder of the chapter tests three claims against this reality: those who say they have fellowship with God but walk in darkness lie; those who walk in the light have fellowship and the blood of Jesus cleanses them; and those who claim to be without sin deceive themselves.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The prologue (vv. 1-4) deliberately echoes the prologue of John's Gospel ('In the beginning was the Word'), but shifts from cosmic theology to sensory testimony — what we have heard, seen, gazed upon, and touched. The declaration 'God is light' (v. 5) is one of the three 'God is' statements in John's writings (alongside 'God is spirit' in John 4:24 and 'God is love' in 1 John 4:8, 16). The interplay of light and darkness throughout the chapter establishes the moral dualism that structures the entire letter.*

Translation Friction: *First John has no named author, sender, recipient, or greeting — it reads more like a theological treatise or homily than a letter. Tradition attributes it to the apostle John, author of the Fourth Gospel. The Greek is notably simple — short sentences, limited vocabulary, repeated patterns — yet the theology is profound. We render the simplicity of the Greek honestly rather than adding complexity.*

Connections: *The prologue echoes John 1:1-14 (the Word who was from the beginning). The light/darkness motif connects to John 1:4-5, 3:19-21, and 8:12. The confession and cleansing language (vv. 7-9) resonates with Psalm 32, Psalm 51, and the Day of Atonement ritual. The 'advocate' (paraklētos) introduced in 2:1 connects to Jesus's promise of the Paraclete in John 14-16.*

¹What was from the beginning, what we have heard, what we have seen with our eyes, what we have gazed upon and our hands have touched — concerning the word of life — ²This life appeared, and we have seen it. We testify to it and proclaim to you the eternal life that was with the Father and was revealed to us. ³That which we possess seen and listened to declare we to you, that you as well may possess fellowship with us — and truly our fellowship is with the Parent, and with his Descendant Jesus Christ. ⁴And we are writing these things so that our joy may be complete. ⁵This is the message we have heard from him and proclaim to you: God is light, and in him there is no darkness at all. ⁶If we say we have fellowship with

him while walking in darkness, we lie and do not practice the truth. ⁷And the blood of jesus christ his son cleanseth us from all sin, but if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another. ⁸And the truth is not in us, if we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves. ⁹And to cleanse us from all unrighteousness, if we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins. ¹⁰And his word is not in us, if we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The fourfold 'what' (ho) creates an accumulating sensory testimony: hearing, seeing, gazing, and touching. The progression moves from the most common sense (hearing) to the most intimate (touching). The word *etheasametha* ('gazed upon, beheld, contemplated') implies sustained, attentive looking — not a glance but prolonged observation. The verb *epsēlaphēsan* ('touched, handled, felt') is the same verb used in Luke 24:39 where the risen Jesus invites the disciples to touch him.
1. The phrase *peri tou logou tēs zōēs* ('concerning the word of life') identifies the subject: this sensory testimony is about the logos — the same 'Word' of John 1:1, now encountered through physical senses. This opening directly counters any docetic denial of Christ's physical reality.
2. The parenthetical structure mirrors John's habit of interrupting his thought to expand on a crucial point. The phrase *hētis ēn pros ton patera* ('which was with the Father') directly echoes John 1:1 ('the Word was with God'). The preposition *pros* ('with, toward') implies face-to-face relationship, not mere proximity.
2. Three verbs describe the apostolic response to seeing the life: *heōrakamen* ('we have seen' — perfect tense, the seeing has permanent effect), *martyroumen* ('we testify' — present tense, the testimony continues), and *apangellomen* ('we proclaim' — present tense, the announcement goes on). Sight produces testimony produces proclamation.
3. The purpose of the proclamation is *koinōnia* ('fellowship, participation, sharing, partnership'). This is not casual social interaction but deep communion — first horizontal (with us) and then vertical (with the Father and with his Son). The fellowship with the apostolic community is simultaneously fellowship with God. There is no private, individualistic spirituality here — relationship with God is mediated through and expressed in community.
3. The phrase *meta tou patros kai meta tou huiou autou Iēsou Christou* places the Father and the Son as equal partners in fellowship — a casual but profound affirmation of the Son's divine status.
4. Some manuscripts read 'your joy' (*hymōn*) rather than 'our joy' (*hēmōn*). The SBLGNT reads *hēmōn* ('our'). The choice matters: 'our joy' means John's joy is completed when the recipients enter into fellowship — the writer's joy depends on the readers' response. This echoes John 15:11 and 16:24, where Jesus speaks of his joy being made complete in his disciples.
5. The word *angelia* ('message, announcement') appears only here and in 3:11 in the New Testament. John claims this message came directly from Christ ('from him' — *ap' autou*). The declaration *ho theos phōs estin* ('God is light') is one of John's three great 'God is' statements (with 'God is spirit' in John 4:24 and 'God is love' in 4:8, 16).
5. The double negation *skotia en autō ouk estin oudemia* ('darkness in him is not — none') is emphatically redundant in Greek, using both *ouk* and *oudemia* to eliminate any possibility of darkness in God. This absolute claim sets up the ethical tests that follow.
6. The first of three conditional tests (vv. 6, 8, 10), each beginning with 'if we say' (*ean eipōmen*). The verb *peripatōmen* ('walk') is a Hebrew idiom (*halak*) for one's manner of life — how a person conducts themselves daily. John's test is simple: claimed fellowship with the God who is light is contradicted by a life characterized by darkness. The phrase *ou poioumen tēn alētheian* ('we do not do the truth') treats truth as something practiced, not merely believed — truth is lived.
7. Walking in the light produces two results: fellowship with one another (*koinōnian met' allēlōn* — note: not fellowship with God, which is assumed, but with each other) and ongoing cleansing from sin. The present tense *katharizei* ('cleanses, keeps cleansing') indicates continuous purification, not a one-time event. The blood of Jesus is not a past transaction only but an ongoing reality for those who walk in the light.
7. The scope is comprehensive: *apo pasēs hamartias* ('from all sin, from every sin') — no sin is beyond the cleansing power of Christ's blood for those who walk in the light.
8. The second 'if we say' test. The claim to sinlessness is not merely mistaken but self-deceptive (*heautous planōmen*, 'we lead ourselves astray'). The Greek *hamartian ouk echomen* ('we do not have sin') likely addresses a proto-Gnostic claim that the enlightened are beyond sin. John counters: to deny the reality of sin is to exile truth from oneself. Note the distinction between 'having sin' (the ongoing reality of sinfulness, v. 8) and 'committing sins' (specific acts, v. 9).
9. The Greek *homologōmen* ('confess, acknowledge openly') literally means 'to say the same thing' — to agree with God's assessment of our sin, to call it what it is. The basis for forgiveness is not human merit but God's character: *pistos* ('faithful' — he keeps his promises) and *dikaios* ('just, righteous' — his forgiveness is consistent with his justice, not a violation of it).
9. The dual result of confession is forgiveness (*aphē*, 'release, cancellation') of sins and cleansing (*katharisē*, 'purification') from all unrighteousness. Forgiveness addresses the guilt; cleansing addresses the stain.

10. The third 'if we say' test escalates the stakes: denying our sin does not merely deceive ourselves (v. 8) but makes God a liar (pseustēn poioumen auton). The perfect tense hēmartēkamen ('have not sinned') claims a sinless history, which contradicts God's own testimony that all have sinned. The consequence — 'his word is not in us' (ho logos autou ouk estin en hēmin) — means total alienation from God's truth. This is the most severe of the three tests.

2

Summary: *First John 2 develops the letter's central themes of fellowship with God, obedience, and love. John begins by describing Jesus as the advocate (parakletos) and atoning sacrifice for the world's sins, then establishes that knowing God is demonstrated by keeping his commandments — particularly the command to love. The chapter introduces the famous triad of worldly temptations (the desire of the flesh, the desire of the eyes, and the pride of life) and warns that the world is passing away. John then addresses the appearance of 'antichrists' — those who have left the community and deny that Jesus is the Christ — and reassures believers that they possess an anointing (chrisma) from the Holy One that guards them in truth.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The term parakletos ('advocate, one called alongside') connects Jesus's ongoing heavenly ministry to the same word used for the Holy Spirit in John's Gospel (John 14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7). John's 'antichrist' language appears here for the first time in the New Testament — not as an apocalyptic beast figure but as a present theological reality: anyone who denies the Father and the Son. The concept of chrisma ('anointing') given to all believers democratizes what was once reserved for kings and priests, echoing the promise of Jeremiah 31:34 that all would know the LORD directly.*

Translation Friction: *The 'new commandment that is also old' (vv. 7-8) presents an apparent paradox that John resolves by locating the newness in its realization through Christ. The identity of the 'antichrists' likely refers to a specific secession from the Johannine community (v. 19: 'they went out from us'), not a future eschatological figure. The three-stage address to 'children,' 'fathers,' and 'young men' (vv. 12-14) may reflect age groups, spiritual maturity levels, or rhetorical variation — the text does not resolve this clearly.*

Connections: *The advocacy of Christ before the Father (v. 1) connects to the high-priestly intercession theme of Hebrews 7:25 and Romans 8:34. The 'new commandment' echoes John 13:34. The 'antichrist' concept draws on Daniel 7-8 and the Olivet Discourse (Mark 13:22). The warning about worldly desires parallels James 4:4 and the temptation narrative of Genesis 3 (the tree was good for food, a delight to the eyes, and desired to make one wise).*

1My little children, I am writing these things to you so that you may not sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an advocate with the Father — Jesus Christ, the righteous one. 2He himself is the atoning sacrifice for our sins, and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world. 3And by this we know that we have come to know him: if we keep his commandments. 4Whoever says "I have come to know him" but does not keep his commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in that person. 5But whoever keeps his word, in that person the love of God has truly been made complete. By this we know that we are in him. 6Whoever claims to remain in him ought to walk in the same way that he walked. 7Beloved, I am not writing a new commandment to you, but an old commandment that you have had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word that you heard. 8Yet I am writing a new commandment to you, which is true in him and in you, because the darkness is passing away and the true light is already shining. 9Whoever says he is in the light yet hates his brother is still in the darkness even now. 10Whoever loves his brother remains in the light, and there is no cause for stumbling in him. 11But whoever hates his brother is in the darkness and walks in the darkness, and does not know where he is going, because the darkness has blinded his eyes. 12I am writing to you, little children, because your sins have been forgiven on account of his name. 13I am writing to you, fathers, because you have known him who is from the beginning. I am writing to you, young men, because you have overcome the evil one. 14I have written to you, children, because you have known the Father. I have written to you, fathers, because you have known him who is from the beginning. I have written to you, young men, because you are strong, and the word of God remains in you, and you have overcome the evil one. 15Do not love the world or the things in the world. If anyone loves the world, the love of the Father is not in that person. 16For everything in the world — the

desire of the flesh, the desire of the eyes, and the arrogance of life — is not from the Father but is from the world. ¹⁷And the world is passing away along with its desires, but whoever does the will of God remains forever. ¹⁸Children, it is the last hour, and just as you heard that the antichrist is coming, even now many antichrists have appeared. From this we know that it is the last hour. ¹⁹They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would have remained with us. But they went out so that it would be made clear that none of them were of us. ²⁰But you have an anointing from the Holy One, and you all have knowledge. ²¹I have not written to you because you do not know the truth, but because you do know it, and because no lie comes from the truth. ²²Who is the liar, if not the one who denies that Jesus is the Christ? This is the antichrist — the one who denies the Father and the Son. ²³Everyone who denies the Son does not have the Father either. Whoever confesses the Son has the Father also. ²⁴As for you, let what you heard from the beginning remain in you. If what you heard from the beginning remains in you, then you also will remain in the Son and in the Father. ²⁵And this is the promise that he himself promised us: eternal life. ²⁶I have written these things to you about those who are trying to deceive you. ²⁷As for you, the anointing that you received from him remains in you, and you have no need for anyone to teach you. But as his anointing teaches you about all things — and is true and is not a lie — just as it has taught you, remain in him. ²⁸And now, little children, remain in him, so that when he appears we may have confidence and not shrink back from him in shame at his coming. ²⁹If you know that he is righteous, you know that everyone who practices righteousness has been born of him.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *teknia* ('little children') is a term of intimate affection, not condescension, reflecting the elder's pastoral relationship with the community. The word *parakletos* ('advocate, helper, one called alongside') is the same term Jesus uses for the Holy Spirit in John 14:16. Here it describes Christ's ongoing intercessory role before the Father. The adjective *dikaion* ('righteous') qualifies Christ as the perfect advocate — his righteousness is the ground of his intercession.
2. The Greek *hilasmos* ('atoning sacrifice, propitiation, expiation') carries both the sense of turning away wrath (propitiation) and covering sin (expiation). The word echoes the Hebrew *kapporet* (mercy seat) and the Day of Atonement ritual of Leviticus 16. The scope — 'the whole world' (*holou tou kosmou*) — extends the atonement beyond the believing community, a remarkable universalizing statement.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Leviticus 16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
4. John uses two different tenses of *ginoskein* ('to know'): the present *ginoskomen* ('we know' — ongoing awareness) and the perfect *egnokamen* ('we have come to know' — completed action with present results). True knowledge of God is not abstract or mystical but is verified by obedience. This epistemological test recurs throughout the letter.
5. John's blunt designation — *pseustes* ('liar') — is characteristic of the letter's stark moral categories. The claim to know God while disobeying him is not merely mistaken but constitutes a lie. 'The truth is not in him' treats truth as an indwelling reality, not merely a correct proposition.
6. The phrase 'the love of God' (*he agape tou theou*) is ambiguous in Greek — it could mean God's love for us, our love for God, or the kind of love that comes from God. The context suggests all three dimensions. The verb *teteleiōtai* ('has been made complete, perfected') is a perfect passive, indicating a divine work brought to completion in the obedient believer.
7. The Greek *peripatein* ('to walk') is the standard metaphor for conducting one's life, corresponding to the Hebrew *halak*. 'As he walked' (*kathōs ekeinos periepatēsen*) refers to Jesus's earthly life as the model for Christian conduct. The verb *opheilei* ('ought, is obligated') expresses moral necessity, not mere suggestion.
8. The SBLGNT reads *agapetoi* ('beloved') rather than the KJV's 'brethren.' The 'old commandment from the beginning' likely refers to the love command that the community received when they first heard the gospel (cf. John 13:34). The paradox of old and new is resolved in the next verse.
9. The commandment is both old (rooted in the Torah's love command, Leviticus 19:18) and new (realized in Christ and the believing community). The present tense *paragetai* ('is passing away') and *phainei* ('is shining') indicate an eschatological transition already underway — the new age has begun but the old has not yet fully departed. This 'already but not yet' tension characterizes Johannine eschatology.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
11. The test is relational: hatred of a fellow believer (*adelphos*, 'brother') invalidates any claim to spiritual enlightenment. The phrase *heōs arti* ('even now, until this moment') suggests someone who has never actually moved from darkness to light, despite their claim.

10. The Greek skandalon ('cause of stumbling, trap, offense') could mean either that the loving person does not stumble, or that the loving person does not cause others to stumble. Both senses may be intended — love both secures the believer and removes obstacles for others.
11. The threefold description — being in darkness, walking in darkness, not knowing one's direction — forms a devastating portrait of spiritual blindness. The verb etyflōsen ('has blinded') is aorist, suggesting a decisive event: hatred did not merely dim but extinguished sight. The imagery echoes John 12:35.
12. The address teknia ('little children') encompasses the whole community. The perfect passive apheōntai ('have been forgiven') indicates a completed and enduring reality. Forgiveness comes 'on account of his name' — that is, through the person and work of Christ, not through the community's merit.
13. The 'fathers' (pateres) are characterized by deep, mature knowledge of Christ, 'him who is from the beginning.' The 'young men' (neaniskoi) are characterized by victory over 'the evil one' (ton poneron) — likely Satan. The perfect tenses (egnōkate, nenikēkate) indicate accomplished realities that continue in force.
14. The shift from graphō ('I am writing') to egrapsa ('I have written') may indicate a second pass through the same groups, or an epistolary aorist referring to the letter itself. The SBLGNT reads paidia ('children') for the first address here, a slightly different word than teknia in v. 12 but with similar meaning. The young men's strength is grounded in two realities: the indwelling word of God and their victory over the evil one.
15. The Greek kosmos ('world') here does not mean the created order (which God loves, John 3:16) but the world-system organized in opposition to God — the values, priorities, and allegiances that compete with devotion to the Father. The prohibition is a present imperative with mē, forbidding an ongoing disposition.
16. The triad of worldly temptations has often been compared to the threefold temptation in Genesis 3:6 (good for food, a delight to the eyes, desired to make one wise) and the temptation of Jesus (Matthew 4:1-11). The Greek epithymia ('desire, craving') is morally neutral in itself but here denotes disordered desire directed at flesh-gratification and visual acquisitiveness. The word alazoneia ('arrogance, boastfulness, pretension') refers to the vain confidence that comes from material security (bios here meaning 'livelihood, possessions' rather than mere 'life').
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 3:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The present tense parageitai ('is passing away') conveys the world's transience as an ongoing reality, not merely a future event. The contrast between the passing world and the one who 'remains forever' (menei eis ton aiōna) echoes the Johannine theme of abiding. Doing the will of God is not legalistic compliance but alignment with God's eternal purposes.
18. The phrase eschatē hōra ('last hour') without the article suggests a qualitative description of the present era rather than a precise chronological claim. John's innovation is to pluralize 'antichrist' (antichristoi polloi) — the expected single eschatological opponent has multiplied into many present figures. The word antichristos appears only in the Johannine Epistles (here, 2:22, 4:3, and 2 John 7) in the entire New Testament.
19. This verse reveals the concrete historical situation behind the letter: a group has seceded from the community. John interprets their departure theologically — it was not a loss but a revealing. The contrary-to-fact conditional (ei ... ēsan ... memeneikeisan an) asserts that genuine belonging would have produced perseverance. Their leaving exposed what was always true.
20. The Greek chrisma ('anointing') is etymologically related to Christos ('anointed one'). In the Old Testament, anointing was reserved for kings, priests, and occasionally prophets. John declares that all believers possess this anointing. The SBLGNT reading oidate pantes ('you all know') rather than oidate panta ('you know all things') emphasizes that every believer — not just leaders — has been given knowledge through the Spirit.
21. John writes not to inform but to confirm — the community already possesses the truth through their anointing. The final clause establishes an absolute separation between truth and falsehood that will undergird his identification of the secessionists' teaching as lies.
22. The definite article (ho pseustēs, 'the liar') elevates this beyond a general statement — this is the liar par excellence. The specific denial — that Jesus is the Christ — likely reflects a proto-Gnostic or Cerinthian position that separated the human Jesus from the divine Christ. John insists that denying the Son necessarily entails denying the Father, because the two are inseparable in the Johannine theological framework.
23. The verb homologeōn ('confessing, acknowledging') is the counterpart to arnoumenos ('denying'). The relationship with the Father is mediated entirely through the Son — there is no access to the Father apart from the Son. This echoes Jesus's words in John 14:6-9. Some manuscripts omit the second clause; the SBLGNT includes it.
24. The emphatic hymeis ('you') at the beginning contrasts the faithful community with the secessionists. 'From the beginning' (ap' archēs) refers to the original apostolic message they received. The logic is reciprocal: if the message remains in them, they remain in the Son and the Father. Abiding in the truth and abiding in God are inseparable.
25. The promise (epangelia) of eternal life (tēn zōēn tēn aiōnion) is the content of remaining in the Father and Son. In Johannine theology, eternal life is not merely future but a present reality that begins with knowing God (John 17:3). The emphatic autos ('he himself') likely refers to Christ.
26. The participle planōntōn ('those deceiving, leading astray') is present tense, indicating ongoing activity. The secessionists are not merely gone — they are actively attempting to draw the remaining community after them. The verb planein ('to lead astray, deceive') is the root of the English 'planet' (a wandering star) and captures the sense of being led off course.

27. The statement that believers 'have no need for anyone to teach you' does not reject all teaching (John's letter is itself teaching) but asserts that the community possesses an internal criterion — the Spirit's anointing — by which to evaluate external claims. This echoes Jeremiah 31:34 ('they shall all know me') and Jesus's promise of the Spirit of truth in John 16:13. The final *menete* ('remain') is an imperative: continue abiding in him.
27. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 31:34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
28. The term *parrēsian* ('confidence, boldness, freedom of speech') was a civic virtue in Greek culture — the right to speak openly before authority. Here it describes the believer's posture before Christ at his return. The word *parousia* ('coming, presence, arrival') is the standard early Christian term for the second coming of Christ. John shifts to the first person plural ('we may have') — he includes himself among those who will face this moment.
29. The verb *gegennētai* ('has been born') is a perfect passive, indicating a divine act with enduring consequences — being born of God is not a human achievement but a divine begetting. The logic runs from God's character to the believer's conduct: because he is righteous, those born of him will practice righteousness. This sets up the major theme of chapter 3.

3

Summary: *First John 3 opens with an astonished declaration of God's love in calling believers his children, then develops the incompatibility of habitual sin with divine parentage. John draws a sharp line between the children of God and the children of the devil, using Cain as the paradigmatic example of hatred. The central ethical demand is love expressed in concrete action — not merely in words but in laying down one's life for others, as Christ did. The chapter closes with the assurance that God is greater than our self-condemning hearts, and that obedience and faith produce confidence before God and the indwelling of the Spirit.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The phrase 'what we will be has not yet appeared' (v. 2) is one of the New Testament's most striking admissions of eschatological incompleteness — the full transformation of believers awaits Christ's return. The definition of sin as *anomia* ('lawlessness,' v. 4) is theologically significant: sin is not merely moral failure but rebellion against God's ordering of reality. The Cain reference (v. 12) is the only New Testament use of Cain outside Hebrews 11:4 and Jude 11, and John uniquely attributes his murder to spiritual allegiance to the evil one.*

Translation Friction: *Verse 6 ('no one who remains in him keeps on sinning') and verse 9 ('no one born of God practices sin') have generated extensive debate. The present tenses in Greek indicate habitual, characteristic action — John is describing a pattern of life, not claiming sinless perfection (which would contradict 1:8-10 and 2:1). The tension between the ideal stated here and the realistic acknowledgment of sin earlier in the letter is deliberate, reflecting the 'already but not yet' of Christian existence.*

Connections: *The children-of-God theme connects to John 1:12-13 and Romans 8:14-17. The Cain narrative draws from Genesis 4. The command to love one another echoes John 13:34-35. The laying-down-of-life language directly mirrors John 10:11, 15 and 15:13. The confidence-before-God theme anticipates the boldness language of Hebrews 4:16 and 10:19-22.*

¹See what kind of love the Father has given to us, that we should be called children of God — and so we are! The reason the world does not know us is that it did not know him. ²Beloved, we are now children of God, and what we will be has not yet been revealed. We know that when he appears, we will be like him, because we will see him as he is. ³And everyone who has this hope fixed on him purifies himself, just as he is pure. ⁴Everyone who practices sin also practices lawlessness, and sin is lawlessness. ⁵And you know that he appeared in order to take away sins, and in him there is no sin. ⁶No one who remains in him keeps on sinning. No one who keeps on sinning has seen him or known him. ⁷Little children, let no one deceive you. Whoever practices righteousness is righteous, just as he is righteous. ⁸Whoever practices sin is of the devil, because the devil has been sinning from the beginning. The Son of God appeared for this purpose: to destroy the works of the devil. ⁹No one who has been born of God practices sin, because God's seed remains in that person, and he cannot keep on sinning, because he has been born of God. ¹⁰By this it is evident who are the children of God and who are the children of the devil: whoever does not practice righteousness is not of God, nor is the one who does not love his brother. ¹¹That we should love one another, and for this was the message that you heard from the beginning. ¹²We should not be like Cain, who was of the evil one and murdered his brother. And why did he murder him? Because his own works were evil, and his brother's were

righteous. ¹³Do not be surprised, brothers, if the world hates you. ¹⁴We know that we have passed out of death into life, because we love the brothers. Whoever does not love remains in death. ¹⁵Everyone who hates his brother is a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life remaining in him. ¹⁶By this we have come to know love: that he laid down his life for us. And we ought to lay down our lives for the brothers. ¹⁷But if anyone has the world's possessions and sees his brother in need, yet closes his heart against him, how does the love of God remain in that person? ¹⁸Little children, let us not love in word or in speech, but in action and in truth. ¹⁹By this we will know that we are of the truth, and we will reassure our hearts before him, ²⁰Because if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knows all things. ²¹Beloved, if our heart does not condemn us, we have confidence before God, ²²Whatsoever we ask, we accept of him, on account of the fact that we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight. ²³And this is his commandment: that we believe in the name of his Son Jesus Christ and love one another, just as he commanded us. ²⁴Whoever keeps his commandments remains in God, and God in that person. And by this we know that he remains in us: by the Spirit that he has given us.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek *potapēn* ('what kind of, what manner of') expresses astonishment — this is not merely great love but a foreign, unexpected quality of love. The phrase *kai esmen* ('and we are') is a parenthetical exclamation affirming that the title 'children of God' is not honorific but real. We render *tekna* ('children') rather than the KJV's 'sons' because the Greek *tekna* is gender-inclusive and emphasizes birth-relationship, while *huiioi* ('sons') would emphasize legal status.
2. The tension between 'now' (*nyn*) and 'not yet' (*oupō*) captures the eschatological position of believers — genuine identity now, full transformation later. The promise 'we will be like him' (*homoioi autō esometha*) is stunning in its scope and deliberately left undefined. The causal clause 'because we will see him as he is' suggests that the vision of Christ itself will be transformative — seeing and becoming are linked.
3. The verb *hagnizei* ('purifies') is the same word used for ceremonial purification in the Septuagint (e.g., Numbers 19). The eschatological hope of transformation produces present ethical effort. The standard is nothing less than Christ's own purity (*hagnos*).
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek *anomia* ('lawlessness') is not merely 'breaking a rule' but rebellion against God's ordering of reality. The equation 'sin is lawlessness' (*hē hamartia estin hē anomia*) defines sin in its deepest sense — not as individual infractions but as a fundamental posture of defiance against divine authority. The present participle *poiōn* ('practicing, doing') indicates habitual action.
5. The verb *ephanerōthē* ('was manifested, appeared') refers to Christ's incarnation. The verb *arē* ('take away, remove, bear') echoes John the Baptist's declaration in John 1:29 ('the Lamb of God who takes away the sin of the world'). Christ's sinlessness is the ground of his ability to remove sin — only one without sin can bear and remove the sin of others.
6. The present tenses (*menōn*, *hamartanei*, *hamartanōn*) are crucial: John is describing habitual, ongoing action. 'No one who remains in him keeps on sinning' does not assert sinless perfection but rather that abiding in Christ and a settled pattern of sin are incompatible. This must be read alongside 1:8-2:2, where John acknowledges that believers do sin and need an advocate. The distinction is between occasional failure and characteristic lifestyle.
7. The warning against deception (*mēdeis planatō*) suggests the secessionists may have taught that conduct does not reflect spiritual status. John insists on the opposite: practice reveals identity. The standard of comparison is Christ's own righteousness (*kathōs ekeinos dikaios estin*).
8. The phrase *ek tou diabolou* ('of the devil, from the devil') indicates origin and allegiance, just as 'born of God' indicates divine origin. The devil's sinning 'from the beginning' (*ap' archēs*) echoes the serpent narrative of Genesis 3 and Jesus's words in John 8:44. The verb *lysē* ('destroy, undo, dissolve') means literally 'to loose' — Christ unties, dismantles, and dissolves the devil's works.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The word *sperma* ('seed') has been interpreted as God's word, the Holy Spirit, or the divine nature implanted in the believer. In context, it likely refers to the divine life-principle communicated through new birth. 'Cannot sin' (*ou dynatai hamartanein*) does not mean absolute impossibility but moral incompatibility — the new nature resists and is fundamentally opposed to habitual sin. The present infinitive *hamartanein* describes an ongoing pattern, not a single act.
10. John establishes two tests by which spiritual parentage is revealed: practicing righteousness and loving fellow believers. The phrase 'children of the devil' (*ta tekna tou diabolou*) is stark — just as there are children of God by divine birth, there are children of the devil by spiritual allegiance. This dualistic framework serves pastoral urgency, not philosophical speculation.
11. The word *angelia* ('message') appears only here and in 1:5 in the New Testament. In 1:5 the message was 'God is light'; here it is the command of mutual love. These two messages — God's nature and the resulting ethical obligation — frame the letter's argument. 'From the beginning' (*ap' archēs*)

again refers to the original proclamation of the gospel.

12. The verb *esphaxen* ('slaughtered, butchered') is a violent word often used for slaying sacrificial animals (it appears in Revelation for the slaughter of the Lamb, 5:6). John attributes Cain's act to his spiritual origin — he 'was of the evil one' (*ek tou ponērou ēn*). The rhetorical question and answer reveal that hatred of righteousness motivates murder. This interprets Genesis 4 through a spiritual-warfare lens.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The imperative *mē thaumazete* ('do not be surprised, stop marveling') echoes Jesus's words in John 15:18-19. The world's hatred of believers follows the same pattern as Cain's hatred of Abel — the righteous provoke hostility simply by being righteous. The conditional *ei* ('if') with the indicative *misei* suggests this is a real condition: the world does hate them.
14. The perfect *metabebēkamen* ('we have passed') describes a completed transition with enduring results — believers have already crossed from the realm of death into the realm of life. Love for fellow believers is not the cause of this transition but the evidence of it. The stark alternative — remaining in death — is the default human condition apart from divine intervention.
15. The Greek *anthrōpoktonos* ('murderer,' literally 'man-killer') is the same word used of the devil in John 8:44. John equates hatred with murder in its spiritual essence — the same move Jesus makes in the Sermon on the Mount (Matthew 5:21-22). The logic is relentless: hatred = murder, and no murderer possesses eternal life.
16. The phrase *tēn psychēn autou ethēken* ('he laid down his life') directly echoes Jesus's words in John 10:11, 15 and 15:13. The Greek *psychē* means 'life, soul, self.' Love is defined not by sentiment but by sacrifice. The obligation (*opheilomen*, 'we ought') extends the pattern of Christ's self-giving to all believers — this is the highest expression of the love command.
17. The Greek *splanchna* ('inner organs, bowels, heart') was the seat of compassion in ancient thought, corresponding roughly to the modern 'heart.' The verb *kleisē* ('shuts, closes') is vivid — it pictures someone deliberately closing off the natural response of compassion. John moves from the grand principle (laying down one's life) to the mundane test (sharing material resources), suggesting that daily generosity is the realistic measure of love.
18. The contrast between *logō* and *glōssē* ('word' and 'tongue/speech') on one side, and *ergō* and *alētheia* ('deed/action' and 'truth') on the other, establishes that genuine love is demonstrated through concrete acts. 'In truth' (*en alētheia*) adds the dimension of sincerity — the actions must be genuine, not performative.
19. The verb *peisomen* ('we will persuade, reassure, set at rest') indicates the active process of calming a troubled conscience. Loving in deed and truth provides the believer with objective evidence of genuine faith, which in turn produces inner assurance before God.
20. This is one of the most pastorally significant verses in the letter. The Greek *kataginōskē* ('condemns, accuses') describes the inner voice of self-accusation. The response is not to dismiss the heart's verdict but to appeal beyond it to God, who 'is greater' — his knowledge of our love and obedience is more comprehensive and more gracious than our own self-assessment. The verse offers comfort to the scrupulous, not license to the careless.
21. The word *parrēsian* ('confidence, boldness, freedom of speech') reappears from 2:28. A clear conscience — not from self-deception but from genuine love in action — produces bold access to God. This confidence is not self-reliance but the fruit of a life aligned with God's commands.
22. The connection between obedience and answered prayer echoes John 15:7 ('if you remain in me and my words remain in you, ask whatever you wish'). The logic is not transactional — obedience does not earn answers — but relational: the obedient life is aligned with God's will, so its requests are naturally in harmony with his purposes.
23. John distills all of God's commands into two inseparable requirements: faith in Christ and mutual love. The singular 'commandment' (*entolē*) encompasses both, suggesting they cannot be separated — faith without love, or love without faith, is incomplete. The aorist *pisteusōmen* ('believe') may point to the decisive act of faith, while the present *agapōmen* ('love') indicates ongoing practice.
24. The mutual indwelling formula — 'remains in God, and God in that person' — is the hallmark of Johannine theology (cf. John 15:4-5). The Spirit is introduced for the first time in the letter as the means by which believers know God's presence. This sets up the discussion of testing the spirits in chapter 4. The verb *edōken* ('has given') is aorist, pointing to the definitive gift of the Spirit.

4

Summary: *First John 4 contains the letter's theological and emotional climax. It opens with a call to test the spirits, providing a christological criterion: every spirit that confesses Jesus Christ as having come in the flesh is from God. John then develops the theme that God is love — not merely that God loves, but that love defines his very nature. God's love is demonstrated in sending his Son as an atoning sacrifice, and this love calls forth a response of mutual love among believers. The chapter reaches its apex in the declaration that perfect love drives out fear, and closes with the warning that anyone who claims to love God while hating a brother is a liar.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The twin declarations 'God is love' (vv. 8, 16) are among the most quoted sentences in the Bible and represent the deepest theological distillation in the Johannine writings. Notably, John does not say 'love is God' — the statement is not reversible. God defines love, not the reverse. The christological test (vv. 2-3) addresses what appears to be an early docetic heresy that denied the reality of Jesus's physical incarnation. The phrase 'perfect love drives out fear' (v. 18) is psychologically profound and theologically revolutionary, redefining the human relationship to divine judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the false prophets and the 'spirit of the antichrist' (vv. 1-3) points to the same secession described in 2:19. The confession 'Jesus Christ has come in the flesh' (v. 2) targets a specific denial — likely a proto-docetic or Cerinthian teaching that the divine Christ merely appeared to be human. The phrase 'he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world' (v. 4) has often been decontextualized; in its original setting, it refers to discernment of true and false teaching, not a general promise of victory.*

Connections: *The testing of spirits connects to Deuteronomy 13:1-5 and 1 Corinthians 12:3. The incarnation confession echoes John 1:14 ('the Word became flesh'). The 'God is love' declarations connect to the broader biblical narrative of God's chesed (steadfast love) and its ultimate expression in the cross. The fear/love dynamic resonates with Romans 8:15 ('you did not receive a spirit of slavery to fall back into fear'). The 'no one has ever seen God' statement (v. 12) echoes John 1:18.*

¹Beloved, do not believe every spirit, but test the spirits to see whether they are from God, because many false prophets have gone out into the world. ²By this you know the Spirit of God: every spirit that confesses that Jesus Christ has come in the flesh is from God, ³Every spirit that confesseth not that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is not of God — and this is that spirit of antichrist, whereof you have heard that it should come. And even now already is it in the world. ⁴You are from God, little children, and have overcome them, because he who is in you is greater than he who is in the world. ⁵They are from the world; therefore they speak from the world, and the world listens to them. ⁶We are from God. Whoever knows God listens to us; whoever is not from God does not listen to us. By this we know the Spirit of truth and the spirit of deception. ⁷Beloved, let us love one another, because love is from God, and everyone who loves has been born of God and knows God. ⁸Whoever does not love does not know God, because God is love. ⁹In this the love of God was revealed among us: that God sent his only Son into the world so that we might live through him. ¹⁰In this is love: not that we loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as an atoning sacrifice for our sins. ¹¹Beloved, if God loved us in this way, we also ought to love one another. ¹²No one has ever seen God. If we love one another, God remains in us, and his love has been made complete in us. ¹³By this we know that we remain in him and he in us: because he has given us of his Spirit. ¹⁴And we have seen and testify that the Father has sent the Son as Savior of the world. ¹⁵Whoever confesses that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in that person and that person in God. ¹⁶And we have come to know and have believed the love that God has for us. God is love, and whoever remains in love remains in God, and God remains in that person. ¹⁷In this, love has been made complete among us, so that we may have confidence on the day of judgment, because as he is, so also are we in this world. ¹⁸There is no fear in love, but perfect love drives out fear, because fear has to do with punishment. The one who fears has not been made complete in love. ¹⁹Indeed, we love him, because he first loved us. ²⁰If anyone says, "I love God," and yet hates his brother, he is a liar. For the one who does not love his brother, whom he has seen, cannot love God, whom he has not seen. ²¹And this commandment we have from him: that whoever loves God must also love his brother.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The verb dokimazete ('test, examine, prove') was used for testing metals and coins for genuineness. John does not counsel gullibility or blanket suspicion but careful discernment. The connection between 'spirits' and 'false prophets' indicates that John views human teaching as inspired by spiritual powers — behind every prophet stands a spirit, and not all spirits are from God.
2. The confession Iēsoun Christon en sarki elēlythota ('Jesus Christ having come in the flesh') is the christological touchstone. The perfect participle elēlythota ('having come') indicates a completed action with ongoing results — Christ came in the flesh and remains incarnate. This targets any teaching that would deny the reality of the incarnation. The confession is not merely intellectual assent but a public declaration (homologeī).
3. The SBLGNT reads simply 'does not confess Jesus' (mē homologeī ton Iēsoun) rather than the fuller reading in some manuscripts. The brevity may be significant — any diminishment of Jesus, not merely the specific denial of his incarnation, fails the test. The 'spirit of the antichrist' is identified not as a future apocalyptic figure but as a present spiritual reality already operating through false teachers.
4. The perfect nenikēkate ('you have overcome') declares victory as an accomplished fact. The 'them' (autous) refers to the false prophets and the spirits behind them. The ground of victory is not the believers' own strength but the indwelling presence of God (through the Spirit, cf. 3:24). 'He who is in the world' refers to the devil (cf. 5:19).
5. The false teachers' popularity is not a mark of truth but of worldly origin. Their message resonates with the world because it comes from the world. John establishes a diagnostic principle: the audience a message attracts reveals its source. This is not anti-intellectualism but a theological observation about spiritual affinity.
6. The 'we' (hēmeis) likely refers to the apostolic circle — those who bear the original eyewitness testimony (cf. 1:1-3). Response to apostolic teaching becomes a second test of spiritual authenticity. The contrast between 'the Spirit of truth' (to pneuma tēs alētheias, cf. John 14:17, 15:26, 16:13) and 'the spirit of deception' (to pneuma tēs planēs) frames the situation in stark dualistic terms.
7. This verse begins the letter's theological crescendo. Love is traced to its source: it originates in God (ek tou theou). The one who loves demonstrates two realities — divine birth (gegennētai, perfect passive) and knowledge of God (ginōskei, present active). Love is both the evidence and the fruit of the divine relationship.
8. The declaration ho theos agapē estin ('God is love') is one of the most profound theological statements in Scripture. The predicate is without an article, making it qualitative — love characterizes God's very essence. Critically, the statement is not reversible: 'love is God' would be pantheistic. Rather, all genuine love has its source and definition in God's own nature. The aorist ouk egnō ('did not know') suggests the person never truly knew God, not that they lost knowledge.
9. The Greek monogenē ('only, unique, one-of-a-kind') is rendered 'only Son' rather than 'only begotten' because the word emphasizes uniqueness rather than the manner of origin. The perfect apostalken ('has sent') indicates a completed mission with enduring effects. The purpose — 'that we might live' (hina zēsōmen) — defines God's love as life-giving. The verse parallels John 3:16 in its structure and theology.
10. The priority of God's love is emphatic: love originates with God, not with humanity. Human love for God is always a response, never the initiative. The word hilasmon ('atoning sacrifice') reappears from 2:2, connecting God's love directly to the cross. The aorist ēgapēsen ('he loved') and aposteilen ('he sent') point to the historical acts of the incarnation and crucifixion as the definitive demonstration of divine love.
11. The conditional ei ('if') with the indicative is a first-class condition, assuming the reality of the premise: since God has loved us this way. The obligation (opheilomen, 'we ought') flows from the indicative of God's action — the imperative of love is grounded in the prior reality of having been loved. John does not say 'we ought to love God back' but 'we ought to love one another' — divine love redirects outward.
12. The opening statement — 'no one has ever seen God' (theon oudeis pōpote tetheatai) — echoes John 1:18. The invisible God becomes visible, as it were, through the mutual love of his people. The perfect participle teteleiōmenē ('made complete, perfected') indicates that God's love reaches its intended goal and full expression when it flows through believers to one another.
13. The phrase ek tou pneumatōs autou ('of his Spirit') uses the partitive ek, suggesting a share in the Spirit rather than the Spirit in totality — though the theological distinction should not be pressed too far. The Spirit is the inner witness to the mutual indwelling of God and believer, confirming what love makes visible.
14. The 'we' (hēmeis) is emphatic and likely refers to the apostolic eyewitness circle (cf. 1:1-3). The perfect tetheametha ('we have seen') and apostalken ('has sent') indicate enduring realities rooted in historical events. The title sōtēra tou kosmou ('Savior of the world') appears elsewhere only in John 4:42, spoken by the Samaritans — a universalizing title that extends salvation beyond Israel.
15. The confession 'Jesus is the Son of God' is the christological complement to v. 2's confession of the incarnation. Together they affirm both the divinity and the true humanity of Jesus. The result of confession is mutual indwelling — the same reciprocal abiding that characterizes the Father-Son relationship (John 14:10-11) is extended to believers.
16. The second declaration 'God is love' (ho theos agapē estin) now carries the full weight of the chapter's argument. Knowing and believing God's love are paired as twin aspects of a single response — experiential knowledge and volitional trust. The mutual indwelling formula reaches its fullest expression: to remain in love is to remain in God, and to remain in God is to have God remain in you.

17. Love's completion (teteleiōtai) produces confidence (parrēsian) before the final judgment. The remarkable claim 'as he is, so also are we in this world' (kathōs ekeinos estin kai hēmeis esmen) asserts that believers already share Christ's standing before the Father — not because of their own merit but because they abide in love. This is among the most daring statements in the letter.
18. The Greek exō ballei ('casts out, drives out') is forceful — love does not merely soothe fear but expels it entirely. The word kolasin ('punishment') connects fear to the expectation of divine judgment. Perfect love (teleia agapē) — love that has reached its intended goal — eliminates the dread of condemnation. John does not deny the reality of judgment but declares that those who abide in love need not fear it.
19. The SBLGNT omits the object ('him') found in some manuscripts, making the statement broader: we love — in general, in every direction — because God's prior love enables and motivates all of our loving. The adverb prōtos ('first') establishes the absolute priority of divine initiative. Human love is always derivative and responsive.
20. The argument moves from the lesser to the greater: if you cannot love a visible brother, you certainly cannot love the invisible God. The word pseustēs ('liar') reappears (cf. 1:10, 2:4, 2:22), maintaining John's unsparing moral vocabulary. The test is devastatingly practical — love for God is measured by love for the people around you.
21. The chapter closes by fusing love for God and love for one's brother into a single, indivisible commandment. The two cannot be separated — the vertical and horizontal dimensions of love are one. The source of the command (ap' autou, 'from him') could refer to God or to Christ; the ambiguity may be intentional, since both the Father and the Son have issued this command (cf. John 13:34, 15:12, 17).

5

Summary: *First John 5 brings the letter to its conclusion by weaving together its major themes: faith, love, obedience, and assurance. John declares that faith in Jesus as the Son of God overcomes the world, and identifies three witnesses — the Spirit, the water, and the blood — that testify to the truth of Christ. The chapter reaches its crescendo with the assurance of eternal life for those who believe in the Son. John addresses the topic of sin leading to death versus sin not leading to death, and closes with three affirmations introduced by 'we know,' providing the community with certainties to anchor their faith.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The threefold witness of Spirit, water, and blood (vv. 7-8) is one of the most debated passages in the Johannine writings. The water likely refers to Jesus's baptism, the blood to his crucifixion, and the Spirit to ongoing divine testimony — together affirming that Jesus was the Christ from baptism through death, not merely at one point. The Comma Johanneum (the Trinitarian expansion found in some late manuscripts at vv. 7-8) is not present in the earliest Greek manuscripts and is not part of the SBLGNT text. The distinction between sin 'leading to death' and sin 'not leading to death' (vv. 16-17) has generated extensive discussion throughout church history.*

Translation Friction: *The Comma Johanneum (a Trinitarian gloss reading 'the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit, and these three are one') found in later Latin manuscripts and some late Greek manuscripts is absent from all early Greek manuscripts, the earliest Latin manuscripts, and the earliest church fathers. It is not included in the SBLGNT and is accordingly not included in our rendering. The identity of the 'sin leading to death' (v. 16) remains disputed: possibilities include apostasy, the denial of Christ that characterizes the secessionists, blasphemy against the Holy Spirit, or mortal sin in a later Catholic sense. In context, the most natural referent is the christological denial of the secessionists.*

Connections: *The overcoming-the-world language (vv. 4-5) echoes Jesus's declaration in John 16:33. The witness of water and blood connects to John 19:34 (water and blood flowing from Jesus's pierced side). The assurance of eternal life (v. 13) parallels the purpose statement of John's Gospel (John 20:31). The prayer-confidence passage (vv. 14-15) develops the teaching of 3:21-22. The closing warning about idols (v. 21) echoes the Old Testament prophetic tradition.*

1Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ has been born of God, and everyone who loves the Father loves the one who has been born of him. 2By this we know that we love the children of God: when we love God and carry out his commandments. 3For this is the love of God: that we keep his commandments. And his commandments are not burdensome, 4For whatsoever is brought into the world of God overcometh the age — and this is the victory that overcometh the age, even our faith. 5Who is the one who overcomes the world except the one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God? 6

This is the one who came through water and blood — Jesus Christ. He came not by water only, but by water and by blood. And the Spirit is the one who testifies, because the Spirit is the truth. ⁷For there are three that testify: ⁸Three things testify on earth: the Spirit, the water, and the blood — and these three are in agreement. ⁹If we accept the testimony of humans, the testimony of God is greater, because this is the testimony of God: that he has testified concerning his Son. ¹⁰Whoever believes in the Son of God has the testimony within himself. Whoever does not believe God has made him a liar, because he has not believed in the testimony that God has given concerning his Son. ¹¹And this is the testimony: that God gave us eternal life, and this life is in his Son. ¹²Whoever has the Son has life; whoever does not have the Son of God does not have life. ¹³I have written these things to you who believe in the name of the Son of God, so that you may know that you have eternal life. ¹⁴And this is the confidence that we have before him: that if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us. ¹⁵And if we know that he hears us in whatever we ask, we know that we have the requests that we have asked of him. ¹⁶If anyone sees his brother committing a sin that does not lead to death, he should ask, and God will give him life — to those who commit sins not leading to death. There is sin that leads to death; I am not saying he should pray about that. ¹⁷All unrighteousness is sin, and there is sin that does not lead to death. ¹⁸We know that everyone who has been born of God does not keep on sinning, but the one who was born of God protects him, and the evil one does not touch him. ¹⁹We know that we are from God, and the whole world lies in the power of the evil one. ²⁰And we know that the Son of God has come and has given us understanding so that we may know the one who is true. And we are in the one who is true — in his Son Jesus Christ. This one is the true God and eternal life. ²¹Little children, guard yourselves from idols.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The perfect gegennētai ('has been born') indicates that divine birth precedes and enables faith — belief is the evidence, not the cause, of being born of God. The logic of the second clause is familial: to love the parent is necessarily to love the parent's children. This links faith (believing Jesus is the Christ) with love (for God and for fellow believers) as inseparable marks of divine birth.
2. The logic here reverses the direction of 4:20–21. There, love for the brother was the test of love for God. Here, love for God and obedience to his commands verify that our love for fellow believers is genuine rather than merely sentimental. The two tests are mutually reinforcing — neither can stand alone.
3. Love for God is defined not by emotion but by obedience — keeping his commands. The declaration that his commands 'are not burdensome' (bareiai ouk eisin) echoes Jesus's words in Matthew 11:30 ('my yoke is easy and my burden is light') and stands in contrast to the Pharisaic burden-making that Jesus condemned. The divine birth described in vv. 1 and 4 is what makes obedience possible rather than oppressive.
4. The neuter pan to gegennēmenon ('everything/everyone born of God') generalizes the principle. The present nika ('overcomes') describes an ongoing reality, while the aorist nikēsasa ('having overcome') treats the victory as accomplished. Faith is identified as the instrument of victory — not military power, political strategy, or ascetic discipline, but trust in God. The noun nikē ('victory') appears only here in the New Testament.
5. The rhetorical question expects the answer 'no one else.' The present participle nikōn ('overcoming') and pisteuōn ('believing') indicate ongoing, characteristic activity. The confession 'Jesus is the Son of God' is the specific content of world-overcoming faith — it is christological, not vague spiritual optimism.
6. The 'water' most likely refers to Jesus's baptism and the 'blood' to his crucifixion. The emphatic insistence — 'not by water only, but by water and by blood' — suggests the false teachers accepted Jesus's baptism (the beginning of his ministry) but denied the saving significance of his death. The Spirit provides ongoing testimony to the full reality of Christ. Calling the Spirit 'the truth' (hē alētheia) echoes Jesus's description of the Spirit as 'the Spirit of truth' (John 14:17, 15:26, 16:13).
7. The SBLGNT text here is significantly shorter than the KJV. The KJV's expanded reading — 'in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Ghost: and these three are one. And there are three that bear witness in earth' — is known as the Comma Johanneum. This expansion is absent from all Greek manuscripts before the fourteenth century, absent from the earliest and best Latin manuscripts, and unknown to the Greek church fathers. It entered the Latin tradition through marginal glosses that were eventually incorporated into the text. It is not part of the original letter. The SBLGNT correctly omits it, and our rendering follows the critical Greek text.
8. The three witnesses — Spirit, water, and blood — converge in a single testimony about Jesus Christ. The phrase eis to hen eisin ('are into the one,' i.e., 'agree as one') indicates not identity but unanimous testimony. Under Jewish law, two or three witnesses established a matter (Deuteronomy 19:15); God provides three converging witnesses to his Son. The Spirit witnesses through ongoing testimony in the community, the water through the baptism that inaugurated Jesus's ministry, and the blood through the death that completed it.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 19:15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

9. The argument moves from the lesser to the greater: if human testimony is accepted in legal proceedings, how much more should divine testimony be trusted? The perfect *memartyrēken* ('he has testified') indicates that God's testimony is a completed and standing witness. The content of God's testimony is explained in v. 11.
10. The believer possesses God's testimony internally — through the Spirit's witness (cf. 3:24, 4:13). The one who refuses to believe does something far worse than mere skepticism: he 'has made God a liar' (*pseustēn pepoiēken auton*). This is the ultimate insult — calling God's testimony about his own Son false. The perfect tenses (*pepoiēken*, *pepisteuken*, *memartyrēken*) emphasize settled states with ongoing consequences.
11. The content of God's testimony is now made explicit: he has given eternal life, and that life is located exclusively in his Son. The aorist *edōken* ('gave') points to the definitive gift accomplished through Christ's death and resurrection. The phrase 'this life is in his Son' means that eternal life is not an independent commodity but is inseparable from the person of Jesus Christ.
12. The statement is perfectly balanced and admits no middle ground. 'Having the Son' means possessing a living relationship with Christ through faith. The addition of 'of God' (*tou theou*) in the second clause adds formal weight to the negative statement. This verse is the letter's sharpest expression of the exclusive connection between Christ and eternal life.
13. This verse parallels the purpose statement of John's Gospel (John 20:31). The Gospel was written 'so that you may believe'; the letter is written 'so that you may know that you have eternal life.' The audience is those who already believe — the letter's purpose is assurance, not evangelism. The SBLGNT does not include the second clause found in some manuscripts ('and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God').
14. The word *parrēsia* ('confidence, boldness') appears for the fourth time in the letter (2:28, 3:21, 4:17). Prayer confidence is not presumption — it is conditioned by alignment with God's will (*kata to thelēma autou*). The verb *akouei* ('hears') carries the Hebrew sense of hearing that includes responding and acting.
15. The logic is: if God hears (v. 14), and we know he hears (v. 15a), then we already possess what we have asked (v. 15b). The present *echomen* ('we have') expresses a certainty so firm that the future answer is treated as already in hand. This is the prayer of faith — not manipulating God but trusting his character and alignment with his purposes.
16. The distinction between sin 'not leading to death' (*mē pros thanaton*) and sin 'leading to death' (*pros thanaton*) is the most debated passage in the letter. In context, the 'sin leading to death' most likely refers to the deliberate, settled denial of Christ that characterizes the secessionists — a willful apostasy that places one beyond the reach of intercessory prayer. John does not forbid prayer for such sin but declines to command it. Ordinary sin within the community should prompt intercessory prayer, and God will respond with life.
17. John clarifies that all wrongdoing (*adikia*, 'unrighteousness, injustice') is genuinely sin — he is not trivializing non-fatal sin. But the reassurance is clear: not all sin is the irrecoverable apostasy described in v. 16. Most sin within the community can be addressed through confession and intercessory prayer.
18. The first of three 'we know' (*oidamen*) statements that close the letter. The SBLGNT reading *ho gennētheis ek tou theou* ('the one who was born of God') likely refers to Christ, not the believer — Christ protects the one born of God. The aorist passive *gennētheis* (referring to Christ's unique divine birth) is distinguished from the perfect *gegennēmenos* (referring to the believer's new birth). The evil one 'does not touch' (*ouch haptetai*) — the verb implies grasping or laying hold of, suggesting that Satan cannot seize or control the one Christ guards.
19. The second 'we know' statement. The contrast is stark: believers are 'from God' (*ek tou theou*), while the entire world-system 'lies in the evil one' (*en tō ponērō keitai*). The verb *keitai* ('lies') suggests a passive, helpless state — the world lies in the devil's grip without resistance. The dative/locative *en tō ponērō* is better rendered 'in the power of the evil one' than the KJV's abstract 'in wickedness.'
20. The third and climactic 'we know' statement. The verb *hēkei* ('has come') is present tense with perfect force — he has come and is present. The word *dianoian* ('understanding, insight, mind') denotes the faculty of spiritual comprehension that Christ has given. The final sentence — *houtos estin ho alēthinos theos kai zōē aiōnios* ('this one is the true God and eternal life') — is among the strongest christological affirmations in the New Testament. The pronoun *houtos* ('this one') most naturally refers to the nearest antecedent, Jesus Christ, identifying him directly as 'the true God and eternal life.'
21. The letter's abrupt closing has puzzled commentators. The imperative *phylaxate* ('guard, protect, keep') is an aorist suggesting decisive, urgent action. In context, the 'idols' (*eidōlōn*) likely refer not to pagan statues but to the false conceptions of God promoted by the secessionists — any substitute for the 'true God' just identified in v. 20. After a letter devoted to distinguishing truth from falsehood, the final word warns against every counterfeit. The SBLGNT does not include the 'Amen' found in some manuscripts.

2 John

1

Summary: *Second John is the shortest book in the New Testament by word count. Written by 'the elder' to 'the elect lady and her children,' the letter commends the community for walking in truth and love, reaffirms the commandment of mutual love, and issues a sharp warning against deceivers who deny that Jesus Christ came in the flesh. The elder instructs the community not to receive such false teachers into their homes or extend them hospitality, lest they share in their wicked work. The letter closes with the hope of a personal visit.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The letter demonstrates that Johannine theology is not abstract but has immediate practical implications — the community must make concrete decisions about whom to welcome. The identification of the author as 'the elder' (ho presbyteros) rather than 'the apostle' suggests either a deliberate choice of a relational title or a different figure within the Johannine circle. The 'elect lady' (eklektē kyria) is almost certainly a personification of a house church rather than an individual woman, as indicated by the plural 'you' in the body of the letter and the greeting from the 'children of your elect sister' in v. 13.*

Translation Friction: *The instruction not to welcome false teachers (vv. 10-11) raises questions about the limits of hospitality and tolerance. In the ancient world, extending hospitality to traveling teachers was effectively sponsoring their mission. The elder's prohibition is not about personal rudeness but about material and social support for a message that undermines the gospel. The identity of the 'elect lady' — whether a specific woman, a personified church, or a title — cannot be resolved with certainty from the text alone.*

Connections: *The christological test (v. 7) parallels 1 John 4:2-3. The love commandment 'from the beginning' echoes 1 John 2:7-8 and John 13:34. The 'teaching of Christ' (v. 9) connects to the Johannine emphasis on remaining in the received tradition. The elder's hope for a face-to-face visit (v. 12) parallels 3 John 13-14 and reflects the limitations of written communication in the ancient world.*

¹The elder, to the elect lady and her children, whom I love in truth — and not I alone, but also all who have known the truth — ²Because the truth's sake, which dwelleth in us, and will be with us for ever. ³Grace, mercy, and peace will be with us from God the Father and from Jesus Christ, the Son of the Father, in truth and in love. ⁴I rejoiced greatly to find some of your children walking in the truth, just as we received a commandment from the Father. ⁵And now I ask you, dear lady — not as though I am writing a new commandment to you, but one that we have had from the beginning — that we love one another. ⁶

And this is love: that we walk according to his commandments. This is the commandment, just as you heard from the beginning, so that you should walk in it. ⁷For many deceivers have gone out into the world — those who do not confess that Jesus Christ is coming in the flesh. Such a person is the deceiver and the antichrist. ⁸Watch yourselves, so that you do not lose what we have worked for, but may receive a full reward. ⁹Everyone who goes too far and does not remain in the teaching of Christ does not have God. Whoever remains in the teaching has both the Father and the Son. ¹⁰If anyone comes to you and does not bring this teaching, do not receive him into your house or give him any greeting, ¹¹Indeed, since he that biddeth him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds. ¹²Though I have much to write to you, I would rather not use paper and ink. Instead, I hope to come to you and speak face to face, so that our joy may be made complete. ¹³The children of your elect sister greet you.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The self-designation *ho presbyteros* ('the elder') is a title of both age and authority within the early church. The phrase *eklektē kyria* ('elect lady') most likely refers to a local church community personified as a woman (cf. the 'elect sister' in v. 13 and the personification of the church as female in Revelation 12 and 2 Corinthians 11:2). 'In truth' (*en alētheia*) could mean 'truly' (adverbially) or 'in the sphere of truth' — both senses may be intended.
2. Truth is personified as an abiding presence — it dwells in believers and accompanies them eternally. The language parallels Jesus's promise of the Spirit of truth who 'remains with you and will be in you' (John 14:17). The future *estai* ('will be') extends the assurance beyond the present into eternity.
3. The greeting is unusual in its confidence — *estai* ('will be') is declarative rather than optative, stating a certainty rather than expressing a wish. The triad 'grace, mercy, and peace' appears elsewhere only in 1 Timothy 1:2 and 2 Timothy 1:2. The title 'the Son of the Father' (*tou huiou tou patros*) is found only here in the New Testament and emphasizes the unique filial relationship. The closing phrase 'in truth and in love' previews the letter's twin themes.
4. The phrase *ek tōn teknōn sou* ('some of your children') may imply that not all members of the community are walking in truth — a gentle pastoral concern. The verb *peripatountas* ('walking') uses the standard metaphor for daily conduct. The commandment 'from the Father' connects truthful living to divine authority, not human preference.
5. The request (*erōtō*, a polite verb for asking) echoes 1 John 2:7-8: the commandment is both old and foundational. The singular 'you' (*se*) addresses the community as a whole through its personified identity. 'From the beginning' (*ap' archēs*) refers to the original reception of the gospel message.
6. Love is defined as obedient walking (*peripatōmen kata tas entolas autou*). The circular structure — love is keeping commandments, and the commandment is to love — is intentional, not confused. Love and obedience are mutually defining in Johannine theology. The final pronoun 'in it' (*en autē*) could refer to the commandment or to love — the ambiguity reinforces their inseparability.
7. The participle *erchomenon* ('coming') is present tense, which could refer to Christ's past coming (historical present), his ongoing incarnate state, or his future return. The confession affirms the full, continuing reality of the incarnation — Jesus Christ did not merely appear in flesh temporarily but remains the incarnate one. The singular *houtos* ('this one') individualizes the type: every such deceiver embodies the spirit of the antichrist. This closely parallels 1 John 4:2-3.
8. The imperative *blepete* ('watch, look out, beware') is urgent. The SBLGNT mixes persons — 'you' do not lose what 'we' worked for — suggesting that the elder's apostolic labor is at stake in the community's faithfulness. The 'full reward' (*misthon plērē*) implies that partial loss is possible through compromise with false teaching, even if ultimate salvation is not in view.
9. The verb *proagōn* ('going ahead, going beyond, advancing') is used here negatively — the false teachers see themselves as progressive, going beyond basic Christianity, but the elder judges their innovation as departure. 'The teaching of Christ' (*tē didachē tou Christou*) could mean the teaching about Christ or the teaching that comes from Christ; both are likely intended. The consequence of departing is devastating: one 'does not have God' — the loss of relationship, not merely of correct doctrine.
10. In the ancient world, traveling teachers depended on private hospitality. Receiving someone into one's home (*eis oikian*) was effectively sponsoring their ministry. The prohibition against greeting (*chairein*, literally 'rejoice,' the standard greeting) is not about rudeness but about withholding the social endorsement that would legitimize the false teacher's mission. The 'house' may refer to a private home or to the house church that met there.
11. The verb *koinōnei* ('shares in, participates in, has fellowship with') is strong — extending hospitality to a false teacher makes one a partner in the deception. The principle is that material and social support for false teaching constitutes complicity. This verse has sometimes been misapplied to justify general inhospitality; its original scope is specific to those who deny the incarnation and actively propagate a counter-gospel.
12. The Greek *stoma pros stoma* ('mouth to mouth') is the literal expression behind 'face to face.' The preference for personal presence over written communication reflects both the limitations of ancient letter-writing and the Johannine conviction that personal encounter is superior to mediated communication (cf. John 1:14 — the Word became flesh, not text). The phrase 'our joy may be made complete' (*hē chara hēmōn peplērōmenē ē*) echoes John 15:11 and 16:24.

- 13.** The 'elect sister' (tēs adelphēs sou tēs eklektēs) is most likely another church community — the one from which the elder writes. The parallel language of 'elect lady' (v. 1) and 'elect sister' (v. 13) suggests two sister congregations within the Johannine network. The 'children' are the members of that community. The SBLGNT does not include the 'Amen' found in some manuscripts.

3 John

1

Summary: *Third John is a personal letter from 'the elder' to a beloved individual named Gaius. The elder commends Gaius for his faithfulness and especially for his hospitality to traveling missionaries, even those who were strangers to him (vv. 1-8). He then sharply condemns Diotrephes, a church leader who refuses to welcome the elder's representatives, speaks malicious nonsense against the elder, and excommunicates those who do offer hospitality (vv. 9-10). Demetrius is briefly commended as a trustworthy figure (vv. 11-12). The letter closes with a hope for a personal visit.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Third John provides a rare window into the internal power struggles of the early church. Diotrephes represents a local leader who has effectively seized control of a congregation, rejecting apostolic authority and punishing those who disagree. This is not a doctrinal dispute (unlike 2 John's concern about false teaching) but a conflict over authority and hospitality. The letter reveals that the apostolic church was not a utopian community but a human institution with real power dynamics. The contrast between Gaius (who gives) and Diotrephes (who controls) is the letter's central moral lesson.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of 'the elder' remains debated — he may be the apostle John, a distinct figure called John the Elder (mentioned by Papias), or another Johannine community leader. The nature of Diotrephes' offense is also debated: some see him as a proto-heretic, others as an ambitious leader who simply resisted outside authority. The text itself focuses on his behavior (refusing hospitality, slandering the elder, excommunicating supporters) rather than his theology. The letter's brevity makes many questions unanswerable from the text alone.*

Connections: *The hospitality theme connects to Romans 12:13, Hebrews 13:2, and the instructions in 2 John 10-11 (though 2 John restricts hospitality to false teachers, 3 John commends it for true ones). The 'walking in truth' language (vv. 3-4) parallels 2 John 4. The elder's self-designation matches 2 John 1. Diotrephes' love of 'being first' (philoprōteuōn) contrasts with Jesus's teaching that the first shall be last (Mark 10:43-44). Demetrius's commendation 'by the truth itself' (v. 12) echoes the Johannine emphasis on truth as a living reality.*

¹The elder, to the beloved Gaius, whom I love in truth. ²Beloved, I pray that all may go well with you and that you may be in good health, as it goes well with your soul. ³For I rejoiced greatly when the brothers came and testified to your truth, as indeed you are walking in the truth. ⁴I have no deeper joy than knowing that my children live according to the truth. ⁵Belove

d, it is a faithful thing you do in all your efforts for the brothers, especially those who are strangers. ⁶They have testified to your love before the church. You will do well to send them on their journey in a manner worthy of God, ⁷Indeed, because that for his name's sake they traveled forth, taking nothing of the Gentiles. ⁸Therefore we ought to support people like these, so that we may be fellow workers for the truth. ⁹I have written something to the church, but Diotrophes, who loves to put himself first, does not acknowledge our authority. ¹⁰So if I come, I will bring up what he is doing, talking malicious nonsense against us. And not content with that, he refuses to welcome the brothers himself, and he also stops those who want to and expels them from the church. ¹¹Beloved, do not imitate evil but imitate good. Whoever does good is from God; whoever does evil has not seen God. ¹²Demetrius has received a good testimony from everyone, and from the truth itself. We also add our testimony, and you know that our testimony is true. ¹³I had much to write to you, but I would rather not write with ink and pen. ¹⁴I hope to see you soon, and we will talk face to face. ¹⁵Peace be to you. The friends greet you. Greet the friends, each by name.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The self-designation *ho presbyteros* ('the elder') matches 2 John 1, linking the two letters to the same author. Gaius is called *agapētō* ('beloved') — a term of deep personal affection. The phrase *en alētheia* ('in truth') can mean 'truly, genuinely' or 'within the sphere of truth.' The name Gaius was extremely common in the Roman world; this is not necessarily the same Gaius mentioned in Acts 19:29, 20:4, Romans 16:23, or 1 Corinthians 1:14.
2. The prayer-wish follows standard Hellenistic letter conventions but is transformed by genuine pastoral concern. The verb *euodousthai* ('to prosper, to have a good journey, to go well') and *hygiainein* ('to be healthy') cover material and physical welfare. The comparison *kathōs euodoutai sou hē psychē* ('as your soul prospers') is a compliment — Gaius's spiritual health is the standard by which the elder measures his wish for physical health.
3. Traveling brothers (*adelphōn*) have brought reports to the elder about Gaius. The verb *martyrountōn* ('testifying, bearing witness') uses courtroom language for a solemn attestation. 'Your truth' (*sou tē alētheia*) means the truth that characterizes Gaius — his truthful way of living. The present tense *peripateis* ('you are walking') indicates an ongoing pattern of conduct, not a single event.
4. The superlative *meizoteran* ('greater') is intensified — literally 'more greater,' a double comparative found in colloquial Greek. The phrase *ta ema tekna* ('my children') reveals the elder's pastoral relationship to Gaius and others in his care. The greatest joy for a spiritual father is not institutional success but the faithful conduct of those he has nurtured.
5. The adjective *piston* ('faithful, trustworthy, reliable') characterizes Gaius's actions as consistent with his faith. The phrase *kai touto xenous* ('and this, strangers') adds emphasis — Gaius's hospitality extends not only to known believers but to traveling missionaries who are unknown to him personally. In the ancient world, hospitality to strangers was both a social virtue and a practical necessity, since public inns were often dangerous or disreputable.
6. The missionaries have publicly (*enōpion ekklēσίας*, 'before the church/assembly') testified to Gaius's love. The verb *propempsas* ('having sent forward, having provided for their journey') was a technical term for equipping travelers with provisions, money, and companions for the next stage of their journey (cf. Acts 15:3, Romans 15:24, 1 Corinthians 16:6). The standard is *axiōs tou theou* ('worthy of God') — the hospitality should reflect the God whom both host and guest serve.
7. The missionaries went out *hyper tou onomatos* ('for the sake of the Name') — 'the Name' without further specification is Jesus Christ. This absolute use of 'the Name' reflects early Christian reverence (cf. Acts 5:41). They accept nothing from *ethnikōn* ('Gentiles, pagans, non-believers'), maintaining the principle that the gospel mission should be funded by believers, not by those who do not share the faith. This makes Christian hospitality essential to the church's mission.
8. The verb *hypolambanein* ('receive, support, take up') goes beyond mere welcome to active support. The theological motivation is striking: by supporting missionaries, believers become *synergoi* ('fellow workers, co-laborers') *tē alētheia* ('for the truth'). Hospitality is not charity but partnership in mission. Those who stay home and support those who go are equally engaged in the work of the gospel.
9. The transition is abrupt: a letter was sent to the church, but Diotrophes blocked it. The participle *philoprōteuōn* ('loving to be first, desiring preeminence') is a rare compound word found only here in the New Testament. It describes not a formal office but a personality — someone who craves control. The verb *epidechetai* ('receive, welcome, acknowledge') means Diotrophes refuses to accept the elder's authority or his representatives. The 'something' (*ti*) written to the church may be a lost letter, 2 John, or a general communication.
10. The elder lists Diotrophes' offenses in escalating severity: (1) *phylarōn hēmas* ('babbling malicious nonsense against us') — spreading slander with poisonous words; (2) *oute autos epidechetai tous adelphous* ('he himself does not receive the brothers') — personally refusing hospitality to traveling missionaries; (3) *tous boulomenous kōlyei* ('he prevents those who wish to') — blocking others from showing hospitality; (4) *ek tēs ekklēσίας ekballēi* ('he throws them out of the church') — excommunicating those who defy his control. This is a portrait of authoritarian leadership: monopolizing communication, controlling access, and punishing dissent.
11. The imperative *mē mimou* ('do not imitate') uses the verb from which 'mimic' derives. The principle is stated in absolute Johannine terms: doing good (*agathopoiōn*) is evidence of being *ek tou theou* ('from God'), while doing evil (*kakopoiōn*) proves one *ouch heōraken ton theon* ('has not seen God'). This echoes 1 John 3:6 and 4:20. In context, the implicit contrast is between Gaius (good) and Diotrophes (evil), with Gaius urged to continue

his pattern despite Diotrephes' opposition.

12. Demetrius receives a threefold commendation: (1) *hypo pantōn* ('from everyone') — universal reputation; (2) *hypo autēs tēs alētheias* ('from the truth itself') — his life conforms to truth as an objective standard, so that truth itself bears witness to him; (3) *hēmeis de martyroumen* ('we also testify') — the elder's personal endorsement. The phrase 'you know that our testimony is true' (*oidate hoti hē martyria hēmōn alēthēs estin*) echoes John 21:24. Demetrius may be the bearer of this letter, which would explain why he needs an introduction and recommendation to Gaius.
13. The closing mirrors 2 John 12 almost exactly. The elder has more to say but prefers personal communication to written correspondence. The mention of *melanos* ('ink,' literally 'black') and *kalamou* ('reed pen') are the standard writing implements of the ancient world. The preference for face-to-face communication over written media is a recurring theme in the Johannine letters.
14. The phrase *stoma pros stoma* ('mouth to mouth') is more literally physical than the English idiom 'face to face.' It emphasizes the directness and intimacy of personal conversation over the limitations of written communication. The adverb *eutheōs* ('immediately, soon') conveys urgency — the situation with Diotrephes likely requires prompt personal intervention.
15. The farewell *eirēnē soi* ('peace to you') is the standard Semitic greeting-and-farewell (Hebrew *shalom lekha*), here placed at the close. The designation *hoi philoi* ('the friends') for fellow believers is distinctive — it appears as a group designation only here in the New Testament and echoes Jesus's words in John 15:14-15 ('I have called you friends'). The instruction *kat' onoma* ('by name, individually') insists on personal, not generic, greetings — each person matters individually. The letter that began with one beloved name (Gaius) ends with an insistence on naming each friend.

Jude

Summary: *Jude writes to urge believers to 'contend for the faith that was once for all delivered to the saints' (v. 3) because certain people have infiltrated the community who pervert grace into licentiousness and deny Jesus Christ as Lord. Jude marshals a barrage of Old Testament and Second Temple examples of divine judgment — the exodus generation, the fallen angels, Sodom and Gomorrah, Cain, Balaam, Korah — to demonstrate that such false teachers face certain destruction. The letter reaches its rhetorical peak in verses 14-15 with a direct quotation from 1 Enoch prophesying judgment on the ungodly. After warning that the apostles predicted such scoffers would come, Jude closes with practical instructions for the community and one of the most magnificent doxologies in all of Scripture (vv. 24-25).*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Jude is unique in the New Testament for its explicit citation of 1 Enoch (vv. 14-15), a Jewish apocalyptic text that was widely read but never accepted into the Hebrew canon. The citation is introduced with the formula 'Enoch prophesied' (eprophēteusen), treating the text as genuine prophecy without necessarily endorsing the entire book as canonical. Verse 9 alludes to the Assumption of Moses (or a related tradition) regarding a dispute between the archangel Michael and the devil over the body of Moses — a tradition not found in the Old Testament. These references demonstrate that early Christians drew on a wider literary and theological tradition than the Hebrew Bible alone. The doxology (vv. 24-25) is among the most liturgically influential passages in Christianity.*

Translation Friction: *Jude's use of non-canonical sources raises hermeneutical questions. The 1 Enoch citation (vv. 14-15) is presented as prophecy, and the Michael-and-Moses tradition (v. 9) is presented as historical event. Neither claim requires that 1 Enoch or the Assumption of Moses be treated as canonical Scripture; ancient authors regularly cited non-canonical sources to make theological points (cf. Paul quoting pagan poets in Acts 17:28 and Titus 1:12). We render the Greek as given and note the sources without adjudicating their canonical status. The relationship between Jude and 2 Peter 2 (which shares much of Jude's content but omits the non-canonical references) remains debated — most scholars see Jude as the earlier text.*

Connections: *The faith 'once for all delivered' (v. 3) anticipates the concept in Hebrews 9:26-28. The fallen angels (v. 6) connect to Genesis 6:1-4 and the Enochic tradition. Sodom and Gomorrah (v. 7) echo Genesis 19. Cain, Balaam, and Korah (v. 11) draw on Genesis 4, Numbers 22-24, and Numbers 16 respectively. The 1 Enoch citation (vv. 14-15) comes from 1 Enoch 1:9. The Michael-Moses dispute (v. 9) is attributed to the Assumption of Moses. The doxology (vv. 24-25) has influenced Christian worship from the patristic period to the present.*

¹Jude, a servant of Jesus Christ and brother of James, to those who are called, beloved in God the Father and kept for Jesus Christ: ²May mercy, peace, and love be multiplied to you. ³Beloved, although I was very eager to write to you about our common salvation, I found it necessary to write appealing to you to contend for the faith that was once for all delivered to the saints. ⁴For certain people have crept in unnoticed who long ago were designated for this condemnation, ungodly people who pervert the grace of our God into sensuality and deny our only Master and Lord, Jesus Christ. ⁵Now I want to remind you, although you once fully knew it, that Jesus, who saved a people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed those who did not believe, ⁶And the angels who did not stay within their own position of authority, but left their proper dwelling, he has kept in eternal chains under deep darkness for the judgment of the great day — ⁷Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to sexual immorality, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire. ⁸Yet in like manner these people also, relying on their dreams, defile the flesh, reject authority, and blaspheme the glorious ones. ⁹But when the archangel Michael, contending with the devil, was disputing about the body of Moses, he did not presume to pronounce a blasphemous judgment, but said, 'The Lord rebuke you.' ¹⁰But these people blaspheme all that they do not understand, and they are destroyed by all that they, like unreasoning animals, understand instinctively. ¹¹Woe to them! For they walked in the way of Cain and abandoned themselves for profit to Balaam's error and perished in Korah's rebellion. ¹²These are hidden reefs at your love feasts, as they feast with you without fear, shepherds feeding only themselves; waterless clouds swept along by winds; fruitless trees in late autumn, twice dead, uprooted; ¹³They are wild waves of the sea, churning up the foam of their own disgrace. They are wandering stars, for whom the deepest darkness has been reserved forever. ¹⁴It was also about these that Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied, saying, 'Behold, the Lord comes with ten thousands of his holy ones, ¹⁵To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly in the midst of them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken opposed to him. ¹⁶These are grumblers, malcontents, following their own sinful desires; their mouth speaks boastful words, and they show favoritism to gain advantage. ¹⁷But you must remember, beloved, the predictions of the apostles of our Lord Jesus Christ. ¹⁸They said to you, 'In the last time there will be scoffers, following their own ungodly passions.' ¹⁹It is these who cause divisions, worldly people, devoid of the Spirit. ²⁰But you, beloved, building yourselves up in your most holy faith and praying in the Holy Spirit, ²¹Keep yourselves safe in God's love as you wait for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ to bring you to eternal life. ²²And have mercy on those who doubt; ²³Others rescue with be afraid, pulling them out of the flames. Hating not even the garment spotted by the physical nature. ²⁴Now to him who is able to keep you from stumbling and to present you blameless before the presence of his glory with great joy, ²⁵Indeed, to the only wise God our Saviour, be glory and majesty, dominion and authority, both now and ever. Amen.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Jude identifies himself as *doulos* ('servant, slave') of Jesus Christ and *adelphos* ('brother') of James — almost certainly James the brother of Jesus and leader of the Jerusalem church (Acts 15:13, Galatians 1:19). Like James, he does not claim the title 'brother of the Lord,' instead defining his identity through service. The recipients are described with three perfect participles: *ēgapēmenois* ('having been loved,' permanently loved), *tetērēmenois* ('having been kept,' preserved and guarded), and *klētois* ('called'). The SBLGNT reads 'beloved in God the Father and kept for Jesus Christ,' though some manuscripts read 'sanctified' (*hēgiasmenois*) instead of 'beloved.'
2. The greeting triad — *eleos* ('mercy'), *eirēnē* ('peace'), *agapē* ('love') — is unique to Jude. Most epistles use 'grace and peace' (Paul) or 'grace, mercy, and peace' (Pastorals). Jude substitutes 'love' for 'grace,' anticipating the letter's concern that grace is being perverted (v. 4). The optative *plēthyntheī* ('may it be multiplied') is a prayer-wish for abundance, not merely presence.
3. Jude had planned a general letter about salvation but was compelled by circumstances to write an urgent warning instead. The verb *epagōnizesthai* ('contend, fight for, struggle on behalf of') is an athletic or military term — the faith requires active defense, not passive reception. The phrase *tē hapax paradotheisē tois hagiois pistei* ('the faith once for all delivered to the saints') treats the Christian faith as a fixed deposit (*paradosis*) entrusted to the community, not as something still being developed. The adverb *hapax* ('once for all') emphasizes finality and completeness.
4. The verb *pareisedysan* ('crept in secretly, slipped in by the side door') describes infiltration, not open attack. These people are *hoi palai proگرامmenoi* ('written about long ago,' 'designated beforehand') for judgment — their condemnation was anticipated in Scripture and tradition. Their two-fold offense: (1) *metatithentes* ('changing, perverting, transforming') God's grace into *aselgeian* ('sensuality, licentiousness, moral abandon'); (2) *arnoumenoi* ('denying') Jesus Christ as *despotēn kai kyrion* ('Master and Lord'). Grace that permits immorality is not grace but its perversion.

5. The first of three Old Testament examples of judgment. Some manuscripts read 'the Lord' (kyrios), others read 'Jesus' (Iēsous) — the SBLGNT follows manuscripts reading kyrios, but the variant 'Jesus' (found in significant early manuscripts) would mean Jude identifies the pre-incarnate Christ with the God who led the exodus. The point is stark: being saved once does not guarantee final salvation — the exodus generation was delivered from Egypt but destroyed in the wilderness for unbelief (Numbers 14:26-35, 1 Corinthians 10:1-12).
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 14:26-35 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The second example: fallen angels who abandoned their archēn ('position, domain, sphere of authority') and their oikētērion ('dwelling, habitation'). This draws on the tradition of Genesis 6:1-4 as elaborated in 1 Enoch 6-16, where angelic 'Watchers' descended to earth, took human wives, and were imprisoned as punishment. They are kept (tetērēken, a perfect tense indicating ongoing state) in desmois aidiois ('eternal bonds/chains') hypozophon ('under deep darkness/gloom') awaiting final judgment. Even supernatural beings face consequences for transgressing their appointed boundaries.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 6:1-4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The third example: Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19). The phrase ekporneusasai ('having given themselves over to sexual immorality') and apelhousai opisō sarkos heteras ('having gone after other/different flesh') describe the sexual transgression. The phrase sarkos heteras ('different flesh') connects the sin of Sodom to the angels of verse 6 — both transgressed the boundaries of their nature. The cities prokeintai ('are displayed, lie before us') as deigma ('example, sample, specimen') of divine judgment — their destruction is a visible preview of eschatological punishment.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 19. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Jude now applies the three examples to the present infiltrators. The participle enypniazomenoi ('dreaming') suggests they claim visionary authority for their behavior. Their threefold offense mirrors the three examples: (1) sarka miainousin ('they defile the flesh') — like Sodom; (2) kyriotēta athetousin ('they reject lordship/authority') — like the exodus rebels; (3) doxas blasphēmousin ('they blaspheme the glorious ones') — like the fallen angels. The 'glorious ones' (doxas) most likely refers to angelic beings, whether good or evil.
9. This episode is not found in the Old Testament. Ancient sources attribute it to the Assumption of Moses (also called the Testament of Moses), a Jewish pseudepigraphal work largely lost. The argument from the lesser to the greater is: if Michael the archangel — the highest of angels — would not blaspheme even the devil but deferred judgment to the Lord, how much less should mere humans blaspheme angelic beings. The phrase epitimēsai soi kyrios ('May the Lord rebuke you') echoes Zechariah 3:2, where the Lord rebukes Satan in a heavenly courtroom scene. Jude uses a non-canonical source to make a canonical point about restraint and deference to divine authority.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 34:5-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 3:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The contrast is between two kinds of knowledge: what they do not understand (ouk oidasin) they blaspheme, and what they know instinctively (physikōs epistantai) — like animals driven by appetite — destroys them. The comparison to aloga zōa ('unreasoning animals, creatures without logos') is severe: they have rejected the capacity for rational moral thought and now operate purely on instinct. The verb phtheirontai ('are being destroyed, are corrupted') is in the present tense — their destruction is already underway.
11. Three more Old Testament examples in rapid succession, each introduced with a different verb: (1) tē hodō tou Kain eporeuthēsan ('they went in the way of Cain') — Cain's 'way' represents hatred and murder of a brother (Genesis 4); (2) tē planē tou Balaam misthou exechythēsan ('they poured themselves out into the error of Balaam for hire') — Balaam represents the corruption of prophetic office for money (Numbers 22-24, 31:16); (3) tē antilogia tou Kore apōlonto ('they perished in the rebellion of Korah') — Korah's rebellion represents challenging divinely established authority (Numbers 16). The aorist tenses treat their destruction as already accomplished — prophetically certain.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 22-24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. A torrent of metaphors describes the false teachers: (1) spilades ('hidden reefs' or 'blemishes') at the agapais ('love feasts,' communal meals of the early church) — they are a concealed danger; (2) they feast aphobōs ('fearlessly, without reverence') and poimainontes heautous ('shepherd only themselves') — an echo of Ezekiel 34:2's condemnation of selfish shepherds; (3) nephelai anydroi ('waterless clouds') — they promise rain but deliver nothing; (4) dendra phthinopōrina akarpa ('fruitless late-autumn trees') — past the season for bearing fruit; (5) dis apothanonta ('twice dead') — dead by nature and dead by judgment; (6) ekrizōthenta ('uprooted') — permanently removed.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 34:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

13. The metaphor cascade continues: (5) *kymata agria thalassēs* ('wild waves of the sea') that foam up their own shame — their sin is not hidden but publicly visible like sea foam; (6) *asteres planētai* ('wandering stars,' the root of English 'planet') — in ancient cosmology, wandering stars were irregular and unreliable, unlike the fixed stars that guided navigation. For these wanderers, *ho zophos tou skotous* ('the gloom of darkness') is reserved *eis aiōna* ('forever'). The six metaphors move from earth (reefs, trees) to sea (waves) to sky (stars), encompassing the entire cosmos in condemnation.
14. Jude introduces a direct quotation from 1 Enoch 1:9, a Jewish apocalyptic text dating to the third-second century BC. Enoch is identified as *hebdomos apo Adam* ('seventh from Adam'), following the genealogy of Genesis 5. The formula *prophēteusen* ('prophesied') treats the Enochic text as genuine prophecy — a notable use of a non-canonical source with prophetic authority. This does not necessarily mean Jude regarded the entirety of 1 Enoch as Scripture, but he treats this particular prophecy as divinely inspired truth. The Lord's coming *en hagiais myriasis* ('with his holy myriads/ten thousands') depicts a theophany accompanied by an angelic army.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The quotation from 1 Enoch 1:9 is characterized by the relentless repetition of 'all' (*antas/pantōn/panta*, four occurrences) and the cognate forms of 'ungodly' (*asebeias/ēsebēsan/asebeis*, four occurrences). The judgment is universal (*kata pantōn*, 'against all') and the ungodliness is both in action (*ergōn asebeias*, 'works of ungodliness') and in speech (*sklērōn*, 'harsh things spoken against him'). The fourfold repetition of *aseb-* roots hammers the single point: ungodliness in every form will face divine reckoning.
16. Five characteristics: (1) *goggystai* ('grumblers, murmurers') — echoing Israel's grumbling in the wilderness; (2) *mempsimolroi* ('malcontents, fault-finders,' literally 'blamers of their lot/fate'); (3) following their own desires; (4) their mouth speaks *hyperogka* ('swollen, pompous, arrogant things'); (5) *thaumazontes prosōpa* ('showing admiration for faces') *ōpheleias charin* ('for the sake of benefit') — flattering people for personal gain. The portrait is of people who simultaneously complain about everything and flatter those who can benefit them.
17. The tone shifts from denunciation to direct pastoral address. The imperative *mnēsthēte* ('remember') calls the community to anchor themselves in apostolic teaching. The phrase *tōn rhēmatōn tōn proeirēmēnōn* ('the words previously spoken') suggests the apostolic era is viewed as a completed period — the apostles spoke 'beforehand' (*proeirēmēnōn*), and their words now function as authoritative prophecy. This may suggest a date after the first generation of apostles.
18. The apostolic prediction is summarized: *ep' eschatou tou chronou* ('in the last time/period') there will be *empaiktai* ('mockers, scoffers') who follow their own desires. Similar predictions appear in Acts 20:29-30, 2 Timothy 3:1-5, and 2 Peter 3:3. The present situation is not a surprise but the fulfillment of what the apostles foresaw. The community should be prepared, not panicked.
19. Three final descriptions: (1) *apodiorizontes* ('those who make boundaries, those who cause divisions') — they fragment the community they have infiltrated; (2) *psychikoi* ('natural, worldly, soul-ish') — the same word James uses (3:15) for wisdom that is 'earthly, unspiritual'; (3) *pneuma mē echontes* ('not having the Spirit') — the definitive diagnosis. Despite any claims to spiritual insight, they lack the Holy Spirit entirely. The contrast between *psychikos* (natural) and *pneumatikos* (spiritual) echoes 1 Corinthians 2:14-15.
20. The contrast is emphatic: *hymeis de* ('but you'). While the false teachers destroy, the community is to build. The participle *epoikodomountes* ('building up') uses construction imagery — the faith is the foundation, and believers are the structure being raised upon it. The faith is called *hagiōtatē* ('most holy'), the superlative reinforcing the sacredness of the deposit they have received. Prayer in the Holy Spirit (*en pneumatī hagiō*) distinguishes them from the false teachers who are *pneuma mē echontes* ('without the Spirit,' v. 19).
21. The main imperative in this section: *tērēstate heautous en agapē theou* ('keep yourselves in the love of God'). The verb *tērēstate* ('keep, guard, maintain') echoes verse 1 where believers are *tetērēmenois* ('kept') by God — there is a divine keeping and a human keeping that work together. The participle *prosdēchomenoi* ('waiting for, expecting') turns their gaze to the future: the mercy (*eleos*) of Jesus Christ at his return, which leads *eis zōēn aiōnion* ('to eternal life'). The letter's emotional arc moves from urgent warning to confident hope.
22. The textual tradition for verses 22-23 is notoriously unstable, with manuscripts preserving two-fold, three-fold, and other arrangements. The SBLGNT follows a reading that distinguishes two or three groups. The first group: *eleate diakrinomenous* ('have mercy on those who are doubting/wavering'). The participle *diakrinomenous* can mean 'doubting' or 'disputing' — these are people caught between faithfulness and the false teachers' influence. They need compassion, not condemnation.
23. The remaining groups require more urgent action: (1) some must be *sōzete ek pyros harpazontes* ('saved by snatching them from the fire') — a rescue operation from imminent destruction, echoing Zechariah 3:2 and Amos 4:11; (2) others require mercy with *phobō* ('fear, caution'), while *misountes* ('hating') even the *chitōna* ('inner garment, tunic') that has been *espilōmenon* ('stained, spotted') by *sarx* ('flesh'). The image is of a garment so contaminated by sin that even it must be avoided — the rescuer must be careful not to be contaminated by the very person being rescued. The pastoral wisdom is nuanced: different situations require different approaches.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 3:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Amos 4:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The great doxology begins. After a letter focused on danger, Jude turns to the One who can *phylaxai* ('guard, protect, keep safe') believers *aptaistous* ('without stumbling') — the very security the false teachers threaten. The verb *stēsai* ('to stand, to present') before *katenōpion tēs doxēs autou*

('before the presence of his glory') is an eschatological courtroom image: God will present believers amōmous ('blameless, without blemish') — the same word used for sacrificial animals without defect (cf. Ephesians 1:4, 5:27). The final note is en agalliasei ('with exultation, great joy') — the presentation is not somber but jubilant.

- 25.** The doxology ascribes four attributes to God: doxa ('glory'), megalōsynē ('majesty, greatness'), kratos ('might, dominion, sovereign power'), and exousia ('authority, right to rule'). The temporal scope is comprehensive: pro pantos tou aiōnos ('before all the ages' — eternity past), kai nyn ('and now' — the present), kai eis pantas tous aiōnas ('and unto all the ages' — eternity future). God's sovereignty spans the totality of time. The mediation dia Iēsou Christou tou kyriou hēmōn ('through Jesus Christ our Lord') ensures that the doxology is christologically grounded. The final amēn seals the prayer and the letter. This doxology has been used in Christian worship from the earliest centuries and remains one of the most recognized benedictions in the church.

Revelation

Summary: *Revelation 1 opens with a prologue identifying the work as a revelation from God, given through Jesus Christ to his servant John. A blessing is pronounced on those who read and heed its words. John then addresses seven churches in the province of Asia with a greeting of grace and peace. He describes being 'in the Spirit' on the Lord's day on the island of Patmos, where he hears a loud voice commanding him to write what he sees and send it to the seven churches. Turning, he sees a vision of the glorified Christ standing among seven golden lampstands — a figure with white hair, blazing eyes, feet like burnished bronze, and a voice like rushing waters, holding seven stars in his right hand with a sharp two-edged sword coming from his mouth. John falls at his feet as though dead, but Christ lays his right hand on him and identifies himself as 'the first and the last, the living one' who holds the keys of death and Hades.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The opening vision draws heavily on Daniel 7:9-14 (the Ancient of Days and Son of Man), Daniel 10:5-6 (the angelic figure), and Ezekiel 1:24-28 (the throne vision). The description of Christ merges attributes that Daniel assigns to both the Ancient of Days (white hair) and the Son of Man (glory, dominion), making a striking theological claim about Christ's identity. The seven lampstands echo Zechariah 4:2. The 'sharp two-edged sword' from his mouth alludes to Isaiah 49:2 and anticipates the word-as-weapon imagery throughout Revelation. The self-designation 'the Alpha and the Omega' uses the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet to express totality and sovereignty.*

Translation Friction: *The Greek apokalypsis ('unveiling, revelation') gives the book its name and its genre designation. We render the apocalyptic imagery as written without attempting to decode symbols into modern equivalents — the text presents visions, and we translate them as visions. The phrase en pneumati ('in the Spirit') in verse 10 could mean 'in a state of spiritual ecstasy' or 'by the agency of the Spirit'; we preserve the ambiguity. Some textual variants exist in the doxology of verses 5-6; we follow the SBLGNT reading.*

Connections: *Daniel 7:9-14 (Son of Man, Ancient of Days), Daniel 10:5-6 (angelic figure description), Ezekiel 1:24-28 (throne theophany), Zechariah 4:2 (seven lampstands), Isaiah 49:2 (sword from mouth), Isaiah 44:6 (first and last). The greeting formula in verses 4-5 echoes the covenant name of God from Exodus 3:14. The 'seven spirits before his throne' may allude to Isaiah 11:2 or Zechariah 4:2-10.*

¹The revelation of Jesus Christ, which God gave him to show his servants what must soon take place. He made it known by sending his angel to his servant John, ²Who bare record of the message of God, and of the testimony of Jesus Christ, and of all things that he noticed. ³Blessed is the one who reads aloud, and blessed are those who hear the words of this prophecy and keep what is written in it, for the time is near. ⁴John, to the seven churches in Asia: Grace to you and peace from him who is and who was and who is to come, and from the seven spirits before his throne, ⁵From Jesus Christ, who is the faithful witness, and the initially brought into the world of the no longer alive, and the prince of the kings of the age. To him that loved us, and washed us from our wrongdoings in his own blood,, ⁶Has fashioned us kings and priests to God and his Parent. To him be splendor and dominion for ever and ever. Amen. ⁷Look, he is coming with the clouds, and every eye will see him, even those who pierced him, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn over him. Yes, amen. ⁸"I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "who is and who was and who is to come, the Almighty." ⁹I, John, your brother and partner in the tribulation, the kingdom, and the endurance that are in Jesus — I was on the island called Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus. ¹⁰I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet, ¹¹Saying, I am Alpha and Omega, the first and the last — and, What you seest, write in a book, and send it to the seven churches which are in Asia. To Ephesus, and to Smyrna, and to Pergamos, and to Thyatira, and to Sardis, and to Philadelphia, and to Laodicea. ¹²I turned to see the voice that was speaking to me, and when I turned I saw seven golden lampstands, ¹³Among the lampstands stood someone who looked like the Son of Man. He was dressed in a long robe and wore a golden sash across his chest. ¹⁴His head and his hair were white as white wool, white as snow, and his eyes were like a flame of fire. ¹⁵His feet were like burnished bronze, refined in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of many waters. ¹⁶In his right hand he held seven stars, from his mouth came a sharp two-edged sword, and his face was like the sun shining at full strength. ¹⁷When I saw him, I fell at his feet as though dead. But he laid his right hand on me and said, "Do not be afraid. I am the first and the last, ¹⁸Indeed, I am he that liveth, and was dead. And, take notice, I am alive for evermore, Amen. And have the keys of hell and of death. ¹⁹Therefore write what you have seen, what is now, and what will take place after this. ²⁰As for the mystery of the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek apokalypsis means 'unveiling' or 'disclosure' — the removal of a covering to reveal what was hidden. This is not merely a prediction of the future but a disclosure of heavenly realities. The phrase *en tachei* ('in quickness/soon') can mean 'soon' or 'swiftly when it begins'; the temporal ambiguity is inherent in the Greek. The verb *esēmanen* ('made known, signified') shares a root with *sēmeion* ('sign'), suggesting that the revelation communicates through signs and symbols rather than plain speech.
2. The Greek *emartyrēsen* ('testified, bore witness') and *martyrian* ('testimony') share the root *martyr-*, connecting witness with suffering — a theme that pervades Revelation. John's role is as a witness who reports what he has seen, not as an interpreter who explains it.
3. This is the first of seven beatitudes in Revelation (1:3; 14:13; 16:15; 19:9; 20:6; 22:7; 22:14). The singular 'the one who reads aloud' (*ho anaginōskōn*) and the plural 'those who hear' (*hoi akouontes*) reflect the practice of public reading in early Christian assemblies — one reader, many listeners. The Greek *kairos* ('time, appointed season') differs from *chronos* ('clock time'); *kairos* suggests a decisive moment, not merely a date.
4. The phrase *ho ōn kai ho ēn kai ho erchomenos* ('the one who is and who was and who is coming') is a deliberate expansion of the divine name revealed in Exodus 3:14. The Greek grammar is intentionally broken — *apo* ('from') should govern a genitive, but *ho ōn* is nominative, as if the divine name resists grammatical subordination. The 'seven spirits' may refer to the Holy Spirit in sevenfold fullness (cf. Isaiah 11:2) or to seven angelic beings before God's throne (cf. Zechariah 4:2-10); we render the phrase as written without deciding between interpretations.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 3:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 11:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 4:2-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Three titles are given to Christ: 'faithful witness' (*ho martys ho pistos*), 'firstborn from the dead' (*ho prōtotokos tōn nekrōn*), and 'ruler of the kings of the earth' (*ho archōn tōn basileōn tēs gēs*). The third title echoes Psalm 89:27, where God promises David's heir will be 'the highest of the kings of the earth.' The SBLGNT reads *lysanti* ('freed, released') rather than the variant *lousanti* ('washed'), which changes the metaphor from washing to liberation. We follow the SBLGNT. The present participle *agapōnti* ('who loves') indicates ongoing love, while the aorist *lysanti* ('freed') points to a completed act.

5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 89:27 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek *basileian*, *hierais* ('a kingdom, priests') echoes Exodus 19:6, where Israel is called 'a kingdom of priests.' The singular 'kingdom' (not 'kings') with the apposition 'priests' is the SBLGNT reading — the community collectively forms a kingdom, and each member serves as a priest. This democratization of priestly identity is a major theme in Revelation. The doxology *eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn* ('into the ages of the ages') is the strongest Greek expression of endlessness.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 19:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. This verse fuses two Old Testament passages: Daniel 7:13 ('one like a son of man coming with the clouds') and Zechariah 12:10 ('they will look on me, the one they have pierced, and they will mourn'). The combination identifies the pierced one of Zechariah with Daniel's Son of Man — a connection with profound christological implications. The verb *exekentēsān* ('pierced') is the same word the Fourth Gospel applies to Christ's crucifixion (John 19:37). The closing *nai, amēn* pairs a Greek affirmation with a Hebrew one, bridging both linguistic worlds.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 12:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet, expressing totality — God encompasses all reality from beginning to end. This echoes Isaiah 44:6 ('I am the first and I am the last; apart from me there is no God'). The title *pantokratōr* ('Almighty, ruler of all') translates the Hebrew *Shaddai* and occurs nine times in Revelation — more than in the rest of the New Testament combined. The threefold temporal description repeats from verse 4.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 44:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. John identifies himself not with a title of authority but as 'brother' and 'partner' (*synkoinōnos*, 'co-sharer'). Three things are shared: tribulation (*thlipsis*), kingdom (*basileia*), and endurance (*hypomonē*) — all bound together 'in Jesus.' Patmos is a small island in the Aegean Sea, traditionally understood as a place of exile. The phrase *dia ton logon* ('because of the word') could mean John was exiled for preaching or that he went to Patmos to receive the word; the traditional reading of exile is more likely given the context of tribulation.
10. The phrase *en pneumati* ('in the Spirit') describes a state of prophetic vision or ecstasy — John is transported beyond ordinary perception. This phrase recurs at key structural points in Revelation (4:2; 17:3; 21:10). The 'Lord's day' (*tē kyriakē hēmera*) is the earliest extra-biblical reference to Sunday as a distinctive day for Christians. The trumpet voice echoes Exodus 19:16, where a trumpet blast accompanies God's appearance at Sinai.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The SBLGNT does not include 'I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last' in this verse, which appears in some later manuscripts (reflected in the KJV). We follow the critical text. The Greek *biblion* ('scroll, book') refers to a papyrus scroll, not a codex. The seven churches are listed in geographical order, forming a rough circuit through the province of Asia (western modern Turkey), beginning with Ephesus, the largest city and nearest to Patmos.
12. The synesthetic phrase 'see the voice' (*blepein tēn phōnēn*) is striking — John turns to see a sound. This conflation of senses reflects the overwhelming nature of visionary experience. The seven golden lampstands (*lychnias chrysas*) recall the menorah of the tabernacle (Exodus 25:31-37) and Zechariah's vision of a golden lampstand with seven lights (Zechariah 4:2). Verse 20 will identify the lampstands as the seven churches.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 25:31-37. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zechariah 4:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The phrase *homoion huion anthrōpou* ('one like a son of man') directly echoes Daniel 7:13 (LXX), where one 'like a son of man' approaches the Ancient of Days and receives dominion. The long robe (*podērē*) is the garment of a priest (Exodus 28:4; Ezekiel 9:2), and the golden sash (*zōnēn chrysan*) also suggests priestly or royal authority. The description that follows will merge attributes of Daniel's Ancient of Days with the Son of Man figure, making a claim about Christ's divine identity.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:13 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 28:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 9:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The white hair is drawn from Daniel 7:9, where it describes the Ancient of Days — not the Son of Man. By applying this attribute to the risen Christ, Revelation makes a bold identification: the Son of Man shares the characteristics of the eternal God. The fiery eyes echo Daniel 10:6, where they describe an angelic or divine figure. Each element of this vision is drawn from Old Testament theophany and reassigned to Christ.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 10:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek *chalkolibanō* is a rare word, possibly a copper-zinc alloy or orichalcum — the exact metal is uncertain. 'Burnished bronze' captures the sense of a glowing, refined metal. The 'sound of many waters' echoes Ezekiel 1:24 and 43:2, where it describes the voice of God himself. Daniel 10:6 similarly describes an angelic figure with bronze limbs and a powerful voice. The cumulative effect is of overwhelming divine majesty.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 1:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 10:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The seven stars are identified in verse 20 as the angels of the seven churches. The two-edged sword (*rhomphaia distomos oxeia*) proceeding from his mouth alludes to Isaiah 49:2 ('He made my mouth like a sharp sword') and represents the power of Christ's word to judge and divide. The image is not of a physical weapon but of divine speech that cuts. His face shining like the sun recalls the transfiguration (Matthew 17:2) and the angel of Daniel 10:6, as well as the radiance of Moses's face after encountering God (Exodus 34:29-30).
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 49:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 10:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 34:29-30. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Falling 'as though dead' (*hōs nekros*) is the typical human response to a divine encounter (cf. Daniel 8:17-18; 10:8-9; Ezekiel 1:28). The reassuring touch and 'do not be afraid' also follow the pattern of Daniel 10:10-12. 'The first and the last' (*ho prōtos kai ho eschatos*) is a direct claim to the title God applies to himself in Isaiah 44:6 and 48:12. Christ applies to himself the exclusive self-designation of YHWH.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 8:17-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 1:28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 10:10-12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 44:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The self-identification moves from eternal existence ('the first and the last') to incarnate death ('I was dead') to resurrection ('I am alive forever and ever') — the entire gospel compressed into a single sentence. The 'keys of death and Hades' (*tas kleis tou thanatou kai tou hadou*) represent authority over the realm of the dead. Hades (*hadēs*) is the Greek equivalent of Hebrew Sheol — the abode of the dead, not the later Christian concept of hell as a place of punishment. Christ's possession of these keys means death no longer operates as a final, unopposed power.
19. This verse provides a threefold outline that many interpreters use to structure the entire book: 'what you have seen' (the vision of chapter 1), 'what is now' (the situation of the seven churches in chapters 2-3), and 'what will take place after this' (the visions of chapters 4-22). Whether or not John intended this as a formal outline, the three temporal categories — past vision, present reality, future events — frame the entire work.
20. The Greek *mystērion* ('mystery') does not mean 'puzzle' but 'revealed secret' — something previously hidden that is now disclosed. Christ himself provides the interpretation of the vision's symbols, establishing a pattern for the rest of the book where some symbols are explained and others are left for the reader. The identity of the 'angels' (*angeloi*) of the churches is debated: they may be heavenly guardians, human leaders (the Greek *angelos* can mean 'messenger'), or the spiritual identity of each congregation. The text does not resolve this ambiguity.

2

Summary: *Revelation 2 contains four of the seven letters to the churches of Asia: Ephesus (vv. 1-7), Smyrna (vv. 8-11), Pergamum (vv. 12-17), and Thyatira (vv. 18-29). Each letter follows a consistent pattern: an address identifying Christ by a feature from the chapter 1 vision, a commendation ('I know your works'), a criticism or encouragement, a command, and a promise 'to the one who conquers.' Ephesus is praised for endurance but has abandoned its first love. Smyrna faces suffering and is told to be faithful unto death. Pergamum holds fast to Christ's name but tolerates false teaching. Thyatira is commended for love and service but rebuked for tolerating a false prophetess.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *Each letter begins with a self-description of Christ drawn from the vision of 1:12-20, creating a direct literary connection. The promises to the conqueror in each letter anticipate the final vision of the new creation in chapters 21-22 (tree of life, no second death, hidden manna, morning star). The reference to 'the synagogue of Satan' (2:9) reflects a sharp conflict between the early church and local Jewish communities over claims to be the true people of God. The 'Nicolaitans' and the teaching of 'Balaam' appear to involve compromise with Greco-Roman religious culture, particularly eating food offered to idols and sexual immorality.*

Translation Friction: *The phrase 'synagogue of Satan' (2:9) is historically specific to a first-century dispute and must not be generalized; we render it as written. 'Jezebel' in the Thyatira letter (2:20) is likely a symbolic name drawn from the Old Testament figure, not a literal name; we note the allusion. The precise identity of the Nicolaitans is uncertain; we render the name without speculative identification.*

Connections: *Ephesus: Genesis 2:9 and Revelation 22:2 (tree of life). Smyrna: Daniel 1:12-14 (testing period). Pergamum: Numbers 22-25 (Balaam), Numbers 25:1-2 (eating sacrifices, sexual immorality), Exodus 16:33-34 (hidden manna), Isaiah 62:2 (new name). Thyatira: 1 Kings 16:31, 21:25 (Jezebel), Psalm 2:8-9 (ruling nations with iron rod), Isaiah 14:12 (morning star).*

¹To the angel of the church in Ephesus write: These are the words of the one who holds the seven stars in his right hand, who walks among the seven golden lampstands: ²"I know your works, your labor and your endurance, and that you cannot tolerate evil people. You have tested those who claim to be apostles but are not, and you have found them to be false. ³You have endurance, and you have borne up for the sake of my name, and you have not grown weary. ⁴But I have this against you: you have abandoned the love you had at first. ⁵Remember then how far you have fallen. Repent, and do the works you did at first. If you do not, I will come to you and remove your lampstand from its place — unless you repent. ⁶But you do have this: you hate the works of the Nicolaitans, which I also hate. ⁷Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To the one who conquers, I will grant the right to eat from the tree of life, which is in the paradise of God." ⁸To the angel of the church in Smyrna write: These are the words of the first and the last, who was dead and came to life: ⁹"I know your tribulation and your poverty — but you are rich — and the slander of those who say they are Jews and are not, but are a synagogue of Satan. ¹⁰Do not fear what you are about to suffer. Look, the devil is about to throw some of you into prison so that you may be tested, and you will face tribulation for ten days. Be faithful even to the point of death, and I will give you the crown of life. ¹¹Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches. The one who conquers will not be harmed by the second death." ¹²To the angel of the church in Pergamum write: These are the words of the one who has the sharp two-edged sword: ¹³"I know where you dwell — where Satan's throne is. Yet you hold fast to my name, and you did not deny your faith in me even in the days of Antipas, my faithful witness, who was killed among you, where Satan dwells. ¹⁴But I have a few things against you: you have some there who hold to the teaching of Balaam, who taught Balak to put a stumbling block before the sons of Israel, so that they would eat food sacrificed to idols and practice sexual immorality. ¹⁵In the same way, you also have some who hold to the teaching of the Nicolaitans. ¹⁶Therefore repent. If you do not, I will come to you soon and wage war against them with the sword of my mouth. ¹⁷Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches. To the one who conquers, I will give some of the hidden manna, and I will give him a white stone, and on the stone a new name written that no one knows except the one who receives it." ¹⁸To the angel of the church in Thyatira

write: These are the words of the Son of God, who has eyes like a flame of fire and feet like burnished bronze: ¹⁹"I know your works — your love, faith, service, and endurance — and that your last works are greater than your first. ²⁰But I have this against you: you tolerate that woman Jezebel, who calls herself a prophetess and teaches and deceives my servants to practice sexual immorality and to eat food sacrificed to idols. ²¹I gave her time to repent, but she refuses to repent of her sexual immorality. ²²Look, I will throw her onto a bed of sickness, and those who commit adultery with her into great tribulation, unless they repent of her works. ²³I will strike her children dead, and all the churches will know that I am the one who searches minds and hearts, and I will give to each of you according to your works. ²⁴But to the rest of you in Thyatira, who do not hold this teaching, who have not known what they call 'the deep things of Satan' — I place no other burden on you. ²⁵Only hold fast to what you have until I come. ²⁶The one who conquers and who keeps my works until the end — to that one I will give authority over the nations, ²⁷He will rule them with a rod of iron. As the vessels of a potter will they be broken to shivers:. ²⁸Indeed as I received of my Father. And I will provide him the morning star. ²⁹Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The formula *tade legei* ('these things says') echoes the prophetic messenger formula of the Old Testament ('thus says the LORD'). Christ's self-identification draws from 1:13 and 1:16. The verb *peripatōn* ('walking') implies active presence — Christ is not distant from his churches but moves among them. Ephesus was the largest and most prominent city in the province of Asia, home to the famous temple of Artemis.
2. The Greek *oida* ('I know') is emphatic — Christ's knowledge is comprehensive and personal. The triad of 'works, labor, endurance' (*erga, kopon, hypomonēn*) suggests both active effort and patient suffering. The testing of false apostles indicates a community with strong doctrinal vigilance — a quality that will be contrasted with their deficiency in verse 4.
3. The Greek *ou kekopiakes* ('you have not grown weary') uses the perfect tense, indicating a sustained state — they have not flagged despite ongoing hardship. The phrase 'for the sake of my name' (*dia to onoma mou*) connects their suffering to their identification with Christ.
4. The Greek *aphēkes* ('you have abandoned, left behind') is a strong word — not 'diminished' or 'cooled' but actively forsaken. The 'first love' (*tēn agapēn sou tēn prōtēn*) likely refers to the initial fervent devotion to Christ and to one another that characterized the community's founding. The irony is sharp: a church excellent at doctrinal vigilance has lost the very thing that motivated its faith.
5. Three imperatives frame the call to restoration: 'remember' (*mnēmoneue*), 'repent' (*metanoēson*), and 'do' (*poiēson*). Repentance here is not merely feeling sorry but taking concrete action — returning to the 'first works.' The threat to remove the lampstand means the loss of the church's identity and witness — it would cease to exist as a church. This is not about individual salvation but about the community's corporate calling.
6. The identity of the Nicolaitans (*Nikolaitōn*) is uncertain. Early church tradition connected them to Nicolas of Antioch (Acts 6:5), but this is unverifiable. Their 'works' appear related to the teaching of Balaam in 2:14-15 — compromise with pagan religious practices. The name may be a Greek equivalent of the Hebrew Balaam (both possibly meaning 'conqueror of the people'), though this etymology is debated. Christ's statement 'which I also hate' validates the church's rejection of these practices.
7. The hearing formula ('let the one who has an ear hear') echoes Jesus's words in the Synoptic Gospels (Matthew 11:15; 13:9). The promise of the 'tree of life' (*xylou tēs zōēs*) reaches back to Genesis 2:9 and 3:22-24 — access to the tree that was lost at the fall is restored to those who conquer. The same tree reappears in Revelation 22:2. The word *paradeisos* ('paradise') is a Persian loanword originally meaning 'an enclosed garden,' used in the Septuagint for the Garden of Eden.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. Christ's self-identification draws from 1:17-18. For a church facing death, Christ identifies himself as one who has already passed through death and conquered it. Smyrna (modern Izmir) was a prosperous port city; its name is related to the word for myrrh, an aromatic resin associated with burial — an ironic connection given the letter's theme of suffering and death.
9. The paradox 'poverty but rich' (*ptōcheian, alla plousios*) inverts worldly categories — material deprivation coexists with spiritual wealth, a reversal that contrasts sharply with Laodicea (3:17). The phrase 'synagogue of Satan' (*synagōgē tou satana*) reflects a specific local conflict where certain members of the Jewish community were opposing or denouncing Christians to Roman authorities. This is not a blanket condemnation of Judaism but a charge against specific accusers. The Greek *blasphēmian* here means 'slander' or 'defamation' rather than blasphemy in the theological sense.
10. The 'ten days' (*hēmerōn deka*) may echo Daniel 1:12-14 (Daniel's ten-day test) or simply indicate a limited, defined period of suffering. The promise 'be faithful unto death' (*ginou pistos achri thanatou*) does not mean 'until you die of old age' but 'even if faithfulness costs your life.' The 'crown of life' (*ton stephanon tēs zōēs*) uses *stephanos*, the victor's wreath given to athletic champions, not *diadēma* (a royal crown) — the imagery is of winning a contest through endurance. Smyrna was famous for its athletic games, making this metaphor locally resonant.

10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 1:12-14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The double negative *ou mē* ('absolutely not') is the strongest form of negation in Greek — there is no possibility of harm from the second death for the one who conquers. The 'second death' (*tou thanatou tou deuterou*) is defined in 20:14 as 'the lake of fire.' Physical death may come to the faithful in Smyrna, but the second death — final, permanent separation from God — holds no power over them.
12. Christ's self-identification draws from 1:16. For a church in a city dominated by Roman imperial authority, the reference to a sword is significant — Rome claimed the 'right of the sword' (*ius gladii*), the authority to execute. Christ holds a greater sword, one that proceeds from his mouth (the word of truth that judges all human authority). Pergamum was the administrative capital of the province of Asia and a major center of emperor worship.
13. The 'throne of Satan' (*ho thronos tou satana*) may refer to the great altar of Zeus on the Pergamum acropolis, the temple of Augustus and Roma (the first provincial temple of the imperial cult in Asia), or the city's role as the judicial seat where death sentences were pronounced. The exact referent is uncertain; the point is that Pergamum was a stronghold of forces opposed to Christ. Antipas is called 'my faithful witness' (*ho martys mou ho pistos mou*) — the same title given to Christ himself in 1:5. The word *martys* here carries both its original meaning ('witness') and its developing sense of 'one who dies for testimony' — the English word 'martyr' derives from this Greek word.
14. The reference to Balaam draws on Numbers 22-25 and 31:16. According to the tradition, Balaam could not curse Israel directly, so he advised Balak to seduce Israel into idolatry and sexual sin through Moabite women — an indirect strategy of corruption from within. The parallel is clear: some in Pergamum are teaching that participation in pagan religious feasts (which involved eating idol-sacrificed food and often ritual sexual activity) is acceptable. The Greek *eidōlothyta* ('food sacrificed to idols') and *porneusai* ('to practice sexual immorality') are the same issues addressed at the Jerusalem Council (Acts 15:20, 29).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Numbers 22-25. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The word *homoiōs* ('in the same way, likewise') links the Nicolaitans directly to the teaching of Balaam — the two groups may be identical or share the same essential error of accommodating pagan practice. The SBLGNT does not include 'which thing I hate' (found in some manuscripts and reflected in the KJV); we follow the critical text.
16. The command to repent is directed to the whole church ('you,' singular, addressing the congregation), but the war is directed against 'them' (the Nicolaitans/Balaamites). The church as a whole is responsible for tolerating false teaching within its community. The 'sword of my mouth' (*tē rhomphaia tou stomatos mou*) is the word of Christ that exposes and judges — the same sword described in 1:16 and drawn from Isaiah 49:2.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 49:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Three gifts are promised: hidden manna, a white stone, and a new name. The 'hidden manna' (*tou manna tou kekrymmenou*) alludes to the jar of manna preserved in the ark of the covenant (Exodus 16:33-34; Hebrews 9:4) and to Jewish tradition that Jeremiah hid the ark before the Babylonian destruction. Against the temptation to eat idol-food, Christ offers heavenly food. The 'white stone' (*psēphon leukēn*) has been variously interpreted: a voting pebble signifying acquittal, an admission token to a feast, or a victor's token. The 'new name' may echo Isaiah 62:2 ('you will be called by a new name that the mouth of the LORD will bestow'). Its secrecy — known only to the recipient — suggests an intimate, personal relationship between Christ and the individual believer.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 16:33-34. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 62:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This is the only place in Revelation where the title 'Son of God' (*ho huios tou theou*) is used explicitly. The description draws from 1:14-15. Thyatira was the smallest of the seven cities but receives the longest letter. The city was known for its trade guilds (including dyeing — Lydia, the seller of purple cloth in Acts 16:14, was from Thyatira). Guild membership typically required participation in guild feasts held in pagan temples, creating the central tension of this letter.
19. Four qualities are listed: love (*agapēn*), faith (*pistin*), service (*diakonian*), and endurance (*hypomonēn*). Notably, Thyatira possesses the very quality Ephesus has lost — love. The statement that their 'last works are greater than the first' (*ta erga sou ta eschata pleiona tōn prōtōn*) indicates a growing, maturing community — the opposite trajectory from Ephesus, which declined from its first love.
20. The name 'Jezebel' (Iezabel) almost certainly alludes to Ahab's wife in 1 Kings 16:31 and 21:25, who promoted Baal worship in Israel and persecuted the prophets of the LORD. Whether this is the woman's actual name or a prophetic label is debated; the Old Testament association — a woman who leads God's people into idolatry — is clearly intended. The charges are identical to the Balaam/Nicolaitan teaching in the Pergamum letter: idol-food and sexual immorality, the twin temptations of assimilation into Greco-Roman culture.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Kings 16:31 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. The verb *edōka* ('I gave') is aorist — time for repentance was given at a specific past point. The present tense *ou thelei* ('she does not wish, refuses') indicates an ongoing, deliberate choice. The opportunity for repentance was real but has been rejected. God's patience has a boundary.

- 22.** The 'bed' (klinēn) is an ironic reversal — the bed of illicit pleasure becomes a bed of illness and judgment. The Greek moicheuontas ('committing adultery') may be literal or metaphorical (spiritual unfaithfulness, following the Old Testament prophetic tradition where idolatry is depicted as adultery — cf. Hosea, Ezekiel 16, 23). The condition 'unless they repent' (ean mē metanoēsōsin) keeps the door open — even followers of Jezebel can still turn back.
- 22.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 23.** The phrase 'her children' (ta tekna autēs) likely refers to her committed followers, not biological offspring. The expression 'searches minds and hearts' (eraunōn nephrou kai kardias) echoes Jeremiah 17:10 ('I the LORD search the heart and test the mind'), directly applying a divine prerogative of YHWH to Christ. The Greek nephrou literally means 'kidneys,' which in ancient thought were the seat of deep emotion and will — we render it as 'minds' for clarity. The principle of judgment 'according to your works' (kata ta erga hymōn) echoes Psalm 62:12 and Proverbs 24:12.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 17:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 62:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 23.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Proverbs 24:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 24.** The phrase ta bathēta tou satana ('the deep things of Satan') is ambiguous: it may be what Jezebel's followers claimed as their own teaching (claiming to know 'deep things,' possibly gnostic-style secret knowledge, which Christ relabels as satanic), or it may be Christ's own label for their teaching. The phrase hōs legousin ('as they say') suggests the former — they advertised their knowledge of 'deep things,' and Christ reframes it. The phrase 'no other burden' (ou...allo baros) echoes the language of the Jerusalem Council's decision (Acts 15:28).
- 25.** The imperative kratēsate ('hold fast, grip firmly') implies active resistance, not passive waiting. The phrase achri hou an hēxō ('until I come') points to the return of Christ — the eschatological horizon that frames all seven letters.
- 26.** The promise shifts from individual rewards (tree of life, hidden manna) to cosmic authority. The phrase exousian epi tōn ethnōn ('authority over the nations') draws from Psalm 2, which is quoted directly in the next verse. This is a royal promise: those who share in Christ's faithful endurance will share in his reign.
- 26.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
- 27.** This is a direct quotation from Psalm 2:9 (LXX), a royal enthronement psalm. The verb poimanei can mean 'to rule' or 'to shepherd' — the dual meaning is deliberate, as ancient kings were conceived as shepherds of their people. The iron rod and shattered pottery express the irresistible authority of the messianic king. In Psalm 2, this authority belongs to God's anointed; here Christ shares it with those who conquer.
- 27.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalms 2:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 28.** Christ's authority is derived from the Father and then shared with the faithful — a chain of delegated sovereignty. The 'morning star' (ton astera ton prōinon) is identified in 22:16 as Christ himself ('I am the bright morning star'). The gift of the morning star is therefore the gift of Christ's own presence and glory. The morning star allusion may also draw on Numbers 24:17 ('A star will come out of Jacob'), one of the oldest messianic oracles.
- 28.** [TCR Cross-Reference] References Numbers 24:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
- 29.** In the first three letters, the hearing formula precedes the promise to the conqueror; in the last four (beginning with Thyatira), the promise precedes the hearing formula. This structural shift at the midpoint of the seven letters may be intentional, though its significance is debated.

3

Summary: Revelation 3 contains the final three of seven letters to the churches of Asia: Sardis (vv. 1-6), Philadelphia (vv. 7-13), and Laodicea (vv. 14-22). Sardis has a reputation for being alive but is actually dead and is called to wake up. Philadelphia, despite little power, has kept Christ's word and is promised an open door that no one can shut and protection from the coming hour of trial. Laodicea is famously 'lukewarm' — neither hot nor cold — and is warned that Christ is about to spit them out of his mouth. Yet even to Laodicea the invitation remains: Christ stands at the door and knocks.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Sardis and Laodicea letters contain no commendation, while the Philadelphia and Smyrna letters (ch. 2) contain no criticism — only two churches on each extreme. The 'open door' promise to Philadelphia (3:8) may relate to missionary opportunity or eschatological access. The Laodicea letter's imagery is drawn from local conditions: Laodicea's water supply came via aqueduct from hot springs near Hierapolis and arrived lukewarm; the city was a wealthy banking center (hence 'you say I am rich'); and it was famous for black wool and eye salve (hence the counsel to buy white garments and eye ointment). The image of Christ knocking at the door (3:20) has become one of the most recognized images in Christian art and devotion.*

Translation Friction: *The 'synagogue of Satan' reference recurs in the Philadelphia letter (3:9), reflecting the same first-century Jewish-Christian conflict noted in the Smyrna letter. The 'hour of trial coming on the whole world' (3:10) has been variously interpreted as a local persecution, a future tribulation, or both; we render the text as written. The phrase 'I will spit you out of my mouth' (3:16) uses the Greek emesai, which literally means 'to vomit.'*

Connections: *Sardis: Isaiah 29:13 (outward appearance vs. reality), Daniel 5:27 (weighed and found wanting). Philadelphia: Isaiah 22:22 (key of David), Isaiah 60:14 (enemies bowing before God's people), Isaiah 62:2 (new name). Laodicea: Hosea 12:8 (Israel's false self-assessment of wealth), Proverbs 3:12 (whom the Lord loves he disciplines), Song of Solomon 5:2 (knocking at the door).*

¹To the angel of the church in Sardis write: These are the words of the one who holds the seven spirits of God and the seven stars: "I know your works. You have a reputation for being alive, but you are dead. ²Wake up, and strengthen what remains and is about to die, for I have not found your works complete before my God. ³Remember then what you received and heard. Keep it, and repent. If you do not wake up, I will come like a thief, and you will not know at what hour I will come against you. ⁴Yet you have a few people in Sardis who have not soiled their garments, and they will walk with me in white, for they are worthy. ⁵The one who conquers will be clothed in white garments in this way, and I will never blot his name out of the book of life. I will confess his name before my Father and before his angels. ⁶Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches." ⁷To the angel of the church in Philadelphia write: These are the words of the holy one, the true one, who has the key of David, who opens and no one will shut, who shuts and no one opens: ⁸"I know your works. Look, I have placed before you an open door that no one is able to shut. I know that you have little power, yet you have kept my word and have not denied my name. ⁹Look, I will make those of the synagogue of Satan who say they are Jews and are not, but lie — look, I will make them come and bow down before your feet, and they will know that I have loved you. ¹⁰Because you have kept my word of endurance, I will also keep you from the hour of trial that is about to come upon the whole world, to test those who dwell on the earth. ¹¹I am coming soon. Hold fast to what you have, so that no one takes your crown. ¹²The one who conquers — I will make him a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will never go out of it again. I will write on him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God — the new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from my God — and my own new name. ¹³Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches." ¹⁴To the angel of the church in Laodicea write: These are the words of the Amen, the faithful and true witness, the origin of God's creation: ¹⁵"I know your works: you are neither cold nor hot. I wish you were either cold or hot. ¹⁶So, because you are lukewarm — neither hot nor cold — I am about to vomit you out of my mouth. ¹⁷For you say, 'I am rich; I have prospered and need nothing,' not realizing that you are wretched, pitiful, poor, blind, and naked. ¹⁸I counsel you to buy from me gold refined by fire so that you may be rich, and white garments so that you may be clothed and the shame of your nakedness not be exposed, and eye salve to anoint your eyes so that you may see. ¹⁹Those whom I love, I rebuke and discipline. Therefore be zealous and repent. ²⁰Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and eat with him, and he with me. ²¹The one who conquers, I will grant him to sit with me on my throne, just as I also conquered and sat down with my Father on his throne. ²²Let the one who has an ear hear what the Spirit says to the churches."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Christ identifies himself by holding both the seven spirits (fullness of the Spirit) and the seven stars (the churches' angels) — complete authority over spiritual life and over the churches. The indictment is devastating: *onoma echeis hoti zēs* ('you have a name that you are alive') — reputation without

reality. Sardis was historically captured twice by enemies who exploited its defenders' complacency (by Cyrus in 547 BC and by Antiochus III in 214 BC), giving the command to 'wake up' in verse 2 a pointed local resonance.

2. The imperative ginou grēgorōn ('become watchful/wake up') uses the present imperative, indicating a state that must begin and continue. The verb stērisōn ('strengthen') is aorist — an urgent, decisive action. What remains is 'about to die' (emellon apothanein) — the situation is critical but not yet beyond rescue. The works are not called sinful but 'incomplete' (peplērōmena in the negative) — Sardis has started well but not followed through.
3. The four imperatives — 'remember' (mnēmoneue), 'keep' (tērei), 'repent' (metanoēsōn) — escalate in urgency. The thief metaphor (hōs kleptēs) echoes Jesus's teaching in Matthew 24:43-44 and Paul's use in 1 Thessalonians 5:2. Given Sardis's history of being captured because its watchmen fell asleep, the image of a thief in the night would have been particularly stinging. The phrase 'come against you' (hēxō epi se) is threatening rather than comforting — this is a coming in judgment.
4. The word onomata ('names') is used metonymically for people — a few individuals amid the spiritually dead church have remained faithful. 'Soiled their garments' (emolunan ta himatia) is a metaphor for moral or spiritual contamination. Walking 'in white' (en leukois) symbolizes purity, victory, and festal celebration — white garments were worn at Roman triumphs and at festivals. The declaration 'they are worthy' (axioi eisin) stands in implicit contrast to the unworthiness of the majority.
5. Three promises: white garments (purity/victory), retention in the book of life, and personal acknowledgment by Christ before God. The 'book of life' (tēs biblou tēs zōēs) appears in Exodus 32:32-33, Psalm 69:28, and Daniel 12:1 — a register of those who belong to God. The double negative ou mē ('never, absolutely not') provides emphatic assurance. Christ's promise to 'confess' (homologēsō) their name echoes his teaching in Matthew 10:32 ('whoever acknowledges me before others, I will also acknowledge before my Father in heaven').
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 32:32-33 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 69:28 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The hearing formula closes the Sardis letter. As in the final four letters, it follows rather than precedes the promise to the conqueror.
7. Unlike the other letters, Christ does not identify himself by features from the chapter 1 vision but by titles — 'the holy one' (ho hagios) and 'the true one' (ho alēthinos) — that are divine attributes in the Old Testament. The 'key of David' (tēn klein Daid) draws directly from Isaiah 22:22, where Eliakim is given the key to the house of David, granting unrestricted authority to grant or deny access. Applied to Christ, this means he alone controls access to God's kingdom. Philadelphia ('brotherly love') was a frontier city founded to spread Greek culture eastward — a detail that adds resonance to the 'open door' promise.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 22:22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The 'open door' (thyran ēneōgmenēn) has been interpreted as missionary opportunity (cf. Paul's use in 1 Corinthians 16:9, 2 Corinthians 2:12, Colossians 4:3) or as assured access to God's kingdom. Given the key-of-David context, the latter is primary — Christ has opened a door for Philadelphia that no earthly power can close. The phrase 'little power' (mikran echeis dynamin) is not a rebuke but an acknowledgment of the church's small size and limited social influence. Despite their weakness, they have been faithful — the opposite of Sardis, which had reputation but no reality.
9. The 'synagogue of Satan' reappears from the Smyrna letter (2:9), indicating a similar conflict in Philadelphia. The promise that opponents will 'bow before your feet' (proskynēsousin enōpion tōn podōn sou) echoes Isaiah 60:14 ('the children of your oppressors will come bowing before you') and Isaiah 49:23. The ironic reversal is striking: those who denied the Philadelphian Christians' status before God will be brought to acknowledge that God's love rests on this small, weak community. The verb proskynēsousin here means 'bow down' or 'do obeisance,' not necessarily 'worship' in the fullest sense.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 60:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 49:23. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The phrase ton logon tēs hypomonēs mou ('my word of endurance') means either 'the word about my endurance' or 'the word that calls for endurance' — the genitive is ambiguous and may be intentionally so. The promise tērēsō ek ('I will keep from') is debated: ek can mean 'out of' (removal from) or 'through' (protection within). The text does not resolve whether Christians will be absent from the trial or preserved through it. The 'hour of trial' (tēs hōras tou peirasmou) coming on the 'whole world' (tēs oikoumenēs holēs) indicates a universal scope — not merely local persecution but a worldwide crisis.
11. The present tense erchomai ('I am coming') conveys imminence and certainty. The 'crown' (ton stephanon) is the victor's wreath, as in 2:10 — not a possession to be casually held but a prize that can be forfeited through unfaithfulness. The warning 'so that no one takes' (hina mēdeis labē) implies that the crown is not irrevocably secured but depends on continued faithfulness.
12. Three names are inscribed on the conqueror: God's name, the city's name, and Christ's new name — expressing total belonging. The 'pillar' (stulon) metaphor promises permanence in God's presence. Philadelphia experienced frequent earthquakes, and after the devastating earthquake of 17 AD, residents often fled the city to the surrounding countryside; the promise 'he will never go out again' (exō ou mē exelthē eti) would resonate

powerfully with people who knew the terror of collapsing buildings. The 'new Jerusalem' (kainēs Ierousalēm) anticipates the climactic vision of chapters 21-22. Christ says 'my God' (tou theou mou) four times in this verse, emphasizing his mediatorial role.

13. The hearing formula closes the Philadelphia letter, the sixth of seven. Philadelphia and Smyrna are the only two churches that receive no rebuke — both are small, suffering communities that have remained faithful.
14. Christ identifies himself with three titles: 'the Amen' (ho amēn) — the one in whom all God's promises find their 'yes' (cf. 2 Corinthians 1:20; Isaiah 65:16, where God is called 'the God of Amen/truth'); 'the faithful and true witness' (ho martys ho pistos kai alēthinos); and 'the origin of God's creation' (hē archē tēs ktiseōs tou theou). The Greek archē can mean 'beginning,' 'origin,' 'ruler,' or 'first cause.' We render it as 'origin' to avoid the misreading that Christ was the first created being — the term indicates source and sovereignty, not temporal sequence, consistent with its use in Colossians 1:15-18.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 65:16. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The hot/cold metaphor has often been misread as 'fervent vs. opposed.' In context, both hot water (from the nearby hot springs of Hierapolis, used for healing) and cold water (from the mountain springs of Colossae, refreshing and pure) were useful. Lukewarm water — what Laodicea actually received through its aqueduct — was nauseating and useless. The point is not that opposition is preferable to indifference, but that the Laodicean church provides neither healing nor refreshment. The Greek ophelon ('I wish, would that') expresses strong desire.
16. The Greek emesai literally means 'to vomit' — a visceral, revolting image. The KJV's 'spue' (spew) softens this slightly. We render the physical force of the verb directly. The verb mellō ('I am about to') indicates imminence but not yet completion — there is still time for Laodicea to change. Anyone who drank the tepid, mineral-laden water arriving through Laodicea's aqueduct would understand this metaphor immediately.
17. The contrast is total: Laodicea's self-assessment ('rich, prospered, needing nothing') is the exact opposite of Christ's diagnosis ('wretched, pitiful, poor, blind, naked'). The fivefold indictment dismantles every claim. Laodicea was genuinely wealthy — after an earthquake in 60 AD, the city famously refused imperial aid and rebuilt with its own resources (Tacitus, Annals 14.27). The church has absorbed the city's self-sufficient attitude. The echo of Hosea 12:8 ('I have become wealthy; I have found riches for myself') is unmistakable — Israel made the same boast.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Hosea 12:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Each remedy precisely addresses a local industry and a spiritual deficiency. Laodicea was a banking center (gold), known for its glossy black wool textiles (garments), and home to a famous medical school that produced a Phrygian eye powder (eye salve). Christ ironically tells this commercially successful city to 'buy' from him — the only merchant whose goods can address their actual poverty. The gold 'refined by fire' (pepyrōmenon ek pyros) suggests faith tested through suffering (cf. 1 Peter 1:7). The white garments contrast with the city's signature black wool.
19. This verse reveals that the severe language of the Laodicean letter is motivated by love (philō), not rejection. The principle echoes Proverbs 3:12 ('the LORD disciplines those he loves') and Hebrews 12:6. The Greek verb philō indicates personal, affectionate love — even lukewarm Laodicea is loved. The two imperatives 'be zealous' (zēleue) and 'repent' (metanoēson) call for passionate commitment and a decisive turn — the opposite of lukewarm indifference.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Proverbs 3:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. This verse is often read as an evangelistic appeal to non-believers, but in context Christ is addressing a church — he stands outside the door of a community that bears his name. The image may draw on Song of Solomon 5:2 ('I slept but my heart was awake. A sound! My beloved is knocking'). The meal (deipnēsō, 'I will dine/eat the evening meal') suggests intimate fellowship — table fellowship in the ancient world signified deep personal relationship. The reciprocity is striking: 'I with him and he with me' (met' autou kai autos met' emou) — a shared meal where both host and guest give and receive.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Song of Solomon 5:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. This is the climactic promise of the seven letters — the greatest of all the rewards. The conqueror is offered a share in Christ's own throne, which is itself a share in the Father's throne. The chain is explicit: the Father shares his throne with Christ, Christ shares his throne with the faithful. The verb enikēsa ('I conquered') uses the same root as nikōn ('the one who conquers') — Christ's conquest (through faithful suffering and death) is the pattern for the believer's conquest.
22. The hearing formula closes the seventh and final letter, completing the cycle that began in 2:1. The seven letters collectively address every possible condition a church can face: persecution, false teaching, compromise, complacency, decline, faithfulness in weakness, and self-satisfied indifference. Together they form a comprehensive pastoral address to the church in every age.

4

Summary: *Revelation 4 shifts from the seven churches on earth to the throne room of heaven. John sees an open door in heaven and hears the trumpet-like voice from chapter 1 calling him to come up. He is immediately 'in the Spirit' and sees a throne with one seated on it, described in terms of precious stones and surrounded by a rainbow. Twenty-four elders on twenty-four thrones encircle the central throne, dressed in white with golden crowns. From the throne come lightning, thunder, and voices. Seven blazing torches burn before the throne. A crystal sea stretches before it. Four living creatures — one like a lion, one like an ox, one with a human face, and one like a flying eagle — each covered with eyes and having six wings, never cease to cry: 'Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, who was and is and is to come.' When they give glory, the twenty-four elders fall down in worship, casting their crowns before the throne.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The throne-room vision draws heavily from three Old Testament sources: Isaiah 6 (seraphim with six wings crying 'Holy, holy, holy'), Ezekiel 1 and 10 (four living creatures with multiple faces and eyes), and Daniel 7 (the Ancient of Days on his throne). John synthesizes these traditions into a single, cohesive vision. The one on the throne is never directly named or described in anthropomorphic terms — only through the imagery of light refracted through gemstones. The 'trisagion' (threefold 'holy') is one of the oldest continuous liturgical elements in Christian worship. The twenty-four elders may represent the twelve tribes and twelve apostles — the full people of God from both covenants.*

Translation Friction: *We render the vision as presented without attempting to identify the symbolic referents definitively. The rainbow (iris) is described as 'like an emerald' (homoios horasei smaragdinō), which is unusual since rainbows are multicolored; this may refer to a dominant green hue or to a circular halo of light. The precise identification of the gemstones (iaspidi, sardiō) is uncertain; ancient gem names do not always correspond to modern ones.*

Connections: *Isaiah 6:1-4 (seraphim, trisagion), Ezekiel 1:4-28 (four living creatures, throne, rainbow, crystal), Ezekiel 10 (cherubim), Daniel 7:9-10 (Ancient of Days, throne, fire), 1 Kings 22:19 (heavenly court), Exodus 24:10 (sapphire pavement under God's feet). The 'sea of glass' may echo the bronze sea in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:23) or the cosmic waters above the firmament (Genesis 1:6-7).*

¹After this I looked, and there before me was an open door in heaven. And the first voice that I had heard speaking to me like a trumpet said, "Come up here, and I will show you what must take place after this." ²At once I was in the Spirit, and there before me was a throne set in heaven, with one seated on the throne. ³And the one seated there had the appearance of jasper and carnelian, and around the throne was a rainbow that had the appearance of an emerald. ⁴Around the throne were twenty-four thrones, and seated on the thrones were twenty-four elders, clothed in white garments, with golden crowns on their heads. ⁵From the throne came flashes of lightning, rumblings, and peals of thunder. Before the throne burned seven torches of fire, which are the seven spirits of God. ⁶Before the throne there was something like a sea of glass, like crystal. And in the center, around the throne, were four living creatures covered with eyes in front and behind. ⁷The first living creature was like a lion, the second living creature was like an ox, the third living creature had a face like that of a human, and the fourth living creature was like a flying eagle.

⁸Each of the four living creatures had six wings and was covered with eyes all around and within. Day and night they never cease to say:

"Holy, holy, holy,
Lord God Almighty,
who was and is and is to come!"

⁹And whenever the living creatures give glory and honor and thanksgiving to the one seated on the throne, who lives forever and ever, ¹⁰The four and twenty elders fall down prior to him that sat on the throne, and worship him that liveth for ever and ever, and cast their crowns prior to the throne and stated,

11 "Worthy are you, our Lord and God,
to receive glory and honor and power,
for you created all things,
and by your will they existed and were created."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase *meta tauta* ('after this') marks a major structural transition — from the earthly churches to the heavenly throne room. The 'first voice' (*hē phōnē hē prōtē*) refers back to 1:10, connecting this scene to the initial commission. The open door in heaven (*thyra ēneōgmenē en tō ouranō*) recalls Ezekiel 1:1 ('the heavens were opened and I saw visions of God'). The phrase *ha dei genesthai* ('what must take place') echoes Daniel 2:28-29 (LXX), where Daniel reveals to Nebuchadnezzar 'what must happen in the last days.'
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 2:28-29. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. This is the second of four 'in the Spirit' (*en pneumati*) experiences in Revelation (1:10; 4:2; 17:3; 21:10), each introducing a major new vision. The description of the one on the throne is strikingly restrained — no human features are described, only the appearance of gemstones and light (v. 3). This reticence about depicting God directly follows the tradition of Ezekiel 1:26-28, where the prophet describes only 'the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD.'
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 1:26-28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. God is described entirely through light and gemstones — jasper (*iaspidi*, likely a clear, brilliant stone, not the modern opaque jasper) and carnelian (*sardiō*, a red stone). The combination of clear brilliance and deep red may evoke glory and judgment. The rainbow (*iris*) echoes Genesis 9:13-16, where the rainbow is the sign of God's covenant with Noah — its presence around the throne is a covenant symbol. The emerald-like quality (*smaragdinō*) gives the rainbow a dominant green hue, suggesting life and renewal. Ezekiel 1:28 similarly describes 'the appearance of a rainbow in the clouds' surrounding the divine presence.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 9:13-16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 1:28 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The twenty-four elders (*eikosi tessaras presbyterous*) have been variously identified as angelic beings, heavenly representatives of Israel's tribes, the combined twelve patriarchs and twelve apostles, or the twenty-four priestly divisions of 1 Chronicles 24. Their white garments recall the promise to the faithful in 3:4-5, and their crowns (*stephanous*, victor's wreaths) will be cast before the throne in verse 10. They sit on thrones (*thronous*), indicating delegated authority within a heavenly court.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Chronicles 24. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. Lightning, voices/rumblings, and thunder (*astrapai kai phōnai kai brontai*) echo the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:16) and recur at key structural points in Revelation (8:5; 11:19; 16:18), each time with escalating intensity. The seven torches (*hepta lampades pyros*) are explicitly identified as the seven spirits of God, connecting to 1:4 and 3:1. The imagery merges Zechariah's seven-lamped menorah (Zechariah 4:2) with the fiery presence of God. The Greek *lampades* refers to torches or large lamps, not small candles.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:16 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 4:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The 'sea of glass' (*thalassa hyalinē*) may recall the cosmic waters above the firmament (Genesis 1:6-7), the bronze sea in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 7:23-26), or the pavement of sapphire under God's feet at Sinai (Exodus 24:10). Its crystal-like stillness contrasts with the turbulent sea that symbolizes chaos elsewhere in Revelation. The four 'living creatures' (*zōa*, not 'beasts' as in the KJV — *zōa* means 'living beings,' while the hostile creatures of later chapters are *thēria*, 'beasts/wild animals'). Their eyes covering front and back suggest omniscient awareness. The description draws on Ezekiel 1:5-21 and 10:12.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:6-7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 7:23-26. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 24:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 1:5-21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The four faces correspond to Ezekiel 1:10, where each cherub has all four faces simultaneously; here each creature bears one face. The lion, ox, human, and eagle have been traditionally interpreted as representing the noblest, strongest, wisest, and swiftest of all creatures — the entirety of animate creation in worship before the Creator. Early Christian tradition also associated them with the four Gospels (lion = Mark, ox = Luke, human = Matthew, eagle = John), though this association is not in the text. The Greek *moschos* ('calf, young bull') is rendered 'ox' to capture the full-grown stature implied by the parallel with lion and eagle.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 1:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The six wings come from Isaiah 6:2 (the seraphim), while the eyes come from Ezekiel 1 and 10 (the cherubim). John's living creatures merge features of Isaiah's seraphim and Ezekiel's cherubim into a single heavenly order. The trisagion ('Holy, holy, holy') is a direct echo of Isaiah 6:3. In Hebrew, repetition for emphasis is common (doubling = superlative), but the threefold repetition is unique in the Old Testament and expresses the absolute holiness of God. The threefold temporal designation (*ho ēn kai ho ōn kai ho erchomenos*) repeats from 1:4 and 1:8, but here the order shifts — 'who was' comes first, perhaps emphasizing God's eternal past as foundation for present and future sovereignty.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 6:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The temporal clause *hotan dōsousin* ('whenever they give') uses the indefinite construction, indicating a repeated, ongoing action — each time the living creatures offer their praise, the elders respond. The three offerings — glory (*doxan*), honor (*timēn*), and thanksgiving (*eucharistian*) — will be expanded to seven in 7:12. The phrase *tō zōnti eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn* ('the one living into the ages of the ages') affirms God's eternal, inexhaustible life.
10. The casting of crowns (*balousin tous stephanous*) is an act of subordination — whatever authority or honor the elders possess is derived from and returned to the one on the throne. In Greco-Roman culture, subject kings would lay their crowns before the emperor as a sign of submission; here the gesture acknowledges that all created authority is delegated from and belongs to God. The repetition of 'forever and ever' reinforces the endless nature of this worship.
11. The acclamation 'worthy are you' (*axios ei*) deliberately echoes the Roman acclamation '*axios*' ('worthy!') used to acclaim emperors. The heavenly court declares God — not Caesar — as the one truly worthy of universal praise. The title 'our Lord and God' (*ho kyrios kai ho theos hēmōn*) is notably the same title the emperor Domitian reportedly demanded: *dominus et deus noster* ('our lord and god'). The ground for worship is creation — God made all things, and all things exist because of his will (*dia thelēma sou*). The verb *ēsan* ('they existed') preceding *ektisthēsan* ('they were created') is puzzling; it may mean 'they came into being and were created' or 'they existed [in God's purpose] and [then] were created.'

5

Summary: *Revelation 5 continues the throne-room vision as John sees a scroll sealed with seven seals in the right hand of the one on the throne. A mighty angel asks who is worthy to open the scroll, and no one in heaven, on earth, or under the earth is found worthy. John weeps bitterly. Then one of the elders tells him to stop weeping: 'The Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered.' But when John looks, he sees not a lion but a Lamb standing as though slaughtered, with seven horns and seven eyes. The Lamb takes the scroll, and the four living creatures and twenty-four elders fall before him, each holding harps and golden bowls of incense (the prayers of the saints). They sing a new song declaring the Lamb worthy because he was slaughtered and purchased people for God from every tribe and language. Myriads of angels join the worship, and finally every creature in all creation praises the one on the throne and the Lamb together.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The central literary and theological moment of the chapter — arguably of the entire book — is the contrast between what John hears and what he sees. He hears 'the Lion of Judah' but sees a slaughtered Lamb. This hear/see pattern is a key interpretive device in Revelation: the Lamb redefines what it means to be the Lion. Power operates through sacrifice. The Lamb (to arnion, a diminutive form) appears 28 times in Revelation, becoming the dominant christological image. The seven horns represent complete power, seven eyes complete knowledge (identified as the seven spirits of God sent into all the earth). The 'new song' combines themes from Isaiah 42:10*

(new song of salvation), Psalm 33:3, and Psalm 96:1.

Translation Friction: *The scroll (biblion) sealed with seven seals has been identified with various Old Testament backgrounds: Ezekiel's scroll of woes (Ezekiel 2:9-10), a Roman testament or will, a contract deed, or God's plan for history. We render it as written without resolving the identification. The phrase 'standing as though slaughtered' (hestēkos hōs esphagmenon) presents a paradox: the Lamb bears the marks of slaughter yet stands alive. We preserve this tension.*

Connections: *Genesis 49:9-10 (Lion of Judah), Isaiah 11:1, 10 (Root of David/Jesse), Isaiah 53:7 (lamb led to slaughter), Ezekiel 2:9-10 (scroll written on both sides), Daniel 7:10 (myriads of angels), Zechariah 4:10 (seven eyes of the LORD), Psalm 33:3, 96:1, 149:1 (new song), Exodus 19:6 (kingdom of priests), Isaiah 42:10 (new song of redemption).*

¹Then I saw in the right hand of the one seated on the throne a scroll written on the inside and on the back, sealed with seven seals. ²And I saw a mighty angel proclaiming in a loud voice, "Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?" ³And no one in heaven or on earth or under the earth was able to open the scroll or to look into it. ⁴And I wept and wept because no one was found worthy to open the scroll or to look into it. ⁵Then one of the elders said to me, "Stop weeping. Look, the Lion of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, has conquered, so that he can open the scroll and its seven seals." ⁶Then I saw, in the center of the throne and of the four living creatures and in the center of the elders, a Lamb standing as though slaughtered, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven spirits of God sent out into all the earth. ⁷He came and took the scroll from the right hand of the one seated on the throne. ⁸When he took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty-four elders fell down before the Lamb, each holding a harp and golden bowls full of incense, which are the prayers of the saints.

⁹And they sang a new song, saying:

"Worthy are you to take the scroll
and to open its seals,
for you were slaughtered
and by your blood you purchased people for God
from every tribe and language and people and nation,

¹⁰Has made us to our God kings and priests — and we will reign on the earth. ¹¹Then I looked, and I heard the voice of many angels around the throne and the living creatures and the elders, and their number was myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands, ¹²Declaring with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to accept authority, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing.

¹³And I heard every creature in heaven and on earth and under the earth and in the sea — everything in them — saying:

"To the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb
be blessing and honor and glory and dominion
forever and ever!"

¹⁴And the four living creatures said, "Amen!" And the elders fell down and worshiped.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The scroll (biblion) written on both sides echoes Ezekiel 2:9-10, where God's scroll was 'written on both sides with words of lamentation, mourning, and woe.' Writing on both sides indicates completeness — there is no room for additions. The seven seals (sphragisin hepta) indicate maximum security; each must be broken in sequence. In Roman legal practice, a testament required seven witnesses and seven seals. The scroll may represent God's redemptive plan, a decree of judgment, or the inheritance deed of creation.

1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 2:9-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

2. The 'mighty angel' (angelon ischyron) reappears in 10:1 and 18:21. The question 'who is worthy?' (tis axios) uses the same word (axios) as the acclamation in 4:11, where God is declared 'worthy.' The question is not merely 'who is able?' but 'who has the moral standing and authority?' The proclamation goes out to all of creation — the universal scope of the search emphasizes the uniqueness of the one who is eventually found worthy.
3. The threefold cosmic division — heaven, earth, under the earth — encompasses the totality of created existence (cf. Philippians 2:10). The Greek oudeis ('no one') is absolute. Not even looking at the scroll (blepein auto) is possible — the scroll's contents are completely inaccessible without a worthy mediator. The impossibility is total: no angel, no human, no being of any kind can approach God's sealed purpose.
4. The Greek ekleiaion poly ('I was weeping much') uses the imperfect tense, indicating continued, uncontrollable weeping — not a single tear but sustained grief. John's weeping reflects the devastating implication: if no one can open the scroll, God's purposes remain sealed and unrealized. Creation's story has no resolution, no redemption, no ending. The emotional intensity makes the resolution in verse 5 all the more dramatic.
5. Two messianic titles converge: 'the Lion of the tribe of Judah' from Genesis 49:9-10 (Jacob's blessing on Judah: 'Judah is a lion's cub') and 'the Root of David' from Isaiah 11:1, 10 (the shoot from Jesse's stump). Both are titles of royal power and conquest. The verb enikēsen ('has conquered') is the same root as nikōn ('the one who conquers') used in the promises to the seven churches — Christ is the archetypal conqueror. But the nature of his conquest will be radically redefined in the next verse.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 49:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 11:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. This is the pivotal moment of Revelation's theology. John hears 'Lion' but sees 'Lamb' — the hear/see contrast redefines conquest as sacrificial death. The Lamb (arnion, a diminutive of arēn) is small, vulnerable — yet it stands at the very center of heaven's power. 'Standing as though slaughtered' (hestēkos hōs esphagmenon) is a paradox: the marks of violent death are visible, yet the Lamb is alive and upright. The verb sphazō ('to slaughter') is the same used for ritual sacrifice. Seven horns represent complete power (horns = strength in biblical symbolism); seven eyes represent complete knowledge, identified with the seven spirits of God (cf. Zechariah 4:10, 'the eyes of the LORD that range through all the earth'). The slaughtered Lamb possesses omnipotence and omniscience.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 4:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The simplicity of this verse belies its enormity. The Lamb approaches the throne of God and takes the scroll — an act no one in all creation could perform. The perfect tense eilēphen ('has taken') in some manuscripts emphasizes the permanence of the act. The transfer of the scroll from the hand of God to the Lamb is the decisive moment of the entire heavenly scene — the one who was slaughtered now holds the destiny of creation.
8. The living creatures and elders offer the Lamb the same worship they gave to the one on the throne in 4:10 — a striking theological claim about the Lamb's divine status. The harps (kitharan) accompany the 'new song' of verse 9. The golden bowls of incense (phialas chrysas gemousas thymiamaton) directly identified as 'the prayers of the saints' (hai proseuchai tōn hagiōn) — the prayers of God's people on earth are present in heaven as fragrant offerings. This echoes Psalm 141:2 ('Let my prayer be set before you like incense'). The prayers of suffering believers are not lost but are held in golden vessels before the throne.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 141:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The 'new song' (ōdēn kainēn) echoes Psalms 33:3, 96:1, and 149:1, as well as Isaiah 42:10 — always a song celebrating God's new act of salvation. The Lamb is 'worthy' (axios) — answering the question of verse 2. The ground of worthiness is sacrificial death: 'you were slaughtered' (esphagēs) and 'you purchased' (ēgorasas). The SBLGNT does not include 'us' (hēmas) after 'purchased,' reading instead 'you purchased for God' people from every group — the universal scope is the emphasis. The fourfold formula 'tribe, language, people, nation' (phylēs, glōssēs, laou, ethnous) appears seven times in Revelation with slight variations, expressing the complete diversity of humanity.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 33:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 42:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The SBLGNT reads 'them' (autous) and 'they will reign' (basileusousin) rather than 'us' and 'we shall reign' — the elders and living creatures speak about the redeemed rather than identifying themselves as the redeemed. The echo of Exodus 19:6 ('a kingdom of priests') continues from 1:6. The future tense basileusousin ('they will reign') points to a still-future consummation of the saints' royal priesthood on earth — not in heaven as disembodied spirits but on the renewed earth.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 19:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The worship expands concentrically: the four living creatures and twenty-four elders (v. 8), then countless angels (v. 11), then every creature in existence (v. 13). The numbers myriades myriadōn kai chiliades chiliadōn ('myriads of myriads and thousands of thousands') echo Daniel 7:10, where the heavenly court numbers 'a thousand thousands served him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him.' These are not precise counts but expressions of innumerable multitude.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

12. Seven attributes are ascribed to the Lamb — power (dynamis), wealth (plouton), wisdom (sophia), might (ischyn), honor (timē), glory (doxa), and blessing (eulogia). The sevenfold list represents completeness — the Lamb deserves all praise without remainder. The angels' acclamation parallels but expands the threefold praise of 4:11 (glory, honor, power), now directed not to the Creator alone but to the slaughtered Lamb. That a slain animal receives the same worship as the one on the throne is the theological climax of the chapter.
13. The worship reaches its widest circle — every creature (pan ktisma) in the fourfold cosmic division (heaven, earth, under earth, sea) joins the praise. The Lamb now receives praise alongside the one on the throne in a single doxology — 'to the one seated on the throne and to the Lamb' (tō kathēmēnō epi tō thronō kai tō arniō). This coordinated worship is one of Revelation's strongest statements of the Lamb's divine status. The four attributes (blessing, honor, glory, dominion) are directed jointly to God and the Lamb, with no distinction in the quality or degree of worship. The phrase eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn ('forever and ever') ensures this is not temporary acclaim but eternal worship.
14. The chapter closes with the simplest possible response: 'Amen' from the living creatures and silent prostration from the elders. After the expanding circles of praise — four creatures, twenty-four elders, myriads of angels, every creature in existence — the scene resolves into stillness and wordless adoration. The SBLGNT does not include 'him who lives forever and ever' after 'worshiped' (found in some later manuscripts); the object of worship is implicit from the preceding context — both the one on the throne and the Lamb.

6

Summary: *Revelation 6 recounts the opening of the first six of the seven seals on the scroll. The first four seals release the four horsemen: a white horse (conquest), a red horse (war), a black horse (famine), and a pale horse (death), followed by Hades. The fifth seal reveals the souls of the martyrs under the altar, crying out for justice and told to wait until the full number of their fellow servants is completed. The sixth seal unleashes a cosmic catastrophe — a great earthquake, the sun turning black, the moon becoming like blood, stars falling, the sky rolling up, and every mountain and island displaced. The chapter ends with the terrified cry of kings, generals, and all people: 'Who is able to stand?'*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The four horsemen draw on Zechariah 1:8-11 and 6:1-8, where colored horses patrol the earth as agents of divine sovereignty. The imagery of cosmic collapse in the sixth seal comes from Isaiah 34:4 (the heavens rolled up like a scroll), Joel 2:31 (sun darkened, moon to blood), and Isaiah 2:19-21 (people hiding in rocks from God's terror). The cry of the martyrs under the altar (fifth seal) introduces a theology of divine justice delayed but not denied — God's people suffer and die, but their blood is remembered. The altar imagery suggests their deaths are sacrificial offerings. The chapter moves from human violence (horsemen) to divine response (cosmic signs), framing history as moving toward judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the rider on the white horse (first seal) is debated: some identify him as Christ (cf. 19:11), others as the Antichrist or a personification of conquest/imperialism. The text does not explicitly identify the rider, and we render the vision without resolving the ambiguity. The martyrs' cry 'How long?' (heos pote) echoes the psalms of lament, not vindictiveness. The cosmic language of the sixth seal may be literal, metaphorical, or both; we render it as written.*

Connections: *Zechariah 1:8-11, 6:1-8 (colored horses), Ezekiel 14:21 (four judgments: sword, famine, wild beasts, pestilence), Isaiah 34:4 (sky rolled up), Joel 2:31 (sun and moon), Isaiah 2:19-21 (hiding in rocks), Hosea 10:8 ('say to the mountains, cover us'), Psalm 79:5-10 (how long?), Nahum 1:6 (who can stand?), Malachi 3:2 (who can endure?).*

¹Then I watched as the Lamb opened the first of the seven seals, and I heard one of the four living creatures say with a voice like thunder, "Come!" ²I looked, and there was a white horse. Its rider held a bow, and a crown was given to him, and he rode out conquering and to conquer. ³When the Lamb opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature say, "Come!" ⁴And out came another horse, fiery red. Its rider was permitted to take peace from the earth so that people would slaughter one another, and he was given a great sword. ⁵When the Lamb opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature say, "Come!" I looked, and there was a black horse, and its rider held a pair of scales in his hand. ⁶And I heard what sounded like a voice from among the four living creatures, saying, "A quart of wheat for a denarius, and three quarts of barley for a denarius — but do not damage the oil and the wine." ⁷When the Lamb opened the fourth seal, I heard the voice of the fourth living creature say, "Come!" ⁸I looked, and there was a pale green horse. Its rider's name was Death, and Hades was

following close behind him. They were given authority over a fourth of the earth, to kill with sword and with famine and with pestilence and by the wild animals of the earth. ⁹When the Lamb opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those who had been slaughtered because of the word of God and because of the testimony they had held. ¹⁰They cried out with a loud voice, "How long, Sovereign Lord, holy and true, until you judge and avenge our blood on those who dwell on the earth?" ¹¹Then each of them was given a white robe, and they were told to rest a little longer, until the number would be completed of their fellow servants and their brothers and sisters who were about to be killed just as they had been. ¹²I watched as the Lamb opened the sixth seal. There was a great earthquake, the sun turned black like sackcloth made of hair, and the whole moon became like blood. ¹³The stars of heaven fell to the present age, indeed as a fig tree casteth her untimely figs, when she is shaken of a mighty wind. ¹⁴The sky was split apart like a scroll being rolled up, and every mountain and island was moved from its place. ¹⁵Then the kings of the earth, the nobles, the generals, the rich, the powerful, and every slave and free person hid themselves in the caves and among the rocks of the mountains. ¹⁶They called to the mountains and the rocks, "Fall on us and hide us from the face of the one seated on the throne and from the wrath of the Lamb! ¹⁷For the great day of their wrath has come, and who is able to stand?"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT reads simply *erchou* ('come'), without 'and see' (*kai ide/blepei*), which appears in some manuscripts and is reflected in the KJV. The command is directed to the horseman, summoning him forth, not to John. Each of the four living creatures in turn summons a horseman — they are agents of divine sovereignty, not passive observers. The voice 'like thunder' (*hōs phōnē brontēs*) conveys irresistible authority.
2. The white horse (*hippos leukos*) and its rider have been interpreted as Christ, the gospel's advance, military conquest, or the Antichrist. The passive *edothē* ('was given') — a 'divine passive' recurring throughout the seal judgments — indicates that the horseman's authority is granted from above. The bow (*toxon*) and crown (*stephanos*, victor's wreath) suggest military conquest. The phrase *nikōn kai hina nikēsē* ('conquering and in order to conquer') expresses unstoppable momentum. We render the vision as described without identifying the rider.
3. The pattern repeats: each seal opening is accompanied by a summons from one of the four living creatures. The second creature corresponds to the ox-like figure of 4:7.
4. The red horse (*hippos pyrrhos*, 'fire-red') represents bloodshed and war. The verb *sphaxousin* ('they will slaughter') is the same root (*sphazō*) used for the Lamb's sacrificial death in 5:6 — an ironic echo. Human beings slaughter one another while the slaughtered Lamb opens the seals. The 'great sword' (*machaira megalē*) is the short sword of close combat, not the long sword (*rhomphaia*) of Christ's mouth. The divine passive *edothē* ('was given/permitted') appears twice, emphasizing that even warfare operates under God's sovereign permission.
5. The black horse (*hippos melas*) represents famine and economic hardship. The scales (*zygon*, literally 'yoke' or 'balance') are instruments for measuring grain by weight — indicating scarcity so severe that food must be rationed. In prosperous times, grain was sold by volume; selling by weight indicates extreme shortage.
6. A *choenix* (approximately one quart or one liter) of wheat was a daily ration for one person. A *denarius* was a day's wage for a laborer (Matthew 20:2). Normally, a *denarius* could buy eight to twelve quarts of wheat. These prices represent inflation of roughly eight to twelve times normal — extreme but not total famine. Barley, the poor person's grain, is cheaper but still inflated. The command 'do not damage the oil and the wine' (*to elaion kai ton oionon mē adikēsēs*) has been interpreted as a limitation on the famine (luxury goods survive while necessities are scarce) or as divine protection of certain resources. Some see a reference to Domitian's edict regarding vineyard management in Asia Minor.
7. The fourth and final horseman is summoned by the eagle-like living creature (4:7). The four horsemen together correspond to the four judgments of Ezekiel 14:21 — sword, famine, plague, and wild beasts — which God sends as comprehensive judgment.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 14:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek *chlōros* means 'pale green, yellowish green' — the color of a corpse or of vegetation. It is the same word used for green grass in Mark 6:39. 'Pale green' captures the deathly pallor better than the KJV's generic 'pale.' This is the only horseman explicitly named: Death (*ho Thanatos*), with Hades (*ho Hadēs*) as his companion collecting the dead. The four means of killing — sword (*rhomphaia*), famine (*limos*), pestilence (*thanatos*, here meaning 'plague/deadly disease' rather than 'death'), and wild animals (*thērion*) — correspond to Ezekiel 14:21's four judgments. The scope is limited to 'a fourth of the earth' — devastating but not total, allowing room for repentance.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 14:21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The scene shifts from earth to heaven. The martyrs are 'under the altar' (*hypokatō tou thysiasstēriou*), corresponding to the base of the sacrificial altar where the blood of offerings was poured (Leviticus 4:7). Their placement under the altar frames their deaths as sacrificial offerings — their blood, like animal blood, is at the altar's base. The verb *esphagmenōn* ('slaughtered') is the same word used for the Lamb in 5:6 — the martyrs' deaths mirror the

Lamb's death. They were killed *dia* ('because of') the word of God and their testimony — their faithfulness was the cause of their deaths.

9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 4:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The cry 'how long?' (*heōs pote*) echoes the psalms of lament (Psalm 6:3; 13:1-2; 79:5; 94:3) — the ancient cry of God's suffering people. The address *ho despotēs* ('Sovereign Lord, Master') is stronger than *kyrios* and emphasizes God's absolute authority — the martyrs appeal not to a peer but to the supreme ruler who has the power and right to act. The request for vengeance (*ekdikēis*, 'vindicate, avenge') is not personal revenge but a plea for divine justice — the restoration of moral order. 'Those who dwell on the earth' (*tōn katoikountōn epi tēs gēs*) becomes a fixed phrase in Revelation for humanity in opposition to God.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 6:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The white robe (*stolē leukē*) is an interim reward — vindication and honor even before the final judgment. The instruction to 'rest a little longer' (*anapausontai eti chronon mikron*) implies that divine justice operates on a timeline that encompasses more martyrdoms yet to come. The disturbing implication is that God's plan includes the deaths of more faithful witnesses before the end. The phrase 'until the number would be completed' (*heōs plērōthōsin*) suggests a divinely determined measure of suffering — not arbitrary prolongation but purposeful completion. We render *adelphoi* as 'brothers and sisters' since the Greek can be inclusive.
12. The cosmic disruptions draw on Joel 2:31 ('The sun will be turned to darkness and the moon to blood') and Isaiah 13:10 ('The stars of heaven and their constellations will not show their light'). Sackcloth (*sakkos trichinos*, 'sackcloth of hair') was a coarse, dark fabric made of goat hair, worn in mourning. The sun in sackcloth suggests the cosmos itself mourning. The moon 'like blood' (*hōs haima*) — reddened, ominous. These images appear in multiple prophetic texts as signs of the Day of the LORD (Isaiah 13:10; Joel 2:31; Amos 8:9), signaling divine intervention in cosmic terms.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:31. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 13:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 8:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The simile of the fig tree (*sykē*) dropping unripe figs (*olynthous*, the late figs that cling to the branch through winter) in a violent wind is vivid and agricultural — even the stars are no more secure in the sky than winter figs on a branch in a storm. The image echoes Isaiah 34:4 ('All the stars of the heavens will dissolve and the sky will be rolled up like a scroll; all their host will wither like leaves withering on a vine, like a withered fig falling from a fig tree').
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 34:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The sky splitting like a rolled scroll comes directly from Isaiah 34:4 (LXX). The image suggests the sky peeling back to reveal the reality behind it — the barrier between heaven and earth torn open. Mountains and islands displaced (*ekinēthēsan*, 'were moved, shaken') represents the destabilization of what seems most permanent and immovable. The vision depicts the total unmaking of the created order — not merely weather events but the dissolution of the cosmic framework.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 34:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The list includes seven categories of people — from kings to slaves — representing the totality of human society. No one is exempt from the terror of God's judgment, regardless of rank or status. The movement from the powerful (kings, nobles, generals, rich, powerful) to the common (slave, free) shows that social hierarchies dissolve before divine judgment. Hiding in caves and rocks echoes Isaiah 2:19-21 ('People will flee to caves in the rocks and to holes in the ground from the fearful presence of the LORD').
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 2:19-21 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The cry to the mountains echoes Hosea 10:8 ('they will say to the mountains, "Cover us!" and to the hills, "Fall on us!"'), which Jesus also cited in Luke 23:30. The phrase 'the wrath of the Lamb' (*tēs orgēs tou arniou*) is one of Revelation's most arresting paradoxes — a lamb is the least wrathful of creatures, yet this Lamb's anger terrifies kings. The juxtaposition of 'the one on the throne' and 'the Lamb' as joint sources of wrath parallels their joint reception of worship in 5:13.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Hosea 10:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The SBLGNT reads *autōn* ('their,' referring to both the one on the throne and the Lamb) rather than *autou* ('his'). The 'great day' (*hē hēmera hē megalē*) echoes the prophetic 'Day of the LORD' (Joel 2:11, 31; Zephaniah 1:14-18; Malachi 3:2; 4:5). The question 'who is able to stand?' (*tis dynatai stathēnai*) echoes Nahum 1:6 ('Who can endure his fierce anger?') and Malachi 3:2 ('Who can endure the day of his coming? Who can stand when he appears?'). The question is rhetorical but receives its answer in chapter 7 — those sealed by God are able to stand.

17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Zephaniah 1:14-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Malachi 3:2. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Nahum 1:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

7

Summary: *Revelation 7 provides an interlude between the sixth and seventh seals, answering the question of 6:17: 'Who is able to stand?' Two scenes are presented. First, four angels hold back the four winds of the earth while another angel ascends from the rising sun with the seal of the living God, commanding that 144,000 servants of God be sealed on their foreheads — 12,000 from each of the twelve tribes of Israel (vv. 1-8). Second, John sees an innumerable multitude from every nation, tribe, people, and language, standing before the throne and the Lamb, clothed in white robes, holding palm branches, and crying out that salvation belongs to God and to the Lamb. Angels, elders, and living creatures worship. One of the elders identifies the multitude as those who have come out of the great tribulation, who have washed their robes in the blood of the Lamb. The chapter concludes with a promise that God will shelter them, and the Lamb will shepherd them to springs of living water, and God will wipe every tear from their eyes.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The hear/see pattern from chapter 5 recurs: John hears a number (144,000 from Israel's tribes) but sees a vision (an innumerable multitude from every nation). As with the Lion/Lamb contrast, what is heard and what is seen may describe the same reality from different perspectives — the sealed community of God's people is both defined (rooted in Israel's covenant identity) and unlimited (encompassing all nations). The tribal list is unusual: Dan is omitted and Manasseh is included separately from Joseph, which has generated extensive scholarly discussion. The final verses (15-17) anticipate the new creation vision of chapters 21-22.*

Translation Friction: *Whether the 144,000 and the great multitude are the same group described differently or two distinct groups is debated. We render both visions as written without resolving the relationship. The omission of Dan from the tribal list has been variously explained (a scribal error, a tradition associating Dan with idolatry, an association with the Antichrist); we note it without adopting a position. The phrase 'the great tribulation' (tēs thlipseōs tēs megalēs) is rendered with the article as it appears in Greek.*

Connections: *Ezekiel 9:4-6 (marking foreheads for protection), Ezekiel 37:15-28 (reunification of Israel's tribes), Isaiah 49:10 (no hunger or thirst), Isaiah 25:8 (God will wipe away tears), Psalm 23:1-2 (shepherd, still waters), Zechariah 6:5 (four winds), Leviticus 23:40 (palm branches at Sukkot/Tabernacles), Joel 2:32 (whoever calls on the name of the LORD will be saved).*

1After this I saw four angels standing at the four corners of the earth, holding back the four winds of the earth so that no wind would blow on the earth or on the sea or on any tree. 2Then I saw another angel ascending from the rising of the sun, holding the seal of the living God. He called out with a loud voice to the four angels who had been given power to harm the earth and the sea, 3Indeed, declaring, Hurt not the world, neither the sea, nor the trees, till we have sealed the servants of our God in their foreheads. 4And I heard the number of the sealed: 144,000, sealed from every tribe of the sons of Israel: 5From the tribe of Juda, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Reuben, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Gad, twelve thousand were sealed. 6From the tribe of Aser, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Nepthalim, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Manasses, twelve thousand were sealed. 7From the tribe of Simeon, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Levi, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Issachar, twelve thousand were sealed. 8From the tribe of Zabulon, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Joseph, twelve thousand were sealed. From the tribe of Benjamin, twelve thousand were sealed. 9After this I looked, and there before me was a great multitude

that no one could count, from every nation, tribe, people, and language, standing before the throne and before the Lamb, clothed in white robes, with palm branches in their hands.

¹⁰They cried out in a loud voice:

"Salvation belongs to our God
who sits on the throne,
and to the Lamb!"

¹¹And all the angels stood around the throne and around the elders and the four living creatures, and they fell on their faces before the throne and worshiped God, ¹²Indeed, declaring, Amen — Blessing, and glory, and wisdom, and thanksgiving, and honour, and authority, and might, be to our God for ever and ever. Amen. ¹³Then one of the elders addressed me, saying, "These who are clothed in white robes — who are they, and where did they come from?" ¹⁴I said to him, "My lord, you know." And he said to me, "These are the ones coming out of the great tribulation. They have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb. ¹⁵For this reason they are before the throne of God, and they serve him day and night in his temple, and the one seated on the throne will shelter them with his presence. ¹⁶They will hunger no more and thirst no more; the sun will not strike them, nor any scorching heat, ¹⁷Because the Lamb which is in the midst of the throne will feed them, and will lead them to living fountains of waters — and God will wipe away all tears from their eyes.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The 'four corners of the earth' (tas tessaras gōnias tēs gēs) is a standard ancient expression for the whole world (cf. Isaiah 11:12; Ezekiel 7:2), not a cosmological claim about the earth's shape. The four winds (tessaras anemous) represent destructive forces held in check by divine command (cf. Jeremiah 49:36; Daniel 7:2; Zechariah 6:5). The three domains — earth, sea, trees — represent the totality of the natural world. The restraining of the winds creates a dramatic pause before the sealing, ensuring God's servants are protected before judgment proceeds.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 11:12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 7:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 49:36. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 6:5. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The angel ascends 'from the rising of the sun' (apo anatolēs hēliou) — the east, the direction of dawn and new beginnings. The 'seal of the living God' (sphragida theou zōntos) echoes Ezekiel 9:4, where a man with a writing case marks the foreheads of those in Jerusalem who grieve over its abominations, protecting them from the coming slaughter. The phrase 'living God' (theou zōntos) contrasts with the dead idols that pervade the Roman world — this God is active and capable of protecting his own.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 9:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The sealing (sphragisōmen) on the forehead is a mark of ownership and protection — like a royal seal on a document declaring its origin and inviolability. In Ezekiel 9:4, the mark (Hebrew tav, which in ancient script looked like an X or +) protected the faithful from destruction. The seal does not prevent suffering (the great multitude in verse 14 has come 'out of the great tribulation') but guarantees ultimate preservation. The first-person plural 'we have sealed' (sphragisōmen) suggests the angel speaks on behalf of a divine company.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 9:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. John hears (ēkousa) the number — he does not see it. As in 5:5-6 (hearing 'Lion,' seeing 'Lamb'), what John hears may be interpreted by what he sees (the innumerable multitude in v. 9). The number 144,000 (12 x 12 x 1,000) is a symbolic number of completeness: twelve tribes times twelve (perhaps twelve apostles) times one thousand (a large, round number representing fullness). Whether this represents ethnic Israel, the church as spiritual Israel, or a specific end-time remnant is debated. We render the text as stated.

5. Judah is listed first rather than Reuben (the firstborn), likely because Judah is the messianic tribe — the tribe of the Lamb. The list departs from every Old Testament tribal order, creating a unique arrangement that prioritizes Judah and includes Levi (normally omitted from territorial lists because the Levites had no tribal land allotment).
6. Manasseh is listed separately from Joseph (v. 8), which is unusual — normally Manasseh and Ephraim together constitute Joseph. The separate listing of Manasseh and Joseph (without Ephraim) maintains the count of twelve while substituting for the omitted tribe of Dan.
7. The inclusion of Levi is notable — in Old Testament territorial lists, Levi is typically excluded because the Levites received no land inheritance, being set apart for priestly service (Numbers 18:20-24). Their inclusion here suggests that the list is not based on territorial divisions but on a new ordering of God's people.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Numbers 18:20-24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The list ends with Benjamin, completing twelve tribes with each contributing exactly 12,000. The tribe of Dan is conspicuously absent — an omission that has generated much speculation. Some scholars point to Dan's association with idolatry (Judges 18:30; 1 Kings 12:29), an early tradition linking Dan to the Antichrist (based on a reading of Genesis 49:17 and Jeremiah 8:16), or a simple scribal error confusing Dan and Manasseh. The text does not explain the omission, and we do not speculate beyond noting it.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Judges 18:30 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 12:29 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 49:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 8:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The contrast with the 144,000 is striking: the previous group was precisely numbered and ethnically defined; this group is innumerable and universally sourced. John heard a number (v. 4) but now sees a countless crowd (v. 9) — the hear/see pattern that in chapter 5 revealed Lion and Lamb as the same reality viewed differently. The fourfold formula *ethnous, phylōn, laōn, glōssōn* ('nation, tribe, people, language') echoes 5:9. The palm branches (*phoinikes*) recall the Feast of Tabernacles (*Sukkot*, Leviticus 23:40), a celebration of God's provision during the wilderness wandering, and also the triumphal entry traditions.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 23:40. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The Greek *hē sōtēria tō theō* ('salvation to our God') can mean 'salvation belongs to God' (attributing salvation to its source) or 'salvation/praise to our God' (an acclamation). The multitude credits their deliverance jointly to God and the Lamb — as in chapter 5, the two receive unified worship. The cry is the multitude's answer to the question of 6:17 ('who is able to stand?') — those who attribute their salvation to God and the Lamb are the ones who stand.
11. The concentric arrangement reappears: throne at the center, living creatures and elders next, angels surrounding them, and the great multitude beyond. The angels respond to the multitude's cry by falling prostrate (*epesan epi ta prosōpa autōn*, 'fell on their faces') — a posture of complete submission and reverence.
12. A sevenfold doxology — blessing (*eulogia*), glory (*doxa*), wisdom (*sophia*), thanksgiving (*eucharistia*), honor (*timē*), power (*dynamis*), and might (*ischys*) — framed by double 'Amen.' The seven attributes parallel the sevenfold praise to the Lamb in 5:12, with slight variations (thanksgiving replaces wealth). The framing 'Amen...Amen' seals the praise with absolute affirmation. The angels ascribe to God the totality of praise — seven attributes representing completeness.
13. The elder's question is pedagogical — he asks in order to teach, a common technique in apocalyptic literature (cf. Zechariah 4:4-5; Daniel 7:16). The Greek *apekrithē* ('answered') can mean 'responded' or 'spoke up' even without a prior question from John, as it does here.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 4:4-5 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:16 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. John's reply 'my lord, you know' (*kyrie mou, sy oidas*) is respectful deference, not divine address — *kyrie* here is a polite title for the elder. The phrase 'the great tribulation' (*tēs thlipseōs tēs megalēs*) has the definite article, indicating a specific, known period of suffering. The present participle *hoi erchomenoi* ('the ones coming') suggests an ongoing process, not a single past event — they are continually arriving. The paradox of washing robes white in blood is striking: blood normally stains, but the Lamb's blood purifies. The image combines sacrifice (blood) with cleansing (washing white), echoing Isaiah 1:18 ('though your sins are like scarlet, they shall be as white as snow').

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 1:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The verb *latreuouein* ('they serve, worship') is cultic language — priestly service in the temple. Day and night service echoes the Levitical priests' perpetual ministry (1 Chronicles 9:33). The verb *skēnōsei* ('will tabernacle, will spread his tent over') is related to *skēnē* ('tent, tabernacle') and evokes the Shekinah — God's dwelling presence among his people. The concept echoes John 1:14 ('the Word became flesh and tabernacled among us') and anticipates Revelation 21:3 ('the tabernacle of God is with humanity'). We render it as 'shelter with his presence' to capture both the protective and relational dimensions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 1 Chronicles 9:33 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. This verse quotes Isaiah 49:10 almost verbatim from the Septuagint: 'They will not hunger or thirst, neither will the scorching heat or the sun strike them.' The Isaiah passage describes the return from exile — God's people journeying home under divine protection. The application to the great multitude frames their experience as a new exodus, a journey through tribulation to the promised presence of God. The negations are emphatic: no more hunger, no more thirst, no more exposure to harsh elements.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 49:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The paradox of a lamb shepherding is striking — normally lambs are shepherded, not shepherds. Yet the Lamb who was slaughtered now leads and protects. The verb *poimanei* ('will shepherd') echoes Psalm 23:1 ('The LORD is my shepherd') and Ezekiel 34:23 ('I will set up over them one shepherd, my servant David'). 'Springs of living water' (*zōēs pēgas hydatōn*) echoes Jeremiah 2:13 ('the spring of living water') and anticipates 21:6 and 22:1 (the river of life). The final image — God wiping tears from their eyes — comes from Isaiah 25:8 and is repeated in Revelation 21:4, forming an *inclusio* between this interlude and the new creation vision. The intimacy of the gesture is remarkable: the sovereign God of the universe personally attending to human grief.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 25:8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 23:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 34:23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 2:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

8

Summary: *Revelation 8 opens with the seventh seal, which produces a dramatic half-hour silence in heaven. Seven angels are given seven trumpets. Another angel with a golden censer offers incense mingled with the prayers of the saints on the golden altar, then fills the censer with fire from the altar and hurls it to earth, producing thunder, lightning, rumblings, and an earthquake. The first four trumpets sound in sequence: the first brings hail and fire mixed with blood, burning a third of the earth and trees; the second causes something like a great burning mountain to fall into the sea, turning a third of it to blood; the third sends a blazing star called Wormwood into the rivers, poisoning a third of the waters; the fourth strikes a third of the sun, moon, and stars, darkening them. The chapter closes with an eagle flying through the sky, crying 'Woe, woe, woe' to those on earth because of the remaining three trumpets.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The half-hour silence after the seventh seal is unique in Revelation's relentless visionary movement. It may echo the silence before creation, the awestruck silence of the heavenly court (cf. Habakkuk 2:20, Zephaniah 1:7, Zechariah 2:13), or the breathless pause before the Day of the LORD. The incense-prayer-judgment sequence (vv. 3-5) explicitly connects the prayers of the saints to the execution of judgment — the martyrs' cry of 6:10 is being answered. The trumpet judgments echo the Egyptian plagues (hail, water to blood, darkness) but are limited to a third of creation, indicating restrained judgment that leaves room for repentance.*

Translation Friction: *The relationship between the seals, trumpets, and bowls (ch. 16) is debated: sequential, recapitulatory, or telescoping. We render each vision as it stands. The 'great mountain burning with fire' (v. 8) and 'great star blazing like a torch' (v. 10) are described with *hōs* ('like, as if'), maintaining their visionary, symbolic character. We render the imagery as presented without naturalistic interpretation.*

Connections: *Exodus 7-10 (Egyptian plagues: hail, water to blood, darkness), Ezekiel 10:2 (coals from the altar), Joel 2:30-31 (blood, fire, columns of smoke), Jeremiah 9:15, 23:15 (wormwood), Amos 5:7, 6:12 (justice turned to wormwood), Habakkuk 2:20 (silence before the LORD), Exodus 30:1-10 (golden altar of incense), Isaiah 14:12 (fallen star).*

¹When the Lamb opened the seventh seal, there was silence in heaven for about half an hour. ²Then I saw the seven angels who stand before God, and seven trumpets were given to them. ³Another angel came and stood at the altar with a golden censer. He was given a large quantity of incense to offer with the prayers of all the saints on the golden altar before the throne. ⁴The smoke of the incense, together with the prayers of the saints, rose before God from the angel's hand. ⁵Then the angel took the censer, filled it with fire from the altar, and threw it to the earth. And there came peals of thunder, rumblings, flashes of lightning, and an earthquake. ⁶Then the seven angels who had the seven trumpets prepared to sound them. ⁷The first angel sounded his trumpet, and there came hail and fire mixed with blood, and it was thrown to the earth. A third of the earth was burned up, a third of the trees were burned up, and all the green grass was burned up. ⁸The second angel sounded his trumpet, and something like a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea, and a third of the sea became blood. ⁹A third of the living creatures in the sea died, and a third of the ships were destroyed. ¹⁰The third angel sounded his trumpet, and a great star fell from heaven, blazing like a torch, and it fell on a third of the rivers and on the springs of water. ¹¹The name of the star is Wormwood. A third of the waters became wormwood, and many people died from the water because it had been made bitter. ¹²The fourth angel sounded his trumpet, and a third of the sun was struck, a third of the moon, and a third of the stars, so that a third of their light was darkened. A third of the day was without light, and likewise a third of the night. ¹³Then I looked, and I heard an eagle flying in midheaven, crying with a loud voice, "Woe, woe, woe to those who dwell on the earth, because of the remaining trumpet blasts that the three angels are about to sound!"

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. After chapters of praise, thunder, and acclamation, the silence (sigē) is startling. The Greek hēmiōrion ('half an hour') is the only time reference in the heavenly visions. The silence may reflect the tradition of reverent stillness before God (Habakkuk 2:20, 'Let all the earth be silent before him'; Zephaniah 1:7, 'Be silent before the Lord GOD'; Zechariah 2:13, 'Be still before the LORD'). Jewish tradition held that angels cease their praise in heaven during moments when God listens to human prayers — the silence may create space for the saints' prayers to be heard (vv. 3-4).
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Habakkuk 2:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zephaniah 1:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Zechariah 2:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The definite article 'the seven angels' (tous hepta angelous) suggests a recognized group — possibly the archangels known from Jewish tradition (Tobit 12:15, 'I am Raphael, one of the seven holy angels who present the prayers of the saints'). The trumpets (salpiggēs) recall the trumpets at Sinai (Exodus 19:16, 19), the trumpets at Jericho (Joshua 6:4-20), and the eschatological trumpet of Joel 2:1 and 1 Thessalonians 4:16. In ancient Israel, trumpets summoned to worship, announced war, and heralded the king.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 19:16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joshua 6:4-20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The angel performs a priestly function — offering incense on the golden altar, which in the tabernacle/temple stood directly before the Holy of Holies (Exodus 30:1-10). The incense is added to (not substituted for) the prayers of the saints — the prayers are already there (cf. 5:8), and the incense mingles with them. The 'golden altar before the throne' (to thysiastērion to chrysoun to enōpion tou thronou) corresponds to the altar of incense in the earthly tabernacle, now revealed in its heavenly archetype.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 30:1-10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4. The visual image is powerful: the smoke carrying the prayers ascends into God's presence. The prayers are not merely spoken and forgotten but physically rise to God. This echoes Psalm 141:2 ('Let my prayer be set before you like incense; the lifting up of my hands like the evening sacrifice'). The scene makes the theological claim that human prayer reaches God and has consequences — the fire that follows (v. 5) is the divine response to those prayers.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 141:2. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The same censer that carried prayers upward now carries fire downward — the connection between prayer and judgment is direct. The fire from the altar echoes Ezekiel 10:2, where coals from between the cherubim are scattered over Jerusalem in judgment. The thunder, rumblings, lightning, and earthquake reprise the Sinai-theophany pattern from 4:5, now with the addition of an earthquake (seismos). This formula recurs at 11:19 and 16:18, each time with intensification.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 10:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The preparation (hētoimasan) creates a moment of anticipation before the first trumpet blast. The deliberate sequence — silence, prayer, fire, preparation — slows the narrative pace, building tension before the rapid succession of trumpet judgments.
7. The first trumpet echoes the seventh Egyptian plague — hail mixed with fire (Exodus 9:23-24). The addition of blood intensifies the image beyond the Exodus account, recalling Joel 2:30 ('blood and fire and columns of smoke'). The destruction is limited to a third (to triton) — a recurring fraction in the trumpet judgments that indicates severe but not total devastation. The SBLGNT includes 'a third of the earth was burned up' (to triton tēs gēs katekae), which some manuscripts lack; we follow the critical text.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 9:23-24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:30. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The simile hōs oros mega ('like a great mountain') maintains the visionary quality — John describes what he sees without claiming to know exactly what it is. The sea turning to blood echoes the first Egyptian plague (Exodus 7:20-21). The 'burning mountain' may recall Jeremiah 51:25, where Babylon is called a 'destroying mountain' that God will turn into a 'burned-out mountain.' The destruction moves from land (first trumpet) to sea (second trumpet), systematically affecting the created order.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 7:20-21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 51:25 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The scope of destruction includes both marine life (ktismatōn...ta echonta psychas, 'creatures having life/soul') and human commerce (ploiōn, 'ships'). The destruction of ships represents economic devastation — maritime trade was the backbone of the Roman economy, and the loss of a third of shipping would be catastrophic. The pattern of 'one-third' continues, emphasizing that the judgment, while severe, is not total annihilation.
10. The progression continues: land, sea, now fresh water. The falling star (astēr megas) burning like a torch (lampas) moves the destruction from sea to rivers and springs — the sources of drinking water. Stars falling from heaven echo Isaiah 14:12 (the fall of the king of Babylon, 'How you have fallen from heaven, morning star') and may also recall the ancient association of stars with angelic beings (cf. Revelation 1:20; 12:4). The shift from salt water to fresh water intensifies the threat to human survival.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 14:12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. Apsinthos ('Wormwood') is a bitter plant (Artemisia absinthium) that was proverbially associated with bitterness and suffering. In Jeremiah 9:15 and 23:15, God threatens to feed Israel 'wormwood' and give them 'poisoned water to drink' as punishment for following false prophets. In Amos 5:7 and 6:12, justice turned to 'wormwood' describes the perversion of what should sustain life into what destroys it. The naming of the star gives the judgment a personal, identifiable character. The verb epikranthēsan ('were made bitter') describes the transformation of life-giving water into death-dealing poison.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 9:15. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Amos 5:7. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The fourth trumpet echoes the ninth Egyptian plague — darkness (Exodus 10:21-23). The progression of the first four trumpets covers the created order systematically: land and vegetation (1st), sea and marine life (2nd), fresh water (3rd), and celestial bodies (4th). This mirrors the creation sequence of Genesis 1 in reverse — an undoing of creation. The fraction 'one-third' applies to light itself — the most fundamental element of the created order (Genesis 1:3-5). The result is a diminishment of the cosmos, not yet its destruction.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 10:21-23. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The SBLGNT reads *aetou* ('eagle') rather than *angelou* ('angel'), which is the reading of some later manuscripts reflected in the KJV. An eagle (or vulture — *aetos* can mean either) flying in midheaven (*mesouranēmati*, the point of the sky directly overhead, where the sun stands at noon) would be visible to all. The threefold 'woe' (*ouai ouai ouai*) corresponds to the three remaining trumpets — the fifth, sixth, and seventh — which will be called the three 'woes' (9:12; 11:14). The phrase 'those who dwell on the earth' (*tous katoikountas epì tēs gēs*) is Revelation's recurring designation for humanity in rebellion against God.

9

Summary: *Revelation 9 describes the fifth and sixth trumpet judgments — the first two 'woes.'* The fifth trumpet (vv. 1-12): *a star fallen from heaven opens the shaft of the abyss, releasing smoke that darkens the sun and air, and from the smoke emerge locust-like creatures with scorpion power. They are commanded not to harm vegetation but only those who do not have God's seal on their foreheads. They torment people for five months but do not kill them; people will seek death but not find it. The locusts are described in terrifying composite imagery — faces like human faces, hair like women's hair, teeth like lions' teeth, breastplates of iron, wings like chariots rushing to battle. Their king is the angel of the abyss, named Abaddon in Hebrew and Apollyon in Greek. The sixth trumpet (vv. 13-21): a voice from the golden altar commands the release of four angels bound at the great river Euphrates, prepared for a specific hour, day, month, and year, to kill a third of humanity. A cavalry of 200 million with horses bearing lion heads and serpent tails kills through fire, smoke, and sulfur. Yet the rest of humanity does not repent of their idolatry, murders, sorcery, sexual immorality, or theft.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The locust vision draws on Joel 1-2 (the locust plague as the Day of the LORD), but transforms natural locusts into supernatural beings of torment. The composite description — combining human, animal, and military features — is characteristic of apocalyptic symbolism and should be rendered as written, not decoded into specific modern equivalents. The Euphrates River was the eastern boundary of the Roman Empire and the traditional invasion route from Parthia, Rome's great rival — the sixth trumpet evokes the terror of invasion from beyond civilization's borders. The chapter's climax is theological: despite all these judgments, the survivors do not repent (vv. 20-21). The purpose of judgment is to provoke repentance, but the human heart resists.*

Translation Friction: *The composite imagery of the locusts defies naturalistic interpretation and should be rendered symbolically as John describes it. The number 200 million (*dismyriades myriadōn*, literally 'two myriads of myriads') is an enormous figure that may be symbolic of an incalculable army rather than a literal count. The names Abaddon/Apollyon are translated in the text itself; we retain both names as given.*

Connections: *Joel 1:2-2:11 (locust plague), Exodus 10:12-15 (Egyptian locust plague), Daniel 7 (composite beasts), Genesis 15:18, Deuteronomy 1:7 (Euphrates as boundary), Isaiah 5:26-30 (invading army from afar), Jeremiah 51:27 (armies from the north), Psalm 115:4-8, 135:15-18 (idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, wood).*

1The fifth angel sounded his trumpet, and I saw a star that had fallen from heaven to earth, and the key to the shaft of the abyss was given to him. 2He opened the shaft of the abyss, and smoke rose from the shaft like the smoke of a great furnace, and the sun and the air were darkened by the smoke from the shaft. 3From the smoke, locusts came down on the earth, and they were given power like the power of scorpions of the earth. 4They were told not to harm the grass of the earth or any green plant or any tree, but only those people who do not have the seal of God on their foreheads. 5They were allowed to torment them for five months but not to kill them, and their torment was like the torment of a scorpion when it stings a person. 6In those days people will seek death and will not find it. They will long to die, but death will flee from them. 7In appearance the locusts were like horses prepared for battle. On their heads were what looked like crowns of gold, and their faces were like human faces. 8They had hair like women's hair, and their teeth were like lions' teeth. 9They had breastplates like breastplates of iron, and the sound of their wings was like the sound of many horse-drawn chariots rushing into battle. 10 They have tails and stings like scorpions, and in their tails is their power to harm people for five months. 11They have as king over them the angel of the abyss. His name in Hebrew is Abaddon, and in Greek he is called Apollyon. 12The first woe has

passed. Two woes are still to come after this. ¹³The sixth angel sounded his trumpet, and I heard a voice from the four horns of the golden altar that is before God, ¹⁴Indeed, declaring to the sixth angel which had the trumpet, Loose the four angels which are bound in the remarkable river Euphrates. ¹⁵So the four angels were released, who had been prepared for this hour, day, month, and year, to kill a third of humanity. ¹⁶The number of the mounted troops was two hundred million; I heard their number. ¹⁷And this is how I saw the horses in the vision and their riders: they wore breastplates the color of fire, dark blue, and sulfur yellow. The heads of the horses were like lions' heads, and out of their mouths came fire, smoke, and sulfur. ¹⁸By these three plagues a third of humanity was killed — by the fire, the smoke, and the sulfur coming out of their mouths. ¹⁹For the power of the horses is in their mouths and in their tails, for their tails are like serpents, with heads, and with them they inflict harm. ²⁰The rest of humanity, who were not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the works of their hands or stop worshiping demons and idols of gold, silver, bronze, stone, and wood — which cannot see or hear or walk. ²¹And they did not repent of their murders, their sorceries, their sexual immorality, or their thefts.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The star (astera) is personified — 'him' (autō) — indicating an angelic or demonic being, not a literal celestial body. The perfect participle peptōkota ('having fallen') indicates a completed fall, not one in progress — this star has already fallen. The 'abyss' (abyssou) in Revelation is the prison of demonic forces (cf. 11:7; 17:8; 20:1-3). The 'shaft' (phreatos) suggests a well or pit with a covering that can be opened and closed. The divine passive edothē ('was given') indicates that even this destructive action operates under God's permission.
2. The smoke (kapnos) obscuring sun and air recalls the pillar of smoke at Sinai (Exodus 19:18, 'Mount Sinai was covered with smoke, because the LORD descended on it in fire. The smoke billowed up from it like smoke from a furnace'). The same vocabulary (kaminos, 'furnace') appears in both passages. But whereas the Sinai smoke signaled God's presence, this smoke releases destructive forces — a dark inversion. The darkening of the sky by smoke continues the darkness motif from the fourth trumpet (8:12).
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 19:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The locusts (akrides) emerge from the abyss, not from the natural world — they are demonic entities in locust form. Their power is compared to scorpions (skorpioi), combining two of the most feared creatures in the ancient Near East. The divine passive edothē ('was given') again emphasizes that their power is delegated, not inherent. The locust plague echoes Joel 1-2, where a devastating locust invasion prefigures the Day of the LORD.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joel 1-2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. Natural locusts devour vegetation; these supernatural locusts are commanded to leave vegetation alone and target humans instead — a complete inversion of natural behavior that marks them as demonic rather than natural. The exemption of those with God's seal (tēn sphragida tou theou) connects directly to the sealing of the 144,000 in 7:3-4. God's servants are protected from demonic torment even in the midst of worldwide suffering.
5. The five-month period (mēnas pente) may correspond to the typical lifespan of locusts (roughly May through September). The torment (basanismos) is agonizing but not lethal — a carefully limited judgment. The verb basanisthēsontai ('they will be tormented') is the same word used for the testing of gold in fire and for the interrogation of prisoners. The scorpion sting comparison specifies the type of suffering: intense, burning pain that incapacitates but does not kill.
6. The double statement — seeking death, longing to die — emphasizes the extremity of the torment. Death personified as fleeing (pheugei, present tense — it keeps fleeing) inverts the normal human experience where death is the pursuer and life flees. This echoes Job 3:21 ('who long for death, but it does not come, who search for it more than for hidden treasure'). The irony is that those who 'dwell on the earth' (the ones opposed to God throughout Revelation) sought security in earthly things; now even death offers no escape.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 3:21. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The description begins a composite portrait that combines features from Joel 2:4 ('They have the appearance of horses; they gallop along like cavalry'). The repeated use of hōs and homoios ('like, resembling') — at least seven times in vv. 7-10 — maintains the visionary quality. John is describing what he sees in terms of the closest analogies he can find. The 'crowns of gold' (hōs stephanoi homoioi chrysō) suggest authority or victory, though the qualifier 'what looked like' indicates they are not actual crowns. Human faces suggest intelligence or cunning.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joel 2:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The hair 'like women's hair' (hōs trichas gynaikōn) may refer to the locusts' antennae, which could suggest flowing hair, or may evoke a sense of the uncanny — a blurring of categories that makes these creatures more disturbing. The lion's teeth echo Joel 1:6 ('It has the teeth of a lion, the fangs of a lioness'), directly linking these creatures to Joel's locust-plague prophecy. The combination of human faces, flowing hair, and predatory teeth creates a composite that is deliberately disorienting.

8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joel 1:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The iron breastplates (thōrakas hōs thōrakas sidērous) suggest invulnerability — these creatures cannot be fought or stopped. The thunderous sound of their wings echoes Joel 2:5 ('like the noise of chariots, they leap over the mountaintops, like the crackling of fire consuming stubble, like a mighty army drawn up for battle'). The cumulative effect of the description is of an unstoppable, invulnerable, terrifying army that combines the worst features of insects, predators, warriors, and supernatural beings.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The description circles back to the scorpion imagery of verse 3, creating a frame around the composite portrait. The five-month period is repeated from verse 5, confirming the limited duration. Their power (exousia, 'authority') resides in their tails — the part that delivers the sting. The description has moved from head to tail: golden crowns, human faces, women's hair, lion's teeth, iron breastplates, chariot-wing sound, and scorpion tails — a top-to-bottom portrait of supernatural terror.
11. Both names mean 'Destroyer' — Abaddon from the Hebrew root 'b-d ('to perish, destroy') and Apollyon from the Greek apollymi ('to destroy'). In the Old Testament, Abaddon is a place — the realm of the dead (Job 26:6; 28:22; 31:12; Psalm 88:11; Proverbs 15:11; 27:20). Here it becomes a personal name for the ruler of that realm. Some scholars see a wordplay on Apollo (Apollōn), the Greco-Roman deity claimed as patron by several Roman emperors — if so, this is a subversive identification of the imperial god with the king of the underworld. Proverbs 30:27 states that 'locusts have no king,' making these supernatural locusts a deliberate contrast to natural ones.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Job 26:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 88:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 15:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Proverbs 30:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. This editorial interjection marks the structural division of the three woes announced by the eagle in 8:13. The fifth trumpet = first woe; the sixth trumpet = second woe (11:14); the seventh trumpet = third woe (11:15ff). The phrase 'two woes are still to come' (erchetai eti duo ouai) maintains the escalating tension — if the locust plague was only the first woe, the remaining judgments will be worse.
13. The voice comes from the golden altar of incense — the same altar where the saints' prayers were offered in 8:3-4. The connection implies that the sixth trumpet is a response to those prayers, specifically the martyrs' cry in 6:10 ('How long...until you avenge our blood?'). The 'four horns' (tessarōn keratōn) of the altar are the projections at its four corners (cf. Exodus 30:2-3), where sacrificial blood was applied. The SBLGNT brackets tessarōn ('four'), as it is absent in some manuscripts, but the reading is well-attested.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 30:2-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. These four angels (tous tessaras angelous) are distinct from the four angels of 7:1 who hold back the winds — these are 'bound' (dedemenous), suggesting they are malevolent beings restrained by divine authority. The Euphrates (Euphratē) was the traditional eastern boundary of both the promised land (Genesis 15:18; Deuteronomy 1:7) and the Roman Empire. Enemies from beyond the Euphrates — Assyria, Babylon, Parthia — were the archetypal invading threat throughout Israel's history. The release of these angels symbolizes the unleashing of forces from beyond the boundary of the known world.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 15:18. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 1:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The fourfold time specification — hour, day, month, year — emphasizes divine precision. These angels were prepared for this exact moment (hētoimasmenoi, 'having been prepared' — perfect passive, indicating prior divine arrangement). The killing of 'a third of humanity' (to triton tōn anthrōpōn) escalates beyond the trumpet pattern of damaging a third of creation to the direct killing of a third of the human race. Where the fifth trumpet tormented but did not kill, the sixth trumpet kills on a massive scale.
16. The Greek dismyriades myriadōn literally means 'two ten-thousands of ten-thousands' — 200,000,000. This number far exceeds any ancient army (the entire Roman Empire may have had only 50-70 million inhabitants). The staggering figure likely represents an innumerable, overwhelming force rather than a precise count. John specifies 'I heard their number' (ēkousa ton arithmon autōn) — the number was told to him, not counted by him, underscoring its symbolic character.
17. The breastplates are described by three colors matching the three agents of death: fire-red (pyrinous), dark blue like hyacinth (hyakinthinous, the deep blue of smoke), and sulfur-yellow (theiōdeis). Fire, smoke, and sulfur (pyr kai kapnos kai theion) recall the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:24-28), establishing this as divine judgment. The lion heads continue the predatory imagery — these horses are weapons, not transport. John frames this as 'what I saw in the vision' (en tē horasei), reminding the reader of the visionary medium.

- 17.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 19:24-28. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
- 18.** The three destructive agents are called 'plagues' (plēgōn), the same word used for the Egyptian plagues in the Septuagint. The identification of fire, smoke, and sulfur as distinct 'plagues' formalizes what verses 15 and 17 described visually. The repetition of 'a third' (to triton) maintains the pattern established throughout the trumpet sequence — severe but not total destruction.
- 19.** The horses are deadly at both ends — fire from their mouths and serpent-tails that bite. Like the locusts of verses 7-10, the description defies natural categories. The serpent tails (homoiai ophesin, 'like snakes') add another layer to the composite imagery and may evoke the primordial serpent of Genesis 3. The description of tails 'having heads' (echousai kephalas) is deliberately unsettling — these are creatures designed to harm from every direction.
- 19.** [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
- 20.** This is the theological climax of the chapter — the purpose of judgment was to provoke repentance, but the survivors refuse to turn. The critique of idolatry (ta eidōla ta chrysa kai ta argyra kai ta chalka kai ta lithina kai ta xylina) echoes Daniel 5:23 and Psalm 115:4-8 / 135:15-18, which mock idols that 'have eyes but cannot see, ears but cannot hear.' The list of materials descends in value (gold, silver, bronze, stone, wood), suggesting the absurdity of exchanging the living God for increasingly worthless substitutes. Behind the idols stand 'demons' (daimonia) — the worship appears religious but serves destructive spiritual realities.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 5:23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 20.** [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 115:4-8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
- 21.** Four sins are listed alongside idolatry from verse 20: murders (phonōn), sorceries (pharmakōn), sexual immorality (porneias), and thefts (klemmatōn). The Greek pharmakōn (from which 'pharmacy' derives) refers to the use of drugs, potions, and spells — sorcery in the ancient world often involved pharmacological substances used in magical rituals. These four sins roughly correspond to violations of the second table of the Decalogue (murder, false worship through magic, adultery, theft). The double statement of non-repentance (verses 20 and 21) frames the human response as tragically, stubbornly defiant in the face of overwhelming evidence of divine power.

10

Summary: *Revelation 10 provides an interlude between the sixth and seventh trumpets, paralleling the interlude between the sixth and seventh seals (chapter 7). A mighty angel descends from heaven, wrapped in a cloud with a rainbow over his head, his face like the sun and legs like pillars of fire. He holds a small open scroll, places his right foot on the sea and left foot on the land, and shouts like a lion. Seven thunders speak, but John is commanded to seal up what they said and not write it down. The angel then swears by the Creator that there will be no more delay — when the seventh angel sounds his trumpet, the mystery of God will be fulfilled. John is told to take the scroll from the angel and eat it; it is sweet in his mouth but bitter in his stomach. He is told he must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The 'mighty angel' (angelos ischyros) has features reminiscent of Christ's description in chapter 1 (face like the sun, cloud, authority over sea and land) and of the angel of Daniel 10 and 12. His stance on sea and land claims authority over the entire earth. The sealed seven thunders are unique in Revelation — every other vision is recorded, but this one is suppressed, suggesting that not all of God's purposes are revealed. The eating of the scroll directly parallels Ezekiel 2:8-3:3, where Ezekiel eats a scroll that is sweet as honey — John's experience adds the element of bitterness, reflecting the mixed content of prophetic proclamation (sweet truth, bitter judgment).*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the 'mighty angel' is debated: some identify him as Christ, others as a powerful angel (like Michael). The divine features could describe either a theophany or an angel bearing divine glory. We render the text as written without identifying the figure beyond what the text states. The seven thunders remain sealed — any attempt to identify their content is speculation, and we note the deliberate concealment.*

Connections: *Daniel 10:5-6 (angelic figure), Daniel 12:7 (angel standing on water, swearing by the eternal God), Ezekiel 2:8-3:3 (eating the scroll), Exodus 20:11, Nehemiah 9:6 (God as Creator of heaven, earth, and sea), Amos 3:7-8 (the lion roars, the Lord GOD has spoken), Psalm 29:3-9 (the voice of the LORD as thunder).*

¹Then I saw another mighty angel coming down from heaven, wrapped in a cloud, with a rainbow over his head. His face was like the sun, and his legs were like pillars of fire. ²He held a small scroll open in his hand. He planted his right foot on the sea and his left foot on the land, ³He shouted in a loud voice, like a lion roaring. When he shouted, seven thunders spoke with their own voices. ⁴When the seven thunders had spoken, I was about to write, but I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Seal up what the seven thunders have said, and do not write it down." ⁵Then the angel whom I had seen standing on the sea and on the land raised his right hand to heaven ⁶Sware by him that liveth for ever and ever, who created the heavens above, and the things that therein are, and the world, and the things that therein are, and the sea, and the things which are therein, that there should be time no longer:. ⁷But in the days when the seventh angel is about to sound his trumpet, the mystery of God will be fulfilled, just as he announced to his servants the prophets." ⁸Then the voice that I had heard from heaven spoke to me again, saying, "Go, take the scroll that is open in the hand of the angel who is standing on the sea and on the land." ⁹So I went to the angel and asked him to give me the small scroll. He said to me, "Take it and eat it. It will turn your stomach bitter, but in your mouth it will be sweet as honey." ¹⁰I took the small scroll from the angel's hand and ate it. It was sweet as honey in my mouth, but when I had eaten it, my stomach turned bitter. ¹¹Then they said to me, "You must prophesy again about many peoples, nations, languages, and kings."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The angel's description echoes multiple Old Testament theophanies: the cloud recalls God's presence in the wilderness (Exodus 13:21-22); the rainbow recalls the throne-room vision (4:3) and God's covenant with Noah (Genesis 9:13); the sun-like face recalls both the transfiguration (Matthew 17:2) and the glorified Christ (1:16); the fire-pillars recall the pillar of fire that led Israel (Exodus 13:21). The word *allon* ('another') distinguishes this angel from the seven trumpet angels. The Greek *podes* can mean 'feet' or 'legs'; given the pillar imagery, 'legs' better conveys the visual impression.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 13:21-22. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 9:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The 'small scroll' (*biblaridion*, a diminutive of *biblion*) is open (*ēneōgmenon*), in contrast to the sealed scroll of chapter 5. Whether this is the same scroll now unsealed or a different document is debated. The colossus-like stance — one foot on the sea, one on the land — claims authority over the entire created world. The imagery echoes the ancient concept of a conqueror placing his foot on conquered territory (cf. Joshua 10:24). The verb *ethēken* ('planted, set') suggests a firm, deliberate placement.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joshua 10:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The lion's roar (*hōsper leōn mykatai*) echoes Amos 3:8 ('The lion has roared — who will not fear? The Sovereign LORD has spoken — who can but prophesy?') and Hosea 11:10 ('He will roar like a lion. When he roars, his children will come trembling from the west'). The 'seven thunders' (*hai hepta brontai*) are introduced with the definite article, as if they are a recognized group — possibly related to the sevenfold voice of the LORD in Psalm 29, where 'the voice of the LORD' (*qol YHWH*) appears seven times, accompanied by thunder.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Amos 3:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Hosea 11:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 29 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. This is the only instance in Revelation where John is told not to write. Elsewhere he is repeatedly commanded to write (1:11, 19; 2:1, 8, 12, 18; 3:1, 7, 14; 14:13; 19:9; 21:5). The sealing (*sphragison*) of the thunders' message contrasts with the unsealing of the scroll in chapter 5. The command establishes that there are aspects of God's plan that remain hidden — not every divine purpose is revealed to human knowledge. This echoes Daniel 12:4 ('seal up the words of the scroll until the time of the end') and Deuteronomy 29:29 ('the secret things belong to the LORD our God').
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 12:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 29:29. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The raising of the right hand is the gesture of a solemn oath (cf. Genesis 14:22; Deuteronomy 32:40; Daniel 12:7). The scene closely parallels Daniel 12:7, where 'the man clothed in linen, who was above the waters of the river, raised his right hand and his left hand toward heaven and swore by him who lives forever.' In Daniel, the angel swears about the timing of the end; here the angel makes a similar declaration about the fulfillment of God's

mystery.

5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 14:22 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Deuteronomy 32:40 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The oath is sworn by the eternal Creator — the highest possible authority. The threefold creation formula (heaven and what is in it, earth and what is in it, sea and what is in it) echoes Exodus 20:11 and Nehemiah 9:6. The declaration *chronos ouketi estai* is better rendered 'there will be no more delay' than the KJV's 'time shall be no more' — the Greek *chronos* here means 'time of waiting' or 'interval of delay,' not time itself. The martyrs' cry 'how long?' (6:10) is finally being answered: no more waiting.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 20:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Nehemiah 9:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The 'mystery of God' (to *mystērion tou theou*) is his complete redemptive plan — the same concept Paul uses in Romans 16:25-26 and Ephesians 3:3-6. The verb *etelesthē* ('will be fulfilled, completed') is the same root as Christ's cry from the cross: *tetelestai* ('it is finished,' John 19:30). The verb *euēngelisen* ('announced good news, proclaimed as gospel') is striking — God's mystery was 'gospelled' to the prophets. The fulfillment of the mystery at the seventh trumpet connects to 11:15-18, where the kingdom of the world becomes the kingdom of God and of his Christ. The prophets (*tous prophētas*) refers to the Old Testament prophets who proclaimed this coming consummation (cf. Amos 3:7, 'Surely the Sovereign LORD does nothing without revealing his plan to his servants the prophets').
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Amos 3:7. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The heavenly voice (from v. 4) now directs John to participate in the vision, not merely observe it. The instruction to 'take the scroll' (*labe to biblion*) transitions John from witness to actor. The angel's posture is reiterated — standing on sea and land — emphasizing the cosmic authority behind the scroll's contents.
9. The command to eat the scroll directly parallels Ezekiel 2:8-3:3, where God commands Ezekiel to eat a scroll containing 'lamentations, mourning, and woe' — and it tasted 'as sweet as honey.' John's experience adds the element of bitterness in the stomach (*pikranei sou tēn koilian*), which Ezekiel's account lacks. The scroll's sweetness represents the pleasure of receiving God's word; its bitterness represents the painful content of what must be proclaimed — judgment, suffering, and woe. The prophet must internalize the message before delivering it.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 2:8-3:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The experience unfolds exactly as the angel predicted but in reverse order: he was told bitter-then-sweet, but he experiences sweet-then-bitter. The sweetness comes first — the initial reception of God's word is a delight (cf. Psalm 119:103, 'How sweet are your words to my taste, sweeter than honey to my mouth!'). The bitterness follows — the content of prophetic proclamation involves suffering and judgment. This sequence mirrors the experience of many prophets: called with joy, burdened by the message.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 119:103 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The plural *legousin* ('they said') is unexpected — the angel was singular. The plural may indicate a heavenly council or may be an impersonal construction ('it was said to me'). The commission to 'prophesy again' (*palin prophēteusai*) recommissions John for the visions that follow, particularly chapters 11-22. The preposition *epi* can mean 'about, concerning' or 'before, in the presence of.' The fourfold formula (peoples, nations, languages, kings) varies the standard Revelation pattern, substituting 'kings' (*basileusin*) for 'tribes' — anticipating the prominent role of earthly kings in the visions to come.

11

Summary: *Revelation 11 opens with John being given a measuring rod and told to measure the temple of God and the altar but not the outer court, which has been given to the nations who will trample the holy city for forty-two months. Two witnesses are introduced who will prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth. They are described as the two olive trees and two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth. They have power to shut the sky, turn water to blood, and strike the earth with plagues. When they finish their testimony, the beast from the abyss kills them, and their bodies lie in the street of the great city for three and a half days while the earth's inhabitants celebrate. Then the breath of life from God enters them, they stand up, and a loud voice calls them up to heaven in a cloud while their enemies watch. A great earthquake destroys a tenth of the city, killing 7,000, and the survivors give glory to God. The second woe ends, and the seventh trumpet sounds, prompting heavenly voices to declare that the kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ. The twenty-four elders worship God, and the temple in heaven is opened, revealing the ark of the covenant amid lightning, thunder, earthquake, and hail.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The two witnesses combine features of Moses (turning water to blood, plagues) and Elijah (shutting the sky, fire from their mouths), the two great figures of the Law and the Prophets. Their identification as 'olive trees and lampstands' draws directly from Zechariah 4, where the olive trees represent anointed figures who serve the Lord. The forty-two months / 1,260 days / three and a half years is the same period found in Daniel 7:25, 9:27, and 12:7 — a time of trial and tribulation. The seventh trumpet brings not another judgment but the climactic declaration of God's kingdom — the 'mystery of God' announced in 10:7 is fulfilled. The ark of the covenant appearing in the heavenly temple connects to the lost ark of the earthly temple, suggesting that what was lost on earth is preserved in heaven.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the two witnesses has generated extensive debate: literal future individuals, Moses and Elijah returned, the Law and the Prophets, the church's witness, or Israel and the church together. We render the text as written, noting the Mosaic and Elijahnic allusions. The 'great city' (v. 8) is 'spiritually called Sodom and Egypt, where their Lord was crucified' — this identifies it as Jerusalem but in the language of prophetic condemnation. The measuring of the temple (vv. 1-2) may refer to the physical temple, the spiritual community, or both.*

Connections: *Zechariah 4:2-14 (two olive trees and lampstands), Daniel 7:25, 9:27, 12:7 (three and a half years), 1 Kings 17:1 (Elijah shuts the sky), Exodus 7:17-20 (Moses turns water to blood), 2 Kings 1:10-12 (Elijah calls fire from heaven), Ezekiel 37:5-10 (breath of life enters the dead), Ezekiel 40-42 (measuring the temple), Daniel 7:14, 27 (kingdom given to the saints), Psalm 2:1-2 (nations rage), Isaiah 26:20-21 (God comes to judge), Exodus 25:10-22 (ark of the covenant).*

¹Then I was given a measuring rod like a staff, and I was told, "Rise and measure the temple of God and the altar and those who worship there, ²However, the court which is without the temple leave out, and measure it not. Since it is given to the Gentiles — and the holy city will they tread under foot forty and two months. ³And I will grant authority to my two witnesses, and they will prophesy for 1,260 days, clothed in sackcloth." ⁴These are the two olive trees and the two lampstands that stand before the Lord of the earth. ⁵If anyone would harm them, fire comes from their mouths and consumes their enemies. If anyone would try to harm them, this is how that person must be killed. ⁶They have the power to shut the sky so that no rain falls during the days of their prophesying, and they have power over the waters to turn them into blood and to strike the earth with every kind of plague, as often as they wish. ⁷When they have finished their testimony, the beast that rises from the abyss will make war on them and conquer them and kill them. ⁸Their bodies will lie in the street of the great city that is symbolically called Sodom and Egypt, where also their Lord was crucified. ⁹For three and a half days, people from the peoples, tribes, languages, and nations will gaze at their bodies and refuse to let them be placed in a tomb. ¹⁰Those who dwell on the earth will gloat over them and celebrate and exchange gifts, because these two prophets had tormented those who dwell on the earth. ¹¹But after the three and a half days, the breath of life from God entered them, and they stood on their feet, and great fear fell on those who saw them. ¹²Then they heard a loud voice from heaven saying to them, "Come up here."

And they went up to heaven in a cloud, while their enemies watched. ¹³At that moment a great earthquake struck, and a tenth of the city collapsed. Seven thousand people were killed in the earthquake, and the rest were terrified and gave glory to the God of heaven. ¹⁴The second woe has passed. The third woe is coming soon.

¹⁵Then the seventh angel sounded his trumpet, and there were loud voices in heaven, saying:

"The kingdom of the world has become
the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ,
and he will reign forever and ever!"

¹⁶Then the twenty-four elders, who sit before God on their thrones, fell on their faces and worshiped God, ¹⁷Saying, We give you thanks, O Lord God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come. Because you have taken to you your remarkable authority, and hast reigned.

¹⁸The nations raged,
but your wrath has come,
and the time for the dead to be judged,
and the time to reward your servants the prophets
and the saints and those who fear your name,
both small and great,
and the time to destroy those who destroy the earth."

¹⁹Then God's temple in heaven was opened, and the ark of his covenant was seen within his temple. There came flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of thunder, an earthquake, and heavy hail.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The measuring of the temple echoes Ezekiel 40-42, where an angelic figure measures the new temple in detail. In Ezekiel, measuring signifies preservation and divine ownership — what is measured is claimed and protected by God. The Greek *naon* (not *hieron*) specifically refers to the inner sanctuary, the dwelling place of God's presence, not the entire temple complex. The instruction to measure 'those who worship' (*tous proskynountas*) extends the protection to people, not just architecture — the faithful community is measured and preserved.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 40-42. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
3. The outer court (*tēn aulēn tēn exōthen*) — the Court of the Gentiles in the physical temple — is excluded from measurement, meaning it is not preserved but given over (*edothē*, divine passive) to the nations (*ethnesin*). The forty-two months (*mēnas tessarakonta duo*) equals 1,260 days (v. 3) and three and a half years — the period of tribulation drawn from Daniel 7:25, 9:27, and 12:7, where it represents a time of suffering under hostile powers. Luke 21:24 uses the same verb *patēsousin* ('trample') for the Gentile domination of Jerusalem. The distinction between the protected inner sanctuary and the exposed outer court may represent the preservation of God's true people amid the external suffering of the visible community.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:25. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
5. The speaker shifts to first person — God or Christ directly commissions the two witnesses. The 1,260 days equals forty-two months (at 30 days per month), the same period of Gentile trampling in verse 2 — the witnesses prophesy during the time of tribulation, not after it. Sackcloth (*sakkous*) is the garment of mourning, repentance, and prophetic lamentation (cf. Isaiah 20:2; Jonah 3:5-6). Their ministry is one of urgent warning, not celebration. The Greek *martyrsin* ('witnesses') is the same word that gives English 'martyr' — these witnesses will testify and die.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 20:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jonah 3:5-6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. This verse directly identifies the witnesses with the vision of Zechariah 4:2-14, where two olive trees flanking a golden lampstand represent 'the two anointed ones who stand by the Lord of all the earth.' In Zechariah, the olive trees supply oil to the lampstand — they are sources of the Spirit's power. The identification of the witnesses as both olive trees (sources of the Spirit) and lampstands (bearers of light) combines the imagery. The phrase 'the Lord of the earth' (*tou kyriou tēs gēs*) echoes Zechariah 4:14 and asserts God's sovereignty over the world that persecutes his witnesses.

4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zechariah 4:2-14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The fire from their mouths echoes 2 Kings 1:10-12, where Elijah calls fire from heaven on the soldiers sent to arrest him, and Jeremiah 5:14 ('I will make my words in your mouth a fire, and this people the wood it consumes'). The double statement ('if anyone would harm them...if anyone would try to harm them') emphasizes the inviolability of the witnesses during their appointed prophetic ministry. The verb *dei* ('must') indicates divine necessity — this is not arbitrary violence but the divinely ordained consequence of opposing God's witnesses.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes 2 Kings 1:10-12 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 5:14 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. Two specific powers combine Moses and Elijah: shutting the sky from rain is Elijah's signature act (1 Kings 17:1; cf. James 5:17, 'Elijah prayed fervently that it would not rain, and it did not rain on the earth for three years and six months' — notably the same three-and-a-half-year period). Turning water to blood and sending plagues is Moses's role in the Exodus (Exodus 7:17-20; chapters 7-12). The witnesses embody the combined authority of the Law (Moses) and the Prophets (Elijah) — the two figures who appeared with Jesus at the Transfiguration (Matthew 17:3). The phrase *hosákis ean thelēsōsin* ('as often as they wish') grants them extraordinary freedom of action.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 17:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 7:17-20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The temporal clause *hotan teleōsin* ('when they have finished') is crucial — the beast cannot touch them until their prophetic task is complete. Their death is not a failure but comes after the fulfillment of their mission. The 'beast from the abyss' (to *thērion* to *anabainon ek tēs abyssou*) is introduced here abruptly and will be fully described in chapter 13. The word *thērion* ('wild beast') is distinct from *zōon* ('living creature') used for the heavenly beings — this is a predatory, destructive entity. The verbs escalate: war (*polemon*), conquer (*nikēsei*), kill (*apoktenei*). The beast's 'conquering' (*nikēsei*) uses the same verb applied to the Lamb in 5:5 and to the faithful in the seven letters — a counterfeit victory that will itself be overcome.
8. The city is identified by three symbolic names: 'the great city' (*tēs poleōs tēs megalēs* — a term later applied to Babylon in 16:19, 17:18, 18:10), 'Sodom' (representing sexual immorality and divine destruction, Genesis 18-19), and 'Egypt' (representing oppression and enslavement of God's people, Exodus 1-14). The clause 'where their Lord was crucified' (*hopou kai ho kyrios autōn estaurōthē*) identifies the city as Jerusalem — yet Jerusalem is described with the names of Israel's archetypal enemies. The adverb *pneumatikōs* ('spiritually, symbolically') signals that these names are prophetic characterizations, not geographical identifiers.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 18-19 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 1-14 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The fourfold formula (*laōn, phylōn, glōssōn, ethnōn*) indicates worldwide observation — the witnesses' humiliation is public and universal. The three and a half days (*hēmeras treis kai hēmisy*) mirrors the three and a half years of their ministry in miniature. Refusing burial was the ultimate dishonor in the ancient world (cf. the outrage over the unburied body of Polynices in Sophocles' *Antigone*; and the importance of burial in 1 Kings 14:11; Jeremiah 22:19). The denial of burial expresses contempt for the witnesses and for the God they served.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Kings 14:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 22:19. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The celebration over the prophets' death — complete with gift-giving — is a grim parody of a festival. The witnesses' prophetic ministry is described as 'torment' (*ebasanisan*) from the perspective of the unrepentant — the truth of God's word is experienced as agony by those who reject it. The phrase *hoi katoikountes epi tēs gēs* ('those who dwell on the earth') recurs as Revelation's standard term for humanity in rebellion against God. The scene will be dramatically reversed in the next verses.
11. The phrase *pneuma zōēs ek tou theou* ('breath/spirit of life from God') directly echoes Ezekiel 37:5-10, where God breathes life into the valley of dry bones and they stand on their feet — the same verb *histēmi* ('to stand') appears in both passages. The reversal is total: the celebrated death becomes terrifying resurrection. The divine passive construction (*pneuma...eisēlthen*, 'the breath entered') emphasizes God's direct action. The 'great fear' (*phobos megas*) that falls on observers is the typical human response to divine intervention (cf. Luke 1:12, 65; Acts 5:5, 11).
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 37:5-10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The command 'Come up here' (*anabate hōde*) echoes the invitation to John in 4:1. The ascension in a cloud (*en tē nephelē*) recalls both Elijah's ascension (2 Kings 2:11) and Christ's ascension (Acts 1:9). The phrase 'their enemies watched' (*etheōrēsan autous hoi echthroi autōn*) is the ultimate reversal — the same people who refused to bury them and celebrated their death now witness their vindication. The cloud, a symbol of divine presence throughout Scripture, carries them into God's domain in full view of their persecutors.

12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Kings 2:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The earthquake accompanies the witnesses' vindication — divine confirmation of their ministry. A tenth (to dekaton) of the city falls, and 7,000 die — precise numbers suggesting a measured, controlled judgment. The 7,000 may invert 1 Kings 19:18, where 7,000 in Israel had not bowed to Baal — there, 7,000 were the faithful remnant; here, 7,000 are the judged. Crucially, 'the rest' (hoi loipoi) gave glory to God (edōkan doxan tō theō tou ouranou) — unlike the survivors of the trumpet plagues who refused to repent (9:20-21), these survivors respond with worship. This suggests that the witnesses' ministry, including their death and resurrection, achieves what the plagues alone could not: genuine repentance.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 19:18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. This structural marker parallels 9:12. The second woe (the sixth trumpet, including the interlude of chapters 10-11:13) has ended. The third woe is identified with the seventh trumpet, which sounds in the very next verse. The adverb tachy ('quickly, soon') heightens the urgency — there is no further delay.
15. The seventh trumpet is the climactic moment anticipated since 10:7. The SBLGNT reads the singular hē basileia ('the kingdom') rather than the KJV's plural 'kingdoms' — the entire world-system, conceived as a single rebellious kingdom, is now claimed by God and his Christ. The phrase tou kyriou hēmōn kai tou Christou autou ('of our Lord and of his Christ') echoes Psalm 2:2 ('against the LORD and against his anointed one') — the psalm of universal rebellion is answered by universal sovereignty. The future tense basileusei ('he will reign') may be a 'prophetic future' or may indicate that the reign, while declared, is still being realized. The phrase 'forever and ever' (eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn) ensures this is no temporary political transfer but eternal dominion.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 2:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The elders respond to the kingdom proclamation as they did to the creation hymn in 4:10-11 — falling prostrate in worship. The pattern of heavenly worship in response to divine action is consistent throughout Revelation. Their thrones (thronous, not the KJV's 'seats') indicate their authority, yet they voluntarily prostrate themselves before the supreme throne.
17. The divine title is now twofold — 'who is and who was' (ho ōn kai ho ēn) — the third element ('who is to come') is omitted because he has now come. The future arrival is no longer anticipated; it has occurred. This subtle change signals the fulfillment of the promise. The verb ebasileusas ('you have reigned/begun to reign') is an ingressive aorist — God has always been sovereign, but now he actively exercises that sovereignty in the transformation of the world's kingdoms. The thanksgiving (eucharistoumen) is the appropriate response when the long-awaited kingdom arrives.
18. The opening line 'the nations raged' (ta ethnē ōrgisthēsan) quotes Psalm 2:1 (LXX), where the nations rage against the LORD and his anointed — a rage now met by God's own wrath (hē orgē sou). The verse compresses the entire eschatological program into a single sentence: judgment of the dead, reward for the faithful (prophets, saints, God-fearers — both small and great, demolishing all social hierarchy), and destruction of the destroyers. The final phrase diaphtheirai tous diaphtheirontas tēn gēn ('to destroy those who destroy the earth') contains a powerful wordplay — the same verb is used for both God's action and the destroyers' crime. Those who corrupt and ruin God's creation will themselves be ruined.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 2:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The heavenly temple opens to reveal the ark of the covenant (hē kibōtos tēs diathēkēs autou) — the most sacred object in Israel's worship, lost since the destruction of Solomon's temple in 586 BC. Its appearance in the heavenly temple declares that what was lost on earth is preserved in heaven — God's covenant faithfulness endures even when its earthly symbols are destroyed. The word diathēkēs ('covenant') connects this vision to the entire biblical narrative of God's binding relationship with his people. The Sinai-theophany formula recurs with full intensity: lightning, rumblings, thunder, earthquake, and now hail — the most complete iteration yet, escalating from 4:5 (lightning, rumblings, thunder) and 8:5 (those plus earthquake). Each repetition adds an element, suggesting that the revelation of God's presence intensifies as Revelation progresses.

12

Summary: Revelation 12 presents a cosmic drama in three movements: a woman clothed with the sun gives birth to a male child who is snatched up to God's throne; war erupts in heaven as Michael and his angels defeat the dragon; and the dragon, cast down to earth, pursues the woman and her offspring. The chapter establishes the theological framework for the rest of the book's conflict — the dragon (identified as Satan) has been defeated in heaven and now wages war against those who keep God's commands and hold to the testimony of Jesus.

What Makes This Remarkable: The woman figure is richly symbolic, drawing on imagery from Genesis 37 (Joseph's dream of sun, moon, and twelve stars), Isaiah 26:17-18 and 66:7 (Zion in labor), and the exodus narrative. The male child 'who will rule all nations with an iron rod' echoes Psalm 2:9, a royal messianic psalm. The number 1,260 days (v. 6) equals forty-two months or three and a half years — half of

seven, the number of completion — representing a limited period of tribulation. The victory hymn in verses 10-12 is the theological center: the accuser has been thrown down, and the saints conquer him 'by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony.'

Translation Friction: *The identity of the woman has been debated throughout Christian history — she has been understood as Israel, the Church, Mary, or a composite figure. We render the Greek as given without resolving this in the text. The 'time, times, and half a time' formula (v. 14) comes from Daniel 7:25 and 12:7, linking Revelation's timeline to Daniel's prophecy.*

Connections: *The chapter connects to Genesis 3:15 (enmity between the serpent and the woman's seed), Psalm 2 (the messianic king who rules with an iron rod), Isaiah 66:7-8 (Zion giving birth), Daniel 7:25 and 12:7 (the three-and-a-half-year period), and Daniel 10:13, 21 (Michael as Israel's champion). The dragon's identification as 'the ancient serpent' (v. 9) explicitly links to the Eden narrative.*

¹Then a great sign appeared in heaven: a woman clothed with the sun, with the moon under her feet, and on her head a crown of twelve stars. ²She was pregnant and was crying out in labor pains, in agony to give birth. ³Then another sign appeared in heaven: a great fiery-red dragon with seven heads and ten horns, and seven diadems on his heads. ⁴His tail swept a third of the stars from the sky and hurled them to the earth. The dragon stood before the woman who was about to give birth, so that when she bore her child he might devour it. ⁵She gave birth to a son, a male child, who is destined to shepherd all the nations with an iron rod. And her child was snatched up to God and to his throne. ⁶The woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared by God, so that she would be nourished there for one thousand two hundred and sixty days. ⁷Then war broke out in heaven. Michael and his angels fought against the dragon, and the dragon and his angels fought back, ⁸Prevailed not. Neither was their location discovered any more in heaven. ⁹The great dragon was thrown down — the ancient serpent, who is called the Devil and Satan, the one who deceives the whole inhabited world — he was thrown down to the earth, and his angels were thrown down with him. ¹⁰Then I heard a loud voice in heaven saying, "Now have come the salvation and the power and the kingdom of our God, and the authority of his Christ, because the accuser of our brothers and sisters has been thrown down — the one who accuses them before our God day and night. ¹¹They conquered him by the blood of the Lamb and by the word of their testimony, and they did not love their lives even in the face of death. ¹²Therefore rejoice, you heavens and all who dwell in them! But woe to the earth and the sea, because the devil has come down to you with great fury, knowing that his time is short." ¹³When the dragon saw that he had been thrown down to the earth, he pursued the woman who had given birth to the male child. ¹⁴But the woman was given the two wings of a great eagle so that she could fly to her place in the wilderness, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, away from the presence of the serpent. ¹⁵Then the serpent spewed water like a river from his mouth after the woman, to sweep her away with the flood. ¹⁶But the earth helped the woman: the earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river that the dragon had spewed from his mouth. ¹⁷Then the dragon became enraged at the woman and went off to wage war against the rest of her offspring — those who keep God's commands and hold to the testimony of Jesus. ¹⁸I took my stand on the seashore.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek semeion ('sign') is distinct from the KJV's 'wonder' (teras). A semeion in Revelation is a symbolic vision pointing to a deeper reality, not merely a spectacle. The imagery of sun, moon, and twelve stars echoes Joseph's dream in Genesis 37:9, where these represent Jacob, Rachel, and the twelve tribes of Israel.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 37:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Greek basanizomene ('being tormented, agonized') is a strong word also used for torture — the birth pangs are depicted with intense suffering. Prophetic birth imagery for Israel's deliverance appears in Isaiah 26:17-18, 66:7-8, and Micah 4:10.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 26:17-18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Micah 4:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

3. The Greek *pyrros* ('fiery-red') suggests the color of fire or blood, not merely 'red.' The seven heads and ten horns echo the fourth beast of Daniel 7:7, 24, linking the dragon to oppressive imperial power. The diadems (*diademata*) are royal crowns, distinct from the victor's wreath (*stephanos*) worn by the woman in verse 1.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 7:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The sweeping of a third of the stars recalls Daniel 8:10, where the little horn casts stars to the ground. Stars in apocalyptic literature often represent angelic beings (cf. Revelation 1:20). The dragon's posture before the woman evokes Pharaoh's threat to Israel's children (Exodus 1) and Herod's massacre (Matthew 2).
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 8:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The phrase 'shepherd with an iron rod' (*poimainein en rhabdo sidera*) quotes Psalm 2:9 (LXX), where the messianic king rules the nations. The Greek *poimainein* means 'to shepherd, to tend, to rule' — it carries both pastoral care and authoritative governance. The verb *herpassthe* ('was snatched up') is the same root as *harpazo*, used by Paul for the catching up of believers in 1 Thessalonians 4:17.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalms 2:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The wilderness (*eremos*) is a place of both danger and divine provision in biblical tradition — Israel was sustained in the wilderness for forty years. The 1,260 days equal forty-two months or three and a half years, a period drawn from Daniel 7:25 and 12:7 that represents a limited time of tribulation under divine control. The passive 'nourished' (*trephōsin*) implies divine provision without naming the agents.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:25. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Michael (*Michaēl*, from Hebrew 'Who is like God?') appears in Daniel 10:13, 21 and 12:1 as the angelic prince who fights for Israel. The war in heaven is presented not as a primordial event but as a consequence of the messianic birth and ascension described in verse 5.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 10:13. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The Greek *ouk ischysen* ('he was not strong enough') emphasizes the dragon's inability, not merely his defeat. The phrase 'no place found' (*oude topos heurethe*) echoes Daniel 2:35, where the kingdoms of the world leave no trace. The expulsion is total and permanent.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 2:35 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. This verse provides four identifying titles: 'the great dragon' (the current visionary form), 'the ancient serpent' (linking to Genesis 3), 'the Devil' (*diabolos*, 'slanderer, accuser'), and 'Satan' (*Satanas*, from Hebrew *satan*, 'adversary'). The participle *planōn* ('the one deceiving') describes his ongoing activity. The Greek *oikoumenē* ('the inhabited world') refers to the entire human world, not merely the Roman Empire.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The Greek *katēgōr* ('accuser') is a legal term for a prosecutor. The image draws on Zechariah 3:1, where Satan stands to accuse the high priest Joshua. The fourfold declaration — salvation, power, kingdom, authority — marks the dragon's expulsion as the turning point of cosmic history. The phrase 'day and night' indicates relentless, ceaseless accusation.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 3:1 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The verb *enikēsan* ('they conquered, they overcame') is the same word used of Christ in 5:5 — the believers' victory mirrors and participates in the Lamb's victory. The three instruments of victory — blood, testimony, and self-sacrifice — form a pattern central to Revelation's theology: conquering through faithful witness, not through violence. The phrase 'did not love their lives even in the face of death' (*ouk ēgapēsan tēn psychēn autōn achri thanatou*) does not celebrate death but commends a loyalty that death cannot break.
12. The Greek *skēnountes* ('those who tent, those who dwell') uses the same root as *skēnē* ('tabernacle'), evoking God's dwelling presence. The contrast is sharp: heaven rejoices because the accuser is gone, but earth and sea face intensified danger because a cornered, desperate enemy is more dangerous, not less. The word *thymos* ('fury, rage') is distinct from *orgē* ('wrath') — *thymos* suggests explosive, passionate anger.
13. The Greek *ediōxen* ('pursued, persecuted') carries both senses — physical pursuit and hostile persecution. The narrative resumes from verse 6, now explaining why the woman fled to the wilderness.
14. Eagle wings as divine deliverance echo Exodus 19:4 ('I carried you on eagles' wings') and Deuteronomy 32:11. The time formula 'a time, times, and half a time' (*kairon kai kairous kai hemisy kairou*) comes directly from Daniel 7:25 and 12:7, equaling three and a half years or 1,260 days (v. 6). This deliberate echo ties Revelation's persecution timeline to Daniel's prophetic framework.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 19:4. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 32:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:25. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The flood-from-the-mouth imagery may draw on ancient Near Eastern chaos-water mythology and the biblical tradition of threatening waters (Psalm 18:4, 69:1-2, 124:4-5). The Greek potamophoretōn ('carried away by a river') is a rare compound word found only here in the New Testament.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 18:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The earth personified as an agent of rescue reverses the 'woe to the earth' of verse 12. Creation itself assists in God's protective purposes. The imagery of the earth swallowing may echo Numbers 16:32, where the earth swallowed Korah's rebellion — but here the earth swallows the threat rather than the threatened.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 16:32. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The phrase 'the rest of her offspring' (tōn loipōn tou spermatos autēs) echoes Genesis 3:15, where enmity is placed between the serpent and the woman's seed. The two identifying marks of the woman's offspring — keeping God's commands and holding the testimony of Jesus — define the faithful community throughout Revelation (cf. 14:12). The SBLGNT omits 'Christ' after 'Jesus' in the best manuscripts.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 3:15. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. Textual variant: some manuscripts read 'I stood' (estathēn, first person — the KJV reading), but the SBLGNT reads 'he stood' (estathē, third person), referring to the dragon. We follow the SBLGNT. The dragon's position on the seashore anticipates the beast rising from the sea in 13:1. This verse functions as a transition between chapters 12 and 13.

13

Summary: *Revelation 13 introduces the dragon's two agents on earth: a beast rising from the sea with ten horns and seven heads, and a second beast rising from the earth with two horns like a lamb. The first beast receives the dragon's authority and wages war against the saints. The second beast performs signs and compels all people to worship the first beast, enforcing a mark without which no one can buy or sell. The chapter closes with the famous number of the beast: 666.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The sea beast combines features of all four beasts from Daniel 7 — leopard, bear, lion, and ten-horned monster — into a single composite figure, suggesting it embodies all oppressive empire. The fatal wound that was healed (v. 3) parodies Christ's death and resurrection. The second beast acts as a false prophet (later explicitly called this in 16:13, 19:20), forming a counterfeit trinity: the dragon (anti-Father), the sea beast (anti-Christ), and the earth beast (anti-Spirit). The number 666, calculated through gematria (assigning numerical values to letters), most likely points to 'Nero Caesar' in Hebrew letters, though the text deliberately leaves the identification as a riddle.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the beast has generated centuries of speculation. We render the Greek text without identifying the beast with any specific historical or future figure. The 'mark' (charagma) was a term used for imperial stamps and brands in the Roman world, but the text presents it in visionary, symbolic terms that transcend any single historical referent.*

Connections: *The chapter draws heavily on Daniel 7 (the four beasts and the saints' persecution), Daniel 3 (the command to worship an image on pain of death), and Exodus 7-8 (signs performed by competing powers). The mark on the forehead and hand inverts the phylacteries of Deuteronomy 6:8 and the seal of God on the forehead in Revelation 7:3.*

¹And I saw a beast rising out of the sea, with ten horns and seven heads. On its horns were ten diadems, and on its heads were blasphemous names. ²The beast I saw resembled a leopard, its feet were like a bear's, and its mouth was like a lion's mouth. The dragon gave it his power and his throne and great authority. ³One of its heads appeared to have been fatally wounded, but its mortal wound had been healed. The whole earth was amazed and followed the beast. ⁴They worshiped the dragon because he had given authority to the beast, and they worshiped the beast, saying, "Who is like the beast? Who can wage war against it?" ⁵The beast was given a mouth to speak arrogant words and blasphemies, and it was given authority to

act for forty-two months. ⁶It opened its mouth to utter blasphemies against God, blaspheming his name and his dwelling — that is, those who dwell in heaven. ⁷It was permitted to wage war against the saints and to conquer them, and it was given authority over every tribe and people and language and nation. ⁸All who dwell on the earth will worship it — everyone whose name has not been written from the foundation of the world in the book of life of the Lamb who was slain. ⁹If anyone has an ear, let them hear: ¹⁰If anyone is destined for captivity, to captivity they go. If anyone is to be killed with the sword, with the sword they will be killed. Here is the endurance and the faith of the saints. ¹¹Then I saw another beast rising out of the earth. It had two horns like a lamb, but it spoke like a dragon. ¹²It exercises all the authority of the first beast on its behalf and makes the earth and those who dwell on it worship the first beast, whose mortal wound had been healed. ¹³It performs great signs, even making fire come down from heaven to earth in the sight of people. ¹⁴It deceives those who dwell on the earth because of the signs it was permitted to perform on behalf of the beast, telling those who dwell on the earth to make an image for the beast that had been wounded by the sword and yet lived. ¹⁵It was permitted to give breath to the image of the beast, so that the image of the beast could even speak and cause all who would not worship the image of the beast to be killed. ¹⁶It also compels everyone — small and great, rich and poor, free and slave — to receive a mark on their right hand or on their forehead, ¹⁷That no person may buy or sell, rescue he that had the mark, or the identity of the beast, or the number of his identity. ¹⁸This calls for wisdom. Let the one who has understanding calculate the number of the beast, for it is the number of a person, and its number is six hundred sixty-six.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT places 'and he stood on the sand of the sea' at the end of chapter 12 (12:18), so chapter 13 begins with 'And I saw.' The beast from the sea echoes Daniel 7:3, where four beasts rise from the sea — here compressed into one composite monster. The sea in apocalyptic thought represents chaos and the realm of evil. The diadems are on the horns (political power) rather than the heads, distinguishing this from the dragon's diadems in 12:3. The plural 'blasphemous names' (onomata blasphemias) suggests imperial titles claiming divine status.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 7:3. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The three animal features come from Daniel 7:4-6 but in reverse order — leopard (Daniel's third beast), bear (second), lion (first) — suggesting John sees them from the perspective of the present looking backward. The transfer of power, throne, and authority from dragon to beast establishes the beast as Satan's earthly agent, a dark parody of the Father giving authority to the Son (Matthew 28:18).
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:4-6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The Greek hōs esphagmenēn ('as though slain') uses the same verb (sphazō) applied to the Lamb in 5:6 — the beast parodies Christ's death and resurrection. The 'healing' of the death-wound creates a counterfeit resurrection narrative that captures the world's allegiance. The verb ethaumasthē ('was amazed, marveled') indicates awe that leads to worship.
4. The acclamation 'Who is like the beast?' is a blasphemous inversion of the divine praise 'Who is like you, LORD?' (Exodus 15:11, Psalm 35:10) and even of Michael's name (Mi-ka-el, 'Who is like God?'). The dual worship — of dragon and beast — reveals that the beast's power is derivative; worshiping the beast means worshiping the dragon behind it.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 15:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 35:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The passive 'was given' (edothē) appears twice, indicating that the beast's power operates under divine permission — even the beast's authority has boundaries set by God. The 'mouth speaking great things' echoes Daniel 7:8, 11, 20 (the little horn). The forty-two months equal 1,260 days or three and a half years, the same period of the woman's wilderness refuge in 12:6, 14.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 7:8 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The beast's blasphemy targets three things: God's name, God's dwelling (skēnē, 'tabernacle/tent'), and those who dwell in heaven. The apposition 'his dwelling, that is, those who dwell in heaven' suggests that God's true tabernacle is his people — the dwelling and the dwellers are identified. The Greek skēnē recalls the tabernacle tradition and anticipates 21:3, where God's dwelling will be with humanity.
7. Again the divine passive 'was given' (edothē) — the beast's war against the saints occurs within God's sovereign permission, echoing Daniel 7:21 where the horn prevails against the saints for a time. The fourfold universal formula (tribe, people, language, nation) appears repeatedly in Revelation (5:9, 7:9, 11:9, 14:6) and here describes the beast's totalitarian reach.

7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The phrase 'from the foundation of the world' (apo katabolēs kosmou) can modify either 'written' (names written before creation) or 'slain' (the Lamb slain before creation). The Greek word order most naturally connects it to 'written' — the names were recorded before the world's foundation. Compare 17:8, where the same phrase clearly modifies 'written.' Both readings carry profound theological weight.
9. This formula echoes Jesus's repeated refrain in the Synoptic Gospels (Matthew 11:15, 13:9) and in Revelation's letters to the seven churches (2:7, 11, etc.). Here it introduces the solemn oracle that follows, demanding careful attention from the hearer.
10. This oracle, echoing Jeremiah 15:2 and 43:11, calls the saints to accept suffering rather than retaliate. The Greek hypomonē ('endurance, patient steadfastness') is one of Revelation's key ethical terms — it describes not passive resignation but active, faithful perseverance under pressure. The SBLGNT reading presents both lines as statements about the saints' destiny, not as threats against persecutors.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 15:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The second beast rises from the earth (gē) rather than the sea, perhaps representing established social and religious structures rather than chaotic political power. Its lamb-like appearance but dragon-like speech makes it a deceiver — it looks harmless but serves the dragon's purposes. Later (16:13, 19:20, 20:10) this beast is called 'the false prophet,' clarifying its role as a religious counterfeit.
12. The second beast functions as enforcer and propagandist for the first. The phrase 'on its behalf' (enōpion autou, literally 'before him/in his presence') indicates the second beast acts as the first beast's representative. This mirrors the Holy Spirit's role in directing worship to Christ — the second beast directs worship to the first beast, completing the counterfeit trinity.
13. Fire from heaven recalls Elijah's contest on Mount Carmel (1 Kings 18:38) — the second beast counterfeits prophetic signs. Jesus warned that false prophets would perform signs to deceive (Matthew 24:24), and Paul speaks of the lawless one performing counterfeit miracles (2 Thessalonians 2:9). The signs are real in their effects but deceptive in their source and purpose.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References 1 Kings 18:38 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The command to construct an image (eikōn) of the beast recalls Nebuchadnezzar's golden image in Daniel 3, where refusal to worship meant death. The beast's recovery from a sword wound (plēgē tēs machairēs) continues the parody of Christ's death and resurrection. The verb ezēsen ('lived, came to life') is the same word used for Christ's resurrection in 2:8.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The Greek pneuma here means 'breath' rather than 'spirit' or 'life' — the second beast animates the image with breath, parodying God breathing life into Adam (Genesis 2:7). The speaking image may reflect ancient practices of ventriloquism in pagan temples or mechanical devices that made idols appear to speak. The death penalty for non-worship directly parallels Daniel 3:6.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 2:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 3:6 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The Greek charagma ('mark, stamp, brand') was used for the imperial stamp on documents and the brand on livestock or slaves. The three pairs (small/great, rich/poor, free/slave) emphasize that no social category is exempt. The mark on hand and forehead deliberately inverts the Shema practice of Deuteronomy 6:8, where God's words are bound on hand and forehead — the beast demands the same total allegiance that belongs to God alone.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 6:8. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. Economic exclusion as a tool of coercion would have resonated powerfully in the Roman trade-guild system, where participation in commercial life often required offering incense to the emperor or patron deity. The mark, the name, and the number appear to be three expressions of the same allegiance, not three separate requirements.
18. The Greek arithmos anthrōpou ('number of a person/human') could mean either 'a number that identifies a specific person' or 'a human number' (as opposed to an angelic one). The number 666, through Hebrew gematria (where letters carry numerical values), most plausibly corresponds to 'Nero Caesar' (nrwn qsr = 50+200+6+50+100+60+200 = 666). Some manuscripts read 616, which corresponds to 'Nero Caesar' in the Latin spelling. The text presents the calculation as a riddle requiring wisdom, not as an equation with an obvious solution.

14

Summary: *Revelation 14 presents a series of contrasting visions. First, the Lamb stands on Mount Zion with 144,000 redeemed saints singing a new song. Then three angels proclaim messages in sequence: the eternal gospel, the fall of Babylon, and a warning against taking the beast's mark. A voice from heaven pronounces blessing on those who die in the Lord. Finally, two harvest visions close the chapter — one of grain reaped by the Son of Man, and one of grapes thrown into 'the great winepress of God's wrath,' producing blood as deep as a horse's bridle.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The chapter functions as an intermission between the beast visions (ch. 13) and the bowl judgments (chs. 15-16), providing heavenly perspective on earthly events. The 144,000 reappear from chapter 7, now seen in their triumphant state. The three angel messages (vv. 6-11) form a triptych of proclamation that has been extraordinarily influential in Christian history. The harvest imagery draws on Joel 3:13 and Isaiah 63:1-6, with the winepress producing blood to the depth of about 180 miles — a hyperbolically horrifying image of judgment.*

Translation Friction: *The 144,000 who 'have not defiled themselves with women' (v. 4) has been interpreted as literal celibacy, spiritual purity (faithfulness to God), or metaphorical virginity (not participating in idolatrous worship). We render the Greek directly and note the interpretive options. The grain harvest (vv. 14-16) and grape harvest (vv. 17-20) may represent different aspects of judgment, or grain may symbolize salvation and grapes judgment.*

Connections: *Mount Zion connects to Psalm 2:6 and Isaiah 24:23. The new song recalls Psalms 33:3, 96:1, and 149:1. The harvest imagery draws on Joel 3:13, Isaiah 63:1-6, and Jesus's harvest parables (Matthew 13:24-30, 36-43). The winepress of God's wrath anticipates 19:15. The declaration 'Fallen is Babylon' echoes Isaiah 21:9 and anticipates chapters 17-18.*

¹Then I looked, and there was the Lamb, standing on Mount Zion, and with him were one hundred forty-four thousand who had his name and his Father's name written on their foreheads. ²I heard a sound from heaven like the roar of many waters and like the sound of loud thunder, and the sound I heard was like harpists playing their harps. ³They were singing a new song before the throne and before the four living creatures and the elders, and no one could learn the song except the one hundred forty-four thousand who had been redeemed from the earth. ⁴These are the ones who have not defiled themselves with women, for they are virgins. These are the ones who follow the Lamb wherever he goes. They were redeemed from among humanity as firstfruits for God and for the Lamb. ⁵No lie was found in their mouths; they are blameless. ⁶Then I saw another angel flying in midheaven, carrying an eternal gospel to proclaim to those who dwell on the earth — to every nation and tribe and language and people. ⁷He said with a loud voice, "Fear God and give him glory, because the hour of his judgment has come. Worship the one who made heaven and earth, the sea and the springs of water." ⁸A second angel followed, saying, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great — she who made all the nations drink the wine of the fury of her sexual immorality." ⁹A third angel followed them, saying with a loud voice, "If anyone worships the beast and its image and receives a mark on their forehead or on their hand, ¹⁰Indeed, the same will drink of the wine of the wrath of God, which is poured out without mixture into the cup of his indignation. Then he will be tormented with fire and brimstone in the presence of the holy angels, and in the presence of the Lamb: ¹¹The smoke of their torment rises forever and ever, and they have no rest day or night — those who worship the beast and its image, and whoever receives the mark of its name." ¹²Here is the endurance of the saints — those who keep God's commands and their faith in Jesus. ¹³Then I heard a voice from heaven saying, "Write this: Blessed are the dead who die in the Lord from now on." "Yes," says the Spirit, "so that they may rest from their labors, for their deeds follow them." ¹⁴Then I looked, and there was a white cloud, and seated on the cloud was one like a son of man, with a golden crown on his head and a sharp sickle in his hand. ¹⁵Another angel came out of the temple, calling with a loud voice to the one seated on the cloud, "Put in your sickle and reap, for the hour to reap has come, because the harvest of the earth is fully ripe." ¹⁶So the one seated on the cloud swung his sickle over the earth, and the earth was harvested. ¹⁷Then another angel came out of the temple in heaven, and he too had a sharp sickle. ¹⁸Still another angel came from the altar —

the one who has authority over fire — and he called with a loud voice to the angel with the sharp sickle, "Put in your sharp sickle and gather the clusters from the vine of the earth, for its grapes are ripe." ¹⁹So the angel swung his sickle over the earth and gathered the grape harvest of the earth and threw it into the great winepress of God's wrath. ²⁰The winepress was trampled outside the city, and blood flowed from the winepress as high as a horse's bridle for a distance of one thousand six hundred stadia.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The SBLGNT includes both the Lamb's name and the Father's name on the foreheads, in contrast to the KJV which mentions only the Father's name. This double name stands in direct contrast to the beast's mark on the foreheads of its followers (13:16). Mount Zion represents God's chosen dwelling place (Psalm 2:6, 48:2), and the Lamb's standing there asserts sovereign authority over the territory the beast claims.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Psalm 2:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. Three similes describe the heavenly sound: rushing waters (cf. Ezekiel 1:24, 43:2), thunder (associated with divine presence), and harp music (associated with worship). The combination of overwhelming power and musical beauty reflects the dual nature of the heavenly reality — both awesome and beautiful.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 1:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The 'new song' (ōdē kainē) is a recurring biblical motif (Psalm 33:3, 40:3, 96:1, 144:9, 149:1) signaling a new act of God's deliverance. The Greek ēgorasmenoi ('redeemed, purchased') uses commercial language — these were 'bought' from the earth, the purchase price being the Lamb's blood (cf. 5:9). Only those who have experienced this redemption can sing this song — the content is inseparable from the experience.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 33:3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The Greek parthenoi ('virgins') applied to males is unusual. Three main interpretations exist: (1) literal celibacy as a form of military consecration (cf. Deuteronomy 23:9-10, 1 Samuel 21:4-5); (2) metaphorical sexual purity representing spiritual faithfulness — not participating in the 'fornication' of idolatrous Babylon (cf. 17:2, 18:3); (3) a broader metaphor for covenant faithfulness, since the Old Testament often portrays idolatry as sexual unfaithfulness. The term 'firstfruits' (aparchē) comes from Israel's agricultural offering system (Leviticus 23:10) — the first portion, dedicated to God, that consecrates the whole harvest.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 23:9-10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes 1 Samuel 21:4-5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Leviticus 23:10. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek pseudos ('lie, falsehood') connects to the dragon's identity as deceiver (12:9) and to the exclusion of liars from the New Jerusalem (21:27, 22:15). The word amōmoi ('blameless, without blemish') is sacrificial language — it describes unblemished animals fit for offering (cf. Leviticus 1:3, 1 Peter 1:19). The SBLGNT omits 'before the throne of God' found in some manuscripts and the KJV.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Leviticus 1:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The Greek euangelion aiōnion ('eternal gospel/good news') is striking — even at the hour of judgment, the message remains 'good news.' The angel flies in mesouranēma ('midheaven,' the zenith of the sky), ensuring maximum visibility and audibility. The fourfold universal formula (nation, tribe, language, people) appears in a different order from 13:7, perhaps emphasizing universality through variation.
7. The angel's proclamation is essentially a call to creation-worship — worship the Creator, not the creature. The fourfold creation catalogue (heaven, earth, sea, springs) echoes Exodus 20:11 and Psalm 146:6. In the context of beast-worship (ch. 13), this is a radical counter-claim: the only one worthy of worship is the Maker of all things. The 'hour of judgment' (hōra tēs kriseōs) recalls Jesus's language in John 12:31.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 20:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 146:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The doubled 'fallen, fallen' (epesen epesen) quotes Isaiah 21:9, where it announces historical Babylon's fall. The metaphor is layered: Babylon's 'wine' represents both the intoxicating allure of her idolatry and empire, and the wrath (thymos) that results from drinking it. The Greek porneia ('sexual immorality, fornication') is used throughout Revelation as a metaphor for idolatrous allegiance — spiritual unfaithfulness to God. This brief announcement anticipates the extended Babylon oracle in chapters 17-18.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 21:9 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

9. The third angel's message is the most severe warning in Revelation, extending through verse 11. The three conditions — worshipping the beast, worshipping its image, receiving its mark — are parallel expressions of the same allegiance. This directly answers the economic coercion of 13:16-17 by declaring the eternal consequences of compliance.
10. The Greek *akratou* ('unmixed, full strength') refers to wine not diluted with water — in the ancient world, wine was normally mixed. Unmixed wine meant maximum intensity. The combination of *thymos* ('fury, passion') and *orgē* ('wrath, settled anger') in the same phrase is unique and emphatic. Fire and sulfur (*theion*, 'brimstone/sulfur') recall the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah (Genesis 19:24). The judgment occurs 'in the presence of (*enōpion*) the Lamb — the one who offered mercy that was refused now witnesses the consequences of refusal.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 19:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The phrase *eis aiōnas aiōnōn* ('to the ages of ages, forever and ever') is the strongest expression of unending duration in Greek. The image of smoke ascending echoes Isaiah 34:10 (the destruction of Edom). The 'no rest day or night' contrasts sharply with the four living creatures who worship God 'day and night' (4:8) — perpetual torment mirrors perpetual worship in tragic inversion.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 34:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. This echoes the same double identification from 12:17: keeping God's commands and holding faith in Jesus. The Greek *pistin Iēsou* could be 'faith in Jesus' (objective genitive) or 'the faithfulness of Jesus' (subjective genitive). Both readings are theologically valid — the saints endure because they trust Jesus and because they share in his pattern of faithfulness.
13. This is the second of seven beatitudes in Revelation (1:3, 14:13, 16:15, 19:9, 20:6, 22:7, 22:14). The phrase 'from now on' (*ap' arti*) may mean 'from this point in the visionary narrative' or 'from this eschatological moment.' The Spirit confirms and expands the heavenly voice — a rare dialogue between heaven and the Spirit. The 'rest' (*anapausontai*) directly contrasts with the 'no rest' of beast-worshippers in verse 11. Their 'deeds follow them' — good works are not left behind at death but accompany the faithful into God's presence.
14. The phrase 'one like a son of man' (*homoion huion anthrōpou*) comes from Daniel 7:13, where a human-like figure receives dominion from the Ancient of Days. This same phrase opens Revelation in 1:13. The golden crown (*stephanos*) is a victor's wreath, not a royal diadem. The sickle (*drepanon*) introduces the harvest metaphor that will dominate the rest of the chapter, drawing on Joel 3:13.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 7:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 3:13. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The angel comes from the temple (*naos*), indicating the command originates with God. The Greek *exēranthē* ('is dried, is fully ripe') literally means 'has dried out' — grain is harvested when it dries on the stalk. Whether this grain harvest represents salvation (gathering the elect) or judgment (or both) is debated. The distinction between the grain harvest (vv. 14-16) and grape harvest (vv. 17-20) may parallel Jesus's parable of wheat and tares (Matthew 13:24-30).
16. The brevity of this verse is striking — no details are given about the harvest's outcome or destination. The passive 'was harvested' (*etheristhē*) leaves the result unstated, creating a deliberate pause before the far more graphic grape harvest that follows.
17. This angel carries a sickle like the Son of Man figure, but the harvest he will perform is explicitly one of wrath. The specification 'the temple in heaven' (*tou naou tou en tō ouranō*) emphasizes the heavenly origin of this judgment.
18. The angel from the altar connects to 6:9-10, where the souls under the altar cry for justice, and to 8:3-5, where fire from the altar is hurled to earth. The altar-angel's authority over fire links judgment to the prayers of the martyrs. The verb *ēkmasan* ('are ripe') literally means 'have reached their peak' — the grapes are at maximum ripeness, meaning the wickedness of the earth has reached its full measure.
19. The winepress (*lēnos*) as a metaphor for divine judgment comes from Isaiah 63:1-6, where God treads the winepress alone and the nations' lifeblood spatters his garments. The phrase 'the great winepress of God's wrath' (*tēn lēnon tou thymou tou theou ton megan*) uses *thymos* ('fury, passionate wrath'), emphasizing the intensity of divine judgment. This image returns in 19:15.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 63:1-6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The location 'outside the city' may echo the tradition that Jesus suffered 'outside the gate' (Hebrews 13:12) or the Joel 3 judgment in the Valley of Jehoshaphat outside Jerusalem. The scale is deliberately apocalyptic and hyperbolic: blood reaching horse-bridle depth (about four and a half feet) for 1,600 stadia (approximately 184 miles, or roughly the length of Palestine). The number 1,600 may be symbolic: 4 x 4 x 100, representing the four corners of the earth squared and multiplied — totality of judgment. A stadion is approximately 607 feet (185 meters).
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Joel 3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.

15

Summary: *Revelation 15 is the shortest chapter in the book and serves as the prelude to the seven bowl judgments. John sees those who have conquered the beast standing on a sea of glass mixed with fire, singing the Song of Moses and of the Lamb. Then the heavenly temple opens and seven angels emerge with seven golden bowls filled with the wrath of God, while smoke from God's glory fills the temple so that no one can enter.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The Song of Moses and of the Lamb (vv. 3-4) merges exodus and new covenant in a single hymn. It draws almost entirely from Old Testament scripture — every line echoes Exodus 15, Deuteronomy 32, Psalm 86, Psalm 111, Jeremiah 10, and Malachi 1. The sea of glass mixed with fire recalls the Red Sea crossing, where Israel stood on the far shore and sang (Exodus 15:1-21). The smoke filling the temple so that no one can enter parallels the dedication of Solomon's temple (1 Kings 8:10-11) and the Sinai theophany (Exodus 19:18) — God's glory is so intense that even the heavenly temple becomes inaccessible.*

Translation Friction: *The 'Song of Moses and of the Lamb' combines two great deliverances — from Egypt and from sin — in a single composition. Whether 'of Moses and of the Lamb' means one combined song or two songs is debated; the singular 'song' (ōdēn) in Greek favors a single unified hymn.*

Connections: *The chapter connects to Exodus 15 (the Song of the Sea), 1 Kings 8:10-11 (glory filling the temple), Isaiah 6:4 (smoke in the temple), and Leviticus 26:21 (plagues multiplied sevenfold). The phrase 'King of the nations' echoes Jeremiah 10:7. The seven bowls parallel the seven trumpets (chs. 8-11) but with intensified scope.*

¹Then I saw another sign in heaven, great and marvelous: seven angels with seven plagues — the last ones — because with them the wrath of God is completed. ²I saw what appeared to be a sea of glass mixed with fire, and those who had conquered the beast and its image and the number of its name were standing beside the sea of glass, holding harps of God. ³They sing the song of Moses, the servant of God, and the song of the Lamb, saying: "Great and marvelous are your works, Lord God Almighty! Righteous and true are your ways, King of the nations! ⁴Who will not fear you, Lord, and glorify your name? For you alone are holy. All nations will come and worship before you, because your righteous acts have been revealed." ⁵After this I looked, and the sanctuary of the tent of testimony in heaven was opened, ⁶The seven angels arrived out of the temple, after the seven plagues, clothed in pure and white linen, and after their breasts girded with golden girdles. ⁷Then one of the four living creatures gave the seven angels seven golden bowls filled with the wrath of God, who lives forever and ever. ⁸The sanctuary was filled with smoke from the glory of God and from his power, and no one could enter the sanctuary until the seven plagues of the seven angels were completed.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This is the third 'sign' (semeion) in heaven, following the woman (12:1) and the dragon (12:3). The word *eschatas* ('last') indicates these bowl plagues bring God's judgments to their final expression. The verb *etelestē* ('is completed, is finished') from *teleō* shares the root of Jesus's cry *tetelestai* ('It is finished,' John 19:30) — God's wrath, like his salvation, reaches its *telos* (goal/end).
2. The sea of glass first appeared in 4:6 before God's throne. Here it is mixed with fire — possibly reflecting the trials through which the victors have passed, or the judgment about to be poured out. The Greek *epi tēn thalassan* ('on/beside the sea') recalls Israel standing on the far shore of the Red Sea. The conquerors are defined by three victories: over the beast, its image, and its number. The 'harps of God' (*kitharas tou theou*) are instruments belonging to God, given for worship.
3. Moses is called 'servant of God' (*doulou tou theou*), the same title given him in Joshua 1:1 (LXX). The SBLGNT reads 'King of the nations' (*basileus tōn ethnōn*), following Jeremiah 10:7, rather than the KJV's 'King of saints' (a variant reading). The hymn's content draws entirely from Old Testament praise: 'great and marvelous works' from Psalm 111:2, 'righteous and true ways' from Deuteronomy 32:4, and 'King of the nations' from Jeremiah 10:7.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 15:1-18 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Joshua 1:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 10:7 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Psalm 111:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 32:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The rhetorical question 'Who will not fear?' echoes Jeremiah 10:7. The declaration 'you alone are holy' (monos hosios) uses hosios rather than hagios — hosios emphasizes moral purity and faithfulness to covenant obligations, while hagios emphasizes separation and consecration. The prophecy that 'all nations will come and worship' draws on Psalm 86:9 and anticipates the universal worship described in the New Jerusalem (21:24-26). The word dikaiōmata ('righteous acts, just decrees') can refer to both God's judgments and his saving acts.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalms 86:9. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 10:7. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The unusual phrase 'sanctuary of the tent of testimony' (naos tēs skēnēs tou martyriou) combines temple and tabernacle language, echoing the wilderness tabernacle of Numbers 17:7 (LXX) — the 'tent of testimony' where God's covenant law was kept. The opening of this heavenly sanctuary signals that what follows comes directly from God's covenant faithfulness and justice.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Numbers 17:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The angels' attire — clean linen (linon katharon lampron) and golden sashes — matches the description of Christ in 1:13 and of the heavenly armies in 19:14. Some manuscripts read lithon ('stone') instead of linon ('linen'), which would suggest gemstone-like brilliance, but the SBLGNT follows the linen reading. The priestly vestments indicate that the bowl judgments are a liturgical act — God's justice administered as sacred duty.
7. The Greek phialē ('bowl') is a broad, shallow bowl used for libations in temple worship — the KJV's 'vials' is misleading. The bowls are golden, matching the heavenly furnishings (5:8, golden bowls of incense). That a living creature distributes them connects the judgments to the worship of the throne room. The title 'God who lives forever and ever' (tou theou tou zōntos eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn) contrasts sharply with the beast whose life is derivative and temporary.
8. The smoke (kapnos) from God's glory recalls Isaiah 6:4, where the temple fills with smoke during Isaiah's throne vision. The inability to enter the temple means that intercession is suspended — the time for mercy has passed and judgment must run its full course. The verb telesthōsin ('are completed') echoes verse 1's etelesthē — the plagues must reach their telos (completion/goal).
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 6:4 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

16

Summary: *Revelation 16 narrates the pouring out of the seven bowls of God's wrath in rapid succession. The plagues strike the earth (sores), the sea (blood), the rivers (blood), the sun (scorching heat), the beast's throne (darkness), the Euphrates (dried up, preparing for kings from the east), and finally the air (earthquake and hail). Two interludes punctuate the sequence: an affirmation of God's justice (vv. 5-7) and the gathering of kings at Armageddon (vv. 13-16). The chapter climaxes with 'It is done!' and catastrophic judgment on Babylon.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The seven bowls intensify the Egyptian plague pattern established in the trumpet sequence (chs. 8-9), but whereas the trumpets affected one-third of creation, the bowls are total. The bowl plagues correspond to the Exodus plagues: sores (sixth plague, Exodus 9:10), water to blood (first plague, Exodus 7:20), darkness (ninth plague, Exodus 10:22), frogs (second plague, Exodus 8:2), and hail (seventh plague, Exodus 9:23). The reference to Armageddon (Har-Magedon, v. 16) — the only occurrence of this word in the Bible — has become one of the most culturally influential terms in Revelation.*

Translation Friction: *The name 'Armageddon' (Harmagedon in Greek) is debated: it likely transliterates the Hebrew Har Megiddo ('Mountain of Megiddo'), though Megiddo is a plain, not a mountain. Some scholars connect it to Har Mo'ed ('Mountain of Assembly,' Isaiah 14:13) or other Hebrew constructions. We transliterate the Greek as given.*

Connections: The bowl sequence parallels the Exodus plagues and the trumpet judgments (chs. 8-11). The drying of the Euphrates (v. 12) recalls the parting of the Red Sea (Exodus 14) and the Jordan (Joshua 3). The three unclean spirits like frogs echo the Egyptian frog plague. Armageddon connects to the Megiddo battlefield tradition (Judges 5:19, 2 Kings 23:29). 'It is done!' (v. 17) parallels 'It is finished' (John 19:30).

¹Then I heard a loud voice from the sanctuary saying to the seven angels, "Go and pour out the seven bowls of God's wrath on the earth." ²So the first angel went and poured out his bowl on the earth, and harmful and painful sores broke out on the people who bore the mark of the beast and worshiped its image. ³The second angel poured out his bowl on the sea, and it became like the blood of a dead person, and every living creature in the sea died. ⁴The third angel poured out his bowl on the rivers and the springs of water, and they became blood. ⁵Then I heard the angel of the waters say, "You are righteous, the one who is and who was, the Holy One, because you have judged these things. ⁶Because they poured out the blood of saints and prophets, you have given them blood to drink. They deserve it." ⁷And I heard the altar say, "Yes, Lord God Almighty, true and righteous are your judgments." ⁸The fourth angel poured out his bowl on the sun, and it was allowed to scorch people with fire. ⁹People were scorched by the intense heat, and they blasphemed the name of God who has authority over these plagues. They did not repent and give him glory. ¹⁰The fifth angel poured out his bowl on the throne of the beast, and its kingdom was plunged into darkness. People gnawed their tongues in anguish ¹¹Blasphemed the God of the heavens above on account of the fact that of their pains and their sores, and repented not of their deeds. ¹²The sixth angel poured out his bowl on the great river Euphrates, and its water was dried up to prepare the way for the kings from the east. ¹³And out of the mouth of the false prophet, I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast. ¹⁴These are demonic spirits performing signs, and they go out to the kings of the whole inhabited world to gather them for the battle on the great day of God the Almighty. ¹⁵"Look, I am coming like a thief! Blessed is the one who stays awake and keeps their clothes on, so that they will not walk around naked and their shame be exposed." ¹⁶And they gathered the kings together to the place that in Hebrew is called Armageddon. ¹⁷The seventh angel poured out his bowl into the air, and a loud voice came from the sanctuary, from the throne, saying, "It is done!" ¹⁸There were flashes of lightning, rumblings, peals of thunder, and a violent earthquake — such as had not occurred since people first appeared on the earth — so great was the earthquake. ¹⁹The great city split into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell. God remembered Babylon the great and gave her the cup of the wine of the fury of his wrath. ²⁰Every island fled, and the mountains could no longer be found. ²¹Enormous hailstones, each weighing about a talent, fell from the sky on people, and they blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail, for the plague was extremely severe.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. Since no one could enter the sanctuary (15:8), the voice must be God's own. The verb *ekcheete* ('pour out') is the standard term for pouring libations — the bowls of wrath are poured out as a liturgical act, an ironic inversion of the drink offering. The command is comprehensive: all seven bowls are to be poured in sequence.
2. The Greek *helkos kakon kai ponēron* ('harmful and painful sore') echoes the sixth Egyptian plague (Exodus 9:10-11, LXX). Notably, the plague targets only those with the beast's mark — there is discrimination in this judgment. The two adjectives (*kakon*, 'bad/harmful,' and *ponēron*, 'painful/evil') emphasize the severity.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 9:10-11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The sea turning to blood echoes the first Egyptian plague (Exodus 7:20-21) and the second trumpet (8:8-9), but is more intense — the second trumpet killed a third of sea life; here everything dies. The specification 'blood of a dead person' (*haima hōs nekrou*) indicates coagulated, putrid blood — not flowing life-blood but death-blood. The phrase 'every living soul' (*pasa psychē zōēs*) is total.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 7:20-21 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The third bowl extends the blood-water plague from the sea to freshwater sources — rivers and springs. This parallels the third trumpet (8:10-11) but goes further: the trumpet made water bitter; the bowl turns it to blood entirely. The brevity of 'and they became blood' (*kai egeneto haima*) emphasizes the immediate totality of the transformation.

5. The 'angel of the waters' (angelos tōn hydatōn) suggests angelic jurisdiction over natural elements (cf. 7:1, angels of the winds; 14:18, angel of fire). The divine title 'the one who is and who was' (ho ōn kai ho ēn) notably omits the usual third element 'and who is to come' (cf. 1:4, 8; 4:8) — perhaps because God has now arrived in judgment. The word hosios ('Holy One') emphasizes God's moral integrity and covenant faithfulness.
6. The principle of retributive justice is explicit: those who shed blood are given blood to drink. The verb exechesan ('they poured out') uses the same root as the pouring of the bowls (ekcheō) — a grim wordplay. The final phrase axioi eisin ('they are worthy/deserving') uses the same adjective applied to God and the Lamb in worship (4:11, 5:9, 12) — a dark inversion where 'worthiness' means deserving of judgment.
7. The altar itself speaks — personified as the voice of the martyrs whose souls rest beneath it (6:9-10). Their prayer for justice ('How long, Lord?') receives this answer. The SBLGNT reads 'the altar' (tou thusiastēriou) without 'another,' suggesting the altar itself speaks rather than an angel from it. The affirmation 'true and righteous' (alēthinai kai dikaiai) echoes 15:3 and confirms that God's judgments are both factually accurate and morally just.
8. The fourth trumpet darkened a third of the sun (8:12); the fourth bowl intensifies the sun instead. The divine passive edothē ('it was given/allowed') maintains the theme that even destructive forces operate under God's permission. The verb kaumatisai ('to burn, to scorch') appears in the New Testament only here and in verse 9.
9. The refusal to repent despite suffering is a recurring theme in the bowl sequence (vv. 9, 11, 21), echoing Pharaoh's hardened heart during the Exodus plagues. The people correctly identify God as the source of the plagues but respond with blasphemy rather than repentance. The phrase 'give him glory' (dounai autō doxan) is precisely what the first angel called for in 14:7 — the bowls vindicate that proclamation.
10. The fifth bowl strikes the beast's throne directly — the seat of its authority — and darkness spreads through its kingdom. This parallels the ninth Egyptian plague (Exodus 10:21-23) and the fifth trumpet (9:2). The verb emasōnto ('they gnawed, they chewed') conveys visceral, physical agony. The darkness is both literal and symbolic — the beast's kingdom is revealed as what it always was: darkness.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Exodus 10:21-23 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The sores from the first bowl (v. 2) are still active — the plagues are cumulative, not sequential. The title 'God of heaven' (ton theon tou ouranou) is used in Daniel 2:18-19, 44 and in the post-exilic books (Ezra 1:2, Nehemiah 1:4), emphasizing God's sovereign transcendence over the beast's earthly domain. The second refusal to repent (cf. v. 9) confirms the hardening pattern.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 2:18-19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezra 1:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Nehemiah 1:4. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The Euphrates was the eastern boundary of the Roman Empire and the traditional barrier against invasion from Parthia and beyond. Its drying echoes the drying of the Red Sea (Exodus 14:21) and the Jordan (Joshua 3:14-17) — but here the way is prepared not for God's people but for hostile kings. The phrase 'kings from the rising of the sun' (basileōn tōn apo anatolēs hēliou) uses the full expression for 'east,' emphasizing the geographic direction. The sixth trumpet also featured the Euphrates (9:14).
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Exodus 14:21. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Joshua 3:14-17. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. This is the first explicit identification of the second beast (ch. 13) as 'the false prophet' (pseudoprophētou). The unholy trinity is now fully named: dragon, beast, and false prophet. The frog imagery recalls the second Egyptian plague (Exodus 8:1-15). Frogs emerging from mouths suggests deceptive speech — the counterfeit trinity wages war through propaganda and lies, not just military force. The three unclean spirits, one from each mouth, demonstrate coordinated deception.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Exodus 8:1-15 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The spirits are identified as daimoniōn ('of demons') — their signs are real but their source is evil. The phrase 'the great day of God the Almighty' (tēs hēmeras tēs megalēs tou theou tou pantokratoros) echoes the Day of the LORD tradition in Joel 2:11, 31; Zephaniah 1:14; and Malachi 4:5. The gathering (synagagein) of kings for battle uses the same verb applied to gathering the grape harvest for the winepress of wrath (14:18-19).
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joel 2:11. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Zephaniah 1:14. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Malachi 4:5. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

15. This parenthetical word from Christ himself interrupts the battle narrative — a sudden first-person address recalling 3:3 (to Sardis) and echoing 1 Thessalonians 5:2 and Matthew 24:43-44. It is the third beatitude in Revelation. The clothing metaphor draws on the shame of nakedness (Genesis 3:7, 10) and the white garments promised to the faithful (3:4-5, 18). The placement here — between the demonic gathering and the actual battle — serves as a pastoral aside to readers.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 3:7 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. Armageddon (Harmagedōn) is the only occurrence of this word in the Bible. The specification 'in Hebrew' (Hebraisti) signals a symbolic name requiring interpretation. The most common derivation is Har Megiddo ('Mountain of Megiddo'), referencing the site of numerous decisive battles in Israel's history (Judges 5:19, 2 Kings 9:27, 23:29). However, Megiddo is located on a plain, not a mountain, which has led to alternative proposals including Har Mo'ed ('Mountain of Assembly,' Isaiah 14:13). The text presents it as a symbolic gathering point, not necessarily a literal geographic prediction.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Judges 5:19. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 2 Kings 9:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 14:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The seventh bowl is poured on the air — the medium through which all previous plagues have traveled. The declaration gegonen ('It is done!' or 'It has happened!') is a perfect tense verb indicating a completed action with permanent results. It parallels Jesus's tetelestai ('It is finished,' John 19:30) and anticipates 21:6. The voice comes from both the sanctuary and the throne — the dual source emphasizes ultimate authority.
18. The theophanic signs (lightning, sounds, thunder, earthquake) have appeared at each major transition in Revelation (4:5, 8:5, 11:19), growing in intensity each time. The superlative description — unprecedented since humanity's existence on earth — echoes Daniel 12:1 ('a time of distress such as has not happened'). The fourfold repetition of forms of ginomai ('happened, occurred, appeared') emphasizes the overwhelming reality of the event.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Daniel 12:1 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The 'great city' (hē polis hē megalē) that splits may be distinct from Babylon or may be Babylon itself (cf. 11:8, 17:18). The phrase 'God remembered' (emnēsthē enōpion tou theou) echoes the Hebrew zikaron — when God 'remembers,' he acts on stored-up justice (cf. Genesis 8:1, Exodus 2:24). The triple genitive 'cup of the wine of the fury of his wrath' (to potērion tou oinou tou thymou tēs orgēs autou) piles up terms for judgment with overwhelming force.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 8:1. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 2:24. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The cosmic language of islands fleeing and mountains vanishing echoes 6:14 and draws on the prophetic tradition of creation undoing itself before God's judgment (Nahum 1:5, Jeremiah 4:24). This is de-creation language — the stable features of the earth dissolve before God's wrath.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Nahum 1:5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
20. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Jeremiah 4:24 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
21. A talent (talantiaios) weighed approximately 75 pounds (34 kg) — these are not meteorological hailstones but instruments of divine judgment on a scale beyond natural occurrence. The hail echoes the seventh Egyptian plague (Exodus 9:23-24) and Joshua 10:11, where God hurled hailstones on Israel's enemies. The third and final refusal to repent (cf. vv. 9, 11) completes the pattern of hardening — the response to every plague is blasphemy, never repentance.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 9:23-24. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Joshua 10:11. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.

17

Summary: *Revelation 17 reveals the identity and fate of Babylon through an extended vision. One of the bowl angels carries John into the wilderness, where he sees a woman — 'Babylon the great, the mother of prostitutes' — seated on a scarlet beast with seven heads and ten horns. She is drunk with the blood of the saints. The angel interprets the vision: the seven heads are seven mountains and seven kings, the ten horns are ten kings who will give their power to the beast, and together they will wage war against the Lamb — but the Lamb will conquer them. In a final ironic twist, the beast and its allied kings will turn on the prostitute and destroy her.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter provides the most sustained interpretive commentary in Revelation — the angel explains the symbolism explicitly. The woman-on-the-beast image inverts the woman of chapter 12: where that woman was clothed with the sun and persecuted, this woman is clothed in luxury and persecutes. The seven mountains (v. 9) were universally understood as a reference to Rome in the ancient world. The self-destructive nature of evil is a key theme: Babylon is ultimately destroyed not by God directly but by the very forces she rode — the beast turns on its rider.*

Translation Friction: *The identification of the seven kings (v. 10) has generated extensive historical speculation. Various counting systems for Roman emperors have been proposed, none conclusively. We render the Greek without identifying specific historical figures. The phrase 'an eighth who belongs to the seven' (v. 11) adds further complexity. The 'one hour' of the kings' reign (v. 12) is symbolic of brevity.*

Connections: *The chapter draws on Jeremiah 51 (Babylon's judgment), Ezekiel 16 and 23 (Jerusalem/Samaria as prostitutes), Nahum 3:1-4 (Nineveh as a prostitute), and Daniel 7 (the beast with horns). The Lamb's title 'Lord of lords and King of kings' (v. 14) echoes Deuteronomy 10:17 and Daniel 2:47.*

¹Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the judgment of the great prostitute who sits on many waters, ²With whom the kings of the earth have committed sexual immorality, and the inhabitants of the earth have been made drunk with the wine of her sexual immorality. ³He carried me away in the Spirit to a wilderness, and I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast that was covered with blasphemous names, having seven heads and ten horns. ⁴The woman was clothed in purple and scarlet, and adorned with gold, precious stones, and pearls. She held a golden cup in her hand, full of abominations and the impurities of her sexual immorality. ⁵On her forehead a name was written, a mystery: "Babylon the Great, the Mother of Prostitutes and of the Abominations of the Earth." ⁶I saw the woman drunk with the blood of the saints and with the blood of the witnesses of Jesus. When I saw her, I was greatly astonished. ⁷The angel said to me, "Why are you astonished? I will tell you the mystery of the woman and of the beast that carries her — the one with the seven heads and the ten horns. ⁸The beast that you saw was, and is not, and is about to rise from the abyss and go to destruction. The inhabitants of the earth — those whose names have not been written in the book of life from the foundation of the world — will be astonished when they see the beast, because it was, and is not, and will be present. ⁹This calls for a mind with wisdom: the seven heads are seven mountains on which the woman sits. ¹⁰There are also seven kings: five have fallen, one is, and the other has not yet come — and when he does come, he must remain only a little while. ¹¹The beast that was and is not — it is itself an eighth king, yet it belongs to the seven, and it goes to destruction. ¹²The ten horns you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but they will receive authority as kings for one hour along with the beast. ¹³These are of one mind, and they give their power and authority to the beast. ¹⁴They will wage war against the Lamb, but the Lamb will conquer them, because he is Lord of lords and King of kings, and those with him are called and chosen and faithful. ¹⁵Then the angel said to me, "The waters you saw, where the prostitute sits, are peoples and multitudes and nations and languages. ¹⁶The ten horns you saw, along with the beast — these will hate the prostitute and make her desolate and naked. They will devour her flesh and burn her with fire. ¹⁷For God has put it into their hearts to carry out his purpose by being of one mind and handing over their royal power to the beast, until the words of God are fulfilled. ¹⁸The woman you saw is the great city that has sovereignty over the kings of the earth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek pornē ('prostitute') is rendered directly rather than with the KJV's archaic 'whore.' The image of sitting on 'many waters' (hydatōn pollōn) comes from Jeremiah 51:13, where Babylon literally sat on the Euphrates and its canal system. Verse 15 will interpret the waters as 'peoples and multitudes and nations and languages' — Babylon's power rests on the populations she controls.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 51:13. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The Greek eporneusan ('committed sexual immorality') and porneias ('sexual immorality') use the porneia word group metaphorically for political and religious unfaithfulness — the kings have entered into illicit alliance with Babylon, trading their sovereignty for her wealth. The intoxication metaphor suggests willing participation: the earth's inhabitants are not merely victims but willing partners in Babylon's corruption.
3. The transport 'in the Spirit' (en pneumatī) parallels 1:10, 4:2, and 21:10 — the four visionary translocations in Revelation. The wilderness setting contrasts with the New Jerusalem vision, where John is carried to a great mountain (21:10). The scarlet (kokkinon) beast matches the dragon's fiery-red color (12:3, pyrrōs). The beast is 'covered with' (gemon, 'full of') blasphemous names — not just on its heads (13:1) but everywhere.
4. Purple and scarlet were the colors of royalty and extreme wealth in the ancient world. The external adornment contrasts with the cup's contents — outward splendor concealing inner corruption. The word bdelygmatōn ('abominations') is the term used in the Septuagint for idolatrous objects and practices (cf. Daniel 9:27, 11:31, 12:11, 'the abomination of desolation'). The woman's finery will be catalogued in detail in 18:12-13 and mourned in 18:16.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 9:27. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The word mystērion ('mystery') likely introduces the name as symbolic rather than being part of the name itself — 'Babylon' is a code name requiring interpretation. Roman prostitutes were known to wear headbands displaying their names, which may inform the imagery. The title 'Mother of Prostitutes' makes Babylon the source and origin of all corrupting influence, not merely one instance of it.
6. The woman is drunk not on wine but on blood — the blood of martyrs. The Greek martyrōn Iēsou ('witnesses/martyrs of Jesus') uses the word from which English derives 'martyr,' here carrying both senses simultaneously. John's astonishment (ethaumasa thauma mega, literally 'I marveled a great marvel') may reflect horror rather than admiration — the KJV's 'admiration' is misleading in modern English. The angel will rebuke his amazement in the next verse.
7. The angel's question implies that John should not be astonished — the mystery is about to be explained. The phrase 'the beast that carries her' (tou thēriou tou bastazontos autēn) emphasizes the parasitic relationship: Babylon rides the beast, dependent on its power. The interpretation that follows (vv. 8-18) is the longest angelic explanation in Revelation.
8. The formula 'was, and is not, and will be present' (ēn kai ouk estin kai parestai) is a deliberate parody of God's title 'who is and who was and who is to come' (1:4, 8). The beast's existence is a grotesque imitation of divine eternity. Its origin from the abyss (abyssou) identifies it with the demonic realm (cf. 9:1-2, 11:7). Its destination is apōleia ('destruction') — the beast's trajectory is the opposite of God's, who moves toward new creation.
9. The formula 'here is the mind with wisdom' parallels 13:18 ('here is wisdom'). The identification of seven mountains (hepta orē) with a city was unmistakable to ancient readers — Rome was universally known as the city on seven hills (Virgil, Martial, Cicero, and many others used this designation). The woman 'sits on' the mountains as she 'sits on' the waters (v. 1) and the beast (v. 3) — she derives power from all three.
10. The seven heads serve double duty: they are both seven mountains and seven kings. The temporal sequence (five fallen, one present, one future) has generated extensive debate about which Roman emperors are intended. The count depends on where one begins (Julius Caesar or Augustus?) and whether short-reigning emperors (Galba, Otho, Vitellius) are included. The text may be more interested in the symbolic pattern (the present moment within a sequence nearing its end) than in precise historical identification.
11. The beast is both distinct from the seven (an eighth) and part of them (from the seven) — it is the imperial system itself, which transcends any individual emperor. This likely reflects the Nero redivivus myth — the widespread belief that Nero would return from the dead — which the text co-opts for its own theological purposes. The repeated destination 'to destruction' (eis apōleian) confirms the beast's ultimate fate (cf. v. 8).
12. The ten kings echo Daniel 7:24, where ten horns represent ten kings. These are future rulers ('have not yet received a kingdom') whose reign is extremely brief ('one hour'). The phrase 'one hour' (mian hōran) symbolizes transient, negligible power compared to the eternal reign of God and the Lamb. They receive power 'with the beast' (meta tou thēriou) — their authority is derivative, not independent.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:24. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The Greek mian gnōmēn ('one mind, one purpose') indicates unified intent — the ten kings act in perfect concert. Their voluntary surrender of power and authority to the beast illustrates how totalitarian systems consolidate: subsidiary powers willingly cede their autonomy to the central authority.
14. The outcome of the cosmic war is stated with stunning brevity: the Lamb will conquer. No battle details are given — the result is a foregone conclusion. The title 'Lord of lords and King of kings' (kyrios kyriōn kai basileus basileōn) comes from Deuteronomy 10:17 and Daniel 2:47, and recurs in 19:16 in reverse order. The Lamb's army is described not by military qualifications but by three spiritual qualities: called (klētoi), chosen (eklektoi), and faithful (pistoi).

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Deuteronomy 10:17. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Daniel 2:47. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The 'many waters' of verse 1 are now interpreted: they represent the global populations over which Babylon exercises dominion. The fourfold formula (peoples, multitudes, nations, languages) is another variation of Revelation's universal scope language (cf. 5:9, 7:9, 13:7, 14:6). Babylon's power base is human — she sits on people.
16. The self-destructive nature of evil is the key theological insight: the beast and its allied kings turn on the woman they once carried. The four punishments (desolation, nakedness, devouring, burning) echo the penalties for a priest's daughter who becomes a prostitute (Leviticus 21:9) and Ezekiel's description of Jerusalem's punishment (Ezekiel 16:37-41, 23:25-29). Evil eventually consumes itself.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Leviticus 21:9. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 16:37-41. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. This verse reveals the deepest irony of the chapter: even the beast's coalition serves God's purposes. God placed the intention (gnōmēn, 'purpose, resolve') in their hearts — their evil cooperation is unwittingly executing God's plan. The phrase 'until the words of God are fulfilled' (achri telesthēsontai hoi logoi tou theou) sets a divine terminus on the arrangement: it lasts only as long as God allows.
18. The final identification is explicit: the woman is a city (polis) that rules (echousa basileian, 'having kingdom/sovereignty') over the earth's kings. For the original audience, this could only mean Rome — the city that held dominion over the known world. However, Revelation's symbolic language allows the image to apply to any civilization that embodies Babylon's characteristics: imperial arrogance, economic exploitation, persecution of the faithful, and seductive luxury.

18

Summary: *Revelation 18 is an extended funeral dirge over Babylon's fall, modeled on the prophetic oracles against Tyre (Ezekiel 26-28) and historical Babylon (Jeremiah 50-51, Isaiah 13-14, 47). An angel of great authority announces Babylon's fall. A voice from heaven calls God's people to come out of her. Three groups mourn: kings who shared her luxury, merchants who grew rich from her trade, and sailors who carried her goods. The cargo list (vv. 12-13) catalogs Rome's extravagant trade, culminating shockingly in 'human souls.' A symbolic act closes the chapter: an angel hurls a great millstone into the sea, declaring that Babylon will be thrown down and found no more.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The cargo list in verses 12-13 is one of the most economically detailed passages in the Bible, cataloging twenty-eight trade items from luxury goods to basic commodities. The list follows the actual trade routes of the Roman Empire. Its final item — 'bodies and human souls' (sōmatōn kai psychas anthrōpōn) — exposes the slave trade as the foundation of Babylon's economy, placing human trafficking as the ultimate indictment. The threefold dirge structure (kings, merchants, sailors) mirrors Ezekiel's lament over Tyre but applies it to a city of far greater scope.*

Translation Friction: *The command 'Come out of her, my people' (v. 4) echoes Jeremiah 51:45 and Isaiah 48:20. Whether this calls for literal physical separation or spiritual/moral disengagement from corrupt systems has been debated. The text supports both readings. The 'double portion' punishment (v. 6) draws on the cup-of-wrath imagery found throughout the prophets.*

Connections: *The chapter is a dense tissue of Old Testament allusion: Jeremiah 50-51 (Babylon's fall), Isaiah 13-14, 47 (oracles against Babylon), Ezekiel 26-28 (lament over Tyre), Isaiah 21:9 ('Fallen, fallen is Babylon'), and Jeremiah 25:10 (sounds of joy silenced). The millstone casting (v. 21) echoes Jeremiah 51:63-64, where Seraiah throws a scroll into the Euphrates as a symbolic act of Babylon's sinking.*

1After this I saw another angel coming down from heaven with great authority, and the earth was illuminated by his glory. 2 He cried out with a mighty voice, "Fallen, fallen is Babylon the great! She has become a dwelling place for demons, a haunt for every unclean spirit, a haunt for every unclean bird, and a haunt for every unclean and detestable beast, 3For all nations have drunk of the wine of the wrath of her sexual immorality, and the kings of the earth have committed sexual immorality with her, and the merchants of the earth are grew rich through the abundance of her delicacies. 4Then I heard another voice from heaven saying, "Come out of her, my people, so that you do not share in her sins and so that you do not receive any of

her plagues. ⁵For her sins have piled up to heaven, and God has remembered her crimes. ⁶Pay her back as she herself has paid out, and repay her double according to her deeds. In the cup she mixed, mix her a double portion. ⁷To the degree that she glorified herself and lived in luxury, give her that same measure of torment and grief. For in her heart she says, 'I sit as queen; I am no widow, and I will never see grief.' ⁸For this reason her plagues will come in a single day — death and grief and famine — and she will be consumed by fire, because the Lord God who judges her is mighty." ⁹The kings of the earth, who committed sexual immorality and shared her luxury, will weep and wail over her when they see the smoke of her burning. ¹⁰They will stand far off in fear of her torment and say, "Woe, woe to the great city, Babylon the mighty city! For in a single hour your judgment has come." ¹¹The merchants of the earth weep and mourn over her, because no one buys their cargo anymore — ¹²The cargo included gold, and silver, and precious stones, and of pearls, and fine cloth, purple, silk, and scarlet, and all citron wood, and every kind of container made from ivory, and every kind of container made from the finest wood, and of brass, and iron, and marble, ¹³Cinnamon, odours, ointments, and frankincense, wine, oil, and choice flour, wheat, beasts, and sheep, horses, chariots, and slaves, and souls of men. ¹⁴The fruit that your soul craved has gone from you, and all your luxury and splendor have vanished — never to be found again. ¹⁵The merchants who dealt in these things and grew rich from her will stand far off in fear of her torment, weeping and mourning, ¹⁶Saying, Alas, alas, that remarkable city, that was clothed in fine cloth, purple, scarlet, and decked with gold, and precious stones, and pearls! ¹⁷For in a single hour all this wealth has been laid waste!" Every ship captain, every seafarer, sailors, and all who make their living from the sea stood far off ¹⁸Cried when they noticed the smoke of her burning and stated, What city is like to this remarkable city! ¹⁹They threw dust on their heads and cried out, weeping and mourning, "Woe, woe to the great city, where all who had ships at sea grew rich from her wealth! For in a single hour she has been laid waste." ²⁰Rejoice over her, O heaven, and you saints and apostles and prophets! For God has pronounced judgment for you against her. ²¹Then a mighty angel picked up a stone like a great millstone and hurled it into the sea, saying, "With such violence Babylon the great city will be thrown down, and will never be found again. ²²The sound of harpists and musicians, flute players and trumpeters, will never be heard in you again. No craftsman of any craft will ever be found in you again. The sound of the mill will never be heard in you again. ²³The light of a lamp will never shine in you again, and the voice of bridegroom and bride will never be heard in you again. For your merchants were the great ones of the earth, and all nations were deceived by your sorcery. ²⁴In her was found the blood of prophets and saints, and of all who have been slaughtered on the earth."

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. This angel's glory (doxa) is so intense that the entire earth is lit up — a theophanic characteristic usually reserved for God himself (cf. Ezekiel 43:2, where God's glory illuminates the earth). The great authority (exousian megalēn) suggests this is an angel of the highest rank, perhaps the same one who earlier bound the dragon (20:1).
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 43:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The doubled 'Fallen, fallen' repeats 14:8 and Isaiah 21:9. The three 'haunts' (phylakē, literally 'prison, guard-post') describe Babylon's post-judgment state: the once-glorious city becomes a ghost town inhabited by demons and unclean creatures. The imagery echoes Isaiah 13:21-22 and 34:11-15, where ruined cities become dwelling places for desert creatures and wild animals. The SBLGNT includes 'every unclean and detestable beast,' which some manuscripts omit.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 21:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 13:21-22. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. Three groups are implicated in Babylon's corruption: nations (who drank her wine), kings (who partnered with her), and merchants (who profited from her). The Greek *strēnous* ('luxury, wantonness, sensuality') appears only here and in verse 7 in the New Testament — it connotes arrogant, self-indulgent excess. The verb *eploutēsān* ('grew rich') introduces the economic theme that will dominate the chapter.
4. The call 'Come out of her, my people' (*exelthate ho laos mou*) echoes Jeremiah 51:45 ('Come out of her, my people!'), Jeremiah 50:8, and Isaiah 48:20 and 52:11. The two purposes are moral (not sharing in sins) and protective (not sharing in plagues). The verb *synkoinōnēsēte* ('share in, participate with') suggests complicity — remaining in Babylon means becoming co-responsible for her crimes.

4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 51:45. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Jeremiah 50:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 48:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. The Greek *ekollēthēsan* ('have clung together, have been joined') literally means 'have been glued together' — her sins have accumulated into a mass reaching heaven. The image recalls the Tower of Babel (Genesis 11:4), another human construction reaching toward heaven in defiance of God. When God 'remembers' (*emnēmoneusen*) crimes, it means the time for reckoning has arrived (cf. 16:19).
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 11:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The principle of reciprocal justice — measure for measure — is applied with intensification: not equal but double. The Greek *diplōsate ta dipla* ('double the double things') is emphatic. The cup imagery reverses the scenario: the cup Babylon used to intoxicate the nations (14:8, 17:2) is now filled double for her. This echoes Isaiah 40:2 (Jerusalem receiving 'double for all her sins') and Jeremiah 16:18.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 40:2. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 16:18. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. Babylon's inner monologue — 'I sit as queen, I am no widow' — quotes Isaiah 47:7-8, where historical Babylon made the same boast before her destruction. The Greek *estrēniasen* ('lived in luxury, lived wantonly') corresponds to the *strēnous* of verse 3. The punishment matches the crime exactly: glorification met with torment, luxury met with grief. The triple self-declaration (queen, not widow, no grief) expresses total self-assurance about to be completely overturned.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 47:7-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The suddenness — 'in a single day' (*en mia hēmera*) — contrasts with Babylon's assumption of permanence. The three plagues (death, grief, famine) systematically dismantle her boasts from verse 7. Fire as the instrument of final destruction recalls 17:16. The closing declaration 'the Lord God who judges her is mighty' (*ischyros kyrios ho theos ho krinas autēn*) answers the beast-worshippers' question 'Who can wage war against [the beast]?' (13:4) — God can.
9. The first of three laments begins: kings (vv. 9-10), merchants (vv. 11-17a), and sailors (vv. 17b-19). Each follows the same pattern: identification, mourning, and the cry 'Woe, woe!' The kings weep for a partner lost, not from repentance. The smoke of burning recalls the destruction of Sodom, which Abraham watched from a distance (Genesis 19:28).
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 19:28. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The kings stand 'far off' (*apo makrothen*) — close enough to see but too afraid to approach. The double 'Woe, woe' (*ouai ouai*) is the lament formula repeated by all three groups. The phrase 'in a single hour' (*mia hōra*) emphasizes the suddenness that punctuates all three dirges (vv. 10, 17, 19). The city that claimed eternal power fell in an hour.
11. The merchants' grief is explicitly economic: they mourn because 'no one buys their cargo' (*ton gomōn autōn oudeis agorazei ouketi*). Their relationship with Babylon was transactional — they mourn a lost market, not a lost friend. The word *gomōn* ('cargo, freight') introduces the detailed trade list that follows.
12. The cargo list moves from most to least valuable: precious metals and gems first, then luxury fabrics, then exotic woods and metals. The Greek *sirikon* ('silk') was an extraordinarily expensive import from China via the Silk Road. Citron wood (*xylon thuīnon*) from North Africa was prized for furniture and could cost more than gold by weight. The list reflects actual Roman trade routes and consumer goods of the first century.
13. The list continues through aromatics, foodstuffs, and livestock, descending in value until it reaches its devastating climax: *sōmatōn kai psychas anthrōpōn* — literally 'bodies and souls of human beings.' The final item exposes the slave trade as the foundation of Babylon's economy. The Greek *sōma* ('body') was the standard commercial term for a slave in the ancient world. By adding *kai psychas anthrōpōn* ('and human souls'), John refuses to let the slave trade be sanitized by commercial language — these 'bodies' are human souls. The shift from genitive to accusative (*psychas*) in the Greek may emphasize the final item as a parenthetical outcry.
14. The Greek *opōra* ('ripe fruit, autumn fruit') represents the peak of enjoyment. The address shifts to second person, speaking directly to Babylon. The double negative *ou mē* ('never, not at all') with the emphatic *ouketi* ('no longer') creates a triple negation in Greek — the loss is absolute and irrecoverable. The word *lipara* ('rich, luxurious, oily') and *lampra* ('bright, splendid, gorgeous') capture the sensory appeal of Babylon's lifestyle.
15. Like the kings (v. 10), the merchants stand at a distance — close enough to grieve their lost profits but not close enough to share the destruction. The phrase 'merchants of these things' (*emporoi toutōn*) links back to the cargo list: they are defined by what they sold, including human souls.
16. The merchants describe Babylon in terms of her consumer goods — the same items from the cargo list now appear as her clothing and jewelry. This is the language of commerce applied to a city: Babylon is described the way a merchant would describe inventory. Her identity is reduced to the luxury goods she consumed. The description parallels 17:4.

17. The second 'single hour' (mia hōra) refrain reinforces the theme of sudden destruction. The Greek ērēmōthē ('has been laid waste, has been made desolate') is related to erēmos ('wilderness, desolate place') — Babylon's wealth becomes a wasteland. The third mourning group (seafarers) includes four categories: ship captains (kybernētēs), seafarers (ho epi topon pleōn), sailors (nautai), and sea-traders — representing the entire maritime economy.
18. The sailors' cry 'What city was ever like the great city?' echoes Ezekiel 27:32, the lament over Tyre: 'Who was ever destroyed like Tyre in the midst of the sea?' It also darkly mirrors the beast-worshippers' cry 'Who is like the beast?' (13:4). In all these cases, the answer that Revelation presses is: God alone is incomparable.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 27:32 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. Throwing dust on the head is an ancient Near Eastern mourning gesture (Joshua 7:6, Job 2:12, Ezekiel 27:30). The third and final 'single hour' (mia hōra) refrain completes the pattern. The Greek timiotētos ('wealth, preciousness, costliness') derives from timē ('honor, price, value') — Babylon's value was entirely material, and now it is gone. All three laments follow the same structure: identification of the mourners, the double 'woe,' the description of what was lost, and the 'single hour' refrain.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Joshua 7:6. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Job 2:12. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 27:30. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. This call to heavenly rejoicing contrasts sharply with the earthly mourning that precedes it. While kings, merchants, and sailors weep, heaven is told to rejoice. The Greek ekrinen ho theos to krima hymōn ex autēs literally means 'God has judged your judgment out of her' — God has taken up the saints' cause and rendered the verdict they were owed. This answers the cry of the martyrs in 6:10: 'How long before you judge and avenge our blood?'
21. The symbolic act directly echoes Jeremiah 51:63-64, where Seraiah ties a stone to a scroll and throws it into the Euphrates, declaring 'So shall Babylon sink.' The Greek hormēmāti ('with violence, with a rush') conveys sudden, forceful, irreversible destruction. Jesus used the millstone image for judgment (Matthew 18:6, Mark 9:42), but here the scale is cosmic — the entire city-system sinks like a stone.
21. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Jeremiah 51:63-64. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
22. The sixfold 'never again' (ou mē ... eti) refrain catalogs the sounds and activities of a living city being silenced forever. The list moves from entertainment (music) to industry (crafts) to daily life (milling grain). This passage closely follows Jeremiah 25:10, which lists the sounds that will cease from Jerusalem. The progressive silencing — from the cultural to the mundane — paints a picture of total civilizational collapse.
22. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Jeremiah 25:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
23. The silencing continues: lamplight (domestic life) and wedding celebrations (the continuation of community) cease. The charges then shift from lament to indictment: Babylon's merchants were 'the great ones' (megistanes, 'grandees, nobles') of the earth, and her 'sorcery' (pharmakeia, from which English derives 'pharmacy') deceived all nations. The word pharmakeia can mean literal drug-based sorcery or metaphorical enchantment — Babylon's seductive power operated like a drug.
24. The final indictment is the most sweeping: Babylon is responsible not only for the deaths of prophets and saints but for 'all who have been slaughtered on the earth' (pantōn tōn esphagmenōn epi tēs gēs). The verb esphagmenōn ('slaughtered') is the same word used for the Lamb in 5:6 — Babylon slaughters; the Lamb was slaughtered. This echoes Jesus's indictment of Jerusalem in Matthew 23:35 ('all the righteous blood shed on earth'). Babylon's guilt is comprehensive and systemic.

19

Summary: Revelation 19 moves from the fall of Babylon to the triumph of Christ in two dramatic movements. The first half (vv. 1-10) is a scene of heavenly worship: four 'Hallelujah' choruses celebrate God's just judgment of Babylon and announce the marriage supper of the Lamb. The second half (vv. 11-21) presents the rider on the white horse — identified as 'Faithful and True,' 'The Word of God,' and 'King of kings and Lord of lords' — who descends from heaven with his armies to defeat the beast, the false prophet, and the kings of the earth. The beast and false prophet are thrown into the lake of fire.

What Makes This Remarkable: *The fourfold 'Hallelujah' (vv. 1, 3, 4, 6) represents the only occurrences of this Hebrew word in the New Testament — it was reserved for this moment of ultimate triumph. The marriage supper of the Lamb (v. 9) draws on the ancient Near Eastern covenant-banquet tradition and the prophetic vision of the messianic banquet (Isaiah 25:6-8). The rider on the white horse conquers with a sword from his mouth (v. 15), not a sword in his hand — his weapon is his word. The name 'that no one knows except himself' (v. 12) preserves mystery even at the moment of revelation.*

Translation Friction: *The identity of the rider has been debated, though most interpreters identify him as Christ. The 'robe dipped in blood' (v. 13) could be his own blood (sacrificial) or his enemies' blood (drawing on Isaiah 63:1-6). The SBLGNT reading is 'dipped' (bebammenon), not 'sprinkled' (a variant). We render the Greek as given.*

Connections: *The Hallelujah chorus echoes Psalms 104-106, 111-113, 115-117, 135, 146-150. The marriage supper draws on Isaiah 25:6-8, Matthew 22:1-14, and 25:1-13. The rider on the white horse fulfills Psalm 45:3-5 (the warrior king) and Isaiah 11:4 (ruling with the rod of his mouth). The winepress imagery recalls Isaiah 63:1-6 and Revelation 14:19-20.*

¹After this I heard what sounded like the roar of a great multitude in heaven, saying, "Hallelujah! Salvation and glory and power belong to our God, ²For true and righteous are his judgments — since he has judged the remarkable whore, which did corrupt the earth with her sexual immorality, and has avenged the blood of his servants at her hand. ³And a second time they said, "Hallelujah! Her smoke rises forever and ever." ⁴The twenty-four elders and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped God who is seated on the throne, saying, "Amen! Hallelujah!" ⁵Then a voice came from the throne, saying, "Praise our God, all his servants, you who fear him, small and great!" ⁶Then I heard what sounded like the voice of a great multitude, like the roar of many waters and like the sound of mighty thunder, saying, "Hallelujah! For the Lord our God, the Almighty, reigns! ⁷Let us rejoice and exult and give him the glory! For the marriage of the Lamb has come, and his bride has made herself ready. ⁸She has been given fine linen to wear, bright and pure" — for the fine linen represents the righteous deeds of the saints. ⁹Then the angel said to me, "Write this: Blessed are those who are invited to the marriage supper of the Lamb." And he said to me, "These are the true words of God." ¹⁰I fell at his feet to worship him, but he said to me, "Do not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and your brothers and sisters who hold to the testimony of Jesus. Worship God!" For the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy. ¹¹Then I saw heaven opened, and there was a white horse. Its rider is called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he judges and wages war. ¹²His eyes are like a flame of fire, and on his head are many diadems. He has a name written that no one knows except himself. ¹³He is clothed in a robe dipped in blood, and his name is called The Word of God. ¹⁴The armies of heaven were following him on white horses, dressed in fine linen, white and pure. ¹⁵From his mouth comes a sharp sword with which to strike down the nations. He will shepherd them with an iron rod, and he treads the winepress of the fury of the wrath of God the Almighty. ¹⁶On his robe and on his thigh he has a name inscribed: King of kings and Lord of lords. ¹⁷Then I saw an angel standing in the sun, and he cried out with a loud voice to all the birds flying in midheaven, "Come, gather for the great supper of God, ¹⁸That you may consume the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and remarkable. ¹⁹Then I saw the beast and the kings of the earth and their armies assembled to wage war against the rider on the horse and against his army. ²⁰The beast was captured, and with it the false prophet who had performed signs on its behalf — the signs by which he had deceived those who received the mark of the beast and those who worshiped its image. The two of them were thrown alive into the lake of fire that burns with sulfur. ²¹The rest were killed by the sword that came from the mouth of the rider on the horse, and all the birds gorged themselves on their flesh.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek Hallēlouia transliterates the Hebrew hallelu-Yah ('Praise the LORD'). This is the first of only four occurrences in the New Testament, all in this chapter. The threefold attribution (salvation, glory, power) echoes the doxologies of 4:11, 5:12-13, and 7:12. The SBLGNT does not include 'honor' (timē) found in some manuscripts and the KJV.
2. The affirmation 'true and righteous are his judgments' (alēthinai kai dikaiai hai kriseis autou) echoes 15:3 and 16:7, creating a liturgical refrain across the judgment sequence. The verb ephtheiren ('corrupted, destroyed') is stronger than mere moral influence — Babylon actively ruined the earth. The

avenging of blood answers the martyrs' cry from 6:10.

3. The second Hallelujah celebrates the permanence of Babylon's destruction — her smoke 'rises forever and ever' (anabainei eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn). This echoes Isaiah 34:10, where Edom's smoke rises perpetually, and Revelation 14:11, where the smoke of torment rises for those who worship the beast. The present tense 'rises' (anabainei) makes the destruction an ongoing reality in the heavenly perspective.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 34:10 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. The throne-room figures from chapters 4-5 reappear for the last time. The twenty-four elders and four living creatures have not been seen since 14:3. Their response — 'Amen! Hallelujah!' — combines Hebrew (Hallelujah) and Hebrew-via-Greek (Amēn, from Hebrew amen, 'truly, so be it') into the shortest and most complete act of worship in the book. This is the third Hallelujah.
5. The voice from the throne (not identified — possibly an angel near the throne, since it says 'our God' rather than 'me') issues a call to universal worship. The phrase 'small and great' (hoi mikroi kai hoi megaloi) encompasses the entire range of humanity, echoing Psalm 115:13 ('He will bless those who fear the LORD, small and great'). This sets up the great multitude response in verse 6.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 115:13 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The fourth and climactic Hallelujah is delivered by a voice of overwhelming scale — multitude, waters, thunder. The declaration ebasileusen ('has begun to reign, reigns') is an ingressive aorist — it marks the beginning of God's unchallenged reign, not merely its continuation. This echoes the seventh trumpet's proclamation in 11:15 ('The kingdom of the world has become the kingdom of our Lord and of his Christ'). The Almighty (pantokratōr) title here carries the full weight of its Revelation usage.
7. The shift from judgment (Babylon the prostitute destroyed) to celebration (the Lamb's bride prepared) is abrupt and deliberate — the fall of the false woman makes way for the true. The marriage metaphor for God's covenant with his people runs throughout the Old Testament (Hosea 2:14-20, Isaiah 54:5-8, Ezekiel 16). The bride 'has made herself ready' (hētoimasen heautēn) — preparation is active, not passive. The Greek gynē can mean 'wife' or 'woman'; here 'bride' captures the wedding context.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Hosea 2:14-20. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 54:5-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 16. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The fine linen (byssinon) contrasts with Babylon's fine linen in 18:12, 16 — same fabric, entirely different significance. The bride's clothing 'was given' (edothē) to her — grace provides what the bride wears. Yet the linen represents 'the righteous deeds' (dikaiōmata) of the saints — human obedience is real but enabled by grace. The word dikaiōmata means 'righteous acts, just requirements fulfilled,' not merely imputed righteousness but lived faithfulness.
9. This is the fourth beatitude in Revelation (cf. 1:3, 14:13, 16:15). The 'marriage supper' (deipnon tou gamou) draws on the messianic banquet tradition (Isaiah 25:6-8) and Jesus's banquet parables (Matthew 22:1-14, Luke 14:15-24). The solemn authentication 'These are the true words of God' (houtoi hoi logoi alēthinoi tou theou eisin) emphasizes the reliability of the promise — this is not wishful thinking but divine declaration.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:6-8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. John's impulse to worship the angel (repeated in 22:8-9) underscores Revelation's insistence that worship belongs to God alone — the central issue of the entire book. The angel's self-designation as syndoulos ('fellow servant') places angels and human believers on the same level: both are servants. The closing statement 'the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy' (hē martyria Iēsou estin to pneuma tēs prophēteias) can mean either 'testimony about Jesus' or 'testimony from Jesus' — both are valid. All true prophecy points to and comes from Jesus.
11. Heaven 'opened' (ēneōgmenon, perfect passive — standing open) indicates a permanent opening, not a momentary glimpse. The white horse contrasts with the white horse of 6:2 (the first seal), though whether that earlier rider is the same figure or a counterfeit is debated. The name 'Faithful and True' (pistos kai alēthinos) was first applied to Christ in 3:14. He wages war 'in righteousness' (en dikaiosynē) — unlike all earthly warfare, this military action is entirely just.
12. The fiery eyes recall 1:14 and 2:18, identifying the rider with the exalted Christ of the opening vision. The 'many diadems' (diademata polla) — royal crowns — surpass the dragon's seven (12:3) and the beast's ten (13:1), signaling supreme sovereignty. The unknown name preserves an element of mystery even in this moment of full revelation: Christ possesses a dimension of identity that transcends all human comprehension (cf. Judges 13:18, Isaiah 9:6).
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Judges 13:18. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 9:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.

13. The Greek *bebammenon* ('dipped, dyed') indicates the robe was immersed in blood before the battle begins. This most likely alludes to Isaiah 63:1-3, where God treads the winepress of nations and his garments are stained with their lifeblood. Alternatively, the blood may be his own sacrificial blood. The title 'The Word of God' (*ho logos tou theou*) connects to John 1:1 ('In the beginning was the Word') and to the sword from his mouth (v. 15) — this warrior's weapon is God's spoken word.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 63:1-3 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. The heavenly armies wear fine linen (*byssinon leukon katharon*), not armor — the same clothing as the Lamb's bride (v. 8). They carry no weapons. This is not a battle where the armies fight; the rider alone wages war with the sword of his mouth. The armies are present as witnesses and companions, not combatants. Their white horses match their leader's, symbolizing victory already won.
15. Three Old Testament texts converge: the sword from the mouth (Isaiah 11:4, 'he will strike the earth with the rod of his mouth'), the iron rod (Psalm 2:9, 'you will break them with a rod of iron'), and the winepress (Isaiah 63:3, 'I have trodden the winepress alone'). The weapon is speech, not steel — the sword proceeds from his mouth, meaning his word is the instrument of judgment. The Greek *poimanei* ('will shepherd') again carries both pastoral and governing senses (cf. 12:5). The quadruple genitive 'the fury of the wrath of God the Almighty' is the most intensely concentrated expression of divine judgment in Revelation.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 63:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 11:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Psalm 2:9 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The name is written on both robe and thigh — the thigh was where a sword hung, and the inscription would be visible where the robe fell open over the thigh. The title reverses the order from 17:14 ('Lord of lords and King of kings'), perhaps for climactic effect — 'King of kings' now comes first. This superlative title, drawn from Deuteronomy 10:17 and Daniel 2:47, makes the supreme claim: every other sovereign, human or demonic, is subordinate to this rider.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Deuteronomy 10:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Daniel 2:47. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The 'great supper of God' (*to deipnon to mega tou theou*) is a grotesque counterpart to the 'marriage supper of the Lamb' (v. 9) — one is a feast of celebration, the other a feast of carrion. The imagery comes from Ezekiel 39:4, 17-20, where God invites the birds and beasts to a sacrificial feast on the mountains of Israel. The angel 'standing in the sun' (*hestōta en tō hēliō*) occupies a position of maximum cosmic visibility.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 39:4. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. The fivefold repetition of 'flesh' (*sarkas*) is grim and relentless. The social categories (kings, commanders, mighty, free/slave, small/great) match the universal categories of 6:15 — those who once hid from God's wrath now become a feast for birds. The leveling is total: king and slave are equal as carrion. This directly echoes Ezekiel 39:18-20.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 39:18-20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The gathering anticipated in 16:14, 16 (Armageddon) now takes place. The beast and earth's kings assemble their armies against the rider — an act of supreme futility already declared hopeless in 17:14. The brevity of the 'battle' (described in only two verses, 20-21) underscores how one-sided the conflict is.
20. No battle is described — the beast is simply captured (*epiasthē*, 'was seized'). The false prophet (the second beast of ch. 13) is identified by his deceptive signs. The 'lake of fire' (*limnē tou pyros*) is introduced here for the first time and will become the final destination of death, Hades, and the wicked (20:10, 14-15). The phrase 'thrown alive' (*zōntes eblēthēsan*) emphasizes the immediacy — no trial, no appeal, no delay.
21. The text emphasizes once more that the sword comes 'from his mouth' (*tē exelthousē ek tou stomatos autou*) — this is victory through the spoken word of God, not through military violence. The verb *echortasthēsan* ('were filled, gorged themselves') brings the grim 'great supper' of verses 17-18 to completion. The entire cosmic conflict — dragon, beast, false prophet, kings of the earth, their armies — is resolved in just three verses (19-21). The Word prevails.

20

Summary: *Revelation 20 describes three decisive events. First, an angel binds Satan in the abyss for a thousand years while the martyrs are resurrected to reign with Christ (the 'first resurrection'). Second, after the thousand years, Satan is released, deceives the nations (Gog and Magog), and leads a final assault on 'the beloved city' — only to be consumed by fire from heaven and thrown into the lake of fire forever. Third, the Great White Throne judgment: the dead are raised, the books are opened, and everyone is judged according to their deeds. Death and Hades themselves are thrown into the lake of fire, and anyone not found in the book of life joins them.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The millennium (thousand-year reign) of Revelation 20 has generated three major interpretive traditions: premillennialism (Christ returns before the thousand years), postmillennialism (Christ returns after), and amillennialism (the thousand years are symbolic of the present age). The text uses *chilia etē* ('a thousand years') six times in seven verses (vv. 2-7), making it the defining concept of the chapter. The Gog and Magog reference (v. 8) draws on Ezekiel 38-39 but transposes it to a post-millennial context. The Great White Throne (v. 11) is one of the most solemn images in all of scripture — earth and heaven flee from the presence of the one seated on it.*

Translation Friction: *The sequence and nature of the millennium have been debated throughout church history. We render the Greek text without advocating for any millennial position. The relationship between the 'first resurrection' (v. 5) and the general resurrection (vv. 12-13) is also debated. The phrase 'the rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were ended' (v. 5) is textually secure but interpretively complex.*

Connections: *The binding of Satan echoes Isaiah 24:21-22 (imprisoned host of heaven). Gog and Magog come from Ezekiel 38-39. The Great White Throne draws on Daniel 7:9-10 (the Ancient of Days and the opening of books). The book of life appears in Exodus 32:32-33, Psalm 69:28, Daniel 12:1, and throughout Revelation. The second death (v. 14) connects to 2:11 and 21:8.*

¹Then I saw an angel coming down from heaven, holding the key to the abyss and a great chain in his hand. ²He seized the dragon — that ancient serpent, who is the Devil and Satan — and bound him for a thousand years. ³He threw him into the abyss, shut it, and sealed it over him, so that he would not deceive the nations any longer, until the thousand years were completed. After that he must be released for a short time. ⁴Then I saw thrones, and those seated on them were given authority to judge. I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their testimony about Jesus and for the word of God, and those who had not worshiped the beast or its image and had not received the mark on their foreheads or their hands. They came to life and reigned with Christ for a thousand years. ⁵The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were completed. This is the first resurrection. ⁶Blessed and holy is the one who has a share in the first resurrection. Over these the second death has no power, but they will be priests of God and of Christ, and they will reign with him for a thousand years. ⁷When the thousand years are completed, Satan will be released from his prison. ⁸He will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth — Gog and Magog — to gather them for battle. Their number is like the sand of the sea. ⁹They marched across the breadth of the earth and surrounded the camp of the saints and the beloved city. But fire came down from heaven and consumed them. ¹⁰The devil who had deceived them was thrown into the lake of fire and sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet already are. They will be tormented day and night forever and ever. ¹¹Then I saw a great white throne and the one seated on it. Earth and heaven fled from his presence, and no place was found for them. ¹²I saw the dead, great and small, standing before the throne, and books were opened. Then another book was opened, which is the book of life. The dead were judged according to what was written in the books, according to their deeds. ¹³The sea gave up the dead that were in it, and Death and Hades gave up the dead that were in them, and each person was judged according to their deeds. ¹⁴Then Death and Hades were thrown into the lake of fire. This is the second death — the lake of fire. ¹⁵If anyone's name was not found written in the book of life, that person was thrown into the lake of fire.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The key to the abyss was previously given to the fallen star in 9:1. Now it is in the hand of a heavenly angel, indicating God's sovereign control over access to the abyss. The 'great chain' (halysin megalēn) is symbolic of binding power. The angel is not identified — notably, it is not Christ but a single unnamed angel who is sufficient to bind the dragon.
2. The fourfold identification repeats 12:9: dragon, ancient serpent, Devil, Satan. The binding (edēsen, 'bound, tied up') restricts Satan's activity for a defined period. The phrase 'a thousand years' (chilia etē) appears for the first time, and will be repeated five more times through verse 7. Whether the number is literal or symbolic (representing a complete, long period) has been debated since the early church.
3. Three actions secure the binding: thrown in, shut, sealed. The purpose of the binding is specifically to prevent deception (mē planēsē, 'might not deceive') — Satan's primary weapon throughout Revelation. The phrase 'he must be released' (dei lythēnai auton, literally 'it is necessary for him to be loosed') uses the divine dei ('it is necessary') — even Satan's release serves God's purposes. The 'short time' (mikron chronon) echoes 12:12.
4. The Greek pepelekismenōn ('beheaded, executed with an axe') is specific but may represent all forms of martyrdom by synecdoche. Two groups appear to be described: the martyred and those who refused the beast's mark. The verb ezēsan ('they came to life, they lived') in the aorist tense suggests a definitive event — a resurrection. The phrase 'reigned with Christ' (ebasileusan meta tou Christou) fulfills the promise of 3:21 and 5:10.
5. The phrase 'first resurrection' (anastasis hē prōtē) implies a second resurrection (described in vv. 12-13). Whether 'first' refers to chronological sequence (a bodily resurrection before the general resurrection) or to a spiritual reality (new life in Christ that precedes physical resurrection) is the central interpretive divide between premillennial and amillennial readings. The text itself uses the same verb ezēsan ('came to life') for both the first (v. 4) and second (implied in v. 5) groups.
6. This is the fifth beatitude in Revelation (cf. 1:3, 14:13, 16:15, 19:9). The 'second death' (ho deuterios thanatos) is defined in verse 14 as the lake of fire. The dual role — priests and kings (hierēis tou theou kai tou Christou) — fulfills the promise of 1:6 and 5:10 and echoes Exodus 19:6 ('a kingdom of priests'). The phrase 'of God and of Christ' places God and Christ on the same level as objects of priestly service.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Exodus 19:6. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The sixth and final occurrence of 'the thousand years' (ta chilia etē). Satan's release is described with the passive lythēsetai ('will be released') — he does not escape; he is let out. The abyss is now called his 'prison' (phylakēs), the same word used for Babylon's post-destruction state in 18:2 ('a haunt/prison for every unclean spirit').
8. Satan's first act upon release is deception (planēsai) — his essential nature unchanged. Gog and Magog come from Ezekiel 38-39, where Gog is the ruler of Magog who leads a massive invasion of Israel in the last days. Here both names represent all hostile nations. 'The four corners of the earth' indicates universal scope. The comparison to 'sand of the sea' (hē ammos tēs thalassēs) recalls the Abrahamic promise (Genesis 22:17) — the enemies' number ironically echoes the blessing given to Abraham's descendants.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 38-39 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
8. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 22:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
9. The 'beloved city' (tēn polin tēn ēgapēmenēn) is Jerusalem — the city God loves (Psalm 78:68, 87:2). The 'camp of the saints' (parembolēn tōn hagiōn) uses military language for the gathered people of God, echoing Israel's wilderness encampment. The fire from heaven recalls Ezekiel 38:22 and 39:6, where God destroys Gog with fire. As in chapter 19, no battle is narrated — God's intervention is immediate and total.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Ezekiel 38:22. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
9. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Psalm 78:68. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
10. The unholy trinity is now complete in the lake of fire: dragon (thrown in here), beast and false prophet (thrown in at 19:20). The phrase 'where the beast and the false prophet already are' (hopou kai to thērion kai ho pseudoprophētēs) indicates they have been there since 19:20 — throughout the entire millennium. The duration 'day and night forever and ever' (hēmeras kai nyktos eis tous aiōnas tōn aiōnōn) uses the strongest possible expression of unending duration.
11. The 'great white throne' (thronon megan leukon) is the seat of final judgment — white signifying purity and absolute justice. The one seated is not explicitly identified (God or Christ), preserving the unity of divine judgment. The flight of earth and heaven (ephygen hē gē kai ho ouranos) is cosmic dissolution — the old creation cannot stand before the Judge's face. The phrase 'no place was found for them' (topos ouch heurethē autois) echoes 12:8 (no place for the dragon) — now creation itself finds no place to exist.
12. Two kinds of books are opened: plural 'books' (biblia) — records of deeds — and the singular 'book of life' (biblion tēs zōēs). Judgment is 'according to their deeds' (kata ta erga autōn), a principle stated three times in the chapter (vv. 12, 13). The scene draws directly on Daniel 7:10 ('The court sat in judgment, and the books were opened'). The phrase 'great and small' (megalous kai mikrous) is reversed from the usual order, perhaps emphasizing that even the great must stand before this throne.

12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Daniel 7:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Three realms surrender their dead: the sea (those lost at sea, without proper burial), Death (the state of being dead), and Hades (the realm of the dead, Greek equivalent of Hebrew Sheol). The personification of Death and Hades as entities who 'give up' their dead suggests they are reluctant captors forced to release their prisoners. The Greek hekastos ('each one') emphasizes individual accountability — judgment is personal, not merely collective.
14. Death itself dies — Death and Hades, personified as the last enemies, are destroyed in the lake of fire. This fulfills Isaiah 25:8 ('He will swallow up death forever') and 1 Corinthians 15:26 ('The last enemy to be destroyed is death'). The 'second death' (ho thanatos ho deuterios) is defined: it is the lake of fire. The first death is physical; the second death is final separation from God. After this verse, death does not appear again in Revelation — it is gone.
14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The final criterion is not deeds alone (though deeds are judged in vv. 12-13) but inclusion in the book of life. The conditional 'if anyone' (ei tis) is stark and individual. The passive 'was not found written' (ouch heurethē gegrammenos) implies a search — the book is examined, and the name is either there or it is not. This is the last verse before the new creation vision of chapter 21. The chapter ends not with hope but with the sober reality of final judgment, making the transition to chapter 21 all the more dramatic.

21

Summary: *Revelation 21 is the climax of the entire biblical narrative: the new heaven and new earth appear, the New Jerusalem descends from heaven as a bride adorned for her husband, and God declares that he will dwell with his people. Death, mourning, crying, and pain are gone forever. The chapter then provides an extended description of the holy city: its walls, gates, foundations, and dimensions are measured by an angel. The city is a perfect cube of gold, with gates of pearl and foundations of precious stones. There is no temple, for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are its temple. There is no sun or moon, for God's glory and the Lamb's light illuminate it. The nations will walk by its light, and nothing unclean will ever enter it.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *The New Jerusalem descending 'from heaven from God' represents not human achievement but divine gift — the city comes down, it is not built up. The declaration 'Look, the dwelling of God is with humanity' (v. 3) uses the Greek skēnē ('tent, tabernacle'), fulfilling the entire tabernacle/temple trajectory of scripture. The city's cubic dimensions (v. 16) match the Holy of Holies in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 6:20) — the entire city is now the innermost sanctuary. The absence of a temple (v. 22) is the most radical transformation: in a city that is entirely God's dwelling, a separate sacred space is unnecessary. The river and tree of life in chapter 22 will complete the reversal of Eden's loss.*

Translation Friction: *The measurements of the city (12,000 stadia per side, approximately 1,400 miles) are clearly symbolic rather than literal — a cube of that size would extend beyond the earth's atmosphere. The number 12,000 combines 12 (tribes/apostles) with 1,000 (divine completeness). We render the measurements as given without literalizing or spiritualizing them.*

Connections: *The chapter draws on Isaiah 65:17-25 (new heavens and new earth), Isaiah 25:8 (death swallowed up, tears wiped away), Ezekiel 40-48 (the measured city and temple), Isaiah 60 (the glory of the new Jerusalem), Genesis 2 (Eden restored), and Exodus 25-40 (the tabernacle). The twelve gates inscribed with tribal names and twelve foundations inscribed with apostolic names unite Israel and the Church in one city.*

¹Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. ²I saw the holy city, the new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared like a bride adorned for her husband. ³I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, "Look! The dwelling of God is with humanity, and he will dwell with them. They will be his peoples, and God himself will be with them as their God. ⁴He will wipe every tear from their eyes. Death will be no more; mourning and crying and pain will be no more, for the former things have passed away." ⁵The one seated on the throne said, "Look! I am making all things new." He also said, "Write this down, for these words are trustworthy and true." ⁶Then he said to me, "It is done! I am the Alpha and the Omega, the beginning and the end. To the thirsty I will give freely from the spring of the water of life. ⁷The one who conquers will inherit these things. I will be their

God and they will be my son. ⁸But as for the cowardly, the faithless, the detestable, murderers, the sexually immoral, sorcerers, idolaters, and all liars — their share will be in the lake that burns with fire and sulfur, which is the second death." ⁹ Then one of the seven angels who had the seven bowls full of the seven last plagues came and said to me, "Come, I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb." ¹⁰He carried me away in the Spirit to a great and high mountain, and showed me the holy city Jerusalem coming down out of heaven from God, ¹¹After the splendor of God — and her light was like to a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal;. ¹²It had a great and high wall with twelve gates, and at the gates twelve angels, and names were inscribed on the gates — the names of the twelve tribes of the sons of Israel: ¹³There were three gates on the east side, three on the north, three on the south, and three on the west. ¹⁴The wall of the city had twelve foundations, and on them were the twelve names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb. ¹⁵The angel who spoke with me had a golden measuring rod to measure the city, its gates, and its wall. ¹⁶The city is laid out as a square; its length is the same as its width. He measured the city with the rod: twelve thousand stadia in length, width, and height — its dimensions are equal. ¹⁷ He also measured its wall: one hundred forty-four cubits by human measurement, which the angel was using. ¹⁸The wall was built of jasper, and the city was pure gold, like clear glass. ¹⁹The foundations of the city wall were adorned with every kind of precious stone: the first foundation was jasper, the second sapphire, the third chalcedony, the fourth emerald, ²⁰The fifth was sardonyx. The sixth sardius. The seventh chrysolite. The eighth beryl. The ninth topaz. The tenth chrysoprase. The eleventh jacinth. And the twelfth amethyst. ²¹The twelve gates were twelve pearls — each gate made from a single pearl. And the main street of the city was pure gold, transparent as glass. ²²I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God the Almighty and the Lamb. ²³The city has no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God illuminates it, and its lamp is the Lamb. ²⁴The nations will walk by its light, and the kings of the earth will bring their glory into it. ²⁵Its gates will never be shut by day — and there will be no night there. ²⁶They will bring the glory and honor of the nations into it. ²⁷Nothing unclean will ever enter it, nor anyone who practices abomination or falsehood, but only those whose names are written in the Lamb's book of life.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The phrase 'new heaven and new earth' (ouranon kainon kai gēn kainēn) quotes Isaiah 65:17 and 66:22. The adjective kainos (qualitatively new) rather than neos (chronologically new) suggests renewal and transformation rather than replacement. The absence of the sea (hē thalassa ouk estin eti) would have been striking to a first-century audience living in a maritime world — the sea was both a source of livelihood and a symbol of chaos and danger in ancient thought.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 65:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The city descends — it is not built by human effort but given by God. The double origin ('out of heaven, from God') emphasizes divine initiative. The bridal imagery connects to 19:7-8 (the Lamb's bride) and to the Old Testament prophetic tradition of Zion as God's bride (Isaiah 54:5-8, 62:5). The verb kekōsmēmenēn ('adorned, decorated') gives English the word 'cosmetic' — the city is beautifully prepared.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 54:5-8. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The word skēnē ('dwelling, tabernacle') and the verb skēnōsei ('will dwell, will tabernacle') share the same root. The SBLGNT reads laoi ('peoples,' plural) rather than laos ('people,' singular) — a significant variant suggesting that the covenant community includes multiple nations, not just one. The covenant formula 'they will be his people, and he will be their God' echoes Leviticus 26:11-12, Jeremiah 31:33, Ezekiel 37:27, and Zechariah 8:8 — it is the Old Testament's most repeated promise, here fulfilled definitively.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 37:27 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Leviticus 26:11-12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Jeremiah 31:33 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 8:8 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

4. The wiping away of tears quotes Isaiah 25:8 ('He will swallow up death forever; the Lord GOD will wipe away the tears from all faces'). The fourfold negation — no death, no mourning, no crying, no pain — systematically reverses the conditions of the fallen world. The phrase 'the former things have passed away' (ta prōta apēlthan) declares the old order completely gone. This verse has provided comfort to grieving believers for two millennia and stands as one of the most beloved promises in scripture.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 25:8. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
5. This is one of only two times in Revelation that God speaks directly from the throne (the other is v. 6). The present tense 'I am making' (poiō) indicates an ongoing creative act, not merely a future promise. The order is 'all things new' (kaina poiō panta), not 'all new things' — the emphasis is on renewal of existing creation, not replacement. The command to write and the authentication 'trustworthy and true' (pistoi kai alēthinoi) mark this as solemn divine declaration.
6. The declaration 'It is done!' (gegonan, literally 'they have come to be') echoes 16:17 but now signals completion of creation rather than completion of judgment. The self-identification 'Alpha and Omega' (first and last letters of the Greek alphabet) was used in 1:8 — God's first and last self-identifications in Revelation bookend the entire work. The gift of living water 'freely' (dōrean, 'as a gift, without cost') echoes Isaiah 55:1 ('Come, all you who are thirsty...without cost') and Jesus's words in John 7:37-38.
6. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 55:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
7. The verb nikōn ('conquering, overcoming') is the same word used in the promises to the seven churches (2:7, 11, 17, 26; 3:5, 12, 21) — those promises are now fulfilled. The inheritance language (klēronomēsei) echoes the Old Testament land promises. The covenant formula 'I will be their God, they will be my son' (esomai autō theos kai autos estai moi huios) combines the covenant promise of verse 3 with an adoption declaration drawn from 2 Samuel 7:14 (the Davidic covenant). The singular 'son' (huios) is striking — each overcomer receives the same status as Christ the Son.
7. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on 2 Samuel 7:14. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
8. The vice list contains eight categories, beginning with 'cowardly' (deilois) and 'faithless' (apistois) — the first two are not dramatic sins but failures of courage and trust under pressure. In the context of Revelation, cowardice means capitulating to the beast's demands rather than enduring. The word pharmakois ('sorcerers') is related to pharmakeia (18:23) and may include drug-based magical practices. The list ends with 'all liars' (pasin tois pseudēsins), connecting to the dragon's identity as the deceiver. The second death is again identified as the lake of fire (cf. 20:14).
9. The structural parallel with 17:1 is deliberate: the same kind of angel (one of the seven bowl angels) offers to show John a woman/city. In chapter 17, it was the prostitute Babylon; here, it is the bride, the New Jerusalem. The two women represent two cities, two destinies, two possible allegiances. The designation 'the bride, the wife of the Lamb' (tēn nymphēn tēn gynaika tou arniou) combines betrothal and marriage — the wedding of 19:7 has been consummated.
10. The fourth and final visionary transport 'in the Spirit' (en pneumatī; cf. 1:10, 4:2, 17:3). The contrast with 17:3 is again deliberate: Babylon was seen from a wilderness; the New Jerusalem is seen from a high mountain. The mountain setting echoes Ezekiel 40:2, where the prophet is set on a high mountain to view the restored temple. The city is still 'coming down' (katabainousan, present participle) — its descent continues throughout the vision.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 40:2 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. The city's defining characteristic is that it possesses 'the glory of God' (tēn doxan tou theou) — God's kavod, his weighty, luminous presence, fills the entire city. The Greek phōstēr ('radiance, luminary, light-bearer') is used in the Septuagint for the heavenly bodies (Genesis 1:14-16). The jasper (iaspis) described as 'clear as crystal' (krystallizontō) does not match modern jasper (which is opaque); it likely refers to a translucent gemstone, perhaps diamond or clear quartz.
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 1:14-16. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The twelve gates inscribed with Israel's tribal names draw on Ezekiel 48:30-35, where the restored city has gates named for the twelve tribes. The twelve angels at the gates serve as sentinels (cf. Isaiah 62:6, where watchmen guard Jerusalem's walls). The wall is 'great and high' (mega kai hypsēlon) — not for defense (the city has no enemies) but as a symbol of definition and security.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 48:30-35. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 62:6. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. The symmetrical arrangement — three gates on each of four sides — matches Ezekiel 48:31-34 exactly. The gates face all four directions, indicating universal access: the city welcomes people from every direction. The sequence (east, north, south, west) begins with the east, the direction of sunrise and of the temple's main entrance.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Ezekiel 48:31-34 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.

14. The twelve foundations inscribed with apostolic names complement the twelve gates inscribed with tribal names — Israel and the Church are united in one structure. The 'apostles of the Lamb' (apostolōn tou arniou) is a distinctive phrase identifying them as belonging to and sent by Christ. Ephesians 2:20 similarly speaks of the church 'built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets.' The twelve-plus-twelve architecture (24 total) may connect to the twenty-four elders of chapters 4-5.
15. The measuring of the city parallels Ezekiel 40-42, where an angel measures the restored temple with a measuring rod. The rod is golden (chrysoun), befitting the heavenly city. Measuring in prophetic literature signifies divine ownership and protection (cf. Zechariah 2:1-5). Three things are measured: the city itself, its gates, and its wall.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Ezekiel 40-42 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
15. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Zechariah 2:1-5 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
16. The equal dimensions (length, width, height) make the city a perfect cube — the same shape as the Holy of Holies in Solomon's temple (1 Kings 6:20, a cube of twenty cubits). The entire city is the Holy of Holies: what was once the most restricted space in the world, entered by one person once a year, now encompasses the entire dwelling of God's people. Twelve thousand stadia (approximately 1,400 miles or 2,200 km) is a symbolic measurement: 12 x 1,000. A stadion is approximately 607 feet (185 meters).
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes 1 Kings 6:20. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The wall measures 144 cubits (approximately 216 feet or 66 meters) — strikingly small compared to the city's enormous dimensions. The number 144 = 12 x 12, combining the twelve tribes and twelve apostles. The phrase 'human measurement, which the angel was using' (metron anthrōpou ho estin angelou) clarifies that the angel uses standard human units, making the measurements comprehensible. A cubit is approximately 18 inches (45 cm).
18. The wall material (jasper) matches the description of God's appearance in 4:3 — the city's very walls reflect God's character. The gold of the city is described as 'like clear glass' (homoion hyalō katharō) — transparent gold, a material that does not exist in the natural world. The vision transcends physical reality: this is gold you can see through, suggesting a city where nothing is hidden and light permeates everything.
19. The twelve foundation stones correspond broadly to the twelve stones on the high priest's breastplate (Exodus 28:17-20), which bore the names of the twelve tribes. The city itself functions as a priestly garment — the entire community is a 'kingdom of priests' (1:6, 5:10). The list begins with jasper, which also forms the wall (v. 18), creating continuity between foundation and superstructure.
19. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 28:17-20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
20. The exact identification of ancient gemstones with modern equivalents is uncertain in several cases. Sardion (KJV 'sardius') is likely carnelian, a red stone. The twelve stones represent a spectrum of colors, creating a vision of extraordinary beauty. Together with the gold streets, pearl gates, and jasper walls, the city is a vision of a world where beauty is not scarce but structural — woven into the very fabric of reality.
21. Each gate is a single pearl of unimaginable size — the image defies natural possibility and signals that the New Jerusalem transcends the physical world entirely. The 'street' (plateia, singular) suggests one main thoroughfare rather than a complex street system. Again the gold is 'transparent as glass' (hōs hyalos diaugēs) — the material of ultimate value (gold) has the quality of ultimate visibility (transparency). Nothing in this city is opaque.
22. This is one of the most radical declarations in Revelation. After the entire biblical narrative has centered on God's temple — the tabernacle, Solomon's temple, the second temple, Ezekiel's visionary temple — John announces that the New Jerusalem has no temple. The reason is not absence but superabundance: God's presence is not localized in a building because it fills everything. The Lord God Almighty and the Lamb together constitute the temple — divine presence is the sacred space itself.
23. This echoes Isaiah 60:19-20 ('The sun will no more be your light by day...for the LORD will be your everlasting light'). The sun and moon are not destroyed — they are simply unnecessary. God's glory (doxa, the Greek equivalent of Hebrew kavod) provides all the light the city needs. The Lamb is the city's 'lamp' (lychnos) — Christ mediates God's glory to the city, just as a lamp mediates fire's light to a room.
23. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 60:19-20 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
24. The SBLGNT omits 'of those who are saved' (tōn sōzomenōn) found in some manuscripts and the KJV — the nations walk by the city's light without restriction. This fulfills Isaiah 60:3 ('Nations will come to your light, and kings to the brightness of your dawn'). The kings who once served the beast (17:2, 18:3, 9) are replaced by kings who bring their glory into God's city. The vision is one of cultural richness, not cultural erasure — the nations bring their distinct contributions.
24. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Isaiah 60:3. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
25. Open gates signal both security (no enemy to fear) and welcome (perpetual access). In the ancient world, city gates were closed at night for protection; these are never closed because there is no night and no threat. This echoes Isaiah 60:11 ('Your gates will always stand open, they will never be shut, day or night'). The parenthetical 'there will be no night' explains why 'by day' is not restrictive — it is always day.

25. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 60:11 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
26. The 'glory and honor of the nations' (tēn doxan kai tēn timēn tōn ethnōn) suggests that the best of human culture, creativity, and achievement is not destroyed but redeemed — brought into the New Jerusalem and consecrated. This is not the obliteration of human civilization but its purification and fulfillment.
27. The threefold exclusion (unclean, abomination, falsehood) echoes the vice list of verse 8 and connects to the Old Testament purity laws governing access to the temple. The distinction is that this is not ethnic or ritual purity but moral and spiritual: those excluded are characterized by corruption and deception. The criterion for inclusion is the same as in 20:15 — inscription in the Lamb's book of life. The chapter ends not with exclusion but with belonging: those written in the book have a permanent home.

22

Summary: *Revelation 22 is the final chapter of the Christian Bible, completing the vision of the new creation that began in chapter 21. The chapter opens with the river of the water of life flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb through the middle of the city, with the tree of life on either side bearing twelve kinds of fruit and leaves for the healing of the nations. There will be no more night, for the Lord God will be their light, and his servants will reign forever. The chapter then shifts to a series of closing declarations: the angel affirms the trustworthiness of the vision, Jesus announces his imminent return three times, a solemn warning is issued against adding to or removing from the words of this prophecy, and the book closes with the cry 'Come, Lord Jesus!' and a benediction of grace.*

What Makes This Remarkable: *This chapter deliberately echoes Genesis 2-3, closing the biblical narrative in a ring structure. The river of life recalls the river flowing from Eden (Genesis 2:10); the tree of life, barred to humanity after the fall (Genesis 3:24), now stands accessible in the city with no angel barring the way. The curse of Genesis 3:17-19 is explicitly undone: 'No longer will there be any curse' (v. 3). What was lost in a garden is restored in a city — not a return to innocence but a consummation of all history. The repeated 'I am coming soon' (erchomai tachy) uses the present tense, conveying imminence and certainty rather than a timetable. The final words of Scripture are not a theological statement but a prayer and a blessing — the church crying 'Come!' and Jesus extending grace.*

Translation Friction: *The SBLGNT text of this chapter contains several textual variants, particularly in the closing verses (vv. 19-21), where manuscript traditions diverge on whether 'tree of life' or 'book of life' is original. We follow the SBLGNT reading throughout. The warning in verses 18-19 against adding to or removing from 'this book' originally referred to the book of Revelation specifically, not the entire biblical canon, though later reception history extended its scope. The phrase 'the Spirit and the bride say Come' (v. 17) is grammatically ambiguous — it may be an invitation to Christ to return, an invitation to the thirsty to drink, or both simultaneously.*

Connections: *The river of life connects to Ezekiel 47:1-12, where water flows from the temple and heals the Dead Sea, and to Zechariah 14:8, where living waters flow from Jerusalem. The tree of life with twelve fruits echoes Ezekiel 47:12, where trees along the river bear fruit monthly with leaves for healing. The entire scene reverses the curse of Genesis 3 and fulfills the promise of Genesis 3:15 — the serpent's work is undone. The threefold 'I am coming soon' connects to Jesus's promise in John 14:3. The Alpha and Omega title (v. 13) reaches back to Revelation 1:8 and Isaiah 44:6. The closing benediction of grace echoes the Pauline epistolary tradition (cf. Romans 16:20, 1 Corinthians 16:23), grounding the apocalyptic vision in the worshipping life of real congregations.*

¹Then he showed me the river of the water of life, bright as crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb. ²In the middle of its main street, and on either side of the river, was the tree of life, producing twelve kinds of fruit, yielding its fruit each month. And the leaves of the tree are for the healing of the nations. ³No longer will there be any curse. The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in the city, and his servants will worship him. ⁴They will see his face, and his name will be on their foreheads. ⁵There will be no more night. They will have no need for the light of a lamp or the light of the sun, because the Lord God will shine on them, and they will reign forever and ever. ⁶And he said to me, "These words are trustworthy and true. The Lord, the God of the spirits of the prophets, has sent his angel to show his servants what must soon take place." ⁷"A

and look, I am coming soon! Blessed is the one who keeps the words of the prophecy of this book." ⁸I, John, am the one who heard and saw these things. And when I had heard and seen them, I fell down to worship at the feet of the angel who had shown them to me. ⁹But he said to me, "Do not do that! I am a fellow servant with you and with your brothers the prophets and with those who keep the words of this book. Worship God!" ¹⁰Then he told me, "Do not seal up the words of the prophecy of this book, for the time is near." ¹¹Let the one doing wrong continue to do wrong, and let the filthy one continue to be filthy, and let the righteous one continue to practice righteousness, and let the holy one continue to be holy." ¹²"Look, I am coming soon, and my reward is with me, to repay each one according to their work. ¹³I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. ¹⁴Blessed are those who wash their robes, so that they may have the right to the tree of life and may enter the city by its gates. ¹⁵Outside are the dogs and the sorcerers and the sexually immoral and the murderers and the idolaters and everyone who loves and practices falsehood. ¹⁶"I, Jesus, have sent my angel to testify to you about these things for the churches. I am the Root and the Descendant of David, the bright morning star." ¹⁷The Spirit and the bride say, "Come!" And let the one who hears say, "Come!" And let the one who is thirsty come. Let the one who desires take the water of life as a gift. ¹⁸I testify to everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: if anyone adds to them, God will add to that person the plagues described in this book. ¹⁹And if anyone takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God will take away that person's share in the tree of life and in the holy city, which are described in this book. ²⁰The one who testifies to these things says, "Yes, I am coming soon." Amen. Come, Lord Jesus! ²¹The grace of the Lord Jesus be with all.

TRANSLATOR NOTES

1. The Greek lampron ('bright, radiant') is rendered 'bright' rather than the KJV's 'pure,' which more accurately captures the visual quality described. The single throne shared by God and the Lamb (tou thronou tou theou kai tou arniou) uses one article governing both nouns, indicating a shared sovereignty. The river echoes both Eden's river (Genesis 2:10) and Ezekiel's temple river (Ezekiel 47:1-12), but here the source is not a garden or a temple — it is the throne itself.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 47:1-12. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
1. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Genesis 2:10. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
2. The syntax is notoriously difficult: how can the tree be both 'in the middle of the street' and 'on either side of the river'? The image may depict a single great tree straddling the river (as in Ezekiel 47:7, 12, where trees line both banks), or a collective singular referring to multiple trees. The Greek xylon ('wood, tree') is the same word used for the cross in Acts 5:30 and 1 Peter 2:24. Twelve kinds of fruit (karpous dodeka) — one for each month — suggest perpetual abundance with no season of barrenness. The word therapeia ('healing, service, care') gives us the English word 'therapy.' That the nations (ethne) still need healing in the new creation is a striking detail, suggesting the new Jerusalem is not static perfection but ongoing restoration.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Genesis 2:9. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
2. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Ezekiel 47:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
3. The Greek katathema ('curse, accursed thing') directly reverses the curse pronounced in Genesis 3:17 ('cursed is the ground because of you'). The entire weight of the fall — thorns, toil, pain, death — is undone in this single declaration. The verb latreuō ('to serve, to worship') carries both senses simultaneously: the servants both worship and serve. In the new creation, the distinction between sacred service and daily life collapses.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Zechariah 14:11 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
3. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Genesis 3:17 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
4. To see God's face (opsontai to prosopon autou) is the ultimate promise of Scripture. Moses was told 'you cannot see my face, for no one can see me and live' (Exodus 33:20). The beatific vision — direct, unmediated communion with God — is here declared possible. The name on the forehead contrasts with the mark of the beast (Revelation 13:16-17); God's people bear his name as a mark of belonging, not as a brand of ownership.
4. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Exodus 33:20. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.

5. The phrase *eis tous aionas ton aionon* ('into the ages of ages') is the strongest Greek expression for unending duration — literally 'forever and ever.' The reign promised here is not temporary or conditional but eternal. The abolition of night recalls Isaiah 60:19-20 ('the LORD will be your everlasting light') and completes the creation theme: God who said 'Let there be light' (Genesis 1:3) now becomes the light himself, making sun and lamp unnecessary.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Isaiah 60:19 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
5. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Genesis 1:3 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
6. The phrase *pistoi kai aleethinoi* ('trustworthy and true') echoes Revelation 21:5 and 19:11, where Christ himself is called 'Faithful and True.' The description 'the God of the spirits of the prophets' (*ho theos ton pneumatōn ton prophetōn*) identifies God as the one who inspires prophetic speech — the same Spirit who spoke through the Old Testament prophets now validates this final revelation. The phrase *en tachei* ('soon, quickly, without delay') maintains the tension of imminence that characterizes the entire book.
7. This is the first of three 'I am coming soon' declarations in this chapter (see also vv. 12, 20). The Greek *erchomai tachy* uses the present tense ('I am coming') with the adverb *tachy* ('soon, quickly'), conveying both certainty and imminence. This is the sixth of seven beatitudes in Revelation (cf. 1:3, 14:13, 16:15, 19:9, 20:6, 22:7, 22:14). The verb *tereo* ('to keep, to guard, to observe') implies not merely reading but obeying and treasuring.
8. John's attempt to worship the angel repeats the same error from Revelation 19:10. The repetition is not carelessness — it dramatizes how overwhelming the visions are and how instinctive the impulse to worship the messenger rather than the sender. The emphatic *Kago Ioannes* ('And I, John') reasserts the human eyewitness behind the apocalyptic visions.
9. The angel's refusal is emphatic: *Hora me* ('See that you do not!' or 'Stop!'). The angel identifies himself as a *syndoulos* ('fellow servant, co-slave') — placing himself in the same category as John, the prophets, and all who keep the book's words. The command to *proskyneo* ('worship') God alone echoes the first commandment and Jesus's response to Satan in Matthew 4:10.
10. This command directly contrasts with Daniel 12:4 ('seal up the book until the time of the end'). Daniel's prophecy was sealed because its fulfillment was distant; John's is unsealed because the time (*kairos*, 'appointed time, decisive moment') is near (*engys*). The shift from sealed to unsealed marks the transition from prophetic anticipation to imminent fulfillment.
10. [TCR Cross-Reference] This verse quotes Daniel 12:4 — see the TCR rendering of that passage for the Hebrew source text and translation decisions.
11. This jarring declaration does not encourage evil but announces the finality of moral choice. When the end comes, character is fixed — there is no more time for change. The fourfold structure creates two pairs: the unjust and filthy on one side, the righteous and holy on the other. The Greek imperative forms (*adikesato*, *rhypantetho*, *poiesato*, *hagiastheto*) function as prophetic declarations of what will be, not as commands to sin. Compare Ezekiel 3:27: 'Whoever will listen, let them listen; whoever will refuse, let them refuse.'
11. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Ezekiel 3:27. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
12. The second 'I am coming soon' declaration. The language of bringing a reward (*misthos*) echoes Isaiah 40:10 ('his reward is with him') and Isaiah 62:11 ('his recompense accompanies him'). The principle of repayment according to works (*kata to ergon*) runs throughout Scripture (Psalm 62:12, Proverbs 24:12, Romans 2:6) and does not contradict grace — it affirms that faith produces fruit and that God takes human action seriously.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 40:10. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 62:11. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Psalm 62:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
12. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Proverbs 24:12. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
13. Three titles are combined here, each drawn from different parts of Revelation and Isaiah. 'Alpha and Omega' appeared in Revelation 1:8 on the lips of God; 'the First and the Last' in Revelation 1:17 and 2:8 on the lips of Christ. Their merger here makes the highest christological claim in the book: Christ shares the identity of God. The titles also echo Isaiah 44:6 ('I am the first and I am the last; apart from me there is no God') and Isaiah 48:12. Alpha is the first letter and Omega the last letter of the Greek alphabet — together they encompass all reality.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 44:6 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
13. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Isaiah 48:12 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
14. This is the seventh and final beatitude in Revelation. The SBLGNT reads 'those who wash their robes' (*hoi plynontes tas stolas auton*) rather than the KJV's 'they that do his commandments' (*hoi poiountes tas entolas autou*), which reflects a different textual tradition. The image of washed robes connects to Revelation 7:14 ('they have washed their robes and made them white in the blood of the Lamb'). Access to the tree of life — denied since

Genesis 3:24 — is now the reward of the faithful.

14. [TCR Cross-Reference] Echoes Genesis 3:24. See the TCR's OT rendering for the Hebrew behind this passage and the translation rationale.
15. The term 'dogs' (kynes) was used in the ancient world for the morally impure and for those outside the covenant community (cf. Philippians 3:2, Matthew 7:6). The Greek pharmakoi ('sorcerers') is related to pharmakon ('drug, potion'), referring to those who practice occult arts, often involving potions. The list echoes Revelation 21:8 and functions as a vice list defining who remains outside the city — not as a physical geography but as a moral reality. The final phrase 'loves and practices falsehood' (philon kai poion pseudos) describes those whose fundamental orientation is toward deception.
16. Jesus speaks in his own name — one of the few times in Revelation where the speaker is explicitly identified as 'I, Jesus' (Ego Iesous). The dual title 'Root and Descendant of David' (he rhiza kai to genos Daidid) is paradoxical: Jesus is both David's ancestor ('Root,' as in Isaiah 11:1, 10) and David's descendant ('Offspring'). He is the source and the product of the Davidic line. The 'bright morning star' (ho aster ho lampros ho proinos) recalls Numbers 24:17 ('a star shall come out of Jacob') and connects to Revelation 2:28, where Christ promises to give the morning star to the faithful.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Isaiah 11:1. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
16. [TCR Cross-Reference] Quotes Numbers 24:17. The TCR rendering of that OT passage preserves the Hebrew source text and documents the translation decisions behind it.
17. The invitation cascades outward: the Spirit and the bride (the church) cry 'Come!' to Christ, then invite the hearer to join the cry, then extend the invitation to anyone who thirsts. The word dorean ('freely, as a gift, without cost') is emphatic — the water of life cannot be purchased or earned. This echoes Isaiah 55:1 ('Come, all you who are thirsty, come to the waters; and you who have no money, come, buy and eat!'). The verse functions simultaneously as a prayer for Christ's return and as an evangelistic invitation — the last great altar call of Scripture.
17. [TCR Cross-Reference] Draws on Isaiah 55:1. Consult the TCR rendering of that passage for the underlying Hebrew and the rationale for key translation choices.
18. This solemn warning echoes Deuteronomy 4:2 ('Do not add to what I command you and do not subtract from it') and Deuteronomy 12:32. The verb martyro ('I testify, I bear witness') places this under oath. Originally this referred specifically to the book of Revelation, not to the entire biblical canon — the 'canon' as a concept did not yet exist when this was written. However, the placement of Revelation at the end of the Christian Bible has given these words a broader canonical resonance in the history of reception.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 4:2 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
18. [TCR Cross-Reference] References Deuteronomy 12:32 — the TCR OT rendering of that text provides the Hebrew source and explains the translation decisions involved.
19. The SBLGNT reads 'tree of life' (xylou tes zoes) rather than the KJV's 'book of life' (bibliou tes zoes). The 'book of life' reading likely arose from a scribal confusion of xylou ('tree') with bibliou ('book') — an easy error in manuscript transmission. We follow the SBLGNT critical text. The penalty mirrors the offense with poetic precision: those who take away from the book will have their share taken away from the tree and the city just described. The warning protects the integrity of the prophetic message.
20. The third and final 'I am coming soon' — and this time it receives a response. The exchange is the heart of early Christian worship: Christ promises his return, and the church answers with the prayer 'Come, Lord Jesus!' (Erchou kyrie Iesou). This is the Greek equivalent of the Aramaic Maranatha ('Our Lord, come!') preserved in 1 Corinthians 16:22. The single word Amen bridges the two speakers — it may be John's affirmation of Christ's promise, or the congregation's liturgical response, or both. These are among the most intimate words in the New Testament: a direct, personal exchange between the Lord and his people.
21. The final words of the Christian Bible are a benediction of grace. The SBLGNT reads simply 'with all' (meta panton) without 'you' (hymon) or the closing 'Amen,' both of which appear in some manuscript traditions and are reflected in the KJV. The simplicity is striking: not 'with the saints' or 'with the churches' but 'with all' — the widest possible scope. That the Bible ends not with a warning, not with a doctrine, not with a command, but with grace is itself a theological statement. The epistolary closing (typical of Paul's letters: Romans 16:20, 1 Corinthians 16:23, Galatians 6:18) grounds this cosmic apocalypse in the life of actual congregations who would hear it read aloud in worship.